

# Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 16 for x86

## Manual set

Windows/Linux

# Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 16

## Documentation Road Map

Windows/Linux

J2UL-2945-01ENZ0(00)  
July 2024

# Preface

---

## Purpose of this document

This document is intended for users of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres, and explains how to read the manuals.

## Structure of this document

The structure and content of this manual is shown below.

[Chapter 1 How to Read the Manuals](#)

This section explains the notational conventions in Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres manuals.

[Chapter 2 Trademarks](#)

This section explains the trademarks.

## Export restrictions

Exportation/release of this document may require necessary procedures in accordance with the regulations of your resident country and/or US export control laws.

## Issue date and version

Edition 1.0: July 2024
------------------------

## Copyright

Copyright 2015-2024 Fujitsu Limited

# Contents

---

Chapter 1 How to Read the Manuals.....	1
1.1 Abbreviations of Manual Titles.....	1
1.2 System of Manuals and How to Use the Manuals.....	1
1.2.1 System of Manuals.....	1
1.2.2 Documentation Road Map.....	3
1.3 Notational Conventions in the Manuals.....	5
1.3.1 Platform-specific Information.....	5
1.3.2 Abbreviation of Product Names.....	5
1.3.3 Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Conventions.....	7
1.3.3.1 Server.....	7
1.3.3.2 Client.....	7
1.3.4 Symbol Convention.....	7
1.4 Notes about Manuals.....	7
Chapter 2 Trademarks.....	8



# Chapter 1 How to Read the Manuals

The Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres manuals use certain notational conventions and rules. Pay attention to these conventions and rules when reading the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres manuals.

## 1.1 Abbreviations of Manual Titles

The following tables list abbreviations of the titles of manuals for Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres as they appear in the manuals.

Formal manual title	Abbreviation in Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres manuals
Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Release Notes	Release Notes
Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres General Description	General Description
Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Installation and Setup Guide for Server	Installation and Setup Guide for Server
Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Installation and Setup Guide for Client	Installation and Setup Guide for Client
Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Installation and Setup Guide for Server Assistant	Installation and Setup Guide for Server Assistant
Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Operation Guide	Operation Guide
Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)	Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)
Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Cluster Operation Guide (PRIMECLUSTER)	Cluster Operation Guide (PRIMECLUSTER)
Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Security Operation Guide	Security Operation Guide
Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Application Development Guide	Application Development Guide
Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Connection Manager User's Guide	Connection Manager User's Guide
Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Reference	Reference
Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Java API Reference	Java API Reference
Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Npgsql API Reference	Npgsql API Reference
Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Glossary	Glossary
Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Messages	Messages
PostgreSQL <x> Documentation (*1)	PostgreSQL Documentation

\*1: <x> indicates the version of PostgreSQL that Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres is based on. For the version, refer to "OSS Supported by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres" in the General Description.

## 1.2 System of Manuals and How to Use the Manuals

This section describes the system of manuals for Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

### 1.2.1 System of Manuals

#### Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres manuals

The table below shows the manuals on Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

Use/Purpose	Manual title	Content	When to read
Deciding whether to upgrade the product.	Release Notes	Overview of upgraded features and incompatibility information.	When learning about features upgraded from earlier versions and incompatibility information.
Acquiring an overview of the product and the basic information required for work and operation.	General Description	Description of all available functions associated with each intended purpose or use, and screenshots of operations.	When learning basic information and restrictions that system engineers and operators must know to actually operate the product.
Installing and setting up Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres correctly to enable its use.	Installation and Setup Guide for Server	Procedure for installing and setting up Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.	When installing and setting up Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.
Installing the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres client function correctly to enable its use.	Installation and Setup Guide for Client	Installing the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres client function.	When installing the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres client function.
Installing and setting up the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Server Assistant.	Installation and Setup Guide for Server Assistant	Procedure for installing and setting up the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Server Assistant.	When installing and setting up the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Server Assistant.
Operating and managing Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.	Operation Guide	Description of the tasks required in Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres management and operation.	When learning how to operate and manage the databases.
Performing switchover using database multiplexing mode.	Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)	Description of the tasks required for database multiplexing operation.	When using database multiplexing mode to create operating environment for switchover and perform it.
Performing failover using PRIMECLUSTER.	Cluster Operation Guide (PRIMECLUSTER)	Description of how to set up failover and perform operations using PRIMECLUSTER.	When performing failover using PRIMECLUSTER.
Performing security operation.	Security Operation Guide	Description of the tasks required for security operations.	When using security features and performing security operation in Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.
Applications using the interface provided by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.	Application Development Guide	Procedure for creating an application using embedded SQL, JDBC driver, ODBC driver, and .NET Data Provider.	When developing an application using the interface provided by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.
Performing high availability system using	Connection Manager User's Guide	Description of the features, setup, and	When using Connection Manager features by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

Use/Purpose	Manual title	Content	When to read
the Connection Manager feature.		usage of Connection Manager.	
Usage of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres commands.	Reference	Description of the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres commands expanded on from PostgreSQL.	When learning Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres command functions, options, and examples of use.
Learning the syntax of the JDBC API.	Java API Reference	Description of the syntax of the JDBC API.	When learning the syntax of the JDBC API.
Learning the syntax of the Npgsql API.	Npgsql API Reference	Description of the syntax of the Npgsql API.	When learning the syntax of the Npgsql API.
Learning the meaning of the terms of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.	Glossary	Description of the terms used in the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres manuals.	When checking the meaning of terms used in the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres manuals.
Referring to messages from Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres and taking measures for them.	Messages	Description of each message and description of any measures to be taken for it.	When finding out the specific measures for dealing with messages from Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

## PostgreSQL manual

The table below shows the manual on PostgreSQL-compatible features.

Use/Purpose	Manual title	Content	When to read
Learning about PostgreSQL features.	PostgreSQL Documentation	Official PostgreSQL documentation.  Explains all features officially supported by the relevant version of PostgreSQL.	When learning how to use PostgreSQL.

## 1.2.2 Documentation Road Map

This section provides a documentation roadmap, broken down by user role.

### Database administrator

The database administrator is a user who performs Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres installation and setup, and who operates and monitors the database.

Refer to the manuals in the table below, according to purpose:

	Purpose	Manual name
Required reading	To learn about upgraded features and incompatibility information	Release Notes

	Purpose	Manual name
	To read an overview of the software	General Description
	To perform installation and setup	Installation and Setup Guide for Server
		Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)
		Cluster Operation Guide (PRIMECLUSTER)
		Connection Manager User's Guide
	To install the Server Assistant	Installation and Setup Guide for Server Assistant
	To operate and monitor	Operation Guide
		Security Operation Guide
		Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)
		Cluster Operation Guide (PRIMECLUSTER)
		Reference
	Using Connection Manager features	Connection Manager User's Guide
	Reference	Messages
		Glossary
Refer to as required	To learn about PostgreSQL features	PostgreSQL Documentation

## Application developer

The application developer is a user who defines the database and develops applications.

Refer to the manuals in the table below, according to purpose:

	Purpose	Manual name
Required reading	To learn about upgraded features and incompatibility information	Release Notes
	To read an overview of the software	General Description
	To perform installation and setup	Installation and Setup Guide for Client
	To define a database	Operation Guide
	To develop applications	Application Development Guide
		Java API Reference
		Npgsql API Reference
	Using Connection Manager features	Connection Manager User's Guide

	Purpose	Manual name
	Reference	Messages
		Glossary
Refer to as required	To learn about PostgreSQL features	PostgreSQL Documentation

## 1.3 Notational Conventions in the Manuals

Manual titles and product names in the manual are abbreviated.

This section explains the notational conventions for abbreviations and platform-specific information in the manuals.

### 1.3.1 Platform-specific Information

Even manuals whose title has a platform name contains content common to all the platforms supported by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres. In such cases, the platform-specific information is marked as shown below. Refer to only the necessary information.

**L**

#### Linux

Indicates content concerning Linux.

**W**

#### Windows(R)

Indicates content concerning Windows(R).

### 1.3.2 Abbreviation of Product Names

The following table lists abbreviations of the names of products related to Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres as they appear in the manuals.

Formal name	Abbreviation
Oracle Solaris 10 and Oracle Solaris 11	Solaris
Red Hat(R) Enterprise Linux(R) 8, Red Hat(R) Enterprise Linux(R) 9 and SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 15	Linux
Red Hat(R) Enterprise Linux(R) 8	RHEL8
Red Hat(R) Enterprise Linux(R) 9	RHEL9
SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 15	SLES 15
Windows(R) 10 Home, Windows(R) 10 Education, Windows(R) 10 Pro and Windows(R) 10 Enterprise	Windows(R) 10
Windows(R) 11 Home, Windows(R) 11 Education, Windows(R) 11 Pro and Windows(R) 11 Enterprise	Windows(R) 11
Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2016 Datacenter, Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2016 Standard and Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2016 Essentials	Windows Server(R) 2016

Formal name	Abbreviation
Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2019 Datacenter, Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2019 Standard and Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2019 Essentials	Windows Server(R) 2019
Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2022 Datacenter, Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2022 Standard and Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2022 Essentials	Windows Server(R) 2022
Windows(R) 10 Home, Windows(R) 10 Education, Windows(R) 10 Pro, Windows(R) 10 Enterprise, Windows(R) 11 Home, Windows(R) 11 Education, Windows(R) 11 Pro, Windows(R) 11 Enterprise, Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2016 Datacenter, Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2016 Standard, Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2016 Essentials, Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2019 Datacenter, Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2019 Standard, Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2019 Essentials, Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2022 Datacenter, Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2022 Standard and Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2022 Essentials	Windows(R)
Microsoft(R) Edge	Edge
Java Naming and Directory Interface	JNDI
Java(TM) 2 SDK, Standard Edition, Java(TM) 2 Platform, Enterprise Edition, Java(TM) Platform, Standard Edition and Java(TM) Development Kit	JDK
Java(TM) 2 Runtime Environment, Standard Edition and Java(TM) Runtime Environment	JRE
Microsoft(R) Visual Basic(R) for Applications	VBA
Microsoft(R) Visual Basic	Visual Basic
Microsoft(R) Visual Basic.NET	Visual Basic.NET
Microsoft(R) Visual Studio	Visual Studio
Microsoft(R) Visual Studio.NET	Visual Studio.NET
Microsoft .NET Framework	.NET Framework or .NET
Interstage Application Server Enterprise Edition, Interstage Application Server Standard-J Edition and Interstage Web Server	Interstage Application Server
Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Advanced Edition (64bit)	AE or Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Advanced Edition
Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Standard Edition (64bit)	SE or Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Standard Edition

Remarks: The symbols (R) and (TM) may be omitted in this manual.

## 1.3.3 Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Conventions

---

The naming conventions for the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres product names and functions used in the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres manuals are shown below.



### 1.3.3.1 Server

The names used in the manuals in explanations regarding Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres functions are shown below.

Product name	Name used in manuals
Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Advanced Edition (64bit) and Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Standard Edition (64bit)	64-bit product

### 1.3.3.2 Client

The names used in the manuals in explanations regarding Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres client functions are shown below.

Product name	Name used in manuals
Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Client (64bit)	64-bit product
 Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Client (32bit)	 32-bit product

## 1.3.4 Symbol Convention

---

The symbols shown below are used in the manuals.

Symbol	Meaning
[ ]	These symbols indicate characters displayed in a window or dialog box or keyboard keys.  Examples: [Setting] dialogue box, [File] menu, [Item name], [OK] button, [Enter] key.

## 1.4 Notes about Manuals

---

This section contains notes about the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres operating environments and manuals.

- Images in figures

The Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres manuals contain figures showing printouts for Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres to provide the reader an idea of what the printouts look like, but since the figures are only examples, they are incomplete.

- Explanatory examples

Most of the examples of databases in the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres manuals are modeled after inventory control databases of retail stores. The design and contents of the databases in the examples are fictitious and do not represent any real database.

- UNIX release version number

This system conforms to UNIX System V Rel4.2MP.

## Chapter 2 Trademarks

- Internet Information Services, Microsoft, MS, MS-DOS, Windows, Windows Server, Visual Basic, Visual Studio and Microsoft .NET Framework are registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S. and/or other countries.
- Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation and its subsidiaries and affiliated companies in the U.S. and other countries. Product and company names mentioned in this manual are the trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.
- Linux(R) is a registered trademark of Linus Torvalds in the U.S. and other countries.
- Red Hat, RPM, and all Red Hat-based trademarks and logos are registered trademarks or trademarks of Red Hat, Inc. in the U.S. and other countries.
- SUSE and the SUSE logo are registered trademarks of SUSE LLC in the United States and other countries.
- UNIX is a registered trademark of Open Group in the U.S. and other countries.
- Interstage, Systemwalker, PRIMECLUSTER, and Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres are trademarks or registered trademarks of Fujitsu Limited.

Other product and company names mentioned in this manual are the trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.



# Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 16

## Glossary

Windows/Linux

J2UL-2963-01ENZ0(00)  
July 2024

# Preface

---

## Purpose of this document

This document explains Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres terminology.

## Intended readers

This document is aimed at all users of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

## Export restrictions

Exportation/release of this document may require necessary procedures in accordance with the regulations of your resident country and/or US export control laws.

## Issue date and version

Edition 1.0: July 2024
------------------------

## Copyright

Copyright 2015-2024 Fujitsu Limited

# Contents

---

<a href="#">Glossary</a> .....	1
<a href="#">Index</a> .....	5

# Glossary

---

## Arbitration command

A user exit (user command) called when an abnormality is detected using operating system/server heartbeat monitoring in database multiplexing mode.

---

## Arbitration server

A dedicated server on which the Server Assistant program is installed.

---

## Archive log

Contains the history of updates made to the database, and is used during recovery.

---

## Backup data storage destination

The directory that stores the backup data.

---

## Client command

A command that is executed from the client machine and used. Also known as a client application.

---

## Confidentiality group

An object that indicates which confidentiality level roles in confidentiality group can access.

---

## Confidentiality group role

The targets of GRANT and REVOKE statements executed internally by the confidentiality management feature.

---

## Confidentiality level

A group of data with the same degree of confidentiality.

---

## Confidentiality object

A collection of data classified by confidentiality level, representing an object in the database.

---

## Confidentiality privilege

The privileges indicate how a confidentiality group can access confidentiality objects registered at a certain confidentiality level.

---

## Confidentiality management role

A role that manages confidentiality matrices.

---

## Confidentiality Management

A feature that supports database users in setting appropriate privileges for each database resource.

---

## Confidentiality matrix

A matrix of confidentiality levels and confidentiality groups.

---

## Connection Manager

The replication operation to continue without knowing where the application is connected.

The Connection Manager feature improves the availability.

---

## Data storage destination

The directory that stores the database clusters.

---

## Database cluster

The database storage area on the database storage disk. Database clusters are a collection of databases managed by an instance.

---

## Data masking

A feature that can change the returned data for queries generated by applications, to prevent exposing actual data.

---

## Database multiplexing

Mechanism in which a database is made redundant on multiple servers, by transferring transaction logs (WAL) via the network to enable application jobs to be continued.

---

## Database superuser

A user defined in the database with access privileges for all database objects.

---

## Encoding

Indicates the character set.

---

## Fencing

A process that isolates a database server with an unstable status from the cluster system in database multiplexing mode. This process is implemented as a fencing command.

---

## Fencing command

A user exit (user command) that implements fencing in database multiplexing mode.

---

## Global Meta Cache

The Global Meta Cache feature cache the informations about system catalogs information (catalog meta cache) in shared memory. The catalog meta cache on shared memory is called the Global Meta Cache (GMC).

---

## Instance

A series of server processes for managing database clusters.

---

## Instance administrator

The OS user account that owns the database cluster files and operates the database server processes.

---

## Instance name

Indicates the instance name.

---

## Key management system

A system that manages data encryption keys when using the transparent data encryption feature.

---

## Local Meta Cache Limit

The ability to limit the size by removing the Local Meta Cache that has not been accessed for a long time.

Local Meta Cache is a meta cache (system catalog and table definition information) held in local memory.

---

## Masking policy

A method of changing data under specific conditions when it is returned for a query from an application. You can configure masking target, masking type, masking condition and masking format.

---

## Mirrored transaction log

The log that mirrors the transaction log at the backup data storage destination.

---

### Mirroring Controller arbitration process

A process that performs arbitration and fencing on the arbitration server.

---

### Mirroring Controller monitoring process

A process that performs heartbeat monitoring of the Mirroring Controller process. If the Mirroring Controller process returns no response or is down, the Mirroring Controller monitoring process is restarted automatically.

---

### Mirroring Controller process

A process that performs operating system/server and process heartbeat monitoring and disk abnormality monitoring between database servers. Additionally, the process issues arbitration requests to the arbitration server and executes arbitration commands.

---

### Pgpool-II connection pooling

The connection pooling feature of Pgpool-II supported by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

This feature maintains the connection established with the database server and reuses that connection each time a new connection with the same properties (user name, database, and protocol version) arrives. By reducing the connection overhead for the database server, throughput of the whole system is improved.

---

### Pgpool-II failover

The automatic failover feature of Pgpool-II supported by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

If any of the database servers crashes or can no longer be reached, this feature disconnects the server and continues operation on the remaining servers. The streaming replication feature of PostgreSQL is combined with Pgpool-II to achieve a high-availability system.

---

### Pgpool-II load balancing

The load balancing feature of Pgpool-II supported by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

This feature distributes reference queries to multiple database servers, improving throughput of the whole system. The database multiplexing feature or PostgreSQL streaming replication feature is combined with Pgpool-II to reduce the load on the database server.

---

### Pgpool-II server

A server for using the failover, connection pooling, and load balancing features of Pgpool-II. It is a dedicated server that has a server program installed for using these features.

---

### Primary server

The server that processes the main database jobs during multiplexed database operation.

---

### Server Assistant

A feature that objectively determines the status of database servers as a third party, and if necessary, isolates affected databases if the database servers are unable to accurately ascertain their mutual statuses in database multiplexing mode, such as due to a network error between database servers, or server instability.

---

### Server Assistant program

A program to be installed on the arbitration server.

---

### Server command

A command used on the database server. Also known as a server application.

---

### Standby server

A server that generates a replicated database synchronized with the primary server, and that can run as an alternative server in case the primary server fails during multiplexed database operation.

---

### State transition command

A user exit (user command) called when Mirroring Controller performs a state transition of a database server in database multiplexing mode. State transition commands include the post-switch command, pre-detach command, and post-attach command.

---

### Transaction log

Contains the history of updates made to the database by transactions. Also known as the WAL (Write-Ahead Log).

---

### Transaction log storage destination

The directory that stores the transaction log.

---

### VCI (Vertical Clustered Index)

An index with columnar data structure suitable for aggregation.

---

### WAL (Write-Ahead Log)

Has the same meaning as 'transaction log'.

---

### WebAdmin program

A GUI-based program installed on a database server or a dedicated WebAdmin server, used to manage database instances.

---

### WebAdmin server

By using the WebAdmin program on a different server to the database server, instances on multiple database servers can be managed from a dedicated WebAdmin server on which the WebAdmin program is installed.

# Index

[A]		Pgpool-II load balancing.....	3
Arbitration command.....	1	Pgpool-II server.....	3
Arbitration server.....	1	Primary server.....	3
Archive log.....	1		
[B]		[S]	
Backup data storage destination.....	1	Server Assistant.....	3
		Server Assistant program.....	3
[C]		Server command.....	3
Client command.....	1	Standby server.....	3
Confidentiality group.....	1	State transition command.....	4
Confidentiality group role.....	1		
Confidentiality level.....	1	[T]	
Confidentiality Management.....	1	Transaction log.....	4
Confidentiality management role.....	1	Transaction log storage destination.....	4
Confidentiality matrix.....	1		
Confidentiality object.....	1	[V]	
Confidentiality privilege.....	1	VCI (Vertical Clustered Index).....	4
Connection Manager.....	1		
		[W]	
[D]		WAL(Write-Ahead Log).....	4
Database cluster.....	2	WebAdmin program.....	4
Database multiplexing.....	2	WebAdmin server.....	4
Database superuser.....	2		
Data masking.....	2		
Data storage destination.....	1		
[E]			
Encoding.....	2		
[F]			
Fencing.....	2		
Fencing command.....	2		
[G]			
Global Meta Cache.....	2		
[I]			
Instance.....	2		
Instance administrator.....	2		
Instance name.....	2		
[K]			
Key management system.....	2		
[L]			
Local Meta Cache Limit .....	2		
[M]			
Masking policy.....	2		
Mirrored transaction log.....	2		
Mirroring Controller arbitration process.....	3		
Mirroring Controller monitoring process.....	3		
Mirroring Controller process.....	3		
[P]			
Pgpool-II connection pooling.....	3		
Pgpool-II failover.....	3		



# Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 16

## General Description

Windows/Linux

J2UL-2948-01ENZ0(02)  
June 2025

# Preface

---

## Purpose of this document

This document explains the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres concepts to those who are to operate databases using it.

This document explains the features of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

## Intended readers

This document is intended for people who are:

- Considering installing Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres
- Using Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres for the first time
- Wanting to learn about the concept of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres
- Wanting to see a functional overview of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

Readers of this document are also assumed to have general knowledge of:

- Computers
- Jobs
- Linux
- Windows(R)

## Structure of this document

This document is structured as follows:

### [Chapter 1 Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Basics](#)

Explains the features of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

### [Appendix A List of Features](#)

Lists the main features provided by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

### [Appendix B OSS Supported by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres](#)

Explains the OSS supported by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

### [Appendix C Features that can be Used on Servers Other than the Database Server](#)

Explains features that can be used on servers other than the database server.

## Export restrictions

Exportation/release of this document may require necessary procedures in accordance with the regulations of your resident country and/or US export control laws.

## Issue date and version

Edition 1.2:	June	2025
Edition 1.1:	March	2025
Edition 1.0:	July	2024

## Copyright

Copyright 2015-2025 Fujitsu Limited

## Revision History

---

Revision	Location	Version
Changed article about linking with third-party tools.	Appendix A List of Features	Edition 1.2
Database Monitoring with Datasentinel to the feature list.	Appendix A List of Features	Edition 1.1

# Contents

---

Chapter 1 Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Basics.....	1
1.1 Flexible Database Recovery.....	2
1.2 Simple GUI-Based Installation and Operation Management.....	4
1.3 High Reliability with Database Multiplexing.....	4
1.4 High Reliability Using Failover Integrated with the Cluster Software.....	6
1.5 Seamless Migration from Oracle Databases.....	7
1.6 Storage Data Protection Using Transparent Data Encryption.....	7
1.7 Setting Password Operation Policy with Profile.....	8
1.8 Data Masking for Improved Security.....	9
1.9 Security Enhancement Using Audit Logs.....	9
1.10 Management of Access Control by Confidentiality Management.....	10
1.11 Enhanced Query Plan Stability.....	10
1.12 Increased Aggregation Performance Using the In-memory Feature.....	11
1.13 High-Speed Data Load.....	12
1.14 High availability by using Connection Manager.....	13
1.15 Memory Usage Reduce with Meta cache Reduction and Limit.....	14
1.15.1 Memory Usage Reduction Using Global Meta Cache.....	14
1.15.2 Memory Usage Reduction Using Local Meta Cache Limit.....	15
Appendix A List of Features.....	17
Appendix B OSS Supported by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.....	18
Appendix C Features that can be Used on Servers Other than the Database Server.....	20
C.1 WebAdmin.....	20
C.2 Server Assistant.....	20
C.3 Failover, Connection Pooling, and Load Balancing Features of Pgpool-II.....	20
Index.....	23

# Chapter 1 Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Basics

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres maintains the operating methods, interfaces for application development and SQL compatibility of PostgreSQL, while providing expanded features for enhanced reliability and operability.

This chapter explains the functionality extended by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

Refer to "[Appendix A List of Features](#)" for feature differences between editions.

Additionally, Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres supports various open source software (OSS). Refer to "[Appendix B OSS Supported by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres](#)" for information on OSS supported by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres has the following features:

- Flexible database recovery

Not only does Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres recover data to its most recent form when a failure occurs, which is essential for databases, but it can also recover to any point in time. Additionally, backup/recovery can be performed using any copy technology.

- Simple GUI-based installation and operation management

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres uses GUI to simplify cumbersome database operations, and allows databases to be used intuitively.

- High reliability by using database multiplexing

Database multiplexing protects important data and enables highly reliable database operation.



- High reliability by using the failover feature integrated with the cluster software

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres links with PRIMECLUSTER, thereby allowing highly reliable systems to be achieved by using failover.

- Seamless migration from Oracle databases

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres provides a compatibility feature with Oracle databases that localizes the correction of existing applications and allows easy migration to Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

- Storage Data Protection using Transparent Data Encryption

Information can be protected from data theft by encrypting data to be stored in the database.



Also, you can choose an external key management system as the storage location for your encryption keys.

- Setting password operation policy with profile

You can enforce password restrictions by assigning password authentication policies called profiles to database users. This makes it possible to improve the security of password management.

- Data masking for improved security

The data masking feature changes the returned data for queries from applications, to prevent exposing actual data. This improves security for handling confidential data such as personal information.

- Audit logs for improved security

Audit logs can be used to counter security threats such as unauthorized access and misuse of privileges for the database.

- Management of access control by confidentiality management  
Confidentiality management feature supports the design/management of access privileges and optimizes access control, thereby enhancing security.
- Enhanced query plan stability  
Allows you to control query planning for SQL statements. This feature is used to prevent performance degradation due to changes in the query plan of SQL statements, such as in core business operations where stabilizing performance is more important than improving the processing performance of SQL statements.
- Increased aggregation performance using the in-memory feature  
The following features help speed up scans even when aggregating many rows.
  - Vertical Clustered Index (VCI)
  - In-memory data
- High-speed data load  
Data from files can be loaded at high speed into Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres tables using the high-speed data load feature.
- High availability by using Connection Manager  
With the Connection Manager features, replication operation can be continued without being aware of the connection destination of the applications.
- Memory usage reduction using Global Meta Cache  
The Global Meta Cache feature loads some of meta cache information in shared memory. This reduces overall system memory usage.
- Memory usage reduction using Local Meta Cache Limit  
Reduce memory consumption by limiting the metacache that is kept in local memory.

## 1.1 Flexible Database Recovery

---

Threats such as data corruption due to disk failure and incorrect operations are unavoidable in systems that use databases. The ability to reliably recover corrupted databases without extensive damage to users when such problems occur is an essential requirement in database systems.

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres provides the following recovery features that flexibly respond to this requirement:

- Media recovery, which recovers up to the most recent point in time
- Point-in-time recovery, which can recover up to a specific point in time
- Backup/recovery that can integrate with various copy technologies

### **Media recovery, which recovers up to the most recent point in time**

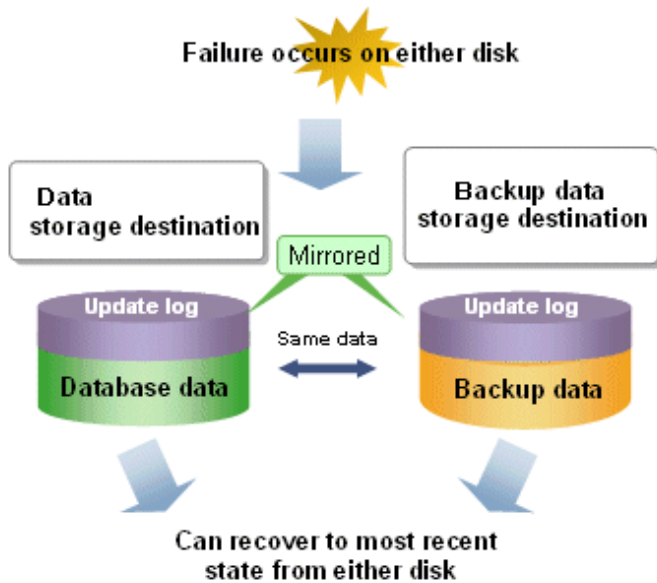
When a disk failure occurs, media recovery can recover data to how it was immediately before the failure.

In order to recover the database, Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres accumulates a history of database update operations, such as data additions and deletions, as an update log.

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres retains a duplicate (mirror image) of the update log after backup execution on the data storage destination and on the backup data storage destination. Therefore, the data on one disk can be used to recover to the most recent state of the database even if a disk failure has occurred on the other.

Media recovery is executed using either a GUI tool provided with Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres (WebAdmin) or server commands.

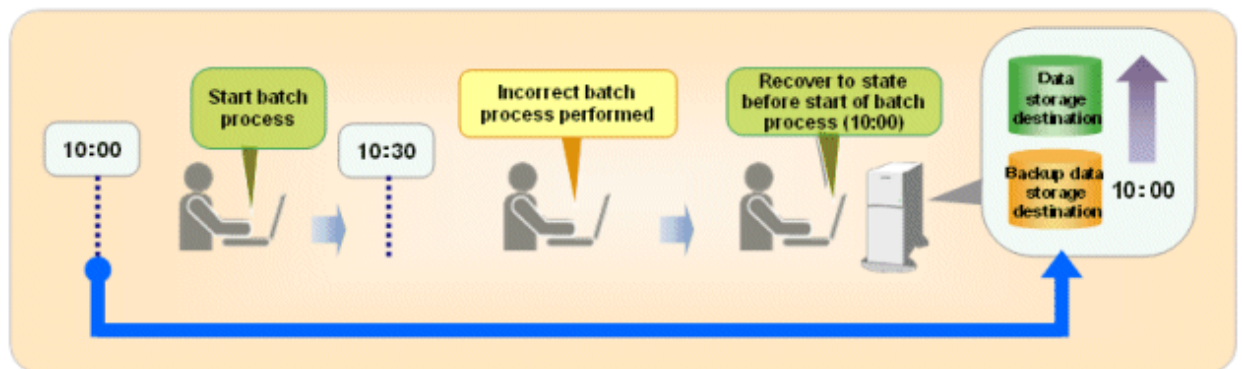
Recovery using WebAdmin requires less time and effort, since WebAdmin automatically determines the scope of the operation.



### Point-in-time recovery, which can recover up to a specific point in time

Point-in-time recovery can be used to recover a database that has been updated by an incorrect operation, for example, by specifying any date and time before the incorrect operation.

Point-in-time recovery is executed using Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres server commands.



### Backup/recovery that can integrate with various copy technologies

It is possible to back up to the backup data storage destination, or to any backup destination using any copy technology implemented by user exits.



For example, by using the high-speed copy feature of the storage device, the processing time for backup of large databases can be greatly reduced.



See

Refer to "Backup/Recovery Using the Copy Command" in the Operation Guide for information on backup/recovery using user exits.

## 1.2 Simple GUI-Based Installation and Operation Management

---

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres provides WebAdmin, which is a GUI tool for a range of tasks, from database installation to operation management. This allows the databases to be used simply and intuitively.

WebAdmin can be used for Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres setup, creating and monitoring a streaming replication cluster, database backups, and for recovery. Depending on the configuration, WebAdmin can be used to manage Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres instances in a single server, or instances spread across multiple servers.

- Setup

To perform setup using WebAdmin, you must create an instance. An instance is a set of server processes that manage a database cluster (database storage area on the data storage destination disk). Instances can be created easily and with only minimal required input, because the tool automatically determines the optimal settings for operation.

- Database backup/recovery

Database backup and recovery can be performed using simple GUI operations.

In particular, Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres can automatically identify and isolate the location of errors. This simplifies the recovery process and enables faster recovery.

In addition, Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres provides the following expanded features in pgAdmin:

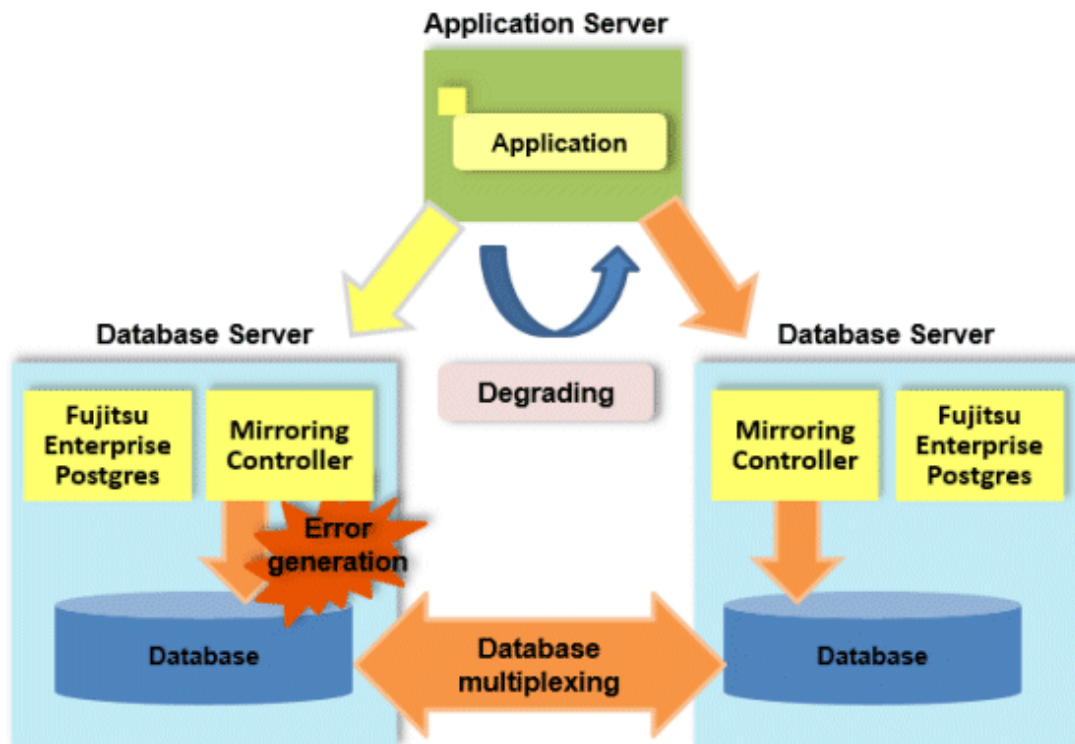
- NCHAR type
- Expanded trigger definition
  - REPLACE feature
  - Function call feature

## 1.3 High Reliability with Database Multiplexing

---

It is vital for systems that use databases to protect data from damage or loss caused by a range of factors such as hardware and software errors. Database multiplexing protects important data and enables highly reliable database operation.





Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres not only mirrors a database using the PostgreSQL streaming replication feature, but also provides simplified switchover and standby disconnection features as well as a feature to detect faults in elements that are essential for the continuity of database process, disk, network, and other database operations.

Even if a switchover is performed, the client automatically distinguishes between the primary and standby servers, so applications can be connected transparently regardless of the physical server.

The Mirroring Controller option enables the primary server (the database server used for the main jobs) to be switched automatically to the standby server if an error occurs in the former.

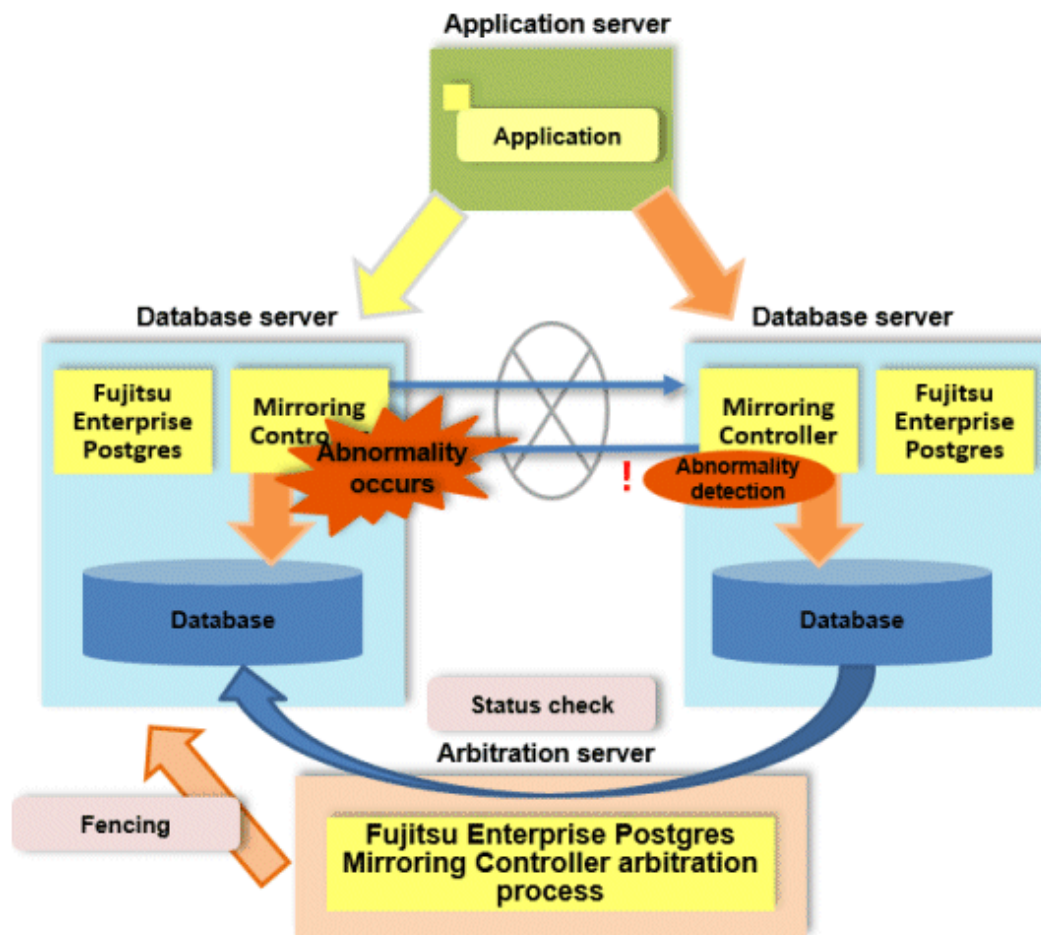
In addition, by using the data on the standby server, reference jobs such as data analysis and form output can be performed in parallel to the jobs on the primary server.

### Operation using the arbitration server

Mirroring Controller may not be able to correctly determine the status of the other server if there is a network issue between database servers or a server is in an unstable state. As a result, both servers will temporarily operate as primary servers, so it may be possible to perform updates from either server.

The Server Assistant is a feature that objectively checks the status of database servers as a third party and isolates (fences) unstable servers in such cases.

In database multiplexing mode, the Server Assistant is made available by adding a new server (arbitration server) on which the Server Assistant is installed. Using an arbitration server can prevent the issue mentioned above (both servers temporarily operating as primary servers) and enables highly reliable operation.



See

Refer to "Database Multiplexing Mode" in the Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing) for information on the database multiplexing.

## L

# 1.4 High Reliability Using Failover Integrated with the Cluster Software

If the system stops, services are interrupted until recovery is complete. In large-scale systems, the interruption takes longer, and may cause significant disruption for many people receiving the services.

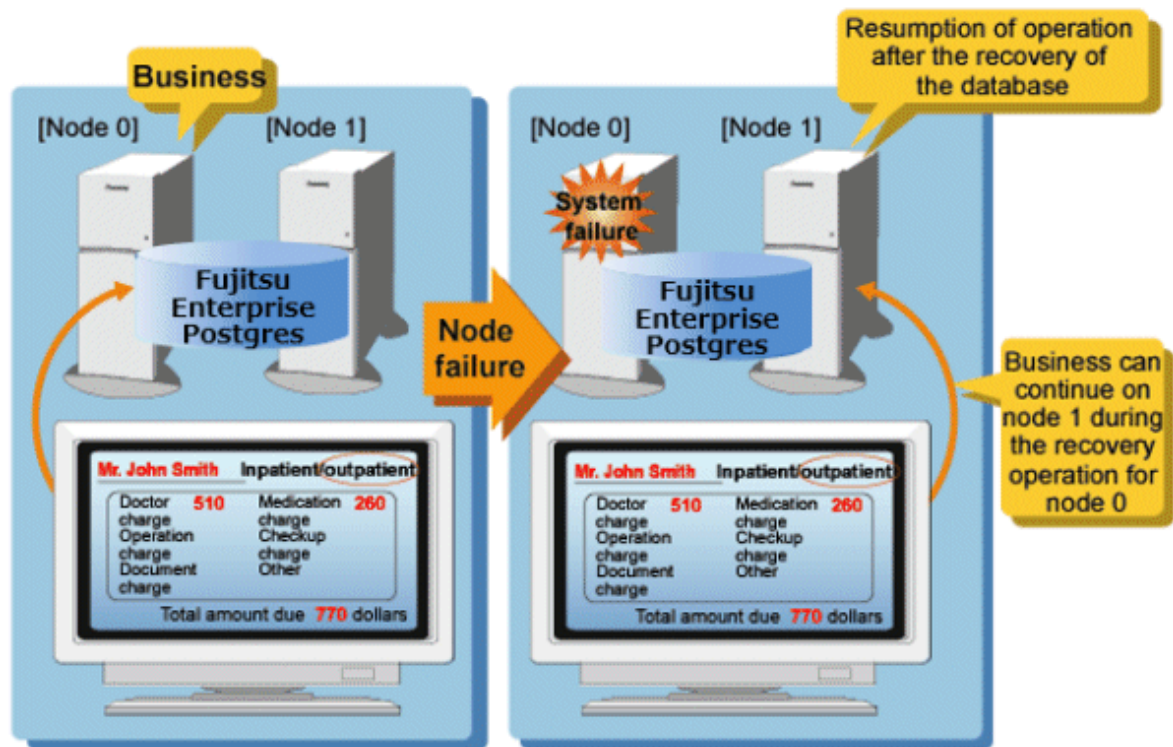
In Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres, the failover feature integrated with the cluster software can minimize the system stoppage time when an issue occurs.

## Medical accounting system

Some hospitals with a large number of patients manage and operate the various data required for accounting in a database. If this accounting system stops and takes several minutes to recover, it is expected that this will have a significant impact.

But if failover is applied to this kind of system and an issue occurs on the operating server, it is quickly switched and the standby server takes over operation, so that services are provided without interruption.

The example below illustrates a medical accounting system using failover.



See

Refer to the Cluster Operation Guide (PRIMECLUSTER) for information on the failover feature integrated with the cluster software.

## 1.5 Seamless Migration from Oracle Databases

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres supports Orafce, to provide compatibility with Oracle databases.

Using the compatibility feature reduces the cost of correcting existing applications and results in easy database migration.



See

Refer to "Compatibility with Oracle Databases" in the Application Development Guide for information on compatible features.

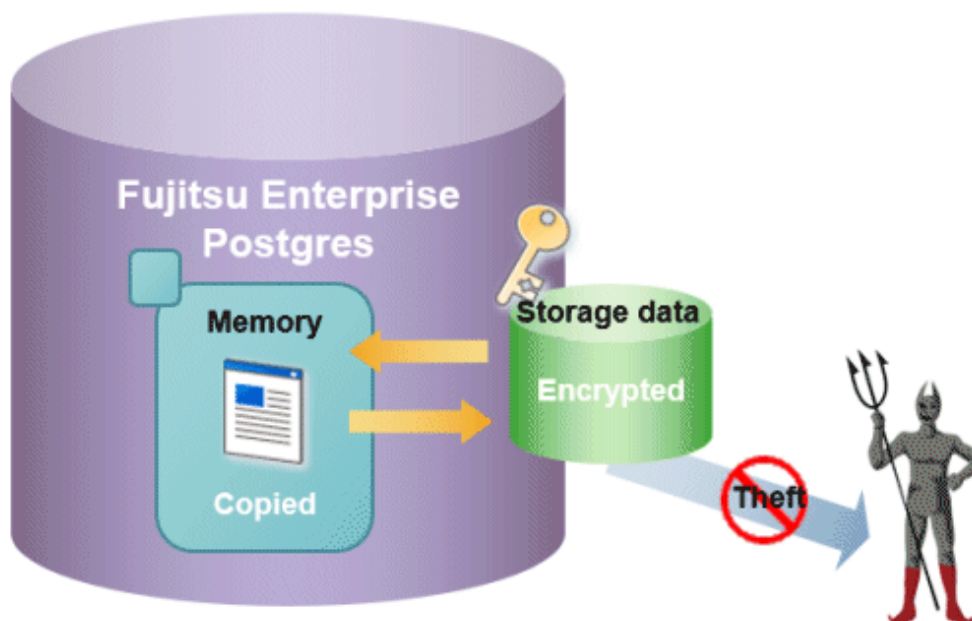
## 1.6 Storage Data Protection Using Transparent Data Encryption

The encryption of data to be stored in a database is essential under the following encryption requirements of PCI DSS (Payment Card Industry Data Security Standard), the data security standard of the credit industry:

- Confidential information (such as credit card numbers) can be encrypted.
- The encryption key and data are managed as separate entities.
- The encryption key is replaced at regular intervals.

To satisfy these requirements, Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres provides a transparent data encryption feature. Note that PostgreSQL uses an encryption feature called pgcrypto, which can also be used in Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres, but requires

applications to be modified. Therefore, we recommend using Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres's transparent data encryption feature.



**L**

The transparent data encryption feature also allows you to choose an external key management system as the storage location for your encryption keys.



See

**L**

Refer to "Protecting Storage Data Using Transparent Data Encryption" or "Using Transparent Data Encryption with Key Management Systems as Keystores" in the Operation Guide for information about transparent data encryption.

**W**

Refer to "Protecting Storage Data Using Transparent Data Encryption" in the Operation Guide for information about transparent data encryption.

If you use the `--save-fullpage` option of the `pg_waldump` command for a WAL file output by an instance that uses transparent data encryption, an error may occur. This option is a function that displays database pages that have been processed through compression or encryption included in WAL in their unprocessed state (expanded or decrypted). However, since the `pg_waldump` command does not have complete access to the database, it cannot obtain the information necessary for decryption. Therefore, if there is WAL that needs to be decrypted, executing a command with this option will result in an error.

## 1.7 Setting Password Operation Policy with Profile

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres can refuse connection to the database server or force a password change if the database user's password status deviates from a predefined policy. Restrictions on password authentication are enabled by assigning database users information that sets policies for password authentication, called profiles.

The following restrictions can be applied to the operation of passwords:

- Set a password life time
- Lock accounts that have failed to log in continuously
- Restrict password reuse
- Set a grace period after the password life time until the database can no longer be operated.
- If the account is locked due to repeated login failures, set the period during which the lock will be automatically unlocked.

This makes it possible to operate passwords in accordance with security policies.



See

Refer to "Policy-based Password Management" in the Operation Guide for details.

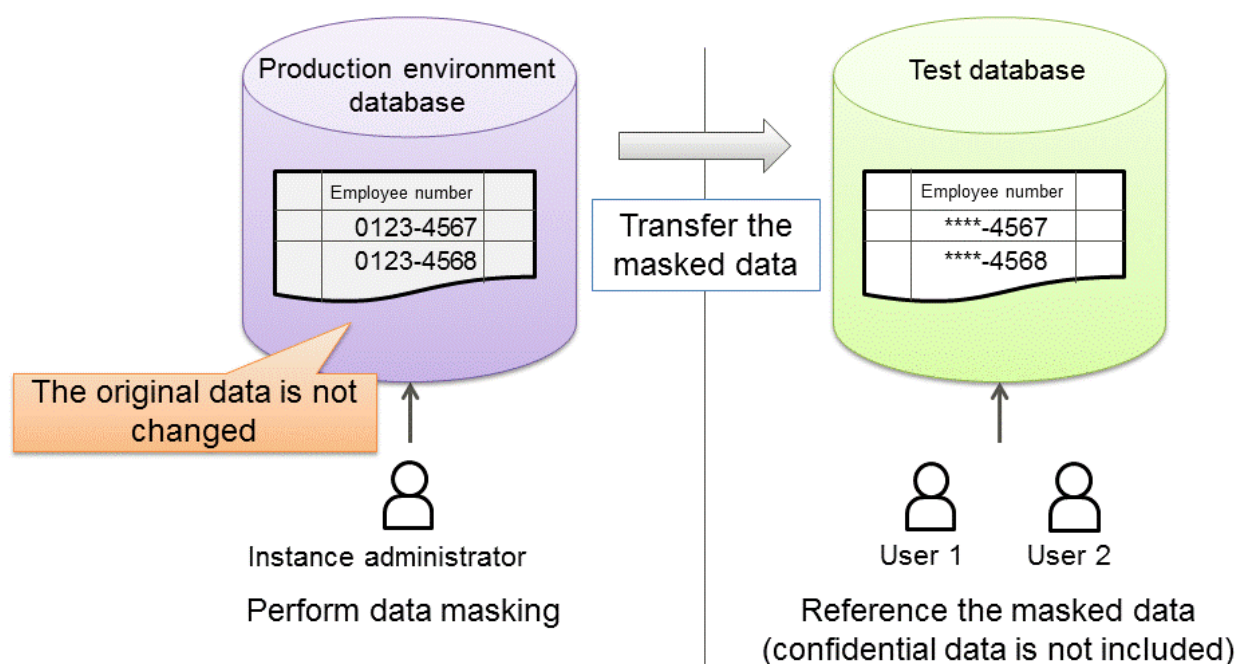
## 1.8 Data Masking for Improved Security

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres provides a data masking feature that protects data to maintain security of data handled in systems.

The data masking feature changes the returned data for queries from applications and makes it available for reference without exposing the actual data.

For example, for a query of employee data, digits except the last four digits of an eight-digit employee number can be changed to "\*" so that it can be used for reference.

Also, the data changed by the data masking feature can be transferred to a test database so that users who perform testing or development can reference the data. As production data should not be used in a test or development environment because of the risk of data leakage, this feature enables data that is similar to actual production data to be safely used in those environments.



See

Refer to "Data Masking" in the Operation Guide for information on data masking.

## 1.9 Security Enhancement Using Audit Logs

Details relating to database access can be retrieved in audit logs. The audit log feature can be used to counter security threats such as unauthorized access to the database and misuse of privileges.

In PostgreSQL, logs output as server logs can be used as audit logs by using the log output feature. There are, however, logs that cannot be analyzed properly, such as SQL runtime logs, which do not output the schema name. Additionally, because the output conditions cannot be specified in detail, log volumes can be large, which may lead to deterioration in performance.



The audit log feature of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres enables retrieval of details relating to database access as an audit log by extending the feature to pgaudit. Additionally, audit logs can be output to a dedicated log file or server log. This enables efficient and accurate log monitoring.

This feature can only be used in Advanced Edition.



See

Refer to "Audit Log Feature" in the Security Operation Guide for details.

## 1.10 Management of Access Control by Confidentiality Management

---

The confidentiality management feature supports the realization of access control according to the confidentiality level of data. We also support the work of confirming that operations are being performed according to access control.

This feature can only be used in Advanced Edition.

### Access control

Access to sensitive data must be restricted in order to comply with the laws and rules governing data protection regulations. However, designing the access control is not easy in databases with diverse data and users performing diverse tasks. This is because for every combination of all database object and all role that can access the data, you must decide whether to allow access and define it in the database.

In our real world, we don't do that. For example, in a business group data with the same confidentiality level, and group several roles accessing to that data. After that, it makes more sense to consider whether access should be granted for combinations of group of data and group of roles. Because once data is added, deciding which group it belongs to naturally determines who can access it. When adding a role, it is enough to think about which role's group (called a confidentiality group) to add it to. The confidentiality management feature supports such a natural design.

Also, data belonging to a high level of confidentiality may need to be protected against unauthorized access to physical media and files, as well as access from users who can log into the database. The confidentiality management feature can force the encryption of tables belonging to high confidentiality levels. Similarly, you can force roles that belong to a confidentiality group to have attributes less than or equal to those set for the confidentiality group. Such table encryption and role management can also be designed naturally with this feature.

### Inspection of operation

In order to comply with the laws and rules that define data protection regulations, it is necessary to ensure that the database is operated safely as designed. If you are using the confidentiality management feature, you do not have to worry about such things. However, if table or role definitions are changed without using this feature, it must be detected timely. The confidentiality management feature does not prohibit or detect such acts. Instead, use audit logs to detect such changes, etc.

However, even if they detect it, they may forget to deal with it. In order to prevent this, it is necessary to periodically check the differences between the confidentiality levels and confidentiality groups and the actual table and role definitions. At that time, you can use the confidentiality management feature provided to obtain the difference.



See

Refer to "Confidentiality Management" in the Security Operation Guide for details.

## 1.11 Enhanced Query Plan Stability

---

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres estimates the cost of query plans based on SQL statements and database statistical information, and selects the least expensive query plan. However, like other databases, Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres does not necessarily select the most suitable query plan. For example, it may suddenly select unsuitable query plan due to changes in the data conditions.

In mission-critical systems, stable performance is more important than improved performance, and changes in query plans case to be avoided. In this situation, `pg_hint_plan` and `pg_dbms_stats` can be used to stabilize the query plan.



See

Refer to "Enhanced query plan stability" in the Operation Guide for information on enhanced query plan stability.



Note

For `pg_hint_plan` and `pg_dbms_stats`, take advantage of features introduced when installing Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres. Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres does not support other similar open-source features.

## 1.12 Increased Aggregation Performance Using the In-memory Feature

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres provides the in-memory feature, which uses columnar index and memory-resident data. This reduces disk I/Os and enhances aggregation performance.

This feature can only be used in Advanced Edition.

### Columnar index

Many aggregation processes may require a large portion of data in a particular column. However, traditional row data structure reads unnecessary columns, resulting in inefficient use of memory and CPU cache, and slower processing. Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres provides a type of columnar index, VCI (Vertical Clustered Index). This addresses the above issues, and enhances aggregation performance.

VCI provides the following benefits:

- Minimizes impact on existing jobs, and can perform aggregation using job data in real time.
- Provided as an index, so no application modification is required.
- Stores data also on the disk, so aggregation jobs can be quickly resumed using a VCI even if a failure occurs (when an instance is restarted).
- If the amount of memory used by VCI exceeds the set value, aggregation can still continue by using VCI data on the disk.

It also provides the features below:

- Disk compression  
Compresses VCI data on the disk, minimizing required disk space. Even if disk access is required, read overhead is low.
- Parallel scan  
Enhances aggregation performance by distributing aggregation processes to multiple CPU cores and then processing them in parallel.

### In-memory data

The following features keep VCI data in memory and minimize disk I/Os on each aggregation process.

- Preload feature  
Ensures stable response times by loading VCI data to memory before an application scans it after the instance is restarted.
- Stable buffer feature  
Reduces disk I/Os by suppressing VCI data eviction from memory by other job data.

### Purposes of this feature

This feature has a data structure that can efficiently use the newly added resources, and aims to enhance the existing aggregation processing in normal operations to be faster than parallel scan. It shares the same purpose of enhancing

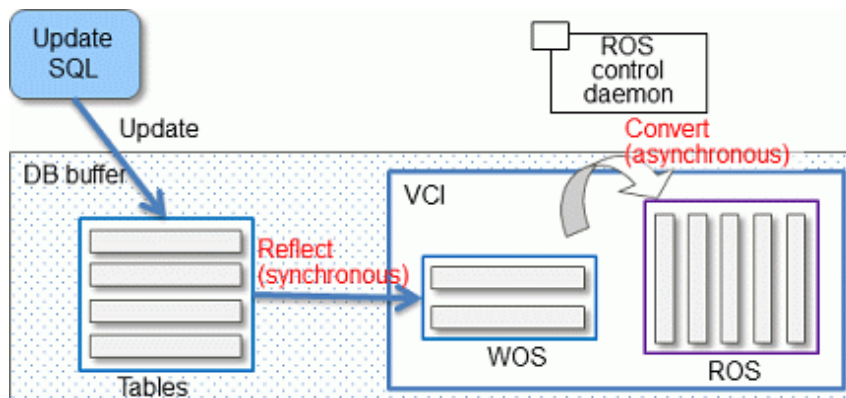
aggregation performance with the parallel scan feature that is provided separately, but differs in that it speeds up nightly batch processes by utilizing available resources.

## VCI architecture

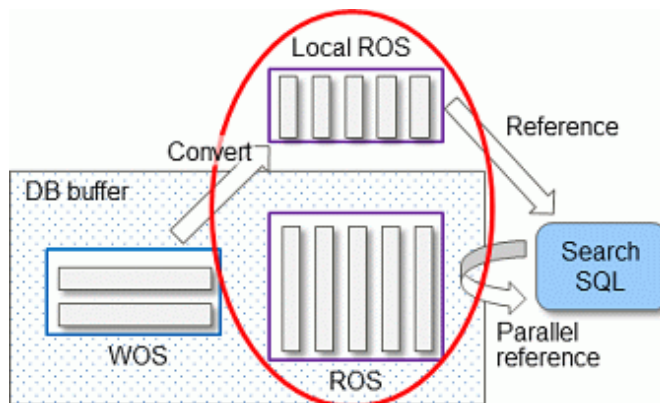
This section briefly explains VCI architecture as it contains basic terminology required, for example, when setting parameters.

Update and aggregation operations to enable real time use of job data are described.

VCI has write buffer row-based WOS (Write Optimized Store) in addition to the columnar data structure ROS (Read Optimized Store). Converting each update into a columnar index has a significant impact on the update process response times. Therefore, data is synchronously reflected to the row-based WOS when updating. After a certain amount of data is stored in WOS, the ROS control daemon asynchronously converts it to ROS. As above, the entire VCI is synchronized with the target table column, minimizing update overhead.



The same scan results can be obtained without a VCI by using WOS in conjunction with ROS. More specifically, WOS is converted to Local ROS in local memory for each aggregation process, and aggregated with ROS.



Refer to "Installing and Operating the In-memory Feature" in the Operation Guide for information on installation and operation of VCI.

Refer to "Scan Using a Vertical Clustered Index (VCI)" in the Application Development Guide for information on scan using a VCI.

## 1.13 High-Speed Data Load

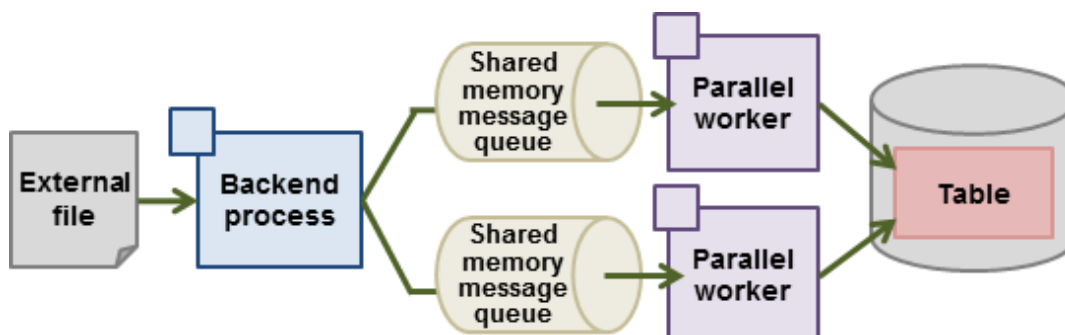
High-speed data load executes COPY FROM commands using multiple parallel workers. Because conversion of data from the external file to the appropriate internal format, table creation, and index creation are performed in parallel, it is possible to load large volumes of data at high speed.



This feature can only be used in Advanced Edition.

## Architecture of high-speed data load

High-speed data load is required for parameter setting and resource estimation, so a brief description of its architecture is provided below.



High-speed data load uses a single backend process collaborating with multiple parallel workers to perform data load in parallel. Data is exchanged between the backend process and parallel workers via shared memory message queues. The backend process distributes the loaded data of external files to multiple parallel workers. Each parallel worker then converts the data loaded from the shared memory message queue into the appropriate internal format, and inserts it into the table. If the table has indexes, their keys are extracted and inserted into the index page.



See

Refer to "High-Speed Data Load" in the Operation Guide for details.

## 1.14 High availability by using Connection Manager

The Connection Manager provides the following features. You can use these features to increase system availability.

This feature can only be used in Advanced Edition.

### Heartbeat monitoring feature

Detects kernel panics between the server running the client and the server running the instance, physical server failures, and inter-server network link downs, and notifies the client or instance. The client is notified as an error event through the SQL connection, and the instance will be notified in the form of a force collection of SQL connections with clients that are out of service.

### Transparent connection support feature

When an application wants to connect to an instance of an attribute (Primary/Standby) configured with replication, it can do so without knowing which server the instance is running on.



Information

The available client drivers for Connection Manager are libpq (C language library), ECPG (embedded SQL in C), ECOBPG (embedded SQL in COBOL), ODBC driver and JDBC driver.



See

Refer to the Connection Manager User's Guide for details.

## 1.15 Memory Usage Reduce with Meta cache Reduction and Limit

---

When executing SQL, you must refer to the definition of the table or index you want to access. These definitions are cached in the local memory of the backend process separately from the shared memory buffer of the database on `shared_buffers` because they are referenced each time SQL is executed. The direct definition is a tuple of system catalogs. The cache for this tuple is called "Catalog Cache". A structure that makes the definition easy to use is called a "Relations Cache". And in Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres, these two are collectively called "Meta Cache".

The meta cache will be kept indefinitely for performance reasons. In a large database, a single backend process accesses a large number of tables and so on, which results in a large meta-cache for the backend process. As a result, the sum of the local memory of the backend process may exceed the realistic memory size.

On the other hand, the feature to reduce the meta cache for the entire instance by sharing the meta cache between backend processes is the Global Meta Cache feature. The current Global Meta Cache feature only shares the catalog cache. Therefore, the metacache in Global Meta Cache now refers to the catalog cache.

What you still cannot share using the current Global Meta Cache feature and need to keep in local memory is the information (Meta cache header) and relation cache to access Global Meta Cache in shared memory. If you do not use the Global Meta Cache feature, keep the catalog and relation caches in local memory. The meta cache held in local memory is called the "Local Meta Cache". The feature to limit the size of a Local Meta Cache by removing it if it has not been accessed for a long time is the Local Meta Cache limit feature.

The Global Meta Cache feature and the Local Meta Cache limit feature can be used together to provide the strictest control over memory consumption. Of course, you can use only one or the other.

However, the Global Meta Cache feature has several percent overhead to access shared memory. The Local Meta Cache limit feature also causes the overhead of reholding the metacache because it may discard the previously held metacache. Therefore, consider using these features when your estimates do not allow for memory consumption.

### 1.15.1 Memory Usage Reduction Using Global Meta Cache

---

The Global Meta Cache feature cache the meta cache in shared memory. The meta cache on shared memory is called the Global Meta Cache (GMC).

Without this feature, the meta cache was cached in per-process memory. Therefore, there was a problem increase in memory usage in environments with large databases and large numbers of connections. The Global Meta Cache feature enables sharing of meta caches on shared memory, thereby reducing overall system memory usage.

This feature can only be used in Advanced Edition.

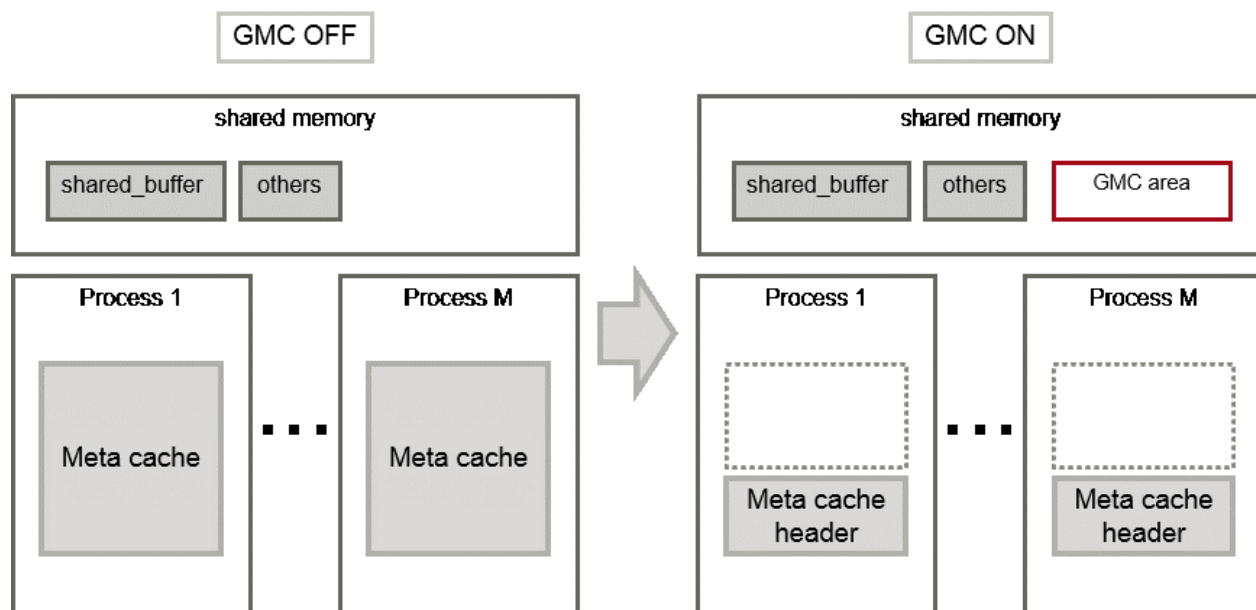
#### Meta cache

Processing a query involves parsing the query, creating the plan, executing the plan, and so on. PostgreSQL process accesses the system catalog to perform these steps. Once accessed, the system catalog tuples are cached in per-process memory. The direct definition is one tuple of system catalogs. Each process performs faster query processing by searching the meta cache instead of searching for the required tuples in the system catalog each time.

The meta cache usage increases in proportion to the number of tables and columns accessed. It is cached on a per-process basis, so the system's overall meta cache usage increases in proportion to the number of connections.

#### Architecture of Global Meta Cache feature

Describes the architecture of the Global Meta Cache feature.



When the GMC feature is on, the per-process meta cache is cached in the GMC area on shared memory. Reference to the GMC area and process-specific work information is cached in the memory of each process. PostgreSQL process searches the meta cache for each process and accesses the GMC based on the reference information. If there is no reference information in the process's memory, it searches the GMC area. If the GMC area also does not have a corresponding meta cache, it accesses the system catalog to create meta cache.

Also, sharing the meta cache does not cause any loss of data consistency. If the system catalog or table definition changes while a transaction is running, the cache deletion or creation does not affect outside of the process running the transaction. After the transaction commits, the GMC area cache is deleted or created. If other transactions are referencing the cache when GMC is tried to be deleted, the deletion is deferred until there are no more references. After a commit, a new transaction sees the new cache instead of the old one.



See

Global Meta Cache feature is disabled by default. Refer to "Global Meta Cache" in the Operation Guide for information how to decide whether introduce it or not and usage.

## 1.15.2 Memory Usage Reduction Using Local Meta Cache Limit

Local Meta Cache Limit feature limits the size of a Local Meta Cache by removing it if it has not been accessed for a long time.

Of the definitions that SQL accesses, the main factors that make the Local Meta Cache bloat are tables and indexes. In addition, table column definitions are also maintained as a catalog cache.

For example, in a system where one long-lived connection is shared by various businesses, one connection (that is, backend process) will access many tables. If there are 3,000 such connections, and each connection accesses a table of 50,000, the total amount of memory consumed by the 3,000 backend processes may be a few terabytes.

In such a case, using this feature may reduce it to about several tens of gigabytes.

This feature can only be used in Advanced Edition.

### Architecture of Local Meta Cache Limit feature

When this feature is enabled, the caching strategy is to keep the cache as long as possible within the specified upper limit. If holding a new cache exceeds the limit, consider locality of reference and delete the cache from the one with the longest unreferenced time.

However, because the cache used by active transactions cannot be deleted, if a transaction uses a large number of caches, the cache may be held above the limit. In this case, delete the cache at the end of the transaction.



See

Local Meta Cache limit feature is disabled by default. Refer to "Local Meta Cache Limit" in the Operation Guide for information how to decide whether introduce it or not and usage.

## Appendix A List of Features

The following table lists the main features provided by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

Category	Feature	Linux		Windows	
		AE	SE	AE	SE
Fujitsu-developed software technology	WebAdmin (Rapid setup, One-click recovery)	Y	Y	Y	Y
Improved reliability and availability	Database multiplexing	Y	N	Y	N
	Failover (integration with PRIMECLUSTER)	Y (*1)	Y (*1)	N	N
	Backup/recovery using user exits	Y	N	Y	N
	Connection Manager	Y	N	Y	N
Application development	Embedded SQL integration Java integration ODBC integration .NET Framework integration	Y	Y	Y	Y
	Features compatible with Oracle databases	Y	Y	Y	Y
Security	Transparent data encryption	Y	Y	Y	Y
	Transparent data encryption using a key management system	Y	Y	N	N
	Data masking	Y	Y	Y	Y
	Audit log	Y	N	Y	N
	Confidentiality management	Y	N	Y	N
	Setting password operation policy with profile	Y	Y	Y	Y
Performance	In-memory feature	Y	N	Y	N
	High-speed data load	Y	N	Y	N
	Global Meta Cache	Y	N	Y	N
	Local Meta Cache Limit	Y	N	Y	N
Performance tuning	Enhanced query plan stability	Y	Y	Y	Y

Y: Provided

N: Not provided

\*1: Supported on RHEL only.



See

For more information on third-party tools that can work with Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres, refer to the "Third-party tools that work with Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres" available at:

<https://www.postgresql.fastware.com/resource-center>

## Appendix B OSS Supported by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

The OSS supported by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres is listed below.

For information about OSS version levels, refer to “License for Open Source Software” in the Software Release Notes.

OSS name	Version and level	Platform		Description	Reference
		Linux	Windows		
PostgreSQL	16.2	Y	Y	Database management system	PostgreSQL Documentation
orafce	3.25.1	Y	Y	Oracle-compatible SQL features	"Compatibility with Oracle Databases" in the Application Development Guide
Pgpool-II	4.5.0	Y	N	Failover, connection pooling, load balancing, etc.	"Pgpool-II" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server
oracle_fdw	2.6.0	Y	Y	Connection to the Oracle database server	"oracle_fdw" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server
pg_statsinfo	16.0	Y	N	Collection and accumulation of statistics	"pg_statsinfo" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server
pg_hint_plan	16.1.6.0	Y	Y	Tuning (statistics management, query tuning)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- "pg_hint_plan" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server</li> <li>- "Enhanced Query Plan Stability" in the Operation Guide</li> </ul>
pg_dbms_stats	14.0	Y	Y		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- "pg_dbms_stats" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server</li> <li>- "Enhanced Query Plan Stability" in the Operation Guide</li> </ul>
pg_repack	1.5.0	Y	N	Table reorganization	"pg_repack" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server
pg_rman	1.3.16	Y	N	Backup and restore management	"pg_rman" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server
pgBackRest	2.50	Y	N		"pgBackRest" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server
pgAdmin4	8.6	N	Y	Operation and development GUI	Operation Guide
pgBadger	12.4	Y	N	Log analysis	"pgBadger" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server
pg_bigm	1.2	Y	N	Full-text search (multibyte)	"pg_bigm" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server

OSS name	Version and level	Platform		Description	Reference
		Linux	Windows		
ldap2pg	6.0	Y	N	Managing user	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- "LDAP Authentication File Settings" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server</li> <li>- "ldap2pg" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Client</li> </ul>
PostgreSQL JDBC driver	42.7.2	Y	Y	JDBC driver	"JDBC Driver" in the Application Development Guide
psqlODBC	16.00.0000	Y	Y	ODBC driver	"ODBC Driver" in the Application Development Guide
Npgsql	8.0.2	Y (*1)	Y	.NET data provider	".NET Data Provider" in the Application Development Guide
PostGIS	3.4.2	L (*2)	N	Geographic information system extension	PostGIS Build Instructions (*3)

Y: Supported

L: Limited support

N: Not supported

\*1: In order for Npgsql to operate, an .NET provided by Microsoft is required, but check the support version of the provider for the OS version on which .NET can operate.

\*2: OSS is not included in the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres program and does not provide a fix. Therefore, you should refer to the PostGIS Build Instructions and download the required OSS.

The PostGIS Build Instructions will be updated once a version with new fixes is released by the community and verified by Fujitsu. A revision of the PostGIS Build Instructions will be notified when the fix for server feature is provided. Build according to the updated PostGIS Build Instructions to take advantage of the new modified version.

\*3: Refer to the PostGIS Build Instructions to complete the build and setup. The PostGIS Build Instructions can be obtained from the following site:

<https://www.postgresql.fastware.com/knowledge-base/how-to/installing-postgis>

## Appendix C Features that can be Used on Servers Other than the Database Server

This chapter explains the configuration and operating environment of features to be installed and used on servers other than the database server when used in conjunction with the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres database server.

In this chapter, Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres programs are referred to as server programs.

Below are features to be installed and used on servers other than the database server:

- WebAdmin
- Server Assistant
- Pgpool-II (failover, connection pooling, and load balancing)

### C.1 WebAdmin

If there is only one database server, WebAdmin is normally installed on the same server as the database (the WebAdmin program can be installed at the same time as the server program).

If there are multiple database servers, database server instances can be managed collectively if a dedicated WebAdmin server is used. In this case, the WebAdmin program is installed on the WebAdmin server, and the server program and WebAdmin program are installed on the database server.



See

- Refer to "1.2 Simple GUI-Based Installation and Operation Management" for information on WebAdmin.
- Refer to "Determining the Preferred WebAdmin Configuration" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server for information on the server configuration when using WebAdmin.
- Refer to "Required Operating System" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server for information on the operating environment of WebAdmin.

### C.2 Server Assistant

To use the Server Assistant, the Server Assistant program is installed on a dedicated server (arbitration server).



See

- Refer to "Overview of Database Multiplexing Mode" in the Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing) for information on the Server Assistant and the server configuration.
- Refer to "Required Operating System" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server Assistant for information on the operating environment of the Server Assistant.

### C.3 Failover, Connection Pooling, and Load Balancing Features of Pgpool-II

Pgpool-II is software that is placed between the database server and database client to relay the connection.

Pgpool-II provides the failover, connection pooling, and load balancing features for use during streaming replication.

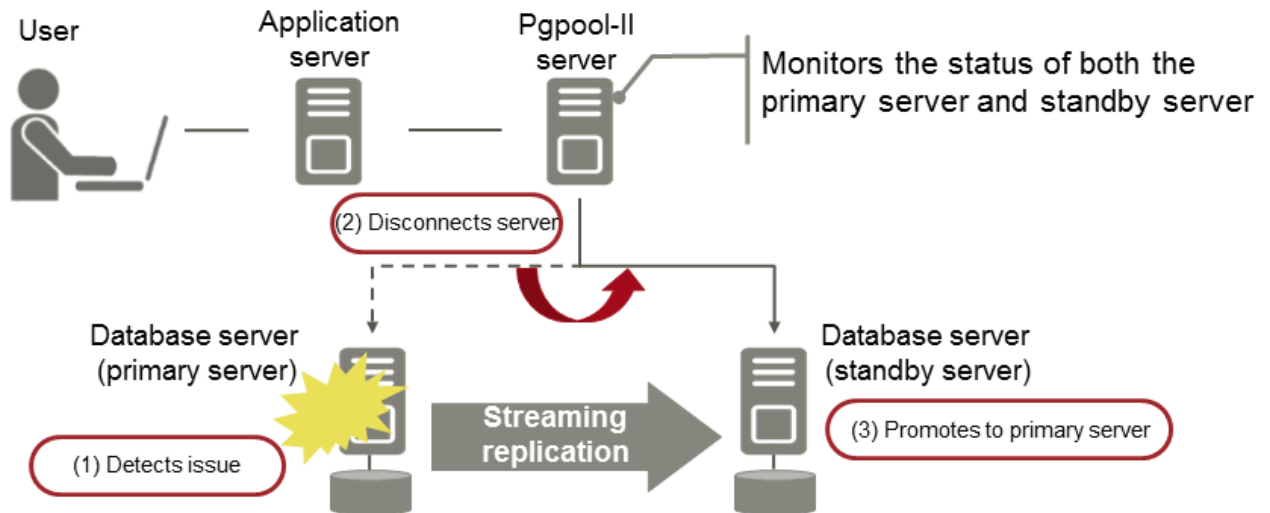


## Failover

In PostgreSQL, a database can be made redundant (building a high availability system) using synchronous streaming replication.

If the database server of either the primary server or standby server fails or is no longer accessible when using synchronous streaming replication, jobs will stop.

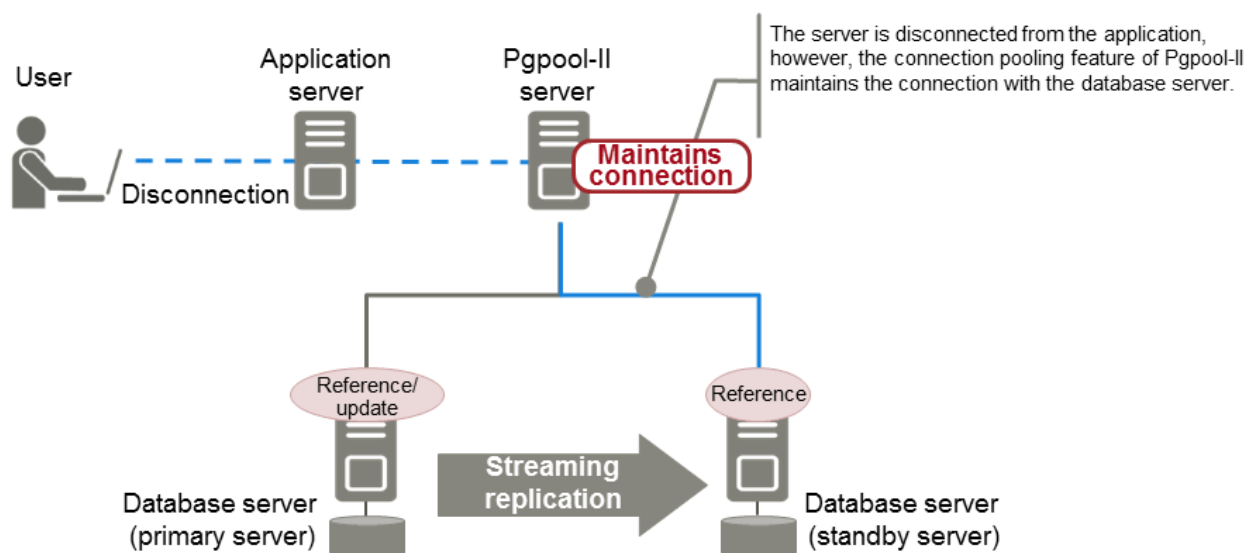
Failover monitors the status of each database and automatically disconnects the server when an error occurs. As a result, jobs can continue uninterrupted on the remaining server.



## Connection pooling

This feature maintains (pools) the connection established with the database server, and reuses that connection each time a new connection with the same properties (user name, database, and protocol version) arrives.

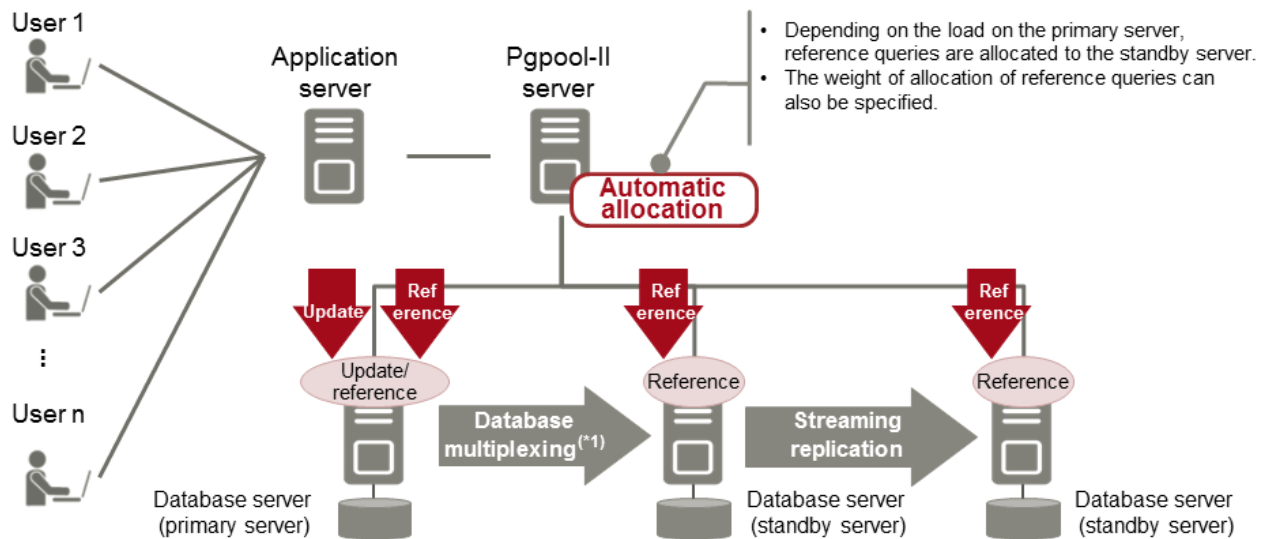
Connection pooling reduces the connection overhead for the database server, improving throughput of the whole system.



## Load balancing

This feature distributes reference queries to multiple database servers, improving throughput of the whole system.

By combining load balancing with the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres database multiplexing feature or the PostgreSQL streaming replication feature, load on the database server is reduced.



\*1: The arbitration server used during database multiplexing has been omitted from this document.

## See

- Refer to "System configuration when using Pgpool-II" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server for information on the server configuration when using Pgpool-II.
- Refer to "Required Operating System" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server for information on the operating environment of Pgpool-II.

# Index

---

[C]	
Columnar index.....	11
compatibility with Oracle databases.....	7
Connection Manager.....	13
[D]	
Database Multiplexing.....	4
Data Masking for Improved Security.....	9
[F]	
Flexible Database Recovery.....	2
[G]	
Global Meta Cache.....	14
[H]	
High-Speed Data Load.....	12
[I]	
In-memory data.....	11
[M]	
Media recovery.....	2
[O]	
Oracle Database.....	7
[P]	
Point-in-time recovery.....	3
[S]	
Security Enhancement Using Audit Logs.....	9
[T]	
Transparent Data Encryption.....	7

# Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 16

## Release Notes

Linux

J2UL-2946-01ENZ0(00)  
July 2024

# Preface

---

## Purpose of this document

This document provides release information for Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

## Structure of this document

This document is structured as follows:

### [Chapter 1 New Features and Improvements](#)

Explains the new features and improvements in this version.

### [Chapter 2 Compatibility Information](#)

Provides information regarding compatibility.

### [Chapter 3 Program Updates](#)

Explains updates incorporated in this version.

## Export restrictions

Exportation/release of this document may require necessary procedures in accordance with the regulations of your resident country and/or US export control laws.

## Issue date and version

Edition 1.0: July 2024
------------------------

## Copyright

Copyright 2015-2024 Fujitsu Limited

# Contents

Chapter 1 New Features and Improvements.....	1
1.1 Features Added in 16.....	1
1.1.1 OSS.....	1
1.1.1.1 PostgreSQL Rebase.....	1
1.1.1.2 OSS Updates Provided.....	1
1.1.2 Security.....	1
1.1.2.1 User Management Using an LDAP Server.....	1
1.1.2.2 Scalable Audit Log Feature.....	2
1.1.3 Application Development.....	2
1.1.3.1 Additional Operating System Support for .NET Data Provider.....	2
1.1.4 Performance.....	2
1.1.4.1 Fixed Statistics.....	2
Chapter 2 Compatibility Information.....	3
2.1 Installation/Setup Incompatibility.....	3
2.1.1 Modifying the Installation of pgBackRest.....	4
2.1.2 Removing Operating System Support for Client Feature.....	4
2.1.3 Removing Operating System Support for Server Feature.....	4
2.1.4 How max_wal_senders is calculated.....	5
2.1.5 How max_worker_processes is calculated.....	5
2.1.6 Removing Operating System Support for Client Feature.....	5
2.1.7 Removing Operating System Support for Client Feature.....	5
2.1.8 Removing Operating System Support for Server Feature.....	5
2.1.9 Changing kernel parameter settings when an instance is created with WebAdmin.....	6
2.1.10 Removing Operating System Support for Client Feature.....	7
2.1.11 Removing Operating System Support for Server Feature.....	7
2.1.12 Changing the Way OSS is Set Up.....	7
2.1.13 Modifying Pgpool-II Installation Handling.....	7
2.1.14 Changing Core and Log File Paths when Instance is Created with WebAdmin.....	8
2.1.15 Renaming WebAdmin Services.....	8
2.1.16 Changing the Features Targeted for Installation in a 64-bit Environment.....	9
2.1.17 Changing the Access Permissions of the Windows Client Installation Folder.....	9
2.1.18 Changing the WebAdmin Installation Method.....	9
2.2 Application Migration Incompatibility.....	9
2.2.1 Changing the OID of the Data Type (NCHAR type) that Handles National Characters.....	11
2.2.2 Changed the Specification Method of the Application Connection Switch Feature.....	11
2.2.3 Changes in ecpg/ecobpg Handling of Zero-Length Unicode Identifiers.....	11
2.2.4 Changing the display result when data masking is applied to NaN, infinity, -infinity.....	11
2.2.5 Changing the Valid Range of Identifiers Defined by the DECLARE STATEMENT statement.....	12
2.2.6 Changing Precompile Results.....	12
2.2.7 Changing the Trigger Replacement Process.....	12
2.2.8 Adding a TAP Test Framework.....	13
2.2.9 Change the "elif" Statement Behavior in ecobpg.....	13
2.2.10 Changed to Error when Running an Operator or Function that Returns non Data Types for Masking Type.....	13
2.2.11 Changing the Method of Specifying the Application Connection Switch Feature.....	14
2.2.12 PostgreSQL Compatibility of Embedded SQL Applications in C and COBOL.....	15
2.2.13 Changing Vertical Clustered Index (VCI).....	15
2.2.14 Changing how to Use the Features Compatible with Oracle Databases.....	15
2.3 Operation Migration Incompatibility.....	16
2.3.1 Deprecation of Some Encryption Algorithms in pgcrypto.....	17
2.3.2 Deprecation of Certificates Signed Using SHA1.....	18
2.3.3 Abolition of Message Numbers.....	18
2.3.4 Adding the key_name Column to the View pgx_tde_master_key.....	18
2.3.5 Changing the Output of the Status Mode of the cm_ctl Command.....	19
2.3.6 Rename column "master_pid" in pgx_loader_state to "leader_pid".....	20

2.3.7 Adding a Message to Output when the Database Server watchdog detects that the Connection Manager is down.....	20
2.3.8 Change the Error Information when the Connection Manager re-executes SQL on the Failed Connection.....	20
2.3.9 Changing the Value of the Category Column in the pg_settings view.....	21
2.3.10 Changing pgx_stat_lwlock of the Statistics View.....	22
2.3.11 Changing the Behavior of pgx_rcvall.....	23
2.3.12 Mirroring Controller no Longer Retries to Monitor Database Processes when they are Detected as Down.....	23
2.3.13 Changing the Name and Parameter Name of the Mirroring Controller Post-Promote Command.....	23
2.3.14 Changing Mirroring Controller User Command Input Values.....	24
2.3.15 Changing the Maximum Number of Connections per Server.....	24
2.3.16 Changing the Encryption Settings Using the ALTER TABLESPACE Statement.....	24
2.3.17 Changing the Default Configuration of the Cluster System Using Database Multiplexing.....	24
2.3.18 Changing the Default Operation when mc_ctl Command Options are Omitted.....	25
2.3.19 Changing the Connection Settings when Mirroring Controller Connects to an Instance.....	25
2.3.20 Changing the Status Display of the Mirroring Controller Server.....	26
2.3.21 Changing the Operation when the synchronous_standby_names Parameter is Changed during Database Multiplexing Operation.....	26
2.3.22 Changing Masking Policy Definition for Unsupported Data Types.....	27
2.4 JDBC Driver Incompatibility.....	27
2.4.1 Changing the targetServerType Value.....	27
2.4.2 Changing the Statement Cache Limit Setting Method.....	28
2.5 ODBC Driver Incompatibility.....	28
2.5.1 Cannot specify prefer-read for target_session_attrs.....	28
2.6 .NET Data Provider Incompatibility.....	28
2.6.1 Changing the Specification Method and Specified Values for the Application Connection Switch Feature.....	29
2.6.2 Changing the Behavior of the Application Connection Switch Feature.....	30
2.6.3 Behavior Change when Multiple Host Information is Specified in the Connection String.....	30
2.6.4 Changing the TargetServerType Value.....	31
2.6.5 Changing the Server Explorer View in Visual Studio Integration with .NET Data Provider.....	31
2.7 C Library (libpq) Migration Incompatibility.....	31
2.7.1 Changing when "prefer-read" is Specified for the target_session_attrs Parameter.....	32
2.8 oracle_fdw Incompatibility.....	32
2.8.1 Changing the Oracle Client Version.....	32
2.9 pgaudit Incompatibility.....	32
2.9.1 Repairing Unwanted Output in the Audit Log.....	33
2.9.2 Changing to Output Extra NEW and OLD Values in the Audit Log when the Trigger Function Executes.....	33
2.10 pg_dbms_stats Incompatibility.....	34
2.10.1 Change in Execution Plan due to Fixed Height of Btree index.....	34
2.10.2 Incompatibility of Import Features with Fixed Height of Btree index.....	35
2.11 WebAdmin Incompatibility.....	35
2.11.1 Cannot specify prefer-read for target_session_attrs.....	35
2.12 Connection Manager Incompatibility.....	35
2.12.1 Behavior change when "read-write" is specified for the target_session_attrs parameter.....	36
2.13 Confidentiality Management Incompatibility.....	36
2.13.1 Changes due to Changes in the pg_dump Specification.....	36
2.13.2 Changing Permission Settings by Changing the CREATEROLE Permission.....	37
2.13.3 Change due to Restriction of CREATEROLE Privilege.....	37
Chapter 3 Program Updates.....	39
Index.....	40

# Chapter 1 New Features and Improvements

This chapter explains Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres new features and improvements added in this version.

Table 1.1 New features and improvements

Version and level	Classification	Feature	Provided in AE	Provided in SE
16	OSS	PostgreSQL Rebase	Y	Y
		OSS Updates Provided	Y	Y
	Security	User Management Using an LDAP Server	Y	Y
		Scalable Audit Log Feature	Y	N
	Application Development	Additional Operating System Support for .NET Data Provider	Y	Y
	Performance	Fixed Statistics	Y	Y

## 1.1 Features Added in 16

This section explains new features and improvements in Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 16.

### 1.1.1 OSS

This section explains the new feature related to OSS:

- PostgreSQL Rebase
- OSS Updates Provided

#### 1.1.1.1 PostgreSQL Rebase

The PostgreSQL version that Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres is based on is 16.2.

#### 1.1.1.2 OSS Updates Provided

The OSS provided by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres has been updated.



See

Refer to "OSS Supported by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres" in the General Description for details.

### 1.1.2 Security

This section explains the new features and improvements related to security:

- User Management Using an LDAP Server
- Scalable Audit Log Feature

#### 1.1.2.1 User Management Using an LDAP Server

Using ldap2pg allows LDAP and Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres user synchronization without requiring the server administrator to be aware of the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres user registration status.





See

.....  
Refer to "ldap2pg" in the Installation Guide for Client for details.  
.....

### 1.1.2.2 Scalable Audit Log Feature

By using the scalable audit log feature, you can now capture audit logs without performance degradation, even for systems with high application multiplicity and large amounts of audit logs.



See

.....  
Refer to "Audit Log Feature" in the Security Operation Guide for details.  
.....

## 1.1.3 Application Development

---

This section describes new features related to application development.

- Additional Operating System Support for .NET Data Provider

### 1.1.3.1 Additional Operating System Support for .NET Data Provider

The following additional operating system is supported:

- RHEL8.2
- RHEL9.2
- SLES 15 SP3



See

.....  
Refer to "Related Software" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Client for details  
.....

## 1.1.4 Performance

---

This section describes new features related to Performance.

- Fixed Statistics

### 1.1.4.1 Fixed Statistics

The height of a Btree index can now also be fixed for statistics.

This allows all statistics used in SQL execution plans to be fixed.



See

.....  
Refer to "Fixing the Height of a Btree Index" in the Operation Guide.  
.....

## Chapter 2 Compatibility Information

This chapter explains incompatible items and actions required when migrating from an earlier version to Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 16. Check compatibility before migrating and take the appropriate action.

### 2.1 Installation/Setup Incompatibility

Item	Pre-migration version											
	9.5	9.6	10	11	12	13	12 SP1/13 SP1	14	14 SP1	15	15 SP1	15 SP2
Modifying the Installation of pgBackRest	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	Y	Y
Removing Operating System Support for Client Feature	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Removing Operating System Support for Server Feature	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
How max_wal_senders is calculated	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N
How max_worker_processes is calculated	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N
Removing Operating System Support for Client Feature	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N
Removing Operating System Support for Client Feature	N	N	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Removing Operating System Support for Server Feature	N	N	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Changing kernel parameter settings when an instance is created with WebAdmin	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Removing Operating System Support for Client Feature	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Removing Operating System Support for Server Feature	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Changing the way OSS is set up	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Modifying Pgpool-II Installation Handling	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Changing Core and Log File Paths when Instance is Created with WebAdmin	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Renaming WebAdmin Services	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Changing the features targeted for installation in a 64-bit environment	Y	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N

Item	Pre-migration version											
	9.5	9.6	10	11	12	13	12 SP1/13 SP1	14	14 SP1	15	15 SP1	15 SP2
Changing the access permissions of the Windows client installation folder	Y	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Changing the WebAdmin installation method	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N

Y: Incompatibility exists

N: Incompatibility does not exist

## 2.1.1 Modifying the Installation of pgBackRest

### Incompatibility

In Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 16 or later, pgBackRest is not automatically installed during server and client installation.

### Action method

If you want to use pgBackRest, install pgBackRest separately from the server or client installation.

If you want to use pgBackRest on the same server as the database server, refer to "Setting Up and Removing OSS" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server.

If you want to use pgBackRest on a different server than the database server, refer to "Setting Up and Removing OSS" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Client.

## 2.1.2 Removing Operating System Support for Client Feature

### Incompatibility

In Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 16 or later, the following operating systems have been removed.

- RHEL7
- SLES 12

### Action method

None.

## 2.1.3 Removing Operating System Support for Server Feature

### Incompatibility

In Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 16 or later, the following operating systems have been removed.

- RHEL7
- SLES 12

### Action method

None.

## 2.1.4 How max\_wal\_senders is calculated

---

### Incompatibility

In Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 15 SP1 or later, Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres uses the following values from the value set for the max\_wal\_senders parameter:

Policy-based password management in a streaming replication environment : Number of direct downstream hot standby servers

### Action method

If necessary add a value for the max\_wal\_senders parameter.

## 2.1.5 How max\_worker\_processes is calculated

---

### Incompatibility

In Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 15 SP1 or later, Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres uses the following values from the value set for the max\_worker\_processes parameter:

Default value to use : 1

Policy-based password management in a streaming replication environment with a hot standby server : 1

### Action method

If necessary add a value for the max\_worker\_processes parameter.

## 2.1.6 Removing Operating System Support for Client Feature

---

### Incompatibility

In FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 13 SP1 or later, the following operating systems have been removed.

- Windows Server(R) 2012
- Windows Server(R) 2012 R2

### Action method

None.

## 2.1.7 Removing Operating System Support for Client Feature

---

### Incompatibility

In FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 13 or later, the following operating systems have been removed.

- SLES 12 SP4 or earlier

### Action method

None.

## 2.1.8 Removing Operating System Support for Server Feature

---

### Incompatibility

In FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 13 or later, the following operating systems have been removed.

- SLES 12 SP4 or earlier

## Action method

None.

## 2.1.9 Changing kernel parameter settings when an instance is created with WebAdmin

### Incompatibility

For FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 13 and later, changes kernel parameter settings for WebAdmin instance creation.

FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 12 or earlier

Kernel Parameters	Value	Calculated Value
SHMMAX	If <i>currentValue</i> < <i>calculatedValue</i> , configure the calculated value	$((1800 + 270 * \text{max\_locks\_per\_transaction}) * \text{max\_connections} + (1800 + 270 * \text{max\_locks\_per\_transaction}) * \text{autovacuum\_max\_workers} + (770 + 270 * \text{max\_locks\_per\_transaction}) * \text{max\_prepared\_transactions} + (\text{shared\_buffer}) + (16 * 1024 * 1024) + (770 * 1024)) * 1.05$
SHMALL	Specify <i>currentValue</i> + <i>calculatedValue</i>	$(\text{SHMMAX} / \text{PAGESIZE}) + 1$  PAGESIZE = 4K
SEMMNI	Specify <i>currentValue</i> + <i>calculatedValue</i>	$\text{ceil}((\text{max\_connections} + \text{autovacuum\_max\_workers} + 4) / 16)$
SEMMNS	Specify <i>currentValue</i> + <i>calculatedValue</i>	$\text{ceil}((\text{max\_connections} + \text{autovacuum\_max\_workers} + 4) / 16) * 17$

FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 13 or later

Kernel Parameters	Value	Calculated Value
SHMMAX	Do not change value	-
SHMALL	Do not change value	-
SEMMNI	Specify <i>currentValue</i> + <i>calculatedValue</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- For instances of FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 9.5 to 11:  <math>\text{ceil}((\text{max\_connections} + \text{autovacuum\_max\_workers} + \text{max\_worker\_processes} + 5) / 16)</math></li><li>- For Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 12 and later instances:  <math>\text{ceil}((\text{max\_connections} + \text{autovacuum\_max\_workers} + \text{max\_wal\_senders} + \text{max\_worker\_processes} + 5) / 16)</math></li></ul>
SEMMNS	Specify <i>currentValue</i> + <i>calculatedValue</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- For instances of FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 9.5 to 11:  <math>\text{ceil}((\text{max\_connections} + \text{autovacuum\_max\_workers} + \text{max\_worker\_processes} + 5) / 16) * 17</math></li><li>- For Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 12 and later instances:</li></ul>

Kernel Parameters	Value	Calculated Value
		<code>ceil((max_connections + autovacuum_max_workers + max_wal_senders + max_worker_processes + 5) / 16) * 17</code>

#### Action method

None.

## 2.1.10 Removing Operating System Support for Client Feature

---

#### Incompatibility

In FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 12 or later, the following operating systems have been removed.

- Windows(R) 7
- Windows Server(R) 2008
- RHEL6

Also, the 32 bit Linux client can no longer be installed because RHEL 6 has been removed from the operating system.

#### Action method

None.

## 2.1.11 Removing Operating System Support for Server Feature

---

#### Incompatibility

In FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 12 or later, the following operating systems have been removed.

- RHEL6

#### Action method

None.

## 2.1.12 Changing the Way OSS is Set Up

---

#### Incompatibility

FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 12 or later do not place OSS extension modules in the executable directory. The OSS extension modules must be placed in the executable directory when you set up OSS.

Refer to "Setting Up and Removing OSS" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server for details.

#### Action method

None.

## 2.1.13 Modifying Pgpool-II Installation Handling

---

#### Incompatibility

For FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 12 or later, Pgpool-II is not automatically installed when you install the server. Therefore, if you want to take advantage of Pgpool-II, install it separately from the server installation.

The extension modules required for the database server are shipped with the server program. You should set up Pgpool-II on the database server side, even if Pgpool-II is to be used on a different server than the database server.

Refer to "Setting Up and Removing OSS" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server for details.

#### Action method

None.

## 2.1.14 Changing Core and Log File Paths when Instance is Created with WebAdmin

---

#### Incompatibility

In FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 12 or later, change the core and log file paths when creating an instance in WebAdmin.

FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 11 or earlier

Log File Path: `/var/tmp/fsep_version/instanceAdminUser_instanceNamePortNumber/log`

Core File Path: `/var/tmp/fsep_version/instanceAdminUser_instanceNamePortNumber/core`

*version*: product version\_edition\_architecture

[Example]

Log File Path: `/var/tmp/fsep_110_AE_64/naomi_myinst27599/log`

Core File Path: `/var/tmp/fsep_110_AE_64/naomi_myinst27599/core`

FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 12

Log File Path: `/var/tmp/fsep_version/instanceAdminUser_instanceNamePortNumber/log`

Core File Path: `/var/tmp/fsep_version/instanceAdminUser_instanceNamePortNumber/core`

*version*: product version\_WA\_architecture

[Example]

Log File Path: `/var/tmp/fsep_120_WA_64/naomi_myinst27599/core`

Core File Path: `/var/tmp/fsep_120_WA_64/naomi_myinst27599/log`

#### Action method

None.

## 2.1.15 Renaming WebAdmin Services

---

#### Incompatibility

In FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 12 or later, change the service name registered when you set up WebAdmin.

FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 11 or earlier

`fsep_xSPz_edition_64_WebAdmin_Port1`

`fsep_xSPz_edition_64_WebAdmin_Port2`

FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 12 or later

`fsep_xSPz_WA_64_WebAdmin_Port1`

`fsep_xSPz_WA_64_WebAdmin_Port2`

#### Action method

None.

## 2.1.16 Changing the Features Targeted for Installation in a 64-bit Environment

---

### Incompatibility

32 bit Linux client can no longer be installed on RHEL7 in FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 10 or later.

Note: 32 bit Linux client can install on RHEL6 in FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 11 or earlier.

### Action method

None.

## 2.1.17 Changing the Access Permissions of the Windows Client Installation Folder

---

### Incompatibility

When changed for install folder the Windows client from default, the access permissions of the installed files and folder changes to read and execute.

The above changes apply to non-administrators.

This incompatibility occurs with all supported Windows client operating systems. Refer to "Required Operating System" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Client for information on the operating environment.

### Action method

This change was made simply to enhance security, therefore, no action is normally required.

However, if existing access permissions are required, this change can be reverted by running `installDir\setup\revert_cacls.bat` as an administrator after installation.

## 2.1.18 Changing the WebAdmin Installation Method

---

### Incompatibility

In FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 9.6 or later, WebAdmin is not installed automatically during server installation. Therefore, install WebAdmin separately.

### Action method

None.

## 2.2 Application Migration Incompatibility

---

Item	Pre-migration version											
	9.5	9.6	10	11	12	13	12 SP1/13 SP1	14	14 SP1	15	15 SP1	15 SP2
Changing the OID of the Data Type (NCHAR type) that Handles National Characters	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N



Item	Pre-migration version											
	9.5	9.6	10	11	12	13	12 SP1/13 SP1	14	14 SP1	15	15 SP1	15 SP2
Changed the Specification Method of the Application Connection Switch Feature	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N
Changes in ecpg/ecobpg Handling of Zero-Length Unicode Identifiers	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N
Changing the display result when data masking is applied to NaN, infinity, -infinity	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N	N	N
Changing the Valid Range of Identifiers Defined by the DECLARE STATEMENT statement	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N	N	N
Changing Precompile Results	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N	N	N
Changing the Trigger Replacement Process	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N	N	N
Adding a TAP Test Framework	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Change the "elif" Statement Behavior in ecobpg	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Changed to Error when Running an Operator or Function that Returns non Data Types for Masking Type	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Changing the method of specifying the application connection switch feature	Y	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
PostgreSQL compatibility of embedded SQL applications in C and COBOL	Y	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Changing Vertical Clustered Index (VCI)	Y	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Changing how to use the features compatible with Oracle databases	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N

Y: Incompatibility exists

N: Incompatibility does not exist

## 2.2.1 Changing the OID of the Data Type (NCHAR type) that Handles National Characters

---

### Incompatible

In Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 15, OIDs for national character data types (NCHAR types) have changed.

### Action method

If you are using a national character data type (NCHAR type), recompile the application and run it with Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 15 or later clients.

## 2.2.2 Changed the Specification Method of the Application Connection Switch Feature

---

### Incompatible

In Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 15, the name of the "target server" specified by the application connection switch feature will be changed.

### Action method

For applications that specify a target server as the application connection switch feature, change the target server according to the table below, recompile, and then execute using a client of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 15 or later.

Table 2.1 Specified name of the target server.

Target of use	Before modification	After modification
Leverage .NET Data Provider	TargetServerType	TargetSessionAttributes

## 2.2.3 Changes in ecpg/ecobpg Handling of Zero-Length Unicode Identifiers

---

### Incompatible

In Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 15, if the SQL statement contains a zero-length Unicode identifier, Change precompilation to fail.

### Action method

None.

## 2.2.4 Changing the display result when data masking is applied to NaN, infinity, -infinity

---

### Incompatibility

In FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 14, the display result when data masking is applied to NaN, infinity, and -infinity will be changed.

FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 13 SP1 or earlier

If the float type NaN, infinity, and -infinity are partially masking with (9,1,2), the following will be displayed.

```
NaN : 99
Infinity : 99
-Infinity : 99
```

FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 14 or later

If the float type NaN, infinity, and -infinity are partially masking with (9,1,2), the following will be displayed.

```
NaN : NaN
Infinity : Infinity
-Infinity : -Infinity
```

### Action method

If the application is analyzing the SQL masking output result, please consider the non-numeric output result and correct it.

## 2.2.5 Changing the Valid Range of Identifiers Defined by the DECLARE STATEMENT statement

---

### Incompatibility

In FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 14 will change the valid range of identifiers defined by a DECLARE STATEMENT statement in ecpg/ecobpg.

FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 13 SP1 or earlier

The valid range is now per process.

FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 14 or later

The valid range is now per file.

### Action method

None.

## 2.2.6 Changing Precompile Results

---

### Incompatibility

In FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 14 removed the ECPGdeclare/ECPGopen function. Therefore, results precompiled from earlier versions of FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres will not be available in FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 14.

### Action method

Rebuild the application.

## 2.2.7 Changing the Trigger Replacement Process

---

### Incompatibility

In FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 14 will change restricted triggers to not be supported by replace operations (OR REPLACE).

FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 13 SP1 or earlier

You can replace a constraint trigger.

[Example]

```
=# CREATE OR REPLACE CONSTRAINT TRIGGER my_constraint_trigger AFTER DELETE ON my_table
-# FOR EACH ROW
-# EXECUTE PROCEDURE funcA();
CREATE TRIGGER
```

FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 14 or later

It does not support replacing a constraint trigger.

[Example]

```
=# CREATE OR REPLACE CONSTRAINT TRIGGER my_constraint_trigger AFTER DELETE ON my_table
-# FOR EACH ROW
-# EXECUTE PROCEDURE funcA();
ERROR: CREATE OR REPLACE CONSTRAINT TRIGGER is not supported
```

## Action method

None.

## 2.2.8 Adding a TAP Test Framework

---

### Incompatibility

In FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 13, the TAP testing framework allows users to create and run TAP tests for their own extensions.

TAP test framework stored in:

```
<FUJITSU Software Enterprise Postgres installation directory>/lib/pgxs/src/test/perl/PostgreSQL/Test
```

## Action method

None.

## 2.2.9 Change the "elif" Statement Behavior in ecobpg

---

### Incompatibility

The "elif" statement now works correctly with FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 13.

FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 12 or earlier

The decision of the "elif" statement is made whether or not the "ifdef/ifndef" condition is met.

[Example]

```
000000      EXEC SQL ifdef DEF1 END-EXEC.
000000      Operation (1).
000000      EXEC SQL elif DEF2 END-EXEC.
000000      Operation (2).
000000      EXEC SQL else END-EXEC.
000000      Operation (3).
```

If "DEF1" and "DEF2" are true, both "Operation (1)" and "Operation (2)" are executed.

FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 13 or later

If the condition "ifdef/ifndef" is met, the judgment of the "elif" statement is not enforced.

[Example]

```
000000      EXEC SQL ifdef DEF1 END-EXEC.
000000      Operation (1).
000000      EXEC SQL elif DEF2 END-EXEC.
000000      Operation (2).
000000      EXEC SQL else END-EXEC.
000000      Operation (3).
```

If "DEF1" and "DEF2" are true, only "Operation (1)" is executed.

## Action method

Check your existing application and fix the elif statement to work correctly.

## 2.2.10 Changed to Error when Running an Operator or Function that Returns non Data Types for Masking Type

---

### Incompatibility

In FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 12, changed to error when running an operator or function that returns non Data Types for Masking type.

## FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 11 or earlier

In the following cases, the operator or function in 3) may be executed without masking.

This is an incorrect result because the data containing the masking column is performed without masking.

- 1) Create a Masking policy. and
- 2) Execute a SELECT statement. and
- 3) Execute an operator or function in the SELECT statement of 2). and
- 4) The operator or function argument of 3) includes a subquery. and
- 5) The operator or function argument of 3) contains the column to be protected created in 1). and
- 6) The operator or function of 3) returns a type not listed in "Data Types for Masking" in "Operation Guide".

## FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 12 or later

Operator or function results of 3) in the following error.

```
ERROR: The output data type is incompatible with the confidential policy.  
HINT: Data type of the result value(s) produced by expression/function using confidential columns  
is not supported by Data masking module. Consider removing confidential columns from such  
expressions/functions.
```

This is correct because the operator or function returns a data type not listed in "Data Types for Masking" in "Operation Guide".

### Action method

Do one of the following to ensure that the results are identical to those of FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 11 and earlier:

- 1) Modify the Masking policy to prevent masking from being performed for the user executing the SQL.
- 2) Modify SQL to not use operators or functions that return types not listed in "Data Types for Masking" in "Operation Guide".

## 2.2.11 Changing the Method of Specifying the Application Connection Switch Feature

### Incompatibility

The target server specified using the application connection switch feature is changed to the same name as that of PostgreSQL.

### Action method

Use the FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 10 or later client to execute applications that have the target server specified as the application connection switch feature after changing the target server and specified value as listed below and recompiling.

Specified name of the target server

Usage target	Before correction	After correction
JDBC driver	No change	
ODBC driver	TargetServer	target_session_attrs
.NET Data Provider	target_server	TargetServerType
Connection service file	target_server	target_session_attrs
Library (libpq) for C	target_server Environment variable (PGXTARGETSERVER)	target_session_attrs Environment variable (PGTARGETSESSIONATTRS)
Embedded SQL	target_server	target_session_attrs
psql	Environment variable (PGXTARGETSERVER)	Environment variable (PGTARGETSESSIONATTRS)

Specified value for the target server

Server selection order	JDBC driver	.NET Data Provider		Other driver	
		Before correction	After correction	Before correction	After correction
Primary server	No change	primary	master	primary	read-write
Standby server	No change	-	slave	-	-
Priority given to a standby server	No change	prefer_standby	preferSlave	prefer_standby	prefer-read
Any	No change	-	any	-	any

## 2.2.12 PostgreSQL Compatibility of Embedded SQL Applications in C and COBOL

---

### Incompatibility

Embedded SQL applications in C and COBOL that were compiled with FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 9.6 or earlier cannot be used in the FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 10 client.

### Action method

Use the FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 10 or later client to execute the applications only after recompiling them with the FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 10 or later client.

## 2.2.13 Changing Vertical Clustered Index (VCI)

---

### Incompatibility

The functions below have been added to the functions for which VCI is not used.

Type	Function
Date/time functions	age(timestamp) current_date current_timestamp current_time localtime localtimestamp
Session information functions	current_user current_role

### Action method

To use VCI, specify the second argument when using the age function, and specify other functions as subqueries.

[Example]

Before: select age(column A), current\_date from table

After: select age(column A, now()), (select current\_date) from table

## 2.2.14 Changing how to Use the Features Compatible with Oracle Databases

---

## Incompatibility

In FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 9.6 or later, to use the features compatible with Oracle databases, create a new instance and execute the following command for the "postgres" and "template1" databases:

```
CREATE EXTENSION oracle_compatible
```

## Action method

None.

## 2.3 Operation Migration Incompatibility

Item	Pre-migration version												
	9.5	9.6	10	11	12	13	12 SP1	13 SP1	14	14 SP1	15	15 SP1	15 SP2
Deprecation of Some Encryption Algorithms in pgcrypto	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N
Deprecation of Certificates Signed Using SHA1	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N
Abolition of Message Numbers	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N
Adding the key_name Column to the View pgx_tde_master_key	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	Y	N	N	N
Changing the Output of the Status Mode of the cm_ctl Command	N	N	N	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N	N	N
Rename column "master_pid" in pgx_loader_state to "leader_pid"	N	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N	N	N
Adding a Message to Output when the Database Server watchdog detects that the Connection Manager is down	N	N	N	N	N	N	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N
Change the Error Information when the Connection Manager re-executes SQL on the Failed Connection	N	N	N	N	N	N	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N
Changing the Value of the Category Column in the pg_settings view	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Changing pgx_stat_lwlock of the Statistics View	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Changing the Behavior of pgx_rcvall	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Mirroring Controller no longer retries to monitor database	Y	N	Y	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N

Item	Pre-migration version												
	9.5	9.6	10	11	12	13	12 SP1	13 SP1	14	14 SP1	15	15 SP1	15 SP2
processes when they are detected as down													
Changing the Name and Parameter Name of the Mirroring Controller Post-Promote Command	N	N	Y	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Changing Mirroring Controller User Command Input Values	N	N	Y	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Changing the maximum number of connections per server	Y	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Changing the encryption settings using the ALTER TABLESPACE statement	Y	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Changing the default configuration of the cluster system using database multiplexing	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Changing the default operation when mc_ctl command options are omitted	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Changing the connection settings when Mirroring Controller connects to an instance	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Changing the status display of the Mirroring Controller server	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Changing the operation when the synchronous_standby_names parameter is changed during database multiplexing operation	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Changing masking policy definition for unsupported data types	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N

Y: Incompatibility exists

N: Incompatibility does not exist

## 2.3.1 Deprecation of Some Encryption Algorithms in pgcrypto



## Incompatibility

In Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 15 SP2 and later, the PostgreSQL extension pgcrypto does not support the use of the encryption algorithm, which has become a legacy algorithm in the OpenSSL3 family, by default.

The encryption algorithms that are no longer available by default are:

- BF
- CAST5
- DES-ECB
- DES-CBC
- MD4
- Whirlpool

## Action method

If you use a legacy OpenSSL provider, create an OpenSSL configuration file and set the parameters in postgresql.conf. Refer to "Settings for Using Legacy OpenSSL Providers" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server for information .

## 2.3.2 Deprecation of Certificates Signed Using SHA1

---

### Incompatibility

In Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 15 SP2 and later, you cannot connect to a database server using a certificate signed using SHA1.

### Action method

Resubmit the certificate used for certificate authentication with SHA2 or higher.

## 2.3.3 Abolition of Message Numbers

---

### Incompatibility

In Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 15, the message number output at the end of the message is abolished.

Message numbers are output for messages output by Mirroring Controller.

For FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 14 SP1 or earlier

The message number was printed at the end of the message.

[example]

```
3D000: 2017-07-10 19:41:05 JST[13899]: [1-1] user=fepuser,db=fep,remote=127.0.0.1(51902)
app=[unknown] FATAL: database "fep" does not exist (10571)
```

For Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 15

No message number is output at the end of the message.

[example]

```
3D000: 2023-04-10 19:41:05 JST [13899]: [1-1] user = fepuser,db = fep,remote = 127.0.0.1(51902)
app = [unknown] FATAL: database "fep" does not exist
```

### Action method

None.

## 2.3.4 Adding the key\_name Column to the View pgx\_tde\_master\_key

---

## Incompatibility

In Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 15, add a key\_name column to the view pgx\_tde\_master\_key.

## Action method

None.

## 2.3.5 Changing the Output of the Status Mode of the cm\_ctl Command

---

### Incompatibility

Changes the display of the output of the status mode of the cm\_ctl command.

(If it has been modified by the P number PH21029, and you have applied an urgent fix that includes it, FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 14 will work.)

When the cm\_ctl command was executed in status mode, there was omission of the output of the header "pid" displayed in "application\_information" which outputs the information of the application.

Correct the following in PH21029.

- Add ':' to 'application\_information' to output application information  
Output "application\_information:"
- Add the header "pid" output to "application\_information"  
Outputs "pid" whose header information is missing.
- Changes the number of digits in the numeric portion of connected\_time  
Change the display start position of the date and time connected to the conmgr process to correct the gap between the start position of the header and the numeric part. (5 digits backward)

This fix causes the following incompatibilities when running the cm\_ctl command in status mode:

- Add ":" to the display of "application\_information"
- Display the header "pid" in "application\_information"
- Change the output start position of the "connected\_time" header of "application\_information"
- Change the start of the date and time output of "connected\_time" in "application\_information" to 5 digits later.

FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 13 SP1 or earlier

```
application_information
addr      port  connected_time
10.xxx.x.xx 99999 21655 2021-10-20 09:18:51
```

FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 14

```
application_information:
addr      port  pid      connected_time
10.xxx.x.xx 99999 21655    2021-10-20 09:18:51
```

When analyzing the output of the cm\_ctl command in status mode in a batch or shell script, it may not work correctly if the header is referenced and the third is "connected\_time".

For example, when identifying a row of data (numeric part), a string up to the header "addr", "port", and "connected\_time" one row before is searched for and identified.

## Action method

If you are using a batch or shell script to parse the output of the `cm_ctl` command in status mode, modify it to take into account the number of digits in the header and numeric part of the output.

## 2.3.6 Rename column "master\_pid" in pgx\_loader\_state to "leader\_pid"

---

### Incompatibility

In FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 14 renames column "master\_pid" to "leader\_pid" in the `pgx_loader_state` table.

## Action method

None.

## 2.3.7 Adding a Message to Output when the Database Server watchdog detects that the Connection Manager is down

---

### Incompatibility

In FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 12 SP1, when using the Connection Manager, if the database server watchdog detects that the Connection Manager is down, it will output a message to the database server.

Incompatibilities may occur if:

- 1) The application server is using the Connection Manager. and
- 2) The database server is running the watchdog process. and
- 3) 1) Application server or Connection Manager goes down.

### FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 12 or earlier

If the database server watchdog detects that the Connection Manager is down, the following message is not output.

```
WARNING:  watchdog: error in heartbeat connection (20331): host=xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx port=xxxxx  
pid=xxxxx
```

### FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 12 SP1

If the database server watchdog detects that the Connection Manager is down, the following message may be output.

```
WARNING:  watchdog: error in heartbeat connection (20331): host=xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx port=xxxxx  
pid=xxxxx
```

### FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 13 or later

If the database server watchdog detects that the Connection Manager is down, the following message is not output.

```
WARNING:  watchdog: error in heartbeat connection (20331): host=xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx port=xxxxx  
pid=xxxxx
```

## Action method

If you are monitoring the database log for watchdog messages, change the monitoring setting to one that takes into account the possible output of these messages.

## 2.3.8 Change the Error Information when the Connection Manager re-executes SQL on the Failed Connection

---

## Incompatibility

In FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 12 SP1 allows an application using the Connection Manager to change the error information when attempting to execute SQL again on a connection that the Connection Manager has determined to be in error due to a database error.

The changed error information is included in the error presented in "Errors when an Application Connection Switch Occurs and Corresponding Actions" for each client driver in "Application Development Guide".

Incompatibilities may occur if the following conditions are met:

- 1) The application uses one of the following drivers. and  
-libpq (C Library)  
-ECPG (Embedded SQL in C)
- 2) You are using the Connection Manager. and
- 3) The database server to which the application in 1) was connected goes down. and
- 4) The Connection Manager notifies the application in 1) of an error when the database is down in 3). and
- 5) The application in 1) does not disconnect from the database server that is down, but executes SQL using the connection.

### FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 12 or earlier

The error information returned depends on the actual database server error condition.

### FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 12 SP1

The following error information is returned:

- For libpq (C Library): CONNECTION\_BAD (PQstatus () return value)
- For ECPG (Embedded SQL in C): 57P02 (SQLSTATE return value)

### FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 13 or later

The error information returned depends on the actual database server error condition.

## Action method

Consider that the above error may be returned during the SQL error determination process.

Also, if you encounter an error about switching application destinations as described in "Errors when an Application Connection Switch Occurs and Corresponding Actions" for each client driver in "Application Development Guide", you should explicitly disconnect and reconnect or rerun the application.

## 2.3.9 Changing the Value of the Category Column in the pg\_settings view

### Incompatibility

For FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 13, change the value of the category column in the pg\_settings view.

### FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 12 or earlier

Original value	wrong value
Preset Options	Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Parameters
Customized Options	Preset Options
Developer Options	Customized Options

This is an incorrect result because it is different from the original value.

### FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 13 or later

The correct value is the category column in the pg\_settings view.

## Action method

Replaces the category column in the pg\_settings view with the values before migration, so that the results are the same as before migration.

## 2.3.10 Changing pgx\_stat\_lwlock of the Statistics View

### Incompatibility

In FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 13, change the wait event name displayed in the lwlock\_name column of the statistics view pgx\_stat\_lwlock.

Wait Event Name

FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 12 or earlier	FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 13
clog (*1)	XactBuffer
commit_timestamp (*1)	CommitTSBuffer
subtrans (*1)	SubtransBuffer
multixact_offset (*1)	MultiXactOffsetBuffer
multixact_member (*1)	MultiXactMemberBuffer
async (*1)	NotifyBuffer
oldserxid (*1)	SerialBuffer
wal_insert (*1)	WALInsert
buffer_content (*1)	BufferContent
buffer_io (*1)	BufferIO
replication_origin (*1)	ReplicationOriginState
replication_slot_io (*1)	ReplicationSlotIO
proc (*1)	LockFastPath
buffer_mapping (*1)	BufferMapping
lock_manager (*1)	LockManager
predicate_lock_manager (*1)	PredicateLockManager
parallel_hash_join (*3)	ParallelHashJoin
parallel_query_dsa (*2)	ParallelQueryDSA
session_dsa (*3)	PerSessionDSA
session_record_table (*3)	PerSessionRecordType
session_typmod_table (*3)	PerSessionRecordTypmod
shared_tupstore (*3)	SharedTupleStore
tbm (*2)	SharedTidBitmap
parallel_append (*3)	ParallelAppend
serializable_xact (*4)	PerXactPredicateList
shared_mcxt (*4)	SharedMcxt
meta_cache_map (*4)	MetaCacheMap
global_metacache (*4)	GlobalCatcache
cached_buf_tranche_id (*4)	CachedBufTranche

\*1) Events added in FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 9.6.

\*2) Events added in FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 10.

\*3) Events added in FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 11.

\*4) Events added in FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 12.

#### Action method

None.

## 2.3.11 Changing the Behavior of pgx\_rcvall

---

#### Incompatibility

In FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 13, change the pgx\_rcvall command to fail if the -e option of the pgx\_rcvall command specifies a future time or if the -n option specifies a list appointment that does not exist.

FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 12 or earlier

All archived WALs are applied for recovery if the -e option of the pgx\_rcvall command specifies a time in the future, or if the -n option specifies a list appointment that does not exist.

FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 13 or later

The pgx\_rcvall command fails if the -e option of the pgx\_rcvall command specifies a time in the future, or if the -n option specifies a list appointment that does not exist.

#### Action method

Specify recovery objectives correctly, if necessary.

## 2.3.12 Mirroring Controller no Longer Retries to Monitor Database Processes when they are Detected as Down

---

#### Incompatibility

For the FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres Mirroring Controller, change the heartbeat monitoring of the database process so that it does not retry monitoring when it detects down.

#### Action method

None.

## 2.3.13 Changing the Name and Parameter Name of the Mirroring Controller Post-Promote Command

---

#### Incompatibility

In the FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 12 Mirroring Controller, change the name of the post-promote command, which is the state transition command, and the parameter name in the server configuration file that specifies the post-promote command.

FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 11 or earlier

- Command Name  
post-promote command
- The parameter name in the server configuration file that specifies the post-promote command  
post\_promote\_command

FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 12 or later

- Command Name  
post-switch command

- The parameter name in the server configuration file that specifies the post-promote command  
post\_switch\_command

#### Action method

The post\_promote\_command parameter in the server configuration file continues to be available in FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 12 or later. If specified in the server configuration file, it acts as a post-switch command. You cannot specify the post\_promote\_command and post\_switch\_command parameters at the same time.

### 2.3.14 Changing Mirroring Controller User Command Input Values

---

#### Incompatibility

Arguments (Fixed value: primarycenter) have been added to the following user commands:

- Fencing command of the database server
- Arbitration command
- Post-switch command
- Pre-detach command
- Post-attach command

#### Action method

If you are checking the number of arguments in a user command, increase the number of arguments by one.

### 2.3.15 Changing the Maximum Number of Connections per Server

---

#### Incompatibility

The maximum number of connections per server is changed from 262,143 to 65,535.

#### Action method

None.

### 2.3.16 Changing the Encryption Settings Using the ALTER TABLESPACE Statement

---

#### Incompatibility

The ALTER TABLESPACE statement can be used to change the tablespace encryption settings if data is not stored in the tablespace.

#### Action method

None.

### 2.3.17 Changing the Default Configuration of the Cluster System Using Database Multiplexing

---

#### Incompatibility

In FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 10, a split brain will not occur if heartbeat monitoring using an admin network times out, so the default is changed to a system configuration requiring an arbitration server acting as a third party.

FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 9.6 or earlier

A cluster system comprises two database servers.

FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 10 or later

By default, a cluster system comprises two database servers and an arbitration server.

#### Action method

If selecting the same system configuration as that in FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 9.6 or earlier, set the parameters below in the server configuration file to perform automatic degradation unconditionally when a heartbeat abnormality is detected during OS/server heartbeat monitoring.

- Parameter: heartbeat\_error\_action
- Value: fallback

## 2.3.18 Changing the Default Operation when mc\_ctl Command Options are Omitted

---

#### Incompatibility

In FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 10, the default operation when the mc\_ctl command options below are omitted has been changed:

- The -f option during start mode
- The -w option during start mode

FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 9.6 or earlier

- If the -f option is omitted, automatic switching and disconnection immediately after the startup of Mirroring Controller will not be enabled.
- If the -w option is omitted, the system will not wait for operations to finish.

FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 10 or later

- Even if the -f option is omitted, automatic switching and disconnection immediately after the startup of Mirroring Controller will be enabled.
- Even if the -w option is omitted, the system will wait for operations to finish.

#### Action method

If selecting the same operation as that in FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 9.6 or earlier, take the action below when executing start mode of the mc\_ctl command.

- If the -f option is omitted, specify the -F option.
- If the -w option is omitted, specify the -W option.

## 2.3.19 Changing the Connection Settings when Mirroring Controller Connects to an Instance

---

#### Incompatibility

In FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 10, Mirroring Controller changes the connection setting below when connecting to an instance to detect failure of each database element.

- Application name

FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 9.6 or earlier

- The application name is an empty string.

FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 10 or later

- The application name is 'mc\_agent'.



## Action method

There is no method for changing the application name.

Therefore, if there is an application that identifies a database connection session of Mirroring Controller with the application name being an empty string, modify the process so that identification is performed using 'mc\_agent'.

## 2.3.20 Changing the Status Display of the Mirroring Controller Server

---

### Incompatibility

In FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 10, the condition for displaying an abnormality for the process (WAL receive process) that receives transaction logs has been changed in regard to the server status display performed in status mode of the mc\_ctl command of Mirroring Controller.

- Role of the applicable server (host\_role): standby (standby)
- Display item: DBMS process status (db\_proc\_status)
- Display content: abnormal (abnormal process name)

The applicability for incompatibility is determined based on whether 'wal\_receiver' is included in the abnormality process name.

FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 9.6 or earlier

Displays an abnormality when Mirroring Controller detects that the WAL send process has stopped.

FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 10 or later

Displays an abnormality when Mirroring Controller detects that a streaming replication connection has not been established with the primary server using the WAL receive process.

## Action method

If there is an application that determines the WAL receive process status from the display content retrieved using status mode of the mc\_ctl command, modify as below to determine at the same level of accuracy as previously. However, this is not recommended due to incompatibilities accompanying the improvement in accuracy.

- If 'wal\_sender' is included in the abnormal process name displayed in the 'abnormal' db\_proc\_status item of the 'primary' host\_role, it is determined that an abnormality has occurred in the WAL receive process.
- If 'wal\_sender' is not included in the abnormal process name displayed in the 'abnormal' db\_proc\_status item of the 'primary' host\_role, it is determined that an abnormality has not occurred in the WAL receive process.

## 2.3.21 Changing the Operation when the synchronous\_standby\_names Parameter is Changed during Database Multiplexing Operation

---

### Incompatibility

In FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 9.6 or earlier, Mirroring Controller periodically accesses the database to retrieve the synchronous\_standby\_names parameter value using the SHOW command, and automatically recovers if changes are detected, in case the user accidentally changes the synchronous\_standby\_names parameter in postgresql.conf during database multiplexing mode. However, because this process uses the CPU of the database server for redundancy and SQL statements are executed with high frequency, these processes are not executed by default in FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 10.

FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 9.6 or earlier

Mirroring Controller checks if the synchronous\_standby\_names parameter in postgresql.conf has been mistakenly changed by the user.

FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 10 or later

By default, Mirroring Controller does not check if the synchronous\_standby\_names parameter in postgresql.conf has been mistakenly changed by the user.

## Action method

If selecting the same operation as that in FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 9.6 or earlier, set the parameter below in the server definition file.

- Parameter: check\_synchronous\_standby\_names\_validation
- Value: 'on'

## 2.3.22 Changing Masking Policy Definition for Unsupported Data Types

### Incompatibility

The data masking feature of FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres is updated so that an error occurs when a masking policy is defined for a column of an unsupported data type (array type or timestamp with timezone type).

#### FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 9.5

The definition of a masking policy for a column of array type or timestamp with timezone type ends normally, but an error occurs when accessing a column of a table for which the policy is defined.

#### FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 9.6 or later

An error occurs when defining a masking policy for a column of array type or timestamp with timezone type.

### Action method

If a policy that was defined in FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 9.5 includes masking of a column of an unsupported data type (array type or timestamp with timezone type), perform one of the following in FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 9.6 or later:

- Ignore the error if the masking policy contains columns of only these data types, or delete the policy with the pgx\_drop\_confidential\_policy system administration function.
- If the masking policy target contains columns of these data types and a supported data type, delete the problematic columns with the pgx\_alter\_confidential\_policy system function.

## 2.4 JDBC Driver Incompatibility

Item	Pre-migration version											
	9.5	9.6	10	11	12	13	12 SP1/13 SP1	14	14 SP1	15	15 SP1	15 SP2
Changing the targetServerType Value	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Changing the Statement Cache Limit Setting Method	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N

Y: Incompatibility exists

N: Incompatibility does not exist

### 2.4.1 Changing the targetServerType Value

#### Incompatibility

In FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 13, the value of targetServerType specified in the connection string was changed. Therefore, the previously used values are no longer available.

#### Action method

If you specified a value for targetServerType, change the value as follows:

Table 2.2 Specified values for the target server

Server Selection Order	FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 12 or earlier	FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 13
Primary Server	master	primary
Standby Server	slave	secondary
Prefer Standby Server	preferSlave	preferSecondary
Any	any	any

## 2.4.2 Changing the Statement Cache Limit Setting Method

### Incompatibility

FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 9.6 changes the way the statement cache cap is set.

FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 9.5 or earlier

The maxStatements parameter of the connection string or the setMaxStatements method.

FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 9.6 or later

Specified in the connection string or property by the preparedStatementCacheQueries and preparedStatementCacheSizeMiB parameters.

### Action method

None.

## 2.5 ODBC Driver Incompatibility

Item	Pre-migration version											
	9.5	9.6	10	11	12	13	12 SP1/13 SP1	14	14 SP1	15	15 SP1	15 SP2
<a href="#">Cannot specify prefer-read for target_session_attrs</a>	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N	N	N

Y: Incompatibility exists

N: Incompatibility does not exist

### 2.5.1 Cannot specify prefer-read for target\_session\_attrs

#### Incompatibility

FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 14 users will not see the "prefer-read" radio button in the "Target\_Session\_Attrs" item of the data source option selection screen.

#### Action method

Select prefer-standby.

## 2.6 .NET Data Provider Incompatibility

Item	Pre-migration version											
	9.5	9.6	10	11	12	13	12 SP1/13 SP1	14	14 SP1	15	15 SP1	15 SP2
Changing the Specification Method and Specified Values for the Application Connection Switch Feature	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N
Changing the Behavior of the Application Connection Switch Feature	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N
Behavior Change when Multiple Host Information is Specified in the Connection String	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N
Changing the TargetServerType Value	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
Changing the Server Explorer View in Visual Studio Integration with .NET Data Provider	Y	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N

Y: Incompatibility exists

N: Incompatibility does not exist

## 2.6.1 Changing the Specification Method and Specified Values for the Application Connection Switch Feature

### Incompatibility

In Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 15, the name of the "target server" specified by the connection switching function will be changed from "TargetServerType" to "TargetSessionAttributes", and the specified value will also be changed.

### Action method

If the target server is specified, change the target server and specified value as follows.

Table 2.3 How to specify the connection destination switching function of the application and the specified value

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres version		FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 9.6 or earlier	FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 10/11/12	FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 13/14	Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 15
Keywords to specify in the connection string		target_server	TargetServerType	TargetServerType	TargetSessionAttributes
Server selection order	Primary Server	primary(*1)	master(*1)	primary(*1)	read-write(*1) primary(*2)
	Standby Server	-	slave(*2)	standby(*2)	standby

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres version		FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 9.6 or earlier	FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 10/11/12	FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 13/14	Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 15
					read-only(*2)
	Prefer Primary Server	-	-	-	prefer-primary
	Prefer Standby Server	prefer_standby	preferSlave	preferStandby	prefer-standby
	Any	-	any	any	any

\*1: A primary server whose default transaction mode is read-only are not selected.

\*2: A primary server whose default transaction mode is read-only is also selected.

## 2.6.2 Changing the Behavior of the Application Connection Switch Feature

### Incompatibility

In Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 15, when only one Host keyword is specified in the connection string, if a target server other than Any is specified, an exception will occur.

FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 14 SP1 earlier

For example, if the connection string specifies "Host=host1, TargetServerType=primary", it will connect to host1 if host1 is the appropriate connection target.

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 15

For example, if "Host=host1, TargetSessionAttributes=primary" is specified in the connection string, an exception will always occur because the target server other than Any is specified for the specification of only one host information.

### Action method

None.

## 2.6.3 Behavior Change when Multiple Host Information is Specified in the Connection String

### Incompatibility

In Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 15, when multiple hosts are specified in the connection string, even if one of them has an empty string specified, if another connectable connection destination is specified, that connection destination will be connected. In the old version, if there was even one host with an empty string, an exception would occur at that point.

FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 14 SP1 earlier

For example, if "Host = host1," is specified in the connection string, an exception will always occur because the second host information is an empty string.

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 15

For example, if the connection string specifies "Host = host1," and if host1 is reachable, it will connect to host1 without throwing an exception.

### Action method

None.

## 2.6.4 Changing the TargetServerType Value

### Incompatibility

In FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 13, the value of TargetServerType specified in the connection string was changed. Therefore, the previously used values are no longer available.

### Action method

If you specified a value for TargetServerType, change the value as follows:

Table 2.4 Specified values for the target server

Server Selection Order	FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 9.6 or earlier	FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 10/11/12	FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 13
Primary Server	primary	master	primary
Standby Server	-	slave	standby
Prefer Standby Server	prefer_standby	preferSlave	preferStandby
Any	-	any	any

## 2.6.5 Changing the Server Explorer View in Visual Studio Integration with .NET Data Provider

### Incompatibility

FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 10 or later, the following changes occur when you view database resources in Server Explorer.

- "Schema Name.Table Name" display under the Tables folder.
- The Indexes folder is not displayed.
- The Triggers folder does not displayed.
- The Sequences folder is not displayed.
- The Procedures folder does not displayed.

### Action method

None.

## 2.7 C Library (libpq) Migration Incompatibility

Item	Pre-migration version											
	9.5	9.6	10	11	12	13	12 SP1/13 SP1	14	14 SP1	15	15 SP1	15 SP2
Changing when "prefer-read" is Specified for the target_session_attrs Parameter	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N	N	N

Y: Incompatibility exists

N: Incompatibility does not exist

## 2.7.1 Changing when "prefer-read" is Specified for the target\_session\_attrs Parameter

---

### Incompatibility

In FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 14 changes the attach server priority if any of the following servers are specified simultaneously with "prefer-read" as the target\_session\_attrs parameter:

- Primary server (default\_transaction\_read\_only = ON)
- Standby server

FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 13 SP1 or earlier

The primary server (default\_transaction\_read\_only = ON) and standby servers have the same priority.

FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 14 or later

Standby servers connect in preference to primary servers (default\_transaction\_read\_only = ON).

### Action method

None.

## 2.8 oracle\_fdw Incompatibility

---

Item	Pre-migration version											
	9.5	9.6	10	11	12	13	12 SP1/13 SP1	14	14 SP1	15	15 SP1	15 SP2
<a href="#">Changing the Oracle Client Version</a>	N	N	Y	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N

Y: Incompatibility exists

N: Incompatibility does not exist

### 2.8.1 Changing the Oracle Client Version

---

#### Incompatibility

FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 12 change the version of the Oracle client used to build oracle\_fdw to 11.2.

#### Action method

Use Oracle client version 11.2 or later.

Also, if a file named libclntsh.so.11.1 does not exist in OCI library, create a symbolic link named libclntsh.so.11.1.

## 2.9 pgaudit Incompatibility

---

Item	Pre-migration version											
	9.5	9.6	10	11	12	13	12 SP1/13 SP1	14	14 SP1	15	15 SP1	15 SP2
Repairing Unwanted Output in the Audit Log	N	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Changing to Output Extra NEW and OLD Values in the Audit Log when the Trigger Function Executes	N	N	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N

Y: Incompatibility exists

N: Incompatibility does not exist

## 2.9.1 Repairing Unwanted Output in the Audit Log

### Incompatibility

In Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 16, we changed the audit log so that it no longer contains unwanted information at the end.

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 15 SP2 or earlier

Some audit logs contain unwanted content at the end.

[Example]

```
Input: INSERT INTO trig_test VALUES ('new value');
Part of the audit log: NOTICE:  AUDIT: SESSION,WRITE,,[local],,pg_regress/class,,baz,,
11,2,INSERT,,TABLE,public.trig_audit,, "INSERT INTO trig_audit SELECT 'I', now(), user, NULL,
NEW.*", "("new value")  trig_audit AFTER ROW INSERT 16484 trig_test trig_test public 0  f"
```

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 16

Prevent unwanted from being output to the audit log.

[Example]

```
Input: INSERT INTO trig_test VALUES ('new value');
Part of the audit log: NOTICE:  AUDIT: SESSION,WRITE,,[local],,pg_regress/class,,baz,,
11,2,INSERT,,TABLE,public.trig_audit,, "INSERT INTO trig_audit SELECT 'I', now(), user, NULL,
NEW.*", "("new value")"
```

### Action method

None.

## 2.9.2 Changing to Output Extra NEW and OLD Values in the Audit Log when the Trigger Function Executes

### Incompatibility

In FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 13, the trigger function additionally outputs NEW and OLD values to the audit log when the pgaudit.log\_parameter is set to on.

FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 12 or earlier

The following (18) does not output the values of NEW, OLD.



[Example]

```
AUDIT: SESSION,WRITE,2020-09-03 07:07:39 UTC,
      (1)      (2)      (3)
[local],9775,psql,k5user,postgres,3/536, 1, 2, INSERT, ,
(4)      (5) (6) (7)      (8)      (9) (10)(11)(12)(13)
TABLE,public.trig_audit, ,
(14) (15)      (16)
      "INSERT INTO trig_audit SELECT 'U', now(), user, OLD.*, NEW.*",
(17)
trig_audit AFTER ROW UPDATE 92027 trig_test trig_test public 0 f aaaa
(18)
```

#### FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 13 or later

NEW, OLD values are output.

[Example]

```
AUDIT: SESSION,WRITE,2020-09-03 07:07:39 UTC,
[local],9775,psql,k5user,postgres,3/536,1,2,INSERT,,TABLE,public.
trig_audit,,
"INSERT INTO trig_audit SELECT 'U', now(), user, OLD.*, NEW.*",
(bbb) (aaa) trig_audit AFTER ROW UPDATE 92027 trig_test trig_test
public 0 f aaaa
```

#### Action method

If you are using an application that works by monitoring the string that the trigger function output to the audit log, modify the application to work with the NEW and OLD values.

## 2.10 pg\_dbms\_stats Incompatibility

Item	Pre-migration version											
	9.5	9.6	10	11	12	13	12 SP1/13 SP1	14	14 SP1	15	15 SP1	15 SP2
<a href="#">Change in Execution Plan due to Fixed Height of Btree index</a>	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
<a href="#">Incompatibility of Import Features with Fixed Height of Btree index</a>	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y

Y: Incompatibility exists

N: Incompatibility does not exist

### 2.10.1 Change in Execution Plan due to Fixed Height of Btree index

#### Incompatibility

Fixing statistics with the following features may change the execution plan because the height of the Btree index is now fixed as well:

- dbms\_stats.lock\_\*
- dbms\_stats.restore\_\*

- dbms\_stats.import\_\*

### Action method

If you want to run compatibility with Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 15 SP2 and earlier, configure the following:

- pg\_dbms\_stats.use\_tree\_height
- pg\_dbms\_stats.lock\_tree\_height

## 2.10.2 Incompatibility of Import Features with Fixed Height of Btree index

### Incompatibility

Statistics exported by the export function in pg\_dbms\_stats prior to Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 15 SP2 cannot be imported using the legacy import function.

### Action method

When importing statistics exported by the export function in pg\_dbms\_stats prior to Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 15 SP2, use a function with the suffix "\_no\_tree\_height" appended to its name.

## 2.11 WebAdmin Incompatibility

Item	Pre-migration version											
	9.5	9.6	10	11	12	13	12 SP1/13 SP1	14	14 SP1	15	15 SP1	15 SP2
Cannot specify prefer-read for target_session_attrs	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N	N	N

Y: Incompatibility exists

N: Incompatibility does not exist

### 2.11.1 Cannot specify prefer-read for target\_session\_attrs

#### Incompatibility

FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 14 will no longer allow prefer-read to target\_session\_attrs as a connection method to an upstream server that is specified when creating an instance of a standby server.

#### Action method

Specify prefer-standby.

## 2.12 Connection Manager Incompatibility

Item	Pre-migration version							
	12	13	12 SP1/13 SP1	14	14 SP1	15	15 SP1	15 SP2
Behavior change when "read-write" is specified for the target_session_attrs parameter	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N	N	N

Y: Incompatibility exists

N: Incompatibility does not exist

## 2.12.1 Behavior change when "read-write" is specified for the target\_session\_attrs parameter

### Incompatibility

FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 13 SP1 or earlier

May be connected to primary server (default\_transaction\_read\_only = ON).

FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 14 or later

It is not connected to the primary server (default\_transaction\_read\_only = ON).

### Action method

For FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 13 SP1 and earlier, specify "primary" for the target\_session\_attrs parameter.

## 2.13 Confidentiality Management Incompatibility

Item	Pre-migration version											
	9.5	9.6	10	11	12	13	12 SP1/13 SP1	14	14 SP1	15	15 SP1	15 SP2
Changes due to Changes in the pg_dump Specification	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	Y	Y	Y
Changing Permission Settings by Changing the CREATEROLE Permission	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	Y	Y	Y
Change due to Restriction of CREATEROLE Privilege	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	Y	Y	Y

Y: Incompatibility exists

N: Incompatibility does not exist

### 2.13.1 Changes due to Changes in the pg\_dump Specification

## Incompatibility

If you are using multiple non-superuser sensitivity confidentiality management role to manage the sensitivity matrix, run the product-provided policy configuration script to define a row-level security feature policy on the table provided by the sensitivity support feature to make the sensitivity management roles independent of each other.

In Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 15 SP2 or earlier, the effects of this script could be retained and backed up by `pg_dump`, but as of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 16, policy settings can no longer be backed up.

## Action method

In Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 16 or later, if you are managing a sensitivity matrix using more than one confidentiality management role other than superuser, then immediately after restoring a clear-text dump file using `pg_dump`, run the following command as superuser to reapply the confidentiality management feature policy:

```
psql -f ${install_dir}/share/extension/pgx_confidential_management_support_policy.sql
```

## 2.13.2 Changing Permission Settings by Changing the CREATEROLE Permission

---

### Incompatibility

In Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 16, if you want to use a non-superuser role as a confidentiality management role, you may need to set additional permissions for the confidentiality management role.

### Action method

The confidentiality management role must already have the privileges it expects to operate on, other than the CREATEROLE privilege.

[Example]

If the confidentiality management role "manager\_role" is also going to work with CREATEDB privileges, it will also set CREATEDB privileges when the role is created, like this:

```
CREATE ROLE manager_role LOGIN CREATEROLE CREATEDB;
```

If the required permissions are not set, the sensitivity management API terminates abnormally with a message similar to the following:

```
ERROR: permission denied to create role
DETAIL: Only roles with the CREATEDB attribute may create roles with the CREATEDB attribute.
```

## 2.13.3 Change due to Restriction of CREATEROLE Privilege

---

### Incompatibility

In Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 16, if you want to use a non-superuser role as a secret management role, the permissions on the roles that can be set in the secret group are different, and the roles that you set in the secret group must be granted ADMIN OPTION permission on the secret confidentiality management role before they can be used.

### Action method

Take one of the following actions:

- A role created with the privileges of the confidentiality management role is to be managed in the confidential group. This creates a role that grants only the ADMIN OPTIN privilege to the sensitive confidentiality management role.
- Grant ADMIN OPTION permission on the role to the sensitive management role before setting the managed role to the sensitive group.

[Example]

You want to grant only the ADMIN OPTION privilege for role "user\_role1" to the confidentiality management role "manager\_role".

```
GRANT user_role1 TO manager_role WITH ADMIN TRUE, INHERIT FALSE, SET FALSE;
```

If the required permissions are not set, the sensitivity management API terminates abnormally with a message similar to the following:

ERROR: permission denied to alter role

DETAIL: Only roles with the CREATEROLE attribute and the ADMIN option on role "user\_role1" may alter this role.

## Chapter 3 Program Updates

For program fix information, see "Program Updates".

# Index

---

[C]

Compatibility Information.....3

[F]

Features Added in 16.....1

[P]

Program Updates.....39

# Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 16

## Program Updates

Linux

J2UL-2947-01ENZ0(00)  
July 2024



# Preface

---

This document explains the updates that have been fixed at this version.

The contents of this document are subject to change without notice.

## Notations

The status for each edition is shown in the following table.

P number	Update summary	AE	SE
Number that uniquely identifies the update	Summary of update details	Symbol indicating the fixed status	

AE

Indicates Advanced Edition.

SE

Indicates Standard Edition.

Symbol

Indicates the incorporated status for each edition.

Y: Fixed

-: Not relevant to this product

## Export restrictions

Exportation/release of this document may require necessary procedures in accordance with the regulations of your resident country and/or US export control laws.

## Issue date and version

Edition 1.0: July 2024
------------------------

## Copyright

Copyright 2020-2024 Fujitsu Limited

# Chapter 1 Program Updates

This version incorporates the following fixes:

- PostgreSQL 16
- PostgreSQL 16.1
- PostgreSQL 16.2



See

Refer to the PostgreSQL Global Development Group website for information on the updates implemented in the following releases:

## [PostgreSQL 16]

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/16/release-16.html>

## [PostgreSQL 16.1]

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/16/release-16-1.html>

## [PostgreSQL 16.2]

<https://www.postgresql.org/docs/16/release-16-2.html>

In addition, issues that occurred in previous versions are also fixed.

Refer to the following for details of the program fixes included in this version and level.

- [Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 16 Program Updates](#)

# Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 16 Program Updates

P number	Update summary	AE	SE
PH14042	If the database server goes down, the core file might not be printed.	Y	Y
PH15323	Mirroring Controller may output an exception message if the locale of the message is not Japanese or English.	Y	-
PH16376	If you precompile an application that uses embedded SQL in the COBOL language, including INCLUDE statements, precompilation may fail.	Y	Y
PH16595	If the password for the instance administrator user contains characters such as ¥ or #, the Mirroring Controller setup using WebAdmin fails.	Y	-
PH17589	An error occurred in the permission value for the backup_destination directory.	Y	Y
PH18672	If you execute a SELECT statement on a table for which you are creating a secrecy policy, the results might not be secrecy.	Y	Y
PH19942	The pgx_loader command might terminate abnormally.	Y	-
PH20174	pg_statsinfo might not be able to get statistics about autovacuum.	Y	Y
PH23041	When you execute an EXPLAIN statement, the execution of the EXPLAIN statement may fail or the database instance may go down.	Y	-
PH23197	When you execute an EXPLAIN statement, the execution of the EXPLAIN statement may fail or the database instance may go down.	Y	-
PH23199	If the primary Mirroring Controller goes down during the switchover process, the standby may not be able to promote.	Y	-
PH23286	When a failure is detected on a standby server, the predisconnect command is not executed and the standby server is not stopped even if shutdown_detached_synchronous_standby is on.	Y	-
PH23288	It may take 65 seconds for automatic switching to start after an error is detected by Mirroring Controller.	Y	-
PH23295	If the disk becomes unresponsive, error detection is not performed and automatic switching/disconnection is not performed.	Y	-
PH23508	If the database is under heavy load, the Mirroring Controller may fail to switch and the update SQL is unresponsive.	Y	-
PH23520	Provides the ability to switch to standby and remain operational if the primary fails and replication is disconnected after a management network failure.	Y	-
PH23544	When running SQL against a table with fixed statistics by pg_dbms_stats, the execution plan might not be fix.	Y	Y
PH23555	Connection for applications that use libpq may leak memory.	Y	-
PH23563	If the Mirroring Controller stops, the arbitrage process may terminate abnormally and stop.	Y	-
PH23587	When using Mirroring Controller, the pre-disconnect command is not executed under certain circumstances.	Y	-
PH23604	Calling Npgsql in Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 15 from a 64bit .NET application results in a System.BadImageFormatException error.	Y	Y
PH23619	If you are using the audit logging feature and you output audit logs frequently from a large number of database sessions, transaction processing performance may degrade.	Y	-
PH23725	It was not mentioned in the documentation that it was now possible to create tests using TAP tests when developing EXTENSION.	Y	Y

P number	Update summary	AE	SE
PH23790	The value displayed on the screen for the setting item "Number of digits in a floating value" for an instance created by WebAdmin may differ from the value of the corresponding parameter in postgresql.conf.	Y	Y
PH23808	The pgx_loader command might terminate abnormally.	Y	-
PH23830	The security bug fixes absorbed in PostgreSQL 16.3 will be reflected in Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.	Y	Y

# **Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 16**

## **Installation and Setup Guide**

Windows/Linux

July 2024

# **Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 16**

## **Installation and Setup Guide for Server**

Linux

J2UL-2949-01ENZ0(00)  
July 2024

# Preface

---

## Purpose of this document

The Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres database system extends the PostgreSQL features and runs on the Linux platform.

This document describes how to install and set up "Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres".

## Intended readers

This document is intended for those who install and operate Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

Readers of this document are assumed to have general knowledge of:

- PostgreSQL
- SQL
- Linux

## Structure of this document

This document is structured as follows:

### [Chapter 1 Overview of Installation](#)

Describes the installation types and procedures

### [Chapter 2 Operating Environment](#)

Describes the operating environment required to use Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

### [Chapter 3 Installation](#)

Describes how to perform a new installation of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

### [Chapter 4 Setup](#)

Describes the setup to be performed after installation

### [Chapter 5 Uninstallation](#)

Describes how to uninstall Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

### [Appendix A Recommended WebAdmin Environments](#)

Describes the recommended WebAdmin environment.

### [Appendix B Setting Up and Removing WebAdmin](#)

Describes how to set up and remove WebAdmin

### [Appendix C WebAdmin Disallow User Inputs Containing Hazardous Characters](#)

Describes characters that are not allowed in WebAdmin.

### [Appendix D Configuring Parameters](#)

Describes Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres parameters.

### [Appendix E Estimating Database Disk Space Requirements](#)

Describes how to estimate database disk space requirements

### [Appendix F Estimating Memory Requirements](#)

Describes the formulas for estimating memory requirements

### [Appendix G Quantitative Limits](#)

Describes the quantity range

[Appendix H Configuring Kernel Parameters](#)

Describes the settings for kernel parameters

[Appendix I Determining the Preferred WebAdmin Configuration](#)

Describes the two different configurations in which WebAdmin can be used and how to select the most suitable configuration

[Appendix J System Configuration when using Pgpool-II](#)

Describes the system configuration when using Pgpool-II.

[Appendix K Supported contrib Modules and Extensions Provided by External Projects](#)

Lists the PostgreSQL contrib modules and the extensions provided by external projects supported by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

[Appendix L Procedure when Modifying the JRE Installation](#)

Describes the procedures to follow when modifying the JRE installation.

[Appendix M Access to Key Management System Using Plug-in](#)

Describes how to access key management systems using plug-ins.

[Appendix N Deploying Virtual Machines by Cloning](#)

Describes installing Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres on a virtual machine, cloning the virtual machine, and deploying a new virtual machine.

**Export restrictions**

Exportation/release of this document may require necessary procedures in accordance with the regulations of your resident country and/or US export control laws.

**Issue date and version**

Edition 1.0: July 2024
------------------------

**Copyright**

Copyright 2015-2024 Fujitsu Limited



# Contents

---

Chapter 1 Overview of Installation.....	1
1.1 Features that can be Installed.....	1
1.2 Installation Types.....	1
1.2.1 New Installation.....	1
1.2.2 Reinstallation.....	1
1.2.3 Multi-Version Installation.....	1
1.3 Installation Procedure.....	1
1.3.1 Installation in Interactive Mode.....	2
1.3.2 Installation in Silent Mode.....	2
1.4 Uninstallation.....	2
Chapter 2 Operating Environment.....	3
2.1 Required Operating System.....	3
2.2 Related Software.....	7
2.3 Excluded Software.....	8
2.4 Required Patches.....	8
2.5 Hardware Environment.....	8
2.6 Disk Space Required for Installation.....	8
2.7 Supported System Environment.....	9
2.7.1 TCP/IP Protocol.....	9
2.7.2 File System.....	9
2.8 PostgreSQL Version Used for Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.....	10
2.9 Notes on Using Streaming Replication.....	10
2.10 Key Management System Requirements.....	10
2.10.1 To Connect to a key Management System Using the KMIP Protocol.....	10
2.10.2 To Connect to a Key Management System Using a Plug-in.....	11
Chapter 3 Installation.....	12
3.1 Pre-installation Tasks.....	12
3.2 Installation in Interactive Mode.....	14
3.3 Installation in Silent Mode.....	16
Chapter 4 Setup.....	18
4.1 Operating Method Types and Selection.....	18
4.2 Preparations for Setup.....	19
4.2.1 Creating an Instance Administrator.....	19
4.2.2 Preparing Directories for Resource Deployment.....	19
4.2.3 Estimating Resources.....	22
4.2.4 Configuring Corefile Names.....	22
4.3 Creating Instances.....	23
4.3.1 Using WebAdmin.....	23
4.3.1.1 Before Using WebAdmin.....	23
4.3.1.2 Logging in to WebAdmin.....	24
4.3.1.3 Creating an Instance.....	24
4.3.1.4 Changing Instance Settings.....	25
4.3.1.4.1 Instance configuration.....	26
4.3.1.4.2 Changing client authentication information.....	26
4.3.1.4.3 Editing instance information.....	27
4.3.1.5 Importing Instances.....	27
4.3.2 Using the initdb Command.....	28
4.3.2.1 Editing Kernel Parameters.....	28
4.3.2.2 Creating an Instance.....	28
4.4 Configuring Remote Connections.....	31
4.4.1 When an Instance was Created with WebAdmin.....	31
4.4.2 When an Instance was Created with the initdb Command.....	31
4.5 Other Settings.....	32

4.5.1 Error Log Settings.....	32
4.5.2 Configuring Automatic Start and Stop of an Instance.....	33
4.5.3 Settings when Using the Features Compatible with Oracle Databases.....	34
4.5.4 LDAP Authentication File Settings.....	34
4.5.5 Setting the server keytab file for GSSAPI authentication.....	34
4.5.6 Settings for Using Legacy OpenSSL Providers.....	35
4.6 Integration with Message-Monitoring Software.....	35
4.7 Setting Up and Removing OSS.....	36
4.7.1 oracle_fdw.....	36
4.7.1.1 Setting Up oracle_fdw.....	36
4.7.1.2 Removing oracle_fdw.....	37
4.7.2 pg_bigm.....	37
4.7.2.1 Setting Up pg_bigm.....	37
4.7.2.2 Removing pg_bigm.....	37
4.7.3 pg_hint_plan.....	38
4.7.3.1 Setting Up pg_hint_plan.....	38
4.7.3.2 Removing pg_hint_plan.....	38
4.7.4 pg_dbms_stats.....	39
4.7.4.1 Setting Up pg_dbms_stats.....	39
4.7.4.2 Removing pg_dbms_stats.....	39
4.7.5 pg_repack.....	40
4.7.5.1 Setting Up pg_repack.....	40
4.7.5.2 Removing pg_repack.....	40
4.7.6 pg_rman.....	40
4.7.6.1 Setting Up pg_rman.....	40
4.7.6.2 Removing pg_rman.....	41
4.7.7 pg_statsinfo.....	41
4.7.7.1 Setting Up pg_statsinfo.....	41
4.7.7.2 Removing pg_statsinfo.....	42
4.7.8 pgBadger.....	43
4.7.8.1 Setting Up pgBadger.....	43
4.7.8.2 Removing pgBadger.....	43
4.7.9 Pgpool-II.....	43
4.7.9.1 Setting Up Pgpool-II.....	43
4.7.9.2 Removing Pgpool-II.....	43
4.7.10 pgBackRest.....	44
4.7.10.1 Setting Up pgBackRest.....	44
4.7.10.2 Removing pgBackRest.....	44
4.7.10.3 Servers to which pgBackRest can connect.....	44
4.7.11 Build with PGXS.....	45
4.7.11.1 Using the Default Version of llvm.....	45
4.7.11.2 Using a Non-Default Version of llvm.....	45
4.7.11.3 Without llvm.....	45
4.7.11.4 Setting DT_RUNPATH.....	45
4.7.12 Build without PGXS.....	46
4.8 Deleting Instances.....	46
4.8.1 Using WebAdmin.....	46
4.8.2 Using Server Commands.....	47
Chapter 5 Uninstallation.....	48
5.1 Uninstallation in Interactive Mode.....	48
5.2 Uninstallation in Silent Mode.....	50
Appendix A Recommended WebAdmin Environments.....	52
A.1 Recommended Browser Settings .....	52
A.2 How to Set Up the Pop-up Blocker.....	52
Appendix B Setting Up and Removing WebAdmin.....	53

B.1 Setting Up WebAdmin.....	53
B.1.1 Setting Up WebAdmin.....	53
B.1.2 Starting the Web Server Feature of WebAdmin.....	54
B.1.3 Stopping the Web Server Feature of WebAdmin.....	54
B.2 Removing WebAdmin.....	55
B.3 Using an External Repository for WebAdmin.....	55
B.4 Using the WebAdmin Auto-Refresh Feature.....	56
Appendix C WebAdmin Disallow User Inputs Containing Hazardous Characters.....	57
Appendix D Configuring Parameters.....	58
Appendix E Estimating Database Disk Space Requirements.....	62
E.1 Estimating Table Size Requirements.....	62
E.2 Estimating Index Size Requirements.....	63
E.3 Sizes of Data Types.....	64
E.3.1 Sizes of Fixed-Length Data Types.....	64
E.3.2 Sizes of Variable-Length Data Types.....	65
E.3.3 Sizes of Array Data Types.....	65
E.3.4 Number of Bytes per Character.....	66
E.4 Estimating Transaction Log Space Requirements.....	66
E.5 Estimating Archive Log Space Requirements.....	66
E.6 Estimating Backup Disk Space Requirements.....	66
E.7 Estimating VCI Disk Space Requirements.....	66
Appendix F Estimating Memory Requirements.....	68
F.1 Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Memory Requirements.....	68
F.2 Database Multiplexing Memory Requirements.....	70
F.3 VCI Memory Requirements.....	70
F.4 High-Speed Data Load Memory Requirements.....	72
F.5 Global Meta Cache Memory Requirements.....	72
Appendix G Quantitative Limits.....	73
Appendix H Configuring Kernel Parameters.....	78
Appendix I Determining the Preferred WebAdmin Configuration.....	79
I.1 WebAdmin Configurations.....	79
I.1.1 Single-Server Configuration.....	79
I.1.2 Multiserver Configuration.....	79
I.2 Installing WebAdmin in a Single-Server Configuration.....	80
I.3 Installing WebAdmin in a Multiserver Configuration.....	81
Appendix J System Configuration when using Pgpool-II.....	82
J.1 Pgpool-II Configuration.....	82
J.1.1 Single-Machine Configuration.....	82
J.1.2 Two-Machine Configuration.....	83
J.1.3 Three-Machine Configuration.....	83
J.2 Installing Pgpool-II.....	83
J.3 Pgpool-II Setup.....	84
J.3.1 Setting Environment Variables.....	84
J.3.2 Configuration file.....	84
J.3.2.1 Configuring pgpool.conf.....	84
J.3.2.2 Using Configuration Files.....	84
Appendix K Supported contrib Modules and Extensions Provided by External Projects.....	85
Appendix L Procedure when Modifying the JRE Installation.....	86
L.1 When Using WebAdmin.....	86
L.2 When Performing Database Multiplexing.....	86

Appendix M Access to Key Management System Using Plug-in.....	88
M.1 What to do with Plug-ins.....	88
M.2 Where the Plug-in is Stored.....	88
M.3 Invoking the Plug-in.....	88
M.4 Passing Confidential Information to Plug-ins.....	88
M.5 Calling Convention.....	88
M.5.1 Key Verification.....	88
M.5.2 Encryption.....	89
M.5.3 Decryption.....	90
Appendix N Deploying Virtual Machines by Cloning.....	92
N.1 If you are installing only.....	92
N.2 If you are creating an instance.....	92
Index.....	93

# Chapter 1 Overview of Installation

This chapter provides an overview of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres installation.

## 1.1 Features that can be Installed

Each Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres feature is installed on the machine that was used to build the database environment.

The following table shows the relationship between the product to be installed and the features that can be installed.

Feature that can be installed	Product name	
	AE	SE
Basic feature (server feature, client feature)	Y	Y

Y: Can be installed

## 1.2 Installation Types

The following installation types are available for Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres:

- New installation
- Reinstallation
- Multi-version installation

### 1.2.1 New Installation

In initial installation, Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres is installed for the first time.

### 1.2.2 Reinstallation

Perform reinstallation to repair installed program files that have become unusable for any reason.

### 1.2.3 Multi-Version Installation

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres products can be installed on the same server if the product version (indicated by "x" in "xSPz") is different from that of any version of the product that is already installed.

## 1.3 Installation Procedure

The following installation procedures are available for Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres:

- Installation in interactive mode
- Installation in silent mode

Select the installation procedure that corresponds to your environment.



#### Note

If you have antivirus software installed, the server may crash, fail to start, or stop responding, during installation or when starting up after installation. Set scan exception settings for the installation directory and resource allocation directory so that the files in these directories are not scanned for viruses.

### **1.3.1 Installation in Interactive Mode**

---

Interactive mode enables installation to be performed while the required information is entered interactively.

In the interactive mode installation, the installation state of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres is determined automatically. Install Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres using one of the following installation types in accordance with the installation state:

- New installation
- Reinstallation
- Multi-version installation

### **1.3.2 Installation in Silent Mode**

---

Silent mode enables installation to be performed without the need to enter any information interactively.

New installations and multi-version installations can be performed in silent mode.

## **1.4 Uninstallation**

---

Uninstallation removes the system files of the installed Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

## Chapter 2 Operating Environment

This chapter describes the operating environment required to use Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.



See

Refer to "Operating Environment" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Client when installing the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres client feature at the same time.

### 2.1 Required Operating System

One of the operating systems shown below is required in order to use Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

- RHEL8.2 or later minor version
- RHEL9.2 or later minor version
- SLES 15 SP3 or later minor version



Note

SLES cannot be used if performing failover operation integrated with PRIMECLUSTER.



Information

- The following packages are required for operations on RHEL8.

Package name	Remarks
alsa-lib	-
audit-libs	-
bzip2-libs	Required when using pgBackRest.
cyrus-sasl-lib	-
gdb	Required to run FJQSS.
pcp-system-tools	Required when using parallel scan.
glibc	-
glibc.i686	-
iputils	Required for Mirroring Controller.
libnsl2	-
libc	Provides collation support. Install 60.x.
libgcc	-
libmemcached	Required when using Pgpool-II.
libseline	Required for sepysql.
libstdc++	-
libtool-ltdl	Required when using ODBC drivers.
libzstd	-

Package name	Remarks
llvm	<p>Versions 17.0.x, 16.0.x, 15.0.x, 14.0.x, 13.0.x, 12.0.x, 11.0.x, 10.0.x, or 9.0.x of llvm is required to run SQL with runtime compilation (just-in-time compilation).</p> <p>Install the package that contains libLLVM-17.so, llibLLVM-16.so, llibLLVM-15.so, llibLLVM-14.so, libLLVM-13.so, libLLVM-12.so, libLLVM-11.so, libLLVM-10.so, or libLLVM-9.so.</p> <p>For example, version 17.0.x of "llvm-libs" published with Application Streams includes libLLVM-17.so.</p> <p>By default, version 17.0.x is used.</p> <p>If you use a version other than 17.0.x, specify the version you want to use in the jit_provider parameter in postgresql.conf.</p> <p>For example, use llvmljit-vsn16 when using version 16.0.x. Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres uses runtime compilation by default. If you do not want to use runtime compilation, turn off the jit parameter in postgresql.conf. You do not need to install llvm if you turn off the jit parameter.</p> <p>If the jit parameter is on and llvm is not installed, an error may occur during SQL execution. For more information about runtime compilation, see "Just-in-Time Compilation (JIT)" in "PostgreSQL Documentation".</p>
libcgroup-tools	Required when using parallel scan.
lz4-libs	-
ncurses-libs	-
net-tools	-
nss-softokn-freebl	-
pam	Required when using PAM authentication.
perl-libs	Required when using PL/Perl. Install 5.26.
protobuf-c	Required if using the Transparent Data Encryption feature when using a key management system as a keystore. Install 1.3.0.
python3	Required when using PL/Python based on Python 3. Install 3.6.x .
redhat-lsb	-
rsync	Required when using Pgpool-II.
sudo	-
sysstat	Required when using FJQSS. Set up the sar command after installation.
tcl	Required when using PL/Tcl. Install 8.6.
unzip	-
xz-libs	-
zlib	-

- The following packages are required for operations on RHEL9.



Package name	Remarks
alsa-lib	-
audit-libs	-
bzip2-libs	Required when using pgBackRest.
cyrus-sasl-lib	-
gdb	Required to run FJQSS.
pcp-system-tools	Required when using parallel scan.
glibc	-
glibc.i686	-
iputils	Required for Mirroring Controller.
libnsl2	-
libcuc	Provides collation support. Install 67.x.
libgcc	-
libmemcached-awesome	Required when using Pgpool-II.
libselenium	Required for sepgsql.
libstdc++	-
libtool-ldl	Required when using ODBC drivers.
libzstd	-
llvm	<p>Versions 17.0.x, 16.0.x, or 15.0.x of llvm is required to run SQL with runtime compilation (just-in-time compilation).</p> <p>Install the package that contains libLLVM-17.so, libLLVM-16.so, or libLLVM-15.so.</p> <p>For example, version 17.0.x of "llvm-libs " published with Application Streams includes libLLVM-17.so.</p> <p>By default, version 17.0.x is used.</p> <p>If you use a version other than 17.0.x, specify the version you want to use in the jit_provider parameter in postgresql.conf.</p> <p>For example, use llvmjit-vsn16 when using version 16.0.x.</p> <p>Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres is configured to use runtime compilation by default. If you do not want to use runtime compilation, turn off the jit parameter in postgresql.conf. If you turn off the jit parameter, you do not need to install llvm.</p> <p>If the jit parameter is on and llvm is not installed, an error may occur during SQL execution. For more information about runtime compilation, see "Just-in-Time Compilation (JIT) " in the PostgreSQL Documentation.</p>
lz4-libs	-
ncurses-libs	-
net-tools	-
nss-softoken-freebl	-
pam	Required when using PAM authentication.

Package name	Remarks
perl-libs	Required when using PL/Perl. Install 5.32.
protobuf-c	Required if using the Transparent Data Encryption feature when using a key management system as a keystore. Install 1.3.3.
python3	Required when using PL/Python based on Python 3. Install 3.9.x .
rsync	Required when using Pgpool-II.
sudo	-
sysstat	Required when using FJQSS. Set up the sar command after installation.
tcl	Required when using PL/Tcl. Install 8.6.
unzip	-
xz-libs	-
zlib	-

- The following packages are required for operations on SLES 15.

Package name	Remarks
dstat	Required when using parallel scan.
gdb	-
glibc	-
glibc-32bit	-
iputils	Required for Mirroring Controller.
JRE 8	Required when using the installer, database multiplexing, and WebAdmin. The following JREs are available: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Oracle JRE Use update 31 or later of the 64-bit version.</li> <li>- OpenJDK Past the Java TCK (Technology Compatibility Kit)</li> </ul>
libasound2	-
libaudit1	-
libbz2-1	Required when using pgBackRest.
libfreebl3	-
libcicu	Provides collation support. Install 65.
libgcc	-
libltdl7	Required when using ODBC drivers.
liblz4-1	-
liblzma5	-
libmemcached	Required when using Pgpool-II.
libncurses5	-

Package name	Remarks
libstdc++	-
libz1	-
libzstd1	-
llvm	<p>Version 7.0.x of llvm is required to run SQL with runtime compilation (just-in-time compilation). Install the package that contains libLLVM.so.7. For example, the "libLLVM7" published in SLE-Module-Basesystem15-SP3-Updates includes libLLVM.so.7.</p> <p>Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres uses runtime compilation by default. If you do not want to use runtime compilation, turn off the jit parameter in postgresql.conf. You do not need to install llvm if you turn off the jit parameter.</p> <p>If the jit parameter is on and llvm is not installed, an error may occur during SQL execution. For more information about runtime compilation, see "Just-in-Time Compilation (JIT)" in "PostgreSQL Documentation".</p>
LLVM-libs	Install version 5.0.2 or later.
net-tools	-
pam	Required when using PAM authentication.
perl	Required when using PL/Perl. Install 5.26.
protobuf-c	Required if using the Transparent Data Encryption feature when using a key management system as a keystore. Install 1.3.2.
python3	Required when using PL/Python based on Python 3. Install 3.6.x.
rsync	Required when using Pgpool-II.
sudo	-
sysstat	Set up the sar command after installation.
tcl	Required when using PL/Tcl. Install 8.6.
unzip	-

## 2.2 Related Software

The following table lists the software required to use Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

Table 2.1 Related software

No.	Product name	Version	Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres product name		Remarks
			AE	SE	
1	PRIMECLUSTER (*1)	4.5A10 (*1)	Y	Y	Mandatory when performing failover operation integrated with PRIMECLUSTER.

\*1: The applicable products are shown below:

- PRIMECLUSTER Enterprise Edition
- PRIMECLUSTER HA Server

The following table lists client that can be connected to the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres server feature.

Table 2.2 Connectable client

OS	Product name
Windows	Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Client 16 or later
Linux	

The following table lists server assistant that can be connected to the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres server feature.

Table 2.3 Connectable server assistant

OS	Product name
Linux	Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Server Assistant 16 or later
Windows	

## 2.3 Excluded Software

---

This section describes excluded software.

### Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres cannot be installed if all the following conditions are met:

- The product version (indicated by "x" in "x SPz") of the product to be installed is the same as that of the installed product
- The editions are different

### Example

In the following cases, Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres cannot be installed as an exclusive product:

- The installed product is Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Standard Edition (64bit) 16
- The product to be installed is Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Advanced Edition (64bit) 16

### Other products

There are no exclusive products.

## 2.4 Required Patches

---

There are no required patches.

## 2.5 Hardware Environment

---

The following hardware is required to use Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

### Memory

At least 512 MB of memory is required.

## 2.6 Disk Space Required for Installation

---

The following table shows the disk space requirements for new installation of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres. If necessary, increase the size of the file system.

## RHEL

Directory	Required disk space (Unit: MB)
/etc	1 + 1 (*1)
/var	1 + 2 (*1) + 1 (*2)
/opt	300 (*1) + 1 (*2)
Installation destination of the server	1120
Installation destination of WebAdmin	800
Installation destination of the client (64-bit)	180
Installation destination of Pgpool-II	35
Installation destination of pgBackRest	40

\*1: Required for the installation of the Uninstall (middleware) tool.

\*2: Required for the installation of FJQSS.

## SLES

Directory	Required disk space (Unit: MB)
/etc	1 + 1 (*1)
/var	1 + 2 (*1) + 1 (*2)
/opt	300 (*1) + 1 (*2)
Installation destination of the server	260
Installation destination of WebAdmin	390
Installation destination of the client (64-bit)	180
Installation destination of Pgpool-II	35
Installation destination of pgBackRest	40

\*1: Required for the installation of the Uninstall (middleware) tool.

\*2: Required for the installation of FJQSS.

## 2.7 Supported System Environment

---

This section describes the supported system environment.

### 2.7.1 TCP/IP Protocol

---

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres supports version 4 and 6 (IPv4 and IPv6) of TCP/IP protocols.



#### Note

Do not use link-local addresses if TCP/IP protocol version 6 addresses are used.

### 2.7.2 File System

---

All file systems with a POSIX-compliant interface are supported.

However, for stable system operation, the disk where the database is deployed must use a highly reliable file system. Consider this aspect when selecting the file system to be used.

The recommended file system is "ext4".

## 2.8 PostgreSQL Version Used for Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

---

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres is based on PostgreSQL 16.

## 2.9 Notes on Using Streaming Replication

---

To use streaming replication, build the primary server and all standby servers using the same Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres version (\*1).

\*1: The product version is indicated by "x" in the notation "x SPz".



Streaming replication cannot be used in combination with Open Source PostgreSQL.

## 2.10 Key Management System Requirements

---

Describes the requirements for a key management system.

### 2.10.1 To Connect to a key Management System Using the KMIP Protocol

---

If you use a key management system as a keystore to use the Transparent Data Encryption feature, the following conditions must be met.

#### Protocol

Key management systems must use the Key Management Interoperability Protocol (KMIP) Version 1.4 protocol.

#### Encryption Key

The encryption key used must be able to be created or brought into the KMIP server under the following conditions.

- AES 256 bit symmetric key
- A Managed Object that meets the following criteria:
  - Cryptographic Algorithm : AES
  - Cryptographic Length : 256
- Key not wrapped

#### Operation

The following operations using the KMIP protocol must be supported:

- Get operation

Encryption keys can be returned in Key Format Type: Raw format.

#### Client authentication

You must be able to authenticate and authorize clients in the following ways:

- The registered client certificate can authenticate the client and authorize access to the encryption key.

#### Quantitative Limits

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres can receive a maximum response size of 8192 bytes from a key management system. Any further response results in an error.

If the private key file used for the client certificate is encrypted, the maximum length of the passphrase used for encryption is 1023 bytes.

## 2.10.2 To Connect to a Key Management System Using a Plug-in

---

If you are using a key management system that requires a connection using a protocol other than KMIP, you will need an adapter that converts the request from the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres into a request format that the key management system can accept.

By preparing the adapter and registering it as a plug-in to the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres, you can use the key management system as a keystore.

The adapter must be implemented to meet the requirements specified by the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

The key management system must be capable of meeting the requirements of the adapter.

See "[Appendix M Access to Key Management System Using Plug-in](#)" for adapter requirements.

### Quantitative Limits

The maximum length of the secret, used for example to pass passwords and other information to plug-ins, is 4095 bytes.

# Chapter 3 Installation

This chapter explains each of the installation procedures of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

## 3.1 Pre-installation Tasks

Check the system environment below before installing Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

### Check the disk space

Ensure that there is sufficient disk space to install Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

Refer to "[2.6 Disk Space Required for Installation](#)" for information on the required disk space.

Reconfigure the disk partition if disk space is insufficient.

### Set JAVA\_HOME (SLES only)

Ensure that JRE 8 is installed, and export the JAVA\_HOME environment variable.

```
#export JAVA_HOME="Jre8InstallDir"
```

Refer to "[Appendix L Procedure when Modifying the JRE Installation](#)" for information on modifying JRE after installation.

### Executable Users

Installation and uninstallation is performed by superuser.

On the system, run the following command to become superuser.

```
$ su -  
Password:*****
```

### Check the installed products and determine the installation method

Using the operation shown below, start Uninstall (middleware), and check the installed products.

Example

```
# /opt/FJSVc/cimanager.sh -c  
Loading Uninstaller...  
  
Currently installed products  
1. productName  
2. productName  
3. productName  
4. productName  
5: productName  
  
Type [number] to select the software you want to uninstall.  
[number,q]  
=>q  
  
Exiting Uninstaller.
```

If Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres is already installed, determine which installation method to use:

- Reinstallation
- Multi-version installation



## Remove applied updates

If you perform reinstallation as the installation method, remove applied updates using the procedure shown below.



If a product is installed without removing applied updates, the following problems will occur:

- Performing reinstallation

If an update with the same update and version number is applied, an error informing you that the update has already been applied is displayed.

Perform reinstallation after removing the update.

### 1. Display the applied updates

Execute the following command to display the applied updates:

```
# /opt/FJSVfupde/bin/uam showup
```

### 2. Remove the updates

Execute the command below to remove the updates. If an update with the same update number was applied more than once, the updates are removed in order, starting from the highest version number.

```
# /opt/FJSVfupde/bin/uam remove -i update-number
```



If the installation directory/lib is set in the environment variable LD\_LIBRARY\_PATH for the running user, remove the installation directory/lib from LD\_LIBRARY\_PATH.

## Determine the preferred WebAdmin configuration

Starting with Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 9.5, WebAdmin can be installed in two configurations:

- Single-server
- Multiserver



Refer to "[Appendix I Determining the Preferred WebAdmin Configuration](#)" for details.

## Determining the Pgpool-II System Configuration

The system configuration when using Pgpool-II is as follows:

- Place on database server
- Place on application server
- Place on dedicated server



Refer to "[Appendix J System Configuration when using Pgpool-II](#)".

## 3.2 Installation in Interactive Mode

---

Install according to the following procedure:



- The following characters can be used as input values:

Alphanumeric characters, hyphens, commas and forward slashes

- When reinstalling the product, back up the following folder in which the WebAdmin instance management information is stored:

`webAdminInstallFolder/data/fepwa`

Follow the procedure below to perform the backup.

1. Stop the WebAdmin server. Refer to "[B.1.3 Stopping the Web Server Feature of WebAdmin](#)" for details.
2. Back up the following folder:

`webAdminInstallFolder/data/fepwa`

Replace the above folder with the backed up folder when the reinstallation is complete.



For installation in interactive mode, default values are set for the installation information. The following settings can be changed for a new installation or a multi-version installation:

- Installation directory
- WebAdmin setup information, if WebAdmin is selected

To change the port number, confirm that it is an unused port number between 1024 and 32767.

### 1. Stop applications and programs

If the installation method is the following, all applications and programs that use the product must be stopped:

- Reinstallation

Before starting the installation, stop the following:

- Applications that use the product
- Connection Manager
- Instance
- Web server feature of WebAdmin

Execute the `WebAdminStop` command to stop the Web server feature of WebAdmin.

#### Example

If WebAdmin is installed in `/opt/fsepv<x>webadmin`:

```
# cd /opt/fsepv<x>webadmin/sbin
# ./WebAdminStop
```

- Mirroring Controller

Execute the `mc_ctl` command with the stop mode option specified and stop the Mirroring Controller.

#### Example

```
$ mc_ctl stop -M /mdir/instl
```

- pgBadger
- Pgpool-II
- pgBackRest

## 2. Mount the DVD drive

Insert the server program DVD into the DVD drive, and run the command given below.

#### Example

```
# mount -t iso9660 -r -o loop /dev/dvd /media/dvd
```

Here /dev/dvd is the device name for the DVD drive (which may vary depending on your environment), and /media/dvd is the mount point (which may need to be created before calling the command).



If the DVD was mounted automatically using the automatic mount daemon (autofs), "noexec" is set as the mount option, so the installer may fail to start. In this case, use the mount command to remount the DVD correctly, and then run the installation. Note that the mount options of a mounted DVD can be checked by executing the mount command without any arguments.

## 3. Run the installation

Execute the following command:

#### Example

```
# cd /media/dvd
# ./install.sh
```

In the example above, /media/dvd is the DVD mount point.

## 4. Select the product for installation

The list of installation target products is displayed.

Type the number for the product to be installed, or "all", and press Enter.



- The Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres server component and WebAdmin can be installed on the same machine by selecting the "Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres server component" and the "WebAdmin component".
- Pgpool-II to be installed on the same server as the database server, you can install it on the same machine by selecting "Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Server Component" and "Pgpool-II component". Pgpool-II to be installed on the same server as the application server, or on a dedicated server that is different from the database server and application server, see "[Appendix J System Configuration when using Pgpool-II](#)".
- If the selected product has been installed, a window for selecting reinstallation or multi-version installation is displayed for each product. Follow the on-screen instructions to select the installation method.

## 5. Check the settings

The window for checking the installation information is displayed.

Type "y" and press Enter to start the installation.

To change the settings, type "c", press Enter, and follow the on-screen instructions. This option is not displayed if there is no information that can be modified.

If you have not set up WebAdmin during installation, refer to "[Appendix B Setting Up and Removing WebAdmin](#)" for details.

## 6. Check the changed settings

If the installation information has been modified, the new installation information is displayed.

Type "y" and press Enter to start the installation.

To change the settings again, type "c" and press Enter.

## 7. Display the installation status

When the installation is started, the installation status is displayed.

Note that even if WebAdmin setup fails, the process will continue.

If the following message is displayed, manually execute WebAdmin setup after installation is completed.

Refer to "[B.1 Setting Up WebAdmin](#)" for information on the WebAdmin setup procedure.

```
Starting setup.  
  
Setting up WebAdmin.  
  
ERROR: WebAdmin setup failed.
```

## 8. Finish the installation

When the installation is complete, a message is displayed showing the status.

If installation was successful, a message like the one shown below is displayed:

```
Installed successfully.
```



.....  
If an error occurs during the installation, read the error message and remove the cause of the error, and then reexecute the install.sh command.  
.....

# 3.3 Installation in Silent Mode

Installation in silent mode can be performed only when the installation method is one of the following:

- New installation
- Multi-version installation



.....  
Refer to the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres product website for information on installation in silent mode, such as the installation parameters and error messages.  
.....

The installation procedure is described below.

## 1. Mount the DVD drive

Insert the server program DVD into the DVD drive, and run the command given below.

Example

```
# mount -t iso9660 -r -o loop /dev/dvd /media/dvd
```

Here `/dev/dvd` is the device name for the DVD drive (which may vary depending on your environment), and `/media/dvd` is the mount point (which may need to be created before calling the command).



If the DVD was mounted automatically using the automatic mount daemon (autofs), "noexec" is set as the mount option, so the installer may fail to start. In this case, use the mount command to remount the DVD correctly, and then run the installation. Note that the mount options of a mounted DVD can be checked by executing the mount command without any arguments.

## 2. Create an installation parameters CSV file

Consider the features that will be required for system operations, and then create an installation parameters CSV file that uses the following specification format.

```
sectionName, parameterName, value
sectionName, parameterName, value
:
```



The template for the installation parameters CSV file is "*mountPoint/sample/sample.csv*".

## 3. Run the installation

Execute the following command:

Example

```
# cd /media/dvd
# ./silent.sh /home/work/inspara.csv
```

In the example above, `/media/dvd` is the DVD mount point, and `/home/work/inspara.csv` is the installation parameter CSV.

If the installer ends in an error, a message is output to the log file and return values are returned.

## Chapter 4 Setup

This chapter describes the setup procedures to be performed after installation completes.

### 4.1 Operating Method Types and Selection

This section describes how to operate Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

There are two methods of managing Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres operations.

- Simple operation management using a web-based GUI tool (WebAdmin)

Suitable when using frequently used basic settings and operations for operation management.

This method allows you to perform simple daily tasks such as starting the system before beginning business, and stopping the system when business is over, using an intuitive operation.

- Advanced operation management using server commands

Operations that use Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres or PostgreSQL server commands or server applications.

When operating in a system that is automated by operation management middleware (Systemwalker Centric Manager, for example), this method allows you to use more detailed settings and operations and perform higher level operation management.

Refer to Reference and the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on server commands and server applications.

Select one that suits your purposes.

#### How WebAdmin and Server Commands Work

Here are the differences between using WebAdmin and server commands:

Operation		Operation with the WebAdmin	Operation with commands
Setup	Creating an instance	WebAdmin is used. The server machine capacity, and the optimum parameter for operations using WebAdmin, are set automatically.  Instances that you create and manage in WebAdmin are registered in the WebAdmin administrative information, so you must delete the instance from WebAdmin.	The configuration file is edited directly using the initdb command.
	Creating a standby instance	WebAdmin is used.  WebAdmin performs a base backup of the source instance and creates a standby instance.	A standby instance is created using the pg_basebackup command.
	Changing the configuration files	You can change the values in the configuration file on the WebAdmin screen.	The configuration file is edited directly.
Starting and stopping an instance		You can start and stop with one click from the WebAdmin screen.	The pg_ctl command is used.
Creating a database		This is defined using pgAdmin of the GUI tool, or using the psql command or the application after specifying the DDL statement.	
Backing up the database		WebAdmin, or the pgx_dmpall command, is used.  It cannot be used interchangeably with operation using server	It is recommended that the pgx_dmpall command be used. Recovery to the latest database can be performed.

Operation		Operation with the WebAdmin	Operation with commands
		commands or server applications. If used, WebAdmin will not be able to properly manage the instance.  If you are backing up by using the copy command with the pgx_dmpall command, select the command operation method.	
Database recovery		You can recover using a backup taken with WebAdmin or the pgx_dmpall command.	To use the backup that was performed using the pgx_dmpall command, the pgx_rcvall command is used.
Monitoring	Database errors	The status in the WebAdmin window can be checked. (*1)	The messages that are output to the database server log are monitored (*1)
	Disk space	The status in the WebAdmin window can be checked. A warning will be displayed if the free space falls below 20%. (*1)	This is monitored using the df command of the operating system, for example. (*1)
	Connection status	This can be checked using pgAdmin of the GUI tool, or referencing pg_stat_activity of the standard statistics view from psql or the application.	

\*1: This can be used together with system log monitoring using operations management middleware (Systemwalker Centric Manager, for example).



See

Refer to "Periodic Operations" and "Actions when an Error Occurs" in the Operation Guide for information on monitoring and database recovery.

## 4.2 Preparations for Setup

This section describes the preparation required before setting up Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

### 4.2.1 Creating an Instance Administrator

Decide which OS user account will be assigned the instance administrator role. You can assign it to a new user or to an existing one, but you cannot assign it to the OS superuser (root).

When operating with WebAdmin, if you change the password for the OS user account, use ALTER ROLE WITH PASSWORD to change the instance administrator password as well.

The following example shows an OS user account with the name "fsepuser" being assigned the instance administrator role.

Example

```
# useradd fsepuser
# passwd fsepuser
```

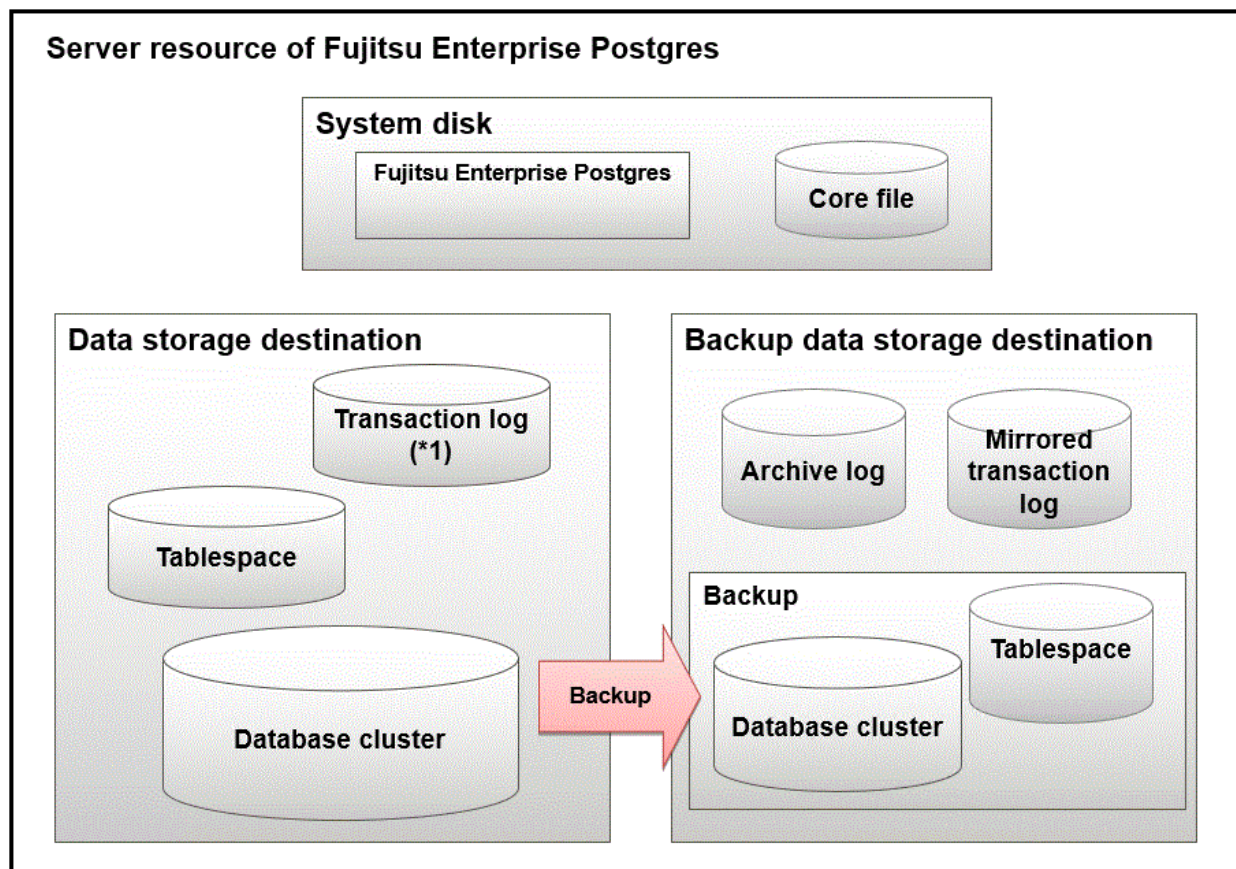
### 4.2.2 Preparing Directories for Resource Deployment

Prepare the directories required when creating instances.

## Considerations when deploying resources

The disk configuration on the resource deployment destination is important, because it affects not only recovery following disk corruption, but normal operation as well. The points for determining the disk configuration are as follows:

1. If the backup data storage destination and the data storage destination are both lost, it will not be possible to recover the data, so deploy them to separate disks.
2. To shorten the recovery time following a single disk fault, deploy the system disk and data storage destination to separate disks.
3. The backup data storage destination requires at least double the capacity of the data storage destination, so deploy it to the disk with the most space available.
4. When large amounts of data are updated, the write-to load for the data storage destination, transaction log storage destination, and backup data storage destination (mirrored transaction log) will also be great. For this reason, deploy them to separate disks, out of consideration for performance.



\*1: To distribute the I/O load, place the transaction log on a different disk from the data storage destination.

Resource	Role
Database cluster	The area where the database is stored. It is a collection of databases managed by an instance.
Tablespace	Stores table files and index files in a separate area from the database cluster. Specify a space other than that under the database cluster.
Transaction log	Stores log information in preparation for a crash recovery or rollback. This is the same as the WAL (Write Ahead Log).
Archive log	Stores log information for recovery



Resource	Role
Mirrored transaction log (mirrored WAL)	Enables a database cluster to be restored to the state immediately before an error even if both the database cluster and transaction log fail when performing backup/recovery operations using the <code>pgx_dmpall</code> command or WebAdmin.
Corefile	Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres process corefile output when an error occurs with a Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres process.

#### Examples of disk deployment

The following are examples of disk deployment:

Number of disks	Disk	Deployment
3	System disk	Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres program
		Corefile
	Connected physical disk	Data storage destination, transaction log storage destination
	Connected physical disk	Backup data storage destination
2	System disk	Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres program
		Corefile
		Data storage destination, transaction log storage destination
	Connected physical disk	Backup data storage destination

#### Preparing directories

You cannot use directories mounted over the network.

Examples include NFS (Network File System) and CIFS (Common Internet File System).

Do not use these directories unless you are creating tablespaces on a storage device on your network.

The directories to be prepared depend on the way that you create the instances.

#### Using WebAdmin

For WebAdmin, WebAdmin automatically creates the directory during instance creation.

Directory	Description
Data storage destination	Specify in the GUI.
Backup data storage destination	Specify in the GUI. Place them on a disk different from the data storage destination.
Transaction log storage destination	Specify in the GUI. The default is to create in a directory in the data storage destination. When it is necessary to distribute the I/O load for the database data and the transaction log, consider putting the transaction log storage destination on a different disk from the data storage destination
Corefile output destination	WebAdmin generates it automatically, so no specification is required. For more information about directories, refer to " <a href="#">Directory for Core File Output when Using WebAdmin</a> ".

#### Directory for Core File Output when Using WebAdmin

The corefile path is as follows:

```
/var/tmp/fsep_productVersion_WA_architecture/instanceAdminUser_instanceNamePortNumber/core
```

#### product version

Contains the version of the [Server Product Type] that WebAdmin specifies when creating an instance.

If you manage multiple versions, the fsep\_version directory is created for as many versions as you manage.

#### instanceAdminUser

Contains the user name of the OS.

#### PortNumber

Contains the port number of the database server specified when the instance was created.

#### Example:

```
/var/tmp/fsep_160_WA_64/naomi_myinst27599/core
```

To change the output destination, configure the core\_directory and the core\_contents parameters in postgresql.conf. Refer to "Parameters" in the Operation Guide for information on the settings for these parameters.



#### Note

Note that resources placed in /var/tmp that have not been accessed for 30 days or more will be deleted by the default settings of the operating system. Consider excluding them from deletion targets or changing the output destination in the operating system settings.

#### Using the initdb Command

For the initdb command, prepare the directory in advance.

The directories to prepare in advance are:

Directory to be prepared	Required / Optional
Data storage destination	Required
Backup data storage destination	Optional
Transaction log storage destination	Optional
Corefile output destination	Optional

## 4.2.3 Estimating Resources

Estimate the resources to be used on the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

Refer to "[Appendix E Estimating Database Disk Space Requirements](#)" for information on estimating database disk space requirements.

Refer to "[Parameters automatically set by WebAdmin according to the amount of memory](#)" when creating multiple instances with WebAdmin.

Refer to "[Appendix F Estimating Memory Requirements](#)" when creating instances with the initdb command, to estimate memory usage.

## 4.2.4 Configuring Corefile Names

If a process crashes, a corefile for the process will be generated by the operating system. If a corefile is generated with the same name as an existing corefile generated for a different process, the newly-generated corefile will overwrite the previously dumped corefile. To prevent this, configure a unique corefile name for each crash by appending the process ID, program name, and datetime.

Corefile names can be configured using the "kernel.core\_pattern" and "kernel.core\_uses\_pid" kernel parameters.

Refer to the "man page" in "core(5)" for information on how to use these parameters.

Note that with regard to the location for storing corefiles, the operating system settings take precedence over the `core_directory` parameter of `postgresql.conf`.

If you specify `systemd-coredump` as the `core_pattern`, the core file is not placed in the location specified by the `core_directory` parameter. See the `systemd-coredump` (8) man page for the location of core files.

Use `coredumpctl` to retrieve core files. For more information about using `coredumpctl`, see the `coredumpctl` (1) man page.

## 4.3 Creating Instances

---

There are two methods that can be used to create an instance:

- [4.3.1 Using WebAdmin](#)
- [4.3.2 Using the `initdb` Command](#)

### 4.3.1 Using WebAdmin

---

This section describes how to create an instance using WebAdmin.

WebAdmin must be set up correctly before it can be used. Refer to "[B.1 Setting Up WebAdmin](#)" for details. Additionally, if WebAdmin needs to be configured to use an external repository database, refer to "[B.3 Using an External Repository for WebAdmin](#)" for details.

#### 4.3.1.1 Before Using WebAdmin

Learn what you need to know before using WebAdmin.

#### Recommended Browser

- Microsoft Edge (Build 41 or later)

WebAdmin will work with other browsers, such as Firefox and Chrome, however, the look and feel may be different.

Configure your browser to allow cookies and pop-up requests from the server on which Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres is installed. Refer to "[Appendix A Recommended WebAdmin Environments](#)" for information on how to change the pop-up request settings and other recommended settings.

#### Notes on operations

- It will not work correctly if you operate the same instance from multiple WebAdmin screens at the same time.
- If you want to manage multiple versions of an instance, operate with the latest version of WebAdmin.
- It is recommended not to use the browser [Back] and [Forward] navigation buttons, the [Refresh] button, and context-sensitive menus, including equivalent keyboard shortcuts.
- Do not copy and paste or bookmark the URL of the WebAdmin login screen and skip directly.

#### Considerations for Using Transparent Data Encryption

After you create an instance in WebAdmin, follow the documentation for each feature in the Operation Guide for additional setup tasks.

#### About the PostgreSQL Configuration File Relationship

When creating or importing an instance in WebAdmin, set the `log_directory` parameter in `postgresql.conf` to `'/var/tmp/fsep_version/instanceAdminUser_instanceNamePortNumber/log'`.



#### Note

.....

Note that resources placed in `/var/tmp` that have not been accessed for 30 days or more will be deleted by the default settings of the operating system. Therefore, consider excluding instances created using WebAdmin from deletion targets in the operating system settings if you need to stop those instances for a long time.

.....

### 4.3.1.2 Logging in to WebAdmin

This section describes how to log in to WebAdmin.

#### Startup URL for WebAdmin

In the browser address bar, type the startup URL of the WebAdmin window in the following format:

```
http://hostNameOrIpAddress:portNumber/
```

- *hostNameOrIpAddress*: Host name or IP address of the server where WebAdmin is installed.
- *portNumber*: Port number of WebAdmin. The default port number is 27515.
- You cannot specify https for the protocol. Only http can be specified.

The startup screen is displayed. From this window you can log in to WebAdmin or access the product documentation.

#### Logging in to WebAdmin

Click [Launch WebAdmin] in the startup URL window to start WebAdmin and display the login window. Enter the instance administrator user ID (operating system user account name) and password, and log in to WebAdmin. User credential (instance administrator user ID and password) should not contain hazardous characters. Refer to "[Appendix C WebAdmin Disallow User Inputs Containing Hazardous Characters](#)".


### 4.3.1.3 Creating an Instance

This section describes how to create an instance.



#### Information

- WebAdmin creates an instance configuration file, postgresql.conf, and sets kernel parameters to the optimal values for this configuration. Refer to "[Appendix D Configuring Parameters](#)" and "[Appendix H Configuring Kernel Parameters](#)" for more information.
- WebAdmin automatically sets the memory usage assuming you create one instance per machine. If you are creating multiple instances on a single machine, refer to "[Parameters automatically set by WebAdmin according to the amount of memory](#)" to adjust the memory usage after the instance is created.

1. Start WebAdmin, and log in to the database server.
2. In the [Instances] tab, click .
3. Enter the information for the instance to be created.

Enter the following items:

[Host name] and [Operating system credential] should not contain hazardous characters. Refer to "[Appendix C WebAdmin Disallow User Inputs Containing Hazardous Characters](#)".

- [Configuration type]: Whether to create a standalone instance or an instance that is part of a cluster.
- [Server product type]: Sets which of the following instances to create:
  - Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 9.5 Instances
  - Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 9.6 Instances
  - Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 10 Instances
  - Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 11 Instances
  - Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 12 Instances
  - Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 13 Instances

- Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 14 Instances
- Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 15 Instances
- Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 16 Instances

The default is "Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 16".


- [Location]: Whether to create the instance in the server that the current user is logged into, or in a remote server. The default is "Local", which will create the instance in the server machine where WebAdmin is currently running.
- [Instance name]: Name of the database instance to manage

The name must meet the conditions below:

- Maximum of 16 characters
- The first character must be an ASCII alphabetic character
- The other characters must be ASCII alphanumeric characters
- [Instance port]: Port number of the database server
- [Data storage path]: Directory where the database data will be stored
- [Backup]: Whether to enable or disable the WebAdmin backup feature. The default is "Enabled". Select "Disabled" to disable all backup and restore functionality for the instance. If "Enabled" is selected, enter the following item:
  - [Backup storage path]: Directory where the database backup will be stored
- [Transaction log path]: Directory where the transaction log will be stored
- [Encoding]: Database encoding system
- [WAL file size]: Allow the WAL file size to be set when creating an instance. The default is 16 MB if the field is blank. The size specified must be a power of 2 between 1 and 1024. This option is not available for standby instances.

If "Remote" is selected for [Location], enter the following additional items:

- [Host name]: Name of the host where the instance is to be created
- [Operating system credential]: Operating system user name and password for the remote machine where the instance is to be created
- [Remote WebAdmin port for standalone]: Port in which WebAdmin is accessible in the remote machine

4. Click  to create the instance.

If the instance is created successfully, a message indicating the same will be displayed.

5. The instance will be started when it is created successfully.

6. Back up the basic information that was set

Back up the WebAdmin management information periodically to ensure operational continuity when a fault occurs on the system disk. Follow the procedure below to perform the backup.

- Stop the WebAdmin server. Refer to "[B.1.3 Stopping the Web Server Feature of WebAdmin](#)" for details.
- Back up the following directory:

```
webAdminInstallDir/data/fepwa
```

Note that if you are using an external database as your WebAdmin repository, you must also back up the following:

- `webAdminInstallDir/data/remotemetadb.conf`
- Use the database features to back up external databases (if they are created on the system disk).

#### 4.3.1.4 Changing Instance Settings

You can change the information that is set when an instance is created.

Change the following settings to suit the operating and management environment for Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.




Note that this cannot be changed for instances of FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 9.5.

- [Instance configuration](#)
  - Character encoding
  - Communication
  - SQL options
  - Memory
  - Streaming replication
- [Changing client authentication information](#)
- [Editing instance information](#)

### Information

- These settings are the same as the parameters that can be set in the files shown below. Refer to "[Appendix D Configuring Parameters](#)" for information on the equivalence relationship between the item name and the parameter.
  - postgresql.conf
  - pg\_hba.conf
- When [Instance name] or [Instance port] is modified, the log\_directory and core\_directory parameters in postgresql.conf are updated. Also, the specified directories are created if they do not exist. Refer to "[4.3.1.5 Importing Instances](#)" for information on the format of these directories.





#### 4.3.1.4.1 Instance configuration

1. Start WebAdmin and log in to the database server.
2. In the [Instances] tab, click .
3. Click  to change the configuration.
4. Click  to save your changes.

### See

Select a client-side encoding system that can be converted to/from the database encoding system. Refer to "Automatic Character Set Conversion Between Server and Client" in "Server Administration" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on the encoding system combinations that can be converted.

#### 4.3.1.4.2 Changing client authentication information

1. Start WebAdmin and log in to the database server.
2. In the [Instances] tab, click .
- Click  to register new authentication information.
- To change authentication information, select the information, and then click .
- To delete authentication information, select the information, and then click .

#### Notes on changing client authentication information

When creating the instance, do not delete the entry below, because it is a connection required for WebAdmin to monitor the operational status of the database:

Type=local, Database=all, User=all, and Method=md5

#### 4.3.1.4.3 Editing instance information

Use the [Edit instance] page to modify the following items for an instance:


- Instance name
- Port number
- Backup storage path

1. In the [Instances] tab, click . The [Edit instance] page is displayed.

2. Modify the relevant items.

If [Backup storage path] is changed, [Backup management] is enabled. Select the required option:

- Retain existing backup: Create a backup in [Backup storage path] and retain the existing backup in its original location.
- Copy existing backup to new path: Copy the existing backup to [Backup storage path]. A new backup will not be created. The existing backup will be retained in its original location.
- Move existing backup to new path: Move the existing backup to [Backup storage path]. A new backup will not be created.
- Remove existing backup: Create a backup in [Backup storage path]. The existing backup will be removed.

3. Click  to save your changes.

#### 4.3.1.5 Importing Instances

Instances can be created using WebAdmin, or via the command line using the initdb command. Instances created using the initdb command (command line instances) can be managed using WebAdmin, however, they must first be imported into WebAdmin.

You cannot import instances that use the Mirroring Controller.

#### Advance Preparation

- If the following file contains records that span multiple lines, change the record to a single line before importing.
  - pg\_hba.conf
  - pg\_ident.conf
- You must make the following changes to the parameters in postgresql.conf prior to importing the instance in WebAdmin.


Parameter	Requirements
port	The port parameter should be uncommented.

- Delete the values specified for the following parameters. Also, if you have changed the value of the parameter (where the file is stored) from the default, move the file to the data storage directory before importing it.
  - hba\_file parameter (pg\_hba.conf)
  - ident\_file parameter (pg\_ident.conf)

#### Import

This section explains how to import command line instances into WebAdmin.

1. In the [Instances] tab, click . The [Import instance] page is displayed.

2. Enter the information for the instance being imported. Refer to "[4.3.1.3 Creating an Instance](#)" for information on the items that need to be entered.
3. Click  to import the instance.

### Information

The `log_directory` and `core_directory` parameters in `postgresql.conf` are updated during import. Also, the specified directories are created if they do not exist.

The format of these directories is as follows:

```
log_directory: '/var/tmp/fsep_version/instanceAdminUser_instanceNamePortNumber/log'
core_directory: '/var/tmp/fsep_version/instanceAdminUser_instanceNamePortNumber/core'
```

```
version: product version_WA_architecture
instanceAdminUser: operating system user name
PortNumber: port number specified when creating the instance
```

Examples:

```
log_directory: '/var/tmp/fsep_160_WA_64/naomi_myinst27599/log'
core_directory: '/var/tmp/fsep_160_WA_64/naomi_myinst27599/core'
```

## 4.3.2 Using the initdb Command

This section describes the procedure to create an instance using the `initdb` command.

### Note

If a port is blocked (access permissions have not been granted) by a firewall, enable use of the port by granting access. Refer to the vendor document for information on how to grant port access permissions.

Consider the security risks carefully when opening ports.

### 4.3.2.1 Editing Kernel Parameters

Refer to "[Appendix H Configuring Kernel Parameters](#)" prior to editing these settings.

After the settings are complete, check the command specifications of the relevant operating system and restart the system if required.

### 4.3.2.2 Creating an Instance

Create an instance, with the database cluster storage destination specified in the `PGDATA` environment variable or in the `-D` option. Furthermore, the user that executed the `initdb` command becomes the instance administrator.

### Note

- Instances created using the `initdb` command (command line instances) can be managed using WebAdmin, however, they must first be imported into WebAdmin. Refer to "[4.3.1.5 Importing Instances](#)" for details.
- If creating multiple instances, ensure that there is no duplication of port numbers or the directories that store database clusters.

### See

Refer to "initdb" in "Reference" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on the `initdb` command.



The procedure to create an instance is described below.

1. Use the OS user account that you want as the instance administrator.

Connect with the server using the OS user account that you want as the instance administrator.

You cannot use the OS superuser (root).

The following example shows the OS superuser connected to the server being changed to the OS user account "fsepuser".

Example

```
# su fsepuser
```

2. Configure the environment variables

Configure the environment variables in the server with the newly created instance.

Set the following environment variables:

- PATH environment variables

Add the installation directory "/bin".

- MANPATH environment variables

Add the installation directory "/share/man".

Example

The following example configures environment variables when the installation directory is "/opt/fsepv<x>server64".

Note that "<x>" indicates the product version.

sh, bash

```
$ PATH=/opt/fsepv<x>server64/bin:$PATH ; export PATH
$ MANPATH=/opt/fsepv<x>server64/share/man:$MANPATH ; export MANPATH
```

csh, tcsh

```
$ setenv PATH /opt/fsepv<x>server64/bin:$PATH
$ setenv MANPATH /opt/fsepv<x>server64/share/man:$MANPATH
```

3. Create a database cluster

Create the database cluster with the initdb command, specifying the storage destination directory.

Specify the transaction log storage destination and the locale setting option as required.

Example

```
$ initdb -D /database/inst1 --waldir=/transaction/inst1 --lc-collate="C" --lc-ctype="C" --
encoding=UTF8
```



## Point

.....

In some features, instance names are requested, and those names are required to uniquely identify the instance within the system. These features allow names that conform to WebAdmin naming conventions, so refer to the following points when determining the names:

- Maximum of 16 characters
  - The first character must be ASCII alphabetic character
  - The other characters must be ASCII alphanumeric characters
- .....



## Note

- To balance I/O load, consider deploying the transaction log storage destination to a disk device other than the database cluster storage destination and the backup data storage destination.
- Specify "C" or "POSIX" for collation and character category. Performance deteriorates if you specify a value other than "C" or "POSIX", although the behavior will follow the rules for particular languages, countries and regions. Furthermore, this may need to be revised when running applications on systems with different locales.

For example, specify as follows:

```
initdb --locale="C" --lc-messages="C"
initdb --lc-collate="C" --lc-ctype="C"
```

- Specify the same string in the LANG environment variable of the terminal that starts Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres as was specified in lc-messages of initdb (lc\_messages of postgresql.conf). If the same string is not specified, messages displayed on the terminal that was started, as well as messages output to the log file specified in the -l option of the pg\_ctl command or the postgres command used for startup, may not be output correctly.
- Specify an encoding system other than SQL\_ASCII for the database. If SQL\_ASCII is used, there is no guarantee that the encryption system for data in the database will be consistent, depending on the application used to insert the data.



## See

Refer to "Locale Support" in "Localization" in "Server Administration" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on locales.

### 4. Set port number.

Specify a port number in the port parameter of postgresql.conf. Ensure that the specified port number is not already used for other software. If a port number is not specified, "27500" is selected.

Register the specified port numbers in the /etc/services file if WebAdmin is used to create other instances. WebAdmin uses the /etc/services file to check if port numbers specified as available candidates have been duplicated.

Register any name as the service name.

### 5. Set the corefile output destination.

Specify the output destination of the corefile, which can later be used to collect information for investigation, by setting the core\_directory and core\_contents parameters of postgresql.conf.



## See

Refer to "Parameters" in the Operation Guide for information on the settings for these parameters.

### 6. Set the backup storage destination.

Specify the backup data storage destination and other backup settings when backup is to be performed as a provision against database errors.



## See

Refer to "Backup Methods" in the Operation Guide for information on specifying backup settings.

### 7. Start an instance.

Start with the start mode of the pg\_ctl command.

If either of the following conditions are met, the message "FATAL:the database system is starting up(11189)" may be output.

- An application, command, or process connects to the database while the instance is starting
- An instance was started without the -W option specified

This message is output by the `pg_ctl` command to check if the instance has started successfully.  
Therefore, ignore this message if there are no other applications, commands, or processes that connect to the database.

Example

```
$ pg_ctl start -D /database/inst1
```



See

Refer to "pg\_ctl" in "Reference" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on the `pg_ctl` command.



Note

If the `-W` option is specified, the command will return without waiting for the instance to start. Therefore, it may be unclear as to whether instance startup was successful or failed.

## 4.4 Configuring Remote Connections

This section describes the settings required when connecting remotely to Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres from a database application or a client command.

### 4.4.1 When an Instance was Created with WebAdmin

#### Settings related to connection

The default is to accept connections from remote computers to the database.

Change "listen\_addresses" in `postgresql.conf` to modify the default behavior.

Refer to "[Appendix D Configuring Parameters](#)" for information on `postgresql.conf`.

#### Client Authentication Information settings

The following content is set by default when WebAdmin is used to create an instance.

- Authentication of remote connections from local machines is performed.

When changing Client Authentication Information, select [Client Authentication] from [Setting], and then change the settings.

### 4.4.2 When an Instance was Created with the `initdb` Command

#### Connection settings

The default setting only permits local connections from the client to the database. Remote connections are not accepted.

Change "listen\_addresses" in `postgresql.conf` to perform remote connection.

All remote connections will be allowed when changed as shown below.

Example

```
listen_addresses = '*'
```

Also, configure the parameters shown below in accordance with the applications and number of client command connections.

Parameter name	Parameter description
<code>superuser_reserved_connections</code>	Number of connections reserved for database maintenance, for example backup or index rebuilding. If you need to simultaneously perform a large number of processes that exceed the default value, change this value accordingly.

Parameter name	Parameter description
max_connections	Set the value as:  <i>numberOfSimultaneousConnectionsToInstance</i> + superuser_reserved_connections

## Client authentication information settings

When trying to connect from a client to a database, settings are required to determine whether the instance permits connections from the client - if it does, then it is possible to make settings to determine if authentication is required.



See

Refer to "The pg\_hba.conf File" in "Server Administration" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for details.

## 4.5 Other Settings

This section describes settings that are useful for operations.

### 4.5.1 Error Log Settings

This section explains the settings necessary to monitor errors in applications and operations, and to make discovering the causes easier.

Make error log settings only when instances are created with the initdb command.

When creating instances with WebAdmin, these settings are already made and hence do not need to be set.

Furthermore, some parameters are used by WebAdmin, and if changed, may cause WebAdmin to no longer work properly. Refer to "[Appendix D Configuring Parameters](#)" for details.



Note

Set the output destination for the system log to the server log so that it cannot be viewed by administrators of other instances.

Application errors are output to the system log or server log. The output destination directory for the system log and server log should have access permissions set so that they cannot be viewed by people other than the instance administrator.

Edit the following parameters in postgresql.conf:

Parameter name	Parameter description	How to enable the settings
syslog_ident	Used to specify labels to attach to messages, so that these can be identified when output to the system log if more than one Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres is used.	reload option of the pg_ctl mode
logging_collector	Specify "on" to ensure that messages are output by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres to the server log file. The server log file is created in the log directory in the database cluster.	restart option of the pg_ctl mode
log_destination	Specify "stderr,syslog" to output messages from Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres to the screen and either the system log or the event log.	reload option of the pg_ctl mode
log_line_prefix	Specify information to be added at the start of messages output by an instance. This information is useful for automatic monitoring of messages.  You can output the SQLSTATE value, output time, executing host, application name, and user ID.	reload option of the pg_ctl mode

Parameter name	Parameter description	How to enable the settings
	Refer to "What To Log" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for details.  Example: log_line_prefix = '%e: %t [%p]: [%l-1] user = %u,db = %d,remote = %r app = %a '	



## Point

- If you want fewer application errors being output to the system log, refer to "When To Log" and "What To Log" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on how to reduce the output messages.
- If you want to separate errors output from other software, refer to "Where To Log" in the PostgreSQL Documentation to change the output destination to the server log file rather than the system log.

## 4.5.2 Configuring Automatic Start and Stop of an Instance

You can automatically start or stop an instance when the operating system on the database server is started or stopped.

Use the following procedure to configure automatic start and stop of an instance.

Note that, if an instance is started in a failover operation, the cluster system will control the start or stop, therefore this feature should not be used. Also, when performing database multiplexing, refer to "Enabling Automatic Start and Stop of Mirroring Controller and Multiplexed Instances" in the Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing).

Note that "<x>" in paths indicates the product version.



## Note

You should wait for time correction, network setup, and so on.

### 1. Create a unit file

Copy the unit file sample stored in the directory below, and revise it to match the target instance.

fujitsuEnterprisePostgresInstallDir/share/fsepsvoi.service.sample

### Example

In the following example, the installation directory is "/opt/fsepv<x>server64", and the instance name is "inst1".

```
# cp /opt/fsepv<x>server64/share/fsepsvoi.service.sample /usr/lib/systemd/system/
fsepsvoi_inst1.service
```

Revise the underlined portions of the options below in the unit file.

Section	Option	Specified value	Description
Unit	Description	Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres <u>instanceName</u>	Specifies the feature overview.  Specifies the name of the target instance. (*1)
Service	ExecStart	/bin/bash -c ' <u>installDir</u> /bin/pgx_symstd start <u>installDir dataStorageDestinationDir</u> '	Command to be executed when the service is started.
	ExecStop	/bin/bash -c ' <u>installDir</u> /bin/pgx_symstd stop <u>installDir dataStorageDestinationDir</u> '	Command to be executed when the service is stopped.
	ExecReload	/bin/bash -c ' <u>installDir</u> /bin/pgx_symstd reload <u>installDir dataStorageDestinationDir</u> '	Command to be executed when the service is reloaded

Section	Option	Specified value	Description
	User	<u>User</u>	OS user account of the instance administrator.
	Group	<u>Group</u>	Group to which the instance administrator user belongs.

\*1: The instance name should be as follows:

If WebAdmin is used to create the instance: *instanceName*

If the initdb command is used to create the instance: *nameThatIdentifiesTheInstance*

The naming conventions for the instance name or for identifying the instance are as follows:

- Up to 16 bytes
- The first character must be an ASCII alphabetic character
- The other characters must be ASCII alphanumeric characters

## 2. Enable automatic start and stop

As the OS superuser, use the systemctl command to enable automatic start and stop.

Example

```
# systemctl enable fsepsvoi_inst1.service
```

## 4.5.3 Settings when Using the Features Compatible with Oracle Databases

To use the features compatible with Oracle databases, create a new instance and execute the following command for the "postgres" and "template1" databases:

```
CREATE EXTENSION oracle_compatible;
```

Features compatible with Oracle databases are defined as user-defined functions in the "public" schema created by default when database clusters are created, so they can be available for all users without the need for special settings.

For this reason, ensure that "public" (without the double quotation marks) is included in the list of schema search paths specified in the search\_path parameter.

There are also considerations for use the features compatible with Oracle databases. Refer to "Precautions when Using the Features Compatible with Oracle Databases" in the Application Development Guide for details.

## 4.5.4 LDAP Authentication File Settings

The LDAP authentication file refers to the following OS standard default file

/etc/openldap/ldap.conf

If you wish to use a different file, specify the LDAP authentication file you wish to set in an environment variable such as LDAPCONF, and then restart the Postgres instance. Please refer to the OpenLDAP documentation for detailed configuration details.

## 4.5.5 Setting the server keytab file for GSSAPI authentication

When setting the server keytab file for GSSAPI authentication, be sure to set the "krb\_server\_keyfile" parameter in postgresql.conf.



Note

The description of the "krb\_server\_keyfile" parameter in the "PostgreSQL Documentation" states that the default value is "FILE The default value is "FILE:/usr/local/pgsql/etc/krb5.keytab" in the "PostgreSQL Documentation", but the default value is invalid for Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

## 4.5.6 Settings for Using Legacy OpenSSL Providers

---

If you use a legacy OpenSSL provider, create an OpenSSL configuration file and set the parameters in postgresql.conf.

### OpenSSL configuration file

Create an OpenSSL configuration file in any directory for legacy providers to use.

#### Example

```
openssl_conf = openssl_init

[openssl_init]
providers = provider_sect

[provider_sect]
default = default_sect
legacy = legacy_sect

[default_sect]
activate = 1

[legacy_sect]
activate = 1
```

### Parameters

- openssl\_conf

Specify the OpenSSL configuration file created above.

#### Example

```
openssl_conf = '/path/to/openssl.conf'
```

- openssl\_modules

Specifies the installation directory for the server product that contains the additional OpenSSL modules.

#### Example

```
openssl_modules = '/opt/fsepv<x>server64/lib/openssl-modules'
```

"< x >" indicates the product version.



See

.....  
Refer to "Parameters" in the Operation Guide for information for parameters.  
.....

## 4.6 Integration with Message-Monitoring Software

---

To monitor messages output by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres using software, configure the product to monitor SQLSTATE, instead of the message text - this is because the latter may change when Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres is upgraded.

Configure Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres to output messages in a format that can be read by the message-monitoring software by specifying "%e" in the log\_line\_prefix parameter of postgresql.conf to output the SQLSTATE value.

A setting example is shown below - it outputs the output time, executing host, application name, and user ID, in addition to the SQLSTATE value.

### Example

```
log_line_prefix = '%e: %t [%p]: [%l-1] user = %u,db = %d,remote = %r app = %a '
```



See

Refer to "What To Log" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on how to configure the settings.

## 4.7 Setting Up and Removing OSS

This section explains how to set up OSS supported by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

If you want to use OSS supported by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres, follow the setup procedure.

If you decide not to use the OSS supported by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres, follow the removing procedure.

To build and use OSS obtained from the web, etc., instead of OSS supported by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres, see "4.7.11 Build with PGXS".



### Information

- In this section, the applicable database that enables the features of each OSS is described as "postgres".
- Execute CREATE EXTENSION for the "template1" database also, so that each OSS can be used by default when creating a new database.

Refer to "OSS Supported by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres" in the General Description for information on OSS other than those described below.

### 4.7.1 oracle\_fdw

#### 4.7.1.1 Setting Up oracle\_fdw

1. Add the path of the OCI library to the environment variable. The available version of the OCI library is 11.2 or later.  
Add the installation path of the OCI library to the LD\_LIBRARY\_PATH environment variable.

2. As superuser, run the following command:

```
$ su -  
Password:*****  
# cp -r /opt/fsepv<x>server64/OSS/oracle_fdw/* /opt/fsepv<x>server64
```

3. If a file named libclntsh.so.11.1 does not exist in your OCI library, create a symbolic link with the name libclntsh.so.11.1 to libclntsh.so.xx.1 (xx is the version of the OCI library).

```
# ln -s libclntsh.so.12.1 libclntsh.so.11.1
```

4. Restart Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.
5. Execute CREATE EXTENSION for the database that will use this feature.  
Use the psql command to connect to the "postgres" database.

```
postgres=# CREATE EXTENSION oracle_fdw;  
CREATE EXTENSION
```



### Information

- If the OCI library is not installed on the server, install it using the Oracle client or Oracle Instant Client.  
Refer to the relevant Oracle manual for information on the installation procedure.
- If the version of the OCI library is updated, change the path of the OCI library in the LD\_LIBRARY\_PATH environment variable to the updated path. Also, re-create the symbolic link named libclntsh.so.11.1 if necessary.





## Note

This feature cannot be used on instances created in WebAdmin. It can only be used via server commands.

### 4.7.1.2 Removing oracle\_fdw

1. Execute DROP EXTENSION for the database that will use this feature.  
Use the psql command to connect to the "postgres" database.

```
postgres=# DROP EXTENSION oracle_fdw CASCADE;  
DROP EXTENSION
```

2. As superuser, run the following command:

```
$ su -  
Password:*****  
# rm -rf /opt/fsepv<x>server64/filesCopiedDuringSetup
```



## Information

The files copied during setup can be checked below.

```
# find /opt/fsepv<x>server64/OSS/oracle_fdw
```

### 4.7.2 pg\_bigm

#### 4.7.2.1 Setting Up pg\_bigm

1. Set the postgresql.conf file parameters.  
Add "pg\_bigm" to the shared\_preload\_libraries parameter.
2. As superuser, run the following command:

```
$ su -  
Password:*****  
# cp -r /opt/fsepv<x>server64/OSS/pg_bigm/* /opt/fsepv<x>server64
```

3. Restart Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.
4. Execute CREATE EXTENSION for the database that will use this feature.  
Use the psql command to connect to the "postgres" database.

```
postgres=# CREATE EXTENSION pg_bigm;  
CREATE EXTENSION
```

#### 4.7.2.2 Removing pg\_bigm

1. Execute DROP EXTENSION for the database that will use this feature.  
Use the psql command to connect to the "postgres" database.

```
postgres=# DROP EXTENSION pg_bigm CASCADE;  
DROP EXTENSION
```

2. As superuser, run the following command:

```
$ su -  
Password:*****  
# rm -rf /opt/fsepv<x>server64/filesCopiedDuringSetup
```

## Information

The files copied during setup can be checked below.

```
# find /opt/fsepv<x>server64/OSS/pg_bigm
```

3. Set the postgresql.conf file parameters.  
Delete "pg\_bigm" to the shared\_preload\_libraries parameter.
4. Restart Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

## 4.7.3 pg\_hint\_plan

### 4.7.3.1 Setting Up pg\_hint\_plan

1. Set the postgresql.conf file parameters.  
Add "pg\_hint\_plan" to the "shared\_preload\_libraries" parameter.
2. As superuser, run the following command:

```
$ su -  
Password:*****  
# cp -r /opt/fsepv<x>server64/OSS/pg_hint_plan/* /opt/fsepv<x>server64
```

3. Restart Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.
4. Run CREATE EXTENSION for the database that uses this feature.  
The target database is described as "postgres" here.  
Use the psql command to connect to the "postgres" database.

```
postgres=# CREATE EXTENSION pg_hint_plan;  
CREATE EXTENSION
```

## See

Refer to "Enhanced Query Plan Stability" in the Operation Guide for details.

### 4.7.3.2 Removing pg\_hint\_plan

## Note

Unsetting pg\_hint\_plan will cause hints registered in the hint\_plan.hints table to be lost. Therefore, it is recommended that pg\_dump back up the hint\_plan.hints table for each database if it is likely that pg\_hint\_plan will be used again later.

1. Execute DROP EXTENSION for the database that will use this feature.  
Use the psql command to connect to the "postgres" database.

```
postgres=# DROP EXTENSION pg_hint_plan CASCADE;  
DROP EXTENSION
```

2. As superuser, run the following command:

```
$ su -  
Password:*****  
# rm -rf /opt/fsepv<x>server64/filesCopiedDuringSetup
```

## Information

The files copied during setup can be checked below.

```
# find /opt/fsepv<x>server64/OSS/pg_hint_plan
```

3. Set the postgresql.conf file parameters.  
Delete "pg\_hint\_plan" to the shared\_preload\_libraries parameter.
4. Restart Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

## 4.7.4 pg\_dbms\_stats

### 4.7.4.1 Setting Up pg\_dbms\_stats

1. Set the postgresql.conf file parameter.  
Add "pg\_dbms\_stats" to the "shared\_preload\_libraries" parameter.
2. As superuser, run the following command:

```
$ su -  
Password:*****  
# cp -r /opt/fsepv<x>server64/OSS/pg_dbms_stats/* /opt/fsepv<x>server64
```

3. Restart Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.
4. Run CREATE EXTENSION for the database that will use this feature.  
The target database is described as "postgres" here.  
Use the psql command to connect to the "postgres" database.

```
postgres=# CREATE EXTENSION pg_dbms_stats;  
CREATE EXTENSION
```

## See

Refer to "Enhanced Query Plan Stability" in the Operation Guide for details.

### 4.7.4.2 Removing pg\_dbms\_stats

## Note

Unsetting pg\_dbms\_stats causes statistics managed by pg\_dbms\_stats to be lost. Therefore, it is recommended that you back up each table in the dbms\_stats folder of each database in binary format if you may want to use pg\_dbms\_stats again later.

```
postgres > # COPY <dbms_stats Schema's table name> TO '<Filename>' FORMAT binary;
```

1. Execute DROP EXTENSION for the database that will use this feature.  
Use the psql command to connect to the "postgres" database.

```
postgres=# DROP EXTENSION pg_dbms_stats CASCADE;  
DROP EXTENSION
```

2. As superuser, run the following command:

```
$ su -  
Password:*****  
# rm -rf /opt/fsepv<x>server64/filesCopiedDuringSetup
```

## Information

The files copied during setup can be checked below.

```
# find /opt/fsepv<x>server64/OSS/pg_dbms_stats
```

3. Set the postgresql.conf file parameters.  
Delete "pg\_dbms\_stats" to the shared\_preload\_libraries parameter.
4. Restart Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

## 4.7.5 pg\_repack

### 4.7.5.1 Setting Up pg\_repack

1. As superuser, run the following command:

```
$ su -  
Password:*****  
# cp -r /opt/fsepv<x>server64/OSS/pg_repack/* /opt/fsepv<x>server64
```

2. Execute CREATE EXTENSION for the database that will use this feature.  
Use the psql command to connect to the "postgres" database.

```
postgres=# CREATE EXTENSION pg_repack;  
CREATE EXTENSION
```

### 4.7.5.2 Removing pg\_repack

1. Execute DROP EXTENSION for the database that will use this feature.  
Use the psql command to connect to the "postgres" database.

```
postgres=# DROP EXTENSION pg_repack CASCADE;  
DROP EXTENSION
```

2. As superuser, run the following command:

```
$ su -  
Password:*****  
# rm -rf /opt/fsepv<x>server64/filesCopiedDuringSetup
```

## Information

The files copied during setup can be checked below.

```
# find /opt/fsepv<x>server64/OSS/pg_repack
```

## 4.7.6 pg\_rman

### 4.7.6.1 Setting Up pg\_rman

1. As superuser, run the following command:

```
$ su -  
Password:*****  
# cp -r /opt/fsepv<x>server64/OSS/pg_rman/* /opt/fsepv<x>server64
```

2. Restart Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

## Information

Before initialization of the backup catalog, it is recommended to set the parameters below in postgresql.conf. Refer to the pg\_rman manual ([http://ossc-db.github.io/pg\\_rman/index-ja.html](http://ossc-db.github.io/pg_rman/index-ja.html)) for details.

- log\_directory
- archive\_mode
- archive\_command

## Note

This feature cannot be used on instances created in WebAdmin. It can only be used via server commands.

### 4.7.6.2 Removing pg\_rman

1. As superuser, run the following command:

```
$ su -  
Password:*****  
# rm -rf /opt/fsepv<x>server64/filesCopiedDuringSetup
```

## Information

The files copied during setup can be checked below.

```
# find /opt/fsepv<x>server64/OSS/pg_rman
```

2. Restart Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

### 4.7.7 pg\_statsinfo

#### 4.7.7.1 Setting Up pg\_statsinfo

1. Set the postgresql.conf file parameters.
  - Add "pg\_statsinfo" to the shared\_preload\_libraries parameter.
  - Specify the log file name for the log\_filename parameter.
  - Specify "on" to the logging\_collector parameter.
  - Add "csvlog" to the log\_destination parameter.
  - Delete "stderr" to the log\_destination parameter.

For the parameters "logging\_collector" and "log\_destination", pg\_statsinfo will change the settings in the postmaster process as above without rewriting postgresql.conf, even if you do not make the above changes.

Explicit rewriting is recommended because the configuration file and behavior will not match.

2. Perform the following setup as a superuser:

Install the pg\_statsinfo module:

```
# cp -r /opt/fsepv<x>server64/OSS/pg_statsinfo/* /opt/fsepv<x>server64
```

Create the directories needed for pg\_statsinfo to work.

This directory is where the files for managing process IDs for pg\_statsinfo processes are stored.

The minimum required permissions for the directory are 700.

Set the owner of the directory to the instance administrator user.  
This example sets the OS user "fsepuser" as the instance administrator.

```
# mkdir /run/pg_statsinfo
# chmod 700 /run/pg_statsinfo
# chown fsepuser:fsepuser /run/pg_statsinfo
```

The directory created above is deleted when the OS stops.  
You can configure the above directories to be created automatically on reboot by running the following command:

```
# cat << EOF > /usr/lib/tmpfiles.d/pg_statsinfo-16.conf
d /run/pg_statsinfo 0755 fsepuser fsepuser -
EOF
```

3. Restart Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

### Information

There are the following differences in postgresql.conf parameter settings required for statistics collection between OSS pg\_statsinfo v16 and pg\_statsinfo shipped with Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres:

OSS: You must specify "C" for the lc\_messages parameter.

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres: The lc\_messages parameter can be any message locale supported by PostgreSQL.

### Note

This feature cannot be used on instances created in WebAdmin. It can only be used via server commands.

## 4.7.7.2 Removing pg\_statsinfo

1. As superuser, run the following command:

```
$ su -
Password:*****
# rm -rf /opt/fsepv<x>server64/filesCopiedDuringSetup
# rm -rf /run/pg_statsinfo
# rm -rf /usr/lib/tmpfiles.d/pg_statsinfo-16.conf
```

### Information

The files copied during setup can be checked below.

```
# find /opt/fsepv<x>server64/OSS/pg_statsinfo
```

2. Set the postgresql.conf file parameters.
  - Delete "pg\_statsinfo" to the shared\_preload\_libraries parameter.
  - Delete the log file name for the log\_filename parameter.
  - Specify "off" to the logging\_collecto parameter.
  - Delete "csvlog" to the log\_destination parameter.
  - Add "stderr" to the log\_destination parameter.
3. Restart Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

## 4.7.8 pgBadger

---

### 4.7.8.1 Setting Up pgBadger

1. Set the postgresql.conf file parameters.  
Set the parameters so that the information required for analysis is output to the server log.  
Refer to "Documentation" in the pgBadger website (<https://pgbadger.darold.net/>) for details.  
The pgBadger material is stored under /opt/fsepv<x>server64/OSS/pgbadger.
2. Restart Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

### 4.7.8.2 Removing pgBadger

1. Set the postgresql.conf file parameters.  
Restores information you specified during Setup.
2. Restart Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

## 4.7.9 Pgpool-II

---

### 4.7.9.1 Setting Up Pgpool-II

1. As superuser, run the following command:

```
$ su -  
Password:*****  
# cp -r /opt/fsepv<x>server64/OSS/Pgpool-II/* /opt/fsepv<x>server64
```

2. Execute CREATE EXTENSION for the database that will use this feature.  
Use the psql command to connect to the "postgres" database.

```
postgres=# CREATE EXTENSION pgpool_recovery;  
CREATE EXTENSION
```

3. Set the postgresql.conf file parameters.  
Specify the path to pg\_ctl for the pgpool.pg\_ctl parameter.
4. Restart Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.



#### Note

.....  
The online recovery feature of Pgpool-II cannot be used on instances created in WebAdmin. It can only be used via server commands.  
.....

### 4.7.9.2 Removing Pgpool-II

1. Execute DROP EXTENSION for the database that will use this feature.  
Use the psql command to connect to the "postgres" database.

```
postgres=# DROP EXTENSION pgpool_recovery CASCADE;  
DROP EXTENSION
```

2. As superuser, run the following command:

```
$ su -  
Password:*****  
# rm -rf /opt/fsepv<x>server64/filesCopiedDuringSetup
```



## Information

The files copied during setup can be checked below.

```
# find /opt/fsepv<x>server64/OSS/Pgpool-II
```

3. Set the postgresql.conf file parameters.  
Delete the pg\_ctl path for the pgpool.pg\_ctl parameter.
4. Restart Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

## 4.7.10 pgBackRest

### 4.7.10.1 Setting Up pgBackRest

1. Install pgBackRest.

To use the pgbackrest command on the same host as the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres server, install pgBackRest using the server program DVD. If you want to use the pgbackrest command on a different host than the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres server, install pgBackRest using the client program DVD.

2. Set the environment variable PATH for pgBackRest.

The pgBackRest material is stored under /opt/fsepv<x>pgbackrest. Set the environment variable PATH to the storage location/bin of the pgBackRest material to be used.

```
$ export PATH=/opt/fsepv<x>pgbackrest/bin:$PATH
```

3. Perform pgBackRest setup.

Refer to " User Guides " in the pgBackRest website (<https://pgbackrest.org/>) for details.



## Note

- This feature is not available for instances created with WebAdmin. It is available only for operation using server commands.
- The pg\_rman, pgx\_dmpall, and pgx\_rcvall commands cannot be used when using pgBackRest because of conflicting shell commands to set archive\_command.

### 4.7.10.2 Removing pgBackRest

1. Sets parameters in the postgresql.conf file.  
Reverses the information specified during setup
2. Restart Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.
3. If it was set to perform periodic backups, unset it.

### 4.7.10.3 Servers to which pgBackRest can connect

The following table lists server that pgBackRest can connected to.

Table 4.1 Connectable server

OS	Product name
Linux	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Advanced Edition 16</li> <li>- Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Standard Edition 16</li> </ul>



## 4.7.11 Build with PGXS

Many PostgreSQL extensions are built using a build base for extensions called PGXS. Building with PGXS also generates files related to llvm. Depending on which version of llvm you are using, follow these steps:

PGXS builds also set DT\_RUNPATH to the built binaries. See "4.7.11.4 Setting DT\_RUNPATH" for more information.

### 4.7.11.1 Using the Default Version of llvm

The default version of llvm is described in "2.1 Required Operating System". If you want to use the default version of llvm, use the OSS documentation to build and install OSS.

### 4.7.11.2 Using a Non-Default Version of llvm

1. As superuser, copy the Makefile.global corresponding to the version of llvm you want to use. The following is an example of using version 9 of llvm. Makefile.global is overwritten when an emergency fix is applied or removed from Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres, this procedure should be performed each time a build is performed.

```
$ su -
Password:*****
# cp /opt/fsepv<x>server64/lib/pgxs/src/Makefile.global-vsn9 /opt/fsepv<x>server64/lib/pgxs/src/
Makefile.global
```

2. Follow the OSS documentation to build and install OSS.
3. As superuser, run the following command:. The following is an example of using version 9 of llvm:.

```
$ su -
Password:*****
# mv /opt/fsepv<x>server64/lib/bitcode/<OSS name>* /opt/fsepv<x>server64/lib/bitcode-vsn9/
```

### 4.7.11.3 Without llvm

If you do not use llvm, use the with\_llvm = no option when performing the build, as shown below. For other options, follow the OSS documentation.

```
# make USE_PGXS=1 with_llvm=no
```

### 4.7.11.4 Setting DT\_RUNPATH

The default values for DT\_RUNPATH are <Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres installation directory>/lib, and \$ORIGIN /../lib.

If your build and production environments have the same Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres installation directory, you can run the built program without setting the environment variable LD\_LIBRARY\_PATH to <Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres installation directory in the operating environment>/lib.

If the installation directories of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres for the build and production environments cannot be in the same location, or the production installation directory cannot be pre-determined, you can run a program built without <Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres installation directory in the operating environment>/lib in the LD\_LIBRARY\_PATH by doing the following:

Set the DT\_RUNPATH attribute to any path.

In your production environment, create a symbolic link to <Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres installation directory in the operating environment>/lib in the appropriate path.

To do this, set the DT\_RUNPATH attribute in the environment variable PG\_LDFLAGS(\*1).

If this is not possible, set LD\_LIBRARY\_PATH to <Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres installation directory in the operating environment>/lib when you run the program.

For notes on setting the environment variable LD\_LIBRARY\_PATH, see "When DT\_RUNPATH cannot be set" in "How to Build and Run an Application that Uses Shared Libraries" in the Application Development Guide.

\*1:For more information about the PG\_LDFLAGS environment variable, see "Extension Building Infrastructure" in the PostgreSQL Documentation. For example, "make USE\_PGXS = 1 PG\_LDFLAGS =" -Wl, -rpath, '\$\$ORIGIN /../ libdummy', --enable-new-dtags ".

## 4.7.12 Build without PGXS

---

For extensions that do not utilize PGXS, but utilize the interface of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres, build to explicitly set DT\_RUNPATH, or set LD\_LIBRARY\_PATH to <Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres installation directory>/lib at runtime.

For information about how to set DT\_RUNPATH, refer to "Setting DT\_RUNPATH for Applications" in the Application Development Guide.

For notes on using LD\_LIBRARY\_PATH without setting DT\_RUNPATH, refer to "When DT\_RUNPATH cannot be set" in "How to Build and Run an Application that Uses Shared Libraries" in the Application Development Guide.

## 4.8 Deleting Instances

---

This section explains how to delete an instance.

- [4.8.1 Using WebAdmin](#)
- [4.8.2 Using Server Commands](#)

When automatic start and stop of an instance is set

Execute the following command to disable it, and then unregister it.

```
systemctl disable nameOfUnitFileThatPerformsAutomaticStartAndStop
rm /usr/lib/systemd/system/nameOfUnitFileThatPerformsAutomaticStartAndStop
```

Example

```
# systemctl disable fsepsvoi_inst1.service
# rm /usr/lib/systemd/system/fsepsvoi_inst1.service
```


### 4.8.1 Using WebAdmin

---

This section explains how to delete an instance using WebAdmin. Always use WebAdmin to delete instances that were created or imported using WebAdmin. Because WebAdmin management information cannot be deleted, WebAdmin will determine that the instance is abnormal.

Use the following procedure to delete an instance.


1. Stop the instance

In the [Instances] tab, select the instance to stop and click .

2. Back up files.

Before deleting the instance, back up any required files under the data storage destination, the backup data storage destination, and the transaction log storage destination.

3. Delete the instance

In the [Instances] tab, select the instance to delete and click .

#### Deleting Unnecessary Directories

Deleting an instance deletes only the following lowest-level directories. If they are not required, delete them manually.

- Data storage destination
- Backup data storage destination
- Transaction log storage destination (if different from the data storage destination)

## 4.8.2 Using Server Commands

---

This section explains how to delete an instance using server commands.

Use the following procedure to delete an instance.

1. Stop the instance

Execute the stop mode of the `pg_ctl` command.

An example is shown below:

Example

```
$ pg_ctl stop -D /data/inst1
```

2. Back up files.

Before deleting the instance, back up any required files under the data storage destination, the backup data storage destination, and the transaction log storage destination.

3. Delete the instance

Use a standard UNIX tool (the `rm` command) to delete the following directories:

- Data storage destination
- Backup data storage destination
- Transaction log storage destination (if a directory different from the data storage directory was specified)

# Chapter 5 Uninstallation

This chapter describes the procedure for uninstalling Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

## 5.1 Uninstallation in Interactive Mode

Uninstall according to the following procedure:

Note that "xSPz" in sample windows indicates the version and level of products to uninstall and "<x>" in paths indicates the product version.



### Note

- All files and directories in the installation directory are deleted during uninstallation. If user files have been placed in the installation directory, back them up before uninstallation if necessary.
- On SLES, before uninstallation, ensure that JRE 8 is installed, and export the JAVA\_HOME environment variable.

```
#export JAVA_HOME="Jre8InstallDir"
```

- To reinstall Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres after it was uninstalled, and reuse an instance that was already created so that it can be managed from WebAdmin, back up the directory shown below in which the WebAdmin instance management information had been defined before uninstalling Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres, and then restore the backed up directory to its original location once Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres has been reinstalled.

Follow the procedure below to perform the backup.

1. Stop the WebAdmin server. Refer to "[B.1.3 Stopping the Web Server Feature of WebAdmin](#)" for details.
2. Back up the following directory:

```
webAdminInstallDir/data/fevpa
```



### Information

If an error occurs while the product is being uninstalled, refer to "Uninstall (middleware) Messages" in the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres product website, and take the required action.

### 1. Delete the operation information

If the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres operation information has been registered in the operating system or another middleware product, for example, then it must be deleted. Cases in which deletion is required are as follows:

- For a cluster system using failover operation integrated with PRIMECLUSTER, stop the cluster applications and delete the cluster application resources and Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres resources. Refer to the Cluster Operation Guide (PRIMECLUSTER) and PRIMECLUSTER Installation and Administration Guide for details.
- If you have set automatic start and stop of the instance, execute the following commands to disable the script and cancel registration.

```
systemctl disable nameOfUnitFileThatPerformsAutomaticStartAndStop
rm /usr/lib/systemd/system/nameOfUnitFileThatPerformsAutomaticStartAndStop
```

Example


```
# systemctl disable fsepsvoi_inst1.service
# rm /usr/lib/systemd/system/fsepsvoi_inst1.service
```

### 2. Stop applications and programs

Before starting the uninstallation, stop the following:

- Applications that use the product
- Connection Manager
- Instance

#### Using WebAdmin

In the [Instances] tab, select the instance to stop and click .

#### Using server commands

Execute the pg\_ctl command in stop mode.

```
$ /opt/fsepv<x>server64/bin/pg_ctl stop -D /database/inst1
```

- Web server feature of WebAdmin

Execute the WebAdminStop command to stop the Web server feature of WebAdmin.

#### Example

If WebAdmin is installed in /opt/fsepv<x>webadmin:

```
# cd /opt/fsepv<x>webadmin/sbin
# ./WebAdminStop
```

- Mirroring Controller

Execute the mc\_ctl command with the stop mode option specified and stop the Mirroring Controller.

#### Example

```
$ mc_ctl stop -M /mdir/inst1
```

- pgBadger
- Pgpool-II
- pgBackRest

### 3. Start the Uninstall (middleware)

Execute the following command:

```
# /opt/FJSVcir/cimanager.sh -c
```

### 4. Select the software

Type the number for the product to be uninstalled, and press Enter.

### 5. Start the uninstallation

To start the uninstallation, type "y" and press Enter.

To display the list of products again, type "b" and press Enter.

### 6. Finish the uninstallation

Upon successful completion, the window below is displayed.

The installation directory may remain after uninstallation. If it is not required, delete it.

```
Uninstalling...

productName is being uninstalled now.
100% #####

The following products have been uninstalled successfully:
```

```
productName
```

```
Uninstallation of "productName" has completed successfully.
```

```
Exiting Uninstaller.
```

## 5.2 Uninstallation in Silent Mode

Uninstall according to the following procedure:



### Note

- All files and directories in the installation directory are deleted during uninstallation. If user files have been placed in the installation directory, back them up before uninstallation if necessary.
- On SLES, before uninstallation, ensure that JRE 8 is installed, and export the JAVA\_HOME environment variable.

```
#export JAVA_HOME="Jre8InstallDir"
```

- To reinstall Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres after it was uninstalled, and reuse an instance that was already created so that it can be managed from WebAdmin, back up the directory shown below in which the WebAdmin instance management information had been defined before uninstalling Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres, and then restore the backed up directory to its original location once Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres has been reinstalled.

Follow the procedure below to perform the backup.

1. Stop the WebAdmin server. Refer to "[B.1.3 Stopping the Web Server Feature of WebAdmin](#)" for details.
2. Back up the following directory:

```
webAdminInstallDir/data/fepwa
```



### See

Refer to the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres product website for information on uninstallation in silent mode, such as the error messages.

### 1. Delete the operation information

If the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres operation information has been registered in the operating system or another middleware product, for example, then it must be deleted. Cases in which deletion is required are as follows:

- For a cluster system using failover operation integrated with PRIMECLUSTER, stop the cluster applications and delete the cluster applications resources and Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres resources. Refer to the Cluster Operation Guide (PRIMECLUSTER) and PRIMECLUSTER Installation and Administration Guide for details.
- If you have set automatic start and stop of the instance, execute the following commands to disable the script and cancel registration.

```
systemctl disable nameOfUnitFileThatPerformsAutomaticStartAndStop
rm /usr/lib/systemd/system/nameOfUnitFileThatPerformsAutomaticStartAndStop
```

Example


```
# systemctl disable fsepsvoi_inst1.service
# rm /usr/lib/systemd/system/fsepsvoi_inst1.service
```

### 2. Stop applications and programs

Before starting the uninstallation, stop the following:

- Applications that use the product
- Connection Manager
- Instance

#### Using WebAdmin

In the [Instances] tab, select the instance to stop and click .

#### Using server commands

Execute the pg\_ctl command with the stop mode option specified.

```
$ /opt/fsepv<x>server64/bin/pg_ctl stop -D /database/inst1
```

- Web server feature of WebAdmin

Execute the WebAdminStop command to stop the Web server feature of WebAdmin.

#### Example

If WebAdmin is installed in /opt/fsepv<x>webadmin:

```
# cd /opt/fsepv<x>webadmin/sbin
# ./WebAdminStop
```

- Mirroring Controller

Execute the mc\_ctl command with the stop mode option specified and stop the Mirroring Controller.

#### Example

```
$ mc_ctl stop -M /mcdir/inst1
```

- pgBadger
- Pgpool-II
- pgBackRest

### 3. Run the uninstallation

Execute the command below.

The installation directory may remain after uninstallation. If it is not required, delete it.

#### Example

```
# /opt/fsepv<x>server64/setup/suninst.sh
```

In the example above, /opt/fsepv<x>server64/setup is the name of the installation directory in which the server product is installed.

```
# /opt/fsepv<x>webadmin/setup/suninst.sh
```

In the example above, /opt/fsepv<x>webadmin/setup is the name of the installation directory in which the WebAdmin is installed.

```
# /opt/fsepv<x>pgpool-II/setup/suninst.sh
```

In the example above, /opt/fsepv<x>pgpool-II/setup is the name of the installation directory in which the Pgpool-II is installed.

```
# /opt/fsepv<x>pgbackrest/setup/suninst.sh
```

In the example above, /opt/fsepv<x>pgbackrest/setup is the name of the installation directory in which the pgBackRest is installed.

## Appendix A Recommended WebAdmin Environments

This appendix describes the recommended WebAdmin environment. The following explanation is based on the assumption that Microsoft Edge is used unless otherwise stated.



The displayed screen varies depending on your environment, so check and set according to the screen.

### A.1 Recommended Browser Settings

- Use a display resolution of 1280 x 768 or higher, and 256 colors or more.
- Select [Setting] >> [Appearance] >> [Font size] >> [Medium (Recommended)].
- Select [Setting] >> [Appearance] >> [Zoom] >> [100%].

### A.2 How to Set Up the Pop-up Blocker

If the Pop-up Blocker is enabled, use the procedure below to configure settings to allow pop-ups from the server where Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres is installed.

1. Click [Setting] >> [Cookie and site permissions] >> [All Permissions] >> [Pop-ups and redirects].  
If the [Block (Recommended)] switch is not on (blue), the pop-up blocker is not working, and no further action is required.
2. Under [Pop-ups and Redirects], click the [Allow] >> [Add] button.
3. In [Add Site], in [Site], enter the address of the server where you installed Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres and click the [Add] button.
4. Close Microsoft Edge.



## Appendix B Setting Up and Removing WebAdmin

This appendix describes how to set up and remove WebAdmin.

Note that "<x>" in paths indicates the product version.

### B.1 Setting Up WebAdmin

This section explains how to set up WebAdmin.

#### B.1.1 Setting Up WebAdmin

Follow the procedure below to set up WebAdmin.

1. Change to the superuser

Acquire superuser privileges on the system.

Example

```
$ su -  
Password:*****
```

2. Set up WebAdmin

Set up WebAdmin.

Example

If WebAdmin is installed in /opt/fsepv<x>webadmin:

```
# cd /opt/fsepv<x>webadmin/sbin  
# ./WebAdminSetup
```

3. Specify the port number

Specify the following port numbers to be used in WebAdmin.

Refer to the "/etc/services" file and only change to a different port number if there is overlap with a port number from another service.

Make a note of the port number for the Web server, because it will be required for starting the WebAdmin window.

Item	Value (recommended value)
Web server port number enter port number of Web Server (default: 27515):	27515
WebAdmin internal port number enter Internal port number for WebAdmin (default: 27516):	27516
WebAdmin automatic start Start WebAdmin automatically when system starting? [y,n] (default: y)	y

##### Web server port number

Specify a numeric value from 1024 to 32767 for the port number to be used for communication between the Web browser and the Web server.

The Web server port number will be registered as a port number with the following service name in the "/etc/services" file.

fsep\_160\_WA\_64\_WebAdmin\_Port1

##### WebAdmin internal port number

Specify a numeric value from 1024 to 32767 for the port number to be used for communication between the Web server and the WebAdmin runtime environment.

The WebAdmin internal port number will be registered as a port number with the following service name in the /etc/services file.

fsep\_160\_WA\_64\_WebAdmin\_Port2

#### WebAdmin automatic start

Select whether or not to start WebAdmin when the machine is started.



#### Note

- Unused port numbers  
Irrespective of the information specified in the "/etc/services" file, unused port numbers in the OS and other products can sometimes be automatically numbered and then used, or port numbers specified in environment files within products may also be used. Check the port numbers used by the OS and other products, and ensure that these are not duplicated.
- Access restrictions  
Prevent unauthorized access and maintain security by using a firewall product, or the packet filtering feature of a router device, to restrict access to the server IP address and the various specified port numbers.
- Port access permissions  
If a port is blocked (access permissions have not been granted) by a firewall, enable use of the port by granting access. Refer to the vendor document for information on how to grant port access permissions.  
Consider the security risks carefully when opening ports.
- Changing port numbers  
When using WebAdmin in multiserver mode, it is recommended not to change WebAdmin ports after creating instances. Otherwise, the created instances may not be accessible through WebAdmin after the port is changed.

## B.1.2 Starting the Web Server Feature of WebAdmin

Follow the procedure below to start the Web server feature of WebAdmin.

1. Change to the superuser

Acquire superuser privileges on the system.

Example

```
$ su -  
Password:*****
```

2. Start the Web server feature of WebAdmin

Execute the WebAdminStart command to start the Web server feature of WebAdmin.

Example

If WebAdmin is installed in /opt/fsepv<x>webadmin:

```
# cd /opt/fsepv<x>webadmin/sbin  
# ./WebAdminStart
```

## B.1.3 Stopping the Web Server Feature of WebAdmin

Follow the procedure below to stop the Web server feature of WebAdmin.

1. Change to the superuser

Acquire superuser privileges on the system.

Example

```
$ su -  
Password:*****
```

## 2. Stop the Web server feature of WebAdmin

Execute the WebAdminStop command to stop the Web server feature of WebAdmin.

### Example

If WebAdmin is installed in /opt/fsepv<x>webadmin:

```
# cd /opt/fsepv<x>webadmin/sbin
# ./WebAdminStop
```



- For efficient operation of WebAdmin, it is recommended that the Web server feature be stopped only during a scheduled maintenance period.
- When WebAdmin is used to create and manage instances in a multiserver configuration, the Web server feature must be started and running on all servers at the same time.

## B.2 Removing WebAdmin

This section explains how to remove WebAdmin.

This removal procedure stops WebAdmin and ensures that it no longer starts automatically when the machine is restarted.

### 1. Change to the superuser

Acquire superuser privileges on the system.

#### Example

```
$ su -
Password:*****
```

### 2. Remove WebAdmin setup

Execute the WebAdminSetup command to remove WebAdmin setup.

#### Example

If WebAdmin is installed in /opt/fsepv<x>webadmin:

```
# cd /opt/fsepv<x>webadmin/sbin
# ./WebAdminSetup -d
```

## B.3 Using an External Repository for WebAdmin

WebAdmin can be configured to use an external database, where it can store the various metadata information it uses. WebAdmin will use this database as a repository to store the information it uses to manage all the created instances. This can be a Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres database or an Open Source PostgreSQL V9.2 or later database.

Using an external database as a WebAdmin repository provides you with more flexibility in managing WebAdmin. This repository can be managed, backed up and restored as needed using pgAdmin or command line tools, allowing users to have greater flexibility and control.


Follow the procedure below to set up the repository.

1. Start WebAdmin, and log in to the database server.
2. Click the [Settings] tab, and then click  in the [WebAdmin repository configuration] section.
3. Enter the following items:
  - [Host name]: Host name of the database server
  - [Port]: Port number of the database server

- [Database name]: Name of the database
- [User name]: User name to access the database
- [Password]: Password of the database user

### Note

- Database type  
It is recommended to use a Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres database as a repository. A compatible PostgreSQL database can also be used as an alternative.
- It is recommended to click [Test connection] to ensure that the details entered are valid and WebAdmin is able to connect to the target database.
- Host name, Database name, User name, Password should not contain hazardous characters. Refer to "[Appendix C WebAdmin Disallow User Inputs Containing Hazardous Characters](#)".

4. Click  to register the repository details.



### Note

- Once the repository is set up, it can be changed any number of times by the user logged into WebAdmin. When a repository is changed:
  - It is recommended to preload the backup into this database.
  - If the data is not preloaded, WebAdmin will create a new repository.
- The database repository can be set up even after WebAdmin was already used to create instances. In that scenario, the instances already created are retained and can continue to be operated on.
- If the instance used as a repository is stopped, WebAdmin will be unusable. For this reason, it is recommended to be familiar with starting an instance from the command line. If the instance is stopped for any reason, start it from the command line and WebAdmin will be usable again.

## B.4 Using the WebAdmin Auto-Refresh Feature

The WebAdmin auto-refresh feature automatically refreshes the operating status of all instances in the Instance list at the specified interval. It also refreshes the details of the selected instance. You can use the auto-refresh feature to prevent timeouts.

Follow the procedure below to configure the auto-refresh options.

1. Click the [Settings] tab, and then click  in the [User preferences] section.
2. Enter the following items:
  - [Auto-refresh instance]: To use the auto-refresh feature, select "Enabled". The default is "Disabled".
  - [Refresh interval (seconds)]: Number of seconds between each refresh. This is a countdown timer, which is reset every time the instance status is refreshed by any operation. Specify a value from 30 to 3600 (seconds). The default is 30.
3. Click  to save the auto-refresh settings.

### Point

- Auto-refresh will run only if the [Instances] page is displayed and no user-initiated operation is in progress.
- A text indicator, which is independent of auto-refresh, is displayed at the top of the Instance list. It is dynamically updated to display when the page was last refreshed.

## Appendix C WebAdmin Disallow User Inputs Containing Hazardous Characters

WebAdmin considers the following as hazardous characters, which are not allowed in user inputs.

- | (pipe sign)
- & (ampersand sign)
- ; (semicolon sign)
- \$ (dollar sign)
- % (percent sign)
- @ (at sign)
- ' (single apostrophe)
- " (quotation mark)
- \ ' (backslash-escaped apostrophe)
- \ " (backslash-escaped quotation mark)
- <> (triangular parenthesis)
- () (parenthesis)
- + (plus sign)
- CR (Carriage return, ASCII 0x0d)
- LF (Line feed, ASCII 0x0a)
- , (comma sign)
- \ (backslash)

## Appendix D Configuring Parameters

WebAdmin operates and manages databases according to the contents of the following configuration files:

- [postgresql.conf](#)

Contains various items of information that define the operating environment of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

- [pg\\_hba.conf](#)

Contains various items of information related to client authentication.

These configuration files are deployed to a data storage destination. Data is written to them when the instance is created by WebAdmin and when settings are changed, and data is read from them when the instance is started and when information from the [Setting] menu is displayed.



See

Refer to "Server Configuration" and "Client Authentication" in "Server Administration" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on the parameters.



Note

WebAdmin checks for port number and backup storage path anomalies when various operations are performed. An anomaly occurs when the value of [Port number] and/or [Backup storage path] in WebAdmin is different from the value of the corresponding parameter in postgresql.conf. Refer to "Anomaly Detection and Resolution" in the Operation Guide for details.

### postgresql.conf

Parameters that can be changed in WebAdmin

The postgresql.conf parameters that can be changed in WebAdmin are shown below:

Section	WebAdmin item	postgresql.conf file parameter
<b>Instance Configuration</b>		
Character encoding	Character set	client_encoding
	Message locale	lc_messages
Communication	Max connections	max_connections
SQL options	Transform NULL format	transform_null_equals
	Date output format	DateStyle (*1)
	Interval output format	IntervalStyle
	Number of digits for floating values	extra_float_digits
	Transaction isolation levels	default_transaction_isolation
	Currency format	lc_monetary
	Date and time format	lc_time
	Numerical value format	lc_numeric
Memory	Sort memory (KB)	work_mem
	Shared buffers (KB)	shared_buffers
Streaming replication	WAL level	wal_level
	Maximum WAL senders	max_wal_senders

Section	WebAdmin item	postgresql.conf file parameter
	WAL save size (MB)	wal_keep_size
	Hot standby	hot_standby
	Synchronous standby names	synchronous_standby_names
	WAL receiver timeout (ms)	wal_receiver_timeout
<b>Edit instance</b>		
	Instance name	n/a
	Instance port	port
	Backup storage path	backup_destination

\*1: If you specify "Postgres" as the output format, dates will be output in the "12-17-1997" format, not the "Wed Dec 17 1997" format used in the PostgreSQL Documentation.

## Information

- Calculate the maximum number of connections using the formula below:

```
maximumNumberOfConnections = maximumNumberOfConnectionsFromApplications + 3 (*1)
```

\*1: 3 is the default number of connections required by the system.

Calculate the maximum number of connections using the following formula when changing superuser\_reserved\_connections (connections reserved for use by the superuser) in postgresql.conf.

```
maximumNumberOfConnections = maximumNumberOfConnectionsFromApplications +
superuser_reserved_connections
```

- Also check if the memory used exceeds the memory installed (refer to "[Parameters automatically set by WebAdmin according to the amount of memory](#)").
- When modifying "Shared buffers" or "Max connections", edit the kernel parameter. Refer to "[Appendix H Configuring Kernel Parameters](#)", and "Managing Kernel Resources" in "Server Administration" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for details.

## Parameters set by WebAdmin

The following postgresql.conf parameters are set by WebAdmin during instance startup (they will be ignored even if specified in postgresql.conf):

Parameter	Value
listen_addresses	*
log_destination	'stderr,syslog'
logging_collector	on
log_line_prefix	'%e: %t [%p]: [%l-1] user = %u,db = %d,remote = %r app = %a '
log_filename (*1) (*2)	'logfile-%a.log'
log_file_mode	0600
log_truncate_on_rotation	on
log_rotation_age	1d

\*1: The server logs are split into files based on the day of the week, and are rotated after each week.

\*2: If the date changes while the instance is stopped, old logs are not deleted and continue to exist. Manually delete old logs that are no longer required to release disk space.

## Parameters automatically set by WebAdmin according to the amount of memory

The postgresql.conf parameters automatically set according to the amount of installed memory, during the creation of instances by WebAdmin, are shown below:

Parameter	Value
shared_buffers	30% of the machine's installed memory
work_mem	30% of the machine's installed memory / max_connections / 2
effective_cache_size	75% of the machine's installed memory
maintenance_work_mem	10% of the machine's installed memory / (1 + autovacuum_max_workers) (*1)

\*1: The value will be capped at 2097151 KB.

When determining the values to be configured in the above parameters, you must take into account any anticipated increases in access volume or effects on performance during business operations, such as the number of applications and commands that will access the instance, and the content of processes. Also, note that in addition to Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres, other software may be running on the actual database server. You will need to determine the degree of priority for the database and other software, as well as the memory allocation size.

WebAdmin automatically configures complex parameter settings such as those mentioned above, based on the size of the internal memory of the machine. This enables maximum leverage of the machine memory to facilitate resistance against fluctuations during business operations.

Accordingly, the effects of the above-mentioned factors must be estimated and taken into account when determining and configuring parameter values, so that memory resources can be effectively allocated among other software or instances, and so that adverse effects can be mutually avoided. Refer to "Memory" in "Resource Consumption", and "Planner Cost Constants" in "Query Planning", under "Server Administration" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on parameter values and required considerations.

Parameter values can be modified using the WebAdmin [Setting] menu, or edited directly using a text editor.

If adding an instance, determine the parameter values, including for existing instances, and make changes accordingly.



### See

Kernel parameters need to be tuned according to the parameters being changed. Refer to "[Appendix H Configuring Kernel Parameters](#)", and "Managing Kernel Resources" in "Server Administration" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on tuning kernel parameters.



### Note

- You can edit postgresql.conf directly with a text editor. However, do not edit the following parameters. If you edit incorrectly, WebAdmin will not work correctly.
  - archive\_mode
  - archive\_command
  - wal\_level
  - log\_line\_prefix
  - log\_destination
  - logging\_collector
  - log\_directory
  - log\_file\_mode
  - log\_filename



- log\_truncate\_on\_rotation
  - log\_rotation\_age
  - If you edit postgresql.conf directly, the records should be single line. WebAdmin will not work correctly if the record spans multiple lines.
  - If you change superuser\_reserved\_connections, set the value you want to change plus the number of connections required by WebAdmin of 3.
- .....

## pg\_hba.conf

Refer to "Client Authentication" in "Server Administration" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on content that can be configured in pg\_hba.conf.



- .....
- Configure the instance administrator permissions in the "local" connection format settings. WebAdmin may not work properly if permissions are not configured.
  - You can also edit pg\_hba.conf directly. However, do not modify items that cannot be configured in WebAdmin. WebAdmin does not work correctly.
  - If you edit pg\_hba.conf directly, the records should be single line. WebAdmin will not work correctly if the record spans multiple lines.
- .....

# Appendix E Estimating Database Disk Space Requirements

This appendix describes how to estimate database disk space requirements.

## E.1 Estimating Table Size Requirements

The following tables provide the formulas for estimating table size requirements.

Table E.1 Estimation formula when the record length is 2032 bytes or less

Item	Estimation formula (bytes)
(1) Record length	$27(*1) + \text{NULL map} + \text{OID} + \text{column data}$ NULL map: $\text{Number of columns} / 8 (*2)$ OID: 4 Column data: Sum of column lengths *1: Record header section *2: Round the result up to the next integer. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Because the column data is placed in boundaries of 8 bytes, you need to make an adjustment so that the sum of the record header section, NULL map and OID is a multiple of 8. For example, if the calculated length is <math>27 + 1 / 8</math> (rounded up) + 0 = 28 bytes, add 4 to make the length 32 bytes.</li> <li>- Because the data of each column is placed in boundaries of the defined data type, take the boundary of each data type into account for the length of the column data. For example, the length of the column data in the table below will not be the sum of the data types, which is 37 bytes, but will instead be 64 bytes following boundary adjustment. Definition: create table tb1(c1 char(1), c2 bigint, c3 int, c4 box) Estimation: CHAR type 1 byte + boundary adjustment of 7 bytes for BIGINT type 8 bytes + BIGINT type 8 bytes + INT type 4 bytes + boundary adjustment of 12 bytes for BOX type 32 bytes + BOX type 32 bytes = 64 bytes</li> <li>- Because each record is placed in boundaries of 8 bytes, you need to make an adjustment so that the length of the column data is a multiple of 8.</li> <li>- If the calculated record length exceeds 2,032 bytes, the variable length data in the record might be compressed automatically. If so, use the estimation formulas in "<a href="#">Table E.2 Estimation formula when the record length exceeds 2032 bytes</a>" to estimate the table size.</li> </ul>
(2) Page size requirement	$8192 (*1) \times \text{fillfactor} (*2) - 24 (*3)$ *1: Page length (8192) *2: Value of the fillfactor specified in the table definitions (if omitted, 100%) *3: Page header (24) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The calculated (2) page size requirement will be rounded down to the nearest integer.</li> </ul>
(3) Number of records per page	$(2) \text{ Page size requirement} / ((1) \text{ record length} + 4 (*1))$ *1: Pointer length (4) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The result will be rounded down to the nearest integer.</li> </ul>

Item	Estimation formula (bytes)
(4) Number of pages required for storing records	Total number of records / (3) number of records per page - The result will be rounded up to the next integer.
(5) Amount of space	(4) Number of pages required for storing records x page length x safety factor (*1) *1: Specify 2.0 or higher. - This is the safety factor assumed if vacuuming is performed for garbage collection in tables and indexes.

Table E.2 Estimation formula when the record length exceeds 2032 bytes

Item	Estimation formula (bytes)
(5) Amount of space	Total number of records x (1) record length x safety factor (*1) *1: Specify 2.0 or higher. - This is the safety factor assumed if vacuuming is performed for garbage collection in tables and indexes.

## E.2 Estimating Index Size Requirements

This section provides the formulas for estimating index size requirements.

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres provides six index types: B-tree, Hash, GiST, GIN, SP-GiST, and VCI. If you do not specify the index type in the CREATE INDEX statement, a B-tree index is generated.

The following describes how to estimate a B-tree index. Refer to "[E.7 Estimating VCI Disk Space Requirements](#)" for information on how to estimate VCI.

A B-tree index is saved as a fixed-size page of 8 KB. The page types are meta, root, leaf, internal, deleted, and empty. Since leaf pages usually account for the highest proportion of space required, you need to calculate the requirements for these only.

Table E.3 Estimation formula when the key data length is 512 bytes or less

Item	Estimation formula (bytes)
(1) Entry length	8 (*1) + key data length (*2) *1: Entry header *2: The key data length depends on its data type (refer to " <a href="#">E.3 Sizes of Data Types</a> " for details). Because each entry is placed in boundaries of 8 bytes, you need to make an adjustment so that the length of the key data is a multiple of 8. For example, if the calculated length is 28 bytes, add 4 to make the length 32 bytes. - If the key data length exceeds 512 bytes, key data may be automatically compressed. In this case, use the estimation formula given in " <a href="#">Table E.4 Estimation formula when the key data length exceeds 512 bytes</a> " to estimate the key data length.
(2) Page size requirement	8192 (*1) × fillfactor (*2) - 24 (*3) - 16 (*4) *1: Page length (8192) *2: Value of the fillfactor specified in the index definitions (if omitted, 90%) In the case of indexes of primary key constraints and unique constraints, the value of the fillfactor specified for each constraint in the table definitions (if omitted, 90%) *3: Page header (24) *4: Special data (16)

Item	Estimation formula (bytes)
	- The calculated (2) page size requirement will be rounded down to the nearest integer.
(3) Number of entries per page	(2) Page size requirement / ((1) entry length + 4 (*1)) *1: Pointer length - Result of (3) number of entries per page will be rounded down to the nearest integer.
(4) Number of pages required for storing indexes	Total number of records / (3) number of entries per page - Result of (4) number of pages required for storing indexes will be rounded up to the nearest integer.
(5) Space requirement	(4) Number of pages required for storing indexes x 8192 (*1) / usage rate (*2) *1: Page length *2: Specify 0.7 or lower.

Table E.4 Estimation formula when the key data length exceeds 512 bytes

Item	Estimation formula (bytes)
(5) Space requirement	Total number of records x key data length x compression ratio (*1) / usage rate (*2) *1: The compression ratio depends on the data value, so specify 1. *2: Specify 0.7 or lower as the usage rate.

## E.3 Sizes of Data Types

This section lists the sizes of the data types.

### E.3.1 Sizes of Fixed-Length Data Types

The following table lists the sizes of fixed-length data types.

Data type	Size (bytes)
SMALLINT (INT2)	2
INTEGER (INT4)	4
BIGINT (INT8)	8
REAL	4
DOUBLE PRECISION	8
SERIAL (SERIAL4)	4
BIGSERIAL (SERIAL8)	8
MONEY	8
FLOAT	8
FLOAT (1-24)	4
FLOAT (25-53)	8
TIMESTAMP WITHOUT TIME ZONE	8
TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE	8
DATE	4
TIME WITHOUT TIME ZONE	8
TIME WITH TIME ZONE	12

Data type	Size (bytes)
INTERVAL	12
BOOLEAN	1
CIDR	IPv4: 7 IPv6: 19
INET	IPv4: 7 IPv6: 19
MACADDR	6
MACADDR8	8
POINT	16
LINE	32
LSEG	32
BOX	32
CIRCLE	24

### E.3.2 Sizes of Variable-Length Data Types

The following table lists the sizes of variable-length data types.

Data type	Size (bytes)	Remarks
path	Length of size portion + 12 + 16 x number of vertices	1) When carrying out division, round to the next integer.  2) If the real data length is less than 127, then the length of the size portion is 1 byte, otherwise it is 4 bytes.  3) The number of bytes per character depends on the character set (refer to "E.3.4 Number of Bytes per Character" for details).
polygon	Length of size portion + 36 + 16 x number of vertices	
decimal	Length of size portion + 2 + (integer precision / 4 + decimal precision / 4) x 2	
numeric		
bytea	Length of size portion + real data length	
character varying( <i>n</i> ), varchar( <i>n</i> )	Length of size portion + number of characters x number of bytes per character	
character( <i>n</i> ), char( <i>n</i> )	Length of size portion + <i>n</i> x number of bytes per character	
text	Length of size portion + number of characters x number of bytes per character	

### E.3.3 Sizes of Array Data Types

The following table lists the sizes of array data types.

Data type	Size (bytes)	Remarks
Array	Length of size portion + 12 + 8 x number of dimensions + data size of each item	If the real data length is less than 127, then the length of the size portion is 1 byte, otherwise it is 4 bytes. - Example of estimation when array data is "ARRAY[[1,2,3], [1,2,3]]" Number of dimensions: 2 INTEGER data size: 4 Total size = 1+12+8x2+6x4 = 53

## E.3.4 Number of Bytes per Character

The following table lists the number of bytes per character.

The given values relate to the common character sets EUC-JP and UTF8.

Character type	Character set	Number of bytes per character
ASCII	EUC_JP	1
Halfwidth katakana	EUC_JP	2
JIS X 0208 kanji characters	EUC_JP	2
JIS X 0212 kanji characters	EUC_JP	3
ASCII	UTF8	1
Halfwidth katakana	UTF8	3
JIS X 0208 kanji characters	UTF8	3
JIS X 0212 kanji characters	UTF8	3

## E.4 Estimating Transaction Log Space Requirements

This section provides the formula for estimating transaction log space requirements.

```
Transaction log space requirements = max_wal_size
```

However, if the update volume is extremely high (for example, due to a large data load and batch processing), disk writing at a checkpoint may not be able to keep up with the load, and a higher number of transaction logs than indicated here may temporarily be accumulated.

## E.5 Estimating Archive Log Space Requirements

This section explains how to estimate archive log space requirements.

The archive log is an archive of the transaction logs from the time of a previous backup to the present, so it fluctuates depending on the backup period and the content of update transactions.

The longer the backup period and the more update transactions, the greater the space required for the archive log.

Therefore, measure the actual archive log space by using a test environment to simulate backup scheduling and database update in a real operating environment.

## E.6 Estimating Backup Disk Space Requirements

This section provides the formula for estimating backup disk space requirements.

```
Backup disk space requirements = size of the database cluster x 2 + transaction log space requirements  
+ archive log space requirements
```



### Note

If the `pgx_dmpall` command performs a backup using a user exit, the backup disk size differs according to the database resources targeted for backup and the copy method.

## E.7 Estimating VCI Disk Space Requirements

This section provides the formula for estimating VCI disk space requirements.

```
Disk space = (number of rows in tables) x (number of bytes per row) x (compression ratio) + (WOS size)
```

### Number of bytes per row

$$\text{Number of bytes per row} = (19 + (\text{number of columns specified in CREATE INDEX}) / 8 + (\text{number of bytes per single column value})) \times 1.1$$

Note: Round up the result to the nearest integer.

### Compression ratio

Specify a value between 0 and 1. Since compression ratio depends on the data being compressed, use actual data or test data that simulates it, then compare the value with the estimation result. As a guide, the compression ratio measured with the Fujitsu sample data is shown below:

- Data with high degree of randomness (difficult to compress): Up to approximately 0.9 times.
- Data with high degree of similarity (easy to compress): Up to approximately 0.5 times.

### WOS size

$$\text{WOS size} = (\text{number of WOS rows}) / 185 \times 8096$$

One row is added to the number of WOS rows for each INSERT and DELETE, and two rows are added for UPDATE. On the other hand, the number decreases to 520,000 rows or less during conversion to ROS performed by the ROS control daemon.



.....

VCI does not support retrieval of disk space usage using the database object size function `pg_indexes_size`. To find out the actual total VCI disk space, check the disk space of the storage directory using an OS command or other method.

.....

# Appendix F Estimating Memory Requirements

This appendix explains how to estimate the memory.

## F.1 Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Memory Requirements

This section describes the formulas for estimating Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres memory requirements.

Use the following formula to obtain a rough estimate of memory required for Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres:

$$fujitsuEnterprisePostgresRequiredMemory = sharedMemoryAmount + localMemoryAmount$$

### Shared memory amount

```
sharedMemoryAmount = 1523444
                    + 8518 x x
                    + 7154 x (a + b + c + d + 1)
                    + 405 x (a + b + c + d + e) x f
                    + (1208 + g) x (a + b + c + d + 9)
                    + 64 x b
                    + 568 x c
                    + 104 x d
                    + 5666 x e
                    + 112 x h
                    + 8200 x i
                    + 512 x j
                    + 4 x (k + 10)
                    + 1097984 x m
                    + 258 x (a + b + c + d + 1 + e) x o
                    + (1024 x 1024) x p
                    + n
                    + 128 x q
```

The above units are Byte.

#### Parameter Details:

x = shared\_buffer/8

Note : Units of shared\_buffer (kB)

Example : x = 16384 (128 x 1024/8) when shared\_buffer = 128 MB

Convert MB to KB to calculate x.

a = max\_connections

b = autovacuum\_max\_workers

c = max\_worker\_processes

d = max\_wal\_senders

e = max\_prepared\_transactions

f = max\_locks\_per\_transaction

g = track\_activity\_query\_size (byte)

h = max\_logical\_replication\_workers

i = wal\_buffers/8

Note: If wal\_buffers is the default value (-1), calculate i = x/32.

However, if it becomes 2048 or more, set the maximum value to 2048.

If i = x/32, there is a limit on the maximum value of i.

Max i = WAL segment size/8

The WAL segment size can be set with the initdb option --wal-segsize.

The WAL segment size is in kilobytes.

(The default WAL segment size is 16 MB. Convert to KB when calculating i)

Example: If shared\_buffer = 128 MB and wal\_buffers = -1, i = 512 (16384/32)

If shared\_buffer = 2 GB and wal\_buffers = -1, i = 2048 (2 x 1024 x 1024/8/32 = 8192, but the maximum value of i is 2048)

If wal\_buffers = 512 kB, i = 64 (512/8)

i = 4096 (32 x 1024/8) when wal\_buffers = 32 MB



Converts MB to KB to calculate i.

```
j = max_replication_slots
k = old_snapshot_threshold
```

Note: If `old_snapshot_threshold` is the default value (-1), there is no need to add "4 x (k + 10)" to the quote formula.

```
old_snapshot_threshold units (min)
```

Example: k = 60 (1 x 60) if `old_snapshot_threshold` = 1 h

Convert h to min to get k.

```
m = pgx_global_metacache (megabytes)
n = memory size requested by the plug-in (determined by the plug-in)
o = max_pred_locks_per_transaction
p = min_dynamic_shared_memory (MB)
q = number of database roles
```

However, note that if instances have been created using WebAdmin, the parameters below will be configured automatically when the instances are created. Take this into account when calculating the shared memory size.

Parameter name	Set value
shared_buffers	30 percent of the internal memory of the machine.
max_connections	100
max_prepared_transactions	100

## Local memory amount

```
localMemoryAmount = processStackArea
                    + memoryUsedInDbSessionsThatUseTempTables
                    + memoryUsedInDbSessionsThatPerformSortAndHashTableOperations
                    + memoryUsedInMaintenanceOperations
                    + baseMemoryUsedInEachProcess
                    + memoryUsedPreparingForDataAccess
```

### Process stack area

```
processStackArea
= max_stack_depth x (max_connections + autovacuum_max_workers + 9)
```

This formula evaluates to the maximum value.

Actually it is used according to the growth of the stack.

In the formula above, 9 is the number of processes that perform roles specific to servers.

### Memory used in database sessions that use temporary tables

```
memoryUsedInDbSessionsThatUseTempTables
= temp_buffers x max_connections
```

This formula evaluates to the maximum value.

Memory is gradually used as temporary buffers are used, and is released when the session ends.

### Memory used in database sessions that perform sort and hash table operations

```
memoryUsedInDbSessionsThatPerformSortAndHashTableOperations
= work_mem (*1) x max_connections
```

\*1) For hash table operations, multiply `work_mem` by `hash_mem_multiplier`.

This formula evaluates to the maximum value.

Memory is gradually used as operations such as sort are performed, and is released when the query ends.

### Memory used in maintenance operations

```
memoryUsedInMaintenanceOperations
= maintenance_work_mem x (numOfSessionsPerformingMaintenance + autovacuum_max_workers)
```

Note that 'maintenance operations' are operations such as VACUUM, CREATE INDEX, and ALTER TABLE ADD FOREIGN KEY.

#### Base memory used in each process

```
baseMemoryUsedInEachProcess
= baseMemoryUsedInOneProcess x (max_connections + autovacuum_max_workers + 9)
```

Use the result of the following formula for memory consumed per process. This formula evaluates to the memory used when server processes are running.

In the formula above, 9 is the number of processes that perform roles specific to servers.

The amount of memory consumed per process is determined by the number of tables, indexes, and all columns of all tables that the process accesses. If your system has about 100 tables, you can estimate it to be 3 MB, but otherwise use the following estimate:

```
baseMemoryUsedInOneProcess
= (1.9KB x All user tables + 2.9KB x All user indexes + 1.0KB x All user columns) x 1.5(*1)
```

If you enable the Global Meta Cache feature, use the following formula:

```
baseMemoryUsedInOneProcess
= (All user tables + All user indexes + All user columns) x 1.0KB x 1.5 (*1)
+ (All user tables x 1.4KB + All user indexes x 2.4KB)
```

\*1) Safety Factor (1.5)

There are variable length information. This value takes that into account.

#### Memory used preparing for data access

```
memoryUsedPreparingForDataAccess
= variationAmount x (max_connections + autovacuum_max_workers + 4)

where variationAmount = shared_buffers / 8KB x 4 bytes
(note that 8KB is the page length, and 4 bytes is the size of page management data)
```

This formula evaluates to the memory required to access the database cache in the shared memory.

In the formula above, among the processes that perform roles specific to servers, 4 is the number of processes that access the database.

## F.2 Database Multiplexing Memory Requirements

This section describes the formula for estimating database multiplexing memory requirements for the database server.

Use the following formula to obtain a rough estimate of memory required for database multiplexing:

```
Memory usage of the database multiplexing feature for the database server
= Peak memory usage of the Mirroring Controller processes
+ Peak memory usage of the Mirroring Controller commands

Peak memory usage of the Mirroring Controller processes=150 MB

Peak memory usage of the Mirroring Controller commands=50 MB x Number of commands executed
simultaneously
```

## F.3 VCI Memory Requirements

This section describes the formula for estimating VCI memory requirements.

Use the following formula to obtain a rough estimate of memory requirements:

```
memUsedByVci = memForData + memForEachProcess
```

#### Memory required to store data in memory

Secure the space estimated using the formula below on the stable buffer (part of shared\_buffers).

```
memForData = (numOfRowsInTables) x (numOfBytesPerRow) + (wosSize)
```

#### Number of bytes per row

```
numOfBytesPerRow  
= (19 + (numOfColsInCreateIndexStatement) / 8 + (numOfBytesPerSingleColValue)) x 1.1
```

Note: Round up the result to the nearest integer.

#### WOS size

```
wosSize = (numOfWosRows) / 185 x 8096
```

One row is added to the number of WOS rows for each INSERT and DELETE, and two rows are added for UPDATE. On the other hand, the number decreases to 520,000 rows or less during conversion to ROS performed by the ROS control daemon.

### Memory required for each process

```
memForEachProcess  
= memUsedPerScanning  
+ memUsedForVciMaintenace  
+ memUsedByCreateIndexStatement
```

#### Memory used per scanning

- Parallel scan

```
memUsedPerScanning  
= vci.shared_work_mem + (numOfParallelWorkers + 1) x vci.maintenance_work_mem
```

Note: The number of parallel workers used by VCI simultaneously in the entire instance is equal to or less than vci.max\_parallel\_degree.

- Non-parallel scan

```
memUsedPerScanning = vci.max_local_ros + vci.maintenance_work_mem
```



#### Note

- vci.shared\_work\_mem, and vci.max\_local\_ros are used to create local ROS. If local ROS exceeds these sizes, execute a query without using VCI according to the conventional plan.
- vci.maintenance\_work\_mem specifies the memory size to be secured dynamically. If it exceeds the specified value, a disk temporary file is used for operation.

#### Memory used for VCI maintenance

```
memUsedForVciMaintenace = vci.maintenance_work_mem x vci.control_max_workers
```

#### Memory used by CREATE INDEX

```
memUsedByCreateIndexStatement = vci.maintenance_work_mem
```



#### Note

vci.maintenance\_work\_mem specifies the memory to be secured dynamically. If it exceeds the specified value, a disk temporary file is used for operation.

## F.4 High-Speed Data Load Memory Requirements

This section describes the formula for estimating memory requirements for the high-speed data load feature.

Use the following formula to obtain a rough estimate of memory requirements:

```
Memory usage of high speed data load
= (Peak memory usage of pgx_loader processes + Peak memory usage of the pgx_loader commands)
x Number of commands executed simultaneously

Peak memory usage of pgx_loader processes
= Peak memory usage of the backend process      (6 MB)
+ Peak memory usage of parallel workers          (6 MB x number of parallel workers)
+ Peak memory usage of dynamic shared memory (80 MB x number of parallel workers)

Peak memory usage of the pgx_loader commands=9 MB
```



### Point

.....

In addition to the size calculated using the formula above, the database cache on the shared memory estimated using the `shared_buffers` parameter is consumed according to the size of the data (table and index keys) loaded using this feature. Refer to "[E.1 Estimating Table Size Requirements](#)" and "[E.2 Estimating Index Size Requirements](#)" for information on estimating an appropriate shared buffers value.

.....

## F.5 Global Meta Cache Memory Requirements

This section describes the formula for estimating Global Meta Cache memory requirements.

The memory calculated by "Size of the GMC area" is allocated to the shared memory. The memory calculated by the per-process meta cache management information is allocated to the local memory. Refer to the graphic in "Architecture of Global Meta Cache Feature" in the "Memory usage reduction by Global Meta Cache" in the General Description for more information.

Use the following formula to obtain a rough estimate of memory requirements:

```
Amount of memory used by the Global Meta Cache feature
= Size of GMC area + Per-process meta cache management information

Size of GMC area = (All user tables x 0.4 KB
+ All user indexes x 0.3 KB
+ All user columns x 0.8 KB) x 1.5 (*1)

Per-process meta cache management information
= (All user tables + All user indexes + All user columns) x 0.1KB x max_connections x 1.5 (*1)
```

\*1) Safety Factor (1.5)

This value takes into account the case where both GMC before and after the change temporarily exist at the same time in shared memory when the table definition is changed or the row of the system catalog is changed.

# Appendix G Quantitative Limits

This appendix lists the quantitative limits of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

Table G.1 Length of identifier

Item	Limit
Database name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Schema name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Table name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
View name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Index name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Tablespace name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Cursor name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Function name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Aggregate function name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Trigger name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Constraint name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Conversion name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Role name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Cast name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Collation sequence name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Encoding method conversion name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Domain name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Extension name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Operator name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Operator class name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Operator family name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Rewrite rule name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Sequence name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Text search settings name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Text search dictionary name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Text search parser name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Text search template name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Data type name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Enumerator type label	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Profile name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)

\*1: This is the character string byte length when converted by the server character set character code.

\*2: If an identifier that exceeds 63 bytes in length is specified, the excess characters are truncated and it is processed.

Table G.2 Database object

Item	Limit
Number of databases	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of schemas	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of tables	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of views	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of indexes	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of tablespaces	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of functions	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of aggregate functions	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of triggers	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of constraints	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of conversion	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of roles	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of casts	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of collation sequences	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of encoding method conversions	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of domains	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of extensions	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of operators	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of operator classes	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of operator families	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of rewrite rules	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of sequences	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of text search settings	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of text search dictionaries	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of text search parsers	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of text search templates	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of data types	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of enumerator type labels	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of default access privileges defined in the ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES statement	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of large objects	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of index access methods	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of profile	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)

\*1: The total number of all database objects must be less than 4,294,967,296.

Table G.3 Schema element

Item	Limit
Number of columns that can be defined in one table	From 250 to 1600 (according to the data type)
Table row length	Up to 400 gigabytes

Item	Limit
Number of columns comprising a unique constraint	Up to 32 columns
Data length comprising a unique constraint	Less than 2,000 bytes (*1) (*2)
Table size	Up to 32 terabyte
Search condition character string length in a trigger definition statement	Up to 800 megabytes (*1) (*2)
Item size	Up to 1 gigabyte

\*1: Operation might proceed correctly even if operations are performed with a quantity outside the limits.

\*2: This is the character string byte length when converted by the server character set character code.

Table G.4 Index

Item	Limit
Number of columns comprising a key (including VCI)	Up to 32 columns
Key length (other than VCI)	Less than 2,000 bytes (*1)

\*1: This is the character string byte length when converted by the server character set character code.

Table G.5 Data types and attributes that can be handled

Item			Limit
Character	Data length		Data types and attributes that can be handled (*1)
	Specification length (n)		Up to 10,485,760 characters (*1)
Numeric	External decimal expression		Up to 131,072 digits before the decimal point, and up to 16,383 digits after the decimal point
	Internal binary expression	2 bytes	From -32,768 to 32,767
		4 bytes	From -2,147,483,648 to 2,147,483,647
		8 bytes	From -9,223,372,036,854,775,808 to 9,223,372,036,854,775,807
	Internal decimal expression		Up to 13,1072 digits before the decimal point, and up to 16,383 digits after the decimal point
	Floating point expression	4 bytes	From -3.4E+38 to -7.1E-46, 0, or from 7.1E-46 to 3.4E+38
		8 bytes	From -1.7E+308 to -2.5E-324, 0, or from 2.5E-324 to 1.7E+308
bytea			Up to one gigabyte minus 53 bytes
Large object			Up to 4 terabyte

\*1: This is the character string byte length when converted by the server character set character code.

Table G.6 Function definition

Item	Limit
Number of arguments that can be specified	Up to 100
Number of variable names that can be specified in the declarations section	No limit

Item	Limit
Number of SQL statements or control statements that can be specified in a function processing implementation	No limit

Table G.7 Data operation statement

Item	Limit
Maximum number of connections for one process in an application (remote access)	4,000 connections
Number of expressions that can be specified in a selection list	Up to 1,664
Number of tables that can be specified in a FROM clause	No limit
Number of unique expressions that can be specified in a selection list/DISTINCT clause/ORDER BY clause/GROUP BY clause within one SELECT statement	Up to 1,664
Number of expressions that can be specified in a GROUP BY clause	No limit
Number of expressions that can be specified in an ORDER BY clause	No limit
Number of SELECT statements that can be specified in a UNION clause/INTERSECT clause/EXCEPT clause	Up to 4,000 (*1)
Number of nestings in joined tables that can be specified in one view	Up to 4,000 (*1)
Number of functions or operator expressions that can be specified in one expression	Up to 4,000 (*1)
Number of expressions that can be specified in one row constructor	Up to 1,664
Number of expressions that can be specified in an UPDATE statement SET clause	Up to 1,664
Number of expressions that can be specified in one row of a VALUES list	Up to 1,664
Number of expressions that can be specified in a RETURNING clause	Up to 1,664
Total expression length that can be specified in the argument list of one function specification	Up to 800 megabytes (*2)
Number of cursors that can be processed simultaneously by one session	No limit
Character string length of one SQL statement	Up to 800 megabytes (*1) (*3)
Number of input parameter specifications that can be specified in one dynamic SQL statement	No limit
Number of tokens that can be specified in one SQL statement	Up to 10,000
Number of values that can be specified as a list in a WHERE clause IN syntax	No limit
Number of expressions that can be specified in a USING clause	No limit
Number of JOINS that can be specified in a joined table	Up to 4,000 (*1)
Number of expressions that can be specified in COALESCE	No limit
Number of WHEN clauses that can be specified for CASE in a simple format or a searched format	No limit
Data size per record that can be updated or inserted by one SQL statement	Up to one gigabyte minus 53 bytes
Number of objects that can share a lock simultaneously	Up to 256,000 (*1)



\*1: Operation might proceed correctly even if operations are performed with a quantity outside the limits.

\*2: The total number of all database objects must be less than 4,294,967,296.

\*3: This is the character string byte length when converted by the server character set character code.

Table G.8 Data size

Item	Limit
Data size per record for input data files (COPY statement, psql command \copy meta command)	Up to 800 megabytes (*1)
Data size per record for output data files (COPY statement, psql command \copy meta command)	Up to 800 megabytes (*1)

\*1: Operation might proceed correctly even if operations are performed with a quantity outside the limits.

## Appendix H Configuring Kernel Parameters

Use the "System V IPC Parameters" table in "Managing Kernel Resources" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for the relationship between configuration parameters and kernel parameters, as well as calculation formulas.

Refer to the "Managing Kernel Resources" in the PostgreSQL Documentation to calculate shared memory usage.

For multiple instances, the kernel parameters should be evaluated for all instances. For example, in the case of the maximum number of shared memory segments for the entire system (SHMMNI), the total number of segments obtained by all instances should be added to the kernel parameters. In the case of the maximum number of semaphores for each process (SEMMSL), the largest of all sizes obtained by all instances should be compared to the current value prior to configuring the settings.



### Note

If there is insufficient shared memory due to miscalculation of SHMMAX, a message will be output indicating that the shmget system call failed at "errno=22 (EINVAL)". Review the calculation, and reconfigure.

The relationship between System V IPC parameters and kernel parameters in various operating systems is shown below.

System	V IPC parameter	Kernel parameter action
SHMMAX	kernel.shmmax	If <i>currentValue</i> < <i>calculatedValue</i> , configure the calculated value
SHMMIN	No compatible parameter	
SHMALL	kernel.shmall	Specify <i>currentValue</i> + <i>calculatedValue</i>
SHMSEG	No compatible parameter	
SHMMNI	kernel.shmmni	Specify <i>currentValue</i> + <i>calculatedValue</i>
SEMMNI	Fourth parameter of kernel.sem	Specify <i>currentValue</i> + <i>calculatedValue</i>
SEMMNS	Second parameter of kernel.sem	Specify <i>currentValue</i> + <i>calculatedValue</i>
SEMMSL	First parameter of kernel.sem	If <i>currentValue</i> < <i>calculatedValue</i> , configure the calculated value
SEMAP	No compatible parameter	
SEVMX	No compatible parameter	

Remark 1: kernel.shmall specifies the number of pages.

Remark 2: Specify all four parameters for kernel.sem. At this time, the value specified in the third parameter should be the same value as before configuration.

# Appendix I Determining the Preferred WebAdmin Configuration

This appendix describes the two different configurations in which WebAdmin can be used and how to select the most suitable configuration.

## I.1 WebAdmin Configurations

WebAdmin can be installed in two configurations:

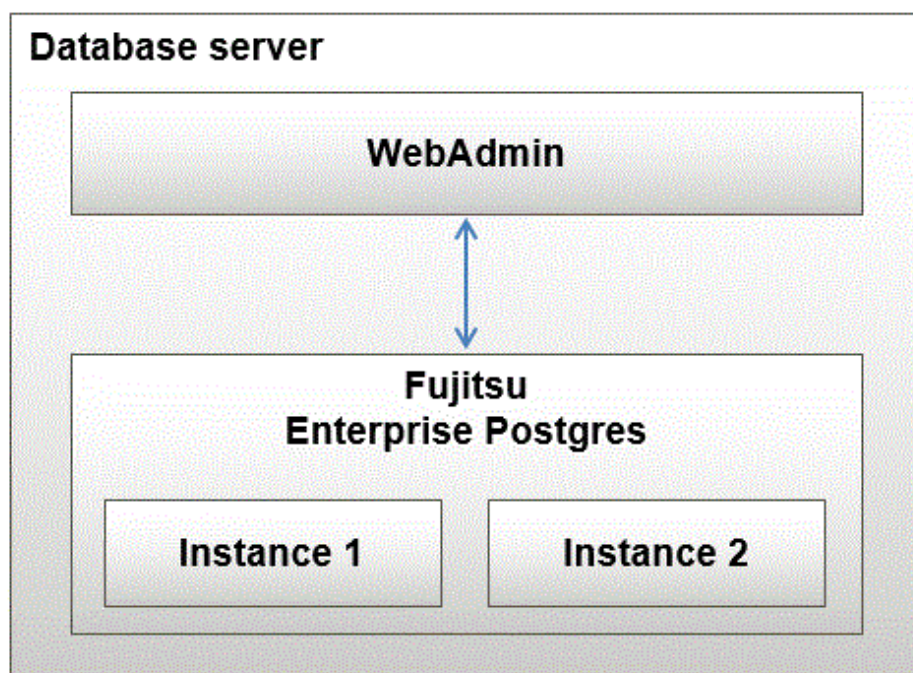
- Single-server
- Multiserver

WebAdmin does not support encrypted communication between browser and server or between servers. Therefore, when using WebAdmin in either configuration, build the communication path with the browser or each server on a network that cannot be accessed externally.

### I.1.1 Single-Server Configuration

A single-server configuration enables you to create and operate instances on a single server. In this configuration, WebAdmin must be installed on the same database server as the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Server component.

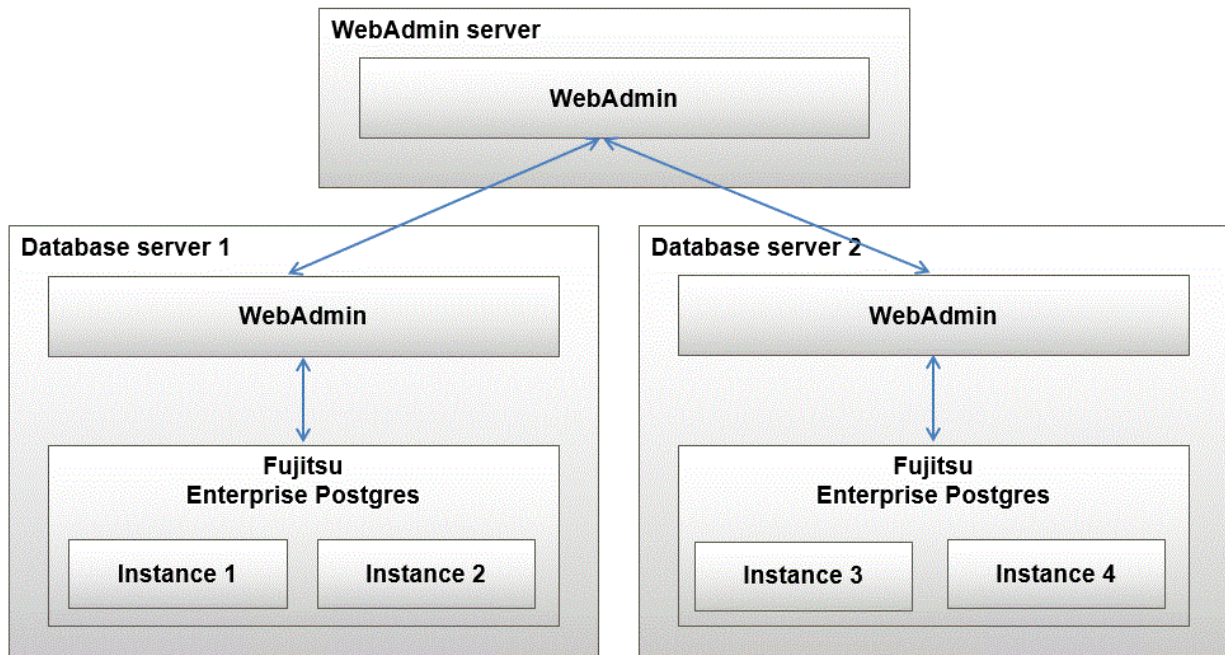
Single-server configuration



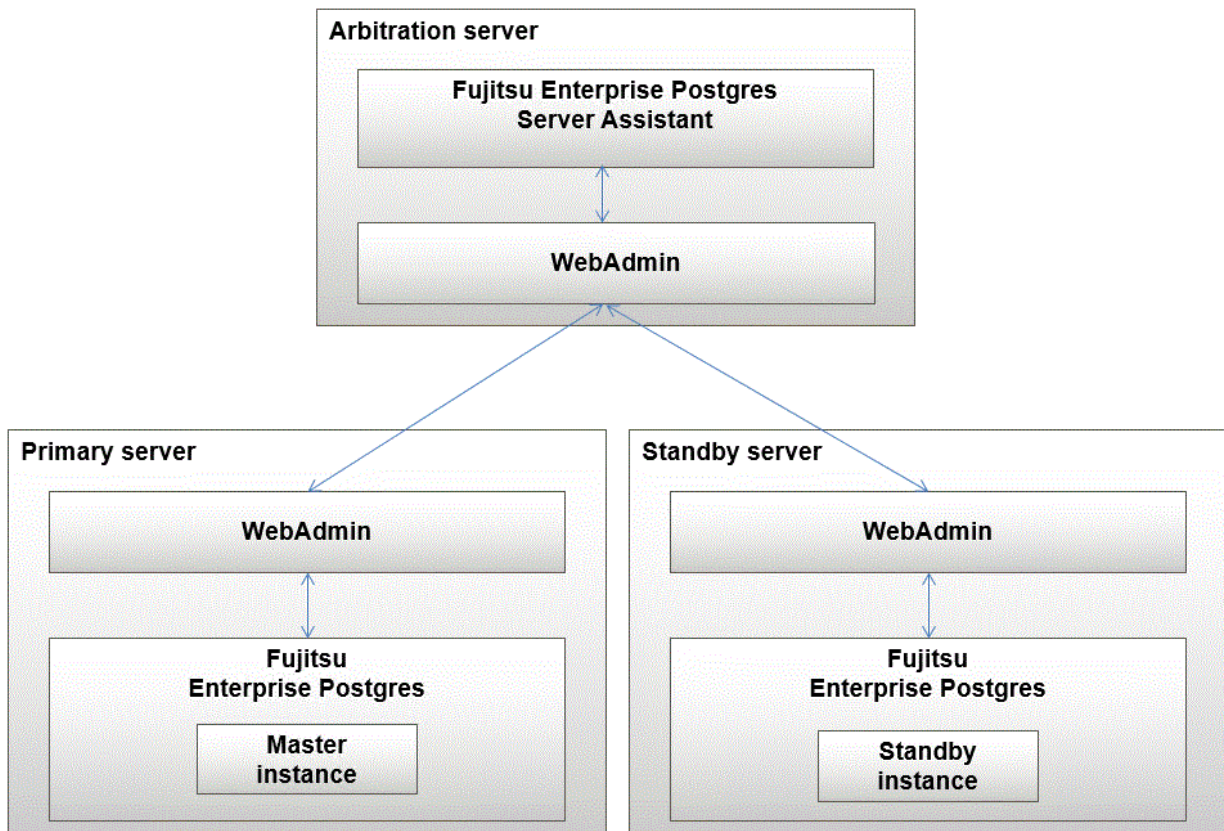
### I.1.2 Multiserver Configuration

A multiserver configuration enables you to create and operate instances stored on multiple database servers. As shown in the figure below, WebAdmin can be installed on a dedicated WebAdmin server and used to collectively manage the instances stored on the database servers.

Multiserver configuration



Also, when setting up the arbitration server by WebAdmin during database multiplexing mode, install WebAdmin on the arbitration server.



## I.2 Installing WebAdmin in a Single-Server Configuration

To install WebAdmin in a single-server configuration, the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Server component and WebAdmin must be installed on the same machine.

Select the following items when installing Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres in a single-server configuration:

- Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Advanced Edition or Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Standard Edition
- WebAdmin

## I.3 Installing WebAdmin in a Multiserver Configuration

---

In a multiserver configuration, install WebAdmin on one server, and both WebAdmin and the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Server component on any number of database servers.

Select the following items when installing Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres in a multiserver configuration:

- WebAdmin server:
  - WebAdmin
- Database server:
  - Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Advanced Edition or Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Standard Edition
  - WebAdmin

Also, when setting up the arbitration server by WebAdmin during database multiplexing mode, select the following when installing Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

- Arbitration server
  - Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Server Assistant
  - WebAdmin



See

.....  
Refer to the Installation and Setup Guide for Server Assistant for details on how to install the Server Assistant.  
.....

## Appendix J System Configuration when using Pgpool-II

Describes the system configuration when using Pgpool-II.

The system configuration when using Pgpool-II is as follows:

Place on database server

System configuration to coexist the database server with Pgpool-II.

Place on application server

System configuration to coexist the application server with Pgpool-II.

Place on dedicated server

System configuration in which Pgpool-II resides on a dedicated server (Pgpool-II Server) that is separate from the database and application servers.

Select the system configuration that best meets your operational requirements.

### J.1 Pgpool-II Configuration

In this example, Pgpool-II is deployed on a different Pgpool-II server than the database and application servers.

There are three configurations of Pgpool-II:

- Single-machine configuration
- Two-machine configuration
- Three-machine configuration

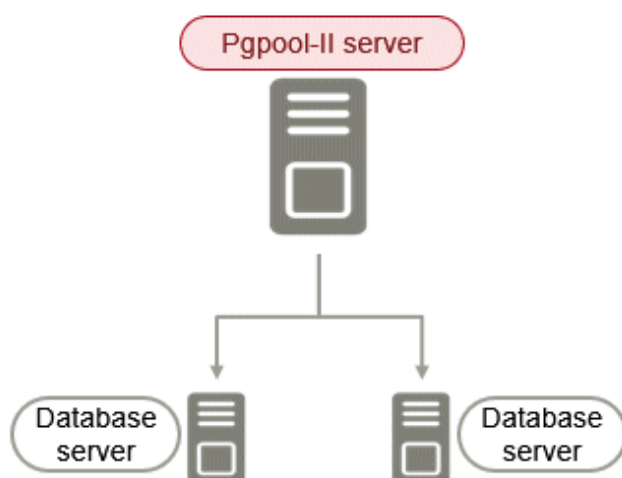
Although the Pgpool-II server can be operated on a single machine, to ensure business continuity, it is recommended to operate the Pgpool-II server using a three-machine configuration in Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

If employing a configuration of three or more machines, use an odd number of machines in the configuration.

#### J.1.1 Single-Machine Configuration

This is the basic configuration when running Pgpool-II.

Although the database server has redundancy, if an error occurs on the Pgpool-II server that accesses the database server, the job will stop.

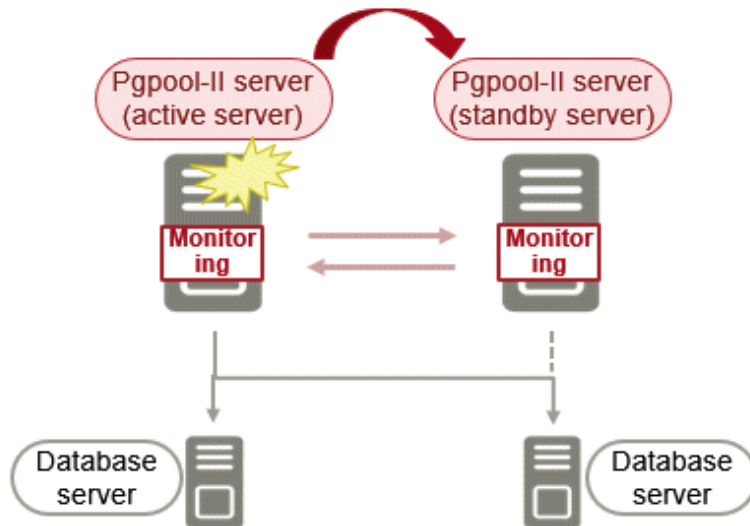




## J.1.2 Two-Machine Configuration

When an error occurs on the active server, the Pgpool-II monitoring feature that mutually monitors the status of the Pgpool-II servers enables jobs to continue uninterrupted by switching to the standby server.

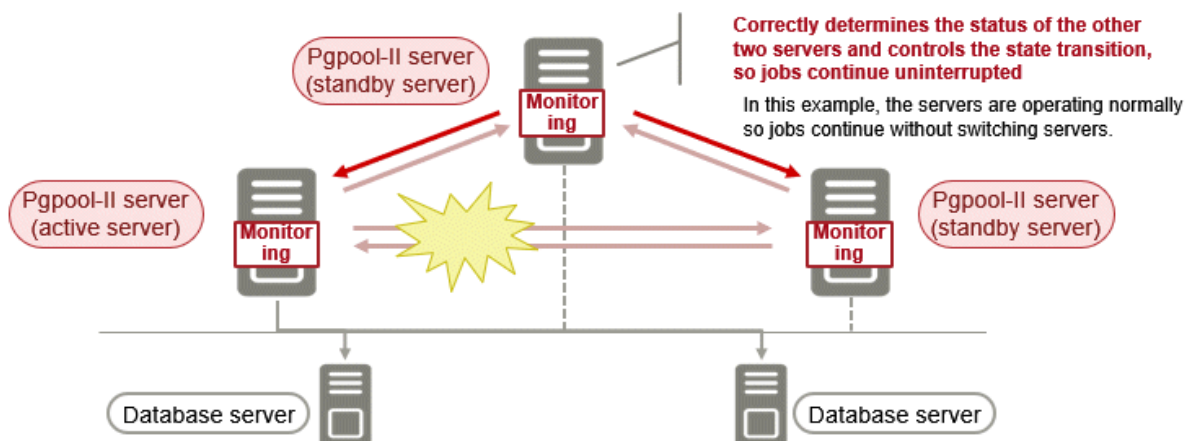
If the network between Pgpool-II servers is disconnected, even if the Pgpool-II servers are running correctly, which may lead to stoppage of jobs.



## J.1.3 Three-Machine Configuration

The Pgpool-II monitoring feature enables a Pgpool-II server to monitor the other two Pgpool-II servers.

Even if any of the networks monitoring the Pgpool-II servers are disconnected, the status of servers on a network that is operating normally can be checked correctly, enabling accurate continuation of jobs.



## J.2 Installing Pgpool-II

Pgpool-II is bundled with the server program and the client program. To use Pgpool-II, use the server program or the client program to install and set up Pgpool-II.

Depending on where Pgpool-II is installed, select the appropriate DVD for deployment:

### Installing on Database Server (coexist)

Install the Pgpool-II program along with the server program from the server program DVD.

### Installing on Application Server (coexist)

Install the Pgpool-II program along with the client program from the client program DVD.

### Installing on Dedicated server different from the above (Pgpool-II server)

Install the Pgpool-II program along with the client program from the client program DVD.

## J.3 Pgpool-II Setup

---

Describes how to set up Pgpool-II.

### J.3.1 Setting Environment Variables

---

If you use the Pgpool-II command, set the following environment variables:

#### PATH environment variable

Add "Install Directory/bin".

The following is an example of setting environment variables:

#### Example

The following is an example of setting environment variables when the installation directory is "/opt/fsepv <x> pgpool-II".

"<x>" indicates the product version.

```
$ PATH=/opt/fsepv<x>pgpool-II/bin:$PATH ; export PATH
```

### J.3.2 Configuration file

---

Describes Pgpool-II configuration files.

#### J.3.2.1 Configuring pgpool.conf

To configure pgpool.conf, see the Pgpool-II documentation.

A sample configuration file is located under the installation directory/etc.

#### J.3.2.2 Using Configuration Files

The pgpool command makes use of configuration files such as pgpool.conf, pcp.conf, and pool\_hba.conf.

To take advantage of these configuration files, specify the path to the files in the pgpool command options.

The following example shows how to configure options for the pgpool command:

#### Example

```
$ pgpool -f /usr/local/etc/pgpool.conf -F /usr/local/etc/pcp.conf -a /usr/local/etc/pool_hba.conf
```



## Appendix K Supported contrib Modules and Extensions Provided by External Projects

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres supports PostgreSQL contrib modules, and extensions provided by external projects.

Refer to the following for details on the supported contrib modules:

- "Additional Supplied Modules" in the PostgreSQL Documentation
- "Additional Supplied Programs" in the PostgreSQL Documentation



### Information

You can also check the list of available extensions using the `pg_available_extensions` view.

Refer to "OSS Supported by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres" in the General Description for information on supported extensions provided by external projects.

# Appendix L Procedure when Modifying the JRE Installation

This appendix describes the procedures to follow when modifying the JRE installation.

The JRE, of which the installation destination is specified in the JAVA\_HOME environment variable when installing Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres, is used by features such as WebAdmin and database multiplexing.

Therefore, when updating or reinstalling JRE after installing Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres, the procedures below must be performed.

## L.1 When Using WebAdmin

WebAdmin must be set up again.

Follow the procedure below to modify the JRE installation:

1. Stop the Web server feature of WebAdmin

Refer to "[B.1.3 Stopping the Web Server Feature of WebAdmin](#)" for details.

2. Remove WebAdmin

Refer to "[B.2 Removing WebAdmin](#)" for details.

3. Modify the JRE installation

4. Set the JAVA\_HOME environment variable

Set the JAVA\_HOME environment variable to the installation destination of JRE 8.

Example

```
# export JAVA_HOME="Jre8InstallDir"
```

5. Set up WebAdmin

Refer to "[B.1.1 Setting Up WebAdmin](#)" for details.

6. Start the Web server feature of WebAdmin

Refer to "[B.1.2 Starting the Web Server Feature of WebAdmin](#)" for details.

## L.2 When Performing Database Multiplexing

Mirroring Controller must be restarted.

Follow the procedure below to modify the JRE installation:

1. Stop Mirroring Controller

Refer to the Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing) for details.

2. Modify the JRE installation

3. Change the installation environment to be used by Mirroring Controller



### Note

.....  
If database multiplexing is performed using WebAdmin, perform the procedure described in this procedure after performing step 4 "Set the JAVA\_HOME environment variable" in "[L.1 When Using WebAdmin](#)".  
.....

Set the JAVA\_HOME environment variable to the installation destination of JRE 8, and use the mc\_update\_jre\_env command to change the installation environment to be used by Mirroring Controller.

This procedure must be executed by the superuser.

### Example

/opt/fsepv<x>server64/bin is the installation directory where the server product is installed.

```
$ su -  
Password:*****  
# export JAVA_HOME="Jre8InstallDir"  
# /opt/fsepv<x>server64/bin/mc_update_jre_env
```

#### 4. Start Mirroring Controller

Refer to the Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing) for details.

# Appendix M Access to Key Management System Using Plug-in

## M.1 What to do with Plug-ins

Plug-ins are called to verify, encrypt, and decrypt keys.

Key validation, encryption, and decryption requests are required.

## M.2 Where the Plug-in is Stored

Plug-ins are stored as executables with the same name as the plug-in name in the directory specified in the `tde_kms.plugin.path` parameter. It is the responsibility of the database administrator to ensure that only secure plugins are stored in this directory.

## M.3 Invoking the Plug-in

The plug-in runs with the same ownership as the user running the FEP server. The plug-in is passed information that should be kept secret. It is the database administrator's responsibility to ensure that the plug-in is trustworthy.

Plug-ins can be invoked at the same time (multiple).

The plug-in must complete the operation in a timely manner and return a response.

## M.4 Passing Confidential Information to Plug-ins

Confidential credentials passed to the FEP instance using the FEP keystore open facility (`pgx _ open _ keystore` function, opening at server startup prompt, opening using obfuscated files) are passed to the plug-in as environment variables.

You can pass arbitrary values as arguments when calling the plug-in, but do not use this feature to pass sensitive information.

The authentication and authorization of access to the key management system depends on the implementation of the plug-in.

## M.5 Calling Convention

### M.5.1 Key Verification

Arguments

The following arguments are supplied:

	Argument value	Notes
First argument	<code>validate-key</code>	Fixed
second argument	<code>--keyid</code>	Fixed
third argument	<i>keyid</i>	Variable; the key ID specified in the <code>pgx_declare_external_master_key</code> function is passed
After the fourth argument	<i>extraarg</i>	Arguments specified in the connection information file, if any, are given in the specified order

Environment variable

The following environment variables are supplied:

Name of the environment variable	Value of the environment variable	Notes
TDE_KMS_SECRET	KMS Secret	String entered in the FEP to open the keystore

#### Return value

The command ends with the following return values:

Return value	Condition
0	If the processing is successful
Other than 0	When processing does not complete normally

#### delivery of data

Data is delivered to the plug-in in the following way. The plug-in also returns results in the following ways:

Classification	Data Content	Delivery method	Notes
Input	Key ID	Arguments	
Output	Process Status	Plug-in return code	
Output	Message	Plugin standard error output	Expected to be printable

#### Calling opportunity

Called before starting to use the encryption key.

#### Processing contents

Verifies the existence of the encryption key identified by the key ID and whether the user is authorized to use the encryption key.

## M.5.2 Encryption

#### Arguments

The following arguments are supplied:

	Argument value	Notes
First argument	encrypt	Fixed
second argument	--keyid	Fixed
third argument	<i>keyid</i>	Variable; the key ID specified in the <code>pgx_declare_external_master_key</code> function is passed
After the fourth argument	<i>extraarg</i>	The values specified in extra-args in the key management system connection information file, if any, are passed in the specified order

#### Environment variable

The following environment variables are supplied:

Name of the environment variable	Value of the environment variable	Notes
TDE_KMS_SECRET	KMS Secret	String entered in the FEP to open the keystore

#### Return value

The command ends with the following return values:

Return value	Condition
0	If the processing is successful
Other than 0	When processing does not complete normally

#### delivery of data

Data is delivered to the plug-in in the following way. The plug-in also returns results in the following ways:

Classification	Data Content	Delivery method	Notes
Input	Data to be encrypted	Standard input for the plug-in	As Is (not Base 64 encoding, etc)
Input	Key ID	Arguments	
Input	Encryption parameter	-	Not passed by the FEP
Output	Encryption result	Standard output of the plug-in	As Is (not Base 64 encoding, etc)
Output	Status of the action	plug-in return code	
Output	Message	Standard error output of the plug-in	It is expected to be printable

#### Calling opportunity

Called when encryption with the master encryption key is required.

#### Processing Contents

Encrypts the given data to be encrypted with the encryption key identified by the specified key ID, and returns the result. The returned encryption result must be decryptable with the same key ID.

#### Caution

- Implement so that data to be encrypted is not leaked. For example, temporarily storing encrypted data that is plaintext in a file poses a risk of disclosure.
- Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres only guarantees the following during decryption:
  - The same key ID is handed over during decryption as during encryption.
  - The data received as a result of the "encryption" operation is passed as-is when decrypting.
- The maximum amount of data to be encrypted passed from the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres is 2048 bytes.

## M.5.3 Decryption

#### Arguments

The following arguments are supplied:

	Argument value	Notes
First argument	decrypt	Fixed
second argument	--keyid	Fixed
third argument	<i>keyid</i>	Variable; the key ID specified in the <code>pgx_declare_external_master_key</code> function is passed
After the fourth argument	<i>extraarg</i>	The values specified in extra-args in the key management system connection information file, if any, are passed in the specified order.

#### Environment variable

The following environment variables are supplied:

Name of the environment variable	Value of the environment variable	Notes
TDE_KMS_SECRET	KMS Secret	String entered in the FEP to open the keystore

#### Return value

The command ends with the following return values:

Return value	Condition
0	If the processing is successful
Other than 0	When processing does not complete normally

#### delivery of data

Data is delivered to the plug-in in the following way. The plug-in also returns results in the following ways:

Classification	Data Content	Delivery method	Notes
Input	Data to be decrypted	Standard input for the plug-in	As Is (not Base 64 encoding, etc.)
Input	Key ID	Arguments	
Input	Encryption parameter	-	Not passed by the FEP
Output	Decoding result	Standard output of the plug-in	As Is (not Base 64 encoding, etc.)
Output	Status of the action	plug-in return code	
Output	Message	Standard error output of the plug-in	It is expected to be printable

#### Calling opportunity

Called when decryption with the master encryption key is required.

#### Processing Contents

Decrypts the given encrypted data with the encryption key identified by the given key ID and returns the result.

#### Caution

- Implement so that the decrypted data is not leaked. For example, there is a risk of leakage if the decryption result data, which is clear text, is temporarily stored in a file.
- If decryption requires the same encryption parameters as encryption, it is the plug-in's responsibility to ensure this. During decryption, the FEP only ensures that the plug-in receives the same key ID and encrypted data as was encrypted.
- The data to be decrypted is passed as is the data returned by the plug-in in response to the encryption request.

## Appendix N Deploying Virtual Machines by Cloning

Learn how to install Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres on a virtual machine, clone the virtual machine, and deploy a new virtual machine.

### N.1 If you are installing only

---

There are no guidelines for installing Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres on a virtual machine only and cloning a virtual machine.

### N.2 If you are creating an instance

---

When creating an instance on a virtual machine and cloning the virtual machine, the following precautions must be taken:

- Clone the virtual machine while the instance and WebAdmin are stopped.
- Modify the IP address and host name settings in files such as postgresql.conf and pg\_hba.conf if they are different for each replicated machine.
- Use transparent data encryption on the replicated machine. Instances that use transparent data encryption cannot be cloned for use.
- If you cloned the virtual machine that contains the WebAdmin server, reinstall WebAdmin and import the instance that WebAdmin created.



# Index

---

[A]	[R]
Access to key management system using plug-in..... 88	Recommended Browser Settings.....52
[C]	Reinstallation..... 1
Changing client authentication information..... 26	Related Software.....7
Changing Instance Settings..... 25	Remove applied updates.....13
Check the disk space.....12	Removing WebAdmin.....55
Check the installed products and determine the installation method..... 12	Required Operating System.....3
Client Authentication Information settings..... 31	Required Patches..... 8
Creating an Instance..... 24,28	[S]
Creating an Instance Administrator..... 19	Settings related to connection.....31
Creating Instances.....23	Starting the Web Server Feature of WebAdmin.....54
[D]	Startup URL for WebAdmin..... 24
Disk Space Required for Installation.....8	Stopping the Web Server Feature of WebAdmin.....54
[E]	Supported contrib Modules and Extensions Provided by External Projects..... 85
Editing instance information..... 27	[T]
Excluded Software.....8	TCP/IP Protocol.....9
[G]	[U]
GSSAPI認証のサーバkeytabファイルの設定..... 35	Uninstallation.....2,48
[H]	Uninstallation in Interactive Mode.....48
Hardware Environment.....8	Uninstallation in Silent Mode.....50
How to Set Up the Pop-up Blocker..... 52	Using the initdb Command.....28
[I]	Using WebAdmin..... 23
Importing Instances..... 27	[W]
Installation..... 12	WebAdmin automatic start.....54
Installation in Interactive Mode.....2	Web server port number..... 53
Installation in Silent Mode..... 2,16	When an Instance was Created with the initdb Command.....31
Installation Procedure..... 1	When an Instance was Created with WebAdmin..... 31
Installation Types..... 1	When Performing Database Multiplexing..... 86
Instance configuration..... 26	When Using WebAdmin..... 86
[L]	
Logging in to WebAdmin.....24	
[M]	
Multi-Version Installation..... 1	
[N]	
New Installation.....1	
[O]	
Operating Environment..... 3	
Operating Method Types and Selection..... 18	
[P]	
Port number to use when Tomcat is stopped.....53	
postgresql.conf.....58	
Pre-installation Tasks..... 12	
Preparations for Setup..... 19	
Procedure when Modifying the JRE Installation.....86	

# **Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 16**

## **Installation and Setup Guide for Client**

Windows/Linux

J2UL-2950-01ENZ0(00)  
July 2024

# Preface

---

## Purpose of this document

This document describes how to install, uninstall and set up the "Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres client feature".

## Intended readers

This document is intended for those who install and operate Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

Readers of this document are assumed to have general knowledge of:

W

- PostgreSQL
- SQL
- Windows

L

- PostgreSQL
- SQL
- Linux

## Structure of this document

This document is structured as follows:

### [Chapter 1 Overview of Installation](#)

Describes the features that can be installed, and provides an overview of installation methods

### [Chapter 2 Installation and Uninstallation of the Windows Client](#)

Describes how to install the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres client feature (Windows client)

### [Chapter 3 Installation and Uninstallation of the Linux Client](#)

Describes how to install the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres client feature (Linux client)

### [Chapter 4 Setup](#)

Describes the setup procedures to be performed after installation completes

## Export restrictions

Exportation/release of this document may require necessary procedures in accordance with the regulations of your resident country and/or US export control laws.

## Issue date and version

Edition 1.0: July 2024
------------------------

## Copyright

Copyright 2015-2024 Fujitsu Limited

# Contents

---

Chapter 1 Overview of Installation.....	1
1.1 Features that can be Installed.....	1
1.2 Installation Types.....	1
1.2.1 New Installation.....	1
1.2.2 Reinstallation.....	1
1.2.3 Multi-Version Installation.....	1
1.3 Installation Procedure.....	1
1.3.1 Installation in Interactive Mode.....	2
1.3.2 Installation in Silent Mode.....	2
1.4 Uninstallation.....	2
Chapter 2 Installation and Uninstallation of the Windows Client.....	3
2.1 Operating Environment.....	3
2.1.1 Required Operating System.....	3
2.1.2 Related Software.....	3
2.1.3 Excluded Software.....	5
2.1.4 Required Patches.....	5
2.1.5 Hardware Environment.....	5
2.1.6 Disk Space Required for Installation.....	5
2.1.7 Supported System Environment.....	5
2.1.8 Versions of Open-Source Software Used as the Base for Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Drivers.....	6
2.2 Installation.....	6
2.2.1 Pre-installation Tasks.....	6
2.2.2 Pre-installation Considerations.....	7
2.2.3 Installation in Interactive Mode.....	9
2.2.4 Installation in Silent Mode.....	10
2.3 Uninstallation.....	11
2.3.1 Uninstallation in Interactive Mode.....	11
2.3.2 Uninstallation in Silent Mode.....	11
Chapter 3 Installation and Uninstallation of the Linux Client.....	13
3.1 Operating Environment.....	13
3.1.1 Required Operating System.....	13
3.1.2 Related Software.....	15
3.1.3 Excluded Software.....	16
3.1.4 Required Patches.....	16
3.1.5 Hardware Environment.....	16
3.1.6 Disk Space Required for Installation.....	16
3.1.7 Supported System Environment.....	17
3.1.8 Versions of Open-Source Software Used as the Base for Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Drivers.....	17
3.2 Installation.....	17
3.2.1 Pre-installation Tasks.....	17
3.2.2 Installation in Interactive Mode.....	19
3.2.3 Installation in Silent Mode.....	20
3.3 Uninstallation.....	21
3.3.1 Uninstallation in Interactive Mode.....	22
3.3.2 Uninstallation in Silent Mode.....	23
Chapter 4 Setup.....	24
4.1 Configuring Environment Variables.....	24
4.1.1 Windows.....	24
4.1.2 Linux.....	24
4.2 Setting Up and Removing OSS.....	24
4.2.1 pgBackRest.....	25
4.2.1.1 Setting Up pgBackRest.....	25
4.2.1.2 Removing pgBackRest.....	25

4.2.1.3 Servers to which pgBackRest can Connect.....	25
4.2.2 ldap2pg.....	25
4.2.2.1 Setting Up ldap2pg.....	26
4.2.2.2 Removing ldap2pg.....	27
4.2.2.3 Using ldap2pg to Synchronize Database Roles.....	27
4.2.2.4 Configuration with Confidentiality Management.....	27
4.2.2.5 Servers to which ldap2pg can Connect.....	32
Index.....	33

# Chapter 1 Overview of Installation

This chapter provides an overview of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres installation.

## 1.1 Features that can be Installed

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres provides features to enable access to the database from a variety of platforms and languages, as the connection environment for the client and the database server.

The Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres client package must be installed on the client system to use these features.

The following table shows the relationship between the platforms and the features provided by client packages.

Platform	JDBC	ODBC	.NET Data Provider	C language (libpq)	Embedded SQL (ECPPG) in C language	Embedded SQL (ECOBPG) in COBOL	Connection Manager	High-speed data load	pgAdmin	Pgpool-II	Idap2pg	pgBackRest
Windows	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y			
Linux	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y		Y	Y	Y

Y: Supported

## 1.2 Installation Types

The following installation types are available for Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres:

- New installation
- Reinstallation
- Multi-version installation

### 1.2.1 New Installation

In initial installation, the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres client feature is installed for the first time.

### 1.2.2 Reinstallation

Perform reinstallation to repair installed program files that have become unusable for any reason.

### 1.2.3 Multi-Version Installation

Perform multi-version installation to install different versions to the installed program files separately.

## 1.3 Installation Procedure

The following installation procedures are available for Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres:

- Installation in interactive mode
- Installation in silent mode

Select the installation procedure that corresponds to your environment.

### **1.3.1 Installation in Interactive Mode**

---

Interactive mode enables installation to be performed while the required information is entered interactively.

In interactive mode installation, the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres installer automatically determines the installation state of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres. Install Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres using one of the following installation types in accordance with the installation state:

- New installation
- Reinstallation
- Multi-version installation

### **1.3.2 Installation in Silent Mode**

---

Silent mode enables installation to be performed without the need to enter any information interactively.

New installations and multi-version installations can be performed in silent mode.

## **1.4 Uninstallation**

---

Uninstallation removes the system files of the installed Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres client feature.

# Chapter 2 Installation and Uninstallation of the Windows Client

This chapter explains how to install and uninstall the Windows client.

## 2.1 Operating Environment

This section describes the operating environment required to use the Windows client.

### 2.1.1 Required Operating System

One of the following operating systems is required to use the Windows client:

- Windows(R) 10 Home
- Windows(R) 10 Education
- Windows(R) 10 Pro
- Windows(R) 10 Enterprise
- Windows(R) 11 Home
- Windows(R) 11 Education
- Windows(R) 11 Pro
- Windows(R) 11 Enterprise
- Microsoft Windows Server 2016 Datacenter
- Microsoft Windows Server 2016 Standard
- Microsoft Windows Server 2016 Essentials
- Microsoft Windows Server 2019 Datacenter
- Microsoft Windows Server 2019 Standard
- Microsoft Windows Server 2019 Essentials
- Microsoft Windows Server 2022 Datacenter
- Microsoft Windows Server 2022 Standard
- Microsoft Windows Server 2022 Essentials

**Note:** If Windows is 32 bit, only the Windows client (32 bit) can be installed.



#### Note

The following components of Windows Server(R) 2016, Windows Server(R) 2019 and Windows Server(R) 2022 are not supported:

- Server Core
- Nano Server
- Windows Server Container

### 2.1.2 Related Software

The following table lists the software compatible (that can operate) with the Windows client.

Before using any of these, confirm that the OS supports the software.



Table 2.1 Related software

No.	Software name	Version
1	Visual Studio	2015 2017 2019 2022
2	.NET	6.0 7.0 8.0
3	.NET Standard	2.0 2.1
4	C compiler (*1)	-
5	JDK or JRE	JDK 8 JRE 8 JDK 11 JRE 11 JDK 17 JRE 17
6	NetCOBOL	(*2)
	NetCOBOL for .NET	(*3)

\*1: Only operations using the C compiler provided with the operating system are guaranteed.

\*2: NetCOBOL is available in the following editions:

- NetCOBOL Base Edition V10.5.0 or later
- NetCOBOL Standard Edition V10.5.0 or later
- NetCOBOL Professional Edition V10.5.0 or later
- NetCOBOL Enterprise Edition V10.5.0 or later

\*3: NetCOBOL for .NET is available in the following editions:

- NetCOBOL Standard Edition for .NET V5.0.0 or later
- NetCOBOL Professional Edition for .NET V5.0.0 or later
- NetCOBOL Enterprise Edition for .NET V5.0.0 or later



### Note

The following JDKs or JREs are available:

- JDK or JRE shipped with the Interstage Application Server
- JDK shipped with the Enterprise Application Platform
- Oracle JDK or JRE
- An OpenJDK that has passed the Java TCK (Technology Compatibility Kit)

It is recommended that the JDK or JRE included with Interstage Application Server and Enterprise Application Platform is used.

The following table lists servers that can be connected to the Windows client.

When connecting to a server product with a different version from this client function, only the range of functions provided by the server product version is available.

Table 2.2 Connectable servers

OS	Software name
Windows	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Advanced Edition 9.5 or later , up to 16</li><li>- Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Standard Edition 9.4 or later , up to 16</li></ul>
Linux	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Advanced Edition 9.5 or later , up to 16</li><li>- Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Standard Edition 9.4 or later , up to 16</li></ul>
Solaris	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- FUJITSU Software Enterprise Postgres Standard Edition 9.6</li></ul>

## 2.1.3 Excluded Software

---

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

The Windows client cannot coexist with the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Community Edition (hereafter, "CE") client.

Other products

There are no exclusive products.

## 2.1.4 Required Patches

---

No patches are required.

## 2.1.5 Hardware Environment

---

The following hardware is required to use the Windows client.

Memory

At least 256 MB of memory is required.

Mandatory hardware

None.

## 2.1.6 Disk Space Required for Installation

---

The disk space shown below is required for new installation of the Windows client.

At the Windows (32-bit) client installation destination:

200 MB

At the Windows (64-bit) client installation destination:

1760 MB

Windows system drive:

300 MB

## 2.1.7 Supported System Environment

---

This section describes the supported system environment.

### TCP/IP protocol

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres supports version 4 and 6 (IPv4 and IPv6) of TCP/IP protocols.



Do not use link-local addresses if TCP/IP protocol version 6 addresses are used.

## File system

You can install Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres only if the system folder is an NTFS volume.

## 2.1.8 Versions of Open-Source Software Used as the Base for Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Drivers

For the version of open-source software that Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres each driver is based on, refer to "OSS Supported by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres" in the General Description.

## 2.2 Installation

This section explains how to install the Windows client.



When installing the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Client (32 bit) in a 64 bit environment, do not specify a destination folder under the environment ProgramFiles variable.

### 2.2.1 Pre-installation Tasks

This section describes the operations to be performed before installing the Windows client.

#### hosts file settings

Using an editor, add the IP address and server name of the connected server to the \System32\drivers\etc\hosts file in the folder where Windows is installed.



For Windows(R) 10, or Windows(R) 11, assign write privileges in advance to the user responsible for editing the hosts file.

#### Check the installed product and determine the installation method

In Windows, click [All Programs] or [All apps], then [Fujitsu], and then [Uninstall (middleware)]. In the displayed window, check the installed products.

If the Windows client is already installed, determine the installation method to use:

- Reinstallation
- Multi-version installation

#### Remove applied updates

If you perform reinstallation as the installation method, remove applied updates using the procedure shown below.



If a product is installed without removing applied updates, the following problems will occur:

- Performing reinstallation

If an update with the same update and version number is applied, an error informing you that the update has already been applied is displayed.

#### 1. Display the applied updates

Execute the following command to display the applied updates:

```
C:\Program Files (x86)\Fujitsu\UpdateAdvisor\UpdateAdvisorMW>uam showup
```

#### 2. Remove the updates

Execute the command below to remove the updates. If an update with the same update number was applied more than once, the updates are removed in order, starting from the highest version number.

```
C:\Program Files (x86)\Fujitsu\UpdateAdvisor\UpdateAdvisorMW>uam remove -i update-number
```

### Confirm service

The Windows Installer service must be running.

### Confirm Path system environment variable

Ensure that the Path system environment variable includes "%SystemRoot%\system32".

## 2.2.2 Pre-installation Considerations

---

This section describes points that the user must take into account prior to installation.

- The remote desktop service is installed in application server mode, it is necessary to switch to install mode by executing the command shown below before installation. Also, after the installation is completed, execute the command shown below to switch back to execute mode.

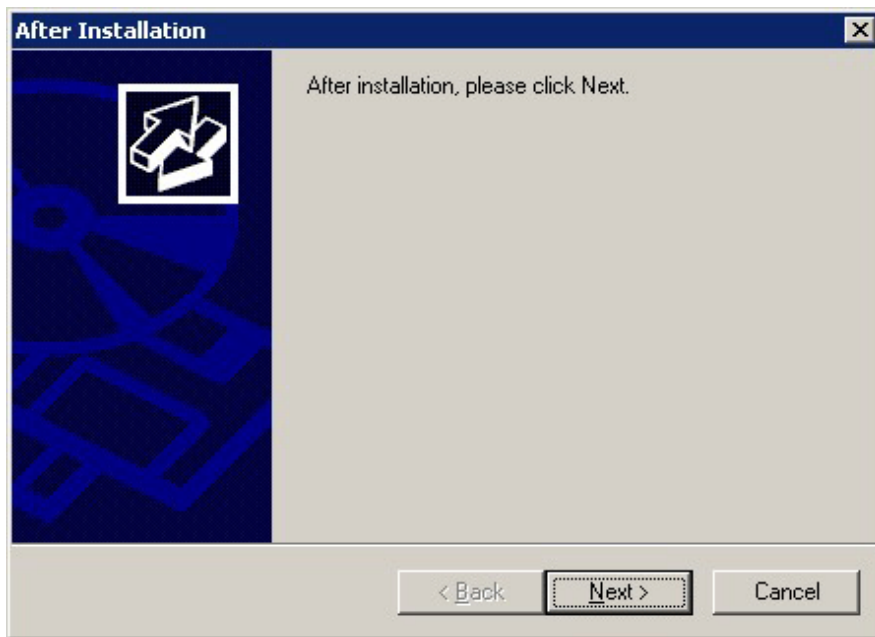
Before installation:

```
CHANGE USER /INSTALL
```

After installation:

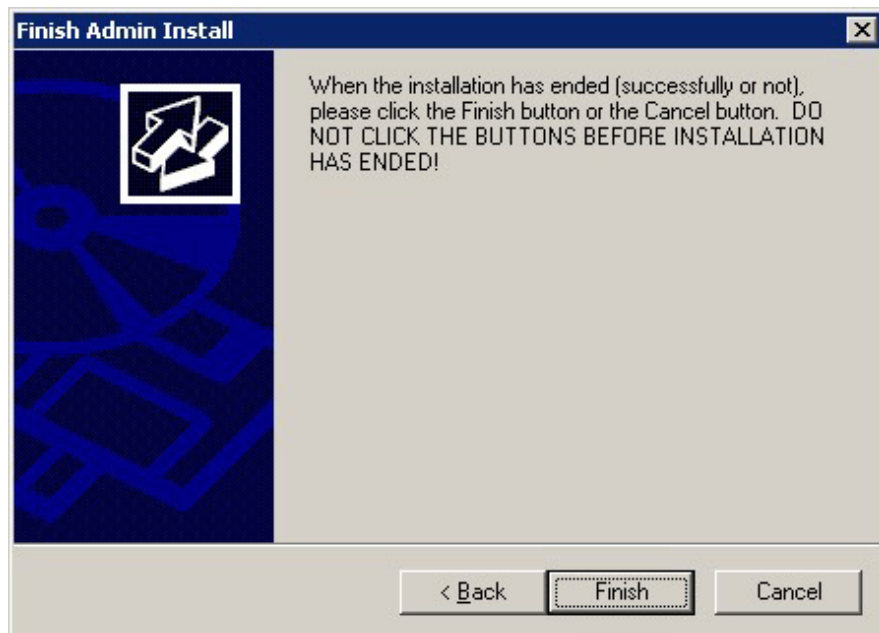
```
CHANGE USER /EXECUTE
```

- The following window may be displayed when the installation program is executed.



If the above window is displayed, follow the procedure below:

1. Perform the steps in the installation procedure until the [InstallShield Wizard Complete] window is displayed.
2. Click [Next] in the [InstallShield Wizard Complete] window.
3. The following window is displayed. Click [Finish].



4. Restart the system.



## Information

- If the [User Account Control] dialog box is displayed when installation or uninstallation starts, click [Yes] to continue the operation.

If [No] is clicked, the [Error] dialog box will be displayed because continuing is not permitted.

Click [Retry] in the displayed [Error] dialog box to proceed with installation or uninstallation. To end operations, click [Cancel].

- If installation or uninstallation is suspended or processing terminates abnormally, the [Program Compatibility Assistant] dialog box may be displayed.

If this happens, click [This program installed correctly] or [This program uninstalled correctly] and continue operation.

## 2.2.3 Installation in Interactive Mode

The installation procedure is described below.



## Point

For installation in interactive mode, default values are set for the installation information. The following settings can be changed for a new installation or a multi-version installation:

- Installation folder

### 1. Stop applications and programs

If the installation method is the following, all applications and programs that use the product must be stopped:

- Reinstallation

Before starting the installation, stop the following:

- Applications that use the product
- Connection Manager
- pgAdmin

### 2. Insert the DVD

Insert the client program DVD into the DVD drive.

### 3. Run the installation

The installation menu is displayed. Click [Installation].

### 4. Select the product to install

Select the product to install, and then click [Next].

If a selected product can only be reinstalled, refer to "[6. Check the settings](#)".



## Information

If multi-version installation is possible, the [Select Installation Method] window is displayed for each selected product. Select "Multi-version installation" and click [Next].

### 5. Confirm the contents for installation

The [Confirm installation] window will be displayed.

Click [Next] to start the installation.

To modify the settings, select [Modify], and then click [Next]. Follow the on-screen instructions.

## 6. Check the settings

The [Confirm installation] window will be displayed for reinstallation, or if the installation information is modified.

Click [Install] to start the installation.

To modify the settings again, click [Back].

## 7. Completion of installation

The completion window is displayed. Click [Finish].

## 2.2.4 Installation in Silent Mode

Installation in silent mode can be performed only when the installation method is one of the following:

- New installation
- Multi-version installation



See

Refer to the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres product website for information on installation in silent mode, such as the installation parameters and error messages.

The installation procedure is described below.

### 1. Insert the DVD

Insert the client program DVD into the DVD drive.

The [Install Menu] window is displayed. Click [Finish].

### 2. Create an installation parameters CSV file

Consider the server type or features that will be required for system operations, and then create an installation parameters CSV file that uses the following specification format.

```
sectionName, parameterName, value
sectionName, parameterName, value
:
```



Information

The template for the installation parameters CSV file is "Z:\sample\sample\_windows.csv (Z is the drive into which the DVD is inserted.).

### 3. Start the command prompt

In Windows, right-click [Command Prompt] and then select [Run as administrator].

### 4. Run the installation

Execute the following command:

```
Z:\>silent.bat c:\temp\inspara.csv
```

Z: The drive into which the DVD is inserted.

c:\temp\inspara.csv: The installation parameter CSV file name.

If the silent installer ends in an error, a message is output to the log file and return values are returned.

## 2.3 Uninstallation

---

This section describes the procedure for uninstalling the Windows client.



### Note

- Before uninstalling the product, close the product program and all applications that are using it.
- Log in using an account that has administrator privileges and then execute the command, or switch to an account that has administrator privileges and then uninstall the product.

### 2.3.1 Uninstallation in Interactive Mode

---

The uninstallation procedure is described below.



### Information

If an error occurs while the product is being uninstalled, refer to "Uninstall (middleware) Messages" in the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres product website, and take the required action.

#### 1. Stop applications and programs

Before starting the uninstallation, stop the following:

- Applications that use the product
- Connection Manager
- pgAdmin

#### 2. Start the Uninstall (middleware) tool

In Windows, click [All Programs] or [All apps], then [Fujitsu], and then [Uninstall (middleware)].

#### 3. Select the software

Select the product to be uninstalled from [Software Name], and then click [Remove].

#### 4. Start the uninstallation

Click [Uninstall].

#### 5. Finish the uninstallation

The uninstallation completion window is displayed. Click [Finish].

The installation folder may remain after uninstallation. If it is not required, delete it.

#### 6. Stop the Uninstall (middleware) tool

The [Uninstall (middleware)] window is displayed. Click [Close].

### 2.3.2 Uninstallation in Silent Mode

---

The uninstallation procedure is described below.





See

Refer to the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres product website for information on uninstallation in silent mode, such as the error messages.

### 1. Stop applications and programs

Before starting the uninstallation, stop the following:

- Applications that use the product
- Connection Manager
- pgAdmin

### 2. Start the command prompt

In Windows, right-click [Command Prompt] and then select [Run as administrator].

### 3. Start the uninstaller

Execute the command below.

The installation folder may remain after uninstallation. If it is not required, delete it.

Example

```
X:> installFolder\suninst.bat
```

X: Drive on which the product is installed

# Chapter 3 Installation and Uninstallation of the Linux Client

This chapter explains how to install and uninstall the Linux client.

## 3.1 Operating Environment

This section describes the operating environment required to use the Linux client.

### 3.1.1 Required Operating System

One of the following operating systems is required to use the Linux client:

- RHEL8.2 or later minor version
- RHEL9.2 or later minor version
- SLES 15 SP3 or later minor version



#### Information

- The following packages are required for operations on RHEL8.

Package name	Remarks
bzip2-libs	Required when using pgBackRest.
glibc	-
glibc.i686	-
libnsl2	-
libgcc	-
libmemcached	Required when using Pgpool-II.
libstdc++	-
libtool-ltdl	-
libzstd	-
lz4-libs	Required when using pgBackRest.
ncurses-libs	-
nss-softoken-freebl	-
redhat-lsb	-
rsync	Required when using Pgpool-II.
sudo	-
unixODBC	Required when using ODBC drivers
unzip	-
xz-libs	-
zlib	-

- The following packages are required for operations on RHEL9.

Package name	Remarks
bzip2-libs	Required when using pgBackRest.

Package name	Remarks
glibc	-
glibc.i686	-
libnsl2	-
libgcc	-
libmemcached-awesome	Required if Pgpool-II is used.
libstdc++	-
libtool-ltdl	-
libzstd	-
lz4-libs	Required when using pgBackRest.
ncurses-libs	-
nss-softoken-freebl	-
rsync	Required if Pgpool-II is used.
sudo	-
unixODBC	Required if you are using an ODBC driver.
Unzip	-
xz-libs	-
zlib	-

- The following packages are required for operations on SLES 15.

Package name	Remarks
glibc	-
glibc-32bit	-
JRE 8	<p>Required by installer The following JREs are available:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Oracle JRE</li> </ul> <p>Use update 31 or later of the 64-bit version.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- OpenJDK Past the Java TCK (Technology Compatibility Kit)</li> </ul>
libbz2-1	Required when using pgBackRest.
libfreebl3	-
libgcc	-
libltdl7	-
liblz4-1	Required when using pgBackRest.
liblzma5	-
libmemcached	Required when using Pgpool-II.
libncurses5	-
libstdc++	-
libz1	-
libzstd1	-
rsync	Required when using Pgpool-II.
sudo	-

Package name	Remarks
unixODBC	Required when using ODBC drivers
unzip	-

### 3.1.2 Related Software

The following table lists the software required to use the Linux client.

Table 3.1 Related software

No.	Software name	Version
1	.NET	6.0 7.0 8.0
2	.NET Standard	2.0 2.1
3	C compiler (*1)	-
4	JDK or JRE	JDK 8 JRE 8 JDK 11 JRE 11 JDK 17 JRE 17
5	NetCOBOL	(*2)

\*1: Only operations using the C compiler provided with the operating system are guaranteed.

\*2: NetCOBOL is available in the following editions:

- NetCOBOL Base Edition V12.2.0 or later
- NetCOBOL Standard Edition V12.2.0 or later
- NetCOBOL Enterprise Edition V12.2.0 or later



#### Note

The following JDKs or JREs are available:

- JDK or JRE shipped with the Interstage Application Server
- JDK shipped with the Enterprise Application Platform
- Oracle JDK or JRE
- An OpenJDK that has passed the Java TCK (Technology Compatibility Kit)

It is recommended that the JDK or JRE included with Interstage Application Server and Enterprise Application Platform is used.

The following table lists servers that can be connected to the Linux client.

When connecting to a server product with a different version from this client function, only the range of functions provided by the server product version is available.

Table 3.2 Connectable servers

OS	Software name
Windows	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Advanced Edition 9.5 or later , up to 16</li> <li>- Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Standard Edition 9.4 or later , up to 16</li> </ul>
Linux	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Advanced Edition 9.5 or later , up to 16</li> <li>- Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Standard Edition 9.4 or later , up to 16</li> </ul>
Solaris	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- FUJITSU Software Enterprise Postgres Standard Edition 9.6</li> </ul>

### 3.1.3 Excluded Software

#### Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

The Linux client cannot coexist with the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Community Edition (hereafter, "CE") client.

#### Other products

There are no exclusive products.

### 3.1.4 Required Patches

There are no required patches.

### 3.1.5 Hardware Environment

The following hardware is required to use the Linux client.

#### Memory

At least 160 MB of memory is required.

#### Mandatory hardware

None.

### 3.1.6 Disk Space Required for Installation

The following table lists the disk space requirements of the corresponding directories for new installation of the Linux client. If necessary, increase the size of the file system.

#### RHEL

Directory	Required disk space Unit: MB
/etc	1 + 1 (*1)
/var	1 + 2 (*1)
/opt	300 (*1)
Installation destination of the client (64-bit)	180
Installation destination of Pgpool-II	35
Installation destination of ldap2pg	30
Installation destination of pgBackRest	40

\*1: Uninstall (middleware) must be installed.

#### SLES

Directory	Required disk space Unit: MB
/etc	1 + 1 (*1)
/var	1 + 2 (*1)
/opt	300 (*1)
Installation destination of the client (64-bit)	180
Installation destination of Pgpool-II	35
Installation destination of ldap2pg	30
Installation destination of pgBackRest	40

\*1: Uninstall (middleware) must be installed.

### 3.1.7 Supported System Environment

This section describes the supported system environment.

#### TCP/IP protocol

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres supports version 4 and 6 (IPv4 and IPv6) of TCP/IP protocols.



Note

Do not use link-local addresses if TCP/IP protocol version 6 addresses are used.

### 3.1.8 Versions of Open-Source Software Used as the Base for Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Drivers

For the version of open-source software that Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres each driver is based on, refer to "OSS Supported by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres" in the General Description.

## 3.2 Installation

This section explains how to install the Linux client.

### 3.2.1 Pre-installation Tasks

Check the system environment for the following before the Linux client is installed.

#### Check the disk capacity

Check if sufficient free disk space is available for installing the Linux client.

Refer to "[3.1.6 Disk Space Required for Installation](#)" for information on disk space requirements.

If sufficient free disk space is unavailable, reconfigure disk partitions.

#### Set JAVA\_HOME (SLES only)

Ensure that JRE 8 is installed, and export the JAVA\_HOME environment variable.

```
#export JAVA_HOME="/opt/jre8/installDir"
```

#### Executable Users

Installation and uninstallation is performed by superuser.

On the system, run the following command to become superuser.

```
$ su -  
Password:*****
```

## Check the installed product and determine the installation method

Using the operation shown below, start Uninstall (middleware), and check the installed products.

Example

```
# /opt/FJSVcir/cimanager.sh -c  
Loading Uninstaller...  
  
Currently installed products  
1. productName  
2. productName  
  
Type [number] to select the software you want to uninstall.  
[number,q]  
=>q  
  
Exiting Uninstaller.
```

If the Linux client is already installed, determine the installation method to use:

- Reinstallation
- Multi-version installation

## Remove applied updates

If you perform reinstallation as the installation method, remove applied updates using the procedure shown below.



If a product is installed without removing applied updates, the following will occur:

- Performing reinstallation

If an update with the same update and version number is applied, an error informing you that the update has already been applied is displayed.

Perform the reinstallation after removing the update.

### 1. Display the applied updates

Execute the following command to display the applied updates:

```
# /opt/FJSVfupde/bin/uam showup
```

### 2. Remove the updates

Execute the command below to remove the updates. If an update with the same update number was applied more than once, the updates are removed in order, starting from the highest version number.

```
# /opt/FJSVfupde/bin/uam remove -i update-number
```



#### Note

If the installation directory/lib is set in the environment variable LD\_LIBRARY\_PATH for the running user, remove the installation directory/lib from LD\_LIBRARY\_PATH.

## 3.2.2 Installation in Interactive Mode

The installation procedure is described below.



#### Note

The following characters can be used as input values:

Alphanumeric characters, hyphens, commas and forward slashes



#### Point

For installation in interactive mode, default values are set for the installation information. The following settings can be changed for a new installation or a multi-version installation:

- Installation directory

### 1. Stop applications and programs

If the installation method is the following, all applications and programs that use the product must be stopped:

- Reinstallation

Before starting the installation, stop the following:

- Applications that use the product
- Connection Manager
- pgBadger
- Pgpool-II
- ldap2pg
- pgBackRest

### 2. Mount the DVD drive

Insert the client program DVD into the DVD drive, and then execute the following command:

Example

```
# mount -t iso9660 -r -o loop /dev/dvd /media/dvd
```

Here /dev/dvd is the device name for the DVD drive (which may vary depending on your environment), and /media/dvd is the mount point (which may need to be created before calling the command).



#### Note

If the DVD was mounted automatically using the automatic mount daemon (autofs), "noexec" is set as the mount option, so the installer may fail to start. In this case, use the mount command to remount the DVD correctly, and then run the installation. Note that the mount options of a mounted DVD can be checked by executing the mount command without any arguments.



### 3. Run the installation

Execute the following command:

Example

```
# cd /media/dvd
# ./install.sh
```

In the example above, /media/dvd is the DVD mount point.

### 4. Select the product to install

The list of installation target products is displayed.

Type the number for the product to be installed, or "all", and press Enter.



#### Information

.....  
If the selected product has already been installed, a window for selecting reinstallation or multi-version installation is displayed for each product. Follow the on-screen instructions to select the installation method.  
.....

### 5. Check the settings

The window for checking the installation information is displayed as shown below.

Type "y" and press Enter to start the installation.

To change the settings, type "c" and press Enter, and follow the on-screen instructions. This option is not displayed if there is no information that can be modified.

### 6. Check the changed settings

If the installation information has been modified, the new installation information is displayed.

Type "y" and press Enter to start the installation.

To change the settings again, type "c" and press Enter.

### 7. Finish the installation

When the installation is complete, a message is displayed showing the status.

If installation was successful, the following message is displayed:

```
Installed successfully.
```



#### Note

.....  
If an error occurs during the installation, read the error message and remove the cause of the error, and then reexecute the install.sh command.  
.....

## 3.2.3 Installation in Silent Mode

Installation in silent mode can be performed only when the installation method is one of the following:

- New installation
- Multi-version installation



#### See

.....  
Refer to the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres product website for information on installation in silent mode, such as the installation parameters and error messages.  
.....

The installation procedure is described below.

## 1. Mount the DVD drive

Insert the client program DVD into the DVD drive, and then execute the following command:

Example

```
# mount -t iso9660 -r -o loop /dev/dvd /media/dvd
```

Here /dev/dvd is the device name for the DVD drive (which may vary depending on your environment), and /media/dvd is the mount point (which may need to be created before calling the command).



If the DVD was mounted automatically using the automatic mount daemon (autofs), "noexec" is set as the mount option, so the installer may fail to start. In this case, use the mount command to remount the DVD correctly, and then run the installation. Note that the mount options of a mounted DVD can be checked by executing the mount command without any arguments.

## 2. Create an installation parameters CSV file

Consider the features that will be required for system operations, and then create an installation parameters CSV file that uses the following specification format.

```
sectionName, parameterName, value  
sectionName, parameterName, value  
:
```



The templates for the installation parameters CSV file is "*mountPoint/sample/sample\_linux.csv*".

## 3. Run the installation

Execute the following command:

Example

```
# cd /media/dvd  
# ./silent.sh /home/work/inspara.csv
```

In the example above, /media/dvd is the DVD mount point, and /home/work/inspara.csv is the installation parameter CSV.

If the silent installer ends in an error, a message is output to the log file and return values are returned.

## 3.3 Uninstallation

This section describes the procedure for uninstalling the Linux client.



- Before uninstalling the product, close the product program and all applications that are using it.
- On SLES, before uninstallation, ensure that JRE 8 is installed, and export the JAVA\_HOME environment variable.

```
#export JAVA_HOME="/Jre8InstallDir"
```

### 3.3.1 Uninstallation in Interactive Mode

---

The uninstallation procedure is described below.



#### Information

.....  
If an error occurs while the product is being uninstalled, refer to "Uninstall (middleware) Messages" in the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres product website, and take the required action.  
.....

#### 1. Stop applications and programs

Before starting the uninstallation, stop the following:

- Applications that use the product
- Connection Manager
- pgBadger
- Pgpool-II
- ldap2pg
- pgBackRest

#### 2. Start the Uninstall (middleware)

Execute the following command:

```
# /opt/FJSVc/cir/cimanager.sh -c
```

#### 3. Select the product

Enter the number for the product to be uninstalled, and press Enter.

#### 4. Start the uninstallation

To start the uninstallation, type "y" and press Enter.

To display the list of products again, type "b" and press Enter.

#### 5. Finish the uninstallation

If uninstallation is successful, the message below is displayed.

The installation directory may remain after uninstallation. If it is not required, delete it.

```
Uninstalling...

productName is being uninstalled now.
 100% #####

The following products have been uninstalled successfully:
  productName

Uninstallation of "productName" has completed successfully.

Exiting Uninstaller.
```

### 3.3.2 Uninstallation in Silent Mode

---

The uninstallation procedure is described below.



See

Refer to the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres product website for information on uninstallation in silent mode, such as the error messages.

#### 1. Stop applications and programs

Before starting the uninstallation, stop the following:

- Applications that use the product
- Connection Manager
- pgBadger
- Pgpool-II
- ldap2pg
- pgBackRest

#### 2. Run the uninstallation

Execute the following command:

The installation directory may remain after uninstallation. If it is not required, delete it.

Example

```
# /opt/fsepv<x>client64/setup/suninst.sh
```

In the example above, /opt/fsepv<x>client64 is the installation directory, and "<x>" indicates the product version.

```
# /opt/fsepv<x>pgpool-II/setup/suninst.sh
```

In the example above, /opt/fsepv<x>pgpool-II/setup is the name of the installation directory in which the Pgpool-II is installed.

```
# /opt/fsepv<x>ldap2pg/setup/suninst.sh
```

In the example above, /opt/fsepv<x>ldap2pg/setup is the name of the installation directory in which the ldap2pg is installed.

```
# /opt/fsepv<x>pgbackrest/setup/suninst.sh
```

In the example above, /opt/fsepv<x>pgbackrest/setup is the name of the installation directory in which the pgBackRest is installed.

## Chapter 4 Setup

This chapter describes the setup procedures to be performed after installation completes.

### 4.1 Configuring Environment Variables

Configure the following environment variables when using client commands.

W

#### 4.1.1 Windows

PATH environment variable

Add "*installationFolder*\bin".

PGLOCALEDIR environment variable

Add "*installationFolder*\share\locale".

Examples of environment variable configurations are shown below.

Example

This example is specific to 32-bit Windows.

Note that "<x>" indicates the product version.

```
> SET PATH=%ProgramFiles%\Fujitsu\fsepv<x>client32\bin;%PATH%
> SET PGLOCALEDIR=%ProgramFiles%\Fujitsu\fsepv<x>client32\share\locale
```

L

#### 4.1.2 Linux

PATH environment variable

Add "*installationDirectory*/bin".

MANPATH environment variable

Add "*installationDirectory*/share/man".

PGLOCALEDIR environment variable

Add "*installationDirectory*/share/locale".

Examples of environment variable configurations are shown below.

Example

Note that "<x>" indicates the product version.

```
$ PATH=/opt/fsepv<x>client64/bin:$PATH ; export PATH
$ MANPATH=/opt/fsepv<x>client64/share/man:$MANPATH ; export MANPATH
$ PGLOCALEDIR=/opt/fsepv<x>client64/share/locale ; export PGLOCALEDIR
```

L

### 4.2 Setting Up and Removing OSS

This section explains how to set up OSS supported by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

If you want to use OSS supported by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres, follow the setup procedure.

If you decide not to use the OSS supported by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres, follow the removing procedure.



## Information

In this section, the applicable database that enables the features of each OSS is described as "postgres".

Refer to "OSS Supported by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres" in the General Description for information on OSS other than those described below.



### 4.2.1 pgBackRest

#### 4.2.1.1 Setting Up pgBackRest

1. Install pgBackRest.

To use the pgbackrest command on the same host as the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres server, install pgBackRest using the server program DVD. If you want to use the pgbackrest command on a different host than the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres server, install pgBackRest using the client program DVD.

2. Set the environment variable PATH for pgBackRest.

The pgBackRest material is stored under /opt/fsepv<x>pgbackrest. Set the environment variable PATH to the storage location/bin of the pgBackRest material to be used.

```
$ export PATH=/opt/fsepv<x>pgbackrest/bin:$PATH
```

3. Perform pgBackRest setup.

Refer to "User Guides" in the pgBackRest website (<https://pgbackrest.org/>) for details.



## Note

- This feature is not available for instances created with WebAdmin. It is available only for operation using server commands.
- The pg\_rman, pgx\_dmpall, and pgx\_rcvall commands cannot be used when using pgBackRest because of conflicting shell commands to set archive\_command.

#### 4.2.1.2 Removing pgBackRest

1. Sets parameters in the postgresql.conf file.

Reverses the information specified during setup

2. Restart Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.
3. If it was set to perform periodic backups, unset it.

#### 4.2.1.3 Servers to which pgBackRest can Connect

The following table lists server that pgBackRest can connected to.

Table 4.1 Connectable server

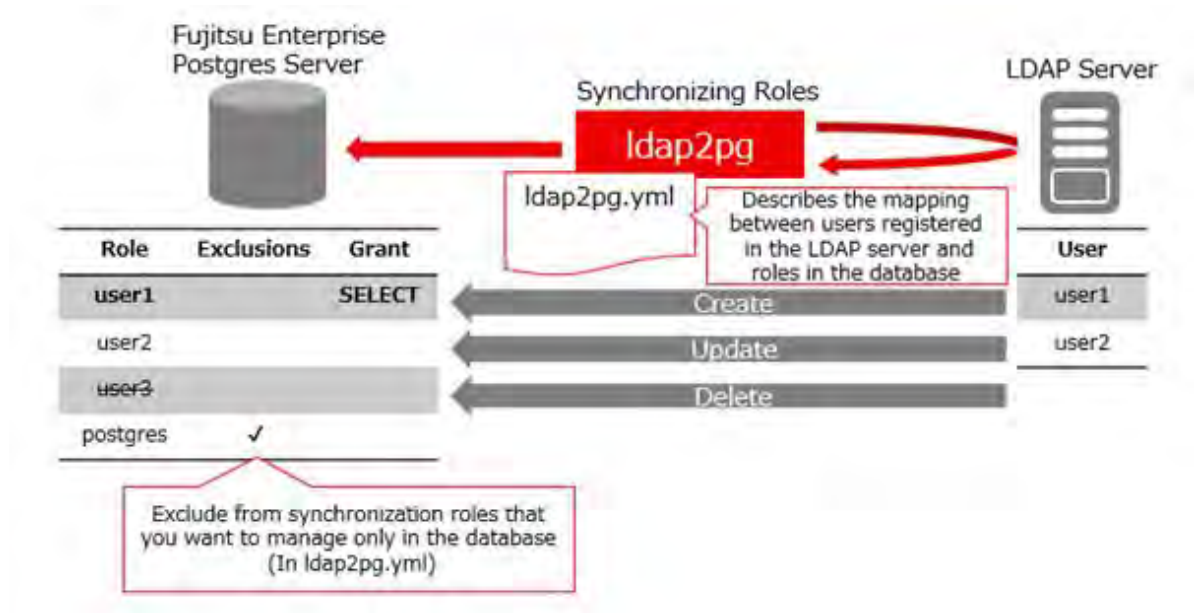
OS	Product name
Linux	- Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Advanced Edition 16 - Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Standard Edition 16



### 4.2.2 Idap2pg

PostgreSQL supports LDAP authentication and can be used on both Linux and Windows. You can use an LDAP server to authenticate users, but you must first create a role for the database server.

ldap2pg allows users registered with the LDAP server to be synchronized with Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres roles, so that the above database server roles can be created automatically. This allows you to centrally manage roles on the LDAP server. Note that ldap2pg only supports Linux.



Users registered with the LDAP server and Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres roles are synchronized when the ldap2pg command is executed, based on the ldap2pg.yml that defines these mappings. If a role defined in ldap2pg.yml does not exist in Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres, it is created, and any roles not defined in ldap2pg.yml are removed. Roles that would be difficult to update or delete, such as database administrator roles that do not work with LDAP servers, can be excluded from synchronization by setting them to ldap2pg.yml.

The key points of operation are explained below.

### Timing of Synchronization

Synchronize when the LDAP server user changes so that the database server is always up to date. Therefore, you must synchronize periodically to automatically propagate the LDAP server information, or manually propagate it as the LDAP server changes.

If you synchronize periodically, ensure that the synchronization interval is an acceptable time lag before LDAP server changes are propagated to the database server. This is because, even when fully synchronized, ldap2pg accesses the LDAP server and database to check for changes. For example, run the ldap2pg command periodically every 5 minutes or so.

If you use cron, for example, to run automatically on a regular basis, you should log the standard output and standard error output of ldap2pg using settings or redirects such as cron. You can check the log to see if ldap2pg was interrupted or if an unexpected role was removed.

If you want to synchronize immediately or if you want to control the synchronization timing yourself, synchronize manually.

### Enhanced Security in Combination with Confidentiality Management

ldap2pg can also manage database privileges, but it cannot manage granular units such as tables and rowsets. Combined with the confidentiality management, which allows such configuration and allows auditing of privilege settings, it provides robust security measures.

#### 4.2.2.1 Setting Up ldap2pg

1. Install ldap2pg  
Install ldap2pg using the client program DVD.
2. Set the environment variable PATH for ldap2pg.

```
$ export PATH=/opt/fsepv<x>ldap2pg/bin:$PATH
```

3. Define a database role on the database server that has superuser privileges as the executor of ldap2pg. For more information about defining roles, refer to "CREATE ROLE" in "Reference" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on the CREATE ROLE.
4. Perform ldap2pg setup.  
Refer to "Configuration" or "Cookbook" in the ldap2pg document (<https://ldap2pg.readthedocs.io/en/latest/>) for details.
5. Set roles that are defined and used only by the database, such as database administrators not managed by an LDAP server, or roles that exclude synchronization, as defined by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.  
Add the settings to roles\_blacklist\_query in the ldap2pg.yml file.

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres-specific roles to add:

- pgx\_update\_profile\_status, and roles that inherit from pgx\_update\_profile\_status (Role for streaming replication of the Set Operational Policy by Profile feature)
- pgx\_cgroup\_role\_\* (Confidentiality role for the confidentiality management)

### When the Database Server is redundant

In a database redundancy environment, specify "primary" for the target\_session\_attrs parameter. You can also specify "read-write".

#### 4.2.2.2 Removing ldap2pg

1. If you have set ldap2pg to run periodically, unset it.
2. Uninstall ldap2pg. Refer to "3.3 Uninstallation" for more information.
3. If you have defined a role on the database server specifically for running ldap2pg, remove that role.

#### 4.2.2.3 Using ldap2pg to Synchronize Database Roles

Describes how to use ldap2pg to synchronize users of an LDAP server with a database server as database roles.

1. Edit the ldap2pg.yml file, for example if you want to grant access to a role that synchronizes with an LDAP user. For information on ldap2pg.yml, refer to the following document:  
<https://ldap2pg.readthedocs.io/en/latest/config/>
2. Use environment variables to specify information about the connection destination to the LDAP server or database.  
<https://ldap2pg.readthedocs.io/en/latest/cli/#environment-variables>  
The user who connects to the database server must be the user created during the setup procedure. Connections to LDAP servers support LDAP-initiated environment variables and ldaprc files, while database access supports PG-initiated environment variables available in libpq. These environment variables are used to configure the connection.
3. Run ldap2pg with the check option to verify that the role being modified matches the role being modified.
4. Run ldap2pg with the --real option to synchronize roles with the database server.
5. Configure LDAP server users and database roles to synchronize periodically after the initial synchronization.  
Prepare the script that sets the environment variables and the script that synchronizes the roles that you performed in steps 2 and 4, and register the script in the cron job so that the script that synchronizes the roles references the environment variables and synchronizes the roles.

[Configuration Examples for cron]

```
SHELL=/bin/bash
*/5 * * * * source /home/postgres/env.sh && . /home/postgres/sample.sh >> /home/postgres/sample.log 2>&1
```

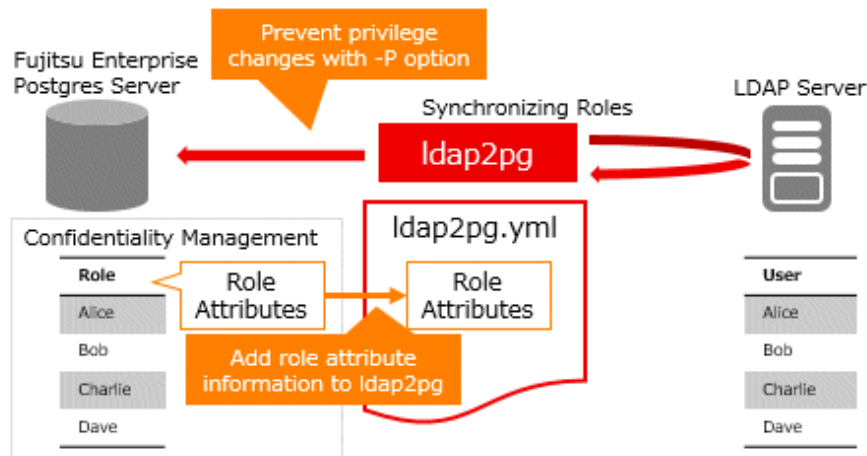
#### 4.2.2.4 Configuration with Confidentiality Management

The combination of ldap2pg and the confidentiality management provides detailed access control. To do this, role attributes and privileges are assigned to the confidentiality management.



Feature	Role Management Assignment
ldap2pg	Add, remove, and managing role membership
Confidentiality Management	Set role attributes, grant and revoke privileges, and audit them

In this case, since ldap2pg overrides the role attributes and parent-child relationships with the information in ldap2pg.yml, it sets the role attributes and privileges set for the confidentiality management so that they are not updated by the execution of ldap2pg.



- Add privilege information for confidentiality management roles to the ldap2pg configuration file (ldap2pg.yml) so that the attributes and privileges of roles set for confidentiality management are not updated by running ldap2pg
- Run ldap2pg with the -P option to prevent privilege changes when ldap2pg is run

The following is the flow for configuring the confidentiality management and ldap2pg.

## Introduction

Configure the necessary settings to run ldap2pg as described in the following procedure.

1. Design user-role mappings on the LDAP server to create a list of roles that should be managed by the confidentiality management.
2. To create an yaml file:
  - a. Specify the settings for retrieving and synchronizing the listed objects from the LDAP server.
  - b. Write a confidentiality management role starting with pgx\_cgroup\_role\_ in roles\_blacklist\_query.
  - c. Ensure that the grant and revoke privileges settings are not listed in the yaml file.
3. Stop synchronization if it is already running using ldap2pg.
4. Create a role as described in ["4.2.2.3 Using ldap2pg to Synchronize Database Roles"](#).
5. Refer to "Confidentiality Management" in the "Security Operations Guide" and perform all necessary tasks. Register all roles in the list of roles with the confidentiality management.
6. Modify the yaml file so that ldap2pg does not interfere with the operation of the confidentiality management. Refer to ["Settings When You Change the Attributes or Privileges of a role in a Confidentiality Groups"](#) for a sample script that prints an yaml file.
7. If you have already done regular synchronization using ldap2pg, try again.

## Operation

Use the following procedure to manipulate roles according to your situation.

### Adding an ldap2pg Role to a Confidentiality Groups

1. Creates a confidentiality management confidentiality groups.
2. Run ldap2pg with the -P option to create the LDAP server user as a database role.
3. Add the role you added above to the confidentiality groups.
4. Reflect the confidentiality management configuration in ldap2pg.yml, referring to the ["Example of Applying Role Attributes"](#).

### Example of Applying Role Attributes

1. Use the following example to execute SQL and retrieve the settings for each role:

For all roles, this example retrieves the LOGIN attribute, the role attributes of the confidentiality management, and the membership of the confidentiality management role. If you want to change the settings to suit your environment, rewrite the SQL, such as modifying the 'LOGIN' part of the SQL Execution Example, or modify the Example of Run Results directly.

#### [SQL Execution Example]

```
SELECT '- name: ' || pgxgr.name || chr(10) || ' options: ' || pgxgr.opt ||
chr(10) || ' parent: ' || chr(10) || ' - ' ||
string_agg(pgxgr.cgrorolename, chr(10) || ' - ')
FROM (SELECT pgxg.cgrorolename,
      concat_ws(' ',
        'LOGIN',
        CASE pgxg.cgrosuperuser WHEN true THEN 'SUPERUSER' END,
        CASE pgxg.cgrocreatedb WHEN true THEN 'CREATEDB' END,
        CASE pgxg.cgrocreatorole WHEN true THEN 'CREATEROLE' END,
        CASE pgxg.cgroreplication WHEN true THEN 'REPLICATION' END,
        CASE pgxg.cgrobypassrls WHEN true THEN 'BYPASSRLS' END) AS opt,
      pgxroles.name
      FROM pgx_confidential_group pgxg,
      (SELECT pgxr.crolmatid as matid, pgxr.crolgroid as groid, pgxr.crolname
      AS name FROM pgx_confidential_role pgxr ) as pgxroles
      WHERE pgxg.cgromatid = pgxroles.matid and pgxg.cgroid = pgxroles.groid)
pgxgr
GROUP BY pgxgr.name, pgxgr.opt;
```

#### [Example of Run Results]

```
- name: alice
  options: LOGIN CREATEDB
  parent:
    - pgx_cgroup_role_00000000000000000001
- name: bob
  options: LOGIN CREATEDB
  parent:
    - pgx_cgroup_role_00000000000000000001
- name: charlie
  options: LOGIN CREATEDB CREATEROLE
  parent:
    - pgx_cgroup_role_00000000000000000002
- name: dave
  options: LOGIN CREATEDB CREATEROLE
  parent:
    - pgx_cgroup_role_00000000000000000002
```

2. Put the setting of roles at the top of the rules in ldap2pg.yml based on the information in the above settings. If it is not at the top, the configuration information that synchronizes with the LDAP server takes effect, and the confidentiality management configuration does not take effect.

### Settings When You Change the Attributes or Privileges of a role in a Confidentiality Groups

1. Confidentiality management modifies role attributes and privileges information.
2. Create a script to retrieve the confidentiality management configuration information and register it in a cron job so that the changed information is automatically reflected in the yml file.

The following is an example shell script:. Please change the settings to suit your environment.

The shell script shown here consists of two configuration files, ldap2pg\_pre.yml and ldap2pg\_after.yml, and the confidentiality management configuration information (In the sample, it is output to confidential\_roles.yml) that is reflected in yml. Combine these three files to create the ldap2pg.yml file.

ldap2pg\_pre.yml is the information to be placed before the confidentiality management configuration information in ldap2pg.yml, and contains the postgres section and up to "roles:" in the rules section. ldap2pg\_after.yml is information to be placed after the confidentiality management configuration information in ldap2pg.yml, and contains information about roles not managed by the confidentiality management.

#### [Example of Shell Script]

##### **ldap2pg\_pre.yml : Provides information about the postgres section**

```
version: 6

#
#          1.  P O S T G R E S   I N S P E C T I O N
#
# See https://ldap2pg.readthedocs.io/en/latest/postgres/
#
postgres:
# Exclude roles starting with postgres, pg that PostgreSQL uses internally
  roles_blacklist_query: [postgres, pg_*, pgx_update_profile_status,
pgx_cgroup_role* ]
  databases_query: [postgres]
(Omitted)
rules:
- description: "Setup static roles and grants."
  roles:
```

##### **ldap2pg\_after.yml : Provides information about roles that are not part of the confidentiality groups**

```
- names:
  - readers
  options: NOLOGIN
- name: writers
  # Grant reading to writers
  parent: [readers]
  options: NOLOGIN
(Omitted)
```

##### **sample.sh : A script that outputs information about confidentiality groups to confidential\_roles.yml and combines them into a single yml file**

```
#!/bin/bash

psql -h localhost -p 27500 -d postgres -U postgres -A -t <<EOF > /home/postgres/
confidential_roles.yml
SELECT ' - name: ' || pgxgr.name || chr(10) || '      options: ' || pgxgr.opt ||
chr(10) || '      parent: ' || chr(10) || '      - ' || string_agg(pgxgr.cgrorolename,
chr(10) || '      - ')
```

```

FROM (SELECT pgxg.cgrorolename,
      concat_ws(' ',
        'LOGIN',
        CASE pgxg.cgrosuperuser WHEN true THEN 'SUPERUSER' END,
        CASE pgxg.cgrocreatedb WHEN true THEN 'CREATEDB' END,
        CASE pgxg.cgrocreatorole WHEN true THEN 'CREATEROLE' END,
        CASE pgxg.cgroreplication WHEN true THEN 'REPLICATION' END,
        CASE pgxg.cgrobypassrls WHEN true THEN 'BYPASSRLS' END) AS opt,
      pgxroles.name
FROM pgx_confidential_group pgxg,
      (SELECT pgxr.crolmatid as matid, pgxr.crolgroid as groid, pgxr.crolname AS
name FROM
pgx_confidential_role pgxr ) as pgxroles
      WHERE pgxg.cgromatid = pgxroles.matid and pgxg.cgroid = pgxroles.groid) pgxgr
GROUP BY pgxgr.name, pgxgr.opt;
EOF
cat /home/postgres/ldap2pg_pre.yml /home/postgres/confidential_roles.yml /home/
postgres/ldap2pg_after.yml > /home/postgres/ldap2pg.yml

#Run ldap2pg -P -c ldap2pg.yml to update retrieved role information

```

### Information

If you want to manually apply the attribute or privilege information of a role that has been changed in confidentiality management to ldap2pg.yml, obtain the change information and apply it to ldap2pg.yml, referring to "[Example of Applying Role Attributes](#)".

## Adding Roles Created with ldap2pg to a Confidentiality Groups

1. Create a role to add to the confidentiality groups in ldap2pg.
2. Add the database role you created in step 1 to the existing confidentiality groups.
3. Reflect the newly added role's confidentiality management settings in ldap2pg.yml, as shown in "[Example of Applying Role Attributes](#)".

### Information

If cron automatically reflects changes to the confidentiality groups in ldap2pg.yml, stop cron and add the newly added database role to the confidentiality groups.

## Removing Roles Added in ldap2pg from a Confidentiality Groups

1. Remove the role you want to remove from the confidentiality groups.
2. Reflect changes to confidentiality management in ldap2pg.yml, referring to "[Example of Applying Role Attributes](#)".
3. Execute ldap2pg with the -P option to reflect.

### Point

If you deleted the confidentiality matrix and the confidentiality groups, perform steps 2 and 3 above.



See

- If you accidentally delete a role managed by confidentiality management using the ldap2pg, refer to "How to Check Confidentiality Objects and Roles" in the Security Operation Guide to recover the role managed by confidentiality management.
- If you accidentally delete the confidentiality role in ldap2pg, refer to "Creating a Confidentiality Management Role" in the Security Operations Guide to recover.

#### 4.2.2.5 Servers to which ldap2pg can Connect

The following table lists server that ldap2pg can connected to.

Table 4.2 Connectable server

OS	Product name
Linux	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Advanced Edition 16</li><li>- Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Standard Edition 16</li></ul>

# Index

---

	[C]		[U]
Check the disk capacity.....	17	Uninstallation.....	2,11,21
Configuring Environment Variables.....	24	Uninstallation in Interactive Mode.....	22
Confirm service.....	7	Uninstallation in Silent Mode.....	11,23
Connectable servers.....	5		
	[D]		
Disk Space Required for Installation.....	5,16		
	[E]		
Excluded Software.....	5,16		
	[F]		
Features that can be Installed.....	1		
File system.....	6		
	[H]		
Hardware Environment.....	5,16		
hosts file settings.....	6		
	[I]		
Installation.....	6		
Installation and Uninstallation of the Linux Client.....	13		
Installation and Uninstallation of the Windows Client.....	3		
Installation in Interactive Mode.....	2,9,11		
Installation in Silent Mode.....	2,20		
Installation Procedure.....	1		
Installation Types.....	1		
	[M]		
MANPATH environment variable.....	24		
Multi-Version Installation.....	1		
	[N]		
New Installation.....	1		
	[O]		
Operating Environment.....	3,13		
	[P]		
PATH environment variable.....	24		
PGLOCALEDIR environment variable.....	24		
Pre-installation Considerations.....	7		
Pre-installation Tasks.....	17		
	[R]		
Reinstallation.....	1		
Related Software.....	3,15		
Required Operating System.....	3,13		
Required Patches.....	5,16		
	[S]		
Setup.....	24		
Supported System Environment.....	17		
	[T]		
TCP/IP protocol.....	5,17		

# **Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 16**

## **Installation and Setup Guide for Server Assistant**

Windows/Linux

J2UL-2951-01ENZ0(00)  
July 2024

# Preface

---

## Purpose of this document

This document describes how to install and uninstall the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Server Assistant.

## Intended readers

This document is intended for those who install and operate Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

Readers of this document are assumed to have general knowledge of:

**L**

- PostgreSQL

- SQL

- Linux

**W**

- PostgreSQL

- SQL

- Windows

## Structure of this document

This document is structured as follows:

### [Chapter 1 Overview of Installation](#)

Describes the features that can be installed, and provides an overview of installation methods

### [Chapter 2 Installation and Uninstallation of the Linux Server Assistant](#)

Describes how to install and uninstall the Linux Server Assistant

### [Chapter 3 Installation and Uninstallation of the Windows Server Assistant](#)

Describes how to install and uninstall the Windows Server Assistant

### [Chapter 4 Setup of the Server Assistant](#)

Describes the setup to be performed after installation

### [Appendix A Estimating Memory Requirements](#)

Describes the formulas for estimating memory requirements

### [Appendix B Procedure when Modifying the JRE Installation](#)

Describes the procedure to follow when modifying the JRE installation.

## Export restrictions

Exportation/release of this document may require necessary procedures in accordance with the regulations of your resident country and/or US export control laws.

## Issue date and version

Edition 1.0: July 2024
------------------------

## Copyright

Copyright 2018-2024 Fujitsu Limited



# Contents

---

Chapter 1 Overview of Installation.....	1
1.1 Features that can be Installed.....	1
1.2 Installation Types.....	1
1.2.1 New Installation.....	1
1.2.2 Reinstallation.....	1
1.2.3 Multi-Version Installation.....	1
1.3 Installation Procedure.....	1
1.3.1 Installation in Interactive Mode.....	1
1.3.2 Installation in Silent Mode.....	2
1.4 Uninstallation.....	2
Chapter 2 Installation and Uninstallation of the Linux Server Assistant.....	3
2.1 Operating Environment.....	3
2.1.1 Required Operating System.....	3
2.1.2 Related Software.....	4
2.1.3 Excluded Software.....	5
2.1.4 Required Patches.....	5
2.1.5 Hardware Environment.....	5
2.1.6 Disk Space Required for Installation.....	5
2.1.7 Supported System Environment.....	6
2.2 Installation.....	6
2.2.1 Pre-installation Tasks.....	6
2.2.2 Installation in Interactive Mode.....	7
2.2.3 Installation in Silent Mode.....	9
2.3 Uninstallation.....	10
2.3.1 Uninstallation in Interactive Mode.....	10
2.3.2 Uninstallation in Silent Mode.....	11
Chapter 3 Installation and Uninstallation of the Windows Server Assistant.....	12
3.1 Operating Environment.....	12
3.1.1 Required Operating System.....	12
3.1.2 Related Software.....	12
3.1.3 Excluded Software.....	13
3.1.4 Required Patches.....	13
3.1.5 Hardware Environment.....	13
3.1.6 Disk Space Required for Installation.....	13
3.1.7 Supported System Environment.....	13
3.2 Installation.....	13
3.2.1 Pre-installation Tasks.....	15
3.2.2 Installation in Interactive Mode.....	16
3.2.3 Installation in Silent Mode.....	17
3.3 Uninstallation.....	18
3.3.1 Uninstallation in Interactive Mode.....	18
3.3.2 Uninstallation in Silent Mode.....	20
Chapter 4 Setup of the Server Assistant.....	22
Appendix A Estimating Memory Requirements.....	23
A.1 Server Assistant Memory Requirements.....	23
Appendix B Procedure when Modifying the JRE Installation.....	24
Index.....	25

# Chapter 1 Overview of Installation

This chapter provides an overview of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Server Assistant installation and uninstallation.

## 1.1 Features that can be Installed

The Server Assistant is provided as a Server Assistant package, which is installed on a different server (referred to as the arbitration server) to that of the database server.

The following table shows the relationship between the platforms and the features provided by the Server Assistant package.

Platform	Server Assistant
Linux	Y
Windows	Y

Y: Can be installed

## 1.2 Installation Types

The following installation types are available for Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres:

- New installation
- Reinstallation
- Multi-version installation

### 1.2.1 New Installation

In initial installation, the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Server Assistant is installed for the first time.

### 1.2.2 Reinstallation

Perform reinstallation to repair installed program files that have become unusable for any reason.

### 1.2.3 Multi-Version Installation

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres products can be installed on the same server if the product version (indicated by "x" in "x SPz") is different from that of any version of the product that is already installed.

## 1.3 Installation Procedure

The following installation procedures are available for Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres:

- Installation in interactive mode
- Installation in silent mode

Select the installation procedure that corresponds to your environment.

### 1.3.1 Installation in Interactive Mode

Interactive mode enables installation to be performed while the required information is entered interactively.

In the interactive mode installation, the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres installer automatically determines the installation state of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres. Install Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres using one of the following installation types in accordance with the installation state:

- New installation

- Reinstallation
- Multi-version installation

### **1.3.2 Installation in Silent Mode**

---

Silent mode enables installation to be performed without the need to enter any information interactively.

New installations and multi-version installations can be performed in silent mode.

## **1.4 Uninstallation**

---

Uninstallation removes the system files of the installed Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Server Assistant.

# Chapter 2 Installation and Uninstallation of the Linux Server Assistant

This chapter explains how to install and uninstall the Linux Server Assistant.

## 2.1 Operating Environment

This section describes the operating environment required in order to use the Linux Server Assistant.

### 2.1.1 Required Operating System

One of the following operating systems is required in order to use the Linux Server Assistant:

- RHEL8.2 or later minor version
- RHEL9.2 or later minor version
- SLES 15 SP3 or later minor version



#### Information

- The following packages are required for operations on RHEL8.

Package name	Remarks
gdb	Required to run FJQSS.
glibc	-
glibc.i686	-
iputils	Required for Mirroring Controller.
libgcc	-
libstdc++	-
ncurses-libs	-
nss-softokn-freebl	-
redhat-lsb	-
rsync	Required when using Pgpool-II.
sudo	-
sysstat	Required when using FJQSS. Set up the sar command after installation.
unzip	-
xz-libs	-
zlib	-

- The following packages are required for operations on RHEL9.

Package name	Remarks
gdb	Required to run FJQSS.
glibc	-
glibc.i686	-
iputils	Required when using Mirroring Controller.

Package name	Remarks
libgcc	-
libstdc++	-
ncurses-libs	-
nss-softoken-freebl	-
rsync	Required to use Pgpool-II.
sudo	-
sysstat	Required if using FJQSS.
unzip	-
xz-libs	-
zlib	-

- The following packages are required for operations on SLES 15.

Package name	Remarks
gdb	-
glibc	-
glibc-32bit	-
iputils	Required for Mirroring Controller.
JRE 8	Required when using the installer or Server Assistant. The following JREs are available: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Oracle JRE Use update 31 or later of the 64-bit version.</li> <li>- OpenJDK Past the Java TCK (Technology Compatibility Kit)</li> </ul>
libfreebl3	-
libgcc	-
libltdl7	-
liblzma5	-
libncurses5	-
libstdc++	-
libz1	-
rsync	Required when using Pgpool-II.
sudo	-
sysstat	Set up the sar command after installation.
unzip	-

## 2.1.2 Related Software

No other software is required in order to use Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

The following table lists servers that can be connected to the Linux Server Assistant.

Table 2.1 Connectable servers

OS	Software name
Linux	Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Advanced Edition 16
Windows	Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Advanced Edition 16

## 2.1.3 Excluded Software

There is no excluded software.

## 2.1.4 Required Patches

There are no required patches.

## 2.1.5 Hardware Environment

The following hardware is required in order to use the Linux Server Assistant:

### Memory

At least 150 MB of memory is required.

### Mandatory hardware

None.

## 2.1.6 Disk Space Required for Installation

The following table lists the disk space requirements of the corresponding directories for new installation of the Linux Server Assistant. If necessary, increase the size of the file system.

Disk space required for installation

Table 2.2 RHEL

Directory	Required disk space Unit: MB
/etc	1 + 1 (*1)
/var	1 + 2 (*1) + 1 (*2)
/opt	300 (*1) + 1 (*2)
<i>serverAssistantInstallDir</i>	410

\*1: Uninstall (middleware) must be installed.

\*2: Required for the installation of FJQSS.

Table 2.3 SLES

Directory	Required disk space Unit: MB
/etc	1 + 1 (*1)
/var	1 + 2 (*1) + 1 (*2)
/opt	300 (*1) + 1 (*2)
<i>serverAssistantInstallDir</i>	10

\*1: Uninstall (middleware) must be installed.

\*2: Required for the installation of FJQSS.

## 2.1.7 Supported System Environment

---

This section describes the supported system environment.

### TCP/IP Protocol

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres supports version 4 and 6 (IPv4 and IPv6) of TCP/IP protocols.



#### Note

Do not use link-local addresses if TCP/IP protocol version 6 addresses are used.

## 2.2 Installation

---

This section describes how to install the Linux Server Assistant.

### 2.2.1 Pre-installation Tasks

---

Check the following system environment before installing the Linux Server Assistant.

#### Check the disk space

Ensure that there is sufficient disk space to install the Linux Server Assistant.

Refer to "[2.1.6 Disk Space Required for Installation](#)" for information on disk space requirements.

If sufficient free disk space is unavailable, reconfigure disk partitions.

#### Set JAVA\_HOME (SLES only)

Ensure that JRE 8 is installed, and export the JAVA\_HOME environment variable.

```
#export JAVA_HOME="/Jre8InstallDir"
```

Refer to "[Appendix B Procedure when Modifying the JRE Installation](#)" for information on modifying JRE after installation.

#### Executable Users

Installation and uninstallation is performed by superuser.

On the system, run the following command to become superuser.

```
$ su -  
Password:*****
```

#### Check the installed product and determine the installation method

Using the operation shown below, start Uninstall (middleware), and check the installed products.

Example

```
# /opt/FJSVcir/cimanager.sh -c  
Loading Uninstaller...  
  
Currently installed products  
1. productName  
  
Type [number] to select the software you want to uninstall.  
[number,q]  
=>q
```

```
Exiting Uninstaller.
```

If the Linux Server Assistant is already installed, determine the installation method to use:

- Reinstallation
- Multi-version installation

## Remove applied updates

If you perform reinstallation, remove applied updates using the procedure shown below.



If a product is installed without removing applied updates, the following will occur:

- Performing reinstallation

If an update with the same update and version number is applied, an error informing you that the update has already been applied is displayed.

Perform reinstallation after removing the update.

### 1. Display the applied updates

Execute the following command to display the applied updates:

```
# /opt/FJSVfupde/bin/uam showup
```

### 2. Remove the updates

Execute the command below to remove the updates. If an update with the same update number was applied more than once, the updates are removed in order, starting from the highest version number.

```
# /opt/FJSVfupde/bin/uam remove -i update-number
```



If the installation directory/lib is set in the environment variable LD\_LIBRARY\_PATH for the running user, remove the installation directory/lib from LD\_LIBRARY\_PATH.

## 2.2.2 Installation in Interactive Mode

The installation procedure is described below.



The following characters can be used as input values:

Alphanumeric characters, hyphens and forward slashes



In interactive mode installation, the default values of the installation information are set. The following setting can be changed for a new installation or a multi-version installation.

- Installation directory



## 1. Stop the program

If the installation method is the following, the program must be stopped:

- Reinstallation

Before starting the installation, stop the following:

- Mirroring Controller arbitration process

Execute the `mc_arb` command in stop mode to stop the Mirroring Controller arbitration process.

Example

```
$ mc_arb stop -M /mcarb_dir/arbiter1
```

## 2. Mount the DVD drive

Insert the Server Assistant program DVD into the DVD drive, and then execute the following command:

Example

```
# mount -t iso9660 -r -o loop /dev/dvd /media/dvd
```

Here `/dev/dvd` is the device name for the DVD drive (which may vary depending on your environment), and `/media/dvd` is the mount point (which may need to be created before calling the command).



### Note

.....  
If the DVD was mounted automatically using the automatic mount daemon (autofs), "noexec" is set as the mount option, so the installer may fail to start. In this case, use the mount command to remount the DVD correctly, and then run the installation. Note that the mount options of a mounted DVD can be checked by executing the mount command without any arguments.  
.....

## 3. Run the installation

Execute the following command:

Example

```
# cd /media/dvd  
# ./install.sh
```

In the example above, `/media/dvd` is the DVD mount point.

## 4. Select the product to install

The list of installation target products is displayed.

Type the number for the product to be installed, or "all", and press Enter.



### Information

.....  
If the selected product has been installed, a window for selecting reinstallation or multi-version installation is displayed for each product. Follow the on-screen instructions to select the installation method.  
.....

## 5. Check the settings

The window for checking the installation information is displayed.

Type "y" and press Enter to start the installation.

To change the settings, type "c", press Enter, and follow the on-screen instructions. This option is not displayed if there is no information that can be modified.

## 6. Check the changed settings

If the settings have been changed, the new installation information is displayed.  
Type "y" and press Enter to start the installation.  
To change the settings again, type "c" and press Enter.

## 7. Finish the installation

When the installation is complete, a message is displayed showing the status.  
If installation was successful, the following message is displayed:

```
Installed successfully.
```



If an error occurs during the installation, read the error message and remove the cause of the error, and then reexecute the install.sh command.

## 2.2.3 Installation in Silent Mode

Installation in silent mode can be performed only when the installation method is one of the following:

- New installation
- Multi-version installation



Refer to the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres product website for information on installation in silent mode, such as the installation parameters and error messages.

The installation procedure is described below.

### 1. Mount the DVD drive

Insert the Server Assistant program DVD into the DVD drive, and then execute the following command:

Example

```
# mount -t iso9660 -r -o loop /dev/dvd /media/dvd
```

Here /dev/dvd is the device name for the DVD drive (which may vary depending on your environment), and /media/dvd is the mount point (which may need to be created before calling the command).



If the DVD was mounted automatically using the automatic mount daemon (autofs), "noexec" is set as the mount option, so the installer may fail to start. In this case, use the mount command to remount the DVD correctly, and then run the installation. Note that the mount options of a mounted DVD can be checked by executing the mount command without any arguments.

### 2. Create an installation parameters CSV file

Create an installation parameters CSV file that uses the following specification format.

```
sectionName, parameterName, value  
sectionName, parameterName, value  
:
```



## Information

The templates for the installation parameters CSV file is "*mountPoint/sample/sample.csv*"

### 3. Run the installation

Execute the following command:

Example

```
# cd /media/dvd
# ./silent.sh /home/work/inspara.csv
```

In the example above, /media/dvd is the DVD mount point, and /home/work/inspara.csv is the installation parameter CSV.

If the silent installer ends in an error, a message is output to the log file and return values are returned.

## 2.3 Uninstallation

This section describes how to uninstall the Linux Server Assistant.



## Note

Before uninstalling the product, close the product program.

### 2.3.1 Uninstallation in Interactive Mode

The uninstallation procedure is described below.



## Information

If an error occurs while the product is being uninstalled, refer to "Uninstall (middleware) Messages" in the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres product website, and take the required action.

#### 1. Stop the program

Before starting the uninstallation, stop the following:

- Mirroring Controller arbitration process

Execute the mc\_arb command in stop mode to stop the Mirroring Controller arbitration process.

Example

```
$ mc_arb stop -M /mcarb_dir/arbiter1
```

#### 2. Start Uninstall (middleware)

Execute the following command:

```
# /opt/FJSVcir/cimanager.sh -c
```

#### 3. Select the product

Enter the number for the product to be uninstalled, and press Enter.

#### 4. Start the uninstallation

To start the uninstallation, type "y" and press Enter.

To display the list of products again, type "b" and press Enter.

#### 5. Finish the uninstallation

If uninstallation is successful, the message below is displayed.

The installation directory may remain after uninstallation. If it is not required, delete it.

```
Uninstalling...

productName is being uninstalled now.
  100% #####

The following products have been uninstalled successfully:
  productName

Uninstallation of "productName" has completed successfully.

Exiting Uninstaller.
```

### 2.3.2 Uninstallation in Silent Mode

The uninstallation procedure is described below.



See

Refer to the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres product website for information on uninstallation in silent mode, such as the error messages.

#### 1. Stop the program

Before starting the uninstallation, stop the following:

- Mirroring Controller arbitration process

Execute the mc\_arb command in stop mode to stop the Mirroring Controller arbitration process.

Example

```
$ mc_arb stop -M /mcarb_dir/arbiter1
```

#### 2. Run the uninstallation

Execute the following command:

The installation directory may remain after uninstallation. If it is not required, delete it.

Example

```
# /opt/fsepv<x>assistant/setup/suninst.sh
```

In the example above, /opt/fsepv<x>assistant is the installation directory, and "<x>" indicates the product version.

# Chapter 3 Installation and Uninstallation of the Windows Server Assistant

This chapter explains how to install and uninstall the Windows Server Assistant.

## 3.1 Operating Environment

This section describes the operating environment required in order to use the Windows Server Assistant.

### 3.1.1 Required Operating System

One of the following operating systems is required in order to use the Windows Server Assistant:

- Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2016 Datacenter
- Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2016 Standard
- Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2016 Essentials
- Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2019 Datacenter
- Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2019 Standard
- Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2019 Essentials
- Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2022 Datacenter
- Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2022 Standard
- Microsoft(R) Windows Server(R) 2022 Essentials



- The following features of Windows Server(R) 2016, Windows Server(R) 2019 and Windows Server(R) 2022 are not supported:
  - Server Core
  - Nano Server
  - Windows Server Container
- The TCP/IP protocol must be installed.

### 3.1.2 Related Software

There is no software related to Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.



- The following programs are installed during installation of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres:
  - Microsoft Visual C++ 2015-2019 Redistributable version 14.24.28127.4

Do not uninstall the above programs as they are required for running Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

The following table lists servers that can be connected to the Windows Server Assistant.

Table 3.1 Connectable servers

OS	Software name
Linux	Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Advanced Edition 16
Windows	Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Advanced Edition 16

### 3.1.3 Excluded Software

---

There is no excluded software.

### 3.1.4 Required Patches

---

There are no required patches.

### 3.1.5 Hardware Environment

---

The following hardware is required in order to use the Windows Server Assistant:

#### Memory

At least 256 MB of memory is required.

#### Mandatory hardware

None.

### 3.1.6 Disk Space Required for Installation

---

The disk space shown below is required for new installation of the Windows Server Assistant.

Windows Server Assistant installation destination:

440 MB

Windows system drive:

330 MB

### 3.1.7 Supported System Environment

---

This section describes the supported system environment.

#### TCP/IP protocol

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres supports version 4 and 6 (IPv4 and IPv6) of TCP/IP protocols.



#### Note

Do not use link-local addresses if TCP/IP protocol version 6 addresses are used.

#### File system

You can install Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres only if the system folder is an NTFS volume.

## 3.2 Installation

---

This section describes how to install the Windows Server Assistant.

## Note

- The installation must be performed by a user with administrator privileges (a user ID that belongs to the Administrators group).
- Stop all applications before starting the installation.
- The Windows Installer service must be running.
- If antivirus software is installed, the system may crash, fail to start, or stop responding during installation or when starting after installation. Set the scan exclusions so that the installation directory and the resource allocation directory are not scanned for viruses.
- The remote desktop service is installed in application server mode, it is necessary to switch to install mode by executing the command shown below before installation. Also, after the installation is completed, execute the command shown below to switch back to execute mode.

[Before the installation]

```
CHANGE USER /INSTALL
```

[After the installation]

```
CHANGE USER /EXECUTE
```

- The following window may be displayed when executing the installation program:



If this window is displayed, perform the following operations:

1. Perform the installation steps until the [InstallShield Wizard Complete] window is displayed.
2. At the window shown above, click [Next].

3. The window shown below is displayed. Click [Finish].



### Information

- If a [User Account Control] dialog box is displayed at the start of the installation, click [Yes] to continue processing:  
If [No] is clicked, permission to continue is denied and an [Error] dialog box will be displayed.  
To continue the installation, click [Retry] at the [Error] dialog box. To end the installation, click [Cancel].
- If installation is suspended or processing terminates abnormally, the [Program Compatibility Assistant] dialog box may be displayed. Click [This program installed correctly] and continue operation.

## 3.2.1 Pre-installation Tasks

This section describes the tasks to be performed before installing the Windows Server Assistant.

### Check the disk space

Ensure that there is sufficient disk space to install the Windows Server Assistant.

Refer to "[3.1.6 Disk Space Required for Installation](#)" for information on disk space requirements.

### hosts file settings

Using an editor, add the IP address and name of the server to be connected to the \System32\drivers\etc\hosts file in the folder where Windows is installed.

### Check the installed product and determine the installation method

Using the operation shown below, start Uninstall (middleware), and check the installed products.

In Windows, click [All Programs] or [All apps], then [Fujitsu], and then [Uninstall (middleware)].

If the Windows Server Assistant is already installed, determine the installation method to use:

- Reinstallation
- Multi-version installation



## Remove applied updates

If you perform reinstallation as the installation method, remove applied updates using the procedure shown below.



If a product is installed without removing applied updates, the following will occur:

- Performing reinstallation

If an update with the same update and version number is applied, an error informing you that the update has already been applied is displayed.

### 1. Display the applied updates

Execute the following command to display the applied updates:

```
C:\>uam showup
```

### 2. Remove the updates

Execute the command below to remove the updates. If an update with the same update number was applied more than once, the updates are removed in order, starting from the highest version number.

```
C:\>uam remove -i update-number
```

## 3.2.2 Installation in Interactive Mode

The installation procedure is described below.



In interactive mode installation, the default values of the installation information are set. The following setting can be changed for a new installation or a multi-version installation.

- Installation folder

### 1. Stop the program

If the installation method is the following, the program must be stopped:

- Reinstallation

Before starting the installation, stop the following:

- Mirroring Controller arbitration process

Execute the mc\_arb command in stop mode to stop the Mirroring Controller arbitration process.

Example

```
> mc_arb stop -M D:\mcarb_dir\arbiter1
```

### 2. Insert the DVD

Insert the Server Assistant program DVD into the DVD drive.

### 3. Run the installation

The installation menu is displayed. Click [Installation].

#### 4. Select the product to install

The [Installation product] window is displayed.

Select the product to install, and then click [Next].

If a selected product can only be reinstalled, refer to "[6. Check the settings](#)".



#### Information

.....

If the selected product has been installed, a window for selecting reinstallation or multi-version installation is displayed for each product. Follow the on-screen instructions to select the installation method.

.....

#### 5. Confirm the contents for installation

The [Confirm installation] window will be displayed.

Click [Next] to start the installation.

To modify the settings, select [Modify], and then click [Next]. Follow the on-screen instructions.

#### 6. Check the settings

The [Confirm installation] window will be displayed. Click [Install] to start the installation.

To modify the settings again, click [Back].

#### 7. Completion of installation

The completion window is displayed. Click [Finish].

### 3.2.3 Installation in Silent Mode

---

Installation in silent mode can be performed only when the installation method is one of the following:

- New installation
- Multi-version installation

The installation procedure is described below.



#### See

.....

Refer to the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres product website for information on installation in silent mode, such as the installation parameters and error messages.

.....

#### 1. Insert the DVD

Insert the Server Assistant program DVD into the DVD drive.

The [Install Menu] window is displayed. Click [Finish].

#### 2. Create an installation parameters CSV file

Create an installation parameters CSV file that uses the following specification format.

<pre>sectionName, parameterName, value sectionName, parameterName, value :</pre>
--



## Information

The template for the installation parameters CSV file is "Z:\sample\sample.csv (Z is the drive into which the DVD is inserted.).

### 3. Start the command prompt

In Windows, right-click [Command Prompt] and then select [Run as administrator].

### 4. Run the installation

Execute the following command:

```
Z:>silent.bat c:\temp\inspara.csv
```

Z: The drive into which the DVD is inserted.

c:\temp\inspara.csv: The installation parameter CSV file name.

If the silent installer ends in an error, a message is output to the log file and return values are returned.

## 3.3 Uninstallation

This section describes how to uninstall the Windows Server Assistant.



## Note

- Before uninstalling the product, close the product program.
- Log in using an account that has administrator privileges and then execute the command, or switch to an account that has administrator privileges and then uninstall the product.



## Information

- If a [User Account Control] dialog box such as the following is displayed at the start of the uninstallation, click [Yes] to continue processing:  
If [No] is clicked, permission to continue is denied and an [Error] dialog box will be displayed.  
To continue the uninstallation, click [Retry] in the [Error] dialog box. To end the operation, click [Cancel].
- If uninstallation is suspended or processing terminates abnormally, a dialog box of the Program Compatibility Assistant similar to the one shown below may be displayed. Click [This program uninstalled correctly] and continue operation.

### 3.3.1 Uninstallation in Interactive Mode

The uninstallation procedure is described below.



## Information

If an error occurs while the product is being uninstalled, refer to "Uninstall (middleware) Messages" in the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres product website, and take the required action.

### 1. Stop the program

Before starting the uninstallation, stop the following:

Mirroring Controller arbitration process

1. Execute the mc\_arb command in stop mode to stop the Mirroring Controller arbitration process.

Example

```
> mc_arb stop -M D:\mcarb_dir\arbiter1
```

2. Unregister the Mirroring Controller arbitration process from the Windows service.

Execute the mc\_arb command in unregister mode to unregister the Mirroring Controller arbitration process from the Windows service.

Example

```
> mc_arb unregister -M D:\mcarb_dir\arbiter1
```

3. Delete registrations related to the event log.

If messages are output to the event log, DLLs are registered in accordance with "Preparatory Tasks for the Output of Error Logs to the Event Log (Windows)" in the Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing). Delete these registrations so that no unnecessary issues occur.

- Delete registration for the default event source name

Example)

The example below deletes a DLL of a 64-bit product registered under the default event source name. "<x>" indicates the product version.

```
> regsvr32 /u "c:\Program Files\Fujitsu\fssep<x>assistant64\lib\mcarbevent.dll"
```

- Delete registration for other event source names

DLL registration is performed so that messages output to the event log are output to any event source named by the user.

Accordingly, it is necessary to delete the DLL registration. Do this for any event source name.

Example)

The example below deletes a DLL of a 64-bit product registered under the event source name "Mirroring Controller arbiter1". "<x>" indicates the product version.

```
> regsvr32 /u /i:"Mirroring Controller arbiter1" "c:\Program Files\Fujitsu\fssep<x>assistant64\lib\mcarbevent.dll"
```

- If installing multiple versions

If error logs are set to be output to the event log, use the DLL path name that you took note of previously as explained in "Preparatory Tasks for the Output of Error Logs to the Event Log (Windows)" in the Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing) to reregister the default event source name.



## Note

Ensure that you delete the DLLs before the uninstallation. If you perform the uninstallation without doing so, you may not be able to delete the DLLs at a later time.

## 2. Start Uninstall (middleware)

In Windows, click [All Programs] or [All apps], then [Fujitsu], and then [Uninstall (middleware)].

## 3. Select the software

Select the product to be uninstalled from [Software Name], and then click [Remove].

## 4. Start the uninstallation

Click [Uninstall].

## 5. Finish the uninstallation

The uninstallation completion window will be displayed. Click [Finish].

The installation folder may remain after uninstallation. If it is not required, delete it.

## 6. Stop Uninstall (middleware)

Click [Close].

## 3.3.2 Uninstallation in Silent Mode

The uninstallation procedure is described below.



See

Refer to the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres product website for information on uninstallation in silent mode, such as the error messages.

### 1. Stop the program

Before starting the uninstallation, stop the following:

Mirroring Controller arbitration process

1. Execute the mc\_arb command in stop mode to stop the Mirroring Controller arbitration process.

Example

```
> mc_arb stop -M D:\mcarb_dir\arbiter1
```

2. Unregister the Mirroring Controller arbitration process from the Windows service.

Execute the mc\_arb command in unregister mode to unregister the Mirroring Controller arbitration process from the Windows service.

Example

```
> mc_arb unregister -M D:\mcarb_dir\arbiter1
```

3. Delete registrations related to the event log.

If messages are output to the event log, DLLs are registered in accordance with "Preparatory Tasks for the Output of Error Logs to the Event Log (Windows)" in the Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing). Delete these registrations so that no unnecessary issues occur.

- Delete registration for the default event source name

Example)

The example below deletes a DLL of a 64-bit product registered under the default event source name. "<x>" indicates the product version.

```
> regsvr32 /u "c:\Program Files\Fujitsu\fsepv<x>assistant64\lib\mcarbevent.dll"
```

- Delete registration for other event source names

DLL registration is performed so that messages output to the event log are output to any event source named by the user.

Accordingly, it is necessary to delete the DLL registration. Do this for any event source name.

Example)

The example below deletes a DLL of a 64-bit product registered under the event source name "Mirroring Controller arbiter1". "<x>" indicates the product version.

```
> regsvr32 /u /i:"Mirroring Controller arbiter1" "c:\Program Files\Fujitsu  
\fsepv<x>assistant64\lib\mcarbevent.dll"
```

- If installing multiple versions

If error logs are set to be output to the event log, use the DLL path name that you took note of previously as explained in "Preparatory Tasks for the Output of Error Logs to the Event Log (Windows)" in the Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing) to reregister the default event source name.



Ensure that you delete the DLLs before the uninstallation. If you perform the uninstallation without doing so, you may not be able to delete the DLLs at a later time.

## 2. Start the command prompt

In Windows, right-click [Command Prompt] and then select [Run as administrator].

## 3. Run the uninstallation

Execute the following command:

The installation folder may remain after uninstallation. If it is not required, delete it.

Example

```
X:> installFolder\suninst.bat
```

*X*: Drive on which the product is installed

## Chapter 4 Setup of the Server Assistant

The Server Assistant is a feature that is installed and used on the arbitration server, so its setup is performed as the arbitration server setup.



See

.....  
Refer to "Setting Up Database Multiplexing Mode" in the Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing) for information on setting up and operating the Mirroring Controller arbitration server.  
.....

# Appendix A Estimating Memory Requirements

This appendix explains how to estimate the memory.

## A.1 Server Assistant Memory Requirements

This section describes the formula for estimating memory requirements for the Server Assistant.

Use the following formula to obtain a rough estimate of memory requirements:

```
Memory usage of the Server Assistant
= Peak memory usage of the Mirroring Controller arbitration
processes
+ Peak memory usage of the Mirroring Controller commands

Peak memory usage of the Mirroring Controller arbitration processes=100 MB

Peak memory usage of the Mirroring Controller commands=50 MB * Number of commands executed
simultaneously
```



## Appendix B Procedure when Modifying the JRE Installation

This appendix describes the procedure to follow when modifying the JRE installation.

The JRE, of which the installation destination is specified in the JAVA\_HOME environment variable when installing Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres, is used by the Server Assistant.

Therefore, when updating or reinstalling JRE after installing Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres, it is necessary to restart the Mirroring Controller arbitration process, therefore follow the procedure below to modify the JRE installation:

1. Stop the Mirroring Controller arbitration process.

Refer to the Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing) for details.

2. Modify the JRE installation.

3. Change the installation environment to be used by Mirroring Controller.

Set the JAVA\_HOME environment variable to the installation destination of JRE 8, and use the mc\_update\_jre\_env command to change the installation environment to be used by the Server Assistant.

This procedure must be executed by the superuser.

### Example

/opt/fsepv<x>assistant/bin is the installation directory where the Server Assistant is installed.

```
$ su -  
Password:*****  
# export JAVA_HOME="Jre8InstallDir"  
# /opt/fsepv<x>assistant/bin/mc_update_jre_env
```

4. Start the Mirroring Controller arbitration process.

Refer to the Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing) for details.

# Index

---

[C]	[U]
Check the disk space.....6,15	Uninstallation.....2,10,18
Check the installed product and determine the installation method .....6,15	Uninstallation in Interactive Mode.....10,18
	Uninstallation in Silent Mode.....11,20
[D]	
Disk Space Required for Installation.....5,13	
[E]	
Estimating Memory Requirements.....23	
Excluded Software.....5,13	
[F]	
Features that can be Installed.....1	
[H]	
Hardware Environment.....5,13	
hosts file settings.....15	
[I]	
Installation.....13	
Installation and Uninstallation of the Linux Server Assistant....3	
Installation and Uninstallation of the Windows Server Assistant .....12	
Installation in Interactive Mode.....1,7,16	
Installation in Silent Mode.....2,9,17	
Installation Procedure.....1	
Installation Types.....1	
[M]	
Multi-Version Installation.....1	
[N]	
New Installation.....1	
[O]	
Operating Environment.....3	
Operating environment.....12	
[P]	
Pre-installation Tasks.....6	
Procedure when Modifying the JRE Installation.....24	
[R]	
Reinstallation.....1	
Related Software.....4,12	
Remove applied updates.....7,16	
Required Operating System.....3,12	
Required Patches.....5,13	
[S]	
Server Assistant Memory Requirements.....23	
Setup of the Server Assistant.....22	
Supported System Environment.....6,13	
[T]	
TCP/IP Protocol.....6	
TCP/IP protocol.....13	

# **Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres**

## **Installation/Uninstallation in Silent Mode (Parameters and Messages)**

Linux

July 2024

# Preface

---

## Purpose of this document

This document explains the parameters to be specified when installing and uninstalling Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres in silent mode, and explains the installation messages and return values.

## Structure of this document

This document is structured as follows:

### [Chapter 1 Server Feature](#)

Describes how to install and uninstall the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres server feature in silent mode.

### [Chapter 2 Client Feature](#)

Describes how to install and uninstall the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres client feature in silent mode.

### [Chapter 3 Server Assistant](#)

Describes how to install and uninstall the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Server Assistant in silent mode.

## Export restrictions

Exportation/release of this document may require necessary procedures in accordance with the regulations of your resident country and/or US export control laws.

## Issue date and version

Edition 3.0: July 2024 Edition 2.0: April 2023 Edition 1.0: January 2022
--

## Copyright

Copyright 2018-2024 Fujitsu Limited

# Contents

---

Chapter 1 Server Feature.....	1
1.1 Installation.....	1
1.1.1 Specification Format.....	1
1.1.2 List of Parameters.....	1
1.1.3 Messages and Return Values.....	4
1.1.4 CSV File Format.....	6
1.2 Uninstallation.....	7
1.2.1 Messages and Return Values.....	7
Chapter 2 Client Feature.....	9
2.1 Installation.....	9
2.1.1 Specification Format.....	9
2.1.2 List of Parameters.....	10
2.1.3 Messages and Return Values.....	13
2.1.4 CSV File Format.....	15
2.2 Uninstallation.....	17
2.2.1 Messages and Return Values.....	17
Chapter 3 Server Assistant.....	19
3.1 Installation.....	19
3.1.1 Specification Format.....	19
3.1.2 List of Parameters.....	20
3.1.3 Messages and Return Values.....	21
3.1.4 CSV File Format.....	23
3.2 Uninstallation.....	25
3.2.1 Messages and Return Values.....	25



# Chapter 1 Server Feature

This chapter provides specifications for installation and uninstallation of the server feature in silent mode.

## 1.1 Installation

This chapter provides specifications for installation.

### 1.1.1 Specification Format

The installation parameters CSV file, which is specified as the argument for the silent installer, has three columns per line in CSV format.

```
sectionName, parameterName, value
sectionName, parameterName, value
:
```

Enter the following settings in respective columns.

Item	Settings	Optional
<i>sectionName</i>	Specify the section name. There are two types of section names: "installinfo": Set the product information. "parameters": Set the parameter information for this product.	Mandatory
<i>parameterName</i>	Specify the parameter name. Each section has a valid parameter.	Mandatory
<i>value</i>	Specify the value.	Optional



- Blank lines cannot be included.
- Section names and parameter names cannot be omitted.
- Undefined parameters cannot be set in lines where the section name is "installInfo". Also, note that the same parameter cannot be specified multiple times.
- Specify at least one line with the section name "parameters".
- Undefined parameters specified in lines within the "parameters" section will be ignored during execution. Note that when the same parameter is specified multiple times, the settings in the lowest line will be valid.
- The setting values for lines where the section name is "installInfo" may contain alphanumeric characters (at least one), and symbols, excluding double quotation marks (") and commas (,).
- The following characters can be used in the setting for rows with the section name "parameters":  
Alphanumeric characters, hyphens, commas and forward slashes



The template for the installation parameters CSV file is "*mountPoint/sample/sample.csv*".

### 1.1.2 List of Parameters

This section describes the parameters that can be set for each section.

## installInfo section

The parameters that can be set in the installInfo section are shown below.

No.	Type	Parameter		Description
1	Software ID	Parameter name	Name	Mandatory. Specify the software identifier. For this software, specify the following value: "Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres"
		Value/Range	String	
		Default value	None	



## Information

- In addition to "Name", the following parameters can be used in the "installInfo" section.
  - softwareName
  - OS
  - Version
  - Edition
- Note that specifying a parameter name other than "Name" and the parameters listed above will result in an error.
- The values set in these parameters do not affect silent installation.

## Example

```
installInfo,Name,Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres
```

## parameters section

The parameters that can be set in the parameters section are shown below.

Note that "<X>" indicates the product version.

No.	Type	Parameter		Description
1	Whether to install the server	Parameter name	ServerInstallExecute	Optional. Specify whether to run the installation of the server. Y: Install No: Do not install
		Value/Range	Y or N	
		Default value	Y	
2	Installation destination of the server	Parameter name	ServerInstallPath	Optional. Specify the installation destination of the software. The root directory (/) cannot be specified.
		Value/Range	Path name	
		Default value	/opt/fsepv<X>server64	
3	Whether to install the client (64-bit)	Parameter name	Client64InstallExecute	Optional. Specify whether to run the installation of the client (64-bit). Y: Install N: Do not install
		Value/Range	Y or N	
		Default value	Y	

No.	Type	Parameter		Description
4	Installation destination of the client (64-bit)	Parameter name	Client64InstallPath	Optional.
		Value/Range	Path name	Specify the installation destination of the client (64-bit).
		Default value	/opt/fsepvc<x>client64	The root directory (/) cannot be specified.
5	Whether to install WebAdmin	Parameter name	WebAdminInstallExecute	Optional.
		Value/Range	Y or N	Specify whether to run the installation of WebAdmin in multiserver mode.
		Default value	Y	Y: Install N: Do not install
6	Installation destination of WebAdmin	Parameter name	WebAdminInstallPath	Optional.
		Value/Range	Path name	Specify the installation destination of WebAdmin.
		Default value	/opt/fsepvc<x>webadmin	The root directory (/) cannot be specified.
7	Whether to set up WebAdmin	Parameter name	WebSetupExecute	Optional.
		Value/Range	Y or N	Specify whether to set up WebAdmin.
		Default value	Y	Y: Setup N: Do not set up This will be ignored if the WebAdmin is not installed.
8	Web server port number	Parameter name	WebPortNumber1	Optional.
		Value/Range	1024 to 32767	Specify the port number of the Web server.
		Default value	27515	This will be ignored if the WebAdmin is not installed.
9	WebAdmin internal port number	Parameter name	WebPortNumber2	Optional.
		Value/Range	1024 to 32767	Specify the WebAdmin internal port number.
		Default value	27516	This will be ignored if the WebAdmin is not installed.
10	Whether to install Pgpool-II	Parameter name	Pgpool2InstallExecute	Specify whether to run the installation of the Pgpool-II.
		Value/Range	Y or N	Y: Install
		Default value	N	N: Do not install
11	Installation destination of Pgpool-II	Parameter name	Pgpool2InstallPath	Optional.
		Value/Range	Path name	Specify the installation destination of Pgpool-II.
		Default value	/opt/fsepvc<x>pgpool-II	The root directory (/) cannot be specified.
12	Whether to install pgBackRest	Parameter name	PgbackrestInstallExecute	Specify whether to run the installation of the pgBackRest.
		Value/Range	Y or N	Y: Install
		Default value	N	N: Do not install



No.	Type	Parameter		Description
				This parameter is valid in Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 15 SP1 and later.
13	Installation destination of pgBackRest	Parameter name	PgbackrestInstallPath	Optional. Specify the installation destination of pgBackRest.  The root directory (/) cannot be specified.  This parameter is valid in Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 15 SP1 and later.
		Value/Range	Path name	
		Default value	/opt/fsepv<x>pgbackrest	

#### Example

```
parameters,ServerInstallExecute,Y
parameters,ServerInstallPath,
parameters,Client64InstallExecute,Y
parameters,Client64InstallPath,
parameters,WebAdminInstallExecute,Y
parameters,WebAdminInstallPath,
parameters,WebSetupExecute,Y
parameters,WebPortNumber1,27515
parameters,WebPortNumber2,27516
parameters,Pgpool2InstallExecute,Y
parameters,Pgpool2InstallPath,
parameters,PgbackrestInstallExecute,Y
parameters,PgbackrestInstallPath,
```

## 1.1.3 Messages and Return Values

Messages are output when errors are detected during parametric analysis.

If an error is detected during installation of the product, a message is output to the log:

#### Log file

In "xyz" below, "x" is the product version, "z" is the product level, and for this release, "y" is 0.

```
var/log/fsep_SERVER64_media_xyz_install.log
```

#### Messages and return values

##### CSV file errors

The following messages are output if errors are detected while parsing CSV files.

Return value	Message	Explanation and actions
4	CSV file error:code = 1, Invalid CSV error.	There is an error in the specification format of the CSV file.
4	CSV file error:code = 2, installInfo/Name is required.	Either installInfo or the Name parameter has not been specified.
4	CSV file error:code = 3, Invalid installInfo key.	There is an error in the installInfo specification. Or the section name is invalid.
4	CSV file error:code = 4, Duplicated installInfo key.	The same parameter has been defined more than once in installInfo.
4	CSV file error:code = 5, Invalid character length.	No setting value is specified, or the specified string is too long.

Return value	Message	Explanation and actions
4	CSV file error:code = 6, Invalid character format or encoding.	An invalid character has been specified in the installation parameters CSV file.
4	CSV file error:code = 8, Parameter is required.	There is no line in the "parameters" section.
20	The input file does not exist.	The input file does not exist.
21	The value of @1@ is incorrect, the value is @2@.	The value is incorrect. Specify the correct value. The parameter name is displayed in @1@. The specified parameter is displayed in @2@.
22	The value same at @1@ and @2@ is specified.	The same value is specified in different parameters. Specify different values. The parameter name is displayed in @1@ and @2@.
23	The @2@ of @1@ already exists.	The path already exists. Specify a different path. The parameter name is displayed in @1@. The specified value is displayed in @2@.
26	Port number @1@ is already used in the service file(/etc/services).	The port number is already being used. Specify an unused port number. The port number is displayed in @1@.
28	There is no product for installation.	No product was specified for installation. Specify "Y" for at least one of the following parameters: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- ServerInstallExecute</li> <li>- Client64InstallExecute</li> <li>- WebAdminInstallExecute</li> <li>- Pgpool2InstallExecute</li> <li>- PgbackrestInstallExecute</li> </ul>
29	USAGE : silent.sh inputfile	The argument specified in the command is incorrect. Specify the correct argument.

#### Product installer errors

The following return values are returned when errors occur while the product installer is running.

Return value	Explanation
0	Completed successfully.
3	Failed to setup WebAdmin.
13	Processing was interrupted.
14	The resources required for installation do not exist on the media.
15	The resources required for installation do not exist.
16	Unable to change the permission because the directory does not exist.
17	Failed to install because a required package is missing.
19	A process is running.
30	Failed to copy the installation material.

Return value	Explanation
32	The same version of the same product is already installed.
60	An error occurred in Uninstall (middleware).
61	Failed to install Uninstall (middleware).
62	Uninstall (middleware) was started.
63	The uninstallation cannot be performed either because Uninstall (middleware) does not exist or because there are no execution privileges.
83	Failed to install FJQSS or register information.
85	Different editions of the same generation are installed.
86	A newer version of the product is already installed.
88	Exclusive product is already installed.
99	A system error occurred.
106	The command was not executed with administrator privileges.
110	License registration failed.
129	Unsupported operating system.
200	Failed to install of package.
201	A conflicting package is installed.

### 1.1.4 CSV File Format

The format of CSV files is based on RFC4180, with the following specifications.

#### Records

- Separate each record with a "CRLF" newline (operation is not guaranteed with only a "CR" or "LF" newline).
- Specify a newline at the end of a file.
- Separate each field within a record with a halfwidth comma ",".

Format	Record		
aaa,bbb,ccc	aaa	bbb	ccc

- If several commas are entered in succession, or if a comma precedes a newline, the data following the comma is regarded as empty.

Format	Record		
aaa,,ccc	aaa		ccc
aaa,bbb,	aaa	bbb	

- Headers cannot be specified.

Format	Record		
	field1	field2	field 3
aaa,bbb,ccc	aaa	bbb	ccc

#### Double quotation marks

- Enclose fields that contain newlines, double quotation marks, or commas in double quotation marks.

Format	Record		
"aaa","bb b","ccc"	aaa	bb b	ccc
"aaa","bb,b","ccc"	aaa	bb,b	ccc

- If a double quotation mark is used in a field enclosed with double quotation marks, the first double quotation mark is regarded as an escape character.

Format	Record		
"aaa","bb""b","ccc"	aaa	bb"b	ccc



### Note

An error occurs in the following cases:

- Each space, tab, or whitespace character is recognized as one character, and will cause a parameter error.
- A space is entered before or after a field enclosed with double quotation marks.

```
"zzz ", "yyy ", " xxx "
```

- The number of fields differs between records.

```
aaa,bbb
aaa,bbb,ccc
aaa,bbb,ccc,ddd
```

- Fields enclosed with double quotation marks and fields not enclosed with double quotation marks are both used.

```
aaa,"bbb",ccc
"xxx",yy,"zzz"
```

- The double quotation escape characters are not positioned correctly.

```
"aaa","bb""b","ccc"
```

- Double quotation marks enclose the entire field.

```
"aaa,bbb,ccc"
```

## 1.2 Uninstallation

This chapter provides specifications for uninstallation.

### 1.2.1 Messages and Return Values

The uninstaller result is output to the log file.

#### Log file

In "xyz" below, "x" is the product version, "z" is the product level, and for this release, "y" is 0.

Server product

```
/var/log/fsep_SERVER64_xyz_uninstall.log
```

#### Client product

```
/var/log/fsep_CLIENT64_xyz_uninstall.log
```

#### WebAdmin

```
/var/log/fsep_WEBADMIN_xyz_uninstall.log
```

#### Pgpool-II

```
/var/log/fsep_PGPOOL2_xyz_uninstall.log
```

#### pgBackRest

```
/var/log/fsep_PGBACKREST_xyz_uninstall.log
```

### Return values

The following return values are output:

Return values	Meaning
0	Uninstallation was successful.
3	WebAdmin unsetup failed.
13	Processing was interrupted.
15	The resources required for uninstallation do not exist.
19	A process is running.
60	An error occurred in Uninstall (middleware).
62	Uninstall (middleware) was started.
63	Uninstall (middleware) has not been installed, or there are no execution privileges.
83	Failed to delete the information from FJQSS.
99	A system error occurred.
100	The command argument is invalid.
106	The command was not executed with administrator privileges.
200	Failed to uninstall of package.

## Chapter 2 Client Feature

This chapter provides specifications for installation and installation of the client feature in silent mode.

Note that "<x>" in paths indicates the product version.

### 2.1 Installation

This chapter provides specifications for installation.

#### 2.1.1 Specification Format

The installation parameters CSV file, which is specified as the argument for the silent installer, has three columns per line in CSV format.

```
sectionName, parameterName, value
sectionName, parameterName, value
:
```

Enter the following settings in respective columns.

Item	Settings	Optional
<i>sectionName</i>	Specify the section name. There are two types of section names: "installInfo": Set the product information. "parameters": Set the parameter information for this product.	Mandatory
<i>parameterName</i>	Specify the parameter name. Each section has a valid parameter.	Mandatory
<i>value</i>	Specify the value.	Optional

#### Note

- Blank lines cannot be included.
- Section names and parameter names cannot be omitted.
- Undefined parameters cannot be set in lines where the section name is "installInfo". Also, note that the same parameter cannot be specified multiple times.
- Specify at least one line with the section name "parameters".
- Undefined parameters specified in lines within the "parameters" section will be ignored during execution. Note that when the same parameter is specified multiple times, the settings in the lowest line will be valid.
- The setting values for lines where the section name is "installInfo" may contain alphanumeric characters (at least one), and symbols, excluding double quotation marks (") and commas (,).
- Do not use the following halfwidth characters in the setting values for lines with the section name "parameters".

Windows: # \$ & ' = ^ ~ | @ ` [ ] ; < > / tab

Linux: " # \$ & = ' ( ) ^ ~ \ | @ ` [ ] { } ; : < > tab

#### Information

The template for the installation parameters CSV file is as follows:

- Windows client: Z:\sample\sample\_windows.csv (Z is the drive into which the DVD is inserted.)



- Linux client: *mountPoint/sample/sample\_linux.csv*

## 2.1.2 List of Parameters

This section describes the parameters that can be set for each section.

### installInfo section

The parameters that can be set in the installInfo section are shown below.

No.	Type	Parameter		Description
1	Software ID	Parameter name	Name	Mandatory. Specify the software identifier.  For this software, specify the following value:  "Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres"
		Value/Range	String	
		Default value	None	



### Information

- In addition to "Name", the following parameters can be used in the "installInfo" section.
  - softwareName
  - OS
  - Version
  - Edition
- Note that specifying a parameter name other than "Name" and the parameters listed above will result in an error.
- The values set in these parameters do not affect silent installation.

### Example

```
installInfo,Name,Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres
```

### parameters section

The parameters that can be set in the parameters section are shown below.

No.	Type	Parameter		Description
1	Whether to install the client (32-bit)	Parameter name	Client32InstallExecute	Optional. Specify whether to run the installation of the client (32-bit).  Y: Install N: Do not install  This parameter is ignored on Linux.
		Value/Range	Y or N	
		Default value	Y	
2	Installation destination of the client (32-bit)	Parameter name	Client32InstallPath	Optional. Specify the installation destination of the client (32-bit).
		Value/Range	Path name	

No.	Type	Parameter		Description
		Default value	<div>W Windows(32-bit)</div> <div>%ProgramFiles%\Fujitsu\fserv&lt;x&gt;client32</div> <div>Windows(64-bit)</div> <div>%ProgramFiles(x86)%\Fujitsu\fserv&lt;x&gt;client32</div> <div>L Linux</div> <div>None.</div>	<div>W A root folder (such as C:\) cannot be specified.</div> <div>L This parameter is ignored on Linux.</div>
3	Whether to install the client (64-bit)	Parameter name	Client64InstallExecute	Optional. Specify whether to run the installation of the client (64-bit). Y: Install N: Do not install <div>W This parameter is ignored on 32-bit operating systems.</div>
		Value/Range	Y or N	
		Default value	Y	
4	Installation destination of the client (64-bit)	Parameter name	Client64InstallPath	Optional. Specify the installation destination of the client (64-bit). <div>W This parameter is ignored on 32-bit operating systems.</div> <div>A root folder (such as C:\) cannot be specified.</div> <div>L A root directory cannot be specified.</div>
		Value/Range	Path name	
		Default value	<div>W Windows(64-bit)</div> <div>%ProgramFiles%\Fujitsu\fserv&lt;x&gt;client64</div> <div>L Linux</div> <div>/opt/fserv&lt;x&gt;client64</div>	
5	Whether to install Pgpool-II	Parameter name	Pgpool2InstallExecute	Specify whether to run the installation of the Pgpool-II. Y: Install N: Do not install <div>W This parameter is ignored on Windows.</div>
		Value/Range	Y or N	
		Default value	N	
6	Installation destination of Pgpool-II	Parameter name	Pgpool2InstallPath	Optional. Specify the installation destination of Pgpool-II. <div>W This parameter is ignored on Windows.</div> <div>L A root directory cannot be specified.</div>
		Value/Range	Path name	
		Default value	/opt/fserv<x>pgpool-II	



No.	Type	Parameter		Description
7	Whether to install pgBackRest	Parameter name	PgbackrestInstallExecute	Specify whether to run the installation of the pgBackRest.  Y: Install N: Do not install  <b>W</b> This parameter is ignored on Windows.  This parameter is valid in Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 15 SP1 and later.
		Value/Range	Y or N	
		Default value	N	
8	Installation destination of pgBackRest	Parameter name	PgbackrestInstallPath	Optional.  Specify the installation destination of pgBackRest.  <b>W</b> This parameter is ignored on Windows.  <b>L</b> A root directory cannot be specified.  This parameter is valid in Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 15 SP1 and later.
		Value/Range	Path name	
		Default value	/opt/fsepv<x>pgbackrest	
9	Whether to install ldap2pg	Parameter name	Ldap2pgInstallExecute	Specify whether to run the installation of the ldap2pg.  Y: Install N: Do not install  <b>W</b> This parameter is ignored on Windows.  This parameter is valid in Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 16 and later.
		Value/Range	Y or N	
		Default value	N	
10	Installation destination of ldap2pg	Parameter name	Ldap2pgInstallPath	Optional.  Specify the installation destination of ldap2pg.  <b>W</b> This parameter is ignored on Windows.  <b>L</b> A root directory cannot be specified.  This parameter is valid in Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 16 and later.
		Value/Range	Path name	
		Default value	/opt/fsepv<x>ldap2pg	

#### Example

```
parameters,Client64InstallExecute,Y
parameters,Client64InstallPath,
parameters,Pgpool2InstallExecute,Y
parameters,Pgpool2InstallPath,
```

```
parameters,PgbackrestInstallExecute,Y  
parameters,PgbackrestInstallPath,  
parameters,Ldap2pgInstallExecute,Y  
parameters,Ldap2pgInstallPath,
```

## 2.1.3 Messages and Return Values

Messages are output when errors are detected during parametric analysis.

If an error occurs during installation of the product, a message is output to the log.

### Log file

In "xyz" below, "x" is the product version, "z" is the product level, and for this release, "y" is 0.

W

#### Windows

```
%TEMP%\fsep_CLIENT_media_xyz.log
```

L

#### Linux

```
/var/log/fsep_CLIENT_media_xyz_install.log
```

### Messages and return values

#### CSV file errors

The following messages are output if errors are detected while parsing CSV files.

Return value	Message	Explanation and actions
4	CSV file error:code = 1, Invalid CSV error.	There is an error in the specification format of the CSV file.
4	CSV file error:code = 2, installInfo/Name is required.	There is an error in the specification format of the CSV file.
4	CSV file error:code = 3, Invalid installInfo key.	There is an error in the installInfo specification. Or the section name is invalid.
4	CSV file error:code = 4, Duplicated installInfo key.	The same parameter has been defined more than once in installInfo.
4	CSV file error:code = 5, Invalid character length.	No setting value has been specified, or the specified string is too long.
4	CSV file error:code = 6, Invalid character format or encoding.	An invalid character has been specified in the installation parameters CSV file.
4	CSV file error:code = 8, Parameter is required.	The "parameters" section has no lines.
20	The input file does not exist.	The input file does not exist.
21	The value of @1@ is incorrect,the value is @2@.	The value is incorrect. Specify the correct value. The parameter name is displayed in @1@. The specified value is displayed in @2@.
22	The value same at @1@ and @2@ is specified.	The same value is specified in different parameters. Specify different values. The parameter name is displayed in @1@ and @2@.
23	The @2@ of @1@ already exists.	The path already exists. Specify a different path. The parameter name is displayed in @1@.

Return value	Message	Explanation and actions
		The specified value is displayed in @2@.
24	Drive @2@ of @1@ does not exist.	The drive does not exist. Specify an existing drive.  The parameter name is displayed in @1@.  The specified value is displayed in @2@.
28	There is no product for installation.	There is no product to be installed. Specify "Y" for at least one of the following parameters:  <div> <div>W Windows</div> <div>- Client32InstallExecute</div> <div>- Client64InstallExecute</div> </div> <div> <div>L Linux</div> <div>- Client64InstallExecute</div> <div>- Pgpool2InstallExecute</div> <div>- PgbackrestInstallExecute</div> <div>- Ldap2pgInstallExecute</div> </div>
29	<div>W Windows</div> <div>USAGE : silent.bat inputfile</div> <div>L Linux</div> <div>USAGE : silent.sh inputfile</div>	The argument specified in the command is incorrect. Specify the correct argument.

#### Product installer errors

The following return values are returned when errors occur while the product installer is running.



#### Windows

Return value	Explanation
0	Completed successfully.
14	The resources required for installation do not exist on the media.
32	The same version of the same product is already installed.
60	An error occurred in Uninstall (middleware).
61	Failed to install Uninstall (middleware).
62	Uninstall (middleware) was started.
74	Failed to write to the registry.
79	Failed to load the registry.
85	Different editions of the same generation are installed.
86	A newer version of the product is already installed.
88	Exclusive product is already installed.
129	The operating system is not supported.
142	Insufficient disk space at the installation destination.
144	The command was not executed with administrator privileges.
200	Failed to install of package.

Return value	Explanation
201	A conflicting package is installed.
220	Failed to create a folder in the installation folder.
221	Failed to create files in the installation folder.
251	An error occurred when running a system function.
255	An internal inconsistency occurred.



## Linux

Return value	Explanation
0	Completed successfully.
13	Processing was interrupted.
14	The resources required for installation do not exist on the media.
15	The resources required for installation do not exist.
16	Unable to change the permission because the directory does not exist.
17	Failed to install because a required package is missing.
19	A process is running.
30	Failed to copy the installation resources.
32	The same version of the same product is already installed.
60	An error occurred in Uninstall (middleware).
61	Failed to install Uninstall (middleware).
62	Uninstall (middleware) was started.
63	The uninstallation cannot be performed either because Uninstall (middleware) does not exist or because there are no execution privileges.
85	Different editions of the same generation are installed.
86	A newer version of the product is already installed.
88	Exclusive product is already installed.
99	A system error occurred.
106	The command was not executed with administrator privileges.
129	Unsupported operating system.
200	Failed to install of package.
201	A conflicting package is installed.

## 2.1.4 CSV File Format

The format of CSV files is based on RFC4180, with the following specifications.

### Records

- Separate each record with a "CRLF" newline (operation is not guaranteed with only a "CR" or "LF" newline).
- Specify a newline at the end of a file.
- Separate each field within a record with a halfwidth comma ",".

Format	Record		
aaa,bbb,ccc	aaa	bbb	ccc

- If several commas are entered in succession, or if a comma precedes a newline, the data following the comma is regarded as empty.

Format	Record		
aaa,,ccc	aaa		ccc
aaa,bbb,	aaa	bbb	

- You cannot specify a header.

Format	Record		
	field1	field2	field 3
aaa,bbb,ccc	aaa	bbb	ccc

## Double quotation marks

- Enclose fields that contain newlines, double quotation marks, or commas in double quotation marks.

Format	Record		
"aaa","bb b","ccc"	aaa	bb b	ccc
"aaa","bb,b","ccc"	aaa	bb,b	ccc

- If a double quotation mark is used in a field enclosed with double quotation marks, the first double quotation mark is regarded as an escape character.

Format	Record		
"aaa","bb""b","ccc"	aaa	bb"b	ccc



## Note

An error occurs in the following cases:

- Each space, tab, or whitespace character is recognized as one character, and will cause a parameter error.
- A space is entered before or after a field enclosed with double quotation marks.

```
"zzz ", "yyy ", " xxx "
```

- The number of fields differs between records.

```
aaa,bbb
aaa,bbb,ccc
aaa,bbb,ccc,ddd
```

- Fields enclosed with double quotation marks and fields not enclosed with double quotation marks are both used.

```
aaa,"bbb",ccc
"xxx",yy,"zzz"
```

- The double quotation escape characters are not positioned correctly.

```
"aaa","bb""b","ccc"
```

- Double quotation marks enclose the entire field.

```
"aaa,bbb,ccc"
```

## 2.2 Uninstallation

This chapter provides specifications for uninstallation.

### 2.2.1 Messages and Return Values

The uninstaller result is output to the log file.

#### Log file

In "xyz" below, "x" is the product version, "z" is the product level, and for this release, "y" is 0.

W

#### Windows

##### 64-bit product

```
%TEMP%\fsep_CLIENT64_xyz_uninstall.log
```

##### 32-bit product

```
%TEMP%\fsep_CLIENT32_xyz_uninstall.log
```

L

#### Linux

##### 64-bit product

```
/var/log/fsep_CLIENT64_xyz_uninstall.log
```

##### Pgpool-II

```
/var/log/fsep_PGPOOL2_xyz_uninstall.log
```

##### pgBackRest

```
/var/log/fsep_PGBACKREST_xyz_uninstall.log
```

##### ldap2pg

```
/var/log/fsep_LDAP2PG_xyz_uninstall.log
```

#### Return values

The following return values are output:

W

#### Windows

Return values	Meaning
0	Uninstallation was successful.
64	Failed to install because "Uninstall (middleware)" is running.
74	Failed to write product information (updating registry).
79	Failed to read product information (viewing registry).
144	The command was not executed with administrator privileges.
200	Failed to uninstall of package.

Return values	Meaning
251	An error occurred when running a system function.
255	An internal inconsistency occurred.



## Linux

Return values	Meaning
0	Uninstallation was successful.
13	Processing was interrupted.
15	The resources required for uninstallation do not exist.
19	A process is running.
60	An error occurred in Uninstall (middleware).
62	Uninstall (middleware) was started.
63	Uninstall (middleware) has not been installed, or there are no execution privileges.
99	A system error occurred.
100	The command argument is invalid.
106	The command was not executed with administrator privileges.
200	Failed to uninstall of package.

## Chapter 3 Server Assistant

This chapter provides specifications for installation and uninstallation of the Server Assistant in silent mode.

Note that "<x>" in paths indicates the product version.

### 3.1 Installation

This chapter provides specifications for installation.

#### 3.1.1 Specification Format

The installation parameters CSV file, which is specified as the argument for the silent installer, has three columns per line in CSV format.

```
sectionName, parameterName, value
sectionName, parameterName, value
:
```

Enter the following settings in respective columns.

Item	Settings	Optional
<i>sectionName</i>	Specify the section name. There are two types of section names: "installInfo": Set the product information. "parameters": Set the parameter information for this product.	Mandatory
<i>parameterName</i>	Specify the parameter name. Each section has a valid parameter.	Mandatory
<i>value</i>	Specify the value.	Optional



#### Note

- Blank lines cannot be included.
- Section names and parameter names cannot be omitted.
- Undefined parameters cannot be set in lines where the section name is "installInfo". Also, note that the same parameter cannot be specified multiple times.
- Specify at least one line with the section name "parameters".
- Undefined parameters specified in lines within the "parameters" section will be ignored during execution. Note that when the same parameter is specified multiple times, the settings in the lowest line will be valid.
- The setting values for lines where the section name is "installInfo" may contain alphanumeric characters (at least one), and symbols, excluding double quotation marks (") and commas (,).
- Do not use the following halfwidth characters in the setting values for lines with the section name "parameters".

Windows: # \$ & ' = ^ ~ | @ ` [ ] ; < > / tab

Linux: " # \$ & = ' ( ) ^ ~ \ | @ ` [ ] { } ; : < > tab



#### Information

The template for the installation parameters CSV file is as follows:

- Windows Server Assistant: Z:\sample\sample.csv (Z is the drive into which the DVD is inserted.)



### 3.1.2 List of Parameters

This section describes the parameters that can be set for each section.

#### installInfo section

The parameters that can be set in the installInfo section are shown below.

No.	Type	Parameter		Description
1	Software ID	Parameter name	Name	Mandatory. Specify the software identifier.  For this software, specify the following value:  "Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres"
		Value/Range	String	
		Default value	None	



#### Information

- In addition to "Name", the following parameters can be used in the "installInfo" section.
  - softwareName
  - OS
  - Version
  - Edition
- Note that specifying a parameter name other than "Name" and the parameters listed above will result in an error.
- The values set in these parameters do not affect silent installation.


#### Example

```
installInfo,Name,Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres
```

#### parameters section

The parameters that can be set in the parameters section are shown below.

No.	Type	Parameter		Description
1	Whether to install the server assistant	Parameter name	ArbiterInstallExecute	Optional. Specify whether to run the installation of the Server Assistant.  Y: Install N: Do not install
		Value/Range	Y or N	
		Default value	Y	
2	Installation destination of the server assistant	Parameter name	ArbiterInstallPath	Optional. Specify the installation destination of the Server Assistant.  <b>W</b> A root folder (such as C:\) cannot be specified.  <b>L</b> A root directory cannot be specified.
		Value/Range	Path name	
		Default value	<b>W</b> Windows  %ProgramFiles%\Fujitsu\fssepv<x>assistant64	

No.	Type	Parameter	Description
		 Linux /opt/fsepv<x>assistant	

Example

```
parameters,ArbiterInstallExecute,Y
parameters,ArbiterInstallPath,
```

### 3.1.3 Messages and Return Values

Messages are output when errors are detected during parametric analysis.

If an error occurs during installation of the product, a message is output to the log.

#### Log file

In "xyz" below, "x" is the product version, "z" is the product level, and for this release, "y" is 0.

 W

Windows

```
%TEMP%\fsep_SERVER_ASSISTANT_media_xyz.log
```

 L

Linux



```
/var/log/fsep_SERVER_ASSISTANT_media_xyz_install.log
```

#### Messages and return values

CSV file errors

The following messages are output if errors are detected while parsing CSV files.

Return value	Message	Explanation and actions
4	CSV file error:code = 1, Invalid CSV error.	There is an error in the specification format of the CSV file.
4	CSV file error:code = 2, installInfo/Name is required.	There is an error in the specification format of the CSV file.
4	CSV file error:code = 3, Invalid installInfo key.	There is an error in the installInfo specification. Or the section name is invalid.
4	CSV file error:code = 4, Duplicated installInfo key.	The same parameter has been defined more than once in installInfo.
4	CSV file error:code = 5, Invalid character length.	No setting value has been specified, or the specified string is too long.
4	CSV file error:code = 6, Invalid character format or encoding.	An invalid character has been specified in the installation parameters CSV file.
4	CSV file error:code = 8, Parameter is required.	The "parameters" section has no lines.
20	The input file does not exist.	The input file does not exist.
21	The value of @1@ is incorrect,the value is @2@.	The value is incorrect. Specify the correct value. The parameter name is displayed in @1@. The specified value is displayed in @2@.
22	The value same at @1@ and @2@ is specified.	The same value is specified in different parameters. Specify different values.

Return value	Message	Explanation and actions
		The parameter name is displayed in @1@ and @2@.
23	The @2@ of @1@ already exists.	The path already exists. Specify a different path. The parameter name is displayed in @1@. The specified value is displayed in @2@.
24	Drive @2@ of @1@ does not exist.	The drive does not exist. Specify an existing drive. The parameter name is displayed in @1@. The specified value is displayed in @2@.
28	There is no product for installation.	There is no product to be installed. Specify "Y" for the following parameters:  - ArbiterInstallExecute
29	<div>  Windows            USAGE : silent.bat inputfile         </div> <div>  Linux            USAGE : silent.sh inputfile         </div>	The argument specified in the command is incorrect. Specify the correct argument.

#### Product installer errors

The following return values are returned when errors occur while the product installer is running.



#### Windows

Return value	Explanation
0	Completed successfully.
14	The resources required for installation do not exist on the media.
32	The same version of the same product is already installed.
60	An error occurred in Uninstall (middleware).
61	Failed to install Uninstall (middleware).
62	Uninstall (middleware) was started.
74	Failed to write to the registry.
79	Failed to load the registry.
83	Failed to install FJQSS or register information.
86	A newer version of the product is already installed.
88	Exclusive product is already installed.
129	The operating system is not supported.
142	Insufficient disk space at the installation destination.
144	The command was not executed with administrator privileges.
200	Failed to install of package.
201	A conflicting package is installed.
220	Failed to create a folder in the installation folder.
221	Failed to create files in the installation folder.
251	An error occurred when running a system function.

Return value	Explanation
255	An internal inconsistency occurred.



#### Linux

Return value	Explanation
0	Completed successfully.
13	Processing was interrupted.
14	The resources required for installation do not exist on the media.
15	The resources required for installation do not exist.
16	Unable to change the permission because the directory does not exist.
17	Failed to install because a required package is missing.
19	A process is running.
30	Failed to copy the installation resources.
32	The same version of the same product is already installed.
60	An error occurred in Uninstall (middleware).
61	Failed to install Uninstall (middleware).
62	Uninstall (middleware) was started.
63	The uninstallation cannot be performed either because Uninstall (middleware) does not exist or because there are no execution privileges.
83	Failed to install FJQSS or register information.
86	A newer version of the product is already installed.
88	Exclusive product is already installed.
99	A system error occurred.
106	The command was not executed with administrator privileges.
129	Unsupported operating system.
200	Failed to install of package.
201	A conflicting package is installed.

### 3.1.4 CSV File Format

The format of CSV files is based on RFC4180, with the following specifications.

#### Records

- Separate each record with a "CRLF" newline (operation is not guaranteed with only a "CR" or "LF" newline).
- Specify a newline at the end of a file.
- Separate each field within a record with a halfwidth comma ",".

Format	Record		
aaa,bbb,ccc	aaa	bbb	ccc

- If several commas are entered in succession, or if a comma precedes a newline, the data following the comma is regarded as empty.

Format	Record		
aaa,,ccc	aaa		ccc
aaa,bbb,	aaa	bbb	

- You cannot specify a header.

Format	Record		
	field1	field2	field 3
aaa,bbb,ccc	aaa	bbb	ccc

## Double quotation marks

- Enclose fields that contain newlines, double quotation marks, or commas in double quotation marks.

Format	Record		
"aaa", "bb b", "ccc"	aaa	bb b	ccc
"aaa", "bb,b", "ccc"	aaa	bb,b	ccc

- If a double quotation mark is used in a field enclosed with double quotation marks, the first double quotation mark is regarded as an escape character.

Format	Record		
"aaa", "bb""b", "ccc"	aaa	bb"b	ccc



### Note

An error occurs in the following cases:

- Each space, tab, or whitespace character is recognized as one character, and will cause a parameter error.
- A space is entered before or after a field enclosed with double quotation marks.

```
"zzz ", "yyy ", " xxx "
```

- The number of fields differs between records.

```
aaa,bbb
aaa,bbb,ccc
aaa,bbb,ccc,ddd
```

- Fields enclosed with double quotation marks and fields not enclosed with double quotation marks are both used.

```
aaa,"bbb",ccc
"xxx",yy,"zzz"
```

- The double quotation escape characters are not positioned correctly.

```
"aaa", "bb""b", "ccc"
```

- Double quotation marks enclose the entire field.

```
"aaa,bbb,ccc"
```

## 3.2 Uninstallation

This chapter provides specifications for uninstallation.

### 3.2.1 Messages and Return Values

The uninstaller result is output to the log file.

#### Log file

In "xyz" below, "x" is the product version, "z" is the product level, and for this release, "y" is 0.

W

#### Windows

```
%TEMP%\fsep_SERVER_ASSISTANT_xyz_uninstall.log
```

L

#### Linux

```
/var/log/fsep_SERVER_ASSISTANT_xyz_uninstall.log
```

#### Return values

The following return values are output:

W

#### Windows

Return values	Meaning
0	Uninstallation was successful.
64	Failed to install because "Uninstall (middleware)" is running.
74	Failed to write product information (updating registry).
79	Failed to read product information (viewing registry).
83	Failed to delete the information from FJQSS.
144	The command was not executed with administrator privileges.
200	Failed to uninstall of package.
251	An error occurred when running a system function.
255	An internal inconsistency occurred.

L

#### Linux

Return values	Meaning
0	Uninstallation was successful.
13	Processing was interrupted.
15	The resources required for uninstallation do not exist.
19	A process is running.
60	An error occurred in Uninstall (middleware).
62	Uninstall (middleware) was started.
63	Uninstall (middleware) has not been installed, or there are no execution privileges.
83	Failed to delete the information from FJQSS.
99	A system error occurred.
100	The command argument is invalid.

Return values	Meaning
106	The command was not executed with administrator privileges.
200	Failed to uninstall of package.

# Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

## Uninstall (middleware)

Windows/Solaris/Linux

April 2023



# Preface

---

## Purpose of this document

This document explains the features, notes, and messages of Uninstall (middleware).

## Structure of this document

This document is structured as follows:

### [Chapter 1 Using Uninstall \(middleware\)](#)

Describes the features and notes of Uninstall (middleware).

### [Chapter 2 Uninstall \(middleware\) Messages](#)

Describes the messages output by Uninstall (middleware).

## Export restrictions

Exportation/release of this document may require necessary procedures in accordance with the regulations of your resident country and/or US export control laws.

## Issue date and version

Edition 2.0: April 2023
Edition 1.0: April 2021

## Copyright

Copyright 2018-2023 Fujitsu Limited

# Contents

---

Chapter 1 Using Uninstall (middleware).....	1
1.1 Features that are Installed.....	1
1.2 Notes.....	1
1.2.1 Notes on the Uninstall (middleware) Tool.....	1
Chapter 2 Uninstall (middleware) Messages.....	3
2.1 Messages output by FJSVcir.....	3
2.2 Messages output by Uninstall (middleware).....	6

# Chapter 1 Using Uninstall (middleware)

## 1.1 Features that are Installed

### [Windows]

Feature	Package name	Component name	Remarks	Selectively installed?
Common tool	FJSVcir	CIRuntime Application	Controls the installation and uninstallation of Fujitsu middleware products.  Manages the installation information of Fujitsu middleware products and includes a management function for viewing installation information and launching the uninstaller of each product. ("Uninstall (middleware)")	No

### [Linux/Solaris]

Feature	Package name	Component name	Remarks	Selectively installed?
Common tool	FJSVcir	CIRuntime Application	Controls the installation and uninstallation of Fujitsu middleware products.  Manages the installation information of Fujitsu middleware products and includes a management function for viewing installation information and launching the uninstaller of each product. ("Uninstall (middleware)")	No

## 1.2 Notes

### 1.2.1 Notes on the Uninstall (middleware) Tool

"Uninstall (middleware)" is a tool used by Fujitsu middleware products. It performs information management for middleware products, and also, launching the uninstaller for removing these products from the installed systems.



#### Note

- To uninstall Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres, uninstall from "Uninstall (middleware)".
- This tool manages information about other Fujitsu middleware products as well as Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres. For this reason, do not uninstall it unless absolutely necessary. If you have accidentally uninstalled this tool, re-install it as described below.

#### [Windows]

1. Log on to the machine to be installed using a user name belonging to the Administrators group, or switch to an account with administrator privileges.
2. Insert the server program DVD into the drive device.
3. Execute the installation command.

```
z:\CIR\Windows\cirinst.exe
```

In the example above, z is the drive into which the DVD is inserted.

[Linux/Solaris]

1. Log in as a superuser to the installation target machine, or switch to a user with administrative privileges.
2. Insert the product media in the drive.
3. Execute the installation command.

[Linux]

```
# /media/dvd/CIR/Linux/cirinst.sh
```

In the example above, /media/dvd is the DVD mount point.

[Solaris]

```
# /dvd/dvd0/CIR/Solaris/cirinst.sh
```

In the example above, /dvd/dvd0 is the DVD mount point.

- If you uninstall this tool as described below.

1. Check that there are no Fujitsu middleware products installed in the system.  
You can check this by using "Uninstall (middleware)", which is launched by the command below.

[Windows]

Select [All Programs] > [Fujitsu] > [Uninstall (middleware)]

[Linux/Solaris]

```
/opt/FJSVcir/cir/bin/cimanager.sh -c
```

-c: CUI

2. If no Fujitsu middleware products have been installed, then issue the command below.

[Windows]

```
%SystemDrive%\FujitsuF4CR\bin\cirremove.exe
```

[Linux/Solaris]

```
# /opt/FJSVcir/bin/cirremove.sh
```

3. At the uninstallation confirmation prompt, enter "y".

```
This software is a common tool of Fujitsu products.Are you sure you want to remove it?[y/n]:
```

Uninstallation will start.

.....

## Chapter 2 Uninstall (middleware) Messages

### 2.1 Messages output by FJSVcir

---

#### **FSP\_FJSVCIR\_CIRINST: ERROR: 101: CIRINST101: Administrator privilege is required.**

##### Description

The user does not have administrator privileges.

##### Action method

Login with administrator privileges and run the command again.

---

#### **FSP\_FJSVCIR\_CIRINST: ERROR: 102: CIRINST102: Failed to create %s**

##### Parameters

%s: Directory name

##### Description

Failed to create a directory during the installation.

##### Action method

Creating the directory might have failed for some reason. Run the installer again, or run cirinst command again. If the problem persists, check the system log.

---

#### **FSP\_FJSVCIR\_CIRINST: ERROR: 103: CIRINST103: It is required at least %dMB**

##### Parameters

%d: Disk spaces

##### Description

Insufficient disk space.

##### Action method

Confirm that the system has sufficient disk spaces.

---

#### **[Windows] FSP\_FJSVCIR\_CIRINST: ERROR: 104: CIRINST104: Failed to copy CIR files.**

---

#### **[Linux][Solaris] FSP\_FJSVCIR\_CIRINST: ERROR: 104: CIRINST104: Failed to copy CIR installer files.**

##### Description

Failed to copy files required for the installation.

##### Action method

Copying the files failed for some reason. Run the installer again, or run cirinst command again. If the problem persists, check the system log.

---

#### **FSP\_FJSVCIR\_CIRINST: ERROR: 105: CIRINST105: Failed to copy JRE.**

##### Description

Failed to copy JRE required for installation.

##### Action method

Copying the files failed for some reason. Run the installer again, or run cirinst command again. If the problem persists, check the system log.

---

**FSP\_FJSVCIR\_CIRINST: ERROR: 106: CIRINST106: Failed to copy CIR****Description**

Failed to copy files during the installation.

**Action method**

Copying the files failed for some reason. Run the installer again, or run cirinst command again. If the problem persists, check the system log.

---

**FSP\_FJSVCIR\_CIRINST: ERROR: 107: CIRINST107: invalid option.****Description**

An invalid option was specified.

**Action method**

Specify a valid option. [-c]: CUI

---

**FSP\_FJSVCIR\_CIRINST: ERROR: 108: CIRINST108: JRE which should be deployed is not bundled.****Description**

An appropriate JRE for this system is not bundled.

**Action method**

Confirm that the product supports the platform.

---

**FSP\_FJSVCIR\_CIRINST: ERROR: 109: CIRINST109: Unsupported OS.****Description**

Unsupported operating system.

**Action method**

Confirm that the product supports the operating system.

---

**FSP\_FJSVCIR\_CIRINST: ERROR: 185: CIRINST185: lsb\_release was not found. Please install the package below.****- redhat-lsb****Description**

lsb\_release command was not found.

**Action method**

Add redhat-lsb package and then execute install again.

---

**FSP\_FJSVCIR\_CIRINST: ERROR: 186: CIRINST186: lsb\_release was not found.****Description**

lsb\_release command was not found.

**Action method**

Add the relevant package and then execute install again.

---

**FSP\_FJSVCIR\_CIRINST: ERROR: 201: CIRINST201: Administrator privilege is required.****Description**

The user does not have administrator privileges.

#### Action method

Login with administrator privileges and run the command again.

---

### **FSP\_FJSVCIR\_CIRINST: ERROR: 203: CIRINST203: Failed to delete files.**

#### Description

Failed to delete FJSVcir files.

#### Action method

Deleting the files failed for some reason. Run cirremove command again. If the problem persists, check the system log.

---

### **FSP\_FJSVCIR\_CIRINST: ERROR: 205: CIRINST205: invalid option.**

#### Description

Invalid option is specified.

#### Action method

No option is supported. Retry without any options.

---

### **Specified installation parameters file was not found.**

#### Description

Specified installation parameters file was not found. (silent mode)

#### Action method

Specify the installation parameters file.

---

### **It failed to install. See log for details**

#### Description

An error occurred during install. (silent mode)

#### Action method

Collect the files stored in the following directories.

[UNIX]

/var/opt/FJSVcir/cir/logs/cirlog0.log.0

[Windows]

%ProgramData%\Fujitsu\FujitsuF4CR\cir\logs\cirlog0.log.0

---

### **Parameters are invalid. Please specify valid parameters.**

#### Description

Invalid option is specified. (silent mode)

#### Action method

Specify a valid option.

---

### **Internal data is broken.**

#### Description

Internal data used by this product is corrupt.

#### Action method

Collect the files stored in the following directories and contact Fujitsu technical support:

[UNIX]

/var/opt/FJSVCIR/cir/

/etc/opt/FJSVCIR/cir/CIR.properties

[Windows]

%ProgramData%\Fujitsu\FujitsuF4CR\cir\

## 2.2 Messages output by Uninstall (middleware)

---

### It has already been running in another process.

#### Description

An attempt was made to start Uninstall (middleware) more than once. Alternatively, an attempt was made to start Uninstall (middleware) while the installer was starting.

#### Action method

End any Uninstall (middleware) that have already started. Alternatively, start Uninstall (middleware) after the installer has ended.

---

### Specified option is invalid.

#### Description

An invalid option was specified.

#### Action method

Specify valid options and run the command again.

---

### Please enter a valid option.

#### Description

An invalid character was entered. Valid characters are y, n, or item numbers.

#### Action method

Enter a valid character.

---

### Failed to uninstall of the following software packages:

#### Description

Failed to uninstall the software listed in this message.

#### Action method

Confirm the information shown after this message and take the appropriate action.

---

### Unable to uninstall the software as it is referred from more than one software.

#### Description

Failed to uninstall the software because it is used by other software.

#### Action method

No specific action is required.

---

### Unable to uninstall the software as the software is mandatory.

#### Description

Failed to uninstall the software because it is required by another program.



#### Action method

No specific action is required.

---

### Internal data is broken.

#### Description

Internal data used by this product is corrupt.

#### Action method

Collect the files stored in the following directories and contact Fujitsu technical support:

[UNIX]

/var/opt/FJSVCIR/cir/

/etc/opt/FJSVCIR/cir/CIR.properties

[Windows]

%ProgramData%\Fujitsu\FujitsuF4CR\cir\

---

### Unable to uninstall the software you were about to uninstall as the existence of the software is a precondition for the operation of another software.

#### Description

Failed to uninstall the software because it is required by another program.

#### Action method

No specific action is required.

---

### The program terminated abnormally.

#### Description

The program has terminated abnormally.

#### Action method

Collect the files stored in the following directories and contact Fujitsu technical support:

[UNIX]

/var/opt/FJSVCIR/cir/

/etc/opt/FJSVCIR/cir/CIR.properties

[Windows]

%ProgramData%\Fujitsu\FujitsuF4CR\cir\

---

### An unexpected error has occurred during uninstall.

#### Description

An error occurred during uninstall.

#### Action method

Collect the files stored in the following directories and contact Fujitsu technical support:

[UNIX]

/var/opt/FJSVCIR/cir/

/etc/opt/FJSVCIR/cir/CIR.properties

[Windows]

%ProgramData%\Fujitsu\FujitsuF4CR\cir\

---

### **It failed to uninstall. See log for details.**

#### **Description**

An error occurred during uninstall. (silent mode)

#### **Action method**

Collect the files stored in the following directories.

[UNIX]

/var/opt/FJSVCir/cir/logs/cirlog0.log.0

[Windows]

%ProgramData%\Fujitsu\FujitsuF4CR\cir\logs\cirlog0.log.0

---

### **Failed to initialize the temp directory.**

#### **Description**

Can not start Uninstall (middleware) because failed to initialize the temp directory.

#### **Action method**

Run Uninstall (middleware) again. If the problem persists, check whether other processes have accessed the files in the following directories.

[UNIX]

/var/opt/FJSVCir/cir/temp/meta\_db

[Windows]

%ProgramData%\Fujitsu\FujitsuF4CR\cir\temp\meta\_db

---

### **[Notice]Need to restart for uninstall completion.**

#### **Description**

Uninstallation was completed. (silent mode)

#### **Action method**

Restart the system.

# **Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 16**

## **Application Development Guide**

Windows/Linux

J2UL-2958-01ENZ0(00)  
July 2024

# Preface

---

## Purpose of this document

This is a guide for the developers of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres applications.

## Intended readers

This document is intended for developers of applications that use Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres. Of the interfaces provided by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres, this guide describes the PostgreSQL extended interface.

Readers of this document are also assumed to have general knowledge of:

**L**

- PostgreSQL

- SQL

- Linux

**W**

- PostgreSQL

- SQL

- Windows

## Structure of this document

This document is structured as follows:

### [Chapter 1 Overview of the Application Development Function](#)

Provides an overview of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres application development.

### [Chapter 2 JDBC Driver](#)

Explains how to use JDBC drivers.

### [Chapter 3 ODBC Driver](#)

Explains how to use ODBC drivers.

### [Chapter 4 .NET Data Provider](#)

Explains how to use .NET Data Provider.

### [Chapter 5 C Library \(libpq\)](#)

Explains how to use C applications.

### [Chapter 6 Embedded SQL in C](#)

Explains how to use embedded SQL in C.

### [Chapter 7 Embedded SQL in COBOL](#)

Explains how to use embedded SQL in COBOL.

### [Chapter 8 SQL References](#)

Explains the SQL statements which were extended in Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres development.

### [Chapter 9 Compatibility with Oracle Databases](#)

Explains features that are compatible with Oracle databases.

### [Chapter 10 Application Connection Switch Feature](#)

Explains the application connection switch feature.

### [Chapter 11 Scan Using a Vertical Clustered Index \(VCI\)](#)

Explains how to perform scan using a Vertical Clustered Index (VCI).

## [Appendix A Precautions when Developing Applications](#)

Provides some points to note about application development.

## [Appendix B Conversion Procedures Required due to Differences from Oracle Database](#)

Explains how to convert from an Oracle database to Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres, within the scope noted in "Compatibility with Oracle Databases" from the following perspectives.

## [Appendix C Tables Used by the Features Compatible with Oracle Databases](#)

Explains the tables used by the features compatible with Oracle databases.

## [Appendix D ECOBPG - Embedded SQL in COBOL](#)

Explains application development using embedded SQL in COBOL.

## [Appendix E Quantitative Limits](#)

This appendix explains limitations.

## [Appendix F Reference](#)

Provides a reference for each interface.

## **Export restrictions**

Exportation/release of this document may require necessary procedures in accordance with the regulations of your resident country and/or US export control laws.

## **Issue date and version**

Edition 1.0: July 2024
------------------------

## **Copyright**

Copyright 2015-2024 Fujitsu Limited

# Contents

---

Chapter 1 Overview of the Application Development Function.....	1
1.1 Support for National Characters.....	2
1.1.1 Literal.....	2
1.1.2 Data Type.....	2
1.1.3 Functions and Operator.....	3
1.2 Compatibility with Oracle Database.....	3
1.3 Application Connection Switch Feature.....	3
1.3.1 Integration with Database Multiplexing.....	3
1.4 Notes on Application Compatibility.....	4
1.4.1 Checking Execution Results.....	4
1.4.2 Referencing System Catalogs.....	4
1.4.3 Using Functions.....	5
Chapter 2 JDBC Driver.....	6
2.1 Development Environment.....	6
2.1.1 Combining with JDK or JRE.....	6
2.2 Setup.....	6
2.2.1 Environment Settings.....	6
2.2.2 Message Language and Encoding System Used by Applications Settings.....	7
2.2.3 Settings for Encrypting Communication Data.....	7
2.3 Connecting to the Database.....	8
2.3.1 Using the DriverManager Class.....	8
2.3.2 Using the PGConnectionPoolDataSource Class.....	9
2.3.3 Using the PGXADataSource Class.....	10
2.4 Application Development.....	11
2.4.1 Relationship between the Application Data Types and Database Data Types.....	11
2.4.2 Statement Caching Feature.....	12
2.4.3 Creating Applications while in Database Multiplexing Mode.....	12
2.4.3.1 Errors when an Application Connection Switch Occurs and Corresponding Actions.....	13
Chapter 3 ODBC Driver.....	14
3.1 Development Environment.....	14
3.2 Setup.....	14
3.2.1 Registering ODBC Drivers.....	14
3.2.2 Registering ODBC Data Sources(for Windows(R)).....	16
3.2.2.1 Registering Using GUI.....	16
3.2.2.2 Registering Using Commands.....	18
3.2.3 Registering ODBC Data Sources(for Linux).....	21
3.2.4 Message Language and Encoding System Used by Applications Settings.....	23
3.3 Connecting to the Database.....	24
3.4 Application Development.....	24
3.4.1 Compiling Applications (for Windows (R)).....	24
3.4.2 Compiling Applications (for Linux).....	25
3.4.3 Creating Applications While in Database Multiplexing Mode.....	25
3.4.3.1 Errors when an Application Connection Switch Occurs and Corresponding Actions.....	26
Chapter 4 .NET Data Provider.....	27
4.1 Development Environment.....	27
4.2 Setup.....	27
4.2.1 Setting Up .NET Data Provider.....	27
4.2.2 Setting Up .NET Data Provider Type Plugins.....	28
4.2.3 Setting Up Entity Framework Core.....	29
4.2.4 Setting Up Npgsql.OpenTelemetry.....	30
4.3 Connecting to the Database.....	31
4.3.1 Using NpgsqlConnection.....	31
4.3.2 Using NpgsqlConnectionStringBuilder.....	31

4.3.3 Connection String.....	32
4.4 Application Development.....	36
4.4.1 Data Types.....	36
4.4.2 Relationship between Application Data Types and Database Data Types.....	38
4.4.3 Creating Applications while in Database Multiplexing Mode.....	41
4.4.3.1 Errors when an Application Connection Switch Occurs and Corresponding Actions.....	41
4.4.4 Notes.....	42
4.5 Uninstallation.....	46
4.5.1 Uninstalling Npgsql.....	46
4.5.2 Uninstalling .NET Data Provider Type Plugins.....	47
4.5.3 Uninstalling Entity Framework Core.....	47
4.5.4 Uninstalling Npgsql.OpenTelemetry.....	47
Chapter 5 C Library (libpq).....	48
5.1 Development Environment.....	48
5.2 Setup.....	48
5.2.1 Environment Settings.....	48
5.2.2 Message Language and Encoding System Used by Applications Settings.....	49
5.2.3 Settings for Encrypting Communication Data.....	50
5.3 Connecting with the Database.....	50
5.4 Application Development.....	50
5.4.1 Compiling Applications.....	51
5.4.2 Creating Applications while in Database Multiplexing Mode.....	51
5.4.2.1 Errors when an Application Connection Switch Occurs and Corresponding Actions.....	52
Chapter 6 Embedded SQL in C.....	53
6.1 Development Environment.....	53
6.2 Setup.....	53
6.2.1 Environment Settings.....	53
6.2.2 Message Language and Encoding System Used by Applications Settings.....	53
6.2.3 Settings for Encrypting Communication Data.....	53
6.3 Connecting with the Database.....	54
6.4 Application Development.....	56
6.4.1 Support for National Character Data Types.....	56
6.4.2 Compiling Applications.....	56
6.4.3 Bulk INSERT.....	59
6.4.4 Creating Applications while in Database Multiplexing Mode.....	63
6.4.4.1 Errors when an Application Connection Switch Occurs and Corresponding Actions.....	63
6.4.5 Notes.....	63
Chapter 7 Embedded SQL in COBOL.....	64
7.1 Development Environment.....	64
7.2 Setup.....	64
7.2.1 Environment Settings.....	64
7.2.2 Message Language and Encoding System Used by Applications.....	64
7.2.3 Settings for Encrypting Communication Data.....	64
7.3 Connecting with the Database.....	64
7.4 Application Development.....	66
7.4.1 Support for National Character Data Types.....	66
7.4.2 Compiling Applications.....	68
7.4.3 Bulk INSERT.....	70
7.4.4 DECLARE STATEMENT.....	74
7.4.5 Creating Applications while in Database Multiplexing Mode.....	75
7.4.5.1 Errors when an Application Connection Switch Occurs and Corresponding Actions.....	75
Chapter 8 SQL References.....	76
8.1 Expanded Trigger Definition Feature.....	76
8.1.1 CREATE TRIGGER.....	76

8.1.2 How to Define Triggers in pgAdmin.....	77
<b>Chapter 9 Compatibility with Oracle Databases.....</b>	<b>78</b>
9.1 Overview.....	78
9.2 Precautions when Using the Features Compatible with Oracle Databases.....	78
9.2.1 Notes on search_path.....	79
9.2.2 Notes on SUBSTR.....	79
9.2.3 Notes when Integrating with the Interface for Application Development.....	79
9.3 Queries.....	79
9.3.1 Outer Join Operator (+).....	79
9.3.2 DUAL Table.....	82
9.4 SQL Function Reference.....	82
9.4.1 DECODE.....	82
9.4.2 SUBSTR.....	84
9.4.3 NVL.....	85
9.5 Package Reference.....	86
9.5.1 DBMS_SQL.....	87
9.5.1.1 Description.....	88
9.5.1.2 Example.....	92
<b>Chapter 10 Application Connection Switch Feature.....</b>	<b>95</b>
10.1 Connection Information for the Application Connection Switch Feature.....	95
10.2 Using the Application Connection Switch Feature.....	96
10.2.1 Using the JDBC Driver.....	96
10.2.2 Using the ODBC Driver.....	98
10.2.3 Using a .NET Data Provider.....	100
10.2.4 Using a Connection Service File.....	101
10.2.5 Using the C Library (libpq).....	103
10.2.6 Using Embedded SQL.....	104
10.2.7 Using the psql Command.....	106
<b>Chapter 11 Scan Using a Vertical Clustered Index (VCI).....</b>	<b>108</b>
11.1 Operating Conditions.....	108
11.2 Usage.....	109
11.2.1 Designing.....	110
11.2.2 Checking.....	111
11.2.3 Evaluating.....	112
11.3 Usage Notes.....	112
<b>Appendix A Precautions when Developing Applications.....</b>	<b>114</b>
A.1 Precautions when Using Functions and Operators.....	114
A.1.1 General rules of Functions and Operators.....	114
A.1.2 Errors when Developing Applications that Use Functions and/or Operators.....	114
A.2 Notes when Using Temporary Tables.....	115
A.3 Implicit Data Type Conversions.....	115
A.3.1 Function Argument.....	117
A.3.2 Operators.....	117
A.3.3 Storing Values.....	118
A.4 Notes on Using Index.....	118
A.4.1 SP-GiST Index.....	118
A.5 Notes on Using Multibyte Characters in Definition Names.....	118
A.6 How to Build and Run an Application that Uses Shared Libraries.....	119
A.6.1 Setting DT_RUNPATH for Applications.....	120
A.6.2 Direct Linking of Indirectly Used Libraries to Applications.....	121
<b>Appendix B Conversion Procedures Required due to Differences from Oracle Database.....</b>	<b>124</b>
B.1 Outer Join Operator (Perform Outer Join).....	124
B.1.1 Comparing with the ^= Comparison Operator.....	124



B.2 DECODE (Compare Values and Return Corresponding Results).....	125
B.2.1 Comparing Numeric Data of Character String Types and Numeric Characters.....	125
B.2.2 Obtaining Comparison Result from more than 50 Conditional Expressions.....	125
B.2.3 Obtaining Comparison Result from Values with Different Data Types.....	126
B.3 SUBSTR (Extract a String of the Specified Length from Another String).....	127
B.3.1 Specifying a Value Expression with a Data Type Different from the One that can be Specified for Function Arguments.....	127
B.3.2 Extracting a String with the Specified Format from a Datetime Type Value.....	128
B.3.3 Concatenating a String Value with a NULL value.....	128
B.4 NVL (Replace NULL).....	129
B.4.1 Obtaining Result from Arguments with Different Data Types.....	129
B.4.2 Operating on Datetime/Numeric, Including Adding Number of Days to a Particular Day.....	130
B.4.3 Calculating INTERVAL Values, Including Adding Periods to a Date.....	130
B.5 DBMS_OUTPUT (Output Messages).....	131
B.5.1 Outputting Messages Such As Process Progress Status.....	131
B.5.2 Receiving a Return Value from a Procedure (PL/SQL) Block (For GET_LINES).....	133
B.5.3 Receiving a Return Value from a Procedure (PL/SQL) Block (For GET_LINE).....	135
B.6 UTL_FILE (Perform File Operation).....	136
B.6.1 Registering a Directory to Load and Write Text Files.....	136
B.6.2 Checking File Information.....	137
B.6.3 Copying Files.....	141
B.6.4 Moving/Renaming Files.....	142
B.7 DBMS_SQL (Execute Dynamic SQL).....	143
B.7.1 Searching Using a Cursor.....	143
Appendix C Tables Used by the Features Compatible with Oracle Databases.....	149
C.1 UTL_FILE.UTL_FILE_DIR.....	149
Appendix D ECOBPG - Embedded SQL in COBOL.....	150
D.1 Precautions when Using Functions and Operators.....	150
D.2 Managing Database Connections.....	151
D.2.1 Connecting to the Database Server.....	151
D.2.2 Choosing a Connection.....	152
D.2.3 Closing a Connection.....	153
D.3 Running SQL Commands.....	153
D.3.1 Executing SQL Statements.....	153
D.3.2 Using Cursors.....	154
D.3.3 Managing Transactions.....	154
D.3.4 Prepared Statements.....	154
D.4 Using Host Variables.....	155
D.4.1 Overview.....	155
D.4.2 Declare Sections.....	155
D.4.3 Retrieving Query Results.....	156
D.4.4 Type Mapping.....	157
D.4.5 Handling Nonprimitive SQL Data Types.....	161
D.4.6 Indicators.....	165
D.5 Dynamic SQL.....	166
D.5.1 Executing Statements without a Result Set.....	166
D.5.2 Executing a Statement with Input Parameters.....	166
D.5.3 Executing a Statement with a Result Set.....	166
D.6 Using Descriptor Areas.....	167
D.6.1 Named SQL Descriptor Areas.....	167
D.7 Error Handling.....	169
D.7.1 Setting Callbacks.....	169
D.7.2 sqlca.....	171
D.7.3 SQLSTATE vs. SQLCODE.....	172
D.8 Preprocessor Directives.....	175
D.8.1 Including Files.....	175
D.8.2 The define and undef Directives.....	175

D.8.3 ifdef, ifndef, else, elif, and endif Directives.....	176
D.9 Processing Embedded SQL Programs.....	176
D.10 Large Objects.....	177
D.11 Embedded SQL Commands.....	177
D.11.1 ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR.....	177
D.11.2 CONNECT.....	178
D.11.3 DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR.....	180
D.11.4 DECLARE.....	181
D.11.5 DESCRIBE.....	182
D.11.6 DISCONNECT.....	182
D.11.7 EXECUTE IMMEDIATE.....	183
D.11.8 GET DESCRIPTOR.....	184
D.11.9 OPEN.....	186
D.11.10 PREPARE.....	186
D.11.11 SET AUTOCOMMIT.....	187
D.11.12 SET CONNECTION.....	188
D.11.13 SET DESCRIPTOR.....	188
D.11.14 TYPE.....	189
D.11.15 VAR.....	190
D.11.16 WHENEVER.....	191
D.12 PostgreSQL Client Applications.....	192
D.12.1 ecobpg.....	192
Appendix E Quantitative Limits.....	195
Appendix F Reference.....	200
F.1 JDBC Driver.....	200
F.2 ODBC Driver.....	200
F.2.1 List of Supported APIs.....	200
F.3 .NET Data Provider.....	203
F.4 C Library (libpq).....	203
F.5 Embedded SQL in C.....	203
Index.....	204

# Chapter 1 Overview of the Application Development Function

The interface for application development provided by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres is perfectly compatible with PostgreSQL. Along with the PostgreSQL interface, Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres also provides the following extended interfaces:

- Support for National Characters

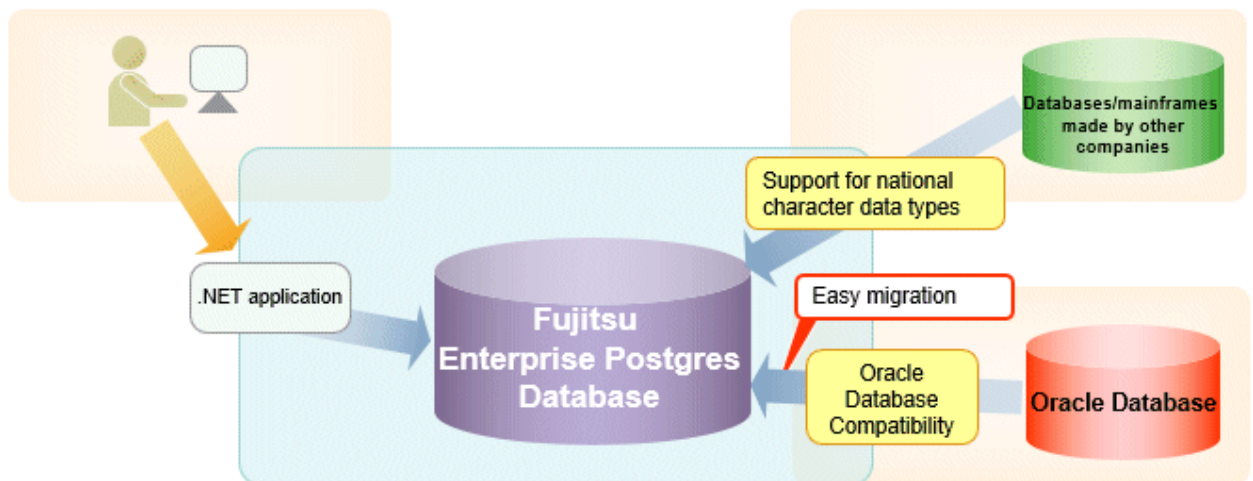
In order to secure portability from mainframes and databases of other companies, Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres provides data types that support national characters. The national characters are usable from the client application languages.

Refer to "[1.1 Support for National Characters](#)" for details.

- Compatibility with Oracle Databases

Compatibility with Oracle databases is offered. Use of the compatible features means that the revisions to existing applications can be isolated, and migration to open interfaces is made simpler.

Refer to "[1.2 Compatibility with Oracle Database](#)" for details.



- Application connection switch feature

The application connection switch feature is provided to enable automatic connection to the target server when there are multiple servers with redundant configurations.

Refer to "[1.3 Application Connection Switch Feature](#)" for details.

- Scanning using a Vertical Clustered Index (VCI)

Scans become faster during aggregation of many rows by providing the features below:

- Vertical clustered index (VCI)
- In-memory data

This feature can only be used in Advanced Edition.

Refer to "[Chapter 11 Scan Using a Vertical Clustered Index \(VCI\)](#)" for details.

## 1.1 Support for National Characters

---

NCHAR type is provided as the data type to deal with national characters.

The NCHAR type can be used with Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres pgAdmin.

### Point

---

- NCHAR can only be used when the character set of the database is UTF-8.
  - NCHAR can be used in the places where CHAR can be used (function arguments, etc.).
  - For applications handling NCHAR type data in the database, the data format is the same as CHAR type. Therefore, applications handling data in NCHAR type columns can also be used to handle data stored in CHAR type columns.
- 

### Note

---

Note the following in order to cast NCHAR type data as CHAR type.

- When comparing NCHAR type data where the length differs, ASCII spaces are used to fill in the length of the shorter NCHAR type data so that it can be processed as CHAR type data.
  - Depending on the character set, the data size may increase by between 1.5 and 2 times.
  - Use the AS clause to specify "varchar" as the column alias.
- 

### 1.1.1 Literal

---

Syntax

```
{ N | n } '[national character [ ... ] ]'
```

General rules

National character string literals consist of an 'N' or 'n', and the national character is enclosed in single quotation marks ('). Example: N'ABCDEF'

The data type is national character string type.

### 1.1.2 Data Type

---

Syntax

```
{ NATIONAL CHARACTER | NATIONAL CHAR | NCHAR } [ VARYING ] [(length) ]
```

The data type of the NCHAR type column is as follows:

Data type specification format	Explanation
NATIONAL CHARACTER( <i>n</i> )	National character string with a fixed length of <i>n</i> characters
NATIONAL CHAR( <i>n</i> )	This will be the same as (1) if ( <i>n</i> ) is omitted.
NCHAR( <i>n</i> )	<i>n</i> is a whole number larger than 0.
NATIONAL CHARACTER VARYING( <i>n</i> )	National character string with a variable length with a maximum of <i>n</i> characters
NATIONAL CHAR VARYING( <i>n</i> )	Any length of national character string can be accepted when this is omitted.
NCHAR VARYING( <i>n</i> )	

Data type specification format	Explanation
	<i>n</i> is a whole number larger than 0.

#### General rules

NCHAR is the national character string type data type. The length is the number of characters.

The length of the national character string type is as follows:

- When VARYING is not specified, the length of national character strings is fixed and will be the specified length.
- When VARYING is specified, the length of national character strings will be variable.  
In this case, the lower limit will be 0 and the upper limit will be the value specified for length.
- NATIONAL CHARACTER, NATIONAL CHAR, and NCHAR each have the same meaning.

When the national character string to be stored is shorter than the declared upper limit, the NCHAR value is filled with spaces, whereas NCHAR VARYING is stored as is.

The upper limit for character storage is approximately 1GB.

### 1.1.3 Functions and Operator

---

#### Comparison operator

When a NCHAR type or NCHAR VARYING type is specified in a comparison operator, comparison is only possible between NCHAR types or NCHAR VARYING types.

#### String functions and operators

All of the string functions and operators that can be specified by a CHAR type can also be specified by a NCHAR type. The behavior of these string functions and operators is also the same as with CHAR type.

#### Pattern matching (LIKE, SIMILAR TO regular expression, POSIX regular expression)

The patterns specified when pattern matching with NCHAR types and NCHAR VARYING types specify the percent sign (%) and the underline (\_).

The underline (\_) means a match with one national character. The percent sign (%) means a match with any number of national characters 0 or over.

## 1.2 Compatibility with Oracle Database

---

The following features have been extended in order to enhance compatibility with Oracle databases:

- Query (external join operator (+), DUAL table)
- Function (DECODE, SUBSTR, NVL)
- Built-in package (DBMS\_OUTPUT, UTL\_FILE, DBMS\_SQL)

Refer to "[Chapter 9 Compatibility with Oracle Databases](#)" for information on the features compatible with Oracle databases.

## 1.3 Application Connection Switch Feature

---

The application connection switch feature enables automatic connection to the target server when there are multiple servers with redundant configurations.

Refer to "[Chapter 10 Application Connection Switch Feature](#)" for information on the application connection switch feature.

### 1.3.1 Integration with Database Multiplexing

---

The application connection switch feature is provided to enable automatic connection to the appropriate server when there are multiple servers with redundant configurations.



See

Refer to the Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing) for information on database multiplexing.

## 1.4 Notes on Application Compatibility

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres upgrades contain feature improvements and enhancements that may affect the applications.

Accordingly, note the points below when developing applications, to ensure compatibility after upgrade.

- Checking execution results
- Referencing system catalogs
- Using functions

### 1.4.1 Checking Execution Results

Refer to SQLSTATE output in messages to check the SQL statements used in applications and the execution results of commands used during development.



See

Refer to Messages for information on the message content and number.

Refer to "PostgreSQL Error Codes" under "Appendixes" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on SQLSTATE.

### 1.4.2 Referencing System Catalogs

System catalogs can be used to obtain information about the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres system and database objects.

However, system catalogs may change when the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres version is upgraded. Also, there are many system catalogs that return information that is inherent to Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

Accordingly, reference the information schema defined in standard SQL (information\_schema) wherever possible. Note also that queries specifying "\*" in the selection list must be avoided to prevent columns being added.



See

Refer to "The Information Schema" under "Client Interfaces" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for details.

The system catalog must be referenced to obtain information not found in the information schema. Instead of directly referencing the system catalog in the application, define a view for that purpose. Note, however, that when defining the view, the column name must be clearly specified after the view name.

An example of defining and using a view is shown below.



Example

```
CREATE VIEW my_tablespace_view(spcname) AS SELECT spcname FROM pg_tablespace;
SELECT * FROM my_tablespace_view V1, pg_tables T1 WHERE V1.spcname = T1.tablespace;
```

If changes are made to a system catalog, the user will be able to take action by simply making changes to the view, without the need to make changes to the application.

The following shows an example of taking action by redefining a view as if no changes were made.

The pg\_tablespace system catalog is redefined in response to the column name being changed from spcname to spacename.



## Example

```
DROP VIEW my_tablespace_view;  
CREATE VIEW my_tablespace_view(spcname) AS SELECT spacename FROM pg_tablespace;
```

### 1.4.3 Using Functions

The default functions provided with Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres enable a variety of operations and manipulations to be performed, and information to be obtained, using SQL statements.

However, it is possible that internal Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres functions, such as those relating to statistical information or for obtaining system-related information, may change as Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres versions are upgraded.

Accordingly, when using these functions, define them as new functions and then use the newly-defined functions in the applications.

An example of defining and using a function is shown below.



## Example

```
CREATE FUNCTION my_func(reloid regclass) RETURNS bigint LANGUAGE SQL AS 'SELECT  
pg_relation_size(reloid)';  
SELECT my_func(2619);
```

If changes are made to a function, the user will be able to take action by simply redefining the function, without the need to make changes to the application.

The following shows an example of taking action by redefining a function as if no changes were made.

The `pg_relation_size` function is redefined after arguments are added.



## Example

```
DROP FUNCTION my_func(regclass);  
CREATE FUNCTION my_func(reloid regclass) RETURNS bigint LANGUAGE SQL AS 'SELECT  
pg_relation_size(reloid,$$main$$)';
```

# Chapter 2 JDBC Driver

This section describes how to use JDBC drivers.

## 2.1 Development Environment

This section describes application development using JDBC drivers and the runtime environment.

### 2.1.1 Combining with JDK or JRE

Refer to Installation and Setup Guide for Client for information on combining with JDK or JRE where JDBC drivers can operate.

## 2.2 Setup

This section describes the environment settings required to use JDBC drivers and how to encrypt communication data.

### 2.2.1 Environment Settings

Configuration of the CLASSPATH environment variable is required as part of the runtime environment for JDBC drivers.

The name of the JDBC driver file is as follows:

```
postgresql-jdbc42.jar
```

Same name whether you use JDK 8, JRE 8, JDK 11, JRE 11, JDK 17 or JRE 17 environment.

The examples below show how to set the CLASSPATH environment variable.

Note that "<x>" indicates the product version.

**L**

#### - Linux

##### - Setting example (TC shell)

```
setenv CLASSPATH /opt/fsepv<x>client64/jdbc/lib/postgresql-jdbc42.jar:${CLASSPATH}
```

##### - Setting example (bash)

```
CLASSPATH=/opt/fsepv<x>client64/jdbc/lib/postgresql-jdbc42.jar:$CLASSPATH;export CLASSPATH
```

**W**

#### - Windows (32-bit)

##### - Setting example

```
set CLASSPATH=C:\Program Files\Fujitsu\fsepv<x>client32\JDBC\lib\postgresql-jdbc42.jar;%CLASSPATH%
```

#### - Windows (64-bit)

##### - Setting example (when Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Client 32-bit is installed)

```
set CLASSPATH=C:\Program Files (x86)\Fujitsu\fsepv<x>client32\JDBC\lib\postgresql-jdbc42.jar;%CLASSPATH%
```

##### - Setting example (when Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Client 64-bit is installed)

```
set CLASSPATH=C:\Program Files\Fujitsu\fsepv<x>client64\JDBC\lib\postgresql-jdbc42.jar;%CLASSPATH%
```



## 2.2.2 Message Language and Encoding System Used by Applications Settings

---

If the JDBC driver is used, it will automatically set the encoding system on the client to UTF-8, so there is no need to configure this.



See

.....  
Refer to "Automatic Character Set Conversion Between Server and Client" in "Server Administration" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on encoding systems.  
.....

### Language settings

You must match the language settings for the application runtime environment with the message locale settings of the database server.

Set language in the "user.language" system property.



Example

.....  
Example of running a Java command with system property specified

```
java -Duser.language=en TestClass1
```

.....

## 2.2.3 Settings for Encrypting Communication Data

---

When using the communication data encryption feature to connect to the database server, set as follows:

Settings for encrypting communication data for connection to the server

This section describes how to create applications for encrypting communication data.

Set the property of the SSL parameter to "true" to encrypt. The default for the SSL parameter is "false".

If ssl is set to "true", sslmode is internally treated as "verify-full".



Example

.....  
- Setting example 1

```
String url = "jdbc:postgresql://sv1/test";
Properties props = new Properties();
props.setProperty("user", "fsepuser");
props.setProperty("password", "secret");
props.setProperty("ssl", "true");
props.setProperty("sslfactory", "org.postgresql.ssl.DefaultJavaSSLFactory");
Connection conn = DriverManager.getConnection(url, props);
```

- Setting example 2

```
String url = "jdbc:postgresql://sv1/test?
user=fsepuser&password=secret&ssl=true&sslfactory=org.postgresql.ssl.DefaultJavaSSLF
actory";
Connection conn = DriverManager.getConnection(url);
```

.....

To prevent spoofing of the database server, you need to use the keytool command included with Java to import the CA certificate to the Java keystore. In addition, specify "org.postgresql.ssl.DefaultJavaSSLFactory" for the sslfactory parameter.

Refer to JDK documentation and the Oracle website for details.

## Note

There is no need to set the ssl parameter if the connection string of the DriverManager class is specified, or if the sslmode parameter is specified in the data source, such as when the application connection switch feature is used. If the ssl parameter is set, the value in the sslmode parameter will be enabled.

## See

Refer to "Secure TCP/IP Connections with SSL" in "Server Administration" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on encrypting communication data.

## 2.3 Connecting to the Database

This section explains how to connect to a database.

- [Using the DriverManager Class](#)
- [Using the PGConnectionPoolDataSource Class](#)
- [Using the PGXADataSource Class](#)

## Note

Do not specify "V2" for the *protocolVersion* of the connection string.

### 2.3.1 Using the DriverManager Class

To connect to the database using the DriverManager class, first load the JDBC driver, then specify the connection string as a URI in the API of the DriverManager class.

Load the JDBC driver

Specify `org.postgresql.Driver`.

Connection string

URI connection is performed as follows:

```
jdbc:postgresql://host:port/database?  
user=user&password=password&loginTimeout=loginTimeout&socketTimeout=socketTimeout
```

Argument	Description
host	Specify the host name for the connection destination. The default is "localhost".
port	Specify the port number for the database server. The default is "27500".
database	Specify the database name.
user	Specify the username that will connect with the database. If this is omitted, the username logged into the operating system that is executing the application will be used.
password	Specify a password when authentication is required.
loginTimeout	Specify the timeout for connections (in units of seconds).

Argument	Description
	Specify a value between 0 and 2147483647. There is no limit set if you set 0 or an invalid value. An error occurs when a connection cannot be established within the specified time.
socketTimeout	Specify the timeout for communication with the server (in units of seconds). Specify a value between 0 and 2147483647. There is no limit set if you set 0 or an invalid value. An error occurs when data is not received from the server within the specified time.



## Example

Code examples for applications

```
import java.sql.*;
...
Class.forName("org.postgresql.Driver");
String url = "jdbc:postgresql://sv1:27500/mydb?
user=myuser&password=myuser01&loginTimeout=20&socketTimeout=20";
Connection con = DriverManager.getConnection(url);
```

## 2.3.2 Using the PGConnectionPoolDataSource Class

To connect to databases using data sources, specify the connection information in the properties of the data source.

Method description

Argument	Description
setServerName	Specify the host name for the connection destination. The default is "localhost".
setPortNumber	Specify the port number for the database server. The default is "27500".
setDatabaseName	Specify the database name.
setUser	Specify the username of the database. By default, the name used will be that of the user on the operating system that is executing the application.
setPassword	Specify a password for server authentication.
setLoginTimeout	Specify the timeout for connections (in units of seconds). Specify a value between 0 and 2147483647. There is no limit set if you set 0 or an invalid value. An error occurs when a connection cannot be established within the specified time.
setSocketTimeout	Specify the timeout for communication with the server (in units of seconds). Specify a value between 0 and 2147483647. There is no limit set if you set 0 or an invalid value. An error occurs when data is not received from the server within the specified time.



## Example

Code examples for applications

```

import java.sql.*;
import org.postgresql.ds.PGConnectionPoolDataSource;
...
PGConnectionPoolDataSource source = new PGConnectionPoolDataSource();
source.setServerName("sv1");
source.setPortNumber(27500);
source.setDatabaseName("mydb");
source.setUser("myuser");
source.setPassword("myuser01");
source.setLoginTimeout(20);
source.setSocketTimeout(20);
...
Connection con = source.getConnection();

```

### 2.3.3 Using the PGXADatasource Class

To connect to databases using data sources, specify the connection information in the properties of the data source.

Method description

Argument	Description
setServerName	Specify the host name for the connection destination. The default is "localhost".
setPortNumber	Specify the port number for the database server. The default is "27500".
setDatabaseName	Specify the database name.
setUser	Specify the username that will connect with the database. If this is omitted, the name used will be that of the user on the operating system that is executing the application.
setPassword	Specify a password when authentication by a password is required.
setLoginTimeout	Specify the timeout for connections. The units are seconds. Specify a value between 0 and 2147483647. There is no limit set if you set 0 or an invalid value. An error occurs when a connection cannot be established within the specified time.
setSocketTimeout	Specify the timeout for communication with the server. The units are seconds. Specify a value between 0 and 2147483647. There is no limit set if you set 0 or an invalid value. An error occurs when data is not received from the server within the specified time.



#### Example

Code examples for applications

```

import java.sql.*;
import org.postgresql.xa.PGXADatasource;
...
PGXADatasource source = new PGXADatasource();
source.setServerName("sv1");
source.setPortNumber(27500);
source.setDatabaseName("mydb");
source.setUser("myuser");
source.setPassword("myuser01");
source.setLoginTimeout(20);

```

```
source.setSocketTimeout(20);...
Connection con = source.getConnection();
```

## 2.4 Application Development

This section describes the data types required when developing applications that will be connected with Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

### 2.4.1 Relationship between the Application Data Types and Database Data Types

The following table shows the correspondence between data types in applications and data types in databases.

Data type on the server	Java data type	Data types prescribed by java.sql.Types
character	String	java.sql.Types.CHAR
national character	String	java.sql.Types.NCHAR
character varying	String	java.sql.Types.VARCHAR
national character varying	String	java.sql.Types.NVARCHAR
text	String	java.sql.Types.VARCHAR
bytea	byte[]	java.sql.Types.BINARY
smallint	short	java.sql.Types.SMALLINT
integer	int	java.sql.Types.INTEGER
bigint	long	java.sql.Types.BIGINT
smallserial	short	java.sql.Types.SMALLINT
serial	int	java.sql.Types.INTEGER
bigserial	long	java.sql.Types.BIGINT
real	float	java.sql.Types.REAL
double precision	double	java.sql.Types.DOUBLE
numeric	java.math.BigDecimal	java.sql.Types.NUMERIC
decimal	java.math.BigDecimal	java.sql.Types.DECIMAL
money	String	java.sql.Types.OTHER
date	java.sql.Date	java.sql.Types.DATE
time with time zone	java.sql.Time	java.sql.Types.TIME
time without time zone	java.sql.Time	java.sql.Types.TIME
timestamp without time zone	java.sql.Timestamp	java.sql.Types.TIMESTAMP
timestamp with time zone	java.sql.Timestamp	java.sql.Types.TIMESTAMP
interval	org.postgresql.util.PGInterval	java.sql.Types.OTHER
boolean	boolean	java.sql.Types.BIT
bit	boolean	java.sql.Types.BIT
bit varying	org.postgresql.util.Pgobject	java.sql.Types.OTHER
oid	long	java.sql.Types.BIGINT
xml	java.sql.SQLXML	java.sql.Types.SQLXML

Data type on the server	Java data type	Data types prescribed by java.sql.Types
array	java.sql.Array	java.sql.Types.ARRAY
uuid	java.util.UUID	java.sql.Types.OTHER
point	org.postgresql.geometric.Pgpoint	java.sql.Types.OTHER
box	org.postgresql.geometric.Pgbox	java.sql.Types.OTHER
lseg	org.postgresql.geometric.Pglseg	java.sql.Types.OTHER
path	org.postgresql.geometric.Pgpath	java.sql.Types.OTHER
polygon	org.postgresql.geometric.PGpolygon	java.sql.Types.OTHER
circle	org.postgresql.geometric.PGcircle	java.sql.Types.OTHER
json	org.postgresql.util.PGobject	java.sql.Types.OTHER
Network address type (inet,cidr,macaddr, macaddr8)	org.postgresql.util.PGobject	java.sql.Types.OTHER
Types related to text searches (svector, tsquery)	org.postgresql.util.PGobject	java.sql.Types.OTHER
Enumerated type	org.postgresql.util.PGobject	java.sql.Types.OTHER
Composite type	org.postgresql.util.PGobject	java.sql.Types.OTHER
Range type	org.postgresql.util.PGobject	java.sql.Types.OTHER

Although the `getString()` method of the `ResultSet` object can be used for all server data types, it is not guaranteed that it will always return a string in the same format for the same data type.

Strings in a format compatible with the JDBC specifications can be obtained using the Java `toString()` method of the appropriate data type (for example, `getInt()`, `getTimestamp()`) to conform to the data type on the server.

## 2.4.2 Statement Caching Feature

The statement caching feature caches SQL statements for each individual connection. This means that when an SQL statement with an identical string is next executed, the analysis and creation of the statement can be skipped. This improves performance in cases such as when an SQL statement with an identical string is executed within a loop or method that is executed repeatedly. Furthermore, the statement caching feature can be combined with the connection pooling feature to further enhance performance.

### Cache registration controls

You can configure whether to cache SQL statements using the `setPoolable(boolean)` method of the `PreparedStatement` class when the statement caching feature is enabled.

Values that can be configured are shown below:

false

SQL statements will not be cached, even when the statement caching feature is enabled.

true

SQL statements will be cached if the statement caching feature is enabled.

## 2.4.3 Creating Applications while in Database Multiplexing Mode

This section explains points to consider when creating applications while in database multiplexing mode.



See

- Refer to the Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing) for information on database multiplexing mode.

- Refer to "Application Development" in the Cluster Operation Guide (PRIMECLUSTER) for points to consider when creating applications using the failover feature integrated with the cluster software.

### 2.4.3.1 Errors when an Application Connection Switch Occurs and Corresponding Actions

If an application connection switch occurs while in database multiplexing mode, explicitly close the connection and then reestablish the connection or reexecute the application.

The table below shows errors that may occur during a switch, and the corresponding action to take.

State		Error information (*1)	Action
Server failure or Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres system failure	Failure occurs during access	57P01 08006 08007	After the switch is complete, reestablish the connection, or reexecute the application.
	Accessed during system failure	08001	
Switch to the standby server	Switched during access	57P01 08006 08007	
	Accessed during switch	08001	

\*1: Return value of the getSQLState() method of SQLException.

## Chapter 3 ODBC Driver

This section describes application development using ODBC drivers.

### 3.1 Development Environment

Applications using ODBC drivers can be developed using ODBC interface compatible applications, such as Access, Excel, and Visual Basic.

Refer to the manuals for the programming languages corresponding to the ODBC interface for information about the environment for development.

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres supports ODBC 3.5.

### 3.2 Setup

You need to set up PsqLODBC, which is an ODBC driver, in order to use applications that use ODBC drivers with Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres. PsqLODBC is included in the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres client package.

The following describes how to register the ODBC drivers and the ODBC data source.



#### 3.2.1 Registering ODBC Drivers

When using the ODBC driver on Linux platforms, register the ODBC driver using the following procedure:

1. Install the ODBC driver manager (unixODBC)



##### Information

- Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres supports unixODBC Version 2.3 or later.

You can download unixODBC from the following site:

<http://www.unixodbc.org/>

- To execute unixODBC, you must first install libtool 2.2.6 or later.

You can download libtool from the following website:

<http://www.gnu.org/software/libtool/>

##### [Note]

- ODBC driver operation is supported.
- unixODBC operation is not supported.

2. Register the ODBC drivers

Edit the ODBC driver manager (unixODBC) `odbcinst.ini` file.




##### Information

[location of the `odbcinst.ini` file]

```
unixOdbcInstallDir/etc/odbcinst.ini
```

Set the following content:



Definition name	Description	Setting value
[Driver name]	ODBC driver name	<p>Set the name of the ODBC driver.</p> <p>Select the two strings below that correspond to the application type. Concatenate the strings with no spaces, enclose in "[ ]", and then specify this as the driver name.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>.....</p> <p>The placeholders shown below are enclosed in angle brackets '&lt;&gt;' to avoid confusion with literal text. Do not include the angle brackets in the string.</p> <p>.....</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Application architecture "FujitsuEnterprisePostgres&lt;<i>fujitsuEnterprisePostgresClient Vers</i>&gt;x64"</li> <li>- Encoding system used by the application <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- In Unicode (only UTF-8 can be used) "unicode"</li> <li>- Other than Unicode "ansi"</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>Example: The encoding system used by the application is Unicode: "[FujitsuEnterprisePostgres&lt;<i>fujitsuEnterprisePostgresClient Vers</i>&gt;x64unicode]"</p>
Description	Description of the ODBC driver	Specify a supplementary description for the current data source. Any description may be set.
Driver64	Path of the ODBC driver (64-bit)	<p>Set the path of the ODBC driver (64-bit).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- If the encoding system is Unicode:  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;"><i>fujitsuEnterprisePostgresClientInstallDir/odbc/lib/psqlodbcw.so</i></div> </li> <li>- If the encoding system is other than Unicode:  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;"><i>fujitsuEnterprisePostgresClientInstallDir/odbc/lib/psqlodbca.so</i></div> </li> </ul>
FileUsage	Use of the data source file	Specify 1.
Threading	Level of atomicity secured for connection pooling	Specify 2.



## Example

Note that "<x>" indicates the product version.

```
[Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres<x>x64unicode]
Description = Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres <x> x64 unicode driver
Driver64    = /opt/fsepv<x>client64/odbc/lib/psqlodbcw.so
FileUsage   = 1
Threading   = 2
```

## W

## 3.2.2 Registering ODBC Data Sources(for Windows(R))

This section describes how to register ODBC data sources.

There are the following two ways to register ODBC data sources on Windows(R).

### 3.2.2.1 Registering Using GUI

This section describes how to start the [ODBC Data Source Administrator] and register ODBC data sources.

Use the following procedure to register ODBC data sources:

1. Start the [ODBC Data Source Administrator].

Select [Start] >> [Control Panel] >> [Administrative Tools] >> [ODBC Data Source Administrator].



## Note

To register data sources for 32-bit applications in Windows(R) for 64-bit, execute the ODBC administrator (odbcad32.exe) for 32-bit, as shown below.

```
%SYSTEMDRIVE%\WINDOWS\SysWOW64\odbcad32.exe
```

2. When only the current user is to use the ODBC data source, select [User DSN]. When all users using the same computer are to use the ODBC data source, select [System DSN].
3. Click [Add].
4. Select one of the following drivers from the list of available ODBC drivers displayed in [Create New Data Source], and then click [Finish]. The notation "x" indicates the version of the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres client feature.
  - Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Unicode x  
Select this driver if using Unicode as the application encoding system.
  - Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres ANSI x  
Select this driver if using other than Unicode as the application encoding system.

5. The [PostgreSQL Unicode ODBC Driver (psqlODBC) Setup] window is displayed. Enter or select the required items, then click [Save].

Set the following content:

Definition name	Setting value
Data Source	<p>Specify the data source name to be registered in the ODBC driver manager. The application will select the name specified here and connect with the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres database. This parameter cannot be omitted. Specify the following characters up to 32 bytes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- National characters</li> <li>- Alphanumerics</li> <li>- "_", "&lt;", "&gt;", "+", "^", " ", "~", " ", "&amp;", "'", "#", "\$", "%", "-", "^", ":", "/", "."</li> </ul>
Description	<p>Specify a supplementary description for the current data source. Specify characters up to 255 bytes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- National characters</li> <li>- Alphanumerics</li> </ul>
Database	Specify the database name to be connected.
SSLMode	<p>Specify to encrypt communications. The default is "disable".</p> <p>The setting values for SSLMode are as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- disable: Connect without SSL</li> <li>- allow: Connect without SSL, and if it fails, connect using SSL</li> <li>- prefer: Connect using SSL, and if it fails, connect without SSL</li> <li>- require: Connect always using SSL</li> <li>- verify-ca: Connect using SSL, and use a certificate issued by a trusted CA (*1)</li> </ul>

Definition name	Setting value
	- verify-full: Connect using SSL, and use a certificate issued by a trusted CA to verify if the server host name matches the certificate (*1)
Server	Specify the host name of the database server to connect to, using up to 63 bytes. This parameter cannot be omitted.
Port	Specify the port number to be used for remote access. The default value is "27500".
Username(*2)	Specify the user that will access the database.
Password(*2)	Specify the password for the user that will access the database.

\*1: If specifying either "verify-ca" or "verify-full", use the system environment variable PGSSLROOTCERT of your operating system to specify the CA certificate file as shown below.

Example:

```
Variable name: PGSSLROOTCERT
Variable value: cACertificateFile
```

\*2: In consideration of security, specify the Username and the Password by the application.

### 3.2.2.2 Registering Using Commands

This section describes how to use commands to register ODBC data sources.

Use the following tools from Microsoft to register ODBC data sources.

- ODBCConf.exe
- Add-OdbcDsn

Refer to the Microsoft Developer Network (MSDN) Library for information on how to use these tools.

#### When using ODBCConf.exe

ODBCConf.exe is a tool supported on all Windows(R) platforms.

Specification format



```
ODBCConf.exe /A { dataSourceType "odbcDriverName" "optionName=value[ |
optionName=value...]" } [/Lv fileName]
```

Refer to the Microsoft MSDN library for information on the format and parameters.

Description

Set the following content:

Definition name	Setting value
Data source type	Specify the data source type. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- "CONFIGSYSDSN": A system data source is created. This requires user admin rights. The data source can be used by all users of the same computer.</li> <li>- "CONFIGDSN": A user data source is created. The data source can be used by the current user only.</li> </ul>

Definition name	Setting value
	 <b>Note</b> ..... When CONFIGSYSDSN is specified as the data source type, it is necessary to execute the command in the command prompt in administrator mode. .....
ODBC driver name	Specify an ODBC driver name that has already been registered on the system. Specify one of the following.   <b>Note</b> ..... The placeholders shown below are enclosed in angle brackets '<>' to avoid confusion with literal text. Do not include the angle brackets in the string. ..... <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- "Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Unicode &lt;fujitsuEnterprisePostgresClientVers&gt;" Specify this driver name if using Unicode as the application encoding system.</li> <li>- "Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres ANSI &lt;fujitsuEnterprisePostgresClientVers&gt;" Specify this driver name if using other than Unicode as the application encoding system.</li> </ul>
Option name	The following items must be set: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- "DSN": Specify the data source name.</li> <li>- "Servername": Specify the host name for the database server.</li> <li>- "Port": Specify the port number for connection to the database</li> <li>- "Database": Specify the database name.</li> </ul> Specify the following values as required: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- "UID": User ID</li> <li>- "Password": Password</li> <li>- "SSLMode": Specify to encrypt communications. The default is "disable". Refer to the SSLMode explanation in the table under step 5 of "<a href="#">3.2.2.1 Registering Using GUI</a>" for information on how to configure SSLMode.</li> </ul>
File Name	You can output process information to a file when creating a data source. This operand can be omitted.



## Example

Note that "<x>" indicates the product version.

```
ODBCConf.exe /A {CONFIGSYSDSN "Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Unicode <x>" "DSN=odbcconf1|
Servername=sv1|Port=27500|Database=db01|SSLMode=verify-ca"} /Lv log.txt
```



## Note

In consideration of security, specify the UID and the Password by the application.

## When using Add-OdbcDsn

Add-OdbcDsn is used in the PowerShell command interface.



### Specification format


```
Add-OdbcDsn dataSourceName -DriverName "odbcDriverName" -DsnType dataSourceType -  
Platform oSArchitecture -SetPropertyValue @("optionName=value" [, "optionName=value"...])
```

Refer to the Microsoft MSDN library for information on the format and parameters.

### Description

Set the following content:

Definition name	Setting value
Data source name	Specify any name for the data source name.
ODBC driver name	<p>Specify an ODBC driver name that has already been registered on the system. Specify one of the following.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>.....</p> <p>The placeholders shown below are enclosed in angle brackets '&lt;&gt;' to avoid confusion with literal text. Do not include the angle brackets in the string.</p> <p>.....</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- "Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Unicode &lt;fujitsuEnterprisePostgresClientVers&gt;" Specify this driver name if using Unicode as the application encoding system.</li><li>- "Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres ANSI &lt;fujitsuEnterprisePostgresClientVers&gt;" Specify this driver name if using other than Unicode as the application encoding system.</li></ul>
Data source type	<p>Specify the data source type.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- "System": A system data source is created. Requires user admin rights. The data source can be used by all users of the same computer.</li><li>- "User": A user data source is created. The data source can be used by the current user only.</li></ul> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>.....</p> <p>When System is specified as the data source type, it is necessary to execute the command in the administrator mode of the command prompt.</p> <p>.....</p>
OS architecture	<p>Specify the OS architecture of the system.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- "32-bit": 32-bit system</li><li>- "64-bit": 64-bit system</li></ul>
Option name	<p>The following items must be set:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- "Servername": Specify the host name for the database server.</li><li>- "Port": Specify the port number for connection to the database</li><li>- "Database": Specify the database name.</li></ul> <p>Specify the following values as required:</p>

Definition name	Setting value
	<p>- "SSLMode": Specify to encrypt communications. The default is "disable". Refer to the SSLMode explanation in the table under step 5 of "<a href="#">3.2.2.1 Registering Using GUI</a>" for information on how to configure SSLMode.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>When using Add-OdbcDsn, the strings "UID" and "Password" cannot be set as option names. These can only be used when using ODBCConf.exe.</p>

## Example

Note that "<x>" indicates the product version.

```
Add-OdbcDsn odbcps1 -DriverName "Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Unicode <x>" -DsnType System -Platform 32-bit -SetPropertyValue @"(Servername=sv1", "Port=27500", "Database=db01", "SSLMode=verify-ca")
```

## L

### 3.2.3 Registering ODBC Data Sources(for Linux)

This section describes how to register ODBC data sources on Linux.

1. Register the data sources

Edit the odbc.ini definition file for the data source.



## Information

Edit the file in the installation directory for the ODBC driver manager (unixODBC)

```
unixOdbcInstallDir/etc/odbc.ini
```

Or

Create a new file in the HOME directory

```
~/.odbc.ini
```




## Point

If *unixOdbcInstallDir* is edited, these will be used as the shared settings for all users that log into the system. If created in the HOME directory (~/.), the settings are used only by the single user.

Set the following content:

Definition name	Setting value
[Data source name]	Set the name for the ODBC data source.
Description	Set a description for the ODBC data source. Any description may be set.
Driver	<p>Set the following as the name of the ODBC driver. Do not change this value.</p> <p>Select the two strings below that correspond to the application type. Concatenate the strings with no spaces and then specify this as the driver name.</p>

Definition name	Setting value
	 <b>Note</b> <p>.....</p> <p>The placeholders shown below are enclosed in angle brackets '&lt;&gt;' to avoid confusion with literal text. Do not include the angle brackets in the string.</p> <p>.....</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Application architecture "Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres&lt;<i>fujitsuEnterprisePostgresClientVers</i>&gt;x64"</li> <li>- Encoding system used by the application <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- In Unicode (only UTF-8 can be used) "unicode"</li> <li>- Other than Unicode "ansi"</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>Example: The encoding system used by the application is Unicode: "Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres&lt;<i>fujitsuEnterprisePostgresClientVers</i>&gt;x64unicode"</p>
Database	Specify the database name to be connected.
Servename	Specify the host name for the database server.
Username	Specify the user ID that will connect with the database.
Password	Specify the password for the user that will connect to the database.
Port	Specify the port number for the database server. The default is "27500".
SSLMode	Specify the communication encryption method. The setting values for SSLMode are as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- disable: Connect without SSL</li> <li>- allow: Connect without SSL, and if it fails, connect using SSL</li> <li>- prefer: Connect using SSL, and if it fails, connect without SSL</li> <li>- require: Connect always using SSL</li> <li>- verify-ca: Connect using SSL, and use a certificate issued by a trusted CA (*1)</li> <li>- verify-full: Connect using SSL, and use a certificate issued by a trusted CA to verify if the server host name matches the certificate (*1)</li> </ul>
ReadOnly	Specify whether to set the database as read-only. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- 1: Set read-only</li> <li>- 0: Do not set read-only</li> </ul>

\*1: If specifying either "verify-ca" or "verify-full", use the environment variable PGSSLROOTCERT to specify the CA certificate file as shown below.

Example

```
export PGSSLROOTCERT=cACertificateFileStorageDir/root.crt
```

## Example

.....

Note that "<x>" indicates the product version.



```
[MyDataSource]
Description      = Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres
Driver           = Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres<x>x64unicode
Database         = db01
Servername       = sv1
Port             = 27500
ReadOnly         = 0
```



### Note

In consideration of security, specify the UserName and the Password by the application.

## 2. Configure the environment variable settings

To execute applications that use ODBC drivers, all of the following settings must be configured in the LD\_LIBRARY\_PATH environment variable:

- *unixOdbcInstallDir(\*1)/lib*
- *libtoolInstallDir(\*1)/lib*

\*1: If the installation directory is not specified when unixODBC and libtool are installed, they will be installed in /usr/local.

## 3.2.4 Message Language and Encoding System Used by Applications Settings

This section explains the language settings for the application runtime environment and the encoding settings for the application.

### Language settings

You must match the language settings for the application runtime environment with the message locale settings of the database server.

Messages output by an application may include text from messages sent from the database server. In the resulting text, the text of the application message will use the message locale of the application, and the text of the message sent by the database server will use the message locale of the database server. If the message locales do not match, more than one language or encoding system will be used. Moreover, if the encoding systems do not match, characters in the resulting text can be garbled.

#### L

#### - Linux

Set the locale for messages (LC\_MESSAGES category) to match the message locale of the database server. This can be done in a few different ways, such as using environment variables. Refer to the relevant manual of the operating system for information on the setlocale function.



### Example

Example of specifying "en\_US.UTF-8" with the setlocale function

```
setlocale(LC_ALL, "en_US.UTF-8");
```

Specifying the locale of the LC\_ALL category propagates the setting to LC\_MESSAGE.

#### W

#### - Windows(R)

Align the locale of the operating system with the message locale of the database server.

## Encoding System Settings

Ensure that the encoding system that is embedded in the application and passed to the database, and the encoding system setting of the runtime environment, are the same. The encoding system cannot be converted correctly on the database server.

Use one of the following methods to set the encoding system for the application:

- Set the PGCLIENTENCODING environment variable in the runtime environment.
- Set the client\_encoding keyword in the connection string.
- Use the PQsetClientEncoding function.



### See

Refer to "Supported Character Sets" in "Server Administration" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on the strings that represent the encoding system that can be set.

For example, when using "Unicode" and "8 bit", set the string "UTF8".



### Example

#### Setting the "PGCLIENTENCODING" environment variable

L

An example of setting when the encoding of the client is "UTF8" (Bash)

```
> PGCLIENTENCODING=UTF8; export PGCLIENTENCODING
```

W

An example of setting when the encoding of the client is "UTF8"

```
> set PGCLIENTENCODING=UTF8
```



### Note

Text may be garbled when outputting results to the command prompt. Review the font settings for the command prompt if this occurs.

## 3.3 Connecting to the Database

Refer to the manual for the programming language corresponding to the ODBC interface, i.e. Access, Excel, or Visual Basic, for example.

## 3.4 Application Development

This section describes how to develop applications using ODBC drivers.

W

### 3.4.1 Compiling Applications (for Windows (R))

Refer to the manual for the programming language corresponding to the ODBC interface, i.e. Access, Excel, or Visual Basic, for example.

## Note

The `cl` command expects input to be a program that uses one of the following code pages, so convert the program to these code pages and then compile and link it (refer to the Microsoft documentation for details).

- ANSI console code pages (example: UTF8)
- UTF-16 little-endian with or without BOM (Byte Order Mark)
- UTF-16 big-endian with or without BOM
- UTF-8 with BOM

The `cl` command converts strings in a program to an ANSI console code page before generating a module, so the data sent to and received from the database server becomes an ANSI console code page. Therefore, set the coding system corresponding to the ANSI console code page as the coding system of the client.

Refer to "Character Set Support" in "Server Administration" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on how to set the client encoding system.

## L

### 3.4.2 Compiling Applications (for Linux)

Specify the following options when compiling applications.

Table 3.1 Include file and library path

Option	How to specify the option
Path of the include file	<code>-I unixOdbc64bitIncludeFileDir</code>
Path of the library	<code>-L unixOdbc64bitLibraryDir</code>

Table 3.2 ODBC library

Type of library	Library name
Dynamic library	<code>libodbc.so</code>

## Note

Specify `-m64` when creating a 64-bit application.



## Example

The following are examples of compiling ODBC applications:

```
gcc -m64 -I/usr/local/include(*1) -L/usr/local/lib(*1) -lodbc testproc.c -o testproc
```

\*1: This is an example of building and installing from the source without specifying an installation directory for unixODBC. If you wish to specify a location, set the installation directory.

### 3.4.3 Creating Applications While in Database Multiplexing Mode

This section explains points to consider when creating applications while in database multiplexing mode.



## See

- Refer to the Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing) for information on database multiplexing mode.

- Refer to "Application Development" in the Cluster Operation Guide (PRIMECLUSTER) for points to consider when creating applications using the failover feature integrated with the cluster software.



### 3.4.3.1 Errors when an Application Connection Switch Occurs and Corresponding Actions

If an application connection switch occurs while in database multiplexing mode, explicitly close the connection and then reestablish the connection or reexecute the application.

The table below shows errors that may occur during a switch, and the corresponding action to take.

State		Error information (*1)	Action
Server failure or Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres system failure	Failure occurs during access	57P01 08S01	After the switch is complete, reestablish the connection, or reexecute the application.
	Accessed during system failure	08001	
Switch to the standby server	Switched during access	57P01 08S01	
	Accessed during switch	08001	

\*1: Return value of SQLSTATE.

## Chapter 4 .NET Data Provider

This chapter describes how to configure for the purpose of creating .NET applications.

### 4.1 Development Environment

.NET Data Provider can operate in the following environments:

Environment required for development and operation of .NET applications	.NET 8.0 .NET 7.0 .NET 6.0 .NET Standard 2.0 .NET Standard 2.1
Integrated development environment for applications running in a .NET environment	Visual Studio 2022 Visual Studio 2019 Visual Studio 2017 Visual Studio 2015
Available development languages	C# Visual Basic .NET

### 4.2 Setup

This section explains how to set up .NET Data Provider and Entity Framework Core.

#### 4.2.1 Setting Up .NET Data Provider

The .NET Data Provider of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres can be installed as a local NuGet package. Follow the steps below to install.

Location of NuGet package

The NuGet package are stored in the following location. "<x>" indicates the product version.

**L**

- Linux

```
fujitsuEnterprisePostgresClientInstallDir/DOTNET/Npgsql.<x>.0.0.nupkg
```

**W**

- Windows(R)

```
fujitsuEnterprisePostgresClientInstallDir\DOTNET\Npgsql.<x>.0.0.nupkg
```

Add a local package source

Add a NuGet local package source if one does not exist.

**L**

- Linux

Add the above Nuget package location as a local package source.

```
dotnet nuget add source fujitsuEnterprisePostgresClientInstallDir/DOTNET -n  
sourceName
```

**W**

- Windows(R)

1. Start Visual Studio, click [Tools] >> [Options] >> [NuGet Package Manager], and then select [Package Sources].
2. Click [+] in the upper-right corner, and then set [Name] to "Local Package Source".
3. Click [...] and navigate to the folder above. Select this folder, and then click [OK].

## Install the NuGet package

Install the NuGet package from the local package source.

**L**

- Linux

Add a package reference to the project file.

```
dotnet add projectFilePath package Npgsql
```

**W**

- Windows(R)

1. Start Visual Studio, click [Tools] >> [NuGet Package Manager] >> [Manage NuGet Packages for Solution].
2. In the upper-right corner, select "Local Package Source" from [Package Source].
3. Once the local package source is set, all available NuGet packages in this local location will be displayed. Select "Npgsql", and then select the projects for which this package is to be installed.
4. Click [Install].

## 4.2.2 Setting Up .NET Data Provider Type Plugins

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres .NET Data Provider now comes packaged with 4 Type Plugins that provide additional support for more data type mappings (eg date time support via the Npgsql.NodaTime). The plugins modify how Npgsql maps the PostgreSQL values to CLR types.

The type plugins are available for installation as a local NuGet packages. There are 4 packages available for installation. "<x>" indicates the product version.

- Npgsql.NodaTime.<x>.0.0.nupkg
- Npgsql.Json.NET.<x>.0.0.nupkg
- Npgsql.NetTopologySuite.<x>.0.0.nupkg: Spatial type(\*1)
- Npgsql.GeoJSON.<x>.0.0.nupkg: Spatial type(\*1)

\*1: Please note that the Spatial Type plugins require the PostGIS extension installed on the server.

Also, Refre to "[Type Plugins](#)" and "[Additional Notes on each Type Plugin](#)" on the each type plugins.

To install any of the plugins please follow the procedure below:

### Location of NuGet package

The Plugin NuGet package are stored in the following location. "<x>" indicates the product version.

**L**

- Linux

```
fujitsuEnterprisePostgresClientInstallDir/DOTNET/Npgsql.*.<x>.0.0.nupkg
```

**W**

- Windows(R)

```
fujitsuEnterprisePostgresClientInstallDir\DOTNET\Npgsql.*.<x>.0.0.nupkg
```

### Add a local package source

Add a NuGet local package source if one does not exist.

**L**

- Linux

Add the above Nuget package location as a local package source.

```
dotnet nuget add source fujitsuEnterprisePostgresClientInstallDir/DOTNET -n  
sourceName
```

W

- Windows(R)
  1. Start Visual Studio, click [Tools] >> [Options] >> [NuGet Package Manager], and then select [Package Sources].
  2. Click [+] in the upper-right corner, and then set [Name] to "Local Package Source".
  3. Click [...] and navigate to the folder above. Select this folder, and then click [OK].

#### Install the NuGet package

Install the NuGet package from the local package source.

L

- Linux

Add a package reference to the project file (Example: Npgsql.NodaTime).

```
dotnet add projectFilePath package Npgsql.NodaTime
```

W

- Windows(R)
  1. Start Visual Studio, click [Tools] >> [NuGet Package Manager] >> [Manage NuGet Packages for Solution].
  2. In the upper-right corner, select "Local Package Source" from [Package Source].
  3. Once the local package source is set, all available NuGet packages in this local location will be displayed. Select the plugin to be installed (eg "Npgsql.NodaTime", and then select the projects for which this package is to be installed.
  4. Click [Install].

## 4.2.3 Setting Up Entity Framework Core

**Entity Framework Core** is supplied as a NuGet package file. To install it locally, follow the procedure below.

#### Location of NuGet package

The EntityFramework Core NuGet package is stored in the following location.

L

- Linux

```
fujitsuEnterprisePostgresClientInstallDir/DOTNET/  
Npgsql.EntityFrameworkCore.PostgreSQL.8.0.2.nupkg
```

W

- Windows(R)

```
fujitsuEnterprisePostgresClientInstallDir\DOTNET  
\Npgsql.EntityFrameworkCore.PostgreSQL.8.0.2.nupkg
```

#### Add a local package source

Add a NuGet local package source if one does not exist.

L

- Linux

Add the above Nuget package location as a local package source.

```
dotnet nuget add source fujitsuEnterprisePostgresClientInstallDir/DOTNET -n  
sourceName
```

W

- Windows(R)
  1. Start Visual Studio, click [Tools] >> [Options] >> [NuGet Package Manager], and then select [Package Sources].
  2. Click [+] in the upper-right corner, and then set [Name] to "Local Package Source".
  3. Click [...] and navigate to the folder above. Select this folder, and then click [OK].

## Install the NuGet package

Install the NuGet package from the local package source.

**L**

- Linux

Add a package reference to the project file.

```
dotnet add projectFilePath package Npgsql.EntityFrameworkCore.PostgreSQL
```

**W**

- Windows(R)

1. Start Visual Studio, click [Tools] >> [NuGet Package Manager] >> [Manage NuGet Packages for Solution].
2. In the upper-right corner, select "Local Package Source" from [Package Source].
3. Once the local package source is set, all available NuGet packages in this local location will be displayed. Select "Npgsql.EntityFrameworkCore.PostgreSQL", and then select the projects for which this package is to be installed.
4. Click [Install].

## 4.2.4 Setting Up Npgsql.OpenTelemetry

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres .NET Data Provider comes with a plug-in that supports tracing by the observability framework OpenTelemetry. This will allow Npgsql to emit trace data.

OpenTelemetry plugin is supplied as a local NuGet package. To install it locally, follow the procedure below.

### Location of NuGet package

The NuGet packages for OpenTelemetry are stored in the following location. "<x>" indicates the product version.

**L**

- Linux

```
fujitsuEnterprisePostgresClientInstallDir/DOTNET/Npgsql.OpenTelemetry.<x>.0.0.nupkg
```

**W**

- Windows(R)

```
fujitsuEnterprisePostgresClientInstallDir\DOTNET\Npgsql.OpenTelemetry.<x>.0.0.nupkg
```

### Add a local package source

Add a NuGet local package source if one does not exist.

**L**

- Linux

Add the above Nuget package location as a local package source.

```
dotnet nuget add source fujitsuEnterprisePostgresClientInstallDir/DOTNET -n  
sourceName
```

**W**

- Windows(R)

1. Start Visual Studio, click [Tools] >> [Options] >> [NuGet Package Manager], and then select [Package Sources].
2. Click [+] in the upper-right corner, and then set [Name] to "Local Package Source".
3. Click [...] and navigate to the folder above. Select this folder, and then click [OK].

## Install the NuGet package

Install the NuGet package from the local package source.

**L**

- Linux

Add a package reference to the project file.



```
dotnet add projectFilePath package Npgsql.OpenTelemetry
```

#### - Windows(R)

1. Start Visual Studio, click [Tools] >> [NuGet Package Manager] >> [Manage NuGet Packages for Solution].
2. In the upper-right corner, select "Local Package Source" from [Package Source].
3. Once the local package source is set, all available NuGet packages in this local location will be displayed. Select "Npgsql.OpenTelemetry", and then select the projects for which this package is to be installed.
4. Click [Install].

## 4.3 Connecting to the Database

This section explains how to connect to a database.

- [Using NpgsqlConnection](#)
- [Using NpgsqlConnectionStringBuilder](#)

### 4.3.1 Using NpgsqlConnection

Connect to the database by specifying the connection string.



#### Example

Code examples for applications

```
using Npgsql;

NpgsqlConnection conn = new NpgsqlConnection("Server=sv1;Port=27500;Database=mydb;
Username=myuser;Password=myuser01; Timeout=20;CommandTimeout=20;");
```

Refer to "[4.3.3 Connection String](#)" for information on database connection strings.

### 4.3.2 Using NpgsqlConnectionStringBuilder

Generate connection strings by specifying the connection information in the properties of the NpgsqlConnectionStringBuilder object.



#### Example

Code examples for applications

```
using Npgsql;

NpgsqlConnectionStringBuilder sb = new NpgsqlConnectionStringBuilder();
sb.Host = "sv1";
sb.Port = 27500;
sb.Database = "mydb";
sb.Username = "myuser";
sb.Password = "myuser01";
sb.Timeout = 20;
sb.CommandTimeout = 20;
NpgsqlConnection conn = new NpgsqlConnection(sb.ConnectionString);
```

Refer to "[4.3.3 Connection String](#)" for information on database connection strings.

### 4.3.3 Connection String

Specify the following connection information to connect to the database.

Server=127.0.0.1;Port=27500;Database=mydb;Username=myuser;Password=myuser01;...;					
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)

- (1) Specify the host name or IP address of the server to be connected. This must be specified.
- (2) Specify the port number for the database server. The default is "27500".
- (3) Specify the database name to be connected.
- (4) Specify the username that will connect with the database.
- (5) Specify the password for the user that will connect to the database.
- (6) Refer to the following for information on how to specify other connection information.

The table below shows keywords that are available to specify in the connection string in .NET Data Provider (Npgsql):

Note that some settings require care if using an Oracle database-compatible feature (refer to ["9.2.3 Notes when Integrating with the Interface for Application Development"](#) for details).

#### Basic connection

Keyword	Description	Default
Host	Specify the host name of the server to be connected. Multiple hosts may be specified. A host name must be specified.	
Port	Specify the TCP port number of the server.	27500
Database	Specify the database name to connect to.	Same as Username
Username	Specify the username for the username that will connect to the database. Not required if using Integrated Security.	PGUSER
Password	Specify the password for the username that will connect to the database. Not required if using Integrated Security.	PGPASSWORD
Passfile	Specify the path of the password file (PGPASSFILE) to obtain the password.	PGPASSFILE

#### Security and encryption

Keyword	Description	Default
SSL Mode	<p>Specify one of the following values to indicate whether or not to use SSL, depending on your server's support.</p> <p>Disable: No SSL connection is made.</p> <p>Allow: SSL connection will be made only if the server requires it.</p> <p>Prefer: Make an SSL connection if possible.</p> <p>Require: Perform SSL connection. It does not verify the authenticity of Connection Server at this time.</p> <p>VerifyCA: Make an SSL connection. At this time, verify the authenticity of the connection server.</p>	Prefer

Keyword	Description	Default
	VerifyFull: Make an SSL connection. This time it verifies the authenticity of the Connection Server and verifies that it is the server you specified.	
SSL Certificate	Specify the location of the client certificate sent to the server.	PGSSLCERT
SSL Key	Specify the location of the client key for the client certificate sent to the server.	PGSSLKEY
SSL Password	Specify the password for the client certificate key.	
Root Certificate	Specify the location of the CA certificate used to validate server certificates.	PGSSLROOT CERT
Check Certificate Revocation	Specify whether to check the certificate revocation list during authentication.	false
Integrated Security	Specify whether to log in using integrated security (GSS/SSPI).	false
Persist Security Info	Gets or sets a Boolean value that indicates whether security-sensitive information, such as passwords, should not be returned as part of a connection if it is connected or has ever been connected.	false
Kerberos Service Name	Specify the Kerberos service name used for authentication.	postgres
Include Realm	Specify the Kerberos realm used for authentication.	
Include Error Detail	When enabled, database error and notification details are included in PostgresException.Detail and PostgresNotice.Detail. These can contain confidential information.	false
Log Parameters	When enabled, parameter values are logged when the command is executed.	false

## Pooling

Keyword	Description	Default
Pooling	Specify whether to use connection pooling.	true
Minimum Pool Size	Minimum connection pool size.	0
Maximum Pool Size	Maximum size of the connection pool.	100
Connection Idle Lifetime	Specify the time (in seconds) to wait before disconnecting idle connections in the pool when the number of all connections exceeds the Minimum Pool Size.	300
Connection Pruning Interval	Specify the number of seconds the pool waits before attempting to prune an idle connection that has exceeded its lifetime. See Connection Idle Lifetime.	10
ConnectionLifetime	Specify the total maximum lifetime of the connection in seconds. Connections beyond this value are discarded rather than returned from the pool. This is useful in cluster configurations that force load balancing between running servers and servers that have just come online.	0 (disabled)

## Timeouts and keepalive

Keyword	Description	Default
Timeout	Specify the amount of time (in seconds) to wait before terminating the attempt and generating an error during connection establishment.	15
Command Timeout	Specify how long to wait (in seconds) while executing a command before terminating the attempt and generating an error. Set to 0 for infinity.	30
Internal Command Timeout	Specify how long to wait (in seconds) before terminating the attempt and generating an error when attempting to execute an internal command. -1 uses CommandTimeout, 0 means no timeout.	-1
Cancellation Timeout	Specify the number of milliseconds to wait while trying to read a response to a cancel request for a timed-out or canceled query before terminating the attempt and generating an error. -1 skips the wait, 0 means infinite wait.	2000
Keepalive	Npgsql will send his keep-alive queries if the connection has been inactive for more than the number of seconds specified here.	0 (disabled)
Tcp Keepalive	Specify whether TCP keepalives are used by the system default if no override is specified.	false
Tcp Keepalive Time	A TCP keep-alive query is sent when the connection inactivity exceeds the number of milliseconds specified here. Use of this option is not recommended. We recommend using Keepalive. This is supported on Windows only.	0 (disabled)
Tcp Keepalive Interval	Specify the interval (in milliseconds) between successive keepalive packets sent if no acknowledgment is received. Tcp KeepAlive Time must also be non-zero. This is supported on Windows only.	TCP Keepalive Time value

## Performance

Keyword	Description	Default
Max Auto Prepare	Maximum number of SQL statements that can be automatically prepared at any given time. When this number is exceeded, the last used statement is reused. A value of 0 disables autoprpare.	0
Auto Prepare Min Usages	A SQL statement is automatically prepared when its usage count exceeds the value specified here.	5
Read Buffer Size	The size of the internal buffer Npgsql uses when reading. Increasing this value may improve performance when transferring large amounts of data from the database.	8192
Write Buffer Size	Determines the size of the internal buffer Npgsql uses when writing. Increasing this value may improve performance when transferring large amounts of data to the database.	8192
Socket Receive Buffer Size	The size of the socket receive buffer.	System dependent
Socket Send Buffer Size	The size of the socket send buffer.	System dependent
No Reset On Close	When true, do not reset the connection state when the connection is returned to the pool. In some cases, this improves performance at the cost of leak conditions. Use it only if your benchmark shows performance improvements.	false

## Failover and load balancing

Keyword	Description	Default
Target Session Attributes	Specifies the server type to preferentially connect to.  any: Allows any successful connection.  primary: Connect to the primary server.  standby: Connect to the standby server.  prefer-primary: Attempt to connect to the primary server first, but retry in any mode if none of the listed hosts has a primary server.  prefer-standby: Attempt to connect to the standby server first, but retry in any mode if there is no standby server on the listed host.  read-write: Connect to a server whose default transaction mode is read/write.  read-only: Connect to a server whose default transaction mode is read-only.	PGTARGETSESSIONATTRS, Any
Load Balance Hosts	Specify whether to perform load balancing among multiple hosts using the round-robin method.	false
Host Recheck Seconds	Controls how long a host's cached state is considered valid.	10
Enable Fdw Acs	Specifies whether to switch the connection destination type of the data node with on or off when using the connection routing function. This cannot be set to on when "Target Session Attributes=prefer-primary" is specified.	off

## Others

Keyword	Description	Default
Options	Specify valid database connection options.  (Example: Options=-c synchronous_commit=local)	PGOPTIONS
Application Name	Specify the application name sent to the backend when opening a connection.	
Enlist	Specify whether the connection should participate in transactions declared in the transaction scope.	true
Search Path	Sets the schema search path.	None
Client Encoding	Gets or sets the client_encoding parameter.	PGCLIENTENCODING
Encoding	Gets or sets the .NET encoding used to encode/decode string data in the database.	UTF8
Timezone	Gets or sets the session timezone.	PGTZ
EF Template Database	A database template that is specified when creating a database with Entity Framework.	template1
EF Admin Database	The managed database that you specify when creating and deleting databases in Entity Framework.	template1
Load Table Composites	Specify whether to load complex type definitions for tables in addition to independent complex types.	false
Array Nullability Mode	Sets how to return an array of value types when requested as an object instance. Possible values are:	Never

Keyword	Description	Default
	Never: Always return as a non-nullable array. Always: Always return as a nullable array. PerInstance: The returned array is determined at runtime.	

## 4.4 Application Development

---

### 4.4.1 Data Types

---

A variety of data types can be used with Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

#### List of supported data types

Data Type
boolean
smallint
integer
bigint
real
double precision
numeric
money
text
character varying
character
national character varying
national character
citext
json
jsonb
xml
uuid
bytea
timestamp without time zone
timestamp with time zone
date
time without time zone(*1)
time with time zone(*1)
interval(*2)
cidr
inet
macaddr
tsquery

Data Type
tsvector
bit(1)
bit(n)
bit varying
point
lseg
path
polygon
line
circle
box
hstore
oid
xid
cid
oidvector
name
(internal) char
geometry (PostGIS)
record
composite types
range types
multirange types (PG14)
enum types
array types

\*1: As shown below, "time with time zone" and "time without time zone" values display the date portion as additional information. However, the actual data comprises the time data only, so with the exception of this displayed format, there are no other resulting issues.

Example:

Composition of table (t1)

col1 (time with time zone)	col2 (time without time zone)
1/01/0001 10:21:30 +08:00	10:21:30
1/01/0001 23:34:03 +08:00	23:34:03
1/01/0001 17:23:54 +08:00	17:23:54

"time with time zone" values display a fixed value of "2/01/0001" in the date portion, while "time without time zone" values display just the time data.

```
SELECT *
FROM t1;
col1 | col2
-----+-----
```

1/01/0001 10:21:30 +08:00		10:21:30
1/01/0001 23:34:03 +08:00		23:34:03
1/01/0001 17:23:54 +08:00		17:23:54

\*2: The format is d.hh:mm:ss, where d is an integer and hh:mm:ss is a maximum of 23.59.59 (23 hours, 59 minutes, and 59 seconds).

## 4.4.2 Relationship between Application Data Types and Database Data Types

The data types available for SQL data types are as follows:

### Read mappings

PostgreSQL Type	Default.NET Type	Non-default Type
boolean	bool	
smallint	short	byte, sbyte, int, long, float, double, decimal
integer	int	byte, short, long, float, double, decimal
bigint	long	long, byte, short, int, float, double, decimal
real	float	double
double precision	double	
numeric	decimal	byte, short, int, long, float, double, BigInteger
money	decimal	
text	string	char[]
character varying	string	char[]
character	string	char[]
national character varying	string	char[]
national character	string	char[]
citext	string	char[]
json	string	char[]
jsonb	string	char[]
xml	string	char[]
uuid	Guid	
bytea	byte[]	
timestamp without time zone	DateTime (Unspecified)	
timestamp with time zone	DateTime (Utc)(*1)	DateTimeOffset (Offset=0)(*2)
date	DateTime	DateOnly
time without time zone	TimeSpan	TimeOnly
time with time zone	DateTimeOffset	
interval	TimeSpan(*3)	NpgsqlInterval
cidr	NpgsqlCidr	



PostgreSQL Type	Default.NET Type	Non-default Type
inet	IPAddress	NpgsqlInet
macaddr	PhysicalAddress	
tsquery	NpgsqlTsQuery	
tsvector	NpgsqlTsVector	
bit(1)	bool	BitArray
bit(n)	BitArray	
bit varying	BitArray	
point	NpgsqlPoint	
lseg	NpgsqlLSeg	
path	NpgsqlPath	
polygon	NpgsqlPolygon	
line	NpgsqlLine	
circle	NpgsqlCircle	
box	NpgsqlBox	
hstore	Dictionary<string, string>	
oid	uint	
xid	uint	
cid	uint	
oidvector	uint[]	
name	string	char[]
(internal) char	char	byte, short, int, long
geometry (PostGIS)	PostgisGeometry	
record	object[]	
composite types	T	
range types	NpgsqlRange<TElement>	
multirange types (PG14)	NpgsqlRange<TElement>[]	
enum types	TEnum	
array types	Array (of element type)	

\*1: When Npgsql.EnableLegacyTimestampBehavior is enabled, reading a timestamp with time zone returns a Local DateTime instead of Utc.

\*2: When Npgsql.EnableLegacyTimestampBehavior is enabled, reading a timestamp with time zone as a DateTimeOffset returns a local offset based on the timezone of the server where Npgsql is running.

\*3: PostgreSQL intervals with month or year components cannot be read as TimeSpan. Consider using NodaTime's Period type, or NpgsqlInterval.

## Write mappings

PostgreSQL Type	Default.NET Type	Non-default.NET Type	NpgsqlDbType	DbType
boolean	bool		Boolean	Boolean

PostgreSQL Type	Default.NET Type	Non-default.NET Type	NpgsqlDbType	DbType
smallint	short, byte, sbyte		Smallint	Int16
integer	int		Integer	Int32
bigint	long		Bigint	Int64
real	float		Real	Single
double precision	double		Double	Double
numeric	decimal, BigInteger		Numeric	Decimal, VarNumeric
money		decimal	Money	Currency
text	string, char[], char		Text	String, StringFixedLength, AnsiString, AnsiStringFixedLength
character varying		string, char[], char	Varchar	
character		string, char[], char	Char	
citext		string, char[], char	Citext	
json		string, char[], char	Json	
jsonb		string, char[], char	Jsonb	
xml		string, char[], char	Xml	
uuid	Guid		Uuid	
bytea	byte[]	ArraySegment<byte>	Bytea	Binary
timestamp without time zone	DateTime (Utc) (*1), DateTimeOffset		TimestampTz	DateTime(*2), DateTimeOffset
timestamp with time zone	DateTime (Local/ Unspecified) (*1)		Timestamp	DateTime2
date	DateOnly	DateTime	Date	Date
time without time zone	TimeOnly	TimeSpan	Time	Time
time with time zone		DateTimeOffset	TimeTz	
interval	TimeSpan	NpgsqlInterval	Interval	
cidr		ValueTuple<IPAddress, int>, IPAddress	Cidr	
inet	IPAddress	ValueTuple<IPAddress, int>	Inet	
macaddr	PhysicalAddress		MacAddr	
tsquery	NpgsqlTsQuery		TsQuery	
tsvector	NpgsqlTsVector		TsVector	
bit		bool, BitArray, string	Bit	

PostgreSQL Type	Default.NET Type	Non-default.NET Type	NpgsqlDbType	DbType
bit varying	BitArray	bool, BitArray, string	Varbit	
point	NpgsqlPoint		Point	
lseg	NpgsqlLSeg		LSeg	
path	NpgsqlPath		Path	
polygon	NpgsqlPolygon		Polygon	
line	NpgsqlLine		Line	
circle	NpgsqlCircle		Circle	
box	NpgsqlBox		Box	
hstore	IDictionary<string, string>		Hstore	
oid		uint	Oid	
xid		uint	Xid	
cid		uint	Cid	
oidvector		uint[]	Oidvector	
name		string, char[], char	Name	
(internal) char		byte	InternalChar	
composite types	Pre-mapped type		Composite	
range types	NpgsqlRange<T Subtype>		Range   NpgsqlDbType	
enum types	Pre-mapped type		Enum	
array types	T[], List<T>		Array   NpgsqlDbType	

\*1: UTC DateTime is written as timestamp with time zone, Local/Unspecified DateTimes are written as timestamp without time zone. When Npgsql.EnableLegacyTimestampBehavior is enabled, DateTime is always written as timestamp without time zone.

\*2: When Npgsql.EnableLegacyTimestampBehavior is enabled, DbType.DateTime is mapped to timestamp without time zone.

### 4.4.3 Creating Applications while in Database Multiplexing Mode

This section explains points to consider when creating applications while in database multiplexing mode.



See

- Refer to the Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing) for information on database multiplexing mode.
- Refer to "Application Development" in the Cluster Operation Guide (PRIMECLUSTER) for points to consider when creating applications using the failover feature integrated with the cluster software.

#### 4.4.3.1 Errors when an Application Connection Switch Occurs and Corresponding Actions

If an application connection switch occurs while in database multiplexing mode, explicitly close the connection and then reestablish the connection or reexecute the application.

The table below shows errors that may occur during a switch, and the corresponding action to take.

State		Error information	Action
Server failure or Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres system failure	Failure occurs during access	57P01 (*1) Empty string (*1)	After the switch is complete, reestablish the connection, or reexecute the application.
	Accessed during system failure	Empty string (*1)	
Switch to the standby server	Switched during access	57P01 (*1) Empty string (*1)	
	Accessed during switch	Empty string (*1)	

\*1: This is the return value of the PostgreSQLException attribute SqlState.

## 4.4.4 Notes

### Type Plugins

- These type libraries include:
  - NodaTime - the recommended way to interact with PostgreSQL date/time types
  - Json.NET - allows Npgsql to use the Newtonsoft.Json library when reading and writing JSON data (both json and jsonb)
  - NetTopologySuite - allows Npgsql to map PostGIS spatial types directly to the NetTopology suite types (the leading spatial library in .NET)
  - GeoJSON - allows Npgsql to read and write PostGIS spatial types as GeoJSON types via the GeoJSON.NET library
- Setup the plugin in your application simply by adding a dependency on the plugin (this should have been done automatically when installed to the project) and set it up. See the following code snippet for an example of setting up the Npgsql.NodaTime plugin:

```
using Npgsql;
// Place this at the beginning of your program to use NodaTime everywhere
(recommended)
NpgsqlConnection.GlobalTypeMapper.UseNodaTime();
// Or to temporarily use NodaTime on a single connection only:
conn.TypeMapper.UseNodaTime();
```

Once the plugin is setup, you can read and write NodaTime objects as per the code snippet below:

```
// Write NodaTime Instant to PostgreSQL "timestamp without time zone"
using (var cmd = new NpgsqlCommand(@"INSERT INTO mytable (my_timestamp) VALUES
(@p)", conn))
{
    cmd.Parameters.Add(new NpgsqlParameter("p", Instant.FromUtc(2011, 1, 1, 10,
30)));
    cmd.ExecuteNonQuery();
}

// Read timestamp back from the database as an Instant
using (var cmd = new NpgsqlCommand(@"SELECT my_timestamp FROM mytable", conn))
using (var reader = cmd.ExecuteReader())
{
    reader.Read();
    var instant = reader.GetFieldValue<Instant>(0);
}
```

- To apply the type plugin updates, do one of the following:
  - After uninstalling the type plugin (Refer to "[4.5.2 Uninstalling .NET Data Provider Type Plugins](#)"), setup the type plugin (Refer to "[4.2.2 Setting Up .NET Data Provider Type Plugins](#)").
  - Remove the type plugin directory from the packages directory of the solution, and then restore it using the nuget restore command.
- When you deploy an application with a type plugin, the type plugin is included in the distribution. Therefore, after applying the type plugin updates, you must rebuild the application and deploy the updated application.

## Additional Notes on each Type Plugin

Describe notes about each type plugin.

### NodaTime

Describes the mapping of PostgreSQL data types to NodaTime data types.

Mapping Table

PostgreSQL Type	Default NodaTime Type	Additional NodaTime Type	Note
timestamp with time zone	Instant	ZonedDateTime(*1), OffsetDateTime(*1)	UTC timestamp in database. Only UTC ZonedDateTime and OffsetDateTime are supported.
timestamp without time zone	LocalDateTime(*2)		A timestamp in an unknown or implied timezone.
date	LocalDate		A simple date with no timezone or offset information.
time without time zone	LocalTime		A simple time with no timezone or offset information.
time with time zone	OffsetTime		A type that stores a time and an offset. Generally not recommended for use.
interval	Period	Duration	A time interval from fractional seconds to years. NodaTime Duration is supported for days and smaller intervals, but not for years or months (because they have no absolute duration). Duration can be used in any interval unit.
tszrange	Interval	NpgsqlRange<Instant> ,etc	The time interval between two time instances (start and end).
strange	NpgsqlRange<LocalDateTim e>		The time interval between two

PostgreSQL Type	Default NodaTime Type	Additional NodaTime Type	Note
			timestamps in unknown or implied timezones.
daterange	DateInterval	NpgsqlRange<LocalDate>,etc	The interval between two dates.

\*1: When Npgsql.EnableLegacyTimestampBehavior is enabled, writing or reading ZonedDateTime or OffsetDateTime is automatically converted to UTC.

\*2: When Npgsql.EnableLegacyTimestampBehavior is enabled, timestamp without time zone is mapped to Instant instead of LocalDateTime by default.

## Json.NET

Once the JSON plugin has been setup, users can transparently read and write CLR objects as JSON values and the plugin will automatically serialize/deserialize them

See the code snippet below:

```
// Write arbitrary CLR types as JSON
using (var cmd = new NpgsqlCommand(@"INSERT INTO mytable (my_json_column) VALUES (@p)",
conn))
{
    cmd.Parameters.Add(new NpgsqlParameter("p", NpgsqlDbType.Jsonb) { Value =
MyClrType });
    cmd.ExecuteNonQuery();
}

// Read arbitrary CLR types as JSON
using (var cmd = new NpgsqlCommand(@"SELECT my_json_column FROM mytable", conn))
using (var reader = cmd.ExecuteReader())
{
    reader.Read();
    var someValue = reader.GetFieldValue<MyClrType>(0);
}
```

## NetTopologySuite (spatial)

By default the plugin handles only ordinates provided by the DefaultCoordinateSequenceFactory of GeometryServiceProvider.Instance. If GeometryServiceProvider is initialized automatically the X and Y ordinates are handled. To change the behavior specify the handleOrdinates parameter like in the following example:

```
conn.TypeMapper.UseNetTopologySuite(handleOrdinates: Ordinates.XYZ);
```

To process the M ordinate, you must initialize GeometryServiceProvider.Instance to a new NtsGeometryServices instance with coordinateSequenceFactory set to a DotSpatialAffineCoordinateSequenceFactory. Or you can specify the factory when calling UseNetTopologySuite.

```
// Place this at the beginning of your program to use the specified settings everywhere
(recommended)
GeometryServiceProvider.Instance = new NtsGeometryServices(
    new DotSpatialAffineCoordinateSequenceFactory(Ordinates.XYM),
    new PrecisionModel(PrecisionModels.Floating),
    -1);

// Or specify settings for Npgsql only
conn.TypeMapper.UseNetTopologySuite(
    new DotSpatialAffineCoordinateSequenceFactory(Ordinates.XYM));
```

## Reading and Writing Geometry Values

When reading PostGIS values from the database, Npgsql will automatically return the appropriate NetTopologySuite types: Point, LineString, and so on. Npgsql will also automatically recognize NetTopologySuite's types in parameters, and will automatically send the corresponding PostGIS type to the database. The following code demonstrates a roundtrip of a NetTopologySuite Point to the database:

```
var point = new Point(new Coordinate(1d, 1d));
conn.ExecuteNonQuery("CREATE TEMP TABLE data (geom GEOMETRY)");
using (var cmd = new NpgsqlCommand("INSERT INTO data (geom) VALUES (@p)", conn))
{
    cmd.Parameters.AddWithValue("@p", point);
    cmd.ExecuteNonQuery();
}

using (var cmd = new NpgsqlCommand("SELECT geom FROM data", conn))
using (var reader = cmd.ExecuteReader())
{
    reader.Read();
    Assert.That(reader[0], Is.EqualTo(point));
}
```

You may also explicitly specify a parameter's type by setting `NpgsqlDbType.Geometry`.

## Geography (geodetic) Support

PostGIS has two types: geometry (for Cartesian coordinates) and geography (for geodetic or spherical coordinates). You can read about the geometry/geography distinction in the PostGIS docs. In a nutshell, geography is much more accurate when doing calculations over long distances, but is more expensive computationally and supports only a small subset of the spatial operations supported by geometry.

Npgsql uses the same NetTopologySuite types to represent both geometry and geography - the Point type represents a point in either Cartesian or geodetic space. You usually don't need to worry about this distinction because PostgreSQL will usually cast types back and forth as needed. However, it's worth noting that Npgsql sends Cartesian geometry by default, because that's the usual requirement. You have the option of telling Npgsql to send geography instead by specifying `NpgsqlDbType.Geography`:

```
using (var cmd = new NpgsqlCommand("INSERT INTO data (geog) VALUES (@p)", conn))
{
    cmd.Parameters.AddWithValue("@p", NpgsqlDbType.Geography, point);
    cmd.ExecuteNonQuery();
}
```

If you prefer to use geography everywhere by default, you can also specify that when setting up the plugin:

```
NpgsqlConnection.GlobalTypeMapper.UseNetTopologySuite(geographyAsDefault: true);
```

## GeoJSON (spatial)

Using the GeoJSON plugin is the same as the NetTopologySuite.

## Notes on the Query Builder

- Prefix named parameters with "@".
- Uppercase object names cannot be used, even when enclosed in double quotation marks.  
To use uppercase object names enclosed in double quotation marks, include them in SQL statements and enter these in the [Generate the SQL statements] window rather than in the Query Builder.
- SQL statements cannot be correctly generated if the SQL statement specified in Filter matches any of the conditions below:
  - It uses PostgreSQL intrinsic operators such as << or ::.

- It uses functions with keywords such as AS, FROM, IN, OVER.  
Example: `extract(field from timestamp), RANK() OVER`
- It uses functions with the same names as those prescribed in SQL conventions, but that require different arguments.

### Notes on metadata

- The `CommandBehavior.KeyInfo` argument must be specified if executing `ExecuteReader` before obtaining metadata using `GetSchemaTable`.

#### Example

```
NpgsqlDataReader ndr=cmd.ExecuteReader(CommandBehavior.KeyInfo);
DataTable dt = dr.GetSchemaTable();
```

### Notes on automatically generating update-type SQL statements

- If the SQL statement includes a query (which cannot be updated) that matches any of the conditions below, an update-type SQL statement will be generated (note that it may not be possible to execute this SQL statement in some cases):
  - It includes derived tables
  - It includes the same column name as the select list

Update-type SQL statements will be automatically generated in the following cases:

- If update statements are obtained using `NpgsqlCommandBuilder`
- If data is updated using `NpgsqlDataAdapter`

### Notes on distributed transactions

- Applications using transaction scope can use distributed transactions by linking with Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (MSDTC). In this case, note the following:
  - Ensure that the value of `max_prepared_transactions` is greater than `max_connection`, so that "PREPARE TRANSACTION" can be issued for each transaction that simultaneously connects to the database server.
  - If each transaction in the transaction scope accesses the same resource using different connections, the database server will perceive it as requests from different applications, and a deadlock may occur. By configuring a timeout value for the transaction scope beforehand, the deadlock can be broken.

## 4.5 Uninstallation

This section explains how to uninstall .NET Data Provider and Entity Framework Core.

### 4.5.1 Uninstalling Npgsql

Npgsql is installed per project. To uninstall it, follow the procedure below:

#### **L**

- Linux

Remove a package reference to the project file.

```
dotnet remove projectFilePath package Npgsql
```

#### **W**

- Windows(R)

1. In Visual Studio, open a project for which Npgsql is installed.



2. Click [Tools] >> [NuGet Package Manager] >> [Manage NuGet Packages for Solution].
3. Select all the projects that have Npgsql installed, and then click [Uninstall].  
Alternatively, if the plugin packages have been removed and is no longer installed, in the solution explorer open the Dependencies/NuGet node and delete the plugins that require uninstallation.

## 4.5.2 Uninstalling .NET Data Provider Type Plugins

The **.NET Data Provider** type plugins are installed per project. To uninstall it, follow the procedure below:

**L**

- Linux

Remove a package reference to the project file (Example: Npgsql.NodaTime).

```
dotnet remove projectFilePath package Npgsql.NodaTime
```

**W**

- Windows(R)

1. In Visual Studio, open a project for which Npgsql the Plugin to be removed is installed.
2. Click [Tools] >> [NuGet Package Manager] >> [Manage NuGet Packages for Solution].
3. Select all the projects that have Npgsql Plugin(s) installed, and then click [Uninstall].  
Alternatively, if the plugin packages have been removed and are no longer installed, in the solution explorer open the Dependencies/NuGet node and delete the plugins that require uninstallation.

## 4.5.3 Uninstalling Entity Framework Core

Entity Framework Core is installed per project. To uninstall it, follow the procedure below:

**L**

- Linux

Remove a package reference to the project file.

```
dotnet remove projectFilePath package Npgsql.EntityFrameworkCore.PostgreSQL
```

**W**

- Windows(R)

1. In Visual Studio, open a project for which Entity Framework Core is installed.
2. Click [Tools] >> [NuGet Package Manager] >> [Manage NuGet Packages for Solution].
3. Select all the projects that have Entity Framework Core installed, and then click [Uninstall].  
Alternatively, if the Entity Framework package has been removed and is no longer installed, in the solution explorer open the Dependencies/NuGet node and delete the packages that require uninstallation.

## 4.5.4 Uninstalling Npgsql.OpenTelemetry

Npgsql.OpenTelemetry is installed per project. To uninstall it, follow the procedure below:

**L**

- Linux

Remove a package reference to the project file.

```
dotnet remove projectFilePath package Npgsql.OpenTelemetry
```

**W**

- Windows(R)

1. In Visual Studio, open a project for which Npgsql.OpenTelemetry is installed.
2. Click [Tools] >> [NuGet Package Manager] >> [Manage NuGet Packages for Solution].
3. Select all the projects that have Npgsql.OpenTelemetry installed, and then click [Uninstall].  
Alternatively, if the Npgsql.OpenTelemetry package has been removed and is no longer installed, in the solution explorer open the Dependencies/NuGet node and delete the packages that require uninstallation.

# Chapter 5 C Library (libpq)

This chapter describes how to use C libraries.

## 5.1 Development Environment

Install Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Client Package for the architecture to be developed and executed.



See

Refer to Installation and Setup Guide for Client for information on the C compiler required for C application development.

## 5.2 Setup

This section describes the environment settings required to use C libraries and how to encrypt data for communication.

### 5.2.1 Environment Settings

To execute an application that uses libpq, set the environment variable as shown below.

L

Linux

- Required for execution of the application
- PGLOCALEDIR  
*fujitsuEnterprisePostgresClientInstallDir*/share/locale



Example

"<x>" indicates the product version.

```
> PGLOCALEDIR=/opt/fsepv<x>client64/share/locale;export PGLOCALEDIR
```

W

Windows (R)

- Required for compile/link
- LIB  
*fujitsuEnterprisePostgresClientInstallDir*\lib
- INCLUDE  
*fujitsuEnterprisePostgresClientInstallDir*\include
- Required for execution of the application
- PATH  
*fujitsuEnterprisePostgresClientInstallDir*\lib
- PGLOCALEDIR  
*fujitsuEnterprisePostgresClientInstallDir*\share\locale



Example

When the 32-bit version client package is installed on a 64-bit operating system. "<x>" indicates the product version.

```
> SET PATH=%ProgramFiles(x86)%\Fujitsu\fsepv<x>client32\lib;%PATH%
> SET LIB=%ProgramFiles(x86)%\Fujitsu\fsepv<x>client32\lib;%LIB%
```

```
> SET INCLUDE=%ProgramFiles(x86)%\Fujitsu\fserv<x>client32\include;%INCLUDE%
> SET PGLOCALEDIR=%ProgramFiles(x86)%\Fujitsu\fserv<x>client32\share\locale
```

## 5.2.2 Message Language and Encoding System Used by Applications Settings

This section explains the language settings for the application runtime environment and the encoding settings for the application.

### Language settings

You must match the language settings for the application runtime environment with the message locale settings of the database server.

Messages output by an application may include text from messages sent from the database server. In the resulting text, the text of the application message will use the message locale of the application, and the text of the message sent by the database server will use the message locale of the database server. If the message locales do not match, more than one language or encoding system will be used. Moreover, if the encoding systems do not match, characters in the resulting text can be garbled.

#### L

#### - Linux

Set the locale for messages (LC\_MESSAGES category) to match the message locale of the database server. This can be done in a few different ways, such as using environment variables. Refer to the relevant manual of the operating system for information on the setlocale function.



#### Example

Example of specifying "en\_US.UTF-8" with the setlocale function

```
setlocale(LC_ALL, "en_US.UTF-8");
```

Specifying the locale of the LC\_ALL category propagates the setting to LC\_MESSAGE.

#### W

#### - Windows(R)

Align the locale of the operating system with the message locale of the database server.

### Encoding System Settings

Ensure that the encoding system that is embedded in the application and passed to the database, and the encoding system setting of the runtime environment, are the same. The encoding system cannot be converted correctly on the database server.

Use one of the following methods to set the encoding system for the application:

- Set the PGCLIENTENCODING environment variable in the runtime environment.
- Set the client\_encoding keyword in the connection string.
- Use the PQsetClientEncoding function.



#### See

Refer to "Supported Character Sets" in "Server Administration" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on the strings that represent the encoding system that can be set.

For example, when using "Unicode" and "8 bit", set the string "UTF8".



Text may be garbled when outputting results to the command prompt. Review the font settings for the command prompt if this occurs.

### 5.2.3 Settings for Encrypting Communication Data

---

Set in one of the following ways when performing remote access using communication data encryption:

When setting from outside with environment variables

Specify "require", "verify-ca", or "verify-full" in the PGSSLMODE environment variable.

In addition, the parameters for the PGSSLROOTCERT and PGSSLCRL environment variables need to be set to prevent spoofing of the database server.



Refer to "Environment Variables" in "Client Interfaces" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on environment variables.

When specifying in the connection URI

Specify "require", "verify-ca", or "verify-full" in the "sslmode" parameter of the connection URI.

In addition, the parameters for the sslcert, sslkey, sslrootcert, and sslcrl need to be set to prevent spoofing of the database server.



Refer to "Secure TCP/IP Connections with SSL" in "Server Administration" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on encrypting communication data.

## 5.3 Connecting with the Database

---



Use the connection service file to specify the connection destination. In the connection service file, a name (service name) is defined as a set, comprising information such as connection destination information and various types of tuning information set for connections. By using the service name defined in the connection service file when connecting to databases, it is no longer necessary to modify applications when the connection information changes.

Refer to "Client Interfaces", "The Connection Service File" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for details.



Refer to "Database Connection Control Functions" in "Client Interfaces" in the PostgreSQL Documentation.

In addition, refer to "[6.3 Connecting with the Database](#)" in "Embedded SQL in C" for information on connection string.

## 5.4 Application Development

---



See

Refer to "libpq - C Library" in "Client Interfaces" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on developing applications.

However, if you are using the C library, there are the following differences to the PostgreSQL C library (libpq).

## 5.4.1 Compiling Applications

Specify the following paths when compiling applications.

Refer to your compiler documentation for information on how to specify the path.

Also, when using a shared library, refer to "A.6 How to Build and Run an Application that Uses Shared Libraries".

L

- Linux

L

Table 5.1 Include file and library path

Type of path	Path name
Path of the include file	<i>fujitsuEnterprisePostgresClientInstallDir</i> /include
Path of the library	<i>fujitsuEnterprisePostgresClientInstallDir</i> /lib

L

Table 5.2 C Library (libpq library)

Type of library	Library name
Dynamic library	libpq.so
Static library	libpq.a

W

- Windows(R)

If the include file and the library path have been set in the environment variable, there is no need to specify the paths shown below for the compile.

W

Table 5.3 Include file and library path

Type of path	Path name
Path of the include file	<i>fujitsuEnterprisePostgresClientInstallDir</i> \include
Path of the library	<i>fujitsuEnterprisePostgresClientInstallDir</i> \lib

W

Table 5.4 C Library (libpq library)

Type of library	Library name
Library for links	libpq.lib
Dynamic library	libpq.dll

## 5.4.2 Creating Applications while in Database Multiplexing Mode

This section explains points to consider when creating applications while in database multiplexing mode.



See

- Refer to the Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing) for information on database multiplexing mode.
- Refer to "Application Development" in the Cluster Operation Guide (PRIMECLUSTER) for points to consider when creating applications using the failover feature integrated with the cluster software.

### 5.4.2.1 Errors when an Application Connection Switch Occurs and Corresponding Actions

If an application connection switch occurs while in database multiplexing mode, explicitly close the connection and then reestablish the connection or reexecute the application.

The table below shows errors that may occur during a switch, and the corresponding action to take.

State		Error information	Action
Server failure or Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres system failure	Failure occurs during access	PGRES_FATAL_ERRO R(*1)  57P01(*2)  NULL(*2)	After the switch is complete, reestablish the connection, or reexecute the application.
	Accessed during system failure	CONNECTION_BAD(* 3)	
Switch to the standby server	Switched during access	PGRES_FATAL_ERRO R(*1)  57P01(*2)  NULL(*2)	
	Accessed during switch	CONNECTION_BAD(* 3)	

\*1: Return value of PQresultStatus().

\*2: Return value of PQresultErrorField() PG\_DIAG\_SQLSTATE.

\*3: Return value of PQstatus().

# Chapter 6 Embedded SQL in C

This chapter describes application development using embedded SQL in C.

## 6.1 Development Environment

Install Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Client Package for the architecture to be developed and executed.



See

Refer to Installation and Setup Guide for Client for information on the C compiler required for C application development.



Note

C++ is not supported. Create a library by implementing embedded SQL in C, and call it from C++.

## 6.2 Setup

### 6.2.1 Environment Settings

When using embedded SQL in C, the same environment settings as when using the C library (libpq) are required.

Refer to "5.2.1 Environment Settings" in "C Library (libpq)" for information on the environment settings for the library for C.

Additionally, set the following path for the precompiler ecpg in the PATH environment variable:

L

Linux

```
fujitsuEnterprisePostgresClientInstallDir/bin
```

W

Windows(R)

```
fujitsuEnterprisePostgresClientInstallDir\bin
```

### 6.2.2 Message Language and Encoding System Used by Applications Settings

The message language and the encoding System Settings Used by Applications settings are the same as when using the library for C.

However, in embedded SQL, the PQsetClientEncoding function cannot be used in the encoding system settings. In embedded SQL, use the SET command to specify the encoding system in client\_encoding.

Refer to "5.2.2 Message Language and Encoding System Used by Applications Settings" in "C Library (libpq)" for information on the settings for the library for C.

### 6.2.3 Settings for Encrypting Communication Data

When encrypting the communication data, the same environment settings as when using the C library (libpq) are required.

Refer to "5.2.3 Settings for Encrypting Communication Data" in "C Library (libpq)" for information on the environment settings for the C library.

## 6.3 Connecting with the Database



- It is recommended to use a connection service file to specify connection destinations. In the connection service file, a name (service name) is defined as a set, comprising information such as connection destination information and various types of tuning information set for connections. By using the service name defined in the connection service file when connecting to databases, it is no longer necessary to modify applications when the connection information changes. Refer to "The Connection Service File" in "Client Interfaces" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information.
- If using a connection service file, perform either of the procedures below:
  - Set the service name as a string literal or host variable, as follows:  
`tcp:postgresql://?service=my_service`
  - Set the service name in the environment variable PGSERVICE, and use CONNECT TO DEFAULT

Use the CONNECT statement shown below to create a connection to the database server.

### Format

```
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO target [AS connection-name] [USER user-name];
```

#### target

Write in one of the following formats:

- dbname@host:port
- tcp:postgresql://host:port/dbname[?options]
- unix:postgresql://host[:port][/dbname][?options]  
(Definition method when using the UNIX domain socket)
- SQL string literal containing one of the above formats
- Reference to a character variable containing one of the above formats
- DEFAULT

#### user-name

Write in one of the following formats:

- username
- username/password
- username IDENTIFIED BY password
- username USING password

### Description of the arguments

Argument	Description
dbname	Specify the database name.
host	Specify the host name for the connection destination.
port	Specify the port number for the database server. The default is "27500".
connection-name	Specify connection names to identify connections when multiple connections are to be processed within a single program.



Argument	Description
username	Specify the user that will connect with the database.  If this is omitted, the name used will be that of the user on the operating system that is executing the application.
password	Specify a password when authentication is required.
options	<p>Specify the following parameter when specifying a time for timeout. Connect parameters with &amp; when specifying more than one. The following shows the values specified for each parameter.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- connect_timeout Specify the timeout for connections.  Specify a value between 0 and 2147483647 (in seconds). There is no limit set if you set 0 or an invalid value. If "1" is specified, the behavior will be the same as when "2" was specified. An error occurs when a connection cannot be established within the specified time.</li> <li>- keepalives This enables keepalive.  Keepalive is disabled if 0 is specified. Keepalive is enabling when any other value is specified. The default is keepalive enabled. Keepalive causes an error to occur when it is determined that the connection with the database is disabled.</li> <li>- keepalives_idle Specify the time until the system starts sending keepalive messages when communication with the database is not being performed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Linux Specify a value between 1 and 32767 (in seconds). The default value of the system is used if this is not specified.</li> <li>- Windows(R) Specify a value between 1 and 2147483647 (in seconds). 7200 will be set as default if a value outside this range is specified or if nothing is specified.</li> </ul> </li> <li>- keepalives_interval Specify the interval between resends when there is no response to keepalive messages. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Linux Specify a value between 1 and 32767 (in seconds). The default value of the system is used if this is not specified.</li> <li>- Windows(R) Specify a value between 1 and 2147483647 (in seconds). 1 will be set as default if a value outside this range is specified or if nothing is specified.</li> </ul> </li> <li>- keepalives_count Specify the number of resends for keepalive messages. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Linux Specify a value between 1 and 127. The default value of the system is used if this is not specified.</li> <li>- Windows(R) The system default value is used irrespective of what is specified for this parameter.</li> </ul> </li> <li>- tcp_user_timeout</li> </ul>

Argument	Description
	<p>After establishing the connection, when sending from the client to the server, if the TCP resend process operates, specify the time until it is considered to be disconnected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Linux</li> </ul> <p>Specify a value between 0 and 2147483647 (in milliseconds). The default value of the system is used if 0. 0 will be set as default if nothing is specified.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Windows(R)</li> </ul> <p>Cannot be specified.</p>



## Note

If a value other than 0 is specified for the `tcp_user_timeout` parameter, the waiting time set by the `tcp_keepalives_idle` parameter and `tcp_keepalives_interval` parameter will be invalid and the waiting time specified by the `tcp_user_timeout` parameter will be used.

## Code examples for applications

```
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO tcp:postgresql://sv1:27500/mydb?
connect_timeout=20&keepalives_idle=20&keepalives_interval=5&keepalives_count=2&keepalives=
1 USER myuser/myuser01;
```

## 6.4 Application Development

Refer to "ECPG - Embedded SQL in C" in "Client Interfaces" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on developing applications.

However, when using embedded SQL in C, there are the following differences to the embedded SQL (ECPG) in PostgreSQL C.

### 6.4.1 Support for National Character Data Types

This section describes how to use the national character data types using the SQL embedded C preprocessor.

The following explains the C language variable types corresponding to the NCHAR type:

Specify the number of characters specified for the NCHAR type multiple by 4, plus 1 for the length of the host variable.

Data Type	Host variable type
NATIONAL CHARACTER( <i>n</i> )	NCHAR variable name [nx4+1]
NATIONAL CHARACTER VARYING( <i>n</i> )	NVARCHAR variable name [nx4+1]

## See

Refer to "Handling Character Strings" in "Client Interfaces" in the PostgreSQL documentation for information on using character string types.

### 6.4.2 Compiling Applications

Append the extension "pgc" to the name of the source file for the embedded SQL in C.

When the pgc file is precompiled using the `ecpg` command, C source files will be created, so use the C compiler for the compile.

Precompiling example

```
ecpg testproc.pgc
```

If an optimizer hint block comment is specified for the SQL statement, specify the following option in the ecpg command:  
--enable-hint

Enables the optimizer hint block comment (hereafter, referred to as the "hint clause"). If this option is not specified, the hint clause will be removed as a result of the ecpg precompile and be disabled.

The SQL statements that can be specified in the hint clause are SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE.

The locations in which the hint clause can be specified are immediately after one of the SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, or WITH keywords. A syntax error will occur if any other location is specified.

Example of specifying the hint clause

```
EXEC SQL SELECT /*+ IndexScan(prod ix01) */ name_id INTO :name_id FROM prod WHERE id = 1;
```



For basic usage of pg\_hint\_plan and pg\_dbms\_stats, see below.

- Control execution plans with pg\_hint\_plan  
<https://www.postgresql.fastware.com/postgresql-insider-tun-hint-plan>



Take the following points into account when using embedded SQL source files:

- Multibyte codes expressed in SJIS or UTF-16 cannot be included in statements or host variable declarations specified in EXEC SQL.
- Do not use UTF-8 with a byte order mark (BOM), because an error may occur during compilation if the BOM character is incorrectly recognized as the source code.
- Multibyte characters cannot be used in host variable names.
- It is not possible to use a TYPE name that contains multibyte characters, even though it can be defined.

Specify the following paths when compiling a C application output with precompiling.

Refer to your compiler documentation for information on how to specify the path.

Also, when using a shared library, refer to "A.6 How to Build and Run an Application that Uses Shared Libraries".



Linux



Table 6.1 Include file and library path

Type of path	Path name
Path of the include file	<i>fujitsuEnterprisePostgresClientInstallDir/include</i>
Path of the library	<i>fujitsuEnterprisePostgresClientInstallDir/lib</i>

**L**

Table 6.2 C Library

Type of library	Library name	Note
Dynamic library	libecpg.so	
	libpgtypes.so	When using the pgtypes library
Static library	libecpg.a	
	libpgtypes.a	When using the pgtypes library

**W**

## Windows(R)

If the include file and the library path have been set in the environment variable, there is no need to specify the paths shown below for the compile.

**W**

Table 6.3 Include file and library path

Type of path	Path name
Path of the include file	<i>fujitsuEnterprisePostgresClientInstallDir\include</i>
Path of the library	<i>fujitsuEnterprisePostgresClientInstallDir\lib</i>

**W**

Table 6.4 C Library

Type of library	Library name	Note
Library for links	libecpg.lib	
	libpgtypes.lib	When using the pgtypes library
Dynamic library	libecpg.dll	
	libpgtypes.dll	When using the pgtypes library

**Note**

- The libecpg library in Windows(R) is created by "release" and "multithreaded" options. When using the ECPGdebug function included in this library, compile using the "release" and "multithreaded" flags in all programs that use this library. When you do this, use the "dynamic" flag if you are using libecpg.dll, and use the "static" flag if you are using libecpg.lib.

Refer to "Library Functions" in "Client Interfaces" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on the ECPGdebug function.

- The cl command expects input to be a program that uses one of the following code pages, so convert the program to these code pages and then compile and link it (refer to the Microsoft documentation for details).
  - ANSI console code pages (example: Shift-JIS for Japanese)
  - UTF-16 little-endian with or without BOM (Byte Order Mark)
  - UTF-16 big-endian with or without BOM
  - UTF-8 with BOM

The cl command converts strings in a program to an ANSI console code page before generating a module, so the data sent to and received from the database server becomes an ANSI console code page. Therefore, set the coding system corresponding to the ANSI console code page as the coding system of the client.

Refer to "Character Set Support" in "Server Administration" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on how to set the client encoding system.

(Example: To use environment variables in Japanese, set SJIS in PGCLIENTENCODING.)

## 6.4.3 Bulk INSERT

---

This section describes the bulk INSERT.

### Synopsis

```
EXEC SQL [ AT conn ] [ FOR { numOfRows | ARRAY_SIZE } ]  
  INSERT INTO tableName [ ( colName [, ...] ) ]  
  { VALUES ( { expr | DEFAULT } [, ...] ) [, ...] | query }  
  [ RETURNING * | outputExpr [ [ AS ] outputName ] [, ...]  
  INTO outputHostVar [ [ INDICATOR ] indicatorVar ] [, ...] ];
```

### Description

Bulk INSERT is a feature that inserts multiple rows of data in bulk.

By specifying the array host variable that stored the data in the VALUES clause of the INSERT statement, the data for each element in the array can be inserted in bulk. This feature is used by specifying the insertion count in the FOR clause immediately before the INSERT statement.

#### FOR Clause

Specify the insertion count using *numOfRows* or *ARRAY\_SIZE* in the FOR clause. The FOR clause can be specified only in the INSERT statement, not in other update statements.

##### *numOfRows* and *ARRAY\_SIZE*

Insertion processing will be executed only for the specified count. However, if the count is 1, it will be assumed that the FOR clause was omitted when the application is executed. In this case, proceed according to the INSERT specification in the PostgreSQL Documentation.

Specify the FOR clause with a short, int, or long long host variable or with a literal.

Specify *ARRAY\_SIZE* to insert all elements of the array in the table. When specifying *ARRAY\_SIZE*, specify at least one array in *expr*.

If two or more arrays were specified in *expr*, it will be assumed that *ARRAY\_SIZE* is the minimum number of elements in the array.

*numOfRows* or *ARRAY\_SIZE* must exceed the minimum number of elements in all arrays specified in *expr*, *outputHostVar*, and *indicatorVal*.

The following example shows how to specify the FOR clause.

```
int  number_of_rows = 10;  
int  id[25];  
char name[25][10];  
  
EXEC SQL FOR :number_of_rows      /* will process 10 rows */  
  INSERT INTO prod (name, id) VALUES (:name, :id);  
  
EXEC SQL FOR ARRAY_SIZE           /* will process 25 rows */  
  INSERT INTO prod (name, id) VALUES (:name, :id);
```

#### *expr*

Specify the value to be inserted in the table. Array host variables, host variable literals, strings, and pointer variables can be specified. Structure type arrays and pointer variable arrays cannot be specified.

Do not use pointer variables and *ARRAY\_SIZE* at the same time. The reason for this is that the number of elements in the area represented by the pointer variable cannot be determined.

query

A query (SELECT statement) that supplies the rows to be inserted. The number of rows returned by *query* must be 1. If two or more rows are returned, an error will occur. This cannot be used at the same time as ARRAY\_SIZE.

outputHostVar, indicatorVal

These must be array host variables or pointer variables.

## Error Messages

Given below are the error messages that are output when bulk INSERT functionality is not used correctly.

### Message

---

#### invalid statement name "FOR value should be positive integer"

##### Cause

The value given for *numOfRows* is less than or equal to 0.

##### Solution

Specify a value that is more than or equal to 1 for *numOfRows*.

### Message

---

#### invalid statement name "Host array variable is needed when using FOR ARRAY\_SIZE"

##### Cause

A host array is not specified in the values clause when using the ARRAY\_SIZE keyword.

##### Solution

At least one host array variable should be included in the values clause

### Message

---

#### SELECT...INTO returns too many rows

##### Cause

The number of rows returned by the 'SELECT ... INTO' query in the INSERT statement is more than one.

##### Solution

When the value of *numOfRows* is more than one, the maximum number of rows that can be returned by the 'SELECT ... INTO' query in the INSERT statement is one.

## Limitations

The limitations when using bulk INSERT are given below.

- Array of structures should not be used as an input in the 'VALUES' clause. Attempted use will result in junk data being inserted into the table.
- Array of pointers should not be used as an input in the 'VALUES' clause. Attempted use will result in junk data being inserted into the table.
- ECPG supports the use of 'WITH' clause in single INSERT statements. 'WITH' clause cannot be used in bulk INSERT statements.
- ECPG does not calculate the size of the pointer variable. So when a pointer variable is used that includes multiple elements, *numOfRows* should be less than or equal to the number of elements in the pointer. Otherwise, junk data will be inserted into the table.
- If an error occurs, all bulk INSERT actions will be rolled back, therefore, no rows are inserted. However, if the RETURNING clause was used, and the error occurred while obtaining the rows after the insertion was successful, the insertion processing will not be rolled back.

## Samples

Given below are some sample usages of the bulk INSERT functionality.

### Basic Bulk INSERT

```
int in_f1[4] = {1,2,3,4};
...
EXEC SQL FOR 3 INSERT INTO target (f1) VALUES (:in_f1);
```

The number of rows to insert indicated by the FOR clause is 3, so the data in the first 3 elements of the host array variable are inserted into the table. The contents of the target table will be:

```
f1
----
1
2
3
(3 rows)
```

Also a host integer variable can be used to indicate the number of rows that will be inserted in FOR clause, which will produce the same result as above:

```
int num = 3;
int in_f1[4] = {1,2,3,4};
...
EXEC SQL FOR :num INSERT INTO target (f1) VALUES (:in_f1);
```

### Inserting constant values

Constant values can also be bulk INSERTed into the table as follows:

```
EXEC SQL FOR 3 INSERT INTO target (f1,f2) VALUES (DEFAULT,'hello');
```

Assuming the 'DEFAULT' value for the 'f1' column is '0', the contents of the target table will be:

```
f1 | f2
---+-----
0 | hello
0 | hello
0 | hello
(3 rows)
```

### Using ARRAY\_SIZE

'FOR ARRAY\_SIZE' can be used to insert the entire contents of a host array variable, without explicitly specifying the size, into the table.

```
int in_f1[4] = {1,2,3,4};
...
EXEC SQL FOR ARRAY_SIZE INSERT INTO target (f1) VALUES (:in_f1);
```

In the above example, four rows are inserted into the table.



### Note

If there are multiple host array variables specified as input values, then the number of rows inserted is same as the smallest array size. The example given below demonstrates this usage.

```
int in_f1[4] = {1,2,3,4};
char in_f3[3][10] = {"one", "two", "three"};
```

```
...
EXEC SQL FOR ARRAY_SIZE INSERT INTO target (f1,f3) VALUES (:in_f1,:in_f3);
```

In the above example, the array sizes are 3 and 4. Given that the smallest array size is 3, only three rows are inserted into the table. The table contents are given below.

```
f1 | f3
----+-----
1 | one
2 | two
3 | three
(3 rows)
```

## Using Pointers as Input

Pointers that contain multiple elements can be used in bulk INSERT.

```
int *in_pfl = NULL;
in_pfl = (int*)malloc(4*sizeof(int));
in_pfl[0]=1;
in_pfl[1]=2;
in_pfl[2]=3;
in_pfl[3]=4;
...
EXEC SQL FOR 4 INSERT INTO target (f1) values (:in_pfl);
```

The above example will insert four rows into the target table.

## Using SELECT query

When using bulk INSERT, the input values can be got from the results of a SELECT statement. For example,

```
EXEC SQL FOR 4 INSERT INTO target(f1) SELECT age FROM source WHERE name LIKE 'foo';
```

Assuming that the 'SELECT' query returns one row, the same row will be inserted into the target table four times.



### Note

If the 'SELECT' query returns more than one row, the INSERT statement will throw an error.

```
EXEC SQL FOR 1 INSERT INTO target(f1) SELECT age FROM source;
```

In the above example, all the rows returned by the 'SELECT' statement will be inserted into the table. In this context '1' has the meaning of 'returned row equivalent'.

## Using RETURNING clause

Bulk INSERT supports the same RETURNING clause syntax as normal INSERT. An example is given below.

```
int out_f1[4];
int in_f1[4] = {1,2,3,4};
...
EXEC SQL FOR 3 INSERT INTO target (f1) VALUES (:in_f1) RETURNING f1 INTO :out_f1;
```

After the execution of the above INSERT statement, the 'out\_f1' array will have 3 elements with the values of '1','2' and '3'.



## 6.4.4 Creating Applications while in Database Multiplexing Mode

This section explains points to consider when creating applications while in database multiplexing mode.



See

- Refer to the Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing) for information on database multiplexing mode.
- Refer to "Application Development" in the Cluster Operation Guide (PRIMECLUSTER) for points to consider when creating applications using the failover feature integrated with the cluster software.

### 6.4.4.1 Errors when an Application Connection Switch Occurs and Corresponding Actions

If an application connection switch occurs while in database multiplexing mode, explicitly close the connection and then reestablish the connection or reexecute the application.

The table below shows errors that may occur during a switch, and the corresponding action to take.

State		Error information (*1)	Action
Server failure or Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres system failure	Failure occurs during access	57P01 57P02 YE000 26000 40001	After the switch is complete, reestablish the connection, or reexecute the application.
	Accessed during node/system failure	08001	
Switch to the standby server	Switched during access	57P01 57P02 YE000 26000 40001	
	Accessed during switch	08001	

\*1: Return value of SQLSTATE.

## 6.4.5 Notes

### Notes on creating multithreaded applications

In embedded SQL in C, DISCONNECT ALL disconnects all connections within a process, and therefore it is not thread-safe in all operations that use connections. Do not use it in multithreaded applications.

# Chapter 7 Embedded SQL in COBOL

This chapter describes application development using embedded SQL in COBOL.

## 7.1 Development Environment

Install Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Client Package for the architecture to be developed and executed.



See

Refer to the Installation and Setup Guide for Client for information on the COBOL compiler required for COBOL application development.

## 7.2 Setup

### 7.2.1 Environment Settings

When using embedded SQL in COBOL, the same environment settings as when using the C library (libpq) are required. Refer to "5.2.1 Environment Settings" in "C Library (libpq)" for information on the environment settings for the library for C.

Additionally, set the following path for the precompiler ecobpg in the PATH environment variable:

L

Linux

```
fujitsuEnterprisePostgresClientInstallDir/bin
```

W

Windows(R)

```
fujitsuEnterprisePostgresClientInstallDir\bin
```

### 7.2.2 Message Language and Encoding System Used by Applications

The settings for the message language and the encoding system used by applications should be the same as those required when using the library for C.

However, in embedded SQL, the PQsetClientEncoding function cannot be used in the encoding system settings. In embedded SQL, use the SET command to specify the encoding system in client\_encoding.

Refer to "5.2.2 Message Language and Encoding System Used by Applications Settings" in "C Library (libpq)" for information on the settings for the library for C.

### 7.2.3 Settings for Encrypting Communication Data

When encrypting the communication data, the same environment settings as when using the C library (libpq) are required.

Refer to "5.2.3 Settings for Encrypting Communication Data" in "C Library (libpq)" for information on the environment settings for the C library.

## 7.3 Connecting with the Database

Use the CONNECT statement shown below to create a connection to the database server.

### Format

```
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO target [AS connection-name] [USER user-name]END-EXEC.
```

## target

Write in one of the following formats:

- dbname@host:port
- tcp:postgresql://host:port/dbname[?options]
- unix:postgresql://host[:port]/[dbname][?options]  
(Definition method when using the UNIX domain socket)
- SQL string literal containing one of the above formats
- Reference to a character variable containing one of the above formats
- DEFAULT



If target is DEFAULT, the AS clause and USER clause cannot be specified.

## user-name

Write in one of the following formats:

- username
- username/password
- username IDENTIFIED BY password
- username USING password

## Description of the arguments

Argument	Description
dbname	Specify the database name.
host	Specify the host name for the connection destination.
port	Specify the port number for the database server. The default is "27500".
connection-name	Specify connection names to identify connections when multiple connections are to be processed within a single program.
username	Specify the user that will connect with the database. If this is omitted, the name used will be that of the user on the operating system that is executing the application.
password	Specify a password when authentication is required.
options	Specify the following parameter when specifying a time for timeout. Connect parameters with & when specifying more than one. The following shows the values specified for each parameter. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- connect_timeout Specify the timeout for connections. Specify a value between 0 and 2147483647 (in seconds). There is no limit set if you set 0 or an invalid value. If "1" is specified, the behavior will be the same as when "2" was specified. An error occurs when a connection cannot be established within the specified time.</li><li>- keepalives This enables keepalive.</li></ul>

Argument	Description
	<p>Keepalive is disabled if 0 is specified. Keepalive is enabled when any other value is specified. The default is keepalive enabled. Keepalive causes an error to occur when it is determined that the connection with the database is disabled.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- keepalives_idle <p>Specify the time until the system starts sending keepalive messages when communication with the database is not being performed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Linux <p>Specify a value between 1 and 32767 (in seconds). The default value of the system is used if this is not specified.</p> </li> <li>- Windows(R) <p>Specify a value between 1 and 2147483647 (in seconds). 7200 will be set as default if a value outside this range is specified or if nothing is specified.</p> </li> </ul> </li> <li>- keepalives_interval <p>Specify the interval between resends when there is no response to keepalive messages.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Linux <p>Specify a value between 1 and 32767 (in seconds). The default value of the system is used if this is not specified.</p> </li> <li>- Windows(R) <p>Specify a value between 1 and 2147483647 (in seconds). 1 will be set as default if a value outside this range is specified or if nothing is specified.</p> </li> </ul> </li> <li>- keepalives_count <p>Specify the number of resends for keepalive messages.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Linux <p>Specify a value between 1 and 127. The default value of the system is used if this is not specified.</p> </li> <li>- Windows(R) <p>The system default value is used irrespective of what is specified for this parameter.</p> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>

### Code examples for applications

```
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO tcp:postgresql://sv1:27500/mydb?
connect_timeout=20&keepalives_idle=20&keepalives_interval=5&keepalives_count=2&keepalives=
1 USER myuser/myuser01 END-EXEC.
```

## 7.4 Application Development

Refer to "[Appendix D ECOBPG - Embedded SQL in COBOL](#)" for information on developing applications.

### 7.4.1 Support for National Character Data Types

This section describes how to use the national character data types using the SQL embedded COBOL preprocessor.

The table below lists the COBOL variable types supporting the national character data types. The number of characters specified for the national character data type must be specified for the length of the host variable.

National character data type	COBOL variable type
CHARACTER( <i>n</i> )	<i>varName</i> PIC N( <i>n</i> )

National character data type	COBOL variable type
NATIONAL CHARACTER( <i>n</i> )	
CHARACTER VARYING( <i>n</i> )	<i>varName</i> PIC N( <i>n</i> ) VARYING
NATIONAL CHARACTER VARYING( <i>n</i> )	

To use COBOL variable types that support national character data types, it is necessary to specify the ECOBPG\_NCHAR environment variable.

ECOBPG\_NCHAR={ UTF16LE | UTF16BE | UTF32LE | UTF32BE | SJIS }

In SQL embedded COBOL, specify the encoding of the COBOL variable types that support national character data types.

- UTF16LE: UTF-16 little-endian
- UTF16BE: UTF-16 big-endian
- UTF32LE: UTF-32 little-endian
- UTF32BE: UTF-32 big-endian
- SJIS: Shift JIS

If this environment variable is omitted, the encoding will be determined according to the encoding system of the client.

- If UTF8 is used: UTF16 (endians will be encoded in accordance with endians of the client system)
- If SJIS is used: SJIS

If encoding is specified for the translation option when compiling with NetCOBOL, the encoding specified for the national character data types should be used for the environment variable ECOBPG\_NCHAR.

The list below shows NetCOBOL translation options and their corresponding environment variable ECOBPG\_NCHAR values.

NetCOBOL translation options	Environment variable ECOBPG_NCHAR
ENCODE (UTF-8,UTF16,LE) RCS (UTF-16,LE)	UTF-16LE
ENCODE (UTF-8,UTF-16,BE) RCS (UTF-16,BE)	UTF-16BE
ENCODE (UTF-8,UTF-32,LE)	UTF-32LE
ENCODE (UTF-8,UTF-32,BE)	UTF-32BE
ENCODE (SJIS,SJIS)	SJIS
Not specified	No need to specify

Also, if the post-compiling encoding for an application differs from the locale of the execution environment, then the client encoding must be used for the application.

The list below shows the values supported for the combinations of application encoding, locale of the execution environment, and client encodings.

Application encoding	Locale used when executing an application	Client encoding
UTF-8	UTF-8	UTF-8
	SJIS	UTF-8
SJIS	UTF-8	SJIS

Application encoding	Locale used when executing an application	Client encoding
	SJIS	SJIS

Refer to "[7.2.2 Message Language and Encoding System Used by Applications](#)" for information on how to set client encoding systems.

The following example shows host variable declaration of a national character data type.

```
01 DATA1 PIC N(10).
01 DATA2 PIC N(10) VARYING.
```

### Note

- Halfwidth characters should not be used for the national character data type COBOL variable.
- The national character data type column attribute obtained by applications should be the CHAR type.
- Encoding cannot be specified using the ENCODING clause, which is a feature of NetCOBOL.

## 7.4.2 Compiling Applications

Append the extension "pco" to the name of the source file for the embedded SQL in COBOL.

When the pco file is precompiled using the ecobpg command, COBOL source files will be created, so use the COBOL compiler for the compile.

### Precompiling example

```
ecobpg testproc.pco
```

For COBOL code notation, "fixed" or "variable" format can be specified as an ecobpg command option. If not specified, "fixed" format is used.

Refer to "[D.1 Precautions when Using Functions and Operators](#)" and "[D.12.1 ecobpg](#)" for information on COBOL code notation and how to specify options for ecobpg.

If an optimizer hint block comment is specified for the SQL statement, specify the following option in the ecobpg command:

--enable-hint

Enables the optimizer hint block comment (hereafter, referred to as the "hint clause"). If this option is not specified, the hint clause will be removed as a result of the ecobpg precompile and be disabled.

The SQL statements that can be specified in the hint clause are SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE.

The locations in which the hint clause can be specified are immediately after one of the SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, or WITH keywords. A syntax error will occur if it is specified in any other location.

Example of specifying the hint clause

```
EXEC SQL SELECT /*+ IndexScan(prod ix01) */ name_id
INTO :name_id FROM prod WHERE id = 1 END-EXEC.
```

### See

For basic usage of pg\_hint\_plan and pg\_dbms\_stats, see below.

- Control execution plans with pg\_hint\_plan

<https://www.postgresql.fastware.com/postgresql-insider-tun-hint-plan>

If the encoding used for embedded SQL source files differs from that of the locale when precompiling was executed, set the encoding for the embedded SQL source files by specifying the following option for ecobpg.

-E-encode

Specify "UTF8", "SJIS", or "EUC\_JP".

If this option is omitted, the encoding is processed based on the locale.

## Path of the library file

The ecobpg command defines a group item "sqlca\_t" to handle errors, which is defined in the library file stored in the following path:

### Linux

Library file name	The storage destination of library file
<i>SQLCA-COBOL.cob</i>	<i>fujitsuEnterprisePostgresClientInstallDir/include</i>

### Windows(R)

Library file name	The storage destination of library file
<i>SQLCA-COBOL.cob</i>	<i>fujitsuEnterprisePostgresClientInstallDir\include</i>

When the ecobpg command generates a COBOL file, it inserts a COPY statement with no options to copy the library file. Therefore, specify the path of the storage destination of library file when compiling. How to specify the path must conform to your compiler's specifications.

There is also a library file with the same contents without the extension "cob".



## Information

Refer "[D.7.2 sqlca](#)" for information on the sqlca\_t.

## Libraries to use

The applications generated by ecobpg connect to PostgreSQL through the ECPG library. The ECPG library internally loads the libpq library.

## Path of library

Refer to "[6.4.2 Compiling Applications](#)" for information on the location and name of the ECPG library. And Refer to "[Chapter 5 C Library \(libpq\)](#)" for information on the location and name of the libpq library.

Also, when using a shared library, refer to "[A.6 How to Build and Run an Application that Uses Shared Libraries](#)".

The COBOL compiler provides the how to link various libraries, so be sure to specify the path and libraries according to the specifications of your compiler.

## Entry information of subprogram

If you use the ECPG library with a dynamic program structure, copy the entry information stored below. For details, follow the specifications of your compiler.

### Linux

*fujitsuEnterprisePostgresClientInstallDir/share/cobol\_entry.info*

### Windows(R)

*fujitsuEnterprisePostgresClientInstallDir\share\cobol\_entry.info*



## Example

The examples of compiling the applications that dynamically links the COBOL language library.  
Note that "<x>" indicates the product version.

### L

#### Linux

- Linux 64-bit application:

```
cobol -M -o testproc -I/opt/fsepv<x>client64/include -L/opt/fsepv<x>client64/lib -
lecpq -lpq testproc.cob
```

- Linux 64-bit application(When to set DT\_RUNPATH):

```
cobol -c -M -o testproc.o -I/opt/fsepv<x>client64/include testproc.cob
ld -dynamic-linker /lib64/ld-linux-x86-64.so.2 -rpath /opt/fsepv<x>client64/lib --
enable-new-dtags -o testproc /usr/lib64/crti.o /usr/lib64/crt1.o /usr/lib64/crtn.o
testproc.o -L/opt/fsepv<x>client64/lib -lecpq -lpq -Bdynamic -L/opt/FJSVcbl64/lib -
lrcobol -ldl -lc
```

### W

#### Windows(R)

The examples of compiling on a 64-bit operating system.

- 64-bit application

```
> SET LIB=%ProgramFiles%\Fujitsu\fsepv<x>client64\lib;%LIB%
> cobol -I "%ProgramFiles%\Fujitsu\fsepv<x>client64\include" -M testproc.cob
> link testproc.obj F4AGCIMP.LIB LIBCMT.LIB LIBECPG.LIB LIBPQ.LIB /OUT:testproc.exe
```

- 32-bit application

[NetCOBOL V10.5 or earlier]

```
> SET LIB=%ProgramFiles(x86)%\Fujitsu\fsepv<x>client32\lib;%LIB%
> cobol32 -I "%ProgramFiles(x86)%\Fujitsu\fsepv<x>client32\include" -M testproc.cob
> link testproc.obj LIBC.LIB F3BICIMP.LIB LIBECPG.LIB LIBPQ.LIB /OUT:testproc.exe
```

[NetCOBOL V11.0 or later]

```
> SET LIB=%ProgramFiles(x86)%\Fujitsu\fsepv<x>client32\lib;%LIB%
> cobol32 -I "%ProgramFiles(x86)%\Fujitsu\fsepv<x>client32\include" -M testproc.cob
> link testproc.obj MSVCRT.LIB F3BICIMP.LIB LIBECPG.LIB LIBPQ.LIB /OUT:testproc.exe
```

## 7.4.3 Bulk INSERT

This section describes the bulk INSERT.

### Synopsis

```
EXEC SQL [ AT conn ] [ FOR { numRows | ARRAY_SIZE } ]
INSERT INTO tableName [ ( colName [, ...] ) ]
{ VALUES ( { expr | DEFAULT } [, ...] ) [, ...] | query }
[ RETURNING * | outputExpr [ [ AS ] outputName ] [, ...]
INTO outputHostVar [ [ INDICATOR ] indicatorVar ] [, ...] ] END-EXEC
```

### Description

Bulk INSERT is a feature that inserts multiple rows of data in bulk.



By specifying the array host variable that stored the data in the VALUES clause of the INSERT statement, the data for each element in the array can be inserted in bulk. This feature is used by specifying the insertion count in the FOR clause immediately before the INSERT statement.

## FOR Clause

Specify the insertion count using *numOfRows* or ARRAY\_SIZE in the FOR clause. The FOR clause can be specified only in the INSERT statement, not in other update statements.

### numOfRows and ARRAY\_SIZE

Insertion processing will be executed only for the specified count. However, if the count is 1, it will be assumed that the FOR clause was omitted when the application is executed. In this case, proceed according to the INSERT specification in the PostgreSQL Documentation.

Specify the FOR clause with a host variable defined as an integer item or with a literal.

Specify ARRAY\_SIZE to insert all elements of the array in the table. When specifying ARRAY\_SIZE, specify at least one array in *expr*.

If two or more arrays were specified in *expr*, it will be assumed that ARRAY\_SIZE is the minimum number of elements in the array.

*numOfRows* or ARRAY\_SIZE must exceed the minimum number of elements in all arrays specified in *expr*, *outputHostVar*, and *indicatorVal*.

The following example shows how to specify the FOR clause.

```
01 NUMBER-OF-ROWS PIC S9(9) COMP VALUE 10.
01 GROUP-ITEM.
05 ID1 PIC S9(9) OCCURS 25.
05 NAME PIC X(10) OCCURS 25.
* will process 10 rows
EXEC SQL FOR :NUMBER-OF-ROWS
INSERT INTO prod (name, id) VALUES (:NAME, :ID1) END-EXEC
* will process 25 rows
EXEC SQL FOR ARRAY_SIZE
INSERT INTO prod (name, id) VALUES (:NAME, :ID1) END-EXEC
```

### expr

Specify the value to be inserted in the table. Array host variables, host variable literals, strings, and pointer variables can be specified. Structure type arrays and pointer variable arrays cannot be specified.

Do not use pointer variables and ARRAY\_SIZE at the same time. The reason for this is that the number of elements in the area represented by the pointer variable cannot be determined.

### query

A query (SELECT statement) that supplies the rows to be inserted. The number of rows returned by *query* must be 1. If two or more rows are returned, an error will occur. This cannot be used at the same time as ARRAY\_SIZE.

### outputHostVar and indicatorVal

These must be array host variables or pointer variables.

## Error Messages

The messages below are output if an error occurs when the bulk INSERT is used.

### Message

---

**The value for the FOR clause must be a positive integer.****Cause**

The value given for *numOfRows* is less than or equal to 0.

**Solution**

Specify a value that is more than or equal to 1 for *numOfRows*.

**Message**

---

**Array host variable is needed when using FOR ARRAY\_SIZE.****Cause**

An array host variable is not specified in the VALUES clause.

**Solution**

Specify more than one array host variable in the VALUES clause.

**Message**

---

**The SELECT...INTO query returned too many rows in row number %d.****Cause**

The "SELECT ... INTO" query in the INSERT statement returned more than one row.

**Solution**

If *numOfRows* is more than one, the maximum number of rows that can be returned in the "SELECT ... INTO" query in the INSERT statement is one.

**Limitations**

The limitations when using bulk INSERT are given below.

- Array of structures should not be used as an input in the 'VALUES' clause.
- Array of pointers should not be used as an input in the 'VALUES' clause.
- ECOBPG supports the use of 'WITH' clause in single INSERT statements. 'WITH' clause cannot be used in bulk INSERT statements.
- If an error occurs, all bulk INSERT actions will be rolled back, therefore, no rows are inserted. However, if the RETURNING clause was used, and the error occurred while obtaining the rows after the insertion was successful, the insertion processing will not be rolled back.

**Samples**

Given below are some sample usages of the bulk INSERT functionality.

**Basic Bulk INSERT**

```
01 GROUP-ITEM.  
05 IN-F1 PIC S9(9) OCCURS 4.  
MOVE 1 TO IN-F1(1)  
MOVE 2 TO IN-F1(2)  
MOVE 3 TO IN-F1(3)  
MOVE 4 TO IN-F1(4)  
...  
EXEC SQL FOR 3 INSERT INTO target (f1) VALUES (:IN-F1) END-EXEC
```

The number of rows to insert indicated by the FOR clause is 3, so the data in the first 3 elements of the host array variable are inserted into the table. The contents of the target table will be:

```
f1
----
1
2
3
(3 rows)
```

Also a host integer variable can be used to indicate the number of rows that will be inserted in FOR clause, which will produce the same result as above:

```
01 NUM PIC S9(9) COMP VALUE 3.
01 GROUP-ITEM.
05 IN-F1 PIC S9(9) OCCURS 4.
MOVE 1 TO IN-F1(1)
MOVE 2 TO IN-F1(2)
MOVE 3 TO IN-F1(3)
MOVE 4 TO IN-F1(4)
...
EXEC SQL FOR :NUM INSERT INTO target (f1) VALUES (:IN-F1) END-EXEC
```

### Inserting constant values

Constant values can also be bulk INSERTed into the table as follows:

```
EXEC SQL FOR 3 INSERT INTO target (f1,f2) VALUES (DEFAULT,'hello') END-EXEC
```

Assuming the 'DEFAULT' value for the 'f1' column is '0', the contents of the target table will be:

```
f1 | f2
---+-----
0 | hello
0 | hello
0 | hello
(3 rows)
```

### Using ARRAY\_SIZE

'FOR ARRAY\_SIZE' can be used to insert the entire contents of a host array variable, without explicitly specifying the size, into the table.

```
01 GROUP-ITEM.
05 IN-F1 PIC S9(9) OCCURS 4.
MOVE 1 TO IN-F1(1)
MOVE 2 TO IN-F1(2)
MOVE 3 TO IN-F1(3)
MOVE 4 TO IN-F1(4)
...
EXEC SQL FOR ARRAY_SIZE INSERT INTO target (f1) VALUES (:IN-F1) END-EXEC
```



### Note

If there are multiple host array variables specified as input values, then the number of rows inserted is same as the smallest array size. The example given below demonstrates this usage.

```
01 GROUP-ITEM.
05 IN-F1 PIC S9(9) OCCURS 4.
05 IN-F3 PIC X(10) OCCURS 3.
MOVE 1 TO IN-F1(1)
MOVE 2 TO IN-F1(2)
MOVE 3 TO IN-F1(3)
```

```
MOVE 4 TO IN-F1(4)
MOVE "one" TO IN-F3(1)
MOVE "two" TO IN-F3(2)
MOVE "three" TO IN-F3(3)
...
EXEC SQL FOR ARRAY_SIZE INSERT INTO target (f1,f3) VALUES (:IN-F1,:IN-F3) END-EXEC
```

In the above example, the array sizes are 3 and 4. Given that the smallest array size is 3, only three rows are inserted into the table. The table contents are given below.

f1	f3
1	one
2	two
3	three

(3 rows)

### Using SELECT query

The result of a SELECT query can be used to insert values.

```
EXEC SQL FOR 4 INSERT INTO target(f1) SELECT age FROM source WHERE name LIKE 'foo' END-EXEC
```

In the example above, assuming that the SELECT query returns one row, the same row will be inserted into the table four times.



#### Note

If "2" or more is specified for the FOR clause, the INSERT statement returns an error when two or more rows of query results are returned.

If "1" is specified for the FOR clause, all rows returned by the SELECT query will be inserted into the table.

```
EXEC SQL FOR 1 INSERT INTO target(f1) SELECT age FROM source END-EXEC
```

In the example above, "1" specified for the FOR clause indicates all returned rows.

### Using RETURNING clause

Bulk INSERT supports the same RETURNING clause syntax as normal INSERT. An example is given below.

```
01 GROUP-ITEM.
05 IN-F1 PIC S9(9) OCCURS 4.
05 OUT-F1 PIC S9(9) OCCURS 4.
MOVE 1 TO IN-F1(1)
MOVE 2 TO IN-F1(2)
MOVE 3 TO IN-F1(3)
MOVE 4 TO IN-F1(4)
...
EXEC SQL FOR 3 INSERT INTO target (f1) VALUES (:IN-F1) RETURNING f1 INTO :OUT-F1 END-EXEC
```

After the execution of the above INSERT statement, the 'out\_f1' array will have 3 elements with the values of '1', '2' and '3'.

## 7.4.4 DECLARE STATEMENT

Refer to "DECLARE STATEMENT" in the PostgreSQL Documentation.

## 7.4.5 Creating Applications while in Database Multiplexing Mode

This section explains points to consider when creating applications while in database multiplexing mode.



See

- Refer to the Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing) for information on database multiplexing mode.
- Refer to "Application Development" in the Cluster Operation Guide (PRIMECLUSTER) for points to consider when creating applications using the failover feature integrated with the cluster software.

### 7.4.5.1 Errors when an Application Connection Switch Occurs and Corresponding Actions

If an application connection switch occurs while in database multiplexing mode, explicitly close the connection and then reestablish the connection or reexecute the application.

The table below shows errors that may occur during a switch, and the corresponding action to take.

State		Error information (*1)	Action
Server failure or Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres system failure	Failure occurs during access	57P01 57P02 YE000 26000 40001	After the switch is complete, reestablish the connection, or reexecute the application.
	Accessed during system failure	08001	
Switch to the standby server	Switched during access	57P01 57P02 YE000 26000 40001	
	Accessed during switch	08001	

\*1: Return value of SQLSTATE.

# Chapter 8 SQL References

This chapter explains the SQL statement features expanded by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

## 8.1 Expanded Trigger Definition Feature

This section explains the expanded trigger definition feature.

### 8.1.1 CREATE TRIGGER

In addition to features of PostgreSQL, triggers can be created with DO option.

#### Synopsis

```
CREATE [ OR REPLACE ] [ CONSTRAINT ] TRIGGER name { BEFORE | AFTER | INSTEAD OF } { event
[ OR ... ] }
    ON table_name
    [ FROM referenced_table_name ]
    [ NOT DEFERRABLE | [ DEFERRABLE ] [ INITIALLY IMMEDIATE | INITIALLY DEFERRED ] ]
    [ REFERENCING { { OLD | NEW } TABLE [ AS ] transition_relation_name } [ ... ] ]
    [ FOR [ EACH ] { ROW | STATEMENT } ]
    [ WHEN ( condition ) ]
    { EXECUTE { FUNCTION | PROCEDURE } function_name ( arguments )
      | DO [ LANGUAGE lang_name ] code }
```

#### Description

Refer to the PostgreSQL Documentation for information about CREATE TRIGGER. This section describes DO option.

A trigger which is created with DO option will be associated with the specified table or view and will execute the specified code by the specified procedural language of DO (unnamed code block) when certain events occur.

#### Parameters

**lang\_name**

The name of the language that the function is implemented in.

plpgsql is supported in CREATE TRIGGER.

**code**

When the certain events occur, it executes the code in a specified procedural language. The unnamed code block does not require a prior definition like a function. Syntax is same as procedural language.



#### Note

- A trigger defined with DO option cannot be replaced by a trigger defined with EXECUTE PROCEDURE option.
- A trigger defined with EXECUTE PROCEDURE option cannot be replaced by a trigger defined with DO option.

#### Examples

It executes the code block that is specified by DO before the table is updated.

(Example that LANGUAGE is plpgsql)

```
CREATE TRIGGER check_update
    BEFORE UPDATE ON accounts
```

```
FOR EACH ROW
DO $$BEGIN RETURN NEW; END;$$ ;
```



### Information

When a trigger created with DO option, a new function is created internally. The name of function is "schema name"."on table name"\_"trigger name"\_TRIGPROC(serial number).

## 8.1.2 How to Define Triggers in pgAdmin

The expanded features of the trigger definition can also be used in pgAdmin.



### See

Refer to "pgAdmin Help" for information on how to define triggers using pgAdmin.

# Chapter 9 Compatibility with Oracle Databases

This chapter describes the environment settings and functionality offered for features that are compatible with Oracle databases.

## 9.1 Overview

Features compatible with Oracle databases are provided. These features enable you to easily migrate to Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres and reduce the costs of reconfiguring applications.

The table below lists features compatible with Oracle databases.

Table 9.1 Features compatible with Oracle databases

Category		Feature	
		Item	Overview
SQL	Queries	Outer join operator (+)	Operator for outer joins
		DUAL table	Table provided by the system
	Functions	DECODE	Compares values, and if they match, returns a corresponding value
		SUBSTR	Extracts part of a string using characters to specify position and length
		NVL	Returns a substitute value when a value is NULL
Package		DBMS_ALERT	Sends alerts
		DBMS_ASSERT	Perform assertions on input values
		DBMS_OUTPUT	Sends messages to clients
		DBMS_PIPE	Execution of inter-session communication
		DBMS_RANDOM	Random number generation
		DBMS_UTILITY	Addition of various functions
		UTL_FILE	Enables text file operations
		DBMS_SQL	Enables dynamic SQL execution



See

In addition to the above, refer to the file below for information on the features compatible with Oracle databases.

L

- Linux:  
*fujitsuEnterprisePostgresInstallDir/share/doc/extension/README.asciidoc*

W

- Windows(R):  
*fujitsuEnterprisePostgresInstallDir\doc\extension\README.asciidoc*

## 9.2 Precautions when Using the Features Compatible with Oracle Databases

This section provides notes on using the features compatible with oracle databases.



## 9.2.1 Notes on search\_path

---

Objects defined with the features compatible with oracle databases are defined in the oracle schema. Therefore, when using this function, it is necessary to add "oracle" to the "search\_path" parameter in postgresql.conf.

```
search_path = '$user', public, oracle'
```



### Information

- The search\_path parameter specifies the order in which schemas are searched.
- Refer to "Statement Behavior" in "Client Connection Defaults" in "Server Administration" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on search\_path.

## 9.2.2 Notes on SUBSTR

---

SUBSTR is implemented in Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres and Oracle databases using different external specifications.

For this reason, when using SUBSTR, define which specification is to take precedence. In the default configuration of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres, the specifications of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres take precedence.

When using the SUBSTR function compatible with Oracle databases, set "oracle" and "pg\_catalog" in the "search\_path" parameter of postgresql.conf. You must specify "oracle" before "pg\_catalog" when doing this.

```
search_path = '$user', public, oracle, pg_catalog'
```

## 9.2.3 Notes when Integrating with the Interface for Application Development

---

The SQL noted in "[Table 9.1 Features compatible with Oracle databases](#)" can be used in the interface for application development.

Note that both "public" and the schema name in the SQL statement must be specified as the SearchPath parameter before "oracle" and "pg\_catalog" when using the Oracle database-compatible feature SUBSTR.

## 9.3 Queries

---

The following queries are supported:

- [Outer Join Operator \(+\)](#)
- [DUAL Table](#)

### 9.3.1 Outer Join Operator (+)

---

In the WHERE clause conditional expression, by adding the plus sign (+), which is the outer join operator, to the column of the table you want to add as a table join, it is possible to achieve an outer join that is the same as a joined table (OUTER JOIN).

Syntax

SELECT statement

```
SELECT ... [WHERE [NOT] joinCond ...] ...  
SELECT ... [WHERE srchCond ]... ] ...
```

Join condition

```
{ colSpec(+) = colSpec | colSpec = colSpec(+) }
```



Here we are dealing only with the WHERE clause of the SELECT statement. Refer to "SQL Commands" in "Reference" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on the overall syntax of the SELECT statement.

## General rules

### WHERE clause

- The WHERE clause specifies search condition or join conditions for the tables that are derived.
- Search conditions are any expressions that return BOOLEAN types as the results of evaluation. Any rows that do not meet these conditions are excluded from the output. When the values of the actual rows are assigned to variables and if the expression returns TRUE, those rows are considered to have met the conditions.
- Join conditions are comparison conditions that specify outer join operators. Join conditions in a WHERE clause return a table that includes all the rows that meet the join conditions, including rows that do not meet all the join conditions.
- Join conditions take precedence over search conditions. For this reason, all rows returned by the join conditions are subject to the search conditions.
- The following rules and restrictions apply to queries that use outer join operators. It is therefore recommended to use FROM clause joined tables (OUTER JOIN) rather than outer join operators:
  - Outer join operators can only be specified in the WHERE clause.
  - Outer join operators can only be specified for base tables or views.
  - To perform outer joins using multiple join conditions, it is necessary to specify outer join operators for all join conditions.
  - When combining join conditions with constants, specify outer join operators in the corresponding column specification. When not specified, they will be treated as search conditions.
  - The results column of the outer join of table t1 is not returned if table t1 is joined with table t2 by specifying an outer join operator in the column of t1, then table t1 is joined with table t3 by using search conditions.
  - It is not possible to specify columns in the same table as the left/right column specification of a join condition.
  - It is not possible to specify an expression other than a column specification for outer join operators, but they may be specified for the columns that compose the expression.

There are the following limitations on the functionality of outer join operators when compared with joined tables (OUTER JOIN). To use functionality that is not available with outer join operators, use joined tables (OUTER JOIN).

Table 9.2 Range of functionality with outer join operators

Functionality available with joined tables (OUTER JOIN)	Outer join operator
Outer joins of two tables	Y
Outer joins of three or more tables	Y (*1)
Used together with joined tables within the same query	N
Use of the OR logical operator to a join condition	N
Use of an IN predicate to a join condition	N
Use of subqueries to a join condition	N

Y: Available

N: Not available

\*1: The outer joins by outer join operators can return outer join results only for one other table. For this reason, to combine outer joins of table t1 and table t2 or table t2 and table t3, it is not possible to specify outer join operators simultaneously for table t2.



## Example

Table configuration

t1

col1	col2	col3
1001	AAAAA	1000
1002	BBBBB	2000
1003	CCCCC	3000

t2

col1	col2
1001	aaaaa
1002	bbbbbb
1004	dddddd

Example 1: Return all rows in table t2, including those that do not exist in table t1.

```
SELECT *
  FROM t1, t2
 WHERE t1.col1(+) = t2.col1;
col1 |      col2      | col3 | col1 |      col2
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----
1001 | AAAAA         | 1000 | 1001 | aaaaa
1002 | BBBBB         | 2000 | 1002 | bbbbbb
      |                |      | 1004 | ddddd
(3 rows)
```

This is the same syntax as the joined table (OUTER JOIN) of the FROM clause shown next.

```
SELECT *
  FROM t1 RIGHT OUTER JOIN t2
        ON t1.col1 = t2.col1;
```

Example 2: In the following example, the results are filtered to records above 2000 in t1.col3 by search conditions, and the records are those in table t2 that include ones that do not exist in table t1. After filtering with the join conditions, there is further filtering with the search conditions, so there will only be one record returned.

```
SELECT *
  FROM t1, t2
 WHERE t1.col1(+) = t2.col1
        AND t1.col3 >= 2000;
col1 |      col2      | col3 | col1 |      col2
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----
1002 | BBBBB         | 2000 | 1002 | bbbbbb
(1 row)
```

This is the same syntax as the joined table (OUTER JOIN) of the FROM clause shown next.

```
SELECT *
FROM t1 RIGHT OUTER JOIN t2
      ON t1.col1 = t2.col1
WHERE t1.col3 >= 2000;
```

### 9.3.2 DUAL Table

DUAL table is a virtual table provided by the system. Use when executing SQL where access to a base table is not required, such as when performing tests to get result expressions such as functions and operators.



#### Example

In the following example, the current system date is returned.

```
SELECT  CURRENT_DATE  "date" FROM DUAL;
      date
-----
2013-05-14
(1 row)
```

## 9.4 SQL Function Reference

The following SQL functions are supported:

- [DECODE](#)
- [SUBSTR](#)
- [NVL](#)

### 9.4.1 DECODE

#### Description

Compares values and if they match, returns a corresponding value.

#### Syntax

```
DECODE(expr, srch, result [, srch, result ]... [, default ])
```

#### General rules

- DECODE compares values of the value expression to be converted and the search values one by one. If the values match, a corresponding result value is returned. If no values match, the default value is returned if it has been specified. A NULL value is returned if a default value has not been specified.
- If the same search value is specified more than once, then the result value returned is the one listed for the first occurrence of the search value.
- The following data types can be used in result values and in the default value:
  - CHAR
  - VARCHAR
  - NCHAR
  - NCHAR VARYING
  - TEXT
  - INTEGER
  - BIGINT

- NUMERIC
  - DATE
  - TIME WITHOUT TIME ZONE
  - TIMESTAMP WITHOUT TIME ZONE
  - TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE
- The same data type must be specified for the values to be converted and the search values. However, note that different data types may also be specified if a literal is specified in the search value, and the value expression to be converted contains data types that can be converted. When specifying literals, refer to "[Table A.1 Data type combinations that contain literals and can be converted implicitly](#)" in "[A.3 Implicit Data Type Conversions](#)" for information on the data types that can be specified.
  - If the result values and default value are all literals, the data types for these values will be as shown below:
    - If all values are string literals, all will become character types.
    - If there is one or more numeric literal, all will become numeric types.
    - If there is one or more literal cast to the datetime/time types, all will become datetime/time types.
  - If the result values and default value contain a mixture of literals and non-literals, the literals will be converted to the data types of the non-literals. When specifying literals, refer to "[Table A.1 Data type combinations that contain literals and can be converted implicitly](#)" in "[A.3 Implicit Data Type Conversions](#)" for information on the data types that can be converted.
  - The same data type must be specified for all result values and for the default value. However, different data types can be specified if the data type of any of the result values or default value can be converted - these data types are listed below:

**Table 9.3 Data type combinations that can be converted by DECODE (summary)**

		Other result values or default value		
		Numeric type	Character type	Date/time type
Result value (any)	Numeric type	Y	N	N
	Character type	N	Y	N
	Date/time type	N	N	S (*1)

Y: Can be converted

S: Some data types can be converted

N: Cannot be converted

\*1: The data types that can be converted for date/time types are listed below:

**Table 9.4 Result value and default value date/time data types that can be converted by DECODE**

		Other result values or default value			
		DATE	TIME WITHOUT TIME ZONE	TIMESTAMP WITHOUT TIME ZONE	TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE
Result value (any)	DATE	Y	N	Y	Y
	TIME WITHOUT TIME ZONE	N	Y	N	N
	TIMESTAMP WITHOUT TIME ZONE	Y	N	Y	Y
	TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE	Y	N	Y	Y

Y: Can be converted  
N: Cannot be converted

- The data type of the return value will be the data type within the result or default value that is longest and has the highest precision.

### Example

In the following example, the value of col3 in table t1 is compared and converted to a different value. If the col3 value matches search value 1, the result value returned is "one". If the col3 value does not match any of search values 1, 2, or 3, the default value "other number" is returned.

```
SELECT col1, DECODE(col3, 1000, 'one',
                        2000, 'two',
                        3000, 'three',
                        'other number') "num-word"
      FROM t1;
col1  | num-word
-----+-----
 1001 | one
 1002 | two
 1003 | three
(3 rows)
```

## 9.4.2 SUBSTR

### Description

Extracts part of a string using characters to specify position and length.

### Syntax

```
SUBSTR(str, startPos [, len ])
```

### General rules

- SUBSTR extracts and returns a substring of string *str*, beginning at position *startPos*, for number of characters *len*.
- When *startPos* is positive, it will be the number of characters from the beginning of the string.
- When *startPos* is 0, it will be treated as 1.
- When *startPos* is negative, it will be the number of characters from the end of the string.
- When *len* is not specified, all characters to the end of the string are returned. NULL is returned when *len* is less than 1.
- For *startPos* and *len*, specify a SMALLINT or INTEGER type. When specifying literals, refer to "[Table A.1 Data type combinations that contain literals and can be converted implicitly](#)" in "[A.3 Implicit Data Type Conversions](#)" for information on the data types that can be specified.
- The data type of the return value is TEXT.

### Note

- There are two types of SUBSTR. One that behaves as described above, and one that behaves the same as SUBSTRING. The search\_path parameter must be modified for it to behave the same as the specification described above.
- It is recommended to set search\_path in postgresql.conf. In this case, it will be effective for each instance. Refer to "[9.2.2 Notes on SUBSTR](#)" for information on how to configure postgresql.conf.
- The configuration of search\_path can be done at the user level or at the database level. Setting examples are shown below.
  - Example of setting at the user level

This can be set by executing an SQL command. In this example, user1 is used as the username.

```
ALTER USER user1 SET search_path = "$user",public,oracle,pg_catalog;
```

- Example of setting at the database level

This can be set by executing an SQL command. In this example, db1 will be used as the database name.

```
ALTER DATABASE db1 SET search_path = "$user",public,oracle,pg_catalog;
```

You must specify "oracle" before "pg\_catalog".

- If the change has not been implemented, SUBSTR is the same as SUBSTRING.



## See

Refer to "SQL Commands" in "Reference" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on ALTER USER and ALTER DATABASE.



## Information

The general rules for SUBSTRING are as follows:

- The start position will be from the beginning of the string, whether positive, 0, or negative.
- When *len* is not specified, all characters to the end of the string are returned.
- An empty string is returned if no string is extracted or *len* is less than 1.



## See

Refer to "String Functions and Operators" under "The SQL Language" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on SUBSTRING.



## Example

In the following example, part of the string "ABCDEFGH" is extracted:

```
SELECT SUBSTR('ABCDEFGH',3,4) "Substring" FROM DUAL;

Substring
-----
CDEF
(1 row)

SELECT SUBSTR('ABCDEFGH',-5,4) "Substring" FROM DUAL;

Substring
-----
(1 row)
```

## 9.4.3 NVL

Description

Returns a substitute value when a value is NULL.

## Syntax

`NVL(expr1, expr2)`

## General rules

- NVL returns a substitute value when the specified value is NULL. When *expr1* is NULL, *expr2* is returned. When *expr1* is not NULL, *expr1* is returned.
- Specify the same data types for *expr1* and *expr2*. However, if a constant is specified in *expr2*, and the data type can also be converted by *expr1*, different data types can be specified. When this happens, the conversion by *expr2* is done to suit the data type in *expr1*, so the value of *expr2* returned when *expr1* is a NULL value will be the value converted in the data type of *expr1*.
- When specifying literals, refer to "Table A.1 Data type combinations that contain literals and can be converted implicitly" in "A.3 Implicit Data Type Conversions" for information on the data types that can be converted.



## Example

In the following example, "IS NULL" is returned if the value of col1 in table t1 is a NULL value.

```
SELECT col2, NVL(col1, 'IS NULL') "nv1" FROM t1;
col2 |  nv1
-----+-----
aaa  | IS NULL
(1 row)
```

## 9.5 Package Reference

A "package" is a group of features, brought together by schemas, that have a single functionality, and are used by calling from PL/pgSQL.

The following packages are supported:

- DBMS\_ALERT
- DBMS\_ASSERTION
- DBMS\_OUTPUT
- DBMS\_PIPE
- DBMS\_RANDOM
- DBMS\_UTILITUY
- UTL\_FILE
- [DBMS\\_SQL](#)

To call each feature from PL/pgSQL, use the PERFORM or SELECT statement and qualify the feature name with the package name. For more information on the calling format, refer to the feature-specific description for each package.

In the following, explain DBMS\_SQL among the supported packages. For other packages, refer to the README stored in the installation location.



## See

For packages other than DBMS\_SQL, refer to the following file.



- Linux:  
`fujitsuEnterprisePostgresInstallDir/share/doc/extension/README.asciidoc`



- Windows(R):  
*fujitsuEnterprisePostgresInstallDir\doc\extension\README.asciidoc*

## 9.5.1 DBMS\_SQL

### Overview

Dynamic SQL can be executed from PL/pgSQL.

### Features

Feature	Description
BIND_VARIABLE	Sets values in the host variable within the SQL statement.
CLOSE_CURSOR	Closes the cursor.
COLUMN_VALUE	Retrieves the value of the column in the select list extracted with FETCH_ROWS.
DEFINE_COLUMN	Defines the column from which values are extracted and the storage destination.
EXECUTE	Executes SQL statements.
FETCH_ROWS	Positions the specified cursor at the next row and extracts values from the row.
OPEN_CURSOR	Opens a new cursor.
PARSE	Parses SQL statements.



### Note

- In DBMS\_SQL, the data types supported in dynamic SQL are limited, and therefore the user must consider this. The supported data types are:
  - INTEGER
  - DECIMAL
  - NUMERIC
  - REAL
  - DOUBLE PRECISION
  - CHAR(\*1)
  - VARCHAR(\*1)
  - NCHAR(\*1)
  - NCHAR VARYING(\*1)
  - TEXT
  - DATE
  - TIMESTAMP WITHOUT TIME ZONE
  - TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE
  - INTERVAL(\*2)
  - SMALLINT

- BIGINT

\*1:

The host variables with CHAR, VARCHAR, NCHAR, and NCHAR VARYING data types are treated as TEXT, to match the string function arguments and return values. Refer to "String Functions and Operators" in "Functions and Operators" in "The SQL Language" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on string functions.

When specifying the arguments of the features compatible with Oracle databases NVL and/or DECODE, use CAST to convert the data types of the host variables to ensure that data types between arguments are the same.

\*2:

When using COLUMN\_VALUE to obtain an INTERVAL type value specified in the select list, use an INTERVAL type variable with a wide range such as when no interval qualifier is specified, or with a range that matches that of the variable in the select list. If an interval qualifier variable with a narrow range is specified, then the value within the interval qualifier range will be obtained, but an error that the values outside the range have been truncated will not occur.



## Example

This example illustrates where a value expression that returns an INTERVAL value is set in the select list and the result is received with COLUMN\_VALUE. Note that the SQL statement operation result returns a value within the INTERVAL DAY TO SECOND range.

### [Bad example]

Values of MINUTE, and those after MINUTE, are truncated, because the variable(v\_interval) is INTERVAL DAY TO HOUR.

```
v_interval      INTERVAL DAY TO HOUR;
...
PERFORM DBMS_SQL.PARSE(cursor, 'SELECT CURRENT_TIMESTAMP - ''2010-01-01'' FROM
DUAL', 1);
...
SELECT value INTO v_interval FROM DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE(cursor, 1, v_interval);
result:1324 days 09:00:00
```

### [Good example]

By ensuring that the variable(v\_interval) is INTERVAL, the values are received correctly.

```
v_interval      INTERVAL;
...
PERFORM DBMS_SQL.PARSE(cursor, 'SELECT CURRENT_TIMESTAMP - ''2010-01-01'' FROM
DUAL', 1);
...
SELECT value INTO v_interval FROM DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE(cursor, 1, v_interval);
result:1324 days 09:04:37.530623
```

## Syntax

```
{ BIND_VARIABLE(cursor, varName, val [, len ])
| CLOSE_CURSOR(cursor)
| COLUMN_VALUE(cursor, colPos, varName)
| DEFINE_COLUMN(cursor, colPos, varName [, len ])
| EXECUTE(cursor)
| FETCH_ROWS(cursor)
| OPEN_CURSOR([parm1 ])
| PARSE(cursor, sqlStmt, parm1 [, parm2, parm3, parm4 ])
}
```

### 9.5.1.1 Description

This section explains each feature of DBMS\_SQL.

## BIND\_VARIABLE

- BIND\_VARIABLE sets values in the host variable within the SQL statement.
- Specify the cursor number to be processed.
- Specify the name of the host variable within the SQL statement using a string for the host variable name.
- Specify the value set in the host variable. The data type of the host variable is the same as that of the value expression
  - it is implicitly converted in accordance with its position within the SQL statement. Refer to "[A.3 Implicit Data Type Conversions](#)" for information on implicit conversions.
- If the value is a character type, the string length is the number of characters. If the string length is not specified, the size is the total length of the string.
- It is necessary to place a colon at the beginning of the host variable in SQL statements to identify the host variable. The colon does not have to be added to the host variable names specified at BIND\_VARIABLE. The following shows examples of host variable names specified with SQL statements and host variable names specified with BIND\_VARIABLE:

```
PERFORM DBMS_SQL.PARSE(cursor, 'SELECT emp_name FROM emp WHERE sal > :x', 1);
```

In this example, BIND\_VARIABLE will be as follows:

```
PERFORM DBMS_SQL.BIND_VARIABLE(cursor, ':x', 3500);
```

Or,

```
PERFORM DBMS_SQL.BIND_VARIABLE(cursor, 'x', 3500);
```

- The length of the host variable name can be up to 30 bytes (excluding colons).
- If the data type of the set value is string, specify the effective size of the column value as the fourth argument.

### Example

.....

If the data type of the value to be set is not a string:

```
PERFORM DBMS_SQL.BIND_VARIABLE(cursor, ':NO', 1);
```

If the data type of the value to be set is a string:

```
PERFORM DBMS_SQL.BIND_VARIABLE(cursor, ':NAME', h_memid, 5);
```

.....

## CLOSE\_CURSOR

- CLOSE\_CURSOR closes the cursor.
- Specify the cursor number to be processed.
- The value returned is a NULL value.

### Example

```
cursor := DBMS_SQL.CLOSE_CURSOR(cursor);
```

.....

## COLUMN\_VALUE

- COLUMN\_VALUE retrieves the value of the column in the select list extracted with FETCH\_ROWS.

- Specify the cursor number to be processed.
- Specify the position of the column of the select list in the SELECT statement. The position of the first column is 1.
- Specify the destination variable name.
- Use a SELECT statement to obtain the values of the value, column\_error, and actual\_length columns.
- The value column returns the value of the column specified at the column position. The data type of the variable name must match that of the column. If the data type of the column in the SELECT statement specified in PARSE is not compatible with DBMS\_SQL, use CAST to convert to a compatible data type.
- The data type of the column\_error column is NUMERIC. If the column value could not be set correctly in the value column, a value other than 0 will be returned:  
22001: The extracted string has been truncated  
22002: The extracted value contains a NULL value
- The data type of the actual\_length column is INTEGER. If the extracted value is a character type, the number of characters will be returned (if the value was truncated, the number of characters prior to the truncation will be returned), otherwise, the number of bytes will be returned.

### Example

When retrieving the value of the column, the error code, and the actual length of the column value:

```
SELECT value, column_error, actual_length INTO v_memid, v_col_err, v_act_len FROM
DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE(cursor, 1, v_memid);
```

When retrieving just the value of the column:

```
SELECT value INTO v_memid FROM DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE(cursor, 1, v_memid);
```

## DEFINE\_COLUMN

- DEFINE\_COLUMN defines the column from which values are extracted and the storage destination.
- Specify the cursor number to be processed.
- Specify the position of the column in the select list in the SELECT statement. The position of the first column is 1.
- Specify the destination variable name. The data type should be match with the data type of the column from which the value is to be extracted. If the data type of the column in the SELECT statement specified in PARSE is not compatible with DBMS\_SQL, use CAST to convert to a compatible data type.
- Specify the maximum number of characters of character type column values.
- If the data type of the column value is string, specify the effective size of the column value as the fourth argument.

### Example

When the data type of the column value is not a string:

```
PERFORM DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_COLUMN(cursor, 1, v_memid);
```

When the data type of the column value is a string:

```
PERFORM DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_COLUMN(cursor, 1, v_memid, 10);
```

## EXECUTE

- EXECUTE executes SQL statements.

- Specify the cursor number to be processed.
- The return value is an INTEGER type, is valid only with INSERT statement, UPDATE statement, and DELETE statement, and is the number of rows processed. Anything else is invalid.

### Example

```
ret := DBMS_SQL.EXECUTE(cursor);
```

## FETCH\_ROWS

- FETCH\_ROWS positions at the next row and extracts values from the row.
- Specify the cursor number to be processed.
- The return value is an INTEGER type and is the number of rows extracted. 0 is returned if all are extracted.
- The extracted information is retrieved with COLUMN\_VALUE.

### Example

```
LOOP
    IF DBMS_SQL.FETCH_ROWS(cursor) = 0 THEN
        EXIT;
    END IF;

    ...

END LOOP;
```

## OPEN\_CURSOR

- OPEN\_CURSOR opens a new cursor.
- The parameter is used for compatibility with Oracle databases only, and is ignored by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres. An INTEGER type can be specified, but it will be ignored. If migrating from an Oracle database, specify 1.
- Close unnecessary cursors by executing CLOSE\_CURSOR.
- The return value is an INTEGER type and is the cursor number.

### Example

```
cursor := DBMS_SQL.OPEN_CURSOR();
```

## PARSE

- PARSE analyzes dynamic SQL statements.
- Specify the cursor number to be processed.
- Specify the SQL statement to be parsed.
- Parameters 1, 2, 3, and 4 are used for compatibility with Oracle databases only, and are ignored by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres. If you are specifying values anyway, specify the following:
  - Parameter 1 is an INTEGER type. Specify 1.

- Parameters 2 and 3 are TEXT types. Specify NULL.
  - Parameter 4 is a BOOLEAN type. Specify TRUE.
- If migrating from an Oracle database, the specified values for parameters 2, 3, and 4 do not need to be changed.
- Add a colon to the beginning of host variables in SQL statements.
  - The DDL statement is executed when PARSE is issued. EXECUTE is not required for the DDL statement.
  - If PARSE is called again for opened cursors, the content in the data regions within the cursors is reset, and the SQL statement is parsed anew.



### Example

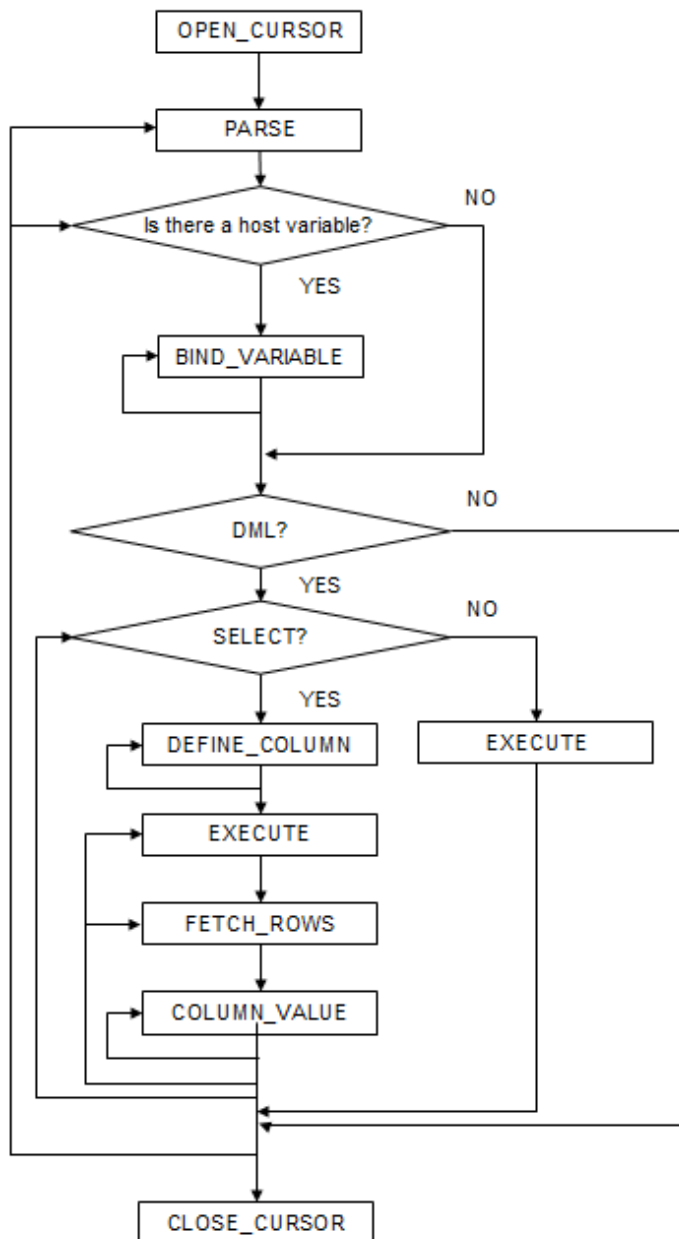
```
PERFORM DBMS_SQL.PARSE(cursor, 'SELECT memid, memnm FROM member WHERE memid = :NO', 1);
```

## 9.5.1.2 Example

This section explains the flow of DBMS\_SQL and provides an example.

## Flow of DBMS\_SQL

Flow of DBMS\_SQL



## Example

```
CREATE FUNCTION smp_00()  
RETURNS INTEGER  
AS $$  
DECLARE  
    str_sql      VARCHAR(255);  
    cursor       INTEGER;  
    h_smpid      INTEGER;  
    v_smpid      INTEGER;  
    v_smpnm      VARCHAR(20);  
    v_smpage     INTEGER;  
    errcd       INTEGER;
```

```

length      INTEGER;
ret         INTEGER;
BEGIN
    str_sql  := 'SELECT smpid, smpnm, smpage FROM smp_tbl WHERE smpid < :H_SMPID ORDER BY
smpid';
    h_smpid  := 3;
    v_smpid  := 0;
    v_smpnm  := '';
    v_smpage := 0;

    cursor := DBMS_SQL.OPEN_CURSOR();

    PERFORM DBMS_SQL.PARSE(cursor, str_sql, 1);

    PERFORM DBMS_SQL.BIND_VARIABLE(cursor, ':H_SMPID', h_smpid);

    PERFORM DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_COLUMN(cursor, 1, v_smpid);
    PERFORM DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_COLUMN(cursor, 2, v_smpnm, 10);
    PERFORM DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_COLUMN(cursor, 3, v_smpage);

    ret := DBMS_SQL.EXECUTE(cursor);
    loop
        if DBMS_SQL.FETCH_ROWS(cursor) = 0 then
            EXIT;
        end if;

        SELECT value,column_error,actual_length INTO v_smpid,errcd,length FROM
DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE(cursor, 1, v_smpid);
        RAISE NOTICE '-----';
        RAISE NOTICE '-----';
        RAISE NOTICE 'smpid      = %', v_smpid;
        RAISE NOTICE 'errcd      = %', errcd;
        RAISE NOTICE 'length     = %', length;

        SELECT value,column_error,actual_length INTO v_smpnm,errcd,length FROM
DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE(cursor, 2, v_smpnm);
        RAISE NOTICE '-----';
        RAISE NOTICE 'smpnm      = %', v_smpnm;
        RAISE NOTICE 'errcd      = %', errcd;
        RAISE NOTICE 'length     = %', length;

        select value,column_error,actual_length INTO v_smpage,errcd,length FROM
DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE(cursor, 3, v_smpage);
        RAISE NOTICE '-----';
        RAISE NOTICE 'smpage      = %', v_smpage;
        RAISE NOTICE 'errcd      = %', errcd;
        RAISE NOTICE 'length     = %', length;
        RAISE NOTICE '';
    end loop;

    cursor := DBMS_SQL.CLOSE_CURSOR(cursor);
    RETURN 0;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;

```



# Chapter 10 Application Connection Switch Feature

The application connection switch feature enables automatic connection to the target server when there are multiple servers with redundant configurations.

When using this feature, specify the primary server and secondary server as the connected servers in the application connection information. A standby server can optionally be prioritized over the primary server as the target server.

If an application connection switch occurs, explicitly close the connection and then reestablish the connection or reexecute the application. Refer to "Errors when an Application Connection Switch Occurs and Corresponding Actions" of the relevant client interface for information on how to confirm the switch.

## 10.1 Connection Information for the Application Connection Switch Feature

To use the application connection switch feature, set the information shown below when connecting the database.

### IP address or host name

Specify the IP address or host name that will be used to configure the database multiplexing system.

### Port number

A port number used by each database server to listen for connections from applications.

In each client interface, multiple port numbers can be specified, however in the format shown below, for example:

host1,host2:port2

### JDBC and .NET

If only one port number is specified, it will be assumed that host1: 27500 (the default value) and host2:port2 were specified.

Omit all port numbers, or specify only one per server.

### Others

If only one port number is specified, it will be assumed that the same port is used for all the hosts.

### Target server

From the specified connection destination server information, specify the selection sequence of the servers to which the application will connect. The values specified for the target server have the meanings shown below. If a value is omitted, "any" will be assumed.

### Primary server

The primary server is selected as the connection target from the specified "IP addresses or host names". Specify this to perform tasks that can be performed only on the primary server, such as applications in line with updates, or management tasks such as REINDEX and VACUUM.

### Standby server

The standby server is selected as the connection target from the specified "IP addresses or host names". On standby server, the update will always fail. If the target server is not standby, the JDBC driver will throw an error stating that it is unable to find a server with the specified targetServerType.

### Priority given to a primary server

The primary server is selected preferentially as the connection target from the specified "IP addresses or host names". If there is no primary server, the application will connect to the standby server.

### Priority given to a standby server

The standby server is selected preferentially as the connection target from the specified "IP addresses or host names". If there is no standby server, the application will connect to the primary server.

Any

This method is not recommended in database multiplexing systems. This is because, although the connection destination server is selected in the specified sequence from the specified "IP addresses or host names", if the server that was successfully connected to first is the standby server, the write operations will always fail.

The table below shows the server selection order values to set for each driver:

Server selection order	JDBC drivers	.NET Data Provider	Other drivers
Primary server	"primary"(*1)	"read-write"(*1) "primary"(*2)	"read-write"(*1) "primary"(*2)
Standby server	"secondary"(*2)	"standby" "read-only"(*2)	"standby" "read-only"(*2)
Priority given to a primary server	"preferPrimary"(*3) )	"prefer-primary"	-
Priority given to a standby server	"preferSecondary"(*2)	"prefer-standby"	"prefer-standby"(*4)
Any	"any"	"any"	"any"

\*1: The primary server whose default transaction mode is read-only is not selected.

\*2: The primary server whose default transaction mode is read-only is also selected.

\*3: Prefer primary servers whose default transaction mode is read-write.

\*4: While it is possible to specify "prefer-read" instead of "prefer-standby" for compatibility with Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 13 and earlier, this is not recommended.

#### SSL server certificate Common Name (CN)

To perform SSL authentication by creating the same server certificate for each server in a multiplexing system, specify the SSL server certificate Common Name (CN) in this parameter. Accordingly, SSL authentication using the CN can be performed without having to consider the names of the multiple servers contained in the multiplexing system.

## 10.2 Using the Application Connection Switch Feature

This section explains how to set the connection destination server using the application connection switch feature.

Of the parameters used as connection information for each client interface, only the parameters specific to the application connection switch feature are explained here. Refer to "Setup" and "Connecting to the Database" for information on the other parameters of each client interface.

### 10.2.1 Using the JDBC Driver

Set the following information in the connection string of the DriverManager class, or in the data source.

Table 10.1 Information to be set

Argument	Explanation
host1 host2	Specify the IP address or host name. The IP address or host name can be omitted. If omitted, the default is localhost.
port1 port2	Specify the port number for the connection. The port number can be omitted. If omitted, the default is 27500.
database_name	Specify the database name.
targetServerType	Specify the selection sequence of the servers to which the application will connect. Refer to " <a href="#">Target server</a> " for details.

Argument	Explanation
sslmode	Specify this to encrypt communications. By default, this is disabled. The setting values for sslmode are as follows:  disable: Connect without SSL  require: Connect always with SSL  verify-ca: Connect with SSL, using a certificate issued by a trusted CA (*1)  verify-full: Connect with SSL, using a certificate issued by a trusted CA to verify if the server host name matches the certificate (*1)
sslservercertcn	This parameter is enabled only to perform SSL authentication (sslmode=verify-full).  Specify the server certificate CN. If this is omitted, the value will be null, and the server certificate CN will be authenticated using the host name specified in host.

\*1: If specifying either "verify-ca" or "verify-full", the CA certificate file can be specified using connection string sslrootcert.

#### When using Driver Manager

Specify the following URL in the API of the DriverManager class:

```
jdbc:postgresql://[host1][:port1],[host2][:port2]/dbName[?targetServerType={primary | secondary| preferPrimary | preferSecondary | any}][&sslmode=verify-full&sslrootcert=cACertificateFile&sslservercertcn=targetServerCertificateCN]
```

- If the target server is omitted, the default value "any" is used.
- When using IPV6, specify the host in the "[host]" (with square brackets) format.

#### [Example]

```
jdbc:postgresql://[2001:Db8::1234]:27500,192.168.1.1:27500/dbName
```

#### When using the data source

Specify the properties of the data source in the following format:

```
source.setServerName("[host1][:port1],[host2][:port2]");
source.setTargetServerType("primary");
source.setSslmode("verify-full");
source.setSslrootcert("cACertificateFile");
source.setSslservercertcn("targetServerCertificateCN");
```

- If the IP address or host name are omitted, localhost will be used.
- If the port number is omitted, the value specified in the portNumber property will be used. Also, if the portNumber property is omitted, the default is 27500.
- If the target server is omitted, the value will be "any".
- When using IPV6, specify the host in the "[host]" (with square brackets) format.

#### [Example]

```
source.setServerName("[2001:Db8::1234]:27500,192.168.1.1:27500");
```



If using the connection parameter loginTimeout, the value will be applied for the time taken attempting to connect to all of the specified hosts.

## 10.2.2 Using the ODBC Driver

Set the following information in the connection string or data source.

Table 10.2 Information to be set

Parameter	Explanation
Servename	Specify IP address 1 and IP address 2, or the host name, using a comma as the delimiter. Based on ODBC rules, it is recommended to enclose the whole string containing comma delimiters with { }. Format: {host1,host2}
Port	Specify the connection destination port numbers, using a comma as the delimiter. Based on ODBC rules, it is recommended to enclose the whole string containing comma delimiters with { }. Format: {port1,port2}  Specify the port number corresponding to the IP address or host specified for the nth Servename as the nth Port.  The port number can be omitted. If omitted, the default is 27500.  If <i>n</i> server names are specified, and <i>m</i> ports are specified then there will be error reported. The only exceptions are where <i>m</i> = <i>n</i> or <i>m</i> =1. In case only one port is specified, then the same is applied for all the hosts.
target_session_attrs	Specify the selection sequence of the servers to which the application will connect. Refer to " <a href="#">Target server</a> " for details.
SSLMode	Specify this to encrypt communications. By default, this is disabled. The setting values for SSLMode are as follows:  disable: Connect without SSL  allow: Connect without SSL, and if it fails, connect with SSL  prefer: Connect with SSL, and if it fails, connect without SSL  require: Connect always with SSL  verify-ca: Connect with SSL, using a certificate issued by a trusted CA (*1)  verify-full: Connect with SSL, using a certificate issued by a trusted CA to verify if the server host name matches the certificate (*1)
SSLServerCertCN	This parameter is enabled only to perform SSL authentication (SSLMode=verify-full).  Specify the server certificate CN. If this is omitted, the value will be null, and the server certificate CN will be authenticated using the host name specified in Servename.

\*1: If specifying either "verify-ca" or "verify-full", use the system environment variable PGSSLROOTCERT of your operating system to specify the CA certificate file as shown below.

Example)

Variable name: PGSSLROOTCERT

Variable value: *cACertificateFile*

### When specifying a connection string

Specify the following connection string:

```
...;Servername={host1,host2};Port={port1,port2};[target_session_attrs={any | read-  
write | read-only | primary | standby | prefer-standby}];[ SSLMode=verify-  
full;SSLServerCertCN=targetServerCertificateCN]...
```

- When using IPV6, specify the host in the "*host*" format.

#### **[Example]**

```
Servername={2001:Db8::1234,192.168.1.1};Port={27500,27500};
```

### When using the data source

Specify the properties of the data source in the following format:

```
Servername={host1,host2}  
Port={port1,port2}  
target_session_attrs={any | read-write | read-only | primary | standby | prefer-standby}  
SSLMode=verify-full  
SSLServerCertCN=targetServerCertificateCN
```

- When using IPV6, specify the host in the "*host*" format.

#### **[Example]**

```
Servername={2001:Db8::1234,192.168.1.1}
```

### Registering the data source using the ODBC Data Source Administrator

Using the ODBC Data Source Administrator, specify the items within the red border below:

Advanced Options (PostgreSQL35W) 1/3

Page 2 Page 3

☐ CommLog (C:\psqlodbc\_XXXX.log)

☐ Parse Statements

☒ Recognize Unique Indexes

☐ Ignore Timeout

☐ Use Declare/Fetch

☐ MyLog (C:\mylog\_XXXX.log)

SSLServerCertCN:

Target\_Session\_Attrs

☒ any ☐ read-write ☐ read-only

☐ primary ☐ standby ☐ prefer-standby

Unknown Sizes

☒ Maximum ☐ Don't Know ☐ Longest

Data Type Options

☒ Text as LongVarChar ☐ Unknowns as LongVarChar ☒ Booleans as Char

Miscellaneous

Max Varchar:  Max LongVarChar:

Cache Size:  SysTable Prefixes:

Batch Size:

Enable\_Fdw\_Acs

☒ off ☐ on

Shard Name:

OK Cancel Apply Defaults



If using the connection parameter `login_timeout`, this value is applied for connections to each of the specified hosts. If both multiplexed database servers have failed, the connection will time out when a time equal to double the `login_timeout` value elapses.

## 10.2.3 Using a .NET Data Provider

Set the following information in the connection string of `NpgsqlConnection`, or in the data source.

Table 10.3 Information to be set

Argument	Explanation
host1 host2	Specify the IP address or host name.
port1 port2	Specify the port number for the connection.
TargetSessionAttributes	Specify the selection sequence of the servers to which the application will connect. Refer to " <a href="#">Target server</a> " for details.

#### When specifying a connection string

Specify the following connection string:

```
host1[:port1],host2[:port2];[Target Session Attributes={any | primary | standby |
prefer-primary | prefer-standby | read-write | read-only}];
```

- If the port number is omitted from the host string, the value specified for the Port keyword of the connection string will be used. Refer to "[4.3.3 Connection String](#)" for information on the Port keyword.
- When using IPV6, specify the host in the "[host]" (with square brackets) format.
- If the target server type is omitted, the value will be any.

#### [Example]

```
host=[ 2001:Db8::1234]:27500,192.168.1.1:27500;
```

#### When specifying the NpgsqlConnectionStringBuilder property

Specify the Host property of the data source in the following format:

```
host1[:port1],host2[:port2]
```

- If the port number is omitted from the host string, the value specified in the Port property will be used. Also, if the Port property is omitted, the default is 27500.

Specify the TargetSessionAttributes property of the data source in the following format:

```
any | primary | standby | prefer-primary | prefer-standby | read-write | read-only
```

- If the target server type is omitted, the value will be any.



#### Note

If using the connection parameter Timeout, this value is applied for connections to each of the specified hosts. If both multiplexed database servers have failed, the connection will time out when a time equal to double the Timeout value elapses.

## 10.2.4 Using a Connection Service File

Set the connection parameters as follows.

Table 10.4 Information to be set

Parameter	Explanation
host	Specify the host names, using a comma as the delimiter.
hostaddr	Specify IP address 1 and IP address 2, using a comma as the delimiter.

Parameter	Explanation
port	<p>Specify the connection destination port numbers, using a comma as the delimiter.</p> <p>Specify the port number for the server specified for the nth host or hostaddr as the nth port.</p> <p>The port number can be omitted. If omitted, the default is 27500.</p> <p>If <i>n</i> server names are specified, and <i>m</i> ports are specified then there will be error reported. The only exceptions are where <i>m</i>=<i>n</i> or <i>m</i>=1. In case only one port is specified, then the same is applied for all the hosts.</p>
target_session_attrs	<p>Specify the selection sequence of the servers to which the application will connect.</p> <p>Refer to "<a href="#">Target server</a>" for details.</p>
sslmode	<p>Specify this to encrypt communications. By default, this is disabled.</p> <p>The setting values for sslmode are as follows:</p> <p>disable: Connect without SSL</p> <p>allow: Connect without SSL, and if it fails, connect with SSL</p> <p>prefer: Connect with SSL, and if it fails, connect without SSL</p> <p>require: Connect always with SSL</p> <p>verify-ca: Connect with SSL, using a certificate issued by a trusted CA (*1)</p> <p>verify-full: Connect with SSL, using a certificate issued by a trusted CA to verify if the server host name matches the certificate (*1)</p>
sslservercertcn	<p>This parameter is enabled only to perform SSL authentication (sslmode=verify-full).</p> <p>Specify the server certificate CN. If this is omitted, the value will be null, and the server certificate CN will be authenticated using the host name specified in host.</p>

\*1: If specifying either "verify-ca" or "verify-full", use the system environment variable PGSSLROOTCERT (connection parameter sslrootcert) of your operating system to specify the CA certificate file as shown below.

Example)

Variable name: PGSSLROOTCERT

Variable value: *cACertificateFile*

### Note

If using the connection parameter connect\_timeout, this value is applied for connections to each of the specified hosts. If both multiplexed database servers have failed, the connection will time out when a time equal to double the connect\_timeout value elapses.

### Point

If using the C Library, embedded SQL or psql commands (including other client commands that specify connection destinations), it is recommended to use a connection service file to specify connection destinations.

In the connection service file, a name (service name) is defined as a set, comprising information such as connection destination information and various types of tuning information set for connections. By using the service name defined in the connection service file when connecting to databases, it is no longer necessary to modify applications when the connection information changes.



## 10.2.5 Using the C Library (libpq)

It is recommended that you use a connection service file. Refer to "[10.2.4 Using a Connection Service File](#)" for details.

If a connection service file will not be used, set the following information for the database connection control functions (PQconnectdbParams, PQconnectdb, and so on) or environment variables.

Table 10.5 Information to be set

Parameter (environment variable name)	Explanation
host(PGHOST)	Specify the host names, using a comma as the delimiter.
hostaddr(PGHOSTADDR)	Specify IP address 1 and IP address 2, using a comma as the delimiter.
port(PGPORT)	<p>Specify the connection destination port numbers, using a comma as the delimiter. Specify the port number for the server specified for the <i>n</i>th host or hostaddr as the <i>n</i>th port.</p> <p>The port number can be omitted. If omitted, the default is 27500.</p> <p>If <i>n</i> server names are specified, and <i>m</i> ports are specified then there will be error reported. The only exceptions are where <i>m</i>=<i>n</i> or <i>m</i>=1. In case only one port is specified, then the same is applied for all the hosts.</p>
target_session_attrs(PGTA RGETSESSIONATTRS)	<p>Specify the selection sequence of the servers to which the application will connect.</p> <p>Refer to "<a href="#">Target server</a>" for details.</p>
sslmode(PGSSLMODE)	<p>Specify this to encrypt communications. By default, this is disabled.</p> <p>The setting values for sslmode are as follows:</p> <p>disable: Connect without SSL</p> <p>allow: Connect without SSL, and if it fails, connect with SSL</p> <p>prefer: Connect with SSL, and if it fails, connect without SSL</p> <p>require: Connect always with SSL</p> <p>verify-ca: Connect with SSL, using a certificate issued by a trusted CA (*1)</p> <p>verify-full: Connect with SSL, using a certificate issued by a trusted CA to verify if the server host name matches the certificate (*1)</p>
sslservercertcn(PGXSSLS ERVERCERTCN)	<p>This parameter is enabled only to perform SSL authentication (sslmode=verify-full).</p> <p>Specify the server certificate CN. If this is omitted, the value will be null, and the server certificate CN will be authenticated using the host name specified in host.</p>

\*1: If specifying either "verify-ca" or "verify-full", use the system environment variable PGSSLROOTCERT (connection parameter sslrootcert) of your operating system to specify the CA certificate file as shown below.

Example)

Variable name: PGSSLROOTCERT

Variable value: *cACertificateFile*

When using URI

```
postgresql://host1[:port1],host2[:port2][,...]/database_name  
[?target_session_attrs={read-write | read-only | primary | standby | prefer-standby |  
any }]
```

- When using IPV6, specify the host in the "[host]" (with square brackets) format.

[Example]

```
postgresql://postgres@[2001:Db8::1234]:27500,192.168.1.1:27500/database_name
```

When using key-value

```
host=host1[,host2] port=port1[,port2] user=user1 password=pwd1 dbname=mydb  
[target_session_attrs={read-write | read-only | primary | standby | prefer-standby |  
any }]
```

- When using IPV6, specify the host in the "*host*" format.

**[Example]**

```
host=2001:Db8::1234,192.168.1.1 port=27500,27500
```



### Note

If using the connection parameter `connect_timeout`, this value is applied for connections to each of the specified hosts. If both multiplexed database servers have failed, the connection will time out when a time equal to double the `connect_timeout` value elapses.



### Information

If using a password file (`.pgpass`), describe the entries matching each server.

- Example 1:

```
host1:port1:dbname:user:password  
host2:port2:dbname:user:password
```

- Example 2:

```
*:port:dbname:user:password
```

## 10.2.6 Using Embedded SQL

It is recommended that you use a connection service file. Refer to "[10.2.4 Using a Connection Service File](#)" for details.



### Point

If using a connection service file, either of the following methods is available:

- Set the service name as a string literal or host variable, as follows:

```
tcp:postgresql://?service=my_service
```

- Set the service name in the environment variable `PGSERVICE`, and use `CONNECT TO DEFAULT`

If a connection service file will not be used, use a literal or variable to specify the connection destination server information for target in the SQL statement below:

```
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO target [AS connection-name] [USER user-name];
```

## Method used

```
dbname@host1,host2[:[port1][,port2]]
tcp:postgresql://host1,host2[:[port1][,port2]] [/dbname] [?target_session_attrs={read-
write | read-only | primary | standby | prefer-standby | any}][&sslmode=verify-
full&sslservercertcn=targetServerCertificateCN]
```

- The above format cannot be specified directly without using a literal or variable.

Table 10.6 Information to be set

Argument	Explanation
host1 host2	Specify the IP address or host name. IPv6 format addresses cannot be specified.
port1 port2	Specify the connection destination port numbers, using a comma as the delimiter. The port number can be omitted. If omitted, the default is 27500.
dbname	Specify the database name.
target_session_attrs	Specify the selection sequence of the servers to which the application will connect. Refer to " <a href="#">Target server</a> " for details.
sslmode	Specify this to encrypt communications. By default, this is disabled. The setting values for sslmode are as follows:  disable: Connect without SSL  allow: Connect without SSL, and if it fails, connect with SSL  prefer: Connect with SSL, and if it fails, connect without SSL  require: Connect always with SSL  verify-ca: Connect with SSL, using a certificate issued by a trusted CA (*1)  verify-full: Connect with SSL, using a certificate issued by a trusted CA to verify if the server host name matches the certificate (*1)
sslservercertcn	This parameter is enabled only to perform SSL authentication (sslmode=verify-full).  Specify the server certificate CN. If this is omitted, the value will be null, and the server certificate CN will be authenticated using the host name specified in host.

\*1: If specifying either "verify-ca" or "verify-full", use the system environment variable PGSSLROOTCERT (connection parameter sslrootcert) of your operating system to specify the CA certificate file as shown below.

Example)

Variable name: PGSSLROOTCERT

Variable value: *cACertificateFile*



Environment variables can also be used. Refer to "[10.2.5 Using the C Library \(libpq\)](#)" for information on environment variables.



If using the connection parameter `connect_timeout`, this value is applied for connections to each of the specified hosts. If both multiplexed database servers have failed, the connection will time out when a time equal to double the `connect_timeout` value elapses.

## 10.2.7 Using the `psql` Command

It is recommended that you use a connection service file. Refer to "[10.2.4 Using a Connection Service File](#)" for details.

If a connection service file will not be used, specify the following information in the `psql` command option/environment variable.

Table 10.7 Information to be set

Option (environment variable)	Explanation
<code>-h/--host(PGHOST/PGHOSTADDR)</code>	Specify IP address 1 and IP address 2, or the host name, using a comma as the delimiter. This can also be specified for the environment variable <code>PGHOST</code> or <code>PGHOSTADDR</code> .
<code>-p/--port(PGPORT)</code>	Specify the connection destination port numbers, using a comma as the delimiter. This can also be specified for the environment variable <code>PGPORT</code> .  Specify the port number corresponding to the IP address specified for the <code>nth -h</code> option as the <code>nth -p</code> option.  The port number can be omitted. If omitted, the default is 27500.  If <code>n-h</code> options are specified, and <code>m-p</code> options are specified then there will be error reported. The only exception is where <code>m=n</code> or <code>m=1</code> . In case only one port is specified, then the same is applied for all the hosts.
<code>(PGTARGETSESSIONATTRS)</code>	Specify the selection sequence of the servers to which the application will connect. Refer to " <a href="#">Target server</a> " for details.
<code>(PGSSLMODE)</code>	Specify this to encrypt communications. By default, this is disabled. The setting values for <code>PGSSLMODE</code> are as follows:  disable: Connect without SSL  allow: Connect without SSL, and if it fails, connect with SSL  prefer: Connect with SSL, and if it fails, connect without SSL  require: Connect always with SSL  verify-ca: Connect with SSL, using a certificate issued by a trusted CA (*1)  verify-full: Connect with SSL, using a certificate issued by a trusted CA to verify if the server host name matches the certificate (*1)
<code>(PGXSSLSERVERCERTCN)</code>	This environment variable is enabled only to perform SSL authentication ( <code>PGSSLMODE=verify-full</code> ).  Specify the server certificate CN. If this is omitted, the value will be null, and the server certificate CN will be authenticated using the host name specified in host.

\*1: If specifying either "verify-ca" or "verify-full", use the system environment variable `PGSSLROOTCERT` (connection parameter `sslrootcert`) of your operating system to specify the CA certificate file as shown below.

Example)

Variable name: `PGSSLROOTCERT`

Variable value: `cACertificateFile`

### Note

.....

If using the connection parameter `connect_timeout`, this value is applied for connections to each of the specified hosts. If both multiplexed database servers have failed, the connection will time out when a time equal to double the `connect_timeout` value elapses.

.....

### Information

.....

Use the same method as for `psql` commands to specify connection destination server information for other client commands used to specify connection destinations.

.....

# Chapter 11 Scan Using a Vertical Clustered Index (VCI)

This chapter describes scanning using a VCI.



## Note

This feature can only be used in Advanced Edition.

## 11.1 Operating Conditions

Faster aggregation can be achieved by using a VCI defined for all columns to be referenced.

This section describes the conditions under which a scan can use a VCI.

Whether to use VCI is determined based on cost estimation in the same way as normal indexes. Therefore, another execution plan will be selected if it is cheaper than a VCI even if a VCI is available.

### SQL statements that can use VCIs

In addition to general SELECT statements, VCIs can be used for the SQL statements below (as long as they do not specify any of the elements listed in "SQL statements that cannot use VCIs" below):

- SELECT INTO
- CREATE TABLE AS SELECT
- CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW ... AS SELECT
- CREATE VIEW ... AS SELECT
- COPY (SELECT ...) TO

### SQL statements that cannot use VCIs

VCIs cannot be used for SQL statements that specify any of the following:

- Subquery to reference the column in which the parent query is referencing is specified
- Lock clause (such as FOR UPDATE)
- Cursor declared with WITH HOLD or scrollable
- SERIALIZABLE transaction isolation level
- Function or operator listed in "Functions and operators that do not use a VCI"
- User-defined function

Table 11.1 Functions and operators that cannot use VCIs

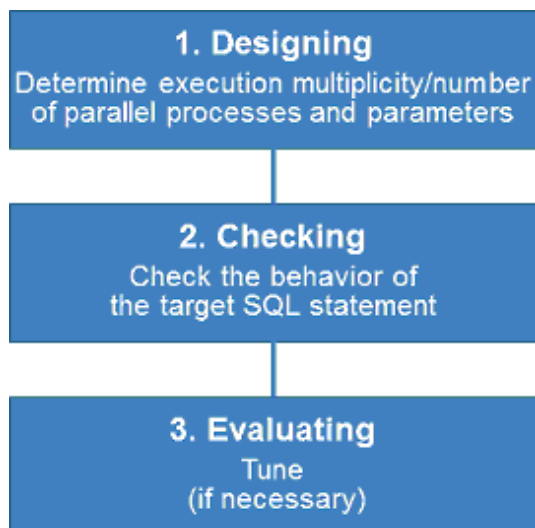
Classification		Function/operator
Mathematical functions and operators	Random functions	random and setseed
String functions and operators	String functions	format (if the <i>format</i> argument is specified), regexp_matches, regexp_split_to_array and regexp_split_to_table
Date/time functions and operators	Date/time functions	age(timestamp), current_date, current_time, current_timestamp, localtime, localtimestamp, statement_timestamp and transaction_timestamp
	Delaying execution functions	pg_sleep, pg_sleep_for, and pg_sleep_until

Classification		Function/operator
Enum support functions		All functions and operators
Geometric functions and operators		All functions and operators
Network address functions and operators		All functions and operators
Text search functions and operators		All functions and operators
XML functions		All functions
JSON functions and operators		All functions and operators
Sequence manipulation functions		All functions
Array functions and operators		All functions and operators
Range functions and operators		All functions and operators
Aggregate functions	General-purpose aggregate functions	array_agg, json_agg, json_object_agg, string_agg and xmlagg
	Aggregate functions for statistics	corr, covar_pop, covar_samp, regr_avgx, regr_avgy, regr_count, regr_intercept, regr_r2, regr_slope, regr_sxx, regr_sxy and regr_syy
	Ordered-set aggregate functions	All functions
	Hypothetical-set aggregate functions	All functions
Window functions		All functions
Subquery expressions		Subquery expressions with its row constructor specified on the left side
Row and array comparisons		Row constructor and composite type comparisons
Set returning functions		All functions
System information functions		All functions
System administration functions		All functions
Trigger functions		All functions
Session information functions		current_role and current_user

## 11.2 Usage

---

This section describes how to use a VCI in line with the following steps:



## 11.2.1 Designing

Design as follows before using a VCI.

- Execution multiplicity and number of parallel processes
- Parameters

Execution multiplicity and number of parallel processes

Determine the maximum number of SQL statements that can be executed simultaneously and the number of parallel processes based on the number of CPU cores that can be allocated for scans that use VCI to perform aggregate processing. Design in advance the multiplicity of SQL statements for executing scans that use VCI and the number of parallel processes for scans that use VCI.

For example, if the number of CPUs that can be allocated is 32 cores, then the maximum number of SQL statements that can be executed simultaneously is 8 and the number of parallel processes is 4.



Note

A temporary file is created in /dev/shm or in a directory specified for the vci.smc\_directory parameter as the dynamic shared memory for each SQL statement during a scan using a VCI.

A temporary file is created in a directory under the data storage directory or in a directory specified for the vci.smc\_directory parameter as the dynamic shared memory for each SQL statement during a scan using a VCI.

Ensure that this directory has sufficient space to meet the memory requirements estimated for the execution multiplicity and number of parallel processes of SQL statements (refer to "Memory used per scanning" in "VCI Memory Requirements" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server for details). If it does not have sufficient space when a scan is performed, SQL statements will return errors due to the insufficient memory.



Parameters

The VCI parallel scan feature cannot be used for setting parameters immediately after creating an instance.

Therefore, set the parameters below based on the values determined in "Execution multiplicity and number of parallel processes of SQL statements" above.

Parameter name	Description	Default	Value index
vci.max_parallel_degree	Maximum number of VCI parallel processes	0	Specify the number of parallel processes.



Parameter name	Description	Default	Value index
	(background processes) to be used per SQL statement.		
vci.smc_directory	Directory name in which a temporary file is created as the dynamic shared memory during a scan using a VCI.	 /dev/shm  A directory ( <i>dataStorageDir</i> \base\pgsql_tmp) under the data storage directory	Specify a directory that has enough free space for the memory used for each query during the scan.
max_worker_processes	Maximum number of background processes that the system supports.	8	Add the value of the maximum number of SQL statements that can be executed simultaneously for scans that use VCI multiplied by vci.max_parallel_degree.



See

Refer to "Parameters" in the Operation Guide for information on the details of and how to set the parameters.

## 11.2.2 Checking

Execute the SQL statement with "EXPLAIN ANALYZE" to check the following:

- If a VCI was used  
"Custom Scan (VCI...)" is displayed in the plan if a VCI was used.
- Number of parallel processes  
The number of parallel processes when the SQL statement is executed is displayed in "Allocated Workers". Check that it is running the designed number of parallel processes.
- Response  
Check if the execution time displayed in "Execution time" is as estimated.

The following shows an example of the output result of EXPLAIN ANALYZE:

```
EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT COUNT(*) FROM test WHERE x > 10000;
                                QUERY
PLAN
-----
Custom Scan (VCI Aggregate) (cost=19403.15..19403.16 rows=1 width=0) (actual
time=58.505..58.506 rows=1 loops=1)
    Allocated Workers: 4
    -> Custom Scan (VCI Scan) using test_x_idx on test (cost=0.00..16925.00 rows=991261
width=0) (never executed)
        Filter: (x > 10000)
Planning time: 0.151 ms
Execution time: 86.910 ms
(6 rows)
```



A cost output by the execution plan that uses a VCI may be inaccurate. A VCI works if all or part of the best execution plan when the SQL statement was executed is replaced with an execution plan that uses a VCI. If the cost of the execution plan to be replaced is lower than a certain value (`vci.cost_threshold` parameter), it will not be replaced or recalculated. Therefore, the cost of the original execution plan is output as is.

## 11.2.3 Evaluating

If the results in "11.2.2 Checking" is any of the following, tune accordingly:

If a VCI is not used

- Check if the "11.1 Operating Conditions" are met.
- Check if `vci.enable` is set to "on".
- A VCI may not be appropriately used when statistics are outdated, such as immediately after inserting a large amount of data. In such cases, execute the `VACUUM ANALYZE` statement or the `ANALYZE` statement.
- A VCI is not used if there is insufficient memory for VCI scan. This may occur during time-consuming transactions involving tables for which VCIs were defined. Set `vci.log_query` to "on", and check if either "could not use VCI: local ROS size (%zu) exceeds limit (%zu)" or "out of memory during local ROS generation" is output. If it is, then increase the value of the `vci.max_local_ros`.

Response is not as expected

Tuning may improve response. Check the following:

- If `vci.max_parallel_degree` is not set or is set to 0, set an appropriate value according to "11.2.1 Designing".
- If there is a margin in the CPU usage, increase the value of `vci.max_parallel_degree` and check again. In addition, if the value that of `max_worker_processes` is lower than the maximum number of SQL statements that can be executed simultaneously for parallel scan multiplied by `vci.max_parallel_degree`, increase it and check again.

## 11.3 Usage Notes

This section provides notes on using VCI.

- Regardless of whether VCI is used, the content of the result does not change. However, records may be returned in a different order if the `ORDER BY` clause is not specified.
- To reduce resource consumption, edit `postgresql.conf` or use the `SET` statement to enable/disable `vci.enable` when you use this feature only for specific times or jobs (SQL applications).
- The optimizer hint (`pg_hint_plan`) cannot be specified for a VCI. The hint clause is ignored if it is specified.
- If a plan other than VCI is specified for the optimizer hint (`pg_hint_plan`), a VCI may be used. Therefore, if you specify a query plan with the hint clause, use the `SET` statement to set `vci.enable` to "off".
- The message below may be output when a scan that uses VCI is performed on the streaming replication standby server:

```
"LOG: recovery has paused"
"HINT: Execute pg_wal_replay_resume() to continue."
```

This message is output because application of the WAL to the VCI temporarily pauses due to the scan being performed.

- Even if a scan is performed using a VCI, information in the `idx_scan`, `idx_tup_read`, and `idx_tup_fetch` columns of the collected statistics views, `pg_stat_all_indexes` and `pg_stat_user_indexes`, will not be updated.

- Currently, it is not possible to replace the query plan for parallel aggregation with the query plan using VCI. Therefore, if you create a VCI on a column of a partition table and aggregate (sum () etc.) on that column, one of the following plans will be selected. Use different setting parameters according to the situation of the target table.

- Plan of the parallel aggregations using scan methods other than VCI scan

It is selected when max\_parallel\_workers\_per\_gather is 1 or more.

```
explain select sum(value) from test;

                                QUERY PLAN
-----
Finalize Aggregate  (cost=99906.30..99906.31 rows=1 width=8)
->  Gather  (cost=99906.08..99906.29 rows=2 width=8)
      Workers Planned: 2
      -> Partial Aggregate  (cost=98906.08..98906.09 rows=1 width=8)
            -> Parallel Append  (cost=0.00..94739.83 rows=1666500 width=4)
                  -> Parallel Seq Scan on test_1  (cost=0.00..43203.67 rows=833250
width=4)
                        -> Parallel Seq Scan on test_2  (cost=0.00..43203.67 rows=833250
width=4)
```

This plan is fast when the number of records to be aggregated (number of records that hit the search conditions) is very large. This is because the benefit of parallelizing aggregation is important, not the performance of scanning. For example, each parallel worker will perform a sequential scan and aggregate most of the scanned records.

- Plan that aggregates VCI scan results by a single aggregator node

It is selected by setting max\_parallel\_workers\_per\_gather to 0 and not creating a query plan of parallel aggregate.

```
explain select sum(value) from test;

                                QUERY PLAN
-----
Aggregate  (cost=145571.00..145571.01 rows=1 width=8)
->  Append  (cost=0.00..135572.00 rows=3999600 width=4)
      -> Custom Scan (VCI Scan) using test_1_id_value_idx on test_1
(cost=0.00..57787.00 rows=1999800 width=4)
            Allocated Workers: 2
            -> Custom Scan (VCI Scan) using test_2_id_value_idx on test_2
(cost=0.00..57787.00 rows=1999800 width=4)
                  Allocated Workers: 2
```

This plan is fast when the number of aggregated items is not large or when the size of the aggregated column is smaller than the record size. This is because the scan performance is more important, so it is faster to aggregate the results of VCI scans of each partition.

- Originally, if there is only one partition to be accessed, the following VCI aggregation plan can be used. Below is an example of scanning only one partition with partition pruning.

```
explain select sum(value) from test where id < 1000001;

                                QUERY PLAN
-----
Custom Scan (VCI Aggregate)  (cost=62786.50..62786.51 rows=1 width=8)
  Allocated Workers: 2
  -> Custom Scan (VCI Scan) using test_1_id_value_idx on test_1  (cost=0.00..57787.00
rows=1999800 width=4)
        Filter: (id < 1000001)
```

However, the current planner does not try to choose VCI aggregation because it creates a plan for parallel aggregation if the table is partitioned. So in this case, set max\_parallel\_workers\_per\_gather to 0 to force the planner to choose VCI aggregation.

# Appendix A Precautions when Developing Applications

This appendix describes precautions when developing applications with Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

## A.1 Precautions when Using Functions and Operators

This section describes notes for using functions and operators.

### A.1.1 General rules of Functions and Operators

This section describes general rules for using functions and operators. Ensure the general rules are followed when using functions and operators to develop applications.

General rules

- Specify the stated numbers for arguments when specifying numbers for arguments in functions.
- Specify the stated data types when specifying data types for functions. If you use a data type other than the stated data types, use CAST to explicitly convert the data type.
- Specify data types that can be compared when specifying data types for operators. If you use a data type that cannot be compared, use CAST to explicitly convert the data type.



See

Refer to "Functions and Operators" under "The SQL Language" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on the functions and operators available with Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

### A.1.2 Errors when Developing Applications that Use Functions and/or Operators

This section provides examples of problems that may occur when developing applications that use functions and/or operators, and describes how to deal with them.

The error "Function \*\*\*\*\* does not exist" occurs when executing SQL

The following error will occur when executing an SQL statement that does not abide by the general rules for functions:

```
ERROR: Function ***** does not exist
```

Note: "\*\*\*\*\*" denotes the function for which the error occurred, and the data type of its arguments.

The cause of the error will be one of the following:

- The specified function does not exist.
- The wrong number of arguments or wrong argument data type was specified

Corrective action

Check the following points and correct any errors:

- Check if there are any errors in the specified function name, number of arguments, or argument data type, and revise accordingly.
- Check the argument data type of the function displayed in the message. If an unintended data type is displayed, use a function such as CAST to convert it.

The error "Operator does not exist" occurs when executing SQL

The following error will occur when executing an SQL statement that specifies a data type in the operator that cannot be compared:

```
ERROR:  Operator does not exist: *****
```

Note: "\*\*\*\*\*" denotes the operator for which the error occurred, and the data type of the specified value.

#### Corrective action

Ensure the data type of the expressions specified on the left and right sides of the operator can be compared. If required, revise to ensure these data types can be compared by using a function such as CAST to explicitly convert them.

## A.2 Notes when Using Temporary Tables

In standard SQL, a temporary table can be defined in advance to enable an empty temporary table to be created automatically when the application connects to the database. However, in Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres, a temporary table must be created when the application connects to the database by explicitly using the CREATE TABLE statement.

If the same temporary table is repeatedly created and deleted during the same session, the system table might expand, and memory usage might increase. To prevent this, specify the CREATE TABLE statement to ensure the temporary table is reused.

For example, in cases where a temporary table would be created and deleted for repeatedly executed transactions, specify the CREATE TABLE statement as shown below:

- Specify "IF NOT EXISTS" to create a temporary table only if none exists when the transaction starts.
- Specify "ON COMMIT DELETE ROWS" to ensure all rows are deleted when the transaction ends.



See

Refer to "SQL Commands" under "Reference" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on the CREATE TABLE statement.

Examples of SQL using a temporary table are shown below:

Example of bad use (creating and deleting a temporary table)

```
BEGIN;
CREATE TEMPORARY TABLE mytable(col1 CHAR(4), col2 INTEGER) ON COMMIT DROP;
    (mytable processes)

COMMIT;
```

Example of good use (reusing a temporary table)

```
BEGIN;
CREATE TEMPORARY TABLE IF NOT EXISTS mytable(col1 CHAR(4), col2 INTEGER) ON COMMIT
DELETE ROWS;
    (mytable processes)

COMMIT;
```

## A.3 Implicit Data Type Conversions

An implicit data type conversion refers to a data type conversion performed automatically by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres, without the need to explicitly specify the data type to convert to.

The combination of possible data type conversions differs, depending on whether the expression in the conversion source is a literal.

For non-literals, data types can only be converted to other types within the same range.

For literals, character string literal types can be converted to the target data type. Numeric literals are implicitly converted to specific numeric types. These implicitly converted numeric literals can then have their types converted to match the conversion target data type within the numeric type range. For bit character string literals, only the bit column data type can be specified. The following shows the range of type conversions for literals.

**Table A.1 Data type combinations that contain literals and can be converted implicitly**

Conversion target		Conversion source		
		Character literal (*1)	Numeric literal(*2)	Bit character string literal
Numeric type	SMALLINT	Y	N	N
	INTEGER	Y	Y (*3)	N
	BIGINT	Y	Y (*4)	N
	DECIMAL	Y	Y (*5)	N
	NUMERIC	Y	Y (*5)	N
	REAL	Y	N	N
	DOUBLE PRECISION	Y	N	N
	SMALLSERIAL	Y	N	N
	SERIAL	Y	Y (*3)	N
	BIGSERIAL	Y	Y (*4)	N
Currency type	MONEY	Y	N	N
Character type	CHAR	Y	N	N
	VARCHAR	Y	N	N
	NCHAR	Y	N	N
	NCHAR VARYING	Y	N	N
	TEXT	Y	N	N
Binary data type	BYTEA	Y	N	N
Date/time type	TIMESTAMP WITHOUT TIME ZONE	Y	N	N
	TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE	Y	N	N
	DATE	Y	N	N
	TIME WITHOUT TIME ZONE	Y	N	N
	TIME WITH TIME ZONE	Y	N	N
	INTERVAL	Y	N	N
Boolean type	BOOLEAN	Y	N	N
Geometric type	POINT	Y	N	N
	LSEG	Y	N	N
	BOX	Y	N	N

Conversion target		Conversion source		
		Character literal (*1)	Numeric literal(*2)	Bit character string literal
	PATH	Y	N	N
	POLYGON	Y	N	N
	CIRCLE	Y	N	N
Network address type	CIDR	Y	N	N
	INET	Y	N	N
	MACADDR	Y	N	N
	MACADDR8	Y	N	N
Bit string type	BIT	Y	N	Y
	BIT VARYING	Y	N	Y
Text search type	TSVECTOR	Y	N	N
	TSQUERY	Y	N	N
UUID type	UUID	Y	N	N
XML type	XML	Y	N	N
JSON type	JSON	Y	N	N

Y: Can be converted

N: Cannot be converted

\*1: Only strings that can be converted to the data type of the conversion target can be specified (such as "1" if the conversion target is a numeric type)

\*2: "Y" indicates specific numeric types that are converted first.

\*3: Integers that can be expressed as INTEGER types can be specified

\*4: Integers that cannot be expressed as INTEGER types, but can be expressed as BIGINT types, can be specified

\*5: Integers that cannot be expressed as INTEGER or BIGINT types, but that can be expressed as NUMERIC types, or numeric literals that contain a decimal point or the exponent symbol (e), can be specified

Implicit data type conversions can be used when comparing or storing data.

The conversion rules differ, depending on the reason for converting. Purpose-specific explanations are provided below.

## A.3.1 Function Argument

Value expressions specified in a function argument will be converted to the data type of that function argument.



See

Refer to "Functions and Operators" under "The SQL Language" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on data types that can be specified in function arguments.

## A.3.2 Operators

Comparison operators, BETWEEN, IN

Combinations of data types that can be compared using comparison operators, BETWEEN, or IN are shown below.

Table A.2 Combinations of comparable data type

Left side	Right side		
	Numeric type	Character string type	Date/time type
Numeric type	Y	N	N
Character type	N	Y	N
Date/time type	N	N	Y

Y: Can be compared

N: Cannot be compared

When strings with different lengths are compared, the shorter one is padded with spaces to make the lengths match.

When numeric values with different precisions are compared, data will be converted to the type with the higher precision.

Set operation and CASE also follow the same rules.

#### Other operators

Value expressions specified in operators will be converted to data types that are valid for that operator.



See

.....  
Refer to "Functions and Operators" under "The SQL Language" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on data types that can be specified in operators.  
.....

### A.3.3 Storing Values

Value expressions specified in the VALUES clause of the INSERT statement or the SET clause of the UPDATE statement will be converted to the data type of the column in which they will be stored.

## A.4 Notes on Using Index

This section explains the notes on using the following indexes:

- SP-GiST index

### A.4.1 SP-GiST Index

If more than 2 concurrent updates are performed on a table in which the SP-GiST index is defined, applications may stop responding. When this occurs, all system processes including the Check Pointer process will also be in the state of no response. For these reasons, use of the SP-GiST index is not recommended.

## A.5 Notes on Using Multibyte Characters in Definition Names

Do not use multibyte characters in database names or user names if using a Windows database server.

Multibyte characters must not be used in database names or user names on non-Windows database servers, because certain conditions may apply or it may not be possible to connect to some clients.

Related notes and constraints are described below.



## 1) Configuring the client encoding system

The client encoding system must be configured when the names are created.



Refer to "Character Set Support" in "Server Administration" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on how to configure the client encoding system.

## 2) Encoding system of names used for connection

Ensure that the encoding system of names used for connection is the same as that of the database that was connected when these names were created.

The reasons for this are as follows:

- Storage system for names in Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres  
The system catalog saves encoded names by using the encoding system of the database at the time the names were created.
- Encoding conversion policy when connected  
When connected, names sent from the client are matched with names in the system catalog without performing encoding conversion.

Accordingly, if the database that was connected when the names were defined uses the EUC\_JP encoding system, but the database name is specified using UTF-8 encoding, then the database will be considered to be non-existent.

## 3) Connection constraints

The table below shows the connection constraints for each client type, based on the following assumptions:

- The conditions described in 1) and 2) above are satisfied.
- The database name and user names use the same encoding system.

Client type	Client operating system	
	Windows(R)	Linux
JDBC driver	Cannot be connected	Cannot be connected
ODBC driver	Cannot be connected	No connection constraints
.NET Data Provider	Can only connect when the encoding system used for definitions is UTF-8	-
SQLEmbedded SQL in C	Can only connect when the connection service file (pg_service.conf) is used	No connection constraints
psql command	Can only connect when the connection service file (pg_service.conf) is used	No connection constraints

## A.6 How to Build and Run an Application that Uses Shared Libraries

This section describes the following supplementary items regarding the use of shared libraries when developing applications with Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

- Setting DT\_RUNPATH for the application
- Direct linking of indirectly used libraries to applications

## A.6.1 Setting DT\_RUNPATH for Applications

---

### Searching for libraries used by applications

If your application uses Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres shared libraries such as libpq and ecpg, you need to load those libraries when you run your application.

When loading a library, it searches the machine for the library.

Library Search allows you to specify the path to search.

To specify the path, you can use the DT\_RUNPATH attribute recorded in the application or library, or the environment variable LD\_LIBRARY\_PATH.

In general, use of the DT\_RUNPATH attribute is recommended. This is because the environment variable LD\_LIBRARY\_PATH may affect the execution of applications other than the corresponding application.

The following explains when to use DT\_RUNPATH.

Build so that the path in the operating environment that stores the library to be used is set in the DT\_RUNPATH attribute of the application.

For example, when using libpq or ecpg, set "<Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres client feature installation directory in operating environment>/lib". ([Note 1](#))

For how to set the DT\_RUNPATH attribute, refer to the documentation of your compiler or linker.

There are the following three types of paths to be set and how to operate them. Please select the one suitable for each operation, and set and operate.

#### (1) Specify an absolute path

Set "<absolute path of the directory where the library is stored>/lib".

#### (2) Specify a relative path ([Note 1](#))

Set "<relative path from the application of the directory that stores the library>/lib".

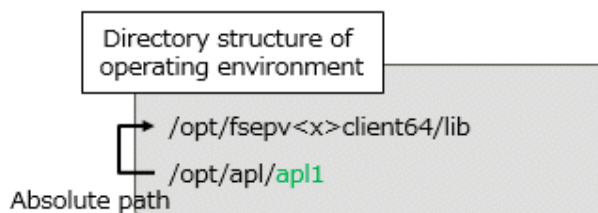
#### (3) Specify an arbitrary path and using a symbolic link

Set "(any path)". Also, create a symbolic link to the directory that stores the library at any path location.

### (1) Specify an absolute path

/opt/apl/apl1

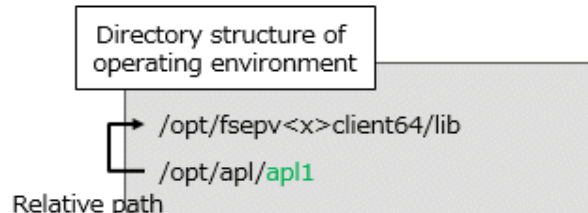
DT\_RPATH: /opt/fsepv<x>client64/lib



### (2) Specify a relative path

/opt/apl/apl1

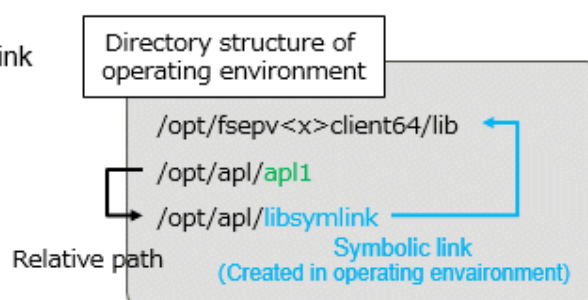
DT\_RPATH: \$ORIGIN/../fsepv<x>client64/lib



### (3) Specify an arbitrary path and using a symbolic link

/opt/apl/apl1

DT\_RPATH: \$ORIGIN/libsymlink



Note 1:

For example, if you are building an application with gcc, add "-Wl,-rpath,<Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres installation directory in the operating environment/lib>,-enable-new-dtags" as gcc options, DT\_RUNPATH can be set.



See

For setting DT\_RUNPATH, refer to the linker ld's rpath and enable-new-dtags options, for example.

Also, refer to \$ORIGIN in ld.so for specifying the relative position from the application.

## When DT\_RUNPATH cannot be set

If none of the above settings work, you can find the shared libraries your application needs by setting the environment variable LD\_LIBRARY\_PATH to the path to the directory that stores the libraries when you run your application.

However, if you set LD\_LIBRARY\_PATH and execute commands or programs other than the applicable application, please be aware that they may result in run-time errors or unexpected behavior.



See

Check the ld.so man page for more information on searching for shared libraries.

## A.6.2 Direct Linking of Indirectly Used Libraries to Applications



Note

This content is complicated, and the possibility that it corresponds to this content in many applications is considered to be low.

Use this as a reference only when the application cannot be executed unexpectedly during a test, etc., when creating the application (as explained below, libF3 fails to load, or a runtime error occurs due to conflicts with other libraries).

For applications that use the libraries bundled with Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres, for example, if libF1, libF2, and libF3 have the following dependencies with other applications and libraries as shown below, libF3 can be directly Please specify in the build option to link.

If you do not link directly, specify the path where libF3 is stored in LD\_LIBRARY\_PATH when running the application.

Otherwise, an error may occur during application execution.

## Example

The assumptions for this example are:

- There are the following dependencies between the application and the library.
  - apl1->libF1->libF2 (apl1 requires libF1 and libF1 requires libF2)
  - apl1->libA->libF3->libF2 (apl1 requires libA, libA requires libF3, libF3 requires libF2)
- libF1, libF2, and libF3 are libraries bundled with Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

### When libF3 is not linked directly to apl1

/opt/apl/apl1

Required libraries: libF1  
libA  
DT\_RPATH: /opt/fsepv<x>client64/lib

/opt/fsepv<x>client64/lib/libF1

Required libraries: libF2  
DT\_RPATH: /opt/fsepv<x>client64/lib

/lib/libA

Required libraries: libF3  
DT\_RPATH: None \*Search under /lib by default

/opt/fsepv<x>client64/lib/libF3

Required libraries: libF2  
DT\_RPATH: /opt/fsepv<x>client64/lib

/lib/libF3

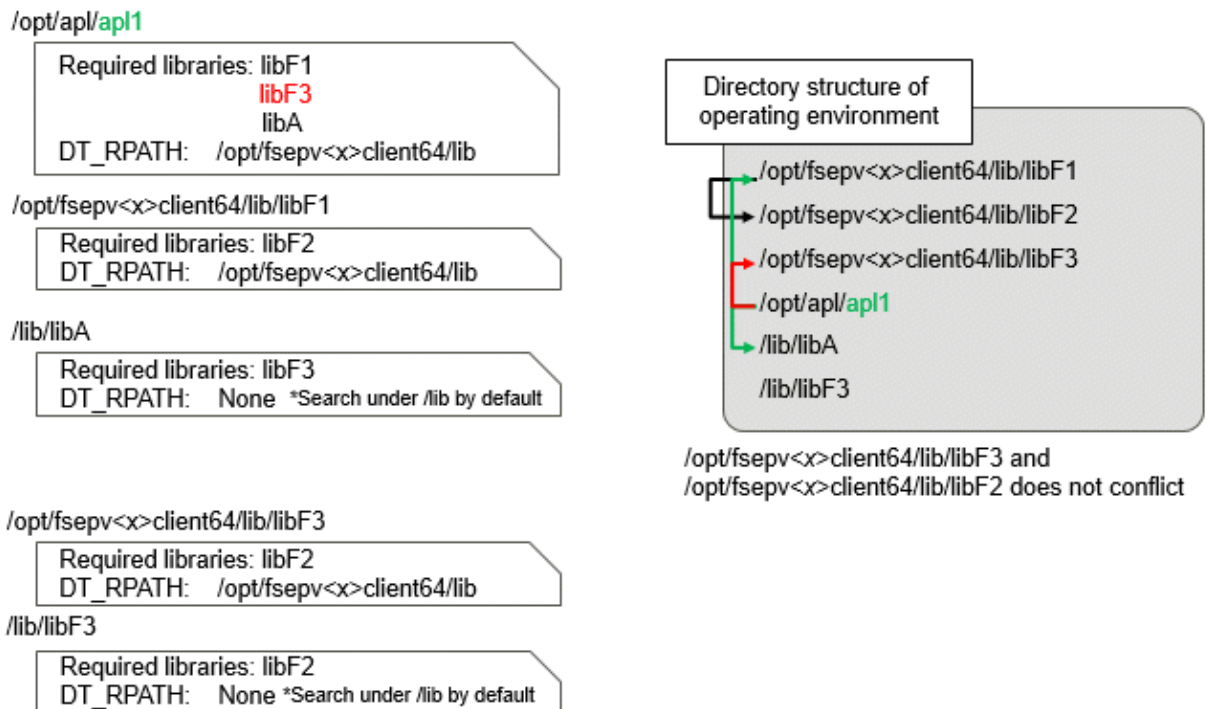
Required libraries: libF2  
DT\_RPATH: None \*Search under /lib by default

Directory structure of operating environment

/opt/fsepv<x>client64/lib/libF1  
/opt/fsepv<x>client64/lib/libF2  
/opt/fsepv<x>client64/lib/libF3  
/opt/apl/apl1  
/lib/libA  
/lib/libF3

/lib/libF3 does not exist, or  
/lib/libF3 and /opt/fsepv<x>client64/lib/libF2 conflict  
(A symbol referenced by libF3 is not defined in libF2)

## When libF3 is directly linked to apl1



Generally, when loading libraries, if some libA requires libB and libB requires libC, only the DT\_RUNPATH value set in libA is used to search libB, and only the DT\_RUNPATH value set in libB is used to search libC.

In the figure above "When libF3 is not linked directly to apl1", the search for libF1 uses the DT\_RUNPATH value set in apl1. The search for libF2 uses the DT\_RUNPATH value set for libF1. Since "Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres installation directory/lib" is set in each DT\_RUNPATH, libF1 and libF2 bundled with Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres can be found and loaded when searching for libF1 and libF2. .

However, searching for libF3 fails to load libF3 shipped with Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres. This is because the search for libF3 uses the DT\_RUNPATH value set for libA, but libA does not have a DT\_RUNPATH value.

Therefore, either libF3 cannot be found and loading of libF3 fails, or even if an unexpected libF3 is found in the machine and loaded, there is a conflict between libF2 bundled with Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres conflicts and can result in run-time errors. (The conflict here is that a symbol referenced in libF3 is not defined in libF2.)

By directly linking libF3 to the application, as shown in the figure above "When libF3 is directly linked to apl1", it is possible to use the DT\_RUNPATH of the application and load the libF3 bundled with Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres. can. Alternatively, you can load libF3 shipped with Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres by setting LD\_LIBRARY\_PATH.

## Appendix B Conversion Procedures Required due to Differences from Oracle Database

This appendix explains how to convert from an Oracle database to Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres, within the scope noted in "[Chapter 9 Compatibility with Oracle Databases](#)" from the following perspectives:

- Feature differences
- Specification differences

This document assumes that the version of the Oracle database to be converted is 7-10.2g.

### B.1 Outer Join Operator (Perform Outer Join)

#### Features

In the WHERE clause conditional expression, by adding the plus sign (+), which is the outer join operator, to the column of the table you want to add as a table join, it is possible to achieve an outer join that is the same as a joined table (OUTER JOIN).

#### B.1.1 Comparing with the ^= Comparison Operator

##### Oracle database

```
SELECT *  
FROM t1, t2  
WHERE t1.col1(+) ^= t2.col1;
```

Note: col1 is assumed to be CHAR(4) type

##### Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

```
SELECT *  
FROM t1, t2  
WHERE t1.col1(+) != t2.col1;
```

Note: col1 is assumed to be CHAR(4) type

#### Feature differences

##### Oracle database

The ^= comparison operator can be specified.

##### Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

The ^= comparison operator cannot be specified.

#### Conversion procedure

Convert using the following procedure:

1. Locate the places where the keyword "^^=" is used.
2. Ensure that the keyword, "(+)", is either on the right or left-hand side.
3. Change "^^=" to "!=".

## B.2 DECODE (Compare Values and Return Corresponding Results)

---

### Features

DECODE compares values of the conversion target value expression and the search values one by one, and if the values of the conversion target value expression and the search values match, a corresponding result value is returned.

### B.2.1 Comparing Numeric Data of Character String Types and Numeric Characters

---

#### Oracle database

```
SELECT DECODE( col1,
               1000, 'ITEM-A',
               2000, 'ITEM-B',
               'ITEM-C' )
FROM t1;
```

Note: col1 is assumed to be CHAR(4) type

#### Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

```
SELECT DECODE( CAST(col1 AS INTEGER),
               1000, 'ITEM-A',
               2000, 'ITEM-B',
               'ITEM-C' )
FROM t1;
```

Note: col1 is assumed to be CHAR(4) type

### Feature differences

#### Oracle database

When the value expression is a string and the search value is a numeric, the string value will be converted to the data type of the comparison target numeric, so that they can be compared.

#### Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

If the conversion target value expression is a string value, then no search value can be specified with numbers.

### Conversion procedure

Since the data type that can be specified for the conversion target value expression is unknown, use CAST to explicitly convert the conversion target value expression (col1 in the example) to a numeric (INTEGER type in the example).

### B.2.2 Obtaining Comparison Result from more than 50 Conditional Expressions

---

#### Oracle database

```
SELECT DECODE(col1,
               1, 'A',
               2, 'B',
               ...
               78, 'BZ',
               NULL, 'UNKNOWN',
               'OTHER' )
FROM t1;
```

Note: col1 is assumed to be INTEGER type

## Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

```
SELECT CASE
    WHEN col1 = 1 THEN 'A'
    WHEN col1 = 2 THEN 'B'
    ...
    WHEN col1 = 78 THEN 'BZ'
    WHEN col1 IS NULL THEN 'UNKNOWN'
    ELSE 'OTHER'
END
FROM t1;
```

Note: col1 is assumed to be INTEGER type

### Feature differences

#### Oracle database

Search value with a maximum of 127 items (up to 255 arguments in total) can be specified.

#### Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

Search value with a maximum of 49 items (up to 100 arguments in total) only can be specified.

### Conversion procedure

Convert to the CASE expression using the following procedure:

1. Specify the DECODE conversion target value expression (col1 in the first argument, in the example) and the search value (1 in the second argument, in the example) for the CASE expression search condition. Specify the DECODE result value ('A' in the third argument, in the example) for the CASE expression THEN (WHEN col1 = 1 THEN 'A', in the example). Note that if the search value is NULL, specify "IS NULL" for the search condition for the CASE expression.
2. If the DECODE default value ('OTHER' in the last argument, in the example) is specified, specify the default value for the CASE expression ELSE (ELSE 'OTHER', in the example).

## B.2.3 Obtaining Comparison Result from Values with Different Data Types

### Oracle database

```
SELECT DECODE( col1,
    '1000', 'A',
    '2000', 1,
    'OTHER')
FROM t1;
```

Note: col1 is assumed to be CHAR(4) type

### Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

```
SELECT DECODE( col1,
    '1000', 'A',
    '2000', '1',
    'OTHER')
FROM t1;
```

Note: col1 is assumed to be CHAR(4) type



## Feature differences

### Oracle database

The data types of all result values are converted to the data type of the first result value.

### Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

Results in an error.

## Conversion procedure

Convert using the following procedure:

1. Check the literal data type for the first result value specified.
2. Change the literals specified for each result value to the literal data type checked in the step 1.

## B.3 SUBSTR (Extract a String of the Specified Length from Another String)

---

### Features

SUBSTR returns the number of characters specified in the third argument (starting from the position specified in the second argument) from the string specified in the first argument.

Refer to "[9.2.2 Notes on SUBSTR](#)" for details on precautions when using SUBSTR.

### B.3.1 Specifying a Value Expression with a Data Type Different from the One that can be Specified for Function Arguments

---

#### Oracle database

```
SELECT SUBSTR( col1,  
              1,  
              col2)  
FROM DUAL;
```

Note: col1 and col2 are assumed to be CHAR type

#### Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

```
CREATE CAST (CHAR AS INTEGER) WITH INOUT AS IMPLICIT;  
  
SELECT SUBSTR( col1,  
              1,  
              col2)  
FROM DUAL;  
# No changes to SELECT statement;
```

Note: col1 and col2 are assumed to be CHAR type

## Feature differences

### Oracle database

If the type can be converted to a data type that can be specified for function arguments, conversion is performed implicitly.

### Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

If the data types are different from each other, or if loss of significance occurs, implicit conversion is not performed.

#### Conversion procedure

Since the data type of the string length is clear, first execute the following CREATE CAST only once so that the CHAR type value (col2 in the example) specified for the string length is implicitly converted to INTEGER type.

```
CREATE CAST (CHAR AS INTEGER) WITH INOUT AS IMPLICIT;
```

## B.3.2 Extracting a String with the Specified Format from a Datetime Type Value

### Oracle database

```
SELECT SUBSTR( CURRENT_TIMESTAMP,
               1,
               8)
FROM DUAL;
```

### Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

```
SELECT SUBSTR( TO_CHAR(CURRENT_TIMESTAMP,
                       'DD-MON-YY HH.MI.SS.US PM')
               1,
               8)
FROM DUAL;
```

#### Feature differences

##### Oracle database

A datetime value such as CURRENT\_TIMESTAMP can be specified for character value expressions.

##### Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

A datetime value such as CURRENT\_TIMESTAMP cannot be specified for character value expressions.

#### Conversion procedure

First, specify TO\_CHAR for the SUBSTR character value expression.

Specify datetime type (CURRENT\_TIMESTAMP, in the example) in firstArg of TO\_CHAR, and specify the format template pattern ('DD-MON-YY HH.MI.SS.US PM', in the example) for secondArg to match with the result of SUBSTR before conversion.

TO\_CHAR specification format: TO\_CHAR(*firstArg*, *secondArg*)



#### Information

Refer to "Data Type Formatting Functions" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on format template patterns that can be specified for TO\_CHAR in Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

## B.3.3 Concatenating a String Value with a NULL value

### Oracle database

```
SELECT SUBSTR( col1 || col2,
               2,
               5)
FROM t1;
```

Note: col1 and col2 are assumed to be character string type, and col2 may contain NULL

## Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

```
SELECT SUBSTR( col1 || NVL(col2, '')
              2,
              5)
FROM t1;
```

Note: col1 and col2 are assumed to be character string type, and col2 may contain NULL

### Feature differences

#### Oracle database

NULL is handled as an empty string, and strings are joined.

#### Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

NULL is not handled as an empty string, and the result of joining the strings becomes NULL.

### Conversion procedure

Convert using the following procedure:

1. Locate the places where the keyword "||" is used.
2. Check if any of the value expressions can contain NULL - if they can, then execute step 3.
3. Modify to NVL(*valExpr*, "").

## B.4 NVL (Replace NULL)

---

### Features

NVL converts NULL values.

### B.4.1 Obtaining Result from Arguments with Different Data Types

---

#### Oracle database

```
SELECT NVL( col1,
            col2)
FROM t1;
```

Note: col1 is assumed to be VARCHAR(100) type, and col2 is assumed to be CHAR(100) type

#### Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

```
SELECT NVL( col1,
            CAST(col2 AS VARCHAR(100)))
FROM t1;
```

Note: col1 is assumed to be VARCHAR(100) type, and col2 is assumed to be CHAR(100) type

### Feature differences

#### Oracle database

Value expressions with different data types can be specified. If the first argument is a string value, then VARCHAR2 is returned, and if it is a numeric, then a numeric type with greater range is returned.

#### Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

Value expressions with different data types cannot be specified.

### Conversion procedure

Since the data types that can be specified for the expressions in the two arguments are unknown, use the following steps to convert:

1. Check the data types specified for each of the two expressions.
2. Using the data type that is to be received as a result, explicitly convert the other argument with CAST.

## B.4.2 Operating on Datetime/Numeric, Including Adding Number of Days to a Particular Day

---

### Oracle database

```
SELECT NVL( col1 + 10, CURRENT_DATE)
FROM t1;
```

Note: col1 is assumed to be TIMESTAMP WITHOUT TIME ZONE type or TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE type

### Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

```
SELECT NVL( CAST(col1 AS DATE) + 10, CURRENT_DATE)
FROM t1;
```

Note: col1 is assumed to be TIMESTAMP WITHOUT TIME ZONE type or TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE type

### Feature differences

#### Oracle database

Numbers can be operated (added to or subtracted from) with either TIMESTAMP WITHOUT TIME ZONE type or TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE type. Operation result will be DATE type.

#### Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

Numbers cannot be operated (added to or subtracted from) with neither TIMESTAMP WITHOUT TIME ZONE type nor TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE type. However, numbers can be operated (added to or subtracted from) with DATE type.

### Conversion procedure

Convert using the following procedure:

1. Search locations where the keyword "+" or "-" is used in addition or subtraction, and check if these operations are between numbers and TIMESTAMP WITHOUT TIME ZONE type or TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE type.
2. If they are, use CAST to explicitly convert TIMESTAMP WITHOUT TIME ZONE type or TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE type to DATE type.

## B.4.3 Calculating INTERVAL Values, Including Adding Periods to a Date

---

### Oracle database

```
SELECT NVL( CURRENT_DATE + (col1 * 1.5), col2)
FROM t1;
```

Note: col1 and col2 are assumed to be INTERVAL YEAR TO MONTH types

### Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

```
SELECT NVL( CURRENT_DATE +
            CAST(col1 * 1.5 AS
```

```
INTERVAL YEAR TO MONTH), col2)
FROM t1;
```

Note: col1 and col2 are assumed to be INTERVAL YEAR TO MONTH types

#### Feature differences

##### Oracle database

INTERVAL YEAR TO MONTH type multiplication and division result in INTERVAL YEAR TO MONTH type and any fraction (number of days) will be truncated.

##### Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

INTERVAL YEAR TO MONTH type multiplication and division result in INTERVAL type and fractions (number of days) will not be truncated.

#### Conversion procedure

Convert using the following procedure:

1. Search locations where the keywords "\*" or "/" are used in multiplication or division, and check if the specified value is INTERVAL YEAR TO MONTH type.
2. If the value is INTERVAL YEAR TO MONTH type, use CAST to explicitly convert the operation result to INTERVAL YEAR TO MONTH type.

## B.5 DBMS\_OUTPUT (Output Messages)

#### Features

DBMS\_OUTPUT sends messages to clients such as psql from PL/pgSQL.

### B.5.1 Outputting Messages Such As Process Progress Status

#### Oracle database

```
set serveroutput on;...(1)

DECLARE
  v_col1      CHAR(20);
  v_col2      INTEGER;
  CURSOR c1 IS
    SELECT col1, col2 FROM t1;
BEGIN
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-- BATCH_001 Start --');
  OPEN c1;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-- LOOP Start --');
  LOOP
    FETCH c1 INTO v_col1, v_col2;
    EXIT WHEN c1%NOTFOUND;
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT(' ');
  END LOOP;
  DBMS_OUTPUT.NEW_LINE; ...(2)
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-- LOOP End --');
  CLOSE c1;

  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-- BATCH_001 End --');

EXCEPTION
  WHEN OTHERS THEN
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-- SQL Error --');
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('ERROR : ' || SQLERRM );
```

```
END;
/
```

## Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

```
DO $$
DECLARE
    v_col1      CHAR(20);
    v_col2      INTEGER;
    c1 CURSOR FOR
        SELECT col1, col2 FROM t1;
BEGIN
    PERFORM DBMS_OUTPUT.SERVEROUTPUT(TRUE); ...(1)
    PERFORM DBMS_OUTPUT.ENABLE(NULL); ...(1)

    PERFORM DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-- BATCH_001 Start --');

    OPEN c1;
    PERFORM DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-- LOOP Start --');
    LOOP
        FETCH c1 INTO v_col1, v_col2;
        EXIT WHEN FOUND = false;
        PERFORM DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT(' ');
    END LOOP;
    PERFORM DBMS_OUTPUT.NEW_LINE(); ...(2)

    PERFORM DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-- LOOP End --');
    CLOSE c1;

    PERFORM DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-- BATCH_001 End --');

EXCEPTION
    WHEN OTHERS THEN
        PERFORM DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-- SQL Error --');
        PERFORM DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('ERROR : ' || SQLERRM );
END;
$$
;
```

### (1) SERVEROUTPUT/ENABLE

#### Specification differences

##### Oracle database

Use SET statement and specify SERVEROUTPUT ON.

##### Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

Specify DBMS\_SQL.SERVEROUTPUT(TRUE).

#### Conversion procedure

Convert using the following procedure:

1. Check if a SET SERVEROUTPUT statement is specified before the PL/SQL block of a stored procedure.
2. If a SET SERVEROUTPUT statement is specified, specify DBMS\_SQL.SERVEROUTPUT straight after BEGIN of PL/pgSQL. If ON is specified to have messages output to a window, then specify TRUE. If OFF is specified, then specify FALSE.
3. Specify DBMS\_SQL.ENABLE only if SET SERVEROUTPUT is ON. The values to be specified for the argument are as follows:
  - If SIZE is specified for the SET SERVEROUTPUT statement, specify this size for the argument.

- If SIZE is not specified for the SET SERVEROUTPUT statement, then specify 2000 for Oracle10.1g or earlier, NULL for Oracle10.2g or later.

If DBMS\_SQL.ENABLE is specified for the PL/SQL block of the stored procedure, specify the same value as that argument.

## (2) NEW\_LINE

### Specification differences

#### Oracle database

If there is no argument for *packageName.featureName*, parenthesis can be omitted.

#### Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

Even if there is no argument for *packageName.featureName*, parenthesis cannot be omitted.

### Conversion procedure

Convert using the following procedure:

1. Locate the places where the keyword "DBMS\_OUTPUT.NEW\_LINE" is used in the stored procedure.
2. If there is no parenthesis after *packageName.featureName*, add the parenthesis.

## B.5.2 Receiving a Return Value from a Procedure (PL/SQL) Block (For GET\_LINES)

---

### Oracle database

```
set serveroutput off;

DECLARE
    v_num          INTEGER;
BEGIN

    DBMS_OUTPUT.DISABLE; ... (3)
    DBMS_OUTPUT.ENABLE(20000); ... (4)
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-- ITEM CHECK --');

    SELECT count(*) INTO v_num FROM t1;

    IF v_num = 0 THEN
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-- NO ITEM --');

    ELSE
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-- IN ITEM(' || v_num || ') --');
    END IF;
END;
/

set serveroutput on;

DECLARE
    v_buffs        DBMSOUTPUT_LINESARRAY; ... (5)
    v_num          INTEGER := 10;
BEGIN

    DBMS_OUTPUT.GET_LINES(v_buffs, v_num); ... (5)

    FOR i IN 1..v_num LOOP
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('LOG : ' || v_buffs(i)); ... (5)
```

```

        END LOOP;
    END;
/

```

## Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

```

DO $$
DECLARE
    v_num          INTEGER;
BEGIN
    PERFORM DBMS_OUTPUT.SERVEROUTPUT(FALSE);
    PERFORM DBMS_OUTPUT.DISABLE(); ... (3)
    PERFORM DBMS_OUTPUT.ENABLE(20000); ... (4)
    PERFORM DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-- ITEM CHECK --');

    SELECT count(*) INTO v_num FROM t1;

    IF v_num = 0 THEN
        PERFORM DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-- NO ITEM --');
    ELSE
        PERFORM DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-- IN ITEM(' || v_num || ') --');
    END IF;
END;
$$
;

DO $$
DECLARE
    v_buffs        VARCHAR[]; ... (5)
    v_num          INTEGER := 10;
BEGIN
    PERFORM DBMS_OUTPUT.SERVEROUTPUT(TRUE);
    SELECT lines, numlines INTO v_buffs, v_num FROM DBMS_OUTPUT.GET_LINES(v_num); ... (5)

    FOR i IN 1..v_num LOOP
        PERFORM DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('LOG : ' || v_buffs[i]); ... (5)
    END LOOP;
END;
$$
;

```

### (3) DISABLE

Same as the NEW\_LINE in the DBMS\_OUTPUT package. Refer to NEW\_LINE for information on specification differences and conversion procedures associated with specification differences.

### (4) ENABLE

Same as NEW\_LINE in the DBMS\_OUTPUT package. Refer to NEW\_LINE for information on specification differences and conversion procedures associated with specification differences.

### (5) GET\_LINES

Specification format for Oracle database

DBMS\_OUTPUT.GET\_LINES(*firstArg*, *secondArg*)

Specification differences

Oracle database

Obtained values are received with variables specified for arguments.



## Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

Since obtained values are the search results for DBMS\_OUTPUT.GET\_LINES, they are received with variables specified for the INTO clause of the SELECT statement.

### Conversion procedure

Convert using the following procedure:

1. Locate the places where the keyword "DBMS\_OUTPUT.GET\_LINES" is used in the stored procedure.
2. Change the data type (DBMSOUTPUT\_LINESARRAY in the example) of the variable (v\_buffs in the example) specified as *firstArg* of DBMS\_OUTPUT.GET\_LINES into a VARCHAR type array (VARCHAR[] in the example).
3. Replace the DBMS\_OUTPUT.GET\_LINES location called with a SELECT INTO statement.
  - Use the literal "lines, numlines" in the select list.
  - Specify *firstArg* (v\_buffs in the example) and *secondArg* (v\_num in the example) configured in DBMS\_OUTPUT.GET\_LINES, in the INTO clause.
  - Use DBMS\_OUTPUT.GET\_LINES in the FROM clause. Specify only *secondArg* (v\_num in the example) before modification.
4. Identify the location that references *firstArg* (v\_buffs in the example), and change it to the PL/pgSQL array reference format (v\_buffs[i] in the example).

## B.5.3 Receiving a Return Value from a Procedure (PL/SQL) Block (For GET\_LINE)

---

### Oracle database

```
set serveroutput on;

DECLARE
    v_buff1      VARCHAR2(100);
    v_buff2      VARCHAR2(1000);
    v_num        INTEGER;
BEGIN
    v_buff2 := '';
    LOOP
        DBMS_OUTPUT.GET_LINE(v_buff1, v_num); ...(6)
        EXIT WHEN v_num = 1;
        v_buff2 := v_buff2 || v_buff1;
    END LOOP;

    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_buff2);
END;
/
```

Note: Only the process to obtain a value is stated

### Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

```
DO $$
DECLARE
    v_buff1      VARCHAR(100);
    v_buff2      VARCHAR(1000);
    v_num        INTEGER;
BEGIN
    PERFORM DBMS_OUTPUT.SERVEROUTPUT(TRUE);
    v_buff2 := '';
    LOOP
```

```

        SELECT line, status INTO v_buff1, v_num FROM DBMS_OUTPUT.GET_LINE(); ...(6)
        EXIT WHEN v_num = 1;
        v_buff2 := v_buff2 || v_buff1;
    END LOOP;

    PERFORM DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_buff2);
END;
$$
;

```

Note: Only the process to obtain a value is stated

## (6) GET\_LINE

Specification format for Oracle database

DBMS\_OUTPUT.GET\_LINE(*firstArg*, *secondArg*)

Specification differences

Oracle database

Obtained values are received with variables specified for arguments.

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

Since obtained values are the search results for DBMS\_OUTPUT.GET\_LINES, they are received with variables specified for the INTO clause of the SELECT statement.

Conversion procedure

Convert using the following procedure:

1. Locate the places where the keyword "DBMS\_OUTPUT.GET\_LINE" is used in the stored procedure.
2. Replace the DBMS\_OUTPUT.GET\_LINE location called with a SELECT INTO statement.
  - Use the literal "line, status" in the select list.
  - Specify *firstArg* (v\_buff1 in the example) and *secondArg* (v\_num in the example) configured in DBMS\_OUTPUT.GET\_LINE, in the INTO clause.
  - Use DBMS\_OUTPUT.GET\_LINE in the FROM clause. Although arguments are not specified, parenthesis must be specified.

## B.6 UTL\_FILE (Perform File Operation)

Features

UTL\_FILE reads and writes text files from PL/pgSQL.

### B.6.1 Registering a Directory to Load and Write Text Files

Oracle database

```

[Oracle9i or earlier]
Configure the following with initialization parameter
    UTL_FILE_DIR= '/home/fsep' ...(1)

[Oracle9.2i or later]
Configure the following with CREATE DIRECTORY statement
    CREATE DIRECTORY DIR AS '/home/fsep'; ...(1)

```

## Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

```
INSERT INTO UTL_FILE.UTL_FILE_DIR(dir)
VALUES ('/home/fsep'); ...(1)
```

### (1) UTL\_FILE\_DIR/CREATE DIRECTORY

#### Feature differences

##### Oracle database

Configure the directory to be operated, using the CREATE DIRECTORY statement or the initialization parameter UTL\_FILE\_DIR.

##### Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

The directory to be operated cannot be configured using the CREATE DIRECTORY statement or the initialization parameter UTL\_FILE\_DIR.

#### Conversion procedure

Configure the target directory information in the UTL\_FILE.UTL\_FILE\_DIR table using the INSERT statement. Note that this conversion procedure should be performed only once before executing the PL/pgSQL function.

- When using the initialization parameter UTL\_FILE\_DIR:
  1. Check the initialization parameter UTL\_FILE\_DIR value ('/home/fsep' in the example).
  2. Using the INSERT statement, specify and execute the directory name checked in step 1.
    - Specify UTL\_FILE.UTL\_FILE\_DIR(dir) for the INTO clause.
    - Using the character string literal ('/home/fsep' in the example), specify the target directory name for the VALUES clause.
    - If multiple directories are specified, execute the INSERT statement for each directory.
- When using the CREATE DIRECTORY statement:
  1. Check the directory name ('/home/fsep' in the example) registered with the CREATE DIRECTORY statement. To check, log in SQL\*Plus as a user with DBA privileges, and execute "show ALL\_DIRECTORIES;".
  2. Using the INSERT statement, specify and execute the directory name checked in step 1. Same steps are used to specify the INSERT statement as when using the initialization parameter UTL\_FILE\_DIR.

## B.6.2 Checking File Information

#### Oracle database

```
CREATE PROCEDURE read_file(fname VARCHAR2) AS

    v_file      UTL_FILE.FILE_TYPE;
    v_exists    BOOLEAN;
    v_length    NUMBER;
    v_bsize     INTEGER;
    v_rbuff     VARCHAR2(1024);
BEGIN

    UTL_FILE.FGETATTR('DIR', fname, v_exists, v_length, v_bsize); ...(2)

    IF v_exists <> true THEN
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-- FILE NOT FOUND --');
        RETURN;
    END IF;
```

```

DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-- FILE DATA --');

v_file := UTL_FILE.FOPEN('DIR', fname, 'r', 1024); ...(3)
FOR i IN 1..3 LOOP
    UTL_FILE.GET_LINE(v_file, v_rbuff, 1024); ...(4)
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_rbuff);
END LOOP;
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('... more');
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-- READ END --');

UTL_FILE.FCLOSE(v_file); ...(5)
RETURN;

EXCEPTION
    WHEN NO_DATA_FOUND THEN
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-- FILE END --');

        UTL_FILE.FCLOSE(v_file);
        RETURN;
    WHEN OTHERS THEN
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-- SQL Error --');

        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('ERROR : ' || SQLERRM);
        UTL_FILE.FCLOSE_ALL; ...(6)
        RETURN;
END;
/

set serveroutput on

call read_file('file01.txt');

```

## Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

```

CREATE FUNCTION read_file(fname VARCHAR) RETURNS void AS $$
DECLARE
    v_file      UTL_FILE.FILE_TYPE;
    v_exists    BOOLEAN;
    v_length    NUMERIC;
    v_bsize     INTEGER;
    v_rbuff     VARCHAR(1024);
BEGIN
    PERFORM DBMS_OUTPUT.SERVEROUTPUT(TRUE);

    SELECT fexists, file_length, blocksize
        INTO v_exists, v_length, v_bsize
        FROM UTL_FILE.FGETATTR('/home/fsep', fname); ...(2)
    IF v_exists <> true THEN
        PERFORM DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-- FILE NOT FOUND --');
        RETURN;
    END IF;

    PERFORM DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-- FILE DATA --');
    v_file := UTL_FILE.FOPEN('/home/fsep', fname, 'w', 1024); ...(3)
    FOR i IN 1..3 LOOP
        v_rbuff := UTL_FILE.GET_LINE(v_file, 1024); ...(4)
        PERFORM DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(v_rbuff);
    END LOOP;
    PERFORM DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('... more');
    PERFORM DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-- READ END --');

    v_file := UTL_FILE.FCLOSE(v_file); ...(5)

```

```

        RETURN;

EXCEPTION
    WHEN NO_DATA_FOUND THEN
        PERFORM DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-- FILE END --');
        v_file := UTL_FILE.FCLOSE(v_file);
        RETURN;
    WHEN OTHERS THEN
        PERFORM DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-- SQL Error --');
        PERFORM DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('ERROR : ' || SQLERRM );
        PERFORM UTL_FILE.FCLOSE_ALL(); ... (6)
        RETURN;
END;
$$
LANGUAGE plpgsql;

SELECT read_file('file01.txt');

```

## (2) FGETATTR

Specification format for Oracle database

UTL\_FILE.FGETATTR(*firstArg*, *secondArg*, *thirdArg*, *fourthArg*, *fifthArg*)

Feature differences

Oracle database

If using a CREATE DIRECTORY statement (Oracle9.2i or later), specify a directory object name for the directory name.

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

A directory object name cannot be specified for the directory name.

Specification differences

Oracle database

Obtained values are received with variables specified for arguments.

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

Since obtained values are the search results for UTL\_FILE.FGETATTR, they are received with variables specified for the INTO clause of the SELECT statement.

Conversion procedure

Convert using the following procedure. Refer to UTL\_FILE\_DIR/CREATE DIRECTORY for information on how to check if the directory object name corresponds to the actual directory name.

1. Locate the places where the keyword "UTL\_FILE.FOPEN" is used in the stored procedure.
2. Check the actual directory name ('/home/fsep' in the example) that corresponds to the directory object name ('DIR' in the example).
3. Replace the directory object name ('DIR' in the example) in *firstArg* with the actual directory name ('/home/fsep' in the example) verified in step 2.
4. Replace the UTL\_FILE.FGETATTR location called with a SELECT INTO statement.
  - Use the literal "fexists, file\_length, blocksize" in the select list.
  - Specify *thirdArg*, *fourthArg*, and *fifthArg* (v\_exists, v\_length, v\_bsize, in the example) specified for UTL\_FILE.FGETATTR to the INTO clause in the same order as that of the arguments.
  - Use UTL\_FILE.FGETATTR in the FROM clause. Specify only the actual directory name for *firstArg* ('/home/fsep' in the example) and *secondArg* (fname in the example) before modification for the arguments.

### (3) FOPEN

#### Specification format for Oracle

UTL\_FILE.FOPEN(*firstArg*, *secondArg*, *thirdArg*, *fourthArg*, *fifthArg*)

#### Feature differences

##### Oracle database

If using a CREATE DIRECTORY statement (Oracle9.2i or later), specify a directory object name for the directory name.

##### Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

A directory object name cannot be specified for the directory name.

#### Conversion procedure

Convert using the following procedure. Refer to UTL\_FILE\_DIR/CREATE DIRECTORY for information on how to check if the directory object name corresponds to the actual directory name.

1. Locate the places where the keyword "UTL\_FILE.FOPEN" is used in the stored procedure.
2. Check the actual directory name ('/home/fsep' in the example) that corresponds to the directory object name ('DIR' in the example).
3. Replace the directory object name ('DIR' in the example) in *firstArg* with the actual directory name ('/home/fsep' in the example) checked in step 1.

### (4) GET\_LINE

#### Specification format for Oracle database

UTL\_FILE.GET\_LINE(*firstArg*, *secondArg*, *thirdArg*, *fourthArg*)

#### Specification differences

##### Oracle database

Obtained values are received with variables specified for arguments.

##### Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

Since obtained values are the returned value of UTL\_FILE.GET\_LINE, they are received with variables specified for substitution statement.

#### Conversion procedure

Convert using the following procedure:

1. Locate the places where the keyword "UTL\_FILE.GET\_LINE" is used in the stored procedure.
2. Replace the UTL\_FILE.GET\_LINE location called with a value assignment (:=).
  - On the left-hand side, specify *secondArg* (v\_rbuff in the example) specified for UTL\_FILE.GET\_LINE.
  - Use UTL\_FILE.GET\_LINE in the right-hand side. Specify only *firstArg* (v\_file in the example) and *thirdArg* (1024 in the example) before modification.

### (5) FCLOSE

#### Specification format for Oracle database

UTL\_FILE.FCLOSE(*firstArg*)

#### Specification differences

##### Oracle database

After closing, the file handler specified for the argument becomes NULL.

## Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

After closing, set the file handler to NULL by assigning the return value of UTL\_FILE.FCLOSE to it.

### Conversion procedure

Convert using the following procedure:

1. Locate the places where the keyword "UTL\_FILE.FCLOSE" is used in the stored procedure.
2. Replace the UTL\_FILE.FCLOSE location called with a value assignment (:=) so that the file handler (v\_file in the example) becomes NULL.
  - On the left-hand side, specify the argument (v\_file in the example) specified for UTL\_FILE.FCLOSE.
  - Use UTL\_FILE.FCLOSE in the right-hand side. For the argument, specify the same value (v\_file in the example) as before modification.

### (6) FCLOSE\_ALL

Same as NEW\_LINE in the DBMS\_OUTPUT package. Refer to NEW\_LINE in the DBMS\_OUTPUT for information on specification differences and conversion procedures associated with specification differences.

## B.6.3 Copying Files

---

### Oracle database

```
CREATE PROCEDURE copy_file(fromname VARCHAR2, toname VARCHAR2) AS
BEGIN

    UTL_FILE.FCOPY('DIR1', fromname, 'DIR2', toname, 1, NULL); ...(7)

    RETURN;

EXCEPTION
    WHEN OTHERS THEN
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-- SQL Error --');

        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('ERROR : ' || SQLERRM );
        RETURN;
END;
/

set serveroutput on

call copy_file('file01.txt','file01_bk.txt');
```

### Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

```
CREATE FUNCTION copy_file(fromname VARCHAR, toname VARCHAR) RETURNS void AS $$
BEGIN
    PERFORM DBMS_OUTPUT.SERVEROUTPUT(TRUE);

    PERFORM UTL_FILE.FCOPY('/home/fsep', fromname, '/home/backup', toname, 1, NULL); ...(7)
    RETURN;

EXCEPTION
    WHEN OTHERS THEN
        PERFORM DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-- SQL Error --');
        PERFORM DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('ERROR : ' || SQLERRM );
        RETURN;
END;
```

```

$$
LANGUAGE plpgsql;

SELECT copy_file('file01.txt','file01_bk.txt');

```

## (7) FCOPY

Specification format for Oracle database

UTL\_FILE.FCOPY(*firstArg*, *secondArg*, *thirdArg*, *fourthArg*, *fifthArg*, *sixthArg*)

Feature differences

Oracle database

If using a CREATE DIRECTORY statement (Oracle9.2i or later), specify a directory object name for the directory name.

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

A directory object name cannot be specified for the directory name.

Conversion procedure

Convert using the following procedure. Refer to UTL\_FILE\_DIR/CREATE DIRECTORY for information on how to check if the directory object name corresponds to the actual directory name.

1. Locate the places where the keyword "UTL\_FILE.FCOPY" is used in the stored procedure.
2. Check the actual directory names ('/home/fsep' and '/home/backup', in the example) that correspond to the directory object names ('DIR1' and 'DIR2', in the example) of *firstArg* and *thirdArg* argument.
3. Replace the directory object name ('DIR1' and 'DIR2', in the example) with the actual directory names ('/home/fsep' in the example) checked in step 1.

## B.6.4 Moving/Renaming Files

Oracle database

```

CREATE PROCEDURE move_file(fromname VARCHAR2, toname VARCHAR2) AS
BEGIN

    UTL_FILE.FRENAME('DIR1', fromname, 'DIR2', toname, FALSE); ...(8)
    RETURN;

EXCEPTION
    WHEN OTHERS THEN
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-- SQL Error --');

        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('ERROR : ' || SQLERRM );
        RETURN;
END;
/

set serveroutput on

call move_file('file01.txt','file02.txt');

```

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

```

CREATE FUNCTION move_file(fromname VARCHAR, toname VARCHAR) RETURNS void AS $$
BEGIN
    PERFORM DBMS_OUTPUT.SERVEROUTPUT(TRUE);

```



```

        PERFORM UTL_FILE.FRENAME('/home/fsep', fromname, '/home/backup', toname, FALSE); ...(8)
    RETURN;

EXCEPTION
    WHEN OTHERS THEN
        PERFORM DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-- SQL Error --');
        PERFORM DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('ERROR : ' || SQLERRM );
        RETURN;
END;
$$
LANGUAGE plpgsql;

SELECT move_file('file01.txt','file02.txt');

```

## (8) FRENAME

Same as FCOPY for the UTL\_FILE package. Refer to FCOPY in the UTL\_FILE package for information on specification differences and conversion procedures associated with specification differences.

## B.7 DBMS\_SQL (Execute Dynamic SQL)

### Features

For DBMS\_SQL, dynamic SQL can be executed from PL/pgSQL.

### B.7.1 Searching Using a Cursor

#### Oracle database

```

CREATE PROCEDURE search_test(h_where CLOB) AS

    str_sql      CLOB;
    v_cnt        INTEGER;
    v_array       DBMS_SQL.VARCHAR2A;
    v_cur         INTEGER;
    v_smpid       INTEGER;
    v_smpnm       VARCHAR2(20);
    v_addbuff     VARCHAR2(20);
    v_smpage      INTEGER;
    errcd         INTEGER;
    length        INTEGER;
    ret           INTEGER;
BEGIN

    str_sql      := 'SELECT smpid, smpnm FROM smp_tbl WHERE ' || h_where || ' ORDER BY smpid';
    v_smpid      := 0;
    v_smpnm      := '';
    v_smpage     := 0;

    v_cur := DBMS_SQL.OPEN_CURSOR; ...(1)

    v_cnt :=
        CEIL(DBMS_LOB.GETLENGTH(str_sql)/1000);
    FOR idx IN 1 .. v_cnt LOOP
        v_array(idx) :=
            DBMS_LOB.SUBSTR(str_sql,
                            1000,
                            (idx-1)*1000+1);
    
```

```

END LOOP;
DBMS_SQL.PARSE(v_cur, v_array, 1, v_cnt, FALSE, DBMS_SQL.NATIVE); ...(2)

DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_COLUMN(v_cur, 1, v_smpid);

DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_COLUMN(v_cur, 2, v_smpnm, 10);

ret := DBMS_SQL.EXECUTE(v_cur);
LOOP
    v_addbuff := '';

    IF DBMS_SQL.FETCH_ROWS(v_cur) = 0 THEN
        EXIT;
    END IF;

    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-----');
    DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE(v_cur, 1, v_smpid, errcd, length); ...(3)

    IF errcd = 1405 THEN ...(3)

        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('smpid          = (NULL)');
    ELSE
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('smpid          = ' || v_smpid);
    END IF;

    DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE(v_cur, 2, v_smpnm, errcd, length);

    IF errcd = 1406 THEN
        v_addbuff := '... [len=' || length || ']';
    END IF;
    IF errcd = 1405 THEN
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('v_smpnm        = (NULL)');
    ELSE
        DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('v_smpnm        = ' || v_smpnm || v_addbuff );
    END IF;

DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-----');

    DBMS_OUTPUT.NEW_LINE;
END LOOP;

DBMS_SQL.CLOSE_CURSOR(v_cur); ...(4)

RETURN;
END;
/

Set serveroutput on

call search_test('smpid < 100');

```

## Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

```

CREATE FUNCTION search_test(h_where text) RETURNS void AS $$
DECLARE
    str_sql      text;

    v_cur        INTEGER;

```

```

v_smpid      INTEGER;
v_smpnm      VARCHAR(20);
v_addbuff    VARCHAR(20);
v_smpage     INTEGER;
errcd        INTEGER;
length       INTEGER;
ret          INTEGER;
BEGIN
    PERFORM DBMS_OUTPUT.SERVEROUTPUT(TRUE);
    str_sql    := 'SELECT smpid, smpnm FROM smp_tbl WHERE ' || h_where || ' ORDER BY smpid';
    v_smpid    := 0;
    v_smpnm    := '';
    v_smpage   := 0;

    v_cur := DBMS_SQL.OPEN_CURSOR(); ...(1)

    PERFORM DBMS_SQL.PARSE(v_cur, str_sql, 1); ...(2)
    PERFORM DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_COLUMN(v_cur, 1, v_smpid);
    PERFORM DBMS_SQL.DEFINE_COLUMN(v_cur, 2, v_smpnm, 10);

    ret := DBMS_SQL.EXECUTE(v_cur);
    LOOP
        v_addbuff := '';

        IF DBMS_SQL.FETCH_ROWS(v_cur) = 0 THEN
            EXIT;
        END IF;

        PERFORM
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-----');
        SELECT value,column_error,actual_length
        INTO v_smpid, errcd, length
        FROM DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE(v_cur,
                                   1,
                                   v_smpid); ...(3)

        IF errcd = 22002 THEN ...(3)
            PERFORM DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('smpid      = (NULL)');
        ELSE
            PERFORM DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('smpid      = ' || v_smpid);
        END IF;

        SELECT value,column_error,actual_length INTO v_smpnm, errcd, length FROM
DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE(v_cur, 2, v_smpnm);
        IF errcd = 22001 THEN
            v_addbuff := '... [len=' || length || ']';
        END IF;
        IF errcd = 22002 THEN
            PERFORM DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('v_smpnm      = (NULL)');
        ELSE
            PERFORM DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('v_smpnm      = ' || v_smpnm || v_addbuff );
        END IF;

        PERFORM
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('-----');
        PERFORM DBMS_OUTPUT.NEW_LINE();
    END LOOP;

    v_cur := DBMS_SQL.CLOSE_CURSOR(v_cur); ...(4)
    RETURN;
END;
$$
LANGUAGE plpgsql;

```

```
SELECT search_test('smpid < 100');
```

### (1) OPEN\_CURSOR

Same as NEW\_LINE in the DBMS\_OUTPUT package. Refer to NEW\_LINE in the DBMS\_OUTPUT package for information on specification differences and conversion procedures associated with specification differences.

### (2) PARSE

Specification format for Oracle database

DBMS\_SQL.PARSE(*firstArg*, *secondArg*, *thirdArg*, *fourthArg*, *fifthArg*)

Feature differences

Oracle database

SQL statements can be specified with string table types (VARCHAR2A type, VARCHAR2S type). Specify this for *secondArg*.

DBMS\_SQL.NATIVE, DBMS\_SQL.V6, DBMS\_SQL.V7 can be specified for processing SQL statements.

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

SQL statements cannot be specified with string table types.

DBMS\_SQL.NATIVE, DBMS\_SQL.V6, DBMS\_SQL.V7 cannot be specified for processing SQL statements.

Conversion procedure

Convert using the following procedure:

1. Locate the places where the keyword "DBMS\_SQL.PARSE" is used in the stored procedure.
2. Check the data type of the SQL statement specified for *secondArg* (v\_array in the example).
  - If the data type is either DBMS\_SQL.VARCHAR2A type or DBMS\_SQL.VARCHAR2S type, then it is a table type specification. Execute step 3 and continue the conversion process.
  - If the data type is neither DBMS\_SQL.VARCHAR2A type nor DBMS\_SQL.VARCHAR2S type, then it is a string specification. Execute step 7 and continue the conversion process.
3. Check the SQL statement (str\_sql in the example) before it was divided into DBMS\_SQL.VARCHAR2A type and DBMS\_SQL.VARCHAR2S type.
4. Delete the sequence of the processes (processes near FOR idx in the example) where SQL is divided into DBMS\_SQL.VARCHAR2A type and DBMS\_SQL.VARCHAR2S type.
5. Replace *secondArg* with the SQL statement (str\_sql in the example) before it is divided, that was checked in step 2.
6. Delete *thirdArg*, *fourthArg*, and *fifthArg* (v\_cnt, FALSE, DBMS\_SQL.NATIVE, in the example).
7. If DBMS\_SQL.NATIVE, DBMS\_SQL.V6, and DBMS\_SQL.V7 are specified, then replace *thirdArg* with a numeric literal 1.
  - If either DBMS\_SQL.VARCHAR2A type or DBMS\_SQL.VARCHAR2S type is used, then *sixthArg* becomes relevant.
  - If neither DBMS\_SQL.VARCHAR2A type nor DBMS\_SQL.VARCHAR2S type is used, then *thirdArg* becomes relevant.

### (3) COLUMN\_VALUE

Specification format for Oracle database

DBMS\_SQL.COLUMN\_VALUE(*firstArg*, *secondArg*, *thirdArg*, *fourthArg*, *fifthArg*)

## Feature differences

### Oracle database

The following error codes are returned for `column_error`.

- 1406: fetched column value was truncated
- 1405: fetched column value is NULL

### Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

The following error codes are returned for `column_error`.

- 22001: `string_data_right_truncation`
- 22002: `null_value_no_indicator_parameter`

## Specification differences

### Oracle database

Obtained values are received with variables specified for arguments.

### Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

Since obtained values are the search results for `DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE`, they are received with variables specified for the `INTO` clause of the `SELECT` statement.

## Conversion procedure

Convert using the following procedure:

1. Locate the places where the keyword "`DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE`" is used in the stored procedure.
2. Replace the `DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE` location called with a `SELECT INTO` statement.
  - Check the number of arguments (`v_smpid`, `errcd`, and `length` in the example) specified after *secondArg* (1 in the example) of `DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE`.
  - Specify "value", "column\_error", and "actual\_length" in the select list, according to the number of arguments checked in the previous step (for example, if only *thirdArg* is specified, then specify "value" only.)
  - Specify *thirdArg*, *fourthArg*, and *fifthArg* (`v_smpid`, `errcd`, `length` in the example) configured for `DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE`, for the `INTO` clause.
  - Use `DBMS_SQL.COLUMN_VALUE` in the `FROM` clause. Specify *firstArg*, *secondArg*, and *thirdArg* (`v_cur`, 1, `v_smpid`, in the example) before modification.
3. If the *fourthArg* (`column_error` value in the example) is used, then check the location of the target variable (`errcd` in the example).
4. If a decision process is performed in the location checked, then modify the values used in the decision process as below:
  - 1406 to 22001
  - 1405 to 22002

## (4) CLOSE\_CURSOR

### Specification format for Oracle database

`DBMS_SQL.CLOSE_CURSOR(firstArg)`

### Specification differences

#### Oracle database

After closing, the cursor specified in *firstArg* becomes NULL.

## Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

After closing, set the cursor to NULL by assigning the return value of DBMS\_SQL.CLOSE\_CURSOR to it.

### Conversion procedure

Convert using the following procedure:

1. Locate the places where the keyword "DBMS\_SQL.CLOSE\_CURSOR" is used in the stored procedure.
2. Set the cursor to NULL by assigning (:=) the return value of DBMS\_SQL.CLOSE\_CURSOR to it.
  - On the left-hand side, specify the argument (v\_cur in the example) specified for DBMS\_SQL.CLOSE\_CURSOR.
  - Use DBMS\_SQL.CLOSE\_CURSOR in the right-hand side. For the argument, specify the same value (v\_cur in the example) as before modification.

## Appendix C Tables Used by the Features Compatible with Oracle Databases

This chapter describes the tables used by the features compatible with Oracle databases.

### C.1 UTL\_FILE.UTL\_FILE\_DIR

---

Register the directory handled by the UTL\_FILE package in the UTL\_FILE.UTL\_FILE\_DIR table.

Name	Type	Description
<i>dir</i>	text	Name of the directory handled by the UTL_FILE package

## Appendix D ECOBPG - Embedded SQL in COBOL

This appendix describes application development using embedded SQL in COBOL.

### D.1 Precautions when Using Functions and Operators

An embedded SQL program consists of code written in an ordinary programming language, in this case COBOL, mixed with SQL commands in specially marked sections. To build the program, the source code (\*.pco) is first passed through the embedded SQL preprocessor, which converts it to an ordinary COBOL program (\*.cob), and afterwards it can be processed by a COBOL compiler. (For details about the compiling and linking see "[D.9 Processing Embedded SQL Programs](#)".) Converted ECOBPG applications call functions in the libpq library through the embedded SQL library (ecpglib), and communicate with the PostgreSQL server using the normal frontend-backend protocol.

Embedded SQL has advantages over other methods for handling SQL commands from COBOL code. First, it takes care of the tedious passing of information to and from variables in your C program. Second, the SQL code in the program is checked at build time for syntactical correctness. Third, embedded SQL in COBOL is specified in the SQL standard and supported by many other SQL database systems. The PostgreSQL implementation is designed to match this standard as much as possible, and it is usually possible to port embedded SQL programs written for other SQL databases to PostgreSQL with relative ease.

As already stated, programs written for the embedded SQL interface are normal COBOL programs with special code inserted to perform database-related actions. This special code always has the form:

```
EXEC SQL ... END-EXEC
```

These statements syntactically take the place of a COBOL statement. Depending on the particular statement, they can appear at the data division or at the procedure division. Actual executable SQLs need to be placed at the procedure division, and host variable declarations need to be placed at data division. However, the precompiler does not validate their placements. Embedded SQL statements follow the case-sensitivity rules of normal SQL code, and not those of COBOL.

For COBOL code notation, "fixed" or "variable" can be used. In each line, columns 1 to 6 constitute the line number area, and column 7 is the indicator area. Embedded SQL programs also should be placed in area B (column 12 and beyond).

Note that sample code in this document omits indents for each area.

ECOBPG processes or outputs programs according to the COBOL code notation. COBOL code notation is specified using the ecobpg command. Note, however, that the following restrictions apply:

- For "fixed" notation, area B is from columns 12 to 72. Characters in column 73 and beyond are deleted in the precompiled source.
- For "variable" notation, area B is from column 12 to the last column of that record (up to column 251). Characters in column 252 and beyond are deleted in the precompiled source.

ECOBPG accepts as many COBOL statements as possible. Note, however, that the following restrictions apply:

- In declaring host variable section, you can't use debug line.
- Outside of declaring host variable section, you can use debug line, but you can't contain any SQL in debug lines.
- In declaring host variable section, you can't use commas or semicolons as separator. Use space instead.
- EXEC SQL VAR command, it can be used in ECPG, is not available in ECOBPG. Use REDEFINE clause of COBOL instead.

The following sections explain all the embedded SQL statements.



## D.2 Managing Database Connections

---

This section describes how to open, close, and switch database connections.

### D.2.1 Connecting to the Database Server

---

One connects to a database using the following statement:

```
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO target [AS connection-name] [USER user-name] END-EXEC.
```

The target can be specified in the following ways:

- dbname[@hostname][:port]
- tcp:postgresql://hostname[:port][/dbname][?options]
- unix:postgresql://hostname[:port][/dbname][?options]
- an SQL string literal containing one of the above forms
- a reference to a character variable containing one of the above forms (see examples)
- DEFAULT

If you specify the connection target literally (that is, not through a variable reference) and you don't quote the value, then the case-insensitivity rules of normal SQL are applied. In that case you can also double-quote the individual parameters separately as needed. In practice, it is probably less error-prone to use a (single-quoted) string literal or a variable reference. The connection target DEFAULT initiates a connection to the default database under the default user name. No separate user name or connection name can be specified in that case.

There are also different ways to specify the user name:

- username
- username/password
- username IDENTIFIED BY password
- username USING password

As above, the parameters username and password can be an SQL identifier, an SQL string literal, or a reference to a character variable.

The connection-name is used to handle multiple connections in one program. It can be omitted if a program uses only one connection. The most recently opened connection becomes the current connection, which is used by default when an SQL statement is to be executed (see later in this chapter).

Here are some examples of CONNECT statements:

```
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO mydb@sql.mydomain.com END-EXEC.
```

```
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO tcp:postgresql://sql.mydomain.com/mydb AS myconnection USER john END-EXEC.
```

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.  
01 TARGET PIC X(25).  
01 USER PIC X(5).  
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.  
...  
MOVE "mydb@sql.mydomain.com" TO TARGET.  
MOVE "john" TO USER.  
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO :TARGET USER :USER END-EXEC.
```

The last form makes use of the variant referred to above as character variable reference. For this purpose, only fixed-length string (no VARYING) variable can be used. Trailing spaces are ignored. You will see in later sections how COBOL variables can be used in SQL statements when you prefix them with a colon.

Be advised that the format of the connection target is not specified in the SQL standard. So if you want to develop portable applications, you might want to use something based on the last example above to encapsulate the connection target string somewhere.

## D.2.2 Choosing a Connection

SQL statements in embedded SQL programs are by default executed on the current connection, that is, the most recently opened one. If an application needs to manage multiple connections, then there are two ways to handle this.

The first option is to explicitly choose a connection for each SQL statement, for example:

```
EXEC SQL AT connection-name SELECT ... END-EXEC.
```

This option is particularly suitable if the application needs to use several connections in mixed order.

The second option is to execute a statement to switch the current connection. That statement is:

```
EXEC SQL SET CONNECTION connection-name END-EXEC.
```

This option is particularly convenient if many statements are to be executed on the same connection.

Here is an example program managing multiple database connections:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.
    01 DBNAME PIC X(7).
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.

    EXEC SQL CONNECT TO testdb1 AS con1 USER testuser END-EXEC.
    EXEC SQL CONNECT TO testdb2 AS con2 USER testuser END-EXEC.
    EXEC SQL CONNECT TO testdb3 AS con3 USER testuser END-EXEC.

*   This query would be executed in the last opened database "testdb3".
    EXEC SQL SELECT current_database() INTO :DBNAME END-EXEC.
    DISPLAY "current=" DBNAME " (should be testdb3)".

*   Using "AT" to run a query in "testdb2"
    EXEC SQL AT con2 SELECT current_database() INTO :DBNAME END-EXEC.
    DISPLAY "current=" DBNAME " (should be testdb2)".

*   Switch the current connection to "testdb1".
    EXEC SQL SET CONNECTION con1 END-EXEC.

    EXEC SQL SELECT current_database() INTO :DBNAME END-EXEC.
    DISPLAY "current=" DBNAME " (should be testdb1)".

    EXEC SQL DISCONNECT ALL END-EXEC.
```

This example would produce this output:

```
current=testdb3 (should be testdb3)
current=testdb2 (should be testdb2)
current=testdb1 (should be testdb1)
```

## D.2.3 Closing a Connection

---

To close a connection, use the following statement:

```
EXEC SQL DISCONNECT [connection] END-EXEC.
```

The connection can be specified in the following ways:

- connection-name
- DEFAULT
- CURRENT
- ALL

If no connection name is specified, the current connection is closed.

It is good style that an application always explicitly disconnect from every connection it opened.

## D.3 Running SQL Commands

---

Any SQL command can be run from within an embedded SQL application. Below are some examples of how to do that.

### D.3.1 Executing SQL Statements

---

Creating a table:

```
EXEC SQL CREATE TABLE foo (number integer, ascii char(16)) END-EXEC.  
EXEC SQL CREATE UNIQUE INDEX num1 ON foo(number) END-EXEC.  
EXEC SQL COMMIT END-EXEC.
```

Inserting rows:

```
EXEC SQL INSERT INTO foo (number, ascii) VALUES (9999, 'doodad') END-EXEC.  
EXEC SQL COMMIT END-EXEC.
```

Deleting rows:

```
EXEC SQL DELETE FROM foo WHERE number = 9999 END-EXEC.  
EXEC SQL COMMIT END-EXEC.
```

Updates:

```
EXEC SQL UPDATE foo  
    SET ascii = 'foobar'  
    WHERE number = 9999 END-EXEC.  
EXEC SQL COMMIT END-EXEC.
```

SELECT statements that return a single result row can also be executed using EXEC SQL directly. To handle result sets with multiple rows, an application has to use a cursor; see "[D.3.2 Using Cursors](#)" below. (As a special case, an application can fetch multiple rows at once into an array host variable; see "[Arrays](#)".)

Single-row select:

```
EXEC SQL SELECT foo INTO :FooBar FROM table1 WHERE ascii = 'doodad' END-EXEC.
```

Also, a configuration parameter can be retrieved with the SHOW command:

```
EXEC SQL SHOW search_path INTO :var END-EXEC.
```

The tokens of the form :something are *host variables*, that is, they refer to variables in the COBOL program. They are explained in "[D.4 Using Host Variables](#)".

## D.3.2 Using Cursors

---

To retrieve a result set holding multiple rows, an application has to declare a cursor and fetch each row from the cursor. The steps to use a cursor are the following: declare a cursor, open it, fetch a row from the cursor, repeat, and finally close it.

Select using cursors:

```
EXEC SQL DECLARE foo_bar CURSOR FOR
    SELECT number, ascii FROM foo
    ORDER BY ascii END-EXEC.
EXEC SQL OPEN foo_bar END-EXEC.
EXEC SQL FETCH foo_bar INTO :FooBar, :DooDad END-EXEC.
...
EXEC SQL CLOSE foo_bar END-EXEC.
EXEC SQL COMMIT END-EXEC.
```

For more details about declaration of the cursor, see "[D.11.4 DECLARE](#)", and refer to "SQL Commands" in "Reference" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on FETCH command.

Note: The ECOBPG DECLARE command does not actually cause a statement to be sent to the PostgreSQL backend. The cursor is opened in the backend (using the backend's DECLARE command) at the point when the OPEN command is executed.

## D.3.3 Managing Transactions

---

In the default mode, statements are committed only when EXEC SQL COMMIT is issued. The embedded SQL interface also supports autocommit of transactions (similar to libpq behavior) via the -t command-line option to ecobpg or via the EXEC SQL SET AUTOCOMMIT TO ON statement. In autocommit mode, each command is automatically committed unless it is inside an explicit transaction block. This mode can be explicitly turned off using EXEC SQL SET AUTOCOMMIT TO OFF.



See

.....  
Refer to "ecpg" in "PostgreSQL Client Applications" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on -t command-line option to ecobpg.  
.....

The following transaction management commands are available:

EXEC SQL COMMIT END-EXEC

Commit an in-progress transaction.

EXEC SQL ROLLBACK END-EXEC

Roll back an in-progress transaction.

EXEC SQL SET AUTOCOMMIT TO ON END-EXEC

Enable autocommit mode.

EXEC SQL SET AUTOCOMMIT TO OFF END-EXEC

Disable autocommit mode. This is the default.

## D.3.4 Prepared Statements

---

When the values to be passed to an SQL statement are not known at compile time, or the same statement is going to be used many times, then prepared statements can be useful.

The statement is prepared using the command PREPARE. For the values that are not known yet, use the placeholder "?":

```
EXEC SQL PREPARE stmt1 FROM "SELECT oid, datname FROM pg_database WHERE oid = ?" END-EXEC.
```

If a statement returns a single row, the application can call EXECUTE after PREPARE to execute the statement, supplying the actual values for the placeholders with a USING clause:

```
EXEC SQL EXECUTE stmt1 INTO :dboid, :dbname USING 1 END-EXEC.
```

If a statement returns multiple rows, the application can use a cursor declared based on the prepared statement. To bind input parameters, the cursor must be opened with a USING clause:

```
EXEC SQL PREPARE stmt1 FROM "SELECT oid,datname FROM pg_database WHERE oid > ?" END-EXEC.  
EXEC SQL DECLARE foo_bar CURSOR FOR stmt1 END-EXEC.  
  
* when end of result set reached, break out of while loop  
EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND GOTO FETCH-END END-EXEC.  
  
EXEC SQL OPEN foo_bar USING 100 END-EXEC.  
...  
PERFORM NO LIMIT  
    EXEC SQL FETCH NEXT FROM foo_bar INTO :dboid, :dbname END-EXEC  
END-PERFORM.  
  
FETCH-END.  
EXEC SQL CLOSE foo_bar END-EXEC.
```

When you don't need the prepared statement anymore, you should deallocate it:

```
EXEC SQL DEALLOCATE PREPARE name END-EXEC.
```

For more details about PREPARE, see "[D.11.10 PREPARE](#)". Also see "[D.5 Dynamic SQL](#)" for more details about using placeholders and input parameters.

## D.4 Using Host Variables

In "[D.3 Running SQL Commands](#)" you saw how you can execute SQL statements from an embedded SQL program. Some of those statements only used fixed values and did not provide a way to insert user-supplied values into statements or have the program process the values returned by the query. Those kinds of statements are not really useful in real applications. This section explains in detail how you can pass data between your COBOL program and the embedded SQL statements using a simple mechanism called host variables. In an embedded SQL program we consider the SQL statements to be guests in the COBOL program code which is the host language. Therefore the variables of the COBOL program are called host variables.

Another way to exchange values between PostgreSQL backends and ECOBPG applications is the use of SQL descriptors, described in "[D.6 Using Descriptor Areas](#)".

### D.4.1 Overview

Passing data between the COBOL program and the SQL statements is particularly simple in embedded SQL. Instead of having the program paste the data into the statement, which entails various complications, such as properly quoting the value, you can simply write the name of a COBOL variable into the SQL statement, prefixed by a colon. For example:

```
EXEC SQL INSERT INTO sometable VALUES (:v1, 'foo', :v2) END-EXEC.
```

This statement refers to two COBOL variables named v1 and v2 and also uses a regular SQL string literal, to illustrate that you are not restricted to use one kind of data or the other.

This style of inserting COBOL variables in SQL statements works anywhere a value expression is expected in an SQL statement.

### D.4.2 Declare Sections

To pass data from the program to the database, for example as parameters in a query, or to pass data from the database back to the program, the COBOL variables that are intended to contain this data need to be declared in specially marked sections, so the embedded SQL preprocessor is made aware of them.

This section starts with:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.
```

and ends with:

```
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.
```

Between those lines, there must be normal COBOL variable declarations, such as:

```
01 INTX PIC S9(9) COMP VALUE 4.  
01 FOO PIC X(15).  
01 BAR PIC X(15).
```

As you can see, you can optionally assign an initial value to the variable. The variable's scope is determined by the location of its declaring section within the program.

You can have as many declare sections in a program as you like.

The declarations are also echoed to the output file as normal COBOL variables, so there's no need to declare them again. Variables that are not intended to be used in SQL commands can be declared normally outside these special sections.

The definition of a group item also must be listed inside a DECLARE section. Otherwise the preprocessor cannot handle these types since it does not know the definition.

## D.4.3 Retrieving Query Results

Now you should be able to pass data generated by your program into an SQL command. But how do you retrieve the results of a query? For that purpose, embedded SQL provides special variants of the usual commands SELECT and FETCH. These commands have a special INTO clause that specifies which host variables the retrieved values are to be stored in. SELECT is used for a query that returns only single row, and FETCH is used for a query that returns multiple rows, using a cursor.

Here is an example:

```
*  
* assume this table:  
* CREATE TABLE test (a int, b varchar(50));  
*  
  
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.  
01 V1 PIC S9(9).  
01 V2 PIC X(50) VARYING.  
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.  
  
...  
  
EXEC SQL SELECT a, b INTO :V1, :V2 FROM test END-EXEC.
```

So the INTO clause appears between the select list and the FROM clause. The number of elements in the select list and the list after INTO (also called the target list) must be equal.

Here is an example using the command FETCH:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.  
01 V1 PIC S9(9).  
01 V2 PIC X(50) VARYING.  
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.  
  
...  
  
EXEC SQL DECLARE foo CURSOR FOR SELECT a, b FROM test END-EXEC.  
  
...  
  
PERFORM WITH  
...  
EXEC SQL FETCH NEXT FROM foo INTO :V1, :V2 END-EXEC
```

```

...
END-PERFORM.

```

Here the INTO clause appears after all the normal clauses.

## D.4.4 Type Mapping

When ECOBPG applications exchange values between the PostgreSQL server and the COBOL application, such as when retrieving query results from the server or executing SQL statements with input parameters, the values need to be converted between PostgreSQL data types and host language variable types (specifically COBOL language data types). One of the main points of ECOBPG is that it takes care of this automatically in most cases.

In this respect, there are two kinds of data types: Some simple PostgreSQL data types, such as integer and text, can be read and written by the application directly. Other PostgreSQL data types, such as timestamp and date can only be accessed through character strings. special library functions does not exist in ecobpg. (pgtypes, exists in ECPG, for COBOL is not implemented yet)

"[Table D.1 Mapping Between PostgreSQL Data Types and COBOL Variable Types](#)" shows which PostgreSQL data types correspond to which COBOL data types. When you wish to send or receive a value of a given PostgreSQL data type, you should declare a COBOL variable of the corresponding COBOL data type in the declare section.

Table D.1 Mapping Between PostgreSQL Data Types and COBOL Variable Types

PostgreSQL data type	COBOL Host variable type
smallint	PIC S9([1-4]) {BINARY COMP COMP-5}
integer	PIC S9([5-9]) {BINARY COMP COMP-5}
bigint	PIC S9([10-18]) {BINARY COMP COMP-5}
decimal	PIC S9(m)V9(n) PACKED-DECIMAL PIC 9(m)V9(n) DISPLAY (*1) PIC S9(m)V9(n) DISPLAY PIC S9(m)V9(n) DISPLAY SIGN TRAILING [SEPARATE] PIC S9(m)V9(n) DISPLAY SIGN LEADING [SEPARATE]
numeric	(same with decimal)
real	COMP-1
double precision	COMP-2
small serial	PIC S9([1-4]) {BINARY COMP COMP-5}
serial	PIC S9([1-9]) {BINARY COMP COMP-5}
bigserial	PIC S9([10-18]) {BINARY COMP COMP-5}
oid	PIC 9(9) {BINARY COMP COMP-5}
character( <i>n</i> ), varchar( <i>n</i> ), text	PIC X( <i>n</i> ), PIC X( <i>n</i> ) VARYING
name	PIC X(NAMEDATALEN)
boolean	BOOL(*2)
bytea	BYTEA(n)
other types(e.g. timestamp)	PIC X( <i>n</i> ), PIC X( <i>n</i> ) VARYING
<p>*1: If no USAGE is specified, host variable is regarded as DISPLAY.</p> <p>*2: Type definition is added automatically on pre-compiling.</p> <p>Body of BOOL is PIC X(1). '1' for true and '0' for false.</p> <p>You can use some pattern of digits for integer(see table), but if database sends big number with more digits than specified, behavior is undefined.</p>	

PostgreSQL data type	COBOL Host variable type
VALUE clause can't be used with VARYING. (Can be used with other types)	
REDEFINE clause can be used, but it won't be validated on pre-compilation (The COBOL compiler will do this).	

## Handling Character Strings

To handle SQL character string data types, such as varchar and text, there is a possible way to declare the host variables.

The way is using the PIC X(*n*) VARYING type (we call it VARCHAR type from now on), which is a special type provided by ECOBPG. The definition on type VARCHAR is converted into a group item consists of named variables. A declaration like:

```
01 VAR PIC X(180) VARYING.
```

is converted into:

```
01 VAR.
49 LEN PIC S9(4) COMP-5.
49 ARR PIC X(180).
```

if --varchar-with-named-member option is used, it is converted into:

```
01 VAR.
49 VAR-LEN PIC S9(4) COMP-5.
49 VAR-ARR PIC X(180).
```

You can use level 1 to 48 for VARCHAR. Don't use level 49 variable right after VARCHAR variable. To use a VARCHAR host variable as an input for SQL statement, LEN must be set the length of the string included in ARR.

To use a VARCHAR host variable as an output of SQL statement, the variable must be declared in a sufficient length. If the length is insufficient, it can cause a buffer overrun.

PIC X(*n*) and VARCHAR host variables can also hold values of other SQL types, which will be stored in their string forms.

## Accessing Special Data Types

ECOBPG doesn't have special support for date, timestamp, and interval types.

(ECPG has pgtypes, but ECOBPG doesn't.)

You can use PIC X(*n*) or VARCHAR for DB I/O with these types. See "Data Types" section in PostgreSQL's document.

bytea

Handling of bytea types is similar to VARCHAR. The definition of an array of type bytea is converted into a group item consists of named variables.

A declaration like:

```
01 var bytea(100).
```

is converted into:

```
01 var .
49 LEN PIC S9(9) COMP-5 .
49 ARR PIC X(100) .
```

if bytea-with-named-member option is used, it is converted into:

```
01 var .
49 var-LEN PIC S9(9) COMP-5 .
49 var-ARR PIC X(100) .
```

The data item ARR holds binary format data. Unlike VARCHAR, it is not affected by the locale or character encoding when processing data.



Other usage and prohibitions are the same as VARCHAR.



### Note

The bytea variable can only be used if byta\_output is set to hex.

## Host Variables with Nonprimitive Types

As a host variable you can also use arrays, typedefs, and group items.

### Arrays

To create and use array variables, OCCURENCE syntax is provided by COBOL.

The typical use case is to retrieve multiple rows from a query result without using a cursor. Without an array, to process a query result consisting of multiple rows, it is required to use a cursor and the FETCH command. But with array host variables, multiple rows can be received at once. The length of the array has to be defined to be able to accommodate all rows, otherwise a buffer overrun will likely occur.

Following example scans the pg\_database system table and shows all OIDs and names of the available databases:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.
01 GROUP-ITEM.
    05 DBID PIC S9(9) COMP OCCURS 8.
    05 DBNAME PIC X(16) OCCURS 8.
01 I PIC S9(9) COMP.
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.

EXEC SQL CONNECT TO testdb END-EXEC.

* Retrieve multiple rows into arrays at once.
EXEC SQL SELECT oid,dbname INTO :DBID, :DBNAME FROM pg_database END-EXEC.

PERFORM VARYING I FROM 1 BY 1 UNTIL I > 8
    DISPLAY "oid=" DBID(I) ", dbname=" DBNAME(I)
END-PERFORM.

EXEC SQL COMMIT END-EXEC.
EXEC SQL DISCONNECT ALL END-EXEC.
```

You can use member of array as simple host variable by specifying subscript of array. For specifying subscript, use C-style "[1]", not COBOL-style "(1)". But subscript starts with 1, according to COBOL syntax.

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.
01 GROUP-ITEM.
    05 DBID PIC S9(9) COMP OCCURS 8.
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.

EXEC SQL CONNECT TO testdb END-EXEC.

EXEC SQL SELECT oid INTO :DBID[1] FROM pg_database WHERE oid=1 END-EXEC.

    DISPLAY "oid=" DBID(1)

EXEC SQL COMMIT END-EXEC.
EXEC SQL DISCONNECT ALL END-EXEC.
```

### Group Item

A group item whose subordinate item names match the column names of a query result, can be used to retrieve multiple columns at once. The group item enables handling multiple column values in a single host variable.

The following example retrieves OIDs, names, and sizes of the available databases from the pg\_database system table by using the pg\_database\_size() function. In this example, a group item variable dbinfo\_t with members whose names match each column in the SELECT result is used to retrieve one result row without putting multiple host variables in the FETCH statement.

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.
    01 DBINFO-T TYPEDEF.
        02 OID PIC S9(9) COMP.
        02 DATNAME PIC X(65).
        02 DBSIZE PIC S9(18) COMP.

    01 DBVAL TYPE DBINFO-T.
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.


EXEC SQL DECLARE curl CURSOR FOR SELECT oid, datname, pg_database_size(oid) AS size
FROM pg_database END-EXEC.
EXEC SQL OPEN curl END-EXEC.

*   when end of result set reached, break out of loop
EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND GOTO END-FETCH END-EXEC.

PERFORM NO LIMIT
*   Fetch multiple columns into one structure.
EXEC SQL FETCH FROM curl INTO :DBVAL END-EXEC

*   Print members of the structure.
DISPLAY "oid=" OID ", datname=" DATNAME ", size=" DBSIZE
END-PERFORM.

END-FETCH.
EXEC SQL CLOSE curl END-EXEC.
```

group item host variables "absorb" as many columns as the group item as subordinate items. Additional columns can be assigned to other host variables. For example, the above program could also be restructured like this, with the size variable outside the group item:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.
    01 DBINFO-T TYPEDEF.
        02 OID PIC S9(9) COMP.
        02 DATNAME PIC X(65).

    01 DBVAL TYPE DBINFO-T.
    01 DBSIZE PIC S9(18) COMP.
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.


EXEC SQL DECLARE curl CURSOR FOR SELECT oid, datname, pg_database_size(oid) AS size
FROM pg_database END-EXEC.
EXEC SQL OPEN curl END-EXEC.

*   when end of result set reached, break out of loop
EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND GOTO END-FETCH END-EXEC.

PERFORM NO LIMIT
*   Fetch multiple columns into one structure.
EXEC SQL FETCH FROM curl INTO :DBVAL, :DBSIZE END-EXEC

*   Print members of the structure.
DISPLAY "oid=" OID ", datname=" DATNAME ", size=" DBSIZE
END-PERFORM
```

```
FETCH-END.  
EXEC SQL CLOSE cur1 END-EXEC.
```

You can use only non-nested group items for host variable of SQL statement. Declaration of nested group items are OK, but you must specify non-nested part of group items for SQL. (VARCHAR, is translated to group item on pre-compilation, is not considered as offense of this rule.) When using inner item of group item in SQL, use C-struct like period separated syntax(not COBOL's A OF B). Here is example.

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.  
01 NESTED-GROUP.  
  02 CHILD1.  
    03 A PIC X(10).  
    03 B PIC S9(9) COMP.  
  02 CHILD2.  
    03 A PIC X(10).  
    03 B PIC S9(9) COMP.  
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.  
  
* This SQL is valid. CHILD1 has no nested group items.  
EXEC SQL SELECT * INTO :NESTED-GROUP.CHILD1 FROM TABLE1 END-EXEC.
```

For specifying basic item of group items, full specification is not needed if the specification is enough for identifying the item. This is from COBOL syntax. For more detail, see resources of COBOL syntax.

## TYPEDF

Use the typedef keyword to map new types to already existing types.

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.  
  01 MYCHARTYPE TYPDEF PIC X(40).  
  01 SERIAL-T TYPDEF PIC S9(9) COMP.  
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.
```

Note that you could also use:

```
EXEC SQL TYPE SERIAL-T IS PIC S9(9) COMP-5. END-EXEC.
```

This declaration does not need to be part of a declare section.

## D.4.5 Handling Nonprimitive SQL Data Types

This section contains information on how to handle nonscalar and user-defined SQL-level data types in ECOBPG applications. Note that this is distinct from the handling of host variables of nonprimitive types, described in the previous section.

### Arrays

SQL-level arrays are not directly supported in ECOBPG. It is not possible to simply map an SQL array into a COBOL array host variable. This will result in undefined behavior. Some workarounds exist, however.

If a query accesses elements of an array separately, then this avoids the use of arrays in ECOBPG. Then, a host variable with a type that can be mapped to the element type should be used. For example, if a column type is array of integer, a host variable of type PIC S9(9) COMP can be used. Also if the element type is varchar or text, a host variable of type VARCHAR can be used.

Here is an example. Assume the following table:

```

CREATE TABLE t3 (
    ii integer[]
);

testdb=> SELECT * FROM t3;
      ii
-----
{1,2,3,4,5}
(1 row)

```

The following example program retrieves the 4th element of the array and stores it into a host variable of type PIC S9(9) COMP-5:

```

EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.
01 II PIC S9(9) COMP.
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.

EXEC SQL DECLARE cur1 CURSOR FOR SELECT ii[4] FROM t3 END-EXEC.
EXEC SQL OPEN cur1 END-EXEC.

EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND GOTO END-FETCH END-EXEC.

PERFORM NO LIMIT
    EXEC SQL FETCH FROM cur1 INTO :II END-EXEC
    DISPLAY "ii=" II
END-PERFORM.

END-FETCH.
EXEC SQL CLOSE cur1 END-EXEC.

```

To map multiple array elements to the multiple elements in an array type host variables each element of array column and each element of the host variable array have to be managed separately, for example:

```

EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.
01 GROUP-ITEM.
    05 II_A PIC S9(9) COMP OCCURS 8.
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.

EXEC SQL DECLARE cur1 CURSOR FOR SELECT ii[1], ii[2], ii[3], ii[4] FROM t3 END-EXEC.
EXEC SQL OPEN cur1 END-EXEC.

EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND GOTO END-FETCH END-EXEC.

PERFORM NO LIMIT
    EXEC SQL FETCH FROM cur1 INTO :II_A[1], :II_A[2], :II_A[3], :II_A[4] END-EXEC
    ...
END-PERFORM.

```

Note again that.

```

EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.
01 GROUP-ITEM.
    05 II_A PIC S9(9) COMP OCCURS 8.
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.

EXEC SQL DECLARE cur1 CURSOR FOR SELECT ii FROM t3 END-EXEC.
EXEC SQL OPEN cur1 END-EXEC.

```

```
EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND GOTO END-FETCH END-EXEC.

PERFORM NO LIMIT
*   WRONG
    EXEC SQL FETCH FROM cur1 INTO :II_A END-EXEC
    ...
END-PERFORM.
```

would not work correctly in this case, because you cannot map an array type column to an array host variable directly.

Another workaround is to store arrays in their external string representation in host variables of type VARCHAR. For more details about this representation.



See

Refer to "Arrays" in "Tutorial" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information more details about this representation.

Note that this means that the array cannot be accessed naturally as an array in the host program (without further processing that parses the text representation).

## Composite Types

Composite types are not directly supported in ECOBPG, but an easy workaround is possible. The available workarounds are similar to the ones described for arrays above: Either access each attribute separately or use the external string representation.

For the following examples, assume the following type and table:

```
CREATE TYPE comp_t AS (intval integer, textval varchar(32));
CREATE TABLE t4 (compval comp_t);
INSERT INTO t4 VALUES ( (256, 'PostgreSQL') );
```

The most obvious solution is to access each attribute separately. The following program retrieves data from the example table by selecting each attribute of the type comp\_t separately:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.
01 INTVAL PIC S9(9) COMP.
01 TEXTVAL PIC X(33) VARYING.
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.

* Put each element of the composite type column in the SELECT list.
EXEC SQL DECLARE cur1 CURSOR FOR SELECT (compval).intval, (compval).textval FROM t4 END-
EXEC.
EXEC SQL OPEN cur1 END-EXEC.

EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND GOTO END-FETCH END-EXEC.

PERFORM NO LIMIT
*   Fetch each element of the composite type column into host variables.
    EXEC SQL FETCH FROM cur1 INTO :INTVAL, :TEXTVAL END-EXEC

    DISPLAY "intval=" INTVAL ", textval=" ARR OF TEXTVAL
END-PERFORM.

END-FETCH.
EXEC SQL CLOSE cur1 END-EXEC.
```

To enhance this example, the host variables to store values in the FETCH command can be gathered into one group item. For more details about the host variable in the group item form, see "[Group Item](#)". To switch to the group item, the example can be modified as below. The two host variables, intval and textval, become subordinate items of the comp\_t group item, and the group item is specified on the FETCH command.

```

EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.
01 COMP-T TYPEDEF.
    02 INTVAL PIC S9(9) COMP.
    02 TEXTVAL PIC X(33) VARYING.

01 COMPVAL TYPE COMP-T.
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.

* Put each element of the composite type column in the SELECT list.
EXEC SQL DECLARE curl CURSOR FOR SELECT (compval).intval, (compval).textval FROM t4 END-
EXEC.
EXEC SQL OPEN curl END-EXEC.
EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND GOTO END-FETCH END-EXEC.

PERFORM NO LIMIT
*   Put all values in the SELECT list into one structure.
    EXEC SQL FETCH FROM curl INTO :COMPVAL END-EXEC

        DISPLAY "intval=" INTVAL ", textval=" ARR OF TEXTVAL
END-PERFORM.

END-FETCH.
EXEC SQL CLOSE curl END-EXEC.

```

Although a group item is used in the FETCH command, the attribute names in the SELECT clause are specified one by one. This can be enhanced by using a \* to ask for all attributes of the composite type value.

```

...
EXEC SQL DECLARE curl CURSOR FOR SELECT (compval).* FROM t4 END-EXEC.
EXEC SQL OPEN curl END-EXEC.
EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND GOTO END-FETCH END-EXEC.

PERFORM NO LIMIT
*   Put all values in the SELECT list into one structure.
    EXEC SQL FETCH FROM curl INTO :COMPVAL END-EXEC

        DISPLAY "intval=" INTVAL ", textval=" ARR OF TEXTVAL
END-PERFORM.

```

This way, composite types can be mapped into structures almost seamlessly, even though ECOBPG does not understand the composite type itself.

Finally, it is also possible to store composite type values in their external string representation in host variables of type VARCHAR. But that way, it is not easily possible to access the fields of the value from the host program.

## User-defined Base Types

New user-defined base types are not directly supported by ECOBPG. You can use the external string representation and host variables of type VARCHAR, and this solution is indeed appropriate and sufficient for many types.

Here is an example using the data type complex.



See

.....  
Refer to "User-defined Types" in "Server Programming" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on the data type complex.  
.....

The external string representation of that type is (%lf,%lf), which is defined in the functions complex\_in() and complex\_out() functions. The following example inserts the complex type values (1,1) and (3,3) into the columns a and b, and select them from the table after that.

```

EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.
    01 A PIC X(64) VARYING.
    01 B PIC X(64) VARYING.
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.

EXEC SQL INSERT INTO test_complex VALUES ('(1,1)', '(3,3)') END-EXEC.

EXEC SQL DECLARE curl CURSOR FOR SELECT a, b FROM test_complex END-EXEC.
EXEC SQL OPEN curl END-EXEC.

EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND GOTO END-FETCH END-EXEC.

PERFORM NO LIMIT
    EXEC SQL FETCH FROM curl INTO :A, :B END-EXEC
    DISPLAY "a=" ARR OF A ", b=" ARR OF B
END-PERFORM.

END-FETCH.
EXEC SQL CLOSE curl END-EXEC.

```

Another workaround is avoiding the direct use of the user-defined types in ECOBPG and instead create a function or cast that converts between the user-defined type and a primitive type that ECOBPG can handle. Note, however, that type casts, especially implicit ones, should be introduced into the type system very carefully.

For example:

```

CREATE FUNCTION create_complex(r double precision, i double precision) RETURNS complex
LANGUAGE SQL
IMMUTABLE
AS $$ SELECT $1 * complex '(1,0)' + $2 * complex '(0,1)' $$;

```

After this definition, the following:

```

EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.
01 A COMP-2.
01 B COMP-2.
01 C COMP-2.
01 D COMP-2.
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.

MOVE 1 TO A.
MOVE 2 TO B.
MOVE 3 TO C.
MOVE 4 TO D.

EXEC SQL INSERT INTO test_complex VALUES (create_complex(:A, :B), create_complex(:C, :D))
END-EXEC.

```

has the same effect as

```

EXEC SQL INSERT INTO test_complex VALUES ('(1,2)', '(3,4)') END-EXEC.

```

## D.4.6 Indicators

The examples above do not handle null values. In fact, the retrieval examples will raise an error if they fetch a null value from the database. To be able to pass null values to the database or retrieve null values from the database, you need to append a second host variable specification to each host variable that contains data. This second host variable is called the *indicator* and contains a flag that tells whether the datum is null, in which case the value of the real host variable is ignored. Here is an example that handles the retrieval of null values correctly:

```

EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.
01 VAL PIC X(50) VARYING.
01 VAL_IND PIC S9(9) COMP-5.

```

```
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.

...

EXEC SQL SELECT b INTO :VAL :VAL_IND FROM test1 END-EXEC.
```

The indicator variable `val_ind` will be zero if the value was not null, and it will be negative if the value was null.

The indicator has another function: if the indicator value is positive, it means that the value is not null, but it was truncated when it was stored in the host variable.

## D.5 Dynamic SQL

In many cases, the particular SQL statements that an application has to execute are known at the time the application is written. In some cases, however, the SQL statements are composed at run time or provided by an external source. In these cases you cannot embed the SQL statements directly into the COBOL source code, but there is a facility that allows you to call arbitrary SQL statements that you provide in a string variable.

### D.5.1 Executing Statements without a Result Set

The simplest way to execute an arbitrary SQL statement is to use the command `EXECUTE IMMEDIATE`. For example:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.
01 STMT PIC X(30) VARYING.
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.

MOVE "CREATE TABLE test1 (...);" TO ARR OF STMT.
COMPUTE LEN OF STMT = FUNCTION STORED-CHAR-LENGTH (ARR OF STMT).
EXEC SQL EXECUTE IMMEDIATE :STMT END-EXEC.
```

`EXECUTE IMMEDIATE` can be used for SQL statements that do not return a result set (e.g., `DDL`, `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`). You cannot execute statements that retrieve data (e.g., `SELECT`) this way. The next section describes how to do that.

### D.5.2 Executing a Statement with Input Parameters

A more powerful way to execute arbitrary SQL statements is to prepare them once and execute the prepared statement as often as you like. It is also possible to prepare a generalized version of a statement and then execute specific versions of it by substituting parameters. When preparing the statement, write question marks where you want to substitute parameters later. For example:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.
01 STMT PIC X(40) VARYING.
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.

MOVE "INSERT INTO test1 VALUES(?, ?);" TO ARR OF STMT.
COMPUTE LEN OF STMT = FUNCTION STORED-CHAR-LENGTH (ARR OF STMT).
EXEC SQL PREPARE MYSTMT FROM :STMT END-EXEC.
...
EXEC SQL EXECUTE MYSTMT USING 42, 'foobar' END-EXEC.
```

When you don't need the prepared statement anymore, you should deallocate it:

```
EXEC SQL DEALLOCATE PREPARE name END-EXEC.
```

### D.5.3 Executing a Statement with a Result Set

To execute an SQL statement with a single result row, `EXECUTE` can be used. To save the result, add an `INTO` clause.

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.
01 STMT PIC X(50) VARYING.
```



```

01 V1 PIC S9(9) COMP.
01 V2 PIC S9(9) COMP.
01 V3 PIC X(50) VARYING.
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.

MOVE "SELECT a, b, c FROM test1 WHERE a > ?" TO ARR OF STMT.
COMPUTE LEN OF STMT = FUNCTION STORED-CHAR-LENGTH (ARR OF STMT).
EXEC SQL PREPARE MYSTMT FROM :STMT END-EXEC.
...
EXEC SQL EXECUTE MYSTMT INTO :V1, :V2, :V3 USING 37 END-EXEC.

```

An EXECUTE command can have an INTO clause, a USING clause, both, or neither.

If a query is expected to return more than one result row, a cursor should be used, as in the following example. (See "[D.3.2 Using Cursors](#)" for more details about the cursor.)

```

EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.
01 DBNAME PIC X(128) VARYING.
01 DATNAME PIC X(128) VARYING.
01 STMT PIC X(200) VARYING.
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.

MOVE "SELECT u.username as dbname, d.datname
-           " FROM pg_database d, pg_user u
-           " WHERE d.datdba = u.usesysid"
TO ARR OF STMT.
COMPUTE LEN OF STMT = FUNCTION STORED-CHAR-LENGTH (ARR OF STMT).

EXEC SQL CONNECT TO testdb AS con1 USER testuser END-EXEC.

EXEC SQL PREPARE STMT1 FROM :STMT END-EXEC.

EXEC SQL DECLARE cursor1 CURSOR FOR STMT1 END-EXEC.
EXEC SQL OPEN cursor1 END-EXEC.

EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND GOTO FETCH-END END-EXEC.

PERFORM NO LIMIT
    EXEC SQL FETCH cursor1 INTO :DBNAME, :DATNAME END-EXEC
    DISPLAY "dbname=" ARR OF DBNAME ", datname=" ARR OF DATNAME
END-PERFORM.

FETCH-END.

EXEC SQL CLOSE cursor1 END-EXEC.

EXEC SQL COMMIT END-EXEC.
EXEC SQL DISCONNECT ALL END-EXEC.

```

## D.6 Using Descriptor Areas

An SQL descriptor area is a more sophisticated method for processing the result of a SELECT, FETCH or a DESCRIBE statement. An SQL descriptor area groups the data of one row of data together with metadata items into one data group item. The metadata is particularly useful when executing dynamic SQL statements, where the nature of the result columns might not be known ahead of time. PostgreSQL provides a way to use Descriptor Areas: the named SQL Descriptor Areas.

### D.6.1 Named SQL Descriptor Areas

A named SQL descriptor area consists of a header, which contains information concerning the entire descriptor, and one or more item descriptor areas, which basically each describe one column in the result row.

Before you can use an SQL descriptor area, you need to allocate one:

```
EXEC SQL ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR identifier END-EXEC.
```

The identifier serves as the "variable name" of the descriptor area. When you don't need the descriptor anymore, you should deallocate it:

```
EXEC SQL DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR identifier END-EXEC.
```

To use a descriptor area, specify it as the storage target in an INTO clause, instead of listing host variables:

```
EXEC SQL FETCH NEXT FROM mycursor INTO SQL DESCRIPTOR mydesc END-EXEC.
```

If the result set is empty, the Descriptor Area will still contain the metadata from the query, i.e. the field names.

For not yet executed prepared queries, the DESCRIBE statement can be used to get the metadata of the result set:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.  
01 SQL-STMT PIC X(30) VARYING.  
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.  
  
MOVE "SELECT * FROM table1" TO ARR OF SQL-STMT.  
COMPUTE LEN OF SQL-STMT = FUNCTION STORED-CHAR-LENGTH ( ARR OF SQL-STMT ) .  
EXEC SQL PREPARE STMT1 FROM :SQL-STMT END-EXEC.  
EXEC SQL DESCRIBE STMT1 INTO SQL DESCRIPTOR MYDESC END-EXEC.
```

Before PostgreSQL 9.0, the SQL keyword was optional, so using DESCRIPTOR and SQL DESCRIPTOR produced named SQL Descriptor Areas. Now it is mandatory, omitting the SQL keyword is regarded as the syntax that produces SQLDA Descriptor Areas. However, ecobpg does not support SQLDA and it causes an error.

In DESCRIBE and FETCH statements, the INTO and USING keywords can be used to similarly: they produce the result set and the metadata in a Descriptor Area.

Now how do you get the data out of the descriptor area? You can think of the descriptor area as a group item with named fields. To retrieve the value of a field from the header and store it into a host variable, use the following command:

```
EXEC SQL GET DESCRIPTOR name :hostvar = field END-EXEC.
```

Currently, there is only one header field defined: COUNT, which tells how many item descriptor areas exist (that is, how many columns are contained in the result). The host variable needs to be of an integer type as PIC S9(9) COMP-5. To get a field from the item descriptor area, use the following command:

```
EXEC SQL GET DESCRIPTOR name VALUE num :hostvar = field END-EXEC.
```

num can be a host variable containing an integer as PIC S9(9) COMP-5.

hostvar must be PIC S9(9) COMP-5 if type of the field is integer. Possible fields are:

**CARDINALITY** (integer)

number of rows in the result set

**DATA**

actual data item (therefore, the data type of this field depends on the query)

**DATETIME\_INTERVAL\_CODE** (integer)

When TYPE is 9, DATETIME\_INTERVAL\_CODE will have a value of 1 for DATE, 2 for TIME, 3 for TIMESTAMP, 4 for TIME WITH TIME ZONE, or 5 for TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE.

**DATETIME\_INTERVAL\_PRECISION** (integer)

not implemented

**INDICATOR** (integer)

the indicator (indicating a null value or a value truncation)

**KEY\_MEMBER** (integer)

not implemented

LENGTH (integer)

length of the datum in characters

NAME (string)

name of the column

NULLABLE (integer)

not implemented

OCTET\_LENGTH (integer)

length of the character representation of the datum in bytes

PRECISION (integer)

precision (for type numeric)

RETURNED\_LENGTH (integer)

length of the datum in characters

RETURNED\_OCTET\_LENGTH (integer)

length of the character representation of the datum in bytes

SCALE (integer)

scale (for type numeric)

TYPE (integer)

numeric code of the data type of the column

In EXECUTE, DECLARE and OPEN statements, the effect of the INTO and USING keywords are different. A Descriptor Area can also be manually built to provide the input parameters for a query or a cursor and USING SQL DESCRIPTOR name is the way to pass the input parameters into a parametrized query. The statement to build a named SQL Descriptor Area is below:

```
EXEC SQL SET DESCRIPTOR name VALUE num field = :hostvar END-EXEC.
```

PostgreSQL supports retrieving more than one record in one FETCH statement and storing the data in host variables in this case assumes that the variable is an array. E.g.:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.  
01 GROUP-ITEM.  
    05 IDNUM PIC S9(9) COMP OCCURS 5.  
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.  
  
EXEC SQL FETCH 5 FROM mycursor INTO SQL DESCRIPTOR mydesc END-EXEC.  
  
EXEC SQL GET DESCRIPTOR mydesc VALUE 1 :IDNUM = DATA END-EXEC.
```

## D.7 Error Handling

---

This section describes how you can handle exceptional conditions and warnings in an embedded SQL program. There are two nonexclusive facilities for this.

- Callbacks can be configured to handle warning and error conditions using the WHENEVER command.
- Detailed information about the error or warning can be obtained from the sqlca variable.

### D.7.1 Setting Callbacks

---

One simple method to catch errors and warnings is to set a specific action to be executed whenever a particular condition occurs. In general:

```
EXEC SQL WHENEVER condition action END-EXEC.
```

condition can be one of the following:

#### SQLERROR

The specified action is called whenever an error occurs during the execution of an SQL statement.

#### SQLWARNING

The specified action is called whenever a warning occurs during the execution of an SQL statement.

#### NOT FOUND

The specified action is called whenever an SQL statement retrieves or affects zero rows. (This condition is not an error, but you might be interested in handling it specially.)

action can be one of the following:

#### CONTINUE

This effectively means that the condition is ignored. This is the default.

#### GOTO label

#### GO TO label

Jump to the specified label (using a COBOL goto statement).

#### SQLPRINT

Print a message to standard error. This is useful for simple programs or during prototyping. The details of the message cannot be configured.

#### STOP

Call STOP, which will terminate the program.

#### CALL name usingargs

#### DO name usingargs

Call the specified functions with the following characters including arguments. Thus, syntaxes (including compiler depending) are able to be placed as well as the arguments. Though, there are some limitation as following:

- You can't use RETURNING, ON EXCEPTION or OVER FLOW clauses.
- In the called subprogram, you must specify CONTINUE for every action with WHENEVER statement.

The SQL standard only provides for the actions CONTINUE and GOTO (and GO TO).

Here is an example that you might want to use in a simple program. It prints a simple message when a warning occurs and aborts the program when an error happens:

```
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLWARNING SQLPRINT END-EXEC.  
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR STOP END-EXEC.
```

The statement EXEC SQL WHENEVER is a directive of the SQL preprocessor, not a COBOL statement. The error or warning actions that it sets apply to all embedded SQL statements that appear below the point where the handler is set, unless a different action was set for the same condition between the first EXEC SQL WHENEVER and the SQL statement causing the condition, regardless of the flow of control in the COBOL program. So neither of the two following COBOL program excerpts will have the desired effect:

```
*  
*  WRONG  
*  
...  
IF VERBOSE = 1 THEN  
    EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLWARNING SQLPRINT END-EXEC  
END-IF.
```

```

...
EXEC SQL SELECT ... END-EXEC.
...
*
* WRONG
*
...
CALL SET-ERROR-HANDLER.
*      (and execute "EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR STOP" in SET-ERROR-HANDLER)
...
EXEC SQL SELECT ... END-EXEC.
...

```

## D.7.2 sqlca

For more powerful error handling, the embedded SQL interface provides a global variable with the name `sqlca` (SQL communication area) that has the following group item:

```

01 sqlca_t.
   10 sqlcaid PIC X(8).
   10 sqlcabc PIC S9(9) COMP-5.
   10 sqlcode PIC S9(9) COMP-5.
   10 sqlerrm.
       20 sqlerrml PIC S9(9) COMP-5.
       20 sqlerrmc PIC X(150).
   10 sqlerrp PIC X(8).
   10 sqlerrd PIC S9(9) COMP-5 OCCURS 6.
   10 sqlwarn PIC X(8).
   10 sqlstate PIC X(5).

```

`sqlca` covers both warnings and errors. If multiple warnings or errors occur during the execution of a statement, then `sqlca` will only contain information about the last one.

If no error occurred in the last SQL statement, `SQLCODE` will be 0 and `SQLSTATE` will be "00000". If a warning or error occurred, then `SQLCODE` will be negative and `SQLSTATE` will be different from "00000". A positive `SQLCODE` indicates a harmless condition, such as that the last query returned zero rows. `SQLCODE` and `SQLSTATE` are two different error code schemes; details appear below.

If the last SQL statement was successful, then `SQLERRD(2)` contains the OID of the processed row, if applicable, and `SQLERRD(3)` contains the number of processed or returned rows, if applicable to the command.

In case of an error or warning, `SQLERRMC` will contain a string that describes the error. The field `SQLERRML` contains the length of the error message that is stored in `SQLERRMC` (the result of `FUNCTION STORED-CHAR-LENGTH`). Note that some messages are too long to fit in the fixed-size `sqlerrmc` array; they will be truncated.

In case of a warning, the 3rd character of `SQLWARN` is set to W. (In all other cases, it is set to something different from W.) If the 2nd character of `SQLWARN` is set to W, then a value was truncated when it was stored in a host variable. The 1st character of `SQLWARN` is set to W if any of the other elements are set to indicate a warning.

The fields `sqlcaid`, `sqlcabc`, `sqlerrp`, and the remaining elements of `sqlerrd` and `sqlwarn` currently contain no useful information.

The structure `sqlca` is not defined in the SQL standard, but is implemented in several other SQL database systems. The definitions are similar at the core, but if you want to write portable applications, then you should investigate the different implementations carefully.

Here is one example that combines the use of `WHENEVER` and `sqlca`, printing out the contents of `sqlca` when an error occurs. This is perhaps useful for debugging or prototyping applications, before installing a more "user-friendly" error handler.

```

EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR GOTO PRINT_SQLCA END-EXEC.

PRINT_SQLCA.
   DISPLAY "==== sqlca ====".
   DISPLAY "SQLCODE: " SQLCODE.

```

```

        DISPLAY "SQLERRML: " SQLERRML.
        DISPLAY "SQLERRMC: " SQLERRMC.
        DISPLAY "SQLERRD: " SQLERRD(1) " " SQLERRD(2) " " SQLERRD(3) " " SQLERRD(4) " "
SQLERRD(5) " " SQLERRD(6) .
        DISPLAY "SQLSTATE: " SQLSTATE.
        DISPLAY "=====".

```

The result could look as follows (here an error due to a misspelled table name):

```

==== sqlca ====
sqlcode: -000000400
SQLERRML: +000000064
SQLERRMC: relation "pg_databasep" does not exist (10292) on line 93
sqlerrd: +000000000 +000000000 +000000000 +000000000 +000000000 +000000000
sqlstate: 42P01
=====

```

## D.7.3 SQLSTATE vs. SQLCODE

The fields SQLSTATE and SQLCODE are two different schemes that provide error codes. Both are derived from the SQL standard, but SQLCODE has been marked deprecated in the SQL-92 edition of the standard and has been dropped in later editions. Therefore, new applications are strongly encouraged to use SQLSTATE.

SQLSTATE is a five-character array. The five characters contain digits or upper-case letters that represent codes of various error and warning conditions. SQLSTATE has a hierarchical scheme: the first two characters indicate the general class of the condition, the last three characters indicate a subclass of the general condition. A successful state is indicated by the code 00000. The SQLSTATE codes are for the most part defined in the SQL standard. The PostgreSQL server natively supports SQLSTATE error codes; therefore a high degree of consistency can be achieved by using this error code scheme throughout all applications.



See

Refer to "PostgreSQL Error Codes" in "Appendixes" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for further information.

SQLCODE, the deprecated error code scheme, is a simple integer. A value of 0 indicates success, a positive value indicates success with additional information, and a negative value indicates an error. The SQL standard only defines the positive value +100, which indicates that the last command returned or affected zero rows, and no specific negative values. Therefore, this scheme can only achieve poor portability and does not have a hierarchical code assignment. Historically, the embedded SQL processor for PostgreSQL has assigned some specific SQLCODE values for its use, which are listed below with their numeric value and their symbolic name. Remember that these are not portable to other SQL implementations. To simplify the porting of applications to the SQLSTATE scheme, the corresponding SQLSTATE is also listed. There is, however, no one-to-one or one-to-many mapping between the two schemes (indeed it is many-to-many), so you should consult the global SQLSTATE in each case.



See

Refer to "PostgreSQL Error Codes" in "Appendixes" in the PostgreSQL Documentation.

These are the assigned SQLCODE values:

0

Indicates no error. (SQLSTATE 00000)

100

This is a harmless condition indicating that the last command retrieved or processed zero rows, or that you are at the end of the cursor. (SQLSTATE 02000)

When processing a cursor in a loop, you could use this code as a way to detect when to abort the loop, like this:

```

PERFORM NO LIMIT
    EXEC SQL FETCH ... END-EXEC
    IF SQLCODE = 100 THEN
        GO TO FETCH-END
    END-IF
END-PERFORM.

```

But WHENEVER NOT FOUND GOTO ... effectively does this internally, so there is usually no advantage in writing this out explicitly.

-12

Indicates that your virtual memory is exhausted. The numeric value is defined as -ENOMEM. (SQLSTATE YE001)

-200

Indicates the preprocessor has generated something that the library does not know about. Perhaps you are running incompatible versions of the preprocessor and the library. (SQLSTATE YE002)

-201

This means that the command specified more host variables than the command expected. (SQLSTATE 07001 or 07002)

-202

This means that the command specified fewer host variables than the command expected. (SQLSTATE 07001 or 07002)

-203

This means a query has returned multiple rows but the statement was only prepared to store one result row (for example, because the specified variables are not arrays). (SQLSTATE 21000)

-204

The host variable is of type signed int and the datum in the database is of a different type and contains a value that cannot be interpreted as a signed int. The library uses strtol() for this conversion. (SQLSTATE 42804)

-205

The host variable is of type unsigned int and the datum in the database is of a different type and contains a value that cannot be interpreted as an unsigned int. The library uses strtoul() for this conversion. (SQLSTATE 42804)

-206

The host variable is of type float and the datum in the database is of another type and contains a value that cannot be interpreted as a float. The library uses strtod() for this conversion. (SQLSTATE 42804)

-207

The host variable is of type DECIMAL and the datum in the database is of another type and contains a value that cannot be interpreted as a DECIMAL or DISPLAY value. For the case of DISPLAY, this error happens if values in the database is too large for converting to DISPLAY value. (SQLSTATE 42804)

-208

The host variable is of type interval and the datum in the database is of another type and contains a value that cannot be interpreted as an interval value. (SQLSTATE 42804)

-209

The host variable is of type date and the datum in the database is of another type and contains a value that cannot be interpreted as a date value. (SQLSTATE 42804)

-210

The host variable is of type timestamp and the datum in the database is of another type and contains a value that cannot be interpreted as a timestamp value. (SQLSTATE 42804)

-211

This means the host variable is of type bool and the datum in the database is neither 't' nor 'f'. (SQLSTATE 42804)

-212

The statement sent to the PostgreSQL server was empty. (This cannot normally happen in an embedded SQL program, so it might point to an internal error.) (SQLSTATE YE002)

-213

A null value was returned and no null indicator variable was supplied. (SQLSTATE 22002)

-214

An ordinary variable was used in a place that requires an array. (SQLSTATE 42804)

-215

The database returned an ordinary variable in a place that requires array value. (SQLSTATE 42804)

-220

The program tried to access a connection that does not exist. (SQLSTATE 08003)

-221

The program tried to access a connection that does exist but is not open. (This is an internal error.) (SQLSTATE YE002)

-230

The statement you are trying to use has not been prepared. (SQLSTATE 26000)

-240

The descriptor specified was not found. The statement you are trying to use has not been prepared. (SQLSTATE 33000)

-241

The descriptor index specified was out of range. (SQLSTATE 07009)

-242

An invalid descriptor item was requested. (This is an internal error.) (SQLSTATE YE002)

-243

During the execution of a dynamic statement, the database returned a numeric value and the host variable was not numeric. (SQLSTATE 07006)

-244

During the execution of a dynamic statement, the database returned a non-numeric value and the host variable was numeric. (SQLSTATE 07006)

-400

Some error caused by the PostgreSQL server. The message contains the error message from the PostgreSQL server.

-401

The PostgreSQL server signaled that we cannot start, commit, or rollback the transaction. (SQLSTATE 08007)

-402

The connection attempt to the database did not succeed. (SQLSTATE 08001)

-403

Duplicate key error, violation of unique constraint. (SQLSTATE 23505)

-404

A result for the subquery is not single row. (SQLSTATE 21000)

-602

An invalid cursor name was specified. (SQLSTATE 34000)

-603

Transaction is in progress. (SQLSTATE 25001)



-604

There is no active (in-progress) transaction. (SQLSTATE 25P01)

-605

An existing cursor name was specified. (SQLSTATE 42P03)

## D.8 Preprocessor Directives

---

Several preprocessor directives are available that modify how the ecobpg preprocessor parses and processes a file.

### D.8.1 Including Files

---

To include an external file into your embedded SQL program, use:

```
EXEC SQL INCLUDE filename END-EXEC.  
EXEC SQL INCLUDE <filename> END-EXEC.  
EXEC SQL INCLUDE "filename" END-EXEC.
```

The embedded SQL preprocessor will look for a file named filename.pco, preprocess it, and include it in the resulting COBOL output. Thus, embedded SQL statements in the included file are handled correctly.

By default, the ecobpg preprocessor will search a file at the current directory. This behavior can be changed by the ecobpg commandline option.

First, the preprocessor tries to locate a file by specified file name at the current directory. If it fails and the file name does not end with .pco, the preprocessor also tries to locate a file with the suffix at the same directory.

The difference between EXEC SQL INCLUDE and COPY statement is whether precompiler processes embedded SQLs in the file, or not. If the file contains embedded SQLs, use EXEC SQL INCLUDE.



#### Note

The include file name is case-sensitive, even though the rest of the EXEC SQL INCLUDE command follows the normal SQL case-sensitivity rules.

### D.8.2 The define and undef Directives

---

Similar to the directive #define that is known from C, embedded SQL has a similar concept:

```
EXEC SQL DEFINE name END-EXEC.  
EXEC SQL DEFINE name value END-EXEC.
```

So you can define a name:

```
EXEC SQL DEFINE HAVE_FEATURE END-EXEC.
```

And you can also define constants:

```
EXEC SQL DEFINE MYNUMBER 12 END-EXEC.  
EXEC SQL DEFINE MYSTRING 'abc' END-EXEC.
```

Use undef to remove a previous definition:

```
EXEC SQL UNDEF MYNUMBER END-EXEC.
```

Note that a constant in the SQL statement is only replaced by EXEC SQL DEFINE. The replacement may change the number of characters in a line, but ecobpg does not validate it after the replacement. Pay attention to the limitation of the number of characters in a line.

## D.8.3 ifdef, ifndef, else, elif, and endif Directives

---

You can use the following directives to compile code sections conditionally:

```
EXEC SQL ifdef name END-EXEC.
```

Checks a name and processes subsequent lines if name has been created with EXEC SQL define name.

```
EXEC SQL ifndef name END-EXEC.
```

Checks a name and processes subsequent lines if name has not been created with EXEC SQL define name.

```
EXEC SQL else END-EXEC.
```

Starts processing an alternative section to a section introduced by either EXEC SQL ifdef name or EXEC SQL ifndef name.

```
EXEC SQL elif name END-EXEC.
```

Checks name and starts an alternative section if name has been created with EXEC SQL define name.

```
EXEC SQL endif END-EXEC.
```

Ends an alternative section.

Example:

```
EXEC SQL ifndef TZVAR END-EXEC.  
EXEC SQL SET TIMEZONE TO 'GMT' END-EXEC.  
EXEC SQL elif TZNAME END-EXEC.  
EXEC SQL SET TIMEZONE TO TZNAME END-EXEC.  
EXEC SQL else END-EXEC.  
EXEC SQL SET TIMEZONE TO TZVAR END-EXEC.  
EXEC SQL endif END-EXEC.
```

## D.9 Processing Embedded SQL Programs

---

Now that you have an idea how to form embedded SQL COBOL programs, you probably want to know how to compile them. Before compiling you run the file through the embedded SQL COBOL preprocessor, which converts the SQL statements you used to special function calls. After compiling, you must link with a special library that contains the needed functions. These functions fetch information from the arguments, perform the SQL command using the libpq interface, and put the result in the arguments specified for output.

The preprocessor program is called `ecobpg` and is included in a normal PostgreSQL installation. Embedded SQL programs are typically named with an extension `.pco`. If you have a program file called `prog1.pco`, you can preprocess it by simply calling:

```
ecobpg prog1.pco
```

This will create a file called `prog1.cob`. If your input files do not follow the suggested naming pattern, you can specify the output file explicitly using the `-o` option.

The preprocessed file can be compiled normally, following the usage of the compiler.

The generated COBOL source files include library files from the PostgreSQL installation, so if you installed PostgreSQL in a location that is not searched by default, you have to add an option such as `-I/usr/local/pgsql/include` to the compilation command line.

To link an embedded SQL program, you need to include the `libecpg` library.

Again, you might have to add an option for library search like `-L/usr/local/pgsql/lib` to that command line.

If you manage the build process of a larger project using `make`, it might be convenient to include the following implicit rule to your makefiles:

```
ECOBPG = ecobpg

%.cob: %.pco
    $(ECOBPG) $<
```

The complete syntax of the ecobpg command is detailed in "[D.12.1 ecobpg](#)".

Currently, ecobpg does not support multi threading.

## D.10 Large Objects

---

Large objects are not supported by ECOBPG.

If you need to access large objects, use large objects interfaces of libpq instead.

## D.11 Embedded SQL Commands

---

This section describes all SQL commands that are specific to embedded SQL.

Command	Description
ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR	Allocate an SQL descriptor area
CONNECT	Establish a database connection
DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR	Deallocate an SQL descriptor area
DECLARE	Define a cursor
DESCRIBE	Obtain information about a prepared statement or result set
DISCONNECT	Terminate a database connection
EXECUTE IMMEDIATE	Dynamically prepare and execute a statement
GET DESCRIPTOR	Get information from an SQL descriptor area
OPEN	Open a dynamic cursor
PREPARE	Prepare a statement for execution
SET AUTOCOMMIT	Set the autocommit behavior of the current session
SET CONNECTION	Select a database connection
SET DESCRIPTOR	Set information in an SQL descriptor area
TYPE	Define a new data type
VAR	Define a variable
WHENEVER	Specify the action to be taken when an SQL statement causes a specific class condition to be raised



See

.....  
Refer to the SQL commands listed in "SQL Commands" under "Reference" in the PostgreSQL Documentation, which can also be used in embedded SQL, unless stated otherwise.  
.....

### D.11.1 ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR

---

#### Name

ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR -- allocate an SQL descriptor area

## Synopsis

```
ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR name
```

## Description

ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR allocates a new named SQL descriptor area, which can be used to exchange data between the PostgreSQL server and the host program.

Descriptor areas should be freed after use using the DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR command.

## Parameters

name

A name of SQL descriptor. This can be an SQL identifier or a host variable.

## Examples

```
EXEC SQL ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR mydesc END-EXEC.
```

## Compatibility

ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR is specified in the SQL standard.

## See Also

[DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR](#), [GET DESCRIPTOR](#), [SET DESCRIPTOR](#)

## D.11.2 CONNECT

---

### Name

CONNECT -- establish a database connection

### Synopsis

```
CONNECT TO connection_target [ AS connection_name ] [ USER connection_user_name ]
```

```
CONNECT TO DEFAULT
```

```
CONNECT connection_user_name
```

```
DATABASE connection_target
```

### Description

The CONNECT command establishes a connection between the client and the PostgreSQL server.

### Parameters

connection\_target

connection\_target specifies the target server of the connection on one of several forms.

[ database\_name ] [ @host ] [ :port ]

Connect over TCP/IP

unix:postgresql://host [ :port ] / [ database\_name ] [ ?connection\_option ]

Connect over Unix-domain sockets

tcp:postgresql://host [ :port ] / [ database\_name ] [ ?connection\_option ]

Connect over TCP/IP

### SQL string constant

containing a value in one of the above forms

### host variable

host variable of fixed-length string (trailing spaces are ignored) containing a value in one of the above forms

### connection\_name

An optional identifier for the connection, so that it can be referred to in other commands. This can be an SQL identifier or a host variable.

### connection\_user\_name

The user name for the database connection.

This parameter can also specify user name and password, using one of the forms user\_name/password, user\_name IDENTIFIED BY password, or user\_name USING password.

User name and password can be SQL identifiers, string constants, or host variables (fixed-length string, trailing spaces are ignored).

### DEFAULT

Use all default connection parameters, as defined by libpq.

## Examples

Here are several variants for specifying connection parameters:

```
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO "connectdb" AS main END-EXEC.
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO "connectdb" AS second END-EXEC.
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO "unix:postgresql://localhost/connectdb" AS main USER connectuser END-
EXEC.
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO 'connectdb' AS main END-EXEC.
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO 'unix:postgresql://localhost/connectdb' AS main USER :user END-EXEC.
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO :dbn AS :idt END-EXEC.
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO :dbn USER connectuser USING :pw END-EXEC.
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO @localhost AS main USER connectdb END-EXEC.
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO REGRESSDB1 as main END-EXEC.
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO connectdb AS :idt END-EXEC.
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO connectdb AS main USER connectuser/connectdb END-EXEC.
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO connectdb AS main END-EXEC.
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO connectdb@localhost AS main END-EXEC.
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO tcp:postgresql://localhost/ USER connectdb END-EXEC.
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO tcp:postgresql://localhost/connectdb USER connectuser IDENTIFIED BY
connectpw END-EXEC.
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO tcp:postgresql://localhost:20/connectdb USER connectuser IDENTIFIED BY
connectpw END-EXEC.
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO unix:postgresql://localhost/ AS main USER connectdb END-EXEC.
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO unix:postgresql://localhost/connectdb AS main USER connectuser END-
EXEC.
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO unix:postgresql://localhost/connectdb USER connectuser IDENTIFIED BY
"connectpw" END-EXEC.
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO unix:postgresql://localhost/connectdb USER connectuser USING
"connectpw" END-EXEC.
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO unix:postgresql://localhost/connectdb?connect_timeout=14 USER
connectuser END-EXEC.
```

Here is an example program that illustrates the use of host variables to specify connection parameters:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.
*   database name
    01 DBNAME PIC X(6).
*   connection user name
```

```

01 USER PIC X(8).
* connection string
01 CONNECTION PIC X(38).

01 VER PIC X(256).
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.

MOVE "testdb" TO DBNAME.
MOVE "testuser" TO USER.
MOVE "tcp:postgresql://localhost:5432/testdb" TO CONNECTION.

EXEC SQL CONNECT TO :DBNAME USER :USER END-EXEC.
EXEC SQL SELECT version() INTO :VER END-EXEC.
EXEC SQL DISCONNECT END-EXEC.

DISPLAY "version: " VER.

EXEC SQL CONNECT TO :CONNECTION USER :USER END-EXEC.
EXEC SQL SELECT version() INTO :VER END-EXEC.
EXEC SQL DISCONNECT END-EXEC.

DISPLAY "version: " VER.

```

## Compatibility

CONNECT is specified in the SQL standard, but the format of the connection parameters is implementation-specific.

## See Also

[DISCONNECT](#), [SET CONNECTION](#)

## D.11.3 DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR

---

### Name

DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR -- deallocate an SQL descriptor area

### Synopsis

DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR *name*

### Description

DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR deallocates a named SQL descriptor area.

### Parameters

*name*

The name of the descriptor which is going to be deallocated. This can be an SQL identifier or a host variable.

### Examples

```
EXEC SQL DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR mydesc END-EXEC.
```

## Compatibility

DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR is specified in the SQL standard.

## See Also

[ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR](#), [GET DESCRIPTOR](#), [SET DESCRIPTOR](#)

## D.11.4 DECLARE

---

### Name

DECLARE -- define a cursor

### Synopsis

```
DECLARE cursor_name [ BINARY ] [ INSENSITIVE ] [ [ NO ] SCROLL ] CURSOR [ { WITH | WITHOUT }  
HOLD ] FOR prepared_name
```

```
DECLARE cursor_name [ BINARY ] [ INSENSITIVE ] [ [ NO ] SCROLL ] CURSOR [ { WITH | WITHOUT }  
HOLD ] FOR query
```

### Description

DECLARE declares a cursor for iterating over the result set of a prepared statement. This command has slightly different semantics from the direct SQL command DECLARE: Whereas the latter executes a query and prepares the result set for retrieval, this embedded SQL command merely declares a name as a "loop variable" for iterating over the result set of a query; the actual execution happens when the cursor is opened with the OPEN command.

### Parameters

*cursor\_name*

A cursor name. This can be an SQL identifier or a host variable.

*prepared\_name*

The name of a prepared query, either as an SQL identifier or a host variable.

*query*

A SELECT or VALUES command which will provide the rows to be returned by the cursor.

For the meaning of the cursor options, see DECLARE.



See

.....  
Refer to "SQL Commands" in "Reference" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on the SELECT, VALUES and DECLARE command.  
.....

### Examples

Examples declaring a cursor for a query:

```
EXEC SQL DECLARE C CURSOR FOR SELECT * FROM My_Table END-EXEC.  
EXEC SQL DECLARE C CURSOR FOR SELECT Item1 FROM T END-EXEC.  
EXEC SQL DECLARE curl CURSOR FOR SELECT version() END-EXEC.
```

An example declaring a cursor for a prepared statement:

```
EXEC SQL PREPARE stmt1 AS SELECT version() END-EXEC.  
EXEC SQL DECLARE curl CURSOR FOR stmt1 END-EXEC.
```

### Compatibility

DECLARE is specified in the SQL standard.

### See Also

[OPEN](#), [CLOSE](#), [DECLARE](#)



See

.....  
Refer to "SQL Commands" in "Reference" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on the CLOSE and DECLARE command.  
.....

## D.11.5 DESCRIBE

---

### Name

DESCRIBE -- obtain information about a prepared statement or result set

### Synopsis

```
DESCRIBE [ OUTPUT ] prepared_name USING SQL DESCRIPTOR descriptor_name
```

```
DESCRIBE [ OUTPUT ] prepared_name INTO SQL DESCRIPTOR descriptor_name
```

### Description

DESCRIBE retrieves metadata information about the result columns contained in a prepared statement, without actually fetching a row.

### Parameters

*prepared\_name*

The name of a prepared statement. This can be an SQL identifier or a host variable.

*descriptor\_name*

A descriptor name. It can be an SQL identifier or a host variable.

### Examples

```
EXEC SQL ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR mydesc END-EXEC.  
EXEC SQL PREPARE stmt1 FROM :sql_stmt END-EXEC.  
EXEC SQL DESCRIBE stmt1 INTO SQL DESCRIPTOR mydesc END-EXEC.  
EXEC SQL GET DESCRIPTOR mydesc VALUE 1 :charvar = NAME END-EXEC.  
EXEC SQL DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR mydesc END-EXEC.
```

### Compatibility

DESCRIBE is specified in the SQL standard.

### See Also

[ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR](#), [GET DESCRIPTOR](#)

## D.11.6 DISCONNECT

---

### Name

DISCONNECT -- terminate a database connection

### Synopsis

```
DISCONNECT connection_name
```

```
DISCONNECT [ CURRENT ]
```

```
DISCONNECT DEFAULT
```



DISCONNECT ALL

## Description

DISCONNECT closes a connection (or all connections) to the database.

## Parameters

*connection\_name*

A database connection name established by the CONNECT command.

### CURRENT

Close the "current" connection, which is either the most recently opened connection, or the connection set by the SET CONNECTION command. This is also the default if no argument is given to the DISCONNECT command.

### DEFAULT

Close the default connection.

### ALL

Close all open connections.

## Examples

```
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO testdb AS DEFAULT USER testuser END-EXEC.  
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO testdb AS con1 USER testuser END-EXEC.  
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO testdb AS con2 USER testuser END-EXEC.  
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO testdb AS con3 USER testuser END-EXEC.  
  
*   close con3  
    EXEC SQL DISCONNECT CURRENT END-EXEC.  
*   close DEFAULT  
    EXEC SQL DISCONNECT DEFAULT END-EXEC.  
*   close con2 and con1  
    EXEC SQL DISCONNECT ALL END-EXEC.
```

## Compatibility

DISCONNECT is specified in the SQL standard.

## See Also

[CONNECT](#), [SET CONNECTION](#)

## D.11.7 EXECUTE IMMEDIATE

---

### Name

EXECUTE IMMEDIATE -- dynamically prepare and execute a statement

### Synopsis

EXECUTE IMMEDIATE string

### Description

EXECUTE IMMEDIATE immediately prepares and executes a dynamically specified SQL statement, without retrieving result rows.

## Parameters

*string*

A literal string or a host variable containing the SQL statement to be executed.

## Examples

Here is an example that executes an INSERT statement using EXECUTE IMMEDIATE and a host variable named command:

```
MOVE "INSERT INTO test (name, amount, letter) VALUES ('db: 'r1'', 1, 'f')" TO ARR OF cmd.  
COMPUTE LEN OF cmd = FUNCTION STORED-CHAR-LENGTH(ARR OF cmd).  
EXEC SQL EXECUTE IMMEDIATE :cmd END-EXEC.
```

## Compatibility

EXECUTE IMMEDIATE is specified in the SQL standard.

## D.11.8 GET DESCRIPTOR

---

### Name

GET DESCRIPTOR -- get information from an SQL descriptor area

### Synopsis

```
GET DESCRIPTOR descriptor_name :hostvariable = descriptor_header_item [, ... ]
```

```
GET DESCRIPTOR descriptor_name VALUE column_number :hostvariable = descriptor_item [, ... ]
```

### Description

GET DESCRIPTOR retrieves information about a query result set from an SQL descriptor area and stores it into host variables. A descriptor area is typically populated using FETCH or SELECT before using this command to transfer the information into host language variables.

This command has two forms: The first form retrieves descriptor "header" items, which apply to the result set in its entirety. One example is the row count. The second form, which requires the column number as additional parameter, retrieves information about a particular column. Examples are the column name and the actual column value.

### Parameters

*descriptor\_name*

A descriptor name.

*descriptor\_header\_item*

A token identifying which header information item to retrieve. Only COUNT, to get the number of columns in the result set, is currently supported.

*column\_number*

The number of the column about which information is to be retrieved. The count starts at 1.

*descriptor\_item*

A token identifying which item of information about a column to retrieve. See Section 33.7.1 for a list of supported items.

*hostvariable*

A host variable that will receive the data retrieved from the descriptor area.

### Examples

An example to retrieve the number of columns in a result set:

```
EXEC SQL GET DESCRIPTOR d :d_count = COUNT END-EXEC.
```

An example to retrieve a data length in the first column:

```
EXEC SQL GET DESCRIPTOR d VALUE 1 :d_returned_octet_length = RETURNED_OCTET_LENGTH END-EXEC.
```

An example to retrieve the data body of the second column as a string:

```
EXEC SQL GET DESCRIPTOR d VALUE 2 :d_data = DATA END-EXEC.
```

Here is an example for a whole procedure of executing SELECT current\_database(); and showing the number of columns, the column data length, and the column data:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.
    01 D-COUNT PIC S9(9) COMP-5.
    01 D-DATA PIC X(1024).
    01 D-RETURNED-OCTET-LENGTH PIC S9(9) COMP.
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.

    EXEC SQL CONNECT TO testdb AS con1 USER testuser END-EXEC.
    EXEC SQL ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR d END-EXEC.

*   Declare, open a cursor, and assign a descriptor to the cursor
    EXEC SQL DECLARE cur CURSOR FOR SELECT current_database() END-EXEC.
    EXEC SQL OPEN cur END-EXEC.
    EXEC SQL FETCH NEXT FROM cur INTO SQL DESCRIPTOR d END-EXEC.

*   Get a number of total columns
    EXEC SQL GET DESCRIPTOR d :D-COUNT = COUNT END-EXEC.
    DISPLAY "d_count" = " D-COUNT.

*   Get length of a returned column
    EXEC SQL GET DESCRIPTOR d VALUE 1 :D-RETURNED-OCTET-LENGTH = RETURNED_OCTET_LENGTH END-EXEC.
    DISPLAY "d_returned_octet_length = " D-RETURNED-OCTET-LENGTH.

*   Fetch the returned column as a string
    EXEC SQL GET DESCRIPTOR d VALUE 1 :D-DATA = DATA END-EXEC.
    DISPLAY "d_data" = " D-DATA.

*   Closing
    EXEC SQL CLOSE cur END-EXEC.
    EXEC SQL COMMIT END-EXEC.

    EXEC SQL DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR d END-EXEC.
    EXEC SQL DISCONNECT ALL END-EXEC.
```

When the example is executed, the result will look like this:

```
d_count = +000000001
d_returned_octet_length = +000000006
d_data = testdb
```

## Compatibility

GET DESCRIPTOR is specified in the SQL standard.

## See Also

[ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR](#), [SET DESCRIPTOR](#)

## D.11.9 OPEN

---

### Name

OPEN -- open a dynamic cursor

### Synopsis

OPEN *cursor\_name*

OPEN *cursor\_name* USING *value* [, ... ]

OPEN *cursor\_name* USING SQL DESCRIPTOR *descriptor\_name*

### Description

OPEN opens a cursor and optionally binds actual values to the placeholders in the cursor's declaration. The cursor must previously have been declared with the DECLARE command. The execution of OPEN causes the query to start executing on the server.

### Parameters

*cursor\_name*

The name of the cursor to be opened. This can be an SQL identifier or a host variable.

*value*

A value to be bound to a placeholder in the cursor. This can be an SQL constant, a host variable, or a host variable with indicator.

*descriptor\_name*

The name of a descriptor containing values to be bound to the placeholders in the cursor. This can be an SQL identifier or a host variable.

### Examples

```
EXEC SQL OPEN a END-EXEC.  
EXEC SQL OPEN d USING 1, 'test' END-EXEC.  
EXEC SQL OPEN c1 USING SQL DESCRIPTOR mydesc END-EXEC.  
EXEC SQL OPEN :curname1 END-EXEC.
```

### Compatibility

OPEN is specified in the SQL standard.

## See Also

[DECLARE](#), [CLOSE](#)



See

.....  
Refer to "SQL Commands" in "Reference" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on the CLOSE command.  
.....

## D.11.10 PREPARE

---

## Name

PREPARE -- prepare a statement for execution

## Synopsis

```
PREPARE name FROM string
```

## Description

PREPARE prepares a statement dynamically specified as a string for execution. This is different from the direct SQL statement PREPARE, which can also be used in embedded programs. The EXECUTE command is used to execute either kind of prepared statement.

## Parameters

*prepared\_name*

An identifier for the prepared query.

*string*

A literal string or a host variable containing a preparable statement, one of the SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE.

## Examples

```
MOVE "SELECT * FROM test1 WHERE a = ? AND b = ?" TO ARR OF STMT.  
COMPUTE LEN OF STMT = FUNCTION STORED-CHAR-LENGTH (ARR OF STMT).  
EXEC SQL ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR indesc END-EXEC.  
EXEC SQL ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR outdesc END-EXEC.  
EXEC SQL PREPARE foo FROM :STMT END-EXEC.  
  
EXEC SQL EXECUTE foo USING SQL DESCRIPTOR indesc INTO SQL DESCRIPTOR outdesc END-EXEC.
```

## Compatibility

PREPARE is specified in the SQL standard.

## See Also

EXECUTE



See

.....  
Refer to "SQL Commands" in "Reference" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on the EXECUTE command.  
.....

## D.11.11 SET AUTOCOMMIT

---

### Name

SET AUTOCOMMIT -- set the autocommit behavior of the current session

### Synopsis

```
SET AUTOCOMMIT { = | TO } { ON | OFF }
```

### Description

SET AUTOCOMMIT sets the autocommit behavior of the current database session. By default, embedded SQL programs are not in autocommit mode, so COMMIT needs to be issued explicitly when desired. This command can change the session to autocommit mode, where each individual statement is committed implicitly.

## Compatibility

SET AUTOCOMMIT is an extension of PostgreSQL ECOBPG.

## D.11.12 SET CONNECTION

---

### Name

SET CONNECTION -- select a database connection

### Synopsis

```
SET CONNECTION [ TO | = ] connection_name
```

### Description

SET CONNECTION sets the "current" database connection, which is the one that all commands use unless overridden.

### Parameters

*connection\_name*

A database connection name established by the CONNECT command.

DEFAULT

Set the connection to the default connection.

### Examples

```
EXEC SQL SET CONNECTION TO con2 END-EXEC.  
EXEC SQL SET CONNECTION = con1 END-EXEC.
```

## Compatibility

SET CONNECTION is specified in the SQL standard.

## See Also

[CONNECT](#), [DISCONNECT](#)

## D.11.13 SET DESCRIPTOR

---

### Name

SET DESCRIPTOR -- set information in an SQL descriptor area

### Synopsis

```
SET DESCRIPTOR descriptor_name descriptor_header_item = value [ , ... ]
```

```
SET DESCRIPTOR descriptor_name VALUE number descriptor_item = value [ , ...]
```

### Description

SET DESCRIPTOR populates an SQL descriptor area with values. The descriptor area is then typically used to bind parameters in a prepared query execution.

This command has two forms: The first form applies to the descriptor "header", which is independent of a particular datum. The second form assigns values to particular datums, identified by number.

## Parameters

*descriptor\_name*

A descriptor name.

*descriptor\_header\_item*

A token identifying which header information item to set. Only COUNT, to set the number of descriptor items, is currently supported.

*number*

The number of the descriptor item to set. The count starts at 1.

*descriptor\_item*

A token identifying which item of information to set in the descriptor. See Section 33.7.1 for a list of supported items.

*value*

A value to store into the descriptor item. This can be an SQL constant or a host variable.

## Examples

```
EXEC SQL SET DESCRIPTOR indesc COUNT = 1 END-EXEC.  
EXEC SQL SET DESCRIPTOR indesc VALUE 1 DATA = 2 END-EXEC.  
EXEC SQL SET DESCRIPTOR indesc VALUE 1 DATA = :val1 END-EXEC.  
EXEC SQL SET DESCRIPTOR indesc VALUE 2 DATA = 'some string', INDICATOR = :val1 END-EXEC.  
EXEC SQL SET DESCRIPTOR indesc VALUE 2 INDICATOR = :val2null, DATA = :val2 END-EXEC.
```

## Compatibility

SET DESCRIPTOR is specified in the SQL standard.

## See Also

[ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR](#), [GET DESCRIPTOR](#)

## D.11.14 TYPE

---

### Name

TYPE -- define a new data type

### Synopsis

```
TYPE type_name IS ctype
```

### Description

The TYPE command defines a new COBOL type. It is equivalent to putting a typedef into a declare section.

This command is only recognized when ecobpgpg is run with the -c option.

A level number of 01 is automatically added to *type\_name* item. Thus, the level number must not to be specified externally. To define a group item, a level number needs to be specified to the each subordinate items.

For reasons of internal implementation, "TYPE" must be placed just after "EXEC SQL", without containing newline. For other place, you can use newline.

## Parameters

*type\_name*

The name for the new type. It must be a valid COBOL type name.

*ctype*

A COBOL type specification (including expression format specification).

## Examples

```
EXEC SQL TYPE CUSTOMER IS
    02 NAME PIC X(50) VARYING.
    02 PHONE PIC S9(9) COMP. END-EXEC.

EXEC SQL TYPE CUST-IND IS
    02 NAME_IND PIC S9(4) COMP.
    02 PHONE_IND PIC S9(4) COMP. END-EXEC.

EXEC SQL TYPE INTARRAY IS
    02 INT PIC S9(9) OCCURS 20. END-EXEC.
EXEC SQL TYPE STR IS PIC X(50) VARYING. END-EXEC.
EXEC SQL TYPE STRING IS PIC X(10). END-EXEC.
```

Here is an example program that uses EXEC SQL TYPE:

```
EXEC SQL TYPE TT IS
    02 V PIC X(256) VARYING.
    02 I PIC S9(9) COMP. END-EXEC.

EXEC SQL TYPE TT-IND IS
    02 V-IND PIC S9(4) COMP.
    02 I-IND PIC S9(4) COMP. END-EXEC.

EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.
    01 T TYPE TT.
    01 T-IND TYPE TT-IND.
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION END-EXEC.

EXEC SQL CONNECT TO testdb AS con1 END-EXEC.

EXEC SQL SELECT current_database(), 256 INTO :T :T-IND LIMIT 1 END-EXEC.

DISPLAY "t.v = " ARR OF V OF T.
DISPLAY "t.i = " I OF T.

DISPLAY "t_ind.v_ind = " V-IND OF T-IND.
DISPLAY "t_ind.i_ind = " I-IND OF T-IND.

EXEC SQL DISCONNECT con1 END-EXEC.
```

## Compatibility

The TYPE command is a PostgreSQL extension.

## D.11.15 VAR

---

### Name

VAR— define a variable

### Synopsis

```
VAR varname IS ctype
```



## Description

The VAR command defines a host variable. It is equivalent to an ordinary COBOL variable definition inside a declare section.

When translating, a level number 01 is added. Thus, the level number must not be specified externally.

To define a group item, a level number needs to be specified to the each subordinate items.

For reasons of internal implementation, "VAR" must be placed just after "EXEC SQL", without containing newline. For other place, you can use newline.

## Parameters

varname

A COBOL variable name.

ctype

A COBOL type specification.

## Examples

```
EXEC SQL VAR VC IS PIC X(10) VARYING. END-EXEC.  
EXEC SQL VAR BOOL-VAR IS BOOL. END-EXEC.
```

## Compatibility

The VAR command is a PostgreSQL extension.

## D.11.16 WHENEVER

---

### Name

WHENEVER -- specify the action to be taken when an SQL statement causes a specific class condition to be raised

### Synopsis

```
WHENEVER { NOT FOUND | SQLERROR | SQLWARNING } action
```

### Description

Define a behavior which is called on the special cases (Rows not found, SQL warnings or errors) in the result of SQL execution.

### Parameters

See Section "[D.7.1 Setting Callbacks](#)" or a description of the parameters.

### Examples

```
EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND CONTINUE END-EXEC.  
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLWARNING SQLPRINT END-EXEC.  
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLWARNING DO "warn" END-EXEC.  
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR sqlprint END-EXEC.  
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR CALL "print2" END-EXEC.  
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR DO handle_error USING "select" END-EXEC.  
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR DO sqlnotice USING 0 1 END-EXEC.  
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR DO "sqlprint" END-EXEC.  
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR GOTO error_label END-EXEC.  
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR STOP END-EXEC.
```

A typical application is the use of WHENEVER NOT FOUND GOTO to handle looping through result sets:

```

EXEC SQL CONNECT TO testdb AS con1 END-EXEC.
EXEC SQL ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR d END-EXEC.
EXEC SQL DECLARE cur CURSOR FOR SELECT current_database(), 'hoge', 256 END-EXEC.
EXEC SQL OPEN cur END-EXEC.

*   when end of result set reached, break out of while loop
EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND GOTO NOTFOUND END-EXEC.

PERFORM NO LIMIT
      EXEC SQL FETCH NEXT FROM cur INTO SQL DESCRIPTOR d END-EXEC
      ...
END-PERFORM.

NOTFOUND.
EXEC SQL CLOSE cur END-EXEC.
EXEC SQL COMMIT END-EXEC.

EXEC SQL DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR d END-EXEC.
EXEC SQL DISCONNECT ALL END-EXEC.

```

## Compatibility

WHENEVER is specified in the SQL standard, but most of the actions are PostgreSQL extensions.

## D.12 PostgreSQL Client Applications

---

This part contains reference information for PostgreSQL client applications and utilities. Not all of these commands are of general utility; some might require special privileges. The common feature of these applications is that they can be run on any host, independent of where the database server resides.

When specified on the command line, user and database names have their case preserved — the presence of spaces or special characters might require quoting. Table names and other identifiers do not have their case preserved, except where documented, and might require quoting.

### D.12.1 ecobpg

---

#### Name

ecobpg -- embedded SQL COBOL preprocessor

#### Synopsis

ecobpg [*option...*] *file...*

#### Description

ecobpg is the embedded SQL preprocessor for COBOL programs. It converts COBOL programs with embedded SQL statements to normal COBOL code by replacing the SQL invocations with special function calls. The output files can then be processed with any COBOL compiler tool chain.

ecobpg will convert each input file given on the command line to the corresponding COBOL output file. Input files preferably have the extension .pco, in which case the extension will be replaced by .cob to determine the output file name. If the extension of the input file is not .pco, then the output file name is computed by appending .cob to the full file name. The output file name can also be overridden using the -o option.

#### Options

ecobpg accepts the following command-line arguments:

-C

Automatically generate certain COBOL code from SQL code. Currently, this works for EXEC SQL TYPE.

**-I directory**

Specify an additional include path, used to find files included via EXEC SQL INCLUDE. Defaults are: (current directory), /usr/local/include, the PostgreSQL include directory which is defined at compile time (default: /usr/local/pgsql/include), and /usr/include, in that order.

**-o filename**

Specifies that ecobpg should write all its output to the given filename.

**-f format**

Specifies the COBOL code notation. For "format", specify either of the following. If omitted, "fixed" is used.

**fixed**

Specifies fixed format notation. Up to 72 columns can be specified for area B. Characters in column 73 and beyond are deleted in the precompiled source.

**variable**

Specifies variable format notation. Up to 251 columns can be specified for area B. Characters in column 252 and beyond are deleted in the precompiled source.

**-r option**

Selects run-time behavior. Option can be one of the following:

**prepare**

Prepare all statements before using them. Libecpg will keep a cache of prepared statements and reuse a statement if it gets executed again. If the cache runs full, libecpg will free the least used statement.

**questionmarks**

Allow question mark as placeholder for compatibility reasons. This used to be the default long ago.

**-t**

Turn on autocommit of transactions. In this mode, each SQL command is automatically committed unless it is inside an explicit transaction block. In the default mode, commands are committed only when EXEC SQL COMMIT is issued.

**--varchar-with-named-member**

When converting VARCHAR host variable, adding name of the variable to members as prefix. Instead of LEN and ARR, (varname)-ARR and (varname)-LEN will be used.

**--bytea-with-named-member**

When converting bytea host variable, adding name of the variable to members as prefix. Instead of LEN and ARR, (varname)-ARR and (varname)-LEN will be used.

**-E encode**

Specify the COBOL source encoding: "UTF8", "SJIS", or "EUC\_JP".

If this option is omitted, the encoding is processed based on the locale.

**-v**

Print additional information including the version and the "include" path.

**--version**

Print the ecobpg version and exit.

**-?**

**--help**

Show help about ecobpg command line arguments, and exit.

## Notes

When compiling the preprocessed COBOL code files, the compiler needs to be able to find the library files in the PostgreSQL include directory.

Programs using COBOL code with embedded SQL have to be linked against the libecpg library, for example using the linker options.

The value of either of these directories that is appropriate for the installation can be found out using pg\_config.



See

Refer to "pg\_config" in "Reference" in the PostgreSQL Documentation.

## Examples

If you have an embedded SQL COBOL source file named prog1.pco, you can create an executable program using the following command:

```
ecobpg prog1.pco
```

## Appendix E Quantitative Limits

This appendix lists the quantitative limits of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

Table E.1 Length of identifier

Item	Limit
Database name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Schema name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Table name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
View name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Index name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Table space name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Cursor name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Function name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Aggregate function name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Trigger name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Constraint name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Conversion name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Role name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Cast name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Collation sequence name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Encoding method conversion name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Domain name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Extension name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Operator name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Operator class name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Operator family name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Rewrite rule name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Sequence name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Text search settings name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Text search dictionary name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Text search parser name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Text search template name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Data type name	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)
Enumerator type label	Up to 63 bytes (*1) (*2)

\*1: This is the character string byte length when converted by the server character set character code.

\*2: If an identifier that exceeds 63 bytes in length is specified, the excess characters are truncated and it is processed.

Table E.2 Database object

Item	Limit
Number of databases	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)

Item	Limit
Number of schemas	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of tables	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of views	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of indexes	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of table spaces	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of functions	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of aggregate functions	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of triggers	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of constraints	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of conversion	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of roles	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of casts	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of collation sequences	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of encoding method conversions	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of domains	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of extensions	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of operators	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of operator classes	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of operator families	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of rewrite rules	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of sequences	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of text search settings	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of text search dictionaries	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of text search parsers	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of text search templates	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of data types	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of enumerator type labels	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of default access privileges defined in the ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES statement	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of large objects	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)
Number of index access methods	Less than 4,294,967,296 (*1)

\*1: The total number of all database objects must be less than 4,294,967,296.

Table E.3 Schema element

Item	Limit
Number of columns that can be defined in one table	From 250 to 1600 (according to the data type)
Table row length	Up to 400 gigabytes
Number of columns comprising a unique constraint	Up to 32 columns
Data length comprising a unique constraint	Less than 2,000 bytes (*1) (*2)

Item	Limit
Table size	Up to one terabyte
Search condition character string length in a trigger definition statement	Up to 800 megabytes (*1) (*2)
Item size	Up to 1 gigabyte

\*1: Operation might proceed correctly even if operations are performed with a quantity outside the limits.

\*2: This is the character string byte length when converted by the server character set character code.

Table E.4 Index

Item	Limit
Number of columns comprising a key (including VCI)	Up to 32 columns
Key length (other than VCI)	Less than 2,000 bytes (*1)

\*1: This is the character string byte length when converted by the server character set character code.

Table E.5 Data types and attributes that can be handled

Item			Limit
Character	Data length		Data types and attributes that can be handled (*1)
	Specification length ( <i>n</i> )		Up to 10,485,760 characters (*1)
Numeric	External decimal expression		Up to 131,072 digits before the decimal point, and up to 16,383 digits after the decimal point
	Internal binary expression	2 bytes	From -32,768 to 32,767
		4 bytes	From -2,147,483,648 to 2,147,483,647
		8 bytes	From -9,223,372,036,854,775,808 to 9,223,372,036,854,775,807
	Internal decimal expression		Up to 13,1072 digits before the decimal point, and up to 16,383 digits after the decimal point
	Floating point expression	4 bytes	From -3.4E+38 to -7.1E-46, 0, or from 7.1E-46 to 3.4E+38
		8 bytes	From -1.7E+308 to -2.5E-324, 0, or from 2.5E-324 to 1.7E+308
bytea			Up to one gigabyte minus 53 bytes
Large object			Up to two gigabytes

\*1: This is the character string byte length when converted by the server character set character code.

Table E.6 Function definition

Item	Limit
Number of arguments that can be specified	Up to 100
Number of variable names that can be specified in the declarations section	No limit

Item	Limit
Number of SQL statements or control statements that can be specified in a function processing implementation	No limit

Table E.7 Data operation statement

Item	Limit
Maximum number of connections for one process in an application (remote access)	4,000 connections
Number of expressions that can be specified in a selection list	Up to 1,664
Number of tables that can be specified in a FROM clause	No limit
Number of unique expressions that can be specified in a selection list/DISTINCT clause/ORDER BY clause/GROUP BY clause within one SELECT statement	Up to 1,664
Number of expressions that can be specified in a GROUP BY clause	No limit
Number of expressions that can be specified in an ORDER BY clause	No limit
Number of SELECT statements that can be specified in a UNION clause/INTERSECT clause/EXCEPT clause	Up to 4,000 (*1)
Number of nestings in joined tables that can be specified in one view	Up to 4,000 (*1)
Number of functions or operator expressions that can be specified in one expression	Up to 4,000 (*1)
Number of expressions that can be specified in one row constructor	Up to 1,664
Number of expressions that can be specified in an UPDATE statement SET clause	Up to 1,664
Number of expressions that can be specified in one row of a VALUES list	Up to 1,664
Number of expressions that can be specified in a RETURNING clause	Up to 1,664
Total expression length that can be specified in the argument list of one function specification	Up to 800 megabytes (*2)
Number of cursors that can be processed simultaneously by one session	No limit
Character string length of one SQL statement	Up to 800 megabytes (*1) (*3)
Number of input parameter specifications that can be specified in one dynamic SQL statement	No limit
Number of tokens that can be specified in one SQL statement	Up to 10,000
Number of values that can be specified as a list in a WHERE clause IN syntax	No limit
Number of expressions that can be specified in a USING clause	No limit
Number of JOINS that can be specified in a joined table	Up to 4,000 (*1)
Number of expressions that can be specified in COALESCE	No limit
Number of WHEN clauses that can be specified for CASE in a simple format or a searched format	No limit



Item	Limit
Data size per record that can be updated or inserted by one SQL statement	Up to one gigabyte minus 53 bytes
Number of objects that can share a lock simultaneously	Up to 256,000 (*1)

\*1: Operation might proceed correctly even if operations are performed with a quantity outside the limits.

\*2: The total number of all database objects must be less than 4,294,967,296.

\*3: This is the character string byte length when converted by the server character set character code.

Table E.8 Data sizes

Item	Limit
Data size per record for input data files (COPY statement, psql command \copy meta command)	Up to 800 megabytes (*1)
Data size per record for output data files (COPY statement, psql command \copy meta command)	Up to 800 megabytes (*1)

\*1: Operation might proceed correctly even if operations are performed with a quantity outside the limits.

## Appendix F Reference

### F.1 JDBC Driver



See

Refer to the Java API Reference for information on PostgreSQL JDBC driver.



### F.2 ODBC Driver

#### F.2.1 List of Supported APIs

The following table shows the support status of APIs:

Function name	Support status
SQLAllocConnect	Y
SQLAllocEnv	Y
SQLAllocHandle	Y
SQLAllocStmt	Y
SQLBindCol	Y
SQLBindParameter	Y
SQLBindParam	Y
SQLBrowseConnect	Y
SQLBulkOperations	Y
SQLCancel	Y
SQLCancelHandle	N
SQLCloseCursor	Y
SQLColAttribute	Y
SQLColAttributeW	Y
SQLColAttributes	Y
SQLColAttributesW	Y
SQLColumnPrivileges	Y
SQLColumnPrivilegesW	Y
SQLColumns	Y
SQLColumnsW	Y
SQLCompleteAsync	N
SQLConnect	Y
SQLConnectW	Y
SQLCopyDesc	Y
SQLDataSources	Y
SQLDataSourcesW	Y
SQLDescribeCol	Y

Function name	Support status
SQLDescribeColW	Y
SQLDescribeParam	Y
SQLDisconnect	Y
SQLDriverConnect	Y
SQLDriverConnectW	Y
SQLDrivers	Y
SQLEndTran	Y
SQLError	Y
SQLErrorW	Y
SQLExecDirect	Y
SQLExecDirectW	Y
SQLExecute	Y
SQLExtendedFetch	Y
SQLFetch	Y
SQLFetchScroll	Y
SQLForeignKeys	Y
SQLForeignKeysW	Y
SQLFreeConnect	Y
SQLFreeEnv	Y
SQLFreeHandle	Y
SQLFreeStmt	Y
SQLGetConnectAttr	Y
SQLGetConnectAttrW	Y
SQLGetConnectOption	Y
SQLGetConnectOptionW	Y
SQLGetCursorName	Y
SQLGetCursorNameW	Y
SQLGetData	Y
SQLGetDescField	Y
SQLGetDescFieldW	Y
SQLGetDescRec	Y
SQLGetDescRecW	Y
SQLGetDiagField	Y
SQLGetDiagFieldW	Y
SQLGetDiagRec	Y
SQLGetDiagRecW	Y
SQLGetEnvAttr	Y
SQLGetFunctions	Y
SQLGetInfo	Y

Function name	Support status
SQLGetInfoW	Y
SQLGetStmtAttr	Y
SQLGetStmtAttrW	Y
SQLGetStmtOption	Y
SQLGetTypeInfo	Y
SQLGetTypeInfoW	Y
SQLMoreResults	Y
SQLNativeSql	Y
SQLNativeSqlW	Y
SQLNumParams	Y
SQLNumResultCols	Y
SQLParamData	Y
SQLParamOptions	Y
SQLPrepare	Y
SQLPrepareW	Y
SQLPrimaryKeys	Y
SQLPrimaryKeysW	Y
SQLProcedureColumns	Y
SQLProcedureColumnsW	Y
SQLProcedures	Y
SQLProceduresW	Y
SQLPutData	Y
SQLRowCount	Y
SQLSetConnectAttr	Y
SQLSetConnectAttrW	Y
SQLSetConnectOption	Y
SQLSetConnectOptionW	Y
SQLSetCursorName	Y
SQLSetCursorNameW	Y
SQLSetDescField	Y
SQLSetDescRec	Y
SQLSetEnvAttr	Y
SQLSetParam	Y
SQLSetPos	Y
SQLSetScrollOptions	N
SQLSetStmtAttr	Y
SQLSetStmtAttrW	Y
SQLSetStmtOption	Y
SQLSpecialColumns	Y

Function name	Support status
SQLSpecialColumnsW	Y
SQLStatistics	Y
SQLStatisticsW	Y
SQLTablePrivileges	Y
SQLTablePrivilegesW	Y
SQLTables	Y
SQLTablesW	Y
SQLTransact	Y

Y: Supported  
N: Not supported

## F.3 .NET Data Provider

---

There are the following ways to develop applications using Fujitsu Npgsql .NET Data Provider:

- Use the Fujitsu Npgsql.NET Data Provider API (classes and methods) directly.

Fujitsu Npgsql .NET Data Provider is created based on the open source software Npgsql. Refer to the "Npgsql - .Net Data Provider for PostgreSQL" for information on the APIs:



See

Refer to the Installation and Setup Guide for Client for the version of Npgsql that Fujitsu Npgsql .NET Data Provider is based on.

- Use the API of the .NET System.Data.Common namespace

It is possible to create applications that do not rely on a provider when you use the System.Data.Common namespace. Refer to the "Writing Provider-Independent Code in ADO.NET" in MSDN Library for information.



See

Refer to the Npgsql API Reference for information on Npgsql API classes and methods.

## F.4 C Library (libpq)

---



See

Refer to "libpq - C Library" in "Client Interfaces" in the PostgreSQL Documentation.

## F.5 Embedded SQL in C

---



See

Refer to "ECPG - Embedded SQL in C" in "Client Interfaces" in the PostgreSQL Documentation.

# Index

---

[A]	[U]
Additional Notes on each Type Plugin.....43	Use the API of the .NET System.Data.Common namespace.203
[B]	Use the Fujitsu Npgsql.NET Data Provider API (classes and methods) directly.....203
BIND_VARIABLE.....89	
[C]	[W]
CLOSE_CURSOR.....89	When setting from outside with environment variables.....50
Code examples for applications.....56,66	When specifying in the connection URI.....50
COLUMN_VALUE.....89	When using Add-OdbcDsn.....20
Comparison operator.....3	When using ODBCConf.exe.....18
[D]	
DBMS_SQL.....87	
DECODE.....82	
DEFINE_COLUMN.....90	
DUAL Table.....82	
[E]	
Encoding System Settings.....24,49	
Entry information of subprogram.....69	
Example of specifying the hint clause.....57,68	
EXECUTE.....90	
[F]	
FETCH_ROWS.....91	
[L]	
Language settings.....7,23,49	
Libraries to use.....69	
[N]	
Notes on automatically generating update-type SQL statements.....46	
Notes on metadata.....46	
Notes on the Query Builder.....45	
NVL.....85	
[O]	
OPEN_CURSOR.....91	
Outer Join Operator (+).....79	
[P]	
PARSE.....91	
Path of library.....69	
Path of the library file.....69	
Pattern matching.....3	
Precompiling example.....57,68	
[S]	
Scan Using a Vertical Clustered Index (VCI).....108	
Settings for encrypting communication data for connection to the server.....7	
String functions and operators.....3	
SUBSTR.....84	
[T]	
Type Plugins.....42	

# Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 16

## Operation Guide

Linux

J2UL-2952-01ENZ0(00)  
July 2024

# Preface

---

## Purpose of this document

The Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres database system extends the PostgreSQL features and runs on the Linux platform.

This document is the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Operation Guide.

## Intended readers

This document is intended for those who install and operate Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

Readers of this document are assumed to have general knowledge of:

- PostgreSQL
- SQL
- Linux

## Structure of this document

This document is structured as follows:

### [Chapter 1 Operating Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres](#)

Describes how to operate Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

### [Chapter 2 Starting an Instance and Creating a Database](#)

Describes how to start a Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres instance, and how to create a database.

### [Chapter 3 Backing Up the Database](#)

Describes how to back up the database.

### [Chapter 4 Configuring Secure Communication Using Secure Sockets Layer](#)

Describes communication data encryption between the client and the server.

### [Chapter 5 Protecting Storage Data Using Transparent Data Encryption](#)

Describes how to encrypt the data to be stored in the database.

### [Chapter 6 Using Transparent Data Encryption with Key Management Systems as Keystores](#)

Describes the operation of transparent data encryption when a key management system is used as a keystore.

### [Chapter 7 Policy-based Password Management](#)

Describes the password operation based on policy in client authentication.

### [Chapter 8 Data Masking](#)

Describes the data masking feature.

### [Chapter 9 Periodic Operations](#)

Describes the periodic database operations that must be performed on Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

### [Chapter 10 Streaming Replication Using WebAdmin](#)

Describes how to create a streaming replication cluster using WebAdmin.

### [Chapter 11 Installing and Operating the In-memory Feature](#)

Describes how to install and operate the in-memory feature.

### [Chapter 12 Parallel Query](#)

Describes the factors taken into consideration by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres when performing parallel queries.

### [Chapter 13 High-Speed Data Load](#)

Describes how to install and operate high-speed data load.



## Chapter 14 Global Meta Cache

Describes how to use Grobal Meta Cache feature.

## Chapter 15 Local Meta Cache Limit

Describes how to use Local Meta Cache Limit feature.

## Chapter 16 Backup/Recovery Using the Copy Command

Describes backup and recovery using the copy command created by the user.

## Chapter 17 Actions when an Error Occurs

Describes how to perform recovery when disk failure or data corruption occurs.

## Appendix A Parameters

Describes the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres parameters.

## Appendix B System Administration Functions

Describes the system administration functions of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

## Appendix C System Catalogs

Describes the system catalog used by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

## Appendix D System Views

Describes the system view used by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

## Appendix E Tables Used by Transparent Data Encryption

Describes the tables used by the transparent data encryption feature.

## Appendix F Tables Used by Data Masking

Describes the tables used by the data masking feature.

## Appendix G Tables Used by High-Speed Data Load

Describes the tables used by high-speed data load.

## Appendix H Starting and Stopping the Web Server Feature of WebAdmin

Describes how to start and stop WebAdmin (Web server feature).

## Appendix I WebAdmin Wallet

Describes how to use the Wallet feature of WebAdmin.

## Appendix J WebAdmin Disallow User Inputs Containing Hazardous Characters

Describes characters not allowed in WebAdmin.

## Appendix K Copy Command Samples that Use the Advanced Copy Feature of the ETERNUS Disk Array

Describes copy command samples that use the advanced copy feature of the ETERNUS disk array.

## Appendix L Collecting Failure Investigation Data

Describes how to collect information for initial investigation.

## Export restrictions

Exportation/release of this document may require necessary procedures in accordance with the regulations of your resident country and/or US export control laws.

## Issue date and version

Edition 1.0: July 2024
------------------------

**Copyright**

Copyright 2015-2024 Fujitsu Limited

# Contents

---

Chapter 1 Operating Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.....	1
1.1 Operating Methods.....	1
1.2 Starting WebAdmin.....	2
1.2.1 Logging in to WebAdmin.....	3
1.3 Starting pgAdmin.....	3
1.3.1 Starting pgAdmin.....	3
1.3.2 Adding an Instance.....	3
1.3.3 Connecting/Disconnecting an Instance.....	4
1.3.4 Changing the pgAdmin Display Language.....	5
1.4 Operations Using Commands.....	5
1.5 Operating Environment of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.....	6
1.5.1 Operating Environment.....	6
1.5.2 File Composition.....	8
1.6 Notes on Compatibility of Applications Used for Operations.....	8
1.7 Notes on Upgrading Database Instances.....	9
1.7.1 Additional Steps for upgrading to Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres with Vertical Clustered Index (VCI) Enabled.....	9
1.7.2 Additional Steps to upgrading to Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres with Transparent Data Encryption (TDE) Enabled.....	10
Chapter 2 Starting an Instance and Creating a Database.....	12
2.1 Starting and Stopping an Instance.....	12
2.1.1 Using WebAdmin.....	12
2.1.2 Using Server Commands.....	13
2.2 Creating a Database.....	15
2.2.1 Using pgAdmin.....	15
2.2.2 Using Client Commands.....	15
Chapter 3 Backing Up the Database.....	16
3.1 Periodic Backup.....	17
3.2 Backup Methods.....	18
3.2.1 Using WebAdmin.....	18
3.2.2 Using Server Commands.....	18
Chapter 4 Configuring Secure Communication Using Secure Sockets Layer.....	22
4.1 Configuring Communication Data Encryption.....	22
4.1.1 Issuing a Certificate.....	23
4.1.2 Deploying a Server Certificate File and a Server Private Key File.....	23
4.1.3 Distributing a CA Certificate File to the Client.....	23
4.1.4 Configuring the Operating Environment for the Database Server.....	23
4.1.5 Configuring the Operating Environment for the Client.....	23
4.1.6 Performing Database Multiplexing.....	24
Chapter 5 Protecting Storage Data Using Transparent Data Encryption.....	25
5.1 Protecting Data Using Encryption.....	25
5.2 Setting the Master Encryption Key.....	26
5.3 Opening the Keystore.....	27
5.4 Encrypting a Tablespace.....	27
5.5 Checking an Encrypted Tablespace.....	29
5.6 Managing the Keystore.....	29
5.6.1 Changing the Master Encryption Key.....	29
5.6.2 Changing the Keystore Passphrase.....	29
5.6.3 Enabling Automatic Opening of the Keystore.....	30
5.6.4 Backing Up and Recovering the Keystore.....	30
5.7 Backing Up and Restoring/Recovering the Database.....	32
5.8 Importing and Exporting the Database.....	34
5.9 Encrypting Existing Data.....	34
5.10 Operations in Cluster Systems.....	34

5.10.1 HA Clusters that do not Use Database Multiplexing.....	35
5.10.2 Database Multiplexing Mode.....	35
5.11 Security-Related Notes.....	36
5.12 Tips for Installing Built Applications.....	37
<b>Chapter 6 Using Transparent Data Encryption with Key Management Systems as Keystores.....</b>	<b>38</b>
6.1 Protecting Data Using Encryption.....	38
6.2 Setting the Master Encryption Key.....	39
6.3 Opening the Keystore.....	39
6.4 Encrypting a Tablespace.....	40
6.5 Checking an Encrypted Tablespace.....	40
6.6 Managing the Keystore.....	40
6.6.1 Changing the Master Encryption Key .....	40
6.6.2 Enabling Automatic Opening of the Keystore.....	40
6.6.3 Changing Credentials for Key Management Systems.....	41
6.6.4 Verifying the Master Encryption Key.....	41
6.6.5 Changes to the Key Management System.....	41
6.7 Backing Up and Restoring/Recovering the Database.....	42
6.8 Importing and Exporting the Database.....	43
6.9 Encrypting Existing Data.....	43
6.10 Operations in Cluster Systems.....	43
6.10.1 HA Clusters that do not Use Database Multiplexing.....	43
6.10.2 Database Multiplexing Mode.....	44
6.11 Security-Related Notes.....	44
6.12 Tips for Installing Built Applications.....	44
<b>Chapter 7 Policy-based Password Management.....</b>	<b>45</b>
7.1 Changing the Contents of the default Profile.....	45
7.2 Creating and Assigning Profiles.....	45
7.3 Actions to be Taken in the Event of Deviation from Policy.....	46
7.4 Settings in Streaming Replication Configuration.....	46
7.5 Backup and Recovery.....	47
7.6 Profile parameters.....	47
7.7 Worker Processes.....	49
<b>Chapter 8 Data Masking.....</b>	<b>51</b>
8.1 Masking Policy.....	51
8.1.1 Masking Target.....	52
8.1.2 Masking Type.....	52
8.1.3 Masking Condition.....	52
8.1.4 Masking Format.....	53
8.2 Usage Method.....	55
8.2.1 Creating a Masking Policy.....	56
8.2.2 Changing a Masking Policy.....	57
8.2.3 Confirming a Masking Policy.....	57
8.2.4 Enabling and Disabling a Masking Policy.....	58
8.2.5 Deleting a Masking Policy.....	59
8.3 Data Types for Masking.....	59
8.4 Security Notes.....	60
<b>Chapter 9 Periodic Operations.....</b>	<b>61</b>
9.1 Configuring and Monitoring the Log.....	61
9.2 Monitoring Disk Usage and Securing Free Space.....	61
9.2.1 Monitoring Disk Usage.....	61
9.2.2 Securing Free Disk Space.....	61
9.3 Automatically Closing Connections.....	62
9.4 Monitoring the Connection State of an Application.....	62
9.4.1 Using the View (pg_stat_activity).....	63

9.4.2 Using pgAdmin.....	64
9.5 Reorganizing Indexes.....	64
9.6 Monitoring Database Activity.....	65
9.6.1 Information that can be Collected.....	66
9.6.2 Collection Configuration.....	67
9.6.3 Information Reset.....	67
9.7 Monitoring Deferred SQL and Periodically Backing up statistics.....	68
9.8 Performance Tuning.....	72
9.8.1 Enhanced Query Plan Stability.....	72
9.8.1.1 Fixing the Height of a Btree Index.....	73
Chapter 10 Streaming Replication Using WebAdmin.....	74
10.1 Creating a Standby Instance.....	74
10.2 Promoting a Standby Instance.....	75
10.3 Converting an Asynchronous Replication to Synchronous.....	75
10.4 Converting a Synchronous Replication to Asynchronous.....	76
10.5 Joining a Replication Cluster.....	76
Chapter 11 Installing and Operating the In-memory Feature.....	78
11.1 Installing Vertical Clustered Index (VCI).....	78
11.1.1 Evaluating whether to Install VCI.....	78
11.1.2 Estimating Resources.....	79
11.1.3 Setting up.....	79
11.1.3.1 Setting Parameters.....	79
11.1.3.2 Installing the Extensions.....	80
11.1.3.3 Creating a VCI.....	80
11.1.3.4 Confirming that the VCI has been Created.....	81
11.1.4 Data that can Use VCI.....	81
11.1.4.1 Relation Types.....	81
11.1.4.2 Data Types.....	82
11.2 Operating VCI.....	83
11.2.1 Commands that cannot be Used for VCI.....	84
11.2.2 Data Preload Feature.....	85
Chapter 12 Parallel Query.....	87
12.1 CPU Load Calculation.....	87
12.2 Increase of Workers during Runtime.....	87
12.3 Statistics View Displays the Action State.....	87
Chapter 13 High-Speed Data Load.....	89
13.1 Installing High-Speed Data Load.....	89
13.1.1 Deciding whether to Install.....	89
13.1.2 Estimating Resources.....	89
13.1.3 Setup.....	90
13.1.3.1 Setting Parameters.....	90
13.1.3.2 Installing the Extension.....	91
13.2 Using High-Speed Data Load.....	91
13.2.1 Loading Data.....	91
13.2.2 Checking Progress.....	92
13.2.3 Recovering from a Data Load that Ended Abnormally.....	93
13.3 Removing High-Speed Data Load.....	94
13.3.1 Removing the Extension.....	94
Chapter 14 Global Meta Cache.....	96
14.1 Usage.....	96
14.1.1 Deciding Whether to Enable the Global Meta Cache Feature.....	96
14.1.2 Estimating Memory for Global Meta Cache.....	96
14.1.3 How the GMC Memory Area Is Used.....	96

14.1.4 Enabling the Global Meta Cache Feature.....	96
14.1.5 Estimating Resources.....	97
14.2 Statistics.....	97
14.2.1 System View.....	97
<b>Chapter 15 Local Meta Cache Limit.....</b>	<b>98</b>
15.1 Usage.....	98
15.1.1 Deciding Whether to Enable the Local Meta Cache Limit Feature.....	98
15.1.2 How to Set Parameters for the Local Meta Cache Limit Feature.....	98
15.1.3 Cache Removal when Local Meta Cache Limit is Enabled.....	98
15.1.4 Performance Impact and Parameter Tuning of the Local Meta Cache Limit Feature.....	99
<b>Chapter 16 Backup/Recovery Using the Copy Command.....</b>	<b>101</b>
16.1 Configuration of the Copy Command.....	101
16.2 Backup Using the Copy Command.....	105
16.3 Recovery Using the Copy Command.....	106
16.4 Copy Command Interface.....	107
16.4.1 Copy Command for Backup.....	107
16.4.2 Copy Command for Recovery.....	109
<b>Chapter 17 Actions when an Error Occurs.....</b>	<b>111</b>
17.1 Recovering from Disk Failure (Hardware).....	112
17.1.1 Using WebAdmin.....	112
17.1.2 Using Server Command.....	113
17.2 Recovering from Data Corruption.....	117
17.2.1 Using WebAdmin.....	118
17.2.2 Using the pgx_rcvall Command.....	118
17.3 Recovering from an Incorrect User Operation.....	119
17.3.1 Using WebAdmin.....	119
17.3.2 Using the pgx_rcvall Command.....	120
17.4 Actions in Response to an Application Error.....	121
17.4.1 When using the view (pg_stat_activity).....	122
17.4.2 Using the ps Command.....	122
17.4.3 Using pgAdmin.....	123
17.5 Actions in Response to an Access Error.....	123
17.6 Actions in Response to Insufficient Space on the Data Storage Destination.....	124
17.6.1 Using a Tablespace.....	124
17.6.2 Replacing the Disk with a Larger Capacity Disk.....	124
17.6.2.1 Using WebAdmin.....	125
17.6.2.2 Using Server Commands.....	125
17.7 Actions in Response to Insufficient Space on the Backup Data Storage Destination.....	127
17.7.1 Temporarily Saving Backup Data.....	127
17.7.1.1 Using WebAdmin.....	127
17.7.1.2 Using Server Commands.....	127
17.7.2 Replacing the Disk with a Larger Capacity Disk.....	130
17.7.2.1 Using WebAdmin.....	130
17.7.2.2 Using Server Commands.....	131
17.8 Actions in Response to Insufficient Space on the Transaction Log Storage Destination.....	135
17.8.1 Replacing the Disk with a Larger Capacity Disk.....	135
17.8.1.1 Using WebAdmin.....	135
17.8.1.2 Using Server Commands.....	136
17.9 Errors in More Than One Storage Disk.....	138
17.10 Actions in Response to Instance Startup Failure.....	138
17.10.1 Errors in the Configuration File.....	138
17.10.2 Errors Caused by Power Failure or Mounting Issues.....	138
17.10.3 Other Errors.....	138
17.10.3.1 Using WebAdmin.....	139
17.10.3.2 Using Server Commands.....	139

17.11 Actions in Response to Failure to Stop an Instance.....	139
17.11.1 Using WebAdmin.....	139
17.11.2 Using Server Commands.....	139
17.11.2.1 Stopping the Instance Using the Fast Mode.....	140
17.11.2.2 Stopping the Instance Using the Immediate Mode.....	140
17.11.2.3 Forcibly Stopping the Server Process.....	140
17.12 Actions in Response to Failure to Create a Streaming Replication Standby Instance.....	141
17.13 Actions in Response to Error in a Distributed Transaction.....	141
17.14 I/O Errors Other than Disk Failure.....	142
17.14.1 Network Error with an External Disk.....	142
17.14.2 Errors Caused by Power Failure or Mounting Issues.....	143
17.15 Anomaly Detection and Resolution.....	143
17.15.1 Port Number and Backup Storage Path Anomalies.....	143
17.15.2 Mirroring Controller Anomalies.....	144
Appendix A Parameters.....	145
Appendix B System Administration Functions.....	155
B.1 WAL Mirroring Control Functions.....	155
B.2 Transparent Data Encryption Control Functions.....	155
B.2.1 pgx_open_keystore.....	155
B.2.2 pgx_set_master_key.....	156
B.2.3 pgx_declare_external_master_key.....	156
B.2.4 pgx_set_keystore_passphrase.....	157
B.3 Profile Management Functions and User Management Functions.....	157
B.3.1 Profile Management Functions.....	157
B.3.2 User Management Functions.....	158
B.4 Data Masking Control Functions.....	159
B.4.1 pgx_alter_confidential_policy.....	159
B.4.2 pgx_create_confidential_policy.....	165
B.4.3 pgx_drop_confidential_policy.....	168
B.4.4 pgx_enable_confidential_policy.....	169
B.4.5 pgx_update_confidential_values.....	170
B.5 VCI Data Load Control Function.....	171
B.6 High-Speed Data Load Control Functions.....	172
Appendix C System Catalogs.....	173
C.1 pgx_profile.....	173
C.2 pgx_user_profile.....	173
C.3 pgx_password_history.....	174
Appendix D System Views.....	175
D.1 pgx_tablespaces.....	175
D.2 pgx_stat_lwlock.....	175
D.3 pgx_stat_latch.....	175
D.4 pgx_stat_walwriter.....	176
D.5 pgx_stat_sql.....	176
D.6 pgx_stat_gmc.....	177
D.7 pgx_stat_progress_loader.....	177
Appendix E Tables Used by Transparent Data Encryption.....	178
E.1 pgx_tde_master_key.....	178
Appendix F Tables Used by Data Masking.....	179
F.1 pgx_confidential_columns.....	179
F.2 pgx_confidential_policies.....	179
F.3 pgx_confidential_values.....	180
Appendix G Tables Used by High-Speed Data Load.....	181

G.1 pgx_loader_state.....	181
Appendix H Starting and Stopping the Web Server Feature of WebAdmin.....	182
H.1 Starting the Web Server Feature of WebAdmin.....	182
H.2 Stopping the Web Server Feature of WebAdmin.....	182
Appendix I WebAdmin Wallet.....	184
I.1 Creating a Credential.....	184
I.2 Using a Credential.....	184
Appendix J WebAdmin Disallow User Inputs Containing Hazardous Characters.....	185
Appendix K Copy Command Samples that Use the Advanced Copy Feature of the ETERNUS Disk Array.....	186
Appendix L Collecting Failure Investigation Data.....	188
Index.....	189



# Chapter 1 Operating Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

This chapter describes how to operate Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

## 1.1 Operating Methods

There are two methods of managing Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres operations:

- Operation management using GUI tools
- Operation management using commands



See

Before performing database multiplexing using database multiplexing, refer to "Database Multiplexing Mode" in the Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing).

### Operation management using GUI tools

This involves managing operations using the WebAdmin and pgAdmin GUI tools.

- Management using WebAdmin

This removes the requirement for complex environment settings and operational design for backup and recovery that is usually required for running a database. It enables you to easily and reliably monitor the state of the database, create a streaming replication cluster, back up the database, and restore it even if you do not have expert knowledge of databases.

- Management using pgAdmin

When developing applications and maintaining the database, you can use pgAdmin to perform simple operations on database objects, such as:

- Rebuild indexes and update statistics
- Create, delete, and update database objects

In addition, from pgAdmin of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres, you can use the expanded features provided by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres on the PostgreSQL SQL commands.



See

Refer to pgAdmin Help for information on the expanded features of pgAdmin provided by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

### Operation management using commands

You can use commands for configuring and operating the database and managing operations.

### Points to consider when choosing an operation method

- You cannot combine WebAdmin and server commands to perform the following operations:
  - Use commands to operate an instance created using WebAdmin.
  - Use WebAdmin to recover a database backed up using commands.

For instances created with WebAdmin, however, backup can be obtained with the `pgx_dmpall` command. Also, WebAdmin can perform recovery by using the backup obtained with the `pgx_dmpall` command.

- To operate an instance created using the `initdb` command in WebAdmin, the instance needs to be imported using WebAdmin.
- You can perform backup and restoration in pgAdmin, but the backup data obtained with WebAdmin and `pgx_dmpall` is not compatible with the backup data obtained with pgAdmin.

## Features used in each phase

The following table lists the features used in each phase for GUI-based operations and command-based operations.

Operation		Operation with the GUI	Operation with commands
Setup	Creating an instance	WebAdmin is used. The server machine capacity, and the optimum parameter for operations using WebAdmin, are set automatically.	The configuration file is edited directly using the initdb command.
	Creating a standby instance	WebAdmin is used. WebAdmin performs a base backup of the source instance and creates a standby instance.	A standby instance is created using the pg_basebackup command.
	Changing the configuration files	WebAdmin is used.	The configuration file is edited directly.
Starting and stopping an instance		WebAdmin is used.	The pg_ctl command is used.
Creating a database		This is defined using pgAdmin of the GUI tool, or using the psql command or the application after specifying the DDL statement.	
Backing up the database		WebAdmin, or the pgx_dmpall command, is used.	It is recommended that the pgx_dmpall command be used. Recovery to the latest database can be performed.
Database recovery		WebAdmin is used.	To use the backup that was performed using the pgx_dmpall command, the pgx_rcvall command is used.
Monitoring	Database errors	The status in the WebAdmin window can be checked. (*1)	The messages that are output to the database server log are monitored (*1)
	Disk space	The status in the WebAdmin window can be checked. A warning will be displayed if the free space falls below 20%. (*1)	This is monitored using the df command of the operating system, for example. (*1)
	Connection status	This can be checked using pgAdmin of the GUI tool, or referencing pg_stat_activity of the standard statistics view from psql or the application.	

\*1: This can be used together with system log monitoring using operations management middleware (Systemwalker Centric Manager, for example).

## 1.2 Starting WebAdmin

This section describes how to start and log in to WebAdmin.

### About using WebAdmin

- It is recommended to use the following browsers with WebAdmin:

- Microsoft Edge (Build41 or later)

WebAdmin will work with other browsers, such as Firefox and Chrome, however, the look and feel may be slightly different.

- You must start the Web server feature of WebAdmin before using WebAdmin. Refer to "[Appendix H Starting and Stopping the Web Server Feature of WebAdmin](#)" for information on how to start the Web server feature of WebAdmin.

## 1.2.1 Logging in to WebAdmin

---

This section describes how to log in to WebAdmin.

### Startup URL for WebAdmin

In the browser address bar, type the startup URL of the WebAdmin window in the following format:

```
http://hostNameOrIpAddress:portNumber/
```

- *hostNameOrIpAddress*: The host name or IP address of the server where WebAdmin is installed.
- *portNumber*: The port number of WebAdmin. The default port number is 27515.



### Example

For a server with IP address "192.0.2.0" and port number "27515"

```
http://192.0.2.0:27515/
```

Display the startup windows. From this window you can log in to WebAdmin or access the product documentation.

### Log in to WebAdmin

Click [Launch WebAdmin] in the startup URL window to start WebAdmin and display the login window.

To log in, specify the following values:

- [User name]: User name (OS user account) of the instance administrator
- [Password]: Password corresponding to the user name

## 1.3 Starting pgAdmin

---

This section describes how to start pgAdmin, how to add an instance required for managing a database, and how to connect to and disconnect from the instance.

You can use pgAdmin on the Windows client.

### About using pgAdmin

- You must start the instance to be connected to before using pgAdmin. Refer to ["2.1 Starting and Stopping an Instance"](#) for information on how to start an instance.
- When using pgAdmin4 with Microsoft Edge, enable network access by loopback in Microsoft Edge. Also, add Microsoft Edge to the loopback exclusion list.

### 1.3.1 Starting pgAdmin

---

This section explains how to start pgAdmin if you are using it from the product "Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Client (64bit) *x* SP*z*" (where "*x*" is the product version, and "*z*" is the product level (*x* SP*z*)).

Click [Start] >> [All apps] >> [Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Client(64bit) *x* SP*z*] and start [pgAdmin 4 (64bit) (*x* SP*z*)].

### 1.3.2 Adding an Instance

---

This section describes how to add an instance to be connected to.

If you use a link-local address with version 6 of the TCP/IP protocol, you may encounter the following error when registering the server with pgAdmin. Therefore, do not use link-local addresses.

```
unsupported format character "'" (0x22) at index 96
```

1. In the [Browser] pane, right-click [Servers], and then click [Register] >> [Server...].
2. In the [Register - Server] window, specify a value for each item.

[General] tab

- [Name]: Name of the instance to be managed

[Connection] tab

- [Host name/address]: Host name or IP address of the server where Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres is installed
- [Port]: Port number of the instance
- [Maintenance database]: Database name to which the client will connect
- [Username]: User name of the instance administrator
- [Password]: Password for the user name specified in [Username]

### Note

If you select [Save password], the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres connection password is stored in the following location. Set the appropriate access permissions for the password file to protect it from unauthorized access.

- %APPDATA%\Roaming\pgAdmin\pgadmin4.db

## 1.3.3 Connecting/Disconnecting an Instance

This section describes how to connect pgAdmin to an instance, and how to disconnect it.

To connect to an instance created using WebAdmin, you must first configure the settings in the [Client authentication] window of WebAdmin to permit connection from pgAdmin.



See

.....

Refer to "Changing the settings" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server for information on the [Client authentication] window of WebAdmin.

.....

## Connecting to an instance

Starting pgAdmin does not connect it to any instance.

To connect to an instance, in the [Browser] pane, right-click the server, and then click [Connect Server].

If a password was not saved when the instance was added, enter a password in the password entry window that is displayed.

## Disconnecting from an instance

To disconnect from an instance, in the [Browser] pane, right-click the server, and then click [Disconnect from Server].

## 1.3.4 Changing the pgAdmin Display Language

---

This section describes the procedure for changing the display language of pgAdmin.

1. Start pgAdmin.
2. Click [File] >> [Preferences].
3. Click [Miscellaneous] >> [User language] in the left pane of the [Preferences] dialog.
4. Select the language you want to display from the [User language] drop-down list displayed in the right pane, and click the [Save] button.
5. Refresh page by clicking the [Refresh] button.

## 1.4 Operations Using Commands

---

You can operate and manage the database using the following commands:

### - Server commands

This group of commands includes commands for creating a database cluster and controlling the database. You can run these commands on the server where the database is operating.

To use these commands, you must configure the environment variables.



See

- .....
- Refer to "PostgreSQL Server Applications" under "Reference" in the PostgreSQL Documentation, or "Reference" for information on server commands.
  - Refer to "Configure the environment variables" in the procedure to create instances in "Using the initdb Command" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server for information on configuring the environment variables.
- .....

### - Client commands

This group of commands includes the psql command and commands for extracting the database cluster to a script file. These commands can be executed on the client that can connect to the database, or on the server on which the database is running.

To use these commands, you must configure the environment variables.



See

- .....
- Refer to "PostgreSQL Client Applications" under "Reference" in the PostgreSQL Documentation, or "Reference" for information on client commands.

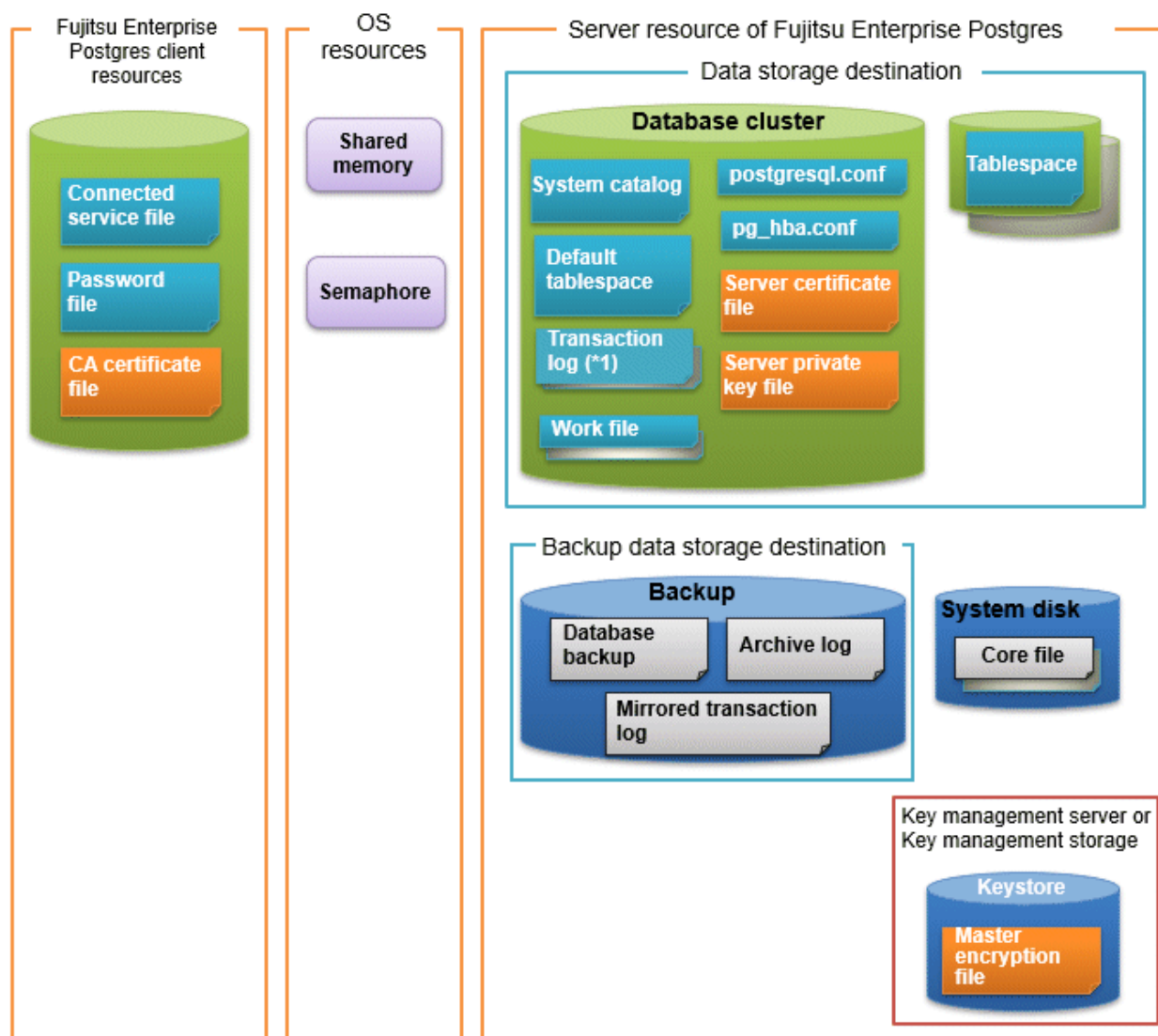
- Refer to "Configuring Environment Variables" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Client for information on the values to be set in the environment variables.

## 1.5 Operating Environment of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

This section describes the operating environment and the file composition of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

### 1.5.1 Operating Environment

The following figure shows the configuration of the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres operating environment. The tables given below list the roles of the OS resources and Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres resources.



\*1: To distribute the I/O load, place the transaction log on a different disk from the data storage destination.

Table 1.1 OS resources

Type	Role
Shared memory	Used when a database process exchanges information with an external process.
Semaphore	

Table 1.2 Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres client resources

Type	Role
Connection service file	Specifies information, such as the host name, user name, and password, for connecting to Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.
Password file	Securely manages the password for connecting to Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.
CA certificate file	CA (certificate authority) certificate used for server authentication when encrypting communication data.

Table 1.3 Server resources of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

Type	Role
Database cluster	Database storage area on the database storage disk. It is a collection of databases managed by an instance.
System catalog	Contains information required for the system to run, including the database definition information and the operation information created by the user.
Default tablespace	Contains table files and index files stored by default.
Transaction log	Contains log information in case of a crash recovery or rollback. This is the same as the WAL (Write Ahead Log).
Work file	Work file used when executing applications or commands.
postgresql.conf	Contains information that defines the operating environment of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.
pg_hba.conf	Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres uses this file to authenticate individual client hosts.
Server certificate file	Contains information about the server certificate to be used when encrypting communication data and authenticating a server.
Server private key file	Contains information about the server private key to be used when encrypting communication data and authenticating a server.
Tablespace	Stores table files and index files in a separate area from the database cluster. Specify a space other than that under the database cluster.
Backup	Stores the data required for recovering the database when an error, such as disk failure, occurs.
Database backup	Contains the backup data for the database.
Archive log	Contains the log information for recovery.
Mirrored transaction log (mirrored WAL)	Enables a database cluster to be restored to the state immediately before an error even if both the database cluster and transaction log fail when performing backup/recovery operations using the <code>pgx_dmpall</code> command or WebAdmin.  Mirrored WALs can be used only for backup/recovery using the <code>pgx_dmpall</code> command or WebAdmin.
Core file	Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres process core file that is output when an error occurs during a Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres process.
Key management server or key management storage	Server or storage where the master encryption key file is located.
Master encryption key file	Contains the master encryption key to be used when encrypting storage data. The master encryption key file is managed on the key management server or key management storage.

## 1.5.2 File Composition

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres consists of the following files for controlling and storing the database. The table below shows the relationship between the number of such files and their location within a single instance.

Table 1.4 Number of files within a single instance and how to specify their location

File type	Required	Quantity	How to specify the location
Program files	Y	Multiple	Note that "<x>" indicates the product version. /opt/fsepv<x>server64
Database cluster	Y	1	Specify using WebAdmin or server commands.
Tablespace	Y	Multiple	Specify a space other than that under the database cluster, using pgAdmin or the DDL statement.
Backup	Y	Multiple	Specify using WebAdmin or server commands.
Core file	Y	Multiple	Specify using WebAdmin, server commands, or postgresql.conf.
Server certificate file (*1)	N	1	Specify using postgresql.conf.
Server private key file (*1)	N	1	Specify using postgresql.conf.
Master encryption key file (*1)	N	1	Specify the directory created as the key store using postgresql.conf.
Connection service file (*1)	N	1	Specify using environment variables.
Password file (*1)	N	1	Specify using environment variables.
CA certificate file (*1)	N	1	Specify using environment variables.

Y: Mandatory

N: Optional

\*1: Set manually when using the applicable feature.



### Note

- Do not place files for use with Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres in a directory mounted over the network except when creating a database space in a storage device on a network.  
Examples include NFS (Network File System) and CIFS (Common Internet File System).  
This is because the database might hang if the network fails.
- If anti-virus software is used, set scan exception settings for directories so that none of the files that comprise Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres are scanned for viruses. Alternatively, if the files that comprise Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres are to be scanned for viruses, stop Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres and perform the scan when tasks that use Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres are not operating.

## 1.6 Notes on Compatibility of Applications Used for Operations

When you upgrade Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres to a newer version, there may be some effect on applications due to improvements or enhancements in functionality.

Take this into account when creating applications so that you can maintain compatibility after upgrading to a newer version of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.





See

Refer to "Notes on Application Compatibility" in the Application Development Guide for details.

## 1.7 Notes on Upgrading Database Instances

When upgrading FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 9.4 or newer database instances to FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 10 or later using `pg_upgrade`, there are certain steps you need to follow.

Before using `pg_upgrade`, remove the following extensions from all databases in the instance, except "template0":

- `pg_stat_statements`
- `pgx_io`
- `pgx_paging`
- `pgx_network`
- `pgx_network_err`
- `pgx_cpu`
- `pgx_memory`
- `pgx_swap`
- `pgx_disk`
- `pgx_process`
- `pgx_log`
- `oracle_compatible`
- `pg_dbms_stats`
- `pg_hint_plan`

For all databases except "template0", execute the following command to remove these extensions:

```
DROP EXTENSION extensionName;
```

Once the `pg_upgrade` operation is complete, for all databases except "template0", execute the following command to re-create these extensions as required:

```
CREATE EXTENSION extensionName;
```



Note

- It is strongly recommended to back up the database using `pg_dump` before performing `pg_upgrade` or using `DROP EXTENSION`.
- If there are any columns created in the user tables using a data type from these extensions, then `DROP EXTENSION` will also drop these columns. Therefore, it is essential that alternate upgrade mechanisms are considered instead of `pg_upgrade`, in such scenarios. These may include `pg_dump/pg_restore`.

### 1.7.1 Additional Steps for upgrading to Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres with Vertical Clustered Index (VCI) Enabled

When upgrading FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 11.0 or earlier instances that are using the VCI extension to FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 12 or later using `pg_upgrade`, additional steps must be performed because of the incompatibility of the VCI extension between FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 12 or later and FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 11 or earlier.

Follow the procedure below in all databases in the FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 11 or earlier instance, except "template0".

## Before upgrading

### 1. Obtain the CREATE INDEX Definitions

Run the query below to list all the VCI indexes created in the database. Ensure that these indexes are re-created in the FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 12 or later instance after pg\_upgrade has finished.

```
SELECT nspname || '.' || relname AS index_relname,* FROM pg_class, pg_namespace
WHERE relnamespace = pg_namespace.oid AND relam IN (SELECT oid FROM pg_am WHERE amname='vci');
```

For each index\_relname listed above, execute the commands below to obtain the CREATE INDEX definition (to use the same SQL syntax while re-creating the indexes on the FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 12 or later instance).

```
SELECT pg_get_indexdef('indexName'::regclass);
```

### 2. Drop the VCI indexes and VCI extension along with all its dependencies.

To remove all the VCI indexes and VCI internal objects that are created in Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres, execute the commands below. VCI internal objects will be created in FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 12 or later automatically when CREATE EXTENSION for VCI is executed.

```
DROP EXTENSION VCI CASCADE;
```



#### Note

To restore the VCI extension in the FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 11 or earlier instance, execute CREATE EXTENSION.

## After upgrading

Once the pg\_upgrade operation is complete, for all databases except "template0", execute CREATE EXTENSION to create the VCI extension, and then execute CREATE INDEX for all the VCI indexes as required.

## 1.7.2 Additional Steps to upgrading to Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres with Transparent Data Encryption (TDE) Enabled

If you are using pg\_upgrade to upgrade an instance of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres that uses Transparent Data Encryption (TDE), there are steps you can take before upgrading.

If your old cluster operation was an HA cluster operation without database multiplexing operations, and you shared a single keystore file, see "[Before upgrading if you shared a keystore file](#)". For other operations, see "[Before upgrading](#)".

## Before upgrading

Before upgrading, perform the following steps:

### 1. Copy Master Encryption Key

Copy the keystore file from the old cluster to the new cluster.

You do not need to use the pgx\_set\_master\_key function to generate a new master encryption key on the new cluster; you must copy the keystore file from the old cluster.

As a database superuser, do the following:

```
$ mkdir <NEW-KEY-STORE>/
$ cp -p <OLD-KEY-STORE>/keystore.ks <NEW-KEY-STORE>/
```

NEW-KEY-STORE: The directory specified by the keystore\_location parameter in postgresql.conf for the new cluster

OLD-KEY-STORE: The directory specified by the keystore\_location parameter in postgresql.conf on the old cluster



## Note

.....

This is not necessary if you are using the old cluster keystore file location as the new cluster keystore file location. In that case, the old cluster cannot continue to be used.

Enable automatic keystore opening for old and new clusters.

.....

### **Before upgrading if you shared a keystore file**

If the primary and standby servers shared the same keystore file, copy the keystore file from the old environment and share it as the keystore file from the new environment.

For more secure management of keystore files, place them on a secure, isolated key management server or key management storage.

Enable automatic keystore opening for old and new clusters.

## Chapter 2 Starting an Instance and Creating a Database

This chapter describes basic operations, from starting an instance to creating a database.

### 2.1 Starting and Stopping an Instance

This section describes how to start and stop an instance.

- [2.1.1 Using WebAdmin](#)
- [2.1.2 Using Server Commands](#)

#### Point


- To automatically start or stop an instance when the operating system on the database server is started or stopped, refer to "Configuring Automatic Start and Stop of an Instance" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server and configure the settings.
- The collected statistics are initialized if an instance is stopped in the "Immediate" mode or if it is abnormally terminated. To prepare for such initialization of statistics, consider regular collection of the statistics by using the SELECT statement. Refer to "The Statistics Collector" in "Server Administration" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on the statistics.


#### 2.1.1 Using WebAdmin

WebAdmin enables you to start or stop an instance and check its operating status.

##### Starting an instance


Start an instance by using the [Instances] tab in WebAdmin.


 is displayed when an instance is stopped.

To start a stopped instance, click .

##### Stopping an instance

Stop an instance by using the [Instances] tab in WebAdmin.

 is displayed when an instance is active.



To stop an active instance, click .

##### Stop mode

Select the mode in which to stop the instance. The following describes the operations of the modes:






Stop mode	Connected clients	Backup being executed using the command
Smart mode (*1)	Waits for all connected clients to be disconnected.	Waits for backups being executed using the command to finish.
Fast mode	Rolls back all transactions being executed and forcibly disconnects clients.	Terminates backups being executed using the command.
Immediate mode	All server processes are terminated immediately. Crash recovery is executed the next time the instance is started.	
Kill process mode	Send SIGKILL to the process and abort all active transactions. This will lead to a crash-recovery run at the next restart.	

\*1: When the processing to stop the instance in the Smart mode has started and you want to stop immediately, use the following procedure:


1. Restart the Web server feature of WebAdmin.
2. In the [Instances] tab, click .
3. In the [Instances] tab, click , and select the Immediate mode to stop the instance.

## Checking the operating status of an instance

You can check the operating status of an instance by using the [Instances] tab. The following indicators are used to show the status of a resource.

Status indicator	Explanation
	The resource is operating normally.
	The resource is stopped.
	There is an error in the resource.
	An operation is in progress on this resource or the status is being checked.
	The resource is not operating optimally and needs intervention.

If an instance stops abnormally, remove the cause of the stoppage and start the instance by using WebAdmin.

When operating WebAdmin, click  to update the status. WebAdmin will reflect the latest status of the operation or the instance resources from the server.

If an error occurs while communicating with the server, there may be no response from WebAdmin. When this happens, close the browser and then log in again. If this does not resolve the issue, check the system log of the server and confirm whether a communication error has occurred.

The following message is output during startup of an instance when the startup process is operating normally, therefore, the user does not need to be aware of this message:

```
FATAL: the database system is starting up
```

## 2.1.2 Using Server Commands

Server commands enable you to start or stop an instance and check its operating status.

To use sever commands, configure the environment variables.



See

Refer to "Configure the environment variables" in the procedure to create instances in "Using the initdb Command" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server for information on configuring the environment variables.

### Starting an instance

Use the `pg_ctl` command to start an instance.

Specify the following values in the `pg_ctl` command:

- Specify "start" as the mode.
- Specify the data storage destination in the `-D` option. If the `-D` option is omitted, the value of the `PGDATA` environment variable is used by default.

If an application, command, or process tries to connect to the database while the instance is starting up, the message "FATAL:the database system is starting up(11189)" is output. However, this message may also be output if the instance is started without the `-W` option specified.

This message is output by the `pg_ctl` command to check if the instance has started successfully. Therefore, ignore this message if there are no other applications, commands, or processes that connect to the database.



### Example

```
> pg_ctl start -D /database/inst1
```



### Note

If the `-W` option is specified, the command will return without waiting for the instance to start. Therefore, it may be unclear as to whether the instance startup was successful or failed.

## Stopping an instance

Use the `pg_ctl` command to stop an instance.

Specify the following values in the `pg_ctl` command:

- Specify "stop" as the mode.
- Specify the data storage destination in the `-D` option. If the `-D` option is omitted, the value of the `PGDATA` environment variable is used by default.



### Example

```
> pg_ctl stop -D /database/inst1
```

## Checking the operating status of an instance

Use the `pg_ctl` command to check the operating status of an instance.

Specify the following values in the `pg_ctl` command:

- Specify "status" as the mode.
- Specify the data storage destination in the `-D` option. If the `-D` option is omitted, the value of the `PGDATA` environment variable is used by default.



### Example

When the instance is active:

```
> pg_ctl status -D /database/inst1
pg_ctl: server is running (PID: 1234)
```

When the instance is inactive:

```
> pg_ctl status -D /database/inst1
pg_ctl: no server running.
```



### See

Refer to "pg\_ctl" under "Reference" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on `pg_ctl` command.

## 2.2 Creating a Database

---

This section explains how to create a database.

- [2.2.1 Using pgAdmin](#)
- [2.2.2 Using Client Commands](#)

### 2.2.1 Using pgAdmin

---

Follow the procedure below to define a database using pgAdmin.

1. In the pgAdmin window, right-click [Databases] in the [Browser] pane, and then click [Create] >> [Database...] to display a [Create - Database] window.
2. Specify appropriate values for the following items in the [Create - Database] window.
  - [General] tab
  - [Database]: Name of the database to be managed
3. Click [Save] to create the database.

### 2.2.2 Using Client Commands

---

Follow the procedure below to define a database using client commands.

An example of operations on the server is shown below.

1. Use psql command to connect to the postgres database.  
Execute psql postgres.

```
> psql postgres
psql (<x>) (*1)
Type "help" for help.
```

\*1: <x> indicates the PostgreSQL version on which this product is based.

2. Create the database.  
To create the database, execute the CREATE DATABASE databaseName; statement.

```
postgres=# CREATE DATABASE db01;
CREATE DATABASE
```

3. Confirm that the database is created.  
Execute \l+, and confirm that the name of the database created in step 2 is displayed.

```
postgres=# \l+
```

4. Disconnect from the postgres database.  
Execute \q to terminate the psql command.

```
postgres=# \q
```

You can create a database using the createdb command.



See

.....  
Refer to "Creating a Database" in "Tutorial" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on creating a database using the createdb command.  
.....

## Chapter 3 Backing Up the Database

This chapter describes how to back up the database.

### Backup methods

The following backup methods enable you to recover data to a backup point or to the state immediately preceding disk physical breakdown or data logical failure.

- Backup using WebAdmin

This method enables you to back up data through intuitive window operations using the GUI.

WebAdmin is used for recovery.

- Backup using the `pgx_dmpall` command

Execute the `pgx_dmpall` command with a script to perform automatic backup. To back up data automatically, you must register the process in the automation software of the operating system. Follow the procedure given in the documentation for your operating system.

Additionally, you can also take backups periodically by using any external scheduler.

The `pgx_rcvall` command is used for recovery.

Use the selected backup method continuously. There are several differences, such as the data format, across the backup methods. For this reason, the following restrictions apply:

- It is not possible to use one method for backup and another for recovery.
- It is not possible to convert one type of backup data to a different type of backup data.



### Information

By using a copy command created by the user, the `pgx_dmpall` command and the `pgx_rcvall` command can back up database clusters and tablespaces to any destination and recover them from any destination using any copy method. Refer to "[Chapter 16 Backup/Recovery Using the Copy Command](#)" for details.

### Approximate backup time

The formula for deriving the approximate backup time when you use WebAdmin or the `pgx_dmpall` command is as follows:

$$\text{backupTime} = \text{dataStorageDestinationUsage} / \text{diskWritePerformance} \times 1.5$$

- *dataStorageDestinationUsage*: Disk usage at the data storage destination
- *diskWritePerformance*: Maximum data volume (bytes/second) that can be written per second in the system environment where operation is performed
- 1.5: Coefficient to factor in tasks other than disk write (which is the most time-consuming step)

If using the copy command with the `pgx_dmpall` command, the backup time will depend on the implementation of the copy command.

### When defining a tablespace

If you have defined a tablespace, back it up. If you do not back it up, directories for the tablespace are not created during recovery, which may cause the recovery to fail. If the recovery fails, refer to the system log, create the tablespace, and then perform the recovery process again.

### When encrypting data stored in the database

There are several considerations for the backup of the keystore and backup of the database in case the data stored in the database is encrypted. Refer to the following for details:

- [5.6.4 Backing Up and Recovering the Keystore](#)
- [5.7 Backing Up and Restoring/Recovering the Database](#)



## Information

The following methods can also be used to perform backup. Performing a backup using these methods allows you to restore to the point when the backup was performed.

- Backup using an SQL-based dump

Dump the data by using SQL. This backup method also enables data migration.

- File system level backup

This backup method requires you to stop the instance and use OS commands to backup database resources as files.

- Backup by continuous archiving

This is the standard backup method for PostgreSQL.

Refer to "Backup and Restore" in "Server Administration" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on these backup methods.

The following backup methods are available for the features provided by Enterprise Postgres:

Category	Backup method	Backup target	Enterprise Postgres					
			Transparent Data Encryption	Policy-based Password Management	Data Masking	Confidentiality Management	Audit Log Feature	Database Multiplexing
Physical Backup	WebAdmin	Database cluster	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
	pgx_dmpall command		Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
	Backup by continuous archiving		Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
	File system level backup		Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Logical backup	pg_dumpall command	Database	N	Y	N	Y	N	Y
	pg_dump command		N	N	N	Y	N	Y
	COPY command	Table	N	N	N	N	N	N

Y: Can be used

N: Cannot be used

Some features are important to keep in mind when backing up. For information about the features, see the following:

Transparent Data Encryption : ["5.7 Backing Up and Restoring/Recovering the Database"](#)

Policy-based Password Management : ["7.5 Backup and Recovery"](#)

Confidentiality Management : "Backup/Restore" in the Security Operation Guide

Database Multiplexing : "Backup Operation" in the Cluster Operation Guide(Database Multiplexing)

## 3.1 Periodic Backup

It is recommended that you perform backup periodically.

Backing up data periodically using WebAdmin or the pgx\_dmpall command has the following advantages:

- This method reduces disk usage, because obsolete archive logs (transaction logs copied to the backup data storage destination) are deleted. It also minimizes the recovery time when an error occurs.

### Backup cycle

The time interval when backup is performed periodically is called the backup cycle. For example, if backup is performed every morning, the backup cycle is 1 day.

The backup cycle depends on the jobs being run, but on Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres it is recommended that operations are run with a backup cycle of at least once per day.

## 3.2 Backup Methods

---

This section describes the methods for backing up the database.

- [3.2.1 Using WebAdmin](#)
- [3.2.2 Using Server Commands](#)

### 3.2.1 Using WebAdmin

---

You can use WebAdmin to perform backup and check the backup status.

#### Backup operation

Follow the procedure below to back up the database.

1. Select the database to back up

In the [Instances] tab, select the instance to be backed up and click .

2. Back up the database

The [Backup] dialog box is displayed. To perform backup, click [Yes].

An instance is automatically started when backup is performed.

#### Backup status

If an error occurs and backup fails, [Error] is displayed adjacent to [Data storage status] or [Backup storage status] in the [Instances] tab. An error message is also displayed in the message list.

In this case, the backup data is not optimized. Ensure that you check the backup result whenever you perform backup. If backup fails, [Solution] appears to the right of the error message. Clicking this button displays information explaining how to resolve the cause of the error. Remove the cause of failure, and perform backup again.

#### When encrypting data stored in the database

If the data to be stored in the database is to be encrypted, it is necessary to enable the automatic opening of the keystore before doing so. Refer to "[5.6.3 Enabling Automatic Opening of the Keystore](#)" for details.

### 3.2.2 Using Server Commands

---

Use the `pgx_dmpall` command and `pgx_rcvall` command to perform backup and check the backup result.

#### Preparing for backup

You must prepare for backup before actually starting the backup process.

Follow the procedure below.



## See

Refer to "Preparing Directories to Deploy Resources" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server for information on the location of directories required for backup and for points to take into account.

### 1. Prepare the backup data storage disk

For backup, prepare a separate disk unit from the database storage disk and mount it using the operating system commands.

### 2. Create a directory where the backup data will be stored

Create an empty directory.

Set appropriate permissions so that only the instance administrator can access the directory.

#### Example

```
# mkdir /backup/inst1
# chown fsepuser:fsepuser /backup/inst1
# chmod 700 /backup/inst1
```

### 3. Specify the settings required for backup

Stop the instance, and set the following parameters in the postgresql.conf file.

Start the instance after editing the postgresql.conf file.

Parameter name	Setting	Description
backup_destination	Name of the directory where the backup data will be stored	Specify the name of the directory where the backup data will be stored.  Appropriate privileges that allow only the instance administrator to access the directory must already be set.  Place the backup data storage destination directory outside the data storage destination directory, the tablespace directory, and the transaction log storage destination directory.
archive_mode	on	Specify the archive log mode.  Specify [on] (execute).
archive_command	<i>'installationDirectory/bin/pgx_walcopy.cmd "%p" "backupDataStorageDestinationDirectory/archived_wal/%f"'</i>	Specify the path name of the command that will save the transaction log and the storage destination.
archive_library	""(default)	Specify the archive library.  Specify [""](default).

Refer to "[Appendix A Parameters](#)" and "Write Ahead Log" under "Server Administration" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on the parameters.

## Backup operation (file backup)

Use the pgx\_dmpall command to perform file backup. You can even embed the pgx\_dmpall command in OS automation software to perform backup.

The backup data is stored in the directory specified in the backup\_destination parameter of postgresql.conf.

Specify the data storage destination in the -D option. If the -D option is omitted, the value of the PGDATA environment variable is used by default.



### Example

```
> pgx_dmpall -D /database/inst1
```



### Note

Backup stores the data obtained during the backup and the backup data of the data obtained during previous backup.

If the data to be stored in the database is encrypted, refer to the following and back up the keystore:

- [5.6.4 Backing Up and Recovering the Keystore](#)

## Backup status

Use the pgx\_rcvall command to check the backup status.

Specify the following values in the pgx\_rcvall command:

- The -l option indicates backup data information.
- Specify the data storage destination in the -D option. If the -D option is omitted, the value of the PGDATA environment variable is used by default.

```
> pgx_rcvall -l -D /database/inst1
Date                Status          Dir
2022-03-01 13:30:40 COMPLETE      /backup/inst1/2022-03-01_13-30-40
```

If an error occurs and backup fails, a message is output to the system log.

In this case, the backup data is not optimized. Ensure that you check the backup result whenever you perform backup. If backup fails, remove the cause of failure and perform backup again.



### See

Refer to "pgx\_dmpall" and "pgx\_rcvall" in the Reference for information on the pgx\_dmpall command and pgx\_rcvall command.

## Setting a restore point

In case you want to recover your database to a certain point in time, you can name this particular point in time, which is referred to as the restore point, by using the psql command.

By setting a restore point before executing an application, it becomes easy to identify up to which point in time the data will be reverted.

A restore point can be set to any point in time after a backup is executed. However, if a restore point is set before a backup is executed, the database cannot be recovered to that point in time. This is because restore points are recorded in the archive logs, and the archive logs are discarded when backups are executed.



### Example

The following example uses the psql command to connect to the database and execute the SQL statement to set a restore point.

However, when considering continued compatibility of applications, do not use functions directly in SQL statements. Refer to "Notes on Application Compatibility" in the Application Development Guide for details.

```
postgres=# SELECT pg_create_restore_point('batch_20220303_1');
LOG:  restore point "batch_20220303_1" created at 0/20000E8
```

```
STATEMENT: select pg_create_restore_point('batch_20220303_1');
pg_create_restore_point
-----
0/20000E8
(1 row)
```

Refer to "[17.3.2 Using the pgx\\_rcvall Command](#)" for information on using a restore point to recover the database.

### Note

- Name restore points so that they are unique within the database. Add the date and time of setting a restore point to distinguish it from other restore points, as shown below:
  - YYMMDD\_HHMMSS
    - YYMMDD: Indicates the date
    - HHMMSS: Indicates the time
- There is no way to check restore points you have set. Keep a record in, for example, a file.

### See

Refer to "System Administration Functions" under "Functions and Operators" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on `pg_create_restore_point`.

# Chapter 4 Configuring Secure Communication Using Secure Sockets Layer

If communication data transferred between a client and a server contains confidential information, encrypting the communication data can protect it against threats, such as eavesdropping on the network.

## 4.1 Configuring Communication Data Encryption

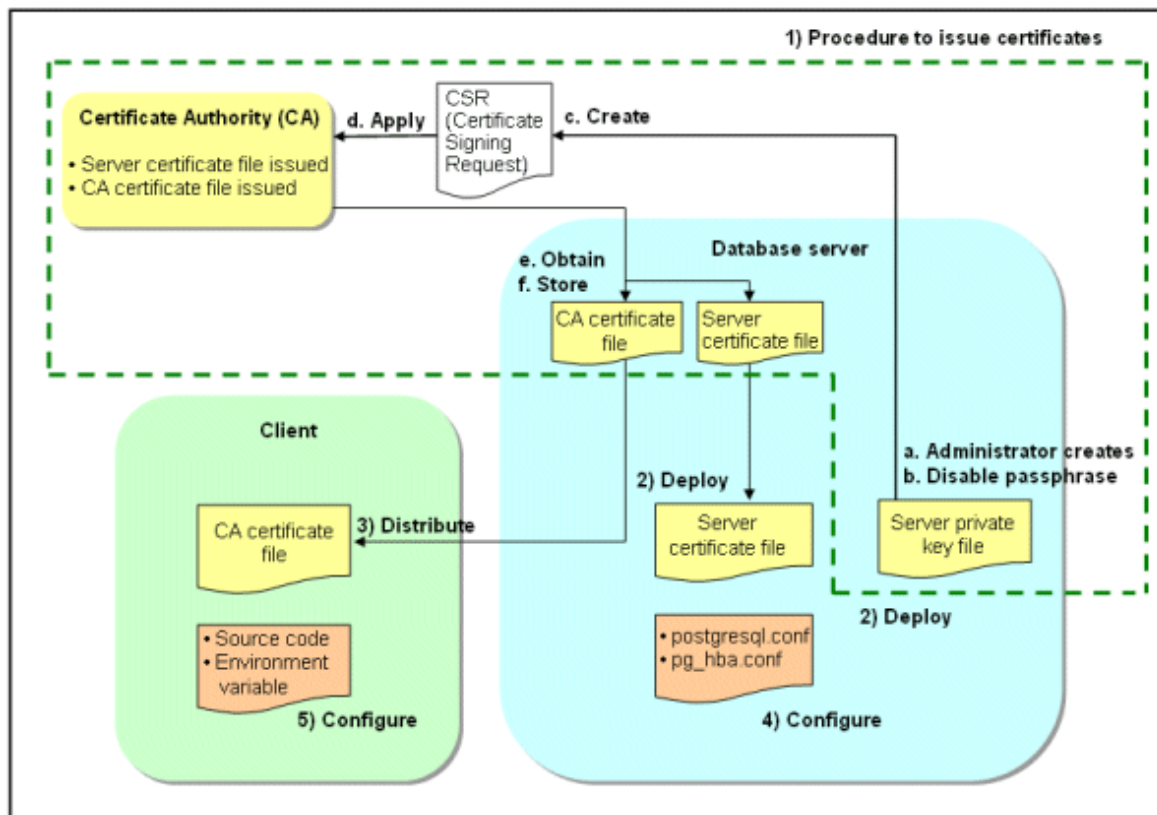
To encrypt communication data transferred between a client and a server, configure communication data encryption as described below. Communication data encryption not only protects the communication content, but it also guards against man-in-the-middle (MITM) attacks (for example, data and password theft through server impersonation).

Table 4.1 Configuration procedure

Configuration procedure
1) Issue a certificate
2) Deploy a server certificate file and a server private key file
3) Distribute a CA certificate file to the client
4) Configure the operating environment for the database server
5) Configure the operating environment for the client

The following figure illustrates the environment for communication data encryption.

Figure 4.1 Environment for communication data encryption



## 4.1.1 Issuing a Certificate

---

For authenticating servers, you must acquire a certificate issued by the certificate authority (CA).

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres supports X.509 standard PEM format files. If the certificate authority issues a file in DER format, use a tool such as the `openssl` command to convert the DER format file to PEM format.

The following provides an overview of the procedure. Refer to the procedure published by the public or independent certificate authority (CA) that provides the certificate file for details.

- a. Create a server private key file
- b. Disable the passphrase for the server private key file
- c. Create a CSR (signing request for obtaining a server certificate) from the server private key file
- d. Apply to the certificate authority (CA) for a server certificate
- e. Obtain a server certificate file and a CA certificate file from the certificate authority (CA)
- f. Store the server certificate file and the CA certificate file

Note: If you lose or destroy the certificates, you will need to have them re-issued.

The above procedure enables you to prepare the following files:

- Server private key file
- Server certificate file
- CA certificate file

## 4.1.2 Deploying a Server Certificate File and a Server Private Key File

---

Create a directory on the local disk of the database server and store the server certificate file and the server private key file in it.

Use the operating system features to set access privileges for the server certificate file and the server private key file so that only the database administrator has load privileges.

Back up the server certificate file and the server private key file in the event that data corruption occurs and store them securely.

## 4.1.3 Distributing a CA Certificate File to the Client

---

Create a directory on the local disk of the client and place the distributed CA certificate file there. Use the operating system features to set load privileges to protect the CA certificate file against accidental deletion.

## 4.1.4 Configuring the Operating Environment for the Database Server

---



See

.....  
Refer to "Secure TCP/IP Connections with SSL" under "Server Administration" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for details.  
.....

## 4.1.5 Configuring the Operating Environment for the Client

---



See

.....  
Refer to the following sections in the Application Development Guide for details, depending on your application development environment:  
.....

- "Settings for Encrypting Communication Data" under "Setup" in "JDBC Driver"
  - "Settings for Encrypting Communication Data" under "Setup" in "C Library (libpq)"
  - "Settings for Encrypting Communication Data" under "Setup" in "Embedded SQL in C"
- .....

## 4.1.6 Performing Database Multiplexing

---

When you perform communication that uses database multiplexing and a Secure Socket Layer server certificate, certificates with the same "Common Name" must be used. To ensure this, take one of the following actions:

- Create one server certificate, replicate it, and place a copy on each server used for database multiplexing.
- Create a server certificate with the same "Common Name" for each server used for database multiplexing.



See

.....  
Refer to "Using the Application Connection Switch Feature" in the Application Development Guide for information on how to specify applications on the client.  
.....



# Chapter 5 Protecting Storage Data Using Transparent Data Encryption

This chapter describes how to encrypt data to be stored in the database.



See

.....  
If you want to use an external key management system as the storage location for the encryption key, refer to "[Chapter 6 Using Transparent Data Encryption with Key Management Systems as Keystores](#)".  
.....

## 5.1 Protecting Data Using Encryption

With PostgreSQL, data in a database is protected from access by unauthorized database users through the use of authentication and access controls. However, the OS file is not protected from attackers who bypass the database server's authentication and access controls.

With Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres, data inside the OS file is encrypted, so valuable information is protected even if the file or disk is stolen.

Data to be stored in a database is encrypted when it is written to the data file, and decrypted when it is read.

This is performed automatically by the instance, so the user and the application need not be aware of key management and encryption or decryption. This process is called TDE (Transparent Data Encryption).

The characteristics of TDE are described below.

### Encryption mechanisms

#### Two-layer encryption key and the keystore

In each tablespace, there is a tablespace encryption key that encrypts and decrypts all the data within. The tablespace encryption key is encrypted by the master encryption key and saved.

Only one master encryption key exists in a database cluster. It is encrypted based on a passphrase specified by the user and stored in a keystore. Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres provides a file-based keystore. Attackers who do not know the passphrase cannot read the master encryption key from the keystore.

#### Strong encryption algorithms

TDE uses the Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) as its encryption algorithm. AES was adopted as a standard in 2002 by the United States Federal Government, and is used throughout the world.

#### Faster encryption and decryption based on hardware

TDE minimizes the overhead of encryption and decryption by using the AES-NI (Advanced Encryption Standard New Instructions) built into Intel(R) Xeon(R) processors since the 5600 series. This means that even in situations where previously the minimum encryption target was selected as a tradeoff between performance and security, it is now possible to encrypt all the data of an application.

Refer to the Intel Corporation's website for information on the list of processors equipped with AES-NI.

#### Zero overhead storage areas

Encryption does not change the size of data stored in tables, indexes, or WAL. There is, therefore, no need for additional estimates or disks.

### Scope of encryption

#### All user data within the specified tablespace

The tablespace is the unit for specifying encryption. All tables, indexes, temporary tables, and temporary indexes created in the encrypted tablespace are encrypted. There is no need for the user to consider which tables and strings to encrypt.

Refer to "[5.4 Encrypting a Tablespace](#)" for details.

#### Backup data

The `pgx_dmpall` command and `pg_basebackup` command create backup data by copying the OS file. Backups of the encrypted data are, therefore, also encrypted. Information is protected from leakage even if the backup medium is stolen.

Refer to ["5.7 Backing Up and Restoring/Recovering the Database"](#) after enabling or reconfiguring encryption to back up the database.

#### WAL and temporary files

WAL, which is created by updating encrypted tables and indexes, is encrypted with the same security strength as the update target. When large merges and sorts are performed, the encrypted data is written to a temporary file in encrypted format.

#### Streaming replication support

You can combine streaming replication and transparent data encryption. The data and WAL encrypted on the primary server is transferred to the standby server in its encrypted format and stored.



#### Note

The following are not encrypted:

- pg\_dump and pg\_dumpall output files
- Files output by the COPY command
- Notification event payloads that communicate using the LISTEN or NOTIFY command
- Checksum validation is not performed on encrypted tablespaces during backup and when using the pg\_checksum utility.

## 5.2 Setting the Master Encryption Key

To use transparent data encryption, you must create a keystore and set the master encryption key.

1. In the keystore\_location parameter of postgresql.conf, specify the directory to store the keystore.

Specify a different location for each database cluster. Specify a different directory from those below as the keystore storage destination:

- Data storage destination
- Tablespace storage destination
- Transaction log storage destination
- Backup data storage destination

```
keystore_location = '/key/store/location'
```

Refer to ["Appendix A Parameters"](#) for information on postgresql.conf.

After editing the postgresql.conf file, either start or restart the instance.

- Using WebAdmin

Refer to ["2.1.1 Using WebAdmin"](#), and restart the instance.

- Using the pg\_ctl command

Specify the following in the pg\_ctl command:

- Specify "restart" as the mode.
- Specify the data storage destination directory in the -D option. If the -D option is omitted, the value of the PGDATA environment variable is used by default.
- Specify the -w option. This means that the command returns after waiting for the instance to start. If the -w option is not specified, it may not be possible to determine if the starting of the instance completed successfully or if it failed.

#### Example

```
> pg_ctl restart -w -D /database/inst1
```

2. Execute an SQL function, such as the one below, to set the master encryption key. This must be performed by the superuser. Execute it as the database superuser.

```
SELECT pgx_set_master_key( 'passphrase' );
```

The value "passphrase" is the passphrase that will be used to open the keystore. The master encryption key is protected by this passphrase, so avoid specifying a short simple string that is easy to guess.

Refer to "[B.2 Transparent Data Encryption Control Functions](#)" for information on the `pgx_set_master_key` function.



### Note

Note that if you forget the passphrase, you will not be able to access the encrypted data. There is no method to retrieve a forgotten passphrase and decrypt data. Do not, under any circumstances, forget the passphrase.

The `pgx_set_master_key` function creates a file with the name `keystore.ks` in the keystore storage destination. It also creates a master encryption key from random bit strings, encrypts it with the specified passphrase, and stores it in `keystore.ks`. At this point, the keystore is open.

## 5.3 Opening the Keystore

To create encrypted tablespaces and access the encrypted data, you must first open the keystore. When you open the keystore, the master encryption key is loaded into the database server memory and becomes usable for encryption and decryption.

You need to open the keystore each time you start the instance. To open the keystore, the database superuser must execute the following SQL function.

```
SELECT pgx_open_keystore( 'passphrase' );
```

The value "passphrase" is the passphrase specified during creation of the keystore.

Refer to "[B.2 Transparent Data Encryption Control Functions](#)" for information on the `pgx_open_keystore` function.

Note that, in the following cases, the passphrase must be entered when starting the instance, because the encrypted WAL must be decrypted for recovery. In this case, the above-mentioned `pgx_open_keystore` function cannot be executed.

- If performing crash recovery at the time of starting the instance
- If performing recovery using continuous archiving

For the above cases, specify the `--keystore-passphrase` option in the `pg_ctl` command, and then start the instance. This will display the prompt for the passphrase to be entered, as shown below.

```
> pg_ctl --keystore-passphrase start
Enter the passphrase:
The server is starting
>
```



### Point

When using an automatically opening keystore, you do not need to enter the passphrase and you can automatically open the keystore when the database server starts. Refer to "[5.6.3 Enabling Automatic Opening of the Keystore](#)" for details.

## 5.4 Encrypting a Tablespace

The keystore must be open before you can create an encrypted tablespace.

When creating a tablespace that will be encrypted, configure the encryption algorithm in the runtime parameters. For example, to create a tablespace with the name `secure_tablespace` using AES with a key length of 256 bits as the encryption algorithm, configure as shown below.

```
-- Specify the encryption algorithm for the tablespace to be created below
SET tablespace_encryption_algorithm = 'AES256';
CREATE TABLESPACE secure_tablespace LOCATION '/My/Data/Dir';
-- Specify that the tablespace to be created below is not to be encrypted
SET tablespace_encryption_algorithm = 'none';
```

Or

```
CREATE TABLESPACE secure_tablespace LOCATION '/My/Data/Dir' WITH (tablespace_encryption_algorithm =
'AES256' );
```

When the tablespace is empty, the encryption algorithm can be modified with the command below.

```
ALTER TABLESPACE secure_tablespace SET (tablespace_encryption_algorithm=AES256);
```

Trying to set the encryption algorithm for a non-empty tablespace causes an error.

You can use AES with a key length of 128 bits or 256 bits as the encryption algorithm. It is recommended that you use 256-bit AES. Refer to "[Appendix A Parameters](#)" for information on how to specify the runtime parameters.

If user provides both GUC and command line options while creating the tablespace, the preference is given to the command line option.

The pg\_default and pg\_global tablespaces cannot be encrypted.

Create tables and indexes in the encrypted tablespace that you created. Relations created in the encrypted tablespace are automatically encrypted.



## Example

Example 1: Specifying an encrypted tablespace when creating it

```
CREATE TABLE my_table (...)
TABLESPACE secure_tablespace;
```

Example 2: Not explicitly specifying a tablespace when creating it and instead using the default tablespace

```
SET default_tablespace = 'secure_tablespace';
CREATE TABLE my_table (...);
```

The process is the same for encrypting temporary tables and temporary indexes. In other words, either explicitly specify the TABLESPACE clause or list encrypted tablespaces in the temp\_tablespaces parameter, and then execute CREATE TEMPORARY TABLE or CREATE INDEX.



## Point

If an encrypted tablespace is specified in the TABLESPACE clause of the CREATE DATABASE statement, relations created in the database without explicitly specifying a tablespace will be encrypted. Furthermore, the system catalog will also be encrypted, so the source code of user-defined functions is also protected.

Example: Specifying a tablespace in a database definition statement

```
CREATE DATABASE DB01 TABLESPACE=SP01 ... ;
```

Part of the data is also stored in the system catalog - to encrypt this data as well, specify an encrypted tablespace as above and create a database.

An encrypted tablespace cannot be created from the window used for creating the pgAdmin tablespace, or from the query tool using a multi-command string. To create an encrypted tablespace, use psql console or a single command in the query tool such as that shown in the example below.

```
CREATE TABLESPACE tspace LOCATION '/some/dir/in/the/path' WITH
(tablespace_encryption_algorithm='AES256')
```

## 5.5 Checking an Encrypted Tablespace

The `pgx_tablespaces` system view displays information about whether each tablespace has been encrypted, and about the encryption algorithm. Refer to "[D.1 pgx\\_tablespaces](#)" for information on strings.

You can discover which tablespaces have been encrypted by executing the following SQL statements.

However, when considering continued compatibility of applications, do not reference system catalogs (`pg_tablespace`) directly in SQL statements.

```
SELECT spcname, spcencalgo
FROM pg_tablespace ts, pgx_tablespaces tsx
WHERE ts.oid = tsx.spctablespace;
```



### Example

```
postgres=# SELECT spcname, spcencalgo FROM pg_tablespace ts, pgx_tablespaces tsx WHERE ts.oid =
tsx.spctablespace;
```

spcname	spcencalgo
pg_default	none
pg_global	none
secure_tablespace	AES256

(3 rows)



### See

Refer to "Notes on Application Compatibility" in the Application Development Guide for information on how to maintain application compatibility.

## 5.6 Managing the Keystore

This section describes how to manage the keystore and the master encryption key to guard against the threat of theft.

### 5.6.1 Changing the Master Encryption Key

Using the same encryption key for an extended period gives attackers an opportunity to decipher the encrypted data. It is recommended that you change the key at regular intervals, or whenever the key is exposed to risk.

Adhere to the industry's best practices for encryption algorithms and key management when considering how often the key should be changed. For example, the NIST in the United States has published "NIST Special Publication 800-57". The PCI DSS also refers to this publication. This publication recommends changing the master encryption key once a year.

To change the master encryption key, execute the `pgx_set_master_key` function, which is the same function used for configuring the key. Refer to "[5.2 Setting the Master Encryption Key](#)" for details.

After changing the master encryption key, you must immediately back up the keystore.

### 5.6.2 Changing the Keystore Passphrase

In security policies for organizations, it is usually a requirement that the passphrase be changed whenever a security administrator who knows the passphrase is removed from duties due to transfer or retirement. It is also recommended that the passphrase be changed if it is ever exposed to risks due to deception such as social engineering.

To change the keystore passphrase, execute the following SQL function as a superuser.

```
SELECT pgx_set_keystore_passphrase('oldPassphrase', 'newPassphrase');
```

After changing the passphrase, you must immediately back up the keystore.

Refer to "[B.2 Transparent Data Encryption Control Functions](#)" for information on the `pgx_set_keystore_passphrase` function.

### 5.6.3 Enabling Automatic Opening of the Keystore

When using an automatically opening keystore, you do not need to enter the passphrase and you can automatically open the keystore when the instance starts. Execute the `pgx_keystore` command to enable automatic opening of the keystore.

```
> pgx_keystore --enable-auto-open /key/store/location/keystore.ks
Enter the passphrase:
Automatic opening of the keystore is now enabled
>
```



#### See

Refer to "`pgx_keystore`" in the Reference for information on `pgx_keystore` command.

When automatic opening is enabled, an automatically opening keystore is created in the same directory as the original keystore. The file name of the automatically opening keystore is `keystore.aks`. The file `keystore.aks` is an obfuscated copy of the decrypted content of the `keystore.ks` file. As long as this file exists, there is no need to enter the passphrase to open the keystore when starting the instance.

Do not delete the original keystore file, `keystore.ks`. It is required for changing the master encryption key and the passphrase. When you change the master encryption key and the passphrase, `keystore.aks` is recreated from the original keystore file, `keystore.ks`.

Protect `keystore.ks`, `keystore.aks`, and the directory that stores the keystore so that only the user who starts the instance can access them.

Configure the permission of the files so that only the user who starts the instance can access the SQL functions and commands that create these files. Accordingly, manually configure the same permission mode if the files are restored.



#### Example

```
# chown -R fseuser:fseuser /key/store/location
# chmod 700 /key/store/location
# chmod 600 /key/store/location/keystore.ks
# chmod 600 /key/store/location/keystore.aks
```

To use WebAdmin for backup and recovery, you must enable automatic opening of the keystore.

An automatically opening keystore will only open on the computer where it was created.

To disable automatic opening of the keystore, delete `keystore.aks`.

### 5.6.4 Backing Up and Recovering the Keystore

Back up the keystore at the following times in case it is corrupted or lost. Note that you must store the database and the keystore on separate data storage media. Storing both on the same data storage medium risks the danger of the encrypted data being deciphered if the medium is stolen. A passphrase is not required to open an automatically opening keystore, so store this type of keystore in a safe location.

- When the master encryption key is first configured
- When the master encryption key is changed
- When the database is backed up
- When the keystore passphrase is changed



#### Point

Do not overwrite an old keystore when backing up a keystore. This is because during database recovery, you must restore the keystore to its state at the time of database backup. When the backup data of the database is no longer required, delete the corresponding keystore.



## Example

- Back up the database and the keystore on March 1, 2022.

```
> pgx_dmpall -D /database/inst1
> cp -p /key/store/location/keystore.ks /keybackup/keystore_20220301.ks
```

Specify the following in the `pgx_dmpall` command:

- Specify the data storage destination in the `-D` option. If the `-D` option is omitted, the value of the `PGDATA` environment variable is used by default.
- Change the master encryption key, and back up the keystore on March 5, 2022.

```
> psql -c "SELECT pgx_set_master_key('passphrase');" postgres
> cp -p /key/store/location/keystore.ks /keybackup/keystore_20220305.ks
```

Specify the following in the `psql` command:

- Specify the SQL function that sets the master encryption key in the `-c` option.
- Specify the name of the database to be connected to as the argument.

If the keystore is corrupted or lost, restore the keystore containing the latest master encryption key. If there is no keystore containing the latest master encryption key, restore the keystore to its state at the time of database backup, and recover the database from the database backup. This action recovers the keystore to its latest state.



## Example

- Restore the keystore containing the latest master encryption key as of March 5, 2022.

```
> cp -p /keybackup/keystore_20220305.ks /key/store/location/keystore.ks
```

- If there is no backup of the keystore containing the latest master encryption key, recover the keystore by restoring the keystore that was backed up along with the database on 1 March 2022.

```
> cp -p /keybackup/keystore_20220301.ks /key/store/location/keystore.ks
> pgx_rcvall -B /backup/inst1 -D /database/inst1 --keystore-passphrase
```

Specify the following in the `pgx_rcvall` command:

- Specify the data storage directory in the `-D` option. If the `-D` option is omitted, the value of the `PGDATA` environment variable is used by default.
- Specify the backup data storage directory in the `-B` option.
- The `--keystore-passphrase` option prompts you to enter the passphrase to open the keystore.

If you have restored the keystore, repeat the process of enabling automatic opening of the keystore. This ensures that the contents of the automatically opening keystore (`keystore.aks`) are identical to the contents of the restored keystore.

It is recommended that you do not back up the automatically opening keystore file, `keystore.aks`. If the database backup medium and the backup medium storing the automatically opening keystore are both stolen, the attacker will be able to read the data even without knowing the passphrase.

If the automatically opening keystore is corrupted or lost, you must again enable automatic opening. The `keystore.aks` file will be recreated from `keystore.ks` at this time.



## See

Refer to "`pgx_rcvall`" and "`pgx_dmpall`" in the Reference for information on the `pgx_rcvall` and `pgx_dmpall` commands.

Refer to "psql" under "Reference" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on the psql command.

Refer to "[B.2 Transparent Data Encryption Control Functions](#)" for information on the pgx\_set\_master\_key function.

Refer to "[5.6.3 Enabling Automatic Opening of the Keystore](#)" for information on how to enable automatic opening of the keystore.

.....

## 5.7 Backing Up and Restoring/Recovering the Database

---

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres enables you to use the five backup and recovery methods described below. Regardless of the method you use, you must back up the keystore at the same time.

Note that you must store the database and the keystore on separate data storage media. Storing both on the same data storage medium risks the danger of the encrypted data being deciphered if the medium is stolen.

### Backup and recovery using WebAdmin

- Backup

WebAdmin backs up encrypted data.

Back up the key store after backing up the database.

- Recovery

Restore the keystore to its state at the time of database backup. Refer to "[5.6.4 Backing Up and Recovering the Keystore](#)" for details.

Enable automatic opening of the keystore in accordance with the procedure described in "[5.6.3 Enabling Automatic Opening of the Keystore](#)". Then, use WebAdmin to recover the database.

### Backup and recovery using the pgx\_dmpall and pgx\_rcvall commands

- Backup

The pgx\_dmpall command backs up the encrypted data.

Back up the key store after backing up the database.

- Recovery

Restore the keystore to its state at the time of the database backup.

Configure automatic opening of the key store as necessary.

If automatic opening of the keystore is not enabled, execute the pgx\_rcvall command with the --keystore-passphrase option specified. This will display the prompt for the passphrase to be entered.



### Example

.....

- Back up the database and the keystore on March 1, 2022.

```
> pgx_dmpall -D /database/inst1
> cp -p /key/store/location/keystore.ks /keybackup/keystore_20220301.ks
```

Specify the following in the pgx\_dmpall command:

- Specify the data storage destination in the -D option. If the -D option is omitted, the value of the PGDATA environment variable is used by default.

- Recover the database and the keystore from the backup taken on March 1, 2022.

```
> cp -p /keybackup/keystore_20220301.ks /key/store/location/keystore.ks
> pgx_keystore --enable-auto-open /key/store/location/keystore.ks (Execute only when enabling
automatic opening)
> pgx_rcvall -B /backup/inst1 -D /database/inst1 --keystore-passphrase
```

Specify the following in the pgx\_rcvall command:



- Specify the data storage destination in the -D option. If the -D option is omitted, the value of the PGDATA environment variable is used by default.
- Specify the backup data storage directory in the -B option.
- The --keystore-passphrase option prompts you to enter the passphrase to open the keystore.

## Dump and restore using SQL

### - Backup

The files output by the `pg_dump` and `pg_dumpall` commands are not encrypted. You should, therefore, encrypt the files using OpenSSL commands or other means before saving them, as described in "[5.8 Importing and Exporting the Database](#)" below.

Back up the key store after backing up the database.

### - Restore

If the backup data has been encrypted using, for example Open SSL commands, decrypt that data.

The data generated by the `pg_dumpall` command includes a specification to encrypt tablespaces by default. For this reason, the `psql` command encrypts tablespaces during restoration.

## File system level backup and restore

### - Backup

Stop the instance and backup the data directory and the tablespace directory using the file copy command of the operating system. The files of encrypted tablespaces are backed up in the encrypted state.

Back up the key store after performing the backup.

### - Restore

Restore the keystore to its state at the time of the database backup.

Stop the instance and restore the data directory and the tablespace directory using the file copy command of the operating system.

## Continuous archiving and point-in-time recovery

### - Backup

The `pg_basebackup` command backs up the encrypted data as is.

Back up the key store after performing the backup.

### - Recovery

Restore the keystore to its state at the time of the database backup.

Configure automatic opening of the key store as necessary.

If automatic opening of the keystore is not enabled, execute the `pg_ctl` command to start the instance with the `--keystore-passphrase` option specified. This will display the prompt for the passphrase to be entered.



See

- Refer to "`pg_ctl`" under "Reference" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on the `pg_ctl` command.
- Refer to "Reference" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on the following commands:
  - `psql`
  - `pg_dump`
  - `pg_basebackup`
- Refer to the Reference for information on the following commands:
  - `pgx_rcvall`

- pgx\_dmpall
- pg\_dumpall

If you have restored the keystore, repeat the process of enabling automatic opening of the keystore. This ensures that the contents of the automatically opening keystore (keystore.aks) are identical to the contents of the restored keystore.

Refer to "[5.6.3 Enabling Automatic Opening of the Keystore](#)" for information on how to enable automatic opening of the keystore.

## 5.8 Importing and Exporting the Database

The files output by the COPY TO command are not encrypted. Therefore, when transferring files to other systems, you should encrypt files using OpenSSL commands or other means and use scp or sftp to encrypt the data being transferred.

Use a safe method to delete obsolete plain text files.

You can use the following methods to safely delete files:

- shred command



### Example

```
# Export the contents of the table my_table to a CSV file.
> psql -c "COPY my_table TO '/tmp/my_table.csv' (FORMAT CSV)" postgres

# Encrypt the exported file.
> openssl enc -e -aes256 -in my_table.csv -out my_table.csv.enc
(The user is prompted to enter the passphrase to be used for encryption)

# Safely delete plain text files.
> shred -u -x my_table.csv
(Transfer encrypted files to other systems)

# Decrypt the encrypted files on other systems.
> openssl enc -d -aes256 -in my_table.csv.enc -out my_table.csv
(The user is prompted to enter the passphrase to be used for decryption)
```

If you use COPY FROM to import data to tables and indexes in an encrypted tablespace, the imported data is automatically encrypted before being stored.

## 5.9 Encrypting Existing Data

You cannot encrypt existing unencrypted tablespaces. In addition, you cannot change encrypted tablespaces so that they do not encrypt.

As an alternative, transfer the tables and indexes to other tablespaces. You can use the following SQL commands for this.

```
ALTER TABLE table_name SET TABLESPACE new_tablespace;
ALTER INDEX index_name SET TABLESPACE new_tablespace;
ALTER DATABASE database_name SET TABLESPACE new_tablespace;
```



### See

Refer to "SQL Commands" under "Reference" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on SQL commands.

## 5.10 Operations in Cluster Systems

This section describes how to use transparent data encryption on cluster systems such as high-availability systems, streaming replication, and database multiplexing.

## 5.10.1 HA Clusters that do not Use Database Multiplexing

---

Take the following points into account when using transparent data encryption in an HA cluster environment that does not use database multiplexing.

### Placement and automatic opening of the keystore file

There are two alternatives for placing the keystore file:

- Sharing the keystore file
- Placing a copy of the keystore file

#### Sharing the keystore file

This involves using the same keystore file on the primary server and the standby server.

As the standby server is not active while the primary server is running, this file would not be accessed simultaneously, and therefore, it can be shared.

To manage the keystore file in a more secure manner, place it on the key management server or the key management storage isolated in a secure location.

Enable the automatic opening of the keystore on both the primary and standby servers.

#### Placing a copy of the keystore file

This involves placing a copy of the primary server keystore file on the standby server.

You can do this if you cannot prepare a shared server or disk device that can be accessed from both the primary and standby servers.

However, if you change the master encryption key and the passphrase on the primary server, you must copy the keystore file to the standby server again.

To manage the keystore file in a more secure manner, prepare the key management server or the key management storage isolated in a secure location for both the primary and standby servers, and place the keystore files there.

Enable the automatic opening of the keystore on both the primary and standby servers. Note that copying the automatically opening keystore file (keystore.aks) to the standby server does not enable the automatic opening of the keystore.



See

.....  
Refer to the Cluster Operation Guide (PRIMECLUSTER) for information on building a cluster system environment for performing failover using the failover feature integrated with the cluster software.  
.....

## 5.10.2 Database Multiplexing Mode

---

Note the following when using transparent data encryption in environments that use streaming replication, or database multiplexing with streaming replication.

### Placing the keystore file

Place a copy of the primary server keystore file on the standby server.

This is required as the keystore file cannot be shared, and both servers may need to access it simultaneously.



Point

.....  
To manage the keystore file in a more secure manner, place it on the key management server or the key management storage isolated in a secure location. A keystore used by both the primary and standby servers can be managed on the same key management server or key management storage.  
.....

However, create different directories for the keystores to be used by the primary server and the standby server. Then copy the keystore for the primary server to the directory used on the standby server.  
.....

## Automatically opening the keystore

You must enable automatic opening of the keystore.

To do this, enable automatic opening of the keystore in all servers that make up database multiplexing. The settings for automatic opening of the keystore include information unique to each server, so simply copying the file does not enable it.

## Changing the passphrase

Changes to the passphrase are reflected in all servers that make up database multiplexing, so no special operation is required.

## Building and starting a standby server

Before using the `pg_basebackup` command or `pgx_rcvall` command to build a standby server, copy the keystore file from the primary server to the standby server. When using an automatically opening keystore, use the copied keystore file to enable automatic opening on the standby server.

Open the keystore each time you start the standby server. This step is necessary for decrypting and restoring encrypted WAL received from the primary server. To open the keystore, specify the `--keystore-passphrase` option in the `pg_ctl` command or `pgx_rcvall` command and enter the passphrase, or use an automatically opening keystore.

## Changing the master encryption key and the passphrase

Change the master encryption key and the passphrase on the primary server. You need not copy the keystore from the primary server to the standby server. You need not even restart the standby server or reopen the keystore. Changes to the master encryption key and the passphrase are reflected in the keystore on the standby server.



See

.....  
Refer to "pgx\_rcvall " in the Reference for information on `pgx_rcvall` command.

Refer to "pg\_ctl" under "Reference" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on `pg_ctl` command.

Refer to "pg\_basebackup" under "Reference" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on `pg_basebackup` command.

Refer to "High Availability, Load Balancing, and Replication" under "Server Administration" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on how to set up streaming replication.  
.....

## 5.11 Security-Related Notes

---

- Decrypted data is cached in the database server memory (shared buffer). As a result, unencrypted data is stored in a core file, which is a process memory dump. You should, therefore, safely delete the memory dump.

You can safely delete files by using the following command:

- `shred` command
- Unencrypted data may be written from the database server memory to the operating system's swap area. To prevent leakage of information from the swap area, consider either disabling the use of swap area or encrypting the swap area using a full-disk encryption product.
- The content of the server log file is not encrypted. Therefore, in some cases the value of a constant specified in a SQL statement is output to the server log file. To prevent this, consider setting a parameter such as `log_min_error_statement`.
- When executing an SQL function that opens the keystore and modifies the master encryption key, ensure that the SQL statement containing the passphrase is not output to the server log file. To prevent this, consider setting a parameter such as `log_min_error_statement`. If you are executing this type of SQL function on a different computer from the database server, encrypt the communication between the client and the database server with SSL.
- Starting with FEP 10, logical replication is available, which allows non-backed up clusters to subscribe to databases where transparent data encryption is enabled. Logical replication does not need to have the same encryption strategy between publisher and subscriber.

In this scenario, if the user wants to encrypt the subscribed copy of data as well, then it is the user's responsibility to create encryption policies to the subscribed databases. By default, published encrypted tablespace data will not be encrypted in the subscriber side.

## 5.12 Tips for Installing Built Applications

---

With transparent data encryption, you can easily encrypt all the data in an application without modifying the application. Database administrators install built applications in the following manner. However, this procedure stores data to the default tablespace, so take necessary action if processing differs from the original design.

1. (Normal procedure) Create an owner and a database for the built application.

```
CREATE USER crm_admin ...;  
CREATE DATABASE crm_db ...;
```

2. (Procedure for encryption) Create an encrypted tablespace to store the data for the built application.

```
SET tablespace_encryption_algorithm = 'AES256';  
CREATE TABLESPACE crm_tablespace LOCATION '/crm/data';
```

3. (Procedure for encryption) Configure an encrypted tablespace as the default tablespace for the owner of the built application.

```
ALTER USER crm_admin SET default_tablespace = 'crm_tablespace';  
ALTER USER crm_admin SET temp_tablespaces = 'crm_tablespace';
```

4. (Normal procedure) Install the built application. The application installer prompts you to enter the host name and the port number of the database server, the user name, and the database name. The installer uses the entered information to connect to the database server and execute the SQL script. For applications that do not have an installer, the database administrator must manually execute the SQL script.

Normally, the application's SQL script includes logic definition SQL statements, such as CREATE TABLE, CREATE INDEX, and GRANT or REVOKE, converted from the entity-relationship diagram. It does not include SQL statements that create databases, users, and tablespaces. Configuring the default tablespace of the users who will execute the SQL script deploys the objects generated by the SQL script to the tablespace.

# Chapter 6 Using Transparent Data Encryption with Key Management Systems as Keystores

This chapter describes the operation of transparent data encryption when a key management system is used as a keystore.



See

Refer to "Key Management System Requirements" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server for the key management system requirements that can be used with Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

## 6.1 Protecting Data Using Encryption

Refer to "[5.1 Protecting Data Using Encryption](#)". The following describes the differences from the transparent data encryption operation in the file-based keystore described in "[5.1 Protecting Data Using Encryption](#)".

### Encryption mechanisms

#### Two-layer encryption key and the keystore

Each tablespace has a tablespace encryption key that encrypts/decrypts all data in it. Tablespace encryption keys are stored encrypted with the master encryption key.

Use an encryption key stored in a key management system as a common master encryption key for your database cluster. Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres refers to the key management system as a keystore for master encryption keys.

#### Type of key management system

Two types of key management systems are available:

- kmip

It is a key management system that can be used using a protocol called KMIP (Key Management Interoperability Protocol) standardized by OASIS (Organization for the Advancement of Structured Information Standards).

- custom

It is a key management system that cooperates using an adapter that converts the request format without adopting the KMIP protocol.



See

Refer to "Key Management System Requirements" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server for the key management system requirements that can be used with Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

#### Sharing tablespace encryption keys

When using an adapter to link with a key management system, encryption and decryption of the tablespace encryption key using the master encryption key are performed on the key management system side.

Tablespace encryption keys can be shared within a database cluster so that you do not need to access the key management system each time you want to use the tablespace encryption key.

The cost of encryption/decryption using the master encryption key becomes an issue in the following cases:

- Multiple connections to the database access encrypted tablespaces
- Connections accessing encrypted tablespaces are repeated and connection pooling is disabled

#### Encryption key identifier

Key IDs are used as identifiers to identify encryption keys stored on the key management system.

## Key ID

Information that identifies the encryption key on the key management system, and is unique within the key management system. The correspondence between the encryption key substance (byte string) and the key ID does not change throughout the life cycle of the encryption key.

The name of the identifier differs depending on each key management system, but in this feature, such information is called the key ID.

## Changes to the key management system

After starting operation of the transparent data encryption function, the key management system to be used can be changed to another key management system.

## 6.2 Setting the Master Encryption Key

To use transparent data encryption, you must create a keystore and set the master encryption key.

1. Load the `shared_preload_libraries` parameter in `postgresql.conf` with the library name `"tde _ kms"`

```
shared_preload_libraries = 'tde_kms'
```

2. When using an adapter, register the adapter as a plug-in. Specify the directory where the plugin is stored in the `tde_kms.plugin_path` parameter in `postgresql.conf`. Store your plugins in this directory.

```
tde_kms.plugin_path = '/home/fseuser/plugin/'
```

3. To share the tablespace encryption key, set the `tde_kms.enable_shared_dek` parameter in `postgresql.conf` to `"on"`.

```
tde_kms.enable_shared_dek = on
```

4. Set the `tde_kms.kms_conninfo_file` parameter in `postgresql.conf` to a file that contains key management system connection information. Refer to "[Appendix A Parameters](#)" for information.

Example for the key management system connection information file `kms_conninfo.conf`

```
tde_kms.kms_conninfo_file = 'kms_conninfo.conf'
```

Example of key management system connection information file

### For type kmip

```
kmip    mykmipsvr mykmipsvr.example.com 5696 cert sslcert=postgres.crt  
sslkey=postgres.key sslrootcert=root.crt
```

### For type custom

```
custom mykms mykms arg=--profile arg=user1
```

5. Execute a `CREATE EXTENSION` statement to install the extension.

```
CREATE EXTENSION tde_kms;
```

6. To enable transparent data encryption, call the `pgx_declare_external_master_key` function to declare the encryption key to use as the master encryption key. Specify a key ID as an identifier to identify the encryption key. Refer to "[B.2.3 pgx\\_declare\\_external\\_master\\_key](#)" for information on the `pgx_declare_external_master_key` function.

```
SELECT pgx_declare_external_master_key( kms_name => 'mykmipsvr', key_id =>  
'a0eebc99-9c0b-0000-0000-000000000000', sslpassphrase => 'mykmippassphrase' );
```

## 6.3 Opening the Keystore

To create encrypted tablespaces and access the encrypted data, you must first open the keystore. When you open the keystore, the master encryption key is available for encryption and decryption.

You need to open the keystore each time you start the instance. To open the keystore, the database superuser must execute the following SQL function.

```
SELECT pgx_open_keystore( sslpassphrase => 'passphrase');
```

passphrase is the passphrase of the private key file for the client certificate.

Refer to "[B.2 Transparent Data Encryption Control Functions](#)" for information on the `pgx_open_keystore` function.

Note that, in the following cases, the passphrase must be entered when starting the instance, because the encrypted WAL must be decrypted for recovery. In this case, the above-mentioned `pgx_open_keystore` function cannot be executed.

- If performing crash recovery at the time of starting the instance
- If performing recovery using continuous archiving

For the above cases, specify the `--kms-secret` option in the `pg_ctl` command, and then start the instance. This will display the prompt for the passphrase to be entered, as shown below.

```
> pg_ctl --kms-secret start
Enter secret:
```



### Point

When using an automatically opening keystore, you do not need to enter the passphrase and you can automatically open the keystore when the database server starts. Refer to "[6.6.2 Enabling Automatic Opening of the Keystore](#)" for details.

## 6.4 Encrypting a Tablespace

Refer to "[5.4 Encrypting a Tablespace](#)".

## 6.5 Checking an Encrypted Tablespace

Refer to "[5.5 Checking an Encrypted Tablespace](#)".

## 6.6 Managing the Keystore

Describes how to manage master encryption keys when a key management system is used.

### 6.6.1 Changing the Master Encryption Key

To change the master encryption key, run the `pgx_declare_external_master_key` function as you originally set it. Refer to "[6.2 Setting the Master Encryption Key](#)" for more information.

Also, by specifying a different key management system name than the key management system name specified during installation, you can change the key management system to be used. Refer to "[6.6.5 Changes to the Key Management System](#)" for details.

### 6.6.2 Enabling Automatic Opening of the Keystore

You can automatically open a keystore at instance startup without entering a passphrase by specifying all credentials, including those that should be kept secret, in the key management system connection information file. To enable automatic keystore opening, run the `pgx_keystore` command.

**Example of storing obfuscated credentials in the file `sslkeypassphrase.ksc`**

```
> pgx_keystore -s -o sslkeypassphrase.ksc
Enter secret:
```

Specify obfuscated credentials in the key management system connection information file.



```
kmip      mykmipsvr      kmip.example.com      5696      cert      sslcert=postgres.crt      sslkey=postgres.key
sslrootcert=root.crt      sslkeypassphrase-obf=sslkeypassphrase.ksc
```

The key management system connection information file is valid only on the computer on which it was created.

To disable automatic keystore opening, delete the file containing obfuscated credentials for the private key specified in `sslkeypassphrase-obf` and delete the `sslkeypassphrase-obf` option in the key management system connection information file.



See

Refer to "pgx\_keystore" in the Reference for information on `pgx_keystore` command.

Refer to "[Appendix A Parameters](#)" for information on the key management system connection information file.

### 6.6.3 Changing Credentials for Key Management Systems

If the credentials for the key management service change, you must also change the credentials that Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres uses to connect to the key management system.

You can change the credentials used by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres using the `pgx_open_keystore` function. The new credentials are used to connect to the new key management system.

If you have a streaming replication configuration, you must change credentials on all replicas.

Refer to "[B.2.1 pgx\\_open\\_keystore](#)" for information on the `pgx_open_keystore` function.

### 6.6.4 Verifying the Master Encryption Key

The view `pgx_tde_master_key` shows information about your master encryption key. For more information about columns, Refer to "[E.1 pgx\\_tde\\_master\\_key](#)" for more information about columns..

### 6.6.5 Changes to the Key Management System

If you need to change the linked key management system after installing the transparent data encryption function that uses the key management system, you can do so by following the procedure below.

After this step, data in Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres will be encrypted using encryption keys on the new key management system.

#### Defining a new key management system

If the new key management system is not listed in the key management system's connection information file, add a definition to that configuration file. Give the old key management system and the new key management system different key management system names.

Reload the configuration file for the changes to take effect.

#### Declaring the master encryption key to use

Use the `pgx_dexlare_external_master_key` function to declare a new encryption key to use. Specify the name you gave the new key management system as the key management system name. Other arguments required are the key ID to use on the new key management system and credentials. Upon successful completion, it will be encrypted using the encryption key on the new key management system.



Note

The master encryption key that encrypts the backup data before changing the key management system exists only on the old key management system. As such, you need the old key management system and the encryption keys residing there for any period of time when you might restore backup data from before the change. If you delete the encryption key on the old key management system, destroy the old key management system, cancel the key management service, etc., you will not be able to decrypt the backup data and you will not be able to use the data.

## 6.7 Backing Up and Restoring/Recovering the Database

---

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres enables you to use the five backup and recovery methods described below.

### Backup and recovery using WebAdmin

- Backup

WebAdmin backs up encrypted data.

- Recovery

If you recover to a point in time when the old master encryption key was in use, change to the most recent master encryption key immediately after recovery.

Enable automatic opening of the keystore in accordance with the procedure described in "[6.6.2 Enabling Automatic Opening of the Keystore](#)". Then, use WebAdmin to recover the database.

### Backup and recovery using the `pgx_dmpall` and `pgx_rcvall` commands

- Backup

The `pgx_dmpall` command backs up the encrypted data.

- Recovery

If you recover to a point in time when the old master encryption key was in use, change to the most recent master encryption key immediately after recovery.

Configure automatic opening of the key store as necessary.

If automatic opening of the keystore is not enabled, execute the `pgx_rcvall` command with the `--kms-secret` option specified. This will display the prompt for the passphrase to be entered.

### Dump and restore using SQL

- Backup

The files output by the `pg_dump` and `pg_dumpall` commands are not encrypted. You should, therefore, encrypt the files using OpenSSL commands or other means before saving them, as described in "[5.8 Importing and Exporting the Database](#)" below.

- Restore

If the backup data has been encrypted using, for example Open SSL commands, decrypt that data.

The data generated by the `pg_dumpall` command includes a specification to encrypt tablespaces by default. For this reason, the `psql` command encrypts tablespaces during restoration.

### File system level backup and restore

- Backup

Stop the instance and backup the data directory and the tablespace directory using the file copy command of the operating system. The files of encrypted tablespaces are backed up in the encrypted state.

- Restore

Stop the instance and use the OS file copy command to restore the data storage directory or tablespace directory.

If you recover to a point in time when the old master encryption key was in use, change to the most recent master encryption key immediately after recovery.

### Continuous archiving and point-in-time recovery

- Backup

The `pg_basebackup` command backs up the encrypted data as is.

- Recovery

If you recover to a point in time when the old master encryption key was in use, change to the most recent master encryption key immediately after recovery.

Configure automatic opening of the key store as necessary.

If automatic opening of the keystore is not enabled, execute the `pg_ctl` command to start the instance with the `--kms-secret` option specified. This will display the prompt for the passphrase to be entered.



See

- Refer to "pg\_ctl" under "Reference" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on the `pg_ctl` command.
- Refer to "Reference" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on the following commands:
  - `psql`
  - `pg_dump`
  - `pg_basebackup`
- Refer to the Reference for information on the following commands:
  - `pgx_rcvall`
  - `pgx_dmpall`
  - `pg_dumpall`

## 6.8 Importing and Exporting the Database

---

Refer to "[5.8 Importing and Exporting the Database](#)".

## 6.9 Encrypting Existing Data

---

Refer to "[5.9 Encrypting Existing Data](#)".

## 6.10 Operations in Cluster Systems

---

This section describes how to use transparent data encryption on cluster systems such as high-availability systems, streaming replication, and database multiplexing.

### 6.10.1 HA Clusters that do not Use Database Multiplexing

---

Take the following points when using transparent data encryption with a key management system as a key store in an HA cluster environment that does not use database multiplexing.

#### Placement and automatic opening of the connection information file of the key management system

The file that describes the connection information of the key management system specified in the `tde_kms.kms_conninfo_file` parameter of the `postgresql.conf` file, and the files such as certificates that are referenced from that file can be shared by the primary server and the standby server. However, the obfuscated credential file used to enable automatic opening of the keystore must be created and placed on each server according to the instructions for enabling automatic opening.

If not shared, it must be possible to connect to the key management system used from the standby server with the same key management system name as the key management system name set on the primary server. Place the connection information file and files such as certificates referenced from the connection information file on the standby server. The obfuscated credential file used to enable automatic opening of the keystore must be created and placed on each server according to the instructions in enabling automatic opening.

## Changing credentials for key management systems

If the credentials for the key management system have changed, use the `pgx_open_keystore` function on the primary server to change the credentials. Re-enable automatic opening of the keystore on the standby server.



See

Refer to the Cluster Operation Guide (PRIMECLUSTER) for information on building a cluster system environment for performing failover operations linked to cluster software.

## 6.10.2 Database Multiplexing Mode

Note the following when using transparent data encryption with a key management system as a key store in environments that use streaming replication, or database multiplexing with streaming replication.

### Placement and automatic opening of the connection information file of the key management system

The file that describes the connection information of the key management system specified in the `tde_kms.kms_conninfo_file` parameter of the `postgresql.conf` file, and the files such as certificates that are referenced from that file can be shared by the primary server and the standby server. However, the obfuscated credential file used to enable automatic opening of the keystore must be created and placed on each server according to the instructions for enabling automatic opening.

If not shared, it must be possible to connect to the key management system to be used with the same key management system name as the key management system name set on the primary server. Place the connection information file and files such as certificates referenced from the connection information file on all servers that configure database multiplexing mode. The obfuscated credential file used to enable automatic opening of the keystore must be created and placed on each server according to the instructions in enabling automatic opening.

## Changing credentials for key management systems

If the credentials for the key management system are changed, use the `pgx_open_keystore` function on all servers that configure database multiplexing to change the credentials.

### Starting a standby server

Open the keystore when starting the standby server. This is required to decrypt and replay the encrypted WAL received from the primary server. To open a keystore, use the `pg_ctl` or `pgx_rcvall` command with `--kms-secret` and provide your credentials, or enable automatic opening of the keystore.

### Changing the master encryption key

Change the master encryption key on the primary server. No need to restart the standby server or reopen the keystore. Changes to the master encryption key are also reflected on the standby server.



See

Refer to "pgx\_rcvall" in the Reference for information on `pgx_rcvall` command.

Refer to "pg\_ctl" under "Reference" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on `pg_ctl` command.

Refer to "High Availability, Load Balancing, and Replication" under "Server Administration" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on how to set up streaming replication.

## 6.11 Security-Related Notes

Refer to "5.11 Security-Related Notes".

## 6.12 Tips for Installing Built Applications

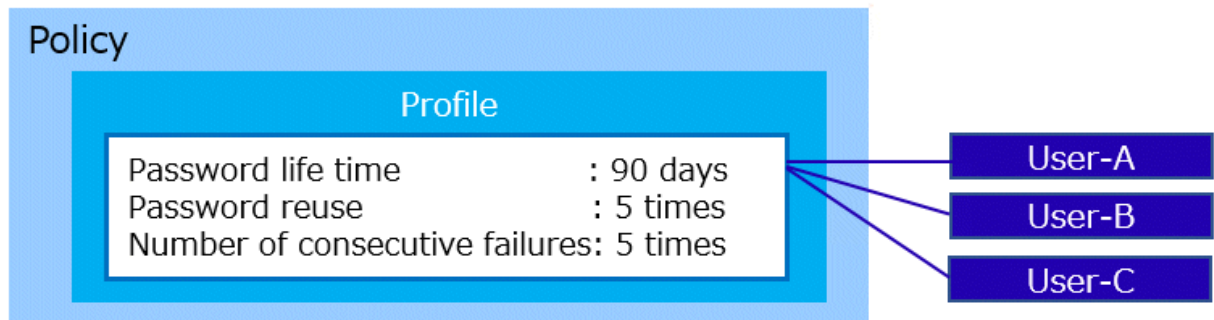
Refer to "5.12 Tips for Installing Built Applications".

## Chapter 7 Policy-based Password Management

To apply a password operational policy to a user, define the policy as a profile and assign the profile to the user. This allows you to operate according to your security policy when users log in or change their passwords.

You can set the following password authentication restrictions for a profile. The contents of the profile are saved as database objects.

- Set a password life time
- Restrict password reuse
- Lock accounts that have failed to log in continuously



The policy covers the following authentication methods:

- password
- md5
- scram-sha-256

### 7.1 Changing the Contents of the default Profile

When you create a database user with CREATE ROLE, the database user is assigned the default profile. For the default profile, all parameters are disabled, so change the parameter values to suit your policy. Change the value with the `pgx_alter_profile` function.

Users with CREATEROLE privilege can modify the contents of a profile.

Refer to "[B.3.1 Profile Management Functions](#)" for functions.

[Example]

```
SELECT pgx_alter_profile('default',
'{
  "PASSWORD_LIFE_TIME": 50,
  "PASSWORD_GRACE_TIME": "10"
  "PASSWORD_REUSE_MAX": 5,
  "PASSWORD_LOCK_TIME": 0.5,
  "PASSWORD_ALLOW_HASHED": true
}');
```

### 7.2 Creating and Assigning Profiles

If you want to apply a different policy than the default profile, create a new profile and assign it to the user.

The `pgx_create_profile` function creates a profile.

To assign a profile to a user, use the `pgx_assign_profile_to_user` function.

Users with CREATEROLE privilege can create and assign profiles.

Refer to "[B.3.1 Profile Management Functions](#)" and "[B.3.2 User Management Functions](#)" for functions.

## 7.3 Actions to be Taken in the Event of Deviation from Policy

---

### When a user is locked out due to consecutive password authentication failures

If password authentication fails consecutively, the user is locked and cannot log in.

If you want to allow a locked user to log in again, unlock the user. The `pgx_unlock_user` function releases the lock. Operations can be performed by users with `CREATEROLE` privilege.

Refer to "[B.3.2 User Management Functions](#)" for functions.

#### [Example]

```
SELECT pgx_unlock_user('user1');
```

To release a lock when a database administrator is locked, users other than the locked user with `CREATEROLE` privilege can do so. If the user does not exist, Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres must be started in single-user mode and the lock released.

### When the password expires

When a password life time is over, the password expires and cannot be used to connect to and operate on the database until the password is changed.

The password can be changed by the expired user itself, or by a user who has the `CREATEROLE` privilege and who is an administrator of that user (who has `ADMIN` privilege for that user).

## 7.4 Settings in Streaming Replication Configuration

---

For streaming replication, the policy is enabled on both the primary and standby servers. The user lock status and user password status (Life Time, Grace Time, Expiration) are reflected and shared by all servers in the cluster, even if they are detected on either the primary or standby server.

Perform changing the contents of the profile, creating and assigning profiles, releases the lock, and change the password can only be done on the primary server.

This section describes how to setting streaming replication configuration.

1. Sets parameters in the `postgresql.conf` file

Specifies the database name that can be connected to the `userprofile_database` parameter. If omitted, the default database "postgres" is assumed.

Refer to "[Parameters for the Policy-based Password Management](#)" for parameters.

2. Grant privilege to users for streaming replication

The standby server connects to the primary server and propagates any state changes it detects to the primary server. The used users for streaming replication (specified in `primary_conninfo`) is used to connect for state change. Grant privilege to this user. Allow the user to `SET ROLE` directly to the group role `pgx_update_profile_status`.

#### [Example]

```
# GRANT pgx_update_profile_status TO repluser WITH SET TRUE;
```

This action enables users for streaming replication to lock all other database users or unlock the lock state due to policy deviations. Also, membership in the `pgx_update_profile_status` group role should only be granted to users for streaming replication.

3. Add a record to `pg_hba.conf`

Add a record to accept connections from the standby server. Duplicate the record for streaming replication and specify the database name in the `userprofile_database` parameter as the destination database name. Authentication methods other than password authentication are recommended.

```
host replication repluser standbyServerAddress authenticationMethod # For Streaming  
Replication
```

```
host postgres repluser standbyServerAddress authenticationMethod # For state change
propagation
```

## Information

- If the primary and standby servers are disconnected, profile-based restrictions still apply on each server. However, the standby server itself cannot change its password or unlock it explicitly. After removing the cause of the disconnect, restore the connection to the primary server and business operations, and then change the password or explicitly unlock.
- Connection information for reflecting status changes to the primary server or standby server is output as "User profile status sender" to application\_name in the pg\_stat\_replication view. When monitoring the streaming replication status with the pg\_stat\_replication view, exclude the "User profile status sender" line from the monitoring target.

## 7.5 Backup and Recovery

### Backup

Profile contents, user and profile assignment status, and password history can be backed up with physical backups and the pg\_dumpall command.

When dumping with SQL statements using the pg\_dumpall command, database role information is backed up at the same time it is dumped.

### Recovery

If you recover old backup data, the password may have expired at the time of recovery. In this case, change the password after recovery.

## 7.6 Profile parameters

Details of the parameters set in the profile are explained.

### PASSWORD\_LIFE\_TIME

Number of days the same password can be used for authentication

[Supported values]

*numeric*: A NUMERIC value greater than or equal to 0

The unit is days. Hours and seconds can be specified with decimal places (e.g. 4.5 is equivalent to "4 days and 12 hours"). Precision is 1 second. The maximum value is 24855 days.

DEFAULT: The value of the same parameter in the default profile

UNLIMITED: No life time (same password can be used indefinitely)

The password life time will be over after PASSWORD\_LIFE\_TIME days from the last time the password was updated for the target role. The timing of updating the profile is not the starting point. Therefore, if you specify an extremely short number of days (such as 1 day), it may already be past the life time at the time of renewal.

It is possible to specify when a password becomes invalid using the VALID UNTIL clause of CREATE ROLE or ALTER ROLE. If you specify both the VALID UNTIL clause and PASSWORD\_LIFE\_TIME, both values are valid. Note that in this case, you can log in only if both constraints are met.

If there is no grace period, the password expires when the password life time is over. If you log in using password authentication in this state, you will receive a "password expired" warning and you will not be able to execute commands other than changing your password. You can change the password to resume normal operations. Other than password authentication, you can connect to and work with the database.

For streaming replication, users will not be able to connect to the standby server after the password life time is over. There is no grace period for password expiration on standby servers. Password changes must be made on the primary server.

## PASSWORD\_GRACE\_TIME

The number of days after a password life time is over before the password expires.

[Supported values]

*numeric*: A NUMERIC value greater than or equal to 0

The unit is days. Hours and seconds can be specified with decimal places (e.g. 4.5 is equivalent to "4 days and 12 hours"). Precision is 1 second. The maximum value is 24855 days.

DEFAULT: The value of the same parameter in the default profile

UNLIMITED: Indefinite period

The password expiration grace period is PASSWORD\_GRACE\_TIME days from the first login time after the password life time is over. You can log in with your current password during the grace period, but a warning prompts you to change your password. You can operate normally except that a warning is displayed. If specified as UNLIMITED, the grace period is infinite and you will be warned to change your password at every login. Once transitioned to the grace period, even if you change the profile value after that, you cannot go back to before the grace period, and you cannot change the life time. If 0 is specified, there is no grace period and the password expires at the first login after the password life time is over. In this case, you can perform normal operations again by changing the password.

Because the standby server does not have a grace period before the password expires, users cannot connect to the standby server after the password life time is over. Password changes must be made on the primary server.

## PASSWORD\_REUSE\_TIME

Number of days the same password cannot be reused

The password cannot be reused by the same user for this period from the time the password is updated.

This parameter must be set in combination with PASSWORD\_REUSE\_MAX.

[Supported values]

*numeric*: A NUMERIC value greater than or equal to 0

The unit is days. Hours and seconds can be specified with decimal places (e.g. 4.5 is equivalent to "4 days and 12 hours"). Precision is 1 second. The maximum value is 24855 days.

DEFAULT: The value of the same parameter in the default profile

UNLIMITED: Not reusable (but ignore these if PASSWORD\_REUSE\_MAX is also UNLIMITED)

## PASSWORD\_REUSE\_MAX

Number of password changes required before password can be reused

This parameter must be set in combination with PASSWORD\_REUSE\_TIME.

[Supported values]

*integer*: An INTEGER value greater than or equal to 0

DEFAULT: The value of the same parameter in the default profile

UNLIMITED: Not reusable (but ignore these if PASSWORD\_REUSE\_TIME is also UNLIMITED)

Both PASSWORD\_REUSE\_TIME and PASSWORD\_REUSE\_MAX constraints must be met to reuse passwords.

For example, if you specify PASSWORD\_REUSE\_TIME = 30, PASSWORD\_REUSE\_MAX = 10, a certain password can be reused if 30 days have passed since the update time and the password has been updated 10 times or more. When password update fails due to these parameters, the SQLSTATE will be "22023: invalid\_parameter\_value".

Also, if one parameter has a value and the other parameter specifies UNLIMITED, the password cannot be reused. If you want to use only one condition for reuse judgment, you need to set the value of the unused parameter to 0. However, if UNLIMITED is specified for both, these parameters are ignored and passwords can be reused without restriction.



## PASSWORD\_ALLOW\_HASHED

Whether to allow password specification by hash value when changing password

Allow if true.

[Supported values]

*boolean*: true or false

DEFAULT: The value of the same parameter in the default profile

When setting or changing a password in a CREATE ROLE or ALTER ROLE statement, you can specify a new password in the form of a hash value, but this is rejected if this parameter is false.

If the specified password is in the form of a hash value that is not plain text, the server cannot verify that the password has not been reused, and user can change it to the same password to extend its lifetime. Specify false to avoid this.

The password is specified in the form of a hash value when changing the password using the psql command's \password meta-command or when dumping the database user's password using the pg\_dumpall command.

If this parameter is false, the password cannot be changed by the psql command's \password meta command. Specify the new password in clear text in the PASSWORD clause of the CREATE ROLE or ALTER ROLE statement. At this time, if command input history is enabled on the client side or if the setting to log SQL statements is enabled on the server side, the plaintext password might remain in the log file.

When the pg\_dumpall command is run without the --no-role-passwords option, the database user's password is included in the backup file in the form of a hash value. Therefore, when recovering the database user's password, temporarily set this parameter to true in the default profile of the restore destination. If the restore is successful, the contents of the default profile are restored to the contents at the time of the backup.

## FAILED\_LOGIN\_ATTEMPTS

Number of consecutive failed login attempts for a user before the user is locked

[Supported values]

*integer*: An INTEGER value greater than 0

DEFAULT: The value of the same parameter in the default profile

UNLIMITED: Indefinite period (Can fail any number of times)

If password authentication fails consecutively for the number of times specified by this parameter, the user is locked and cannot log in.

The number of failed login attempts is counted separately on each server.

## PASSWORD\_LOCK\_TIME

Number of days after a user is locked due to consecutive login failures before the user is unlocked

[Supported values]

*numeric*: A NUMERIC value greater than or equal to 0

The unit is days. Hours and seconds can be specified with decimal places (e.g. 4.5 is equivalent to "4 days and 12 hours"). Precision is 1 second. The maximum value is 24855 days.

DEFAULT: The value of the same parameter in the default profile

UNLIMITED: Locked indefinitely

If set to UNLIMITED, the user will be locked indefinitely and will not be automatically unlocked. Unlocking requires an explicit pgx\_unlock\_user function call by a user with CREATEROLE privilege.

## 7.7 Worker Processes

---

This feature allows up to two background worker processes to reside. This information is displayed in the statistics view pg\_stat\_activity when it needs to be processed by a worker process. The worker processes added by this feature are those with column backend\_type values of "user profile status writer" and "user profile status sender".

These processes may wait on the wait event "UserProFileWorkerMain" of type "Activity".

## Chapter 8 Data Masking

Data masking is a feature that can change the returned data for queries generated by applications, so that it can be referenced by users. For example, for a query of employee data, digits except the last four digits of an eight-digit employee number can be changed to "\*" so that it can be used for reference.



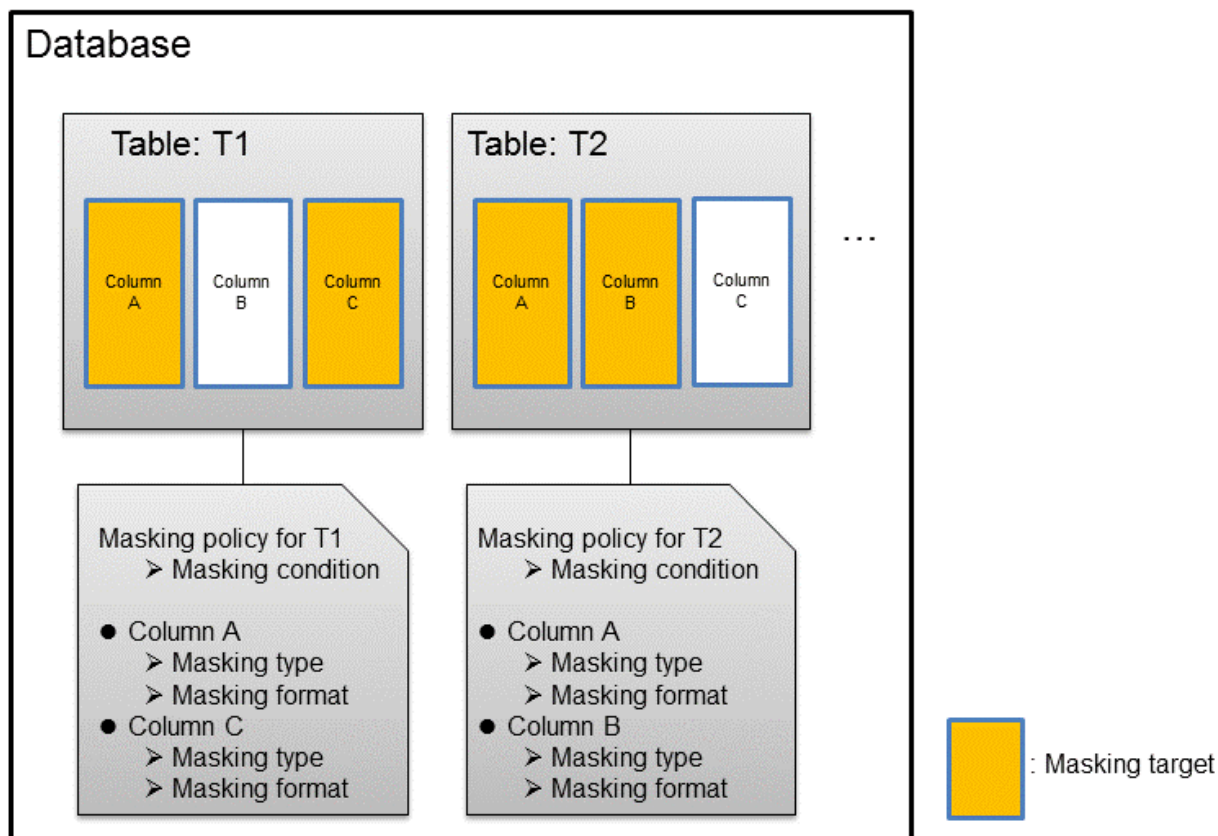
### Note

When using this feature, it is recommended that the changed data be transferred to another medium for users to reference. This is because, if users directly access the database to extract the masked data, there is a possibility that they can deduce the original data by analyzing the masking policy or query result to the masking target column.

## 8.1 Masking Policy

Masking policy is a method of changing data under specific conditions when it is returned for a query from an application. One masking policy can be created per table. You can configure masking target, masking type, masking condition and masking format in a masking policy.

Figure 8.1 Masking policy



### Note

When a masking policy is defined, the search performance for the corresponding table may deteriorate.

### 8.1.1 Masking Target

---

Masking target refers to a column to which a masking policy will be applied. When referring to a masking target or a function that includes a masking target, the execution result will be changed and obtained.

The following commands can change the execution result:

- SELECT
- COPY
- pg\_dump
- pg\_dumpall



- If a masking target is specified to INSERT...SELECT target columns, processing will be performed using data before change.
- If a masking target other than SELECT target columns is specified, processing will be performed using data before change.
- If a masking target is specified in a function where the data type will be converted, an error will occur.

### 8.1.2 Masking Type

---

Masking type is a method to change column data that is returned from queries. Specify the masking type in the function\_type parameter. The following masking types can be specified and selected depending on the masking target data type.

#### Full masking

All the data in the specified column is changed. The changed value returned to the application that made the query varies depending on the column data type.

For example, 0 is used for a numeric type column and a space is used for a character type column.

#### Partial masking

The data in the specified column is partially changed.

For example, digits except the last four digits of an employee number can be changed to "\*".

#### Regular expression masking

The data in the specified column is changed via a search that uses a regular expression.

For example, for strings such as email address that can have variable length, "\*" can be used to change characters preceding "@" by using a regular expression. Regular expression masking can only be used for character type data.



- If multiple valid masking targets are specified for a function, the masking type for the left-most masking target will be applied. For example, if "SELECT GREATEST(c1, c2) FROM t1" is executed for numeric type masking target c1 and c2, the masking type for c1 will be applied.
- When masking the data that includes multibyte characters, do not specify partial masking for masking type. The result may not be as expected.

### 8.1.3 Masking Condition

---

Masking condition refers to the conditions configured to perform masking. Specify the masking condition in the expression parameter. Changed or actual data can be displayed for different users by defining masking condition. An expression that returns a boolean type result needs to be specified in masking condition and masking is performed only when TRUE is returned. Refer to "Value Expressions" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on the expressions that can be specified. Note that expressions that include a column cannot

be specified.

For example, when masking data only for "postgres" users, specify 'current\_user = "postgres"' in the masking condition.

### Information

Specify '1=1' so the masking condition is always evaluated to be TRUE and masking is performed all the time.

## 8.1.4 Masking Format

Masking format is a combination of change method and displayed characters when the masking condition is met. Masking format varies depending on the masking type. The following describes the masking format.

### Full masking


With full masking, all characters are changed to values as determined by the database. Changed characters can be referenced in the pgx\_confidential\_values table. Also, replacement characters can be changed using the pgx\_update\_confidential\_values system management function.



### See

Refer to "8.3 Data Types for Masking" for information on the data types for which data masking can be performed.

### Partial masking

With partial masking, data is changed according to the content in the function\_parameters parameter. The method of specifying function\_parameters varies depending on the data type.

Category	Method of specifying function_parameters
Numeric type	<p><i>'replacementCharacter, startPosition, endPosition'</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- <i>replacementCharacter</i>: Specify the number to display. Specify a value from 0 to 9.</li><li>- <i>startPosition</i>: Specify the start position of masking. Specify a positive integer.</li><li>- <i>endPosition</i>: Specify the end position of masking. Specify a positive integer that is greater than <i>startPosition</i>.</li></ul> <p> Example</p> <p>Specify as below to change the values from the 1st to 5th digits to 9.</p> <p>function_parameters := '9, 1, 5'</p> <p>In this example, if the original data is "123456789", it will be changed to "999996789".</p>
Character type	<p><i>'inputFormat, outputFormat, replacementCharacter, startPosition, endPosition'</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- <i>inputFormat</i>: Specify the current format of the data. Specify "V" for characters that will potentially be masked, and specify "F" for values such as spaces or hyphens that will not be masked.</li><li>- <i>outputFormat</i>: Define the method to format the displayed data. Specify "V" for characters that will potentially be masked. Any character to be output can be specified for each character "F" in <i>inputFormat</i>. If you want to output a single quotation mark, specify two of them consecutively.</li><li>- <i>replacementCharacter</i>: Specify any single character. If you want to output a single quotation mark, specify two of them consecutively.</li><li>- <i>startPosition</i>: Specify the position of "V" as the start position of masking. For example, to specify the position of the 4th "V" from the left, specify 4. Specify a positive integer.</li></ul>

Category	Method of specifying function_parameters
	<p>- <i>endPosition</i>: Specify the position of "V" as an end position of masking. When working out the end position, do not include positions of "F". For example, to specify the position of the 11th "V" from the left, specify 11. Specify a positive integer that is greater than <i>startPosition</i>.</p> <p> <b>Example</b></p> <p>Specify as below to mask a telephone number other than the first three digits using *.</p> <p>function_parameters := 'VVVFVVVFVVVV, VVV-VVVV-VVVV, *, 4, 11'</p> <p>In this example, if the original data is "012-3156-7890", it will be changed to "012-****-*****".</p>
Date/timestamp type	<p>'MDYHMS'</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- M: Masks month. To mask month, enter the month from 1 to 12 after a lowercase letter m. Specify an uppercase letter M to not mask month.</li> <li>- D: Masks date. To mask date, enter the date from 1 to 31 after a lowercase letter d. If a value bigger than the last day of the month is entered, the last day of the month will be displayed. Specify an uppercase letter D to not mask date.</li> <li>- Y: Masks year. To mask year, enter the year from 1 to 9999 after a lowercase letter y. Specify an uppercase letter Y to not mask year.</li> <li>- H: Masks hour. To mask hour, enter the hour from 0 to 23 after a lowercase letter h. Specify an uppercase letter H to not mask hour.</li> <li>- M: Masks minute. To mask minute, enter the minute from 0 to 59 after a lowercase letter m. Specify an uppercase letter M to not mask minute.</li> <li>- S: Masks second. To mask second, enter the second from 0 to 59 after a lowercase letter s. Specify an uppercase letter S to not mask second.</li> </ul> <p> <b>Example</b></p> <p>Specify as below to mask hour, minute, and second and display 00:00:00.</p> <p>function_parameters := 'MDYh0m0s0'</p> <p>In this example, if the original data is "2022-02-10 10:10:10", it will be changed to "2022-02-10 00:00:00".</p>



## See

- Refer to "B.4.2 pgx\_create\_confidential\_policy" for information on function\_parameters.
- Refer to "8.3 Data Types for Masking" for information on the data types for which masking can be performed.

## Regular expression masking

With regular expression masking, data is changed according to the content of the `regexp_pattern`, `regexp_replacement` and `regexp_flags` parameters. For `regexp_pattern`, specify the search pattern using a regular expression. For `regexp_replacement`, specify the replacement character to use when data matches the search pattern. For `regexp_flags`, specify the regular expression flags.



## Example

Specify as below to change all three characters starting from b to X.

`regexp_pattern := 'b..'`

regexp\_replacement:= 'X'

regexp\_flags := 'g'

In this example, if the original data is "foobarbaz", it will be changed to "fooXX".



### See

- Refer to "POSIX Regular Expressions" in the PostgreSQL Documentation and check pattern, replacement, and flags for information on the values that can be specified for regexp\_pattern, regexp\_replacement, and regexp\_flags.
- Refer to "8.3 Data Types for Masking" for information on the data types for which masking can be performed.



### Note

- When column data type is character(*n*) or char(*n*) and if the string length after change exceeds *n*, the extra characters will be truncated and only characters up to the *n*th character will be displayed.
- When column data type is character varying(*n*) or varchar(*n*) and if the string length after change exceeds the length before the change, the extra characters will be truncated and only characters up to the length before change will be displayed.

## 8.2 Usage Method

### Preparation

The following preparation is required to use this feature.

1. Set the postgresql.conf file parameters.  
Prepend "pgx\_datamasking" to the shared\_preload\_libraries parameter.
2. Restart the instance.
3. Execute CREATE EXTENSION for the database that will use this feature.

The target database is described as "postgres" here.

Use the psql command to connect to the "postgres" database.



### Example

```
postgres=# CREATE EXTENSION pgx_datamasking;  
CREATE EXTENSION
```



### Note

You must always prepend "pgx\_datamasking" to the "shared\_preload\_libraries" parameter.



### Information

- Specify "false" for pgx\_datamasking.enable to not use this feature. Data will not be masked even if a masking policy is configured. This feature becomes available again once "true" is specified for pgx\_datamasking.enable. This setting can be made

by specifying a SET statement or specifying a parameter in the postgresql.conf file.  
Example

```
postgres=# SET pgx_datamasking.enable=false;
```

- Hereafter, also perform this preparatory task for the "template1" database, so that this feature can be used by default when creating a new database.

## Usage

To perform masking, a masking policy needs to be configured. The masking policy can be created, changed, confirmed, enabled, disabled or deleted during operation.

The procedures to perform these tasks are explained below with examples.

1. Creating a masking policy
2. Changing a masking policy
3. Confirming a masking policy
4. Enabling and disabling a masking policy
5. Deleting a masking policy



### Note

Only database superusers can configure masking policies.

## 8.2.1 Creating a Masking Policy

An example of the operation on the server is shown below.

1. Create a masking policy  
Execute the `pgx_create_confidential_policy` system management function to create a masking policy.  
The following values are configured in this example.
  - Masking target: Numeric type c1
  - Masking type: FULL
  - Masking condition: 'l=1'

```
postgres=# select pgx_create_confidential_policy(table_name := 't1', policy_name := 'p1',
expression := 'l=1', column_name := 'c1', function_type := 'FULL');
pgx_create_confidential_policy
-----
t
(1 row)
```

2. Confirm the displayed data  
Confirm that the masking target data (column c1) has been correctly changed.

```
postgres=# select * from t1;
 c1 |      c2
----+-----
  0 | 012-3456-7890
  0 | 012-3456-7891
  0 | 012-3456-7892
(3 row)
```



### See

- Refer to "[B.4.2 pgx\\_create\\_confidential\\_policy](#)" for information on the `pgx_create_confidential_policy` system management function.





## Note

- Only one masking policy can be created per table.
- All users can view the masking policy created, so do not grant the login privilege of the database where this feature is set to the users who refer to the changed data. Masking policies are defined in the "pgx\_confidential\_columns", "pgx\_confidential\_policies" and "pgx\_confidential\_values" tables.

## 8.2.2 Changing a Masking Policy

1. An example of the operation on the server is shown below.
2. Change a masking policy  
Execute the `pgx_alter_confidential_policy` system management function to change a masking policy.  
The following values are changed in this example.
  - Content of change: Add a masking target
  - Masking target: Character type c2
  - Masking type: PARTIAL
  - Masking condition: 'VVVFVVVFVVVV, VVV-VVVV-VVVV, \*, 4, 11'

```
postgres=# select pgx_alter_confidential_policy(table_name := 't1', policy_name := 'p1',
action := 'ADD_COLUMN', column_name := 'c2', function_type := 'PARTIAL', function_parameters :=
'VVVFVVVFVVVV, VVV-VVVV-VVVV, *, 4, 11');
pgx_alter_confidential_policy
-----
t
(1 row)
```

3. Confirm the displayed data  
Confirm that the masking target data has been correctly changed.

```
postgres=# select * from t1;
 c1 |      c2
----+-----
  0 | 012-****-****
  0 | 012-****-****
  0 | 012-****-****
(3 row)
```



## See

- Refer to "[B.4.1 pgx\\_alter\\_confidential\\_policy](#)" for information on the `pgx_alter_confidential_policy` system management function.

## 8.2.3 Confirming a Masking Policy

An example of the operation on the server is shown below.

1. Confirm information about a masking target where a masking policy is set  
Refer to the `pgx_confidential_columns` table to confirm the masking target where the masking policy is set.

```
postgres=# select * from pgx_confidential_columns;
 schema_name | table_name | policy_name | column_name | function_type |
function_parameters      | regexp_pattern | regexp_replacement | regexp_flags |
column_description
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
 public      | t1         | p1          | c1          | FULL         |
|
```

public	t1	p1	c2	PARTIAL	VVVFVVVFVVVV, VVV-VVVV-
VVVV, *, 4, 11					

(2 row)

2. Confirm information about the masking policy content

Refer to `pgx_confidential_policies` to confirm the masking policy content.

```
postgres=# select * from pgx_confidential_policies;
 schema_name | table_name | policy_name | expression | enable | policy_description
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----
 public      | t1         | p1          | 1=1        | t      |
(1 row)
```



See

- Refer to "F.1 `pgx_confidential_columns`" for information on the `pgx_confidential_columns` table.
- Refer to "F.2 `pgx_confidential_policies`" for information on the `pgx_confidential_policies` table.

## 8.2.4 Enabling and Disabling a Masking Policy

An example of the operation on the server is shown below.

1. Disable a masking policy

Execute the `pgx_enable_confidential_policy` system management function to disable a masking policy.

```
postgres=# select pgx_enable_confidential_policy(table_name := 't1', policy_name := 'p1',
 enable := 'f');
 pgx_enable_confidential_policy
-----
 t
(1 row)
```

2. Confirm the displayed data

Confirm that the original data is displayed by disabling the masking policy.

```
postgres=# select * from t1;
 c1 | c2
----+-----
 1 | 012-3456-7890
 2 | 012-3456-7891
 3 | 012-3456-7892
(3 row)
```

3. Enable a masking policy

Execute the `pgx_enable_confidential_policy` system management function to enable a masking policy.

```
postgres=# select pgx_enable_confidential_policy(table_name := 't1', policy_name := 'p1',
 enable := 't');
 pgx_enable_confidential_policy
-----
 t
(1 row)
```

4. Confirm the displayed data

Confirm that the masking target data has been correctly changed.

```
postgres=# select * from t1;
 c1 | c2
----+-----
 0 | 012-****-****
 0 | 012-****-****
```

```

0 | 012-****-****
(3 row)

```



See

- Refer to "B.4.4 [pgx\\_enable\\_confidential\\_policy](#)" for information on the `pgx_enable_confidential_policy` system management function.

## 8.2.5 Deleting a Masking Policy

An example of the operation on the server is shown below.

1. Delete a masking policy

Execute the `pgx_drop_confidential_policy` system management function to delete a masking policy.

```

postgres=# select pgx_drop_confidential_policy(table_name := 't1', policy_name := 'p1');
pgx_drop_confidential_policy
-----
t
(1 row)

```

2. Confirm the displayed data

Confirm that the original data is displayed by deleting the masking policy.

```

postgres=# select * from t1;
 c1 |      c2
----+-----
  1 | 012-3456-7890
  2 | 012-3456-7891
  3 | 012-3456-7892
(3 row)

```



See

- Refer to "B.4.3 [pgx\\_drop\\_confidential\\_policy](#)" for information on the `gx_drop_confidential_policy` function.

## 8.3 Data Types for Masking

The data types for which data masking can be performed are shown below.

Category	Data type	Masking type		
		Full masking	Partial masking	Regular expression masking
Numeric type	smallint	Y	Y	N
	integer	Y	Y	N
	bigint	Y	Y	N
	decimal	Y	Y	N
	numeric	Y	Y	N
	float	Y	Y	N
	real	Y	Y	N
	double precision	Y	Y	N

Category	Data type	Masking type		
		Full masking	Partial masking	Regular expression masking
Character type	character varying( <i>n</i> )	Y	Y	Y
	varchar( <i>n</i> )	Y	Y	Y
	character( <i>n</i> )	Y	Y	Y
	char( <i>n</i> )	Y	Y	Y
Date/timestamp type	date	Y	Y	N
	timestamp	Y	Y	N



#### Note

Even if the data type can be masking, if the data is a special value (NaN, Infinity, -Infinity), it is not.

## 8.4 Security Notes

- Starting with FEP 10, logical replication is available, which allows non-backed up clusters to subscribe to databases where data masking policies are enabled. Logical replication allows publisher and subscriber databases to have their own or the same data masking policies.

In this scenario, the user must disable data masking on the publisher database whenever a subscription is created. This ensures that subscribers are able to obtain the original data (initial copy) instead of the masked version. Then, it is the user's responsibility to set masking policies to each subscribed database.

- Take strong caution in publishing data masking's confidential tables (pgx\_confidential\_policies, pgx\_confidential\_columns, etc.) unless the user is publishing all tables of the database and wants to apply the same data masking's policies on the subscribed database for all of them.

Otherwise, as these confidential tables contain the masking policies for all tables of the database, confidential policies of unpublished tables may be unintentionally published. Additionally, it is not possible to apply different data masking policies on the subscriber database.

## Chapter 9 Periodic Operations

This chapter describes the operations that must be performed periodically when running daily database jobs.

### 9.1 Configuring and Monitoring the Log

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres enables you to output database errors and warnings to a log file.

This information is useful for identifying if errors have occurred and the causes of those errors.

By default, this information is output to the system log. It is recommended that you configure Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres to collect logs from its log files (for example, `log_destination`) before operating Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

Periodically monitor the log files to check if any errors have occurred.



See

- Refer to "Error Reporting and Logging" under "Server Administration" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on logs.
- Refer to "Configuring Parameters" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server for information on log settings when operating with WebAdmin.

### 9.2 Monitoring Disk Usage and Securing Free Space

When a database is used for an extended period, free space on the disk is continuously consumed and in some cases the disk space runs out. When this happens, database jobs may stop and no longer run.

You should, therefore, periodically monitor the usage of disk space, and delete obsolete files located in the disk.

Monitor the disk usage of the disk where the following directories are located:

- Data storage destination directory
- Transaction log storage destination (if the transaction log is stored in a different directory from the data storage destination directory)
- Backup data storage destination directory
- Tablespace storage destination directory

#### 9.2.1 Monitoring Disk Usage

To check the disk usage, use the following operating system commands:

- `df` command

You can even use SQL statements to check tables and indexes individually.

Refer to "Determining Disk Usage" under "Server Administration" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on this method.



Information

If you are using WebAdmin for operations, a warning is displayed when disk usage reaches 80%

#### 9.2.2 Securing Free Disk Space

Secure free disk space by using the following operating system commands to delete unnecessary files, other than the database, from the same disk unit.

- `rm` command

You can also secure disk space by performing the following tasks periodically:

- To secure space on the data storage destination disk:

Execute the REINDEX statement. Refer to "9.5 Reorganizing Indexes" for details.

- To secure space on the backup data storage destination disk:

Execute backup using WebAdmin or the pgx\_dmpall command.

## 9.3 Automatically Closing Connections

If an application stops responding and abnormally terminates for any reason, the connection from the application may remain active on the database server. If this situation continues for an extended period, other applications attempting to connect to the database server may encounter an error, or an error indicating that the tables are unavailable may occur.

It is, therefore, recommended that idle connections be closed automatically at regular intervals.

Set the following parameters in the postgresql.conf file to indicate the time permitted to elapse before a connection is closed.

Parameter name	Setting	Description
tcp_keepalives_idle	Time until keepalive is sent (seconds) If 0, the default value of the system is used.	Sends keepalive to an idle connection at the specified interval in seconds It is recommended to specify 30 seconds.
tcp_keepalives_interval	keepalive send interval (seconds) If 0, the default value of the system is used.	Sends keepalive at the specified interval It is recommended to specify 10 seconds.
tcp_user_timeout	Time to wait for a response from the server (milliseconds) If 0, the default value of the system is used. If not set, the behavior is the same as if 0 were specified.	After establishing the connection, when sending from the client to the server, if the TCP resend process operates, specify the time until it is considered to be disconnected.  If a value other than 0 is specified in this parameter, the time until automatic disconnection is determined by the waiting time specified in this parameter. The actual wait time is until the timing of the first keepalive retransmission after the time specified by this parameter has elapsed.



### Note

If a value other than 0 is specified for the tcp\_user\_timeout parameter, the waiting time set by the tcp\_keepalives\_idle parameter and tcp\_keepalives\_interval parameter will be invalid and the waiting time specified by the tcp\_user\_timeout parameter will be used.



### See

Refer to "Connection Settings" under "Server Administration" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on the parameters.

## 9.4 Monitoring the Connection State of an Application

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres does not immediately delete the updated or deleted data. If the VACUUM determines there are no transactions that reference the database, Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres collects obsolete data.

However, obsolete data is not collected if there are connections that have remained active for an extended period or connections occupying resources. In this case the database may expand, causing performance degradation.



See

Refer to "Routine Vacuuming" under "Server Administration" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on the VACUUM command.

In such cases, you can minimize performance degradation of the database by monitoring problematic connections.

The following methods are supported for monitoring connections that have been in the waiting status for an extended period:

- [9.4.1 Using the View \(pg\\_stat\\_activity\)](#)
- [9.4.2 Using pgAdmin](#)

## 9.4.1 Using the View (pg\_stat\_activity)

Use the view (pg\_stat\_activity) to identify and monitor connections where the client has been in the waiting status for an extended period.



Example

The example below shows connections where the client has been in the waiting status for at least 60 minutes.

However, when considering continued compatibility of applications, do not reference system catalogs directly in the following SQL statements.

```
postgres=# select * from pg_stat_activity where backend_type = 'client backend' and state='idle in
transaction' and current_timestamp > cast(query_start + interval '60 minutes' as timestamp);
-[ RECORD 1 ]-----+-----
datid              | 13003
datname            | db01
pid                | 4638
leader_pid         |
usesysid           | 10
username           | fsep
application_name   | apl01
client_addr        | 192.33.44.15
client_hostname    |
client_port        | 27500
backend_start      | 2022-02-24 09:09:21.730641+09
xact_start         | 2022-02-24 09:09:23.858727+09
query_start        | 2022-02-24 09:09:23.858727+09
state_change       | 2022-02-24 09:09:23.858834+09
wait_event_type    | Client
wait_event         | ClientRead
state              | idle in transaction
backend_xid         |
backend_xmin       |
query_id           |
query              | begin;
backend_type       | client backend
```



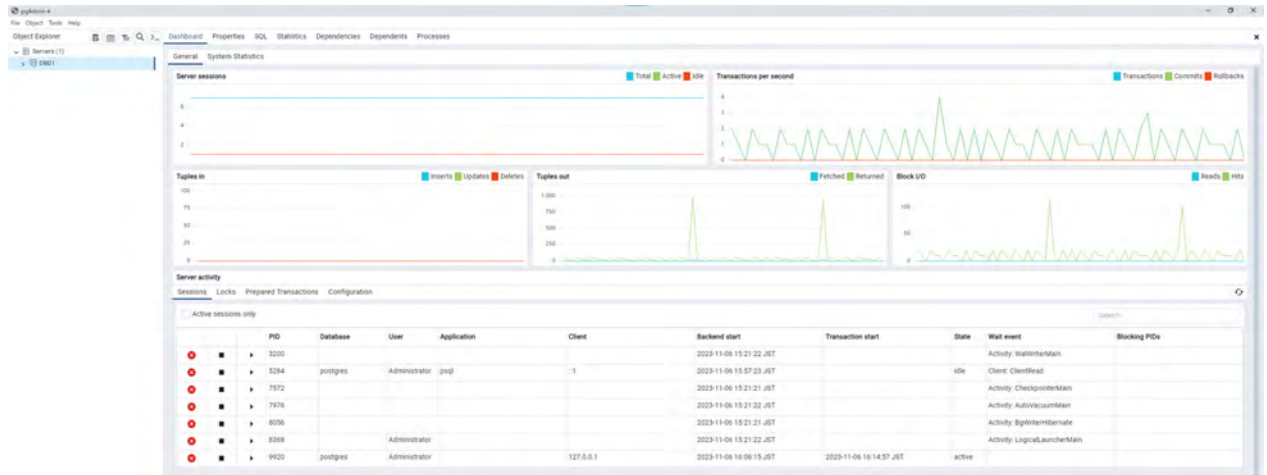
See

- Refer to "Notes on Application Compatibility" in the Application Development Guide for information on maintaining application compatibility.
- Refer to "The Statistics Collector" under "Server Administration" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on pg\_stat\_activity.

## 9.4.2 Using pgAdmin

This section describes the procedure for monitoring connections using [Server Status] in pgAdmin.

1. In the [Browser] pane, click the database server for monitoring.
2. In the [Dashboard] tab, identify client connections that have been in the waiting state for an extended period.



## 9.5 Reorganizing Indexes

Normally, a database defines indexes in tables, but if data is frequently updated, indexes can no longer use free space in the disk efficiently. This situation can also cause a gradual decline in database access performance.

To rearrange used space on the disk and prevent the database access performance from declining, it is recommended that you periodically execute the REINDEX command to reorganize indexes.

Check the disk usage of the data storage destination using the method described in "9.2 Monitoring Disk Usage and Securing Free Space".



### Note

Because the REINDEX command retrieves the exclusive lock for an index being processed and locks writing of tables that are the source of the index, other processes that access these may stop while waiting to be locked.

Therefore, it is necessary to consider measures such as executing the command after the task is completed.



### See

Refer to "Routine Reindexing" under "Server Administration" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on reorganizing indexes by periodically executing the REINDEX command.



### Point

Typically, reorganize indexes once a month at a suitable time such as when conducting database maintenance. Use SQL statements to check index usage. If this usage is increasing on a daily basis, adjust the frequency of recreating the index as compared to the free disk space.

The following example shows the SQL statements and the output.

However, when considering continued compatibility of applications, do not reference system catalogs and functions directly in the following SQL statements. Refer to "Notes on Application Compatibility" in the Application Development Guide for details.

[SQL statements]



```

SELECT
  nspname AS schema_name,
  relname AS index_name,
  round(100 * pg_relation_size(indexrelid) / pg_relation_size(indrelid)) / 100 AS index_ratio,
  pg_size_pretty(pg_relation_size(indexrelid)) AS index_size,
  pg_size_pretty(pg_relation_size(indrelid)) AS table_size
FROM pg_index I
  LEFT JOIN pg_class C ON (C.oid = I.indexrelid)
  LEFT JOIN pg_namespace N ON (N.oid = C.relnamespace)
WHERE
  C.relkind = 'i' AND
  pg_relation_size(indrelid) > 0
ORDER BY pg_relation_size(indexrelid) DESC, index_ratio DESC;

```

[Output]

schema_name	index_name	index_ratio	index_size	table_size
public	pgbench_accounts_pkey	0.16	2208 KB	13 MB
pg_catalog	pg_depend_depender_index	0.6	224 KB	368 KB
pg_catalog	pg_depend_reference_index	0.58	216 KB	368 KB
...				



See

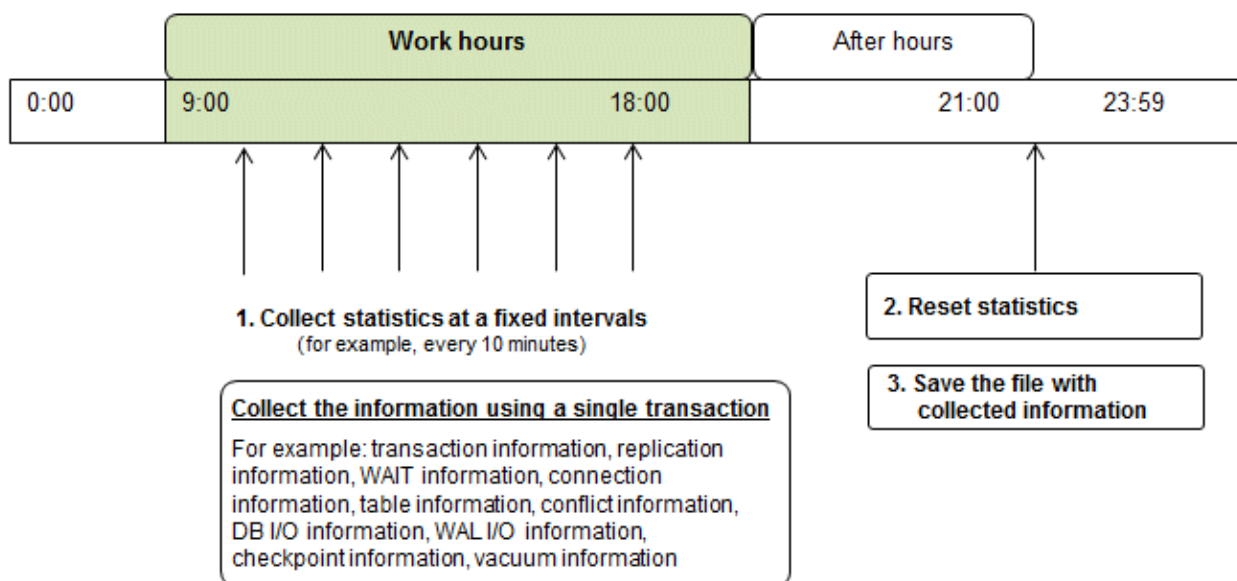
Refer to "Notes on Application Compatibility" in the Application Development Guide for information on maintaining application compatibility.

## 9.6 Monitoring Database Activity

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres enables you to collect information related to database activity. By monitoring this information, you can check changes in the database status.

This information includes wait information for resources such as internal locks, and is useful for detecting performance bottlenecks. Furthermore, you should collect this information in case you need to request Fujitsu technical support for an investigation.

Figure 9.1 Overview of information collection



1. Collect statistics at fixed intervals during work hours.

Accumulate the collected information into a file.

Wherever possible, collect data from the various statistics views using a single transaction, because it enables you to take a snapshot of system performance at a given moment.

Refer to "[9.6.1 Information that can be Collected](#)" for information on the system views that can be collected.

2. Reset statistics after work hours, that is, after jobs have finished.

Refer to "[9.6.3 Information Reset](#)" for information on how to reset statistics.

3. Save the file with collected information.

Keep the file with collected information for at least two days, in order to check daily changes in performance and to ensure that the information is not deleted until you have sent a query to Fujitsu technical support.

Where jobs run 24 hours a day, reset statistics and save the file with collected information when the workload is low, for example, at night.



## Note

Statistics cumulatively add the daily database value, so if you do not reset them, the values will exceed the upper limit, and therefore will not provide accurate information.

The subsections below explain the following:

- Information that can be collected
- Collection configuration
- Information reset

## 9.6.1 Information that can be Collected

Information that can be collected is categorized into the following types:

- Information common to PostgreSQL
- Information added by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

### Information common to PostgreSQL



## See

Refer to "Monitoring Database Activity" under "Server Administration" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on information common to PostgreSQL.

### Information added by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

You can collect the following information added by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

Table 9.1 Information added by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

View name	Description
pgx_stat_lwlock	Displays statistic related to lightweight lock, with each type of content displayed on a separate line. This information helps to detect bottlenecks. Refer to " <a href="#">D.2 pgx_stat_lwlock</a> " for details.
pgx_stat_latch	Displays statistics related latches, with each type of wait information within Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres displayed on a separate line. This information helps to detect bottlenecks. Refer to " <a href="#">D.3 pgx_stat_latch</a> " for details.

View name	Description
pgx_stat_walwriter	Displays statistics related to WAL writing, in a single line. Refer to " <a href="#">D.4 pgx_stat_walwriter</a> " for details.
pgx_stat_sql	Displays statistics related to SQL statement executions, with each type of SQL statement displayed on a separate line. Refer to " <a href="#">D.5 pgx_stat_sql</a> " for details.
pgx_stat_gmc	Displays statistics related to Global Meta Cache hit ration and used memory size. Refer to " <a href="#">D.6 pgx_stat_gmc</a> " for detail. Also refer to <a href="#">Chapter 14 Global Meta Cache</a> for information on the Global Meta Cache.

## 9.6.2 Collection Configuration

The procedure for configuring collection depends on the information content.

- Information common to PostgreSQL
- Information added by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

### Information common to PostgreSQL



See

Refer to "The Statistics Collector" in "Monitoring Database Activity" under "Server Administration" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on information common to PostgreSQL.

### Information added by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

Information added by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres is collected by default.

To enable or disable information collection, change the configuration parameters in postgresql.conf. The following table lists the views for which you can enable or disable information collection, and the configuration parameters.

View name	Parameter
pgx_stat_lwlock	track_waits (*1)
pgx_stat_latch	
pgx_stat_sql	track_sql
pgx_stat_gmc	track_gmc

Remarks: You cannot change the collection status for pgx\_stat\_walwriter.

\*1: When executing the SQL statement with EXPLAIN ANALYZE, processing time may increase because of this information collection. It is recommended to set this parameter to "off" when executing EXPLAIN ANALYZE to check the processing time.

Refer to "[Appendix A Parameters](#)" for information on the parameters.

## 9.6.3 Information Reset

This section describes how to reset information.

### Information added by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

You can reset information added by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres by using the pg\_stat\_reset\_shared function in the same way as for information common to PostgreSQL.

Configure the following parameters in the pg\_stat\_reset\_shared function:

Function	Type of return value	Description
<code>pg_stat_reset_shared(text)</code>	void	<p>Reset some cluster-wide statistics counters to zero, depending on the argument (requires superuser privileges).</p> <p>Calling <code>pg_stat_reset_shared('lwlock')</code> will zero all counters shown in <code>pgx_stat_lwlock</code>.</p> <p>Similarly, in the following cases, all values of the pertinent statistics counter are reset:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- If <code>pg_stat_reset_shared('latch')</code> is called: All values displayed in <code>pgx_stat_latch</code></li> <li>- If <code>pg_stat_reset_shared('walwriter')</code> is called: All values displayed in <code>pgx_stat_walwriter</code></li> <li>- If <code>pg_stat_reset_shared('sql')</code> is called: All values displayed in <code>pgx_stat_sql</code></li> <li>- If <code>pg_stat_reset_shared('gmc')</code> is called: All values except size column in <code>pgx_stat_gmc</code></li> </ul>



See

Refer to "Statistics Functions" in "Monitoring Database Activity" under "Server Administration" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on other parameters of the `pg_stat_reset_shared` function.

## 9.7 Monitoring Deferred SQL and Periodically Backing up statistics

After production starts, SQL execution can be delayed due to a variety of factors, including unexpected system load and data bias. You can detect delays early by monitoring for delays that affect operations. Monitoring can also reduce the time required for recovery tasks, such as determining the cause and resolving delays.

One cause of deferred SQL is a change in statistics. Some delays caused by statistics can be resolved by restoring the statistics before the delay occurred. For this reason, back up your statistics periodically to guard against delays.

### Operational workflow

The workflow required to monitor delayed SQL and back up statistics is shown below.

Corresponding time	Work item	Work details
During environment construction	(1) Enabling the <code>pg_dbms_stats</code> extension	Enable the <code>pg_dbms_stats</code> extension with the Create Extension statement.
	(2) Logging settings for delayed SQL monitoring	Set the <code>log_min_duration_statement</code> parameter etc. in <code>postgresql.conf</code> .
During system development	(3) Creating and reviewing a script for backing up statistics (*1)	Provide a script to back up statistics according to the statistics and Vacuum operation.
During operation	(4) Periodic backup of statistics	Execute the script created in (3) to back up the statistics.

Corresponding time	Work item	Work details
	(5) Monitoring delayed SQL and adjusting the allowable delay time	Monitor the occurrence of delayed SQL and adjust the allowable delay time to find the optimal settings for operation.
When delayed SQL occurs	(6) Investigating the cause of delayed SQL	If a delayed SQL occurs, we will investigate the cause of the SQL delay and consider countermeasures.
	(7) Restoring statistics (*2)	Delayed SQL is eliminated by restoring and fixing the backed up statistics.

\*1: Although it is possible to perform the work during operation, please consider the impact on operation and perform the work before starting operation.

\*2: If it is determined that the cause is not statistics, take appropriate measures according to the cause.

The specific work content is shown below.

### (1) Enabling the pg\_dbms\_stats extension

To back up and restore statistics, you need the export and import functions of the pg\_dbms\_stats extension, so enable the pg\_dbms\_stats extension.

For instructions on how to enable it, refer to "Setting Up pg\_dbms\_stats" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server.

### (2) Logging settings for delayed SQL monitoring

Database logs are used to monitor delayed SQL.

Make the following settings in postgresql.conf. Note that the date and time are important when investigating the cause of delayed SQL, set the format and file name to include the date and time.

Parameter	Specified value
logging_collector	on
log_line_prefix	Specify the following format and add information required for investigation, such as the time and executed application. [%t]%u %d %p[%I]
log_filename	Since you will need to check past execution records, set it so that you can see the date and time. postgresql.%Y-%m-%d
log_min_duration_statement	300000



#### Point

.....  
If the value specified for the log\_min\_duration\_statement parameter is small, even SQL that does not need to be considered delayed will be output to the log, and if it is too large, delayed SQL cannot be detected. Therefore, if the setting value cannot be estimated, set it small at the start of operation, and adjust it to a larger value as necessary while monitoring during operation.  
.....

### (3) Creating and reviewing a script for backing up statistics

To back up statistics, use the export function of the pg\_dbms\_stats extension.

The backup is used not only for restoration but also for identifying the cause of delayed SQL, so the time the backup was performed is important. Therefore, be sure to create a script like the one below so that the backup time is known.

We also provide a sample script that uses the export function to export on a database basis. This allows users to respond more flexibly by making modifications themselves, such as making changes on a schema basis, so copy the script to the execution current before using it.

The sample script is stored below. Also, "<x>" indicates the product version.

```
/opt/fsepv<x>server64/share/doc/extension/export_plain_stats-16.sql.sample
```

The following is an example of how to create a database using Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 16 by copying the database to the current execution directory as "export\_plain\_stats-16.sql".

```
expprt PATH=/opt/fsepv16server64/bin:$PATH
export CURRENTDIR=/pg_dbms_stats/backup

pushd "${CURRENTDIR}"

# make file name
EXECDATE=`date '+%Y%m%d%H%M%S'`
FILENAME=pg_dbms_stats_back.${EXECDATE}.dmp

# export
psql -d database1 -f export_plain_stats-16.sql

# rename dump file
mv export_stats.dmp ${FILENAME}

popd
```

#### (4) Periodic backup of statistics

Execute the script created in "(3) Creating and reviewing a script for backing up statistics" to back up the statistics information on a regular basis.

##### Backup execution interval

Perform backup at the following timings according to the statistics update method.

##### When statistics is automatically updated (autovacuum is enabled)

Statistics are updated when autovacuum is run.

Therefore, use the OS's cron command or schedule function of the task manager to periodically execute the export function and back up the statistics to a file.

Therefore, use the OS's cron command or a scheduler such as task manager to periodically execute the script created in "(3) Creating and reviewing a script for backing up statistics" and back up the statistics information to a file.

Obtain the shortest autovacuum execution interval from the log, and back up the statistics at an interval shorter than the obtained autovacuum execution interval. autovacuum logs can be obtained by setting the log\_autovacuum\_min\_duration parameter to 0.

##### When users update statistics

If the user controls the updating of statistics using the ANALYZE command, etc., back up the statistics at the same time as updating the statistics.

##### Backup retention period

The backed up statistics will be used as investigation material to determine the cause of delayed SQL if a performance problem occurs. Therefore, keep it for the period of time expected to be required from the occurrence of the operational problem to its resolution.

#### Point

- The capacity required for backup mainly depends on the number of objects (schemas, tables, etc.) contained in the database. Estimate the required capacity from the backup file when checking the operation of the script and secure this space.
- To restore backed up statistics, the names of objects such as schemas and tables in the backup source must match. If you change the name of an object during operation, change the backup file name or storage location so that you can check whether it matches the object definition when restoring statistics.

## (5) Monitoring delayed SQL and adjusting the allowable delay time

Monitors SQL that is delayed beyond the time set in the `log_min_duration_statement` parameter.

The settings in this section will be output in the following format.

```
[2024-04-30 10:20:11 JST]user1 postgres 3414[1]LOG: duration: 301001.541 ms statement: SELECT
pg_sleep(301)
[2024-04-30 10:26:12 JST]user1 postgres 3414[1]LOG: duration: 302002.321 ms statement: SELECT
pg_sleep(302)
```

When detected SQL is deemed to be delayed more than expected

Refer to "[\(6\) Investigating the cause of delayed SQL](#)" to determine the cause and take appropriate measures.

When SQL with execution time that does not affect operation is detected

The current setting just outputs redundant logs, so make major changes to the `log_min_duration_statement` parameter and then reload to enable it.

## (6) Investigating the cause of delayed SQL

There are many factors that can cause SQL delays, so you must first identify the cause.

Here we will show you how to investigate SQL delays caused by changes in statistics.

Note that in the following cases, delays caused by statistics are unlikely, so recommend investigating from a different perspective (I/O, system load, etc.).

- When the SQL statement does not contain a search condition
- When the SQL statement uses the `pg_hint_plan` extension

1. Check the delayed SQL from the server log and identify the schema used by that SQL.
2. In a database cluster (such as a development environment) separate from the production environment, create an environment (hereafter referred to as the reproduction environment) with the same database name and table definition as the environment where the problem occurred. The reproduction environment also requires the `pg_dbms_stats` extension, so enable the `pg_dbms_stats` extension.
3. Use the `pg_dump` command from the production environment to obtain the target table definition.  
Since the data is not needed at this time, use the `-s` option of the `pg_dump` command from the production environment and use the extracted table definition.

The following is an example of output to the file `ddl_schema.dmp` when the schema to be investigated is `schema_1` in database `database1`.

```
pg_dump -d database1 -s schema_1 > ddl_schema.dmp
```

Using `ddl_schema.dmp`, create a research schema named `schema_1` in the database named `database1` in the reproduction environment.

```
psql -d database1 -f ddl_schema.dmp
```

4. In order to identify the cause of the SQL delay, use the backed up statistics to check whether there is a cause of the delay in the statistics. Import the statistics into the schema in the reproduction environment using the `pg_dbms_stats` import function (`dbms_stats.import_schema_stats`).  
The following is an example of restoring statistics for schema `schema_1` from the backup file "`pg_dbms_stats_back.20240422011223.dmp`".

```
psql -d database1 -c
"SELECT dbms_stats.import_schema_stats('schema_1', 'pg_dbms_stats_back.20240422011223.dmp')"
```

Then, execute the `EXPLAIN` command for the deferred SQL to obtain the execution result (query plan).

5. Restore the statistics by separately importing the statistics that were backed up during the previous time period when deferred SQL was running stably.

For example, if the target SQL is executed daily as part of regular batch processing, use the data from the same time the previous day. For online processing, use the data from a previous time period when a similar business application is expected to be executed. The following is an example of restoring the statistics from the backup file "pg\_dbms\_stats\_back.20240421010001.dmp" from one day ago, assuming the SQL is used in batch processing.

```
psql -d database1 -c
"SELECT dbms_stats.import_schema_stats('schema_1','pg_dbms_stats_back.20240421010001.dmp')"
```

It likewise obtains the result of executing the EXPLAIN command on deferred SQL (query plan).

6. Compare the execution results (query plans) of 4. and 5., and take the following action based on the results.

- If the query plans are the same or the expected execution time of the query plan in 5. is longer  
This may be a problem other than statistics (system load, index imbalance, I/O, etc.), so investigate from a different perspective.
- Other than the above

The problem is likely that the optimal query plan was not selected due to updated statistics.

Refer to "(7) Restoring statistics" and import the statistics from the period when the system was operating stably into the production environment to restore the system.

## (7) Restoring statistics

Restore the production environment statistics to the state they were in before the delay occurred. The procedure is the same as for verification, but it is as follows:

```
psql -d database1 -c
"SELECT dbms_stats.import_schema_stats('schema_1','pg_dbms_stats_back.20240422000000')"
```

# 9.8 Performance Tuning

## 9.8.1 Enhanced Query Plan Stability

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres estimates the cost of query plans based on SQL statements and database statistics, and selects the least expensive query plan. However, like other databases, Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres does not necessarily select the most suitable query plan. For example, it may suddenly select unsuitable query plan due to changes in the data conditions.

If you know that the statistics will not change significantly, you can control the selection of the same query plan by directly specifying which query plan to select in pg\_hint\_plan, or by fixing the statistics referenced by the planner in pg\_dbms\_stats.

Also, pg\_dbms\_stats from Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres can fix statistics (height of Btree indexes) that OSS pg\_dbms\_stats cannot account for. Refer to "9.8.1.1 Fixing the Height of a Btree Index".



See

- For information about setting up pg\_hint\_plan and pg\_dbms\_stats, refer to "pg\_hint\_plan" and "pg\_dbms\_stats" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server.
- For basic usage of pg\_hint\_plan and pg\_dbms\_stats, refer to below.
  - Control execution plans with pg\_hint\_plan  
<https://www.postgresql.fastware.com/postgresql-insider-tun-hint-plan>
  - Control execution plans by fixing statistics with pg\_dbms\_stats  
<https://www.postgresql.fastware.com/postgresql-insider-tun-dbms-stt>
- For more information about pg\_hint\_plan and pg\_dbms\_stats, refer to the OSS web page.



### 9.8.1.1 Fixing the Height of a Btree Index

When PostgreSQL creates a query plan, it also references the height of the Btree index to be used as part of the statistics. However, OSS `pg_dbms_stats` does not include the height of the Btree index in its fixed statistics. The height of a Btree index is also fixed in `pg_dbms_stats` for Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

Fixing the height of a Btree index covers Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 16 and later, so to maintain compatibility with earlier versions, specify something like:

- PostgreSQL 9.2 and earlier compatibility

```
pg_dbms_stats.use_tree_height = off
```

- Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 15 SP2 and earlier compatibility

```
pg_dbms_stats.lock_tree_height = off
```

See the table below for details on each parameter. If you want the parameter value to be valid for all sessions, specify it in `postgresql.conf` and then reload.

Parameter	Specified value	Default
<code>pg_dbms_stats.use_tree_height</code>	Specify whether to include the Btree index height in cost calculation and plan generation when statistics are fixed.  on: Includes Btree index height in cost calculations and plan generation.  off: Do not include Btree index height in cost calculation or plan generation.	on
<code>pg_dbms_stats.lock_tree_height</code>	Specify whether to also fix the height of the Btree index when you fix the statistics. Note that this is valid only when the specified value of <code>pg_dbms_stats.use_tree_height</code> is "on".  on: Fixes the height of the Btree index at the height when locked.  off: The height of the Btree index is not fixed and varies depending on the amount of data in the index.	on

#### When you want to import statistics from your legacy environment

The format of files handled by the import/export functions of this version of `pg_dbms_stats` is different from the format of `pg_dbms_stats` in OSS or Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 15SP2 or earlier. Therefore, statistics exported from `pg_dbms_stats` for OSS or Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 15SP2 or earlier should be imported using the `dbms_stats.import_<obj>_stats_no_tree_height` function.

How to specify the `dbms_stats.import_<obj>_stats_no_tree_height` function

```
dbms_stats.import_<obj>_stats_no_tree_height('Absolute path of export file')
```

<obj> indicates a database (currently connected), schema, table, or column.

Import using the `dbms_stats.import_<obj>_stats` function provided by OSS is not possible.

If you use the wrong import function, an error message containing the following HINT will be output. Check the combination of input file and import function type, and use the correct import function.

HINT: The import function may be incorrectly combined with the format of the exported data. Please check the documentation for the relationship between the import function and the available data.

## Chapter 10 Streaming Replication Using WebAdmin

This chapter describes streaming replication using WebAdmin.

A standby instance for streaming replication can be created from a standalone instance, a master instance, or another standby instance. The standby instance connects to the master instance and uses WAL records to replicate data. The standby instance can be used for read-only operations.

WebAdmin cannot back up standby instances.

Additionally, streaming replication can be set to asynchronous or synchronous mode.




### Point

- If a streaming replication cluster is created using WebAdmin, the network with the host name (or IP address) specified in [Host name] will be used across sessions of WebAdmin, and also used as the log transfer network.
- To use a network other than the job network as the log transfer network, specify the host name other than the job network one in [Host name].

For characters that cannot be specified in WebAdmin, refer to “[Appendix J WebAdmin Disallow User Inputs Containing Hazardous Characters](#)”.

## 10.1 Creating a Standby Instance

Follow the procedure below to create a standby instance.

1. In the [Instances] tab, select the instance from which a standby instance is to be created.
2. Click .
3. Enter the information for the standby instance to be created.
  - [Location]: Whether to create the instance in the server that the current user is logged in to, or in a remote server. The default is "Local", which will create the instance in the server machine where WebAdmin is currently running.
  - [Replication credential]: The user name and password required for the standby instance to connect to the master instance. The user name and password can be entered or selected from the Wallet. Refer to "[Appendix I WebAdmin Wallet](#)" for information on creating wallet entries.
  - [Instance name]: Name of the standby database instance to create.


The name must meet the conditions below:

    - Maximum of 16 characters
    - The first character must be an ASCII alphabetic character
    - The other characters must be ASCII alphanumeric characters
  - [Instance port]: Port number of the standby database instance.
  - [Host IP address]: The IP address of the server machine where the standby instance is to be created. This information is needed to configure the standby instance to be connected to the master.
  - [Data storage path]: Directory where the database data will be stored
  - [Backup storage path]: Directory where the database backup will be stored
  - [Transaction log path]: Directory where the transaction log will be stored
  - [Encoding]: Database encoding system
  - [Replication mode]: Replication mode of the standby instance to be created ("Asynchronous" or "Synchronous")

- [Application name]: The reference name of the standby instance used to identify it to the master instance.

The name must meet the conditions below:

- Maximum of 16 characters
- The first character must be an ASCII alphabetic character
- The other characters must be ASCII alphanumeric characters

4. Click  to create the standby instance.


If using WebAdmin to manage Mirroring Controller, the message below may be output to the server log or system log in the standby instance. No action is required, as the instance is running normally.

```
ERROR: pgx_rcvall failed
ERROR: pgx_rcvall: backup of the database has not yet been performed, or an incorrect backup storage
directory was specified
```


## 10.2 Promoting a Standby Instance

Streaming replication between a master and standby instance can be discontinued using WebAdmin.

Follow the procedure below to promote a standby instance to a standalone instance, thereby discontinuing the streaming replication.

1. In the [Instances] tab, select the standby instance that needs to be promoted.
2. Click .
3. Click [Yes] from the confirmation dialog box.

The standby instance will be promoted and will become a standalone instance, which is not part of a streaming replication cluster.

Once the standby instance is promoted to become a standalone instance, the backup storage status will be "Error". This is because no backups are available when the instance is newly promoted to a standalone instance. The status will be reset if a new backup is performed by clicking [Solution] or .




## 10.3 Converting an Asynchronous Replication to Synchronous

You can convert an asynchronous standby instance to a synchronous standby instance.

Converting an Asynchronous standby instance to Synchronous can cause the master instance to queue the incoming transactions until the standby instance is ready. For this reason, it is recommended that this operation be performed during a scheduled maintenance period.

When adding a synchronous standby instance, Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres will only keep the first entry in [Synchronous standby names] in synchronous state.

Follow the procedure below to convert an Asynchronous standby instance to Synchronous.

1. In the [Instances] tab, select the master instance of the relevant cluster.
2. Click .
3. In the [Streaming replication] section, edit the value for [Synchronous standby names].
  - Add the "Application name" of the standby instance you want to be in Synchronous mode.
4. Click .
5. Select the master instance and click .
6. Select the standby instance. [Instance type] will now show the updated status.






See

To learn more about the differences between synchronous and asynchronous standby modes and their behavior, refer to "Streaming Replication" in "High Availability, Load Balancing, and Replication" in the PostgreSQL Documentation.

## 10.4 Converting a Synchronous Replication to Asynchronous

Follow the procedure below to convert a Synchronous standby instance to Asynchronous.

1. In the [Instances] tab, select the master instance of the relevant cluster.
2. Click .
3. In the [Streaming replication] section, edit the value for [Synchronous standby names].
  - Remove the "Application name" of the standby instance you want to be in Asynchronous mode.
4. Click .
5. Select the master instance and click .
6. Select the standby instance. [Instance type] will now show the updated status.





See

To learn more about the differences between synchronous and asynchronous standby modes and their behavior, refer to "Streaming Replication" in "High Availability, Load Balancing, and Replication" in the PostgreSQL Documentation.


## 10.5 Joining a Replication Cluster

WebAdmin facilitates the joining of an old master of the cluster as a standby node.

1. In the [Instances] tab, select the remote instance (from where the new cluster node will stream WAL entries), and then click .
2. Configure the node to accept streaming requests from the new node.
3. In the [Instances] tab, select the new standby instance (which needs to be connected to the cluster), and then click .
4. Set [Replication host name] to the remote instance.
5. Enter [Replication credential].

Specify the user name and password required for the standby instance to connect to the remote instance. The user name and password can be entered or selected from the Wallet. Refer to "[Appendix I WebAdmin Wallet](#)" for information on creating wallet entries. Replication credential (user name and password) should not contain hazardous characters. Refer to "[Appendix J WebAdmin Disallow User Inputs Containing Hazardous Characters](#)".

6. Enter [Host IP address].

Specify the IP address of the node where the standby instance was created.
7. Click  to open the [Join replication cluster] dialog box.

For Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 13 and earlier instances, select [Restart later] or [Restart now], and then click [Yes] to set up the standby instance.

For Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 14 or later, click [Yes] to set up the standby instance.

8. Upon successful completion, the confirmation dialog box will be displayed.
9. Click [Close] to return to the instance details window.

The instance will become a standby instance, and will be part of the streaming replication cluster. The replication diagram will display the relationship between the standby instance and the remote instance. The user can change the replication relationship of the remote instance from asynchronous to synchronous (and vice versa) using the [Configuration] window.

# Chapter 11 Installing and Operating the In-memory Feature

The in-memory feature enables fast aggregation using Vertical Clustered Index (VCI) and memory-resident feature.

VCI has a data structure suitable for aggregation, and features parallel scan and disk compression, which enable faster aggregation through reduced disk I/O.

The memory-resident feature reduces disk I/O that occurs during aggregation. It consists of the preload feature that reads VCI data to memory in advance, and the stable buffer feature that suppresses VCI data eviction from memory. The stable buffer feature secures the proportion specified by parameter in the shared memory for VCI.

This chapter describes how to install and operate the in-memory feature.



.....  
This feature can only be used in Advanced Edition.  
.....

## 11.1 Installing Vertical Clustered Index (VCI)

This section describes the installation of VCI.

1. [Evaluating whether to Install VCI](#)
2. [Estimating Resources](#)
3. [Setting up](#)

### 11.1.1 Evaluating whether to Install VCI

VCI uses available resources within the server to increase scan performance.

It speeds up processing in many situations, and can be more effective in the following situations:

- Single table processing
- Processing that handles many rows in the table
- Processing that handles some columns in the table
- Processing that performs very heavy aggregation such as simultaneous sum and average aggregation

VCI will not be used in the following cases, so it is necessary to determine its effectiveness in advance:

- The data type of the target table or column contains VCI restrictions.
- The SQL statement does not meet the VCI operating conditions
- VCI is determined to be slower based on cost estimation



.....  
If performing operations that use VCI, the `full_page_writes` parameter setting in `postgresql.conf` must be enabled (on). For this reason, if this parameter is disabled (off), operations that use VCI return an error. In addition, to perform operations for tables that do not create a VCI when the `full_page_writes` parameter setting is temporarily disabled (off), do not create a VCI or perform operations to tables that created a VCI during that time.  
.....



- .....
- Refer to "[11.1.4 Data that can Use VCI](#)" for information on VCI restrictions.

- Refer to "Scan Using a Vertical Clustered Index (VCI)" - "Operating Conditions" in the Application Development Guide for information on VCI operating conditions.

## 11.1.2 Estimating Resources

Estimate resources before setting up VCI.

Select the aggregation that you want to speed up and identify the required column data. The additional resources below are required according to the number of columns.

- Memory

Secure additional capacity required for the disk space for the column for which VCI is to be created.

- Disk

Secure additional disks based on the disk space required for the column for which VCI is to be created, as VCI stores column data as well as existing table data on the disk. It is recommended to provide a separate disk in addition to the existing one, and specify it as the tablespace to avoid impact on any other jobs caused by I/O.



### Information

The operations on VCI can continue even if the memory configured for VCI is insufficient by using VCI data on the disk.



### See

Refer to "Estimating Memory Requirements" and "Estimating Database Disk Space Requirements" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server for information on how to estimate required memory and disk space.

## 11.1.3 Setting up

This section describes how to set up VCI.

### Setup flow

1. [Setting Parameters](#)
2. [Installing the Extensions](#)
3. [Creating VCI](#)
4. [Confirming that VCI has been Created](#)

### 11.1.3.1 Setting Parameters

Edit postgresql.conf to set the required parameters for VCI. After that, start or restart the instance.

The following table lists the parameters that need or are recommended to be configured in advance:

Parameter name	Setting value	Description	Required
shared_preload_libraries	Literal 'vci, pg_prewarm'	VCI and shared library to be preloaded at server start.	Y
session_preload_libraries	Literal 'vci, pg_prewarm'	VCI and shared library to be preloaded at connection start.	Y
reserve_buffer_ratio	Percentage of shared memory to be used for stable buffer table	Proportion of shared memory to be used for a stable buffer table.	N

Parameter name	Setting value	Description	Required
vci.control_max_workers	Number of background workers that manage VCI	Number of background workers that manage VCI. Add this value to max_worker_processes.	N
vci.max_parallel_degree	Maximum number of background workers used for parallel scan	Maximum number of background workers used for parallel scan. Add this value to max_worker_processes.	N



### Example

```
shared_preload_libraries = 'vci, pg_prewarm'
session_preload_libraries = 'vci, pg_prewarm'
reserve_buffer_ratio = 20
vci.control_max_workers = 8
vci.max_parallel_degree = 4
max_worker_processes = 18 # Example: If the initial value was 6, 6 + 8 + 4 = 18
```



### Note

An error occurs if you use VCI to start instances when procfs is not mounted. Ensure that procfs is mounted before starting instances.



### See

- Refer to "[Appendix A Parameters](#)" for information on all parameters for VCI. Refer also to default value for each parameter and details such as specification range in the same chapter. Refer to "Server Configuration" under "Server Administration" in the PostgreSQL documentation for information on shared\_preload\_libraries, session\_preload\_libraries, and max\_worker\_processes.

## 11.1.3.2 Installing the Extensions

Execute CREATE EXTENSION to install the VCI and pg\_prewarm extensions. Both extensions need to be installed for each database.

- Installing VCI

```
db01=# CREATE EXTENSION vci;
```

- Installing pg\_prewarm

```
db01=# CREATE EXTENSION pg_prewarm;
```



### Note

- Only superusers can install VCI extensions.
- VCI extensions can only be installed in public schema.
- Some operations cannot be performed for VCI extensions. Refer to "[11.2.1 Commands that cannot be Used for VCI](#)" for details.

## 11.1.3.3 Creating a VCI

Execute the CREATE INDEX statement with the "USING vci" clause to create a VCI for the desired columns and the "WITH (stable\_buffer=true)" clause to enable the stable buffer feature.

To use a separate disk for the VCI, specify the TABLESPACE clause.



```
db01=# CREATE INDEX idx_vci ON table01 USING vci (col01, col02) WITH (stable_buffer=true);
```

## Note

- Some table types cannot be specified on the ON clause of CREATE INDEX. Refer to "11.1.4.1 Relation Types" for details.
- Some data types cannot be specified on the column specification of CREATE INDEX. Refer to "11.1.4.2 Data Types" for details.
- Some operations cannot be performed for VCI. Refer to "11.2.1 Commands that cannot be Used for VCI" for details.
- The same column cannot be specified more than once on the column specification of CREATE INDEX.
- VCI cannot be created for table columns that belong to the template database.
- CREATE INDEX creates multiple views named *vci\_10digitRelOid\_5digitRelAttr\_1charRelType* alongside VCI itself. These are called VCI internal relations. Do not update or delete them as they are used for VCI aggregation.
- All data for the specified column will be replaced in columnar format when VCI is created, so executing CREATE INDEX on an existing table with data inserted takes more time compared with a general index (B-tree). Jobs can continue while CREATE INDEX is running.
- When CREATE INDEX USING VCI is invoked on a partitioned table, the default behavior is to recurse to all partitions to ensure they all have matching indexes. Each partition is first checked to determine whether an equivalent index already exists, and if so, that index will become attached as a partition index to the index being created, which will become its parent index. If no matching index exists, a new index will be created and automatically attached; the name of the new index in each partition will be determined as if no index name had been specified in the command. If the ONLY option is specified, no recursion is done, and the index is marked invalid. (ALTER INDEX ... ATTACH PARTITION marks the index valid, once all partitions acquire matching indexes.) Note, however, that any partition that is created in the future using CREATE TABLE ... PARTITION OF will automatically have a matching index, regardless of whether ONLY is specified.
- Parallel index build is not supported on VCI indexes.

### 11.1.3.4 Confirming that the VCI has been Created

Execute the SELECT statement to reference the pg\_indexes catalog, and confirm that the VCI was created for the target columns.

## Example

```
db01=# SELECT indexdef FROM pg_indexes WHERE indexdef LIKE '%vci%';
          indexdef
-----
CREATE INDEX idx_vci ON table01 USING vci (col01, col02)
(1 row)
```

## 11.1.4 Data that can Use VCI

This section describes on which relation types and for which data types VCIs can be created.

### 11.1.4.1 Relation Types

VCIs cannot be created on some relation types.

The ON clause of CREATE INDEX described in "11.1.3.3 Creating a VCI" cannot specify relations on which VCIs cannot be created.

- Relations on which VCIs can be created
  - Normal tables
  - UNLOGGED TABLEs

- Relations on which VCIs cannot be created
  - Materialized views
  - Temporary tables
  - Views
  - Temporary views
  - Foreign tables

## 11.1.4.2 Data Types

VCIs cannot be created for some data types.

The column specification of CREATE INDEX described in "[11.1.3.3 Creating a VCI](#)" cannot specify a column with data type on which VCIs cannot be created.

Category	Data type	Supported by VCI?
Numeric	smallint	Y
	integer	Y
	bigint	Y
	decimal	Y
	numeric	Y
	real	Y
	double precision	Y
	serial	Y
	bigserial	Y
Monetary	money	Y
Character	varchar( <i>n</i> )	Y
	char( <i>n</i> )	Y
	nchar	Y
	nvarchar( <i>n</i> )	Y
	text	Y
Binary	bytea	Y
Date/time	timestamp	Y
	timestamp with time zone	Y
	date	Y
	time	Y
	time with time zone	Y
	interval	Y
Boolean	boolean	Y
Geometric	point	N
	line	N
	lseg	N
	box	N
	path	N

Category	Data type	Supported by VCI?
	polygon	N
	circle	N
Network address	cidr	N
	inet	N
	macaddr	N
	macaddr8	N
Bit string	bit( <i>n</i> )	Y
	bit varying( <i>n</i> )	Y
Text search	tsvector	N
	tsquery	N
UUID	uuid	Y
XML	xml	N
JSON	json	N
	jsonb	N
Range	int4range	N
	int8range	N
	numrange	N
	tsrange	N
	tstzrange	N
	daterange	N
Object identifier	oid	N
	regproc	N
	regprocedure	N
	regoper	N
	regoperator	N
	regclass	N
	regtype	N
	regconfig	N
	regdictionary	N
pg_lsn type	pg_lsn	N
Array type	-	N
User-defined type (Basic type, enumerated type, composite type, and range type)	-	N

## 11.2 Operating VCI

---

This section describes how to operate VCI.

## 11.2.1 Commands that cannot be Used for VCI

Some operations cannot be performed for VCI extensions and VCI itself.

This section describes SQL commands that cannot be executed for the VCI extensions and VCI itself, and client application commands.

### SQL commands

- Operations that cannot be performed for the VCI extension

Command	Subcommand	Description
ALTER EXTENSION	UPDATE	The VCI extension cannot be specified.
	SET SCHEMA	This operation is not required for VCI.
	ADD	
	DROP	
CREATE EXTENSION	SCHEMA	The subcommands on the left cannot be performed if the VCI extension is specified, except when the public schema is specified.  This operation is not required for VCI.

- Operations that cannot be performed on relations containing a VCI

Command	Subcommand	Description
ALTER INDEX	SET	The subcommands on the left cannot be performed if a VCI is specified.
	SET TABLESPACE	
	ALL IN TABLESPACE	If the operation is required, delete the VCI using DROP INDEX, and re-create it using CREATE INDEX after completing the operation.
ALTER OPERATOR CLASS	RENAME TO	The subcommands on the left cannot be performed if a VCI is specified.
	OWNER TO	
	SET SCHEMA	This operation is not supported in VCI.
ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY	ADD	
	DROP	
	RENAME TO	
	OWNER TO	
	SET SCHEMA	
ALTER TABLE	ALL IN TABLESPACE <i>name</i> [ OWNED BY <i>roleName</i> ] SET TABLESPACE <i>newTablespace</i>	A tablespace that contains a VCI cannot be specified.  If the operation is required, delete the VCI using DROP INDEX, and re-create it using CREATE INDEX after completing the operation.
	DROP [ COLUMN ] [ IF EXISTS ] <i>colName</i> [ RESTRICT   CASCADE ]	A column that contains a VCI cannot be specified.  If the operation is required, delete the VCI using DROP INDEX, and re-create it using CREATE INDEX after completing the operation.
	ALTER [ COLUMN ] <i>colName</i> [ SET DATA ] TYPE <i>dataType</i> [ COLLATE <i>collation</i> ] [ USING <i>expr</i> ]	
	CLUSTER ON <i>indexName</i>	A VCI cannot be specified.  This operation is not supported in VCI.

Command	Subcommand	Description
	REPLICA IDENTITY {DEFAULT   USING INDEX <i>indexName</i>   FULL   NOTHING}	
CLUSTER	-	A table that contains a VCI and VCI cannot be specified.  If the operation is required, delete the VCI using DROP INDEX, and re-create it using CREATE INDEX after completing the operation.
CREATE INDEX	UNIQUE	The subcommands on the left cannot be performed if a VCI is specified.  This operation is not supported in VCI.
	CONCURRENTLY	
	[ ASC   DESC ]	
	[ NULLS { FIRST   LAST } ]	
	WITH	
	WHERE	
	INCLUDE	
CREATE OPERATOR CLASS	-	A VCI cannot be specified.  This operation is not supported in VCI.
CREATE OPERATOR FAMILY	-	
CREATE TABLE	EXCLUDE	
DROP INDEX	CONCURRENTLY	The subcommands on the left cannot be performed if a VCI is specified.  This operation is not supported in VCI.
REINDEX	-	A VCI cannot be specified.  This command is not required as VCI uses daemon's automatic maintenance to prevent disk space from increasing.

### Client application command

- Operations that cannot be performed on relations containing a VCI

Command	Description
clusterdb	Clustering cannot be performed for tables that contain a VCI.
reindexdb	VCIs cannot be specified on the --index option.

## 11.2.2 Data Preload Feature

The first aggregation using VCI immediately after an instance is started may take time, because the VCI data has not been loaded to buffer. Therefore, use the preload feature to load the VCI data to buffer in advance when performing VCI aggregation after an instance is started. When using the preload feature, execute the function `pgx_prewarm_vci` to each VCI created with CREATE INDEX.

```
db01=# SELECT pgx_prewarm_vci('idx_vci');
```



See

Refer to "[B.5 VCI Data Load Control Function](#)" for information on pgx\_prewarm\_vci.

## Chapter 12 Parallel Query

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres enhances parallel queries, by taking into consideration the aspects below:

- CPU load calculation
- Increase of workers during runtime
- Statistics view displays the action state

### 12.1 CPU Load Calculation

There may be a case when the user tries to execute a parallel query but there is not enough CPU available.

Adding dynamic workers at this stage will provide no benefits - instead, it may add overhead due to context switching.

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres takes into consideration the current CPU load when deciding on the number of workers for parallel query.

### 12.2 Increase of Workers during Runtime

This Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres enhancement allows systems to allocate additional workers during query execution (if there are workers available at the time). This improves query performance, which could otherwise starve of CPU if there were fewer or no workers when the query started.



The ability to increase workers during runtime is available only with parallel query.

### 12.3 Statistics View Displays the Action State

You can check the action state by using the existing statistics collector. Monitoring the statistics enables you to check the action state of parallel processing through, for example, changes in the system load.

The following table describes the column added to the statistics views:

pg\_stat\_all\_tables

Column	Data type	Description
parallel_query	bigint	Number of parallel query initialized in the table.

The parallel query column has also been added to the following views:

- pg\_stat\_sys\_tables
- pg\_stat\_user\_tables
- pg\_stat\_xact\_all\_tables
- pg\_stat\_xact\_sys\_tables
- pg\_stat\_xact\_user\_tables



Refer to "The Statistics Collector" in "Server Administration" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on the statistics collector and views.

Values will be set for the pgx\_stat\_sql view in Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres if parallel query is run.



See

Refer to "[D.5 pgx\\_stat\\_sql](#)" for information on pgx\_stat\_sql view.



# Chapter 13 High-Speed Data Load

High-speed data load uses the `pgx_loader` command to load data from files at high speed into Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.



- This feature is available only in the Advanced Edition.
- This feature is not available in single-user mode. This is because in single-user mode instances run in a single process, and it cannot start parallel workers.

## 13.1 Installing High-Speed Data Load

This section describes how to install high-speed data load.

### Installation flow

1. [Deciding whether to Install](#)
2. [Estimating Resources](#)
3. [Setup](#)

### 13.1.1 Deciding whether to Install

The feature achieves high speed data load by executing the `COPY FROM` command in parallel. If the database system is unable to use sufficient resources due to the feature using more resources than the `COPY FROM` command of PostgreSQL, load performance may be inferior to that of the `COPY FROM` command of PostgreSQL. Therefore, determine if the feature will be effective by considering the factors below before deciding to install.

#### Database server memory

If the value of `shared_buffers` in `postgresql.conf` is small, fewer data pages are cached to the shared memory of the database server. This will result in multiple parallel workers more often having to wait for write exclusive locks to the same data page. Moreover, the smaller the number of data pages, the more often the table expands. During table expansion, access to the table is exclusive (standby event name: `extend`), so write time increases. To cater for that, increase the value of `shared_buffers`.



#### See

The standby event name is stored in the `wait_event` column of the `pg_stat_activity` view. Refer to "wait\_event Description" in "The Statistics Collector" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for details.

#### Frequency of checkpoints

If checkpoints are issued at short intervals, write performance is reduced. If the messages below are output to the server log during data writes, increase the values of `max_wal_size` and `checkpoint_timeout` in `postgresql.conf` to reduce the frequency of checkpoints.



#### Example

```
LOG:  checkpoints are occurring too frequently (19 seconds apart)
HINT:  Consider increasing the configuration parameter "max_wal_size".
```

### 13.1.2 Estimating Resources

Estimate the memory requirements for high-speed data load.

Up to 128 parallel workers to perform data load can be specified for this feature. The additional resources below are required depending on the number of parallel workers.

- Dynamic shared memory created during data load

The feature creates shared memory and shared memory message queues during data load. These are used to send external data from the back end to the parallel workers, and for error notifications.

### Note

If the value of `shared_buffers` in `postgresql.conf` is small, the system will often have to wait for write exclusive locks to the same data page (as described in "Database server memory" in "[13.1.1 Deciding whether to Install](#)"). Since input data cannot be loaded from the shared memory message queues during such waits, they will often be full. In these cases, it will not be possible to write to the shared memory message queues, resulting in degraded data load performance.

### See

Refer to "High-Speed Data Load Memory Requirements" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server for information on the formula for estimating memory requirements.

## 13.1.3 Setup

This section describes how to set up high-speed data load.

### Setup flow

1. [Setting Parameters](#)
2. [Installing the Extension](#)

### 13.1.3.1 Setting Parameters

Set the parameters required for high-speed data load in `postgresql.conf`. After that, start or restart the instance.

The table below lists the `postgresql.conf` parameters that must be changed, and the values that must be added to their current values. After editing `postgresql.conf`, start or restart the instance.

Parameter	Setting	Required
<code>max_prepared_transactions</code>	Add the number of transactions that can be prepared by parallel workers during data load to the parameter's current value.  The resulting value must be equal to or greater than the maximum number of parallel workers used with this feature.	Mandatory
<code>max_worker_processes</code>	Number of parallel workers to perform data load.	Mandatory
<code>max_parallel_workers</code>	Add the maximum number of parallel workers to be used in a parallel query by this feature to the parameter's current value.  The resulting value must be equal to or greater than the number of parallel workers used with this feature.	Mandatory

### Example

The example below shows how to configure 2 instances of high-speed data load being executed simultaneously using a degree of parallelism of 4.

```
max_prepared_transactions = 13 #Example if the initial value was 5: 5 + 2 x 4 = 13
max_worker_processes = 16      #Example if the initial value was 8: 8 + 2 x 4 = 16
max_parallel_workers = 12      #Example if the initial value was 4: 4 + 2 x 4 = 12
```

### Note

As shown in the example above, set the value of max\_prepared\_transactions, max\_worker\_processes and max\_parallel\_workers multiplied by the number of instances of this feature executed simultaneously.

The table below lists the postgresql.conf parameters that must also be checked.

Parameter	Setting	Required
dynamic_shared_memory_type	Implementation of dynamic shared memory to be used by the instance.  The default value is recommended.	Mandatory

### See

Refer to "Resource Consumption" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on the parameters.

## 13.1.3.2 Installing the Extension

Execute CREATE EXTENSION to install the high-speed data load extension. The extension needs to be installed on each database.

### Example

The example below installs the extension on the "postgres" database.

```
postgres=# CREATE EXTENSION pgx_loader;
CREATE EXTENSION
```

### Note

- Only superusers can install the high-speed data load extension.
- The high-speed data load extension can only be installed on the public schema.

## 13.2 Using High-Speed Data Load

This section describes how to use high-speed data load.

### 13.2.1 Loading Data

To load data from a file into a Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres table, execute the pgx\_loader command in load mode.

### Example

The example below loads the file /path/to/data.csv (2000 records) into table tbl using a degree of parallelism of 3.

```
$ pgx_loader load -j 3 -c "COPY tbl FROM '/path/to/data.csv' WITH CSV"
LOAD 2000
```

## Point

If an external file contains data that violates the format or constraints, the data load may fail partway through, resulting in delays for routine tasks such as nightly batch processing. Therefore, it is recommended to remove the invalid data before executing the data load.

## Note

The data inserted using this feature is dumped as a COPY command by the pg\_dump command and the pg\_dumpall command.

## See

- Refer to "pgx\_loader" in the Reference for information on the command.
- Refer to "COPY" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on the deployment destination and access privileges for external files.

## 13.2.2 Checking Progress

If you are performing a data load with a large external file as input, you can verify that the process is continuing by getting progress information during the load. Progress information can be obtained from the pgx\_stat\_progress\_loader view. This view displays the sum of the progress information of the back-end process and the number of parallel worker processes. Search the pgx\_stat\_progress\_loader view, for example, with a SELECT statement, to locate the appropriate row. After running the pgx\_loader command, look in the pg\_stat\_activity view and locate a row in the pgx\_stat\_progress\_loader view with the PID obtained.

## Example

1. See the pg\_stat\_activity view. (9311 for back-end processes, 9312, 9313, 9314 for worker processes)

```
postgres=# select pid, application_name, backend_type from pg_stat_activity
 pid | application_name | backend_type
-----+-----+-----
 6216 |                  | autovacuum launcher
 6218 |                  | logical replication launcher
 6271 | psql             | client backend
 9311 | pgx_loader       | client backend
 9312 |                  | parallel loader for PID 9311
 9313 |                  | parallel loader for PID 9311
 9314 |                  | parallel loader for PID 9311
 6214 |                  | background writer
 6213 |                  | checkpointer
 6215 |                  | walwriter
```

2. Check the information in the pgx\_stat\_progress\_loader view.

```
postgres=# SELECT * FROM pgx_stat_progress_loader
 pid | datid | datname | relid | command | type | bytes_processed | bytes_total | tuples_processed | tuples_excluded
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----
 9311 | 222   | testdb  | 333   | COPY FROM | FILE | 192000          | 450000      | 189000          |
 |      |         |       |          |      | 3000            |             |                 |
```

Refer to "D.7 pgx\_stat\_progress\_loader" for information on the pgx\_stat\_progress\_loader view.

## Note

When you run the pgx\_loader command, the PostgreSQL pg\_stat\_progress\_copy view prints the progress of the back-end process and the number of parallel worker processes on each line. The backend process progress information tuples\_processed, tuples\_excluded is 0. Also, bytes\_processed and bytes\_total for worker processes are 0.

```
postgres=# SELECT * FROM pg_stat_progress_copy
pid | datid | datname | relid | command | type | bytes_processed | bytes_total | tuples_processed | tuples_excluded
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----
9311 | 222   | testdb  | 333   | COPY FROM | FILE | 192000          | 450000      | 0                | 0
|
9312 | 222   | testdb  | 333   | COPY FROM | FILE | 0               | 0           | 63000            | 0
|
9313 | 222   | testdb  | 333   | COPY FROM | FILE | 0               | 0           | 63000            | 0
|
9314 | 222   | testdb  | 333   | COPY FROM | FILE | 0               | 0           | 63000            | 0
|
```

Refer to "pg\_stat\_progress\_copy View" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on the pg\_stat\_progress\_copy view.

## 13.2.3 Recovering from a Data Load that Ended Abnormally

If a system interruption such as a server failure occurs while high-speed data load is being performed, transactions prepared using this feature may be changed to the in-doubt state. At that point, resources occupied by the transaction will be locked, and access to the relevant resources from other transactions will be blocked, rendering them unusable.

In such cases, check transactions that are in an in-doubt state, and resolve them.

### Checking for in-doubt transactions

This section describes how to check for in-doubt transactions.

1. Refer to the pgx\_loader\_state table in the pgx\_loader schema.

Retrieve the global transaction identifier (gid column) of in-doubt transactions. In-doubt transactions will contain "rollback" in the column "state".

## Example

The example below retrieves the global transaction identifier (gid) of in-doubt transactions performed by the database role myrole and that used table tbl. The retrieved global transaction identifiers pgx\_loader:9589 and pgx\_loader:9590 identify in-doubt transactions.

```
postgres=# SELECT gid, state FROM pgx_loader.pgx_loader_state WHERE
postgres=# role_oid IN (SELECT oid FROM pg_roles WHERE rolname = 'myrole') AND
postgres=# relation_oid IN (SELECT relid FROM pg_stat_all_tables WHERE
postgres=# relname = 'tbl');
gid          | state
-----+-----
pgx_loader:9590 | rollback
pgx_loader:9591 | commit
pgx_loader:9589 | rollback
(3 rows)
```

2. Refer to the pg\_prepared\_xacts system view.

Check if the in-doubt transactions retrieved above exist.



## Example

The example below checks if in-doubt transactions with the global transaction identifiers `pgx_loader:9589` and `pgx_loader:9590` exist.

```
postgres=# SELECT gid FROM pg_prepared_xacts WHERE gid IN ('pgx_loader:9589','pgx_loader:9590');
gid
-----
pgx_loader:9590
pgx_loader:9589
(2 rows)
```



## See

Refer to "[G.1 pgx\\_loader\\_state](#)" for information on the `pgx_loader_state` table.

## Resolving in-doubt transactions

Execute the `pgx_loader` command in recovery mode to resolve in-doubt transactions.

After executing the `pgx_loader` command in recovery mode, perform the procedure described in "[Checking for in-doubt transactions](#)" to check if the in-doubt transactions have been resolved.



## Example

The example below completes the in-doubt transactions prepared for table `tbl`.

```
$ pgx_loader recovery -t tbl
```



## Point

The recovery mode of the `pgx_loader` command only resolves transactions prepared by high-speed data load. For transactions prepared by an application using distributed transactions other than this feature, follow the procedure described in "[17.13 Actions in Response to Error in a Distributed Transaction](#)".

## 13.3 Removing High-Speed Data Load

This section describes how to remove high-speed data load.

### 13.3.1 Removing the Extension

Execute `DROP EXTENSION` to remove the high-speed data load extension. The extension needs to be removed on each database.



## Example

The example below removes the extension on the "postgres" database.

```
postgres=# DROP EXTENSION pgx_loader;
DROP EXTENSION
```

## Note

---

- The information required for operation of high-speed data load is stored in the `pgx_loader_state` table of the `pgx_loader` schema. Do not remove the high-speed data load extension if the `pgx_loader_state` table is not empty.
  - Only superusers can remove the high-speed data load extension.
  - The high-speed data load extension can only be removed on the public schema.
-

## Chapter 14 Global Meta Cache

The Global Meta Cache (GMC) feature loads a meta cache into shared memory using the `pgx_global_metacache` parameter. This reduces the amount of memory required throughout the system.



### Note

This feature can only be used in Advanced Edition.

## 14.1 Usage

Describes how to use the Global Meta Cache feature.

### 14.1.1 Deciding Whether to Enable the Global Meta Cache Feature

Global Meta Cache is a mechanism for sharing meta caches between processes, so it works well on systems with a high number of resources accessed and SQL connections. The number of resources is primarily the number of tables accessed by a process, the number of indexes, or the total number of all columns in all tables accessed.

In particular, consider using Global Meta Cache if the total size of the meta cache for each process exceeds the amount of installed memory, or takes up a large portion of that memory, thereby squeezing memory allocations to the database cache or the Operating system file cache. Using Global Meta Cache may increase the time it takes to execute a single SQL to reference a meta cache on shared memory, but you can expect a greater benefit from being able to allocate more memory, such as for the database cache.

If performance degradation using Global Meta Cache is not acceptable, you may want to limit the number of tables accessed by a process.

### 14.1.2 Estimating Memory for Global Meta Cache

To enable the Global Meta Cache feature, the `pgx_global_metacache` parameter must specify an upper limit on the size of the shared memory (Hereinafter, the GMC area) dedicated to Global Meta Cache. Ideally, this upper limit should be the size estimated in "[Appendix A Parameters](#)". Values lower than this can still work, but refer to "[14.1.3 How the GMC Memory Area Is Used](#)" on using the GMC area to understand the disadvantages.

### 14.1.3 How the GMC Memory Area Is Used

At startup, the memory for the GMC area is not used much, but the GMC area grows as new meta caches are placed in the GMC area. If it does, it discards any meta caches that the system determines are not heavily used and places a new one in the GMC area.

Therefore, the GMC area will work even if it is smaller than the estimate, but the meta cache will be regenerated if the discarded meta cache needs to be reused. Note that if this happens frequently, it will degrade overall performance.

With this in mind, it may not be a problem if, for example, the tables to be accessed are different depending on the time zone, and the degradation of the time zone immediately after the change is acceptable.

In any case, be sure to test and tune the system thoroughly before running it.

### 14.1.4 Enabling the Global Meta Cache Feature

To Enable the Global Meta Cache feature edit the `postgresql.conf` file and set the `pgx_global_metacache` parameter. Restarting the instance after editing the `postgresql.conf` file is required. Refer to "[Appendix A Parameters](#)" for information on the parameters.

Parameter Name	Description
<code>pgx_global_metacache</code>	Specify the maximum amount of memory for the GMC area on shared memory. When it's set to 0 (default value), the Global Meta Cache feature is disabled.  When enabled, the minimum value allowed is 10MB.



When the cache is created, if the total amount of meta caches on shared memory exceeds the value specified by `pgx_global_metacache`, the inactive, unreferenced meta caches are removed from the GMC area. Note that if all GMC are in use and the cache cannot be created in the GMC area, the cache is temporarily created in the local memory of the backend process.



## Example

Here is an example `postgresql.conf` configuration:

```
pgx_global_metacache = 800 MB
```

## Wait Events

The Global Meta Cache feature may cause wait events. Wait events are identified in the `wait_event` column of the `pg_stat_activity` view. GMC specific wait events are described below.

[GMC Feature Wait Events]

Wait Event Type	Wait Event Name	Description
LWLock	GlobalCatcache	Waiting to find, add, and remove meta caches in the GMC area.
IPC	GMCSweep	Waiting to select a meta cache that can be deleted when GMC space is low.  If the GMC is fully referencing and there is no deletable meta cache, it is waiting for the reference to be removed and a deletable meta cache to be selected.



## Note

If GMCSweep is happened frequently, increase the `pgx_global_metacache` setting.



## See

Refer to "Viewing Statistics" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on the `pg_stat_activity` view.

## 14.1.5 Estimating Resources

Refer to "Global Meta Cache Memory Requirements" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server for formulas to estimate the amount of memory used by the Global Meta Cache feature.

## 14.2 Statistics

Describes the statistics for the Global Meta Cache feature.

### 14.2.1 System View

You can check the cache hit ratio and size of the GMC area in the system view `pgx_stat_gmc`. Refer to "D.6 `pgx_stat_gmc`" for information on the columns.

If the cache hit ratio is low and the current memory usage is close to `pgx_global_metacache`, increase the `pgx_global_metacache` setting because performance may be degraded.

Refer to "9.6 Monitoring Database Activity" in the Operations Guide for information on the statistics.

# Chapter 15 Local Meta Cache Limit

Local Meta Cache Limit feature limits the size of a Local Meta Cache by removing it if it has not been accessed for a long time.



This feature is available only in the Advanced Edition.

## 15.1 Usage

Describes how to use the Local Meta Cache Limit feature.

### 15.1.1 Deciding Whether to Enable the Local Meta Cache Limit Feature

Refer to “[Appendix A Parameters](#)”, after estimating the total amount of memory to be used as the catalog cache and relation cache, when the total amount of memory exceeds the amount of installed memory or occupies a large amount of installed memory, consider using this feature.

This feature adds the action of discarding the meta cache that has been held permanently. If you attempt to refer to a destroyed meta cache again, the meta cache is recreated, so using this feature will result in poor performance compared to not using it.

Therefore, read the following to understand how to discard a meta cache.

- [15.1.3 Cache Removal when Local Meta Cache Limit is Enabled](#)
- [15.1.4 Performance Impact and Parameter Tuning of the Local Meta Cache Limit Feature](#)
- [Parameters for the Local Meta Cache Limit feature](#)

How to set the upper limit with these considerations is described in detail in the estimation formula in “[Appendix A Parameters](#)”.

### 15.1.2 How to Set Parameters for the Local Meta Cache Limit Feature

To enable the Local Meta Cache Limit feature, set the `pgx_catalog_cache_max_size` and `pgx_relation_cache_max_size` parameters.

Parameter Name	Description
<code>pgx_catalog_cache_max_size</code>	Specify the maximum amount of memory that the backend process should use as the catalog cache. You can enable catalog cache removal by setting it to 8 KB or more. When it is set to 0 (default value), the catalog cache removal is disabled.
<code>pgx_relation_cache_max_size</code>	Specify the maximum amount of memory that the backend process should use as the relation cache. You can enable relation cache removal by setting it to 8 KB or more. When it is set to 0 (default value), the relation cache removal is disabled.



#### Example

Here is an example `postgresql.conf` configuration:

```
pgx_catalog_cache_max_size = 1MB
pgx_relation_cache_max_size = 1MB
```

### 15.1.3 Cache Removal when Local Meta Cache Limit is Enabled

When this feature is enabled, the caching strategy is to keep the cache as long as possible within the specified upper limit. If holding a new cache exceeds the limit, consider locality of reference and remove the cache from the one with the longest unreferenced time.

However, because the cache used by active transactions cannot be removed, if a transaction uses a large number of caches, the cache may be held above the limit. In this case, remove the all caches at the end of the transaction. This is necessary to free up memory.

In PostgreSQL, in order to acquire memory at high speed, a memory block of a certain size is acquired from the OS, and a small memory is cut out from the block and used. The memory for the metacache is cut out in the same way. Therefore, it is possible to return the memory block to the OS by destroying all the meta caches scattered throughout the memory block. When this happens, the next SQL execution will be slowed down due to the re-creation of the meta cache. Therefore, upper limit of feature should be set to a value larger than the size of the meta cache used by at least one transaction.

When the size of the meta cache exceeds the upper limit, the following message is output:

```
WARNING: could not reduce Cat/RelCacheMemoryContext size to AA kilobytes, reduced to BB kilobytes
HINT: consider increasing the configuration parameter pgx_catalog/relation_cache_max_size
```

(AA: Upper limit, BB: Amount of memory actually used)

CatCacheMemoryContext and RelCacheMemoryContext are memory areas for storing the catalog cache and relation cache, respectively. If this message is output, consider increasing the upper limit.

If the memory consumption by the backend process exceeds the allowable value by increasing the upper limit, reconsider the SQL to be executed, such as reducing the number of tables accessed in one transaction, or add memory adjust to the amount of memory used.

## 15.1.4 Performance Impact and Parameter Tuning of the Local Meta Cache Limit Feature

By observing how much meta cache regeneration is taking place, you can determine if the low upper limit is the cause of the failure to achieve the desired performance.

From the message below, calculate the cache hit ratio as follows:

```
Cache hit ratio = Number of cache hits ÷ Number of times the cache was searched
```

If the cache hit ratio is 80% or higher, this feature will not be the main factor that impedes performance. If not, raise the upper limit and see if performance can reach the goal. In doing so, first try to shift the focus of allocation to the relations cache. This is because when executing SQL, the relation cache generated based on the catalog cache is mainly referenced, so it is advantageous to leave a large amount of relation cache.

```
Catalog cache:catalog cache hit stats: search XX, hits YY
Relation cache:relation cache hit stats: search XX, hits YY
```

(XX: Number of times the cache was searched, YY: Number of cache hits)

This message is printed when the transaction ends. However, if you output the message frequently, the performance will be degraded by itself, so you can adjust the output interval with the following parameters.

Parameter Name	Description
pgx_cache_hit_log_interval	<p>When the transaction ends, if the time set in this parameter has elapsed since the previous message was output, the message is output.</p> <p>If set to 0, a message will be output each time the transaction ends. Setting -1 disables the output. The default value is 10min.</p> <p>Even if pgx_catalog_cache_max_size and pgx_relation_cache_max_size are disabled, the message output of the corresponding cache will be invalid.</p> <p>Immediately after connecting to the server, a small transaction occurs before the request from the user application, such as for user authentication. Since it is meaningless to know the hit ratio for these, a message is output at the end of the transaction that started after the time set in this parameter has elapsed after connecting to the server.</p> <p>For the same reason, setting a small value such as 0 may result in a message being printed at the end of such a small transaction.</p> <p>You can check which transaction the message corresponds to from the information output at the beginning. This information depends on the setting of the parameter log_line_prefix.</p>



## Example

Here is an example postgresql.conf configuration:

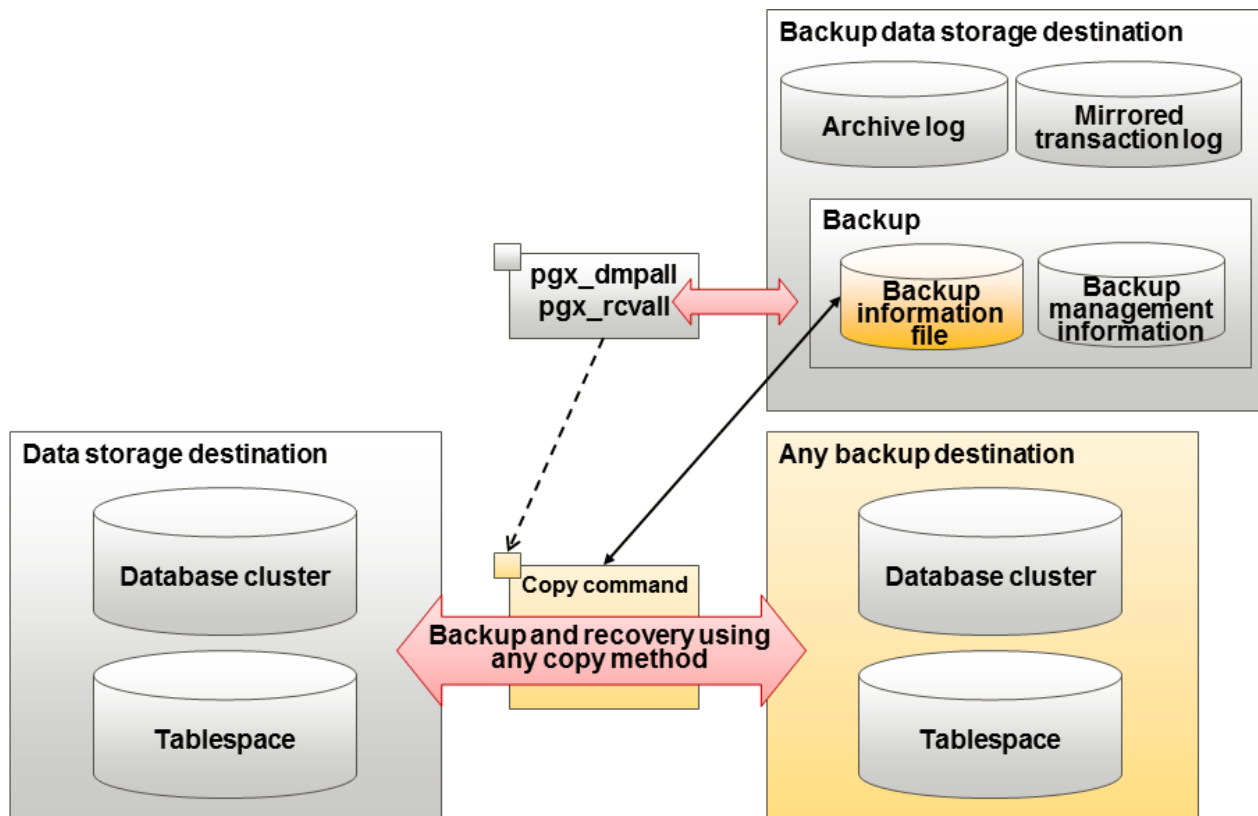
```
pgx_cache_hit_log_interval= 30min
```

## Chapter 16 Backup/Recovery Using the Copy Command

By using a copy command created by the user, the `pgx_dmpall` command and the `pgx_rcvall` command can perform backup to any destination and can perform recovery from any destination using any copy method.

Copy commands must be created in advance as executable scripts for the user to implement the copy process on database clusters and tablespaces, and are called when executing the `pgx_dmpall` and `pgx_rcvall` commands.

This appendix describes backup/recovery using the copy command.



### Point

- By using the high-speed copy feature of the storage device to copy the data storage destination, the processing time for backup of large databases can be greatly reduced.
- It is also possible to back up only some tablespaces using the copy command. However, database resources not backed up using the copy command are still backed up to the backup data storage destination.

### Note

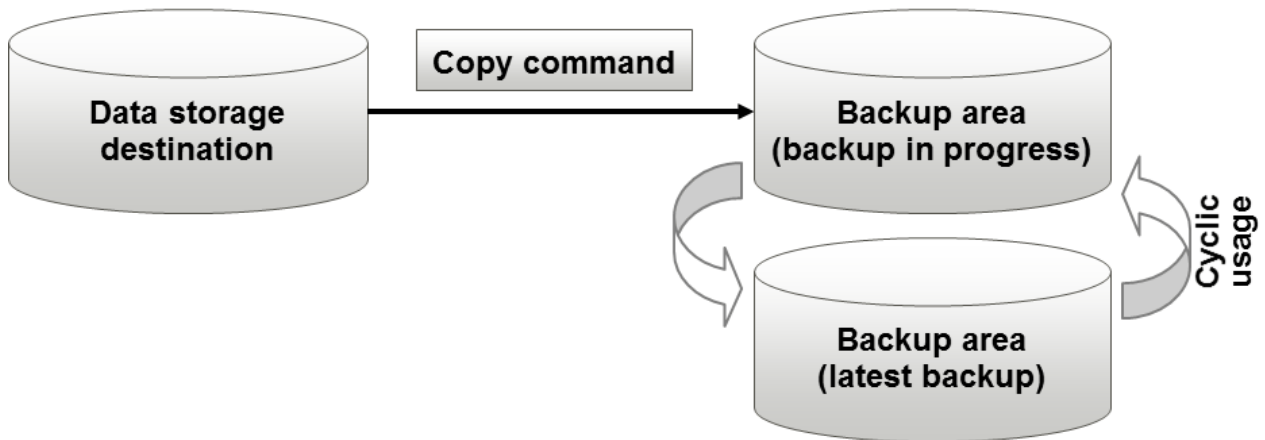
Both the backup data storage destination and the optional backup destination are necessary for recovery - if they are located in secondary media, combined management of these is necessary.

## 16.1 Configuration of the Copy Command

This section describes the configuration of the copy command for backup and recovery.

### Cyclic usage of the backup area

Prepare two backup areas for the copy command in case an issue affects the data storage destination during backup. The copy command performs backup while cyclically using these backup areas.

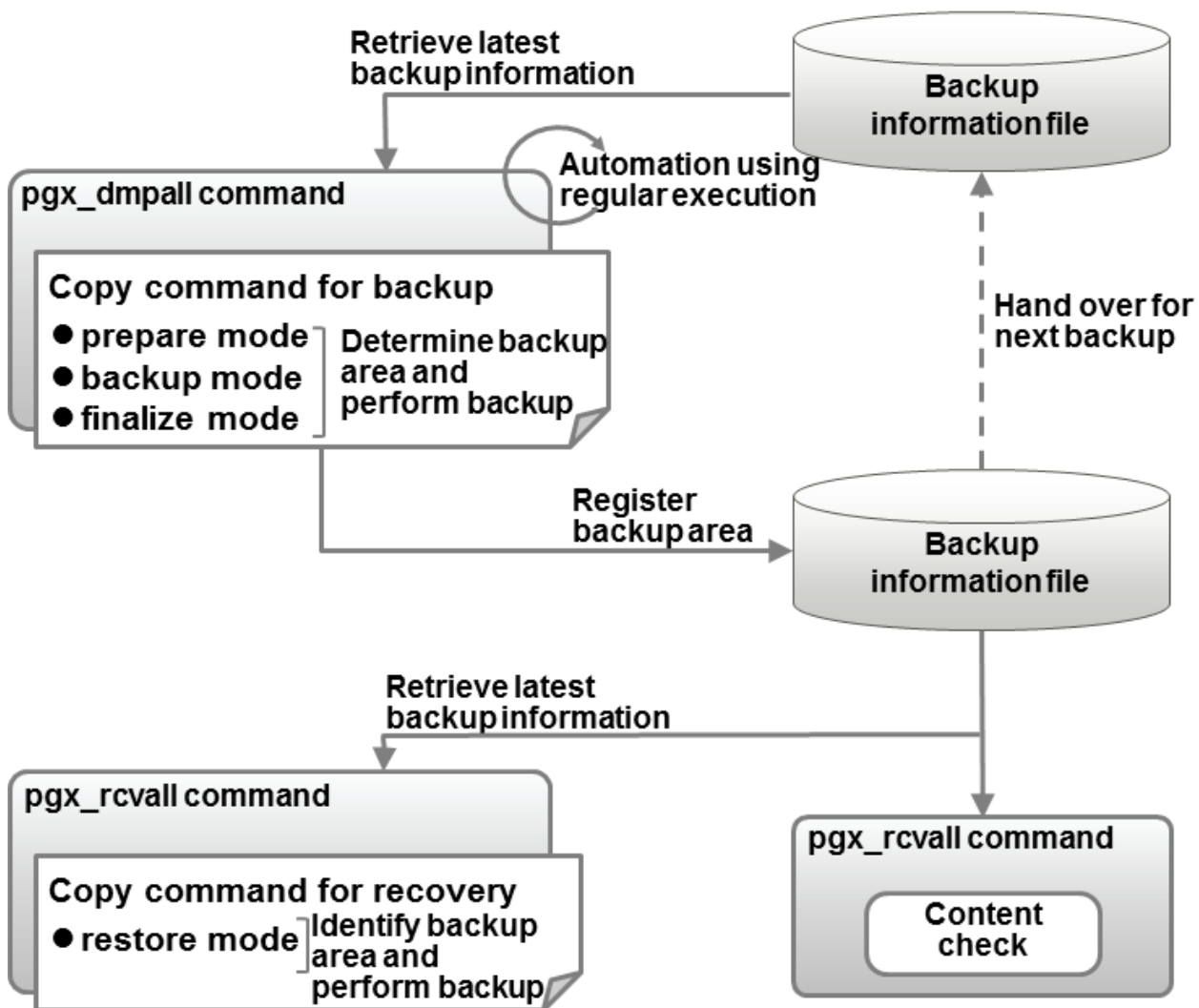


#### Note

The backup data storage destination cannot be used as these backup areas used by the copy command.

### Backup using the backup information file

The copy command must determine the backup destination on each backup, as it is necessary to cycle through the backup areas. Backup can be automated by using the backup information file, which contains information about the backup destination.



### Information

The backup information file is prepared in the backup data storage destination by the `pgx_dmpall` command, and contains information that can be read or updated by the copy command. This file is managed by associating it with the latest backup successfully completed by the `pgx_dmpall` command, so the latest backup information relating to the copy command registered by the user can be retrieved. Additionally, the content of the backup information file can be displayed using the `pgx_rcvall` command.

### Configuration of the copy command for backup

The `pgx_dmpall` command calls the copy command for backup after execution for the three modes below. It is therefore necessary for the copy command for backup to implement the required processing for each of the modes.

#### - prepare mode

Determines which of the two backup areas will be used for the current backup.

The backup area to be used for the current backup is determined by reading the information relating to the latest backup destination where the backup information file was written to during the previous backup.

#### - backup mode

Performs backup on the backup area determined by prepare mode, using any copy method.

#### - finalize mode

Writes information relating to the destination of the current backup to the backup information file.

This enables the prepare mode to check the destination of the previous backup during the next backup.

## Note

The user can use any method to hand over backup information between modes within the copy command, such as creating temporary files.

## Configuration of the copy command for recovery

The `pgx_rcvall` command calls the copy command for recovery for the mode below. It is therefore necessary for the copy command for recovery to implement the required processing for the mode.

- restore mode

Any copy method can be used to implement restore from the backup destination retrieved using the copy command for backup.

## Point

By referring to the mode assigned to the copy command as an argument, backup and recovery can be implemented using a single copy command.

## Example

### Using a bash script

```
case $1 in
  prepare)
    processingRequiredForPrepareMode
    ;;
  backup)
    processingRequiredForBackupMode
    ;;
  finalize)
    processingRequiredForFinalizeMode
    ;;
  restore)
    processingRequiredForRestoreMode
    ;;
esac
```

## Point

- A sample script that backs up the database cluster and tablespace directory to a specific directory is supplied to demonstrate how to write a copy command.

The sample is stored in the directory below:

```
/installDir/share/copy_command.archive.sh.sample
```

- A sample script that uses OPC (an advanced copy feature of Fujitsu Storage ETERNUS disk array) is supplied. Refer to "[Appendix K Copy Command Samples that Use the Advanced Copy Feature of the ETERNUS Disk Array](#)" for details.

The samples cannot be used on SLES 15.



## 16.2 Backup Using the Copy Command

To perform backup using the copy command, in addition to performing the standard backup procedure, it is also necessary to create a copy command, and then execute the `pgx_dmpall` command specifying it. This section describes the procedure specific to using the copy command.

### Preparing for backup

You must prepare for backup before actually starting the backup process.

Perform the following procedure:

1. Determine the database resources to be backed up

Determine the database resources to be backed up using the copy command. The copy command can back up the following resources:

- Database cluster
- Tablespace

To back up only some tablespaces, create a file listing them. This file is not necessary to back up all tablespaces.

#### Example

To back up only tablespaces `tblspc1` and `tblspc2`

```
tblspc1  
tblspc2
```

2. Prepare a backup area

Prepare a backup area to save the database resources to be backed up, as determined in step 1.

3. Create the copy command

Create the copy commands for backup and recovery. Refer to "[16.4 Copy Command Interface](#)" for details.

### Performing backup

Execute the `pgx_dmpall` command with the `-Y` option specifying the full path of the copy command for backup created in step 3 of preparation for backup.

The example below backs up only some tablespaces, but not the database cluster, using the copy command.



#### Example

```
$ pgx_dmpall -D /database/inst1 -Y '/database/command/backup.sh'  
--exclude-copy-cluster -P '/database/command/tablespace_list.txt'
```



#### Point

- To exclude up the database cluster from backup using the copy command, specify the `--exclude-copy-cluster` option.
- To back up only some tablespaces using the copy command, use the `-P` option specifying the full path of the file created in step 1 of preparation for backup.



#### See

- Refer to "`pgx_dmpall`" in the Reference for information on the command.

## Checking backup status

Use the `pgx_rcvall` command to check the backup status.

Execute the `pgx_rcvall` command with the `-l` option specified to output backup data information. If backup was performed using the copy command, the resources backed up using the copy command will also be output.



### Example

```
$ pgx_rcvall -l -D /database/inst1
Date                Status    Dir                                Resources backed up by the copy command
2022-03-01 13:30:40 COMPLETE /backup/inst1/2022-03-01_13-30-40 pg_data,dbspace,indexspace
```

## 16.3 Recovery Using the Copy Command

To perform recovery using the copy command, in addition to performing the standard recovery procedure, it is also necessary to create a copy command, and then execute the `pgx_rcvall` command specifying it. This section describes the procedure specific to using the copy command.

### Determining the backup area of the latest backup

Check the backup information file to determine the backup area used for the latest backup, and confirm that it is in a recoverable state.

Execute the `pgx_rcvall` command with the `--view-results-of-copying` option to output the content of the backup information file.



### Example

```
$ pgx_rcvall -D /database/inst1 --view-results-of-copying
```

### Perform recovery

Execute the `pgx_rcvall` command with the `-Y` option specifying the full path of the copy command for recovery created in step 3 of the preparation for backup described in "16.2 Backup Using the Copy Command".

The example below recover only some tablespaces, but not the database cluster, using the copy command.



### Example

```
$ pgx_rcvall -D /database/inst1 -B /backup/inst1 -Y '/database/command/recovery.sh'
```



### Point

If the latest backup was performed using the copy command, the `pgx_rcvall` command automatically recognizes which database resources were backed up using the copy command, or whether resources were backed up to the backup data storage destination. Therefore, recovery can be performed by simply executing the `pgx_rcvall` command specifying the copy command for recovery.



### See

Refer to "pgx\_rcvall" in the Reference for information on the command.

## 16.4 Copy Command Interface

The following types of copy command are available:

- Copy command for backup
- Copy command for recovery

This appendix describes the interface of each copy command.

### 16.4.1 Copy Command for Backup

#### Feature

User exit (for the copy command) called from the `pgx_dmpall` command.

#### Format

The syntax for calling the copy command from the `pgx_dmpall` command is described below.

If the operation mode is "prepare"

```
copyCommandName prepare 'pathOfBackupInfoFile' 'pathOfBackupTargetListFile'
```

If the operation mode is "backup"

```
copyCommandName backup
```

If the operation mode is "finalize"

```
copyCommandName finalize 'pathOfBackupInfoFile'
```

#### Argument

- Operation mode

Mode	Description
prepare	Implements the preparation process for backing up using the copy command. Called before the PostgreSQL online backup mode is started.
backup	Implements the backup process. Called during the PostgreSQL online backup mode.
finalize	Implements the backup completion process. Called after the PostgreSQL online backup mode is completed.

#### Point

.....  
If using high-speed copy of the storage device (which performs high-speed retrieval of snapshots and copies data to different physical areas), it is possible to invoke the snapshot process in backup mode, and the copy process in finalize mode.  
.....

- Full path of the backup information file

Full path of the backup information file of the latest backup, enclosed in single quotation marks. If a backup has not been performed, specify '-'.  
.....

- Full path of the backup target list file

Full path of the file containing the resources to be backed up using the copy command, enclosed in single quotation marks. One of the following is described in each resource name.

Resource	Description
Database cluster	pg_data
Tablespace	Tablespace name



## Example

To back up the database cluster and the tablespaces dbspace and indexspace using the copy command, the file should contain the following:

```
pg_data
dbspace
indexspace
```



## Information

The encoding of resource names output to the backup target list file by the pgx\_dmpall command is the encoding used when this command connects to the database with auto specified for the client\_encoding parameter, and is dependent on the locale at the time of command execution.

The number of arguments vary depending on operation mode. The argument of each operation mode is as follows.

Operation mode	First argument	Second argument	Third argument
prepare	Operation mode	Backup information file path name	Backup target list file path name
backup		None	None
finalize		Backup information file path name	

Additionally, the access permissions for the backup information file and backup target list file are different depending on the operation mode. The access permissions of each operation mode are as follows.

Operation mode	Backup information file	Backup target list file
prepare	Can be viewed by the instance administrator only	Can be viewed by the instance administrator only
backup	-	-
finalize	Can be viewed and updated by the instance administrator only	-

## Return value

Return value	Description
0	Normal end The pgx_dmpall command continues processing.
Other than 0	Abnormal end The pgx_dmpall command terminates in error.

## Description

- The copy command operates with the privileges of the operating system user who executed the pgx\_dmpall command. Therefore, grant copy command execution privileges to users who will execute the pgx\_dmpall command. Additionally, have the copy command change users as necessary.

- To write to the backup information file, use a method such as redirection from the copy command.
- Because the copy command is called for each mode, implement all processing for each one.
- To copy multiple resources simultaneously, have the copy command copy them in parallel.

### Note

- The backup information file and backup target list file cannot be deleted. Additionally, the privileges cannot be changed.
- Standard output and standard error output of the copy command are output to the terminal where the pgx\_dmpall command was executed.
- If the copy command becomes unresponsive, the pgx\_dmpall command will also become unresponsive. If the copy command is deemed to be unresponsive by the operating system, use an operating system command to forcibly stop it.
- Output the copy command execution trace and the result to a temporary file, so that if it terminates in error, the cause can be investigated at a later time.
- For prepare mode only, it is possible to use the PostgreSQL client application to access the database using the copy command. For all other modes, do not execute Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres commands or PostgreSQL applications.
- Enable the fsync parameter in postgresql.conf, because data on the shared memory buffer needs to have been already written to disk when backup starts.

## 16.4.2 Copy Command for Recovery

### Feature

User exit (for the copy command) called from the pgx\_rcvall command.

### Format

The syntax for calling the copy command from the pgx\_rcvall command is described below.

```
copyCommandName restore 'pathOfBackupInfoFile' 'pathOfBackupTargetListFile'
```

### Argument

- Operation mode

Mode	Description
restore	Performs restore.

- Full path of the backup information file

Full path of the backup information file, enclosed in single quotation marks.

- Full path of the backup target list file

Full path of the file containing the resources to be restored using the copy command, enclosed in single quotation marks.

The access permissions for the backup information file and backup target list file are as below.

Backup information file	Backup target list file
Can be viewed by the instance administrator only	Can be viewed by the instance administrator only

### Return value

Return value	Description
0	Normal end The pgx_rcvall command continues processing.
Other than 0	Abnormal end The pgx_rcvall command terminates in error.

## Description

- The copy command operates with the privileges of the operating system user who executed the pgx\_rcvall command. Therefore, grant copy command execution privileges to users who will execute the pgx\_rcvall command. Additionally, have the copy command change users as necessary.
- The copy command is called once only in restore mode.
- To copy multiple resources simultaneously, have the copy command copy them in parallel.

## Note

- The backup information file and backup target list file cannot be deleted. Additionally, the privileges cannot be changed.
- Standard output and standard error output of the copy command are output to the terminal where the pgx\_rcvall command was executed.
- If the copy command becomes unresponsive, the pgx\_rcvall command will also become unresponsive. If the status of the copy command is deemed to be unresponsive by the operating system, use an operating system command to forcibly stop it.
- Output the copy command execution trace and the result to a temporary file, so that if it terminates in error, the cause can be investigated at a later time.
- Do not execute Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres commands or PostgreSQL applications in the copy command.
- There may be files and directories not required for recovery using the archive log included in the backup, such as postmaster.pid, pg\_wal/*subdirectory* and pg\_replslot in the database cluster. If such unnecessary files and directories exist, have the copy command delete them after the restore.

## Chapter 17 Actions when an Error Occurs

This chapter describes the actions to take when an error occurs in the database or an application, while Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres is operating.

Depending on the type of error, it may be necessary to recover the database cluster. The recovery process recovers the following resources:

- Data storage destination
- Transaction log storage destination (if the transaction log is stored in a separate disk from the data storage destination)
- Backup data storage destination

### Note

Even if a disk is not defective, the same input-output error messages, as those generated when the disk is defective, may be output. The recovery actions differ for these error messages.

Check the status of the disk, and select one of the following actions:

- If the disk is defective

Refer to "[17.1 Recovering from Disk Failure \(Hardware\)](#)", and take actions accordingly.

- If the disk is not defective

Refer to "[17.14 I/O Errors Other than Disk Failure](#)", and take actions accordingly.

A few examples of errors generated even if the disk is not defective include:

- Network error with an external disk
- Errors caused by power failure or mounting issues

### Determining the cause of an error

If an error occurs, refer to the WebAdmin message and the server log, and determine the cause of the error.

### See

Refer to "Configuring Parameters" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server for information on server logs.

### Approximate recovery time

The formulas for deriving the approximate recovery time of resources in each directory are given below.

If using the copy command with the `pgx_rcvall` command, the recovery time will depend on the implementation of the copy command.

- Data storage destination or transaction log storage destination

$$\text{Recovery time} = (\text{usageByTheDataStorageDestination} + \text{usageByTheTransactionLogStorageDestination}) / \text{diskWritePerformance} \times 1.5$$

- *usageByTheDataStorageDestination*: Disk space used by the database cluster
- *usageByTheTransactionLogStorageDestination*: Disk space used by the transaction log stored outside the database cluster
- *diskWritePerformance*: Measured maximum data volume (bytes/second) that can be written per second in the system environment where the operation is performed
- 1.5: Coefficient assuming the time excluding disk write, which is the most time-consuming step

- Backup data storage destination

$$\text{Recovery time} = \text{usageByTheBackupDataStorageDestination} / \text{diskWritePerformance} \times 1.5$$

- *usageByTheBackupDataStorageDestination*: Disk space used by the backup data
- *diskWritePerformance*: Measured maximum data volume (bytes/second) that can be written per second in the system environment where the operation is performed
- 1.5: Coefficient assuming the time excluding disk write, which is the most time-consuming step

## 17.1 Recovering from Disk Failure (Hardware)

---

This section describes how to recover database clusters to a point immediately before failure, if a hardware failure occurs in the data storage disk or the backup data storage disk.

There are two methods of recovery:

- [17.1.1 Using WebAdmin](#)
- [17.1.2 Using Server Command](#)



### Point

Back up the database cluster after recovering it. Backup deletes obsolete archive logs (transaction logs copied to the backup data storage destination), freeing up disk space and reducing the recovery time.

### 17.1.1 Using WebAdmin

---

Recover a failed disk using WebAdmin.

In a streaming replication configuration, the master instance can be recovered, but the standby instance cannot. If disk failure occurs on a standby instance, it may be necessary to delete and re-create the instance. Also, recovering the master instance stops streaming replication to and from all standby instances. In such an event, the standby instances can be promoted to standalone instances or can be deleted and re-created.

Recover the database cluster by following the appropriate recovery procedure below for the disk where the failure occurred.

#### If failure occurred in the data storage disk or the transaction log storage disk

Follow the procedure below to recover the data storage disk or the transaction log storage disk.

1. Stop applications

Stop applications that are using the database.

2. Stop the instance

Stop the instance. Refer to "[2.1.1 Using WebAdmin](#)" for information on how to stop an instance. WebAdmin automatically stops instances if recovery of the database cluster is performed without stopping the instance.

3. Recover the failed disk

Replace the disk, and then recover the volume configuration information.

4. Create a tablespace directory

If a tablespace was defined after backup, create a directory for it.

5. Recover the keystore, and enable automatic opening of the keystore

Do the following if the data in the database has been encrypted:

- Restore the keystore to its state at the time of the database backup.
- Enable automatic opening of the keystore.

6. Recover the database cluster

Log in to WebAdmin, and in the [Instances] tab, click [Solution] for the error message in the lower-right corner.



## 7. Run recovery

In the [Restore Instance] dialog box, click [Yes].

Instance restore is performed. An instance is automatically started when recovery is successful.

## 8. Resume applications

Resume applications that are using the database.



WebAdmin may be unable to detect disk errors, depending on how the error occurred.

If this happens, refer to "[17.10.3 Other Errors](#)" to perform recovery.

### If failure occurred on the backup data storage disk

Follow the procedure below to recover the backup data storage disk.

#### 1. Recover the failed disk

Replace the disk, and then recover the volume configuration information.

#### 2. Recover the backup data

Log in to WebAdmin, and in the [Instances] tab, click [Solution] for the error message.

#### 3. Run backup

Perform backup to enable recovery of the backup data. In the [Backup] dialog box, click [Yes]. The backup is performed. An instance is automatically started when backup is performed.



If you click [Recheck the status], the resources in the data storage destination and the backup data storage destination are reconfirmed. As a result, the following occurs:

#### - If an error is not detected

The status of the data storage destination and the backup data storage destination returns to normal, and it is possible to perform operations as usual.

#### - If an error is detected

An error message is displayed in the message list again. Click [Solution], and resolve the problem by following the resolution for the cause of the error displayed in the dialog box.

## 17.1.2 Using Server Command

Recover the database cluster by following the appropriate recovery procedure below for the disk where the failure occurred.

### If failure occurred on the data storage disk or the transaction log storage directory

Follow the procedure below to recover the data storage disk or the transaction log storage directory.

#### 1. Stop applications

Stop applications that are using the database.

#### 2. Stop the instance

Stop the instance, refer to "[2.1.2 Using Server Commands](#)" for details.

If the instance fails to stop, refer to "[17.11 Actions in Response to Failure to Stop an Instance](#)".

### 3. Recover the failed disk

Replace the disk, and then recover the volume configuration information.

### 4. Create a storage destination directory

- If failure occurred on the data storage disk  
Create a data storage destination directory. If a tablespace was defined, also create a directory for it.
- If failure occurred on the translation log storage disk  
Create a transaction log storage destination directory.

#### Example

To create a data storage destination directory:

```
$ mkdir /database/inst1
$ chown fsepuser:fsepuser /database/inst1
$ chmod 700 /database/inst1
```



Refer to "Preparing Directories to Deploy Resources" under "Setup" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server for information on how to create a storage directory.

### 5. Recover the keystore, and enable automatic opening of the keystore

When the data in the database has been encrypted, restore the keystore to its state at the time of the database backup. Configure automatic opening of the keystore as necessary.

### 6. Recover the database cluster

Recover the database cluster using the backup data.

Specify the following in the `pgx_rcvall` command:

- Specify the data storage location in the `-D` option. If the `-D` option is omitted, the value of the `PGDATA` environment variable is used by default.
- Specify the backup data storage location in the `-B` option.

#### Example

```
> pgx_rcvall -D /database/inst1 -B /backup/inst1
```



If recovery fails, remove the cause of the error in accordance with the displayed error message and then re-execute the `pgx_rcvall` command.

If the message "pgx\_rcvall: an error occurred during recovery" is displayed, then the log recorded when recovery was executed is output after this message. The cause of the error is output in around the last fifteen lines of the log, so remove the cause of the error in accordance with the message and then re-execute the `pgx_rcvall` command.

The following message displayed during recovery is output as part of normal operation of `pgx_rcvall` command (therefore the user does not need not be concerned).

```
FATAL: the database system is starting up
```

### 7. Start the instance

Start the instance.

Refer to "2.1.2 Using Server Commands" for information on how to start an instance.

## 8. Resume applications

Resume applications that are using the database.

### If failure occurred on the backup data storage disk

The procedure for recovering the backup data storage disk is described below.

There are two methods of taking action:

- Performing recovery while the instance is active
- Stopping the instance before performing recovery

The following table shows the different steps to be performed depending on whether you stop the instance.

No	Step	Instance stopped	
		No	Yes
1	Confirm that transaction log mirroring has stopped	Y	N
2	Stop output of archive logs	Y	N
3	Stop applications	N	Y
4	Stop the instance	N	Y
5	Recover the failed disk	Y	Y
6	Create a backup data storage destination directory	Y	Y
7	Resume output of archive logs	Y	N
8	Resume transaction log mirroring	Y	N
9	Start the instance	N	Y
10	Run backup	Y	Y
11	Resume applications	N	Y

Y: Required

N: Not required

The procedure is as follows:

If an instance has not been stopped

#### 1. Confirm that transaction log mirroring has stopped

Use the following SQL function to confirm that transaction log mirroring has stopped.

```
postgres=# SELECT pgx_is_wal_multiplexing_paused();
pgx_is_wal_multiplexing_paused
-----
t
(1 row)
```

If transaction log mirroring has not stopped, then stop it using the following SQL function.

```
postgres=# SELECT pgx_pause_wal_multiplexing();
LOG:  multiplexing of transaction log files has been stopped
pgx_pause_wal_multiplexing
-----
(1 row)
```

## 2. Stop output of archive logs

Transaction logs may accumulate during replacement of backup storage disk, and if the data storage disk or the transaction log storage disk becomes full, there is a risk that operations may not be able to continue.

To prevent this, use the following methods to stop output of archive logs.

### - Changing archive\_command

Specify a command that will surely complete normally, such as "echo skipped archiving WAL file %f" or "/bin/true", so that archive logs will be regarded as having been output.

If you specify echo, a message is output to the server log, so it may be used as a reference when you conduct investigations.

### - Reload the configuration file

Execute the pg\_ctl reload command or the pg\_reload\_conf SQL function to reload the configuration file.

If you simply want to stop output of errors without the risk that operations will not be able to continue, specify an empty string ("") in archive\_command and reload the configuration file.

## 3. Recover the failed disk

Replace the disk, and then recover the volume configuration information.

## 4. Create a backup data storage destination

Create a backup data storage destination.

### Example

```
$ mkdir /database/inst1
$ chown fsepuser:fsepuser /database/inst1
$ chmod 700 /database/inst1
```

Refer to "[3.2.2 Using Server Commands](#)" for information on how to create a backup data storage destination.

## 5. Resume output of archive logs

Return the archive\_command setting to its original value, and reload the configuration file.

## 6. Resume transaction log mirroring

Execute the pgx\_resume\_wal\_multiplexing SQL function.

### Example

```
SELECT pgx_resume_wal_multiplexing()
```

## 7. Run backup

Use the pgx\_dmpall command to back up the database cluster.

Specify the following value in the pgx\_dmpall command:

- Specify the data storage destination in the -D option. If the -D option is omitted, the value of the PGDATA environment variable is used by default.

### Example

```
> pgx_dmpall -D /database/inst1
```

## If an instance has been stopped

### 1. Stop applications

Stop applications that are using the database.

### 2. Stop the instance

Stop the instance. Refer to "[2.1.2 Using Server Commands](#)" for details.

If the instance fails to stop, refer to "[17.11 Actions in Response to Failure to Stop an Instance](#)".

3. Recover the failed disk

Replace the disk, and then recover the volume configuration information.

4. Create a backup data storage destination

Create a backup data storage destination.

Example

```
# mkdir /backup/inst1
# chown fsepuser:fsepuser /backup/inst1
# chmod 700 /backup/inst1
```

Refer to "[3.2.2 Using Server Commands](#)" for details.

5. Start the instance

Start the instance. Refer to "[2.1.2 Using Server Commands](#)" for information on how to start an instance.

6. Run backup

Use the `pgx_dmpall` command to back up the database cluster.

Specify the following value in the `pgx_dmpall` command:

- Specify the data storage destination in the `-D` option. If the `-D` option is omitted, the value of the `PGDATA` environment variable is used by default.

Example

```
> pgx_dmpall -D /database/inst1
```

7. Resume applications

Resume applications that are using the database.



See

- Refer to "`pgx_rcvall`" and "`pgx_dmpall`" in the Reference for information on the `pgx_rcvall` command and `pgx_dmpall` command.
- Refer to "Write Ahead Log" under "Server Administration" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on `archive_command`.
- Refer to "[B.1 WAL Mirroring Control Functions](#)" for information on `pgx_resume_wal_multiplexing`.

## 17.2 Recovering from Data Corruption

If data in a disk is logically corrupted and the database does not operate properly, you can recover the database cluster to its state at the time of backup.

There are two methods of recovery:

- [17.2.1 Using WebAdmin](#)
- [17.2.2 Using the `pgx\_rcvall` Command](#)



Point

- Back up the database cluster after recovering it. Backup deletes obsolete archive logs (transaction logs copied to the backup data storage destination), freeing up disk space and reducing the recovery time.
- If you recover data to a point in the past, a new time series (database update history) will start from that recovery point. When recovery is complete, the recovery point is the latest point in the new time series. When you subsequently recover data to the latest state, the database update is re-executed on the new time series.

## 17.2.1 Using WebAdmin

---

If using WebAdmin, recover the data to the point immediately prior to data corruption by using the backup data.

Refer to "[17.1.1 Using WebAdmin](#)" for details.

## 17.2.2 Using the pgx\_rcvall Command

---

Recover the database cluster by specifying in the pgx\_rcvall command the date and time of the backup you want to read from. Then re-execute the transaction as required to recover the data.

Follow the procedure below to recover the data storage disk.

1. Stop applications

Stop applications that are using the database.

2. Stop the instance

Stop the instance. Refer to "[2.1.2 Using Server Commands](#)" for information on how to stop an instance.

If the instance fails to stop, refer to "[17.11 Actions in Response to Failure to Stop an Instance](#)".

3. Confirm the backup date and time

Execute the pgx\_rcvall command to confirm the backup data saved in the backup data storage destination, and determine a date and time prior to data corruption.

Specify the following values in the pgx\_rcvall command:

- Specify the data storage destination in the -D option. If the -D option is omitted, the value of the PGDATA environment variable is used by default.
- Specify the backup storage directory in the -B option.
- The -l option displays the backup data information.

**Example**

```
> pgx_rcvall -D /database/inst1 -B /backup/inst1 -l
Date                Status                Dir
2022-03-20 10:00:00 COMPLETE                /backup/inst1/2022-03-20_10-00-00
```

4. Recover the keystore, and enable automatic opening of the keystore

When the data in the database has been encrypted, restore the keystore to its state at the time of the database backup. Configure automatic opening of the keystore as necessary.

5. Recover the database cluster

Use the pgx\_rcvall command to recover the database cluster.

Specify the following values in the pgx\_rcvall command:

- Specify the data storage destination in the -D option. If the -D option is omitted, the value of the PGDATA environment variable is used by default.
- Specify the backup storage directory in the -B option.
- Specify the recovery date and time in the -e option.

**Example**

In the following examples, "March 20, 2022 10:00:00" is specified as the recovery time.

```
> pgx_rcvall -D /database/inst1 -B /backup/inst1 -e '2022-03-20 10:00:00'
```



## Note

If recovery fails, remove the cause of the error in accordance with the displayed error message and then re-execute the `pgx_rcvall` command.

If the message "pgx\_rcvall: an error occurred during recovery" is displayed, then the log recorded when recovery was executed is output after this message. The cause of the error is output in around the last fifteen lines of the log, so remove the cause of the error in accordance with the message and then re-execute the `pgx_rcvall` command.

The following message displayed during recovery is output as part of normal operation of `pgx_rcvall` command (therefore the user does not need not be concerned).

```
FATAL: the database system is starting up
```

### 6. Start the instance

Start the instance. Refer to "2.1.2 Using Server Commands" for information on how to start an instance.

If necessary, re-execute transaction processing from the specified recovery time, and then resume database operations.

### 7. Resume applications

Resume applications that are using the database.



## See

Refer to "pgx\_rcvall" in the Reference for information on the `pgx_rcvall` command.

## 17.3 Recovering from an Incorrect User Operation

This section describes how to recover database clusters when data has been corrupted due to erroneous user operations.

There are two methods of recovery:

- [17.3.1 Using WebAdmin](#)
- [17.3.2 Using the `pgx\_rcvall` Command](#)



## Point

- Back up the database cluster after recovering it. Backup deletes obsolete archive logs (transaction logs copied to the backup data storage destination), freeing up disk space and reducing the recovery time.
- If you recover data to a point in the past, a new time series (database update history) will start from that recovery point. When recovery is complete, the recovery point is the latest point in the new time series. When you subsequently recover data to the latest state, the database update is re-executed on the new time series.
- An effective restore point is one created on a time series for which you have made a backup. That is, if you recover data to a point in the past, you cannot use any restore points set after that recovery point. Therefore, once you manage to recover your target past data, make a backup.

### 17.3.1 Using WebAdmin

Recover data to a backup point using WebAdmin.

In a streaming replication configuration, the master instance can be recovered, but the standby instance cannot. If disk failure occurs on a standby instance, it may be necessary to delete and re-create the instance. Also, recovering the master instance stops streaming replication to and from all standby instances. In such an event, the standby instances can be promoted to standalone instances or can be deleted and re-created

Follow the procedure below to recover the data in the data storage disk.

1. Stop applications

Stop applications that are using the database.

2. Stop the instance


Stop the instance. Refer to ["2.1.1 Using WebAdmin"](#) for information on how to stop an instance.

3. Recover the keystore, and enable automatic opening of the keystore

Do the following if the data in the database has been encrypted:

- Restore the keystore to its state at the time of the database backup.
- Enable automatic opening of the keystore.

4. Recover the database cluster

Log in to WebAdmin, and in the [Instances] tab, select the instance to be recovered and click .

5. Recover to the backup point

In the [Restore Instance] dialog box, click [Yes].

Recovery is performed. An instance is automatically started when recovery is successful.

6. Resume database operations

If necessary, re-execute transaction processing from the backup point to when an erroneous operation was performed, and then resume database operations.

## 17.3.2 Using the pgx\_rcvall Command

---

The `pgx_rcvall` command recovers database clusters to the restore point created with the server command. Refer to "Setting a restore point" in ["3.2.2 Using Server Commands"](#) for information on how to create a restore point.

Follow the procedure below to recover the data in the data storage disk.

1. Stop applications

Stop applications that are using the database.

2. Stop the instance

Stop the instance. Refer to ["2.1.2 Using Server Commands"](#) for information on how to stop an instance.

If the instance fails to stop, refer to ["17.11 Actions in Response to Failure to Stop an Instance"](#).

3. Confirm the restore point

Execute the `pgx_rcvall` command to confirm the backup data saved in the backup data storage destination, and use a restore point recorded in an arbitrary file, as explained in ["3.2.2 Using Server Commands"](#), to determine a restore point prior to the erroneous operation.

Specify the following values in the `pgx_rcvall` command:

- Specify the data storage destination in the `-D` option. If the `-D` option is omitted, the value of the `PGDATA` environment variable is used by default.
- Specify the backup data storage destination in the `-B` option.
- The `-l` option displays the backup data information.

### Example

```
> pgx_rcvall -D /database/inst1 -B /backup/inst1 -l
Date                Status          Dir
2022-03-01 10:00:00  COMPLETE      /backup/inst1/2022-03-01_10-00-00
```

4. Recover the keystore, and enable automatic opening of the keystore

When the data in the database has been encrypted, restore the keystore to its state at the time of the database backup. Configure automatic opening of the keystore as necessary.



## 5. Recover the database cluster

Use the `pgx_rcvall` command to recover the database cluster.

Specify the following values in the `pgx_rcvall` command:

- Specify the data storage destination in the `-D` option. If the `-D` option is omitted, the value of the `PGDATA` environment variable is used by default.
- Specify the backup data storage destination in the `-B` option.
- The `-n` option recovers the data to the specified restore point.

### Example

The following example executes the `pgx_rcvall` command with the restore point "batch\_20220303\_1".

```
> pgx_rcvall -D /database/inst1 -B /backup/inst1 -n batch_20220303_1
```

### Note

If recovery fails, remove the cause of the error in accordance with the displayed error message and then re-execute the `pgx_rcvall` command.

If the message "pgx\_rcvall: an error occurred during recovery" is displayed, then the log recorded when recovery was executed is output after this message. The cause of the error is output in around the last fifteen lines of the log, so remove the cause of the error in accordance with the message and then re-execute the `pgx_rcvall` command.

The following message displayed during recovery is output as part of normal operation of `pgx_rcvall` (therefore the user does not need not be concerned).

```
FATAL: the database system is starting up
```

## 6. Start the instance

Start the instance.

Refer to "2.1.2 Using Server Commands" for information on how to start an instance.

## 7. Restart operation of the database

If necessary, re-execute transaction processing from the specified recovery time to the point when an erroneous operation was performed, and then resume database operations.

### See

Refer to "pgx\_rcvall" in the Reference for information on the `pgx_rcvall` command.

## 17.4 Actions in Response to an Application Error

If there is a connection from a client that has been in the waiting state for an extended period, you can minimize performance degradation of the database by closing the problematic connection.

The following methods are available for identifying a connection to be closed:

- `view(pg_stat_activity)` (refer to "17.4.1 When using the view (pg\_stat\_activity)")
- `ps` command (refer to "17.4.2 Using the ps Command")
- `pgAdmin` (refer to "17.4.3 Using pgAdmin")

Use the system management function (`pg_terminate_backend`) to disconnect connections.

## 17.4.1 When using the view (pg\_stat\_activity)

When using the view (pg\_stat\_activity), follow the procedure below to close a connection.

1. Use psql command to connect to the postgres database.

```
> psql postgres
psql (<x>) (*1)
Type "help" for help.
```

\*1: <x> indicates the PostgreSQL version on which this product is based.

2. Close connections from clients that have been in the waiting state for an extended period.

Use pg\_terminate\_backend() to close connections that have been trying to connect for an extended period.

However, when considering continued compatibility of applications, do not reference or use system catalogs and functions directly in SQL statements. Refer to "Notes on Application Compatibility" in the Application Development Guide for details.

### Example

The following example closes connections where the client has been in the waiting state for at least 60 minutes.

```
select pid,username,application_name,client_addr,pg_terminate_backend(pid) from pg_stat_activity
where backend_type = 'client backend' and state='idle in transaction' and current_timestamp >
cast(query_start + interval '60 minutes' as timestamp);
-[ RECORD 1 ]-----+-----
pid                | 4684
username           | fseuser
application_name    | apl1
client_addr         | 192.11.11.1
pg_terminate_backend | t
```



### See

- Refer to "System Administration Functions" under "The SQL Language" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on pg\_terminate\_backend.
- Refer to "Notes on Application Compatibility" in the Application Development Guide for information on how to maintain application compatibility.

## 17.4.2 Using the ps Command

Follow the procedure below to close a connection using a standard Unix tool (ps command).

1. Execute the ps command.

Note that "<x>" indicates the product version.

```
> ps axwfo user,pid,ppid,ttty,command | grep postgres
fseuser 19174 18027 pts/1          \_ grep postgres
fseuser 20517      1 ?          /opt/fsepv<x>server64/bin/postgres -D /disk01/data
fseuser 20518 20517 ?          \_ postgres: logger
fseuser 20520 20517 ?          \_ postgres: checkpointer
fseuser 20521 20517 ?          \_ postgres: background writer
fseuser 20522 20517 ?          \_ postgres: walwriter
fseuser 20523 20517 ?          \_ postgres: autovacuum launcher
fseuser 20524 20517 ?          \_ postgres: archiver
fseuser 20525 20517 ?          \_ postgres: logical replication launcher
fseuser 18673 20517 ?          \_ postgres: fseuser postgres 192.168.100.1(49448) idle
fseuser 16643 20517 ?          \_ postgres: fseuser db01 192.168.100.11(49449) UPDATE waiting
fseuser 16644 20517 ?          \_ postgres: fseuser db01 192.168.100.12(49450) idle in transaction
```

Process ID 16643 may be a connection that was established a considerable time ago by the UPDATE statement, or a connection that has occupied resources (waiting).

2. Close connections from clients that have been in the waiting state for an extended period.

Use `pg_terminate_backend()` to close the connection with the process ID identified in step 1 above.

The example below disconnects the process with ID 16643.

However, when considering continued compatibility of applications, do not reference or use system catalogs and functions directly in SQL statements.

```
postgres=# SELECT pg_terminate_backend (16643);
pg_terminate_backend
-----
t
(1 row)
```




See

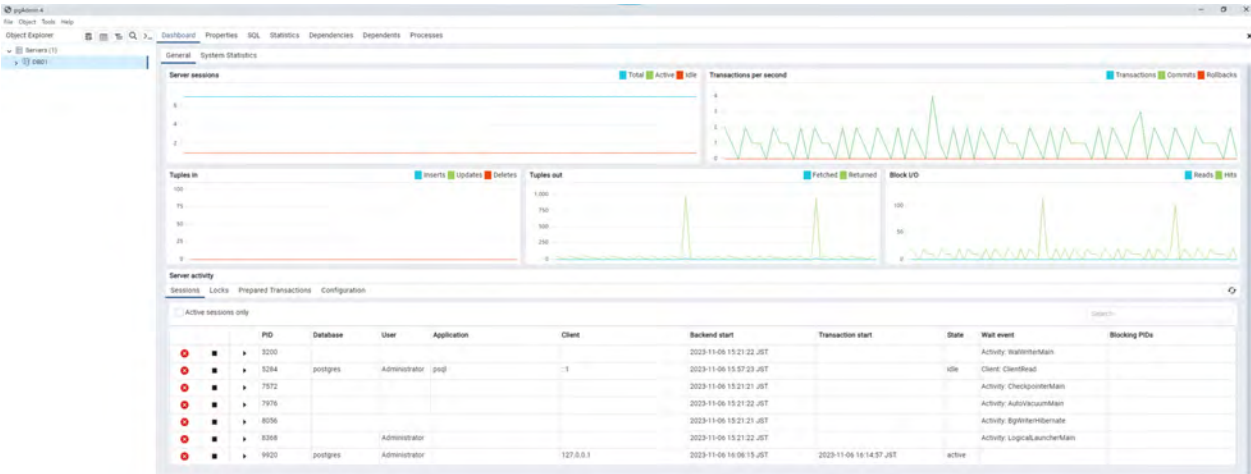
- Refer to "System Administration Functions" under "The SQL Language" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on `pg_terminate_backend`.
- Refer to "Notes on Application Compatibility" in the Application Development Guide for information on how to maintain application compatibility.

### 17.4.3 Using pgAdmin

If using pgAdmin, follow the procedure below to close connections.

1. In the [Browser] pane, click the relevant database server.
2. Close the client connections that have been in a wait state for an extended period.

Click the [Dashboard] tab. In the [Server activity] section, select the connections that have been in an "idle" or "idle in transaction" state for an extended period. For each of these connections, click  to close the session.



### 17.5 Actions in Response to an Access Error

If access is denied, grant privileges allowing the instance administrator to operate the following directories, and then re-execute the operation. Also, refer to the event log and the server log, and confirm that the file system has not been mounted as read-only due to a disk error. If the file system has been mounted as read-only, mount it properly and then re-execute the operation.

- Data storage destination

- Tablespace storage destination
- Transaction log storage destination
- Backup data storage destination



See

Refer to "Preparing Directories to Deploy Resources" under "Setup" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server for information on the privileges required for the directory.

## 17.6 Actions in Response to Insufficient Space on the Data Storage Destination

If the data storage destination runs out of space, check if the disk contains any unnecessary files and delete them so that operations can continue.

If deleting unnecessary files does not solve the problem, you must migrate data to a disk with larger capacity.

There are two methods of migrating data:

- [17.6.1 Using a Tablespace](#)
- [17.6.2 Replacing the Disk with a Larger Capacity Disk](#)

### 17.6.1 Using a Tablespace

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres enables you to use a tablespace to change the storage destination of database objects, such as tables and indexes, to a different disk.

The procedure is as follows:

1. Create a tablespace

Use the CREATE TABLESPACE command to create a new tablespace in the prepared disk.

2. Modify the tablespace

Use the ALTER TABLE command to modify tables for the newly defined tablespace.



See

Refer to "SQL Commands" under "Reference" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on the CREATE TABLESPACE command and ALTER TABLE command.

### 17.6.2 Replacing the Disk with a Larger Capacity Disk

Before replacing the disk with a larger capacity disk, migrate resources at the data storage destination using the backup and recovery features.

There are two methods of performing backup and recovery:

- [17.6.2.1 Using WebAdmin](#)
- [17.6.2.2 Using Server Commands](#)

The following sections describe procedures that use each of these methods to replace the disk and migrate resources at the data storage destination.



.....

It is recommended that you back up the database cluster following recovery. Backup deletes obsolete archive logs (transaction logs copied to the backup data storage destination), freeing up disk space and reducing the recovery time.

.....

### 17.6.2.1 Using WebAdmin

Follow the procedure below to replace the disk and migrate resources at the data storage destination by using WebAdmin.

1. Back up files

If the disk at the data storage destination contains any required files, back up the files. It is not necessary to back up the data storage destination.

2. Stop applications

Stop applications that are using the database.

3. Back up the database cluster

Back up the latest resources at the data storage destination. Refer to "[3.2.1 Using WebAdmin](#)" for details.

4. Stop the instance

Stop the instance. Refer to "[2.1.1 Using WebAdmin](#)" for information on how to stop an instance.

5. Replace with a larger capacity disk

Replace the disk. Then, recover the volume configuration information.

6. Recover the database cluster

Log in to WebAdmin, and perform recovery operations. Refer to steps 4 ("Create a tablespace directory ") to 7 ("Run recovery") under "If failure occurred in the data storage disk or the transaction log storage disk" in "[17.1.1 Using WebAdmin](#)" for information on the procedure. An instance is automatically started when recovery is successful.

7. Resume applications

Resume applications that are using the database.

8. Restore the files

Restore the files backed up in step 1.

### 17.6.2.2 Using Server Commands

Follow the procedure below to replace the disk and migrate resources at the data storage destination by using server commands.

1. Back up files

If the disk at the data storage destination contains any required files, back up the files. It is not necessary to back up the data storage destination.

2. Stop applications

Stop applications that are using the database.

3. Back up the database cluster

Back up the latest resources at the data storage destination. Refer to "[3.2.2 Using Server Commands](#)" for details.

4. Stop the instance

After backup is complete, stop the instance. Refer to "[2.1.2 Using Server Commands](#)" for information on how to stop an instance.

If the instance fails to stop, refer to "[17.11 Actions in Response to Failure to Stop an Instance](#)".

5. Replace with a larger capacity disk

Replace the disk. Then, recover the volume configuration information.

## 6. Create a data storage destination

Create a data storage destination. If a tablespace was defined, also create a directory for it.

### Example

```
$ mkdir /database/inst1
$ chown fsepuser:fsepuser /database/inst1
$ chmod 700 /database/inst1
```

## 7. Recover the keystore, and enable automatic opening of the keystore

When the data in the database has been encrypted, restore the keystore to its state at the time of the database backup. Configure automatic opening of the keystore as necessary.

## 8. Recover the database cluster

Use the `pgx_rcvall` command to recover the database cluster.

- Specify the data storage destination in the `-D` option. If the `-D` option is omitted, the value of the `PGDATA` environment variable is used by default.
- Specify the backup storage directory in the `-B` option.

### Example

```
> pgx_rcvall -D /database/inst1 -B /backup/inst1
```

### Note

If recovery fails, remove the cause of the error in accordance with the displayed error message and then re-execute the `pgx_rcvall` command.

If the message "pgx\_rcvall: an error occurred during recovery" is displayed, then the log recorded when recovery was executed is output after this message. The cause of the error is output in around the last fifteen lines of the log, so remove the cause of the error in accordance with the message and then re-execute the `pgx_rcvall` command.

The following message displayed during recovery is output as part of normal operation of `pgx_rcvall` (therefore the user does not need not be concerned).

```
FATAL: the database system is starting up
```

### See

Refer to "pgx\_rcvall" in the Reference for information on the `pgx_rcvall` command.

## 9. Start the instance

Start the instance.

Refer to "[2.1.2 Using Server Commands](#)" for information on how to start an instance.

## 10. Resume applications

Resume applications that are using the database.

## 11. Restore files

Restore the files backed up in step 1.

## 17.7 Actions in Response to Insufficient Space on the Backup Data Storage Destination

---

If space runs out on the backup data storage destination, check if the disk contains any unnecessary files and delete them, and then make a backup as required.

If deleting unnecessary files does not solve the problem, take the following action:

- [17.7.1 Temporarily Saving Backup Data](#)
- [17.7.2 Replacing the Disk with a Larger Capacity Disk](#)

### 17.7.1 Temporarily Saving Backup Data

---

This method involves temporarily moving backup data to a different directory, saving it there, and securing disk space on the backup data storage destination so that a backup can be made normally.

Use this method if you need time to prepare a larger capacity disk.

If space runs out on the backup data storage destination, archive logs can no longer be stored in the backup data storage destination. As a result, transaction logs continue to accumulate in the data storage destination or the transaction log storage destination.

If action is not taken soon, the transaction log storage destination will become full, and operations may not be able to continue.

To prevent this, secure space in the backup data storage destination, so that archive logs can be stored.

There are two methods of taking action:

- [17.7.1.1 Using WebAdmin](#)
- [17.7.1.2 Using Server Commands](#)

#### 17.7.1.1 Using WebAdmin

Follow the procedure below to recover the backup data storage disk.

1. Temporarily save backup data

Move backup data to a different directory and temporarily save it, and secure space in the backup data storage destination directory.

The reason for saving the backup data is so that the data in the data storage destination can be recovered even if it is corrupted before you perform recovery. If there is no disk at the save destination and you consider that there is no risk of corruption at the data storage destination, delete the backup data.

The following example saves backup data from the backup data storage destination directory (/backup/inst1) under /mnt/usb/backup.

Example

```
> mkdir /mnt/usb/backup/  
> mv /backup/inst1/* /mnt/usb/backup/
```

2. Back up the database cluster

Back up the latest resources at the data storage destination. Refer to "[3.2.1 Using WebAdmin](#)" for details.

3. Delete temporarily saved backup data

If backup completes normally, the temporarily saved backup data becomes unnecessary and is deleted.

The following example deletes backup data that was temporarily saved in /mnt/usb.

Example

```
> rm -rf /mnt/usb/backup
```

#### 17.7.1.2 Using Server Commands

The following describes the procedure for recovering the backup storage disk.

There are two methods of taking action:

- Performing recovery while the instance is active
- Stopping the instance before performing recovery

The following table shows the different steps to be performed depending on whether you stop the instance.

No	Step	Instance stopped	
		No	Yes
1	Stop transaction log mirroring	Y	N
2	Stop output of archive logs	Y	N
3	Stop applications	N	Y
4	Stop the instance	N	Y
5	Temporarily save backup data	Y	Y
6	Resume output of archive logs	Y	N
7	Resume transaction log mirroring	Y	N
8	Start an instance	N	Y
9	Run backup	Y	Y
10	Resume applications	N	Y
11	Delete temporarily saved backup data	Y	Y

Y: Required

N: Not required

The procedure is as follows:

## Performing recovery while the instance is active

### 1. Stop transaction log mirroring

Stop transaction log mirroring.

```
postgres=# SELECT pgx_pause_wal_multiplexing();
LOG:  multiplexing of transaction log files has been stopped
pgx_pause_wal_multiplexing
-----
(1 row)
```

### 2. Stop output of archive logs

Transaction logs may accumulate during replacement of backup storage disk, and if the data storage disk or the transaction log storage disk becomes full, there is a risk that operations may not be able to continue.

To prevent this, use the following methods to stop output of archive logs.

- Changing the archive\_command parameter

Specify a command that will surely complete normally, such as "echo skipped archiving WAL file %f" or "/bin/true", so that archive logs will be regarded as having been output.

If you specify echo, a message is output to the server log, so it may be used as a reference when you conduct investigations.

- Reloading the configuration file

Run the pg\_ctl reload command or the pg\_reload\_conf SQL function.



If you simply want to stop output of errors without the risk that operations will not be able to continue, specify an empty string (") in `archive_command` and reload the configuration file.

### 3. Temporarily save backup data

Move backup data to a different directory and temporarily save it, and secure space in the backup data storage destination directory.

The reason for saving the backup data is so that the data in the data storage destination can be recovered even if it is corrupted before you perform the next step. If there is no disk at the save destination and you consider that there is no risk of corruption at the data storage destination, delete the backup data.

The following example saves backup data from the backup data storage destination directory (`/backup/inst1`) under `/mnt/usb/backup`.

#### Example

```
> mkdir /mnt/usb/backup/  
> mv /backup/inst1/* /mnt/usb/backup/
```

### 4. Resume output of archive logs

Return the `archive_command` setting to its original value, and reload the configuration file.

### 5. Resume transaction log mirroring

Execute the `pgx_resume_wal_multiplexing` SQL function.

#### Example

```
SELECT pgx_resume_wal_multiplexing()
```

### 6. Run backup

Use the `pgx_dmpall` command to back up the database cluster.

Specify the following option in the `pgx_dmpall` command:

- Specify the directory of the data storage destination in the `-D` option. If the `-D` option is omitted, the value of the `PGDATA` environment variable is used by default.

#### Example

```
> pgx_dmpall -D /database/inst1
```

### 7. Delete temporarily saved backup data

If backup completes normally, the temporarily saved backup data becomes unnecessary and is deleted.

The following example deletes backup data that was temporarily saved in `/mnt/usb`.

#### Example

```
> rm -rf /mnt/usb/backup
```

## If an instance has been stopped

### 1. Stop applications

Stop applications that are using the database.

### 2. Stop the instance

Stop the instance. Refer to ["2.1.2 Using Server Commands"](#) for details.

If the instance fails to stop, refer to ["17.11 Actions in Response to Failure to Stop an Instance"](#).

### 3. Temporarily save backup data

Move backup data to a different directory and temporarily save it, and secure space in the backup data storage destination directory.

The reason for saving the backup data is so that the data in the data storage destination can be recovered even if it is corrupted before you perform recovery. If there is no disk at the save destination and you consider that there is no risk of corruption at the data storage destination, delete the backup data.

The following example saves backup data from the backup data storage destination directory (/backup/inst1) under /mnt/usb/backup.

#### Example

```
> mkdir /mnt/usb/backup/  
> mv /backup/inst1/* /mnt/usb/backup/
```

#### 4. Start the instance

Start the instance. Refer to ["2.1.2 Using Server Commands"](#) for information on how to start an instance.

#### 5. Run backup

Use the `pgx_dmpall` command to back up the database cluster.

Specify the following value in the `pgx_dmpall` command:

- Specify the data storage destination in the `-D` option. If the `-D` option is omitted, the value of the `PGDATA` environment variable is used by default.

#### Example

```
> pgx_dmpall -D /database/inst1
```

#### 6. Resume applications

Resume applications that are using the database.

#### 7. Delete temporarily saved backup data

If backup completes normally, the temporarily saved backup data becomes unnecessary and is deleted.

The following example deletes backup data that was temporarily saved in /mnt/usb.

#### Example

```
> rm -rf /mnt/usb/backup
```



#### See

- Refer to `"pgx_rcvall"` and `"pgx_dmpall"` in the Reference for information on the `pgx_rcvall` command and `pgx_dmpall` command.
- Refer to `"Write Ahead Log"` under `"Server Administration"` in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on `archive_command`.
- Refer to `"B.1 WAL Mirroring Control Functions"` for information on the `pgx_is_wal_multiplexing_paused` and `pgx_resume_wal_multiplexing`.

## 17.7.2 Replacing the Disk with a Larger Capacity Disk

This method involves replacing the disk at the backup data storage destination with a larger capacity disk, so that it does not run out of free space again. After replacing the disk, back up data to obtain a proper backup.

There are two methods of performing backup:

- [17.7.2.1 Using WebAdmin](#)
- [17.7.2.2 Using Server Commands](#)

### 17.7.2.1 Using WebAdmin

Follow the procedure below to recover the backup storage disk.

### 1. Back up files

If the disk at the backup data storage destination contains any required files, back up the files. It is not necessary to back up the backup data storage destination.

### 2. Temporarily save backup data

Save the backup data to a different directory.

The reason for saving the backup data is so that the data in the data storage destination can be recovered even if it is corrupted before you perform the next step. If there is no disk at the save destination and you consider that there is no risk of corruption at the data storage destination, delete the backup data.

The following example saves backup data from the backup data storage destination directory (/backup/inst1) under /mnt/usb/backup.

#### Example

```
> mkdir /mnt/usb/backup/  
> mv /backup/inst1/* /mnt/usb/backup/
```

### 3. Stop applications

Stop applications that are using the database.

### 4. Replace with a larger capacity disk

Replace the disk. Then, recover the volume configuration information.

### 5. Run backup

Log in to WebAdmin, and perform recovery operations. Refer to steps 2 ("Recover the backup data") and 3 ("Run backup") under "If failure occurred on the backup storage disk" in ["17.1.1 Using WebAdmin"](#).

### 6. Restore files

Restore the files backed up in step 1.

### 7. Delete temporarily saved backup data

If backup completes normally, the temporarily saved backup data becomes unnecessary and is deleted.

The following example deletes backup data that was temporarily saved in /mnt/usb.

#### Example

```
> rm -rf /mnt/usb/backup
```

## 17.7.2.2 Using Server Commands

The procedure for recovering the backup data storage disk is described below.

There are two methods of taking action:

- Performing recovery while the instance is active
- Stopping the instance before performing recovery

The following table shows the different steps to be performed depending on whether you stop the instance.

No	Step	Instance stopped	
		No	Yes
1	Back up files	Y	Y
2	Temporarily save backup data	Y	Y
3	Confirm that transaction log mirroring has stopped	Y	N
4	Stop output of archive logs	Y	N
5	Stop applications	N	Y

No	Step	Instance stopped	
		No	Yes
6	Stop the instance	N	Y
7	Replace with a larger capacity disk	Y	Y
8	Create a backup storage directory	Y	Y
9	Resume output of archive logs	Y	N
10	Resume transaction log mirroring	Y	N
11	Start the instance	N	Y
12	Run backup	Y	Y
13	Resume applications	N	Y
14	Restore files	Y	Y
15	Delete temporarily saved backup data	Y	Y

Y: Required

N: Not required

The procedure is as follows:

If an instance has not been stopped

1. Back up files

If the disk at the backup data storage destination contains any required files, back up the files. It is not necessary to back up the backup data storage destination.

2. Temporarily save backup data

Save the backup data to a different directory.

The reason for saving the backup data is so that the data in the data storage destination can be recovered even if it is corrupted before you perform the next step. If there is no disk at the save destination and you consider that there is no risk of corruption at the data storage destination, delete the backup data.

The following example saves backup data from the backup data storage destination directory (/backup/inst1) under /mnt/usb/backup.

Example

```
> mkdir /mnt/usb/backup/
> mv /backup/inst1/* /mnt/usb/backup/
```

3. Confirm that transaction log mirroring has stopped

Use the following SQL function to confirm that transaction log mirroring has stopped.

```
postgres=# SELECT pgx_is_wal_multiplexing_paused();
pgx_is_wal_multiplexing_paused
-----
t
(1 row)
```

If transaction log mirroring has not stopped, then stop it using the following SQL function.

```
postgres=# SELECT pgx_pause_wal_multiplexing();
LOG: multiplexing of transaction log files has been stopped
pgx_pause_wal_multiplexing
-----
```

```
(1 row)
```

#### 4. Stop output of archive logs

Transaction logs may accumulate during replacement of backup storage disk, and if the data storage destination disk or the transaction log storage destination disk becomes full, there is a risk that operations may not be able to continue.

To prevent this, use the following methods to stop output of archive logs.

- Changing the archive\_command parameter

Specify a command that will surely complete normally, such as "echo skipped archiving WAL file %f" or "/bin/true", so that archive logs will be regarded as having been output.

If you specify echo, a message is output to the server log, so it may be used as a reference when you conduct investigations.

- Reloading the configuration file

Run the pg\_ctl reload command or the pg\_reload\_conf SQL function.

If you simply want to stop output of errors without the risk that operations will not be able to continue, specify an empty string ("") in archive\_command and reload the configuration file.

#### 5. Replace with a larger capacity disk

Replace the disk. Then, recover the volume configuration information.

#### 6. Create a backup data storage destination

Create a backup data storage destination.

##### Example

```
# mkdir /backup/inst1
# chown fsepuser:fsepuser /backup/inst1
# chmod 700 /backup/inst1
```

Refer to "[3.2.2 Using Server Commands](#)" for details.

#### 7. Resume output of archive logs

Return the archive\_command setting to its original value, and reload the configuration file.

#### 8. Resume transaction log mirroring

Execute the pgx\_resume\_wal\_multiplexing SQL function.

##### Example

```
SELECT pgx_resume_wal_multiplexing()
```

#### 9. Run backup

Use the pgx\_dmpall command to back up the database cluster.

Specify the following value in the pgx\_dmpall command:

- Specify the data storage destination in the -D option. If the -D option is omitted, the value of the PGDATA environment variable is used by default.

##### Example

```
> pgx_dmpall -D /database/inst1
```

#### 10. Restore files

Restore the files backed up in step 1.

#### 11. Delete temporarily saved backup data

If backup completes normally, the temporarily saved backup data becomes unnecessary and is deleted.

The following example deletes backup data that was temporarily saved in /mnt/usb.

### Example

```
> rm -rf /mnt/usb/backup
```

### If an instance has been stopped

#### 1. Back up files

If the disk at the backup data storage destination contains any required files, back up the files. It is not necessary to back up the backup data storage destination.

#### 2. Temporarily save backup data

Save the backup data to a different directory.

The reason for saving the backup data is so that the data in the data storage destination can be recovered even if it is corrupted before you perform the next step. If there is no disk at the save destination and you consider that there is no risk of corruption at the data storage destination, delete the backup data.

The following example saves backup data from the backup data storage destination directory (/backup/inst1) under /mnt/usb/backup.

### Example

```
> mkdir /mnt/usb/backup/  
> mv /backup/inst1/* /mnt/usb/backup/
```

#### 3. Stop applications

Stop applications that are using the database.

#### 4. Stop the instance

Stop the instance. Refer to "[2.1.2 Using Server Commands](#)" for information on how to stop an instance.

If the instance fails to stop, refer to "[17.11 Actions in Response to Failure to Stop an Instance](#)".

#### 5. Replace with a larger capacity disk

Replace the disk. Then, recover the volume configuration information.

#### 6. Create a backup data storage destination

Create a backup data storage destination.

### Example

```
# mkdir /backup/inst1  
# chown fseuser:fseuser /backup/inst1  
# chmod 700 /backup/inst1
```

Refer to "[3.2.2 Using Server Commands](#)" for details.

#### 7. Start the instance

Start the instance. Refer to "[2.1.2 Using Server Commands](#)" for information on how to start an instance.

#### 8. Run backup

Use the `pgx_dmpall` command to back up the database cluster.

Specify the following value in the `pgx_dmpall` command:

- Specify the data storage destination in the `-D` option. If the `-D` option is omitted, the value of the `PGDATA` environment variable is used by default.

### Example

```
> pgx_dmpall -D /database/inst1
```

## 9. Resume applications

Resume applications that are using the database.

## 10. Restore files

Restore the files backed up in step 1.

## 11. Delete temporarily saved backup data

If backup completes normally, the temporarily saved backup data becomes unnecessary and is deleted.

The following example deletes backup data that was temporarily saved in /mnt/usb.

Example

```
> rm -rf /mnt/usb/backup
```



See

- Refer to "pgx\_rcvall" and "pgx\_dmpall" in the Reference for information on the pgx\_rcvall command and pgx\_dmpall command.
- Refer to "Write Ahead Log" under "Server Administration" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on archive\_command.
- Refer to "B.1 WAL Mirroring Control Functions" for information on the pgx\_is\_wal\_multiplexing\_paused and pgx\_resume\_wal\_multiplexing.

## 17.8 Actions in Response to Insufficient Space on the Transaction Log Storage Destination

If the transaction log storage destination runs out of space, check if the disk contains any unnecessary files and delete them so that operations can continue.

If deleting unnecessary files does not solve the problem, you must migrate data to a disk with larger capacity.

### 17.8.1 Replacing the Disk with a Larger Capacity Disk

Before replacing the disk with a larger capacity disk, migrate resources at the transaction log storage destination using the backup and recovery features.

There are two methods of performing backup and recovery:

- [17.8.1.1 Using WebAdmin](#)
- [17.8.1.2 Using Server Commands](#)

The following sections describe procedures that use each of these methods to replace the disk and migrate resources at the transaction log storage destination.



Point

It is recommended that you back up the database cluster following recovery. Backup deletes obsolete archive logs (transaction logs copied to the backup data storage destination), freeing up disk space and reducing the recovery time.

#### 17.8.1.1 Using WebAdmin

Follow the procedure below to replace the disk and migrate resources at the transaction log storage destination by using WebAdmin.

1. Back up files

If the disk at the transaction log storage destination contains any required files, back up the files. It is not necessary to back up the transaction log storage destination.

2. Back up the database cluster

Back up the latest data storage destination resources and transaction log storage destination resources (refer to "[3.2.1 Using WebAdmin](#)" for details).

3. Stop applications

Stop applications that are using the database.

4. Stop the instance

Stop the instance. Refer to "[2.1.1 Using WebAdmin](#)" for information on how to stop an instance. WebAdmin automatically stops instances if recovery of the database cluster is performed without stopping the instance.

5. Replace with a larger capacity disk

Replace the disk. Then, recover the volume configuration information.

6. Create a tablespace directory

If a tablespace was defined after backing up, create a directory for it.

7. Recover the keystore, and enable automatic opening of the keystore

Do the following if the data in the database has been encrypted:

- Restore the keystore to its state at the time of the database backup.
- Enable automatic opening of the keystore.

8. Recover the database cluster

Log in to WebAdmin, and perform recovery operations. Refer to steps 4 ("Create a tablespace directory ") to 7 ("Run Recovery") under " If failure occurred in the data storage disk or the transaction log storage disk " in "[17.1.1 Using WebAdmin](#)" for information on the procedure. An instance is automatically started when recovery is successful.

9. Resume applications

Resume applications that are using the database.

10. Restore files

Restore the files backed up in step 1.

## 17.8.1.2 Using Server Commands

Follow the procedure below to replace the disk and migrate resources at the transaction log storage destination by using server commands.

1. Back up files

If the disk at the transaction log storage destination contains any required files, back up the files. It is not necessary to back up the transaction log storage destination.

2. Back up the database cluster

Use server commands to back up the latest data storage destination resources and transaction log storage destination resources. Refer to "[3.2.2 Using Server Commands](#)" for information on how to perform backup.

3. Stop applications

Stop applications that are using the database.

4. Stop the instance

After backup is complete, stop the instance. Refer to "[2.1.2 Using Server Commands](#)" for information on how to stop an instance.

If the instance fails to stop, refer to "[17.11 Actions in Response to Failure to Stop an Instance](#)".



5. Replace with a larger capacity disk

Replace the disk. Then, recover the volume configuration information.

6. Create a transaction log storage destination

Create a transaction log storage destination. If a tablespace was defined, also create a directory for it.

Example

```
# mkdir /tranlog/inst1
# chown fsepuser:fsepuser /tranlog/inst1
# chmod 700 /tranlog/inst1
```

7. Recover the keystore, and enable automatic opening of the keystore

When the data in the database has been encrypted, restore the keystore to its state at the time of the database backup. Configure automatic opening of the keystore as necessary.

8. Recover the database cluster

Use the `pgx_rcvall` command to recover the database cluster.

- Specify the data storage destination in the `-D` option. If the `-D` option is omitted, the value of the `PGDATA` environment variable is used by default.
- Specify the backup storage directory in the `-B` option.

Example

```
> pgx_rcvall -D /database/inst1 -B /backup/inst1
```



If recovery fails, remove the cause of the error in accordance with the displayed error message and then re-execute the `pgx_rcvall` command.

If the message "pgx\_rcvall: an error occurred during recovery" is displayed, then the log recorded when recovery was executed is output after this message. The cause of the error is output in around the last fifteen lines of the log, so remove the cause of the error in accordance with the message and then re-execute the `pgx_rcvall` command.

The following message displayed during recovery is output as part of normal operation of `pgx_rcvall` command (therefore the user does not need not be concerned).

```
FATAL: the database system is starting up
```



Refer to "pgx\_rcvall" in the Reference for information on the `pgx_rcvall` command.

9. Start the instance

Start the instance.

Refer to "[2.1.2 Using Server Commands](#)" for information on how to start an instance.

10. Resume applications

Resume applications that are using the database.

11. Restore files

Restore the files backed up in step 1.

## 17.9 Errors in More Than One Storage Disk

---

If an error occurs in the storage destination disks or resources are corrupted, determine the cause of the error from system logs and server logs and remove the cause.

If errors occur in either of the following combinations, you cannot recover the database.

Recreate the instance, and rebuild the runtime environment.

Data storage disk	Transaction log storage disk	Backup data storage disk
Error	-	Error
-	Error	Error



See

Refer to "Setup" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server for information on how to create an instance and build the runtime environment.

## 17.10 Actions in Response to Instance Startup Failure

---

If an instance fails to start, refer to the system log and the server log, and determine the cause of the failure.

If using WebAdmin, remove the cause of the error. Then, click [Solution] and [Recheck the status] and confirm that the instance is in the normal state.

The following sections describe common causes of errors and the actions to take.

### 17.10.1 Errors in the Configuration File

---

If you have directly edited the configuration file using a text editor or changed the settings using WebAdmin, refer to the system log and the server log, confirm that no messages relating to the files below have been output.

- postgresql.conf
- pg\_hba.conf



See

Refer to the following for information on the parameters in the configuration file:

- "Configuring Parameters" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server
- "[Appendix A Parameters](#)"
- "Server Configuration" and "Client Authentication" under "Server Administration" in the PostgreSQL Documentation

### 17.10.2 Errors Caused by Power Failure or Mounting Issues

---

If mounting is cancelled after restarting the server, for example, because the disk device for each storage destination disk was not turned on, or because automatic mounting has not been set, then starting an instance will fail.

Refer to "[17.14.2 Errors Caused by Power Failure or Mounting Issues](#)", and take actions accordingly.

### 17.10.3 Other Errors

---

This section describes the recovery procedure to be used if you cannot take any action or the instance cannot start even after you have referred to the system log and the server log.

There are two methods of recovery:

- [17.10.3.1 Using WebAdmin](#)
- [17.10.3.2 Using Server Commands](#)

Note that recovery will not be possible if there is an error at the backup data storage destination. If the problem cannot be resolved, contact Fujitsu technical support.

### 17.10.3.1 Using WebAdmin

Follow the procedure below to perform recovery.

1. Delete the data storage destination directory and the transaction log storage destination directory  
Back up the data storage destination directory and the transaction log storage destination directory before deleting them.
2. Reconfirm the status  
Log in to WebAdmin, and in the [Instances] tab, click [Solution] for the error message.  
Click [Recheck the status] to reconfirm the storage destination resources.
3. Run recovery  
Restore the database cluster after WebAdmin detects an error.  
Refer to "[17.2.1 Using WebAdmin](#)" for details.

### 17.10.3.2 Using Server Commands

Follow the procedure below to recover the database.

1. Delete the data storage destination directory and the transaction log storage destination directory  
Save the data storage destination directory and the transaction log storage destination directory, and then delete them.
2. Execute recovery  
Use the `pgx_rcvall` command to recover the database cluster.  
Refer to "[17.2.2 Using the pgx\\_rcvall Command](#)" for details.

## 17.11 Actions in Response to Failure to Stop an Instance

---

If an instance fails to stop, refer to the system log and the server log, and determine the cause of the failure.


If the instance cannot stop despite taking action, perform the following operation to stop the instance.

There are two methods of recovery:

- [17.11.1 Using WebAdmin](#)
- [17.11.2 Using Server Commands](#)

### 17.11.1 Using WebAdmin

---

In the [Instances] tab, click  and select the Fast stop mode or the Immediate stop mode to stop the instance. Forcibly terminate the server process from WebAdmin if the instance cannot be stopped.

Refer to "[2.1.1 Using WebAdmin](#)" for information on the stop modes.

### 17.11.2 Using Server Commands

---

There are three methods:

- Stopping the Instance Using the Fast Mode

If backup is in progress, then terminate it, roll back all executing transactions, forcibly close client connections, and then stop the instance.

- Stopping the Instance Using the Immediate Mode

Forcibly terminate the instance immediately. A crash recovery is run when the instance is restarted.

- Forcibly Stopping the Server Process

Reliably stops the server process when the other methods are unsuccessful.

### 17.11.2.1 Stopping the Instance Using the Fast Mode

Specify "-m fast" in the pg\_ctl command to stop the instance.

If the instance fails to stop when you use this method, stop the instance as described in "[17.11.2.2 Stopping the Instance Using the Immediate Mode](#)" or "[17.11.2.3 Forcibly Stopping the Server Process](#)".



#### Example

```
> pg_ctl stop -D /database/inst1 -m fast
```

### 17.11.2.2 Stopping the Instance Using the Immediate Mode

Specify "-m immediate" in the pg\_ctl command to stop the instance.

If the instance fails to stop when you use this method, stop the instance as described in "[17.11.2.3 Forcibly Stopping the Server Process](#)".



#### Example

```
> pg_ctl stop -D /database/inst1 -m immediate
```

### 17.11.2.3 Forcibly Stopping the Server Process

If both the Fast mode and the Immediate mode fail to stop the instance, use the kill command or the kill parameter of the pg\_ctl command to forcibly stop the server process.

The procedure is as follows:

1. Execute the ps command

Note that "<x>" indicates the product version.

```
> ps axwfo user,pid,ppid,ttty,command | grep postgres
fsepuser 19174 18027 pts/1          \_ grep postgres
fsepuser 20517      1 ?          /opt/fsepv<x>server64/bin/postgres -D /database/inst1
fsepuser 20518 20517 ?          \_ postgres: logger
fsepuser 20520 20517 ?          \_ postgres: checkpointer
fsepuser 20521 20517 ?          \_ postgres: background writer
fsepuser 20522 20517 ?          \_ postgres: walwriter
fsepuser 20523 20517 ?          \_ postgres: autovacuum launcher
fsepuser 20524 20517 ?          \_ postgres: archiver
fsepuser 20525 20517 ?          \_ postgres: logical replication launcher
```

The process ID (20517) indicates the server process.

2. Forcibly stop the server process

As instance manager, forcibly stop the server process.

Using the pg\_ctl command

```
> pg_ctl kill SIGQUIT 20517
```

Using the kill command

```
> kill -s SIGQUIT 20517
```

## 17.12 Actions in Response to Failure to Create a Streaming Replication Standby Instance

When creating a streaming replication standby instance using WebAdmin, if the instance creation fails, refer to the system log and the server log, and determine the cause of the failure.

When an error occurs in the creation of the standby instance using WebAdmin, it is unlikely that the partially created standby instance can be resumed to complete the operation.

In such a scenario, fix the cause of the error, delete the partially created standby instance, and then create a new standby instance. This recommendation is based on the following assumptions:

- As the instance is yet to be created completely, there are no applications connecting to the database.
- The standby instance is in error state and is not running.
- There are no backups for the standby instance and as a result, it cannot be recovered.



See

Refer to "Deleting Instances" in the Installation and Setup Guide for details on how to delete an instance.

## 17.13 Actions in Response to Error in a Distributed Transaction

If a system failure (such as server failure) occurs in an application that uses distributed transactions (such as .NET TransactionScope), then transactions may be changed to the in-doubt state.

At that point, resources accessed by the transaction will be locked, and rendered unusable by other transactions.

The following describes how to check for in-doubt transactions, and how to resolve them.

### How to check for in-doubt transactions

The following shows how to check for them:

If the server fails

1. An in-doubt transaction will have occurred if a message similar to the one below is output to the log when the server is restarted.

Example

```
LOG: Restoring prepared transaction 2103.
```

2. Refer to system view pg\_prepared\_xacts to obtain information about the prepared transaction.

If the transaction identifier of the prepared transaction in the list (in the transaction column of pg\_prepared\_xacts) is the same as the identifier of the in-doubt transaction obtained from the log output when the server was restarted, then that row is the information about the in-doubt transaction.

Example

```
postgres=# select * from pg_prepared_xacts;
 transaction |   gid   | prepared | owner  | database
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----
```

```
2103 | 374cc221-f6dc-4b73-9d62-d4fec9b430cd | 2022-03-06 16:28:48.471+08 | postgres |  
postgres (1 row)
```

Information about the in-doubt transaction is output to the row with the transaction ID 2103 in the transaction column.

#### If the client fails

If there are no clients connected and there is a prepared transaction in `pg_prepared_xacts`, then you can determine that the transaction is in the in-doubt state.

If at least one client is connected and there is a prepared transaction in `pg_prepared_xacts`, you cannot determine whether there is a transaction in the in-doubt state. In this case, use the following query to determine the in-doubt transaction from the acquired database name, user name, the time PREPARE TRANSACTION was executed, and the information about the table name accessed.

```
select gid,x.database,owner,prepared,l.relation::regclass as relation from pg_prepared_xacts x  
left join pg_locks l on l.virtualtransaction = '-1/'||x.transaction and l.locktype='relation';
```

If it still cannot be determined from this information, wait a few moments and then check `pg_prepared_xacts` again.

If there is a transaction that has continued since the last time you checked, then it is likely that it is the one in the in-doubt state.



#### Point

As you can see from the explanations in this section, there is no one way to definitively determine in-doubt transactions.

Consider collecting other supplementary information (for example, logging on the client) or performing other operations (for example, allocating database users per job).

## How to resolve in-doubt transactions

From the system view `pg_prepared_xacts` mentioned above, obtain the global transaction identifier (in the `gid` column of `pg_prepared_xacts`) for the in-doubt transaction, and issue either a `ROLLBACK PREPARED` statement or `COMMIT PREPARED` statement to resolve the in-doubt transaction.



#### Example

- Rolling back in-doubt transactions

```
postgres=# rollback prepared '374cc221-f6dc-4b73-9d62-d4fec9b430cd';  
ROLLBACK PREPARED
```

- Committing in-doubt transactions

```
postgres=# commit prepared '374cc221-f6dc-4b73-9d62-d4fec9b430cd';  
COMMIT PREPARED
```

## 17.14 I/O Errors Other than Disk Failure

Even if a disk is not defective, the same input-output error messages, as those generated when the disk is defective, may be output.

A few examples of such errors are given below. The appropriate action for each error is explained respectively.

- [17.14.1 Network Error with an External Disk](#)
- [17.14.2 Errors Caused by Power Failure or Mounting Issues](#)

### 17.14.1 Network Error with an External Disk

This is an error that occurs in the network path to/from an external disk.

Determine the cause of the error by checking the information in the system log and the server log, the disk access LED, network wiring, and network card status. Take appropriate action to remove the cause of the error, for example, replace problematic devices.

## 17.14.2 Errors Caused by Power Failure or Mounting Issues

---

These are errors that occur when the disk device is not turned on, automatic mounting of the disk was not set, or mounting was accidentally cancelled.

In this case, check the information in the system log and the server log, the disk access LED, and whether the disk is mounted correctly. If problems are detected, take appropriate action.

If mounting has been cancelled, it is possible that mounting was accidentally cancelled, or automatic mounting at the time of starting the operating system is not set. In this case, set the mounting to be performed automatically.

## 17.15 Anomaly Detection and Resolution

---

The following operations performed via the command line interface will result in an anomaly in WebAdmin:

- Changes to the port and backup\_destination parameters in postgresql.conf
- Changes to Mirroring Controller configuration of cluster replication added via WebAdmin

This section describes when WebAdmin checks for such anomalies, and what takes place when an anomaly is detected.

### 17.15.1 Port Number and Backup Storage Path Anomalies

---

An anomaly occurs when the value of [Port number] and/or [Backup storage path] in WebAdmin is different from the value of its corresponding parameter in postgresql.conf - port and backup\_destination, respectively.

WebAdmin checks for anomalies when an instance is selected for viewing or any instance operation is performed. Anomalies will be identified for the selected instance only.

The following occurs when an anomaly is detected in port number and/or backup storage path:

- All instance operation buttons are disabled, except for "Edit instance", "Refresh instance", and "Delete Mirroring Controller"
- A red error status indicator is displayed on the instance icon
- For an anomaly specific to backup storage path, a red error status indicator is displayed on the [Backup storage] disk icon, and [Backup storage status] is set to "Error"
- The message, "WebAdmin has detected an anomaly with...", is displayed in the [Message] section along with an associated [Solution] button

Critical errors encountered during anomaly resolution will be displayed, however, rollback of the instance to its previous state is not supported.

Click [Solution]. The [Anomaly Error] dialog box is displayed.

**Anomaly Error**

WebAdmin has detected an anomaly due to change of Port number in postgresql.conf. The instance operations are disabled and will be available only after addressing this anomaly.

The instance may be restarted as part of the anomaly resolution.

Select one of the following options to resolve this anomaly:

- ☒ **Recheck** the status of the anomaly condition
- ☐ **Navigate** to the "Edit instance" page
- ☐ **Reset** to override Port number in postgresql.conf
- ☐ **Override** Port number in WebAdmin

OK

Cancel

Select the required option, click [OK], and then resolve the anomaly error.

Refer to "Editing instance information" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server for information on the [Edit instance] page.

## 17.15.2 Mirroring Controller Anomalies

The following conditions will cause a Mirroring Controller anomaly:

- The Mirroring Controller management folder or configuration files have been deleted
- The permissions to the Mirroring Controller management folder or configuration files have been changed such that:
  - The instance administrator's access to Mirroring Controller configuration is denied
  - Users other than an instance administrator have access privileges to Mirroring Controller configuration files

WebAdmin checks for anomalies when Mirroring Controller status check is performed.

The following occurs when a Mirroring Controller anomaly is detected:

- All Mirroring Controller functionality is disabled for the replication cluster, except for "Delete Mirroring Controller"
- [Mirroring Controller status] is set to "Error"
- Either of the following messages is displayed in the [Message] section

"Failed to access the Mirroring Controller management folder or configuration files '*path*'. Mirroring Controller functionality has been disabled. Consider deleting Mirroring Controller and adding it again."

"Failed to find the Mirroring Controller management folder or configuration files '*path*'. Mirroring Controller functionality has been disabled. Consider deleting Mirroring Controller and adding it again."



## Appendix A Parameters

This appendix describes the parameters to be set in the postgresql.conf file of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

The postgresql.conf file is located in the data storage destination.



### Information

The maximum value that can be expressed as a 4-byte signed integer changes according to the operating system. Follow the definition of the operating system in use.

- core\_directory (string)

This parameter specifies the directory where the corefile is to be output. If this parameter is omitted, the data storage destination is used by default. This parameter can only be set when specified on starting an instance. It cannot be changed dynamically, while an instance is active.

- core\_contents (string)

This parameter specifies the contents to be included in the corefile.

- full: Outputs all contents of the server process memory to the corefile.
- none: Does not output a corefile.
- minimum: Outputs only non-shared memory server processes to the corefile. This reduces the size of the corefile. However, in some cases, this file may not contain sufficient information for examining the factor that caused the corefile to be output.

If this parameter is omitted, "minimum" is used by default. This parameter can only be set when specified on starting an instance. It cannot be changed dynamically, while an instance is active.

- keystore\_location (string)

This parameter specifies the directory that stores the keystore file. Specify a different location from other database clusters. This parameter can only be set when specified on starting an instance. It cannot be changed dynamically, while an instance is active.

Cannot be specified with the tde\_kms.kms\_conninfo\_file parameter.

- tde\_kms.plugin\_path (string)

When connecting to the key management system using a plug-in, specify the directory that stores the plug-in with an absolute path. Only database administrators should be able to store plugins in this directory. It can only be set by specifying a parameter when starting the instance.

- tde\_kms.enable\_shared\_dek (boolean)

Enables or disables sharing of data encryption keys between backend processes for each encrypted tablespace in transparent data encryption. Default is off. It can only be set by specifying a parameter when starting the instance.

- tde\_kms.max\_shared\_dek (numerical value)

Specify the maximum number of shared data encryption keys when sharing data encryption keys per tablespace in transparent data encryption. Default is 1000. It can only be set by specifying a parameter when starting the instance.

- tde\_kms.kms\_conninfo\_file (string)

When using the key management service as a key store, specifies the file that contains the connection information for the key management system. Cannot be specified with the keystore\_location parameter.

Create a connection information file for the key management system in one of the following format:

kmip	kms-name	address	port	auth-method	[auth-options]
custom	kms-name	plugin-name		[plugin-options]	[extra-args]

Specify one of the following methods to connect to the key management system.

- kmip

Access this key management system using the KMIP protocol. Take out and use the encryption key in this key management system.

- custom

Access the key management system using a plugin module. The encryption/decryption process is done inside the plugin or inside the key management system. Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres does not use cryptographic keys directly.

For type kmip

- kms-name

The key management system name assigned to the key management system and specified when declaring the master encryption key or opening the keystore. The name of the key management system must be unique within this file. The key management system name must be a string of no more than 63 characters beginning with a-z, consisting of a-z, a number (0-9), and an underscore. Upper and lower case letters are the same.

- address

Specifies the host name or IP address of the key management service.

- port

Specifies the port number on which the key management service listens for services.

- auth-method

Specifies the authentication method for the key management service.

- auth-options

The auth-method is followed by the authentication method options. You can specify multiple options in a name = value field.

Authentication method when using a key management service of type kmip

cert

A certificate is used to authenticate the KMIP server and the client, Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres, to each other. The auth-options can be.

- sslcert

Specifies the file name of the client certificate. The corresponding format is PEM format.

- sslkey

Specifies the file name of the private key used for the client certificate. The corresponding format is PEM format. If you choose to encrypt the file with a passphrase, use a passphrase that is no more than 1023 bytes long.

- sslkeypassphrase-obf

Specifies the file that contains the obfuscated passphrase for the private key file specified by sslkey. This option allows the keystore to be opened automatically when the server starts. The pgx \_ keystore command creates obfuscated files. It can be omitted.

- sslrootcert

Specifies the file name of the SSL Certificate Authority certificate. The corresponding format is PEM format. Used to verify the server certificate of the connection destination.



## Example

```
kmip mykmipsvr mykmipsvr.example.com 5696 cert sslcert=postgres.crt
sslkey=postgres.key sslrootcert=root.crt
```



cert authentication does not verify that the server you are connecting to is the same server you are trying to connect to. Any server using a server certificate that is signed with the certificate of the certificate authority specified in sslrootcert is considered the correct destination. To avoid problems with this behavior, consider using your own CA or self-signed certificate for the KMIP server.

#### For type custom

- kms-name

The key management system name given to the key management system, specified when declaring a master encryption key or opening a keystore. The name of the key management system must be unique within this file. The key management system name must be a string of up to 63 characters starting with a-z and consisting of a-z, digits (0-9) and underscores. Uppercase and lowercase letters are considered the same.

- plugin-name

Specify the name of the plugin. Use the executable file with the same name as the plugin name in the directory specified by tde\_kms.plugin\_path as the plugin module.

- plugin-options

Specify other options for the plugin. Multiple options can be specified in name=value format fields. You can specify the following option names.

- kms-secret-obf

Specify the file containing the obfuscated KMS secret when enabling automatic opening of the keystore using transparent data encryption. The obfuscated file is created with the pgx\_keystore command. The obfuscated file contents are decrypted by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres and passed to the plugin. Can be omitted if you are not using transparent data encryption to enable automatic opening of the keystore.

- extra-args

Specify additional arguments to pass to the specified shell command in the form arg=value. If you specify multiple extra-args, the values are passed to the shell command in that order.



#### Example

```
custom mykms mykms arg=--profile arg=user1
```

- tablespace\_encryption\_algorithm (string)

This parameter specifies the encryption algorithm for tablespaces that will be created. Valid values are "AES128", "AES256", and "none". If you specify "none", encryption is not performed. The default value is "none". To perform encryption, it is recommended that you specify "AES256". Only superusers can change this setting.

- backup\_destination (string)

This parameter specifies the absolute path of the directory where pgx\_dmpall will store the backup data. Specify a different location from other database clusters. This parameter can only be set when specified on starting an instance. It cannot be changed dynamically, while an instance is active.

Place this directory on a different disk from the data directory to be backed up and the tablespace directory. Ensure that users do not store arbitrary files in this directory, because the contents of this directory are managed by the database system.

- search\_path (string)

When using the SUBSTR function compatible with Oracle databases, set "oracle" and "pg\_catalog" in the search\_path parameter. You must specify "oracle" before "pg\_catalog".



## Example

```
search_path = '$user', public, oracle, pg_catalog'
```



## Information

- The search\_path feature specifies the priority of the schema search path. The SUBSTR function in Oracle database is defined in the oracle schema.
- Refer to "Statement Behavior" under "Server Administration" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on search\_path.

### - track\_waits (string)

This parameter enables collection of statistics for pgx\_stat\_lwlock and pgx\_stat\_latch.

- on: Enables collection of statistics.
- off: Disables collection of statistics.

If this parameter is omitted, "on" is assumed.

Only superusers can change this setting.

### - track\_sql (string)

This parameter enables collection of statistics for pgx\_stat\_sql.

- on: Enables collection of statistics.
- off: Disables collection of statistics.

If this parameter is omitted, "on" is assumed.

Only superusers can change this setting.

## Parameters for the in-memory feature

### - reserve\_buffer\_ratio (numerical value)

This parameter specifies the proportion of shared memory to be used for a stable buffer table.

- Minimum value: 0
- Maximum value: 80

If this parameter is omitted, 0 will be used.

### - vci.cost\_threshold (numerical value)

This parameter specifies the lowest cost that selects an execution plan that uses a VCI. If the cost of the best execution plan that does not use a VCI is lower than this value, that execution plan will be selected.

- Minimum value: 0
- Maximum value: Maximum value that can be expressed as a 4-byte signed integer

If this parameter is omitted or a value outside this range is specified, 18000 will be used.

### - vci.control\_max\_workers (numerical value)

This parameter specifies the number of background workers that manage VCI. The number of workers for the entire instance is limited by max\_worker\_processes, so add the value specified here to max\_worker\_processes.

- Minimum value: 1
- Maximum value: 8388607

If this parameter is omitted or a value outside this range is specified, 8 will be used.

- vci.enable (string)

This parameter enables or disables VCI.

- on: Enables VCI.
- off: Disables VCI.

If this parameter is omitted, "on" will be used.

- vci.log\_query (string)

This parameter enables or disables log output when VCI is not used due to insufficient memory specified by vci.max\_local\_ros.

- on: Enables log output.
- off: Disables log output.

If this parameter is omitted, "off" will be used.

- vci.maintenance\_work\_mem (numerical value)

This parameter specifies the maximum memory size used for maintenance of VCI (when executing CREATE INDEX, for example).

- Minimum value: 1 MB
- Maximum value: Maximum value that can be expressed as a 4-byte signed integer

If this parameter is omitted or a value outside this range is specified, 256 MB will be used.

- vci.max\_local\_ros (numerical value)

This parameter specifies the maximum memory size used for VCI scan.

- Minimum value: 64 MB
- Maximum value: Maximum value that can be expressed as a 4-byte signed integer

If this parameter is omitted or a value outside this range is specified, 64 MB will be used.

- vci.max\_parallel\_degree (numerical value)

This parameter specifies the maximum number of background workers used for parallel scan. The number of workers for the entire instance is limited by max\_worker\_processes, so add the value specified here to max\_worker\_processes.

A value from -8388607 to 8388607 can be specified.

- Integer (1 or greater): Parallel scan is performed using the specified degree of parallelism.
- 0: Stops the parallel scan process.
- Negative number: The specified value minus the maximum number of CPUs obtained from the environment is used as the degree of parallelism and parallel scan is performed.

If this parameter is omitted or a value outside this range is specified, 0 will be used.

- vci.shared\_work\_mem (numerical value)

This parameter specifies the maximum memory size used for VCI parallel scan.

- Minimum value: 32 MB
- Maximum value: Maximum value that can be expressed as a 4-byte signed integer

If this parameter is omitted or a value outside this range is specified, 1 GB will be used.

## Parameters for the Global Meta Cache feature

- pgx\_global\_metacache (numerical value)

Specifies the memory size of the GMC area.

Specify a value calculated by the formula below.

A value lower than the calculated value will still work, but the meta cache may not be able to fit into the GMC area.

In this case, the system will discard the meta cache it thinks it is no longer needed, but if it is needed again, the meta cache will need to be expanded and will not perform well.

If the value is less than 10 MB and is set to a nonzero value that disables the feature, the database startup fails because the Global Meta Cache feature cannot operate.

A setting of 0 disables the Global Meta Cache feature. The default is 0.

Changing this setting requires restarting the database.

Size of GMC area

```
= Max(10MB,  
    (All user table x 0.4 KB  
    + All user Indexes x 0.3 KB  
    + All user columns x 0.8 KB) x 1.5 (*1) )
```

\*1) Safety Factor (1.5)

This value takes into account the case where both GMC before and after the change temporarily exist at the same time in shared memory when the table definition is changed or the row of the system catalog is changed.

#### - track\_gmc (string)

This parameter enables collection of statistics for pgx\_stat\_gmc.

- on: Enables collection of statistics.
- off: Disables collection of statistics.

If this parameter is omitted, "on" is used.

Only superusers can change this setting.

### Parameters for the Local Meta Cache Limit feature

#### - pgx\_catalog\_cache\_max\_size(numerical value)

Specifies the maximum amount of memory that the backend process should use as the catalog cache.

You can enable catalog cache deletion by setting it to 8 KB or more.

A setting of 0 disables the catalog cache removal. The default is 0.

If no units are specified, they are treated as KB.

- Minimum value: 8KB
- Maximum value: Maximum value that can be expressed as a 4-byte signed integer

When calculating the parameter settings, the factors that determine the cache size are calculated as the number of tables, the number of indexes, and the number of columns. What is kept as a catalog cache or relation cache also includes objects such as databases, roles, or procedures, but these are small compared to the above factors and do not need to be factored into them. It also includes a calculation method for pgx\_relacion\_cache\_max\_size because the given memory is distributed between the catalog cache and the relation cache.



#### Note

The calculation method here assumes that all backends have similar access and that the transaction also has access to a similar number of resources. If you have a small number of singular backends or transactions, consider excluding them as errors.

1. Determine how much memory a backend process can use. Decide by subtracting the memory size required by the entire system such as the database cache from the installed memory and dividing the rest by the number of connections.
2. For best performance, use the following formula to calculate the total memory size of the catalog cache when the backend holds the catalog cache for all resources accessed during its lifetime.

The amount of memory varies depending on whether Global Meta Cache is enabled or disabled. Enabling Global Meta Cache reduces the amount of memory required because most of the cache is located on shared memory.

When Global Meta Cache is enabled:

$$(\text{Number of tables to access} + \text{Number of indexes to access} + \text{Number of columns to access}) \times 0.1\text{KB} \times 1.5 (*1)$$

When Global Meta Cache is disabled:

$$\{ \text{Number of tables to access} \times 0.5\text{KB}(\text{pg\_class tuple size}) + \text{Number of indexes to access} \times 0.5\text{KB}(\text{pg\_index tuple size}) + \text{Number of columns to access} \times 1.0\text{KB}(\text{pg\_statistic tuple size}) \} \times 1.5 (*1)$$

\*1) Safety Factor (1.5)

The system catalog contains columns with variable-length types. For example, the tuple size in pg\_class is a constant value multiplied by the number of tables, while relname in pg\_class is variable length data.

It is not practical to calculate every definition in detail, so we added 50% to the above formula.

3. In the same way as in 2., calculate the relation cache using the following formula.

$$(1.4\text{KB} \times \text{Number of tables to access} + 2.4\text{KB} \times \text{Number of indexes to access}) \times 1.5 (*1)$$

\*1) Safety Factor (1.5)

The relation cache is structured to facilitate the use of table and index definitions, holds pointers to various objects, and is sized to include them. It is variable length because the type of object allocated by the table definition and its size change. Since it is not realistic to calculate for all definitions, 50% is added.

4. If the value of 1. the value of 2. + the value of 3., the backend process can keep all caches to the extent allowed, so there is no need to limit the caches. If you want to cap for safety, set the value of 2. to pgx\_catalog\_cache\_max\_size and the value of 3. to pgx\_relation\_cache\_max\_size.
5. If the value of 1. < the value of 2. + the value of 3. then you need to limit the cache. However, this parameter does not limit the size of the cache used by a transaction. Therefore, take the following steps.
6. Calculate the catalog cache used by a transaction using the formula in 2.
7. Calculate the relation cache used by a transaction using the formula in 3.
8. If the value of 1. < the value of 6. + the value of 7., then the value of 1. needs to be increased. In other words, in some cases, it may be necessary to increase the installed memory or reduce the number of connections.
9. If the value of 1. the value of 6. + the value of 7., the condition of 1. can be satisfied by limiting the cache with this parameter. Divide the value of 1. by the ratio of 2. and 3. and set it as a parameter. Set the value distributed to 2. to pgx\_catalog\_cache\_max\_size and the value distributed to 3. to pgx\_relation\_cache\_max\_size.
10. The value calculated in 9. is a provisional value. If you cannot meet your target performance, first try to shift the focus of allocation to the relation cache. This is because when executing SQL, the relation cache generated based on the catalog cache is mainly referenced, so it is advantageous to leave a large amount of relation cache. If the performance is still not satisfied, adjust the parameters by referring to "[15.1.4 Performance Impact and Parameter Tuning of the Local Meta Cache Limit Feature](#)".



## Note

Be careful when partitioning the table.

The cached definition changes depending on whether the parent table is specified in the SQL statement or the child table is specified. In particular, note that if you specify a parent table, the definitions of all child tables are cached. This is because when you specify a parent table in an SQL statement, you need to know the definitions of all the child tables in order to determine which child table will contain the desired data. Note that the column information of the parent table is not cached.

When specifying the parent table:

Number of tables to access = Number of parent tables to access + Number of defined child tables  
 Number of columns = Number of defined columns x number of defined child tables

When specifying the child table directly:

Number of tables to access = Number of child tables actually accessed  
Number of columns = Number of defined columns x number of child tables actually accessed

Example)

Suppose the parent table T (1 index, 3 columns) is split from child tables T1 to T5 (1 index, 3 columns, respectively). If the parent table T is specified in SQL, when the child tables that contain the data to be queried are limited to T1 and T2, and when accessing the data using the indexes defined by T1 and T2, calculate as follows.

Number of tables = 1(parent table) + 5(child table) = 6  
Number of indexes = 2 (index to access)  
Number of columns = 3 (number of columns) x 5 (child table) = 15

If you specify child tables T1 and T2 in SQL and use the indexes defined on T1 and T2 when accessing data, the calculation is as follows.

Number of tables = 2(child table)  
Number of indexes = 2 (index to access)  
Number of columns = 3 (number of columns) x 2 (child table) = 6

.....

- `pgx_relation_cache_max_size`(numerical value)

Specifies the maximum amount of memory that the backend process should use as the relation cache.

You can enable catalog cache deletion by setting it to 8 KB or more.

A setting of 0 disables the relation cache removal. The default is 0.

If no units are specified, they are treated as KB.

- Minimum value: 8KB
- Maximum value: Maximum value that can be expressed as a 4-byte signed integer

For the calculation method for parameter setting, refer to the calculation method of `pgx_catalog_cache_max_size`.

- `pgx_cache_hit_log_interval`(numerical value)

Specifies the time interval to output a message indicating the cache reference status for each backend process.

When the transaction ends, if the time set in this parameter has elapsed since the previous message was output, the message is output.

If set to 0, a message will be output each time the transaction ends.

Setting -1 disables the output. The default value is 10min.

If no units are specified, they are treated as ms.

Even if `pgx_catalog_cache_max_size` and `pgx_relation_cache_max_size` are disabled, the message output of the corresponding cache will be invalid.

Immediately after connecting to the server, a small transaction occurs before the request from the user application, such as for user authentication. Since it is meaningless to know the hit rate for these, a message will be output at the end of the transaction that started after the time set in this parameter has elapsed after connecting to the server.

For the same reason, setting a small value such as 0 may result in a message being printed at the end of such a small transaction.

You can check which transaction the message corresponds to from the information output at the beginning.

This information depends on the setting of the parameter `log_line_prefix`.

- Minimum value: 0
- Maximum value: 2147483647ms





See

.....  
Refer to "Server Configuration" under "Server Administration" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on other postgresql.conf parameters.  
.....

#### Parameters for the Policy-based Password Management

- userprofile\_database(string)

Specifies the name of the database to which the background worker process connects. This parameter must specify a connectable database name. You cannot use the pseudo database "replication". If you omit this parameter, then it is assumed to be "postgres".

If you change this parameter, reload the configuration file.

#### Parameters for using OpenSSL legacy algorithms

- openssl\_conf(string)

Specifies the OpenSSL configuration file. Specifying a valid configuration file makes legacy algorithms available. Use the example below to prepare the configuration file in any directory.

If this parameter is not specified, the empty string is assumed.

This parameter can only be set by specifying the parameter at instance startup.

You cannot make dynamic changes during instance startup.



Example

.....  
openssl\_conf = '/path/to/openssl.conf'

[OpenSSL Configuration File (openssl.conf) Example]

```
=====
openssl_conf = openssl_init

[openssl_init]
providers = provider_sect

[provider_sect]
default = default_sect
legacy = legacy_sect

[default_sect]
activate = 1

[legacy_sect]
activate = 1
=====
```

- .....
- openssl\_modules(string)

Specifies the directory that contains additional OpenSSL modules.

Legacy algorithms are available by specifying 'server installation directory/lib/openssl-modules'.

If this parameter is not specified, the empty string is assumed.

This parameter can only be set by specifying the parameter at instance startup.

You cannot make dynamic changes during instance startup.

This parameter sets the OPENSSL\_MODULES environment variable to be applied to the server process. Do not set the OPENSSL\_MODULES environment variable in any way other than setting this parameter, as this may cause abnormal behavior.



## Example

```
openssl_modules = '/opt/fsepv<x>server64/lib/openssl-modules'
```

Note that "<x>" indicates the product version.



## Information

Legacy algorithms include the following encryption algorithms:

- BF
- CAST5
- DES-ECB
- DES-CBC
- MD4
- Whirlpool

## Appendix B System Administration Functions

This appendix describes the system administration functions of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.



See

Refer to "System Administration Functions" under "The SQL Language" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on other system administration functions.

### B.1 WAL Mirroring Control Functions

The following table lists the functions that can be used for backup and recovery based on WAL mirroring.

Table B.1 WAL mirroring control functions

Name	Return type	Description
<code>pgx_pause_wal_multiplexing()</code>	void	Stops WAL multiplexing
<code>pgx_resume_wal_multiplexing()</code>	void	Resumes WAL multiplexing
<code>pgx_is_wal_multiplexing_paused()</code>	boolean	Returns true if WAL multiplexing has stopped

If WAL multiplexing has not been configured, these functions return an error. Setting the `backup_destination` parameter in `postgresql.conf` configures WAL multiplexing.

Only superusers can execute these functions.

### B.2 Transparent Data Encryption Control Functions

The following table lists the functions that can be used for transparent data encryption.

Table B.2 Transparent data encryption control functions

Name	Return type	Description
<code>pgx_open_keystore(<i>passphrase</i>)</code> <code>pgx_open_keystore(<i>sslpassphrase</i> =&gt; text)</code>	void	Opens the keystore
<code>pgx_set_master_key(<i>passphrase</i>)</code>	void	Sets the master encryption key
<code>pgx_declare_external_master_key(<i>kms_name</i> =&gt; text, <i>key_id</i> =&gt; text, <i>sslpassphrase</i> =&gt; text)</code>	void	To set an encryption key existing in a key management system as a master encryption key for transparent data encryption.
<code>pgx_set_keystore_passphrase(<i>oldPassphrase</i>, <i>newPassphrase</i>)</code>	void	Changes the keystore passphrase

#### B.2.1 `pgx_open_keystore`

`pgx_open_keystore` opens the keystore.

Only superusers can execute this function. Also, this function cannot be executed within a transaction block.

File-based keystores:

The `pgx_open_keystore` function uses the specified passphrase to open the keystore. When the keystore is opened, the master encryption key is loaded into the database server memory. In this way, you can access the encrypted data and create encrypted tablespaces. If the keystore is already open, this function returns an error.

## Using the key management system as a keystore

`pgx_open_keystore` makes available (opens a keystore) a master encryption key on a key management system that has already been declared for use. The keystore cannot be opened unless it has been declared to use a master encryption key.

If the keystore is already open, use the credentials you entered to reconnect to the key management system.

Specify the authentication information for connecting to the key management system. Arguments must be specified in naming notation. The information you pass in the argument depends on the key management system you use.

If the key management system information file specifies an obfuscated credentials file, the file is recreated with the new credentials.

## Using the key management service of type kmip

The following arguments are specified in naming notation.

- `sslpassphrase` text

Specifies the passphrase of the client certificate private key file when connecting to the KMIP server. This can be omitted if no passphrase is set in the private key file.

## Using the key management service of type custom

The following arguments are specified in naming notation.

- `kms_secret` text

Confidential information passed to the plugin. It can be omitted if it is not necessary for using the key management system. Whether or not it can be omitted depends on the implementation of the plugin.

## Example

To specify the passphrase `mykmippassphrase` for the client certificate private key file in naming notation:

```
SELECT pgx_open_keystore( sslpassphrase => 'mykmippassphrase' );
```

## B.2.2 `pgx_set_master_key`

---

The `pgx_set_master_key` function generates a master encryption key and stores it in the file-based keystore.

If the keystore does not exist, this function creates a keystore. If the keystore already exists, this function modifies the master encryption key. If the keystore has not been opened, this function opens it.

The passphrase is a string of 8 to 200 bytes.

Only superusers can execute this function. Also, this function cannot be executed within a transaction block. Processing is not affected by whether the keystore is open.

## B.2.3 `pgx_declare_external_master_key`

---

`pgx_declare_external_master_key` declares the use of an encryption key that exists in the key management system as the master encryption key for transparent data encryption. If the master encryption key already exists, change the master encryption key. If the master encryption key already exists, the keystore must be open.

The argument specifies information that identifies the master encryption key. Arguments must be specified in naming notation. The information you pass in the argument depends on the key management system you use.

This function can only be executed by superuser. Also, you cannot execute this function within a transaction block.

This function is available if you have installed the extension `'tde_kms'`.

The following arguments are specified in naming notation:

- `kms_name` text

Specify the key management system name specified in the key management system connection information file. Required.

- key\_id text

Specify the key ID assigned to the encryption key. Cannot be omitted.

- sslpassphrase text

Specify the passphrase of the client certificate private key file when connecting to the KMIP server. This can be omitted if the private key file does not have a passphrase. Ignored if the key management system type specified by kms\_name is not kmip.

- kms\_secret text

Confidential information passed to the plugin. It can be omitted if it is not necessary for using the key management system. Whether or not it can be omitted depends on the implementation of the plugin. Ignored if the key management system type specified by kms\_name is not custom.

### Example

```
SELECT pgx_declare_external_master_key( kms_name => 'mykmipsvr', key_id =>
'a0eebc99-9c0b-0000-0000-000000000000', sslpassphrase => 'mykmippassphrase' );
```

## B.2.4 pgx\_set\_keystore\_passphrase

The pgx\_set\_keystore\_passphrase function changes the file-based keystore passphrase.

Specify the current passphrase in *oldPassphrase*, and a new passphrase in *newPassphrase*.

The passphrase is a string of 8 to 200 bytes.

Only superusers can execute this function. Also, this function cannot be executed within a transaction block. Processing is not affected by whether the keystore is open.

## B.3 Profile Management Functions and User Management Functions

The table below lists the profile management functions and user management functions used in policy-based password management.

### B.3.1 Profile Management Functions

Name	Return type	Description
pgx_create_profile(profile_name name, password_parameter json)	void	<p>Create a new profile.</p> <p>For profile_name, specify the profile name. An error will occur if an existing profile name is specified.</p> <p>For password_parameter, specify parameters and values in key-value format as follows.</p> <pre>{   "PASSWORD_LIFE_TIME": 30,   "PASSWORD_GRACE_TIME": "UNLIMITED",   "PASSWORD_REUSE_TIME": 10,   "PASSWORD_REUSE_MAX": 5,   "PASSWORD_LOCK_TIME": 0.5,   "FAILED_LOGIN_ATTEMPTS": "DEFAULT",   "PASSWORD_ALLOW_HASHED": true }</pre> <p>The json value accepts integer, numeric, boolean depending on the parameter, but only accepts strings "DEFAULT" and "UNLIMITED" as special values.</p>

Name	Return type	Description
		For parameters that are omitted in json or that specify null for value, they follow the values in the default profile. Also, password_parameter can be omitted, and if omitted, a profile with all parameters conforming to the default profile will be created.
pgx_alter_profile(profile_name name, alter_parameter json)	void	<p>Update the contents of an existing profile.</p> <p>For profile_name, specify the name of the profile to update. If you specify a profile name that does not exist, an error will occur.</p> <p>In alter_parameter, specify the variable name and value you want to change in key-value format as follows. Does not change the profile contents for parameters that are omitted or for which value is null.</p> <pre>{   "name": "new_name",   "PASSWORD_LIFE_TIME": 50,   "PASSWORD_GRACE_TIME": 10 }</pre> <p>name: Specify the modified profile name. null cannot be specified.</p> <p>If the default profile is specified in profile_name, the following changes cannot be made.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Change name</li> <li>- Change each password_parameter to "DEFAULT"</li> </ul>
pgx_drop_profile(profile_name name, if_exists boolean, cascade boolean)	void	<p>Delete an existing profile.</p> <p>Specify the profile name to be deleted in profile_name.</p> <p>Specifying the default profile will result in an error.</p> <p>if_exists specifies whether an error occurs when a nonexistent profile name is specified in profile_name. If true, no error. if_exists is optional. Default value is false.</p> <p>cascade specifies whether an error occurs when a profile assigned to a user is specified in profile_name. If false, an error will occur. If true, unassign all of the profiles before deleting them, and any unassigned users will be assigned the default profile instead. cascade is optional. Default value is false.</p> <p>[Example when specifying true] Specify arguments explicitly. (Example of named notation)</p> <pre>SELECT pgx_drop_profile('test_profile', cascade =&gt; true);</pre>

### B.3.2 User Management Functions

Name	Return type	Description
pgx_assign_profile_to_user(user_name name, profile_name name)	void	<p>Assigns an existing profile to a user.</p> <p>Specify the assignee user in user_name. If you specify a user name that does not exist, an error will occur.</p> <p>Specify the profile name to be assigned in profile_name. If you specify a profile name that does not exist, an error will occur.</p>
pgx_lock_user(user_name name)	void	Lock the user explicitly.

Name	Return type	Description
		Specify the user name in user_name. If you specify a user name that does not exist, an error will occur.  If locked by this function, the lock period is indefinite. If you want to unlock it, you need to unlock it with the pgx_unlock_user function.  If you lock a user that is already locked, the lock state is overwritten and becomes an indefinite lock even if it was previously a finite lock.
pgx_unlock_user(user_name name)	void	Explicitly unlock the user. The type of lock (profile reference lock or permanent lock) does not matter.  Specify the user name in user_name. If you specify a user name that does not exist, an error will occur.  Specifying an unlocked user does not result in an error.
pgx_make_password_expire(user_name name, expireat timestampz)	void	Expires the specified user's password immediately. Alternatively, specify the time to expire.  Specify the user name in user_name. If you specify a user name that does not exist, an error will occur.  expireat can be a time that expires.expireat is optional. If omitted, execution time is specified.

## B.4 Data Masking Control Functions

The table below lists the functions that can be used for data masking.

Table B.3 Data masking control functions

Name	Return type	Description
<a href="#">pgx_alter_confidential_policy</a>	boolean	Changes masking policies
<a href="#">pgx_create_confidential_policy</a>	boolean	Creates masking policies
<a href="#">pgx_drop_confidential_policy</a>	boolean	Deletes masking policies
<a href="#">pgx_enable_confidential_policy</a>	boolean	Enables or disables masking policies
<a href="#">pgx_update_confidential_values</a>	boolean	Changes replacement characters when full masking is specified for masking type

### B.4.1 pgx\_alter\_confidential\_policy

#### Description

Changes masking policies

#### Format

The format varies depending on the content to be changed. The format is shown below.

- Common format

```
common_arg:
[schema_name      := 'schemaName', ]


```

- Add a masking target to a masking policy

```
pgx_alter_confidential_policy(
commonArg,
[action          := 'ADD_COLUMN', ]
[column_name     := 'colName'
[, function_type := 'FULL'] |
[, function_type := 'PARTIAL', partialOpt] |
[, function_type := 'REGEXP', regexpOpt]
)
```

```
partialOpt:
function_parameters := 'maskingFmt'
```

```
regexpOpt:
regexp_pattern      := 'regexpPattern',
regexp_replacement  := 'regexpReplacementChar',
[, regexp_flags     := 'regexpFlags']
```

- Delete a masking target from a masking policy

```
pgx_alter_confidential_policy(
commonArg,
[action          := 'DROP_COLUMN',
[column_name     := 'colName'
]
```

- Change the masking condition

```
pgx_alter_confidential_policy(
commonArg,
[action          := 'MODIFY_EXPRESSION',
[expression      := 'expr'
]
```

- Change the content of a masking policy set for a masking target

```
pgx_alter_confidential_policy(
commonArg,
[action          := 'MODIFY_COLUMN',
[column_name     := 'colName'
[, function_type := 'FULL'] |
[, function_type := 'PARTIAL', partialOpt] |
[, function_type := 'REGEXP', regexpOpt]
)
```

```
partialOpt:
function_parameters := 'maskingFmt'
```

```
regexpOpt:
regexp_pattern      := 'regexpPattern',
regexp_replacement  := 'regexpReplacementChar',
[, regexp_flags     := 'regexpFlags']
```

- Change the masking policy description

```
pgx_alter_confidential_policy(
commonArg,
[action          := 'SET_POLICY_DESCRIPTION',
[policy_description := 'policyDesc'
]
```



- Change the masking target description

```
pgx_alter_confidential_policy(
commonArg,
action          := 'SET_COLUMN_DESCRIPTION',
column_name     := 'colName',
column_description := 'colDesc'
)
```

## Argument

The argument varies depending on the content to be changed. Details are as follows.

- Common arguments

Masking type for which an argument can be specified	Argument	Data type	Description	Default value
All	schema_name	varchar(63)	Schema name of table for which a masking policy is applied	'public'
	table_name	varchar(63)	Name of table for which a masking policy is applied	Mandatory
	policy_name	varchar(63)	Masking policy name	Mandatory

- Add a masking target to a masking policy

Masking type for which an argument can be specified	Argument	Data type	Description	Default value
All	action	varchar(63)	'ADD_COLUMN'	'ADD_COLUMN'
	column_name	varchar(63)	Masking target name	Mandatory
	function_type	varchar(63)	Masking type <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- 'FULL': Full masking</li> <li>- 'PARTIAL': Partial masking</li> <li>- 'REGEXP': Regular expression masking</li> </ul>	'FULL'
Partial masking	function_parameters	varchar(1024)	Masking format for partial masking	Mandatory
Regular expression masking	regexp_pattern	varchar(1024)	Search pattern for regular expression masking	Mandatory
	regexp_replacement	varchar(1024)	Replacement character/string for regular expression masking	Mandatory
	regexp_flags	varchar(20)	Regular expression flags	NULL

- Delete a masking target from a masking policy

Masking type for which an argument can be specified	Argument	Data type	Description	Default value
All	action	varchar(63)	'DROP_COLUMN'	Mandatory
	column_name	varchar(63)	Masking target name	Mandatory

- Change the masking condition

Masking type for which an argument can be specified	Argument	Data type	Description	Default value
All	action	varchar(63)	'MODIFY_EXPRESSION'	Mandatory
	expression	varchar(1024)	Masking condition to be changed	Mandatory

- Change the content of a masking policy set for a masking target

Masking type for which an argument can be specified	Argument	Data type	Description	Default value
All	action	varchar(63)	'MODIFY_COLUMN'	Mandatory
	column_name	varchar(63)	Masking target name	Mandatory
	function_type	varchar(63)	Masking type <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- 'FULL': Full masking</li> <li>- 'PARTIAL': Partial masking</li> <li>- 'REGEXP': Regular expression masking</li> </ul>	'FULL'
Partial masking	function_parameters	varchar(1024)	Masking format for partial masking	Mandatory
Regular expression masking	regexp_pattern	varchar(1024)	Search pattern for regular expression masking	Mandatory
	regexp_replacement	varchar(1024)	Replacement character/string for regular expression masking	Mandatory
	regexp_flags	varchar(20)	Regular expression flags	NULL

- Change the masking policy description

Masking type for which an argument can be specified	Argument	Data type	Description	Default value
All	action	varchar(63)	'SET_POLICY_DESCRIPTION'	Mandatory
	policy_description	varchar(1024)	Masking policy description	Mandatory

- Change the masking target description

Masking type for which an argument can be specified	Argument	Data type	Description	Default value
All	action	varchar(63)	'SET_COLUMN_DESCRIPTION'	Mandatory
	column_name	varchar(63)	Masking target name	Mandatory
	column_description	varchar(1024)	Masking target description	Mandatory

Details about whether arguments can be omitted are as follows.

Argument	Mandatory or optional									
	ADD_COLUMN			DROP_COLUMN	MODIFY_EXPRESSION	MODIFY_COLUMN			SET_POLICY_DESCRIPTION	SET_COLUMN_DESCRIPTION
	Full masking	Partial masking	Regular expression masking			Full masking	Partial masking	Regular expression masking		
schema_name	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
table_name	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
policy_name	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
action	Y	Y	Y	N	N	N	N	N	N	N
column_name	N	N	N	N	-	N	N	N	-	N
function_type	Y	N	N	-	-	Y	N	N	-	-
expression	-	-	-	-	N	-	-	-	-	-
policy_description	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	N	-
column_description	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	N
function_parameters	-	N	-	-	-	-	N	-	-	-
regexp_pattern	-	-	N	-	-	-	-	N	-	-
regexp_replacement	-	-	N	-	-	-	-	N	-	-
regexp_flags	-	-	Y	-	-	-	-	Y	-	-

Y: Can be omitted; N: Cannot be omitted; -: Ignored when specified

## Return value

Return value	Description
TRUE	Ended normally
FALSE	Ended abnormally

## Execution example 1

Adding masking policy p1 to masking target c2

```
postgres=# select pgx_alter_confidential_policy(table_name := 't1', policy_name := 'p1', action :=
'ADD_COLUMN', column_name := 'c2', function_type := 'PARTIAL', function_parameters := 'VVVFVVVFVVVV,
VVV-VVVV-VVVV, *, 4, 11');
pgx_alter_confidential_policy
-----
t
(1 row)
```

## Execution example 2

Deleting masking target c1 from masking policy p1

```
postgres=# select pgx_alter_confidential_policy(table_name := 't1', policy_name := 'p1', action :=
'DROP_COLUMN', column_name := 'c1');
pgx_alter_confidential_policy
-----
```

```
t
(1 row)
```

### Execution example 3

Changing the masking condition for masking policy p1

```
postgres=# select pgx_alter_confidential_policy(table_name := 't1', policy_name := 'p1', action :=
'MODIFY_EXPRESSION', expression := 'false');
pgx_alter_confidential_policy
-----
t
(1 row)
```

### Execution example 4

Changing the content of masking policy p1 set for masking target c2

```
postgres=# select pgx_alter_confidential_policy(table_name := 't1', policy_name := 'p1', action :=
'MODIFY_COLUMN', column_name := 'c2', function_type := 'FULL');
pgx_alter_confidential_policy
-----
t
(1 row)
```

### Execution example 5

Changing the description of masking policy p1

```
postgres=# select pgx_alter_confidential_policy(table_name := 't1', policy_name := 'p1', action :=
'SET_POLICY_DESCRIPTION', policy_description := 'this policy is an example. ');
pgx_alter_confidential_policy
-----
t
(1 row)
```

### Execution example 6

Changing the description of masking target c2

```
postgres=# select pgx_alter_confidential_policy(table_name := 't1', policy_name := 'p1', action :=
'SET_COLUMN_DESCRIPTION', column_name := 'c2', column_description := 'c2 column is FULL. ');
pgx_alter_confidential_policy
-----
t
(1 row)
```

### Description

- The arguments for the `pgx_alter_confidential_policy` system management function can be specified in any order.
- The action parameters below can be specified. When action parameters are omitted, `ADD_COLUMN` is applied.

Parameter	Description
<code>ADD_COLUMN</code>	Adds a masking target to a masking policy.
<code>DROP_COLUMN</code>	Deletes a masking target from a masking policy.
<code>MODIFY_EXPRESSION</code>	Changes expression.
<code>MODIFY_COLUMN</code>	Changes the content of a masking policy set for a masking target.
<code>SET_POLICY_DESCRIPTION</code>	Changes <code>policy_description</code> .

Parameter	Description
SET_COLUMN_DESCRIPTION	Changes column_description.

- The function\_parameters argument is enabled when the function\_type is PARTIAL. If the function\_type is other than PARTIAL, it will be ignored.
- The arguments below are enabled when the function\_type is REGEXP. If the function\_type is other than REGEXP, these arguments will be ignored.
  - regexp\_pattern
  - regexp\_replacement
  - regexp\_flags



See

- Refer to "String Constants" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on the strings to specify for arguments.
- Refer to "POSIX Regular Expressions" in the PostgreSQL Documentation and check pattern, replacement, and flags for information on the values that can be specified for regexp\_pattern, regexp\_replacement, and regexp\_flags.

## B.4.2 pgx\_create\_confidential\_policy

### Description

Creates masking policies

### Format

The format varies depending on the masking type. The format is shown below.

```
pgx_create_confidential_policy(
[schema_name      := 'schemaName',]
[table_name       := 'tableName',
policy_name       := 'policyName',
expression        := 'expr'
[, enable         := 'policyStatus']
[, policy_description := 'policyDesc']
[, column_name     := 'colName'
  [, function_type  := 'FULL'] |
  [, function_type  := 'PARTIAL', partialOpt] |
  [, function_type  := 'REGEXP', regexpOpt]
[, column_description := 'colDesc']
])
```

```
partialOpt:
function_parameters := 'maskingFmt'
```

```
regexpOpt:
regexp_pattern      := 'regexpPattern',
regexp_replacement  := 'regexpReplacementChar',
[, regexp_flags     := 'regexpFlags']
```

### Argument

Details are as follows.

Masking type for which an argument can be specified	Argument	Data type	Description	Default value
All	schema_name	varchar(63)	Schema name of table for which the masking policy is created	'public'
	table_name	varchar(63)	Name of table for which the masking policy is created	Mandatory
	policy_name	varchar(63)	Masking policy name	Mandatory
	expression	varchar(1024)	Masking condition	Mandatory
	enable	boolean	Masking policy status - 't': Enabled - 'f': Disabled	't'
	policy_description	varchar(1024)	Masking policy description	NULL
	column_name	varchar(63)	Masking target name	NULL
	function_type	varchar(63)	Masking type - 'FULL': Full masking - 'PARTIAL': Partial masking - 'REGEXP': Regular expression masking	'FULL'
	column_description	varchar(1024)	Masking target description	NULL
Partial masking	function_parameters	varchar(1024)	Masking format for partial masking	Mandatory
Regular expression masking	regexp_pattern	varchar(1024)	Search pattern for regular expression masking	Mandatory
	regexp_replacement	varchar(1024)	Replacement character/string for regular expression masking	Mandatory
	regexp_flags	varchar(20)	Regular expression flags	NULL

Details about whether arguments can be omitted are as follows.

Argument	Mandatory or optional		
	Full masking	Partial masking	Regular expression masking
schema_name	Y	Y	Y
table_name	N	N	N
policy_name	N	N	N
expression	N	N	N
enable	Y	Y	Y
policy_description	Y	Y	Y
column_name	Y	Y	Y
function_type	Y	Y	Y
column_description	Y	Y	Y
function_parameters	-	N	-
regexp_pattern	-	-	N
regexp_replacement	-	-	N

Argument	Mandatory or optional		
	Full masking	Partial masking	Regular expression masking
regexp_flags	-	-	Y

Y: Can be omitted; N: Cannot be omitted; -: Ignored when specified

## Return value

Return value	Description
TRUE	Ended normally
FALSE	Ended abnormally

## Execution example 1

Creating masking policy p1 that does not contain a masking target

```
postgres=# select pgx_create_confidential_policy(table_name := 't1', policy_name := 'p1',
expression := 'l=1');
pgx_create_confidential_policy
-----
t
(1 row)
```

## Execution example 2

Creating masking policy p1 that contains masking target c1 of which the masking type is full masking

```
postgres=# select pgx_create_confidential_policy(schema_name := 'public', table_name := 't1',
policy_name := 'p1', expression := 'l=1', enable := 't', policy_description := 'this policy is an
example.', column_name := 'c1', function_type := 'FULL', column_description := 'c1 column is FULL.');
```

```
pgx_create_confidential_policy
-----
t
(1 row)
```

## Execution example 3

Creating masking policy p1 that contains masking target c2 of which the masking type is partial masking

```
postgres=# select pgx_create_confidential_policy( table_name := 't1', policy_name := 'p1',
expression := 'l=1', column_name := 'c2', function_type := 'PARTIAL', function_parameters :=
'VVVFVVVFVVVV, VVV-VVVV-VVVV, *, 4, 11');
```

```
pgx_create_confidential_policy
-----
t
(1 row)
```

## Execution example 4

Creating masking policy p1 that contains masking target c3 of which the masking type is regular expression masking

```
postgres=# select pgx_create_confidential_policy( table_name := 't1', policy_name := 'p1',
expression := 'l=1', column_name := 'c3', function_type := 'REGEXP', regexp_pattern := '(.*)(@.*)',
regexp_replacement := 'xxx\2', regexp_flags := 'g');
```

```
pgx_create_confidential_policy
-----
t
(1 row)
```

## Description

- The arguments for the `pgx_create_confidential_policy` system management function can be specified in any order.
- If `column_name` is omitted, only masking policies that do not contain masking target will be created.
- One masking policy can be created for each table. Use the `pgx_alter_confidential_policy` system management function to add a masking target to a masking policy.
- The `function_parameters` argument is enabled when the `function_type` is `PARTIAL`. If the `function_type` is other than `PARTIAL`, it will be ignored.
- The arguments below are enabled when the `function_type` is `REGEXP`. If the `function_type` is other than `REGEXP`, these arguments will be ignored.
  - `regexp_pattern`
  - `regexp_replacement`
  - `regexp_flags`



### Note

If a table for which a masking policy is to be applied is deleted, delete the masking policy as well.



### See

- Refer to "String Constants" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on the strings to specify for arguments.
- Refer to "POSIX Regular Expressions" in the PostgreSQL Documentation and check pattern, replacement, and flags for information on the values that can be specified for `regexp_pattern`, `regexp_replacement`, and `regexp_flags`.

## B.4.3 `pgx_drop_confidential_policy`

### Description

Deletes masking policies

### Format

```
pgx_drop_confidential_policy(  
[schema_name      := 'schemaName', ]  
table_name        := 'tableName',  
policy_name       := 'policyName'  
)
```

### Argument

Details are as follows.

Argument	Data type	Description	Default value
<code>schema_name</code>	<code>varchar(63)</code>	Schema name of table for which a masking policy is deleted	'public'
<code>table_name</code>	<code>varchar(63)</code>	Name of table for which a masking policy is deleted	Mandatory
<code>policy_name</code>	<code>varchar(63)</code>	Masking policy name	Mandatory

Details about whether arguments can be omitted are as follows.



Argument	Mandatory or optional
schema_name	Y
table_name	N
policy_name	N

Y: Can be omitted; N: Cannot be omitted

### Return value

Return value	Description
TRUE	Ended normally
FALSE	Ended abnormally

### Execution example

Deleting masking policy p1

```
postgres=# select pgx_drop_confidential_policy(table_name := 't1', policy_name := 'p1');
pgx_drop_confidential_policy
-----
t
(1 row)
```

### Description

The arguments for the `pgx_drop_confidential_policy` system management function can be specified in any order.



#### Note

If a table for which a masking policy is to be applied is deleted, delete the masking policy as well.



#### See

Refer to "String Constants" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on the strings to specify for arguments.

## B.4.4 `pgx_enable_confidential_policy`

### Description

Enables or disables masking policies

### Format

```
pgx_enable_confidential_policy(
[schema_name      := 'schemaName', ]
table_name        := 'tableName',
policy_name       := 'policyName',
enable            := 'policyStatus'
)
```

### Argument

Details are as follows.

Argument	Data type	Description	Default value
schema_name	varchar(63)	Schema name of table for which a masking policy is enabled or disabled	'public'
table_name	varchar(63)	Name of table for which a masking policy is enabled or disabled	Mandatory
policy_name	varchar(63)	Masking policy name	Mandatory
enable	boolean	Masking policy status - 't': Enabled - 'f': Disabled	Mandatory

Details about whether arguments can be omitted are as follows.

Argument	Mandatory or optional
schema_name	Y
table_name	N
policy_name	N
enable	N

Y: Can be omitted; N: Cannot be omitted

## Return value

Return value	Description
TRUE	Ended normally
FALSE	Ended abnormally

## Execution example

Enabling masking policy p1

```
postgres=# select pgx_enable_confidential_policy(table_name := 't1', policy_name := 'p1', enable := 't');
pgx_enable_confidential_policy
-----
t
(1 row)
```

## Description

The arguments for the `pgx_enable_confidential_policy` system management function can be specified in any order.



See

Refer to "String Constants" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on the strings to specify for arguments.

## B.4.5 pgx\_update\_confidential\_values

### Description

Changes replacement characters when full masking is specified for masking type

## Format

```
pgx_update_confidential_values(  
  [number_value      := 'numberValue']  
  [, char_value      := 'charValue']  
  [, varchar_value    := 'varcharValue']  
  [, date_value       := 'dateValue']  
  [, ts_value         := 'tsValue']  
)
```

## Argument

Details are as follows.

Argument	Data type	Description
number_value	integer	Replacement character in numeric type
char_value	varchar(1)	Replacement character in char type
varchar_value	varchar(1)	Replacement character in varchar type
date_value	date	Replacement character in date type
ts_value	timestamp	Replacement character in timestamp type

## Return value

Return value	Description
TRUE	Ended normally
FALSE	Ended abnormally

## Execution example

Using '\*' as a replacement character in char type and varchar type

```
postgres=# select pgx_update_confidential_values(char_value := '*', varchar_value := '*');  
pgx_update_confidential_values  
-----  
t  
(1 row)
```

## Description

- The arguments for the pgx\_update\_confidential\_values system management function can be specified in any order.
- Specify one or more arguments for the pgx\_update\_confidential\_values system management function. A replacement character is not changed for an omitted argument.



See

Refer to "String Constants" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on the strings to specify for arguments.

## B.5 VCI Data Load Control Function

The table below lists the function that loads VCI data to buffer cache.

Table B.4 VCI data load control function

Name	Return type	Description
pgx_prewarm_vci(vci_index regclass)	int8	Loads the VCI data to buffer cache.

pgx\_prewarm\_vci loads the specified VCI data to buffer cache and returns the number of blocks of the loaded VCI data.

The aggregation process using VCI may take time immediately after an instance is started, because the VCI data has not been loaded to buffer cache. Therefore, the first aggregation process can be sped up by executing pgx\_prewarm\_vci after an instance is started.

The amount of memory required for preloading is the number of blocks returned by pgx\_prewarm\_vci multiplied by the size of one block.

This function can only be executed if the user has reference privilege to the VCI index and execution privilege to the pg\_prewarm function.

## B.6 High-Speed Data Load Control Functions

---

The table below lists the functions that can be used for high-speed data load.

Table B.5 High-speed data load control functions

Name	Return type	Description
pgx_loader	bigint	Creates dynamic shared memory, starts parallel workers and loads data
pgx_loader_recovery	smallint	Resolves in-doubt transactions

The pgx\_loader command executes the above functions internally.

## Appendix C System Catalogs

Describes the system catalog of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.



See

Refer to "System Catalogs" under "Internals" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on other system catalogs.

### C.1 pgx\_profile

A system catalog for managing profile information. -1 is stored if DEFAULT is specified for each parameter in the profile, and -2 is stored if UNLIMITED is specified.

Column	Type	Description
oid	oid	Profile identifier (Primary key constraint)
prfname	name	Profile name (Unique constraint, NOT NULL constraint)
prfpasswordlifetime	integer	Value of PASSWORD_LIFE_TIME (seconds) (NOT NULL constraint)
prfpasswordgracetime	integer	Value of PASSWORD_GRACE_TIME (seconds) (NOT NULL constraint)
prfpasswordreusetime	integer	Value of PASSWORD_REUSE_TIME (seconds) (NOT NULL constraint)
prfpasswordreusemax	integer	Value of PASSWORD_REUSE_MAX (seconds) (NOT NULL constraint)
prfpasswordlocktime	integer	Value of PASSWORD_LOCK_TIME (seconds) (NOT NULL constraint)
prffailedloginattempts	integer	Value of FAILED_LOGIN_ATTEMPTS (seconds) (NOT NULL constraint)
prfpasswordallowhashed	integer	Value of PASSWORD_ALLOW_HASHED (NOT NULL constraint)

### C.2 pgx\_user\_profile

A system catalog that manages profile-related information associated with users. When DROP ROLE, the corresponding row is automatically deleted.

Column	Type	References	Description
userprfroleid	oid	pg_authid.oid	User's identifier (Primary key constraint)
userprfprfid	oid	pgx_profile.oid	Identifier of the profile assigned to the user
userprfaccountlock	smallint		User lock state (NOT NULL constraint) 0: Not locked 1: Lock (Refer to PASSWORD_LOCK_TIME in profile for duration) 2: Lock (Unlimited)

Column	Type	References	Description
userprfpasswordstatus	char		Password status Updated if there are any changes at login (NOT NULL constraint) o: Current valid password g: In grace period e: Expired
userprflockdate	timestamp with time zone		Time the user was locked
userprfpasswordsetat	timestamp with time zone		Time you updated your current password
userprfpasswordexpire	timestamp with time zone		Password expiration time

### C.3 pgx\_password\_history

A system catalog for managing password history. When DROP ROLE is executed, the corresponding row is automatically deleted.

Since this catalog contains passwords, general users cannot refer to it, just like pg\_authid. This system catalog is basically updated when the password is updated, and if the password reuse limit is finite, unnecessary history deletion is also performed. Old passwords that have been removed from the catalog are treated as having never been used.

passhistpassword is saved in the format specified by the password\_encryption parameter.

Column	Type	Description
passhistroleid	oid	Identifier of the user whose password was set Set unique constraint with (passhistroleid, passhistpassword).
passhistpassword	text	Encrypted password Save rolpassword value in pg_authid as history (NOT NULL constraint)
passhistpasswordsetat	timestamp with time zone	Time when the password was updated (NOT NULL constraint)

## Appendix D System Views

This appendix describes how to use the system views in Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.



Refer to "System Views" under "Internals" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on other system views.

### D.1 pgx\_tablespaces

The pgx\_tablespaces view provides information related to the encryption of tablespaces.

Table D.1 pgx\_tablespaces view

Column	Type	References	Description
spctablespace	oid	pg_tablespace.oid	Tablespace OID
spcencalgo	text		Tablespace encryption algorithm

The spcencalgo string displays one of the following values:

- none: Tablespace is not encrypted
- AES128: AES with key length of 128 bits
- AES256: AES with key length of 256 bits

### D.2 pgx\_stat\_lwlock

The pgx\_stat\_lwlock view displays statistics related to lightweight locks, with each type of content displayed on a separate line.

Table D.2 pgx\_stat\_lwlock view

Column	Type	Description
lwlock_name	name	Name of the lightweight lock
total_waits	bigint	Number of waits caused by the lightweight lock
total_wait_time	double precision	Number of milliseconds spent in waits caused by the lightweight lock
stats_reset	timestamp with timezone	Last time at which this statistics was reset

### D.3 pgx\_stat\_latch

The pgx\_stat\_latch view displays statistics related to latches, with each type of wait information within Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres displayed on a separate line.

Table D.3 pgx\_stat\_latch view

Column	Type	Description
latch_name	name	Name of the latch
total_waits	bigint	Number of waits caused a wait
total_wait_time	double precision	Number of milliseconds spent in waits caused by the latch
stats_reset	timestamp with timezone	Last time at which this statistic was reset

## D.4 pgx\_stat\_walwriter

The `pgx_stat_walwriter` view displays statistics related to WAL writing, in a single line.

Table D.4 `pgx_stat_walwriter` view

Column	Type	Description
<code>dirty_writes</code>	<code>bigint</code>	Number of times old WAL buffers were written to the disk because the WAL buffer was full when WAL records were added
<code>writes</code>	<code>bigint</code>	Number of WAL writes
<code>write_blocks</code>	<code>bigint</code>	Number of WAL write blocks
<code>total_write_time</code>	<code>double precision</code>	Number of milliseconds spent on WAL writing
<code>stats_reset</code>	<code>timestamp with timezone</code>	Last time at which this statistic was reset

## D.5 pgx\_stat\_sql

The `pgx_stat_sql` view displays statistics related to SQL statement executions, with each type of SQL statement displayed on a separate line.

Table D.5 `pgx_stat_sql` view

Column	Type	Description
<code>selects</code>	<code>bigint</code>	Number of SELECT statements executed  In database multiplexing mode, this number includes the SELECT statements executed in Mirroring Controller. Mirroring Controller executes the SELECT statement using the interval specified for the <code>heartbeat_interval</code> of the server definition file (milliseconds).
<code>inserts</code>	<code>bigint</code>	Number of INSERT statements executed
<code>deletes</code>	<code>bigint</code>	Number of DELETE statements executed
<code>updates</code>	<code>bigint</code>	Number of UPDATE statements executed
<code>selects_with_parallelism</code>	<code>bigint</code>	Number of times parallel scan was used in SELECT statements
<code>inserts_with_parallelism</code>	<code>bigint</code>	Not used
<code>deletes_with_parallelism</code>	<code>bigint</code>	Not used
<code>updates_with_parallelism</code>	<code>bigint</code>	Not used
<code>copies_with_parallelism</code>	<code>bigint</code>	Not used
<code>declares</code>	<code>bigint</code>	Number of DECLARE statements executed (number of cursor OPENs)
<code>fetches</code>	<code>bigint</code>	Number of FETCH statements executed
<code>checkpoints</code>	<code>bigint</code>	Number of CHECKPOINT statements executed
<code>clusters</code>	<code>bigint</code>	Number of CLUSTER statements executed
<code>copies</code>	<code>bigint</code>	Number of COPY statements executed
<code>reindexes</code>	<code>bigint</code>	Number of REINDEX statements executed
<code>truncates</code>	<code>bigint</code>	Number of TRUNCATE statements executed
<code>locks</code>	<code>bigint</code>	Number of times a lock occurred
<code>stats_reset</code>	<code>timestamp with timezone</code>	Last time at which this statistic was reset



## D.6 pgx\_stat\_gmc

---

The pgx\_stat\_gmc view provides information about the GMC areas.

Table D.6 pgx\_stat\_gmc view

Column	Type	Description
searches	bigint	Number of times the cache table is searched.
hits	bigint	Number of times the cache table is hit.
size	bigint	The current amount of memory (bytes) used in the GMC area.
stats_reset	timestamp with timezone	Last time these statistics were reset.

## D.7 pgx\_stat\_progress\_loader

---

The pgx\_stat\_progress\_loader view provides overall progress information for pgx\_loader command.

The pgx\_stat\_progress\_loader view displays the sum of the progress information of the back-end processes and the number of parallel worker processes when pgx\_loader runs.

Table D.7 pgx\_stat\_progress\_loader view

Column	Type	Description
pid	integer	Process ID of the backend.
datid	Oid	Oid of the database to connect to.
datname	name	Name of the database to connect to.
relid	Oid	Oid of the table to load.
command	text	Command executes the load process. (Always "COPY FROM" for pgx_loader)
type	text	Type of data source for the load operation.
bytes_processed	bigint	Size of the data at the end of the load. (Backend and worker totals)
bytes_total	bigint	Size of the data to load. (Backend and worker totals)
tuples_processed	bigint	Number of rows that have completed loading. (Backend and worker totals)
tuples_excluded	bigint	Number of rows skipped during the load process. (Backend and worker totals)

# Appendix E Tables Used by Transparent Data Encryption

This appendix explains tables used by the transparent data encryption feature.

## E.1 pgx\_tde\_master\_key

Provides information about the master encryption key being used when using the key management system as a keystore.

Column	Type	Description
local_key_id	integer	Sequence of encryption keys used internally by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres
kms_name	text	Key management system name
key_name	text	Not currently used
key_id	text	Key ID in key management system
start_time	timestamp	Time the key was activated
status	enum	in-use: Current master encryption key in use used: Master encryption key used in the past scheduled: A new encryption key that was requested to update the master encryption key and is to be used.

### Execution example

```
postgres=# select * from pgx_tde_master_key;
local_key_id | kms_name | key_name | key_id | start_time | status
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----
1 | mykmipsvr | | a0eebc99-9c0b-0000-0000-000000000000 | 2022-12-16 05:43:49 | in-use
(1 row)
```



### Note

Do not use queries with "\*" in the selection list, as the order of the columns may change or columns may be added.

## Appendix F Tables Used by Data Masking

This appendix explains tables used by the data masking feature.



### Note

These tables are updated by the data masking control function, so do not use SQL statements to directly update these tables.

## F.1 pgx\_confidential\_columns

This table provides information on masking target for which masking policies are set.

Column	Type	Description
schema_name	varchar(63)	Schema name of table for which a masking policy is applied
table_name	varchar(63)	Name of table for which a masking policy is applied
policy_name	varchar(63)	Masking policy name
column_name	varchar(63)	Masking target name
function_type	varchar(63)	Masking type <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- 'FULL': Full masking</li><li>- 'PARTIAL': Partial masking</li><li>- 'REGEXP': Regular expression masking</li></ul>
function_parameters	varchar(1024)	Masking format for partial masking
regexp_pattern	varchar(1024)	Search pattern for regular expression masking
regexp_replacement	varchar(1024)	Replacement character/string for regular expression masking
regexp_flags	varchar(20)	Regular expression flags
column_description	varchar(1024)	Masking target description

### Execution example

```
postgres=# select * from pgx_confidential_columns;
 schema_name | table_name | policy_name | column_name | function_type |
function_parameters | regexp_pattern | regexp_replacement | regexp_flags |
column_description
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----
public      | t1        | p1         | c1          | FULL         |
public      | t1        | p1         | c2          | PARTIAL      | VVVVVVVVVVVVVV, VVV-VVVV-VVVV,
*, 4, 11 |
(2 row)
```

## F.2 pgx\_confidential\_policies

This table provides information on masking policies.

Column	Type	Description
schema_name	varchar(63)	Schema name of table for which a masking policy is applied

Column	Type	Description
table_name	varchar(63)	Name of table for which a masking policy is applied
policy_name	varchar(63)	Masking policy name
expression	varchar(1024)	Masking condition
enable	boolean	Masking policy status - 't': Enabled - 'f': Disabled
policy_description	varchar(1024)	Masking policy description

### Execution example

```
postgres=# select * from pgx_confidential_policies;
 schema_name | table_name | policy_name | expression | enable | policy_description
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----
 public      | t1         | p1          | 1=1        | t      |
(1 row)
```

## F.3 pgx\_confidential\_values

This table provides information on replacement characters when full masking is specified for masking type.

Column	Data type	Description	Default value
number_value	integer	Numeric	0
char_value	varchar(1)	char type	Spaces
varchar_value	varchar(1)	varchar type	Spaces
date_value	date	date type	'1970-01-01'
timestamp_value	timestamp	timestamp type	'1970-01-01 00:00:00'

### Execution example

```
postgres=# select * from pgx_confidential_values;
 number_value | char_value | varchar_value | date_value | ts_value
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----
          0 |           |              | 1970-01-01 | 1970-01-01 00:00:00
(1 row)
```

## Appendix G Tables Used by High-Speed Data Load

This appendix describes the tables used by high-speed data load.

### G.1 pgx\_loader\_state

The pgx\_loader\_state table provides information about transactions prepared by high-speed data load.

Column	Type	Description
id	serial	Unique identifier. This value is assigned from the pgx_loader_state_id_seq sequence.
gid	text	Global transaction identifier assigned to a transaction.
state	text	State of the transaction. The value can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- commit: The prepared transaction has been committed.</li><li>- rollback: The prepared transaction is in in-doubt state.</li></ul>
leader_pid	integer	Process ID of the backend process (leader process) that executed the pgx_loader control function.
role_oid	integer	Role identifier (OID). A prepared transaction can only be completed by the same user who executed the original transaction or by a superuser.
relation_oid	integer	Object identifier (OID).

#### Note

The pgx\_loader\_state table and pgx\_loader\_state\_id\_seq sequence are updated by high-speed data load. Do not update these database objects directly using SQL.

## Appendix H Starting and Stopping the Web Server Feature of WebAdmin

To use WebAdmin for creating and managing a Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres instance on a server where Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres is installed, you must first start the Web server feature of WebAdmin.

- Using WebAdmin in a single-server configuration

You must start the Web server on the server on which Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres and WebAdmin are installed.

- Using WebAdmin in a multiserver configuration

You must start the Web server on all servers on which WebAdmin has been installed.

This appendix describes how to start and stop the Web server feature of WebAdmin.

Note that "<x>" in paths indicates the product version.



See

Refer to "Installing WebAdmin in a Multiserver Configuration" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server for information on multiserver installation.

### H.1 Starting the Web Server Feature of WebAdmin

Follow the procedure below to start the Web server feature of WebAdmin.

1. Change to superuser

Acquire superuser privileges on the system.

Example

```
$ su -  
Password:*****
```

2. Start the Web server feature of WebAdmin

Execute the WebAdminStart command to start the Web server feature of WebAdmin.

Example

If WebAdmin is installed in /opt/fsepv<x>webadmin:

```
# cd /opt/fsepv<x>webadmin/sbin  
# ./WebAdminStart
```

### H.2 Stopping the Web Server Feature of WebAdmin

This section describes how to stop the Web server feature of WebAdmin.

Follow the procedure below to stop the Web server feature of WebAdmin.

1. Change to superuser

Acquire superuser privileges on the system.

Example

```
$ su -  
Password:*****
```

2. Stop the Web server feature of WebAdmin

Execute the WebAdminStop command to stop the Web server feature of WebAdmin.

### Example

If WebAdmin is installed in /opt/fsepv<x>webadmin:

```
# cd /opt/fsepv<x>webadmin/sbin  
# ./WebAdminStop
```

# Appendix I WebAdmin Wallet

This appendix describes how to use the Wallet feature of WebAdmin.


When a remote instance or a standby instance is created, it is necessary to provide user name and password for authentication with the remote machine or the database instance.

The Wallet feature in WebAdmin is a convenient way to create and store these credentials.

Once created, these credentials can be repeatedly used in one or more instances.

## I.1 Creating a Credential

---

1. In the [My Wallet] tab, click . The [New credential] page will be displayed.

2. Enter the information for the credentials.

Credential name, User name and Password should not contain hazardous characters. Refer to “[Appendix J WebAdmin Disallow User Inputs Containing Hazardous Characters](#)”.

- [Credential name]: Name of the credential

The name must meet the conditions below:

- Maximum of 16 characters
- The first character must be an ASCII alphabetic character
- The other characters must be ASCII alphanumeric characters
- [User name]: The operating system user name or database instance user name that will be used later
- [Password]: Password for the user
- [Confirm password]: Reenter the password.

3. Click  to store the credential.

## I.2 Using a Credential

---

Once a credential is created in the Wallet, it can be used during remote instance creation or standby instance creation.

If you select the credential saved in "[I.1 Creating a Credential](#)" in [Operating system credential], the user name and password will be automatically populated.



## Appendix J WebAdmin Disallow User Inputs Containing Hazardous Characters

WebAdmin considers the following as hazardous characters, which are not allowed in user inputs.

- | (pipe sign)
- & (ampersand sign)
- ; (semicolon sign)
- \$ (dollar sign)
- % (percent sign)
- @ (at sign)
- ' (single apostrophe)
- " (quotation mark)
- \ ' (backslash-escaped apostrophe)
- \ " (backslash-escaped quotation mark)
- <> (triangular parenthesis)
- () (parenthesis)
- + (plus sign)
- CR (Carriage return, ASCII 0x0d)
- LF (Line feed, ASCII 0x0a)
- , (comma sign)
- \ (backslash)

# Appendix K Copy Command Samples that Use the Advanced Copy Feature of the ETERNUS Disk Array

Backup/recovery scripts that use OPC, an advanced copy feature of the Fujitsu Storage ETERNUS disk array (hereafter referred to as ETERNUS disk array), are supplied as copy command samples for use by the `pgx_dmpall` and `pgx_rcvall` commands.

Users can copy the samples to any file and make changes appropriate to their environment or operations.

The samples are stored in the directories below:

- Basic version

```
/installDir/share/copy_command.esf_acm1.sh.sample
```

- Advanced version

```
/installDir/share/copy_command.esf_acm2.sh.sample
```



See

The samples use the replication management command of the Fujitsu Storage ETERNUS SF AdvancedCopy Manager (hereafter referred to as ACM) for operating the advanced copy features of the ETERNUS disk array. Refer to the relevant manual for details.

## Prerequisite for using the samples

To use the samples, it is necessary to configure the settings of the advanced copy features of the ETERNUS disk array in advance. The samples assume that the replication source/volume has been configured, its contents have been physically copied to the replication volume, and that the tracking process has been started.

## Sample content (advanced version)

The sample uses two replication volumes as the replication source on which the database cluster and tablespace are located, alternating between them for each backup. It then registers to the backup information file the replication volume (group) used for the latest backup.

In addition, the backup information file is also used to determine the replication volume to restore during recovery.

The processing for each operation mode is described below:

### prepare mode

1. The backup information file is read, and the replication volume to be used for the current backup is determined.
2. The completion status of physical copies to all replication volumes is checked using the `swsrpstat` command of ACM.
3. The replication volume determined in step 1 is written to a temporary file for later use by the backup mode.

### backup mode

1. The temporary file is read, and the replication volume information is retrieved.
2. The file system buffer is written using the `sync` command of the operating system.
3. The file system targeted for backup is frozen using the `fsfreeze` command of the operating system.
4. Snapshot retrieval (implementation of a logical copy) is performed using the `swsrpmake` command of ACM.
5. The file system frozen in step 3 is unfrozen using the `fsfreeze` command of the operating system.

Steps 3 to 5 are performed for all file systems targeted for backup.

### finalize mode

1. The completion status of physical copies to all replication volumes is checked using the `swsrpstat` command of ACM.

2. Information about the replication volume used for the current backup is written to the backup information file.

#### restore mode

1. The backup information file is read, and the replication volume to be used for recovery is determined.
2. The file system targeted for recovery is unmounted using the umount command of the operating system.
3. Physical copy from the replication volume is performed using the swsrpmake command of ACM.
4. The file system targeted for recovery is mounted using the mount command of the operating system.
5. The completion status of physical copy from the replication volume is checked using the swsrpstat command of ACM.

Steps 2 to 5 are performed for all file systems targeted for recovery.

6. Files and directories not needed for archive recovery are deleted.



#### Note

- The samples cannot be used on SLES 15.
- The samples use the sudo command of the operating system so that operation of the commands and file systems of ACM is performed by the superuser of the operating system. Therefore, determine if these implementations satisfy the security standards on the database server, and if necessary, perform implementations using other means.
- The samples temporarily freeze the file system of the data storage destination (replication source volume) to protect the file system from copy processing by advanced copy features of the ETERNUS disk array. Therefore, consider the following:
  - Consider freeze time during the timeout period of an SQL statement.

When using a feature that links with the database, such as a cluster feature that accesses the data storage destination, consider freeze time in relation to the timeout periods below.

- When performing database multiplexing

Misdetected may occur during abnormality monitoring, so it is necessary to consider the monitoring interval, timeout period and number of retries for abnormality monitoring, and consider temporarily stopping only the Mirroring Controller process during backup.

- When performing failover operations using PRIMECLUSTER

If a failure occurs while the file system is frozen, switching is triggered when PRIMECLUSTER detects an issue, but will be performed only after the system is unfrozen. In addition, if it takes time for the system to unfreeze, the active node may trigger operating system panic, resulting in a switch.

## Appendix L Collecting Failure Investigation Data

If the cause of an error that occurs while building the environment or during operations is unclear, data must be collected for initial investigation.

This appendix describes how to collect data for initial investigation.

RHEL8 and RHEL9

Use FJQSS (Information Collection Tool) to collect data for initial investigation.

SLES 15

Use the `pgx_fjqssinf` command to collect data for initial investigation.



See

- Refer to the FJQSS manual for information on how to use FJQSS.
- Refer to the Reference for information on the `pgx_fjqssinf` command.



Note

- When using FJQSS to collect data for initial investigation, you must set the following environment variables:
  - Environment variables required for using Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres  
Refer to "Configure the environment variables" under the procedure for creating an instance in "Using the initdb Command" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server for information on the values to be set in the environment variables.
  - PGDATA  
Set the data storage destination.
  - PGDATABASE  
Set the database name from which you want to collect data for initial investigation.
  - PGPORT  
Set the instance port number. This does not need to be set if the default port number (27500) has not been changed.
  - PGUSER  
Set the database superuser.  
Set the database superuser so that client authentication is possible.  
FJQSS establishes a TCP/IP connection with the template1 database and collects data from the database.
  - FSEP\_HOME  
Set the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres installation directory.
- Refer to "Collecting Failure Investigation Data" in the Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing) for information on how to collect failure investigation data when performing database multiplexing.

# Index

[A]	[E]
About using pgAdmin..... 3	Enabling and Disabling a Masking Policy..... 58
About using WebAdmin..... 2	Enabling Automatic Opening of the Keystore..... 30
Actions in Response to Instance Startup Failure..... 138	Encrypting a Tablespace..... 27,40
All user data within the specified tablespace..... 25	Encrypting Existing Data..... 34,43
Approximate backup time..... 16	Encryption mechanisms..... 25,38
Approximate recovery time..... 111	Errors in More Than One Storage Disk..... 138
Automatically opening the keystore..... 36	
[B]	[F]
Backing Up and Recovering the Keystore..... 30	Faster encryption and decryption based on hardware..... 25
Backing Up and Restoring/Recovering the Database..... 32	File system level backup and restore..... 33,42
Backup/Recovery Using the Copy Command..... 101	
Backup and recovery using the pgx_dmpall and pgx_rcvall commands..... 32,42	[H]
backup cycle..... 18	High-Speed Data Load..... 89
Backup data..... 25	
Backup operation..... 18	[I]
Backup operation (file backup)..... 19	If failure occurred in the data storage disk or the transaction log storage disk..... 112
Backup status..... 18,20	If failure occurred on the backup data storage disk..... 113,115
Backup using the backup information file..... 102	If failure occurred on the data storage disk or the transaction log storage directory..... 113
Backup Using the Copy Command..... 105	Importing and Exporting the Database..... 34,43
backup_destination (string)..... 147	Installing and Operating the In-memory Feature..... 78
Building and starting a standby server..... 36	
[C]	[K]
Changing a Masking Policy..... 57	keystore_location (string)..... 145
Changing the Keystore Passphrase..... 29	
Changing the Master Encryption Key..... 29	[L]
Changing the master encryption key and the passphrase..... 36	Logging in to WebAdmin..... 3
Checking an Encrypted Tablespace..... 29,40	log in..... 3
Checking backup status..... 106	
Checking the operating status of an instance..... 13,14	[M]
Collecting Failure Investigation Data ..... 188	Managing the Keystore..... 29
Configuration of the Copy Command..... 101	Masking Condition..... 52
Configuration of the copy command for backup..... 103	Masking Format..... 53
Configuration of the copy command for recovery..... 104	Masking Policy..... 51
Confirming a Masking Policy..... 57	Masking Target..... 52
Continuous archiving and point-in-time recovery..... 33,42	Masking Type..... 52
Copy Command for Backup..... 107	Monitoring Database Activity..... 65
Copy Command for Recovery..... 109	
Copy Command Interface..... 107	[O]
Copy Command Samples that Use the Advanced Copy Feature of the ETERNUS Disk Array..... 186	Opening the Keystore..... 27
core_contents (string)..... 145	openssl_conf(string)..... 153
core_directory (string)..... 145	openssl_modules(string)..... 153
Creating a Masking Policy..... 56	Operating Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres..... 1
Cyclic usage of the backup area..... 102	
[D]	[P]
Data Masking..... 51	Parallel Query..... 87
Data Types for Masking..... 59	Performing backup..... 105
Deleting a Masking Policy..... 59	Perform recovery..... 106
Determining the backup area of the latest backup..... 106	Periodic Backup..... 17
	pgx_global_metacache (numerical value)..... 149
	pgx_stat_gmc view..... 177
	pgx_stat_latch view..... 175
	pgx_stat_lwlock view..... 175
	pgx_stat_progress_loader view..... 177
	pgx_stat_sql view..... 176

pgx_stat_walwriter view.....	176
pgx_tablespaces.....	175
pgx_tablespaces view.....	175
Placement and automatic opening of the keystore file.....	35
Placing the keystore file.....	35
Preparing for backup.....	105

## [R]

Recovery Using the Copy Command.....	106
reserve_buffer_ratio (numerical value).....	148

## [S]

Scope of encryption.....	25
search_path (string).....	147
Security-Related Notes.....	36,44
Security Notes.....	60
Setting a restore point.....	20
Setting the Master Encryption Key.....	26,39
Starting and Stopping the Web Server Feature of WebAdmin.....	182
Starting an instance.....	12,13
Starting pgAdmin.....	3
Startup URL for WebAdmin.....	3
Stopping an instance.....	12,14
Streaming replication support.....	26
Streaming Replication Using WebAdmin.....	74
Strong encryption algorithms.....	25
System Administration Functions.....	155
System Views.....	175

## [T]

tablespace_encryption_algorithm (string).....	147
Tables Used by Data Masking .....	179
Tables Used by Transparent Data Encryption.....	178
tde_kms.enable_shared_dek (boolean).....	145
tde_kms.kms_conninfo_file (string).....	145
tde_kms.max_shared_dek (numerical value).....	145
tde_kms.plugin_path (string).....	145
Tips for Installing Built Applications.....	37,44
track_gmc (string).....	150
track_sql (string).....	148
track_waits (string).....	148
Transparent Data Encryption Control Functions.....	155
Two-layer encryption key and the keystore.....	25,38

## [U]

userprofile_database(string).....	153
Using Server Commands.....	13

## [V]

vci.control_max_workers (numerical value).....	148
vci.cost_threshold (numeric).....	148
vci.enable (string).....	149
vci.log_query (string).....	149
vci.maintenance_work_mem (numerical value).....	149
vci.max_local_ros (numerical value).....	149
vci.max_parallel_degree (numerical value).....	149
vci.shared_work_mem (numerical value).....	149

## [W]

WAL and temporary files.....	26
WAL Mirroring Control Functions.....	155
WebAdmin Wallet.....	184

# **Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 16**

## **Security Operation Guide**

Windows/Linux

J2UL-2953-01ENZ0(01)  
August 2024

# Preface

---

## Purpose of this document

This document describes security when building and operating a Fujitsu Software Enterprise Postgres database system.

## Intended readers

This document is intended for those who are:

- Considering installing Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres
- Designing, building, and operating the security operating environment in Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres
- Accessing Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres database systems

Readers of this document are assumed to have general knowledge of:

- Business operations
- Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres
- Linux

## Structure of this document

This document is structured as follows:

### [Chapter 1 Overview of Security](#)

Provides an overview of the security system, and explains the security features provided by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

### [Chapter 2 Overview of Security Operation](#)

Provides an overview of security operation.

### [Chapter 3 Tasks of the Manager](#)

Explains the tasks for security measures to be implemented by the manager.

### [Chapter 4 Tasks of Administrators](#)

Explains the tasks for security measures to be implemented by administrators.

### [Chapter 5 Tasks of Users](#)

Explains the tasks for security measures to be implemented by users.

### [Chapter 6 Audit Log Feature](#)

Explains the audit log feature provided by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

### [Chapter 7 Confidentiality Management](#)

Explains the confidentiality management feature provided by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

### [Appendix A Tables Used by Confidentiality Management Feature](#)

Explains the tables used by the confidentiality management feature.

### [Appendix B System Management Functions Used by Confidentiality Management Feature](#)

Explains the functions used by the confidentiality management feature.

## References

This document contains abstracts from the following document:

- Database Security Guideline Version 2.0  
(Database Security Consortium (DBSC))



**Export restrictions**

Exportation/release of this document may require necessary procedures in accordance with the regulations of your resident country and/or US export control laws.

**Issue date and version**

Edition 1.1: August 2024
Edition 1.0: July 2024

**Copyright**

Copyright 2018-2024 Fujitsu Limited

**Revision History**

---

Revision	Location	Version
Corrected the article about the audit_log_disconnections parameter.	Chapter 6 Audit Log Feature	Edition 1.1

# Contents

---

Chapter 1 Overview of Security.....	1
1.1 What is Security?.....	1
1.2 Security Requirements.....	1
1.3 Security Threats.....	2
1.4 Security Scope.....	5
1.5 Security Provided by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.....	6
1.5.1 Roles Targeted For Security.....	6
1.5.2 Security Features.....	7
Chapter 2 Overview of Security Operation.....	9
2.1 Security Operation Flow.....	9
Chapter 3 Tasks of the Manager.....	11
3.1 Defining Important Information and Risk Analysis.....	11
3.2 Formulating Account Management Policies.....	11
3.3 Formulating Log Retrieval Policies.....	11
3.4 Formulating Rules.....	12
3.5 Implementing Training.....	13
3.6 Checking the Database Management Operations.....	13
3.7 Periodic Diagnosis of the Status of Security Measures.....	13
Chapter 4 Tasks of Administrators.....	14
4.1 Receiving Training.....	14
4.2 Initial Setup.....	14
4.3 Authentication.....	15
4.3.1 Managing Accounts.....	15
4.3.2 Managing Passwords.....	16
4.3.3 Configuring Connections and Authentication.....	17
4.4 Access Control.....	17
4.5 Encryption.....	18
4.6 Controlling Use of External Media.....	18
4.7 Security Measures for Servers/Applications.....	19
4.8 Log Management.....	19
4.8.1 Retrieving Logs.....	19
4.8.2 Maintaining Logs.....	19
4.9 Detecting Unauthorized Access.....	20
4.10 Analyzing Logs.....	20
Chapter 5 Tasks of Users.....	21
5.1 Receiving Training.....	21
5.2 Managing Accounts/Passwords.....	21
Chapter 6 Audit Log Feature.....	22
6.1 Audit Log Output Modes.....	22
6.2 Setup.....	22
6.3 Setting Up the Scalable Audit Log Feature.....	25
6.4 pgaudit Configuration File.....	27
6.5 Session Audit Logging.....	33
6.6 Object Audit Logging.....	38
6.7 Database Multiplexing.....	41
6.7.1 Setup.....	41
6.7.2 Configuring Audit Log Retrieval.....	41
6.8 Failover.....	42
6.8.1 Configuring Audit Log Retrieval.....	42
6.9 Analyzing Audit Logs in SQL.....	42
6.10 Removing Setup.....	44

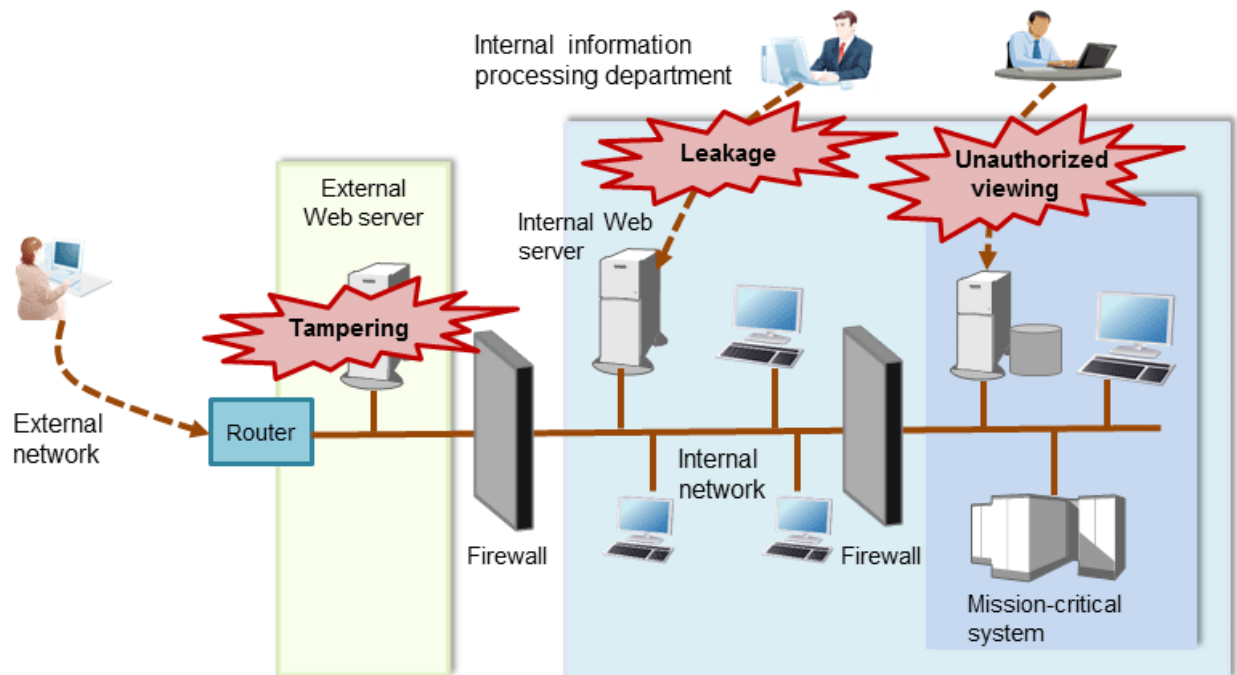
Chapter 7 Confidentiality Management.....	46
7.1 Setup.....	46
7.2 Designing Confidentiality Management.....	46
7.2.1 Designing a Confidentiality Matrix.....	46
7.2.1.1 Defining Confidentiality Levels.....	47
7.2.1.2 Defining Confidentiality Groups.....	48
7.2.1.3 Defining Confidentiality Privilege.....	49
7.2.2 Determining Confidentiality Management Roles.....	50
7.2.3 Classify Confidentiality Objects According to the Definition of Confidentiality Level.....	51
7.2.3.1 Defining Confidentiality Objects.....	51
7.2.3.2 Classify Confidentiality Objects.....	51
7.2.4 Classify Roles According to Confidentiality Group Definitions.....	52
7.3 How to Use Confidentiality Management Feature (Definition).....	52
7.3.1 Creating a Confidentiality Management Role.....	55
7.3.2 Creating a Confidentiality Matrix.....	55
7.3.3 Adding Confidentiality Levels to the Confidentiality Matrix.....	57
7.3.4 Adding Confidentiality Groups to the Confidentiality Matrix.....	57
7.3.5 Granting Confidentiality Privileges to Confidentiality Groups.....	57
7.3.6 Adding Confidentiality Objects to Confidentiality Level.....	57
7.3.7 Adding Roles to Confidentiality Groups .....	58
7.4 How to Use Confidentiality Management Feature (Change and Deletion).....	58
7.4.1 Renaming Confidentiality Objects.....	58
7.4.2 Renaming Roles.....	59
7.4.3 Deleting Roles.....	59
7.4.4 Changing Confidentiality Matrix.....	59
7.4.5 Deleting Confidentiality Matrix.....	59
7.4.6 Changing Confidentiality Level.....	59
7.4.7 Deleting Confidentiality Level.....	59
7.4.8 Changing Confidentiality Group.....	60
7.4.9 Deleting Confidentiality Group.....	60
7.4.10 Revoking Confidentiality Privileges.....	60
7.4.11 Removing Confidentiality Objects from Confidentiality Level.....	60
7.4.12 Removing Roles from Confidentiality Groups.....	60
7.5 Suggestions for Monitoring Methods.....	61
7.5.1 How to Detect Privilege Changes without Using Confidentiality Management feature.....	61
7.5.2 How to Check Confidentiality Objects and Roles.....	61
7.6 Backup/Restore.....	63
7.7 Removing Setup.....	64
7.8 Usage Example of Confidentiality Management.....	64
Appendix A Tables Used by Confidentiality Management Feature.....	67
A.1 pgx_confidential_matrix.....	67
A.2 pgx_confidential_level.....	67
A.3 pgx_confidential_group.....	68
A.4 pgx_confidential_privilege.....	68
A.5 pgx_confidential_object.....	69
A.6 pgx_confidential_role.....	70
A.7 pgx_confidential_policy.....	70
Appendix B System Management Functions Used by Confidentiality Management Feature.....	72
B.1 Confidentiality Matrix Manipulation Functions.....	72
B.2 Confidentiality Level Manipulation Functions.....	73
B.3 Confidentiality Group Manipulation Functions.....	75
B.4 Confidentiality Privilege Manipulation Functions.....	77
B.5 Confidentiality Object Manipulation Functions.....	78
B.6 Role Manipulation Functions.....	81
B.7 Functions that Support Definition Referencing and Comparison with System Catalogs.....	82

# Chapter 1 Overview of Security

## 1.1 What is Security?

Computer security is the protection of information systems and data from risks such as leakage or tampering of information, attacks, intrusions, eavesdropping from external sources, and interference with information services. Security measures are essential for the advance prevention of security threats in order for information systems to gain trust as social infrastructure.

Figure 1.1 Security threats



The security measures in information systems can be classified as follows:

- Network
- Web
- Application
- Database
- PC

This document focuses on database security measures when using Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

## 1.2 Security Requirements

Below are the necessary security requirements for information systems.

### Maintenance of security policies

A security policy clarifies the approach the company should take in relation to information assets, and the actions employees should take.

It is necessary to undertake security of information systems while maintaining security policies.

### Integrated security management

Security has the aspects below. It is necessary to manage information in an integrated manner based on these aspects.

### Confidentiality

Access to the information is restricted to prevent leakage of information outside of the company

Example measures: Prevention of information leakage or setup of access privileges

### Integrity

Integrity is guaranteed, ensuring information does not become corrupted or tampered with

Example measures: Prevention or detection of tampering

### Availability

Failure is prevented and normal operation is maintained so that information can be used when needed

Example measures: Power supply measures, system mirroring

## 1.3 Security Threats

A security threat is defined as something that threatens the confidentiality, integrity, and availability indicated in "[1.2 Security Requirements](#)" in respect to information assets. This includes technical threats such as accessing a database, but does not include physical destruction.

Threats are considered to be a combination of type of user who is the source of the threat, information assets that need to be protected, techniques, and unauthorized actions. For example, a threat might be a general user exploiting a database vulnerability to obtain database management information, and then tampering with that information.

When considering security measures, it is firstly necessary to clarify what kind of threats there are. A list of possible threats is shown in the table below. Refer to "[Types of user](#)" and "[Information assets](#)" for details on the definition of each type of user and information assets that should be protected.

### Possible threats

Type of user	Information asset	Technique	Unauthorized action
General user	Database management information	Eavesdropping of packets	Unauthorized acquisition (viewing) of information  Unauthorized tampering or destruction (updating) of information
Internal user		Dictionary attack of passwords	
System manager		Unauthorized acquisition of IDs/passwords through social engineering	
System developer		Unauthorized acquisition of information through misuse of settings	
System administrator		Unauthorized acquisition of information through exploiting a database vulnerability	
System operator		Acquisition by an unauthorized route	
General user	General database information	Acquisition by a normal route	Misuse of information that can be acquired normally (taking data outside of the company)
Internal user		SQL issued with the aim of obstructing a job	Obstructing a job (resource depletion)

Type of user	Information asset	Technique	Unauthorized action
General user Internal user	General database information	Eavesdropping of packets	Unauthorized tampering or destruction (updating) of information
		Dictionary attack of passwords	
		Unauthorized acquisition of IDs/passwords through social engineering	
		Unauthorized acquisition of information through exploiting configuration errors	
		Unauthorized acquisition of information through exploiting a database vulnerability	
		Acquisition by an unauthorized route	
System manager System developer System administrator System operator	General database information	Eavesdropping of packets	Unauthorized acquisition (viewing) of information Unauthorized tampering or destruction (updating) of information
		Dictionary attack of passwords	
		Unauthorized acquisition of IDs/passwords through social engineering	
		Unauthorized acquisition of information through exploiting configuration errors	
		Unauthorized acquisition of information through exploiting a database vulnerability	
		Acquisition by an unauthorized route	
System developer	Database management information	Creation of a backdoor	Unauthorized acquisition (viewing) of information Unauthorized tampering or destruction (updating) of information
	General database information		
System manager System administrator	Database management information	Unauthorized acquisition of information by creating an unauthorized database administrator account	Unauthorized acquisition (viewing) of information Unauthorized tampering or destruction (updating) of information
	General database information		
System manager System operator	Database management information	Unauthorized acquisition of information by tampering with database-related files	Unauthorized acquisition (viewing) of information

Type of user	Information asset	Technique	Unauthorized action
	General database information	(definition file, physical file, and so on)	Unauthorized tampering or destruction (updating) of information
Database administrator	Database management information	Misuse of information (taking information outside of the company) after obtaining it through the normal route	Misuse of information that can be acquired normally (taking information outside of the company)
		Unauthorized use of IDs/passwords from the management information	Tampering with or destroying information that can be acquired
		Unauthorized acquisition of information by tampering with management information	
		SQL issued with the aim of obstructing a job	Obstructing a job (resource depletion)
	General database information	Eavesdropping of packets	Unauthorized acquisition (viewing) of information
		Misuse of information (taking information outside of the company) after obtaining it through an unauthorized route	Unauthorized tampering or destruction (updating) of information
Database operator	Database management information	Eavesdropping of packets	Unauthorized acquisition (viewing) of information  Unauthorized tampering or destruction (updating) of information
		Dictionary attack of passwords	
		Unauthorized acquisition of IDs/passwords through social engineering	
		Unauthorized acquisition of information by exploiting configuration errors	
		Unauthorized acquisition of information through exploiting a database vulnerability	
		Acquisition by an unauthorized route	
	General database information	Acquisition by a normal route	Misuse of information that can be acquired normally (taking data outside of the company)
		SQL issued with the aim of obstructing a job	Obstructing a job (resource depletion)

## Types of user

In database security, the persons involved with databases and their roles are defined below.

Type of user	Role
System manager	Manages developers, administrators, and operators
System developer	Builds the network around the database server Builds the database server
System administrator	Operates devices of the surrounding database network Operates the database server
System operator	Operates the surrounding database network
Database administrator	Builds the database system Operates the database system
Database operator	Performs business operations
Internal user	End user inside the company
General user	End user outside the company

### Information assets

In database security, it is necessary to protect the information assets to be stored on the database server.

Such assets are defined below.

#### Database management information

- Database configuration information (system catalog, user ID/password, and so on)
- Database logs (such as access logs)

#### General database information

- Job data
- Applications

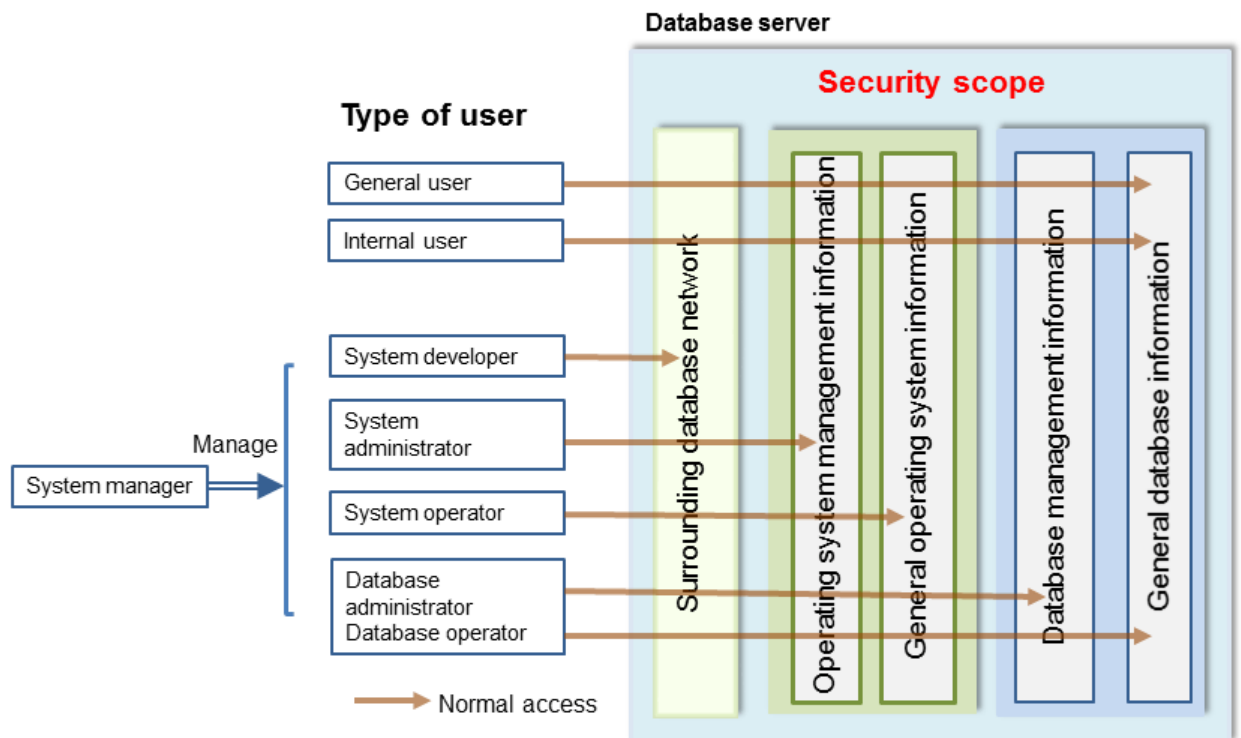
## 1.4 Security Scope

---

In database systems, both the database server and the surrounding database network are part of the security scope. It is necessary to clarify the extent of the security scope that each type of user is involved with, and consider security measures for the same.

The relationship of the security scope and the types of user is shown below.





## 1.5 Security Provided by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres provides security features that satisfy the security requirements indicated in "[1.2 Security Requirements](#)".

This section describes security provided by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

### 1.5.1 Roles Targeted For Security

In Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres database systems, the roles targeted in relation to security are "Manager", "Administrator", and "User". In order to build a robust security system, it is necessary to put security measures in place for each role.

The roles targeted for security and the mapping of [Types of user](#) indicated in "[1.3 Security Threats](#)" are shown in the table below.

Role targeted for security	Type of user
Manager	System manager
Administrator	System developer
	System administrator
	System operator
	Database administrator
	Database operator
User	General user
	Internal user

#### Manager

The manager establishes a security policy and decides on an operations policy for the organization as a whole.

Refer to "[Chapter 3 Tasks of the Manager](#)" for details.

## Administrator

Administrators design, build and operate a system. While doing this, the administrators must implement the security measures in accordance with the security policy established by the manager.

Refer to "[Chapter 4 Tasks of Administrators](#)" for details.

## User

A user is a person other than the manager or an administrator who accesses a database. There may be any number of users. It is necessary for users to be registered in the database system, and that access to the database is restricted according to the access privileges.

Refer to "[Chapter 5 Tasks of Users](#)" for details.

## 1.5.2 Security Features

---

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres provides the following security features:

- Authentication
- Access control
- Encryption
- Audit log
- Data masking

This section describes each of these features.

### Authentication

The databases that can be accessed can be restricted by authenticating the database users who access the database. Additionally, authentication of the server can be performed to prevent spoofing of the database server.

Refer to "Client Authentication" in "Server Administration" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for details on authentication.

Refer to "Secure TCP/IP Connections with SSL" in "Server Setup and Operation" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for details on server authentication.

In Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres, when password authentication is used as client authentication to connect to a database, the database administrator can force database users to use passwords based on predefined security policies. For more information, refer to "Policy-based Password Management" in the Operations Guide.

### Access control

Database objects can only be used by the object creator or database user who was specified as the owner when the object was created (both persons are hereinafter referred to as "owner"), or superuser, when objects are in their initial state. By having the object owner or superuser control access privileges for database users, it is possible to control what kind of tables the database users who connect to the database can access, and what kind of operations they can perform.

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres provides security management support features that support the design and operation of access control. For details, refer to "[Chapter 7 Confidentiality Management](#)".

Refer to "Privileges" in "The SQL Language" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for details on object access control.

### Encryption

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres provides a transparent data encryption feature that satisfies the requirements below.

- Confidential information can be changed into an unidentifiable state.
- The encryption key and data are managed separately.
- The encryption key is replaced at regular intervals.

Also, confidential data should not be operated without encryption. Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres provides security management support features to help prevent this. For details, refer to "Security Management Support".

PostgreSQL provides an encryption feature called "pgcrypto" that can also be used in Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres, however, it is recommended to use the transparent data encryption features because it will otherwise be necessary to modify the applications that consider encryption. Refer to "Protecting Storage Data Using Transparent Data Encryption" in the Operation Guide for details.

Additionally, if communication data transferred between a client and a server contains confidential information, it is necessary to encrypt the communication data to protect it against threats, such as eavesdropping on the network.

Refer to "Configuring Secure Communication Using Secure Sockets Layer" in the Operation Guide for details on encryption of communication data.

## **Audit log**

A feature that addresses threats such as misuse of administrator privileges, unauthorized access to a database by a user, and other such threats. Information for tracing the processing of administrators and users is retrieved and stored as an audit log.

By periodically viewing and monitoring audit logs, the administrators can detect events that are impacting on the system in some way, or are depleting system resources as a result of incorrect operations by users, and can take appropriate measures to prevent information leakages or system failures in advance.

Refer to "[Chapter 6 Audit Log Feature](#)" for details.

## **Data masking**

A feature that changes part of the data to make it available for reference in response to queries issued by an application.

For example, for a query of employee data, digits except the last four digits of an eight-digit employee number can be changed to "\*" so that it can be used for reference without exposing the actual data.

Specifically, the data changed by the data masking feature can be transferred to a test database so that users who perform testing or development can reference the data. During testing, it is desirable to use the data that will be used on a production environment database. However, actual production data should not be used as is for testing because of the risk of leakage of confidential data. This feature enables data that is similar to actual production data to be safely used in test and development environments.

Refer to "Data Masking" in the Operation Guide for details on data masking.

## **Chapter 2 Overview of Security Operation**

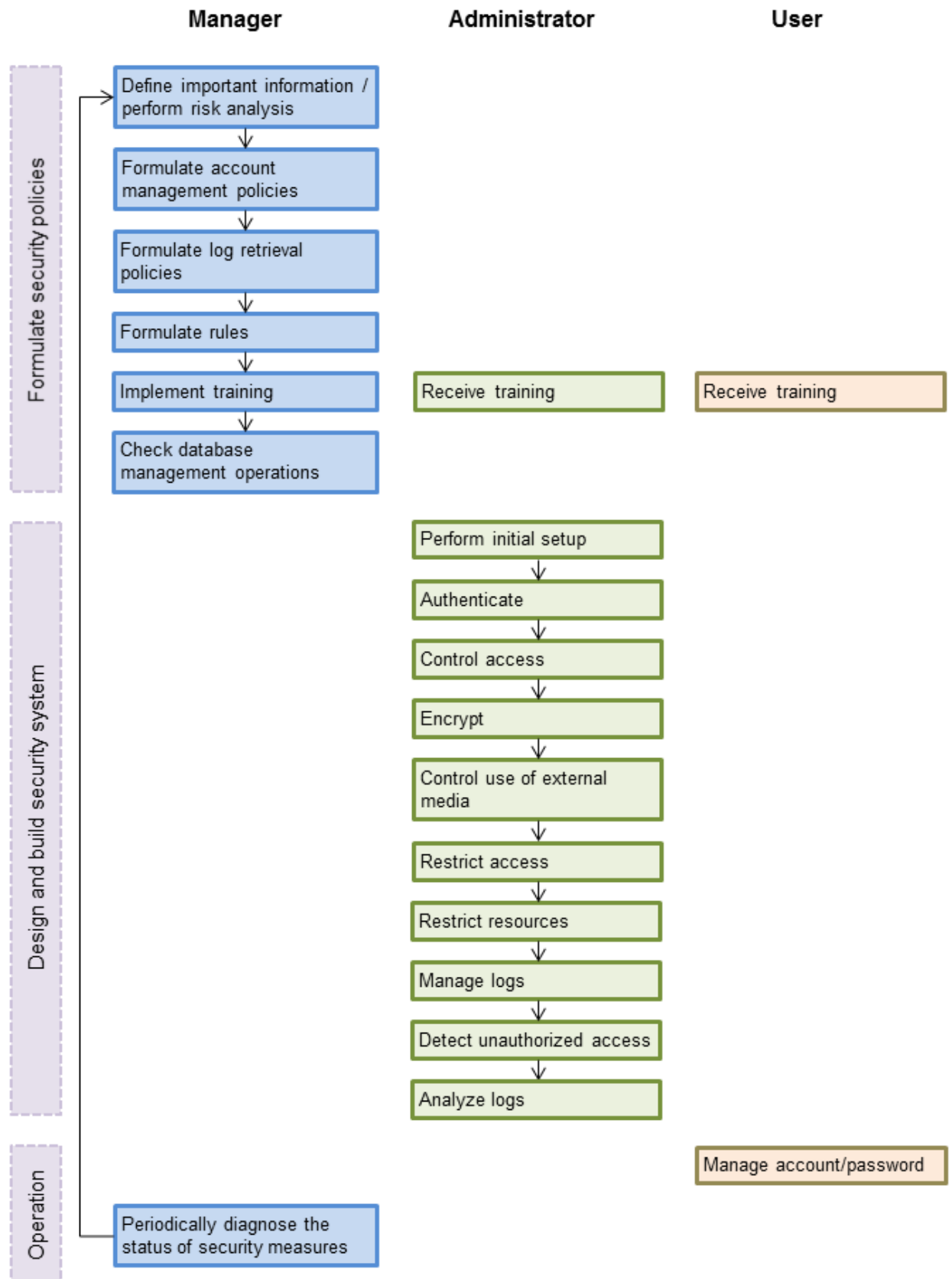
### **2.1 Security Operation Flow**

---

This section shows the flow of work when building a security environment and performing security operation in Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

When performing security operation, there are technical measures to be implemented to address security threats by equipping the system with security features, and manual work, such as the implementation of security guidelines, a training system, and the establishment of usage rules.

Figure 2.1 Security operation flow



## Chapter 3 Tasks of the Manager

The manager formulates security policies, which become guidelines for security measures.

### 3.1 Defining Important Information and Risk Analysis

Before formulating security policies, define important information and perform risk analysis. Based on the importance of the information and the result of risk analysis, decide what kind of security measures to put in place.

In defining the important information, identify what should be protected and classify it by importance in order to effectively implement the security measures. Information that should be protected includes "database management information" and "general database information", as indicated in "[Information assets](#)". Examples of information classifications are "personal information" and "confidential information".

In the risk analysis, refer to "[Possible threats](#)" to identify threats that may arise, and analyze the risks in respect to such threats.

Additionally, by performing a risk analysis once annually as a guide, it is possible to identify threats that may adversely impact the business and related vulnerabilities.

### 3.2 Formulating Account Management Policies

In formulating an account management policy, implement the following and document the formulated policy.

Organize system users and roles

Identify the necessary roles of the relevant system based on "[Types of user](#)". Additionally, organize personnel for each role.

Organize accounts

Organize accounts with the appropriate privileges for each role, and decide on account policies.

- Database administrator account
  - Organize separate accounts for database administrators and database operators
  - Ensure that the database administrator account can only be used by specific persons
  - Perform tasks that do not require database administrator privileges using a separate account without database administrator privileges
- General account

Create an account for general users by application usage.

Review account management policy

Review the accounts in order to effectively implement security measures.

- Regularly check the accounts mentioned above and their privileges, and determine if they are still appropriate
- If there have been system or operational changes, review the accounts and privileges
- If unsuitable accounts and privileges are discovered, modify them as required

### 3.3 Formulating Log Retrieval Policies

In formulating a log retrieval policy, implement the following and document the formulated policy.

Organize the purpose of log retrieval

To clarify what logs will be retrieved for, define their reason for retrieval.

Examples of the purpose might include, "To use for investigation in the event of unauthorized access", and "To submit to investigating authorities as evidence if any issues arise".

#### Decide on the types of logs to be retrieved

In order to retrieve appropriate logs, organize the types of logs that can be retrieved in the target system, and decide on the logs to be retrieved.

Examples of log types are "operating system logs", "application run logs", and "database audit logs".

#### Organize log retrieval target access

In order to decide on access for log retrieval targets, organize what kind of access will take place.

For example, the following access is possible:

- Access related to important information
  - Access to personal information, confidential information, and database management information
  - Access outside of business hours
  - Login
  - Specific SQL
- Access suspected to be unauthorized
  - Large amount of search access
  - Access from different locations
  - Access outside of business hours

#### Decide on the log retrieval content

In order to effectively use retrieved logs, organize the required content as a log, and decide on the retrieval content.

For example, the following output content is possible:

- When (time)
- Who (database account, application user)
- What (object ID, table name)
- Where from (machine name, IP address)
- How (SQL type, SQL statement)
- Execution result (success/fail)

#### Formulate log maintenance policy

In order to use the logs as purposed, formulate the log maintenance policy.

For each log, define its location, storage medium, retention period, access control, and so on.

## 3.4 Formulating Rules

---

Formulate the rules that will become the standard for security measures of the target system. Additionally, prescribe penalties for security violations. For example, formulate rules and penalties as below:

- Rules
  - Applying security patches and update programs
  - Prohibiting unauthorized acquisition of information from the database
  - Prohibiting the saving of acquired information to media that is not permitted for use
- Penalties
  - Prescribe penalties in the company's employment policies and procedures

- Set fines

### **3.5 Implementing Training**

---

In order to have administrators and users recognize the importance and necessity of information security, and to prevent unauthorized access due to operational omissions and mistakes, implement and promote security-related training for administrators and users.

For example, implement promotion of security policies, formulation of training schedules, and formulation of training materials.

### **3.6 Checking the Database Management Operations**

---

In order to prevent operational errors and unauthorized actions by administrators, implement the measures below:

- Always collect the latest information on security incidents and vulnerabilities related to databases
- Implement management operations only after providing advance notice
- Retain records of management operations

### **3.7 Periodic Diagnosis of the Status of Security Measures**

---

In order to check if the security measures are effective, periodically diagnose if the security measures have been put in place appropriately based on the security threats.

Additionally, evaluate if the current security measures and policies are effective for the threats and vulnerabilities, and if there are any issues, review the security policies and security measures.



# Chapter 4 Tasks of Administrators

Administrators perform the actions below as security measures when designing, building, and operating the system in accordance with the security policies formulated by the manager.

## Preparation

- Implement training

## Measures to protect against unauthorized behavior

- Perform initial setup
- Authenticate
- Control access
- Encrypt
- Control use of external media
- Restrict access
- Restrict resources

## Measures to detect and trace unauthorized behavior

- Manage logs
- Detect unauthorized access
- Analyze logs

## 4.1 Receiving Training

---

Administrators receive security-related training in accordance with the training schedule formulated by the manager. Additionally, administrators instruct users to receive training.

## 4.2 Initial Setup

---

To minimize database vulnerabilities and the possibility of unauthorized access, implement the security measures below in the initial stage of system building. Additionally, configure the database server so that it primarily operates the database system only.

### Making the server more robust

Configure the operating system and network to prevent intrusion into or destruction of a database server, so that the system operates on a secure server.

- Remove unnecessary features or services on the operating system
- Enable only the necessary protocols
- Implement the security features for services, protocols, and daemons considered to have a relatively low security level, such as file sharing and FTP

### Installing the latest version

Always download and apply the latest patches in order to reflect the latest security measures.

### Installing the minimum necessary features

Install only the necessary features in order to prevent unauthorized use of the system.

Additionally, delete or disable features and services that will not be used.

### Changing the port

To prevent unauthorized use of the system, change the default port that is set during installation.



#### Point

Specify the port during setup of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres. Refer to the Installation and Setup Guide for Server for details.

#### Access restrictions for communication features

To prevent unauthorized use of the system using the communication features, implement access restrictions for communication features.

#### Settings for prohibiting the access path to database configuration files

To prevent database destruction, implement the measures below:

- Restrict users who are permitted to access database configuration files, and periodically review the permissions
- Allow only administrators to access table or definition scripts

#### Restrictions on the access path to the database

To prevent unauthorized use or operating errors for the database, restrict the distribution range of applications used to access the database only to devices used by users who are permitted access.

#### Dealing with unauthorized programs

To prevent unauthorized intrusions into a system through a backdoor, such as by tampering with the program source code of an application, document the author of the program to be run and perform checking and testing so that the program will not be tampered with. Additionally, employ safe coding techniques so that issues with general coding vulnerabilities can be addressed.

#### System security settings

In cases where it is clear that the system security settings will impact security, set reliable security settings in the initial setup stage, such as setting appropriate security parameters.

## 4.3 Authentication

---

When accessing a database, authentication must always be performed in order to prevent tampering or information leakage from spoofing by a malicious user.

Password authentication is used when logging on to a database, and the account and password used for authentication are to be strictly managed by administrators.

Additionally, authentication must also be implemented reliably for connections to a database from clients, so that only permitted users can access the database.

### 4.3.1 Managing Accounts

---

For account management, perform the actions below.

#### Create the required accounts

To prevent unauthorized use of accounts, such as spoofing, implement the measures below when creating an account:

- Select the required account
- Specify the user privileges
- Create database administrator accounts and general user accounts separately according to the privileges



#### Point

Accounts are created using the CREATE ROLE statement. Refer to "CREATE ROLE" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for details.

## Delete unnecessary accounts

Remove accounts not used on a daily basis, such as unused accounts and accounts not needed for operations that are created by default during product installation.



Accounts are deleted using the DROP ROLE statement. Refer to "DROP ROLE" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for details.

## Set up account lockout

The usage frequency of accounts is to be checked periodically, and if there are any accounts that have not been used for a long period, lock those accounts. Set a limit for failed login attempts, and if this limit is exceeded, lock the account. Additionally, set the period until a locked account is reenabled.



Account locking can be performed by using LDAP authentication. Refer to "LDAP Authentication" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for details.

## Manage database administrator accounts

Manage database administrator accounts in accordance with the account management policy formulated by the manager.

## Manage development environment and production environment accounts

To prevent unauthorized use of accounts used in a development environment, delete accounts used in the development environment before operation starts in the production environment. In cases where it is unavoidable to use an account used in the development environment in the production environment, use different passwords in each environment.

## Set up a temporary use account

If a temporary user will use the system, either provide a shared account with a temporary password for each use, or create a temporary account.

# 4.3.2 Managing Passwords

---

Manage passwords as below.

## Make strong passwords

The use of account passwords that can easily be guessed by others, such as a password that matches the ID, or the default password provided during installation, is prohibited. Set a complex and strong password.

## Change passwords regularly

Change passwords regularly to prevent others from accessing the account in case the password is obtained by unauthorized means. Additionally, configure the settings to force a password change when prompted after the first use.

## Set the password expiry period

To encourage regular changing of passwords, set a password expiry period.

In addition, by setting a password authentication policy called a profile, if a database user's password status deviates from the predefined policy, connection to the database server can be refused or the user can be forced to change their password. For information on setting password operation policies using profiles, refer to "Policy-based Password Management" in the Operation Guide.



Password setting and changing is specified using the CREATE ROLE statement or ALTER ROLE statement. Refer to "CREATE ROLE" and "ALTER ROLE" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for details.

Additionally, by using passwordcheck and LDAP authentication, the actions below can be performed:

- The default password set during installation can be changed
- The password expiry period can be set
- The number and types of characters used for the password can be checked

Refer to "passwordcheck" and "LDAP Authentication" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for details.

### 4.3.3 Configuring Connections and Authentication

---

Configure connections and authentication so that the database can only be accessed by permitted users.



#### Point

Client authentication is configured in pg\_hba.conf. Refer to "Client Authentication" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for details.

## 4.4 Access Control

---

If appropriate access privileges are not set for administrators and users, security incidents may occur, such as information leakage resulting from access to information by an unauthorized person. To minimize such incidents, it is necessary to implement the security measures below for the access privileges and perform rule-based access control.



#### Point

##### Notes when setting access privileges

- The creation of a special account that allows granting of privileges to all users is prohibited
- The creation of a general account that allows access to general information such as operations data is prohibited

##### Identifying the database access requirements

To set the appropriate access privileges for each usage purpose for the database, follow the procedure below to identify the access requirements:

1. Classify the usage purpose of the account, such as "For database management", "For object management", and "For data access".
2. Classify the required privileges for each usage purpose, such as "By feature" and "By object".
3. Categorize the accounts based on each privilege.
4. Identify the minimum necessary range of data and minimum necessary access content (view, update, create, delete) to be accessed for each categorized account, and decide on the database access requirements.

##### Setting the access privileges

Assign the minimum necessary privileges based on the database access requirements for each categorized account. Additionally, restrict accounts when assigning administrator privileges.

##### Reviewing access privileges

To reflect changes in access requirements in the system, periodically review the access privileges and check if there are any access privileges that are no longer needed. If any unnecessary access privileges have been set, promptly modify the access privileges.



Access privileges are set using the GRANT statement or REVOKE statement. Refer to "GRANT" and "REVOKE" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for details.

## 4.5 Encryption

---

To prevent unauthorized usage of data in the event information leakage occurs due to data theft, eavesdropping of communication, and other such activities, implement the encryption measures below.

### Encrypt communication

To protect data from eavesdropping over the network between a database server and clients, use the encryption feature to encrypt communications.

Refer to "Configuring Secure Communication Using Secure Sockets Layer" in the Operation Guide for details.

### Encrypt data

To protect data from theft, use the encryption feature to encrypt the data. The data below is targeted for encryption:

- Data to be stored on the database
- Backup data
- Data files

Refer to "Protecting Storage Data Using Transparent Data Encryption" in the Operation Guide for details.

### Manage encryption keys

Restrict the persons who can access the encryption key to a minimum number of database administrators.

Additionally, to ensure the encrypted information will not be easily decrypted, create a mechanism for appropriately managing the encryption key for the entire life cycle (generation, distribution, saving, and disposal), and strictly manage the encryption key.

Refer to "Configuring Secure Communication Using Secure Sockets Layer" and "Protecting Storage Data Using Transparent Data Encryption" in the Operation Guide for details.

## 4.6 Controlling Use of External Media

---

Information leakage can be prevented by controlling use of external media (such as CD/DVD, USB drive, and external hard disk) and PCs that are connected to the database, and restricting the removal of data from the database.

### Restricting connection of external media

Remove external media and printers that will not be used in operations, and restrict connection of external media to which information may be written.

### Restricting use of external media

Restrict connections for external media and printers to control the writing of information to these devices.

### Controlling use of connected PCs

Prevent leakage of information from PCs connected to the database:

- Limit connections of external media to PCs
- Implement security measures to make the PC robust
- Implement individual authentication for access from the PC
- Manage the installed software and monitor the software usage status
- Limit connections to printers

## 4.7 Security Measures for Servers/Applications

---

An even more robust security system can be achieved by strengthening security for servers and applications in addition to the security measures for databases. Implement the security measures below for servers and applications:

### Restrict access

Implement the measures below and restrict access to the database server:

- Install the database server inside the firewall to prevent direct access to the database server from many unspecified PCs.
- In the local network, implement measures such as using the router to restrict IP addresses, and restrict PCs and segments that can directly access the database server.

### Restrict resources

Restrict excessive use of CPU resources by general users to prevent the disruption of service and extraction of large amounts of data.

## 4.8 Log Management

---

Logs are a feature that addresses threats such as misuse of administrator privileges, and unauthorized access to a database by a user. Information for investigating/tracing processes and operations performed for the database is retrieved and managed as logs for identifying the cause in the event information leakage or unauthorized access occurs.

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres provides the audit log feature for retrieving and managing logs. Refer to "[Chapter 6 Audit Log Feature](#)" for details.

This section describes the information that should be obtained as logs and how to maintain logs, as a measure for managing information leakage and unauthorized access.

### 4.8.1 Retrieving Logs

---

The audit logs below are retrieved in accordance with the log retrieval policy formulated by the manager.

#### Login information

Retrieves logs during login and logout.

#### Database access information (view/update)

Retrieves all access relating to the information below:

- General database information (such as personal information and confidential information used in the business)
- Database management information (system catalog, user ID/password, and so on)

#### Changed information of database objects

Retrieves logs related to creating, changing, and deleting database objects such as database accounts and tables.

#### Operation logs for audit logs

To prevent suppression of retrieved audit logs, operations such as initialization of audit logs, and stoppage of the audit log feature are retrieved as logs.

### 4.8.2 Maintaining Logs

---

Logs are maintained in accordance with the log retrieval policy formulated by the manager.

#### Storing logs

Perform the actions below and store logs securely so that the retrieved logs will not be updated by others:

- Save logs to external media, and store the external media in a secure location, such as lockable storage
- Restrict the viewing of logs to administrators only, and set access restrictions for logs, such as not assigning update rights

- Decide on the log retention period, with consideration to cases where investigation tracing back to the time of discovery of an issue is required

#### Preventing tampering of logs

Implement measures to prevent tampering of logs, such as retaining multiple copies of logs and using storage that cannot be rewritten.

#### Encrypting logs

Encrypt logs so that logs are not easily viewed.

## 4.9 Detecting Unauthorized Access

---

To address unauthorized access, it is necessary to establish a mechanism for detecting unauthorized access to databases and monitor access.

#### Communicating unauthorized access

Create a mechanism that notifies of detected unauthorized access, such as notifying the manager and the administrator, if an account lock occurs due to the limit for failed login attempts being exceeded.

#### Checking access times

Create a mechanism that can check for suspicious access to the information below outside of normal access hours, together with implementing measures to address such access.

##### Detecting access to database management information

- Monitor logs and detect access during timeframes that have not been applied for
- In the event a request for access permission outside of normal access hours is made, the log is checked for any discrepancies in the requested content and work result

##### Detecting access to general database information

- Decide on the timeframes during which access to the database is permitted for each general account
- Detect access outside of normal access hours from session information logs

#### Checking the connection source where access is not permitted

To detect access from connection sources that are not permitted, define the sources from where access is permitted, and detect access from connection sources that are not permitted.

Define the access patterns (connection source, operating system user and account) of database administrator accounts and general accounts, and check for access outside of these patterns.

## 4.10 Analyzing Logs

---

Create a mechanism that analyzes logs to detect unauthorized behavior in cases where information leakage, unauthorized access, or other such activity, is suspected. Analyses should include those shown below.

#### Periodic analysis of session information

Analyze session information of logs from the perspectives below to detect unauthorized logins:

- Trend of sessions with a large number of failed login attempts
- Trend of sessions with accounts that are logged in for long periods of time
- Trend of sessions in which a large amount of resources are used

#### Periodic analysis of database access information

Analyze SQL statements from the perspectives below to detect unauthorized access to the database:

- Trend of SQL being executed over a long period of time
- Trend of SQL using a large amount of resources

## **Chapter 5 Tasks of Users**

The user performs the actions below as security measures when using the system.

### **5.1 Receiving Training**

---

The user must receive security-related training as instructed by the manager or the administrator to learn about security. By having users with a common awareness relating to security, an even more stable security system can be established.

### **5.2 Managing Accounts/Passwords**

---

Users can use the database system by using the account and password provided by the administrator. At such times, the user is to implement the measures below so that the account and password are not misused by others:

- Be responsible for managing the ID and password in a manner that ensures the account does not become locked during login
- Change the password regularly
- Comply with the expiry period set for the password by promptly changing the password when it is about to expire



## Chapter 6 Audit Log Feature

In PostgreSQL, logs output as server logs can be used as audit logs by using the log output feature. There are, however, logs that cannot be analyzed properly, such as SQL runtime logs, which do not output the schema name. Additionally, because the output conditions cannot be specified in detail, log volumes can be large, which may lead to deterioration in performance.

The audit log feature of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres enables retrieval of details relating to database access as an audit log by extending the feature to pgaudit. Additionally, audit logs can be output to a dedicated log file or server log. This enables efficient and accurate log monitoring.

The scalable audit log feature enables multiple output mechanisms to capture audit logs without performance degradation, even for systems with high application multiplicity and high output volumes.

If you want to take advantage of the scalable audit log feature, refer to ["6.2 Setup"](#) and ["6.3 Setting Up the Scalable Audit Log Feature"](#).



### Note

The audit log feature cannot be used if PostgreSQL is running in single-user mode.

## 6.1 Audit Log Output Modes

In pgaudit, the two types of audit log below can be output.

### Session Audit Logging

Session Audit Logging outputs information related to SQL executed in backend processes (processes generated when connection requests are received from clients), information related to starting and connecting databases, and information related to errors, as a log. In Session Audit Logging, by specifying the log output conditions and filtering the logs to be output, performance degradation due to outputting large volumes of logs can be prevented.

Refer to ["6.5 Session Audit Logging"](#) for details.

### Object Audit Logging

When SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE are executed for specific objects (tables, columns), Object Audit Logging outputs these as a log. TRUNCATE is not supported. Object Audit Logging outputs object operations for which privileges have been assigned to specified roles, as a log. Object Audit Logging can control log output at an even finer level of granularity than Session Audit Logging.

Refer to ["6.6 Object Audit Logging"](#) for details.



### Information

Depending on the application or command, Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres may execute SQL internally and the audit logs may be retrieved.

Also, the audit logs of multiple SQLs with the same statement ID may be retrieved. This is because before the user executes the SQL, another SQL is executed internally by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

## 6.2 Setup

This section describes the setup method of pgaudit.

1. Copy the pgaudit files



As superuser, run the following command. Note that "<x>" in paths indicates the product version.

```
$ su -
Password:*****
# cp -r /opt/fsepv<x>server64/OSS/pgaudit/* /opt/fsepv<x>server64
```

W

Open a command prompt as administrator privileges, run the following command. Note that "<x>" in paths indicates the product version.

```
> xcopy /E "c:\Program Files\Fujitsu\fsepv<x>server64\OSS\pgaudit\*" "c:\Program Files\Fujitsu\fsepv<x>server64"
```

## 2. Create the pgaudit configuration file

Create the pgaudit configuration file, which describes the information required for pgaudit actions. Create the file using the same encoding as used for the database.

In addition, set write permissions for the database administrator only in the pgaudit configuration file so that policies related to the audit log are not viewed by unintended users.

Refer to "[6.4 pgaudit Configuration File](#)" for details.



### Note

Do not define the rule section in the pgaudit configuration file at this point.

### Example of a pgaudit configuration file

```
[output]
logger = 'auditlog'
```

## 3. Configure postgresql.conf

Configure the parameters below in postgresql.conf to use audit logs:

### shared\_preload\_libraries

Specify "pgaudit".

### pgaudit.config\_file

Specify the deployment destination path of the pgaudit configuration file.

If a relative path is specified, the path will be relative to the data storage directory.

### log\_replication\_commands

Specify "on".

### log\_min\_messages

Check if "ERROR" or higher has been specified.

If outputting an audit log to a server log ("serverlog" is specified in the logger parameter of the pgaudit configuration file), check the parameters below relating to server logs.

### logging\_collector

Check if "on" has been specified.

### log\_destination

Check if "stderr" has been specified.

L

### log\_file\_mode

Check if the server log permissions are appropriate, so that only the permitted persons can access it.



## Information

The default for the `log_file_mode` parameter is 0600, which only allows the database administrator to have access.

For example, to permit other members of the group to which the database administrator belongs to view the audit logs, specify 0640 for `log_file_mode`.

### Example

```
log_file_mode = 0640
```

The database administrator can also be prevented from viewing audit logs by specifying 0000. However, write privileges are assigned for outputting logs.

If outputting an audit log to a dedicated log file ("auditlog" is specified in the logger parameter of the `pgaudit` configuration file), check the parameter below.

### max\_worker\_processes

If the `max_worker_processes` parameter has been set, add 1 to the specified value.

If you want to take advantage of the scalable audit log feature, refer to ["6.3 Setting Up the Scalable Audit Log Feature"](#).



## See

Refer to "Error Reporting and Logging" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for details on server logs.

If using database multiplexing, refer to ["6.7 Database Multiplexing"](#) for details.

### Example of postgresql.conf

In the example below, only the parameters that need to be configured when using the audit log feature are described.

```
shared_preload_libraries = 'pgaudit'
pgaudit.config_file = 'pgaudit.conf'
log_replication_commands = on
log_min_messages = WARNING
```

#### 4. Start the instance

Start the instance and check if the message below is output.

```
LOG: pgaudit extension initialized
```

#### 5. Create the pgaudit extension

Execute `CREATE EXTENSION` to create the `pgaudit` extension.

```
$ psql
=# CREATE EXTENSION pgaudit;
=# \dx

              List of installed extensions
Name          | Version | Schema  | Description
-----+-----+-----+-----
pgaudit       | 1.0     | public  | provides auditing functionality
plpgsql       | 1.0     | pg_catalog | PL/pgSQL procedural language
(2 rows)
```

6. Configure the parameters in the pgaudit configuration file

Add or change the parameters in the pgaudit configuration file as required.

Refer to "[6.4 pgaudit Configuration File](#)" for details.

7. Restart the instance

Restart the instance to apply the changes to the pgaudit configuration file. After restarting, check if the changes have been reflected correctly.

L

#### Linux

```
LOG:  log_catalog = 1
LOG:  log_level_string =
LOG:  log_level = 15
LOG:  log_parameter = 0
LOG:  log_statement_once = 0
LOG:  role =
LOG:  logger = auditlog
LOG:  log_directory = pgaudit_log
LOG:  log_filename = pgaudit-%Y-%m-%d_%H%M%S.log
LOG:  log_file_mode = 0600
LOG:  log_rotation_age = 1440
LOG:  log_rotation_size = 10240
LOG:  log_truncate_on_rotation = 0
LOG:  fifo_directory = /tmp
LOG:  Rule 0
LOG:  pgaudit extension initialized
```

W

#### Windows

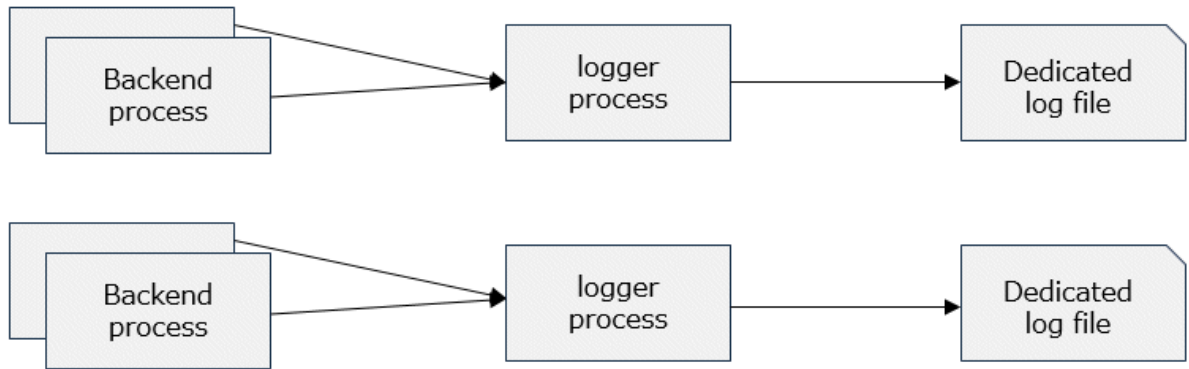
```
LOG:  log_catalog = 1
LOG:  log_level_string =
LOG:  log_level = 15
LOG:  log_parameter = 0
LOG:  log_statement_once = 0
LOG:  role =
LOG:  logger = auditlog
LOG:  log_directory = pgaudit_log
LOG:  log_filename = pgaudit-%Y-%m-%d_%H%M%S.log
LOG:  log_file_mode = 0600
LOG:  log_rotation_age = 1440
LOG:  log_rotation_size = 10240
LOG:  log_truncate_on_rotation = 0
LOG:  Rule 0
LOG:  pgaudit extension initialized
```

## 6.3 Setting Up the Scalable Audit Log Feature

With normal audit log feature, there is only one logger process and only one dedicated log file.

Therefore, the load of audit logs, including logs output by all backend processes, in the instance concentrates to the logger process and dedicated log file.

The scalable audit log feature distributes multiple dedicated log files, as shown below, and executes multiple output processes (logger processes) in a one-to-one relationship with those files. The number of distributions can be changed by parameter settings.



## Information

Because there is a one-to-one relationship between the dedicated log file and the logger process, the logger process also operates as many dedicated log files as there are. A number is appended to the end of the its command title as reported by ps or Process Explorer, as follows. Use this information as a reference when monitoring the process status.

### Example

```
pgaudit logger 0
pgaudit logger 1
pgaudit logger 2
```

## Parameters in the pgaudit configuration file

Set the following parameters to the "output section":

Refer to the ["6.4 pgaudit Configuration File"](#) for details on the parameters.

### enable\_parallel\_logger

Set "on". The default is "off".

If the logger parameter in the pgaudit configuration file is not "auditlog" (the default), it is ignored even if set to "on"

### parallel\_loggers

Sets the number of logger processes. Specify a value greater than or equal to "2."

Refer to ["6.4 pgaudit Configuration File"](#) for an estimate of the values to set.

### log\_rotation\_age

We strongly recommend that you set this parameter. Although the scalable audit log feature works without configuration, it is easier to avoid incorrect analysis when analyzing the output audit logs. Refer to ["Considerations when Using the Scalable Audit Log Feature"](#).

### Example

```
[output]
enable_parallel_logger = on
parallel_loggers = 5
log_rotation_age = 1h
```

## postgresql.conf Parameters

### max\_worker\_processes

Adds the value set for parallel\_loggers to the value set for the max\_worker\_processes parameter. This is because the logger process acts as a background worker.

### Example

If max\_worker\_processes is set to 8 and you want to set parallel\_loggers to 3, do the following:

```
max_worker_processes = 11
```

## Storage location of the dedicated log file

A dedicated log file is output with the following path and name:

For more information about the log\_directory and log\_filename parameters, refer to "[6.4 pgaudit Configuration File](#)".

```
log_directory parameter setting/number/number-log_filename parameter setting
```

The number is a number between 0 and the number specified by parallel\_loggers. If parallel\_loggers is 3, it can be 0 or greater and 2 or less. For more information about how to analyze these multiple files, refer to "[6.9 Analyzing Audit Logs in SQL](#)".

### Example

If you set parallel\_loggers=3, a dedicated log file is generated as follows:

```
pgaudit_log/0/0-pgaudit-2024-02-02_153000.log  
pgaudit_log/1/1-pgaudit-2024-02-02_153000.log  
pgaudit_log/2/2-pgaudit-2024-02-02_153000.log
```

If you can use multiple disks, you can also distribute the disk I/O load by setting the dedicated log file storage directory as a symbolic link to another disk, as shown below.

For Windows, use junction instead of symbolic links.

### Example

Place pgaudit\_log/2 on a different disk:

```
ln -s /other_disk/2 pgaudit_log/2
```

```
mklink /J pgaudit_log\2 E:\other_disk\2
```

Depending on the situation, create a symbolic link as follows. If the directory (or symbolic link) specified as the log output destination for the scalable audit log feature does not exist, the directory is automatically created. If the directory already exists, it is used as the log output destination.

- If you are using the scalable audit log feature for the first time, there is no dedicated log file directory. In this case, create a symbolic link after stopping the instance.
- If you are already using the scalable audit log feature, you already have a dedicated log file directory. After stopping the instance, move the stored dedicated log file to another location, and then delete the storage directory. Then, create a symbolic link with the same name as the deleted directory.

## 6.4 pgaudit Configuration File

In the pgaudit configuration file, specify the information required for pgaudit actions. The pgaudit configuration file comprises three sections: "output section", "option section", and "rule section".

### output section

The output section is specified using the format below:

- *paramName* = '*value*'

The valid parameters in the output section are shown in the table below.

Linux

Parameter name	Description	Remarks
logger	Dedicated log file (auditlog)/ <i>serverLog</i> (serverlog) that will be the output destination of the audit log  The default is "auditlog" (dedicated log file).	The dedicated log file is output using the same encoding as used for the database.
log_directory	Directory where the audit log is to be created  Specify the full path or the relative path from the data storage directory.  The default is "pgaudit_log".  However, make sure that audit log files are not output under the data storage directory. This is because if you are a backup target, such as pg_basebackup, and recover using that backup data, the audit log from the current time to the backup time will disappear. This is fine if the audit log file is located at the end of the symbolic link. This is because backups such as pg_basebackup do not track such symbolic links.  If you specify "on" for the enable_parallel_logger parameter, an audit log is created for "log_directory parameter setting/number". Refer to <a href="#">"6.3 Setting Up the Scalable Audit Log Feature"</a> for more information.	Enabled only if "auditlog" is specified for the logger parameter
log_filename	File name of the audit log  Specify a file name that varies according to the time, in the same manner as for log_filename in the postgresql.conf file.  The default is "pgaudit-%Y-%m-%d_%H%M%S.log".  If you specify "on" for the enable_parallel_logger parameter, the audit log filename is "number-log_filename parameter setting". Refer to <a href="#">"6.3 Setting Up the Scalable Audit Log Feature"</a> for more information.	Enabled only if "auditlog" is specified for the logger parameter
log_file_mode	Specify the permissions of the audit log so that only permitted persons can access it.  The parameter value is the numeric mode specified in the format permitted in chmod and umask system calls. The default is "0600".  Refer to <a href="#">"log_file_mode"</a> in <a href="#">"6.2 Setup"</a> for information on audit log file permissions.	Enabled only if "auditlog" is specified for the logger parameter
log_rotation_age	Maximum age of the audit log file  A new audit log file is generated when the time (minute units) specified here elapses. To disable generation of new log files based on time, specify "0".  The valid units are "min" (minutes), "h" (hours), and "d" (days). If the unit is omitted, "min" will be used.  The default is "1d" (1 day).  We strongly recommend that you set this parameter if you want to take advantage of the scalable audit log feature. This is because all logger processes rotate their dedicated log files at the same time, making it easier to	Enabled only if "auditlog" is specified for the logger parameter

Parameter name	Description	Remarks
	avoid incorrect analysis. For more information, refer to <a href="#">"Considerations when Using the Scalable Audit Log Feature"</a> .	
log_rotation_size	<p>Maximum size of the audit log file</p> <p>A new log file will be generated after logs of the size specified here are output to a log file. To disable generation of new log files based on size, specify "0".</p> <p>The valid units are "kB" (kilobytes), "MB" (megabytes), and "GB" (gigabytes). If the unit is omitted, "kB" will be used.</p> <p>The default is "10MB".</p>	Enabled only if "auditlog" is specified for the logger parameter
log_truncate_on_rotation	<p>If rotating audit log files based on time, this parameter is used to specify whether to overwrite (on)/not overwrite (off) existing audit log files of the same name. For example, if "on" is specified, and "pgaudit-%H.log" is specified for log_filename, 24 separate log files will be generated based on time, and those files will be cyclically overwritten.</p> <p>The default is "off". If "off" is specified, the logs will be written to the existing audit log files.</p>	Enabled only if "auditlog" is specified for the logger parameter
fifo_directory	<p>FIFO (named pipe) directory to be used between the daemon process that outputs audit log files and the backend process</p> <p>FIFO named p.PGAUDIT.nnnn (nnnn is the postmaster PID) are created in the fifo_directories directory. The files cannot be deleted manually.</p> <p>The default is "/tmp".</p> <p>If you specify "on" for the enable_parallel_logger parameter, the name of the FIFO is "p. PGAUDIT. nnnn. number". Refer to <a href="#">"6.3 Setting Up the Scalable Audit Log Feature"</a> for more information about the numbers.</p>	Enabled only if "auditlog" is specified for the logger parameter
enable_parallel_logger	<p>Specify whether to distribute the audit log output load (on)/not (off). The default is "off".</p> <p>The setting of this parameter is ignored when you specify "serverlog" for the logger parameter, because the serverlog of the database server cannot be distributed.</p>	Enabled only if "auditlog" is specified for the logger parameter
parallel_loggers	<p>Specifies the multiplicity at which the output load of the audit log is to be distributed. You can specify a number greater than or equal to 1, but to distribute the audit log output load, specify a number greater than or equal to 2.</p> <p>The default is "2".</p> <p>Estimate parallel_loggers as follows:</p> $\text{parallel\_loggers} = \text{number of cores} / 2$ <p>This estimate assumes the highest load to output audit logs, so setting a value less than the estimated value will not significantly degrade performance in most cases. The disadvantage of increasing this value is that it consumes a little more memory. For more information about estimating memory, refer to "FUJITSU Enterprise</p>	Enabled only if "auditlog" is specified for the logger parameter



Parameter name	Description	Remarks
	<p>Postgres Memory Requirements" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server.</p> <p>Because the logger process acts as a background worker, add the value set for this parameter to the parameter <code>max_worker_processes</code> in <code>postgresql.conf</code> that sets the maximum number of background workers.</p> <p>[Note]</p> <p>If the <code>max_worker_processes</code> setting is insufficient, the instance cannot be started.</p>	

## W

### Windows

Parameter name	Description	Remarks
logger	<p>Dedicated log file (<code>auditlog</code>)/<i>serverLog</i> (<code>serverlog</code>) that will be the output destination of the audit log</p> <p>The default is "auditlog" (dedicated log file).</p>	The dedicated log file is output using the same encoding as used for the database.
log_directory	<p>Directory where the audit log is to be created</p> <p>Specify the full path or the relative path from the data storage directory.</p> <p>The default is "pgaudit_log".</p> <p>However, make sure that audit log files are not output under the data storage directory.</p> <p>This is because if you are a backup target, such as <code>pg_basebackup</code>, and recover using that backup data, the audit log from the current time to the backup time will disappear.</p> <p>This is fine if the audit log file is located at the end of the junction. This is because backups such as <code>pg_basebackup</code> do not track such junction.</p> <p>If you specify "on" for the <code>enable_parallel_logger</code> parameter, an audit log is created for "log_directory parameter setting/number". Refer to <a href="#">"6.3 Setting Up the Scalable Audit Log Feature"</a> for more information.</p>	Enabled only if "auditlog" is specified for the logger parameter
log_filename	<p>File name of the audit log</p> <p>Specify a file name that varies according to the time, in the same manner as for <code>log_filename</code> in the <code>postgresql.conf</code> file.</p> <p>The default is "pgaudit-%Y-%m-%d_%H%M%S.log".</p> <p>If you specify "on" for the <code>enable_parallel_logger</code> parameter, the audit log filename is "number-log_filename parameter setting". Refer to <a href="#">"6.3 Setting Up the Scalable Audit Log Feature"</a> for more information.</p>	Enabled only if "auditlog" is specified for the logger parameter
log_file_mode	This parameter is ignored in Windows.	
log_rotation_age	<p>Maximum age of the audit log file</p> <p>A new audit log file is generated when the time (minute units) specified here elapses. To disable generation of new log files based on time, specify "0".</p> <p>The valid units are "min" (minutes), "h" (hours), and "d" (days). If the unit is omitted, "min" will be used.</p>	Enabled only if "auditlog" is specified for the logger parameter

Parameter name	Description	Remarks
	<p>The default is "1d" (1 day).</p> <p>We strongly recommend that you set this parameter if you want to take advantage of the scalable audit log feature. This is because all logger processes rotate their dedicated log files at the same time, making it easier to avoid incorrect analysis. For more information, refer to <a href="#">"Considerations when Using the Scalable Audit Log Feature"</a>.</p>	
log_rotation_size	<p>Maximum size of the audit log file</p> <p>A new log file will be generated after logs of the size specified here are output to a log file. To disable generation of new log files based on size, specify "0".</p> <p>The valid units are "kB" (kilobytes), "MB" (megabytes), and "GB" (gigabytes). If the unit is omitted, "kB" will be used.</p> <p>The default is "10MB".</p>	Enabled only if "auditlog" is specified for the logger parameter
log_truncate_on_rotation	<p>If rotating audit log files based on time, this parameter is used to specify whether to overwrite (on)/not overwrite (off) existing audit log files of the same name. For example, if "on" is specified, and "pgaudit-%H.log" is specified for log_filename, 24 separate log files will be generated based on time, and those files will be cyclically overwritten.</p> <p>The default is "off". If "off" is specified, the logs will be written to the existing audit log files.</p>	Enabled only if "auditlog" is specified for the logger parameter
enable_parallel_logger	<p>Specify whether to distribute the audit log output load (on)/not (off). The default is "off".</p> <p>The setting of this parameter is ignored when you specify "serverlog" for the logger parameter, because the serverlog of the database server cannot be distributed.</p>	Enabled only if "auditlog" is specified for the logger parameter
parallel_loggers	<p>Specifies the multiplicity at which the output load of the audit log is to be distributed. You can specify a number greater than or equal to 1, but to distribute the audit log output load, specify a number greater than or equal to 2.</p> <p>The default is "2".</p> <p>Estimate parallel_loggers as follows:</p> $\text{parallel\_loggers} = \text{number of cores} / 2$ <p>This estimate assumes the highest load to output audit logs, so setting a value less than the estimated value will not significantly degrade performance in most cases. The disadvantage of increasing this value is that it consumes a little more memory. For more information about estimating memory, refer to "FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres Memory Requirements" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server.</p> <p>Because the logger process acts as a background worker, add the value set for this parameter to the parameter max_worker_processes in postgresql.conf that sets the maximum number of background workers.</p>	Enabled only if "auditlog" is specified for the logger parameter

Parameter name	Description	Remarks
	[Note] If the max_worker_processes setting is insufficient, the instance cannot be started.	



## Information

If the logger parameter is set to "serverlog", audit logs will be output to the server log as log messages, therefore the status information and message severity level according to the log\_line\_prefix parameter in postgresql.conf will be output to the beginning of the audit log.

If the logger parameter is omitted or set to "auditlog", audit logs will be output to a dedicated log file as dedicated logs, therefore the status information and message severity level according to the log\_line\_prefix parameter in the postgresql.conf file will not be output.

Refer to "Output format" in "6.5 Session Audit Logging" or "Output format" in "6.6 Object Audit Logging" for information on the output format of audit logs.



## Point

The pgaudit log\_file\_mode configuration parameter setting is separate from, and unaffected by, the log\_file\_mode GUC parameter setting and the -g/-allow-group-access initdb option.

When using a dedicated pgaudit log file, since the pgaudit log\_directory location defaults to inside the data storage directory, it is possible for the pgaudit log\_file\_mode permissions to conflict with the intended file permissions specified by the -g/-allow-group-access initdb option. In this case, the pgaudit log\_directory should be specified to be a directory located outside of the data storage directory.



## Point

If the file permissions for the server log do not satisfy the security requirements of the system, specify a dedicated log file for the output destination of the audit log, and set the access permissions for the output destination directory so that the security requirements are satisfied. At that time, assign read and write permissions to the database administrator.

## option section

The option section is specified using the format below:

- paramName = 'value'

The valid parameters in the option section are shown in the table below.

Parameter name	Description	Remarks
role	Name of roles used in Object Audit Logging  If specifying a name containing uppercase characters, key words, multibyte characters and commas, enclose the name in double quotation marks.	Parameter used in Object Audit Logging only
log_catalog	Whether to enable (on)/disable (off) log output for pg_catalog	

Parameter name	Description	Remarks
	If pgAdmin, and so on, will not be retrieving audit logs that access pg_catalog, specify "off". The default is "on" (enabled).	
log_parameter	Whether to enable (on)/disable (off) output of values passed by parameters in SQL execution The default is "off" (disabled).	
log_statement_once	Whether to control (on)/not control (off) output for the second and subsequent SQL statements if the same SQL statement is the log output target The default is "off" (do not control).	
log_level	Log level of audit logs The valid values are "DEBUG5", "DEBUG4", "DEBUG3", "DEBUG2", "DEBUG1", "INFO", "NOTICE", "WARNING", and "LOG". The default is "LOG".	Enabled only if "serverlog" is specified for the logger parameter
audit_log_disconnections	When using Mirroring Controller, specify whether to enable (on) or disable (off) the output of disconnection logs for connections other than those of Mirroring Controller. The default is "off" (disabled). This parameter is valid when log_disconnections in postgresql.conf is off.	Parameter used in Session Audit Logging only

## rule section

The rule section is used in Session Audit Logging. Refer to ["6.5 Session Audit Logging"](#) for details.



Do not specify the rule section if the role parameter has been specified in the option section. If you specify the rule section, the audit logs of Object Audit Logging and Session Audit Logging will be output intermingled. The CSV format of the role audit log and the CSV format of the rule audit log are different, you will be unable to view in CSV format.

## 6.5 Session Audit Logging

In Session Audit Logging, specify the rules for filtering logs to be output in the rule section in the pgaudit configuration file.

Rules are specified using the formats below. Multiple values can be specified, using a comma as the delimiter.

- *paramName* = 'value'
- *paramName* != 'value'

If [rule] is described on its own in the rule section with no parameters specified, all audit logs of Session Audit Logging will be output.

### Example

```
[output]
logger = 'auditlog'
[rule]
```

If [rule] is not described as a section, audit logs of Session Audit Logging will not be output.

### Example

```
[output]  
logger = 'auditlog'
```

The valid parameters in the rule section are shown in the table below.

Parameter name	Description	Example
timestamp	Timestamp range Refer to " <a href="#">timestamp</a> " for details on how to specify timestamps.	timestamp = '09:00:00 - 10:00:00, 18:00:00 - 18:30:00'
database	Database name To specify a blank value, use a pair of double quotation marks ("" ) instead of the <i>value</i> . When specifying a name containing uppercase characters, key words, multibyte characters and commas, enclose the name in double quotation marks.	database = 'prodcut_db'
audit_role	Role name To specify a blank value, use a pair of double quotation marks ("" ) instead of the <i>value</i> . When specifying a name containing uppercase characters, key words, multibyte characters and commas, enclose the name in double quotation marks.	audit_role = 'appuser1'
class	Operation class Select from the values below. Multiple values can be specified. Refer to " <a href="#">class</a> " for details on the meaning of each class. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- BACKUP</li><li>- CONNECT</li><li>- DDL</li><li>- ERROR</li><li>- FUNCTION</li><li>- MISC</li><li>- READ</li><li>- ROLE</li><li>- WRITE</li><li>- SYSTEM</li></ul>	class = 'READ, WRITE'
object_type	Object type This parameter is enabled when the class parameter is "READ" and "WRITE". Select from the values below. Multiple values can be specified. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- TABLE</li><li>- INDEX</li></ul>	object_type = 'TABLE, INDEX'

Parameter name	Description	Example
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- SEQUENCE</li> <li>- TOAST_VALUE</li> <li>- VIEW</li> <li>- MATERIALIZED_VIEW</li> <li>- COMPOSITE_TYPE</li> <li>- FOREIGN_TABLE</li> <li>- FUNCTION</li> </ul>	
object_name	<p>Object name</p> <p>This parameter is enabled when the class parameter is "READ" and "WRITE".</p> <p>For objects that can be modified by a schema, such as a table, modify such objects by schema name.</p> <p>When specifying a name containing uppercase characters, key words, multibyte characters and commas, enclose the name in double quotation marks. When specifying the object name <i>"schemaName.tableName"</i>, enclose the entire object name modified by schema name in double quotation marks.</p> <p>To specify a blank value, use a pair of double quotation marks ("" ) instead of the <i>value</i>.</p>	<p>object_name = 'myschema.tbl1'</p> <p>object_name = 'myschema.tbl1, "mySchema.TABLE"</p>
application_name	<p>Application name</p> <p>To specify a blank value, use a pair of double quotation marks ("" ) instead of the <i>value</i>.</p>	application_name = 'myapp'
remote_host	<p>Connection source(client side) host name or IP address</p> <p>If "on" is specified for the log_hostname parameter in the postgresql.conf file, specify a host name. Otherwise, specify the IP address. If using a local host, specify "[local]".</p> <p>To specify a blank value, use a pair of double quotation marks ("" ) instead of the <i>value</i>.</p>	remote_host = 'ap_server'

#### timestamp

Specify a timestamp range from "*startTime*" to "*endTime*" for the log output target. The timestamp format is 'hh:mm:dd-hh:mm:dd' (hh is expressed in 24-hour notation, and hh, mm, and dd are expressed in two-digit notation).

The start time must be earlier than the end time. If specifying multiple ranges, specify each start and end timestamp using a comma as the delimiter.

End timestamps consider milliseconds. For example, if '11:00:00 - 11:59:59' is specified for the timestamp, "11:00:00:000" to "11:59:59:999" will be the target range.

The timestamps used by evaluation in the rule section of pgaudit are different to the timestamps issued in the log entries. That is because log entries are output after evaluation by pgaudit, with the timestamp being generated at that time.

## class

The meaning of each class specified in the class parameter is below:

- READ: SELECT, COPY FROM
- WRITE: INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, TRUNCATE, COPY TO
- FUNCTION: Function call, DO
- ROLE: GRANT, REVOKE, CREATE ROLE, ALTER ROLE, DROP ROLE
- DDL: All DDLs (such as CREATE and ALTER) other than the DDLs of the ROLE class
- CONNECT: Events relating to connecting (request, authenticate, and disconnect)
- SYSTEM: Instance start, promotion to primary server
- BACKUP: pg\_basebackup
- ERROR: Event completed by an error (PostgreSQL error codes other than 00). This class can be used if ERROR or lower level is specified for the log\_min\_messages parameter in postgresql.conf.
- MISC: Other commands (such as DISCARD, FETCH, CHECKPOINT, and VACUUM)

## Evaluation of the rule section

- When a log event occurs, all expressions in the rule section are evaluated at once. Log entries are only output if all parameters in the rule section are evaluated as being true.

For example, if the rule below has been set, of the operations performed by 'apserver' to 'myschema.tbl1', the operations applicable to classes other than 'WRITE' in the period from 10 a.m. to 11 a.m. will be output as audit logs.

```
[rule]
timestamp = '10:00:00-11:00:00'
remote_host = 'apserver'
object_name = 'myschema.tbl1'
class != 'WRITE'
```

- Multiple rule sections can be defined in the pgaudit configuration file. Log events are evaluated using each rule section, and an audit log is output for each matching rule section.

For example, if the rules below are set, duplicated audit logs will be output.

```
[rule]
object_name = 'myschema.tbl1'
[rule]
object_name = 'myschema.tbl1'
```

- If the same parameter is specified multiple times in one rule section, the last specified parameter is effective.

For example, if the rule below has been set, "object\_name = 'myschema.tbl3'" will take effect.

```
[rule]
object_name = 'myschema.tbl1'
object_name = 'myschema.tbl2'
object_name = 'myschema.tbl3'
```

## Output format

In Session Audit Logging, audit logs are output in the format below:

```

AUDIT: SESSION,READ,2022-03-12 19:00:58 PDT,
(1)      (2)      (3)
[local],19944,psql,appuser,postgres,2/8, 2, 1,SELECT,,TABLE,myschema.account,,
(4)      (5)      (6)      (7)      (8)      (9)(10)(11)(12)(13)(14)      (15)      (16)
SELECT * FROM myschema.account;,<not logged>
(17)      (18)

```

No	Content
(1)	Log header Fixed as "AUDIT: SESSION".
(2)	Class
(3)	SQL start time
(4)	Remote host name If using a local host, [local] is output.
(5)	Backend process ID
(6)	Application name If an application name is not specified, [unknown] is output.
(7)	User name
(8)	Database name
(9)	Virtual transaction ID
(10)	Statement ID
(11)	Substatement ID
(12)	Command tag
(13)	SQLSTATE
(14)	Object type
(15)	Object name
(16)	Error message
(17)	SQL If the SQL contains a password, such as for CREATE ROLE, and so on, it will be replaced with "<REDACTED>". Additionally, if "on" is specified for the log_statement_once parameter of the option section in the pgaudit configuration file, "<previously logged>" is output for the second and subsequent statements.
(18)	Depending on the log_parameter parameter value of the option section in the pgaudit configuration file, the output content will be as below. - log_parameter=on is specified If parameters are specified in the SQL, the parameters are concatenated and output, using a space as the delimiter. If parameters are not specified in the SQL, "<none>" is output. - log_parameter=off (default) is specified "<not logged>" is output. Additionally, if "on" is specified for the log_statement_once parameter of the option section in the pgaudit configuration file, "<previously logged>" is output for the second and subsequent statements.



## Information

If accessing resources that use the features below, the command tag (12) may be output as "???".

- INSTEAD OF trigger
- RULE
- VIEW
- Security policy per row
- Table inheritance

### Example

Below is an example of retrieving audit logs in Session Audit Logging.

#### 1. Settings

In the pgaudit configuration file, specify the rule section below.

```
[rule]
class = 'READ, WRITE'
object_name = 'myschema.account'
```

#### 2. Retrieving logs

Execute the SQL below from the client.

```
CREATE TABLE myschema.account
(
    id int,
    name text,
    password text,
    description text
);
INSERT INTO myschema.account (id, name, password, description) VALUES (1, 'user1',
'HASH1', 'blah, blah');
SELECT * FROM myschema.account;
```

The audit log below can be retrieved.

'DDL' is not defined in the class parameter, so CREATE TABLE is not output as an audit log.

```
AUDIT: SESSION,WRITE,2022-03-12 19:00:49 PDT,[local],19944,psql,appuser,postgres,
2/7,1,1,INSERT,,TABLE,myschema.account,, "INSERT INTO myschema.account (id, name,
password, description) VALUES (1, 'user1', 'HASH1', 'blah, blah');" ,<not logged>
AUDIT: SESSION,READ,2022-03-12 19:00:58 PDT,[local],19944,psql,appuser,postgres,
2/8,2,1,SELECT,,TABLE,myschema.account,,SELECT * FROM myschema.account;,<not logged>
```

## 6.6 Object Audit Logging

In Object Audit Logging, retrieval of audit logs is achieved by using roles.

Roles are specified in the role parameter of the option section to retrieve audit logs. If there are privileges for commands executed by a role, or if privileges have been inherited from another role, those command operations are output as audit logs.

For example, after "auditor" is set for the role parameter of the option section, the SELECT and DELETE privileges for the account table are assigned to "auditor". In this case, when SELECT or DELETE is executed for the account table, audit logs are output.

## Output format

In Object Audit Logging, audit logs are output in the format below:

```
AUDIT: OBJECT,1,1,READ,SELECT,TABLE,public.account,SELECT password FROM account;,<not logged>
```

(1)      (2) (3) (4)    (5)      (6)              (7)                      (8)                      (9)

No	Content
(1)	Log header Fixed as "AUDIT: OBJECT".
(2)	Statement ID
(3)	Substatement ID
(4)	Class name
(5)	Command tag
(6)	Object type
(7)	Object name
(8)	SQL If "on" is specified for the log_statement_once parameter of the option section in the pgaudit configuration file, "<previously logged>" is output for the second and subsequent statements.
(9)	Depending on the log_parameter parameter value of the option section in the pgaudit configuration file, the output content will be as below. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- When log_parameter=on If parameters are specified in the SQL, the parameters are concatenated and output, using a comma as the delimiter. If parameters are not specified in the SQL, "&lt;none&gt;" is output.</li><li>- When log_parameter=off (default) "&lt;not logged&gt;" is output.</li></ul> Additionally, if "on" is specified for the log_statement_once parameter of the option section in the pgaudit configuration file, "<previously logged>" is output for the second and subsequent statements.

### Information

If accessing resources that use the features below, the command tag (5) may be output as "???".

- INSTEAD OF trigger
- RULE
- VIEW
- Security policy per row
- Table inheritance

## Example

Below is an example of retrieving logs in Object Audit Logging.

By setting the target for assigning privileges to roles in detail, log output can be controlled.

In the example below, log retrieval of the account table is controlled by the privileges assigned to the columns, however, log retrieval of the account\_role\_map table is controlled by the privileges assigned to the table.

## 1. Settings

The role parameter below is specified for the option section in the pgaudit configuration file.

```
[option]
role = 'auditor'
```

## 2. Defining a role

A role is defined for Object Audit Logging.

```
CREATE USER auditor NOSUPERUSER LOGIN;
```

## 3. Retrieving logs

Execute the SQL below from the client.

```
CREATE TABLE account
(
    id int,
    name text,
    password text,
    description text
);
GRANT SELECT (password) ON public.account TO auditor;
SELECT id, name FROM account;
SELECT password FROM account;
GRANT UPDATE (name, password) ON public.account TO auditor;
UPDATE account SET description = 'yada, yada';
UPDATE account SET password = 'HASH2';
CREATE TABLE account_role_map
(
    account_id int,
    role_id int
);
GRANT SELECT ON public.account_role_map TO auditor;
SELECT account.password, account_role_map.role_id
FROM account
INNER JOIN account_role_map ON account.id = account_role_map.account_id;
```

The audit log below can be retrieved.

In the account table, only the operations for columns that privileges have been assigned to are output as logs.

In the account\_role\_map table, privileges are assigned to the table, so operations performed for the table are output as logs.

```
AUDIT: OBJECT,4,1,READ,SELECT,TABLE,public.account,SELECT password FROM account;,<not
logged>
AUDIT: OBJECT,7,1,WRITE,UPDATE,TABLE,public.account,UPDATE account SET password =
'HASH2';,<not logged>
AUDIT: OBJECT,10,1,READ,SELECT,TABLE,public.account,"SELECT account.password,
account_role_map.role_id
FROM account
INNER JOIN account_role_map ON account.id = account_role_map.account_id;",<not
logged>
AUDIT: OBJECT,10,1,READ,SELECT,TABLE,public.account_role_map,"SELECT account.password,
account_role_map.role_id
```

```
FROM account
INNER JOIN account_role_map ON account.id = account_role_map.account_id;" ,<not
logged>
```

## 6.7 Database Multiplexing

---

This section describes audit log retrieval while in database multiplexing mode.

### 6.7.1 Setup

---

If setting up the audit log feature in a database multiplexing environment that has already been built, follow the procedure below.

1. Copy the pgaudit files

Copy the pgaudit files on the primary server and standby server.

Refer to step 1 in "[6.2 Setup](#)" for details on copying the pgaudit files.

2. Create the pgaudit configuration file

Create the pgaudit configuration file on the primary server. Copy the pgaudit configuration file you created to the standby server.

Refer to step 2 in "[6.2 Setup](#)" for details on creating the pgaudit configuration file.

3. Configure postgresql.conf

In the postgresql.conf file on the primary server and standby server, configure the parameters for using audit logs. Set the same values for the parameters.

Refer to step 3 in "[6.2 Setup](#)" and "[6.7.2 Configuring Audit Log Retrieval](#)" for details on the parameters to configure.

4. Configure the *serverIdentifier.conf* file of Mirroring Controller

In the *serverIdentifier.conf* file on the primary server and standby server, configure the parameters for using audit logs.

Refer to "[6.7.2 Configuring Audit Log Retrieval](#)" for details on the parameters to be set.

5. Start the instance

Start the instance of the primary server and standby server.

6. Create the pgaudit extension

Execute CREATE EXTENSION on the primary server to create a pgaudit extension.

Refer to step 5 in "[6.2 Setup](#)" for details on creating pgaudit extensions.

7. Configure the parameters in the pgaudit configuration file

Add/change the parameters of the pgaudit configuration file on the primary server. Copy the pgaudit configuration file with the added/changed parameters to the standby server.

Refer to "[6.4 pgaudit Configuration File](#)" and "[6.7.2 Configuring Audit Log Retrieval](#)" for details on the parameters to set.

8. Restart the instance

Restart the instance of the primary server and standby server.

### 6.7.2 Configuring Audit Log Retrieval

---

In database multiplexing mode, Mirroring Controller periodically accesses the database to check the multiplexing status and detect failure. Due to this, audit logs are also periodically retrieved, so log files become used up. Therefore, set the parameters below so that audit logs are not retrieved by Mirroring Controller.

postgresql.conf

log\_connections

Omit, or specify "off".

log\_disconnections

Omit, or specify "off".

*serverIdentifier.conf* file of Mirroring Controller

target\_db

Specify "template1".



### Note

.....

If creating a new database, create it after stopping Mirroring Controller, or specify a name other than "template1" for the template database.

.....

pgaudit configuration file

option section audit\_log\_disconnections

If you want to output disconnection logs for connections other than Mirroring Controller, specify audit\_log\_disconnections = "on".

rule section database

Specify database != 'template1'.

## 6.8 Failover

---

This section explains audit log retrieval performed by the failover feature integrated with the cluster software.

### 6.8.1 Configuring Audit Log Retrieval

---

The failover feature accesses the database periodically to check the instance status. Due to this, audit logs are also periodically retrieved, so log files become depleted. Therefore, set the parameters below so that audit logs are not retrieved.

postgresql.conf

log\_connections

Omit, or specify "off".

log\_disconnections

Omit, or specify "off".

pgaudit configuration file

rule section database

Specify database != 'template1'.

## 6.9 Analyzing Audit Logs in SQL

---

In general, you can quickly and easily analyze the audit log by creating a table for analysis and loading the audit log into that table.

Maybe the analysis table is not updated, so we recommend creating that table as an UNLOGGED table. This is because when loading, the write-ahead log (WAL) is not output and it is not replicated, so it can be loaded faster without interfering with other tasks.

## How to Identify the Audit Log Files to Load

To analyze audit logs for a specific time period, load all files that contain audit logs for that time period.

However, do not access dedicated log files with the latest update date. This is because it contains incomplete audit log data that is being written.

## Loading Method

The audit log is output in csv format, and can be loaded using the COPY FROM statement or the pgx\_loader command. The following example shows how to load Session Audit Logging output to a dedicated log file.

### 1. Creating Tables

Define a table with the columns required to reference the audit log.

```
$ psql
=# CREATE UNLOGGED TABLE auditlog (
header text,
class text,
sql_start_time timestamp with time zone,
remote_host_name text,
backend_process_id integer,
application_name text,
session_user_name text,
database_name text,
virtual_transaction_id text,
statement_id integer,
substatement_id integer,
command_tag text,
sqlstate text,
object_type text,
object_name text,
error_message text,
sql text,
parameter text
);
```

### 2. Creating an Index

For example, creating an index on a timestamp is useful for time-series analysis.

```
$ psql
=# CREATE INDEX auditlog_time_index ON auditlog (sql_start_time);
```

### 3. Loading the Audit Log

Specify a dedicated log file in the FROM clause of COPY FROM.

```
$ psql
=# COPY auditlog FROM
'pgaudit-2024-02-02_150000.log' WITH CSV DELIMITER ',';
```

You can also use the PROGRAM clause to load multiple dedicated log files together.

The following example loads one day of audit logs by specifying wildcard for day part of file name:

```
$ psql
=# COPY auditlog FROM
PROGRAM 'cat pgaudit-2024-02-02_*' WITH CSV DELIMITER ',';
```

```
$ psql
=# COPY auditlog FROM
PROGRAM 'type pgaudit-2024-02-02_*' WITH CSV DELIMITER ',';
```

L

W

#### 4. Audit Log Analysis

Access the table that loaded the audit log.

Loaded records are not in chronological order, but can be sorted by timestamp

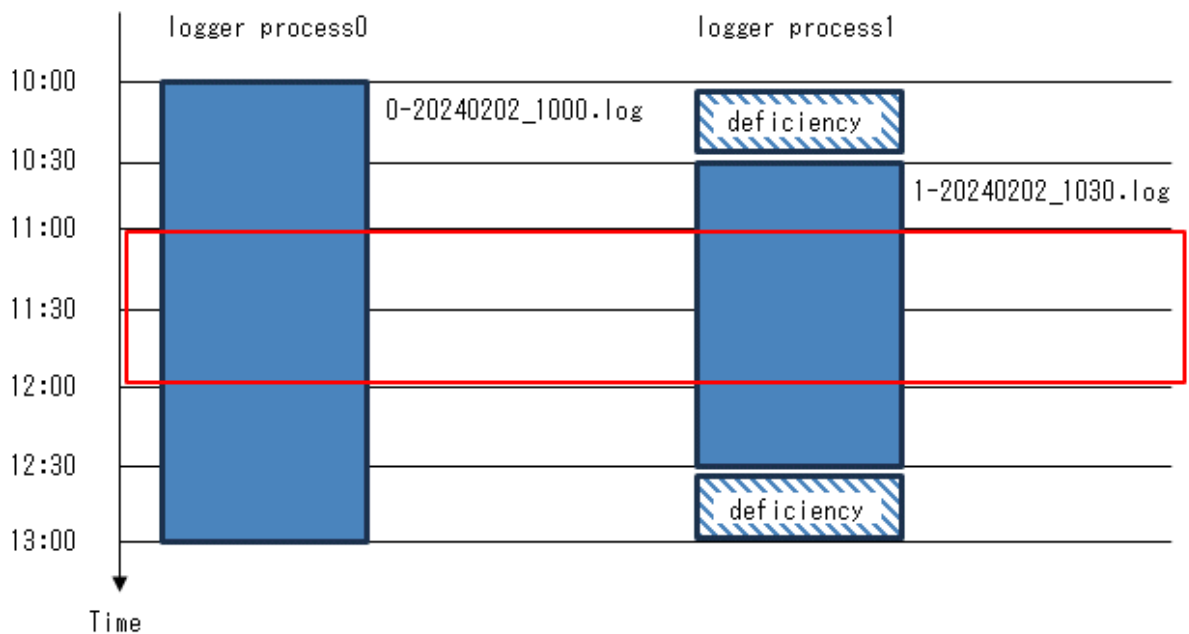
```
$ psql
=# SELECT * FROM auditlog ORDER BY sql_start_time;
 header          | class |      sql_start_time      | remote_host_name | ...
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----
 AUDIT: SESSION | DDL   | 2024-02-02 15:00:49+09   | ::1              | ...
 AUDIT: SESSION | SYSTEM | 2024-02-02 15:00:58+09   |                  | ...
```

#### Considerations when Using the Scalable Audit Log Feature

- When you enable the scalable audit log feature, there are many dedicated log files for the target period as you specify for `parallel_loggers`, so make sure to load all the dedicated log files.
- When you disable `log_rotation_age`, do not analyze the time except target period because not all audit logs may have been loaded.

For example, suppose that you are analyzing the audit log at 11:00-12:00, and you load the file output by logger process 0 at 10:00-13:00 and the file output by logger process 1 at 10:30-12:30, as shown in the following figure. Audit log records up to 10:00-13:00 appears in the table loaded with log files, but some audit logs (Audit log output by logger process 1 at 10:00-10:30 and 12:30-13:00) have not been loaded.

When `log_rotation_age` is enabled, the timing of the dedicated log file changeover is consistent across all logger processes to prevent such erroneous analysis.



## 6.10 Removing Setup

This section describes how to remove the setup of `pgaudit`.

1. Start the instance
2. Remove the `pgaudit` extension

Execute `DROP EXTENSION` to remove the `pgaudit` extension from the database.

```
$ psql -d <database name>
=# DROP EXTENSION pgaudit;
=# \q
```

3. Change postgresql.conf

Remove the parameters below relating to pgaudit.

- shared\_preload\_libraries
- pgaudit.config\_file

4. Restart the instance

5. Remove the pgaudit files



As superuser, run the following command. Note that "<x>" in paths indicates the product version.

```
$ su -
Password:*****
# rm -rf /opt/fsepv<x>server64/filesCopiedDuringSetup
```



### Information

The files copied during setup can be checked below.

```
# find /opt/fsepv<x>server64/OSS/pgaudit
```



Open a command prompt as administrator privileges, run the following command. Note that "<x>" in paths indicates the product version.

```
> del "c:\Program Files\Fujitsu\fsepv<x>server64\filesCopiedDuringSetup"
```



### Information

The files copied during setup can be checked below.

```
> dir /b /s "c:\Program Files\Fujitsu\fsepv<x>server64\OSS\pgaudit"
```



## Chapter 7 Confidentiality Management

In order to prevent unauthorized use of the various data stored in the database, it is necessary to set appropriate privileges for each database resource for database users. However, there are multiple users to whom privileges are granted, and there are also many target database resources. So it takes a lot of effort to set it up. The confidentiality management feature reduces the time and effort required to do so and supports the setting and maintenance of appropriate privileges.

This chapter describes how to install, design and use confidentiality management features. For usage examples of the feature, refer to "[7.8 Usage Example of Confidentiality Management](#)".

### 7.1 Setup

This feature is provided as an EXTENSION of PostgreSQL. The name is `pgx_confidential_management_support`. Register the extension with the database cluster using the CREATE EXTENSION statement as follows:

This must be run by superuser. Because this extension registers PostgreSQL event triggers. By registering an event trigger, when a database object such as a table is deleted, related information is deleted from the information managed by the confidentiality management feature.

This extension can be created for any schema.

```
CREATE EXTENSION pgx_confidential_management_support
```



- The various definitions described below are registered in the tables included in this extension. Note that dropping this extension with the DROP EXTENSION statement will therefore drop all these definitions as well.
- If the superuser also serves as the confidentiality management role, or if you have only one confidentiality management role, setup is complete. For confidentiality management roles, refer to "[7.2.2 Determining Confidentiality Management Roles](#)". However, if multiple confidentiality management roles manage different confidentiality matrices, they must be prevented from manipulating each other's confidentiality matrices. To do so, a superuser should run the script provided by the product as follows. This script defines policies for the row level security feature on the tables provided by the confidentiality management. `${install_dir}` refers to the directory where you installed the product.

```
psql -f ${install_dir}/share/extension/pgx_confidential_management_support_policy.sql
```

- 'public' is granted SELECT on tables included by this extension when CREATE EXETENSION statement is executed. Don't revoke the privilege from 'public'. For example, event trigger of the extension confirms to update its tables when a general user drop some table. The privilege is required at the time. Also, there is no problem that users refer content of the tables like `pg_catalog`.

### 7.2 Designing Confidentiality Management

Describes the design of confidentiality management.

#### 7.2.1 Designing a Confidentiality Matrix

A confidentiality matrix is a matrix of confidentiality levels and confidentiality groups. Elements of the confidentiality matrix are confidentiality privileges. Here we define them.

A confidentiality level is a group of data with the same degree of confidentiality, and a confidentiality group is a group of roles with the same access to confidentiality data. The details are described below.

The end result is to classify database objects into confidentiality levels and roles into confidentiality groups. But for the first step, define your confidentiality matrix abstractly without thinking about concrete tables, roles, etc. By doing so, the relationship between confidentiality levels and confidentiality groups can also be applied to databases with different sets of database objects.

You can define multiple confidentiality matrices. These confidentiality matrices are identified by a name, but the name is unique within the database (not the database cluster).

A role that manages the confidentiality matrix is called a confidentiality management role. The details are described below.

## How to create multiple confidentiality matrices

There are various design methods, but an example is shown below.

- Create one confidentiality matrix for a dataset

For example, create one confidentiality matrix for one section of your organization.

- Copy the confidentiality matrix if the two sections have the same confidentiality design
- When multiple organizations share datasets, create a single confidentiality matrix for the shared datasets

An example of this case is shown below.

- Create a confidentiality matrix *A* for the dataset that only section 1 has access to.
- Create a confidentiality matrix *B* for the dataset that only section 2 has access to.
- Create a confidentiality matrix *S* for the dataset shared by section 1 and section 2.
- Section 1 administrator *M1* is in charge of the confidentiality management role for confidentiality matrix *A*.
- Section 2 administrator *M2* is in charge of the confidentiality management role for confidentiality matrix *B*.
- Role group *G* to which *M1* and *M2* belong is in charge of confidentiality management role of confidentiality matrix *S*.

### 7.2.1.1 Defining Confidentiality Levels

Confidentiality level is a concept that indicates degree of confidentiality. For example, determine a confidentiality level that classifies tables that contain personal information and those that do not.

A collection of data that you classify as confidentiality level is a database object, such as a table. Such objects are called confidentiality objects. Refer to "[What is a confidentiality objects?](#)" for confidentiality objects.

Attributes can be set for the confidentiality level. For example, if a confidentiality level has an attribute that requires encryption, tables belonging to that confidentiality level are required to be encrypted. The confidentiality management feature may or may not automatically change the attribute of the confidentiality object to which it belongs. Also, each attribute targets a different confidentiality object.

The table below shows the attribute description, the confidentiality object targeted, and whether to change the attribute of the confidentiality object automatically.

Confidentiality level attributes	Specifiable values	Confidentiality object type	Auto change	Description
encryption_algorithm	AES128 AES256 none	table column rowset	No	Requires confidentiality objects to be encrypted with the specified algorithm. For details, refer to "Protecting Storage Data Using Transparent Data Encryption" in the Operation Guide.  If <b>none</b> is specified, no encryption is requested.  Default is <b>none</b> .  The attribute is not changed automatically because encryption and decryption involve large data updates.

Confidentiality level attributes	Specifiable values	Confidentiality object type	Auto change	Description
				Instead, you cannot add a confidentiality object with an encryption strength lower than the specified encryption strength. Also, when changing to increase the encryption strength, confidentiality objects that do not meet the post-change conditions must not be included.

### What is a confidentiality objects?

Confidentiality objects have the types shown in the following table. For example, some data contained in table *T* can be added to confidentiality level *L1* and other data to confidentiality level *L2*.

Confidentiality object type	Description
schema	It does not mean all the tables contained in the schema. It simply means an object that exists in the system catalogs. Means the schema itself that is the target of access control by the GRANT statement.
table	Includes views, materialized views and partitions as well as tables. Currently do not support foreign tables.
column	Means column.
rowset	A set of rows that satisfy a specified condition.  Although there is no rowset object in the PostgreSQL system catalog, it is treated as a confidentiality object in the confidentiality management feature for ease of use.  Access control for rowset-type confidentiality objects uses PostgreSQL's row-level security functionality internally. Therefore, how access is controlled follows the row-level security specification.

The following objects may also contain confidential information. However, the current confidentiality management feature does not support them as confidentiality objects. When managing these, it is recommended to manage them in a role different from the confidentiality management role. The details are described in "[7.5 Suggestions for Monitoring Methods](#)".

- Function
- Procedure
- Foreign server
- Foreign data wrapper
- Foreign table

### 7.2.1.2 Defining Confidentiality Groups

A confidentiality group is an object that indicates which confidentiality level roles in confidentiality group can access to. For example, decide which role groups have access to personal information and which groups do not. Confidentiality groups are actually automatically defined as PostgreSQL roles (role groups). This role is called a confidentiality group role.

### What is a confidentiality group role?

Confidentiality group roles are targets of GRANT and REVOKE statements executed internally by the confidentiality management feature. And when you add a role to the confidentiality group, the added role becomes a member of the

confidentiality group role. The privileges of the added role are given by inheriting the privileges given to the confidentiality group role by the confidentiality management feature.

The following attributes can be set for the confidentiality group role via the function that creates the confidentiality group. The meaning and default value of attribute are the same as in the CREATE ROLE statement specification. These are limited to attributes that may be necessary when managing confidentiality. Therefore, use the confidentiality management feature to change it. The confidentiality management feature automatically sets the following attributes for the role added to the confidentiality group.

- SUPERUSER
- CREATEDB
- CREATEROLE
- REPLICATION
- BYPASSRLS

Other attributes follow the PostgreSQL CREATE ROLE statement defaults. Even if the attribute is changed using the ALTER ROLE statement, the operation of confidentiality management feature will not be disturbed.

The naming convention for confidentiality group roles is as follows.

`pgx_cgroup_role_${serial_number}`

When deleting a confidentiality group, you can choose not to delete the confidentiality group role. In such a case, it is a means to know that it was a confidentiality group role later.



Do not define roles using strings that follow this naming convention. This is because the name of the new confidentiality group role will be the number next to the maximum *serial\_number* of the role that follows this naming convention. For example, if a role named 'pgx\_cgroup\_role\_999999999999999999' exists, you will not be able to create new confidentiality group roles.

### 7.2.1.3 Defining Confidentiality Privilege

Confidentiality privileges indicate how a confidentiality group can access confidentiality objects registered at a certain confidentiality level.

For example, a confidentiality group *R* can be defined to have SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE privileges on table-type confidentiality objects belonging to confidentiality level *L*.

Once a confidentiality object or role has been added to a confidentiality level or confidentiality group, the feature automatically uses the GRANT or CREATE POLICY statement to grant privileges to the actual database object according to the confidentiality privilege definition to the confidentiality group role.

For rowset types, confidentiality privileges are those that can be specified in the CREATE POLICY statement. In cases other than rowset, it is a privilege that can be specified in the GRANT statement. For detailed privileges, refer to the respective SQL statement reference in the PostgreSQL Documentation.



Do not change the definition of POLICY that this feature creates internally. Even if you change it, the function of this feature may return to the state before the change without warning.



For roles registered in the confidentiality matrix, if the privilege to a certain confidentiality object is more than the confidentiality privilege, revoke those privileges according to the confidentiality privilege.

If a role not registered in the confidentiality matrix or PUBLIC was granted privileges to a confidentiality object registered in the confidentiality matrix, functions of this feature for adding confidentiality objects or roles will fail. Because this function is not allowed to manage.

Even in a slightly more complicated situation, failing functions that add confidentiality objects and roles prevent roles added to the confidentiality matrix from deviating from confidentiality privileges:

- It is set so that a role registered in the confidentiality matrix can inherit a role not registered in the confidentiality matrix, and as a result, it has more privileges than the confidentiality privileges.
- Roles registered in the confidentiality matrix are granted privileges by a POLICY not created by this feature. In this case, the function will fail if such a POLICY exists without rigorously checking for violations of confidentiality privilege.

## 7.2.2 Determining Confidentiality Management Roles

The confidentiality management role performs all operations on the confidentiality matrix. As such, the confidentiality management role requires very strong privileges to either:

1. Has all of the following rights
  - Superuser privileges
  - Ownership of database objects belonging to the confidentiality level
2. Has all of the following privileges
  - CREATEROLE privilege
  - SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE privileges on all tables included in the extension 'public' is granted SELECT when CREATE EXTENSION statement is executed.
  - Ownership of database objects belonging to the confidentiality level



Note that the previous owner may not be able to execute GRANT statements, etc. once the confidentiality management role becomes the owner. This is because ownership of database objects cannot be shared by multiple roles belonging to different role groups. This is the PostgreSQL specification.

The confidentiality management role can create and manage multiple confidentiality matrices, but it is safer to distribute the authority. For that reason, we recommend that you decide on confidentiality management rules in the following order of priority.

- Create one-to-one confidentiality matrices and confidentiality management roles.
- Create a role group with multiple confidentiality management roles as members, or manage multiple confidentiality matrices with one confidentiality management role.
- A superuser is also a confidentiality management role.



- To assign attributes that only a superuser can grant to a role managed using the confidentiality management feature, the superuser must also serve as the confidentiality management role. For example, the REPLICATION attribute is such an attribute. Refer to the reference of the PostgreSQL Documentation for details.

- The CREATEROLE privilege changed in Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 16. For this reason, if you want to use a non-superuser role as the confidentiality management role, you must first add the privilege (CREATEDB, BYPASSRLS, etc.) that you set for creating and updating confidentiality groups to the confidentiality management role. If these privileges are not set, the confidentiality group operation may fail. For information about changing the CREATEROLE privilege, refer to "Migration to Version 16" in the PostgreSQL Documentation.

## 7.2.3 Classify Confidentiality Objects According to the Definition of Confidentiality Level

### 7.2.3.1 Defining Confidentiality Objects

First, refer to list of definitions of schemata, tables in your database, etc. that you want to manage, and define confidentiality objects. As mentioned earlier, there are various types of confidentiality objects such as column type and rowset type, so you can define confidentiality objects based on their data content.

Access control for rowset-type confidentiality objects uses PostgreSQL's row-level security functionality internally. Therefore, the method of specifying a set of rows follows the specifications of the AS clause, USING clause, and WITH CHECK clause of the CREATE POLICY statement. Also, the definition of the rowset-type confidentiality object is specified in the argument of the function that registers the rowset-type confidentiality object to the confidentiality level. This feature executes the ALTER TABLE statement with the ENABLE ROW LEVEL SECURITY clause to enable POLICY when a rowset-type confidentiality object is added.

Currently it is not possible to register a foreign table as a table-type confidentiality object.



Recommend that you do not grant privileges on confidentiality objects to PUBLIC. Granting privileges to PUBLIC is the same as granting privileges to all roles registered in the confidentiality matrix. This makes no sense if all roles that access confidentiality objects are managed using this feature. If PUBLIC is granted privileges to confidentiality objects, the functions included in this feature will check that the privileges granted to each role are not exceeded, and will fail if they are.



- Be careful when confidentiality objects are of column type. This is because if the table-type confidentiality object is set at the same time, the table type privilege takes precedence.

For example, if you want to revoke the SELECT privilege only from a special column *C* in some table *T*, list the columns other than column *C* and grant the SELECT privilege to them without granting the SELECT privilege to table *T*. This follows the PostgreSQL's GRANT statement specification for column.

If you have to enumerate a large number of columns, it might be a good idea to move the special columns to a new table and present your existing application with a VIEW that JOINS both tables.

- If the confidentiality object is of rowset type, set the same privileges for the table type as those specified for the rowset type. This is because when a SQL statement accesses data, it first checks that you have privilege to access the table. After that, the rowset privileges are checked for matching rows. This follows the PostgreSQL row level security specification.

### 7.2.3.2 Classify Confidentiality Objects

Classify confidentiality objects according to the confidentiality level definition.

A single confidentiality object cannot be classified in multiple confidentiality levels, even if they are in different confidentiality matrices.

## 7.2.4 Classify Roles According to Confidentiality Group Definitions

A role can belong to multiple confidentiality groups in different confidentiality matrices at the same time. However, a single role cannot be classified into multiple confidentiality groups within a single confidentiality matrix.



### Note

- We strongly recommend that you do not group confidentiality group roles into other confidentiality groups. This is because the confidentiality management feature does not prohibit such usage, but it probably only complicates security management. Also note that PostgreSQL does not allow cyclic groupings of roles.
- After adding roles to a confidentiality group, it is highly recommended that such roles not be made members of role groups not managed by the confidentiality matrix. This is because although the confidentiality management feature does not prohibit such situations, for example, unreasonably increasing the privileges of such role groups may become a way out for roles managed by the confidentiality management feature.  
Note that this feature does not allow roles with such loopholes to be added to confidentiality groups.
- As of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 16, the CREATEROLE privilege has been changed to require ADMIN OPTION privilege on roles added to confidentiality groups if non-superusers are to be used as confidentiality management roles. Therefore, the roles that can be added to the confidentiality group must be:

- Roles created with confidentiality management role privileges
- A role that previously granted the ADMIN OPTION privilege for a role to a confidentiality management role

Example) To grant the confidentiality management role manager\_role only the ADMIN OPTION privilege for role user\_role1:

```
GRANT user_role1 TO manager_role WITH ADMIN TRUE, INHERIT FALSE, SET FALSE;
```

For information about changing the CREATEROLE privilege, refer to "Migration to Version 16" in the PostgreSQL Documentation.

## 7.3 How to Use Confidentiality Management Feature (Definition)

Confidentiality management feature provides functions and tables.

Some functions define, change, or drop confidentiality matrices, etc. These functions will output an audit log indicating that they were executed, so you can later confirm that an illegal operation was performed.

In addition, you can directly refer to the table provided by this feature and check the defined contents using functions that help referencing.

Also, some functions output the attributes of confidentiality objects defined in the PostgreSQL system catalog and the attributes that should be set for that confidentiality object. You can use these to compare attributes.

For details, refer to "[Appendix B System Management Functions Used by Confidentiality Management Feature](#)".

### Tables included by the pgx\_confidential\_management\_support extension

Table name	Description
pgx_confidential_matrix	A list of confidentiality matrices.  You can refer to the attributes of the registered confidentiality matrix, the update time, or the time when the confidentiality level or confidentiality group was registered or deleted.
pgx_confidential_level	A list of confidentiality levels.

Table name	Description
	You can refer to the registered confidentiality level attributes, update time, or the time when a confidentiality object was registered to the confidentiality level or removed from the confidentiality level.
pgx_confidential_group	A list of confidentiality groups.  You can refer to the registered confidentiality group attributes, update time, or the time when a role was registered to the confidentiality group or removed from the confidentiality group.
pgx_confidential_privilege	A list of confidentiality privileges.  You can refer to confidentiality privilege set for each confidentiality object, update time, and so on.
pgx_confidential_object	A list of confidentiality objects.  You can refer to object attributes or update time, and so on.
pgx_confidential_role	A list of roles registered in the confidentiality group.  You can refer to role attributes or update time, and so on.
pgx_confidential_policy	This is a list of policies created to set privileges for rowset-type confidentiality objects. You can refer to the name of the policy you created and the privileges it has set.  Rows in this table are inserted when you add a rowset-type confidentiality object.

Rows in each table are added, deleted, or updated when you execute functions to add, delete, or update definitions.

Also, if the target confidentiality object is deleted by a DROP TABLE statement, etc., it will also be deleted from the following tables.

- pgx\_confidential\_object
- pgx\_confidential\_policy

### Functions for adding, removing or updating definitions

These functions will print an audit log indicating that they were executed.

Function name	Description
pgx_create_confidential_matrix	Create a confidentiality matrix.
pgx_alter_confidential_matrix	Change the attributes of the confidentiality matrix.
pgx_drop_confidential_matrix	Drop the confidentiality matrix.
pgx_copy_confidential_matrix	Copy the confidentiality matrix.
pgx_create_confidential_level	Create confidentiality levels and register them in the confidentiality matrix.
pgx_alter_confidential_level	Change the confidentiality level attribute.
pgx_drop_confidential_level	Remove a confidentiality level from the confidentiality matrix and drop a confidentiality level.
pgx_create_confidential_group	Create a confidentiality group and register it in the confidentiality matrix.
pgx_alter_confidential_group	Change the attributes of a confidentiality group.



Function name	Description
pgx_drop_confidential_group	Remove confidentiality groups from the confidentiality matrix and drop confidentiality group.
pgx_grant_confidential_privilege	Grant confidentiality privileges.
pgx_revoke_confidential_privilege	Revoke confidentiality privileges.
pgx_add_object_to_confidential_level	Add confidentiality objects to the confidentiality level.
pgx_remove_object_from_confidential_level	Removes confidentiality objects from the confidentiality level.
pgx_add_role_to_confidential_group	Add a role to a confidentiality group.
pgx_remove_role_from_confidential_group	Remove a role from a confidentiality group.

### Functions that Support Definition Referencing and Comparison with System Catalogs

Function name	Description
pgx_get_attribute_of_objects	For all confidentiality objects registered in the specified confidentiality matrix, displays the attributes defined in the confidentiality matrix and the attributes actually set in the database.
pgx_get_attribute_of_roles	For all roles registered in the specified confidentiality matrix, displays the attributes defined in the confidentiality matrix and the attributes actually set in the system catalog.
pgx_get_privileges_on_level_and_group	Displays a list of combinations of confidentiality objects registered with the specified confidentiality level and roles registered with the specified confidentiality group, such that the following can be compared. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Privileges specified by the confidentiality privilege settings that should be granted to the specified role</li> <li>- Privileges granted in the actual system catalog</li> </ul>
pgx_get_privileges_on_object	For the specified confidentiality object, display a list that allows you to compare the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Privileges dictated by confidentiality privilege settings that should be granted to all roles</li> <li>- Privileges granted in the actual system catalog</li> </ul>
pgx_get_privileges_on_role	For all confidentiality objects, display a list that allows you to compare: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Privileges specified by the confidentiality privilege settings that should be granted to the specified role</li> <li>- Privileges granted in the actual system catalog</li> </ul>
pgx_get_privileges_on_matrix	For all objects registered in the specified confidentiality matrix, display a list that allows you to compare:

Function name	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Privileges defined by confidentiality privilege settings that should be granted to all roles registered in the confidentiality matrix.</li> <li>- Privileges granted in the actual system catalog</li> </ul>

Describe the definition procedure.

## 7.3.1 Creating a Confidentiality Management Role

Create a confidentiality management role using the CREATE ROLE statement, or use an existing role as a confidentiality management role. Set the privileges and attributes shown in "7.2.2 Determining Confidentiality Management Roles" for the confidentiality management role.

### Note

- Use caution when renaming a confidentiality management role. If you want to do so, delete all confidentiality matrices managed by that confidentiality management role, rename the confidentiality management role, and then define the same confidentiality matrix again. Otherwise, you will not be able to operate the confidentiality matrix. For example, you cannot change confidentiality privileges or remove confidentiality objects from the confidentiality level. If you accidentally renamed it first, change it back to the original name and then proceed as described above. In the future, we will simply allow the changed name of the confidentiality management role to be set in the confidentiality matrix.
- If you want to delete the confidentiality management role, delete the confidentiality management role after deleting the confidentiality matrix. Otherwise, you will not be able to create a confidentiality matrix with the same name because you will not be able to delete the confidentiality matrix left behind. If you accidentally delete the confidentiality management role before deleting the confidentiality matrix, create a confidentiality management role with the same name again and delete the confidentiality matrix, or delete the confidentiality matrix with a role that has SUPERUSER privileges.

## 7.3.2 Creating a Confidentiality Matrix

Create a confidentiality matrix with comments describing the confidentiality matrix as follows. This comment is stored in the pgx\_confidential\_matrix table.

```
select pgx_create_confidential_matrix('matrix_foo', 'This matrix is defined for foo.')
```

### Point

The role executing this function is considered the confidentiality management role. If this function is executed after SET ROLE, the role specified in SET ROLE will be regarded as the confidentiality management role, not the role that executed SET ROLE.

You can also create a new confidentiality matrix 'matrix\_dest' by duplicating the already created confidentiality matrix 'matrix\_src' as follows. If you copy the confidentiality matrix and create it, the comments will also be copied. Comments can be changed using the pgx\_alter\_confidential\_matrix function.

```
select pgx_copy_confidential_matrix('matrix_dest', 'matrix_src')
```

You can also check the created matrix by referring to the pgx\_confidential\_matrix table.

### Point

The source must be within the same database. If you want to copy from different databases or different database instances, choose one of the following methods. If you choose the method using COPY statement, confirm the cautions shown below.

- Define using a function in the same way as the original.
- Perform the following steps

Execute steps other than step 6 with a role that has SUPERUSER privileges.

1. Set up extensions in the target database.
2. From the table below, specify the ID of the source confidentiality matrix in the WHERE clause and extract the data using the COPY TO statement.
  - pgx\_confidential\_matrix
  - pgx\_confidential\_level
  - pgx\_confidential\_group
  - pgx\_confidential\_privilege
3. Refer to the *pg\_sequences* system view and save the value of the *last\_value* column of the following SEQUENCE in a file.
  - pgx\_confidential\_matrix\_cmatid\_seq
  - pgx\_confidential\_level\_clevid\_seq
  - pgx\_confidential\_group\_cgroid\_seq
  - pgx\_confidential\_privilege\_cpriid\_seq
4. Load the data extracted in step 2 into the above table in the target database using the COPY FROM statement. This operation can be performed by any confidentiality management role in any confidentiality matrix.
5. Use the *pg\_catalog.setval* function to set the *last\_value* for each SEQUENCE on the copy destination, specifying the value saved in step 3. An example is shown below.
 

```
SELECT pg_catalog.setval('pgx_confidential_matrix_cmatid_seq', 5)
```
6. Create a new confidentiality matrix using the *pgx\_copy\_confidential\_matrix* function and specifying the confidentiality matrix loaded in step 4 as the copy source. Perform this operation in the confidentiality management role of the newly created confidentiality matrix.
7. Use the *pgx\_drop\_confidential\_matrix* function specifying **false** for *drop\_role* to drop the confidentiality matrix loaded in step 4.

## Note

- If you specify true for *drop\_role*, you will not be able to continue to be managed by the original confidentiality matrix. The reason is as follows.

After completing step 6, you should have:

- a) Confidentiality matrix of source database
- b) the confidentiality matrix loaded in step 4
- c) Confidentiality matrix duplicated in step 6

The b) and c) confidentiality matrices use different confidentiality group roles. This is the effect of the *pgx\_copy\_confidential\_matrix* function. However, the confidentiality matrices of a) and b) share the same confidentiality group role. Although this is temporary, it is a bad situation. To do so, remove the confidentiality matrix in b) in step 7. If **true** is specified for *drop\_role* at this time, the confidentiality group role used in a) will be deleted. Therefore, management by the confidentiality matrix of a) cannot be continued.

- The destination must have just installed this extension with CREATE EXTENSION. This is because the table data contained in this extension contains an ID representing the confidentiality matrix and confidentiality level, and this ID is generated by the SEQUENCE included in the extension. For example, if you have created at least one

confidentiality matrix, the confidentiality matrix is numbered with an ID of 1, but that matrix is not the object numbered with an ID of 1 in the copy source.

---

### 7.3.3 Adding Confidentiality Levels to the Confidentiality Matrix

---

Create a confidentiality level and add it to the confidentiality matrix as follows: In the example below, the JSON format third argument requests that confidentiality objects belonging to 'level1' are encrypted. Specify *NULL* if you don't want anything. Refer to "[B.2 Confidentiality Level Manipulation Functions](#)" for the content of the request.

```
select pgx_create_confidential_level('matrix_foo', 'level1',
'{"encryption_algorithm":"AES256"}', 'The strongest encryption is required for this
level.')
```

You can also check the added confidentiality level by referring to the `pgx_confidential_level` table.

---

### 7.3.4 Adding Confidentiality Groups to the Confidentiality Matrix

---

Create a confidentiality group and add it to the confidentiality matrix as follows. Attributes are given to the confidentiality group by the third argument in JSON format. Refer to "[B.3 Confidentiality Group Manipulation Functions](#)" for the attributes that can be assigned.

In the example below, a role belonging to this confidentiality group grants the `CREATEDB` privilege.

```
select pgx_create_confidential_group('matrix_foo', 'group1', '{"CREATEDB':true}', 'Roles
belonging to this confidentiality role are permitted to create db.')
```

You can also check the added confidentiality group by referring to the `pgx_confidential_group` table.

---

### 7.3.5 Granting Confidentiality Privileges to Confidentiality Groups

---

In the example below, roles belonging to 'group1' are granted `SELECT`, `INSERT` and `DELETE` privileges for tables belonging to 'level1'. Specify privileges for each type of confidentiality object by the fourth argument in JSON format. Refer to "[B.4 Confidentiality Privilege Manipulation Functions](#)" for the privileges that can be granted.

```
select pgx_grant_confidential_privilege('matrix_foo', 'level1', 'group1', '{"schema":
["ALL"], "table":["SELECT","INSERT","DELETE"]}') )
```

If a confidentiality object of the target type is registered in the confidentiality level, when this function is executed, the confidentiality management feature internally uses the `GRANT` statement to grant a confidentiality group role access to confidentiality objects that are registered at a confidentiality level. The effect of the `GRANT` statement can be checked as follows.

```
select pgx_get_privileges_on_level_and_group('matrix_foo', 'level1', '["role1","role2"]')
```

For the format of the table returned by a function that outputs authority information, such as this function, refer to "[B.7 Functions that Support Definition Referencing and Comparison with System Catalogs](#)".

---

### 7.3.6 Adding Confidentiality Objects to Confidentiality Level

---

Classify the intended database object into the appropriate confidentiality level according to the confidentiality level design. In the example below, 'table1' of 'schema1' and 'table2' of 'schema1' are added to 'level1' at the same time. Specify the confidentiality object type and confidentiality object name in the third argument in JSON format. If the type is same, you can enumerate multiple confidentiality objects. You can enumerate multiple objects you want to register for each sensitive object type. In this example, only the *table* type is registered, but *schema* type can also be registered at the same time.

```
select pgx_add_object_to_confidential_level ('matrix_foo', 'level1',
'[{
  "type":"table",
```

```

    "object":[
      {
        "schema":"schema1",
        "table":["table1","table2"]
      }
    ]
  }]]')

```

When specifying a rowset, you must declare what kind of set of rows it is in the value of the *rowset\_expression* key. For details on how to specify it, refer to ["B.5 Confidentiality Object Manipulation Functions"](#).

When this function is executed, the confidentiality management feature internally uses the GRANT statement or CREATE POLICY statement to grant privileges to the specified confidentiality objects to all confidentiality groups set in the confidentiality matrix. The effect of the GRANT statement can be checked as follows. This example checks the privileges granted on 'table1' in 'schema1' and 'table2' in 'schema1'.

```

select pgx_get_privileges_on_object('matrix_foo',
'[{
  "type":"table",
  "object":[
    "schema":"schema1",
    "table":["table1","table2"]
  ]
}]')

```

### 7.3.7 Adding Roles to Confidentiality Groups

Classify the intended role into the appropriate confidentiality group according to the confidentiality group design. You can add multiple roles at once. In the example below, role role1 and role role2 are added to confidentiality group 'group1'.

```

select pgx_add_role_to_confidential_group('matrix_foo', 'group1', '["role1","role2"]')

```

The confidentiality management feature adds the specified role to the members of the confidentiality group role.

The feature does not execute GRANT statements for confidentiality objects at this time. This is because we have already executed the GRANT statement between the confidentiality group role and the confidentiality object, and we will not execute the GRANT statement between the individual roles and the confidentiality object.

By using the function below, you can check the privileges that can be exercised by the specified role after inheriting the privilege of the confidentiality group role with the INHERIT attribute on the role side or changing to the confidentiality group role with the SET ROLE statement. In other words, you can check the access privileges that the actually registered roles can exercise. For details on the output format, refer to ["B.7 Functions that Support Definition Referencing and Comparison with System Catalogs"](#). The example below checks the privileges of role 'role1' and role 'role2'.

```

select pgx_get_privileges_on_role('matrix_foo', '["role1","role2"]')

```

## 7.4 How to Use Confidentiality Management Feature (Change and Deletion)

### 7.4.1 Renaming Confidentiality Objects

The current confidentiality management feature cannot follow when confidentiality objects are renamed. Therefore, if the name is changed, remove the old name confidentiality object with the *pgx\_remove\_object\_from\_confidential\_level* function specifying the old name, and register the confidentiality object with the new name using the *pgx\_add\_object\_to\_confidential\_level* function specifying the new name.

## 7.4.2 Renaming Roles

---

The current confidentiality management feature cannot follow when roles are renamed. Therefore, when renaming, exclude the role with the old name with the `pgx_remove_role_from_confidential_group` function specifying the old name, and after renaming the role, register the role with the new name with the `pgx_add_role_to_confidential_group` function specifying the new name.

## 7.4.3 Deleting Roles

---

The current confidentiality management feature cannot follow when roles are dropped. Therefore, when dropping, exclude the role with `pgx_remove_role_from_confidential_group` function.

## 7.4.4 Changing Confidentiality Matrix

---

Change the name or attributes of the confidentiality matrix as follows. Specify the name and attribute value to be changed in JSON format. You can change the name and multiple attributes at once. Attributes not specified here are not changed.

```
select pgx_alter_confidential_matrix('matrix_foo', '{"name": "matrix_bar",
"comment": "This matrix is defined for bar."}')
```

## 7.4.5 Deleting Confidentiality Matrix

---

Delete the confidentiality matrix as follows.

```
select pgx_drop_confidential_matrix('matrix_foo', false, false)
```

By specifying a second or third argument, you can choose to delete all confidentiality levels and confidentiality groups added to the confidentiality matrix, or remove confidentiality group roles. Confidentiality group roles that were not deleted can be identified using the previously mentioned naming convention. No matter what you choose, the roles registered in the confidentiality group will not be deleted. The above example simply deletes the confidentiality matrix only.

## 7.4.6 Changing Confidentiality Level

---

Change the name and attributes of the confidentiality levels that were added to the confidentiality matrix 'matrix\_foo' as follows. Specify the value after changing the name and attributes in JSON format. You can change the name or multiple attributes at once. Attributes not specified here are not changed.

```
select pgx_alter_confidential_level('matrix_foo', 'level1', '{"name": "levelX",
"comment": "This level required the highest confidential clearance."}')
```

If a confidentiality object was already registered with the confidentiality level, the attributes of the confidentiality object are also changed automatically. However, as mentioned in ["7.2.1.1 Defining Confidentiality Levels"](#), it may not be possible to automatically change the attributes of confidentiality objects. At that time, the function checks that the attributes of the registered confidentiality object are stricter than the attribute of the modified confidentiality level. If the check fails, this function will also fail. For example, if you try to change the encryption\_algorithm from AES128 to AES256 and an AES128 encrypted table is registered as a confidentiality object, this function will fail. In such a case, please execute this function again after encrypting the table with AES256.

## 7.4.7 Deleting Confidentiality Level

---

Delete the confidentiality level as follows.

```
select pgx_drop_confidential_level('matrix_foo', 'level1', false)
```

With a third argument, you can choose to delete those that depend on the specified confidentiality level. Of course, confidentiality objects registered with the confidentiality level are not deleted.

## 7.4.8 Changing Confidentiality Group

Change the name and attributes of the confidentiality groups that were added to the confidentiality matrix 'matrix\_foo' as follows. Specify the value after changing the name and attributes in JSON format. You can change the name or multiple attributes at once. Attributes not specified here are not changed.

```
select pgx_alter_confidential_group('matrix_foo', 'group1', '{"name": "groupX",
"comment": "Members of this group have the highest confidential clearance."}')
```

## 7.4.9 Deleting Confidentiality Group

Delete the confidentiality group as follows.

```
select pgx_drop_confidential_group('matrix_foo', 'group1', true, true)
```

By specifying a second or third argument, you can choose to delete dependencies on the specified confidentiality group or delete the confidentiality group role. Any choice will not delete the roles belonging to the confidentiality group.



### Note

Even if you leave the confidentiality group role, this function will revoke privileges from the confidentiality group role. The privilege to revoke is the privilege defined in confidentiality privileges. Therefore, note that a role registered in a confidentiality group will be deprived of various privileges granted by inheriting the confidentiality group role.

## 7.4.10 Revoking Confidentiality Privileges

Revoke confidentiality privileges from confidentiality groups as follows. Specify the confidentiality object and confidentiality group and the privileges to revoke in JSON format. The following example revokes INSERT and DELETE privileges for table-type confidentiality objects belonging to 'level1' from 'group1'.

```
select pgx_revoke_confidential_privilege('matrix_foo', 'level1', 'group1', '{"table":
["INSERT", "DELETE"]}')
```

## 7.4.11 Removing Confidentiality Objects from Confidentiality Level

Remove confidentiality objects from the confidentiality level as follows. Specify the type and name of confidentiality objects to be excluded in JSON format. The following example removes table-type confidentiality objects schema1.table1 and schema1.table2 from the confidentiality level 'level1'.

```
select pgx_remove_object_from_confidential_level('matrix_foo', 'level1'
'[{
  "type": "table",
  "object": [
    {
      "schema": "schema1",
      "table": ["table1", "table2"]
    }
  ]
}]')
```

## 7.4.12 Removing Roles from Confidentiality Groups

Remove the role from the confidentiality group as follows. Specify the roles to remove in JSON format. The following example removes roles 'role1' and 'role2' from confidentiality group 'group1'.

```
select pgx_remove_role_from_confidential_group('matrix_foo', 'group1',
'["role1", "role2"]')
```

## 7.5 Suggestions for Monitoring Methods

---

Confidentiality management role must ensure that the database is operating securely as intended, even after confidentiality managements are defined. If you are only using the confidentiality management feature, you do not have to worry about such things. However, the confidentiality management feature does not prohibit changing the definitions of tables and roles without using this feature.

So you have to detect when such an action has taken place.

However, even if they detect it, they may forget to deal with it. Therefore, it is necessary to periodically check the difference between the confidentiality level and confidentiality group and the actual definition of confidentiality objects and roles. Of course, even if there was a mismatch, it would not be a problem if the confidentiality object or role had stricter attributes and privilege.

The procedure presented here aims at matching.

### 7.5.1 How to Detect Privilege Changes without Using Confidentiality Management feature

---

Use the audit log to detect unauthorized modification of the attributes of confidentiality objects or roles, or modification of privileges without going through the confidentiality management feature.

The basic method for detection is to detect actions by roles other than the confidentiality management role. However, there are exceptions such as:

When performing an operation without using the confidentiality management feature for a legitimate reason

For example, when changing the authority of a function that the confidentiality management feature does not treat as a confidentiality object. In order to identify this, it is recommended to determine roles that perform changes that do not involve the confidentiality management feature. This is because when various roles do this, it becomes difficult to detect audit logs that deviate from operational rules.

When monitoring the activity of the confidentiality management role

For example, it would be a good idea to create rules that allow access only at specified times and from specified terminals, and to detect activities that violate those rules from audit logs. It is important to set rules so that violations cannot be covered up. For example application\_name is not suitable as it can be easily spoofed.

### 7.5.2 How to Check Confidentiality Objects and Roles

---

This section describes how to confirm that the contents registered in the confidentiality matrix match the confidentiality objects and roles managed in the PostgreSQL system catalog. The method shown here is just an example.

#### Inspector

The inspector must be granted SELECT privilege on tables with the pg\_confidential\_management\_support extension and SELECT privilege on the confidentiality object and role information added to the subject confidentiality matrix in the system tables. At a minimum, the confidentiality management role for the confidentiality matrix being reviewed and superuser certainly have such privileges.

#### Procedure

The confirmation procedure is divided into the following three phases. If you detect a discrepancy, use the audit log to investigate what caused the discrepancy. And fix it to match.



#### Note

- Various objects may be changed (modified) in a chain reaction when returning to the correct state. Doing so may erase traces of unauthorized manipulation. Therefore, it is recommended that you investigate any design inconsistencies and ensure that you have the necessary audit logs for the investigation before fixing them.



- The *pgx\_get\_privileges\_on\_matrix* function presented here can output a very large table if the number of confidentiality objects or roles is large. If the size of this table exceeds the value of PostgreSQL's *work\_mem* parameter, I/O will occur according to PostgreSQL's specifications, resulting in a slowdown. Therefore, it is recommended that *work\_mem* be set as high as possible in the session in which this function is executed.

### (1) Make sure the state of the confidentiality matrix is the same as the design

If you detect a mismatch, please restore the correct state by executing functions such as *pgx\_alter\_confidential\_level* function provided by this extension.

- Attributes of the confidentiality matrix

Check using the *pgx\_confidential\_matrix* table.

- Number of registered confidentiality levels and attributes of each confidentiality level

Check the row that matches the *clevmatid* to be checked from the *pgx\_confidential\_level* table. To know the confidentiality matrix identifier, see *cmatid* in the *pgx\_confidential\_matrix* table.

- Number of registered confidentiality groups and attributes of each confidentiality group

Check the row in the *pgx\_confidential\_role* table whose *ccolmatid* matches the identifier of the confidentiality matrix to be checked.

- Confidentiality group privileges set to confidentiality level

Refer to the *pgx\_confidential\_privileges* table. However, in this table confidentiality levels and confidentiality groups are represented as identifiers. Join with *pgx\_confidential\_level* table and *pgx\_confidential\_role* table if you want to check by confidentiality level name or confidentiality group name.

### (2) Verify correct confidentiality objects and roles registered

Confirm that the definition of the confidentiality management feature matches the definition of the confidentiality objects and roles. If you detect a mismatch, please restore the correct state by executing functions such as *pgx\_alter\_confidential\_level* function provided by this extension.

- Is the number of confidentiality objects registered in the confidentiality level the same as designed?
- Do the attributes of each confidentiality object match the attributes of the confidentiality level to which it belongs?

It is recommended to check these using *pgx\_get\_attribute\_of\_objects* function. Because this function gets the state of the confidentiality object from the PostgreSQL system catalog and outputs a table that can be compared with the definition. For the format of the table, refer to "[B.7 Functions that Support Definition Referencing and Comparison with System Catalogs](#)".

- Is the number of roles registered in the confidentiality group the same as designed?
- Do the attributes of each role match the attributes of the confidentiality group to which it belongs?

It is recommended to check these using *pgx\_get\_attribute\_of\_roles* function. For the format of the table returned by a function that outputs authority information, such as this function, refer to "[B.7 Functions that Support Definition Referencing and Comparison with System Catalogs](#)".

### (3) Check privilege of confidentiality objects

Verify that the roles granted access to confidentiality objects and what the privileges are are consistent with the definitions in the confidentiality matrix. A good help is to use the *pgx\_get\_privileges\_on\_matrix* function. For details on the output format, see "[7.3.5 Granting Confidentiality Privileges to Confidentiality Groups](#)".

If you want to focus on any confidentiality level or role, use the function below.

- *pgx\_get\_privileges\_on\_level\_and\_group()*
- *pgx\_get\_privileges\_on\_object()*
- *pgx\_get\_privileges\_on\_role()*



It is inefficient to output a large table many times in order to analyze it with various SQL statements. You can perform efficient analysis by specifying a query that executes this function in the INSERT statement as shown below.

```
INSERT INTO temp_table_for_analysis SELECT pgx_get_privileges_on_matrix('matrix_foo')
```

## 7.6 Backup/Restore

There are 4 methods below.

- Use `pg_basebackup`
- Use `pg_dumpall` to back up the entire database cluster as a script file
- Use `pg_dump` and `pg_restore` to back up and restore only some databases
- Use `pg_dump's pg_restore` to back up and restore only some tables and schemas

Of these, if you adopt the method of using `pg_basebackup`, you do not need to be particularly careful. The following special precautions should be taken when adopting other methods.

### Use `pg_dumpall` to back up the entire database cluster as a script file

Note the following.

- Do not use the `-O` option of the `pg_dumpall` command. This feature does not work properly if the confidentiality object changes ownership.
- Do not use the `-x` option of the `pg_dumpall` command. Of course, this would change tightly controlled privileges.
- Execute the backup script file as a superuser. A backup script file contains the `CREATE EXTENSION` statement for this extension. This is because the `CREATE EXTENSION` statement must be executed as a superuser.

### Backup and restore only some databases using `pg_dump` and `pg_restore`

Note the following.

- Use the `-r` option of the `pg_dumpall` command to back up and restore role information as well. Of course, because roles are essential to confidentiality management.
- Do not use the `-O` option of the `pg_dump` command. This feature will not work properly if the confidentiality object changes ownership.
- Do not use the `-x` option of the `pg_dump` command. Of course, this would change tightly controlled privileges.
- Restore by a superuser for `CREATE EXTENSION`.

### Use `pg_dump's pg_restore` to backup and restore only some tables and schema

Note the following.

- Use the `-e` option of the `pg_dump` command to back up and restore this extension as well. This is because the tables contained in this extension store the information required for confidentiality management.
- Use the `-r` option of the `pg_dumpall` command to back up and restore role information as well. Of course, because roles are essential to confidentiality management.
- Do not use the `-O` option of the `pg_dump` command. This feature will not work properly if the confidentiality object changes ownership.
- Do not use the `-x` option of the `pg_dump` command. Of course, this would change tightly controlled privileges.
- Restore by a superuser for `CREATE EXTENSION`.

## 7.7 Removing Setup

If you are no longer using this feature and want to continue using your database as before, we recommend simply DROP EXTENSION. This is because if you delete definitions such as confidentiality matrices and confidentiality levels created using this extension using the deletion functions provided by this extension, the roles automatically created by this extension will be deleted, the privileges of roles granted by this extension are revoked. Simply dropping this extension will only drop the tables it contains, it will not do any of these things.

## 7.8 Usage Example of Confidentiality Management

Here is an example of the concept of confidentiality levels and confidentiality groups.

This section assumes a simple business that handles customer purchase information.

First, create a confidentiality matrix for confidentiality management of this information.

```
SELECT pgx_create_confidential_matrix('matrix_purchase_management', 'Confidentiality
management of customer purchase information');
```

The data we process may also contain personally identifiable information. Access to such data should be restricted to those who have access to it to minimize the risk of information disclosure.

Customer purchase information, including personally identifiable information, is managed in the following table.

```
CREATE TABLE purchase.customer_info(      -- Customer information
    customer_id    integer,                -- Customer ID
    name           text,
    address        text,
    phone_number   char(12),
    rank           integer                  -- Customer's service rank
);

CREATE TABLE purchase.history(           -- History of a customer's purchase of goods
    customer_id    integer,                -- ID of the customer who purchased
    purchase_date   date,                  -- Date the goods were purchased
    item_code       char(12),              -- Code of the goods purchased
    purchase_number integer,                -- Quantity purchased
    purchase_amount integer                -- Amount of purchased goods
);
```

Among customer information, name, address, and telephone number are personal information because they can identify an individual when combined. In order to properly handle such information, we have made it so that it can only be handled by employees belonging to a specific group who have received appropriate training.

Therefore, we have prepared two confidentiality levels: "level\_personal\_info", which means highly confidential personal information, and "level\_customer\_info", which means other information.

```
SELECT pgx_create_confidential_level('matrix_purchase_management', 'level_personal_info',
                                     NULL, 'Personally identifiable information');
SELECT pgx_create_confidential_level('matrix_purchase_management', 'level_customer_info',
                                     NULL, 'Non-personally identifiable information');
```

In addition, we will prepare two confidentiality groups: "group\_qualified" who have been educated about handling personal information and can handle personal information appropriately, and "group\_non\_qualified" who are not qualified.

```
SELECT pgx_create_confidential_group ('matrix_purchase_management', 'group_qualified',
                                     NULL, 'Qualified staff handling personal information');
SELECT pgx_create_confidential_group ('matrix_purchase_management', 'group_non_qualified',
                                     NULL, 'General employee');
```

Let's take a closer look at the data we're dealing with.

Since the customer information table contains personal information, it corresponds to personal information. However, the customer\_id and rank contained in the customer information table are not personal information because they are not personally identifiable information. In addition, since this customer\_id and rank are also information necessary for business analysis, it is inconvenient that only those who are qualified to handle personal information can access such information.

Therefore, the customer information table uses columns for confidentiality management. The entire customer information table is protected as personal information, and the range of access is expanded by making the columns that are not personal information general customer information.

Follow this policy to set confidentiality level privilege for confidentiality group.

```
SELECT pgx_grant_confidential_privilege('matrix_purchase_management',
                                         'level_personal_info',
                                         'group_qualified', '{"table":["ALL"]}');
SELECT pgx_grant_confidential_privilege('matrix_purchase_management',
                                         'level_customer_info',
                                         'group_qualified', '{"table":["ALL"]}');
SELECT pgx_grant_confidential_privilege('matrix_purchase_management',
                                         'level_customer_info',
                                         'group_not_qualified',
                                         '{"table":["ALL"], "column":["SELECT"]}');
```

Only "qualified personnel" can handle "personal information". "Customer information" can be handled by both "qualified personnel" and "general employees". Some columns of tables that handle "personal information" are allowed to be referred to as "customer information".

This completes the authorization settings in the confidentiality matrix.

Next, we will register the database objects that handle purchase information in the confidentiality matrix.

```
SELECT pgx_add_object_to_confidential_level('matrix_purchase_management',
                                           'level_personal_info',
                                           '[[{"type":"table",
                                           "object":[{"schema": "purchase",
                                           "table": ["customer_info"]}]}]]');
SELECT pgx_add_object_to_confidential_level('matrix_purchase_management',
                                           'level_customer_info',
                                           '[[{"type":"column",
                                           "object":[{"schema": "purchase",
                                           "table": "customer_info",
                                           "column": ["customer_id", "rank"]}]}]]');
SELECT pgx_add_object_to_confidential_level('matrix_purchase_management',
                                           'level_customer_info',
                                           '[[{"type":"table",
                                           "object":[{"schema": "purchase",
                                           "table": ["history"]}]}]]');
```

The entire customer information table is "personal information", the customer\_id column and rank column of the customer information table are "customer information", and the entire purchase history table is also "customer information".

Finally, enroll the employee in the confidentiality group. "Alex" and "Bola" are "qualified persons" who have received training in personal information management. Also, "Charlie" and "Dana" are "general employees" because they have not yet received training on personal information management.

```
SELECT pgx_add_role_to_confidential_group('matrix_purchase_management',
                                          'group_qualified',
                                          ['Alex', 'Bola']);
SELECT pgx_add_role_to_confidential_group('matrix_purchase_management',
                                          'group_non_qualified',
                                          ['Charlie', 'Dana']);
```

## Appendix A Tables Used by Confidentiality Management Feature

This section describes the tables used by the confidentiality management feature.

### A.1 pgx\_confidential\_matrix

A list of confidentiality matrices.

You can refer to the attributes of the registered confidentiality matrix, the update time, or the time when the confidentiality level or confidentiality group was registered or deleted.

Column name	Type	Constraint	Description
cmatid	bigint	primary key generated always as identity	Identifier of the confidentiality matrix.
cmatname	varchar(63)	unique not null	Name of the confidentiality matrix.
cmatowner	name	not null	Owner of the confidentiality matrix. The role that created the confidentiality matrix becomes the owner.
cmatcomment	text		Comment.
cmatupdatetime	timestamp with time zone	not null	Update time of the confidentiality matrix itself.
cmatoperationtime	timestamp with time zone		The time when the confidentiality level and confidentiality group were added/ deleted.

### A.2 pgx\_confidential\_level

A list of confidentiality levels.

You can refer to the registered confidentiality level attributes, update time, or the time when a confidentiality object was registered to the confidentiality level or removed from the confidentiality level.

Column name	Type	Constraint	Description
clevid	bigint	primary key generated always as identity	Identifier of the confidentiality level.
clevname	varchar(63)	not null	Name of the confidentiality level.
clevmatid	bigint	not null references pgx_confidential_matr ix(cmatid)	Identifier of the confidentiality matrix to which the confidentiality level belongs.
clevcomment	text		Comment.
clevupdatetime	timestamp with time zone	not null	Update time of the confidentiality level itself.

Column name	Type	Constraint	Description
clevoperationtime	timestamp with time zone		The time when the confidentiality object was added/deleted.
clevencalgorithm	text	not null	Encryption method. "none" for no encryption. AES128 and AES256 can be set.

## A.3 pgx\_confidential\_group

A list of confidentiality groups.

You can refer to the registered confidentiality group attributes, update time, or the time when a role was registered to the confidentiality group or removed from the confidentiality group.

Column name	Type	Constraint	Description
cgroid	bigint	primary key generated always as identity	Identifier of the confidentiality group.
cgroname	varchar(63)	not null	Name of the confidentiality group.
cgromatid	bigint	not null references pgx_confidential_matrix(c matid)	Identifier of the confidentiality matrix to which the confidentiality group belongs.
cgrocomment	text		Comment.
cgroupdatetime	timestamp with time zone	not null	Update time of the confidentiality group itself.
cgrooperationtime	timestamp with time zone		The time when the role was added/deleted.
cgrorolename	name	not null	Name of the confidentiality group role.
cgrosuperuser	bool	not null	true if the confidentiality group role has SUPERUSER privileges.
cgrocreatedb	bool	not null	true if the confidentiality group role has CREATEDB privileges.
cgrocreatorole	bool	not null	true if the confidentiality group role has CREATEROLE privileges.
cgroreplication	bool	not null	true if the confidentiality group role has REPLICATION privileges.
cgrobypassrls	bool	not null	true if the confidentiality group role has BYPASSRLS privileges.

## A.4 pgx\_confidential\_privilege

A list of confidentiality privileges.

You can refer to confidentiality privilege set for each confidentiality object, update time, and so on.

Column name	Type	Constraint	Description
cpriid	bigint	primary key generated always as identity	Identifier of the privilege.

Column name	Type	Constraint	Description
cprimatid	bigint	not null references pgx_confidential_matrix(cmatid)	Identifier of the confidentiality matrix to which the privilege belongs.
cprilevid	bigint	not null references pgx_confidential_level(clevi d)	Identifier of the confidentiality level for which privilege is set.
cprigroid	bigint	not null references pgx_confidential_group(cg roid)	Identifier of the confidentiality group for which privilege is set.
cpritype	text	not null	Type of the confidentiality object which privilege is set.
cpriupdatetime	timestamp with time zone	not null	Update time when privilege was set/ changed.
cpriacl	text[]	not null	Access privileges that have been set. (*1)

\*1: The character string indicating authority appears in the following order in the text type array of cpriacl.

ALL, SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, TRUNCATE, REFERENCES, TRIGGER, CREATE, CONNECT, TEMPORARY, EXECUTE, USAGE

If the appropriate privilege is not set, the string simply does not appear. For example, {'INSERT','TRUNCATE'} if you only have INSERT and TRUNCATE privileges.

## A.5 pgx\_confidential\_object

A list of confidentiality objects.

You can refer to object attributes or update time, and so on.

Column name	Type	Constraint	Description
cobjid	bigint	primary key generated always as identity	Identifier of the confidentiality object.
cobjmatid	bigint	not null references pgx_confidential_matrix(cma tid)	Identifier of the confidentiality matrix to which the confidentiality object belongs.
cobjlevid	bigint	not null references pgx_confidential_level(clevi d)	Identifier of the confidentiality level to which the confidentiality object belongs.
cobjtype	text	not null	The type of confidentiality object.
cobjschema	name	not null	Schema name of the confidentiality object.
cobjtable	name	not null	Table name of the confidentiality object.
cobjname	text	not null	Name of the confidentiality object.



Column name	Type	Constraint	Description
cobjupdate	timestamp with time zone	not null	Registration time of the confidentiality object.
cobjpolicy	jsonb		Conditions that determine the range of rowsets when the type is rowset.  It is expressed by the setting contents in POLICY.

## A.6 pgx\_confidential\_role

A list of roles registered in the confidentiality group.

You can refer to role attributes or update time, and so on.

Column name	Type	Constraint	Description
croldid	bigint	primary key generated always as identity	Identifier of the role.
croldmatid	bigint	not null references pgx_confidential_matrix(cmatid)	Identifier of the confidentiality matrix to which the role belongs.
croldgroid	bigint	not null references pgx_confidential_group(cgroid)	Identifier of the confidentiality group to which the role belongs.
croldname	name	not null	Name of the role.
croldupdate	timestamp with time zone	not null	Registration time of the role.

## A.7 pgx\_confidential\_policy

This is a list of policies created to set privileges for confidentiality objects of rowset type. You can refer to the name of the policy you created and the privileges it has set.

Rows in this table are inserted when you add a rowset type confidentiality object.

Column name	Type	Constraint	Description
cpolid	bigint	primary key generated always as identity	Identifier of the policy.
cpolmatid	bigint	not null references pgx_confidential_matrix(cmatid)	Identifier of the confidentiality matrix to which the policy belongs.
cpollev	bigint	not null references pgx_confidential_level(clev)	Identifier of the confidentiality level to which the policy belongs.
cpolgroid	bigint	not null references	Identifier of the confidentiality group to which the policy belongs.

Column name	Type	Constraint	Description
		pgx_confidential_group(cgroid)	
cpolobjid	bigint	not null references pgx_confidential_object(cobjid)	Identifier of the rowset object using this policy.
cpolprivilege	text	not null	Privilege this policy has (SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, ALL).
cpolname	name	not null	Name of the policy.
cpolexpression	jsonb	not null	Expression of the policy.

## Appendix B System Management Functions Used by Confidentiality Management Feature

This section describes the system management functions used by the confidentiality management feature. All functions abort the transaction on failure.



### Note

- Be careful when performing operations that involve deleting confidentiality groups.

If you remove a confidentiality group along with a confidentiality group role, you simply no longer have the role that can access the confidentiality object. However, when you leave the confidentiality group role, the function revokes privileges from the confidentiality group role. The privilege to revoke is the privilege defined in confidentiality privileges.

- The `pgx_get_privileges_on_matrix` function may output a very large table if the number of confidentiality objects or roles is large. If the size of this table exceeds the value of PostgreSQL's `work_mem` parameter, I/O will occur according to PostgreSQL's specifications and will be slow. To prevent this, it is recommended that `work_mem` be set as high as possible in the session in which this function is executed.

### B.1 Confidentiality Matrix Manipulation Functions

Function name	Return value	Description
<code>pgx_create_confidential_matrix(confidential_matrix_name varchar, comment text)</code>	void	<p>Create the confidentiality matrix with the specified name.</p> <p>The created confidentiality matrix is registered in the <code>pgx_confidential_matrix</code> table along with the comment.</p> <p>Only roles with the required entitlements for the confidentiality management role can execute this function. The role that executes this function is the confidentiality management role for the confidentiality matrix. Functions such as executing by specifying a confidentiality matrix name require that the executed role is a confidentiality management role for the specified confidentiality matrix. For details, please refer to "<a href="#">7.2.2 Determining Confidentiality Management Roles</a>".</p> <p>The length of <code>confidential_matrix_name</code> must be less than 64 characters. Note that the units are not bytes.</p> <p>There are no restrictions on the characters that can be used in the <code>confidential_matrix_name</code>.</p> <p>When you specify the name of the confidentiality matrix to other functions, you must specify the same string that you specified to this function.</p> <p>Note that unlike most CREATE statements, the name of the confidentiality matrix is case sensitive.</p>
<code>pgx_copy_confidential_matrix(confidential_matrix_name varchar, source_confidential_matrix_name varchar)</code>	void	<p>Copy the source confidentiality matrix specified by <code>source_confidential_matrix_name</code> to the confidentiality matrix named <code>confidential_matrix_name</code>. Confidentiality matrix, confidentiality levels, confidentiality groups, and confidentiality privileges details are replicated. However, the information of confidentiality objects registered in the confidentiality level and roles registered in the confidentiality group are not duplicated.</p>

Function name	Return value	Description
		<p>Any confidentiality management role in any confidentiality matrix can execute this function.</p> <p>The owner of the cloned confidentiality matrix is the role that executed this function.</p> <p>Restrictions on <i>confidential_matrix_name</i> as strings are the same as for the <i>pgx_create_confidential_matrix</i> function.</p> <p>Comments are also duplicated.</p>
<i>pgx_alter_confidential_matrix</i> ( <i>confidential_matrix_name</i> varchar, <i>alter_object</i> json)	void	<p>Change the attributes of the confidentiality matrix named by <i>confidential_matrix_name</i>.</p> <p>Only confidentiality management role for the specified confidentiality matrix can execute this function.</p> <p>For <i>alter_object</i>, specify the attribute you want to change and the value after change in key-value format as follows. Attributes not specified remain unchanged.</p> <pre>{   "name": "matrix_foo",   "comment": "This matrix is defined for foo." }</pre> <p><i>name</i>: Specify the name of the modified confidentiality matrix. Cannot be <i>null</i>. The function will fail if you specify the name of a confidentiality matrix that already exists.</p> <p><i>comment</i>: Specify a comment after the change. Can be <i>null</i>.</p>
<i>pgx_drop_confidential_matrix</i> ( <i>confidential_matrix_name</i> varchar, <i>cascade</i> bool, <i>drop_role</i> bool)	void	<p>Drop the confidentiality matrix with the specified name.</p> <p>Only confidentiality management role for the specified confidentiality matrix can execute this function.</p> <p>Specify <i>true</i> for <i>cascade</i> to recursively check and remove objects that depend on this confidentiality matrix. For example, delete the confidentiality groups and confidentiality levels registered in this confidentiality matrix. Then remove the confidentiality privileges associated with that confidentiality level. To drop a confidentiality level, execute internally <i>pgx_drop_confidential_level</i> function with a <i>cascade</i> value. When dropping a confidentiality group, execute internally <i>pgx_drop_confidential_group</i> function with <i>cascade</i> and <i>drop_role</i> values. See also the descriptions of these functions. In particular, how the privilege of confidentiality objects are changed is important.</p> <p>Specify <i>false</i> for <i>cascade</i> simply removes the confidentiality matrix. The function will fail if there are objects that depend on this confidentiality matrix.</p> <p>If <i>true</i> is specified for <i>drop_role</i>, the confidentiality group role registered in this confidentiality matrix will be deleted. Naturally, it only makes sense when <i>cascade</i> is <i>true</i>.</p>

## B.2 Confidentiality Level Manipulation Functions

Function name	Return value	Description
pgx_create_confidential_level(confidential_matrix_name varchar, confidential_level_name varchar, options json, comment text)	void	<p>Creates a confidentiality level, registers it with the specified confidentiality matrix, and adds it to the <i>pgx_confidential_level</i> table with the specified comment and attributes specified in <i>options</i>.</p> <p>Only confidentiality management role for the specified confidentiality matrix can execute this function.</p> <p>The length of <i>confidential_level_name</i> must be less than 64 characters.</p> <p>Note that the units are not bytes.</p> <p>There are no restrictions on the characters that can be used in the <i>confidential_level_name</i>.</p> <p>When specifying a confidentiality level name for any other function, you must specify the same string as specified for this function</p> <p>Note that unlike most CREATE statements, confidentiality level names are case-sensitive.</p> <p>Specify a comment for <i>comment</i>.</p> <p>For <i>options</i>, specify the attribute of the confidentiality level as follows. If you specify NULL, the default value for each attribute will be set.</p> <pre>' {   "encryption_algorithm": "AES256" } '</pre> <p><i>encryption_algorithm</i>: Specify the encryption algorithm. The algorithms and default values that can be specified are the same as the <i>tablespace_encryption_algorithm</i> parameter of Transparent Data Encryption of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres. Must not be <i>null</i>.</p>
pgx_alter_confidential_level(confidential_matrix_name varchar, confidential_level_name varchar, alter_object json)	void	<p>Change the confidentiality level attribute.</p> <p>Only confidentiality management role for the specified confidentiality matrix can execute this function.</p> <p>For <i>alter_object</i>, specify the attribute you want to change and the value after change in key-value format as follows.</p> <pre>' {   "name": "level_new",   "comment": "This level is the highest confidentiality level.",   "encryption_algorithm": "AES256" } '</pre> <p><i>name</i>: Specify the name of the modified confidentiality level. Cannot be null.</p> <p><i>comment</i>: Specify a comment after the change. Can be null.</p> <p>Other attributes are the same as options of <i>pgx_create_confidential_level</i> function. Attributes not specified are not changed.</p> <p>Be careful when increasing the degree of confidentiality. For example, if you increase the encryption strength and</p>

Function name	Return value	Description
		there are confidentiality objects with a lower strength than the new strength, this function will fail.
<code>pgx_drop_confidential_level(confidential_matrix_name varchar, confidential_level_name varchar, cascade bool)</code>	void	<p>Remove a confidentiality level from the confidentiality matrix and delete a confidentiality level.</p> <p>Only confidentiality management role for the specified confidentiality matrix can execute this function.</p> <p>If <i>true</i> is specified for <i>cascade</i>, the confidentiality level can be deleted even if confidentiality objects are registered in this confidentiality level.</p> <p>If <i>false</i> is specified for <i>cascade</i>, it is not possible to delete a confidentiality level that has confidentiality objects registered.</p>

## B.3 Confidentiality Group Manipulation Functions

Function name	Return value	Description
<code>pgx_create_confidential_group(confidential_matrix_name varchar, confidential_group_name varchar, options json, comment text)</code>	void	<p>Create the confidentiality group, registers it with the specified confidentiality matrix, and adds it to the <i>pgx_confidential_group</i> table with the specified comment and attributes specified in <i>options</i>.</p> <p>Only confidentiality management role for the specified confidentiality matrix can execute this function. However, setting some attributes requires superuser privileges, as described below. Therefore, by necessity, the confidentiality management role must be superuser if those attributes are to be set.</p> <p>This function internally uses the CREATE ROLE statement to create a confidentiality group role.</p> <p>The length of <i>confidential_group_name</i> must be less than 64 characters. Note that the units are not bytes.</p> <p>There are no restrictions on the characters that can be used in the <i>confidential_group_name</i>.</p> <p>When you specify the name of the confidentiality group to other functions, you must specify the same string that you specified to this function.</p> <p>Note that unlike most CREATE statements, confidentiality group names are case-sensitive.</p> <p>For <i>options</i>, specify the attributes of the confidentiality group as follows. If you specify NULL, the default value for each attribute will be set.</p> <pre>' {   "SUPERUSER": false,   "CREATEDB": true,   "CREATEROLE": false,   "REPLICATION": false,   "BYPASSRLS": false }</pre>

Function name	Return value	Description
		<p>The only attributes that can be specified are the SUPERUSER, CREATEDB, CREATEROLE, REPLICATION, and BYPASSRLS attributes that relate to access privileges to data.</p> <p>These attributes are some of the role attributes that can be specified in the CREATE ROLE statement. The attribute semantics and default values are the same as in the CREATE ROLE statement specification.</p> <p>As noted in the CREATE ROLE statement description, this function fails if a non-superuser specifies <i>true</i> for the SUPERUSER, REPLICATION, and BYPASSRLS attributes.</p>
pgx_alter_confidential_group(confidential_matrix_name varchar, confidential_group_name varchar, alter_object json);	void	<p>Change the attributes of a confidentiality group.</p> <p>Only confidentiality management role for the specified confidentiality matrix can execute this function. As described in <i>pgx_create_confidential_group</i> function, you must be superuser to set some attributes.</p> <p>This function internally uses the ALTER ROLE statement to change the attributes of the confidentiality group role.</p> <p>For <i>alter_object</i>, specify the attribute you want to change and the value after change in key-value format as follows.</p> <pre>{   "name": "group_new",   "comment": "Members of this group have the highest confidential clearance.",   "CREATEDB": false }</pre> <p><i>name</i>: Specify the name of the confidentiality group after modification. Cannot be null.</p> <p><i>comment</i>: Specify a comment after the change. Can be null.</p> <p>Other attributes are the same as options of <i>pgx_create_confidential_group</i> function. Attributes not specified are not changed.</p> <p>For example, if you change the attribute to a weaker one, such as changing CREATEDB to <i>false</i>, the attributes of roles registered in the confidentiality group will be similarly weakened.</p>
pgx_drop_confidential_group(confidential_matrix_name varchar, confidential_group_name varchar, cascade bool, drop_role bool)	void	<p>Drop the confidentiality group from the confidentiality matrix and delete a confidentiality group.</p> <p>Only confidentiality management role for the specified confidentiality matrix can execute this function.</p> <p>If <i>true</i> is specified for cascade, the confidentiality group can be deleted even if roles are registered in this confidentiality group.</p> <p>If <i>false</i> is specified for <i>cascade</i>, confidentiality groups that have roles registered cannot be deleted.</p> <p>Specify true for <i>drop_role</i> to drop the confidentiality group role. Roles registered in confidentiality groups remain. If</p>

Function name	Return value	Description
		<p>false is specified for <i>drop_role</i>, the confidentiality group role will not be deleted.</p> <p>When you leave the confidentiality group role, the function revokes privileges from the confidentiality group role. The privilege to revoke is the privilege defined in confidentiality privileges.</p>

## B.4 Confidentiality Privilege Manipulation Functions

Function name	Return value	Description
<p><code>pgx_grant_confidential_privilege(confidential_matrix_name varchar, confidential_level_name varchar, confidential_group_name varchar, privilege json)</code></p>	void	<p>Grant confidentiality privileges.</p> <p>Only confidentiality management role for the specified confidentiality matrix can execute this function.</p> <p>Grants access to the confidentiality level specified by <i>confidential_level_name</i> to the confidentiality group specified by <i>confidential_group_name</i>.</p> <p>When you run this function repeatedly, it simply adds more privileges to grant. Granting the same privilege more than once does not result in an error.</p> <p>The privilege to be granted is specified in <i>privilege</i>. <i>privilege</i> specifies the type of the confidentiality object as the key and an array of privileges as the value, like this:</p> <pre>{   "table": [ "SELECT", "INSERT", "UPDATE", "DELETE" ],   "schema": [ "CREATE", "USAGE" ],   "rowset": [ "ALL" ] }</pre> <p>The privileges that can be specified depend on the type of confidentiality object.</p> <p>Privilege for rowset type confidentiality object is privilege that can be specified in the FOR clause of the CREATE POLICY statement.</p> <p>Except for the rowset type, it is a privilege that can be granted with the GRANT statement according to the confidentiality object type.</p> <p>If ALL is specified, it is assumed that all privileges that can be specified for that type are listed.</p> <p>That is, ALL does not appear in the <i>cpriac</i> column of the <i>pgx_confidential_privilege</i> table.</p> <p>The same specification as the WITH GRANT OPTION clause of the GRANT statement cannot be specified. This is because only confidentiality management roles should use this feature to change privilege to confidentiality objects.</p> <p>Be carefull when PUBLIC is granted to target confidentiality object. This is because granting privileges to PUBLIC is the same as granting privileges to all roles</p>



Function name	Return value	Description
		registered in the confidentiality matrix. This function will fail if a privilege granted indirectly to each role using PUBLIC is defined in the confidentiality privileges that should not be granted to that role. Similarly, this function also checks privileges granted indirectly through group roles that are not registered in the confidentiality matrix. In doing so, it recursively checks the chain of inheritance.
pgx_revoke_confidential_privilege( confidential_matrix_name varchar, confidential_level_name varchar, confidential_group_name varchar, privilege json)	void	<p>Revoke confidentiality privileges.</p> <p>Only confidentiality management role for the specified confidentiality matrix can execute this function.</p> <p>Revokes privilege to the confidentiality level specified by <i>confidential_level_name</i> from the confidentiality group specified by <i>confidential_group_name</i>.</p> <p>Revoking ungranted privileges does not fail.</p> <p>Privilege to be revoked is specified in <i>privilege</i>. The specification method is the same as <i>pgx_grant_confidential_privilege</i> function.</p> <p>Be carefull when PUBLIC is granted to target confidentiality object. This is because granting privileges to PUBLIC is the same as granting privileges to all roles registered in the confidentiality matrix. This function will fail if a privilege granted indirectly to each role using PUBLIC is defined in the confidentiality privileges that should not be granted to that role. Similarly, this function also checks privileges granted indirectly through group roles that are not registered in the confidentiality matrix. This time, it checks the chain of inheritance up to its ancestors.</p>

## B.5 Confidentiality Object Manipulation Functions

Function name	Return value	Description
pgx_add_object_to_confidential_level( confidential_matrix_name varchar, confidential_level_name varchar, object_name json)	void	<p>Only confidentiality management role for the specified confidentiality matrix can execute this function.</p> <p>Adds the confidentiality object specified by <i>object_name</i> to the confidentiality level specified by <i>confidential_level_name</i>.</p> <p>This function internally uses the GRANT statement to grant privileges to the confidentiality group role according to the confidentiality privileges associated with this confidentiality level.</p> <p>However, if the confidentiality object is of type rowset, it internally uses the CREATE POLICY statement to grant privileges to the confidentiality group role according to the confidentiality privileges associated with this confidentiality level. Also, to enable POLICY, execute the ALTER TABLE statement on the target table with the ENABLE ROW LEVEL SECURITY clause.</p>

Function name	Return value	Description
		<p>Currently it is not possible to register a foreign table as a table type confidentiality object.</p> <p>Be carefull when PUBLIC is granted to target confidentiality object. This is because granting privileges to PUBLIC is the same as granting privileges to all roles registered in the confidentiality matrix. This function will fail if a privilege granted indirectly to each role using PUBLIC is defined in the confidentiality privileges that should not be granted to that role. Similarly, this function also checks privileges granted indirectly through group roles that are not registered in the confidentiality matrix. In doing so, it recursively checks the chain of inheritance.</p> <p>For rowset type confidentiality objects, this function will fail if the target table has a POLICY defined that was not created using this feature, regardless of what privileges are granted.</p> <p>These checks only apply to the confidentiality group role or to roles that are registered with the confidentiality group. If a POLICY exists that targets a role that is not, the function will not fail.</p> <p>Specify object_name as follows: Only the rowset is slightly different. The example below attempts to register multiple types of objects in one go.</p> <pre> ' [{   "type": "schema",   "object": [     { "schema": "schema1" },     { "schema": "schema2" }   ] }, {   "type": "table",   "object": [     {       "schema": "schema1",       "table": ["table1", "table2"]     },     {       "schema": "schema2",       "table": ["table8", "table9"]     }   ] }, {   "type": "column",   "object": [     {       "schema": "schema1",       "table": "table1",       "column": ["column1", "column2"]     },     {       "schema": "schema1",       "table": "table2", </pre>

Function name	Return value	Description
		<pre> "column":["column8", "column9"]     }   ] }]]'</pre> <p>For the rowset type, you define rowset and give it a name, as in the example below. This name is used by the <i>pgx_remove_object_from_confidential_level</i> function to identify the rowset type confidentiality object when removing it.</p> <p>This example shows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- In <code>schema1.table1</code>, represents a set of rows (rowset) for which the conditional expression (<code>user = current_user</code> OR <code>manager = current_user</code>) is true.</li> <li>- If <code>manager=current_user</code> is true, the <code>coll</code> value of the record to be INSERTed or the record after UPDATE must be greater than zero.</li> </ul> <pre> '[{   "type":"rowset",   "object":[     {       "schema":"schema1",       "table":"table1",       "rowset_name":"rowset1",       "rowset_expression": [         {           "as":"permissive",           "using":"user = current_user"         },         {           "as":"permissive",           "using":"manager = current_user",           "with check":"coll &gt; 0"         }       ]     }   ] }]'</pre> <p>Each key (<i>as</i>, <i>using</i>, <i>with check</i>) has the same meaning as the clause of the same name in the CREATE POLICY statement.</p> <p>As you can see from this, one element of the array specified in <i>rowset_expression</i> corresponds to one POLICY object created by the CREATE POLICY statement.</p> <p>In fact, this function internally executes as many CREATE POLICY statements as there are elements in the array. The name of POLICY at this time is 'pgx_cms_policy_\${cpolid}'.</p> <p>\${cpolid} is automatically numbered by this extension.</p> <p>&lt;Note&gt;</p>

Function name	Return value	Description
		Do not create policies with names that begin with <i>pgx_cms_policy_</i> . Because this function may fail.
<code>pgx_remove_object_from_confidential_level(confidential_matrix_name varchar, confidential_level_name varchar, object_name json)</code>	void	<p>Removes confidentiality objects from the confidentiality level.</p> <p>Only confidentiality management role for the specified confidentiality matrix can execute this function.</p> <p>Removes the confidentiality object specified by <i>object_name</i> from the confidentiality level specified by <i>confidential_level_name</i>.</p> <p>The format of <i>object_name</i> is the same as <i>object_name</i> in the <i>pgx_add_object_to_confidential_level</i> function. But the <i>rowset_expression</i> key is optional. If specified, it is simply ignored. Therefore, <i>object_name</i> in <i>pgx_add_object_to_confidential_level</i> can be specified to this function without modifying it.</p> <p>At this time, any privileges granted to the confidentiality group based on confidentiality privileges are revoked.</p> <p>If the confidentiality object is of rowset type, delete the internally created policy.</p> <p>At this time, if there are zero policies associated with the table, the ALTER TABLE statement with the DISABLE ROW SECURITY clause is internally executed to disable row level security.</p>

## B.6 Role Manipulation Functions

Function name	Return value	Description
<code>pgx_add_role_to_confidential_group(confidential_matrix_name varchar, confidential_group_name varchar, role_name json)</code>	void	<p>Add a role to a confidentiality group.</p> <p>Only confidentiality management role for the specified confidentiality matrix can execute this function.</p> <p>Adds the role specified by <i>role_name</i> to the confidentiality group specified by <i>confidential_group_name</i>.</p> <p>If the role to be added has been granted broader privileges than the confidentiality privileges, revoke the privileges according to the confidentiality privileges.</p> <p>Be careful when PUBLIC is granted to target confidentiality object. This is because granting privileges to PUBLIC is the same as granting privileges to all roles registered in the confidentiality matrix. This function will fail if a privilege granted indirectly to each role using PUBLIC is defined in the confidentiality privileges that should not be granted to that role. Similarly, this function also checks privileges granted indirectly through group roles that are not registered in the confidentiality matrix. In doing so, it recursively checks the chain of inheritance.</p>

Function name	Return value	Description
		<p>Also, if the added role has stronger attributes than the confidentiality group, change the attributes to match the confidentiality group.</p> <p>This function will fail if a strong attribute is indirectly assigned using a group role that is not registered in the confidentiality matrix.</p> <p><i>role_name</i> is specified as follows.</p> <p>'{"role1","role"}'</p>
pgx_remove_role_from_confidential_group(confidential_matrix_name varchar, confidential_group_name varchar, role_name json)	void	<p>Remove a role from a confidentiality group.</p> <p>Only confidentiality management role for the specified confidentiality matrix can execute this function.</p> <p>Removes the role specified by <i>role_name</i> from the confidentiality group specified by <i>confidential_group_name</i>.</p> <p>This function internally executes a REVOKE statement to remove the role from the confidentiality group role.</p> <p>It does not change the attributes of the role being removed, nor the privileges granted to that role.</p> <p>Simply banish it from the group so that it cannot inherit privileges.</p> <p>The method of specifying <i>role_name</i> is the same as <i>pgx_add_role_to_confidential_group</i> function.</p>

## B.7 Functions that Support Definition Referencing and Comparison with System Catalogs

Functions that Support Definition Referencing and Comparison with System Catalogs

Function name	Return value	Description
pgx_get_attribute_of_objects(confidential_matrix_name varchar)	setof record	<p>Returns a table of attributes defined in the confidentiality matrix and attributes actually set in the database for all confidentiality objects registered in the specified confidentiality matrix. Refer to "<a href="#">Tables returned by pgx_get_attribute_of_objects</a>" for the table format.</p> <p>Only confidentiality management role for the specified confidentiality matrix can execute this function.</p>
pgx_get_attribute_of_roles(confidential_matrix_name varchar)	setof record	<p>Returns a table of attributes defined in the confidentiality matrix and attributes actually set in the system catalog for all roles registered in the specified confidentiality matrix. Refer to "<a href="#">Table returned by pgx_get_attribute_of_roles</a>" for the format of the table.</p> <p>Only confidentiality management role for the specified confidentiality matrix can execute this function.</p>
pgx_get_privileges_on_level_and_group(confidential_matrix_name varchar, confidential_level_name)	setof record	<p>Returns a table that allows you to compare the following for combinations of confidentiality objects registered in the specified confidentiality level and roles registered in the</p>

Function name	Return value	Description
varchar, confidential_group_name varchar)		<p>specified confidentiality group. Refer to "<a href="#">Table returned by pgx_get_privileges_on_level_and_group</a>" for the format of the table.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Privileges specified by the confidentiality privilege settings that should be granted to the specified role</li> <li>- Privileges granted in the actual system catalog</li> </ul> <p>Only confidentiality management role for the specified confidentiality matrix can execute this function.</p>
pgx_get_privileges_on_object(confidential_matrix_name varchar, object_name json)	setof record	<p>Returns a table that allows you to compare the following for the specified confidentiality objects. Refer to "<a href="#">Table returned by pgx_get_privileges_on_object</a>" for the format of the table.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Privileges dictated by confidentiality privilege settings that should be granted to all roles</li> <li>- Privileges granted in the actual system catalog</li> </ul> <p>Only confidentiality management role for the specified confidentiality matrix can execute this function.</p>
pgx_get_privileges_on_role(confidential_matrix_name varchar, role_name json)	setof record	<p>Returns a table that allows you to compare the following for the all confidentiality objects. Refer to "<a href="#">Table returned by pgx_get_privileges_on_role</a>" for the format of the table.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Privileges specified by the confidentiality privilege settings that should be granted to the specified role</li> <li>- Privileges granted in the actual system catalog</li> </ul> <p>Only confidentiality management role for the specified confidentiality matrix can execute this function.</p>
pgx_get_privileges_on_matrix(confidential_matrix_name varchar)	setof record	<p>Returns a table that allows you to compare the following for the all confidentiality objects in the specified confidentiality matrix. Refer to "<a href="#">Table returned by pgx_get_privileges_on_matrix</a>" for the format of the table.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Privileges defined by confidentiality privilege settings that should be granted to all roles registered in the confidentiality matrix.</li> <li>- Privileges granted in the actual system catalog</li> </ul> <p>Only confidentiality management role for the specified confidentiality matrix can execute this function.</p>

#### Tables returned by pgx\_get\_attribute\_of\_objects

Column name	Type	Description
matrix_name	varchar(63)	Confidentiality matrix name
confidential_level_name	varchar(63)	Confidentiality level name
object_type	text	Confidentiality object type
object_schema	name	Confidentiality object schema name

Column name	Type	Description
object_table	name	Confidentiality object table name
object_name	text	Confidentiality object name
rowset_expression	json	Conditional expression when the confidentiality object is a row
encrypt_on_matrix	text	Encryption method and strength specified in the confidentiality matrix
encrypt_on_object	text	Actual encryption method and strength of confidentiality objects

#### Tables returned by pgx\_get\_attribute\_of\_roles

Column name	Type	Description
matrix_name	varchar(63)	Confidentiality matrix name
confidential_group_name	varchar(63)	Confidentiality group name
role_name	name	Role name
confidential_group_role	bool	Indicates whether it is a confidentiality group role or not. <i>true</i> if it is a confidentiality group role
superuser_on_matrix	bool	SUPERUSER attribute specified in the confidentiality matrix
superuser_on_role	bool	Actual SUPERUSER attribute of the role
createdb_on_matrix	bool	CREATEDB attribute specified in the confidentiality matrix
createdb_on_role	bool	Actual CREATEDB attribute of the role
createrole_on_matrix	bool	CREATEROLE attribute specified in the confidentiality matrix
createrole_on_role	bool	Actual CREATEROLE attribute of the role
replication_on_matrix	bool	REPLICATION attribute specified in the confidentiality matrix
replication_on_role	bool	Actual REPLICATION attribute of the role
bypassrls_on_matrix	bool	BYPASSRLS attribute specified in the confidentiality matrix
bypassrls_on_role	bool	Actual BYPASSRLS attribute of the role

#### Tables returned by pgx\_get\_privileges\_on\_level\_and\_group, pgx\_get\_privileges\_on\_object, pgx\_get\_privileges\_on\_role and pgx\_get\_privileges\_on\_matrix

Column name	Type	Description
matrix_name	varchar(63)	Confidentiality matrix name
confidential_level_name	varchar(63)	Confidentiality level name

Column name	Type	Description
confidential_group_name	varchar(63)	Confidentiality group name
object_type	text	Confidentiality object type
object_scheme	name	Confidentiality object schema name
object_table	name	Confidentiality object table name
object_name	text	Confidentiality object name
role_name	name	Role name
privilege_list_on_matrix	text[]	Privileges specified by the confidentiality matrix settings. Output is separated by commas
privilege_list_on_object	text[]	Privileges specified by the confidentiality matrix settings. Output is separated by commas
policy_name	name	NULL if the confidentiality object is not of type rowset  In the case of rowset type, rowset name (*1)
policy_setting_on_matrix	jsonb	NULL if the confidentiality object is not of type rowset  In the case of rowset type, the rowset policy information set in the confidentiality matrix (*1)
policy_setting_on_policy	jsonb	NULL if the confidentiality object is not of type rowset  In case of rowset type, row policy information set in the actual policy (*1)

\*1: When adding a rowset type confidentiality object, multiple privileges can be set at once, which is not represented by a single row in this table. For example, if you set SELECT and DELETE privileges, you will see a row for SELECT privileges and a row for DELETE privilege. This is because rowset type access control uses PostgreSQL's row-level security POLICY. In this specification, POLICY for SELECT privilege is different from POLICY for DELETE privilege.



# **Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 16**

## **Cluster Operation Guide**

Linux

July 2024

# Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 16

## Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)

Linux

J2UL-2954-01ENZ0(00)  
July 2024

# Preface

---

## Purpose of this document

This document describes the tasks required for using the database multiplexing feature of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

## Intended readers

This document is intended for those who set up and use the database multiplexing feature.

Readers of this document are also assumed to have general knowledge of:

- PostgreSQL
- SQL
- Linux

## Structure of this document

This document is structured as follows:

### [Chapter 1 Overview of Database Multiplexing Mode](#)

Provides an overview of database multiplexing mode.

### [Chapter 2 Setting Up Database Multiplexing Mode](#)

Describes how to set up database multiplexing mode.

### [Chapter 3 Operations in Database Multiplexing Mode](#)

Explains periodic database multiplexing mode.

### [Chapter 4 Action Required when an Error Occurs in Database Multiplexing Mode](#)

Explains the action required when an error occurs during a database multiplexing mode.

### [Chapter 5 Managing Mirroring Controller Using WebAdmin](#)

Explains how to set up and manage Mirroring Controller in a streaming replication cluster using WebAdmin.

### [Appendix A Parameters](#)

Explains the configuration files and parameters required for database multiplexing mode.

### [Appendix B Supplementary Information on Building the Primary Server and Standby Server on the Same Server](#)

Explains supplementary information on building the primary server and standby server on the same server.

### [Appendix C User Commands](#)

Explains the user commands.

### [Appendix D Notes on Performing Automatic Degradation Immediately after a Heartbeat Abnormality](#)

Provides notes when performing automatic degradation unconditionally after a heartbeat abnormality is detected during heartbeat monitoring of an operating system or server.

### [Appendix E Supplementary Procedure on Configuring for Operation in Database Multiplexing Mode](#)

Explains supplementary procedure on the configuration required for operation in database multiplexing mode.

### [Appendix F WebAdmin Disallow User Inputs Containing Hazardous Characters](#)

Explains characters not allowed in WebAdmin.

### [Appendix G Collecting Failure Investigation Data](#)

Explains how to collect data for initial investigation.

## **Export restrictions**

Exportation/release of this document may require necessary procedures in accordance with the regulations of your resident country and/or US export control laws.

## **Issue date and version**

Edition 1.0: July 2024
------------------------

## **Copyright**

Copyright 2016-2024 Fujitsu Limited

# Contents

---

Chapter 1 Overview of Database Multiplexing Mode.....	1
1.1 What is Database Multiplexing Mode.....	1
1.1.1 Monitoring Using Database Multiplexing Mode.....	4
1.1.2 Referencing on the Standby Server.....	6
1.1.2.1 If Prioritizing the Main Job on the Primary Server.....	6
1.1.2.2 If Performing the Referencing Job on the Synchronous Standby Server.....	6
1.2 System Configuration for Database Multiplexing Mode.....	6
1.2.1 Mirroring Controller Resources.....	9
1.2.1.1 Database Server Resources.....	9
1.2.1.2 Arbitration Server Resources.....	10
1.2.2 Mirroring Controller Processes.....	10
1.2.2.1 Database Server Processes.....	10
1.2.2.2 Arbitration Server Process.....	10
1.2.3 Redundancy of the Admin and Log Transfer Networks.....	11
1.2.4 Notes on CPU Architecture and Products.....	11
1.3 Deciding on Operation when a Heartbeat Abnormality is Detected.....	11
1.4 Security in Database Multiplexing.....	12
1.4.1 Authentication of the Standby Server.....	14
1.4.2 Encryption of Transaction Logs Transferred to the Standby Server.....	14
Chapter 2 Setting Up Database Multiplexing Mode.....	15
2.1 Installation.....	16
2.2 Preparing for Setup.....	17
2.2.1 Preparing the Database Server.....	17
2.2.1.1 Preparing the Backup Disk.....	17
2.2.2 Preparing the Arbitration Server.....	17
2.2.2.1 Preparing to Output Error Logs to the Event Log (Windows).....	17
2.2.2.2 Security Policy Settings (Windows).....	18
2.3 Setting Up the Arbitration Server.....	18
2.3.1 Configuring the Arbitration Server.....	18
2.3.2 Creating a User Exit for the Arbitration Server.....	23
2.3.3 Starting the Mirroring Controller Arbitration Process.....	24
2.4 Setting Up the Primary Server.....	24
2.4.1 Setting Up Database Multiplexing Mode on the Primary Server.....	24
2.4.2 Creating, Setting, and Registering the Primary Server Instance.....	28
2.4.3 Starting Mirroring Controller on the Primary Server.....	32
2.5 Setting Up the Standby Server.....	33
2.5.1 Setting Up Database Multiplexing Mode on the Standby Server.....	33
2.5.2 Creating, Setting, and Registering the Standby Server Instance.....	34
2.5.3 Starting Mirroring Controller on the Standby Server.....	35
2.6 Creating a User Exit for a Database Server.....	36
2.7 Confirming the Streaming Replication Status.....	37
2.8 Checking the Connection Status.....	38
2.8.1 Checking the Connection Status on a Database Server.....	38
2.8.2 Checking the Connection Status on the Arbitration Server.....	39
2.9 Creating Applications.....	40
2.9.1 Application Connection Server Settings.....	40
2.10 Checking the Behavior.....	40
2.11 Tuning.....	40
2.11.1 Tuning to Stabilize the Database Multiplexing Mode.....	40
2.11.2 Tuning to Stabilize Queries on the Standby Server.....	40
2.11.3 Tuning to Stabilize Queries on the Standby Server (when Performing Frequent Updates on the Primary Server).....	41
2.11.4 Tuning for Optimization of Degradation Using Abnormality Monitoring.....	41
2.11.4.1 Tuning for Abnormality Monitoring of the Operating System or Server.....	41
2.11.4.1.1 Tuning Abnormality Monitoring for Operations that Use an Arbitration Server for Automatic Degradation.....	42

2.11.4.1.2 Tuning Abnormality Monitoring for Operations that Perform Automatic Degradation by Calling a User Exit that Determines Degradation.....	47
2.11.4.1.3 Tuning Abnormality Monitoring for Operations that Notify Messages.....	49
2.11.4.1.4 Tuning Abnormality Monitoring for Operations that Perform Automatic Degenerate Unconditionally due to Heartbeat Abnormality.....	49
2.11.4.2 Tuning for Abnormality Monitoring of Database Processes.....	50
2.11.4.3 Tuning for Abnormality Monitoring of Streaming Replication.....	51
2.11.4.4 Tuning for Disk Abnormality Monitoring.....	52
2.12 Setting Automatic Start and Stop of Mirroring Controller and Multiplexed Instances.....	55
2.13 Setting Automatic Start and Stop of the Mirroring Controller Arbitration Process.....	57
2.14 Backup Operation.....	59
2.14.1 Backing up Database Multiplexing Mode Information.....	59
2.14.2 Database Backup Operation.....	59
<b>Chapter 3 Operations in Database Multiplexing Mode.....</b>	<b>61</b>
3.1 Starting and Stopping the Mirroring Controller Arbitration Process.....	61
3.1.1 Starting the Mirroring Controller Arbitration Process.....	61
3.1.2 Stopping the Mirroring Controller Arbitration Process.....	61
3.2 Starting and Stopping Mirroring Controller.....	62
3.3 Checking the Database Multiplexing Mode Status.....	64
3.3.1 Checking the Status of the Database Server.....	64
3.3.2 Checking the Status of the Arbitration Server.....	65
3.4 Manually Switching the Primary Server.....	66
3.5 Manually Disconnecting the Standby Server.....	66
3.6 Action Required when a Heartbeat Abnormality is Detected.....	67
3.7 Monitoring Mirroring Controller Messages.....	67
3.8 Server Maintenance.....	69
3.8.1 Rolling Updates.....	70
3.8.2 Stopping for Maintenance .....	75
3.8.3 Arbitration Server Maintenance.....	75
3.9 Changes in Operation .....	76
3.9.1 Changes Required when the Standby Server is Stopped.....	76
3.9.2 Changing from Single Server Mode to Database Multiplexing Mode.....	77
3.9.3 Changing from Database Multiplexing Mode to Single Server Mode.....	78
3.9.4 Changing to Database Multiplexing Mode when the Arbitration Server is Used for Automatic Degradation.....	81
3.9.5 Changing Parameters.....	82
3.9.6 Uninstalling in Database Multiplexing Mode.....	82
<b>Chapter 4 Action Required when an Error Occurs in Database Multiplexing Mode.....</b>	<b>83</b>
4.1 Action Required when Server Degradation Occurs.....	83
4.1.1 Operations when the Server has Started Degrading after a Switch has Occurred.....	83
4.1.1.1 Identify Cause of Error and Restore the Standby Server.....	85
4.1.1.1.1 Stop Mirroring Controller.....	85
4.1.1.1.2 Recovery of the Mirroring Controller management directory.....	86
4.1.1.1.3 Identify cause of error and perform recovery.....	86
4.1.1.2 Rebuild the Standby Server.....	88
4.1.1.3 Failback of the Primary Server.....	88
4.1.2 Operations when the Server has Started Degrading after a Disconnection has Occurred.....	89
4.1.2.1 Identify Cause of Error and Restore the Standby Server.....	90
4.1.2.1.1 Stop Mirroring Controller.....	90
4.1.2.1.2 Recovery of the Mirroring Controller management directory.....	91
4.1.2.1.3 Identify cause of error and perform recovery.....	91
4.1.2.2 Rebuild the Standby Server.....	91
4.1.3 Addressing Errors During Degrading Operation.....	91
4.2 Action Required when Automatic Switch Fails.....	92
4.3 Action Required when Automatic Disconnection Fails.....	93
4.4 Action Required when All Database Servers or Instances Stopped.....	93
4.5 Recovering from an Incorrect User Operation.....	97

Chapter 5 Managing Mirroring Controller Using WebAdmin.....	99
5.1 Mirroring Controller Setup.....	100
5.2 Edit Mirroring Controller Setup.....	101
5.3 Mirroring Controller Configuration.....	101
5.4 Stopping Mirroring Controller.....	103
5.5 Starting Mirroring Controller.....	103
5.6 Disabling Failover Mode.....	104
5.7 Enabling Failover Mode.....	104
5.8 Deleting Mirroring Controller Setup.....	104
5.9 Status Update after Failover.....	104
5.10 Action Required when an Error Occurs in the Combined Admin Network and Log Transfer Network.....	105
5.11 Performing Automatic Degradation Using the Arbitration Server.....	105
Appendix A Parameters.....	108
A.1 Parameters Set on the Primary Server.....	108
A.2 Parameters Set on the Standby Server.....	110
A.3 Network Configuration File.....	112
A.4 Server Configuration File.....	115
A.4.1 Server Configuration File for the Database Servers.....	115
A.4.2 Arbitration Configuration File.....	124
Appendix B Supplementary Information on Building the Primary Server and Standby Server on the Same Server.....	129
B.1 Backup Data Storage Destination Directory.....	129
B.2 How to Execute the mc_ctl Command.....	129
Appendix C User Commands.....	131
C.1 Fencing Command.....	131
C.2 Arbitration Command.....	132
C.3 State Transition Commands.....	133
C.3.1 Post-switch Command.....	133
C.3.2 Pre-detach Command.....	134
C.3.3 Post-attach Command.....	134
Appendix D Notes on Performing Automatic Degradation Immediately after a Heartbeat Abnormality.....	136
Appendix E Supplementary Procedure on Configuring for Operation in Database Multiplexing Mode.....	139
E.1 Security Policy Settings.....	139
E.2 Windows Firewall Settings.....	139
Appendix F WebAdmin Disallow User Inputs Containing Hazardous Characters.....	141
Appendix G Collecting Failure Investigation Data.....	142
Index.....	144

# Chapter 1 Overview of Database Multiplexing Mode

This chapter provides an overview of database multiplexing mode.

## Point

In this and subsequent chapters, the word "Mirroring Controller" may be used in the process or management directory name or explanation.

## 1.1 What is Database Multiplexing Mode

Database multiplexing mode is an operation mode (log shipping mode) based on PostgreSQL streaming replication. Other software such as cluster software is not required.

This mode replicates the database on all servers that comprise the cluster system. It achieves this by transferring the updated transaction logs of the database from the server that receives the updates (primary server) to another server (standby server), and then reflecting them on the standby server. The client driver automatically distinguishes between the primary and standby servers, so applications can be connected transparently regardless of the physical server.

It consists of a feature that detects faults in the elements that are essential for the continuity of the database operation (such as the database process, disk, and network), as well as simplified switchover and standby server disconnection features. Furthermore, referencing can be performed on the standby server. The database will be copied in synchronous mode.

## Note

If using WebAdmin or Mirroring Controller, Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres supports cluster systems comprising one primary server and one standby server.

- Although it is possible to connect an asynchronous standby server to the cluster system as an additional server, the standby server is not targeted for monitoring by Mirroring Controller.
- A synchronous standby server cannot be connected to the cluster system as an additional server.

## See

The streaming replication feature is not described in this manual.

Refer to "High Availability, Load Balancing, and Replication" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on the streaming replication feature.



Figure 1.1 Failover from the primary server to the standby server

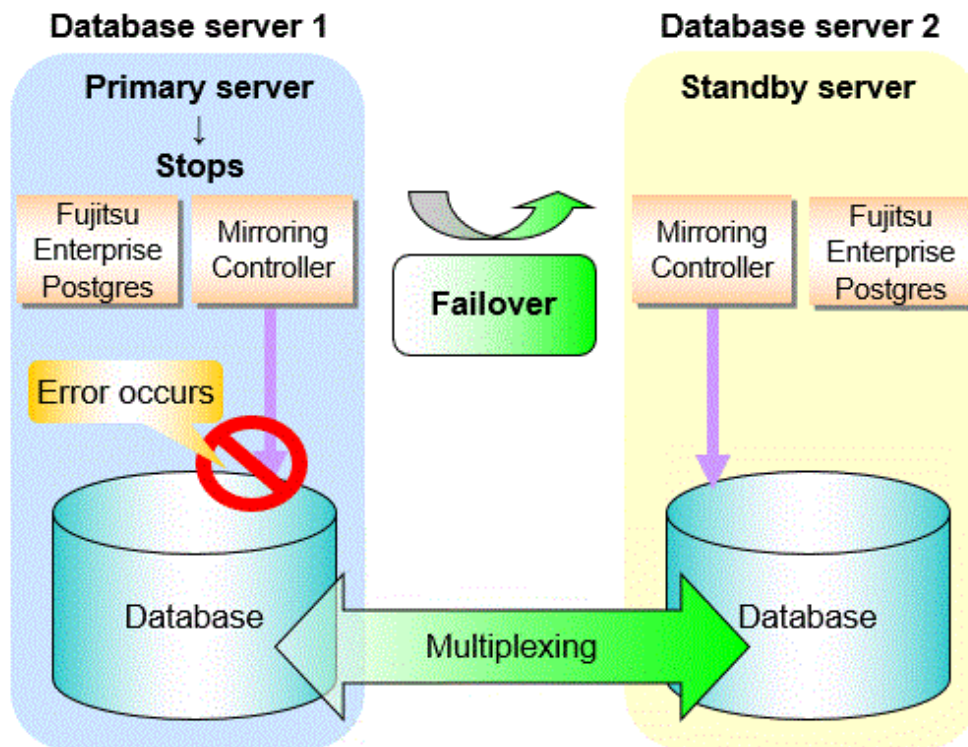
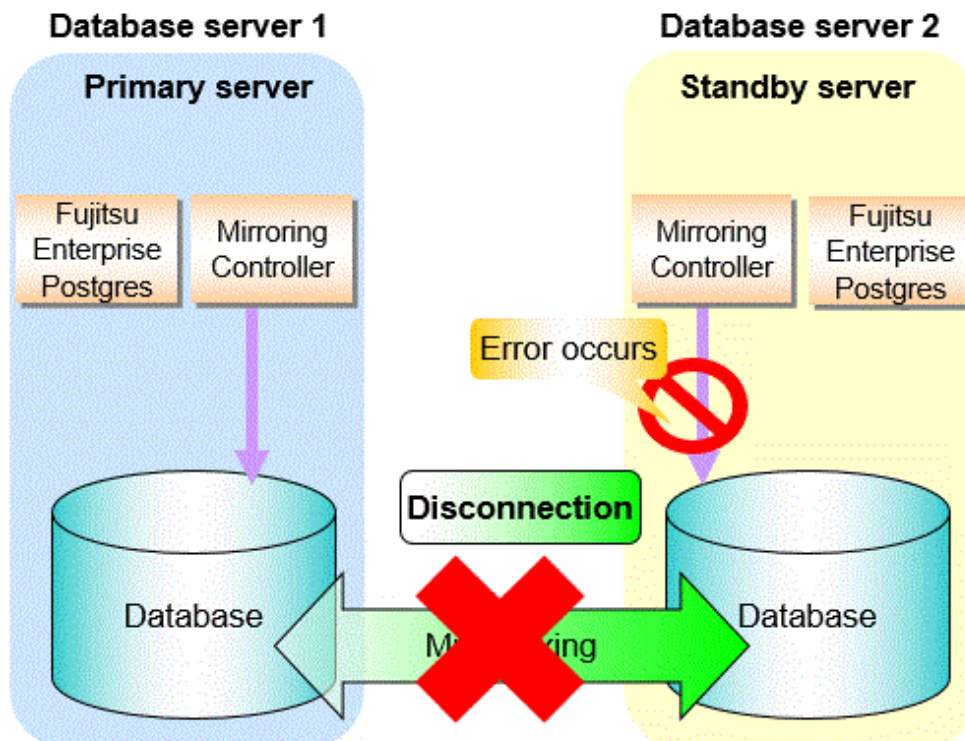


Figure 1.2 Standby server disconnection



### Database degradation using the arbitration server

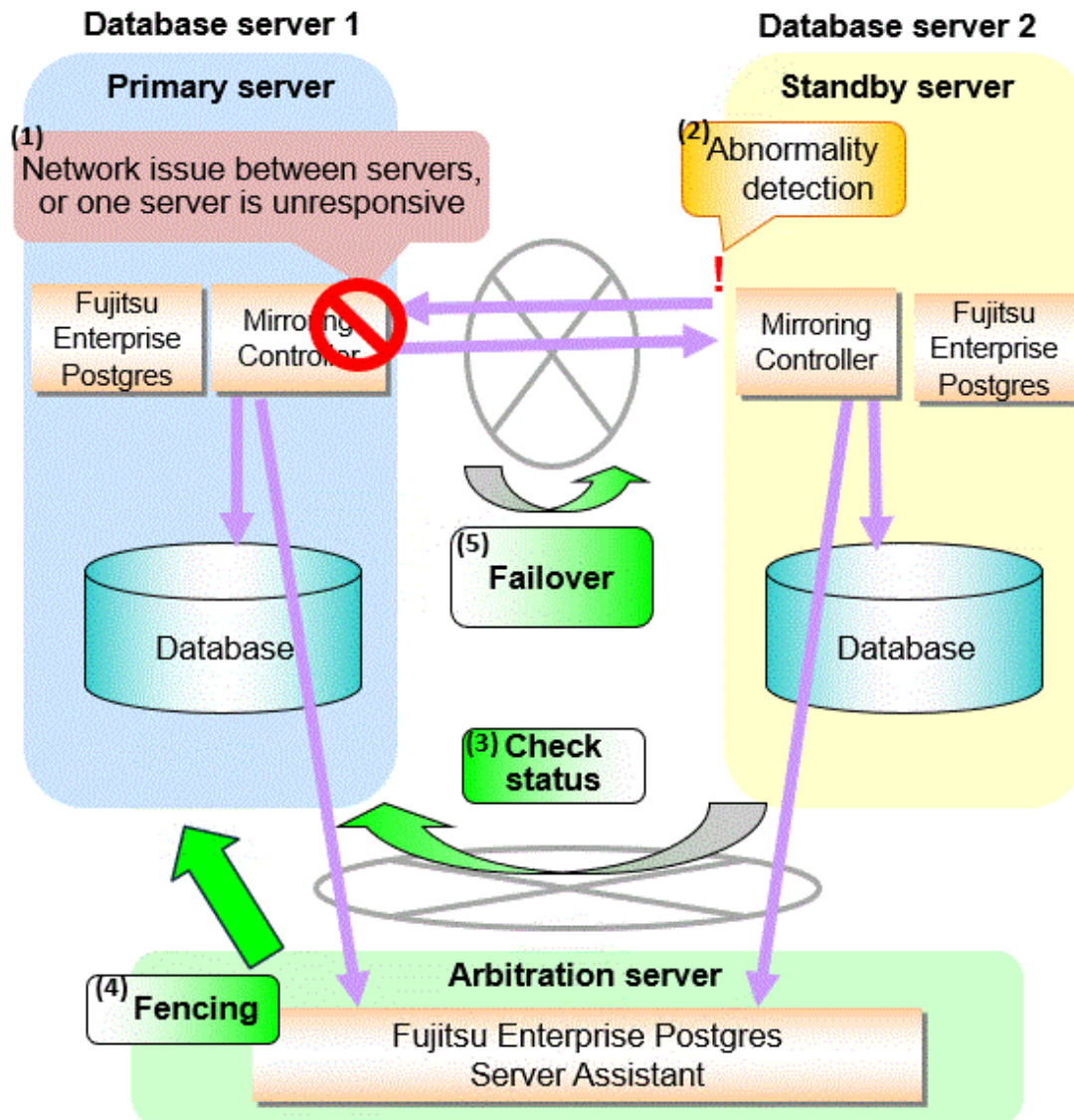
Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres provides the Server Assistant that objectively determines the status of database servers as a third party, and if necessary, isolates affected databases if the database servers are unable to accurately ascertain their mutual statuses in database multiplexing

mode, such as due to a network error between database servers, or server instability. Database degradation can be performed by using the server (arbitration server) on which the Server Assistant is installed.

For database degradation using the arbitration server, if the database servers are unable to check their mutual statuses (due to a network error between database servers or server instability), then the database server queries the arbitration server for the status of the other database server. If it is determined based on the heartbeat result that the status is unstable, the applicable database server will be isolated from the cluster system (fencing). The arbitration server periodically heartbeats the database server so that it can respond immediately to queries from the database server. The fencing process can be customized according to the environment where Mirroring Controller is used.

Additionally, the database servers are always performing their heartbeats for the arbitration server so that it can perform check requests any time.

Figure 1.3 Database degradation using the arbitration server



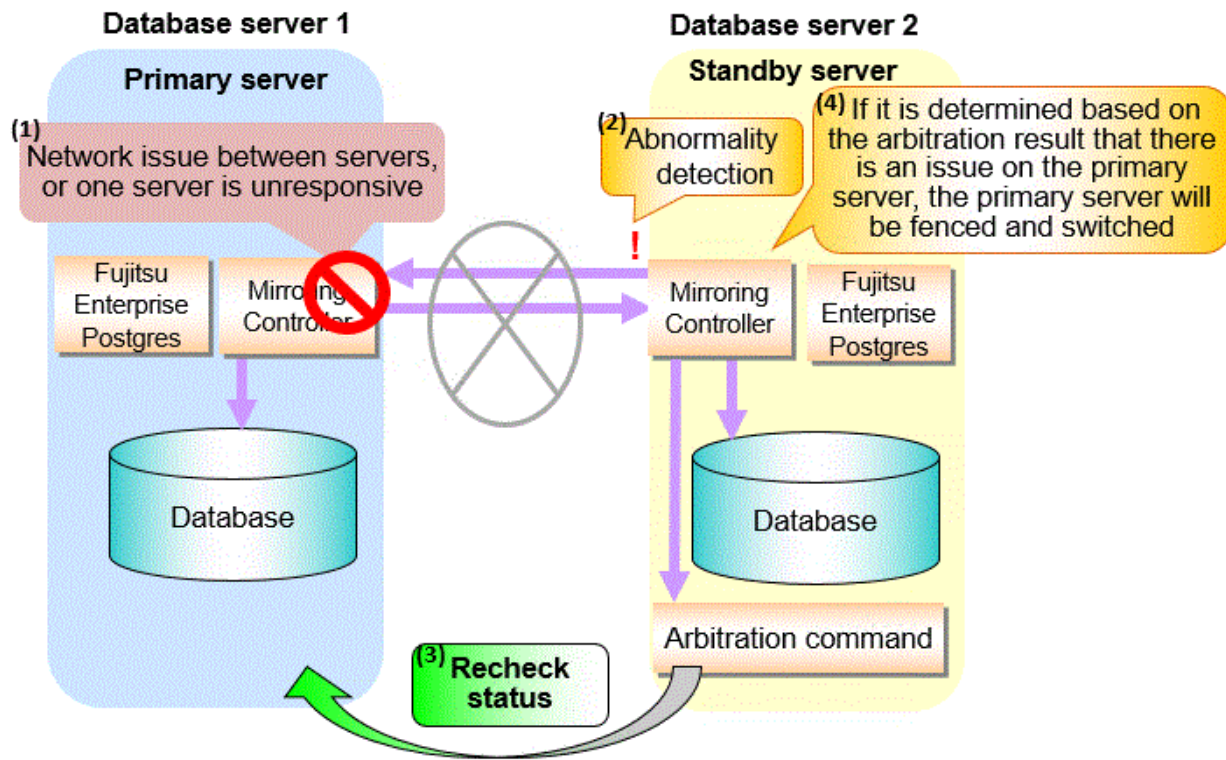
#### Note

Install the arbitration server on a different physical server to that of the database server. Refer to "[1.2 System Configuration for Database Multiplexing Mode](#)" for information on the system configuration when using the arbitration server.

## Database degradation using the arbitration command

The arbitration command is a user command that performs arbitration processing in lieu of the arbitration server. If an arbitration server cannot be deployed, arbitration of the database server can be performed using the arbitration command.

Figure 1.4 Database degradation using the arbitration command



See

Refer to "2.6 Creating a User Exit for a Database Server" or "Appendix C User Commands" for information on user commands.

### 1.1.1 Monitoring Using Database Multiplexing Mode

In database multiplexing mode, perform the monitoring below.

- Operating system or server failures, and no-response state

By generating a heartbeat between Mirroring Controller on each server, operating system or server errors are detected and acknowledged between the relevant servers.

The optimal operating method for environments where database multiplexing mode is performed can be selected from the following:

- Use the arbitration server to perform automatic degradation (switch/disconnect)

This is the default method.

The arbitration server objectively determines the status of database servers, then isolates and degrades from the cluster system the ones with an unstable status.

Refer to "Database degradation using the arbitration server" for details.

- Call the user exit (user command) that will perform the degradation decision, and perform automatic degradation

If the arbitration server cannot be installed, select if arbitration processing can be performed by the user instead.

Mirroring Controller queries the user exit on whether to degrade. The user exit determines the status of the database server, and notifies Mirroring Controller whether to perform degradation.

Refer to "[Database degradation using the arbitration command](#)" for details.

- Notification messages

Use this method if using a two-database server configuration.

Mirroring Controller outputs messages to the system log when an abnormality is detected. This ensures that a split brain will not occur due to a heartbeat abnormality - however, automatic switching will not be performed if the primary server operating system or server fails or becomes unresponsive.

- Perform automatic degradation unconditionally after a heartbeat abnormality

This method is handled as in FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 9.6 or earlier versions.

This method is not recommended, because Mirroring Controller unconditionally will perform automatic degradation after heartbeat abnormalities.

- Database process failures, and no-response state

Mirroring Controller periodically accesses the database processes and checks the status. A process error is detected by monitoring whether an access timeout occurs.

- Disk failure

Mirroring Controller periodically creates files on the data storage destination disk below. A disk error is detected when an I/O error occurs.

- Data storage destination disk
- Transaction log storage destination disk
- Tablespace storage destination disk

Failures that can be detected are those that physically affect the entire system, such as disk header or device power failures.

- Streaming replication issue

Mirroring Controller detects streaming replication issues (log transfer network and WAL send/receive processes) by periodically accessing the PostgreSQL system views.

- Mirroring Controller process failure and no response

In order to continue the monitoring process on Mirroring Controller, Mirroring Controller process failures and no responses are also monitored.

The Mirroring Controller monitoring process detects Mirroring Controller process failures and no responses by periodically querying the Mirroring Controller process. If an issue is detected, Mirroring Controller is automatically restarted by the Mirroring Controller monitoring process.

## Point

- If output of messages is selected as the operation to be performed when a heartbeat abnormality is detected during heartbeat monitoring of the operating system or server, automatic degradation will not be performed.  
However, if an issue in the WAL send process is detected on the primary server, then the standby server will be disconnected, and as a result an automatic disconnection may be performed even if the standby server operating system or server fails or becomes unresponsive.
- You can select in the parameters if the primary server will be switched if a database process is unresponsive or if tablespace storage destination disk failure is detected. Refer to "[Appendix A Parameters](#)" for details.
- If the standby server was disconnected, Mirroring Controller will automatically comment out the `synchronous_standby_names` parameter in the `postgresql.conf` file of the primary server. Accordingly, you can prevent the application processing for the primary server being stopped.





## Note

If the role of primary server was switched to another server and then starts degrading, the original primary server will not become the standby server automatically. Remove the cause of the error, and then change the role of the original primary server to the server currently acting as standby server. Refer to "[4.1 Action Required when Server Degradation Occurs](#)" for details.

## 1.1.2 Referencing on the Standby Server

### 1.1.2.1 If Prioritizing the Main Job on the Primary Server

If a reference job is performed on the standby server and the primary server is switched, this may impact the main job from the point of view of load and conflict. This is because, on the new primary server (that is, the original standby server), both the main job that was being executed on the original primary server and the reference job that was being continued on the original standby server will be processed.

Therefore, to degrade the reference job (so that the impact on the main job is reduced), you can select the user exit below to disconnect the reference job that was performed on the original standby server.

- Post-switch command



## Note

If continuing with the referencing job after switching the primary server, give careful consideration to the server resource estimates, and the likely impact on performance.

### 1.1.2.2 If Performing the Referencing Job on the Synchronous Standby Server

If an issue such as a log transfer network failure obstructs the continuation of a job on the primary server, the standby server may be automatically disconnected from the cluster system.

Therefore, if operating the reference job on the assumption that the connection destination is the synchronous standby server, you can select to temporarily stop the job by using the user exit or the feature below, so that unexpected referencing of past data does not occur as a result of the disconnection.

- Pre-detach command
- Forced stoppage of the standby server instance on disconnection (specify in the parameter of the server configuration file)

Additionally, if the standby server is incorporated into the cluster system, reference jobs can be started or resumed by using the user exit below.

- Post-attach command



## See

- Refer to "[2.6 Creating a User Exit for a Database Server](#)" or "[Appendix C User Commands](#)" for information on each user exit.
- Refer to "[A.4.1 Server Configuration File for the Database Servers](#)" for information on the server configuration file of the database server.



## Point

Mirroring Controller will continue processing regardless of the processing result of the above user exits and features.

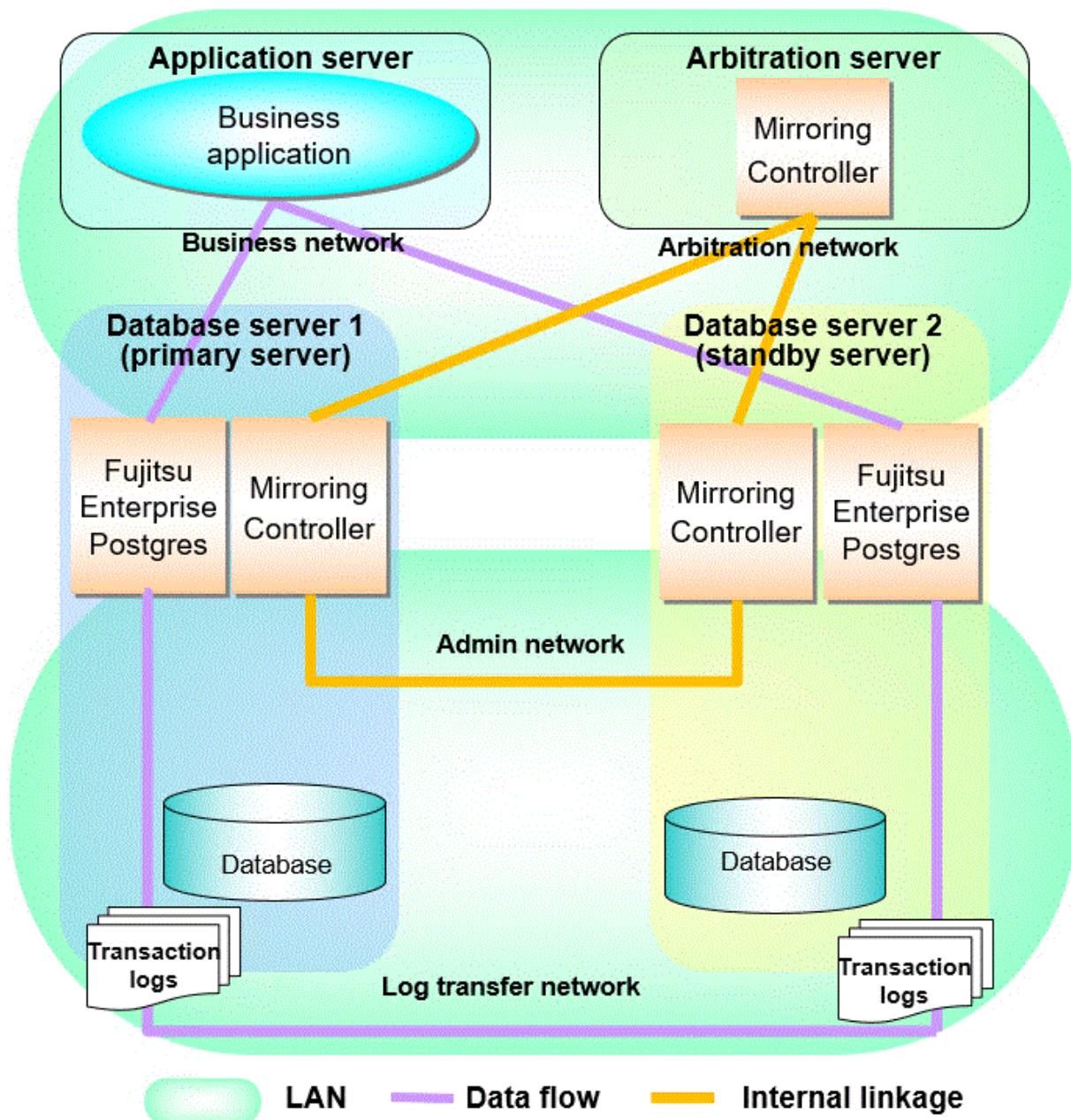
## 1.2 System Configuration for Database Multiplexing Mode

This section explains the products, features, and networks that are part of a database multiplexing system.

The following table shows the network types uses by database multiplexing systems.

Network type	Description
Job network	Network between the application that accesses the database, and the database server.
Arbitration network	Network used by the arbitration server to check the status of the primary server and standby server, and communicate with Mirroring Controller of the database servers. Additionally, if the job network is disconnected from outside, it can also be used as the arbitration network. Refer to " <a href="#">1.4 Security in Database Multiplexing</a> " for details on network security.
Admin network	Network used by the primary server and the standby server to monitor each other using Mirroring Controller, and to control Mirroring Controller of other servers.
Log transfer network	Network used to transfer the transaction logs of the database, which is part of database multiplexing.

Figure 1.5 System configuration for database multiplexing mode



The arbitration server is installed to check the database server status as a third party, and to perform fencing. Therefore, to obtain the intended benefits, consider the following.

- Install the arbitration server on a different server to that of the database server.
- For the arbitration network, use a network that will not be impacted by line faults or the load on the admin network or log transfer network. This is necessary to correctly determine issues on the admin network or log transfer network.

#### Point

- The arbitration server can also be used as an application server. However, consider the server load.
- It is recommended to link the arbitration server with other cluster systems, in order to provide redundancy.
- Use the arbitration server in combination with the same version of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres as that of the primary server and standby server.

- The arbitration server can be built on a different platform to that of the database server.



#### Note

Because the ping command of the operating system is used for heartbeat monitoring of the database server, configure the network so that ICMP can be used on the admin network and the arbitration network.

## 1.2.1 Mirroring Controller Resources

This section describes the database server and arbitration server resources of Mirroring Controller.

### 1.2.1.1 Database Server Resources

The only Mirroring Controller resource is the Mirroring Controller management directory, which stores the files that define the Mirroring Controller behavior, and the temporary files that are created when Mirroring Controller is active.



#### Note

- Do not create the Mirroring Controller management directory in a directory managed by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres, otherwise it may be deleted by mistake or may cause unexpected problems when Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres recovery is performed (such as old version of files being restored).

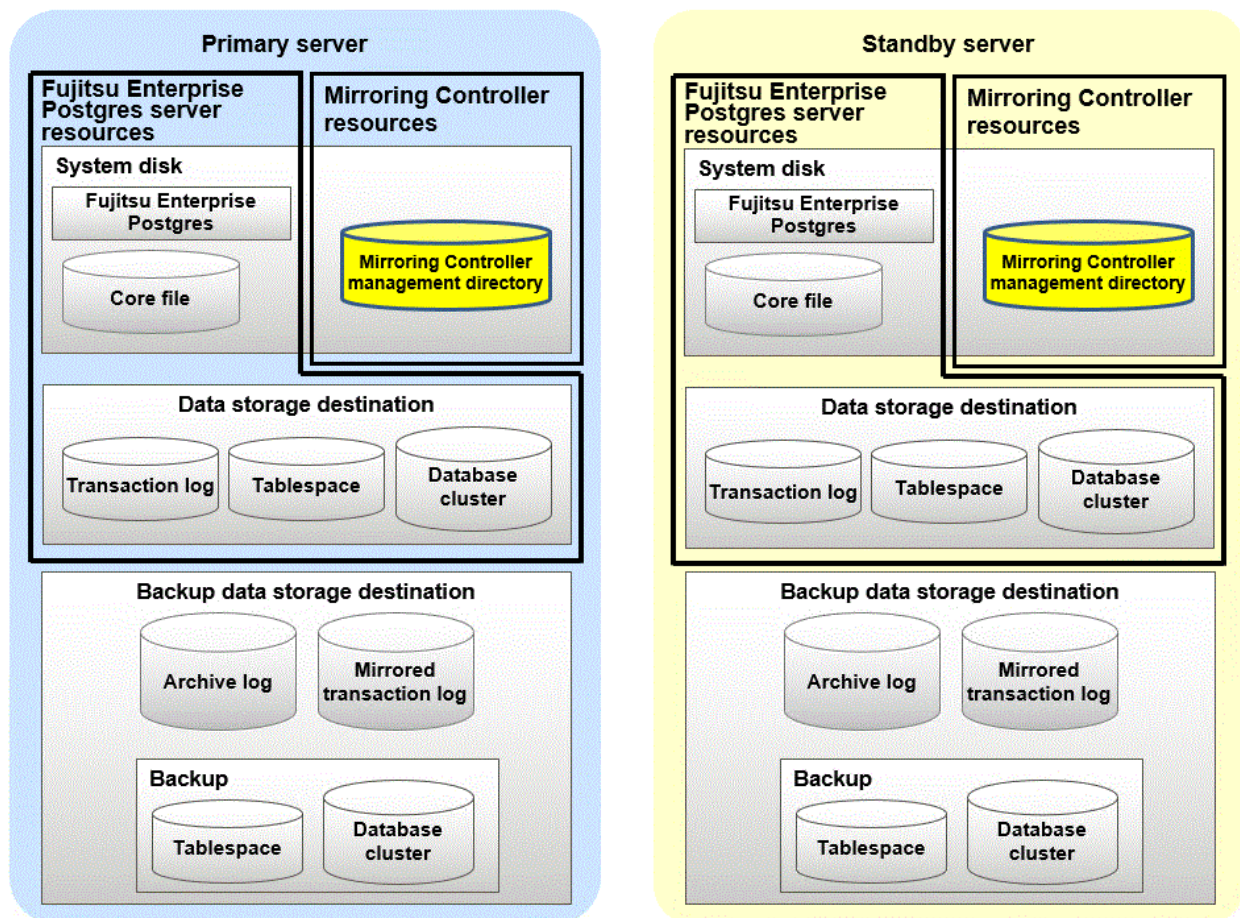
Refer to "Preparing Directories for Resource Deployment" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server for information on the directories managed by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

- The backup methods described in "Backing Up the Database" in the Operation Guide cannot be used to back up the Mirroring Controller resources. Therefore, users must obtain their own backup of Mirroring Controller resources, in addition to Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres server resources. Retrieve backups after stopping Mirroring Controller.
- If the automatic switch/disconnection is enabled, do not edit `synchronous_standby_names` for the Mirroring Controller monitoring target instance. Otherwise, if Mirroring Controller is switched after editing, data may be lost or SQL access may stop.
- If you are building on a virtual machine or cloud, make sure the virtual machines are on different physical servers. Refer to your virtual machine software and cloud vendor documentation for instructions on how to deploy virtual machines.

The content on the primary server will be backed up. You cannot tell which server is the primary server to be backed up, because switching and failback may be performed between the servers. It is also impossible to tell which server is to be restored using the backed up data. Accordingly, ensure that you create a backup of each server when it is working as the primary server.



Figure 1.6 Configuration when backing up Mirroring Controller resources



### 1.2.1.2 Arbitration Server Resources

The only arbitration server resource is the Mirroring Controller arbitration process management directory. This directory stores the files that define the Mirroring Controller arbitration process behavior and the temporary files created when Mirroring Controller is active.

## 1.2.2 Mirroring Controller Processes

This section describes the database server and arbitration server processes of Mirroring Controller.

### 1.2.2.1 Database Server Processes

The database server processes comprise the Mirroring Controller process and Mirroring Controller monitoring process.

Process type	Description
Mirroring Controller process	Performs operating system/server and process heartbeat monitoring and disk abnormality monitoring between database servers. Additionally, it issues arbitration requests to the arbitration server.
Mirroring Controller monitoring process	Performs heartbeat monitoring of the Mirroring Controller process. If the Mirroring Controller process returns no response or is down, the monitoring process is restarted automatically.

### 1.2.2.2 Arbitration Server Process

The only arbitration process is the Mirroring Controller arbitration process.

Process type	Description
Mirroring Controller arbitration process	Performs rechecks for issues detected on the primary server or the standby server. Additionally, this process performs fencing if it determines that there is an issue on the primary server or the standby server.

### 1.2.3 Redundancy of the Admin and Log Transfer Networks

The admin network is an important one, because it is used by Mirroring Controller to check the status of each server.

Additionally, the log transfer network is an important one, because it is necessary to ensure data freshness.

Accordingly, configure a failure-resistant network by implementing network redundancy via channel bonding provided by the operating system or network driver vendor.

### 1.2.4 Notes on CPU Architecture and Products

Use the same CPU architecture (endian) for the primary server, standby server, and the arbitration server.

A server using only PostgreSQL streaming replication cannot be specified as the database multiplexing system log transfer destination.

## 1.3 Deciding on Operation when a Heartbeat Abnormality is Detected

The operation to be performed when a heartbeat abnormality is detected using operating system/server heartbeat monitoring is decided on according to the environment where database multiplexing mode is performed or the operating method.

It is possible to select from the four operations below, and specify this in the parameters of Mirroring Controller:

- Use the arbitration server to perform automatic degradation (switch/disconnect)
- Call the user exit (user command) that will perform the degradation decision, and perform automatic degradation
- Notification messages
- Perform automatic degradation unconditionally (switch/disconnect)

The table below shows if jobs can be continued on the primary server when an issue is detected during heartbeat monitoring of the operating system/server.

#### Continuation of jobs on the primary server when an issue is detected during heartbeat monitoring of the operating system/server

Operation	Abnormal event				
	Server/operating system failures or no responses		Admin network issue	Log transfer network issue	Issue on a network for both admin and log transfer
	Primary server	Standby server			
Automatic degradation using the arbitration server	Y (switch)	Y (disconnect)	Y	Y (disconnect)	Y (disconnect)
Call a user exit and perform automatic degradation	Y (switch)	Y (disconnect)	Y	Y (disconnect)	Y (disconnect)
Notification messages	N (message notification only)	N (message notification only)	Y	Y (disconnect)	Y (disconnect)
Unconditional automatic degradation	Y (switch)	Y (disconnect)	N (split brain occurs)	Y (disconnect)	N (split brain occurs)

Y: Job can be continued

N: Job cannot be continued

## 1.4 Security in Database Multiplexing

The database server replicates the database on all servers that comprise the cluster system. It achieves this by transferring and reflecting the updated transaction logs of the database from the primary server to the standby server.

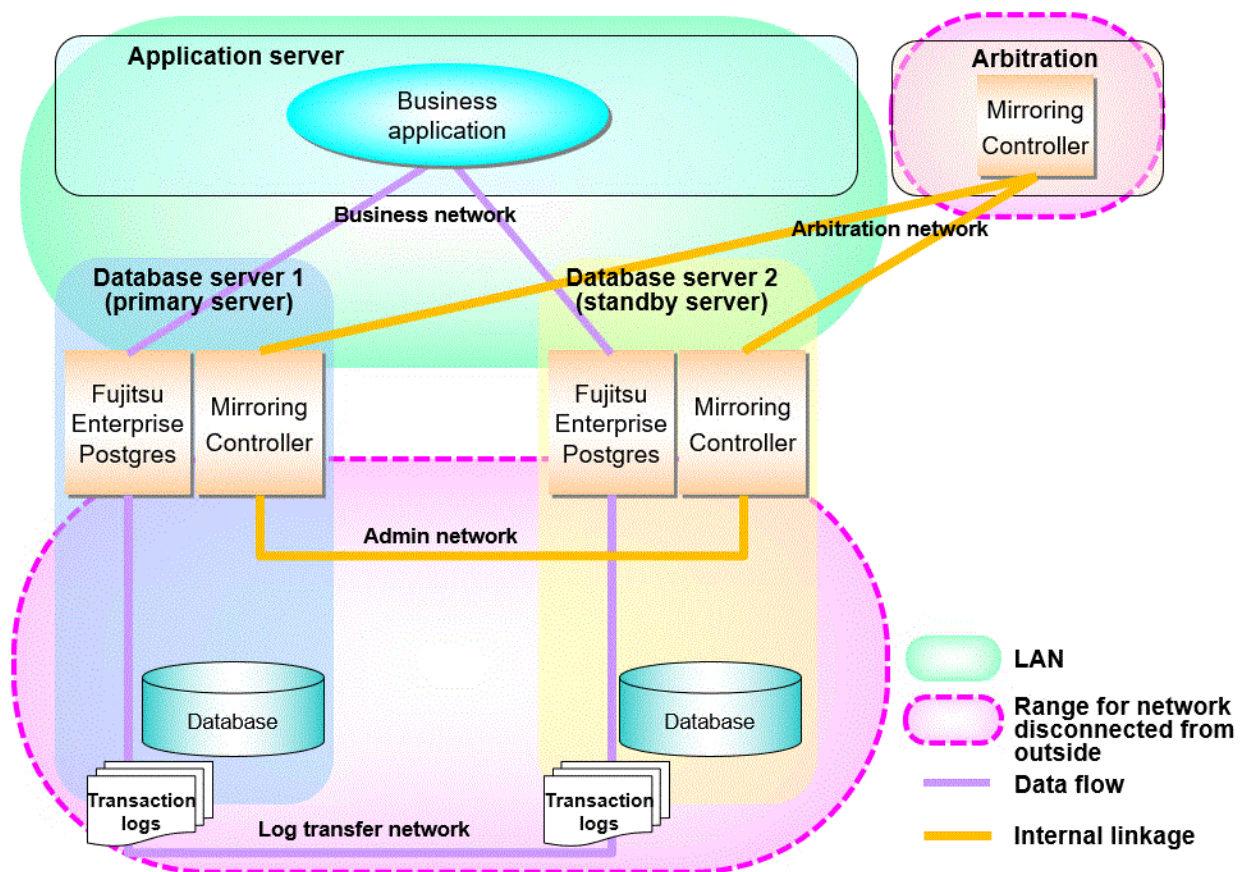
To safeguard the database against unauthorized access and preserve data confidentiality in transaction log transfers, carefully consider security and take note of the following when performing database multiplexing:

- Do not use trust authentication when using replication connection.
- Configure the admin network and the log transfer network so that they cannot be connected from the outside, as shown in [Figure 1.7 Security](#).

Additionally, for the line on which Mirroring Controller connects from the database server to the arbitration server, take note of the following points and consider security carefully.

- Build a network with the arbitration server disconnected from outside, as shown in [Figure 1.7 Security](#).

Figure 1.7 Security



However, it may not always be possible to adopt the configuration mentioned above. For example, you may want to place the servers in a nearby/neighboring office to minimize network delays.

In this case, combine the following features to enhance security:

- [Authentication of the Standby Server](#)
- [Encryption of Transaction Logs Transferred to the Standby Server](#)

When these features are combined, security will be achieved as shown below.

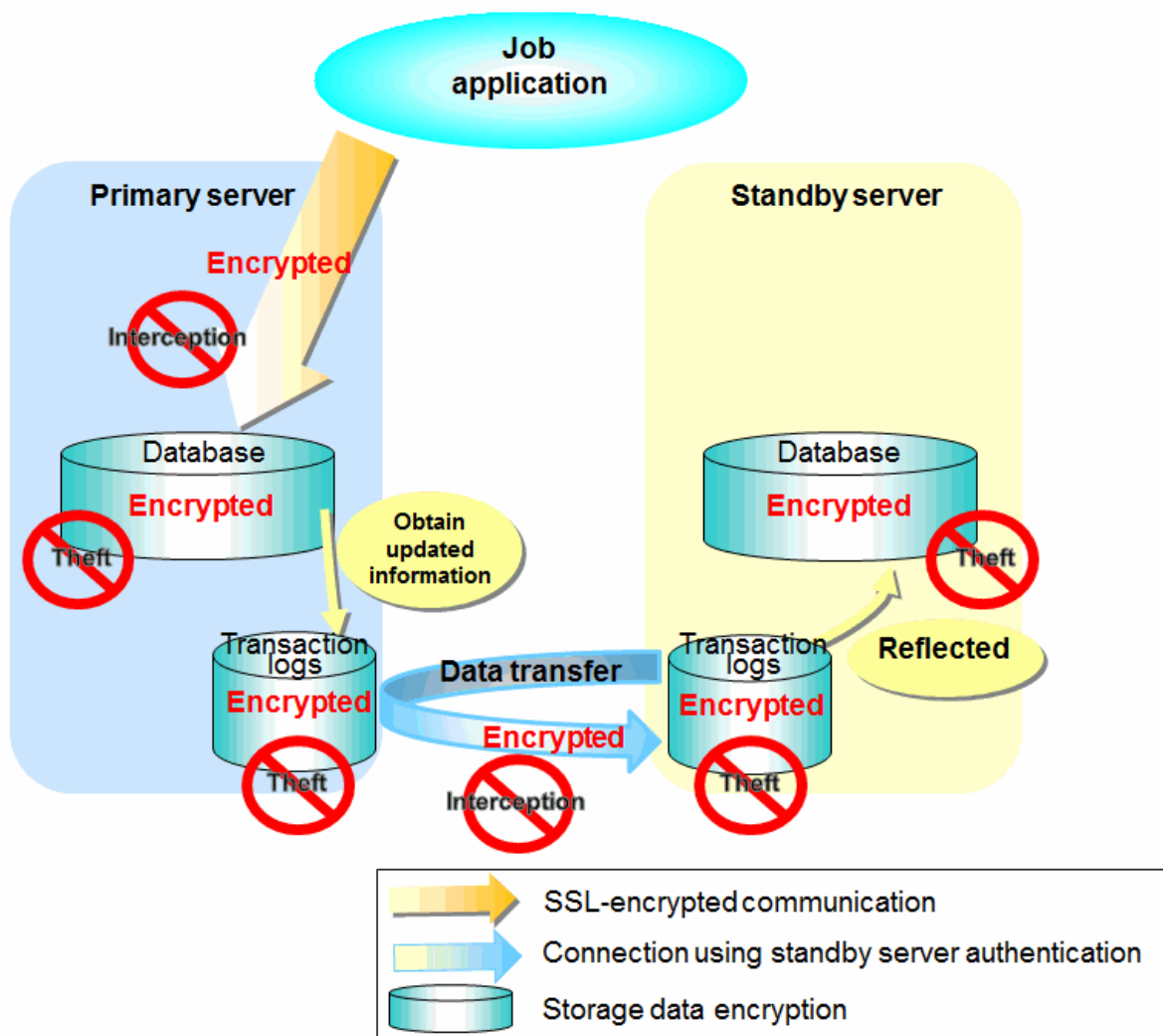
## Point

If the job network is disconnected from outside, it can be used as the arbitration network. However, if a network is to be used as both a job network and arbitration network, consider the load on the network.

## Note

If a port is blocked (access permission has not been granted) by a firewall, etc., enable use of the target port by granting access. Refer to the vendor document for information on how to open (grant access permission to) a port. Consider the security risks carefully when opening ports.

Figure 1.8 Security achieved when standby server authentication is combined with transaction log encryption



## See

Refer to "Performing Database Multiplexing" under "Configuring Secure Communication Using Secure Sockets Layer" in the Operation Guide for information on encrypting SSL communications.

## 1.4.1 Authentication of the Standby Server

---

You can prevent spoofing connections from an external server purporting to be the standby server by using authentication with a user name and password.

Configure the setting in the primary server `pg_hba.conf` file so that authentication is performed for connections from the standby server in the same way as for connections from the client.



See

.....

Refer to "Client Authentication" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on content that can be configured in `pg_hba.conf`.

Refer to "Policy-based Password Management" in the Operation Guide for information on about operating in policy-based passwords management for database multiplexing operations.

.....

## 1.4.2 Encryption of Transaction Logs Transferred to the Standby Server

---

In case the authentication of the standby server is breached so that a malicious user purporting to be the standby server can spoof data, the transaction log data can be encrypted to prevent it from being deciphered. The transparent data encryption feature is used to encrypt the data.



See

.....

Refer to "Protecting Storage Data Using Transparent Data Encryption" in the Operation Guide for details.

.....



## Chapter 2 Setting Up Database Multiplexing Mode

This chapter describes how to set up database multiplexing mode, and how to check it.

### Users who perform setup and operations on the database server

Setup and operations of the database server must be performed by the instance administrator user.

### Users who perform setup and operations on the arbitration server

The following users may perform setup and operations on the arbitration server when it is used for automatic degradation.

#### Linux

Any operating system user.

#### Windows

Any user with administrator privileges. This user must be assigned the "Log on as a service" user right.



#### Point

- Mirroring Controller selects a database superuser as the user who will connect to the database instance. This enables instance administrator users and database superusers who operate the Mirroring Controller commands to run database multiplexing mode in different environments.
- The application name for connecting to the database instance is "mc\_agent".

### Matching the system times

Before starting the setup, ensure that the times in the primary server, standby server and arbitration server match, by using the operating system time synchronization feature, for example.

The tolerated difference is approximately one second.

If the system times are not synchronized (because the tolerated difference is exceeded, for example), problem investigation may be affected.

### Configuring ICMP

Because the ping command of the operating system is used for heartbeat monitoring of the database server, configure the network so that ICMP can be used on the admin network and the arbitration network. Refer to the relevant operating system procedure for details.

### Setup

The setup procedure is shown in the table below. However, the procedure on the arbitration server should be performed only when the arbitration server is used for automatic degradation. A distinction is made between the procedures on the primary server and standby server according to whether the arbitration server is used.

Step	Task			Refer to
	Primary server	Standby server	Arbitration server	
1	Installation			<a href="#">2.1 Installation</a>
2	Preparing the database server		Preparing the arbitration server	<a href="#">2.2 Preparing for Setup</a>
3			Configuring the arbitration server	<a href="#">2.3.1 Configuring the Arbitration Server</a>
4			Creating a user exit	<a href="#">2.3.2 Creating a User Exit for the Arbitration Server</a>

Step	Task			Refer to
	Primary server	Standby server	Arbitration server	
5			Starting the arbitration process	<a href="#">2.3.3 Starting the Mirroring Controller Arbitration Process</a>
6	Setting up database multiplexing mode			<a href="#">2.4.1 Setting Up Database Multiplexing Mode on the Primary Server</a>
7	Creating, setting, and registering the instance			<a href="#">2.4.2 Creating, Setting, and Registering the Primary Server Instance</a>
8	Creating a user exit			<a href="#">2.6 Creating a User Exit for a Database Server</a>
9	Starting Mirroring Controller			<a href="#">2.4.3 Starting Mirroring Controller on the Primary Server</a>
10		Setting up database multiplexing mode		<a href="#">2.5.1 Setting Up Database Multiplexing Mode on the Standby Server</a>
11		Creating, setting, and registering the instance		<a href="#">2.5.2 Creating, Setting, and Registering the Standby Server Instance</a>
12		Creating a user exit		<a href="#">2.6 Creating a User Exit for a Database Server</a>
13		Starting Mirroring Controller		<a href="#">2.5.3 Starting Mirroring Controller on the Standby Server</a>
14	Confirming the streaming replication status			<a href="#">2.7 Confirming the Streaming Replication Status</a>
15	Checking the connection status			<a href="#">2.8.1 Checking the Connection Status on a Database Server</a>
16		Checking the connection status		<a href="#">2.8.1 Checking the Connection Status on a Database Server</a>
17			Checking the connection status	<a href="#">2.8.2 Checking the Connection Status on the Arbitration Server</a>
18	Creating applications			<a href="#">2.9 Creating Applications</a>
19	Checking the behavior			<a href="#">2.10 Checking the Behavior</a>

Explanations for each step are provided below.

### Information

- The setup procedure is also the same when changing the mode on a single server to database multiplexing mode. In this case, omit the installation of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres and the creation of the instance.

Refer to "[3.9.2 Changing from Single Server Mode to Database Multiplexing Mode](#)" for details.

- The primary and standby server can be pseudo-configured on the same server for system testing, for example. In this case, the setup can be performed using the same procedure, however there will be some supplementary steps.

Before performing the setup, refer to "[Appendix B Supplementary Information on Building the Primary Server and Standby Server on the Same Server](#)".

## 2.1 Installation

Refer to the manuals below, and then install the product.



## See

- Refer to the Installation and Setup Guide for Server for details on how to install Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.
- Refer to the Installation and Setup Guide for Server Assistant for information on installing the Server Assistant on the arbitration server.



## Note

Do not use the arbitration server also as a database server. The arbitration server is installed to check the database server status as a third party, and to perform fencing. Using the arbitration server also as a database server nullifies the effectiveness of the arbitration server.

## 2.2 Preparing for Setup

This section describes the preparation required before setting up Mirroring Controller.

### 2.2.1 Preparing the Database Server

#### 2.2.1.1 Preparing the Backup Disk

In Mirroring Controller, by performing a backup, recovery is possible even if all server disks are corrupted.

The content on the primary server should be backed up. However, through switching and failback, the standby server may also become the primary server. Accordingly, prepare each of the backup disk devices for the primary and standby servers. Perform backup on the primary server used at the time of the backup.

### 2.2.2 Preparing the Arbitration Server

#### 2.2.2.1 Preparing to Output Error Logs to the Event Log (Windows)

This section explains the preparatory tasks for outputting error logs to the event log.



## Note

If no event source name is registered, messages output to the event log may be incomplete.

### Configuring each server

Event logs for the Mirroring Controller commands on the arbitration server may be output with the default event source name "MirroringControllerArbiter". Therefore, register this default event source name beforehand.

Example)

The following is an example in which the DLL of a 64-bit product is registered under the default event source name. Note that "<x>" indicates the product version.

```
> regsvr32 "c:\Program Files\Fujitsu\fsepv<x>assistant64\lib\mcarbevent.dll"
```

### Setting each instance

You can output messages to any event source named by the user, so that messages output to the event log can be identified by each instance.

Example)

The following is an example in which the DLL of a 64-bit product is registered under the event source name "Mirroring Controller arbiter1". Note that "<x>" indicates the product version.



```
> regsvr32 /n /i:"Mirroring Controller arbiter1" "c:\Program Files\Fujitsu\fsepv<x>assistant64\lib\mcarbevent.dll"
```

The parameter must be edited for each instance. Refer to "[A.4.2 Arbitration Configuration File](#)" and set the event\_source parameter.

### If installing multiple versions

If Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres is already installed on the same machine, search for the key below in Registry Editor, and make a note of the path of the registered DLL. Afterwards, register a new DLL using the default event source name.

Use the DLL path that you made a note of in the above step when re-registering the default event source name during uninstallation.

```
MirroringControllerArbiter
```

## 2.2.2.2 Security Policy Settings (Windows)

On the arbitration server, operating system user accounts that operate the Mirroring Controller arbitration process must be assigned the "Log on as a service" user right in order to use Windows Services to start and stop the Mirroring Controller arbitration process.

If the security settings to enable this have not been configured, refer to "[E.1 Security Policy Settings](#)" and configure the settings.

## 2.3 Setting Up the Arbitration Server

This section explains how to set up the arbitration server.

### 2.3.1 Configuring the Arbitration Server

This section explains how to set up database multiplexing mode on the arbitration server.

In database multiplexing mode, the files that are required for operations are managed in the Mirroring Controller arbitration process management directory.

There is one Mirroring Controller arbitration process management directory for each arbitration process.



#### Point

.....

The arbitration process for each database multiplexing system can be started on a single arbitration server.

.....



#### See

- .....
- Refer to the Reference for information on the mc\_arb command.
  - Refer to "[Appendix A Parameters](#)" for information on the parameters to be edited for the setup.
- .....

Perform the following procedure:

#### Linux

1. On the arbitration server, log in as any operating system user who starts and stops the arbitration process.
2. Configure the environment variables.

Set the following environment variables:

- PATH  
Add the installation directory "/bin".
- MANPATH  
Add the installation directory "/share/man".

## Example

The following example configures environment variables when the installation directory is "/opt/fsepv<x>assistant".

Note that "<x>" indicates the product version.

### sh, bash

```
$ PATH=/opt/fsepv<x>assistant/bin:$PATH ; export PATH
$ MANPATH=/opt/fsepv<x>assistant/share/man:$MANPATH ; export MANPATH
```

### csh, tcsh

```
$ setenv PATH /opt/fsepv<x>assistant/bin:$PATH
$ setenv MANPATH /opt/fsepv<x>assistant/share/man:$MANPATH
```

3. Create the Mirroring Controller arbitration process management directory that will store the files required by the arbitration server.  
Use ASCII characters in the Mirroring Controller arbitration process management directory.
4. In the network configuration file (network.conf), define the Mirroring Controller network configuration that will be managed by the Mirroring Controller arbitration process.

Create network.conf in the Mirroring Controller arbitration process management directory, based on the sample file. For network.conf, set read and write permissions only for the operating system user who starts and stops the arbitration process in step 1.

If users other than this are granted access permissions, the mc\_arb command will not work. Accordingly, users other than the operating system user who starts and stops the arbitration process in step 1 are prevented from operating the Mirroring Controller arbitration process.

Sample file

```
/installDir/share/mcarb_network.conf.sample
```

In network.conf, specify the IP address or host name and port number of the primary server and standby server, and define the Mirroring Controller network configuration that will be managed by the Mirroring Controller arbitration process.

Refer to "[A.3 Network Configuration File](#)" for details.

A definition example is shown below.

Example)

The IDs of the servers are set to "server1" and "server2", and their port numbers are set to "27541".

```
server1 192.0.3.100 27541
server2 192.0.3.110 27541
```

5. In the arbitration configuration file (arbitration.conf), define the information related to control of the Mirroring Controller arbitration process.

Create arbitration.conf in the Mirroring Controller arbitration process management directory, based on the sample file. For arbitration.conf, set read and write permissions only for the operating system user who starts and stops the arbitration process in step 1. If users other than this are granted access permissions, the mc\_arb command will not work.

Sample file

```
/installDir/share/mcarb_arbitration.conf.sample
```

Set the parameters shown in the table below in arbitration.conf.

Table 2.1 Parameters

Parameter	Content specified	Remarks
port	Port number of the Mirroring Controller arbitration process	The port number must be 0 to 65535. Ensure that the port number does not conflict with

Parameter	Content specified	Remarks
		other software. Do not specify an ephemeral port that may temporarily be assigned by another program.
my_address	<i>'ipAddrOrHostNameThatAcceptsConnectionFromMirroringControllerProcessOnDbServer'</i> [Setting example] my_address = '192.0.3.120'	IPv4 and IPv6 addresses can be specified. Specify the IP address, enclosed in single quotation marks (').
syslog_ident	<i>'programName'</i>	Specify using single quotation marks (') to enclose the program name used to identify the Mirroring Controller arbitration process message in the system log. Use ASCII characters excluding spaces to specify this parameter.  The default is 'MirroringControllerArbiter'.
fencing_command	<i>'fencingCmdFilePath'</i> [Setting example] fencing_command = '/arbiter/fencing_dir/execute_fencing.sh'	Specify the full path of the fencing command that fences a database server where it is determined that an error has occurred.  Enclose the path in single quotation marks ('). Specify the path using less than 1024 bytes.
fencing_command_timeout	Timeout for fencing command (seconds)	If the command does not respond within the specified number of seconds, it is determined that fencing has failed and a signal (SIGTERM) is sent to the fencing command execution process.  Specify a value between 1 and 2147483647.  The default is 20 seconds.

## Information

Refer to "A.4.2 Arbitration Configuration File" for information on the parameters and for other parameters.

## Windows

1. On the arbitration server, log in as any operating system user who starts and stops the arbitration process.
2. Configure the environment variables.

Set the following environment variable:

- PATH

Add the installation folders "\bin" and "\lib".

## Example

The following example configures environment variables when the installation folder is "c:\Program Files\Fujitsu\fspev<x>assistant64".

Note that "<x>" indicates the product version.

```
> SET PATH=c:\Program Files\Fujitsu\fspev<x>assistant64\bin;c:\Program Files\Fujitsu\fspev<x>assistant64\lib;%PATH%
```

3. Create the Mirroring Controller arbitration process management directory that will store the files required by the arbitration server.  
Use ASCII characters in the Mirroring Controller arbitration process management directory.
4. In the network configuration file (network.conf), define the Mirroring Controller network configuration that will be managed by the Mirroring Controller arbitration process.

Create network.conf in the Mirroring Controller arbitration process management directory, based on the sample file.

Sample file

```
installDir\share\mcarb_network.conf.sample
```

In network.conf, specify the IP address or host name and port number of the primary server and standby server, and define the Mirroring Controller network configuration that will be managed by the Mirroring Controller arbitration process.

Refer to "[A.3 Network Configuration File](#)" for details.

A definition example is shown below.

Example)

The IDs of the servers are set to "server1" and "server2", and their port numbers are set to "27541".

```
server1 192.0.3.100 27541
server2 192.0.3.110 27541
```

5. Change the access permissions for network.conf.

For network.conf, set read and write permissions only for the operating system user who starts and stops the arbitration process in step 1. If users other than this are granted access permissions, the mc\_arb command will not work. Accordingly, users other than the operating system user who starts and stops the arbitration process in step 1 are prevented from operating the Mirroring Controller arbitration process.

Example)

The following is an execution example, in which the operating system user who starts and stops the arbitration process in step 1 is granted full access permissions as the owner when the user is "fsepuser". The following procedure applies when the user is logged in to the Windows server as "fsepuser".

```
> takeown /f network.conf
> icacls network.conf /reset
> icacls network.conf /inheritance:r
> icacls network.conf /grant fsepuser:F
```

6. In the arbitration configuration file (arbitration.conf), define the information related to control of the Mirroring Controller arbitration process.

Create arbitration.conf in the Mirroring Controller arbitration process management directory, based on the sample file.

Sample file

```
installDir\share\mcarb_arbitration.conf.sample
```

Set the parameters shown in the table below in arbitration.conf.

Table 2.2 Parameters

Parameter	Content specified	Remarks
port	Port number of the Mirroring Controller arbitration process	The port number must be 0 to 65535. Ensure that the port number does not conflict with other software. Do not specify an ephemeral port that may temporarily be assigned by another program.

Parameter	Content specified	Remarks
my_address	<i>'ipAddrOrHostNameThatAcceptsConnectionFromMirroringControllerProcessOnDbServer'</i> [Setting example] my_address = '192.0.3.120'	IPv4 and IPv6 addresses can be specified.  Enclose the parameter value in single quotation marks (').
service_name	<i>'registeredServiceNameOfArbitrationProcessInWindowsServices'</i>	Use ASCII characters excluding forward slash (/) and backslash (\) to specify this parameter.  Enclose the parameter value in single quotation marks (').  The maximum length of the service name is 124 bytes.
event_source	<i>'eventSourceNameUsedToIdentifyArbitrationProcessMsgInEventLog'</i>	Use ASCII characters excluding spaces to specify this parameter.  Enclose the parameter value in single quotation marks (').  The maximum length of the event source name is 255 bytes.
fencing_command	<i>'fencingCmdFilePath'</i> [Setting example] fencing_command = 'c:\\arbiter\\fencing_dir\\execute_fencing.bat'	Specify the full path of the fencing command that fences a database server where it is determined that an error has occurred.  Specify "\\" as the delimiter.  Enclose the path in single quotation marks (').  Specify the path using less than 260 bytes.  Any multibyte characters must use the same encoding as the operating system.
fencing_command_timeout	Timeout for fencing command (seconds)	If the command does not respond within the specified number of seconds, it is determined that fencing has failed and a signal (SIGTERM) is sent to the fencing command execution process.  Specify a value between 1 and 2147483647.  The default is 20 seconds.

## Information

Refer to "[A.4.2 Arbitration Configuration File](#)" for information on the parameters and for other parameters.

### 7. Change the access permissions for arbitration.conf.

For arbitration.conf, set read and write permissions only for the operating system user who starts and stops the arbitration process in step 1. If users other than this are granted access permissions, the mc\_arb command will not work.

Example)

The following is an execution example, in which the operating system user who starts and stops the arbitration process in step 1 is granted full access permissions as the owner when the user is "fsepuser". The following procedure applies when the user is logged in to the Windows server as "fsepuser".

```
> takeown /f arbitration.conf
> icacls arbitration.conf /reset
> icacls arbitration.conf /inheritance:r
> icacls arbitration.conf /grant fsepuser:F
```

#### 8. Configure Windows Firewall.

If Windows Firewall is used, enable the port number of Mirroring Controller specified in the network configuration file in step 3. Refer to "[E.2 Windows Firewall Settings](#)" for details.

#### 9. Register the Mirroring Controller arbitration process as a Windows service.

Execute the mc\_arb command in register mode.

For the -P option of the mc\_arb command, specify the password of the operating system user who executes the command.

Example)

```
> mc_arb register -M D:\mcarb_dir\arbiter1 -P *****
```

#### Note

When specifying the password in the -P option of the mc\_arb command, for security reasons, you should be careful not to allow other users to access it.

#### Information

Use the mc\_arb command with the -S option to specify automatic start and stop of the Mirroring Controller arbitration process. Refer to "[2.13 Setting Automatic Start and Stop of the Mirroring Controller Arbitration Process](#)" for details.

The Mirroring Controller arbitration process is registered as a Windows service using the service name specified in the service\_name parameter of arbitration.conf in step 6.

You can execute the sc qc command to check the registration status.

## 2.3.2 Creating a User Exit for the Arbitration Server

The only user exit for the arbitration server is the fencing command.

The fencing command is a user command that is called by the Mirroring Controller arbitration process if Mirroring Controller performs arbitration processing and determines that a database server is unstable.

In the fencing command, the user implements a process that isolates a database server from a cluster system by, for example, stopping the target operating system or server. The fencing command that was created is to be specified for the parameter in the arbitration configuration file. Refer to "[A.4.2 Arbitration Configuration File](#)" for information on the parameters.

- Fencing the primary server during the switch
  - Prevent the Mirroring Controller management process on the primary server from communicating with the Mirroring Controller management process on the other server.
  - Prevent applications from connecting to the primary server instance.
- Fencing the standby server during disconnection
  - Prevent the Mirroring Controller management process on the standby server from communicating with the Mirroring Controller management process on the other server.
  - Prevent applications from connecting to the standby server instance.
  - Prevent the standby server from continuing streaming replication.



See

Refer to "[Appendix C User Commands](#)" for information on user exits.

## 2.3.3 Starting the Mirroring Controller Arbitration Process

This section explains how to start the Mirroring Controller arbitration process.

An operating system user who has logged in to the arbitration server can start the Mirroring Controller arbitration process by executing the `mc_arb` command in start mode.

Linux

Example)

```
$ mc_arb start -M /mcarb_dir/arbiter1
```

Windows

Example)

```
> mc_arb start -M D:\mcarb_dir\arbiter1
```

## 2.4 Setting Up the Primary Server

This section explains how to set up the primary server.

### 2.4.1 Setting Up Database Multiplexing Mode on the Primary Server

This section explains how to set up database multiplexing mode on the primary server.

In database multiplexing, the files that are required for operations are managed in the Mirroring Controller management directory.

There is one Mirroring Controller management directory for each instance.



Note

- Do not place the Mirroring Controller management directory in a directory managed by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres, otherwise it may be deleted by mistake with the directories managed by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres, and an old version of files may be restored.



See

- Refer to "Preparing Directories for Resource Deployment" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server for details on the directories that are managed by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.
- Refer to "`mc_ctl`" in Reference for information on the command.
- Refer to "[Appendix A Parameters](#)" for details on each parameter to be edited for the setup.

Perform the following procedure:

1. Log in to the primary server.
2. Create the Mirroring Controller management directory that will store the files required by database multiplexing.

Use ASCII characters in the Mirroring Controller management directory.

Additionally, grant "Write" permission to the instance administrator user for the Mirroring Controller management directory.

3. In the network configuration file (network.conf), define the network configuration that will link between the Mirroring Controller processes.

Create the network.conf file in the Mirroring Controller management directory, based on the sample file. For network.conf, set read and write permissions for the instance administrator user only.

If users other than the instance administrator user are granted access, the mc\_ctl command will not work. In this way, users other than the instance administrator user are prevented from operating Mirroring Controller.

Sample file

```
/installDir/share/mc_network.conf.sample
```

In network.conf, specify the IP address or host name and port number of the primary server and standby server, and define the network configuration that will link between the Mirroring Controller processes, and between Mirroring Controller processes and the Mirroring Controller arbitration process.

Refer to "[A.3 Network Configuration File](#)" for details.

A definition example is shown below.

The content to be defined depends on the operation settings at the time a heartbeat abnormality is detected.

When automatic degradation by the arbitration server is selected

Example)

The IDs of the primary server and standby server are set to "server1" and "server2", and their port numbers are set to "27540" and "27541". The ID of the server of the Mirroring Controller arbitration process is set to "arbiter", and its port number is set to "27541".

```
server1 192.0.2.100,192.0.3.100 27540,27541 server
server2 192.0.2.110,192.0.3.110 27540,27541 server
arbiter 192.0.3.120 27541 arbiter
```

Ensure that the port numbers set for the primary server, standby server, and arbitration server do not conflict with other software. In addition, when the arbitration server is used for automatic degradation, use a network in which the arbitration network is not affected by a line failure in the admin network.

When the server type is "server", two IP addresses or host names, and two port numbers need to be specified in the following order:

- IP address or host name of the database server used as the admin network
- IP address or host name of the database server used as the arbitration network
- Port number of the database server used as the admin network
- Port number of the database server used as the arbitration network

If the server type is "arbiter", specify the IP address or host name set for the my\_address parameter and the port number set for the port parameter in arbitration.conf of the arbitration server.

When operation other than automatic degradation by the arbitration server is selected

Example)

The IDs of the servers are set to "server1" and "server2", and their port numbers are set to "27540".

```
server1 192.0.2.100 27540
server2 192.0.2.110 27540
```

Ensure that the port numbers for the primary and standby server do not conflict with other software.

Register in /etc/services the port number of the primary server, because programs such as WebAdmin use it to search for available port numbers.

Register any name as the service name.

4. Define the information related to Mirroring Controller monitoring and control in the serverIdentifier.conf file.

Create the serverIdentifier.conf file in the Mirroring Controller management directory, based on the sample file.



For *serverIdentifier.conf*, set read and write permissions for the instance administrator user only. If users other than the instance administrator user are granted access, the *mc\_ctl* command will not work.

As the file name for the *serverIdentifier.conf* file, use the server identifier name that was specified in the *network.conf* file in step 3.

Sample file

<i>/InstallDir/share/mc_server.conf.sample</i>
--

Set the parameters shown in the table below in the *serverIdentifier.conf* file.

**Table 2.3 Parameters**

Parameter	Content specified	Remarks
db_instance	<i>'dataStorageDestinationDir'</i>	Use ASCII characters, enclosed in single quotation marks (').
db_instance_password	<i>'passwordOfInstanceAdminUser'</i>	<p>If password authentication is performed, you must specify this parameter in the settings used when Mirroring Controller connects to a database instance. Use ASCII characters, enclosed in single quotation marks (').</p> <p>If the specified value of this parameter includes ' or \, write \' or \\, respectively.</p>
enable_hash_in_password	on or off	<p>Specify on to treat the # in the db_instance_password specification as a password character, or off to treat it as a comment.</p> <p>The default is "off".</p>
syslog_ident	<i>'programName'</i>	<p>Specify the program name to be used to identify the Mirroring Controller messages in the system log.</p> <p>Use ASCII characters excluding spaces, enclosed in single quotation marks (').</p> <p>Use the same program name as the parameter in the postgresql.conf file ensures that the Mirroring Controller output content can be referenced transparently, so log reference is easy.</p>
remote_call_timeout	Admin communication timeout	<p>Specify the timeout value (milliseconds) of the Mirroring Controller agent process for communication between servers.</p> <p>Specify a value that is less than the operation system TCP connection timeout.</p> <p>Also, when using the Mirroring Controller arbitrage process for arbitrage, fencing, and state transition commands, specify a value that is greater than the sum of the timeout values.</p>
heartbeat_error_action	Operation when a heartbeat abnormality is detected using operating system or server heartbeat monitoring	<p>arbitration: Perform automatic degradation using the arbitration server.</p> <p>command: Call a user exit to determine degradation, and perform automatic degradation if required.</p> <p>message: Notify messages.</p>

Parameter	Content specified	Remarks
		<p>fallback: Perform automatic degradation unconditionally.</p> <p>Set the same value on the primary server and standby server.</p>
heartbeat_interval	Interval time for abnormality monitoring during heartbeat monitoring of the operating system or server (milliseconds)	<p>Abnormality monitoring of the operating system or server is performed at the interval (milliseconds) specified in heartbeat_interval.</p> <p>This parameter setting is used as the default for database process heartbeat monitoring, streaming replication abnormality monitoring, and disk abnormality monitoring. When setting the monitoring time, there are some considerations to take into account to optimize degradation using abnormality monitoring. Refer to "<a href="#">2.11.4.1 Tuning for Abnormality Monitoring of the Operating System or Server</a>" for details.</p>
heartbeat_timeout	Timeout for abnormality monitoring during heartbeat monitoring of the operating system or server (seconds)	
heartbeat_retry	Number of retries for abnormality monitoring during heartbeat monitoring of the operating system or server (number of times)	
fencing_command	<p><i>'fencingCmdFilePath'</i></p> <p>[Setting example]</p> <p>fencing_command = '/mc/fencing_dir/execute_fencing.sh'</p>	<p>Specify the full path of the fencing command that fences a database server where an error is determined to have occurred.</p> <p>Enclose the path in single quotation marks (').</p> <p>This parameter must be specified when "command" is set for heartbeat_error_action.</p> <p>Specify the path using less than 1024 bytes.</p>
fencing_command_timeout	Fencing command timeout (seconds)	<p>If the command does not respond within the specified number of seconds, fencing is determined to have failed and a signal (SIGTERM) is sent to the fencing command execution process.</p> <p>Specify a value between 1 and 2147483647.</p> <p>The default is 20 seconds.</p>
arbitration_timeout	Timeout for arbitration processing in the Mirroring Controller arbitration process (seconds)	<p>The specified value must be at least equal to the heartbeat monitoring time of the operating system or server + fencing_command_timeout in the arbitration configuration file.</p> <p>If there is no response for at least the number of seconds specified, the primary server will not be switched and the standby server will not be disconnected. Therefore, perform degradation manually.</p> <p>Specify a value between 1 and 2147483647.</p> <p>This parameter does not need to be set for operation that does not use the arbitration server.</p>
arbitration_command	<p><i>'arbitrationCmdFilePath'</i></p> <p>[Setting example]</p>	Specify the full path of the arbitration command to be executed when an abnormality is detected during heartbeat monitoring of the operating system or server.

Parameter	Content specified	Remarks
	arbitration_command = '/mc/arbitration_dir/ execute_arbitration_command.sh'	Enclose the path in single quotation marks (').  This parameter must be specified when "command" is set for heartbeat_error_action.  Specify the path using less than 1024 bytes.
arbitration_command _timeout	Timeout for arbitration command (seconds)	If the arbitration command does not respond within the specified number of seconds, it is determined that execution of the arbitration command has failed and a signal (SIGTERM) is sent to the arbitration command execution process.  Specify a value between 1 and 2147483647.  This parameter can be specified only when "command" is set for heartbeat_error_action.

### Information

Refer to "A.4.1 Server Configuration File for the Database Servers" for information on the parameters and for other parameters.

## 2.4.2 Creating, Setting, and Registering the Primary Server Instance

This section explains how to create, set, and register the primary server instance.



### See

- Refer to "Client Authentication" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on the pg\_hba.conf file.
- Refer to "A.1 Parameters Set on the Primary Server" for information on the postgresql.conf file.
- Refer to "mc\_ctl" in Reference for information on the command.

Perform the following procedure:

1. Refer to "Setup" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server, and then perform the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres setup and create the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres instance.

Use ASCII characters in the data storage destination directory.

### Note

- If degradation starts occurring due to an error during operations in database multiplexing mode, recovery is required for the standby server. There are some conditions to execute the pg\_rewrite command to recover the standby server. One of the conditions can be satisfied by enabling checksums when executing the initdb command. This is not mandatory. Refer to "4.1.1.1.3 Identify cause of error and perform recovery" for details.
2. When using transparent data encryption, configure the encryption settings for the storage data.

If you want to use a file-based keystore, create a keystore file.

If you want to use the key management system as a keystore, set the connection information for the key management system and declare the master encryption key.

Refer to "Protecting Storage Data Using Transparent Data Encryption" or "Using Transparent Data Encryption with Key Management Systems as Keystores" in the Operation Guide for details, and then configure the settings.

3. Add the following entry to the `pg_hba.conf` file to authenticate connections from the standby server.

Copy the file to the standby server later.

#	TYPE	DATABASE	USER	ADDRESS	METHOD
	host	replication	fsep	<i>standbyServerAddress</i>	<i>authenticationMethod</i>
	host	replication	fsep	<i>primaryServerAddress</i>	<i>authenticationMethod</i>

For the primary and standby server addresses, specify the IP address that will connect to the log transfer network.

Additionally, all servers can be used as the primary server or the standby server, so add entries for the addresses of all servers that comprise the database multiplexing system.

### Point

#### Setting an authentication method other than trust authentication

If the primary server becomes the standby server, to perform automatic authentication of connections to the primary server, create the `.pgpass` file in the home directory of the instance administrator user, and then specify a password for the replication database. Accordingly, the instance administrator operating system user and the user registered in the database will be the same, so you can verify that the connection was not made by an unspecified user. Additionally, the password that was set beforehand will be used in the authentication, so that the connection will be automatic.

### Note

If trust authentication is set, all OS users who can log in to the primary server will be able to connect, and if one of these is a malicious user, then that user can corrupt the standby server data, or cause the job system to fail, by sending an erroneous transaction log. Therefore, decide on the authentication method according to the security requirements of the system using database multiplexing mode.

Refer to "Authentication Methods" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for details on the authentication methods that can be set.

4. Configure this setting to enable the instance administrator user of the primary server to connect as a database application.

This setting enables the connection to the instance using the user name of the instance administrator user, so that Mirroring Controller can monitor instance errors. Configure this setting to enable the connection to the postgres database.

- If password authentication is used

In the `db_instance_password` parameter of the `serverIdentifier.conf` file, specify the password for the instance administrator user. This password is used to connect to the database instance. If a password is not specified in the `db_instance_password` parameter, the connection to the database instance from Mirroring Controller will fail, and it will not be possible to perform the process monitoring of the instance.

- If password authentication is not used

There is no need to specify the password in the `db_instance_password` parameter.

Even if the password for the instance administrator user is specified in the `db_instance_password` parameter, it will be ignored.

- If certificate authentication using SSL is used

Specify connection parameters for SSL in the `db_instance_ext_pq_conninfo` parameter and `db_instance_ext_jdbc_conninfo` parameter in the `serverIdentifier.conf` file. If the parameters are not specified, the connection to the database instance from Mirroring Controller will fail, and it will not be possible to perform the process monitoring of the instance. If certificate authentication using SSL is not performed, the parameters specification is not required.

For information about the `db_instance_ext_pq_conninfo` and `db_instance_ext_jdbc_conninfo` parameters, refer to "[A.4.1 Server Configuration File for the Database Servers](#)".

An example of setting the authentication method is shown below.

#	TYPE	DATABASE	USER	ADDRESS	METHOD
	host	postgres	fsep	127.0.0.1/32	<i>authenticationMethod</i>



## Note

Mirroring Controller uses the PostgreSQL JDBC 4.2 driver to connect to the database instance. Therefore, for the authentication method, specify a method supported by the JDBC driver. If an authentication method not supported by the JDBC driver is specified, Mirroring Controller will fail to start. Refer to the PostgreSQL JDBC Driver Documentation for information on authentication methods supported by the JDBC driver.

5. To use database multiplexing mode, specify the parameters shown in the table below in the postgresql.conf file.

The postgresql.conf file is copied when the standby server instance is created. Accordingly, set the required parameters in the standby server.

To use database multiplexing mode, specify the parameters shown in the table below in the postgresql.conf file. After editing the postgresql.conf file, restart the instance.

Table 2.4 Parameters

Parameter	Content specified	Remarks
wal_level	replica or logical	Specify "logical" when logical decoding is also to be used.
max_wal_senders	2 or more	Specify "2" when building a Mirroring Controller cluster system.  When additionally connecting asynchronous standby servers to the cluster system, add the number of simultaneous connections from these standby servers.
synchronous_standby_names	'standby.ServerName'	Specify the name that will identify the standby server.  Enclose the name in single quotation marks ('').  Do not change this parameter while Mirroring Controller is running.  Do not specify multiple names to this parameter as the Mirroring Controller can manage only one standby server.
hot_standby	on	
wal_keep_size	WAL save size (megabytes)	If a delay exceeding the value set in this parameter occurs, the WAL segment required later by the primary server may be deleted.  Additionally, if you stop a standby server (for maintenance, for example), consider the stop time and set a value that will not cause the WAL segment to be deleted.  Refer to "Estimating Transaction Log Space Requirements" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server for information on estimating the WAL save size.
wal_log_hints	on	When using the pg_rewind command to recover a standby server, specify this parameter or enable checksums when executing the initdb command.
wal_sender_timeout	Timeout (milliseconds)	Specify the time period after which it is determined that an error has occurred in the transaction log transfer on the primary server.  By aligning this value with the value for the database process heartbeat monitoring time, you can unify the time after which it is determined that an error has occurred.
archive_mode	on	Specify the archive log mode.
archive_command	'installDir/bin/pgx_walcopy.cmd "%p"'	Specify the command and storage destination to save the transaction log.

Parameter	Content specified	Remarks
	<i>"backupDataStorageDestinationDirectory/archived_wal/%f"</i>	
backup_destination	Backup data storage destination directory	<p>Specify the name of directory where to store the backup data.</p> <p>Set the permissions so that only the instance administrator user can access the specified directory.</p> <p>Specify the same full path on all servers, so that the backup data of other servers can be used to perform recovery.</p>
max_connections	Number of simultaneous client connections to the instance + superuser_reserved_connections	<p>The value specified is also used to restrict the number of connections from client applications and the number of connections for the management of instances.</p> <p>Refer to "When an Instance was Created with the initdb Command" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server, and "Connections and Authentication" in the PostgreSQL Documentation, for details.</p>
superuser_reserved_connections	Add the number of simultaneous executions of mc_ctl status (*1) + 2	<p>Specify the number of connections reserved for connections from database superusers.</p> <p>Add the number of connections from Mirroring Controller processes. Also reflect the added value in the max_connections parameter.</p>
wal_receiver_timeout	Timeout (milliseconds)	<p>Specify the time period after which it is determined that an error has occurred when the transaction log was received on the standby server.</p> <p>By aligning this value with the value for the heartbeat monitoring time of the database process, you can unify the time after which it is determined that an error has occurred.</p>
restart_after_crash	off	<p>If "on" is specified, or the default value is used for this parameter, behavior equivalent to restarting Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres, including crash recovery, will be performed when some server processes end abnormally.</p> <p>However, when database multiplexing monitoring is used, a failover will occur after an error is detected when some server processes end abnormally, and the restart of those server processes is forcibly stopped. Specify "off" to prevent behavior such as this from occurring for no apparent reason.</p>
synchronous_commit	on or remote_apply	<p>Specify up to what position WAL send is to be performed before transaction commit processing returns a normal termination response to a client.</p> <p>Set "on" or "remote_apply" to prevent data loss caused by operating system or server down immediately after a switch or switch.</p>
recovery_target_timeline	latest	<p>Specify "latest" so that the new standby server (original primary server) will follow the new primary server when a switch occurs.</p> <p>This parameter is required when the original primary server is incorporated as a new standby server after the primary server is switched.</p>

\*1: Number of simultaneous executions of the mc\_ctl command in the status mode.

## 2.4.3 Starting Mirroring Controller on the Primary Server

This section explains how to start Mirroring Controller on the primary server.

When the arbitration server is used for automatic degradation, start the Mirroring Controller arbitration process on the arbitration server in advance.

1. Start the Mirroring Controller process.

### Enabling automatic switch/disconnection

As the instance administrator user, execute the mc\_ctl command in start mode.

Example )

```
$ mc_ctl start -M /mcdir/inst1
```

### Disabling automatic switch/disconnection

As the instance administrator user, execute the mc\_ctl command in start mode with the -F option specified.

Example )

```
$ mc_ctl start -M /mcdir/inst1 -F
```

### Note

- When the arbitration server is used for automatic degradation, the database server must connect to the arbitration server, and as a result, Mirroring Controller startup may take longer than when the arbitration server is not used.
- If the parameter for heartbeat monitoring of operating systems or servers set by the arbitration server is greater than parameter for heartbeat monitoring of operating systems and servers of the Mirroring Controller, the Mirroring Controller may fail to start. In this case, check the contents of the message notification and review the parameters for heartbeat monitoring of operating systems or servers for the arbitration server or Mirroring Controller.
- If the heartbeat\_error\_action parameter in *serverIdentifier.conf* is set to "message", even if automatic switch/disconnection is enabled and Mirroring Controller is started, only message output is performed when a heartbeat abnormality is detected during heartbeat monitoring of operating systems and servers - switch/disconnection is not performed.
- Mirroring Controller startup usually fails if the standby server is mistakenly started as the primary server or if the old primary server is not recovered after the switch and is then mistakenly started as the primary server. However, if the admin network is disconnected, then startup does not fail, and both servers may become primary servers. Therefore ensure that the admin network is connected before starting Mirroring Controller.

### Point

- The mc\_ctl command fails if the Mirroring Controller arbitration process has not been started on the arbitration server when the arbitration server is used for automatic degradation. However, if the Mirroring Controller arbitration process cannot be started in advance, it can be started by specifying the --async-connect-arbiter option in the mc\_ctl command.
- After Mirroring Controller is started, automatic switch/disconnection can be enabled or disabled using the enable-failover or disable-failover mode of the mc\_ctl command.

2. Obtain the backup.

Use the pgx\_dmpall command to collect the backup.

## 2.5 Setting Up the Standby Server

---

This section explains how to set up the standby server.

### 2.5.1 Setting Up Database Multiplexing Mode on the Standby Server

---

This section explains how to set up database multiplexing mode on the standby server.

In database multiplexing, the files that are required for operations are managed in the Mirroring Controller management directory.

There is one Mirroring Controller management directory for each instance.



#### Note

- Do not place the Mirroring Controller management directory in a directory managed by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres, otherwise it may be deleted by mistake with the directories managed by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres, and an old version of files may be restored.
- When creating a standby server for a large database, stop job system operations, specify a large value for the `wal_keep_size` parameter, or use replication slots.

This is because WALs generated after the standby server is built using the `pg_basebackup` command, but before it is started, need to be retained. However, the number of WAL segments that can be retained is constrained by the `wal_keep_size` parameter.

Additionally, setting the `wal_keep_size` parameter requires consideration regarding stabilization of the database multiplexing mode (refer to "[2.11.1 Tuning to Stabilize the Database Multiplexing Mode](#)" for details).



#### See

- Refer to "Preparing Directories for Resource Deployment" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server for details on the directories that are managed by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.
- Refer to "`pg_basebackup`" in "Reference" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on the `pg_basebackup` command.
- Refer to "`mc_ctl`" in Reference for information on the command.
- Refer to "[Appendix A Parameters](#)" for details on each parameter to be edited for the setup.
- Refer to "Replication Slots" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on replication slots.

Perform the following procedure:

1. Log in to the standby server.
2. Create the Mirroring Controller management directory that will store the files required by database multiplexing.

Use ASCII characters in the Mirroring Controller management directory.

Additionally, grant "Write" permission to the instance administrator user for the Mirroring Controller management directory.

3. Copy, and then deploy, the `network.conf` file of the primary server.

Copy the `network.conf` file that was defined in the primary server setup, and deploy it to the Mirroring Controller management directory of the standby server.

Set read and write permissions for the instance administrator user only. If users other than the instance administrator user are granted access, the `mc_ctl` command will not work. Accordingly, users other than the instance administrator user are prevented from operating Mirroring Controller.

Register in `/etc/services` the port number of the standby server that was specified in the `network.conf` file, because programs such as WebAdmin use it to search for available port numbers.

Register any name as the service name.



4. Copy, and then deploy, the *serverIdentifier.conf* file of the primary server.

Copy the *serverIdentifier.conf* file that was defined in the primary server setup, and deploy it to the Mirroring Controller management directory of the standby server.

Set read and write permissions for the instance administrator user only. If users other than the instance administrator user are granted access permissions, the *mc\_ctl* command will not work.

## 2.5.2 Creating, Setting, and Registering the Standby Server Instance

This section explains how to create, set, and register the standby server instance.



See

- Refer to "[Appendix A Parameters](#)" for details on each parameter.
- Refer to "*mc\_ctl*" in Reference for information on the command.

Perform the following procedure:

1. Set the kernel parameters.

Refer to "Configuring Kernel Parameters" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server for details.

2. When using transparent data encryption, configure the encryption settings for the storage data.

Refer to "Protecting Storage Data Using Transparent Data Encryption" or "Using Transparent Data Encryption with Key Management Systems as Keystores" in the Operation Guide for details, and then configure the settings.

3. Execute the *pg\_basebackup* command to create a copy of the primary server instance on the standby server.

Example)

```
$ pg_basebackup -D /database/inst1 -X fetch --waldir=/transaction/inst1 --progress --verbose -R
--dbname='application_name=standbyServerName' -h primaryServerIpAddress -p
primaryServerPortNumber
```



Note

- Use the *pg\_basebackup* command with the *-R* option to create a *standby.signal* file. If you do not create the *standby.signal* file, the Mirroring Controller cannot be started as a standby server.
- If using a method that requires password authentication for connections to the primary server, you will need to ensure that authentication is performed automatically. If the *-R* option is specified for the *pg\_basebackup* command and the password parameter is specified for the *--dbname* option, the *pg\_basebackup* command will set the password in the *primary\_conninfo* parameter in *postgresql.auto.conf* file, enabling connections to be performed automatically.

If a password is not set in the *primary\_conninfo* parameter in *postgresql.auto.conf* file, it will be necessary to create a *pgpass* file in the home directory of the instance administrator user, and specify a password for the replication database.

- The *primary\_conninfo* parameter should not be set in the *postgresql.conf* file, but only in the *postgresql.auto.conf* file using the *pg\_basebackup* command.
- When executing the *pg\_basebackup* command, consider the following for collection of transaction logs.
  - When "fetch" is specified for the *-X* option of the command

Transaction logs are collected at the end of the backup, so it is necessary to ensure that transaction logs that occur during backup are not deleted from the primary server. Therefore, allow for a sufficient value for the *wal\_keep\_size* parameter in *postgresql.conf*.

- When the *-X* option is omitted or "stream" is specified for the *-X* option of the command

Transaction logs are streamed, so when Mirroring Controller is running on the primary server, the connection is changed to a synchronous standby server on detection of a streaming replication connection using this command. Therefore, if a job has

started on the primary server, the primary server will be impacted, therefore execute this command after stopping only the Mirroring Controller process on the primary server.



See

Refer to "Hot Standby" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on the standby.signal file.

4. Set the parameters shown in the table below in the postgresql.conf file.

Table 2.5 Parameters

Parameter	Content specified	Remarks
synchronous_standby_names	<i>'primaryServerName'</i>	Required after switching the primary server and then changing the original primary server to the new standby server.  Enclose the name in single quotation marks (').  Do not change this parameter while Mirroring Controller is running.  Do not specify multiple names to this parameter as the Mirroring Controller can manage only one standby server.

### 2.5.3 Starting Mirroring Controller on the Standby Server

This section explains how to start Mirroring Controller on the standby server.

When the arbitration server is used for automatic degradation, start the Mirroring Controller arbitration process on the arbitration server in advance.

1. After ensuring that the Mirroring Controller process of the primary server has started, start Mirroring Controller on the standby server.

#### Enabling automatic switch/disconnection

As the instance administrator user, execute the mc\_ctl command in start mode with the -f option specified. This action enables automatic switch/disconnection.

If you start Mirroring Controller and the instance without specifying the -f option, automatic switch/disconnection will not be enabled. To enable both, start Mirroring Controller and then execute the mc\_ctl command in enable-failover mode or restart Mirroring Controller with the -f option specified.

Example)

```
$ mc_ctl start -M /mcdir/inst1
```

#### Disabling automatic switch/disconnection

As the instance administrator user, execute the mc\_ctl command in start mode with the -F option specified.

Example)

```
$ mc_ctl start -M /mcdir/inst1 -F
```

2. Check the status of the Mirroring Controller process.

As the instance administrator user, execute the mc\_ctl command in status mode. Ensure that "mirroring status" is switchable.

Example)

```
$ mc_ctl status -M /mcdir/inst1
```



## Note

- When the arbitration server is used for automatic degradation, the time required for the database server to connect to the arbitration server is added on. Therefore, Mirroring Controller startup may take longer than when the arbitration server is not used.
- If the parameter for heartbeat monitoring of operating systems or servers set by the arbitration server is greater than parameter for heartbeat monitoring of operating systems and servers of the Mirroring Controller, the Mirroring Controller may fail to start. In this case, check the contents of the message notification and review the parameters for heartbeat monitoring of operating systems or servers for the arbitration server or Mirroring Controller.
- If the heartbeat\_error\_action parameter in *serverIdentifier.conf* is set to "message", even if automatic switch/disconnection is enabled and Mirroring Controller is started, only message output is performed when a heartbeat abnormality is detected during heartbeat monitoring of operating systems and servers - switch/disconnection is not performed.
- Mirroring Controller startup usually fails if the standby server is mistakenly started as the primary server or if the old primary server is not recovered after the switch and is then mistakenly started as the primary server. However, if the admin network is disconnected, then startup does not fail, and both servers may become primary servers. Therefore, ensure that the admin network is connected before starting Mirroring Controller.



## Point

- The mc\_ctl command fails if the Mirroring Controller arbitration process has not been started on the arbitration server when the arbitration server is used for automatic degradation. However, if the Mirroring Controller arbitration process cannot be started in advance, it can be started by specifying the --async-connect-arbiter option in the mc\_ctl command.
- After Mirroring Controller is started, automatic switch/disconnection can be enabled or disabled using the enable-failover or disable-failover mode of the mc\_ctl command.

## 2.6 Creating a User Exit for a Database Server

This section explains how to create a user exit for a database server.

The user command types explained below can be used as user exits. These commands are called by Mirroring Controller management processes.

The user can create user exits as required.

Specify the user commands that were created for the parameters in the server configuration file of the database server. Refer to "[A.4.1 Server Configuration File for the Database Servers](#)" for information on these parameters.

### User command types

- Fencing command

This user command performs fencing if Mirroring Controller performs arbitration processing and determines that a database server is unstable.

- Arbitration command

This user command performs arbitration processing in lieu of the arbitration server when there is no arbitration server.

- State transition commands

These user commands are called when Mirroring Controller performs state transition of a database server.

It includes the following types:

- Post-switch command

This user command is called after a promotion from standby server to primary server.

- Pre-detach command

This user command is called before the standby server is disconnected from a cluster system.

If the pre-detach command is specified on both the primary server and standby server, it is called first on the standby server and then on the primary server.

If the settings are configured to forcibly stop the instance on the standby server when the standby server is disconnected, the pre-detach command is called on the standby server and then the instance on the standby server is stopped.

- Post-attach command

This user command is called after the standby server has been attached to a cluster system.

If the post-attach command is specified on both the primary server and standby server, it is called first on the primary server and then on the standby server.

## Point

When the arbitration server is used for automatic degradation and the requirements can be satisfied using the fencing command on the arbitration server only, the fencing command on the database server is not required. In addition, if the requirements can be satisfied using the fencing command on the database server only, create a fencing command on the arbitration server for termination processing only (without implementation).

Table 2.6 Availability of user commands, and database server calling the command

User command	Operation when a heartbeat abnormality is detected using operating system or server heartbeat monitoring				Database server calling the command	
	Message output	Automatic degradation by arbitration server	Automatic degradation by arbitration command	Unconditional automatic degradation	Primary server	Standby server
Fencing command	Y (*1)	Y (*2)	R	N	Y	Y
Arbitration command	N	N	R	N	Y	Y
Post-switch command	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	N
Pre-detach command	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y (*3)
Post-attach command	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y (*3)

R: Required

Y: Can be used

N: Cannot be used

\*1: Called only when the mc\_ctl command is used to execute forced switching or forced disconnection.

\*2: Creation of a fencing command on a database server is optional, but it must be created on the arbitration server.

\*3: If message output or unconditional automatic degradation is selected, this command is called only from the primary server.

## See

Refer to "[Appendix C User Commands](#)" for information on the interface for each user command.

## 2.7 Confirming the Streaming Replication Status

Before performing the setup of the database multiplexing mode, ensure that the prerequisite streaming replication feature has been set up correctly.

Perform the following procedure:

1. On the primary server, ensure that single-row searches can be performed using the `pg_stat_replication` statistics view.

An example output of the `psql` command is shown below.

Example)

```
postgres=# select * from pg_stat_replication;
-[ RECORD 1 ]-----
pid           | 10651
usesysid      | 10
username      | fsep
application_name | standby
client_addr   | 192.0.2.210
client_hostname |
client_port   | 55098
backend_start  | 2022-03-23 11:17:49.628793+09
backend_xmin   |
state         | streaming
sent_lsn      | 0/3000060
write_lsn     | 0/3000060
flush_lsn     | 0/3000060
replay_lsn    | 0/3000060
write_lag     |
flush_lag     |
replay_lag    |
sync_priority  | 1
sync_state    | sync
reply_time    | 2022-03-23 11:23:27.703366+09
```

2. Confirm the search results of step 1.

Ensure that the connection established with the intended standby server is in synchronous mode.

Table 2.7 Items to be checked

Item	Required value
application_name	Value specified for <code>synchronous_standby_names</code> parameter in the <code>postgresql.conf</code> file of the primary server.
client_addr	IP address of the standby server.
state	"streaming".
sync_state	"sync".



See

- Refer to "The Statistics Collector" in "Server Administration" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on the `pg_stat_replication` statistics view.
- Note that the `pg_stat_replication` statistics view may change in the future.

## 2.8 Checking the Connection Status

This section explains how to check the connection status from a database server or the arbitration server.

### 2.8.1 Checking the Connection Status on a Database Server

This section explains how to use a database server to check the connection status of the Mirroring Controller arbitration process and the Mirroring Controller process on the primary server and standby server.

Perform the following procedure:

1. On the primary server and standby server, execute the mc\_ctl command in status mode with the --arbiter option specified.

Example)

The mc\_ctl command is executed with the --arbiter option specified, and the status is output.

```
$ mc_ctl status --arbiter -M /mcdir/inst1

arbiter_id  host          status
-----
arbiter     192.0.3.120   online
```

2. On the primary server and standby server, check the result displayed by executing the mc\_ctl command in status mode in step 1.

Items to be checked

Check that the output status" is "online".



See

Refer to the Reference for information on the mc\_ctl command.

## 2.8.2 Checking the Connection Status on the Arbitration Server

This section explains how to use the arbitration server to check the connection status of the Mirroring Controller arbitration process and the Mirroring Controller process on the primary server and standby server.

Perform the following procedure:

1. Execute the mc\_arb command in status mode on the arbitration server.

The example below executes the mc\_arb command, and shows the status.

Linux

Example)

```
$ mc_arb status -M /mcarb_dir/arbiter1

server_id  host          status
-----
server1    192.0.3.100   online
server2    192.0.3.110   online
```

Windows

Example)

```
> mc_arb status -M D:\mcarb_dir\arbiter1

server_id  host          status
-----
server1    192.0.3.100   online
server2    192.0.3.110   online
```

2. Check the result displayed by executing the mc\_arb command in step 1.

Items to be checked

Check that the output status is "online" on both lines.



See

Refer to the Reference for information on the mc\_arb command.

## 2.9 Creating Applications

This section explains how to create applications using database multiplexing, and points that should be noted when you create the applications.

### 2.9.1 Application Connection Server Settings

If database multiplexing is used and a failover occurs, it will be necessary to switch the application connection server. Accordingly, use the application connection switch feature to create applications.



See

Refer to "Application Connection Switch Feature" in the Application Development Guide for details.

## 2.10 Checking the Behavior

To check if the environment setup was performed correctly, start the application and then check the behavior of the switch and rebuild.

## 2.11 Tuning

This section explains how to tune database multiplexing mode.

### 2.11.1 Tuning to Stabilize the Database Multiplexing Mode

When large amounts of data are updated, the write-to load for the database will become great, and the multiplexing state may become unstable.

Accordingly, by editing the parameters below in the postgresql.conf file, a stable multiplexing state can be maintained. Refer to "Estimating Transaction Log Space Requirements" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server for information on transaction log space requirements.

Table 2.8 Parameters

Parameter	Content
wal_keep_size	Refer to "2.4.2 Creating, Setting, and Registering the Primary Server Instance" for details.
max_wal_size	<p>The transaction log is written out according to the checkpoint trigger.</p> <p>If a transaction log with the capacity of the value specified in this parameter is generated, the checkpoint will be executed.</p> <p>If a large value is specified in this parameter, the time required for crash recovery will increase.</p> <p>If a small value is specified in this parameter, many checkpoints will be generated, which will affect the performance of the applications that connect to the primary server.</p>

### 2.11.2 Tuning to Stabilize Queries on the Standby Server

Queries made using reference jobs on the standby server may be canceled by jobs executed on the primary server.

To reduce the possibility of a job being canceled, specify as large a value as possible for the max\_standby\_archive\_delay parameter in the postgresql.conf file.



See

- Refer to "Handling Query Conflicts" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for details.
- Refer to "Standby Servers" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for details on the max\_standby\_archive\_delay parameter.

### 2.11.3 Tuning to Stabilize Queries on the Standby Server (when Performing Frequent Updates on the Primary Server)

If jobs are updated on the primary server regularly and frequently, it will be easy for the query made by the reference job on the standby server to be canceled. In this case, edit one of the postgresql.conf file parameters shown in the table below.

Table 2.9 Parameters

Parameter	Description
hot_standby_feedback	When "on" is set, the deletion (vacuum) of the data area that was deleted or updated on the primary server is suppressed. Accordingly, the query on the standby server will not be canceled. (*1)
vacuum_defer_cleanup_age	The deletion (vacuum) of the data area that was deleted or updated on the primary server is delayed until the specified number of transactions is processed. Accordingly, the probability that the query on the standby server will be canceled decreases.

\*1: Because the vacuum is delayed, the data storage destination disk space of the primary server comes under pressure.

Additionally, if there is conflict between accesses and queries executed on the standby server, transaction logs indicating this conflict will be transferred.

Accordingly, specify as large a value as possible for the max\_standby\_archive\_delay parameter so that access conflicts do not occur.



See

- Refer to "Standby Servers" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for details on the hot\_standby\_feedback parameter.
- Refer to "Primary Server" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for details on the vacuum\_defer\_cleanup\_age parameter.

### 2.11.4 Tuning for Optimization of Degradation Using Abnormality Monitoring

Mirroring Controller uses a monitoring method that outputs an error if the timeout or number of retries is exceeded when accessing resources targeted for monitoring. Setting inappropriate values in these settings may lead to misdetection or a delay in automatic degradation, so you must design these values appropriately.

For example, the following type of issue occurs if the tuning related to abnormality monitoring is not performed appropriately.

- If the timeout is too short  
Results in redundant degradation and availability falls.
- If the timeout is too long  
It takes longer for automatic degradation to be performed even when an error affecting operational continuity occurs, potentially causing downtime.

You can optimize degrading operation by editing the values for the parameters in the server configuration file described below in accordance with the system. Refer to "A.4 Server Configuration File" for information on how to edit these parameters.

#### 2.11.4.1 Tuning for Abnormality Monitoring of the Operating System or Server

Tuning for abnormal monitoring of the operating system or server depends on the operation when heartbeat abnormality is detected by the heartbeat monitoring of operating systems or servers.





See

Refer to "1.1.1 Monitoring Using Database Multiplexing Mode" for the operation when heartbeat abnormality is detected in the the heartbeat monitoring of operating systems or servers.

#### 2.11.4.1.1 Tuning Abnormality Monitoring for Operations that Use an Arbitration Server for Automatic Degradation

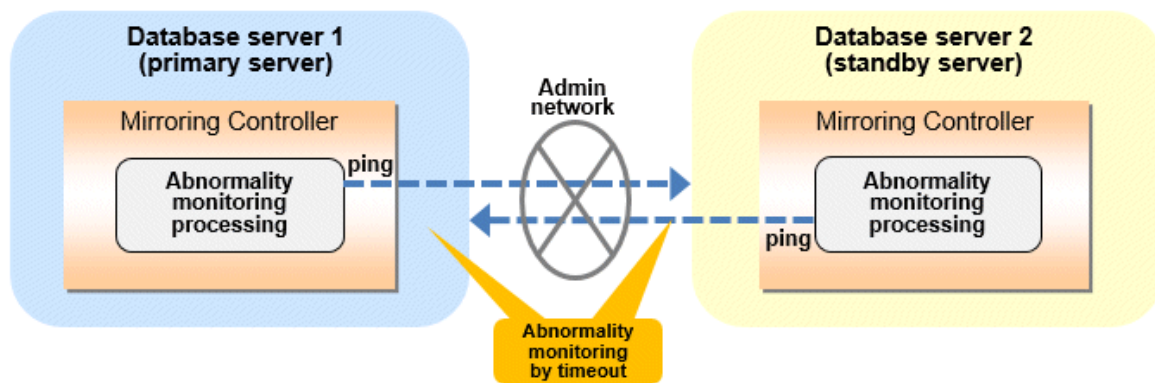
In an operation that use an arbitration server for automatic degradation, the database server is periodically monitored for abnormalities so that the Mirroring Controller arbitration process can immediately respond to an arbitration request from the Mirroring Controller. The automatic degradation using the arbitration server can optimize the time from error detection to automatic degradation of the operating systems or servers by editing the following parameters.

- Parameters for the abnormality monitoring of the operating system or server in the server configuration file of the database server
- Parameters for the abnormality monitoring of the operating system or server in the arbitration configuration file
- Parameters for the arbitration processing and fencing

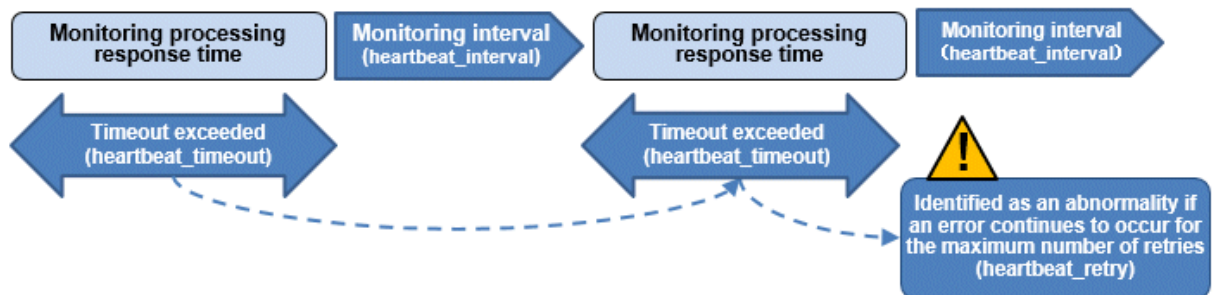
#### Parameters for the abnormality monitoring of the operating system or server in the server configuration file of the database server

Table 2.10 Parameters for the abnormality monitoring of the operating system or server in the server configuration file of the database server

Parameter	Description
Abnormality monitoring interval (heartbeat_interval)	Mirroring Controller is configured so that abnormality monitoring does not place a load on the system. This parameter does not normally need to be set. (The default is 800 milliseconds.)
Abnormality monitoring timeout (heartbeat_timeout)	Take into account the time during which a load is placed continuously on the server or admin network performance. For example, it is envisaged that this parameter will be used in situations such as when performing high-load batch jobs or when a large number of online jobs occur continuously and concurrently. (The default is 1 second.)
Abnormality monitoring retries (heartbeat_retry)	This parameter can be set when needing a safety value for situations in which the value specified for heartbeat_timeout is exceeded, for example, when using systems with fluctuating loads, however, this parameter does not normally need to be set. (The default is 2 times.)



Flow of abnormality monitoring by timeout



The expression for calculating the time required to detect an abnormality by Mirroring Controller is shown below.

$$\text{Abnormality detection time of Mirroring Controller} = (\text{heartbeat\_timeout}(\text{seconds}) + \text{heartbeat\_interval}(\text{milliseconds}) / 1000) \times (\text{heartbeat\_retry}(\text{number of times}) + 1)$$

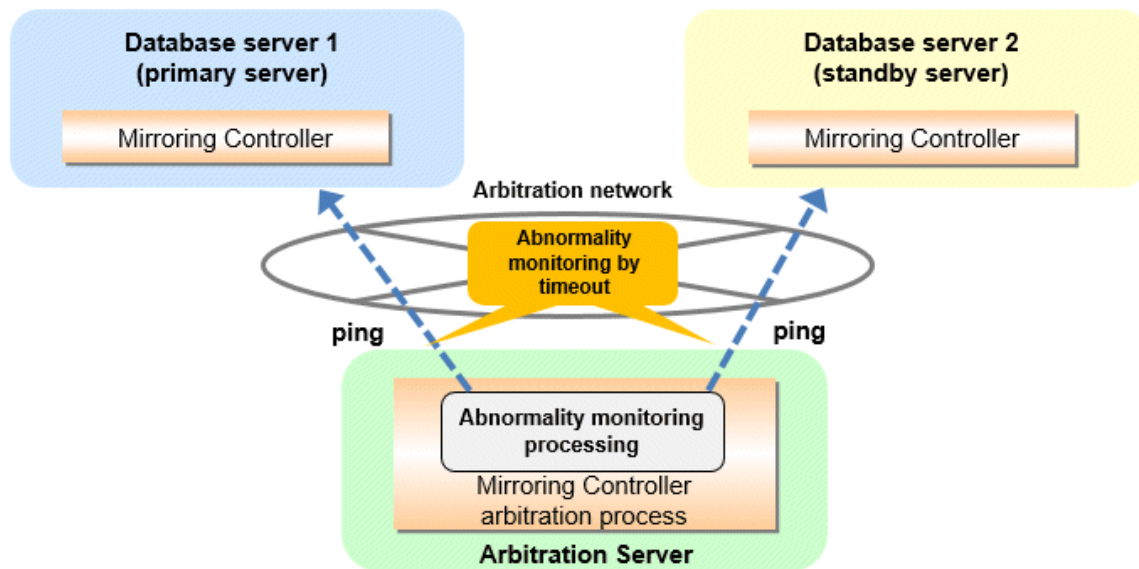
The abnormality detection time when the default value is used is shown below.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Abnormality detection time of Mirroring Controller} &= (1 + 800 / 1000) \times (2 + 1) \\ &= 5.4(\text{seconds}) \end{aligned}$$

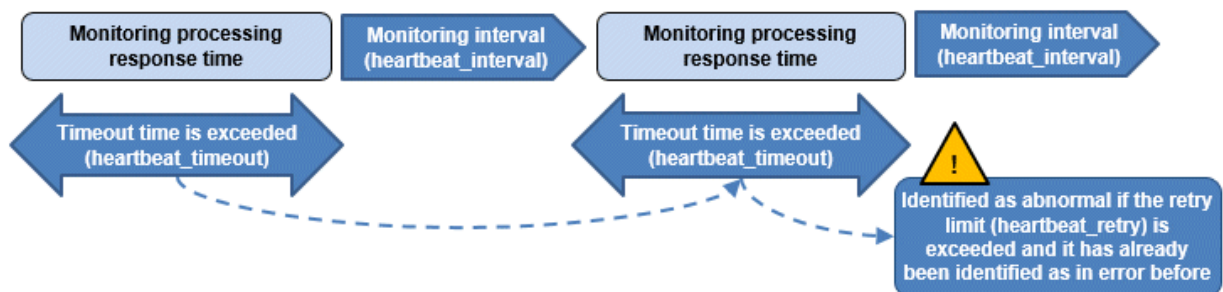
## Parameters for the abnormality monitoring of the operating system or server in the arbitration configuration file

Table 2.11 Parameters for the abnormality monitoring of the operating system or server in the arbitration configuration file

Parameter	Description
Abnormality monitoring interval (heartbeat_interval)	Mirroring Controller arbitration process is configured so that abnormality monitoring does not place a load on the system. This parameter does not normally need to be set. (The default is the value set in heartbeat_interval in the server configuration file of the database server.) (milliseconds).
Abnormality monitoring timeout (heartbeat_timeout)	Take into account the time during which a load is placed continuously on the server and arbitration network capabilities. (The default is the value set in heartbeat_timeout in the server configuration file of the database server.) (seconds).
Abnormality monitoring retries (heartbeat_retry)	This parameter can be set when needing a safety value for situations in which the value specified for heartbeat_timeout is exceeded, for example, when using systems with fluctuating loads, however, this parameter does not normally need to be set. (The default is the value set in heartbeat_retry in the server configuration file of the database server.) (number of times)



Flow of abnormality monitoring by timeout



The expression for calculating the time required to detect an abnormality by Mirroring Controller arbitration process is shown below.

Abnormality detection time of Mirroring Controller arbitration process = ( heartbeat\_timeout(seconds) + heartbeat\_interval(milliseconds) / 1000 ) x ( heartbeat\_retry(number of times) + 1 )

The abnormality detection time when the default value is used is shown below.

Abnormality detection time of Mirroring Controller arbitration process = ( 1 + 800 / 1000 ) x ( 2 + 1 ) = 5.4(seconds)

### Point

The abnormality detection time of the operation for automatic degradation using the arbitration server can be calculated as follows.

Abnormality detection time = Max( Abnormality detection time by Mirroring Controller, Abnormality detection time by Mirroring Controller arbitration process )

### Note

If the heartbeat\_interval is set in the arbitration configuration file, the relationship between the parameter for operating system or server abnormality monitoring specified in the server configuration file of the database server file and the heartbeat\_interval of the arbitration configuration file must satisfy the following relational expression.

```
Heartbeat_interval in the arbitration configuration file (milliseconds) / 1000 ) <
( heartbeat_timeout(seconds) + heartbeat_interval(milliseconds) / 1000 ) * heartbeat_retry(number of
times) + heartbeat_timeout(seconds)
```

## Parameters for the arbitration processing and fencing

Table 2.12 Parameters for the arbitration processing and fencing

Parameter	Description
Arbitration processing timeout (arbitration_timeout in the server configuration file of the database server)	Take into account the time to perform arbitration processing on the Mirroring Controller arbitration process. The value must be greater than or equal to abnormality detection time of Mirroring Controller arbitration process + fencing_command_timeout in the arbitration configuration file (seconds).
Fencing timeout (fencing_command_timeout in the arbitration configuration file)	Take into account the time to execute the fencing command (seconds).

## Flow from the abnormality detection to the automatic degeneracy

When performing automatic degradation using the arbitration server, the flow from the abnormality detection in the operating system or server to the occurrence of automatic degeneracy and the parameters is shown below.

Flow from the abnormality detection to the automatic degeneracy	Description	Parameter	
(1) Abnormality detection	Mirroring Controller detect the database server operating system or server errors.	Parameters for the abnormality monitoring of the operating system or server in the server configuration file of the database server	
(2) Arbitration request	Mirroring Controller that detect the operating system or server error asks the Arbitration Server to check the status of the other server's operating system or server.	-	arbitration_timeout in the server configuration file of the database server
(3) Arbitration processing	The Mirroring Controller arbitration process checks the status of the other server's operating system or server. However, if the result of the operating system or server abnormality monitoring by the arbitration server has been determined before the arbitration request from the Mirroring Controller of the database server, this process is not performed.	Parameters for the abnormality monitoring of the operating system or server in the arbitration configuration file	
(4) Fencing	If the Mirroring Controller arbitration process determines that the other server is an anomaly of the operating system or server, it fences the other server and isolates it from the cluster system. If the Mirroring Controller arbitration process determines that the operating system or server status is normal, this process and the (6) are not performed.	fencing_command_timeout in the arbitration configuration file	
(5) Return of the arbitration results	Returns the results of the arbitration to the Mirroring Controller of the database server that requested the arbitration.	-	

Flow from the abnormality detection to the automatic degeneracy	Description	Parameter
(6) Automatic degradation	The automatic degradation is performed. If fencing fails in (4), this procedure is not performed.	-

-: No associated parameters

### Note

If the `fencing_command` parameter is specified in the server configuration file of the database server, the fencing command is invoked on the database server if fencing is successful on the arbitration server. In that case, add the value of the `fencing_command_timeout` parameter in the server configuration file of the database server to the estimate.

Figure 2.1 When the Mirroring Controller on the primary server detects an operating system or server error

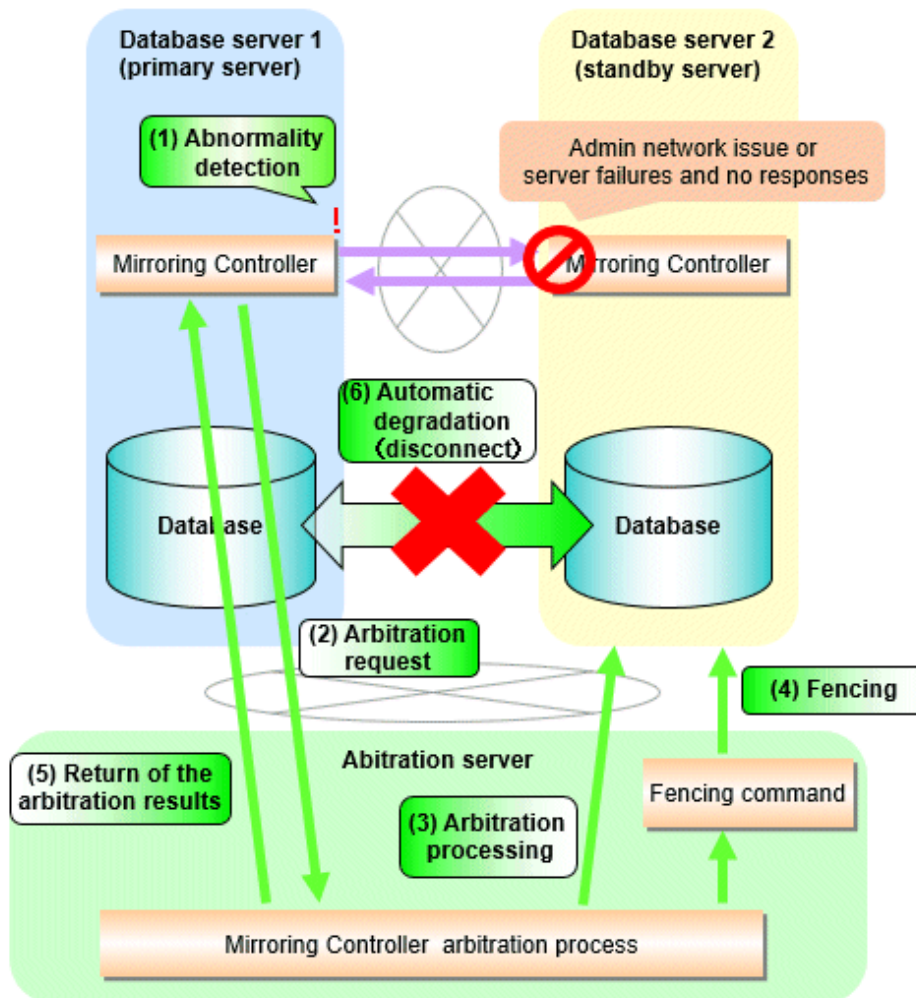
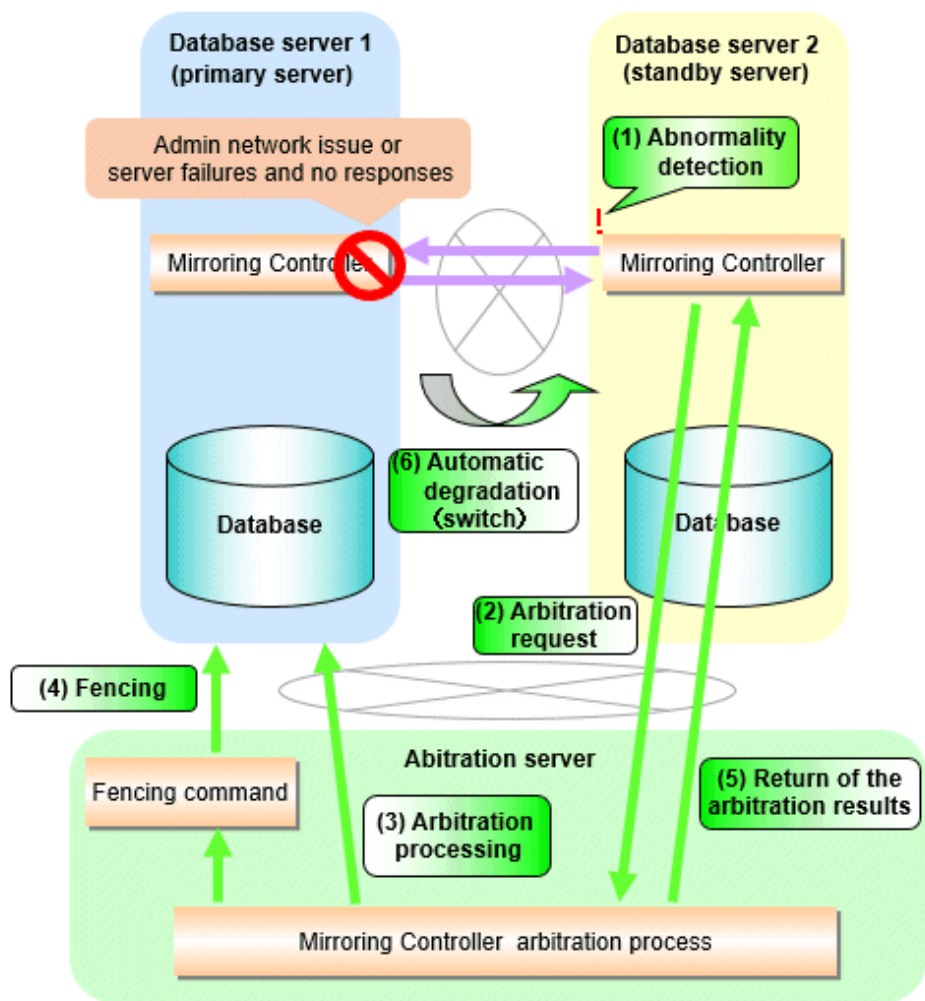


Figure 2.2 When the Mirroring Controller on the standby server detects an operating system or server error



### 2.11.4.1.2 Tuning Abnormality Monitoring for Operations that Perform Automatic Degradation by Calling a User Exit that Determines Degradation

In an operation that perform automatic degradation by calling a user exit that determines degradation, you can optimize the time from operating system or server abnormality detection to automatic degradation by editing the operating system or server abnormality monitoring parameters and parameters related to arbitration processing and fencing in the server configuration file of the database server. Refer to ["Parameters for the abnormality monitoring of the operating system or server in the server configuration file of the database server"](#) for information on the operating system or server abnormality monitoring parameters in the server configuration file of the database server.

Table 2.13 Parameters for the arbitration processing and fencing

Parameter	Description
Arbitration processing timeout (arbitration_command_timeout)	Take into account the time to execute the arbitration command(seconds).
Fencing timeout (fencing_command_timeout)	Take into account the time to execute the fencing command (seconds).

### Flow from the abnormality detection to the automatic degeneracy

When performing automatic degradation by calling a user exit that determines degradation, the flow from the abnormality detection in the operating system or server to the occurrence of automatic degeneracy and the parameters is shown below.



Flow from the abnormality detection to the automatic degeneracy	Description	Parameter
(1) Abnormality detection	Mirroring Controller detect the database server operating system or server errors.	Parameters for the abnormality monitoring of the operating system or server in the server configuration file of the database server
(2) Arbitration processing	An arbitration command is executed to check the status of the other server's operating system or server.	arbitration_command_timeout in the server configuration file of the database server
(3) Fencing	If the operating system or server status of the other server is abnormal in (2), it fences the other server and isolates it from the cluster system. If the operating system or server status of the other server is normal in (2), this process and (4) are not executed.	fencing_command_timeout in the server configuration file of the database server
(4) Automatic degradation	The automatic degradation is performed. If fencing fails in (3), this procedure is not performed.	-

-: No associated parameters

Figure 2.3 When the Mirroring Controller on the primary server detects an operating system or server error

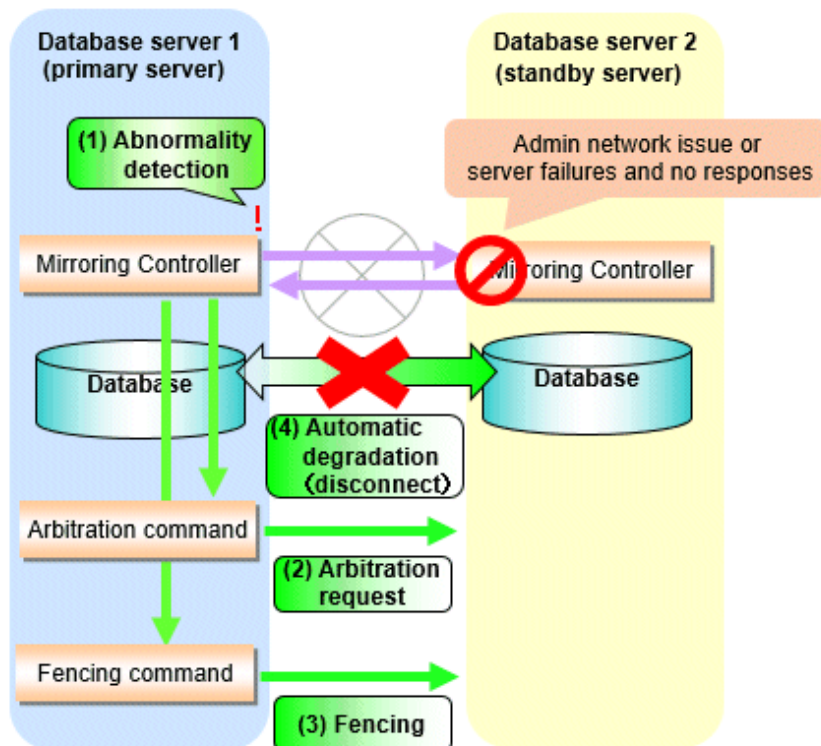
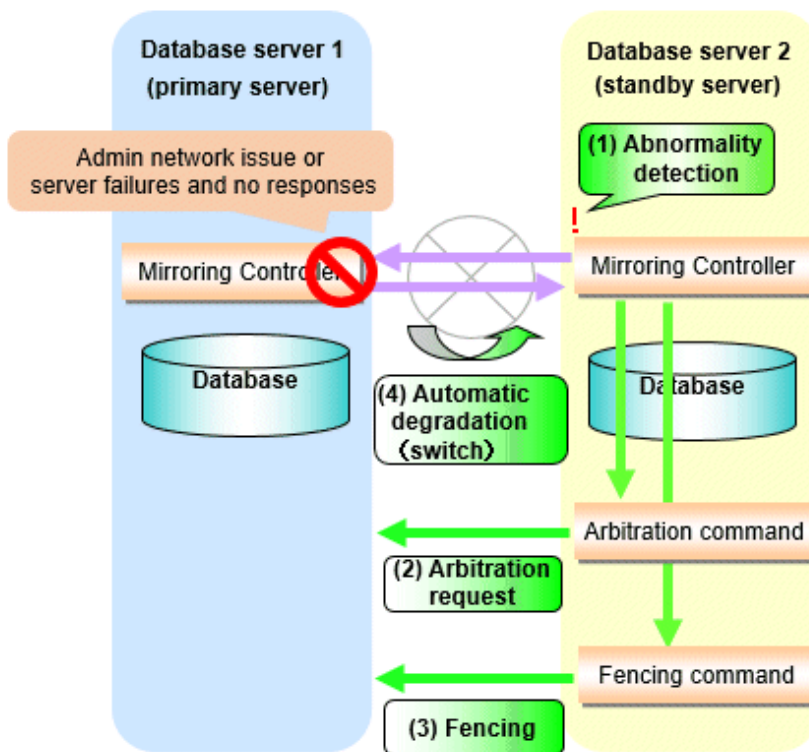


Figure 2.4 When the Mirroring Controller on the standby server detects an operating system or server error



#### 2.11.4.1.3 Tuning Abnormality Monitoring for Operations that Notify Messages

In an operation that notify messages, you can optimize the abnormality detection time by editing the operating system or server abnormality monitoring parameters in the server configuration file of the database server. Refer to "[Parameters for the abnormality monitoring of the operating system or server in the server configuration file of the database server](#)" for information on the operating system or server abnormality monitoring parameters in the server configuration file of the database server. In addition, when the Mirroring Controller detects an error, it does not perform the arbitration processing, fencing, or automatic degradation, but only notification messages is performed.

#### 2.11.4.1.4 Tuning Abnormality Monitoring for Operations that Perform Automatic Degenerate Unconditionally due to Heartbeat Abnormality

In an operation that perform automatic degenerate unconditionally due to heartbeat abnormality, you can optimize the time from operating system or server abnormality detection to automatic degradation by editing the operating system or server abnormality monitoring parameters in the server configuration file of the database server. Refer to "[Parameters for the abnormality monitoring of the operating system or server in the server configuration file of the database server](#)" for information on the operating system or server abnormality monitoring parameters in the server configuration file of the database server. In addition, when the Mirroring Controller detects an error, it does not perform the arbitration processing, fencing, or automatic degradation, but only automatic degenerate unconditionally is performed.



#### Note

Refer to "[Appendix D Notes on Performing Automatic Degradation Immediately after a Heartbeat Abnormality](#)" for notes on the operation that perform automatic degenerate unconditionally due to heartbeat abnormality.

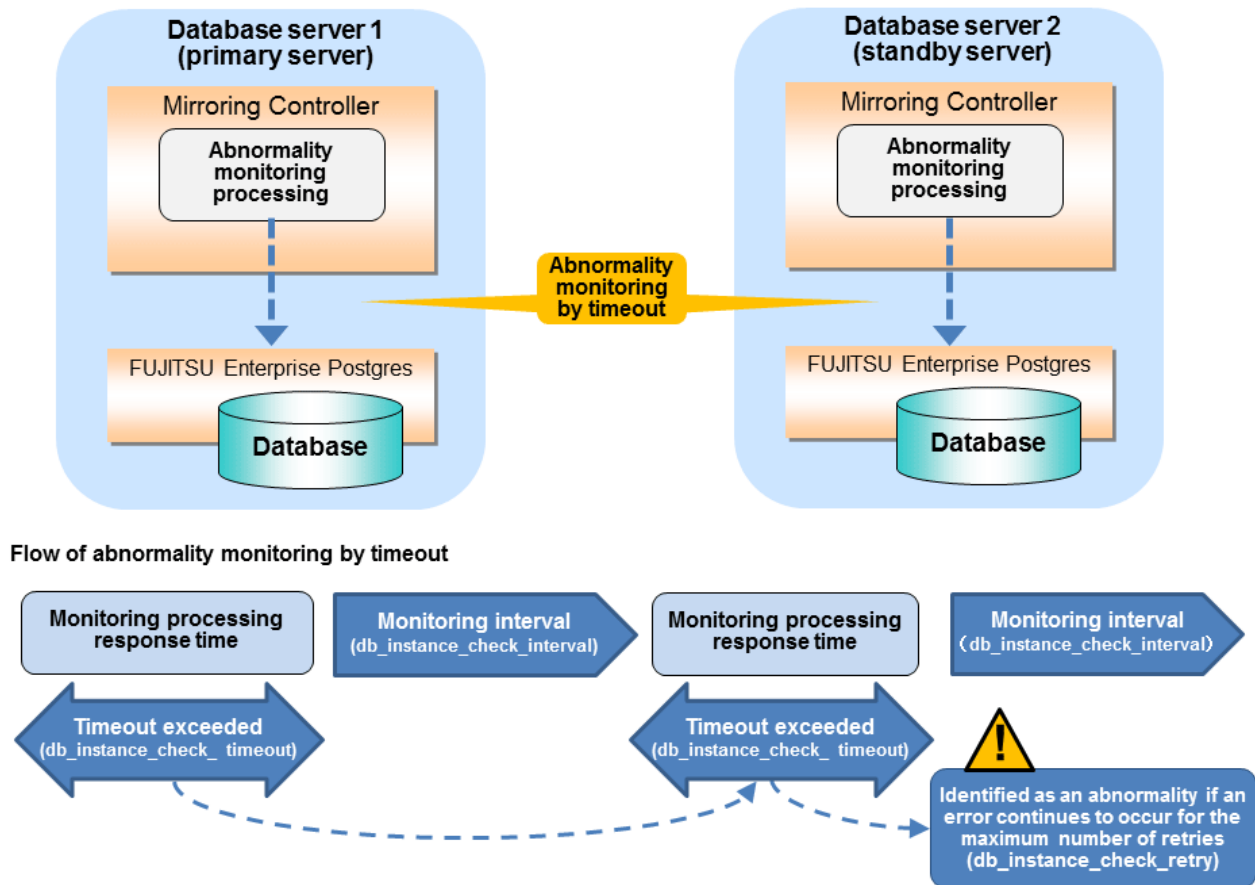


## 2.11.4.2 Tuning for Abnormality Monitoring of Database Processes

You can optimize database processes abnormality monitoring by editing the following parameters in the server configuration file of the database server.

Table 2.14 Parameters for abnormality monitoring of database processes

Parameter	Description
Abnormality monitoring interval (db_instance_check_interval)	Abnormality monitoring by Mirroring Controller is set so as not to place load on the system, but normally it does not need to be set. (The default is the value set in heartbeat_interval.) (milliseconds)
Timeout for abnormality monitoring of database processes (db_instance_check_timeout)	Take into account the time during which a load is placed continuously on the database. For example, it is envisaged that this parameter will be used in situations such as when performing high-load batch jobs or when a large number of online jobs occur continuously and concurrently. (The default is the value set in heartbeat_timeout.) (seconds)
Abnormality monitoring retries (db_instance_check_retry)	This parameter can be set when needing a safety value for situations in which the value specified for db_instance_check_timeout is exceeded, for example, when using systems with fluctuating loads, however, this parameter does not normally need to be set. (The default is the value set in heartbeat_retry.) (number of times)



The expression for calculating the time required to detect an abnormality is shown below.

$$\text{Abnormality detection time} = ( \text{db\_instance\_check\_timeout}(\text{seconds}) + \text{db\_instance\_check\_interval}(\text{milliseconds}) / 1000 ) \times ( \text{db\_instance\_check\_retry}(\text{number of times}) + 1 )$$

The abnormality detection time when the default value is used is shown below.

```
Abnormality detection time = ( 1 + 800 / 1000 ) x ( 2 + 1 )  
= 5.4(seconds)
```

### Note

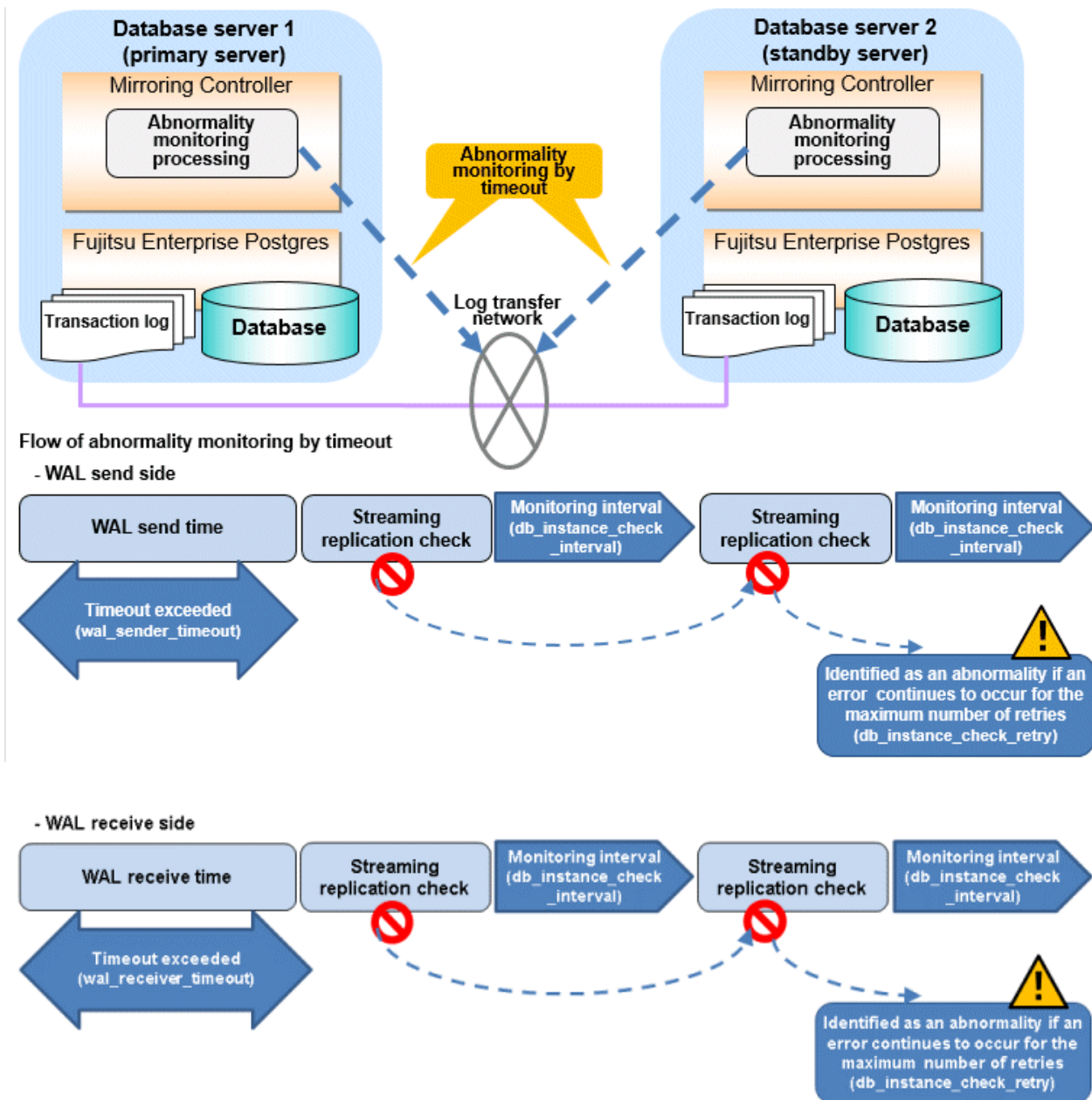
- If the `db_instance_timeout_action` parameter in `serverIdentifier.conf` is set to "message", and the `db_instance_check_timeout` parameter is set to a short value, a crash of the database process will be detected as "no response", and it may take time for automatic degradation to occur. Therefore, specify an appropriate timeout for `db_instance_check_timeout`.
- If a high load on the database and an event that prevents connection to an instance occur at the same time, it is judged as abnormal without retrying monitoring.

## 2.11.4.3 Tuning for Abnormality Monitoring of Streaming Replication

You can optimize streaming replication abnormality monitoring by editing the following parameters in the server configuration file of the database server.

Table 2.15 Parameters for abnormality monitoring of streaming replication

Parameter	Description
Abnormality monitoring interval ( <code>db_instance_check_interval</code> )	Abnormality monitoring by Mirroring Controller is set so as not to place load on the system, but normally it does not need to be set. (The default is the value set in <code>heartbeat_interval</code> .) (milliseconds)
Abnormality monitoring retries ( <code>db_instance_check_retry</code> )	This parameter can be set when needing a safety value, such as when it is anticipated that a temporary log transfer LAN error may occur, but it does not normally need to be set. (The default is the value set in <code>heartbeat_retry</code> .) (number of times)
Timeout for abnormality monitoring of streaming replication ( <code>wal_sender_timeout</code> and <code>wal_receiver_timeout</code> in <code>postgresql.conf</code> )	Take into account the capacity and load of the log transfer network and the time during which a load is placed continuously on the database. For example, if there is a succession of data update jobs that generate a high WAL volume, you must configure the settings to avoid misdetection. (The default is 60 seconds.)



The expression for calculating the time required to detect an abnormality is shown below.

```
Abnormality detection time = ( wal_sender_timeout(seconds) +
db_instance_check_interval(milliseconds) / 1000 x ( disk_check_retry(number of times) + 1 ) ) Or,
= ( wal_receiver_timeout(seconds) + db_instance_check_interval(milliseconds) / 1000 x
( disk_check_retry(number of times) + 1 ) )
```

The abnormality detection time when the default value is used is shown below.

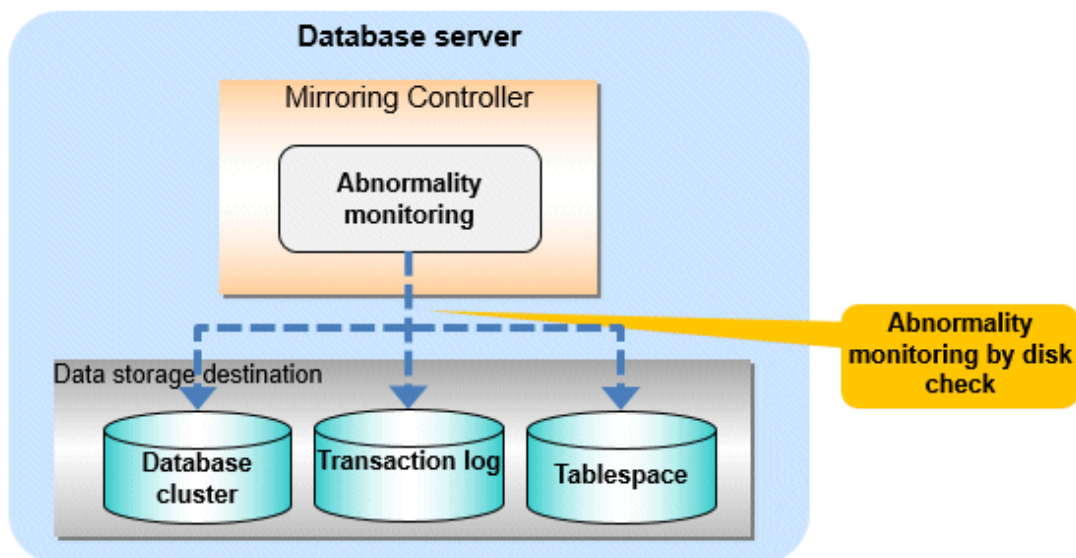
```
Abnormality detection time = 60 + (800 / 1000 x ( 2 + 1 ))
= 62.4(seconds)
```

#### 2.11.4.4 Tuning for Disk Abnormality Monitoring

You can optimize disk abnormality monitoring by editing the following parameters in the server configuration file of the database server.

Table 2.16 Parameters for disk abnormality monitoring

Parameter	Description
Abnormality monitoring interval (disk_check_interval)	Abnormality monitoring by Mirroring Controller is set so as not to place load on the system, but normally it does not need to be set. Set a value larger than the disk access time. (The default is the value set in heartbeat_interval.) (milliseconds)
Abnormality monitoring retries (disk_check_retry)	This parameter can be set when needing a safety value, such as when it is anticipated that a temporary disk input/output error may occur, but normally it does not need to be set. (The default is the value set in heartbeat_retry.) (number of times)
Abnormality monitoring timeout time (disk_check_timeout)	The time allowed from the start time of the next disk_check_interval after a disk error occurs until the error is determined to be due to timeout. (The default is 2147483.) (seconds).  You can specify an integer between 0 and 2147483.
Upper limit on the number of threads used for abnormality monitoring (disk_check_max_threads)	Upper limit on the number of threads for disk monitoring. (The default is the number of processors available to the JVM.)  You can specify an integer between 1 and 2147483647, but setting a value greater than the threads available on the machine may result in a system error.  When you run the mc_ctl status command separately from the monitoring process, each mc_ctl status temporarily uses the same number of threads as the monitoring process. When setting disk_check_max_threads, consider the machine's thread limit, the number of tablespaces you plan to use, and the number of mc_ctl status commands that may be executed at the same time.



In disk error monitoring, a disk check is performed, and degradation is performed when an error is first detected within the error detection time or the time set in disk\_check\_timeout. However, in order to disconnect the standby server when disk\_check\_timeout detects an error on the standby server, shutdown\_detached\_synchronous\_standby must be set to on.

The following shows how to calculate the abnormality detection time (the time until an error is determined).

```
Abnormality detection time = disk_check_interval (milliseconds) / 1000 x ( disk_check_retry(number of times) + 1 )
```

The abnormality detection time when the default value is used is shown below.

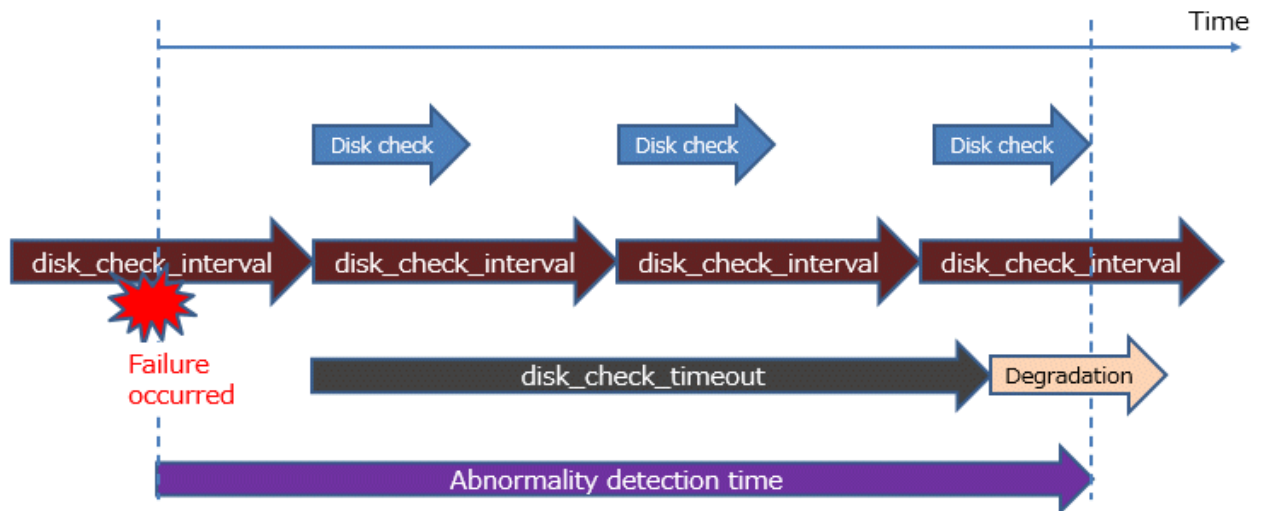
```
Abnormality detection time = 800 / 1000 x ( 2 + 1 )
= 2.4(seconds)
```

An example of detecting disk abnormality monitoring is shown below.

#### Example 1)

One thread monitors one disk, set `disk_check_retry = 2`.

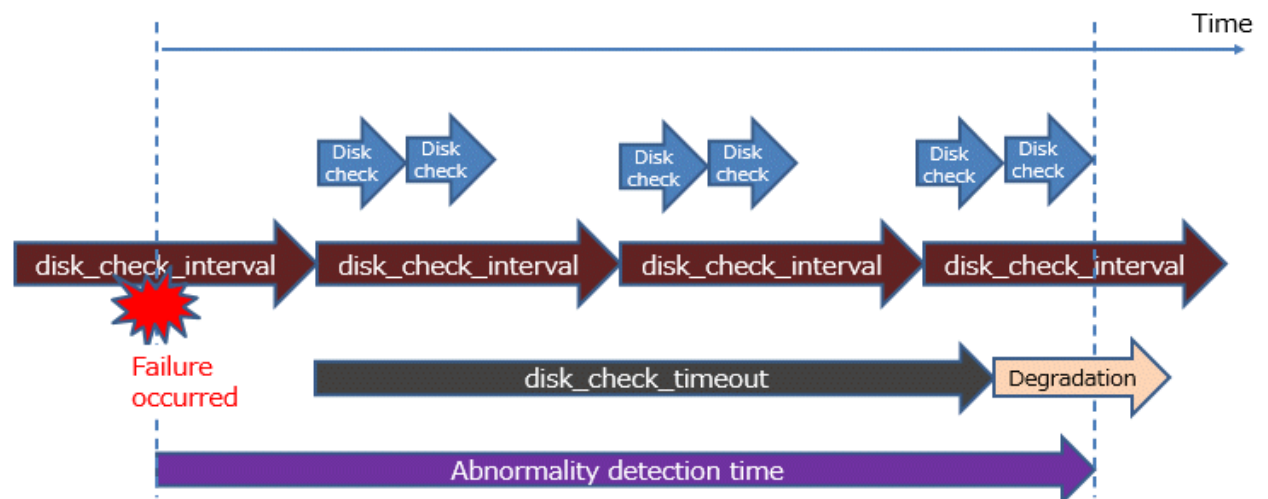
When the read or write cannot be completed within the disk access time because the response to the disk is slow.



#### Example 2)

One thread monitors two disks, set `disk_check_retry = 2`.

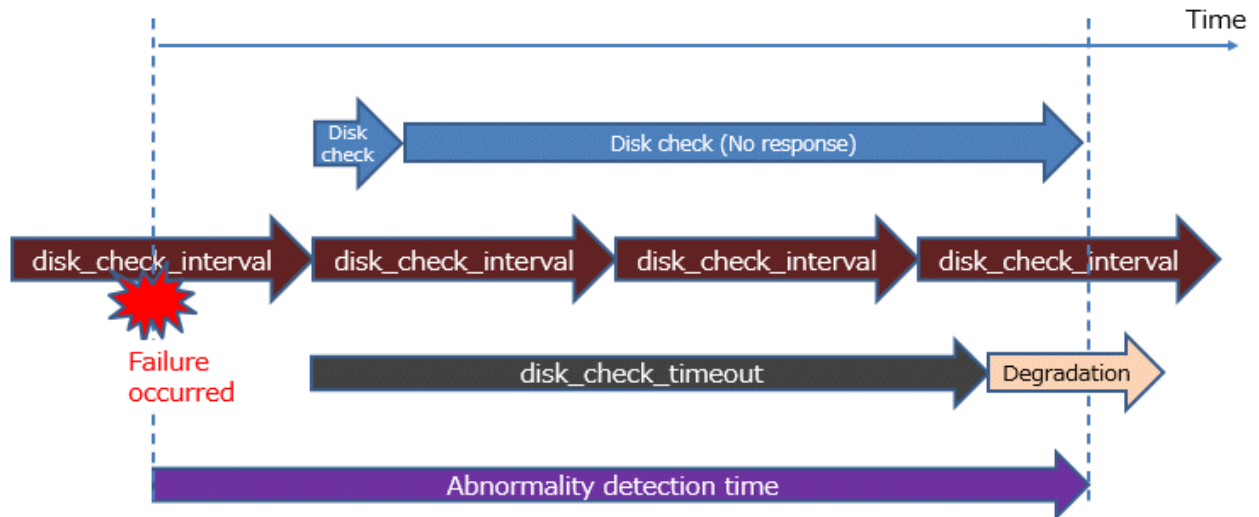
Due to the slow response to the disk, reading or writing to disk 1 could not be completed within the disk access time on the first and second attempts, but the reading or writing was successful on the third retry. All reads or writes to disk 2 fail within the disk access time.



#### Example 3)

One thread monitors two disks, set `disk_check_retry = 2`.

If disk 2 becomes unresponsive and monitoring results cannot be obtained within the timeout period.



### Note

- The tuning described above impacts on the time taken from detection of a timeout until switching the primary server. Therefore, modify the values while taking into account the switch/disconnection time, using a design for which misdetection does not occur.
- Immediately selecting automatic degradation when a heartbeat abnormality occurs in operating system or server heartbeat monitoring risks causing split brain. Refer to "[Appendix D Notes on Performing Automatic Degradation Immediately after a Heartbeat Abnormality](#)" for details.

### Information

Mirroring Controller uses connections to database instances and SQL access to monitor abnormality in some resources targeted for monitoring. The connection destination database names and connection user names used for abnormality monitoring conform to the parameters in the server configuration file. The application name is "mc\_agent".

## 2.12 Setting Automatic Start and Stop of Mirroring Controller and Multiplexed Instances

Multiplexed instances and Mirroring Controller can be started and stopped automatically in line with the starting and stopping of the operating system of the database server.

### Note

To guarantee the startup sequence of Mirroring Controller on the primary and standby servers, first confirm that the primary server has started, and then start the standby servers in sequence.

The startup sequence of the Mirroring Controller process on the database server and the Mirroring Controller arbitration process on the arbitration server is not guaranteed. If the arbitration server cannot be started first, execute the mc\_ctl command in start mode with the --async-connect-arbiter option specified to start the Mirroring Controller process.

If you start the Mirroring Controller and multiplexed instances, wait for time correction, network setup, and so on.

Perform the following procedure:

1. Create a unit file

Copy the unit file sample stored in the directory below, and revise it to match the target instance.

Sample file

```
/installDir/share/mcoi.service.sample
```

Example)

In the following example, the installation directory is "/opt/fsepv<x>server64", and the instance name is "inst1". Note that "<x>" indicates the product version.

```
# cp /opt/fsepv<x>server64/share/mcoi.service.sample /usr/lib/systemd/system/mcoi_inst1.service
```

Revise the underlined portions of the options below in the unit file.

Section	Option	Specified value	Description
Unit	Description	Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres MirroringController <u>instanceName</u>	Specifies the feature overview. Specifies the name of the target instance. (*1)
Service	ExecStart	/bin/bash -c ' <u>installDir</u> /bin/mc_std start <u>installDir</u> <u>MirroringControllerManagementDir</u> <u>mc_ctlOption</u> '	Command to be executed when the service is started. Specify the option you want to add when the mc_ctl command is executed without the -M option in the mc_ctl option. Note that the content specified in this mc_ctl option is carried over from the mc_std command to the mc_ctl command. (*2)
	ExecStop	/bin/bash -c ' <u>installDir</u> /bin/mc_std stop <u>installDir</u> <u>MirroringControllerManagementDir</u> <u>mc_ctlOption</u> '	Command to be executed when the service is stopped. Specify the option you want to add when the mc_ctl command is executed without the -M option in the mc_ctl option. However, to use the --mc-only option to stop only Mirroring Controller, you must use the --mc-only option at startup. Note that the content specified in this mc_ctl option is carried over from the mc_std command to the mc_ctl command.
	User	<u>User</u>	OS user account of the instance administrator user.
	Group	<u>Group</u>	Group to which the instance administrator user belongs.

\*1: The instance name should be as nameThatIdentifiesTheInstance.

The naming conventions for identifying the instance are as follows:

- Up to 16 bytes
- The first character must be an ASCII alphabetic character
- The other characters must be ASCII alphanumeric characters

\*2: When the arbitration server is used for automatic degradation, start the Mirroring Controller arbitration process on the arbitration server and then start the Mirroring Controller process on the database server. If the arbitration server cannot be started first, specify the --async-connect-arbiter option to start the Mirroring Controller process.

## 2. Enable automatic start and stop

As the OS superuser, use the systemctl command to enable automatic start and stop.

Example)

```
# systemctl enable mcoi_inst1.service
```



## Note

If automatic start and stop of Mirroring Controller has been configured, to stop Mirroring Controller, do not use the mc\_ctl command, but instead use the systemctl command as the OS superuser.

Example)

```
# systemctl stop mcoi_inst1.service
```

If the instance does not stop, refer to "Actions in Response to Failure to Stop an Instance" in the Operation Guide to stop the instance. Then, specify the -e option in the mc\_ctl command to forcibly stop Mirroring Controller.

Example)

```
$ mc_ctl stop -M /mcdire/inst1 -e
```

If Mirroring Controller is stopped using the mc\_ctl command, the message below is output to the system log, however there is no issue because automatic stop is executed by systemd.

Message

```
FATAL: failed to stop Mirroring Controller target server:"{0}" (MCA00043)
```

## 2.13 Setting Automatic Start and Stop of the Mirroring Controller Arbitration Process

You can automatically start or stop the Mirroring Controller arbitration process when the operating system on the arbitration server is started or stopped.

### Linux



## Note

If you start the Mirroring Controller arbitration process, wait for time correction, network setup, and so on.

Perform the following procedure:

1. Create a unit file.

Copy the unit file sample stored in the directory below, and revise it to match the target instance.

Sample file

```
/installDir/share/mcarboi.service.sample
```

Example)

In the following example, the installation directory is "/opt/fsepv<x>assistant", and the identifier of the arbitration process is "arbiter1". Note that "<x>" indicates the product version.

```
# cp /opt/fsepv<x>assistant/share/mcarboi.service.sample /usr/lib/systemd/system/
mcarboi_arbiter1.service
```

Revise the underlined portions of the options below in the unit file.

Section	Option	Specified value	Description
Unit	Description	Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Mirroring Controller Arbiter <arbitrationProcessId>	Specifies the feature overview.



Section	Option	Specified value	Description
			Specifies the identifier of the targeted arbitration process. (*1)
Service	ExecStart	<i>/bin/bash -c '<u>installDir</u>/bin/mc_arb_std start <u>installDir</u> <u>mirroringControllerArbitrationProcessMgmtDir</u> <u>mc_arbOption</u>'</i>	<p>Command to be executed when the service is started.</p> <p>Specify the option you want to add when the mc_arb command is executed without the -M option in the mc_arb option.</p> <p>Note that the content specified in this mc_arb option is carried over from the mc_arb_std command in "Specified value" to the mc_arb command.</p>
	ExecStop	<i>/bin/bash -c '<u>installDir</u>/bin/ mc_arb_std stop <u>installDir</u> <u>mirroringControllerArbitrationProcessMgmtDir</u> <u>mc_arbOption</u>'</i>	<p>Command to be executed when the service is stopped.</p> <p>Specify the option you want to add when the mc_arb command is executed without the -M option in the mc_arb option.</p> <p>Note that the content specified in this mc_arb option is carried over from the mc_arb_std command in "Specified value" to the mc_arb command.</p>
	User	<u>User</u>	Specify the account of the operating system user.
	Group	<u>Group</u>	Specify the group to which the user belongs.

\*1: The arbitration process identifier used here is a name for identifying the Mirroring Controller arbitration process.

The naming conventions for identifying the Mirroring Controller arbitration process are as follows:

- Up to 16 bytes
- The first character must be an ASCII alphabetic character
- The other characters must be ASCII alphanumeric characters

## 2. Enable automatic start and stop.

As the operating system superuser, use the systemctl command to enable automatic start and stop.

Example)

```
# systemctl enable mcarboi_arbiter1.service
```

## Windows

You can configure the Windows service to perform automatic start and stop.

### Configuring during setup

When registering the Mirroring Controller arbitration process as a Windows service in "2.3.1 Configuring the Arbitration Server", specify "auto" for the -S option of the register mode used with the mc\_arb command.

Example)

```
> mc_arb register -M D:\mcdir\inst1 -P ***** -S auto
```

### Changing the configuration after setup

Use the sc config command to change the configuration of the Windows service of the Mirroring Controller arbitration process.

Example)

The configuration of the registered service name "Mirroring\_Controller\_Arbiter1" is changed.

```
> sc config "Mirroring_Controller_Arbiter1" start= auto
```



### See

Refer to sc command help for information on how to configure the service.



### Information

You can check the registration status in the Windows service window or by using the sc qc command.

## 2.14 Backup Operation

This section explains the backup operation for database multiplexing mode.

### 2.14.1 Backing up Database Multiplexing Mode Information

When changing the Mirroring Controller settings, in addition to backing up the database, back up the configuration file in the Mirroring Controller management directory so that the Mirroring Controller settings are not lost.

When the arbitration server is used for automatic degradation, also back up the configuration file in the Mirroring Controller arbitration process management directory.

### 2.14.2 Database Backup Operation

Using database multiplexing mode is the same as obtaining the backup data on the standby server as a safeguard against a disk failure. Note that all server disks may be corrupted due to some cause.

As a safeguard against this type of case, execute the pgx\_dmpall command on the primary server to create the backup data.

However, it is not definite as to which server runs as the primary server, so ensure that the pgx\_dmpall command is executed periodically on all servers, so that the backup data will be obtained. For example, create a script to obtain the backup data, and set it in the operation management software.



### Point

When the pgx\_dmpall command is executed on the standby server, it will not match the statuses, however the error message shown below will be output and return the value "1".

If a script that ignores only this type of error is executed on all servers, the backup data of the primary server can be obtained.

#### Error message

```
ERROR:recovery is in progress (10095)
```

#### Note

- Consider the possibility that the server that runs as the primary server may be destroyed alongside the backup data, so it is recommended to promote another server to become the primary server, and then back up the data on the new primary server without waiting for the next scheduled backup.
- Specify the same backup directory name for the primary and standby servers. If different backup directory names are specified, and recovery is performed using the backup data of the other server, the recovery cannot be performed correctly.

#### See

- Period backups allow shorter recovery time and reduction in disk usage. Refer to "Backing Up the Database" in the Operation Guide for details on the backup operation.
- Refer to "[Chapter 4 Action Required when an Error Occurs in Database Multiplexing Mode](#)" for details on recovery based on the backup data that was obtained using the `pgx_dmpall` command.

## Chapter 3 Operations in Database Multiplexing Mode

This chapter describes the periodic operations that are performed when running database multiplexing mode.

The periodic operations are the same as the operations on a single server.



See

Refer to "Periodic Operations" in the Operation Guide for information on the periodic operations.

### 3.1 Starting and Stopping the Mirroring Controller Arbitration Process

This section describes how to start and stop the Mirroring Controller arbitration process.

#### 3.1.1 Starting the Mirroring Controller Arbitration Process

Linux

While the Mirroring Controller arbitration process is in a stopped state, execute the `mc_arb` command in start mode to start the Mirroring Controller arbitration process.

Example)

```
$ mc_arb start -M /mcarb_dir/arbiter1
```

Windows

The Mirroring Controller arbitration process can be started using one of the following options:

- Using the `mc_arb` command
- Starting the service on system startup

Using the `mc_arb` command

While the Mirroring Controller arbitration process is in a stopped state, execute the `mc_arb` command from the command prompt to start the Mirroring Controller arbitration process.

Example)

```
> mc_arb start -M D:\mcarb_dir\arbiter1
```

Starting the service on system startup

Specify automatic start when registering the Mirroring Controller arbitration process to the Windows service during setup of database multiplexing mode. Accordingly, the Mirroring Controller arbitration process service will start on startup of the operating system.



See

Refer to the Reference for information on how to specify the `mc_arb` command.

#### 3.1.2 Stopping the Mirroring Controller Arbitration Process

## Linux

While the Mirroring Controller arbitration process is running, execute the `mc_arb` command in stop mode to stop the Mirroring Controller arbitration process.

Example)

```
$ mc_arb stop -M /mcarb_dir/arbiter1
```

## Windows

The Mirroring Controller arbitration process can be stopped using one of the following options:

- Using the `mc_arb` command
- Stopping the service

### Using the `mc_arb` command

While the Mirroring Controller arbitration process is running, execute the `mc_arb` command in stop mode from the command prompt to stop the Mirroring Controller arbitration process.

Example)

```
> mc_arb stop -M D:\mcarb_dir\arbiter1
```

### Stopping the service

Select [Administrative Tools], then [Services] to open the [Services] window, and then select the Mirroring Controller service and click the [Stop] menu.



### See

Refer to the Reference for information on how to specify the `mc_arb` command.



### Note

- The arbitration server will be forcibly stopped when the service is stopped.
- Before shutting down the operating system on the arbitration server, either stop the Mirroring Controller on the primary server or standby server or shut down the operating system on the primary server or standby server.

## 3.2 Starting and Stopping Mirroring Controller

When database multiplexing mode is used, use the `mc_ctl` command to start and stop the instance and Mirroring Controller at the same time.

Do not start or stop the instance by itself.

### Starting Mirroring Controller

While Mirroring Controller is in a stopped state, execute the `mc_ctl` command in start mode to start Mirroring Controller.

#### Enabling automatic switch/disconnection

Execute the `mc_ctl` command in start mode.

Example)

```
$ mc_ctl start -M /mcdire/inst1
```

When only the instance is started and stopped, the following will happen:

- When only the instance is started

Features such as automatic switch and automatic disconnection will not work until Mirroring Controller is started.

- When only the instance is stopped

Mirroring Controller determines that an error has occurred in the instance, and performs an unnecessary automatic switch.

Automatic switch may also stop working correctly in some cases.

#### Disabling automatic switch/disconnection

Execute the mc\_ctl command in start mode with the -F option specified.

Example)

```
$ mc_ctl start -M /mcdir/inst1 -F
```

When only the instance is started and stopped, the following will happen:

- When only the instance is started

Errors indicated in "[1.1 What is Database Multiplexing Mode](#)" will not be detected until Mirroring Controller is started.

- When only the instance is stopped

Mirroring Controller determines that an error has occurred in the instance, and outputs an error to the system log.



#### Point

- To start the Mirroring Controller process only, execute the mc\_ctl command in start mode with the --mc-only option specified.
- After Mirroring Controller is started, automatic switch/disconnection can be enabled or disabled using the enable-failover or disable-failover mode of the mc\_ctl command.
- When the arbitration server is used for automatic degradation, the Mirroring Controller process startup fails on the database server if the Mirroring Controller arbitration process has not been started on the arbitration server in advance. However, even if the Mirroring Controller arbitration process cannot be started in advance, the Mirroring Controller process can be started by specifying the --async-connect-arbiter option in the mc\_ctl command.



#### Note

- When the arbitration server is used for automatic degradation, the database server must connect to the arbitration server, and as a result, Mirroring Controller startup may take longer.
- Mirroring Controller startup usually fails if the standby server is mistakenly started as the primary server or if the old primary server is not recovered after the switch and is then mistakenly started as the primary server. However, if the admin network is disconnected, then startup does not fail, and both servers may become primary servers. Therefore, ensure that the admin network is connected before starting Mirroring Controller.

### Stopping Mirroring Controller

While Mirroring Controller is running, execute the mc\_ctl command in stop mode to stop Mirroring Controller process.

Example)

```
$ mc_ctl stop -M /mcdir/inst1
```

## Point

To stop the Mirroring Controller process only, execute the `mc_ctl` command in stop mode with the `--mc-only` option specified.

## Note

To prevent an unintended automatic switch, before shutting down the operating system on the primary server, you must stop the Mirroring Controller, or shut down the operating system on the standby server.

## See

Refer to the Reference for information on how to specify the `mc_ctl` command.

## 3.3 Checking the Database Multiplexing Mode Status

### 3.3.1 Checking the Status of the Database Server

This section describes how to check the status of the database server.

Check the multiplexed database status by executing the `mc_ctl` command in status mode.

Additionally, errors can be detected by monitoring the Mirroring Controller messages. If the status or messages are monitored periodically, you can react quickly following an automatic switch failure.

#### Checking the status of the multiplexing database

When the `mc_ctl` command is executed, the details of the multiplexing configuration, information about whether switch is possible following the error, and location and details of the error that caused the switch or disconnection are displayed.

After starting database multiplexing mode, execute the `mc_ctl` command in status mode to check the multiplexing status.

An example of the status displayed when the `mc_ctl` command is executed is shown below.

Example)

```
$ mc_ctl status -M /mcdir/inst1

mirroring status
-----
switchable
server_id  host_role      host            host_status    db_proc_status  disk_status
-----
----
server1    primary        192.0.2.100     normal         normal          normal
server2    standby        192.0.2.110     normal         normal          normal
```

#### Checking the status of connection to the Mirroring Controller arbitration process

When the arbitration server is used for automatic degradation, the status of the connection to the Mirroring Controller arbitration process can be checked by specifying the `--arbiter` option. If the output status is "online", it indicates that an arbitration request can be made from the database server to the arbitration server. When the arbitration server is used for automatic degradation, regularly execute the command in status mode with the `--arbiter` option specified and check that the output status is "online".

Example)

The `mc_ctl` command is executed with the `--arbiter` option specified, and the status is output.

```
$ mc_ctl status --arbiter -M /mcdir/inst1
```

arbiter_id	host	status
-----		
arbiter	192.0.3.120	online

## Checking the status of data synchronization

Additionally, by referencing the `pg_stat_replication` statistics view on the primary server, the data synchronization status can be confirmed. However, when creating the monitoring program, note that the content of `pg_stat_replication` may be changed in the future.

The following example shows that the locations of the transaction log after it is sent and received (`sent_lsn`, `replay_lsn`) match, and that they are fully synchronized.

Example)

```
postgres=# select * from pg_stat_replication;
-[ RECORD 1 ]-----+
pid           | 10651
usesysid      | 10
username      | fsep
application_name | standby
client_addr   | 192.0.2.210
client_hostname |
client_port   | 55098
backend_start  | 2022-03-23 11:17:49.628793+09
backend_xmin   |
state         | streaming
sent_lsn      | 0/3000060
write_lsn     | 0/3000060
flush_lsn     | 0/3000060
replay_lsn    | 0/3000060
write_lag     |
flush_lag     |
replay_lag    |
sync_priority | 1
sync_state    | sync
reply_time    | 2022-03-23 11:23:27.703366+09
```



- Refer to "mc\_ctl" in Reference for information on the command.
- Refer to "Notes on Application Compatibility" in the Application Development Guide for information on retaining application compatibility.
- Refer to "The Statistics Collector" in "Server Administration" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for details on `pg_stat_replication`.

## 3.3.2 Checking the Status of the Arbitration Server

This section describes how to check the status of the arbitration server.

The status of the connection between the Mirroring Controller arbitration process and primary server/standby server can be checked by executing the `mc_arb` command in status mode.

The example below executes the `mc_arb` command, and shows the status.

Linux

Example)

```
$ mc_arb status -M /mcarb_dir/arbiter1

server_id  host          status
-----
```



server1	192.0.3.100	online
server2	192.0.3.110	online

#### Windows

Example)

```
> mc_arb status -M D:\mcarb_dir\arbiter1
```

server_id	host	status
server1	192.0.3.100	online
server2	192.0.3.110	online

## 3.4 Manually Switching the Primary Server

The primary server cannot be switched automatically in the following case:

- If automatic switch/disconnection is disabled
- If output of messages is selected for heartbeat abnormalities during heartbeat monitoring of the operating system or server and the operating system/server crashes or becomes unresponsive

In this case, to manually switch the primary server, execute the mc\_ctl command in switch mode on either the primary server or the standby server.

Example)

```
$ mc_ctl switch -M /mcdir/inst1
```



### Point

If automatic switch/disconnection is enabled, it is possible to perform switch of primary server at any time.

## 3.5 Manually Disconnecting the Standby Server

The procedure to perform disconnection of the standby server differs depending on whether the automatic switch/disconnection is enabled or disabled.

If automatic switch/disconnection is enabled

Execute the mc\_ctl command in stop mode on the standby server.

Example)

```
$ mc_ctl stop -M /mcdir/inst1
```

If automatic switch/disconnection is disabled

1. Execute the mc\_ctl command in stop mode on the standby server.

Example)

```
$ mc_ctl stop -M /mcdir/inst1
```

2. Comment out the synchronous\_standby\_names parameter in the postgresql.conf file on the primary server.

3. Execute the pg\_ctl command in reload mode on the primary server.

Example)

```
$ pg_ctl reload -D /database/inst1
```



## Point

.....

If automatic start and stop of Mirroring Controller has been configured using systemd, do not use the `mc_ctl` command, but instead use the `systemctl` command. Refer to "[2.12 Setting Automatic Start and Stop of Mirroring Controller and Multiplexed Instances](#)" for details.

.....

## 3.6 Action Required when a Heartbeat Abnormality is Detected

The message below is output when a heartbeat abnormality is detected during heartbeat monitoring of operating systems or servers:

```
detected an error on the monitored object "server(server identifier name)": no response:ping timeout (MCA00019)
```

If the `heartbeat_error_action` parameter in `serverIdentifier.conf` is set to "message", even if automatic switch/disconnection is enabled and Mirroring Controller is started, automatic switch/disconnection is not performed when a heartbeat abnormality is detected. Therefore, user action will be necessary.

This section explains the action required when the `heartbeat_error_action` parameter is set to "message" and a heartbeat abnormality is detected.

1. Identify the cause of the heartbeat abnormality. The possible causes are below:

- The remote operating system or server crashed or is unresponsive
- An admin network issue occurred

2. Address the cause identified in step 1.

- The remote operating system or server crashed or is unresponsive

Manually perform switch or disconnection using the `mc_ctl` command.

- An admin network issue occurred

Refer to "[Chapter 4 Action Required when an Error Occurs in Database Multiplexing Mode](#)", and recover the database multiplexing system.

## 3.7 Monitoring Mirroring Controller Messages

The messages that are output by Mirroring Controller are output to both the database server and the arbitration server. If the automatic switch fails, for example, an important message related to the continuation of the operation may be output, so ensure that the system log messages are monitored.

If the arbitration server is used for automatic degradation, monitor messages on both the database server and the arbitration server.

Message output destination on the database server

Messages are output to the system log.

Message output destination on the arbitration server

Linux

Messages are output to the system log.

Windows

Messages are output to the event log.



## Point

- .....
- To monitor message types considered to be important, an operating system setting must be configured beforehand. Refer to the operating system manuals, check if the message is of a message type that is monitored to be output to the system log, and configure the setting if required.

- If the heartbeat\_error\_action parameter in *serverIdentifier.conf* is set to "message", only message output is performed when a heartbeat abnormality is detected during heartbeat monitoring of operating systems and servers - automatic switch/disconnection is not performed. Therefore users need to monitor the messages. Refer to ["3.6 Action Required when a Heartbeat Abnormality is Detected"](#) for details.

## Display format on the database server

```
programName[processId]: messageType:messageText (messageNumber)
```

Specify the program name in the syslog\_ident parameter of the *serverIdentifier.conf* file of the database server.

The message types output by Mirroring Controller, their severity, and their corresponding value in the system log are shown in the table below.

Table 3.1 Message type, severity, and corresponding value in the system log

Message type	Severity	Meaning	System log
INFO	Information	Provides information that does not fall under LOG or NOTICE.	INFO
LOG		Provides information recognized as a particularly important event in tracing the operation history. (Example: Automatic switch is complete)	
NOTICE	Notice	Outputs information that takes into account the user instructions within the program in response to an executed or automatically executed process.	NOTICE
WARNING	Warning	Provides a warning, for example it will soon be impossible to maintain the multiplexing state.	WARNING
ERROR	Error	Reports that an error other than FATAL or PANIC has occurred.	ERROR
FATAL		Reports that an abnormality was detected in multiplexed database systems requiring recovery of the system, and also the content and cause of the abnormality.	CRIT
PANIC		Reports that an abnormality was detected in all multiplexed database systems requiring immediate recovery of the system, and also the content and cause of the abnormality.	ALERT

The message severity has the following meanings:

- Information

Informational status. A message that was reported by the system is displayed. No action is required.

- Notice

Informational status, but a message that should be noted is displayed. If necessary, take the actions described in the "Action" section of the message.

- Warning

No error has occurred, but the user is requested to check, and take action. Take the actions described in the "Action" section of the message.

- Error

An error has occurred. Take the actions described in the "Action" section of the message.

## Display format on the arbitration server

Linux

```
programName[processId]: messageType: messageText (messageNumber)
```

Specify the program name in the syslog\_ident parameter of the arbitration.conf file of the arbitration server.

#### Windows

```
eventSourceName[processId]: messageType: messageText (messageNumber)
```

Specify the event source name in the event\_source parameter of the arbitration.conf file of the arbitration server.

The message types output by Mirroring Controller, their severity, and their corresponding value in the output destination log are shown in the table below.

Table 3.2 Message type, severity, and corresponding value in the output destination log

Message type	Severity	Meaning	System log (Linux)	Event log (Windows)
INFO	Information	Provides information not categorized as LOG or NOTICE.	INFO	INFORMATION
LOG		Provides information recognized as a particularly important event in tracing the operation history. (Example: Automatic switch is complete)		
NOTICE	Notice	Outputs information that takes into account the user instructions within the program in response to an executed or automatically executed process.	NOTICE	
WARNING	Warning	Provides a warning, for example it will soon be impossible to perform the arbitration process.	WARNING	WARNING
ERROR	Error	Reports that an error other than FATAL or PANIC has occurred.	ERROR	ERROR
FATAL		Reports that an abnormality was detected in the arbitration server requiring recovery of the system, and also the content and cause of the abnormality.	CRIT	
PANIC		Reports that an abnormality was detected in the arbitration server requiring immediate recovery of the system, and also the content and cause of the abnormality.	ALERT	

The message severity has the following meanings:

- Information

Informational status. A message that was reported by the system is displayed. No action is required.

- Notice

Informational status, but a message that should be noted is displayed. If necessary, take the actions described in the "Action" section of the message.

- Warning

No error has occurred, but the user is requested to check, and take action. Take the actions described in the "Action" section of the message.

- Error

An error has occurred. Take the actions described in the "Action" section of the message.

## 3.8 Server Maintenance

To perform maintenance tasks such as periodic server inspections and the application of updates for software products including the operating system, you must perform a planned stop of the server, and then perform the maintenance.

## 3.8.1 Rolling Updates

---

In database multiplexing mode, rolling updates, that perform the maintenance for the servers that comprise the cluster system, can be performed while jobs continue.

First, perform the maintenance for the standby server, and then switch the standby server to the primary server. Then, perform the maintenance for the original primary server that was switched to the standby server. This enables maintenance to be performed while jobs continue.

Note that arbitration server maintenance can be performed without affecting database server operation, so it is not necessary to consider rolling update.

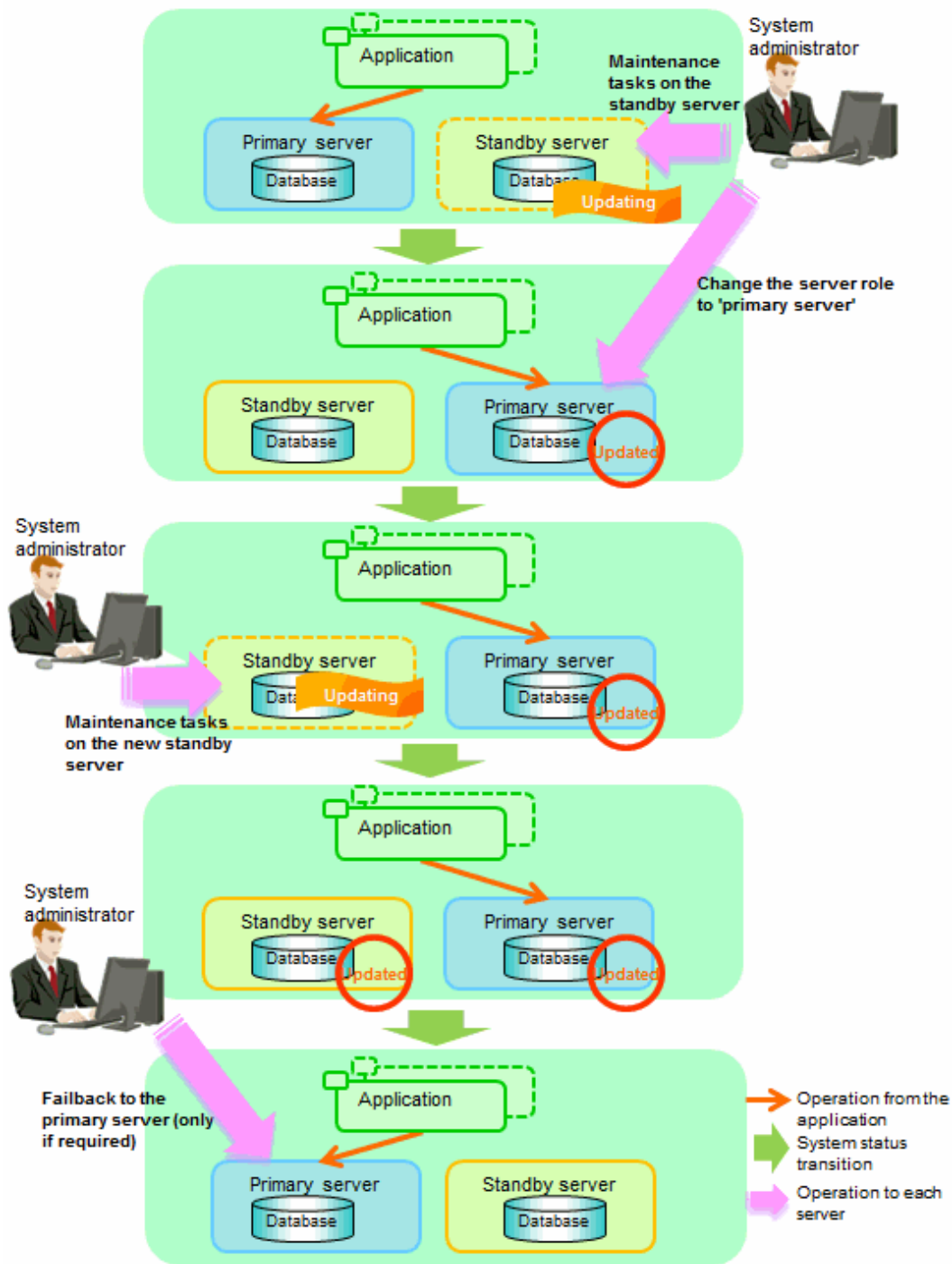


See

.....  
If the downtime due to the maintenance of the standby server is expected to be long, refer to "Standby server downtime" in "[3.9.1 Changes Required when the Standby Server is Stopped](#)".  
.....

The flow of a rolling update is shown below.

Figure 3.1 Performing a Rolling Update



Perform the following procedure as shown in the above figure:

### Standby server maintenance tasks

1. To perform the maintenance on the standby server, stop Mirroring Controller.

Example)

```
$ mc_ctl stop -M /modir/inst1
```

2. Ensure that Mirroring Controller has completely stopped.

If the multiplexed instances and Mirroring Controller have been configured on the standby server to start and stop automatically when the operating system of the database server is started or stopped, cancel the setting to start and stop automatically.



See

Refer to "2.12 Setting Automatic Start and Stop of Mirroring Controller and Multiplexed Instances" for information on how to configure the multiplexed instances and Mirroring Controller to start and stop automatically when the operating system of the database server start and stops.

As the OS superuser, execute the systemctl command to disable automatic start and stop.

The example below disables automatic start and stop of "mcoi\_inst1.service".

Example)

```
# systemctl disable mcoi_inst1.service
```

3. Perform maintenance tasks.
4. Create a copy of the primary server instance on the standby server.

Execute the pg\_basebackup command to create data in the standby server by synchronizing with the primary server.

Example)

```
$ pg_basebackup -D /database/inst1 -X fetch --waldir=/transaction/inst1 --progress --verbose -R  
--dbname='application_name=standbyServerName' -h primaryServerHostName -p  
primaryServerPortNumber
```



See

The procedure for copying the primary server instance to the standby server is the same as the procedure for setting up the standby server.

Refer to "2.5.2 Creating, Setting, and Registering the Standby Server Instance", and then perform the recovery.

5. Check the settings for automatic start and stop of the multiplexed instances and Mirroring Controller.

If the multiplexed instances and Mirroring Controller were configured in step 2 to not start and stop automatically when the operating system of the database server starts and stops, then change the settings back. This step can be skipped if automatic start and stop are not required.

As the OS superuser, execute the systemctl command to enable automatic start and stop.

The example below disables automatic start and stop of "mcoi\_inst1.service".

Example)

```
# systemctl enable mcoi_inst1.service
```

6. Start (rebuild) Mirroring Controller on the standby server.

This operation is required when determining the maintenance tasks on the standby server.

Enabling automatic switch/disconnection

As the instance administrator user, execute the mc\_ctl command in start mode.

Example)

```
$ mc_ctl start -M /mcdir/inst1
```

## Disabling automatic switch/disconnection

As the instance administrator user, execute the `mc_ctl` command in start mode with the `-F` option specified.

Example)

```
$ mc_ctl start -M /mcdir/inst1 -F
```

## Point

After Mirroring Controller is started, automatic switch/disconnection can be enabled or disabled using the `enable-failover` or `disable-failover` mode of the `mc_ctl` command.

## Switching to the primary server

To perform the maintenance on the primary server, execute the `mc_ctl` command in the switch mode on the primary server or the standby server.

Example)

```
$ mc_ctl switch -M /mcdir/inst1
```

When the switch is complete, the `synchronous_standby_names` parameter in the `postgresql.conf` file of the new primary server will be commented as follows:

Example)

```
#synchronous_standby_names = 'primary'
```

## New standby server maintenance tasks

1. Stop the Mirroring Controller.

On the new standby server (the primary server before the switch), execute the `mc_ctl` command in stop mode.

If automatic start and stop of Mirroring Controller has been configured using `systemd`, do not use the `mc_ctl` command, but instead use the `systemctl` command. Refer to "[2.12 Setting Automatic Start and Stop of Mirroring Controller and Multiplexed Instances](#)" for details.

Example)

```
$ mc_ctl stop -M /mcdir/inst1
```

2. Ensure that Mirroring Controller has completely stopped.

If the multiplexed instances and Mirroring Controller have been configured on the new standby server to start and stop automatically when the operating system of the database server is started or stopped, cancel the setting to start and stop automatically now.

## See

Refer to "[2.12 Setting Automatic Start and Stop of Mirroring Controller and Multiplexed Instances](#)" for information on how to configure the multiplexed instances and Mirroring Controller to start and stop automatically when the operating system of the database server starts and stops.

As the OS superuser, execute the `systemctl` command to disable automatic start and stop.

The example below disables automatic start and stop of "`mcoi_inst1.service`".

Example)

```
# systemctl disable mcoi_inst1.service
```



3. Perform the maintenance on the new standby server that was stopped.
4. Create a copy of the new primary server instance on the new standby server.

Execute the `pg_basebackup` command to create data in the new standby server by synchronizing with the new primary server.

Example)

```
$ pg_basebackup -D /database/inst1 -X fetch --waldir=/transaction/inst1 --progress --verbose -R
--dbname='application_name=standbyServerName' -h primaryServerHostName -p
primaryServerPortNumber
```



See

The procedure for copying the primary server instance to the standby server is the same as the procedure for setting up the standby server.

Refer to "[2.5.2 Creating, Setting, and Registering the Standby Server Instance](#)", and then perform the recovery.

5. Check the settings for automatic start and stop of the multiplexed instances and Mirroring Controller.

If the multiplexed instances and Mirroring Controller were configured in step 2 to not start and stop automatically when the operating system of the database server starts and stops, then change the settings back. This step can be skipped if automatic start and stop are not required.

As the OS superuser, execute the `systemctl` command to enable automatic start and stop.

The example below disables automatic start and stop of "mcoi\_inst1.service".

Example)

```
# systemctl enable mcoi_inst1.service
```

6. After the maintenance is complete, edit the following parameters in the `postgresql.conf` file of the standby server as required.

Copying an instance results in the value of the `synchronous_standby_names` parameter becoming the specified value on the primary server. Therefore, correct it to the specified value on the standby server. If the parameter was commented out, then you must uncomment it.

7. On the standby server, start (rebuild) Mirroring Controller.

#### Enabling automatic switch/disconnection

As the instance administrator user, execute the `mc_ctl` command in start mode.

Example)

```
$ mc_ctl start -M /mcdir/inst1
```

#### Disabling automatic switch/disconnection

As the instance administrator user, execute the `mc_ctl` command in start mode with the `-F` option specified.

Example)

```
$ mc_ctl start -M /mcdir/inst1 -F
```



Point

After Mirroring Controller is started, automatic switch/disconnection can be enabled or disabled using the `enable-failover` or `disable-failover` mode of the `mc_ctl` command.

## Failback of the Primary Server

Revert the primary server and standby server to the original server configuration. Do this to execute the main job on the previous primary server. Refer to "[4.1.1.3 Failback of the Primary Server](#)" for details.



### Note

Obtain a backup as soon as this task is complete.

## 3.8.2 Stopping for Maintenance

Perform this procedure to stop all servers for periodic inspections, for example. On the server on which Mirroring Controller is running, execute the mc\_ctl command in stop mode to stop the instance and Mirroring Controller.

If automatic start and stop of Mirroring Controller has been configured using systemd, do not use the mc\_ctl command, but instead use the systemctl command. Refer to "[2.12 Setting Automatic Start and Stop of Mirroring Controller and Multiplexed Instances](#)" for details.

After that, on the server where the Mirroring Controller arbitration process is running, execute the mc\_arb command in stop mode to stop the Mirroring Controller arbitration process.

### Stopping Mirroring Controller

Example)

```
$ mc_ctl stop -M /mcdir/inst1 -a
```

### Stopping the Mirroring Controller arbitration process

Linux

Example)

```
$ mc_arb stop -M /mcarb_dir/arbiter1
```

Windows

Example)

```
> mc_arb stop -M D:\mcarb_dir\arbiter1
```

## 3.8.3 Arbitration Server Maintenance

Arbitration server maintenance can be performed without affecting database server operation.

Follow the procedure below to perform arbitration server maintenance.

1. Execute the mc\_arb command in stop mode to forcibly stop the Mirroring Controller arbitration process.

Linux

Example)

```
$ mc_arb stop -M /mcarb_dir/arbiter1 -e
```

Windows

Example)

```
> mc_arb stop -M D:\mcarb_dir\arbiter1 -e
```

2. Perform maintenance tasks.
3. Execute the mc\_arb command in start mode to restart the Mirroring Controller arbitration process.

## Linux

Example)

```
$ mc_arb start -M /mcarb_dir/arbiter1
```

## Windows

Example)

```
> mc_arb start -M D:\mcarb_dir\arbiter1
```

4. Execute the mc\_arb command in status mode to check that the arbitration server is connected to the database server.

The example below executes the mc\_arb command, and shows the status.

## Linux

Example)

```
$ mc_arb status -M /mcarb_dir/arbiter1

server_id      host          status
-----
server1        192.0.3.100   online
server2        192.0.3.110   online
```

## Windows

Example)

```
> mc_arb status -M D:\mcarb_dir\arbiter1

server_id      host          status
-----
server1        192.0.3.100   online
server2        192.0.3.110   online
```

5. Check the command output.

### Items to be checked

Check that the output status is "online" on both lines.

## 3.9 Changes in Operation

---

The following changes in operation may be required:

- Changes required when the standby server is stopped
- Changing from single server mode to database multiplexing mode
- Changing from database multiplexing mode to single server mode
- Changing to database multiplexing mode when the arbitration server is used for automatic degradation
- Changing parameters
- Uninstalling in the database multiplexing mode

### 3.9.1 Changes Required when the Standby Server is Stopped

---

## Operation when the standby server is stopped

Before performing maintenance for the primary server instance when the standby server has been stopped, stop Mirroring Controller on the primary server, comment out the `synchronous_standby_names` parameter in the `postgresql.conf` file of the primary server, and then execute the `pg_ctl` command in reload mode.

If this operation is not performed, operations performed on the primary server for the instance will remain in a wait state.



See

Refer to "pg\_ctl" in Reference for information on the command.

## Standby server downtime

If you specified the `synchronous_standby_names` parameter of the `postgresql.conf` file and then the standby server instance is stopped, consider the points below.

- The `wal_sender_timeout` parameter in the `postgresql.conf` file

If the standby server is stopped after the timeout set in this parameter was exceeded, an error stating that the transaction log could not be received may be output to the primary server system log, and all transaction logs that should be transferred to the standby server are accumulated.

- The `wal_keep_size` parameter in the `postgresql.conf` file

If a transaction log that exceeds the value set in this parameter was generated while the standby server was stopped, the transaction log may be deleted.

Additionally, setting this parameter requires consideration regarding stabilization of the database multiplexing mode. Refer to "[2.11.1 Tuning to Stabilize the Database Multiplexing Mode](#)" for details.



Note

The standby server must be rebuilt if the pending transaction log to be transferred to the standby server is lost when the standby server is started after the maintenance task is complete.

Take the action advised in the recovery operation that starts from "[4.1.1.1.3 Identify cause of error and perform recovery](#)" through to "[4.1.1.2 Rebuild the Standby Server](#)".

## 3.9.2 Changing from Single Server Mode to Database Multiplexing Mode

The procedure for switching single server mode to database multiplexing mode for the purposes of high reliability and load distribution of the system is explained below.

This procedure is equivalent to the setup procedure explained in "[Chapter 2 Setting Up Database Multiplexing Mode](#)".



Note

**If the data storage destination directory name is not comprised of ASCII characters**

Stop the application job and then migrate to a directory with a name that uses only ASCII characters:

1. Stop the database instance on the primary server.
2. Change the name of the data storage destination directory to one that uses only ASCII characters.



See

When encrypting the storage data, refer to "Database Multiplexing Mode" in the Operation Guide, and then perform the setup for encryption on the primary and standby servers.

1. Install on the arbitration server

Perform this step only if the arbitration server is used for automatic degradation.

Install the Server Assistant on the server where the Mirroring Controller arbitration process is started.

Refer to "Installation" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server Assistant for information on how to install the Server Assistant.

2. Install on the standby server

Install Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres on the server to be started as the standby server.

Refer to "Installation" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server for information on how to install Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

Use ASCII characters in the data storage destination directory.

3. Stop the application jobs

Stop the application jobs to be connected to the primary server.

4. Change the primary server settings

To allow connections from the server to be started as the standby server, configure the settings in step 2 and thereafter of "[2.4.2 Creating, Setting, and Registering the Primary Server Instance](#)" on the primary server.

5. Set up the arbitration server

Refer to "[2.3 Setting Up the Arbitration Server](#)" for details.

Perform this step only if the arbitration server is used for automatic degradation.

6. Set up database multiplexing mode on the primary server

Refer to "[2.4.1 Setting Up Database Multiplexing Mode on the Primary Server](#)" for details.

7. Set up database multiplexing mode on the standby server

Refer to "[2.5.1 Setting Up Database Multiplexing Mode on the Standby Server](#)" for details.

8. Create the standby server instance and start it

Refer to "[2.5.2 Creating, Setting, and Registering the Standby Server Instance](#)" for details.

After the above steps are completed, refer to the remaining explanations in "[Chapter 2 Setting Up Database Multiplexing Mode](#)" and ensure that the required settings and operations are completed.

### 3.9.3 Changing from Database Multiplexing Mode to Single Server Mode

---

The procedure for stopping database multiplexing mode and changing to single server mode is explained below.

Some tasks must be performed on the database server, and others must be performed on the arbitration server.

The tasks on the arbitration server are required only if the arbitration server is used for automatic degradation.

#### Tasks on the database server

1. Determine the server for which the instance is to be stopped, and switch this server

Determine the server that is to be excluded as the database multiplexing mode target, and for which the instance is to be stopped.

If the server for which the instance is to be stopped is the primary server, execute the mc\_ctl command in the switch mode to switch the standby server to the primary server.

The standby server after the switch is complete will be the server for which the instance is to be stopped.

If the server for which the instance is to be stopped is the standby server, there is no need to perform the switch operation.

Example)

```
$ mc_ctl switch -M /mcdir/inst1
```

2. Stop Mirroring Controller and the instance, and delete the file resources

On the server that was determined in step 1, execute the mc\_ctl command in stop mode to stop Mirroring Controller and the instance.

If automatic start and stop of Mirroring Controller has been configured using systemd, do not use the mc\_ctl command, but instead use the systemctl command. Refer to "[2.12 Setting Automatic Start and Stop of Mirroring Controller and Multiplexed Instances](#)" for details.

Example)

```
$ mc_ctl stop -M /mcdir/inst1
```

Then, delete the following file resources:

- Data storage destination directory
- Mirroring Controller management directory

Example)

```
$ rm -rf /database/inst1  
$ rm -rf /mcdir/inst1
```



See

Refer to "Security-Related Notes" in the Operation Guide for details on deleting the data securely.

### 3. Stop the application jobs

Stop the application jobs to be connected to the primary server.

### 4. Stop Mirroring Controller and the instance on the primary server

Execute the mc\_ctl command in stop mode on the primary server.

If automatic start and stop of Mirroring Controller has been configured using systemd, do not use the mc\_ctl command, but instead use the systemctl command. Refer to "[2.12 Setting Automatic Start and Stop of Mirroring Controller and Multiplexed Instances](#)" for details.

Example)

```
$ mc_ctl stop -M /mcdir/inst1
```

### 5. Delete the database multiplexing mode settings that were configured for the primary server instance.

Reset the postgresql.conf file parameters to their values before the database multiplexing operation was set.

Delete the file resources from the Mirroring Controller management directory.

If the backup operation was performed, delete the following resources:

- Mirroring Controller management directory backup data obtained in database multiplexing mode
- Instance backup data obtained in database multiplexing mode

Additionally, if the primary\_conninfo parameter is set in the postgresql.auto.conf file, execute the ALTER SYSTEM RESET statement to delete the setting.

Example)

An example execution of the psql command is shown below.

```
postgres=# ALTER SYSTEM RESET primary_conninfo;
```

After these actions are performed, ensure that the backup data is collected when starting the single operation.



See

- Refer to "Security-Related Notes" in the Operation Guide for details on deleting the data securely.
- Refer to "[2.14 Backup Operation](#)" for details on the backup operation.

- Refer to "[Appendix A Parameters](#)" for details on the postgresql.conf file parameters.

## Point

In the above procedure, if the postgresql.conf file of the single primary server can be changed by reloading the file, the operation mode can be changed without stopping the application job.

In that case, execute the mc\_ctl command in stop mode with the --mc-only option specified to stop only Mirroring Controller in relation to stopping the primary server.

## Tasks on the arbitration server

### Linux

1. Execute the mc\_arb command in stop mode to stop the Mirroring Controller arbitration process.

Example)

```
$ mc_arb stop -M /mcarb_dir/arbiter1
```

2. Delete the Mirroring Controller arbitration process management directory.

Example)

```
$ rm -rf /mcarb_dir/arbiter1
```

### Windows

1. Execute the mc\_arb command in stop mode to stop the Mirroring Controller arbitration process.

Example)

```
> mc_arb stop -M D:\mcarb_dir\arbiter1
```

2. Unregister the Mirroring Controller arbitration process from the Windows service.

Execute the mc\_arb command in unregister mode to unregister the Mirroring Controller arbitration process from the Windows service.

Example)

```
> mc_arb unregister -M D:\mcarb_dir\arbiter1
```

3. Delete registrations related to the event log

If error logs are output to the event log in "[2.2.2.1 Preparing to Output Error Logs to the Event Log \(Windows\)](#)", delete the registered event source name for each instance.

Example)

```
> regsvr32 /u /i:"Mirroring Controller arbtier1" "c:\Program Files\Fujitsu  
\fsepvxassistant64\lib\mcarbevent.dll"
```

Note that "<x>" indicates the product version.

4. Delete the Mirroring Controller arbitration process management directory.

Example)

```
> rmdir /S /Q D:\mcarb_dir\arbiter1
```

## 3.9.4 Changing to Database Multiplexing Mode when the Arbitration Server is Used for Automatic Degradation

This section provides the procedure to change to database multiplexing mode using the Mirroring Controller only on the database server when the arbitration server is used for automatic degradation.

Some tasks must be performed on the database server, and others must be performed on the arbitration server.

### Tasks on the arbitration server

1. Set up the arbitration server.

Refer to "[2.3 Setting Up the Arbitration Server](#)" for information on how to set up the arbitration server.

### Tasks on the database server

1. On the server where Mirroring Controller is running, execute the `mc_ctl` command in stop mode to stop Mirroring Controller on the primary server and standby server.

Example)

```
$ mc_ctl stop -M /mcdir/inst1 -a --mc-only
```

2. Edit the `network.conf` file of the primary server and standby server to add the information of the arbitration server.

Refer to "[A.3 Network Configuration File](#)" for details.

The definition example of the `network.conf` file of the primary server is shown below:

Example)

The IDs of the primary server and standby server are set to "server1" and "server2", and their port numbers are set to "27540" and "27541". The ID of the server of the Mirroring Controller arbitration process is set to "arbiter", and its port number is set to "27541".

```
server1 192.0.2.100,192.0.3.100 27540,27541 server
server2 192.0.2.110,192.0.3.110 27540,27541 server
arbiter 192.0.3.120 27541 arbiter
```

### Note

- Ensure that the port numbers set for the primary server, standby server, and arbitration server do not conflict with other software. Also do not configure the same segment for the admin network and arbitration network.
  - If the server type is "server", two IP addresses or host names, and two port numbers need to be specified in the following order:
    - IP address or host name of the database server used as the admin network
    - IP address or host name of the database server used as the arbitration network
    - Port number of the database server used as the admin network
    - Port number of the database server used as the arbitration network
  - If the server type is "arbiter", specify the IP address or host name set for the `my_address` parameter and the port number set for the `port` parameter in `arbitration.conf`.
3. Edit the `serverIdentifier.conf` file of the primary server and standby server to add parameters required for the operation where the arbitration server is used for automatic degradation.

Refer to "[A.4.1 Server Configuration File for the Database Servers](#)" for information on the parameters required when the arbitration server is used for automatic degradation.



4. On the primary server and standby server, execute the `mc_ctl` command in start mode to start the Mirroring Controller process.

Example)

```
$ mc_ctl start -M /mcdir/inst1 --mc-only
```

#### Common tasks

1. Check the connection status from the database server or arbitration server.

Refer to "[2.8 Checking the Connection Status](#)" for details.

## 3.9.5 Changing Parameters

---

Stop Mirroring Controller before editing the Mirroring Controller server configuration file and network configuration file.

If the Mirroring Controller process crashes or becomes unresponsive, restart is performed automatically by the Mirroring Controller monitoring process, and the configuration file is reloaded. Therefore, if the configuration file was being edited, unintended behavior will occur.

## 3.9.6 Uninstalling in Database Multiplexing Mode

---

This section explains how to uninstall Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres on a server using database multiplexing mode.

Some tasks must be performed on the database server, and others must be performed on the arbitration server.

The tasks on the arbitration server are required only if the arbitration server is used for automatic degradation.

#### Tasks on the database server

1. Stop the multiplexed instances and Mirroring Controller

Refer to "[3.2 Starting and Stopping Mirroring Controller](#)" for information on how to stop the instance.

2. Uninstall Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

Refer to "Uninstallation" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server for information on how to uninstall Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

#### Tasks on the arbitration server

Refer to "Uninstallation" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server Assistant, and uninstall the Server Assistant.

## Chapter 4 Action Required when an Error Occurs in Database Multiplexing Mode

This chapter describes the action required if an error occurs in database multiplexing mode.

In database multiplexing mode, when an error is detected, the switch or disconnection of the standby server is performed automatically, so that only the primary server starts degrading. In this case, the recovery tasks will be required for the standby server on which the switch or disconnection was performed.

Other possible cases are as follows:

- When automatic switch fails
- When automatic disconnection fails
- When all servers or instances were stopped

### 4.1 Action Required when Server Degradation Occurs

If the server has started degrading, the recovery tasks will vary depending on whether the cause was the switch (failover or switchover), or the disconnection.

Execute the `mc_ctl` command in status mode, or refer to the system log, and check if the cause of the server degradation was the switch or the disconnection.

In the example below, the `mc_ctl` command is executed in status mode.

If a switch has occurred, "switched" (the switch is complete and the server is in a degrading state) is displayed for "mirroring status".

Example)

```
$ mc_ctl status -M /mdir/inst1
mirroring status
-----
switched

:
```

If a disconnection has occurred, "not-switchable" (disconnection was performed so the server cannot be switched) is displayed for "mirroring status".

Example)

```
$ mc_ctl status -M /mdir/inst1
mirroring status
-----
not-switchable

:
```



#### Note

If Mirroring Controller detects any errors on the server on which operations are continuing during recovery to database multiplexing mode from a degrading operation state, perform the procedure in "[4.1.3 Addressing Errors During Degrading Operation](#)", and then recover to database multiplexing mode.

#### 4.1.1 Operations when the Server has Started Degrading after a Switch has Occurred

This section explains the operations when the server has started degrading after a switch has occurred.



## Note

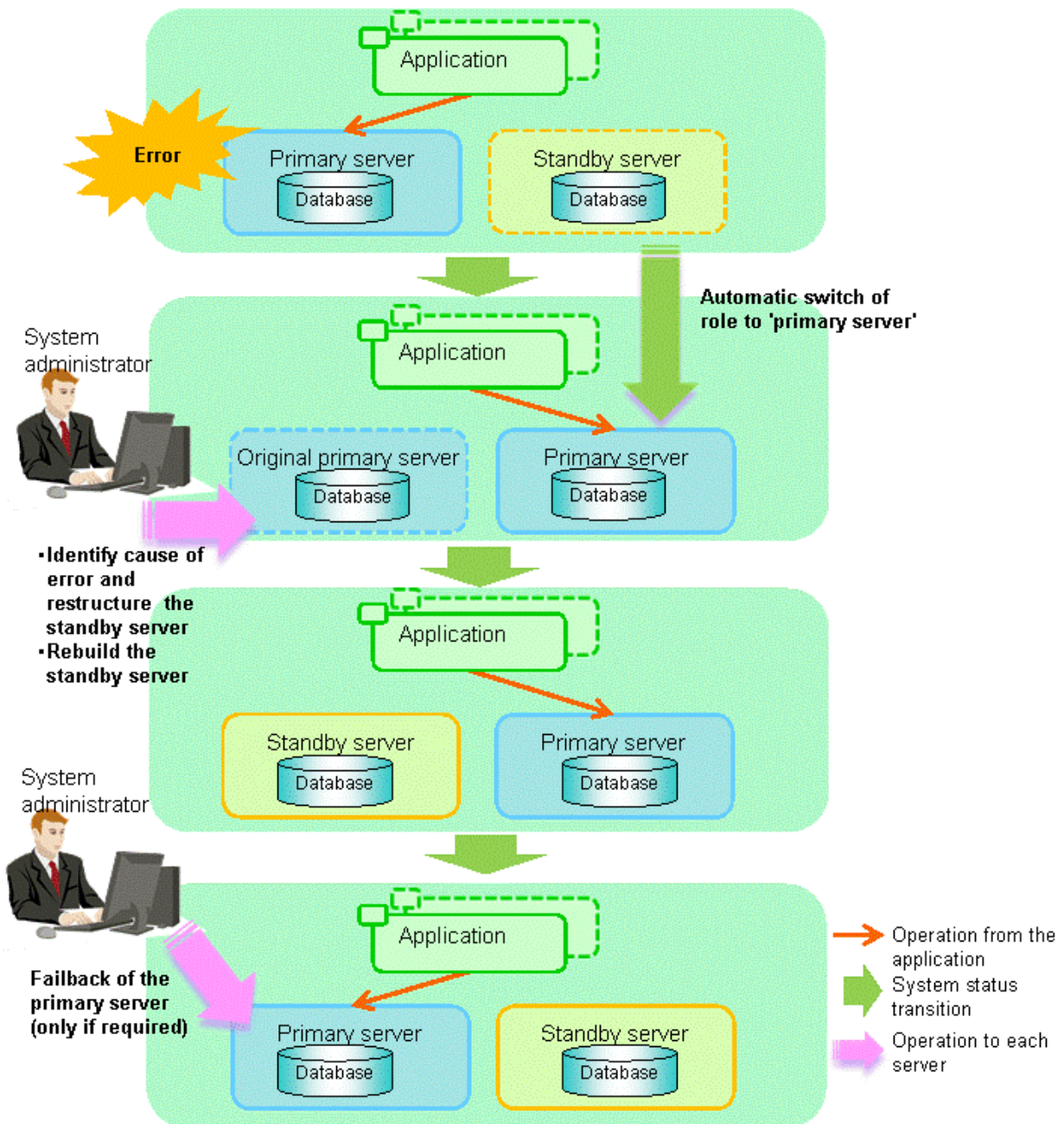
- After a switch has occurred as a result of an abnormality on the primary server, the database will not have a multiplexed configuration until the standby server is rebuilt. Remove the cause of the error as quickly as possible, and then rebuild the standby server.
- If the reference job was executed on the standby server, and the servers are switched because an error occurred on the primary server, the load is concentrated on the new primary server. Accordingly, pause the reference job on the original standby server, rebuild the original primary server as the new standby server, and then resume the reference job for the new standby server.
- If the instance on the new primary server is stopped before the original primary server where the error occurred is rebuilt as the new standby server, a split brain occurs at startup from the instance on the original primary server. Therefore, start the instance on the new primary server before rebuilding the standby server.

If the switch occurred and the server has started degrading, perform the following operations to recover the standby server and revert it to its original state:

- [Identify Cause of Error and Restore the Standby Server](#)
- [Rebuild the Standby Server](#)
- [Failback of the Primary Server](#) (only if required)

The flow of these operations is shown in the figure below.

Figure 4.1 Flow of operations



#### 4.1.1.1 Identify Cause of Error and Restore the Standby Server

Perform the recovery according to the following procedure:

1. [Stop Mirroring Controller](#)
2. [Recovery of the Mirroring Controller management directory](#)
3. [Identify cause of error and perform recovery](#)

##### 4.1.1.1.1 Stop Mirroring Controller

Execute the `mc_ctl` command in stop mode for the original primary server on which the error occurred.

If automatic start and stop of Mirroring Controller has been configured using `systemd`, do not use the `mc_ctl` command, but instead use the `systemctl` command. Refer to "[2.12 Setting Automatic Start and Stop of Mirroring Controller and Multiplexed Instances](#)" for details.

Example)

```
$ mc_ctl stop -M /mcdir/inst1
```

This also stops the instance that is required to perform the recovery.



## Note

If the instance does not stop, refer to "Actions in Response to Failure to Stop an Instance" in the Operation Guide, and then stop the instance. Then, specify the -e option in the above command to forcibly stop Mirroring Controller.

### 4.1.1.1.2 Recovery of the Mirroring Controller management directory

Copy the files in the Mirroring Controller management directory from the backup data, and then perform the recovery.

### 4.1.1.1.3 Identify cause of error and perform recovery

Refer to the system log of the primary server and the standby server to identify the cause of the error, and then perform recovery.

The following commands can be used to recover a standby server. Select depending on the recovery and the situation.

#### - pg\_basebackup

Creates a copy of all resources of the primary server instance.

#### - pg\_rewind

Creates a copy of only the updated files on the new primary server. For this reason, if this command is used to incorporate a new standby server, recovery time can be shortened. To use this command to build the original primary server as a new standby server, at least one of the following must be met:

- Checksums were enabled when an instance was created, or
- The wal\_log\_hints parameter of postgresql.conf was enabled when an instance was started.

Additionally, full\_page\_writes must be enabled, which is its default value.



## See

- Refer to "pg\_basebackup" in "Reference" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on the pg\_basebackup command.
- Refer to "pg\_rewind" in "Reference" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on the pg\_rewind command.

The example below executes the pg\_rewind command to perform recovery by synchronizing data on the original primary server with the new primary server.

1. Wait for the application of unapplied update transaction logs on the new primary server.

Execute the SQL below on the new primary server, and wait until the result is false.

```
# select pg_is_in_recovery();
```

Example)

```
$ psql -h hostNameOfNewPrimaryServer -p portNumOfNewPrimaryServer -d dbName -c "select pg_is_in_recovery();"
select pg_is_in_recovery();
```

Any database can be connected to.



## Note

If the `pg_rewind` command is executed immediately after promotion of the new primary server, the processing in steps 1 and 2 is required. If update-type SQL can be executed on the new primary server and checkpoint processing is executed after promotion, the processing in steps 1 and 2 will not be necessary.

### 2. Update the timeline ID.

Execute checkpoint processing, and update the timeline ID.

```
$ psql -h hostNameOfNewPrimaryServer -p portNumOfNewPrimaryServer -d dbName -c "checkpoint;"
```

Any database can be connected to.

### 3. Create a copy of the new primary server instance in the original primary server (new standby server).

Execute the `pg_rewind` command to synchronize the new standby server data with the new primary server.

Example)

```
$ pg_rewind -D /database/inst1 -R --source-server='user=userName host=newPrimaryServerHostName  
port=newPrimaryServerPortNumber dbname=dbName application_name=newStandbyServerName'
```



## Note

- Use the `pg_rewind` command with the `-R` option to create a `standby.signal` file. If you do not create the `standby.signal` file, the Mirroring Controller cannot be started as a standby server.
- If using a method that requires password authentication for connections to the primary server, you will need to ensure that authentication is performed automatically. If the `-R` option is specified for the `pg_rewind` command and the password parameter is specified for the `--dbname` option, the `pg_rewind` command will set the password in the `primary_conninfo` parameter in `postgresql.auto.conf` file, enabling connections to be performed automatically.  
  
If a password is not set in the `primary_conninfo` parameter in `postgresql.auto.conf` file, it will be necessary to create a `.pgpass` file in the home directory of the instance administrator user, and specify a password for the replication database.
- If you need to set a connection string other than host, port and `application_name`, include it in the setting of the `primary_conninfo` parameter.
- The `primary_conninfo` parameter should not be set in the `postgresql.conf` file, but only in the `postgresql.auto.conf` file using the `pg_rewind` command.

### 4. Specify parameters in the `postgresql.conf` file of the original primary server (new standby server).

Set the parameters required for the standby server in `postgresql.conf`.

Refer to "[Table 2.5 Parameters](#)" for information on the parameters to set in `postgresql.conf`.



## See

- Refer to "Hot Standby" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for details on the `standby.signal` file.
- Refer to "Setting Up a Standby Server" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for details on the `primary_conninfo`.



## Note

A new timeline is branched for the new primary server due to promotion, so 'latest' needs to be specified for the `recovery_target_timeline` parameter so that the old primary server (new standby server) follows the new primary server.

### 4.1.1.2 Rebuild the Standby Server

The starting of the recovered original primary server as the standby server is referred to as the "standby server rebuild".

On the original primary server, start Mirroring Controller and the instance.

#### Enabling automatic switch/disconnection

As the instance administrator user, execute the mc\_ctl command in start mode.

Example)

```
$ mc_ctl start -M /mcdir/inst1
```

#### Disabling automatic switch/disconnection

As the instance administrator user, execute the mc\_ctl command in start mode with the -F option specified.

Example)

```
$ mc_ctl start -M /mcdir/inst1 -F
```



#### Point

After Mirroring Controller is started, automatic switch/disconnection can be enabled or disabled using the enable-failover or disable-failover mode of the mc\_ctl command.

### 4.1.1.3 Failback of the Primary Server

To revert the primary server and standby server to the original server configuration after rebuilding the standby server, perform failback for the primary server.

Do this to execute the main job on the previous primary server.

Perform the following procedure:

#### 1. Failback of the primary server

Execute the mc\_ctl command in switch mode on the primary server or the standby server.

Example)

```
$ mc_ctl switch -M /mcdir/inst1
```

After executing the mc\_ctl command in switch mode, the status will be as follows:

Example)

```
$ mc_ctl status -M /mcdir/inst1
mirroring status
-----
switched
server_id  host_role                host          host_status  db_proc_status  disk_status
-----
server1    primary                    192.0.2.100   normal      abnormal(postmaster) normal
server2    none(inactivated primary)  192.0.2.110   normal      abnormal(postmaster) normal
```

#### 2. Stop the original primary server

On the original primary server, execute the mc\_ctl command in stop mode to stop Mirroring Controller and the instance.

If automatic start and stop of Mirroring Controller has been configured using systemd, do not use the mc\_ctl command, but instead use the systemctl command. Refer to "[2.12 Setting Automatic Start and Stop of Mirroring Controller and Multiplexed Instances](#)" for details.

Example)

```
$ mc_ctl stop -M /mcdir/inst1
```

3. Create a copy of the new primary server instance in the original primary server (new standby server)

Execute the `pg_basebackup` command to create data in the new standby server by synchronizing with the new primary server.

Example)

```
$ pg_basebackup -D /database/inst1 -X fetch --waldir=/transaction/inst1 --progress --verbose -R
--dbname='application_name=standbyServerName' -h primaryServerHostName -p
primaryServerPortNumber
```



## See

The procedure for copying the new primary server instance to the new standby server is the same as the procedure for setting up the new standby server.

Refer to "2.5.2 Creating, Setting, and Registering the Standby Server Instance", and then perform the recovery.

4. Rebuild the standby server

On the standby server, start Mirroring Controller and the instance.

Enabling automatic switch/disconnection

As the instance administrator user, execute the `mc_ctl` command in start mode.

Example)

```
$ mc_ctl start -M /mcdir/inst1
```

Disabling automatic switch/disconnection

As the instance administrator user, execute the `mc_ctl` command in start mode with the `-F` option specified.

Example)

```
$ mc_ctl start -M /mcdir/inst1 -F
```



## Point

After Mirroring Controller is started, automatic switch/disconnection can be enabled or disabled using the `enable-failover` or `disable-failover` mode of the `mc_ctl` command.

## 4.1.2 Operations when the Server has Started Degrading after a Disconnection has Occurred

This section explains the operations when the server has started degrading after a disconnection has occurred.



## Note

After a disconnection has occurred as a result of an abnormality on the standby server, the database will not have a multiplexed configuration until the standby server is rebuilt. Remove the cause of the error as quickly as possible, and then rebuild the standby server.

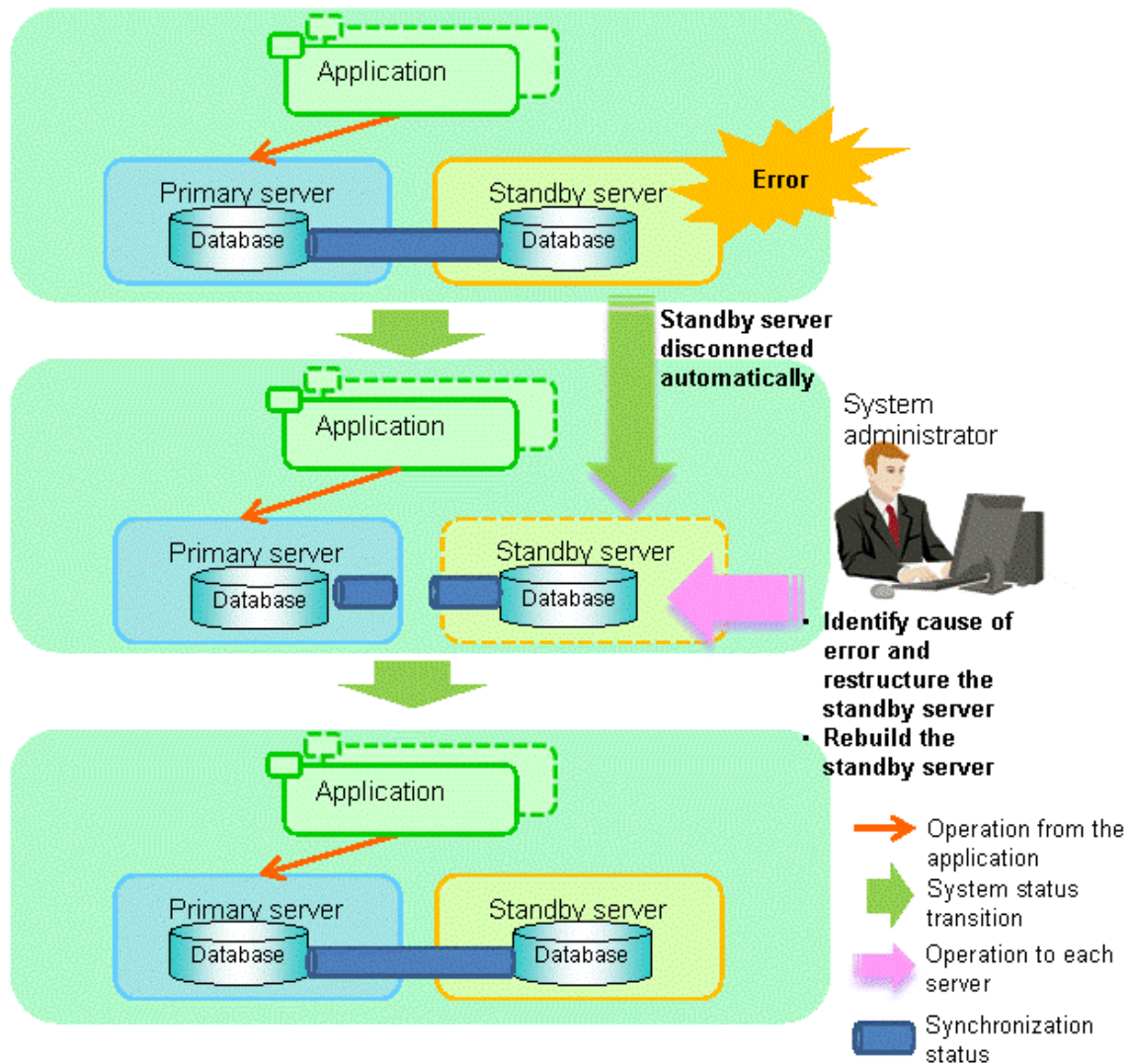
If the disconnection occurred and the server has started degrading, perform the following operations to recover the standby server and revert it to its original state:

- Identify Cause of Error and Restore the Standby Server
- Rebuild the Standby Server



The flow of these operations is shown in the figure below.

Figure 4.2 Flow of operations



#### 4.1.2.1 Identify Cause of Error and Restore the Standby Server

Perform the recovery according to the following procedure:

1. [Stop Mirroring Controller](#)
2. [Recovery of the Mirroring Controller management directory](#)
3. [Identify cause of error and perform recovery](#)

##### 4.1.2.1.1 Stop Mirroring Controller

Execute the `mc_ctl` command in stop mode for the standby server on which the error occurred.

If automatic start and stop of Mirroring Controller has been configured using `systemd`, do not use the `mc_ctl` command, but instead use the `systemctl` command. Refer to "[2.12 Setting Automatic Start and Stop of Mirroring Controller and Multiplexed Instances](#)" for details.

Example)

```
$ mc_ctl stop -M /mdir/inst1
```

This also stops the instance that is required to perform the recovery.



#### Note

If the instance does not stop, refer to "Actions in Response to Failure to Stop an Instance" in the Operation Guide, and then stop the instance. Then, specify the `-e` option in the above command to forcibly stop Mirroring Controller.

### 4.1.2.1.2 Recovery of the Mirroring Controller management directory

Copy the files in the Mirroring Controller management directory from the backup data, and then perform the recovery.

### 4.1.2.1.3 Identify cause of error and perform recovery

Refer to the system logs of the primary server and the standby server to identify the cause of the error, and then perform recovery.

Execute the `pg_basebackup` command to perform recovery by synchronizing data in the primary server with the standby server.

Example)

```
$ pg_basebackup -D /database/inst1 -X fetch --waldir=/transaction/inst1 --progress --verbose -R --  
dbname='application_name=standbyServerName' -h primaryServerHostName -p primaryServerPortNumber
```



#### See

This recovery procedure is the same as the procedure for setting up the standby server.

Refer to "[2.5.2 Creating, Setting, and Registering the Standby Server Instance](#)", and then perform the recovery.

### 4.1.2.2 Rebuild the Standby Server

Start the Mirroring Controller and the instance of the standby server, and rebuild the standby server.

Enabling automatic switch/disconnection

As the instance administrator user, execute the `mc_ctl` command in start mode.

Example)

```
$ mc_ctl start -M /mcdir/inst1
```

Disabling automatic switch/disconnection

As the instance administrator user, execute the `mc_ctl` command in start mode with the `-F` option specified.

Example)

```
$ mc_ctl start -M /mcdir/inst1 -F
```



#### Point

After Mirroring Controller is started, automatic switch/disconnection can be enabled or disabled using the `enable-failover` or `disable-failover` mode of the `mc_ctl` command.

## 4.1.3 Addressing Errors During Degrading Operation

This section explains how to address errors that may occur on the server on which operation is continuing during degrading operation triggered by a switch or disconnection.

## If needing to recover from backup data

If it is necessary to recover the database using backup data due to data becoming corrupted from disk failure or user operation error, refer to the following for information on recovery to database multiplexing mode:

- [Action Required when All Database Servers or Instances Stopped](#)
- [Recovering from an Incorrect User Operation](#)

## If a temporary error occurs

If a temporary error occurs, such as due to a high load on the server or insufficient system resources, remove the cause of the error and restart Mirroring Controller, and then refer to the following for details on recovery to database multiplexing mode:

- [Operations when the Server has Started Degrading after a Switch has Occurred](#)
- [Operations when the Server has Started Degrading after a Disconnection has Occurred](#)



See

Refer to "[3.2 Starting and Stopping Mirroring Controller](#)" for information on restarting Mirroring Controller.

## 4.2 Action Required when Automatic Switch Fails

If the system behavior is unstable, for example there are insufficient temporary system resources, the Mirroring Controller automatic switch may fail.

Perform the switch manually using one of the following methods:

- Refer to the procedures in "[3.4 Manually Switching the Primary Server](#)".
- In the standby server, execute the `mc_ctl` command in switch mode with the `-force` option specified to forcibly perform the switch.

Example)

```
$ mc_ctl switch -M /mdir/inst1 --force
```



Point

- Even if connection cannot be established between database servers, it is possible to fence the primary server and forcibly switch by executing the `mc_ctl` command in switch mode with the `--force` option specified.
- The primary server is not fenced in the cases below, so stop Mirroring Controller and instances of the primary server database in advance:
  - The `--no-fencing` option is specified when performing forced switch.
  - The `heartbeat_error_action` parameter in `serverIdentifier.conf` is set to "message" and the fencing command is not configured to be used (the `fencing_command` parameter is omitted in `serverIdentifier.conf`).
  - The `heartbeat_error_action` parameter in `serverIdentifier.conf` is set to "fallback".



See

### Recovery to database multiplexing mode

Refer to "[4.1.1.2 Rebuild the Standby Server](#)" and "[4.1.1.3 Failback of the Primary Server](#)" for information on recovery to database multiplexing mode.

## 4.3 Action Required when Automatic Disconnection Fails

---

If the system behavior is unstable, for example there are insufficient system resources such as available memory or free disk space, automatic disconnection using Mirroring Controller may not be possible.

Perform the disconnection manually using one of the following methods:

- Refer to the procedures in ["3.5 Manually Disconnecting the Standby Server"](#).
- In the primary server, execute the `mc_ctl` command in detach mode to perform forced disconnection.

Example )

```
$ mc_ctl detach -M /mcdiir/inst1
```

### Point

---

- Even if connection cannot be established between database servers, it is possible to fence the standby server and forcibly disconnect by executing the `mc_ctl` command in detach mode.
  - In the cases below, stop Mirroring Controller and instances of the standby server database in advance so that the standby server is not fenced:
    - The `--no-fencing` option is specified when performing forced disconnection.
    - The `heartbeat_error_action` parameter in `serverIdentifier.conf` is set to "message" and the fencing command is not configured to be used (the `fencing_command` parameter is omitted in `serverIdentifier.conf`).
    - The `heartbeat_error_action` parameter in `serverIdentifier.conf` is set to "fallback".
- 

### See

---

#### Recovery to database multiplexing mode

Refer to ["4.1.2.2 Rebuild the Standby Server"](#) for information on recovery to database multiplexing mode.

---

## 4.4 Action Required when All Database Servers or Instances Stopped

---

This section explains what happens when all database servers or instances on the database server have stopped, so jobs cannot continue.

### See

---

#### Recovery to database multiplexing mode

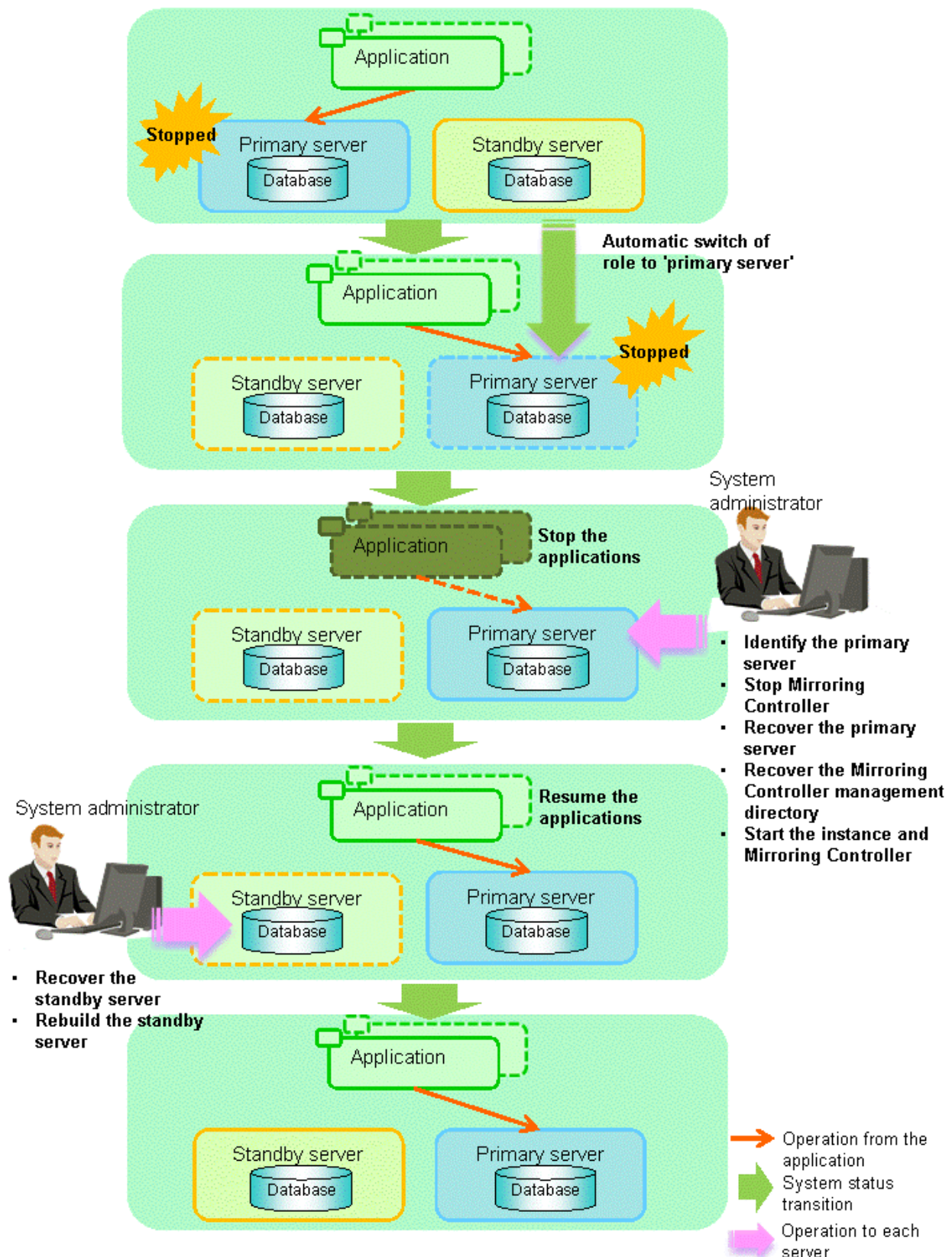
Refer to ["4.1.1.2 Rebuild the Standby Server"](#) and ["4.1.1.3 Failback of the Primary Server"](#) for information on recovery to database multiplexing mode.

---

The flow of these recovery operations is shown in the figure below.



Figure 4.3 Flow of operations



Perform the following procedure:

1. Stop the applications  
Stop the applications from running.

## 2. Identify the primary server

Use one of the following methods to identify the primary server that was running before the servers or instances stopped:

- Refer to the system log on each server and identify the server where the following message was output.

Message:

```
MirroringControllerOpen[30017]: LOG: promotion processing completed (MCA00062)
```

- On each server, execute the `mc_ctl` command in status mode to search the servers for which "none(inactivated primary)" is displayed.

## 3. Stop Mirroring Controller on the primary server

Execute the `mc_ctl` command in stop mode on the primary server.

If automatic start and stop of Mirroring Controller has been configured using `systemd`, do not use the `mc_ctl` command, but instead use the `systemctl` command. Refer to "[2.12 Setting Automatic Start and Stop of Mirroring Controller and Multiplexed Instances](#)" for details.

Example)

```
$ mc_ctl stop -M /mcdir/inst1
```



### Note

#### Forcibly stopping Mirroring Controller

If Mirroring Controller does not stop, specify the `-e` option in the stop mode of the `mc_ctl` command and then execute the command.

Example)

```
$ mc_ctl stop -M /mcdir/inst1 -e
```

## 4. Recover the primary server

First, refer to "Actions when an Error Occurs" in the Operation Guide, and then identify the cause of the error and perform recovery.

Next, recover the primary server using the recovery method that uses the `pgx_rcvall` command based on the backup data.

If the backup operation was performed using the `pgx_dmpall` command based on the instructions in "[2.14.2 Database Backup Operation](#)", perform the following procedure for the recovery:

- Perform the following operations on both the primary server and the standby server, and check the server containing the backup data and the archive log that show the latest date.
  - Execute the `pgx_rcvall` command with the `-l` option specified and identify the backup data that shows the latest date.
  - Identify the archive log that shows the latest date, as shown below.

Example)

```
$ ls -ltr backupDataStorageDir/*_wal
```

- If the latest backup data exists on the standby server, copy (\*1) the backup data and overwrite (\*2) it to each backup storage destination directory on the primary server.
- If the latest archive log and transaction log file exist on the standby server, copy (\*1) the archive log and overwrite (\*2) it to the backup storage destination directory on the primary server.
- Execute the `pgx_rcvall` command on the primary server, specifying the backup storage destination directory of the primary server.



## Note

\*1: The backup data may contain a symbolic link, so copy the backup data so that the symbolic link is not converted to an ordinary file (with the tar command, for example).

\*2: If you can save a copy of the backup storage destination directory, do so without overwriting it.



## See

Refer to "Actions when an Error Occurs" in the Operation Guide for information on the `pgx_rcvall` command.

### 5. Recover the Mirroring Controller management directory

Copy the files in the Mirroring Controller management directory from the backup data, and then perform the recovery.

### 6. Start the primary server instance and Mirroring Controller

#### Enabling automatic switch/disconnection

As the instance administrator user, execute the `mc_ctl` command in start mode.

Example)

```
$ mc_ctl start -M /mcdir/inst1
```

#### Disabling automatic switch/disconnection

As the instance administrator user, execute the `mc_ctl` command in start mode with the `-F` option specified.

Example)

```
$ mc_ctl start -M /mcdir/inst1 -F
```



## Point

After Mirroring Controller is started, automatic switch/disconnection can be enabled or disabled using the `enable-failover` or `disable-failover` mode of the `mc_ctl` command.

### 7. Resume applications

Resume the applications.

### 8. Stop Mirroring Controller on the standby server

Execute the `mc_ctl` command in stop mode on the standby server.

If automatic start and stop of Mirroring Controller has been configured using `systemd`, do not use the `mc_ctl` command, but instead use the `systemctl` command. Refer to ["2.12 Setting Automatic Start and Stop of Mirroring Controller and Multiplexed Instances"](#) for details.

Example)

```
$ mc_ctl stop -M /mcdir/inst1
```

### 9. Recover the standby server

Refer to ["2.5.2 Creating, Setting, and Registering the Standby Server Instance"](#), and then recover (set up) the standby server from the primary server.

### 10. Rebuild the standby server

On the standby server, start Mirroring Controller and the instance.

### Enabling automatic switch/disconnection

As the instance administrator user, execute the `mc_ctl` command in start mode.

Example)

```
$ mc_ctl start -M /mcdir/inst1
```

### Disabling automatic switch/disconnection

As the instance administrator user, execute the `mc_ctl` command in start mode with the `-F` option specified.

Example)

```
$ mc_ctl start -M /mcdir/inst1 -F
```



After Mirroring Controller is started, automatic switch/disconnection can be enabled or disabled using the `enable-failover` or `disable-failover` mode of the `mc_ctl` command.

## 4.5 Recovering from an Incorrect User Operation

This section describes how to recover an instance when data has been corrupted due to incorrect user operation.

For example, when data has been corrupted due to incorrect user operation, such as data being unintentionally changed or deleted by an application or command, it is necessary to restore the original data on the primary server and resynchronize with the standby server.

Use the following procedure to perform recovery.

1. Identify the primary server

Execute the `mc_ctl` command in status mode on each server, and search for a server for which "primary" or "none(inactivated primary)" is displayed.

2. Stop the applications and commands that caused the incorrect operation to occur

Stop applications and commands that are running on the primary server. This will minimize the impact caused by the incorrect data.

Also, if any applications used for reference by the standby server are running, stop them too.

3. Stop the instance and Mirroring Controller

Stop the instance and Mirroring Controller on both the primary server and standby server.

Example)

```
$ mc_ctl stop -a -M /mcdir/inst1
```

4. Recover the database on the primary server

Recover the database using the recovery method in which the `pgx_rcvall` command uses the backup data to recover the database to a restore point prior to the time when the incorrect operation was performed.



Refer to "Recovering from an Incorrect User Operation" in the Operation Guide for information on using the `pgx_rcvall` command to recover the database to a restore point, and then perform only the database recovery procedure while the instance is in a stop state.

5. Start the instance and Mirroring Controller

Start the instance and Mirroring Controller on the primary server.

### Enabling automatic switch/disconnection

As the instance administrator user, execute the `mc_ctl` command in start mode.



Example )

```
$ mc_ctl start -M /mcdir/inst1
```

#### Disabling automatic switch/disconnection

As the instance administrator user, execute the mc\_ctl command in start mode with the -F option specified.

Example )

```
$ mc_ctl start -M /mcdir/inst1 -F
```



#### Point

After Mirroring Controller is started, automatic switch/disconnection can be enabled or disabled using the enable-failover or disable-failover mode of the mc\_ctl command.

#### 6. Build the new standby server

Refer to "[2.5 Setting Up the Standby Server](#)" for information on building (setting up) a standby server from the primary server.

## Chapter 5 Managing Mirroring Controller Using WebAdmin

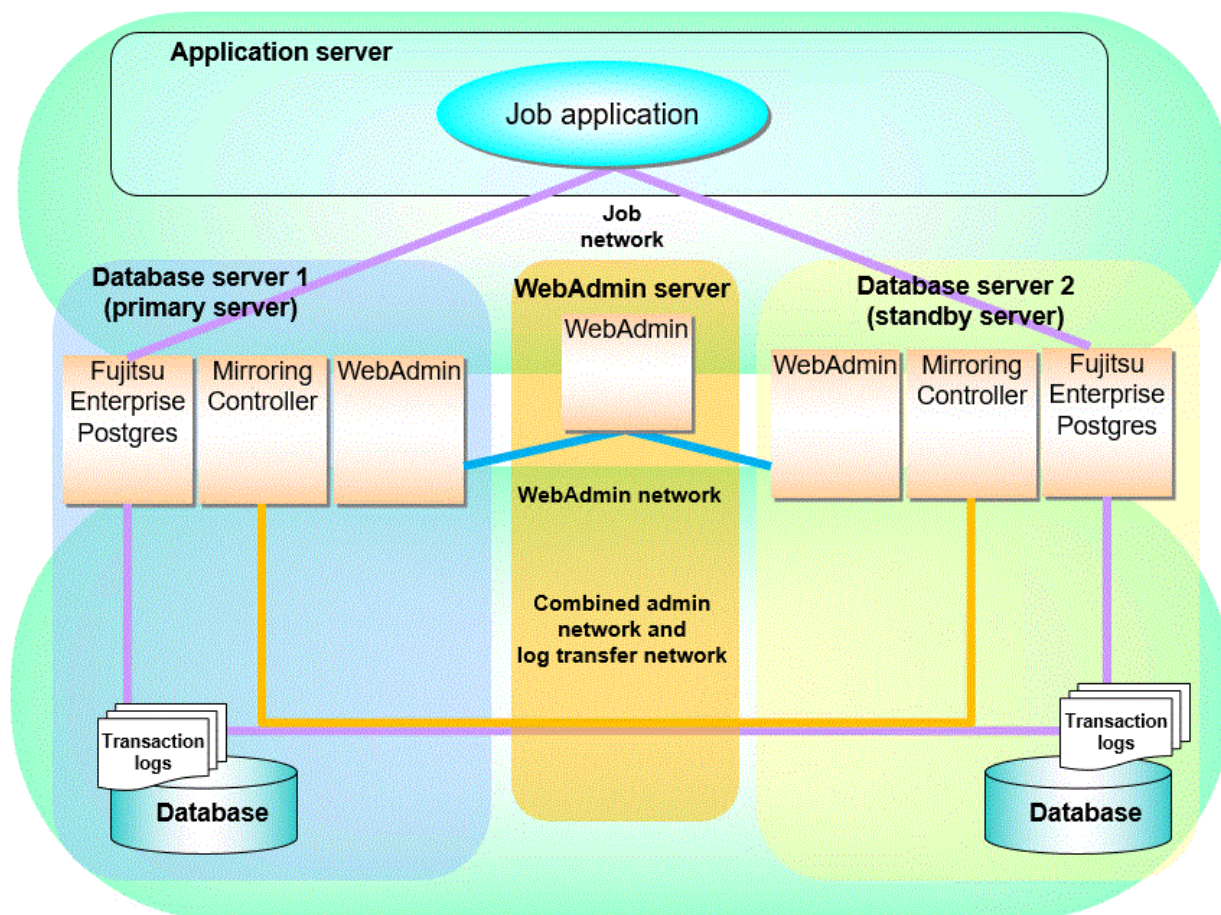
This chapter describes how to set up and manage Mirroring Controller in a streaming replication cluster using WebAdmin.

Mirroring Controller can be used to monitor a streaming replication cluster and perform automatic switching or disconnect synchronous replication when there is an error.

WebAdmin can be used to set up Mirroring Controller in an existing replication cluster. Mirroring Controller can be set up for either synchronous standby instances or asynchronous standby instances.

The configuration of the database multiplexing system built using WebAdmin is shown below:

Figure 5.1 Configuration of database multiplexing operation system using WebAdmin



### Point

- If Mirroring Controller is set up to the replication cluster using WebAdmin, the network with the host name (or IP address) specified in [Host name] will be used as the admin network and the log transfer network.
- To use a network other than the job network as the log transfer network, before building the replication cluster specify a host name other than the job network one in [Host name].


### Note

If you set up the arbitration server using WebAdmin, install WebAdmin on the arbitration server.

## 5.1 Mirroring Controller Setup

---

Perform the following procedure to set up Mirroring Controller in a streaming replication cluster.

1. In the [Instances] tab, select the standby instance on which Mirroring Controller needs to be set up.
2. Click .
3. Enter the information for the Mirroring Controller to be set up.
  - [Enable automatic switch over]: Toggles the automatic switch/disconnection functionality. Select "Yes". The default is "No".
  - [Mirroring Controller management directory]: Directory where the Mirroring Controller configuration files will be stored. When the [Mirroring Controller management directory] is entered, WebAdmin will search the Mirroring Controller configuration files in the entered directory based on the [Data storage path] of the corresponding DB instance. If Mirroring Controller configuration files are found, the Mirroring Controller fields will be auto filled.
  - [Mirroring Controller port]: Port number of Mirroring Controller. Note that if the Windows firewall feature is enabled, you must enable the port number of Mirroring Controller. Refer to "[E.2 Windows Firewall Settings](#)" for details.
  - [Heartbeat interval (milliseconds)]: Number of milliseconds between two consecutive heartbeat checks. The default is "800".
  - [Heartbeat timeout (seconds)]: Number of seconds for the heartbeat timeout. The default is "1".
  - [Heartbeat retry]: Number of retries for heartbeat monitoring, before failover occurs. The default is "2".
  - [Heartbeat error action]: Operation when a heartbeat abnormality is detected. The default is "Fallback".

When using FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 10 or 11 instance which was created with FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres WebAdmin 10 or 11, the mode in the [Heartbeat error action] for Mirroring Controller setup cannot be changed.

When setting up Mirroring Controller for FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 9.5 and 9.6 instances, the [Heartbeat error action] is not supported and therefore is not displayed.

When the [Heartbeat error action] is set to "Arbitration", the following extra items are displayed:

- [Arbitration network IP address]: IP address of the arbitration network.
- [Mirroring Controller Arbitration port]: Port number of Mirroring Controller for communicating with the arbitration server.

The [Arbitration server configuration] section is also displayed with the following items. The [Arbitration server configuration] will not be auto filled.

- [Location]: Location of the arbitration server. "Local" or "Remote" can be selected depending on your configuration.

If the arbitration server and WebAdmin server are located on the same server, you can select "Local" and the following items are displayed:

- [Arbitration management directory]: Directory where the arbitration server configuration files will be stored.
- [Arbitration server host or IP address]: Host name or IP address of the arbitration server.
- [Arbitration process port]: Port number for the arbitration process.
- [Fencing command]: Full path of the fencing command that fences a database server when an abnormality is detected.

If "Remote" is set for the item, the items below are displayed in addition to the above items.

- In the [Arbitration server configuration] section, [Operating system credential] is displayed where you can enter the following information:

[User name]: User name to access the arbitration server.


[Password]: Password to access the arbitration server.



- In the [Remote WebAdmin for Arbitration server] section, the following items are displayed:

[Remote WebAdmin address]: IP address of the remote WebAdmin installed on the arbitration server.

[Remote WebAdmin port]: Port number for the WebAdmin installed on the arbitration server.

When the [Heartbeat error action] is set to "Command", the following extra items are displayed:

- [Arbitration command]: Full path of the arbitration command to be executed when an abnormality is detected.
  - [Fencing command]: Full path of the fencing command that fences a database server when an abnormality is detected.
4. Click  to set up Mirroring Controller.
  5. Upon successful completion, Mirroring Controller will be started on master and standby instances.

After the Mirroring Controller has been set up,  ([Edit Mirroring Controller] button) and  ([Mirroring Controller Configuration] button) are available. These buttons are displayed only when FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 10 or later instances are created with FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres WebAdmin 12 or later.

For FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 9.5 and 9.6 instances, the [Heartbeat error action] will not be displayed.

When the [Heartbeat error action] is "Arbitration", the following information is displayed: whether the arbitration status is "online" or "offline", the arbitration server IP address and the arbitration process port.





Operating system credential (User name, Password) should not contain hazardous characters. Refer to "[Appendix F WebAdmin Disallow User Inputs Containing Hazardous Characters](#)".

## 5.2 Edit Mirroring Controller Setup

---

Settings made in "[5.1 Mirroring Controller Setup](#)" can be updated in either the master instance or a standby instance using WebAdmin.

Perform the following procedure to edit Mirroring Controller configuration:

1. In the [Instances] tab, select the instance for which the Mirroring Controller configuration is to be edited.
2. Click .
3. Enter the information for the Mirroring Controller to be updated. Refer to "[5.1 Mirroring Controller Setup](#)".
4. Click  to update the Mirroring Controller.
5. Upon successful completion, Mirroring Controller will be started on master and standby instances.



Editing and saving the [Edit Mirroring Controller] page will reset all other settings that are not listed on this page to default values.

## 5.3 Mirroring Controller Configuration

---

The information related to Mirroring Controller monitoring and control (refer to "[A.4.1 Server Configuration File for the Database Servers](#)") and the information related to arbitration and control of the Mirroring Controller arbitration process (refer to "[A.4.2 Arbitration Configuration File](#)") can be set using WebAdmin. You can view and update the configuration on either the master instance or the standby instance.

Perform the following procedure:

1. In the [Instances] tab, select the instance for the Mirroring Controller configuration you want to view.
2. Click  to view the Mirroring Controller configuration.
3. Click  to show the editing page for the Mirroring Controller configuration. The Mirroring Controller configurations defined during [Mirroring Controller Setup] are read-only on this page. Refer to "[5.1 Mirroring Controller Setup](#)".

Additionally, refer to the "[Appendix A Parameters](#)" for information about the settings and the corresponding parameter names.

The items common to all [Heartbeat error action] are:

- Target DB
- Core file path
- Syslog facility
- Syslog identity
- Remote call timeout (milliseconds)
- Agent alive timeout (seconds)
- DB instance check interval (milliseconds)
- DB instance check timeout (seconds)
- DB instance check retry
- DB instance timeout action
- Disk check interval (milliseconds)
- Disk check retry
- Tablespace directory error action
- Post-switch command
- Post-promote command  
(Post-promote command is replaced in FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 12. The Post-promote command is still valid and will be displayed when it is used in the server configuration file of Mirroring Controller.)
- Post-attach command
- Pre-detach command
- State transition command timeout (seconds)
- Check synchronous standby names validation

When the [Heartbeat error action] is set to "Arbitration", the following extra items are displayed:

- Arbitration timeout (seconds)
- Arbiter alive interval (milliseconds)
- Arbiter alive retry
- Arbiter alive timeout (seconds)
- Arbiter connect interval (milliseconds)
- Arbiter connect timeout (seconds)
- Fencing command
- Fencing command timeout (seconds)
- Shutdown detached synchronous standby

When the [Heartbeat error action] is set to "Arbitration", the [Arbitration server configuration] section is displayed with the following items:

- Core file path
- Syslog facility
- Syslog identity

- Fencing command timeout (seconds)
- Heartbeat interval (milliseconds)
- Heartbeat timeout (seconds)
- Heartbeat retry

When the [Heartbeat error action] is set to "Command", the following extra items are available:

- Fencing command timeout (seconds)
- Arbitration command timeout (seconds)
- Shutdown detached synchronous standby

When the [Heartbeat error action] is set to "Message", the following extra items are available:

- Fencing command
- Fencing command timeout (seconds)

In addition, the following configurations are provided:

- DB instance JDBC connection SSL parameters
- DB instance libpq connection SSL parameters


4. Click  to update the Mirroring Controller configurations.

## 5.4 Stopping Mirroring Controller

---

Mirroring Controller can be stopped either in master instance or in standby instance using WebAdmin.

Perform the following procedure to stop Mirroring Controller.

1. In the [Instances] tab, select the instance where to stop Mirroring Controller.
2. Click .
3. In the confirmation dialog box, click [Yes].


Mirroring Controller will be stopped on the selected instance. The Mirroring Controller status will be updated, and a confirmation message entry will be displayed in the [Message] section.

## 5.5 Starting Mirroring Controller

---

Mirroring Controller can be started either in master instance or in standby instance using WebAdmin.

Perform the following procedure to start Mirroring Controller.

1. In the [Instances] tab, select the instance where to start Mirroring Controller.
2. Click .
3. In the confirmation dialog box, select the desired failover mode, and then click [Yes].


Mirroring Controller will be started on the selected instance. The Mirroring Controller status will be updated, and a confirmation message entry will be displayed in the [Message] section.

## 5.6 Disabling Failover Mode

---

Disabling failover mode in Mirroring Controller disables automatic switch/disconnection between master and standby instances.

Perform the following procedure to disable failover mode.

1. In the [Instances] tab, select the instance.
2. Click .
3. In the confirmation dialog box, click [Yes].


Failover mode will be disabled in Mirroring Controller. The Mirroring Controller status will be updated and a confirmation message entry will be displayed in the [Message] section.

## 5.7 Enabling Failover Mode

---

Enabling failover mode in Mirroring Controller enables automatic switch/disconnection between master and standby instances.

Perform the following procedure to enable failover.


1. In the [Instances] tab, select the instance.
2. Click .
3. In the confirmation dialog box, click [Yes].

Failover mode will be enabled in Mirroring Controller. The Mirroring Controller status will be updated and a confirmation message entry will be displayed in the [Message] section.

## 5.8 Deleting Mirroring Controller Setup

---

Deleting Mirroring Controller setup removes its setup from master and standby instances.

1. In the [Instances] tab, select the instance.
2. Click .
3. In the confirmation dialog box, click [Yes].

Mirroring Controller setup will be removed from the cluster. The cluster status will be updated and a confirmation message entry will be displayed in the [Message] section.


For the instances in FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 12 or later, WebAdmin does not delete the Mirroring Controller management directory and the configuration files.

## 5.9 Status Update after Failover

---

When Mirroring Controller performs a failover, standby instance will be promoted to standalone instance. The Mirroring Controller setup will be removed from both standby and master instances.

The following scenario describes one of the ways in which failover can be triggered, and the results achieved by the use of Mirroring Controller in WebAdmin.

1. In the [Instances] tab, select the master instance "inst1".
2. Click .
3. In the confirmation dialog box, the warning "This instance is being monitored by Mirroring Controller. Stopping the instance may result in cluster failover." is displayed.
4. Choose the stop mode and click [Yes].

In the server, the following takes place:



- a. The master instance is stopped.
  - b. Failover is triggered in Mirroring Controller.
  - c. The Mirroring Controller setup is removed from both master and standby instances
  - d. Standby instance is promoted to standalone.
5. When the instance is refreshed in WebAdmin, the latest status of the instances will be displayed.



#### Note

When failover is performed, the Mirroring Controller setup is removed from both master and standby instances. Therefore, to manage the Mirroring Controller using WebAdmin again, create the standby instance and set up Mirroring Controller.

Refer to "Creating a Standby Instance" in the Operation Guide for details.

Refer to "[5.1 Mirroring Controller Setup](#)" for details.

## 5.10 Action Required when an Error Occurs in the Combined Admin Network and Log Transfer Network

Communication errors may temporarily occur in the network used as the admin network and log transfer network due to reasons such as high load on the server or insufficient system resources. Because of this, there is a risk of causing a split-brain situation by mistake even though the server has no issues.

Split brain is a phenomenon in which both servers temporarily operate as primary servers, causing data updates to be performed on both servers.

### How to detect split brain using WebAdmin

If the conditions below are met, split brain may occur. Refer to "[Split-brain detection method](#)" and "[How to recover from a split-brain](#)" in "[Appendix D Notes on Performing Automatic Degradation Immediately after a Heartbeat Abnormality](#)" and take the actions described.

1. A standby instance is selected in the [Instances] tab, and
2. "Standalone" is displayed in [Instance type], and
3. A master instance is selected in the [Instances] tab, and
4. "Standalone" is displayed in [Instance type].



#### Note

The admin network is important because Mirroring Controllers use it to confirm the status of each server.

The log transfer network is also important to maintain the data freshness.

Therefore, use network configurations resistant to faults for these networks by using the network redundancy channel bonding feature provided by the operating system or network driver vendor.

## 5.11 Performing Automatic Degradation Using the Arbitration Server

If database multiplexing is performed using WebAdmin, it is also possible to perform automatic degradation using the arbitration server. In such cases, it is necessary to perform tasks on the database server and the arbitration server after setting up Mirroring Controller in WebAdmin.

### Tasks on the arbitration server

Perform setup of the arbitration server using Mirroring Controller commands.



1. Set up the arbitration server.

Refer to ["2.3 Setting Up the Arbitration Server"](#) in ["Chapter 2 Setting Up Database Multiplexing Mode"](#) for information on how to set up the arbitration server.

## Tasks on the database server

Change some of the settings after setting up Mirroring Controller in WebAdmin.

1. Set up Mirroring Controller in WebAdmin.

Refer to ["5.1 Mirroring Controller Setup"](#) for details.

2. Use WebAdmin to stop Mirroring Controller on the master and standby instances.

Refer to ["5.4 Stopping Mirroring Controller"](#) for details.

3. Edit the network configuration file of the master and standby instances, and add the arbitration server information.

The network configuration file is `network.conf`, which exists in the Mirroring Controller management directory specified during Mirroring Controller setup. Refer to ["A.3 Network Configuration File"](#) for details.

A definition example of `network.conf` is shown below.

Example:

The port number of the database server to be used as the arbitration network is set to "27541".  
The ID of the server of the Mirroring Controller arbitration process is set to "arbiter", and its port number is set to "27541".

```
dbsvm27500 192.0.2.100,192.0.3.100 27540,27541 server
dbsvs27500 192.0.2.110,192.0.3.110 27540,27541 server
arbiter 192.0.3.120 27541 arbiter
```



### Note

- Ensure that the port numbers set for the database server and the arbitration server do not conflict with other software. In addition, do not configure the same segment for the admin network and the arbitration network.
- If the server type is "server", two IP addresses or host names, and two port numbers need to be specified in the following order:
  - IP address or host name of the database server used as the admin network
  - IP address or host name of the database server used as the arbitration network
  - Port number of the database server used as the admin network
  - Port number of the database server used as the arbitration network
- If the server type is "arbiter", specify the IP address or host name set for the `my_address` parameter and the port number set for the `port` parameter in `arbitration.conf` of the arbitration server.
- WebAdmin also support editing mirroring controller configuration via Use WebAdmin to edit Mirroring Controller configurations.  
Refer to ["5.2 Edit Mirroring Controller Setup"](#) for details.

4. Edit the server configuration file of the master and standby instances, and add the parameters required for automatic degradation using the arbitration server.

The server configuration file is `instanceName.conf` or `instancePort.conf`, which exists in the Mirroring Controller management directory specified during Mirroring Controller setup.

To perform automatic degradation using the arbitration server, set the `heartbeat_error_action` parameter to "arbitration".

Refer to ["A.4.1 Server Configuration File for the Database Servers"](#) for information on other parameters.

5. Use WebAdmin to start Mirroring Controller on the master and standby instances.

Refer to ["5.5 Starting Mirroring Controller"](#) for details.

## Common tasks

1. Use the Mirroring Controller command to check the connection status from the database server or the arbitration server.

Refer to "[2.8 Checking the Connection Status](#)" for information on how to check the connection status.

## Appendix A Parameters

This appendix describes the configuration files and parameters required by the database multiplexing mode.



See

Refer to "Server Configuration" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on the postgresql.conf file.

### A.1 Parameters Set on the Primary Server

The content for the parameters set in the postgresql.conf file of the primary server is shown in the table below.

Table A.1 postgresql.conf file

Parameter	Value set	Explanation
wal_level	replica or logical	Specify the output level for the transaction log. Specify "logical" when logical decoding is also to be used.
max_wal_senders	2 or more	Specify "2" when building a Mirroring Controller cluster system.  When additionally connecting asynchronous standby servers to the cluster system, add the number of simultaneous connections from these standby servers.
synchronous_standby_names	' <i>standbyServerName</i> '	Use single quotation marks (') to enclose the name that will identify the standby server. Any name can be specified.  Do not change this parameter while Mirroring Controller is running.  Do not specify multiple names to this parameter as the Mirroring Controller can manage only one standby server.
hot_standby	on	Specify whether queries can be run on the standby server.  Specify "on".
wal_keep_size	WAL save size (megabytes)	If a delay exceeding the value set in this parameter occurs, the WAL segment required later by the primary server may be deleted.  Additionally, if you stop a standby server (for maintenance, for example), consider the stop time and set a value that will not cause the WAL segment to be deleted.  Refer to "Estimating Transaction Log Space Requirements" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server for information on estimating the WAL save size.
wal_log_hints	on	When using the pg_rewind command to recover a standby server, specify this parameter or enable checksums when executing the initdb command.
wal_sender_timeout	Timeout (milliseconds)	Specify the time period after which it is determined that the receiver process (walreceiver) of the transaction log is in an abnormal state on the primary server.  The specified value must be larger than the value set for the wal_receiver_status_interval parameter set in the postgresql.conf file of the standby server.

Parameter	Value set	Explanation
		By aligning this value with the value for the database process heartbeat monitoring time, you can unify the time after which it is determined that an error has occurred.
wal_receiver_timeout	Timeout (milliseconds)	<p>Specify the time period after which it is determined that an error has occurred when the transaction log was received on the standby server.</p> <p>By aligning this value with the value for the database process heartbeat monitoring time, you can unify the time after which it is determined that an error has occurred.</p>
archive_mode	on	Specify the archive log mode.
archive_command	<code>'installDir/bin/pgx_walcopy.cmd "%p" "backupDataStorageDestinationDirectory/archived_wal/%f"'</code>	Specify the command and storage destination to save the transaction log.
backup_destination	Backup data storage destination directory	<p>Specify the name of directory where to store the backup data.</p> <p>Set the permissions so that only the instance administrator user can access the specified directory.</p> <p>Specify the same full path on all servers, so that the backup data of other servers can be used to perform recovery.</p>
listen_addresses	Primary server IP address, host name, or "*"	<p>Specify the IP address or host name of the primary server. Specify the IP address or corresponding host name that will be used to connect to the log transfer network.</p> <p>The content specified is also used to allow connections from client applications.</p> <p>To receive the connection and the transaction log from any client or standby server, specify "*".</p> <p>Refer to "Connections and Authentication" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for details.</p>
max_connections	Number of simultaneous client connections to the instance + superuser_reserved_connections value	<p>The value specified is also used to restrict the number of connections from client applications and the number of connections for the management of instances.</p> <p>Refer to "When an Instance was Created with the initdb Command" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server, and "Connections and Authentication" in the PostgreSQL Documentation, for details.</p>
superuser_reserved_connections	Add the number of simultaneous executions of mc_ctl status (*1) + 2	<p>Specify the number of connections reserved for connections from database superusers.</p> <p>Add the number of connections from Mirroring Controller processes. Also reflect the added value in the max_connections parameter.</p>
restart_after_crash	off	<p>If "on" is specified, or the default value is used for this parameter, behavior equivalent to restarting Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres, including crash recovery, will be performed when some server processes end abnormally.</p> <p>However, when database multiplexing monitoring is used, a failover will occur after an error is detected when some server processes end abnormally, and the restart of those server processes is forcibly stopped. Specify "off" to</p>

Parameter	Value set	Explanation
		prevent behavior such as this from occurring for no apparent reason.
synchronous_commit	on or remote_apply	Specify up to what position WAL send is to be performed before transaction commit processing returns a normal termination response to a client.  Set "on" or "remote_apply" to prevent data loss caused by operating system or server down immediately after a switch or switch.
recovery_target_timeline	latest	Specify "latest" so that the new standby server (original primary server) will follow the new primary server when a switch occurs.  This parameter is required when the original primary server is incorporated as a new standby server after the primary server is switched.

\*1: Number of simultaneous executions of the mc\_ctl command in the status mode.

## A.2 Parameters Set on the Standby Server

This section explains the content of the file and parameters set on the standby server. After editing postgresql.conf file, start the instance. The content for the parameters specified in postgresql.conf file is shown in the table below.

Table A.2 postgresql.conf file

Parameter	Value set	Explanation
wal_level	replica or logical	Specify the output level for the transaction log.  Specify "logical" when logical decoding is also to be used.
max_wal_senders	2 or more	Specify "2" when building a Mirroring Controller cluster system.  When additionally connecting asynchronous standby servers to the cluster system, add the number of simultaneous connections from these standby servers.
synchronous_standby_names	'primaryServerName'	Use single quotation marks (') to enclose the name that will identify the primary server. Any name can be specified.  This name will be required to rebuild the original primary server as the new standby server after the primary server was switched.  Do not change this parameter while Mirroring Controller is running.  Do not specify multiple names to this parameter as the Mirroring Controller can manage only one standby server.
hot_standby	on	Specify whether queries can be run on the standby server.  Specify "on".
wal_keep_size	WAL save size (megabytes)	If a delay exceeding the value set in this parameter occurs, the WAL segment required later by the standby server may be deleted by the primary server.

Parameter	Value set	Explanation
		<p>Additionally, if you stop a standby server (for maintenance, for example), consider the stop time and set a value that will not cause the WAL segment to be deleted.</p> <p>Refer to "Estimating Transaction Log Space Requirements" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server for information on estimating the WALsave size.</p>
wal_log_hints	on	When using the pg_rewind command to recover a standby server, specify this parameter or enable checksums when executing the initdb command.
wal_sender_timeout	Timeout (milliseconds)	<p>Specify the time period after which it is determined that the receiver process (walreceiver) of the transaction log is in an abnormal state on the primary server.</p> <p>The specified value must be larger than the value set for the wal_receiver_status_interval parameter set in the postgresql.conf file of the standby server.</p> <p>By aligning this value with the value for the database process heartbeat monitoring time, you can unify the time after which it is determined that an error has occurred.</p>
wal_receiver_timeout	Timeout (milliseconds)	<p>Specify the time period after which it is determined that an error has occurred when the transaction log was received on the standby server.</p> <p>By aligning this value with the value for the database process heartbeat monitoring time, you can unify the time after which it is determined that an error has occurred.</p>
backup_destination	Backup data storage destination directory	<p>Specify the name of the backup data storage directory.</p> <p>Set the permissions so that only the instance administrator user can access the specified directory.</p> <p>Specify the same full path on all servers so that the backup data of other servers can be used to perform recovery.</p>
archive_mode	on	Specify the archive log mode.
archive_command	'installDir/bin/pgx_walcopy.cmd "%p" "backupDataStorageDestinationDirectory/archived_wal/%f"'	Specify the command and storage destination to save the transaction log.
listen_addresses	Standby server IP address, host name, or "*"	<p>Specify the IP address or host name of the standby server. Specify the IP address or corresponding host name that will be used to connect to the log transfer network.</p> <p>The content specified is also used to allow connections from client applications.</p> <p>To receive the connection and the transaction log from any client or standby server, specify "*".</p> <p>Refer to "Connections and Authentication" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for details.</p>

Parameter	Value set	Explanation
max_connections	Number of simultaneous client connections to the instance + superuser_reserved_connections value	The value specified is also used to restrict the number of connections from client applications and the number of connections for the management of instances.  Refer to "When an Instance was Created with the initdb Command" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server, and "Connections and Authentication" in the PostgreSQL Documentation, for details.
superuser_reserved_connections	Add the number of simultaneous executions of mc_ctl status (*1) + 2	Specify the number of connections reserved for connections from database superusers.  Add the number of connections from Mirroring Controller processes. Also reflect the added value in the max_connections parameter.
restart_after_crash	off	If "on" is specified, or the default value is used for this parameter, behavior equivalent to restarting Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres, including crash recovery, will be performed when some server processes end abnormally.  However, when database multiplexing monitoring is used, a failover will occur after an error is detected when some server processes end abnormally, and the restart of those server processes is forcibly stopped. Specify "off" to prevent behavior such as this from occurring for no apparent reason.
synchronous_commit	on or remote_apply	Specify up to what position WAL send is to be performed before transaction commit processing returns a normal termination response to a client.  Set "on" or "remote_apply" to prevent data loss caused by operating system or server down immediately after a switch or switch.
primary_conninfo	' <i>streamingReplication ConnectionDestinationInfo</i> '	Use single quotation marks (') to enclose the connection destination information of the streaming replication.  The default value of this parameter is automatically set to postgresql.auto.conf in the procedure to run pg_basebackup for instance setup.
recovery_target_timeline	latest	Specify "latest" so that the new standby server (original primary server) will follow the new primary server when a switch occurs.  This parameter is required when the original primary server is incorporated as a new standby server after the primary server is switched.

## A.3 Network Configuration File

This section explains the network configuration file (network.conf) to be defined individually for the database servers and the arbitration server. Define the same content on the primary server and standby server.

For database multiplexing mode, define the network configuration for the following in network.conf.

- Integration between Mirroring Controller processes
- Integration between a Mirroring Controller process and the Mirroring Controller arbitration process

## Items to be defined in network.conf

Format:

```
serverIdentifier hostName[,hostName] portNum[,portNum] [serverType]  
Or,  
serverIdentifier ipAddr[,ipAddr] portNum[,portNum] [serverType]
```

Specify the server identifier, IP address or host name, port number, and server type, using a space as the delimiter.

The items are explained in the table below.

Table A.3 network.conf file

Item	Description
<i>serverIdentifier</i>	Specify any identifier for the server. The maximum length is 64 bytes. Use ASCII characters excluding spaces and number signs (#) to specify this parameter.
<i>ipAddrOrHostName</i>	Specify the IP address or its corresponding host name that will connect to the admin network that performs communication between the database servers, and to the arbitration network that performs communication between a database server and the arbitration server.  When specifying two IP addresses or host names delimited by a comma, do not insert a space after the comma.  Use ASCII characters excluding spaces to specify the host name.
<i>portNum</i>	A port number cannot be specified if it exceeds the range 0 to 65535. Ensure that the port number does not conflict with other software. Do not specify an ephemeral port that may temporarily be assigned by another program. Note that the value specified in this parameter must also be set in the services file.  When specifying two port numbers delimited by a comma, do not insert a space after the comma.
<i>serverType</i>	Specify "server" for a database server ("server" can be omitted), or "arbiter" for the arbitration server.

## Content to be defined on the database servers

This section explains the network.conf content to be defined on the database servers.

The content to be defined depends on the operation settings at the time a heartbeat abnormality is detected.

When automatic degradation by the arbitration server is selected

- Specify definitions related to the admin network and arbitration network.
- Specify the IP address or host name and port number according to the server type (database server or arbitration server) as shown in the table below.

Server type	IP address or host name		Port number	
	First	Second	First	Second
server	IP address or host name used as the admin network	IP address or host name used as the arbitration network (*1)	Port number used as the admin network	Port number used as the arbitration network (*1)
arbiter	IP address or host name of the arbitration server  Specify the same value as that specified in the my_address parameter of arbitration.conf on the arbitration server.	Not required	Port number on the arbitration server  Specify the same value as that specified in the port parameter of arbitration.conf on the arbitration server.	Not required

\*1: This value can be omitted from definitions not related to the local server. If it is omitted, network.conf must be created on both the primary server and standby server.



Example)

IPv4

```
server1 192.0.2.100,192.0.3.100 27540,27541 server
server2 192.0.2.110,192.0.3.110 27540,27541 server
arbiter 192.0.3.120 27541 arbiter
```

IPv6

```
server1 2001:258:8404:1217:250:56ff:fea7:559f,2001:258:8404:1217:250:56ff:fea8:559f
27540,27541 server
server2 2001:258:8404:1217:250:56ff:fea7:55a0,2001:258:8404:1217:250:56ff:fea8:55a0
27540,27541 server
arbiter 2001:258:8404:1217:250:56ff:fea8:55a0 27541 arbiter
```

When operation other than automatic degradation by the arbitration server is selected

- Specify definitions related to the admin network.
- Define the same content on the primary server and standby server.
- Define lines for database servers only.
- Specify only one IP address or host name and port number.

IP address or host name		Port number	
First	Second	First	Second
IP address or host name to be used as the admin network	Not required	Port number used as the admin network	Not required

Example)

The literal space represents a space.

IPv4

```
server1 192.0.2.100 27540
server2 192.0.2.110 27540
```

IPv6

```
server1 2001:258:8404:1217:250:56ff:fea7:559f 27540
server2 2001:258:8404:1217:250:56ff:fea7:55a0 27540
```

**Content to be defined on the arbitration server**

This section explains the network.conf content to be defined on the arbitration server.

- Specify definitions related to the arbitration network.
- Define lines for database servers only.
- For the IP address or host name, specify the same value as the second IP address or host name specified in the database server line in network.conf of the database server.

- For the port number, specify the same value as the second port number specified in the database server line in network.conf of the database server.

Example)

The literal space represents a space.

IPv4

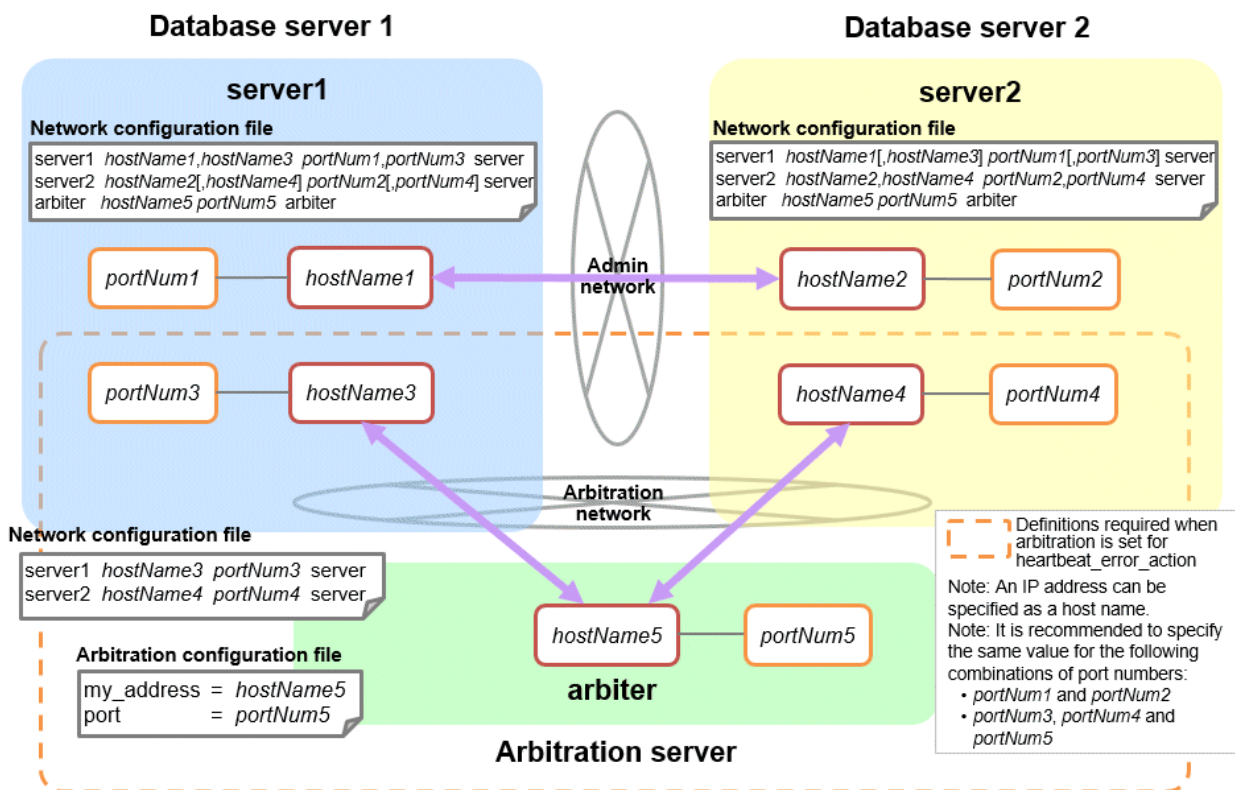
```
server1 192.0.3.100 27541
server2 192.0.3.110 27541
```

IPv6

```
server1 2001:258:8404:1217:250:56ff:fea8:559f 27541
server2 2001:258:8404:1217:250:56ff:fea8:55a0 27541
```

## Relationship between network-related definitions

Refer to the diagram below for the relationship between the host names and IP addresses or port numbers specified in the network configuration file (network.conf) and arbitration configuration file (arbitration.conf).



## A.4 Server Configuration File

### A.4.1 Server Configuration File for the Database Servers

Define the information related to Mirroring Controller monitoring and control in the serverIdentifier.conf file. The maximum length of the server identifier is 64 bytes. Use ASCII characters excluding spaces to specify this parameter.

If the primary server and standby server environments are different, define content that is different, according to the environment.

Table A.4 serverIdentifier.conf file

Parameter	Value set	Explanation
db_instance	<i>'dataStorageDestinationDir'</i> [Example] db_instance = '/database1/inst1'	Specify using single quotation marks (') to enclose the data storage destination directory used to identify the monitoring target instance.  Use ASCII characters to specify this parameter.
target_db	postgres or template1	Specify the name of the database to be connected to the database instance.  The default is "postgres".
db_instance_username	<i>'usernameToConnectToDbInstance'</i>	Specify the username to connect to the database instance.  Use ASCII characters to specify this parameter.  Specify this parameter if the database administrator user is different from the operating system user who starts Mirroring Controller.  Enclose the username of the database superuser in single quotation marks (').  The maximum length of the username is 63 bytes.  The default is the operating system user who starts Mirroring Controller.
db_instance_password	<i>'passwordOfInstanceAdminUser'</i>	Specify the password used when Mirroring Controller connects to a database instance, enclosed in single quotation marks (').  Use ASCII characters to specify this parameter.  If password authentication is performed, you must specify this parameter in the settings used when Mirroring Controller connects to a database instance.  If you specify this parameter when password authentication is not performed, the parameter will be ignored.  If the specified value of this parameter includes ' or \, write \' or \\, respectively.
enable_hash_in_password	on or off	Specify on to treat the # in the db_instance_password specification as a password character, or off to treat it as a comment.  The default is "off".
core_file_path	<i>'coreFileOutputDir'</i>	Specify the directory to which the core file is to be output, enclosed in single quotation marks (').  Use ASCII characters to specify this parameter.  If this parameter is omitted, it will be assumed that the Mirroring Controller management directory was specified.
syslog_facility	Specify LOCAL0, LOCAL1, LOCAL2, LOCAL3, LOCAL4, LOCAL5, LOCAL6, or LOCAL7.	When the import of logs to the syslog is enabled, the value of this parameter will be used for "facility" of the syslog.  The default is "LOCAL0".
syslog_ident (*1)	<i>'programName'</i>	Specify using single quotation marks (') to enclose the program name used to identify the Mirroring Controller message in the system log.

Parameter	Value set	Explanation
		<p>Use ASCII characters excluding spaces to specify this parameter.</p> <p>The default is 'MirroringControllerOpen'.</p>
remote_call_timeout	Admin communication timeout	<p>Specify the timeout value (milliseconds) of the Mirroring Controller agent process for communication between servers.</p> <p>Specify a value between 0 and 2147483647 to be less than the operation system TCP connection timeout (*2).</p> <p>In addition, when using the Mirroring Controller arbitrage process, fencing commands, and state transition commands, specify a value that is greater than the sum of the timeout values (*3).</p> <p>The value 0 indicates that there is no timeout limit.</p> <p>The default is 70000 milliseconds (70 seconds).</p>
agent_alive_timeout	Timeout for Mirroring Controller process heartbeat monitoring (seconds)	<p>If there is no response for at least the number of seconds specified, the Mirroring Controller process is restarted.</p> <p>Specify 0 or a value between 2 and 2147483647. The value 0 indicates that there is no timeout limit.</p> <p>The default is 0 seconds.</p>
heartbeat_error_action	Operation when a heartbeat abnormality is detected using operating system or server heartbeat monitoring	<p>arbitration: Perform automatic degradation using the arbitration server.</p> <p>command: Call a user exit to determine degradation, and perform automatic degradation if required.</p> <p>message: Notify messages.</p> <p>fallback: Perform automatic degradation unconditionally.</p> <p>The default is "arbitration".</p> <p>Set the same value on the primary server and standby server.</p>
heartbeat_interval	Interval time for abnormality monitoring during heartbeat monitoring of the operating system or server (milliseconds)	<p>Abnormality monitoring of the operating system or server is performed at the interval specified in heartbeat_interval.</p> <p>If an error is detected, operation will conform to the value specified for heartbeat_error_action. If "arbitration" is specified in heartbeat_error_action, the error detection time during monitoring of the operating system or server becomes longer than when the arbitration server is not used, by up to the value specified for arbitration_timeout.</p> <p>Specify a value between 1 and 2147483647.</p> <p>The specified value is used as the default for db_instance_check_interval and disk_check_interval.</p> <p>The default is 800 milliseconds.</p>
heartbeat_timeout	Timeout for abnormality monitoring during heartbeat monitoring of the operating system or server (seconds)	<p>If there is no response for at least the number of seconds specified, it will be assumed that an error has occurred that requires the primary server to be switched, or the standby server to be disconnected.</p> <p>If an error is detected, operation will conform to the value specified for heartbeat_error_action. If "arbitration" is</p>

Parameter	Value set	Explanation
		<p>specified in heartbeat_error_action, the error detection time during monitoring of the operating system or server becomes longer than when the arbitration server is not used, by up to the value specified for arbitration_timeout.</p> <p>Specify a value between 1 and 2147483647.</p> <p>The specified value is used as the default for db_instance_check_timeout.</p> <p>The default is 1 second.</p>
heartbeat_retry	Number of retries for abnormality monitoring during heartbeat monitoring of the operating system or server (number of times)	<p>Specify the number of retries to be performed when an error has been detected that requires the primary server to be switched, or the standby server to be disconnected. If an error is detected in succession more than the specified number of times, switch or disconnection will be performed.</p> <p>If an error is detected, operation will conform to the value specified for heartbeat_error_action. If "arbitration" is specified in heartbeat_error_action, the error detection time during monitoring of the operating system or server becomes longer than when the arbitration server is not used, by up to the value specified for arbitration_timeout.</p> <p>Specify a value between 0 and 2147483647.</p> <p>The specified value is used as the default for db_instance_check_retry and disk_check_retry.</p> <p>The default is 2 times.</p>
db_instance_check_interval	Database process heartbeat monitoring interval (milliseconds)	<p>Heartbeat monitoring of the database process is performed at the interval specified in db_instance_check_interval.</p> <p>This parameter setting is also used for abnormality monitoring of streaming replication.</p> <p>Specify a value between 1 and 2147483647.</p> <p>The default is the value set for heartbeat_interval.</p>
db_instance_check_timeout	Database process heartbeat monitoring timeout (seconds)	<p>If there is no response for at least the number of seconds specified, it will be assumed that an error has occurred that requires the primary server to be switched, or the standby server to be disconnected.</p> <p>Specify a value between 1 and 2147483647.</p> <p>The default is the value set for heartbeat_timeout.</p>
db_instance_check_retry	Number of retries for database process heartbeat monitoring (number of times)	<p>Specify the number of retries to be performed when an error has been detected that requires the primary server to be switched, or the standby server to be disconnected. If an error is detected in succession more than the specified number of times, switch or disconnection will be performed. However, if it detects that the database process is down, it will immediately switch or disconnect regardless of the setting of this parameter.</p> <p>This parameter setting is also used for abnormality monitoring of streaming replication.</p> <p>Specify a value between 0 and 2147483647.</p>

Parameter	Value set	Explanation
		The default number of retries is the value set for heartbeat_retry.
db_instance_timeout_action	none, message, or failover	<p>Specify the behavior for no-response monitoring of the instance.</p> <p>none: Do not perform no-response monitoring.</p> <p>message: Notify messages if an error is detected during no-response monitoring.</p> <p>failover: Perform automatic degradation if an error is detected during no-response monitoring.</p> <p>The default is "failover".</p>
disk_check_interval	Interval time for disk abnormality monitoring (milliseconds)	<p>Abnormality monitoring of disk failure is performed at the interval specified in disk_check_interval. If the file cannot be created, it will be assumed that an error has occurred that requires the primary server to be switched, or the standby server to be disconnected.</p> <p>Specify a value between 1 and 2147483647. Set a value larger than the disk access time.</p> <p>The default is the value set for heartbeat_interval.</p>
disk_check_retry	Number of retries for disk abnormality monitoring (number of times)	<p>Specify the number of retries to be performed when an error has been detected that requires the primary server to be switched, or the standby server to be disconnected.</p> <p>If an error is detected in succession more than the specified number of times, switch or disconnection will be performed.</p> <p>Specify a value between 0 and 2147483647.</p> <p>The default number of retries is the value set for heartbeat_retry.</p>
disk_check_timeout	Abnormality monitoring timeout time (seconds)	<p>The time allowed from the start time of the next disk_check_interval after a disk error occurs until the error is determined to be due to timeout.</p> <p>To disconnect the standby server when a disk error due to this timeout is detected on the standby server, set shutdown_detached_synchronous_standby to on.</p> <p>The default is 2147483.</p> <p>Specify an integer between 0 and 2147483.</p>
disk_check_max_threads	Upper limit on the number of threads used for abnormality monitoring	<p>Upper limit on the number of threads for disk monitoring.</p> <p>The default is the number of processors available to the JVM)</p> <p>Specify an integer between 1 and 2147483647, but setting a value greater than the threads available on the machine may result in a system error.</p> <p>When you run the mc_ctl status command separately from the monitoring process, each mc_ctl status temporarily uses the same number of threads as the monitoring process. When setting disk_check_max_threads, consider the machine's thread limit, the number of table spaces you plan</p>

Parameter	Value set	Explanation
		to use, and the number of mc_ctl status commands that may be executed at the same time.
tablespace_directory_error_action	message or failover	Specify the behavior to be implemented if an error is detected in the tablespace storage directory.  message: Notify messages.  failover: Perform automatic degradation.  The default is "failover".
arbiter_alive_interval	Interval time for monitoring connection to the Mirroring Controller arbitration process (milliseconds)	A heartbeat is sent to the Mirroring Controller arbitration process at the specified interval.  Specify a value between 1 and 2147483647.  The default is 16000 milliseconds.  This parameter does not need to be set for operation that does not use the arbitration server.
arbiter_alive_timeout	Timeout for monitoring connection to the Mirroring Controller arbitration process (seconds)	If the heartbeat does not respond within the specified number of seconds, the Mirroring Controller arbitration process is determined to have been disconnected, a message is output, and reconnection is attempted.  Specify a value between 1 and 2147483647.  The default is 20 seconds.  This parameter does not need to be set for operation that does not use the arbitration server.
arbiter_alive_retry	Number of retries for monitoring connection to the Mirroring Controller arbitration process (number of times)	Specify the number of heartbeat retries to be performed if an error is detected in the heartbeat to the Mirroring Controller arbitration process. If the heartbeat does not respond within the specified number of retries, the Mirroring Controller arbitration process is determined to have been disconnected.  Specify a value between 0 and 2147483647.  The default is 0 times.  This parameter does not need to be set for operation that does not use the arbitration server.
arbiter_connect_interval	Attempt interval for connection to the Mirroring Controller arbitration process (milliseconds)	Reconnection is attempted at the specified interval if connection fails at startup of the Mirroring Controller process or if the Mirroring Controller arbitration process is disconnected.  Specify a value between 1 and 2147483647.  The default is 16000 milliseconds.  This parameter does not need to be set for operation that does not use the arbitration server.
arbiter_connect_timeout	Timeout for connection to the Mirroring Controller arbitration process (seconds)	If reconnection at startup of the Mirroring Controller process or after disconnection of the Mirroring Controller arbitration process does not succeed within the specified number of seconds, connection to the Mirroring Controller arbitration process is determined to have failed and reconnection is attempted.  Specify a value between 1 and 2147483647.

Parameter	Value set	Explanation
		<p>The default is 20 seconds.</p> <p>This parameter does not need to be set for operation that does not use the arbitration server.</p>
fencing_command	<p><i>'fencingCmdFilePath'</i></p> <p>[Setting example]</p> <p>fencing_command = '/mc/fencing_dir/ execute_fencing.sh'</p>	<p>Specify the full path of the fencing command that fences a database server where an error is determined to have occurred.</p> <p>Enclose the path in single quotation marks (').</p> <p>Specify the path using less than 1024 bytes.</p> <p>This parameter must be specified when "command" is set for heartbeat_error_action.</p>
fencing_command_timeout	Fencing command timeout (seconds)	<p>If the command does not respond within the specified number of seconds, fencing is determined to have failed and a signal (SIGTERM) is sent to the fencing command execution process.</p> <p>Specify a value between 1 and 2147483647.</p> <p>The default is 20 seconds.</p>
arbitration_timeout	Arbitration processing timeout in the Mirroring Controller arbitration process (seconds)	<p>The specified value must be at least equal to the value of fencing_command_timeout in the arbitration configuration file, which is the heartbeat monitoring time of the operating system or server.</p> <p>If there is no response for at least the number of seconds specified, the primary server will not be switched and the standby server will not be disconnected. Therefore, perform degradation manually.</p> <p>If the heartbeat_interval, heartbeat_timeout, and heartbeat_retry values are specified in arbitration.conf for the arbitration server, use the arbitration server values to design arbitration_timeout.</p> <p>Specify a value between 1 and 2147483647.</p> <p>The default is 30 seconds.</p> <p>This parameter does not need to be set for operation that does not use the arbitration server.</p>
arbitration_command	<p><i>'arbitrationCmdFilePath'</i></p> <p>[Setting example]</p> <p>arbitration_command = '/mc/ arbitration_dir/ execute_arbitration_command.sh'</p>	<p>Specify the full path of the arbitration command to be executed when an abnormality is detected during heartbeat monitoring of the operating system or server. Enclose the path in single quotation marks (').</p> <p>Specify the path using less than 1024 bytes.</p> <p>This parameter must be specified when "command" is set for heartbeat_error_action.</p>
arbitration_command_timeout	Arbitration command timeout (seconds)	<p>If the arbitration command does not respond within the specified number of seconds, it is determined that execution of the arbitration command has failed and a signal (SIGTERM) is sent to the arbitration command execution process.</p> <p>Specify a value between 1 and 2147483647.</p> <p>The default is 30 seconds.</p>



Parameter	Value set	Explanation
		This parameter can be specified only when "command" is set for heartbeat_error_action.
shutdown_detached_synchronous_standby	on or off	Specify whether to forcibly stop the instance on the standby server when the standby server is disconnected.  on: Stop the instance.  off: Do not stop the instance.  If "on" is specified and the pre-detach command was created, the pre-detach command is executed and then the instance is stopped.  The default is "off".
post_switch_command	<i>'postSwitchCmdFilePath'</i> [Setting example] post_switch_command = '/mc/ status_change/ execute_post_switch.sh'	Specify the full path of the command to be called by Mirroring Controller after a new primary server is promoted during a failover of the primary server.  Enclose the path in single quotation marks ('').  Specify the path using less than 1024 bytes.
post_attach_command	<i>'postAttachCmdFilePath'</i> [Setting example] post_attach_command = '/mc/ status_change/ execute_post_attach.sh'	Specify the full path of the command to be called by Mirroring Controller after the standby server is attached to the cluster system.  Enclose the path in single quotation marks ('').  Specify the path using less than 1024 bytes.
pre_detach_command	<i>'preDetachCmdFilePath'</i> [Setting example] pre_detach_command = '/mc/ status_change/execute_pre_detach.sh'	Specify the full path of the command to be called by Mirroring Controller before the standby server is disconnected from the cluster system.  Enclose the path in single quotation marks ('').  Specify the path using less than 1024 bytes.
status_change_command_timeout	State transition command timeout (seconds)	Specify the timeout value of the post-switch command, post-attach command, and pre-detach command. If the command does not respond within the specified number of seconds, a signal (SIGTERM) is sent to the execution process of the status change command.  Specify a timeout between 1 and 2147483647.  The default is 20 seconds.
enable_promote_on_os_and_admin_network_error	on or off	If on is specified, if a admin network error occurs and replication is further lost, the system will ask the arbitration server to verify that the primary server and databases are running, and if they are down, promote the standby server.  The default is "off".
check_synchronous_standby_names_validation	on or off	Specify whether Mirroring Controller is to periodically check during operations whether the synchronous_standby_names parameter in postgresql.conf was changed by an incorrect user operation.  However, it is not recommended to enable this parameter, because performing this check causes Mirroring Controller to use the CPU of the database server redundantly and execute SQL statements at high frequency.

Parameter	Value set	Explanation
		<p>This parameter is compatible with operations in FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 9.6 or earlier.</p> <p>The default is "off".</p>
db_instance_ext_pq_conninfo	<i>'libpqConnectionSSLParamToConnectToDbinstance'</i>	<p>Specify, in key-value form, the connection parameter for libpq that Mirroring Controller adds when connecting to a database. The connection parameters you can specify are those related to SSL. Use ASCII characters to specify this parameter.</p> <p>If you want to validate the server certificate using the destination host name, such as specifying sslmode=verify-full as the connection parameter, specify the host name in the Common Name of the server certificate in the sslservercertcn connection parameter. For information about the sslservercertcn connection parameter, refer to "Using the C Library (libpq)" in "Application Connection Switch Feature" in the Application Development Guide.</p> <p>The connection parameter specified in this parameter must also be specified in the db_instance_ext_jdbc_conninfo.</p>
db_instance_ext_jdbc_conninfo	<i>'JDBCCConnectionSSLParamToConnectToDbinstance'</i>	<p>Specify, in URI form, the connection parameter for JDBC that Mirroring Controller adds when connecting to a database. The connection parameters you can specify are those related to SSL. Use ASCII characters to specify this parameter.</p> <p>If you want to validate the server certificate using the destination host name, such as specifying sslmode=verify-full as the connection parameter, specify the host name in the Common Name of the server certificate in the sslservercertcn connection parameter. For information about the sslservercertcn connection parameter, refer to "Using the JDBC Driver" in "Application Connection Switch Feature" in the Application Development Guide.</p> <p>The connection parameter specified in this parameter must also be specified in the db_instance_ext_pq_conninfo.</p>

\*1: By specifying the syslog\_ident parameter of the postgresql.conf file, the Mirroring Controller output content can be referenced transparently, so log reference is easy.

\*2: The operating system TCP connection timeout period is determined by the kernel parameter tcp\_syn\_retries. The remote\_call\_timeout parameter must be set to a value that is shorter than the timeout period for the operating system TCP connection timeout, so change either parameter as necessary.

\*3: In management communications, arbitration processing, fencing commands, and state transition commands may be executed in succession by the Mirroring Controller arbitration process. Therefore, the value specified for the remote\_call\_timeout parameter must be greater than the sum of these timeout values. Depending on the value specified for the heartbeat\_error\_action parameter, set the remote\_call\_timeout parameter using the following formula:

- arbitration: (arbitration\_timeout + fencing\_command\_timeout + status\_change\_command\_timeout) \* 1000
- command: (fencing\_command\_timeout + status\_change\_command\_timeout) \* 1000
- message: (fencing\_command\_timeout + status\_change\_command\_timeout) \* 1000
- fallback: (status\_change\_command\_timeout) \* 1000

Because other internal processing may be performed in the management communication, set the value obtained by multiplying the calculation result of the above equation by the safety factor (about 1.2).

Also, for the fencing\_command\_timeout parameter, use the value of the parameter in the database server's server definition file, not in the arbitration definition file.

The availability of some parameters depends on the value set for the heartbeat\_error\_action parameter that sets the operation to be performed if heartbeat monitoring of the operating system or server detects a heartbeat abnormality.

Table A.5 Parameter availability depending on the value set for the heartbeat\_error\_action parameter

Parameter	Value set			
	arbitration	command	message	fallback
arbiter_alive_interval	Y	N	N	N
arbiter_alive_timeout	Y	N	N	N
arbiter_alive_retry	Y	N	N	N
arbiter_connect_interval	Y	N	N	N
arbiter_connect_timeout	Y	N	N	N
arbitration_timeout	Y	N	N	N
arbitration_command	N	R	N	N
arbitration_command_timeout	N	Y	N	N
fencing_command	Y	R	Y	N
fencing_command_timeout	Y	Y	Y	N
shutdown_detached_synchronous_standby	Y	Y	N	N

R: Required

Y: Can be specified

N: Cannot be specified

## A.4.2 Arbitration Configuration File

In arbitration.conf, define the information related to arbitration and control of the Mirroring Controller arbitration process.

### Linux

Table A.6 arbitration.conf file (Linux)

Parameter	Value set	Description
port	Port number of the Mirroring Controller arbitration process	The specified value must not exceed the range 0 to 65535. Ensure that the port number does not conflict with other software. Do not specify an ephemeral port that may temporarily be assigned by another program.  For the port number of the arbitration server to be specified in network.conf on the database server, specify the same value as the port number specified in this parameter.
my_address	<i>'ipAddrOrHostNameThatAcceptsConnectionFromMirroringControllerProcessesOnDbServer'</i>  [Setting example] my_address = '192.0.3.120'	For the IP address or host name of the arbitration server to be specified in network.conf on the database server, specify the same value as the IP address or host name specified in this parameter.  IPv4 and IPv6 addresses can be specified.  Specify the IP address or host name, enclosed in single quotation marks (').
core_file_path	<i>'coreFileOutputDir'</i>	Specify the directory to which the core file is to be output, enclosed in single quotation marks ('). Use ASCII characters to specify this parameter.

Parameter	Value set	Description
		If this parameter is omitted, it will be assumed that the Mirroring Controller arbitration process management directory was specified.
syslog_facility	Specify LOCAL0, LOCAL1, LOCAL2, LOCAL3, LOCAL4, LOCAL5, LOCAL6, or LOCAL7.	When the import of logs to the syslog is enabled, the value of this parameter will be used for "facility" of the syslog.  The default is "LOCAL0".
syslog_ident	' <i>programName</i> '	Specify using single quotation marks (') to enclose the program name used to identify the Mirroring Controller arbitration process message in the system log. Use ASCII characters excluding spaces to specify this parameter.  The default is 'MirroringControllerArbiter'.
fencing_command	' <i>fencingCmdFilePath</i> '  [Setting example]  fencing_command = '/arbiter/ fencing_dir/execute_fencing.sh'	Specify the full path of the fencing command that fences a database server where an error is determined to have occurred.  Enclose the path in single quotation marks (').  Specify the path using less than 1024 bytes.
fencing_command_timeout	Fencing command timeout (seconds)	If the command does not respond within the specified number of seconds, fencing is determined to have failed and a signal (SIGTERM) is sent to the fencing command execution process.  Specify a value between 1 and 2147483647.  The default is 20 seconds.
heartbeat_interval(*1)	Interval time for heartbeat monitoring of the operating system or server (milliseconds)	The heartbeat monitoring of the database server is checked at the specified interval and arbitration is performed.  Specify a value between 1 and 2147483647.  The default is the value specified in <i>serverIdentifier.conf</i> of the database server.  Specify this parameter to perform optimization taking into account differences in the line load to the admin network and the reduction in the time it takes to degrade.
heartbeat_timeout	Timeout for heartbeat monitoring of the operating system or server (seconds)	If there is no response for at least the number of seconds specified, it will be assumed that an error has occurred that requires the primary server or standby server to be fenced.  Specify a value between 1 and 2147483647.  The default is the value specified in <i>serverIdentifier.conf</i> of the database server.  Specify this parameter to perform optimization taking into account differences in the line load to the admin network and the reduction in the time it takes to degrade.
heartbeat_retry	Number of retries for heartbeat monitoring of the operating system or server (number of times)	Specify the number of retries to be performed when an error has been detected that requires the primary server or standby server to be fenced.

Parameter	Value set	Description
		<p>If an error is detected in succession more than the specified number of times, fencing will be performed.</p> <p>Specify a value between 0 and 2147483647.</p> <p>The default is the value specified in <i>serverIdentifier.conf</i> of the database server.</p> <p>Specify this parameter to perform optimization taking into account differences in the line load to the admin network and the reduction in the time it takes to degrade.</p>

\*1:Refer to "[2.11.4 Tuning for Optimization of Degradation Using Abnormality Monitoring](#)" for information on the tuning parameters for operating system or server abnormality monitoring when using an arbitration server.

## Windows

Table A.7 arbitration.conf file (Windows)

Parameter	Value set	Description
port	Port number of the Mirroring Controller arbitration process	<p>The specified value must not exceed the range 0 to 65535. Ensure that the port number does not conflict with other software. Do not specify an ephemeral port that may temporarily be assigned by another program.</p> <p>For the port number of the arbitration server to be specified in <i>network.conf</i> on the database server, specify the same value as the port number specified in this parameter.</p>
my_address	<i>'ipAddrOrHostNameThatAcceptsConnectionFromMirroringControllerProcessOnDbServer'</i>  [Setting example]  my_address = '192.0.3.120'	<p>For the IP address or host name of the arbitration server to be specified in <i>network.conf</i> on the database server, specify the same value as the IP address or host name specified in this parameter.</p> <p>IPv4 and IPv6 addresses can be specified.</p> <p>Specify the IP address or host name, enclosed in single quotation marks (').</p>
core_file_path	<i>'coreFileOutputDir'</i>	<p>Specify the directory to which the core file is to be output, enclosed in single quotation marks ('). Use ASCII characters.</p> <p>Specify \\ as file separator.</p> <p>If this parameter is omitted, it will be assumed that the Mirroring Controller arbitration process management directory was specified.</p>
service_name	<i>'registeredServiceNameOfMirroringControllerArbitrationProcess'</i>	<p>Specify the Mirroring Controller arbitration process service name to be registered as a Windows service, enclosed in single quotation marks ('). Use ASCII characters excluding forward slash (/) and backslash (\) to specify this parameter.</p> <p>The service name is up to 124 bytes.</p> <p>The default is 'MirroringControllerArbiter'.</p>
event_source	<i>'eventSourceName'</i>	Specify the event source name to be used to identify the Mirroring Controller arbitration

Parameter	Value set	Description
		<p>process message in the event log, enclosed in single quotation marks ('). Use ASCII characters to specify this parameter.</p> <p>The maximum length of the event source name is 255 bytes.</p> <p>The default is 'MirroringControllerArbiter'.</p>
fencing_command	<p><i>'fencingCmdFilePath'</i></p> <p>[Setting example]</p> <p>fencing_command = 'c:\\arbiter\\fencing_dir\\execute_fencing.bat'</p>	<p>Specify the full path of the fencing command that fences a database server where an error is determined to have occurred.</p> <p>Specify \\ as file separator.</p> <p>Enclose the path in single quotation marks (').</p> <p>Specify the path using less than 260 bytes.</p> <p>Any multibyte characters must use the same encoding as the operating system.</p>
fencing_command_timeout	Fencing command timeout (seconds)	<p>If the command does not respond within the specified number of seconds, fencing is determined to have failed and a signal (SIGTERM) is sent to the fencing command execution process.</p> <p>Specify a value between 1 and 2147483647.</p> <p>The default is 20 seconds.</p>
heartbeat_interval(*1)	Interval time for heartbeat monitoring of the operating system or server (milliseconds)	<p>The heartbeat monitoring of the database server is checked at the specified interval and arbitration is performed.</p> <p>Specify a value between 1 and 2147483647.</p> <p>The default is the value specified in <i>serverIdentifier.conf</i> of the database server.</p> <p>Specify this parameter to perform optimization taking into account differences in the line load to the admin network and the reduction in the time it takes to degrade.</p>
heartbeat_timeout	Timeout for heartbeat monitoring of the operating system or server (seconds)	<p>If there is no response for at least the number of seconds specified, it will be assumed that an error has occurred that requires the primary server or standby server to be fenced.</p> <p>Specify a value between 1 and 2147483647.</p> <p>The default is the value specified in <i>serverIdentifier.conf</i> of the database server.</p> <p>Specify this parameter to perform optimization taking into account differences in the line load to the admin network and the reduction in the time it takes to degrade.</p>
heartbeat_retry	Number of retries for heartbeat monitoring of the operating system or server (number of times)	<p>Specify the number of retries to be performed when an error has been detected that requires the primary server or standby server to be fenced.</p> <p>If an error is detected in succession more than the specified number of times, fencing will be performed.</p>

Parameter	Value set	Description
		<p>Specify a value between 0 and 2147483647.</p> <p>The default is the value specified in <i>serverIdentifier.conf</i> of the database server.</p> <p>Specify this parameter to perform optimization taking into account differences in the line load to the admin network and the reduction in the time it takes to degrade.</p>

\*1:Refer to "[2.11.4 Tuning for Optimization of Degradation Using Abnormality Monitoring](#)" for information on the tuning parameters for operating system or server abnormality monitoring when using an arbitration server.

## Appendix B Supplementary Information on Building the Primary Server and Standby Server on the Same Server

The primary server and standby server can be pseudo-configured on the same server for system testing, for example. Out of consideration for performance and reliability, do not use this type of configuration for any other purposes. For this reason, do not use this type of configuration in a production environment.

Note that the setup and operations is the same as if the primary and standby servers are built on different servers.

This appendix provides supplementary information explaining how to configure the primary server and standby server on the same server.



### Note

Even if automatic degradation by an arbitration server is set when the primary server and standby server are configured on the same server, there will be no effect of it.

## B.1 Backup Data Storage Destination Directory

It is not a problem if the same backup data storage destination directory is used on the primary server and standby server.

## B.2 How to Execute the mc\_ctl Command

When executing the mc\_ctl command, specify the server identifier in the --local-server option in order to identify the operation destination server.

Below is an example of starting Mirroring Controller of the server "server1" defined in the network.conf file. For mc\_ctl command operations using another mode, also specify the --local-server option.

Define two server identifiers for the same IP address with different port numbers in the network.conf file.

Example)

```
server1 192.0.2.100 27540
server2 192.0.2.100 27541
```

Ensure that the port numbers of both primary server and standby server do not conflict with any other software.

### Enabling automatic switch/disconnection

Start Mirroring Controller of the server "server1":

Example)

```
$ mc_ctl start -M /mcdire/inst1 --local-server server1
```

Stop Mirroring Controller of the server "server1":

Example)

```
$ mc_ctl stop -M /mcdire/inst1 --local-server server1
```

### Disabling automatic switch/disconnection

Start Mirroring Controller of the server "server1":

Example)

```
$ mc_ctl start -M /mcdire/inst1 -F --local-server server1
```



Stop Mirroring Controller of the server "server1":

Example)

```
$ mc_ctl stop -M /mcdir/inst1 --local-server server1
```



## Note

.....

Add the --local-server option to the mc\_ctl option specification for ExecStart and ExecStop of the unit file for systemd.

Refer to "[2.12 Setting Automatic Start and Stop of Mirroring Controller and Multiplexed Instances](#)" for details.

.....

# Appendix C User Commands

This appendix describes three categories of commands:

- Fencing command
- Arbitration command
- State transition commands

This appendix describes each category of user command.

## C.1 Fencing Command

### Format

The syntax for calling the fencing command from the Mirroring Controller process or the Mirroring Controller arbitration process is described below.

Fencing command of the database server

```
fencingCmd executionMode mcDegradationOper cmdServerId targetServerId primarycenter
```

Fencing command of the arbitration server

```
fencingCmd executionMode mcDegradationOper targetServerId
```

### Input

Fencing command of the database server

Execution mode

monitor: Detect issues via automatic monitoring of the Mirroring Controller process

command: Mirroring Controller command execution (switch mode or detach mode of the mc\_ctl command)

Degradation operation to be performed by Mirroring Controller

switch: Switch

detach: Disconnect

*cmdServerId*

ID of the database server that called the command

*targetServerId*

ID of the database server to be fenced

primarycenter

Fixed value

Fencing command of the arbitration server

Execution mode

monitor: Detect issues via automatic monitoring of the Mirroring Controller process

command: Mirroring Controller command execution (switch mode or detach mode of the mc\_ctl command)

Degradation operation to be performed by Mirroring Controller

switch: Switch

detach: Disconnect

*targetServerId*

ID of the database server to be fenced

## Output

Return value

- 0: Mirroring Controller will continue the degradation process.
- Other than 0: Mirroring Controller will cancel the degradation process.

## Description

Identifies the database server targeted for fencing based on the input server identifier, and implements the process that isolates it from the cluster system.

## Notes

- The command is executed by the operating system user who started Mirroring Controller or the Mirroring Controller arbitration process. Therefore, if the command is to be executed by a specific operating system user, change the executing user of the command accordingly.
- The operating system user who started Mirroring Controller or the Mirroring Controller arbitration process must have execution privileges to the command. Otherwise, the degradation process will be canceled.
- From a security point of view, set the access privileges as necessary so that the fencing command is not overwritten and unauthorized operations are not performed by unintended operating system users.
- If the fencing command returns a value other than 0, Mirroring Controller will cancel the degradation process, so it is necessary for the user to check the status of the server, and switch or disconnect it manually.
- Before executing the fencing command, check if the server is already fenced, to avoid the command terminating abnormally.
- If the command times out, Mirroring Controller will stop the command, output an error message, and cancel the degradation process.

## Information

The fencing command can be implemented by simply stopping the operating system or server. For example, if stopping the power for the database server, it is possible to use a utility to control the hardware control board in environments equipped with boards compatible with IPMI hardware standard.

### Linux

Below is a sample script of a fencing command that powers off the database server using the IPMI tool.

Sample shell script

```
/installDir/share/mcarb_execute_fencing.sh.sample
```

### Windows

Below is a sample script of a fencing command that powers off the database server using IPMIUTIL.

Sample shell script

```
installDir\share\mcarb_execute_fencing.bat.sample
```

## C.2 Arbitration Command

---

### Format

The syntax for calling the arbitration command from the Mirroring Controller process is described below.

```
arbitrationCmd cmdServerId targetServerId primarycenter
```

## Input

*cmdServerId*

ID of the database server that called the command

*targetServerId*

ID of the database server to arbitrate

primarycenter

Fixed value

## Output

Return value

0: The database server to arbitrate has an issue, and Mirroring Controller will continue the degradation process.

Other than 0: The database server to arbitrate is normal, and Mirroring Controller will cancel the degradation process.

## Description

Identifies the database server to arbitrate based on the input server identifier, and checks the status of the server.

## Notes

- The command is executed by the operating system user who started Mirroring Controller.
- The operating system user who started Mirroring Controller must have execution privileges to the command. Otherwise, the command will not be called, and the degradation process will be canceled.
- If the command times out, Mirroring Controller will stop the command, output an error message, and cancel the degradation process.

## C.3 State Transition Commands

---

State transition commands include the three types of user commands below. Any of the commands can be implemented by Mirroring Controller in conjunction with database server status transitions.

- Post-switch command
- Pre-detach command
- Post-attach command

### C.3.1 Post-switch Command

---

#### Format

The syntax for calling the post-switch command from the Mirroring Controller process is described below.

```
postswitchCmd serverIdentifier primarycenter
```

## Input

*serverIdentifier*

ID of the database server (new primary server) that was switched

primarycenter

Fixed value

## Output

Return value

None

## Notes

- The command is executed by the operating system user who started Mirroring Controller.
- The operating system user who started Mirroring Controller must have execution privileges to the command. Otherwise, the command will not be called.
- If the command times out, Mirroring Controller will stop the command, output an error message, and cancel the process.

## C.3.2 Pre-detach Command

---

### Format

The syntax for calling the pre-detach command from the Mirroring Controller process is described below.

```
predetachCmd cmdServerId serverRole targetServerId primarycenter
```

### Input

*cmdServerId*

ID of the database server that called the command

Server role

Role of the database server that called the command

primary: Primary

standby: Standby

*targetServerId*

ID of the standby server to be disconnected from the cluster system

primarycenter

Fixed value

### Output

Return value

None

## Notes

- The command is executed by the operating system user who started Mirroring Controller.
- The operating system user who started Mirroring Controller must have execution privileges to the command. Otherwise, the command will not be called, however, Mirroring Controller will output an error message and continue the process.
- If the command times out, Mirroring Controller will stop the command, output an error message, and cancel the process.

## C.3.3 Post-attach Command

---

### Format

The syntax for calling the post-attach command from the Mirroring Controller process is described below.

```
postattachCmd cmdServerId serverRole targetServerId primarycenter
```

### Input

*cmdServerId*

ID of the database server that called the command

### Server role

Role of the database server that called the command

primary: Primary

standby: Standby

### *targetServerId*

ID of the standby server to be attached to the cluster system

### primarycenter

Fixed value

## Output

Return value

None

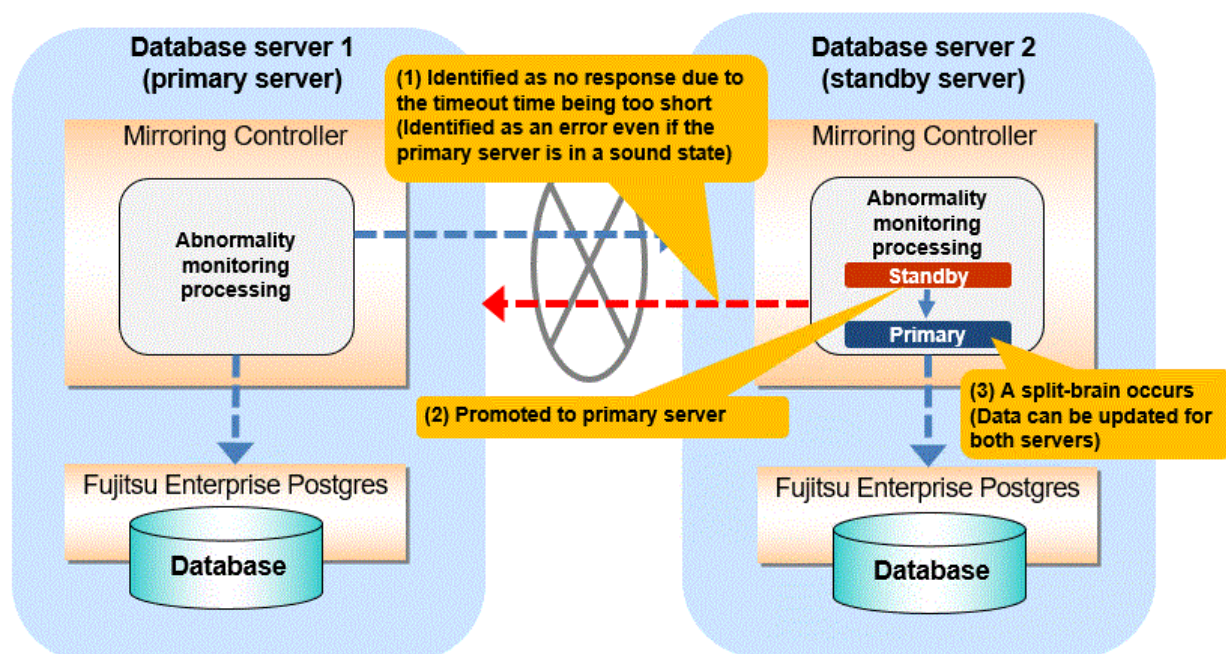
## Notes

- The command is executed by the operating system user who started Mirroring Controller.
- The operating system user who started Mirroring Controller must have execution privileges to the command. Otherwise, the command will not be called.
- If the command times out, Mirroring Controller will stop the command, output an error message, and cancel the process.

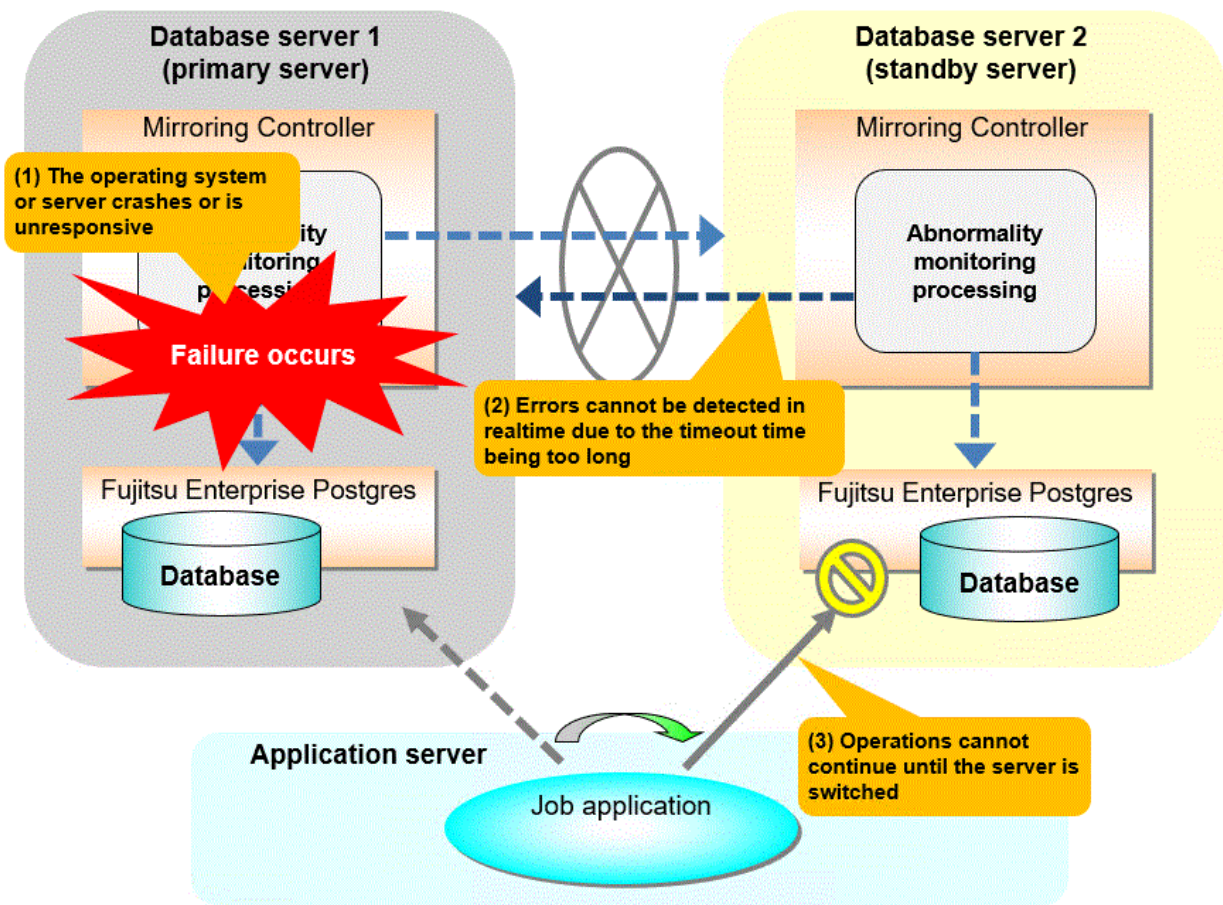
## Appendix D Notes on Performing Automatic Degradation Immediately after a Heartbeat Abnormality

The type of issue below occurs if automatic degradation is performed unconditionally after an issue is detected during heartbeat monitoring of an operating system or server, and heartbeat monitoring was not properly tuned.

- If the timeout time is too short



● If the timeout time is too long



### Notes on monitoring when the operating system or server crashes or is unresponsive

As illustrated in the diagram above, timeout is used to monitor whether the operating system or server crashes or is unresponsive. Therefore, if tuning has not been performed correctly, there is a risk of a split-brain mistakenly occurring even if the server is in a sound state.

Split-brain is a phenomenon in which both servers temporarily operate as primary servers, causing data updates to be performed on both servers.

#### Split-brain detection method

It can be confirmed that split-brain occurs under the following conditions:

1. When the `mc_ctl` command is executed in status mode on both servers, the "host\_role" of both servers is output as "primary", and
2. The following message is output to the system log of one of the servers:

```
promotion processing completed (MCA00062)
```

#### How to recover from a split-brain

Use the procedure described below. Note that the new primary server is the server that was confirmed in step 2 of the aforementioned detection method.

1. Stop all applications that are running on the old and new primary servers.
2. Investigate and recover the database.  
Investigate the update results that have not been reflected to the new primary server from the database of the old primary server, and apply to the new primary server as necessary.
3. Stop the old primary server instance and the Mirroring Controller.
4. Resume the applications that were stopped in step 1.



5. Recover the old primary server.

While referring to "[2.5 Setting Up the Standby Server](#)", build (set up) the old primary server as the new standby server, from the new primary server.

### Notes on monitoring by restarting the OS

The heartbeat monitoring of the database server uses the OS ping command. Therefore, if the timeout period is too long and the OS restarts, an error might not be detected. This can result in a business shutdown without automatic switchover even though the primary server is down. There are several ways to avoid this situation:

- Refer to "[Parameters for the abnormality monitoring of the operating system or server in the server configuration file of the database server](#)" and perform tuning so that the timeout time is shorter than the time required to restart the OS.
- Refer to "[2.12 Setting Automatic Start and Stop of Mirroring Controller and Multiplexed Instances](#)" to set automatic startup of Mirroring Controller.

# Appendix E Supplementary Procedure on Configuring for Operation in Database Multiplexing Mode

This appendix explains a supplementary procedure on the configuration required for operation in database multiplexing mode.

## E.1 Security Policy Settings

---

This section explains how to configure the security settings to enable an operating system user account designated as an instance administrator user to log on as a service.

### 1. Displaying the [Local Security Policy] window

In Windows, select [Administrative Tools], and then click [Local Security Policy].

### 2. Setting up security

1. In the [Local Security Policy] window, select [Security Settings], select [Local Policies], and then click [User Rights Assignment].
2. Under [Policy] in the [User Rights Assignment] window, double-click [Log on as a service].
3. In the [Log on as a service Properties] window, set the following:
  - a. Select the [Local Security Setting] tab.
  - b. On the [Local Security Setting] tab, click [Add User or Group].
  - c. In the [Select Users or Groups] window, enter the operating system user account of the instance administrator user in [Enter the object names to select].
  - d. Click [OK].
4. In the [Log on as a service Properties] window, click [OK].
5. From the [Local Security Policy] tree, click [Local Policies], and then double-click [Security Options].
6. Scroll down and double-click [User Account Control: Behavior of the elevation prompt for administrators in Admin Approval Mode].
7. From the drop-down menu, select the "Elevate without prompting" in the [Local Security Setting] tab.
8. Click [OK].

## E.2 Windows Firewall Settings

---

This section explains how to enable the port number used by Mirroring Controller, if the Windows firewall feature is enabled.

### Windows Server(R) 2016:

1. In the [Windows Firewall] window, click [Advanced settings] on the left side of the window.
2. In the [Windows Firewall with Advanced Security] window, click [Inbound Rules] on the left side of the window.
3. Click [New Rule] on the right side of the window.
4. In the [New Inbound Rule Wizard] window, select [Port], and then click [Next].
5. Select [TCP] and [Specific local ports], then specify the port number defined in the network definition file, and then click [Next].
6. Select [Allow the connection], and then click [Next].
7. Select the profiles for which this rule applies, and then click [Next].
8. In [Name], specify the desired name, and then click [Finish].
9. In the [Windows Firewall with Advanced Security] window, check if the added rule is enabled under [Inbound Rules] in the center of the window.

**Other than above:**

1. In the [Windows Defender Firewall] window, click [Advanced settings] on the left side of the window.
2. In the [Windows Defender Firewall with Advanced Security] window, click [Inbound Rules] on the left side of the window.
3. Click [New Rule] on the right side of the window.
4. In the [New Inbound Rule Wizard] window, select [Port], and then click [Next].
5. Select [TCP] and [Specific local ports], then specify the port number defined in the network definition file, and then click [Next].
6. Select [Allow the connection], and then click [Next].
7. Select the profiles for which this rule applies, and then click [Next].
8. In [Name], specify the desired name, and then click [Finish].
9. In the [Windows Defender Firewall with Advanced Security] window, check if the added rule is enabled under [Inbound Rules] in the center of the window.

## Appendix F WebAdmin Disallow User Inputs Containing Hazardous Characters

WebAdmin considers the following as hazardous characters, which are not allowed in user inputs.

- | (pipe sign)
- & (ampersand sign)
- ; (semicolon sign)
- \$ (dollar sign)
- % (percent sign)
- @ (at sign)
- ' (single apostrophe)
- " (quotation mark)
- \ ' (backslash-escaped apostrophe)
- \ " (backslash-escaped quotation mark)
- <> (triangular parenthesis)
- () (parenthesis)
- + (plus sign)
- CR (Carriage return, ASCII 0x0d)
- LF (Line feed, ASCII 0x0a)
- , (comma sign)
- \ (backslash)

## Appendix G Collecting Failure Investigation Data

If the cause of an error that occurs while building the environment or during operations is unclear, data must be collected for initial investigation.

This appendix describes how to collect data for initial investigation.

Using a database server to collect data

- RHEL8 and RHEL9

Use FJQSS (Information Collection Tool) to collect data for initial investigation.

- SLES 15

Use the `pgx_fjqssinf` command to collect data for initial investigation.

Using an arbitration server to collect data

- Linux

- RHEL8 and RHEL9

Use FJQSS (Information Collection Tool) to collect data for initial investigation.

- SLES 15

Use the `pgx_fjqssinf` command to collect data for initial investigation.

- Windows

Use FJQSS (Information Collection Tool) to collect data for initial investigation.



See

- Linux

- Refer to the FJQSS manual for information on how to use FJQSS.

- Refer to the Reference for information on the `pgx_fjqssinf` command.

- Windows

Refer to the following manual for information on how to use FJQSS.

- In the [Apps] menu, select [FJQSS (Information Collection Tool)], and then click [FJQSS User's Guide].



Note

Using a database server to collect data

- When using FJQSS to collect data for initial investigation, you must set the following environment variables:

- Environment variable required for collecting data from the database

Refer to "Collecting Failure Investigation Data" in the Operation Guide.

- MCCONTROLDIR

- Set the Mirroring Controller management directory.

Refer to "[1.2.1 Mirroring Controller Resources](#)" for information on the Mirroring Controller management directory.

Using an arbitration server to collect data

Linux

- When using FIQSS to collect data for initial investigation, you must set the following environment variables:

- ARBCONTROLDIR

Set the Mirroring Controller arbitration process management directory.

Refer to "[1.2.1 Mirroring Controller Resources](#)" for information on the Mirroring Controller arbitration server management directory.

- ARBUSER

Specify the operating system user who started the Mirroring Controller arbitration process.

- FSEP\_SA\_HOME

Set the Server Assistant installation directory.

#### Windows

- When using FIQSS to collect data for initial investigation, a window will be displayed for you to set the following environment variables:

- ARBCONTROLDIR

Set the Mirroring Controller arbitration process management directory.

Refer to "[1.2.1 Mirroring Controller Resources](#)" for information on the Mirroring Controller arbitration server management directory.



# Index

<b>[A]</b>		<b>[E]</b>	
Action Required when a Heartbeat Abnormality is Detected..	67	Encryption of Transaction Logs Transferred to the Standby	
Action Required when All Database Servers or Instances Stopped		Server.....	14
.....	93		
Action Required when an Error Occurs in the Database		<b>[F]</b>	
Multiplexing Mode.....	83	Failback of the Primary Server.....	88
Action Required when Automatic Disconnection Fails.....	93	Fencing Command.....	131
Action Required when Automatic Switch Fails.....	92		
Action Required when Server Degradation Occurs.....	83	<b>[H]</b>	
Addressing Errors During Degrading Operation.....	91	How to Execute the mc_ctl Command.....	129
Application Connection Server Settings.....	40		
arbitration.conf file (Linux).....	124	<b>[I]</b>	
arbitration.conf file (Windows).....	126	Identify cause of error and perform recovery.....	86,91
Arbitration Command.....	132	Identify Cause of Error and Restore the Standby Server.....	85
Arbitration Configuration File.....	124	Identify Cause of Error and Restructure the Standby Server...	90
Arbitration Server Maintenance.....	75	If Performing the Referencing Job on the Synchronous Standby	
Arbitration Server Process.....	10	Server.....	6
Arbitration Server Resources.....	10	If Prioritizing the Main Job on the Primary Server.....	6
Authentication of the Standby Server.....	14	Installation.....	16
<b>[B]</b>		<b>[M]</b>	
Backing up Database Multiplexing Mode Information.....	59	Manually Disconnecting the Standby Server.....	66
Backup Data Storage Destination Directory.....	129	Manually Switching the Primary Server.....	66
Backup Operation.....	59	Matching the system times.....	15
		Mirroring Controller Resources.....	9
		Monitoring Mirroring Controller Messages.....	67
		Monitoring Using Database Multiplexing Mode.....	4
<b>[C]</b>		<b>[N]</b>	
Changes in Operation.....	76	network.conf file.....	113
Changes Required when the Standby Server is Stopped.....	76	Network Configuration File.....	112
Changing from Database Multiplexing Mode to Single Server		Notes on CPU Architecture and Products.....	11
Mode.....	78	Notes on Performing Automatic Degradation Immediately after a	
Changing from Single Server Mode to Database Multiplexing		Heartbeat Abnormality.....	136
Mode.....	77		
Changing Parameters.....	82	<b>[O]</b>	
Changing to Database Multiplexing Mode when the Arbitration		Operations in Database Multiplexing Mode.....	61
Server is Used for Automatic Degradation.....	81	Operations when the Server has Started Degrading after a	
Checking the Behavior.....	40	Disconnection has Occurred.....	89
Checking the Connection Status.....	38	Operations when the Server has Started Degrading after a Switch	
Checking the Connection Status on a Database Server.....	38	has Occurred.....	83
Checking the Connection Status on the Arbitration Server.....	39	Overview of Database Multiplexing Mode.....	1
Checking the Database Multiplexing Mode Status.....	64		
Checking the Status of the Arbitration Server.....	65	<b>[P]</b>	
Checking the Status of the Database Server.....	64	Parameters.....	108
Configuring ICMP.....	15	Parameters Set on the Primary Server.....	108
Configuring the Arbitration Server.....	18	Parameters Set on the Standby Server.....	110
Confirming the Streaming Replication Status.....	37	Post-attach Command.....	134
Creating, Setting, and Registering the Primary Server Instance	28	Post-switch Command.....	133
Creating, Setting, and Registering the Standby Server Instance	34	postgresql.conf file.....	108,110
Creating Applications.....	40	Pre-detach Command.....	134
		Preparing for Setup.....	17
<b>[D]</b>		Preparing the Arbitration Server.....	17
Database Backup Operation.....	59	Preparing the Backup Disk.....	17
Database Server Processes.....	10	Preparing the Database Server.....	17
Deciding on Operation when a Heartbeat Abnormality is		Preparing to Output Error Logs to the Event Log (Windows).	17
Detected.....	11		

## [R]

Rebuild the Standby Server.....	88,91
Recovering from an Incorrect User Operation.....	97
Recovery of the Mirroring Controller management directory .....	86,91
Redundancy of the Admin and Log Transfer Networks.....	11
Referencing on the Standby Server.....	6
Rolling Updates.....	70

## [S]

Security in Database Multiplexing.....	12
Security Policy Settings.....	139
Security Policy Settings (Windows).....	18
ServerConfiguration File.....	115
Server Configuration File for the Database Servers.....	115
serverIdentifier.conf file.....	116
Server Maintenance.....	69
Setting Automatic Start and Stop of Mirroring Controller and Multiplexed Instances.....	55
Setting Automatic Start and Stop of the Mirroring Controller Arbitration Process.....	57
Setting Up Database Multiplexing Mode.....	15
Setting Up Database Multiplexing Mode on the Primary Server.....	24
Setting Up Database Multiplexing Mode on the Standby Server.....	33
Setting Up the Arbitration Server.....	18
Setting Up the Primary Server.....	24
Setting Up the Standby Server.....	33
Setup.....	15
Starting and Stopping Mirroring Controller.....	62
Starting and Stopping the Mirroring Controller Arbitration Process.....	61
Starting Mirroring Controller on the Primary Server.....	32
Starting Mirroring Controller on the Standby Server.....	35
Starting the Mirroring Controller Arbitration Process.....	24,61
State Transition Commands.....	133
Stop Mirroring Controller.....	85,90
Stopping for Maintenance.....	75
Stopping the Mirroring Controller Arbitration Process.....	61
Supplementary Information on Building the Primary Server and Standby Server on the Same Server.....	129
Supplementary Procedure on Configuring for Operation in Database Multiplexing Mode.....	139
System Configuration for Database Multiplexing Mode.....	6

## [T]

Tuning.....	40
Tuning for Optimization of Degrading Operation Using Abnormality Monitoring.....	41
Tuning to Stabilize Queries on the Standby Server.....	40
Tuning to Stabilize Queries on the Standby Server (when Performing Frequent Updates on the Primary Server).....	41
Tuning to Stabilize the Database Multiplexing Mode.....	40

## [U]

Uninstalling in Database Multiplexing Mode.....	82
Users who perform setup and operations on the arbitration server .....	15
Users who perform setup and operations on the database server.....	15

## [W]

What is Database Multiplexing Mode.....	1
Windows Firewall Settings.....	139



# **Fujitsu**

## **Enterprise Postgres 16**

# Cluster Operation Guide (PRIMECLUSTER)

Linux

J2UL-2956-01ENZ0(00)  
July 2024

# Preface

---

## Purpose of this document

This document explains the items required to operate Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres on a cluster system that uses PRIMECLUSTER.

## Intended readers

This document is aimed at people who install and operate Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres on a cluster system that uses PRIMECLUSTER. Readers of this document are also assumed to have general knowledge of:

- PRIMECLUSTER
- PostgreSQL
- SQL
- Linux

## Structure of this document

This document is structured as follows:

### [Chapter 1 Overview of Failover Operation](#)

Provides an overview of failover operation.

### [Chapter 2 Setting Up Failover Operation](#)

Explains how to set up failover operation.

### [Chapter 3 Failover Operation](#)

Explains the procedures involved in failover operation.

### [Chapter 4 Procedures Required after a Failover Error](#)

Explains the procedures required after an abnormality occurs during failover operation.

### [Appendix A Creating Resources and Creating/Modifying Cluster Applications](#)

Explains how to create and modify cluster applications that include Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres resources.

### [Appendix B Command Reference](#)

Explains for details in command.

### [Appendix C Failover Operation in Streaming Replication](#)

Explains failover operations in streaming replication.

## Export restrictions

Exportation/release of this document may require necessary procedures in accordance with the regulations of your resident country and/or US export control laws.

## Issue date and version

Edition 1.0: July 2024
------------------------

## Copyright

Copyright 2018-2024 Fujitsu Limited

# Contents

---

Chapter 1 Overview of Failover Operation.....	1
1.1 Definition of Failover Operation.....	1
1.2 System Configuration of Failover Operation.....	2
Chapter 2 Setting Up Failover Operation.....	5
2.1 Installing PRIMECLUSTER and Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.....	6
2.2 Configuring PRIMECLUSTER.....	6
2.3 Creating a GDS Volume.....	6
2.4 Creating a File System.....	6
2.4.1 Creating a File System.....	7
2.4.2 Editing Configuration Files.....	7
2.4.3 Checking.....	7
2.5 Creating an Operating System User to Start Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.....	7
2.6 Mounting the File System.....	8
2.7 Creating a Database Cluster.....	8
2.8 Registering Resource Information for the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Database Cluster.....	9
2.9 Configuring Storage Data Protection Using Transparent Data Encryption.....	11
2.10 Unmounting the File System.....	12
2.11 Creating a Cluster Application.....	12
2.12 Application Development.....	12
2.12.1 Precautions when Developing Applications.....	12
2.12.2 Corrective Action with Application when State Transition Occurs.....	12
2.13 Checking Operation.....	15
Chapter 3 Failover Operation.....	16
3.1 Adding Tablespace.....	16
3.2 Modifying Database Cluster Resources.....	16
3.3 Operations under Normal Circumstances.....	17
3.4 Operation at State Transition.....	17
3.5 Maintenance Tasks.....	18
3.5.1 Simultaneous Stopped Node Maintenance.....	19
3.5.1.1 Stopping the Cluster Applications on Both Nodes for Node Maintenance.....	19
3.5.1.2 Maintenance Tasks on Both Nodes.....	20
3.5.1.3 Restarting the Cluster Applications Stopped on Both Nodes for Node Maintenance.....	20
3.5.2 Mutual Switch Maintenance.....	20
3.5.2.1 Stopping the Cluster Applications on the Standby Node for Node Maintenance.....	20
3.5.2.2 Standby Node Maintenance.....	21
3.5.2.3 Restarting the Cluster Applications Stopped on the Standby Node for Node Maintenance.....	21
3.5.2.4 Mutual Switch.....	21
3.5.2.5 Standby Node Maintenance after the Mutual Switch.....	21
Chapter 4 Procedures Required after a Failover Error.....	22
4.1 Identifying the Cause of an Error.....	22
4.2 Stopping the Cluster Applications for Node Maintenance.....	23
4.3 Starting the Database Cluster.....	23
4.4 Recovery Tasks.....	23
4.5 Stopping the Database Cluster.....	23
4.6 Restarting the Cluster Applications Stopped for Node Maintenance.....	23
Appendix A Creating Resources and Creating/Modifying Cluster Applications.....	24
A.1 Creating Resources and Cluster Applications.....	24
A.1.1 Preparing for Creation.....	24
A.1.2 Creating a Cluster Application and Configuring Its Attributes.....	24
A.1.3 Creating Gds Resources.....	31
A.1.4 Creating Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Resources.....	32
A.1.5 Creating GIs or Takeover Network Resources.....	33

A.1.6 Creating Fsystem Resources.....	34
A.1.7 Creating Resources and Finalizing Cluster Application Creation.....	35
A.2 Modifying Cluster Applications.....	36
A.2.1 Moving to the Cluster Application Edit Window.....	36
A.2.2 Adding a Created Shared Disk Class to the Cluster Application.....	37
A.2.3 Adding a Created File System to the Cluster Application.....	38
A.2.4 Reflecting Modifications Made to the Cluster Application.....	38
Appendix B Command Reference.....	40
B.1 pgx_pclrsc.....	40
Appendix C Failover Operation in Streaming Replication.....	42
C.1 Possible Cluster Operation.....	42
C.2 Overview of Failover Operation.....	42
C.2.1 Supported Operational Forms and System Configurations.....	42
C.3 Set up failover operation.....	44
C.3.1 Primary Server Setup.....	45
C.3.2 Standby Server Setup.....	47
C.4 Failover Operation.....	52
C.5 Procedures Required after a Failover Error.....	53
C.5.1 In Case of Primary Server Error.....	53
C.5.2 In Case of an Error on the Standby Server.....	55
Index.....	56

# Chapter 1 Overview of Failover Operation

This chapter provides an overview of failover operation in Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

## 1.1 Definition of Failover Operation

When an abnormality occurs on any of the multiple server devices that make up the cluster system (hereafter referred to as "nodes"), the failover feature transfers a job operating on such a node to another one. Failover can reduce the time for which jobs are stopped when an abnormality occurs, and allows jobs to continue while the node on which the abnormality occurred is recovered.

In Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres, failover can be integrated with PRIMECLUSTER. In such a configuration, the shared disk (GDS) provided by PRIMECLUSTER is used. A server in the cluster system receives the application processing, acting as the active server (active node).

For example, if the active node fails, another server (standby node) inherits the shared disk content and becomes the active node. Using the PRIMECLUSTER feature, the applications to be run on the active node for the database can also be linked with the database and switched. Therefore, jobs can be continued even during recovery of a node where an abnormality has occurred. There is also no need to send the updated content of the database on the active node to the standby node, so the processing performance will be the same as that of a non-cluster system.

### Note

When failover operation is integrated with PRIMECLUSTER, the disk is not referenced by the standby node, and therefore failover operation cannot be used for load distribution.

In addition, failover operation cannot be performed concurrently with database multiplexing.

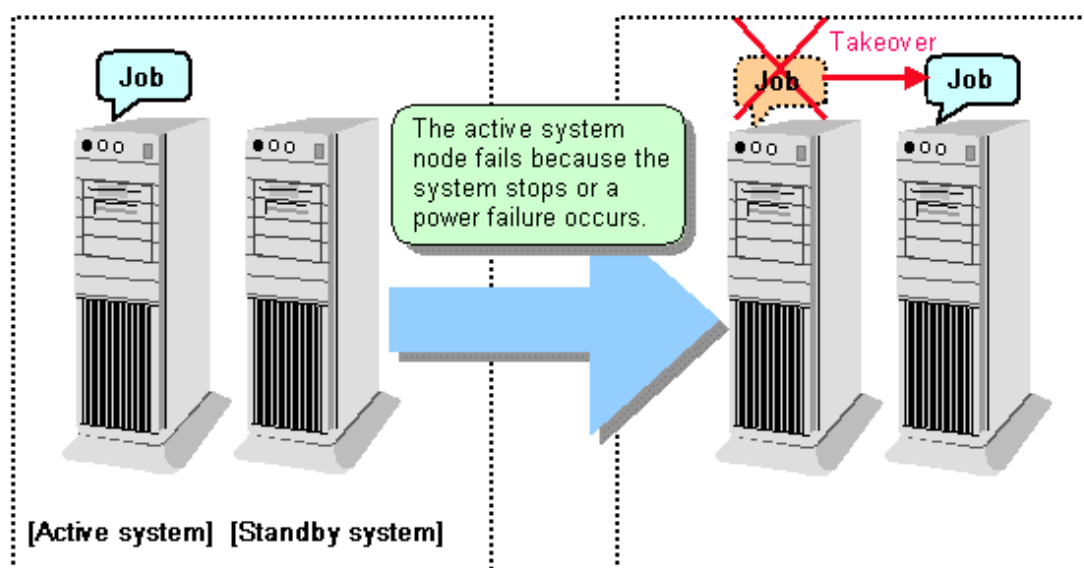
### Information

Streaming replication, which enables load balancing, can be combined with failover operations.

For details, see "[Appendix C Failover Operation in Streaming Replication](#)".

Hereinafter, failover operation integrated with PRIMECLUSTER is referred to as "failover operation".

Figure 1.1 Concept of failover



## Feature of failover operation

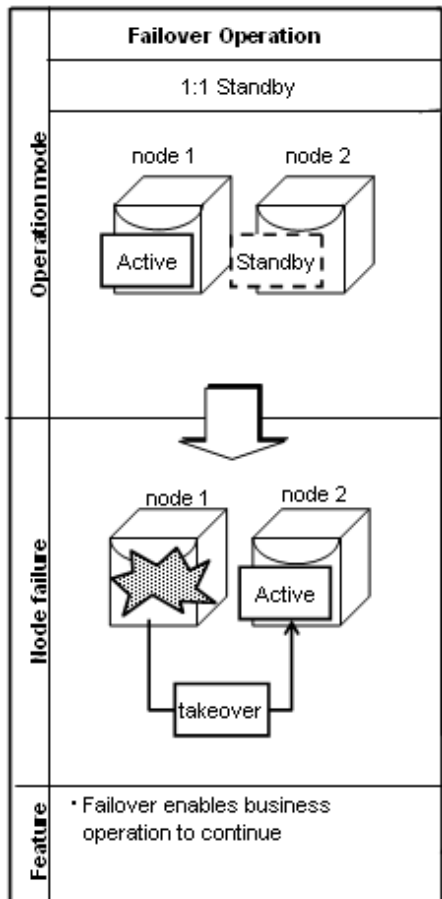
Failover operation supports the standby feature.

When an abnormality occurs on a node, the standby feature starts the instance that is the standby system at the time of the switch, and transfers the job to it.

## Operation mode of failover operation

The operation mode supported in failover operation is 1:1 standby.

1:1 standby is a mode in which one active system or standby system operates on one node. Because failover allows jobs to continue when an abnormality occurs in the active system, this mode allows highly reliable systems to be constructed.



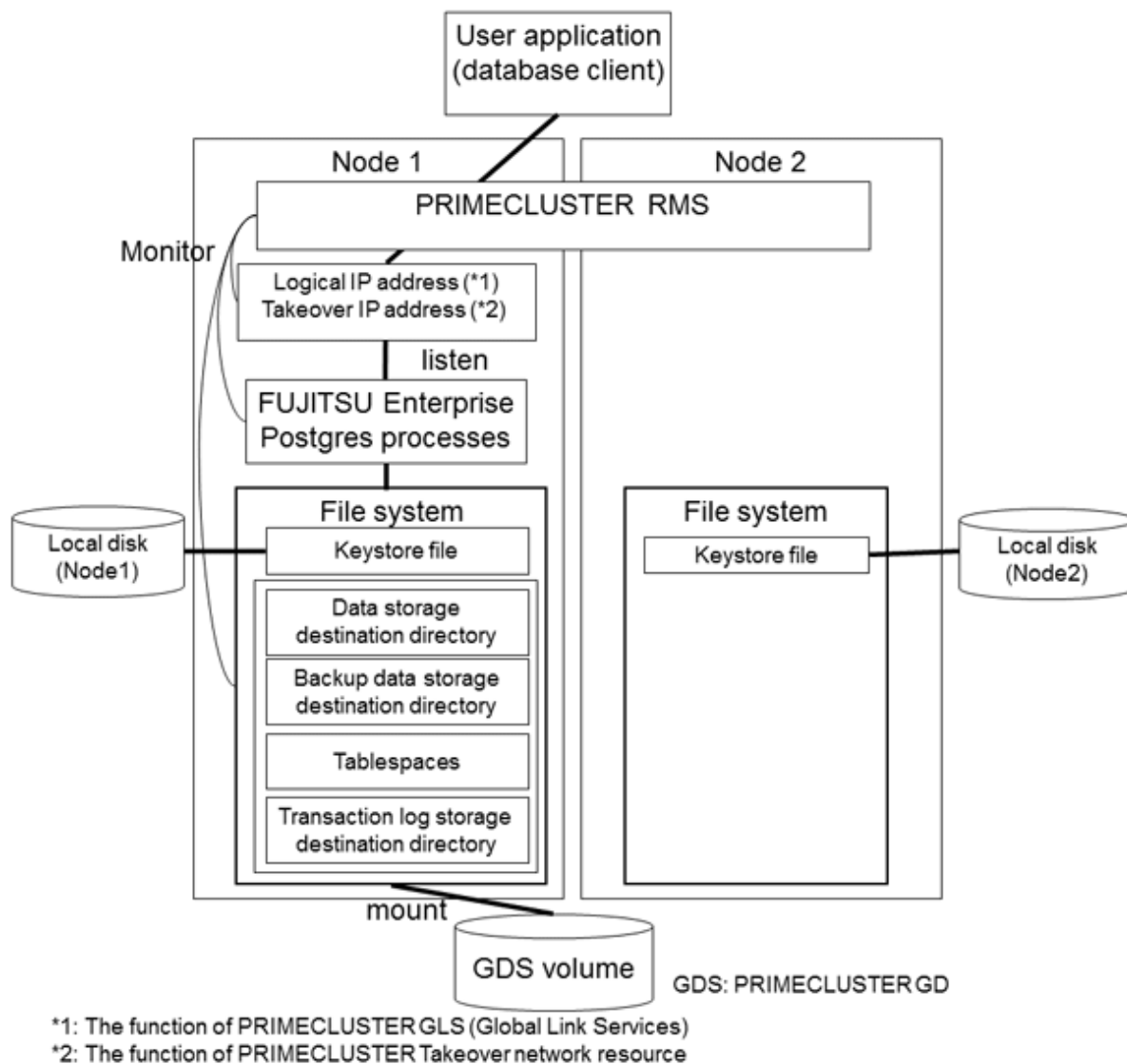
## 1.2 System Configuration of Failover Operation

In the illustration below, the file system is on a GDS volume (shared disk), mounted on node 1 only.

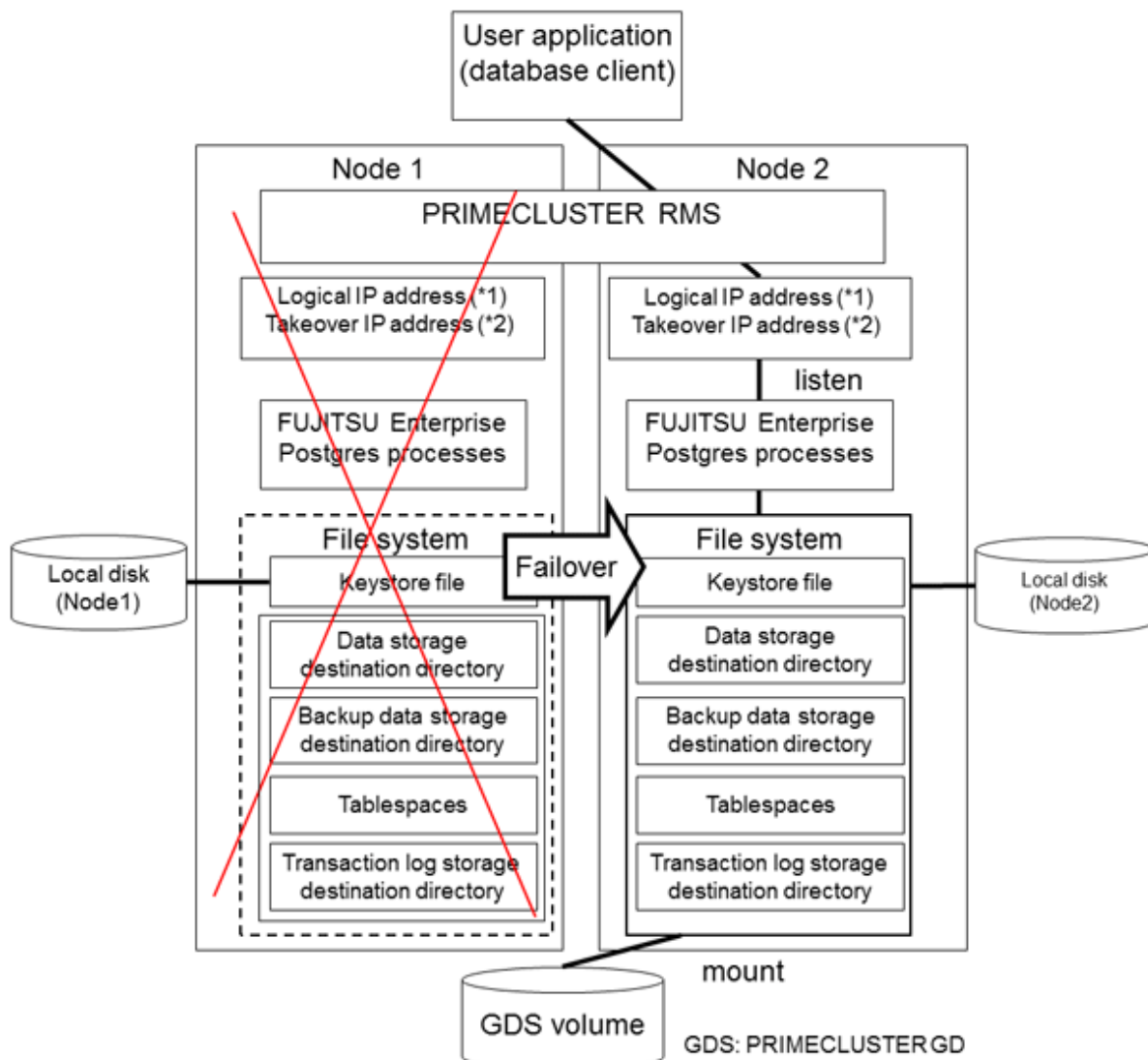
The following Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres resources are located in this file system:

- Data storage destination directory
- Tablespaces
- Backup data storage destination directory
- Transaction log storage destination directory

A Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres process waits for connections of user applications that access the database, on a logical IP address activated on node 1 only or on a takeover IP address.



When an error is detected on node 1, PRIMECLUSTER mounts the file system on node 2, and activates the logical IP address or the takeover IP address on it. The Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres process is also started on node 2. Since the logical IP address or the takeover IP address remains unchanged, the user application can access Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres process on node 2 simply by re-establishing the database connection.



\*1: The function of PRIMECLUSTERGLS (Global Link Services)  
 \*2: The function of PRIMECLUSTER Taking over network resource



## Chapter 2 Setting Up Failover Operation

Use the procedure in the table below to perform setup:

Step	Work item		Reference
	Active system	Standby system	
1	Installing PRIMECLUSTER and Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres		<a href="#">2.1 Installing PRIMECLUSTER and Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres</a>
2	Configuring PRIMECLUSTER		<a href="#">2.2 Configuring PRIMECLUSTER</a>
3	Creating a GDS volume (*1)		<a href="#">2.3 Creating a GDS Volume</a>
4	Creating a file system (*1)		<a href="#">2.4 Creating a File System</a>
5	Creating a user for the operating system to start Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres		<a href="#">2.5 Creating an Operating System User to Start Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres</a>
6	Mounting the file system		<a href="#">2.6 Mounting the File System</a>
7	Creating a database cluster(*1)		<a href="#">2.7 Creating a Database Cluster</a>
8	Registering resource information for the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres database cluster		<a href="#">2.8 Registering Resource Information for the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Database Cluster</a>
9	Configuring storage data protection using transparent data encryption (*1)		<a href="#">2.9 Configuring Storage Data Protection Using Transparent Data Encryption</a>
10	Unmounting the file system		<a href="#">2.10 Unmounting the File System</a>
11	Creating a cluster application		<a href="#">2.11 Creating a Cluster Application</a>
12	Application development		<a href="#">2.12 Application Development</a>
13	Checking operation		<a href="#">2.13 Checking Operation</a>

\*1: Some settings and operations must also be performed on the standby node. Refer to the relevant sections for details.

Note: GDS: PRIMECLUSTER GD

The sections that follow explain each step.

## 2.1 Installing PRIMECLUSTER and Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

---

Refer to the manual for each product, and then install each product.



See

- Refer to the PRIMECLUSTER Installation and Administration Guide for information on how to install PRIMECLUSTER.
- Refer to the Installation and Setup Guide for Server for information on how to install Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

## 2.2 Configuring PRIMECLUSTER

---

Configure the initial settings for the cluster.

If using PRIMECLUSTER GL (hereafter referred to as "GLS"), configure the GLS settings.



See

Refer to the PRIMECLUSTER Installation and Administration Guide for information on steps required before setup.

## 2.3 Creating a GDS Volume

---

Each of the following Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres resources must be located in a file system on a shared disk:

- Data storage destination directory
- Tablespaces
- Backup data storage destination directory
- Transaction log storage destination directory



Note

- Store data storage destination directories or tablespaces and backup data storage destination directories for these in different GDS classes to guard against file system corruption and the MONITORONLY attribute settings at the time of the Gds resource and Fsystem resource creation.
- It is also recommended that database storage destination directories and transaction log storage destination directories be placed in different groups or different single disks, so that the I/O load is distributed.
- Create a directory for each resource on each node. Ensure that the directories to be mounted have the same path on all nodes.



See

- Refer to the PRIMECLUSTER Installation and Administration Guide for information on GDS volume creation.
- Refer to "Preparing Directories to Deploy Resources" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server for information on how to create directories.

## 2.4 Creating a File System

---

Create a file system.



See

- Refer to the PRIMECLUSTER Installation and Administration Guide for information on how to create a file system on a GDS volume.

## 2.4.1 Creating a File System

Use the operating system or file system command to create a file system on the GDS volume.

Example)

The example below creates a file system using ext4.

```
# mkfs -t ext4 /dev/sfdsk/class0001/dsk/volume0001
```

## 2.4.2 Editing Configuration Files

Edit /etc/fstab and /etc/fstab.pcl on each node.

- /etc/fstab

Comment out each line below by prepending it with "#".

```
#/dev/sfdsk/class0001/dsk/volume0001 /mnt/swdsk1 ext4 noauto 0 0
#/dev/sfdsk/class0001/dsk/volume0002 /mnt/swdsk2 ext4 noauto 0 0
```

- /etc/fstab.pcl

Copy the entries above, and then replace "#" in each line with "#RMS#", as follows:

```
#RMS#/dev/sfdsk/class0001/dsk/volume0001 /mnt/swdsk1 ext4 noauto 0 0
#RMS#/dev/sfdsk/class0001/dsk/volume0002 /mnt/swdsk2 ext4 noauto 0 0
```



Note

Different files are specified depending on the version of the PRIMECLUSTER. Check the version of PRIMECLUSTER being used and edit appropriate files. Refer to the PRIMECLUSTER Installation and Administration Guide for details.

## 2.4.3 Checking

Start the GDS volume, and ensure that each file system can be mounted on each node.

```
# mount -t ext4 /dev/sfdsk/class0001/dsk/volume0001 /mnt/swdsk1
# mount -t ext4 /dev/sfdsk/class0001/dsk/volume0002 /mnt/swdsk2
# umount /mnt/swdsk1
# umount /mnt/swdsk2
```

## 2.5 Creating an Operating System User to Start Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

Create an operating system user (an OS user that will become the instance administrator) who is to start Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.



Note

Ensure that the name, UID, and GID of the operating system user (an OS user that will become the instance administrator) who is to start Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres match on all nodes that make up the cluster system.

## 2.6 Mounting the File System

---

1. Start the GDS volume if it has not already started.
2. Mount all file systems containing the resources required to create database clusters, such as for the data storage destination directory, as shown below:

```
# mount -t ext4 /dev/sfdsk/class0001/dsk/volume0001 /mnt/swdsk1
```



Create directories in the file system for storing each resource. Each directory must meet certain conditions to be able to create the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres database cluster. Check the notes in "Preparing Directories to Deploy Resources" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server.

## 2.7 Creating a Database Cluster

---

1. Create the database cluster.



- If the configuration requires password authentication, create a .pgpass file in the home directory of the operating system user who is to start Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres, and then specify a password for the template1 database as this is required. This will be used when PRIMECLUSTER checks the operation of the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres database server. If authentication fails, a fault will be assumed to have occurred in the database server.
- The value specified for the port parameter in postgresql.conf needs to be set in the /etc/services files on all nodes.
- Since postgresql.conf is stored in the data directory, it becomes a common configuration file for each node in the shared disk. Therefore, it must be taken into account that the path set for postgresql.conf must be valid for the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres server processes started on each node. For example, if a local directory is specified in the core\_directory parameter, that local directory must have been created on all nodes.
- To execute the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres commands, you must configure the environment variables on each node.
- Use the initdb command to create a database cluster.
- Specify "off" for the restart\_after\_crash parameter in postgresql.conf.  
If "on" is specified, or the default value is used for the restart\_after\_crash parameter, behaviors equivalent to restarting the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres, including crash recovery, will be performed when some server processes go down. When linking with PRIMECLUSTER, however, a failover will occur after an error is detected as soon as some server processes go down, and server processes restarting will be forced to stop. This is to inhibit complex behaviors such as processes being canceled in the middle of restarting for no particular meaningful purpose.

2. Check starting, connection, and stopping at each node. The procedure is as follows.



Queries are issued to monitor the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres from PRIMECLUSTER. With this connection process, if a password is requested, the monitoring process cannot be continued. For this reason, when checking the connection, ensure that connections can be made without entering a password.



When monitoring Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres from PRIMECLUSTER, the name of the application that connects to instances is "pgx\_wch\_svprocess".

1. Check the starting, connection, and stopping at node 1.

Use the `pg_ctl` command to start and stop the node.

For connection, execute the following to ensure that connections can be made without entering a password:

```
su - OsUser
psql -d template1 -p portNum [ -U dbUser]
```

*OsUser*: Operating system user to start the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

*portNum*: Port number specified when the database cluster was created

*dbUser*: Database superuser

If the database superuser is specified at the time of executing the `initdb` command, or if the database superuser has been changed after the `initdb` command was executed, specify the user for the `-U` option. If the database superuser is not specified or changed, omit this.

2. Unmount all file systems containing the resources required to create database clusters (such as the data storage destination directory) on node 1, and stop the GDS volume.
3. Start the GDS volume on node 2, and mount all file systems containing the resources required to create database clusters (such as the data storage destination directory).
4. Check starting, connection, and stopping at node 2.  
Perform the same check as step 1.
5. Unmount all file systems containing the resources required to create database clusters (such as the data storage destination directory) on node 2, and stop the GDS volume.
6. Start the GDS volume on node 1, and mount all file systems containing the resources required to create database clusters (such as the data storage destination directory).



See

- Refer to "Using the `initdb` Command" of "Creating an Instance" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server" for information on how to create a database cluster.
- Refer to "The Password File" in "Client Interfaces" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on files for which passwords are set.

## 2.8 Registering Resource Information for the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Database Cluster

1. Use the `pgx_pclrsc` command to register the database cluster in PRIMECLUSTER - the following is the simplest execution example:  
The database cluster does not need to be started when executing the command.

```
# pgx_pclrsc -a -c databaseClusterName -u OsUser -D pgData -w workDir -n memberNodes
```

Item	Explanation
<i>databaseClusterName</i>	<p>Specify the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres database cluster name.</p> <p>The database cluster name is case-sensitive.</p> <p>The database cluster name must be as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Up to 16 bytes, and</li> <li>- The first byte must be an ASCII letter, and</li> <li>- The other bytes must be ASCII alphanumeric characters, or underscores (<code>_</code>).</li> </ul>

Item	Explanation
<i>OsUser</i>	Specify the operating system user (an OS user that will become the instance administrator) who can start the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres database server.
<i>pgData</i>	Specify the absolute path of the data storage destination directory specified during database cluster creation.
<i>workDir</i>	<p>Specify the directory for storing the temporary files required for Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres resource monitoring and state transition, and for storing the trace logs required in case of problems.</p> <p>If a parent directory that does not exist is specified, create the directory. The newly created directory path assumes the <i>OsUser</i> specified with the -u option as the owner, and 0700 as the privilege</p> <p>Required directory size is twice the size that is specified in the --trace-max-file-size option. If the default value is specified in the --trace-max-file-size option, 10240 KB x 2 is required for the directory size.</p>
<i>memberNodes</i>	<p>Specify the names of all nodes that make up the cluster system.</p> <p>Use a comma (,) to separate each node name.</p> <p>Suffix each cluster node name with the literal "RMS".</p> <p>Specification example:</p> <p>-n node1RMS,node2RMS</p>

Other than the above, the following options can be specified:

Option	Explanation
--db-user=name	Specify the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres database superuser. The user specified in the -u option is the default.
--response-timeout=seconds	<p>In cluster operations, queries are regularly issued to the server to perform error detection and state monitoring.</p> <p>Specify a timeout time for queries issued for the heartbeat monitoring of the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres database server.</p> <p>For queries, "SELECT 1" for the database "template1" is used. If 0 is specified, queries will not time out. The default is 0.</p>
--timeout-retry-count=count	<p>Specify the upper limit for the number of retries when queries for monitoring time out.</p> <p>The default is 6 times.</p>
--trace-max-file-size	Specify the maximum size of the trace file. The default is 10240 KB.

Option	Explanation
--watch-interval=seconds	Specify the monitoring interval (the interval with which the queries are issued to the server) for a monitoring program to monitor the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres database server. The default is 3 seconds.



See

Refer to the "B.1 pgx\_pclsrc" for information on the pgx\_pclsrc command.

## 2.9 Configuring Storage Data Protection Using Transparent Data Encryption

If using transparent data encryption, refer to "Protecting Storage Data Using Transparent Data Encryption" in the Operation Guide to configure it. Take note on the following when configuring it:

### For file-based keystores

#### Location of the keystore file

Do not specify a shared disk for the keystore\_location parameter in postgresql.conf. Instead, specify a local directory with the same path on all nodes that comprise the cluster application.

If a shared disk is specified, startup from the cluster application will fail. This is because the keystore.aks file, which is generated when automatic opening of the keystore is enabled, is obfuscated so that it can only be read on the node where it was generated, and therefore it cannot be shared across the shared disk.

#### Distribution of the keystore file

The master encryption key settings must be common across all nodes. For this reason, configure the master encryption key settings on one node, and then copy the keystore file to each node. Also, if the master encryption key or passphrase is changed, you must also copy the keystore file to each node.

#### Enabling automatic opening of the keystore

Automatic opening of the keystore must be enabled in all nodes that comprise the cluster application. Note that, when enabling the automatic opening of the keystore, only the directory in which the keystore file is stored will be referenced, therefore tasks such as starting and stopping the GDS volume are not required.

If it is not enabled, then startup from the cluster application will fail. This is because the startup process will not finish, since it waits for the manual input of the passphrase that opens the keystore.

### Using a key management system

#### Arrangement of connection information file for key management system

The file describing the key management system connection information specified in the tde\_kms.kms\_conninfo\_file parameter of the postgresql.conf file and the files referenced by that file, such as certificates, can be placed on a shared disk. However, the obfuscated credential file used to enable automatic keystore opening should be stored in a file on a local disk with the same path on all nodes that make up the cluster application.

#### Enable auto open keystore

Be sure to enable automatic keystore opening. Enable automatic keystore opening on all nodes that make up the cluster application. Note that you do not need to start or stop the GDS volume, because enabling automatic keystore opening refers only to the directory where the obfuscated credential file resides.

If you have not enabled automatic keystore opening, startup from the cluster application fails, because it waits for a manual pass phrase to be entered to open the keystore at startup, and does not terminate startup.

## Changing credentials for key management systems

If the credentials for the key management system change, use the `pgx_open_keystore` function on the primary server to change the credentials. Repeat the procedure for enabling automatic keystore opening on the standby server.

## 2.10 Unmounting the File System

1. Unmount all file systems containing the resources required to create database clusters (such as the data storage destination directory).

```
# umount /mnt/swdsk1
```

2. Stop the GDS volume.

## 2.11 Creating a Cluster Application

Refer to "[Appendix A Creating Resources and Creating/Modifying Cluster Applications](#)".

## 2.12 Application Development

This section explains points to consider when creating applications during cluster operations.

### 2.12.1 Precautions when Developing Applications

To specify the IP address specified by the application, specify the IP address specified when creating the GIs resource or creating the takeover network resource. When state transition occurred, the operation can continue only by re-execute without changing the application.

Refer to "[A.1.5 Creating GIs or Takeover Network Resources](#)" for details.

### 2.12.2 Corrective Action with Application when State Transition Occurs

When accessing from an application running on another node such as an application server, the following describes the error information to be returned when an abnormality or the like occurs in the node where Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres operates, and the actions.

#### JDBC driver

State		Error information(*1)	Action
Node failure or Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres system failure	Failure occurs during access	57P01 08006	After the switch is complete, reestablish the connection, or re-execute the application.
	Accessed during node/system failure	08001	
Switch to the standby node	Switched during access	57P01 08006	
	Accessed during switch	08001	

\*1: Return value of the `getSQLState()` of `SQLException`.

#### ODBC driver



State		Error information(*1)	Action
Node failure or Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres system failure	Failure occurs during access	57P01 08S01	After the switch is complete, reestablish the connection, or re-execute the application.
	Accessed during node/system failure	08001	
Switch to the standby node	Switched during access	57P01 08S01	
	Accessed during switch	08001	

\*1: Return value of SQLSTATE.

### .NET Data Provider

State		Error information	Action
Node failure or Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres system failure	Failure occurs during access	57P01 (*1) Empty string (*1) NullReferenceException is generated.	After the switch is complete, reestablish the connection, or re-execute the application.
	Accessed during node/system failure	Empty string (*1)	
Switch to the standby node	Switched during access	57P01 (*1) Empty string (*1) NullReferenceException is generated.	
	Accessed during switch	Empty string (*1)	

\*1: This is the return value of the PostgresException attribute SqlState.

### C library(libpq)

State		Error information	Action
Node failure or Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres system failure	Failure occurs during access	PGRES_FATAL_ERROR(*1) 57P01(*2) NULL(*2)	After the switch is complete, reestablish the connection, or re-execute the application.
	Accessed during node/system failure	CONNECTION_BAD(*3)	
Switch to the standby node	Switched during access	PGRES_FATAL_ERROR(*1) 57P01(*2) NULL(*2)	

State		Error information	Action
	Accessed during switch	CONNECTION_BAD(*3)	

\*1: Return value of PQresultStatus().

\*2: Return value of PQresultErrorField() PG\_DIAG\_SQLSTATE.

\*3: Return value of PQstatus().

## Embedded SQL in C

State		Error information(*1)	Action
Node failure or Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres system failure	Failure occurs during access	57P01 57P02 YE000 26000 40001	After the switch is complete, reestablish the connection, or re-execute the application.
	Accessed during node/system failure	08001	
Switch to the standby node	Switched during access	57P01 57P02 YE000 26000 40001	
	Accessed during switch	08001	

\*1: Return value of SQLSTATE

## Embedded SQL in COBOL

State		Error information(*1)	Action
Node failure or Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres system failure	Failure occurs during access	57P01 57P02 YE000 26000 40001	After the switch is complete, reestablish the connection, or re-execute the application.
	Accessed during node/system failure	08001	
Switch to the standby node	Switched during access	57P01 57P02 YE000 26000	

State		Error information(*1)	Action
		40001	
	Accessed during switch	08001	

\*1: Return value of SQLSTATE.

## 2.13 Checking Operation

To ensure that the environment settings have been configured correctly, start, switch, and stop from Web-Based Admin View, and check the behavior.

To do a failover test, follow the procedure below.

1. Stop the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres server processes by pg\_ctl command with immediate mode.

Example)

```
# pg_ctl stop -m immediate
```

2. Check whether switching was done correctly.



### Note

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres uses the su(1) command to periodically monitor its resources.

Therefore, in a RHEL environment, after a cluster system is built, operating system messages relating to the su(1) command will be periodically output to /var/log/messages during cluster system operation.

Refer to the relevant manual of your operating system for information on how to control these messages.

## Chapter 3 Failover Operation

This chapter explains the procedures involved in failover operation.

### 3.1 Adding Tablespaces

This section explains how to add tablespaces to a new file system.

This procedure is not required when you are adding tablespaces to an existing file system.

Perform the following steps when using a new shared disk class:

- Stop RMS on all nodes.
- Perform setup as described from "2.3 Creating a GDS Volume" to "2.4 Creating a File System".
- Modify the cluster application (refer to "A.2 Modifying Cluster Applications" for details).

Perform the following steps when using a new shared disk class:

- Stop RMS on all nodes.
- Perform the setup as described in "2.4 Creating a File System".

If a new GDS volume is to be used, the GDS volume must be created in advance.

- Modify the cluster application (refer to "A.2 Modifying Cluster Applications" for details).

### 3.2 Modifying Database Cluster Resources

This section explains the following operations:

- Displaying database cluster resource information
- Modifying database cluster resource content
- Deleting a database cluster resource

#### Displaying database cluster resource information

Execute the `pgx_pclrsc` command as shown below (note that if `-c` is not specified, the command lists all registered database cluster names):

```
# pgx_pclrsc -p -c databaseClusterName
```

#### Modifying database cluster resource content

1. Stop RMS.
2. Execute the `pgx_pclrsc` command as shown below (this is the simplest example):

```
# pgx_pclrsc -d -c databaseClusterName  
# pgx_pclrsc -a -c databaseClusterName -u OsUser -D pgData -w workDir -n memberNodes
```



#### Note

If you are modifying resource content, first delete the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres resource from the cluster application, and then re-create it.



#### See

Refer to "B.1 `pgx_pclrsc`" for information on the `pgx_pclrsc` command.

## Deleting a database cluster resource

1. Stop RMS.
2. Delete the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres resource from the cluster application.
3. Execute the `pgx_pclrsc` command as shown below:

```
# pgx_pclrsc -d -c databaseClusterName
```



The directory specified in the `-w` option of the `pgx_pclrsc` command during registration will not be deleted. Use operating system commands to delete it if necessary.

## 3.3 Operations under Normal Circumstances

### Starting and stopping

For cluster operations, perform starting and stopping from the cluster application. If starting and stopping are performed by using the `pg_ctl` command or WebAdmin during failover operation, the cluster application will misjudge that services have gone down, resulting in unexpected behaviors.



Issuing a query to monitor Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres from PRIMECLUSTER.

If a query is issued during startup or shutdown, the following message may be printed, but this is not a problem.

```
FATAL: Database system is in the process of starting
```

```
FATAL: Database system is shutting down
```

### Switching

There are two ways to switch between the active node and the standby node, as shown below.

Under normal circumstances, switch using mutual switch. In an emergency, for example when there is no response from the active node, perform forced switch. Forced switch should only be used in emergency scenarios because the differences in Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres stop modes when the active node is offline will cause the statistics to be initialized, and the load will increase as crash recovery is performed after the switch.

- Mutual switch

Refer to "[3.5.2.4 Mutual Switch](#)".

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres is stopped with the "fast" mode of the `pg_ctl` command.

- Forced switch

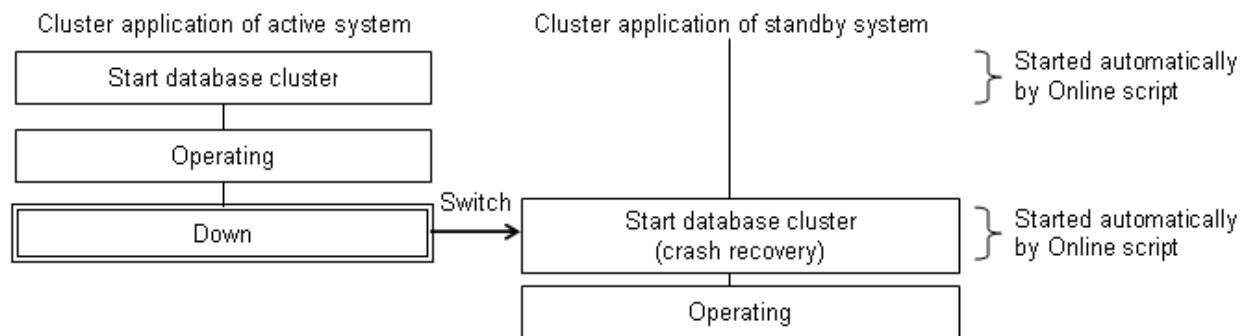
Right-click the cluster application object, and select [Switch] from the menu. From the switchable nodes displayed in the drop-down menu, select a target node, and switch the cluster application to that node.

Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres is stopped with the "immediate" mode of the `pg_ctl` command.

## 3.4 Operation at State Transition

The workflow for operation at state transition is shown below.

The start operation during failover operation will be performed automatically by the Online script.



### Non-transferrable feature

- All transactions being processed by the cluster application on the active system will be rolled back.
- The statistics Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres has collected will be initialized.

The statistics will be initialized in any of the following cases. Refer to the notes outlined in "Starting and Stopping an Instance" in the Operation Guide for details.

- When the node goes down because of a kernel panic, for example
- When forced switch is performed

Statistics are initialized because the "immediate" mode of the `pg_ctl` command is used to stop Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

Refer to ["3.3 Operations under Normal Circumstances"](#) for details.

- When an error occurs in the cluster application resources

Statistics are initialized because the "immediate" mode of the `pg_ctl` command is used to stop Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres to perform an immediate switch.

### Errors during state transition

If an error occurs in a Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres script during cluster application state transition, the following message will be displayed in the switchlog of Cluster Admin (the registered database cluster name will be displayed in the `inst1` part shown below):

```
2017-05-14 11:08:22.060:(DET, 3): ERROR: FAULT REASON: Resource <Fsep_inst1> transitioned to a
Faulted state due to a script failure.
```

To display the switchlog, select [Tools] >> [View switchlog] in the [Cluster Admin] window.

If the resource displayed in the error message is a Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres resource name, a message indicating the cause will be output either before the message above or to the system log.

## 3.5 Maintenance Tasks

When you need to perform tasks such as configuration changes, patch application, and hardware parts replacement that may require restarting, there are two ways of node maintenance. Performing maintenance on both nodes by stopping both active and standby nodes, and performing maintenance on one node at a time by leaving the active node running to perform maintenance on the standby node first, and then switch the active node to perform maintenance on the other node. In this section, the former is referred to as simultaneous stopped node maintenance, whereas the latter is referred to as mutual switch maintenance.

Refer to the tasks outlined below in either ["Figure 3.1 Workflow for simultaneous stopped node maintenance"](#) or ["Figure 3.2 Workflow for mutual switch maintenance"](#), and perform your maintenance tasks accordingly.

Figure 3.1 Workflow for simultaneous stopped node maintenance

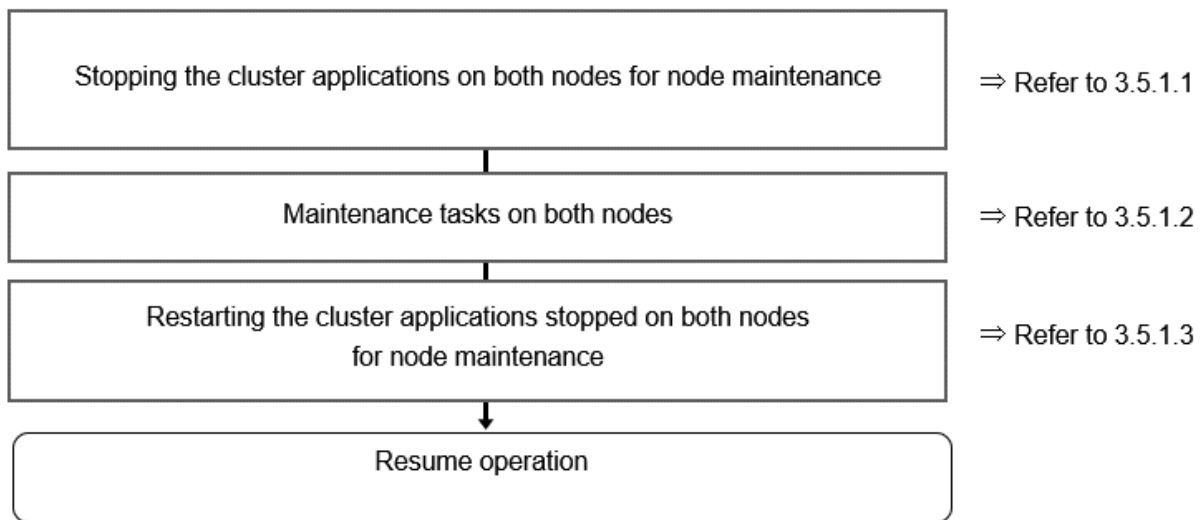
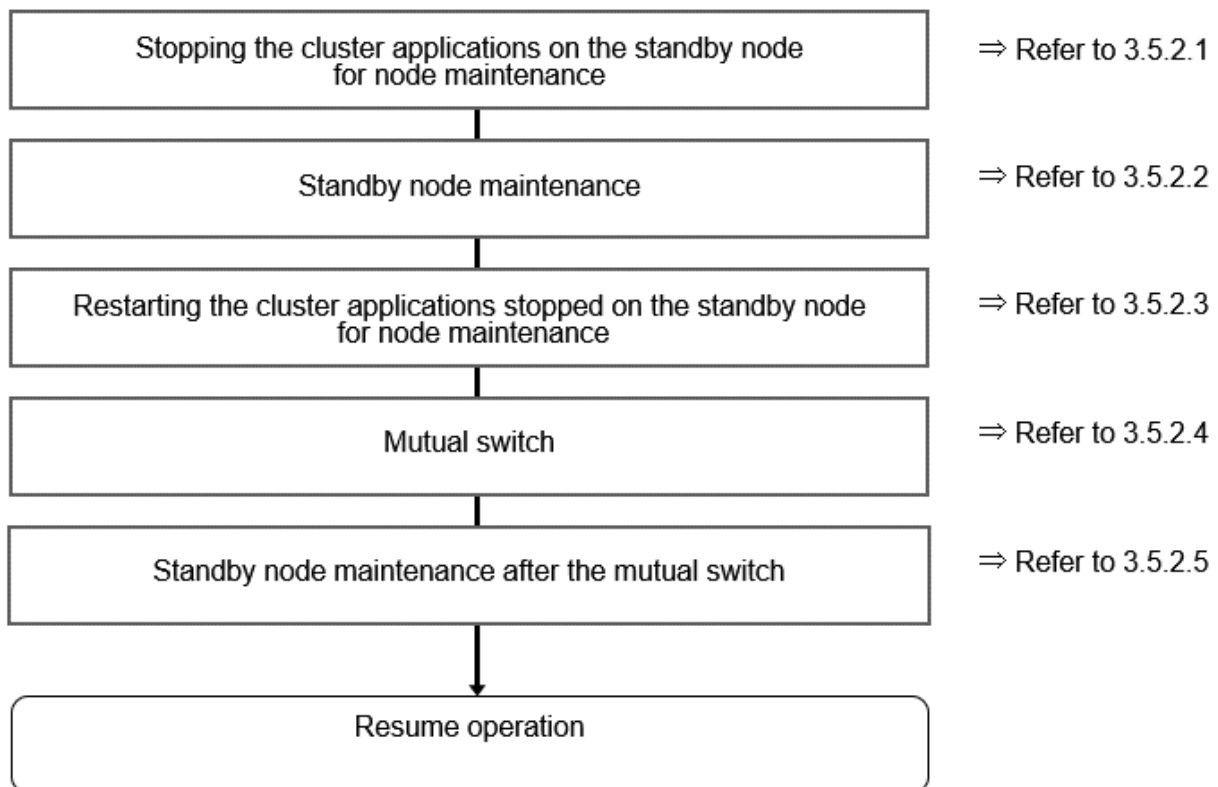


Figure 3.2 Workflow for mutual switch maintenance



### 3.5.1 Simultaneous Stopped Node Maintenance

This section explains the procedure to perform maintenance on both active and standby nodes simultaneously.

#### 3.5.1.1 Stopping the Cluster Applications on Both Nodes for Node Maintenance

Follow the steps shown below to stop the cluster application on the active and standby nodes:

1. Start the [Cluster Admin] window.

2. Stop the cluster application.

On the RMS tree in the [Cluster Admin] window, right-click the standby cluster application to be stopped, and select [Offline] from the pop-up menu to stop it.

Stop the cluster application on both the active and standby nodes.

3. Stop RMS.

On the RMS tree in the [Cluster Admin] window, right-click the system node where the cluster application to be stopped exists, and select [Shutdown RMS] from the pop-up menu to stop RMS. To perform maintenance without stopping RMS, execute the `hutil -m` on command to change the cluster application to maintenance mode.



- If applying the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres update patches, RMS on the node (onto which the patches are applied) must be stopped. This is because the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres monitoring process that runs when linked with PRIMECLUSTER must be stopped.
- By stopping RMS, all cluster applications on the system node where RMS is stopped will stop. When you have multiple cluster applications configured, ensure that stopping all other cluster applications will not cause any problems, before stopping RMS.

### 3.5.1.2 Maintenance Tasks on Both Nodes

Perform maintenance tasks such as configuration changes, patch application, hardware and parts replacement that may require restarting.

### 3.5.1.3 Restarting the Cluster Applications Stopped on Both Nodes for Node Maintenance

Follow the steps shown below to restart the cluster application on the active and standby nodes.

1. Start the [Cluster Admin] window.
2. If RMS has not been started, select [Tools] >> [Start RMS] in the [Cluster Admin] window, and select the node to be started and click [Ok].

Note that if the cluster applications were stopped for node maintenance using the `hutil -m` on command, execute the `hutil -m off` command instead of starting RMS.

3. Start the cluster application.

On the RMS tree in the [Cluster Admin] window, right-click the standby cluster application, and from the pop-up menu, if you are starting the node as the active node, select [Online], or if you are starting it as the standby node, select [Standby]. If the state is [Fault], then select [Clear fault].

This operation is not required if the cluster application has been configured to start automatically when RMS is started.

## 3.5.2 Mutual Switch Maintenance

This section explains the procedure to perform maintenance on the standby node while running the active node at the same time.

### 3.5.2.1 Stopping the Cluster Applications on the Standby Node for Node Maintenance

Follow the steps shown below to stop the cluster application on the standby node only:

1. Edit the `/opt/SMAW/SMAWRrms/bin/hvenv.local` file, and add "export HV\_RCSTART=0".

If the `hvenv.local` file does not exist, then create it.

```
# vi /opt/SMAW/SMAWRrms/bin/hvenv.local
Add export HV_RCSTART=0
```

2. On the RMS tree in the [Cluster Admin] window, right-click the cluster application on the standby node to be stopped, and select [Offline] from the pop-up menu to stop it.



3. On the RMS tree in the [Cluster Admin] window, right-click the system node (where the cluster application on the standby node that was stopped exists), and select [Shutdown RMS]. At this stage, select [Stop all Apps] as the option, and stop RMS.

### Note

- Ensure that the steps up to step 3 have been completed properly before performing the maintenance tasks. If the active node goes down at the point when steps 1 and 2 have been completed, Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres will be started on the supposedly stopped standby node, and it becomes the active node instead. As a result, this will compete with the maintenance tasks and unexpected behavior may occur.
- If applying the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres update patches, RMS on the node (onto which the patches are applied) must be stopped. This is because the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres monitoring process that runs when linked with PRIMECLUSTER must be stopped.
- By stopping RMS, all cluster applications on the system node where RMS is stopped will stop. When you have multiple cluster applications configured, ensure that stopping all other cluster applications will not cause any problems, before stopping RMS.

## 3.5.2.2 Standby Node Maintenance

Perform maintenance tasks such as patch application and hardware parts replacement.

## 3.5.2.3 Restarting the Cluster Applications Stopped on the Standby Node for Node Maintenance

Follow the steps shown below to restart the cluster application on the standby node only (that was stopped for maintenance):

1. Edit the /opt/SMAW/SMAWRrms/bin/hvenv.local file, and delete "export HV\_RCSTART=0".

```
# vi /opt/SMAW/SMAWRrms/bin/hvenv.local
Delete export HV_RCSTART=0
```

2. Select [Tools]-[Start RMS] in the [Cluster Admin] window, and select the node to be started and click [Ok].
3. On the RMS tree in the [Cluster Admin] window, right-click the cluster application to be started as the standby node, and select [Standby] from the pop-up menu to start it. If the state is [Fault], then select [Clear fault].

## 3.5.2.4 Mutual Switch

To perform mutual switch between the active and standby nodes, perform the steps shown below:

1. Select and right-click the cluster application on the active node, and select [Offline] from the pop-up menu to stop it.
2. Select and right-click the cluster application on the standby node, and select [Online] from the pop-up menu to start it.
3. Select and right-click the cluster application that was previously on the active node, and select [Standby] from the pop-up menu to start it as standby.

## 3.5.2.5 Standby Node Maintenance after the Mutual Switch

To perform maintenance tasks on the new standby node after mutual switch, perform the steps from "[3.5.2.1 Stopping the Cluster Applications on the Standby Node for Node Maintenance](#)" to "[3.5.2.3 Restarting the Cluster Applications Stopped on the Standby Node for Node Maintenance](#)".

## Chapter 4 Procedures Required after a Failover Error

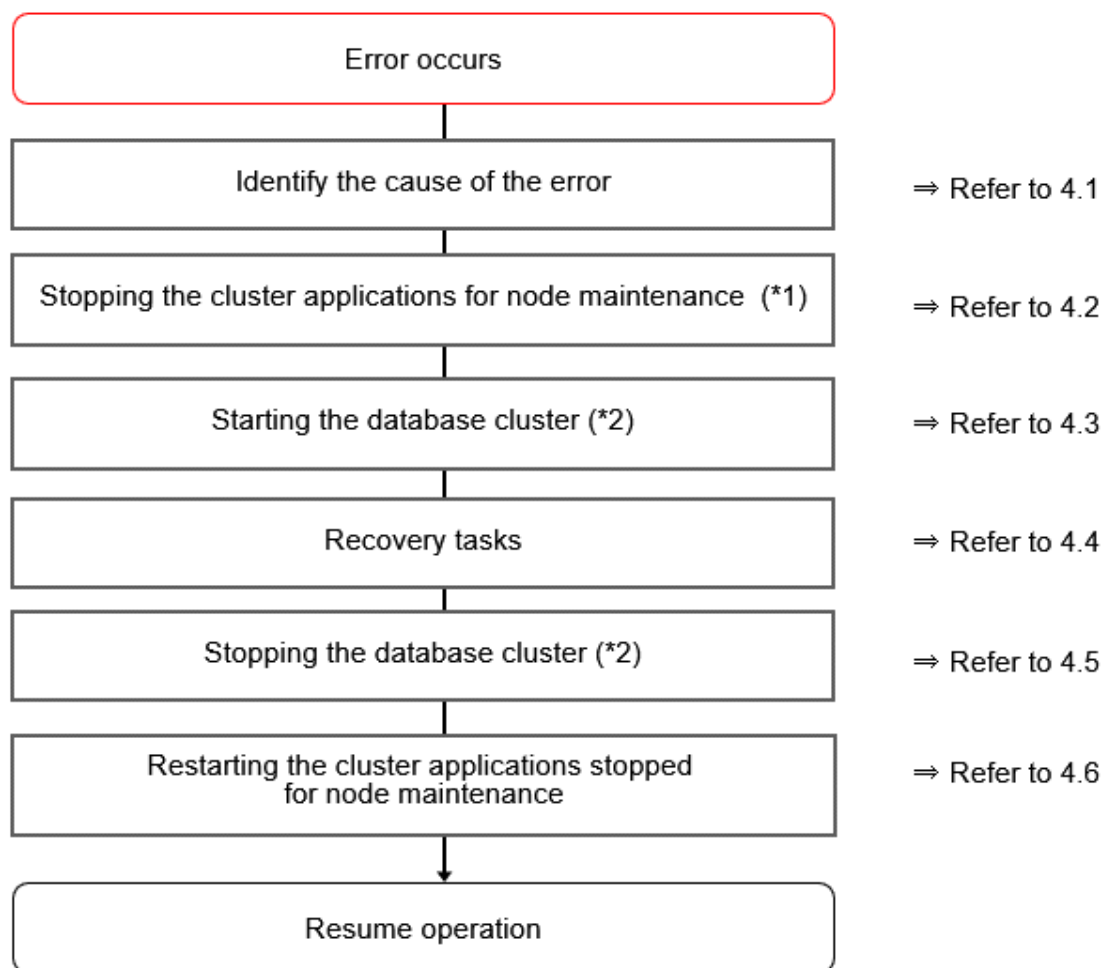
This chapter explains how to perform recovery when an abnormality occurs during failover operation.

When an error occurs during failover operation, refer to the system log to identify the cause and stop the RMS to perform recovery, separately from the RMS management. Normal operations can be resumed by restarting the RMS once the recovery is completed.

Note that the database cluster may be started or stopped without using cluster applications when performing recovery.

Refer to the tasks outlined below in "[Figure 4.1 Operation flow when a failover error occurs](#)", and perform recovery.

Figure 4.1 Operation flow when a failover error occurs



\*1) If the machine is already stopped when the error occurred, this step is not necessary.

\*2) Depending on the recovery tasks, start or stop the database cluster as required.

### 4.1 Identifying the Cause of an Error

When an error occurs during failover operation, refer to the system log to identify the cause. When cluster applications fail to start, refer to the server.log file to identify the cause.

The server.log file is a file created under the directory specified in the -w option when executing the pgx\_pclsrc command. This file has almost the same content as the file specified in the -l option when executing the pg\_ctl command to start the database cluster, and errors that are not output to the system log are output to these files, including startup errors.

## 4.2 Stopping the Cluster Applications for Node Maintenance

---

When an error occurs during failover operation, stop the RMS to perform recovery, separately from the RMS management. Refer to "[3.5 Maintenance Tasks](#)" for information on how to stop cluster applications for node maintenance.

Note that this task is not required in cases such as when the RMS is stopped because the machine is stopped due to an error.

## 4.3 Starting the Database Cluster

---

To perform recovery when an error occurs, it is necessary to start the database cluster without using cluster applications.

Follow the procedure below to start the database cluster if required.

Check if the database cluster needs to be started by referring to the recovery tasks written in "Actions When an Error Occurs" in the Operation Guide.

1. Start the GDS volume.
2. Mount the necessary file systems such as those where the data storage destination directory is placed.
3. Start the database cluster by using the `pg_ctl` command. Refer to "Using Server Commands" in "Starting an Instance and Creating a Database" in the Operation Guide for information on how to start the database cluster.

## 4.4 Recovery Tasks

---

Refer to "Actions When an Error Occurs" in the Operation Guide for information on how to perform recovery. If there are two ways available to perform recovery; using WebAdmin or commands, use commands.

## 4.5 Stopping the Database Cluster

---

If a database cluster is started, stop the database cluster.

1. Stop the database cluster using the `pg_ctl` command. Refer to "Using Server Commands" in "Starting an Instance and Creating a Database" in the Operation Guide" for information on how to stop the database cluster.
2. Unmount the file systems such as those where the data storage destination directory is placed.
3. Stop the GDS volume.

## 4.6 Restarting the Cluster Applications Stopped for Node Maintenance

---

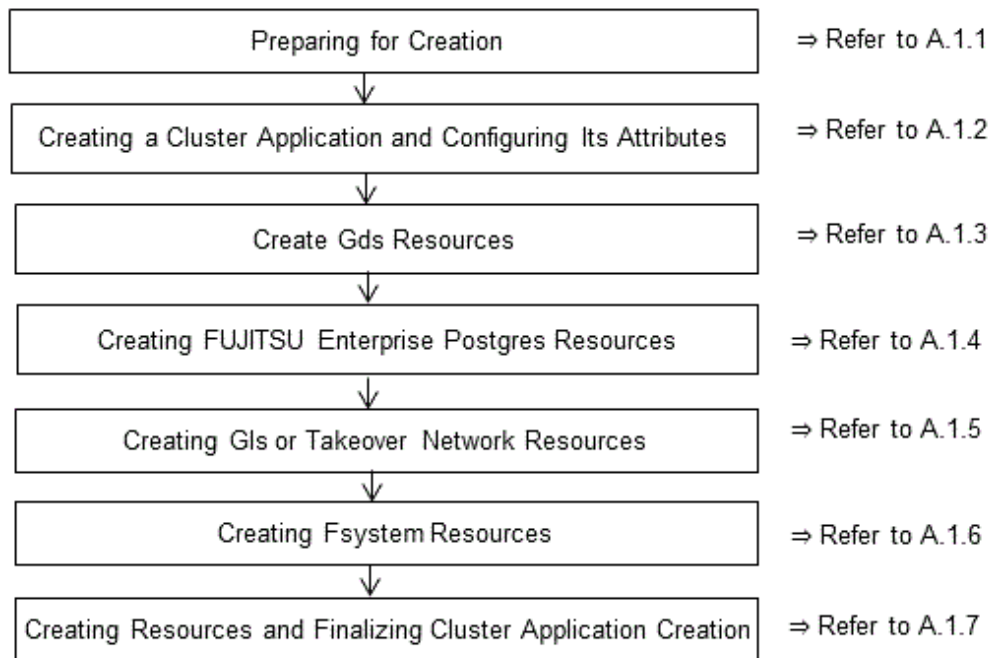
Refer to "[3.5 Maintenance Tasks](#)" to restart the cluster applications stopped for node maintenance.

# Appendix A Creating Resources and Creating/Modifying Cluster Applications

This appendix explains how to create and modify cluster applications that include Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres resources in PRIMECLUSTER.

## A.1 Creating Resources and Cluster Applications

Use the following procedure to create resources and a cluster application:



### A.1.1 Preparing for Creation

1. Execute the hvgdsetup command for all shared disk classes to be used by all file systems to be registered in the cluster application.

```
# /opt/SMAW/SMAWRrms/bin/hvgdsetup -a class0001
```

2. From the Web-Based Admin View, stop RMS on all nodes.
3. Execute the hvw command.

```
# /opt/SMAW/SMAWRrms/bin/hvw
```



See

Refer to the PRIMECLUSTER Installation and Administration Guide for information on the hvgdsetup command.

### A.1.2 Creating a Cluster Application and Configuring Its Attributes

1. Select [Application-Create].

```
pcl-vm13: Main configuration menu, current configuration: config
No RMS active in the cluster
1) HELP                                10) Configuration-Remove
```

2) QUIT	11) Configuration-Freeze
3) Application-Create	12) Configuration-Thaw
4) Application-Edit	13) Configuration-Edit-Global-Settings
5) Application-Remove	14) Configuration-Consistency-Report
6) Application-Clone	15) Configuration-ScriptExecution
7) Configuration-Generate	16) RMS-CreateMachine
8) Configuration-Activate	17) RMS-RemoveMachine
9) Configuration-Copy	

Choose an action: 3

## 2. Select [STANDBY].

Creation: Application type selection menu:

1) HELP	7) SCALABLE
2) QUIT	8) STANDBY
3) RETURN	
4) OPTIONS	
5) DEMO	
6) GENERIC	

Application Type: 8

## 3. Select [Machines+Basics].

Settings of turnkey wizard "STANDBY" (APPl:not yet consistent)

1) HELP	4) REMOVE+EXIT
2) NO-SAVE+EXIT	5) ApplicationName=APPl
3) SAVE+EXIT	6) Machines+Basics(-)

Choose the setting to process: 6



### Note

Although ApplicationName can be set to any name within the range of constraints of PRIMECLUSTER, do not set it to the database cluster name specified when registering a database cluster to PRIMECLUSTER using the pgx\_pclsrc command. If the same name is set, RMS will fail to start.

## 4. Select [AdditionalMachine].

Machines+Basics (appl:consistent)

1) HELP	14) (AutoStartUp=no)
2) -	15) (AutoSwitchOver=no)
3) SAVE+EXIT	16) (PreserveState=no)
4) REMOVE+EXIT	17) (PersistentFault=0)
5) AdditionalMachine	18) (ShutdownPriority=)
6) AdditionalConsole	19) (OnlinePriority=)
7) Machines[0]=pcl-vm13RMS	20) (StandbyTransitions=)
8) (PreCheckScript=)	21) (LicenseToKill=no)
9) (PreOnlineScript=)	22) (AutoBreak=yes)
10) (PostOnlineScript=)	23) (AutoBreakMaintMode=no)
11) (PreOfflineScript=)	24) (HaltFlag=no)
12) (OfflineDoneScript=)	25) (PartialCluster=0)
13) (FaultScript=)	26) (ScriptTimeout=)

Choose the setting to process: 5

## 5. Select a standby node.

1) HELP
2) RETURN
3) pcl-vm13RMS
4) pcl-vm14RMS

Choose a machine for this application: 4

6. Ensure that all nodes that make up the cluster application are displayed in [Machines]. Note that the item displayed in Machines[0] needs to be the active node, and Machines[1] to be the standby node. If these are not set correctly, modify the setting.

```
Machines+Basics (appl:consistent)
1) HELP
2) -
3) SAVE+EXIT
4) REMOVE+EXIT
5) AdditionalMachine
6) AdditionalConsole
7) Machines[0]=pcl-vm13RMS
8) Machines[1]=pcl-vm14RMS
9) (PreCheckScript=)
10) (PreOnlineScript=)
11) (PostOnlineScript=)
12) (PreOfflineScript=)
13) (OfflineDoneScript=)
14) (FaultScript=)
15) (AutoStartUp=no)
16) (AutoSwitchOver=No)
17) (PreserveState=no)
18) (PersistentFault=0)
19) (ShutdownPriority=)
20) (OnlinePriority=)
21) (StandbyTransitions=)
22) (LicenseToKill=no)
23) (AutoBreak=yes)
24) (AutoBreakMaintMode=no)
25) (HaltFlag=no)
26) (PartialCluster=0)
27) (ScriptTimeout=)
Choose the setting to process:
```

7. Configure attributes for cluster applications from step 8.

Refer to the PRIMECLUSTER Installation and Administration Guide for information on the attributes for cluster applications.

Configure the attributes as shown below:

Attribute	Value
AutoStartUp (Automatically starts cluster applications when the RMS is started.)	Yes
AutoSwitchOver (Automatically switches nodes when a fault occurs in cluster applications.)	- HostFailure - ResourceFailure - ShutDown
PersistentFault (Selects whether to keep the Faulted state of the cluster application after restarting the RMS.)(*1)	0 or 1
OnlinePriority (Selects whether to use the same online nodes as those used before all clusters were restarted or follow the configured order for nodes, when all clusters were restarted.)(*2)	0 or 1
StandbyTransitions (Timing to perform standby state transition.)	- ClearFaultRequest - StartUp - SwitchRequest
HaltFlag (Selects whether to terminate the node forcibly when another error occurs during the Fault process.)	Yes

\*1: If 0 is specified, the Faulted state is automatically canceled when the RMS is started. If 1 is specified, the Faulted state is kept.

\*2: If 0 is specified, cluster applications will become Online in accordance with the node setting order when all clusters are restarted. If 1 is specified, cluster applications will become Online on nodes where the cluster applications were Online before the restart.

8. Select [AutoStartUp].

```
Machines+Basics (appl:consistent)
1) HELP
2) -
3) SAVE+EXIT
4) REMOVE+EXIT
5) AdditionalMachine
6) AdditionalConsole
7) Machines[0]=pcl-vm13RMS
8) Machines[1]=pcl-vm14RMS
9) (PreCheckScript=)
10) (PreOnlineScript=)
11) (PostOnlineScript=)
12) (PreOfflineScript=)
13) (OfflineDoneScript=)
14) (FaultScript=)
15) (AutoStartUp=no)
16) (AutoSwitchOver=No)
17) (PreserveState=no)
18) (PersistentFault=0)
19) (ShutdownPriority=)
20) (OnlinePriority=)
21) (StandbyTransitions=)
22) (LicenseToKill=no)
23) (AutoBreak=yes)
24) (AutoBreakMaintMode=no)
25) (HaltFlag=no)
26) (PartialCluster=0)
27) (ScriptTimeout=)
Choose the setting to process: 15
```

9. Select [yes].

```
1) HELP
2) RETURN
3) yes
4) no
Set the AutoStartUp mode: 3
```

10. Select [AutoSwitchOver].

```
Machines+Basics (appl:consistent)
1) HELP
2) -
3) SAVE+EXIT
4) REMOVE+EXIT
5) AdditionalMachine
6) AdditionalConsole
7) Machines[0]=pcl-vm13RMS
8) Machines[1]=pcl-vm14RMS
9) (PreCheckScript=)
10) (PreOnlineScript=)
11) (PostOnlineScript=)
12) (PreOfflineScript=)
13) (OfflineDoneScript=)
14) (FaultScript=)
15) (AutoStartUp=yes)
16) (AutoSwitchOver=No)
17) (PreserveState=no)
18) (PersistentFault=0)
19) (ShutdownPriority=)
20) (OnlinePriority=)
21) (StandbyTransitions=)
22) (LicenseToKill=no)
23) (AutoBreak=yes)
24) (AutoBreakMaintMode=no)
25) (HaltFlag=no)
26) (PartialCluster=0)
27) (ScriptTimeout=)
Choose the setting to process: 16
```

11. Select [HOSTFAILURE], then [RESOURCEFAILURE], then [SHUTDOWN], and then select [SAVE+RETURN] when the following window is displayed:

```
Set flags for AutoSwitchOver: Currently set: HOSTFAILURE,RESOURCEFAILURE,SHUTDOWN (HRS)
1) HELP
2) -
3) SAVE+RETURN
4) DEFAULT
5) NO(N)
6) NOT:HOSTFAILURE(H)
7) NOT:RESOURCEFAILURE(R)
8) NOT:SHUTDOWN(S)
Choose one of the flags: 3
```

12. Select [PersistentFault].

```
Machines+Basics (appl:consistent)
1) HELP
2) -
3) SAVE+EXIT
4) REMOVE+EXIT
5) AdditionalMachine
6) AdditionalConsole
```

```

7) Machines[0]=pcl-vm13RMS
8) Machines[1]=pcl-vm14RMS
9) (PreCheckScript=)
10) (PreOnlineScript=)
11) (PostOnlineScript=)
12) (PreOfflineScript=)
13) (OfflineDoneScript=)
14) (FaultScript=)
15) (AutoStartUp=yes)
16) (AutoSwitchOver=HostFailure|ResourceFailure|ShutDown)
17) (PreserveState=no)
18) (PersistentFault=0)
19) (ShutdownPriority=)
20) (OnlinePriority=)
21) (StandbyTransitions=)
22) (LicenseToKill=no)
23) (AutoBreak=yes)
24) (AutoBreakMaintMode=no)
25) (HaltFlag=no)
26) (PartialCluster=0)
27) (ScriptTimeout=)
Choose the setting to process: 18

```

13. Select [0] or [1] (the example below selects [1]).

```

1) HELP
2) RETURN
3) 0
4) 1
Enable persistent fault feature for this application: 4

```

14. Select [OnlinePriority].

```

Machines+Basics (appl:consistent)
1) HELP
2) -
3) SAVE+EXIT
4) REMOVE+EXIT
5) AdditionalMachine
6) AdditionalConsole
7) Machines[0]=pcl-vm13RMS
8) Machines[1]=pcl-vm14RMS
9) (PreCheckScript=)
10) (PreOnlineScript=)
11) (PostOnlineScript=)
12) (PreOfflineScript=)
13) (OfflineDoneScript=)
14) (FaultScript=)
15) (AutoStartUp=yes)
16) (AutoSwitchOver=HostFailure|ResourceFailure|ShutDown)
17) (PreserveState=no)
18) (PersistentFault=1)
19) (ShutdownPriority=)
20) (OnlinePriority=)
21) (StandbyTransitions=)
22) (LicenseToKill=no)
23) (AutoBreak=yes)
24) (AutoBreakMaintMode=no)
25) (HaltFlag=no)
26) (PartialCluster=0)
27) (ScriptTimeout=)
Choose the setting to process: 20

```



15. Select [0] or [1] (the example below selects [1]).

```
1) HELP
2) RETURN
3) 0
4) 1
Enable Online Priority (Active Standby) feature for this application: 4
```

16. Select [StandbyTransitions].

```
Machines+Basics (appl:consistent)
1) HELP
2) -
3) SAVE+EXIT
4) REMOVE+EXIT
5) AdditionalMachine
6) AdditionalConsole
7) Machines[0]=pcl-vm13RMS
8) Machines[1]=pcl-vm14RMS
9) (PreCheckScript=)
10) (PreOnlineScript=)
11) (PostOnlineScript=)
12) (PreOfflineScript=)
13) (OfflineDoneScript=)
14) (FaultScript=)
15) (AutoStartUp=yes)
16) (AutoSwitchOver=HostFailure|ResourceFailure|ShutDown)
17) (PreserveState=no)
18) (PersistentFault=1)
19) (ShutdownPriority=)
20) (OnlinePriority=1)
21) (StandbyTransitions=)
22) (LicenseToKill=no)
23) (AutoBreak=yes)
24) (AutoBreakMaintMode=no)
25) (HaltFlag=no)
26) (PartialCluster=0)
27) (ScriptTimeout=)
Choose the setting to process: 21
```

17. Select [CLEARFAULTREQUEST], then [STARTUP], then [SWITCHREQUEST], and then select [SAVE+RETURN] when the following window is displayed:

```
Set flags for StandbyTransitions: Currently set: ClearFaultReqest,StartUp,SwitchRequest (CTW)
1) HELP
2) -
3) SAVE+RETURN
4) NO(N)
5) NOT: CLEARFAULTREQUEST(C)
6) NOT: STARTUP(T)
7) NOT: SWITCHREQUEST(W)
Choose one of the flags: 3
```

18. Select [HaltFlag].

```
Machines+Basics (appl:consistent)
1) HELP
2) -
3) SAVE+EXIT
4) REMOVE+EXIT
5) AdditionalMachine
6) AdditionalConsole
7) Machines[0]=pcl-vm13RMS
8) Machines[1]=pcl-vm14RMS
9) (PreCheckScript=)
10) (PreOnlineScript=)
11) (PostOnlineScript=)
```

```

12) (PreOfflineScript=)
13) (OfflineDoneScript=)
14) (FaultScript=)
15) (AutoStartUp=yes)
16) (AutoSwitchOver=HostFailure|ResourceFailure|ShutDown)
17) (PreserveState=no)
18) (PersistentFault=1)
19) (ShutdownPriority=)
20) (OnlinePriority=1)
21) (StandbyTransitions=ClearFaultRequest|StartUp|SwitchRequest)
22) (LicenseToKill=no)
23) (AutoBreak=yes)
24) (AutoBreakMaintMode=no)
25) (HaltFlag=no)
26) (PartialCluster=0)
27) (ScriptTimeout=)
Choose the setting to process: 25

```

19. Select [yes].

```

1) HELP
2) RETURN
3) yes
4) no
Set the Halt mode: 3

```

20. Ensure that all attributes are displayed as set in the previous steps, and then select [SAVE+EXIT].

```

Machines+Basics (appl:consistent)
1) HELP
2) -
3) SAVE+EXIT
4) REMOVE+EXIT
5) AdditionalMachine
6) AdditionalConsole
7) Machines[0]=pcl-vm13RMS
8) Machines[1]=pcl-vm14RMS
9) (PreCheckScript=)
10) (PreOnlineScript=)
11) (PostOnlineScript=)
12) (PreOfflineScript=)
13) (OfflineDoneScript=)
14) (FaultScript=)
15) (AutoStartUp=yes)
16) (AutoSwitchOver=HostFailure|ResourceFailure|ShutDown)
17) (PreserveState=no)
18) (PersistentFault=1)
19) (ShutdownPriority=)
20) (OnlinePriority=1)
21) (StandbyTransitions=ClearFaultRequest|StartUp|SwitchRequest)
22) (LicenseToKill=no)
23) (AutoBreak=yes)
24) (AutoBreakMaintMode=no)
25) (HaltFlag=yes)
26) (PartialCluster=0)
27) (ScriptTimeout=)
Choose the setting to process: 3

```

21. The following window will be displayed:

```

Settings of turnkey wizard "STANDBY" (APPL:not yet consistent)
1) HELP                                10) Enterprise-Postgres(-)
2) -                                    11) Symfoware(-)
3) SAVE+EXIT                            12) Procedure: SystemState3(-)

```

```

4) -
5) ApplicationName=APPl
6) Machines+Basics(appl)
7) CommandLines(-)
8) Procedure:Application(-)
9) Procedure:BasicApplication(-)
Choose the setting to process:

13) Procedure:SystemState2(-)
14) Gls:Global-Link-Services(-)
15) IpAddresses(-)
16) LocalFileSystems(-)
17) Gds:Global-Disk-Services(-)

```

## A.1.3 Creating Gds Resources

### 1. Select [Gds:Global-Disk-Services].

```

Settings of turnkey wizard "STANDBY" (APPl:not yet consistent)
1) HELP
2) -
3) SAVE+EXIT
4) -
5) ApplicationName=APPl
6) Machines+Basics(appl)
7) CommandLines(-)
8) Procedure:Application(-)
9) Procedure:BasicApplication(-)
Choose the setting to process:17

10) Enterprise-Postgres(-)
11) Symfoware(-)
12) Procedure:SystemState3(-)
13) Procedure:SystemState2(-)
14) Gls:Global-Link-Services(-)
15) IpAddresses(-)
16) LocalFileSystems(-)
17) Gds:Global-Disk-Services(-)

```

### 2. Select [AdditionalDiskClass].

```

Volume management (Gds_APPl:not yet consistent)
1) HELP
2) -
3) SAVE+EXIT
Choose the setting to process: 5

4) REMOVE+EXIT
5) AdditionalDiskClass
6) (ClassNameFilter=)

7) (StandbySupport=no)
8) (AutoRecover=no)
9) (Timeout=1800)

```

### 3. Select a class.

```

1) HELP
2) RETURN
3) FREECHOICE
4) class0001
Choose the disk class: 4

```

### 4. Follow the steps above for all shared disk classes to be used by all file systems to be registered in the cluster application. When doing so, configure the MONITORONLY attribute as shown in the following table:

Purpose of file system	MONITORONLY attribute
Data storage destination directory	No
Backup data storage destination directory	Yes
Table space	No
Transaction log storage destination directory	No

To set the MONITORONLY attribute to "Yes", select "MONITORONLY".

```

Set a flag for the disk class: class0001
Currently set:
1) HELP
2) -
5) MONITORONLY(M)

```

```
3) SAVE+RETURN
4) DEFAULT
Choose additionally one of the flags:
```

5. To configure the disk class, select [StandbySupport] and specify "no" - this means that upon failure, the disk will switch according to the purpose of the class.

```
Volume management (Gds_APP1:consistent)
1) HELP                                6) DiskClasses[0]=class0001
2) -                                  7) (ClassNameFilter=)
3) SAVE+EXIT                          8) (StandbySupport=no)
4) REMOVE+EXIT                      9) (AutoRecover=no)
5) AdditionalDiskClass              10) (Timeout=1800)
Choose the setting to process: 8
```

6. Select [SAVE+EXIT].

```
Volume management (Gds_APP1:consistent)
1) HELP                                6) DiskClasses[0]=class0001
2) -                                  7) (ClassNameFilter=)
3) SAVE+EXIT                          8) (StandbySupport=no)
4) REMOVE+EXIT                      9) (AutoRecover=no)
5) AdditionalDiskClass              10) (Timeout=1800)
Choose the setting to process: 3
```

## A.1.4 Creating Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Resources

1. Select [Enterprise-Postgres].

```
Settings of turnkey wizard "STANDBY" (APP1:consistent)
1) HELP                                10) Enterprise-Postgres(-)
2) -                                  11) Symfoware(-)
3) SAVE+EXIT                          12) Procedure:SystemState3(-)
4) -                                  13) Procedure:SystemState2(-)
5) ApplicationName=APP1              14) Gls:Global-Link-Services(-)
6) Machines+Basics(appl)            15) IpAddresses(-)
7) CommandLines(-)                  16) LocalFileSystems(-)
8) Procedure:Application(-)          17) Gds:Global-Disk-Services(Gds_APP1)
9) Procedure:BasicApplication(-)
Choose the setting to process:10
```

2. Select [AdditionalResource].

```
Resource (Fsep_APP1:not yet consistent)
1) HELP                                4) REMOVE+EXIT
2) -                                  5) AdditionalResource
3) SAVE+EXIT
Choose the setting to process: 5
```

3. Select the database cluster name specified in the pgx\_pclsrc command in ["2.8 Registering Resource Information for the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Database Cluster"](#).

```
1) HELP
2) RETURN
3) FREECHOICE
4) inst1
Choose the resource: 4
```

4. Select [SAVE+EXIT].

```
Resource (Fsep_APP1:consistent)
1) HELP                                6) ResourceName[0]=inst1
2) -                                  7) Flags[0]=T900
```

3) SAVE+EXIT	8) OnlineTimeout[0]=3600
4) REMOVE+EXIT	9) OfflineTimeout[0]=1800
5) AdditionalResource	10) FaultScript[0]=''

Choose the setting to process: 3

## A.1.5 Creating GLs or Takeover Network Resources

Create GLs or takeover network resources to use takeover network resources. This section provides an example for configuring GL resources.



See

- Refer to the PRIMECLUSTER Installation and Administration Guide for information on creating takeover network resources.
- Refer to the PRIMECLUSTER Installation and Administration Guide for information on creating GL resources.

1. Select [GLs:Global-Link-Services].

```
Settings of turnkey wizard "STANDBY" (APP1:consistent)
1) HELP
2) -
3) SAVE+EXIT
4) -
5) ApplicationName=APP1
6) Machines+Basics(app1)
7) CommandLines(-)
8) Procedure:Application(-)
9) Procedure:BasicApplication(-)
Choose the setting to process:14
10) Enterprise-Postgres(Fsep_APP1)
11) Symfoware(-)
12) Procedure:SystemState3(-)
13) Procedure:SystemState2(-)
14) GLs:Global-Link-Services(-)
15) IpAddresses(-)
16) LocalFileSystems(-)
17) Gds:Global-Disk-Services(Gds_APP1)
```

2. Select [AdditionalTakeoverIpAddress].

```
GLs (GLs_APP1:not yet consistent)
1) HELP
2) -
3) SAVE+EXIT
Choose the setting to process: 5
4) REMOVE+EXIT
5) AdditionalTakeoverIpAddress
6) (Timeout=60)
```

3. Select a takeover IP.

```
1) HELP
2) RETURN
3) FREECHOICE
4) takeoverip
Choose a takeover IP address for GLs: 4
```

4. Select [SAVE+RETURN].

```
Set a flag for takeover IP address: takeoverip
Currently set:
1) HELP
2) -
3) SAVE+RETURN
4) DEFAULT
Choose additionally one of the flags: 3
5) AUTORECOVER(A)
```

5. Select [SAVE+EXIT].

```
GLs (GLs_APP1:consistent)
1) HELP
2) -
3) SAVE+EXIT
4) AdditionalTakeoverIpAddress
5) TakeoverIpAddress[0]=N,takeoverip
6) (Timeout=60)
```

```
4) REMOVE+EXIT
Choose the setting to process: 3
```

## A.1.6 Creating Fsystem Resources

1. Select [LocalFileSystem].

```
Settings of turnkey wizard "STANDBY" (APPl:consistent)
1) HELP                                10) Enterprise-Postgres(Fsep_APP1)
2) -                                  11) Symfoware(-)
3) SAVE+EXIT                          12) Procedure:SystemState3(-)
4) -                                  13) Procedure:SystemState2(-)
5) ApplicationName=APPl               14) Gls:Global-Link-Services(Gls_APP1)
6) Machines+Basics(appl)             15) IpAddresses(-)
7) CommandLines(-)                  16) LocalFileSystems(-)
8) Procedure:Application(-)          17) Gds:Global-Disk-Services(Gds_APP1)
9) Procedure:BasicApplication(-)
Choose the setting to process:16
```

2. Select [AdditionalMountPoint].

```
File systems (Lfs_APP1:not yet consistent)
1) HELP                                4) REMOVE+EXIT                    7) (Timeout=180)
2) -                                  5) AdditionalMountPoint
3) SAVE+EXIT                          6) (Filter=)
Choose the setting to process: 5
```

3. Select the mount point of the file system.

For all mount points assigned to the data storage destination directory, the backup data storage destination directory, the tablespace directory, and the transaction log storage destination directory, repeat Steps 3 to 5. Additionally, to register multiple file systems for monitoring, repeat Steps 3 to 5 before proceeding to configure settings for file systems used for the job.

```
1) HELP                                5) /mnt/swdsk1
2) RETURN                              6) /mnt/swdsk2
3) FREECHOICE
4) ALL
Choose a mount point: 5
```

4. Configure the MONITORONLY attribute.

Purpose of the file system	MONITORONLY attribute
Data storage destination directory	No
Backup data storage destination directory	Yes
Table space	No
Transaction log storage destination directory	No

Select MONITORONLY to specify Yes to the MONITORONLY attribute.

```
Set flags for mount point: /mnt/swdsk1 Currently set: LOCAL,AUTORECOVER (LA)
1) HELP                                4) DEFAULT                          7) SHARE(S)
2) -                                  5) SYNC(Y)                        8) MONITORONLY(M)
3) SAVE+RETURN                       6) NOT:AUTORECOVER(A)
Choose one of the flags: 8
```

5. Select [SAVE+RETURN].

```
Set flags for mount point: /mnt/swdsk1 Currently set:
LOCAL,AUTORECOVER, MONITORONLY (LAM)
1) HELP                      4) DEFAULT                7) SHARE(S)
2) -                        5) SYNC(Y)                8) NOT:MONITORONLY(M)
3) SAVE+RETURN              6) NOT:AUTORECOVER(A)
Choose one of the flags: 3
```

6. After configuring all mount points, select [SAVE+EXIT].

```
File systems (Lfs_APP1:consistent)
1) HELP                      6) MountPoints[0]=LA:/mnt/monitor1
2) -                        7) MountPoints[1]=LA:/mnt/monitor2
3) SAVE+EXIT                8) (Filter=)
4) REMOVE+EXIT              9) (Timeout=180)
5) AdditionalMountPoint
Choose the setting to process: 3
```

7. Select [SAVE+EXIT].

```
Settings of turnkey wizard "STANDBY" (APP1:consistent)
1) HELP                      10) Enterprise-Postgres(Fsep_APP1)
2) -                        11) Symfoware(-)
3) SAVE+EXIT                12) Procedure:SystemState3(-)
4) -                        13) Procedure:SystemState2(-)
5) ApplicationName=APP1     14) Gls:Global-Link-Services(Gls_APP1)
6) Machines+Basics(appl)    15) IpAddresses(-)
7) CommandLines(-)         16) LocalFileSystems(Lfs_APP1)
8) Procedure:Application(-) 17) Gds:Global-Disk-Services(Gds_APP1)
9) Procedure:BasicApplication(-)
Choose the setting to process:3
```



See

Refer to the PRIMECLUSTER Installation and Administration Guide for information on creating Fsystem resources.

## A.1.7 Creating Resources and Finalizing Cluster Application Creation

1. Select [Configuration-Generate].

```
pcl-vm13: Main configuration menu, current configuration: config
No RMS active in the cluster
1) HELP                      10) Configuration-Remove
2) QUIT                     11) Configuration-Freeze
3) Application-Create        12) Configuration-Thaw
4) Application-Edit          13) Configuration-Edit-Global-Settings
5) Application-Remove        14) Configuration-Consistency-Report
6) Application-Clone         15) Configuration-ScriptExecution
7) Configuration-Generate    16) RMS-CreateMachine
8) Configuration-Activate    17) RMS-RemoveMachine
9) Configuration-Copy
Choose an action: 7
```

2. Select [Configuration-Activate].

If processing is successful, "The activation has finished successfully." will be displayed. If this message is not displayed, there is an issue with the information or configuration that was set. In such a case, review the changed information.

```
pcl-vm13: Main configuration menu, current configuration: config
No RMS active in the cluster
1) HELP                      10) Configuration-Remove
```

```

2) QUIT
3) Application-Create
4) Application-Edit
5) Application-Remove
6) Application-Clone
7) Configuration-Generate
8) Configuration-Activate
9) Configuration-Copy
11) Configuration-Freeze
12) Configuration-Thaw
13) Configuration-Edit-Global-Settings
14) Configuration-Consistency-Report
15) Configuration-ScriptExecution
16) RMS-CreateMachine
17) RMS-RemoveMachine
Choose an action: 8

```

3. Select [QUIT].

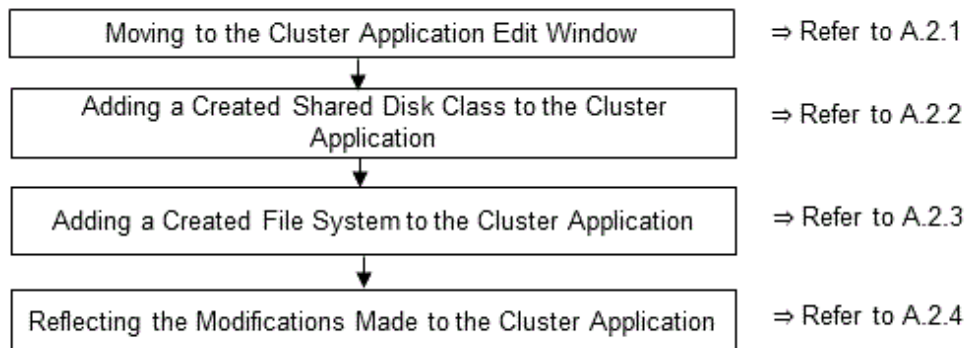
```

pcl-vm13: Main configuration menu, current configuration: config
No RMS active in the cluster
1) HELP
2) QUIT
3) Application-Create
4) Application-Edit
5) Application-Remove
6) Application-Clone
7) Configuration-Generate
8) Configuration-Activate
9) Configuration-Copy
10) Configuration-Remove
11) Configuration-Freeze
12) Configuration-Thaw
13) Configuration-Edit-Global-Settings
14) Configuration-Consistency-Report
15) Configuration-ScriptExecution
16) RMS-CreateMachine
17) RMS-RemoveMachine
Choose an action: 2

```

## A.2 Modifying Cluster Applications

Follow the steps shown below to add a new file system to a cluster application. Refer to the PRIMECLUSTER Installation and Administration Guide for information on other modifications on cluster applications. Stop the RMS on all nodes when modifying cluster applications.



### A.2.1 Moving to the Cluster Application Edit Window

1. Execute the hvw command.

```
# /opt/SMAW/SMAWRrms/bin/hvw
```

2. Select [Application-Edit].

```

pcl-vm13: Main configuration menu, current configuration: config
No RMS active in the cluster
1) HELP
2) QUIT
3) Application-Create
4) Application-Edit
5) Application-Remove
6) Application-Clone
10) Configuration-Remove
11) Configuration-Freeze
12) Configuration-Thaw
13) Configuration-Edit-Global-Settings
14) Configuration-Consistency-Report
15) Configuration-ScriptExecution

```



```

7) Configuration-Generate          16) RMS-CreateMachine
8) Configuration-Activate          17) RMS-RemoveMachine
9) Configuration-Copy
Choose an action: 4

```

3. Select the user application to be used.

```

Edit: Application selection menu (restricted):
1) HELP
2) QUIT
3) RETURN
4) OPTIONS
5) APP1
Application Name: 5

```

## A.2.2 Adding a Created Shared Disk Class to the Cluster Application

1. Select [Gds:Global-Disk-Services].

```

Settings of turnkey wizard "STANDBY" (APP1:consistent)
1) HELP                                10) Enterprise-Postgres(Fsep_APP1)
2) READONLY                           11) Symfoware(-)
3) SAVE+EXIT                           12) Procedure:SystemState3(-)
4) -                                   13) Procedure:SystemState2(-)
5) ApplicationName=APP1                14) Gls:Global-Link-Services(Gls_APP1)
6) Machines+Basics(appl)              15) IpAddresses(-)
7) CommandLines(-)                    16) LocalFileSystems(Lfs_APP1)
8) Procedure:Application(-)            17) Gds:Global-Disk-Services(Gds_APP1)
9) Procedure:BasicApplication(-)
Choose the setting to process:17

```

2. Select [AdditionalDiskClass].

```

Volume management (Gds_APP1:consistent)
1) HELP                                6) DiskClasses[0]=class0001
2) NO-SAVE+EXIT                        7) (ClassNameFilter=)
3) SAVE+EXIT                           8) (StandbySupport=no)
4) REMOVE+EXIT                         9) (AutoRecover=no)
5) AdditionalDiskClass                 10) (Timeout=1800)
Choose the setting to process: 5

```

3. Select the created class.

```

1) HELP
2) RETURN
3) FREECHOICE
4) class0001
5) class0002
Choose the disk class: 5

```

4. Select [SAVE+EXIT].

```

Volume management (Gds_APP1:consistent)
1) HELP                                7) DiskClasses[1]=class0002
2) NO-SAVE+EXIT                        8) (ClassNameFilter=)
3) SAVE+EXIT                           9) (StandbySupport=no)
4) REMOVE+EXIT                         10) (AutoRecover=no)
5) AdditionalDiskClass                 11) (Timeout=1800)
6) DiskClasses[0]=class0001
Choose the setting to process: 3

```

5. Select [SAVE+EXIT] to quit or [LocalFileSystems] to add local file systems.

```
Settings of turnkey wizard "STANDBY" (APP1:consistent)
1) HELP
2) -
3) SAVE+EXIT
4) -
5) ApplicationName=APP1
6) Machines+Basics(appl)
7) CommandLines(-)
8) Procedure:Application(-)
9) Procedure:BasicApplication(-)
10) Enterprise-Postgres(Fsep_APP1)
11) Symfoware(-)
12) Procedure:SystemState3(-)
13) Procedure:SystemState2(-)
14) Gls:Global-Link-Services(Gls_APP1)
15) IpAddresses(-)
16) LocalFileSystems(Lfs_APP1)
17) Gds:Global-Disk-Services(Gds_APP1)
Choose the setting to process:
```

## A.2.3 Adding a Created File System to the Cluster Application

1. Select [LocalFileSystems].

```
Settings of turnkey wizard "STANDBY" (APP1:consistent)
1) HELP
2) -
3) SAVE+EXIT
4) -
5) ApplicationName=APP1
6) Machines+Basics(appl)
7) CommandLines(-)
8) Procedure:Application(-)
9) Procedure:BasicApplication(-)
10) Enterprise-Postgres(Fsep_APP1)
11) Symfoware(-)
12) Procedure:SystemState3(-)
13) Procedure:SystemState2(-)
14) Gls:Global-Link-Services(Gls_APP1)
15) IpAddresses(-)
16) LocalFileSystems(Lfs_APP1)
17) Gds:Global-Disk-Services(Gds_APP1)
Choose the setting to process:16
```

2. Select [AdditionalMountPoint].

```
File systems (Lfs_APP1:consistent)
1) HELP
2) NO-SAVE+EXIT
3) SAVE+EXIT
4) REMOVE+EXIT
5) AdditionalMountPoint
6) MountPoints[0]=LA:/mnt/swdsk1
7) MountPoints[1]=LA:/mnt/swdsk2
8) (Filter=)
9) (Timeout=180)
Choose the setting to process: 5
```

3. After registering the file systems to be used, select [SAVE+EXIT].

```
File systems (Lfs_APP1:consistent)
1) HELP
2) NO-SAVE+EXIT
3) SAVE+EXIT
4) REMOVE+EXIT
5) AdditionalMountPoint
6) MountPoints[0]= LA:/mnt/swdsk1
7) MountPoints[1]=LA:/mnt/swdsk2
8) MountPoints[2]=LA:/mnt/swdsk3
9) (Filter=)
10) (Timeout=180)
Choose the setting to process:
```

## A.2.4 Reflecting Modifications Made to the Cluster Application

1. Select [SAVE+EXIT].

```
Settings of turnkey wizard "STANDBY" (APP1:consistent)
1) HELP
2) -
3) SAVE+EXIT
4) -
10) Enterprise-Postgres(Fsep_APP1)
11) Symfoware(-)
12) Procedure:SystemState3(-)
13) Procedure:SystemState2(-)
```

```

5) ApplicationName=APPl          14) Gls:Global-Link-Services(Gls_APPl)
6) Machines+Basics(appl)        15) IpAddresses(-)
7) CommandLines(-)              16) LocalFileSystems(Lfs_APPl)
8) Procedure:Application(-)      17) Gds:Global-Disk-Services(Gds_APPl)
9) Procedure:BasicApplication(-)
Choose the setting to process:3

```

## 2. Select [RETURN].

```

Edit: Application selection menu (restricted):
1) HELP
2) QUIT
3) RETURN
4) OPTIONS
5) APPl
Application Name: 3

```

## 3. Select [Configuration-Generate].

```

pcl-vm13: Main configuration menu, current configuration: config
No RMS active in the cluster
1) HELP                      10) Configuration-Remove
2) QUIT                      11) Configuration-Freeze
3) Application-Create        12) Configuration-Thaw
4) Application-Edit          13) Configuration-Edit-Global-Settings
5) Application-Remove        14) Configuration-Consistency-Report
6) Application-Clone         15) Configuration-ScriptExecution
7) Configuration-Generate    16) RMS-CreateMachine
8) Configuration-Activate    17) RMS-RemoveMachine
9) Configuration-Copy
Choose an action: 7

```

## 4. Select [Configuration-Activate].

If processing is successful, "The activation has finished successfully." will be displayed. If this message is not displayed, there is an issue with the information or configuration that was set. In such a case, review the changed information.

```

pcl-vm13: Main configuration menu, current configuration: config
No RMS active in the cluster
1) HELP                      10) Configuration-Remove
2) QUIT                      11) Configuration-Freeze
3) Application-Create        12) Configuration-Thaw
4) Application-Edit          13) Configuration-Edit-Global-Settings
5) Application-Remove        14) Configuration-Consistency-Report
6) Application-Clone         15) Configuration-ScriptExecution
7) Configuration-Generate    16) RMS-CreateMachine
8) Configuration-Activate    17) RMS-RemoveMachine
9) Configuration-Copy
Choose an action: 8

```

## 5. Select [QUIT].

```

pcl-vm13: Main configuration menu, current configuration: config
No RMS active in the cluster
1) HELP                      10) Configuration-Remove
2) QUIT                      11) Configuration-Freeze
3) Application-Create        12) Configuration-Thaw
4) Application-Edit          13) Configuration-Edit-Global-Settings
5) Application-Remove        14) Configuration-Consistency-Report
6) Application-Clone         15) Configuration-ScriptExecution
7) Configuration-Generate    16) RMS-CreateMachine
8) Configuration-Activate    17) RMS-RemoveMachine
9) Configuration-Copy
Choose an action: 2

```

# Appendix B Command Reference

This appendix explains for details in command.

## B.1 pgx\_pclrsc

### Name

`pgx_pclrsc` -- Register, unregister, or display Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres database cluster with PRIMECLUSTER as resource of PRIMECLUSTER.

### Synopsis

```
pgx_pclrsc -a -c name -u osuser -D directory -w directory
              -n nodes [options...]
pgx_pclrsc -d -c name
pgx_pclrsc -p [-c name]
```

### Description

`pgx_pclrsc` is an utility for registering or unregistering Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres database cluster with PRIMECLUSTER, or displaying settings of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres database cluster registered with PRIMECLUSTER. Execute the command on a member node of the cluster. Only the super user(root) can execute this command.

### Options

`-a`

`--add`

Register the specified database cluster with PRIMECLUSTER. If the specified database cluster has already been registered with PRIMECLUSTER, then terminate abnormally.

`-c name`

`--db-cluster-name=name`

Specify database cluster name. *name* is case-sensitive, and must be within 16 bytes, and an initial letter must be ascii alphabet, and following letters must be ascii alphabet or ascii digit or underscore(\_).

`-d`

`--delete`

Unregister the specified database cluster from PRIMECLUSTER.

`-D directory`

`--pgdata=directory`

Specify an absolute path of data directory.

`--db-user=name`

Specify a database super user. Default is the user specified with '-u'.

`-n nodes`

`--member-nodes=nodes`

Specify names of all member nodes of the cluster. Specify a cluster node name with suffix "RMS" to the name. Separate names with comma(.). (e.g. -n node1RMS,node2RMS)

`-p`

`--print`

Print a list of database clusters registered with PRIMECLUSTER. If -c option is specified, then print settings of the database cluster.

**--response-timeout=seconds**

Specify timeout of the query for health check. It's used with a count specified with '--timeout-retry-num'. The query is "SELECT 1" to the database "template1". If '0', wait infinitely. (default: '0')

**--timeout-retry-count=count**

Specify a limit count of retrying query when timeout is occurred. If retry counter is over the limit, then PRIMECLUSTER considers status of the database server as FAULT. If a query doesn't timeout once, retry counter is reset. (default: '6')

**--trace-max-file-size=size**

Specify max size(KB) of trace file. (default: '10240')

**-u osuser**

**--os-user=osuser**

Specify an OS user who can start/stop Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres database server.

**-w directory**

**--work-dir=directory**

Specify a directory for temporary data and trace files. It's used for starting, stopping or checking Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres database server. If the directory doesn't exist, then create it. Owner of the directory created by the command is set to the user specified with '-u'. Permission of the directory created by the command is set to 0700.

**--watch-interval=seconds**

Specify an interval. It's used for the amount of time between health checks. (default: '3')

## Diagnostics

0 : On success

otherwise : On error

## Notes

Before unregistering a resource, stop RMS of PRIMECLUSTER.

## Example

The simplest example of registering a resource.

```
# pgx_pclrsc -a -c inst1 -u postgres -D /mnt/swdsk1/pgdata -w /var/tmp/work -n node1RMS,node2RMS
```

## Appendix C Failover Operation in Streaming Replication

By combining streaming replication and failover operation, continuity of database operations can be ensured.

The following are additional notes on streaming replication when failover operation is applied to the primary server, standby server, or both.



### Note

- Please refer to the relevant chapters and sections of this manual and this appendix when constructing the environment and performing operational operations.
- In this appendix, a group of nodes or a single server connected by streaming replication is referred to as a "primary server" or "standby server".  
For example, to indicate a specific node, use "the active node of the primary server" or simply "standby server" for a stand-alone server.

## C.1 Possible Cluster Operation

### For failover operation of primary server

Same as "[1.1 Definition of Failover Operation](#)"

### For failover operation of standby server

As with the primary server, for example, if the operational system goes down, the standby system takes over the contents of the shared disk and becomes the operational system, and can continue as a standby server. Also, applications (reference operations) that you want to run on the active system of the database can be switched in conjunction with the database. Cascaded standby operation, in which replication from one standby server to another is performed, is also possible.

## C.2 Overview of Failover Operation

### C.2.1 Supported Operational Forms and System Configurations

The following failover operation and system configurations are supported

#### Operational form of streaming replication

Failover operation is available for the following servers configured for streaming replication.

- Primary server for asynchronous replication only
- Standby server for asynchronous replication
- Cascaded standby server (cascaded replication configuration)



### Note

- As the reason why the synchronous replication isn't supported, if the communication path between servers is disconnected or the standby server goes down, log transfer from the primary server to the standby server will not be possible, and operations running on the primary server instance will stop. Therefore, to ensure business continuity on the primary server, synchronous replication is not supported. However, in an environment where synchronous replication is performed between servers where neither the replication source nor the replication destination is a failover operation, there is no problem in adding a server with failover operation as an additional asynchronous standby server.
- Servers that perform failover operation cannot be monitored by Mirroring Controller.
- Please refer to the "PostgreSQL Documentation" for information on how to set up and use streaming replication. This section describes the special considerations for combining streaming replication and failover operation.
- The connection status of streaming replication is not monitored by PRIMECLUSTER.

Even if streaming replication is disconnected, database operations can continue on the standby server. However, if the disconnection is prolonged, the database will not be up-to-date, so please monitor the connection status and make decisions to continue operations as necessary.

.....

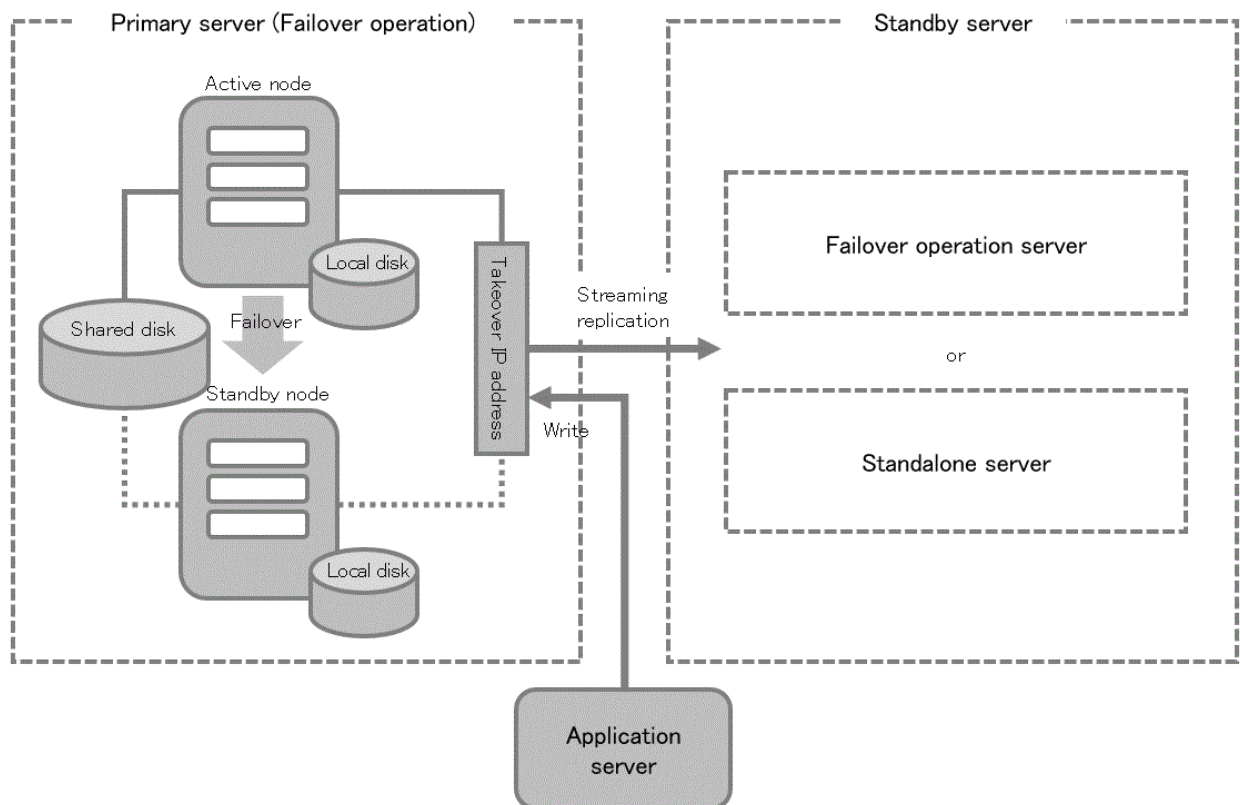
## Failover operation functions and operational forms

Failover operation on the primary or standby server supports 1:1 operational standby as well as standby functionality. Cluster applications are also created on a per-primary or per-standby server basis.

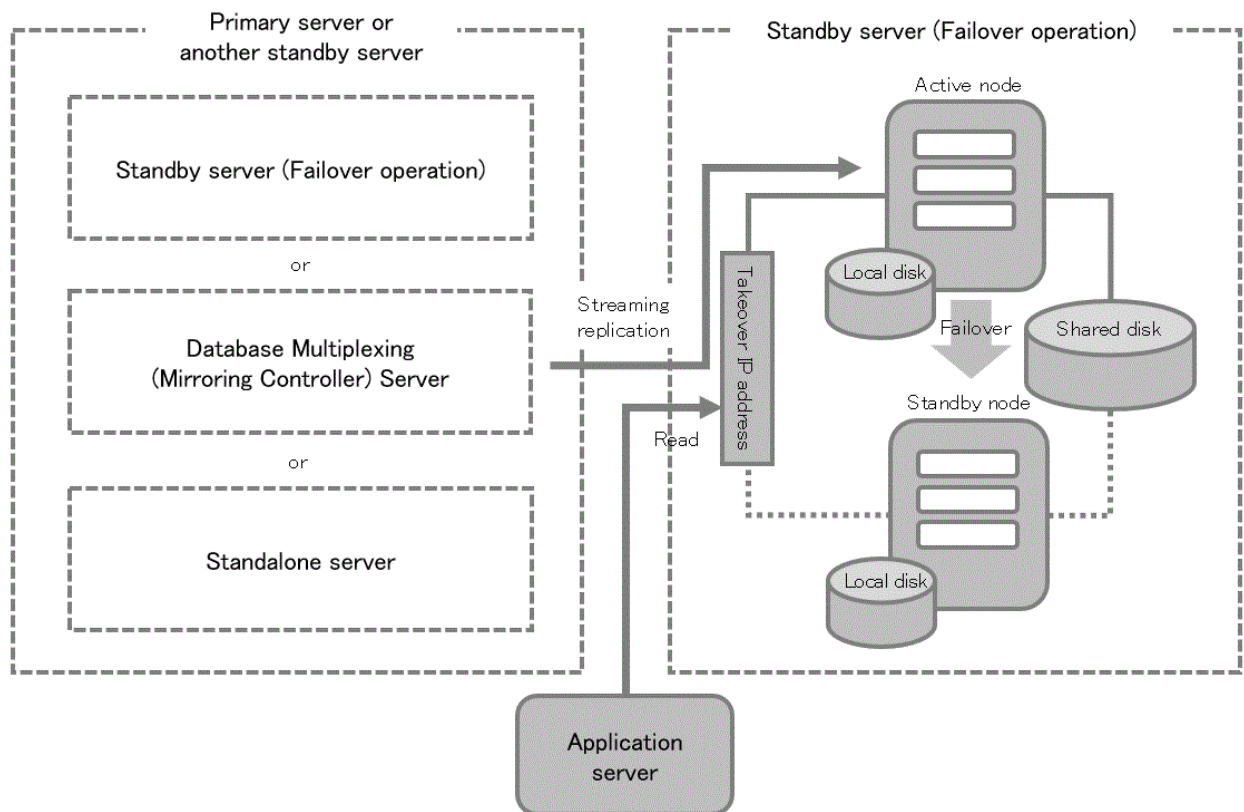
## System configuration for failover operation

The following figure shows the configuration for failover operation of the primary or standby server. The primary or standby server has a file system on a shared disk that is mounted only on the active system node.

- Configuration diagram for failover operation of the primary server



- Configuration diagram for failover operation of standby server



#### Point

The network for connections from user applications accessing the database (business network) and the network for streaming replication connections from the standby server (log transfer network) can be located on different networks.

### Enterprise Postgres resources and locations

The resources and locations of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres on the standby and primary servers are the same as in "[1.2 System Configuration of Failover Operation](#)".

#### Point

The directory for storing backup data on the standby server is not required if the standby server is not promoted to the primary server.

#### See

See "HA Cluster without Database Multiplexing Operation" in the Operations Guide for keystore file placement.

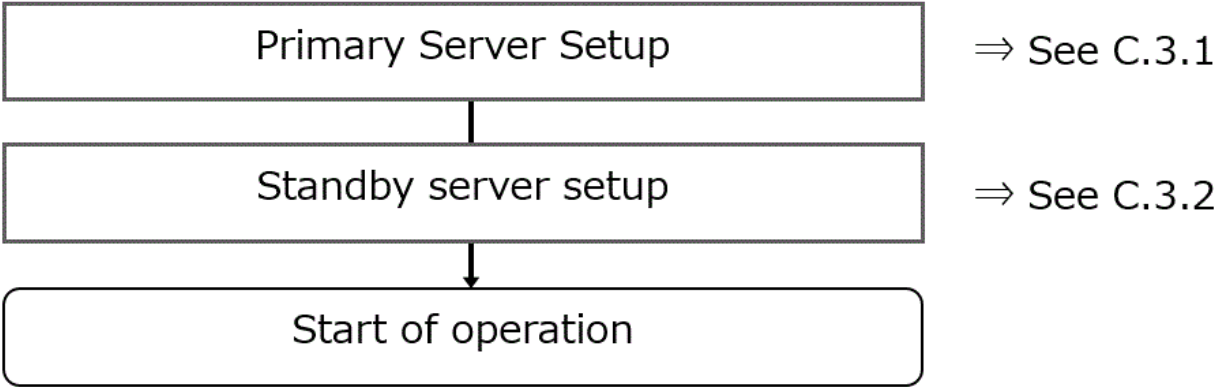
## C.3 Set up failover operation

Follow the steps below for setup.

This procedure is described for failover operation on both the primary and standby servers.



If you want to perform the failover operation only one of the servers, please refer to the "PostgreSQL Documentation" and Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres manual for the server that will not be failovering. For the server that will perform failover operation, refer to the setup procedure for the appropriate server.



### C.3.1 Primary Server Setup

Set up the primary server by referring to "[Chapter 2 Setting Up Failover Operation](#)"

However, additional precautions and steps are required in "[2.2 Configuring PRIMECLUSTER](#)", "[2.7 Creating a Database Cluster](#)" and "[2.11 Creating a Cluster Application](#)" have additional precautions and required steps.

#### Notes on GLS settings

Regarding the GLS settings performed in "[2.2 Configuring PRIMECLUSTER](#)", if the business network and log transfer network are separate networks, GLS settings are required for both networks.

#### Point

When a communication path set in the GLS is registered to a cluster, the default setting is to switch clusters in the event of a transmission path failure. While this is a desirable setting for the business network, the default setting for the log transfer network is not essential for business continuity and may result in unnecessary switching.

To avoid this problem, it is recommended that the GLS be configured not to switch clusters in the event of a transmission path failure for the log transfer network.

#### See

Please refer to the GLS manual for information on how to set up the cluster switching not to be performed in the event of a transmission path failure.

#### Note

If the setting is not to switch over in the event of a transmission path failure in the log transfer network, operations will continue with streaming replication suspended in the event of a failure in all active log transfer network. To resume streaming replication, it is necessary to identify the abnormalities and take manual measures (e.g., switching clusters, repairing failed routes, etc.).

#### Additional steps when creating a database cluster

The following additional steps are required for "[2.7 Creating a Database Cluster](#)".

- Configuration of pg\_hba.conf file

- Configuration of postgresql.conf file

#### Configuration of pg\_hba.conf file

Add the following entry to the pg\_hba.conf file to authenticate connections from the standby server

#	TYPE	DATABASE	USER	ADDRESS	METHOD
host		replication	User name	Standby server address	Authentication
method					

For user name, specify the user name to connect from the standby server. Also, for Standby server address, specify the IP address to connect to the log transfer network.

The above example is for only one standby server. Please add entries for all servers you may connect as standby servers.

#### Point

##### When setting an authentication method other than trust authentication

When connecting from the standby server as the instance administrator user, create a .pgpass file in the instance administrator user's home directory to specify the password to the replication database for automatic authentication when connecting to the primary server. This will verify that the instance administrator user's OS user and the user registered in the database are the same, and that the connection was not made by an unspecified user. In addition, the pre-defined password is used for authentication to automatically connect.

#### Note

If trust authentication is set, all OS users who can log in to the primary server will be able to connect, and if one of these is a malicious user, then that user can corrupt the standby server data, or cause the job system to fail, by sending an erroneous transaction log. Therefore, decide on the authentication method according to the security requirements of the system using streaming replication operation.

Refer to "Authentication Methods" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for details on the authentication methods that can be set.

#### Configuring of postgresql.conf file

Specify the following parameters in the postgresql.conf file for streaming replication. postgresql.conf file is duplicated when the standby server instance is created. Therefore, also set the parameters required on the standby server.

Table C.1 Parameters to be set

Parameter	Contents of Designation	remarks
wal_level	replica or logical	Specify "logical" if logical decoding is also used.
max_wal_senders	Number of standby servers + 1	Specify the number of standby servers (n) + 1.
hot_standby	on	Specify this to perform reference-based operations on the standby server.
wal_keep_size	WAL storage size (megabytes)	If a delay exceeding the value set in this parameter occurs, the WAL segment required later by the primary server may be deleted.  Additionally, if you stop a standby server (for maintenance, for example), consider the stop time and set a value that will not cause the WAL segment to be deleted.

Parameter	Contents of Designation	remarks
		Refer to "Estimating Transaction Log Space Requirements" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server for information on estimating the WAL save size.
wal_sender_timeout	Timeout time (milliseconds)	Specify the time to determine that an error has occurred in the transfer of transaction logs on the primary server side. By specifying this parameter, log transfer to the standby server can be resumed even if the standby server temporarily stops due to failover, etc.
wal_receiver_timeout	Timeout time (milliseconds)	Specify the time to determine that an error has occurred in receiving transaction logs on the standby server side. By specifying this parameter, log reception from the primary server can be resumed even if the primary server temporarily stops due to failover, etc.

#### Point

Replication slots can be used instead of the wal\_keep\_size parameter to prevent deletion of old WAL segments. See "Replication Slots" in the "PostgreSQL Documentation" for details on replication slots.

#### See

- For more information on the pg\_hba.conf file, see "Client Authentication" in "PostgreSQL Documentation".
- For more information on the postgresql.conf file, see "Server Configuration" in the "PostgreSQL Documentation".

### Additional steps when creating a cluster application

The following additional steps are required for "2.11 Creating a Cluster Application".

If the business network that accepts connections from applications and the log transfer network that accepts replication connections for log transferring are GIs resources on separate networks, both the business network and the log transfer network GIs resources must be Register them as cluster application resources.

## C.3.2 Standby Server Setup

Follow the steps below for setup.

The procedure is almost the same as in "Chapter 2 Setting Up Failover Operation" but some of the steps are different.

In this section, the word primary server is used as the replication source server. If you are building a cascaded standby environment, please read primary server as upstream server.

Procedure	Work item		See
	Active system	standby system	
1	Installing PRIMECLUSTER and Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres		"2.1 Installing PRIMECLUSTER and Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres"
2	Configuring PRIMECLUSTER		"2.2 Configuring PRIMECLUSTER".
3	Creating a GDS Volume (*1)		"2.3 Creating a GDS Volume"  Note: It is not mandatory to create a directory for storing backup data.
4	Creating a file system (*1)		"2.4 Creating a File System"
5	Creating a user for the operating system to start Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres		"2.5 Creating an Operating System User to Start Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres"
6	Mounting the file system		"2.6 Mounting the File System"
7	Creating a Database cluster (*1)		"Creating a Database Cluster"
8	Registering resource information for the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres database cluster		"2.8 Registering Resource Information for the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Database Cluster".
9	Configuring storage data protection using transparent data encryption (*1)		"Creating a Database Cluster"
10	Unmounting the file system		"2.10 Unmounting the File System"
11	Creating a cluster application		"2.11 Creating a Cluster Application"
12	Application development		"2.12 Application Development"
13	Checking operation		"Operation check"

\*1: Some settings and operations must also be performed on the standby node. Please refer to the reference for details.

## Creating a Database Cluster

Refer to "2.7 Creating a Database Cluster" for a setup that takes into account the following

1. Add configuration for standby server to primary server

Add the configuration items for the standby server to the database cluster configuration file created on the primary server.

Configure the pg\_hba.conf file on the primary server

Add the following entry to the pg\_hba.conf file to authenticate connections from the standby server

#	TYPE	DATABASE	USER	ADDRESS	METHOD
	host	replication	username	Active node address of the standby server	
	authentication method				
	host	replication	username	Standby node address of the standby server	
	authentication method				

User name is the name of the user connecting from the standby server.

When stating the address of the standby server, set it to allow connections from the IP address of the respective node, rather than from the takeover IP address.

### Point

#### When setting an authentication method other than trust authentication

When connecting from the standby server as the instance administrator user, create a .pgpass file in the instance administrator user's home directory to specify the password to the replication database for automatic authentication when connecting to the primary server. This will verify that the instance administrator user's OS user and the user registered in the database are the same, and that the connection was not made by an unspecified user. In addition, the pre-defined password is used for authentication to automatically connect.

### Note

If trust authentication is set, all OS users who can log in to the primary server will be able to connect, and if one of these is a malicious user, then that

user can corrupt the standby server data, or cause the job system to fail, by sending an erroneous transaction log. Therefore, decide on the authentication method according to the security requirements of the system using streaming replication operation.

Refer to "Authentication Methods" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for details on the authentication methods that can be set.

#### Configure the postgresql.conf file on the primary server

Specify the following parameters in the postgresql.conf file for streaming replication. postgresql.conf file is replicated when the standby server instance is created. Therefore, set the necessary parameters in the primary server's postgresql.conf file before replicating it to the standby server. No additional configuration is required if you have already set up the same information when setting up the primary server.

Table C.2 Parameters to be set

Parameter	Contents of Designation	remarks
wal_level	replica or logical	Specify "logical" if logical decoding is also used.
max_wal_senders	Number of standby servers + 1	Specify the number of standby servers (n) + 1.
hot_standby	on	This setting must be on regardless of whether or not reference work is performed on the standby server, because the monitoring process by PRIMECLUSTER will connect to the standby server. If this setting is off, PRIMECLUSTER will erroneously assume that PostgreSQL has stopped.
wal_keep_size	WAL storage size (megabytes)	If a delay exceeding the value set in this parameter occurs, the WAL segment required later by the primary server may be deleted.  Additionally, if you stop a standby server (for

Parameter	Contents of Designation	remarks
		<p>maintenance, for example), consider the stop time and set a value that will not cause the WAL segment to be deleted.</p> <p>Refer to "Estimating Transaction Log Space Requirements" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server for information on estimating the WAL save size.</p>
wal_sender_timeout	Timeout time (milliseconds)	Specify the time to determine that an error has occurred in the transfer of transaction logs on the primary server side. By specifying this parameter, log transfer to the standby server can be resumed even if the standby server temporarily stops due to failover, etc.
wal_receiver_timeout	Timeout time (milliseconds)	Specify the time to determine that an error has occurred in receiving transaction logs on the standby server side. By specifying this parameter, log reception from the primary server can be resumed even if the primary server temporarily stops due to failover, etc.

### Point

Replication slots can be used instead of the wal\_keep\_size parameter to prevent deletion of old WAL segments. See "Replication Slots" in the "PostgreSQL Documentation" for details on replication slots.

## 2. Creating a Database Cluster

To create a database cluster on the standby server, run the pg\_basebackup command to create a duplicate instance of the primary server.

Example)

```
$ pg_basebackup -D <data storage destination directory of standby server> -X fetch --
waldir=<transaction log directory> --progress --verbose -R --
dbname='application_name=<application name>' -h <takeover IP address of primary server> -p <port
number of primary server>
```

### Note

- Use the pg\_basebackup command with the -R option to create a standby.signal file. If you do not create the standby.signal file, the server cannot start as a standby server.
- If using a method that requires password authentication for connections to the primary server, you will need to ensure that authentication is performed automatically. If the -R option is specified for the pg\_basebackup command and the password parameter is specified for the --dbname option, the pg\_basebackup command will set the password in the primary\_conninfo parameter in postgresql.auto.conf file, enabling connections to be performed automatically.

If a password is not set in the `primary_conninfo` parameter in `postgresql.auto.conf` file, it will be necessary to create a `.pgpass` file in the home directory of the instance administrator user, and specify a password for the replication database.

- The `primary_conninfo` parameter should not be set in the `postgresql.conf` file, but only in the `postgresql.auto.conf` file using the `pg_basebackup` command.
- When executing the `pg_basebackup` command, consider the following for collection of transaction logs.
  - When "fetch" is specified for the `-X` option of the command  
Transaction logs are collected at the end of the backup, so it is necessary to ensure that transaction logs that occur during backup are not deleted from the primary server. Therefore, allow for a sufficient value for the `wal_keep_size` parameter in `postgresql.conf`.



## See

- For more information on the `pg_basebackup` command, see "pg\_basebackup" in the "Reference" section of the PostgreSQL Documentation.
- For more information on the `standby.signal` file, see "Hot Standby" in the PostgreSQL Documentation.

### 3. Setting up transparent data encryption to protect stored data

Refer to "[2.9 Configuring Storage Data Protection Using Transparent Data Encryption](#)" and consider the following in your setup

- Keystore file location  
Specify a local directory with the same path on the active and standby nodes.
- Keystore File Distribution  
Copy the keystore files on the active node of the primary server to both active node and standby node of the standby server.
- Enable auto-open keystore  
Please enable in both active node and standby node of the standby server.

### 4. Check each node for startup, connection, and shutdown.

## Operation check

Refer to "[2.13 Checking Operation](#)" Before doing so, however, make sure that streaming replication is set up correctly.

Follow the steps below.

1. On the primary server, verify that the connection status from the standby server can be retrieved by the statistics view `pg_stat_replication`.

Example)

The following is an example of output when the `psql` command is used.

```
postgres=# select * from pg_stat_replication;
-[ RECORD 1 ]-----+-----
pid           | 321621
usesysid      | 10
username      | fsep
application_name | standby
client_addr    | 192.0.2.210
client_hostname |
client_port    | 27500
backend_start  | 2022-12-01 19:12:53.145639+09
backend_xmin   |
state         | streaming
sent_lsn       | 0/3000060
write_lsn      | 0/3000060
flush_lsn      | 0/3000060
replay_lsn     | 0/3000060
write_lag      |
```

flush_lag	
replay_lag	
sync_priority	0
sync_state	async
reply_time	2022-12-01 19:13:11.194744+09

2. Check the search results in step 1.

Verify that a connection in asynchronous mode has been established with the intended standby server.

Table C.3 Items to be checked

item	Confirmation details
application_name	The application name must indicate the standby server.
client_addr	It must be the IP address of the active node of the standby server.
state	streaming
sync_state	async



### Note

Streaming replication status is not monitored by PRIMECLUSTER. If you need to monitor streaming replication, please create and run a monitoring program referring to this section.

## C.4 Failover Operation

This section describes operations that require special attention related to streaming replication operations when performing "[Chapter 3 Failover Operation](#)".

operation		special remarks
<a href="#">3.1 Adding Tablespaces</a>		If you are adding a new file system in an environment where both the primary and standby servers are in failover operation, you must add the required GDS volumes or file systems on both the primary and standby servers before executing the CREATE TABLESPACE statement.
<a href="#">3.2 Modifying Database Cluster Resources</a>		-
<a href="#">3.3 Operations under Normal Circumstances</a>		-
<a href="#">3.4 Operation at State Transition</a>		If the active system of the primary server in failover operation goes down, the standby system will automatically start up as the primary server. When promoting the standby server to the primary server, make sure that both nodes of primary server are down before promoting it. Otherwise, the primary server and the standby server may both be ready to execute update statements.
<a href="#">3.5 Maintenance Tasks</a>	<a href="#">3.5.1 Simultaneous Stopped Node Maintenance</a>	When performing the simultaneous stopped node maintenance on the standby server and continuing operations on the primary server, please estimate the WAL segment taking into account the maintenance outage time.
	<a href="#">3.5.2 Mutual Switch Maintenance</a>	There are no precautions in the mutual switch maintenance procedure. However, when starting maintenance work, start with the standby server.



## C.5 Procedures Required after a Failover Error

---

### C.5.1 In Case of Primary Server Error

---

Refer to "[Chapter 4 Procedures Required after a Failover Error](#)" for information on recovering as the primary server when the primary server has an error.

However, if it is necessary to rebuild the standby server as well, such as by restoring an instance of the primary server from backup data, refer to "[C.5.2 In Case of an Error on the Standby Server](#)" to rebuild the standby server.

After the standby server has been promoted to the new primary server, prepare for recovery by referring to "[Chapter 4 Procedures Required after a Failover Error](#)" when the former primary server that became abnormal is incorporated as a standby server and restored. However, instead of the steps from "[4.3 Starting the Database Cluster](#)" to "[4.6 Restarting the Cluster Applications Stopped for Node Maintenance](#)" please follow the steps below.

The following two commands can be used to recover standby servers. Select the one that best suits your situation and the content of the restoration.

- `pg_basebackup`

Creates a copy of all resources of the primary server instance.

Refer to "[C.5.2 In Case of an Error on the Standby Server](#)" for the rebuilding procedure.

- `pg_rewind`

Creates a copy of only the updated files on the new primary server. For this reason, if this command is used to incorporate a new standby server, recovery time can be shortened. To use this command to build the original primary server as a new standby server, at least one of the following must be met:

- a. Checksums were enabled when an instance was created, or
- b. The `wal_log_hints` parameter of `postgresql.conf` was enabled when an instance was started.

Additionally, `full_page_writes` must be enabled, which is its default value.

The following is an example of running the `pg_rewind` command to synchronize and recover data from the old primary server with the new primary server.

1. Start an instance of the old primary server  
Use the `pg_ctl` command to start the old primary server instance.

Example)

```
$ pg_ctl start -D <data storage destination directory>
```

2. Stopping an instance of the old primary server  
Stop the old primary server instance using the `pg_ctl` command.

Example)

```
$ pg_ctl stop -D <data storage destination directory>
```

3. Wait for unapplied update transaction log to be applied on new primary server  
Execute the following SQL on the new primary server and wait until the result is false.

```
select pg_is_in_recovery();
```

Example)

```
$ psql -h <hostname of new primary server> -p <port number of new primary server> -d <database name> -c "select pg_is_in_recovery();"
select pg_is_in_recovery();
```

Any database can be connected.

## Note

If `pg_rewind` is executed immediately after the new primary server is promoted, steps 3 and 4 are required. If the new primary server is able to execute the SQL to write and the checkpoint process is executed after the promotion, steps 3 and 4 are not necessary.

### 4. Update Timeline ID

Execute a checkpoint process to update the timeline ID.

```
$ psql -h <hostname of new primary server> -p <port number of new primary server> -d <database name> -c "checkpoint;"
```

Any database can be connected.

### 5. Create a duplicate instance of the new primary server on the old primary server (new standby server)

Run the `pg_rewind` command to create the data on the new standby server in sync with the new primary server.

Example)

```
$ pg_rewind -D <data storage destination directory of old primary server> -R --source-server='user=<username> host=<hostname of new primary server> port=<port number of new primary server> dbname=<database name>'
```

## Note

- Use the `pg_rewind` command with the `-R` option to create a `standby.signal` file. If you do not create the `standby.signal` file, the server cannot start as a standby server.
- If using a method that requires password authentication for connections to the primary server, you will need to ensure that authentication is performed automatically. If the `-R` option is specified for the `pg_rewind` command and the password parameter is specified for the `--dbname` option, the `pg_rewind` command will set the password in the `primary_conninfo` parameter in `postgresql.auto.conf` file, enabling connections to be performed automatically. If a password is not set in the `primary_conninfo` parameter in `postgresql.auto.conf` file, it will be necessary to create a `.pgpass` file in the home directory of the instance administrator user, and specify a password for the replication database.
- If you need to set a connection string other than host, port and `application_name`, include it in the setting of the `primary_conninfo` parameter.

## See

- For more information on the `standby.signal` file, see "Hot Standby" in the PostgreSQL Documentation.
- For more information on `primary_conninfo`, see "Setting Up a Standby Server" in the PostgreSQL Documentation. Setting Up a Standby Server" in the "PostgreSQL Documentation".

### 6. Set parameters in `postgresql.conf` file on old primary server (new standby server)

Set the necessary parameters for the new standby server in the `postgresql.conf` file.

The parameters to be set in the `postgresql.conf` file should be set with reference to "[Creating a Database Cluster](#)".

## Note

Since the new primary server is branched to a new timeline by promotion, the 'latest' must be specified in the `recovery_target_timeline` parameter for the old primary server (new standby server) to follow the new primary server.

### 7. Resource Release

Unmount the mounted file system, including the file system where the directory for data storage is located. Then, stop the GDS volume.

8. Cancellation of maintenance suspension  
Refer to "[3.5 Maintenance Tasks](#)" to cancel the maintenance suspension.
9. Operation check  
Refer to "[Operation check](#)" to check the operation.



See

- For more information on the `pg_basebackup` command, see "`pg_basebackup`" in the "Reference" section of the PostgreSQL Documentation.
- For more information on the `pg_rewind` command, see "`pg_rewind`" in the "Reference" section of the "PostgreSQL Documentation".

## C.5.2 In Case of an Error on the Standby Server

---

The following is a description of what to do in the event of a standby server malfunction.

1. Identification of the cause of the abnormality  
Identify the cause of the abnormality by referring to "[4.1 Identifying the Cause of an Error](#)"  
In case of an anomaly that requires rebuilding the standby server, refer to the following procedures. In other cases, refer to "[Chapter 4 Procedures Required after a Failover Error](#)".
2. Stop RMS on standby server, remove cluster applications and resources  
Stop RMS and then remove cluster applications and resources.
3. Rebuild standby server  
Refer to "[C.3.2 Standby Server Setup](#)" to perform the re-setup.

# Index

[A]	[O]
Adding a Created File System to the Cluster Application.....38	Operation at State Transition.....17
Adding a Created Shared Disk Class to the Cluster Application.....37	Operation mode of failover operation.....2
Adding Tablespaces.....16	Operations under Normal Circumstances.....17
	Overview of Failover Operation.....1
[C]	[P]
Checking Operation.....15	Preparing for Creation.....24
Command Reference.....40	Procedures Required after a Failover Error.....22
Configuring PRIMECLUSTER.....6	
Configuring Storage Data Protection Using Transparent Data Encryption.....11	[R]
Creating a Cluster Application.....12	Recovery Tasks.....23
Creating a Cluster Application and Configuring Its Attributes.....24	Reflecting Modifications Made to the Cluster Application.....38
Creating a Database Cluster.....8	Registering Resource Information for the Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Database Cluster.....9
Creating a File System.....6	Restarting the Cluster Applications Stopped for Node Maintenance.....23
Creating a GDS Volume.....6	
Creating an Operating System User to Start Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.....7	[S]
Creating Fsystem Resources.....34	Setting Up Failover Operation.....5
Creating Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres Resources.....32	Simultaneous Stopped Node Maintenance.....19
Creating Gds Resources.....31	Starting the Database Cluster.....23
Creating Gl or Takeover Network Resources.....33	Stopping the Cluster Applications for Node Maintenance.....23
Creating Resources and Cluster Applications.....24	Stopping the Database Cluster.....23
Creating Resources and Creating/Modifying Cluster Applications.....24	System Configuration of Failover Operation.....2
Creating Resources and Finalizing Cluster Application Creation.....35	
	[U]
[D]	Unmounting the File System.....12
Definition of Failover Operation.....1	
Deleting a database cluster resource.....17	
Displaying database cluster resource information.....16	
[E]	
Editing Configuration Files.....7	
Errors during state transition.....18	
[F]	
Failover Operation.....16	
Feature of failover operation.....2	
[I]	
Identifying the Cause of an Error.....22	
Installing PRIMECLUSTER and Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres...6	
[M]	
Maintenance Tasks.....18	
Modifying Cluster Applications.....36	
Modifying database cluster resource content.....16	
Modifying Database Cluster Resources.....16	
Mounting the File System.....8	
Moving to the Cluster Application Edit Window.....36	
Mutual Switch Maintenance.....20	
[N]	
Non-transferrable feature.....18	

# **Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 16**

## **Connection Manager User's Guide**

Windows/Linux

J2UL-2959-01ENZ0(00)  
July 2024

# Preface

---

## Purpose of this document

This document describes the Connection Manager features of Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

## Intended readers

This document is aimed at people who use the Connection Manager features.

Readers of this document are also assumed to have general knowledge of:

- Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres
- PostgreSQL
- Linux
- Windows

## Structure of this document

This document is structured as follows:

### [Chapter 1 Connection Manager Features](#)

Explains the features and Mechanisms of the Connection Manager.

### [Chapter 2 Setting Up](#)

Explains setting up the Connection Manager.

### [Chapter 3 Using from an Application](#)

Explains how to use the Connection Manager from an application.

### [Appendix A System Views](#)

Explains the system view of Connection Manager.

## Export restrictions

If this document is to be exported or provided overseas, confirm legal requirements for the Foreign Exchange and Foreign Trade Act as well as other laws and regulations, including U.S. Export Administration Regulations, and follow the required procedures.

## Issue date and version

Edition 1.0: July 2024
------------------------

## Copyright

Copyright 2020-2024 Fujitsu Limited

# Contents

---

Chapter 1 Connection Manager Features.....	1
1.1 Heartbeat Monitoring Feature.....	1
1.1.1 Difference from TCP keepalive.....	1
1.1.2 Mechanism of Heartbeat Monitoring Feature.....	2
1.2 Transparent Connection Support Feature.....	3
1.2.1 Mechanism of Connections using Transparent Connection Support Feature.....	3
Chapter 2 Setting Up.....	5
2.1 Setting Up the Client Side.....	5
2.1.1 Setup Preparation Tasks.....	5
2.1.1.1 Security Policy Settings.....	5
2.1.1.2 Preparing for Output to the Event Log.....	5
2.1.2 Creating a Directory for the conmgr Process.....	6
2.1.3 Configuring conmgr.conf.....	6
2.1.4 Registering the conmgr Process with a Windows Service.....	10
2.2 Setting Up the Server Side.....	11
2.2.1 Configuring postgresql.conf.....	11
2.2.2 Introducing the watchdog extension.....	12
2.2.3 Windows Firewall Settings.....	12
2.3 Starting the conmgr Process.....	13
2.3.1 Starting and Stopping the conmgr Process.....	13
2.3.2 Setting of Automatic Start / Stop of conmgr Process.....	14
2.4 Removing Setup.....	14
Chapter 3 Using from an Application.....	16
3.1 Connection Method.....	16
3.2 How to Detect Instance Errors.....	16
3.3 How to Use in libpq.....	16
3.3.1 How to Specify Multiple Connection Destinations.....	17
3.3.2 Using the Asynchronous Connection Method.....	17
3.3.3 Using an Asynchronous Communication Method.....	17
3.3.4 Behavior of PQhost() or PQhostaddr() or PQport().....	17
3.3.5 Behavior of PQstatus().....	17
3.3.6 PQcmSocket().....	18
3.4 How to Use in ODBC Driver.....	18
3.4.1 Behavior of SQLGetInfo().....	18
3.5 How to Use in JDBC Driver.....	18
3.5.1 Behavior of loadBalanceHosts Parameter.....	18
Appendix A System Views.....	19
A.1 pgx_stat_watchdog.....	19
Index.....	20

# Chapter 1 Connection Manager Features

The Connection Manager provides the following features:

## Heartbeat monitoring feature

Detects kernel panics between the server running the client and the server running the PostgreSQL instance(hereinafter referred to as instance), physical server failures, and inter-server network link downs, and notifies the client or instance. The client is notified as an error event through the SQL connection, and the instance will be notified in the form of a force collection of SQL connections with clients that are out of service.

## Transparent connection support feature

When an application wants to connect to an instance of an attribute in a set of instances configured for replication, it can connect to that instance without being aware of which server it is running on.



### Information

The available client drivers for Connection Manager are libpq (C language library), ECPG (embedded SQL in C), ECOBPG (embedded SQL in COBOL), JDBC driver and ODBC driver.

Each function is described below.

## 1.1 Heartbeat Monitoring Feature

Describes the Connection Manager's heartbeat monitoring feature.



### Note

The Connection Manager does not monitor for delays, such as CPU busy occurring in the postmaster process or in the backend processes to which the application connects directly, or for no response, such as due to a software bugs. It also does not monitor application downtime or unresponsiveness. To detect these, use various timeout features provided by PostgreSQL or the client drivers.

### 1.1.1 Difference from TCP keepalive

A peer of TCP connections cannot automatically detect a link down or server down.

There are two main methods to detect it. One is the operating system (Not all operating systems support it) TCP keepalive feature, and the other is the keepalive-equivalent timeout function implemented at the application layer. Connection Manager's heartbeat monitoring capabilities are categorized as the latter.

The operating system TCP keepalive feature has the following disadvantages, but the Connection Manager's heartbeat monitoring feature does not:

- The keepalive does not work when the TCP layer cannot receive an acknowledgement (ACK) and retransmits the packet repeatedly. This means that it is not possible to detect a down (For example, if a network goes down,) before sending some data and receiving ACK from the other side. There is also a parameter to interrupt retransmissions, which is not supported by some operating systems. The Connection Manager's heartbeat monitoring feature does not have this disadvantage because it is timeout monitoring at the application layer.
- The periodic packets for keepalive are sent per-TCP socket. If a instance accepts too many (For example, a few thousand clients) SQL connections, the load on the instance side cannot be ignored. The Connection Manager's heartbeat monitoring feature greatly reduces the load by allowing packets to be sent to the instance on a per-server basis on which the client runs.



## 1.1.2 Mechanism of Heartbeat Monitoring Feature

On the client side, the user must start one monitoring process using the `cm_ctl` command for the set of the instances to be monitored. This process, called the "conmgr process", can only be started by a user who is not an administrator (e.g. superuser(root) on Linux), or by a user who does not have Windows administrator privileges. An instance set is a collection of one or more instances that make up replication. One configuration file (`conmgr.conf`) for each conmgr process is used to set the information about the set of the instances being monitored and the parameters for monitoring.

On the server side, by installing PostgreSQL's EXTENSION that is called "watchdog", the postmaster will start two processes as background workers at instance startup.

One is the process for sending and receiving packets to and from the conmgr process for heartbeat monitoring. It is called "watchdog process". The other is the process for forcibly terminating SQL connections of the clients for which the watchdog process detects a failure on heartbeat monitoring. It is called "terminator process". SQL connections that do not use Connection Manager is also terminated, because the terminator process terminates them by IP address as key.



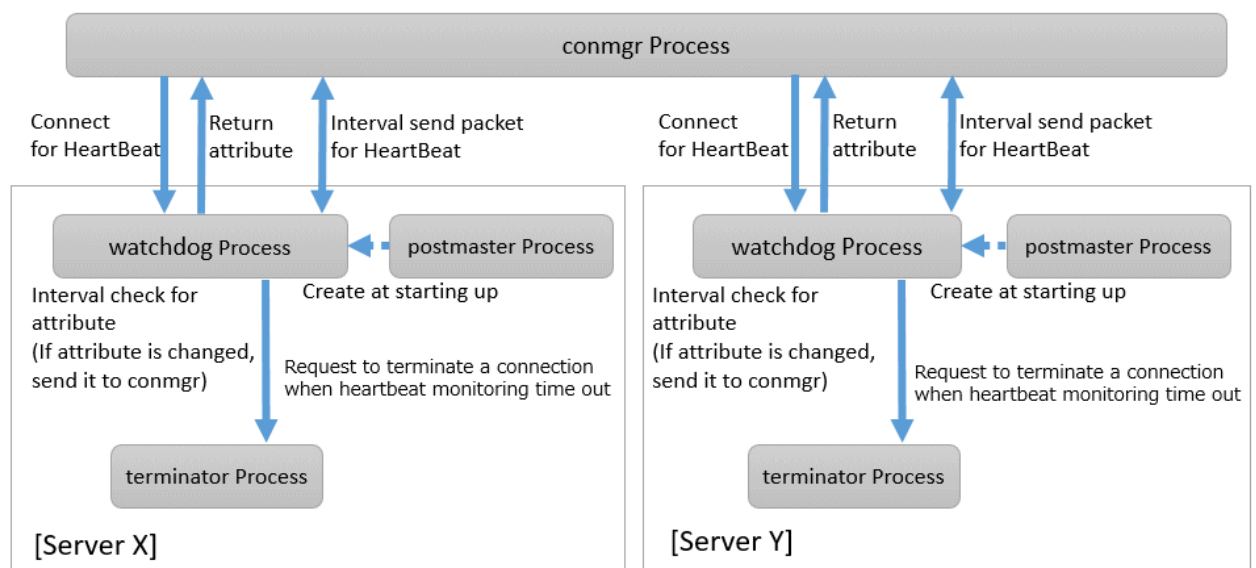
### Note

#### System Configuration Notes

For replication, it is recommended that the instance that connects to the upstream instance of replication and the conmgr process that regards the upstream instance as an instance to be monitored for heartbeat (specified in `backend_host` parameter or `backend_hostaddr` parameter that is a configuration parameter of conmgr process) be not placed on the same server. This is because if the conmgr process stops normally or abnormally, the terminator process in the upstream instance will also kill the replication connection. The replication connection will reconnect automatically even if it is forcibly disconnected, so replication will continue without any problems. However, this can be a problem when the replication load is high or on systems that are sensitive to replication delays.

Note that the replication connection have different monitoring feature than the Connection Manager, so there is no need to monitor the Connection Manager for heartbeat. Refer to PostgreSQL documentation for details.

The process relationship is as follows:



### See

Refer to "`cm_ctl`" in the Reference for information on `cm_ctl` command.

## 1.2 Transparent Connection Support Feature

---

The features similar to Connection Manager's transparent connection support feature can be found in PostgreSQL's libpq and other client drivers.

Using libpq as an example, the connection parameter to use that feature is `target_session_attrs` parameter. If this parameter is used not through Connection Manager, libpq will attempt to find the required instance by connecting sequentially to all instances of the set of instance requested by the `host` parameter or `hostaddr` parameter. In the worst case, libpq may find the promoted primary at the connection to the last instance of instance set. This means that you cannot predict how long it will take to complete the switch.

However, when combined with the Connection Manager, the `conmgr` process obtains its attributes via the `watchdog` process from all servers in a set of servers in advance, so that the connections to that server can be initiated as soon as the application requests it.

### 1.2.1 Mechanism of Connections using Transparent Connection Support Feature

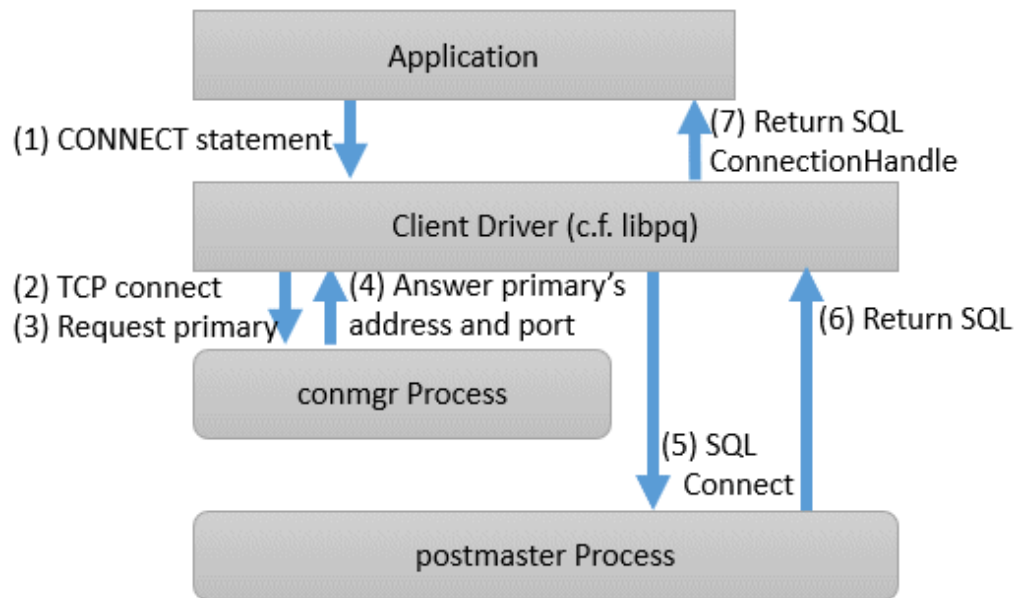
---

A connection using this mechanism actually consists of two steps, but from the perspective of the application, it looks like a single SQL connection. In the application's connection string, specify the IP address or host name (In most cases it is "localhost") and port number where the `conmgr` process listens, and `target_session_attrs` parameter. You do not need to explicitly state that the connection is to the `conmgr` process. This is because the client driver can automatically determine whether the connection is to a instance or a `conmgr` process.

In the first phase of the connection, the client driver receives a connection request from the application and connects to the location specified in the connection string. Initially, it uses the protocol PostgreSQL requests, and if it learns in the middle that the connection is to a `conmgr` process, it asks the `conmgr` process for the IP address and port number that the instance with the attributes specified in the connection parameter `target_session_attrs` is listening for. If the destination is a backend process rather than a `conmgr` process, the connection process completes immediately and continues to send and receive data for normal SQL execution. The first stage of processing falls within the scope of timeout monitoring for SQL connection processing by each client driver. For example, the `connection_timeout` parameter of libpq.

In the second phase of the connection, the client driver connects to the instance using the IP address and port number from the `conmgr` process. Thereafter, the client driver and the instance directly send and receive the data for SQL execution. This ensures that the Connection Manager does not affect the performance of the SQL execution.

When the client driver is waiting to receive data after the second stage is completed, it monitors the reception of data to the two sockets obtained at each stage of the connection. This allows the client driver to know when, for example, the `conmgr` process notifies the client of a network link down.



## Chapter 2 Setting Up

Describes setting up the Connection Manager.

### 2.1 Setting Up the Client Side

On the client side, configure settings for the conmgr process.

W

#### 2.1.1 Setup Preparation Tasks

Describes the preparatory tasks to perform before you set up the conmgr process.

W

##### 2.1.1.1 Security Policy Settings

In order for the Windows service to start and stop the conmgr process, Connection Manager requires a security setting that allows the OS user account that is to start the conmgr process to log on as a service.

Describes how to set up security so that you can log on as a service.

1. Displaying the [Local Security Policy] window

In Windows, select [Administrative Tools], and then click [Local Security Policy].

2. Setting up security

1. In the [Local Security Policy] window, select [Security Settings], select [Local Policies], and then click [User Rights Assignment].
2. Under [Policy] in the [User Rights Assignment] window, double-click [Log on as a service].
3. In the [Log on as a service Properties] window, set the following:
  - a. Select the [Local Security Setting] tab.
  - b. On the [Local Security Setting] tab, click [Add User or Group].
  - c. In the [Select Users or Groups] window, enter the operating system user account of the instance administrator user in [Enter the object names to select].
  - d. Click [OK].
4. In the [Log on as a service Properties] window, click [OK].

W

##### 2.1.1.2 Preparing for Output to the Event Log

Describes how to prepare for outputting error logs to the event log.



#### Note

If you have not registered the event source name, the content of the message output to the event log might be incomplete.

Register this default event source name before using the cm\_ctl command because the event log may be output with a default event source name of "conmgr".

The following is an example of registering a DLL for a 64 bit product as the event source name "conmgr".

```
> regsvr32 /n /i:"conmgr" "c:\Program Files\Fujitsu\fssepv<x>client64\lib\pgevent.dll"
```

#### For a multi-version installation

If Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres is already installed on the same machine, note the path to the registered DLLs by searching for the following key in the Registry Editor. Then, register a new DLL with the default event source name.

The DLL path is used to re-register the default event source name during removing setup.

conmgr

## 2.1.2 Creating a Directory for the conmgr Process

You need one conmgr process for each set of instances that you want to configure for replication. Assign a dedicated directory to each conmgr process. This directory must assign read, execute, and write permissions for the user who starts the conmgr process.

This directory is specified when you run the cm\_ctl command, which starts and stops the conmgr process. To specify a directory in the cm\_ctl command, set it in the environment variable CMDATA or specify it in the -D option.



See

Refer to "cm\_ctl" in the Reference for information on cm\_ctl.

## 2.1.3 Configuring conmgr.conf

Place the configuration file conmgr.conf in the directory for the conmgr process.

### Syntax for conmgr.conf

- In conmgr.conf, after the symbol(#) are considered comments.
- The parameter name = value" is a set of settings and must be written on one line.
- Set the value in a format that matches the type of each parameter. The types and formats are:
  - integer: Numeric type. Express as a sequence of numbers in decimal number.
  - string: String type. You can also include spaces by enclosing them in quotation marks(''). If you include quotation marks, escape them.
  - enum: Enumeration type. Possible values are determined.

### Parameters to Set

port (integer)

Specify the port number on which the conmgr process listens for connections from the applications.

The value must be greater than or equal to 1 and less than or equal to 65535. The default is 27546. You must restart conmgr process for this parameter change to take effect.

backend\_host\* (string)

Specify the host name or IP address of the instance.

You can also use IPv6 address. If you specify the IP address directly, you can save time by using backend\_hostaddr parameter. If backend\_host parameter and backend\_hostaddr parameter are both specified, backend\_hostaddr parameter is used. You must restart conmgr process for this parameter change to take effect.

To distinguish multiple instances, append a zero-based number immediately after the parameter name, such as backend\_host0, backend\_host1,... This number is called the instance number. A parameter identified by the same instance number configures the settings of a single instance. If you want to exclude some instances from your replication configuration, you can simply remove the settings for that instance.



Note

Refer to "System Configuration Notes" in "1.1.2 Mechanism of Heartbeat Monitoring Feature" for details.



## Note

If the primary is not included in the instances configured in `conmgr.conf`, use the `-W` option when starting Connection Manager with the `cm_ctl` command. Without the `-W` option, the `cm_ctl` command will not return until the primary connection is complete.

For example, if two instances are listening on "host name:host0, port number:5432" and "host name:host1, port number:2345", write as follows.

```
backend_host0='host0'
backend_port0=5432
backend_host1='host1'
backend_port1=2345
```

You can also mix different instance number settings:

```
backend_host0='host0'
backend_host1='host1'
backend_port0=5432
backend_port1=2345
```

It does not matter if the instance number is missing as in the following (instance number 1):

```
backend_host0='host0'
backend_host2='host2'
backend_port0=5432
backend_port2=2345
```

If the host name is omitted, as in instance number 1 below, an error will occur when loading the configuration file.

```
backend_host0='host0'
backend_host2='host2'
backend_port0=5432
backend_port1=5555
backend_port2=2345
```

### `backend_hostaddr*(string)`

Same as `backend_host` parameter except no name resolution is used.

### `backend_port* (integer)`

Specify the port number the postmaster of the instance will listen on.

The value must be greater than or equal to 1 and less than or equal to 65535. The default is 27500. Append the instance number as you would for `backend_host` parameter. You must restart `conmgr` process for this parameter change to take effect.

### `watchdog_port* (integer)`

Specify the port number on which the watchdog process listens.

The `conmgr` process connects to this port, but the user application does not. you must set it to the same value as [watchdog.port](#) parameter in `postgresql.conf`. The value must be greater than or equal to 1 and less than or equal to 65535. The default is 27545. Append the instance number as you would for `backend_host` parameter. You must restart `conmgr` process for this parameter change to take effect.

### `heartbeat_interval (integer)`

Specify the interval at which heartbeat packets are sent for heartbeat monitoring.

Used in conjunction with `heartbeat_timeout` parameter. Connection Manager heartbeat monitoring always continues to send packets periodically from both ends of the connection. If a packet is not received from the other side within a certain period of time, the link is considered down.

Note that this method is different from TCP keepalive. TCP keepalive send a keepalive packet only when there is a certain amount of inactivity (idle), and expects to receive an ACK for that packet. If TCP keepalive does not receive an ACK, it repeats this a specified number of times and then assumes that the link is down.

The heartbeat\_interval parameter and heartbeat\_timeout parameter are propagated from the conmgr process to the watchdog process, and also apply to the interval between the transmissions of heartbeat packets from the watchdog process. If a watchdog process is connected from both a conmgr process with a heartbeat\_interval parameter of 3 seconds and a conmgr process with a heartbeat\_interval of 5 seconds, it sends heartbeat packets every 3 seconds to the former process and every 5 seconds to the latter process. The unit is seconds. Specify a value equal to or more than 1 second. The default is 10 seconds. You must restart conmgr process for this parameter change to take effect.

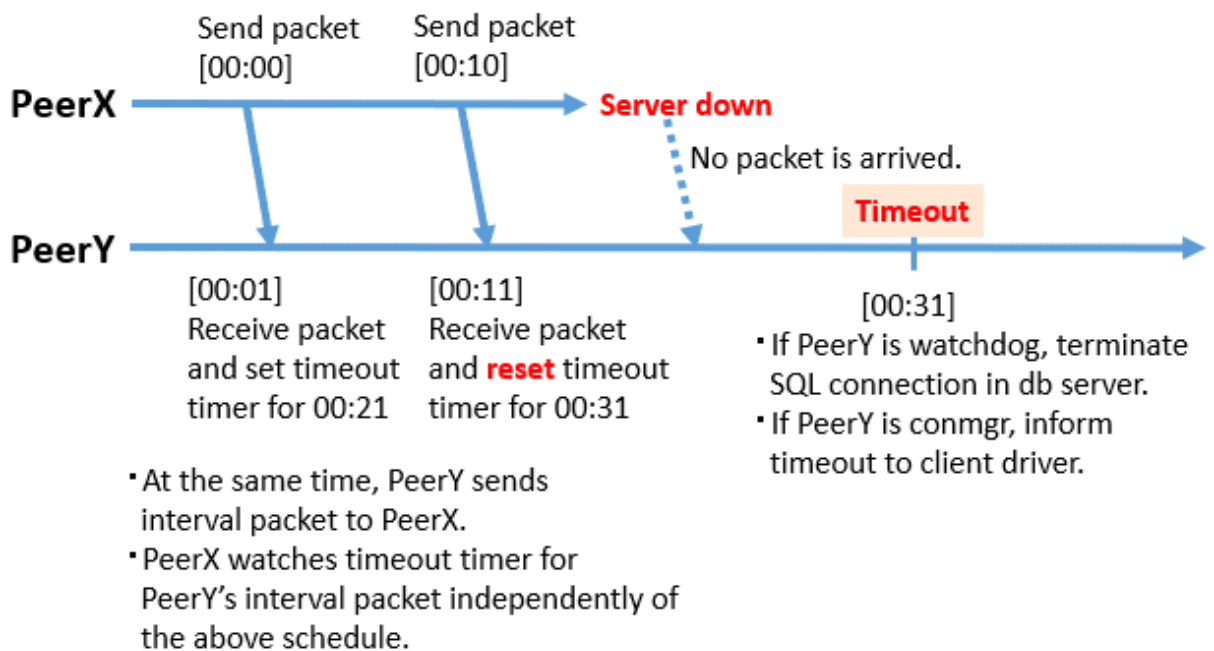
#### heartbeat\_timeout (integer)

If a heartbeat packet for heartbeat monitoring cannot be received for more than the time specified by this parameter, an error is assumed to have occurred and the application is notified of the error.

This parameter should be decide of heartbeat\_interval parameter as the basis. No error is occurred when the configuration file is loaded, but is always considered abnormal by heartbeat monitoring if it is at least not greater than heartbeat\_interval parameter. The unit is seconds. Specify a value equal to or more than 1 second. The default is 20 seconds. You must restart conmgr process for this parameter change to take effect.

Refer to the following figure for the relationship between the heartbeat\_interval parameter and heartbeat\_timeout parameter settings and the heartbeat timeout.

[Configuration: heartbeat\_interval=10, heartbeat\_timeout=20]



#### heartbeat\_connect\_interval (integer)

Specify the interval between attempts to establish heartbeat monitoring again after detecting an abnormality.

This parameter is useful when only the database server is started, but not the instance. In such a situation, the TCP connection fails immediately, and retries cannot be attempted without an interval. If you specify an excessively long value, you may delay noticing the start of the instance. If a connection attempt fails for a long time, it will attempt the next connection after the time specified by heartbeat\_connect\_interval parameter has elapsed. The unit is seconds. Specify a value equal to or more than 1 second. The default is 1 second. You must restart conmgr for this parameter change to take effect.

#### heartbeat\_connect\_timeout (integer)

Specify the connection timeout for establishing heartbeat monitoring.

The connection includes the time it takes to send the TCP connection and the first heartbeat packet to the watchdog process and receive a reply from the watchdog process. This parameter is particularly needed when the other server is down or the network is disconnected. This is because TCP connections are attempted over a long period of time, depending on the operating system configuration, and the connection takes a long time to fail. The unit is seconds. Specify a value equal to or more than 1 second. The default is 10 seconds. You must restart conmgr process for this parameter change to take effect.

#### log\_destination (string)

Specify the destination of the message.

You can specify multiple destinations. Use commas to separate multiple entries and enclose all in single quotation marks.

**L**

"stderr" and "syslog" can be specified. The default is to print only to stderr. You must restart conmgr process for this parameter change to take effect.

**W**

"stderr" and "eventlog" can be specified. The default is to print only to stderr. You must restart conmgr process for this parameter change to take effect.

**L**

#### syslog\_facility (enum)

Specify the syslog facility.

Valid only if log\_destination parameter includes "syslog".

LOCAL0, LOCAL1, LOCAL2, LOCAL3, LOCAL4, LOCAL5, LOCAL6, or LOCAL7 can be specified. The default is "LOCAL0". You must restart conmgr process for this parameter change to take effect.

**L**

#### syslog\_ident (string)

Specify the program name used to identify the output from the conmgr process.

The default is "conmgr". You must restart conmgr process for this parameter change to take effect.

**W**

#### event\_source (string)

Specify the event source name used to identify the output from the conmgr process.

The default is "conmgr". You must restart conmgr process for this parameter change to take effect.

#### log\_min\_messages (enum)

Specifies the level of messages to output.

It can be DEBUG, INFO, NOTICE, WARNING, ERROR, LOG, FATAL, or PANIC. Messages below the specified level are not output. The default is "WARNING". You must restart conmgr process for this parameter change to take effect.

#### max\_connections (integer)

Specifies the maximum number of simultaneous connections to the conmgr process.

If there are more than this maximum number of client connections, it forces the connection to be closed without sending an error message to the client.

The conmgr process also outputs this fact at level "LOG" to the destination specified by log\_destination. Specify a value equal to or more than 0.

If 0 is specified, there is no limit. The default is 0. You must restart conmgr process for this parameter change to take effect.

**L**



#### Note

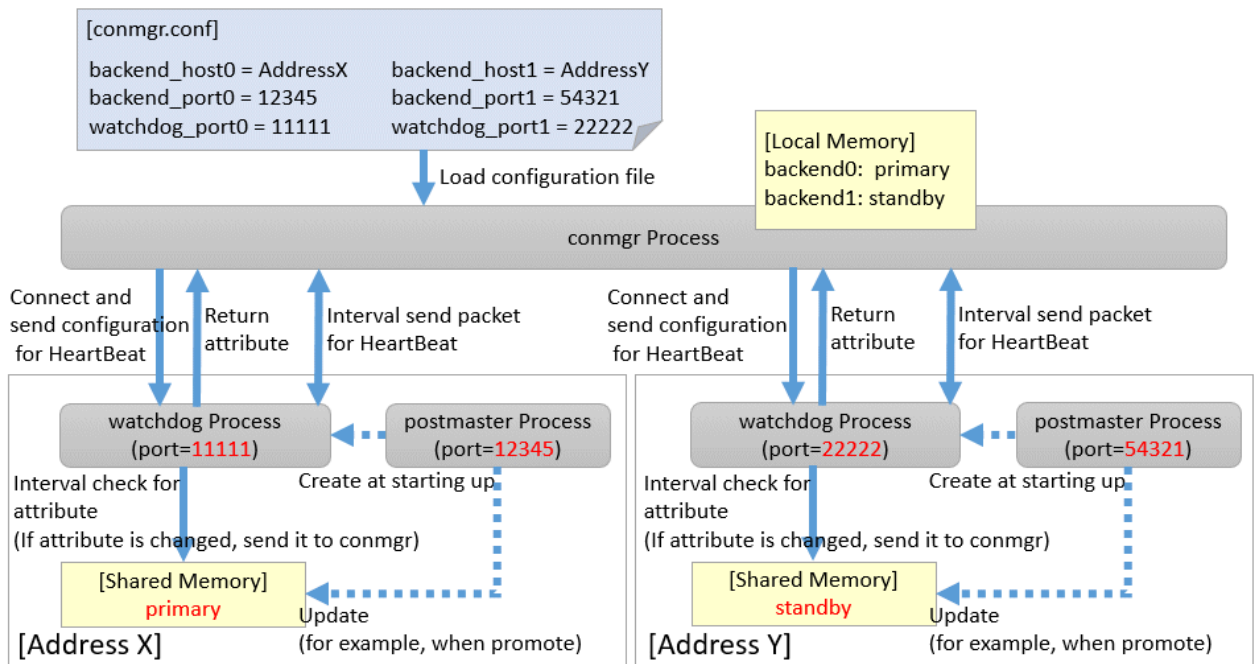
The maximum number of file descriptors that can be opened simultaneously (You can check it with -n of the ulimit command.) imposed on a conmgr process by the OS user limit should be greater than the value derived from the following equation:. Otherwise, the conmgr process will abort if the user limit is violated.



```
9 + Number of database instances specified in conmgr.conf x 2 + max_connections
specified in conmgr.conf
```

## Overview of connections definitions

The following figure shows the relationship between the IP address or host name and the port number set in conmgr.conf and the processes.



## W

## 2.1.4 Registering the conmgr Process with a Windows Service

To start or stop the conmgr process using a Windows service, register the conmgr process with the Windows service. Describes how to register the conmgr process with a Windows service.

Register the conmgr process with a Windows service by using the `cm_ctl` command with the service name to register, the user name, the password, and the path to the directory where the `conmgr.conf` is located.

Example)

The following example is executed when the registration service name is "conmgr", the user name is "fsepuser", and the directory where `conmgr.conf` is located is "D: \conmgr".

```
> cm_ctl register -N "conmgr" -U fsepuser -P ***** -D D:\conmgr
```

## Note

- Execute the command as a Connection Manager administrator user with "Administrator" privileges. Execute the command from the [Administrator: Command Prompt] window. Right-click [Command Prompt], and then select [Run as administrator] from the menu to display the [Administrator: Command Prompt] window.
- Do not specify the `--complete` option when registering Windows services in register mode of the `cm_ctl` command. This is because the conmgr process may be running in the background if it fails to start using Windows services.

- You must specify a user name and password for the following reasons:

Because Windows services are started under the Network Service account, the conmgr process is created for that account. As a result, the conmgr process may fail to start on another user. For security reasons, if you do not specify a user name and password, specify the account from the list of Windows services immediately after you register the conmgr process with the Windows service.

- When entering the password for the cm\_ctl command, be careful that it is not referenced by other users for security reasons.

## 2.2 Setting Up the Server Side

On the server side, configure settings for the watchdog process.

### 2.2.1 Configuring postgresql.conf

Describes the postgresql.conf parameters that must be set when using the Connection Manager.

#### Parameters to Set

##### max\_connections

An existing PostgreSQL parameter. Add 2 to the value already set.

Connection to the instance is maintained from the time the instance is started to do the following:

- The watchdog process checks the state of the instance.
- The terminator process forces the client to terminate the SQL connection.

##### shared\_preload\_libraries

An existing PostgreSQL parameter. Add a watchdog.

The watchdog process and terminator process start when you add watchdog and restart the instance.

##### watchdog.port (integer)

Specify the port number on which the watchdog process accepts connections for heartbeat monitoring from the conmgr process.

The value must be greater than or equal to 1 and less than or equal to 65535. The default is 27545. The instance must be restarted for this parameter change to take effect.

##### watchdog.check\_attr\_interval (integer)

Specify the interval between checking the attributes of a instance.

watchdog process immediately notifies the conmgr process if the attribute changes.

The unit is milliseconds. Specify a value equal to or more than 1 millisecond. The default is 1000 milliseconds. The instance must be restarted for this parameter change to take effect.

##### watchdog.max\_heartbeat\_connections (integer)

Specify the maximum number of conmgr processes that connect to watchdog process.

The default is the value specified in max\_connections of postgresql.conf.

There is no upper limit, but about 200 bytes of memory are consumed for 1 connection when PostgreSQL is started.



#### Note

Normally you do not need to consider, but if you have a heartbeat connection with a very large number of conmgr processes, it may violate on the maximum number of file descriptors (You can check it with -n of the ulimit command.)

of the OS user limit. This is because the socket for the heartbeat connection consumes the file descriptor. Set the maximum number of file descriptors of the OS user limit to a value larger than the value calculated below from the `max_files_per_process` parameter value and `watchdog.max_heartbeat_connections` parameter value in `postgresql.conf`.

```
max_files_per_process + watchdog.max_heartbeat_connections x 2
```

## 2.2.2 Introducing the watchdog extension

Execute the `CREATE EXTENSION` statement with `watchdog`.

Example)

```
postgres=# CREATE EXTENSION watchdog;  
CREATE EXTENSION
```

This allows you to see the [pgx\\_stat\\_watchdog view](#) for information about the watchdog process.

### W

## 2.2.3 Windows Firewall Settings

Describes how to enable the port number used by the watchdog process when you enable the Windows Firewall feature.

### Windows Server(R) 2016:

1. In the [Windows Firewall] window, click [Advanced settings] on the left side of the window.
2. In the [Windows Firewall with Advanced Security] window, click [Inbound Rules] on the left side of the window.
3. Click [New Rule] on the right side of the window.
4. In the [New Inbound Rule Wizard] window, select [Port], and then click [Next].
5. Select [TCP] and [Specific local ports], then specify the "port number on which the watchdog process accepts connections for life-and-death monitoring from the conmgr process (watchdog.port)" defined in `postgresql.conf` in the text box, and then click [Next].
6. Select [Allow the connection], and then click [Next].
7. Select the profiles for which this rule applies, and then click [Next].
8. In [Name], specify the desired name(ex: Connection Manager), and then click [Finish].
9. In the [Windows Firewall with Advanced Security] window, check if the added rule is enabled under [Inbound Rules] in the center of the window.

### Other than above:

1. In the [Windows Defender Firewall] window, click [Advanced settings] on the left side of the window.
2. In the [Windows Defender Firewall with Advanced Security] window, click [Inbound Rules] on the left side of the window.
3. Click [New Rule] on the right side of the window.
4. In the [New Inbound Rule Wizard] window, select [Port], and then click [Next].
5. Select [TCP] and [Specific local ports], then specify the "port number on which the watchdog process accepts connections for life-and-death monitoring from the conmgr process (watchdog.port)" defined in `postgresql.conf` in the text box, and then click [Next].
6. Select [Allow the connection], and then click [Next].
7. Select the profiles for which this rule applies, and then click [Next].

8. In [Name], specify the desired name(ex: Connection Manager), and then click [Finish].
9. In the [Windows Defender Firewall with Advanced Security] window, check if the added rule is enabled under [Inbound Rules] in the center of the window.



## 2.3 Starting the conmgr Process



### 2.3.1 Starting and Stopping the conmgr Process

Describes starting and stopping the conmgr process.

You can use commands related to Windows services to start, stop, and check the health of the conmgr process.

To use a Windows service, register the conmgr process with the Windows service.



Although it is possible to start and stop the conmgr process by running the `cm_ctl` command without registering the conmgr process with the Windows service, we recommend that you use the Windows service to start and stop the conmgr process for the following reasons.

The `cm_ctl` command starts the conmgr process as a user process. Therefore, closing the command prompt window from which the command was executed will force the conmgr process to stop.

#### Starting the conmgr process

Start with the `net start` or `sc start` command and the service name.

You can also start it from the Windows Services window by following the steps below.

1. Display the [Services] window  
In [Administrative Tools], click [Services].
2. Start a service  
From the list of service names, select the conmgr process and click the [Start Service] button.

#### Stopping the conmgr process

Start with the `net stop` or `sc stop` command and the service name.

You can also stop it from the Windows Services window by following the steps below.

1. Display the [Services] window  
In [Administrative Tools], click [Services].
2. Stop a service  
From the list of service names, select the conmgr process and click the [Stop Service] button.

#### Checking the operating status of the conmgr process

To check whether a service is running immediately after the start operation of the conmgr process, check the status of the service as follows.

1. Display the [Services] window  
In [Administrative Tools], click [Services].
2. Check the status of the service  
Check the service status of the conmgr process from the list of service names.

Use the `cm_ctl` command to check the operating status of the `conmgr` process during operation.



See

Refer to "`cm_ctl`" in the Reference for information on `cm_ctl`.

W

## 2.3.2 Setting of Automatic Start / Stop of `conmgr` Process

The `conmgr` process can be started/stopped automatically according to the start/stop of the database server OS.

If the service startup type is "manual", change it to "automatic". By setting it to "automatic", it will start automatically when the database server OS is started, and will automatically stop when the database server OS is shut down.



Note

Please do so as a user with "Administrator" privileges.

Follow the procedure below to switch services.

1. Display the [Services] window

In [Administrative Tools], click [Services].

2. Switch startup

Select the service name of the `conmgr` process, display the [Properties] dialog, and switch the startup type from Manual to Automatic.

You can also change the above settings with the `sc config` command.

## 2.4 Removing Setup

Describes how to removing setup the Connection Manager.

L

### Linux

No work is required on the client side.

On the server side, drop watchdog extension by `DROP EXTENSION` statement and remove it from `shared_preload_libraries`.

Example)

```
postgres=# DROP EXTENSION watchdog;  
DROP EXTENSION
```

W

### Windows

The following work is required on the client side.

1. Unregister Windows service

Cancel the `conmgr` process registered in the Windows service.

In unregister mode of the `cm_ctl` command, specify the registered service name to cancel the `conmgr` process of the Windows service.

Example)

An execution example is shown when the registered service name is "conmgr".

```
> cm_ctl unregister -N "conmgr"
```



### Note

Execute the command as a Connection Manager administrator user with "Administrator" privileges. Execute the command from the [Administrator: Command Prompt] window. Right-click [Command Prompt], and then select [Run as administrator] from the menu to display the [Administrator: Command Prompt] window.

## 2. Deletion of registration for event log

If you are outputting to the event log in "[2.1.1.2 Preparing for Output to the Event Log](#)", delete the registered event source name.

Example)

```
> regsvr32 /u /i:"conmgr" "c:\Program Files\Fujitsu\fsepv<x>server64\lib\pgevent.dll"
```

## For a multi-version installation

If the conmgr process created using this package is configured to output the error log to the event log, re-register the default event source name using the DLL pathname that was saved in "[2.1.1.2 Preparing for Output to the Event Log](#)".

On the server side, use the DROP EXTENSION statement to remove the watchdog extension and remove the watchdog from shared\_preload\_libraries.

Example)

```
postgres=# DROP EXTENSION watchdog;  
DROP EXTENSION
```

## Chapter 3 Using from an Application

Describes how to use the Connection Manager from an application.

### 3.1 Connection Method

When connecting to the instance using ConnectionManager, specify the following values in the connection parameters of the application. Application connection parameters are parameters that specify the database IP address, host name, port number, etc., which are originally specified when connecting to the database from the application. For example, when using libpq, specify "localhost" for the host parameter and specify the port number on which the connmgr process listens for the port parameter.

Connection parameters not shown here are used directly by the instance in the second stage of the connection, connecting to the instance (connecting to an instance without the Connection Manager), and the connmgr process does not check or use it.

#### Connection destination address

Specify "localhost". Unix domain sockets are not allowed.

It is possible to connect to a remote connmgr process, but it should not be used for other purposes except such as testing. This is because there is no mechanism between the application and the connmgr process to detect the remote server down or the network link down, making the Connection Manager meaningless.

#### Port number

Specify the value specified for the port parameter in connmgr.conf.

#### Connection destination instance attributes

Follow the "Target server" in the application connection switch feature. Refer to "Target server" in "Connection Information for the Application Connection Switch Feature" in the "Application Development Guide" for information on the target server in the application connection switch feature.



Connection Manager cannot be used if preferPrimary is specified for targetServerType when using the JDBC driver.

### 3.2 How to Detect Instance Errors

Only special if you are using libpq's asynchronous communication method. For additional discovery methods, refer to "Errors when an Application Connection Switch Occurs and Corresponding Actions" of the for each client driver in the "Application Development Guide". If the connmgr process goes down while accessing it, or if the connmgr process tries to establish a SQL connection while it is down, the same error is returned as if the instance went down.

### 3.3 How to Use in libpq

libpq provides very detailed communication control. Therefore, to detect a heartbeat error through the connmgr process, you may need to modify the existing application logic.



Refer to "libpq - C Library" in the PostgreSQL Documentation on functions described below.

### 3.3.1 How to Specify Multiple Connection Destinations

---

The host parameter or hostaddr parameter in the connection string not only specifies the destination of one conmgr process, but can also be a mixture of destinations of other conmgr processes and postmaster. In this case, the connections are tried in the order listed.

For example, if the connection string specifies conmgr1, conmgr2 in that order, and if conmgr1 does not know the server for the attribute specified in target\_session\_attrs parameter, it queries conmgr2 for the destination. And, for example, if postmaster1, conmgr1 is specified, it will attempt to connect directly to the database instance pointed to by postmaster1. If this fails, query conmgr1 for a connection.

### 3.3.2 Using the Asynchronous Connection Method

---

An asynchronous connection method is to use a function like PQconnectStart() instead of a function like PQconnectdb (). PQconnectStart() returns without synchronizing the completion of the connection to the database. The user application must then monitor the sockets returned by PQsocket() to be readable or writable, for example by using the poll() system call, according to the values required by the return value of PQconnectPoll().

With the Connection Manager, the socket returned by PQsocket() may change after a call to PQconnectPoll(), so be sure to reacquire the socket that you want to give to the poll() system call using PQsocket(). This behavior is similar to simply specifying multiple hosts in the connection string without using the Connection Manager.

### 3.3.3 Using an Asynchronous Communication Method

---

An asynchronous communication method is one in which the application returns control without waiting for a response from the database, and PQsetnonblocking() is used to asynchronize completion of transmission or completion of receipt of all results. Instead of using a function like PQexec(), use a function like PQsendQuery(). In this method, the user application monitors the socket that connects to the database returned by PQsocket(), for example, by using the poll() system call.

For example, if the link to the database goes down, simply monitoring the socket returned by PQsocket with the poll() system call will not detect it.

However, it is possible to detect the reception of database anomaly detection packets sent from the conmgr process, for example, by monitoring the reception of data on the socket (POLLIN) connecting to the conmgr process returned by [PQcmSocket\(\)](#). Once a reception is detected, the user application need not directly manipulate the packet. By calling something like PQgetResult() or PQconsumeInput() according to the existing application logic, it behaves as if the connection were disconnected. Refer to "Errors when an Application Connection Switch Occurs and Corresponding Actions" in the Application Development Guide on SQLSTATE returned, etc. If you are not using the Connection Manager, PQcmSocket() returns -1.

### 3.3.4 Behavior of PQhost() or PQhostaddr() or PQport()

---

PQhost(), PQhostaddr() or PQport() typically return a host parameter or hostaddr parameter or port parameter specified in the connection string by the user application. However, if you specify a connection destination for the conmgr process, the destination for the conmgr process you specify will be changed to the database connection destination information provided by the conmgr process before the connection is completed. This behavior is similar to simply specifying multiple hosts in the connection string without using the Connection Manager.

### 3.3.5 Behavior of PQstatus()

---

If you are using an asynchronous connection method, you can monitor the intermediate state of the connection to the database with PQstatus(). If you are using the Connection Manager, the enum value returned by PQstatus() is appended with the following:



```
CONNECTION_AWAITING_CMRESPONSE  
/ * Waiting for a response from the conmgr process * /
```

### 3.3.6 PQcmSocket()

---

You can get a socket that leads to the conmgr process. It returns a value equal to or more than 0 for a valid socket, or -1 if you are not connected to the conmgr process.

```
int PQcmSocket(const PGconn *conn);
```

## 3.4 How to Use in ODBC Driver

---

Describes points to note when using the Connection Manager using the ODBC driver.

### 3.4.1 Behavior of SQLGetInfo()

---

When SQL\_SERVER\_NAME is specified in the argument InfoType, SQLGetInfo () normally returns the contents set in Servername or Server of the data source. However, if you specify a connection destination for the conmgr process, the destination for the conmgr process you specify will be changed to the database connection destination information provided by the conmgr process before the connection is completed. This behavior is similar to simply specifying multiple hosts in the connection string without using the Connection Manager.

## 3.5 How to Use in JDBC Driver

---

Describes points to note when using the Connection Manager using the JDBC driver.

### 3.5.1 Behavior of loadBalanceHosts Parameter

---

The loadBalanceHosts parameter is a connection parameter for the JDBC driver to use the load balancing feature. You can specify whether to use the load balancing feature by setting this parameter. However, Connection Manager provides a unique load balancing feature that users cannot specify whether to use or not. Therefore, even if the user sets the loadBalanceHosts parameter to disable the JDBC driver load balancing feature, the Connection Manager load balancing feature is always enabled when connecting to the database via the Connection Manager.

## Appendix A System Views

### A.1 pgx\_stat\_watchdog

A row in this view corresponds to conmgr process, which is connected to watchdog process. Additional columns may be added in future versions versions.

Column	Type	Description
conmgr_addr	inet	IP address of conmgr process.
conmgr_port	integer	The conmgr (ephemeral) port number that conmgr process is using to communicate with watchdog process. This is not the port number to be set in conmgr.conf.
heartbeat_interval	integer	The interval at which heartbeat packets are sent to and from this conmgr process. The unit is seconds.
heartbeat_timeout	integer	The timeout value for the heartbeat to and from this conmgr process. The unit is seconds.

# Index

---

## [B]

backend_host*	6
backend_hostaddr*	7
backend_port*	7

## [C]

conmgr.conf	6
conmgr process	2

## [E]

event_source	9
--------------	---

## [H]

Heartbeat monitoring feature	1
heartbeat_connect_interval	8
heartbeat_connect_timeout	8
heartbeat_interval	7
heartbeat_timeout	8

## [L]

log_destination	9
log_min_messages	9

## [M]

max_connections (integer)	9
max_connections	11

## [P]

pgx_stat_watchdog	19
port	6
postgresql.conf	11
PQcnnSocket()	18

## [S]

shared_preload_libraries	11
syslog_facility	9
syslog_ident	9

## [T]

terminator process	2
Transparent connection support feature	1

## [W]

watchdog.check_attr_interval	11
watchdog.max_heartbeat_connections	11
watchdog.port	11
watchdog process	2
watchdog_port*	7

# Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 16

## Reference

Windows/Linux

J2UL-2960-01ENZ0(00)  
July 2024

# Preface

---

## Purpose of this document

This document is a command reference, and explains Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres commands and options with features expanded on from PostgreSQL.

## Intended readers

This document is aimed at people who manage and operate Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres. Readers of this document are also assumed to have general knowledge of:

- PostgreSQL

- SQL

- Linux

- Windows

L

W

## Structure of this document

This document is structured as follows:

### [Chapter 1 Command List and Specification Format](#)

Lists commands and describes their specification format.

### [Chapter 2 Client Commands](#)

Explains options not listed in "PostgreSQL Client Applications" in the PostgreSQL Documentation.

### [Chapter 3 Server Commands](#)

Explains commands and options not listed in "PostgreSQL Server Applications" in the PostgreSQL Documentation.

### [Chapter 4 Mirroring Controller Commands](#)

Explains the Mirroring Controller commands.

### [Chapter 5 Connection Manager Commands](#)

Explains the Connection Manager commands.

## How to read this document

Examples in this document are predominantly for UNIX/Linux.

For Windows, replace values (such as paths in the examples) as appropriate.

## Export restrictions

If this document is to be exported or provided overseas, confirm legal requirements for the Foreign Exchange and Foreign Trade Act as well as other laws and regulations, including U.S. Export Administration Regulations, and follow the required procedures.

## Issue date and version

Edition 1.0: July 2024
------------------------

## Copyright

Copyright 2015-2024 Fujitsu Limited

# Contents

---

Chapter 1 Command List and Specification Format.....	1
1.1 Command List.....	1
1.1.1 Client Commands.....	1
1.1.2 Server Commands.....	1
1.1.3 Mirroring Controller Commands.....	1
1.1.4 Connection Manager Commands.....	2
1.2 Command Specification Format.....	2
Chapter 2 Client Commands.....	3
2.1 pg_dumpall.....	3
2.2 pgx_loader.....	3
Chapter 3 Server Commands.....	6
3.1 pg_ctl.....	6
3.2 pgx_dmpall.....	6
3.3 pgx_fjqssinf.....	8
3.4 pgx_keystore.....	9
3.5 pgx_rcvall.....	11
3.6 postgres.....	13
Chapter 4 Mirroring Controller Commands.....	15
4.1 mc_arb.....	15
4.2 mc_ctl.....	17
Chapter 5 Connection Manager Commands.....	22
5.1 cm_ctl.....	22

# Chapter 1 Command List and Specification Format

This chapter lists commands and describes their specification format.

## 1.1 Command List

This chapter lists commands and options not explained in "PostgreSQL Client Applications" or in "PostgreSQL Server Applications" in the PostgreSQL Documentation.

### 1.1.1 Client Commands

The commands below have options not explained in "PostgreSQL Client Applications" in the PostgreSQL Documentation.

Command	Functional overview
<a href="#">pg_dumpall</a>	Extract a PostgreSQL database cluster into a script file

The command below is not explained in "Client Applications" in the PostgreSQL Documentation.


Command	Functional overview
<a href="#">pgx_loader</a>	Loads data from an external file into a PostgreSQL table.

### 1.1.2 Server Commands

The commands below have options not explained in "PostgreSQL Server Applications" in the PostgreSQL Documentation.


Command	Functional overview
<a href="#">pg_ctl</a>	Initialize, start, stop, or control a PostgreSQL server
<a href="#">postgres</a>	PostgreSQL database server

The commands below are not explained in "PostgreSQL Server Applications" in the PostgreSQL Documentation.

Command	Functional overview
<a href="#">pgx_dmpall</a>	Backs up the data directory, tablespaces, and configuration files.
 <a href="#">pgx_fjqssinf</a>	Collects failure investigation data (SLES 15 only)
<a href="#">pgx_keystore</a>	Manages keystore
<a href="#">pgx_rcvall</a>	Recovers the data directory, tablespaces, and configuration files.

### 1.1.3 Mirroring Controller Commands

Mirroring Controller has the following commands:

Command	Functional overview
<a href="#">mc_arb</a>	 Start, stop and display the status of the Mirroring Controller arbitration process.

Command	Functional overview
	<b>W</b> Start, stop and display the status of the Mirroring Controller arbitration process, or register and unregister as a Windows service.
mc_ctl	<b>L</b> Start and stop Mirroring Controller, switch/disconnect the server, or display the server status. <b>W</b> Start and stop Mirroring Controller, switch/disconnect the server, display the server status, or register and unregister as a Windows service.

### 1.1.4 Connection Manager Commands

---

Connection Manager has the following commands:

Command	Functional overview
cm_ctl	Start, stop or display the status of the conmgr process

## 1.2 Command Specification Format

---

The table below shows the command specification format.

Item	Explanation
[ ]	Indicates optional element.
...	Indicates that the item can be specified repeatedly.



## Chapter 2 Client Commands

This chapter explains options not listed in "PostgreSQL Client Applications" in the PostgreSQL Documentation.

### 2.1 pg\_dumpall

---

#### Name

`pg_dumpall` -- Extract a PostgreSQL database cluster into a script file

#### Synopsis

```
pg_dumpall [connectionOption...] [option...]
```

#### Options

`--no-tablespace-encryption`

Do not output commands to encrypt tablespaces. Running the generated SQL script will restore the originally encrypted data without being encrypted.

#### See

Refer to "pg\_dumpall" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for details.

### 2.2 pgx\_loader

---

#### Name

`pgx_loader` --Loads data from a file into a PostgreSQL table.

#### Overview

```
pgx_loader load -c command [options...]
```

```
pgx_loader recovery -t table
```

#### Description

The `pgx_loader` command loads data from an external file into PostgreSQL tables, and commits or rolls back transactions prepared during data load.

In load mode, data is loaded at high speed by executing the COPY FROM command specified in *command* at a certain degree of parallelism. If load is completed successfully, the message below is output to the standard output.

```
LOAD count
Note: count is the number of rows loaded.
```

Refer the `pgx_stat_progress_loader` view to see the progress of the load process.

In recovery mode, commit or rollback of transactions prepared during data load is performed.



See

.....  
Refer to "pgx\_stat\_progress\_loader" in the Operation Guide for `pgx_stat_progress_loader` view.  
.....

## Options

-a

--echo-sql

Display the executed command in the standard output.

-c *command*

--copy-command=*command*

Specify the COPY FROM command to be executed. If STDIN is specified for the FROM clause, data will be loaded from the standard input. In this case, SQL superuser privileges (or having one of the roles `pg_read_server_files` or `pg_execute_server_program`) are not required, because local user access privileges will be used for external files and external programs, instead of database server access privileges.

"binary" cannot be specified for the FORMAT option of the COPY FROM command specified in this option. Therefore, input files in binary format cannot be specified.

The FREEZE option cannot be specified for the COPY FROM command specified in this option.



See

.....  
Refer to "COPY" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on the COPY FROM command.  
.....

-j *number-of-jobs*

--jobs=*number-of-jobs*

Specify the number of background workers (parallel workers) that the COPY COMMAND should use to simultaneously perform data conversion, table creation, and index creation. This option can dramatically reduce the time for loading a large amount of data on instances that runs on multiple processor machines.

The optimal value depends on the server, client, and network configurations. The number of CPU cores and disk configuration also affect the optimal value. The number of CPU cores of the server is recommended as the initial value to try. Naturally, if a value that is too large is used, performance degradation will occur due to thrashing and context switching.

Specify a value from 2 to 128. The default is 2.

-t *table*

--table=*table*

Complete the prepared transactions only for the specified table.

-?

--help

Show how to use pgx\_loader command line arguments, and exit.

The command line options below control the database connection parameters.

-d *connstr*

--dbname=*connstr*

Specify the database name to connect to.

If this option is not specified, the PGDATABASE environment variable will be used. If the environment variable is not set, your operating-system user name will be used.

-h *host*

--host=*host*

Specify the host name of the machine the database server runs on. If the specified value starts with a slash, it will be used as the directory for a Unix domain socket.

If this option is not specified, the PGHOST environment variable will be used. If the environment variable is not set, it will be considered a Unix domain socket connection.

**-p *port***  
**--port=*port***

Specify the TCP port to be used by the server to monitor the connection, or extension of the local Unix domain socket file.

If this option is not specified, the PGPORT environment variable will be use. If the environment variables is not set, 27500 will be used.

**-U *username***  
**--username=*username***

User name for connection to the database.

**-w**  
**--no-password**

Never prompt for the password. If the server requires password authentication but other means (such as a .pgpass file) are not available, the connection attempt will fail. This option can be useful in batch jobs, scripts, and so on, where no user is present to enter a password.

**-W**  
**--password**

Force pgx\_loader to prompt for the password before connecting to the database. This option is never essential, since pgx\_loader will automatically prompt for the password if the server demands password authentication. However, pgx\_loader will waste a connection attempt finding out if the server requires a password. In some cases it is worth specifying this option to avoid the extra connection attempt.

## Diagnostics

### load mode

0: Normal exit

Other than 0: Abnormal exit

### recovery mode

0: There are no prepared transactions that must be completed

3: A prepared transaction was committed

4: A prepared transaction was rolled back

Other than the above: Abnormal exit



### Note

The order of the table rows loaded by pgx\_loader may not match the order of the file lines. This is because the file lines will have been inserted into the table in parallel, by multiple parallel workers.

## Example

The example below loads the file /path/to/data.csv (2000 records) into table tbl using a degree of parallelism of 3.

```
$ pgx_loader load -j 3 -c "COPY tbl FROM '/path/to/data.csv' WITH CSV"
LOAD 2000
```

The example below reads the file /path/to/data.csv (2000 records) from the standard input and loads into table tbl using a degree of parallelism of 3.

```
$ pgx_loader load -j 3 -c "COPY tbl FROM STDIN WITH CSV" < /path/to/data.csv
LOAD 2000
```

The example below completes the transactions prepared for table tbl.

```
$ pgx_loader recovery -t tbl
```

## Chapter 3 Server Commands

This chapter explains commands and options not listed in "PostgreSQL Server Applications" in the PostgreSQL Documentation.

### 3.1 pg\_ctl

#### Name

pg\_ctl -- Initialize, start, stop, or control a PostgreSQL server

#### Synopsis

```
pg_ctl start [-D datadir] [-l filename] [-W] [-t seconds] [-s]
           [-o options] [-p path] [-c] [--keystore-passphrase | --kms-secret]

pg_ctl restart [-D datadir] [-m s[mart] | f[ast] | i[mmediate]]
              [-W] [-t seconds] [-s] [-o options] [-c]
              [--keystore-passphrase | --kms-secret]
```

#### Options

--keystore-passphrase

Prompt for the passphrase to open the keystore when using a file-based keystore.



--kms-secret

When you use a key management system as a keystore, you are prompted to enter secret information to open the keystore.

#### See

Refer to "pg\_ctl" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for details.

### 3.2 pgx\_dmpall

#### Name

pgx\_dmpall - Backs up the data directory, tablespaces, and configuration files.

#### Synopsis

```
pgx_dmpall [option...]
```

#### Description

The pgx\_dmpall command backs up the data directory, tablespaces, and configuration files. The backup data is stored in the directory specified by backup\_destination parameter of postgresql.conf. The pgx\_dmpall command also deletes archived Write Ahead Logs (WAL) that are no longer necessary for recovery when the backup completes successfully.

#### Options

-c

This option only backs up configuration files. The configuration files are as follows:

- postgresql.conf (postgresql.conf)
- File for host-based authentication (pg\_hba.conf)
- Configuration file for ident authentication (pg\_ident.conf)

If an external reference, such as 'include' in postgresql.conf, is set, the reference destination files are also backed up.

**-C fast|spread**

**--checkpoint=fast|spread**

Sets checkpoint mode to fast or spread (default).

If fast is specified, the checkpoint processing at the start of backup becomes quick, but the impact on performance of running applications gets larger due to intense I/O. In spread mode, the impact on applications is smaller but the backup takes longer, because the checkpoint is performed slowly.

**-D *datadir***

Specify the data directory. If this option is omitted, the value of the environment variable PGDATA is used.

**-f *configFile***

Specify the postgresql.conf configuration file. This option is set if the data directory and the configuration file set in the 'data\_directory' parameter of the postgresql.conf file are running in separate directories.

**-P *tablespacesListFile***

**--tablespaces-list-file=*tablespacesListFile***

Specify the full path of the file containing the names of the tablespaces to be backed up using the copy command, using less than 1024 bytes.

The file format is described below:

*tablespaceName*<newline>

*tablespaceName*<newline>

...

Tablespaces not listed in the specified file are backed up to the backup storage directory. If this option is not specified, all tablespaces are backed up using the copy command.

This option can be specified if the -Y option has been specified, and it is used to limit the tablespaces backed up using the copy command.

**-U *username***

**--username=*username***

Specify the user name of the database superuser. This defaults to the name of the effective user running pgx\_dmpall.

**-Y *copyCommandFile***

**--copy-command=*copyCommandFile***

Specify the full path of the file of the copy command for backup, using less than 1024 bytes. This option cannot be specified together with the -c option.

**-w**

**--no-password**

Never issue a password prompt. If the server requires password authentication and a password is not available by other means such as a .pgpass file, the connection attempt will fail. This option can be useful in batch jobs and scripts where no user is present to enter a password.

**-W**

**--password**

Force pgx\_dmpall to prompt for a password before connecting to a database.

This option is never essential, since pgx\_dmpall will automatically prompt for a password if the server demands password authentication. However, pgx\_dmpall will waste a connection attempt finding out that the server wants a password. In some cases it is worth typing -W to avoid the extra connection attempt.

**--maintenance-db=*dbname***

Specifies the name of the database to connect to. If not specified, the postgres database will be used; if that does not exist, template1 will be used.

Any database can be specified as long as it can be connected to.

#### **--exclude-copy-cluster**

Excludes a database cluster from backup via the copy command. This option can be specified if the -Y option has been specified. If this option is not specified, the database cluster will be backed up using the copy command.

### **Environment**

#### **PGDATA**

Specify the data directory. You can overwrite using the -D option.

### **Diagnostics**

0: Normal end

Other than 0: Abnormal end

### **Notes**

This command can only be executed when the database server is running.

Execute this command as a PostgreSQL user account.

Do not update or delete files in the backup storage directory. Otherwise, you may not be able to recover the database.

Do not store other files in the backup storage directory.

This command uses one database connection. To establish a connection, this command uses the IPv4 loopback address 127.0.0.1 on Windows, and the UNIX domain socket on other operating systems. Therefore, permit these connections in pg\_hba.conf.

This command cannot be executed on the standby server.

### **Example**

In the following example, the data directory, tablespaces, and configuration files are backed up. At this time, stored WALs are no longer necessary because the backups are destroyed.

```
$ pgx_dmpall
```

### **Related item**

pgx\_rcvall

## **3.3 pgx\_fjqssinf**

---

### **Name**

pgx\_fjqssinf - Collects failure investigation data.

### **Synopsis**

```
pgx_fjqssinf -i {1|2|3} [-w directory]
```

### **Description**

When the cause of a trouble that occurred during the construction or operation of the environment is not identified, information for the initial investigation is collected. The collected investigation information is created in the destination directory as pgx\_fjqssinf\_YYYYMMDD\_HHMMSS/.

## Options

**-i {1|2|3}**

Specifies the incident of the trouble that occurred. 1 is specified for process error, 2 for process result error, and 3 for no response. This option must be specified for the database server to gather information. Specify 1 when collecting information with the arbitration server.

**-w directory**

Specifies the destination directory for the collected data. The default is /tmp.

## Environment (When the information is collected by a database server)

**PGDATA**

Specifies the data directory.

**PGDATABASE**

Specifies the name of the database to connect to. Any database that can be connected to may be specified.

**PGPORT**

Specifies the port number of the instance. This should not be specified if the default port number (27500) has not been changed.

**PGUSER**

Specifies the user name of the database superuser. The database superuser must be configured to allow client authentication.

**MCCONTROLDIR**

Specifies the Mirroring Controller management directory. This should only be specified when database multiplexing operation is set up.

## Environment (When information is collected by an arbitration server)

**ARBCONTROLDIR**

Specifies the management directory for the Mirroring Controller arbitration process.

**ARBUSER**

Specifies the OS user that initialized the Mirroring Controller arbitration process.

## Diagnostics

0: Normal end

Other than 0: Abnormal end

## Notes

This command must be executed as a superuser (root) account.

## Example

Below is an example of collecting information for initial investigation in the event of a process failure.

```
# pgx_fjqssinf -i 1
```

Below is an example of collecting information for an initial investigation by an arbitration server.

```
# pgx_fjqssinf -i 1
```

## 3.4 pgx\_keystore

---

## Name

pgx\_keystore -- Manages keystore

## Synopsis

pgx\_keystore [-a|--enable-auto-open] [*option...*] *keystore\_location*

pgx\_keystore [-s|--obfuscate-secret] [*option...*]

## Description

pgx\_keystore enables auto-open of a keystore.

## Options

To enable automatic opening using a file-based keystore

-a

--enable-auto-open

Enables auto-open of a keystore. This allows the keystore to open automatically without entering the passphrase when the database server starts.

When auto-open is enabled, an obfuscated copy keystore.aks is created in the same directory where the keystore file keystore.ks is stored. To disable auto-open, delete keystore.aks.

-P *passphrase*

--passphrase=*passphrase*

Specify the passphrase to open the keystore. If this option is omitted, the prompt to enter the passphrase is displayed.

*keystore\_location*

Specify the absolute or relative path of the keystore file.



To enable automatic opening using a key management system as the keystore

-s

--obfuscate-secret

Obfuscates the secret information needed to connect to the key management system. By specifying obfuscated private information as an authentication option in the key management system connection information file, the keystore is opened automatically when the database server is started without entering the key management system credentials.

--secret = *secret*

Specify the secret information required to connect to the key management system. If you omit this option, you are prompted for the secret.

-o *obfuscated-secret-file*

Specifies the file that contains the obfuscated secret. If the file already exists, the command terminates abnormally without overwriting it.

## Diagnostics

0: Normal exit

Other than 0: Abnormal exit

## Notes

This command can be executed whether the database server is running or stopped. It does not connect to the database server.

This command does not connect to the key management system.



## Example

Enables automatic keystore opening when using a file-based keystore.

```
$ pgx_keystore -a /key/store/location/keystore.ks
```



Enable automatic keystore opening by obfuscating sensitive credentials when using the key management system as a keystore.

```
$ pgx_keystore -s -o /example/keyphrase.ksc
Enter secret:
```

## 3.5 pgx\_rcvall

---

### Name

pgx\_rcvall - Recovers the data directory, tablespaces, and configuration files.

### Synopsis

```
pgx_rcvall [option...]
```

### Description

The `pgx_rcvall` command recovers the data directory, tablespaces, and configuration files using the data that was backed up with `pgx_dmpall` command and archived Write-Ahead-Log (WAL). If none of the options that indicate the recovery point is specified, all archived WAL are applied and the data will be recovered to the latest point.

### Options

**-B *backupdir***

Specify the backup storage directory. If the data directory is damaged, this option cannot be omitted.

**-D *datadir***

Specify the data directory. If this option is omitted, the value of the environment variable PGDATA is used.

**-e *targetTime***

Specify this option to recover the data as of the specified date and time.

*targetTime*

Specify the time at which the data is recovered. The format is as follows:

```
"YYYY-MM-DD HH:MM:SS"
```

**-l**

This option displays a list of the backup data information in the backup storage directory that was obtained using the `pgx_dmpall` command. If the `pgx_dmpall` command was executed using the copy command (-Y option) for backup, the resources backed up using the copy command will also be listed. This cannot be specified together with -p, -e or -n option.

**-n *restorePoint***

Specify this option to recover the data to the specified restore point. Restore points are created with SQL function `pg_create_restore_point`. If multiple restore points with the same names were created, the first one after the backup was taken is used for recovery. If the specified restore point does not exist, the recovery fails. This cannot be specified together with -e or -p option.

**-p**

Specify this option to recover the data as of the time when the last backup completed. This cannot be specified together with -e or -n option.

-x

Specify this option if you do not want to include transactions committed at the time specified in the -e option as part of the recovery.

-Y *copyCommandFile*

--copy-command=*copyCommandFile*

Specify the full path of the file of the copy command for recovery, using less than 1024 bytes. This option cannot be specified together with the -l option.

--keystore-passphrase

Prompt for the passphrase to open the keystore when using a file-based keystore.



--kms-secret

When you use a key management system as a keystore, you are prompted to enter secret information to open the keystore.

--view-results-of-copying

Output the backup information file that was written by the copy command executed via the pgx\_dmpall command. This option cannot be specified together with the -l, -p, -e, -n, or -Y option.

## Environment

PGDATA

Specify the data directory. You can overwrite using the -D option.

PGPORT

Specify the port number for connecting to the database.

PGUSER

Specify the user name of the database superuser. This defaults to the name of the effective user running pgx\_dmpall.

## Diagnosis

0: Normal exit

Other than 0: Abnormal exit

## Backup data information

Date

Date the backup data was created using the pgx\_dmpall command.

Dir

This is the name of the directory in the backup storage directory that is used to store the backup data.

Directory naming format: Time format (YYYY-MM-DD\_HH-MM-SS)

Status

This is the status of the pgx\_dmpall command backup data.

COMPLETE: Complete

INCOMPLETE: Incomplete

## Resources backed up by the copy command

List of resources that were backed up by the copy command executed via the pgx\_dmpall command.

If there are resources that were backed up by the copy command, then database clusters ('pg\_data') or tablespace names will be listed, delimited by header and halfwidth comma.

## Notes

This command can only be executed when the database server is stopped, except when it is executed with -l option.

Execute this command as a PostgreSQL user account.

Use backup data that was taken from the recovery target data directory.

Before executing this command, disconnect all application database connections. Additionally, do not connect to the database during recovery.

The configuration files are restored from those files that were taken by the last pgx\_dmpall (including -c option).

This command connects to the database to determine whether the recovery has completed. So ensure that you set the port number with PGPORT environment variable in the environment where multiple instances exist.

Match the OS timezone setting when running pgx\_dmpall/pgx\_rcvall to the timezone specified by timezone parameter in postgresql.conf.

Otherwise, data might be recovered to an unexpected time when -e or -p is specified.

If you recover to a past point, a new timeline (history of database updates) begins at that point. That recovery point is the latest point in the new timeline when the recovery is completed. If you subsequently recover to the latest point, the database updates in the new timeline will be replayed.

Valid restore points are the ones that were created in the timeline where the backup had been taken. That means that if you recover to a past point, those restore points created thereafter are unavailable. Therefore, take a backup when you have restored the past data desired.

If the pgx\_dmpall command was executed using the copy command (-Y option) for backup, it is necessary to execute this command using the copy command (-Y option) for recovery. However, because the list of resources (database cluster or tablespace) that were backed up using the copy command is recorded in the backup directory, there is no need to specify the target resources when executing this command. The -I option can be used to check the target resources for which a backup is retrieved using the copy command.

## Example

In the following example, the data directory, tablespaces, and configuration files are recovered.

```
$ pgx_rcvall -B /home/pgsql/Backupdir
```

In the following example, the data directory and tablespaces are recovered at 10:00:00 on 01-02-2022. The configuration files are recovered at the point at which the last of the data is obtained.

```
$ pgx_rcvall -B /home/pgsql/Backupdir -e "2022-02-01 10:00:00"
```

In the following example, the data directory and tablespaces are recovered up to the time of restore point "before\_match\_20220210\_1". The configuration files are restored from the latest backup.

```
$ pgx_rcvall -B /home/pgsql/Backupdir -n before_match_20220210_1
```

In the following example, the obtained backup data information in the backup storage directory is displayed in a list.

```
$ pgx_rcvall -l
```

## Related item

pgx\_dmpall

## 3.6 postgres

---

### Name

postgres -- PostgreSQL database server

## Synopsis

```
postgres [option...]
```

## Options

**-K**

Prompt for the passphrase to open the keystore. This option works in single-user mode only, so you must also specify the `--single` option, as shown below:

```
postgres --single -K
```

## See

Refer to "postgres" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for details.

# Chapter 4 Mirroring Controller Commands

This chapter explains the Mirroring Controller commands.

## 4.1 mc\_arb

### Name

L

mc\_arb - Start, stop, and display the status of the Mirroring Controller arbitration process

W

mc\_arb - Start, stop, and display the status of the Mirroring Controller arbitration process, or register and unregister it as a Windows service

### Overview

```
mc_arb start [-M mcdir] [-w| -W]
```

```
mc_arb stop [-M mcdir] [-e]
```

```
mc_arb status [-M mcdir]
```

W

```
mc_arb register [-M mcdir] [-w| -W] -P password [-S a[uto] | d[emand]]  
mc_arb unregister [-M mcdir]
```

### Description

L

mc\_arb starts, stops, and displays the status of the Mirroring Controller arbitration process.

W

mc\_arb starts, stops, and displays the status of the Mirroring Controller arbitration process, or registers and unregisters it as a Windows service.

The start mode starts the Mirroring Controller arbitration process.

The stop mode stops the Mirroring Controller arbitration process.

The status mode displays the connection status of the Mirroring Controller arbitration process with the Mirroring Controller processes of the primary server and standby server.

W

The register mode registers the Mirroring Controller arbitration process as a Windows service. The -w and -W options can be used to start/stop the Mirroring Controller arbitration process through the Windows service, and when it executes the mc\_arb command, the specified option will take effect.

The unregister mode unregisters the Mirroring Controller arbitration process as a Windows service.

If the Mirroring Controller arbitration process has not been started on the server executing the command, stop mode and status mode will terminate with an error.

Additionally, if Mirroring Controller is forcibly stopped on the database server, it may take a few moments until the status mode displays the status of the server connection as offline.

L

This command can be executed by any user.

W

Execute this command as a user with administrator privileges (operating system user that belongs to the "Administrators" group).

### Options

-e

Specify this option to forcibly stop the Mirroring Controller arbitration process on the active server.

Specify this option to stop the Mirroring Controller arbitration process but keep Mirroring Controller running (to stop both, first stop Mirroring Controller of the database server, and then the Mirroring Controller arbitration process). This option can also be specified to halt the arbitration process (by stopping the Mirroring Controller arbitration process) when the fencing command called by the arbitration process becomes unresponsive.

**-M** *mcdir*

Specify the Mirroring Controller arbitration process management directory.

ASCII characters can be specified in the directory path.

If this option is omitted, the value of the environment variable ARBCONTROLDIR is used.

W

**-P** *password*

For the register mode, specify the password for the user who executed the command.

W

**-S** *a[uto] | d[emand]*

Specify the start type for the Windows service to be registered. You can choose auto or demand as the start type by specifying the entire word or just its first letter. The default is auto.

**-w**

Waits for operations to finish.

L

This option is the default of start mode.

W

This option is the default of start mode and register mode.

**-W**

Does not wait for operations to finish.

## Environment

ARBCONTROLDIR

Specify the Mirroring Controller arbitration process management directory.

ASCII characters can be specified in the directory path.

You can specify the -M option to override this value.

## Diagnostics

0: Normal end

Other than 0: Abnormal end

## Notes

If the Mirroring Controller arbitration process is forcibly stopped or communication between the command and the Mirroring Controller arbitration process is interrupted while the Mirroring Controller arbitration process is being stopped, a message that the command is being executed may be output and stopping may terminate in error, even though no other instances of the mc\_arb command are being executed.

To solve this issue, ensure that other instances of the mc\_arb command are not being executed before forcibly stopping the Mirroring Controller arbitration process.

W

Use the start mode and stop mode to start and stop the Windows service. Before being able to use these modes, use the register mode to register the Mirroring Controller arbitration process as a Windows service.

The mc\_arb command must be executed from "Administrator: Command Prompt". Right-click [Command Prompt], and then select [Run as administrator] from the context menu to display the [Administrator: Command Prompt] window.

## Example

L

Start the Mirroring Controller arbitration process.

```
$ mc_arb start -M /mcarb_dir/arbiter1
```

W

Start the Mirroring Controller arbitration process.

```
> mc_arb start -M D:\mcarb_dir\arbiter1
```

Display details of mc\_arb status

server_id	host	status
(1)	(2)	(3)

(1) Server identifier  
(2) Host name or IP address  
(3) Server connection status  
    online : Connected  
    offline : Disconnected

## 4.2 mc\_ctl

### Name

L

mc\_ctl - Start and stop Mirroring Controller, switch/disconnect the server, or display the server status.

W

mc\_ctl - Start and stop Mirroring Controller, switch/disconnect the server, display the server status, or register and unregister as a Windows service.

### Overview

```
mc_ctl start [-M mcdir] [-w| -W] [-f| -F] [--mc-only] [--async-connect-arbiter] [--local-server server_id]
```

```
mc_ctl stop [-M mcdir] [[-a] [--mc-only] | [-e][--local-server server_id]]
```

```
mc_ctl status [-M mcdir] [--arbiter] [--local-server server_id]
```

```
mc_ctl switch [-M mcdir] [--force [--no-fencing ]] [--local-server server_id]
```

```
mc_ctl detach [-M mcdir] [--no-fencing] [--local-server server_id]
```

```
mc_ctl enable-failover [-M mcdir] [--local-server server_id]
```

```
mc_ctl disable-failover [-M mcdir] [--local-server server_id]
```

W

```
mc_ctl register [-M mcdir] [-w| -W] [-f| -F] [--mc-only] -P password  
              [-S a[uto] | d[emand]] [--async-connect-arbiter] [--local-server server_id]
```

```
mc_ctl unregister [-M mcdir] [--local-server server_id]
```

### Description

L

mc\_ctl starts and stops Mirroring Controller, switches/disconnects the server, or displays the server status.

W

mc\_ctl starts and stops Mirroring Controller, switches/disconnects the server, displays the server status, or registers and unregisters as a Windows service.

The start mode starts Mirroring Controller. If the --mc-only option is omitted, the command starts a database instance.

The stop mode stops Mirroring Controller. If the --mc-only option is omitted, the database instance is stopped. If --mc-only option is not specified, database instance is also stopped. When executes on standby server without --mc-only, standby server will be detached from primary server.

The status mode displays the status of the servers, database instance processes, and disks monitored by Mirroring Controller. Additionally, if the --arbiter option is specified, Mirroring Controller arbitration process connection status is displayed.

The switch mode switches the primary server. When the server is switched, the database instance on the primary server stops, and the database instance on the standby server is upgraded to primary server and begins degrading operation. This mode can be executed on the primary server and standby server in an environment where the Mirroring Controller process can communicate with the Mirroring Controller process on the other server.

The detach mode forcibly disconnects the standby server. This mode is used to forcibly disconnect the other server when stopping of Mirroring Controller cannot be performed using stop mode (which requires login to the standby server). It can only be executed on the primary server.

The enable-failover mode enables automatic switching and disconnection.

The disable-failover mode disables automatic switching and disconnection.

**W** The register mode registers Mirroring Controller as a Windows service. The -w, -W, -f, -F, --mc-only, --async-connect-arbiter, and --local-server options are used when Mirroring Controller is started and stopped as a Windows service. If the mc\_ctl command is used to start and stop Mirroring Controller, the option specified in the command will be valid.

The unregister mode unregisters Mirroring Controller as a Windows service.

**L** If Mirroring Controller has not been started on the server that executes the command, commands for any mode other than the start mode, and status mode.

Execute this command as an instance administrator.

**W** If Mirroring Controller has not been started on the server that executes the command, commands for any mode other than the start mode, status mode, register mode, and unregister mode terminate with an error.

Execute this command as a user with the "Administrator" privilege (operating system user ID that belongs to the Administrator group).

Until you start Mirroring Controller of standby server after starting Mirroring Controller of the primary server, operation can be started with only the primary server. Standby server is incorporated when you start the Mirroring Controller of standby server, and you should be able to operate in the multiplexing configuration.

## Options

-a

Specify this option to stop Mirroring Controller on all servers.

-e

Specify this option to forcibly stop Mirroring Controller on the active server.

-f

Specify this option to enable automatic switching and disconnection of Mirroring Controller immediately after startup.

**L** This option is the default of start mode.

**W** This option is the default of start mode and register mode.

-F

Specify this option to disable automatic switching and disconnection immediately after startup of Mirroring Controller.



#### --async-connect-arbiter

Specify this option to connect the Mirroring Controller start process asynchronously to the Mirroring Controller arbitration process. This option can be specified to forcibly start Mirroring Controller if the Mirroring Controller arbitration process is not started.

Specify this option if using the Mirroring Controller arbitration server.

#### --arbiter

Specify this option to display the connection status of the Mirroring Controller arbitration process. This option can be specified if using status mode.

Specify this option if using the Mirroring Controller arbitration server.

#### --local-server *server\_id*

If you run a simulation build of the primary and standby servers in a single server (for system testing, for example), specify this option to identify the server to be operated.

For *server\_id*, specify the server identifier specified in the network.conf file. ASCII characters other than single-byte space can be specified in the server identifier. The operations will be executed as if the user has logged in to *server\_id*.

#### --mc-only

Specify this option to start and stop only Mirroring Controller processes. At the start mode, this option can be specified only while the database instance is running. If this option is omitted, the database instance is simultaneously started and stopped.

#### -M *mcdir*

Specify the Mirroring Controller management directory.

ASCII characters can be specified in the directory path.

If this option is omitted, the value of the environment variable MCONTROLDIR is used.

#### --force

Switching with this option specified can only be specified on the standby server. This option is used to perform switching forcibly after performing fencing on the primary server if communication with the Mirroring Controller process of the other server is not possible (due to a network issue between database servers or unresponsive server, for example), thus preventing normal switching. However, if the --no-fencing option is specified, fencing will not be performed on the primary server.

#### --no-fencing

When switching or disconnection is executed with the --force option specified, fencing of the server to be degraded is circumvented. Therefore, it is necessary for the user to isolate the server to be degraded from the cluster system in advance.

W

#### -P *password*

For the register mode, specify the password for the user who executed the command.

W

#### -S *a[uto] | d[emand]*

Specify the start type for the Windows service to be registered. You can choose auto or demand as the start type by specifying the entire word or just its first letter. The default is auto.

#### -w

Waits for operations to finish.

L

This option is the default of start mode.

W

This option is the default of start mode and register mode.

#### -W

Does not wait for operations to finish.

## Environment variable

### MCCONTROLDIR

Specifies the Mirroring Controller management directory.

ASCII characters can be specified in the directory path.

You can specify the -M option to override this value.

## Diagnostics

0: Normal end

Other: Abnormal end

## Notes

The message under execution might be output though the mc\_ctl command is not being executed and, besides, it terminate abnormally when the server is downed while processing execution of this command, an automatic switch, and an automatic separation, and the communication between a primary server and the standby server is cut off. Besides, restart Mirroring Controller to solve this problem after confirming that the mc\_ctl command is not in progress. Afterwards, execute a necessary operation.

If a time-out error occurs when the mc\_ctl command is in progress, the messages may be different from the processes. Take the actions described in the "Action" section of the message.

Automatic switching and disconnection by the enable-failover mode, the disable-failover mode, and the start mode can be enabled/disabled only while Mirroring Controller is running. Therefore, if you want to enable/disable automatic switching and disconnection on starting, specify the -f option or -F option each time you start Mirroring Controller.

**W** Use the start mode and stop mode to start and stop the Windows service. To do this, use the register mode to register Mirroring Controller as a Windows service in advance.

In case of postgresql.conf has any incorrect parameter when this command is executed, this command may be abnormally terminated. If this is the case, re-execute it again after correct the parameter in postgresql.conf.

If the arbitration server of Mirroring Controller is used, connection with the arbitration server will be performed on startup even if startup using start mode is executed with the -F option specified, or if executed with --local-server specified.

**W** The mc\_ctl command must be executed from "Administrator: Command Prompt". Right-click [Command Prompt], and then select [Run as administrator] from the menu to display the [Administrator: Command Prompt] window.

For operation using an arbitration server, the amount of time spent attempting to connect with the arbitration server is calculated, so the Mirroring Controller startup time may take longer.

## Example

**L** To start Mirroring Controller:

```
$ mc_ctl start -M /mcdire/inst1
```

**W** To start Mirroring Controller:

```
> mc_ctl start -M D:\mcdire\inst1
```

Display details of mc\_ctl status

```
mirroring status
-----
(1)

server_id  host_role      host          host_status  db_proc_status  disk_status
(2)        (3)           (4)           (5)          (6)             (7)
```

```

(1) Multiplexing status
    switchable      : Switchable
    switching       : Switching
    switched        : Switched (displayed when switching has finished and the degrading
operations status has been enabled)
    not-switchable  : Not switchable (displayed when a server is disconnected and
switching is not possible)
    unknown         : Unknown (*1)
    failover-disabled : Failover is disabled
(2) Server identifier
(3) Server role
    primary : Primary
    standby : Standby
    none(inactivated primary): No role
                                (primary is stopped or being defined as primary)
    none(inactivated standby): No role
                                (standby is stopped or being defined as primary)
(4) Host name or IP address
(5) Live/dead state of the server
    normal : Normal operation
    abnormal : Abnormal
    unknown : Unknown (*1)
(6) DBMS process status
    normal : Normal
    abnormal (abnormal process name (*2)) : Abnormal
    unknown : Unknown (*1)
(7) Disk status
    normal : Normal
    abnormal (abnormal disk type (*3)) : Abnormal
    unknown : Unknown (*1)

```

\*1: Displayed when Mirroring Controller is stop state, the management network is abnormal, or Mirroring Controller has failed or is unresponsive.

\*2: The names of the DBMS processes in which the abnormality was detected are output. The name has the following meaning: However, if multiple DBMS process issues are detected, only the DBMS for which the first issue was detected is displayed.

-postmaster: Process (postmaster) that accepts application connections

-wal\_sender or wal\_receiver: Process (WAL sender or WAL receiver) that sends and receives transaction logs

\*3: The types of disks where the abnormality was detected are output separated by a comma. The type has the following meaning:

-data: Data storage disk

-tran\_log: Transaction log storage disk

-tablespace: Tablespace storage disk

Display details of mc\_ctl status (with the --arbiter option specified)

arbiter_id	host	status
(1)	(2)	(3)

(1) Arbitration server identifier

(2) Host name or IP address

(3) Mirroring Controller arbitration process connection status

online : Connected

offline : Disconnected (\*1)

\*1: When Mirroring Controller is stopped, connections to the Mirroring Controller arbitration process cannot be established, so it will be displayed as "offline".

# Chapter 5 Connection Manager Commands

This chapter explains the Connection Manager commands.

## 5.1 cm\_ctl

### Name

**L**

cm\_ctl - Start, stop or display the status of the conmgr process

**W**

cm\_ctl - Start, stop, and display the status of the conmgr process, or register and unregister it as a Windows service

### Synopsis

cm\_ctl start [-D *directory*] [-W] [--complete] [-t *seconds*]

cm\_ctl stop [-D *directory*] [-W] [-m {smart | fast | immediate}] [-t *seconds*]

cm\_ctl status [-D *directory*] [-t *seconds*] [-i {all | instance | application}]

**W**

cm\_ctl register [-D *directory*] [-N *servicename*] [-U *username*] [-P *password*]  
[-S a[uto] | d[emand] ] [-e *source*] [-W] [--complete] [-t *seconds*]

cm\_ctl unregister [-N *servicename*]

### Description

The start mode starts the conmgr process. The command returns at least after the heartbeat monitoring connection is completed with the primary server's instance.

When --complete is specified, wait until all instances configured in conmgr.conf have completed their heartbeat monitoring connections. You can set a timeout for these waits. The default of timeout is 60 seconds. Can be changed using the -t option. If it times out, it simply gives up waiting and the conmgr process remains up.



### Note

If the primary is not among the instances configured in the cmgr.conf, use the -W option when starting Connection Manager with the cm\_ctl command. Without the -W option, the cm\_ctl command will not return until the primary connection is complete.

The stop mode sends a signal to the conmgr process to shut down and wait until the process disappears.

The default of wait time is 60 seconds. Can be changed using the -t option. If it times out, it simply gives up waiting. There are three shutdown methods, "smart", "fast", and "immediate", specify with the -m option. The "smart" waits until all applications using the conmgr process run out of SQL connections before shutting down. The "fast" forces all applications using the conmgr process to disconnect from the conmgr process before shutting it down. As a result, the SQL connection for the application receives an error. The "immediate" terminates the conmgr process immediately. If nothing is specified, it stops in fast mode.

The status mode, if the conmgr process exists, queries the conmgr process for instance and application information known to the conmgr process, and display them to standard output along with the state of conmgr itself.

The -i option allows you to specify what information to query. The "instance" queries information about the instance; The "application" queries information about the application; The "all" queries information about both. conmgr's own information is always displayed. The default time to wait for a query to return is 60 seconds. Can be changed using the -t option.

**W**

The register mode registers the conmgr process as a system service on Windows. The -S option allows you to select the service start type, either "auto" (to start the service automatically when the system starts) or "demand" (to start the service upon request).

The unregister mode unregisters the conmgr process from the Windows service.

## Options

--complete

Wait until all instances configured in conmgr.conf have completed their heartbeat monitoring connections. If the When used with the -W option, the -W option takes precedence.

-D

--directory=*directory*

Specify the directory where conmgr.conf is located. If omitted, it refers to the directory specified by the environment variable CMDATA. You cannot omit both.

-i {all | instance | application}

Specify the information to display the status.

-m

--mode={smart | fast | immediate}

Specify the mode of shutdown. The default is fast.

-t *seconds*

--timeout=*seconds*

Specify how long to wait for the operation to complete. The unit is seconds. The default is 60 seconds.

-W

--no-wait

In start mode, cm\_ctl command returns immediately after forking conmgr process. In stop mode, the cm\_ctl command returns without waiting for the process to disappear.

**W**

-e *source*

The name of the cm\_ctl event source to use for output to the event log when running as a Windows service. The default is conmgr. Note that this only controls messages sent from cm\_ctl itself. After the conmgr process starts, the event source specified in event\_source in conmgr.conf is used. If a failure occurs very early in the conmgr process startup, you may want to use the default event source name conmgr before the event source specified in conmgr.conf is set.

-N *servicename*

The name of the Windows service to register. This name is used as both the system name and the display name. The default is conmgr.

-P *password*

The password for the user who starts the service.

-S *start-type*

Start type of the Windows service to register. The start-type can be auto, demand, or one of the first characters of these two words. If you omit this option, auto is the default.

-U *username*

Username of the user who starts the service. Use the DOMAIN\username format for domain users.

## Diagnostics

start mode or stop mode

0: Normal end

2: Timeout occurred

3: Unable to access the specified directory

Other than the above: None of the above

status mode

0: Normal end

3: Unable to access the specified directory

4: conmgr process does not exist

Other than the above: None of the above

W

register mode

0: Normal end

Other than 0: Abnormal end

unregister mode

0: Normal end

Other than 0: Abnormal end

## Privileges

The conmgr process cannot be started by the administrator(e.g. superuser(root) on Linux, users with Windows administrator privileges).

## Example

Display details of start mode

The block of information that can be specified with the -i option is used as a unit. There is one blank line between the blocks and no blank lines within the blocks. It includes one or more spaces between columns and between data.

```
$ cm_ctl status -i all
conmgr_status:
status pid
(1)      (2)
ready   3456

instance_information:
addr      port  database_attr
(3)      (4)  (5)
192.0.2.100 27500 standby
192.0.2.110 27500 primary
192.0.2.120 27500 standby
192.0.2.130 27500 unknown

application_information:
addr      port  pid  connected_time
(6)      (7)  (8)  (9)
127.0.0.1 12345 5678 2022-02-15 02:03:04
```

(1) Status of the conmgr process

starting : The process is starting its startup sequence but is not ready to accept connections from clients.

ready : Ready to accept connections from clients.

stopping : It has received an end instruction and is starting the stop sequence.  
 inactive : The connmgr process does not exist.

- (2) PID of the connmgr process
- (3) Host name or IP address of the instance
- (4) Port number the postmaster listens on
- (5) Status of the instance (primary | primary(read-only) | standby | unknown)
 

primary	: Primary server
primary(read-only)	: Primary server (default transaction mode is read-only)
standby	: Standby server
unknown	: Unknown (*1)
- (6) Connection source IP address for connmgr process
- (7) Connection source (ephemeral) port number for connmgr process
- (8) PID of the connection source
- (9) Date and time connmgr process connection
 

The ISO 8601 compliant date is followed by a blank, followed by the ISO 8601 compliant second precision time.

This representation is a PostgreSQL string representation of type timestamp.

\*1) Displays when you cannot connect to the instance.

# Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres 16

## Messages

Windows/Linux

J2UL-2964-01ENZ0(00)  
July 2024



# Preface

---

## Purpose of this document

This document explains the messages output by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres.

## Intended readers

This document is intended for the following readers:

- Persons using Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres

## Prerequisites

Knowledge of the following topics is required to read this document:

- A general understanding of computers
- Jobs
- PostgreSQL
- Linux
- Windows

## Structure of this document

This document is structured as follows:

### [Chapter 1 Overview of Messages](#)

This chapter explains the format in which messages are output.

### [Chapter 2 Message List](#)

This chapter explains the output messages.

### [Chapter 3 Mirroring Controller Messages](#)

This chapter explains messages output by Mirroring Controller.

## Export restrictions

Exportation/release of this document may require necessary procedures in accordance with the regulations of your resident country and/or US export control laws.

## Issue date and version

Edition 1.0: July 2024
------------------------

## Copyright

Copyright 2015-2024 Fujitsu Limited

# Contents

---

Chapter 1 Overview of Messages.....	1
1.1 Message Format.....	1
1.1.1 Output Format.....	1
1.1.2 Components.....	2
1.2 Mirroring Controller Message Format.....	2
Chapter 2 Message List.....	5
Chapter 3 Mirroring Controller Messages.....	120
3.1 Message Numbers Beginning with MCA00000.....	120
3.1.1 MCA00001.....	120
3.1.2 MCA00002.....	120
3.1.3 MCA00003.....	120
3.1.4 MCA00004.....	121
3.1.5 MCA00005.....	121
3.1.6 MCA00006.....	121
3.1.7 MCA00007.....	122
3.1.8 MCA00008.....	122
3.1.9 MCA00009.....	123
3.1.10 MCA00010.....	123
3.1.11 MCA00011.....	123
3.1.12 MCA00012.....	124
3.1.13 MCA00013.....	124
3.1.14 MCA00014.....	124
3.1.15 MCA00015.....	125
3.1.16 MCA00016.....	125
3.1.17 MCA00017.....	125
3.1.18 MCA00018.....	125
3.1.19 MCA00019.....	126
3.1.20 MCA00020.....	126
3.1.21 MCA00021.....	126
3.1.22 MCA00022.....	127
3.1.23 MCA00023.....	127
3.1.24 MCA00024.....	127
3.1.25 MCA00025.....	128
3.1.26 MCA00026.....	128
3.1.27 MCA00027.....	128
3.1.28 MCA00028.....	129
3.1.29 MCA00029.....	129
3.1.30 MCA00030.....	129
3.1.31 MCA00031.....	130
3.1.32 MCA00032.....	130
3.1.33 MCA00033.....	130
3.1.34 MCA00034.....	131
3.1.35 MCA00035.....	131
3.1.36 MCA00036.....	131
3.1.37 MCA00037.....	131
3.1.38 MCA00038.....	132
3.1.39 MCA00039.....	132
3.1.40 MCA00040.....	132
3.1.41 MCA00041.....	132
3.1.42 MCA00042.....	132
3.1.43 MCA00043.....	133
3.1.44 MCA00044.....	133
3.1.45 MCA00045.....	133
3.1.46 MCA00046.....	133

3.1.47 MCA00047.....	133
3.1.48 MCA00048.....	134
3.1.49 MCA00049.....	134
3.1.50 MCA00050.....	134
3.1.51 MCA00051.....	134
3.1.52 MCA00052.....	135
3.1.53 MCA00053.....	135
3.1.54 MCA00054.....	135
3.1.55 MCA00055.....	136
3.1.56 MCA00056.....	136
3.1.57 MCA00057.....	136
3.1.58 MCA00058.....	137
3.1.59 MCA00059.....	137
3.1.60 MCA00060.....	137
3.1.61 MCA00061.....	138
3.1.62 MCA00062.....	138
3.1.63 MCA00063.....	138
3.1.64 MCA00064.....	138
3.1.65 MCA00065.....	139
3.1.66 MCA00067.....	139
3.1.67 MCA00068.....	139
3.1.68 MCA00070.....	140
3.1.69 MCA00071.....	140
3.1.70 MCA00072.....	140
3.1.71 MCA00073.....	141
3.1.72 MCA00074.....	141
3.1.73 MCA00075.....	141
3.1.74 MCA00076.....	142
3.1.75 MCA00077.....	142
3.1.76 MCA00078.....	142
3.1.77 MCA00079.....	142
3.1.78 MCA00080.....	143
3.1.79 MCA00081.....	143
3.1.80 MCA00082.....	143
3.1.81 MCA00083.....	143
3.1.82 MCA00084.....	144
3.1.83 MCA00085.....	144
3.1.84 MCA00086.....	145
3.1.85 MCA00087.....	145
3.1.86 MCA00088.....	145
3.1.87 MCA00089.....	145
3.1.88 MCA00090.....	146
3.1.89 MCA00091.....	146
3.1.90 MCA00092.....	146
3.1.91 MCA00093.....	147
3.1.92 MCA00094.....	147
3.1.93 MCA00095.....	147
3.1.94 MCA00096.....	148
3.1.95 MCA00097.....	148
3.1.96 MCA00098.....	148
3.1.97 MCA00099.....	148
3.2 Message Numbers Beginning with MCA00100.....	149
3.2.1 MCA00100.....	149
3.2.2 MCA00101.....	149
3.2.3 MCA00102.....	149
3.2.4 MCA00103.....	150
3.2.5 MCA00104.....	150

3.2.6 MCA00105.....	150
3.2.7 MCA00106.....	151
3.2.8 MCA00107.....	151
3.2.9 MCA00108.....	151
3.2.10 MCA00109.....	152
3.2.11 MCA00110.....	152
3.2.12 MCA00111.....	152
3.2.13 MCA00112.....	152
3.2.14 MCA00113.....	153
3.2.15 MCA00114.....	153
3.2.16 MCA00115.....	153
3.2.17 MCA00116.....	154
3.2.18 MCA00117.....	154
3.2.19 MCA00119.....	154
3.2.20 MCA00120.....	154
3.2.21 MCA00121.....	155
3.2.22 MCA00122.....	155
3.2.23 MCA00123.....	155
3.2.24 MCA00124.....	155
3.2.25 MCA00125.....	155
3.2.26 MCA00126.....	156
3.2.27 MCA00127.....	156
3.2.28 MCA00128.....	156
3.2.29 MCA00129.....	156
3.2.30 MCA00130.....	157
3.2.31 MCA00131.....	157
3.2.32 MCA00132.....	157
3.2.33 MCA00133.....	157
3.2.34 MCA00134.....	157
3.2.35 MCA00135.....	158
3.2.36 MCA00136.....	158
3.2.37 MCA00137.....	158
3.2.38 MCA00138.....	158
3.2.39 MCA00139.....	159
3.2.40 MCA00140.....	159
3.2.41 MCA00141.....	159
3.2.42 MCA00142.....	160
3.2.43 MCA00143.....	160
3.2.44 MCA00144.....	161
3.2.45 MCA00145.....	161
3.2.46 MCA00146.....	161
3.2.47 MCA00147.....	162
3.2.48 MCA00148.....	162
3.2.49 MCA00149.....	162
3.2.50 MCA00150.....	163
3.2.51 MCA00151.....	163
3.2.52 MCA00152.....	163
3.2.53 MCA00153.....	164
3.2.54 MCA00154.....	164
3.2.55 MCA00155.....	164
3.2.56 MCA00156.....	165
3.2.57 MCA00157.....	165
3.2.58 MCA00158.....	165
3.2.59 MCA00160.....	166
3.2.60 MCA00161.....	166
3.2.61 MCA00162.....	166
3.2.62 MCA00163.....	166

3.2.63 MCA00164.....	167
3.2.64 MCA00165.....	167
3.2.65 MCA00166.....	167
3.2.66 MCA00167.....	168
3.2.67 MCA00168.....	168
3.2.68 MCA00169.....	168
3.2.69 MCA00170.....	169
3.2.70 MCA00171.....	169
3.2.71 MCA00172.....	169
3.2.72 MCA00173.....	169
3.2.73 MCA00174.....	170
3.2.74 MCA00175.....	170
3.2.75 MCA00176.....	170
3.2.76 MCA00177.....	170
3.2.77 MCA00178.....	171
3.2.78 MCA00179.....	171
3.2.79 MCA00180.....	171
3.2.80 MCA00181.....	171
3.2.81 MCA00182.....	171
3.2.82 MCA00183.....	172
3.2.83 MCA00184.....	172
3.2.84 MCA00185.....	172
3.2.85 MCA00186.....	173
3.2.86 MCA00187.....	173
3.2.87 MCA00188.....	173
3.2.88 MCA00189.....	173
3.2.89 MCA00190.....	174
3.2.90 MCA00191.....	174
3.2.91 MCA00192.....	174
3.2.92 MCA00193.....	174
3.2.93 MCA00194.....	175
3.2.94 MCA00195.....	175
3.2.95 MCA00196.....	175
3.2.96 MCA00197.....	175
3.2.97 MCA00198.....	176
3.2.98 MCA00199.....	176
3.3 Message Numbers Beginning with MCA00200.....	177
3.3.1 MCA00201.....	177
3.3.2 MCA00202.....	177
3.3.3 MCA00203.....	177
3.3.4 MCA00204.....	177
3.3.5 MCA00205.....	177
3.3.6 MCA00206.....	178
3.3.7 MCA00207.....	178
3.3.8 MCA00208.....	178
3.3.9 MCA00209.....	179
3.3.10 MCA00210.....	179
3.3.11 MCA00211.....	179
3.3.12 MCA00212.....	180
3.3.13 MCA00213.....	180
3.3.14 MCA00214.....	181
3.3.15 MCA00215.....	181
3.3.16 MCA00216.....	181
3.3.17 MCA00217.....	182
3.3.18 MCA00218.....	182
3.3.19 MCA00219.....	183
3.3.20 MCA00220.....	183

3.3.21 MCA00221.....	183
3.3.22 MCA00222.....	183
3.3.23 MCA00223.....	184
3.3.24 MCA00224.....	184
3.3.25 MCA00225.....	184
3.3.26 MCA00226.....	184
3.3.27 MCA00227.....	184
3.3.28 MCA00228.....	185
3.3.29 MCA00229.....	185
3.3.30 MCA00230.....	185
3.3.31 MCA00231.....	185
3.3.32 MCA00232.....	186
3.3.33 MCA00233.....	186
3.3.34 MCA00234.....	186
3.3.35 MCA00235.....	187
3.3.36 MCA00236.....	187
3.3.37 MCA00237.....	187
3.3.38 MCA00238.....	188
3.3.39 MCA00239.....	188
3.3.40 MCA00240.....	188
3.3.41 MCA00241.....	189
3.3.42 MCA00242.....	189
3.3.43 MCA00243.....	189
3.3.44 MCA00244.....	190
3.3.45 MCA00245.....	190
3.3.46 MCA00252.....	190
3.3.47 MCA00253.....	191
3.3.48 MCA00254.....	191
3.3.49 MCA00255.....	191
3.3.50 MCA00256.....	191
3.3.51 MCA00257.....	191
3.3.52 MCA00258.....	192
3.3.53 MCA00259.....	192
3.3.54 MCA00260.....	192
3.4 Message Numbers Beginning with MCR00000.....	192
3.4.1 MCR00001.....	192
3.4.2 MCR00002.....	193
3.4.3 MCR00003.....	193
3.4.4 MCR00004.....	193
3.4.5 MCR00005.....	194
3.4.6 MCR00006.....	194
3.4.7 MCR00007.....	195
3.4.8 MCR00008.....	195
3.4.9 MCR00009.....	195
3.4.10 MCR00010.....	196
3.4.11 MCR00011.....	196
3.4.12 MCR00012.....	196
3.4.13 MCR00013.....	197
3.4.14 MCR00014.....	197
3.4.15 MCR00015.....	197
3.4.16 MCR00016.....	198
3.4.17 MCR00017.....	198
3.4.18 MCR00018.....	198
3.4.19 MCR00019.....	199
3.4.20 MCR00020.....	199
3.4.21 MCR00021.....	199
3.4.22 MCR00022.....	199

3.4.23 MCR00023.....	200
3.4.24 MCR00024.....	200
3.4.25 MCR00025.....	201
3.4.26 MCR00026.....	201
3.4.27 MCR00027.....	201
3.4.28 MCR00028.....	201
3.4.29 MCR00029.....	202
3.4.30 MCR00030.....	202
3.4.31 MCR00031.....	202
3.4.32 MCR00032.....	203
3.4.33 MCR00033.....	203
3.4.34 MCR00034.....	203
3.4.35 MCR00035.....	204
3.4.36 MCR00036.....	204
3.4.37 MCR00037.....	204
3.4.38 MCR00038.....	205
3.4.39 MCR00039.....	205
3.4.40 MCR00040.....	205
3.4.41 MCR00041.....	205
3.4.42 MCR00042.....	206
3.4.43 MCR00043.....	206
3.4.44 MCR00044.....	207
3.4.45 MCR00045.....	207
3.4.46 MCR00046.....	207
3.4.47 MCR00047.....	207
3.4.48 MCR00049.....	208
3.4.49 MCR00050.....	208
3.4.50 MCR00051.....	208
3.4.51 MCR00052.....	208
3.4.52 MCR00053.....	208
3.4.53 MCR00054.....	209
3.4.54 MCR00055.....	209
3.4.55 MCR00056.....	209
3.4.56 MCR00057.....	209
3.4.57 MCR00058.....	209
3.4.58 MCR00059.....	210
3.4.59 MCR00060.....	210
3.4.60 MCR00061.....	210
3.4.61 MCR00062.....	210
3.4.62 MCR00063.....	211
3.4.63 MCR00064.....	211
3.4.64 MCR00065.....	211
3.4.65 MCR00066.....	211
3.4.66 MCR00067.....	212
3.4.67 MCR00068.....	212
3.4.68 MCR00069.....	212
3.4.69 MCR00070.....	213
3.4.70 MCR00071.....	213
3.4.71 MCR00072.....	213
3.4.72 MCR00073.....	213
3.4.73 MCR00074.....	213
3.4.74 MCR00075.....	214
3.4.75 MCR00076.....	214
3.4.76 MCR00077.....	214
3.4.77 MCR00078.....	214
3.4.78 MCR00079.....	215
3.4.79 MCR00080.....	215

3.4.80 MCR00081.....	215
3.4.81 MCR00082.....	215
3.4.82 MCR00083.....	216
3.4.83 MCR00084.....	216
3.4.84 MCR00085.....	216
3.4.85 MCR00086.....	216
3.4.86 MCR00087.....	217
3.4.87 MCR00088.....	217
3.4.88 MCR00089.....	217
3.4.89 MCR00090.....	218
3.4.90 MCR00091.....	218
3.4.91 MCR00092.....	218
3.4.92 MCR00093.....	218
3.4.93 MCR00094.....	219
3.4.94 MCR00095.....	219
3.4.95 MCR00096.....	219
3.4.96 MCR00097.....	220
3.4.97 MCR00098.....	220
3.4.98 MCR00099.....	220
3.5 Message Numbers Beginning with MCR00100.....	221
3.5.1 MCR00100.....	221
3.5.2 MCR00101.....	221
3.5.3 MCR00102.....	221
3.5.4 MCR00103.....	222
3.5.5 MCR00104.....	222
3.5.6 MCR00105.....	222
3.5.7 MCR00106.....	222
3.5.8 MCR00107.....	223
3.5.9 MCR00108.....	223
3.5.10 MCR00109.....	223
3.5.11 MCR00110.....	223
3.5.12 MCR00111.....	224
3.5.13 MCR00112.....	224
3.5.14 MCR00113.....	224
3.5.15 MCR00114.....	224
3.5.16 MCR00115.....	225
3.5.17 MCR00116.....	225
3.5.18 MCR00117.....	225
3.5.19 MCR00118.....	226
3.5.20 MCR00119.....	226
3.5.21 MCR00120.....	226
3.5.22 MCR00121.....	227
3.5.23 MCR00122.....	227
3.5.24 MCR00123.....	227
3.5.25 MCR00124.....	228
3.5.26 MCR00125.....	228
3.5.27 MCR00126.....	228
3.5.28 MCR00127.....	228
3.5.29 MCR00128.....	228
3.5.30 MCR00129.....	229
3.5.31 MCR00130.....	229
3.5.32 MCR00131.....	229
3.5.33 MCR00132.....	230
3.5.34 MCR00133.....	230
3.5.35 MCR00134.....	230
3.5.36 MCR00135.....	231
3.5.37 MCR00136.....	231



3.5.38 MCR00137.....	231
3.5.39 MCR00138.....	231
3.5.40 MCR00139.....	232
3.5.41 MCR00140.....	232
3.5.42 MCR00141.....	232
3.5.43 MCR00142.....	232
3.5.44 MCR00143.....	232
3.5.45 MCR00144.....	233
3.5.46 MCR00145.....	233
3.5.47 MCR00146.....	233
3.5.48 MCR00147.....	233
3.5.49 MCR00148.....	233
3.5.50 MCR00149.....	234
3.5.51 MCR00150.....	234
3.5.52 MCR00151.....	234
3.5.53 MCR00152.....	234
3.5.54 MCR00153.....	234
3.5.55 MCR00154.....	235
3.5.56 MCR00155.....	235
3.5.57 MCR00156.....	235
3.5.58 MCR00157.....	235
3.5.59 MCR00158.....	235
3.5.60 MCR00159.....	235
3.5.61 MCR00160.....	236
3.5.62 MCR00161.....	236
3.5.63 MCR00162.....	236
3.5.64 MCR00163.....	236
3.5.65 MCR00164.....	236
3.5.66 MCR00165.....	236
3.5.67 MCR00166.....	236
3.5.68 MCR00167.....	237
3.5.69 MCR00168.....	237
Index.....	238

# Chapter 1 Overview of Messages

This chapter explains the format of messages.

## 1.1 Message Format

This section explains the format of messages.

- Output format
- Components

### 1.1.1 Output Format

The message output format is as follows:

#### Format of messages returned to an application

```
msgType: msgText
```

#### Format of messages output to the server message log

```
SQLSTATE: date [processID]: [internalCode-1] user = userName,db = dbName,remote =  
clientIpAddress(portNumber) app = appName msgType: msgText
```



See

Refer to "PostgreSQL Error Codes" under "Appendixes" in the PostgreSQL Documentation for information on SQLSTATE.



Note

- Notes on monitoring messages output to the server message log

Use SQLSTATE to monitor server messages, noting the following:

- Configuration method
  - Refer to "Error Log Settings" under "Setup" in the Installation and Setup Guide for Server for details.
- Note
  - The user name, client IP address (port number), and application name may sometimes be blank.
- Notes on monitoring messages returned to an application

You can output SQLSTATE to a message to be returned to an application. The following explains how to configure the settings for outputting SQLSTATE and gives cautions to be observed when doing so.

- Configuration methods
  - In the SET statement, set the log\_error\_verbosity parameter to VERBOSE.
  - For an application that uses the C language library, use the PQsetErrorVerbosity function to set message redundancy to PQERRORS\_VERBOSE.
- Notes
  - SQLSTATE is output only to messages to be returned to applications that use the C language library.
  - In some cases, *userName*, *clientIpAddress(portNumber)*, and *applicationName* may be blank.

- If the email address "pgsql-bugs@postgresql.org" is output to the message and the cause of the error cannot be identified, contact Fujitsu technical support.



## Example

### Message output to the server message log

```
3D000: 2017-07-10 19:41:05 JST [13899]: [1-1] user = fepuser,db = fep,remote =
127.0.0.1(51902) app = [unknown] FATAL: database "fep" does not exist
```

## 1.1.2 Components

This section explains the components of a message.

### Message type

The message type indicates the type of error denoted in the message.

The message type will be one of the following:

- Information (INFO, NOTICE, LOG, DEBUG)

This message type denotes a notification from the system, not an error. There is no need to take action.

- Warning (WARNING)

This message type denotes that no error occurred but confirmation or action is required by the user. Take the actions described in the "Action" section of the message.

- Error (ERROR, FATAL, PANIC)

This message type denotes that an error has occurred. Take the actions described in the "Action" section of the message.

- Supplementary information (DETAIL, HINT, QUERY, CONTEXT, LOCATION, STATEMENT)

This message type denotes supplementary information relating to the previous message. If the message was output in English, the message type will also be in English. (Detail, hint, query, context, location, statement)

### Message text

The text of the message reports the status of the system or an error in the system.

The notation "@numeric character@" that appears in "[Chapter 2 Message List](#)" indicates an embedded character string. A character string is output to a message that is actually output.

If a message locale other than 'ja' is specified, messages added by Fujitsu Enterprise Postgres will be output in English.

For other message locales, the messages are output in English.

## 1.2 Mirroring Controller Message Format

This section explains the format of messages output by the Mirroring Controller.

Mirroring Controller messages are output to the following locations:

**L**

- System log

**W**

- Event log

### Output format

```
programName[processId]: msgType: msgText (msgNumber)
```

For *programName*, use the value of the syslog\_ident parameter or event\_source parameter defined in the *serverIdentifier.conf* file.

**L**

The message types output by Mirroring Controller, their severity, and their corresponding value in the system log are shown in the table below.

**L**

**Table 1.1 Message type, severity, and corresponding value in the system log**

Message type	Severity	Meaning	System log
INFO	Information	Provides information not categorized as LOG or NOTICE.	INFO
LOG		Provides information recognized as a particularly important event in tracing the operation history. (Example: Automatic switch is complete)	
NOTICE	Notice	Outputs information that takes into account the user instructions within the program in response to an executed or automatically executed process.	NOTICE
WARNING	Warning	Provides a warning, for example it will soon be impossible to maintain multiplexing capabilities.	WARNING
ERROR	Error	Reports that an error other than FATAL or PANIC has occurred.	ERROR
FATAL		Reports that an error has been detected requiring system recovery in one of the multiplexed database systems. It also reports the content and cause of the error.	CRIT
PANIC		Reports that an error has been detected requiring immediate system recovery in all multiplexed database systems. It also reports the content and cause of the error.	ALERT

**W**

The message types output by Mirroring Controller, their severity, and their corresponding value in the event log are shown in the table below.

**W**

**Table 1.2 Message type, severity, and corresponding value in the event log**

Message type	Severity	Meaning	Event log
INFO	Information	Provides information not categorized as LOG or NOTICE.	INFORMATION
LOG		Provides information recognized as a particularly important event in tracing the operation history. (Example: Automatic switch is complete)	
NOTICE	Notice	Outputs information that takes into account the user instructions within the program in response to an executed or automatically executed process.	
WARNING	Warning	Provides a warning, for example it will soon be impossible to maintain multiplexing capabilities.	WARNING

Message type	Severity	Meaning	Event log
ERROR	Error	Reports that an error other than FATAL or PANIC has occurred.	ERROR
FATAL		Reports that an error has been detected requiring system recovery in one of the multiplexed database systems. It also reports the content and cause of the error.	
PANIC		Reports that an error has been detected requiring immediate system recovery in all multiplexed database systems. It also reports the content and cause of the error.	

The message severity has the following meanings:

- Information

Informational status. A message that was reported by the system is displayed. No action is required.

- Notice

Informational status, but a message that should be noted is displayed. If necessary, take the actions described in the "Action" section of the message.

- Warning

No error has occurred, but the user is requested to check, and take action. Take the actions described in the "Action" section of the message.

- Error

An error has occurred. Take the actions described in the "Action" section of the message.

## Output destination server

Mirroring Controller messages are output by the database server. When using an arbitration server, Mirroring Controller messages are also output by the arbitration server.

- Messages with a message number that starts with "MCA" are output by the database server.
- Messages with a message number that starts with "MCR" are output by the arbitration server.

## Chapter 2 Message List

This chapter explains the output messages.

For messages not described in this chapter, check the content of the message and take appropriate action. If the problem cannot be resolved, contact Fujitsu technical staff(support).

---

### **@1@ to "max\_worker\_processes"**

#### **[Description]**

An error occurred during execution of the application or command.

#### **[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

#### **[Action]**

Check the message text and confirm that the application is written correctly and the command is being used correctly.

---

### **@1@ total checksum verification failure**

#### **[Description]**

By default, checksums are verified and checksum failures are reported for any possible page corruptions

#### **[System Processing]**

Continues processing.

#### **[Action]**

Check the message text and confirm that the event indicated in supplementary information reported by the system is a planned event.

---

### **@1@ and @2@ are incompatible options**

#### **[Description]**

The input parameter is invalid.

#### **[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

#### **[Action]**

Check the message text and confirm that the application is written correctly and the command is being used correctly.

---

### **@1@ can only be called in a sql\_drop event trigger function**

#### **[Description]**

can only be called in a sql\_drop event trigger function

#### **[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

#### **[Action]**

To investigate the cause of the occurrence from the message, and remove cause.

---

### **@1@ can only be called in a table\_rewrite event trigger function**

[Description]

The function `pg_event_trigger_table_rewrite_oid()` can only be called in a `table_rewrite` event trigger function

[System Processing]

Processing aborts

[Action]

To investigate the cause of the occurrence from the message, and remove cause.

---

**@1@ can only be called in an event trigger function**

[Description]

The function `pg_event_trigger_ddl_commands()` can only be called in a event trigger function

[System Processing]

Processing aborts

[Action]

To investigate the cause of the occurrence from the message, and remove cause.

---

**@1@ cannot be applied to a function**

[Description]

SQL row locking clause such as "FOR UPDATE" cannot be applied to a function

[System Processing]

Processing aborts

[Action]

To investigate the cause of the occurrence from the message, and remove cause.

---

**@1@ cannot be applied to a join**

[Description]

SQL row locking clause such as "FOR UPDATE" cannot be applied to a join

[System Processing]

Processing aborts

[Action]

To investigate the cause of the occurrence from the message, and remove cause.

---

**@1@ cannot be applied to a WITH query**

[Description]

SQL row locking clause such as "FOR UPDATE" cannot be applied to a WITH query

[System Processing]

Processing aborts

[Action]

To investigate the cause of the occurrence from the message, and remove cause.

---

**@1@ cannot be applied to the nullable side of an outer join**

[Description]

SQL row locking clause cannot be applied to the nullable side of an outer join

[System Processing]

Processing aborts

[Action]

To investigate the cause of the occurrence from the message, and remove cause.

---

**@1@ cannot be applied to VALUES**

[Description]

SQL row locking cannot be applied to VALUES

[System Processing]

Processing aborts

[Action]

To investigate the cause of the occurrence from the message, and remove cause.

---

**@1@ cannot be executed from VACUUM or ANALYZE**

[Description]

commands VACUUM or ANALYZE cannot be executed from VACUUM or ANALYZE

[System Processing]

Processing aborts

[Action]

To investigate the cause of the occurrence from the message, and remove cause.

---

**@1@ cannot be used as a role name here**

[Description]

Reserved name cannot be used as a role name here

[System Processing]

Processing aborts

[Action]

To investigate the cause of the occurrence from the message, and remove cause.

---

**@1@ cause an error in heartbeat: @2@**

[Description]

Cause an error in heartbeat.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Check log of Operating System.

---

**@1@ causes an error at application connection: @2@**



[Description]

Causes an error at application connection.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Check log of Operating System.

---

**@1@ function has @2@ columns available but @3@ columns specified**

[Description]

An error occurred, when specified column of the function is different than the available column

[System Processing]

Continues processing.

[Action]

Investigate the cause of the error from the message body, and then remove the cause.

---

**@1@ is not allowed with aggregate functions**

[Description]

The return type of function LCS\_asString is not allowed with aggregate functions. In this error case, the return type of LCS\_asString is "FOR some"

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

To investigate the cause of the occurrence from the message, and remove cause

---

**@1@ is not allowed with DISTINCT clause**

[Description]

SQL row locking clause such as "FOR UPDATE" is not allowed with DISTINCT clause

[System Processing]

Processing aborts

[Action]

To investigate the cause of the occurrence from the message, and remove cause.

---

**@1@ is not allowed with GROUP BY clause**

[Description]

SQL row locking clause such as "FOR UPDATE" is not allowed with GROUP BY clause

[System Processing]

Processing aborts

[Action]

To investigate the cause of the occurrence from the message, and remove cause.

---

**@1@ is not allowed with HAVING clause**

[Description]

SQL row locking clause such as "FOR UPDATE" is not allowed with HAVING clause

[System Processing]

Processing aborts

[Action]

To investigate the cause of the occurrence from the message, and remove cause.

---

**@1@ is not allowed with set-returning functions in the target list**

[Description]

SQL row locking clause such as "FOR UPDATE" is not allowed with set-returning functions in the target list

[System Processing]

Processing aborts

[Action]

To investigate the cause of the occurrence from the message, and remove cause.

---

**@1@ is not allowed with UNION/INTERSECT/EXCEPT**

[Description]

Locking clause is not allowed with UNION/INTERSECT/EXCEPT

[System Processing]

Processing aborts

[Action]

To investigate the cause of the occurrence from the message, and remove cause.

---

**@1@ is not allowed with window functions**

[Description]

SQL row locking clause such as "FOR UPDATE" is not allowed with window functions

[System Processing]

Processing aborts

[Action]

To investigate the cause of the occurrence from the message, and remove cause.

---

**@1@ is not an ordered-set aggregate, so it cannot have WITHIN GROUP**

[Description]

The function is not an ordered-set aggregate, so it cannot have WITHIN GROUP

[System Processing]

Processing aborts

[Action]

To investigate the cause of the occurrence from the message, and remove cause.

---

**@1@ is not VCI index**

[Description]

An error occurred during execution of the application or command.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check the message text and confirm that the application is written correctly and the command is being used correctly.

---

**@1@ must be called in REPEATABLE READ isolation mode transaction**

[Description]

When creating a new replication slot, we must put CREATE\_REPLICATION\_SLOT and USE\_SNAPSHOT in REPEATABLE READ isolation mode transaction.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check the message text and confirm that the application is written correctly and the command is being used correctly.

---

**@1@ must be called inside a transaction**

[Description]

When creating a new replication slot, we must put CREATE\_REPLICATION\_SLOT and USE\_SNAPSHOT in a transaction.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check the message text and confirm that the application is written correctly and the command is being used correctly.

---

**@1@ must not be called in a subtransaction**

[Description]

When creating a new replication slot, we must not put CREATE\_REPLICATION\_SLOT and USE\_SNAPSHOT in a subtransaction.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check the message text and confirm that the application is written correctly and the command is being used correctly.

---

**@1@ must not be called inside a transaction**

[Description]

When creating a new replication slot, it is not allowed to put CREATE\_REPLICATION\_SLOT and EXPORT\_SNAPSHOT in a transaction.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check the message text and confirm that the application is written correctly and the command is being used correctly.

---

**@1@ must specify unqualified relation names**

[Description]

SQL row locking clause such as "FOR UPDATE" must specify unqualified relation names

[System Processing]

Processing aborts

[Action]

To investigate the cause of the occurrence from the message, and remove cause.

---

**@1@ needs a slot to be specified using --slot**

[Description]

needs a slot to be specified using --slot

[System Processing]

Processing aborts

[Action]

To investigate the cause of the occurrence from the message, and remove cause.

---

**@1@ the prepared transaction with gid: "@2@"**

[Description]

The prepared transaction has been completed.

[System Processing]

Continues processing.

[Action]

No action required.

---

**@1@(@2@) failed for @3@ address "@4@": @5@**

[Description]

The database server was disconnected during execution of the application.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Communication may have been disconnected for the following reasons:

- An error occurred in the communication line (TCP/IP etc.)
- The database server terminated abnormally.

Take the following actions:

- Eliminate the cause of the communication disconnection.

Examine the application and check whether the transaction for implementing update is a long transaction. Judge whether it is a long transaction from the following viewpoints and modify the application.

- a) If the COMMIT process is not executed after update, add the COMMIT process.

- b) If the total number of update records in a single transaction is high, split it into short transactions.
- c) If search was conducted for a long period of time after update, execute COMMIT after update or review the search SQL statement.
- If none of the above situations applies, perform the following:
  - a) Confirm that the database server has not stopped.
  - b) If the database server is starting or stopping, re-execute the command after the database server starts.

---

#### **@1@: Copy of objects for allnodes and Setup of replication table weren't executed**

##### **[Description]**

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

##### **[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

##### **[Action]**

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

#### **@1@: could not connect to database "@2@"**

##### **[Description]**

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

##### **[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

##### **[Action]**

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

#### **@1@: could not connect to database "postgres" or "template1"**

##### **[Description]**

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

##### **[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

##### **[Action]**

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

#### **@1@: could not create file "@2@" for writing**

##### **[Description]**

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

##### **[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

##### **[Action]**

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

**@1@: could not locate my own executable path****[Description]**

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

**@1@: could not open file "@2@" for writing****[Description]**

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

**@1@: could not remove initialize.signal file****[Description]**

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

**@1@: could not remove scaleout.signal file****[Description]**

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

**@1@: could not remove scaleout\_passfile****[Description]**

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

**@1@: Failed connect to coordinator**

[Description]

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

**@1@: Failed copy replication table**

[Description]

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

**@1@: Failed define objects to datanode**

[Description]

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

**@1@: Failed make replication object**

[Description]

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

**@1@: Failed open initialize.signal**

**[Description]**

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

**@1@: Failed open postmaster.pid**

**[Description]**

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

**@1@: Failed read initialize.signal**

**[Description]**

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

**@1@: initialize.signal does not exist**

**[Description]**

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

**@1@: out of memory**

**[Description]**

There was insufficient free space in the server's memory during execution of the application.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.



[Action]

Estimate memory usage and take the following action:

- If the number of simultaneous connections from client applications is high, reduce it.
- If the number of simultaneous SQL executions is high, reduce it.

---

**@1@: pg\_dumpall failed**

[Description]

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

**@1@: postmaster.pid does not exist**

[Description]

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

**@1@: query failed: @2@**

[Description]

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

**@1@: query was: @2@**

[Description]

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

**@1@: Stop sever process and re-execute pg\_ctl start with longer timeout**

[Description]

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

**"@1@" is not a directory**

[Description]

Not a directory.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

**"@1@" is not pid file: number of line is not enough(expect 4 but @2@)**

[Description]

Not pid file: number of line is not enough.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

**"root" execution of the conmgr is not permitted.The conmgr must be started under an unprivileged user ID to preventpossible system security compromise. See the documentation formore information on how to properly start the conmgr.**

[Description]

"root" execution of the conmgr is not permitted. The conmgr must be started under an unprivileged user ID to prevent possible system security compromise. See the documentation for more information on how to properly start the conmgr.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

**"VARYING" cannot have a level number greater than 48**

[Description]

Variables that have greather than 48 level have VARYING clause.

[System Processing]

Precompiling will be aborted.

[Action]

Remove "VARYING" clause or change the level number.

---

**Is the server running locally and accepting connections on that socket?**

[Description]

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**Is the server running on that host and accepting TCP/IP connections?**

[Description]

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**a new master encryption key has been set (@1 @/@2@)**

[Description]

A new encryption key has been set. The current number of save keys is the number on the left, and the maximum number of save keys is the number on the right.

[System Processing]

This is an information message when TDE\_h is loaded.

[Action]

Provides notification of the current number of saved keys. If the maximum number is reached, the oldest key is deleted first. Check that the operation is as expected, and if it is not as expected, consider modifying postgresql.conf.

---

**aborting any active transactions**

[Description]

Rollback any active transactions because the database system is being requested to shut down.

[System Processing]

Continues processing.

[Action]

Retry any necessary applications or commands after restarting the database system.

---

**All directory entries in pg\_tblspc/ should be symbolic links.**

[Description]

An error occurred due to unexpected directory entry found at specific path

[System Processing]

Cancels processing.

[Action]

Remove those unexpected directories, or set allow\_in\_place\_tablespaces to ON transiently to let recovery complete.

---

**another conmgr process is running**

[Description]

Another conmgr process is running.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

**another conmgr process is shutting down**

[Description]

Another conmgr process is shutting down.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

**another conmgr process is starting up**

[Description]

Another conmgr process is starting up.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

**another conmgr process(PID @1@) is running**

[Description]

Another conmgr process is running.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

**application connection is closed by remote in @1@**

[Description]

Application connection is closed by remote.

[System Processing]

Processing continues.

[Action]

Check log of remote system.

---

**array slice subscript must provide both boundaries**

[Description]

An error occurred during execution of the application or command.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

When assigning to a slice of an empty array value, slice boundaries must be fully specified.

---

**at least one COORDINATOR is needed**

[Description]

The operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is abnormal.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Confirm that the operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is normal.

---

**authentication identifier set more than once**

[Description]

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**bind message has @1@ parameter formats but @2@ parameters**

[Description]

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**bind message has @1@ result formats but query has @2@ columns**

**[Description]**

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**bind message supplies @1@ parameters, but prepared statement "@2@" requires @3@**

**[Description]**

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**canceled authentication due to timeout**

**[Description]**

Timeout occurred during execution of the application.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Check the following:

- If executing SQL that outputs a large volume of search results, add a conditional expression to filter the results further.
- If numerous SQLs are being simultaneously executed, reduce the number of simultaneously executed SQLs.
- If a large volume of data is to be updated in a single transaction, modify the SQL to reduce the volume of data to be updated in a single transaction.
- If executing a complex SQL, modify it to a simple SQL.
- Check if there are any problems in the network.
- Before conducting maintenance that involves the processing of a large volume of data, use the SET statement to temporarily increase the value of maintenance\_work\_mem.

---

**canceled statement due to conflict with recovery**

**[Description]**

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

**canceled statement due to statement timeout**

#### [Description]

Timeout occurred during execution of the application.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Check the following:

- If executing SQL that outputs a large volume of search results, add a conditional expression to filter the results further.
- If numerous SQLs are being simultaneously executed, reduce the number of simultaneously executed SQLs.
- If a large volume of data is to be updated in a single transaction, modify the SQL to reduce the volume of data to be updated in a single transaction.
- If executing a complex SQL, modify it to a simple SQL.
- Check if there are any problems in the network.
- Before conducting maintenance that involves the processing of a large volume of data, use the SET statement to temporarily increase the value of maintenance\_work\_mem.

---

### **cannot @1@ "@2@" because it has pending trigger events**

#### [Description]

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

### **cannot @1@ "@2@" because it is being used by active queries in this session**

#### [Description]

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

### **cannot change client\_encoding during a parallel operation**

#### [Description]

This error occurs if a function wants to set client\_encoding and is invoked by the parallel query.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Check the message text and confirm that client\_encoding is not set by the parallel query operation.

---

### **cannot create temporary tables during recovery**

**[Description]**

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

**cannot enter pipeline mode, connection not idle**

**[Description]**

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

**cannot exit pipeline mode while busy**

**[Description]**

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

**cannot exit pipeline mode with uncollected results**

**[Description]**

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

**cannot replace existing key**

**[Description]**

An error occurred during execution of the application or command.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.



[Action]

Try using the function jsonb\_set to replace the key value.

---

**cannot uniquely identify the id**

[Description]

Could not uniquely identify the id.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Please refer to the server log, and determine the cause of the error.

---

**certificate does not match private key file "@1@": @2@**

[Description]

The operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is abnormal.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Confirm that the operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is normal.

---

**checkpoints are occurring too frequently (@1@ second apart)**

[Description]

Checkpoints are occurring too frequently.

[System Processing]

Continues processing.

[Action]

Consider increasing the value of configuration parameter max\_wal\_size.

---

**closing all application connections**

[Description]

Closing all application connections.

[System Processing]

Processing continues.

[Action]

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

**cmdata directory "@1@" does not exist**

[Description]

Cmdata directory does not exist.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

**collect shardinfo connection failed: @1@**

[Description]

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**conmgr process is ready**

[Description]

Conmgr process is ready.

[System Processing]

Continues processing.

[Action]

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

**conmgr process is starting**

[Description]

Conmgr process is starting.

[System Processing]

Processing continues.

[Action]

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

**conmgr process shutting down**

[Description]

Conmgr process shutting down.

[System Processing]

Continues processing.

[Action]

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

**conmgr process stopped**

[Description]

Conmgr process stopped.

[System Processing]

Processing continues.

[Action]

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

**connection manager directory "@1@" does not exist**

[Description]

Connection manager directory does not exist.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

**connection to client lost**

[Description]

The database server was disconnected during execution of the application.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Communication may have been disconnected for the following reasons:

- An error occurred in the communication line (TCP/IP etc.)
- The database server terminated abnormally.

Take the following actions:

- Eliminate the cause of the communication disconnection.

Examine the application and check whether the transaction for implementing update is a long transaction. Judge whether it is a long transaction from the following viewpoints and modify the application.

- a) If the COMMIT process is not executed after update, add the COMMIT process.
  - b) If the total number of update records in a single transaction is high, split it into short transactions.
  - c) If search was conducted for a long period of time after update, execute COMMIT after update or review the search SQL statement.
- If none of the above situations applies, perform the following:
    - a) Confirm that the database server has not stopped.
    - b) If the database server is starting or stopping, re-execute the command after the database server starts.

---

**connection to server at "@1@" (@2@), port @3@ failed:**

[Description]

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**connection to server at "@1@", port @2@ failed:****[Description]**

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**connection to server on socket "@1@" failed:****[Description]**

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**COPY statement cannot be null****[Description]**

COPY statement cannot be null.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Please specify COPY FROM statement.

---

**could not accept application connection: @1@****[Description]**

Could not accept application connection.

**[System Processing]**

Processing aborts.

**[Action]**

Check log of Operating System.

---

**could not accept heartbeat connection: @1@****[Description]**

Could not accept heartbeat connection.

**[System Processing]**

Processing aborts.

**[Action]**

Check log of Operating System.

---

**could not accept new connection: @1@****[Description]**

The database server was disconnected during execution of the application.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Communication may have been disconnected for the following reasons:

- An error occurred in the communication line (TCP/IP etc.)
- The database server terminated abnormally.

Take the following actions:

- Eliminate the cause of the communication disconnection.

Examine the application and check whether the transaction for implementing update is a long transaction. Judge whether it is a long transaction from the following viewpoints and modify the application.

- a) If the COMMIT process is not executed after update, add the COMMIT process.
  - b) If the total number of update records in a single transaction is high, split it into short transactions.
  - c) If search was conducted for a long period of time after update, execute COMMIT after update or review the search SQL statement.
- If none of the above situations applies, perform the following:
    - a) Confirm that the database server has not stopped.
    - b) If the database server is starting or stopping, re-execute the command after the database server starts.

---

**could not accept SSL connection: @1@****[Description]**

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**could not accept SSL connection: EOF detected****[Description]**

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**could not access to cmdata directory "@1@": @2@****[Description]**

Could not access to cmdata directory.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Check log of Operating System.

---

**could not access to connection manager directory "@1@": @2@**

[Description]

Could not access to connection manager directory.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Check log of Operating System.

---

**could not add node: host=@1@ hostaddr=@2@ port=@3@**

[Description]

Could not add node.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Check messages near this message.

---

**could not be ready for next command: @1@**

[Description]

Could not be ready for next command.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Check log of Operating System.

---

**could not bind @1@ address "@2@": @3@**

[Description]

The database server was disconnected during execution of the application.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Communication may have been disconnected for the following reasons:

- An error occurred in the communication line (TCP/IP etc.)
- The database server terminated abnormally.

Take the following actions:

- Eliminate the cause of the communication disconnection.

Examine the application and check whether the transaction for implementing update is a long transaction. Judge whether it is a long transaction from the following viewpoints and modify the application.

- a) If the COMMIT process is not executed after update, add the COMMIT process.
  - b) If the total number of update records in a single transaction is high, split it into short transactions.
  - c) If search was conducted for a long period of time after update, execute COMMIT after update or review the search SQL statement.
- If none of the above situations applies, perform the following:
- a) Confirm that the database server has not stopped.
  - b) If the database server is starting or stopping, re-execute the command after the database server starts.

---

#### could not bind port @1@ with following causes

##### [Description]

Could not bind port with following causes.

##### [System Processing]

Processing aborts.

##### [Action]

Check messages near this message.

---

#### could not bind to local address "@1@": @2@

##### [Description]

The database server was disconnected during execution of the application.

##### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

##### [Action]

Communication may have been disconnected for the following reasons:

- An error occurred in the communication line (TCP/IP etc.)
- The database server terminated abnormally.

Take the following actions:

- Eliminate the cause of the communication disconnection.

Examine the application and check whether the transaction for implementing update is a long transaction. Judge whether it is a long transaction from the following viewpoints and modify the application.

- a) If the COMMIT process is not executed after update, add the COMMIT process.
  - b) If the total number of update records in a single transaction is high, split it into short transactions.
  - c) If search was conducted for a long period of time after update, execute COMMIT after update or review the search SQL statement.
- If none of the above situations applies, perform the following:
- a) Confirm that the database server has not stopped.
  - b) If the database server is starting or stopping, re-execute the command after the database server starts.

---

#### could not change directory to "@1@": @2@

##### [Description]

Could not change directory.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Check log of Operating System.

---

**could not check the existence of the backend with PID @1@: @2@**

[Description]

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

**could not connect due to the following errors**

[Description]

Could not connect due to the following errors.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Check messages near this message.

---

**could not connect to conmgr process: @1@**

[Description]

Could not connect to conmgr process.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Check log of Operating System.

---

**could not connect to database @1@: out of memory**

[Description]

There was insufficient free space in the server's memory during execution of the application.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Estimate memory usage and take the following action:

- If the number of simultaneous connections from client applications is high, reduce it.
- If the number of simultaneous SQL executions is high, reduce it.

---

**could not connect to Ident server at address "@1@", port @2@: @3@**



#### [Description]

The database server was disconnected during execution of the application.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Communication may have been disconnected for the following reasons:

- An error occurred in the communication line (TCP/IP etc.)
- The database server terminated abnormally.

Take the following actions:

- Eliminate the cause of the communication disconnection.

Examine the application and check whether the transaction for implementing update is a long transaction. Judge whether it is a long transaction from the following viewpoints and modify the application.

- a) If the COMMIT process is not executed after update, add the COMMIT process.
  - b) If the total number of update records in a single transaction is high, split it into short transactions.
  - c) If search was conducted for a long period of time after update, execute COMMIT after update or review the search SQL statement.
- If none of the above situations applies, perform the following:
    - a) Confirm that the database server has not stopped.
    - b) If the database server is starting or stopping, re-execute the command after the database server starts.

---

**could not connect to publisher when attempting to drop replication slot "@1@": @2@**

#### [Description]

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

**could not connect to the primary server: @1@**

#### [Description]

The database server was disconnected during execution of the application.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Communication may have been disconnected for the following reasons:

- An error occurred in the communication line (TCP/IP etc.)
- The database server terminated abnormally.

Take the following actions:

- Eliminate the cause of the communication disconnection.

Examine the application and check whether the transaction for implementing update is a long transaction. Judge whether it is a long transaction from the following viewpoints and modify the application.

- a) If the COMMIT process is not executed after update, add the COMMIT process.
  - b) If the total number of update records in a single transaction is high, split it into short transactions.
  - c) If search was conducted for a long period of time after update, execute COMMIT after update or review the search SQL statement.
- If none of the above situations applies, perform the following:
- a) Confirm that the database server has not stopped.
  - b) If the database server is starting or stopping, re-execute the command after the database server starts.

---

**could not create @1@ socket for address "@2@": @3@**

**[Description]**

The database server was disconnected during execution of the application.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Communication may have been disconnected for the following reasons:

- An error occurred in the communication line (TCP/IP etc.)
- The database server terminated abnormally.

Take the following actions:

- Eliminate the cause of the communication disconnection.

Examine the application and check whether the transaction for implementing update is a long transaction. Judge whether it is a long transaction from the following viewpoints and modify the application.

- a) If the COMMIT process is not executed after update, add the COMMIT process.
  - b) If the total number of update records in a single transaction is high, split it into short transactions.
  - c) If search was conducted for a long period of time after update, execute COMMIT after update or review the search SQL statement.
- If none of the above situations applies, perform the following:
- a) Confirm that the database server has not stopped.
  - b) If the database server is starting or stopping, re-execute the command after the database server starts.

---

**could not create an additional interval event: @1@**

**[Description]**

Could not create an additional interval event.

**[System Processing]**

Processing aborts.

**[Action]**

Check log of Operating System.

---

**could not create archive status file "@1@": @2@**

**[Description]**

There was insufficient free space in the disk of the database server during execution of the application.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Delete user data stored in the database server to free up space on the disk.

---

**could not create bufferevent: @1@**

[Description]

Could not create bufferevent.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Check log of Operating System.

---

**could not create connmgr process: @1@**

[Description]

Could not create connmgr process.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Check log of Operating System.

---

**could not create directory "@1@": @2@**

[Description]

There was insufficient free space in the disk of the database server during execution of the application.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Delete user data stored in the database server to free up space on the disk.

---

**could not create file "@1@": @2@**

[Description]

There was insufficient free space in the disk of the database server during execution of the application.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Delete user data stored in the database server to free up space on the disk.

---

**could not create lock file "@1@": @2@**

[Description]

There was insufficient free space in the disk of the database server during execution of the application.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Delete user data stored in the database server to free up space on the disk.

---

**could not create missing directory "@1@": @2@**

[Description]

There was insufficient free space in the disk of the database server during execution of the application.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Delete user data stored in the database server to free up space on the disk.

---

**could not create pid file "@1@": @2@**

[Description]

Could not create pid file.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Check log of Operating System.

---

**could not create pipe for syslog: @1@**

[Description]

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**could not create shared memory segment: @1@**

[Description]

There was insufficient free space in the database server's shared memory during execution of the application.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Estimate memory usage and take the following action:

- If the number of simultaneous connections from client applications is high, reduce it.
- If the number of simultaneous SQL executions is high, reduce it.

---

**could not create ShmemIndex entry for data structure "@1@"**

**[Description]**

There was insufficient free space in the database server's shared memory during execution of the application.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Estimate memory usage and take the following action:

- If the number of simultaneous connections from client applications is high, reduce it.
- If the number of simultaneous SQL executions is high, reduce it.

---

**could not create socket for Ident connection: @1@**

**[Description]**

The database server was disconnected during execution of the application.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Communication may have been disconnected for the following reasons:

- An error occurred in the communication line (TCP/IP etc.)
- The database server terminated abnormally.

Take the following actions:

- Eliminate the cause of the communication disconnection.

Examine the application and check whether the transaction for implementing update is a long transaction. Judge whether it is a long transaction from the following viewpoints and modify the application.

- a) If the COMMIT process is not executed after update, add the COMMIT process.
  - b) If the total number of update records in a single transaction is high, split it into short transactions.
  - c) If search was conducted for a long period of time after update, execute COMMIT after update or review the search SQL statement.
- If none of the above situations applies, perform the following:
    - a) Confirm that the database server has not stopped.
    - b) If the database server is starting or stopping, re-execute the command after the database server starts.

---

**could not create socket: @1@**

**[Description]**

There was insufficient free space in the server's memory during execution of the application.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Estimate memory usage and take the following action:

- If the number of simultaneous connections from client applications is high, reduce it.
- If the number of simultaneous SQL executions is high, reduce it.

---

**could not drop relation mapping for subscription "@1@"**

**[Description]**

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

**could not duplicate socket @1@ for use in backend: error code @2@**

**[Description]**

The database server was disconnected during execution of the application.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Communication may have been disconnected for the following reasons:

- An error occurred in the communication line (TCP/IP etc.)
- The database server terminated abnormally.

Take the following actions:

- Eliminate the cause of the communication disconnection.

Examine the application and check whether the transaction for implementing update is a long transaction. Judge whether it is a long transaction from the following viewpoints and modify the application.

- a) If the COMMIT process is not executed after update, add the COMMIT process.
  - b) If the total number of update records in a single transaction is high, split it into short transactions.
  - c) If search was conducted for a long period of time after update, execute COMMIT after update or review the search SQL statement.
- If none of the above situations applies, perform the following:
    - a) Confirm that the database server has not stopped.
    - b) If the database server is starting or stopping, re-execute the command after the database server starts.

---

**could not establish heartbeat connection**

**[Description]**

Could not establish heartbeat connection.

**[System Processing]**

Processing aborts.

**[Action]**

Check messages near this message.

---

**could not establish SSL connection: @1@**

**[Description]**

The database server was disconnected during execution of the application.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Communication may have been disconnected for the following reasons:

- An error occurred in the communication line (TCP/IP etc.)
- The database server terminated abnormally.

Take the following actions:

- Eliminate the cause of the communication disconnection.

Examine the application and check whether the transaction for implementing update is a long transaction. Judge whether it is a long transaction from the following viewpoints and modify the application.

- If the COMMIT process is not executed after update, add the COMMIT process.
  - If the total number of update records in a single transaction is high, split it into short transactions.
  - If search was conducted for a long period of time after update, execute COMMIT after update or review the search SQL statement.
- If none of the above situations applies, perform the following:
    - Confirm that the database server has not stopped.
    - If the database server is starting or stopping, re-execute the command after the database server starts.

---

**could not extend file "@1@": @2@**

#### [Description]

There was insufficient free space in the disk of the database server during execution of the application.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Delete user data stored in the database server to free up space on the disk.

---

**could not extend file "@1@": wrote only @2@ of @3@ bytes at block @4@**

#### [Description]

There was insufficient free space in the disk of the database server during execution of the application.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Delete user data stored in the database server to free up space on the disk.

---

**could not get a result from conmgr process: @1@**

#### [Description]

Could not get a result from conmgr process.

#### [System Processing]

Processing aborts.

#### [Action]

Check log of Operating System.

---

**could not get function(@1 @) from library "@2@" :@3@****[Description]**

Failed to load a function in the PKCS11 library.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Check that the PKCS11 library version and/or path are correct and take action.

---

**could not get home directory to locate root certificate fileEither provide the file or change sslmode to disable server certificate verification.****[Description]**

The operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is abnormal.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Confirm that the operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is normal.

---

**could not get peer credentials: @1 @****[Description]**

The database server was disconnected during execution of the application.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Communication may have been disconnected for the following reasons:

- An error occurred in the communication line (TCP/IP etc.)
- The database server terminated abnormally.

Take the following actions:

- Eliminate the cause of the communication disconnection.

Examine the application and check whether the transaction for implementing update is a long transaction. Judge whether it is a long transaction from the following viewpoints and modify the application.

- a) If the COMMIT process is not executed after update, add the COMMIT process.
  - b) If the total number of update records in a single transaction is high, split it into short transactions.
  - c) If search was conducted for a long period of time after update, execute COMMIT after update or review the search SQL statement.
- If none of the above situations applies, perform the following:
    - a) Confirm that the database server has not stopped.
    - b) If the database server is starting or stopping, re-execute the command after the database server starts.

---

**could not get string format address: @1 @**



[Description]

Could not get string format address.

[System Processing]

Processing continues.

[Action]

Check log of Operating System.

---

**could not initialize checksum of file "@1@"**

[Description]

There was insufficient free space in the database server's shared memory during execution of the application.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Estimate memory usage and take the following action:

- If the number of simultaneous connections from client applications is high, reduce it.
  - If the number of simultaneous SQL executions is high, reduce it.
- 

**could not initialize SSL connection: @1@**

[Description]

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**could not interpret result from server: @1@**

[Description]

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**could not listen for socket: @1@**

[Description]

Could not listen for socket.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Check log of Operating System.

---

**could not listen on @1@ address "@2@": @3@****[Description]**

The database server was disconnected during execution of the application.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Communication may have been disconnected for the following reasons:

- An error occurred in the communication line (TCP/IP etc.)
- The database server terminated abnormally.

Take the following actions:

- Eliminate the cause of the communication disconnection.

Examine the application and check whether the transaction for implementing update is a long transaction. Judge whether it is a long transaction from the following viewpoints and modify the application.

- a) If the COMMIT process is not executed after update, add the COMMIT process.
  - b) If the total number of update records in a single transaction is high, split it into short transactions.
  - c) If search was conducted for a long period of time after update, execute COMMIT after update or review the search SQL statement.
- If none of the above situations applies, perform the following:
- a) Confirm that the database server has not stopped.
  - b) If the database server is starting or stopping, re-execute the command after the database server starts.

---

**could not load locale "@1@"****[Description]**

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

**could not load private key file "@1@": @2@****[Description]**

The operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is abnormal.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Confirm that the operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is normal.

---

**could not lock semaphore: error code @1@**

**[Description]**

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

**could not notify application: @1 @**

**[Description]**

Could not notify application.

**[System Processing]**

Processing aborts.

**[Action]**

Check log of Operating System.

---

**could not obtain lock on row in relation "@1@"**

**[Description]**

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

**could not open certificate file "@1@": @2@**

**[Description]**

The operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is abnormal.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Confirm that the operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is normal.

---

**could not open file "@1@": @2@**

**[Description]**

Could not open file.

**[System Processing]**

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Check log of Operating System.

---

**could not open pid file "@1@": @2@**

[Description]

Could not open pid file.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Check log of Operating System.

---

**could not parse connection string: @1@**

[Description]

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**could not prepare for heartbeat: @1@**

[Description]

Could not prepare for heartbeat.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Check log of Operating System.

---

**could not prepare statement to fetch file contents: @1@**

[Description]

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

**could not read certificate file "@1@": @2@**

[Description]

The operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is abnormal.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Confirm that the operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is normal.

---

#### could not read from logger pipe: @1@

#### [Description]

The database server was disconnected during execution of the application.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Communication may have been disconnected for the following reasons:

- An error occurred in the communication line (TCP/IP etc.)
- The database server terminated abnormally.

Take the following actions:

- Eliminate the cause of the communication disconnection.

Examine the application and check whether the transaction for implementing update is a long transaction. Judge whether it is a long transaction from the following viewpoints and modify the application.

- a) If the COMMIT process is not executed after update, add the COMMIT process.
  - b) If the total number of update records in a single transaction is high, split it into short transactions.
  - c) If search was conducted for a long period of time after update, execute COMMIT after update or review the search SQL statement.
- If none of the above situations applies, perform the following:
    - a) Confirm that the database server has not stopped.
    - b) If the database server is starting or stopping, re-execute the command after the database server starts.

---

#### could not read from pid file "@1@": @2@

#### [Description]

Could not read from pid file.

#### [System Processing]

Processing aborts.

#### [Action]

Check log of Operating System.

---

#### could not read lock file "@1@": @2@

#### [Description]

There was insufficient free space in the disk of the database server during execution of the application.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Delete user data stored in the database server to free up space on the disk.

---

**could not read root certificate file "@1@": @2@**

[Description]

The operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is abnormal.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Confirm that the operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is normal.

---

**could not read symbolic link "@1@": @2@**

[Description]

There was insufficient free space in the disk of the database server during execution of the application.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Delete user data stored in the database server to free up space on the disk.

---

**could not receive a heartbeat packet: @1@**

[Description]

Could not receive a heartbeat packet.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Check log of Operating System.

---

**could not receive data from client: @1@**

[Description]

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**could not receive data from server: @1@**

[Description]

The database server was disconnected during execution of the application.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Communication may have been disconnected for the following reasons:

- An error occurred in the communication line (TCP/IP etc.)
- The database server terminated abnormally.

Take the following actions:

- Eliminate the cause of the communication disconnection.

Examine the application and check whether the transaction for implementing update is a long transaction. Judge whether it is a long transaction from the following viewpoints and modify the application.

- If the COMMIT process is not executed after update, add the COMMIT process.
  - If the total number of update records in a single transaction is high, split it into short transactions.
  - If search was conducted for a long period of time after update, execute COMMIT after update or review the search SQL statement.
- If none of the above situations applies, perform the following:
    - Confirm that the database server has not stopped.
    - If the database server is starting or stopping, re-execute the command after the database server starts.

---

**could not receive database system identifier and timeline ID from the primary server: @1@**

#### [Description]

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**could not receive response from Ident server at address "@1@", port @2@: @3@**

#### [Description]

The database server was disconnected during execution of the application.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Communication may have been disconnected for the following reasons:

- An error occurred in the communication line (TCP/IP etc.)
- The database server terminated abnormally.

Take the following actions:

- Eliminate the cause of the communication disconnection.

Examine the application and check whether the transaction for implementing update is a long transaction. Judge whether it is a long transaction from the following viewpoints and modify the application.

- If the COMMIT process is not executed after update, add the COMMIT process.
- If the total number of update records in a single transaction is high, split it into short transactions.

c) If search was conducted for a long period of time after update, execute COMMIT after update or review the search SQL statement.

- If none of the above situations applies, perform the following:

a) Confirm that the database server has not stopped.

b) If the database server is starting or stopping, re-execute the command after the database server starts.

---

#### **could not remove pid file "@1@": @2@**

##### **[Description]**

Could not remove pid file.

##### **[System Processing]**

Processing aborts.

##### **[Action]**

Check log of Operating System.

---

#### **could not reply all application info: @1@**

##### **[Description]**

Could not reply all application info.

##### **[System Processing]**

Processing aborts.

##### **[Action]**

Check log of Operating System.

---

#### **could not reply all node info: @1@**

##### **[Description]**

Could not reply all node info.

##### **[System Processing]**

Processing aborts.

##### **[Action]**

Check log of Operating System.

---

#### **could not reply for startup: @1@**

##### **[Description]**

Could not reply for startup.

##### **[System Processing]**

Processing aborts.

##### **[Action]**

Check log of Operating System.

---

#### **could not reply target node info: @1@**

##### **[Description]**

Could not reply target node info.



[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Check log of Operating System.

---

**could not resolve address: @1@**

[Description]

Could not resolve address.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Check log of Operating System.

---

**Could not resolve client IP address to a host name: @1@.**

[Description]

Supplementary information was output.

[System Processing]

None.

[Action]

Refer to this message together with the message that was output immediately beforehand.

---

**could not seek pid file "@1@": @2@**

[Description]

Could not seek pid file.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Check log of Operating System.

---

**could not send @1@: @2@**

[Description]

Could not send.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Check log of Operating System.

---

**could not send data to client: @1@**

[Description]

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**could not send data to server: @1@**

#### [Description]

The database server was disconnected during execution of the application.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Communication may have been disconnected for the following reasons:

- An error occurred in the communication line (TCP/IP etc.)
- The database server terminated abnormally.

Take the following actions:

- Eliminate the cause of the communication disconnection.

Examine the application and check whether the transaction for implementing update is a long transaction. Judge whether it is a long transaction from the following viewpoints and modify the application.

- a) If the COMMIT process is not executed after update, add the COMMIT process.
  - b) If the total number of update records in a single transaction is high, split it into short transactions.
  - c) If search was conducted for a long period of time after update, execute COMMIT after update or review the search SQL statement.
- If none of the above situations applies, perform the following:
    - a) Confirm that the database server has not stopped.
    - b) If the database server is starting or stopping, re-execute the command after the database server starts.

---

**could not send query to Ident server at address "@1@", port @2@: @3@**

#### [Description]

The database server was disconnected during execution of the application.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Communication may have been disconnected for the following reasons:

- An error occurred in the communication line (TCP/IP etc.)
- The database server terminated abnormally.

Take the following actions:

- Eliminate the cause of the communication disconnection.

Examine the application and check whether the transaction for implementing update is a long transaction. Judge whether it is a long transaction from the following viewpoints and modify the application.

- a) If the COMMIT process is not executed after update, add the COMMIT process.
- b) If the total number of update records in a single transaction is high, split it into short transactions.

c) If search was conducted for a long period of time after update, execute COMMIT after update or review the search SQL statement.

- If none of the above situations applies, perform the following:

a) Confirm that the database server has not stopped.

b) If the database server is starting or stopping, re-execute the command after the database server starts.

---

**could not send signal to conmgr process: @1@**

**[Description]**

Could not send signal to conmgr process

**[System Processing]**

Processing aborts.

**[Action]**

Check log of Operating System.

---

**could not send signal(@1@) to conmgr process(PID: @2@): @3@**

**[Description]**

Could not send signal to conmgr process.

**[System Processing]**

Processing aborts.

**[Action]**

Check log of Operating System.

---

**could not set socket to nonblocking mode: @1@**

**[Description]**

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**could not set SSL Server Name Indication (SNI): @1@**

**[Description]**

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**could not set SSL socket: @1@**

**[Description]**

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**could not start conmgr process due to setsid() failure: @1@**

[Description]

Could not start conmgr process due to setsid() failure.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Check log of Operating System.

---

**could not start conmgr process in time**

[Description]

Could not start conmgr process in time.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Check log of conmgr process.

---

**could not start conmgr process: @1@**

[Description]

Could not start conmgr process.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Check log of Operating System.

---

**could not start conmgr process**

[Description]

Could not start conmgr process.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Check log of conmgr process.

---

**could not stat file "@1@": @2@**

[Description]

There was insufficient free space in the disk of the database server during execution of the application.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Delete user data stored in the database server to free up space on the disk.

---

**could not stop conmgr process in time**

[Description]

Could not stop conmgr process in time.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Check log of conmgr process.

---

**could not sync to pid file "@1@": @2@**

[Description]

Could not sync to pid file.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Check log of Operating System.

---

**Could not translate client host name "@1@" to IP address: @2@.**

[Description]

Supplementary information was output.

[System Processing]

None.

[Action]

Refer to this message together with the message that was output immediately beforehand.

---

**could not translate name**

[Description]

An error occurred while translating domain name to Kerberos realm name in SSL.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check the message text and confirm that the domain name is written correctly.

---

**could not try-lock semaphore: error code @1@**

[Description]

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

**could not write archive status file "@1@": @2@**

[Description]

There was insufficient free space in the disk of the database server during execution of the application.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Delete user data stored in the database server to free up space on the disk.

---

**could not write block @1@ in file "@2@": @3@**

[Description]

There was insufficient free space in the disk of the database server during execution of the application.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Delete user data stored in the database server to free up space on the disk.

---

**could not write block @1@ in file "@2@": wrote @3@ of @4@**

[Description]

There was insufficient free space in the disk of the database server during execution of the application.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Delete user data stored in the database server to free up space on the disk.

---

**could not write block @1@ in file "@2@": wrote only @3@ of @4@ bytes**

[Description]

There was insufficient free space in the disk of the database server during execution of the application.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Delete user data stored in the database server to free up space on the disk.

---

**could not write bootstrap write-ahead log file: @1@**

[Description]

There was insufficient free space in the disk of the database server during execution of the application.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Delete user data stored in the database server to free up space on the disk.

---

**could not write file "@1@": @2@**

[Description]

There was insufficient free space in the disk of the database server during execution of the application.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Delete user data stored in the database server to free up space on the disk.

---

**could not write pid file "@1@": @2@**

[Description]

Could not write pid file.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Check log of Operating System.

---

**could not write server file "@1@": @2@**

[Description]

There was insufficient free space in the disk of the database server during execution of the application.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Delete user data stored in the database server to free up space on the disk.

---

**could not write temporary statistics file "@1@": @2@**

[Description]

There was insufficient free space in the disk of the database server during execution of the application.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Delete user data stored in the database server to free up space on the disk.

---

**could not write to COPY file: @1@**

[Description]

There was insufficient free space in the disk of the database server during execution of the application.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Delete user data stored in the database server to free up space on the disk.

---

**could not write to file "@1@": @2@**

[Description]

There was insufficient free space in the disk of the database server during execution of the application.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Delete user data stored in the database server to free up space on the disk.

---

**could not write to log file @1@ at offset @2@, length @3@: @4@**

[Description]

There are the following cases:

- failed to write transaction log file
- failed to write transaction log file on backup data storage destination

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Lack of storage space or malfunction of storage allocating the file shown in this message is considered.

If it's true, recover the database system according to "Actions when an Error Occurs" of "Operation Guide" or "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

If it's not true, identify the cause according to the information in this message such as errno, and work around.

The following major causes are considered.

- the file has no permission or the permission has been changed
- power of the storage allocating the file has been turned off
- unmounted the storage allocating the file
- another process or human operated the file
- the storage allocating the file has crashed

---

**could not write to pid file "@1@": @2@**

[Description]

Could not write to pid file.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Check log of Operating System.

---

**database is not accepting commands to avoid wraparound data loss in database "@1@"**



[Description]

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

**database is not accepting commands to avoid wraparound data loss in database with OID @1@**

[Description]

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

**deadlock detected**

[Description]

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

**disconnection: session time: @1@: @2@: @3@. @4@ user=@5@ database=@6@ host=@7@@@8@@@9@**

[Description]

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**either backend\_host or backend\_hostaddr is needed for instance #@1@**

[Description]

Either backend\_host or backend\_hostaddr is needed for instance.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

**ending log output to stderr**

[Description]

Ending log output to stderr.

[System Processing]

Continues processing.

[Action]

Future log output will be output to the log destination.

---

**error is ocured for completion of asynchronous connect for heartbeat: @1@**

[Description]

Error is ocured for completion of asynchronous connect for heartbeat.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Check log of Operating System.

---

**error sending command to database "@1@": @2@**

[Description]

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

**Execution of conmgr by a user with administrative permissions is notpermitted.The conmgr must be started under an unprivileged user ID to preventpossible system security compromises. See the documentation formore information on how to properly start the conmgr.**

[Description]

Execution of conmgr by a user with administrative permissions is not permitted. The conmgr must be started under an unprivileged user ID to prevent possible system security compromises. See the documentation for more information on how to properly start the conmgr.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

**expected authentication request from server, but received @1@**

**[Description]**

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**expected GSS response, got message type @1 @**

**[Description]**

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**expected password response, got message type @1 @**

**[Description]**

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**expected SSPI response, got message type @1 @**

**[Description]**

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**failed to add new prepared transaction "@1@" by worker(@2@)**

**[Description]**

Failed to add new prepared transaction.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Please refer to the server log, and determine the cause of the error.

---

**failed to delete the record with id: @1@(SPI returned: @2@)**

[Description]

Could not delete the row in pgx\_loader\_state table.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Please refer to the server log, and determine the cause of the error.

---

**failed to execute SPI returned @1@**

[Description]

Could not execute SPI.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Please refer to the server log, and determine the cause of the error.

---

**failed to fetch id column from "@1@" by worker(@2@)**

[Description]

Failed to fetch the id column.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Please refer to the server log, and determine the cause of the error.

---

**failed to send GSSAPI negotiation response: @1@**

[Description]

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**failed to update state column of record with id: @1@**

[Description]

Failed to update the state column.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Please refer to the server log, and determine the cause of the error.

---

**function call message contains @1@ argument formats but @2@ arguments**

[Description]

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**function call message contains @1@ arguments but function requires @2@**

[Description]

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**heartbeat connect is refused: @1@**

[Description]

Heartbeat connect is refused.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Check log of remote system.

---

**heartbeat connect is timed out**

[Description]

Heartbeat connect is timed out.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Check log of remote system.

---

**heartbeat connection is established**

[Description]

Heartbeat connection is established.

[System Processing]

Processing continues.

[Action]

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

**heartbeat is timed out**

**[Description]**

Heartbeat is timed out.

**[System Processing]**

Processing aborts.

**[Action]**

Check log of remote system.

---

**host name must be specified for a verified SSL connection**

**[Description]**

The operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is abnormal.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Confirm that the operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is normal.

---

**host name must be specified**

**[Description]**

The operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is abnormal.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Confirm that the operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is normal.

---

**incomplete message from client**

**[Description]**

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**incomplete multibyte character**

**[Description]**

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**incomplete startup packet**

[Description]

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**Increase watchdog.max\_hb\_connections.**

[Description]

Increase watchdog.max\_hb\_connections.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

**internal error: received unexpected database pattern\_id @1@**

[Description]

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

**internal error: received unexpected relation pattern\_id @1@**

[Description]

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

**invalid argument size @1@ in function call message**

[Description]

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

### **invalid connection option "@1@"**

#### [Description]

The operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is abnormal.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Confirm that the operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is normal.

---

### **invalid DESCRIBE message subtype @1@**

#### [Description]

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

### **invalid frontend message type @1@**

#### [Description]

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

### **invalid length of startup packet**

#### [Description]

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

### **invalid message format**



[Description]

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**invalid message length**

[Description]

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**invalid parameter '@1@' in configuration file "@2@" line @3@**

[Description]

Invalid parameter in configuration file.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

**invalid password packet size**

[Description]

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**invalid pid file "@1@"**

[Description]

Invalid pid file.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

**invalid record length at @1@/@2@: wanted @3@, got @4@**

#### [Description]

invalid record length was found on archive log or transaction log data.

#### [System Processing]

The following causes could be considered.

- if the log level is information(INFO, NOTICE, LOG, DEBUG)

Continue processing.

- if the log level is error(ERROR, FATAL, PANIC)

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

If the log level is information(INFO, NOTICE, LOG, DEBUG), no action is required.

When the log level is error(ERROR, FATAL, PANIC), take either of the following actions.

- if this message is output during starting instance

Please restore according to "Deal at the time of abnormality" of "Operation Guide" or "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

- if this message is output during recovering

Cannot continue to recover with the current backup data because an archive log in the backup has an error.

Recover from the other backup data.

---

### invalid response from primary server

#### [Description]

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

### invalid socket: @1@

#### [Description]

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

### invalid standby message type "@1@"

#### [Description]

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**invalid startup packet layout: expected terminator as last byte**

[Description]

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**invalid string in message**

[Description]

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**invalid timeout "@1@"**

[Description]

Invalid timeout specified.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

**invalid value for integer parameter in configuration file "@1@" line @2@**

[Description]

Invalid value for integer parameter in configuration file.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

**invalid value for parameter '@1@'**

[Description]

Invalid value for parameter.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

**invalid value for parameter '@1@' in configuration file "@2@" line @3@**

[Description]

Invalid value for parameter in configuration file.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

**invalid value for parameter '@1@' of instance #@2@**

[Description]

Invalid value for parameter of instance.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

**Keystore does not require passphrase.**

[Description]

keystore-passphrase command line option and PGX\_KEYSTORE\_PASSPHRASE environment variable should not be set when using TDE\_z extension.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Remove keystore-passphrase from command line option or unset PGX\_KEYSTORE\_PASSPHRASE environment variable before starting the server with TDE\_z extension loaded.

---

**lack of max\_prepared\_transactions**

[Description]

Lack of max\_prepared\_transactions.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Please increase max\_prepared\_transactions.

---

**level number 77 could not be used for group item**

[Description]

A group data item contains the 77 level variable.

[System Processing]

Precompiling will be aborted.

[Action]

Remove the variable from the group data item.

---

**level number 77 could not be used in TYPEDEF statement**

[Description]

77 level variable is used in the TYPEDEF statement.

[System Processing]

Precompiling will be aborted.

[Action]

Change the level number.

---

**Limits the total size of all temporary files used by each process.**

[Description]

There was insufficient free space in the disk of the database server during execution of the application.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Delete user data stored in the database server to free up space on the disk.

---

**line @1@ too long in service file "@2@"**

[Description]

The operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is abnormal.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Confirm that the operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is normal.

---

**listening on @1@ port @2@**

[Description]

Listening on port.

[System Processing]

Processing continues.

[Action]

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

**logical replication target relation "@1@.@2@" uses system columns in REPLICA IDENTITY index**

[Description]

Logical replication target relation uses some of the system columns to identify rows which are updated or deleted.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Usage of system columns for REPLICA IDENTITY should be avoided as these data vary across databases.

---

**lost synchronization with server: got message type "@1@", length @2@**

[Description]

The database server was disconnected during execution of the application.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Communication may have been disconnected for the following reasons:

- An error occurred in the communication line (TCP/IP etc.)
- The database server terminated abnormally.

Take the following actions:

- Eliminate the cause of the communication disconnection.

Examine the application and check whether the transaction for implementing update is a long transaction. Judge whether it is a long transaction from the following viewpoints and modify the application.

- a) If the COMMIT process is not executed after update, add the COMMIT process.
  - b) If the total number of update records in a single transaction is high, split it into short transactions.
  - c) If search was conducted for a long period of time after update, execute COMMIT after update or review the search SQL statement.
- If none of the above situations applies, perform the following:
    - a) Confirm that the database server has not stopped.
    - b) If the database server is starting or stopping, re-execute the command after the database server starts.

---

**materialize mode required, but it is not allowed in this context**

[Description]

Materialize mode required, but it is not allowed in this context.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

**max\_prepared\_transactions must be set at least @1@**

[Description]

Lack of max\_prepared\_transactions.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Please increase max\_prepared\_transactions.

---

**message contents do not agree with length in message type "@1@"**

[Description]

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**missing "=" after "@1@" in connection info string**

[Description]

The operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is abnormal.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Confirm that the operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is normal.

---

**new primary COORDINATOR has been connected**

[Description]

The operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is abnormal.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Confirm that the operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is normal.

---

**no cmdata directory specified and environment variable CMDATA unset**

[Description]

No cmdata directory specified and environment variable CMDATA unset.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

**no connection manager directory is specified and environment variable CMDATA is unset**

[Description]

No connection manager directory is specified and environment variable CMDATA is unset.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

**no data left in message**

[Description]

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**no empty local buffer available**

[Description]

There was insufficient free space in the disk of the database server during execution of the application.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Delete user data stored in the database server to free up space on the disk.

---

**no operation mode is specified**

[Description]

No operation mode is specified.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

**no target server address from Connection Manager**

[Description]

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**node\_name is needed for instance #@1@**

[Description]

The operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is abnormal.



**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Confirm that the operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is normal.

---

**node\_name is not needed for instance #@1@**

**[Description]**

The operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is abnormal.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Confirm that the operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is normal.

---

**not enough elements in RWConflictPool to record a potential read/write conflict**

**[Description]**

There was insufficient free space in the server's memory during execution of the application.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Estimate memory usage and take the following action:

- If the number of simultaneous connections from client applications is high, reduce it.
- If the number of simultaneous SQL executions is high, reduce it.

---

**not enough elements in RWConflictPool to record a read/write conflict**

**[Description]**

There was insufficient free space in the server's memory during execution of the application.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Estimate memory usage and take the following action:

- If the number of simultaneous connections from client applications is high, reduce it.
- If the number of simultaneous SQL executions is high, reduce it.

---

**not enough shared memory for data structure "@1@" (@2@ bytes requested)**

**[Description]**

There was insufficient free space in the database server's shared memory during execution of the application.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Estimate memory usage and take the following action:

- If the number of simultaneous connections from client applications is high, reduce it.
- If the number of simultaneous SQL executions is high, reduce it.

---

**number of workers must not be negative**

[Description]

The number of workers must not be negative.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Please specify more than one.

---

**oldest multixact is far in the past**

[Description]

Terminated normally but a warning was output.

[System Processing]

Continues processing.

[Action]

Close open transactions with multixacts soon to avoid wraparound problems.

---

**one of -d/--dbname and -f/--file must be specified**

[Description]

one of -d/--dbname and -f/--file must be specified

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check the command-line, and re-execute the command with correct options.

---

**out of memory**

[Description]

There was insufficient free space in the server's memory during execution of the application.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Estimate memory usage and take the following action:

- If the number of simultaneous connections from client applications is high, reduce it.
- If the number of simultaneous SQL executions is high, reduce it.

---

**out of memory allocating GSSAPI buffer (@1@)**

[Description]

There was insufficient free space in the client's memory during execution of the application.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Estimate memory usage and take the following action:

- Modify the application to reduce memory usage.

---

**out of memory for query result**

[Description]

There was insufficient free space in the client's memory during execution of the application.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Estimate memory usage and take the following action:

- Modify the application to reduce memory usage.

---

**out of memory on line @1@**

[Description]

There was insufficient free space in the server's memory during execution of the application.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Estimate memory usage and take the following action:

- If the number of simultaneous connections from client applications is high, reduce it.
- If the number of simultaneous SQL executions is high, reduce it.

---

**out of shared memory**

[Description]

There was insufficient free space in the database server's shared memory during execution of the application.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Estimate memory usage and take the following action:

- If the number of simultaneous connections from client applications is high, reduce it.
- If the number of simultaneous SQL executions is high, reduce it.

---

**pgx\_global\_metacache must be set to at least 10MB when enabled.**

[Description]

pgx\_global\_metacache must be set to at least 10MB when enabled.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Set the `pgx_global_metacache` parameter to at least 10MB and restart the database.

---

**pgx\_loader only available using COPY FROM**

[Description]

`pgx_loader` can be available only `COPY FROM` command.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Please specify `COPY FROM` statement.

---

**pid file "@1@/conmgr.pid" does not exist**

[Description]

Pid file does not exist.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

**posting list is too long**

[Description]

An error occurred during execution of the application or command.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Reduce the value of `maintenance_work_mem`.

---

**postmaster exited during a parallel loading**

[Description]

postmaster exited during a parallel loading.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Please refer to the server log, and determine the cause of the error.

---

**pre-existing shared memory block (key @1@, ID @2@) is still in use**

[Description]

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

**private key file "@1@" has group or world access; file must have permissions u=rw (0600) or less if owned by the current user, or permissions u=rw,g=r (0640) or less if owned by root**

#### [Description]

The operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is abnormal.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Confirm that the operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is normal.

---

**private key file "@1@" is not a regular file**

#### [Description]

The operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is abnormal.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Confirm that the operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is normal.

---

**private key file "@1@" must be owned by the database user or root**

#### [Description]

The operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is abnormal.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Confirm that the operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is normal.

---

**protocol error: id=0x@1@**

#### [Description]

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**query failed: @1 @**

[Description]

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

**query would be affected by row-level security policy for table "@1@"**

[Description]

An error occurred during execution of the application or command.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

To disable the policy for the table owner, use ALTER TABLE NO FORCE ROW LEVEL SECURITY.

---

**real and effective user IDs must match**

[Description]

Real and effective user IDs must match.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

**realm name too long**

[Description]

An error occurred while translating domain name to Kerberos realm name in SSL.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check the message text and confirm that the domain name is written correctly.

---

**received fast shutdown request**

[Description]

Received fast shutdown request.

[System Processing]

Processing continues.

[Action]

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

**received immediate shutdown request**

[Description]

Received immediate shutdown request.

[System Processing]

Processing continues.

[Action]

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

**received invalid response to SSL negotiation: @1@**

[Description]

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**received invalid startup packet**

[Description]

Received invalid startup packet.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

**received smart shutdown request**

[Description]

Received smart shutdown request.

[System Processing]

Processing continues.

[Action]

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

**received unencrypted data after GSSAPI encryption request**

[Description]

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**received unencrypted data after SSL request**

[Description]

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**recovery has paused**

[Description]

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

**rejected a connection from application due to going shutdown**

[Description]

Rejected a connection from application due to going shutdown.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

**remote node closes heartbeat connection**

[Description]

Remote node closes heartbeat connection.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Check log of remote system.

---

**remote node shuts down heartbeat connection**

[Description]

Remote node shuts down heartbeat connection.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.



[Action]

Check log of remote system.

---

**Remove those directories, or set allow\_in\_place\_tablespaces to ON transiently to let recovery complete.**

[Description]

An error occurred due to unexpected directory entry found at specific path

[System Processing]

Cancels processing.

[Action]

Remove those unexpected directories, or set allow\_in\_place\_tablespaces to ON transiently to let recovery complete.

---

**results of copying file does not exist**

[Description]

The backup data may be corrupted.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Copy the backup data to the backup storage directory from backup media.

---

**RETURNING list entry has type @1@, but column has type @2@.**

[Description]

Supplementary information was output.

[System Processing]

None.

[Action]

Refer to this message together with the message that was output immediately beforehand.

---

**role with OID @1@ does not exist**

[Description]

An error occurred during DB Server processing in the database.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Refer to this message together with the message that was output immediately beforehand.

---

**root certificate file "@1@" does not existEither provide the file or change sslmode to disable server certificate verification.**

[Description]

The operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is abnormal.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Confirm that the operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is normal.

---

**SELECT target entry has type @1 @, but column has type @2 @.**

[Description]

Supplementary information was output.

[System Processing]

None.

[Action]

Refer to this message together with the message that was output immediately beforehand.

---

**SELECT target entry is named "@1@".**

[Description]

Supplementary information was output.

[System Processing]

None.

[Action]

Refer to this message together with the message that was output immediately beforehand.

---

**select() failed in postmaster: @1 @**

[Description]

The database server was disconnected during execution of the application.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Communication may have been disconnected for the following reasons:

- An error occurred in the communication line (TCP/IP etc.)
- The database server terminated abnormally.

Take the following actions:

- Eliminate the cause of the communication disconnection.

Examine the application and check whether the transaction for implementing update is a long transaction. Judge whether it is a long transaction from the following viewpoints and modify the application.

- a) If the COMMIT process is not executed after update, add the COMMIT process.
- b) If the total number of update records in a single transaction is high, split it into short transactions.
- c) If search was conducted for a long period of time after update, execute COMMIT after update or review the search SQL statement.

- If none of the above situations applies, perform the following:

- a) Confirm that the database server has not stopped.

b) If the database server is starting or stopping, re-execute the command after the database server starts.

---

**server certificate for "@1@" does not match host name "@2@"****[Description]**

The operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is abnormal.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Confirm that the operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is normal.

---

**server sent data ("D" message) without prior row description ("T" message)****[Description]**

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**service file "@1@" not found****[Description]**

The operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is abnormal.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Confirm that the operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is normal.

---

**set-valued function called in context that cannot accept a set****[Description]**

Set-valued function called in context that cannot accept a set.

**[System Processing]**

Processing aborts.

**[Action]**

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

**Sleep until another process releases global meta cache because global meta cache cannot be swept away yet. Please increase pgx\_global\_metacache.****[Description]**

Sleep until another process releases global meta cache because global meta cache cannot be swept away yet. Please increase pgx\_global\_metacache.

#### [System Processing]

Processing continues.

#### [Action]

If this message occurs frequently, increase the `pgx_global_metacache` parameter setting and restart the database.

---

### SSL certificate's common name contains embedded null

#### [Description]

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

### SSL connection has been closed unexpectedly

#### [Description]

The database server was disconnected during execution of the application.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Communication may have been disconnected for the following reasons:

- An error occurred in the communication line (TCP/IP etc.)
- The database server terminated abnormally.

Take the following actions:

- Eliminate the cause of the communication disconnection.

Examine the application and check whether the transaction for implementing update is a long transaction. Judge whether it is a long transaction from the following viewpoints and modify the application.

- a) If the COMMIT process is not executed after update, add the COMMIT process.
  - b) If the total number of update records in a single transaction is high, split it into short transactions.
  - c) If search was conducted for a long period of time after update, execute COMMIT after update or review the search SQL statement.
- If none of the above situations applies, perform the following:
    - a) Confirm that the database server has not stopped.
    - b) If the database server is starting or stopping, re-execute the command after the database server starts.

---

### SSL error: @1@

#### [Description]

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

### **stack depth limit exceeded**

#### **[Description]**

The depth of the execution stack exceeded the allowable value during execution of the application.

#### **[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

#### **[Action]**

If executing a complex SQL, modify it to a simple SQL.

---

### **standby mode is not supported by single-user servers**

#### **[Description]**

An error occurred during DB Server processing in the database.

#### **[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

#### **[Action]**

Refer to this message together with the message that was output immediately beforehand.

---

### **started conmgr process successfully**

#### **[Description]**

Started conmgr process successfully.

#### **[System Processing]**

Continues processing.

#### **[Action]**

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

### **starting conmgr process**

#### **[Description]**

Starting conmgr process.

#### **[System Processing]**

Continues processing.

#### **[Action]**

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

### **stopped conmgr process successfully**

#### **[Description]**

Stopped conmgr process successfully.

#### **[System Processing]**

Continues processing.

#### **[Action]**

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

**String constants with Unicode escapes cannot be used when standard\_conforming\_strings is off.**

**[Description]**

Supplementary information was output.

**[System Processing]**

None.

**[Action]**

Refer to this message together with the message that was output immediately beforehand.

---

**string is not a valid identifier: "@1@"**

**[Description]**

An error occurred during execution of the application or command.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

The string may have unclosed double quotation marks.

---

**synchronous\_standby\_names parser failed**

**[Description]**

An error occurred during execution of the application or command.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Check the value of synchronous\_standby\_names, which may come from postgresql.conf or the SQL command line.

---

**syntax error in service file "@1@", line @2@**

**[Description]**

The operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is abnormal.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Confirm that the operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is normal.

---

**syntax error near '@1@' in configuration file "@2@" line @3@**

**[Description]**

Syntax error in configuration file.

**[System Processing]**

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

**syntax error near end of line in configuration file "@1@" line @2@**

[Description]

The operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is abnormal.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Confirm that the operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is normal.

---

**TDE\_h extension must be loaded via shared\_preload\_libraries**

[Description]

The TDE\_h extension cannot be dynamically loaded by the user.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

In postgresql.conf specify shared\_preload\_libraries = 'tde\_h'

---

**TDE\_h: @1@ failed: @2@ [@3@]**

[Description]

The PKCS11 function call failed.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

The specified value in the PKCS11 configuration file (grep11client.yaml) or the TDE\_h execution environment is incorrect, or the HPCS is detecting an error. Check the message and take appropriate action according to the reported PKCS11 error code. Also, if you have specified a log in the PKCS11 configuration file, check the output log and take action.

---

**TDE\_h: C\_Login: @1@ [@2@]**

[Description]

The call to the C\_OpenSession function of PKCS11 has failed.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check the message text and take appropriate action based on the reported PKCS11 error code.

---

**TDE\_h: Expected key not found: @1@ [@2@]**

[Description]

During encryption or decryption processing TDE\_h was not able to find an expected PKCS11 key.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

The keystore and the PKCS11 token key objects are not consistent with each other. This may happen if the keystore and/or PKCS11 token directory have been incorrectly copied (or not copied at all). Check all files have been copied correctly.

---

### **TDE\_h: Operation is not supported**

#### [Description]

The TDE\_h extension cannot be dynamically loaded by the user.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

In postgresql.conf specify `shared_preload_libraries = 'tde_h'`

---

### **TDE\_h: HPCS Service API Key is not available at load time**

#### [Description]

The PKCS11 API key associated with the token of Slot ID was not defined at load time.

#### [System Processing]

This is only a warning message when TDE\_h is loaded.

#### [Action]

The token API key must be known to tde\_h before secure keys can be used. Specify the API key at load time with `--api-key` option, or by GUC `tde_h.API_KEY` in postgresql.conf. Or, specify the API key at run-time using `SELECT pgx_open_keystore(API Key);` or `SELECT pgx_set_master_key(API Key);`

---

### **TDE\_h: PKCS11 Slot ID is not defined**

#### [Description]

The PKCS11 Slot ID for transparent data encryption is not defined.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

In postgresql.conf set the GUC `tded_h.SLOT_ID` to the PKCS11 Slot ID configured for transparent data encryption.

---

### **TDE\_h: Slot @1@ C\_GetMechanismInfo CKM\_AES\_CBC: @2@ [@3@]**

#### [Description]

The specified Slot ID does not support a mechanism required by TDE\_h.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Specify a different token which supports the necessary mechanism.

---

### **TDE\_h: Slot @1@ C\_GetMechanismInfo CKM\_AES\_KEY\_GEN: @2@ [@3@]**



[Description]

The specified Slot ID does not support a mechanism required by TDE\_h.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Specify a different token which supports the necessary mechanism.

---

**TDE\_h: Slot @1@ C\_OpenSession: @2@ [@3@]**

[Description]

The call to the C\_OpenSession function of PKCS11 has failed.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check the message text and take appropriate action based on the reported PKCS11 error code.

---

**TDE\_h: Slot @1@ mechanism does not support CKF\_DECRYPT**

[Description]

The specified Slot ID does not support a mechanism required by TDE\_h.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Specify a different token which supports the necessary mechanism.

---

**TDE\_h: Slot @1@ mechanism does not support CKF\_ENCRYPT**

[Description]

The specified Slot ID does not support a mechanism required by TDE\_h.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Specify a different token which supports the necessary mechanism.

---

**TDE\_h: Slot @1@ mechanism does not support CKF\_GENERATE**

[Description]

The specified Slot ID does not support a mechanism required by TDE\_h.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Specify a different token which supports the necessary mechanism.

---

**TDE\_h: Slot @1@ token model '@2@' is not supported**

[Description]

The PKCS11 token model at the specified Slot ID is not supported by TDE\_h.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Only "EP11" and "CCA" tokens are supported.

---

**TDE\_h: Slot @1@ token model is '@2@'**

[Description]

Logs the PKCS11 Slot ID and token model that TDE\_h will be using.

[System Processing]

This is an information message when TDE\_h is loaded.

[Action]

No action is required. Confirm the Slot and token type are as expected.

---

**TDE\_h: Unable to initialize for TDE\_h environment**

[Description]

Failed to initialize execution environment for TDE\_h.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

The specified value in the PKCS11 configuration file (grep11client.yaml) or the TDE\_h execution environment is incorrect, or the HPCS is detecting an error. Check the message and take appropriate action according to the reported PKCS11 error code. Also, if you have specified a log in the PKCS11 configuration file, check the output log and take action.

---

**TDE\_h: Unable to initialize the PKCS11 library: 0x@1@ [@2@]**

[Description]

The call to the C\_Initialize function of PKCS11 has failed.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

The specified value in the PKCS11 configuration file (grep11client.yaml) or the TDE\_h execution environment is incorrect, or the HPCS is detecting an error. Check the message and take appropriate action according to the reported PKCS11 error code. Also, if you have specified a log in the PKCS11 configuration file, check the output log and take action.

---

**TDEz: Operation is not supported**

[Description]

The TDE\_z extension cannot be dynamically loaded by the user.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

In postgresql.conf specify shared\_preload\_libraries = 'TDE\_z'

---

**TDE\_z extension must be loaded via shared\_preload\_libraries**

[Description]

The TDE\_z extension cannot be dynamically loaded by the user.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

In postgresql.conf specify shared\_preload\_libraries = 'TDE\_z'

---

**TDE\_z: C\_Login: @1@ [@2@]**

[Description]

The call to the C\_OpenSession function of PKCS#11 has failed.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check the message text and take appropriate action based on the reported PKCS#11 error code.

---

**TDE\_z: Expected key not found: @1@ [@2@]**

[Description]

During encryption or decryption processing TDE\_z was not able to find an expected opencryptoki key.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

The keystore and the opencryptoki token key objects are not consistent with each other. This may happen if the keystore and/or opencryptoki token directory have been incorrectly copied (or not copied at all). Check all files have been copied correctly.

---

**TDE\_z: PKCS11 Slot ID is not defined**

[Description]

The opencryptoki Slot ID for transparent data encryption is not defined.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

In postgresql.conf set the GUC TDE\_z.SLOT\_ID to the opencryptoki Slot ID configured for transparent data encryption.

---

**TDE\_z: PKCS11 User PIN is not available at load time**

[Description]

The opencryptoki User PIN associated with the token of Slot ID was not defined at load time.

#### [System Processing]

This is only a warning message when TDE\_z is loaded.

#### [Action]

The token User PIN must be known to TDE\_z before secure keys can be used. Specify the User PIN at load time with --user-pin option, or by GUC TDE\_z.USER\_PIN in postgresql.conf. Or, specify the User PIN at run-time using SELECT pgx\_open\_keystore(user pin); or SELECT pgx\_set\_master\_key(user pin);

---

#### **TDE\_z: Slot @1@ C\_GetMechanismInfo CKM\_AES\_CBC: @2@ [@3@]**

#### [Description]

The specified Slot ID does not support a mechanism required by TDE\_z.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Specify a different token which supports the necessary mechanism.

---

#### **TDE\_z: Slot @1@ C\_GetMechanismInfo CKM\_AES\_KEY\_GEN: @2@ [@3@]**

#### [Description]

The specified Slot ID does not support a mechanism required by TDE\_z.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Specify a different token which supports the necessary mechanism.

---

#### **TDE\_z: Slot @1@ C\_OpenSession: @2@ [@3@]**

#### [Description]

The call to the C\_OpenSession function of PKCS#11 has failed.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Check the message text and take appropriate action based on the reported PKCS#11 error code.

---

#### **TDE\_z: Slot @1@ mechanism does not support CKF\_DECRYPT**

#### [Description]

The specified Slot ID does not support a mechanism required by TDE\_z.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Specify a different token which supports the necessary mechanism.

---

#### **TDE\_z: Slot @1@ mechanism does not support CKF\_ENCRYPT**

[Description]

The specified Slot ID does not support a mechanism required by TDE\_z.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Specify a different token which supports the necessary mechanism.

---

**TDE\_z: Slot @1@ mechanism does not support CKF\_GENERATE**

[Description]

The specified Slot ID does not support a mechanism required by TDE\_z.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Specify a different token which supports the necessary mechanism.

---

**TDE\_z: Slot @1@ token model '@2@' is not supported**

[Description]

The opencryptoki token model at the specified Slot ID is not supported by TDE\_z.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Only "EP11" and "CCA" tokens are supported.

---

**TDE\_z: Slot @1@ token model is '@2@'**

[Description]

Logs the opencryptoki Slot ID and token model that TDE\_z will be using.

[System Processing]

This is an information message when TDE\_z is loaded.

[Action]

No action is required. Confirm the Slot and token type are as expected.

---

**TDE\_z: Unable to initialize the opencryptoki library: 0x@1@ [@2@]**

[Description]

The call to the C\_Initialize function of PKCS#11 has failed.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check the message text and take appropriate action based on the reported PKCS#11 error code.

---

**TDE-type is inconsistent between keystore and postgresql.conf.**

#### [Description]

The TDE type specified in `shared_preload_libraries` in `postgresql.conf` does not match the keystore format of the execution environment.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Inconsistent value specified for `shared_preload_libraries` in keystore and `postgresql.conf`. Determine which is correct and take appropriate action.

---

### **terminating connection due to conflict with recovery**

#### [Description]

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

### **terminating connection due to idle-session timeout**

#### [Description]

Timeout occurred during execution of the application.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Check the following:

- If executing SQL that outputs a large volume of search results, add a conditional expression to filter the results further.
- If numerous SQLs are being simultaneously executed, reduce the number of simultaneously executed SQLs.
- If a large volume of data is to be updated in a single transaction, modify the SQL to reduce the volume of data to be updated in a single transaction.
- If executing a complex SQL, modify it to a simple SQL.
- Check if there are any problems in the network.
- Before conducting maintenance that involves the processing of a large volume of data, use the `SET` statement to temporarily increase the value of `maintenance_work_mem`.

---

### **terminating connection due to unexpected postmaster exit**

#### [Description]

An error occurred during execution of the application or command.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Check the message text and confirm that the server is still running.

---

### **terminating walsender process due to replication timeout**

#### **[Description]**

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

#### **[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

#### **[Action]**

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

### **terminator: could not prepare statement for "@1@"**

#### **[Description]**

Could not prepare statement.

#### **[System Processing]**

Processing aborts.

#### **[Action]**

Check messages near this message.

---

### **terminator: terminated connections: ipaddress="@1@"**

#### **[Description]**

Terminated connections.

#### **[System Processing]**

Processing continues.

#### **[Action]**

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

### **the database system is in recovery mode**

#### **[Description]**

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

#### **[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

#### **[Action]**

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

### **the database system is not accepting connections**

#### **[Description]**

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

#### **[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

#### **[Action]**

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

### the database system is not yet accepting connections

#### [Description]

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

### the database system is shutting down

#### [Description]

The database system is shutting down.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

This message is output when the stopping process is operating normally. Retry any necessary applications or commands after restarting the database system.

---

### the database system is starting up

#### [Description]

The database system is starting up.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

This message is output when the startup process or recovery process is operating normally. Restart any necessary the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

### The program "@1@" is needed by @2@ but was not found in the same directory as "@3@". Check your installation.

#### [Description]

A required program was not found. Check your installation.

#### [System Processing]

Processing aborts.

#### [Action]

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

### The program "@1@" was found by "@2@" but was not the same version as @3@. Check your installation.

#### [Description]

The program was not the same version.



[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

**The sslservercertcn "@1@" could not be verified**

[Description]

value of sslservercertcn is different from common name in the server certificate.

[System Processing]

Processing is aborted.

[Action]

Set SSL certificate's common name to sslservercertcn.

---

**timeout expired**

[Description]

Timeout occurred during execution of the application.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check the following:

- If executing SQL that outputs a large volume of search results, add a conditional expression to filter the results further.
- If numerous SQLs are being simultaneously executed, reduce the number of simultaneously executed SQLs.
- If a large volume of data is to be updated in a single transaction, modify the SQL to reduce the volume of data to be updated in a single transaction.
- If executing a complex SQL, modify it to a simple SQL.
- Check if there are any problems in the network.
- Before conducting maintenance that involves the processing of a large volume of data, use the SET statement to temporarily increase the value of maintenance\_work\_mem.

---

**too long literal in configuration file "@1@" line @2@**

[Description]

Too long literal in configuration file.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

**too many background workers**

[Description]

Up to max\_worker\_processes background worker can be registered with the current settings.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Consider increasing the value of configuration parameter max\_worker\_processes.

---

**too many command-line arguments (first is "@1@")**

[Description]

Too many command-line arguments.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

**too many grouping sets present (maximum 4096)**

[Description]

An error occurred during execution of the application or command.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check the message text and confirm that the items in the GROUPING SET are less than the maximum allowable value.

---

**translated account name too long**

[Description]

An error occurred while translating account name to Kerberos user name in SSL.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check the message text and confirm that the account name is written correctly.

---

**trigger created with DO block cannot be replaced by EXECUTE PROCEDURE**

[Description]

Trigger created with DO block cannot be replaced by EXECUTE PROCEDURE.

[System Processing]

Processing is aborted.

[Action]

Please redefine it after deleting the trigger.

---

**trigger created with EXECUTE PROCEDURE cannot be replaced by DO block**

[Description]

Trigger created with EXECUTE PROCEDURE cannot be replaced by DO block.

[System Processing]

Processing is aborted.

[Action]

Please redefine it after deleting the trigger.

---

**type input function @1@ should not be volatile**

[Description]

An error occurred during execution of the application or command.

[System Processing]

Continues processing.

[Action]

Check the message text and confirm that functions are not marked as volatile.

---

**type modifier input function @1@ should not be volatile**

[Description]

An error occurred during execution of the application or command.

[System Processing]

Continues processing.

[Action]

Check the message text and confirm that functions are not marked as volatile.

---

**type modifier output function @1@ should not be volatile**

[Description]

An error occurred during execution of the application or command.

[System Processing]

Continues processing.

[Action]

Check the message text and confirm that functions are not marked as volatile.

---

**type output function @1@ should not be volatile**

[Description]

An error occurred during execution of the application or command.

[System Processing]

Continues processing.

[Action]

Check the message text and confirm that functions are not marked as volatile.

---

**type receive function @1@ should not be volatile**

[Description]

An error occurred during execution of the application or command.

**[System Processing]**

Continues processing.

**[Action]**

Check the message text and confirm that functions are not marked as volatile.

---

**type send function @1@ should not be volatile**

**[Description]**

An error occurred during execution of the application or command.

**[System Processing]**

Continues processing.

**[Action]**

Check the message text and confirm that functions are not marked as volatile.

---

**unexpected directory entry "@1@" found in @2@**

**[Description]**

Unexpected directory entry found at specific path while recovery.

**[System Processing]**

Cancels processing.

**[Action]**

Remove those unexpected directories, or set allow\_in\_place\_tablespaces to ON transiently to let recovery complete.

---

**unexpected EOF on standby connection**

**[Description]**

An error occurred because execution is temporarily impossible.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Restart the application. If the same error occurs when you restart the application, to check if there are any problems in the database server.

---

**unexpected EOF within message length word**

**[Description]**

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**unexpected field count in "D" message**

**[Description]**

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**unexpected message from server during startup**

[Description]

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**unexpected message type "@1@"**

[Description]

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**unexpected message type 0x@1@ during COPY from stdin**

[Description]

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**unexpected response from server; first received character was "@1@"**

[Description]

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**Unicode escapes must be \uXXXX or \UXXXXXXXX.**

[Description]

Supplementary information was output.

[System Processing]

None.

[Action]

Refer to this message together with the message that was output immediately beforehand.

---

**unrecognized operation mode "@1@"**

[Description]

Unrecognized operation mode was specified.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

**unrecognized SSL error code: @1@**

[Description]

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**unrecognized stop mode "@1@"**

[Description]

Unrecognized stop mode was specified.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

**unrecognized value "@1@" for option '-i'**

[Description]

Unrecognized value specified for option '-i'.

[System Processing]

Processing aborts.

[Action]

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

**unterminated quoted string in connection info string**

[Description]

The operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is abnormal.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Confirm that the operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is normal.

---

**Use " to write quotes in strings, or use the escape string syntax (E'...').**

[Description]

Supplementary information was output.

[System Processing]

None.

[Action]

Refer to this message together with the message that was output immediately beforehand.

---

**Use " to write quotes in strings. \ is insecure in client-only encodings.**

[Description]

Supplementary information was output.

[System Processing]

None.

[Action]

Refer to this message together with the message that was output immediately beforehand.

---

**Use the escape string syntax for backslashes, e.g., E'\\'.**

[Description]

Supplementary information was output.

[System Processing]

None.

[Action]

Refer to this message together with the message that was output immediately beforehand.

---

**Use the escape string syntax for escapes, e.g., E'\r'.**

[Description]

Supplementary information was output.

[System Processing]

None.

[Action]

Refer to this message together with the message that was output immediately beforehand.

---

**waiting conmgr process to connect to watchdog**

[Description]

Waiting conmgr process to connect to watchdog.

**[System Processing]**

Continues processing.

**[Action]**

Recheck command line, configuration file, or logic of your application. Hint message may follow with this message.

---

**watchdog: could not accept heartbeat connection**

**[Description]**

Could not accept heartbeat connection.

**[System Processing]**

Processing aborts.

**[Action]**

Check messages near this message.

---

**watchdog: could not send attribute**

**[Description]**

Could not send attribute.

**[System Processing]**

Processing aborts.

**[Action]**

Check messages near this message.

---

**You might need to increase max\_worker\_processes.**

**[Description]**

You might need to increase max\_worker\_processes.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

You might need to increase max\_worker\_processes

---

**An error occurred while setting up the GSS Encoded connection.**

**[Description]**

The database server was disconnected during execution of the application.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Communication may have been disconnected for the following reasons:

- An error occurred in the communication line (TCP/IP etc.)
- The database server terminated abnormally.

Take the following actions:

- Eliminate the cause of the communication disconnection.



Examine the application and check whether the transaction for implementing update is a long transaction. Judge whether it is a long transaction from the following viewpoints and modify the application.

- a) If the COMMIT process is not executed after update, add the COMMIT process.
  - b) If the total number of update records in a single transaction is high, split it into short transactions.
  - c) If search was conducted for a long period of time after update, execute COMMIT after update or review the search SQL statement.
- If none of the above situations applies, perform the following:
- a) Confirm that the database server has not stopped.
  - b) If the database server is starting or stopping, re-execute the command after the database server starts.

---

#### **An error occurred while setting up the SSL connection.**

##### **[Description]**

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

##### **[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

##### **[Action]**

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

#### **An I/O error occurred while sending to the backend.**

##### **[Description]**

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

##### **[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

##### **[Action]**

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

#### **An unexpected result was returned by a query.**

##### **[Description]**

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

##### **[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

##### **[Action]**

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

#### **Cannot connect to Connection Manager when targetServerType is "preferPrimary".**

##### **[Description]**

An error occurred during execution of the application or command.

##### **[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

##### **[Action]**

Check the message text and confirm that the application is written correctly and the command is being used correctly.

---

**CommandComplete expected COPY but got:****[Description]**

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**Connection attempt timed out.****[Description]**

Timeout occurred during execution of the application.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Check the following:

- If executing SQL that outputs a large volume of search results, add a conditional expression to filter the results further.
- If numerous SQLs are being simultaneously executed, reduce the number of simultaneously executed SQLs.
- If a large volume of data is to be updated in a single transaction, modify the SQL to reduce the volume of data to be updated in a single transaction.
- If executing a complex SQL, modify it to a simple SQL.
- Check if there are any problems in the network.
- Before conducting maintenance that involves the processing of a large volume of data, use the SET statement to temporarily increase the value of maintenance\_work\_mem.

---

**Could not close SSL certificate file @1@.****[Description]**

The operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is abnormal.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Confirm that the operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is normal.

---

**Could not find a server with specified targetServerType: @1@****[Description]**

Could not find a suitable target server.

**[System Processing]**

Processing is aborted.

**[Action]**

Check following settings (host, IP address, port number, or targetServer):

- Connection string
- Connection service file
- Data source of JDBC or ODBC
- Environment variables for default connection parameter values(ex. PGHOST)
- Arguments of functions of libpq
- Options of command

---

### Database cannot be null

#### [Description]

The database server was disconnected during execution of the application.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Communication may have been disconnected for the following reasons:

- An error occurred in the communication line (TCP/IP etc.)
- The database server terminated abnormally.

Take the following actions:

- Eliminate the cause of the communication disconnection.

Examine the application and check whether the transaction for implementing update is a long transaction. Judge whether it is a long transaction from the following viewpoints and modify the application.

- a) If the COMMIT process is not executed after update, add the COMMIT process.
  - b) If the total number of update records in a single transaction is high, split it into short transactions.
  - c) If search was conducted for a long period of time after update, execute COMMIT after update or review the search SQL statement.
- If none of the above situations applies, perform the following:
- a) Confirm that the database server has not stopped.
  - b) If the database server is starting or stopping, re-execute the command after the database server starts.

---

### Database connection failed when canceling copy operation

#### [Description]

The database server was disconnected during execution of the application.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Communication may have been disconnected for the following reasons:

- An error occurred in the communication line (TCP/IP etc.)
- The database server terminated abnormally.

Take the following actions:

- Eliminate the cause of the communication disconnection.

Examine the application and check whether the transaction for implementing update is a long transaction. Judge whether it is a long transaction from the following viewpoints and modify the application.

- a) If the COMMIT process is not executed after update, add the COMMIT process.
- b) If the total number of update records in a single transaction is high, split it into short transactions.
- c) If search was conducted for a long period of time after update, execute COMMIT after update or review the search SQL statement.
- If none of the above situations applies, perform the following:
  - a) Confirm that the database server has not stopped.
  - b) If the database server is starting or stopping, re-execute the command after the database server starts.

---

### Database connection failed when ending copy

#### [Description]

The database server was disconnected during execution of the application.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Communication may have been disconnected for the following reasons:

- An error occurred in the communication line (TCP/IP etc.)
- The database server terminated abnormally.

Take the following actions:

- Eliminate the cause of the communication disconnection.

Examine the application and check whether the transaction for implementing update is a long transaction. Judge whether it is a long transaction from the following viewpoints and modify the application.

- a) If the COMMIT process is not executed after update, add the COMMIT process.
- b) If the total number of update records in a single transaction is high, split it into short transactions.
- c) If search was conducted for a long period of time after update, execute COMMIT after update or review the search SQL statement.
- If none of the above situations applies, perform the following:
  - a) Confirm that the database server has not stopped.
  - b) If the database server is starting or stopping, re-execute the command after the database server starts.

---

### Database connection failed when reading from copy

#### [Description]

The database server was disconnected during execution of the application.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Communication may have been disconnected for the following reasons:

- An error occurred in the communication line (TCP/IP etc.)
- The database server terminated abnormally.

Take the following actions:

- Eliminate the cause of the communication disconnection.

Examine the application and check whether the transaction for implementing update is a long transaction. Judge whether it is a long transaction from the following viewpoints and modify the application.

- a) If the COMMIT process is not executed after update, add the COMMIT process.
  - b) If the total number of update records in a single transaction is high, split it into short transactions.
  - c) If search was conducted for a long period of time after update, execute COMMIT after update or review the search SQL statement.
- If none of the above situations applies, perform the following:
- a) Confirm that the database server has not stopped.
  - b) If the database server is starting or stopping, re-execute the command after the database server starts.

---

### Database connection failed when starting copy

#### [Description]

The database server was disconnected during execution of the application.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Communication may have been disconnected for the following reasons:

- An error occurred in the communication line (TCP/IP etc.)
- The database server terminated abnormally.

Take the following actions:

- Eliminate the cause of the communication disconnection.

Examine the application and check whether the transaction for implementing update is a long transaction. Judge whether it is a long transaction from the following viewpoints and modify the application.

- a) If the COMMIT process is not executed after update, add the COMMIT process.
  - b) If the total number of update records in a single transaction is high, split it into short transactions.
  - c) If search was conducted for a long period of time after update, execute COMMIT after update or review the search SQL statement.
- If none of the above situations applies, perform the following:
- a) Confirm that the database server has not stopped.
  - b) If the database server is starting or stopping, re-execute the command after the database server starts.

---

### Database connection failed when writing to copy

#### [Description]

The database server was disconnected during execution of the application.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Communication may have been disconnected for the following reasons:

- An error occurred in the communication line (TCP/IP etc.)
- The database server terminated abnormally.

Take the following actions:

- Eliminate the cause of the communication disconnection.

Examine the application and check whether the transaction for implementing update is a long transaction. Judge whether it is a long transaction from the following viewpoints and modify the application.

a) If the COMMIT process is not executed after update, add the COMMIT process.

b) If the total number of update records in a single transaction is high, split it into short transactions.

c) If search was conducted for a long period of time after update, execute COMMIT after update or review the search SQL statement.

- If none of the above situations applies, perform the following:

a) Confirm that the database server has not stopped.

b) If the database server is starting or stopping, re-execute the command after the database server starts.

---

### **enableFdwAcs cannot be set "on" when targetServerType is "preferPrimary".**

#### **[Description]**

An error occurred during execution of the application or command.

#### **[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

#### **[Action]**

Check the message text and confirm that the application is written correctly and the command is being used correctly.

---

### **Expected an EOF from server, got: @1@**

#### **[Description]**

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

#### **[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

#### **[Action]**

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

### **Expected command status BEGIN, got @1@.**

#### **[Description]**

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

#### **[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

#### **[Action]**

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

### **Got @1@ error responses to single copy cancel request**

#### **[Description]**

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

#### **[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**GSS Authentication failed**

**[Description]**

The database server was disconnected during execution of the application.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Communication may have been disconnected for the following reasons:

- An error occurred in the communication line (TCP/IP etc.)
- The database server terminated abnormally.

Take the following actions:

- Eliminate the cause of the communication disconnection.

Examine the application and check whether the transaction for implementing update is a long transaction. Judge whether it is a long transaction from the following viewpoints and modify the application.

- a) If the COMMIT process is not executed after update, add the COMMIT process.
  - b) If the total number of update records in a single transaction is high, split it into short transactions.
  - c) If search was conducted for a long period of time after update, execute COMMIT after update or review the search SQL statement.
- If none of the above situations applies, perform the following:
- a) Confirm that the database server has not stopped.
  - b) If the database server is starting or stopping, re-execute the command after the database server starts.

---

**hstore key must not be null**

**[Description]**

The operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is abnormal.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Confirm that the operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is normal.

---

**Interrupted while attempting to connect.**

**[Description]**

The database server was disconnected during execution of the application.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Communication may have been disconnected for the following reasons:

- An error occurred in the communication line (TCP/IP etc.)

- The database server terminated abnormally.

Take the following actions:

- Eliminate the cause of the communication disconnection.

Examine the application and check whether the transaction for implementing update is a long transaction. Judge whether it is a long transaction from the following viewpoints and modify the application.

- a) If the COMMIT process is not executed after update, add the COMMIT process.
- b) If the total number of update records in a single transaction is high, split it into short transactions.
- c) If search was conducted for a long period of time after update, execute COMMIT after update or review the search SQL statement.

- If none of the above situations applies, perform the following:

- a) Confirm that the database server has not stopped.
- b) If the database server is starting or stopping, re-execute the command after the database server starts.

---

#### Invalid gssEncMode value: @1@

##### [Description]

The operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is abnormal.

##### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

##### [Action]

Confirm that the operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is normal.

---

#### Invalid targetServerType value: @1@

##### [Description]

value of targetserver is invalid.

##### [System Processing]

Processing is aborted.

##### [Action]

Set one of the following:

- primary
- standby
- prefer\_standby
- any(can be specified only JDBC)

---

#### Missing expected error response to copy cancel request

##### [Description]

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

##### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

##### [Action]

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.



---

**Neither Subject.doAs (Java before 18) nor Subject.callAs (Java 18+) method found****[Description]**

The database server was disconnected during execution of the application.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Communication may have been disconnected for the following reasons:

- An error occurred in the communication line (TCP/IP etc.)
- The database server terminated abnormally.

Take the following actions:

- Eliminate the cause of the communication disconnection.

Examine the application and check whether the transaction for implementing update is a long transaction. Judge whether it is a long transaction from the following viewpoints and modify the application.

- a) If the COMMIT process is not executed after update, add the COMMIT process.
  - b) If the total number of update records in a single transaction is high, split it into short transactions.
  - c) If search was conducted for a long period of time after update, execute COMMIT after update or review the search SQL statement.
- If none of the above situations applies, perform the following:
    - a) Confirm that the database server has not stopped.
    - b) If the database server is starting or stopping, re-execute the command after the database server starts.

---

**One or more ClientInfo failed.****[Description]**

The operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is abnormal.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Confirm that the operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is normal.

---

**PreparedStatement can have at most @1@ parameters. Please consider using arrays, or splitting the query in several ones, or using COPY. Given query has @2@ parameters****[Description]**

An error occurred during execution of the application or command.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Check the message text and confirm that the application is written correctly and the command is being used correctly.

---

**Protocol error. Session setup failed.**

**[Description]**

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**Ran out of memory retrieving query results.**

**[Description]**

There was insufficient free space in the server's memory during execution of the application.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Estimate memory usage and take the following action:

- If the number of simultaneous connections from client applications is high, reduce it.
- If the number of simultaneous SQL executions is high, reduce it.

---

**Read from copy failed.**

**[Description]**

The database server was disconnected during execution of the application.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Communication may have been disconnected for the following reasons:

- An error occurred in the communication line (TCP/IP etc.)
- The database server terminated abnormally.

Take the following actions:

- Eliminate the cause of the communication disconnection.

Examine the application and check whether the transaction for implementing update is a long transaction. Judge whether it is a long transaction from the following viewpoints and modify the application.

- a) If the COMMIT process is not executed after update, add the COMMIT process.
  - b) If the total number of update records in a single transaction is high, split it into short transactions.
  - c) If search was conducted for a long period of time after update, execute COMMIT after update or review the search SQL statement.
- If none of the above situations applies, perform the following:
    - a) Confirm that the database server has not stopped.
    - b) If the database server is starting or stopping, re-execute the command after the database server starts.

---

**The connection attempt failed.**

**[Description]**

The database server was disconnected during execution of the application.

### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

### [Action]

Communication may have been disconnected for the following reasons:

- An error occurred in the communication line (TCP/IP etc.)
- The database server terminated abnormally.

Take the following actions:

- Eliminate the cause of the communication disconnection.

Examine the application and check whether the transaction for implementing update is a long transaction. Judge whether it is a long transaction from the following viewpoints and modify the application.

- a) If the COMMIT process is not executed after update, add the COMMIT process.
  - b) If the total number of update records in a single transaction is high, split it into short transactions.
  - c) If search was conducted for a long period of time after update, execute COMMIT after update or review the search SQL statement.
- If none of the above situations applies, perform the following:
    - a) Confirm that the database server has not stopped.
    - b) If the database server is starting or stopping, re-execute the command after the database server starts.

---

### The server does not support GSS Encoding.

### [Description]

The database server was disconnected during execution of the application.

### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

### [Action]

Communication may have been disconnected for the following reasons:

- An error occurred in the communication line (TCP/IP etc.)
- The database server terminated abnormally.

Take the following actions:

- Eliminate the cause of the communication disconnection.

Examine the application and check whether the transaction for implementing update is a long transaction. Judge whether it is a long transaction from the following viewpoints and modify the application.

- a) If the COMMIT process is not executed after update, add the COMMIT process.
  - b) If the total number of update records in a single transaction is high, split it into short transactions.
  - c) If search was conducted for a long period of time after update, execute COMMIT after update or review the search SQL statement.
- If none of the above situations applies, perform the following:
    - a) Confirm that the database server has not stopped.
    - b) If the database server is starting or stopping, re-execute the command after the database server starts.

---

### The server does not support GSS Encryption.

#### [Description]

The database server was disconnected during execution of the application.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Communication may have been disconnected for the following reasons:

- An error occurred in the communication line (TCP/IP etc.)
- The database server terminated abnormally.

Take the following actions:

- Eliminate the cause of the communication disconnection.

Examine the application and check whether the transaction for implementing update is a long transaction. Judge whether it is a long transaction from the following viewpoints and modify the application.

- a) If the COMMIT process is not executed after update, add the COMMIT process.
  - b) If the total number of update records in a single transaction is high, split it into short transactions.
  - c) If search was conducted for a long period of time after update, execute COMMIT after update or review the search SQL statement.
- If none of the above situations applies, perform the following:
    - a) Confirm that the database server has not stopped.
    - b) If the database server is starting or stopping, re-execute the command after the database server starts.

---

### **The server requested password-based authentication, but no password was provided by plugin @1 @**

#### [Description]

The database server was disconnected during execution of the application.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Communication may have been disconnected for the following reasons:

- An error occurred in the communication line (TCP/IP etc.)
- The database server terminated abnormally.

Take the following actions:

- Eliminate the cause of the communication disconnection.

Examine the application and check whether the transaction for implementing update is a long transaction. Judge whether it is a long transaction from the following viewpoints and modify the application.

- a) If the COMMIT process is not executed after update, add the COMMIT process.
  - b) If the total number of update records in a single transaction is high, split it into short transactions.
  - c) If search was conducted for a long period of time after update, execute COMMIT after update or review the search SQL statement.
- If none of the above situations applies, perform the following:
    - a) Confirm that the database server has not stopped.
    - b) If the database server is starting or stopping, re-execute the command after the database server starts.

---

**The server requested SCRAM-based authentication, but the password is an empty string.**

**[Description]**

The database server was disconnected during execution of the application.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Communication may have been disconnected for the following reasons:

- An error occurred in the communication line (TCP/IP etc.)
- The database server terminated abnormally.

Take the following actions:

- Eliminate the cause of the communication disconnection.

Examine the application and check whether the transaction for implementing update is a long transaction. Judge whether it is a long transaction from the following viewpoints and modify the application.

- a) If the COMMIT process is not executed after update, add the COMMIT process.
  - b) If the total number of update records in a single transaction is high, split it into short transactions.
  - c) If search was conducted for a long period of time after update, execute COMMIT after update or review the search SQL statement.
- If none of the above situations applies, perform the following:
    - a) Confirm that the database server has not stopped.
    - b) If the database server is starting or stopping, re-execute the command after the database server starts.

---

**The server's client\_encoding parameter was changed to @1@. The JDBC driver requires client\_encoding to be UTF8 for correct operation.**

**[Description]**

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**The server's DateStyle parameter was changed to @1@. The JDBC driver requires DateStyle to begin with ISO for correct operation.**

**[Description]**

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**The server's standard\_conforming\_strings parameter was reported as @1@. The JDBC driver expected on or off.**

**[Description]**

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**The sslservercertcn @1@ could not be verified by hostnameverifier @2@.**

**[Description]**

value of sslservercertcn is different from common name in the server certificate.

**[System Processing]**

Processing is aborted.

**[Action]**

- Set SSL certificate's common name to sslservercertcn.
- Check the program of class specified by hostnameverifier.

---

**Unable to find pkcs12 keystore.**

**[Description]**

The operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is abnormal.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Confirm that the operating environment such as the status of the connection definition file and the connection method specification is normal.

---

**Unable to load Authentication Plugin @1@**

**[Description]**

The database server was disconnected during execution of the application.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Communication may have been disconnected for the following reasons:

- An error occurred in the communication line (TCP/IP etc.)
- The database server terminated abnormally.

Take the following actions:

- Eliminate the cause of the communication disconnection.

Examine the application and check whether the transaction for implementing update is a long transaction. Judge whether it is a long transaction from the following viewpoints and modify the application.

- a) If the COMMIT process is not executed after update, add the COMMIT process.
- b) If the total number of update records in a single transaction is high, split it into short transactions.

c) If search was conducted for a long period of time after update, execute COMMIT after update or review the search SQL statement.

- If none of the above situations applies, perform the following:

a) Confirm that the database server has not stopped.

b) If the database server is starting or stopping, re-execute the command after the database server starts.

---

#### Unable to parse URL @1@

##### [Description]

The database server was disconnected during execution of the application.

##### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

##### [Action]

Communication may have been disconnected for the following reasons:

- An error occurred in the communication line (TCP/IP etc.)

- The database server terminated abnormally.

Take the following actions:

- Eliminate the cause of the communication disconnection.

Examine the application and check whether the transaction for implementing update is a long transaction. Judge whether it is a long transaction from the following viewpoints and modify the application.

a) If the COMMIT process is not executed after update, add the COMMIT process.

b) If the total number of update records in a single transaction is high, split it into short transactions.

c) If search was conducted for a long period of time after update, execute COMMIT after update or review the search SQL statement.

- If none of the above situations applies, perform the following:

a) Confirm that the database server has not stopped.

b) If the database server is starting or stopping, re-execute the command after the database server starts.

---

#### Unexpected command status: @1@.

##### [Description]

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

##### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

##### [Action]

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

#### Unexpected copydata from server for @1@

##### [Description]

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

##### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**Unknown Response Type @1@.**

**[Description]**

An error occurred during communication between the application and the database server.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Check if there are any problems in the network, eliminate the cause of any error and re-execute the command.

---

**User cannot be null**

**[Description]**

The database server was disconnected during execution of the application.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Communication may have been disconnected for the following reasons:

- An error occurred in the communication line (TCP/IP etc.)
- The database server terminated abnormally.

Take the following actions:

- Eliminate the cause of the communication disconnection.

Examine the application and check whether the transaction for implementing update is a long transaction. Judge whether it is a long transaction from the following viewpoints and modify the application.

- a) If the COMMIT process is not executed after update, add the COMMIT process.
  - b) If the total number of update records in a single transaction is high, split it into short transactions.
  - c) If search was conducted for a long period of time after update, execute COMMIT after update or review the search SQL statement.
- If none of the above situations applies, perform the following:
    - a) Confirm that the database server has not stopped.
    - b) If the database server is starting or stopping, re-execute the command after the database server starts.

---

**Value is not an OID: @1@**

**[Description]**

An error occurred during execution of the application or command.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Check the message text and confirm that the application is written correctly and the command is being used correctly.



## Chapter 3 Mirroring Controller Messages

This chapter explains messages output by Mirroring Controller.

### 3.1 Message Numbers Beginning with MCA00000

#### 3.1.1 MCA00001

**could not read file "{0}": exception={1}: {2}**

[Description]

Could not read the file.

[Parameters]

{0}: file name

{1}: exception type

{2}: exception detail

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Identify the cause according to the message, and then remove it.

#### 3.1.2 MCA00002

**{0}: wrong number of server ID in definition file "{1}"**

[Description]

Invalid descriptions were found in definition file.

[Parameters]

{0}: command name

{1}: file name

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Correct the definition file according to the message and parameter description of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

#### 3.1.3 MCA00003

**{0}: server ID not found in definition file "{1}" line {2}**

[Description]

Invalid descriptions were found in definition file.

[Parameters]

{0}: command name

{1}: file name

{2}: line number

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Correct the definition file according to the message and parameter description of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

### 3.1.4 MCA00004

---

**{0}: server ID specified in definition file "{1}" too long (max {2} bytes) line {3}**

#### [Description]

Invalid descriptions were found in definition file.

#### [Parameters]

{0}: command name

{1}: file name

{2}: max length of server ID

{3}: line number

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Correct the definition file according to the message and parameter description of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

### 3.1.5 MCA00005

---

**invalid host name or IP address "{1}" in definition file "{0}"**

#### [Description]

Invalid descriptions were found in definition file.

#### [Parameters]

{0}: file name

{1}: host name or IP address

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Correct the definition file according to the message and parameter description of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

### 3.1.6 MCA00006

---

**{0}: invalid port number in definition file "{1}" line {2}**

#### [Description]

Invalid descriptions were found in definition file.

#### [Parameters]

{0}: command name

{1}: file name

{2}: line number

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Correct the definition file according to the message and parameter description of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

### 3.1.7 MCA00007

---

**{0}: invalid format specified in definition file "{1}" line {2}**

#### [Description]

Invalid descriptions were found in definition file.

#### [Parameters]

{0}: command name

{1}: file name

{2}: line number

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Correct the definition file according to the message and parameter description of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

### 3.1.8 MCA00008

---

**{0}: invalid value for parameter "{2}" in definition file "{1}"**

#### [Description]

Invalid parameter was found in definition file.

#### [Parameters]

{0}: command name

{1}: file name

{2}: parameter name

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Correct the definition file according to the message and parameter description of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

### 3.1.9 MCA00009

---

**{0}: no value for parameter "{2}" specified in definition file "{1}"**

**[Description]**

Invalid parameter was found in definition file.

**[Parameters]**

{0}: command name

{1}: file name

{2}: parameter name

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Correct the definition file according to the message and parameter description of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

### 3.1.10 MCA00010

---

**{0}: unrecognized parameter "{2}" in definition file "{1}"**

**[Description]**

Unrecognized parameter was found in definition file.

**[Parameters]**

{0}: file name

{1}: command name

{2}: parameter name

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Correct the definition file according to the message and parameter description of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

### 3.1.11 MCA00011

---

**%s: no operation mode specified**

**[Description]**

No operation mode was specified.

**[Parameters]**

%s: command name

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Re-execute after specifying operation modes.

### 3.1.12 MCA00012

---

**%s: unrecognized operation mode "%s"**

**[Description]**

Unrecognized operation mode was specified.

**[Parameters]**

%s: command name

%s: operation mode

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Re-execute after specifying operation modes.

### 3.1.13 MCA00013

---

**%s: option "%s" duplicated**

**[Description]**

Certain option is duplicated.

**[Parameters]**

%s: command

%s: option

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Re-execute after correcting options.

### 3.1.14 MCA00014

---

**%s: "%s" option conflicts with "%s" option**

**[Description]**

Options are conflicting.

**[Parameters]**

%s: command

%s: option

%s: option

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Re-execute after correcting options.

### 3.1.15 MCA00015

---

**%s: option requires an argument -- %s**

**[Description]**

No argument specified for the option.

**[Parameters]**

%s: command

%s: option

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Re-execute after correcting options.

### 3.1.16 MCA00016

---

**%s: neither "%s" option nor environment variable "%s" specified**

**[Description]**

Both of required option and equivalent environment variable were not specified.

**[Parameters]**

%s: command

%s: option

%s: environment variable

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Re-execute after specifying required option or equivalent environment variable.

### 3.1.17 MCA00017

---

**%s: out of memory**

**[Description]**

Out of memory error occurred.

**[Parameters]**

%s: command

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Obtain free memory space by stopping unnecessary processes or changing system settings.

### 3.1.18 MCA00018

---

---

### out of memory

#### [Description]

Out of memory error occurred.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Obtain free memory space by stopping unnecessary processes or changing system settings.

---

## 3.1.19 MCA00019

---

### detected an error on the monitored object "{0}({1})": {2}

#### [Description]

An error was detected on the monitored object.

#### [Parameters]

{0}: monitored object (server, database process, data storage destination directory, transaction log storage destination directory, tablespace directory)

{1}: object name (host name, database process name, directory path)

{2}: error detail ("no response:", "read/write error:" and detailed information)

#### [System Processing]

Perform failover or detaching.

If failover or detaching is already performed, these functions would be disabled.

#### [Action]

Refer to the description about workaround for failure of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

---

## 3.1.20 MCA00020

---

### unexpected error occurred in the monitoring process: {0}

#### [Description]

Monitoring process cannot continue because an unexpected error was occurred during its processing.

#### [Parameters]

{0}: error detail

#### [System Processing]

Continues processing.

#### [Action]

Refer to the description about workaround for failure of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

---

## 3.1.21 MCA00021

---

### starting to {2} from {0} to {1}.

#### [Description]

Switching standby server to primary server.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID of primary server

{1}: server ID of standby server

{2}: "fail over" or "switch over"

[Action]

If Mirroring Controller executed switching automatically, find the message output before this message from system log or event log to identify the cause of switching, and then work around according to the Action of the message.

### 3.1.22 MCA00022

---

**{2} completed.switched from {0} to {1}**

[Description]

Switching standby server to primary server was completed.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID of primary server

{1}: server ID of standby server

{2}: "fail over" or "switch over"

### 3.1.23 MCA00023

---

**failed to {2} from {0} to {1}**

[Description]

Failed to switch to primary server because of unexpected failure.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID of primary server

{1}: server ID of standby server

{2}: "fail over" or "switch over"

[System Processing]

Processing of switching will be aborted.

[Action]

Find the message output before this message from display, system log or event log, and then work around according to the Action of the message.

### 3.1.24 MCA00024

---

**starting to detach standby server "{0}" {1}**

[Description]

Detaching standby server because of failure detected on standby server.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

{1}: "automatically" or none



[Action]

If Mirroring Controller executed detaching automatically, find the message output before this message from system log or event log to identify the cause of detaching, and then work around according to the Action of the message.

### 3.1.25 MCA00025

---

#### **detach standby server "{0}" completed {1}**

[Description]

Detached standby server.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

{1}: "automatically" or none

### 3.1.26 MCA00026

---

#### **failed to {2} standby server "{0}" {1}**

[Description]

Failed to detach standby server.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

{1}: "automatically" or none

{2}: "detach"

[System Processing]

Processing of detaching will be aborted.

[Action]

Refer to the description about workaround for failure of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

### 3.1.27 MCA00027

---

#### **another "{0}" command is running**

[Description]

Cannot execute command with this operation mode because another command is running on the same or another server.

[Parameters]

{0}: command name

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

There is a case executing another command. Wait for completion of another command on the same or another server, and then re-execute.

In addition, there are the following cases when using mc\_ctl command.

There is a case under processing of a failover and an automatic detach by Mirroring Controller. Wait for completion of the processing under operation, and re-execute.

If any of the following cases occurs, there is a possibility that the processing of Mirroring Controller interrupts. Re-execute the mc\_ctl command after restarting Mirroring Controller.

- When abnormality occurs in the network
- When another server is downed
- When Mirroring Controller is stopped forcibly

### 3.1.28 MCA00028

---

**communication timeout of Mirroring Controller occurred server:"{0}"**

#### [Description]

Either of the followings has occurred.

- communication timeout between mc\_ctl command and Mirroring Controller process has occurred.
- communication timeout between Mirroring Controller processes have occurred.
- Terminating database instance was not completed in the specified time.

#### [Parameters]

{0}: server ("localhost" or server ID)

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Completion synchronization for terminating database instance might have timed out, because connections remained. Disconnect all connections, and re-execute it.

Reduce CPU or network load caused by the other processes. If could not reduce it, extend remote\_call\_timeout in "server identifier".conf.

### 3.1.29 MCA00029

---

**could not create PID file "{0}" of Mirroring Controller detail of cause:"{1}"**

#### [Description]

Could not create PID file of Mirroring Controller.

#### [Parameters]

{0}: file name

{1}: detail of cause

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Identify the cause according to the message, and then remove it.

### 3.1.30 MCA00030

---

**could not remove PID file "%s" of Mirroring Controller detail of cause:"%s"**

#### [Description]

Could not remove PID file of Mirroring Controller.

[Parameters]

%s: file name

%s: detail of cause

[Action]

Identify the cause according to the message, and then remove it.

### 3.1.31 MCA00031

---

**could not read PID file "%s" of Mirroring Controller detail of cause: "%s"**

[Description]

Could not read PID file of Mirroring Controller.

[Parameters]

%s: file name

%s: detail of cause

[Action]

Identify the cause according to the message, and then remove it.

### 3.1.32 MCA00032

---

**invalid contents of PID file "%s" of Mirroring Controller**

[Description]

The contents of PID file of Mirroring Controller is invalid.

[Parameters]

%s: file name

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

The following causes could be considered.

- The file was stored or replaced by mistake
- The file was corrupted

When starting Mirroring Controller, move or remove the file shown in the message.

When stopping Mirroring Controller, terminate forcibly mc\_keeper process and terminate forcibly mc\_agent process with using OS command.

### 3.1.33 MCA00033

---

**Mirroring Controller is already running**

[Description]

Mirroring Controller is already running.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

If needed, stop Mirroring Controller, and re-execute.

### 3.1.34 MCA00034

---

#### cannot execute %s command because Mirroring Controller is not running

[Description]

Cannot execute Mirroring Controller command because Mirroring Controller process is not running.

[Parameters]

%s: command name

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Start Mirroring Controller, and re-execute.

### 3.1.35 MCA00035

---

#### failed to start database instance

[Description]

Failed to start database instance.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Find the database message output in the log files of database output before this message, and then work around according to the Action of the message.

### 3.1.36 MCA00036

---

#### failed to stop database instance target server:"{0}"

[Description]

Failed to stop database instance.

[Parameters]

{0}: target server ("localhost" or server ID)

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Find the database message output in the log files of database on the target server output before this message, and then work around according to the Action of the message.

### 3.1.37 MCA00037

---

#### Mirroring Controller option is not installed

[Description]

This functionality is enabled by installing Mirroring Controller option.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

To use this functionality, install Mirroring Controller option, and then re-execute.

### 3.1.38 MCA00038

---

#### starting Mirroring Controller

[Description]

Starting Mirroring Controller.

### 3.1.39 MCA00039

---

#### Mirroring Controller started

[Description]

Mirroring Controller started.

### 3.1.40 MCA00040

---

#### failed to start Mirroring Controller

[Description]

Failed to start Mirroring Controller.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Work around according to the Action of the message output before this message.

On Windows, if there is no message outputted before this message, please refer to the message outputted to an event log.

### 3.1.41 MCA00041

---

#### stopping Mirroring Controller

[Description]

Stopping Mirroring Controller.

### 3.1.42 MCA00042

---

#### Mirroring Controller stopped target server:"{0}"

[Description]

Mirroring Controller stopped.

[Parameters]

{0}: target server ("localhost" or server ID)

### 3.1.43 MCA00043

---

#### failed to stop Mirroring Controller target server:"{0}"

---

[Description]

Failed to stop Mirroring Controller.

[Parameters]

{0}: target server ("localhost" or server ID)

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Identify the cause from system log or event log on the target server, and work around.

### 3.1.44 MCA00044

---

#### stopping Mirroring Controller forcibly

---

[Description]

Stopping Mirroring Controller forcibly.

### 3.1.45 MCA00045

---

#### stopped Mirroring Controller forcibly

---

[Description]

Mirroring Controller stopped forcibly.

### 3.1.46 MCA00046

---

#### enabled failover target server:"{0}"

---

[Description]

Enabled failover and automatic detach.

[Parameters]

{0}: target server ("localhost" or server ID)

### 3.1.47 MCA00047

---

#### failed to enable failover target server:"{0}"

---

[Description]

Failed to enable failover and automatic detach.

[Parameters]

{0}: target server ("localhost" or server ID)

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Identify the cause from messages on system log or event log, and work around.

### 3.1.48 MCA00048

---

**disabled failover target server:"{0}"**

[Description]

Disabled failover and automatic detach.

[Parameters]

{0}: target server ("localhost" or server ID)

### 3.1.49 MCA00049

---

**failed to disable failover target server:"{0}"**

[Description]

Failed to disable failover and automatic detach.

[Parameters]

{0}: target server ("localhost" or server ID)

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Identify the cause from messages on system log or event log, and work around.

### 3.1.50 MCA00050

---

**{0}: server ID "{2}" specified with option "{1}" does not exist in definition file "{3}"**

[Description]

server ID specified with the option does not exist in definition file.

[Parameters]

{0}: command name

{1}: option

{2}: server ID

{3}: file name

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Re-execute after correcting options or definition file.

### 3.1.51 MCA00051

---

**{0}: The IP address or host name of the server where the command was executed in is not found on the definition file "{1}"**

#### [Description]

Either of the followings has occurred.

- The IP address or host name that does not exist is specified.
- The network interface is stopped.

#### [Parameters]

{0}: command name

{1}: file name

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Correct the definition file according to the message and parameter descriptions of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

### 3.1.52 MCA00052

---

**{0}: wrong server ID "{2}" in definition file "{1}"**

#### [Description]

Invalid descriptions were found in definition file.

#### [Parameters]

{0}: command name

{1}: file name

{2}: server ID

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Correct the definition file according to the message and parameter descriptions of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

### 3.1.53 MCA00053

---

**failed to detach standby server**

#### [Description]

Failed to detach standby server

because processing of detaching cannot be continued by something failure.

#### [System Processing]

Processing of detaching will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Find the message output before this message from display, system log or event log, and then work around according to the Action of the message.

### 3.1.54 MCA00054

---



---

**could not write to file "{0}": exception={1}: {2}****[Description]**

Failed to detach or synchronize standby server because could not write to the file.

**[Parameters]**

{0}: file name

{1}: exception type

{2}: exception detail

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Check the error detail and eliminate causes, and detach or synchronize standby server according to "Actions when an Error Occurs" of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

---

**3.1.55 MCA00055**

---

**unexpected error occurred in the monitoring process: {0}****[Description]**

Monitoring process could not continue because the unexpected error occurred.

**[Parameters]**

{0}: detail of cause

**[System Processing]**

Continues monitoring.

**[Action]**

Check the error detail and eliminate causes.

If you cannot clear the problem, contact Fujitsu technical support.

---

**3.1.56 MCA00056**

---

**unexpected error occurred: {0}****[Description]**

An unexpected error occurred.

**[Parameters]**

{0}: detail of cause

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Check the error detail and eliminate cause.

If you cannot clear the problem, contact Fujitsu technical support.

---

**3.1.57 MCA00057**

---

### failed to stop Mirroring Controller forcibly

#### [Description]

Failed to stop Mirroring Controller forcibly.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Check [Action] of the message output before this message, and re-execute.

If re-execution fails, terminate forcibly mc\_keeper process and terminate forcibly mc\_agent process with using OS command.

---

## 3.1.58 MCA00058

---

### could not access path "%s" specified as a directory for Mirroring Controller detail of cause: "%s"

#### [Description]

could not access path specified as a directory for Mirroring Controller.

#### [Parameters]

%s: path name

%s: detail of cause

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Check the error detail and eliminate causes.

---

## 3.1.59 MCA00059

---

### system call error occurred: "%s" detail of cause: "%s"

#### [Description]

System call error occurred.

#### [Parameters]

%s: system call name

%s: detail of cause

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Check the error detail and eliminate causes.

---

## 3.1.60 MCA00060

---

### could not get installation path

[Description]

Enterprise Postgres may not be installed.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Re-install Enterprise Postgres.

### 3.1.61 MCA00061

---

**could not access path "%1\$s" for parameter "%2\$s" in definition file "%3\$s" detail of cause: "%4\$s"**

[Description]

could not access path for parameter in definition file.

[Parameters]

%3\$s: file name

%2\$s: parameter name

%1\$s: path name

%4\$s: detail of cause

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check the error detail and eliminate causes.

### 3.1.62 MCA00062

---

**promotion processing completed**

[Description]

Promotion processing completed.

### 3.1.63 MCA00063

---

**promotion processing failed**

[Description]

Promotion processing failed.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Clear the problem according to [Action] of the message which was output before this message in system log or in database server log.

### 3.1.64 MCA00064

---

**stopped database instance forcibly**

[Description]

Database instance stopped forcibly.

### 3.1.65 MCA00065

---

#### failed to stop database instance forcibly

[Description]

Failed to stop database instance forcibly.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Clear the problem according to [Action] of the message which was output before this message in system log or in database server log.

### 3.1.66 MCA00067

---

#### did not switch during a degeneration use

[Description]

Did not switch during a degeneration use.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

If Mirroring Controller executed switching automatically, find the message output before this message from system log or event log to identify the cause of degeneration, and then eliminate causes according to [Action] of the message and try to switch with command.

### 3.1.67 MCA00068

---

#### {0}: users other than an instance administrator have the access privileges for definition file "{1}"

[Description]

users other than an instance administrator have the access privileges for definition file.

[Parameters]

{0}: command name

{1}: file name

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Revoke all the access privileges for users other than an instance administrator.

MCA00069

could not execute because Mirroring Controller of the server "{0}" is not running

[Description]

Could not execute because Mirroring Controller is not running.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Start Mirroring Controller, and try to switch with command.

### 3.1.68 MCA00070

---

[Try "%s --help" for more information.\n](#)

[Description]

--help option can show more additional information.

[Parameters]

%s: command name

[System Processing]

None.

[Action]

Check the message output before this message, and refer to descriptions shown by '--help' option.

### 3.1.69 MCA00071

---

[starting to {0}](#)

[Description]

Switching standby server to primary server.

[Parameters]

{0}: "switch over"

### 3.1.70 MCA00072

---

[failed to {0}](#)

[Description]

Failed to switch to primary server because of an unexpected failure.

[Parameters]

{0}: "switch over"

[System Processing]

Processing of switching will be aborted.

[Action]

Find the message output before this message from display, system log or event log, and then eliminate causes according to [Action] of the message.

### 3.1.71 MCA00073

---

#### error detected in handling of the database instance detail of cause:"{0}"

##### [Description]

Error detected in handling of the database instance for the following purposes.

- Obtain the port number of database instance
- Access to the data storage destination directory

##### [Parameters]

{0}: detail of cause

##### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

##### [Action]

Check the error detail and eliminate causes.

### 3.1.72 MCA00074

---

#### could not read PID file "{0}" of Mirroring Controller detail of cause:"{1}"

##### [Description]

Could not read PID file of Mirroring Controller.

##### [Parameters]

{0}: file name

{1}: detail of cause

##### [Action]

Identify the cause according to the message, and then remove it.

### 3.1.73 MCA00075

---

#### invalid contents of PID file "{0}" of Mirroring Controller

##### [Description]

The contents of PID file of Mirroring Controller is invalid.

##### [Parameters]

{0}: file name

##### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

##### [Action]

The following causes could be considered.

- The file was stored or replaced by mistake
- The file was corrupted

When starting Mirroring Controller, move or remove the file shown in the message.

When stopping Mirroring Controller, terminate forcibly mc\_keeper process and terminate forcibly mc\_agent process with using OS command.

### 3.1.74 MCA00076

---

**cannot execute "{0}" command because Mirroring Controller is not running**

[Description]

Cannot execute Mirroring Controller command because Mirroring Controller process is not running.

[Parameters]

{0}: command name

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Start Mirroring Controller, and re-execute.

### 3.1.75 MCA00077

---

**%s: argument of option "%s" is too long**

[Description]

Argument of option is too long.

[Parameters]

%s: command name

%s: option

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Re-execute after correcting options.

### 3.1.76 MCA00078

---

**%s: invalid option -- %s**

[Description]

Invalid option.

[Parameters]

%s: command name

%s: option

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Re-execute after correcting options.

### 3.1.77 MCA00079

---

**%s: unnecessary operand "%s"**

[Description]

Unnecessary operand.

[Parameters]

%s: command name

%s: operand

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Re-execute after correcting operand.

### 3.1.78 MCA00080

---

#### %s: unrecognized operation mode or no operation mode specified

[Description]

Unrecognized operation mode or no operation mode specified.

[Parameters]

%s: command name

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Re-execute after correcting or specifying operation mode.

### 3.1.79 MCA00081

---

#### start to enable the parameter "{1}" required to build in the standby server "{0}"

[Description]

Start to enable the parameter required to build in the standby server.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

{1}: parameter name

### 3.1.80 MCA00082

---

#### enabling the parameter "{1}" required to build in the standby server "{0}" completed

[Description]

Enabling the parameter required to build in the standby server completed.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

{1}: parameter name

### 3.1.81 MCA00083

---



---

### failed to enable the parameter "{1}" required to build in the standby server "{0}"

#### [Description]

Failed to enable the parameter required to build in the standby server.

The following causes could be considered.

- another command is running
- can not access definition file
- parameter does not exist

#### [Parameters]

{0}: server ID

{1}: parameter name

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

- If the parameter is not set

On the primary server, set the parameter of postgresql.conf file according to "parameter" description of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)" and execute pg\_ctl command with reload mode.

- Otherwise

Find the message output before this message from display, system log or event log, and then eliminate causes according to [Action] of the message. Then, on the primary server, set the parameter of postgresql.conf file according to "parameter" description of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)" and execute pg\_ctl command with reload mode.

---

## 3.1.82 MCA00084

---

### primary server is already running

#### [Description]

Primary server is already running.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

The standby server might be running without creating standby.signal. Create standby.signal, and re-execute.

---

## 3.1.83 MCA00085

---

### cannot start Mirroring Controller because database instance is not running

#### [Description]

Cannot start Mirroring Controller because database instance is not running.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Start database instance, and re-execute.

### 3.1.84 MCA00086

---

**could not get state of database instance detail of cause:"{0}"**

[Description]

Could not get state of database instance.

[Parameters]

{0}: detail of cause

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check the error detail and eliminate causes.

### 3.1.85 MCA00087

---

**unusable character is included in path "%s" specified as a directory for Mirroring Controller**

[Description]

Unusable character is included in path specified as a directory for Mirroring Controller.

[Parameters]

%s: path name

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Correct the path specified as a directory for Mirroring Controller according to the message and mc\_ctl command descriptions of "Reference".

### 3.1.86 MCA00088

---

**%1\$s: unusable character is included in server ID "%3\$s" specified with option "%2\$s"**

[Description]

Unusable character is included in server ID specified with option.

[Parameters]

%1\$s: command name

%2\$s: option

%3\$s: server ID

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Correct the server ID specified with option according to the message and mc\_ctl command descriptions of "Reference".

### 3.1.87 MCA00089

---

---

**only instance administrator can execute this command**

---

**[Description]**

Only instance administrator who created the directory for Mirroring Controller can execute this command.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Re-execute the command by the instance administrator who created the directory for Mirroring Controller.

---

**3.1.88 MCA00090**

---

---

**could not read file "{0}": Permission denied**

---

**[Description]**

No read permissions for the file.

**[Parameters]**

{0}: file name

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Re-execute the command, after granting the read permissions to the file.

---

**3.1.89 MCA00091**

---

---

**host name or IP address "{1}" of the primary server and the standby server in definition file "{0}" are same, but the --local-server option was not specified**

---

**[Description]**

Host name or IP address of the primary server and the standby server in definition file are same, but the --local-server option was not specified.

**[Parameters]**

{0}: file name

{1}: host name or IP address

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

If the primary server and the standby server are built in the same server, execute the mc\_ctl command with the --local-server option.

If the primary server and the standby server are built in the different server, correct host name or IP address in the definition file.

---

**3.1.90 MCA00092**

---

---

**this feature is not available in this edition**

---

[Description]

This feature is not available in this edition.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted

[Action]

Please install the right edition for this feature.

### 3.1.91 MCA00093

---

#### installation environment is destroyed

[Description]

Enterprise Postgres may not be installed correctly or may be destroyed.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Re-install Enterprise Postgres.

### 3.1.92 MCA00094

---

#### %s: invalid argument for option %s

[Description]

Invalid argument for option.

[Parameters]

%s: command name

%s: option

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Re-execute after correcting options.

### 3.1.93 MCA00095

---

#### could not remove file or directory "{0}"

[Description]

Could not remove the file or the directory.

[Parameters]

{0}: file name or directory name

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check the status of the file or the directory and eliminate causes, and then remove it.

### 3.1.94 MCA00096

---

**could not write file "{0}": exception={1}: {2}**

[Description]

Could not write the file.

[Parameters]

{0}: file name

{1}: exception type

{2}: exception detail

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Identify the cause according to the message, and then remove it.

### 3.1.95 MCA00097

---

**setup of standby server completed**

[Description]

Setup of standby server completed.

### 3.1.96 MCA00098

---

**setup of standby server failed**

[Description]

Setup of standby server failed.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Find the message output before this message from display, system log or event log, and then eliminate causes according to [Action] of the message.

### 3.1.97 MCA00099

---

**{0}: server "{1}" is running as a standby server**

[Description]

Could not continue processing because database instance to be duplicated is not running as a primary server.

[Parameters]

{0}: command name

{1}: server ID

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Re-execute this command on the standby server to be set up.

## 3.2 Message Numbers Beginning with MCA00100

---

### 3.2.1 MCA00100

---

**cannot execute {0} command because Mirroring Controller is running**

[Description]

Cannot execute this command because Mirroring Controller is running on the server to be set up.

[Parameters]

{0}: command name

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Execute this command on server where primary server is not running. If execute it on the right server, stop Mirroring Controller and then re-execute it.

### 3.2.2 MCA00101

---

**cannot execute {0} command because database instance is running**

[Description]

Cannot execute this command because database instance is running on the server to be set up.

[Parameters]

{0}: command name

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Execute this command on server where primary server is not running. If execute it on the right server, stop database instance and then re-execute it.

### 3.2.3 MCA00102

---

**{0}: invalid argument value {2} for option {1}**

[Description]

Invalid argument for option.

[Parameters]

{0}: command name

{1}: option

{2}: argument value

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Re-execute after correcting argument value for the option.

### 3.2.4 MCA00103

---

**could not move file or directory from {0} to {1}**

[Description]

Could not move the file or the directory.

[Parameters]

{0}: source file or directory

{1}: target file or directory

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check the status of the file or the directory and eliminate causes, and then remove it.

### 3.2.5 MCA00104

---

**could not create directory {0}**

[Description]

Could not create the directory.

[Parameters]

{0}: target directory

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check the status of the directory and eliminate causes, and then remove it.

### 3.2.6 MCA00105

---

**could not read the access privileges of {0}**

[Description]

Could not read the access privileges.

[Parameters]

{0}: target directory

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check the status of the directory and eliminate causes, and then remove it.

### 3.2.7 MCA00106

---

**failed to set the access privileges of {0}**

[Description]

Failed to set the access privileges.

[Parameters]

{0}: target directory

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check the status of the directory and eliminate causes, and then remove it.

### 3.2.8 MCA00107

---

**service "{0}" is not registered**

[Description]

Service is not registered.

[Parameters]

{0}: Service name

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Register service, and re-execute.

### 3.2.9 MCA00108

---

**could not start service "{0}" detail of cause:"{1}"**

[Description]

Could not start service.

[Parameters]

{0}: Service name

{1}: detail of cause

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.



[Action]

Check the error detail and eliminate causes.

### 3.2.10 MCA00109

---

#### could not start service "%s" detail of cause:"%s"

---

[Description]

Could not start service.

[Parameters]

%s: Service name

%s: detail of cause

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check the error detail and eliminate causes.

### 3.2.11 MCA00110

---

#### service "%s" is not registered

---

[Description]

Service is not registered.

[Parameters]

%s: Service name

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Register service, and re-execute.

### 3.2.12 MCA00111

---

#### Mirroring Controller service "%s" has been registered

---

[Description]

Mirroring Controller service has been registered with Windows Service.

[Parameters]

%s: Service name

### 3.2.13 MCA00112

---

#### Mirroring Controller service "%s" has been unregistered

---

[Description]

Mirroring Controller service has been unregistered from Windows Service.

[Parameters]

%s: Service name

### 3.2.14 MCA00113

---

**service name "%s" is already in use**

[Description]

Service name is already in use.

[Parameters]

%s: Service name

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check the service name, and re-execute.

### 3.2.15 MCA00114

---

**could not register service "%s" detail of cause: "%s"**

[Description]

An error occurred during registration of service.

[Parameters]

%s: Service name

%s: detail of cause

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check the error detail and eliminate causes.

### 3.2.16 MCA00115

---

**could not unregister service "%s" detail of cause: "%s"**

[Description]

An error occurred during deregistration of service.

[Parameters]

%s: Service name

%s: detail of cause

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check the error detail and eliminate causes.

### 3.2.17 MCA00116

---

#### %s: option "%s" is required

##### [Description]

A required option is not specified.

##### [Parameters]

%s: command name

%s: option

##### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

##### [Action]

Specify the required option, and re-execute.

### 3.2.18 MCA00117

---

#### no authority to execute this command

##### [Description]

Only the administrative user can run this command.

##### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

##### [Action]

Invoke the administrator's prompt, and re-execute this command.

### 3.2.19 MCA00119

---

#### could not receive respons from {0} server({1})

##### [Description]

An error was detected on the server.

##### [Parameters]

{0}: monitored object (server)

{1}: server type (primary, candidate primary, standby)

##### [System Processing]

Perform failover or detaching.

If failover or detaching is already performed, these functions would be disabled.

##### [Action]

Refer to the description about workaround for failure of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

### 3.2.20 MCA00120

---

#### detected streaming replication error in {0} server({1})

[Description]

A streaming replication error was detected.

[Parameters]

{0}: monitored object (database process)

{1}: server type (primary, candidate primary, standby)

[System Processing]

Perform failover or detaching.

If failover or detaching is already performed, these functions would be disabled.

[Action]

Refer to the description about workaround for failure of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

### 3.2.21 MCA00121

---

#### disk drives are available

[Description]

Database where data storage, transaction log storage and tablespaces are saved is working correctly.

### 3.2.22 MCA00122

---

#### a {0} server({1}) is running normally

[Description]

A server is running normally.

[Parameters]

{0}: server type (primary, candidate primary, standby)

{1}: monitored object (server)

### 3.2.23 MCA00123

---

#### Streaming Replication has started

[Description]

Streaming Replication has started

### 3.2.24 MCA00124

---

#### postmaster is running in {0} server({1})

[Description]

postmaster is running

[Parameters]

{0}: server type (primary, candidate primary, standby)

{1}: monitored object (server)

### 3.2.25 MCA00125

---

---

### failed to get the standby server information

#### [Description]

Failed to get the standby server information

#### [System Processing]

Perform failover or detaching.

If failover or detaching is already performed, these functions would be disabled.

#### [Action]

Refer to the description about workaround for failure of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

---

## 3.2.26 MCA00126

---

### {0} server({1}) was downed

#### [Description]

database server was downed

#### [Parameters]

{0}: server type (primary, candidate primary, standby)

{1}: monitored object (server)

#### [System Processing]

Perform failover or detaching.

If failover or detaching is already performed, these functions would be disabled.

#### [Action]

Refer to the description about workaround for failure of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

---

## 3.2.27 MCA00127

---

### You can promote the standby server

#### [Description]

You can promote the standby server

---

## 3.2.28 MCA00128

---

### You cannot promote the standby server

#### [Description]

You cannot promote the standby server

---

## 3.2.29 MCA00129

---

### detected a disk I/O error in {0} server({1})

#### [Description]

A disk I/O error was detected.

#### [Parameters]

{0}: server type (primary, candidate primary, standby)

{1}: monitored object (server)

[System Processing]

Perform failover or detaching.

If failover or detaching is already performed, these functions would be disabled.

[Action]

Refer to the description about workaround for failure of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

### 3.2.30 MCA00130

---

**starting to switch over forcibly**

[Description]

Starting to switch over forcibly.

### 3.2.31 MCA00131

---

**succeeded in switching over to {0} forcibly**

[Description]

Switching standby server to primary server succeeded.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID of standby server

### 3.2.32 MCA00132

---

**failed to switch over to {0} forcibly**

[Description]

Failed in processing of switching because of unexpected failure.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID of standby server

[System Processing]

Processing of switching will be aborted.

[Action]

Find the message output before this message from display, system log or event log, and then work around according to the Action of the message.

### 3.2.33 MCA00133

---

**starting to detach standby server forcibly**

[Description]

Starting to detach standby server forcibly.

### 3.2.34 MCA00134

---

**succeeded in detaching standby server "{0}" completed forcibly**

[Description]

Detached standby server succeeded.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

### 3.2.35 MCA00135

---

#### **failed to detach standby server "{0}" forcibly**

[Description]

Failed to detach standby server.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

[System Processing]

Processing of detaching will be aborted.

[Action]

Find the message output before this message from display, system log or event log, and then work around according to the Action of the message.

### 3.2.36 MCA00136

---

#### **{0}: the specified option is invalid: "{1}"**

[Description]

the specified option is invalid.

[Parameters]

{0}: command name

{1}: option name

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Re-execute after correcting options.

### 3.2.37 MCA00137

---

#### **disabled standby server "{0}" to automatically switch because of canceling the synchronous replication for standby server**

[Description]

Disabled the standby server to automatically switch because of canceling the synchronous replication for standby server.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

### 3.2.38 MCA00138

---

---

### disabled standby server "{0}" to automatically switch

#### [Description]

Disabled the standby server to automatically switch.

#### [Parameters]

{0}: server ID

---

## 3.2.39 MCA00139

---

### failed to disable standby server "{0}" to automatically switch

#### [Description]

Failed to disable the standby server to automatically switch.

#### [Parameters]

{0}: server ID

#### [System processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

The following causes could be considered.

- An error was detected in database server
- Timeout waiting for between Mirroring Controller processes of database server

Identify the cause from messages on system log or event log, and work around.

---

## 3.2.40 MCA00140

---

### {0}: invalid server kind specified in definition file "{1}" line {2}

#### [Description]

Invalid descriptions were found in definition file.

#### [Parameters]

{0}: command name

{1}: file name

{2}: line number

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Correct the definition file according to the message and parameter description of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

---

## 3.2.41 MCA00141

---

### {0}: server kind 'arbiter' do not specified in definition file "{2}" despite value 'arbitration' is specified parameter heartbeat\_error\_action in definition file "{1}"



#### [Description]

Server kind 'arbiter' do not been specified in network.conf despite value 'arbitration' is specified parameter heartbeat\_error\_action in "server identifier".conf

#### [Parameters]

{0}: command name

{1}: file name

{2}: file name

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Correct the definition file according to the message and parameter description of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

### 3.2.42 MCA00142

---

**{0}: could not specify server kind 'arbiter' in definition file "{3}" because value '{2}' is specified parameter heartbeat\_error\_action in definition file "{1}"**

#### [Description]

Could not specify server kind 'arbiter' in network.conf because value 'arbitration' is not specified parameter heartbeat\_error\_action in "server identifier".conf.

#### [Parameters]

{0}: command name

{1}: file name

{2}: message, arbitration, command, fallback

{3}: file name

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Correct the definition file according to the message and parameter description of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

### 3.2.43 MCA00143

---

**{0}: second port number to use for the arbitration network is not specified in definition file "{1}"**

#### [Description]

Second port number to use for the arbitration network is not specified in network.conf.

#### [Parameters]

{0}: command name

{1}: file name

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Correct the definition file according to the message and parameter description of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

### 3.2.44 MCA00144

---

**{0}: could not specify second port number to use for the arbitration network in definition file "{3}" because value '{2}' is specified parameter heartbeat\_error\_action in definition file "{1}"**

[Description]

Could not specify second port number to use for the arbitration network in network.conf.

[Parameters]

{0}: command name

{1}: file name

{2}: message, command, fallback

{3}: file name

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Correct the definition file according to the message and parameter description of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

### 3.2.45 MCA00145

---

**{0}: second IP address to use for the arbitration network is not specified in definition file "{1}"**

[Description]

Second IP address to use for the arbitration network is not specified in network.conf.

[Parameters]

{0}: command name

{1}: file name

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Correct the definition file according to the message and parameter description of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

### 3.2.46 MCA00146

---

**{0}: cannot specify second IP Address on server kind 'arbiter' in definition file "{1}"**

[Description]

Cannot specify second IP Address on server kind 'arbiter' in network.conf.

[Parameters]

{0}: command name

{1}: file name

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Correct the definition file according to the message and parameter description of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

### 3.2.47 MCA00147

---

**{0}: could not use parameter '{3}' because value '{2}' is specified parameter heartbeat\_error\_action in definition file "{1}"**

#### [Discription]

**Could not use parameter in "server identifier".conf.**

#### [Parameters]

{0}: command name

{1}: file name

{2}: message, arbitration, command, fallback

{3}: parameter

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Correct the definition file according to the message and parameter description of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

### 3.2.48 MCA00148

---

**{0}: could not use option "{3}" because value '{2}' is specified parameter heartbeat\_error\_action in definition file "{1}"**

#### [Description]

Could not use this option.

#### [Parameters]

{0}: command

{1}: file name

{2}: message, arbitration, command, fallback

{3}: option

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Re-execute after correcting options according to the message and mc\_ctl command descriptions of "Reference".

### 3.2.49 MCA00149

---

**requesting arbitration server "{0}" to connect**

[Description]

Requesting arbitration server to connect.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

[System processing]

Requesting arbitration server to connect.

### 3.2.50 MCA00150

---

#### trying to connect to arbitration server "{0}"

[Description]

Trying to connect to arbitration server.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

[System processing]

Trying to connect to arbitration server until success.

### 3.2.51 MCA00151

---

#### succeeded in connection with arbitration server "{0}"

[Description]

Succeeded in connection with arbitration server.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

### 3.2.52 MCA00152

---

#### failed to connect to arbitration server "{0}" event:"{1}"

[Description]

Either of the followings has occurred.

- incorrect specification in network.conf
- error occurs in the network between database server and arbitration server
- Mirroring Controller Arbitration process is not running or in the stop processing
- Mirroring Controller Arbitration process or arbitration server detects an error

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

{1}: "timeout" or "communication error"

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check the following and identify the cause, and eliminate cause.

- specification about server kind 'arbiter' in network.conf
- the value of arbiter\_connect\_timeout parameter in "server identifier".conf
- communication status between database server and arbitration server
- Mirroring Controller Arbitration process starting status
- the message in arbitration server

### 3.2.53 MCA00153

---

#### disconnected from arbitration server "{0}"

##### [Description]

Disconnected from arbitration server.

##### [Parameters]

{0}: sever ID

### 3.2.54 MCA00154

---

#### timeout waiting for communication with Mirroring Controller Arbitration process server: "{0}"

##### [Description]

Timeout waiting for communication between Mirroring Controller process and Mirroring Controller Arbitration process.

##### [Parameters]

{0}: server ID

##### [System Processing]

Try to connect to arbitration server.

##### [Action]

Check whether a network error between arbitration server and database server or an error of arbtration server was detected.

If an error was not detected, the value of arbiter\_alive\_timeout parameter in "server identifier".conf is too short.

Review and extend the value of arbiter\_alive\_timeout in "server identifier".conf.

### 3.2.55 MCA00155

---

#### failed to open communication environment detail of cause: "{0}"

##### [Description]

Failed to open communication environment.

##### [Parameters]

{0}: detail of cause

##### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

##### [Action]

To investigate the cause of the occurrence from the message, and remove cause.

### 3.2.56 MCA00156

---

#### invalid port number for server "{0}" in definition file "{1}"

##### [Description]

Invalid descriptions were found in definition file.

##### [Parameters]

{0}: server ID

{1}: file name

##### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

##### [Action]

Correct the definition file according to the message and parameter description of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

### 3.2.57 MCA00157

---

#### communication error with the arbitration server "{0}" occurred

##### [Description]

Communication error with the arbitration server occurred.

##### [Parameters]

{0}: server ID

##### [System Processing]

Trying to connect.

##### [Action]

Either of the followings has occurred.

- When Mirroring Controller Arbitration process of a arbitration server is not running
- When abnormality occurs in the network between a database server and arbitration server

Identify the cause from messages on system log or event log in arbitration server or database server, and work around.

### 3.2.58 MCA00158

---

#### failed to start Mirroring Controller because of could not connect to arbitration server "{0}"

##### [Description]

Failed to start Mirroring Controller because of could not connect to arbitration server.

##### [Parameters]

{0}: server ID

[System processing]

Processing will be aborted.

##### [Action]

Work around according to the Action of the message output before this message.

On Windows, if there is no message outputted before this message, please refer to the message outputted to an event log.

MCA00159

requesting arbitration server "{1}" to arbitrate for database server "{0}"

[Description]

Requesting arbitration server to arbitrate for the target server.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

{1}: server ID

[System processing]

Requesting arbitration server to arbitrate for the target server.

### 3.2.59 MCA00160

---

**the arbitration server "{0}" arbitrated status of database server "{1}" as sanity**

[Description]

The arbitration server arbitrated status of database server as sanity.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

{1}: server ID

### 3.2.60 MCA00161

---

**the request for arbitration was omitted because fencing command for a database server "{0}" was finished already**

[Description]

The request for arbitration was omitted because fencing command for a database server was finished already.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

### 3.2.61 MCA00162

---

**arbitration processing cannot request because the "{0}" command is carrying out**

[Description]

Cannot request arbitration processing because command is running on the same or another server.

[Parameters]

{0}: command name

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

### 3.2.62 MCA00163

---

**timeout waiting for requesting arbitration server "{0}" to arbitrate**

[Description]

Timeout waiting for requesting arbitration server to arbitrate.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Switch or detach server in yourself according to descriptions of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

### 3.2.63 MCA00164

---

**requesting arbitration server "{0}" to fence database server "{1}"**

[Description]

Requesting arbitration server to fence database server.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

{1}: server ID

[System Processing]

Requesting arbitration server to fence.

### 3.2.64 MCA00165

---

**arbitration server "{0}" succeeded in fencing for database server "{1}"**

[Description]

Arbtration server succeeded in executing fencing command for the target server.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

{1}: server ID

### 3.2.65 MCA00166

---

**arbitration server "{0}" failed to fence for database server "{1}". detail of cause: check log file in arbitration server**

[Description]

Arbitration process failed to execute fencing command for the target server.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

{1}: server ID

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check error message in arbitration server.



If needed, perform switch or detach the database server with manually operation according to descriptions of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

### 3.2.66 MCA00167

---

#### timeout waiting for a request to fence to arbitration server "{0}"

##### [Description]

Timeout waiting for a request to fence to arbitration server.

##### [Parameters]

{0}: server ID

##### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

##### [Action]

Switch or detach server in yourself according to descriptions of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

### 3.2.67 MCA00168

---

#### arbitration server "{0}" rejected the request to fence database server "{1}"

##### [Description]

Either of the followings is esteemed.

- The arbitration server is executing arbitration process
- Fencing command was executed just before

##### [Parameters]

{0}: server ID

{1}: server ID

### 3.2.68 MCA00169

---

#### could not request "{1}" because of disconnecting from arbitration server "{0}"

##### [Description]

Could not request arbitration server to arbitrate, fence or disable automatically switch because of disconnecting.

##### [Parameters]

{0}: server ID

{1}: "arbitration" or "fencing" or "disable automatically switch"

##### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

##### [Action]

Either of the followings has occurred.

- Mirroring Controller Arbitration process is not running in arbitration server
- Abnormality occurs in the network between database server and arbitration server

Identify the cause from messages on system log or event log in arbitration server or database server, and work around.

### 3.2.69 MCA00170

---

**rejected a request arbitration server "{1}" because database server "{0}" was beening fencing**

[Description]

The following requirements shouldn't be executed if it is requested from the database server which is a fencing target.

- request to arbitrate
- request to fence

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

{1}: server ID

[Action]

Processing will be aborted.

### 3.2.70 MCA00171

---

**requested arbitration server "{0}" to disable standby server "{1}" to automatically switch**

[Description]

Requested arbitraion server to disable the standby server to automatically switch.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

{1}: server ID

### 3.2.71 MCA00172

---

**arbitration server "{0}" fenced standby server "{1}" because of failed to disable the standby server to automatically switch**

[Description]

Arbitration server fenced the standby server because of failed to disable the standby server to automatically switch.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

{1}: server ID

### 3.2.72 MCA00173

---

**arbitration server "{0}" tried to fence standby server "{1}" because of failed to disable the standby server to automatically switch, however fencing was failed**

[Description]

Arbitration server tried to fence the standby server because of failed to disable the standby server to automatically switch, however fencing was failed.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

{1}: server ID

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Switch or detach database server which error has been detected in yourself.

After, identify the cause from messages on system log or event log in arbitration server and work around.

### 3.2.73 MCA00174

---

#### requested standby server "{0}" to disable automatically switching

[Description]

Requested the standby server to disable automatically switching.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

### 3.2.74 MCA00175

---

#### {0}: cannot execute switching over forcibly other than on standby server

[Description]

Switching over forcibly needs to be executed only on standby server.

[Parameters]

{0}: command name

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check whether the server where the command was executed is correct.

Either, check that Mirroring Controller has been degenerate state yet.

### 3.2.75 MCA00176

---

#### {0}: cannot execute detaching forcibly other than on primary server

[Description]

Detaching forcibly needs to be executed only on primary server.

[Parameters]

{0}: command name

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check whether the server where the command was executed is correct.

Either, check that Mirroring Controller has been degenerate state yet.

### 3.2.76 MCA00177

---

---

**forcible switch over to standby server "{0}" was requested although the data may be not synchronous with primary server**

---

**[Description]**

Forcible switch over to standby server was requested although the data may be not synchronous with primary server.

**[Parameters]**

{0}: server ID

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be continued.

**[Action]**

Check the data of database server and recovery as necessary, after forcible switch over will be completed.

---

**3.2.77 MCA00178**

---

---

**database server which is able to be switched over is not found**

---

**[Description]**

Database server which is able to be switched over is not found.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

---

**3.2.78 MCA00179**

---

---

**starting to detach standby server**

---

**[Description]**

Starting to detach standby server.

---

**3.2.79 MCA00180**

---

---

**database server which needs to be detached is not found**

---

**[Description]**

Database server which needs to be detached is not found.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

---

**3.2.80 MCA00181**

---

---

**database server already has been detached**

---

**[Description]**

Database server already has been detached.

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

---

**3.2.81 MCA00182**

---

---

### failed to switch over forcibly

#### [Description]

Failed in processing of switching because of unexpected failure.

#### [System Processing]

Processing of switching will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Find the message output before this message from display, system log or event log, and then work around according to the Action of the message.

---

## 3.2.82 MCA00183

---

### failed to detach standby server forcibly

#### [Description]

Failed to detach standby server.

#### [System Processing]

Processing of detaching will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Find the message output before this message from display, system log or event log, and then work around according to the Action of the message.

---

## 3.2.83 MCA00184

---

### could not {1} because {0} server is abnormal

#### [Description]

Could not switch over or detach because server is abnormal

#### [Parameters]

{0}: "primary" or "candidate primary" or "standby"

{1}: "switch over" or "detach"

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Find the message output before this message in the log files on the target server, and work around according to the Action of the message.

---

## 3.2.84 MCA00185

---

### value of heartbeat\_error\_action is different from the value of other server "{0}"

#### [Description]

Value of heartbeat\_error\_action is different from the value of other server "{0}".

#### [Parameters]

{0}: server ID

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Re-execute after correcting value of heartbeat\_error\_action to the same value as another server.

### 3.2.85 MCA00186

---

**restarting Mirroring Controller process because an its error was detected: %s**

[Description]

Restarting Mirroring Controller process because an its error was detected.

[Parameters]

%s: error detail ("no response", "down")

[System Processing]

Restarting Mirroring Controller process.

### 3.2.86 MCA00187

---

**Mirroring Controller process was restarted**

[Description]

Mirroring Controller process was restarted.

### 3.2.87 MCA00188

---

**failed to restart Mirroring Controller**

[Description]

Failed to restart Mirooring Controller.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Work around according to the Action of the message output before this message.

On Windows, if there is no message outputted before this message, please refer to the message outputted to an event log.

After, execute the mc\_ctl command to restart Mirroring Controller.

### 3.2.88 MCA00189

---

**could not access "{0}" file detail of cause:"{1}"**

[Description]

Could not access the process information file of OS.

[Parameters]

{0}: file name

{1}: detail of cause

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check the error detail and eliminate causes.

### 3.2.89 MCA00190

---

**invalid contents of "{0}" file**

[Description]

Invalid contents of /proc/[pid]/status file.

[Parameters]

{0}: file name

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check whether mc\_keeper process or mc\_agent process exists with using OS command.

### 3.2.90 MCA00191

---

**executing arbitration command and inquiring the result of arbitration**

[Description]

Executing arbitration command that execute arbitration.

[System processing]

Degenerate depending on result of arbitration command.

### 3.2.91 MCA00192

---

**executing fencing command**

[Description]

Executing fencing command.

[System processing]

Processing will be continued depending on result of fencing command.

### 3.2.92 MCA00193

---

**starting degenerate because of result of arbitration command for database server "{0}"  
result: "{1}"**

[Description]

Starting degenerate because of result of arbitration command for target server.

[parameters]

{0}: server ID

{1}: return code of command

### 3.2.93 MCA00194

---

**degeneracy is not executed because of result of arbitration command to database server "{0}" result: "{1}"**

[Description]

Degeneracy is not executed because of result of arbitration command to target server.

[parameters]

{0}: server ID

{1}: return code of command

### 3.2.94 MCA00195

---

**timeout has occurred during arbitration command has been executing to database server "{0}"**

[Description]

Timeout has occurred during arbitration command has been executing to target server.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check the state of database server and switch or detach the server with manually operation according to descriptions of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)" as necessary.

When find process ID of arbitration command, terminate forcibly by using OS command.

### 3.2.95 MCA00196

---

**{0}: two or more standby server names are specified in the parameter "synchronous\_standby\_names" in PostgreSQL**

[Description]

multiple synchronous standby servers can not be monitored by Mirroring Controller.

[Parameters]

{0}: command name

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Re-execute after specifying single standby server to synchronous\_standby\_names.

### 3.2.96 MCA00197

---

**the arbitration server "{0}" didn't arbitrate status of database server "{1}" as sanity**

[Description]

Status of the target server was not arbitrated as sanity by arbitration server.



[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

{1}: server ID

[System processing]

Start degenerate processing.

### 3.2.97 MCA00198

---

**fencing command for database server "{0}" succeeded: result:"{1}"**

[Description]

Fencing command for database server succeeded.

[parameters]

{0}: server ID

{1}: return code of command

[System processing]

Processing will be continued.

### 3.2.98 MCA00199

---

**fencing command for database server "{0}" failed: result:"{1}"**

[Description]

Fencing command for database server failed.

[parameters]

{0}: server ID

{1}: return code of command

[System processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check the error detail and eliminate causes.

Switch or detach the server with manually operation according to descriptions of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)" as necessary.

MCA00200

timeout waiting for the fencing command

[Description]

Timeout waiting for the fencing command.

[System processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

The value of fencing\_command\_timeout parameter in server identifier.conf is too short.

Review and extend the value of fencing\_command\_timeout parameter in arbitration.conf.

When find process ID of fencing command, terminate forcibly by using OS command.

## 3.3 Message Numbers Beginning with MCA00200

---

### 3.3.1 MCA00201

---

#### executing state-transition-command kind of command:{0}

##### [Description]

Executing state-transition-command.

##### [parameters]

{0}: kind of state-transition-command(post-switch, pre-detach, post-attach)

### 3.3.2 MCA00202

---

#### state-transition-command has done kind of command:{0}

##### [Description]

State-transition-command has done.

##### [parameters]

{0}: kind of state-transition-command(post-promote, pre-detach, post-attach)

##### [System processing]

Processing will be continued.

### 3.3.3 MCA00203

---

#### timeout has occurred to state-transition-command kind of command:{0}

##### [Description]

Timeout has occurred to state-transition-command.

##### [parameters]

{0}: kind of state-transition-command(post-promote, pre-detach, post-attach)

##### [System Processing]

Processing of state-transition-command will be aborted.

##### [Action]

If the process of state-transition-command remained, terminate the process forcibly by using OS command. After checking processing status of state-transition-command, exec the processing of the command manually.

### 3.3.4 MCA00204

---

#### detected recovery from an error on monitoring of table space({0})

##### [Description]

detected recovery from an error on monitoring of table space

##### [Parameters]

{0}: directory path of table space

### 3.3.5 MCA00205

---

#### detected no response on monitoring of database process

[Description]

Detected no response on monitoring of database process.

[System Processing]

Continues processing.

[Action]

Check the error detail and eliminate causes.

### 3.3.6 MCA00206

---

#### detected recovery from no response on monitoring of database process

---

[Description]

Detected recovery from no response on monitoring of database process.

### 3.3.7 MCA00207

---

#### {0}: the user name specified in parameter db\_instance\_username of definition file "{1}" is not database superuser

[Description]

The user name specified in parameter db\_instance\_username is not database superuser.

[Parameters]

{0}: command name

{1}: file name

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Re-execute after specifying a database superuser.

### 3.3.8 MCA00208

---

#### {0}: the user name specified in parameter db\_instance\_username of definition file "{1}" does not exist

[Description]

The user name specified in parameter db\_instance\_username does not exist.

[Parameters]

{0}: command name

{1}: file name

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Re-execute after specifying a database superuser.

### 3.3.9 MCA00209

---

**{0}: could not specify second IP address to use for the arbitration network in definition file "{3}" because value '{2}' is specified parameter heartbeat\_error\_action in definition file "{1}"**

**[Description]**

Could not specify second IP address to use for the arbitration network in network.conf.

**[Parameters]**

{0}: command name

{1}: file name

{2}: message, command, fallback

{3}: file name

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Correct the definition file according to the message and parameter description of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

### 3.3.10 MCA00210

---

**{0}: cannot specify second port number on server kind 'arbiter' in definition file "{1}"**

**[Description]**

Cannot specify second port number on server kind 'arbiter' in network.conf.

**[Parameters]**

{0}: command name

{1}: file name

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Correct the definition file according to the message and parameter description of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

### 3.3.11 MCA00211

---

**{0}: could not use parameter "{2}" because parameter "{3}" is not specified in definition file "{1}"**

**[Description]**

This parameter cannot be specified because the parameter with dependency is not specified in the definition file.

**[Parameters]**

{0}: command name

{1}: file name

{2}: parameter name

{3}: parameter name

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Correct the definition file according to the message and parameter description of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

### 3.3.12 MCA00212

---

**{0}: primary\_conninfo parameter is not specified in postgresql.auto.conf**

#### [Description]

Primary\_conninfo parameter is not specified in postgresql.auto.conf file.

#### [Parameters]

{0}: command name

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Specify primary\_conninfo parameter in postgresql.auto.conf file according to the description of "Setting Up the Standby Center" for disaster recovery of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

### 3.3.13 MCA00213

---

**values of parameters for abnormality monitoring of operating system or server in server definition file "{1}" are too small for value of heartbeat\_interval in arbitration definition file of arbitration server "{0}"**

#### [Description]

Because the values of parameters for abnormality monitoring of the operating system or server in the server definition file are too small compared with the value of heartbeat\_interval in the arbitration definition file of the arbitration server, the arbitration for the target database server might be delayed.

#### [Parameters]

{0}: server ID

{1}: file name

#### [System Processing]

Depending on the start mode of the mc\_ctl command, either of the following processes will be performed.

- When --async-connect-arbiter option is not specified

Processing will be aborted.

- When --async-connect-arbiter option is specified

Continues processing.

#### [Action]

Take either of the following actions.

- When --async-connect-arbiter option is not specified

Correct the value of parameters for abnormality monitoring of the operating system or server according to the message and "Tuning for Optimization of Degradation Using Abnormality Monitoring With the Arbitration Server" of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

After that, re-execute the mc\_ctl command.

- When --async-connect-arbiter option is specified

Correct the parameters for abnormality monitoring of the operating system or server according to the message and "Tuning for Optimization of Degradation Using Abnormality Monitoring With the Arbitration Server" of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

After that, execute the mc\_ctl command to restart Mirroring Controller.

### 3.3.14 MCA00214

---

**{0}: keyword "{1}" is not specified for primary\_conninfo parameter in postgresql.auto.conf**

#### [Description]

The required keyword is not specified for primary\_conninfo parameter in postgresql.auto.conf file.

#### [Parameters]

{0}: command name

{1}: keyword name

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Specify the required keyword for primary\_conninfo parameter in postgresql.auto.conf file according to the description of "Setting Up the Standby Center" for disaster recovery of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

### 3.3.15 MCA00215

---

**{0}: keyword "{3}" is not specified for parameter "{2}" in definition file "{1}"**

#### [Description]

The keyword is not specified for the parameter in the definition file.

#### [Parameters]

{0}: command name

{1}: file name

{2}: parameter name

{3}: keyword name

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Correct the definition file according to the message and parameter description of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

### 3.3.16 MCA00216

---

---

**{0}: value that cannot be specified for keyword "{3}" of parameter "{2}" in definition file "{1}" is set**

**[Description]**

The value that cannot be specified for keyword of the parameter in the definition file is set.

**[Parameters]**

{0}: command name  
{1}: file name  
{2}: parameter name  
{3}: keyword name

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Take either of the following actions.

- When the keyword is application\_name

Correct the definition file or postgresql.auto.conf file according to the message and parameter description of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

- Otherwise

Correct the definition file according to the message and parameter description of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

### 3.3.17 MCA00217

---

**{0}: could not use parameter "{3}" because parameter "{2}" is specified in definition file "{1}"**

**[Description]**

This parameter cannot be specified because the parameter with exclusive relationship is specified in the definition file.

**[Parameters]**

{0}: command name  
{1}: file name  
{2}: parameter name  
{3}: parameter name

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Correct the definition file according to the message and parameter description of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

### 3.3.18 MCA00218

---

**{0}: value 'fallback' could not be specified for parameter heartbeat\_error\_action because parameter "{2}" is specified in definition file "{1}"**

**[Description]**

The parameter with exclusive relationship is specified although 'fallback' is specified for heartbeat\_error\_action.

[Parameters]

{0}: command name

{1}: file name

{2}: parameter name

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Correct the definition file according to the message and parameter description of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

### 3.3.19 MCA00219

---

**you can switch the connection destination of streaming replication of server "{0}"**

[Description]

You can switch the connection destination of streaming replication.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

### 3.3.20 MCA00220

---

**you cannot switch the connection destination of streaming replication of server "{0}"**

[Description]

You cannot switch the connection destination of streaming replication.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

### 3.3.21 MCA00221

---

**start to build in standby server "{0}"**

[Description]

Start to build in standby server.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

### 3.3.22 MCA00222

---

**failed to build in standby server "{0}"**

[Description]

Failed to build in standby server.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID



[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Find the message output before this message from display of own and other server, system log or event log, and then work around according to the Action of the message.

### 3.3.23 MCA00223

---

#### build in standby server "{0}" completed

[Description]

Build in standby server "{0}" completed.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

### 3.3.24 MCA00224

---

#### start to switch the connection destination of streaming replication

[Description]

Start to switch the connection destination of streaming replication.

### 3.3.25 MCA00225

---

#### failed to switch the connection destination of streaming replication

[Description]

Failed to switch the connection destination of streaming replication.

[System Processing]

Processing of switching will be aborted.

[Action]

Find the message output before this message from display of own and other server, system log or event log, and then work around according to the Action of the message.

### 3.3.26 MCA00226

---

#### start to switch the connection destination of streaming replication of server "{0}"

[Description]

Start to switch the connection destination of streaming replication.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

[Action]

If Mirroring Controller executed switching automatically, find the message output before this message from system log or event log to identify the cause of switching, and then work around according to the Action of the message.

### 3.3.27 MCA00227

---

---

**failed to switch the connection destination of streaming replication of server "{0}"****[Description]**

Failed to switch the connection destination of streaming replication.

**[Parameters]**

{0}: server ID

**[System Processing]**

Processing of switching will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Find the message output before this message from display own and other server, system log or event log, and then work around according to the Action of the message.

---

**3.3.28 MCA00228**

---

**switch the connection destination of streaming replication of server "{0}" completed****[Description]**

Switch the connection destination of streaming replication completed.

**[Parameters]**

{0}: server ID

---

**3.3.29 MCA00229**

---

**switch forcibly the connection destination of streaming replication of server "{0}" completed****[Description]**

Switch forcibly the connection destination of streaming replication completed.

**[Parameters]**

{0}: server ID

---

**3.3.30 MCA00230**

---

**value of primary\_conninfo parameter which is specified in postgresql.auto.conf file of server "{0}" has been updated to the value of parameter "{2}" which is specified in definition file "{1}"****[Description]**

Value of primary\_conninfo parameter which is specified in postgresql.auto.conf file has been updated.

**[Parameters]**

{0}: server ID

{1}: file name

{2}: parameter name

---

**3.3.31 MCA00231**

---

**failed to update value of primary\_conninfo parameter which is specified in postgresql.auto.conf file of server "{0}" detail of cause:"{1}"**

[Description]

Failed to update value of primary\_conninfo parameter which is specified in postgresql.auto.conf file.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

{1}: detail of cause

[Action]

Check the error detail and eliminate causes.

### 3.3.32 MCA00232

---

**update value of parameter "{2}" to "{3}" which is specified in definition file "{1}" of server "{0}" has completed**

[Description]

Update value of parameter which is specified in definition file has completed.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

{1}: file name

{2}: parameter name

{3}: primary, standby

### 3.3.33 MCA00233

---

**failed to update value of parameter "{2}" which is specified in definition file "{1}" of server "{0}"**

[Description]

Failed to update value of parameter which is specified in definition file.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

{1}: file name

[Action]

Find the message output before this message from display of own and other server, system log or event log, and then work around according to the Action of the message.

### 3.3.34 MCA00234

---

**failed to check the consistency of LSN between server "{0}" and server "{1}"**

[Description]

Failed to check the consistency of LSN between the server.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

{1}: server ID

[Action]

Find the message output before this message from display of own and other server, system log or event log, and then work around according to the Action of the message.

### 3.3.35 MCA00235

---

**failed to update value of parameter "{2}" which is specified in file "{1}" of old candidate primary server "{0}"**

[Description]

Failed to update value of parameter which is specified on old candidate primary server.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

{1}: file name

{2}: parameter name

[Action]

Either of the following processes will be performed before restarting OS if automatic start and stop of Mirroring Controller has been setting, otherwise building in old candidate primary server to new candidate primary server.

- When update postgresql.auto.conf file has failed

Update connection setting of primary\_conninfo parameter which is specified in postgresql.auto.conf file to new candidate primary server by executing ALTER SYSTEM SET statement

- When update "server identifier".conf file has failed

Edit setting of standbycenter\_mode parameter in 'standby' which is specified in "server identifier".conf file.

### 3.3.36 MCA00236

---

**Mirroring Controller of the server "{0}" is not running**

[Description]

Mirroring Controller of the server "{0}" is not running.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

### 3.3.37 MCA00237

---

**invalid combination of server own server type:{0} other server type:{1}**

[Description]

Invalid combination of server.

[Parameters]

{0}: own server type

{1}: other server type

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Correct the definition file according to the message and parameter description to be set reffering disaster recovery operation of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

### 3.3.38 MCA00238

---

**{0}: cannot execute detaching forcibly other than on operation center**

[Description]

Detaching forcibly needs to be executed only on operation center.

[Parameters]

{0}: command name

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check whether the server where the command was executed is correct.

### 3.3.39 MCA00239

---

**standbycenter\_mode parameter is specified in the definition file "{0}" of primary server**

[Description]

standbycenter\_mode parameter is specified in the definition file of primary server.

[Parameters]

{0}: file name

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Correct the definition file according to the message and parameter description to be set reffering disaster recovery operation of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

### 3.3.40 MCA00240

---

**promoted to the primary server, although standbycenter\_mode parameter is specified in the definition file "{1}" of the server "{0}"**

[Description]

Promoted to the primary server, although standbycenter\_mode parameter is specified in the definition file.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

{1}: file name

[System Processing]

Stop monitoring.

[Action]

Correct the definition file according to the message and parameter description to be set referring disaster recovery operation of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

### 3.3.41 MCA00241

---

**write permission is denied on definition file "{0}"**

[Description]

Write permission is denied on definition file.

[Parameters]

{0}: file name

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Re-execute the command, after granting the write permissions to the definition file.

### 3.3.42 MCA00242

---

**{0}: invalid format value is specified for parameter "{2}" in definition file "{1}"**

[Description]

The invalid format value is specified for parameter in definition file.

[Parameters]

{0}: command name

{1}: file name

{2}: parameter name

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Correct the definition file according to the message and parameter description of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

### 3.3.43 MCA00243

---

**{0}: value is not set to keyword "{1}" of primary\_conninfo parameter in postgresql.auto.conf**

[Description]

The value is not set to keyword of primary\_conninfo parameter in postgresql.auto.conf.

[Parameters]

{0}: command name

{1}: keyword name

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Set the value for the keyword of primary\_conninfo parameter in postgresql.auto.conf file according to the description of "Setting Up the Standby Center" for disaster recovery of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

### 3.3.44 MCA00244

---

#### failed to start monitoring of database process

[Description]

Failed to start monitoring of database process.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Find the message output before this message from display, system log or event log, and then work around according to the Action of the message. After that, execute the mc\_ctl command to restart Mirroring Controller.

### 3.3.45 MCA00245

---

#### checking the consistency of LSN between server "{0}" and server "{1}" is not executed because candidate primary server is abnormal

[Description]

Checking the consistency of LSN is not executed because candidate primary server is abnormal.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

{1}: server ID

[System Processing]

Processing will be continued.

[Action]

Find the message output before this message from display, system log or event log, and then work around according to the Action of the message, after switching over will be completed. After that, build in old candidate primary server to new candidate primary server.

### 3.3.46 MCA00252

---

#### The parameter node\_role is set on Mirroring Controller process, but the parameter sc\_port is not set on Mirroring Controller Arbitration process

[Description]

The parameter node\_role is set on Mirroring Controller process, but the parameter sc\_port is not set on Mirroring Controller Arbitration process.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Set sc\_port parameter in arbitration.conf of Mirroring Controller arbitration process, if operating in Scaleout Controller configuration. If not, delete node\_role parameter from "server identifier".conf of Mirroring Controller process.

### 3.3.47 MCA00253

---

**The parameter node\_role is not set on Mirroring Controller process, but the parameter sc\_port is set on Mirroring Controller Arbitration process**

[Description]

The parameter node\_role is not set on Mirroring Controller process, but the parameter sc\_port is set on Mirroring Controller Arbitration process.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Set node\_role parameter in a "server identifier".conf of Mirroring Controller process, if operating in Scaleout Controller configuration. If not, delete sc\_port parameter from arbitration.conf of Mirroring Controller arbitration process.

### 3.3.48 MCA00254

---

**The parameter node\_role is "{0}" on Mirroring Controller process, but the node role is "{1}" on Mirroring Controller Arbitration process**

[Description]

node\_role parameter set in Mirroring Controller process is different from node\_role parameter set in the arbitration process of the mirroring controller.

[Parameters]

{0}: node role set in Mirroring Controller arbitration process

{1}: node role set in Mirroring Controller process

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Reconfigure node\_role parameter set in "server identifier".conf of Mirroring Controller process to match node\_role set in arbs.conf of the Scaleout Controller process.

### 3.3.49 MCA00255

---

**failed to switch over**

[Description]

failed to switch over.

### 3.3.50 MCA00256

---

**only the Mirroring Controller of the coordinator can be restarted**

[Description]

only the Mirroring Controller of the coordinator can be restarted.

### 3.3.51 MCA00257

---

**restarting Mirroring Controller**



[Description]

restarting Mirroring Controller.

### 3.3.52 MCA00258

---

**failed to restart Mirroring Controller target server:"{0}"**

[Description]

failed to restart Mirroring Controller.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

### 3.3.53 MCA00259

---

**failed to connect connection manager**

[Description]

failed to connect connection manager.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check the status of connection manager.

### 3.3.54 MCA00260

---

**"{0}" has changed.**

[Description]

Parameter in "server identifier".conf was changed.

[Parameters]

{0}: changed parameter

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Reset relevant parameter to its pre-modified values and execute the process again.

## 3.4 Message Numbers Beginning with MCR00000

---

### 3.4.1 MCR00001

---

**could not read file "{0}": exception={1}: {2}**

[Description]

Could not read the file.

[Parameters]

{0}: file name

{1}: exception type

{2}: exception detail

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Identify the cause according to the message, and then remove it.

### 3.4.2 MCR00002

---

**{0}: wrong number of server ID in definition file "{1}"**

#### [Description]

Invalid descriptions were found in definition file.

#### [Parameters]

{0}: command name

{1}: file name

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Correct the definition file according to the message and parameter description of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

### 3.4.3 MCR00003

---

**{0}: server ID specified in definition file "{1}" too long (max {2} bytes) line {3}**

#### [Description]

Invalid descriptions were found in definition file.

#### [Parameters]

{0}: command name

{1}: file name

{2}: max length of server ID

{3}: line number

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Correct the definition file according to the message and parameter description of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

### 3.4.4 MCR00004

---

**{0}: wrong server ID in definition file "{1}"**

[Description]

Could not use a server ID with same name in network.conf.

[Parameters]

{0}: command name

{1}: file name

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Correct the definition file according to the message and parameter descriptions of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

### 3.4.5 MCR00005

---

#### invalid host name or IP address "{1}" in definition file "{0}"

[Description]

Invalid descriptions were found in definition file.

[Parameters]

{0}: file name

{1}: host name or IP address

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Correct the definition file according to the message and parameter description of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

### 3.4.6 MCR00006

---

#### {0}: invalid port number in definition file "{1}" line {2}

[Description]

Invalid descriptions were found in definition file.

[Parameters]

{0}: command name

{1}: file name

{2}: line number

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Correct the definition file according to the message and parameter description of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

### 3.4.7 MCR00007

---

**{0}: invalid format specified in definition file "{1}" line {2}**

**[Description]**

Invalid descriptions were found in definition file.

**[Parameters]**

{0}: command name

{1}: file name

{2}: line number

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Correct the definition file according to the message and parameter description of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

### 3.4.8 MCR00008

---

**{0}: invalid value for parameter "{2}" in definition file "{1}"**

**[Description]**

Invalid parameter was found in definition file.

**[Parameters]**

{0}: command name

{1}: file name

{2}: parameter name

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

**[Action]**

Correct the definition file according to the message and parameter description of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

### 3.4.9 MCR00009

---

**{0}: no value for parameter "{2}" specified in definition file "{1}"**

**[Description]**

Invalid parameter was found in definition file.

**[Parameters]**

{0}: command name

{1}: file name

{2}: parameter name

**[System Processing]**

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Correct the definition file according to the message and parameter description of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

### 3.4.10 MCR00010

---

**{0}: unrecognized parameter "{2}" in definition file "{1}"**

[Description]

Unrecognized parameter was found in definition file.

[Parameters]

{0}: file name

{1}: command name

{2}: parameter name

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Correct the definition file according to the message and parameter description of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

### 3.4.11 MCR00011

---

**%s: option "%s" duplicated**

[Description]

Certain option is duplicated.

[Parameters]

%s: command

%s: option

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Re-execute after correcting options.

### 3.4.12 MCR00012

---

**%s: "%s" option conflicts with "%s" option**

[Description]

Options are conflicting.

[Parameters]

%s: command

%s: option

%s: option

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Re-execute after correcting options.

### 3.4.13 MCR00013

---

**%s: option requires an argument -- %s**

[Description]

No argument specified for the option.

[Parameters]

%s: command

%s: option

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Re-execute after correcting options.

### 3.4.14 MCR00014

---

**%s: neither "%s" option nor environment variable "%s" specified**

[Description]

Both of required option and equivalent environment variable were not specified.

[Parameters]

%s: command

%s: option

%s: environment variable

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Re-execute after specifying required option or equivalent environment variable.

### 3.4.15 MCR00015

---

**%s: argument of option "%s" is too long**

[Description]

Argument of option is too long.

[Parameters]

%s: command name

%s: option

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Re-execute after correcting options.

### 3.4.16 MCR00016

---

**%s: invalid option -- %s**

[Description]

Invalid option.

[Parameters]

%s: command name

%s: option

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Re-execute after correcting options.

### 3.4.17 MCR00017

---

**%s: option "%s" is required**

[Description]

A required option is not specified.

[Parameters]

%s: command name

%s: option

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Specify the required option, and re-execute.

### 3.4.18 MCR00018

---

**%s: unnecessary operand "%s"**

[Description]

Unnecessary operand.

[Parameters]

%s: command name

%s: operand

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Re-execute after correcting operand.

### 3.4.19 MCR00019

---

**%s: unrecognized operation mode or no operation mode specified**

[Description]

Unrecognized operation mode or no operation mode specified.

[Parameters]

%s: command name

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Re-execute after correcting or specifying operation mode.

### 3.4.20 MCR00020

---

**Try "%s --help" for more information.\n**

[Description]

--help option can show more additional information.

[Parameters]

%s: command name

[System Processing]

None.

[Action]

Check the message output before this message, and refer to descriptions shown by '--help' option.

### 3.4.21 MCR00021

---

**%s: out of memory**

[Description]

Out of memory error occurred.

[Parameters]

%s: command

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Obtain free memory space by stopping unnecessary processes or changing system settings.

### 3.4.22 MCR00022

---



---

### another "{0}" command is running

#### [Description]

Cannot execute command with this operation mode because another command is running on the same or another server.

#### [Parameters]

{0}: command name

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

There is a case executing another command. Wait for completion of another command on the same or another server, and then re-execute.

In addition, there are the following cases when using mc\_arb command.

There is a case under processing of an arbitration by Mirroring Controller Arbitration process. Wait for completion of the processing under operation, and re-execute.

If any of the following cases occurs, there is a possibility that the processing of Mirroring Controller Arbitration process interrupts. Re-execute the mc\_arb command after restarting Mirroring Controller Arbitration process.

- When abnormality occurs in the network
- When another server is downed
- When Mirroring Controller Arbitration process is stopped forcibly

---

## 3.4.23 MCR00023

---

### Mirroring Controller Arbitration process is already running

#### [Description]

Mirroring Controller Arbitration process is already running.

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

If needed, stop Mirroring Controller Arbitration process, and re-execute.

If could not start although Mirroring Controller Arbitration process not started, refer to the description about workaround for failure of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

---

## 3.4.24 MCR00024

---

### cannot execute %s command because Mirroring Controller Arbitration process is not running

#### [Description]

Cannot execute Mirroring Controller Arbitration process command because Mirroring Controller Arbitration process is not running.

#### [Parameters]

%s: command name

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Start Mirroring Controller Arbitration process, and re-execute.

### 3.4.25 MCR00025

---

#### timeout waiting for communication with Mirroring Controller Arbitration process

---

[Description]

Timeout waiting for communication with Mirroring Controller Arbitration process.

[System processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check whether a network error was detected.

If an error was not detected, there is a possibility that the load of the system may be the cause, please re-execute after a while.

### 3.4.26 MCR00026

---

#### could not create PID file of Mirroring Controller Arbitration process detail of cause:"{0}"

---

[Description]

Could not create PID file of Mirroring Controller Arbitration process.

[Parameters]

{0}: detail of cause

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Identify the cause according to the message, and then remove it.

### 3.4.27 MCR00027

---

#### could not remove PID file of Mirroring Controller Arbitration process detail of cause:"%s"

---

[Description]

Could not remove PID file of Mirroring Controller Arbitration process.

[Parameters]

%s: detail of cause

[Action]

Identify the cause according to the message, and then remove it.

### 3.4.28 MCR00028

---

#### could not read PID file of Mirroring Controller Arbitration process detail of cause:"%s"

---

[Description]

Could not read PID file of Mirroring Controller Arbitration process.

[Parameters]

%s: detail of cause

[Action]

Identify the cause according to the message, and then remove it.

### 3.4.29 MCR00029

---

**invalid contents of PID file "%s" of Mirroring Controller Arbitration process**

[Description]

The contents of PID file of Mirroring Controller Arbitration process is invalid.

[Parameters]

%s: file name

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

The following causes could be considered.

- The file was stored or replaced by mistake
- The file was corrupted

When starting Mirroring Controller Arbitration process, move or remove the file shown in the message.

When stopped Mirroring Controller Arbitration process, find ID of process named "mc\_arbiter" and terminate forcibly by using OS command.

### 3.4.30 MCR00030

---

**unexpected error occurred: {0}**

[Description]

An unexpected error occurred.

[Parameters]

{0}: detail of cause

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check the error detail and eliminate cause.

If you cannot clear the problem, contact Fujitsu technical support.

### 3.4.31 MCR00031

---

**system call error occurred: "%s" detail of cause: "%s"**

[Description]

System call error occurred.

[Parameters]

%s: system call name

%s: detail of cause

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check the error detail and eliminate causes.

### 3.4.32 MCR00032

---

**failed to open communication environment detail of cause:"{0}"**

[Description]

Failed to open communication environment.

[Parameters]

{0}: detail of cause

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

To investigate the cause of the occurrence from the message, and remove cause.

### 3.4.33 MCR00033

---

**could not read file "{0}": Permission denied**

[Description]

No read permissions for the file.

[Parameters]

{0}: file name

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Re-execute the command, after granting the read permissions to the file.

### 3.4.34 MCR00034

---

**could not read the access privileges of {0}**

[Description]

Could not read the access privileges.

[Parameters]

{0}: target directory

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check the status of the directory and eliminate causes, and then remove it.

### 3.4.35 MCR00035

---

**failed to set the access privileges of {0}**

[Description]

Failed to set the access privileges.

[Parameters]

{0}: target directory

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check the status of the directory and eliminate causes, and then remove it.

### 3.4.36 MCR00036

---

**could not get installation path**

[Description]

FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres may not be installed.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Re-install FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres.

### 3.4.37 MCR00037

---

**could not access "{0}" file detail of cause: "{1}"**

[Description]

Could not access the process information file of OS.

[Parameters]

{0}: file name

{1}: detail of cause

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check the error detail and eliminate causes.

### 3.4.38 MCR00038

---

#### invalid contents of "{0}" file

##### [Description]

Invalid contents of /proc/[pid]/status file.

##### [Parameters]

{0}: file name

##### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

##### [Action]

Check mc\_arbiter process is existed or not in yourself.

### 3.4.39 MCR00039

---

#### unusable character is included in path "%s" specified as a directory for Mirroring Controller Arbitration process

##### [Description]

Unusable character is included in path specified as a directory for Mirroring Controller Arbitration process.

##### [Parameters]

%s: path name

##### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

##### [Action]

Correct the path specified as a directory for Mirroring Controller Arbitration process according to the message and mc\_arb command descriptions of "Reference".

### 3.4.40 MCR00040

---

#### could not access path "%s" specified as a directory for Mirroring Controller Arbitration process detail of cause:"%s"

##### [Description]

Could not access path specified as a directory for Mirroring Controller Arbitration process.

##### [Parameters]

%s: path name

%s: detail of cause

##### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

##### [Action]

Check the error detail and eliminate causes.

### 3.4.41 MCR00041

---

---

**{0}: IP address "{2}" specified for parameter "my\_address" in definition file "{1}" is not found**

[Description]

IP address specified for my\_address parameter in arbitration.conf is not found.

[Parameters]

{0}: command name

{1}: file name

{2}: IP address

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check whether IP address specified by my\_address parameter in arbitration.conf is correct or IP address is valid.

### 3.4.42 MCR00042

---

**could not access path "{0}" for parameter "{1}" in definition file "{2}" detail of cause: "{3}"**

[Description]

Either of the followings has occurred.

- File does not exist
- You do not specify a file
- Could not read the access privileges

[Parameters]

{0}: path name

{1}: parameter name

{2}: file name

{3}: detail of cause

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check the error detail and eliminate causes.

### 3.4.43 MCR00043

---

**{0}: users other than a command executor have the access privileges for definition file "{1}"**

[Description]

Users other than a command executor have the access privileges for definition file.

[Parameters]

{0}: command name

{1}: file name

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Revoke all the access privileges for any users other than a command executor.

### 3.4.44 MCR00044

---

**only the owner of definition file "{0}" can execute this command**

[Parameters]

{0}: file name

[Description]

Only the owner who created the directory for Mirroring Controller Arbitration process can execute this command.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Re-execute the command by the owner who created the directory for Mirroring Controller Arbitration process.

### 3.4.45 MCR00045

---

**starting Mirroring Controller Arbitration process**

[Description]

Starting Mirroring Controller Arbitration process.

### 3.4.46 MCR00046

---

**Mirroring Controller Arbitration process started**

[Description]

Mirroring Controller Arbitration process started.

### 3.4.47 MCR00047

---

**failed to start Mirroring Controller Arbitration process**

[Description]

Failed to start Mirroring Controller Arbitration process.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Work around according to the Action of the message output before this message.

On Windows, if there is no message outputted before this message, please refer to the message outputted to an event log.

MCR00048

failed to report Mirroring Controller Arbitration process status

[Description]

Failed to report Mirroring Controller Arbitration process status.



[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Work around according to the Action of the message output before this message.

On Windows, if there is no message outputted before this message, please refer to the message outputted to an event log.

### 3.4.48 MCR00049

---

#### stopping Mirroring Controller Arbitration process

[Description]

Stopping Mirroring Controller Arbitration process.

### 3.4.49 MCR00050

---

#### Mirroring Controller Arbitration process stopped

[Description]

Mirroring Controller Arbitration process stopped.

### 3.4.50 MCR00051

---

#### could not stop Mirroring Controller Arbitration process because database server connects

[Description]

Could not stop Mirroring Controller Arbitration process because database server connects.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Execute mc\_arb status command to find connected database server.

Re-execute after stopping Mirroring Controller on database server.

### 3.4.51 MCR00052

---

#### failed to stop Mirroring Controller Arbitration process

[Description]

Failed to stop Mirroring Controller Arbitration process.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Identify the cause from system log or event log on the target server, and work around.

### 3.4.52 MCR00053

---

#### stopping Mirroring Controller Arbitration process forcibly

[Description]

Stopping Mirroring Controller Arbitration process forcibly.

### 3.4.53 MCR00054

---

#### Mirroring Controller Arbitration process stopped forcibly

---

[Description]

Mirroring Controller Arbitration process stopped forcibly.

### 3.4.54 MCR00055

---

#### failed to stop Mirroring Controller Arbitration process forcibly

---

[Description]

Failed to stop Mirroring Controller Arbitration process forcibly.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check [Action] of the message output before this message, and re-execute.

If re-execution fails, terminate forcibly mc\_arbiter process with OS command.

### 3.4.55 MCR00056

---

#### database server "{0}" requested to arbitrate for database server "{1}" status

---

[Description]

Accepts a request to arbitrate from the database server which has detected an error.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

{1}: server ID

### 3.4.56 MCR00057

---

#### arbitrating the status of database server "{0}"

---

[Description]

Arbitrating for the status of the database server which was detected an error.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

[System Processing]

Arbitrating for the status of the database server which was detected an error.

### 3.4.57 MCR00058

---

#### received response from database server "{0}"

---

[Description]

A server is running normally.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

[System Processing]

Return result to database server.

### 3.4.58 MCR00059

---

**could not receive response from database server "{0}"**

[Description]

Detected the database server to be abnormal.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

[System Processing]

Execute fencing command.

### 3.4.59 MCR00060

---

**rejected a request to arbitrate from database server "{0}"**

[Description]

Either of the followings has occurred.

- Fencing command was executed just before
- The arbitration server was in the stop processing

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

[System Processing]

Rejected a request to arbitrate from the database server.

### 3.4.60 MCR00061

---

**database server "{0}" requested to fence database server "{1}"**

[Description]

Accepted a request to fence from the database server which has detected an error.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

{1}: server ID

### 3.4.61 MCR00062

---

**executing fencing command**

[Description]

Executing fencing command.

[System processing]

Executing fencing command.

### 3.4.62 MCR00063

---

**fencing command for database server "{0}" succeeded: result:"{1}"**

[Description]

Fencing command for database server succeeded.

[parameters]

{0}: server ID

{1}: return code of command

[System processing]

Returning result to database server.

### 3.4.63 MCR00064

---

**fencing command for database server "{0}" failed: result:"{1}"**

[Description]

Fencing command for database server failed.

[parameters]

{0}: server ID

{1}: return code of command

[System processing]

Returning result to database server.

### 3.4.64 MCR00065

---

**timeout waiting for the fencing command**

[Description]

Timeout waiting for the fencing command.

[System processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

The value of fencing\_command\_timeout parameter in arbitration.conf is too short.

Review and extend the value of fencing\_command\_timeout parameter in arbitration.conf.

When find process ID of fencing command, terminate forcibly by using OS command.

### 3.4.65 MCR00066

---

**rejected a request to fence from database server "{0}"**

[Description]

Either of the followings is esteemed.

- The arbitration server has been executing arbitration process
- Fencing command has been executed just before
- The arbitration server was in the stop processing

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

[System Processing]

Rejected a request to fence from database server.

### 3.4.66 MCR00067

---

**rejected a request to fence from database server "{0}" because the database server is a fencing target**

[Description]

The following requirements shouldn't be executed if it is requested from the database server which is a fencing target.

- request to arbitrate
- request to fence
- request to disable automatically switch

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

[Action]

Processing will be aborted.

### 3.4.67 MCR00068

---

**database server "{0}" requested to disable standby server "{1}" to automatically switch**

[Description]

Accepted a request to disable the standby server to automatically switch.

[Parameters]

{0}: sever ID

{1}: sever ID

### 3.4.68 MCR00069

---

**requested standby server "{0}" to disable automatically switching**

[Description]

Requested the standby server to disable automatically switching.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

### 3.4.69 MCR00070

---

#### disabled standby server "{0}" to automatically switch

---

[Description]

Disabled the standby server to automatically switch.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

### 3.4.70 MCR00071

---

#### failed to disable standby server "{0}" to automatically switch

---

[Description]

Failed to disable the standby server to automatically switch.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

[System processing]

Executing fencing command.

### 3.4.71 MCR00072

---

#### omitted to disable standby server "{0}" to automatically switch

---

[Description]

It is not necessary to disable the standby server to automatically switch because a fencing for this database server is executing.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

[System processing]

Processing will be aborted.

### 3.4.72 MCR00073

---

#### connection was requested from database server "{0}"

---

[Description]

Connection was requested from database server.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

[Description]

Try connection to database server.

### 3.4.73 MCR00074

---

#### succeeded in connection with Mirroring Controller process of database server "{0}"

---

[Description]

Succeeded in connection with Mirroring Controller process of database server.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

### 3.4.74 MCR00075

---

**rejected a request to connect from database server "{0}" because of during the fencing command execution**

[Description]

Rejected a request to connect from database server because of during the fencing command execution.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

[Action]

Rejected a request to connect from database server.

### 3.4.75 MCR00076

---

**disconnected from the database server "{0}"**

[Description]

Disconnected from the database server.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

### 3.4.76 MCR00077

---

**the disallowed IP address "{0}" tried to access**

[Description]

The IP address which is different from the IP address in network.conf tried to access.

[parameters]

{0}: IP Adresses

[System Processing]

Connection will be rejected.

### 3.4.77 MCR00078

---

**tried to access from database server with installed different product version IP address:"{0}"**

[Description]

tried to access from database server with installed different product version.

[parameters]

{0}: IP address

[System Processing]

Connection will be rejected

[Action]

Match the product version level between arbitration server and database server.

### 3.4.78 MCR00079

---

**the invalid server ID tried to access IP address:"{0}"**

[Description]

The server ID which is different from the server ID in network.conf tried to access.

[Parameters]

{0}: IP address

[System Processing]

Connection will be rejected.

### 3.4.79 MCR00080

---

**the combination of server IDs of arbitration server is incompatible with that of database server "{0}"**

[Description]

The combination of server IDs of arbitration server is incompatible with that of the database server.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check the network.conf of both database server and arbitration sever, and correct the file.

### 3.4.80 MCR00081

---

**the invalid packet received**

[Description]

The invalid packet received.

[System Processing]

Connection will be rejected.

### 3.4.81 MCR00082

---

**{0}: invalid server kind specified in definition file "{1}" line {2}**

[Description]

Invalid descriptions were found in definition file.

[Parameters]

{0}: command name

{1}: file name



{2}: line number

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Correct the definition file according to the message and parameter description of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

### 3.4.82 MCR00083

---

**%s: invalid argument for option %s**

[Description]

Invalid argument for option.

[Parameters]

%s: command name

%s: option

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Re-execute after correcting options.

### 3.4.83 MCR00084

---

**installation environment is destroyed**

[Description]

FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres may not be installed correctly or may be destroyed.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Re-install FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres.

### 3.4.84 MCR00085

---

**no authority to execute this command**

[Description]

Only the user who possesses an administrative authority can run this command.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Invoke the administrator's prompt, and re-execute this command.

### 3.4.85 MCR00086

---

---

#### failed to start service "{0}" detail of cause:"{1}"

##### [Description]

Failed to start service.

##### [Parameters]

{0}: Service name

{1}: detail of cause

##### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

##### [Action]

Check the error detail and eliminate causes.

---

### 3.4.86 MCR00087

---

#### service "{0}" is not registered

##### [Description]

Service is not registered.

##### [Parameters]

{0}: Service name

##### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

##### [Action]

Register service, and re-execute.

---

### 3.4.87 MCR00088

---

#### service "%s" for Mirroring Controller Arbitration process was registered

##### [Description]

Service for Mirroring Controller Arbitration process was registered with Windows service.

##### [Parameters]

%s: Service name

---

### 3.4.88 MCR00089

---

#### failed to register service "%s" detail of cause:"%s"

##### [Description]

An error occurred during registration of service.

##### [Parameters]

%s: Service name

%s: detail of cause

##### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check the error detail and eliminate causes.

### 3.4.89 MCR00090

---

**service name "%s" is already in use**

[Description]

Service name is already in use.

[Parameters]

%s: Service name

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check the service name, and re-execute.

### 3.4.90 MCR00091

---

**service "%s" for Mirroring Controller Arbitration process was unregistered**

[Description]

Service for Mirroring Controller Arbitration process was unregistered from Windows service.

[Parameters]

%s: Service name

### 3.4.91 MCR00092

---

**failed to unregister service "%s" detail of cause: "%s"**

[Description]

An error occurred during deregistration of service.

[Parameters]

%s: Service name

%s: detail of cause

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check the error detail and eliminate causes.

### 3.4.92 MCR00093

---

**an error occurred in Mirroring Controller Arbitration process: {0}**

[Description]

An error occurred in Mirroring Controller Arbitration process.

#### [Parameters]

{0}: detail of cause

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Check the error detail and eliminate causes.

If you cannot clear the problem, contact Fujitsu technical support.

After removing the cause of errors, execute mc\_arb command with the -e option to stop Mirroring Controller Arbitration process forcibly.

After that, execute the mc\_arb command to start Mirroring Controller Arbitration process.

### 3.4.93 MCR00094

---

**value of heartbeat\_interval in arbitration definition file "{1}" is too large compared with value of parameters for abnormality monitoring of operating system or server in server definition file of database server "{0}"**

#### [Description]

Because the value of heartbeat\_interval parameter in the arbitration definition file is too large compared with the value of parameters for abnormality monitoring of the operating system or server in the server definition file of the database server, the arbitration for the target database server might be delayed.

#### [Parameters]

{0}: server ID

{1}: file name

#### [System Processing]

Continues processing.

#### [Action]

Correct the parameters for abnormality monitoring of the operating system or server according to the message and "Tuning for Optimization of Degradation Using Abnormality Monitoring With the Arbitration Server" of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

After that, execute the mc\_arb command to restart Mirroring Controller Arbitration process.

### 3.4.94 MCR00095

---

**start to monitor of database server "{0}"**

#### [Description]

Start to monitor of the database server.

#### [Parameters]

{0}: server ID

### 3.4.95 MCR00096

---

**failed to start monitoring of database server "{0}"**

#### [Description]

Failed to start monitoring of the database server.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Find the message output before this message from display, system log or event log, and then work around according to the Action of the message.

### 3.4.96 MCR00097

---

#### stop Mirroring Controller Arbitration process forcibly because an error has occurred in Mirroring Controller Arbitration process: {0}

[Description]

Stop Mirroring Controller Arbitration process forcibly because an error has occurred in Mirroring Controller Arbitration process

[Parameters]

{0}: detail of cause

[System Processing]

Mirroring Controller Arbitration process will be stopped forcibly.

[Action]

Check the error detail and eliminate causes.

If you cannot clear the problem, contact Fujitsu technical support.

After removing the cause of errors, execute the mc\_arb command to start Mirroring Controller Arbitration process.

### 3.4.97 MCR00098

---

#### stop monitoring of database server "{0}"

[Description]

Stop monitoring of the database server.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

### 3.4.98 MCR00099

---

#### detected an error on database server "{0}"

[Description]

Either of the followings has occurred.

- The database server is downed
- The arbitration network is abnormal

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

[System Processing]

Continues processing.

## 3.5 Message Numbers Beginning with MCR00100

---

### 3.5.1 MCR00100

---

**detected recovery of database server "{0}"**

[Description]

detected recovery of the database server.

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

### 3.5.2 MCR00101

---

**arbitration for database server "{0}" has been delayed**

[Description]

Either of the followings has occurred.

- The parameters for abnormality monitoring of the operating system or server are not optimally tuned
- The arbitration server is not responding

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

[System Processing]

Continues processing.

[Action]

Take either of the following actions.

- When parameters for abnormality monitoring of the operating system or server are not optimally tuned

Correct the value of parameters for abnormality monitoring of the operating system or server according to the message and "Tuning for Optimization of Degradation Using Abnormality Monitoring With the Arbitration Server" of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

After that, execute the mc\_ctl command to stop Mirroring Controller, and execute the mc\_arb command to stop the Mirroring Controller Arbitration process.

After that, execute the mc\_arb command to start the Mirroring Controller Arbitration process, and execute the mc\_ctl command to start Mirroring Controller.

- When the arbitration server is not responding

Identify the cause, and then remove it.

### 3.5.3 MCR00102

---

**connection was requested from Scaleout Controller**

[Description]

connection was requested from Scaleout Controller.

[System Processing]

Try connection to Scaleout Controller.

### 3.5.4 MCR00103

---

**succeeded in connection with Scaleout Controller process**

---

[Description]

succeeded in connection with Scaleout Controller process.

### 3.5.5 MCR00104

---

**node role of Mirroring Controller Arbitration process has been set to "{0}"**

---

[Description]

node role of Mirroring Controller Arbitration process has been set.

[Parameters]

{0}: node role

### 3.5.6 MCR00105

---

**The parameter sc\_port is not set on Mirroring Controller Arbitration process, but the parameter node\_role is set on Mirroring Controller process**

---

[Description]

The parameter sc\_port is not set on Mirroring Controller Arbitration process, but the parameter node\_role is set on Mirroring Controller process.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Set sc\_port parameter in arbitration.conf of Mirroring Controller arbitration process, if operating in Scaleout Controller configuration. If not, delete node\_role parameter from "server identifier".conf of Mirroring Controller process.

### 3.5.7 MCR00106

---

**The node role is "{0}" on Mirroring Controller Arbitration process, but the parameter node\_role is "{1}" on Mirroring Controller process**

---

[Description]

node\_role parameter set in Mirroring Controller process is different from node\_role parameter set in the arbitration process of the mirroring controller.

[Parameters]

{0}: node role set in Mirroring Controller arbitration process

{1}: node role set in Mirroring Controller process

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Reconfigure node\_role parameter set in "server identifier".conf of Mirroring Controller process to match node\_role set in arbs.conf of the Scaleout Controller process.

### 3.5.8 MCR00107

---

**The parameter sc\_port is set on Mirroring Controller Arbitration process, but the parameter node\_role is not set on Mirroring Controller process**

[Description]

The parameter sc\_port is set on Mirroring Controller Arbitration process, but the parameter node\_role is not set on Mirroring Controller process.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Set node\_role parameter in a "server identifier".conf of Mirroring Controller process, if operating in Scaleout Controller configuration. If not, delete sc\_port parameter from arbitration.conf of Mirroring Controller arbitration process.

### 3.5.9 MCR00108

---

**timeout waiting for communication with Scaleout Controller process**

[Description]

timeout waiting for communication with Scaleout Controller process.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check whether Scaleout Controller process is in a normal state.

### 3.5.10 MCR00109

---

**cannot send node status because Scaleout Controller process is not running**

[Description]

cannot send node status because Scaleout Controller process is not running.

[Action]

Check the status of Scaleout Controller process.

### 3.5.11 MCR00110

---

**The node role is "{0}" on Mirroring Controller Arbitration process, but the node role is "{1}" on Scaleout Controller process**

[Description]

node\_role parameter set in the arbitration process of the mirroring controller is different from node\_role parameter set in Scaleout Controller process.

[Parameters]

{0}: node role set in Mirroring Controller arbitration process



{1}: node role set in Mirroring Controller process

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Reconfigure node\_role parameter set in "server identifier".conf of Mirroring Controller process to match node\_role set in arbs.conf of the Scaleout Controller process.

### 3.5.12 MCR00111

---

#### disconnected from the Scaleout Controller

---

#### [Description]

disconnected from the Scaleout Controller.

### 3.5.13 MCR00112

---

#### {0}: wrong number of coordinator node in definition file "{1}"

---

#### [Description]

Invalid descriptions were found in definition file.

#### [Parameters]

{0}: command name

{1}: file name

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Correct the definition file according to the message and parameter description of "manual".

### 3.5.14 MCR00113

---

#### {0}: no data node in definition file "{1}"

---

#### [Description]

Invalid descriptions were found in definition file.

#### [Parameters]

{0}: command name

{1}: file name

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Correct the definition file according to the message and parameter description of "manual".

### 3.5.15 MCR00114

---

#### Scaleout Controller process is already running

---

[Description]

Scaleout Controller process is already running.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

If needed, stop Scaleout Controller process, and re-execute.

If could not start although Scaleout Controller process not started, refer to the description about workaround for failure of "manual".

### 3.5.16 MCR00115

---

#### cannot execute "{0}" command because Scaleout Controller process is not running

[Description]

Cannot execute Scaleout Controller process command because Scaleout Controller process is not running.

[Parameters]

{0}: command name

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Start Scaleout Controller process, and re-execute.

### 3.5.17 MCR00116

---

#### timeout waiting for communication with Scaleout Controller process

[Description]

timeout waiting for communication with Scaleout Controller process.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check whether a network error was detected.

If an error was not detected, there is a possibility that the load of the system may be the cause, please re-execute after a while.

### 3.5.18 MCR00117

---

#### could not create PID file of Scaleout Controller process detail of cause:"{0}"

[Description]

Could not create PID file of Scaleout Controller process.

[Parameters]

{0}: detail of cause

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

Identify the cause according to the message, and then remove it.

### 3.5.19 MCR00118

---

**could not remove PID file of Scaleout Controller process detail of cause: "%s"**

#### [Description]

Could not remove PID file of Scaleout Controller process.

#### [Parameters]

%s: detail of cause

#### [Action]

Identify the cause according to the message, and then remove it.

### 3.5.20 MCR00119

---

**could not read PID file of Scaleout Controller process detail of cause: "{0}"**

#### [Description]

could not read PID file of Scaleout Controller process.

#### [Parameters]

%s: detail of cause

#### [Action]

Identify the cause according to the message, and then remove it.

### 3.5.21 MCR00120

---

**invalid contents of PID file "{0}" of Scaleout Controller process**

#### [Description]

The contents of PID file of Scaleout Controller process is invalid.

#### [Parameters]

{0}: file name

#### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

#### [Action]

The following causes could be considered.

- The file was stored or replaced by mistake
- The file was corrupted

When starting Scaleout Controller process, move or remove the file shown in the message.

When stopped Scaleout Controller process, find ID of process named "sc\_arbiter" and terminate forcibly by using OS command.

### 3.5.22 MCR00121

---

**unusable character is included in path "%s" specified as a directory for Scaleout Controller process**

[Description]

Unusable character is included in path specified as a directory for Scaleout Controller.

[Parameters]

%s: path name

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Correct the path specified as a directory for Scaleout Controller according to the message and sc\_ctl command descriptions of "Reference".

### 3.5.23 MCR00122

---

**could not access path "%s" specified as a directory for Scaleout Controller process detail of cause: "%s"**

[Description]

Could not access path specified as a directory for Scaleout Controller process.

[Parameters]

%s: path name

%s: detail of cause

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Identify the cause according to the message, and then remove it.

### 3.5.24 MCR00123

---

**The node role is "{0}" on Scaleout Controller process, but the node role is "{1}" on Mirroring Controller Arbitration process**

[Description]

The node role of each node set in the Scaleout Controller process differs from the node type set in the each Mirroring Controller arbitration process.

[Parameters]

{0}: node role set in arbs.conf

{1}: node\_role set in "server identifier".conf

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Re-execute after correcting the setting value.

### 3.5.25 MCR00124

---

#### an error occurred in Scaleout Controller process: {0}

##### [Description]

an error occurred in Scaleout Controller process.

##### [Parameters]

{0}: detail of cause

##### [System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

##### [Action]

Check the error detail and eliminate causes.

If you cannot clear the problem, contact Fujitsu technical support.

After removing the cause of errors, execute sc\_ctl command to stop Scaleout Controller process.

If re-execution fails, terminate forcibly sc\_arbiter process with OS command.

After that, execute the sc\_ctl command to start Scaleout Controller process.

### 3.5.26 MCR00125

---

#### starting Scaleout Controller process

##### [Description]

starting Scaleout Controller process.

### 3.5.27 MCR00126

---

#### starting Mirroring Controller Arbitration Process: "{0}"

##### [Description]

starting Mirroring Controller Arbitration Process.

##### [Parameters]

{0}: directory of relevant Mirroring Controller arbitration process

### 3.5.28 MCR00127

---

#### requesting arbitration server "{0}" to connect

##### [Description]

requesting arbitration server to connect.

##### [Parameters]

{0}: directory of relevant Mirroring Controller arbitration process

##### [System Processing]

Requesting arbitration server to connect.

### 3.5.29 MCR00128

---

#### trying to connect to arbitration server "{0}"

[Description]

trying to connect to arbitration server.

[Parameters]

{0}: directory of relevant Mirroring Controller arbitration process

[System Processing]

Trying to connect to arbitration server until success.

### 3.5.30 MCR00129

---

#### succeeded in connection with arbitration server "{0}"

[Description]

succeeded in connection with arbitration server.

[Parameters]

{0}: directory of relevant Mirroring Controller arbitration process

### 3.5.31 MCR00130

---

#### failed to connect to arbitration server "{0}" event:"{1}"

[Description]

Either of the followings has occurred.

- Mirroring Controller Arbitration process is not running or in the stop processing
- Mirroring Controller Arbitration process or arbitration server detects an error

[Parameters]

{0}: server ID

{1}: "timeout" or "communication error"

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Check the following and identify the cause, and eliminate cause.

- Mirroring Controller Arbitration process starting status
- the message in arbitration server

### 3.5.32 MCR00131

---

#### timeout waiting for communication with Mirroring Controller Arbitration process server:"{0}"

[Description]

Timeout waiting for communication between Scaleout Controller process and Mirroring Controller Arbitration process.

[Parameters]

{0}: directory of relevant Mirroring Controller arbitration process

[System Processing]

Try to connect to arbitration server.

[Action]

Check whether Mirroring Controller arbitration process is in a normal state.

### 3.5.33 MCR00132

---

**communication error with the arbitration server "{0}" occurred**

[Description]

Communication error with the arbitration server occurred.

[Parameters]

{0}: directory of relevant Mirroring Controller arbitration process

[System Processing]

Trying to connect.

[Action]

Check whether Mirroring Controller Arbitration process is running.

Identify the cause from messages on system log or event log in arbitration server, or Scaleout Controller server, and work around.

### 3.5.34 MCR00133

---

**failed to start Scaleout Controller because of could not connect to arbitration server "{0}"**

[Description]

failed to start Scaleout Controller because of could not connect to arbitration server.

[Parameters]

{0}: directory of relevant Mirroring Controller arbitration process

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Work around according to the Action of the message output before this message.

### 3.5.35 MCR00134

---

**values of parameters for abnormality monitoring of operating system or server in server definition file "{1}" are too small for value of heartbeat\_interval in arbitration definition file of arbitration server "{0}"**

[Description]

Because the values of parameters for abnormality monitoring of the operating system or server in the server definition file are too small compared with the value of heartbeat\_interval in the arbitration definition file of the arbitration server, the arbitration for the target database server might be delayed.

[System Processing]

{0}: server ID

{1}: file name

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Correct the value of parameters for abnormality monitoring of the operating system or server according to the message and "Tuning for Optimization of Degradation Using Abnormality Monitoring With the Arbitration Server" of "Cluster Operation Guide (Database Multiplexing)".

After that, execute the `sc_ctl` command to restart Scaleout Controller.

### 3.5.36 MCR00135

---

#### Scaleout Controller process started

[Description]

Scaleout Controller process started.

### 3.5.37 MCR00136

---

#### failed to start Scaleout Controller process

[Description]

failed to start Scaleout Controller process.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Work around according to the Action of the message output before this message.

### 3.5.38 MCR00137

---

#### could not execute "mc\_arb status -M {0}"

[Description]

could not execute status mode of `mc_arb` command.

[Parameters]

{0}: directory of relevant Mirroring Controller arbitration process

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Work around according to the Action of the message output before this message.

### 3.5.39 MCR00138

---

#### failed to report Scaleout Controller process status

[Description]

failed to report Scaleout Controller process status.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.



[Action]

Work around according to the Action of the message output before this message.

### 3.5.40 MCR00139

---

#### stopping Scaleout Controller process

[Description]

stopping Scaleout Controller process.

### 3.5.41 MCR00140

---

#### stopping Mirroring Controller Arbitration Process: {0}

[Description]

stopping Mirroring Controller Arbitration Process.

### 3.5.42 MCR00141

---

#### could not stop Mirroring Controller Arbitration process "{0}"

[Description]

could not stop Mirroring Controller Arbitration process.

[Parameters]

{0}: directory of relevant Mirroring Controller arbitration process

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Work around according to the Action of the message output before this message.

### 3.5.43 MCR00142

---

#### Scaleout Controller process stopped

[Description]

Scaleout Controller process stopped.

### 3.5.44 MCR00143

---

#### could not stop Scaleout Controller process because arbitration server connects

[Description]

could not stop Scaleout Controller process because arbitration server connects.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Arbitration server communicating with the Scaleout Controller process is found, please re-execute after a while.

### 3.5.45 MCR00144

---

#### failed to stop Scaleout Controller process

---

[Description]

failed to stop Scaleout Controller process.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Identify the cause from system log on the target server, and work around.

### 3.5.46 MCR00145

---

#### cannot execute "{0}" command because Mirroring Controller Arbitration process is not running

---

[Description]

Cannot execute Mirroring Controller Arbitration process command because Mirroring Controller Arbitration process is not running.

[Parameters]

{0}: command name

[Action]

Start Mirroring Controller Arbitration process, and re-execute.

### 3.5.47 MCR00146

---

#### restarting Scaleout Controller process

---

[Description]

restarting Scaleout Controller process.

### 3.5.48 MCR00147

---

#### "{0}" has changed

---

[Description]

Parameter in sc.conf was changed.

[Parameters]

{0}: changed parameter

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Reset relevant parameter to its pre-modified values and execute the process again.

### 3.5.49 MCR00148

---

#### failed to restart Scaleout Controller

---

[Description]

failed to restart Scaleout Controller.

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

### 3.5.50 MCR00149

---

#### add node "{0}" as a managed node by Scaleout Controller Process

[Description]

add node as a managed node by Scaleout Controller Process

[Parameters]

{0}: node name

### 3.5.51 MCR00150

---

#### both datanode "{0}" and coordinator node will perform failover

[Description]

both datanode and coordinator node will perform failover.

[Parameters]

{0}: node name

### 3.5.52 MCR00151

---

#### cannot continue operation on this center

[Description]

cannot continue operation on this center

[Action]

Switch center.

### 3.5.53 MCR00152

---

#### cannot find primary server on coordinator node

[Description]

cannot find primary server on coordinator node.

### 3.5.54 MCR00153

---

#### cannot solve network disconnection between node:"{0}" and node:"{1}"

[Description]

The arbitration process by Scaleout Controller process could not solve the inter-node network disconnection condition.

[Parameters]

{0}: nodename

{1}: nodename

### 3.5.55 MCR00154

---

**cannot solve network trouble between nodes, need to switch center**

[Description]

cannot solve network trouble between nodes, need to switch center.

[Action]

Switch center.

### 3.5.56 MCR00155

---

**coordinator node will perform failover**

[Description]

coordinator node will perform failover.

### 3.5.57 MCR00156

---

**datanode "{0}" is being detached**

[Description]

the target datanode is being detached

[Parameters]

{0}: nodename

### 3.5.58 MCR00157

---

**datanode "{0}" will perform failover**

[Description]

the target datanode will perform failover

[Parameters]

{0}: nodename

### 3.5.59 MCR00158

---

**failed to perform failover on "{0}"**

[Description]

failed to perform failover on the target node.

[Parameters]

{0}: nodename

### 3.5.60 MCR00159

---

**failover status was not true even the node did failover**

[Description]

failover status was not true even the node did failover.

### 3.5.61 MCR00160

---

#### got connection status of unrecognized coordinator server

##### [Description]

got connection status of unrecognized coordinator server.

### 3.5.62 MCR00161

---

#### Invalid server type

##### [Description]

Invalid server type.

### 3.5.63 MCR00162

---

#### Invalid server

##### [Description]

Invalid server.

### 3.5.64 MCR00163

---

#### no server with port "{0}" found

##### [Description]

no server with the specified port found.

##### [Parameters]

{0}: port number

### 3.5.65 MCR00164

---

#### succeeded in performing failover node "{0}"

##### [Description]

succeeded in performing failover node.

##### [Parameters]

{0}: nodename

### 3.5.66 MCR00165

---

#### unknown coordinator server connected

##### [Description]

unknown coordinator server connected.

### 3.5.67 MCR00166

---

#### could not execute because Mirroring Controller Arbitration process of the node "{0}" is not running

##### [Description]

could not execute because Mirroring Controller Arbitration process of the target node is not running.

[Parameters]

{0}: directory of relevant Mirroring Controller arbitration process

[System Processing]

Processing will be aborted.

[Action]

Re-execute after starting the specified Mirroring Controller arbitration process.

### 3.5.68 MCR00167

---

connection was requested from arbiter server "{0}"

[Description]

connection was requested from arbiter server.

[Parameters]

{0}: directory of relevant Mirroring Controller arbitration process

### 3.5.69 MCR00168

---

disconnected from arbitration server "{0}"

[Description]

disconnected from arbitration server.

[Parameters]

{0}: directory of relevant Mirroring Controller arbitration process

# Index

---

## [E]

Error type..... [2](#)

## [F]

Format of messages output to the server message log..... [1](#)

Format of messages returned to an application..... [1](#)

## [M]

Message Format..... [1](#)

Message text..... [2](#)

Mirroring Controller Message Format..... [2](#)

## [N]

Notes on monitoring messages output to the server message log [1](#)

Notes on monitoring messages returned to an application..... [1](#)

## [O]

Overview of Messages..... [1](#)

A horizontal band featuring a red abstract graphic with flowing, wavy lines and bright light spots, creating a sense of motion and energy.

# FJQSS (Information Collection Tool) User's Guide

Solaris/Linux

J2UL-1958-01ENZ0(00)  
July 2014



# Preface

---

This manual describes information to use the outline and the tool of FJQSS (Information Collection Tool).

## Purpose of this Manual

The purpose of this manual is to be able to gather the collected information by using FJQSS (Information Collection Tool) when trouble occurs.

## Reader of this Manual

This manual is targeted at the user who gathers the collected information when the trouble occurs.

You can obtain information on the method of gathering the function and the collected information of FJQSS (Information Collection Tool) obtain by referring to this manual.

## Structure of this Manual

The structure of this manual is as follows:

Chapter 1 outline

Chapter 2 FJQSS (Information Collection Tool)

Appendix A Messages and error codes

## Notations

The following notations are used in this manual;

### Symbols used in this manual

The following symbols are used in this manual.

Example:[Enter]key

### Symbols used in command

This subsection describes the symbols used in the examples of commands.

Example:

```
fjqss_collect [-s]
```

### Meaning of Symbols

Symbol	Meaning
[]	The item enclosed with this sign is shown and omissible is shown.

## Abbreviations

The following abbreviations are used in this manual:

### Operating Systems

Full Name	Abbreviations
Oracle Solaris 9	Solaris 9
Oracle Solaris 10	Solaris 10
Oracle Solaris 11	Solaris 11
Oracle Solaris	Solaris
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 (for x86)	RHEL6(x86)
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 (for Intel64)	RHEL6(Intel64)
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 (for x86)	RHEL5(x86)
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 (for Intel64)	RHEL5(Intel64)

## Export Management Regulations

Our documentation may include special technology based on Foreign Exchange and Foreign Trade Control Law.

In case you export the relevant documentation or to provide any overseas resident with the relevant documentation, permission based on the above law is necessary.

## Trademarks and Screenshots

Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation, its subsidiaries and its affiliated companies in the United States and other countries.

The names of companies and products, etc. in the sentences inside can be trademarks or registered trademarks of each company.

## Date of Publication

Date of Publication and Version	Manual Code
November 2012 Version1	J2S2-1625-01ENZ2(00)
April 2013 Version1.1.	J2S2-1625-02ENZ2(00)
October 2013 Version 1.2	J2S2-1625-03ENZ2(00)
July 2014 Version 1.3	J2UL-1958-01EN2Z(00)

## Copyright Notice

Copyright 2014 FUJITSU LIMITED

# Contents

---

Chapter 1 Outline.....	1
1.1 FJQSS (Information Collection Tool).....	1
Chapter 2 Collecting the information.....	2
2.1 Collection method.....	2
2.1.1 Collecting with showing menu.....	2
2.1.2 Collecting without showing menu.....	4
2.1.3 Getting the product identification name.....	5
2.2 Checking the collected information.....	6
2.3 Changing a path of the output directory.....	6
Appendix A Messages and error codes.....	9
A.1 Error Messages.....	9
A.2 Error Codes.....	10

# Chapter 1 Outline

This chapter explains the outline of FJQSS (Information Collection Tool).

## 1.1 FJQSS (Information Collection Tool)

This appendix explains FJQSS (Information Collection Tool) that archives the information for investigation (middleware logs and operation system logs) with an easy operation. Executing FJQSS right after a problem occurs makes a rapid investigating of the causes.

## Chapter 2 Collecting the information

This chapter explains the method of gathering the survey material, the confirm method of the survey material, and notes.

### 2.1 Collection method

This section explains the operating procedure of FJQSS (Information Collection Tool).

Collecting information can do by using the command. You can operate the Collection by the method that shows the product selection menu, or the method that does not show such the menu.

- [2.1.1 Collecting with showing menu](#)
- [2.1.2 Collecting without showing menu](#)

#### 2.1.1 Collecting with showing menu

This subsection explains the operating procedure of FJQSS (Information Collection Tool) with showing the product selection menu.

##### Authority to execute

User Authority of the root user is necessary.

##### Prior confirmation

Set the output directory of the collected information if necessary. The output directory of default is the /var/tmp directory on Solaris, or the /tmp directory on Linux. See [\[2.3 Changing a path of the output directory\]](#) for details of changing the output directory.

##### Synopsis

If you execute the command specifying the output directory by the parameter:

```
fjqss_collect output_directory
```

If you execute the command specifying the output directory by the environment variable or the environmental configuration file:

```
fjqss_collect
```

##### Path to this command

```
/opt/FJSVqstl
```

##### Notes in executing the command

- Do not put fjqss\_collect or its copy into any other directory. They work only if they are in the path shown above in [Path to this command].
- Execute this command immediately after the problem occurs.
- Multiple execution of this command is not available. If you do that, the following error message appears:

```
FJQSS is already started. Please restart FJQSS after the executing one ends.
```

##### Operating procedure

This part explains the operating procedure of FJQSS (Information Collection Tool).

1. Log on to the server, open the console window and execute the information collection command in the console window.

Hereafter, it explains by the example when outputting the information to the default output directory:

```
> cd /opt/FJSVqstl
> ./fjqss_collect
```

2. The product selection menu appears. It shows the list of the products whose information can be collected.
3. Put the number of the product of which you want to collect the information:

```
-----
FJQSS Product Selection
-----

  1.MW Product B (Server Side)
  2.MW Product B (Client Side)

Please input a number of the product
of which you want to collect the information.>>1
```

4. Check the indicated name(s) of the middleware (s) whose investigation information are to be collected, then press the [Y] key to start.

Collection starts and the following indicator appear in the command prompt:

```
The following product information is collected.
      MW Product B (Server Side)

Input 'Y-key' to collect data, or 'N-key' to stop.(default=N):y
preparing:          ##### 100% [00:01]
```

The time and the disk space required for the collection depend on the condition of the target system.

5. Check the contents of the output directory.

After the FJQSS (Information Collection Tool) has completed the collection, the following prompt appears. Verify that the information have been collected in the directory whose name is indicated in the prompt:

```
The following product information is collected.
      MW Product B (Server Side)

Input 'Y-key' to collect data, or 'N-key' to stop.(default=N):y
preparing:          ##### 100% [00:01]
collecting:         ##### 100% [00:01]
archiving:          ##### 100% [00:01]
compress:           ##### 100% [00:15]
Completed.
Gathered investigation informations archived to
      /tmp/ezcollect20121018172939/result20121018172939.tar.gz(206KB)
```

This is an example on Linux.

The gathered investigation informations are archived to /var/tmp/... directory on Solaris, or /tmp/... directory in Linux.

The following files are created in the output directory (ezcollectYYYYMMDDHHMMSS: YYYYMMDDHHMMSS indicates the time (year, month, day, hours, minutes and seconds) that the collection started). See [\[2.2 Checking the collected information\]](#) for the output directory:

- resultYYYYMMDDHHMMSS.tar.gz

The collected information.

- result.txt

The result log is a text file to indicate if the collection of information has succeeded.

This file indicates the names and the results of collection (OK/NG) of each material.

- ez.log

The activity log of the FJQSS (Information Collection Tool).

## Aborting FJQSS (Information Collection Tool)

This subsection explains how to abort running FJQSS (Information Collection Tool).

Although it is recommended that you wait until the collection ends, you can press [CTRL] + [C] key combination to abort the execution if it is necessary. The following prompt appears if [CTRL] + [C] is pressed and the execution is aborted.

```
The following product information is collected.
      MW Product B (Server Side)

Input 'Y-key' to collect data, or 'N-key' to stop.(default=N):y
preparing:          ##### 40% [00:01]
Stopped FJQSS process.
```

The output directory that has been made in the collecting might remain when the executing is aborted. There is no influence in the operation of FJQSS because the output directory will be newly made when FJQSS is executed again.

Moreover, there is no influence in the operation of FJQSS even if the remaining output directory was deleted.



Do not close the command prompt before the collection ends. if you do so, the temporary directories might remain in the work directory. Please delete the following directories if they remain in the work directory.

- ezcollectYYYYMMDDHHMMSS
- ezworkYYYYMMDDHHMMSS

See [2.3 Changing a path of the output directory](#)] for details of the work directory.

## 2.1.2 Collecting without showing menu

This subsection explains the operating procedure of FJQSS (Information Collection Tool) without showing the product selection menu.

You can use the procedure in the shell script.

### Authority to execute

User Authority of the root user is necessary.

### Prior confirmation

Verify the product identification name of the product of which you collect the information by the product information showing command. See [2.1.3 Getting the product identification name](#)] for details.

Set the output directory of the collected information if necessary. The output directory of default is the /var/tmp directory on Solaris, or the /tmp directory on Linux. See [2.3 Changing a path of the output directory](#)] for details of changing the output directory.

### Synopsis

The specification of product identification name by "-pr <product identification name>" is necessary if you specify the silent mode option by "-s".

If you execute the command specifying the output directory by the parameter:

```
fjqss_collect -pr <product identification name> [-s] output_directory
```

If you execute the command specifying the output directory by the environment variable or the environmental configuration file:

```
fjqss_collect -pr <product identification name> [-s]
```

### Description

The fjqss\_collect command collects the information required for the investigation.

### Option

-pr

This option specifies the product identification name of the product of which you collect the information.

-s

The command runs without asking to the operator. (It runs in silent mode.)

### Path to this command

```
/opt/FJSVqst1
```

### Notes in executing the command

- Do not put fjqss\_collect or its copy into any other directory. They work only if they are in the path shown above in [Path to this command].
- Execute this command immediately after the problem occurs.
- Multiple execution of this command is not available. If you do that, the following error message appears:

```
FJQSS is already started. Please restart FJQSS after the executing one ends.
```

## 2.1.3 Getting the product identification name

This subsection explains how to get the product identification name which you specify when collecting the information without showing Product Selection Menu.

The product identification name can be got by executing the product information showing command.

### Authority to execute

User Authority of the root user is necessary.

### Synopsis

```
fjqss_mwpinfolist
```

### Description

This command shows the list of the information of products of which the information collection is available.

Each product's information is shown in one line.

The product's Information is shown in order of "No." (number), "KEY" (product identification name), "DispName" (product name) and "Path" (destination directory of the information)

Example of the result of executing the product information showing command:

```
MW Product List
No. KEY          DispName          Path
-----
1.  PRODUCTA    MW PRODUCT A      /opt/FJSVPRDA/server/fjqss_tool1
2.  PRODUCTB    MW PRODUCT B      /opt/FJSVPRDB/server/fjqss_tool1
3.  PRODUCTC    MW PRODUCT C      /opt/FJSVPRDC/server/fjqss_tool1
```

If you collect the information of the product No.1, specify the product identification name "PRODUCTA" as the parameter to collect the information of the "MW PRODUCT A" by the procedure of [2.1.2 Collecting without showing menu](#)].

### Path to this command

```
/opt/FJSVqst1
```



## 2.2 Checking the collected information

---

The collected information are created in the output directory (ezcollectYYYYMMDDHHMMSS) as file "resultYYYYMMDDHHMMSS.tar.gz".

The output directory is created at the output specified for an environmental configuration file destination at the output destination. If no destination is specified, then the output directory is created at the /var/tmp directory on Solaris, or the /tmp directory on Linux.

You can specify a path of the output directory if you execute the information collecting command in the console window. See [2.3 Changing a path of the output directory].for details of the environmental configuration file ant the output destination.

Verify that the following file and directory exist:

- Result log (result.txt)

The result log is a text file to indicate if the collection of information has succeeded.

This file indicates the names and the results of collection (OK/NG) of each material.

- Collected information (resultYYYYMMDDHHMMSS.tar.gz)



### Note

Collected information (resultYYYYMMDDHHMMSS.tar.gz) is compressed and archived by gzip and tar. Collected information contains the following files.

- resultdir

This directory contains the collected files.

- result.txt

The result log is a text file to indicate if the collection of information has succeeded.

This file indicates the names and the results of collection (OK/NG) of each material.

- ez.log

The activity log of the FJQSS (Information Collection Tool).

- convert.txt

If the file path name of information collecting is too long and information collecting can't get in former file name, file path name is converted and gathered. Former file path name and Converted file path name are output to convert.txt.convert.txt is output in the form of the following.

Output form

<Former file path name>,<Converted file path name>

convert.txt is output when there was only information collecting for which the conversion of the file path name was necessary.

## 2.3 Changing a path of the output directory

---

You can change a path of the output directory by two methods below.

- Specifying a path of the output directory in the option of the information collecting command.
- Specifying a path of the output directory by setting the environment variable.
- Specifying a path of the output directory by updating the environmental configuration file.

The method of specifying in the option of the command explains in 2.1.1 Collecting with showing menu and 2.1.2 Collecting without showing menu]. Hereafter, the method of specifying by the environment variable and by the environmental configuration file will be explained.

-

## Specifying a path of the output directory by setting the environment variable

You can specify the directory where the output directory will be created by setting the environment variable EZ\_OUTPUTDIR before executing this command.

### Description format:

```
EZ_OUTPUTDIR="the directory path where the output directory will be created"
export EZ_OUTPUTDIR
```

### Example:

If “/etc/work” is specified to %EZ\_OUTPUTDIR%:

```
EZ_OUTPUTDIR=/etc/work
export EZ_OUTPUTDIR
```

Then the directory below will be created as the output directory:

```
/etc/work/ezcollectYYYYMMDDHHMMSS
```

## Specifying a path of the output directory by updating the environmental configuration file

Environmental configuration file (FJQSSconf.txt) is a file that defines the operating environment of FJQSS.

It exists in following directory.

```
<Directory where the product is installed>/fjqss_tooln (n=1,2,...,9)
```

The items that can be specified for environmental configuration file are shown below.

Item	Outline	Omission
OutputDir	The directory path where the output directory will be created (*3).	Possible (*2)
WorkDir	The directory path where the work directory (*1) will be created by FJQSS execution (*3).	Possible(*2)

(\*1)The work directory is a directory that temporarily stores information necessary for the execution of FJQSS. When FJQSS ends, stored information is automatically deleted.

(\*2) If the specification is wrong or omitted, the /var/tmp directory (on Solaris), or the /tmp directory (on Linux) is used.

(\*3) You can specify the directory by the relative path from an absolute path or environmental configuration file.

The format of environmental configuration file is shown below.

### Description format:

```
OutputDir="the directory path where the output directory will be created"
WorkDir=" work directory"
```

### Example:

If “/etc/work” is specified to OutputDir, “/etc/tmp” is specified to WorkDir.

```
OutputDir=/etc/work
WorkDir=/etc/tmp
```

Then the directory below will be created as the output directory:

```
/etc/work/ezcollectYYYYMMDDHHMMSS
```

And the directory below will be created as the work directory:

```
/etc/tmp/ezworkYYYYMMDDHHMMSS
```



## Note

If the plural specifications of the output directory is done, then the specification becomes effective in the following order by priority:

1. Specification in the option of the information collecting command.
2. Specification by setting the environment variable.
3. Specification by updating the environmental configuration file.

# Appendix A Messages and error codes

## A.1 Error Messages

The message which FJQSS outputs can have an error code. See [\[A.2 Error Codes\]](#). for detail of error codes.

Look for	What to do
FJQSS is already started. Please restart FJQSS after the executing one ends.	Check if FJQSS is running. Multiple execution of it is not available.
The file used with FJQSS is not found. Please contact a Fujitsu technological member. (product= PRODUCT_IDENTIFICATION_NAME, errcode= ERROR_CODE)	Please contact the Fujitsu engineer, and pass on the PRODUCT_IDENTIFICATION_NAME, PATH_NAME and ERROR_CODE in the message. About detail meanings of the ERROR_CODE, see <a href="#">[A.2 Error Codes]</a> .
Failed in the copy of materials used with FJQSS to the work directory. Please contact a Fujitsu technological member. (PATH= PATH_NAME, errcode= ERROR_CODE)	
Failed in the access of the file used with FJQSS. Please contact a Fujitsu technological member. (errcode= ERROR_CODE)	
The file used with FJQSS is not found or broken. Please contact a Fujitsu technological member. (PATH= PATH_NAME)	
Failed in the access of the directory used with FJQSS. Please contact a Fujitsu technological member. (PATH= PATH_NAME)	
Failed in the current directory change to the work directory. Please contact a Fujitsu technological member. (PATH= PATH_NAME)	
Failed to execute FJQSS. Please contact Fujitsu technical staff.	
There is a wrong option in the command line. Please restart FJQSS with the correct option.	Execute FJQSS again after removing the cause according to the left messages. About Environmental configuration file, see <a href="#">[2.3 Changing a path of the output directory]</a> .
Not super-user. Please restart FJQSS by super-user	
A memory is insufficient. Please stop unnecessary applications and restart FJQSS.	
The product specified by the -pr option is not found. Please restart FJQSS with the correct option. (product= PRODUCT_IDENTIFICATION_NAME)	
Japanese characters are included in the directory name at the 'OutputDir' of environmental file. Japanese characters cannot be used. Please correct environmental file and restart FJQSS. (environmental file=PATH_NAME)	

Look for	What to do
Japanese characters are included in the directory name at the 'WorkDir' of environmental file. Japanese characters cannot be used. Please correct environmental file and restart FJQSS. (environmental file=PATH_NAME)	
Failed in making the output directory. Please confirm the following. -There must be an authority to make the folder. -Passing in xx bytes or less must be specified. -The length of each directory name must be 255 bytes or less.	
Failed in making the work directory. Please confirm the following. -There must be an authority to make the folder. -Passing in xx bytes or less must be specified. -The length of each directory name must be 255 bytes or less.	
Output directory is too long at the 'OutputDir' of environmental file.Please adjust the output directory to xx bytes or less and restart FJQSS (environmental file= PATH_NAME)	
Work directory is too long at the 'WorkDir' of environmental file. Please adjust the output directory to xx bytes or less and restart FJQSS (environmental file= PATH_NAME)	
The output directory is too long specified in the option. Please adjust the output directory to %s bytes or less and restart FJQSS.	
Japanese characters are included in the output directory specified in the option. Japanese characters cannot be used. Please correct the output directory and restart FJQSS.	
The output directory is too long specified with the environment variable:EZ_OUTPUTDIR. Please adjust environment variable:EZ_OUTPUTDIR to xx byte or less.	
Failed to create log.(PATH=PATH_NAME) Take action indicated the following items: - Create the output folder if it doesn't exist. - Set the role to the output folder.	
Products are not installed.Please make sure that the products that are installed.	
The is no installed product of which FJQSS can collect the information. FJQSS ends.	
Stopped FJQSS process.	
	No user action is necessary.

## A.2 Error Codes

Error Code	Cause
0	No error.

Error Code	Cause
1	Command operand error
2	Insufficient memory
3	Failed to execute without administrator permissions
5	Though "-s" option exists, "-pr" option does not exist
6	FJQSS common component has been already done
10	Middleware products' list file does not exist
11	Middleware product specified with -pr option does not exist
13	The built-in directory of the target middleware product of collecting information does not exist
15	Japanese characters are included in the directory name at the output directory of environmental file
16	Japanese characters are included in the directory name at the work directory of environmental file
17	Too long path name is specified in the directory name at the output directory of environmental file
18	Too long path name is specified in the directory name at the work directory of environmental file
19	Failed to create the output directory
20	Failed to create the work directory
21	Failed to access the directory
22	Failed to copy the common materials and built-in materials of the product directory to the work directory
23	Failed to show the information of the product to collect its information materials
24	Failed to change the current directory to the work directory
25	Too long path name is specified to the parameter that specifies the output directory
26	Japanese characters are included in the parameter that specifies the output directory
27	Products of which collecting information is available are not installed
28	Failed to execute FJQSS

# **PostgreSQL 16.2 Documentation**

**The PostgreSQL Global Development Group**

---

# PostgreSQL 16.2 Documentation

The PostgreSQL Global Development Group

Copyright © 1996–2024 The PostgreSQL Global Development Group

## Legal Notice

PostgreSQL is Copyright © 1996–2024 by the PostgreSQL Global Development Group.

Postgres95 is Copyright © 1994–5 by the Regents of the University of California.

Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software and its documentation for any purpose, without fee, and without a written agreement is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice and this paragraph and the following two paragraphs appear in all copies.

IN NO EVENT SHALL THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA BE LIABLE TO ANY PARTY FOR DIRECT, INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, INCLUDING LOST PROFITS, ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE AND ITS DOCUMENTATION, EVEN IF THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE SOFTWARE PROVIDED HEREUNDER IS ON AN “AS-IS” BASIS, AND THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA HAS NO OBLIGATIONS TO PROVIDE MAINTENANCE, SUPPORT, UPDATES, ENHANCEMENTS, OR MODIFICATIONS.

---



---

# Table of Contents

Preface .....	xxxii
1. What Is PostgreSQL? .....	xxxii
2. A Brief History of PostgreSQL .....	xxxii
2.1. The Berkeley POSTGRES Project .....	xxxiii
2.2. Postgres95 .....	xxxiii
2.3. PostgreSQL .....	xxxiv
3. Conventions .....	xxxiv
4. Further Information .....	xxxiv
5. Bug Reporting Guidelines .....	xxxv
5.1. Identifying Bugs .....	xxxv
5.2. What to Report .....	xxxvi
5.3. Where to Report Bugs .....	xxxvii
I. Tutorial .....	1
1. Getting Started .....	3
1.1. Installation .....	3
1.2. Architectural Fundamentals .....	3
1.3. Creating a Database .....	3
1.4. Accessing a Database .....	5
2. The SQL Language .....	7
2.1. Introduction .....	7
2.2. Concepts .....	7
2.3. Creating a New Table .....	7
2.4. Populating a Table With Rows .....	8
2.5. Querying a Table .....	9
2.6. Joins Between Tables .....	11
2.7. Aggregate Functions .....	13
2.8. Updates .....	15
2.9. Deletions .....	15
3. Advanced Features .....	17
3.1. Introduction .....	17
3.2. Views .....	17
3.3. Foreign Keys .....	17
3.4. Transactions .....	18
3.5. Window Functions .....	20
3.6. Inheritance .....	23
3.7. Conclusion .....	24
II. The SQL Language .....	25
4. SQL Syntax .....	33
4.1. Lexical Structure .....	33
4.2. Value Expressions .....	42
4.3. Calling Functions .....	56
5. Data Definition .....	59
5.1. Table Basics .....	59
5.2. Default Values .....	60
5.3. Generated Columns .....	61
5.4. Constraints .....	62
5.5. System Columns .....	71
5.6. Modifying Tables .....	72
5.7. Privileges .....	75
5.8. Row Security Policies .....	80
5.9. Schemas .....	86
5.10. Inheritance .....	90
5.11. Table Partitioning .....	94
5.12. Foreign Data .....	108
5.13. Other Database Objects .....	108

5.14. Dependency Tracking .....	108
6. Data Manipulation .....	111
6.1. Inserting Data .....	111
6.2. Updating Data .....	112
6.3. Deleting Data .....	113
6.4. Returning Data from Modified Rows .....	113
7. Queries .....	115
7.1. Overview .....	115
7.2. Table Expressions .....	115
7.3. Select Lists .....	131
7.4. Combining Queries (UNION, INTERSECT, EXCEPT) .....	133
7.5. Sorting Rows (ORDER BY) .....	134
7.6. LIMIT and OFFSET .....	135
7.7. VALUES Lists .....	135
7.8. WITH Queries (Common Table Expressions) .....	136
8. Data Types .....	146
8.1. Numeric Types .....	147
8.2. Monetary Types .....	153
8.3. Character Types .....	153
8.4. Binary Data Types .....	156
8.5. Date/Time Types .....	158
8.6. Boolean Type .....	167
8.7. Enumerated Types .....	168
8.8. Geometric Types .....	170
8.9. Network Address Types .....	173
8.10. Bit String Types .....	175
8.11. Text Search Types .....	176
8.12. UUID Type .....	179
8.13. XML Type .....	179
8.14. JSON Types .....	181
8.15. Arrays .....	191
8.16. Composite Types .....	201
8.17. Range Types .....	207
8.18. Domain Types .....	213
8.19. Object Identifier Types .....	214
8.20. pg_lsn Type .....	216
8.21. Pseudo-Types .....	217
9. Functions and Operators .....	219
9.1. Logical Operators .....	219
9.2. Comparison Functions and Operators .....	220
9.3. Mathematical Functions and Operators .....	224
9.4. String Functions and Operators .....	231
9.5. Binary String Functions and Operators .....	241
9.6. Bit String Functions and Operators .....	245
9.7. Pattern Matching .....	247
9.8. Data Type Formatting Functions .....	266
9.9. Date/Time Functions and Operators .....	274
9.10. Enum Support Functions .....	290
9.11. Geometric Functions and Operators .....	291
9.12. Network Address Functions and Operators .....	298
9.13. Text Search Functions and Operators .....	301
9.14. UUID Functions .....	308
9.15. XML Functions .....	308
9.16. JSON Functions and Operators .....	322
9.17. Sequence Manipulation Functions .....	342
9.18. Conditional Expressions .....	343
9.19. Array Functions and Operators .....	346
9.20. Range/Multirange Functions and Operators .....	350

9.21. Aggregate Functions .....	356
9.22. Window Functions .....	363
9.23. Subquery Expressions .....	365
9.24. Row and Array Comparisons .....	367
9.25. Set Returning Functions .....	370
9.26. System Information Functions and Operators .....	374
9.27. System Administration Functions .....	393
9.28. Trigger Functions .....	410
9.29. Event Trigger Functions .....	411
9.30. Statistics Information Functions .....	414
10. Type Conversion .....	416
10.1. Overview .....	416
10.2. Operators .....	417
10.3. Functions .....	421
10.4. Value Storage .....	425
10.5. UNION, CASE, and Related Constructs .....	426
10.6. SELECT Output Columns .....	427
11. Indexes .....	429
11.1. Introduction .....	429
11.2. Index Types .....	430
11.3. Multicolumn Indexes .....	432
11.4. Indexes and ORDER BY .....	433
11.5. Combining Multiple Indexes .....	434
11.6. Unique Indexes .....	435
11.7. Indexes on Expressions .....	435
11.8. Partial Indexes .....	436
11.9. Index-Only Scans and Covering Indexes .....	439
11.10. Operator Classes and Operator Families .....	441
11.11. Indexes and Collations .....	443
11.12. Examining Index Usage .....	443
12. Full Text Search .....	445
12.1. Introduction .....	445
12.2. Tables and Indexes .....	449
12.3. Controlling Text Search .....	451
12.4. Additional Features .....	458
12.5. Parsers .....	464
12.6. Dictionaries .....	465
12.7. Configuration Example .....	475
12.8. Testing and Debugging Text Search .....	476
12.9. Preferred Index Types for Text Search .....	481
12.10. psql Support .....	482
12.11. Limitations .....	485
13. Concurrency Control .....	486
13.1. Introduction .....	486
13.2. Transaction Isolation .....	486
13.3. Explicit Locking .....	492
13.4. Data Consistency Checks at the Application Level .....	498
13.5. Serialization Failure Handling .....	499
13.6. Caveats .....	500
13.7. Locking and Indexes .....	500
14. Performance Tips .....	502
14.1. Using EXPLAIN .....	502
14.2. Statistics Used by the Planner .....	514
14.3. Controlling the Planner with Explicit JOIN Clauses .....	519
14.4. Populating a Database .....	521
14.5. Non-Durable Settings .....	524
15. Parallel Query .....	525
15.1. How Parallel Query Works .....	525

15.2. When Can Parallel Query Be Used? .....	526
15.3. Parallel Plans .....	527
15.4. Parallel Safety .....	529
III. Server Administration .....	531
16. Installation from Binaries .....	538
17. Installation from Source Code .....	539
17.1. Requirements .....	539
17.2. Getting the Source .....	541
17.3. Building and Installation with Autoconf and Make .....	541
17.4. Building and Installation with Meson .....	554
17.5. Post-Installation Setup .....	563
17.6. Supported Platforms .....	565
17.7. Platform-Specific Notes .....	565
18. Installation from Source Code on Windows .....	570
18.1. Building with Visual C++ or the Microsoft Windows SDK .....	570
19. Server Setup and Operation .....	576
19.1. The PostgreSQL User Account .....	576
19.2. Creating a Database Cluster .....	576
19.3. Starting the Database Server .....	578
19.4. Managing Kernel Resources .....	582
19.5. Shutting Down the Server .....	590
19.6. Upgrading a PostgreSQL Cluster .....	590
19.7. Preventing Server Spoofing .....	593
19.8. Encryption Options .....	594
19.9. Secure TCP/IP Connections with SSL .....	595
19.10. Secure TCP/IP Connections with GSSAPI Encryption .....	599
19.11. Secure TCP/IP Connections with SSH Tunnels .....	599
19.12. Registering Event Log on Windows .....	600
20. Server Configuration .....	602
20.1. Setting Parameters .....	602
20.2. File Locations .....	606
20.3. Connections and Authentication .....	607
20.4. Resource Consumption .....	614
20.5. Write Ahead Log .....	622
20.6. Replication .....	632
20.7. Query Planning .....	639
20.8. Error Reporting and Logging .....	646
20.9. Run-time Statistics .....	659
20.10. Automatic Vacuuming .....	661
20.11. Client Connection Defaults .....	663
20.12. Lock Management .....	674
20.13. Version and Platform Compatibility .....	675
20.14. Error Handling .....	676
20.15. Preset Options .....	677
20.16. Customized Options .....	679
20.17. Developer Options .....	679
20.18. Short Options .....	685
21. Client Authentication .....	686
21.1. The <code>pg_hba.conf</code> File .....	686
21.2. User Name Maps .....	695
21.3. Authentication Methods .....	697
21.4. Trust Authentication .....	697
21.5. Password Authentication .....	698
21.6. GSSAPI Authentication .....	699
21.7. SSPI Authentication .....	700
21.8. Ident Authentication .....	701
21.9. Peer Authentication .....	702
21.10. LDAP Authentication .....	702

21.11. RADIUS Authentication .....	705
21.12. Certificate Authentication .....	706
21.13. PAM Authentication .....	706
21.14. BSD Authentication .....	707
21.15. Authentication Problems .....	707
22. Database Roles .....	709
22.1. Database Roles .....	709
22.2. Role Attributes .....	710
22.3. Role Membership .....	712
22.4. Dropping Roles .....	713
22.5. Predefined Roles .....	714
22.6. Function Security .....	716
23. Managing Databases .....	717
23.1. Overview .....	717
23.2. Creating a Database .....	717
23.3. Template Databases .....	718
23.4. Database Configuration .....	720
23.5. Destroying a Database .....	720
23.6. Tablespaces .....	720
24. Localization .....	723
24.1. Locale Support .....	723
24.2. Collation Support .....	727
24.3. Character Set Support .....	737
25. Routine Database Maintenance Tasks .....	747
25.1. Routine Vacuuming .....	747
25.2. Routine Reindexing .....	756
25.3. Log File Maintenance .....	757
26. Backup and Restore .....	759
26.1. SQL Dump .....	759
26.2. File System Level Backup .....	762
26.3. Continuous Archiving and Point-in-Time Recovery (PITR) .....	763
27. High Availability, Load Balancing, and Replication .....	774
27.1. Comparison of Different Solutions .....	774
27.2. Log-Shipping Standby Servers .....	777
27.3. Failover .....	786
27.4. Hot Standby .....	786
28. Monitoring Database Activity .....	795
28.1. Standard Unix Tools .....	795
28.2. The Cumulative Statistics System .....	796
28.3. Viewing Locks .....	835
28.4. Progress Reporting .....	835
28.5. Dynamic Tracing .....	843
29. Monitoring Disk Usage .....	853
29.1. Determining Disk Usage .....	853
29.2. Disk Full Failure .....	854
30. Reliability and the Write-Ahead Log .....	855
30.1. Reliability .....	855
30.2. Data Checksums .....	857
30.3. Write-Ahead Logging (WAL) .....	857
30.4. Asynchronous Commit .....	858
30.5. WAL Configuration .....	859
30.6. WAL Internals .....	862
31. Logical Replication .....	864
31.1. Publication .....	864
31.2. Subscription .....	865
31.3. Row Filters .....	871
31.4. Column Lists .....	879
31.5. Conflicts .....	882

31.6. Restrictions .....	882
31.7. Architecture .....	883
31.8. Monitoring .....	884
31.9. Security .....	884
31.10. Configuration Settings .....	885
31.11. Quick Setup .....	886
32. Just-in-Time Compilation (JIT) .....	887
32.1. What Is JIT compilation? .....	887
32.2. When to JIT? .....	887
32.3. Configuration .....	889
32.4. Extensibility .....	889
33. Regression Tests .....	890
33.1. Running the Tests .....	890
33.2. Test Evaluation .....	894
33.3. Variant Comparison Files .....	896
33.4. TAP Tests .....	897
33.5. Test Coverage Examination .....	898
IV. Client Interfaces .....	899
34. libpq — C Library .....	904
34.1. Database Connection Control Functions .....	904
34.2. Connection Status Functions .....	922
34.3. Command Execution Functions .....	929
34.4. Asynchronous Command Processing .....	944
34.5. Pipeline Mode .....	948
34.6. Retrieving Query Results Row-by-Row .....	953
34.7. Canceling Queries in Progress .....	953
34.8. The Fast-Path Interface .....	954
34.9. Asynchronous Notification .....	955
34.10. Functions Associated with the COPY Command .....	956
34.11. Control Functions .....	960
34.12. Miscellaneous Functions .....	962
34.13. Notice Processing .....	966
34.14. Event System .....	967
34.15. Environment Variables .....	973
34.16. The Password File .....	975
34.17. The Connection Service File .....	976
34.18. LDAP Lookup of Connection Parameters .....	976
34.19. SSL Support .....	977
34.20. Behavior in Threaded Programs .....	981
34.21. Building libpq Programs .....	982
34.22. Example Programs .....	983
35. Large Objects .....	995
35.1. Introduction .....	995
35.2. Implementation Features .....	995
35.3. Client Interfaces .....	995
35.4. Server-Side Functions .....	1000
35.5. Example Program .....	1001
36. ECPG — Embedded SQL in C .....	1007
36.1. The Concept .....	1007
36.2. Managing Database Connections .....	1007
36.3. Running SQL Commands .....	1011
36.4. Using Host Variables .....	1014
36.5. Dynamic SQL .....	1028
36.6. pgtypes Library .....	1030
36.7. Using Descriptor Areas .....	1044
36.8. Error Handling .....	1057
36.9. Preprocessor Directives .....	1064
36.10. Processing Embedded SQL Programs .....	1066

36.11. Library Functions .....	1067
36.12. Large Objects .....	1068
36.13. C++ Applications .....	1069
36.14. Embedded SQL Commands .....	1073
36.15. Informix Compatibility Mode .....	1097
36.16. Oracle Compatibility Mode .....	1112
36.17. Internals .....	1112
37. The Information Schema .....	1115
37.1. The Schema .....	1115
37.2. Data Types .....	1115
37.3. information_schema_catalog_name .....	1116
37.4. administrable_role_authorizations .....	1116
37.5. applicable_roles .....	1116
37.6. attributes .....	1117
37.7. character_sets .....	1119
37.8. check_constraint_routine_usage .....	1120
37.9. check_constraints .....	1120
37.10. collations .....	1121
37.11. collation_character_set_applicability .....	1121
37.12. column_column_usage .....	1122
37.13. column_domain_usage .....	1122
37.14. column_options .....	1122
37.15. column_privileges .....	1123
37.16. column_udt_usage .....	1124
37.17. columns .....	1124
37.18. constraint_column_usage .....	1127
37.19. constraint_table_usage .....	1128
37.20. data_type_privileges .....	1128
37.21. domain_constraints .....	1129
37.22. domain_udt_usage .....	1129
37.23. domains .....	1130
37.24. element_types .....	1132
37.25. enabled_roles .....	1134
37.26. foreign_data_wrapper_options .....	1134
37.27. foreign_data_wrappers .....	1135
37.28. foreign_server_options .....	1135
37.29. foreign_servers .....	1135
37.30. foreign_table_options .....	1136
37.31. foreign_tables .....	1136
37.32. key_column_usage .....	1137
37.33. parameters .....	1137
37.34. referential_constraints .....	1139
37.35. role_column_grants .....	1140
37.36. role_routine_grants .....	1140
37.37. role_table_grants .....	1141
37.38. role_udt_grants .....	1142
37.39. role_usage_grants .....	1142
37.40. routine_column_usage .....	1143
37.41. routine_privileges .....	1143
37.42. routine_routine_usage .....	1144
37.43. routine_sequence_usage .....	1145
37.44. routine_table_usage .....	1145
37.45. routines .....	1146
37.46. schemata .....	1150
37.47. sequences .....	1150
37.48. sql_features .....	1151
37.49. sql_implementation_info .....	1152
37.50. sql_parts .....	1152

37.51. sql_sizing .....	1153
37.52. table_constraints .....	1153
37.53. table_privileges .....	1154
37.54. tables .....	1154
37.55. transforms .....	1155
37.56. triggered_update_columns .....	1156
37.57. triggers .....	1156
37.58. udt_privileges .....	1158
37.59. usage_privileges .....	1158
37.60. user_defined_types .....	1159
37.61. user_mapping_options .....	1161
37.62. user_mappings .....	1161
37.63. view_column_usage .....	1161
37.64. view_routine_usage .....	1162
37.65. view_table_usage .....	1162
37.66. views .....	1163
V. Server Programming .....	1165
38. Extending SQL .....	1171
38.1. How Extensibility Works .....	1171
38.2. The PostgreSQL Type System .....	1171
38.3. User-Defined Functions .....	1174
38.4. User-Defined Procedures .....	1175
38.5. Query Language (SQL) Functions .....	1175
38.6. Function Overloading .....	1192
38.7. Function Volatility Categories .....	1193
38.8. Procedural Language Functions .....	1194
38.9. Internal Functions .....	1194
38.10. C-Language Functions .....	1195
38.11. Function Optimization Information .....	1215
38.12. User-Defined Aggregates .....	1217
38.13. User-Defined Types .....	1224
38.14. User-Defined Operators .....	1228
38.15. Operator Optimization Information .....	1229
38.16. Interfacing Extensions to Indexes .....	1233
38.17. Packaging Related Objects into an Extension .....	1246
38.18. Extension Building Infrastructure .....	1254
39. Triggers .....	1259
39.1. Overview of Trigger Behavior .....	1259
39.2. Visibility of Data Changes .....	1262
39.3. Writing Trigger Functions in C .....	1262
39.4. A Complete Trigger Example .....	1265
40. Event Triggers .....	1269
40.1. Overview of Event Trigger Behavior .....	1269
40.2. Event Trigger Firing Matrix .....	1270
40.3. Writing Event Trigger Functions in C .....	1273
40.4. A Complete Event Trigger Example .....	1274
40.5. A Table Rewrite Event Trigger Example .....	1275
41. The Rule System .....	1277
41.1. The Query Tree .....	1277
41.2. Views and the Rule System .....	1279
41.3. Materialized Views .....	1285
41.4. Rules on INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE .....	1288
41.5. Rules and Privileges .....	1299
41.6. Rules and Command Status .....	1301
41.7. Rules Versus Triggers .....	1301
42. Procedural Languages .....	1304
42.1. Installing Procedural Languages .....	1304
43. PL/pgSQL — SQL Procedural Language .....	1307



43.1. Overview .....	1307
43.2. Structure of PL/pgSQL .....	1308
43.3. Declarations .....	1310
43.4. Expressions .....	1316
43.5. Basic Statements .....	1317
43.6. Control Structures .....	1325
43.7. Cursors .....	1340
43.8. Transaction Management .....	1346
43.9. Errors and Messages .....	1347
43.10. Trigger Functions .....	1349
43.11. PL/pgSQL under the Hood .....	1358
43.12. Tips for Developing in PL/pgSQL .....	1361
43.13. Porting from Oracle PL/SQL .....	1365
44. PL/Tcl — Tcl Procedural Language .....	1375
44.1. Overview .....	1375
44.2. PL/Tcl Functions and Arguments .....	1375
44.3. Data Values in PL/Tcl .....	1377
44.4. Global Data in PL/Tcl .....	1377
44.5. Database Access from PL/Tcl .....	1378
44.6. Trigger Functions in PL/Tcl .....	1380
44.7. Event Trigger Functions in PL/Tcl .....	1382
44.8. Error Handling in PL/Tcl .....	1382
44.9. Explicit Subtransactions in PL/Tcl .....	1383
44.10. Transaction Management .....	1384
44.11. PL/Tcl Configuration .....	1385
44.12. Tcl Procedure Names .....	1385
45. PL/Perl — Perl Procedural Language .....	1386
45.1. PL/Perl Functions and Arguments .....	1386
45.2. Data Values in PL/Perl .....	1391
45.3. Built-in Functions .....	1391
45.4. Global Values in PL/Perl .....	1396
45.5. Trusted and Untrusted PL/Perl .....	1397
45.6. PL/Perl Triggers .....	1398
45.7. PL/Perl Event Triggers .....	1399
45.8. PL/Perl Under the Hood .....	1400
46. PL/Python — Python Procedural Language .....	1402
46.1. PL/Python Functions .....	1402
46.2. Data Values .....	1403
46.3. Sharing Data .....	1409
46.4. Anonymous Code Blocks .....	1409
46.5. Trigger Functions .....	1409
46.6. Database Access .....	1410
46.7. Explicit Subtransactions .....	1414
46.8. Transaction Management .....	1415
46.9. Utility Functions .....	1415
46.10. Python 2 vs. Python 3 .....	1416
46.11. Environment Variables .....	1416
47. Server Programming Interface .....	1418
47.1. Interface Functions .....	1418
47.2. Interface Support Functions .....	1460
47.3. Memory Management .....	1469
47.4. Transaction Management .....	1479
47.5. Visibility of Data Changes .....	1482
47.6. Examples .....	1482
48. Background Worker Processes .....	1486
49. Logical Decoding .....	1489
49.1. Logical Decoding Examples .....	1489
49.2. Logical Decoding Concepts .....	1493

49.3. Streaming Replication Protocol Interface .....	1494
49.4. Logical Decoding SQL Interface .....	1495
49.5. System Catalogs Related to Logical Decoding .....	1495
49.6. Logical Decoding Output Plugins .....	1495
49.7. Logical Decoding Output Writers .....	1503
49.8. Synchronous Replication Support for Logical Decoding .....	1503
49.9. Streaming of Large Transactions for Logical Decoding .....	1504
49.10. Two-phase Commit Support for Logical Decoding .....	1505
50. Replication Progress Tracking .....	1507
51. Archive Modules .....	1508
51.1. Initialization Functions .....	1508
51.2. Archive Module Callbacks .....	1508
VI. Reference .....	1510
I. SQL Commands .....	1515
ABORT .....	1519
ALTER AGGREGATE .....	1520
ALTER COLLATION .....	1522
ALTER CONVERSION .....	1525
ALTER DATABASE .....	1527
ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES .....	1530
ALTER DOMAIN .....	1533
ALTER EVENT TRIGGER .....	1537
ALTER EXTENSION .....	1538
ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER .....	1542
ALTER FOREIGN TABLE .....	1544
ALTER FUNCTION .....	1549
ALTER GROUP .....	1553
ALTER INDEX .....	1555
ALTER LANGUAGE .....	1558
ALTER LARGE OBJECT .....	1559
ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW .....	1560
ALTER OPERATOR .....	1562
ALTER OPERATOR CLASS .....	1564
ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY .....	1565
ALTER POLICY .....	1569
ALTER PROCEDURE .....	1571
ALTER PUBLICATION .....	1574
ALTER ROLE .....	1577
ALTER ROUTINE .....	1581
ALTER RULE .....	1583
ALTER SCHEMA .....	1584
ALTER SEQUENCE .....	1585
ALTER SERVER .....	1588
ALTER STATISTICS .....	1590
ALTER SUBSCRIPTION .....	1591
ALTER SYSTEM .....	1594
ALTER TABLE .....	1596
ALTER TABLESPACE .....	1614
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION .....	1616
ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY .....	1618
ALTER TEXT SEARCH PARSER .....	1620
ALTER TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE .....	1621
ALTER TRIGGER .....	1622
ALTER TYPE .....	1624
ALTER USER .....	1629
ALTER USER MAPPING .....	1630
ALTER VIEW .....	1631
ANALYZE .....	1633

BEGIN .....	1636
CALL .....	1638
CHECKPOINT .....	1640
CLOSE .....	1641
CLUSTER .....	1642
COMMENT .....	1645
COMMIT .....	1650
COMMIT PREPARED .....	1651
COPY .....	1652
CREATE ACCESS METHOD .....	1662
CREATE AGGREGATE .....	1663
CREATE CAST .....	1671
CREATE COLLATION .....	1675
CREATE CONVERSION .....	1678
CREATE DATABASE .....	1680
CREATE DOMAIN .....	1685
CREATE EVENT TRIGGER .....	1688
CREATE EXTENSION .....	1690
CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER .....	1693
CREATE FOREIGN TABLE .....	1695
CREATE FUNCTION .....	1700
CREATE GROUP .....	1709
CREATE INDEX .....	1710
CREATE LANGUAGE .....	1719
CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW .....	1722
CREATE OPERATOR .....	1724
CREATE OPERATOR CLASS .....	1727
CREATE OPERATOR FAMILY .....	1730
CREATE POLICY .....	1731
CREATE PROCEDURE .....	1737
CREATE PUBLICATION .....	1741
CREATE ROLE .....	1745
CREATE RULE .....	1750
CREATE SCHEMA .....	1753
CREATE SEQUENCE .....	1756
CREATE SERVER .....	1760
CREATE STATISTICS .....	1762
CREATE SUBSCRIPTION .....	1766
CREATE TABLE .....	1771
CREATE TABLE AS .....	1794
CREATE TABLESPACE .....	1797
CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION .....	1799
CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY .....	1800
CREATE TEXT SEARCH PARSER .....	1802
CREATE TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE .....	1804
CREATE TRANSFORM .....	1805
CREATE TRIGGER .....	1807
CREATE TYPE .....	1814
CREATE USER .....	1823
CREATE USER MAPPING .....	1824
CREATE VIEW .....	1826
DEALLOCATE .....	1832
DECLARE .....	1833
DELETE .....	1837
DISCARD .....	1840
DO .....	1841
DROP ACCESS METHOD .....	1843
DROP AGGREGATE .....	1844

DROP CAST .....	1846
DROP COLLATION .....	1847
DROP CONVERSION .....	1848
DROP DATABASE .....	1849
DROP DOMAIN .....	1850
DROP EVENT TRIGGER .....	1851
DROP EXTENSION .....	1852
DROP FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER .....	1853
DROP FOREIGN TABLE .....	1854
DROP FUNCTION .....	1855
DROP GROUP .....	1857
DROP INDEX .....	1858
DROP LANGUAGE .....	1860
DROP MATERIALIZED VIEW .....	1861
DROP OPERATOR .....	1862
DROP OPERATOR CLASS .....	1864
DROP OPERATOR FAMILY .....	1866
DROP OWNED .....	1868
DROP POLICY .....	1869
DROP PROCEDURE .....	1870
DROP PUBLICATION .....	1872
DROP ROLE .....	1873
DROP ROUTINE .....	1874
DROP RULE .....	1876
DROP SCHEMA .....	1877
DROP SEQUENCE .....	1878
DROP SERVER .....	1879
DROP STATISTICS .....	1880
DROP SUBSCRIPTION .....	1881
DROP TABLE .....	1883
DROP TABLESPACE .....	1884
DROP TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION .....	1885
DROP TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY .....	1886
DROP TEXT SEARCH PARSER .....	1887
DROP TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE .....	1888
DROP TRANSFORM .....	1889
DROP TRIGGER .....	1890
DROP TYPE .....	1891
DROP USER .....	1892
DROP USER MAPPING .....	1893
DROP VIEW .....	1894
END .....	1895
EXECUTE .....	1896
EXPLAIN .....	1897
FETCH .....	1903
GRANT .....	1907
IMPORT FOREIGN SCHEMA .....	1913
INSERT .....	1915
LISTEN .....	1923
LOAD .....	1925
LOCK .....	1926
MERGE .....	1929
MOVE .....	1935
NOTIFY .....	1937
PREPARE .....	1940
PREPARE TRANSACTION .....	1943
REASSIGN OWNED .....	1945
REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW .....	1946

REINDEX .....	1948
RELEASE SAVEPOINT .....	1953
RESET .....	1955
REVOKE .....	1956
ROLLBACK .....	1961
ROLLBACK PREPARED .....	1962
ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT .....	1963
SAVEPOINT .....	1965
SECURITY LABEL .....	1967
SELECT .....	1970
SELECT INTO .....	1992
SET .....	1994
SET CONSTRAINTS .....	1997
SET ROLE .....	1998
SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION .....	2000
SET TRANSACTION .....	2002
SHOW .....	2005
START TRANSACTION .....	2007
TRUNCATE .....	2008
UNLISTEN .....	2010
UPDATE .....	2012
VACUUM .....	2017
VALUES .....	2022
II. PostgreSQL Client Applications .....	2025
clusterdb .....	2026
createdb .....	2029
createuser .....	2033
dropdb .....	2038
dropuser .....	2041
ecpg .....	2044
pg_amcheck .....	2047
pg_basebackup .....	2053
pgbench .....	2062
pg_config .....	2086
pg_dump .....	2089
pg_dumpall .....	2103
pg_isready .....	2110
pg_receivewal .....	2112
pg_recvlogical .....	2117
pg_restore .....	2121
pg_verifybackup .....	2130
psql .....	2133
reindexdb .....	2177
vacuumdb .....	2181
III. PostgreSQL Server Applications .....	2186
initdb .....	2187
pg_archivecleanup .....	2192
pg_checksums .....	2194
pg_controldata .....	2196
pg_ctl .....	2197
pg_resetwal .....	2203
pg_rewind .....	2207
pg_test_fsync .....	2211
pg_test_timing .....	2212
pg_upgrade .....	2216
pg_waldump .....	2225
postgres .....	2229
VII. Internals .....	2236

52. Overview of PostgreSQL Internals .....	2242
52.1. The Path of a Query .....	2242
52.2. How Connections Are Established .....	2242
52.3. The Parser Stage .....	2243
52.4. The PostgreSQL Rule System .....	2244
52.5. Planner/Optimizer .....	2244
52.6. Executor .....	2245
53. System Catalogs .....	2247
53.1. Overview .....	2247
53.2. pg_aggregate .....	2249
53.3. pg_am .....	2250
53.4. pg_amop .....	2251
53.5. pg_amproc .....	2252
53.6. pg_attrdef .....	2252
53.7. pg_attribute .....	2253
53.8. pg_authid .....	2255
53.9. pg_auth_members .....	2256
53.10. pg_cast .....	2256
53.11. pg_class .....	2257
53.12. pg_collation .....	2260
53.13. pg_constraint .....	2260
53.14. pg_conversion .....	2262
53.15. pg_database .....	2263
53.16. pg_db_role_setting .....	2264
53.17. pg_default_acl .....	2264
53.18. pg_depend .....	2265
53.19. pg_description .....	2267
53.20. pg_enum .....	2267
53.21. pg_event_trigger .....	2268
53.22. pg_extension .....	2268
53.23. pg_foreign_data_wrapper .....	2269
53.24. pg_foreign_server .....	2270
53.25. pg_foreign_table .....	2270
53.26. pg_index .....	2270
53.27. pg_inherits .....	2272
53.28. pg_init_privs .....	2272
53.29. pg_language .....	2273
53.30. pg_largeobject .....	2274
53.31. pg_largeobject_metadata .....	2274
53.32. pg_namespace .....	2275
53.33. pg_opclass .....	2275
53.34. pg_operator .....	2276
53.35. pg_opfamily .....	2276
53.36. pg_parameter_acl .....	2277
53.37. pg_partitioned_table .....	2277
53.38. pg_policy .....	2278
53.39. pg_proc .....	2279
53.40. pg_publication .....	2281
53.41. pg_publication_namespace .....	2282
53.42. pg_publication_rel .....	2282
53.43. pg_range .....	2282
53.44. pg_replication_origin .....	2283
53.45. pg_rewrite .....	2283
53.46. pg_seclabel .....	2284
53.47. pg_sequence .....	2285
53.48. pg_shdepend .....	2285
53.49. pg_shdescription .....	2286
53.50. pg_shseclabel .....	2287

53.51. pg_statistic .....	2287
53.52. pg_statistic_ext .....	2288
53.53. pg_statistic_ext_data .....	2289
53.54. pg_subscription .....	2290
53.55. pg_subscription_rel .....	2291
53.56. pg_tablespace .....	2291
53.57. pg_transform .....	2292
53.58. pg_trigger .....	2292
53.59. pg_ts_config .....	2294
53.60. pg_ts_config_map .....	2294
53.61. pg_ts_dict .....	2295
53.62. pg_ts_parser .....	2295
53.63. pg_ts_template .....	2296
53.64. pg_type .....	2296
53.65. pg_user_mapping .....	2300
54. System Views .....	2301
54.1. Overview .....	2301
54.2. pg_available_extensions .....	2302
54.3. pg_available_extension_versions .....	2302
54.4. pg_backend_memory_contexts .....	2303
54.5. pg_config .....	2304
54.6. pg_cursors .....	2304
54.7. pg_file_settings .....	2305
54.8. pg_group .....	2305
54.9. pg_hba_file_rules .....	2306
54.10. pg_ident_file_mappings .....	2307
54.11. pg_indexes .....	2307
54.12. pg_locks .....	2308
54.13. pg_matviews .....	2310
54.14. pg_policies .....	2311
54.15. pg_prepared_statements .....	2311
54.16. pg_prepared_xacts .....	2312
54.17. pg_publication_tables .....	2313
54.18. pg_replication_origin_status .....	2313
54.19. pg_replication_slots .....	2314
54.20. pg_roles .....	2315
54.21. pg_rules .....	2316
54.22. pg_seclabels .....	2316
54.23. pg_sequences .....	2317
54.24. pg_settings .....	2317
54.25. pg_shadow .....	2320
54.26. pg_shmem_allocations .....	2320
54.27. pg_stats .....	2321
54.28. pg_stats_ext .....	2322
54.29. pg_stats_ext_exprs .....	2323
54.30. pg_tables .....	2325
54.31. pg_timezone_abbrevs .....	2325
54.32. pg_timezone_names .....	2326
54.33. pg_user .....	2326
54.34. pg_user_mappings .....	2327
54.35. pg_views .....	2327
55. Frontend/Backend Protocol .....	2329
55.1. Overview .....	2329
55.2. Message Flow .....	2330
55.3. SASL Authentication .....	2344
55.4. Streaming Replication Protocol .....	2345
55.5. Logical Streaming Replication Protocol .....	2354
55.6. Message Data Types .....	2356

55.7. Message Formats .....	2356
55.8. Error and Notice Message Fields .....	2373
55.9. Logical Replication Message Formats .....	2375
55.10. Summary of Changes since Protocol 2.0 .....	2384
56. PostgreSQL Coding Conventions .....	2386
56.1. Formatting .....	2386
56.2. Reporting Errors Within the Server .....	2386
56.3. Error Message Style Guide .....	2390
56.4. Miscellaneous Coding Conventions .....	2394
57. Native Language Support .....	2396
57.1. For the Translator .....	2396
57.2. For the Programmer .....	2398
58. Writing a Procedural Language Handler .....	2402
59. Writing a Foreign Data Wrapper .....	2404
59.1. Foreign Data Wrapper Functions .....	2404
59.2. Foreign Data Wrapper Callback Routines .....	2404
59.3. Foreign Data Wrapper Helper Functions .....	2420
59.4. Foreign Data Wrapper Query Planning .....	2421
59.5. Row Locking in Foreign Data Wrappers .....	2424
60. Writing a Table Sampling Method .....	2426
60.1. Sampling Method Support Functions .....	2426
61. Writing a Custom Scan Provider .....	2429
61.1. Creating Custom Scan Paths .....	2429
61.2. Creating Custom Scan Plans .....	2430
61.3. Executing Custom Scans .....	2431
62. Genetic Query Optimizer .....	2434
62.1. Query Handling as a Complex Optimization Problem .....	2434
62.2. Genetic Algorithms .....	2434
62.3. Genetic Query Optimization (GEQO) in PostgreSQL .....	2435
62.4. Further Reading .....	2437
63. Table Access Method Interface Definition .....	2438
64. Index Access Method Interface Definition .....	2439
64.1. Basic API Structure for Indexes .....	2439
64.2. Index Access Method Functions .....	2442
64.3. Index Scanning .....	2448
64.4. Index Locking Considerations .....	2449
64.5. Index Uniqueness Checks .....	2450
64.6. Index Cost Estimation Functions .....	2451
65. Generic WAL Records .....	2455
66. Custom WAL Resource Managers .....	2457
67. B-Tree Indexes .....	2459
67.1. Introduction .....	2459
67.2. Behavior of B-Tree Operator Classes .....	2459
67.3. B-Tree Support Functions .....	2460
67.4. Implementation .....	2463
68. GiST Indexes .....	2466
68.1. Introduction .....	2466
68.2. Built-in Operator Classes .....	2466
68.3. Extensibility .....	2469
68.4. Implementation .....	2482
68.5. Examples .....	2482
69. SP-GiST Indexes .....	2484
69.1. Introduction .....	2484
69.2. Built-in Operator Classes .....	2484
69.3. Extensibility .....	2486
69.4. Implementation .....	2495
69.5. Examples .....	2496
70. GIN Indexes .....	2497



70.1. Introduction .....	2497
70.2. Built-in Operator Classes .....	2497
70.3. Extensibility .....	2498
70.4. Implementation .....	2500
70.5. GIN Tips and Tricks .....	2502
70.6. Limitations .....	2502
70.7. Examples .....	2503
71. BRIN Indexes .....	2504
71.1. Introduction .....	2504
71.2. Built-in Operator Classes .....	2505
71.3. Extensibility .....	2512
72. Hash Indexes .....	2517
72.1. Overview .....	2517
72.2. Implementation .....	2518
73. Database Physical Storage .....	2519
73.1. Database File Layout .....	2519
73.2. TOAST .....	2521
73.3. Free Space Map .....	2524
73.4. Visibility Map .....	2524
73.5. The Initialization Fork .....	2525
73.6. Database Page Layout .....	2525
73.7. Heap-Only Tuples (HOT) .....	2528
74. Transaction Processing .....	2529
74.1. Transactions and Identifiers .....	2529
74.2. Transactions and Locking .....	2529
74.3. Subtransactions .....	2529
74.4. Two-Phase Transactions .....	2530
75. System Catalog Declarations and Initial Contents .....	2531
75.1. System Catalog Declaration Rules .....	2531
75.2. System Catalog Initial Data .....	2532
75.3. BKI File Format .....	2537
75.4. BKI Commands .....	2537
75.5. Structure of the Bootstrap BKI File .....	2538
75.6. BKI Example .....	2539
76. How the Planner Uses Statistics .....	2540
76.1. Row Estimation Examples .....	2540
76.2. Multivariate Statistics Examples .....	2545
76.3. Planner Statistics and Security .....	2549
77. Backup Manifest Format .....	2550
77.1. Backup Manifest Top-level Object .....	2550
77.2. Backup Manifest File Object .....	2550
77.3. Backup Manifest WAL Range Object .....	2551
VIII. Appendixes .....	2552
A. PostgreSQL Error Codes .....	2559
B. Date/Time Support .....	2568
B.1. Date/Time Input Interpretation .....	2568
B.2. Handling of Invalid or Ambiguous Timestamps .....	2569
B.3. Date/Time Key Words .....	2570
B.4. Date/Time Configuration Files .....	2571
B.5. POSIX Time Zone Specifications .....	2572
B.6. History of Units .....	2574
B.7. Julian Dates .....	2575
C. SQL Key Words .....	2576
D. SQL Conformance .....	2601
D.1. Supported Features .....	2602
D.2. Unsupported Features .....	2613
D.3. XML Limits and Conformance to SQL/XML .....	2622
E. Release Notes .....	2626

E.1. Release 16.2 .....	2626
E.2. Release 16.1 .....	2632
E.3. Release 16 .....	2637
E.4. Prior Releases .....	2658
F. Additional Supplied Modules and Extensions .....	2659
F.1. adminpack — pgAdmin support toolpack .....	2661
F.2. amcheck — tools to verify table and index consistency .....	2663
F.3. auth_delay — pause on authentication failure .....	2669
F.4. auto_explain — log execution plans of slow queries .....	2670
F.5. basebackup_to_shell — example "shell" pg_basebackup module .....	2673
F.6. basic_archive — an example WAL archive module .....	2674
F.7. bloom — bloom filter index access method .....	2675
F.8. btree_gin — GIN operator classes with B-tree behavior .....	2679
F.9. btree_gist — GiST operator classes with B-tree behavior .....	2680
F.10. citext — a case-insensitive character string type .....	2682
F.11. cube — a multi-dimensional cube data type .....	2685
F.12. dblink — connect to other PostgreSQL databases .....	2690
F.13. dict_int — example full-text search dictionary for integers .....	2722
F.14. dict_xsyn — example synonym full-text search dictionary .....	2723
F.15. earthdistance — calculate great-circle distances .....	2725
F.16. file_fdw — access data files in the server's file system .....	2727
F.17. fuzzystrmatch — determine string similarities and distance .....	2730
F.18. hstore — hstore key/value datatype .....	2735
F.19. intagg — integer aggregator and enumerator .....	2743
F.20. intarray — manipulate arrays of integers .....	2745
F.21. isn — data types for international standard numbers (ISBN, EAN, UPC, etc.) .....	2749
F.22. lo — manage large objects .....	2753
F.23. ltree — hierarchical tree-like data type .....	2755
F.24. old_snapshot — inspect old_snapshot_threshold state .....	2763
F.25. pageinspect — low-level inspection of database pages .....	2764
F.26. passwordcheck — verify password strength .....	2775
F.27. pg_buffercache — inspect PostgreSQL buffer cache state .....	2776
F.28. pgcrypto — cryptographic functions .....	2780
F.29. pg_freespacemap — examine the free space map .....	2791
F.30. pg_prewarm — preload relation data into buffer caches .....	2793
F.31. pgrowlocks — show a table's row locking information .....	2795
F.32. pg_stat_statements — track statistics of SQL planning and execution .....	2797
F.33. pgstattuple — obtain tuple-level statistics .....	2805
F.34. pg_surgery — perform low-level surgery on relation data .....	2810
F.35. pg_trgm — support for similarity of text using trigram matching .....	2812
F.36. pg_visibility — visibility map information and utilities .....	2818
F.37. pg_walinspect — low-level WAL inspection .....	2820
F.38. postgres_fdw — access data stored in external PostgreSQL servers .....	2824
F.39. seg — a datatype for line segments or floating point intervals .....	2834
F.40. sepgsql — SELinux-, label-based mandatory access control (MAC) security module .....	2837
F.41. spi — Server Programming Interface features/examples .....	2845
F.42. sslinfo — obtain client SSL information .....	2847
F.43. tablefunc — functions that return tables (crosstab and others) .....	2849
F.44. tcn — a trigger function to notify listeners of changes to table content .....	2859
F.45. test_decoding — SQL-based test/example module for WAL logical decod- ing .....	2861
F.46. tsm_system_rows — the SYSTEM_ROWS sampling method for TABLESAMPLE .....	2862
F.47. tsm_system_time — the SYSTEM_TIME sampling method for TABLESAM- PLE .....	2863
F.48. unaccent — a text search dictionary which removes diacritics .....	2864

F.49. uuid-ossdp — a UUID generator .....	2867
F.50. xml2 — XPath querying and XSLT functionality .....	2869
G. Additional Supplied Programs .....	2874
G.1. Client Applications .....	2874
G.2. Server Applications .....	2881
H. External Projects .....	2882
H.1. Client Interfaces .....	2882
H.2. Administration Tools .....	2882
H.3. Procedural Languages .....	2882
H.4. Extensions .....	2882
I. The Source Code Repository .....	2883
I.1. Getting the Source via Git .....	2883
J. Documentation .....	2884
J.1. DocBook .....	2884
J.2. Tool Sets .....	2884
J.3. Building the Documentation with Make .....	2886
J.4. Building the Documentation with Meson .....	2888
J.5. Documentation Authoring .....	2888
J.6. Style Guide .....	2889
K. PostgreSQL Limits .....	2891
L. Acronyms .....	2892
M. Glossary .....	2899
N. Color Support .....	2913
N.1. When Color is Used .....	2913
N.2. Configuring the Colors .....	2913
O. Obsolete or Renamed Features .....	2914
O.1. recovery.conf file merged into postgresql.conf .....	2914
O.2. Default Roles Renamed to Predefined Roles .....	2914
O.3. pg_xlogdump renamed to pg_waldump .....	2914
O.4. pg_resetxlog renamed to pg_resetwal .....	2914
O.5. pg_receivexlog renamed to pg_receivewal .....	2914
Bibliography .....	2916
Index .....	2918

---

## List of Figures

62.1. Structure of a Genetic Algorithm .....	2435
70.1. GIN Internals .....	2501
73.1. Page Layout .....	2527

---

## List of Tables

4.1. Backslash Escape Sequences .....	36
4.2. Operator Precedence (highest to lowest) .....	41
5.1. ACL Privilege Abbreviations .....	78
5.2. Summary of Access Privileges .....	78
8.1. Data Types .....	146
8.2. Numeric Types .....	147
8.3. Monetary Types .....	153
8.4. Character Types .....	154
8.5. Special Character Types .....	155
8.6. Binary Data Types .....	156
8.7. bytea Literal Escaped Octets .....	157
8.8. bytea Output Escaped Octets .....	157
8.9. Date/Time Types .....	158
8.10. Date Input .....	159
8.11. Time Input .....	160
8.12. Time Zone Input .....	161
8.13. Special Date/Time Inputs .....	162
8.14. Date/Time Output Styles .....	163
8.15. Date Order Conventions .....	163
8.16. ISO 8601 Interval Unit Abbreviations .....	165
8.17. Interval Input .....	166
8.18. Interval Output Style Examples .....	167
8.19. Boolean Data Type .....	167
8.20. Geometric Types .....	170
8.21. Network Address Types .....	173
8.22. cidr Type Input Examples .....	173
8.23. JSON Primitive Types and Corresponding PostgreSQL Types .....	182
8.24. jsonpath Variables .....	191
8.25. jsonpath Accessors .....	191
8.26. Object Identifier Types .....	214
8.27. Pseudo-Types .....	217
9.1. Comparison Operators .....	220
9.2. Comparison Predicates .....	220
9.3. Comparison Functions .....	223
9.4. Mathematical Operators .....	224
9.5. Mathematical Functions .....	226
9.6. Random Functions .....	229
9.7. Trigonometric Functions .....	229
9.8. Hyperbolic Functions .....	231
9.9. SQL String Functions and Operators .....	232
9.10. Other String Functions and Operators .....	234
9.11. SQL Binary String Functions and Operators .....	242
9.12. Other Binary String Functions .....	243
9.13. Text/Binary String Conversion Functions .....	244
9.14. Bit String Operators .....	246
9.15. Bit String Functions .....	246
9.16. Regular Expression Match Operators .....	251
9.17. Regular Expression Atoms .....	256
9.18. Regular Expression Quantifiers .....	257
9.19. Regular Expression Constraints .....	258
9.20. Regular Expression Character-Entry Escapes .....	259
9.21. Regular Expression Class-Shorthand Escapes .....	260
9.22. Regular Expression Constraint Escapes .....	261
9.23. Regular Expression Back References .....	261
9.24. ARE Embedded-Option Letters .....	262

9.25. Regular Expression Functions Equivalencies .....	265
9.26. Formatting Functions .....	266
9.27. Template Patterns for Date/Time Formatting .....	267
9.28. Template Pattern Modifiers for Date/Time Formatting .....	269
9.29. Template Patterns for Numeric Formatting .....	272
9.30. Template Pattern Modifiers for Numeric Formatting .....	273
9.31. <code>to_char</code> Examples .....	273
9.32. Date/Time Operators .....	275
9.33. Date/Time Functions .....	276
9.34. <code>AT TIME ZONE</code> Variants .....	287
9.35. Enum Support Functions .....	290
9.36. Geometric Operators .....	291
9.37. Geometric Functions .....	295
9.38. Geometric Type Conversion Functions .....	296
9.39. IP Address Operators .....	298
9.40. IP Address Functions .....	299
9.41. MAC Address Functions .....	301
9.42. Text Search Operators .....	301
9.43. Text Search Functions .....	303
9.44. Text Search Debugging Functions .....	307
9.45. <code>json</code> and <code>jsonb</code> Operators .....	323
9.46. Additional <code>jsonb</code> Operators .....	324
9.47. JSON Creation Functions .....	326
9.48. SQL/JSON Testing Functions .....	327
9.49. JSON Processing Functions .....	328
9.50. <code>jsonpath</code> Operators and Methods .....	337
9.51. <code>jsonpath</code> Filter Expression Elements .....	339
9.52. Sequence Functions .....	342
9.53. Array Operators .....	346
9.54. Array Functions .....	347
9.55. Range Operators .....	350
9.56. Multirange Operators .....	351
9.57. Range Functions .....	354
9.58. Multirange Functions .....	355
9.59. General-Purpose Aggregate Functions .....	356
9.60. Aggregate Functions for Statistics .....	359
9.61. Ordered-Set Aggregate Functions .....	361
9.62. Hypothetical-Set Aggregate Functions .....	362
9.63. Grouping Operations .....	362
9.64. General-Purpose Window Functions .....	363
9.65. Series Generating Functions .....	370
9.66. Subscript Generating Functions .....	372
9.67. Session Information Functions .....	374
9.68. Access Privilege Inquiry Functions .....	377
9.69. <code>aclitem</code> Operators .....	379
9.70. <code>aclitem</code> Functions .....	379
9.71. Schema Visibility Inquiry Functions .....	380
9.72. System Catalog Information Functions .....	381
9.73. Index Column Properties .....	386
9.74. Index Properties .....	386
9.75. Index Access Method Properties .....	386
9.76. GUC Flags .....	387
9.77. Object Information and Addressing Functions .....	387
9.78. Comment Information Functions .....	388
9.79. Data Validity Checking Functions .....	388
9.80. Transaction ID and Snapshot Information Functions .....	389
9.81. Snapshot Components .....	390
9.82. Deprecated Transaction ID and Snapshot Information Functions .....	391

9.83. Committed Transaction Information Functions .....	391
9.84. Control Data Functions .....	392
9.85. <code>pg_control_checkpoint</code> Output Columns .....	392
9.86. <code>pg_control_system</code> Output Columns .....	393
9.87. <code>pg_control_init</code> Output Columns .....	393
9.88. <code>pg_control_recovery</code> Output Columns .....	393
9.89. Configuration Settings Functions .....	394
9.90. Server Signaling Functions .....	394
9.91. Backup Control Functions .....	396
9.92. Recovery Information Functions .....	398
9.93. Recovery Control Functions .....	399
9.94. Snapshot Synchronization Functions .....	400
9.95. Replication Management Functions .....	401
9.96. Database Object Size Functions .....	403
9.97. Database Object Location Functions .....	404
9.98. Collation Management Functions .....	405
9.99. Partitioning Information Functions .....	405
9.100. Index Maintenance Functions .....	406
9.101. Generic File Access Functions .....	407
9.102. Advisory Lock Functions .....	409
9.103. Built-In Trigger Functions .....	410
9.104. Table Rewrite Information Functions .....	414
12.1. Default Parser's Token Types .....	464
13.1. Transaction Isolation Levels .....	487
13.2. Conflicting Lock Modes .....	494
13.3. Conflicting Row-Level Locks .....	496
19.1. System V IPC Parameters .....	582
19.2. SSL Server File Usage .....	597
20.1. <code>synchronous_commit</code> Modes .....	624
20.2. Message Severity Levels .....	651
20.3. Keys and Values of JSON Log Entries .....	658
20.4. Short Option Key .....	685
22.1. Predefined Roles .....	714
24.1. ICU Collation Levels .....	733
24.2. ICU Collation Settings .....	734
24.3. PostgreSQL Character Sets .....	737
24.4. Built-in Client/Server Character Set Conversions .....	742
24.5. All Built-in Character Set Conversions .....	743
27.1. High Availability, Load Balancing, and Replication Feature Matrix .....	776
28.1. Dynamic Statistics Views .....	797
28.2. Collected Statistics Views .....	798
28.3. <code>pg_stat_activity</code> View .....	801
28.4. Wait Event Types .....	802
28.5. Wait Events of Type Activity .....	803
28.6. Wait Events of Type BufferPin .....	804
28.7. Wait Events of Type Client .....	804
28.8. Wait Events of Type Extension .....	804
28.9. Wait Events of Type IO .....	804
28.10. Wait Events of Type IPC .....	807
28.11. Wait Events of Type Lock .....	809
28.12. Wait Events of Type LWLock .....	810
28.13. Wait Events of Type Timeout .....	813
28.14. <code>pg_stat_replication</code> View .....	814
28.15. <code>pg_stat_replication_slots</code> View .....	816
28.16. <code>pg_stat_wal_receiver</code> View .....	817
28.17. <code>pg_stat_recovery_prefetch</code> View .....	818
28.18. <code>pg_stat_subscription</code> View .....	818
28.19. <code>pg_stat_subscription_stats</code> View .....	819

28.20. pg_stat_ssl View .....	820
28.21. pg_stat_gssapi View .....	820
28.22. pg_stat_archiver View .....	821
28.23. pg_stat_io View .....	821
28.24. pg_stat_bgwriter View .....	823
28.25. pg_stat_wal View .....	824
28.26. pg_stat_database View .....	825
28.27. pg_stat_database_conflicts View .....	827
28.28. pg_stat_all_tables View .....	827
28.29. pg_stat_all_indexes View .....	829
28.30. pg_statio_all_tables View .....	830
28.31. pg_statio_all_indexes View .....	830
28.32. pg_statio_all_sequences View .....	831
28.33. pg_stat_user_functions View .....	831
28.34. pg_stat_slru View .....	832
28.35. Additional Statistics Functions .....	832
28.36. Per-Backend Statistics Functions .....	834
28.37. pg_stat_progress_analyze View .....	835
28.38. ANALYZE Phases .....	836
28.39. pg_stat_progress_cluster View .....	837
28.40. CLUSTER and VACUUM FULL Phases .....	838
28.41. pg_stat_progress_copy View .....	838
28.42. pg_stat_progress_create_index View .....	839
28.43. CREATE INDEX Phases .....	840
28.44. pg_stat_progress_vacuum View .....	841
28.45. VACUUM Phases .....	841
28.46. pg_stat_progress_basebackup View .....	842
28.47. Base Backup Phases .....	843
28.48. Built-in DTrace Probes .....	844
28.49. Defined Types Used in Probe Parameters .....	850
31.1. UPDATE Transformation Summary .....	872
34.1. SSL Mode Descriptions .....	980
34.2. Libpq/Client SSL File Usage .....	980
35.1. SQL-Oriented Large Object Functions .....	1000
36.1. Mapping Between PostgreSQL Data Types and C Variable Types .....	1016
36.2. Valid Input Formats for PGTYPEStdate_from_asc .....	1034
36.3. Valid Input Formats for PGTYPEStdate_fmt_asc .....	1036
36.4. Valid Input Formats for rdefmtdate .....	1037
36.5. Valid Input Formats for PGTYPEStimestamp_from_asc .....	1038
37.1. information_schema_catalog_name Columns .....	1116
37.2. administrable_role_authorizations Columns .....	1116
37.3. applicable_roles Columns .....	1116
37.4. attributes Columns .....	1117
37.5. character_sets Columns .....	1119
37.6. check_constraint_routine_usage Columns .....	1120
37.7. check_constraints Columns .....	1120
37.8. collations Columns .....	1121
37.9. collation_character_set_applicability Columns .....	1121
37.10. column_column_usage Columns .....	1122
37.11. column_domain_usage Columns .....	1122
37.12. column_options Columns .....	1123
37.13. column_privileges Columns .....	1123
37.14. column_udt_usage Columns .....	1124
37.15. columns Columns .....	1124
37.16. constraint_column_usage Columns .....	1127
37.17. constraint_table_usage Columns .....	1128
37.18. data_type_privileges Columns .....	1129
37.19. domain_constraints Columns .....	1129



37.20. domain_udt_usage Columns .....	1130
37.21. domains Columns .....	1130
37.22. element_types Columns .....	1132
37.23. enabled_roles Columns .....	1134
37.24. foreign_data_wrapper_options Columns .....	1134
37.25. foreign_data_wrappers Columns .....	1135
37.26. foreign_server_options Columns .....	1135
37.27. foreign_servers Columns .....	1135
37.28. foreign_table_options Columns .....	1136
37.29. foreign_tables Columns .....	1136
37.30. key_column_usage Columns .....	1137
37.31. parameters Columns .....	1137
37.32. referential_constraints Columns .....	1139
37.33. role_column_grants Columns .....	1140
37.34. role_routine_grants Columns .....	1140
37.35. role_table_grants Columns .....	1141
37.36. role_udt_grants Columns .....	1142
37.37. role_usage_grants Columns .....	1142
37.38. routine_column_usage Columns .....	1143
37.39. routine_privileges Columns .....	1144
37.40. routine_routine_usage Columns .....	1144
37.41. routine_sequence_usage Columns .....	1145
37.42. routine_table_usage Columns .....	1145
37.43. routines Columns .....	1146
37.44. schemata Columns .....	1150
37.45. sequences Columns .....	1151
37.46. sql_features Columns .....	1151
37.47. sql_implementation_info Columns .....	1152
37.48. sql_parts Columns .....	1152
37.49. sql_sizing Columns .....	1153
37.50. table_constraints Columns .....	1153
37.51. table_privileges Columns .....	1154
37.52. tables Columns .....	1155
37.53. transforms Columns .....	1155
37.54. triggered_update_columns Columns .....	1156
37.55. triggers Columns .....	1156
37.56. udt_privileges Columns .....	1158
37.57. usage_privileges Columns .....	1159
37.58. user_defined_types Columns .....	1159
37.59. user_mapping_options Columns .....	1161
37.60. user_mappings Columns .....	1161
37.61. view_column_usage Columns .....	1162
37.62. view_routine_usage Columns .....	1162
37.63. view_table_usage Columns .....	1163
37.64. views Columns .....	1163
38.1. Polymorphic Types .....	1172
38.2. Equivalent C Types for Built-in SQL Types .....	1198
38.3. B-Tree Strategies .....	1234
38.4. Hash Strategies .....	1234
38.5. GiST Two-Dimensional “R-tree” Strategies .....	1234
38.6. SP-GiST Point Strategies .....	1234
38.7. GIN Array Strategies .....	1235
38.8. BRIN Minmax Strategies .....	1235
38.9. B-Tree Support Functions .....	1236
38.10. Hash Support Functions .....	1236
38.11. GiST Support Functions .....	1236
38.12. SP-GiST Support Functions .....	1237
38.13. GIN Support Functions .....	1237

38.14. BRIN Support Functions .....	1238
40.1. Event Trigger Support by Command Tag .....	1270
43.1. Available Diagnostics Items .....	1324
43.2. Error Diagnostics Items .....	1338
292. Policies Applied by Command Type .....	1734
293. pgbench Automatic Variables .....	2071
294. pgbench Operators .....	2073
295. pgbench Functions .....	2075
53.1. System Catalogs .....	2247
53.2. pg_aggregate Columns .....	2249
53.3. pg_am Columns .....	2250
53.4. pg_amop Columns .....	2251
53.5. pg_amproc Columns .....	2252
53.6. pg_attrdef Columns .....	2252
53.7. pg_attribute Columns .....	2253
53.8. pg_authid Columns .....	2255
53.9. pg_auth_members Columns .....	2256
53.10. pg_cast Columns .....	2257
53.11. pg_class Columns .....	2257
53.12. pg_collation Columns .....	2260
53.13. pg_constraint Columns .....	2261
53.14. pg_conversion Columns .....	2262
53.15. pg_database Columns .....	2263
53.16. pg_db_role_setting Columns .....	2264
53.17. pg_default_acl Columns .....	2265
53.18. pg_depend Columns .....	2265
53.19. pg_description Columns .....	2267
53.20. pg_enum Columns .....	2268
53.21. pg_event_trigger Columns .....	2268
53.22. pg_extension Columns .....	2269
53.23. pg_foreign_data_wrapper Columns .....	2269
53.24. pg_foreign_server Columns .....	2270
53.25. pg_foreign_table Columns .....	2270
53.26. pg_index Columns .....	2271
53.27. pg_inherits Columns .....	2272
53.28. pg_init_privs Columns .....	2273
53.29. pg_language Columns .....	2273
53.30. pg_largeobject Columns .....	2274
53.31. pg_largeobject_metadata Columns .....	2274
53.32. pg_namespace Columns .....	2275
53.33. pg_opclass Columns .....	2275
53.34. pg_operator Columns .....	2276
53.35. pg_opfamily Columns .....	2277
53.36. pg_parameter_acl Columns .....	2277
53.37. pg_partitioned_table Columns .....	2277
53.38. pg_policy Columns .....	2278
53.39. pg_proc Columns .....	2279
53.40. pg_publication Columns .....	2281
53.41. pg_publication_namespace Columns .....	2282
53.42. pg_publication_rel Columns .....	2282
53.43. pg_range Columns .....	2283
53.44. pg_replication_origin Columns .....	2283
53.45. pg_rewrite Columns .....	2283
53.46. pg_seclabel Columns .....	2284
53.47. pg_sequence Columns .....	2285
53.48. pg_shdepend Columns .....	2285
53.49. pg_shdescription Columns .....	2286
53.50. pg_shseclabel Columns .....	2287

53.51. pg_statistic Columns .....	2288
53.52. pg_statistic_ext Columns .....	2289
53.53. pg_statistic_ext_data Columns .....	2290
53.54. pg_subscription Columns .....	2290
53.55. pg_subscription_rel Columns .....	2291
53.56. pg_tablespace Columns .....	2292
53.57. pg_transform Columns .....	2292
53.58. pg_trigger Columns .....	2292
53.59. pg_ts_config Columns .....	2294
53.60. pg_ts_config_map Columns .....	2294
53.61. pg_ts_dict Columns .....	2295
53.62. pg_ts_parser Columns .....	2295
53.63. pg_ts_template Columns .....	2296
53.64. pg_type Columns .....	2296
53.65. typcategory Codes .....	2299
53.66. pg_user_mapping Columns .....	2300
54.1. System Views .....	2301
54.2. pg_available_extensions Columns .....	2302
54.3. pg_available_extension_versions Columns .....	2302
54.4. pg_backend_memory_contexts Columns .....	2303
54.5. pg_config Columns .....	2304
54.6. pg_cursors Columns .....	2304
54.7. pg_file_settings Columns .....	2305
54.8. pg_group Columns .....	2306
54.9. pg_hba_file_rules Columns .....	2306
54.10. pg_ident_file_mappings Columns .....	2307
54.11. pg_indexes Columns .....	2307
54.12. pg_locks Columns .....	2308
54.13. pg_matviews Columns .....	2311
54.14. pg_policies Columns .....	2311
54.15. pg_prepared_statements Columns .....	2312
54.16. pg_prepared_xacts Columns .....	2312
54.17. pg_publication_tables Columns .....	2313
54.18. pg_replication_origin_status Columns .....	2313
54.19. pg_replication_slots Columns .....	2314
54.20. pg_roles Columns .....	2315
54.21. pg_rules Columns .....	2316
54.22. pg_seclabels Columns .....	2316
54.23. pg_sequences Columns .....	2317
54.24. pg_settings Columns .....	2318
54.25. pg_shadow Columns .....	2320
54.26. pg_shmem_allocations Columns .....	2320
54.27. pg_stats Columns .....	2321
54.28. pg_stats_ext Columns .....	2322
54.29. pg_stats_ext_exprs Columns .....	2324
54.30. pg_tables Columns .....	2325
54.31. pg_timezone_abbrevs Columns .....	2326
54.32. pg_timezone_names Columns .....	2326
54.33. pg_user Columns .....	2326
54.34. pg_user_mappings Columns .....	2327
54.35. pg_views Columns .....	2328
68.1. Built-in GiST Operator Classes .....	2466
69.1. Built-in SP-GiST Operator Classes .....	2484
70.1. Built-in GIN Operator Classes .....	2497
71.1. Built-in BRIN Operator Classes .....	2505
71.2. Function and Support Numbers for Minmax Operator Classes .....	2514
71.3. Function and Support Numbers for Inclusion Operator Classes .....	2514
71.4. Procedure and Support Numbers for Bloom Operator Classes .....	2515

71.5. Procedure and Support Numbers for minmax-multi Operator Classes .....	2516
73.1. Contents of PGDATA .....	2519
73.2. Page Layout .....	2525
73.3. PageHeaderData Layout .....	2526
73.4. HeapTupleHeaderData Layout .....	2527
A.1. PostgreSQL Error Codes .....	2559
B.1. Month Names .....	2570
B.2. Day of the Week Names .....	2570
B.3. Date/Time Field Modifiers .....	2570
C.1. SQL Key Words .....	2576
F.1. adminpack Functions .....	2661
F.2. Cube External Representations .....	2685
F.3. Cube Operators .....	2685
F.4. Cube Functions .....	2686
F.5. Cube-Based Earthdistance Functions .....	2725
F.6. Point-Based Earthdistance Operators .....	2726
F.7. hstore Operators .....	2736
F.8. hstore Functions .....	2737
F.9. intarray Functions .....	2745
F.10. intarray Operators .....	2746
F.11. isn Data Types .....	2749
F.12. isn Functions .....	2750
F.13. ltree Operators .....	2756
F.14. ltree Functions .....	2758
F.15. pg_buffercache Columns .....	2776
F.16. pg_buffercache_summary() Output Columns .....	2777
F.17. pg_buffercache_usage_counts() Output Columns .....	2777
F.18. Supported Algorithms for crypt() .....	2781
F.19. Iteration Counts for crypt() .....	2781
F.20. Hash Algorithm Speeds .....	2782
F.21. pgrowlocks Output Columns .....	2795
F.22. pg_stat_statements Columns .....	2797
F.23. pg_stat_statements_info Columns .....	2801
F.24. pgstattuple Output Columns .....	2805
F.25. pgstattuple_approx Output Columns .....	2808
F.26. pg_trgm Functions .....	2812
F.27. pg_trgm Operators .....	2813
F.28. seg External Representations .....	2835
F.29. Examples of Valid seg Input .....	2835
F.30. Seg GiST Operators .....	2835
F.31. Sepgsql Functions .....	2843
F.32. tablefunc Functions .....	2849
F.33. connectby Parameters .....	2856
F.34. Functions for UUID Generation .....	2867
F.35. Functions Returning UUID Constants .....	2868
F.36. xml2 Functions .....	2869
F.37. xpath_table Parameters .....	2870
K.1. PostgreSQL Limitations .....	2891

---

## List of Examples

8.1. Using the Character Types .....	155
8.2. Using the boolean Type .....	168
8.3. Using the Bit String Types .....	176
9.1. XSLT Stylesheet for Converting SQL/XML Output to HTML .....	321
10.1. Square Root Operator Type Resolution .....	418
10.2. String Concatenation Operator Type Resolution .....	419
10.3. Absolute-Value and Negation Operator Type Resolution .....	419
10.4. Array Inclusion Operator Type Resolution .....	420
10.5. Custom Operator on a Domain Type .....	420
10.6. Rounding Function Argument Type Resolution .....	423
10.7. Variadic Function Resolution .....	423
10.8. Substring Function Type Resolution .....	424
10.9. character Storage Type Conversion .....	425
10.10. Type Resolution with Underspecified Types in a Union .....	426
10.11. Type Resolution in a Simple Union .....	426
10.12. Type Resolution in a Transposed Union .....	427
10.13. Type Resolution in a Nested Union .....	427
11.1. Setting up a Partial Index to Exclude Common Values .....	436
11.2. Setting up a Partial Index to Exclude Uninteresting Values .....	437
11.3. Setting up a Partial Unique Index .....	438
11.4. Do Not Use Partial Indexes as a Substitute for Partitioning .....	438
21.1. Example pg_hba.conf Entries .....	693
21.2. An Example pg_ident.conf File .....	697
34.1. libpq Example Program 1 .....	984
34.2. libpq Example Program 2 .....	986
34.3. libpq Example Program 3 .....	989
35.1. Large Objects with libpq Example Program .....	1001
36.1. Example SQLDA Program .....	1054
36.2. ECPG Program Accessing Large Objects .....	1068
42.1. Manual Installation of PL/Perl .....	1305
43.1. Quoting Values in Dynamic Queries .....	1322
43.2. Exceptions with UPDATE/INSERT .....	1337
43.3. A PL/pgSQL Trigger Function .....	1351
43.4. A PL/pgSQL Trigger Function for Auditing .....	1352
43.5. A PL/pgSQL View Trigger Function for Auditing .....	1353
43.6. A PL/pgSQL Trigger Function for Maintaining a Summary Table .....	1354
43.7. Auditing with Transition Tables .....	1356
43.8. A PL/pgSQL Event Trigger Function .....	1358
43.9. Porting a Simple Function from PL/SQL to PL/pgSQL .....	1366
43.10. Porting a Function that Creates Another Function from PL/SQL to PL/pgSQL .....	1367
43.11. Porting a Procedure With String Manipulation and OUT Parameters from PL/SQL to PL/pgSQL .....	1368
43.12. Porting a Procedure from PL/SQL to PL/pgSQL .....	1370
F.1. Create a Foreign Table for PostgreSQL CSV Logs .....	2728

---

# Preface

This book is the official documentation of PostgreSQL. It has been written by the PostgreSQL developers and other volunteers in parallel to the development of the PostgreSQL software. It describes all the functionality that the current version of PostgreSQL officially supports.

To make the large amount of information about PostgreSQL manageable, this book has been organized in several parts. Each part is targeted at a different class of users, or at users in different stages of their PostgreSQL experience:

- Part I is an informal introduction for new users.
- Part II documents the SQL query language environment, including data types and functions, as well as user-level performance tuning. Every PostgreSQL user should read this.
- Part III describes the installation and administration of the server. Everyone who runs a PostgreSQL server, be it for private use or for others, should read this part.
- Part IV describes the programming interfaces for PostgreSQL client programs.
- Part V contains information for advanced users about the extensibility capabilities of the server. Topics include user-defined data types and functions.
- Part VI contains reference information about SQL commands, client and server programs. This part supports the other parts with structured information sorted by command or program.
- Part VII contains assorted information that might be of use to PostgreSQL developers.

## 1. What Is PostgreSQL?

PostgreSQL is an object-relational database management system (ORDBMS) based on POSTGRES, Version 4.2<sup>1</sup>, developed at the University of California at Berkeley Computer Science Department. POSTGRES pioneered many concepts that only became available in some commercial database systems much later.

PostgreSQL is an open-source descendant of this original Berkeley code. It supports a large part of the SQL standard and offers many modern features:

- complex queries
- foreign keys
- triggers
- updatable views
- transactional integrity
- multiversion concurrency control

Also, PostgreSQL can be extended by the user in many ways, for example by adding new

- data types
- functions
- operators
- aggregate functions
- index methods
- procedural languages

And because of the liberal license, PostgreSQL can be used, modified, and distributed by anyone free of charge for any purpose, be it private, commercial, or academic.

## 2. A Brief History of PostgreSQL

---

<sup>1</sup> <https://dsf.berkeley.edu/postgres.html>

The object-relational database management system now known as PostgreSQL is derived from the POSTGRES package written at the University of California at Berkeley. With decades of development behind it, PostgreSQL is now the most advanced open-source database available anywhere.

## 2.1. The Berkeley POSTGRES Project

The POSTGRES project, led by Professor Michael Stonebraker, was sponsored by the Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency (DARPA), the Army Research Office (ARO), the National Science Foundation (NSF), and ESL, Inc. The implementation of POSTGRES began in 1986. The initial concepts for the system were presented in [ston86], and the definition of the initial data model appeared in [rowe87]. The design of the rule system at that time was described in [ston87a]. The rationale and architecture of the storage manager were detailed in [ston87b].

POSTGRES has undergone several major releases since then. The first “demoware” system became operational in 1987 and was shown at the 1988 ACM-SIGMOD Conference. Version 1, described in [ston90a], was released to a few external users in June 1989. In response to a critique of the first rule system ([ston89]), the rule system was redesigned ([ston90b]), and Version 2 was released in June 1990 with the new rule system. Version 3 appeared in 1991 and added support for multiple storage managers, an improved query executor, and a rewritten rule system. For the most part, subsequent releases until Postgres95 (see below) focused on portability and reliability.

POSTGRES has been used to implement many different research and production applications. These include: a financial data analysis system, a jet engine performance monitoring package, an asteroid tracking database, a medical information database, and several geographic information systems. POSTGRES has also been used as an educational tool at several universities. Finally, Illustra Information Technologies (later merged into Informix<sup>2</sup>, which is now owned by IBM<sup>3</sup>) picked up the code and commercialized it. In late 1992, POSTGRES became the primary data manager for the Sequoia 2000 scientific computing project<sup>4</sup>.

The size of the external user community nearly doubled during 1993. It became increasingly obvious that maintenance of the prototype code and support was taking up large amounts of time that should have been devoted to database research. In an effort to reduce this support burden, the Berkeley POSTGRES project officially ended with Version 4.2.

## 2.2. Postgres95

In 1994, Andrew Yu and Jolly Chen added an SQL language interpreter to POSTGRES. Under a new name, Postgres95 was subsequently released to the web to find its own way in the world as an open-source descendant of the original POSTGRES Berkeley code.

Postgres95 code was completely ANSI C and trimmed in size by 25%. Many internal changes improved performance and maintainability. Postgres95 release 1.0.x ran about 30–50% faster on the Wisconsin Benchmark compared to POSTGRES, Version 4.2. Apart from bug fixes, the following were the major enhancements:

- The query language PostQUEL was replaced with SQL (implemented in the server). (Interface library libpq was named after PostQUEL.) Subqueries were not supported until PostgreSQL (see below), but they could be imitated in Postgres95 with user-defined SQL functions. Aggregate functions were re-implemented. Support for the GROUP BY query clause was also added.
- A new program (psql) was provided for interactive SQL queries, which used GNU Readline. This largely superseded the old monitor program.
- A new front-end library, libpqtc1, supported Tcl-based clients. A sample shell, pgtclsh, provided new Tcl commands to interface Tcl programs with the Postgres95 server.

---

<sup>2</sup> <https://www.ibm.com/analytics/informix>

<sup>3</sup> <https://www.ibm.com/>

<sup>4</sup> [http://meteora.ucsd.edu/s2k/s2k\\_home.html](http://meteora.ucsd.edu/s2k/s2k_home.html)

- The large-object interface was overhauled. The inversion large objects were the only mechanism for storing large objects. (The inversion file system was removed.)
- The instance-level rule system was removed. Rules were still available as rewrite rules.
- A short tutorial introducing regular SQL features as well as those of Postgres95 was distributed with the source code
- GNU make (instead of BSD make) was used for the build. Also, Postgres95 could be compiled with an unpatched GCC (data alignment of doubles was fixed).

## 2.3. PostgreSQL

By 1996, it became clear that the name “Postgres95” would not stand the test of time. We chose a new name, PostgreSQL, to reflect the relationship between the original POSTGRES and the more recent versions with SQL capability. At the same time, we set the version numbering to start at 6.0, putting the numbers back into the sequence originally begun by the Berkeley POSTGRES project.

Many people continue to refer to PostgreSQL as “Postgres” (now rarely in all capital letters) because of tradition or because it is easier to pronounce. This usage is widely accepted as a nickname or alias.

The emphasis during development of Postgres95 was on identifying and understanding existing problems in the server code. With PostgreSQL, the emphasis has shifted to augmenting features and capabilities, although work continues in all areas.

Details about what has happened in PostgreSQL since then can be found in Appendix E.

## 3. Conventions

The following conventions are used in the synopsis of a command: brackets ( [ and ] ) indicate optional parts. Braces ( { and } ) and vertical lines ( | ) indicate that you must choose one alternative. Dots ( . . . ) mean that the preceding element can be repeated. All other symbols, including parentheses, should be taken literally.

Where it enhances the clarity, SQL commands are preceded by the prompt `=>`, and shell commands are preceded by the prompt `$`. Normally, prompts are not shown, though.

An *administrator* is generally a person who is in charge of installing and running the server. A *user* could be anyone who is using, or wants to use, any part of the PostgreSQL system. These terms should not be interpreted too narrowly; this book does not have fixed presumptions about system administration procedures.

## 4. Further Information

Besides the documentation, that is, this book, there are other resources about PostgreSQL:

### Wiki

The PostgreSQL wiki<sup>5</sup> contains the project's FAQ<sup>6</sup> (Frequently Asked Questions) list, TODO<sup>7</sup> list, and detailed information about many more topics.

### Web Site

The PostgreSQL web site<sup>8</sup> carries details on the latest release and other information to make your work or play with PostgreSQL more productive.

---

<sup>5</sup> <https://wiki.postgresql.org>

<sup>6</sup> [https://wiki.postgresql.org/wiki/Frequently\\_Asked\\_Questions](https://wiki.postgresql.org/wiki/Frequently_Asked_Questions)

<sup>7</sup> <https://wiki.postgresql.org/wiki/ToDo>

<sup>8</sup> <https://www.postgresql.org>



### Mailing Lists

The mailing lists are a good place to have your questions answered, to share experiences with other users, and to contact the developers. Consult the PostgreSQL web site for details.

### Yourself!

PostgreSQL is an open-source project. As such, it depends on the user community for ongoing support. As you begin to use PostgreSQL, you will rely on others for help, either through the documentation or through the mailing lists. Consider contributing your knowledge back. Read the mailing lists and answer questions. If you learn something which is not in the documentation, write it up and contribute it. If you add features to the code, contribute them.

## 5. Bug Reporting Guidelines

When you find a bug in PostgreSQL we want to hear about it. Your bug reports play an important part in making PostgreSQL more reliable because even the utmost care cannot guarantee that every part of PostgreSQL will work on every platform under every circumstance.

The following suggestions are intended to assist you in forming bug reports that can be handled in an effective fashion. No one is required to follow them but doing so tends to be to everyone's advantage.

We cannot promise to fix every bug right away. If the bug is obvious, critical, or affects a lot of users, chances are good that someone will look into it. It could also happen that we tell you to update to a newer version to see if the bug happens there. Or we might decide that the bug cannot be fixed before some major rewrite we might be planning is done. Or perhaps it is simply too hard and there are more important things on the agenda. If you need help immediately, consider obtaining a commercial support contract.

### 5.1. Identifying Bugs

Before you report a bug, please read and re-read the documentation to verify that you can really do whatever it is you are trying. If it is not clear from the documentation whether you can do something or not, please report that too; it is a bug in the documentation. If it turns out that a program does something different from what the documentation says, that is a bug. That might include, but is not limited to, the following circumstances:

- A program terminates with a fatal signal or an operating system error message that would point to a problem in the program. (A counterexample might be a “disk full” message, since you have to fix that yourself.)
- A program produces the wrong output for any given input.
- A program refuses to accept valid input (as defined in the documentation).
- A program accepts invalid input without a notice or error message. But keep in mind that your idea of invalid input might be our idea of an extension or compatibility with traditional practice.
- PostgreSQL fails to compile, build, or install according to the instructions on supported platforms.

Here “program” refers to any executable, not only the backend process.

Being slow or resource-hogging is not necessarily a bug. Read the documentation or ask on one of the mailing lists for help in tuning your applications. Failing to comply to the SQL standard is not necessarily a bug either, unless compliance for the specific feature is explicitly claimed.

Before you continue, check on the TODO list and in the FAQ to see if your bug is already known. If you cannot decode the information on the TODO list, report your problem. The least we can do is make the TODO list clearer.

## 5.2. What to Report

The most important thing to remember about bug reporting is to state all the facts and only facts. Do not speculate what you think went wrong, what “it seemed to do”, or which part of the program has a fault. If you are not familiar with the implementation you would probably guess wrong and not help us a bit. And even if you are, educated explanations are a great supplement to but no substitute for facts. If we are going to fix the bug we still have to see it happen for ourselves first. Reporting the bare facts is relatively straightforward (you can probably copy and paste them from the screen) but all too often important details are left out because someone thought it does not matter or the report would be understood anyway.

The following items should be contained in every bug report:

- The exact sequence of steps *from program start-up* necessary to reproduce the problem. This should be self-contained; it is not enough to send in a bare `SELECT` statement without the preceding `CREATE TABLE` and `INSERT` statements, if the output should depend on the data in the tables. We do not have the time to reverse-engineer your database schema, and if we are supposed to make up our own data we would probably miss the problem.

The best format for a test case for SQL-related problems is a file that can be run through the `psql` frontend that shows the problem. (Be sure to not have anything in your `~/.psqlrc` start-up file.) An easy way to create this file is to use `pg_dump` to dump out the table declarations and data needed to set the scene, then add the problem query. You are encouraged to minimize the size of your example, but this is not absolutely necessary. If the bug is reproducible, we will find it either way.

If your application uses some other client interface, such as PHP, then please try to isolate the offending queries. We will probably not set up a web server to reproduce your problem. In any case remember to provide the exact input files; do not guess that the problem happens for “large files” or “midsize databases”, etc. since this information is too inexact to be of use.

- The output you got. Please do not say that it “didn't work” or “crashed”. If there is an error message, show it, even if you do not understand it. If the program terminates with an operating system error, say which. If nothing at all happens, say so. Even if the result of your test case is a program crash or otherwise obvious it might not happen on our platform. The easiest thing is to copy the output from the terminal, if possible.

### Note

If you are reporting an error message, please obtain the most verbose form of the message. In `psql`, say `\set VERBOSITY verbose` beforehand. If you are extracting the message from the server log, set the run-time parameter `log_error_verbosity` to `verbose` so that all details are logged.

### Note

In case of fatal errors, the error message reported by the client might not contain all the information available. Please also look at the log output of the database server. If you do not keep your server's log output, this would be a good time to start doing so.

- The output you expected is very important to state. If you just write “This command gives me that output.” or “This is not what I expected.”, we might run it ourselves, scan the output, and think it looks OK and is exactly what we expected. We should not have to spend the time to decode the exact semantics behind your commands. Especially refrain from merely saying that “This is not what SQL says/Oracle does.” Digging out the correct behavior from SQL is not a fun undertaking,

nor do we all know how all the other relational databases out there behave. (If your problem is a program crash, you can obviously omit this item.)

- Any command line options and other start-up options, including any relevant environment variables or configuration files that you changed from the default. Again, please provide exact information. If you are using a prepackaged distribution that starts the database server at boot time, you should try to find out how that is done.
- Anything you did at all differently from the installation instructions.
- The PostgreSQL version. You can run the command `SELECT version();` to find out the version of the server you are connected to. Most executable programs also support a `--version` option; at least `postgres --version` and `psql --version` should work. If the function or the options do not exist then your version is more than old enough to warrant an upgrade. If you run a prepackaged version, such as RPMs, say so, including any subversion the package might have. If you are talking about a Git snapshot, mention that, including the commit hash.

If your version is older than 16.2 we will almost certainly tell you to upgrade. There are many bug fixes and improvements in each new release, so it is quite possible that a bug you have encountered in an older release of PostgreSQL has already been fixed. We can only provide limited support for sites using older releases of PostgreSQL; if you require more than we can provide, consider acquiring a commercial support contract.

- Platform information. This includes the kernel name and version, C library, processor, memory information, and so on. In most cases it is sufficient to report the vendor and version, but do not assume everyone knows what exactly “Debian” contains or that everyone runs on `x86_64`. If you have installation problems then information about the toolchain on your machine (compiler, make, and so on) is also necessary.

Do not be afraid if your bug report becomes rather lengthy. That is a fact of life. It is better to report everything the first time than us having to squeeze the facts out of you. On the other hand, if your input files are huge, it is fair to ask first whether somebody is interested in looking into it. Here is an article<sup>9</sup> that outlines some more tips on reporting bugs.

Do not spend all your time to figure out which changes in the input make the problem go away. This will probably not help solving it. If it turns out that the bug cannot be fixed right away, you will still have time to find and share your work-around. Also, once again, do not waste your time guessing why the bug exists. We will find that out soon enough.

When writing a bug report, please avoid confusing terminology. The software package in total is called “PostgreSQL”, sometimes “Postgres” for short. If you are specifically talking about the backend process, mention that, do not just say “PostgreSQL crashes”. A crash of a single backend process is quite different from crash of the parent “postgres” process; please don't say “the server crashed” when you mean a single backend process went down, nor vice versa. Also, client programs such as the interactive frontend “psql” are completely separate from the backend. Please try to be specific about whether the problem is on the client or server side.

## 5.3. Where to Report Bugs

In general, send bug reports to the bug report mailing list at `<pgsql-bugs@lists.postgresql.org>`. You are requested to use a descriptive subject for your email message, perhaps parts of the error message.

Another method is to fill in the bug report web-form available at the project's web site<sup>10</sup>. Entering a bug report this way causes it to be mailed to the `<pgsql-bugs@lists.postgresql.org>` mailing list.

---

<sup>9</sup> <https://www.chiark.greenend.org.uk/~sgtatham/bugs.html>

<sup>10</sup> <https://www.postgresql.org/>

If your bug report has security implications and you'd prefer that it not become immediately visible in public archives, don't send it to `pgsql-bugs`. Security issues can be reported privately to `<security@postgresql.org>`.

Do not send bug reports to any of the user mailing lists, such as `<pgsql-sql@lists.postgresql.org>` or `<pgsql-general@lists.postgresql.org>`. These mailing lists are for answering user questions, and their subscribers normally do not wish to receive bug reports. More importantly, they are unlikely to fix them.

Also, please do *not* send reports to the developers' mailing list `<pgsql-hackers@lists.postgresql.org>`. This list is for discussing the development of PostgreSQL, and it would be nice if we could keep the bug reports separate. We might choose to take up a discussion about your bug report on `pgsql-hackers`, if the problem needs more review.

If you have a problem with the documentation, the best place to report it is the documentation mailing list `<pgsql-docs@lists.postgresql.org>`. Please be specific about what part of the documentation you are unhappy with.

If your bug is a portability problem on a non-supported platform, send mail to `<pgsql-hackers@lists.postgresql.org>`, so we (and you) can work on porting PostgreSQL to your platform.

### Note

Due to the unfortunate amount of spam going around, all of the above lists will be moderated unless you are subscribed. That means there will be some delay before the email is delivered. If you wish to subscribe to the lists, please visit <https://lists.postgresql.org/> for instructions.

---

# Part I. Tutorial

Welcome to the PostgreSQL Tutorial. The following few chapters are intended to give a simple introduction to PostgreSQL, relational database concepts, and the SQL language to those who are new to any one of these aspects. We only assume some general knowledge about how to use computers. No particular Unix or programming experience is required. This part is mainly intended to give you some hands-on experience with important aspects of the PostgreSQL system. It makes no attempt to be a complete or thorough treatment of the topics it covers.

After you have worked through this tutorial you might want to move on to reading Part II to gain a more formal knowledge of the SQL language, or Part IV for information about developing applications for PostgreSQL. Those who set up and manage their own server should also read Part III.

---

---

# Table of Contents

1. Getting Started .....	3
1.1. Installation .....	3
1.2. Architectural Fundamentals .....	3
1.3. Creating a Database .....	3
1.4. Accessing a Database .....	5
2. The SQL Language .....	7
2.1. Introduction .....	7
2.2. Concepts .....	7
2.3. Creating a New Table .....	7
2.4. Populating a Table With Rows .....	8
2.5. Querying a Table .....	9
2.6. Joins Between Tables .....	11
2.7. Aggregate Functions .....	13
2.8. Updates .....	15
2.9. Deletions .....	15
3. Advanced Features .....	17
3.1. Introduction .....	17
3.2. Views .....	17
3.3. Foreign Keys .....	17
3.4. Transactions .....	18
3.5. Window Functions .....	20
3.6. Inheritance .....	23
3.7. Conclusion .....	24

---

# Chapter 1. Getting Started

## 1.1. Installation

Before you can use PostgreSQL you need to install it, of course. It is possible that PostgreSQL is already installed at your site, either because it was included in your operating system distribution or because the system administrator already installed it. If that is the case, you should obtain information from the operating system documentation or your system administrator about how to access PostgreSQL.

If you are not sure whether PostgreSQL is already available or whether you can use it for your experimentation then you can install it yourself. Doing so is not hard and it can be a good exercise. PostgreSQL can be installed by any unprivileged user; no superuser (root) access is required.

If you are installing PostgreSQL yourself, then refer to Chapter 17 for instructions on installation, and return to this guide when the installation is complete. Be sure to follow closely the section about setting up the appropriate environment variables.

If your site administrator has not set things up in the default way, you might have some more work to do. For example, if the database server machine is a remote machine, you will need to set the `PGHOST` environment variable to the name of the database server machine. The environment variable `PGPORT` might also have to be set. The bottom line is this: if you try to start an application program and it complains that it cannot connect to the database, you should consult your site administrator or, if that is you, the documentation to make sure that your environment is properly set up. If you did not understand the preceding paragraph then read the next section.

## 1.2. Architectural Fundamentals

Before we proceed, you should understand the basic PostgreSQL system architecture. Understanding how the parts of PostgreSQL interact will make this chapter somewhat clearer.

In database jargon, PostgreSQL uses a client/server model. A PostgreSQL session consists of the following cooperating processes (programs):

- A server process, which manages the database files, accepts connections to the database from client applications, and performs database actions on behalf of the clients. The database server program is called `postgres`.
- The user's client (frontend) application that wants to perform database operations. Client applications can be very diverse in nature: a client could be a text-oriented tool, a graphical application, a web server that accesses the database to display web pages, or a specialized database maintenance tool. Some client applications are supplied with the PostgreSQL distribution; most are developed by users.

As is typical of client/server applications, the client and the server can be on different hosts. In that case they communicate over a TCP/IP network connection. You should keep this in mind, because the files that can be accessed on a client machine might not be accessible (or might only be accessible using a different file name) on the database server machine.

The PostgreSQL server can handle multiple concurrent connections from clients. To achieve this it starts (“forks”) a new process for each connection. From that point on, the client and the new server process communicate without intervention by the original `postgres` process. Thus, the supervisor server process is always running, waiting for client connections, whereas client and associated server processes come and go. (All of this is of course invisible to the user. We only mention it here for completeness.)

## 1.3. Creating a Database

The first test to see whether you can access the database server is to try to create a database. A running PostgreSQL server can manage many databases. Typically, a separate database is used for each project or for each user.

Possibly, your site administrator has already created a database for your use. In that case you can omit this step and skip ahead to the next section.

To create a new database, in this example named `mydb`, you use the following command:

```
$ createdb mydb
```

If this produces no response then this step was successful and you can skip over the remainder of this section.

If you see a message similar to:

```
createdb: command not found
```

then PostgreSQL was not installed properly. Either it was not installed at all or your shell's search path was not set to include it. Try calling the command with an absolute path instead:

```
$ /usr/local/pgsql/bin/createdb mydb
```

The path at your site might be different. Contact your site administrator or check the installation instructions to correct the situation.

Another response could be this:

```
createdb: error: connection to server on socket "/  
tmp/.s.PGSQL.5432" failed: No such file or directory  
        Is the server running locally and accepting connections on  
        that socket?
```

This means that the server was not started, or it is not listening where `createdb` expects to contact it. Again, check the installation instructions or consult the administrator.

Another response could be this:

```
createdb: error: connection to server on socket "/  
tmp/.s.PGSQL.5432" failed: FATAL:  role "joe" does not exist
```

where your own login name is mentioned. This will happen if the administrator has not created a PostgreSQL user account for you. (PostgreSQL user accounts are distinct from operating system user accounts.) If you are the administrator, see Chapter 22 for help creating accounts. You will need to become the operating system user under which PostgreSQL was installed (usually `postgres`) to create the first user account. It could also be that you were assigned a PostgreSQL user name that is different from your operating system user name; in that case you need to use the `-U` switch or set the `PGUSER` environment variable to specify your PostgreSQL user name.

If you have a user account but it does not have the privileges required to create a database, you will see the following:

```
createdb: error: database creation failed: ERROR:  permission  
denied to create database
```



Not every user has authorization to create new databases. If PostgreSQL refuses to create databases for you then the site administrator needs to grant you permission to create databases. Consult your site administrator if this occurs. If you installed PostgreSQL yourself then you should log in for the purposes of this tutorial under the user account that you started the server as.<sup>1</sup>

You can also create databases with other names. PostgreSQL allows you to create any number of databases at a given site. Database names must have an alphabetic first character and are limited to 63 bytes in length. A convenient choice is to create a database with the same name as your current user name. Many tools assume that database name as the default, so it can save you some typing. To create that database, simply type:

```
$ createdb
```

If you do not want to use your database anymore you can remove it. For example, if you are the owner (creator) of the database `mydb`, you can destroy it using the following command:

```
$ dropdb mydb
```

(For this command, the database name does not default to the user account name. You always need to specify it.) This action physically removes all files associated with the database and cannot be undone, so this should only be done with a great deal of forethought.

More about `createdb` and `dropdb` can be found in `createdb` and `dropdb` respectively.

## 1.4. Accessing a Database

Once you have created a database, you can access it by:

- Running the PostgreSQL interactive terminal program, called *psql*, which allows you to interactively enter, edit, and execute SQL commands.
- Using an existing graphical frontend tool like pgAdmin or an office suite with ODBC or JDBC support to create and manipulate a database. These possibilities are not covered in this tutorial.
- Writing a custom application, using one of the several available language bindings. These possibilities are discussed further in Part IV.

You probably want to start up `psql` to try the examples in this tutorial. It can be activated for the `mydb` database by typing the command:

```
$ psql mydb
```

If you do not supply the database name then it will default to your user account name. You already discovered this scheme in the previous section using `createdb`.

In `psql`, you will be greeted with the following message:

```
psql (16.2)
Type "help" for help.

mydb=>
```

The last line could also be:

---

<sup>1</sup> As an explanation for why this works: PostgreSQL user names are separate from operating system user accounts. When you connect to a database, you can choose what PostgreSQL user name to connect as; if you don't, it will default to the same name as your current operating system account. As it happens, there will always be a PostgreSQL user account that has the same name as the operating system user that started the server, and it also happens that that user always has permission to create databases. Instead of logging in as that user you can also specify the `-U` option everywhere to select a PostgreSQL user name to connect as.

```
mydb=#
```

That would mean you are a database superuser, which is most likely the case if you installed the PostgreSQL instance yourself. Being a superuser means that you are not subject to access controls. For the purposes of this tutorial that is not important.

If you encounter problems starting `psql` then go back to the previous section. The diagnostics of `createdb` and `psql` are similar, and if the former worked the latter should work as well.

The last line printed out by `psql` is the prompt, and it indicates that `psql` is listening to you and that you can type SQL queries into a work space maintained by `psql`. Try out these commands:

```
mydb=> SELECT version();
                                version
-----
PostgreSQL 16.2 on x86_64-pc-linux-gnu, compiled by gcc (Debian
4.9.2-10) 4.9.2, 64-bit
(1 row)

mydb=> SELECT current_date;
      date
-----
2016-01-07
(1 row)

mydb=> SELECT 2 + 2;
?column?
-----
4
(1 row)
```

The `psql` program has a number of internal commands that are not SQL commands. They begin with the backslash character, “\”. For example, you can get help on the syntax of various PostgreSQL SQL commands by typing:

```
mydb=> \h
```

To get out of `psql`, type:

```
mydb=> \q
```

and `psql` will quit and return you to your command shell. (For more internal commands, type `\?` at the `psql` prompt.) The full capabilities of `psql` are documented in `psql`. In this tutorial we will not use these features explicitly, but you can use them yourself when it is helpful.

---

# Chapter 2. The SQL Language

## 2.1. Introduction

This chapter provides an overview of how to use SQL to perform simple operations. This tutorial is only intended to give you an introduction and is in no way a complete tutorial on SQL. Numerous books have been written on SQL, including [melt93] and [date97]. You should be aware that some PostgreSQL language features are extensions to the standard.

In the examples that follow, we assume that you have created a database named `mydb`, as described in the previous chapter, and have been able to start `psql`.

Examples in this manual can also be found in the PostgreSQL source distribution in the directory `src/tutorial/`. (Binary distributions of PostgreSQL might not provide those files.) To use those files, first change to that directory and run `make`:

```
$ cd ../src/tutorial
$ make
```

This creates the scripts and compiles the C files containing user-defined functions and types. Then, to start the tutorial, do the following:

```
$ psql -s mydb

...

mydb=> \i basics.sql
```

The `\i` command reads in commands from the specified file. `psql`'s `-s` option puts you in single step mode which pauses before sending each statement to the server. The commands used in this section are in the file `basics.sql`.

## 2.2. Concepts

PostgreSQL is a *relational database management system* (RDBMS). That means it is a system for managing data stored in *relations*. Relation is essentially a mathematical term for *table*. The notion of storing data in tables is so commonplace today that it might seem inherently obvious, but there are a number of other ways of organizing databases. Files and directories on Unix-like operating systems form an example of a hierarchical database. A more modern development is the object-oriented database.

Each table is a named collection of *rows*. Each row of a given table has the same set of named *columns*, and each column is of a specific data type. Whereas columns have a fixed order in each row, it is important to remember that SQL does not guarantee the order of the rows within the table in any way (although they can be explicitly sorted for display).

Tables are grouped into databases, and a collection of databases managed by a single PostgreSQL server instance constitutes a database *cluster*.

## 2.3. Creating a New Table

You can create a new table by specifying the table name, along with all column names and their types:

```
CREATE TABLE weather (  
    city          varchar(80),  
    temp_lo       int,          -- low temperature  
    temp_hi       int,          -- high temperature  
    prcp          real,         -- precipitation  
    date          date  
);
```

You can enter this into `psql` with the line breaks. `psql` will recognize that the command is not terminated until the semicolon.

White space (i.e., spaces, tabs, and newlines) can be used freely in SQL commands. That means you can type the command aligned differently than above, or even all on one line. Two dashes (“--”) introduce comments. Whatever follows them is ignored up to the end of the line. SQL is case-insensitive about key words and identifiers, except when identifiers are double-quoted to preserve the case (not done above).

`varchar(80)` specifies a data type that can store arbitrary character strings up to 80 characters in length. `int` is the normal integer type. `real` is a type for storing single precision floating-point numbers. `date` should be self-explanatory. (Yes, the column of type `date` is also named `date`. This might be convenient or confusing — you choose.)

PostgreSQL supports the standard SQL types `int`, `smallint`, `real`, `double precision`, `char(N)`, `varchar(N)`, `date`, `time`, `timestamp`, and `interval`, as well as other types of general utility and a rich set of geometric types. PostgreSQL can be customized with an arbitrary number of user-defined data types. Consequently, type names are not key words in the syntax, except where required to support special cases in the SQL standard.

The second example will store cities and their associated geographical location:

```
CREATE TABLE cities (  
    name          varchar(80),  
    location      point  
);
```

The `point` type is an example of a PostgreSQL-specific data type.

Finally, it should be mentioned that if you don't need a table any longer or want to recreate it differently you can remove it using the following command:

```
DROP TABLE tablename;
```

## 2.4. Populating a Table With Rows

The `INSERT` statement is used to populate a table with rows:

```
INSERT INTO weather VALUES ('San Francisco', 46, 50, 0.25,  
    '1994-11-27');
```

Note that all data types use rather obvious input formats. Constants that are not simple numeric values usually must be surrounded by single quotes (‘’), as in the example. The `date` type is actually quite flexible in what it accepts, but for this tutorial we will stick to the unambiguous format shown here.

The `point` type requires a coordinate pair as input, as shown here:

```
INSERT INTO cities VALUES ('San Francisco', '(-194.0, 53.0)');
```

The syntax used so far requires you to remember the order of the columns. An alternative syntax allows you to list the columns explicitly:

```
INSERT INTO weather (city, temp_lo, temp_hi, prcp, date)
VALUES ('San Francisco', 43, 57, 0.0, '1994-11-29');
```

You can list the columns in a different order if you wish or even omit some columns, e.g., if the precipitation is unknown:

```
INSERT INTO weather (date, city, temp_hi, temp_lo)
VALUES ('1994-11-29', 'Hayward', 54, 37);
```

Many developers consider explicitly listing the columns better style than relying on the order implicitly.

Please enter all the commands shown above so you have some data to work with in the following sections.

You could also have used `COPY` to load large amounts of data from flat-text files. This is usually faster because the `COPY` command is optimized for this application while allowing less flexibility than `INSERT`. An example would be:

```
COPY weather FROM '/home/user/weather.txt';
```

where the file name for the source file must be available on the machine running the backend process, not the client, since the backend process reads the file directly. You can read more about the `COPY` command in `COPY`.

## 2.5. Querying a Table

To retrieve data from a table, the table is *queried*. An SQL `SELECT` statement is used to do this. The statement is divided into a select list (the part that lists the columns to be returned), a table list (the part that lists the tables from which to retrieve the data), and an optional qualification (the part that specifies any restrictions). For example, to retrieve all the rows of table `weather`, type:

```
SELECT * FROM weather;
```

Here `*` is a shorthand for “all columns”.<sup>1</sup> So the same result would be had with:

```
SELECT city, temp_lo, temp_hi, prcp, date FROM weather;
```

The output should be:

city	temp_lo	temp_hi	prcp	date
San Francisco	46	50	0.25	1994-11-27
San Francisco	43	57	0	1994-11-29
Hayward	37	54		1994-11-29

(3 rows)

You can write expressions, not just simple column references, in the select list. For example, you can do:

---

<sup>1</sup> While `SELECT *` is useful for off-the-cuff queries, it is widely considered bad style in production code, since adding a column to the table would change the results.

```
SELECT city, (temp_hi+temp_lo)/2 AS temp_avg, date FROM weather;
```

This should give:

city	temp_avg	date
San Francisco	48	1994-11-27
San Francisco	50	1994-11-29
Hayward	45	1994-11-29

(3 rows)

Notice how the AS clause is used to relabel the output column. (The AS clause is optional.)

A query can be “qualified” by adding a WHERE clause that specifies which rows are wanted. The WHERE clause contains a Boolean (truth value) expression, and only rows for which the Boolean expression is true are returned. The usual Boolean operators (AND, OR, and NOT) are allowed in the qualification. For example, the following retrieves the weather of San Francisco on rainy days:

```
SELECT * FROM weather
WHERE city = 'San Francisco' AND prcp > 0.0;
```

Result:

city	temp_lo	temp_hi	prcp	date
San Francisco	46	50	0.25	1994-11-27

(1 row)

You can request that the results of a query be returned in sorted order:

```
SELECT * FROM weather
ORDER BY city;
```

city	temp_lo	temp_hi	prcp	date
Hayward	37	54		1994-11-29
San Francisco	43	57	0	1994-11-29
San Francisco	46	50	0.25	1994-11-27

In this example, the sort order isn't fully specified, and so you might get the San Francisco rows in either order. But you'd always get the results shown above if you do:

```
SELECT * FROM weather
ORDER BY city, temp_lo;
```

You can request that duplicate rows be removed from the result of a query:

```
SELECT DISTINCT city
FROM weather;
```

city
San Francisco
Hayward

```
Hayward
San Francisco
(2 rows)
```

Here again, the result row ordering might vary. You can ensure consistent results by using `DISTINCT` and `ORDER BY` together:<sup>2</sup>

```
SELECT DISTINCT city
FROM weather
ORDER BY city;
```

## 2.6. Joins Between Tables

Thus far, our queries have only accessed one table at a time. Queries can access multiple tables at once, or access the same table in such a way that multiple rows of the table are being processed at the same time. Queries that access multiple tables (or multiple instances of the same table) at one time are called *join* queries. They combine rows from one table with rows from a second table, with an expression specifying which rows are to be paired. For example, to return all the weather records together with the location of the associated city, the database needs to compare the `city` column of each row of the `weather` table with the `name` column of all rows in the `cities` table, and select the pairs of rows where these values match.<sup>3</sup> This would be accomplished by the following query:

```
SELECT * FROM weather JOIN cities ON city = name;
```

city	temp_lo	temp_hi	prcp	date	name
location					
San Francisco	46	50	0.25	1994-11-27	San Francisco
San Francisco	43	57	0	1994-11-29	San Francisco

(2 rows)

Observe two things about the result set:

- There is no result row for the city of Hayward. This is because there is no matching entry in the `cities` table for Hayward, so the join ignores the unmatched rows in the `weather` table. We will see shortly how this can be fixed.
- There are two columns containing the city name. This is correct because the lists of columns from the `weather` and `cities` tables are concatenated. In practice this is undesirable, though, so you will probably want to list the output columns explicitly rather than using `*`:

```
SELECT city, temp_lo, temp_hi, prcp, date, location
FROM weather JOIN cities ON city = name;
```

Since the columns all had different names, the parser automatically found which table they belong to. If there were duplicate column names in the two tables you'd need to *qualify* the column names to show which one you meant, as in:

---

<sup>2</sup> In some database systems, including older versions of PostgreSQL, the implementation of `DISTINCT` automatically orders the rows and so `ORDER BY` is unnecessary. But this is not required by the SQL standard, and current PostgreSQL does not guarantee that `DISTINCT` causes the rows to be ordered.

<sup>3</sup> This is only a conceptual model. The join is usually performed in a more efficient manner than actually comparing each possible pair of rows, but this is invisible to the user.

```
SELECT weather.city, weather.temp_lo, weather.temp_hi,
       weather.prcp, weather.date, cities.location
FROM weather JOIN cities ON weather.city = cities.name;
```

It is widely considered good style to qualify all column names in a join query, so that the query won't fail if a duplicate column name is later added to one of the tables.

Join queries of the kind seen thus far can also be written in this form:

```
SELECT *
FROM weather, cities
WHERE city = name;
```

This syntax pre-dates the JOIN/ON syntax, which was introduced in SQL-92. The tables are simply listed in the FROM clause, and the comparison expression is added to the WHERE clause. The results from this older implicit syntax and the newer explicit JOIN/ON syntax are identical. But for a reader of the query, the explicit syntax makes its meaning easier to understand: The join condition is introduced by its own key word whereas previously the condition was mixed into the WHERE clause together with other conditions.

Now we will figure out how we can get the Hayward records back in. What we want the query to do is to scan the weather table and for each row to find the matching cities row(s). If no matching row is found we want some “empty values” to be substituted for the cities table's columns. This kind of query is called an *outer join*. (The joins we have seen so far are *inner joins*.) The command looks like this:

```
SELECT *
FROM weather LEFT OUTER JOIN cities ON weather.city =
cities.name;
```

city   location	temp_lo	temp_hi	prcp	date	name
Hayward	37	54		1994-11-29	
San Francisco	46	50	0.25	1994-11-27	San Francisco
San Francisco	43	57	0	1994-11-29	San Francisco

(3 rows)

This query is called a *left outer join* because the table mentioned on the left of the join operator will have each of its rows in the output at least once, whereas the table on the right will only have those rows output that match some row of the left table. When outputting a left-table row for which there is no right-table match, empty (null) values are substituted for the right-table columns.

**Exercise:** There are also right outer joins and full outer joins. Try to find out what those do.

We can also join a table against itself. This is called a *self join*. As an example, suppose we wish to find all the weather records that are in the temperature range of other weather records. So we need to compare the temp\_lo and temp\_hi columns of each weather row to the temp\_lo and temp\_hi columns of all other weather rows. We can do this with the following query:



```
SELECT w1.city, w1.temp_lo AS low, w1.temp_hi AS high,
       w2.city, w2.temp_lo AS low, w2.temp_hi AS high
FROM weather w1 JOIN weather w2
     ON w1.temp_lo < w2.temp_lo AND w1.temp_hi > w2.temp_hi;
```

city	low	high	city	low	high
San Francisco	43	57	San Francisco	46	50
Hayward	37	54	San Francisco	46	50

(2 rows)

Here we have relabeled the weather table as w1 and w2 to be able to distinguish the left and right side of the join. You can also use these kinds of aliases in other queries to save some typing, e.g.:

```
SELECT *
FROM weather w JOIN cities c ON w.city = c.name;
```

You will encounter this style of abbreviating quite frequently.

## 2.7. Aggregate Functions

Like most other relational database products, PostgreSQL supports *aggregate functions*. An aggregate function computes a single result from multiple input rows. For example, there are aggregates to compute the count, sum, avg (average), max (maximum) and min (minimum) over a set of rows.

As an example, we can find the highest low-temperature reading anywhere with:

```
SELECT max(temp_lo) FROM weather;
```

```
max
-----
46
(1 row)
```

If we wanted to know what city (or cities) that reading occurred in, we might try:

```
SELECT city FROM weather WHERE temp_lo = max(temp_lo);      WRONG
```

but this will not work since the aggregate max cannot be used in the WHERE clause. (This restriction exists because the WHERE clause determines which rows will be included in the aggregate calculation; so obviously it has to be evaluated before aggregate functions are computed.) However, as is often the case the query can be restated to accomplish the desired result, here by using a *subquery*:

```
SELECT city FROM weather
     WHERE temp_lo = (SELECT max(temp_lo) FROM weather);
```

```
city
-----
San Francisco
(1 row)
```

This is OK because the subquery is an independent computation that computes its own aggregate separately from what is happening in the outer query.

Aggregates are also very useful in combination with `GROUP BY` clauses. For example, we can get the number of readings and the maximum low temperature observed in each city with:

```
SELECT city, count(*), max(temp_lo)
FROM weather
GROUP BY city;
```

city	count	max
Hayward	1	37
San Francisco	2	46

(2 rows)

which gives us one output row per city. Each aggregate result is computed over the table rows matching that city. We can filter these grouped rows using `HAVING`:

```
SELECT city, count(*), max(temp_lo)
FROM weather
GROUP BY city
HAVING max(temp_lo) < 40;
```

city	count	max
Hayward	1	37

(1 row)

which gives us the same results for only the cities that have all `temp_lo` values below 40. Finally, if we only care about cities whose names begin with “S”, we might do:

```
SELECT city, count(*), max(temp_lo)
FROM weather
WHERE city LIKE 'S%' -- ❶
GROUP BY city;
```

city	count	max
San Francisco	2	46

(1 row)

**❶** The `LIKE` operator does pattern matching and is explained in Section 9.7.

It is important to understand the interaction between aggregates and SQL's `WHERE` and `HAVING` clauses. The fundamental difference between `WHERE` and `HAVING` is this: `WHERE` selects input rows before groups and aggregates are computed (thus, it controls which rows go into the aggregate computation), whereas `HAVING` selects group rows after groups and aggregates are computed. Thus, the `WHERE` clause must not contain aggregate functions; it makes no sense to try to use an aggregate to determine which rows will be inputs to the aggregates. On the other hand, the `HAVING` clause always contains aggregate functions. (Strictly speaking, you are allowed to write a `HAVING` clause that doesn't use aggregates, but it's seldom useful. The same condition could be used more efficiently at the `WHERE` stage.)

In the previous example, we can apply the city name restriction in `WHERE`, since it needs no aggregate. This is more efficient than adding the restriction to `HAVING`, because we avoid doing the grouping and aggregate calculations for all rows that fail the `WHERE` check.

Another way to select the rows that go into an aggregate computation is to use `FILTER`, which is a per-aggregate option:

```
SELECT city, count(*) FILTER (WHERE temp_lo < 45), max(temp_lo)
FROM weather
GROUP BY city;
```

city	count	max
Hayward	1	37
San Francisco	1	46

(2 rows)

`FILTER` is much like `WHERE`, except that it removes rows only from the input of the particular aggregate function that it is attached to. Here, the `count` aggregate counts only rows with `temp_lo` below 45; but the `max` aggregate is still applied to all rows, so it still finds the reading of 46.

## 2.8. Updates

You can update existing rows using the `UPDATE` command. Suppose you discover the temperature readings are all off by 2 degrees after November 28. You can correct the data as follows:

```
UPDATE weather
SET temp_hi = temp_hi - 2, temp_lo = temp_lo - 2
WHERE date > '1994-11-28';
```

Look at the new state of the data:

```
SELECT * FROM weather;
```

city	temp_lo	temp_hi	prcp	date
San Francisco	46	50	0.25	1994-11-27
San Francisco	41	55	0	1994-11-29
Hayward	35	52		1994-11-29

(3 rows)

## 2.9. Deletions

Rows can be removed from a table using the `DELETE` command. Suppose you are no longer interested in the weather of Hayward. Then you can do the following to delete those rows from the table:

```
DELETE FROM weather WHERE city = 'Hayward';
```

All weather records belonging to Hayward are removed.

```
SELECT * FROM weather;
```

city	temp_lo	temp_hi	prcp	date
San Francisco	46	50	0.25	1994-11-27

```
San Francisco |      41 |      55 |      0 | 1994-11-29
(2 rows)
```

One should be wary of statements of the form

```
DELETE FROM tablename;
```

Without a qualification, DELETE will remove *all* rows from the given table, leaving it empty. The system will not request confirmation before doing this!

---

# Chapter 3. Advanced Features

## 3.1. Introduction

In the previous chapter we have covered the basics of using SQL to store and access your data in PostgreSQL. We will now discuss some more advanced features of SQL that simplify management and prevent loss or corruption of your data. Finally, we will look at some PostgreSQL extensions.

This chapter will on occasion refer to examples found in Chapter 2 to change or improve them, so it will be useful to have read that chapter. Some examples from this chapter can also be found in `advanced.sql` in the tutorial directory. This file also contains some sample data to load, which is not repeated here. (Refer to Section 2.1 for how to use the file.)

## 3.2. Views

Refer back to the queries in Section 2.6. Suppose the combined listing of weather records and city location is of particular interest to your application, but you do not want to type the query each time you need it. You can create a *view* over the query, which gives a name to the query that you can refer to like an ordinary table:

```
CREATE VIEW myview AS
    SELECT name, temp_lo, temp_hi, prcp, date, location
    FROM weather, cities
    WHERE city = name;

SELECT * FROM myview;
```

Making liberal use of views is a key aspect of good SQL database design. Views allow you to encapsulate the details of the structure of your tables, which might change as your application evolves, behind consistent interfaces.

Views can be used in almost any place a real table can be used. Building views upon other views is not uncommon.

## 3.3. Foreign Keys

Recall the `weather` and `cities` tables from Chapter 2. Consider the following problem: You want to make sure that no one can insert rows in the `weather` table that do not have a matching entry in the `cities` table. This is called maintaining the *referential integrity* of your data. In simplistic database systems this would be implemented (if at all) by first looking at the `cities` table to check if a matching record exists, and then inserting or rejecting the new `weather` records. This approach has a number of problems and is very inconvenient, so PostgreSQL can do this for you.

The new declaration of the tables would look like this:

```
CREATE TABLE cities (
    name      varchar(80) primary key,
    location  point
);

CREATE TABLE weather (
    city      varchar(80) references cities(name),
    temp_lo   int,
```

```
        temp_hi    int,  
        prcp       real,  
        date       date  
    );
```

Now try inserting an invalid record:

```
INSERT INTO weather VALUES ('Berkeley', 45, 53, 0.0, '1994-11-28');
```

```
ERROR: insert or update on table "weather" violates foreign key  
constraint "weather_city_fkey"  
DETAIL: Key (city)=(Berkeley) is not present in table "cities".
```

The behavior of foreign keys can be finely tuned to your application. We will not go beyond this simple example in this tutorial, but just refer you to Chapter 5 for more information. Making correct use of foreign keys will definitely improve the quality of your database applications, so you are strongly encouraged to learn about them.

## 3.4. Transactions

*Transactions* are a fundamental concept of all database systems. The essential point of a transaction is that it bundles multiple steps into a single, all-or-nothing operation. The intermediate states between the steps are not visible to other concurrent transactions, and if some failure occurs that prevents the transaction from completing, then none of the steps affect the database at all.

For example, consider a bank database that contains balances for various customer accounts, as well as total deposit balances for branches. Suppose that we want to record a payment of \$100.00 from Alice's account to Bob's account. Simplifying outrageously, the SQL commands for this might look like:

```
UPDATE accounts SET balance = balance - 100.00  
    WHERE name = 'Alice';  
UPDATE branches SET balance = balance - 100.00  
    WHERE name = (SELECT branch_name FROM accounts WHERE name =  
    'Alice');  
UPDATE accounts SET balance = balance + 100.00  
    WHERE name = 'Bob';  
UPDATE branches SET balance = balance + 100.00  
    WHERE name = (SELECT branch_name FROM accounts WHERE name =  
    'Bob');
```

The details of these commands are not important here; the important point is that there are several separate updates involved to accomplish this rather simple operation. Our bank's officers will want to be assured that either all these updates happen, or none of them happen. It would certainly not do for a system failure to result in Bob receiving \$100.00 that was not debited from Alice. Nor would Alice long remain a happy customer if she was debited without Bob being credited. We need a guarantee that if something goes wrong partway through the operation, none of the steps executed so far will take effect. Grouping the updates into a *transaction* gives us this guarantee. A transaction is said to be *atomic*: from the point of view of other transactions, it either happens completely or not at all.

We also want a guarantee that once a transaction is completed and acknowledged by the database system, it has indeed been permanently recorded and won't be lost even if a crash ensues shortly thereafter. For example, if we are recording a cash withdrawal by Bob, we do not want any chance that the debit to his account will disappear in a crash just after he walks out the bank door. A transactional database guarantees that all the updates made by a transaction are logged in permanent storage (i.e., on disk) before the transaction is reported complete.

Another important property of transactional databases is closely related to the notion of atomic updates: when multiple transactions are running concurrently, each one should not be able to see the incomplete changes made by others. For example, if one transaction is busy totalling all the branch balances, it would not do for it to include the debit from Alice's branch but not the credit to Bob's branch, nor vice versa. So transactions must be all-or-nothing not only in terms of their permanent effect on the database, but also in terms of their visibility as they happen. The updates made so far by an open transaction are invisible to other transactions until the transaction completes, whereupon all the updates become visible simultaneously.

In PostgreSQL, a transaction is set up by surrounding the SQL commands of the transaction with `BEGIN` and `COMMIT` commands. So our banking transaction would actually look like:

```
BEGIN;
UPDATE accounts SET balance = balance - 100.00
    WHERE name = 'Alice';
-- etc etc
COMMIT;
```

If, partway through the transaction, we decide we do not want to commit (perhaps we just noticed that Alice's balance went negative), we can issue the command `ROLLBACK` instead of `COMMIT`, and all our updates so far will be canceled.

PostgreSQL actually treats every SQL statement as being executed within a transaction. If you do not issue a `BEGIN` command, then each individual statement has an implicit `BEGIN` and (if successful) `COMMIT` wrapped around it. A group of statements surrounded by `BEGIN` and `COMMIT` is sometimes called a *transaction block*.

### Note

Some client libraries issue `BEGIN` and `COMMIT` commands automatically, so that you might get the effect of transaction blocks without asking. Check the documentation for the interface you are using.

It's possible to control the statements in a transaction in a more granular fashion through the use of *savepoints*. Savepoints allow you to selectively discard parts of the transaction, while committing the rest. After defining a savepoint with `SAVEPOINT`, you can if needed roll back to the savepoint with `ROLLBACK TO`. All the transaction's database changes between defining the savepoint and rolling back to it are discarded, but changes earlier than the savepoint are kept.

After rolling back to a savepoint, it continues to be defined, so you can roll back to it several times. Conversely, if you are sure you won't need to roll back to a particular savepoint again, it can be released, so the system can free some resources. Keep in mind that either releasing or rolling back to a savepoint will automatically release all savepoints that were defined after it.

All this is happening within the transaction block, so none of it is visible to other database sessions. When and if you commit the transaction block, the committed actions become visible as a unit to other sessions, while the rolled-back actions never become visible at all.

Remembering the bank database, suppose we debit \$100.00 from Alice's account, and credit Bob's account, only to find later that we should have credited Wally's account. We could do it using savepoints like this:

```
BEGIN;
UPDATE accounts SET balance = balance - 100.00
    WHERE name = 'Alice';
SAVEPOINT my_savepoint;
```

```

UPDATE accounts SET balance = balance + 100.00
    WHERE name = 'Bob';
-- oops ... forget that and use Wally's account
ROLLBACK TO my_savepoint;
UPDATE accounts SET balance = balance + 100.00
    WHERE name = 'Wally';
COMMIT;

```

This example is, of course, oversimplified, but there's a lot of control possible in a transaction block through the use of savepoints. Moreover, `ROLLBACK TO` is the only way to regain control of a transaction block that was put in aborted state by the system due to an error, short of rolling it back completely and starting again.

## 3.5. Window Functions

A *window function* performs a calculation across a set of table rows that are somehow related to the current row. This is comparable to the type of calculation that can be done with an aggregate function. However, window functions do not cause rows to become grouped into a single output row like non-window aggregate calls would. Instead, the rows retain their separate identities. Behind the scenes, the window function is able to access more than just the current row of the query result.

Here is an example that shows how to compare each employee's salary with the average salary in his or her department:

```

SELECT depname, empno, salary, avg(salary) OVER (PARTITION BY
    depname) FROM empsalary;

```

depname	empno	salary	avg
develop	11	5200	5020.00000000000000000000
develop	7	4200	5020.00000000000000000000
develop	9	4500	5020.00000000000000000000
develop	8	6000	5020.00000000000000000000
develop	10	5200	5020.00000000000000000000
personnel	5	3500	3700.00000000000000000000
personnel	2	3900	3700.00000000000000000000
sales	3	4800	4866.66666666666666666667
sales	1	5000	4866.66666666666666666667
sales	4	4800	4866.66666666666666666667

(10 rows)

The first three output columns come directly from the table `empsalary`, and there is one output row for each row in the table. The fourth column represents an average taken across all the table rows that have the same `depname` value as the current row. (This actually is the same function as the non-window `avg` aggregate, but the `OVER` clause causes it to be treated as a window function and computed across the window frame.)

A window function call always contains an `OVER` clause directly following the window function's name and argument(s). This is what syntactically distinguishes it from a normal function or non-window aggregate. The `OVER` clause determines exactly how the rows of the query are split up for processing by the window function. The `PARTITION BY` clause within `OVER` divides the rows into groups, or partitions, that share the same values of the `PARTITION BY` expression(s). For each row, the window function is computed across the rows that fall into the same partition as the current row.

You can also control the order in which rows are processed by window functions using `ORDER BY` within `OVER`. (The window `ORDER BY` does not even have to match the order in which the rows are output.) Here is an example:



```
SELECT depname, empno, salary,
       rank() OVER (PARTITION BY depname ORDER BY salary DESC)
FROM empsalary;
```

depname	empno	salary	rank
develop	8	6000	1
develop	10	5200	2
develop	11	5200	2
develop	9	4500	4
develop	7	4200	5
personnel	2	3900	1
personnel	5	3500	2
sales	1	5000	1
sales	4	4800	2
sales	3	4800	2

(10 rows)

As shown here, the `rank` function produces a numerical rank for each distinct `ORDER BY` value in the current row's partition, using the order defined by the `ORDER BY` clause. `rank` needs no explicit parameter, because its behavior is entirely determined by the `OVER` clause.

The rows considered by a window function are those of the “virtual table” produced by the query's `FROM` clause as filtered by its `WHERE`, `GROUP BY`, and `HAVING` clauses if any. For example, a row removed because it does not meet the `WHERE` condition is not seen by any window function. A query can contain multiple window functions that slice up the data in different ways using different `OVER` clauses, but they all act on the same collection of rows defined by this virtual table.

We already saw that `ORDER BY` can be omitted if the ordering of rows is not important. It is also possible to omit `PARTITION BY`, in which case there is a single partition containing all rows.

There is another important concept associated with window functions: for each row, there is a set of rows within its partition called its *window frame*. Some window functions act only on the rows of the window frame, rather than of the whole partition. By default, if `ORDER BY` is supplied then the frame consists of all rows from the start of the partition up through the current row, plus any following rows that are equal to the current row according to the `ORDER BY` clause. When `ORDER BY` is omitted the default frame consists of all rows in the partition.<sup>1</sup> Here is an example using `sum`:

```
SELECT salary, sum(salary) OVER () FROM empsalary;
```

salary	sum
5200	47100
5000	47100
3500	47100
4800	47100
3900	47100
4200	47100
4500	47100
4800	47100
6000	47100
5200	47100

(10 rows)

---

<sup>1</sup> There are options to define the window frame in other ways, but this tutorial does not cover them. See Section 4.2.8 for details.

Above, since there is no `ORDER BY` in the `OVER` clause, the window frame is the same as the partition, which for lack of `PARTITION BY` is the whole table; in other words each sum is taken over the whole table and so we get the same result for each output row. But if we add an `ORDER BY` clause, we get very different results:

```
SELECT salary, sum(salary) OVER (ORDER BY salary) FROM empsalary;
```

salary	sum
3500	3500
3900	7400
4200	11600
4500	16100
4800	25700
4800	25700
5000	30700
5200	41100
5200	41100
6000	47100

(10 rows)

Here the sum is taken from the first (lowest) salary up through the current one, including any duplicates of the current one (notice the results for the duplicated salaries).

Window functions are permitted only in the `SELECT` list and the `ORDER BY` clause of the query. They are forbidden elsewhere, such as in `GROUP BY`, `HAVING` and `WHERE` clauses. This is because they logically execute after the processing of those clauses. Also, window functions execute after non-window aggregate functions. This means it is valid to include an aggregate function call in the arguments of a window function, but not vice versa.

If there is a need to filter or group rows after the window calculations are performed, you can use a sub-select. For example:

```
SELECT depname, empno, salary, enroll_date
FROM
  (SELECT depname, empno, salary, enroll_date,
          rank() OVER (PARTITION BY depname ORDER BY salary DESC,
                        empno) AS pos
   FROM empsalary
  ) AS ss
WHERE pos < 3;
```

The above query only shows the rows from the inner query having rank less than 3.

When a query involves multiple window functions, it is possible to write out each one with a separate `OVER` clause, but this is duplicative and error-prone if the same windowing behavior is wanted for several functions. Instead, each windowing behavior can be named in a `WINDOW` clause and then referenced in `OVER`. For example:

```
SELECT sum(salary) OVER w, avg(salary) OVER w
FROM empsalary
WINDOW w AS (PARTITION BY depname ORDER BY salary DESC);
```

More details about window functions can be found in Section 4.2.8, Section 9.22, Section 7.2.5, and the `SELECT` reference page.

## 3.6. Inheritance

Inheritance is a concept from object-oriented databases. It opens up interesting new possibilities of database design.

Let's create two tables: A table `cities` and a table `capitals`. Naturally, capitals are also cities, so you want some way to show the capitals implicitly when you list all cities. If you're really clever you might invent some scheme like this:

```
CREATE TABLE capitals (  
    name          text,  
    population    real,  
    elevation     int,    -- (in ft)  
    state         char(2)  
);  
  
CREATE TABLE non_capitals (  
    name          text,  
    population    real,  
    elevation     int     -- (in ft)  
);  
  
CREATE VIEW cities AS  
    SELECT name, population, elevation FROM capitals  
    UNION  
    SELECT name, population, elevation FROM non_capitals;
```

This works OK as far as querying goes, but it gets ugly when you need to update several rows, for one thing.

A better solution is this:

```
CREATE TABLE cities (  
    name          text,  
    population    real,  
    elevation     int     -- (in ft)  
);  
  
CREATE TABLE capitals (  
    state         char(2) UNIQUE NOT NULL  
) INHERITS (cities);
```

In this case, a row of `capitals` *inherits* all columns (`name`, `population`, and `elevation`) from its *parent*, `cities`. The type of the column `name` is `text`, a native PostgreSQL type for variable length character strings. The `capitals` table has an additional column, `state`, which shows its state abbreviation. In PostgreSQL, a table can inherit from zero or more other tables.

For example, the following query finds the names of all cities, including state capitals, that are located at an elevation over 500 feet:

```
SELECT name, elevation  
    FROM cities  
    WHERE elevation > 500;
```

which returns:

name	elevation
Las Vegas	2174
Mariposa	1953
Madison	845

(3 rows)

On the other hand, the following query finds all the cities that are not state capitals and are situated at an elevation over 500 feet:

```
SELECT name, elevation
FROM ONLY cities
WHERE elevation > 500;
```

name	elevation
Las Vegas	2174
Mariposa	1953

(2 rows)

Here the `ONLY` before `cities` indicates that the query should be run over only the `cities` table, and not tables below `cities` in the inheritance hierarchy. Many of the commands that we have already discussed — `SELECT`, `UPDATE`, and `DELETE` — support this `ONLY` notation.

### Note

Although inheritance is frequently useful, it has not been integrated with unique constraints or foreign keys, which limits its usefulness. See Section 5.10 for more detail.

## 3.7. Conclusion

PostgreSQL has many features not touched upon in this tutorial introduction, which has been oriented toward newer users of SQL. These features are discussed in more detail in the remainder of this book.

If you feel you need more introductory material, please visit the PostgreSQL web site<sup>2</sup> for links to more resources.

---

<sup>2</sup> <https://www.postgresql.org>

---

# Part II. The SQL Language

This part describes the use of the SQL language in PostgreSQL. We start with describing the general syntax of SQL, then explain how to create the structures to hold data, how to populate the database, and how to query it. The middle part lists the available data types and functions for use in SQL commands. The rest treats several aspects that are important for tuning a database for optimal performance.

The information in this part is arranged so that a novice user can follow it start to end to gain a full understanding of the topics without having to refer forward too many times. The chapters are intended to be self-contained, so that advanced users can read the chapters individually as they choose. The information in this part is presented in a narrative fashion in topical units. Readers looking for a complete description of a particular command should see Part VI.

Readers of this part should know how to connect to a PostgreSQL database and issue SQL commands. Readers that are unfamiliar with these issues are encouraged to read Part I first. SQL commands are typically entered using the PostgreSQL interactive terminal `psql`, but other programs that have similar functionality can be used as well.

---

---

# Table of Contents

4. SQL Syntax .....	33
4.1. Lexical Structure .....	33
4.1.1. Identifiers and Key Words .....	33
4.1.2. Constants .....	35
4.1.3. Operators .....	40
4.1.4. Special Characters .....	40
4.1.5. Comments .....	41
4.1.6. Operator Precedence .....	41
4.2. Value Expressions .....	42
4.2.1. Column References .....	43
4.2.2. Positional Parameters .....	43
4.2.3. Subscripts .....	43
4.2.4. Field Selection .....	44
4.2.5. Operator Invocations .....	44
4.2.6. Function Calls .....	45
4.2.7. Aggregate Expressions .....	45
4.2.8. Window Function Calls .....	47
4.2.9. Type Casts .....	50
4.2.10. Collation Expressions .....	51
4.2.11. Scalar Subqueries .....	52
4.2.12. Array Constructors .....	52
4.2.13. Row Constructors .....	53
4.2.14. Expression Evaluation Rules .....	55
4.3. Calling Functions .....	56
4.3.1. Using Positional Notation .....	57
4.3.2. Using Named Notation .....	57
4.3.3. Using Mixed Notation .....	58
5. Data Definition .....	59
5.1. Table Basics .....	59
5.2. Default Values .....	60
5.3. Generated Columns .....	61
5.4. Constraints .....	62
5.4.1. Check Constraints .....	62
5.4.2. Not-Null Constraints .....	65
5.4.3. Unique Constraints .....	65
5.4.4. Primary Keys .....	67
5.4.5. Foreign Keys .....	68
5.4.6. Exclusion Constraints .....	71
5.5. System Columns .....	71
5.6. Modifying Tables .....	72
5.6.1. Adding a Column .....	73
5.6.2. Removing a Column .....	73
5.6.3. Adding a Constraint .....	73
5.6.4. Removing a Constraint .....	74
5.6.5. Changing a Column's Default Value .....	74
5.6.6. Changing a Column's Data Type .....	74
5.6.7. Renaming a Column .....	75
5.6.8. Renaming a Table .....	75
5.7. Privileges .....	75
5.8. Row Security Policies .....	80
5.9. Schemas .....	86
5.9.1. Creating a Schema .....	86
5.9.2. The Public Schema .....	87
5.9.3. The Schema Search Path .....	87
5.9.4. Schemas and Privileges .....	89

5.9.5. The System Catalog Schema .....	89
5.9.6. Usage Patterns .....	89
5.9.7. Portability .....	90
5.10. Inheritance .....	90
5.10.1. Caveats .....	93
5.11. Table Partitioning .....	94
5.11.1. Overview .....	94
5.11.2. Declarative Partitioning .....	95
5.11.3. Partitioning Using Inheritance .....	100
5.11.4. Partition Pruning .....	104
5.11.5. Partitioning and Constraint Exclusion .....	106
5.11.6. Best Practices for Declarative Partitioning .....	107
5.12. Foreign Data .....	108
5.13. Other Database Objects .....	108
5.14. Dependency Tracking .....	108
6. Data Manipulation .....	111
6.1. Inserting Data .....	111
6.2. Updating Data .....	112
6.3. Deleting Data .....	113
6.4. Returning Data from Modified Rows .....	113
7. Queries .....	115
7.1. Overview .....	115
7.2. Table Expressions .....	115
7.2.1. The FROM Clause .....	116
7.2.2. The WHERE Clause .....	124
7.2.3. The GROUP BY and HAVING Clauses .....	125
7.2.4. GROUPING SETS, CUBE, and ROLLUP .....	128
7.2.5. Window Function Processing .....	131
7.3. Select Lists .....	131
7.3.1. Select-List Items .....	131
7.3.2. Column Labels .....	132
7.3.3. DISTINCT .....	132
7.4. Combining Queries (UNION, INTERSECT, EXCEPT) .....	133
7.5. Sorting Rows (ORDER BY) .....	134
7.6. LIMIT and OFFSET .....	135
7.7. VALUES Lists .....	135
7.8. WITH Queries (Common Table Expressions) .....	136
7.8.1. SELECT in WITH .....	137
7.8.2. Recursive Queries .....	137
7.8.3. Common Table Expression Materialization .....	142
7.8.4. Data-Modifying Statements in WITH .....	143
8. Data Types .....	146
8.1. Numeric Types .....	147
8.1.1. Integer Types .....	148
8.1.2. Arbitrary Precision Numbers .....	148
8.1.3. Floating-Point Types .....	150
8.1.4. Serial Types .....	152
8.2. Monetary Types .....	153
8.3. Character Types .....	153
8.4. Binary Data Types .....	156
8.4.1. bytea Hex Format .....	156
8.4.2. bytea Escape Format .....	156
8.5. Date/Time Types .....	158
8.5.1. Date/Time Input .....	159
8.5.2. Date/Time Output .....	163
8.5.3. Time Zones .....	164
8.5.4. Interval Input .....	165
8.5.5. Interval Output .....	167

8.6. Boolean Type .....	167
8.7. Enumerated Types .....	168
8.7.1. Declaration of Enumerated Types .....	168
8.7.2. Ordering .....	169
8.7.3. Type Safety .....	169
8.7.4. Implementation Details .....	170
8.8. Geometric Types .....	170
8.8.1. Points .....	171
8.8.2. Lines .....	171
8.8.3. Line Segments .....	171
8.8.4. Boxes .....	171
8.8.5. Paths .....	172
8.8.6. Polygons .....	172
8.8.7. Circles .....	172
8.9. Network Address Types .....	173
8.9.1. <code>inet</code> .....	173
8.9.2. <code>cidr</code> .....	173
8.9.3. <code>inet</code> vs. <code>cidr</code> .....	174
8.9.4. <code>macaddr</code> .....	174
8.9.5. <code>macaddr8</code> .....	174
8.10. Bit String Types .....	175
8.11. Text Search Types .....	176
8.11.1. <code>tsvector</code> .....	176
8.11.2. <code>tsquery</code> .....	177
8.12. UUID Type .....	179
8.13. XML Type .....	179
8.13.1. Creating XML Values .....	179
8.13.2. Encoding Handling .....	180
8.13.3. Accessing XML Values .....	181
8.14. JSON Types .....	181
8.14.1. JSON Input and Output Syntax .....	183
8.14.2. Designing JSON Documents .....	184
8.14.3. <code>jsonb</code> Containment and Existence .....	184
8.14.4. <code>jsonb</code> Indexing .....	186
8.14.5. <code>jsonb</code> Subscripting .....	188
8.14.6. Transforms .....	190
8.14.7. <code>jsonpath</code> Type .....	190
8.15. Arrays .....	191
8.15.1. Declaration of Array Types .....	192
8.15.2. Array Value Input .....	192
8.15.3. Accessing Arrays .....	194
8.15.4. Modifying Arrays .....	196
8.15.5. Searching in Arrays .....	199
8.15.6. Array Input and Output Syntax .....	200
8.16. Composite Types .....	201
8.16.1. Declaration of Composite Types .....	201
8.16.2. Constructing Composite Values .....	202
8.16.3. Accessing Composite Types .....	203
8.16.4. Modifying Composite Types .....	203
8.16.5. Using Composite Types in Queries .....	204
8.16.6. Composite Type Input and Output Syntax .....	206
8.17. Range Types .....	207
8.17.1. Built-in Range and Multirange Types .....	208
8.17.2. Examples .....	208
8.17.3. Inclusive and Exclusive Bounds .....	208
8.17.4. Infinite (Unbounded) Ranges .....	209
8.17.5. Range Input/Output .....	209
8.17.6. Constructing Ranges and Multiranges .....	210



8.17.7. Discrete Range Types .....	211
8.17.8. Defining New Range Types .....	211
8.17.9. Indexing .....	212
8.17.10. Constraints on Ranges .....	212
8.18. Domain Types .....	213
8.19. Object Identifier Types .....	214
8.20. pg_lsn Type .....	216
8.21. Pseudo-Types .....	217
9. Functions and Operators .....	219
9.1. Logical Operators .....	219
9.2. Comparison Functions and Operators .....	220
9.3. Mathematical Functions and Operators .....	224
9.4. String Functions and Operators .....	231
9.4.1. format .....	239
9.5. Binary String Functions and Operators .....	241
9.6. Bit String Functions and Operators .....	245
9.7. Pattern Matching .....	247
9.7.1. LIKE .....	248
9.7.2. SIMILAR TO Regular Expressions .....	249
9.7.3. POSIX Regular Expressions .....	250
9.8. Data Type Formatting Functions .....	266
9.9. Date/Time Functions and Operators .....	274
9.9.1. EXTRACT, date_part .....	281
9.9.2. date_trunc .....	285
9.9.3. date_bin .....	286
9.9.4. AT TIME ZONE .....	287
9.9.5. Current Date/Time .....	288
9.9.6. Delaying Execution .....	289
9.10. Enum Support Functions .....	290
9.11. Geometric Functions and Operators .....	291
9.12. Network Address Functions and Operators .....	298
9.13. Text Search Functions and Operators .....	301
9.14. UUID Functions .....	308
9.15. XML Functions .....	308
9.15.1. Producing XML Content .....	308
9.15.2. XML Predicates .....	312
9.15.3. Processing XML .....	314
9.15.4. Mapping Tables to XML .....	319
9.16. JSON Functions and Operators .....	322
9.16.1. Processing and Creating JSON Data .....	323
9.16.2. The SQL/JSON Path Language .....	334
9.17. Sequence Manipulation Functions .....	342
9.18. Conditional Expressions .....	343
9.18.1. CASE .....	344
9.18.2. COALESCE .....	345
9.18.3. NULLIF .....	345
9.18.4. GREATEST and LEAST .....	346
9.19. Array Functions and Operators .....	346
9.20. Range/Multirange Functions and Operators .....	350
9.21. Aggregate Functions .....	356
9.22. Window Functions .....	363
9.23. Subquery Expressions .....	365
9.23.1. EXISTS .....	365
9.23.2. IN .....	365
9.23.3. NOT IN .....	366
9.23.4. ANY/SOME .....	366
9.23.5. ALL .....	367
9.23.6. Single-Row Comparison .....	367

9.24. Row and Array Comparisons .....	367
9.24.1. IN .....	368
9.24.2. NOT IN .....	368
9.24.3. ANY/SOME (array) .....	368
9.24.4. ALL (array) .....	369
9.24.5. Row Constructor Comparison .....	369
9.24.6. Composite Type Comparison .....	370
9.25. Set Returning Functions .....	370
9.26. System Information Functions and Operators .....	374
9.26.1. Session Information Functions .....	374
9.26.2. Access Privilege Inquiry Functions .....	377
9.26.3. Schema Visibility Inquiry Functions .....	380
9.26.4. System Catalog Information Functions .....	381
9.26.5. Object Information and Addressing Functions .....	387
9.26.6. Comment Information Functions .....	388
9.26.7. Data Validity Checking Functions .....	388
9.26.8. Transaction ID and Snapshot Information Functions .....	389
9.26.9. Committed Transaction Information Functions .....	391
9.26.10. Control Data Functions .....	392
9.27. System Administration Functions .....	393
9.27.1. Configuration Settings Functions .....	393
9.27.2. Server Signaling Functions .....	394
9.27.3. Backup Control Functions .....	396
9.27.4. Recovery Control Functions .....	398
9.27.5. Snapshot Synchronization Functions .....	400
9.27.6. Replication Management Functions .....	400
9.27.7. Database Object Management Functions .....	403
9.27.8. Index Maintenance Functions .....	406
9.27.9. Generic File Access Functions .....	406
9.27.10. Advisory Lock Functions .....	409
9.28. Trigger Functions .....	410
9.29. Event Trigger Functions .....	411
9.29.1. Capturing Changes at Command End .....	411
9.29.2. Processing Objects Dropped by a DDL Command .....	412
9.29.3. Handling a Table Rewrite Event .....	413
9.30. Statistics Information Functions .....	414
9.30.1. Inspecting MCV Lists .....	414
10. Type Conversion .....	416
10.1. Overview .....	416
10.2. Operators .....	417
10.3. Functions .....	421
10.4. Value Storage .....	425
10.5. UNION, CASE, and Related Constructs .....	426
10.6. SELECT Output Columns .....	427
11. Indexes .....	429
11.1. Introduction .....	429
11.2. Index Types .....	430
11.2.1. B-Tree .....	430
11.2.2. Hash .....	431
11.2.3. GiST .....	431
11.2.4. SP-GiST .....	431
11.2.5. GIN .....	431
11.2.6. BRIN .....	432
11.3. Multicolumn Indexes .....	432
11.4. Indexes and ORDER BY .....	433
11.5. Combining Multiple Indexes .....	434
11.6. Unique Indexes .....	435
11.7. Indexes on Expressions .....	435

11.8. Partial Indexes .....	436
11.9. Index-Only Scans and Covering Indexes .....	439
11.10. Operator Classes and Operator Families .....	441
11.11. Indexes and Collations .....	443
11.12. Examining Index Usage .....	443
12. Full Text Search .....	445
12.1. Introduction .....	445
12.1.1. What Is a Document? .....	446
12.1.2. Basic Text Matching .....	446
12.1.3. Configurations .....	448
12.2. Tables and Indexes .....	449
12.2.1. Searching a Table .....	449
12.2.2. Creating Indexes .....	450
12.3. Controlling Text Search .....	451
12.3.1. Parsing Documents .....	451
12.3.2. Parsing Queries .....	452
12.3.3. Ranking Search Results .....	455
12.3.4. Highlighting Results .....	457
12.4. Additional Features .....	458
12.4.1. Manipulating Documents .....	458
12.4.2. Manipulating Queries .....	459
12.4.3. Triggers for Automatic Updates .....	462
12.4.4. Gathering Document Statistics .....	463
12.5. Parsers .....	464
12.6. Dictionaries .....	465
12.6.1. Stop Words .....	466
12.6.2. Simple Dictionary .....	467
12.6.3. Synonym Dictionary .....	468
12.6.4. Thesaurus Dictionary .....	470
12.6.5. Ispell Dictionary .....	472
12.6.6. Snowball Dictionary .....	474
12.7. Configuration Example .....	475
12.8. Testing and Debugging Text Search .....	476
12.8.1. Configuration Testing .....	476
12.8.2. Parser Testing .....	479
12.8.3. Dictionary Testing .....	480
12.9. Preferred Index Types for Text Search .....	481
12.10. psql Support .....	482
12.11. Limitations .....	485
13. Concurrency Control .....	486
13.1. Introduction .....	486
13.2. Transaction Isolation .....	486
13.2.1. Read Committed Isolation Level .....	487
13.2.2. Repeatable Read Isolation Level .....	489
13.2.3. Serializable Isolation Level .....	490
13.3. Explicit Locking .....	492
13.3.1. Table-Level Locks .....	492
13.3.2. Row-Level Locks .....	495
13.3.3. Page-Level Locks .....	496
13.3.4. Deadlocks .....	496
13.3.5. Advisory Locks .....	497
13.4. Data Consistency Checks at the Application Level .....	498
13.4.1. Enforcing Consistency with Serializable Transactions .....	498
13.4.2. Enforcing Consistency with Explicit Blocking Locks .....	499
13.5. Serialization Failure Handling .....	499
13.6. Caveats .....	500
13.7. Locking and Indexes .....	500
14. Performance Tips .....	502

14.1. Using EXPLAIN .....	502
14.1.1. EXPLAIN Basics .....	502
14.1.2. EXPLAIN ANALYZE .....	508
14.1.3. Caveats .....	513
14.2. Statistics Used by the Planner .....	514
14.2.1. Single-Column Statistics .....	514
14.2.2. Extended Statistics .....	516
14.3. Controlling the Planner with Explicit JOIN Clauses .....	519
14.4. Populating a Database .....	521
14.4.1. Disable Autocommit .....	521
14.4.2. Use COPY .....	521
14.4.3. Remove Indexes .....	522
14.4.4. Remove Foreign Key Constraints .....	522
14.4.5. Increase maintenance_work_mem .....	522
14.4.6. Increase max_wal_size .....	522
14.4.7. Disable WAL Archival and Streaming Replication .....	522
14.4.8. Run ANALYZE Afterwards .....	523
14.4.9. Some Notes about pg_dump .....	523
14.5. Non-Durable Settings .....	524
15. Parallel Query .....	525
15.1. How Parallel Query Works .....	525
15.2. When Can Parallel Query Be Used? .....	526
15.3. Parallel Plans .....	527
15.3.1. Parallel Scans .....	527
15.3.2. Parallel Joins .....	527
15.3.3. Parallel Aggregation .....	528
15.3.4. Parallel Append .....	528
15.3.5. Parallel Plan Tips .....	528
15.4. Parallel Safety .....	529
15.4.1. Parallel Labeling for Functions and Aggregates .....	529

---

# Chapter 4. SQL Syntax

This chapter describes the syntax of SQL. It forms the foundation for understanding the following chapters which will go into detail about how SQL commands are applied to define and modify data.

We also advise users who are already familiar with SQL to read this chapter carefully because it contains several rules and concepts that are implemented inconsistently among SQL databases or that are specific to PostgreSQL.

## 4.1. Lexical Structure

SQL input consists of a sequence of *commands*. A command is composed of a sequence of *tokens*, terminated by a semicolon (“;”). The end of the input stream also terminates a command. Which tokens are valid depends on the syntax of the particular command.

A token can be a *key word*, an *identifier*, a *quoted identifier*, a *literal* (or constant), or a special character symbol. Tokens are normally separated by whitespace (space, tab, newline), but need not be if there is no ambiguity (which is generally only the case if a special character is adjacent to some other token type).

For example, the following is (syntactically) valid SQL input:

```
SELECT * FROM MY_TABLE;  
UPDATE MY_TABLE SET A = 5;  
INSERT INTO MY_TABLE VALUES (3, 'hi there');
```

This is a sequence of three commands, one per line (although this is not required; more than one command can be on a line, and commands can usefully be split across lines).

Additionally, *comments* can occur in SQL input. They are not tokens, they are effectively equivalent to whitespace.

The SQL syntax is not very consistent regarding what tokens identify commands and which are operands or parameters. The first few tokens are generally the command name, so in the above example we would usually speak of a “SELECT”, an “UPDATE”, and an “INSERT” command. But for instance the UPDATE command always requires a SET token to appear in a certain position, and this particular variation of INSERT also requires a VALUES in order to be complete. The precise syntax rules for each command are described in Part VI.

### 4.1.1. Identifiers and Key Words

Tokens such as SELECT, UPDATE, or VALUES in the example above are examples of *key words*, that is, words that have a fixed meaning in the SQL language. The tokens MY\_TABLE and A are examples of *identifiers*. They identify names of tables, columns, or other database objects, depending on the command they are used in. Therefore they are sometimes simply called “names”. Key words and identifiers have the same lexical structure, meaning that one cannot know whether a token is an identifier or a key word without knowing the language. A complete list of key words can be found in Appendix C.

SQL identifiers and key words must begin with a letter (a-z, but also letters with diacritical marks and non-Latin letters) or an underscore (\_). Subsequent characters in an identifier or key word can be letters, underscores, digits (0-9), or dollar signs (\$). Note that dollar signs are not allowed in identifiers according to the letter of the SQL standard, so their use might render applications less portable. The SQL standard will not define a key word that contains digits or starts or ends with an underscore, so identifiers of this form are safe against possible conflict with future extensions of the standard.

The system uses no more than `NAMEDATALEN-1` bytes of an identifier; longer names can be written in commands, but they will be truncated. By default, `NAMEDATALEN` is 64 so the maximum identifier length is 63 bytes. If this limit is problematic, it can be raised by changing the `NAMEDATALEN` constant in `src/include/pg_config_manual.h`.

Key words and unquoted identifiers are case-insensitive. Therefore:

```
UPDATE MY_TABLE SET A = 5;
```

can equivalently be written as:

```
uPDaTE my_TabLE SeT a = 5;
```

A convention often used is to write key words in upper case and names in lower case, e.g.:

```
UPDATE my_table SET a = 5;
```

There is a second kind of identifier: the *delimited identifier* or *quoted identifier*. It is formed by enclosing an arbitrary sequence of characters in double-quotes (`"`). A delimited identifier is always an identifier, never a key word. So `"select"` could be used to refer to a column or table named `"select"`, whereas an unquoted `select` would be taken as a key word and would therefore provoke a parse error when used where a table or column name is expected. The example can be written with quoted identifiers like this:

```
UPDATE "my_table" SET "a" = 5;
```

Quoted identifiers can contain any character, except the character with code zero. (To include a double quote, write two double quotes.) This allows constructing table or column names that would otherwise not be possible, such as ones containing spaces or ampersands. The length limitation still applies.

Quoting an identifier also makes it case-sensitive, whereas unquoted names are always folded to lower case. For example, the identifiers `FOO`, `fOO`, and `"fOO"` are considered the same by PostgreSQL, but `"FOO"` and `"FOO"` are different from these three and each other. (The folding of unquoted names to lower case in PostgreSQL is incompatible with the SQL standard, which says that unquoted names should be folded to upper case. Thus, `fOO` should be equivalent to `"FOO"` not `"fOO"` according to the standard. If you want to write portable applications you are advised to always quote a particular name or never quote it.)

A variant of quoted identifiers allows including escaped Unicode characters identified by their code points. This variant starts with `U&` (upper or lower case `U` followed by ampersand) immediately before the opening double quote, without any spaces in between, for example `U&"fOO"`. (Note that this creates an ambiguity with the operator `&`. Use spaces around the operator to avoid this problem.) Inside the quotes, Unicode characters can be specified in escaped form by writing a backslash followed by the four-digit hexadecimal code point number or alternatively a backslash followed by a plus sign followed by a six-digit hexadecimal code point number. For example, the identifier `"data"` could be written as

```
U&"d\0061t\+000061"
```

The following less trivial example writes the Russian word “slon” (elephant) in Cyrillic letters:

```
U&"\0441\043B\043E\043D"
```

If a different escape character than backslash is desired, it can be specified using the `UESCAPE` clause after the string, for example:

```
U&"d!0061t!+000061" UESCAPE '!'
```

The escape character can be any single character other than a hexadecimal digit, the plus sign, a single quote, a double quote, or a whitespace character. Note that the escape character is written in single quotes, not double quotes, after UESCAPE.

To include the escape character in the identifier literally, write it twice.

Either the 4-digit or the 6-digit escape form can be used to specify UTF-16 surrogate pairs to compose characters with code points larger than U+FFFF, although the availability of the 6-digit form technically makes this unnecessary. (Surrogate pairs are not stored directly, but are combined into a single code point.)

If the server encoding is not UTF-8, the Unicode code point identified by one of these escape sequences is converted to the actual server encoding; an error is reported if that's not possible.

## 4.1.2. Constants

There are three kinds of *implicitly-typed constants* in PostgreSQL: strings, bit strings, and numbers. Constants can also be specified with explicit types, which can enable more accurate representation and more efficient handling by the system. These alternatives are discussed in the following subsections.

### 4.1.2.1. String Constants

A string constant in SQL is an arbitrary sequence of characters bounded by single quotes ('), for example `'This is a string'`. To include a single-quote character within a string constant, write two adjacent single quotes, e.g., `'Dianne' 's horse'`. Note that this is *not* the same as a double-quote character (").

Two string constants that are only separated by whitespace *with at least one newline* are concatenated and effectively treated as if the string had been written as one constant. For example:

```
SELECT 'foo'
'bar';
```

is equivalent to:

```
SELECT 'foobar';
```

but:

```
SELECT 'foo'      'bar';
```

is not valid syntax. (This slightly bizarre behavior is specified by SQL; PostgreSQL is following the standard.)

### 4.1.2.2. String Constants with C-Style Escapes

PostgreSQL also accepts “escape” string constants, which are an extension to the SQL standard. An escape string constant is specified by writing the letter E (upper or lower case) just before the opening single quote, e.g., `E'foo'`. (When continuing an escape string constant across lines, write E only before the first opening quote.) Within an escape string, a backslash character (\) begins a C-like *backslash escape* sequence, in which the combination of backslash and following character(s) represent a special byte value, as shown in Table 4.1.

**Table 4.1. Backslash Escape Sequences**

Backslash Escape Sequence	Interpretation
<code>\b</code>	backspace
<code>\f</code>	form feed
<code>\n</code>	newline
<code>\r</code>	carriage return
<code>\t</code>	tab
<code>\o</code> , <code>\oo</code> , <code>\ooo</code> ( $o = 0-7$ )	octal byte value
<code>\xh</code> , <code>\xhh</code> ( $h = 0-9, A-F$ )	hexadecimal byte value
<code>\uxxxx</code> , <code>\Uxxxxxxxx</code> ( $x = 0-9, A-F$ )	16 or 32-bit hexadecimal Unicode character value

Any other character following a backslash is taken literally. Thus, to include a backslash character, write two backslashes (`\\`). Also, a single quote can be included in an escape string by writing `\'`, in addition to the normal way of `'`.

It is your responsibility that the byte sequences you create, especially when using the octal or hexadecimal escapes, compose valid characters in the server character set encoding. A useful alternative is to use Unicode escapes or the alternative Unicode escape syntax, explained in Section 4.1.2.3; then the server will check that the character conversion is possible.

### Caution

If the configuration parameter `standard_conforming_strings` is `off`, then PostgreSQL recognizes backslash escapes in both regular and escape string constants. However, as of PostgreSQL 9.1, the default is `on`, meaning that backslash escapes are recognized only in escape string constants. This behavior is more standards-compliant, but might break applications which rely on the historical behavior, where backslash escapes were always recognized. As a workaround, you can set this parameter to `off`, but it is better to migrate away from using backslash escapes. If you need to use a backslash escape to represent a special character, write the string constant with an `E`.

In addition to `standard_conforming_strings`, the configuration parameters `escape_string_warning` and `backslash_quote` govern treatment of backslashes in string constants.

The character with the code zero cannot be in a string constant.

### 4.1.2.3. String Constants with Unicode Escapes

PostgreSQL also supports another type of escape syntax for strings that allows specifying arbitrary Unicode characters by code point. A Unicode escape string constant starts with `U&` (upper or lower case letter `U` followed by ampersand) immediately before the opening quote, without any spaces in between, for example `U&'föö'`. (Note that this creates an ambiguity with the operator `&`. Use spaces around the operator to avoid this problem.) Inside the quotes, Unicode characters can be specified in escaped form by writing a backslash followed by the four-digit hexadecimal code point number or alternatively a backslash followed by a plus sign followed by a six-digit hexadecimal code point number. For example, the string `'data'` could be written as

```
U&'d\0061t\+000061'
```

The following less trivial example writes the Russian word “slon” (elephant) in Cyrillic letters:



```
U&' \0441\043B\043E\043D'
```

If a different escape character than backslash is desired, it can be specified using the `UESCAPE` clause after the string, for example:

```
U&'d!0061t!+000061' UESCAPE '!'
```

The escape character can be any single character other than a hexadecimal digit, the plus sign, a single quote, a double quote, or a whitespace character.

To include the escape character in the string literally, write it twice.

Either the 4-digit or the 6-digit escape form can be used to specify UTF-16 surrogate pairs to compose characters with code points larger than U+FFFF, although the availability of the 6-digit form technically makes this unnecessary. (Surrogate pairs are not stored directly, but are combined into a single code point.)

If the server encoding is not UTF-8, the Unicode code point identified by one of these escape sequences is converted to the actual server encoding; an error is reported if that's not possible.

Also, the Unicode escape syntax for string constants only works when the configuration parameter `standard_conforming_strings` is turned on. This is because otherwise this syntax could confuse clients that parse the SQL statements to the point that it could lead to SQL injections and similar security issues. If the parameter is set to off, this syntax will be rejected with an error message.

#### 4.1.2.4. Dollar-Quoted String Constants

While the standard syntax for specifying string constants is usually convenient, it can be difficult to understand when the desired string contains many single quotes, since each of those must be doubled. To allow more readable queries in such situations, PostgreSQL provides another way, called “dollar quoting”, to write string constants. A dollar-quoted string constant consists of a dollar sign (\$), an optional “tag” of zero or more characters, another dollar sign, an arbitrary sequence of characters that makes up the string content, a dollar sign, the same tag that began this dollar quote, and a dollar sign. For example, here are two different ways to specify the string “Dianne's horse” using dollar quoting:

```
$$Dianne's horse$$  
$SomeTag$Dianne's horse$SomeTag$
```

Notice that inside the dollar-quoted string, single quotes can be used without needing to be escaped. Indeed, no characters inside a dollar-quoted string are ever escaped: the string content is always written literally. Backslashes are not special, and neither are dollar signs, unless they are part of a sequence matching the opening tag.

It is possible to nest dollar-quoted string constants by choosing different tags at each nesting level. This is most commonly used in writing function definitions. For example:

```
$function$  
BEGIN  
    RETURN ($1 ~ $q$[\t\r\n\v\\]$q$);  
END;  
$function$
```

Here, the sequence `$q$[\t\r\n\v\\]$q$` represents a dollar-quoted literal string `[\t\r\n\v\\]`, which will be recognized when the function body is executed by PostgreSQL. But since the sequence does not match the outer dollar quoting delimiter `$function$`, it is just some more characters within the constant so far as the outer string is concerned.

The tag, if any, of a dollar-quoted string follows the same rules as an unquoted identifier, except that it cannot contain a dollar sign. Tags are case sensitive, so `$tag$String content$tag$` is correct, but `$TAG$String content$tag$` is not.

A dollar-quoted string that follows a keyword or identifier must be separated from it by whitespace; otherwise the dollar quoting delimiter would be taken as part of the preceding identifier.

Dollar quoting is not part of the SQL standard, but it is often a more convenient way to write complicated string literals than the standard-compliant single quote syntax. It is particularly useful when representing string constants inside other constants, as is often needed in procedural function definitions. With single-quote syntax, each backslash in the above example would have to be written as four backslashes, which would be reduced to two backslashes in parsing the original string constant, and then to one when the inner string constant is re-parsed during function execution.

#### 4.1.2.5. Bit-String Constants

Bit-string constants look like regular string constants with a B (upper or lower case) immediately before the opening quote (no intervening whitespace), e.g., `B '1001'`. The only characters allowed within bit-string constants are 0 and 1.

Alternatively, bit-string constants can be specified in hexadecimal notation, using a leading X (upper or lower case), e.g., `X '1FF'`. This notation is equivalent to a bit-string constant with four binary digits for each hexadecimal digit.

Both forms of bit-string constant can be continued across lines in the same way as regular string constants. Dollar quoting cannot be used in a bit-string constant.

#### 4.1.2.6. Numeric Constants

Numeric constants are accepted in these general forms:

```
digits
digits.[digits][e[+-]digits]
[digits].digits[e[+-]digits]
digitse[+-]digits
```

where *digits* is one or more decimal digits (0 through 9). At least one digit must be before or after the decimal point, if one is used. At least one digit must follow the exponent marker (e), if one is present. There cannot be any spaces or other characters embedded in the constant, except for underscores, which can be used for visual grouping as described below. Note that any leading plus or minus sign is not actually considered part of the constant; it is an operator applied to the constant.

These are some examples of valid numeric constants:

```
42
3.5
4.
.001
5e2
1.925e-3
```

Additionally, non-decimal integer constants are accepted in these forms:

```
0xhexdigits
0ooctdigits
0bbindigits
```

where *hexdigits* is one or more hexadecimal digits (0-9, A-F), *octdigits* is one or more octal digits (0-7), and *bindigits* is one or more binary digits (0 or 1). Hexadecimal digits and the radix prefixes can be in upper or lower case. Note that only integers can have non-decimal forms, not numbers with fractional parts.

These are some examples of valid non-decimal integer constants:

```
0b100101
0B10011001
0o273
0O755
0x42f
0XFFFF
```

For visual grouping, underscores can be inserted between digits. These have no further effect on the value of the constant. For example:

```
1_500_000_000
0b10001000_00000000
0o_1_755
0xFFFF_FFFF
1.618_034
```

Underscores are not allowed at the start or end of a numeric constant or a group of digits (that is, immediately before or after the decimal point or the exponent marker), and more than one underscore in a row is not allowed.

A numeric constant that contains neither a decimal point nor an exponent is initially presumed to be type `integer` if its value fits in type `integer` (32 bits); otherwise it is presumed to be type `bigint` if its value fits in type `bigint` (64 bits); otherwise it is taken to be type `numeric`. Constants that contain decimal points and/or exponents are always initially presumed to be type `numeric`.

The initially assigned data type of a numeric constant is just a starting point for the type resolution algorithms. In most cases the constant will be automatically coerced to the most appropriate type depending on context. When necessary, you can force a numeric value to be interpreted as a specific data type by casting it. For example, you can force a numeric value to be treated as type `real` (`float4`) by writing:

```
REAL '1.23' -- string style
1.23::REAL  -- PostgreSQL (historical) style
```

These are actually just special cases of the general casting notations discussed next.

### 4.1.2.7. Constants of Other Types

A constant of an *arbitrary* type can be entered using any one of the following notations:

```
type 'string'
'string'::type
CAST ( 'string' AS type )
```

The string constant's text is passed to the input conversion routine for the type called *type*. The result is a constant of the indicated type. The explicit type cast can be omitted if there is no ambiguity as to the type the constant must be (for example, when it is assigned directly to a table column), in which case it is automatically coerced.

The string constant can be written using either regular SQL notation or dollar-quoting.

It is also possible to specify a type coercion using a function-like syntax:

```
typename ( 'string' )
```

but not all type names can be used in this way; see Section 4.2.9 for details.

The `::`, `CAST()`, and function-call syntaxes can also be used to specify run-time type conversions of arbitrary expressions, as discussed in Section 4.2.9. To avoid syntactic ambiguity, the *type* `'string'` syntax can only be used to specify the type of a simple literal constant. Another restriction on the *type* `'string'` syntax is that it does not work for array types; use `::` or `CAST()` to specify the type of an array constant.

The `CAST()` syntax conforms to SQL. The *type* `'string'` syntax is a generalization of the standard: SQL specifies this syntax only for a few data types, but PostgreSQL allows it for all types. The syntax with `::` is historical PostgreSQL usage, as is the function-call syntax.

### 4.1.3. Operators

An operator name is a sequence of up to NAMEDATALEN-1 (63 by default) characters from the following list:

```
+ - * / < > = ~ ! @ # % ^ & | ` ?
```

There are a few restrictions on operator names, however:

- `--` and `/*` cannot appear anywhere in an operator name, since they will be taken as the start of a comment.
- A multiple-character operator name cannot end in `+` or `-`, unless the name also contains at least one of these characters:

```
~ ! @ # % ^ & | ` ?
```

For example, `@-` is an allowed operator name, but `*-` is not. This restriction allows PostgreSQL to parse SQL-compliant queries without requiring spaces between tokens.

When working with non-SQL-standard operator names, you will usually need to separate adjacent operators with spaces to avoid ambiguity. For example, if you have defined a prefix operator named `@`, you cannot write `X*@Y`; you must write `X* @Y` to ensure that PostgreSQL reads it as two operator names not one.

### 4.1.4. Special Characters

Some characters that are not alphanumeric have a special meaning that is different from being an operator. Details on the usage can be found at the location where the respective syntax element is described. This section only exists to advise the existence and summarize the purposes of these characters.

- A dollar sign (`$`) followed by digits is used to represent a positional parameter in the body of a function definition or a prepared statement. In other contexts the dollar sign can be part of an identifier or a dollar-quoted string constant.
- Parentheses (`( )`) have their usual meaning to group expressions and enforce precedence. In some cases parentheses are required as part of the fixed syntax of a particular SQL command.
- Brackets (`[ ]`) are used to select the elements of an array. See Section 8.15 for more information on arrays.
- Commas (`,`) are used in some syntactical constructs to separate the elements of a list.

- The semicolon (;) terminates an SQL command. It cannot appear anywhere within a command, except within a string constant or quoted identifier.
- The colon (:) is used to select “slices” from arrays. (See Section 8.15.) In certain SQL dialects (such as Embedded SQL), the colon is used to prefix variable names.
- The asterisk (\*) is used in some contexts to denote all the fields of a table row or composite value. It also has a special meaning when used as the argument of an aggregate function, namely that the aggregate does not require any explicit parameter.
- The period (.) is used in numeric constants, and to separate schema, table, and column names.

## 4.1.5. Comments

A comment is a sequence of characters beginning with double dashes and extending to the end of the line, e.g.:

```
-- This is a standard SQL comment
```

Alternatively, C-style block comments can be used:

```
/* multiline comment
 * with nesting: /* nested block comment */
 */
```

where the comment begins with /\* and extends to the matching occurrence of \*/. These block comments nest, as specified in the SQL standard but unlike C, so that one can comment out larger blocks of code that might contain existing block comments.

A comment is removed from the input stream before further syntax analysis and is effectively replaced by whitespace.

## 4.1.6. Operator Precedence

Table 4.2 shows the precedence and associativity of the operators in PostgreSQL. Most operators have the same precedence and are left-associative. The precedence and associativity of the operators is hard-wired into the parser. Add parentheses if you want an expression with multiple operators to be parsed in some other way than what the precedence rules imply.

**Table 4.2. Operator Precedence (highest to lowest)**

Operator/Element	Associativity	Description
.	left	table/column name separator
::	left	PostgreSQL-style typecast
[ ]	left	array element selection
+ -	right	unary plus, unary minus
COLLATE	left	collation selection
AT	left	AT TIME ZONE
^	left	exponentiation
* / %	left	multiplication, division, modulo
+ -	left	addition, subtraction
(any other operator)	left	all other native and user-defined operators

Operator/Element	Associativity	Description
BETWEEN IN LIKE ILIKE SIMILAR		range containment, set membership, string matching
< > = <= >= <>		comparison operators
IS ISNULL NOTNULL		IS TRUE, IS FALSE, IS NULL, IS DISTINCT FROM, etc.
NOT	right	logical negation
AND	left	logical conjunction
OR	left	logical disjunction

Note that the operator precedence rules also apply to user-defined operators that have the same names as the built-in operators mentioned above. For example, if you define a “+” operator for some custom data type it will have the same precedence as the built-in “+” operator, no matter what yours does.

When a schema-qualified operator name is used in the `OPERATOR` syntax, as for example in:

```
SELECT 3 OPERATOR(pg_catalog.+) 4;
```

the `OPERATOR` construct is taken to have the default precedence shown in Table 4.2 for “any other operator”. This is true no matter which specific operator appears inside `OPERATOR ( )`.

### Note

PostgreSQL versions before 9.5 used slightly different operator precedence rules. In particular, `<= >=` and `<>` used to be treated as generic operators; `IS` tests used to have higher priority; and `NOT BETWEEN` and related constructs acted inconsistently, being taken in some cases as having the precedence of `NOT` rather than `BETWEEN`. These rules were changed for better compliance with the SQL standard and to reduce confusion from inconsistent treatment of logically equivalent constructs. In most cases, these changes will result in no behavioral change, or perhaps in “no such operator” failures which can be resolved by adding parentheses. However there are corner cases in which a query might change behavior without any parsing error being reported.

## 4.2. Value Expressions

Value expressions are used in a variety of contexts, such as in the target list of the `SELECT` command, as new column values in `INSERT` or `UPDATE`, or in search conditions in a number of commands. The result of a value expression is sometimes called a *scalar*, to distinguish it from the result of a table expression (which is a table). Value expressions are therefore also called *scalar expressions* (or even simply *expressions*). The expression syntax allows the calculation of values from primitive parts using arithmetic, logical, set, and other operations.

A value expression is one of the following:

- A constant or literal value
- A column reference
- A positional parameter reference, in the body of a function definition or prepared statement
- A subscripted expression
- A field selection expression

- An operator invocation
- A function call
- An aggregate expression
- A window function call
- A type cast
- A collation expression
- A scalar subquery
- An array constructor
- A row constructor
- Another value expression in parentheses (used to group subexpressions and override precedence)

In addition to this list, there are a number of constructs that can be classified as an expression but do not follow any general syntax rules. These generally have the semantics of a function or operator and are explained in the appropriate location in Chapter 9. An example is the `IS NULL` clause.

We have already discussed constants in Section 4.1.2. The following sections discuss the remaining options.

## 4.2.1. Column References

A column can be referenced in the form:

*correlation.columnname*

*correlation* is the name of a table (possibly qualified with a schema name), or an alias for a table defined by means of a `FROM` clause. The correlation name and separating dot can be omitted if the column name is unique across all the tables being used in the current query. (See also Chapter 7.)

## 4.2.2. Positional Parameters

A positional parameter reference is used to indicate a value that is supplied externally to an SQL statement. Parameters are used in SQL function definitions and in prepared queries. Some client libraries also support specifying data values separately from the SQL command string, in which case parameters are used to refer to the out-of-line data values. The form of a parameter reference is:

*\$number*

For example, consider the definition of a function, `dept`, as:

```
CREATE FUNCTION dept(text) RETURNS dept
  AS $$ SELECT * FROM dept WHERE name = $1 $$
LANGUAGE SQL;
```

Here the `$1` references the value of the first function argument whenever the function is invoked.

## 4.2.3. Subscripts

If an expression yields a value of an array type, then a specific element of the array value can be extracted by writing

*expression*[*subscript*]

or multiple adjacent elements (an “array slice”) can be extracted by writing

*expression*[*lower\_subscript*:*upper\_subscript*]

(Here, the brackets [ ] are meant to appear literally.) Each *subscript* is itself an expression, which will be rounded to the nearest integer value.

In general the array *expression* must be parenthesized, but the parentheses can be omitted when the expression to be subscripted is just a column reference or positional parameter. Also, multiple subscripts can be concatenated when the original array is multidimensional. For example:

```
mytable.arraycolumn[4]
mytable.two_d_column[17][34]
$1[10:42]
(arrayfunction(a,b))[42]
```

The parentheses in the last example are required. See Section 8.15 for more about arrays.

## 4.2.4. Field Selection

If an expression yields a value of a composite type (row type), then a specific field of the row can be extracted by writing

*expression.fieldname*

In general the row *expression* must be parenthesized, but the parentheses can be omitted when the expression to be selected from is just a table reference or positional parameter. For example:

```
mytable.mycolumn
$1.somecolumn
(rowfunction(a,b)).col3
```

(Thus, a qualified column reference is actually just a special case of the field selection syntax.) An important special case is extracting a field from a table column that is of a composite type:

```
(compositemcol).somefield
(mytable.compositemcol).somefield
```

The parentheses are required here to show that *compositemcol* is a column name not a table name, or that *mytable* is a table name not a schema name in the second case.

You can ask for all fields of a composite value by writing *.\**:

```
(compositemcol).*
```

This notation behaves differently depending on context; see Section 8.16.5 for details.

## 4.2.5. Operator Invocations

There are two possible syntaxes for an operator invocation:

*expression operator expression* (binary infix operator)



*operator expression* (unary prefix operator)

where the *operator* token follows the syntax rules of Section 4.1.3, or is one of the key words AND, OR, and NOT, or is a qualified operator name in the form:

`OPERATOR ( schema.operatorname )`

Which particular operators exist and whether they are unary or binary depends on what operators have been defined by the system or the user. Chapter 9 describes the built-in operators.

## 4.2.6. Function Calls

The syntax for a function call is the name of a function (possibly qualified with a schema name), followed by its argument list enclosed in parentheses:

*function\_name* ( [*expression* [, *expression* ... ] ] )

For example, the following computes the square root of 2:

`sqrt ( 2 )`

The list of built-in functions is in Chapter 9. Other functions can be added by the user.

When issuing queries in a database where some users mistrust other users, observe security precautions from Section 10.3 when writing function calls.

The arguments can optionally have names attached. See Section 4.3 for details.

### Note

A function that takes a single argument of composite type can optionally be called using field-selection syntax, and conversely field selection can be written in functional style. That is, the notations `col(table)` and `table.col` are interchangeable. This behavior is not SQL-standard but is provided in PostgreSQL because it allows use of functions to emulate “computed fields”. For more information see Section 8.16.5.

## 4.2.7. Aggregate Expressions

An *aggregate expression* represents the application of an aggregate function across the rows selected by a query. An aggregate function reduces multiple inputs to a single output value, such as the sum or average of the inputs. The syntax of an aggregate expression is one of the following:

```
aggregate_name ( expression [ , ... ] [ order_by_clause ] ) [ FILTER  
  ( WHERE filter_clause ) ]  
aggregate_name ( ALL expression [ , ... ] [ order_by_clause ] )  
  [ FILTER ( WHERE filter_clause ) ]  
aggregate_name ( DISTINCT expression [ , ... ] [ order_by_clause ] )  
  [ FILTER ( WHERE filter_clause ) ]  
aggregate_name ( * ) [ FILTER ( WHERE filter_clause ) ]  
aggregate_name ( [ expression [ , ... ] ] ) WITHIN GROUP  
  ( order_by_clause ) [ FILTER ( WHERE filter_clause ) ]
```

where *aggregate\_name* is a previously defined aggregate (possibly qualified with a schema name) and *expression* is any value expression that does not itself contain an aggregate expression or

a window function call. The optional *order\_by\_clause* and *filter\_clause* are described below.

The first form of aggregate expression invokes the aggregate once for each input row. The second form is the same as the first, since ALL is the default. The third form invokes the aggregate once for each distinct value of the expression (or distinct set of values, for multiple expressions) found in the input rows. The fourth form invokes the aggregate once for each input row; since no particular input value is specified, it is generally only useful for the `count ( * )` aggregate function. The last form is used with *ordered-set* aggregate functions, which are described below.

Most aggregate functions ignore null inputs, so that rows in which one or more of the expression(s) yield null are discarded. This can be assumed to be true, unless otherwise specified, for all built-in aggregates.

For example, `count ( * )` yields the total number of input rows; `count ( f1 )` yields the number of input rows in which `f1` is non-null, since `count` ignores nulls; and `count ( distinct f1 )` yields the number of distinct non-null values of `f1`.

Ordinarily, the input rows are fed to the aggregate function in an unspecified order. In many cases this does not matter; for example, `min` produces the same result no matter what order it receives the inputs in. However, some aggregate functions (such as `array_agg` and `string_agg`) produce results that depend on the ordering of the input rows. When using such an aggregate, the optional *order\_by\_clause* can be used to specify the desired ordering. The *order\_by\_clause* has the same syntax as for a query-level ORDER BY clause, as described in Section 7.5, except that its expressions are always just expressions and cannot be output-column names or numbers. For example:

```
SELECT array_agg(a ORDER BY b DESC) FROM table;
```

When dealing with multiple-argument aggregate functions, note that the ORDER BY clause goes after all the aggregate arguments. For example, write this:

```
SELECT string_agg(a, ',' ORDER BY a) FROM table;
```

not this:

```
SELECT string_agg(a ORDER BY a, ',') FROM table; -- incorrect
```

The latter is syntactically valid, but it represents a call of a single-argument aggregate function with two ORDER BY keys (the second one being rather useless since it's a constant).

If DISTINCT is specified in addition to an *order\_by\_clause*, then all the ORDER BY expressions must match regular arguments of the aggregate; that is, you cannot sort on an expression that is not included in the DISTINCT list.

### Note

The ability to specify both DISTINCT and ORDER BY in an aggregate function is a PostgreSQL extension.

Placing ORDER BY within the aggregate's regular argument list, as described so far, is used when ordering the input rows for general-purpose and statistical aggregates, for which ordering is optional. There is a subclass of aggregate functions called *ordered-set aggregates* for which an *order\_by\_clause* is *required*, usually because the aggregate's computation is only sensible in terms of a specific ordering of its input rows. Typical examples of ordered-set aggregates include rank and percentile calculations. For an ordered-set aggregate, the *order\_by\_clause* is written inside

`WITHIN GROUP (...)`, as shown in the final syntax alternative above. The expressions in the *order\_by\_clause* are evaluated once per input row just like regular aggregate arguments, sorted as per the *order\_by\_clause*'s requirements, and fed to the aggregate function as input arguments. (This is unlike the case for a non-`WITHIN GROUP order_by_clause`, which is not treated as argument(s) to the aggregate function.) The argument expressions preceding `WITHIN GROUP`, if any, are called *direct arguments* to distinguish them from the *aggregated arguments* listed in the *order\_by\_clause*. Unlike regular aggregate arguments, direct arguments are evaluated only once per aggregate call, not once per input row. This means that they can contain variables only if those variables are grouped by `GROUP BY`; this restriction is the same as if the direct arguments were not inside an aggregate expression at all. Direct arguments are typically used for things like percentile fractions, which only make sense as a single value per aggregation calculation. The direct argument list can be empty; in this case, write just `()` not `(*)`. (PostgreSQL will actually accept either spelling, but only the first way conforms to the SQL standard.)

An example of an ordered-set aggregate call is:

```
SELECT percentile_cont(0.5) WITHIN GROUP (ORDER BY income) FROM
households;
percentile_cont
-----
                50489
```

which obtains the 50th percentile, or median, value of the `income` column from table `households`. Here, `0.5` is a direct argument; it would make no sense for the percentile fraction to be a value varying across rows.

If `FILTER` is specified, then only the input rows for which the *filter\_clause* evaluates to true are fed to the aggregate function; other rows are discarded. For example:

```
SELECT
    count(*) AS unfiltered,
    count(*) FILTER (WHERE i < 5) AS filtered
FROM generate_series(1,10) AS s(i);
unfiltered | filtered
-----+-----
                10 |         4
(1 row)
```

The predefined aggregate functions are described in Section 9.21. Other aggregate functions can be added by the user.

An aggregate expression can only appear in the result list or `HAVING` clause of a `SELECT` command. It is forbidden in other clauses, such as `WHERE`, because those clauses are logically evaluated before the results of aggregates are formed.

When an aggregate expression appears in a subquery (see Section 4.2.11 and Section 9.23), the aggregate is normally evaluated over the rows of the subquery. But an exception occurs if the aggregate's arguments (and *filter\_clause* if any) contain only outer-level variables: the aggregate then belongs to the nearest such outer level, and is evaluated over the rows of that query. The aggregate expression as a whole is then an outer reference for the subquery it appears in, and acts as a constant over any one evaluation of that subquery. The restriction about appearing only in the result list or `HAVING` clause applies with respect to the query level that the aggregate belongs to.

## 4.2.8. Window Function Calls

A *window function call* represents the application of an aggregate-like function over some portion of the rows selected by a query. Unlike non-window aggregate calls, this is not tied to grouping of the

selected rows into a single output row — each row remains separate in the query output. However the window function has access to all the rows that would be part of the current row's group according to the grouping specification (`PARTITION BY` list) of the window function call. The syntax of a window function call is one of the following:

```
function_name ([expression [, expression ... ]]) [ FILTER
  ( WHERE filter_clause ) ] OVER window_name
function_name ([expression [, expression ... ]]) [ FILTER
  ( WHERE filter_clause ) ] OVER ( window_definition )
function_name ( * ) [ FILTER ( WHERE filter_clause ) ]
  OVER window_name
function_name ( * ) [ FILTER ( WHERE filter_clause ) ] OVER
  ( window_definition )
```

where *window\_definition* has the syntax

```
[ existing_window_name ]
[ PARTITION BY expression [, ...] ]
[ ORDER BY expression [ ASC | DESC | USING operator ] [ NULLS
  { FIRST | LAST } ] [, ...] ]
[ frame_clause ]
```

The optional *frame\_clause* can be one of

```
{ RANGE | ROWS | GROUPS } frame_start [ frame_exclusion ]
{ RANGE | ROWS | GROUPS } BETWEEN frame_start AND frame_end
[ frame_exclusion ]
```

where *frame\_start* and *frame\_end* can be one of

```
UNBOUNDED PRECEDING
offset PRECEDING
CURRENT ROW
offset FOLLOWING
UNBOUNDED FOLLOWING
```

and *frame\_exclusion* can be one of

```
EXCLUDE CURRENT ROW
EXCLUDE GROUP
EXCLUDE TIES
EXCLUDE NO OTHERS
```

Here, *expression* represents any value expression that does not itself contain window function calls.

*window\_name* is a reference to a named window specification defined in the query's `WINDOW` clause. Alternatively, a full *window\_definition* can be given within parentheses, using the same syntax as for defining a named window in the `WINDOW` clause; see the `SELECT` reference page for details. It's worth pointing out that `OVER wname` is not exactly equivalent to `OVER (wname ...)`; the latter implies copying and modifying the window definition, and will be rejected if the referenced window specification includes a frame clause.

The `PARTITION BY` clause groups the rows of the query into *partitions*, which are processed separately by the window function. `PARTITION BY` works similarly to a query-level `GROUP BY` clause,

except that its expressions are always just expressions and cannot be output-column names or numbers. Without `PARTITION BY`, all rows produced by the query are treated as a single partition. The `ORDER BY` clause determines the order in which the rows of a partition are processed by the window function. It works similarly to a query-level `ORDER BY` clause, but likewise cannot use output-column names or numbers. Without `ORDER BY`, rows are processed in an unspecified order.

The *frame\_clause* specifies the set of rows constituting the *window frame*, which is a subset of the current partition, for those window functions that act on the frame instead of the whole partition. The set of rows in the frame can vary depending on which row is the current row. The frame can be specified in `RANGE`, `ROWS` or `GROUPS` mode; in each case, it runs from the *frame\_start* to the *frame\_end*. If *frame\_end* is omitted, the end defaults to `CURRENT ROW`.

A *frame\_start* of `UNBOUNDED PRECEDING` means that the frame starts with the first row of the partition, and similarly a *frame\_end* of `UNBOUNDED FOLLOWING` means that the frame ends with the last row of the partition.

In `RANGE` or `GROUPS` mode, a *frame\_start* of `CURRENT ROW` means the frame starts with the current row's first *peer* row (a row that the window's `ORDER BY` clause sorts as equivalent to the current row), while a *frame\_end* of `CURRENT ROW` means the frame ends with the current row's last peer row. In `ROWS` mode, `CURRENT ROW` simply means the current row.

In the *offset* `PRECEDING` and *offset* `FOLLOWING` frame options, the *offset* must be an expression not containing any variables, aggregate functions, or window functions. The meaning of the *offset* depends on the frame mode:

- In `ROWS` mode, the *offset* must yield a non-null, non-negative integer, and the option means that the frame starts or ends the specified number of rows before or after the current row.
- In `GROUPS` mode, the *offset* again must yield a non-null, non-negative integer, and the option means that the frame starts or ends the specified number of *peer groups* before or after the current row's peer group, where a peer group is a set of rows that are equivalent in the `ORDER BY` ordering. (There must be an `ORDER BY` clause in the window definition to use `GROUPS` mode.)
- In `RANGE` mode, these options require that the `ORDER BY` clause specify exactly one column. The *offset* specifies the maximum difference between the value of that column in the current row and its value in preceding or following rows of the frame. The data type of the *offset* expression varies depending on the data type of the ordering column. For numeric ordering columns it is typically of the same type as the ordering column, but for datetime ordering columns it is an interval. For example, if the ordering column is of type `date` or `timestamp`, one could write `RANGE BETWEEN '1 day' PRECEDING AND '10 days' FOLLOWING`. The *offset* is still required to be non-null and non-negative, though the meaning of “non-negative” depends on its data type.

In any case, the distance to the end of the frame is limited by the distance to the end of the partition, so that for rows near the partition ends the frame might contain fewer rows than elsewhere.

Notice that in both `ROWS` and `GROUPS` mode, `0 PRECEDING` and `0 FOLLOWING` are equivalent to `CURRENT ROW`. This normally holds in `RANGE` mode as well, for an appropriate data-type-specific meaning of “zero”.

The *frame\_exclusion* option allows rows around the current row to be excluded from the frame, even if they would be included according to the frame start and frame end options. `EXCLUDE CURRENT ROW` excludes the current row from the frame. `EXCLUDE GROUP` excludes the current row and its ordering peers from the frame. `EXCLUDE TIES` excludes any peers of the current row from the frame, but not the current row itself. `EXCLUDE NO OTHERS` simply specifies explicitly the default behavior of not excluding the current row or its peers.

The default framing option is `RANGE UNBOUNDED PRECEDING`, which is the same as `RANGE BETWEEN UNBOUNDED PRECEDING AND CURRENT ROW`. With `ORDER BY`, this sets the frame to be all rows from the partition start up through the current row's last `ORDER BY` peer. Without

ORDER BY, this means all rows of the partition are included in the window frame, since all rows become peers of the current row.

Restrictions are that *frame\_start* cannot be UNBOUNDED FOLLOWING, *frame\_end* cannot be UNBOUNDED PRECEDING, and the *frame\_end* choice cannot appear earlier in the above list of *frame\_start* and *frame\_end* options than the *frame\_start* choice does — for example RANGE BETWEEN CURRENT ROW AND *offset* PRECEDING is not allowed. But, for example, ROWS BETWEEN 7 PRECEDING AND 8 PRECEDING is allowed, even though it would never select any rows.

If FILTER is specified, then only the input rows for which the *filter\_clause* evaluates to true are fed to the window function; other rows are discarded. Only window functions that are aggregates accept a FILTER clause.

The built-in window functions are described in Table 9.64. Other window functions can be added by the user. Also, any built-in or user-defined general-purpose or statistical aggregate can be used as a window function. (Ordered-set and hypothetical-set aggregates cannot presently be used as window functions.)

The syntaxes using \* are used for calling parameter-less aggregate functions as window functions, for example count(\*) OVER (PARTITION BY x ORDER BY y). The asterisk (\*) is customarily not used for window-specific functions. Window-specific functions do not allow DISTINCT or ORDER BY to be used within the function argument list.

Window function calls are permitted only in the SELECT list and the ORDER BY clause of the query.

More information about window functions can be found in Section 3.5, Section 9.22, and Section 7.2.5.

## 4.2.9. Type Casts

A type cast specifies a conversion from one data type to another. PostgreSQL accepts two equivalent syntaxes for type casts:

```
CAST ( expression AS type )  
expression::type
```

The CAST syntax conforms to SQL; the syntax with :: is historical PostgreSQL usage.

When a cast is applied to a value expression of a known type, it represents a run-time type conversion. The cast will succeed only if a suitable type conversion operation has been defined. Notice that this is subtly different from the use of casts with constants, as shown in Section 4.1.2.7. A cast applied to an unadorned string literal represents the initial assignment of a type to a literal constant value, and so it will succeed for any type (if the contents of the string literal are acceptable input syntax for the data type).

An explicit type cast can usually be omitted if there is no ambiguity as to the type that a value expression must produce (for example, when it is assigned to a table column); the system will automatically apply a type cast in such cases. However, automatic casting is only done for casts that are marked “OK to apply implicitly” in the system catalogs. Other casts must be invoked with explicit casting syntax. This restriction is intended to prevent surprising conversions from being applied silently.

It is also possible to specify a type cast using a function-like syntax:

```
typename ( expression )
```

However, this only works for types whose names are also valid as function names. For example, double precision cannot be used this way, but the equivalent float8 can. Also, the names in-

`interval`, `time`, and `timestamp` can only be used in this fashion if they are double-quoted, because of syntactic conflicts. Therefore, the use of the function-like cast syntax leads to inconsistencies and should probably be avoided.

### Note

The function-like syntax is in fact just a function call. When one of the two standard cast syntaxes is used to do a run-time conversion, it will internally invoke a registered function to perform the conversion. By convention, these conversion functions have the same name as their output type, and thus the “function-like syntax” is nothing more than a direct invocation of the underlying conversion function. Obviously, this is not something that a portable application should rely on. For further details see `CREATE CAST`.

## 4.2.10. Collation Expressions

The `COLLATE` clause overrides the collation of an expression. It is appended to the expression it applies to:

*expr* `COLLATE` *collation*

where *collation* is a possibly schema-qualified identifier. The `COLLATE` clause binds tighter than operators; parentheses can be used when necessary.

If no collation is explicitly specified, the database system either derives a collation from the columns involved in the expression, or it defaults to the default collation of the database if no column is involved in the expression.

The two common uses of the `COLLATE` clause are overriding the sort order in an `ORDER BY` clause, for example:

```
SELECT a, b, c FROM tbl WHERE ... ORDER BY a COLLATE "C";
```

and overriding the collation of a function or operator call that has locale-sensitive results, for example:

```
SELECT * FROM tbl WHERE a > 'foo' COLLATE "C";
```

Note that in the latter case the `COLLATE` clause is attached to an input argument of the operator we wish to affect. It doesn't matter which argument of the operator or function call the `COLLATE` clause is attached to, because the collation that is applied by the operator or function is derived by considering all arguments, and an explicit `COLLATE` clause will override the collations of all other arguments. (Attaching non-matching `COLLATE` clauses to more than one argument, however, is an error. For more details see Section 24.2.) Thus, this gives the same result as the previous example:

```
SELECT * FROM tbl WHERE a COLLATE "C" > 'foo';
```

But this is an error:

```
SELECT * FROM tbl WHERE (a > 'foo') COLLATE "C";
```

because it attempts to apply a collation to the result of the `>` operator, which is of the non-collatable data type `boolean`.

## 4.2.11. Scalar Subqueries

A scalar subquery is an ordinary `SELECT` query in parentheses that returns exactly one row with one column. (See Chapter 7 for information about writing queries.) The `SELECT` query is executed and the single returned value is used in the surrounding value expression. It is an error to use a query that returns more than one row or more than one column as a scalar subquery. (But if, during a particular execution, the subquery returns no rows, there is no error; the scalar result is taken to be null.) The subquery can refer to variables from the surrounding query, which will act as constants during any one evaluation of the subquery. See also Section 9.23 for other expressions involving subqueries.

For example, the following finds the largest city population in each state:

```
SELECT name, (SELECT max(pop) FROM cities WHERE cities.state =
             states.name)
FROM states;
```

## 4.2.12. Array Constructors

An array constructor is an expression that builds an array value using values for its member elements. A simple array constructor consists of the key word `ARRAY`, a left square bracket `[`, a list of expressions (separated by commas) for the array element values, and finally a right square bracket `]`. For example:

```
SELECT ARRAY[1,2,3+4];
      array
-----
{1,2,7}
(1 row)
```

By default, the array element type is the common type of the member expressions, determined using the same rules as for `UNION` or `CASE` constructs (see Section 10.5). You can override this by explicitly casting the array constructor to the desired type, for example:

```
SELECT ARRAY[1,2,22.7]::integer[];
      array
-----
{1,2,23}
(1 row)
```

This has the same effect as casting each expression to the array element type individually. For more on casting, see Section 4.2.9.

Multidimensional array values can be built by nesting array constructors. In the inner constructors, the key word `ARRAY` can be omitted. For example, these produce the same result:

```
SELECT ARRAY[ARRAY[1,2], ARRAY[3,4]];
      array
-----
{{1,2},{3,4}}
(1 row)

SELECT ARRAY[[1,2],[3,4]];
      array
-----
{{1,2},{3,4}}
(1 row)
```



Since multidimensional arrays must be rectangular, inner constructors at the same level must produce sub-arrays of identical dimensions. Any cast applied to the outer ARRAY constructor propagates automatically to all the inner constructors.

Multidimensional array constructor elements can be anything yielding an array of the proper kind, not only a sub-ARRAY construct. For example:

```
CREATE TABLE arr(f1 int[], f2 int[]);

INSERT INTO arr VALUES (ARRAY[[1,2],[3,4]], ARRAY[[5,6],[7,8]]);

SELECT ARRAY[f1, f2, '{{9,10},{11,12}}'::int[]] FROM arr;
           array
-----
{{ {1,2},{3,4}}, {5,6},{7,8}}, {9,10},{11,12}}
(1 row)
```

You can construct an empty array, but since it's impossible to have an array with no type, you must explicitly cast your empty array to the desired type. For example:

```
SELECT ARRAY[]::integer[];
           array
-----
{}
(1 row)
```

It is also possible to construct an array from the results of a subquery. In this form, the array constructor is written with the key word ARRAY followed by a parenthesized (not bracketed) subquery. For example:

```
SELECT ARRAY(SELECT oid FROM pg_proc WHERE proname LIKE 'bytea%');
           array
-----
{2011,1954,1948,1952,1951,1244,1950,2005,1949,1953,2006,31,2412}
(1 row)

SELECT ARRAY(SELECT ARRAY[i, i*2] FROM generate_series(1,5) AS
a(i));
           array
-----
{{1,2},{2,4},{3,6},{4,8},{5,10}}
(1 row)
```

The subquery must return a single column. If the subquery's output column is of a non-array type, the resulting one-dimensional array will have an element for each row in the subquery result, with an element type matching that of the subquery's output column. If the subquery's output column is of an array type, the result will be an array of the same type but one higher dimension; in this case all the subquery rows must yield arrays of identical dimensionality, else the result would not be rectangular.

The subscripts of an array value built with ARRAY always begin with one. For more information about arrays, see Section 8.15.

## 4.2.13. Row Constructors

A row constructor is an expression that builds a row value (also called a composite value) using values for its member fields. A row constructor consists of the key word ROW, a left parenthesis, zero or

more expressions (separated by commas) for the row field values, and finally a right parenthesis. For example:

```
SELECT ROW(1,2.5,'this is a test');
```

The key word ROW is optional when there is more than one expression in the list.

A row constructor can include the syntax *rowvalue.\**, which will be expanded to a list of the elements of the row value, just as occurs when the *.\** syntax is used at the top level of a SELECT list (see Section 8.16.5). For example, if table *t* has columns *f1* and *f2*, these are the same:

```
SELECT ROW(t.*, 42) FROM t;
SELECT ROW(t.f1, t.f2, 42) FROM t;
```

### Note

Before PostgreSQL 8.2, the *.\** syntax was not expanded in row constructors, so that writing `ROW(t.*, 42)` created a two-field row whose first field was another row value. The new behavior is usually more useful. If you need the old behavior of nested row values, write the inner row value without *.\**, for instance `ROW(t, 42)`.

By default, the value created by a ROW expression is of an anonymous record type. If necessary, it can be cast to a named composite type — either the row type of a table, or a composite type created with `CREATE TYPE AS`. An explicit cast might be needed to avoid ambiguity. For example:

```
CREATE TABLE mytable(f1 int, f2 float, f3 text);

CREATE FUNCTION getf1(mytable) RETURNS int AS 'SELECT $1.f1'
LANGUAGE SQL;

-- No cast needed since only one getf1() exists
SELECT getf1(ROW(1,2.5,'this is a test'));
getf1
-----
      1
(1 row)

CREATE TYPE myrowtype AS (f1 int, f2 text, f3 numeric);

CREATE FUNCTION getf1(myrowtype) RETURNS int AS 'SELECT $1.f1'
LANGUAGE SQL;

-- Now we need a cast to indicate which function to call:
SELECT getf1(ROW(1,2.5,'this is a test'));
ERROR:  function getf1(record) is not unique

SELECT getf1(ROW(1,2.5,'this is a test')::mytable);
getf1
-----
      1
(1 row)

SELECT getf1(CAST(ROW(11,'this is a test',2.5) AS myrowtype));
getf1
```

```
-----  
      11  
(1 row)
```

Row constructors can be used to build composite values to be stored in a composite-type table column, or to be passed to a function that accepts a composite parameter. Also, it is possible to compare two row values or test a row with `IS NULL` or `IS NOT NULL`, for example:

```
SELECT ROW(1,2.5,'this is a test') = ROW(1, 3, 'not the same');
```

```
SELECT ROW(table.*) IS NULL FROM table; -- detect all-null rows
```

For more detail see Section 9.24. Row constructors can also be used in connection with subqueries, as discussed in Section 9.23.

## 4.2.14. Expression Evaluation Rules

The order of evaluation of subexpressions is not defined. In particular, the inputs of an operator or function are not necessarily evaluated left-to-right or in any other fixed order.

Furthermore, if the result of an expression can be determined by evaluating only some parts of it, then other subexpressions might not be evaluated at all. For instance, if one wrote:

```
SELECT true OR somefunc();
```

then `somefunc()` would (probably) not be called at all. The same would be the case if one wrote:

```
SELECT somefunc() OR true;
```

Note that this is not the same as the left-to-right “short-circuiting” of Boolean operators that is found in some programming languages.

As a consequence, it is unwise to use functions with side effects as part of complex expressions. It is particularly dangerous to rely on side effects or evaluation order in `WHERE` and `HAVING` clauses, since those clauses are extensively reprocessed as part of developing an execution plan. Boolean expressions (AND/OR/NOT combinations) in those clauses can be reorganized in any manner allowed by the laws of Boolean algebra.

When it is essential to force evaluation order, a `CASE` construct (see Section 9.18) can be used. For example, this is an untrustworthy way of trying to avoid division by zero in a `WHERE` clause:

```
SELECT ... WHERE x > 0 AND y/x > 1.5;
```

But this is safe:

```
SELECT ... WHERE CASE WHEN x > 0 THEN y/x > 1.5 ELSE false END;
```

A `CASE` construct used in this fashion will defeat optimization attempts, so it should only be done when necessary. (In this particular example, it would be better to sidestep the problem by writing `y > 1.5*x` instead.)

`CASE` is not a cure-all for such issues, however. One limitation of the technique illustrated above is that it does not prevent early evaluation of constant subexpressions. As described in Section 38.7, functions and operators marked `IMMUTABLE` can be evaluated when the query is planned rather than when it is executed. Thus for example

```
SELECT CASE WHEN x > 0 THEN x ELSE 1/0 END FROM tab;
```

is likely to result in a division-by-zero failure due to the planner trying to simplify the constant subexpression, even if every row in the table has `x > 0` so that the `ELSE` arm would never be entered at run time.

While that particular example might seem silly, related cases that don't obviously involve constants can occur in queries executed within functions, since the values of function arguments and local variables can be inserted into queries as constants for planning purposes. Within PL/pgSQL functions, for example, using an `IF-THEN-ELSE` statement to protect a risky computation is much safer than just nesting it in a `CASE` expression.

Another limitation of the same kind is that a `CASE` cannot prevent evaluation of an aggregate expression contained within it, because aggregate expressions are computed before other expressions in a `SELECT` list or `HAVING` clause are considered. For example, the following query can cause a division-by-zero error despite seemingly having protected against it:

```
SELECT CASE WHEN min(employees) > 0
            THEN avg(expenses / employees)
            END
FROM departments;
```

The `min()` and `avg()` aggregates are computed concurrently over all the input rows, so if any row has `employees` equal to zero, the division-by-zero error will occur before there is any opportunity to test the result of `min()`. Instead, use a `WHERE` or `FILTER` clause to prevent problematic input rows from reaching an aggregate function in the first place.

## 4.3. Calling Functions

PostgreSQL allows functions that have named parameters to be called using either *positional* or *named* notation. Named notation is especially useful for functions that have a large number of parameters, since it makes the associations between parameters and actual arguments more explicit and reliable. In positional notation, a function call is written with its argument values in the same order as they are defined in the function declaration. In named notation, the arguments are matched to the function parameters by name and can be written in any order. For each notation, also consider the effect of function argument types, documented in Section 10.3.

In either notation, parameters that have default values given in the function declaration need not be written in the call at all. But this is particularly useful in named notation, since any combination of parameters can be omitted; while in positional notation parameters can only be omitted from right to left.

PostgreSQL also supports *mixed* notation, which combines positional and named notation. In this case, positional parameters are written first and named parameters appear after them.

The following examples will illustrate the usage of all three notations, using the following function definition:

```
CREATE FUNCTION concat_lower_or_upper(a text, b text, uppercase
    boolean DEFAULT false)
RETURNS text
AS
$$
    SELECT CASE
        WHEN $3 THEN UPPER($1 || ' ' || $2)
        ELSE LOWER($1 || ' ' || $2)
```

```
END;  
$$  
LANGUAGE SQL IMMUTABLE STRICT;
```

Function `concat_lower_or_upper` has two mandatory parameters, `a` and `b`. Additionally there is one optional parameter `uppercase` which defaults to `false`. The `a` and `b` inputs will be concatenated, and forced to either upper or lower case depending on the `uppercase` parameter. The remaining details of this function definition are not important here (see Chapter 38 for more information).

### 4.3.1. Using Positional Notation

Positional notation is the traditional mechanism for passing arguments to functions in PostgreSQL. An example is:

```
SELECT concat_lower_or_upper('Hello', 'World', true);  
concat_lower_or_upper  
-----  
HELLO WORLD  
(1 row)
```

All arguments are specified in order. The result is upper case since `uppercase` is specified as `true`. Another example is:

```
SELECT concat_lower_or_upper('Hello', 'World');  
concat_lower_or_upper  
-----  
hello world  
(1 row)
```

Here, the `uppercase` parameter is omitted, so it receives its default value of `false`, resulting in lower case output. In positional notation, arguments can be omitted from right to left so long as they have defaults.

### 4.3.2. Using Named Notation

In named notation, each argument's name is specified using `=>` to separate it from the argument expression. For example:

```
SELECT concat_lower_or_upper(a => 'Hello', b => 'World');  
concat_lower_or_upper  
-----  
hello world  
(1 row)
```

Again, the argument `uppercase` was omitted so it is set to `false` implicitly. One advantage of using named notation is that the arguments may be specified in any order, for example:

```
SELECT concat_lower_or_upper(a => 'Hello', b => 'World', uppercase  
=> true);  
concat_lower_or_upper  
-----  
HELLO WORLD  
(1 row)
```

```
SELECT concat_lower_or_upper(a => 'Hello', uppercase => true, b =>
    'World');
concat_lower_or_upper
-----
HELLO WORLD
(1 row)
```

An older syntax based on "!=" is supported for backward compatibility:

```
SELECT concat_lower_or_upper(a != 'Hello', uppercase != true, b !=
    'World');
concat_lower_or_upper
-----
HELLO WORLD
(1 row)
```

### 4.3.3. Using Mixed Notation

The mixed notation combines positional and named notation. However, as already mentioned, named arguments cannot precede positional arguments. For example:

```
SELECT concat_lower_or_upper('Hello', 'World', uppercase => true);
concat_lower_or_upper
-----
HELLO WORLD
(1 row)
```

In the above query, the arguments `a` and `b` are specified positionally, while `uppercase` is specified by name. In this example, that adds little except documentation. With a more complex function having numerous parameters that have default values, named or mixed notation can save a great deal of writing and reduce chances for error.

#### Note

Named and mixed call notations currently cannot be used when calling an aggregate function (but they do work when an aggregate function is used as a window function).

---

# Chapter 5. Data Definition

This chapter covers how one creates the database structures that will hold one's data. In a relational database, the raw data is stored in tables, so the majority of this chapter is devoted to explaining how tables are created and modified and what features are available to control what data is stored in the tables. Subsequently, we discuss how tables can be organized into schemas, and how privileges can be assigned to tables. Finally, we will briefly look at other features that affect the data storage, such as inheritance, table partitioning, views, functions, and triggers.

## 5.1. Table Basics

A table in a relational database is much like a table on paper: It consists of rows and columns. The number and order of the columns is fixed, and each column has a name. The number of rows is variable — it reflects how much data is stored at a given moment. SQL does not make any guarantees about the order of the rows in a table. When a table is read, the rows will appear in an unspecified order, unless sorting is explicitly requested. This is covered in Chapter 7. Furthermore, SQL does not assign unique identifiers to rows, so it is possible to have several completely identical rows in a table. This is a consequence of the mathematical model that underlies SQL but is usually not desirable. Later in this chapter we will see how to deal with this issue.

Each column has a data type. The data type constrains the set of possible values that can be assigned to a column and assigns semantics to the data stored in the column so that it can be used for computations. For instance, a column declared to be of a numerical type will not accept arbitrary text strings, and the data stored in such a column can be used for mathematical computations. By contrast, a column declared to be of a character string type will accept almost any kind of data but it does not lend itself to mathematical calculations, although other operations such as string concatenation are available.

PostgreSQL includes a sizable set of built-in data types that fit many applications. Users can also define their own data types. Most built-in data types have obvious names and semantics, so we defer a detailed explanation to Chapter 8. Some of the frequently used data types are `integer` for whole numbers, `numeric` for possibly fractional numbers, `text` for character strings, `date` for dates, `time` for time-of-day values, and `timestamp` for values containing both date and time.

To create a table, you use the aptly named `CREATE TABLE` command. In this command you specify at least a name for the new table, the names of the columns and the data type of each column. For example:

```
CREATE TABLE my_first_table (  
    first_column text,  
    second_column integer  
);
```

This creates a table named `my_first_table` with two columns. The first column is named `first_column` and has a data type of `text`; the second column has the name `second_column` and the type `integer`. The table and column names follow the identifier syntax explained in Section 4.1.1. The type names are usually also identifiers, but there are some exceptions. Note that the column list is comma-separated and surrounded by parentheses.

Of course, the previous example was heavily contrived. Normally, you would give names to your tables and columns that convey what kind of data they store. So let's look at a more realistic example:

```
CREATE TABLE products (  
    product_no integer,  
    name text,  
    price numeric
```

```
);
```

(The `numeric` type can store fractional components, as would be typical of monetary amounts.)

### Tip

When you create many interrelated tables it is wise to choose a consistent naming pattern for the tables and columns. For instance, there is a choice of using singular or plural nouns for table names, both of which are favored by some theorist or other.

There is a limit on how many columns a table can contain. Depending on the column types, it is between 250 and 1600. However, defining a table with anywhere near this many columns is highly unusual and often a questionable design.

If you no longer need a table, you can remove it using the `DROP TABLE` command. For example:

```
DROP TABLE my_first_table;
DROP TABLE products;
```

Attempting to drop a table that does not exist is an error. Nevertheless, it is common in SQL script files to unconditionally try to drop each table before creating it, ignoring any error messages, so that the script works whether or not the table exists. (If you like, you can use the `DROP TABLE IF EXISTS` variant to avoid the error messages, but this is not standard SQL.)

If you need to modify a table that already exists, see Section 5.6 later in this chapter.

With the tools discussed so far you can create fully functional tables. The remainder of this chapter is concerned with adding features to the table definition to ensure data integrity, security, or convenience. If you are eager to fill your tables with data now you can skip ahead to Chapter 6 and read the rest of this chapter later.

## 5.2. Default Values

A column can be assigned a default value. When a new row is created and no values are specified for some of the columns, those columns will be filled with their respective default values. A data manipulation command can also request explicitly that a column be set to its default value, without having to know what that value is. (Details about data manipulation commands are in Chapter 6.)

If no default value is declared explicitly, the default value is the null value. This usually makes sense because a null value can be considered to represent unknown data.

In a table definition, default values are listed after the column data type. For example:

```
CREATE TABLE products (
    product_no integer,
    name text,
    price numeric DEFAULT 9.99
);
```

The default value can be an expression, which will be evaluated whenever the default value is inserted (*not* when the table is created). A common example is for a `timestamp` column to have a default of `CURRENT_TIMESTAMP`, so that it gets set to the time of row insertion. Another common example is generating a “serial number” for each row. In PostgreSQL this is typically done by something like:



```
CREATE TABLE products (  
    product_no integer DEFAULT nextval('products_product_no_seq') ,  
    ...  
);
```

where the `nextval()` function supplies successive values from a *sequence object* (see Section 9.17). This arrangement is sufficiently common that there's a special shorthand for it:

```
CREATE TABLE products (  
    product_no SERIAL,  
    ...  
);
```

The `SERIAL` shorthand is discussed further in Section 8.1.4.

## 5.3. Generated Columns

A generated column is a special column that is always computed from other columns. Thus, it is for columns what a view is for tables. There are two kinds of generated columns: stored and virtual. A stored generated column is computed when it is written (inserted or updated) and occupies storage as if it were a normal column. A virtual generated column occupies no storage and is computed when it is read. Thus, a virtual generated column is similar to a view and a stored generated column is similar to a materialized view (except that it is always updated automatically). PostgreSQL currently implements only stored generated columns.

To create a generated column, use the `GENERATED ALWAYS AS` clause in `CREATE TABLE`, for example:

```
CREATE TABLE people (  
    ...  
    height_cm numeric,  
    height_in numeric GENERATED ALWAYS AS (height_cm / 2.54) STORED  
);
```

The keyword `STORED` must be specified to choose the stored kind of generated column. See `CREATE TABLE` for more details.

A generated column cannot be written to directly. In `INSERT` or `UPDATE` commands, a value cannot be specified for a generated column, but the keyword `DEFAULT` may be specified.

Consider the differences between a column with a default and a generated column. The column default is evaluated once when the row is first inserted if no other value was provided; a generated column is updated whenever the row changes and cannot be overridden. A column default may not refer to other columns of the table; a generation expression would normally do so. A column default can use volatile functions, for example `random()` or functions referring to the current time; this is not allowed for generated columns.

Several restrictions apply to the definition of generated columns and tables involving generated columns:

- The generation expression can only use immutable functions and cannot use subqueries or reference anything other than the current row in any way.
- A generation expression cannot reference another generated column.
- A generation expression cannot reference a system column, except `tableoid`.
- A generated column cannot have a column default or an identity definition.

- A generated column cannot be part of a partition key.
- Foreign tables can have generated columns. See `CREATE FOREIGN TABLE` for details.
- For inheritance and partitioning:
  - If a parent column is a generated column, its child column must also be a generated column; however, the child column can have a different generation expression. The generation expression that is actually applied during insert or update of a row is the one associated with the table that the row is physically in. (This is unlike the behavior for column defaults: for those, the default value associated with the table named in the query applies.)
  - If a parent column is not a generated column, its child column must not be generated either.
  - For inherited tables, if you write a child column definition without any `GENERATED` clause in `CREATE TABLE ... INHERITS`, then its `GENERATED` clause will automatically be copied from the parent. `ALTER TABLE ... INHERIT` will insist that parent and child columns already match as to generation status, but it will not require their generation expressions to match.
  - Similarly for partitioned tables, if you write a child column definition without any `GENERATED` clause in `CREATE TABLE ... PARTITION OF`, then its `GENERATED` clause will automatically be copied from the parent. `ALTER TABLE ... ATTACH PARTITION` will insist that parent and child columns already match as to generation status, but it will not require their generation expressions to match.
  - In case of multiple inheritance, if one parent column is a generated column, then all parent columns must be generated columns. If they do not all have the same generation expression, then the desired expression for the child must be specified explicitly.

Additional considerations apply to the use of generated columns.

- Generated columns maintain access privileges separately from their underlying base columns. So, it is possible to arrange it so that a particular role can read from a generated column but not from the underlying base columns.
- Generated columns are, conceptually, updated after `BEFORE` triggers have run. Therefore, changes made to base columns in a `BEFORE` trigger will be reflected in generated columns. But conversely, it is not allowed to access generated columns in `BEFORE` triggers.

## 5.4. Constraints

Data types are a way to limit the kind of data that can be stored in a table. For many applications, however, the constraint they provide is too coarse. For example, a column containing a product price should probably only accept positive values. But there is no standard data type that accepts only positive numbers. Another issue is that you might want to constrain column data with respect to other columns or rows. For example, in a table containing product information, there should be only one row for each product number.

To that end, SQL allows you to define constraints on columns and tables. Constraints give you as much control over the data in your tables as you wish. If a user attempts to store data in a column that would violate a constraint, an error is raised. This applies even if the value came from the default value definition.

### 5.4.1. Check Constraints

A check constraint is the most generic constraint type. It allows you to specify that the value in a certain column must satisfy a Boolean (truth-value) expression. For instance, to require positive product prices, you could use:

```
CREATE TABLE products (  
    product_no integer,  
    name text,  
    price numeric CHECK (price > 0)  
);
```

As you see, the constraint definition comes after the data type, just like default value definitions. Default values and constraints can be listed in any order. A check constraint consists of the key word **CHECK** followed by an expression in parentheses. The check constraint expression should involve the column thus constrained, otherwise the constraint would not make too much sense.

You can also give the constraint a separate name. This clarifies error messages and allows you to refer to the constraint when you need to change it. The syntax is:

```
CREATE TABLE products (  
    product_no integer,  
    name text,  
    price numeric CONSTRAINT positive_price CHECK (price > 0)  
);
```

So, to specify a named constraint, use the key word **CONSTRAINT** followed by an identifier followed by the constraint definition. (If you don't specify a constraint name in this way, the system chooses a name for you.)

A check constraint can also refer to several columns. Say you store a regular price and a discounted price, and you want to ensure that the discounted price is lower than the regular price:

```
CREATE TABLE products (  
    product_no integer,  
    name text,  
    price numeric CHECK (price > 0),  
    discounted_price numeric CHECK (discounted_price > 0),  
    CHECK (price > discounted_price)  
);
```

The first two constraints should look familiar. The third one uses a new syntax. It is not attached to a particular column, instead it appears as a separate item in the comma-separated column list. Column definitions and these constraint definitions can be listed in mixed order.

We say that the first two constraints are column constraints, whereas the third one is a table constraint because it is written separately from any one column definition. Column constraints can also be written as table constraints, while the reverse is not necessarily possible, since a column constraint is supposed to refer to only the column it is attached to. (PostgreSQL doesn't enforce that rule, but you should follow it if you want your table definitions to work with other database systems.) The above example could also be written as:

```
CREATE TABLE products (  
    product_no integer,  
    name text,  
    price numeric,  
    CHECK (price > 0),  
    discounted_price numeric,  
    CHECK (discounted_price > 0),  
    CHECK (price > discounted_price)
```

```
);
```

or even:

```
CREATE TABLE products (  
    product_no integer,  
    name text,  
    price numeric CHECK (price > 0),  
    discounted_price numeric,  
    CHECK (discounted_price > 0 AND price > discounted_price)  
);
```

It's a matter of taste.

Names can be assigned to table constraints in the same way as column constraints:

```
CREATE TABLE products (  
    product_no integer,  
    name text,  
    price numeric,  
    CHECK (price > 0),  
    discounted_price numeric,  
    CHECK (discounted_price > 0),  
    CONSTRAINT valid_discount CHECK (price > discounted_price)  
);
```

It should be noted that a check constraint is satisfied if the check expression evaluates to true or the null value. Since most expressions will evaluate to the null value if any operand is null, they will not prevent null values in the constrained columns. To ensure that a column does not contain null values, the not-null constraint described in the next section can be used.

### Note

PostgreSQL does not support CHECK constraints that reference table data other than the new or updated row being checked. While a CHECK constraint that violates this rule may appear to work in simple tests, it cannot guarantee that the database will not reach a state in which the constraint condition is false (due to subsequent changes of the other row(s) involved). This would cause a database dump and restore to fail. The restore could fail even when the complete database state is consistent with the constraint, due to rows not being loaded in an order that will satisfy the constraint. If possible, use UNIQUE, EXCLUDE, or FOREIGN KEY constraints to express cross-row and cross-table restrictions.

If what you desire is a one-time check against other rows at row insertion, rather than a continuously-maintained consistency guarantee, a custom trigger can be used to implement that. (This approach avoids the dump/restore problem because pg\_dump does not reinstall triggers until after restoring data, so that the check will not be enforced during a dump/restore.)

### Note

PostgreSQL assumes that CHECK constraints' conditions are immutable, that is, they will always give the same result for the same input row. This assumption is what justifies examining CHECK constraints only when rows are inserted or updated, and not at other times. (The warning above about not referencing other table data is really a special case of this restriction.)

An example of a common way to break this assumption is to reference a user-defined function in a CHECK expression, and then change the behavior of that function. PostgreSQL does not disallow that, but it will not notice if there are rows in the table that now violate the CHECK constraint. That would cause a subsequent database dump and restore to fail. The recommended way to handle such a change is to drop the constraint (using `ALTER TABLE`), adjust the function definition, and re-add the constraint, thereby rechecking it against all table rows.

## 5.4.2. Not-Null Constraints

A not-null constraint simply specifies that a column must not assume the null value. A syntax example:

```
CREATE TABLE products (  
    product_no integer NOT NULL,  
    name text NOT NULL,  
    price numeric  
);
```

A not-null constraint is always written as a column constraint. A not-null constraint is functionally equivalent to creating a check constraint `CHECK (column_name IS NOT NULL)`, but in PostgreSQL creating an explicit not-null constraint is more efficient. The drawback is that you cannot give explicit names to not-null constraints created this way.

Of course, a column can have more than one constraint. Just write the constraints one after another:

```
CREATE TABLE products (  
    product_no integer NOT NULL,  
    name text NOT NULL,  
    price numeric NOT NULL CHECK (price > 0)  
);
```

The order doesn't matter. It does not necessarily determine in which order the constraints are checked.

The `NOT NULL` constraint has an inverse: the `NULL` constraint. This does not mean that the column must be null, which would surely be useless. Instead, this simply selects the default behavior that the column might be null. The `NULL` constraint is not present in the SQL standard and should not be used in portable applications. (It was only added to PostgreSQL to be compatible with some other database systems.) Some users, however, like it because it makes it easy to toggle the constraint in a script file. For example, you could start with:

```
CREATE TABLE products (  
    product_no integer NULL,  
    name text NULL,  
    price numeric NULL  
);
```

and then insert the `NOT` key word where desired.

### Tip

In most database designs the majority of columns should be marked not null.

## 5.4.3. Unique Constraints

Unique constraints ensure that the data contained in a column, or a group of columns, is unique among all the rows in the table. The syntax is:

```
CREATE TABLE products (  
    product_no integer UNIQUE,  
    name text,  
    price numeric  
);
```

when written as a column constraint, and:

```
CREATE TABLE products (  
    product_no integer,  
    name text,  
    price numeric,  
    UNIQUE (product_no)  
);
```

when written as a table constraint.

To define a unique constraint for a group of columns, write it as a table constraint with the column names separated by commas:

```
CREATE TABLE example (  
    a integer,  
    b integer,  
    c integer,  
    UNIQUE (a, c)  
);
```

This specifies that the combination of values in the indicated columns is unique across the whole table, though any one of the columns need not be (and ordinarily isn't) unique.

You can assign your own name for a unique constraint, in the usual way:

```
CREATE TABLE products (  
    product_no integer CONSTRAINT must_be_different UNIQUE,  
    name text,  
    price numeric  
);
```

Adding a unique constraint will automatically create a unique B-tree index on the column or group of columns listed in the constraint. A uniqueness restriction covering only some rows cannot be written as a unique constraint, but it is possible to enforce such a restriction by creating a unique partial index.

In general, a unique constraint is violated if there is more than one row in the table where the values of all of the columns included in the constraint are equal. By default, two null values are not considered equal in this comparison. That means even in the presence of a unique constraint it is possible to store duplicate rows that contain a null value in at least one of the constrained columns. This behavior can be changed by adding the clause `NULLS NOT DISTINCT`, like

```
CREATE TABLE products (  
    product_no integer UNIQUE NULLS NOT DISTINCT,  
    name text,  
    price numeric  
);
```

```
);
```

or

```
CREATE TABLE products (  
    product_no integer,  
    name text,  
    price numeric,  
    UNIQUE NULLS NOT DISTINCT (product_no)  
);
```

The default behavior can be specified explicitly using `NULLS DISTINCT`. The default null treatment in unique constraints is implementation-defined according to the SQL standard, and other implementations have a different behavior. So be careful when developing applications that are intended to be portable.

## 5.4.4. Primary Keys

A primary key constraint indicates that a column, or group of columns, can be used as a unique identifier for rows in the table. This requires that the values be both unique and not null. So, the following two table definitions accept the same data:

```
CREATE TABLE products (  
    product_no integer UNIQUE NOT NULL,  
    name text,  
    price numeric  
);
```

```
CREATE TABLE products (  
    product_no integer PRIMARY KEY,  
    name text,  
    price numeric  
);
```

Primary keys can span more than one column; the syntax is similar to unique constraints:

```
CREATE TABLE example (  
    a integer,  
    b integer,  
    c integer,  
    PRIMARY KEY (a, c)  
);
```

Adding a primary key will automatically create a unique B-tree index on the column or group of columns listed in the primary key, and will force the column(s) to be marked `NOT NULL`.

A table can have at most one primary key. (There can be any number of unique and not-null constraints, which are functionally almost the same thing, but only one can be identified as the primary key.) Relational database theory dictates that every table must have a primary key. This rule is not enforced by PostgreSQL, but it is usually best to follow it.

Primary keys are useful both for documentation purposes and for client applications. For example, a GUI application that allows modifying row values probably needs to know the primary key of a table to be able to identify rows uniquely. There are also various ways in which the database system makes use of a primary key if one has been declared; for example, the primary key defines the default target column(s) for foreign keys referencing its table.

## 5.4.5. Foreign Keys

A foreign key constraint specifies that the values in a column (or a group of columns) must match the values appearing in some row of another table. We say this maintains the *referential integrity* between two related tables.

Say you have the product table that we have used several times already:

```
CREATE TABLE products (  
    product_no integer PRIMARY KEY,  
    name text,  
    price numeric  
);
```

Let's also assume you have a table storing orders of those products. We want to ensure that the orders table only contains orders of products that actually exist. So we define a foreign key constraint in the orders table that references the products table:

```
CREATE TABLE orders (  
    order_id integer PRIMARY KEY,  
    product_no integer REFERENCES products (product_no),  
    quantity integer  
);
```

Now it is impossible to create orders with non-NULL product\_no entries that do not appear in the products table.

We say that in this situation the orders table is the *referencing* table and the products table is the *referenced* table. Similarly, there are referencing and referenced columns.

You can also shorten the above command to:

```
CREATE TABLE orders (  
    order_id integer PRIMARY KEY,  
    product_no integer REFERENCES products,  
    quantity integer  
);
```

because in absence of a column list the primary key of the referenced table is used as the referenced column(s).

You can assign your own name for a foreign key constraint, in the usual way.

A foreign key can also constrain and reference a group of columns. As usual, it then needs to be written in table constraint form. Here is a contrived syntax example:

```
CREATE TABLE t1 (  
    a integer PRIMARY KEY,  
    b integer,  
    c integer,  
    FOREIGN KEY (b, c) REFERENCES other_table (c1, c2)  
);
```

Of course, the number and type of the constrained columns need to match the number and type of the referenced columns.



Sometimes it is useful for the “other table” of a foreign key constraint to be the same table; this is called a *self-referential* foreign key. For example, if you want rows of a table to represent nodes of a tree structure, you could write

```
CREATE TABLE tree (  
    node_id integer PRIMARY KEY,  
    parent_id integer REFERENCES tree,  
    name text,  
    ...  
);
```

A top-level node would have NULL `parent_id`, while non-NULL `parent_id` entries would be constrained to reference valid rows of the table.

A table can have more than one foreign key constraint. This is used to implement many-to-many relationships between tables. Say you have tables about products and orders, but now you want to allow one order to contain possibly many products (which the structure above did not allow). You could use this table structure:

```
CREATE TABLE products (  
    product_no integer PRIMARY KEY,  
    name text,  
    price numeric  
);  
  
CREATE TABLE orders (  
    order_id integer PRIMARY KEY,  
    shipping_address text,  
    ...  
);  
  
CREATE TABLE order_items (  
    product_no integer REFERENCES products,  
    order_id integer REFERENCES orders,  
    quantity integer,  
    PRIMARY KEY (product_no, order_id)  
);
```

Notice that the primary key overlaps with the foreign keys in the last table.

We know that the foreign keys disallow creation of orders that do not relate to any products. But what if a product is removed after an order is created that references it? SQL allows you to handle that as well. Intuitively, we have a few options:

- Disallow deleting a referenced product
- Delete the orders as well
- Something else?

To illustrate this, let's implement the following policy on the many-to-many relationship example above: when someone wants to remove a product that is still referenced by an order (via `order_items`), we disallow it. If someone removes an order, the order items are removed as well:

```
CREATE TABLE products (  
    product_no integer PRIMARY KEY,  
    name text,  
    price numeric
```

```
);

CREATE TABLE orders (
    order_id integer PRIMARY KEY,
    shipping_address text,
    ...
);

CREATE TABLE order_items (
    product_no integer REFERENCES products ON DELETE RESTRICT,
    order_id integer REFERENCES orders ON DELETE CASCADE,
    quantity integer,
    PRIMARY KEY (product_no, order_id)
);
```

Restricting and cascading deletes are the two most common options. **RESTRICT** prevents deletion of a referenced row. **NO ACTION** means that if any referencing rows still exist when the constraint is checked, an error is raised; this is the default behavior if you do not specify anything. (The essential difference between these two choices is that **NO ACTION** allows the check to be deferred until later in the transaction, whereas **RESTRICT** does not.) **CASCADE** specifies that when a referenced row is deleted, row(s) referencing it should be automatically deleted as well. There are two other options: **SET NULL** and **SET DEFAULT**. These cause the referencing column(s) in the referencing row(s) to be set to nulls or their default values, respectively, when the referenced row is deleted. Note that these do not excuse you from observing any constraints. For example, if an action specifies **SET DEFAULT** but the default value would not satisfy the foreign key constraint, the operation will fail.

The appropriate choice of **ON DELETE** action depends on what kinds of objects the related tables represent. When the referencing table represents something that is a component of what is represented by the referenced table and cannot exist independently, then **CASCADE** could be appropriate. If the two tables represent independent objects, then **RESTRICT** or **NO ACTION** is more appropriate; an application that actually wants to delete both objects would then have to be explicit about this and run two delete commands. In the above example, order items are part of an order, and it is convenient if they are deleted automatically if an order is deleted. But products and orders are different things, and so making a deletion of a product automatically cause the deletion of some order items could be considered problematic. The actions **SET NULL** or **SET DEFAULT** can be appropriate if a foreign-key relationship represents optional information. For example, if the products table contained a reference to a product manager, and the product manager entry gets deleted, then setting the product's product manager to null or a default might be useful.

The actions **SET NULL** and **SET DEFAULT** can take a column list to specify which columns to set. Normally, all columns of the foreign-key constraint are set; setting only a subset is useful in some special cases. Consider the following example:

```
CREATE TABLE tenants (
    tenant_id integer PRIMARY KEY
);

CREATE TABLE users (
    tenant_id integer REFERENCES tenants ON DELETE CASCADE,
    user_id integer NOT NULL,
    PRIMARY KEY (tenant_id, user_id)
);

CREATE TABLE posts (
    tenant_id integer REFERENCES tenants ON DELETE CASCADE,
    post_id integer NOT NULL,
    author_id integer,
    PRIMARY KEY (tenant_id, post_id),
```

```
FOREIGN KEY (tenant_id, author_id) REFERENCES users ON DELETE
SET NULL (author_id)
);
```

Without the specification of the column, the foreign key would also set the column `tenant_id` to null, but that column is still required as part of the primary key.

Analogous to `ON DELETE` there is also `ON UPDATE` which is invoked when a referenced column is changed (updated). The possible actions are the same, except that column lists cannot be specified for `SET NULL` and `SET DEFAULT`. In this case, `CASCADE` means that the updated values of the referenced column(s) should be copied into the referencing row(s).

Normally, a referencing row need not satisfy the foreign key constraint if any of its referencing columns are null. If `MATCH FULL` is added to the foreign key declaration, a referencing row escapes satisfying the constraint only if all its referencing columns are null (so a mix of null and non-null values is guaranteed to fail a `MATCH FULL` constraint). If you don't want referencing rows to be able to avoid satisfying the foreign key constraint, declare the referencing column(s) as `NOT NULL`.

A foreign key must reference columns that either are a primary key or form a unique constraint, or are columns from a non-partial unique index. This means that the referenced columns always have an index to allow efficient lookups on whether a referencing row has a match. Since a `DELETE` of a row from the referenced table or an `UPDATE` of a referenced column will require a scan of the referencing table for rows matching the old value, it is often a good idea to index the referencing columns too. Because this is not always needed, and there are many choices available on how to index, the declaration of a foreign key constraint does not automatically create an index on the referencing columns.

More information about updating and deleting data is in Chapter 6. Also see the description of foreign key constraint syntax in the reference documentation for `CREATE TABLE`.

## 5.4.6. Exclusion Constraints

Exclusion constraints ensure that if any two rows are compared on the specified columns or expressions using the specified operators, at least one of these operator comparisons will return false or null. The syntax is:

```
CREATE TABLE circles (
    c circle,
    EXCLUDE USING gist (c WITH &&)
);
```

See also `CREATE TABLE ... CONSTRAINT ... EXCLUDE` for details.

Adding an exclusion constraint will automatically create an index of the type specified in the constraint declaration.

## 5.5. System Columns

Every table has several *system columns* that are implicitly defined by the system. Therefore, these names cannot be used as names of user-defined columns. (Note that these restrictions are separate from whether the name is a key word or not; quoting a name will not allow you to escape these restrictions.) You do not really need to be concerned about these columns; just know they exist.

`tableoid`

The OID of the table containing this row. This column is particularly handy for queries that select from partitioned tables (see Section 5.11) or inheritance hierarchies (see Section 5.10), since

without it, it's difficult to tell which individual table a row came from. The `tableoid` can be joined against the `oid` column of `pg_class` to obtain the table name.

`xmin`

The identity (transaction ID) of the inserting transaction for this row version. (A row version is an individual state of a row; each update of a row creates a new row version for the same logical row.)

`cmin`

The command identifier (starting at zero) within the inserting transaction.

`xmax`

The identity (transaction ID) of the deleting transaction, or zero for an undeleted row version. It is possible for this column to be nonzero in a visible row version. That usually indicates that the deleting transaction hasn't committed yet, or that an attempted deletion was rolled back.

`cmax`

The command identifier within the deleting transaction, or zero.

`ctid`

The physical location of the row version within its table. Note that although the `ctid` can be used to locate the row version very quickly, a row's `ctid` will change if it is updated or moved by `VACUUM FULL`. Therefore `ctid` is useless as a long-term row identifier. A primary key should be used to identify logical rows.

Transaction identifiers are also 32-bit quantities. In a long-lived database it is possible for transaction IDs to wrap around. This is not a fatal problem given appropriate maintenance procedures; see Chapter 25 for details. It is unwise, however, to depend on the uniqueness of transaction IDs over the long term (more than one billion transactions).

Command identifiers are also 32-bit quantities. This creates a hard limit of  $2^{32}$  (4 billion) SQL commands within a single transaction. In practice this limit is not a problem — note that the limit is on the number of SQL commands, not the number of rows processed. Also, only commands that actually modify the database contents will consume a command identifier.

## 5.6. Modifying Tables

When you create a table and you realize that you made a mistake, or the requirements of the application change, you can drop the table and create it again. But this is not a convenient option if the table is already filled with data, or if the table is referenced by other database objects (for instance a foreign key constraint). Therefore PostgreSQL provides a family of commands to make modifications to existing tables. Note that this is conceptually distinct from altering the data contained in the table: here we are interested in altering the definition, or structure, of the table.

You can:

- Add columns
- Remove columns
- Add constraints
- Remove constraints
- Change default values
- Change column data types
- Rename columns
- Rename tables

All these actions are performed using the `ALTER TABLE` command, whose reference page contains details beyond those given here.

## 5.6.1. Adding a Column

To add a column, use a command like:

```
ALTER TABLE products ADD COLUMN description text;
```

The new column is initially filled with whatever default value is given (null if you don't specify a `DEFAULT` clause).

### Tip

From PostgreSQL 11, adding a column with a constant default value no longer means that each row of the table needs to be updated when the `ALTER TABLE` statement is executed. Instead, the default value will be returned the next time the row is accessed, and applied when the table is rewritten, making the `ALTER TABLE` very fast even on large tables.

However, if the default value is volatile (e.g., `clock_timestamp()`) each row will need to be updated with the value calculated at the time `ALTER TABLE` is executed. To avoid a potentially lengthy update operation, particularly if you intend to fill the column with mostly nondefault values anyway, it may be preferable to add the column with no default, insert the correct values using `UPDATE`, and then add any desired default as described below.

You can also define constraints on the column at the same time, using the usual syntax:

```
ALTER TABLE products ADD COLUMN description text CHECK (description  
<> '');
```

In fact all the options that can be applied to a column description in `CREATE TABLE` can be used here. Keep in mind however that the default value must satisfy the given constraints, or the `ADD` will fail. Alternatively, you can add constraints later (see below) after you've filled in the new column correctly.

## 5.6.2. Removing a Column

To remove a column, use a command like:

```
ALTER TABLE products DROP COLUMN description;
```

Whatever data was in the column disappears. Table constraints involving the column are dropped, too. However, if the column is referenced by a foreign key constraint of another table, PostgreSQL will not silently drop that constraint. You can authorize dropping everything that depends on the column by adding `CASCADE`:

```
ALTER TABLE products DROP COLUMN description CASCADE;
```

See Section 5.14 for a description of the general mechanism behind this.

## 5.6.3. Adding a Constraint

To add a constraint, the table constraint syntax is used. For example:

```
ALTER TABLE products ADD CHECK (name <> '');  
ALTER TABLE products ADD CONSTRAINT some_name UNIQUE (product_no);
```

```
ALTER TABLE products ADD FOREIGN KEY (product_group_id) REFERENCES
product_groups;
```

To add a not-null constraint, which cannot be written as a table constraint, use this syntax:

```
ALTER TABLE products ALTER COLUMN product_no SET NOT NULL;
```

The constraint will be checked immediately, so the table data must satisfy the constraint before it can be added.

## 5.6.4. Removing a Constraint

To remove a constraint you need to know its name. If you gave it a name then that's easy. Otherwise the system assigned a generated name, which you need to find out. The `psql` command `\d table-name` can be helpful here; other interfaces might also provide a way to inspect table details. Then the command is:

```
ALTER TABLE products DROP CONSTRAINT some_name;
```

(If you are dealing with a generated constraint name like `$2`, don't forget that you'll need to double-quote it to make it a valid identifier.)

As with dropping a column, you need to add `CASCADE` if you want to drop a constraint that something else depends on. An example is that a foreign key constraint depends on a unique or primary key constraint on the referenced column(s).

This works the same for all constraint types except not-null constraints. To drop a not null constraint use:

```
ALTER TABLE products ALTER COLUMN product_no DROP NOT NULL;
```

(Recall that not-null constraints do not have names.)

## 5.6.5. Changing a Column's Default Value

To set a new default for a column, use a command like:

```
ALTER TABLE products ALTER COLUMN price SET DEFAULT 7.77;
```

Note that this doesn't affect any existing rows in the table, it just changes the default for future `INSERT` commands.

To remove any default value, use:

```
ALTER TABLE products ALTER COLUMN price DROP DEFAULT;
```

This is effectively the same as setting the default to null. As a consequence, it is not an error to drop a default where one hadn't been defined, because the default is implicitly the null value.

## 5.6.6. Changing a Column's Data Type

To convert a column to a different data type, use a command like:

```
ALTER TABLE products ALTER COLUMN price TYPE numeric(10,2);
```

This will succeed only if each existing entry in the column can be converted to the new type by an implicit cast. If a more complex conversion is needed, you can add a `USING` clause that specifies how to compute the new values from the old.

PostgreSQL will attempt to convert the column's default value (if any) to the new type, as well as any constraints that involve the column. But these conversions might fail, or might produce surprising results. It's often best to drop any constraints on the column before altering its type, and then add back suitably modified constraints afterwards.

## 5.6.7. Renaming a Column

To rename a column:

```
ALTER TABLE products RENAME COLUMN product_no TO product_number;
```

## 5.6.8. Renaming a Table

To rename a table:

```
ALTER TABLE products RENAME TO items;
```

## 5.7. Privileges

When an object is created, it is assigned an owner. The owner is normally the role that executed the creation statement. For most kinds of objects, the initial state is that only the owner (or a superuser) can do anything with the object. To allow other roles to use it, *privileges* must be granted.

There are different kinds of privileges: `SELECT`, `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, `TRUNCATE`, `REFERENCES`, `TRIGGER`, `CREATE`, `CONNECT`, `TEMPORARY`, `EXECUTE`, `USAGE`, `SET` and `ALTER SYSTEM`. The privileges applicable to a particular object vary depending on the object's type (table, function, etc.). More detail about the meanings of these privileges appears below. The following sections and chapters will also show you how these privileges are used.

The right to modify or destroy an object is inherent in being the object's owner, and cannot be granted or revoked in itself. (However, like all privileges, that right can be inherited by members of the owning role; see Section 22.3.)

An object can be assigned to a new owner with an `ALTER` command of the appropriate kind for the object, for example

```
ALTER TABLE table_name OWNER TO new_owner;
```

Superusers can always do this; ordinary roles can only do it if they are both the current owner of the object (or inherit the privileges of the owning role) and able to `SET ROLE` to the new owning role.

To assign privileges, the `GRANT` command is used. For example, if `joe` is an existing role, and `accounts` is an existing table, the privilege to update the table can be granted with:

```
GRANT UPDATE ON accounts TO joe;
```

Writing `ALL` in place of a specific privilege grants all privileges that are relevant for the object type.

The special “role” name `PUBLIC` can be used to grant a privilege to every role on the system. Also, “group” roles can be set up to help manage privileges when there are many users of a database — for details see Chapter 22.

To revoke a previously-granted privilege, use the fittingly named REVOKE command:

```
REVOKE ALL ON accounts FROM PUBLIC;
```

Ordinarily, only the object's owner (or a superuser) can grant or revoke privileges on an object. However, it is possible to grant a privilege “with grant option”, which gives the recipient the right to grant it in turn to others. If the grant option is subsequently revoked then all who received the privilege from that recipient (directly or through a chain of grants) will lose the privilege. For details see the GRANT and REVOKE reference pages.

An object's owner can choose to revoke their own ordinary privileges, for example to make a table read-only for themselves as well as others. But owners are always treated as holding all grant options, so they can always re-grant their own privileges.

The available privileges are:

#### SELECT

Allows SELECT from any column, or specific column(s), of a table, view, materialized view, or other table-like object. Also allows use of COPY TO. This privilege is also needed to reference existing column values in UPDATE, DELETE, or MERGE. For sequences, this privilege also allows use of the currval function. For large objects, this privilege allows the object to be read.

#### INSERT

Allows INSERT of a new row into a table, view, etc. Can be granted on specific column(s), in which case only those columns may be assigned to in the INSERT command (other columns will therefore receive default values). Also allows use of COPY FROM.

#### UPDATE

Allows UPDATE of any column, or specific column(s), of a table, view, etc. (In practice, any nontrivial UPDATE command will require SELECT privilege as well, since it must reference table columns to determine which rows to update, and/or to compute new values for columns.) SELECT ... FOR UPDATE and SELECT ... FOR SHARE also require this privilege on at least one column, in addition to the SELECT privilege. For sequences, this privilege allows use of the nextval and setval functions. For large objects, this privilege allows writing or truncating the object.

#### DELETE

Allows DELETE of a row from a table, view, etc. (In practice, any nontrivial DELETE command will require SELECT privilege as well, since it must reference table columns to determine which rows to delete.)

#### TRUNCATE

Allows TRUNCATE on a table.

#### REFERENCES

Allows creation of a foreign key constraint referencing a table, or specific column(s) of a table.

#### TRIGGER

Allows creation of a trigger on a table, view, etc.

#### CREATE

For databases, allows new schemas and publications to be created within the database, and allows trusted extensions to be installed within the database.



For schemas, allows new objects to be created within the schema. To rename an existing object, you must own the object *and* have this privilege for the containing schema.

For tablespaces, allows tables, indexes, and temporary files to be created within the tablespace, and allows databases to be created that have the tablespace as their default tablespace.

Note that revoking this privilege will not alter the existence or location of existing objects.

#### CONNECT

Allows the grantee to connect to the database. This privilege is checked at connection startup (in addition to checking any restrictions imposed by `pg_hba.conf`).

#### TEMPORARY

Allows temporary tables to be created while using the database.

#### EXECUTE

Allows calling a function or procedure, including use of any operators that are implemented on top of the function. This is the only type of privilege that is applicable to functions and procedures.

#### USAGE

For procedural languages, allows use of the language for the creation of functions in that language. This is the only type of privilege that is applicable to procedural languages.

For schemas, allows access to objects contained in the schema (assuming that the objects' own privilege requirements are also met). Essentially this allows the grantee to “look up” objects within the schema. Without this permission, it is still possible to see the object names, e.g., by querying system catalogs. Also, after revoking this permission, existing sessions might have statements that have previously performed this lookup, so this is not a completely secure way to prevent object access.

For sequences, allows use of the `currval` and `nextval` functions.

For types and domains, allows use of the type or domain in the creation of tables, functions, and other schema objects. (Note that this privilege does not control all “usage” of the type, such as values of the type appearing in queries. It only prevents objects from being created that depend on the type. The main purpose of this privilege is controlling which users can create dependencies on a type, which could prevent the owner from changing the type later.)

For foreign-data wrappers, allows creation of new servers using the foreign-data wrapper.

For foreign servers, allows creation of foreign tables using the server. Grantees may also create, alter, or drop their own user mappings associated with that server.

#### SET

Allows a server configuration parameter to be set to a new value within the current session. (While this privilege can be granted on any parameter, it is meaningless except for parameters that would normally require superuser privilege to set.)

#### ALTER SYSTEM

Allows a server configuration parameter to be configured to a new value using the `ALTER SYSTEM` command.

The privileges required by other commands are listed on the reference page of the respective command.

PostgreSQL grants privileges on some types of objects to `PUBLIC` by default when the objects are created. No privileges are granted to `PUBLIC` by default on tables, table columns, sequences, foreign

data wrappers, foreign servers, large objects, schemas, tablespaces, or configuration parameters. For other types of objects, the default privileges granted to PUBLIC are as follows: CONNECT and TEMPORARY (create temporary tables) privileges for databases; EXECUTE privilege for functions and procedures; and USAGE privilege for languages and data types (including domains). The object owner can, of course, REVOKE both default and expressly granted privileges. (For maximum security, issue the REVOKE in the same transaction that creates the object; then there is no window in which another user can use the object.) Also, these default privilege settings can be overridden using the ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES command.

Table 5.1 shows the one-letter abbreviations that are used for these privilege types in ACL (Access Control List) values. You will see these letters in the output of the `psql` commands listed below, or when looking at ACL columns of system catalogs.

**Table 5.1. ACL Privilege Abbreviations**

Privilege	Abbreviation	Applicable Object Types
SELECT	r (“read”)	LARGE OBJECT, SEQUENCE, TABLE (and table-like objects), table column
INSERT	a (“append”)	TABLE, table column
UPDATE	w (“write”)	LARGE OBJECT, SEQUENCE, TABLE, table column
DELETE	d	TABLE
TRUNCATE	D	TABLE
REFERENCES	x	TABLE, table column
TRIGGER	t	TABLE
CREATE	C	DATABASE, SCHEMA, TABLESPACE
CONNECT	c	DATABASE
TEMPORARY	T	DATABASE
EXECUTE	X	FUNCTION, PROCEDURE
USAGE	U	DOMAIN, FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER, FOREIGN SERVER, LANGUAGE, SCHEMA, SEQUENCE, TYPE
SET	s	PARAMETER
ALTER SYSTEM	A	PARAMETER

Table 5.2 summarizes the privileges available for each type of SQL object, using the abbreviations shown above. It also shows the `psql` command that can be used to examine privilege settings for each object type.

**Table 5.2. Summary of Access Privileges**

Object Type	All Privileges	Default PUBLIC Privileges	psql Command
DATABASE	CTc	Tc	\l
DOMAIN	U	U	\dD+
FUNCTION or PROCEDURE	X	X	\df+
FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER	U	none	\dew+
FOREIGN SERVER	U	none	\des+
LANGUAGE	U	U	\dL+
LARGE OBJECT	rw	none	\dl+

Object Type	All Privileges	Default PUBLIC Privileges	psql Command
PARAMETER	sA	none	\dconfig+
SCHEMA	UC	none	\dn+
SEQUENCE	rwU	none	\dp
TABLE (and table-like objects)	arwdDxt	none	\dp
Table column	arwx	none	\dp
TABLESPACE	C	none	\db+
TYPE	U	U	\dT+

The privileges that have been granted for a particular object are displayed as a list of `aclitem` entries, each having the format:

*grantee=privilege-abbreviation[\*].../grantor*

Each `aclitem` lists all the permissions of one grantee that have been granted by a particular grantor. Specific privileges are represented by one-letter abbreviations from Table 5.1, with `*` appended if the privilege was granted with grant option. For example, `calvin=r*w/hobbes` specifies that the role `calvin` has the privilege `SELECT` (`r`) with grant option (`*`) as well as the non-grantable privilege `UPDATE` (`w`), both granted by the role `hobbes`. If `calvin` also has some privileges on the same object granted by a different grantor, those would appear as a separate `aclitem` entry. An empty grantee field in an `aclitem` stands for `PUBLIC`.

As an example, suppose that user `miriam` creates table `mytable` and does:

```
GRANT SELECT ON mytable TO PUBLIC;
GRANT SELECT, UPDATE, INSERT ON mytable TO admin;
GRANT SELECT (col1), UPDATE (col1) ON mytable TO miriam_rw;
```

Then psql's `\dp` command would show:

```
=> \dp mytable
                                     Access privileges
 Schema | Name   | Type | Access privileges | Column
 privileges | Policies
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----
 public | mytable | table | miriam=arwdDxt/miriam+ | col1:
      + |
 miriam |         |      | =r/miriam           + | miriam_rw=rw/
      |         |      | admin=arw/miriam    |
      |         |      |
(1 row)
```

If the “Access privileges” column is empty for a given object, it means the object has default privileges (that is, its privileges entry in the relevant system catalog is null). Default privileges always include all privileges for the owner, and can include some privileges for `PUBLIC` depending on the object type, as explained above. The first `GRANT` or `REVOKE` on an object will instantiate the default privileges (producing, for example, `miriam=arwdDxt/miriam`) and then modify them per the specified request. Similarly, entries are shown in “Column privileges” only for columns with nondefault privileges. (Note: for this purpose, “default privileges” always means the built-in default privileges for the object's type. An object whose privileges have been affected by an `ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES` command will always be shown with an explicit privilege entry that includes the effects of the `ALTER`.)

Notice that the owner's implicit grant options are not marked in the access privileges display. A \* will appear only when grant options have been explicitly granted to someone.

## 5.8. Row Security Policies

In addition to the SQL-standard privilege system available through GRANT, tables can have *row security policies* that restrict, on a per-user basis, which rows can be returned by normal queries or inserted, updated, or deleted by data modification commands. This feature is also known as *Row-Level Security*. By default, tables do not have any policies, so that if a user has access privileges to a table according to the SQL privilege system, all rows within it are equally available for querying or updating.

When row security is enabled on a table (with ALTER TABLE ... ENABLE ROW LEVEL SECURITY), all normal access to the table for selecting rows or modifying rows must be allowed by a row security policy. (However, the table's owner is typically not subject to row security policies.) If no policy exists for the table, a default-deny policy is used, meaning that no rows are visible or can be modified. Operations that apply to the whole table, such as TRUNCATE and REFERENCES, are not subject to row security.

Row security policies can be specific to commands, or to roles, or to both. A policy can be specified to apply to ALL commands, or to SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE. Multiple roles can be assigned to a given policy, and normal role membership and inheritance rules apply.

To specify which rows are visible or modifiable according to a policy, an expression is required that returns a Boolean result. This expression will be evaluated for each row prior to any conditions or functions coming from the user's query. (The only exceptions to this rule are leakproof functions, which are guaranteed to not leak information; the optimizer may choose to apply such functions ahead of the row-security check.) Rows for which the expression does not return true will not be processed. Separate expressions may be specified to provide independent control over the rows which are visible and the rows which are allowed to be modified. Policy expressions are run as part of the query and with the privileges of the user running the query, although security-definer functions can be used to access data not available to the calling user.

Superusers and roles with the BYPASSRLS attribute always bypass the row security system when accessing a table. Table owners normally bypass row security as well, though a table owner can choose to be subject to row security with ALTER TABLE ... FORCE ROW LEVEL SECURITY.

Enabling and disabling row security, as well as adding policies to a table, is always the privilege of the table owner only.

Policies are created using the CREATE POLICY command, altered using the ALTER POLICY command, and dropped using the DROP POLICY command. To enable and disable row security for a given table, use the ALTER TABLE command.

Each policy has a name and multiple policies can be defined for a table. As policies are table-specific, each policy for a table must have a unique name. Different tables may have policies with the same name.

When multiple policies apply to a given query, they are combined using either OR (for permissive policies, which are the default) or using AND (for restrictive policies). This is similar to the rule that a given role has the privileges of all roles that they are a member of. Permissive vs. restrictive policies are discussed further below.

As a simple example, here is how to create a policy on the `account` relation to allow only members of the `managers` role to access rows, and only rows of their accounts:

```
CREATE TABLE accounts (manager text, company text, contact_email
text);
```

```
ALTER TABLE accounts ENABLE ROW LEVEL SECURITY;
```

```
CREATE POLICY account_managers ON accounts TO managers
    USING (manager = current_user);
```

The policy above implicitly provides a `WITH CHECK` clause identical to its `USING` clause, so that the constraint applies both to rows selected by a command (so a manager cannot `SELECT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE` existing rows belonging to a different manager) and to rows modified by a command (so rows belonging to a different manager cannot be created via `INSERT` or `UPDATE`).

If no role is specified, or the special user name `PUBLIC` is used, then the policy applies to all users on the system. To allow all users to access only their own row in a `users` table, a simple policy can be used:

```
CREATE POLICY user_policy ON users
    USING (user_name = current_user);
```

This works similarly to the previous example.

To use a different policy for rows that are being added to the table compared to those rows that are visible, multiple policies can be combined. This pair of policies would allow all users to view all rows in the `users` table, but only modify their own:

```
CREATE POLICY user_sel_policy ON users
    FOR SELECT
    USING (true);
CREATE POLICY user_mod_policy ON users
    USING (user_name = current_user);
```

In a `SELECT` command, these two policies are combined using `OR`, with the net effect being that all rows can be selected. In other command types, only the second policy applies, so that the effects are the same as before.

Row security can also be disabled with the `ALTER TABLE` command. Disabling row security does not remove any policies that are defined on the table; they are simply ignored. Then all rows in the table are visible and modifiable, subject to the standard SQL privileges system.

Below is a larger example of how this feature can be used in production environments. The table `passwd` emulates a Unix password file:

```
-- Simple passwd-file based example
CREATE TABLE passwd (
    user_name          text UNIQUE NOT NULL,
    pwhash              text,
    uid                int  PRIMARY KEY,
    gid                int  NOT NULL,
    real_name          text NOT NULL,
    home_phone         text,
    extra_info         text,
    home_dir           text NOT NULL,
    shell              text NOT NULL
);

CREATE ROLE admin; -- Administrator
CREATE ROLE bob;   -- Normal user
CREATE ROLE alice; -- Normal user
```

```

-- Populate the table
INSERT INTO passwd VALUES
  ('admin','xxx',0,0,'Admin','111-222-3333',null,'/root','/bin/
dash');
INSERT INTO passwd VALUES
  ('bob','xxx',1,1,'Bob','123-456-7890',null,'/home/bob','/bin/
zsh');
INSERT INTO passwd VALUES
  ('alice','xxx',2,1,'Alice','098-765-4321',null,'/home/alice','/
bin/zsh');

-- Be sure to enable row-level security on the table
ALTER TABLE passwd ENABLE ROW LEVEL SECURITY;

-- Create policies
-- Administrator can see all rows and add any rows
CREATE POLICY admin_all ON passwd TO admin USING (true) WITH CHECK
  (true);
-- Normal users can view all rows
CREATE POLICY all_view ON passwd FOR SELECT USING (true);
-- Normal users can update their own records, but
-- limit which shells a normal user is allowed to set
CREATE POLICY user_mod ON passwd FOR UPDATE
  USING (current_user = user_name)
  WITH CHECK (
    current_user = user_name AND
    shell IN ('/bin/bash','/bin/sh','/bin/dash','/bin/zsh','/bin/
tcsh')
  );

-- Allow admin all normal rights
GRANT SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE ON passwd TO admin;
-- Users only get select access on public columns
GRANT SELECT
  (user_name, uid, gid, real_name, home_phone, extra_info,
  home_dir, shell)
  ON passwd TO public;
-- Allow users to update certain columns
GRANT UPDATE
  (pwhash, real_name, home_phone, extra_info, shell)
  ON passwd TO public;

```

As with any security settings, it's important to test and ensure that the system is behaving as expected. Using the example above, this demonstrates that the permission system is working properly.

```

-- admin can view all rows and fields
postgres=> set role admin;
SET
postgres=> table passwd;

```

user_name	pwhash	uid	gid	real_name	home_phone	extra_info	home_dir	shell
admin	xxx	0	0	Admin	111-222-3333		/root	/bin/dash
bob	xxx	1	1	Bob	123-456-7890		/home/bob	/bin/zsh

```

alice      | xxx      | 2 | 1 | Alice      | 098-765-4321 |
          | /home/alice | /bin/zsh
(3 rows)

```

-- Test what Alice is able to do

```
postgres=> set role alice;
```

```
SET
```

```
postgres=> table passwd;
```

```
ERROR: permission denied for table passwd
```

```
postgres=> select
```

```
  user_name,real_name,home_phone,extra_info,home_dir,shell from
passwd;
```

```

user_name | real_name | home_phone | extra_info | home_dir |
shell

```

```

-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
+-----+
admin    | Admin    | 111-222-3333 |          | /root
| /bin/dash
bob      | Bob      | 123-456-7890 |          | /home/bob
| /bin/zsh
alice    | Alice    | 098-765-4321 |          | /home/alice
| /bin/zsh
(3 rows)

```

```
postgres=> update passwd set user_name = 'joe';
```

```
ERROR: permission denied for table passwd
```

-- Alice is allowed to change her own real\_name, but no others

```
postgres=> update passwd set real_name = 'Alice Doe';
```

```
UPDATE 1
```

```
postgres=> update passwd set real_name = 'John Doe' where user_name
= 'admin';
```

```
UPDATE 0
```

```
postgres=> update passwd set shell = '/bin/xx';
```

```
ERROR: new row violates WITH CHECK OPTION for "passwd"
```

```
postgres=> delete from passwd;
```

```
ERROR: permission denied for table passwd
```

```
postgres=> insert into passwd (user_name) values ('xxx');
```

```
ERROR: permission denied for table passwd
```

-- Alice can change her own password; RLS silently prevents  
updating other rows

```
postgres=> update passwd set pwhash = 'abc';
```

```
UPDATE 1
```

All of the policies constructed thus far have been permissive policies, meaning that when multiple policies are applied they are combined using the “OR” Boolean operator. While permissive policies can be constructed to only allow access to rows in the intended cases, it can be simpler to combine permissive policies with restrictive policies (which the records must pass and which are combined using the “AND” Boolean operator). Building on the example above, we add a restrictive policy to require the administrator to be connected over a local Unix socket to access the records of the passwd table:

```

CREATE POLICY admin_local_only ON passwd AS RESTRICTIVE TO admin
  USING (pg_catalog.inet_client_addr() IS NULL);

```

We can then see that an administrator connecting over a network will not see any records, due to the restrictive policy:

```
=> SELECT current_user;
      current_user
-----
      admin
(1 row)

=> select inet_client_addr();
      inet_client_addr
-----
      127.0.0.1
(1 row)

=> TABLE passwd;
 user_name | pwhash | uid | gid | real_name | home_phone |
 extra_info | home_dir | shell
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----
(0 rows)

=> UPDATE passwd set pwhash = NULL;
UPDATE 0
```

Referential integrity checks, such as unique or primary key constraints and foreign key references, always bypass row security to ensure that data integrity is maintained. Care must be taken when developing schemas and row level policies to avoid “covert channel” leaks of information through such referential integrity checks.

In some contexts it is important to be sure that row security is not being applied. For example, when taking a backup, it could be disastrous if row security silently caused some rows to be omitted from the backup. In such a situation, you can set the `row_security` configuration parameter to `off`. This does not in itself bypass row security; what it does is throw an error if any query's results would get filtered by a policy. The reason for the error can then be investigated and fixed.

In the examples above, the policy expressions consider only the current values in the row to be accessed or updated. This is the simplest and best-performing case; when possible, it's best to design row security applications to work this way. If it is necessary to consult other rows or other tables to make a policy decision, that can be accomplished using sub-SELECTs, or functions that contain SELECTs, in the policy expressions. Be aware however that such accesses can create race conditions that could allow information leakage if care is not taken. As an example, consider the following table design:

```
-- definition of privilege groups
CREATE TABLE groups (group_id int PRIMARY KEY,
                      group_name text NOT NULL);

INSERT INTO groups VALUES
  (1, 'low'),
  (2, 'medium'),
  (5, 'high');

GRANT ALL ON groups TO alice; -- alice is the administrator
GRANT SELECT ON groups TO public;

-- definition of users' privilege levels
CREATE TABLE users (user_name text PRIMARY KEY,
                     group_id int NOT NULL REFERENCES groups);

INSERT INTO users VALUES
  ('alice', 5),
```



```
('bob', 2),
('mallory', 2);

GRANT ALL ON users TO alice;
GRANT SELECT ON users TO public;

-- table holding the information to be protected
CREATE TABLE information (info text,
                           group_id int NOT NULL REFERENCES groups);

INSERT INTO information VALUES
  ('barely secret', 1),
  ('slightly secret', 2),
  ('very secret', 5);

ALTER TABLE information ENABLE ROW LEVEL SECURITY;

-- a row should be visible to/updatable by users whose security
  group_id is
-- greater than or equal to the row's group_id
CREATE POLICY fp_s ON information FOR SELECT
  USING (group_id <= (SELECT group_id FROM users WHERE user_name =
    current_user));
CREATE POLICY fp_u ON information FOR UPDATE
  USING (group_id <= (SELECT group_id FROM users WHERE user_name =
    current_user));

-- we rely only on RLS to protect the information table
GRANT ALL ON information TO public;
```

Now suppose that alice wishes to change the “slightly secret” information, but decides that mallory should not be trusted with the new content of that row, so she does:

```
BEGIN;
UPDATE users SET group_id = 1 WHERE user_name = 'mallory';
UPDATE information SET info = 'secret from mallory' WHERE group_id
  = 2;
COMMIT;
```

That looks safe; there is no window wherein mallory should be able to see the “secret from mallory” string. However, there is a race condition here. If mallory is concurrently doing, say,

```
SELECT * FROM information WHERE group_id = 2 FOR UPDATE;
```

and her transaction is in READ COMMITTED mode, it is possible for her to see “secret from mallory”. That happens if her transaction reaches the information row just after alice's does. It blocks waiting for alice's transaction to commit, then fetches the updated row contents thanks to the FOR UPDATE clause. However, it does *not* fetch an updated row for the implicit SELECT from users, because that sub-SELECT did not have FOR UPDATE; instead the users row is read with the snapshot taken at the start of the query. Therefore, the policy expression tests the old value of mallory's privilege level and allows her to see the updated row.

There are several ways around this problem. One simple answer is to use SELECT ... FOR SHARE in sub-SELECTs in row security policies. However, that requires granting UPDATE privilege on the referenced table (here users) to the affected users, which might be undesirable. (But another row security policy could be applied to prevent them from actually exercising that privilege; or the sub-SELECT could be embedded into a security definer function.) Also, heavy concurrent use of row

share locks on the referenced table could pose a performance problem, especially if updates of it are frequent. Another solution, practical if updates of the referenced table are infrequent, is to take an `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock on the referenced table when updating it, so that no concurrent transactions could be examining old row values. Or one could just wait for all concurrent transactions to end after committing an update of the referenced table and before making changes that rely on the new security situation.

For additional details see `CREATE POLICY` and `ALTER TABLE`.

## 5.9. Schemas

A PostgreSQL database cluster contains one or more named databases. Roles and a few other object types are shared across the entire cluster. A client connection to the server can only access data in a single database, the one specified in the connection request.

### Note

Users of a cluster do not necessarily have the privilege to access every database in the cluster. Sharing of role names means that there cannot be different roles named, say, `joe` in two databases in the same cluster; but the system can be configured to allow `joe` access to only some of the databases.

A database contains one or more named *schemas*, which in turn contain tables. Schemas also contain other kinds of named objects, including data types, functions, and operators. The same object name can be used in different schemas without conflict; for example, both `schema1` and `myschema` can contain tables named `mytable`. Unlike databases, schemas are not rigidly separated: a user can access objects in any of the schemas in the database they are connected to, if they have privileges to do so.

There are several reasons why one might want to use schemas:

- To allow many users to use one database without interfering with each other.
- To organize database objects into logical groups to make them more manageable.
- Third-party applications can be put into separate schemas so they do not collide with the names of other objects.

Schemas are analogous to directories at the operating system level, except that schemas cannot be nested.

### 5.9.1. Creating a Schema

To create a schema, use the `CREATE SCHEMA` command. Give the schema a name of your choice. For example:

```
CREATE SCHEMA myschema;
```

To create or access objects in a schema, write a *qualified name* consisting of the schema name and table name separated by a dot:

*schema.table*

This works anywhere a table name is expected, including the table modification commands and the data access commands discussed in the following chapters. (For brevity we will speak of tables only, but the same ideas apply to other kinds of named objects, such as types and functions.)

Actually, the even more general syntax

*database.schema.table*

can be used too, but at present this is just for pro forma compliance with the SQL standard. If you write a database name, it must be the same as the database you are connected to.

So to create a table in the new schema, use:

```
CREATE TABLE myschema.mytable (  
    ...  
);
```

To drop a schema if it's empty (all objects in it have been dropped), use:

```
DROP SCHEMA myschema;
```

To drop a schema including all contained objects, use:

```
DROP SCHEMA myschema CASCADE;
```

See Section 5.14 for a description of the general mechanism behind this.

Often you will want to create a schema owned by someone else (since this is one of the ways to restrict the activities of your users to well-defined namespaces). The syntax for that is:

```
CREATE SCHEMA schema_name AUTHORIZATION user_name;
```

You can even omit the schema name, in which case the schema name will be the same as the user name. See Section 5.9.6 for how this can be useful.

Schema names beginning with `pg_` are reserved for system purposes and cannot be created by users.

## 5.9.2. The Public Schema

In the previous sections we created tables without specifying any schema names. By default such tables (and other objects) are automatically put into a schema named “public”. Every new database contains such a schema. Thus, the following are equivalent:

```
CREATE TABLE products ( ... );
```

and:

```
CREATE TABLE public.products ( ... );
```

## 5.9.3. The Schema Search Path

Qualified names are tedious to write, and it's often best not to wire a particular schema name into applications anyway. Therefore tables are often referred to by *unqualified names*, which consist of just the table name. The system determines which table is meant by following a *search path*, which is a list of schemas to look in. The first matching table in the search path is taken to be the one wanted.

If there is no match in the search path, an error is reported, even if matching table names exist in other schemas in the database.

The ability to create like-named objects in different schemas complicates writing a query that references precisely the same objects every time. It also opens up the potential for users to change the behavior of other users' queries, maliciously or accidentally. Due to the prevalence of unqualified names in queries and their use in PostgreSQL internals, adding a schema to `search_path` effectively trusts all users having `CREATE` privilege on that schema. When you run an ordinary query, a malicious user able to create objects in a schema of your search path can take control and execute arbitrary SQL functions as though you executed them.

The first schema named in the search path is called the current schema. Aside from being the first schema searched, it is also the schema in which new tables will be created if the `CREATE TABLE` command does not specify a schema name.

To show the current search path, use the following command:

```
SHOW search_path;
```

In the default setup this returns:

```
search_path
-----
"$user", public
```

The first element specifies that a schema with the same name as the current user is to be searched. If no such schema exists, the entry is ignored. The second element refers to the public schema that we have seen already.

The first schema in the search path that exists is the default location for creating new objects. That is the reason that by default objects are created in the public schema. When objects are referenced in any other context without schema qualification (table modification, data modification, or query commands) the search path is traversed until a matching object is found. Therefore, in the default configuration, any unqualified access again can only refer to the public schema.

To put our new schema in the path, we use:

```
SET search_path TO myschema,public;
```

(We omit the `$user` here because we have no immediate need for it.) And then we can access the table without schema qualification:

```
DROP TABLE mytable;
```

Also, since `myschema` is the first element in the path, new objects would by default be created in it.

We could also have written:

```
SET search_path TO myschema;
```

Then we no longer have access to the public schema without explicit qualification. There is nothing special about the public schema except that it exists by default. It can be dropped, too.

See also Section 9.26 for other ways to manipulate the schema search path.

The search path works in the same way for data type names, function names, and operator names as it does for table names. Data type and function names can be qualified in exactly the same way as table names. If you need to write a qualified operator name in an expression, there is a special provision: you must write

```
OPERATOR(schema.operator)
```

This is needed to avoid syntactic ambiguity. An example is:

```
SELECT 3 OPERATOR(pg_catalog.+) 4;
```

In practice one usually relies on the search path for operators, so as not to have to write anything so ugly as that.

## 5.9.4. Schemas and Privileges

By default, users cannot access any objects in schemas they do not own. To allow that, the owner of the schema must grant the `USAGE` privilege on the schema. By default, everyone has that privilege on the schema `public`. To allow users to make use of the objects in a schema, additional privileges might need to be granted, as appropriate for the object.

A user can also be allowed to create objects in someone else's schema. To allow that, the `CREATE` privilege on the schema needs to be granted. In databases upgraded from PostgreSQL 14 or earlier, everyone has that privilege on the schema `public`. Some usage patterns call for revoking that privilege:

```
REVOKE CREATE ON SCHEMA public FROM PUBLIC;
```

(The first “public” is the schema, the second “public” means “every user”. In the first sense it is an identifier, in the second sense it is a key word, hence the different capitalization; recall the guidelines from Section 4.1.1.)

## 5.9.5. The System Catalog Schema

In addition to `public` and user-created schemas, each database contains a `pg_catalog` schema, which contains the system tables and all the built-in data types, functions, and operators. `pg_catalog` is always effectively part of the search path. If it is not named explicitly in the path then it is implicitly searched *before* searching the path's schemas. This ensures that built-in names will always be findable. However, you can explicitly place `pg_catalog` at the end of your search path if you prefer to have user-defined names override built-in names.

Since system table names begin with `pg_`, it is best to avoid such names to ensure that you won't suffer a conflict if some future version defines a system table named the same as your table. (With the default search path, an unqualified reference to your table name would then be resolved as the system table instead.) System tables will continue to follow the convention of having names beginning with `pg_`, so that they will not conflict with unqualified user-table names so long as users avoid the `pg_` prefix.

## 5.9.6. Usage Patterns

Schemas can be used to organize your data in many ways. A *secure schema usage pattern* prevents untrusted users from changing the behavior of other users' queries. When a database does not use a secure schema usage pattern, users wishing to securely query that database would take protective action at the beginning of each session. Specifically, they would begin each session by setting `search_path` to the empty string or otherwise removing schemas that are writable by non-superusers from `search_path`. There are a few usage patterns easily supported by the default configuration:

- Constrain ordinary users to user-private schemas. To implement this pattern, first ensure that no schemas have public `CREATE` privileges. Then, for every user needing to create non-temporary objects, create a schema with the same name as that user, for example `CREATE SCHEMA alice AUTHORIZATION alice`. (Recall that the default search path starts with `$user`, which resolves to the user name. Therefore, if each user has a separate schema, they access their own schemas by default.) This pattern is a secure schema usage pattern unless an untrusted user is the database owner or has been granted `ADMIN OPTION` on a relevant role, in which case no secure schema usage pattern exists.

In PostgreSQL 15 and later, the default configuration supports this usage pattern. In prior versions, or when using a database that has been upgraded from a prior version, you will need to remove the public `CREATE` privilege from the `public` schema (issue `REVOKE CREATE ON SCHEMA public FROM PUBLIC`). Then consider auditing the `public` schema for objects named like objects in schema `pg_catalog`.

- Remove the public schema from the default search path, by modifying `postgresql.conf` or by issuing `ALTER ROLE ALL SET search_path = "$user"`. Then, grant privileges to create in the public schema. Only qualified names will choose public schema objects. While qualified table references are fine, calls to functions in the public schema will be unsafe or unreliable. If you create functions or extensions in the public schema, use the first pattern instead. Otherwise, like the first pattern, this is secure unless an untrusted user is the database owner or has been granted `ADMIN OPTION` on a relevant role.
- Keep the default search path, and grant privileges to create in the public schema. All users access the public schema implicitly. This simulates the situation where schemas are not available at all, giving a smooth transition from the non-schema-aware world. However, this is never a secure pattern. It is acceptable only when the database has a single user or a few mutually-trusting users. In databases upgraded from PostgreSQL 14 or earlier, this is the default.

For any pattern, to install shared applications (tables to be used by everyone, additional functions provided by third parties, etc.), put them into separate schemas. Remember to grant appropriate privileges to allow the other users to access them. Users can then refer to these additional objects by qualifying the names with a schema name, or they can put the additional schemas into their search path, as they choose.

### 5.9.7. Portability

In the SQL standard, the notion of objects in the same schema being owned by different users does not exist. Moreover, some implementations do not allow you to create schemas that have a different name than their owner. In fact, the concepts of schema and user are nearly equivalent in a database system that implements only the basic schema support specified in the standard. Therefore, many users consider qualified names to really consist of `user_name.table_name`. This is how PostgreSQL will effectively behave if you create a per-user schema for every user.

Also, there is no concept of a `public` schema in the SQL standard. For maximum conformance to the standard, you should not use the `public` schema.

Of course, some SQL database systems might not implement schemas at all, or provide namespace support by allowing (possibly limited) cross-database access. If you need to work with those systems, then maximum portability would be achieved by not using schemas at all.

## 5.10. Inheritance

PostgreSQL implements table inheritance, which can be a useful tool for database designers. (SQL:1999 and later define a type inheritance feature, which differs in many respects from the features described here.)

Let's start with an example: suppose we are trying to build a data model for cities. Each state has many cities, but only one capital. We want to be able to quickly retrieve the capital city for any particular

state. This can be done by creating two tables, one for state capitals and one for cities that are not capitals. However, what happens when we want to ask for data about a city, regardless of whether it is a capital or not? The inheritance feature can help to resolve this problem. We define the `capitals` table so that it inherits from `cities`:

```
CREATE TABLE cities (  
    name          text,  
    population     float,  
    elevation      int    -- in feet  
);  
  
CREATE TABLE capitals (  
    state          char(2)  
) INHERITS (cities);
```

In this case, the `capitals` table *inherits* all the columns of its parent table, `cities`. State capitals also have an extra column, `state`, that shows their state.

In PostgreSQL, a table can inherit from zero or more other tables, and a query can reference either all rows of a table or all rows of a table plus all of its descendant tables. The latter behavior is the default. For example, the following query finds the names of all cities, including state capitals, that are located at an elevation over 500 feet:

```
SELECT name, elevation  
FROM cities  
WHERE elevation > 500;
```

Given the sample data from the PostgreSQL tutorial (see Section 2.1), this returns:

name	elevation
Las Vegas	2174
Mariposa	1953
Madison	845

On the other hand, the following query finds all the cities that are not state capitals and are situated at an elevation over 500 feet:

```
SELECT name, elevation  
FROM ONLY cities  
WHERE elevation > 500;
```

name	elevation
Las Vegas	2174
Mariposa	1953

Here the `ONLY` keyword indicates that the query should apply only to `cities`, and not any tables below `cities` in the inheritance hierarchy. Many of the commands that we have already discussed — `SELECT`, `UPDATE` and `DELETE` — support the `ONLY` keyword.

You can also write the table name with a trailing `*` to explicitly specify that descendant tables are included:

```
SELECT name, elevation
```

```
FROM cities*
WHERE elevation > 500;
```

Writing `*` is not necessary, since this behavior is always the default. However, this syntax is still supported for compatibility with older releases where the default could be changed.

In some cases you might wish to know which table a particular row originated from. There is a system column called `tableoid` in each table which can tell you the originating table:

```
SELECT c.tableoid, c.name, c.elevation
FROM cities c
WHERE c.elevation > 500;
```

which returns:

tableoid	name	elevation
139793	Las Vegas	2174
139793	Mariposa	1953
139798	Madison	845

(If you try to reproduce this example, you will probably get different numeric OIDs.) By doing a join with `pg_class` you can see the actual table names:

```
SELECT p.relname, c.name, c.elevation
FROM cities c, pg_class p
WHERE c.elevation > 500 AND c.tableoid = p.oid;
```

which returns:

relname	name	elevation
cities	Las Vegas	2174
cities	Mariposa	1953
capitals	Madison	845

Another way to get the same effect is to use the `regclass` alias type, which will print the table OID symbolically:

```
SELECT c.tableoid::regclass, c.name, c.elevation
FROM cities c
WHERE c.elevation > 500;
```

Inheritance does not automatically propagate data from `INSERT` or `COPY` commands to other tables in the inheritance hierarchy. In our example, the following `INSERT` statement will fail:

```
INSERT INTO cities (name, population, elevation, state)
VALUES ('Albany', NULL, NULL, 'NY');
```

We might hope that the data would somehow be routed to the `capitals` table, but this does not happen: `INSERT` always inserts into exactly the table specified. In some cases it is possible to redirect the insertion using a rule (see Chapter 41). However that does not help for the above case because the `cities` table does not contain the column `state`, and so the command will be rejected before the rule can be applied.



All check constraints and not-null constraints on a parent table are automatically inherited by its children, unless explicitly specified otherwise with `NO INHERIT` clauses. Other types of constraints (unique, primary key, and foreign key constraints) are not inherited.

A table can inherit from more than one parent table, in which case it has the union of the columns defined by the parent tables. Any columns declared in the child table's definition are added to these. If the same column name appears in multiple parent tables, or in both a parent table and the child's definition, then these columns are “merged” so that there is only one such column in the child table. To be merged, columns must have the same data types, else an error is raised. Inheritable check constraints and not-null constraints are merged in a similar fashion. Thus, for example, a merged column will be marked not-null if any one of the column definitions it came from is marked not-null. Check constraints are merged if they have the same name, and the merge will fail if their conditions are different.

Table inheritance is typically established when the child table is created, using the `INHERITS` clause of the `CREATE TABLE` statement. Alternatively, a table which is already defined in a compatible way can have a new parent relationship added, using the `INHERIT` variant of `ALTER TABLE`. To do this the new child table must already include columns with the same names and types as the columns of the parent. It must also include check constraints with the same names and check expressions as those of the parent. Similarly an inheritance link can be removed from a child using the `NO INHERIT` variant of `ALTER TABLE`. Dynamically adding and removing inheritance links like this can be useful when the inheritance relationship is being used for table partitioning (see Section 5.11).

One convenient way to create a compatible table that will later be made a new child is to use the `LIKE` clause in `CREATE TABLE`. This creates a new table with the same columns as the source table. If there are any `CHECK` constraints defined on the source table, the `INCLUDING CONSTRAINTS` option to `LIKE` should be specified, as the new child must have constraints matching the parent to be considered compatible.

A parent table cannot be dropped while any of its children remain. Neither can columns or check constraints of child tables be dropped or altered if they are inherited from any parent tables. If you wish to remove a table and all of its descendants, one easy way is to drop the parent table with the `CASCADE` option (see Section 5.14).

`ALTER TABLE` will propagate any changes in column data definitions and check constraints down the inheritance hierarchy. Again, dropping columns that are depended on by other tables is only possible when using the `CASCADE` option. `ALTER TABLE` follows the same rules for duplicate column merging and rejection that apply during `CREATE TABLE`.

Inherited queries perform access permission checks on the parent table only. Thus, for example, granting `UPDATE` permission on the `cities` table implies permission to update rows in the `capitals` table as well, when they are accessed through `cities`. This preserves the appearance that the data is (also) in the parent table. But the `capitals` table could not be updated directly without an additional grant. In a similar way, the parent table's row security policies (see Section 5.8) are applied to rows coming from child tables during an inherited query. A child table's policies, if any, are applied only when it is the table explicitly named in the query; and in that case, any policies attached to its parent(s) are ignored.

Foreign tables (see Section 5.12) can also be part of inheritance hierarchies, either as parent or child tables, just as regular tables can be. If a foreign table is part of an inheritance hierarchy then any operations not supported by the foreign table are not supported on the whole hierarchy either.

## 5.10.1. Caveats

Note that not all SQL commands are able to work on inheritance hierarchies. Commands that are used for data querying, data modification, or schema modification (e.g., `SELECT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, most variants of `ALTER TABLE`, but not `INSERT` or `ALTER TABLE . . . RENAME`) typically default to including child tables and support the `ONLY` notation to exclude them. Commands that do database maintenance and tuning (e.g., `REINDEX`, `VACUUM`) typically only work on individual, physical tables and do not support recursing over inheritance hierarchies. The respective behavior of each individual command is documented in its reference page (SQL Commands).

A serious limitation of the inheritance feature is that indexes (including unique constraints) and foreign key constraints only apply to single tables, not to their inheritance children. This is true on both the referencing and referenced sides of a foreign key constraint. Thus, in the terms of the above example:

- If we declared `cities.name` to be `UNIQUE` or a `PRIMARY KEY`, this would not stop the `capitals` table from having rows with names duplicating rows in `cities`. And those duplicate rows would by default show up in queries from `cities`. In fact, by default `capitals` would have no unique constraint at all, and so could contain multiple rows with the same name. You could add a unique constraint to `capitals`, but this would not prevent duplication compared to `cities`.
- Similarly, if we were to specify that `cities.name` `REFERENCES` some other table, this constraint would not automatically propagate to `capitals`. In this case you could work around it by manually adding the same `REFERENCES` constraint to `capitals`.
- Specifying that another table's column `REFERENCES cities(name)` would allow the other table to contain city names, but not capital names. There is no good workaround for this case.

Some functionality not implemented for inheritance hierarchies is implemented for declarative partitioning. Considerable care is needed in deciding whether partitioning with legacy inheritance is useful for your application.

## 5.11. Table Partitioning

PostgreSQL supports basic table partitioning. This section describes why and how to implement partitioning as part of your database design.

### 5.11.1. Overview

Partitioning refers to splitting what is logically one large table into smaller physical pieces. Partitioning can provide several benefits:

- Query performance can be improved dramatically in certain situations, particularly when most of the heavily accessed rows of the table are in a single partition or a small number of partitions. Partitioning effectively substitutes for the upper tree levels of indexes, making it more likely that the heavily-used parts of the indexes fit in memory.
- When queries or updates access a large percentage of a single partition, performance can be improved by using a sequential scan of that partition instead of using an index, which would require random-access reads scattered across the whole table.
- Bulk loads and deletes can be accomplished by adding or removing partitions, if the usage pattern is accounted for in the partitioning design. Dropping an individual partition using `DROP TABLE`, or doing `ALTER TABLE DETACH PARTITION`, is far faster than a bulk operation. These commands also entirely avoid the `VACUUM` overhead caused by a bulk `DELETE`.
- Seldom-used data can be migrated to cheaper and slower storage media.

These benefits will normally be worthwhile only when a table would otherwise be very large. The exact point at which a table will benefit from partitioning depends on the application, although a rule of thumb is that the size of the table should exceed the physical memory of the database server.

PostgreSQL offers built-in support for the following forms of partitioning:

#### Range Partitioning

The table is partitioned into “ranges” defined by a key column or set of columns, with no overlap between the ranges of values assigned to different partitions. For example, one might partition by date ranges, or by ranges of identifiers for particular business objects. Each range's bounds are understood as being inclusive at the lower end and exclusive at the upper end. For example, if

one partition's range is from 1 to 10, and the next one's range is from 10 to 20, then value 10 belongs to the second partition not the first.

#### List Partitioning

The table is partitioned by explicitly listing which key value(s) appear in each partition.

#### Hash Partitioning

The table is partitioned by specifying a modulus and a remainder for each partition. Each partition will hold the rows for which the hash value of the partition key divided by the specified modulus will produce the specified remainder.

If your application needs to use other forms of partitioning not listed above, alternative methods such as inheritance and `UNION ALL` views can be used instead. Such methods offer flexibility but do not have some of the performance benefits of built-in declarative partitioning.

## 5.11.2. Declarative Partitioning

PostgreSQL allows you to declare that a table is divided into partitions. The table that is divided is referred to as a *partitioned table*. The declaration includes the *partitioning method* as described above, plus a list of columns or expressions to be used as the *partition key*.

The partitioned table itself is a “virtual” table having no storage of its own. Instead, the storage belongs to *partitions*, which are otherwise-ordinary tables associated with the partitioned table. Each partition stores a subset of the data as defined by its *partition bounds*. All rows inserted into a partitioned table will be routed to the appropriate one of the partitions based on the values of the partition key column(s). Updating the partition key of a row will cause it to be moved into a different partition if it no longer satisfies the partition bounds of its original partition.

Partitions may themselves be defined as partitioned tables, resulting in *sub-partitioning*. Although all partitions must have the same columns as their partitioned parent, partitions may have their own indexes, constraints and default values, distinct from those of other partitions. See `CREATE TABLE` for more details on creating partitioned tables and partitions.

It is not possible to turn a regular table into a partitioned table or vice versa. However, it is possible to add an existing regular or partitioned table as a partition of a partitioned table, or remove a partition from a partitioned table turning it into a standalone table; this can simplify and speed up many maintenance processes. See `ALTER TABLE` to learn more about the `ATTACH PARTITION` and `DETACH PARTITION` sub-commands.

Partitions can also be foreign tables, although considerable care is needed because it is then the user's responsibility that the contents of the foreign table satisfy the partitioning rule. There are some other restrictions as well. See `CREATE FOREIGN TABLE` for more information.

### 5.11.2.1. Example

Suppose we are constructing a database for a large ice cream company. The company measures peak temperatures every day as well as ice cream sales in each region. Conceptually, we want a table like:

```
CREATE TABLE measurement (  
    city_id          int not null,  
    logdate          date not null,  
    peaktemp         int,  
    unitsales        int  
);
```

We know that most queries will access just the last week's, month's or quarter's data, since the main use of this table will be to prepare online reports for management. To reduce the amount of old data that needs to be stored, we decide to keep only the most recent 3 years worth of data. At the beginning

of each month we will remove the oldest month's data. In this situation we can use partitioning to help us meet all of our different requirements for the measurements table.

To use declarative partitioning in this case, use the following steps:

1. Create the measurement table as a partitioned table by specifying the `PARTITION BY` clause, which includes the partitioning method (`RANGE` in this case) and the list of column(s) to use as the partition key.

```
CREATE TABLE measurement (  
    city_id          int not null,  
    logdate          date not null,  
    peaktemp        int,  
    unitsales        int  
    ) PARTITION BY RANGE (logdate);
```

2. Create partitions. Each partition's definition must specify bounds that correspond to the partitioning method and partition key of the parent. Note that specifying bounds such that the new partition's values would overlap with those in one or more existing partitions will cause an error.

Partitions thus created are in every way normal PostgreSQL tables (or, possibly, foreign tables). It is possible to specify a tablespace and storage parameters for each partition separately.

For our example, each partition should hold one month's worth of data, to match the requirement of deleting one month's data at a time. So the commands might look like:

```
CREATE TABLE measurement_y2006m02 PARTITION OF measurement  
    FOR VALUES FROM ('2006-02-01') TO ('2006-03-01');
```

```
CREATE TABLE measurement_y2006m03 PARTITION OF measurement  
    FOR VALUES FROM ('2006-03-01') TO ('2006-04-01');
```

...

```
CREATE TABLE measurement_y2007m11 PARTITION OF measurement  
    FOR VALUES FROM ('2007-11-01') TO ('2007-12-01');
```

```
CREATE TABLE measurement_y2007m12 PARTITION OF measurement  
    FOR VALUES FROM ('2007-12-01') TO ('2008-01-01')  
    TABLESPACE fasttablespace;
```

```
CREATE TABLE measurement_y2008m01 PARTITION OF measurement  
    FOR VALUES FROM ('2008-01-01') TO ('2008-02-01')  
    WITH (parallel_workers = 4)  
    TABLESPACE fasttablespace;
```

(Recall that adjacent partitions can share a bound value, since range upper bounds are treated as exclusive bounds.)

If you wish to implement sub-partitioning, again specify the `PARTITION BY` clause in the commands used to create individual partitions, for example:

```
CREATE TABLE measurement_y2006m02 PARTITION OF measurement  
    FOR VALUES FROM ('2006-02-01') TO ('2006-03-01')  
    PARTITION BY RANGE (peaktemp);
```

After creating partitions of `measurement_y2006m02`, any data inserted into `measurement` that is mapped to `measurement_y2006m02` (or data that is directly inserted into `measurement_y2006m02`, which is allowed provided its partition constraint is satisfied) will be further

redirected to one of its partitions based on the `peaktemp` column. The partition key specified may overlap with the parent's partition key, although care should be taken when specifying the bounds of a sub-partition such that the set of data it accepts constitutes a subset of what the partition's own bounds allow; the system does not try to check whether that's really the case.

Inserting data into the parent table that does not map to one of the existing partitions will cause an error; an appropriate partition must be added manually.

It is not necessary to manually create table constraints describing the partition boundary conditions for partitions. Such constraints will be created automatically.

3. Create an index on the key column(s), as well as any other indexes you might want, on the partitioned table. (The key index is not strictly necessary, but in most scenarios it is helpful.) This automatically creates a matching index on each partition, and any partitions you create or attach later will also have such an index. An index or unique constraint declared on a partitioned table is “virtual” in the same way that the partitioned table is: the actual data is in child indexes on the individual partition tables.

```
CREATE INDEX ON measurement (logdate);
```

4. Ensure that the `enable_partition_pruning` configuration parameter is not disabled in `postgresql.conf`. If it is, queries will not be optimized as desired.

In the above example we would be creating a new partition each month, so it might be wise to write a script that generates the required DDL automatically.

### 5.11.2.2. Partition Maintenance

Normally the set of partitions established when initially defining the table is not intended to remain static. It is common to want to remove partitions holding old data and periodically add new partitions for new data. One of the most important advantages of partitioning is precisely that it allows this otherwise painful task to be executed nearly instantaneously by manipulating the partition structure, rather than physically moving large amounts of data around.

The simplest option for removing old data is to drop the partition that is no longer necessary:

```
DROP TABLE measurement_y2006m02;
```

This can very quickly delete millions of records because it doesn't have to individually delete every record. Note however that the above command requires taking an `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock on the parent table.

Another option that is often preferable is to remove the partition from the partitioned table but retain access to it as a table in its own right. This has two forms:

```
ALTER TABLE measurement DETACH PARTITION measurement_y2006m02;  
ALTER TABLE measurement DETACH PARTITION measurement_y2006m02  
CONCURRENTLY;
```

These allow further operations to be performed on the data before it is dropped. For example, this is often a useful time to back up the data using `COPY`, `pg_dump`, or similar tools. It might also be a useful time to aggregate data into smaller formats, perform other data manipulations, or run reports. The first form of the command requires an `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock on the parent table. Adding the `CONCURRENTLY` qualifier as in the second form allows the detach operation to require only `SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE` lock on the parent table, but see `ALTER TABLE . . . DETACH PARTITION` for details on the restrictions.

Similarly we can add a new partition to handle new data. We can create an empty partition in the partitioned table just as the original partitions were created above:

```
CREATE TABLE measurement_y2008m02 PARTITION OF measurement
    FOR VALUES FROM ('2008-02-01') TO ('2008-03-01')
    TABLESPACE fasttablespace;
```

As an alternative, it is sometimes more convenient to create the new table outside the partition structure, and attach it as a partition later. This allows new data to be loaded, checked, and transformed prior to it appearing in the partitioned table. Moreover, the `ATTACH PARTITION` operation requires only `SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE` lock on the partitioned table, as opposed to the `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock that is required by `CREATE TABLE ... PARTITION OF`, so it is more friendly to concurrent operations on the partitioned table. The `CREATE TABLE ... LIKE` option is helpful to avoid tediously repeating the parent table's definition:

```
CREATE TABLE measurement_y2008m02
    (LIKE measurement INCLUDING DEFAULTS INCLUDING CONSTRAINTS)
    TABLESPACE fasttablespace;
```

```
ALTER TABLE measurement_y2008m02 ADD CONSTRAINT y2008m02
    CHECK ( logdate >= DATE '2008-02-01' AND logdate < DATE
    '2008-03-01' );
```

```
\copy measurement_y2008m02 from 'measurement_y2008m02'
-- possibly some other data preparation work
```

```
ALTER TABLE measurement ATTACH PARTITION measurement_y2008m02
    FOR VALUES FROM ('2008-02-01') TO ('2008-03-01' );
```

Before running the `ATTACH PARTITION` command, it is recommended to create a `CHECK` constraint on the table to be attached that matches the expected partition constraint, as illustrated above. That way, the system will be able to skip the scan which is otherwise needed to validate the implicit partition constraint. Without the `CHECK` constraint, the table will be scanned to validate the partition constraint while holding an `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock on that partition. It is recommended to drop the now-redundant `CHECK` constraint after the `ATTACH PARTITION` is complete. If the table being attached is itself a partitioned table, then each of its sub-partitions will be recursively locked and scanned until either a suitable `CHECK` constraint is encountered or the leaf partitions are reached.

Similarly, if the partitioned table has a `DEFAULT` partition, it is recommended to create a `CHECK` constraint which excludes the to-be-attached partition's constraint. If this is not done then the `DEFAULT` partition will be scanned to verify that it contains no records which should be located in the partition being attached. This operation will be performed whilst holding an `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock on the `DEFAULT` partition. If the `DEFAULT` partition is itself a partitioned table, then each of its partitions will be recursively checked in the same way as the table being attached, as mentioned above.

As explained above, it is possible to create indexes on partitioned tables so that they are applied automatically to the entire hierarchy. This is very convenient, as not only will the existing partitions become indexed, but also any partitions that are created in the future will. One limitation is that it's not possible to use the `CONCURRENTLY` qualifier when creating such a partitioned index. To avoid long lock times, it is possible to use `CREATE INDEX ON ONLY` the partitioned table; such an index is marked invalid, and the partitions do not get the index applied automatically. The indexes on partitions can be created individually using `CONCURRENTLY`, and then *attached* to the index on the parent using `ALTER INDEX .. ATTACH PARTITION`. Once indexes for all partitions are attached to the parent index, the parent index is marked valid automatically. Example:

```
CREATE INDEX measurement_usls_idx ON ONLY measurement (unitsales);

CREATE INDEX CONCURRENTLY measurement_usls_200602_idx
    ON measurement_y2006m02 (unitsales);
```

```
ALTER INDEX measurement_usls_idx
    ATTACH PARTITION measurement_usls_200602_idx;
...
```

This technique can be used with `UNIQUE` and `PRIMARY KEY` constraints too; the indexes are created implicitly when the constraint is created. Example:

```
ALTER TABLE ONLY measurement ADD UNIQUE (city_id, logdate);

ALTER TABLE measurement_y2006m02 ADD UNIQUE (city_id, logdate);
ALTER INDEX measurement_city_id_logdate_key
    ATTACH PARTITION measurement_y2006m02_city_id_logdate_key;
...
```

### 5.11.2.3. Limitations

The following limitations apply to partitioned tables:

- To create a unique or primary key constraint on a partitioned table, the partition keys must not include any expressions or function calls and the constraint's columns must include all of the partition key columns. This limitation exists because the individual indexes making up the constraint can only directly enforce uniqueness within their own partitions; therefore, the partition structure itself must guarantee that there are not duplicates in different partitions.
- There is no way to create an exclusion constraint spanning the whole partitioned table. It is only possible to put such a constraint on each leaf partition individually. Again, this limitation stems from not being able to enforce cross-partition restrictions.
- `BEFORE ROW` triggers on `INSERT` cannot change which partition is the final destination for a new row.
- Mixing temporary and permanent relations in the same partition tree is not allowed. Hence, if the partitioned table is permanent, so must be its partitions and likewise if the partitioned table is temporary. When using temporary relations, all members of the partition tree have to be from the same session.

Individual partitions are linked to their partitioned table using inheritance behind-the-scenes. However, it is not possible to use all of the generic features of inheritance with declaratively partitioned tables or their partitions, as discussed below. Notably, a partition cannot have any parents other than the partitioned table it is a partition of, nor can a table inherit from both a partitioned table and a regular table. That means partitioned tables and their partitions never share an inheritance hierarchy with regular tables.

Since a partition hierarchy consisting of the partitioned table and its partitions is still an inheritance hierarchy, `tableoid` and all the normal rules of inheritance apply as described in Section 5.10, with a few exceptions:

- Partitions cannot have columns that are not present in the parent. It is not possible to specify columns when creating partitions with `CREATE TABLE`, nor is it possible to add columns to partitions after-the-fact using `ALTER TABLE`. Tables may be added as a partition with `ALTER TABLE ... ATTACH PARTITION` only if their columns exactly match the parent.
- Both `CHECK` and `NOT NULL` constraints of a partitioned table are always inherited by all its partitions. `CHECK` constraints that are marked `NO INHERIT` are not allowed to be created on partitioned tables. You cannot drop a `NOT NULL` constraint on a partition's column if the same constraint is present in the parent table.
- Using `ONLY` to add or drop a constraint on only the partitioned table is supported as long as there are no partitions. Once partitions exist, using `ONLY` will result in an error for any constraints other

than `UNIQUE` and `PRIMARY KEY`. Instead, constraints on the partitions themselves can be added and (if they are not present in the parent table) dropped.

- As a partitioned table does not have any data itself, attempts to use `TRUNCATE ONLY` on a partitioned table will always return an error.

### 5.11.3. Partitioning Using Inheritance

While the built-in declarative partitioning is suitable for most common use cases, there are some circumstances where a more flexible approach may be useful. Partitioning can be implemented using table inheritance, which allows for several features not supported by declarative partitioning, such as:

- For declarative partitioning, partitions must have exactly the same set of columns as the partitioned table, whereas with table inheritance, child tables may have extra columns not present in the parent.
- Table inheritance allows for multiple inheritance.
- Declarative partitioning only supports range, list and hash partitioning, whereas table inheritance allows data to be divided in a manner of the user's choosing. (Note, however, that if constraint exclusion is unable to prune child tables effectively, query performance might be poor.)

#### 5.11.3.1. Example

This example builds a partitioning structure equivalent to the declarative partitioning example above. Use the following steps:

1. Create the “root” table, from which all of the “child” tables will inherit. This table will contain no data. Do not define any check constraints on this table, unless you intend them to be applied equally to all child tables. There is no point in defining any indexes or unique constraints on it, either. For our example, the root table is the `measurement` table as originally defined:

```
CREATE TABLE measurement (  
    city_id          int not null,  
    logdate          date not null,  
    peaktemp         int,  
    unitsales        int  
);
```

2. Create several “child” tables that each inherit from the root table. Normally, these tables will not add any columns to the set inherited from the root. Just as with declarative partitioning, these tables are in every way normal PostgreSQL tables (or foreign tables).

```
CREATE TABLE measurement_y2006m02 () INHERITS (measurement);  
CREATE TABLE measurement_y2006m03 () INHERITS (measurement);  
...  
CREATE TABLE measurement_y2007m11 () INHERITS (measurement);  
CREATE TABLE measurement_y2007m12 () INHERITS (measurement);  
CREATE TABLE measurement_y2008m01 () INHERITS (measurement);
```

3. Add non-overlapping table constraints to the child tables to define the allowed key values in each.

Typical examples would be:

```
CHECK ( x = 1 )  
CHECK ( county IN ( 'Oxfordshire', 'Buckinghamshire',  
    'Warwickshire' ) )  
CHECK ( outletID >= 100 AND outletID < 200 )
```



Ensure that the constraints guarantee that there is no overlap between the key values permitted in different child tables. A common mistake is to set up range constraints like:

```
CHECK ( outletID BETWEEN 100 AND 200 )
CHECK ( outletID BETWEEN 200 AND 300 )
```

This is wrong since it is not clear which child table the key value 200 belongs in. Instead, ranges should be defined in this style:

```
CREATE TABLE measurement_y2006m02 (
    CHECK ( logdate >= DATE '2006-02-01' AND logdate < DATE
    '2006-03-01' )
) INHERITS (measurement);
```

```
CREATE TABLE measurement_y2006m03 (
    CHECK ( logdate >= DATE '2006-03-01' AND logdate < DATE
    '2006-04-01' )
) INHERITS (measurement);
```

...

```
CREATE TABLE measurement_y2007m11 (
    CHECK ( logdate >= DATE '2007-11-01' AND logdate < DATE
    '2007-12-01' )
) INHERITS (measurement);
```

```
CREATE TABLE measurement_y2007m12 (
    CHECK ( logdate >= DATE '2007-12-01' AND logdate < DATE
    '2008-01-01' )
) INHERITS (measurement);
```

```
CREATE TABLE measurement_y2008m01 (
    CHECK ( logdate >= DATE '2008-01-01' AND logdate < DATE
    '2008-02-01' )
) INHERITS (measurement);
```

4. For each child table, create an index on the key column(s), as well as any other indexes you might want.

```
CREATE INDEX measurement_y2006m02_logdate ON
measurement_y2006m02 (logdate);
CREATE INDEX measurement_y2006m03_logdate ON
measurement_y2006m03 (logdate);
CREATE INDEX measurement_y2007m11_logdate ON
measurement_y2007m11 (logdate);
CREATE INDEX measurement_y2007m12_logdate ON
measurement_y2007m12 (logdate);
CREATE INDEX measurement_y2008m01_logdate ON
measurement_y2008m01 (logdate);
```

5. We want our application to be able to say `INSERT INTO measurement ...` and have the data be redirected into the appropriate child table. We can arrange that by attaching a suitable trigger function to the root table. If data will be added only to the latest child, we can use a very simple trigger function:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION measurement_insert_trigger()
RETURNS TRIGGER AS $$
```

```
BEGIN
    INSERT INTO measurement_y2008m01 VALUES (NEW.*);
    RETURN NULL;
END;
$$
LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

After creating the function, we create a trigger which calls the trigger function:

```
CREATE TRIGGER insert_measurement_trigger
    BEFORE INSERT ON measurement
    FOR EACH ROW EXECUTE FUNCTION measurement_insert_trigger();
```

We must redefine the trigger function each month so that it always inserts into the current child table. The trigger definition does not need to be updated, however.

We might want to insert data and have the server automatically locate the child table into which the row should be added. We could do this with a more complex trigger function, for example:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION measurement_insert_trigger()
RETURNS TRIGGER AS $$
BEGIN
    IF ( NEW.logdate >= DATE '2006-02-01' AND
        NEW.logdate < DATE '2006-03-01' ) THEN
        INSERT INTO measurement_y2006m02 VALUES (NEW.*);
    ELSIF ( NEW.logdate >= DATE '2006-03-01' AND
        NEW.logdate < DATE '2006-04-01' ) THEN
        INSERT INTO measurement_y2006m03 VALUES (NEW.*);
    ...
    ELSIF ( NEW.logdate >= DATE '2008-01-01' AND
        NEW.logdate < DATE '2008-02-01' ) THEN
        INSERT INTO measurement_y2008m01 VALUES (NEW.*);
    ELSE
        RAISE EXCEPTION 'Date out of range. Fix the
measurement_insert_trigger() function!';
    END IF;
    RETURN NULL;
END;
$$
```

```
LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

The trigger definition is the same as before. Note that each IF test must exactly match the CHECK constraint for its child table.

While this function is more complex than the single-month case, it doesn't need to be updated as often, since branches can be added in advance of being needed.

### Note

In practice, it might be best to check the newest child first, if most inserts go into that child. For simplicity, we have shown the trigger's tests in the same order as in other parts of this example.

A different approach to redirecting inserts into the appropriate child table is to set up rules, instead of a trigger, on the root table. For example:

```
CREATE RULE measurement_insert_y2006m02 AS
ON INSERT TO measurement WHERE
    ( logdate >= DATE '2006-02-01' AND logdate < DATE
      '2006-03-01' )
DO INSTEAD
    INSERT INTO measurement_y2006m02 VALUES (NEW.*);
...
CREATE RULE measurement_insert_y2008m01 AS
ON INSERT TO measurement WHERE
    ( logdate >= DATE '2008-01-01' AND logdate < DATE
      '2008-02-01' )
DO INSTEAD
    INSERT INTO measurement_y2008m01 VALUES (NEW.*);
```

A rule has significantly more overhead than a trigger, but the overhead is paid once per query rather than once per row, so this method might be advantageous for bulk-insert situations. In most cases, however, the trigger method will offer better performance.

Be aware that COPY ignores rules. If you want to use COPY to insert data, you'll need to copy into the correct child table rather than directly into the root. COPY does fire triggers, so you can use it normally if you use the trigger approach.

Another disadvantage of the rule approach is that there is no simple way to force an error if the set of rules doesn't cover the insertion date; the data will silently go into the root table instead.

6. Ensure that the `constraint_exclusion` configuration parameter is not disabled in `postgres.conf`; otherwise child tables may be accessed unnecessarily.

As we can see, a complex table hierarchy could require a substantial amount of DDL. In the above example we would be creating a new child table each month, so it might be wise to write a script that generates the required DDL automatically.

## 5.11.3.2. Maintenance for Inheritance Partitioning

To remove old data quickly, simply drop the child table that is no longer necessary:

```
DROP TABLE measurement_y2006m02;
```

To remove the child table from the inheritance hierarchy table but retain access to it as a table in its own right:

```
ALTER TABLE measurement_y2006m02 NO INHERIT measurement;
```

To add a new child table to handle new data, create an empty child table just as the original children were created above:

```
CREATE TABLE measurement_y2008m02 (  
    CHECK ( logdate >= DATE '2008-02-01' AND logdate < DATE  
        '2008-03-01' )  
    ) INHERITS (measurement);
```

Alternatively, one may want to create and populate the new child table before adding it to the table hierarchy. This could allow data to be loaded, checked, and transformed before being made visible to queries on the parent table.

```
CREATE TABLE measurement_y2008m02  
    (LIKE measurement INCLUDING DEFAULTS INCLUDING CONSTRAINTS);  
ALTER TABLE measurement_y2008m02 ADD CONSTRAINT y2008m02  
    CHECK ( logdate >= DATE '2008-02-01' AND logdate < DATE  
        '2008-03-01' );  
\copy measurement_y2008m02 from 'measurement_y2008m02'  
-- possibly some other data preparation work  
ALTER TABLE measurement_y2008m02 INHERIT measurement;
```

### 5.11.3.3. Caveats

The following caveats apply to partitioning implemented using inheritance:

- There is no automatic way to verify that all of the CHECK constraints are mutually exclusive. It is safer to create code that generates child tables and creates and/or modifies associated objects than to write each by hand.
- Indexes and foreign key constraints apply to single tables and not to their inheritance children, hence they have some caveats to be aware of.
- The schemes shown here assume that the values of a row's key column(s) never change, or at least do not change enough to require it to move to another partition. An UPDATE that attempts to do that will fail because of the CHECK constraints. If you need to handle such cases, you can put suitable update triggers on the child tables, but it makes management of the structure much more complicated.
- If you are using manual VACUUM or ANALYZE commands, don't forget that you need to run them on each child table individually. A command like:

```
ANALYZE measurement;
```

will only process the root table.

- INSERT statements with ON CONFLICT clauses are unlikely to work as expected, as the ON CONFLICT action is only taken in case of unique violations on the specified target relation, not its child relations.
- Triggers or rules will be needed to route rows to the desired child table, unless the application is explicitly aware of the partitioning scheme. Triggers may be complicated to write, and will be much slower than the tuple routing performed internally by declarative partitioning.

## 5.11.4. Partition Pruning

*Partition pruning* is a query optimization technique that improves performance for declaratively partitioned tables. As an example:

```
SET enable_partition_pruning = on;           -- the default
SELECT count(*) FROM measurement WHERE logdate >= DATE
      '2008-01-01';
```

Without partition pruning, the above query would scan each of the partitions of the measurement table. With partition pruning enabled, the planner will examine the definition of each partition and prove that the partition need not be scanned because it could not contain any rows meeting the query's WHERE clause. When the planner can prove this, it excludes (*prunes*) the partition from the query plan.

By using the EXPLAIN command and the enable\_partition\_pruning configuration parameter, it's possible to show the difference between a plan for which partitions have been pruned and one for which they have not. A typical unoptimized plan for this type of table setup is:

```
SET enable_partition_pruning = off;
EXPLAIN SELECT count(*) FROM measurement WHERE logdate >= DATE
      '2008-01-01';
```

#### QUERY PLAN

```
-----
Aggregate  (cost=188.76..188.77 rows=1 width=8)
  -> Append  (cost=0.00..181.05 rows=3085 width=0)
    -> Seq Scan on measurement_y2006m02  (cost=0.00..33.12
      rows=617 width=0)
      Filter: (logdate >= '2008-01-01'::date)
    -> Seq Scan on measurement_y2006m03  (cost=0.00..33.12
      rows=617 width=0)
      Filter: (logdate >= '2008-01-01'::date)
  ...
    -> Seq Scan on measurement_y2007m11  (cost=0.00..33.12
      rows=617 width=0)
      Filter: (logdate >= '2008-01-01'::date)
    -> Seq Scan on measurement_y2007m12  (cost=0.00..33.12
      rows=617 width=0)
      Filter: (logdate >= '2008-01-01'::date)
    -> Seq Scan on measurement_y2008m01  (cost=0.00..33.12
      rows=617 width=0)
      Filter: (logdate >= '2008-01-01'::date)
```

Some or all of the partitions might use index scans instead of full-table sequential scans, but the point here is that there is no need to scan the older partitions at all to answer this query. When we enable partition pruning, we get a significantly cheaper plan that will deliver the same answer:

```
SET enable_partition_pruning = on;
EXPLAIN SELECT count(*) FROM measurement WHERE logdate >= DATE
      '2008-01-01';
```

#### QUERY PLAN

```
-----
Aggregate  (cost=37.75..37.76 rows=1 width=8)
  -> Seq Scan on measurement_y2008m01  (cost=0.00..33.12 rows=617
      width=0)
      Filter: (logdate >= '2008-01-01'::date)
```

Note that partition pruning is driven only by the constraints defined implicitly by the partition keys, not by the presence of indexes. Therefore it isn't necessary to define indexes on the key columns. Whether an index needs to be created for a given partition depends on whether you expect that queries that scan the partition will generally scan a large part of the partition or just a small part. An index will be helpful in the latter case but not the former.

Partition pruning can be performed not only during the planning of a given query, but also during its execution. This is useful as it can allow more partitions to be pruned when clauses contain expressions whose values are not known at query planning time, for example, parameters defined in a `PREPARE` statement, using a value obtained from a subquery, or using a parameterized value on the inner side of a nested loop join. Partition pruning during execution can be performed at any of the following times:

- During initialization of the query plan. Partition pruning can be performed here for parameter values which are known during the initialization phase of execution. Partitions which are pruned during this stage will not show up in the query's `EXPLAIN` or `EXPLAIN ANALYZE`. It is possible to determine the number of partitions which were removed during this phase by observing the “Subplans Removed” property in the `EXPLAIN` output.
- During actual execution of the query plan. Partition pruning may also be performed here to remove partitions using values which are only known during actual query execution. This includes values from subqueries and values from execution-time parameters such as those from parameterized nested loop joins. Since the value of these parameters may change many times during the execution of the query, partition pruning is performed whenever one of the execution parameters being used by partition pruning changes. Determining if partitions were pruned during this phase requires careful inspection of the `loops` property in the `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` output. Subplans corresponding to different partitions may have different values for it depending on how many times each of them was pruned during execution. Some may be shown as `(never executed)` if they were pruned every time.

Partition pruning can be disabled using the `enable_partition_pruning` setting.

## 5.11.5. Partitioning and Constraint Exclusion

*Constraint exclusion* is a query optimization technique similar to partition pruning. While it is primarily used for partitioning implemented using the legacy inheritance method, it can be used for other purposes, including with declarative partitioning.

Constraint exclusion works in a very similar way to partition pruning, except that it uses each table's `CHECK` constraints — which gives it its name — whereas partition pruning uses the table's partition bounds, which exist only in the case of declarative partitioning. Another difference is that constraint exclusion is only applied at plan time; there is no attempt to remove partitions at execution time.

The fact that constraint exclusion uses `CHECK` constraints, which makes it slow compared to partition pruning, can sometimes be used as an advantage: because constraints can be defined even on declaratively-partitioned tables, in addition to their internal partition bounds, constraint exclusion may be able to elide additional partitions from the query plan.

The default (and recommended) setting of `constraint_exclusion` is neither `on` nor `off`, but an intermediate setting called `partition`, which causes the technique to be applied only to queries that are likely to be working on inheritance partitioned tables. The `on` setting causes the planner to examine `CHECK` constraints in all queries, even simple ones that are unlikely to benefit.

The following caveats apply to constraint exclusion:

- Constraint exclusion is only applied during query planning, unlike partition pruning, which can also be applied during query execution.
- Constraint exclusion only works when the query's `WHERE` clause contains constants (or externally supplied parameters). For example, a comparison against a non-immutable function such as `CUR-`

RENT\_TIMESTAMP cannot be optimized, since the planner cannot know which child table the function's value might fall into at run time.

- Keep the partitioning constraints simple, else the planner may not be able to prove that child tables might not need to be visited. Use simple equality conditions for list partitioning, or simple range tests for range partitioning, as illustrated in the preceding examples. A good rule of thumb is that partitioning constraints should contain only comparisons of the partitioning column(s) to constants using B-tree-indexable operators, because only B-tree-indexable column(s) are allowed in the partition key.
- All constraints on all children of the parent table are examined during constraint exclusion, so large numbers of children are likely to increase query planning time considerably. So the legacy inheritance based partitioning will work well with up to perhaps a hundred child tables; don't try to use many thousands of children.

## 5.11.6. Best Practices for Declarative Partitioning

The choice of how to partition a table should be made carefully, as the performance of query planning and execution can be negatively affected by poor design.

One of the most critical design decisions will be the column or columns by which you partition your data. Often the best choice will be to partition by the column or set of columns which most commonly appear in WHERE clauses of queries being executed on the partitioned table. WHERE clauses that are compatible with the partition bound constraints can be used to prune unneeded partitions. However, you may be forced into making other decisions by requirements for the PRIMARY KEY or a UNIQUE constraint. Removal of unwanted data is also a factor to consider when planning your partitioning strategy. An entire partition can be detached fairly quickly, so it may be beneficial to design the partition strategy in such a way that all data to be removed at once is located in a single partition.

Choosing the target number of partitions that the table should be divided into is also a critical decision to make. Not having enough partitions may mean that indexes remain too large and that data locality remains poor which could result in low cache hit ratios. However, dividing the table into too many partitions can also cause issues. Too many partitions can mean longer query planning times and higher memory consumption during both query planning and execution, as further described below. When choosing how to partition your table, it's also important to consider what changes may occur in the future. For example, if you choose to have one partition per customer and you currently have a small number of large customers, consider the implications if in several years you instead find yourself with a large number of small customers. In this case, it may be better to choose to partition by HASH and choose a reasonable number of partitions rather than trying to partition by LIST and hoping that the number of customers does not increase beyond what it is practical to partition the data by.

Sub-partitioning can be useful to further divide partitions that are expected to become larger than other partitions. Another option is to use range partitioning with multiple columns in the partition key. Either of these can easily lead to excessive numbers of partitions, so restraint is advisable.

It is important to consider the overhead of partitioning during query planning and execution. The query planner is generally able to handle partition hierarchies with up to a few thousand partitions fairly well, provided that typical queries allow the query planner to prune all but a small number of partitions. Planning times become longer and memory consumption becomes higher when more partitions remain after the planner performs partition pruning. Another reason to be concerned about having a large number of partitions is that the server's memory consumption may grow significantly over time, especially if many sessions touch large numbers of partitions. That's because each partition requires its metadata to be loaded into the local memory of each session that touches it.

With data warehouse type workloads, it can make sense to use a larger number of partitions than with an OLTP type workload. Generally, in data warehouses, query planning time is less of a concern as the majority of processing time is spent during query execution. With either of these two types of workload, it is important to make the right decisions early, as re-partitioning large quantities of data can be painfully slow. Simulations of the intended workload are often beneficial for optimizing the

partitioning strategy. Never just assume that more partitions are better than fewer partitions, nor vice-versa.

## 5.12. Foreign Data

PostgreSQL implements portions of the SQL/MED specification, allowing you to access data that resides outside PostgreSQL using regular SQL queries. Such data is referred to as *foreign data*. (Note that this usage is not to be confused with foreign keys, which are a type of constraint within the database.)

Foreign data is accessed with help from a *foreign data wrapper*. A foreign data wrapper is a library that can communicate with an external data source, hiding the details of connecting to the data source and obtaining data from it. There are some foreign data wrappers available as `contrib` modules; see Appendix F. Other kinds of foreign data wrappers might be found as third party products. If none of the existing foreign data wrappers suit your needs, you can write your own; see Chapter 59.

To access foreign data, you need to create a *foreign server* object, which defines how to connect to a particular external data source according to the set of options used by its supporting foreign data wrapper. Then you need to create one or more *foreign tables*, which define the structure of the remote data. A foreign table can be used in queries just like a normal table, but a foreign table has no storage in the PostgreSQL server. Whenever it is used, PostgreSQL asks the foreign data wrapper to fetch data from the external source, or transmit data to the external source in the case of update commands.

Accessing remote data may require authenticating to the external data source. This information can be provided by a *user mapping*, which can provide additional data such as user names and passwords based on the current PostgreSQL role.

For additional information, see `CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER`, `CREATE SERVER`, `CREATE USER MAPPING`, `CREATE FOREIGN TABLE`, and `IMPORT FOREIGN SCHEMA`.

## 5.13. Other Database Objects

Tables are the central objects in a relational database structure, because they hold your data. But they are not the only objects that exist in a database. Many other kinds of objects can be created to make the use and management of the data more efficient or convenient. They are not discussed in this chapter, but we give you a list here so that you are aware of what is possible:

- Views
- Functions, procedures, and operators
- Data types and domains
- Triggers and rewrite rules

Detailed information on these topics appears in Part V.

## 5.14. Dependency Tracking

When you create complex database structures involving many tables with foreign key constraints, views, triggers, functions, etc. you implicitly create a net of dependencies between the objects. For instance, a table with a foreign key constraint depends on the table it references.

To ensure the integrity of the entire database structure, PostgreSQL makes sure that you cannot drop objects that other objects still depend on. For example, attempting to drop the `products` table we considered in Section 5.4.5, with the `orders` table depending on it, would result in an error message like this:



```
DROP TABLE products;
```

```
ERROR:  cannot drop table products because other objects depend on
it
```

```
DETAIL:  constraint orders_product_no_fkey on table orders depends
on table products
```

```
HINT:   Use DROP ... CASCADE to drop the dependent objects too.
```

The error message contains a useful hint: if you do not want to bother deleting all the dependent objects individually, you can run:

```
DROP TABLE products CASCADE;
```

and all the dependent objects will be removed, as will any objects that depend on them, recursively. In this case, it doesn't remove the orders table, it only removes the foreign key constraint. It stops there because nothing depends on the foreign key constraint. (If you want to check what `DROP ... CASCADE` will do, run `DROP` without `CASCADE` and read the `DETAIL` output.)

Almost all `DROP` commands in PostgreSQL support specifying `CASCADE`. Of course, the nature of the possible dependencies varies with the type of the object. You can also write `RESTRICT` instead of `CASCADE` to get the default behavior, which is to prevent dropping objects that any other objects depend on.

### Note

According to the SQL standard, specifying either `RESTRICT` or `CASCADE` is required in a `DROP` command. No database system actually enforces that rule, but whether the default behavior is `RESTRICT` or `CASCADE` varies across systems.

If a `DROP` command lists multiple objects, `CASCADE` is only required when there are dependencies outside the specified group. For example, when saying `DROP TABLE tab1, tab2` the existence of a foreign key referencing `tab1` from `tab2` would not mean that `CASCADE` is needed to succeed.

For a user-defined function or procedure whose body is defined as a string literal, PostgreSQL tracks dependencies associated with the function's externally-visible properties, such as its argument and result types, but *not* dependencies that could only be known by examining the function body. As an example, consider this situation:

```
CREATE TYPE rainbow AS ENUM ('red', 'orange', 'yellow',
                             'green', 'blue', 'purple');
```

```
CREATE TABLE my_colors (color rainbow, note text);
```

```
CREATE FUNCTION get_color_note (rainbow) RETURNS text AS
'SELECT note FROM my_colors WHERE color = $1'
LANGUAGE SQL;
```

(See Section 38.5 for an explanation of SQL-language functions.) PostgreSQL will be aware that the `get_color_note` function depends on the `rainbow` type: dropping the type would force dropping the function, because its argument type would no longer be defined. But PostgreSQL will not consider `get_color_note` to depend on the `my_colors` table, and so will not drop the function if the table is dropped. While there are disadvantages to this approach, there are also benefits. The function is still valid in some sense if the table is missing, though executing it would cause an error; creating a new table of the same name would allow the function to work again.

On the other hand, for a SQL-language function or procedure whose body is written in SQL-standard style, the body is parsed at function definition time and all dependencies recognized by the parser are stored. Thus, if we write the function above as

```
CREATE FUNCTION get_color_note (rainbow) RETURNS text
BEGIN ATOMIC
  SELECT note FROM my_colors WHERE color = $1;
END;
```

then the function's dependency on the `my_colors` table will be known and enforced by DROP.

---

# Chapter 6. Data Manipulation

The previous chapter discussed how to create tables and other structures to hold your data. Now it is time to fill the tables with data. This chapter covers how to insert, update, and delete table data. The chapter after this will finally explain how to extract your long-lost data from the database.

## 6.1. Inserting Data

When a table is created, it contains no data. The first thing to do before a database can be of much use is to insert data. Data is inserted one row at a time. You can also insert more than one row in a single command, but it is not possible to insert something that is not a complete row. Even if you know only some column values, a complete row must be created.

To create a new row, use the INSERT command. The command requires the table name and column values. For example, consider the products table from Chapter 5:

```
CREATE TABLE products (  
    product_no integer,  
    name text,  
    price numeric  
);
```

An example command to insert a row would be:

```
INSERT INTO products VALUES (1, 'Cheese', 9.99);
```

The data values are listed in the order in which the columns appear in the table, separated by commas. Usually, the data values will be literals (constants), but scalar expressions are also allowed.

The above syntax has the drawback that you need to know the order of the columns in the table. To avoid this you can also list the columns explicitly. For example, both of the following commands have the same effect as the one above:

```
INSERT INTO products (product_no, name, price) VALUES (1, 'Cheese',  
9.99);  
INSERT INTO products (name, price, product_no) VALUES ('Cheese',  
9.99, 1);
```

Many users consider it good practice to always list the column names.

If you don't have values for all the columns, you can omit some of them. In that case, the columns will be filled with their default values. For example:

```
INSERT INTO products (product_no, name) VALUES (1, 'Cheese');  
INSERT INTO products VALUES (1, 'Cheese');
```

The second form is a PostgreSQL extension. It fills the columns from the left with as many values as are given, and the rest will be defaulted.

For clarity, you can also request default values explicitly, for individual columns or for the entire row:

```
INSERT INTO products (product_no, name, price) VALUES (1, 'Cheese',  
DEFAULT);
```

```
INSERT INTO products DEFAULT VALUES;
```

You can insert multiple rows in a single command:

```
INSERT INTO products (product_no, name, price) VALUES
  (1, 'Cheese', 9.99),
  (2, 'Bread', 1.99),
  (3, 'Milk', 2.99);
```

It is also possible to insert the result of a query (which might be no rows, one row, or many rows):

```
INSERT INTO products (product_no, name, price)
  SELECT product_no, name, price FROM new_products
  WHERE release_date = 'today';
```

This provides the full power of the SQL query mechanism (Chapter 7) for computing the rows to be inserted.

### Tip

When inserting a lot of data at the same time, consider using the COPY command. It is not as flexible as the INSERT command, but is more efficient. Refer to Section 14.4 for more information on improving bulk loading performance.

## 6.2. Updating Data

The modification of data that is already in the database is referred to as updating. You can update individual rows, all the rows in a table, or a subset of all rows. Each column can be updated separately; the other columns are not affected.

To update existing rows, use the UPDATE command. This requires three pieces of information:

1. The name of the table and column to update
2. The new value of the column
3. Which row(s) to update

Recall from Chapter 5 that SQL does not, in general, provide a unique identifier for rows. Therefore it is not always possible to directly specify which row to update. Instead, you specify which conditions a row must meet in order to be updated. Only if you have a primary key in the table (independent of whether you declared it or not) can you reliably address individual rows by choosing a condition that matches the primary key. Graphical database access tools rely on this fact to allow you to update rows individually.

For example, this command updates all products that have a price of 5 to have a price of 10:

```
UPDATE products SET price = 10 WHERE price = 5;
```

This might cause zero, one, or many rows to be updated. It is not an error to attempt an update that does not match any rows.

Let's look at that command in detail. First is the key word UPDATE followed by the table name. As usual, the table name can be schema-qualified, otherwise it is looked up in the path. Next is the key word SET followed by the column name, an equal sign, and the new column value. The new column value can be any scalar expression, not just a constant. For example, if you want to raise the price of all products by 10% you could use:

```
UPDATE products SET price = price * 1.10;
```

As you see, the expression for the new value can refer to the existing value(s) in the row. We also left out the `WHERE` clause. If it is omitted, it means that all rows in the table are updated. If it is present, only those rows that match the `WHERE` condition are updated. Note that the equals sign in the `SET` clause is an assignment while the one in the `WHERE` clause is a comparison, but this does not create any ambiguity. Of course, the `WHERE` condition does not have to be an equality test. Many other operators are available (see Chapter 9). But the expression needs to evaluate to a Boolean result.

You can update more than one column in an `UPDATE` command by listing more than one assignment in the `SET` clause. For example:

```
UPDATE mytable SET a = 5, b = 3, c = 1 WHERE a > 0;
```

## 6.3. Deleting Data

So far we have explained how to add data to tables and how to change data. What remains is to discuss how to remove data that is no longer needed. Just as adding data is only possible in whole rows, you can only remove entire rows from a table. In the previous section we explained that SQL does not provide a way to directly address individual rows. Therefore, removing rows can only be done by specifying conditions that the rows to be removed have to match. If you have a primary key in the table then you can specify the exact row. But you can also remove groups of rows matching a condition, or you can remove all rows in the table at once.

You use the `DELETE` command to remove rows; the syntax is very similar to the `UPDATE` command. For instance, to remove all rows from the `products` table that have a price of 10, use:

```
DELETE FROM products WHERE price = 10;
```

If you simply write:

```
DELETE FROM products;
```

then all rows in the table will be deleted! Caveat programmer.

## 6.4. Returning Data from Modified Rows

Sometimes it is useful to obtain data from modified rows while they are being manipulated. The `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, and `DELETE` commands all have an optional `RETURNING` clause that supports this. Use of `RETURNING` avoids performing an extra database query to collect the data, and is especially valuable when it would otherwise be difficult to identify the modified rows reliably.

The allowed contents of a `RETURNING` clause are the same as a `SELECT` command's output list (see Section 7.3). It can contain column names of the command's target table, or value expressions using those columns. A common shorthand is `RETURNING *`, which selects all columns of the target table in order.

In an `INSERT`, the data available to `RETURNING` is the row as it was inserted. This is not so useful in trivial inserts, since it would just repeat the data provided by the client. But it can be very handy when relying on computed default values. For example, when using a `serial` column to provide unique identifiers, `RETURNING` can return the ID assigned to a new row:

```
CREATE TABLE users (firstname text, lastname text, id serial  
primary key);
```

```
INSERT INTO users (firstname, lastname) VALUES ('Joe', 'Cool')  
RETURNING id;
```

The RETURNING clause is also very useful with INSERT ... SELECT.

In an UPDATE, the data available to RETURNING is the new content of the modified row. For example:

```
UPDATE products SET price = price * 1.10  
WHERE price <= 99.99  
RETURNING name, price AS new_price;
```

In a DELETE, the data available to RETURNING is the content of the deleted row. For example:

```
DELETE FROM products  
WHERE obsolescence_date = 'today'  
RETURNING *;
```

If there are triggers (Chapter 39) on the target table, the data available to RETURNING is the row as modified by the triggers. Thus, inspecting columns computed by triggers is another common use-case for RETURNING.

---

# Chapter 7. Queries

The previous chapters explained how to create tables, how to fill them with data, and how to manipulate that data. Now we finally discuss how to retrieve the data from the database.

## 7.1. Overview

The process of retrieving or the command to retrieve data from a database is called a *query*. In SQL the `SELECT` command is used to specify queries. The general syntax of the `SELECT` command is

```
[WITH with_queries] SELECT select_list FROM table_expression  
[sort_specification]
```

The following sections describe the details of the select list, the table expression, and the sort specification. `WITH` queries are treated last since they are an advanced feature.

A simple kind of query has the form:

```
SELECT * FROM table1;
```

Assuming that there is a table called `table1`, this command would retrieve all rows and all user-defined columns from `table1`. (The method of retrieval depends on the client application. For example, the `psql` program will display an ASCII-art table on the screen, while client libraries will offer functions to extract individual values from the query result.) The select list specification `*` means all columns that the table expression happens to provide. A select list can also select a subset of the available columns or make calculations using the columns. For example, if `table1` has columns named `a`, `b`, and `c` (and perhaps others) you can make the following query:

```
SELECT a, b + c FROM table1;
```

(assuming that `b` and `c` are of a numerical data type). See Section 7.3 for more details.

`FROM table1` is a simple kind of table expression: it reads just one table. In general, table expressions can be complex constructs of base tables, joins, and subqueries. But you can also omit the table expression entirely and use the `SELECT` command as a calculator:

```
SELECT 3 * 4;
```

This is more useful if the expressions in the select list return varying results. For example, you could call a function this way:

```
SELECT random();
```

## 7.2. Table Expressions

A *table expression* computes a table. The table expression contains a `FROM` clause that is optionally followed by `WHERE`, `GROUP BY`, and `HAVING` clauses. Trivial table expressions simply refer to a table on disk, a so-called base table, but more complex expressions can be used to modify or combine base tables in various ways.

The optional `WHERE`, `GROUP BY`, and `HAVING` clauses in the table expression specify a pipeline of successive transformations performed on the table derived in the `FROM` clause. All these transforma-

tions produce a virtual table that provides the rows that are passed to the select list to compute the output rows of the query.

## 7.2.1. The FROM Clause

The FROM clause derives a table from one or more other tables given in a comma-separated table reference list.

```
FROM table_reference [ , table_reference [ , ... ] ]
```

A table reference can be a table name (possibly schema-qualified), or a derived table such as a subquery, a JOIN construct, or complex combinations of these. If more than one table reference is listed in the FROM clause, the tables are cross-joined (that is, the Cartesian product of their rows is formed; see below). The result of the FROM list is an intermediate virtual table that can then be subject to transformations by the WHERE, GROUP BY, and HAVING clauses and is finally the result of the overall table expression.

When a table reference names a table that is the parent of a table inheritance hierarchy, the table reference produces rows of not only that table but all of its descendant tables, unless the key word ONLY precedes the table name. However, the reference produces only the columns that appear in the named table — any columns added in subtables are ignored.

Instead of writing ONLY before the table name, you can write \* after the table name to explicitly specify that descendant tables are included. There is no real reason to use this syntax any more, because searching descendant tables is now always the default behavior. However, it is supported for compatibility with older releases.

### 7.2.1.1. Joined Tables

A joined table is a table derived from two other (real or derived) tables according to the rules of the particular join type. Inner, outer, and cross-joins are available. The general syntax of a joined table is

```
T1 join_type T2 [ join_condition ]
```

Joins of all types can be chained together, or nested: either or both *T1* and *T2* can be joined tables. Parentheses can be used around JOIN clauses to control the join order. In the absence of parentheses, JOIN clauses nest left-to-right.

#### Join Types

Cross join

```
T1 CROSS JOIN T2
```

For every possible combination of rows from *T1* and *T2* (i.e., a Cartesian product), the joined table will contain a row consisting of all columns in *T1* followed by all columns in *T2*. If the tables have *N* and *M* rows respectively, the joined table will have *N* \* *M* rows.

FROM *T1* CROSS JOIN *T2* is equivalent to FROM *T1* INNER JOIN *T2* ON TRUE (see below). It is also equivalent to FROM *T1* , *T2*.

#### Note

This latter equivalence does not hold exactly when more than two tables appear, because JOIN binds more tightly than comma. For example FROM *T1* CROSS JOIN *T2* INNER JOIN *T3* ON *condition* is not the same as FROM *T1* , *T2* INNER JOIN



*T3* ON *condition* because the *condition* can reference *T1* in the first case but not the second.

### Qualified joins

```

T1 { [INNER] | { LEFT | RIGHT | FULL } [OUTER] } JOIN T2
  ON boolean_expression
T1 { [INNER] | { LEFT | RIGHT | FULL } [OUTER] } JOIN T2 USING
  ( join column list )
T1 NATURAL { [INNER] | { LEFT | RIGHT | FULL } [OUTER] } JOIN T2

```

The words INNER and OUTER are optional in all forms. INNER is the default; LEFT, RIGHT, and FULL imply an outer join.

The *join condition* is specified in the ON or USING clause, or implicitly by the word NATURAL. The join condition determines which rows from the two source tables are considered to “match”, as explained in detail below.

The possible types of qualified join are:

#### INNER JOIN

For each row *R1* of *T1*, the joined table has a row for each row in *T2* that satisfies the join condition with *R1*.

#### LEFT OUTER JOIN

First, an inner join is performed. Then, for each row in *T1* that does not satisfy the join condition with any row in *T2*, a joined row is added with null values in columns of *T2*. Thus, the joined table always has at least one row for each row in *T1*.

#### RIGHT OUTER JOIN

First, an inner join is performed. Then, for each row in *T2* that does not satisfy the join condition with any row in *T1*, a joined row is added with null values in columns of *T1*. This is the converse of a left join: the result table will always have a row for each row in *T2*.

#### FULL OUTER JOIN

First, an inner join is performed. Then, for each row in *T1* that does not satisfy the join condition with any row in *T2*, a joined row is added with null values in columns of *T2*. Also, for each row of *T2* that does not satisfy the join condition with any row in *T1*, a joined row with null values in the columns of *T1* is added.

The ON clause is the most general kind of join condition: it takes a Boolean value expression of the same kind as is used in a WHERE clause. A pair of rows from *T1* and *T2* match if the ON expression evaluates to true.

The USING clause is a shorthand that allows you to take advantage of the specific situation where both sides of the join use the same name for the joining column(s). It takes a comma-separated list of the shared column names and forms a join condition that includes an equality comparison for each one. For example, joining *T1* and *T2* with USING (*a*, *b*) produces the join condition ON *T1.a* = *T2.a* AND *T1.b* = *T2.b*.

Furthermore, the output of JOIN USING suppresses redundant columns: there is no need to print both of the matched columns, since they must have equal values. While JOIN ON produces all columns from *T1* followed by all columns from *T2*, JOIN USING produces one output column for each of the listed column pairs (in the listed order), followed by any remaining columns from *T1*, followed by any remaining columns from *T2*.

Finally, **NATURAL** is a shorthand form of **USING**: it forms a **USING** list consisting of all column names that appear in both input tables. As with **USING**, these columns appear only once in the output table. If there are no common column names, **NATURAL JOIN** behaves like **JOIN . . . ON TRUE**, producing a cross-product join.

### Note

**USING** is reasonably safe from column changes in the joined relations since only the listed columns are combined. **NATURAL** is considerably more risky since any schema changes to either relation that cause a new matching column name to be present will cause the join to combine that new column as well.

To put this together, assume we have tables **t1**:

num	name
1	a
2	b
3	c

and **t2**:

num	value
1	xxx
3	yyy
5	zzz

then we get the following results for the various joins:

**=> SELECT \* FROM t1 CROSS JOIN t2;**

num	name	num	value
1	a	1	xxx
1	a	3	yyy
1	a	5	zzz
2	b	1	xxx
2	b	3	yyy
2	b	5	zzz
3	c	1	xxx
3	c	3	yyy
3	c	5	zzz

(9 rows)

**=> SELECT \* FROM t1 INNER JOIN t2 ON t1.num = t2.num;**

num	name	num	value
1	a	1	xxx
3	c	3	yyy

(2 rows)

**=> SELECT \* FROM t1 INNER JOIN t2 USING (num);**

num	name	value
1	a	xxx

```

    3 | c      |   YYY
(2 rows)

```

=> **SELECT \* FROM t1 NATURAL INNER JOIN t2;**

```

num | name | value
-----+-----+-----
    1 | a     |   xxx
    3 | c     |   YYY
(2 rows)

```

=> **SELECT \* FROM t1 LEFT JOIN t2 ON t1.num = t2.num;**

```

num | name | num | value
-----+-----+-----+-----
    1 | a     |    1 |   xxx
    2 | b     |    | 
    3 | c     |    3 |   YYY
(3 rows)

```

=> **SELECT \* FROM t1 LEFT JOIN t2 USING (num);**

```

num | name | value
-----+-----+-----
    1 | a     |   xxx
    2 | b     | 
    3 | c     |   YYY
(3 rows)

```

=> **SELECT \* FROM t1 RIGHT JOIN t2 ON t1.num = t2.num;**

```

num | name | num | value
-----+-----+-----+-----
    1 | a     |    1 |   xxx
    3 | c     |    3 |   YYY
    |      |    5 |   zzz
(3 rows)

```

=> **SELECT \* FROM t1 FULL JOIN t2 ON t1.num = t2.num;**

```

num | name | num | value
-----+-----+-----+-----
    1 | a     |    1 |   xxx
    2 | b     |    | 
    3 | c     |    3 |   YYY
    |      |    5 |   zzz
(4 rows)

```

The join condition specified with ON can also contain conditions that do not relate directly to the join. This can prove useful for some queries but needs to be thought out carefully. For example:

=> **SELECT \* FROM t1 LEFT JOIN t2 ON t1.num = t2.num AND t2.value = 'xxx';**

```

num | name | num | value
-----+-----+-----+-----
    1 | a     |    1 |   xxx
    2 | b     |    | 
    3 | c     |    | 
(3 rows)

```

Notice that placing the restriction in the WHERE clause produces a different result:

```
=> SELECT * FROM t1 LEFT JOIN t2 ON t1.num = t2.num WHERE t2.value
    = 'xxx';
   num | name | num | value
-----+-----+-----+-----
     1 | a    |    1 | xxx
(1 row)
```

This is because a restriction placed in the ON clause is processed *before* the join, while a restriction placed in the WHERE clause is processed *after* the join. That does not matter with inner joins, but it matters a lot with outer joins.

### 7.2.1.2. Table and Column Aliases

A temporary name can be given to tables and complex table references to be used for references to the derived table in the rest of the query. This is called a *table alias*.

To create a table alias, write

```
FROM table_reference AS alias
```

or

```
FROM table_reference alias
```

The AS key word is optional noise. *alias* can be any identifier.

A typical application of table aliases is to assign short identifiers to long table names to keep the join clauses readable. For example:

```
SELECT * FROM some_very_long_table_name s JOIN
another_fairly_long_name a ON s.id = a.num;
```

The alias becomes the new name of the table reference so far as the current query is concerned — it is not allowed to refer to the table by the original name elsewhere in the query. Thus, this is not valid:

```
SELECT * FROM my_table AS m WHERE my_table.a > 5;    -- wrong
```

Table aliases are mainly for notational convenience, but it is necessary to use them when joining a table to itself, e.g.:

```
SELECT * FROM people AS mother JOIN people AS child ON mother.id =
child.mother_id;
```

Parentheses are used to resolve ambiguities. In the following example, the first statement assigns the alias b to the second instance of *my\_table*, but the second statement assigns the alias to the result of the join:

```
SELECT * FROM my_table AS a CROSS JOIN my_table AS b ...
SELECT * FROM (my_table AS a CROSS JOIN my_table) AS b ...
```

Another form of table aliasing gives temporary names to the columns of the table, as well as the table itself:

```
FROM table_reference [AS] alias ( column1 [, column2 [, ...]] )
```

If fewer column aliases are specified than the actual table has columns, the remaining columns are not renamed. This syntax is especially useful for self-joins or subqueries.

When an alias is applied to the output of a JOIN clause, the alias hides the original name(s) within the JOIN. For example:

```
SELECT a.* FROM my_table AS a JOIN your_table AS b ON ...
```

is valid SQL, but:

```
SELECT a.* FROM (my_table AS a JOIN your_table AS b ON ...) AS c
```

is not valid; the table alias `a` is not visible outside the alias `c`.

### 7.2.1.3. Subqueries

Subqueries specifying a derived table must be enclosed in parentheses. They may be assigned a table alias name, and optionally column alias names (as in Section 7.2.1.2). For example:

```
FROM (SELECT * FROM table1) AS alias_name
```

This example is equivalent to `FROM table1 AS alias_name`. More interesting cases, which cannot be reduced to a plain join, arise when the subquery involves grouping or aggregation.

A subquery can also be a VALUES list:

```
FROM (VALUES ('anne', 'smith'), ('bob', 'jones'), ('joe', 'blow'))
      AS names(first, last)
```

Again, a table alias is optional. Assigning alias names to the columns of the VALUES list is optional, but is good practice. For more information see Section 7.7.

According to the SQL standard, a table alias name must be supplied for a subquery. PostgreSQL allows AS and the alias to be omitted, but writing one is good practice in SQL code that might be ported to another system.

### 7.2.1.4. Table Functions

Table functions are functions that produce a set of rows, made up of either base data types (scalar types) or composite data types (table rows). They are used like a table, view, or subquery in the FROM clause of a query. Columns returned by table functions can be included in SELECT, JOIN, or WHERE clauses in the same manner as columns of a table, view, or subquery.

Table functions may also be combined using the ROWS FROM syntax, with the results returned in parallel columns; the number of result rows in this case is that of the largest function result, with smaller results padded with null values to match.

```
function_call [WITH ORDINALITY] [[AS] table_alias [(column_alias
[, ... ])] ]
ROWS FROM( function_call [, ... ] ) [WITH ORDINALITY]
[[AS] table_alias [(column_alias [, ... ])] ]
```

If the WITH ORDINALITY clause is specified, an additional column of type `bigint` will be added to the function result columns. This column numbers the rows of the function result set, starting from 1. (This is a generalization of the SQL-standard syntax for `UNNEST ... WITH ORDINALITY`.)

By default, the ordinal column is called `ordinality`, but a different column name can be assigned to it using an `AS` clause.

The special table function `UNNEST` may be called with any number of array parameters, and it returns a corresponding number of columns, as if `UNNEST` (Section 9.19) had been called on each parameter separately and combined using the `ROWS FROM` construct.

```
UNNEST( array_expression [, ... ] ) [WITH ORDINALITY]
  [[AS] table_alias [(column_alias [, ... ])]]
```

If no *table\_alias* is specified, the function name is used as the table name; in the case of a `ROWS FROM()` construct, the first function's name is used.

If column aliases are not supplied, then for a function returning a base data type, the column name is also the same as the function name. For a function returning a composite type, the result columns get the names of the individual attributes of the type.

Some examples:

```
CREATE TABLE foo (fooid int, foosubid int, fooname text);
```

```
CREATE FUNCTION getfoo(int) RETURNS SETOF foo AS $$
  SELECT * FROM foo WHERE fooid = $1;
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;
```

```
SELECT * FROM getfoo(1) AS t1;
```

```
SELECT * FROM foo
  WHERE foosubid IN (
                        SELECT foosubid
                        FROM getfoo(foo.fooid) z
                        WHERE z.fooid = foo.fooid
                      );
```

```
CREATE VIEW vw_getfoo AS SELECT * FROM getfoo(1);
```

```
SELECT * FROM vw_getfoo;
```

In some cases it is useful to define table functions that can return different column sets depending on how they are invoked. To support this, the table function can be declared as returning the pseudo-type `record` with no `OUT` parameters. When such a function is used in a query, the expected row structure must be specified in the query itself, so that the system can know how to parse and plan the query. This syntax looks like:

```
function_call [AS] alias (column_definition [, ... ])
function_call AS [alias] (column_definition [, ... ])
ROWS FROM( ... function_call AS (column_definition [, ... ])
  [, ... ] )
```

When not using the `ROWS FROM()` syntax, the *column\_definition* list replaces the column alias list that could otherwise be attached to the `FROM` item; the names in the column definitions serve as column aliases. When using the `ROWS FROM()` syntax, a *column\_definition* list can be attached to each member function separately; or if there is only one member function and no `WITH ORDINALITY` clause, a *column\_definition* list can be written in place of a column alias list following `ROWS FROM()`.

Consider this example:

```
SELECT *
  FROM dblink('dbname=mydb', 'SELECT proname, prosrc FROM
pg_proc')
  AS t1(proname name, prosrc text)
 WHERE proname LIKE 'bytea%';
```

The `dblink` function (part of the `dblink` module) executes a remote query. It is declared to return `record` since it might be used for any kind of query. The actual column set must be specified in the calling query so that the parser knows, for example, what `*` should expand to.

This example uses `ROWS FROM`:

```
SELECT *
FROM ROWS FROM
(
  json_to_recordset('["a":40,"b":"foo"]',
{"a":"100","b":"bar"}])
  AS (a INTEGER, b TEXT),
  generate_series(1, 3)
) AS x (p, q, s)
ORDER BY p;
```

p	q	s
40	foo	1
100	bar	2
		3

It joins two functions into a single `FROM` target. `json_to_recordset()` is instructed to return two columns, the first integer and the second text. The result of `generate_series()` is used directly. The `ORDER BY` clause sorts the column values as integers.

### 7.2.1.5. LATERAL Subqueries

Subqueries appearing in `FROM` can be preceded by the key word `LATERAL`. This allows them to reference columns provided by preceding `FROM` items. (Without `LATERAL`, each subquery is evaluated independently and so cannot cross-reference any other `FROM` item.)

Table functions appearing in `FROM` can also be preceded by the key word `LATERAL`, but for functions the key word is optional; the function's arguments can contain references to columns provided by preceding `FROM` items in any case.

A `LATERAL` item can appear at the top level in the `FROM` list, or within a `JOIN` tree. In the latter case it can also refer to any items that are on the left-hand side of a `JOIN` that it is on the right-hand side of.

When a `FROM` item contains `LATERAL` cross-references, evaluation proceeds as follows: for each row of the `FROM` item providing the cross-referenced column(s), or set of rows of multiple `FROM` items providing the columns, the `LATERAL` item is evaluated using that row or row set's values of the columns. The resulting row(s) are joined as usual with the rows they were computed from. This is repeated for each row or set of rows from the column source table(s).

A trivial example of `LATERAL` is

```
SELECT * FROM foo, LATERAL (SELECT * FROM bar WHERE bar.id =
foo.bar_id) ss;
```

This is not especially useful since it has exactly the same result as the more conventional

```
SELECT * FROM foo, bar WHERE bar.id = foo.bar_id;
```

LATERAL is primarily useful when the cross-referenced column is necessary for computing the row(s) to be joined. A common application is providing an argument value for a set-returning function. For example, supposing that `vertices(polygon)` returns the set of vertices of a polygon, we could identify close-together vertices of polygons stored in a table with:

```
SELECT p1.id, p2.id, v1, v2
FROM polygons p1, polygons p2,
     LATERAL vertices(p1.poly) v1,
     LATERAL vertices(p2.poly) v2
WHERE (v1 <-> v2) < 10 AND p1.id != p2.id;
```

This query could also be written

```
SELECT p1.id, p2.id, v1, v2
FROM polygons p1 CROSS JOIN LATERAL vertices(p1.poly) v1,
     polygons p2 CROSS JOIN LATERAL vertices(p2.poly) v2
WHERE (v1 <-> v2) < 10 AND p1.id != p2.id;
```

or in several other equivalent formulations. (As already mentioned, the LATERAL key word is unnecessary in this example, but we use it for clarity.)

It is often particularly handy to LEFT JOIN to a LATERAL subquery, so that source rows will appear in the result even if the LATERAL subquery produces no rows for them. For example, if `get_product_names()` returns the names of products made by a manufacturer, but some manufacturers in our table currently produce no products, we could find out which ones those are like this:

```
SELECT m.name
FROM manufacturers m LEFT JOIN LATERAL get_product_names(m.id)
     pname ON true
WHERE pname IS NULL;
```

## 7.2.2. The WHERE Clause

The syntax of the WHERE clause is

```
WHERE search_condition
```

where *search\_condition* is any value expression (see Section 4.2) that returns a value of type boolean.

After the processing of the FROM clause is done, each row of the derived virtual table is checked against the search condition. If the result of the condition is true, the row is kept in the output table, otherwise (i.e., if the result is false or null) it is discarded. The search condition typically references at least one column of the table generated in the FROM clause; this is not required, but otherwise the WHERE clause will be fairly useless.

### Note

The join condition of an inner join can be written either in the WHERE clause or in the JOIN clause. For example, these table expressions are equivalent:



```
FROM a, b WHERE a.id = b.id AND b.val > 5
```

and:

```
FROM a INNER JOIN b ON (a.id = b.id) WHERE b.val > 5
```

or perhaps even:

```
FROM a NATURAL JOIN b WHERE b.val > 5
```

Which one of these you use is mainly a matter of style. The JOIN syntax in the FROM clause is probably not as portable to other SQL database management systems, even though it is in the SQL standard. For outer joins there is no choice: they must be done in the FROM clause. The ON or USING clause of an outer join is *not* equivalent to a WHERE condition, because it results in the addition of rows (for unmatched input rows) as well as the removal of rows in the final result.

Here are some examples of WHERE clauses:

```
SELECT ... FROM fdt WHERE c1 > 5
```

```
SELECT ... FROM fdt WHERE c1 IN (1, 2, 3)
```

```
SELECT ... FROM fdt WHERE c1 IN (SELECT c1 FROM t2)
```

```
SELECT ... FROM fdt WHERE c1 IN (SELECT c3 FROM t2 WHERE c2 =  
    fdt.c1 + 10)
```

```
SELECT ... FROM fdt WHERE c1 BETWEEN (SELECT c3 FROM t2 WHERE c2 =  
    fdt.c1 + 10) AND 100
```

```
SELECT ... FROM fdt WHERE EXISTS (SELECT c1 FROM t2 WHERE c2 >  
    fdt.c1)
```

`fdt` is the table derived in the FROM clause. Rows that do not meet the search condition of the WHERE clause are eliminated from `fdt`. Notice the use of scalar subqueries as value expressions. Just like any other query, the subqueries can employ complex table expressions. Notice also how `fdt` is referenced in the subqueries. Qualifying `c1` as `fdt.c1` is only necessary if `c1` is also the name of a column in the derived input table of the subquery. But qualifying the column name adds clarity even when it is not needed. This example shows how the column naming scope of an outer query extends into its inner queries.

### 7.2.3. The GROUP BY and HAVING Clauses

After passing the WHERE filter, the derived input table might be subject to grouping, using the GROUP BY clause, and elimination of group rows using the HAVING clause.

```
SELECT select_list  
FROM ...  
[WHERE ...]  
GROUP BY grouping_column_reference  
[, grouping_column_reference]...
```

The GROUP BY clause is used to group together those rows in a table that have the same values in all the columns listed. The order in which the columns are listed does not matter. The effect is to

combine each set of rows having common values into one group row that represents all rows in the group. This is done to eliminate redundancy in the output and/or compute aggregates that apply to these groups. For instance:

```
=> SELECT * FROM test1;
```

x	y
a	3
c	2
b	5
a	1

(4 rows)

```
=> SELECT x FROM test1 GROUP BY x;
```

x
a
b
c

(3 rows)

In the second query, we could not have written `SELECT * FROM test1 GROUP BY x`, because there is no single value for the column `y` that could be associated with each group. The grouped-by columns can be referenced in the select list since they have a single value in each group.

In general, if a table is grouped, columns that are not listed in `GROUP BY` cannot be referenced except in aggregate expressions. An example with aggregate expressions is:

```
=> SELECT x, sum(y) FROM test1 GROUP BY x;
```

x	sum
a	4
b	5
c	2

(3 rows)

Here `sum` is an aggregate function that computes a single value over the entire group. More information about the available aggregate functions can be found in Section 9.21.

### Tip

Grouping without aggregate expressions effectively calculates the set of distinct values in a column. This can also be achieved using the `DISTINCT` clause (see Section 7.3.3).

Here is another example: it calculates the total sales for each product (rather than the total sales of all products):

```
SELECT product_id, p.name, (sum(s.units) * p.price) AS sales
FROM products p LEFT JOIN sales s USING (product_id)
GROUP BY product_id, p.name, p.price;
```

In this example, the columns `product_id`, `p.name`, and `p.price` must be in the `GROUP BY` clause since they are referenced in the query select list (but see below). The column `s.units` does not have to be in the `GROUP BY` list since it is only used in an aggregate expression (`sum(...)`),

which represents the sales of a product. For each product, the query returns a summary row about all sales of the product.

If the products table is set up so that, say, `product_id` is the primary key, then it would be enough to group by `product_id` in the above example, since name and price would be *functionally dependent* on the product ID, and so there would be no ambiguity about which name and price value to return for each product ID group.

In strict SQL, `GROUP BY` can only group by columns of the source table but PostgreSQL extends this to also allow `GROUP BY` to group by columns in the select list. Grouping by value expressions instead of simple column names is also allowed.

If a table has been grouped using `GROUP BY`, but only certain groups are of interest, the `HAVING` clause can be used, much like a `WHERE` clause, to eliminate groups from the result. The syntax is:

```
SELECT select_list FROM ... [WHERE ...] GROUP BY ...
      HAVING boolean_expression
```

Expressions in the `HAVING` clause can refer both to grouped expressions and to ungrouped expressions (which necessarily involve an aggregate function).

Example:

```
=> SELECT x, sum(y) FROM test1 GROUP BY x HAVING sum(y) > 3;
```

```
x | sum
---+-----
a |    4
b |    5
(2 rows)
```

```
=> SELECT x, sum(y) FROM test1 GROUP BY x HAVING x < 'c';
```

```
x | sum
---+-----
a |    4
b |    5
(2 rows)
```

Again, a more realistic example:

```
SELECT product_id, p.name, (sum(s.units) * (p.price - p.cost)) AS
profit
FROM products p LEFT JOIN sales s USING (product_id)
WHERE s.date > CURRENT_DATE - INTERVAL '4 weeks'
GROUP BY product_id, p.name, p.price, p.cost
HAVING sum(p.price * s.units) > 5000;
```

In the example above, the `WHERE` clause is selecting rows by a column that is not grouped (the expression is only true for sales during the last four weeks), while the `HAVING` clause restricts the output to groups with total gross sales over 5000. Note that the aggregate expressions do not necessarily need to be the same in all parts of the query.

If a query contains aggregate function calls, but no `GROUP BY` clause, grouping still occurs: the result is a single group row (or perhaps no rows at all, if the single row is then eliminated by `HAVING`). The same is true if it contains a `HAVING` clause, even without any aggregate function calls or `GROUP BY` clause.

## 7.2.4. GROUPING SETS, CUBE, and ROLLUP

More complex grouping operations than those described above are possible using the concept of *grouping sets*. The data selected by the FROM and WHERE clauses is grouped separately by each specified grouping set, aggregates computed for each group just as for simple GROUP BY clauses, and then the results returned. For example:

```
=> SELECT * FROM items_sold;
```

brand	size	sales
Foo	L	10
Foo	M	20
Bar	M	15
Bar	L	5

(4 rows)

```
=> SELECT brand, size, sum(sales) FROM items_sold GROUP BY GROUPING
SETS ((brand), (size), ());
```

brand	size	sum
Foo		30
Bar		20
	L	15
	M	35
		50

(5 rows)

Each sublist of GROUPING SETS may specify zero or more columns or expressions and is interpreted the same way as though it were directly in the GROUP BY clause. An empty grouping set means that all rows are aggregated down to a single group (which is output even if no input rows were present), as described above for the case of aggregate functions with no GROUP BY clause.

References to the grouping columns or expressions are replaced by null values in result rows for grouping sets in which those columns do not appear. To distinguish which grouping a particular output row resulted from, see Table 9.63.

A shorthand notation is provided for specifying two common types of grouping set. A clause of the form

```
ROLLUP ( e1, e2, e3, ... )
```

represents the given list of expressions and all prefixes of the list including the empty list; thus it is equivalent to

```
GROUPING SETS (
  ( e1, e2, e3, ... ),
  ...
  ( e1, e2 ),
  ( e1 ),
  ( )
)
```

This is commonly used for analysis over hierarchical data; e.g., total salary by department, division, and company-wide total.

A clause of the form

CUBE ( e1, e2, ... )

represents the given list and all of its possible subsets (i.e., the power set). Thus

CUBE ( a, b, c )

is equivalent to

```
GROUPING SETS (
    ( a, b, c ),
    ( a, b   ),
    ( a,   c ),
    ( a     ),
    (   b, c ),
    (   b   ),
    (     c ),
    (     )
)
```

The individual elements of a CUBE or ROLLUP clause may be either individual expressions, or sublists of elements in parentheses. In the latter case, the sublists are treated as single units for the purposes of generating the individual grouping sets. For example:

CUBE ( (a, b), (c, d) )

is equivalent to

```
GROUPING SETS (
    ( a, b, c, d ),
    ( a, b       ),
    (       c, d ),
    (           )
)
```

and

ROLLUP ( a, (b, c), d )

is equivalent to

```
GROUPING SETS (
    ( a, b, c, d ),
    ( a, b, c   ),
    ( a        ),
    (          )
)
```

The CUBE and ROLLUP constructs can be used either directly in the GROUP BY clause, or nested inside a GROUPING SETS clause. If one GROUPING SETS clause is nested inside another, the effect is the same as if all the elements of the inner clause had been written directly in the outer clause.

If multiple grouping items are specified in a single GROUP BY clause, then the final list of grouping sets is the cross product of the individual items. For example:

```
GROUP BY a, CUBE (b, c), GROUPING SETS ((d), (e))
```

is equivalent to

```
GROUP BY GROUPING SETS (
    (a, b, c, d), (a, b, c, e),
    (a, b, d),    (a, b, e),
    (a, c, d),    (a, c, e),
    (a, d),       (a, e)
)
```

When specifying multiple grouping items together, the final set of grouping sets might contain duplicates. For example:

```
GROUP BY ROLLUP (a, b), ROLLUP (a, c)
```

is equivalent to

```
GROUP BY GROUPING SETS (
    (a, b, c),
    (a, b),
    (a, b),
    (a, c),
    (a),
    (a),
    (a, c),
    (a),
    ()
)
```

If these duplicates are undesirable, they can be removed using the **DISTINCT** clause directly on the **GROUP BY**. Therefore:

```
GROUP BY DISTINCT ROLLUP (a, b), ROLLUP (a, c)
```

is equivalent to

```
GROUP BY GROUPING SETS (
    (a, b, c),
    (a, b),
    (a, c),
    (a),
    ()
)
```

This is not the same as using **SELECT DISTINCT** because the output rows may still contain duplicates. If any of the ungrouped columns contains **NULL**, it will be indistinguishable from the **NULL** used when that same column is grouped.

### Note

The construct (a, b) is normally recognized in expressions as a row constructor. Within the **GROUP BY** clause, this does not apply at the top levels of expressions, and (a, b) is parsed

as a list of expressions as described above. If for some reason you *need* a row constructor in a grouping expression, use `ROW( a , b )`.

## 7.2.5. Window Function Processing

If the query contains any window functions (see Section 3.5, Section 9.22 and Section 4.2.8), these functions are evaluated after any grouping, aggregation, and HAVING filtering is performed. That is, if the query uses any aggregates, GROUP BY, or HAVING, then the rows seen by the window functions are the group rows instead of the original table rows from FROM/WHERE.

When multiple window functions are used, all the window functions having syntactically equivalent PARTITION BY and ORDER BY clauses in their window definitions are guaranteed to be evaluated in a single pass over the data. Therefore they will see the same sort ordering, even if the ORDER BY does not uniquely determine an ordering. However, no guarantees are made about the evaluation of functions having different PARTITION BY or ORDER BY specifications. (In such cases a sort step is typically required between the passes of window function evaluations, and the sort is not guaranteed to preserve ordering of rows that its ORDER BY sees as equivalent.)

Currently, window functions always require presorted data, and so the query output will be ordered according to one or another of the window functions' PARTITION BY/ORDER BY clauses. It is not recommended to rely on this, however. Use an explicit top-level ORDER BY clause if you want to be sure the results are sorted in a particular way.

## 7.3. Select Lists

As shown in the previous section, the table expression in the SELECT command constructs an intermediate virtual table by possibly combining tables, views, eliminating rows, grouping, etc. This table is finally passed on to processing by the *select list*. The select list determines which *columns* of the intermediate table are actually output.

### 7.3.1. Select-List Items

The simplest kind of select list is `*` which emits all columns that the table expression produces. Otherwise, a select list is a comma-separated list of value expressions (as defined in Section 4.2). For instance, it could be a list of column names:

```
SELECT a, b, c FROM ...
```

The columns names `a`, `b`, and `c` are either the actual names of the columns of tables referenced in the FROM clause, or the aliases given to them as explained in Section 7.2.1.2. The name space available in the select list is the same as in the WHERE clause, unless grouping is used, in which case it is the same as in the HAVING clause.

If more than one table has a column of the same name, the table name must also be given, as in:

```
SELECT tbl1.a, tbl2.a, tbl1.b FROM ...
```

When working with multiple tables, it can also be useful to ask for all the columns of a particular table:

```
SELECT tbl1.*, tbl2.a FROM ...
```

See Section 8.16.5 for more about the `table_name.*` notation.

If an arbitrary value expression is used in the select list, it conceptually adds a new virtual column to the returned table. The value expression is evaluated once for each result row, with the row's values

substituted for any column references. But the expressions in the select list do not have to reference any columns in the table expression of the FROM clause; they can be constant arithmetic expressions, for instance.

## 7.3.2. Column Labels

The entries in the select list can be assigned names for subsequent processing, such as for use in an ORDER BY clause or for display by the client application. For example:

```
SELECT a AS value, b + c AS sum FROM ...
```

If no output column name is specified using AS, the system assigns a default column name. For simple column references, this is the name of the referenced column. For function calls, this is the name of the function. For complex expressions, the system will generate a generic name.

The AS key word is usually optional, but in some cases where the desired column name matches a PostgreSQL key word, you must write AS or double-quote the column name in order to avoid ambiguity. (Appendix C shows which key words require AS to be used as a column label.) For example, FROM is one such key word, so this does not work:

```
SELECT a from, b + c AS sum FROM ...
```

but either of these do:

```
SELECT a AS from, b + c AS sum FROM ...
SELECT a "from", b + c AS sum FROM ...
```

For greatest safety against possible future key word additions, it is recommended that you always either write AS or double-quote the output column name.

### Note

The naming of output columns here is different from that done in the FROM clause (see Section 7.2.1.2). It is possible to rename the same column twice, but the name assigned in the select list is the one that will be passed on.

## 7.3.3. DISTINCT

After the select list has been processed, the result table can optionally be subject to the elimination of duplicate rows. The DISTINCT key word is written directly after SELECT to specify this:

```
SELECT DISTINCT select_list ...
```

(Instead of DISTINCT the key word ALL can be used to specify the default behavior of retaining all rows.)

Obviously, two rows are considered distinct if they differ in at least one column value. Null values are considered equal in this comparison.

Alternatively, an arbitrary expression can determine what rows are to be considered distinct:



```
SELECT DISTINCT ON (expression [, expression ...]) select_list ...
```

Here *expression* is an arbitrary value expression that is evaluated for all rows. A set of rows for which all the expressions are equal are considered duplicates, and only the first row of the set is kept in the output. Note that the “first row” of a set is unpredictable unless the query is sorted on enough columns to guarantee a unique ordering of the rows arriving at the DISTINCT filter. (DISTINCT ON processing occurs after ORDER BY sorting.)

The DISTINCT ON clause is not part of the SQL standard and is sometimes considered bad style because of the potentially indeterminate nature of its results. With judicious use of GROUP BY and subqueries in FROM, this construct can be avoided, but it is often the most convenient alternative.

## 7.4. Combining Queries (UNION, INTERSECT, EXCEPT)

The results of two queries can be combined using the set operations union, intersection, and difference. The syntax is

```
query1 UNION [ALL] query2
query1 INTERSECT [ALL] query2
query1 EXCEPT [ALL] query2
```

where *query1* and *query2* are queries that can use any of the features discussed up to this point.

UNION effectively appends the result of *query2* to the result of *query1* (although there is no guarantee that this is the order in which the rows are actually returned). Furthermore, it eliminates duplicate rows from its result, in the same way as DISTINCT, unless UNION ALL is used.

INTERSECT returns all rows that are both in the result of *query1* and in the result of *query2*. Duplicate rows are eliminated unless INTERSECT ALL is used.

EXCEPT returns all rows that are in the result of *query1* but not in the result of *query2*. (This is sometimes called the *difference* between two queries.) Again, duplicates are eliminated unless EXCEPT ALL is used.

In order to calculate the union, intersection, or difference of two queries, the two queries must be “union compatible”, which means that they return the same number of columns and the corresponding columns have compatible data types, as described in Section 10.5.

Set operations can be combined, for example

```
query1 UNION query2 EXCEPT query3
```

which is equivalent to

```
(query1 UNION query2) EXCEPT query3
```

As shown here, you can use parentheses to control the order of evaluation. Without parentheses, UNION and EXCEPT associate left-to-right, but INTERSECT binds more tightly than those two operators. Thus

```
query1 UNION query2 INTERSECT query3
```

means

```
query1 UNION (query2 INTERSECT query3)
```

You can also surround an individual *query* with parentheses. This is important if the *query* needs to use any of the clauses discussed in following sections, such as `LIMIT`. Without parentheses, you'll get a syntax error, or else the clause will be understood as applying to the output of the set operation rather than one of its inputs. For example,

```
SELECT a FROM b UNION SELECT x FROM y LIMIT 10
```

is accepted, but it means

```
(SELECT a FROM b UNION SELECT x FROM y) LIMIT 10
```

not

```
SELECT a FROM b UNION (SELECT x FROM y LIMIT 10)
```

## 7.5. Sorting Rows (`ORDER BY`)

After a query has produced an output table (after the select list has been processed) it can optionally be sorted. If sorting is not chosen, the rows will be returned in an unspecified order. The actual order in that case will depend on the scan and join plan types and the order on disk, but it must not be relied on. A particular output ordering can only be guaranteed if the sort step is explicitly chosen.

The `ORDER BY` clause specifies the sort order:

```
SELECT select_list
      FROM table_expression
      ORDER BY sort_expression1 [ASC | DESC] [NULLS { FIRST | LAST }]
             [, sort_expression2 [ASC | DESC] [NULLS { FIRST |
LAST }]] ...]
```

The sort expression(s) can be any expression that would be valid in the query's select list. An example is:

```
SELECT a, b FROM table1 ORDER BY a + b, c;
```

When more than one expression is specified, the later values are used to sort rows that are equal according to the earlier values. Each expression can be followed by an optional `ASC` or `DESC` keyword to set the sort direction to ascending or descending. `ASC` order is the default. Ascending order puts smaller values first, where “smaller” is defined in terms of the `<` operator. Similarly, descending order is determined with the `>` operator.<sup>1</sup>

The `NULLS FIRST` and `NULLS LAST` options can be used to determine whether nulls appear before or after non-null values in the sort ordering. By default, null values sort as if larger than any non-null value; that is, `NULLS FIRST` is the default for `DESC` order, and `NULLS LAST` otherwise.

Note that the ordering options are considered independently for each sort column. For example `ORDER BY x, y DESC` means `ORDER BY x ASC, y DESC`, which is not the same as `ORDER BY x DESC, y DESC`.

<sup>1</sup> Actually, PostgreSQL uses the *default B-tree operator class* for the expression's data type to determine the sort ordering for `ASC` and `DESC`. Conventionally, data types will be set up so that the `<` and `>` operators correspond to this sort ordering, but a user-defined data type's designer could choose to do something different.

A *sort\_expression* can also be the column label or number of an output column, as in:

```
SELECT a + b AS sum, c FROM table1 ORDER BY sum;
SELECT a, max(b) FROM table1 GROUP BY a ORDER BY 1;
```

both of which sort by the first output column. Note that an output column name has to stand alone, that is, it cannot be used in an expression — for example, this is *not* correct:

```
SELECT a + b AS sum, c FROM table1 ORDER BY sum + c;      --
wrong
```

This restriction is made to reduce ambiguity. There is still ambiguity if an `ORDER BY` item is a simple name that could match either an output column name or a column from the table expression. The output column is used in such cases. This would only cause confusion if you use `AS` to rename an output column to match some other table column's name.

`ORDER BY` can be applied to the result of a `UNION`, `INTERSECT`, or `EXCEPT` combination, but in this case it is only permitted to sort by output column names or numbers, not by expressions.

## 7.6. LIMIT and OFFSET

`LIMIT` and `OFFSET` allow you to retrieve just a portion of the rows that are generated by the rest of the query:

```
SELECT select_list
      FROM table_expression
      [ ORDER BY ... ]
      [ LIMIT { number | ALL } ] [ OFFSET number ]
```

If a limit count is given, no more than that many rows will be returned (but possibly fewer, if the query itself yields fewer rows). `LIMIT ALL` is the same as omitting the `LIMIT` clause, as is `LIMIT` with a `NULL` argument.

`OFFSET` says to skip that many rows before beginning to return rows. `OFFSET 0` is the same as omitting the `OFFSET` clause, as is `OFFSET` with a `NULL` argument.

If both `OFFSET` and `LIMIT` appear, then `OFFSET` rows are skipped before starting to count the `LIMIT` rows that are returned.

When using `LIMIT`, it is important to use an `ORDER BY` clause that constrains the result rows into a unique order. Otherwise you will get an unpredictable subset of the query's rows. You might be asking for the tenth through twentieth rows, but tenth through twentieth in what ordering? The ordering is unknown, unless you specified `ORDER BY`.

The query optimizer takes `LIMIT` into account when generating query plans, so you are very likely to get different plans (yielding different row orders) depending on what you give for `LIMIT` and `OFFSET`. Thus, using different `LIMIT/OFFSET` values to select different subsets of a query result *will give inconsistent results* unless you enforce a predictable result ordering with `ORDER BY`. This is not a bug; it is an inherent consequence of the fact that `SQL` does not promise to deliver the results of a query in any particular order unless `ORDER BY` is used to constrain the order.

The rows skipped by an `OFFSET` clause still have to be computed inside the server; therefore a large `OFFSET` might be inefficient.

## 7.7. VALUES Lists

VALUES provides a way to generate a “constant table” that can be used in a query without having to actually create and populate a table on-disk. The syntax is

```
VALUES ( expression [, ...] ) [, ...]
```

Each parenthesized list of expressions generates a row in the table. The lists must all have the same number of elements (i.e., the number of columns in the table), and corresponding entries in each list must have compatible data types. The actual data type assigned to each column of the result is determined using the same rules as for UNION (see Section 10.5).

As an example:

```
VALUES (1, 'one'), (2, 'two'), (3, 'three');
```

will return a table of two columns and three rows. It's effectively equivalent to:

```
SELECT 1 AS column1, 'one' AS column2
UNION ALL
SELECT 2, 'two'
UNION ALL
SELECT 3, 'three';
```

By default, PostgreSQL assigns the names `column1`, `column2`, etc. to the columns of a VALUES table. The column names are not specified by the SQL standard and different database systems do it differently, so it's usually better to override the default names with a table alias list, like this:

```
=> SELECT * FROM (VALUES (1, 'one'), (2, 'two'), (3, 'three')) AS t
   (num,letter);
 num | letter
-----+-----
    1 | one
    2 | two
    3 | three
(3 rows)
```

Syntactically, VALUES followed by expression lists is treated as equivalent to:

```
SELECT select_list FROM table_expression
```

and can appear anywhere a SELECT can. For example, you can use it as part of a UNION, or attach a *sort\_specification* (ORDER BY, LIMIT, and/or OFFSET) to it. VALUES is most commonly used as the data source in an INSERT command, and next most commonly as a subquery.

For more information see VALUES.

## 7.8. WITH Queries (Common Table Expressions)

WITH provides a way to write auxiliary statements for use in a larger query. These statements, which are often referred to as Common Table Expressions or CTEs, can be thought of as defining temporary tables that exist just for one query. Each auxiliary statement in a WITH clause can be a SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE; and the WITH clause itself is attached to a primary statement that can be a SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, or MERGE.

## 7.8.1. SELECT in WITH

The basic value of `SELECT` in `WITH` is to break down complicated queries into simpler parts. An example is:

```
WITH regional_sales AS (
    SELECT region, SUM(amount) AS total_sales
    FROM orders
    GROUP BY region
), top_regions AS (
    SELECT region
    FROM regional_sales
    WHERE total_sales > (SELECT SUM(total_sales)/10 FROM
regional_sales)
)
SELECT region,
       product,
       SUM(quantity) AS product_units,
       SUM(amount) AS product_sales
FROM orders
WHERE region IN (SELECT region FROM top_regions)
GROUP BY region, product;
```

which displays per-product sales totals in only the top sales regions. The `WITH` clause defines two auxiliary statements named `regional_sales` and `top_regions`, where the output of `regional_sales` is used in `top_regions` and the output of `top_regions` is used in the primary `SELECT` query. This example could have been written without `WITH`, but we'd have needed two levels of nested sub-`SELECT`s. It's a bit easier to follow this way.

## 7.8.2. Recursive Queries

The optional `RECURSIVE` modifier changes `WITH` from a mere syntactic convenience into a feature that accomplishes things not otherwise possible in standard SQL. Using `RECURSIVE`, a `WITH` query can refer to its own output. A very simple example is this query to sum the integers from 1 through 100:

```
WITH RECURSIVE t(n) AS (
    VALUES (1)
    UNION ALL
    SELECT n+1 FROM t WHERE n < 100
)
SELECT sum(n) FROM t;
```

The general form of a recursive `WITH` query is always a *non-recursive term*, then `UNION` (or `UNION ALL`), then a *recursive term*, where only the recursive term can contain a reference to the query's own output. Such a query is executed as follows:

### Recursive Query Evaluation

1. Evaluate the non-recursive term. For `UNION` (but not `UNION ALL`), discard duplicate rows. Include all remaining rows in the result of the recursive query, and also place them in a temporary *working table*.
2. So long as the working table is not empty, repeat these steps:
  - a. Evaluate the recursive term, substituting the current contents of the working table for the recursive self-reference. For `UNION` (but not `UNION ALL`), discard duplicate rows and

rows that duplicate any previous result row. Include all remaining rows in the result of the recursive query, and also place them in a temporary *intermediate table*.

- b. Replace the contents of the working table with the contents of the intermediate table, then empty the intermediate table.

### Note

While `RECURSIVE` allows queries to be specified recursively, internally such queries are evaluated iteratively.

In the example above, the working table has just a single row in each step, and it takes on the values from 1 through 100 in successive steps. In the 100th step, there is no output because of the `WHERE` clause, and so the query terminates.

Recursive queries are typically used to deal with hierarchical or tree-structured data. A useful example is this query to find all the direct and indirect sub-parts of a product, given only a table that shows immediate inclusions:

```
WITH RECURSIVE included_parts(sub_part, part, quantity) AS (
    SELECT sub_part, part, quantity FROM parts WHERE part =
    'our_product'
    UNION ALL
    SELECT p.sub_part, p.part, p.quantity * pr.quantity
    FROM included_parts pr, parts p
    WHERE p.part = pr.sub_part
)
SELECT sub_part, SUM(quantity) as total_quantity
FROM included_parts
GROUP BY sub_part
```

## 7.8.2.1. Search Order

When computing a tree traversal using a recursive query, you might want to order the results in either depth-first or breadth-first order. This can be done by computing an ordering column alongside the other data columns and using that to sort the results at the end. Note that this does not actually control in which order the query evaluation visits the rows; that is as always in SQL implementation-dependent. This approach merely provides a convenient way to order the results afterwards.

To create a depth-first order, we compute for each result row an array of rows that we have visited so far. For example, consider the following query that searches a table `tree` using a `link` field:

```
WITH RECURSIVE search_tree(id, link, data) AS (
    SELECT t.id, t.link, t.data
    FROM tree t
    UNION ALL
    SELECT t.id, t.link, t.data
    FROM tree t, search_tree st
    WHERE t.id = st.link
)
SELECT * FROM search_tree;
```

To add depth-first ordering information, you can write this:

```
WITH RECURSIVE search_tree(id, link, data, path) AS (
    SELECT t.id, t.link, t.data, ARRAY[t.id]
    FROM tree t
    UNION ALL
    SELECT t.id, t.link, t.data, path || t.id
    FROM tree t, search_tree st
    WHERE t.id = st.link
)
SELECT * FROM search_tree ORDER BY path;
```

In the general case where more than one field needs to be used to identify a row, use an array of rows. For example, if we needed to track fields f1 and f2:

```
WITH RECURSIVE search_tree(id, link, data, path) AS (
    SELECT t.id, t.link, t.data, ARRAY[ROW(t.f1, t.f2)]
    FROM tree t
    UNION ALL
    SELECT t.id, t.link, t.data, path || ROW(t.f1, t.f2)
    FROM tree t, search_tree st
    WHERE t.id = st.link
)
SELECT * FROM search_tree ORDER BY path;
```

### Tip

Omit the ROW( ) syntax in the common case where only one field needs to be tracked. This allows a simple array rather than a composite-type array to be used, gaining efficiency.

To create a breadth-first order, you can add a column that tracks the depth of the search, for example:

```
WITH RECURSIVE search_tree(id, link, data, depth) AS (
    SELECT t.id, t.link, t.data, 0
    FROM tree t
    UNION ALL
    SELECT t.id, t.link, t.data, depth + 1
    FROM tree t, search_tree st
    WHERE t.id = st.link
)
SELECT * FROM search_tree ORDER BY depth;
```

To get a stable sort, add data columns as secondary sorting columns.

### Tip

The recursive query evaluation algorithm produces its output in breadth-first search order. However, this is an implementation detail and it is perhaps unsound to rely on it. The order of the rows within each level is certainly undefined, so some explicit ordering might be desired in any case.

There is built-in syntax to compute a depth- or breadth-first sort column. For example:

```
WITH RECURSIVE search_tree(id, link, data) AS (
```

```

        SELECT t.id, t.link, t.data
        FROM tree t
    UNION ALL
        SELECT t.id, t.link, t.data
        FROM tree t, search_tree st
        WHERE t.id = st.link
    ) SEARCH DEPTH FIRST BY id SET ordercol
SELECT * FROM search_tree ORDER BY ordercol;

WITH RECURSIVE search_tree(id, link, data) AS (
    SELECT t.id, t.link, t.data
    FROM tree t
    UNION ALL
        SELECT t.id, t.link, t.data
        FROM tree t, search_tree st
        WHERE t.id = st.link
    ) SEARCH BREADTH FIRST BY id SET ordercol
SELECT * FROM search_tree ORDER BY ordercol;

```

This syntax is internally expanded to something similar to the above hand-written forms. The **SEARCH** clause specifies whether depth- or breadth first search is wanted, the list of columns to track for sorting, and a column name that will contain the result data that can be used for sorting. That column will implicitly be added to the output rows of the CTE.

### 7.8.2.2. Cycle Detection

When working with recursive queries it is important to be sure that the recursive part of the query will eventually return no tuples, or else the query will loop indefinitely. Sometimes, using **UNION** instead of **UNION ALL** can accomplish this by discarding rows that duplicate previous output rows. However, often a cycle does not involve output rows that are completely duplicate: it may be necessary to check just one or a few fields to see if the same point has been reached before. The standard method for handling such situations is to compute an array of the already-visited values. For example, consider again the following query that searches a table graph using a `link` field:

```

WITH RECURSIVE search_graph(id, link, data, depth) AS (
    SELECT g.id, g.link, g.data, 0
    FROM graph g
    UNION ALL
        SELECT g.id, g.link, g.data, sg.depth + 1
        FROM graph g, search_graph sg
        WHERE g.id = sg.link
    )
SELECT * FROM search_graph;

```

This query will loop if the link relationships contain cycles. Because we require a “depth” output, just changing **UNION ALL** to **UNION** would not eliminate the looping. Instead we need to recognize whether we have reached the same row again while following a particular path of links. We add two columns `is_cycle` and `path` to the loop-prone query:

```

WITH RECURSIVE search_graph(id, link, data, depth, is_cycle, path)
AS (
    SELECT g.id, g.link, g.data, 0,
        false,
        ARRAY[g.id]
    FROM graph g
    UNION ALL
        SELECT g.id, g.link, g.data, sg.depth + 1,

```



```

        g.id = ANY(path),
        path || g.id
    FROM graph g, search_graph sg
    WHERE g.id = sg.link AND NOT is_cycle
)
SELECT * FROM search_graph;

```

Aside from preventing cycles, the array value is often useful in its own right as representing the “path” taken to reach any particular row.

In the general case where more than one field needs to be checked to recognize a cycle, use an array of rows. For example, if we needed to compare fields f1 and f2:

```

WITH RECURSIVE search_graph(id, link, data, depth, is_cycle, path)
AS (
    SELECT g.id, g.link, g.data, 0,
        false,
        ARRAY[ROW(g.f1, g.f2)]
    FROM graph g
    UNION ALL
    SELECT g.id, g.link, g.data, sg.depth + 1,
        ROW(g.f1, g.f2) = ANY(path),
        path || ROW(g.f1, g.f2)
    FROM graph g, search_graph sg
    WHERE g.id = sg.link AND NOT is_cycle
)
SELECT * FROM search_graph;

```

### Tip

Omit the ROW() syntax in the common case where only one field needs to be checked to recognize a cycle. This allows a simple array rather than a composite-type array to be used, gaining efficiency.

There is built-in syntax to simplify cycle detection. The above query can also be written like this:

```

WITH RECURSIVE search_graph(id, link, data, depth) AS (
    SELECT g.id, g.link, g.data, 1
    FROM graph g
    UNION ALL
    SELECT g.id, g.link, g.data, sg.depth + 1
    FROM graph g, search_graph sg
    WHERE g.id = sg.link
) CYCLE id SET is_cycle USING path
SELECT * FROM search_graph;

```

and it will be internally rewritten to the above form. The CYCLE clause specifies first the list of columns to track for cycle detection, then a column name that will show whether a cycle has been detected, and finally the name of another column that will track the path. The cycle and path columns will implicitly be added to the output rows of the CTE.

### Tip

The cycle path column is computed in the same way as the depth-first ordering column show in the previous section. A query can have both a SEARCH and a CYCLE clause, but a depth-first

search specification and a cycle detection specification would create redundant computations, so it's more efficient to just use the `CYCLE` clause and order by the path column. If breadth-first ordering is wanted, then specifying both `SEARCH` and `CYCLE` can be useful.

A helpful trick for testing queries when you are not certain if they might loop is to place a `LIMIT` in the parent query. For example, this query would loop forever without the `LIMIT`:

```
WITH RECURSIVE t(n) AS (
    SELECT 1
    UNION ALL
    SELECT n+1 FROM t
)
SELECT n FROM t LIMIT 100;
```

This works because PostgreSQL's implementation evaluates only as many rows of a `WITH` query as are actually fetched by the parent query. Using this trick in production is not recommended, because other systems might work differently. Also, it usually won't work if you make the outer query sort the recursive query's results or join them to some other table, because in such cases the outer query will usually try to fetch all of the `WITH` query's output anyway.

### 7.8.3. Common Table Expression Materialization

A useful property of `WITH` queries is that they are normally evaluated only once per execution of the parent query, even if they are referred to more than once by the parent query or sibling `WITH` queries. Thus, expensive calculations that are needed in multiple places can be placed within a `WITH` query to avoid redundant work. Another possible application is to prevent unwanted multiple evaluations of functions with side-effects. However, the other side of this coin is that the optimizer is not able to push restrictions from the parent query down into a multiply-referenced `WITH` query, since that might affect all uses of the `WITH` query's output when it should affect only one. The multiply-referenced `WITH` query will be evaluated as written, without suppression of rows that the parent query might discard afterwards. (But, as mentioned above, evaluation might stop early if the reference(s) to the query demand only a limited number of rows.)

However, if a `WITH` query is non-recursive and side-effect-free (that is, it is a `SELECT` containing no volatile functions) then it can be folded into the parent query, allowing joint optimization of the two query levels. By default, this happens if the parent query references the `WITH` query just once, but not if it references the `WITH` query more than once. You can override that decision by specifying `MATERIALIZED` to force separate calculation of the `WITH` query, or by specifying `NOT MATERIALIZED` to force it to be merged into the parent query. The latter choice risks duplicate computation of the `WITH` query, but it can still give a net savings if each usage of the `WITH` query needs only a small part of the `WITH` query's full output.

A simple example of these rules is

```
WITH w AS (
    SELECT * FROM big_table
)
SELECT * FROM w WHERE key = 123;
```

This `WITH` query will be folded, producing the same execution plan as

```
SELECT * FROM big_table WHERE key = 123;
```

In particular, if there's an index on `key`, it will probably be used to fetch just the rows having `key = 123`. On the other hand, in

```
WITH w AS (
    SELECT * FROM big_table
)
SELECT * FROM w AS w1 JOIN w AS w2 ON w1.key = w2.ref
WHERE w2.key = 123;
```

the WITH query will be materialized, producing a temporary copy of `big_table` that is then joined with itself — without benefit of any index. This query will be executed much more efficiently if written as

```
WITH w AS NOT MATERIALIZED (
    SELECT * FROM big_table
)
SELECT * FROM w AS w1 JOIN w AS w2 ON w1.key = w2.ref
WHERE w2.key = 123;
```

so that the parent query's restrictions can be applied directly to scans of `big_table`.

An example where `NOT MATERIALIZED` could be undesirable is

```
WITH w AS (
    SELECT key, very_expensive_function(val) as f FROM some_table
)
SELECT * FROM w AS w1 JOIN w AS w2 ON w1.f = w2.f;
```

Here, materialization of the WITH query ensures that `very_expensive_function` is evaluated only once per table row, not twice.

The examples above only show WITH being used with SELECT, but it can be attached in the same way to INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, or MERGE. In each case it effectively provides temporary table(s) that can be referred to in the main command.

## 7.8.4. Data-Modifying Statements in WITH

You can use most data-modifying statements (INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE, but not MERGE) in WITH. This allows you to perform several different operations in the same query. An example is:

```
WITH moved_rows AS (
    DELETE FROM products
    WHERE
        "date" >= '2010-10-01' AND
        "date" < '2010-11-01'
    RETURNING *
)
INSERT INTO products_log
SELECT * FROM moved_rows;
```

This query effectively moves rows from `products` to `products_log`. The DELETE in WITH deletes the specified rows from `products`, returning their contents by means of its RETURNING clause; and then the primary query reads that output and inserts it into `products_log`.

A fine point of the above example is that the WITH clause is attached to the INSERT, not the sub-SELECT within the INSERT. This is necessary because data-modifying statements are only allowed in WITH clauses that are attached to the top-level statement. However, normal WITH visibility rules apply, so it is possible to refer to the WITH statement's output from the sub-SELECT.

Data-modifying statements in `WITH` usually have `RETURNING` clauses (see Section 6.4), as shown in the example above. It is the output of the `RETURNING` clause, *not* the target table of the data-modifying statement, that forms the temporary table that can be referred to by the rest of the query. If a data-modifying statement in `WITH` lacks a `RETURNING` clause, then it forms no temporary table and cannot be referred to in the rest of the query. Such a statement will be executed nonetheless. A not-particularly-useful example is:

```
WITH t AS (
    DELETE FROM foo
)
DELETE FROM bar;
```

This example would remove all rows from tables `foo` and `bar`. The number of affected rows reported to the client would only include rows removed from `bar`.

Recursive self-references in data-modifying statements are not allowed. In some cases it is possible to work around this limitation by referring to the output of a recursive `WITH`, for example:

```
WITH RECURSIVE included_parts(sub_part, part) AS (
    SELECT sub_part, part FROM parts WHERE part = 'our_product'
    UNION ALL
    SELECT p.sub_part, p.part
    FROM included_parts pr, parts p
    WHERE p.part = pr.sub_part
)
DELETE FROM parts
WHERE part IN (SELECT part FROM included_parts);
```

This query would remove all direct and indirect subparts of a product.

Data-modifying statements in `WITH` are executed exactly once, and always to completion, independently of whether the primary query reads all (or indeed any) of their output. Notice that this is different from the rule for `SELECT` in `WITH`: as stated in the previous section, execution of a `SELECT` is carried only as far as the primary query demands its output.

The sub-statements in `WITH` are executed concurrently with each other and with the main query. Therefore, when using data-modifying statements in `WITH`, the order in which the specified updates actually happen is unpredictable. All the statements are executed with the same *snapshot* (see Chapter 13), so they cannot “see” one another’s effects on the target tables. This alleviates the effects of the unpredictability of the actual order of row updates, and means that `RETURNING` data is the only way to communicate changes between different `WITH` sub-statements and the main query. An example of this is that in

```
WITH t AS (
    UPDATE products SET price = price * 1.05
    RETURNING *
)
SELECT * FROM products;
```

the outer `SELECT` would return the original prices before the action of the `UPDATE`, while in

```
WITH t AS (
    UPDATE products SET price = price * 1.05
    RETURNING *
)
SELECT * FROM t;
```

the outer `SELECT` would return the updated data.

Trying to update the same row twice in a single statement is not supported. Only one of the modifications takes place, but it is not easy (and sometimes not possible) to reliably predict which one. This also applies to deleting a row that was already updated in the same statement: only the update is performed. Therefore you should generally avoid trying to modify a single row twice in a single statement. In particular avoid writing `WITH` sub-statements that could affect the same rows changed by the main statement or a sibling sub-statement. The effects of such a statement will not be predictable.

At present, any table used as the target of a data-modifying statement in `WITH` must not have a conditional rule, nor an `ALSO` rule, nor an `INSTEAD` rule that expands to multiple statements.

---

# Chapter 8. Data Types

PostgreSQL has a rich set of native data types available to users. Users can add new types to PostgreSQL using the CREATE TYPE command.

Table 8.1 shows all the built-in general-purpose data types. Most of the alternative names listed in the “Aliases” column are the names used internally by PostgreSQL for historical reasons. In addition, some internally used or deprecated types are available, but are not listed here.

**Table 8.1. Data Types**

Name	Aliases	Description
bigint	int8	signed eight-byte integer
bigserial	serial8	autoincrementing eight-byte integer
bit [ (n) ]		fixed-length bit string
bit varying [ (n) ]	varbit [ (n) ]	variable-length bit string
boolean	bool	logical Boolean (true/false)
box		rectangular box on a plane
bytea		binary data (“byte array”)
character [ (n) ]	char [ (n) ]	fixed-length character string
character varying [ (n) ]	varchar [ (n) ]	variable-length character string
cidr		IPv4 or IPv6 network address
circle		circle on a plane
date		calendar date (year, month, day)
double precision	float8	double precision floating-point number (8 bytes)
inet		IPv4 or IPv6 host address
integer	int, int4	signed four-byte integer
interval [ <i>fields</i> ] [ (p) ]		time span
json		textual JSON data
jsonb		binary JSON data, decomposed
line		infinite line on a plane
lseg		line segment on a plane
macaddr		MAC (Media Access Control) address
macaddr8		MAC (Media Access Control) address (EUI-64 format)
money		currency amount
numeric [ (p, s) ]	decimal [ (p, s) ]	exact numeric of selectable precision
path		geometric path on a plane
pg_lsn		PostgreSQL Log Sequence Number
pg_snapshot		user-level transaction ID snapshot
point		geometric point on a plane

Name	Aliases	Description
<code>polygon</code>		closed geometric path on a plane
<code>real</code>	<code>float4</code>	single precision floating-point number (4 bytes)
<code>smallint</code>	<code>int2</code>	signed two-byte integer
<code>smallserial</code>	<code>serial2</code>	autoincrementing two-byte integer
<code>serial</code>	<code>serial4</code>	autoincrementing four-byte integer
<code>text</code>		variable-length character string
<code>time [ (p) ] [ without time zone ]</code>		time of day (no time zone)
<code>time [ (p) ] with time zone</code>	<code>timetz</code>	time of day, including time zone
<code>timestamp [ (p) ] [ without time zone ]</code>		date and time (no time zone)
<code>timestamp [ (p) ] with time zone</code>	<code>timestampz</code>	date and time, including time zone
<code>tsquery</code>		text search query
<code>tsvector</code>		text search document
<code>txid_snapshot</code>		user-level transaction ID snapshot (deprecated; see <code>pg_snapshot</code> )
<code>uuid</code>		universally unique identifier
<code>xml</code>		XML data

### Compatibility

The following types (or spellings thereof) are specified by SQL: `bigint`, `bit`, `bit varying`, `boolean`, `char`, `character varying`, `character`, `varchar`, `date`, `double precision`, `integer`, `interval`, `numeric`, `decimal`, `real`, `smallint`, `time` (with or without time zone), `timestamp` (with or without time zone), `xml`.

Each data type has an external representation determined by its input and output functions. Many of the built-in types have obvious external formats. However, several types are either unique to PostgreSQL, such as geometric paths, or have several possible formats, such as the date and time types. Some of the input and output functions are not invertible, i.e., the result of an output function might lose accuracy when compared to the original input.

## 8.1. Numeric Types

Numeric types consist of two-, four-, and eight-byte integers, four- and eight-byte floating-point numbers, and selectable-precision decimals. Table 8.2 lists the available types.

**Table 8.2. Numeric Types**

Name	Storage Size	Description	Range
<code>smallint</code>	2 bytes	small-range integer	-32768 to +32767
<code>integer</code>	4 bytes	typical choice for integer	-2147483648 to +2147483647
<code>bigint</code>	8 bytes	large-range integer	-9223372036854775808 to +9223372036854775807

Name	Storage Size	Description	Range
decimal	variable	user-specified precision, exact	up to 131072 digits before the decimal point; up to 16383 digits after the decimal point
numeric	variable	user-specified precision, exact	up to 131072 digits before the decimal point; up to 16383 digits after the decimal point
real	4 bytes	variable-precision, inexact	6 decimal digits precision
double precision	8 bytes	variable-precision, inexact	15 decimal digits precision
smallserial	2 bytes	small autoincrementing integer	1 to 32767
serial	4 bytes	autoincrementing integer	1 to 2147483647
bigserial	8 bytes	large autoincrementing integer	1 to 9223372036854775807

The syntax of constants for the numeric types is described in Section 4.1.2. The numeric types have a full set of corresponding arithmetic operators and functions. Refer to Chapter 9 for more information. The following sections describe the types in detail.

### 8.1.1. Integer Types

The types `smallint`, `integer`, and `bigint` store whole numbers, that is, numbers without fractional components, of various ranges. Attempts to store values outside of the allowed range will result in an error.

The type `integer` is the common choice, as it offers the best balance between range, storage size, and performance. The `smallint` type is generally only used if disk space is at a premium. The `bigint` type is designed to be used when the range of the `integer` type is insufficient.

SQL only specifies the integer types `integer` (or `int`), `smallint`, and `bigint`. The type names `int2`, `int4`, and `int8` are extensions, which are also used by some other SQL database systems.

### 8.1.2. Arbitrary Precision Numbers

The type `numeric` can store numbers with a very large number of digits. It is especially recommended for storing monetary amounts and other quantities where exactness is required. Calculations with `numeric` values yield exact results where possible, e.g., addition, subtraction, multiplication. However, calculations on `numeric` values are very slow compared to the integer types, or to the floating-point types described in the next section.

We use the following terms below: The *precision* of a `numeric` is the total count of significant digits in the whole number, that is, the number of digits to both sides of the decimal point. The *scale* of a `numeric` is the count of decimal digits in the fractional part, to the right of the decimal point. So the number 23.5141 has a precision of 6 and a scale of 4. Integers can be considered to have a scale of zero.

Both the maximum precision and the maximum scale of a `numeric` column can be configured. To declare a column of type `numeric` use the syntax:

```
NUMERIC(precision, scale)
```

The precision must be positive, while the scale may be positive or negative (see below). Alternatively:



`NUMERIC(precision)`

selects a scale of 0. Specifying:

`NUMERIC`

without any precision or scale creates an “unconstrained numeric” column in which numeric values of any length can be stored, up to the implementation limits. A column of this kind will not coerce input values to any particular scale, whereas `numeric` columns with a declared scale will coerce input values to that scale. (The SQL standard requires a default scale of 0, i.e., coercion to integer precision. We find this a bit useless. If you're concerned about portability, always specify the precision and scale explicitly.)

### Note

The maximum precision that can be explicitly specified in a numeric type declaration is 1000. An unconstrained `numeric` column is subject to the limits described in Table 8.2.

If the scale of a value to be stored is greater than the declared scale of the column, the system will round the value to the specified number of fractional digits. Then, if the number of digits to the left of the decimal point exceeds the declared precision minus the declared scale, an error is raised. For example, a column declared as

`NUMERIC(3, 1)`

will round values to 1 decimal place and can store values between -99.9 and 99.9, inclusive.

Beginning in PostgreSQL 15, it is allowed to declare a `numeric` column with a negative scale. Then values will be rounded to the left of the decimal point. The precision still represents the maximum number of non-rounded digits. Thus, a column declared as

`NUMERIC(2, -3)`

will round values to the nearest thousand and can store values between -99000 and 99000, inclusive. It is also allowed to declare a scale larger than the declared precision. Such a column can only hold fractional values, and it requires the number of zero digits just to the right of the decimal point to be at least the declared scale minus the declared precision. For example, a column declared as

`NUMERIC(3, 5)`

will round values to 5 decimal places and can store values between -0.00999 and 0.00999, inclusive.

### Note

PostgreSQL permits the scale in a `numeric` type declaration to be any value in the range -1000 to 1000. However, the SQL standard requires the scale to be in the range 0 to *precision*. Using scales outside that range may not be portable to other database systems.

Numeric values are physically stored without any extra leading or trailing zeroes. Thus, the declared precision and scale of a column are maximums, not fixed allocations. (In this sense the `numeric` type is more akin to `varchar(n)` than to `char(n)`.) The actual storage requirement is two bytes for each group of four decimal digits, plus three to eight bytes overhead.

In addition to ordinary numeric values, the `numeric` type has several special values:

```
Infinity
-Infinity
NaN
```

These are adapted from the IEEE 754 standard, and represent “infinity”, “negative infinity”, and “not-a-number”, respectively. When writing these values as constants in an SQL command, you must put quotes around them, for example `UPDATE table SET x = '-Infinity'`. On input, these strings are recognized in a case-insensitive manner. The infinity values can alternatively be spelled `inf` and `-inf`.

The infinity values behave as per mathematical expectations. For example, `Infinity` plus any finite value equals `Infinity`, as does `Infinity` plus `Infinity`; but `Infinity` minus `Infinity` yields `NaN` (not a number), because it has no well-defined interpretation. Note that an infinity can only be stored in an unconstrained `numeric` column, because it notionally exceeds any finite precision limit.

The `NaN` (not a number) value is used to represent undefined calculational results. In general, any operation with a `NaN` input yields another `NaN`. The only exception is when the operation's other inputs are such that the same output would be obtained if the `NaN` were to be replaced by any finite or infinite numeric value; then, that output value is used for `NaN` too. (An example of this principle is that `NaN` raised to the zero power yields one.)

### Note

In most implementations of the “not-a-number” concept, `NaN` is not considered equal to any other numeric value (including `NaN`). In order to allow `numeric` values to be sorted and used in tree-based indexes, PostgreSQL treats `NaN` values as equal, and greater than all non-`NaN` values.

The types `decimal` and `numeric` are equivalent. Both types are part of the SQL standard.

When rounding values, the `numeric` type rounds ties away from zero, while (on most machines) the `real` and `double precision` types round ties to the nearest even number. For example:

```
SELECT x,
       round(x::numeric) AS num_round,
       round(x::double precision) AS dbl_round
FROM generate_series(-3.5, 3.5, 1) as x;
```

x	num_round	dbl_round
-3.5	-4	-4
-2.5	-3	-2
-1.5	-2	-2
-0.5	-1	-0
0.5	1	0
1.5	2	2
2.5	3	2
3.5	4	4

(8 rows)

## 8.1.3. Floating-Point Types

The data types `real` and `double precision` are inexact, variable-precision numeric types. On all currently supported platforms, these types are implementations of IEEE Standard 754 for Binary

Floating-Point Arithmetic (single and double precision, respectively), to the extent that the underlying processor, operating system, and compiler support it.

Inexact means that some values cannot be converted exactly to the internal format and are stored as approximations, so that storing and retrieving a value might show slight discrepancies. Managing these errors and how they propagate through calculations is the subject of an entire branch of mathematics and computer science and will not be discussed here, except for the following points:

- If you require exact storage and calculations (such as for monetary amounts), use the `numeric` type instead.
- If you want to do complicated calculations with these types for anything important, especially if you rely on certain behavior in boundary cases (infinity, underflow), you should evaluate the implementation carefully.
- Comparing two floating-point values for equality might not always work as expected.

On all currently supported platforms, the `real` type has a range of around  $1\text{E}-37$  to  $1\text{E}+37$  with a precision of at least 6 decimal digits. The `double precision` type has a range of around  $1\text{E}-307$  to  $1\text{E}+308$  with a precision of at least 15 digits. Values that are too large or too small will cause an error. Rounding might take place if the precision of an input number is too high. Numbers too close to zero that are not representable as distinct from zero will cause an underflow error.

By default, floating point values are output in text form in their shortest precise decimal representation; the decimal value produced is closer to the true stored binary value than to any other value representable in the same binary precision. (However, the output value is currently never *exactly* midway between two representable values, in order to avoid a widespread bug where input routines do not properly respect the round-to-nearest-even rule.) This value will use at most 17 significant decimal digits for `float8` values, and at most 9 digits for `float4` values.

### Note

This shortest-precise output format is much faster to generate than the historical rounded format.

For compatibility with output generated by older versions of PostgreSQL, and to allow the output precision to be reduced, the `extra_float_digits` parameter can be used to select rounded decimal output instead. Setting a value of 0 restores the previous default of rounding the value to 6 (for `float4`) or 15 (for `float8`) significant decimal digits. Setting a negative value reduces the number of digits further; for example -2 would round output to 4 or 13 digits respectively.

Any value of `extra_float_digits` greater than 0 selects the shortest-precise format.

### Note

Applications that wanted precise values have historically had to set `extra_float_digits` to 3 to obtain them. For maximum compatibility between versions, they should continue to do so.

In addition to ordinary numeric values, the floating-point types have several special values:

`Infinity`  
`-Infinity`  
`NaN`

These represent the IEEE 754 special values “infinity”, “negative infinity”, and “not-a-number”, respectively. When writing these values as constants in an SQL command, you must put quotes around

them, for example `UPDATE table SET x = '-Infinity'`. On input, these strings are recognized in a case-insensitive manner. The infinity values can alternatively be spelled `inf` and `-inf`.

### Note

IEEE 754 specifies that NaN should not compare equal to any other floating-point value (including NaN). In order to allow floating-point values to be sorted and used in tree-based indexes, PostgreSQL treats NaN values as equal, and greater than all non-NaN values.

PostgreSQL also supports the SQL-standard notations `float` and `float(p)` for specifying inexact numeric types. Here, *p* specifies the minimum acceptable precision in *binary* digits. PostgreSQL accepts `float(1)` to `float(24)` as selecting the real type, while `float(25)` to `float(53)` select double precision. Values of *p* outside the allowed range draw an error. `float` with no precision specified is taken to mean double precision.

## 8.1.4. Serial Types

### Note

This section describes a PostgreSQL-specific way to create an autoincrementing column. Another way is to use the SQL-standard identity column feature, described at `CREATE TABLE`.

The data types `smallserial`, `serial` and `bigserial` are not true types, but merely a notational convenience for creating unique identifier columns (similar to the `AUTO_INCREMENT` property supported by some other databases). In the current implementation, specifying:

```
CREATE TABLE tablename (  
    colname SERIAL  
);
```

is equivalent to specifying:

```
CREATE SEQUENCE tablename_colname_seq AS integer;  
CREATE TABLE tablename (  
    colname integer NOT NULL DEFAULT  
        nextval('tablename_colname_seq')  
);  
ALTER SEQUENCE tablename_colname_seq OWNED BY tablename.colname;
```

Thus, we have created an integer column and arranged for its default values to be assigned from a sequence generator. A `NOT NULL` constraint is applied to ensure that a null value cannot be inserted. (In most cases you would also want to attach a `UNIQUE` or `PRIMARY KEY` constraint to prevent duplicate values from being inserted by accident, but this is not automatic.) Lastly, the sequence is marked as “owned by” the column, so that it will be dropped if the column or table is dropped.

### Note

Because `smallserial`, `serial` and `bigserial` are implemented using sequences, there may be “holes” or gaps in the sequence of values which appears in the column, even if no rows are ever deleted. A value allocated from the sequence is still “used up” even if a row containing that value is never successfully inserted into the table column. This may happen, for example, if the inserting transaction rolls back. See `nextval()` in Section 9.17 for details.

To insert the next value of the sequence into the `serial` column, specify that the `serial` column should be assigned its default value. This can be done either by excluding the column from the list of columns in the `INSERT` statement, or through the use of the `DEFAULT` key word.

The type names `serial` and `serial4` are equivalent: both create integer columns. The type names `bigserial` and `serial8` work the same way, except that they create a `bigint` column. `bigserial` should be used if you anticipate the use of more than  $2^{31}$  identifiers over the lifetime of the table. The type names `smallserial` and `serial2` also work the same way, except that they create a `smallint` column.

The sequence created for a `serial` column is automatically dropped when the owning column is dropped. You can drop the sequence without dropping the column, but this will force removal of the column default expression.

## 8.2. Monetary Types

The `money` type stores a currency amount with a fixed fractional precision; see Table 8.3. The fractional precision is determined by the database's `lc_monetary` setting. The range shown in the table assumes there are two fractional digits. Input is accepted in a variety of formats, including integer and floating-point literals, as well as typical currency formatting, such as `'$1,000.00'`. Output is generally in the latter form but depends on the locale.

**Table 8.3. Monetary Types**

Name	Storage Size	Description	Range
<code>money</code>	8 bytes	currency amount	-92233720368547758.08 to +92233720368547758.07

Since the output of this data type is locale-sensitive, it might not work to load money data into a database that has a different setting of `lc_monetary`. To avoid problems, before restoring a dump into a new database make sure `lc_monetary` has the same or equivalent value as in the database that was dumped.

Values of the `numeric`, `int`, and `bigint` data types can be cast to `money`. Conversion from the `real` and `double precision` data types can be done by casting to `numeric` first, for example:

```
SELECT '12.34'::float8::numeric::money;
```

However, this is not recommended. Floating point numbers should not be used to handle money due to the potential for rounding errors.

A `money` value can be cast to `numeric` without loss of precision. Conversion to other types could potentially lose precision, and must also be done in two stages:

```
SELECT '52093.89'::money::numeric::float8;
```

Division of a `money` value by an integer value is performed with truncation of the fractional part towards zero. To get a rounded result, divide by a floating-point value, or cast the `money` value to `numeric` before dividing and back to `money` afterwards. (The latter is preferable to avoid risking precision loss.) When a `money` value is divided by another `money` value, the result is `double precision` (i.e., a pure number, not money); the currency units cancel each other out in the division.

## 8.3. Character Types

**Table 8.4. Character Types**

Name	Description
<code>character varying(n)</code> , <code>varchar(n)</code>	variable-length with limit
<code>character(n)</code> , <code>char(n)</code> , <code>bpchar(n)</code>	fixed-length, blank-padded
<code>bpchar</code>	variable unlimited length, blank-trimmed
<code>text</code>	variable unlimited length

Table 8.4 shows the general-purpose character types available in PostgreSQL.

SQL defines two primary character types: `character varying(n)` and `character(n)`, where  $n$  is a positive integer. Both of these types can store strings up to  $n$  characters (not bytes) in length. An attempt to store a longer string into a column of these types will result in an error, unless the excess characters are all spaces, in which case the string will be truncated to the maximum length. (This somewhat bizarre exception is required by the SQL standard.) However, if one explicitly casts a value to `character varying(n)` or `character(n)`, then an over-length value will be truncated to  $n$  characters without raising an error. (This too is required by the SQL standard.) If the string to be stored is shorter than the declared length, values of type `character` will be space-padded; values of type `character varying` will simply store the shorter string.

In addition, PostgreSQL provides the `text` type, which stores strings of any length. Although the `text` type is not in the SQL standard, several other SQL database management systems have it as well. `text` is PostgreSQL's native string data type, in that most built-in functions operating on strings are declared to take or return `text` not `character varying`. For many purposes, `character varying` acts as though it were a domain over `text`.

The type name `varchar` is an alias for `character varying`, while `bpchar` (with length specifier) and `char` are aliases for `character`. The `varchar` and `char` aliases are defined in the SQL standard; `bpchar` is a PostgreSQL extension.

If specified, the length  $n$  must be greater than zero and cannot exceed 10,485,760. If `character varying` (or `varchar`) is used without length specifier, the type accepts strings of any length. If `bpchar` lacks a length specifier, it also accepts strings of any length, but trailing spaces are semantically insignificant. If `character` (or `char`) lacks a specifier, it is equivalent to `character(1)`.

Values of type `character` are physically padded with spaces to the specified width  $n$ , and are stored and displayed that way. However, trailing spaces are treated as semantically insignificant and disregarded when comparing two values of type `character`. In collations where whitespace is significant, this behavior can produce unexpected results; for example `SELECT 'a '::CHAR(2) collate "C" < E'a\n'::CHAR(2)` returns true, even though C locale would consider a space to be greater than a newline. Trailing spaces are removed when converting a `character` value to one of the other string types. Note that trailing spaces *are* semantically significant in `character varying` and `text` values, and when using pattern matching, that is `LIKE` and regular expressions.

The characters that can be stored in any of these data types are determined by the database character set, which is selected when the database is created. Regardless of the specific character set, the character with code zero (sometimes called NUL) cannot be stored. For more information refer to Section 24.3.

The storage requirement for a short string (up to 126 bytes) is 1 byte plus the actual string, which includes the space padding in the case of `character`. Longer strings have 4 bytes of overhead instead of 1. Long strings are compressed by the system automatically, so the physical requirement on disk might be less. Very long values are also stored in background tables so that they do not interfere with rapid access to shorter column values. In any case, the longest possible character string that can be stored is about 1 GB. (The maximum value that will be allowed for  $n$  in the data type declaration is less than that. It wouldn't be useful to change this because with multibyte character encodings the number of characters and bytes can be quite different. If you desire to store long strings with no specific upper limit, use `text` or `character varying` without a length specifier, rather than making up an arbitrary length limit.)

**Tip**

There is no performance difference among these three types, apart from increased storage space when using the blank-padded type, and a few extra CPU cycles to check the length when storing into a length-constrained column. While `character(n)` has performance advantages in some other database systems, there is no such advantage in PostgreSQL; in fact `character(n)` is usually the slowest of the three because of its additional storage costs. In most situations `text` or `character varying` should be used instead.

Refer to Section 4.1.2.1 for information about the syntax of string literals, and to Chapter 9 for information about available operators and functions.

**Example 8.1. Using the Character Types**

```
CREATE TABLE test1 (a character(4));
INSERT INTO test1 VALUES ('ok');
SELECT a, char_length(a) FROM test1; -- 1
```

a	char_length
ok	2

```
CREATE TABLE test2 (b varchar(5));
INSERT INTO test2 VALUES ('ok');
INSERT INTO test2 VALUES ('good');
INSERT INTO test2 VALUES ('too long');
ERROR: value too long for type character varying(5)
INSERT INTO test2 VALUES ('too long'::varchar(5)); -- explicit
truncation
SELECT b, char_length(b) FROM test2;
```

b	char_length
ok	2
good	5
too l	5

**1** The `char_length` function is discussed in Section 9.4.

There are two other fixed-length character types in PostgreSQL, shown in Table 8.5. These are not intended for general-purpose use, only for use in the internal system catalogs. The `name` type is used to store identifiers. Its length is currently defined as 64 bytes (63 usable characters plus terminator) but should be referenced using the constant `NAMEDATALEN` in C source code. The length is set at compile time (and is therefore adjustable for special uses); the default maximum length might change in a future release. The type `"char"` (note the quotes) is different from `char(1)` in that it only uses one byte of storage, and therefore can store only a single ASCII character. It is used in the system catalogs as a simplistic enumeration type.

**Table 8.5. Special Character Types**

Name	Storage Size	Description
"char"	1 byte	single-byte internal type

Name	Storage Size	Description
name	64 bytes	internal type for object names

## 8.4. Binary Data Types

The `bytea` data type allows storage of binary strings; see Table 8.6.

**Table 8.6. Binary Data Types**

Name	Storage Size	Description
bytea	1 or 4 bytes plus the actual binary string	variable-length binary string

A binary string is a sequence of octets (or bytes). Binary strings are distinguished from character strings in two ways. First, binary strings specifically allow storing octets of value zero and other “non-printable” octets (usually, octets outside the decimal range 32 to 126). Character strings disallow zero octets, and also disallow any other octet values and sequences of octet values that are invalid according to the database's selected character set encoding. Second, operations on binary strings process the actual bytes, whereas the processing of character strings depends on locale settings. In short, binary strings are appropriate for storing data that the programmer thinks of as “raw bytes”, whereas character strings are appropriate for storing text.

The `bytea` type supports two formats for input and output: “hex” format and PostgreSQL's historical “escape” format. Both of these are always accepted on input. The output format depends on the configuration parameter `bytea_output`; the default is hex. (Note that the hex format was introduced in PostgreSQL 9.0; earlier versions and some tools don't understand it.)

The SQL standard defines a different binary string type, called `BLOB` or `BINARY LARGE OBJECT`. The input format is different from `bytea`, but the provided functions and operators are mostly the same.

### 8.4.1. bytea Hex Format

The “hex” format encodes binary data as 2 hexadecimal digits per byte, most significant nibble first. The entire string is preceded by the sequence `\x` (to distinguish it from the escape format). In some contexts, the initial backslash may need to be escaped by doubling it (see Section 4.1.2.1). For input, the hexadecimal digits can be either upper or lower case, and whitespace is permitted between digit pairs (but not within a digit pair nor in the starting `\x` sequence). The hex format is compatible with a wide range of external applications and protocols, and it tends to be faster to convert than the escape format, so its use is preferred.

Example:

```
SET bytea_output = 'hex';

SELECT '\xDEADBEEF'::bytea;
-----
\xdeadbeef
```

### 8.4.2. bytea Escape Format

The “escape” format is the traditional PostgreSQL format for the `bytea` type. It takes the approach of representing a binary string as a sequence of ASCII characters, while converting those bytes that cannot be represented as an ASCII character into special escape sequences. If, from the point of view of the application, representing bytes as characters makes sense, then this representation can be convenient.



But in practice it is usually confusing because it fuzzes up the distinction between binary strings and character strings, and also the particular escape mechanism that was chosen is somewhat unwieldy. Therefore, this format should probably be avoided for most new applications.

When entering `bytea` values in escape format, octets of certain values *must* be escaped, while all octet values *can* be escaped. In general, to escape an octet, convert it into its three-digit octal value and precede it by a backslash. Backslash itself (octet decimal value 92) can alternatively be represented by double backslashes. Table 8.7 shows the characters that must be escaped, and gives the alternative escape sequences where applicable.

**Table 8.7. `bytea` Literal Escaped Octets**

Decimal Octet Value	Description	Escaped Input Representation	Example	Hex Representation
0	zero octet	'\000'	'\000'::bytea	\x00
39	single quote	'\'' or '\047'	'\''::bytea	\x27
92	backslash	'\\' or '\134'	'\\'::bytea	\x5c
0 to 31 and 127 to 255	“non-printable” octets	'\xxx' (octal value)	'\001'::bytea	\x01

The requirement to escape *non-printable* octets varies depending on locale settings. In some instances you can get away with leaving them unescaped.

The reason that single quotes must be doubled, as shown in Table 8.7, is that this is true for any string literal in an SQL command. The generic string-literal parser consumes the outermost single quotes and reduces any pair of single quotes to one data character. What the `bytea` input function sees is just one single quote, which it treats as a plain data character. However, the `bytea` input function treats backslashes as special, and the other behaviors shown in Table 8.7 are implemented by that function.

In some contexts, backslashes must be doubled compared to what is shown above, because the generic string-literal parser will also reduce pairs of backslashes to one data character; see Section 4.1.2.1.

`Bytea` octets are output in hex format by default. If you change `bytea_output` to `escape`, “non-printable” octets are converted to their equivalent three-digit octal value and preceded by one backslash. Most “printable” octets are output by their standard representation in the client character set, e.g.:

```
SET bytea_output = 'escape';

SELECT 'abc \153\154\155 \052\251\124'::bytea;
      bytea
-----
abc klm *\251T
```

The octet with decimal value 92 (backslash) is doubled in the output. Details are in Table 8.8.

**Table 8.8. `bytea` Output Escaped Octets**

Decimal Octet Value	Description	Escaped Output Representation	Example	Output Result
92	backslash	\\	'\134'::bytea	\\
0 to 31 and 127 to 255	“non-printable” octets	\xxx (octal value)	'\001'::bytea	\001
32 to 126	“printable” octets	client character set representation	'\176'::bytea	~

Depending on the front end to PostgreSQL you use, you might have additional work to do in terms of escaping and unescaping bytea strings. For example, you might also have to escape line feeds and carriage returns if your interface automatically translates these.

## 8.5. Date/Time Types

PostgreSQL supports the full set of SQL date and time types, shown in Table 8.9. The operations available on these data types are described in Section 9.9. Dates are counted according to the Gregorian calendar, even in years before that calendar was introduced (see Section B.6 for more information).

**Table 8.9. Date/Time Types**

Name	Storage Size	Description	Low Value	High Value	Resolution
timestamp [ (p) ] [ with- out time zone ]	8 bytes	both date and time (no time zone)	4713 BC	294276 AD	1 microsecond
timestamp [ (p) ] with time zone	8 bytes	both date and time, with time zone	4713 BC	294276 AD	1 microsecond
date	4 bytes	date (no time of day)	4713 BC	5874897 AD	1 day
time [ (p) ] [ with- out time zone ]	8 bytes	time of day (no date)	00:00:00	24:00:00	1 microsecond
time [ (p) ] with time zone	12 bytes	time of day (no date), with time zone	00:00:00+1559	24:00:00-1559	1 microsecond
interval [ fields ] [ (p) ]	16 bytes	time interval	-178000000 years	178000000 years	1 microsecond

### Note

The SQL standard requires that writing just `timestamp` be equivalent to `timestamp without time zone`, and PostgreSQL honors that behavior. `timestamp` is accepted as an abbreviation for `timestamp with time zone`; this is a PostgreSQL extension.

`time`, `timestamp`, and `interval` accept an optional precision value *p* which specifies the number of fractional digits retained in the seconds field. By default, there is no explicit bound on precision. The allowed range of *p* is from 0 to 6.

The `interval` type has an additional option, which is to restrict the set of stored fields by writing one of these phrases:

YEAR  
MONTH

DAY  
HOUR  
MINUTE  
SECOND  
YEAR TO MONTH  
DAY TO HOUR  
DAY TO MINUTE  
DAY TO SECOND  
HOUR TO MINUTE  
HOUR TO SECOND  
MINUTE TO SECOND

Note that if both *fields* and *p* are specified, the *fields* must include SECOND, since the precision applies only to the seconds.

The type `time with time zone` is defined by the SQL standard, but the definition exhibits properties which lead to questionable usefulness. In most cases, a combination of `date`, `time`, `timestamp without time zone`, and `timestamp with time zone` should provide a complete range of date/time functionality required by any application.

## 8.5.1. Date/Time Input

Date and time input is accepted in almost any reasonable format, including ISO 8601, SQL-compatible, traditional POSTGRES, and others. For some formats, ordering of day, month, and year in date input is ambiguous and there is support for specifying the expected ordering of these fields. Set the `DateStyle` parameter to `MDY` to select month-day-year interpretation, `DMY` to select day-month-year interpretation, or `YMD` to select year-month-day interpretation.

PostgreSQL is more flexible in handling date/time input than the SQL standard requires. See Appendix B for the exact parsing rules of date/time input and for the recognized text fields including months, days of the week, and time zones.

Remember that any date or time literal input needs to be enclosed in single quotes, like text strings. Refer to Section 4.1.2.7 for more information. SQL requires the following syntax

```
type [ (p) ] 'value'
```

where *p* is an optional precision specification giving the number of fractional digits in the seconds field. Precision can be specified for `time`, `timestamp`, and `interval` types, and can range from 0 to 6. If no precision is specified in a constant specification, it defaults to the precision of the literal value (but not more than 6 digits).

### 8.5.1.1. Dates

Table 8.10 shows some possible inputs for the date type.

**Table 8.10. Date Input**

Example	Description
1999-01-08	ISO 8601; January 8 in any mode (recommended format)
January 8, 1999	unambiguous in any <code>datestyle</code> input mode
1/8/1999	January 8 in <code>MDY</code> mode; August 1 in <code>DMY</code> mode
1/18/1999	January 18 in <code>MDY</code> mode; rejected in other modes
01/02/03	January 2, 2003 in <code>MDY</code> mode; February 1, 2003 in <code>DMY</code> mode; February 3, 2001 in <code>YMD</code> mode

Example	Description
1999-Jan-08	January 8 in any mode
Jan-08-1999	January 8 in any mode
08-Jan-1999	January 8 in any mode
99-Jan-08	January 8 in YMD mode, else error
08-Jan-99	January 8, except error in YMD mode
Jan-08-99	January 8, except error in YMD mode
19990108	ISO 8601; January 8, 1999 in any mode
990108	ISO 8601; January 8, 1999 in any mode
1999.008	year and day of year
J2451187	Julian date
January 8, 99 BC	year 99 BC

### 8.5.1.2. Times

The time-of-day types are `time [ (p) ]` without time zone and `time [ (p) ]` with time zone. `time` alone is equivalent to `time without time zone`.

Valid input for these types consists of a time of day followed by an optional time zone. (See Table 8.11 and Table 8.12.) If a time zone is specified in the input for `time without time zone`, it is silently ignored. You can also specify a date but it will be ignored, except when you use a time zone name that involves a daylight-savings rule, such as `America/New_York`. In this case specifying the date is required in order to determine whether standard or daylight-savings time applies. The appropriate time zone offset is recorded in the `time with time zone` value and is output as stored; it is not adjusted to the active time zone.

**Table 8.11. Time Input**

Example	Description
04:05:06.789	ISO 8601
04:05:06	ISO 8601
04:05	ISO 8601
040506	ISO 8601
04:05 AM	same as 04:05; AM does not affect value
04:05 PM	same as 16:05; input hour must be <= 12
04:05:06.789-8	ISO 8601, with time zone as UTC offset
04:05:06-08:00	ISO 8601, with time zone as UTC offset
04:05-08:00	ISO 8601, with time zone as UTC offset
040506-08	ISO 8601, with time zone as UTC offset
040506+0730	ISO 8601, with fractional-hour time zone as UTC offset
040506+07:30:00	UTC offset specified to seconds (not allowed in ISO 8601)

Example	Description
04:05:06 PST	time zone specified by abbreviation
2003-04-12 04:05:06 America/New_York	time zone specified by full name

**Table 8.12. Time Zone Input**

Example	Description
PST	Abbreviation (for Pacific Standard Time)
America/New_York	Full time zone name
PST8PDT	POSIX-style time zone specification
-8:00:00	UTC offset for PST
-8:00	UTC offset for PST (ISO 8601 extended format)
-800	UTC offset for PST (ISO 8601 basic format)
-8	UTC offset for PST (ISO 8601 basic format)
zulu	Military abbreviation for UTC
z	Short form of zulu (also in ISO 8601)

Refer to Section 8.5.3 for more information on how to specify time zones.

### 8.5.1.3. Time Stamps

Valid input for the time stamp types consists of the concatenation of a date and a time, followed by an optional time zone, followed by an optional AD or BC. (Alternatively, AD/BC can appear before the time zone, but this is not the preferred ordering.) Thus:

```
1999-01-08 04:05:06
```

and:

```
1999-01-08 04:05:06 -8:00
```

are valid values, which follow the ISO 8601 standard. In addition, the common format:

```
January 8 04:05:06 1999 PST
```

is supported.

The SQL standard differentiates `timestamp without time zone` and `timestamp with time zone` literals by the presence of a “+” or “-” symbol and time zone offset after the time. Hence, according to the standard,

```
TIMESTAMP '2004-10-19 10:23:54'
```

is a `timestamp without time zone`, while

```
TIMESTAMP '2004-10-19 10:23:54+02'
```

is a `timestamp with time zone`. PostgreSQL never examines the content of a literal string before determining its type, and therefore will treat both of the above as `timestamp without time zone`. To ensure that a literal is treated as `timestamp with time zone`, give it the correct explicit type:

```
TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE '2004-10-19 10:23:54+02'
```

In a literal that has been determined to be `timestamp without time zone`, PostgreSQL will silently ignore any time zone indication. That is, the resulting value is derived from the date/time fields in the input value, and is not adjusted for time zone.

For `timestamp with time zone`, the internally stored value is always in UTC (Universal Coordinated Time, traditionally known as Greenwich Mean Time, GMT). An input value that has an explicit time zone specified is converted to UTC using the appropriate offset for that time zone. If no time zone is stated in the input string, then it is assumed to be in the time zone indicated by the system's `TimeZone` parameter, and is converted to UTC using the offset for the `timezone` zone.

When a `timestamp with time zone` value is output, it is always converted from UTC to the current `timezone` zone, and displayed as local time in that zone. To see the time in another time zone, either change `timezone` or use the `AT TIME ZONE` construct (see Section 9.9.4).

Conversions between `timestamp without time zone` and `timestamp with time zone` normally assume that the `timestamp without time zone` value should be taken or given as `timezone` local time. A different time zone can be specified for the conversion using `AT TIME ZONE`.

#### 8.5.1.4. Special Values

PostgreSQL supports several special date/time input values for convenience, as shown in Table 8.13. The values `infinity` and `-infinity` are specially represented inside the system and will be displayed unchanged; but the others are simply notational shorthands that will be converted to ordinary date/time values when read. (In particular, `now` and related strings are converted to a specific time value as soon as they are read.) All of these values need to be enclosed in single quotes when used as constants in SQL commands.

**Table 8.13. Special Date/Time Inputs**

Input String	Valid Types	Description
<code>epoch</code>	<code>date</code> , <code>timestamp</code>	1970-01-01 00:00:00+00 (Unix system time zero)
<code>infinity</code>	<code>date</code> , <code>timestamp</code>	later than all other time stamps
<code>-infinity</code>	<code>date</code> , <code>timestamp</code>	earlier than all other time stamps
<code>now</code>	<code>date</code> , <code>time</code> , <code>timestamp</code>	current transaction's start time
<code>today</code>	<code>date</code> , <code>timestamp</code>	midnight (00:00) today
<code>tomorrow</code>	<code>date</code> , <code>timestamp</code>	midnight (00:00) tomorrow
<code>yesterday</code>	<code>date</code> , <code>timestamp</code>	midnight (00:00) yesterday
<code>allballs</code>	<code>time</code>	00:00:00.00 UTC

The following SQL-compatible functions can also be used to obtain the current time value for the corresponding data type: `CURRENT_DATE`, `CURRENT_TIME`, `CURRENT_TIMESTAMP`, `LOCALTIME`, `LOCALTIMESTAMP`. (See Section 9.9.5.) Note that these are SQL functions and are *not* recognized in data input strings.

#### Caution

While the input strings `now`, `today`, `tomorrow`, and `yesterday` are fine to use in interactive SQL commands, they can have surprising behavior when the command is saved to be executed later, for example in prepared statements, views, and function definitions. The string

can be converted to a specific time value that continues to be used long after it becomes stale. Use one of the SQL functions instead in such contexts. For example, `CURRENT_DATE + 1` is safer than `'tomorrow'::date`.

## 8.5.2. Date/Time Output

The output format of the date/time types can be set to one of the four styles ISO 8601, SQL (Ingres), traditional POSTGRES (Unix date format), or German. The default is the ISO format. (The SQL standard requires the use of the ISO 8601 format. The name of the “SQL” output format is a historical accident.) Table 8.14 shows examples of each output style. The output of the `date` and `time` types is generally only the date or time part in accordance with the given examples. However, the POSTGRES style outputs date-only values in ISO format.

**Table 8.14. Date/Time Output Styles**

Style Specification	Description	Example
ISO	ISO 8601, SQL standard	1997-12-17 07:37:16-08
SQL	traditional style	12/17/1997 07:37:16.00 PST
Postgres	original style	Wed Dec 17 07:37:16 1997 PST
German	regional style	17.12.1997 07:37:16.00 PST

### Note

ISO 8601 specifies the use of uppercase letter T to separate the date and time. PostgreSQL accepts that format on input, but on output it uses a space rather than T, as shown above. This is for readability and for consistency with RFC 3339<sup>1</sup> as well as some other database systems.

In the SQL and POSTGRES styles, day appears before month if DMY field ordering has been specified, otherwise month appears before day. (See Section 8.5.1 for how this setting also affects interpretation of input values.) Table 8.15 shows examples.

**Table 8.15. Date Order Conventions**

datestyle Setting	Input Ordering	Example Output
SQL, DMY	<i>day/month/year</i>	17/12/1997 15:37:16.00 CET
SQL, MDY	<i>month/day/year</i>	12/17/1997 07:37:16.00 PST
Postgres, DMY	<i>day/month/year</i>	Wed 17 Dec 07:37:16 1997 PST

In the ISO style, the time zone is always shown as a signed numeric offset from UTC, with positive sign used for zones east of Greenwich. The offset will be shown as *hh* (hours only) if it is an integral number of hours, else as *hh:mm* if it is an integral number of minutes, else as *hh:mm:ss*. (The third case is not possible with any modern time zone standard, but it can appear when working with timestamps that predate the adoption of standardized time zones.) In the other date styles, the time zone is shown as an alphabetic abbreviation if one is in common use in the current zone. Otherwise it appears as a signed numeric offset in ISO 8601 basic format (*hh* or *hhmm*).

The date/time style can be selected by the user using the `SET datestyle` command, the `DateStyle` parameter in the `postgresql.conf` configuration file, or the `PGDATESTYLE` environment variable on the server or client.

<sup>1</sup> <https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3339>

The formatting function `to_char` (see Section 9.8) is also available as a more flexible way to format date/time output.

### 8.5.3. Time Zones

Time zones, and time-zone conventions, are influenced by political decisions, not just earth geometry. Time zones around the world became somewhat standardized during the 1900s, but continue to be prone to arbitrary changes, particularly with respect to daylight-savings rules. PostgreSQL uses the widely-used IANA (Olson) time zone database for information about historical time zone rules. For times in the future, the assumption is that the latest known rules for a given time zone will continue to be observed indefinitely far into the future.

PostgreSQL endeavors to be compatible with the SQL standard definitions for typical usage. However, the SQL standard has an odd mix of date and time types and capabilities. Two obvious problems are:

- Although the `date` type cannot have an associated time zone, the `time` type can. Time zones in the real world have little meaning unless associated with a date as well as a time, since the offset can vary through the year with daylight-saving time boundaries.
- The default time zone is specified as a constant numeric offset from UTC. It is therefore impossible to adapt to daylight-saving time when doing date/time arithmetic across DST boundaries.

To address these difficulties, we recommend using date/time types that contain both date and time when using time zones. We do *not* recommend using the type `time with time zone` (though it is supported by PostgreSQL for legacy applications and for compliance with the SQL standard). PostgreSQL assumes your local time zone for any type containing only date or time.

All timezone-aware dates and times are stored internally in UTC. They are converted to local time in the zone specified by the `TimeZone` configuration parameter before being displayed to the client.

PostgreSQL allows you to specify time zones in three different forms:

- A full time zone name, for example `America/New_York`. The recognized time zone names are listed in the `pg_timezone_names` view (see Section 54.32). PostgreSQL uses the widely-used IANA time zone data for this purpose, so the same time zone names are also recognized by other software.
- A time zone abbreviation, for example `PST`. Such a specification merely defines a particular offset from UTC, in contrast to full time zone names which can imply a set of daylight savings transition rules as well. The recognized abbreviations are listed in the `pg_timezone_abbrevs` view (see Section 54.31). You cannot set the configuration parameters `TimeZone` or `log_timezone` to a time zone abbreviation, but you can use abbreviations in date/time input values and with the `AT TIME ZONE` operator.
- In addition to the timezone names and abbreviations, PostgreSQL will accept POSIX-style time zone specifications, as described in Section B.5. This option is not normally preferable to using a named time zone, but it may be necessary if no suitable IANA time zone entry is available.

In short, this is the difference between abbreviations and full names: abbreviations represent a specific offset from UTC, whereas many of the full names imply a local daylight-savings time rule, and so have two possible UTC offsets. As an example, `2014-06-04 12:00 America/New_York` represents noon local time in New York, which for this particular date was Eastern Daylight Time (UTC-4). So `2014-06-04 12:00 EDT` specifies that same time instant. But `2014-06-04 12:00 EST` specifies noon Eastern Standard Time (UTC-5), regardless of whether daylight savings was nominally in effect on that date.

To complicate matters, some jurisdictions have used the same timezone abbreviation to mean different UTC offsets at different times; for example, in Moscow `MSK` has meant UTC+3 in some years and UTC+4 in others. PostgreSQL interprets such abbreviations according to whatever they meant (or had



most recently meant) on the specified date; but, as with the `EST` example above, this is not necessarily the same as local civil time on that date.

In all cases, timezone names and abbreviations are recognized case-insensitively. (This is a change from PostgreSQL versions prior to 8.2, which were case-sensitive in some contexts but not others.)

Neither timezone names nor abbreviations are hard-wired into the server; they are obtained from configuration files stored under `.../share/timezone/` and `.../share/timezonesets/` of the installation directory (see Section B.4).

The `TimeZone` configuration parameter can be set in the file `postgresql.conf`, or in any of the other standard ways described in Chapter 20. There are also some special ways to set it:

- The SQL command `SET TIME ZONE` sets the time zone for the session. This is an alternative spelling of `SET TIMEZONE TO` with a more SQL-spec-compatible syntax.
- The `PGTZ` environment variable is used by libpq clients to send a `SET TIME ZONE` command to the server upon connection.

## 8.5.4. Interval Input

interval values can be written using the following verbose syntax:

```
[@] quantity unit [quantity unit...] [direction]
```

where *quantity* is a number (possibly signed); *unit* is microsecond, millisecond, second, minute, hour, day, week, month, year, decade, century, millennium, or abbreviations or plurals of these units; *direction* can be `ago` or empty. The at sign (`@`) is optional noise. The amounts of the different units are implicitly added with appropriate sign accounting. `ago` negates all the fields. This syntax is also used for interval output, if `IntervalStyle` is set to `postgres_verbose`.

Quantities of days, hours, minutes, and seconds can be specified without explicit unit markings. For example, `'1 12:59:10'` is read the same as `'1 day 12 hours 59 min 10 sec'`. Also, a combination of years and months can be specified with a dash; for example `'200-10'` is read the same as `'200 years 10 months'`. (These shorter forms are in fact the only ones allowed by the SQL standard, and are used for output when `IntervalStyle` is set to `sql_standard`.)

Interval values can also be written as ISO 8601 time intervals, using either the “format with designators” of the standard's section 4.4.3.2 or the “alternative format” of section 4.4.3.3. The format with designators looks like this:

```
P quantity unit [ quantity unit ...] [ T [ quantity unit ...]]
```

The string must start with a `P`, and may include a `T` that introduces the time-of-day units. The available unit abbreviations are given in Table 8.16. Units may be omitted, and may be specified in any order, but units smaller than a day must appear after `T`. In particular, the meaning of `M` depends on whether it is before or after `T`.

**Table 8.16. ISO 8601 Interval Unit Abbreviations**

Abbreviation	Meaning
Y	Years
M	Months (in the date part)
W	Weeks
D	Days
H	Hours

Abbreviation	Meaning
M	Minutes (in the time part)
S	Seconds

In the alternative format:

`P [ years-months-days ] [ T hours:minutes:seconds ]`

the string must begin with P, and a T separates the date and time parts of the interval. The values are given as numbers similar to ISO 8601 dates.

When writing an interval constant with a *fields* specification, or when assigning a string to an interval column that was defined with a *fields* specification, the interpretation of unmarked quantities depends on the *fields*. For example `INTERVAL '1' YEAR` is read as 1 year, whereas `INTERVAL '1'` means 1 second. Also, field values “to the right” of the least significant field allowed by the *fields* specification are silently discarded. For example, writing `INTERVAL '1 day 2:03:04' HOUR TO MINUTE` results in dropping the seconds field, but not the day field.

According to the SQL standard all fields of an interval value must have the same sign, so a leading negative sign applies to all fields; for example the negative sign in the interval literal `'-1 2:03:04'` applies to both the days and hour/minute/second parts. PostgreSQL allows the fields to have different signs, and traditionally treats each field in the textual representation as independently signed, so that the hour/minute/second part is considered positive in this example. If `IntervalStyle` is set to `sql_standard` then a leading sign is considered to apply to all fields (but only if no additional signs appear). Otherwise the traditional PostgreSQL interpretation is used. To avoid ambiguity, it's recommended to attach an explicit sign to each field if any field is negative.

Field values can have fractional parts: for example, `'1.5 weeks'` or `'01:02:03.45'`. However, because interval internally stores only three integer units (months, days, microseconds), fractional units must be spilled to smaller units. Fractional parts of units greater than months are rounded to be an integer number of months, e.g. `'1.5 years'` becomes `'1 year 6 mons'`. Fractional parts of weeks and days are computed to be an integer number of days and microseconds, assuming 30 days per month and 24 hours per day, e.g., `'1.75 months'` becomes `1 mon 22 days 12:00:00`. Only seconds will ever be shown as fractional on output.

Table 8.17 shows some examples of valid interval input.

**Table 8.17. Interval Input**

Example	Description
<code>1-2</code>	SQL standard format: 1 year 2 months
<code>3 4:05:06</code>	SQL standard format: 3 days 4 hours 5 minutes 6 seconds
<code>1 year 2 months 3 days 4 hours 5 minutes 6 seconds</code>	Traditional Postgres format: 1 year 2 months 3 days 4 hours 5 minutes 6 seconds
<code>P1Y2M3DT4H5M6S</code>	ISO 8601 “format with designators”: same meaning as above
<code>P0001-02-03T04:05:06</code>	ISO 8601 “alternative format”: same meaning as above

Internally interval values are stored as months, days, and microseconds. This is done because the number of days in a month varies, and a day can have 23 or 25 hours if a daylight savings time adjustment is involved. The months and days fields are integers while the microseconds field can store fractional seconds. Because intervals are usually created from constant strings or `timestamp` subtraction, this storage method works well in most cases, but can cause unexpected results:

```

SELECT EXTRACT(hours from '80 minutes'::interval);
date_part
-----
1

SELECT EXTRACT(days from '80 hours'::interval);
date_part
-----
0

```

Functions `justify_days` and `justify_hours` are available for adjusting days and hours that overflow their normal ranges.

## 8.5.5. Interval Output

The output format of the interval type can be set to one of the four styles `sql_standard`, `postgres`, `postgres_verbose`, or `iso_8601`, using the command `SET intervalstyle`. The default is the `postgres` format. Table 8.18 shows examples of each output style.

The `sql_standard` style produces output that conforms to the SQL standard's specification for interval literal strings, if the interval value meets the standard's restrictions (either year-month only or day-time only, with no mixing of positive and negative components). Otherwise the output looks like a standard year-month literal string followed by a day-time literal string, with explicit signs added to disambiguate mixed-sign intervals.

The output of the `postgres` style matches the output of PostgreSQL releases prior to 8.4 when the `DateStyle` parameter was set to `ISO`.

The output of the `postgres_verbose` style matches the output of PostgreSQL releases prior to 8.4 when the `DateStyle` parameter was set to non-ISO output.

The output of the `iso_8601` style matches the “format with designators” described in section 4.4.3.2 of the ISO 8601 standard.

**Table 8.18. Interval Output Style Examples**

Style Specification	Year-Month Interval	Day-Time Interval	Mixed Interval
<code>sql_standard</code>	1-2	3 4:05:06	-1-2 +3 -4:05:06
<code>postgres</code>	1 year 2 mons	3 days 04:05:06	-1 year -2 mons +3 days -04:05:06
<code>postgres_verbose</code>	@ 1 year 2 mons	@ 3 days 4 hours 5 mins 6 secs	@ 1 year 2 mons -3 days 4 hours 5 mins 6 secs ago
<code>iso_8601</code>	P1Y2M	P3DT4H5M6S	P-1Y-2M3DT-4H-5M-6S

## 8.6. Boolean Type

PostgreSQL provides the standard SQL type `boolean`; see Table 8.19. The `boolean` type can have several states: “true”, “false”, and a third state, “unknown”, which is represented by the SQL null value.

**Table 8.19. Boolean Data Type**

Name	Storage Size	Description
<code>boolean</code>	1 byte	state of true or false

Boolean constants can be represented in SQL queries by the SQL key words `TRUE`, `FALSE`, and `NULL`.

The datatype input function for type `boolean` accepts these string representations for the “true” state:

```
true
yes
on
1
```

and these representations for the “false” state:

```
false
no
off
0
```

Unique prefixes of these strings are also accepted, for example `t` or `n`. Leading or trailing whitespace is ignored, and case does not matter.

The datatype output function for type `boolean` always emits either `t` or `f`, as shown in Example 8.2.

### Example 8.2. Using the `boolean` Type

```
CREATE TABLE test1 (a boolean, b text);
INSERT INTO test1 VALUES (TRUE, 'sic est');
INSERT INTO test1 VALUES (FALSE, 'non est');
SELECT * FROM test1;
 a |      b
---+-----
 t | sic est
 f | non est

SELECT * FROM test1 WHERE a;
 a |      b
---+-----
 t | sic est
```

The key words `TRUE` and `FALSE` are the preferred (SQL-compliant) method for writing Boolean constants in SQL queries. But you can also use the string representations by following the generic string-literal constant syntax described in Section 4.1.2.7, for example `'yes'::boolean`.

Note that the parser automatically understands that `TRUE` and `FALSE` are of type `boolean`, but this is not so for `NULL` because that can have any type. So in some contexts you might have to cast `NULL` to `boolean` explicitly, for example `NULL::boolean`. Conversely, the cast can be omitted from a string-literal Boolean value in contexts where the parser can deduce that the literal must be of type `boolean`.

## 8.7. Enumerated Types

Enumerated (`enum`) types are data types that comprise a static, ordered set of values. They are equivalent to the `enum` types supported in a number of programming languages. An example of an `enum` type might be the days of the week, or a set of status values for a piece of data.

### 8.7.1. Declaration of Enumerated Types

`Enum` types are created using the `CREATE TYPE` command, for example:

```
CREATE TYPE mood AS ENUM ('sad', 'ok', 'happy');
```

Once created, the enum type can be used in table and function definitions much like any other type:

```
CREATE TYPE mood AS ENUM ('sad', 'ok', 'happy');
CREATE TABLE person (
    name text,
    current_mood mood
);
INSERT INTO person VALUES ('Moe', 'happy');
SELECT * FROM person WHERE current_mood = 'happy';
name | current_mood
-----+-----
Moe  | happy
(1 row)
```

## 8.7.2. Ordering

The ordering of the values in an enum type is the order in which the values were listed when the type was created. All standard comparison operators and related aggregate functions are supported for enums. For example:

```
INSERT INTO person VALUES ('Larry', 'sad');
INSERT INTO person VALUES ('Curly', 'ok');
SELECT * FROM person WHERE current_mood > 'sad';
name | current_mood
-----+-----
Moe  | happy
Curly | ok
(2 rows)

SELECT * FROM person WHERE current_mood > 'sad' ORDER BY
current_mood;
name | current_mood
-----+-----
Curly | ok
Moe  | happy
(2 rows)

SELECT name
FROM person
WHERE current_mood = (SELECT MIN(current_mood) FROM person);
name
-----
Larry
(1 row)
```

## 8.7.3. Type Safety

Each enumerated data type is separate and cannot be compared with other enumerated types. See this example:

```
CREATE TYPE happiness AS ENUM ('happy', 'very happy', 'ecstatic');
CREATE TABLE holidays (
    num_weeks integer,
```

```

        happiness happiness
    );
INSERT INTO holidays(num_weeks,happiness) VALUES (4, 'happy');
INSERT INTO holidays(num_weeks,happiness) VALUES (6, 'very happy');
INSERT INTO holidays(num_weeks,happiness) VALUES (8, 'ecstatic');
INSERT INTO holidays(num_weeks,happiness) VALUES (2, 'sad');
ERROR:  invalid input value for enum happiness: "sad"
SELECT person.name, holidays.num_weeks FROM person, holidays
    WHERE person.current_mood = holidays.happiness;
ERROR:  operator does not exist: mood = happiness

```

If you really need to do something like that, you can either write a custom operator or add explicit casts to your query:

```

SELECT person.name, holidays.num_weeks FROM person, holidays
    WHERE person.current_mood::text = holidays.happiness::text;
 name | num_weeks
-----+-----
 Moe  |          4
(1 row)

```

## 8.7.4. Implementation Details

Enum labels are case sensitive, so 'happy' is not the same as 'HAPPY'. White space in the labels is significant too.

Although enum types are primarily intended for static sets of values, there is support for adding new values to an existing enum type, and for renaming values (see `ALTER TYPE`). Existing values cannot be removed from an enum type, nor can the sort ordering of such values be changed, short of dropping and re-creating the enum type.

An enum value occupies four bytes on disk. The length of an enum value's textual label is limited by the `NAMEDATALEN` setting compiled into PostgreSQL; in standard builds this means at most 63 bytes.

The translations from internal enum values to textual labels are kept in the system catalog `pg_enum`. Querying this catalog directly can be useful.

## 8.8. Geometric Types

Geometric data types represent two-dimensional spatial objects. Table 8.20 shows the geometric types available in PostgreSQL.

**Table 8.20. Geometric Types**

Name	Storage Size	Description	Representation
point	16 bytes	Point on a plane	(x,y)
line	32 bytes	Infinite line	{A,B,C}
lseg	32 bytes	Finite line segment	((x1,y1),(x2,y2))
box	32 bytes	Rectangular box	((x1,y1),(x2,y2))
path	16+16n bytes	Closed path (similar to polygon)	((x1,y1),...)
path	16+16n bytes	Open path	[(x1,y1),...]
polygon	40+16n bytes	Polygon (similar to closed path)	((x1,y1),...)

Name	Storage Size	Description	Representation
circle	24 bytes	Circle	<(x,y),r> (center point and radius)

A rich set of functions and operators is available to perform various geometric operations such as scaling, translation, rotation, and determining intersections. They are explained in Section 9.11.

## 8.8.1. Points

Points are the fundamental two-dimensional building block for geometric types. Values of type `point` are specified using either of the following syntaxes:

```
( x , y )
x , y
```

where  $x$  and  $y$  are the respective coordinates, as floating-point numbers.

Points are output using the first syntax.

## 8.8.2. Lines

Lines are represented by the linear equation  $Ax + By + C = 0$ , where  $A$  and  $B$  are not both zero. Values of type `line` are input and output in the following form:

```
{ A, B, C }
```

Alternatively, any of the following forms can be used for input:

```
[ ( x1 , y1 ) , ( x2 , y2 ) ]
( ( x1 , y1 ) , ( x2 , y2 ) )
( x1 , y1 ) , ( x2 , y2 )
x1 , y1 , x2 , y2
```

where  $(x1, y1)$  and  $(x2, y2)$  are two different points on the line.

## 8.8.3. Line Segments

Line segments are represented by pairs of points that are the endpoints of the segment. Values of type `lseg` are specified using any of the following syntaxes:

```
[ ( x1 , y1 ) , ( x2 , y2 ) ]
( ( x1 , y1 ) , ( x2 , y2 ) )
( x1 , y1 ) , ( x2 , y2 )
x1 , y1 , x2 , y2
```

where  $(x1, y1)$  and  $(x2, y2)$  are the end points of the line segment.

Line segments are output using the first syntax.

## 8.8.4. Boxes

Boxes are represented by pairs of points that are opposite corners of the box. Values of type `box` are specified using any of the following syntaxes:

```
( ( x1 , y1 ) , ( x2 , y2 ) )
( x1 , y1 ) , ( x2 , y2 )
x1 , y1 , x2 , y2
```

where  $(x1, y1)$  and  $(x2, y2)$  are any two opposite corners of the box.

Boxes are output using the second syntax.

Any two opposite corners can be supplied on input, but the values will be reordered as needed to store the upper right and lower left corners, in that order.

## 8.8.5. Paths

Paths are represented by lists of connected points. Paths can be *open*, where the first and last points in the list are considered not connected, or *closed*, where the first and last points are considered connected.

Values of type `path` are specified using any of the following syntaxes:

```
[ ( x1 , y1 ) , ... , ( xn , yn ) ]
( ( x1 , y1 ) , ... , ( xn , yn ) )
( x1 , y1 ) , ... , ( xn , yn )
( x1 , y1 , ... , xn , yn )
x1 , y1 , ... , xn , yn
```

where the points are the end points of the line segments comprising the path. Square brackets `[ ]` indicate an open path, while parentheses `( )` indicate a closed path. When the outermost parentheses are omitted, as in the third through fifth syntaxes, a closed path is assumed.

Paths are output using the first or second syntax, as appropriate.

## 8.8.6. Polygons

Polygons are represented by lists of points (the vertexes of the polygon). Polygons are very similar to closed paths; the essential difference is that a polygon is considered to include the area within it, while a path is not.

Values of type `polygon` are specified using any of the following syntaxes:

```
( ( x1 , y1 ) , ... , ( xn , yn ) )
( x1 , y1 ) , ... , ( xn , yn )
( x1 , y1 , ... , xn , yn )
x1 , y1 , ... , xn , yn
```

where the points are the end points of the line segments comprising the boundary of the polygon.

Polygons are output using the first syntax.

## 8.8.7. Circles

Circles are represented by a center point and radius. Values of type `circle` are specified using any of the following syntaxes:

```
< ( x , y ) , r >
( ( x , y ) , r )
( x , y ) , r
x , y , r
```



where  $(x, y)$  is the center point and  $r$  is the radius of the circle.

Circles are output using the first syntax.

## 8.9. Network Address Types

PostgreSQL offers data types to store IPv4, IPv6, and MAC addresses, as shown in Table 8.21. It is better to use these types instead of plain text types to store network addresses, because these types offer input error checking and specialized operators and functions (see Section 9.12).

**Table 8.21. Network Address Types**

Name	Storage Size	Description
<code>cidr</code>	7 or 19 bytes	IPv4 and IPv6 networks
<code>inet</code>	7 or 19 bytes	IPv4 and IPv6 hosts and networks
<code>macaddr</code>	6 bytes	MAC addresses
<code>macaddr8</code>	8 bytes	MAC addresses (EUI-64 format)

When sorting `inet` or `cidr` data types, IPv4 addresses will always sort before IPv6 addresses, including IPv4 addresses encapsulated or mapped to IPv6 addresses, such as `::10.2.3.4` or `::ffff:10.4.3.2`.

### 8.9.1. `inet`

The `inet` type holds an IPv4 or IPv6 host address, and optionally its subnet, all in one field. The subnet is represented by the number of network address bits present in the host address (the “netmask”). If the netmask is 32 and the address is IPv4, then the value does not indicate a subnet, only a single host. In IPv6, the address length is 128 bits, so 128 bits specify a unique host address. Note that if you want to accept only networks, you should use the `cidr` type rather than `inet`.

The input format for this type is `address/y` where `address` is an IPv4 or IPv6 address and `y` is the number of bits in the netmask. If the `/y` portion is omitted, the netmask is taken to be 32 for IPv4 or 128 for IPv6, so the value represents just a single host. On display, the `/y` portion is suppressed if the netmask specifies a single host.

### 8.9.2. `cidr`

The `cidr` type holds an IPv4 or IPv6 network specification. Input and output formats follow Classless Internet Domain Routing conventions. The format for specifying networks is `address/y` where `address` is the network's lowest address represented as an IPv4 or IPv6 address, and `y` is the number of bits in the netmask. If `y` is omitted, it is calculated using assumptions from the older classful network numbering system, except it will be at least large enough to include all of the octets written in the input. It is an error to specify a network address that has bits set to the right of the specified netmask.

Table 8.22 shows some examples.

**Table 8.22. `cidr` Type Input Examples**

<code>cidr</code> Input	<code>cidr</code> Output	<code>abbrev(cidr)</code>
192.168.100.128/25	192.168.100.128/25	192.168.100.128/25
192.168/24	192.168.0.0/24	192.168.0/24
192.168/25	192.168.0.0/25	192.168.0.0/25
192.168.1	192.168.1.0/24	192.168.1/24
192.168	192.168.0.0/24	192.168.0/24

<b>cidr Input</b>	<b>cidr Output</b>	<b>abbrev(cidr)</b>
128.1	128.1.0.0/16	128.1/16
128	128.0.0.0/16	128.0/16
128.1.2	128.1.2.0/24	128.1.2/24
10.1.2	10.1.2.0/24	10.1.2/24
10.1	10.1.0.0/16	10.1/16
10	10.0.0.0/8	10/8
10.1.2.3/32	10.1.2.3/32	10.1.2.3/32
2001:4f8:3:ba::/64	2001:4f8:3:ba::/64	2001:4f8:3:ba/64
2001:4f8:3:ba:2e0:81f-f:fe22:d1f1/128	2001:4f8:3:ba:2e0:81f-f:fe22:d1f1/128	2001:4f8:3:ba:2e0:81f-f:fe22:d1f1/128
::ffff:1.2.3.0/120	::ffff:1.2.3.0/120	::ffff:1.2.3/120
::ffff:1.2.3.0/128	::ffff:1.2.3.0/128	::ffff:1.2.3.0/128

### 8.9.3. inet vs. cidr

The essential difference between `inet` and `cidr` data types is that `inet` accepts values with nonzero bits to the right of the netmask, whereas `cidr` does not. For example, `192.168.0.1/24` is valid for `inet` but not for `cidr`.

#### Tip

If you do not like the output format for `inet` or `cidr` values, try the functions `host`, `text`, and `abbrev`.

### 8.9.4. macaddr

The `macaddr` type stores MAC addresses, known for example from Ethernet card hardware addresses (although MAC addresses are used for other purposes as well). Input is accepted in the following formats:

```
'08:00:2b:01:02:03'
'08-00-2b-01-02-03'
'08002b:010203'
'08002b-010203'
'0800.2b01.0203'
'0800-2b01-0203'
'08002b010203'
```

These examples all specify the same address. Upper and lower case is accepted for the digits a through f. Output is always in the first of the forms shown.

IEEE Standard 802-2001 specifies the second form shown (with hyphens) as the canonical form for MAC addresses, and specifies the first form (with colons) as used with bit-reversed, MSB-first notation, so that `08-00-2b-01-02-03` = `10:00:D4:80:40:C0`. This convention is widely ignored nowadays, and it is relevant only for obsolete network protocols (such as Token Ring). PostgreSQL makes no provisions for bit reversal; all accepted formats use the canonical LSB order.

The remaining five input formats are not part of any standard.

### 8.9.5. macaddr8

The `macaddr8` type stores MAC addresses in EUI-64 format, known for example from Ethernet card hardware addresses (although MAC addresses are used for other purposes as well). This type can accept both 6 and 8 byte length MAC addresses and stores them in 8 byte length format. MAC addresses given in 6 byte format will be stored in 8 byte length format with the 4th and 5th bytes set to FF and FE, respectively. Note that IPv6 uses a modified EUI-64 format where the 7th bit should be set to one after the conversion from EUI-48. The function `macaddr8_set7bit` is provided to make this change. Generally speaking, any input which is comprised of pairs of hex digits (on byte boundaries), optionally separated consistently by one of `:`, `-` or `.`, is accepted. The number of hex digits must be either 16 (8 bytes) or 12 (6 bytes). Leading and trailing whitespace is ignored. The following are examples of input formats that are accepted:

```
'08:00:2b:01:02:03:04:05'
'08-00-2b-01-02-03-04-05'
'08002b:0102030405'
'08002b-0102030405'
'0800.2b01.0203.0405'
'0800-2b01-0203-0405'
'08002b01:02030405'
'08002b0102030405'
```

These examples all specify the same address. Upper and lower case is accepted for the digits a through f. Output is always in the first of the forms shown.

The last six input formats shown above are not part of any standard.

To convert a traditional 48 bit MAC address in EUI-48 format to modified EUI-64 format to be included as the host portion of an IPv6 address, use `macaddr8_set7bit` as shown:

```
SELECT macaddr8_set7bit('08:00:2b:01:02:03');

      macaddr8_set7bit
-----
0a:00:2b:ff:fe:01:02:03
(1 row)
```

## 8.10. Bit String Types

Bit strings are strings of 1's and 0's. They can be used to store or visualize bit masks. There are two SQL bit types: `bit(n)` and `bit varying(n)`, where *n* is a positive integer.

`bit` type data must match the length *n* exactly; it is an error to attempt to store shorter or longer bit strings. `bit varying` data is of variable length up to the maximum length *n*; longer strings will be rejected. Writing `bit` without a length is equivalent to `bit(1)`, while `bit varying` without a length specification means unlimited length.

### Note

If one explicitly casts a bit-string value to `bit(n)`, it will be truncated or zero-padded on the right to be exactly *n* bits, without raising an error. Similarly, if one explicitly casts a bit-string value to `bit varying(n)`, it will be truncated on the right if it is more than *n* bits.

Refer to Section 4.1.2.5 for information about the syntax of bit string constants. Bit-logical operators and string manipulation functions are available; see Section 9.6.

### Example 8.3. Using the Bit String Types

```
CREATE TABLE test (a BIT(3), b BIT VARYING(5));
INSERT INTO test VALUES (B'101', B'00');
INSERT INTO test VALUES (B'10', B'101');

ERROR:  bit string length 2 does not match type bit(3)

INSERT INTO test VALUES (B'10'::bit(3), B'101');
SELECT * FROM test;
```

a	b
101	00
100	101

A bit string value requires 1 byte for each group of 8 bits, plus 5 or 8 bytes overhead depending on the length of the string (but long values may be compressed or moved out-of-line, as explained in Section 8.3 for character strings).

## 8.11. Text Search Types

PostgreSQL provides two data types that are designed to support full text search, which is the activity of searching through a collection of natural-language *documents* to locate those that best match a *query*. The `tsvector` type represents a document in a form optimized for text search; the `tsquery` type similarly represents a text query. Chapter 12 provides a detailed explanation of this facility, and Section 9.13 summarizes the related functions and operators.

### 8.11.1. `tsvector`

A `tsvector` value is a sorted list of distinct *lexemes*, which are words that have been *normalized* to merge different variants of the same word (see Chapter 12 for details). Sorting and duplicate-elimination are done automatically during input, as shown in this example:

```
SELECT 'a fat cat sat on a mat and ate a fat rat'::tsvector;
           tsvector
-----
'a' 'and' 'ate' 'cat' 'fat' 'mat' 'on' 'rat' 'sat'
```

To represent lexemes containing whitespace or punctuation, surround them with quotes:

```
SELECT $$the lexeme '    ' contains spaces$$::tsvector;
           tsvector
-----
'    ' 'contains' 'lexeme' 'spaces' 'the'
```

(We use dollar-quoted string literals in this example and the next one to avoid the confusion of having to double quote marks within the literals.) Embedded quotes and backslashes must be doubled:

```
SELECT $$the lexeme 'Joe''s' contains a quote$$::tsvector;
           tsvector
-----
'Joe''s' 'a' 'contains' 'lexeme' 'quote' 'the'
```

Optionally, integer *positions* can be attached to lexemes:

```
SELECT 'a:1 fat:2 cat:3 sat:4 on:5 a:6 mat:7 and:8 ate:9 a:10
      fat:11 rat:12'::tsvector;
```

tsvector

```
-----
'a':1,6,10 'and':8 'ate':9 'cat':3 'fat':2,11 'mat':7 'on':5
'rat':12 'sat':4
```

A position normally indicates the source word's location in the document. Positional information can be used for *proximity ranking*. Position values can range from 1 to 16383; larger numbers are silently set to 16383. Duplicate positions for the same lexeme are discarded.

Lexemes that have positions can further be labeled with a *weight*, which can be A, B, C, or D. D is the default and hence is not shown on output:

```
SELECT 'a:1A fat:2B,4C cat:5D'::tsvector;
      tsvector
```

```
-----
'a':1A 'cat':5 'fat':2B,4C
```

Weights are typically used to reflect document structure, for example by marking title words differently from body words. Text search ranking functions can assign different priorities to the different weight markers.

It is important to understand that the `tsvector` type itself does not perform any word normalization; it assumes the words it is given are normalized appropriately for the application. For example,

```
SELECT 'The Fat Rats'::tsvector;
      tsvector
```

```
-----
'Fat' 'Rats' 'The'
```

For most English-text-searching applications the above words would be considered non-normalized, but `tsvector` doesn't care. Raw document text should usually be passed through `to_tsvector` to normalize the words appropriately for searching:

```
SELECT to_tsvector('english', 'The Fat Rats');
      to_tsvector
```

```
-----
'fat':2 'rat':3
```

Again, see Chapter 12 for more detail.

## 8.11.2. tsquery

A `tsquery` value stores lexemes that are to be searched for, and can combine them using the Boolean operators `&` (AND), `|` (OR), and `!` (NOT), as well as the phrase search operator `<->` (FOLLOWED BY). There is also a variant `<N>` of the FOLLOWED BY operator, where *N* is an integer constant that specifies the distance between the two lexemes being searched for. `<->` is equivalent to `<1>`.

Parentheses can be used to enforce grouping of these operators. In the absence of parentheses, `!` (NOT) binds most tightly, `<->` (FOLLOWED BY) next most tightly, then `&` (AND), with `|` (OR) binding the least tightly.

Here are some examples:

```
SELECT 'fat & rat'::tsquery;
      tsquery
-----
'fat' & 'rat'

SELECT 'fat & (rat | cat)'::tsquery;
      tsquery
-----
'fat' & ( 'rat' | 'cat' )

SELECT 'fat & rat & ! cat'::tsquery;
      tsquery
-----
'fat' & 'rat' & !'cat'
```

Optionally, lexemes in a `tsquery` can be labeled with one or more weight letters, which restricts them to match only `tsvector` lexemes with one of those weights:

```
SELECT 'fat:ab & cat'::tsquery;
      tsquery
-----
'fat':AB & 'cat'
```

Also, lexemes in a `tsquery` can be labeled with `*` to specify prefix matching:

```
SELECT 'super:*'::tsquery;
      tsquery
-----
'super':*
```

This query will match any word in a `tsvector` that begins with “super”.

Quoting rules for lexemes are the same as described previously for lexemes in `tsvector`; and, as with `tsvector`, any required normalization of words must be done before converting to the `tsquery` type. The `to_tsquery` function is convenient for performing such normalization:

```
SELECT to_tsquery('Fat:ab & Cats');
      to_tsquery
-----
'fat':AB & 'cat'
```

Note that `to_tsquery` will process prefixes in the same way as other words, which means this comparison returns true:

```
SELECT to_tsvector( 'postgraduate' ) @@ to_tsquery( 'postgres:*' );
?column?
-----
t
```

because `postgres` gets stemmed to `postgr`:

```
SELECT to_tsvector( 'postgraduate' ), to_tsquery( 'postgres:*' );
      to_tsvector | to_tsquery
-----
postgraduate      | postgr
```

```
-----+-----  
'postgradu':1 | 'postgr':*
```

which will match the stemmed form of `postgraduate`.

## 8.12. UUID Type

The data type `uuid` stores Universally Unique Identifiers (UUID) as defined by RFC 4122<sup>2</sup>, ISO/IEC 9834-8:2005, and related standards. (Some systems refer to this data type as a globally unique identifier, or GUID, instead.) This identifier is a 128-bit quantity that is generated by an algorithm chosen to make it very unlikely that the same identifier will be generated by anyone else in the known universe using the same algorithm. Therefore, for distributed systems, these identifiers provide a better uniqueness guarantee than sequence generators, which are only unique within a single database.

A UUID is written as a sequence of lower-case hexadecimal digits, in several groups separated by hyphens, specifically a group of 8 digits followed by three groups of 4 digits followed by a group of 12 digits, for a total of 32 digits representing the 128 bits. An example of a UUID in this standard form is:

```
a0eebc99-9c0b-4ef8-bb6d-6bb9bd380a11
```

PostgreSQL also accepts the following alternative forms for input: use of upper-case digits, the standard format surrounded by braces, omitting some or all hyphens, adding a hyphen after any group of four digits. Examples are:

```
A0EEBC99-9C0B-4EF8-BB6D-6BB9BD380A11  
{a0eebc99-9c0b-4ef8-bb6d-6bb9bd380a11}  
a0eebc999c0b4ef8bb6d6bb9bd380a11  
a0ee-bc99-9c0b-4ef8-bb6d-6bb9-bd38-0a11  
{a0eebc99-9c0b4ef8-bb6d6bb9-bd380a11}
```

Output is always in the standard form.

See Section 9.14 for how to generate a UUID in PostgreSQL.

## 8.13. XML Type

The `xml` data type can be used to store XML data. Its advantage over storing XML data in a `text` field is that it checks the input values for well-formedness, and there are support functions to perform type-safe operations on it; see Section 9.15. Use of this data type requires the installation to have been built with `configure --with-libxml`.

The `xml` type can store well-formed “documents”, as defined by the XML standard, as well as “content” fragments, which are defined by reference to the more permissive “document node”<sup>3</sup> of the XQuery and XPath data model. Roughly, this means that content fragments can have more than one top-level element or character node. The expression `xmlvalue IS DOCUMENT` can be used to evaluate whether a particular `xml` value is a full document or only a content fragment.

Limits and compatibility notes for the `xml` data type can be found in Section D.3.

### 8.13.1. Creating XML Values

To produce a value of type `xml` from character data, use the function `xmlparse`:

---

<sup>2</sup> <https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc4122>

<sup>3</sup> <https://www.w3.org/TR/2010/REC-xpath-datamodel-20101214/#DocumentNode>

```
XMLPARSE ( { DOCUMENT | CONTENT } value)
```

Examples:

```
XMLPARSE (DOCUMENT '<?xml version="1.0"?><book><title>Manual</title><chapter>...</chapter></book>')
XMLPARSE (CONTENT 'abc<foo>bar</foo><bar>foo</bar>')
```

While this is the only way to convert character strings into XML values according to the SQL standard, the PostgreSQL-specific syntaxes:

```
xml '<foo>bar</foo>'
'<foo>bar</foo>'::xml
```

can also be used.

The `xml` type does not validate input values against a document type declaration (DTD), even when the input value specifies a DTD. There is also currently no built-in support for validating against other XML schema languages such as XML Schema.

The inverse operation, producing a character string value from `xml`, uses the function `xmlserialize`:

```
XMLSERIALIZE ( { DOCUMENT | CONTENT } value AS type [ [ NO ]
INDENT ] )
```

`type` can be `character`, `character varying`, or `text` (or an alias for one of those). Again, according to the SQL standard, this is the only way to convert between type `xml` and character types, but PostgreSQL also allows you to simply cast the value.

The `INDENT` option causes the result to be pretty-printed, while `NO INDENT` (which is the default) just emits the original input string. Casting to a character type likewise produces the original string.

When a character string value is cast to or from type `xml` without going through `XMLPARSE` or `XMLSERIALIZE`, respectively, the choice of `DOCUMENT` versus `CONTENT` is determined by the “XML option” session configuration parameter, which can be set using the standard command:

```
SET XML OPTION { DOCUMENT | CONTENT };
```

or the more PostgreSQL-like syntax

```
SET xmloption TO { DOCUMENT | CONTENT };
```

The default is `CONTENT`, so all forms of XML data are allowed.

## 8.13.2. Encoding Handling

Care must be taken when dealing with multiple character encodings on the client, server, and in the XML data passed through them. When using the text mode to pass queries to the server and query results to the client (which is the normal mode), PostgreSQL converts all character data passed between the client and the server and vice versa to the character encoding of the respective end; see Section 24.3. This includes string representations of XML values, such as in the above examples. This would ordinarily mean that encoding declarations contained in XML data can become invalid as the character data is converted to other encodings while traveling between client and server, because the embedded encoding declaration is not changed. To cope with this behavior, encoding declarations contained in character strings presented for input to the `xml` type are *ignored*, and content is assumed



to be in the current server encoding. Consequently, for correct processing, character strings of XML data must be sent from the client in the current client encoding. It is the responsibility of the client to either convert documents to the current client encoding before sending them to the server, or to adjust the client encoding appropriately. On output, values of type `xml` will not have an encoding declaration, and clients should assume all data is in the current client encoding.

When using binary mode to pass query parameters to the server and query results back to the client, no encoding conversion is performed, so the situation is different. In this case, an encoding declaration in the XML data will be observed, and if it is absent, the data will be assumed to be in UTF-8 (as required by the XML standard; note that PostgreSQL does not support UTF-16). On output, data will have an encoding declaration specifying the client encoding, unless the client encoding is UTF-8, in which case it will be omitted.

Needless to say, processing XML data with PostgreSQL will be less error-prone and more efficient if the XML data encoding, client encoding, and server encoding are the same. Since XML data is internally processed in UTF-8, computations will be most efficient if the server encoding is also UTF-8.

### Caution

Some XML-related functions may not work at all on non-ASCII data when the server encoding is not UTF-8. This is known to be an issue for `xmltable()` and `xpath()` in particular.

## 8.13.3. Accessing XML Values

The `xml` data type is unusual in that it does not provide any comparison operators. This is because there is no well-defined and universally useful comparison algorithm for XML data. One consequence of this is that you cannot retrieve rows by comparing an `xml` column against a search value. XML values should therefore typically be accompanied by a separate key field such as an ID. An alternative solution for comparing XML values is to convert them to character strings first, but note that character string comparison has little to do with a useful XML comparison method.

Since there are no comparison operators for the `xml` data type, it is not possible to create an index directly on a column of this type. If speedy searches in XML data are desired, possible workarounds include casting the expression to a character string type and indexing that, or indexing an XPath expression. Of course, the actual query would have to be adjusted to search by the indexed expression.

The text-search functionality in PostgreSQL can also be used to speed up full-document searches of XML data. The necessary preprocessing support is, however, not yet available in the PostgreSQL distribution.

## 8.14. JSON Types

JSON data types are for storing JSON (JavaScript Object Notation) data, as specified in RFC 7159<sup>4</sup>. Such data can also be stored as `text`, but the JSON data types have the advantage of enforcing that each stored value is valid according to the JSON rules. There are also assorted JSON-specific functions and operators available for data stored in these data types; see Section 9.16.

PostgreSQL offers two types for storing JSON data: `json` and `jsonb`. To implement efficient query mechanisms for these data types, PostgreSQL also provides the `jsonpath` data type described in Section 8.14.7.

The `json` and `jsonb` data types accept *almost* identical sets of values as input. The major practical difference is one of efficiency. The `json` data type stores an exact copy of the input text, which processing functions must reparse on each execution; while `jsonb` data is stored in a decomposed binary format that makes it slightly slower to input due to added conversion overhead, but significantly faster

---

<sup>4</sup> <https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc7159>

to process, since no reparsing is needed. `jsonb` also supports indexing, which can be a significant advantage.

Because the `json` type stores an exact copy of the input text, it will preserve semantically-insignificant white space between tokens, as well as the order of keys within JSON objects. Also, if a JSON object within the value contains the same key more than once, all the key/value pairs are kept. (The processing functions consider the last value as the operative one.) By contrast, `jsonb` does not preserve white space, does not preserve the order of object keys, and does not keep duplicate object keys. If duplicate keys are specified in the input, only the last value is kept.

In general, most applications should prefer to store JSON data as `jsonb`, unless there are quite specialized needs, such as legacy assumptions about ordering of object keys.

RFC 7159 specifies that JSON strings should be encoded in UTF8. It is therefore not possible for the JSON types to conform rigidly to the JSON specification unless the database encoding is UTF8. Attempts to directly include characters that cannot be represented in the database encoding will fail; conversely, characters that can be represented in the database encoding but not in UTF8 will be allowed.

RFC 7159 permits JSON strings to contain Unicode escape sequences denoted by `\uXXXX`. In the input function for the `json` type, Unicode escapes are allowed regardless of the database encoding, and are checked only for syntactic correctness (that is, that four hex digits follow `\u`). However, the input function for `jsonb` is stricter: it disallows Unicode escapes for characters that cannot be represented in the database encoding. The `jsonb` type also rejects `\u0000` (because that cannot be represented in PostgreSQL's `text` type), and it insists that any use of Unicode surrogate pairs to designate characters outside the Unicode Basic Multilingual Plane be correct. Valid Unicode escapes are converted to the equivalent single character for storage; this includes folding surrogate pairs into a single character.

### Note

Many of the JSON processing functions described in Section 9.16 will convert Unicode escapes to regular characters, and will therefore throw the same types of errors just described even if their input is of type `json` not `jsonb`. The fact that the `json` input function does not make these checks may be considered a historical artifact, although it does allow for simple storage (without processing) of JSON Unicode escapes in a database encoding that does not support the represented characters.

When converting textual JSON input into `jsonb`, the primitive types described by RFC 7159 are effectively mapped onto native PostgreSQL types, as shown in Table 8.23. Therefore, there are some minor additional constraints on what constitutes valid `jsonb` data that do not apply to the `json` type, nor to JSON in the abstract, corresponding to limits on what can be represented by the underlying data type. Notably, `jsonb` will reject numbers that are outside the range of the PostgreSQL `numeric` data type, while `json` will not. Such implementation-defined restrictions are permitted by RFC 7159. However, in practice such problems are far more likely to occur in other implementations, as it is common to represent JSON's number primitive type as IEEE 754 double precision floating point (which RFC 7159 explicitly anticipates and allows for). When using JSON as an interchange format with such systems, the danger of losing numeric precision compared to data originally stored by PostgreSQL should be considered.

Conversely, as noted in the table there are some minor restrictions on the input format of JSON primitive types that do not apply to the corresponding PostgreSQL types.

**Table 8.23. JSON Primitive Types and Corresponding PostgreSQL Types**

JSON primitive type	PostgreSQL type	Notes
<code>string</code>	<code>text</code>	<code>\u0000</code> is disallowed, as are Unicode escapes representing characters not available in the database encoding

JSON primitive type	PostgreSQL type	Notes
number	numeric	NaN and infinity values are disallowed
boolean	boolean	Only lowercase true and false spellings are accepted
null	(none)	SQL NULL is a different concept

### 8.14.1. JSON Input and Output Syntax

The input/output syntax for the JSON data types is as specified in RFC 7159.

The following are all valid json (or jsonb) expressions:

```
-- Simple scalar/primitive value
-- Primitive values can be numbers, quoted strings, true, false, or
  null
SELECT '5'::json;

-- Array of zero or more elements (elements need not be of same
  type)
SELECT '[1, 2, "foo", null]'::json;

-- Object containing pairs of keys and values
-- Note that object keys must always be quoted strings
SELECT '{"bar": "baz", "balance": 7.77, "active": false}'::json;

-- Arrays and objects can be nested arbitrarily
SELECT '{"foo": [true, "bar"], "tags": {"a": 1, "b": null}}'::json;
```

As previously stated, when a JSON value is input and then printed without any additional processing, json outputs the same text that was input, while jsonb does not preserve semantically-insignificant details such as whitespace. For example, note the differences here:

```
SELECT '{"bar": "baz", "balance": 7.77, "active":false}'::json;
           json
-----
{"bar": "baz", "balance": 7.77, "active":false}
(1 row)

SELECT '{"bar": "baz", "balance": 7.77, "active":false}'::jsonb;
           jsonb
-----
{"bar": "baz", "active": false, "balance": 7.77}
(1 row)
```

One semantically-insignificant detail worth noting is that in jsonb, numbers will be printed according to the behavior of the underlying numeric type. In practice this means that numbers entered with E notation will be printed without it, for example:

```
SELECT '{"reading": 1.230e-5}'::json, '{"reading":
  1.230e-5}'::jsonb;
           json           |           jsonb
-----+-----
{"reading": 1.230e-5} | {"reading": 0.00001230}
(1 row)
```

However, `jsonb` will preserve trailing fractional zeroes, as seen in this example, even though those are semantically insignificant for purposes such as equality checks.

For the list of built-in functions and operators available for constructing and processing JSON values, see Section 9.16.

## 8.14.2. Designing JSON Documents

Representing data as JSON can be considerably more flexible than the traditional relational data model, which is compelling in environments where requirements are fluid. It is quite possible for both approaches to co-exist and complement each other within the same application. However, even for applications where maximal flexibility is desired, it is still recommended that JSON documents have a somewhat fixed structure. The structure is typically unenforced (though enforcing some business rules declaratively is possible), but having a predictable structure makes it easier to write queries that usefully summarize a set of “documents” (datums) in a table.

JSON data is subject to the same concurrency-control considerations as any other data type when stored in a table. Although storing large documents is practicable, keep in mind that any update acquires a row-level lock on the whole row. Consider limiting JSON documents to a manageable size in order to decrease lock contention among updating transactions. Ideally, JSON documents should each represent an atomic datum that business rules dictate cannot reasonably be further subdivided into smaller datums that could be modified independently.

## 8.14.3. `jsonb` Containment and Existence

Testing *containment* is an important capability of `jsonb`. There is no parallel set of facilities for the `json` type. Containment tests whether one `jsonb` document has contained within it another one. These examples return true except as noted:

```
-- Simple scalar/primitive values contain only the identical value:
SELECT '"foo"'::jsonb @> '"foo"'::jsonb;

-- The array on the right side is contained within the one on the
left:
SELECT '[1, 2, 3]'::jsonb @> '[1, 3]'::jsonb;

-- Order of array elements is not significant, so this is also
true:
SELECT '[1, 2, 3]'::jsonb @> '[3, 1]'::jsonb;

-- Duplicate array elements don't matter either:
SELECT '[1, 2, 3]'::jsonb @> '[1, 2, 2]'::jsonb;

-- The object with a single pair on the right side is contained
-- within the object on the left side:
SELECT '{"product": "PostgreSQL", "version": 9.4, "jsonb":
true}'::jsonb @> '{"version": 9.4}'::jsonb;

-- The array on the right side is not considered contained within
the
-- array on the left, even though a similar array is nested within
it:
SELECT '[1, 2, [1, 3]]'::jsonb @> '[1, 3]'::jsonb; -- yields false

-- But with a layer of nesting, it is contained:
SELECT '[1, 2, [1, 3]]'::jsonb @> '[[1, 3]]'::jsonb;
```

```
-- Similarly, containment is not reported here:
SELECT '{"foo": {"bar": "baz"}}'::jsonb @> '{"bar": "baz"}'::jsonb;
-- yields false
```

```
-- A top-level key and an empty object is contained:
SELECT '{"foo": {"bar": "baz"}}'::jsonb @> '{"foo": {}}'::jsonb;
```

The general principle is that the contained object must match the containing object as to structure and data contents, possibly after discarding some non-matching array elements or object key/value pairs from the containing object. But remember that the order of array elements is not significant when doing a containment match, and duplicate array elements are effectively considered only once.

As a special exception to the general principle that the structures must match, an array may contain a primitive value:

```
-- This array contains the primitive string value:
SELECT '["foo", "bar"]'::jsonb @> '"bar"'::jsonb;
```

```
-- This exception is not reciprocal -- non-containment is reported
here:
SELECT '"bar"'::jsonb @> '["bar"]'::jsonb; -- yields false
```

`jsonb` also has an *existence* operator, which is a variation on the theme of containment: it tests whether a string (given as a text value) appears as an object key or array element at the top level of the `jsonb` value. These examples return true except as noted:

```
-- String exists as array element:
SELECT '["foo", "bar", "baz"]'::jsonb ? 'bar';
```

```
-- String exists as object key:
SELECT '{"foo": "bar"}'::jsonb ? 'foo';
```

```
-- Object values are not considered:
SELECT '{"foo": "bar"}'::jsonb ? 'bar'; -- yields false
```

```
-- As with containment, existence must match at the top level:
SELECT '{"foo": {"bar": "baz"}}'::jsonb ? 'bar'; -- yields false
```

```
-- A string is considered to exist if it matches a primitive JSON
string:
SELECT '"foo"'::jsonb ? 'foo';
```

JSON objects are better suited than arrays for testing containment or existence when there are many keys or elements involved, because unlike arrays they are internally optimized for searching, and do not need to be searched linearly.

### Tip

Because JSON containment is nested, an appropriate query can skip explicit selection of sub-objects. As an example, suppose that we have a `doc` column containing objects at the top level, with most objects containing `tags` fields that contain arrays of sub-objects. This query finds entries in which sub-objects containing both `"term": "paris"` and `"term": "food"` appear, while ignoring any such keys outside the `tags` array:

```
SELECT doc->'site_name' FROM websites
WHERE doc @> '{"tags": [{"term": "paris"}, {"term": "food"}]}';
```

One could accomplish the same thing with, say,

```
SELECT doc->'site_name' FROM websites
WHERE doc->'tags' @> ' [{"term": "paris"}, {"term": "food"} ]';
```

but that approach is less flexible, and often less efficient as well.

On the other hand, the JSON existence operator is not nested: it will only look for the specified key or array element at top level of the JSON value.

The various containment and existence operators, along with all other JSON operators and functions are documented in Section 9.16.

## 8.14.4. jsonb Indexing

GIN indexes can be used to efficiently search for keys or key/value pairs occurring within a large number of jsonb documents (datums). Two GIN “operator classes” are provided, offering different performance and flexibility trade-offs.

The default GIN operator class for jsonb supports queries with the key-exists operators `?`, `?|` and `?&`, the containment operator `@>`, and the jsonpath match operators `@?` and `@@`. (For details of the semantics that these operators implement, see Table 9.46.) An example of creating an index with this operator class is:

```
CREATE INDEX idxgin ON api USING GIN (jdoc);
```

The non-default GIN operator class `jsonb_path_ops` does not support the key-exists operators, but it does support `@>`, `@?` and `@@`. An example of creating an index with this operator class is:

```
CREATE INDEX idxginp ON api USING GIN (jdoc jsonb_path_ops);
```

Consider the example of a table that stores JSON documents retrieved from a third-party web service, with a documented schema definition. A typical document is:

```
{
  "guid": "9c36adc1-7fb5-4d5b-83b4-90356a46061a",
  "name": "Angela Barton",
  "is_active": true,
  "company": "MagnaFone",
  "address": "178 Howard Place, Gulf, Washington, 702",
  "registered": "2009-11-07T08:53:22 +08:00",
  "latitude": 19.793713,
  "longitude": 86.513373,
  "tags": [
    "enim",
    "aliquip",
    "qui"
  ]
}
```

We store these documents in a table named `api`, in a `jsonb` column named `jdoc`. If a GIN index is created on this column, queries like the following can make use of the index:

```
-- Find documents in which the key "company" has value "MagnaFone"
```

```
SELECT jdoc->'guid', jdoc->'name' FROM api WHERE jdoc @>
  '{"company": "Magnaafone"}';
```

However, the index could not be used for queries like the following, because though the operator ? is indexable, it is not applied directly to the indexed column jdoc:

```
-- Find documents in which the key "tags" contains key or array
  element "qui"
SELECT jdoc->'guid', jdoc->'name' FROM api WHERE jdoc -> 'tags' ?
  'qui';
```

Still, with appropriate use of expression indexes, the above query can use an index. If querying for particular items within the "tags" key is common, defining an index like this may be worthwhile:

```
CREATE INDEX idxgintags ON api USING GIN ((jdoc -> 'tags'));
```

Now, the WHERE clause `jdoc -> 'tags' ? 'qui'` will be recognized as an application of the indexable operator ? to the indexed expression `jdoc -> 'tags'`. (More information on expression indexes can be found in Section 11.7.)

Another approach to querying is to exploit containment, for example:

```
-- Find documents in which the key "tags" contains array element
  "qui"
SELECT jdoc->'guid', jdoc->'name' FROM api WHERE jdoc @> '{"tags":
  ["qui"]}';
```

A simple GIN index on the jdoc column can support this query. But note that such an index will store copies of every key and value in the jdoc column, whereas the expression index of the previous example stores only data found under the tags key. While the simple-index approach is far more flexible (since it supports queries about any key), targeted expression indexes are likely to be smaller and faster to search than a simple index.

GIN indexes also support the @? and @@ operators, which perform jsonpath matching. Examples are

```
SELECT jdoc->'guid', jdoc->'name' FROM api WHERE jdoc @?
  '$.tags[*] ? (@ == "qui")';
```

```
SELECT jdoc->'guid', jdoc->'name' FROM api WHERE jdoc @@ '$.tags[*]
  == "qui";
```

For these operators, a GIN index extracts clauses of the form *accessors\_chain* = *constant* out of the jsonpath pattern, and does the index search based on the keys and values mentioned in these clauses. The accessors chain may include *.key*, *[\*]*, and *[index]* accessors. The jsonb\_ops operator class also supports *.\** and *.\*\** accessors, but the jsonb\_path\_ops operator class does not.

Although the jsonb\_path\_ops operator class supports only queries with the @>, @? and @@ operators, it has notable performance advantages over the default operator class jsonb\_ops. A jsonb\_path\_ops index is usually much smaller than a jsonb\_ops index over the same data, and the specificity of searches is better, particularly when queries contain keys that appear frequently in the data. Therefore search operations typically perform better than with the default operator class.

The technical difference between a jsonb\_ops and a jsonb\_path\_ops GIN index is that the former creates independent index items for each key and value in the data, while the latter creates

index items only for each value in the data.<sup>5</sup> Basically, each `jsonb_path_ops` index item is a hash of the value and the key(s) leading to it; for example to index `{ "foo": { "bar": "baz" } }`, a single index item would be created incorporating all three of `foo`, `bar`, and `baz` into the hash value. Thus a containment query looking for this structure would result in an extremely specific index search; but there is no way at all to find out whether `foo` appears as a key. On the other hand, a `jsonb_ops` index would create three index items representing `foo`, `bar`, and `baz` separately; then to do the containment query, it would look for rows containing all three of these items. While GIN indexes can perform such an AND search fairly efficiently, it will still be less specific and slower than the equivalent `jsonb_path_ops` search, especially if there are a very large number of rows containing any single one of the three index items.

A disadvantage of the `jsonb_path_ops` approach is that it produces no index entries for JSON structures not containing any values, such as `{ "a": {} }`. If a search for documents containing such a structure is requested, it will require a full-index scan, which is quite slow. `jsonb_path_ops` is therefore ill-suited for applications that often perform such searches.

`jsonb` also supports `btree` and `hash` indexes. These are usually useful only if it's important to check equality of complete JSON documents. The `btree` ordering for `jsonb` datums is seldom of great interest, but for completeness it is:

*Object > Array > Boolean > Number > String > Null*

*Object with n pairs > object with n - 1 pairs*

*Array with n elements > array with n - 1 elements*

Objects with equal numbers of pairs are compared in the order:

*key-1, value-1, key-2 ...*

Note that object keys are compared in their storage order; in particular, since shorter keys are stored before longer keys, this can lead to results that might be unintuitive, such as:

`{ "aa": 1, "c": 1 } > { "b": 1, "d": 1 }`

Similarly, arrays with equal numbers of elements are compared in the order:

*element-1, element-2 ...*

Primitive JSON values are compared using the same comparison rules as for the underlying PostgreSQL data type. Strings are compared using the default database collation.

## 8.14.5. jsonb Subscripting

The `jsonb` data type supports array-style subscripting expressions to extract and modify elements. Nested values can be indicated by chaining subscripting expressions, following the same rules as the `path` argument in the `jsonb_set` function. If a `jsonb` value is an array, numeric subscripts start at zero, and negative integers count backwards from the last element of the array. Slice expressions are not supported. The result of a subscripting expression is always of the `jsonb` data type.

UPDATE statements may use subscripting in the SET clause to modify `jsonb` values. Subscript paths must be traversable for all affected values insofar as they exist. For instance, the path `val[ 'a' ] [ 'b' ] [ 'c' ]` can be traversed all the way to `c` if every `val`, `val[ 'a' ]`, and `val[ 'a' ] [ 'b' ]` is an object. If any `val[ 'a' ]` or `val[ 'a' ] [ 'b' ]` is not defined, it will be created as an empty

---

<sup>5</sup> For this purpose, the term “value” includes array elements, though JSON terminology sometimes considers array elements distinct from values within objects.



object and filled as necessary. However, if any `val` itself or one of the intermediary values is defined as a non-object such as a string, number, or `jsonb null`, traversal cannot proceed so an error is raised and the transaction aborted.

An example of subscripting syntax:

```
-- Extract object value by key
SELECT ('{"a": 1}'::jsonb)['a'];

-- Extract nested object value by key path
SELECT ('{"a": {"b": {"c": 1}}}'::jsonb)['a']['b']['c'];

-- Extract array element by index
SELECT ('[1, "2", null]'::jsonb)[1];

-- Update object value by key. Note the quotes around '1': the
  assigned
-- value must be of the jsonb type as well
UPDATE table_name SET jsonb_field['key'] = '1';

-- This will raise an error if any record's jsonb_field['a']['b']
  is something
-- other than an object. For example, the value {"a": 1} has a
  numeric value
-- of the key 'a'.
UPDATE table_name SET jsonb_field['a']['b']['c'] = '1';

-- Filter records using a WHERE clause with subscripting. Since the
  result of
-- subscripting is jsonb, the value we compare it against must also
  be jsonb.
-- The double quotes make "value" also a valid jsonb string.
SELECT * FROM table_name WHERE jsonb_field['key'] = '"value"';
```

`jsonb` assignment via subscripting handles a few edge cases differently from `jsonb_set`. When a source `jsonb` value is `NULL`, assignment via subscripting will proceed as if it was an empty JSON value of the type (object or array) implied by the subscript key:

```
-- Where jsonb_field was NULL, it is now {"a": 1}
UPDATE table_name SET jsonb_field['a'] = '1';

-- Where jsonb_field was NULL, it is now [1]
UPDATE table_name SET jsonb_field[0] = '1';
```

If an index is specified for an array containing too few elements, `NULL` elements will be appended until the index is reachable and the value can be set.

```
-- Where jsonb_field was [], it is now [null, null, 2];
-- where jsonb_field was [0], it is now [0, null, 2]
UPDATE table_name SET jsonb_field[2] = '2';
```

A `jsonb` value will accept assignments to nonexistent subscript paths as long as the last existing element to be traversed is an object or array, as implied by the corresponding subscript (the element indicated by the last subscript in the path is not traversed and may be anything). Nested array and object structures will be created, and in the former case `null`-padded, as specified by the subscript path until the assigned value can be placed.

```
-- Where jsonb_field was {}, it is now {"a": [{"b": 1}]}
UPDATE table_name SET jsonb_field['a'][0]['b'] = '1';

-- Where jsonb_field was [], it is now [null, {"a": 1}]
UPDATE table_name SET jsonb_field[1]['a'] = '1';
```

## 8.14.6. Transforms

Additional extensions are available that implement transforms for the `jsonb` type for different procedural languages.

The extensions for PL/Perl are called `jsonb_plperl` and `jsonb_plperl_u`. If you use them, `jsonb` values are mapped to Perl arrays, hashes, and scalars, as appropriate.

The extension for PL/Python is called `jsonb_plpython3u`. If you use it, `jsonb` values are mapped to Python dictionaries, lists, and scalars, as appropriate.

Of these extensions, `jsonb_plperl` is considered “trusted”, that is, it can be installed by non-superusers who have `CREATE` privilege on the current database. The rest require superuser privilege to install.

## 8.14.7. jsonpath Type

The `jsonpath` type implements support for the SQL/JSON path language in PostgreSQL to efficiently query JSON data. It provides a binary representation of the parsed SQL/JSON path expression that specifies the items to be retrieved by the path engine from the JSON data for further processing with the SQL/JSON query functions.

The semantics of SQL/JSON path predicates and operators generally follow SQL. At the same time, to provide a natural way of working with JSON data, SQL/JSON path syntax uses some JavaScript conventions:

- Dot (`.`) is used for member access.
- Square brackets (`[ ]`) are used for array access.
- SQL/JSON arrays are 0-relative, unlike regular SQL arrays that start from 1.

Numeric literals in SQL/JSON path expressions follow JavaScript rules, which are different from both SQL and JSON in some minor details. For example, SQL/JSON path allows `.1` and `1.`, which are invalid in JSON. Non-decimal integer literals and underscore separators are supported, for example, `1_000_000`, `0x1EEE_FFFF`, `0o273`, `0b100101`. In SQL/JSON path (and in JavaScript, but not in SQL proper), there must not be an underscore separator directly after the radix prefix.

An SQL/JSON path expression is typically written in an SQL query as an SQL character string literal, so it must be enclosed in single quotes, and any single quotes desired within the value must be doubled (see Section 4.1.2.1). Some forms of path expressions require string literals within them. These embedded string literals follow JavaScript/ECMAScript conventions: they must be surrounded by double quotes, and backslash escapes may be used within them to represent otherwise-hard-to-type characters. In particular, the way to write a double quote within an embedded string literal is `\`, and to write a backslash itself, you must write `\\`. Other special backslash sequences include those recognized in JSON strings: `\b`, `\f`, `\n`, `\r`, `\t`, `\v` for various ASCII control characters, and `\uNNNN` for a Unicode character identified by its 4-hex-digit code point. The backslash syntax also includes two cases not allowed by JSON: `\xNN` for a character code written with only two hex digits, and `\u{N...}` for a character code written with 1 to 6 hex digits.

A path expression consists of a sequence of path elements, which can be any of the following:

- Path literals of JSON primitive types: Unicode text, numeric, true, false, or null.
- Path variables listed in Table 8.24.
- Accessor operators listed in Table 8.25.
- `jsonpath` operators and methods listed in Section 9.16.2.2.
- Parentheses, which can be used to provide filter expressions or define the order of path evaluation.

For details on using `jsonpath` expressions with SQL/JSON query functions, see Section 9.16.2.

**Table 8.24. `jsonpath` Variables**

Variable	Description
\$	A variable representing the JSON value being queried (the <i>context item</i> ).
\$varname	A named variable. Its value can be set by the parameter <i>vars</i> of several JSON processing functions; see Table 9.49 for details.
@	A variable representing the result of path evaluation in filter expressions.

**Table 8.25. `jsonpath` Accessors**

Accessor Operator	Description
.key ."\$varname"	Member accessor that returns an object member with the specified key. If the key name matches some named variable starting with \$ or does not meet the JavaScript rules for an identifier, it must be enclosed in double quotes to make it a string literal.
.*	Wildcard member accessor that returns the values of all members located at the top level of the current object.
.**	Recursive wildcard member accessor that processes all levels of the JSON hierarchy of the current object and returns all the member values, regardless of their nesting level. This is a PostgreSQL extension of the SQL/JSON standard.
.**{level} .**{start_level to end_level}	Like **, but selects only the specified levels of the JSON hierarchy. Nesting levels are specified as integers. Level zero corresponds to the current object. To access the lowest nesting level, you can use the <code>last</code> keyword. This is a PostgreSQL extension of the SQL/JSON standard.
[subscript, ...]	Array element accessor. <i>subscript</i> can be given in two forms: <i>index</i> or <i>start_index</i> to <i>end_index</i> . The first form returns a single array element by its index. The second form returns an array slice by the range of indexes, including the elements that correspond to the provided <i>start_index</i> and <i>end_index</i> .  The specified <i>index</i> can be an integer, as well as an expression returning a single numeric value, which is automatically cast to integer. Index zero corresponds to the first array element. You can also use the <code>last</code> keyword to denote the last array element, which is useful for handling arrays of unknown length.
[*]	Wildcard array element accessor that returns all array elements.

## 8.15. Arrays

PostgreSQL allows columns of a table to be defined as variable-length multidimensional arrays. Arrays of any built-in or user-defined base type, enum type, composite type, range type, or domain can be created.

### 8.15.1. Declaration of Array Types

To illustrate the use of array types, we create this table:

```
CREATE TABLE sal_emp (  
    name          text,  
    pay_by_quarter integer[],  
    schedule      text[][]  
);
```

As shown, an array data type is named by appending square brackets (`[]`) to the data type name of the array elements. The above command will create a table named `sal_emp` with a column of type `text` (`name`), a one-dimensional array of type `integer` (`pay_by_quarter`), which represents the employee's salary by quarter, and a two-dimensional array of `text` (`schedule`), which represents the employee's weekly schedule.

The syntax for `CREATE TABLE` allows the exact size of arrays to be specified, for example:

```
CREATE TABLE tictactoe (  
    squares      integer[3][3]  
);
```

However, the current implementation ignores any supplied array size limits, i.e., the behavior is the same as for arrays of unspecified length.

The current implementation does not enforce the declared number of dimensions either. Arrays of a particular element type are all considered to be of the same type, regardless of size or number of dimensions. So, declaring the array size or number of dimensions in `CREATE TABLE` is simply documentation; it does not affect run-time behavior.

An alternative syntax, which conforms to the SQL standard by using the keyword `ARRAY`, can be used for one-dimensional arrays. `pay_by_quarter` could have been defined as:

```
pay_by_quarter integer ARRAY[4],
```

Or, if no array size is to be specified:

```
pay_by_quarter integer ARRAY,
```

As before, however, PostgreSQL does not enforce the size restriction in any case.

### 8.15.2. Array Value Input

To write an array value as a literal constant, enclose the element values within curly braces and separate them by commas. (If you know C, this is not unlike the C syntax for initializing structures.) You can put double quotes around any element value, and must do so if it contains commas or curly braces. (More details appear below.) Thus, the general format of an array constant is the following:

```
'{ val1 delim val2 delim ... }'
```

where *delim* is the delimiter character for the type, as recorded in its `pg_type` entry. Among the standard data types provided in the PostgreSQL distribution, all use a comma (,), except for type `box` which uses a semicolon (;). Each *val* is either a constant of the array element type, or a subarray. An example of an array constant is:

```
'{{1,2,3},{4,5,6},{7,8,9}}'
```

This constant is a two-dimensional, 3-by-3 array consisting of three subarrays of integers.

To set an element of an array constant to `NULL`, write `NULL` for the element value. (Any upper- or lower-case variant of `NULL` will do.) If you want an actual string value “`NULL`”, you must put double quotes around it.

(These kinds of array constants are actually only a special case of the generic type constants discussed in Section 4.1.2.7. The constant is initially treated as a string and passed to the array input conversion routine. An explicit type specification might be necessary.)

Now we can show some `INSERT` statements:

```
INSERT INTO sal_emp
VALUES ('Bill',
       '{10000, 10000, 10000, 10000}',
       '{{"meeting", "lunch"}, {"training", "presentation"}}');
```

```
INSERT INTO sal_emp
VALUES ('Carol',
       '{20000, 25000, 25000, 25000}',
       '{{"breakfast", "consulting"}, {"meeting", "lunch"}}');
```

The result of the previous two inserts looks like this:

```
SELECT * FROM sal_emp;
 name | pay_by_quarter | schedule
-----+-----
 Bill | {10000,10000,10000,10000} | {{meeting,lunch},
 {training,presentation}}
 Carol | {20000,25000,25000,25000} | {{breakfast,consulting},
 {meeting,lunch}}
(2 rows)
```

Multidimensional arrays must have matching extents for each dimension. A mismatch causes an error, for example:

```
INSERT INTO sal_emp
VALUES ('Bill',
       '{10000, 10000, 10000, 10000}',
       '{{"meeting", "lunch"}, {"meeting"}}');
ERROR: multidimensional arrays must have array expressions with
matching dimensions
```

The `ARRAY` constructor syntax can also be used:

```
INSERT INTO sal_emp
VALUES ('Bill',
```

```
ARRAY[10000, 10000, 10000, 10000],
ARRAY[['meeting', 'lunch'], ['training', 'presentation']]);

INSERT INTO sal_emp
VALUES ('Carol',
ARRAY[20000, 25000, 25000, 25000],
ARRAY[['breakfast', 'consulting'], ['meeting', 'lunch']]);
```

Notice that the array elements are ordinary SQL constants or expressions; for instance, string literals are single quoted, instead of double quoted as they would be in an array literal. The ARRAY constructor syntax is discussed in more detail in Section 4.2.12.

### 8.15.3. Accessing Arrays

Now, we can run some queries on the table. First, we show how to access a single element of an array. This query retrieves the names of the employees whose pay changed in the second quarter:

```
SELECT name FROM sal_emp WHERE pay_by_quarter[1] <>
pay_by_quarter[2];

name
-----
Carol
(1 row)
```

The array subscript numbers are written within square brackets. By default PostgreSQL uses a one-based numbering convention for arrays, that is, an array of  $n$  elements starts with `array[1]` and ends with `array[n]`.

This query retrieves the third quarter pay of all employees:

```
SELECT pay_by_quarter[3] FROM sal_emp;

pay_by_quarter
-----
10000
25000
(2 rows)
```

We can also access arbitrary rectangular slices of an array, or subarrays. An array slice is denoted by writing *lower-bound:upper-bound* for one or more array dimensions. For example, this query retrieves the first item on Bill's schedule for the first two days of the week:

```
SELECT schedule[1:2][1:1] FROM sal_emp WHERE name = 'Bill';

schedule
-----
{{meeting},{training}}
(1 row)
```

If any dimension is written as a slice, i.e., contains a colon, then all dimensions are treated as slices. Any dimension that has only a single number (no colon) is treated as being from 1 to the number specified. For example, `[2]` is treated as `[1:2]`, as in this example:

```
SELECT schedule[1:2][2] FROM sal_emp WHERE name = 'Bill';
```

```
          schedule
-----
{{meeting,lunch},{training,presentation}}
(1 row)
```

To avoid confusion with the non-slice case, it's best to use slice syntax for all dimensions, e.g., [1:2][1:1], not [2][1:1].

It is possible to omit the *lower-bound* and/or *upper-bound* of a slice specifier; the missing bound is replaced by the lower or upper limit of the array's subscripts. For example:

```
SELECT schedule[:2][2:] FROM sal_emp WHERE name = 'Bill';
```

```
          schedule
-----
{{lunch},{presentation}}
(1 row)
```

```
SELECT schedule[:] [1:1] FROM sal_emp WHERE name = 'Bill';
```

```
          schedule
-----
{{meeting},{training}}
(1 row)
```

An array subscript expression will return null if either the array itself or any of the subscript expressions are null. Also, null is returned if a subscript is outside the array bounds (this case does not raise an error). For example, if `schedule` currently has the dimensions [1:3][1:2] then referencing `schedule[3][3]` yields NULL. Similarly, an array reference with the wrong number of subscripts yields a null rather than an error.

An array slice expression likewise yields null if the array itself or any of the subscript expressions are null. However, in other cases such as selecting an array slice that is completely outside the current array bounds, a slice expression yields an empty (zero-dimensional) array instead of null. (This does not match non-slice behavior and is done for historical reasons.) If the requested slice partially overlaps the array bounds, then it is silently reduced to just the overlapping region instead of returning null.

The current dimensions of any array value can be retrieved with the `array_dims` function:

```
SELECT array_dims(schedule) FROM sal_emp WHERE name = 'Carol';
```

```
array_dims
-----
[1:2][1:2]
(1 row)
```

`array_dims` produces a text result, which is convenient for people to read but perhaps inconvenient for programs. Dimensions can also be retrieved with `array_upper` and `array_lower`, which return the upper and lower bound of a specified array dimension, respectively:

```
SELECT array_upper(schedule, 1) FROM sal_emp WHERE name = 'Carol';
```

```
array_upper
-----
2
(1 row)
```

`array_length` will return the length of a specified array dimension:

```
SELECT array_length(schedule, 1) FROM sal_emp WHERE name = 'Carol';

 array_length
-----
                2
(1 row)
```

`cardinality` returns the total number of elements in an array across all dimensions. It is effectively the number of rows a call to `unnest` would yield:

```
SELECT cardinality(schedule) FROM sal_emp WHERE name = 'Carol';

 cardinality
-----
                4
(1 row)
```

## 8.15.4. Modifying Arrays

An array value can be replaced completely:

```
UPDATE sal_emp SET pay_by_quarter = '{25000,25000,27000,27000}'
WHERE name = 'Carol';
```

or using the `ARRAY` expression syntax:

```
UPDATE sal_emp SET pay_by_quarter = ARRAY[25000,25000,27000,27000]
WHERE name = 'Carol';
```

An array can also be updated at a single element:

```
UPDATE sal_emp SET pay_by_quarter[4] = 15000
WHERE name = 'Bill';
```

or updated in a slice:

```
UPDATE sal_emp SET pay_by_quarter[1:2] = '{27000,27000}'
WHERE name = 'Carol';
```

The slice syntaxes with omitted *lower-bound* and/or *upper-bound* can be used too, but only when updating an array value that is not `NULL` or zero-dimensional (otherwise, there is no existing subscript limit to substitute).

A stored array value can be enlarged by assigning to elements not already present. Any positions between those previously present and the newly assigned elements will be filled with nulls. For example, if array `myarray` currently has 4 elements, it will have six elements after an update that assigns to `myarray[6]`; `myarray[5]` will contain null. Currently, enlargement in this fashion is only allowed for one-dimensional arrays, not multidimensional arrays.

Subscripted assignment allows creation of arrays that do not use one-based subscripts. For example one might assign to `myarray[-2:7]` to create an array with subscript values from -2 to 7.

New array values can also be constructed using the concatenation operator, `||`:



```
SELECT ARRAY[1,2] || ARRAY[3,4];
?column?
-----
{1,2,3,4}
(1 row)
```

```
SELECT ARRAY[5,6] || ARRAY[[1,2],[3,4]];
?column?
-----
{{5,6},{1,2},{3,4}}
(1 row)
```

The concatenation operator allows a single element to be pushed onto the beginning or end of a one-dimensional array. It also accepts two  $N$ -dimensional arrays, or an  $N$ -dimensional and an  $N+1$ -dimensional array.

When a single element is pushed onto either the beginning or end of a one-dimensional array, the result is an array with the same lower bound subscript as the array operand. For example:

```
SELECT array_dims(1 || '[0:1]={2,3}'::int[]);
array_dims
-----
[0:2]
(1 row)
```

```
SELECT array_dims(ARRAY[1,2] || 3);
array_dims
-----
[1:3]
(1 row)
```

When two arrays with an equal number of dimensions are concatenated, the result retains the lower bound subscript of the left-hand operand's outer dimension. The result is an array comprising every element of the left-hand operand followed by every element of the right-hand operand. For example:

```
SELECT array_dims(ARRAY[1,2] || ARRAY[3,4,5]);
array_dims
-----
[1:5]
(1 row)
```

```
SELECT array_dims(ARRAY[[1,2],[3,4]] || ARRAY[[5,6],[7,8],[9,0]]);
array_dims
-----
[1:5][1:2]
(1 row)
```

When an  $N$ -dimensional array is pushed onto the beginning or end of an  $N+1$ -dimensional array, the result is analogous to the element-array case above. Each  $N$ -dimensional sub-array is essentially an element of the  $N+1$ -dimensional array's outer dimension. For example:

```
SELECT array_dims(ARRAY[1,2] || ARRAY[[3,4],[5,6]]);
array_dims
-----
[1:3][1:2]
```

```
(1 row)
```

An array can also be constructed by using the functions `array_prepend`, `array_append`, or `array_cat`. The first two only support one-dimensional arrays, but `array_cat` supports multidimensional arrays. Some examples:

```
SELECT array_prepend(1, ARRAY[2,3]);
array_prepend
-----
{1,2,3}
(1 row)
```

```
SELECT array_append(ARRAY[1,2], 3);
array_append
-----
{1,2,3}
(1 row)
```

```
SELECT array_cat(ARRAY[1,2], ARRAY[3,4]);
array_cat
-----
{1,2,3,4}
(1 row)
```

```
SELECT array_cat(ARRAY[[1,2],[3,4]], ARRAY[5,6]);
array_cat
-----
{{1,2},{3,4},{5,6}}
(1 row)
```

```
SELECT array_cat(ARRAY[5,6], ARRAY[[1,2],[3,4]]);
array_cat
-----
{{5,6},{1,2},{3,4}}
```

In simple cases, the concatenation operator discussed above is preferred over direct use of these functions. However, because the concatenation operator is overloaded to serve all three cases, there are situations where use of one of the functions is helpful to avoid ambiguity. For example consider:

```
SELECT ARRAY[1, 2] || '{3, 4}'; -- the untyped literal is taken as
an array
?column?
-----
{1,2,3,4}
```

```
SELECT ARRAY[1, 2] || '7'; -- so is this one
ERROR:  malformed array literal: "7"
```

```
SELECT ARRAY[1, 2] || NULL; -- so is an undecorated
NULL
?column?
-----
{1,2}
(1 row)
```

```
SELECT array_append(ARRAY[1, 2], NULL); -- this might have been
meant
```

```
array_append
-----
{1,2,NULL}
```

In the examples above, the parser sees an integer array on one side of the concatenation operator, and a constant of undetermined type on the other. The heuristic it uses to resolve the constant's type is to assume it's of the same type as the operator's other input — in this case, integer array. So the concatenation operator is presumed to represent `array_cat`, not `array_append`. When that's the wrong choice, it could be fixed by casting the constant to the array's element type; but explicit use of `array_append` might be a preferable solution.

## 8.15.5. Searching in Arrays

To search for a value in an array, each value must be checked. This can be done manually, if you know the size of the array. For example:

```
SELECT * FROM sal_emp WHERE pay_by_quarter[1] = 10000 OR
                             pay_by_quarter[2] = 10000 OR
                             pay_by_quarter[3] = 10000 OR
                             pay_by_quarter[4] = 10000;
```

However, this quickly becomes tedious for large arrays, and is not helpful if the size of the array is unknown. An alternative method is described in Section 9.24. The above query could be replaced by:

```
SELECT * FROM sal_emp WHERE 10000 = ANY (pay_by_quarter);
```

In addition, you can find rows where the array has all values equal to 10000 with:

```
SELECT * FROM sal_emp WHERE 10000 = ALL (pay_by_quarter);
```

Alternatively, the `generate_subscripts` function can be used. For example:

```
SELECT * FROM
  (SELECT pay_by_quarter,
         generate_subscripts(pay_by_quarter, 1) AS s
   FROM sal_emp) AS foo
WHERE pay_by_quarter[s] = 10000;
```

This function is described in Table 9.66.

You can also search an array using the `&&` operator, which checks whether the left operand overlaps with the right operand. For instance:

```
SELECT * FROM sal_emp WHERE pay_by_quarter && ARRAY[10000];
```

This and other array operators are further described in Section 9.19. It can be accelerated by an appropriate index, as described in Section 11.2.

You can also search for specific values in an array using the `array_position` and `array_positions` functions. The former returns the subscript of the first occurrence of a value in an array; the latter returns an array with the subscripts of all occurrences of the value in the array. For example:

```
SELECT
  array_position(ARRAY['sun','mon','tue','wed','thu','fri','sat'],
    'mon');
```

```

array_position
-----
                2
(1 row)

SELECT array_positions(ARRAY[1, 4, 3, 1, 3, 4, 2, 1], 1);
 array_positions
-----
      {1,4,8}
(1 row)

```

### Tip

Arrays are not sets; searching for specific array elements can be a sign of database misdesign. Consider using a separate table with a row for each item that would be an array element. This will be easier to search, and is likely to scale better for a large number of elements.

## 8.15.6. Array Input and Output Syntax

The external text representation of an array value consists of items that are interpreted according to the I/O conversion rules for the array's element type, plus decoration that indicates the array structure. The decoration consists of curly braces (`{` and `}`) around the array value plus delimiter characters between adjacent items. The delimiter character is usually a comma (`,`) but can be something else: it is determined by the `typdelim` setting for the array's element type. Among the standard data types provided in the PostgreSQL distribution, all use a comma, except for type `box`, which uses a semicolon (`;`). In a multidimensional array, each dimension (row, plane, cube, etc.) gets its own level of curly braces, and delimiters must be written between adjacent curly-braced entities of the same level.

The array output routine will put double quotes around element values if they are empty strings, contain curly braces, delimiter characters, double quotes, backslashes, or white space, or match the word `NULL`. Double quotes and backslashes embedded in element values will be backslash-escaped. For numeric data types it is safe to assume that double quotes will never appear, but for textual data types one should be prepared to cope with either the presence or absence of quotes.

By default, the lower bound index value of an array's dimensions is set to one. To represent arrays with other lower bounds, the array subscript ranges can be specified explicitly before writing the array contents. This decoration consists of square brackets (`[ ]`) around each array dimension's lower and upper bounds, with a colon (`:`) delimiter character in between. The array dimension decoration is followed by an equal sign (`=`). For example:

```

SELECT f1[1][-2][3] AS e1, f1[1][-1][5] AS e2
FROM (SELECT '[1:1][-2:-1][3:5]={{{1,2,3},{4,5,6}}}'::int[] AS f1)
AS ss;

 e1 | e2
-----+-----
   1 |   6
(1 row)

```

The array output routine will include explicit dimensions in its result only when there are one or more lower bounds different from one.

If the value written for an element is `NULL` (in any case variant), the element is taken to be `NULL`. The presence of any quotes or backslashes disables this and allows the literal string value “`NULL`” to be entered. Also, for backward compatibility with pre-8.2 versions of PostgreSQL, the `array_nulls` configuration parameter can be turned `off` to suppress recognition of `NULL` as a `NULL`.

As shown previously, when writing an array value you can use double quotes around any individual array element. You *must* do so if the element value would otherwise confuse the array-value parser. For example, elements containing curly braces, commas (or the data type's delimiter character), double quotes, backslashes, or leading or trailing whitespace must be double-quoted. Empty strings and strings matching the word `NULL` must be quoted, too. To put a double quote or backslash in a quoted array element value, precede it with a backslash. Alternatively, you can avoid quotes and use backslash-escaping to protect all data characters that would otherwise be taken as array syntax.

You can add whitespace before a left brace or after a right brace. You can also add whitespace before or after any individual item string. In all of these cases the whitespace will be ignored. However, whitespace within double-quoted elements, or surrounded on both sides by non-whitespace characters of an element, is not ignored.

### Tip

The `ARRAY` constructor syntax (see Section 4.2.12) is often easier to work with than the array-literal syntax when writing array values in SQL commands. In `ARRAY`, individual element values are written the same way they would be written when not members of an array.

## 8.16. Composite Types

A *composite type* represents the structure of a row or record; it is essentially just a list of field names and their data types. PostgreSQL allows composite types to be used in many of the same ways that simple types can be used. For example, a column of a table can be declared to be of a composite type.

### 8.16.1. Declaration of Composite Types

Here are two simple examples of defining composite types:

```
CREATE TYPE complex AS (  
    r      double precision,  
    i      double precision  
);
```

```
CREATE TYPE inventory_item AS (  
    name          text,  
    supplier_id   integer,  
    price         numeric  
);
```

The syntax is comparable to `CREATE TABLE`, except that only field names and types can be specified; no constraints (such as `NOT NULL`) can presently be included. Note that the `AS` keyword is essential; without it, the system will think a different kind of `CREATE TYPE` command is meant, and you will get odd syntax errors.

Having defined the types, we can use them to create tables:

```
CREATE TABLE on_hand (  
    item      inventory_item,  
    count     integer  
);  
  
INSERT INTO on_hand VALUES (ROW('fuzzy dice', 42, 1.99), 1000);
```

or functions:

```
CREATE FUNCTION price_extension(inventory_item, integer) RETURNS
numeric
AS 'SELECT $1.price * $2' LANGUAGE SQL;

SELECT price_extension(item, 10) FROM on_hand;
```

Whenever you create a table, a composite type is also automatically created, with the same name as the table, to represent the table's row type. For example, had we said:

```
CREATE TABLE inventory_item (
    name          text,
    supplier_id   integer REFERENCES suppliers,
    price         numeric CHECK (price > 0)
);
```

then the same `inventory_item` composite type shown above would come into being as a byproduct, and could be used just as above. Note however an important restriction of the current implementation: since no constraints are associated with a composite type, the constraints shown in the table definition *do not apply* to values of the composite type outside the table. (To work around this, create a *domain* over the composite type, and apply the desired constraints as CHECK constraints of the domain.)

## 8.16.2. Constructing Composite Values

To write a composite value as a literal constant, enclose the field values within parentheses and separate them by commas. You can put double quotes around any field value, and must do so if it contains commas or parentheses. (More details appear below.) Thus, the general format of a composite constant is the following:

```
'( val1 , val2 , ... )'
```

An example is:

```
'("fuzzy dice",42,1.99)'
```

which would be a valid value of the `inventory_item` type defined above. To make a field be NULL, write no characters at all in its position in the list. For example, this constant specifies a NULL third field:

```
'("fuzzy dice",42,)'
```

If you want an empty string rather than NULL, write double quotes:

```
'(" ",42,)'
```

Here the first field is a non-NULL empty string, the third is NULL.

(These constants are actually only a special case of the generic type constants discussed in Section 4.1.2.7. The constant is initially treated as a string and passed to the composite-type input conversion routine. An explicit type specification might be necessary to tell which type to convert the constant to.)

The ROW expression syntax can also be used to construct composite values. In most cases this is considerably simpler to use than the string-literal syntax since you don't have to worry about multiple layers of quoting. We already used this method above:

```
ROW('fuzzy dice', 42, 1.99)
ROW('', 42, NULL)
```

The ROW keyword is actually optional as long as you have more than one field in the expression, so these can be simplified to:

```
('fuzzy dice', 42, 1.99)
('', 42, NULL)
```

The ROW expression syntax is discussed in more detail in Section 4.2.13.

### 8.16.3. Accessing Composite Types

To access a field of a composite column, one writes a dot and the field name, much like selecting a field from a table name. In fact, it's so much like selecting from a table name that you often have to use parentheses to keep from confusing the parser. For example, you might try to select some subfields from our `on_hand` example table with something like:

```
SELECT item.name FROM on_hand WHERE item.price > 9.99;
```

This will not work since the name `item` is taken to be a table name, not a column name of `on_hand`, per SQL syntax rules. You must write it like this:

```
SELECT (item).name FROM on_hand WHERE (item).price > 9.99;
```

or if you need to use the table name as well (for instance in a multitable query), like this:

```
SELECT (on_hand.item).name FROM on_hand WHERE (on_hand.item).price > 9.99;
```

Now the parenthesized object is correctly interpreted as a reference to the `item` column, and then the subfield can be selected from it.

Similar syntactic issues apply whenever you select a field from a composite value. For instance, to select just one field from the result of a function that returns a composite value, you'd need to write something like:

```
SELECT (my_func(...)).field FROM ...
```

Without the extra parentheses, this will generate a syntax error.

The special field name `*` means “all fields”, as further explained in Section 8.16.5.

### 8.16.4. Modifying Composite Types

Here are some examples of the proper syntax for inserting and updating composite columns. First, inserting or updating a whole column:

```
INSERT INTO mytab (complex_col) VALUES((1.1,2.2));
```

```
UPDATE mytab SET complex_col = ROW(1.1,2.2) WHERE ...;
```

The first example omits ROW, the second uses it; we could have done it either way.

We can update an individual subfield of a composite column:

```
UPDATE mytab SET complex_col.r = (complex_col).r + 1 WHERE ...;
```

Notice here that we don't need to (and indeed cannot) put parentheses around the column name appearing just after SET, but we do need parentheses when referencing the same column in the expression to the right of the equal sign.

And we can specify subfields as targets for INSERT, too:

```
INSERT INTO mytab (complex_col.r, complex_col.i) VALUES(1.1, 2.2);
```

Had we not supplied values for all the subfields of the column, the remaining subfields would have been filled with null values.

## 8.16.5. Using Composite Types in Queries

There are various special syntax rules and behaviors associated with composite types in queries. These rules provide useful shortcuts, but can be confusing if you don't know the logic behind them.

In PostgreSQL, a reference to a table name (or alias) in a query is effectively a reference to the composite value of the table's current row. For example, if we had a table `inventory_item` as shown above, we could write:

```
SELECT c FROM inventory_item c;
```

This query produces a single composite-valued column, so we might get output like:

```
          c
-----
 ("fuzzy dice",42,1.99)
(1 row)
```

Note however that simple names are matched to column names before table names, so this example works only because there is no column named `c` in the query's tables.

The ordinary qualified-column-name syntax `table_name.column_name` can be understood as applying field selection to the composite value of the table's current row. (For efficiency reasons, it's not actually implemented that way.)

When we write

```
SELECT c.* FROM inventory_item c;
```

then, according to the SQL standard, we should get the contents of the table expanded into separate columns:

```
name      | supplier_id | price
-----+-----+-----
```



```
fuzzy dice |          42 |    1.99
(1 row)
```

as if the query were

```
SELECT c.name, c.supplier_id, c.price FROM inventory_item c;
```

PostgreSQL will apply this expansion behavior to any composite-valued expression, although as shown above, you need to write parentheses around the value that `.` `*` is applied to whenever it's not a simple table name. For example, if `myfunc()` is a function returning a composite type with columns `a`, `b`, and `c`, then these two queries have the same result:

```
SELECT (myfunc(x)).* FROM some_table;
SELECT (myfunc(x)).a, (myfunc(x)).b, (myfunc(x)).c FROM some_table;
```

### Tip

PostgreSQL handles column expansion by actually transforming the first form into the second. So, in this example, `myfunc()` would get invoked three times per row with either syntax. If it's an expensive function you may wish to avoid that, which you can do with a query like:

```
SELECT m.* FROM some_table, LATERAL myfunc(x) AS m;
```

Placing the function in a `LATERAL FROM` item keeps it from being invoked more than once per row. `m.*` is still expanded into `m.a`, `m.b`, `m.c`, but now those variables are just references to the output of the `FROM` item. (The `LATERAL` keyword is optional here, but we show it to clarify that the function is getting `x` from `some_table`.)

The `composite_value.*` syntax results in column expansion of this kind when it appears at the top level of a `SELECT` output list, a `RETURNING` list in `INSERT/UPDATE/DELETE`, a `VALUES` clause, or a row constructor. In all other contexts (including when nested inside one of those constructs), attaching `.` `*` to a composite value does not change the value, since it means “all columns” and so the same composite value is produced again. For example, if `somefunc()` accepts a composite-valued argument, these queries are the same:

```
SELECT somefunc(c.*) FROM inventory_item c;
SELECT somefunc(c) FROM inventory_item c;
```

In both cases, the current row of `inventory_item` is passed to the function as a single composite-valued argument. Even though `.` `*` does nothing in such cases, using it is good style, since it makes clear that a composite value is intended. In particular, the parser will consider `c` in `c.*` to refer to a table name or alias, not to a column name, so that there is no ambiguity; whereas without `.` `*`, it is not clear whether `c` means a table name or a column name, and in fact the column-name interpretation will be preferred if there is a column named `c`.

Another example demonstrating these concepts is that all these queries mean the same thing:

```
SELECT * FROM inventory_item c ORDER BY c;
SELECT * FROM inventory_item c ORDER BY c.*;
SELECT * FROM inventory_item c ORDER BY ROW(c.*);
```

All of these `ORDER BY` clauses specify the row's composite value, resulting in sorting the rows according to the rules described in Section 9.24.6. However, if `inventory_item` contained a column

named `c`, the first case would be different from the others, as it would mean to sort by that column only. Given the column names previously shown, these queries are also equivalent to those above:

```
SELECT * FROM inventory_item c ORDER BY ROW(c.name, c.supplier_id,  
      c.price);  
SELECT * FROM inventory_item c ORDER BY (c.name, c.supplier_id,  
      c.price);
```

(The last case uses a row constructor with the key word `ROW` omitted.)

Another special syntactical behavior associated with composite values is that we can use *functional notation* for extracting a field of a composite value. The simple way to explain this is that the notations *field(table)* and *table.field* are interchangeable. For example, these queries are equivalent:

```
SELECT c.name FROM inventory_item c WHERE c.price > 1000;  
SELECT name(c) FROM inventory_item c WHERE price(c) > 1000;
```

Moreover, if we have a function that accepts a single argument of a composite type, we can call it with either notation. These queries are all equivalent:

```
SELECT somefunc(c) FROM inventory_item c;  
SELECT somefunc(c.*) FROM inventory_item c;  
SELECT c.somefunc FROM inventory_item c;
```

This equivalence between functional notation and field notation makes it possible to use functions on composite types to implement “computed fields”. An application using the last query above wouldn't need to be directly aware that `somefunc` isn't a real column of the table.

### Tip

Because of this behavior, it's unwise to give a function that takes a single composite-type argument the same name as any of the fields of that composite type. If there is ambiguity, the field-name interpretation will be chosen if field-name syntax is used, while the function will be chosen if function-call syntax is used. However, PostgreSQL versions before 11 always chose the field-name interpretation, unless the syntax of the call required it to be a function call. One way to force the function interpretation in older versions is to schema-qualify the function name, that is, write *schema.func(compositevalue)*.

## 8.16.6. Composite Type Input and Output Syntax

The external text representation of a composite value consists of items that are interpreted according to the I/O conversion rules for the individual field types, plus decoration that indicates the composite structure. The decoration consists of parentheses (`(` and `)`) around the whole value, plus commas (`,`) between adjacent items. Whitespace outside the parentheses is ignored, but within the parentheses it is considered part of the field value, and might or might not be significant depending on the input conversion rules for the field data type. For example, in:

```
' ( 42 ) '
```

the whitespace will be ignored if the field type is integer, but not if it is text.

As shown previously, when writing a composite value you can write double quotes around any individual field value. You *must* do so if the field value would otherwise confuse the composite-value

parser. In particular, fields containing parentheses, commas, double quotes, or backslashes must be double-quoted. To put a double quote or backslash in a quoted composite field value, precede it with a backslash. (Also, a pair of double quotes within a double-quoted field value is taken to represent a double quote character, analogously to the rules for single quotes in SQL literal strings.) Alternatively, you can avoid quoting and use backslash-escaping to protect all data characters that would otherwise be taken as composite syntax.

A completely empty field value (no characters at all between the commas or parentheses) represents a NULL. To write a value that is an empty string rather than NULL, write " ".

The composite output routine will put double quotes around field values if they are empty strings or contain parentheses, commas, double quotes, backslashes, or white space. (Doing so for white space is not essential, but aids legibility.) Double quotes and backslashes embedded in field values will be doubled.

### Note

Remember that what you write in an SQL command will first be interpreted as a string literal, and then as a composite. This doubles the number of backslashes you need (assuming escape string syntax is used). For example, to insert a `text` field containing a double quote and a backslash in a composite value, you'd need to write:

```
INSERT ... VALUES ( ' ( " \ " \ \ " ) ' ) ;
```

The string-literal processor removes one level of backslashes, so that what arrives at the composite-value parser looks like ( " \ " \ \ " ). In turn, the string fed to the `text` data type's input routine becomes " \ . (If we were working with a data type whose input routine also treated backslashes specially, `bytea` for example, we might need as many as eight backslashes in the command to get one backslash into the stored composite field.) Dollar quoting (see Section 4.1.2.4) can be used to avoid the need to double backslashes.

### Tip

The ROW constructor syntax is usually easier to work with than the composite-literal syntax when writing composite values in SQL commands. In ROW, individual field values are written the same way they would be written when not members of a composite.

## 8.17. Range Types

Range types are data types representing a range of values of some element type (called the range's *subtype*). For instance, ranges of `timestamp` might be used to represent the ranges of time that a meeting room is reserved. In this case the data type is `tsrange` (short for “timestamp range”), and `timestamp` is the subtype. The subtype must have a total order so that it is well-defined whether element values are within, before, or after a range of values.

Range types are useful because they represent many element values in a single range value, and because concepts such as overlapping ranges can be expressed clearly. The use of time and date ranges for scheduling purposes is the clearest example; but price ranges, measurement ranges from an instrument, and so forth can also be useful.

Every range type has a corresponding multirange type. A multirange is an ordered list of non-contiguous, non-empty, non-null ranges. Most range operators also work on multiranges, and they have a few functions of their own.

## 8.17.1. Built-in Range and Multirange Types

PostgreSQL comes with the following built-in range types:

- `int4range` — Range of integer, `int4multirange` — corresponding Multirange
- `int8range` — Range of bigint, `int8multirange` — corresponding Multirange
- `numrange` — Range of numeric, `nummultirange` — corresponding Multirange
- `tsrange` — Range of timestamp without time zone, `tsmultirange` — corresponding Multirange
- `tstzrange` — Range of timestamp with time zone, `tstzmultirange` — corresponding Multirange
- `daterange` — Range of date, `datemultirange` — corresponding Multirange

In addition, you can define your own range types; see `CREATE TYPE` for more information.

## 8.17.2. Examples

```
CREATE TABLE reservation (room int, during tsrange);
INSERT INTO reservation VALUES
    (1108, '[2010-01-01 14:30, 2010-01-01 15:30)');

-- Containment
SELECT int4range(10, 20) @> 3;

-- Overlaps
SELECT numrange(11.1, 22.2) && numrange(20.0, 30.0);

-- Extract the upper bound
SELECT upper(int8range(15, 25));

-- Compute the intersection
SELECT int4range(10, 20) * int4range(15, 25);

-- Is the range empty?
SELECT isempty(numrange(1, 5));
```

See Table 9.55 and Table 9.57 for complete lists of operators and functions on range types.

## 8.17.3. Inclusive and Exclusive Bounds

Every non-empty range has two bounds, the lower bound and the upper bound. All points between these values are included in the range. An inclusive bound means that the boundary point itself is included in the range as well, while an exclusive bound means that the boundary point is not included in the range.

In the text form of a range, an inclusive lower bound is represented by “[” while an exclusive lower bound is represented by “(”. Likewise, an inclusive upper bound is represented by “]”, while an exclusive upper bound is represented by “)”. (See Section 8.17.5 for more details.)

The functions `lower_inc` and `upper_inc` test the inclusivity of the lower and upper bounds of a range value, respectively.

## 8.17.4. Infinite (Unbounded) Ranges

The lower bound of a range can be omitted, meaning that all values less than the upper bound are included in the range, e.g., `( , 3]`. Likewise, if the upper bound of the range is omitted, then all values greater than the lower bound are included in the range. If both lower and upper bounds are omitted, all values of the element type are considered to be in the range. Specifying a missing bound as inclusive is automatically converted to exclusive, e.g., `[ , ]` is converted to `( , )`. You can think of these missing values as +/-infinity, but they are special range type values and are considered to be beyond any range element type's +/-infinity values.

Element types that have the notion of “infinity” can use them as explicit bound values. For example, with timestamp ranges, `[today , infinity)` excludes the special timestamp value `infinity`, while `[today , infinity]` include it, as does `[today , )` and `[today , ]`.

The functions `lower_inf` and `upper_inf` test for infinite lower and upper bounds of a range, respectively.

## 8.17.5. Range Input/Output

The input for a range value must follow one of the following patterns:

```
( lower-bound , upper-bound )
( lower-bound , upper-bound ]
[ lower-bound , upper-bound )
[ lower-bound , upper-bound ]
empty
```

The parentheses or brackets indicate whether the lower and upper bounds are exclusive or inclusive, as described previously. Notice that the final pattern is `empty`, which represents an empty range (a range that contains no points).

The *lower-bound* may be either a string that is valid input for the subtype, or empty to indicate no lower bound. Likewise, *upper-bound* may be either a string that is valid input for the subtype, or empty to indicate no upper bound.

Each bound value can be quoted using `"` (double quote) characters. This is necessary if the bound value contains parentheses, brackets, commas, double quotes, or backslashes, since these characters would otherwise be taken as part of the range syntax. To put a double quote or backslash in a quoted bound value, precede it with a backslash. (Also, a pair of double quotes within a double-quoted bound value is taken to represent a double quote character, analogously to the rules for single quotes in SQL literal strings.) Alternatively, you can avoid quoting and use backslash-escaping to protect all data characters that would otherwise be taken as range syntax. Also, to write a bound value that is an empty string, write `" "`, since writing nothing means an infinite bound.

Whitespace is allowed before and after the range value, but any whitespace between the parentheses or brackets is taken as part of the lower or upper bound value. (Depending on the element type, it might or might not be significant.)

### Note

These rules are very similar to those for writing field values in composite-type literals. See Section 8.16.6 for additional commentary.

Examples:

```
-- includes 3, does not include 7, and does include all points in
  between
SELECT '[3,7)>::int4range;

-- does not include either 3 or 7, but includes all points in
  between
SELECT '(3,7)>::int4range;

-- includes only the single point 4
SELECT '[4,4]>::int4range;

-- includes no points (and will be normalized to 'empty')
SELECT '[4,4)>::int4range;
```

The input for a multirange is curly brackets (`{` and `}`) containing zero or more valid ranges, separated by commas. Whitespace is permitted around the brackets and commas. This is intended to be reminiscent of array syntax, although multiranges are much simpler: they have just one dimension and there is no need to quote their contents. (The bounds of their ranges may be quoted as above however.)

Examples:

```
SELECT '{}>::int4multirange;
SELECT '{[3,7)}>::int4multirange;
SELECT '{[3,7), [8,9)}>::int4multirange;
```

## 8.17.6. Constructing Ranges and Multiranges

Each range type has a constructor function with the same name as the range type. Using the constructor function is frequently more convenient than writing a range literal constant, since it avoids the need for extra quoting of the bound values. The constructor function accepts two or three arguments. The two-argument form constructs a range in standard form (lower bound inclusive, upper bound exclusive), while the three-argument form constructs a range with bounds of the form specified by the third argument. The third argument must be one of the strings `"( )"`, `"( ]"`, `"[ )"`, or `"[ ]"`. For example:

```
-- The full form is: lower bound, upper bound, and text argument
  indicating
-- inclusivity/exclusivity of bounds.
SELECT numrange(1.0, 14.0, '()');

-- If the third argument is omitted, '[' is assumed.
SELECT numrange(1.0, 14.0);

-- Although '[' is specified here, on display the value will be
  converted to
-- canonical form, since int8range is a discrete range type (see
  below).
SELECT int8range(1, 14, '[]');

-- Using NULL for either bound causes the range to be unbounded on
  that side.
SELECT numrange(NULL, 2.2);
```

Each range type also has a multirange constructor with the same name as the multirange type. The constructor function takes zero or more arguments which are all ranges of the appropriate type. For example:

```
SELECT nummultirange();
SELECT nummultirange(numrange(1.0, 14.0));
SELECT nummultirange(numrange(1.0, 14.0), numrange(20.0, 25.0));
```

### 8.17.7. Discrete Range Types

A discrete range is one whose element type has a well-defined “step”, such as `integer` or `date`. In these types two elements can be said to be adjacent, when there are no valid values between them. This contrasts with continuous ranges, where it’s always (or almost always) possible to identify other element values between two given values. For example, a range over the `numeric` type is continuous, as is a range over `timestamp`. (Even though `timestamp` has limited precision, and so could theoretically be treated as discrete, it’s better to consider it continuous since the step size is normally not of interest.)

Another way to think about a discrete range type is that there is a clear idea of a “next” or “previous” value for each element value. Knowing that, it is possible to convert between inclusive and exclusive representations of a range’s bounds, by choosing the next or previous element value instead of the one originally given. For example, in an integer range type `[4, 8]` and `(3, 9)` denote the same set of values; but this would not be so for a range over `numeric`.

A discrete range type should have a *canonicalization* function that is aware of the desired step size for the element type. The canonicalization function is charged with converting equivalent values of the range type to have identical representations, in particular consistently inclusive or exclusive bounds. If a canonicalization function is not specified, then ranges with different formatting will always be treated as unequal, even though they might represent the same set of values in reality.

The built-in range types `int4range`, `int8range`, and `daterange` all use a canonical form that includes the lower bound and excludes the upper bound; that is, `[ )`. User-defined range types can use other conventions, however.

### 8.17.8. Defining New Range Types

Users can define their own range types. The most common reason to do this is to use ranges over subtypes not provided among the built-in range types. For example, to define a new range type of subtype `float8`:

```
CREATE TYPE floatrange AS RANGE (
    subtype = float8,
    subtype_diff = float8mi
);

SELECT '[1.234, 5.678]':floatrange;
```

Because `float8` has no meaningful “step”, we do not define a canonicalization function in this example.

When you define your own range you automatically get a corresponding multirange type.

Defining your own range type also allows you to specify a different subtype B-tree operator class or collation to use, so as to change the sort ordering that determines which values fall into a given range.

If the subtype is considered to have discrete rather than continuous values, the `CREATE TYPE` command should specify a `canonical` function. The canonicalization function takes an input range value, and must return an equivalent range value that may have different bounds and formatting. The canonical output for two ranges that represent the same set of values, for example the integer ranges `[1, 7]` and `[1, 8)`, must be identical. It doesn’t matter which representation you choose to be the canonical one, so long as two equivalent values with different formattings are always mapped to the same value with the same formatting. In addition to adjusting the inclusive/exclusive bounds format, a

canonicalization function might round off boundary values, in case the desired step size is larger than what the subtype is capable of storing. For instance, a range type over `timestamp` could be defined to have a step size of an hour, in which case the canonicalization function would need to round off bounds that weren't a multiple of an hour, or perhaps throw an error instead.

In addition, any range type that is meant to be used with GiST or SP-GiST indexes should define a subtype difference, or `subtype_diff`, function. (The index will still work without `subtype_diff`, but it is likely to be considerably less efficient than if a difference function is provided.) The subtype difference function takes two input values of the subtype, and returns their difference (i.e.,  $X$  minus  $Y$ ) represented as a `float8` value. In our example above, the function `float8mi` that underlies the regular `float8` minus operator can be used; but for any other subtype, some type conversion would be necessary. Some creative thought about how to represent differences as numbers might be needed, too. To the greatest extent possible, the `subtype_diff` function should agree with the sort ordering implied by the selected operator class and collation; that is, its result should be positive whenever its first argument is greater than its second according to the sort ordering.

A less-oversimplified example of a `subtype_diff` function is:

```
CREATE FUNCTION time_subtype_diff(x time, y time) RETURNS float8 AS
'SELECT EXTRACT(EPOCH FROM (x - y))' LANGUAGE sql STRICT IMMUTABLE;

CREATE TYPE timerange AS RANGE (
    subtype = time,
    subtype_diff = time_subtype_diff
);

SELECT '[11:10, 23:00]':timerange;
```

See `CREATE TYPE` for more information about creating range types.

## 8.17.9. Indexing

GiST and SP-GiST indexes can be created for table columns of range types. GiST indexes can be also created for table columns of multirange types. For instance, to create a GiST index:

```
CREATE INDEX reservation_idx ON reservation USING GIST (during);
```

A GiST or SP-GiST index on ranges can accelerate queries involving these range operators: `=`, `&&`, `<@`, `@>`, `<<`, `>>`, `-|-`, `&<`, and `&>`. A GiST index on multiranges can accelerate queries involving the same set of multirange operators. A GiST index on ranges and GiST index on multiranges can also accelerate queries involving these cross-type range to multirange and multirange to range operators correspondingly: `&&`, `<@`, `@>`, `<<`, `>>`, `-|-`, `&<`, and `&>`. See Table 9.55 for more information.

In addition, B-tree and hash indexes can be created for table columns of range types. For these index types, basically the only useful range operation is equality. There is a B-tree sort ordering defined for range values, with corresponding `<` and `>` operators, but the ordering is rather arbitrary and not usually useful in the real world. Range types' B-tree and hash support is primarily meant to allow sorting and hashing internally in queries, rather than creation of actual indexes.

## 8.17.10. Constraints on Ranges

While `UNIQUE` is a natural constraint for scalar values, it is usually unsuitable for range types. Instead, an exclusion constraint is often more appropriate (see `CREATE TABLE ... CONSTRAINT ... EXCLUDE`). Exclusion constraints allow the specification of constraints such as “non-overlapping” on a range type. For example:



```
CREATE TABLE reservation (  
    during tsrange,  
    EXCLUDE USING GIST (during WITH &&)  
);
```

That constraint will prevent any overlapping values from existing in the table at the same time:

```
INSERT INTO reservation VALUES  
    ('[2010-01-01 11:30, 2010-01-01 15:00)');  
INSERT 0 1  
  
INSERT INTO reservation VALUES  
    ('[2010-01-01 14:45, 2010-01-01 15:45)');  
ERROR:  conflicting key value violates exclusion constraint  
        "reservation_during_excl"  
DETAIL:  Key (during)=(["2010-01-01 14:45:00","2010-01-01  
        15:45:00")) conflicts  
with existing key (during)=(["2010-01-01 11:30:00","2010-01-01  
        15:00:00")).
```

You can use the `btree_gist` extension to define exclusion constraints on plain scalar data types, which can then be combined with range exclusions for maximum flexibility. For example, after `btree_gist` is installed, the following constraint will reject overlapping ranges only if the meeting room numbers are equal:

```
CREATE EXTENSION btree_gist;  
CREATE TABLE room_reservation (  
    room text,  
    during tsrange,  
    EXCLUDE USING GIST (room WITH =, during WITH &&)  
);  
  
INSERT INTO room_reservation VALUES  
    ('123A', '[2010-01-01 14:00, 2010-01-01 15:00)');  
INSERT 0 1  
  
INSERT INTO room_reservation VALUES  
    ('123A', '[2010-01-01 14:30, 2010-01-01 15:30)');  
ERROR:  conflicting key value violates exclusion constraint  
        "room_reservation_room_during_excl"  
DETAIL:  Key (room, during)=(123A, ["2010-01-01  
        14:30:00","2010-01-01 15:30:00")) conflicts  
with existing key (room, during)=(123A, ["2010-01-01  
        14:00:00","2010-01-01 15:00:00")).  
  
INSERT INTO room_reservation VALUES  
    ('123B', '[2010-01-01 14:30, 2010-01-01 15:30)');  
INSERT 0 1
```

## 8.18. Domain Types

A *domain* is a user-defined data type that is based on another *underlying type*. Optionally, it can have constraints that restrict its valid values to a subset of what the underlying type would allow. Otherwise it behaves like the underlying type — for example, any operator or function that can be applied to the underlying type will work on the domain type. The underlying type can be any built-in or user-defined base type, enum type, array type, composite type, range type, or another domain.

For example, we could create a domain over integers that accepts only positive integers:

```
CREATE DOMAIN posint AS integer CHECK (VALUE > 0);
CREATE TABLE mytable (id posint);
INSERT INTO mytable VALUES(1);    -- works
INSERT INTO mytable VALUES(-1);   -- fails
```

When an operator or function of the underlying type is applied to a domain value, the domain is automatically down-cast to the underlying type. Thus, for example, the result of `mytable.id - 1` is considered to be of type `integer` not `posint`. We could write `(mytable.id - 1)::posint` to cast the result back to `posint`, causing the domain's constraints to be rechecked. In this case, that would result in an error if the expression had been applied to an `id` value of 1. Assigning a value of the underlying type to a field or variable of the domain type is allowed without writing an explicit cast, but the domain's constraints will be checked.

For additional information see `CREATE DOMAIN`.

## 8.19. Object Identifier Types

Object identifiers (OIDs) are used internally by PostgreSQL as primary keys for various system tables. Type `oid` represents an object identifier. There are also several alias types for `oid`, each named *regsomething*. Table 8.26 shows an overview.

The `oid` type is currently implemented as an unsigned four-byte integer. Therefore, it is not large enough to provide database-wide uniqueness in large databases, or even in large individual tables.

The `oid` type itself has few operations beyond comparison. It can be cast to `integer`, however, and then manipulated using the standard integer operators. (Beware of possible signed-versus-unsigned confusion if you do this.)

The OID alias types have no operations of their own except for specialized input and output routines. These routines are able to accept and display symbolic names for system objects, rather than the raw numeric value that type `oid` would use. The alias types allow simplified lookup of OID values for objects. For example, to examine the `pg_attribute` rows related to a table `mytable`, one could write:

```
SELECT * FROM pg_attribute WHERE attrelid = 'mytable'::regclass;
```

rather than:

```
SELECT * FROM pg_attribute
WHERE attrelid = (SELECT oid FROM pg_class WHERE relname =
'mytable');
```

While that doesn't look all that bad by itself, it's still oversimplified. A far more complicated sub-select would be needed to select the right OID if there are multiple tables named `mytable` in different schemas. The `regclass` input converter handles the table lookup according to the schema path setting, and so it does the “right thing” automatically. Similarly, casting a table's OID to `regclass` is handy for symbolic display of a numeric OID.

**Table 8.26. Object Identifier Types**

Name	References	Description	Value Example
<code>oid</code>	any	numeric object identifier	564182

Name	References	Description	Value Example
regclass	pg_class	relation name	pg_type
regcollation	pg_collation	collation name	"POSIX"
regconfig	pg_ts_config	text search configura- tion	english
regdictionary	pg_ts_dict	text search dictionary	simple
regnamespace	pg_namespace	namespace name	pg_catalog
regoper	pg_operator	operator name	+
regoperator	pg_operator	operator with argument types	*(integer,inte- ger) or -(NONE, integer)
regproc	pg_proc	function name	sum
regprocedure	pg_proc	function with argument types	sum(int4)
regrole	pg_authid	role name	smithee
regtype	pg_type	data type name	integer

All of the OID alias types for objects that are grouped by namespace accept schema-qualified names, and will display schema-qualified names on output if the object would not be found in the current search path without being qualified. For example, `myschema.mytable` is acceptable input for `regclass` (if there is such a table). That value might be output as `myschema.mytable`, or just `mytable`, depending on the current search path. The `regproc` and `regoper` alias types will only accept input names that are unique (not overloaded), so they are of limited use; for most uses `regprocedure` or `regoperator` are more appropriate. For `regoperator`, unary operators are identified by writing `NONE` for the unused operand.

The input functions for these types allow whitespace between tokens, and will fold upper-case letters to lower case, except within double quotes; this is done to make the syntax rules similar to the way object names are written in SQL. Conversely, the output functions will use double quotes if needed to make the output be a valid SQL identifier. For example, the OID of a function named `Foo` (with upper case F) taking two integer arguments could be entered as `' "Foo" ( int, integer ) '::regprocedure`. The output would look like `"Foo" (integer, integer)`. Both the function name and the argument type names could be schema-qualified, too.

Many built-in PostgreSQL functions accept the OID of a table, or another kind of database object, and for convenience are declared as taking `regclass` (or the appropriate OID alias type). This means you do not have to look up the object's OID by hand, but can just enter its name as a string literal. For example, the `nextval(regclass)` function takes a sequence relation's OID, so you could call it like this:

<code>nextval('foo')</code>	<i>operates on sequence foo</i>
<code>nextval('FOO')</code>	<i>same as above</i>
<code>nextval('"Foo"')</code>	<i>operates on sequence Foo</i>
<code>nextval('myschema.foo')</code>	<i>operates on myschema.foo</i>
<code>nextval('"myschema".foo')</code>	<i>same as above</i>
<code>nextval('foo')</code>	<i>searches search path for foo</i>

### Note

When you write the argument of such a function as an unadorned literal string, it becomes a constant of type `regclass` (or the appropriate type). Since this is really just an OID, it will track the originally identified object despite later renaming, schema reassignment, etc. This “early binding” behavior is usually desirable for object references in column defaults and

views. But sometimes you might want “late binding” where the object reference is resolved at run time. To get late-binding behavior, force the constant to be stored as a `text` constant instead of `regclass`:

```
nextval('foo'::text)           foo is looked up at runtime
```

The `to_regclass()` function and its siblings can also be used to perform run-time lookups. See Table 9.72.

Another practical example of use of `regclass` is to look up the OID of a table listed in the `information_schema` views, which don't supply such OIDs directly. One might for example wish to call the `pg_relation_size()` function, which requires the table OID. Taking the above rules into account, the correct way to do that is

```
SELECT table_schema, table_name,
       pg_relation_size((quote_ident(table_schema) || '.' ||
                           quote_ident(table_name))::regclass)
FROM information_schema.tables
WHERE ...
```

The `quote_ident()` function will take care of double-quoting the identifiers where needed. The seemingly easier

```
SELECT pg_relation_size(table_name)
FROM information_schema.tables
WHERE ...
```

is *not recommended*, because it will fail for tables that are outside your search path or have names that require quoting.

An additional property of most of the OID alias types is the creation of dependencies. If a constant of one of these types appears in a stored expression (such as a column default expression or view), it creates a dependency on the referenced object. For example, if a column has a default expression `nextval('my_seq'::regclass)`, PostgreSQL understands that the default expression depends on the sequence `my_seq`, so the system will not let the sequence be dropped without first removing the default expression. The alternative of `nextval('my_seq'::text)` does not create a dependency. (`regrole` is an exception to this property. Constants of this type are not allowed in stored expressions.)

Another identifier type used by the system is `xid`, or transaction (abbreviated `xact`) identifier. This is the data type of the system columns `xmin` and `xmax`. Transaction identifiers are 32-bit quantities. In some contexts, a 64-bit variant `xid8` is used. Unlike `xid` values, `xid8` values increase strictly monotonically and cannot be reused in the lifetime of a database cluster. See Section 74.1 for more details.

A third identifier type used by the system is `cid`, or command identifier. This is the data type of the system columns `cmin` and `cmax`. Command identifiers are also 32-bit quantities.

A final identifier type used by the system is `tid`, or tuple identifier (row identifier). This is the data type of the system column `ctid`. A tuple ID is a pair (block number, tuple index within block) that identifies the physical location of the row within its table.

(The system columns are further explained in Section 5.5.)

## 8.20. `pg_lsn` Type

The `pg_lsn` data type can be used to store LSN (Log Sequence Number) data which is a pointer to a location in the WAL. This type is a representation of `XLogRecPtr` and an internal system type of PostgreSQL.

Internally, an LSN is a 64-bit integer, representing a byte position in the write-ahead log stream. It is printed as two hexadecimal numbers of up to 8 digits each, separated by a slash; for example, `16/B374D848`. The `pg_lsn` type supports the standard comparison operators, like `=` and `>`. Two LSNs can be subtracted using the `-` operator; the result is the number of bytes separating those write-ahead log locations. Also the number of bytes can be added into and subtracted from LSN using the `+(pg_lsn,numeric)` and `-(pg_lsn,numeric)` operators, respectively. Note that the calculated LSN should be in the range of `pg_lsn` type, i.e., between `0/0` and `FFFFFFFF/FFFFFFFF`.

## 8.21. Pseudo-Types

The PostgreSQL type system contains a number of special-purpose entries that are collectively called *pseudo-types*. A pseudo-type cannot be used as a column data type, but it can be used to declare a function's argument or result type. Each of the available pseudo-types is useful in situations where a function's behavior does not correspond to simply taking or returning a value of a specific SQL data type. Table 8.27 lists the existing pseudo-types.

**Table 8.27. Pseudo-Types**

Name	Description
<code>any</code>	Indicates that a function accepts any input data type.
<code>anyelement</code>	Indicates that a function accepts any data type (see Section 38.2.5).
<code>anyarray</code>	Indicates that a function accepts any array data type (see Section 38.2.5).
<code>anynonarray</code>	Indicates that a function accepts any non-array data type (see Section 38.2.5).
<code>anyenum</code>	Indicates that a function accepts any enum data type (see Section 38.2.5 and Section 8.7).
<code>anyrange</code>	Indicates that a function accepts any range data type (see Section 38.2.5 and Section 8.17).
<code>anymultirange</code>	Indicates that a function accepts any multirange data type (see Section 38.2.5 and Section 8.17).
<code>anycompatible</code>	Indicates that a function accepts any data type, with automatic promotion of multiple arguments to a common data type (see Section 38.2.5).
<code>anycompatiblearray</code>	Indicates that a function accepts any array data type, with automatic promotion of multiple arguments to a common data type (see Section 38.2.5).
<code>anycompatiblenonarray</code>	Indicates that a function accepts any non-array data type, with automatic promotion of multiple arguments to a common data type (see Section 38.2.5).
<code>anycompatiblerange</code>	Indicates that a function accepts any range data type, with automatic promotion of multiple arguments to a common data type (see Section 38.2.5 and Section 8.17).
<code>anycompatiblemultirange</code>	Indicates that a function accepts any multirange data type, with automatic promotion of multiple arguments to a common data type (see Section 38.2.5 and Section 8.17).
<code>cstring</code>	Indicates that a function accepts or returns a null-terminated C string.

Name	Description
<code>internal</code>	Indicates that a function accepts or returns a server-internal data type.
<code>language_handler</code>	A procedural language call handler is declared to return <code>language_handler</code> .
<code>fdw_handler</code>	A foreign-data wrapper handler is declared to return <code>fdw_handler</code> .
<code>table_am_handler</code>	A table access method handler is declared to return <code>table_am_handler</code> .
<code>index_am_handler</code>	An index access method handler is declared to return <code>index_am_handler</code> .
<code>tsm_handler</code>	A tablesample method handler is declared to return <code>tsm_handler</code> .
<code>record</code>	Identifies a function taking or returning an unspecified row type.
<code>trigger</code>	A trigger function is declared to return <code>trigger</code> .
<code>event_trigger</code>	An event trigger function is declared to return <code>event_trigger</code> .
<code>pg_ddl_command</code>	Identifies a representation of DDL commands that is available to event triggers.
<code>void</code>	Indicates that a function returns no value.
<code>unknown</code>	Identifies a not-yet-resolved type, e.g., of an undecorated string literal.

Functions coded in C (whether built-in or dynamically loaded) can be declared to accept or return any of these pseudo-types. It is up to the function author to ensure that the function will behave safely when a pseudo-type is used as an argument type.

Functions coded in procedural languages can use pseudo-types only as allowed by their implementation languages. At present most procedural languages forbid use of a pseudo-type as an argument type, and allow only `void` and `record` as a result type (plus `trigger` or `event_trigger` when the function is used as a trigger or event trigger). Some also support polymorphic functions using the polymorphic pseudo-types, which are shown above and discussed in detail in Section 38.2.5.

The `internal` pseudo-type is used to declare functions that are meant only to be called internally by the database system, and not by direct invocation in an SQL query. If a function has at least one `internal`-type argument then it cannot be called from SQL. To preserve the type safety of this restriction it is important to follow this coding rule: do not create any function that is declared to return `internal` unless it has at least one `internal` argument.

---

# Chapter 9. Functions and Operators

PostgreSQL provides a large number of functions and operators for the built-in data types. This chapter describes most of them, although additional special-purpose functions appear in relevant sections of the manual. Users can also define their own functions and operators, as described in Part V. The `psql` commands `\df` and `\do` can be used to list all available functions and operators, respectively.

The notation used throughout this chapter to describe the argument and result data types of a function or operator is like this:

```
repeat ( text , integer ) → text
```

which says that the function `repeat` takes one text and one integer argument and returns a result of type text. The right arrow is also used to indicate the result of an example, thus:

```
repeat( 'Pg' , 4 ) → PgPgPgPg
```

If you are concerned about portability then note that most of the functions and operators described in this chapter, with the exception of the most trivial arithmetic and comparison operators and some explicitly marked functions, are not specified by the SQL standard. Some of this extended functionality is present in other SQL database management systems, and in many cases this functionality is compatible and consistent between the various implementations.

## 9.1. Logical Operators

The usual logical operators are available:

```
boolean AND boolean → boolean
```

```
boolean OR boolean → boolean
```

```
NOT boolean → boolean
```

SQL uses a three-valued logic system with `true`, `false`, and `null`, which represents “unknown”. Observe the following truth tables:

<b>a</b>	<b>b</b>	<b>a AND b</b>	<b>a OR b</b>
TRUE	TRUE	TRUE	TRUE
TRUE	FALSE	FALSE	TRUE
TRUE	NULL	NULL	TRUE
FALSE	FALSE	FALSE	FALSE
FALSE	NULL	FALSE	NULL
NULL	NULL	NULL	NULL

<b>a</b>	<b>NOT a</b>
TRUE	FALSE
FALSE	TRUE
NULL	NULL

The operators `AND` and `OR` are commutative, that is, you can switch the left and right operands without affecting the result. (However, it is not guaranteed that the left operand is evaluated before the right operand. See Section 4.2.14 for more information about the order of evaluation of subexpressions.)

## 9.2. Comparison Functions and Operators

The usual comparison operators are available, as shown in Table 9.1.

**Table 9.1. Comparison Operators**

Operator	Description
<i>datatype</i> < <i>datatype</i> → boolean	Less than
<i>datatype</i> > <i>datatype</i> → boolean	Greater than
<i>datatype</i> <= <i>datatype</i> → boolean	Less than or equal to
<i>datatype</i> >= <i>datatype</i> → boolean	Greater than or equal to
<i>datatype</i> = <i>datatype</i> → boolean	Equal
<i>datatype</i> <> <i>datatype</i> → boolean	Not equal
<i>datatype</i> != <i>datatype</i> → boolean	Not equal

### Note

<> is the standard SQL notation for “not equal”. != is an alias, which is converted to <> at a very early stage of parsing. Hence, it is not possible to implement != and <> operators that do different things.

These comparison operators are available for all built-in data types that have a natural ordering, including numeric, string, and date/time types. In addition, arrays, composite types, and ranges can be compared if their component data types are comparable.

It is usually possible to compare values of related data types as well; for example `integer > bigint` will work. Some cases of this sort are implemented directly by “cross-type” comparison operators, but if no such operator is available, the parser will coerce the less-general type to the more-general type and apply the latter's comparison operator.

As shown above, all comparison operators are binary operators that return values of type `boolean`. Thus, expressions like `1 < 2 < 3` are not valid (because there is no < operator to compare a Boolean value with 3). Use the `BETWEEN` predicates shown below to perform range tests.

There are also some comparison predicates, as shown in Table 9.2. These behave much like operators, but have special syntax mandated by the SQL standard.

**Table 9.2. Comparison Predicates**

Predicate
Description
Example(s)
<i>datatype</i> BETWEEN <i>datatype</i> AND <i>datatype</i> → boolean Between (inclusive of the range endpoints). 2 BETWEEN 1 AND 3 → t 2 BETWEEN 3 AND 1 → f
<i>datatype</i> NOT BETWEEN <i>datatype</i> AND <i>datatype</i> → boolean Not between (the negation of BETWEEN). 2 NOT BETWEEN 1 AND 3 → f



<b>Predicate</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Example(s)</b>
<i>datatype</i> BETWEEN SYMMETRIC <i>datatype</i> AND <i>datatype</i> → boolean	Between, after sorting the two endpoint values.	2 BETWEEN SYMMETRIC 3 AND 1 → t
<i>datatype</i> NOT BETWEEN SYMMETRIC <i>datatype</i> AND <i>datatype</i> → boolean	Not between, after sorting the two endpoint values.	2 NOT BETWEEN SYMMETRIC 3 AND 1 → f
<i>datatype</i> IS DISTINCT FROM <i>datatype</i> → boolean	Not equal, treating null as a comparable value.	1 IS DISTINCT FROM NULL → t (rather than NULL) NULL IS DISTINCT FROM NULL → f (rather than NULL)
<i>datatype</i> IS NOT DISTINCT FROM <i>datatype</i> → boolean	Equal, treating null as a comparable value.	1 IS NOT DISTINCT FROM NULL → f (rather than NULL) NULL IS NOT DISTINCT FROM NULL → t (rather than NULL)
<i>datatype</i> IS NULL → boolean	Test whether value is null.	1.5 IS NULL → f
<i>datatype</i> IS NOT NULL → boolean	Test whether value is not null.	'null' IS NOT NULL → t
<i>datatype</i> ISNULL → boolean	Test whether value is null (nonstandard syntax).	
<i>datatype</i> NOTNULL → boolean	Test whether value is not null (nonstandard syntax).	
boolean IS TRUE → boolean	Test whether boolean expression yields true.	true IS TRUE → t NULL::boolean IS TRUE → f (rather than NULL)
boolean IS NOT TRUE → boolean	Test whether boolean expression yields false or unknown.	true IS NOT TRUE → f NULL::boolean IS NOT TRUE → t (rather than NULL)
boolean IS FALSE → boolean	Test whether boolean expression yields false.	true IS FALSE → f NULL::boolean IS FALSE → f (rather than NULL)
boolean IS NOT FALSE → boolean	Test whether boolean expression yields true or unknown.	true IS NOT FALSE → t NULL::boolean IS NOT FALSE → t (rather than NULL)

Predicate
Description
Example(s)
<pre>boolean IS UNKNOWN → boolean Test whether boolean expression yields unknown. true IS UNKNOWN → f NULL::boolean IS UNKNOWN → t (rather than NULL)</pre>
<pre>boolean IS NOT UNKNOWN → boolean Test whether boolean expression yields true or false. true IS NOT UNKNOWN → t NULL::boolean IS NOT UNKNOWN → f (rather than NULL)</pre>

The BETWEEN predicate simplifies range tests:

`a BETWEEN x AND y`

is equivalent to

`a >= x AND a <= y`

Notice that BETWEEN treats the endpoint values as included in the range. BETWEEN SYMMETRIC is like BETWEEN except there is no requirement that the argument to the left of AND be less than or equal to the argument on the right. If it is not, those two arguments are automatically swapped, so that a nonempty range is always implied.

The various variants of BETWEEN are implemented in terms of the ordinary comparison operators, and therefore will work for any data type(s) that can be compared.

### Note

The use of AND in the BETWEEN syntax creates an ambiguity with the use of AND as a logical operator. To resolve this, only a limited set of expression types are allowed as the second argument of a BETWEEN clause. If you need to write a more complex sub-expression in BETWEEN, write parentheses around the sub-expression.

Ordinary comparison operators yield null (signifying “unknown”), not true or false, when either input is null. For example, `7 = NULL` yields null, as does `7 <> NULL`. When this behavior is not suitable, use the `IS [ NOT ] DISTINCT FROM` predicates:

`a IS DISTINCT FROM b`  
`a IS NOT DISTINCT FROM b`

For non-null inputs, `IS DISTINCT FROM` is the same as the `<>` operator. However, if both inputs are null it returns false, and if only one input is null it returns true. Similarly, `IS NOT DISTINCT FROM` is identical to `=` for non-null inputs, but it returns true when both inputs are null, and false when only one input is null. Thus, these predicates effectively act as though null were a normal data value, rather than “unknown”.

To check whether a value is or is not null, use the predicates:

```
expression IS NULL
expression IS NOT NULL
```

or the equivalent, but nonstandard, predicates:

```
expression ISNULL
expression NOTNULL
```

Do *not* write `expression = NULL` because `NULL` is not “equal to” `NULL`. (The null value represents an unknown value, and it is not known whether two unknown values are equal.)

### Tip

Some applications might expect that `expression = NULL` returns true if `expression` evaluates to the null value. It is highly recommended that these applications be modified to comply with the SQL standard. However, if that cannot be done the `transform_null_equals` configuration variable is available. If it is enabled, PostgreSQL will convert `x = NULL` clauses to `x IS NULL`.

If the `expression` is row-valued, then `IS NULL` is true when the row expression itself is null or when all the row's fields are null, while `IS NOT NULL` is true when the row expression itself is non-null and all the row's fields are non-null. Because of this behavior, `IS NULL` and `IS NOT NULL` do not always return inverse results for row-valued expressions; in particular, a row-valued expression that contains both null and non-null fields will return false for both tests. In some cases, it may be preferable to write `row IS DISTINCT FROM NULL` or `row IS NOT DISTINCT FROM NULL`, which will simply check whether the overall row value is null without any additional tests on the row fields.

Boolean values can also be tested using the predicates

```
boolean_expression IS TRUE
boolean_expression IS NOT TRUE
boolean_expression IS FALSE
boolean_expression IS NOT FALSE
boolean_expression IS UNKNOWN
boolean_expression IS NOT UNKNOWN
```

These will always return true or false, never a null value, even when the operand is null. A null input is treated as the logical value “unknown”. Notice that `IS UNKNOWN` and `IS NOT UNKNOWN` are effectively the same as `IS NULL` and `IS NOT NULL`, respectively, except that the input expression must be of Boolean type.

Some comparison-related functions are also available, as shown in Table 9.3.

**Table 9.3. Comparison Functions**

Function
Description
Example(s)
<code>num_nonnulls ( VARIADIC "any" ) → integer</code> Returns the number of non-null arguments.

Function
Description
Example(s)
<code>num_nonnulls(1, NULL, 2) → 2</code>
<code>num_nulls(VARIADIC "any") → integer</code> Returns the number of null arguments.
<code>num_nulls(1, NULL, 2) → 1</code>

## 9.3. Mathematical Functions and Operators

Mathematical operators are provided for many PostgreSQL types. For types without standard mathematical conventions (e.g., date/time types) we describe the actual behavior in subsequent sections.

Table 9.4 shows the mathematical operators that are available for the standard numeric types. Unless otherwise noted, operators shown as accepting *numeric\_type* are available for all the types `smallint`, `integer`, `bigint`, `numeric`, `real`, and `double precision`. Operators shown as accepting *integral\_type* are available for the types `smallint`, `integer`, and `bigint`. Except where noted, each form of an operator returns the same data type as its argument(s). Calls involving multiple argument data types, such as `integer + numeric`, are resolved by using the type appearing later in these lists.

**Table 9.4. Mathematical Operators**

Operator
Description
Example(s)
<i>numeric_type</i> + <i>numeric_type</i> → <i>numeric_type</i> Addition <code>2 + 3 → 5</code>
+ <i>numeric_type</i> → <i>numeric_type</i> Unary plus (no operation) <code>+ 3.5 → 3.5</code>
<i>numeric_type</i> - <i>numeric_type</i> → <i>numeric_type</i> Subtraction <code>2 - 3 → -1</code>
- <i>numeric_type</i> → <i>numeric_type</i> Negation <code>- (-4) → 4</code>
<i>numeric_type</i> * <i>numeric_type</i> → <i>numeric_type</i> Multiplication <code>2 * 3 → 6</code>
<i>numeric_type</i> / <i>numeric_type</i> → <i>numeric_type</i> Division (for integral types, division truncates the result towards zero) <code>5.0 / 2 → 2.5000000000000000</code> <code>5 / 2 → 2</code> <code>(-5) / 2 → -2</code>
<i>numeric_type</i> % <i>numeric_type</i> → <i>numeric_type</i> Modulo (remainder); available for <code>smallint</code> , <code>integer</code> , <code>bigint</code> , and <code>numeric</code>

Operator	Description	Example(s)
		$5 \% 4 \rightarrow 1$
	numeric ^ numeric → numeric double precision ^ double precision → double precision Exponentiation $2 ^ 3 \rightarrow 8$ Unlike typical mathematical practice, multiple uses of ^ will associate left to right by default: $2 ^ 3 ^ 3 \rightarrow 512$ $2 ^ (3 ^ 3) \rightarrow 134217728$	
	/ double precision → double precision Square root $  / 25.0 \rightarrow 5$	
	/ double precision → double precision Cube root $   / 64.0 \rightarrow 4$	
	@ numeric_type → numeric_type Absolute value $@ -5.0 \rightarrow 5.0$	
	integral_type & integral_type → integral_type Bitwise AND $91 \& 15 \rightarrow 11$	
	integral_type   integral_type → integral_type Bitwise OR $32   3 \rightarrow 35$	
	integral_type # integral_type → integral_type Bitwise exclusive OR $17 \# 5 \rightarrow 20$	
	~ integral_type → integral_type Bitwise NOT $\sim 1 \rightarrow -2$	
	integral_type << integer → integral_type Bitwise shift left $1 << 4 \rightarrow 16$	
	integral_type >> integer → integral_type Bitwise shift right $8 >> 2 \rightarrow 2$	

Table 9.5 shows the available mathematical functions. Many of these functions are provided in multi-forms with different argument types. Except where noted, any given form of a function returns the same data type as its argument(s); cross-type cases are resolved in the same way as explained above for operators. The functions working with double precision data are mostly implemented on top of the host system's C library; accuracy and behavior in boundary cases can therefore vary depending on the host system.

**Table 9.5. Mathematical Functions**

Function Description Example(s)
<code>abs ( numeric_type ) → numeric_type</code> Absolute value <code>abs ( -17.4 ) → 17.4</code>
<code>cbrt ( double precision ) → double precision</code> Cube root <code>cbrt ( 64.0 ) → 4</code>
<code>ceil ( numeric ) → numeric</code> <code>ceil ( double precision ) → double precision</code> Nearest integer greater than or equal to argument <code>ceil ( 42.2 ) → 43</code> <code>ceil ( -42.8 ) → -42</code>
<code>ceiling ( numeric ) → numeric</code> <code>ceiling ( double precision ) → double precision</code> Nearest integer greater than or equal to argument (same as ceil) <code>ceiling ( 95.3 ) → 96</code>
<code>degrees ( double precision ) → double precision</code> Converts radians to degrees <code>degrees ( 0.5 ) → 28.64788975654116</code>
<code>div ( y numeric, x numeric ) → numeric</code> Integer quotient of $y/x$ (truncates towards zero) <code>div ( 9, 4 ) → 2</code>
<code>erf ( double precision ) → double precision</code> Error function <code>erf ( 1.0 ) → 0.8427007929497149</code>
<code>erfc ( double precision ) → double precision</code> Complementary error function ( $1 - \text{erf}(x)$ , without loss of precision for large inputs) <code>erfc ( 1.0 ) → 0.15729920705028513</code>
<code>exp ( numeric ) → numeric</code> <code>exp ( double precision ) → double precision</code> Exponential (e raised to the given power) <code>exp ( 1.0 ) → 2.7182818284590452</code>
<code>factorial ( bigint ) → numeric</code> Factorial <code>factorial ( 5 ) → 120</code>
<code>floor ( numeric ) → numeric</code> <code>floor ( double precision ) → double precision</code> Nearest integer less than or equal to argument <code>floor ( 42.8 ) → 42</code> <code>floor ( -42.8 ) → -43</code>

Function	Description	Example(s)
<code>gcd( numeric_type, numeric_type )</code>	<code>→ numeric_type</code> Greatest common divisor (the largest positive number that divides both inputs with no remainder); returns 0 if both inputs are zero; available for integer, bigint, and numeric	<code>gcd(1071, 462) → 21</code>
<code>lcm( numeric_type, numeric_type )</code>	<code>→ numeric_type</code> Least common multiple (the smallest strictly positive number that is an integral multiple of both inputs); returns 0 if either input is zero; available for integer, bigint, and numeric	<code>lcm(1071, 462) → 23562</code>
<code>ln( numeric )</code>	<code>→ numeric</code> Natural logarithm	<code>ln(2.0) → 0.6931471805599453</code>
<code>log( double precision )</code>	<code>→ double precision</code> Base 10 logarithm	<code>log(100) → 2</code>
<code>log10( numeric )</code>	<code>→ numeric</code> Base 10 logarithm (same as log)	<code>log10(1000) → 3</code>
<code>log( b numeric, x numeric )</code>	<code>→ numeric</code> Logarithm of x to base b	<code>log(2.0, 64.0) → 6.0000000000000000</code>
<code>min_scale( numeric )</code>	<code>→ integer</code> Minimum scale (number of fractional decimal digits) needed to represent the supplied value precisely	<code>min_scale(8.4100) → 2</code>
<code>mod( y numeric_type, x numeric_type )</code>	<code>→ numeric_type</code> Remainder of y/x; available for smallint, integer, bigint, and numeric	<code>mod(9, 4) → 1</code>
<code>pi()</code>	<code>→ double precision</code> Approximate value of $\pi$	<code>pi() → 3.141592653589793</code>
<code>power( a numeric, b numeric )</code>	<code>→ numeric</code> a raised to the power of b	<code>power(9, 3) → 729</code>
<code>radians( double precision )</code>	<code>→ double precision</code> Converts degrees to radians	

Function	Description	Example(s)
		<code>radians(45.0) → 0.7853981633974483</code>
	<code>round(numeric) → numeric</code> <code>round(double precision) → double precision</code> Rounds to nearest integer. For <code>numeric</code> , ties are broken by rounding away from zero. For <code>double precision</code> , the tie-breaking behavior is platform dependent, but “round to nearest even” is the most common rule. <code>round(42.4) → 42</code>	
	<code>round(v numeric, s integer) → numeric</code> Rounds <code>v</code> to <code>s</code> decimal places. Ties are broken by rounding away from zero. <code>round(42.4382, 2) → 42.44</code> <code>round(1234.56, -1) → 1230</code>	
	<code>scale(numeric) → integer</code> Scale of the argument (the number of decimal digits in the fractional part) <code>scale(8.4100) → 4</code>	
	<code>sign(numeric) → numeric</code> <code>sign(double precision) → double precision</code> Sign of the argument (-1, 0, or +1) <code>sign(-8.4) → -1</code>	
	<code>sqrt(numeric) → numeric</code> <code>sqrt(double precision) → double precision</code> Square root <code>sqrt(2) → 1.4142135623730951</code>	
	<code>trim_scale(numeric) → numeric</code> Reduces the value's scale (number of fractional decimal digits) by removing trailing zeroes <code>trim_scale(8.4100) → 8.41</code>	
	<code>trunc(numeric) → numeric</code> <code>trunc(double precision) → double precision</code> Truncates to integer (towards zero) <code>trunc(42.8) → 42</code> <code>trunc(-42.8) → -42</code>	
	<code>trunc(v numeric, s integer) → numeric</code> Truncates <code>v</code> to <code>s</code> decimal places <code>trunc(42.4382, 2) → 42.43</code>	
	<code>width_bucket(operand numeric, low numeric, high numeric, count integer) → integer</code> <code>width_bucket(operand double precision, low double precision, high double precision, count integer) → integer</code> Returns the number of the bucket in which <code>operand</code> falls in a histogram having <code>count</code> equal-width buckets spanning the range <code>low</code> to <code>high</code> . Returns 0 or <code>count</code> +1 for an input outside that range. <code>width_bucket(5.35, 0.024, 10.06, 5) → 3</code>	



Function	Description	Example(s)
<code>width_bucket ( operand anycompatible, thresholds anycompatiblearray )</code> → integer	Returns the number of the bucket in which <i>operand</i> falls given an array listing the lower bounds of the buckets. Returns 0 for an input less than the first lower bound. <i>operand</i> and the array elements can be of any type having standard comparison operators. The <i>thresholds</i> array <i>must be sorted</i> , smallest first, or unexpected results will be obtained.	<code>width_bucket(now(), array['yesterday', 'today', 'tomorrow']::timestampz[]) → 2</code>

Table 9.6 shows functions for generating random numbers.

**Table 9.6. Random Functions**

Function	Description	Example(s)
<code>random() → double precision</code>	Returns a random value in the range $0.0 \leq x < 1.0$	<code>random() → 0.897124072839091</code>
<code>random_normal([mean double precision[, stddev double precision]]) → double precision</code>	Returns a random value from the normal distribution with the given parameters; <i>mean</i> defaults to 0.0 and <i>stddev</i> defaults to 1.0	<code>random_normal(0.0, 1.0) → 0.051285419</code>
<code>setseed(double precision) → void</code>	Sets the seed for subsequent <code>random()</code> and <code>random_normal()</code> calls; argument must be between -1.0 and 1.0, inclusive	<code>setseed(0.12345)</code>

The `random()` function uses a deterministic pseudo-random number generator. It is fast but not suitable for cryptographic applications; see the `pgcrypto` module for a more secure alternative. If `setseed()` is called, the series of results of subsequent `random()` calls in the current session can be repeated by re-issuing `setseed()` with the same argument. Without any prior `setseed()` call in the same session, the first `random()` call obtains a seed from a platform-dependent source of random bits. These remarks hold equally for `random_normal()`.

Table 9.7 shows the available trigonometric functions. Each of these functions comes in two variants, one that measures angles in radians and one that measures angles in degrees.

**Table 9.7. Trigonometric Functions**

Function	Description	Example(s)
<code>acos(double precision) → double precision</code>	Inverse cosine, result in radians	<code>acos(1) → 0</code>
<code>acosd(double precision) → double precision</code>	Inverse cosine, result in degrees	

Function	Description	Example(s)
		<code>acosd(0.5) → 60</code>
	<code>asin(double precision) → double precision</code> Inverse sine, result in radians	<code>asin(1) → 1.5707963267948966</code>
	<code>asind(double precision) → double precision</code> Inverse sine, result in degrees	<code>asind(0.5) → 30</code>
	<code>atan(double precision) → double precision</code> Inverse tangent, result in radians	<code>atan(1) → 0.7853981633974483</code>
	<code>atand(double precision) → double precision</code> Inverse tangent, result in degrees	<code>atand(1) → 45</code>
	<code>atan2(y double precision, x double precision) → double precision</code> Inverse tangent of y/x, result in radians	<code>atan2(1, 0) → 1.5707963267948966</code>
	<code>atan2d(y double precision, x double precision) → double precision</code> Inverse tangent of y/x, result in degrees	<code>atan2d(1, 0) → 90</code>
	<code>cos(double precision) → double precision</code> Cosine, argument in radians	<code>cos(0) → 1</code>
	<code>cosd(double precision) → double precision</code> Cosine, argument in degrees	<code>cosd(60) → 0.5</code>
	<code>cot(double precision) → double precision</code> Cotangent, argument in radians	<code>cot(0.5) → 1.830487721712452</code>
	<code>cotd(double precision) → double precision</code> Cotangent, argument in degrees	<code>cotd(45) → 1</code>
	<code>sin(double precision) → double precision</code> Sine, argument in radians	<code>sin(1) → 0.8414709848078965</code>
	<code>sind(double precision) → double precision</code> Sine, argument in degrees	<code>sind(30) → 0.5</code>
	<code>tan(double precision) → double precision</code> Tangent, argument in radians	<code>tan(1) → 1.5574077246549023</code>

Function
Description
Example(s)
<code>tand(double precision) → double precision</code> Tangent, argument in degrees <code>tand(45) → 1</code>

### Note

Another way to work with angles measured in degrees is to use the unit transformation functions `radians()` and `degrees()` shown earlier. However, using the degree-based trigonometric functions is preferred, as that way avoids round-off error for special cases such as `sind(30)`.

Table 9.8 shows the available hyperbolic functions.

**Table 9.8. Hyperbolic Functions**

Function
Description
Example(s)
<code>sinh(double precision) → double precision</code> Hyperbolic sine <code>sinh(1) → 1.1752011936438014</code>
<code>cosh(double precision) → double precision</code> Hyperbolic cosine <code>cosh(0) → 1</code>
<code>tanh(double precision) → double precision</code> Hyperbolic tangent <code>tanh(1) → 0.7615941559557649</code>
<code>asinh(double precision) → double precision</code> Inverse hyperbolic sine <code>asinh(1) → 0.881373587019543</code>
<code>acosh(double precision) → double precision</code> Inverse hyperbolic cosine <code>acosh(1) → 0</code>
<code>atanh(double precision) → double precision</code> Inverse hyperbolic tangent <code>atanh(0.5) → 0.5493061443340548</code>

## 9.4. String Functions and Operators

This section describes functions and operators for examining and manipulating string values. Strings in this context include values of the types `character`, `character varying`, and `text`. Except where noted, these functions and operators are declared to accept and return type `text`. They will interchangeably accept `character varying` arguments. Values of type `character` will be converted to `text` before the function or operator is applied, resulting in stripping any trailing spaces in the `character` value.

SQL defines some string functions that use key words, rather than commas, to separate arguments. Details are in Table 9.9. PostgreSQL also provides versions of these functions that use the regular function invocation syntax (see Table 9.10).

### Note

The string concatenation operator (`||`) will accept non-string input, so long as at least one input is of string type, as shown in Table 9.9. For other cases, inserting an explicit coercion to `text` can be used to have non-string input accepted.

**Table 9.9. SQL String Functions and Operators**

Function/Operator Description Example(s)
<code>text    text → text</code> Concatenates the two strings. <code>'Post'    'greSQL' → PostgreSQL</code>
<code>text    anynonarray → text</code> <code>anynonarray    text → text</code> Converts the non-string input to text, then concatenates the two strings. (The non-string input cannot be of an array type, because that would create ambiguity with the array <code>  </code> operators. If you want to concatenate an array's text equivalent, cast it to <code>text</code> explicitly.) <code>'Value: '    42 → Value: 42</code>
<code>btrim(string text [, characters text]) → text</code> Removes the longest string containing only characters in <i>characters</i> (a space by default) from the start and end of <i>string</i> . <code>btrim('xyxtrimyyx', 'xyz') → trim</code>
<code>text IS [NOT] [form] NORMALIZED → boolean</code> Checks whether the string is in the specified Unicode normalization form. The optional <i>form</i> key word specifies the form: NFC (the default), NFD, NFKC, or NFKD. This expression can only be used when the server encoding is UTF8. Note that checking for normalization using this expression is often faster than normalizing possibly already normalized strings. <code>U&amp;'\0061\0308bc' IS NFD NORMALIZED → t</code>
<code>bit_length(text) → integer</code> Returns number of bits in the string (8 times the <code>octet_length</code> ). <code>bit_length('jose') → 32</code>
<code>char_length(text) → integer</code> <code>character_length(text) → integer</code> Returns number of characters in the string. <code>char_length('josé') → 4</code>
<code>lower(text) → text</code> Converts the string to all lower case, according to the rules of the database's locale. <code>lower('TOM') → tom</code>
<code>lpad(string text, length integer [, fill text]) → text</code>

Function/Operator	Description	Example(s)
	Extends the <i>string</i> to length <i>length</i> by prepending the characters <i>fill</i> (a space by default). If the <i>string</i> is already longer than <i>length</i> then it is truncated (on the right).	<code>lpad('hi', 5, 'xy') → xyxhi</code>
	<code>ltrim(string text [, characters text ]) → text</code> Removes the longest string containing only characters in <i>characters</i> (a space by default) from the start of <i>string</i> .	<code>ltrim('zzzytest', 'xyz') → test</code>
	<code>normalize(text [, form ]) → text</code> Converts the string to the specified Unicode normalization form. The optional <i>form</i> key word specifies the form: NFC (the default), NFD, NFKC, or NFKD. This function can only be used when the server encoding is UTF8.	<code>normalize(U&amp;'0061\0308bc', NFC) → U&amp;'00E4bc'</code>
	<code>octet_length(text) → integer</code> Returns number of bytes in the string.	<code>octet_length('josé') → 5</code> (if server encoding is UTF8)
	<code>octet_length(character) → integer</code> Returns number of bytes in the string. Since this version of the function accepts type <i>character</i> directly, it will not strip trailing spaces.	<code>octet_length('abc '::character(4)) → 4</code>
	<code>overlay(string text PLACING newsubstring text FROM start integer [ FOR count integer ]) → text</code> Replaces the substring of <i>string</i> that starts at the <i>start</i> 'th character and extends for <i>count</i> characters with <i>newsubstring</i> . If <i>count</i> is omitted, it defaults to the length of <i>newsubstring</i> .	<code>overlay('Txxxxas' placing 'hom' from 2 for 4) → Thomas</code>
	<code>position(substring text IN string text) → integer</code> Returns first starting index of the specified <i>substring</i> within <i>string</i> , or zero if it's not present.	<code>position('om' in 'Thomas') → 3</code>
	<code>rpadd(string text, length integer [, fill text ]) → text</code> Extends the <i>string</i> to length <i>length</i> by appending the characters <i>fill</i> (a space by default). If the <i>string</i> is already longer than <i>length</i> then it is truncated.	<code>rpadd('hi', 5, 'xy') → hixyx</code>
	<code>rtrim(string text [, characters text ]) → text</code> Removes the longest string containing only characters in <i>characters</i> (a space by default) from the end of <i>string</i> .	<code>rtrim('testxxzx', 'xyz') → test</code>
	<code>substring(string text [ FROM start integer ] [ FOR count integer ]) → text</code> Extracts the substring of <i>string</i> starting at the <i>start</i> 'th character if that is specified, and stopping after <i>count</i> characters if that is specified. Provide at least one of <i>start</i> and <i>count</i> .	<code>substring('Thomas' from 2 for 3) → hom</code> <code>substring('Thomas' from 3) → omas</code>

Function/Operator Description Example(s)
<code>substring('Thomas' for 2) → Th</code>
<code>substring(string text FROM pattern text) → text</code> Extracts the first substring matching POSIX regular expression; see Section 9.7.3. <code>substring('Thomas' from '...\$') → mas</code>
<code>substring(string text SIMILAR pattern text ESCAPE escape text) → text</code> <code>substring(string text FROM pattern text FOR escape text) → text</code> Extracts the first substring matching SQL regular expression; see Section 9.7.2. The first form has been specified since SQL:2003; the second form was only in SQL:1999 and should be considered obsolete. <code>substring('Thomas' similar '%"o_a#"' escape '#') → oma</code>
<code>trim([ LEADING   TRAILING   BOTH ] [ characters text ] FROM string text) → text</code> Removes the longest string containing only characters in <i>characters</i> (a space by default) from the start, end, or both ends (BOTH is the default) of <i>string</i> . <code>trim(both 'xyz' from 'yxTomxx') → Tom</code>
<code>trim([ LEADING   TRAILING   BOTH ] [ FROM ] string text [, characters text ])</code> <code>→ text</code> This is a non-standard syntax for <code>trim()</code> . <code>trim(both from 'yxTomxx', 'xyz') → Tom</code>
<code>upper(text) → text</code> Converts the string to all upper case, according to the rules of the database's locale. <code>upper('tom') → TOM</code>

Additional string manipulation functions and operators are available and are listed in Table 9.10. (Some of these are used internally to implement the SQL-standard string functions listed in Table 9.9.) There are also pattern-matching operators, which are described in Section 9.7, and operators for full-text search, which are described in Chapter 12.

**Table 9.10. Other String Functions and Operators**

Function/Operator Description Example(s)
<code>text ^@ text → boolean</code> Returns true if the first string starts with the second string (equivalent to the <code>start-s_with()</code> function). <code>'alphabet' ^@ 'alph' → t</code>
<code>ascii(text) → integer</code> Returns the numeric code of the first character of the argument. In UTF8 encoding, returns the Unicode code point of the character. In other multibyte encodings, the argument must be an ASCII character. <code>ascii('x') → 120</code>
<code>chr(integer) → text</code> Returns the character with the given code. In UTF8 encoding the argument is treated as a Unicode code point. In other multibyte encodings the argument must designate an ASCII character. <code>chr(0)</code> is disallowed because text data types cannot store that character.

Function/Operator Description Example(s)
<code>chr(65) → A</code>
<code>concat(val1 "any" [, val2 "any" [, ...]]) → text</code> Concatenates the text representations of all the arguments. NULL arguments are ignored. <code>concat('abcde', 2, NULL, 22) → abcde222</code>
<code>concat_ws(sep text, val1 "any" [, val2 "any" [, ...]]) → text</code> Concatenates all but the first argument, with separators. The first argument is used as the separator string, and should not be NULL. Other NULL arguments are ignored. <code>concat_ws(', ', 'abcde', 2, NULL, 22) → abcde,2,22</code>
<code>format(formatstr text [, formatarg "any" [, ...]]) → text</code> Formats arguments according to a format string; see Section 9.4.1. This function is similar to the C function <code>sprintf</code> . <code>format('Hello %s, %1\$s', 'World') → Hello World, World</code>
<code>initcap(text) → text</code> Converts the first letter of each word to upper case and the rest to lower case. Words are sequences of alphanumeric characters separated by non-alphanumeric characters. <code>initcap('hi THOMAS') → Hi Thomas</code>
<code>left(string text, n integer) → text</code> Returns first <i>n</i> characters in the string, or when <i>n</i> is negative, returns all but last $ n $ characters. <code>left('abcde', 2) → ab</code>
<code>length(text) → integer</code> Returns the number of characters in the string. <code>length('jose') → 4</code>
<code>md5(text) → text</code> Computes the MD5 hash of the argument, with the result written in hexadecimal. <code>md5('abc') → 900150983cd24fb0d6963f7d28e17f72</code>
<code>parse_ident(qualified_identifier text [, strict_mode boolean DEFAULT true]) → text[]</code> Splits <i>qualified_identifier</i> into an array of identifiers, removing any quoting of individual identifiers. By default, extra characters after the last identifier are considered an error; but if the second parameter is <code>false</code> , then such extra characters are ignored. (This behavior is useful for parsing names for objects like functions.) Note that this function does not truncate over-length identifiers. If you want truncation you can cast the result to <code>name[]</code> . <code>parse_ident('"SomeSchema".someTable') → {SomeSchema,sometable}</code>
<code>pg_client_encoding() → name</code> Returns current client encoding name. <code>pg_client_encoding() → UTF8</code>
<code>quote_ident(text) → text</code> Returns the given string suitably quoted to be used as an identifier in an SQL statement string. Quotes are added only if necessary (i.e., if the string contains non-identifier characters or would be case-folded). Embedded quotes are properly doubled. See also Example 43.1.

Function/Operator Description Example(s)
<code>quote_ident('Foo bar') → "Foo bar"</code>
<code>quote_literal(text) → text</code> Returns the given string suitably quoted to be used as a string literal in an SQL statement string. Embedded single-quotes and backslashes are properly doubled. Note that <code>quote_literal</code> returns null on null input; if the argument might be null, <code>quote_nullable</code> is often more suitable. See also Example 43.1. <code>quote_literal(E'O\'Reilly') → 'O\'Reilly'</code>
<code>quote_literal(anyelement) → text</code> Converts the given value to text and then quotes it as a literal. Embedded single-quotes and backslashes are properly doubled. <code>quote_literal(42.5) → '42.5'</code>
<code>quote_nullable(text) → text</code> Returns the given string suitably quoted to be used as a string literal in an SQL statement string; or, if the argument is null, returns NULL. Embedded single-quotes and backslashes are properly doubled. See also Example 43.1. <code>quote_nullable(NULL) → NULL</code>
<code>quote_nullable(anyelement) → text</code> Converts the given value to text and then quotes it as a literal; or, if the argument is null, returns NULL. Embedded single-quotes and backslashes are properly doubled. <code>quote_nullable(42.5) → '42.5'</code>
<code>regexp_count(string text, pattern text [, start integer [, flags text ]])</code> → integer Returns the number of times the POSIX regular expression <i>pattern</i> matches in the <i>string</i> ; see Section 9.7.3. <code>regexp_count('123456789012', '\d\d\d', 2) → 3</code>
<code>regexp_instr(string text, pattern text [, start integer [, N integer [, endoption integer [, flags text [, subexpr integer ]]]])</code> → integer Returns the position within <i>string</i> where the <i>N</i> 'th match of the POSIX regular expression <i>pattern</i> occurs, or zero if there is no such match; see Section 9.7.3. <code>regexp_instr('ABCDEF', 'c(.)(..)', 1, 1, 0, 'i') → 3</code> <code>regexp_instr('ABCDEF', 'c(.)(..)', 1, 1, 0, 'i', 2) → 5</code>
<code>regexp_like(string text, pattern text [, flags text ])</code> → boolean Checks whether a match of the POSIX regular expression <i>pattern</i> occurs within <i>string</i> ; see Section 9.7.3. <code>regexp_like('Hello World', 'world\$', 'i') → t</code>
<code>regexp_match(string text, pattern text [, flags text ])</code> → text[] Returns substrings within the first match of the POSIX regular expression <i>pattern</i> to the <i>string</i> ; see Section 9.7.3. <code>regexp_match('foobarbequebaz', '(bar)(beque)') → {bar,beque}</code>
<code>regexp_matches(string text, pattern text [, flags text ])</code> → set of text[] Returns substrings within the first match of the POSIX regular expression <i>pattern</i> to the <i>string</i> , or substrings within all such matches if the <i>g</i> flag is used; see Section 9.7.3.



Function/Operator Description Example(s)
<pre> regexp_matches('foobarbequebaz', 'ba.', 'g') →  {bar} {baz} </pre>
<pre> regexp_replace(string text, pattern text, replacement text [, start integer] [, flags text]) → text </pre> <p>Replaces the substring that is the first match to the POSIX regular expression <i>pattern</i>, or all such matches if the <i>g</i> flag is used; see Section 9.7.3.</p> <pre> regexp_replace('Thomas', '[mN]a.', 'M') → ThM </pre>
<pre> regexp_replace(string text, pattern text, replacement text, start integer, N integer [, flags text]) → text </pre> <p>Replaces the substring that is the <i>N</i>'th match to the POSIX regular expression <i>pattern</i>, or all such matches if <i>N</i> is zero; see Section 9.7.3.</p> <pre> regexp_replace('Thomas', '.', 'X', 3, 2) → ThoXas </pre>
<pre> regexp_split_to_array(string text, pattern text [, flags text]) → text[] </pre> <p>Splits <i>string</i> using a POSIX regular expression as the delimiter, producing an array of results; see Section 9.7.3.</p> <pre> regexp_split_to_array('hello world', '\s+') → {hello,world} </pre>
<pre> regexp_split_to_table(string text, pattern text [, flags text]) → setof text </pre> <p>Splits <i>string</i> using a POSIX regular expression as the delimiter, producing a set of results; see Section 9.7.3.</p> <pre> regexp_split_to_table('hello world', '\s+') →  hello world </pre>
<pre> regexp_substr(string text, pattern text [, start integer [, N integer [, flags text [, subexpr integer]]]]) → text </pre> <p>Returns the substring within <i>string</i> that matches the <i>N</i>'th occurrence of the POSIX regular expression <i>pattern</i>, or NULL if there is no such match; see Section 9.7.3.</p> <pre> regexp_substr('ABCDEF', 'c(.)(..)', 1, 1, 'i') → CDEF regexp_substr('ABCDEF', 'c(.)(..)', 1, 1, 'i', 2) → EF </pre>
<pre> repeat(string text, number integer) → text </pre> <p>Repeats <i>string</i> the specified <i>number</i> of times.</p> <pre> repeat('Pg', 4) → PgPgPgPg </pre>
<pre> replace(string text, from text, to text) → text </pre> <p>Replaces all occurrences in <i>string</i> of substring <i>from</i> with substring <i>to</i>.</p> <pre> replace('abcdefabcdef', 'cd', 'XX') → abXXefabXXef </pre>
<pre> reverse(text) → text </pre> <p>Reverses the order of the characters in the string.</p> <pre> reverse('abcde') → edcba </pre>
<pre> right(string text, n integer) → text </pre>

Function/Operator	Description	Example(s)
	Returns last <i>n</i> characters in the string, or when <i>n</i> is negative, returns all but first $ n $ characters.	<code>right('abcde', 2) → de</code>
	<code>split_part ( string text, delimiter text, n integer ) → text</code> Splits <i>string</i> at occurrences of <i>delimiter</i> and returns the <i>n</i> 'th field (counting from one), or when <i>n</i> is negative, returns the $ n $ 'th-from-last field.	<code>split_part('abc~@~def~@~ghi', '~@~', 2) → def</code> <code>split_part('abc,def,ghi,jkl', ',', -2) → ghi</code>
	<code>starts_with ( string text, prefix text ) → boolean</code> Returns true if <i>string</i> starts with <i>prefix</i> .	<code>starts_with('alphabet', 'alph') → t</code>
	<code>string_to_array ( string text, delimiter text [, null_string text ] ) → text[]</code> Splits the <i>string</i> at occurrences of <i>delimiter</i> and forms the resulting fields into a text array. If <i>delimiter</i> is NULL, each character in the <i>string</i> will become a separate element in the array. If <i>delimiter</i> is an empty string, then the <i>string</i> is treated as a single field. If <i>null_string</i> is supplied and is not NULL, fields matching that string are replaced by NULL. See also <code>array_to_string</code> .	<code>string_to_array('xx~yy~zz', '~', 'yy') → {xx,NULL,zz}</code>
	<code>string_to_table ( string text, delimiter text [, null_string text ] ) → setof text</code> Splits the <i>string</i> at occurrences of <i>delimiter</i> and returns the resulting fields as a set of text rows. If <i>delimiter</i> is NULL, each character in the <i>string</i> will become a separate row of the result. If <i>delimiter</i> is an empty string, then the <i>string</i> is treated as a single field. If <i>null_string</i> is supplied and is not NULL, fields matching that string are replaced by NULL.	<code>string_to_table('xx~^yy~^zz', '~^', 'yy') →</code>  <code>xx</code> <code>NULL</code> <code>zz</code>
	<code>strpos ( string text, substring text ) → integer</code> Returns first starting index of the specified <i>substring</i> within <i>string</i> , or zero if it's not present. (Same as <code>position(substring in string)</code> , but note the reversed argument order.)	<code>strpos('high', 'ig') → 2</code>
	<code>substr ( string text, start integer [, count integer ] ) → text</code> Extracts the substring of <i>string</i> starting at the <i>start</i> 'th character, and extending for <i>count</i> characters if that is specified. (Same as <code>substring(string from start for count)</code> .)	<code>substr('alphabet', 3) → phabet</code> <code>substr('alphabet', 3, 2) → ph</code>
	<code>to_ascii ( string text ) → text</code> <code>to_ascii ( string text, encoding name ) → text</code> <code>to_ascii ( string text, encoding integer ) → text</code>	

Function/Operator	Description	Example(s)
	Converts <i>string</i> to ASCII from another encoding, which may be identified by name or number. If <i>encoding</i> is omitted the database encoding is assumed (which in practice is the only useful case). The conversion consists primarily of dropping accents. Conversion is only supported from LATIN1, LATIN2, LATIN9, and WIN1250 encodings. (See the unaccent module for another, more flexible solution.)	<code>to_ascii('Karél') → Karel</code>
	<code>to_hex(integer) → text</code> <code>to_hex(bigint) → text</code> Converts the number to its equivalent hexadecimal representation.	<code>to_hex(2147483647) → 7fffffff</code>
	<code>translate(string text, from text, to text) → text</code> Replaces each character in <i>string</i> that matches a character in the <i>from</i> set with the corresponding character in the <i>to</i> set. If <i>from</i> is longer than <i>to</i> , occurrences of the extra characters in <i>from</i> are deleted.	<code>translate('12345', '143', 'ax') → a2x5</code>
	<code>unistr(text) → text</code> Evaluate escaped Unicode characters in the argument. Unicode characters can be specified as <code>\XXXX</code> (4 hexadecimal digits), <code>\+XXXXXX</code> (6 hexadecimal digits), <code>\uXXXX</code> (4 hexadecimal digits), or <code>\UXXXXXXXX</code> (8 hexadecimal digits). To specify a backslash, write two backslashes. All other characters are taken literally. If the server encoding is not UTF-8, the Unicode code point identified by one of these escape sequences is converted to the actual server encoding; an error is reported if that's not possible. This function provides a (non-standard) alternative to string constants with Unicode escapes (see Section 4.1.2.3).	<code>unistr('d\0061t\+000061') → data</code> <code>unistr('d\u0061t\U00000061') → data</code>

The `concat`, `concat_ws` and `format` functions are variadic, so it is possible to pass the values to be concatenated or formatted as an array marked with the `VARIADIC` keyword (see Section 38.5.6). The array's elements are treated as if they were separate ordinary arguments to the function. If the variadic array argument is `NULL`, `concat` and `concat_ws` return `NULL`, but `format` treats a `NULL` as a zero-element array.

See also the aggregate function `string_agg` in Section 9.21, and the functions for converting between strings and the `bytea` type in Table 9.13.

## 9.4.1. format

The function `format` produces output formatted according to a format string, in a style similar to the C function `sprintf`.

```
format(formatstr text [, formatarg "any" [, ...] ])
```

*formatstr* is a format string that specifies how the result should be formatted. Text in the format string is copied directly to the result, except where *format specifiers* are used. Format specifiers act as placeholders in the string, defining how subsequent function arguments should be formatted and inserted into the result. Each *formatarg* argument is converted to text according to the usual output rules for its data type, and then formatted and inserted into the result string according to the format specifier(s).

Format specifiers are introduced by a % character and have the form

`%[position][flags][width]type`

where the component fields are:

*position* (optional)

A string of the form *n*\$ where *n* is the index of the argument to print. Index 1 means the first argument after *formatstr*. If the *position* is omitted, the default is to use the next argument in sequence.

*flags* (optional)

Additional options controlling how the format specifier's output is formatted. Currently the only supported flag is a minus sign (–) which will cause the format specifier's output to be left-justified. This has no effect unless the *width* field is also specified.

*width* (optional)

Specifies the *minimum* number of characters to use to display the format specifier's output. The output is padded on the left or right (depending on the – flag) with spaces as needed to fill the width. A too-small width does not cause truncation of the output, but is simply ignored. The width may be specified using any of the following: a positive integer; an asterisk (\*) to use the next function argument as the width; or a string of the form \**n*\$ to use the *n*th function argument as the width.

If the width comes from a function argument, that argument is consumed before the argument that is used for the format specifier's value. If the width argument is negative, the result is left aligned (as if the – flag had been specified) within a field of length `abs(width)`.

*type* (required)

The type of format conversion to use to produce the format specifier's output. The following types are supported:

- *s* formats the argument value as a simple string. A null value is treated as an empty string.
- *I* treats the argument value as an SQL identifier, double-quoting it if necessary. It is an error for the value to be null (equivalent to `quote_ident`).
- *L* quotes the argument value as an SQL literal. A null value is displayed as the string NULL, without quotes (equivalent to `quote_nullable`).

In addition to the format specifiers described above, the special sequence %% may be used to output a literal % character.

Here are some examples of the basic format conversions:

```
SELECT format('Hello %s', 'World');
Result: Hello World
```

```
SELECT format('Testing %s, %s, %s, %%', 'one', 'two', 'three');
Result: Testing one, two, three, %
```

```
SELECT format('INSERT INTO %I VALUES(%L)', 'Foo bar', E'O
\'Reilly');
Result: INSERT INTO "Foo bar" VALUES('O'Reilly')
```

```
SELECT format('INSERT INTO %I VALUES(%L)', 'locations', 'C:\Program
Files');
Result: INSERT INTO locations VALUES('C:\Program Files')
```

Here are examples using *width* fields and the `-` flag:

```
SELECT format('|%10s|', 'foo');
Result: |          foo|

SELECT format('|%-10s|', 'foo');
Result: |foo          |

SELECT format('|%*s|', 10, 'foo');
Result: |          foo|

SELECT format('|%*s|', -10, 'foo');
Result: |foo          |

SELECT format('|%-*s|', 10, 'foo');
Result: |foo          |

SELECT format('|%-*s|', -10, 'foo');
Result: |foo          |
```

These examples show use of *position* fields:

```
SELECT format('Testing %3$s, %2$s, %1$s', 'one', 'two', 'three');
Result: Testing three, two, one

SELECT format('|%*2$s|', 'foo', 10, 'bar');
Result: |          bar|

SELECT format('|%1$*2$s|', 'foo', 10, 'bar');
Result: |          foo|
```

Unlike the standard C function `sprintf`, PostgreSQL's `format` function allows format specifiers with and without *position* fields to be mixed in the same format string. A format specifier without a *position* field always uses the next argument after the last argument consumed. In addition, the `format` function does not require all function arguments to be used in the format string. For example:

```
SELECT format('Testing %3$s, %2$s, %s', 'one', 'two', 'three');
Result: Testing three, two, three
```

The `%I` and `%L` format specifiers are particularly useful for safely constructing dynamic SQL statements. See Example 43.1.

## 9.5. Binary String Functions and Operators

This section describes functions and operators for examining and manipulating binary strings, that is values of type `bytea`. Many of these are equivalent, in purpose and syntax, to the text-string functions described in the previous section.

SQL defines some string functions that use key words, rather than commas, to separate arguments. Details are in Table 9.11. PostgreSQL also provides versions of these functions that use the regular function invocation syntax (see Table 9.12).

**Table 9.11. SQL Binary String Functions and Operators**

Function/Operator Description Example(s)
<code>bytea    bytea → bytea</code> Concatenates the two binary strings. <code>'\x123456'::bytea    '\x789a00bcde'::bytea →  \x123456789a00bcde</code>
<code>bit_length ( bytea ) → integer</code> Returns number of bits in the binary string (8 times the <code>octet_length</code> ). <code>bit_length( '\x123456'::bytea ) → 24</code>
<code>btrim ( bytes bytea, bytesremoved bytea ) → bytea</code> Removes the longest string containing only bytes appearing in <i>bytesremoved</i> from the start and end of <i>bytes</i> . <code>btrim( '\x1234567890'::bytea, '\x9012'::bytea ) → \x345678</code>
<code>ltrim ( bytes bytea, bytesremoved bytea ) → bytea</code> Removes the longest string containing only bytes appearing in <i>bytesremoved</i> from the start of <i>bytes</i> . <code>ltrim( '\x1234567890'::bytea, '\x9012'::bytea ) → \x34567890</code>
<code>octet_length ( bytea ) → integer</code> Returns number of bytes in the binary string. <code>octet_length( '\x123456'::bytea ) → 3</code>
<code>overlay ( bytes bytea PLACING newsubstring bytea FROM start integer [ FOR count integer ] ) → bytea</code> Replaces the substring of <i>bytes</i> that starts at the <i>start</i> 'th byte and extends for <i>count</i> bytes with <i>newsubstring</i> . If <i>count</i> is omitted, it defaults to the length of <i>newsubstring</i> . <code>overlay( '\x1234567890'::bytea placing '\002\003'::bytea from 2 for 3 ) → \x12020390</code>
<code>position ( substring bytea IN bytes bytea ) → integer</code> Returns first starting index of the specified <i>substring</i> within <i>bytes</i> , or zero if it's not present. <code>position( '\x5678'::bytea in '\x1234567890'::bytea ) → 3</code>
<code>rtrim ( bytes bytea, bytesremoved bytea ) → bytea</code> Removes the longest string containing only bytes appearing in <i>bytesremoved</i> from the end of <i>bytes</i> . <code>rtrim( '\x1234567890'::bytea, '\x9012'::bytea ) → \x12345678</code>
<code>substring ( bytes bytea [ FROM start integer ] [ FOR count integer ] ) → bytea</code> Extracts the substring of <i>bytes</i> starting at the <i>start</i> 'th byte if that is specified, and stopping after <i>count</i> bytes if that is specified. Provide at least one of <i>start</i> and <i>count</i> . <code>substring( '\x1234567890'::bytea from 3 for 2 ) → \x5678</code>
<code>trim ( [ LEADING   TRAILING   BOTH ] bytesremoved bytea FROM bytes bytea ) → bytea</code> Removes the longest string containing only bytes appearing in <i>bytesremoved</i> from the start, end, or both ends (BOTH is the default) of <i>bytes</i> .

Function/Operator Description Example(s)
<code>trim('\x9012'::bytea from '\x1234567890'::bytea) → \x345678</code>
<code>trim([ LEADING   TRAILING   BOTH ] [ FROM ] bytes bytea, bytesremoved bytea)</code> <code>→ bytea</code> This is a non-standard syntax for <code>trim()</code> . <code>trim(both from '\x1234567890'::bytea, '\x9012'::bytea) →</code> <code>\x345678</code>

Additional binary string manipulation functions are available and are listed in Table 9.12. Some of them are used internally to implement the SQL-standard string functions listed in Table 9.11.

**Table 9.12. Other Binary String Functions**

Function Description Example(s)
<code>bit_count ( bytes bytea ) → bigint</code> Returns the number of bits set in the binary string (also known as “popcount”). <code>bit_count ('\x1234567890'::bytea) → 15</code>
<code>get_bit ( bytes bytea, n bigint ) → integer</code> Extracts n'th bit from binary string. <code>get_bit ('\x1234567890'::bytea, 30) → 1</code>
<code>get_byte ( bytes bytea, n integer ) → integer</code> Extracts n'th byte from binary string. <code>get_byte ('\x1234567890'::bytea, 4) → 144</code>
<code>length ( bytea ) → integer</code> Returns the number of bytes in the binary string. <code>length ('\x1234567890'::bytea) → 5</code>
<code>length ( bytes bytea, encoding name ) → integer</code> Returns the number of characters in the binary string, assuming that it is text in the given <i>encoding</i> . <code>length('jose'::bytea, 'UTF8') → 4</code>
<code>md5 ( bytea ) → text</code> Computes the MD5 hash of the binary string, with the result written in hexadecimal. <code>md5('Th\000omas'::bytea) → 8ab2d3c9689aaf18b4958c334c82d8b1</code>
<code>set_bit ( bytes bytea, n bigint, newvalue integer ) → bytea</code> Sets n'th bit in binary string to <i>newvalue</i> . <code>set_bit ('\x1234567890'::bytea, 30, 0) → \x1234563890</code>
<code>set_byte ( bytes bytea, n integer, newvalue integer ) → bytea</code> Sets n'th byte in binary string to <i>newvalue</i> . <code>set_byte ('\x1234567890'::bytea, 4, 64) → \x1234567840</code>
<code>sha224 ( bytea ) → bytea</code> Computes the SHA-224 hash of the binary string. <code>sha224('abc'::bytea) → \x23097d223405d8228642a477bda2</code> <code>55b32aadbce4bda0b3f7e36c9da7</code>

Function	Description	Example(s)
<code>sha256 (bytea) → bytea</code>	Computes the SHA-256 hash of the binary string.	<code>sha256('abc'::bytea) → \xba7816bf8f01cfea414140de5dae2223b00361a396177a9cb410ff61f20015ad</code>
<code>sha384 (bytea) → bytea</code>	Computes the SHA-384 hash of the binary string.	<code>sha384('abc'::bytea) → \xcb00753f45a35e8bb5a03d699ac65007272c32ab0eded1631a8b605a43ff5bed8086072ba1e7cc2358bae-ca134c825a7</code>
<code>sha512 (bytea) → bytea</code>	Computes the SHA-512 hash of the binary string.	<code>sha512('abc'::bytea) → \xddaf35a193617abac-c417349ae20413112e6fa4e89a97ea20a9eeee64b55d39a2192992a274fc1a836ba3c23a3feebbd454d4423643ce80e2a9ac94fa54ca49f</code>
<code>substr (bytes bytea, start integer [, count integer]) → bytea</code>	Extracts the substring of <i>bytes</i> starting at the <i>start</i> 'th byte, and extending for <i>count</i> bytes if that is specified. (Same as <code>substring(bytes from start for count)</code> .)	<code>substr('\x1234567890'::bytea, 3, 2) → \x5678</code>

Functions `get_byte` and `set_byte` number the first byte of a binary string as byte 0. Functions `get_bit` and `set_bit` number bits from the right within each byte; for example bit 0 is the least significant bit of the first byte, and bit 15 is the most significant bit of the second byte.

For historical reasons, the function `md5` returns a hex-encoded value of type `text` whereas the SHA-2 functions return type `bytea`. Use the functions `encode` and `decode` to convert between the two. For example write `encode(sha256('abc'), 'hex')` to get a hex-encoded text representation, or `decode(md5('abc'), 'hex')` to get a `bytea` value.

Functions for converting strings between different character sets (encodings), and for representing arbitrary binary data in textual form, are shown in Table 9.13. For these functions, an argument or result of type `text` is expressed in the database's default encoding, while arguments or results of type `bytea` are in an encoding named by another argument.

**Table 9.13. Text/Binary String Conversion Functions**

Function	Description	Example(s)
<code>convert (bytes bytea, src_encoding name, dest_encoding name) → bytea</code>	Converts a binary string representing text in encoding <i>src_encoding</i> to a binary string in encoding <i>dest_encoding</i> (see Section 24.3.4 for available conversions).	<code>convert('text_in_utf8', 'UTF8', 'LATIN1') → \x746578745f696e5f75746638</code>
<code>convert_from (bytes bytea, src_encoding name) → text</code>	Converts a binary string representing text in encoding <i>src_encoding</i> to text in the database encoding (see Section 24.3.4 for available conversions).	<code>convert_from('text_in_utf8', 'UTF8') → text_in_utf8</code>



Function	Description	Example(s)
<code>convert_to ( <i>string</i> text, <i>dest_encoding</i> name )</code>	<code>→ bytea</code> Converts a text string (in the database encoding) to a binary string encoded in encoding <i>dest_encoding</i> (see Section 24.3.4 for available conversions).	<code>convert_to( 'some_text' , 'UTF8' ) → \x736f6d655f74657874</code>
<code>encode ( <i>bytes</i> bytea, <i>format</i> text )</code>	<code>→ text</code> Encodes binary data into a textual representation; supported <i>format</i> values are: <code>base64</code> , <code>escape</code> , <code>hex</code> .	<code>encode( '123\000\001' , 'base64' ) → MTIzAAE=</code>
<code>decode ( <i>string</i> text, <i>format</i> text )</code>	<code>→ bytea</code> Decodes binary data from a textual representation; supported <i>format</i> values are the same as for <code>encode</code> .	<code>decode( 'MTIzAAE=' , 'base64' ) → \x3132330001</code>

The `encode` and `decode` functions support the following textual formats:

#### base64

The `base64` format is that of RFC 2045 Section 6.8<sup>1</sup>. As per the RFC, encoded lines are broken at 76 characters. However instead of the MIME CRLF end-of-line marker, only a newline is used for end-of-line. The `decode` function ignores carriage-return, newline, space, and tab characters. Otherwise, an error is raised when `decode` is supplied invalid `base64` data — including when trailing padding is incorrect.

#### escape

The `escape` format converts zero bytes and bytes with the high bit set into octal escape sequences (`\nnn`), and it doubles backslashes. Other byte values are represented literally. The `decode` function will raise an error if a backslash is not followed by either a second backslash or three octal digits; it accepts other byte values unchanged.

#### hex

The `hex` format represents each 4 bits of data as one hexadecimal digit, 0 through `f`, writing the higher-order digit of each byte first. The `encode` function outputs the `a-f` hex digits in lower case. Because the smallest unit of data is 8 bits, there are always an even number of characters returned by `encode`. The `decode` function accepts the `a-f` characters in either upper or lower case. An error is raised when `decode` is given invalid hex data — including when given an odd number of characters.

See also the aggregate function `string_agg` in Section 9.21 and the large object functions in Section 35.4.

## 9.6. Bit String Functions and Operators

This section describes functions and operators for examining and manipulating bit strings, that is values of the types `bit` and `bit_varying`. (While only type `bit` is mentioned in these tables, values of type `bit_varying` can be used interchangeably.) Bit strings support the usual comparison operators shown in Table 9.1, as well as the operators shown in Table 9.14.

<sup>1</sup> <https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc2045#section-6.8>

**Table 9.14. Bit String Operators**

<b>Operator</b> <b>Description</b> <b>Example(s)</b>
<code>bit   bit → bit</code> Concatenation <code>B'10001'   B'011' → 10001011</code>
<code>bit &amp; bit → bit</code> Bitwise AND (inputs must be of equal length) <code>B'10001' &amp; B'01101' → 00001</code>
<code>bit   bit → bit</code> Bitwise OR (inputs must be of equal length) <code>B'10001'   B'01101' → 11101</code>
<code>bit # bit → bit</code> Bitwise exclusive OR (inputs must be of equal length) <code>B'10001' # B'01101' → 11100</code>
<code>~ bit → bit</code> Bitwise NOT <code>~ B'10001' → 01110</code>
<code>bit &lt;&lt; integer → bit</code> Bitwise shift left (string length is preserved) <code>B'10001' &lt;&lt; 3 → 01000</code>
<code>bit &gt;&gt; integer → bit</code> Bitwise shift right (string length is preserved) <code>B'10001' &gt;&gt; 2 → 00100</code>

Some of the functions available for binary strings are also available for bit strings, as shown in Table 9.15.

**Table 9.15. Bit String Functions**

<b>Function</b> <b>Description</b> <b>Example(s)</b>
<code>bit_count (bit) → bigint</code> Returns the number of bits set in the bit string (also known as “popcount”). <code>bit_count (B'10111') → 4</code>
<code>bit_length (bit) → integer</code> Returns number of bits in the bit string. <code>bit_length (B'10111') → 5</code>
<code>length (bit) → integer</code> Returns number of bits in the bit string. <code>length (B'10111') → 5</code>
<code>octet_length (bit) → integer</code> Returns number of bytes in the bit string. <code>octet_length (B'1011111011') → 2</code>

Function	Description	Example(s)
<code>overlay ( bits bit PLACING newsubstring bit FROM start integer [ FOR count integer ] ) → bit</code>	Replaces the substring of <i>bits</i> that starts at the <i>start</i> 'th bit and extends for <i>count</i> bits with <i>newsubstring</i> . If <i>count</i> is omitted, it defaults to the length of <i>newsubstring</i> .	<code>overlay(B'010101010101010' placing B'11111' from 2 for 3) → 01111101010101010</code>
<code>position ( substring bit IN bits bit ) → integer</code>	Returns first starting index of the specified <i>substring</i> within <i>bits</i> , or zero if it's not present.	<code>position(B'010' in B'000001101011' ) → 8</code>
<code>substring ( bits bit [ FROM start integer ] [ FOR count integer ] ) → bit</code>	Extracts the substring of <i>bits</i> starting at the <i>start</i> 'th bit if that is specified, and stopping after <i>count</i> bits if that is specified. Provide at least one of <i>start</i> and <i>count</i> .	<code>substring(B'110010111111' from 3 for 2) → 00</code>
<code>get_bit ( bits bit, n integer ) → integer</code>	Extracts <i>n</i> 'th bit from bit string; the first (leftmost) bit is bit 0.	<code>get_bit(B'1010101010101010' , 6) → 1</code>
<code>set_bit ( bits bit, n integer, newvalue integer ) → bit</code>	Sets <i>n</i> 'th bit in bit string to <i>newvalue</i> ; the first (leftmost) bit is bit 0.	<code>set_bit(B'1010101010101010' , 6, 0) → 101010001010101010</code>

In addition, it is possible to cast integral values to and from type `bit`. Casting an integer to `bit (n)` copies the rightmost *n* bits. Casting an integer to a bit string width wider than the integer itself will sign-extend on the left. Some examples:

```

44::bit(10)           0000101100
44::bit(3)            100
cast(-44 as bit(12))  111111010100
'1110'::bit(4)::integer  14

```

Note that casting to just “bit” means casting to `bit (1)`, and so will deliver only the least significant bit of the integer.

## 9.7. Pattern Matching

There are three separate approaches to pattern matching provided by PostgreSQL: the traditional SQL `LIKE` operator, the more recent `SIMILAR TO` operator (added in SQL:1999), and POSIX-style regular expressions. Aside from the basic “does this string match this pattern?” operators, functions are available to extract or replace matching substrings and to split a string at matching locations.

### Tip

If you have pattern matching needs that go beyond this, consider writing a user-defined function in Perl or Tcl.

### Caution

While most regular-expression searches can be executed very quickly, regular expressions can be contrived that take arbitrary amounts of time and memory to process. Be wary of accepting regular-expression search patterns from hostile sources. If you must do so, it is advisable to impose a statement timeout.

Searches using `SIMILAR TO` patterns have the same security hazards, since `SIMILAR TO` provides many of the same capabilities as POSIX-style regular expressions.

`LIKE` searches, being much simpler than the other two options, are safer to use with possibly-hostile pattern sources.

The pattern matching operators of all three kinds do not support nondeterministic collations. If required, apply a different collation to the expression to work around this limitation.

## 9.7.1. LIKE

```
string LIKE pattern [ESCAPE escape-character]  
string NOT LIKE pattern [ESCAPE escape-character]
```

The `LIKE` expression returns true if the *string* matches the supplied *pattern*. (As expected, the `NOT LIKE` expression returns false if `LIKE` returns true, and vice versa. An equivalent expression is `NOT (string LIKE pattern)`.)

If *pattern* does not contain percent signs or underscores, then the pattern only represents the string itself; in that case `LIKE` acts like the equals operator. An underscore (`_`) in *pattern* stands for (matches) any single character; a percent sign (`%`) matches any sequence of zero or more characters.

Some examples:

```
'abc' LIKE 'abc'      true  
'abc' LIKE 'a%'      true  
'abc' LIKE '_b_'     true  
'abc' LIKE 'c'       false
```

`LIKE` pattern matching always covers the entire string. Therefore, if it's desired to match a sequence anywhere within a string, the pattern must start and end with a percent sign.

To match a literal underscore or percent sign without matching other characters, the respective character in *pattern* must be preceded by the escape character. The default escape character is the backslash but a different one can be selected by using the `ESCAPE` clause. To match the escape character itself, write two escape characters.

### Note

If you have `standard_conforming_strings` turned off, any backslashes you write in literal string constants will need to be doubled. See Section 4.1.2.1 for more information.

It's also possible to select no escape character by writing `ESCAPE ''`. This effectively disables the escape mechanism, which makes it impossible to turn off the special meaning of underscore and percent signs in the pattern.

According to the SQL standard, omitting `ESCAPE` means there is no escape character (rather than defaulting to a backslash), and a zero-length `ESCAPE` value is disallowed. PostgreSQL's behavior in this regard is therefore slightly nonstandard.

The key word `ILIKE` can be used instead of `LIKE` to make the match case-insensitive according to the active locale. This is not in the SQL standard but is a PostgreSQL extension.

The operator `~~` is equivalent to `LIKE`, and `~~*` corresponds to `ILIKE`. There are also `!~~` and `!~~*` operators that represent `NOT LIKE` and `NOT ILIKE`, respectively. All of these operators are PostgreSQL-specific. You may see these operator names in `EXPLAIN` output and similar places, since the parser actually translates `LIKE` et al. to these operators.

The phrases `LIKE`, `ILIKE`, `NOT LIKE`, and `NOT ILIKE` are generally treated as operators in PostgreSQL syntax; for example they can be used in *expression operator ANY (subquery)* constructs, although an `ESCAPE` clause cannot be included there. In some obscure cases it may be necessary to use the underlying operator names instead.

Also see the starts-with operator `^@` and the corresponding `starts_with()` function, which are useful in cases where simply matching the beginning of a string is needed.

## 9.7.2. SIMILAR TO Regular Expressions

```
string SIMILAR TO pattern [ESCAPE escape-character]
string NOT SIMILAR TO pattern [ESCAPE escape-character]
```

The `SIMILAR TO` operator returns true or false depending on whether its pattern matches the given string. It is similar to `LIKE`, except that it interprets the pattern using the SQL standard's definition of a regular expression. SQL regular expressions are a curious cross between `LIKE` notation and common (POSIX) regular expression notation.

Like `LIKE`, the `SIMILAR TO` operator succeeds only if its pattern matches the entire string; this is unlike common regular expression behavior where the pattern can match any part of the string. Also like `LIKE`, `SIMILAR TO` uses `_` and `%` as wildcard characters denoting any single character and any string, respectively (these are comparable to `.` and `.` `*` in POSIX regular expressions).

In addition to these facilities borrowed from `LIKE`, `SIMILAR TO` supports these pattern-matching metacharacters borrowed from POSIX regular expressions:

- `|` denotes alternation (either of two alternatives).
- `*` denotes repetition of the previous item zero or more times.
- `+` denotes repetition of the previous item one or more times.
- `?` denotes repetition of the previous item zero or one time.
- `{m}` denotes repetition of the previous item exactly *m* times.
- `{m,}` denotes repetition of the previous item *m* or more times.
- `{m,n}` denotes repetition of the previous item at least *m* and not more than *n* times.
- Parentheses `( )` can be used to group items into a single logical item.
- A bracket expression `[ . . . ]` specifies a character class, just as in POSIX regular expressions.

Notice that the period `(.)` is not a metacharacter for `SIMILAR TO`.

As with `LIKE`, a backslash disables the special meaning of any of these metacharacters. A different escape character can be specified with `ESCAPE`, or the escape capability can be disabled by writing `ESCAPE ''`.

According to the SQL standard, omitting `ESCAPE` means there is no escape character (rather than defaulting to a backslash), and a zero-length `ESCAPE` value is disallowed. PostgreSQL's behavior in this regard is therefore slightly nonstandard.

Another nonstandard extension is that following the escape character with a letter or digit provides access to the escape sequences defined for POSIX regular expressions; see Table 9.20, Table 9.21, and Table 9.22 below.

Some examples:

```
'abc' SIMILAR TO 'abc'           true
'abc' SIMILAR TO 'a'             false
'abc' SIMILAR TO '%(b|d)%'       true
'abc' SIMILAR TO '(b|c)%'        false
'-abc-' SIMILAR TO '%\mabc\M%'    true
'xabcy' SIMILAR TO '%\mabc\M%'    false
```

The `substring` function with three parameters provides extraction of a substring that matches an SQL regular expression pattern. The function can be written according to standard SQL syntax:

```
substring(string similar pattern escape escape-character)
```

or using the now obsolete SQL:1999 syntax:

```
substring(string from pattern for escape-character)
```

or as a plain three-argument function:

```
substring(string, pattern, escape-character)
```

As with `SIMILAR TO`, the specified pattern must match the entire data string, or else the function fails and returns null. To indicate the part of the pattern for which the matching data sub-string is of interest, the pattern should contain two occurrences of the escape character followed by a double quote (`"`). The text matching the portion of the pattern between these separators is returned when the match is successful.

The escape-double-quote separators actually divide `substring`'s pattern into three independent regular expressions; for example, a vertical bar (`|`) in any of the three sections affects only that section. Also, the first and third of these regular expressions are defined to match the smallest possible amount of text, not the largest, when there is any ambiguity about how much of the data string matches which pattern. (In POSIX parlance, the first and third regular expressions are forced to be non-greedy.)

As an extension to the SQL standard, PostgreSQL allows there to be just one escape-double-quote separator, in which case the third regular expression is taken as empty; or no separators, in which case the first and third regular expressions are taken as empty.

Some examples, with `#` delimiting the return string:

```
substring('foobar' similar '%"_b#"' escape '#')    oob
substring('foobar' similar '#"_b#"' escape '#')    NULL
```

### 9.7.3. POSIX Regular Expressions

Table 9.16 lists the available operators for pattern matching using POSIX regular expressions.

**Table 9.16. Regular Expression Match Operators**

Operator	Description	Example(s)
<code>text ~ text</code>	<code>→ boolean</code> String matches regular expression, case sensitively	<code>'thomas' ~ 't.*ma' → t</code>
<code>text ~* text</code>	<code>→ boolean</code> String matches regular expression, case-insensitively	<code>'thomas' ~* 'T.*ma' → t</code>
<code>text !~ text</code>	<code>→ boolean</code> String does not match regular expression, case sensitively	<code>'thomas' !~ 't.*max' → t</code>
<code>text !~* text</code>	<code>→ boolean</code> String does not match regular expression, case-insensitively	<code>'thomas' !~* 'T.*ma' → f</code>

POSIX regular expressions provide a more powerful means for pattern matching than the `LIKE` and `SIMILAR TO` operators. Many Unix tools such as `egrep`, `sed`, or `awk` use a pattern matching language that is similar to the one described here.

A regular expression is a character sequence that is an abbreviated definition of a set of strings (a *regular set*). A string is said to match a regular expression if it is a member of the regular set described by the regular expression. As with `LIKE`, pattern characters match string characters exactly unless they are special characters in the regular expression language — but regular expressions use different special characters than `LIKE` does. Unlike `LIKE` patterns, a regular expression is allowed to match anywhere within a string, unless the regular expression is explicitly anchored to the beginning or end of the string.

Some examples:

```
'abcd' ~ 'bc'           true
'abcd' ~ 'a.c'          true — dot matches any character
'abcd' ~ 'a.*d'          true — * repeats the preceding pattern item
'abcd' ~ '(b|x)'         true — | means OR, parentheses group
'abcd' ~ '^a'            true — ^ anchors to start of string
'abcd' ~ '^(b|c)'        false — would match except for anchoring
```

The POSIX pattern language is described in much greater detail below.

The `substring` function with two parameters, `substring(string from pattern)`, provides extraction of a substring that matches a POSIX regular expression pattern. It returns null if there is no match, otherwise the first portion of the text that matched the pattern. But if the pattern contains any parentheses, the portion of the text that matched the first parenthesized subexpression (the one whose left parenthesis comes first) is returned. You can put parentheses around the whole expression if you want to use parentheses within it without triggering this exception. If you need parentheses in the pattern before the subexpression you want to extract, see the non-capturing parentheses described below.

Some examples:

```
substring('foobar' from 'o.b')    oob
```

```
substring('foobar' from 'o(.)b')    o
```

The `regexp_count` function counts the number of places where a POSIX regular expression pattern matches a string. It has the syntax `regexp_count(string, pattern [, start [, flags ]])`. *pattern* is searched for in *string*, normally from the beginning of the string, but if the *start* parameter is provided then beginning from that character index. The *flags* parameter is an optional text string containing zero or more single-letter flags that change the function's behavior. For example, including *i* in *flags* specifies case-insensitive matching. Supported flags are described in Table 9.24.

Some examples:

```
regexp_count('ABCABCAXYaxy', 'A.')      3
regexp_count('ABCABCAXYaxy', 'A.', 1, 'i') 4
```

The `regexp_instr` function returns the starting or ending position of the *N*'th match of a POSIX regular expression pattern to a string, or zero if there is no such match. It has the syntax `regexp_instr(string, pattern [, start [, N [, endoption [, flags [, subexpr ]]])`. *pattern* is searched for in *string*, normally from the beginning of the string, but if the *start* parameter is provided then beginning from that character index. If *N* is specified then the *N*'th match of the pattern is located, otherwise the first match is located. If the *endoption* parameter is omitted or specified as zero, the function returns the position of the first character of the match. Otherwise, *endoption* must be one, and the function returns the position of the character following the match. The *flags* parameter is an optional text string containing zero or more single-letter flags that change the function's behavior. Supported flags are described in Table 9.24. For a pattern containing parenthesized subexpressions, *subexpr* is an integer indicating which subexpression is of interest: the result identifies the position of the substring matching that subexpression. Subexpressions are numbered in the order of their leading parentheses. When *subexpr* is omitted or zero, the result identifies the position of the whole match regardless of parenthesized subexpressions.

Some examples:

```
regexp_instr('number of your street, town zip, FR', '[^,]+', 1, 2)
                                     23
regexp_instr('ABCDEFGHI', '(c..)(...)', 1, 1, 0, 'i', 2)
                                     6
```

The `regexp_like` function checks whether a match of a POSIX regular expression pattern occurs within a string, returning boolean true or false. It has the syntax `regexp_like(string, pattern [, flags ])`. The *flags* parameter is an optional text string containing zero or more single-letter flags that change the function's behavior. Supported flags are described in Table 9.24. This function has the same results as the `~` operator if no flags are specified. If only the *i* flag is specified, it has the same results as the `~*` operator.

Some examples:

```
regexp_like('Hello World', 'world')      false
regexp_like('Hello World', 'world', 'i')  true
```

The `regexp_match` function returns a text array of matching substring(s) within the first match of a POSIX regular expression pattern to a string. It has the syntax `regexp_match(string, pattern [, flags ])`. If there is no match, the result is NULL. If a match is found, and the *pattern* contains no parenthesized subexpressions, then the result is a single-element text array containing the substring matching the whole pattern. If a match is found, and the *pattern* contains parenthesized subexpressions, then the result is a text array whose *n*'th element is the substring matching the *n*'th parenthesized subexpression of the *pattern* (not counting “non-capturing” parentheses; see below for details). The *flags* parameter is an optional text string containing zero or more single-letter flags that change the function's behavior. Supported flags are described in Table 9.24.



Some examples:

```
SELECT regexp_match('foobarbequebaz', 'bar.*que');
      regexp_match
-----
      {barbeque}
(1 row)
```

```
SELECT regexp_match('foobarbequebaz', '(bar)(beque)');
      regexp_match
-----
      {bar,beque}
(1 row)
```

### Tip

In the common case where you just want the whole matching substring or NULL for no match, the best solution is to use `regexp_substr()`. However, `regexp_substr()` only exists in PostgreSQL version 15 and up. When working in older versions, you can extract the first element of `regexp_match()`'s result, for example:

```
SELECT (regexp_match('foobarbequebaz', 'bar.*que'))[1];
      regexp_match
-----
      barbeque
(1 row)
```

The `regexp_matches` function returns a set of text arrays of matching substring(s) within matches of a POSIX regular expression pattern to a string. It has the same syntax as `regexp_match`. This function returns no rows if there is no match, one row if there is a match and the `g` flag is not given, or *N* rows if there are *N* matches and the `g` flag is given. Each returned row is a text array containing the whole matched substring or the substrings matching parenthesized subexpressions of the *pattern*, just as described above for `regexp_match`. `regexp_matches` accepts all the flags shown in Table 9.24, plus the `g` flag which commands it to return all matches, not just the first one.

Some examples:

```
SELECT regexp_matches('foo', 'not there');
      regexp_matches
-----
(0 rows)
```

```
SELECT regexp_matches('foobarbequebazilbarfbonk', '(b[^b]+)');
      regexp_matches
-----
      {bar,beque}
      {bazil,barf}
(2 rows)
```

### Tip

In most cases `regexp_matches()` should be used with the `g` flag, since if you only want the first match, it's easier and more efficient to use `regexp_match()`. However, `regex-`

`p_match()` only exists in PostgreSQL version 10 and up. When working in older versions, a common trick is to place a `regexp_matches()` call in a sub-select, for example:

```
SELECT col1, (SELECT regexp_matches(col2, '(bar)(beque)'))
FROM tab;
```

This produces a text array if there's a match, or NULL if not, the same as `regexp_match()` would do. Without the sub-select, this query would produce no output at all for table rows without a match, which is typically not the desired behavior.

The `regexp_replace` function provides substitution of new text for substrings that match POSIX regular expression patterns. It has the syntax `regexp_replace(source, pattern, replacement [, start [, N]] [, flags])`. (Notice that *N* cannot be specified unless *start* is, but *flags* can be given in any case.) The *source* string is returned unchanged if there is no match to the *pattern*. If there is a match, the *source* string is returned with the *replacement* string substituted for the matching substring. The *replacement* string can contain `\n`, where *n* is 1 through 9, to indicate that the source substring matching the *n*'th parenthesized subexpression of the pattern should be inserted, and it can contain `&` to indicate that the substring matching the entire pattern should be inserted. Write `\\` if you need to put a literal backslash in the replacement text. *pattern* is searched for in *string*, normally from the beginning of the string, but if the *start* parameter is provided then beginning from that character index. By default, only the first match of the pattern is replaced. If *N* is specified and is greater than zero, then the *N*'th match of the pattern is replaced. If the *g* flag is given, or if *N* is specified and is zero, then all matches at or after the *start* position are replaced. (The *g* flag is ignored when *N* is specified.) The *flags* parameter is an optional text string containing zero or more single-letter flags that change the function's behavior. Supported flags (though not *g*) are described in Table 9.24.

Some examples:

```
regexp_replace('foobarbaz', 'b..', 'X')
                                fooXbaz
regexp_replace('foobarbaz', 'b..', 'X', 'g')
                                fooXX
regexp_replace('foobarbaz', 'b(..)', 'X\\1Y', 'g')
                                fooXarYXazY
regexp_replace('A PostgreSQL function', 'a|e|i|o|u', 'X', 1, 0,
'i')
                                X PXstgrXSQL fXnctXXn
regexp_replace('A PostgreSQL function', 'a|e|i|o|u', 'X', 1, 3,
'i')
                                A PostgrXSQL function
```

The `regexp_split_to_table` function splits a string using a POSIX regular expression pattern as a delimiter. It has the syntax `regexp_split_to_table(string, pattern [, flags])`. If there is no match to the *pattern*, the function returns the *string*. If there is at least one match, for each match it returns the text from the end of the last match (or the beginning of the string) to the beginning of the match. When there are no more matches, it returns the text from the end of the last match to the end of the string. The *flags* parameter is an optional text string containing zero or more single-letter flags that change the function's behavior. `regexp_split_to_table` supports the flags described in Table 9.24.

The `regexp_split_to_array` function behaves the same as `regexp_split_to_table`, except that `regexp_split_to_array` returns its result as an array of text. It has the syntax `regexp_split_to_array(string, pattern [, flags])`. The parameters are the same as for `regexp_split_to_table`.

Some examples:

```
SELECT foo FROM regexp_split_to_table('the quick brown fox jumps
over the lazy dog', '\s+') AS foo;
foo
-----
the
quick
brown
fox
jumps
over
the
lazy
dog
(9 rows)
```

```
SELECT regexp_split_to_array('the quick brown fox jumps over the
lazy dog', '\s+');
          regexp_split_to_array
-----
{the,quick,brown,fox,jumps,over,the,lazy,dog}
(1 row)
```

```
SELECT foo FROM regexp_split_to_table('the quick brown fox', '\s*')
AS foo;
foo
-----
t
h
e
q
u
i
c
k
b
r
o
w
n
f
o
x
(16 rows)
```

As the last example demonstrates, the regexp split functions ignore zero-length matches that occur at the start or end of the string or immediately after a previous match. This is contrary to the strict definition of regexp matching that is implemented by the other regexp functions, but is usually the most convenient behavior in practice. Other software systems such as Perl use similar definitions.

The `regexp_substr` function returns the substring that matches a POSIX regular expression pattern, or NULL if there is no match. It has the syntax `regexp_substr(string, pattern[, start[, N[, flags[, subexpr ]]])`. *pattern* is searched for in *string*, normally from the beginning of the string, but if the *start* parameter is provided then beginning from that character index. If *N* is specified then the *N*th match of the pattern is returned, otherwise the first match is returned. The *flags* parameter is an optional text string containing zero or more single-letter flags that change the function's behavior. Supported flags are described in Table 9.24. For a pattern containing paren-

thesized subexpressions, *subexpr* is an integer indicating which subexpression is of interest: the result is the substring matching that subexpression. Subexpressions are numbered in the order of their leading parentheses. When *subexpr* is omitted or zero, the result is the whole match regardless of parenthesized subexpressions.

Some examples:

```
regexp_substr('number of your street, town zip, FR', '[^,]+', 1, 2)
                                town zip
regexp_substr('ABCDEFGHFI', '(c..)(...)', 1, 1, 'i', 2)
                                FGH
```

### 9.7.3.1. Regular Expression Details

PostgreSQL's regular expressions are implemented using a software package written by Henry Spencer. Much of the description of regular expressions below is copied verbatim from his manual.

Regular expressions (REs), as defined in POSIX 1003.2, come in two forms: *extended* REs or EREs (roughly those of `egrep`), and *basic* REs or BREs (roughly those of `ed`). PostgreSQL supports both forms, and also implements some extensions that are not in the POSIX standard, but have become widely used due to their availability in programming languages such as Perl and Tcl. REs using these non-POSIX extensions are called *advanced* REs or AREs in this documentation. AREs are almost an exact superset of EREs, but BREs have several notational incompatibilities (as well as being much more limited). We first describe the ARE and ERE forms, noting features that apply only to AREs, and then describe how BREs differ.

#### Note

PostgreSQL always initially presumes that a regular expression follows the ARE rules. However, the more limited ERE or BRE rules can be chosen by prepending an *embedded option* to the RE pattern, as described in Section 9.7.3.4. This can be useful for compatibility with applications that expect exactly the POSIX 1003.2 rules.

A regular expression is defined as one or more *branches*, separated by `|`. It matches anything that matches one of the branches.

A branch is zero or more *quantified atoms* or *constraints*, concatenated. It matches a match for the first, followed by a match for the second, etc.; an empty branch matches the empty string.

A quantified atom is an *atom* possibly followed by a single *quantifier*. Without a quantifier, it matches a match for the atom. With a quantifier, it can match some number of matches of the atom. An *atom* can be any of the possibilities shown in Table 9.17. The possible quantifiers and their meanings are shown in Table 9.18.

A *constraint* matches an empty string, but matches only when specific conditions are met. A constraint can be used where an atom could be used, except it cannot be followed by a quantifier. The simple constraints are shown in Table 9.19; some more constraints are described later.

**Table 9.17. Regular Expression Atoms**

Atom	Description
<code>( re )</code>	(where <i>re</i> is any regular expression) matches a match for <i>re</i> , with the match noted for possible reporting
<code>( ? : re )</code>	as above, but the match is not noted for reporting (a “non-capturing” set of parentheses) (AREs only)

Atom	Description
.	matches any single character
[ <i>chars</i> ]	a <i>bracket expression</i> , matching any one of the <i>chars</i> (see Section 9.7.3.2 for more detail)
\k	(where <i>k</i> is a non-alphanumeric character) matches that character taken as an ordinary character, e.g., \\ matches a backslash character
\c	where <i>c</i> is alphanumeric (possibly followed by other characters) is an <i>escape</i> , see Section 9.7.3.3 (AREs only; in EREs and BREs, this matches <i>c</i> )
{	when followed by a character other than a digit, matches the left-brace character {; when followed by a digit, it is the beginning of a <i>bound</i> (see below)
x	where <i>x</i> is a single character with no other significance, matches that character

An RE cannot end with a backslash (\).

### Note

If you have `standard_conforming_strings` turned off, any backslashes you write in literal string constants will need to be doubled. See Section 4.1.2.1 for more information.

**Table 9.18. Regular Expression Quantifiers**

Quantifier	Matches
*	a sequence of 0 or more matches of the atom
+	a sequence of 1 or more matches of the atom
?	a sequence of 0 or 1 matches of the atom
{ <i>m</i> }	a sequence of exactly <i>m</i> matches of the atom
{ <i>m</i> , }	a sequence of <i>m</i> or more matches of the atom
{ <i>m</i> , <i>n</i> }	a sequence of <i>m</i> through <i>n</i> (inclusive) matches of the atom; <i>m</i> cannot exceed <i>n</i>
*?	non-greedy version of *
+?	non-greedy version of +
??	non-greedy version of ?
{ <i>m</i> }?	non-greedy version of { <i>m</i> }
{ <i>m</i> , }?	non-greedy version of { <i>m</i> , }
{ <i>m</i> , <i>n</i> }?	non-greedy version of { <i>m</i> , <i>n</i> }

The forms using { . . . } are known as *bounds*. The numbers *m* and *n* within a bound are unsigned decimal integers with permissible values from 0 to 255 inclusive.

*Non-greedy* quantifiers (available in AREs only) match the same possibilities as their corresponding normal (*greedy*) counterparts, but prefer the smallest number rather than the largest number of matches. See Section 9.7.3.5 for more detail.

**Note**

A quantifier cannot immediately follow another quantifier, e.g., `**` is invalid. A quantifier cannot begin an expression or subexpression or follow `^` or `|`.

**Table 9.19. Regular Expression Constraints**

Constraint	Description
<code>^</code>	matches at the beginning of the string
<code>\$</code>	matches at the end of the string
<code>(?=re)</code>	<i>positive lookahead</i> matches at any point where a substring matching <i>re</i> begins (AREs only)
<code>(?!re)</code>	<i>negative lookahead</i> matches at any point where no substring matching <i>re</i> begins (AREs only)
<code>(?&lt;=re)</code>	<i>positive lookbehind</i> matches at any point where a substring matching <i>re</i> ends (AREs only)
<code>(?&lt;!re)</code>	<i>negative lookbehind</i> matches at any point where no substring matching <i>re</i> ends (AREs only)

Lookahead and lookbehind constraints cannot contain *back references* (see Section 9.7.3.3), and all parentheses within them are considered non-capturing.

**9.7.3.2. Bracket Expressions**

A *bracket expression* is a list of characters enclosed in `[]`. It normally matches any single character from the list (but see below). If the list begins with `^`, it matches any single character *not* from the rest of the list. If two characters in the list are separated by `-`, this is shorthand for the full range of characters between those two (inclusive) in the collating sequence, e.g., `[0-9]` in ASCII matches any decimal digit. It is illegal for two ranges to share an endpoint, e.g., `a-c-e`. Ranges are very collating-sequence-dependent, so portable programs should avoid relying on them.

To include a literal `]` in the list, make it the first character (after `^`, if that is used). To include a literal `-`, make it the first or last character, or the second endpoint of a range. To use a literal `-` as the first endpoint of a range, enclose it in `[. . and . ]` to make it a collating element (see below). With the exception of these characters, some combinations using `[` (see next paragraphs), and escapes (AREs only), all other special characters lose their special significance within a bracket expression. In particular, `\` is not special when following ERE or BRE rules, though it is special (as introducing an escape) in AREs.

Within a bracket expression, a collating element (a character, a multiple-character sequence that collates as if it were a single character, or a collating-sequence name for either) enclosed in `[. . and . ]` stands for the sequence of characters of that collating element. The sequence is treated as a single element of the bracket expression's list. This allows a bracket expression containing a multiple-character collating element to match more than one character, e.g., if the collating sequence includes a `ch` collating element, then the RE `[ [. ch . ] ] *c` matches the first five characters of `chchcc`.

**Note**

PostgreSQL currently does not support multi-character collating elements. This information describes possible future behavior.

Within a bracket expression, a collating element enclosed in `[ = and = ]` is an *equivalence class*, standing for the sequences of characters of all collating elements equivalent to that one, including itself. (If

there are no other equivalent collating elements, the treatment is as if the enclosing delimiters were [ . and . ].) For example, if `o` and `^` are the members of an equivalence class, then `[ [=o= ] ]`, `[ [=^= ] ]`, and `[ o^ ]` are all synonymous. An equivalence class cannot be an endpoint of a range.

Within a bracket expression, the name of a character class enclosed in `[ : and : ]` stands for the list of all characters belonging to that class. A character class cannot be used as an endpoint of a range. The POSIX standard defines these character class names: `alnum` (letters and numeric digits), `alpha` (letters), `blank` (space and tab), `cntrl` (control characters), `digit` (numeric digits), `graph` (printable characters except space), `lower` (lower-case letters), `print` (printable characters including space), `punct` (punctuation), `space` (any white space), `upper` (upper-case letters), and `xdigit` (hexadecimal digits). The behavior of these standard character classes is generally consistent across platforms for characters in the 7-bit ASCII set. Whether a given non-ASCII character is considered to belong to one of these classes depends on the *collation* that is used for the regular-expression function or operator (see Section 24.2), or by default on the database's `LC_CTYPE` locale setting (see Section 24.1). The classification of non-ASCII characters can vary across platforms even in similarly-named locales. (But the `C` locale never considers any non-ASCII characters to belong to any of these classes.) In addition to these standard character classes, PostgreSQL defines the `word` character class, which is the same as `alnum` plus the underscore (`_`) character, and the `ascii` character class, which contains exactly the 7-bit ASCII set.

There are two special cases of bracket expressions: the bracket expressions `[ [ : < : ] ]` and `[ [ : > : ] ]` are constraints, matching empty strings at the beginning and end of a word respectively. A word is defined as a sequence of word characters that is neither preceded nor followed by word characters. A word character is any character belonging to the `word` character class, that is, any letter, digit, or underscore. This is an extension, compatible with but not specified by POSIX 1003.2, and should be used with caution in software intended to be portable to other systems. The constraint escapes described below are usually preferable; they are no more standard, but are easier to type.

### 9.7.3.3. Regular Expression Escapes

*Escapes* are special sequences beginning with `\` followed by an alphanumeric character. Escapes come in several varieties: character entry, class shorthands, constraint escapes, and back references. A `\` followed by an alphanumeric character but not constituting a valid escape is illegal in AREs. In EREs, there are no escapes: outside a bracket expression, a `\` followed by an alphanumeric character merely stands for that character as an ordinary character, and inside a bracket expression, `\` is an ordinary character. (The latter is the one actual incompatibility between EREs and AREs.)

*Character-entry escapes* exist to make it easier to specify non-printing and other inconvenient characters in REs. They are shown in Table 9.20.

*Class-shorthand escapes* provide shorthands for certain commonly-used character classes. They are shown in Table 9.21.

A *constraint escape* is a constraint, matching the empty string if specific conditions are met, written as an escape. They are shown in Table 9.22.

A *back reference* (`\n`) matches the same string matched by the previous parenthesized subexpression specified by the number *n* (see Table 9.23). For example, `( [bc] ) \1` matches `bb` or `cc` but not `bc` or `cb`. The subexpression must entirely precede the back reference in the RE. Subexpressions are numbered in the order of their leading parentheses. Non-capturing parentheses do not define subexpressions. The back reference considers only the string characters matched by the referenced subexpression, not any constraints contained in it. For example, `( ^\d ) \1` will match `22`.

**Table 9.20. Regular Expression Character-Entry Escapes**

Escape	Description
<code>\a</code>	alert (bell) character, as in C
<code>\b</code>	backspace, as in C

Escape	Description
<code>\B</code>	synonym for backslash ( <code>\</code> ) to help reduce the need for backslash doubling
<code>\cX</code>	(where <i>X</i> is any character) the character whose low-order 5 bits are the same as those of <i>X</i> , and whose other bits are all zero
<code>\e</code>	the character whose collating-sequence name is <code>ESC</code> , or failing that, the character with octal value 033
<code>\f</code>	form feed, as in C
<code>\n</code>	newline, as in C
<code>\r</code>	carriage return, as in C
<code>\t</code>	horizontal tab, as in C
<code>\uxyz</code>	(where <i>xyz</i> is exactly four hexadecimal digits) the character whose hexadecimal value is <code>0xyz</code>
<code>\Ustuvwxyz</code>	(where <i>stuvwxyz</i> is exactly eight hexadecimal digits) the character whose hexadecimal value is <code>0xstuvwxyz</code>
<code>\v</code>	vertical tab, as in C
<code>\xhhh</code>	(where <i>hhh</i> is any sequence of hexadecimal digits) the character whose hexadecimal value is <code>0xhhh</code> (a single character no matter how many hexadecimal digits are used)
<code>\0</code>	the character whose value is 0 (the null byte)
<code>\xy</code>	(where <i>xy</i> is exactly two octal digits, and is not a <i>back reference</i> ) the character whose octal value is <code>0xy</code>
<code>\xyz</code>	(where <i>xyz</i> is exactly three octal digits, and is not a <i>back reference</i> ) the character whose octal value is <code>0xyz</code>

Hexadecimal digits are 0-9, a-f, and A-F. Octal digits are 0-7.

Numeric character-entry escapes specifying values outside the ASCII range (0–127) have meanings dependent on the database encoding. When the encoding is UTF-8, escape values are equivalent to Unicode code points, for example `\u1234` means the character U+1234. For other multibyte encodings, character-entry escapes usually just specify the concatenation of the byte values for the character. If the escape value does not correspond to any legal character in the database encoding, no error will be raised, but it will never match any data.

The character-entry escapes are always taken as ordinary characters. For example, `\135` is `]` in ASCII, but `\135` does not terminate a bracket expression.

**Table 9.21. Regular Expression Class-Shorthand Escapes**

Escape	Description
<code>\d</code>	matches any digit, like <code>[[:digit:]]</code>
<code>\s</code>	matches any whitespace character, like <code>[[:space:]]</code>
<code>\w</code>	matches any word character, like <code>[[:word:]]</code>
<code>\D</code>	matches any non-digit, like <code>[^[:digit:]]</code>



Escape	Description
\S	matches any non-whitespace character, like <code>[^[:space:]]</code>
\W	matches any non-word character, like <code>[^[:word:]]</code>

The class-shorthand escapes also work within bracket expressions, although the definitions shown above are not quite syntactically valid in that context. For example, `[a-c\d]` is equivalent to `[a-c[:digit:]]`.

**Table 9.22. Regular Expression Constraint Escapes**

Escape	Description
\A	matches only at the beginning of the string (see Section 9.7.3.5 for how this differs from <code>^</code> )
\b	matches only at the beginning of a word
\B	matches only at the end of a word
\b	matches only at the beginning or end of a word
\B	matches only at a point that is not the beginning or end of a word
\Z	matches only at the end of the string (see Section 9.7.3.5 for how this differs from <code>\$</code> )

A word is defined as in the specification of `[[:<:]]` and `[[:>:]]` above. Constraint escapes are illegal within bracket expressions.

**Table 9.23. Regular Expression Back References**

Escape	Description
\m	(where <i>m</i> is a nonzero digit) a back reference to the <i>m</i> 'th subexpression
\mnn	(where <i>m</i> is a nonzero digit, and <i>nn</i> is some more digits, and the decimal value <i>mnn</i> is not greater than the number of closing capturing parentheses seen so far) a back reference to the <i>mnn</i> 'th subexpression

### Note

There is an inherent ambiguity between octal character-entry escapes and back references, which is resolved by the following heuristics, as hinted at above. A leading zero always indicates an octal escape. A single non-zero digit, not followed by another digit, is always taken as a back reference. A multi-digit sequence not starting with a zero is taken as a back reference if it comes after a suitable subexpression (i.e., the number is in the legal range for a back reference), and otherwise is taken as octal.

## 9.7.3.4. Regular Expression Metasyntax

In addition to the main syntax described above, there are some special forms and miscellaneous syntactic facilities available.

An RE can begin with one of two special *director* prefixes. If an RE begins with `***:`, the rest of the RE is taken as an ARE. (This normally has no effect in PostgreSQL, since REs are assumed to be

AREs; but it does have an effect if ERE or BRE mode had been specified by the *flags* parameter to a regex function.) If an RE begins with `***=`, the rest of the RE is taken to be a literal string, with all characters considered ordinary characters.

An ARE can begin with *embedded options*: a sequence `(?xyz)` (where *xyz* is one or more alphabetic characters) specifies options affecting the rest of the RE. These options override any previously determined options — in particular, they can override the case-sensitivity behavior implied by a regex operator, or the *flags* parameter to a regex function. The available option letters are shown in Table 9.24. Note that these same option letters are used in the *flags* parameters of regex functions.

**Table 9.24. ARE Embedded-Option Letters**

Option	Description
b	rest of RE is a BRE
c	case-sensitive matching (overrides operator type)
e	rest of RE is an ERE
i	case-insensitive matching (see Section 9.7.3.5) (overrides operator type)
m	historical synonym for n
n	newline-sensitive matching (see Section 9.7.3.5)
p	partial newline-sensitive matching (see Section 9.7.3.5)
q	rest of RE is a literal (“quoted”) string, all ordinary characters
s	non-newline-sensitive matching (default)
t	tight syntax (default; see below)
w	inverse partial newline-sensitive (“weird”) matching (see Section 9.7.3.5)
x	expanded syntax (see below)

Embedded options take effect at the `)` terminating the sequence. They can appear only at the start of an ARE (after the `*** :` director if any).

In addition to the usual (*tight*) RE syntax, in which all characters are significant, there is an *expanded* syntax, available by specifying the embedded `x` option. In the expanded syntax, white-space characters in the RE are ignored, as are all characters between a `#` and the following newline (or the end of the RE). This permits paragraphing and commenting a complex RE. There are three exceptions to that basic rule:

- a white-space character or `#` preceded by `\` is retained
- white space or `#` within a bracket expression is retained
- white space and comments cannot appear within multi-character symbols, such as `(?:`

For this purpose, white-space characters are blank, tab, newline, and any character that belongs to the *space* character class.

Finally, in an ARE, outside bracket expressions, the sequence `(?#ttt)` (where *ttt* is any text not containing a `)`) is a comment, completely ignored. Again, this is not allowed between the characters of multi-character symbols, like `(?:`. Such comments are more a historical artifact than a useful facility, and their use is deprecated; use the expanded syntax instead.

*None* of these metasyntax extensions is available if an initial `***=` director has specified that the user's input be treated as a literal string rather than as an RE.

### 9.7.3.5. Regular Expression Matching Rules

In the event that an RE could match more than one substring of a given string, the RE matches the one starting earliest in the string. If the RE could match more than one substring starting at that point, either the longest possible match or the shortest possible match will be taken, depending on whether the RE is *greedy* or *non-greedy*.

Whether an RE is greedy or not is determined by the following rules:

- Most atoms, and all constraints, have no greediness attribute (because they cannot match variable amounts of text anyway).
- Adding parentheses around an RE does not change its greediness.
- A quantified atom with a fixed-repetition quantifier ( $\{m\}$  or  $\{m\}?$ ) has the same greediness (possibly none) as the atom itself.
- A quantified atom with other normal quantifiers (including  $\{m, n\}$  with  $m$  equal to  $n$ ) is greedy (prefers longest match).
- A quantified atom with a non-greedy quantifier (including  $\{m, n\}?$  with  $m$  equal to  $n$ ) is non-greedy (prefers shortest match).
- A branch — that is, an RE that has no top-level `|` operator — has the same greediness as the first quantified atom in it that has a greediness attribute.
- An RE consisting of two or more branches connected by the `|` operator is always greedy.

The above rules associate greediness attributes not only with individual quantified atoms, but with branches and entire REs that contain quantified atoms. What that means is that the matching is done in such a way that the branch, or whole RE, matches the longest or shortest possible substring *as a whole*. Once the length of the entire match is determined, the part of it that matches any particular subexpression is determined on the basis of the greediness attribute of that subexpression, with subexpressions starting earlier in the RE taking priority over ones starting later.

An example of what this means:

```
SELECT SUBSTRING('XY1234Z', 'Y*([0-9]{1,3})');
Result: 123
SELECT SUBSTRING('XY1234Z', 'Y?*([0-9]{1,3})');
Result: 1
```

In the first case, the RE as a whole is greedy because `Y*` is greedy. It can match beginning at the `Y`, and it matches the longest possible string starting there, i.e., `Y123`. The output is the parenthesized part of that, or `123`. In the second case, the RE as a whole is non-greedy because `Y*?` is non-greedy. It can match beginning at the `Y`, and it matches the shortest possible string starting there, i.e., `Y1`. The subexpression `[0-9]{1,3}` is greedy but it cannot change the decision as to the overall match length; so it is forced to match just `1`.

In short, when an RE contains both greedy and non-greedy subexpressions, the total match length is either as long as possible or as short as possible, according to the attribute assigned to the whole RE. The attributes assigned to the subexpressions only affect how much of that match they are allowed to “eat” relative to each other.

The quantifiers  $\{1, 1\}$  and  $\{1, 1\}?$  can be used to force greediness or non-greediness, respectively, on a subexpression or a whole RE. This is useful when you need the whole RE to have a greediness attribute different from what's deduced from its elements. As an example, suppose that we are trying to separate a string containing some digits into the digits and the parts before and after them. We might try to do that like this:

```
SELECT regexp_match('abc01234xyz', '(.*) (\d+) (.*)');
Result: {abc0123,4,xyz}
```

That didn't work: the first `.` is greedy so it “eats” as much as it can, leaving the `\d+` to match at the last possible place, the last digit. We might try to fix that by making it non-greedy:

```
SELECT regexp_match('abc01234xyz', '(..*?) (\d+) (.*)');
Result: {abc,0,""}
```

That didn't work either, because now the RE as a whole is non-greedy and so it ends the overall match as soon as possible. We can get what we want by forcing the RE as a whole to be greedy:

```
SELECT regexp_match('abc01234xyz', '(?: (..*?) (\d+) (.*)) {1,1}');
Result: {abc,01234,xyz}
```

Controlling the RE's overall greediness separately from its components' greediness allows great flexibility in handling variable-length patterns.

When deciding what is a longer or shorter match, match lengths are measured in characters, not collating elements. An empty string is considered longer than no match at all. For example: `bb*` matches the three middle characters of `abbbbc`; `(week|wee)(night|knights)` matches all ten characters of `weeknights`; when `(.)*` is matched against `abc` the parenthesized subexpression matches all three characters; and when `(a*)*` is matched against `bc` both the whole RE and the parenthesized subexpression match an empty string.

If case-independent matching is specified, the effect is much as if all case distinctions had vanished from the alphabet. When an alphabetic that exists in multiple cases appears as an ordinary character outside a bracket expression, it is effectively transformed into a bracket expression containing both cases, e.g., `x` becomes `[xX]`. When it appears inside a bracket expression, all case counterparts of it are added to the bracket expression, e.g., `[x]` becomes `[xX]` and `^[x]` becomes `^[xX]`.

If newline-sensitive matching is specified, `.` and bracket expressions using `^` will never match the newline character (so that matches will not cross lines unless the RE explicitly includes a newline) and `^` and `$` will match the empty string after and before a newline respectively, in addition to matching at beginning and end of string respectively. But the ARE escapes `\A` and `\Z` continue to match beginning or end of string *only*. Also, the character class shorthands `\D` and `\W` will match a newline regardless of this mode. (Before PostgreSQL 14, they did not match newlines when in newline-sensitive mode. Write `^[^:digit:]` or `^[^:word:]` to get the old behavior.)

If partial newline-sensitive matching is specified, this affects `.` and bracket expressions as with newline-sensitive matching, but not `^` and `$`.

If inverse partial newline-sensitive matching is specified, this affects `^` and `$` as with newline-sensitive matching, but not `.` and bracket expressions. This isn't very useful but is provided for symmetry.

### 9.7.3.6. Limits and Compatibility

No particular limit is imposed on the length of REs in this implementation. However, programs intended to be highly portable should not employ REs longer than 256 bytes, as a POSIX-compliant implementation can refuse to accept such REs.

The only feature of AREs that is actually incompatible with POSIX EREs is that `\` does not lose its special significance inside bracket expressions. All other ARE features use syntax which is illegal or has undefined or unspecified effects in POSIX EREs; the `***` syntax of directors likewise is outside the POSIX syntax for both BREs and EREs.

Many of the ARE extensions are borrowed from Perl, but some have been changed to clean them up, and a few Perl extensions are not present. Incompatibilities of note include `\b`, `\B`, the lack of special treatment for a trailing newline, the addition of complemented bracket expressions to the things affected by newline-sensitive matching, the restrictions on parentheses and back references in looka-

head/lookbehind constraints, and the longest/shortest-match (rather than first-match) matching semantics.

### 9.7.3.7. Basic Regular Expressions

BREs differ from EREs in several respects. In BREs, `|`, `+`, and `?` are ordinary characters and there is no equivalent for their functionality. The delimiters for bounds are `\{` and `\}`, with `{` and `}` by themselves ordinary characters. The parentheses for nested subexpressions are `\(` and `\)`, with `(` and `)` by themselves ordinary characters. `^` is an ordinary character except at the beginning of the RE or the beginning of a parenthesized subexpression, `$` is an ordinary character except at the end of the RE or the end of a parenthesized subexpression, and `*` is an ordinary character if it appears at the beginning of the RE or the beginning of a parenthesized subexpression (after a possible leading `^`). Finally, single-digit back references are available, and `\<` and `\>` are synonyms for `[[:<:]]` and `[[:>:]]` respectively; no other escapes are available in BREs.

### 9.7.3.8. Differences from SQL Standard and XQuery

Since SQL:2008, the SQL standard includes regular expression operators and functions that performs pattern matching according to the XQuery regular expression standard:

- `LIKE_REGEX`
- `OCCURRENCES_REGEX`
- `POSITION_REGEX`
- `SUBSTRING_REGEX`
- `TRANSLATE_REGEX`

PostgreSQL does not currently implement these operators and functions. You can get approximately equivalent functionality in each case as shown in Table 9.25. (Various optional clauses on both sides have been omitted in this table.)

**Table 9.25. Regular Expression Functions Equivalencies**

SQL standard	PostgreSQL
<code>string LIKE_REGEX pattern</code>	<code>regexp_like(string, pattern)</code> or <code>string ~ pattern</code>
<code>OCCURRENCES_REGEX(pattern IN string)</code>	<code>regexp_count(string, pattern)</code>
<code>POSITION_REGEX(pattern IN string)</code>	<code>regexp_instr(string, pattern)</code>
<code>SUBSTRING_REGEX(pattern IN string)</code>	<code>regexp_substr(string, pattern)</code>
<code>TRANSLATE_REGEX(pattern IN string WITH replacement)</code>	<code>regexp_replace(string, pattern, replacement)</code>

Regular expression functions similar to those provided by PostgreSQL are also available in a number of other SQL implementations, whereas the SQL-standard functions are not as widely implemented. Some of the details of the regular expression syntax will likely differ in each implementation.

The SQL-standard operators and functions use XQuery regular expressions, which are quite close to the ARE syntax described above. Notable differences between the existing POSIX-based regular-expression feature and XQuery regular expressions include:

- XQuery character class subtraction is not supported. An example of this feature is using the following to match only English consonants: `[a-z-[aeiou]]`.
- XQuery character class shorthands `\c`, `\C`, `\i`, and `\I` are not supported.

- XQuery character class elements using `\p{UnicodeProperty}` or the inverse `\P{Unicode-Property}` are not supported.
- POSIX interprets character classes such as `\w` (see Table 9.21) according to the prevailing locale (which you can control by attaching a `COLLATE` clause to the operator or function). XQuery specifies these classes by reference to Unicode character properties, so equivalent behavior is obtained only with a locale that follows the Unicode rules.
- The SQL standard (not XQuery itself) attempts to cater for more variants of “newline” than POSIX does. The newline-sensitive matching options described above consider only ASCII NL (`\n`) to be a newline, but SQL would have us treat CR (`\r`), CRLF (`\r\n`) (a Windows-style newline), and some Unicode-only characters like LINE SEPARATOR (U+2028) as newlines as well. Notably, `.` and `\s` should count `\r\n` as one character not two according to SQL.
- Of the character-entry escapes described in Table 9.20, XQuery supports only `\n`, `\r`, and `\t`.
- XQuery does not support the `[ :name : ]` syntax for character classes within bracket expressions.
- XQuery does not have lookahead or lookbehind constraints, nor any of the constraint escapes described in Table 9.22.
- The metasyntax forms described in Section 9.7.3.4 do not exist in XQuery.
- The regular expression flag letters defined by XQuery are related to but not the same as the option letters for POSIX (Table 9.24). While the `i` and `q` options behave the same, others do not:
  - XQuery's `s` (allow dot to match newline) and `m` (allow `^` and `$` to match at newlines) flags provide access to the same behaviors as POSIX's `n`, `p` and `w` flags, but they do *not* match the behavior of POSIX's `s` and `m` flags. Note in particular that dot-matches-newline is the default behavior in POSIX but not XQuery.
  - XQuery's `x` (ignore whitespace in pattern) flag is noticeably different from POSIX's expanded-mode flag. POSIX's `x` flag also allows `#` to begin a comment in the pattern, and POSIX will not ignore a whitespace character after a backslash.

## 9.8. Data Type Formatting Functions

The PostgreSQL formatting functions provide a powerful set of tools for converting various data types (date/time, integer, floating point, numeric) to formatted strings and for converting from formatted strings to specific data types. Table 9.26 lists them. These functions all follow a common calling convention: the first argument is the value to be formatted and the second argument is a template that defines the output or input format.

**Table 9.26. Formatting Functions**

Function	Description	Example(s)
<code>to_char ( timestamp, text ) → text</code> <code>to_char ( timestamp with time zone, text ) → text</code>	Converts time stamp to string according to the given format.	<code>to_char ( timestamp '2002-04-20 17:31:12.66', 'HH12:MI:SS' ) → 05:31:12</code>
<code>to_char ( interval, text ) → text</code>	Converts interval to string according to the given format.	<code>to_char ( interval '15h 2m 12s', 'HH24:MI:SS' ) → 15:02:12</code>
<code>to_char ( numeric_type, text ) → text</code>		

Function	Description
<b>Example(s)</b>	
	<p>Converts number to string according to the given format; available for integer, big-int, numeric, real, double precision.</p> <p><code>to_char(125, '999') → 125</code></p> <p><code>to_char(125.8::real, '999D9') → 125.8</code></p> <p><code>to_char(-125.8, '999D99S') → 125.80-</code></p>
<code>to_date(text, text) → date</code>	<p>Converts string to date according to the given format.</p> <p><code>to_date('05 Dec 2000', 'DD Mon YYYY') → 2000-12-05</code></p>
<code>to_number(text, text) → numeric</code>	<p>Converts string to numeric according to the given format.</p> <p><code>to_number('12,454.8-', '99G999D9S') → -12454.8</code></p>
<code>to_timestamp(text, text) → timestamp with time zone</code>	<p>Converts string to time stamp according to the given format. (See also <code>to_timestamp(double precision)</code> in Table 9.33.)</p> <p><code>to_timestamp('05 Dec 2000', 'DD Mon YYYY') → 2000-12-05 00:00:00-05</code></p>

### Tip

`to_timestamp` and `to_date` exist to handle input formats that cannot be converted by simple casting. For most standard date/time formats, simply casting the source string to the required data type works, and is much easier. Similarly, `to_number` is unnecessary for standard numeric representations.

In a `to_char` output template string, there are certain patterns that are recognized and replaced with appropriately-formatted data based on the given value. Any text that is not a template pattern is simply copied verbatim. Similarly, in an input template string (for the other functions), template patterns identify the values to be supplied by the input data string. If there are characters in the template string that are not template patterns, the corresponding characters in the input data string are simply skipped over (whether or not they are equal to the template string characters).

Table 9.27 shows the template patterns available for formatting date and time values.

**Table 9.27. Template Patterns for Date/Time Formatting**

Pattern	Description
HH	hour of day (01–12)
HH12	hour of day (01–12)
HH24	hour of day (00–23)
MI	minute (00–59)
SS	second (00–59)
MS	millisecond (000–999)
US	microsecond (000000–999999)
FF1	tenth of second (0–9)
FF2	hundredth of second (00–99)
FF3	millisecond (000–999)

Pattern	Description
FF4	tenth of a millisecond (0000–9999)
FF5	hundredth of a millisecond (00000–99999)
FF6	microsecond (000000–999999)
SSSS, SSSSS	seconds past midnight (0–86399)
AM, am, PM or pm	meridiem indicator (without periods)
A.M., a.m., P.M. or p.m.	meridiem indicator (with periods)
Y, YYY	year (4 or more digits) with comma
YYYY	year (4 or more digits)
YYY	last 3 digits of year
YY	last 2 digits of year
Y	last digit of year
IYYY	ISO 8601 week-numbering year (4 or more digits)
IYY	last 3 digits of ISO 8601 week-numbering year
IY	last 2 digits of ISO 8601 week-numbering year
I	last digit of ISO 8601 week-numbering year
BC, bc, AD or ad	era indicator (without periods)
B.C., b.c., A.D. or a.d.	era indicator (with periods)
MONTH	full upper case month name (blank-padded to 9 chars)
Month	full capitalized month name (blank-padded to 9 chars)
month	full lower case month name (blank-padded to 9 chars)
MON	abbreviated upper case month name (3 chars in English, localized lengths vary)
Mon	abbreviated capitalized month name (3 chars in English, localized lengths vary)
mon	abbreviated lower case month name (3 chars in English, localized lengths vary)
MM	month number (01–12)
DAY	full upper case day name (blank-padded to 9 chars)
Day	full capitalized day name (blank-padded to 9 chars)
day	full lower case day name (blank-padded to 9 chars)
DY	abbreviated upper case day name (3 chars in English, localized lengths vary)
Dy	abbreviated capitalized day name (3 chars in English, localized lengths vary)
dy	abbreviated lower case day name (3 chars in English, localized lengths vary)
DDD	day of year (001–366)



Pattern	Description
IDDD	day of ISO 8601 week-numbering year (001–371; day 1 of the year is Monday of the first ISO week)
DD	day of month (01–31)
D	day of the week, Sunday (1) to Saturday (7)
ID	ISO 8601 day of the week, Monday (1) to Sunday (7)
W	week of month (1–5) (the first week starts on the first day of the month)
WW	week number of year (1–53) (the first week starts on the first day of the year)
IW	week number of ISO 8601 week-numbering year (01–53; the first Thursday of the year is in week 1)
CC	century (2 digits) (the twenty-first century starts on 2001-01-01)
J	Julian Date (integer days since November 24, 4714 BC at local midnight; see Section B.7)
Q	quarter
RM	month in upper case Roman numerals (I–XII; I=January)
rm	month in lower case Roman numerals (i–xii; i=January)
TZ	upper case time-zone abbreviation (only supported in <code>to_char</code> )
tz	lower case time-zone abbreviation (only supported in <code>to_char</code> )
TZH	time-zone hours
TZM	time-zone minutes
OF	time-zone offset from UTC (only supported in <code>to_char</code> )

Modifiers can be applied to any template pattern to alter its behavior. For example, `FMMonth` is the `Month` pattern with the `FM` modifier. Table 9.28 shows the modifier patterns for date/time formatting.

**Table 9.28. Template Pattern Modifiers for Date/Time Formatting**

Modifier	Description	Example
FM prefix	fill mode (suppress leading zeroes and padding blanks)	<code>FMMonth</code>
TH suffix	upper case ordinal number suffix	<code>DDTH</code> , e.g., <code>12TH</code>
th suffix	lower case ordinal number suffix	<code>DDth</code> , e.g., <code>12th</code>
FX prefix	fixed format global option (see usage notes)	<code>FX Month DD Day</code>
TM prefix	translation mode (use localized day and month names based on <code>lc_time</code> )	<code>TMMonth</code>

Modifier	Description	Example
SP suffix	spell mode (not implemented)	DDSP

Usage notes for date/time formatting:

- FM suppresses leading zeroes and trailing blanks that would otherwise be added to make the output of a pattern be fixed-width. In PostgreSQL, FM modifies only the next specification, while in Oracle FM affects all subsequent specifications, and repeated FM modifiers toggle fill mode on and off.
  - TM suppresses trailing blanks whether or not FM is specified.
  - to\_timestamp and to\_date ignore letter case in the input; so for example MON, Mon, and mon all accept the same strings. When using the TM modifier, case-folding is done according to the rules of the function's input collation (see Section 24.2).
  - to\_timestamp and to\_date skip multiple blank spaces at the beginning of the input string and around date and time values unless the FX option is used. For example, to\_timestamp(' 2000 JUN', 'YYYY MON') and to\_timestamp('2000 - JUN', 'YYYY-MON') work, but to\_timestamp('2000 JUN', 'FXYYYY MON') returns an error because to\_timestamp expects only a single space. FX must be specified as the first item in the template.
  - A separator (a space or non-letter/non-digit character) in the template string of to\_timestamp and to\_date matches any single separator in the input string or is skipped, unless the FX option is used. For example, to\_timestamp('2000JUN', 'YYYY//MON') and to\_timestamp('2000/JUN', 'YYYY MON') work, but to\_timestamp('2000//JUN', 'YYYY/MON') returns an error because the number of separators in the input string exceeds the number of separators in the template.
- If FX is specified, a separator in the template string matches exactly one character in the input string. But note that the input string character is not required to be the same as the separator from the template string. For example, to\_timestamp('2000/JUN', 'FXYYYY MON') works, but to\_timestamp('2000/JUN', 'FXYYYY MON') returns an error because the second space in the template string consumes the letter J from the input string.
- A TZh template pattern can match a signed number. Without the FX option, minus signs may be ambiguous, and could be interpreted as a separator. This ambiguity is resolved as follows: If the number of separators before TZh in the template string is less than the number of separators before the minus sign in the input string, the minus sign is interpreted as part of TZh. Otherwise, the minus sign is considered to be a separator between values. For example, to\_timestamp('2000 -10', 'YYYY TZh') matches -10 to TZh, but to\_timestamp('2000 -10', 'YYYY TZh') matches 10 to TZh.
  - Ordinary text is allowed in to\_char templates and will be output literally. You can put a substring in double quotes to force it to be interpreted as literal text even if it contains template patterns. For example, in '"Hello Year "YYYY', the YYYY will be replaced by the year data, but the single Y in Year will not be. In to\_date, to\_number, and to\_timestamp, literal text and double-quoted strings result in skipping the number of characters contained in the string; for example "XX" skips two input characters (whether or not they are XX).

### Tip

Prior to PostgreSQL 12, it was possible to skip arbitrary text in the input string using non-letter or non-digit characters. For example, to\_timestamp('2000y6m1d', 'YYYY-MM-DD') used to work. Now you can only use letter characters for this purpose. For example, to\_timestamp('2000y6m1d', 'YYYYtMMtDDt') and to\_timestamp('2000y6m1d', 'YYYY"Y"MM"m"DD"d') skip y, m, and d.

- If you want to have a double quote in the output you must precede it with a backslash, for example `'\"YYYY Month\"'`. Backslashes are not otherwise special outside of double-quoted strings. Within a double-quoted string, a backslash causes the next character to be taken literally, whatever it is (but this has no special effect unless the next character is a double quote or another backslash).
- In `to_timestamp` and `to_date`, if the year format specification is less than four digits, e.g., `YYY`, and the supplied year is less than four digits, the year will be adjusted to be nearest to the year 2020, e.g., 95 becomes 1995.
- In `to_timestamp` and `to_date`, negative years are treated as signifying BC. If you write both a negative year and an explicit BC field, you get AD again. An input of year zero is treated as 1 BC.
- In `to_timestamp` and `to_date`, the `YYYY` conversion has a restriction when processing years with more than 4 digits. You must use some non-digit character or template after `YYYY`, otherwise the year is always interpreted as 4 digits. For example (with the year 20000): `to_date('200001131', 'YYYYMMDD')` will be interpreted as a 4-digit year; instead use a non-digit separator after the year, like `to_date('20000-1131', 'YYYY-MMDD')` or `to_date('20000Nov31', 'YYYYMonDD')`.
- In `to_timestamp` and `to_date`, the `CC` (century) field is accepted but ignored if there is a `YYY`, `YYYY` or `Y,YYY` field. If `CC` is used with `YY` or `Y` then the result is computed as that year in the specified century. If the century is specified but the year is not, the first year of the century is assumed.
- In `to_timestamp` and `to_date`, weekday names or numbers (`DAY`, `D`, and related field types) are accepted but are ignored for purposes of computing the result. The same is true for quarter (`Q`) fields.
- In `to_timestamp` and `to_date`, an ISO 8601 week-numbering date (as distinct from a Gregorian date) can be specified in one of two ways:
  - Year, week number, and weekday: for example `to_date('2006-42-4', 'IYYY-IW-ID')` returns the date 2006-10-19. If you omit the weekday it is assumed to be 1 (Monday).
  - Year and day of year: for example `to_date('2006-291', 'IYYY-IDDD')` also returns 2006-10-19.

Attempting to enter a date using a mixture of ISO 8601 week-numbering fields and Gregorian date fields is nonsensical, and will cause an error. In the context of an ISO 8601 week-numbering year, the concept of a “month” or “day of month” has no meaning. In the context of a Gregorian year, the ISO week has no meaning.

### Caution

While `to_date` will reject a mixture of Gregorian and ISO week-numbering date fields, `to_char` will not, since output format specifications like `YYYY-MM-DD (IYYY-IDDD)` can be useful. But avoid writing something like `IYYY-MM-DD`; that would yield surprising results near the start of the year. (See Section 9.9.1 for more information.)

- In `to_timestamp`, millisecond (`MS`) or microsecond (`US`) fields are used as the seconds digits after the decimal point. For example `to_timestamp('12.3', 'SS.MS')` is not 3 milliseconds, but 300, because the conversion treats it as  $12 + 0.3$  seconds. So, for the format `SS.MS`, the input values 12.3, 12.30, and 12.300 specify the same number of milliseconds. To get three milliseconds, one must write 12.003, which the conversion treats as  $12 + 0.003 = 12.003$  seconds.

Here is a more complex example: `to_timestamp('15:12:02.020.001230', 'HH24:MI:SS.MS.US')` is 15 hours, 12 minutes, and 2 seconds + 20 milliseconds + 1230 microseconds = 2.021230 seconds.

- `to_char(..., 'ID')`'s day of the week numbering matches the `extract(isodow from ...)` function, but `to_char(..., 'D')`'s does not match `extract(dow from ...)`'s day numbering.
- `to_char(interval)` formats HH and HH12 as shown on a 12-hour clock, for example zero hours and 36 hours both output as 12, while HH24 outputs the full hour value, which can exceed 23 in an interval value.

Table 9.29 shows the template patterns available for formatting numeric values.

**Table 9.29. Template Patterns for Numeric Formatting**

Pattern	Description
9	digit position (can be dropped if insignificant)
0	digit position (will not be dropped, even if insignificant)
. (period)	decimal point
, (comma)	group (thousands) separator
PR	negative value in angle brackets
S	sign anchored to number (uses locale)
L	currency symbol (uses locale)
D	decimal point (uses locale)
G	group separator (uses locale)
MI	minus sign in specified position (if number < 0)
PL	plus sign in specified position (if number > 0)
SG	plus/minus sign in specified position
RN	Roman numeral (input between 1 and 3999)
TH or th	ordinal number suffix
V	shift specified number of digits (see notes)
EEEE	exponent for scientific notation

Usage notes for numeric formatting:

- 0 specifies a digit position that will always be printed, even if it contains a leading/trailing zero. 9 also specifies a digit position, but if it is a leading zero then it will be replaced by a space, while if it is a trailing zero and fill mode is specified then it will be deleted. (For `to_number()`, these two pattern characters are equivalent.)
- If the format provides fewer fractional digits than the number being formatted, `to_char()` will round the number to the specified number of fractional digits.
- The pattern characters S, L, D, and G represent the sign, currency symbol, decimal point, and thousands separator characters defined by the current locale (see `lc_monetary` and `lc_numeric`). The pattern characters period and comma represent those exact characters, with the meanings of decimal point and thousands separator, regardless of locale.
- If no explicit provision is made for a sign in `to_char()`'s pattern, one column will be reserved for the sign, and it will be anchored to (appear just left of) the number. If S appears just left of some 9's, it will likewise be anchored to the number.
- A sign formatted using SG, PL, or MI is not anchored to the number; for example, `to_char(-12, 'MI9999')` produces ' - 12' but `to_char(-12, 'S9999')` produces ' -12'. (The Oracle implementation does not allow the use of MI before 9, but rather requires that 9 precede MI.)

- TH does not convert values less than zero and does not convert fractional numbers.
- PL, SG, and TH are PostgreSQL extensions.
- In `to_number`, if non-data template patterns such as L or TH are used, the corresponding number of input characters are skipped, whether or not they match the template pattern, unless they are data characters (that is, digits, sign, decimal point, or comma). For example, TH would skip two non-data characters.
- V with `to_char` multiplies the input values by  $10^n$ , where  $n$  is the number of digits following V. V with `to_number` divides in a similar manner. `to_char` and `to_number` do not support the use of V combined with a decimal point (e.g., `99.9V99` is not allowed).
- EEEE (scientific notation) cannot be used in combination with any of the other formatting patterns or modifiers other than digit and decimal point patterns, and must be at the end of the format string (e.g., `9.99EEEE` is a valid pattern).

Certain modifiers can be applied to any template pattern to alter its behavior. For example, `FM99.99` is the `99.99` pattern with the FM modifier. Table 9.30 shows the modifier patterns for numeric formatting.

**Table 9.30. Template Pattern Modifiers for Numeric Formatting**

Modifier	Description	Example
FM prefix	fill mode (suppress trailing zeroes and padding blanks)	FM99.99
TH suffix	upper case ordinal number suffix	999TH
th suffix	lower case ordinal number suffix	999th

Table 9.31 shows some examples of the use of the `to_char` function.

**Table 9.31. to\_char Examples**

Expression	Result
<code>to_char(current_timestamp, 'Day, DD HH12:MI:SS')</code>	'Tuesday , 06 05:39:18'
<code>to_char(current_timestamp, 'FM-Day, FMDD HH12:MI:SS')</code>	'Tuesday, 6 05:39:18'
<code>to_char(-0.1, '99.99')</code>	' -.10'
<code>to_char(-0.1, 'FM9.99')</code>	'-.1'
<code>to_char(-0.1, 'FM90.99')</code>	'-0.1'
<code>to_char(0.1, '0.9')</code>	' 0.1'
<code>to_char(12, '9990999.9')</code>	' 0012.0'
<code>to_char(12, 'FM9990999.9')</code>	'0012.'
<code>to_char(485, '999')</code>	' 485'
<code>to_char(-485, '999')</code>	'-485'
<code>to_char(485, '9 9 9')</code>	' 4 8 5'
<code>to_char(1485, '9,999')</code>	' 1,485'
<code>to_char(1485, '9G999')</code>	' 1 485'
<code>to_char(148.5, '999.999')</code>	' 148.500'

Expression	Result
<code>to_char(148.5, 'FM999.999')</code>	<code>'148.5'</code>
<code>to_char(148.5, 'FM999.990')</code>	<code>'148.500'</code>
<code>to_char(148.5, '999D999')</code>	<code>' 148,500'</code>
<code>to_char(3148.5, '9G999D999')</code>	<code>' 3 148,500'</code>
<code>to_char(-485, '999S')</code>	<code>'485-'</code>
<code>to_char(-485, '999MI')</code>	<code>'485-'</code>
<code>to_char(485, '999MI')</code>	<code>'485 '</code>
<code>to_char(485, 'FM999MI')</code>	<code>'485'</code>
<code>to_char(485, 'PL999')</code>	<code>'+485'</code>
<code>to_char(485, 'SG999')</code>	<code>'+485'</code>
<code>to_char(-485, 'SG999')</code>	<code>'-485'</code>
<code>to_char(-485, '9SG99')</code>	<code>'4-85'</code>
<code>to_char(-485, '999PR')</code>	<code>'&lt;485&gt;'</code>
<code>to_char(485, 'L999')</code>	<code>'DM 485'</code>
<code>to_char(485, 'RN')</code>	<code>' CDLXXXV'</code>
<code>to_char(485, 'FMRN')</code>	<code>'CDLXXXV'</code>
<code>to_char(5.2, 'FMRN')</code>	<code>'V'</code>
<code>to_char(482, '999th')</code>	<code>' 482nd'</code>
<code>to_char(485, '"Good number: "999')</code>	<code>'Good number: 485'</code>
<code>to_char(485.8, 'Pre: "999" Post: " .999')</code>	<code>'Pre: 485 Post: .800'</code>
<code>to_char(12, '99V999')</code>	<code>' 12000'</code>
<code>to_char(12.4, '99V999')</code>	<code>' 12400'</code>
<code>to_char(12.45, '99V9')</code>	<code>' 125'</code>
<code>to_char(0.0004859, '9.99EEEE')</code>	<code>' 4.86e-04'</code>

## 9.9. Date/Time Functions and Operators

Table 9.33 shows the available functions for date/time value processing, with details appearing in the following subsections. Table 9.32 illustrates the behaviors of the basic arithmetic operators (+, \*, etc.). For formatting functions, refer to Section 9.8. You should be familiar with the background information on date/time data types from Section 8.5.

In addition, the usual comparison operators shown in Table 9.1 are available for the date/time types. Dates and timestamps (with or without time zone) are all comparable, while times (with or without time zone) and intervals can only be compared to other values of the same data type. When comparing a timestamp without time zone to a timestamp with time zone, the former value is assumed to be given in the time zone specified by the `TimeZone` configuration parameter, and is rotated to UTC for comparison to the latter value (which is already in UTC internally). Similarly, a date value is assumed to represent midnight in the `TimeZone` zone when comparing it to a timestamp.

All the functions and operators described below that take `time` or `timestamp` inputs actually come in two variants: one that takes `time with time zone` or `timestamp with time zone`, and one that takes `time without time zone` or `timestamp without time zone`. For brevity, these variants are not shown separately. Also, the + and \* operators come in commutative pairs (for example both `date + integer` and `integer + date`); we show only one of each such pair.

**Table 9.32. Date/Time Operators**

Operator	Description	Example(s)
<code>date + integer</code>	<code>→ date</code> Add a number of days to a date	<code>date '2001-09-28' + 7 → 2001-10-05</code>
<code>date + interval</code>	<code>→ timestamp</code> Add an interval to a date	<code>date '2001-09-28' + interval '1 hour' → 2001-09-28 01:00:00</code>
<code>date + time</code>	<code>→ timestamp</code> Add a time-of-day to a date	<code>date '2001-09-28' + time '03:00' → 2001-09-28 03:00:00</code>
<code>interval + interval</code>	<code>→ interval</code> Add intervals	<code>interval '1 day' + interval '1 hour' → 1 day 01:00:00</code>
<code>timestamp + interval</code>	<code>→ timestamp</code> Add an interval to a timestamp	<code>timestamp '2001-09-28 01:00' + interval '23 hours' → 2001-09-29 00:00:00</code>
<code>time + interval</code>	<code>→ time</code> Add an interval to a time	<code>time '01:00' + interval '3 hours' → 04:00:00</code>
<code>- interval</code>	<code>→ interval</code> Negate an interval	<code>- interval '23 hours' → -23:00:00</code>
<code>date - date</code>	<code>→ integer</code> Subtract dates, producing the number of days elapsed	<code>date '2001-10-01' - date '2001-09-28' → 3</code>
<code>date - integer</code>	<code>→ date</code> Subtract a number of days from a date	<code>date '2001-10-01' - 7 → 2001-09-24</code>
<code>date - interval</code>	<code>→ timestamp</code> Subtract an interval from a date	<code>date '2001-09-28' - interval '1 hour' → 2001-09-27 23:00:00</code>
<code>time - time</code>	<code>→ interval</code> Subtract times	<code>time '05:00' - time '03:00' → 02:00:00</code>
<code>time - interval</code>	<code>→ time</code> Subtract an interval from a time	<code>time '05:00' - interval '2 hours' → 03:00:00</code>
<code>timestamp - interval</code>	<code>→ timestamp</code> Subtract an interval from a timestamp	

<b>Operator</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Example(s)</b>
	timestamp - interval → timestamp	timestamp '2001-09-28 23:00' - interval '23 hours' → 2001-09-28 00:00:00
interval - interval → interval	Subtract intervals	interval '1 day' - interval '1 hour' → 1 day -01:00:00
timestamp - timestamp → interval	Subtract timestamps (converting 24-hour intervals into days, similarly to justify_hours())	timestamp '2001-09-29 03:00' - timestamp '2001-07-27 12:00' → 63 days 15:00:00
interval * double precision → interval	Multiply an interval by a scalar	interval '1 second' * 900 → 00:15:00 interval '1 day' * 21 → 21 days interval '1 hour' * 3.5 → 03:30:00
interval / double precision → interval	Divide an interval by a scalar	interval '1 hour' / 1.5 → 00:40:00

**Table 9.33. Date/Time Functions**

<b>Function</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Example(s)</b>
age(timestamp, timestamp) → interval	Subtract arguments, producing a “symbolic” result that uses years and months, rather than just days	age(timestamp '2001-04-10', timestamp '1957-06-13') → 43 years 9 mons 27 days
age(timestamp) → interval	Subtract argument from current_date (at midnight)	age(timestamp '1957-06-13') → 62 years 6 mons 10 days
clock_timestamp() → timestamp with time zone	Current date and time (changes during statement execution); see Section 9.9.5	clock_timestamp() → 2019-12-23 14:39:53.662522-05
current_date → date	Current date; see Section 9.9.5	current_date → 2019-12-23
current_time → time with time zone	Current time of day; see Section 9.9.5	current_time → 14:39:53.662522-05
current_time(integer) → time with time zone	Current time of day, with limited precision; see Section 9.9.5	



Function	Description	Example(s)
	<code>current_time(2)</code>	<code>→ 14:39:53.66-05</code>
	<code>current_timestamp</code>	timestamp with time zone Current date and time (start of current transaction); see Section 9.9.5 <code>current_timestamp</code> <code>→ 2019-12-23 14:39:53.662522-05</code>
	<code>current_timestamp(integer)</code>	timestamp with time zone Current date and time (start of current transaction), with limited precision; see Section 9.9.5 <code>current_timestamp(0)</code> <code>→ 2019-12-23 14:39:53-05</code>
	<code>date_add(timestamp with time zone, interval[, text])</code>	timestamp with time zone Add an interval to a timestamp with time zone, computing times of day and daylight-savings adjustments according to the time zone named by the third argument, or the current TimeZone setting if that is omitted. The form with two arguments is equivalent to the timestamp with time zone + interval operator. <code>date_add('2021-10-31 00:00:00+02'::timestamp, '1 day'::interval, 'Europe/Warsaw')</code> <code>→ 2021-10-31 23:00:00+00</code>
	<code>date_bin(interval, timestamp, timestamp)</code>	timestamp Bin input into specified interval aligned with specified origin; see Section 9.9.3 <code>date_bin('15 minutes', timestamp '2001-02-16 20:38:40', timestamp '2001-02-16 20:05:00')</code> <code>→ 2001-02-16 20:35:00</code>
	<code>date_part(text, timestamp)</code>	double precision Get timestamp subfield (equivalent to extract); see Section 9.9.1 <code>date_part('hour', timestamp '2001-02-16 20:38:40')</code> <code>→ 20</code>
	<code>date_part(text, interval)</code>	double precision Get interval subfield (equivalent to extract); see Section 9.9.1 <code>date_part('month', interval '2 years 3 months')</code> <code>→ 3</code>
	<code>date_subtract(timestamp with time zone, interval[, text])</code>	timestamp with time zone Subtract an interval from a timestamp with time zone, computing times of day and daylight-savings adjustments according to the time zone named by the third argument, or the current TimeZone setting if that is omitted. The form with two arguments is equivalent to the timestamp with time zone - interval operator. <code>date_subtract('2021-11-01 00:00:00+01'::timestamp, '1 day'::interval, 'Europe/Warsaw')</code> <code>→ 2021-10-30 22:00:00+00</code>
	<code>date_trunc(text, timestamp)</code>	timestamp Truncate to specified precision; see Section 9.9.2 <code>date_trunc('hour', timestamp '2001-02-16 20:38:40')</code> <code>→ 2001-02-16 20:00:00</code>
	<code>date_trunc(text, timestamp with time zone, text)</code>	timestamp with time zone Truncate to specified precision in the specified time zone; see Section 9.9.2 <code>date_trunc('day', timestamp '2001-02-16 20:38:40+00', 'Australia/Sydney')</code> <code>→ 2001-02-16 13:00:00+00</code>
	<code>date_trunc(text, interval)</code>	interval

Function	Description Example(s)
	Truncate to specified precision; see Section 9.9.2 <code>date_trunc('hour', interval '2 days 3 hours 40 minutes') → 2 days 03:00:00</code>
	<code>extract ( field from timestamp ) → numeric</code> Get timestamp subfield; see Section 9.9.1 <code>extract(hour from timestamp '2001-02-16 20:38:40') → 20</code>
	<code>extract ( field from interval ) → numeric</code> Get interval subfield; see Section 9.9.1 <code>extract(month from interval '2 years 3 months') → 3</code>
	<code>isfinite ( date ) → boolean</code> Test for finite date (not +/-infinity) <code>isfinite(date '2001-02-16') → true</code>
	<code>isfinite ( timestamp ) → boolean</code> Test for finite timestamp (not +/-infinity) <code>isfinite(timestamp 'infinity') → false</code>
	<code>isfinite ( interval ) → boolean</code> Test for finite interval (currently always true) <code>isfinite(interval '4 hours') → true</code>
	<code>justify_days ( interval ) → interval</code> Adjust interval so 30-day time periods are represented as months <code>justify_days(interval '35 days') → 1 mon 5 days</code>
	<code>justify_hours ( interval ) → interval</code> Adjust interval so 24-hour time periods are represented as days <code>justify_hours(interval '27 hours') → 1 day 03:00:00</code>
	<code>justify_interval ( interval ) → interval</code> Adjust interval using <code>justify_days</code> and <code>justify_hours</code> , with additional sign adjustments <code>justify_interval(interval '1 mon -1 hour') → 29 days 23:00:00</code>
	<code>localtime → time</code> Current time of day; see Section 9.9.5 <code>localtime → 14:39:53.662522</code>
	<code>localtime ( integer ) → time</code> Current time of day, with limited precision; see Section 9.9.5 <code>localtime(0) → 14:39:53</code>
	<code>localtimestamp → timestamp</code> Current date and time (start of current transaction); see Section 9.9.5 <code>localtimestamp → 2019-12-23 14:39:53.662522</code>
	<code>localtimestamp ( integer ) → timestamp</code> Current date and time (start of current transaction), with limited precision; see Section 9.9.5

Function	Description	Example(s)
		<code>localtimestamp(2) → 2019-12-23 14:39:53.66</code>
	<code>make_date(year int, month int, day int) → date</code> Create date from year, month and day fields (negative years signify BC)	<code>make_date(2013, 7, 15) → 2013-07-15</code>
	<code>make_interval([years int [, months int [, weeks int [, days int [, hours int [, mins int [, secs double precision ]]]]]) → interval</code> Create interval from years, months, weeks, days, hours, minutes and seconds fields, each of which can default to zero	<code>make_interval(days =&gt; 10) → 10 days</code>
	<code>make_time(hour int, min int, sec double precision) → time</code> Create time from hour, minute and seconds fields	<code>make_time(8, 15, 23.5) → 08:15:23.5</code>
	<code>make_timestamp(year int, month int, day int, hour int, min int, sec double precision) → timestamp</code> Create timestamp from year, month, day, hour, minute and seconds fields (negative years signify BC)	<code>make_timestamp(2013, 7, 15, 8, 15, 23.5) → 2013-07-15 08:15:23.5</code>
	<code>make_timestamptz(year int, month int, day int, hour int, min int, sec double precision [, timezone text]) → timestamp with time zone</code> Create timestamp with time zone from year, month, day, hour, minute and seconds fields (negative years signify BC). If <i>timezone</i> is not specified, the current time zone is used; the examples assume the session time zone is Europe/London	<code>make_timestamptz(2013, 7, 15, 8, 15, 23.5) → 2013-07-15 08:15:23.5+01</code> <code>make_timestamptz(2013, 7, 15, 8, 15, 23.5, 'America/New_York') → 2013-07-15 13:15:23.5+01</code>
	<code>now() → timestamp with time zone</code> Current date and time (start of current transaction); see Section 9.9.5	<code>now() → 2019-12-23 14:39:53.662522-05</code>
	<code>statement_timestamp() → timestamp with time zone</code> Current date and time (start of current statement); see Section 9.9.5	<code>statement_timestamp() → 2019-12-23 14:39:53.662522-05</code>
	<code>timeofday() → text</code> Current date and time (like <code>clock_timestamp</code> , but as a text string); see Section 9.9.5	<code>timeofday() → Mon Dec 23 14:39:53.662522 2019 EST</code>
	<code>transaction_timestamp() → timestamp with time zone</code> Current date and time (start of current transaction); see Section 9.9.5	<code>transaction_timestamp() → 2019-12-23 14:39:53.662522-05</code>
	<code>to_timestamp(double precision) → timestamp with time zone</code> Convert Unix epoch (seconds since 1970-01-01 00:00:00+00) to timestamp with time zone	

Function
Description
Example(s)
<code>to_timestamp(1284352323) → 2010-09-13 04:32:03+00</code>

In addition to these functions, the SQL OVERLAPS operator is supported:

```
(start1, end1) OVERLAPS (start2, end2)
(start1, length1) OVERLAPS (start2, length2)
```

This expression yields true when two time periods (defined by their endpoints) overlap, false when they do not overlap. The endpoints can be specified as pairs of dates, times, or time stamps; or as a date, time, or time stamp followed by an interval. When a pair of values is provided, either the start or the end can be written first; OVERLAPS automatically takes the earlier value of the pair as the start. Each time period is considered to represent the half-open interval *start* ≤ *time* < *end*, unless *start* and *end* are equal in which case it represents that single time instant. This means for instance that two time periods with only an endpoint in common do not overlap.

```
SELECT (DATE '2001-02-16', DATE '2001-12-21') OVERLAPS
       (DATE '2001-10-30', DATE '2002-10-30');
Result: true
SELECT (DATE '2001-02-16', INTERVAL '100 days') OVERLAPS
       (DATE '2001-10-30', DATE '2002-10-30');
Result: false
SELECT (DATE '2001-10-29', DATE '2001-10-30') OVERLAPS
       (DATE '2001-10-30', DATE '2001-10-31');
Result: false
SELECT (DATE '2001-10-30', DATE '2001-10-30') OVERLAPS
       (DATE '2001-10-30', DATE '2001-10-31');
Result: true
```

When adding an interval value to (or subtracting an interval value from) a timestamp or timestamp with time zone value, the months, days, and microseconds fields of the interval value are handled in turn. First, a nonzero months field advances or decrements the date of the timestamp by the indicated number of months, keeping the day of month the same unless it would be past the end of the new month, in which case the last day of that month is used. (For example, March 31 plus 1 month becomes April 30, but March 31 plus 2 months becomes May 31.) Then the days field advances or decrements the date of the timestamp by the indicated number of days. In both these steps the local time of day is kept the same. Finally, if there is a nonzero microseconds field, it is added or subtracted literally. When doing arithmetic on a timestamp with time zone value in a time zone that recognizes DST, this means that adding or subtracting (say) interval '1 day' does not necessarily have the same result as adding or subtracting interval '24 hours'. For example, with the session time zone set to America/Denver:

```
SELECT timestamp with time zone '2005-04-02 12:00:00-07' + interval
       '1 day';
Result: 2005-04-03 12:00:00-06
SELECT timestamp with time zone '2005-04-02 12:00:00-07' + interval
       '24 hours';
Result: 2005-04-03 13:00:00-06
```

This happens because an hour was skipped due to a change in daylight saving time at 2005-04-03 02:00:00 in time zone America/Denver.

Note there can be ambiguity in the months field returned by age because different months have different numbers of days. PostgreSQL's approach uses the month from the earlier of the two dates

when calculating partial months. For example, `age('2004-06-01', '2004-04-30')` uses April to yield `1 mon 1 day`, while using May would yield `1 mon 2 days` because May has 31 days, while April has only 30.

Subtraction of dates and timestamps can also be complex. One conceptually simple way to perform subtraction is to convert each value to a number of seconds using `EXTRACT(EPOCH FROM ...)`, then subtract the results; this produces the number of *seconds* between the two values. This will adjust for the number of days in each month, timezone changes, and daylight saving time adjustments. Subtraction of date or timestamp values with the “-” operator returns the number of days (24-hours) and hours/minutes/seconds between the values, making the same adjustments. The `age` function returns years, months, days, and hours/minutes/seconds, performing field-by-field subtraction and then adjusting for negative field values. The following queries illustrate the differences in these approaches. The sample results were produced with `timezone = 'US/Eastern'`; there is a daylight saving time change between the two dates used:

```
SELECT EXTRACT(EPOCH FROM timestampz '2013-07-01 12:00:00') -
       EXTRACT(EPOCH FROM timestampz '2013-03-01 12:00:00');
Result: 10537200.000000
SELECT (EXTRACT(EPOCH FROM timestampz '2013-07-01 12:00:00') -
       EXTRACT(EPOCH FROM timestampz '2013-03-01 12:00:00'))
       / 60 / 60 / 24;
Result: 121.95833333333333
SELECT timestampz '2013-07-01 12:00:00' - timestampz '2013-03-01
       12:00:00';
Result: 121 days 23:00:00
SELECT age(timestampz '2013-07-01 12:00:00', timestampz
       '2013-03-01 12:00:00');
Result: 4 mons
```

## 9.9.1. EXTRACT, date\_part

`EXTRACT(field FROM source)`

The `extract` function retrieves subfields such as year or hour from date/time values. *source* must be a value expression of type `timestamp`, `time`, or `interval`. (Expressions of type `date` are cast to `timestamp` and can therefore be used as well.) *field* is an identifier or string that selects what field to extract from the source value. The `extract` function returns values of type `numeric`. The following are valid field names:

`century`

The century

```
SELECT EXTRACT(CENTURY FROM TIMESTAMP '2000-12-16 12:21:13');
Result: 20
SELECT EXTRACT(CENTURY FROM TIMESTAMP '2001-02-16 20:38:40');
Result: 21
```

The first century starts at 0001-01-01 00:00:00 AD, although they did not know it at the time. This definition applies to all Gregorian calendar countries. There is no century number 0, you go from -1 century to 1 century. If you disagree with this, please write your complaint to: Pope, Cathedral Saint-Peter of Roma, Vatican.

`day`

For `timestamp` values, the day (of the month) field (1–31); for `interval` values, the number of days

```
SELECT EXTRACT(DAY FROM TIMESTAMP '2001-02-16 20:38:40');
Result: 16
```

```
SELECT EXTRACT(DAY FROM INTERVAL '40 days 1 minute');
Result: 40
```

decade

The year field divided by 10

```
SELECT EXTRACT(DECADE FROM TIMESTAMP '2001-02-16 20:38:40');
Result: 200
```

dow

The day of the week as Sunday (0) to Saturday (6)

```
SELECT EXTRACT(DOW FROM TIMESTAMP '2001-02-16 20:38:40');
Result: 5
```

Note that `extract`'s day of the week numbering differs from that of the `to_char(..., 'D')` function.

doy

The day of the year (1–365/366)

```
SELECT EXTRACT(DOY FROM TIMESTAMP '2001-02-16 20:38:40');
Result: 47
```

epoch

For timestamp with time zone values, the number of seconds since 1970-01-01 00:00:00 UTC (negative for timestamps before that); for date and timestamp values, the nominal number of seconds since 1970-01-01 00:00:00, without regard to timezone or daylight-savings rules; for interval values, the total number of seconds in the interval

```
SELECT EXTRACT(EPOCH FROM TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE '2001-02-16
20:38:40.12-08');
Result: 982384720.120000
```

```
SELECT EXTRACT(EPOCH FROM TIMESTAMP '2001-02-16 20:38:40.12');
Result: 982355920.120000
```

```
SELECT EXTRACT(EPOCH FROM INTERVAL '5 days 3 hours');
Result: 442800.000000
```

You can convert an epoch value back to a timestamp with time zone with `to_timestamp`:

```
SELECT to_timestamp(982384720.12);
Result: 2001-02-17 04:38:40.12+00
```

Beware that applying `to_timestamp` to an epoch extracted from a date or timestamp value could produce a misleading result: the result will effectively assume that the original value had been given in UTC, which might not be the case.

## hour

The hour field (0–23)

```
SELECT EXTRACT(HOUR FROM TIMESTAMP '2001-02-16 20:38:40');
Result: 20
```

## isodow

The day of the week as Monday (1) to Sunday (7)

```
SELECT EXTRACT(ISODOW FROM TIMESTAMP '2001-02-18 20:38:40');
Result: 7
```

This is identical to dow except for Sunday. This matches the ISO 8601 day of the week numbering.

## isoyear

The ISO 8601 week-numbering year that the date falls in (not applicable to intervals)

```
SELECT EXTRACT(ISOYEAR FROM DATE '2006-01-01');
Result: 2005
SELECT EXTRACT(ISOYEAR FROM DATE '2006-01-02');
Result: 2006
```

Each ISO 8601 week-numbering year begins with the Monday of the week containing the 4th of January, so in early January or late December the ISO year may be different from the Gregorian year. See the week field for more information.

This field is not available in PostgreSQL releases prior to 8.3.

## julian

The *Julian Date* corresponding to the date or timestamp (not applicable to intervals). Timestamps that are not local midnight result in a fractional value. See Section B.7 for more information.

```
SELECT EXTRACT(JULIAN FROM DATE '2006-01-01');
Result: 2453737
SELECT EXTRACT(JULIAN FROM TIMESTAMP '2006-01-01 12:00');
Result: 2453737.500000000000000000000000
```

## microseconds

The seconds field, including fractional parts, multiplied by 1 000 000; note that this includes full seconds

```
SELECT EXTRACT(MICROSECONDS FROM TIME '17:12:28.5');
Result: 28500000
```

## millennium

The millennium

```
SELECT EXTRACT(MILLENNIUM FROM TIMESTAMP '2001-02-16 20:38:40');
Result: 3
```

Years in the 1900s are in the second millennium. The third millennium started January 1, 2001.

### milliseconds

The seconds field, including fractional parts, multiplied by 1000. Note that this includes full seconds.

```
SELECT EXTRACT(MILLISECONDS FROM TIME '17:12:28.5');  
Result: 28500.000
```

### minute

The minutes field (0–59)

```
SELECT EXTRACT(MINUTE FROM TIMESTAMP '2001-02-16 20:38:40');  
Result: 38
```

### month

For timestamp values, the number of the month within the year (1–12); for interval values, the number of months, modulo 12 (0–11)

```
SELECT EXTRACT(MONTH FROM TIMESTAMP '2001-02-16 20:38:40');  
Result: 2
```

```
SELECT EXTRACT(MONTH FROM INTERVAL '2 years 3 months');  
Result: 3
```

```
SELECT EXTRACT(MONTH FROM INTERVAL '2 years 13 months');  
Result: 1
```

### quarter

The quarter of the year (1–4) that the date is in

```
SELECT EXTRACT(QUARTER FROM TIMESTAMP '2001-02-16 20:38:40');  
Result: 1
```

### second

The seconds field, including any fractional seconds

```
SELECT EXTRACT(SECOND FROM TIMESTAMP '2001-02-16 20:38:40');  
Result: 40.000000
```

```
SELECT EXTRACT(SECOND FROM TIME '17:12:28.5');  
Result: 28.500000
```

### timezone

The time zone offset from UTC, measured in seconds. Positive values correspond to time zones east of UTC, negative values to zones west of UTC. (Technically, PostgreSQL does not use UTC because leap seconds are not handled.)

### timezone\_hour

The hour component of the time zone offset

### timezone\_minute

The minute component of the time zone offset



### week

The number of the ISO 8601 week-numbering week of the year. By definition, ISO weeks start on Mondays and the first week of a year contains January 4 of that year. In other words, the first Thursday of a year is in week 1 of that year.

In the ISO week-numbering system, it is possible for early-January dates to be part of the 52nd or 53rd week of the previous year, and for late-December dates to be part of the first week of the next year. For example, 2005-01-01 is part of the 53rd week of year 2004, and 2006-01-01 is part of the 52nd week of year 2005, while 2012-12-31 is part of the first week of 2013. It's recommended to use the `isoyear` field together with `week` to get consistent results.

```
SELECT EXTRACT(WEEK FROM TIMESTAMP '2001-02-16 20:38:40');  
Result: 7
```

### year

The year field. Keep in mind there is no 0 AD, so subtracting BC years from AD years should be done with care.

```
SELECT EXTRACT(YEAR FROM TIMESTAMP '2001-02-16 20:38:40');  
Result: 2001
```

#### Note

When the input value is +/-Infinity, `extract` returns +/-Infinity for monotonically-increasing fields (epoch, julian, year, isoyear, decade, century, and millennium). For other fields, NULL is returned. PostgreSQL versions before 9.6 returned zero for all cases of infinite input.

The `extract` function is primarily intended for computational processing. For formatting date/time values for display, see Section 9.8.

The `date_part` function is modeled on the traditional Ingres equivalent to the SQL-standard function `extract`:

```
date_part('field', source)
```

Note that here the *field* parameter needs to be a string value, not a name. The valid field names for `date_part` are the same as for `extract`. For historical reasons, the `date_part` function returns values of type `double precision`. This can result in a loss of precision in certain uses. Using `extract` is recommended instead.

```
SELECT date_part('day', TIMESTAMP '2001-02-16 20:38:40');  
Result: 16
```

```
SELECT date_part('hour', INTERVAL '4 hours 3 minutes');  
Result: 4
```

## 9.9.2. date\_trunc

The function `date_trunc` is conceptually similar to the `trunc` function for numbers.

```
date_trunc(field, source [, time_zone ])
```

*source* is a value expression of type `timestamp`, `timestamp with time zone`, or `interval`. (Values of type `date` and `time` are cast automatically to `timestamp` or `interval`, respectively.) *field* selects to which precision to truncate the input value. The return value is likewise of type `timestamp`, `timestamp with time zone`, or `interval`, and it has all fields that are less significant than the selected one set to zero (or one, for day and month).

Valid values for *field* are:

```
microseconds
milliseconds
second
minute
hour
day
week
month
quarter
year
decade
century
millennium
```

When the input value is of type `timestamp with time zone`, the truncation is performed with respect to a particular time zone; for example, truncation to `day` produces a value that is midnight in that zone. By default, truncation is done with respect to the current `TimeZone` setting, but the optional *time\_zone* argument can be provided to specify a different time zone. The time zone name can be specified in any of the ways described in Section 8.5.3.

A time zone cannot be specified when processing `timestamp without time zone` or `interval` inputs. These are always taken at face value.

Examples (assuming the local time zone is `America/New_York`):

```
SELECT date_trunc('hour', TIMESTAMP '2001-02-16 20:38:40');
Result: 2001-02-16 20:00:00
```

```
SELECT date_trunc('year', TIMESTAMP '2001-02-16 20:38:40');
Result: 2001-01-01 00:00:00
```

```
SELECT date_trunc('day', TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE '2001-02-16
20:38:40+00');
Result: 2001-02-16 00:00:00-05
```

```
SELECT date_trunc('day', TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE '2001-02-16
20:38:40+00', 'Australia/Sydney');
Result: 2001-02-16 08:00:00-05
```

```
SELECT date_trunc('hour', INTERVAL '3 days 02:47:33');
Result: 3 days 02:00:00
```

### 9.9.3. date\_bin

The function `date_bin` “bins” the input timestamp into the specified interval (the *stride*) aligned with a specified origin.

```
date_bin(stride, source, origin)
```

*source* is a value expression of type `timestamp` or `timestamp with time zone`. (Values of type `date` are cast automatically to `timestamp`.) *stride* is a value expression of type `interval`. The return value is likewise of type `timestamp` or `timestamp with time zone`, and it marks the beginning of the bin into which the *source* is placed.

Examples:

```
SELECT date_bin('15 minutes', TIMESTAMP '2020-02-11 15:44:17',
TIMESTAMP '2001-01-01');
Result: 2020-02-11 15:30:00
```

```
SELECT date_bin('15 minutes', TIMESTAMP '2020-02-11 15:44:17',
TIMESTAMP '2001-01-01 00:02:30');
Result: 2020-02-11 15:32:30
```

In the case of full units (1 minute, 1 hour, etc.), it gives the same result as the analogous `date_trunc` call, but the difference is that `date_bin` can truncate to an arbitrary interval.

The *stride* interval must be greater than zero and cannot contain units of month or larger.

## 9.9.4. AT TIME ZONE

The `AT TIME ZONE` operator converts time stamp *without* time zone to/from time stamp *with* time zone, and time *with* time zone values to different time zones. Table 9.34 shows its variants.

**Table 9.34. AT TIME ZONE Variants**

Operator	Description Example(s)
<code>timestamp without time zone AT TIME ZONE zone</code>	<code>→ timestamp with time zone</code> Converts given time stamp <i>without</i> time zone to time stamp <i>with</i> time zone, assuming the given value is in the named time zone. <code>timestamp '2001-02-16 20:38:40' at time zone 'America/Denver' → 2001-02-17 03:38:40+00</code>
<code>timestamp with time zone AT TIME ZONE zone</code>	<code>→ timestamp without time zone</code> Converts given time stamp <i>with</i> time zone to time stamp <i>without</i> time zone, as the time would appear in that zone. <code>timestamp with time zone '2001-02-16 20:38:40-05' at time zone 'America/Denver' → 2001-02-16 18:38:40</code>
<code>time with time zone AT TIME ZONE zone</code>	<code>→ time with time zone</code> Converts given time <i>with</i> time zone to a new time zone. Since no date is supplied, this uses the currently active UTC offset for the named destination zone. <code>time with time zone '05:34:17-05' at time zone 'UTC' → 10:34:17+00</code>

In these expressions, the desired time zone *zone* can be specified either as a text value (e.g., `'America/Los_Angeles'`) or as an interval (e.g., `INTERVAL '-08:00'`). In the text case, a time zone name can be specified in any of the ways described in Section 8.5.3. The interval case is only useful for zones that have fixed offsets from UTC, so it is not very common in practice.

Examples (assuming the current `TimeZone` setting is `America/Los_Angeles`):

```
SELECT TIMESTAMP '2001-02-16 20:38:40' AT TIME ZONE 'America/
Denver';
Result: 2001-02-16 19:38:40-08
```

```
SELECT TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE '2001-02-16 20:38:40-05' AT TIME
ZONE 'America/Denver';
Result: 2001-02-16 18:38:40
```

```
SELECT TIMESTAMP '2001-02-16 20:38:40' AT TIME ZONE 'Asia/Tokyo' AT
TIME ZONE 'America/Chicago';
Result: 2001-02-16 05:38:40
```

The first example adds a time zone to a value that lacks it, and displays the value using the current `TimeZone` setting. The second example shifts the time stamp with time zone value to the specified time zone, and returns the value without a time zone. This allows storage and display of values different from the current `TimeZone` setting. The third example converts Tokyo time to Chicago time.

The function `timezone(zone, timestamp)` is equivalent to the SQL-conforming construct `timestamp AT TIME ZONE zone`.

## 9.9.5. Current Date/Time

PostgreSQL provides a number of functions that return values related to the current date and time. These SQL-standard functions all return values based on the start time of the current transaction:

```
CURRENT_DATE
CURRENT_TIME
CURRENT_TIMESTAMP
CURRENT_TIME(precision)
CURRENT_TIMESTAMP(precision)
LOCALTIME
LOCALTIMESTAMP
LOCALTIME(precision)
LOCALTIMESTAMP(precision)
```

`CURRENT_TIME` and `CURRENT_TIMESTAMP` deliver values with time zone; `LOCALTIME` and `LOCALTIMESTAMP` deliver values without time zone.

`CURRENT_TIME`, `CURRENT_TIMESTAMP`, `LOCALTIME`, and `LOCALTIMESTAMP` can optionally take a precision parameter, which causes the result to be rounded to that many fractional digits in the seconds field. Without a precision parameter, the result is given to the full available precision.

Some examples:

```
SELECT CURRENT_TIME;
Result: 14:39:53.662522-05
```

```
SELECT CURRENT_DATE;
Result: 2019-12-23
```

```
SELECT CURRENT_TIMESTAMP;
Result: 2019-12-23 14:39:53.662522-05
```

```
SELECT CURRENT_TIMESTAMP(2);
Result: 2019-12-23 14:39:53.66-05
```

```
SELECT LOCALTIMESTAMP;
Result: 2019-12-23 14:39:53.662522
```

Since these functions return the start time of the current transaction, their values do not change during the transaction. This is considered a feature: the intent is to allow a single transaction to have a consistent notion of the “current” time, so that multiple modifications within the same transaction bear the same time stamp.

### Note

Other database systems might advance these values more frequently.

PostgreSQL also provides functions that return the start time of the current statement, as well as the actual current time at the instant the function is called. The complete list of non-SQL-standard time functions is:

```
transaction_timestamp()  
statement_timestamp()  
clock_timestamp()  
timeofday()  
now()
```

`transaction_timestamp()` is equivalent to `CURRENT_TIMESTAMP`, but is named to clearly reflect what it returns. `statement_timestamp()` returns the start time of the current statement (more specifically, the time of receipt of the latest command message from the client). `statement_timestamp()` and `transaction_timestamp()` return the same value during the first command of a transaction, but might differ during subsequent commands. `clock_timestamp()` returns the actual current time, and therefore its value changes even within a single SQL command. `timeofday()` is a historical PostgreSQL function. Like `clock_timestamp()`, it returns the actual current time, but as a formatted text string rather than a timestamp with time zone value. `now()` is a traditional PostgreSQL equivalent to `transaction_timestamp()`.

All the date/time data types also accept the special literal value `now` to specify the current date and time (again, interpreted as the transaction start time). Thus, the following three all return the same result:

```
SELECT CURRENT_TIMESTAMP;  
SELECT now();  
SELECT TIMESTAMP 'now'; -- but see tip below
```

### Tip

Do not use the third form when specifying a value to be evaluated later, for example in a `DEFAULT` clause for a table column. The system will convert `now` to a timestamp as soon as the constant is parsed, so that when the default value is needed, the time of the table creation would be used! The first two forms will not be evaluated until the default value is used, because they are function calls. Thus they will give the desired behavior of defaulting to the time of row insertion. (See also Section 8.5.1.4.)

## 9.9.6. Delaying Execution

The following functions are available to delay execution of the server process:

```
pg_sleep ( double precision )  
pg_sleep_for ( interval )  
pg_sleep_until ( timestamp with time zone )
```

`pg_sleep` makes the current session's process sleep until the given number of seconds have elapsed. Fractional-second delays can be specified. `pg_sleep_for` is a convenience function to allow the sleep time to be specified as an interval. `pg_sleep_until` is a convenience function for when a specific wake-up time is desired. For example:

```
SELECT pg_sleep(1.5);
SELECT pg_sleep_for('5 minutes');
SELECT pg_sleep_until('tomorrow 03:00');
```

### Note

The effective resolution of the sleep interval is platform-specific; 0.01 seconds is a common value. The sleep delay will be at least as long as specified. It might be longer depending on factors such as server load. In particular, `pg_sleep_until` is not guaranteed to wake up exactly at the specified time, but it will not wake up any earlier.

### Warning

Make sure that your session does not hold more locks than necessary when calling `pg_sleep` or its variants. Otherwise other sessions might have to wait for your sleeping process, slowing down the entire system.

## 9.10. Enum Support Functions

For enum types (described in Section 8.7), there are several functions that allow cleaner programming without hard-coding particular values of an enum type. These are listed in Table 9.35. The examples assume an enum type created as:

```
CREATE TYPE rainbow AS ENUM ('red', 'orange', 'yellow', 'green',
    'blue', 'purple');
```

**Table 9.35. Enum Support Functions**

Function	Description	Example(s)
<code>enum_first (anyenum) → anyenum</code>	Returns the first value of the input enum type.	<code>enum_first(null::rainbow) → red</code>
<code>enum_last (anyenum) → anyenum</code>	Returns the last value of the input enum type.	<code>enum_last(null::rainbow) → purple</code>
<code>enum_range (anyenum) → anyarray</code>	Returns all values of the input enum type in an ordered array.	<code>enum_range(null::rainbow) → {red, orange, yellow, green, blue, purple}</code>
<code>enum_range (anyenum, anyenum) → anyarray</code>	Returns the range between the two given enum values, as an ordered array. The values must be from the same enum type. If the first parameter is null, the result will start with	

Function	Description Example(s)
	<p>the first value of the enum type. If the second parameter is null, the result will end with the last value of the enum type.</p> <pre>enum_range('orange'::rainbow, 'green'::rainbow) → {orange,yellow,green}</pre> <pre>enum_range(NULL, 'green'::rainbow) → {red,orange,yellow,green}</pre> <pre>enum_range('orange'::rainbow, NULL) → {orange,yellow,green,blue,purple}</pre>

Notice that except for the two-argument form of `enum_range`, these functions disregard the specific value passed to them; they care only about its declared data type. Either null or a specific value of the type can be passed, with the same result. It is more common to apply these functions to a table column or function argument than to a hardwired type name as used in the examples.

## 9.11. Geometric Functions and Operators

The geometric types `point`, `box`, `lseg`, `line`, `path`, `polygon`, and `circle` have a large set of native support functions and operators, shown in Table 9.36, Table 9.37, and Table 9.38.

**Table 9.36. Geometric Operators**

Operator	Description Example(s)
<i>geometric_type</i> + <i>point</i> → <i>geometric_type</i>	<p>Adds the coordinates of the second <code>point</code> to those of each point of the first argument, thus performing translation. Available for <code>point</code>, <code>box</code>, <code>path</code>, <code>circle</code>.</p> <pre>box '(1,1),(0,0)' + point '(2,0)' → (3,1),(2,0)</pre>
<i>path</i> + <i>path</i> → <i>path</i>	<p>Concatenates two open paths (returns NULL if either path is closed).</p> <pre>path '[(0,0),(1,1)]' + path '[(2,2),(3,3),(4,4)]' → [(0,0),(1,1),(2,2),(3,3),(4,4)]</pre>
<i>geometric_type</i> - <i>point</i> → <i>geometric_type</i>	<p>Subtracts the coordinates of the second <code>point</code> from those of each point of the first argument, thus performing translation. Available for <code>point</code>, <code>box</code>, <code>path</code>, <code>circle</code>.</p> <pre>box '(1,1),(0,0)' - point '(2,0)' → (-1,1),(-2,0)</pre>
<i>geometric_type</i> * <i>point</i> → <i>geometric_type</i>	<p>Multiplies each point of the first argument by the second <code>point</code> (treating a point as being a complex number represented by real and imaginary parts, and performing standard complex multiplication). If one interprets the second <code>point</code> as a vector, this is equivalent to scaling the object's size and distance from the origin by the length of the vector, and rotating it counterclockwise around the origin by the vector's angle from the <i>x</i> axis. Available for <code>point</code>, <code>box</code>,<sup>a</sup> <code>path</code>, <code>circle</code>.</p> <pre>path '((0,0),(1,0),(1,1))' * point '(3.0,0)' → ((0,0),(3,0),(3,3))</pre> <pre>path '((0,0),(1,0),(1,1))' * point(cosd(45), sind(45))</pre> <pre>→ ((0,0),(0.7071067811865475,0.7071067811865475),</pre> <pre>(0,1.414213562373095))</pre>

Operator	Description Example(s)
<i>geometric_type</i> / <i>point</i> → <i>geometric_type</i>	Divides each point of the first argument by the second point (treating a point as being a complex number represented by real and imaginary parts, and performing standard complex division). If one interprets the second point as a vector, this is equivalent to scaling the object's size and distance from the origin down by the length of the vector, and rotating it clockwise around the origin by the vector's angle from the x axis. Available for point, box, <sup>a</sup> path, circle. <pre>path '((0,0),(1,0),(1,1))' / point '(2.0,0)' → ((0,0), (0.5,0),(0.5,0.5)) path '((0,0),(1,0),(1,1))' / point(cosd(45), sind(45)) → ((0,0),(0.7071067811865476,-0.7071067811865476), (1.4142135623730951,0))</pre>
@-@ <i>geometric_type</i> → double precision	Computes the total length. Available for lseg, path. <pre>@-@ path '[(0,0),(1,0),(1,1)]' → 2</pre>
@@ <i>geometric_type</i> → point	Computes the center point. Available for box, lseg, polygon, circle. <pre>@@ box '(2,2),(0,0)' → (1,1)</pre>
# <i>geometric_type</i> → integer	Returns the number of points. Available for path, polygon. <pre># path '((1,0),(0,1),(-1,0))' → 3</pre>
<i>geometric_type</i> # <i>geometric_type</i> → point	Computes the point of intersection, or NULL if there is none. Available for lseg, line. <pre>lseg '[(0,0),(1,1)]' # lseg '[(1,0),(0,1)]' → (0.5,0.5)</pre>
box # box → box	Computes the intersection of two boxes, or NULL if there is none. <pre>box '(2,2),(-1,-1)' # box '(1,1),(-2,-2)' → (1,1),(-1,-1)</pre>
<i>geometric_type</i> ## <i>geometric_type</i> → point	Computes the closest point to the first object on the second object. Available for these pairs of types: (point, box), (point, lseg), (point, line), (lseg, box), (lseg, lseg), (line, lseg). <pre>point '(0,0)' ## lseg '[(2,0),(0,2)]' → (1,1)</pre>
<i>geometric_type</i> <-> <i>geometric_type</i> → double precision	Computes the distance between the objects. Available for all seven geometric types, for all combinations of point with another geometric type, and for these additional pairs of types: (box, lseg), (lseg, line), (polygon, circle) (and the commutator cases). <pre>circle '&lt;(0,0),1&gt;' &lt;-&gt; circle '&lt;(5,0),1&gt;' → 3</pre>
<i>geometric_type</i> @> <i>geometric_type</i> → boolean	Does first object contain second? Available for these pairs of types: (box, point), (box, box), (path, point), (polygon, point), (polygon, polygon), (circle, point), (circle, circle). <pre>circle '&lt;(0,0),2&gt;' @&gt; point '(1,1)' → t</pre>
<i>geometric_type</i> <@ <i>geometric_type</i> → boolean	



Operator	Description Example(s)
	Is first object contained in or on second? Available for these pairs of types: (point, box), (point, lseg), (point, line), (point, path), (point, polygon), (point, circle), (box, box), (lseg, box), (lseg, line), (polygon, polygon), (circle, circle). point '(1,1)' <@ circle '<(0,0),2>' → t
<i>geometric_type</i> && <i>geometric_type</i> → boolean	Do these objects overlap? (One point in common makes this true.) Available for box, polygon, circle. box '(1,1),(0,0)' && box '(2,2),(0,0)' → t
<i>geometric_type</i> << <i>geometric_type</i> → boolean	Is first object strictly left of second? Available for point, box, polygon, circle. circle '<(0,0),1>' << circle '<(5,0),1>' → t
<i>geometric_type</i> >> <i>geometric_type</i> → boolean	Is first object strictly right of second? Available for point, box, polygon, circle. circle '<(5,0),1>' >> circle '<(0,0),1>' → t
<i>geometric_type</i> &< <i>geometric_type</i> → boolean	Does first object not extend to the right of second? Available for box, polygon, circle. box '(1,1),(0,0)' &< box '(2,2),(0,0)' → t
<i>geometric_type</i> &> <i>geometric_type</i> → boolean	Does first object not extend to the left of second? Available for box, polygon, circle. box '(3,3),(0,0)' &> box '(2,2),(0,0)' → t
<i>geometric_type</i> <<  <i>geometric_type</i> → boolean	Is first object strictly below second? Available for point, box, polygon, circle. box '(3,3),(0,0)' <<  box '(5,5),(3,4)' → t
<i>geometric_type</i>  >> <i>geometric_type</i> → boolean	Is first object strictly above second? Available for point, box, polygon, circle. box '(5,5),(3,4)'  >> box '(3,3),(0,0)' → t
<i>geometric_type</i> &<  <i>geometric_type</i> → boolean	Does first object not extend above second? Available for box, polygon, circle. box '(1,1),(0,0)' &<  box '(2,2),(0,0)' → t
<i>geometric_type</i>  &> <i>geometric_type</i> → boolean	Does first object not extend below second? Available for box, polygon, circle. box '(3,3),(0,0)'  &> box '(2,2),(0,0)' → t
box <^ box → boolean	Is first object below second (allows edges to touch)? box '((1,1),(0,0))' <^ box '((2,2),(1,1))' → t
box >^ box → boolean	Is first object above second (allows edges to touch)? box '((2,2),(1,1))' >^ box '((1,1),(0,0))' → t
<i>geometric_type</i> ?# <i>geometric_type</i> → boolean	

Operator	Description Example(s)
	Do these objects intersect? Available for these pairs of types: (box, box), (lseg, box), (lseg, lseg), (lseg, line), (line, box), (line, line), (path, path). lseg '((-1,0),(1,0))' ?# box '(2,2),(-2,-2)' → t
	?- line → boolean ?- lseg → boolean Is line horizontal? ?- lseg '((-1,0),(1,0))' → t
	point ?- point → boolean Are points horizontally aligned (that is, have same y coordinate)? point '(1,0)' ?- point '(0,0)' → t
	?  line → boolean ?  lseg → boolean Is line vertical? ?  lseg '((-1,0),(1,0))' → f
	point ?  point → boolean Are points vertically aligned (that is, have same x coordinate)? point '(0,1)' ?  point '(0,0)' → t
	line ?-  line → boolean lseg ?-  lseg → boolean Are lines perpendicular? lseg '[(0,0),(0,1)]' ?-  lseg '[(0,0),(1,0)]' → t
	line ?   line → boolean lseg ?   lseg → boolean Are lines parallel? lseg '((-1,0),(1,0))' ?   lseg '((-1,2),(1,2))' → t
	geometric_type ~= geometric_type → boolean Are these objects the same? Available for point, box, polygon, circle. polygon '((0,0),(1,1))' ~= polygon '((1,1),(0,0))' → t

<sup>3a</sup>“Rotating” a box with these operators only moves its corner points: the box is still considered to have sides parallel to the axes. Hence the box’s size is not preserved, as a true rotation would do.

### Caution

Note that the “same as” operator, `~=`, represents the usual notion of equality for the `point`, `box`, `polygon`, and `circle` types. Some of the geometric types also have an `=` operator, but `=` compares for equal *areas* only. The other scalar comparison operators (`<=` and so on), where available for these types, likewise compare areas.

### Note

Before PostgreSQL 14, the point is strictly below/above comparison operators `point <<| point` and `point |>> point` were respectively called `<^` and `>^`. These names are still available, but are deprecated and will eventually be removed.

**Table 9.37. Geometric Functions**

Function	Description	Example(s)
<code>area (geometric_type) → double precision</code>	Computes area. Available for box, path, circle. A path input must be closed, else NULL is returned. Also, if the path is self-intersecting, the result may be meaningless.	<code>area(box '(2,2),(0,0)') → 4</code>
<code>center (geometric_type) → point</code>	Computes center point. Available for box, circle.	<code>center(box '(1,2),(0,0)') → (0.5,1)</code>
<code>diagonal (box) → lseg</code>	Extracts box's diagonal as a line segment (same as <code>lseg(box)</code> ).	<code>diagonal(box '(1,2),(0,0)') → [(1,2),(0,0)]</code>
<code>diameter (circle) → double precision</code>	Computes diameter of circle.	<code>diameter(circle '&lt;(0,0),2&gt;') → 4</code>
<code>height (box) → double precision</code>	Computes vertical size of box.	<code>height(box '(1,2),(0,0)') → 2</code>
<code>isclosed (path) → boolean</code>	Is path closed?	<code>isclosed(path '((0,0),(1,1),(2,0))') → t</code>
<code>isopen (path) → boolean</code>	Is path open?	<code>isopen(path '[(0,0),(1,1),(2,0)]') → t</code>
<code>length (geometric_type) → double precision</code>	Computes the total length. Available for lseg, path.	<code>length(path '((-1,0),(1,0))') → 4</code>
<code>npoints (geometric_type) → integer</code>	Returns the number of points. Available for path, polygon.	<code>npoints(path '[(0,0),(1,1),(2,0)]') → 3</code>
<code>pclose (path) → path</code>	Converts path to closed form.	<code>pclose(path '[(0,0),(1,1),(2,0)]') → ((0,0),(1,1),(2,0))</code>
<code>popen (path) → path</code>	Converts path to open form.	

Function	Description	Example(s)
		<code>popen(path '((0,0),(1,1),(2,0))') → [(0,0),(1,1),(2,0)]</code>
	<code>radius(circle) → double precision</code> Computes radius of circle.	<code>radius(circle '&lt;(0,0),2&gt;') → 2</code>
	<code>slope(point,point) → double precision</code> Computes slope of a line drawn through the two points.	<code>slope(point '(0,0)', point '(2,1)') → 0.5</code>
	<code>width(box) → double precision</code> Computes horizontal size of box.	<code>width(box '(1,2),(0,0)') → 1</code>

**Table 9.38. Geometric Type Conversion Functions**

Function	Description	Example(s)
	<code>box(circle) → box</code> Computes box inscribed within the circle.	<code>box(circle '&lt;(0,0),2&gt;') → (1.414213562373095,1.414213562373095), (-1.414213562373095,-1.414213562373095)</code>
	<code>box(point) → box</code> Converts point to empty box.	<code>box(point '(1,0)') → (1,0),(1,0)</code>
	<code>box(point,point) → box</code> Converts any two corner points to box.	<code>box(point '(0,1)', point '(1,0)') → (1,1),(0,0)</code>
	<code>box(polygon) → box</code> Computes bounding box of polygon.	<code>box(polygon '((0,0),(1,1),(2,0))') → (2,1),(0,0)</code>
	<code>bound_box(box,box) → box</code> Computes bounding box of two boxes.	<code>bound_box(box '(1,1),(0,0)', box '(4,4),(3,3)') → (4,4), (0,0)</code>
	<code>circle(box) → circle</code> Computes smallest circle enclosing box.	<code>circle(box '(1,1),(0,0)') → &lt;(0.5,0.5),0.7071067811865476&gt;</code>
	<code>circle(point,double precision) → circle</code> Constructs circle from center and radius.	<code>circle(point '(0,0)', 2.0) → &lt;(0,0),2&gt;</code>
	<code>circle(polygon) → circle</code>	

Function	Description Example(s)
	<p>Converts polygon to circle. The circle's center is the mean of the positions of the polygon's points, and the radius is the average distance of the polygon's points from that center.</p> <pre>circle(polygon '((0,0),(1,3),(2,0))') → &lt;(1,1),1.6094757082487299&gt;</pre>
	<pre>line(point,point) → line</pre> <p>Converts two points to the line through them.</p> <pre>line(point '(-1,0)', point '(1,0)') → {0,-1,0}</pre>
	<pre>lseg(box) → lseg</pre> <p>Extracts box's diagonal as a line segment.</p> <pre>lseg(box '(1,0),(-1,0)') → [(1,0),(-1,0)]</pre>
	<pre>lseg(point,point) → lseg</pre> <p>Constructs line segment from two endpoints.</p> <pre>lseg(point '(-1,0)', point '(1,0)') → [(-1,0),(1,0)]</pre>
	<pre>path(polygon) → path</pre> <p>Converts polygon to a closed path with the same list of points.</p> <pre>path(polygon '((0,0),(1,1),(2,0))') → ((0,0),(1,1),(2,0))</pre>
	<pre>point(double precision,double precision) → point</pre> <p>Constructs point from its coordinates.</p> <pre>point(23.4, -44.5) → (23.4,-44.5)</pre>
	<pre>point(box) → point</pre> <p>Computes center of box.</p> <pre>point(box '(1,0),(-1,0)') → (0,0)</pre>
	<pre>point(circle) → point</pre> <p>Computes center of circle.</p> <pre>point(circle '&lt;(0,0),2&gt;') → (0,0)</pre>
	<pre>point(lseg) → point</pre> <p>Computes center of line segment.</p> <pre>point(lseg '[(-1,0),(1,0)]') → (0,0)</pre>
	<pre>point(polygon) → point</pre> <p>Computes center of polygon (the mean of the positions of the polygon's points).</p> <pre>point(polygon '((0,0),(1,1),(2,0))') → (1,0.3333333333333333)</pre>
	<pre>polygon(box) → polygon</pre> <p>Converts box to a 4-point polygon.</p> <pre>polygon(box '(1,1),(0,0)') → ((0,0),(0,1),(1,1),(1,0))</pre>
	<pre>polygon(circle) → polygon</pre> <p>Converts circle to a 12-point polygon.</p> <pre>polygon(circle '&lt;(0,0),2&gt;') → ((-2,0), (-1.7320508075688774,0.9999999999999999), (-1.0000000000000002,1.7320508075688772), (-1.2246063538223773e-16,2),</pre>

Function	Description
	<pre> (0.9999999999999996,1.7320508075688774), (1.732050807568877,1.0000000000000007), (2,2.4492127076447545e-16), (1.7320508075688776,-0.9999999999999994), (1.0000000000000009,-1.7320508075688767), (3.673819061467132e-16,-2), (-0.9999999999999987,-1.732050807568878), (-1.7320508075688767,-1.0000000000000009)) </pre>
	<pre> polygon ( integer, circle ) → polygon Converts circle to an <i>n</i>-point polygon.  polygon(4, circle '&lt;(3,0),1&gt;') → ((2,0),(3,1), (4,1.2246063538223773e-16),(3,-1)) </pre>
	<pre> polygon ( path ) → polygon Converts closed path to a polygon with the same list of points.  polygon(path '((0,0),(1,1),(2,0))') → ((0,0),(1,1),(2,0)) </pre>

It is possible to access the two component numbers of a point as though the point were an array with indexes 0 and 1. For example, if `t.p` is a point column then `SELECT p[0] FROM t` retrieves the X coordinate and `UPDATE t SET p[1] = ...` changes the Y coordinate. In the same way, a value of type `box` or `lseg` can be treated as an array of two point values.

## 9.12. Network Address Functions and Operators

The IP network address types, `cidr` and `inet`, support the usual comparison operators shown in Table 9.1 as well as the specialized operators and functions shown in Table 9.39 and Table 9.40.

Any `cidr` value can be cast to `inet` implicitly; therefore, the operators and functions shown below as operating on `inet` also work on `cidr` values. (Where there are separate functions for `inet` and `cidr`, it is because the behavior should be different for the two cases.) Also, it is permitted to cast an `inet` value to `cidr`. When this is done, any bits to the right of the netmask are silently zeroed to create a valid `cidr` value.

**Table 9.39. IP Address Operators**

Operator	Description
	<pre> inet &lt;&lt; inet → boolean Is subnet strictly contained by subnet? This operator, and the next four, test for subnet inclusion. They consider only the network parts of the two addresses (ignoring any bits to the right of the netmasks) and determine whether one network is identical to or a subnet of the other.  inet '192.168.1.5' &lt;&lt; inet '192.168.1/24' → t inet '192.168.0.5' &lt;&lt; inet '192.168.1/24' → f inet '192.168.1/24' &lt;&lt; inet '192.168.1/24' → f </pre>
	<pre> inet &lt;=&lt; inet → boolean Is subnet contained by or equal to subnet?  inet '192.168.1/24' &lt;=&lt; inet '192.168.1/24' → t </pre>

<b>Operator</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Example(s)</b>
<code>inet &gt;&gt; inet</code>	→ boolean Does subnet strictly contain subnet?	<code>inet '192.168.1/24' &gt;&gt; inet '192.168.1.5' → t</code>
<code>inet &gt;= inet</code>	→ boolean Does subnet contain or equal subnet?	<code>inet '192.168.1/24' &gt;= inet '192.168.1/24' → t</code>
<code>inet &amp;&amp; inet</code>	→ boolean Does either subnet contain or equal the other?	<code>inet '192.168.1/24' &amp;&amp; inet '192.168.1.80/28' → t</code> <code>inet '192.168.1/24' &amp;&amp; inet '192.168.2.0/28' → f</code>
<code>~ inet</code>	→ inet Computes bitwise NOT.	<code>~ inet '192.168.1.6' → 63.87.254.249</code>
<code>inet &amp; inet</code>	→ inet Computes bitwise AND.	<code>inet '192.168.1.6' &amp; inet '0.0.0.255' → 0.0.0.6</code>
<code>inet   inet</code>	→ inet Computes bitwise OR.	<code>inet '192.168.1.6'   inet '0.0.0.255' → 192.168.1.255</code>
<code>inet + bigint</code>	→ inet Adds an offset to an address.	<code>inet '192.168.1.6' + 25 → 192.168.1.31</code>
<code>bigint + inet</code>	→ inet Adds an offset to an address.	<code>200 + inet '::ffff:fff0:1' → ::ffff:255.240.0.201</code>
<code>inet - bigint</code>	→ inet Subtracts an offset from an address.	<code>inet '192.168.1.43' - 36 → 192.168.1.7</code>
<code>inet - inet</code>	→ bigint Computes the difference of two addresses.	<code>inet '192.168.1.43' - inet '192.168.1.19' → 24</code> <code>inet ':::1' - inet ':::ffff:1' → -4294901760</code>

**Table 9.40. IP Address Functions**

<b>Function</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Example(s)</b>
<code>abbrev (inet)</code>	→ text Creates an abbreviated display format as text. (The result is the same as the <code>inet</code> output function produces; it is “abbreviated” only in comparison to the result of an explicit cast to text, which for historical reasons will never suppress the netmask part.)	

Function	Description	Example(s)
		<code>abbrev(inet '10.1.0.0/32') → 10.1.0.0</code>
<code>abbrev(cidr) → text</code>	Creates an abbreviated display format as text. (The abbreviation consists of dropping all-zero octets to the right of the netmask; more examples are in Table 8.22.)	<code>abbrev(cidr '10.1.0.0/16') → 10.1/16</code>
<code>broadcast(inet) → inet</code>	Computes the broadcast address for the address's network.	<code>broadcast(inet '192.168.1.5/24') → 192.168.1.255/24</code>
<code>family(inet) → integer</code>	Returns the address's family: 4 for IPv4, 6 for IPv6.	<code>family(inet ':::1') → 6</code>
<code>host(inet) → text</code>	Returns the IP address as text, ignoring the netmask.	<code>host(inet '192.168.1.0/24') → 192.168.1.0</code>
<code>hostmask(inet) → inet</code>	Computes the host mask for the address's network.	<code>hostmask(inet '192.168.23.20/30') → 0.0.0.3</code>
<code>inet_merge(inet, inet) → cidr</code>	Computes the smallest network that includes both of the given networks.	<code>inet_merge(inet '192.168.1.5/24', inet '192.168.2.5/24') → 192.168.0.0/22</code>
<code>inet_same_family(inet, inet) → boolean</code>	Tests whether the addresses belong to the same IP family.	<code>inet_same_family(inet '192.168.1.5/24', inet ':::1') → f</code>
<code>masklen(inet) → integer</code>	Returns the netmask length in bits.	<code>masklen(inet '192.168.1.5/24') → 24</code>
<code>netmask(inet) → inet</code>	Computes the network mask for the address's network.	<code>netmask(inet '192.168.1.5/24') → 255.255.255.0</code>
<code>network(inet) → cidr</code>	Returns the network part of the address, zeroing out whatever is to the right of the netmask. (This is equivalent to casting the value to <code>cidr</code> .)	<code>network(inet '192.168.1.5/24') → 192.168.1.0/24</code>
<code>set_masklen(inet, integer) → inet</code>	Sets the netmask length for an <code>inet</code> value. The address part does not change.	<code>set_masklen(inet '192.168.1.5/24', 16) → 192.168.1.5/16</code>
<code>set_masklen(cidr, integer) → cidr</code>	Sets the netmask length for a <code>cidr</code> value. Address bits to the right of the new netmask are set to zero.	<code>set_masklen(cidr '192.168.1.0/24', 16) → 192.168.0.0/16</code>



Function
Description
Example(s)
<code>text ( inet ) → text</code> Returns the unabbreviated IP address and netmask length as text. (This has the same result as an explicit cast to text.) <code>text ( inet '192.168.1.5' ) → 192.168.1.5/32</code>

### Tip

The `abbrev`, `host`, and `text` functions are primarily intended to offer alternative display formats for IP addresses.

The MAC address types, `macaddr` and `macaddr8`, support the usual comparison operators shown in Table 9.1 as well as the specialized functions shown in Table 9.41. In addition, they support the bitwise logical operators `~`, `&` and `|` (NOT, AND and OR), just as shown above for IP addresses.

**Table 9.41. MAC Address Functions**

Function
Description
Example(s)
<code>trunc ( macaddr ) → macaddr</code> Sets the last 3 bytes of the address to zero. The remaining prefix can be associated with a particular manufacturer (using data not included in PostgreSQL). <code>trunc ( macaddr '12:34:56:78:90:ab' ) → 12:34:56:00:00:00</code>
<code>trunc ( macaddr8 ) → macaddr8</code> Sets the last 5 bytes of the address to zero. The remaining prefix can be associated with a particular manufacturer (using data not included in PostgreSQL). <code>trunc ( macaddr8 '12:34:56:78:90:ab:cd:ef' ) → 12:34:56:00:00:00:00:00</code>
<code>macaddr8_set7bit ( macaddr8 ) → macaddr8</code> Sets the 7th bit of the address to one, creating what is known as modified EUI-64, for inclusion in an IPv6 address. <code>macaddr8_set7bit ( macaddr8 '00:34:56:ab:cd:ef' ) → 02:34:56:ff:fe:ab:cd:ef</code>

## 9.13. Text Search Functions and Operators

Table 9.42, Table 9.43 and Table 9.44 summarize the functions and operators that are provided for full text searching. See Chapter 12 for a detailed explanation of PostgreSQL's text search facility.

**Table 9.42. Text Search Operators**

Operator
Description
Example(s)
<code>tsvector @@ tsquery → boolean</code> <code>tsquery @@ tsvector → boolean</code> Does <code>tsvector</code> match <code>tsquery</code> ? (The arguments can be given in either order.)

Operator	Description Example(s)
	<code>to_tsvector('fat cats ate rats') @@ to_tsquery('cat &amp; rat') → t</code>
<code>text @@ tsquery</code>	<code>→ boolean</code> Does text string, after implicit invocation of <code>to_tsvector()</code> , match <code>tsquery</code> ? <code>'fat cats ate rats' @@ to_tsquery('cat &amp; rat') → t</code>
<code>tsvector @@@ tsquery</code>	<code>→ boolean</code> <code>tsquery @@@ tsvector</code> <code>→ boolean</code> This is a deprecated synonym for <code>@@</code> . <code>to_tsvector('fat cats ate rats') @@@ to_tsquery('cat &amp; rat') → t</code>
<code>tsvector    tsvector</code>	<code>→ tsvector</code> Concatenates two <code>tsvectors</code> . If both inputs contain lexeme positions, the second input's positions are adjusted accordingly. <code>'a:1 b:2'::tsvector    'c:1 d:2 b:3'::tsvector → 'a':1 'b':2,5 'c':3 'd':4</code>
<code>tsquery &amp;&amp; tsquery</code>	<code>→ tsquery</code> ANDs two <code>tsquery</code> s together, producing a query that matches documents that match both input queries. <code>'fat   rat'::tsquery &amp;&amp; 'cat'::tsquery → ( 'fat'   'rat' ) &amp; 'cat'</code>
<code>tsquery    tsquery</code>	<code>→ tsquery</code> ORs two <code>tsquery</code> s together, producing a query that matches documents that match either input query. <code>'fat   rat'::tsquery    'cat'::tsquery → 'fat'   'rat'   'cat'</code>
<code>!! tsquery</code>	<code>→ tsquery</code> Negates a <code>tsquery</code> , producing a query that matches documents that do not match the input query. <code>!! 'cat'::tsquery → !'cat'</code>
<code>tsquery &lt;-&gt; tsquery</code>	<code>→ tsquery</code> Constructs a phrase query, which matches if the two input queries match at successive lexemes. <code>to_tsquery('fat') &lt;-&gt; to_tsquery('rat') → 'fat' &lt;-&gt; 'rat'</code>
<code>tsquery @&gt; tsquery</code>	<code>→ boolean</code> Does first <code>tsquery</code> contain the second? (This considers only whether all the lexemes appearing in one query appear in the other, ignoring the combining operators.) <code>'cat'::tsquery @&gt; 'cat &amp; rat'::tsquery → f</code>
<code>tsquery &lt;@ tsquery</code>	<code>→ boolean</code> Is first <code>tsquery</code> contained in the second? (This considers only whether all the lexemes appearing in one query appear in the other, ignoring the combining operators.) <code>'cat'::tsquery &lt;@ 'cat &amp; rat'::tsquery → t</code> <code>'cat'::tsquery &lt;@ '!cat &amp; rat'::tsquery → t</code>

In addition to these specialized operators, the usual comparison operators shown in Table 9.1 are available for types `tsvector` and `tsquery`. These are not very useful for text searching but allow, for example, unique indexes to be built on columns of these types.

**Table 9.43. Text Search Functions**

Function	Description	Example(s)
<code>array_to_tsvector ( text[] ) → tsvector</code>	Converts an array of text strings to a <code>tsvector</code> . The given strings are used as lexemes as-is, without further processing. Array elements must not be empty strings or NULL.	<code>array_to_tsvector( '{fat,cat,rat}'::text[] ) → 'cat' 'fat' 'rat'</code>
<code>get_current_ts_config() → regconfig</code>	Returns the OID of the current default text search configuration (as set by <code>default_text_search_config</code> ).	<code>get_current_ts_config() → english</code>
<code>length ( tsvector ) → integer</code>	Returns the number of lexemes in the <code>tsvector</code> .	<code>length( 'fat:2,4 cat:3 rat:5A'::tsvector ) → 3</code>
<code>numnode ( tsquery ) → integer</code>	Returns the number of lexemes plus operators in the <code>tsquery</code> .	<code>numnode( '(fat &amp; rat)   cat'::tsquery ) → 5</code>
<code>plainto_tsquery ( [ config regconfig, ] query text ) → tsquery</code>	Converts text to a <code>tsquery</code> , normalizing words according to the specified or default configuration. Any punctuation in the string is ignored (it does not determine query operators). The resulting query matches documents containing all non-stopwords in the text.	<code>plainto_tsquery( 'english', 'The Fat Rats' ) → 'fat' &amp; 'rat'</code>
<code>phraseto_tsquery ( [ config regconfig, ] query text ) → tsquery</code>	Converts text to a <code>tsquery</code> , normalizing words according to the specified or default configuration. Any punctuation in the string is ignored (it does not determine query operators). The resulting query matches phrases containing all non-stopwords in the text.	<code>phraseto_tsquery( 'english', 'The Fat Rats' ) → 'fat' &lt;-&gt; 'rat'</code> <code>phraseto_tsquery( 'english', 'The Cat and Rats' ) → 'cat' &lt;2&gt; 'rat'</code>
<code>websearch_to_tsquery ( [ config regconfig, ] query text ) → tsquery</code>	Converts text to a <code>tsquery</code> , normalizing words according to the specified or default configuration. Quoted word sequences are converted to phrase tests. The word “or” is understood as producing an OR operator, and a dash produces a NOT operator; other punctuation is ignored. This approximates the behavior of some common web search tools.	<code>websearch_to_tsquery( 'english', '"fat rat" or cat dog' ) → 'fat' &lt;-&gt; 'rat'   'cat' &amp; 'dog'</code>
<code>querytree ( tsquery ) → text</code>	Produces a representation of the indexable portion of a <code>tsquery</code> . A result that is empty or just T indicates a non-indexable query.	<code>querytree( 'foo &amp; ! bar'::tsquery ) → 'foo'</code>
<code>setweight ( vector tsvector, weight "char" ) → tsvector</code>		

Function	Description
	<p>Assigns the specified <i>weight</i> to each element of the <i>vector</i>.</p> <pre>setweight('fat:2,4 cat:3 rat:5B'::tsvector, 'A') → 'cat':3A 'fat':2A,4A 'rat':5A</pre>
	<pre>setweight(vector tsvector, weight "char", lexemes text[]) → tsvector</pre> <p>Assigns the specified <i>weight</i> to elements of the <i>vector</i> that are listed in <i>lexemes</i>. The strings in <i>lexemes</i> are taken as lexemes as-is, without further processing. Strings that do not match any lexeme in <i>vector</i> are ignored.</p> <pre>setweight('fat:2,4 cat:3 rat:5,6B'::tsvector, 'A', '{cat,rat}') → 'cat':3A 'fat':2,4 'rat':5A,6A</pre>
	<pre>strip(tsvector) → tsvector</pre> <p>Removes positions and weights from the <i>tsvector</i>.</p> <pre>strip('fat:2,4 cat:3 rat:5A'::tsvector) → 'cat' 'fat' 'rat'</pre>
	<pre>to_tsquery([config regconfig,] query text) → tsquery</pre> <p>Converts text to a <i>tsquery</i>, normalizing words according to the specified or default configuration. The words must be combined by valid <i>tsquery</i> operators.</p> <pre>to_tsquery('english', 'The &amp; Fat &amp; Rats') → 'fat' &amp; 'rat'</pre>
	<pre>to_tsvector([config regconfig,] document text) → tsvector</pre> <p>Converts text to a <i>tsvector</i>, normalizing words according to the specified or default configuration. Position information is included in the result.</p> <pre>to_tsvector('english', 'The Fat Rats') → 'fat':2 'rat':3</pre>
	<pre>to_tsvector([config regconfig,] document json) → tsvector</pre> <pre>to_tsvector([config regconfig,] document jsonb) → tsvector</pre> <p>Converts each string value in the JSON document to a <i>tsvector</i>, normalizing words according to the specified or default configuration. The results are then concatenated in document order to produce the output. Position information is generated as though one stopword exists between each pair of string values. (Beware that “document order” of the fields of a JSON object is implementation-dependent when the input is <i>jsonb</i>; observe the difference in the examples.)</p> <pre>to_tsvector('english', '{"aa": "The Fat Rats", "b": "dog"}'::json) → 'dog':5 'fat':2 'rat':3</pre> <pre>to_tsvector('english', '{"aa": "The Fat Rats", "b": "dog"}'::jsonb) → 'dog':1 'fat':4 'rat':5</pre>
	<pre>json_to_tsvector([config regconfig,] document json, filter jsonb) → tsvector</pre> <pre>jsonb_to_tsvector([config regconfig,] document jsonb, filter jsonb) → tsvector</pre> <p>Selects each item in the JSON document that is requested by the <i>filter</i> and converts each one to a <i>tsvector</i>, normalizing words according to the specified or default configuration. The results are then concatenated in document order to produce the output. Position information is generated as though one stopword exists between each pair of selected items. (Beware that “document order” of the fields of a JSON object is implementation-dependent when the input is <i>jsonb</i>.) The <i>filter</i> must be a <i>jsonb</i> array containing zero or more of these keywords: "string" (to include all string values), "numeric" (to include all numeric values), "boolean" (to include all boolean values), "key" (to include all keys), or "all" (to include all the above). As a special case, the <i>filter</i> can also be a simple JSON value that is one of these keywords.</p>

Function	Description
	<b>Example(s)</b> <pre> json_to_tsvector('english', '{"a": "The Fat Rats", "b": 123}':::json, ['"string", "numeric"]') → '123':5 'fat':2 'rat':3 json_to_tsvector('english', '{"cat": "The Fat Rats", "dog": 123}':::json, '"all"') → '123':9 'cat':1 'dog':7 'fat':4 'rat':5 </pre>
<code>ts_delete(<i>vector</i> tsvector, <i>lexeme</i> text) → tsvector</code>	Removes any occurrence of the given <i>lexeme</i> from the <i>vector</i> . The <i>lexeme</i> string is treated as a lexeme as-is, without further processing. <pre>ts_delete('fat:2,4 cat:3 rat:5A':::tsvector, 'fat') → 'cat':3 'rat':5A</pre>
<code>ts_delete(<i>vector</i> tsvector, <i>lexemes</i> text[]) → tsvector</code>	Removes any occurrences of the lexemes in <i>lexemes</i> from the <i>vector</i> . The strings in <i>lexemes</i> are taken as lexemes as-is, without further processing. Strings that do not match any lexeme in <i>vector</i> are ignored. <pre>ts_delete('fat:2,4 cat:3 rat:5A':::tsvector, AR- RAY['fat', 'rat']) → 'cat':3</pre>
<code>ts_filter(<i>vector</i> tsvector, <i>weights</i> "char"[]) → tsvector</code>	Selects only elements with the given <i>weights</i> from the <i>vector</i> . <pre>ts_filter('fat:2,4 cat:3b,7c rat:5A':::tsvector, '{a,b}') → 'cat':3B 'rat':5A</pre>
<code>ts_headline([<i>config</i> regconfig,] <i>document</i> text, <i>query</i> tsquery[, <i>options</i> text]) → text</code>	Displays, in an abbreviated form, the match(es) for the <i>query</i> in the <i>document</i> , which must be raw text not a <i>tsvector</i> . Words in the document are normalized according to the specified or default configuration before matching to the query. Use of this function is discussed in Section 12.3.4, which also describes the available <i>options</i> . <pre>ts_headline('The fat cat ate the rat.', 'cat') → The fat &lt;b&gt;cat&lt;/b&gt; ate the rat.</pre>
<code>ts_headline([<i>config</i> regconfig,] <i>document</i> json, <i>query</i> tsquery[, <i>options</i> text]) → text</code> <code>ts_headline([<i>config</i> regconfig,] <i>document</i> jsonb, <i>query</i> tsquery[, <i>options</i> text]) → text</code>	Displays, in an abbreviated form, match(es) for the <i>query</i> that occur in string values within the JSON <i>document</i> . See Section 12.3.4 for more details. <pre>ts_headline('{"cat":"raining cats and dogs}':::jsonb, 'cat') → {"cat": "raining &lt;b&gt;cats&lt;/b&gt; and dogs"}</pre>
<code>ts_rank([<i>weights</i> real[],] <i>vector</i> tsvector, <i>query</i> tsquery[, <i>normalization</i> integer]) → real</code>	Computes a score showing how well the <i>vector</i> matches the <i>query</i> . See Section 12.3.3 for details. <pre>ts_rank(to_tsvector('raining cats and dogs'), 'cat') → 0.06079271</pre>
<code>ts_rank_cd([<i>weights</i> real[],] <i>vector</i> tsvector, <i>query</i> tsquery[, <i>normalization</i> integer]) → real</code>	

Function	Description	Example(s)												
	Computes a score showing how well the <i>vector</i> matches the <i>query</i> , using a cover density algorithm. See Section 12.3.3 for details.	<code>ts_rank_cd(to_tsvector('raining cats and dogs'), 'cat') → 0.1</code>												
	<code>ts_rewrite(query tsquery, target tsquery, substitute tsquery) → tsquery</code> Replaces occurrences of <i>target</i> with <i>substitute</i> within the <i>query</i> . See Section 12.4.2.1 for details.	<code>ts_rewrite('a &amp; b'::tsquery, 'a'::tsquery, 'foo bar'::tsquery) → 'b' &amp; ( 'foo'   'bar' )</code>												
	<code>ts_rewrite(query tsquery, select text) → tsquery</code> Replaces portions of the <i>query</i> according to target(s) and substitute(s) obtained by executing a SELECT command. See Section 12.4.2.1 for details.	<code>SELECT ts_rewrite('a &amp; b'::tsquery, 'SELECT t,s FROM aliases') → 'b' &amp; ( 'foo'   'bar' )</code>												
	<code>tsquery_phrase(query1 tsquery, query2 tsquery) → tsquery</code> Constructs a phrase query that searches for matches of <i>query1</i> and <i>query2</i> at successive lexemes (same as <-> operator).	<code>tsquery_phrase(to_tsquery('fat'), to_tsquery('cat')) → 'fat' &lt;-&gt; 'cat'</code>												
	<code>tsquery_phrase(query1 tsquery, query2 tsquery, distance integer) → tsquery</code> Constructs a phrase query that searches for matches of <i>query1</i> and <i>query2</i> that occur exactly <i>distance</i> lexemes apart.	<code>tsquery_phrase(to_tsquery('fat'), to_tsquery('cat'), 10) → 'fat' &lt;10&gt; 'cat'</code>												
	<code>tsvector_to_array(tsvector) → text[]</code> Converts a tsvector to an array of lexemes.	<code>tsvector_to_array('fat:2,4 cat:3 rat:5A'::tsvector) → {cat,fat,rat}</code>												
	<code>unnest(tsvector) → setof record(lexeme text, positions smallint[], weights text)</code> Expands a tsvector into a set of rows, one per lexeme.	<code>select * from unnest('cat:3 fat:2,4 rat:5A'::tsvector) →</code>  <table> <thead> <tr> <th>lexeme</th><th>positions</th><th>weights</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>cat</td><td>{3}</td><td>{D}</td></tr> <tr> <td>fat</td><td>{2,4}</td><td>{D,D}</td></tr> <tr> <td>rat</td><td>{5}</td><td>{A}</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	lexeme	positions	weights	cat	{3}	{D}	fat	{2,4}	{D,D}	rat	{5}	{A}
lexeme	positions	weights												
cat	{3}	{D}												
fat	{2,4}	{D,D}												
rat	{5}	{A}												

## Note

All the text search functions that accept an optional `regconfig` argument will use the configuration specified by `default_text_search_config` when that argument is omitted.

The functions in Table 9.44 are listed separately because they are not usually used in everyday text searching operations. They are primarily helpful for development and debugging of new text search configurations.

**Table 9.44. Text Search Debugging Functions**

Function	Description	Example(s)
<code>ts_debug</code>	<code>([ config regconfig, ] document text) → setof record ( alias text, description text, token text, dictionaries regdictionary[], dictionary regdictionary, lexemes text[] )</code> Extracts and normalizes tokens from the <i>document</i> according to the specified or default text search configuration, and returns information about how each token was processed. See Section 12.8.1 for details.	<code>ts_debug('english', 'The Brightest supernovaes') → (asciiword, "Word, all ASCII", The, {english_stem}, english_stem, {})</code> ...
<code>ts_lexize</code>	<code>(dict regdictionary, token text) → text[]</code> Returns an array of replacement lexemes if the input token is known to the dictionary, or an empty array if the token is known to the dictionary but it is a stop word, or NULL if it is not a known word. See Section 12.8.3 for details.	<code>ts_lexize('english_stem', 'stars') → {star}</code>
<code>ts_parse</code>	<code>(parser_name text, document text) → setof record ( tokid integer, token text )</code> Extracts tokens from the <i>document</i> using the named parser. See Section 12.8.2 for details.	<code>ts_parse('default', 'foo - bar') → (1,foo)</code> ...
<code>ts_parse</code>	<code>(parser_oid oid, document text) → setof record ( tokid integer, token text )</code> Extracts tokens from the <i>document</i> using a parser specified by OID. See Section 12.8.2 for details.	<code>ts_parse(3722, 'foo - bar') → (1,foo)</code> ...
<code>ts_token_type</code>	<code>(parser_name text) → setof record ( tokid integer, alias text, description text )</code> Returns a table that describes each type of token the named parser can recognize. See Section 12.8.2 for details.	<code>ts_token_type('default') → (1,asciiword, "Word, all ASCII")</code> ...
<code>ts_token_type</code>	<code>(parser_oid oid) → setof record ( tokid integer, alias text, description text )</code> Returns a table that describes each type of token a parser specified by OID can recognize. See Section 12.8.2 for details.	<code>ts_token_type(3722) → (1,asciiword, "Word, all ASCII")</code> ...
<code>ts_stat</code>	<code>(sqlquery text [, weights text ]) → setof record ( word text, ndoc integer, nentry integer )</code> Executes the <i>sqlquery</i> , which must return a single <i>tsvector</i> column, and returns statistics about each distinct lexeme contained in the data. See Section 12.4.4 for details.	<code>ts_stat('SELECT vector FROM apod') → (foo,10,15)</code> ...

## 9.14. UUID Functions

PostgreSQL includes one function to generate a UUID:

```
gen_random_uuid () → uuid
```

This function returns a version 4 (random) UUID. This is the most commonly used type of UUID and is appropriate for most applications.

The `uuid-oss` module provides additional functions that implement other standard algorithms for generating UUIDs.

PostgreSQL also provides the usual comparison operators shown in Table 9.1 for UUIDs.

## 9.15. XML Functions

The functions and function-like expressions described in this section operate on values of type `xml`. See Section 8.13 for information about the `xml` type. The function-like expressions `xmlparse` and `xmlserialize` for converting to and from type `xml` are documented there, not in this section.

Use of most of these functions requires PostgreSQL to have been built with `configure --with-libxml`.

### 9.15.1. Producing XML Content

A set of functions and function-like expressions is available for producing XML content from SQL data. As such, they are particularly suitable for formatting query results into XML documents for processing in client applications.

#### 9.15.1.1. `xmlcomment`

```
xmlcomment ( text ) → xml
```

The function `xmlcomment` creates an XML value containing an XML comment with the specified text as content. The text cannot contain “--” or end with a “-”, otherwise the resulting construct would not be a valid XML comment. If the argument is null, the result is null.

Example:

```
SELECT xmlcomment('hello');

 xmlcomment 
-----
 <!--hello-->
```

#### 9.15.1.2. `xmlconcat`

```
xmlconcat ( xml [, ...] ) → xml
```

The function `xmlconcat` concatenates a list of individual XML values to create a single value containing an XML content fragment. Null values are omitted; the result is only null if there are no non-null arguments.

Example:



```
SELECT xmlconcat('<abc/>', '<bar>foo</bar>');
```

```
      xmlconcat
-----
<abc/><bar>foo</bar>
```

XML declarations, if present, are combined as follows. If all argument values have the same XML version declaration, that version is used in the result, else no version is used. If all argument values have the standalone declaration value “yes”, then that value is used in the result. If all argument values have a standalone declaration value and at least one is “no”, then that is used in the result. Else the result will have no standalone declaration. If the result is determined to require a standalone declaration but no version declaration, a version declaration with version 1.0 will be used because XML requires an XML declaration to contain a version declaration. Encoding declarations are ignored and removed in all cases.

Example:

```
SELECT xmlconcat('<?xml version="1.1"?><foo/>', '<?xml
version="1.1" standalone="no"?><bar/>');
```

```
      xmlconcat
-----
<?xml version="1.1"?><foo/><bar/>
```

### 9.15.1.3. xmlelement

```
xmlelement ( NAME name [, XMLATTRIBUTES ( attvalue [ AS attname ]
[ , ... ] ) ] [, content [ , ... ] ] ) → xml
```

The `xmlelement` expression produces an XML element with the given name, attributes, and content. The *name* and *attname* items shown in the syntax are simple identifiers, not values. The *attvalue* and *content* items are expressions, which can yield any PostgreSQL data type. The argument(s) within `XMLATTRIBUTES` generate attributes of the XML element; the *content* value(s) are concatenated to form its content.

Examples:

```
SELECT xmlelement(name foo);
```

```
      xmlelement
-----
<foo/>
```

```
SELECT xmlelement(name foo, xmlattributes('xyz' as bar));
```

```
      xmlelement
-----
<foo bar="xyz"/>
```

```
SELECT xmlelement(name foo, xmlattributes(current_date as bar),
'cont', 'ent');
```

```
      xmlelement
-----
<foo bar="2007-01-26">content</foo>
```

Element and attribute names that are not valid XML names are escaped by replacing the offending characters by the sequence `_xHHHH_`, where `HHHH` is the character's Unicode codepoint in hexadecimal notation. For example:

```
SELECT xmlelement(name "foo$bar", xmlattributes('xyz' as "a&b"));

          xmlelement
-----
<foo_x0024_bar a_x0026_b="xyz"/>
```

An explicit attribute name need not be specified if the attribute value is a column reference, in which case the column's name will be used as the attribute name by default. In other cases, the attribute must be given an explicit name. So this example is valid:

```
CREATE TABLE test (a xml, b xml);
SELECT xmlelement(name test, xmlattributes(a, b)) FROM test;
```

But these are not:

```
SELECT xmlelement(name test, xmlattributes('constant'), a, b) FROM
test;
SELECT xmlelement(name test, xmlattributes(func(a, b))) FROM test;
```

Element content, if specified, will be formatted according to its data type. If the content is itself of type `xml`, complex XML documents can be constructed. For example:

```
SELECT xmlelement(name foo, xmlattributes('xyz' as bar),
                xmlelement(name abc),
                xmlcomment('test'),
                xmlelement(name xyz));

          xmlelement
-----
<foo bar="xyz"><abc/><!--test--><xyz/></foo>
```

Content of other types will be formatted into valid XML character data. This means in particular that the characters `<`, `>`, and `&` will be converted to entities. Binary data (data type `bytea`) will be represented in base64 or hex encoding, depending on the setting of the configuration parameter `xmlbinary`. The particular behavior for individual data types is expected to evolve in order to align the PostgreSQL mappings with those specified in SQL:2006 and later, as discussed in Section D.3.1.3.

### 9.15.1.4. `xmlforest`

```
xmlforest ( content [ AS name ] [, ...] ) → xml
```

The `xmlforest` expression produces an XML forest (sequence) of elements using the given names and content. As for `xmlelement`, each *name* must be a simple identifier, while the *content* expressions can have any data type.

Examples:

```
SELECT xmlforest('abc' AS foo, 123 AS bar);
```

```

xmlforest
-----
<foo>abc</foo><bar>123</bar>

SELECT xmlforest(table_name, column_name)
FROM information_schema.columns
WHERE table_schema = 'pg_catalog';

xmlforest
-----
<table_name>pg_authid</table_name><column_name>rolname</
column_name>
<table_name>pg_authid</table_name><column_name>rolsuper</
column_name>
...
```

As seen in the second example, the element name can be omitted if the content value is a column reference, in which case the column name is used by default. Otherwise, a name must be specified.

Element names that are not valid XML names are escaped as shown for `xmlelement` above. Similarly, content data is escaped to make valid XML content, unless it is already of type `xml`.

Note that XML forests are not valid XML documents if they consist of more than one element, so it might be useful to wrap `xmlforest` expressions in `xmlelement`.

### 9.15.1.5. `xmlpi`

```
xmlpi ( NAME name [, content ] ) → xml
```

The `xmlpi` expression creates an XML processing instruction. As for `xmlelement`, the *name* must be a simple identifier, while the *content* expression can have any data type. The *content*, if present, must not contain the character sequence `?>`.

Example:

```

SELECT xmlpi(name php, 'echo "hello world";');

xmlpi
-----
<?php echo "hello world";?>
```

### 9.15.1.6. `xmlroot`

```
xmlroot ( xml, VERSION {text|NO VALUE} [, STANDALONE {YES|NO|NO
VALUE} ] ) → xml
```

The `xmlroot` expression alters the properties of the root node of an XML value. If a version is specified, it replaces the value in the root node's version declaration; if a standalone setting is specified, it replaces the value in the root node's standalone declaration.

```

SELECT xmlroot(xmlparse(document '<?xml version="1.1"?
><content>abc</content>'),
```

```
version '1.0', standalone yes);

xmlroot
```

```
-----
<?xml version="1.0" standalone="yes"?>
<content>abc</content>
```

### 9.15.1.7. xmlagg

`xmlagg ( xml ) → xml`

The function `xmlagg` is, unlike the other functions described here, an aggregate function. It concatenates the input values to the aggregate function call, much like `xmlconcat` does, except that concatenation occurs across rows rather than across expressions in a single row. See Section 9.21 for additional information about aggregate functions.

Example:

```
CREATE TABLE test (y int, x xml);
INSERT INTO test VALUES (1, '<foo>abc</foo>');
INSERT INTO test VALUES (2, '<bar/>');
SELECT xmlagg(x) FROM test;
      xmlagg
-----
<foo>abc</foo><bar/>
```

To determine the order of the concatenation, an `ORDER BY` clause may be added to the aggregate call as described in Section 4.2.7. For example:

```
SELECT xmlagg(x ORDER BY y DESC) FROM test;
      xmlagg
-----
<bar/><foo>abc</foo>
```

The following non-standard approach used to be recommended in previous versions, and may still be useful in specific cases:

```
SELECT xmlagg(x) FROM (SELECT * FROM test ORDER BY y DESC) AS tab;
      xmlagg
-----
<bar/><foo>abc</foo>
```

## 9.15.2. XML Predicates

The expressions described in this section check properties of `xml` values.

### 9.15.2.1. IS DOCUMENT

`xml IS DOCUMENT → boolean`

The expression `IS DOCUMENT` returns true if the argument XML value is a proper XML document, false if it is not (that is, it is a content fragment), or null if the argument is null. See Section 8.13 about the difference between documents and content fragments.

### 9.15.2.2. IS NOT DOCUMENT

`xml IS NOT DOCUMENT` → boolean

The expression `IS NOT DOCUMENT` returns false if the argument XML value is a proper XML document, true if it is not (that is, it is a content fragment), or null if the argument is null.

### 9.15.2.3. XMLEXISTS

`XMLEXISTS ( text PASSING [BY {REF|VALUE}] xml [BY {REF|VALUE}] )` → boolean

The function `xmlexists` evaluates an XPath 1.0 expression (the first argument), with the passed XML value as its context item. The function returns false if the result of that evaluation yields an empty node-set, true if it yields any other value. The function returns null if any argument is null. A nonnull value passed as the context item must be an XML document, not a content fragment or any non-XML value.

Example:

```
SELECT xmlexists('//town[text() = ''Toronto'']' PASSING BY VALUE
  '<towns><town>Toronto</town><town>Ottawa</town></towns>');
```

```
xmlexists
-----
t
(1 row)
```

The `BY REF` and `BY VALUE` clauses are accepted in PostgreSQL, but are ignored, as discussed in Section D.3.2.

In the SQL standard, the `xmlexists` function evaluates an expression in the XML Query language, but PostgreSQL allows only an XPath 1.0 expression, as discussed in Section D.3.1.

### 9.15.2.4. xml\_is\_well\_formed

`xml_is_well_formed ( text )` → boolean  
`xml_is_well_formed_document ( text )` → boolean  
`xml_is_well_formed_content ( text )` → boolean

These functions check whether a text string represents well-formed XML, returning a Boolean result. `xml_is_well_formed_document` checks for a well-formed document, while `xml_is_well_formed_content` checks for well-formed content. `xml_is_well_formed` does the former if the `xmloption` configuration parameter is set to `DOCUMENT`, or the latter if it is set to `CONTENT`. This means that `xml_is_well_formed` is useful for seeing whether a simple cast to type `xml` will succeed, whereas the other two functions are useful for seeing whether the corresponding variants of `XMLPARSE` will succeed.

Examples:

```
SET xmloption TO DOCUMENT;
SELECT xml_is_well_formed('<>');
```

```

xml_is_well_formed
-----
f
(1 row)

SELECT xml_is_well_formed('<abc/>');
xml_is_well_formed
-----
t
(1 row)

SET xmloption TO CONTENT;
SELECT xml_is_well_formed('abc');
xml_is_well_formed
-----
t
(1 row)

SELECT xml_is_well_formed_document('<pg:foo xmlns:pg="http://
postgresql.org/stuff">bar</pg:foo>');
xml_is_well_formed_document
-----
t
(1 row)

SELECT xml_is_well_formed_document('<pg:foo xmlns:pg="http://
postgresql.org/stuff">bar</my:foo>');
xml_is_well_formed_document
-----
f
(1 row)

```

The last example shows that the checks include whether namespaces are correctly matched.

## 9.15.3. Processing XML

To process values of data type `xml`, PostgreSQL offers the functions `xpath` and `xpath_exists`, which evaluate XPath 1.0 expressions, and the `XMLTABLE` table function.

### 9.15.3.1. `xpath`

```
xpath ( xpath text, xml xml [, nsarray text[] ] ) → xml[]
```

The function `xpath` evaluates the XPath 1.0 expression `xpath` (given as `text`) against the XML value `xml`. It returns an array of XML values corresponding to the node-set produced by the XPath expression. If the XPath expression returns a scalar value rather than a node-set, a single-element array is returned.

The second argument must be a well formed XML document. In particular, it must have a single root node element.

The optional third argument of the function is an array of namespace mappings. This array should be a two-dimensional `text` array with the length of the second axis being equal to 2 (i.e., it should be an array of arrays, each of which consists of exactly 2 elements). The first element of each array entry is the namespace name (alias), the second the namespace URI. It is not required that aliases provided in this array be the same as those being used in the XML document itself (in other words, both in the XML document and in the `xpath` function context, aliases are *local*).

Example:

```
SELECT xpath('/my:a/text()', '<my:a xmlns:my="http://
example.com">test</my:a>',
           ARRAY[ARRAY['my', 'http://example.com']]);
```

```

xpath
-----
{test}
(1 row)
```

To deal with default (anonymous) namespaces, do something like this:

```
SELECT xpath('//mydefns:b/text()', '<a xmlns="http://
example.com"><b>test</b></a>',
           ARRAY[ARRAY['mydefns', 'http://example.com']]);
```

```

xpath
-----
{test}
(1 row)
```

### 9.15.3.2. xpath\_exists

```
xpath_exists ( xpath text, xml xml [, nsarray text[] ] ) → boolean
```

The function `xpath_exists` is a specialized form of the `xpath` function. Instead of returning the individual XML values that satisfy the XPath 1.0 expression, this function returns a Boolean indicating whether the query was satisfied or not (specifically, whether it produced any value other than an empty node-set). This function is equivalent to the `XMLEXISTS` predicate, except that it also offers support for a namespace mapping argument.

Example:

```
SELECT xpath_exists('/my:a/text()', '<my:a xmlns:my="http://
example.com">test</my:a>',
           ARRAY[ARRAY['my', 'http://example.com']]);
```

```

xpath_exists
-----
t
(1 row)
```

### 9.15.3.3. xmltable

```
XMLTABLE (
  [ XMLNAMESPACES ( namespace_uri AS namespace_name [, ...] ), ]
  row_expression PASSING [BY {REF|VALUE}] document_expression [BY
  {REF|VALUE}]
  COLUMNS name { type [PATH column_expression]
  [DEFAULT default_expression] [NOT NULL | NULL]
  | FOR ORDINALITY }
  [, ...]
```

) → setof record

The `xmltable` expression produces a table based on an XML value, an XPath filter to extract rows, and a set of column definitions. Although it syntactically resembles a function, it can only appear as a table in a query's FROM clause.

The optional XMLNAMESPACES clause gives a comma-separated list of namespace definitions, where each *namespace\_uri* is a text expression and each *namespace\_name* is a simple identifier. It specifies the XML namespaces used in the document and their aliases. A default namespace specification is not currently supported.

The required *row\_expression* argument is an XPath 1.0 expression (given as text) that is evaluated, passing the XML value *document\_expression* as its context item, to obtain a set of XML nodes. These nodes are what `xmltable` transforms into output rows. No rows will be produced if the *document\_expression* is null, nor if the *row\_expression* produces an empty node-set or any value other than a node-set.

*document\_expression* provides the context item for the *row\_expression*. It must be a well-formed XML document; fragments/forests are not accepted. The BY REF and BY VALUE clauses are accepted but ignored, as discussed in Section D.3.2.

In the SQL standard, the `xmltable` function evaluates expressions in the XML Query language, but PostgreSQL allows only XPath 1.0 expressions, as discussed in Section D.3.1.

The required COLUMNS clause specifies the column(s) that will be produced in the output table. See the syntax summary above for the format. A name is required for each column, as is a data type (unless FOR ORDINALITY is specified, in which case type integer is implicit). The path, default and nullability clauses are optional.

A column marked FOR ORDINALITY will be populated with row numbers, starting with 1, in the order of nodes retrieved from the *row\_expression*'s result node-set. At most one column may be marked FOR ORDINALITY.

### Note

XPath 1.0 does not specify an order for nodes in a node-set, so code that relies on a particular order of the results will be implementation-dependent. Details can be found in Section D.3.1.2.

The *column\_expression* for a column is an XPath 1.0 expression that is evaluated for each row, with the current node from the *row\_expression* result as its context item, to find the value of the column. If no *column\_expression* is given, then the column name is used as an implicit path.

If a column's XPath expression returns a non-XML value (which is limited to string, boolean, or double in XPath 1.0) and the column has a PostgreSQL type other than xml, the column will be set as if by assigning the value's string representation to the PostgreSQL type. (If the value is a boolean, its string representation is taken to be 1 or 0 if the output column's type category is numeric, otherwise true or false.)

If a column's XPath expression returns a non-empty set of XML nodes and the column's PostgreSQL type is xml, the column will be assigned the expression result exactly, if it is of document or content form.<sup>2</sup>

A non-XML result assigned to an xml output column produces content, a single text node with the string value of the result. An XML result assigned to a column of any other type may not have more

<sup>2</sup> A result containing more than one element node at the top level, or non-whitespace text outside of an element, is an example of content form. An XPath result can be of neither form, for example if it returns an attribute node selected from the element that contains it. Such a result will be put into content form with each such disallowed node replaced by its string value, as defined for the XPath 1.0 string function.



than one node, or an error is raised. If there is exactly one node, the column will be set as if by assigning the node's string value (as defined for the XPath 1.0 `string` function) to the PostgreSQL type.

The string value of an XML element is the concatenation, in document order, of all text nodes contained in that element and its descendants. The string value of an element with no descendant text nodes is an empty string (not NULL). Any `xsi:nil` attributes are ignored. Note that the whitespace-only `text()` node between two non-text elements is preserved, and that leading whitespace on a `text()` node is not flattened. The XPath 1.0 `string` function may be consulted for the rules defining the string value of other XML node types and non-XML values.

The conversion rules presented here are not exactly those of the SQL standard, as discussed in Section D.3.1.3.

If the path expression returns an empty node-set (typically, when it does not match) for a given row, the column will be set to NULL, unless a *default\_expression* is specified; then the value resulting from evaluating that expression is used.

A *default\_expression*, rather than being evaluated immediately when `xmltable` is called, is evaluated each time a default is needed for the column. If the expression qualifies as stable or immutable, the repeat evaluation may be skipped. This means that you can usefully use volatile functions like `nextval` in *default\_expression*.

Columns may be marked NOT NULL. If the *column\_expression* for a NOT NULL column does not match anything and there is no DEFAULT or the *default\_expression* also evaluates to null, an error is reported.

Examples:

```
CREATE TABLE xmldata AS SELECT
xml $$
<ROWS>
  <ROW id="1">
    <COUNTRY_ID>AU</COUNTRY_ID>
    <COUNTRY_NAME>Australia</COUNTRY_NAME>
  </ROW>
  <ROW id="5">
    <COUNTRY_ID>JP</COUNTRY_ID>
    <COUNTRY_NAME>Japan</COUNTRY_NAME>
    <PREMIER_NAME>Shinzo Abe</PREMIER_NAME>
    <SIZE unit="sq_mi">145935</SIZE>
  </ROW>
  <ROW id="6">
    <COUNTRY_ID>SG</COUNTRY_ID>
    <COUNTRY_NAME>Singapore</COUNTRY_NAME>
    <SIZE unit="sq_km">697</SIZE>
  </ROW>
</ROWS>
$$ AS data;

SELECT xmltable.*
FROM xmldata,
     XMLTABLE('//ROWS/ROW'
              PASSING data
              COLUMNS id int PATH '@id',
                      ordinality FOR ORDINALITY,
                      "COUNTRY_NAME" text,
                      country_id text PATH 'COUNTRY_ID',
                      size_sq_km float PATH 'SIZE[@unit =
"sq_km"]',
```

```

size_other text PATH
'concat(SIZE[@unit!="sq_km"], " ",
SIZE[@unit!="sq_km"]/@unit)',
premier_name text PATH 'PREMIER_NAME'
DEFAULT 'not specified');

```

id	ordinality	COUNTRY_NAME	country_id	size_sq_km	size_other	premier_name
1		Australia	AU			
		not specified				
5		Japan	JP			145935
		Shinzo Abe				
6		Singapore	SG		697	
		not specified				

The following example shows concatenation of multiple text() nodes, usage of the column name as XPath filter, and the treatment of whitespace, XML comments and processing instructions:

```

CREATE TABLE xmlelements AS SELECT
xml $$
  <root>
    <element> Hello<!-- xyxxz -->2a2<?aaaaa?> <!--x--> bbb<x>xxx</
x>CC </element>
  </root>
$$ AS data;

```

```

SELECT xmltable.*
  FROM xmlelements, XMLTABLE('/root' PASSING data COLUMNS element
text);

```

element
Hello2a2 bbbxxxCC

The following example illustrates how the XMLNAMESPACES clause can be used to specify a list of namespaces used in the XML document as well as in the XPath expressions:

```

WITH xmldata(data) AS (VALUES ('
<example xmlns="http://example.com/myns" xmlns:B="http://
example.com/b">
  <item foo="1" B:bar="2"/>
  <item foo="3" B:bar="4"/>
  <item foo="4" B:bar="5"/>
</example>'::xml)
)
SELECT xmltable.*
  FROM XMLTABLE(XMLNAMESPACES('http://example.com/myns' AS x,
                              'http://example.com/b' AS "B"),
                '/x:example/x:item'
                PASSING (SELECT data FROM xmldata)
                COLUMNS foo int PATH '@foo',
                          bar int PATH '@B:bar');

```

foo	bar
1	2
3	4

```

4 | 5
(3 rows)

```

## 9.15.4. Mapping Tables to XML

The following functions map the contents of relational tables to XML values. They can be thought of as XML export functionality:

```

table_to_xml ( table regclass, nulls boolean,
               tableforest boolean, targetns text ) →xml
query_to_xml ( query text, nulls boolean,
               tableforest boolean, targetns text ) →xml
cursor_to_xml ( cursor refcursor, count integer, nulls boolean,
               tableforest boolean, targetns text ) →xml

```

`table_to_xml` maps the content of the named table, passed as parameter *table*. The *regclass* type accepts strings identifying tables using the usual notation, including optional schema qualification and double quotes (see Section 8.19 for details). `query_to_xml` executes the query whose text is passed as parameter *query* and maps the result set. `cursor_to_xml` fetches the indicated number of rows from the cursor specified by the parameter *cursor*. This variant is recommended if large tables have to be mapped, because the result value is built up in memory by each function.

If *tableforest* is false, then the resulting XML document looks like this:

```

<tablename>
  <row>
    <columnname1>data</columnname1>
    <columnname2>data</columnname2>
  </row>

  <row>
    ...
  </row>

  ...
</tablename>

```

If *tableforest* is true, the result is an XML content fragment that looks like this:

```

<tablename>
  <columnname1>data</columnname1>
  <columnname2>data</columnname2>
</tablename>

<tablename>
  ...
</tablename>

...

```

If no table name is available, that is, when mapping a query or a cursor, the string `table` is used in the first format, `row` in the second format.

The choice between these formats is up to the user. The first format is a proper XML document, which will be important in many applications. The second format tends to be more useful in the cur-

`sort_to_xml` function if the result values are to be reassembled into one document later on. The functions for producing XML content discussed above, in particular `xml_element`, can be used to alter the results to taste.

The data values are mapped in the same way as described for the function `xml_element` above.

The parameter `nulls` determines whether null values should be included in the output. If true, null values in columns are represented as:

```
<columnname xsi:nil="true"/>
```

where `xsi` is the XML namespace prefix for XML Schema Instance. An appropriate namespace declaration will be added to the result value. If false, columns containing null values are simply omitted from the output.

The parameter `targetns` specifies the desired XML namespace of the result. If no particular namespace is wanted, an empty string should be passed.

The following functions return XML Schema documents describing the mappings performed by the corresponding functions above:

```
table_to_xmlschema ( table regclass, nulls boolean,
                    tableforest boolean, targetns text ) → xml
query_to_xmlschema ( query text, nulls boolean,
                    tableforest boolean, targetns text ) → xml
cursor_to_xmlschema ( cursor refcursor, nulls boolean,
                     tableforest boolean, targetns text ) → xml
```

It is essential that the same parameters are passed in order to obtain matching XML data mappings and XML Schema documents.

The following functions produce XML data mappings and the corresponding XML Schema in one document (or forest), linked together. They can be useful where self-contained and self-describing results are wanted:

```
table_to_xml_and_xmlschema ( table regclass, nulls boolean,
                             tableforest boolean, targetns text
                           ) → xml
query_to_xml_and_xmlschema ( query text, nulls boolean,
                             tableforest boolean, targetns text
                           ) → xml
```

In addition, the following functions are available to produce analogous mappings of entire schemas or the entire current database:

```
schema_to_xml ( schema name, nulls boolean,
               tableforest boolean, targetns text ) → xml
schema_to_xmlschema ( schema name, nulls boolean,
                    tableforest boolean, targetns text ) → xml
schema_to_xml_and_xmlschema ( schema name, nulls boolean,
                             tableforest boolean, targetns text
                           ) → xml
```

```

database_to_xml ( nulls boolean,
                  tableforest boolean, targetns text ) → xml
database_to_xmlschema ( nulls boolean,
                        tableforest boolean, targetns text ) → xml
database_to_xml_and_xmlschema ( nulls boolean,
                                tableforest boolean, targetns text
                                ) → xml

```

These functions ignore tables that are not readable by the current user. The database-wide functions additionally ignore schemas that the current user does not have USAGE (lookup) privilege for.

Note that these potentially produce a lot of data, which needs to be built up in memory. When requesting content mappings of large schemas or databases, it might be worthwhile to consider mapping the tables separately instead, possibly even through a cursor.

The result of a schema content mapping looks like this:

```

<schemaname>
table1-mapping
table2-mapping
...
</schemaname>

```

where the format of a table mapping depends on the *tableforest* parameter as explained above.

The result of a database content mapping looks like this:

```

<dbname>
<schemaname>
...
</schemaname>
<schemaname2>
...
</schemaname2>
...
</dbname>

```

where the schema mapping is as above.

As an example of using the output produced by these functions, Example 9.1 shows an XSLT stylesheet that converts the output of *table\_to\_xml\_and\_xmlschema* to an HTML document containing a tabular rendition of the table data. In a similar manner, the results from these functions can be converted into other XML-based formats.

### Example 9.1. XSLT Stylesheet for Converting SQL/XML Output to HTML

```

<?xml version="1.0"?>
<xsl:stylesheet version="1.0"

```

```
xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml"
>

<xsl:output method="xml"
  doctype-system="http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml1/DTD/xhtml1-strict.dtd"
  doctype-public="-//W3C/DTD XHTML 1.0 Strict//EN"
  indent="yes"/>

<xsl:template match="/*">
  <xsl:variable name="schema" select="//xsd:schema"/>
  <xsl:variable name="tabletypename"
    select="$schema/
xsd:element[@name=name(current())]/@type"/>
  <xsl:variable name="rowtypename"
    select="$schema/xsd:complexType[@name=
$tabletypename]/xsd:sequence/xsd:element[@name='row']/@type"/>

  <html>
    <head>
      <title><xsl:value-of select="name(current())"/></title>
    </head>
    <body>
      <table>
        <tr>
          <xsl:for-each select="$schema/xsd:complexType[@name=
$rowtypename]/xsd:sequence/xsd:element/@name">
            <th><xsl:value-of select="."/></th>
          </xsl:for-each>
        </tr>

        <xsl:for-each select="row">
          <tr>
            <xsl:for-each select="*">
              <td><xsl:value-of select="."/></td>
            </xsl:for-each>
          </tr>
        </xsl:for-each>
      </table>
    </body>
  </html>
</xsl:template>

</xsl:stylesheet>
```

## 9.16. JSON Functions and Operators

This section describes:

- functions and operators for processing and creating JSON data
- the SQL/JSON path language

To provide native support for JSON data types within the SQL environment, PostgreSQL implements the *SQL/JSON data model*. This model comprises sequences of items. Each item can hold SQL scalar values, with an additional SQL/JSON null value, and composite data structures that use JSON arrays

and objects. The model is a formalization of the implied data model in the JSON specification RFC 7159<sup>3</sup>.

SQL/JSON allows you to handle JSON data alongside regular SQL data, with transaction support, including:

- Uploading JSON data into the database and storing it in regular SQL columns as character or binary strings.
- Generating JSON objects and arrays from relational data.
- Querying JSON data using SQL/JSON query functions and SQL/JSON path language expressions.

To learn more about the SQL/JSON standard, see [sqltr-19075-6]. For details on JSON types supported in PostgreSQL, see Section 8.14.

## 9.16.1. Processing and Creating JSON Data

Table 9.45 shows the operators that are available for use with JSON data types (see Section 8.14). In addition, the usual comparison operators shown in Table 9.1 are available for `jsonb`, though not for `json`. The comparison operators follow the ordering rules for B-tree operations outlined in Section 8.14.4. See also Section 9.21 for the aggregate function `json_agg` which aggregates record values as JSON, the aggregate function `json_object_agg` which aggregates pairs of values into a JSON object, and their `jsonb` equivalents, `jsonb_agg` and `jsonb_object_agg`.

**Table 9.45. `json` and `jsonb` Operators**

Operator	Description	Example(s)
<code>json -&gt; integer → json</code> <code>jsonb -&gt; integer → jsonb</code>	Extracts <i>n</i> 'th element of JSON array (array elements are indexed from zero, but negative integers count from the end).	<code>'[{ "a": "foo" }, { "b": "bar" }, { "c": "baz" } ]'::json -&gt; 2 → { "c": "baz" }</code> <code>'[{ "a": "foo" }, { "b": "bar" }, { "c": "baz" } ]'::json -&gt; -3 → { "a": "foo" }</code>
<code>json -&gt; text → json</code> <code>jsonb -&gt; text → jsonb</code>	Extracts JSON object field with the given key.	<code>'{ "a": { "b": "foo" } }'::json -&gt; 'a' → { "b": "foo" }</code>
<code>json -&gt;&gt; integer → text</code> <code>jsonb -&gt;&gt; integer → text</code>	Extracts <i>n</i> 'th element of JSON array, as text.	<code>'[1,2,3]'::json -&gt;&gt; 2 → 3</code>
<code>json -&gt;&gt; text → text</code> <code>jsonb -&gt;&gt; text → text</code>	Extracts JSON object field with the given key, as text.	<code>'{ "a": 1, "b": 2 }'::json -&gt;&gt; 'b' → 2</code>
<code>json #&gt; text[] → json</code>		

<sup>3</sup> <https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc7159>

Operator	Description
Example(s)	
<code>jsonb #&gt; text[] → jsonb</code>	Extracts JSON sub-object at the specified path, where path elements can be either field keys or array indexes.
<code>'{"a": {"b": ["foo", "bar"]}}'::jsonb #&gt; '{a,b,1}' → "bar"</code>	
<code>json #&gt;&gt; text[] → text</code>	
<code>jsonb #&gt;&gt; text[] → text</code>	Extracts JSON sub-object at the specified path as text.
<code>'{"a": {"b": ["foo", "bar"]}}'::jsonb #&gt;&gt; '{a,b,1}' → bar</code>	

### Note

The field/element/path extraction operators return NULL, rather than failing, if the JSON input does not have the right structure to match the request; for example if no such key or array element exists.

Some further operators exist only for `jsonb`, as shown in Table 9.46. Section 8.14.4 describes how these operators can be used to effectively search indexed `jsonb` data.

**Table 9.46. Additional `jsonb` Operators**

Operator	Description
Example(s)	
<code>jsonb @&gt; jsonb → boolean</code>	Does the first JSON value contain the second? (See Section 8.14.3 for details about containment.)
<code>'{"a":1, "b":2}'::jsonb @&gt; '{"b":2}'::jsonb → t</code>	
<code>jsonb &lt;@ jsonb → boolean</code>	Is the first JSON value contained in the second?
<code>'{"b":2}'::jsonb &lt;@ '{"a":1, "b":2}'::jsonb → t</code>	
<code>jsonb ? text → boolean</code>	Does the text string exist as a top-level key or array element within the JSON value?
<code>'{"a":1, "b":2}'::jsonb ? 'b' → t</code>	
<code>'["a", "b", "c"]'::jsonb ? 'b' → t</code>	
<code>jsonb ?  text[] → boolean</code>	Do any of the strings in the text array exist as top-level keys or array elements?
<code>'{"a":1, "b":2, "c":3}'::jsonb ?  array['b', 'd'] → t</code>	
<code>jsonb ?&amp; text[] → boolean</code>	Do all of the strings in the text array exist as top-level keys or array elements?
<code>'["a", "b", "c"]'::jsonb ?&amp; array['a', 'b'] → t</code>	
<code>jsonb    jsonb → jsonb</code>	Concatenates two <code>jsonb</code> values. Concatenating two arrays generates an array containing all the elements of each input. Concatenating two objects generates an object containing the union of their keys, taking the second object's value when there are duplicate keys.



Operator	Description Example(s)
	<p>All other cases are treated by converting a non-array input into a single-element array, and then proceeding as for two arrays. Does not operate recursively: only the top-level array or object structure is merged.</p> <pre>'["a", "b"]'::jsonb    '["a", "d"]'::jsonb → ["a", "b", "a", "d"]</pre> <pre>'{"a": "b"}'::jsonb    '{"c": "d"}'::jsonb → {"a": "b", "c": "d"}</pre> <pre>'[1, 2]'::jsonb    '3'::jsonb → [1, 2, 3]</pre> <pre>'{"a": "b"}'::jsonb    '42'::jsonb → [{"a": "b"}, 42]</pre> <p>To append an array to another array as a single entry, wrap it in an additional layer of array, for example:</p> <pre>'[1, 2]'::jsonb    jsonb_build_array('3, 4')::jsonb → [1, 2, [3, 4]]</pre>
<code>jsonb - text → jsonb</code>	<p>Deletes a key (and its value) from a JSON object, or matching string value(s) from a JSON array.</p> <pre>'{"a": "b", "c": "d"}'::jsonb - 'a' → {"c": "d"}</pre> <pre>'["a", "b", "c", "b"]'::jsonb - 'b' → ["a", "c"]</pre>
<code>jsonb - text[] → jsonb</code>	<p>Deletes all matching keys or array elements from the left operand.</p> <pre>'{"a": "b", "c": "d"}'::jsonb - '{a,c}'::text[] → {}</pre>
<code>jsonb - integer → jsonb</code>	<p>Deletes the array element with specified index (negative integers count from the end). Throws an error if JSON value is not an array.</p> <pre>'["a", "b"]'::jsonb - 1 → ["a"]</pre>
<code>jsonb #- text[] → jsonb</code>	<p>Deletes the field or array element at the specified path, where path elements can be either field keys or array indexes.</p> <pre>'["a", {"b":1}]'::jsonb #- '{1,b}' → ["a", {}]</pre>
<code>jsonb @? jsonpath → boolean</code>	<p>Does JSON path return any item for the specified JSON value?</p> <pre>'{"a":[1,2,3,4,5]}'::jsonb @? '\$.a[*] ? (@ &gt; 2)' → t</pre>
<code>jsonb @@ jsonpath → boolean</code>	<p>Returns the result of a JSON path predicate check for the specified JSON value. Only the first item of the result is taken into account. If the result is not Boolean, then NULL is returned.</p> <pre>'{"a":[1,2,3,4,5]}'::jsonb @@ '\$.a[*] &gt; 2' → t</pre>

### Note

The `jsonpath` operators `@?` and `@@` suppress the following errors: missing object field or array element, unexpected JSON item type, datetime and numeric errors. The `jsonpath`-related functions described below can also be told to suppress these types of errors. This behavior might be helpful when searching JSON document collections of varying structure.

Table 9.47 shows the functions that are available for constructing json and jsonb values. Some functions in this table have a RETURNING clause, which specifies the data type returned. It must be one of json, jsonb, bytea, a character string type (text, char, varchar, or nchar), or a type for which there is a cast from json to that type. By default, the json type is returned.

**Table 9.47. JSON Creation Functions**

Function	Description	Example(s)
<code>to_json ( anyelement ) → json</code> <code>to_jsonb ( anyelement ) → jsonb</code>	Converts any SQL value to json or jsonb. Arrays and composites are converted recursively to arrays and objects (multidimensional arrays become arrays of arrays in JSON). Otherwise, if there is a cast from the SQL data type to json, the cast function will be used to perform the conversion; <sup>a</sup> otherwise, a scalar JSON value is produced. For any scalar other than a number, a Boolean, or a null value, the text representation will be used, with escaping as necessary to make it a valid JSON string value.	<code>to_json('Fred said "Hi."'::text) → "Fred said \"Hi.\""</code> <code>to_jsonb(row(42, 'Fred said "Hi."'::text)) → {"f1": 42, "f2": "Fred said \"Hi.\""} </code>
<code>array_to_json ( anyarray [, boolean ] ) → json</code>	Converts an SQL array to a JSON array. The behavior is the same as <code>to_json</code> except that line feeds will be added between top-level array elements if the optional boolean parameter is true.	<code>array_to_json( '{ {1,5},{99,100}} '::int[] ) → [[1,5],[99,100]]</code>
<code>json_array ( [ { value_expression [ FORMAT JSON ] }, ... ] [ { NULL   ABSENT } ON NULL ] [ RETURNING data_type [ FORMAT JSON [ ENCODING UTF8 ] ] ] )</code> <code>json_array ( [ query_expression ] [ RETURNING data_type [ FORMAT JSON [ ENCODING UTF8 ] ] ] )</code>	Constructs a JSON array from either a series of <i>value_expression</i> parameters or from the results of <i>query_expression</i> , which must be a <code>SELECT</code> query returning a single column. If <code>ABSENT ON NULL</code> is specified, <code>NULL</code> values are ignored. This is always the case if a <i>query_expression</i> is used.	<code>json_array(1,true,json '{"a":null}')</code> → [1, true, {"a":null}] <code>json_array(SELECT * FROM (VALUES(1),(2)) t)</code> → [1, 2]
<code>row_to_json ( record [, boolean ] ) → json</code>	Converts an SQL composite value to a JSON object. The behavior is the same as <code>to_json</code> except that line feeds will be added between top-level elements if the optional boolean parameter is true.	<code>row_to_json(row(1, 'foo'))</code> → {"f1":1,"f2":"foo"}
<code>json_build_array ( VARIADIC "any" ) → json</code> <code>jsonb_build_array ( VARIADIC "any" ) → jsonb</code>	Builds a possibly-heterogeneously-typed JSON array out of a variadic argument list. Each argument is converted as per <code>to_json</code> or <code>to_jsonb</code> .	<code>json_build_array(1, 2, 'foo', 4, 5)</code> → [1, 2, "foo", 4, 5]
<code>json_build_object ( VARIADIC "any" ) → json</code> <code>jsonb_build_object ( VARIADIC "any" ) → jsonb</code>	Builds a JSON object out of a variadic argument list. By convention, the argument list consists of alternating keys and values. Key arguments are coerced to text; value arguments are converted as per <code>to_json</code> or <code>to_jsonb</code> .	

Function	Description
<b>Example(s)</b>	
<code>json_build_object('foo', 1, 2, row(3, 'bar'))</code>	$\rightarrow \{ "foo" : 1, "2" : \{ "f1":3, "f2": "bar" \} \}$
<code>json_object ([ { key_expression { VALUE   ' } value_expression [ FORMAT JSON [ ENCODING UTF8 ] ] }, ... ] [ { NULL   ABSENT } ON NULL ] [ { WITH   WITHOUT } UNIQUE [ KEYS ] ] [ RETURNING data_type [ FORMAT JSON [ ENCODING UTF8 ] ] ] )</code>	Constructs a JSON object of all the key/value pairs given, or an empty object if none are given. <i>key_expression</i> is a scalar expression defining the JSON key, which is converted to the <code>text</code> type. It cannot be <code>NULL</code> nor can it belong to a type that has a cast to the <code>json</code> type. If <code>WITH UNIQUE KEYS</code> is specified, there must not be any duplicate <i>key_expression</i> . Any pair for which the <i>value_expression</i> evaluates to <code>NULL</code> is omitted from the output if <code>ABSENT ON NULL</code> is specified; if <code>NULL ON NULL</code> is specified or the clause omitted, the key is included with value <code>NULL</code> .  <code>json_object('code' VALUE 'P123', 'title': 'Jaws')</code> $\rightarrow \{ "code" : "P123", "title" : "Jaws" \}$
<code>json_object ( text[] )</code> <code>jsonb_object ( text[] )</code>	<code>json</code> <code>jsonb</code> Builds a JSON object out of a text array. The array must have either exactly one dimension with an even number of members, in which case they are taken as alternating key/value pairs, or two dimensions such that each inner array has exactly two elements, which are taken as a key/value pair. All values are converted to JSON strings.  <code>json_object ('{a, 1, b, "def", c, 3.5}')</code> $\rightarrow \{ "a" : "1", "b" : "def", "c" : "3.5" \}$  <code>json_object ('{ {a, 1}, {b, "def"}, {c, 3.5} }')</code> $\rightarrow \{ "a" : "1", "b" : "def", "c" : "3.5" \}$
<code>json_object ( keys text[], values text[] )</code> <code>jsonb_object ( keys text[], values text[] )</code>	<code>json</code> <code>jsonb</code> This form of <code>json_object</code> takes keys and values pairwise from separate text arrays. Otherwise it is identical to the one-argument form.  <code>json_object ('{a,b}', '{1,2}')</code> $\rightarrow \{ "a": "1", "b": "2" \}$

<sup>a</sup> For example, the `hstore` extension has a cast from `hstore` to `json`, so that `hstore` values converted via the JSON creation functions will be represented as JSON objects, not as primitive string values.

Table 9.48 details SQL/JSON facilities for testing JSON.

**Table 9.48. SQL/JSON Testing Functions**

Function signature
Description
Example(s)
<code>expression IS [ NOT ] JSON [ { VALUE   SCALAR   ARRAY   OBJECT } ] [ { WITH   WITHOUT } UNIQUE [ KEYS ] ]</code> This predicate tests whether <i>expression</i> can be parsed as JSON, possibly of a specified type. If <code>SCALAR</code> or <code>ARRAY</code> or <code>OBJECT</code> is specified, the test is whether or not the JSON is of that particular type. If <code>WITH UNIQUE KEYS</code> is specified, then any object in the <i>expression</i> is also tested to see if it has duplicate keys.  <code>SELECT js,</code> <code>js IS JSON "json?",</code> <code>js IS JSON SCALAR "scalar?",</code>

Function signature	Description	Example(s)
<pre> js IS JSON OBJECT "object?", js IS JSON ARRAY "array?" FROM (VALUES       ('123'), ('"abc"'), ('{"a": "b"}'), ('[1,2]'),       ('abc')) foo(js); </pre>	<pre> js        json?   scalar?   object?   array? -----+-----+-----+-----+----- 123       t       t          f          f "abc"     t       t          f          f {"a": "b"}   t       f          t          f [1,2]     t       f          f          t abc       f       f          f          f </pre>	<pre> SELECT js,        js IS JSON OBJECT "object?",        js IS JSON ARRAY "array?",        js IS JSON ARRAY WITH UNIQUE KEYS "array w. UK?",        js IS JSON ARRAY WITHOUT UNIQUE KEYS "array w/o UK?" FROM (VALUES ('[{"a": "1"},                {"b": "2"}, {"b": "3"}]')) foo(js); -[ RECORD 1 ]-+----- js             [{"a": "1"},          +               {"b": "2"}, {"b": "3"}] object?        f array?         t array w. UK?   f array w/o UK?   t </pre>

Table 9.49 shows the functions that are available for processing json and jsonb values.

**Table 9.49. JSON Processing Functions**

Function	Description	Example(s)
<pre> json_array_elements (json) → setof json jsonb_array_elements (jsonb) → setof jsonb </pre>	<p>Expands the top-level JSON array into a set of JSON values.</p>	<pre> select * from json_array_elements('[1,true, [2,false]]') →        value ----- 1 true [2,false] </pre>
<pre> json_array_elements_text (json) → setof text jsonb_array_elements_text (jsonb) → setof text </pre>	<p>Expands the top-level JSON array into a set of text values.</p>	<pre> select * from json_array_elements_text('["foo", "bar"]') → </pre>

Function	Description	Example(s)
	value	----- foo bar
json_array_length( json ) → integer jsonb_array_length( jsonb ) → integer	Returns the number of elements in the top-level JSON array.	json_array_length( '[1,2,3,{"f1":1,"f2":[5,6]},4]' ) → 5 jsonb_array_length( '[]' ) → 0
json_each( json ) → setof record( key text, value json ) jsonb_each( jsonb ) → setof record( key text, value jsonb )	Expands the top-level JSON object into a set of key/value pairs.	select * from json_each( '{"a":"foo", "b":"bar"}' ) →  key   value -----+----- a   "foo" b   "bar"
json_each_text( json ) → setof record( key text, value text ) jsonb_each_text( jsonb ) → setof record( key text, value text )	Expands the top-level JSON object into a set of key/value pairs. The returned values will be of type text.	select * from json_each_text( '{"a":"foo", "b":"bar"}' ) →  key   value -----+----- a   foo b   bar
json_extract_path( from_json json, VARIADIC path_elems text[] ) → json jsonb_extract_path( from_json jsonb, VARIADIC path_elems text[] ) → jsonb	Extracts JSON sub-object at the specified path. (This is functionally equivalent to the #> operator, but writing the path out as a variadic list can be more convenient in some cases.)	json_extract_path( '{"f2":{"f3":1},"f4":{"f5":99,"f6":"foo"}}', 'f4', 'f6' ) → "foo"
json_extract_path_text( from_json json, VARIADIC path_elems text[] ) → text jsonb_extract_path_text( from_json jsonb, VARIADIC path_elems text[] ) → text	Extracts JSON sub-object at the specified path as text. (This is functionally equivalent to the #>> operator.)	json_extract_path_text( '{"f2":{"f3":1},"f4":{"f5":99,"f6":"foo"}}', 'f4', 'f6' ) → foo
json_object_keys( json ) → setof text		

Function	Description
<b>Example(s)</b>	
<pre>jsonb_object_keys ( jsonb ) → setof text</pre> <p>Returns the set of keys in the top-level JSON object.</p> <pre>select * from json_object_keys('{"f1":"abc", "f2":{"f3":"a", "f4":"b"}}') →</pre> <pre>       json_object_keys -----       f1       f2 </pre>	
<pre>json_populate_record ( base anyelement, from_json json ) → anyelement</pre> <pre>jsonb_populate_record ( base anyelement, from_json jsonb ) → anyelement</pre> <p>Expands the top-level JSON object to a row having the composite type of the <i>base</i> argument. The JSON object is scanned for fields whose names match column names of the output row type, and their values are inserted into those columns of the output. (Fields that do not correspond to any output column name are ignored.) In typical use, the value of <i>base</i> is just NULL, which means that any output columns that do not match any object field will be filled with nulls. However, if <i>base</i> isn't NULL then the values it contains will be used for unmatched columns.</p> <p>To convert a JSON value to the SQL type of an output column, the following rules are applied in sequence:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A JSON null value is converted to an SQL null in all cases.</li> <li>• If the output column is of type json or jsonb, the JSON value is just reproduced exactly.</li> <li>• If the output column is a composite (row) type, and the JSON value is a JSON object, the fields of the object are converted to columns of the output row type by recursive application of these rules.</li> <li>• Likewise, if the output column is an array type and the JSON value is a JSON array, the elements of the JSON array are converted to elements of the output array by recursive application of these rules.</li> <li>• Otherwise, if the JSON value is a string, the contents of the string are fed to the input conversion function for the column's data type.</li> <li>• Otherwise, the ordinary text representation of the JSON value is fed to the input conversion function for the column's data type.</li> </ul> <p>While the example below uses a constant JSON value, typical use would be to reference a json or jsonb column laterally from another table in the query's FROM clause. Writing json_populate_record in the FROM clause is good practice, since all of the extracted columns are available for use without duplicate function calls.</p> <pre>create type subrowtype as (d int, e text); create type myrowtype as (a int, b text[], c subrowtype);</pre> <pre>select * from json_populate_record(null::myrowtype, '{"a": 1, "b": ["2", "a b"], "c": {"d": 4, "e": "a b c"}, "x": "foo"}') →</pre> <pre>       a        b             c -----+-----+-----       1   {2, "a b"}   (4, "a b c") </pre>	

Function	Description	Example(s)										
<code>json_populate_recordset ( base anyelement, from_json json ) → setof anyelement</code>												
<code>jsonb_populate_recordset ( base anyelement, from_json jsonb ) → setof anyelement</code>	Expands the top-level JSON array of objects to a set of rows having the composite type of the <i>base</i> argument. Each element of the JSON array is processed as described above for <code>json[b]_populate_record</code> .	<pre>create type twoints as (a int, b int); select * from json_populate_recordset(null::twoints, '[{ "a":1, "b":2}, { "a":3, "b":4}]') →</pre> <table><tr><th>a</th><th>b</th></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>2</td></tr><tr><td>3</td><td>4</td></tr></table>	a	b	1	2	3	4				
a	b											
1	2											
3	4											
<code>json_to_record ( json ) → record</code> <code>jsonb_to_record ( jsonb ) → record</code>	Expands the top-level JSON object to a row having the composite type defined by an AS clause. (As with all functions returning <code>record</code> , the calling query must explicitly define the structure of the record with an AS clause.) The output record is filled from fields of the JSON object, in the same way as described above for <code>json[b]_populate_record</code> . Since there is no input record value, unmatched columns are always filled with nulls.	<pre>create type myrowtype as (a int, b text); select * from json_to_record('{ "a":1, "b":[1,2,3], "c": [1,2,3], "e":"bar", "r": { "a": 123, "b": "a b c" } }') as x(a int, b text, c int[], d text, r myrowtype) →</pre> <table><tr><th>a</th><th>b</th><th>c</th><th>d</th><th>r</th></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>[1,2,3]</td><td>{1,2,3}</td><td></td><td>(123,"a b c")</td></tr></table>	a	b	c	d	r	1	[1,2,3]	{1,2,3}		(123,"a b c")
a	b	c	d	r								
1	[1,2,3]	{1,2,3}		(123,"a b c")								
<code>json_to_recordset ( json ) → setof record</code> <code>jsonb_to_recordset ( jsonb ) → setof record</code>	Expands the top-level JSON array of objects to a set of rows having the composite type defined by an AS clause. (As with all functions returning <code>record</code> , the calling query must explicitly define the structure of the record with an AS clause.) Each element of the JSON array is processed as described above for <code>json[b]_populate_record</code> .	<pre>select * from json_to_recordset('[{ "a":1, "b":"foo"}, { "a":"2", "c":"bar" } ]') as x(a int, b text) →</pre> <table><tr><th>a</th><th>b</th></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>foo</td></tr><tr><td>2</td><td></td></tr></table>	a	b	1	foo	2					
a	b											
1	foo											
2												
<code>jsonb_set ( target jsonb, path text[], new_value jsonb[, create_if_missing boolean ] ) → jsonb</code>												

Function	Description Example(s)
	<p>Returns <i>target</i> with the item designated by <i>path</i> replaced by <i>new_value</i>, or with <i>new_value</i> added if <i>create_if_missing</i> is true (which is the default) and the item designated by <i>path</i> does not exist. All earlier steps in the path must exist, or the <i>target</i> is returned unchanged. As with the path oriented operators, negative integers that appear in the <i>path</i> count from the end of JSON arrays. If the last path step is an array index that is out of range, and <i>create_if_missing</i> is true, the new value is added at the beginning of the array if the index is negative, or at the end of the array if it is positive.</p> <pre>jsonb_set(' [{"f1":1,"f2":null},2,null,3]', '{0,f1}', '[2,3,4]', false) → [{"f1": [2, 3, 4], "f2": null}, 2, null, 3] jsonb_set(' [{"f1":1,"f2":null},2]', '{0,f3}', '[2,3,4]') → [{"f1": 1, "f2": null, "f3": [2, 3, 4]}, 2]</pre>
	<pre>jsonb_set_lax( target jsonb, path text[], new_value jsonb[, cre- ate_if_missing boolean[, null_value_treatment text ]]) → jsonb</pre> <p>If <i>new_value</i> is not NULL, behaves identically to <i>jsonb_set</i>. Otherwise behaves according to the value of <i>null_value_treatment</i> which must be one of 'raise_exception', 'use_json_null', 'delete_key', or 'return_target'. The default is 'use_json_null'.</p> <pre>jsonb_set_lax(' [{"f1":1,"f2":null},2,null,3]', '{0,f1}', null) → [{"f1": null, "f2": null}, 2, null, 3] jsonb_set_lax(' [{"f1":99,"f2":null},2]', '{0,f3}', null, true, 'return_target') → [{"f1": 99, "f2": null}, 2]</pre>
	<pre>jsonb_insert( target jsonb, path text[], new_value jsonb[, insert_after boolean ]) → jsonb</pre> <p>Returns <i>target</i> with <i>new_value</i> inserted. If the item designated by the <i>path</i> is an array element, <i>new_value</i> will be inserted before that item if <i>insert_after</i> is false (which is the default), or after it if <i>insert_after</i> is true. If the item designated by the <i>path</i> is an object field, <i>new_value</i> will be inserted only if the object does not already contain that key. All earlier steps in the path must exist, or the <i>target</i> is returned unchanged. As with the path oriented operators, negative integers that appear in the <i>path</i> count from the end of JSON arrays. If the last path step is an array index that is out of range, the new value is added at the beginning of the array if the index is negative, or at the end of the array if it is positive.</p> <pre>jsonb_insert(' {"a": [0,1,2]}', '{a, 1}', '"new_value"' ) → {"a": [0, "new_value", 1, 2]} jsonb_insert(' {"a": [0,1,2]}', '{a, 1}', '"new_value"', true) → {"a": [0, 1, "new_value", 2]}</pre>
	<pre>json_strip_nulls( json ) → json jsonb_strip_nulls( jsonb ) → jsonb</pre> <p>Deletes all object fields that have null values from the given JSON value, recursively. Null values that are not object fields are untouched.</p> <pre>json_strip_nulls(' [{"f1":1, "f2":null}, 2, null, 3]') → [{"f1":1},2,null,3]</pre>
	<pre>jsonb_path_exists( target jsonb, path jsonpath[, vars jsonb[, silent boolean ]]) → boolean</pre> <p>Checks whether the JSON path returns any item for the specified JSON value. If the <i>vars</i> argument is specified, it must be a JSON object, and its fields provide named val-</p>



Function	Description Example(s)
	<p>ues to be substituted into the jsonpath expression. If the <i>silent</i> argument is specified and is true, the function suppresses the same errors as the @? and @@ operators do.</p> <pre>jsonb_path_exists('{ "a": [1,2,3,4,5] }', '\$.a[*] ? (@ &gt;= \$min &amp;&amp; @ &lt;= \$max)', '{ "min":2, "max":4 }') → t</pre>
<pre>jsonb_path_match ( target jsonb, path jsonpath [, vars jsonb [, silent boolean ] ] ) → boolean</pre>	<p>Returns the result of a JSON path predicate check for the specified JSON value. Only the first item of the result is taken into account. If the result is not Boolean, then NULL is returned. The optional <i>vars</i> and <i>silent</i> arguments act the same as for jsonb_path_exists.</p> <pre>jsonb_path_match('{ "a": [1,2,3,4,5] }', 'exists(\$.a[*] ? (@ &gt;= \$min &amp;&amp; @ &lt;= \$max))', '{ "min":2, "max":4 }') → t</pre>
<pre>jsonb_path_query ( target jsonb, path jsonpath [, vars jsonb [, silent boolean ] ] ) → setof jsonb</pre>	<p>Returns all JSON items returned by the JSON path for the specified JSON value. The optional <i>vars</i> and <i>silent</i> arguments act the same as for jsonb_path_exists.</p> <pre>select * from jsonb_path_query('{ "a": [1,2,3,4,5] }', '\$.a[*] ? (@ &gt;= \$min &amp;&amp; @ &lt;= \$max)', '{ "min":2, "max":4 }')</pre> <pre>→</pre> <pre>       jsonb_path_query -----       2       3       4 </pre>
<pre>jsonb_path_query_array ( target jsonb, path jsonpath [, vars jsonb [, silent boolean ] ] ) → jsonb</pre>	<p>Returns all JSON items returned by the JSON path for the specified JSON value, as a JSON array. The optional <i>vars</i> and <i>silent</i> arguments act the same as for jsonb_path_exists.</p> <pre>jsonb_path_query_array('{ "a": [1,2,3,4,5] }', '\$.a[*] ? (@ &gt;= \$min &amp;&amp; @ &lt;= \$max)', '{ "min":2, "max":4 }') → [2, 3, 4]</pre>
<pre>jsonb_path_query_first ( target jsonb, path jsonpath [, vars jsonb [, silent boolean ] ] ) → jsonb</pre>	<p>Returns the first JSON item returned by the JSON path for the specified JSON value. Returns NULL if there are no results. The optional <i>vars</i> and <i>silent</i> arguments act the same as for jsonb_path_exists.</p> <pre>jsonb_path_query_first('{ "a": [1,2,3,4,5] }', '\$.a[*] ? (@ &gt;= \$min &amp;&amp; @ &lt;= \$max)', '{ "min":2, "max":4 }') → 2</pre>
<pre>jsonb_path_exists_tz ( target jsonb, path jsonpath [, vars jsonb [, silent boolean ] ] ) → boolean</pre> <pre>jsonb_path_match_tz ( target jsonb, path jsonpath [, vars jsonb [, silent boolean ] ] ) → boolean</pre> <pre>jsonb_path_query_tz ( target jsonb, path jsonpath [, vars jsonb [, silent boolean ] ] ) → setof jsonb</pre> <pre>jsonb_path_query_array_tz ( target jsonb, path jsonpath [, vars jsonb [, silent boolean ] ] ) → jsonb</pre>	

Function	Description	Example(s)
<code>jsonb_path_query_first_tz ( target jsonb, path jsonpath [, vars jsonb [, silent boolean ]] ) → jsonb</code>	These functions act like their counterparts described above without the <code>_tz</code> suffix, except that these functions support comparisons of date/time values that require time-zone-aware conversions. The example below requires interpretation of the date-only value 2015-08-02 as a timestamp with time zone, so the result depends on the current <code>TimeZone</code> setting. Due to this dependency, these functions are marked as <i>stable</i> , which means these functions cannot be used in indexes. Their counterparts are <i>immutable</i> , and so can be used in indexes; but they will throw errors if asked to make such comparisons.	<code>jsonb_path_exists_tz ( '[ "2015-08-01 12:00:00-05" ]', '\$[*] ? (@.datetime() &lt; "2015-08-02".datetime())' ) → t</code>
<code>jsonb_pretty ( jsonb ) → text</code>	Converts the given JSON value to pretty-printed, indented text.	<code>jsonb_pretty ( '[ { "f1":1, "f2":null }, 2 ]' ) →</code>  <pre> [   {     "f1": 1,     "f2": null   },   2 ]</pre>
<code>json_typeof ( json ) → text</code> <code>jsonb_typeof ( jsonb ) → text</code>	Returns the type of the top-level JSON value as a text string. Possible types are <i>object</i> , <i>array</i> , <i>string</i> , <i>number</i> , <i>boolean</i> , and <i>null</i> . (The <i>null</i> result should not be confused with an SQL <i>NULL</i> ; see the examples.)	<code>json_typeof ( '-123.4' ) → number</code> <code>json_typeof ( 'null'::json ) → null</code> <code>json_typeof ( NULL::json ) IS NULL → t</code>

## 9.16.2. The SQL/JSON Path Language

SQL/JSON path expressions specify the items to be retrieved from the JSON data, similar to XPath expressions used for SQL access to XML. In PostgreSQL, path expressions are implemented as the `jsonpath` data type and can use any elements described in Section 8.14.7.

JSON query functions and operators pass the provided path expression to the *path engine* for evaluation. If the expression matches the queried JSON data, the corresponding JSON item, or set of items, is returned. Path expressions are written in the SQL/JSON path language and can include arithmetic expressions and functions.

A path expression consists of a sequence of elements allowed by the `jsonpath` data type. The path expression is normally evaluated from left to right, but you can use parentheses to change the order of operations. If the evaluation is successful, a sequence of JSON items is produced, and the evaluation result is returned to the JSON query function that completes the specified computation.

To refer to the JSON value being queried (the *context item*), use the `$` variable in the path expression. It can be followed by one or more accessor operators, which go down the JSON structure level by

level to retrieve sub-items of the context item. Each operator that follows deals with the result of the previous evaluation step.

For example, suppose you have some JSON data from a GPS tracker that you would like to parse, such as:

```
{
  "track": {
    "segments": [
      {
        "location": [ 47.763, 13.4034 ],
        "start time": "2018-10-14 10:05:14",
        "HR": 73
      },
      {
        "location": [ 47.706, 13.2635 ],
        "start time": "2018-10-14 10:39:21",
        "HR": 135
      }
    ]
  }
}
```

To retrieve the available track segments, you need to use the `.key` accessor operator to descend through surrounding JSON objects:

```
$.track.segments
```

To retrieve the contents of an array, you typically use the `[ * ]` operator. For example, the following path will return the location coordinates for all the available track segments:

```
$.track.segments[*].location
```

To return the coordinates of the first segment only, you can specify the corresponding subscript in the `[ ]` accessor operator. Recall that JSON array indexes are 0-relative:

```
$.track.segments[0].location
```

The result of each path evaluation step can be processed by one or more `jsonpath` operators and methods listed in Section 9.16.2.2. Each method name must be preceded by a dot. For example, you can get the size of an array:

```
$.track.segments.size()
```

More examples of using `jsonpath` operators and methods within path expressions appear below in Section 9.16.2.2.

When defining a path, you can also use one or more *filter expressions* that work similarly to the `WHERE` clause in SQL. A filter expression begins with a question mark and provides a condition in parentheses:

```
? (condition)
```

Filter expressions must be written just after the path evaluation step to which they should apply. The result of that step is filtered to include only those items that satisfy the provided condition. SQL/JSON defines three-valued logic, so the condition can be `true`, `false`, or `unknown`. The unknown value

plays the same role as SQL NULL and can be tested for with the `is unknown` predicate. Further path evaluation steps use only those items for which the filter expression returned `true`.

The functions and operators that can be used in filter expressions are listed in Table 9.51. Within a filter expression, the `@` variable denotes the value being filtered (i.e., one result of the preceding path step). You can write accessor operators after `@` to retrieve component items.

For example, suppose you would like to retrieve all heart rate values higher than 130. You can achieve this using the following expression:

```
$.track.segments[*].HR ? (@ > 130)
```

To get the start times of segments with such values, you have to filter out irrelevant segments before returning the start times, so the filter expression is applied to the previous step, and the path used in the condition is different:

```
$.track.segments[*] ? (@.HR > 130). "start time"
```

You can use several filter expressions in sequence, if required. For example, the following expression selects start times of all segments that contain locations with relevant coordinates and high heart rate values:

```
$.track.segments[*] ? (@.location[1] < 13.4) ? (@.HR > 130). "start time"
```

Using filter expressions at different nesting levels is also allowed. The following example first filters all segments by location, and then returns high heart rate values for these segments, if available:

```
$.track.segments[*] ? (@.location[1] < 13.4).HR ? (@ > 130)
```

You can also nest filter expressions within each other:

```
$.track ? (exists(@.segments[*] ? (@.HR > 130))).segments.size()
```

This expression returns the size of the track if it contains any segments with high heart rate values, or an empty sequence otherwise.

PostgreSQL's implementation of the SQL/JSON path language has the following deviations from the SQL/JSON standard:

- A path expression can be a Boolean predicate, although the SQL/JSON standard allows predicates only in filters. This is necessary for implementation of the `@@` operator. For example, the following `jsonpath` expression is valid in PostgreSQL:

```
$.track.segments[*].HR < 70
```

- There are minor differences in the interpretation of regular expression patterns used in `like_regex` filters, as described in Section 9.16.2.3.

### 9.16.2.1. Strict and Lax Modes

When you query JSON data, the path expression may not match the actual JSON data structure. An attempt to access a non-existent member of an object or element of an array results in a structural error. SQL/JSON path expressions have two modes of handling structural errors:

- `lax` (default) — the path engine implicitly adapts the queried data to the specified path. Any remaining structural errors are suppressed and converted to empty SQL/JSON sequences.

- **strict** — if a structural error occurs, an error is raised.

The lax mode facilitates matching of a JSON document structure and path expression if the JSON data does not conform to the expected schema. If an operand does not match the requirements of a particular operation, it can be automatically wrapped as an SQL/JSON array or unwrapped by converting its elements into an SQL/JSON sequence before performing this operation. Besides, comparison operators automatically unwrap their operands in the lax mode, so you can compare SQL/JSON arrays out-of-the-box. An array of size 1 is considered equal to its sole element. Automatic unwrapping is not performed only when:

- The path expression contains `type()` or `size()` methods that return the type and the number of elements in the array, respectively.
- The queried JSON data contain nested arrays. In this case, only the outermost array is unwrapped, while all the inner arrays remain unchanged. Thus, implicit unwrapping can only go one level down within each path evaluation step.

For example, when querying the GPS data listed above, you can abstract from the fact that it stores an array of segments when using the lax mode:

```
lax $.track.segments.location
```

In the strict mode, the specified path must exactly match the structure of the queried JSON document to return an SQL/JSON item, so using this path expression will cause an error. To get the same result as in the lax mode, you have to explicitly unwrap the `segments` array:

```
strict $.track.segments[*].location
```

The `.**` accessor can lead to surprising results when using the lax mode. For instance, the following query selects every HR value twice:

```
lax $.**.HR
```

This happens because the `.**` accessor selects both the `segments` array and each of its elements, while the `.HR` accessor automatically unwraps arrays when using the lax mode. To avoid surprising results, we recommend using the `.**` accessor only in the strict mode. The following query selects each HR value just once:

```
strict $.**.HR
```

### 9.16.2.2. SQL/JSON Path Operators and Methods

Table 9.50 shows the operators and methods available in `jsonpath`. Note that while the unary operators and methods can be applied to multiple values resulting from a preceding path step, the binary operators (addition etc.) can only be applied to single values.

**Table 9.50. `jsonpath` Operators and Methods**

Operator/Method Description Example(s)
$number + number \rightarrow number$ Addition <code>jsonb_path_query('[2]', '\$[0] + 3') \rightarrow 5</code>
$+ number \rightarrow number$ Unary plus (no operation); unlike addition, this can iterate over multiple values

<b>Operator/Method</b> <b>Description</b> <b>Example(s)</b>
<code>jsonb_path_query_array('{ "x": [2,3,4] }', '+ \$.x') → [2, 3, 4]</code>
<i>number - number → number</i> Subtraction <code>jsonb_path_query('[2]', '7 - \$[0]') → 5</code>
<i>- number → number</i> Negation; unlike subtraction, this can iterate over multiple values <code>jsonb_path_query_array('{ "x": [2,3,4] }', '- \$.x') → [-2, -3, -4]</code>
<i>number * number → number</i> Multiplication <code>jsonb_path_query('[4]', '2 * \$[0]') → 8</code>
<i>number / number → number</i> Division <code>jsonb_path_query('[8.5]', '\$[0] / 2') → 4.2500000000000000</code>
<i>number % number → number</i> Modulo (remainder) <code>jsonb_path_query('[32]', '\$[0] % 10') → 2</code>
<i>value . type() → string</i> Type of the JSON item (see <code>json_typeof</code> ) <code>jsonb_path_query_array('[1, "2", {}]', '\$[*].type()') → ["number", "string", "object"]</code>
<i>value . size() → number</i> Size of the JSON item (number of array elements, or 1 if not an array) <code>jsonb_path_query('{ "m": [11, 15] }', '\$.m.size()') → 2</code>
<i>value . double() → number</i> Approximate floating-point number converted from a JSON number or string <code>jsonb_path_query('{ "len": "1.9" }', '\$.len.double() * 2') → 3.8</code>
<i>number . ceiling() → number</i> Nearest integer greater than or equal to the given number <code>jsonb_path_query('{ "h": 1.3 }', '\$.h.ceiling()') → 2</code>
<i>number . floor() → number</i> Nearest integer less than or equal to the given number <code>jsonb_path_query('{ "h": 1.7 }', '\$.h.floor()') → 1</code>
<i>number . abs() → number</i> Absolute value of the given number <code>jsonb_path_query('{ "z": -0.3 }', '\$.z.abs()') → 0.3</code>
<i>string . datetime() → datetime_type</i> (see note) Date/time value converted from a string

Operator/Method	Description	Example(s)
		<code>jsonb_path_query(['"2015-8-1"', "2015-08-12"], '\$[*] ? (@.datetime() &lt; "2015-08-2".datetime())') → "2015-8-1"</code>
	<code>string.datetime(template) → datetime_type</code> (see note) Date/time value converted from a string using the specified <code>to_timestamp</code> template	<code>jsonb_path_query_array(['"12:30"', "18:40"], '\$[*].datetime("HH24:MI")') → ["12:30:00", "18:40:00"]</code>
	<code>object.keyvalue() → array</code> The object's key-value pairs, represented as an array of objects containing three fields: "key", "value", and "id"; "id" is a unique identifier of the object the key-value pair belongs to	<code>jsonb_path_query_array('{ "x": "20", "y": 32 }', '\$.keyvalue()') → [{ "id": 0, "key": "x", "value": "20" }, { "id": 0, "key": "y", "value": 32 }]</code>

### Note

The result type of the `datetime()` and `datetime(template)` methods can be `date`, `timetz`, `time`, `timestamptz`, or `timestamp`. Both methods determine their result type dynamically.

The `datetime()` method sequentially tries to match its input string to the ISO formats for `date`, `timetz`, `time`, `timestamptz`, and `timestamp`. It stops on the first matching format and emits the corresponding data type.

The `datetime(template)` method determines the result type according to the fields used in the provided template string.

The `datetime()` and `datetime(template)` methods use the same parsing rules as the `to_timestamp` SQL function does (see Section 9.8), with three exceptions. First, these methods don't allow unmatched template patterns. Second, only the following separators are allowed in the template string: minus sign, period, solidus (slash), comma, apostrophe, semi-colon, colon and space. Third, separators in the template string must exactly match the input string.

If different date/time types need to be compared, an implicit cast is applied. A `date` value can be cast to `timestamp` or `timestamptz`, `timestamp` can be cast to `timestamptz`, and `time` to `timetz`. However, all but the first of these conversions depend on the current Time-Zone setting, and thus can only be performed within timezone-aware `jsonpath` functions.

Table 9.51 shows the available filter expression elements.

**Table 9.51. jsonpath Filter Expression Elements**

Predicate/Value	Description	Example(s)
	<code>value == value → boolean</code> Equality comparison (this, and the other comparison operators, work on all JSON scalar values)	<code>jsonb_path_query_array(['1', "a", 1, 3], '\$[*] ? (@ == 1)') → [1, 1]</code>

<b>Predicate/Value</b> <b>Description</b> <b>Example(s)</b>
<code>jsonb_path_query_array('[1, "a", 1, 3]', '\$[*] ? (@ == "a")') → ["a"]</code>
<code>value != value → boolean</code> <code>value &lt;&gt; value → boolean</code> Non-equality comparison <code>jsonb_path_query_array('[1, 2, 1, 3]', '\$[*] ? (@ != 1)') → [2, 3]</code> <code>jsonb_path_query_array('["a", "b", "c"]', '\$[*] ? (@ &lt;&gt; "b")') → ["a", "c"]</code>
<code>value &lt; value → boolean</code> Less-than comparison <code>jsonb_path_query_array('[1, 2, 3]', '\$[*] ? (@ &lt; 2)') → [1]</code>
<code>value &lt;= value → boolean</code> Less-than-or-equal-to comparison <code>jsonb_path_query_array('["a", "b", "c"]', '\$[*] ? (@ &lt;= "b")') → ["a", "b"]</code>
<code>value &gt; value → boolean</code> Greater-than comparison <code>jsonb_path_query_array('[1, 2, 3]', '\$[*] ? (@ &gt; 2)') → [3]</code>
<code>value &gt;= value → boolean</code> Greater-than-or-equal-to comparison <code>jsonb_path_query_array('[1, 2, 3]', '\$[*] ? (@ &gt;= 2)') → [2, 3]</code>
<code>true → boolean</code> JSON constant true <code>jsonb_path_query('[{"name": "John", "parent": false}, {"name": "Chris", "parent": true}]', '\$[*] ? (@.parent == true)') → {"name": "Chris", "parent": true}</code>
<code>false → boolean</code> JSON constant false <code>jsonb_path_query('[{"name": "John", "parent": false}, {"name": "Chris", "parent": true}]', '\$[*] ? (@.parent == false)') → {"name": "John", "parent": false}</code>
<code>null → value</code> JSON constant null (note that, unlike in SQL, comparison to null works normally) <code>jsonb_path_query('[{"name": "Mary", "job": null}, {"name": "Michael", "job": "driver"}]', '\$[*] ? (@.job == null) .name') → "Mary"</code>
<code>boolean &amp;&amp; boolean → boolean</code> Boolean AND <code>jsonb_path_query('[1, 3, 7]', '\$[*] ? (@ &gt; 1 &amp;&amp; @ &lt; 5)') → 3</code>
<code>boolean    boolean → boolean</code> Boolean OR



Predicate/Value Description Example(s)
<code>jsonb_path_query('[1, 3, 7]', '\$[*] ? (@ &lt; 1    @ &gt; 5)') → 7</code>
<p><code>! boolean</code> → boolean Boolean NOT</p> <p><code>jsonb_path_query('[1, 3, 7]', '\$[*] ? (!(@ &lt; 5))') → 7</code></p>
<p><code>boolean is unknown</code> → boolean Tests whether a Boolean condition is unknown.</p> <p><code>jsonb_path_query('[-1, 2, 7, "foo"]', '\$[*] ? ((@ &gt; 0) is unknown)') → "foo"</code></p>
<p><code>string like_regex string [flag string]</code> → boolean Tests whether the first operand matches the regular expression given by the second operand, optionally with modifications described by a string of flag characters (see Section 9.16.2.3).</p> <p><code>jsonb_path_query_array('["abc", "abd", "aBdC", "abdacb", "babc"]', '\$[*] ? (@ like_regex "^ab.*c")') → ["abc", "abdacb"]</code></p> <p><code>jsonb_path_query_array('["abc", "abd", "aBdC", "abdacb", "babc"]', '\$[*] ? (@ like_regex "^ab.*c" flag "i")') → ["abc", "aBdC", "abdacb"]</code></p>
<p><code>string starts with string</code> → boolean Tests whether the second operand is an initial substring of the first operand.</p> <p><code>jsonb_path_query('["John Smith", "Mary Stone", "Bob Johnson"]', '\$[*] ? (@ starts with "John")') → "John Smith"</code></p>
<p><code>exists ( path_expression )</code> → boolean Tests whether a path expression matches at least one SQL/JSON item. Returns unknown if the path expression would result in an error; the second example uses this to avoid a no-such-key error in strict mode.</p> <p><code>jsonb_path_query('{ "x": [1, 2], "y": [2, 4] }', 'strict \$.* ? (exists (@ ? (@[*] &gt; 2)))') → [2, 4]</code></p> <p><code>jsonb_path_query_array('{ "value": 41 }', 'strict \$ ? (exists (@.name)) .name') → []</code></p>

### 9.16.2.3. SQL/JSON Regular Expressions

SQL/JSON path expressions allow matching text to a regular expression with the `like_regex` filter. For example, the following SQL/JSON path query would case-insensitively match all strings in an array that start with an English vowel:

```
$[*] ? (@ like_regex "^[aeiou]" flag "i")
```

The optional `flag` string may include one or more of the characters `i` for case-insensitive match, `m` to allow `^` and `$` to match at newlines, `s` to allow `.` to match a newline, and `q` to quote the whole pattern (reducing the behavior to a simple substring match).

The SQL/JSON standard borrows its definition for regular expressions from the `LIKE_REGEX` operator, which in turn uses the XQuery standard. PostgreSQL does not currently support the `LIKE_REGEX` operator. Therefore, the `like_regex` filter is implemented using the POSIX regular expression engine described in Section 9.7.3. This leads to various minor discrepancies from standard SQL/JSON behavior, which are cataloged in Section 9.7.3.8. Note, however, that the flag-letter incompatibilities

described there do not apply to SQL/JSON, as it translates the XQuery flag letters to match what the POSIX engine expects.

Keep in mind that the pattern argument of `like_regex` is a JSON path string literal, written according to the rules given in Section 8.14.7. This means in particular that any backslashes you want to use in the regular expression must be doubled. For example, to match string values of the root document that contain only digits:

```
$.* ? (@ like_regex "^\\d+$")
```

## 9.17. Sequence Manipulation Functions

This section describes functions for operating on *sequence objects*, also called sequence generators or just sequences. Sequence objects are special single-row tables created with `CREATE SEQUENCE`. Sequence objects are commonly used to generate unique identifiers for rows of a table. The sequence functions, listed in Table 9.52, provide simple, multiuser-safe methods for obtaining successive sequence values from sequence objects.

**Table 9.52. Sequence Functions**

Function	Description
<code>nextval ( regclass ) → bigint</code>	<p>Advances the sequence object to its next value and returns that value. This is done atomically: even if multiple sessions execute <code>nextval</code> concurrently, each will safely receive a distinct sequence value. If the sequence object has been created with default parameters, successive <code>nextval</code> calls will return successive values beginning with 1. Other behaviors can be obtained by using appropriate parameters in the <code>CREATE SEQUENCE</code> command.</p> <p>This function requires <code>USAGE</code> or <code>UPDATE</code> privilege on the sequence.</p>
<code>setval ( regclass, bigint [, boolean ] ) → bigint</code>	<p>Sets the sequence object's current value, and optionally its <code>is_called</code> flag. The two-parameter form sets the sequence's <code>last_value</code> field to the specified value and sets its <code>is_called</code> field to <code>true</code>, meaning that the next <code>nextval</code> will advance the sequence before returning a value. The value that will be reported by <code>currval</code> is also set to the specified value. In the three-parameter form, <code>is_called</code> can be set to either <code>true</code> or <code>false</code>. <code>true</code> has the same effect as the two-parameter form. If it is set to <code>false</code>, the next <code>nextval</code> will return exactly the specified value, and sequence advancement commences with the following <code>nextval</code>. Furthermore, the value reported by <code>currval</code> is not changed in this case. For example,</p> <pre>SELECT setval('myseq', 42);           Next nextval will       return 43 SELECT setval('myseq', 42, true);      Same as above SELECT setval('myseq', 42, false);     Next nextval will       return 42</pre> <p>The result returned by <code>setval</code> is just the value of its second argument.</p> <p>This function requires <code>UPDATE</code> privilege on the sequence.</p>
<code>currval ( regclass ) → bigint</code>	<p>Returns the value most recently obtained by <code>nextval</code> for this sequence in the current session. (An error is reported if <code>nextval</code> has never been called for this sequence in this session.) Because this is returning a session-local value, it gives a predictable answer whether or not other sessions have executed <code>nextval</code> since the current session did.</p>

Function
Description
This function requires <code>USAGE</code> or <code>SELECT</code> privilege on the sequence.
<code>lastval () → bigint</code> Returns the value most recently returned by <code>nextval</code> in the current session. This function is identical to <code>currval</code> , except that instead of taking the sequence name as an argument it refers to whichever sequence <code>nextval</code> was most recently applied to in the current session. It is an error to call <code>lastval</code> if <code>nextval</code> has not yet been called in the current session. This function requires <code>USAGE</code> or <code>SELECT</code> privilege on the last used sequence.

### Caution

To avoid blocking concurrent transactions that obtain numbers from the same sequence, the value obtained by `nextval` is not reclaimed for re-use if the calling transaction later aborts. This means that transaction aborts or database crashes can result in gaps in the sequence of assigned values. That can happen without a transaction abort, too. For example an `INSERT` with an `ON CONFLICT` clause will compute the to-be-inserted tuple, including doing any required `nextval` calls, before detecting any conflict that would cause it to follow the `ON CONFLICT` rule instead. Thus, PostgreSQL sequence objects *cannot be used to obtain “gap-less” sequences*.

Likewise, sequence state changes made by `setval` are immediately visible to other transactions, and are not undone if the calling transaction rolls back.

If the database cluster crashes before committing a transaction containing a `nextval` or `setval` call, the sequence state change might not have made its way to persistent storage, so that it is uncertain whether the sequence will have its original or updated state after the cluster restarts. This is harmless for usage of the sequence within the database, since other effects of uncommitted transactions will not be visible either. However, if you wish to use a sequence value for persistent outside-the-database purposes, make sure that the `nextval` call has been committed before doing so.

The sequence to be operated on by a sequence function is specified by a `regclass` argument, which is simply the OID of the sequence in the `pg_class` system catalog. You do not have to look up the OID by hand, however, since the `regclass` data type's input converter will do the work for you. See Section 8.19 for details.

## 9.18. Conditional Expressions

This section describes the SQL-compliant conditional expressions available in PostgreSQL.

### Tip

If your needs go beyond the capabilities of these conditional expressions, you might want to consider writing a server-side function in a more expressive programming language.

### Note

Although `COALESCE`, `GREATEST`, and `LEAST` are syntactically similar to functions, they are not ordinary functions, and thus cannot be used with explicit `VARIADIC` array arguments.

## 9.18.1. CASE

The SQL CASE expression is a generic conditional expression, similar to if/else statements in other programming languages:

```
CASE WHEN condition THEN result
      [WHEN ...]
      [ELSE result]
END
```

CASE clauses can be used wherever an expression is valid. Each *condition* is an expression that returns a boolean result. If the condition's result is true, the value of the CASE expression is the *result* that follows the condition, and the remainder of the CASE expression is not processed. If the condition's result is not true, any subsequent WHEN clauses are examined in the same manner. If no WHEN *condition* yields true, the value of the CASE expression is the *result* of the ELSE clause. If the ELSE clause is omitted and no condition is true, the result is null.

An example:

```
SELECT * FROM test;
```

```
a
---
1
2
3
```

```
SELECT a,
       CASE WHEN a=1 THEN 'one'
            WHEN a=2 THEN 'two'
            ELSE 'other'
       END
FROM test;
```

```
a | case
---+-----
1 | one
2 | two
3 | other
```

The data types of all the *result* expressions must be convertible to a single output type. See Section 10.5 for more details.

There is a “simple” form of CASE expression that is a variant of the general form above:

```
CASE expression
     WHEN value THEN result
     [WHEN ...]
     [ELSE result]
END
```

The first *expression* is computed, then compared to each of the *value* expressions in the WHEN clauses until one is found that is equal to it. If no match is found, the *result* of the ELSE clause (or a null value) is returned. This is similar to the `switch` statement in C.

The example above can be written using the simple CASE syntax:

```
SELECT a,
       CASE a WHEN 1 THEN 'one'
             WHEN 2 THEN 'two'
             ELSE 'other'
       END
FROM test;
```

a	case
1	one
2	two
3	other

A CASE expression does not evaluate any subexpressions that are not needed to determine the result. For example, this is a possible way of avoiding a division-by-zero failure:

```
SELECT ... WHERE CASE WHEN x <> 0 THEN y/x > 1.5 ELSE false END;
```

### Note

As described in Section 4.2.14, there are various situations in which subexpressions of an expression are evaluated at different times, so that the principle that “CASE evaluates only necessary subexpressions” is not ironclad. For example a constant  $1/0$  subexpression will usually result in a division-by-zero failure at planning time, even if it's within a CASE arm that would never be entered at run time.

## 9.18.2. COALESCE

```
COALESCE(value [, ...])
```

The COALESCE function returns the first of its arguments that is not null. Null is returned only if all arguments are null. It is often used to substitute a default value for null values when data is retrieved for display, for example:

```
SELECT COALESCE(description, short_description, '(none)') ...
```

This returns *description* if it is not null, otherwise *short\_description* if it is not null, otherwise *(none)*.

The arguments must all be convertible to a common data type, which will be the type of the result (see Section 10.5 for details).

Like a CASE expression, COALESCE only evaluates the arguments that are needed to determine the result; that is, arguments to the right of the first non-null argument are not evaluated. This SQL-standard function provides capabilities similar to NVL and IFNULL, which are used in some other database systems.

## 9.18.3. NULLIF

```
NULLIF(value1, value2)
```

The NULLIF function returns a null value if *value1* equals *value2*; otherwise it returns *value1*. This can be used to perform the inverse operation of the COALESCE example given above:

```
SELECT NULLIF(value, '(none)') ...
```

In this example, if `value` is `(none)`, null is returned, otherwise the value of `value` is returned.

The two arguments must be of comparable types. To be specific, they are compared exactly as if you had written `value1 = value2`, so there must be a suitable `=` operator available.

The result has the same type as the first argument — but there is a subtlety. What is actually returned is the first argument of the implied `=` operator, and in some cases that will have been promoted to match the second argument's type. For example, `NULLIF(1, 2.2)` yields `numeric`, because there is no `integer = numeric` operator, only `numeric = numeric`.

## 9.18.4. GREATEST and LEAST

```
GREATEST(value [, ...])
```

```
LEAST(value [, ...])
```

The `GREATEST` and `LEAST` functions select the largest or smallest value from a list of any number of expressions. The expressions must all be convertible to a common data type, which will be the type of the result (see Section 10.5 for details).

NULL values in the argument list are ignored. The result will be NULL only if all the expressions evaluate to NULL. (This is a deviation from the SQL standard. According to the standard, the return value is NULL if any argument is NULL. Some other databases behave this way.)

## 9.19. Array Functions and Operators

Table 9.53 shows the specialized operators available for array types. In addition to those, the usual comparison operators shown in Table 9.1 are available for arrays. The comparison operators compare the array contents element-by-element, using the default B-tree comparison function for the element data type, and sort based on the first difference. In multidimensional arrays the elements are visited in row-major order (last subscript varies most rapidly). If the contents of two arrays are equal but the dimensionality is different, the first difference in the dimensionality information determines the sort order.

**Table 9.53. Array Operators**

Operator	Description Example(s)
<code>anyarray @&gt; anyarray</code> → boolean	Does the first array contain the second, that is, does each element appearing in the second array equal some element of the first array? (Duplicates are not treated specially, thus <code>ARRAY[1]</code> and <code>ARRAY[1,1]</code> are each considered to contain the other.) <code>ARRAY[1,4,3] @&gt; ARRAY[3,1,3] → t</code>
<code>anyarray &lt;@ anyarray</code> → boolean	Is the first array contained by the second? <code>ARRAY[2,2,7] &lt;@ ARRAY[1,7,4,2,6] → t</code>
<code>anyarray &amp;&amp; anyarray</code> → boolean	Do the arrays overlap, that is, have any elements in common? <code>ARRAY[1,4,3] &amp;&amp; ARRAY[2,1] → t</code>
<code>anycompatiblearray    anycompatiblearray</code> → anycompatiblearray	

Operator	Description
Example(s)	
	Concatenates the two arrays. Concatenating a null or empty array is a no-op; otherwise the arrays must have the same number of dimensions (as illustrated by the first example) or differ in number of dimensions by one (as illustrated by the second). If the arrays are not of identical element types, they will be coerced to a common type (see Section 10.5).
	$\text{ARRAY}[1, 2, 3] \parallel \text{ARRAY}[4, 5, 6, 7] \rightarrow \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7\}$ $\text{ARRAY}[1, 2, 3] \parallel \text{ARRAY}[[4, 5, 6], [7, 8, 9.9]] \rightarrow \{\{1, 2, 3\}, \{4, 5, 6\}, \{7, 8, 9.9\}\}$
	$\text{anycompatible} \parallel \text{anycompatiblearray} \rightarrow \text{anycompatiblearray}$ Concatenates an element onto the front of an array (which must be empty or one-dimensional).
	$3 \parallel \text{ARRAY}[4, 5, 6] \rightarrow \{3, 4, 5, 6\}$
	$\text{anycompatiblearray} \parallel \text{anycompatible} \rightarrow \text{anycompatiblearray}$ Concatenates an element onto the end of an array (which must be empty or one-dimensional).
	$\text{ARRAY}[4, 5, 6] \parallel 7 \rightarrow \{4, 5, 6, 7\}$

See Section 8.15 for more details about array operator behavior. See Section 11.2 for more details about which operators support indexed operations.

Table 9.54 shows the functions available for use with array types. See Section 8.15 for more information and examples of the use of these functions.

**Table 9.54. Array Functions**

Function	Description
Example(s)	
	$\text{array\_append}(\text{anycompatiblearray}, \text{anycompatible}) \rightarrow \text{anycompatiblearray}$ Appends an element to the end of an array (same as the $\text{anycompatiblearray} \parallel \text{anycompatible}$ operator).
	$\text{array\_append}(\text{ARRAY}[1, 2], 3) \rightarrow \{1, 2, 3\}$
	$\text{array\_cat}(\text{anycompatiblearray}, \text{anycompatiblearray}) \rightarrow \text{anycompatiblearray}$ Concatenates two arrays (same as the $\text{anycompatiblearray} \parallel \text{anycompatiblearray}$ operator).
	$\text{array\_cat}(\text{ARRAY}[1, 2, 3], \text{ARRAY}[4, 5]) \rightarrow \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5\}$
	$\text{array\_dims}(\text{anyarray}) \rightarrow \text{text}$ Returns a text representation of the array's dimensions.
	$\text{array\_dims}(\text{ARRAY}[[1, 2, 3], [4, 5, 6]]) \rightarrow [1:2][1:3]$
	$\text{array\_fill}(\text{anyelement}, \text{integer}[], \text{integer}[]) \rightarrow \text{anyarray}$ Returns an array filled with copies of the given value, having dimensions of the lengths specified by the second argument. The optional third argument supplies lower-bound values for each dimension (which default to all 1).
	$\text{array\_fill}(11, \text{ARRAY}[2, 3]) \rightarrow \{\{11, 11, 11\}, \{11, 11, 11\}\}$ $\text{array\_fill}(7, \text{ARRAY}[3], \text{ARRAY}[2]) \rightarrow [2:4]=\{7, 7, 7\}$
	$\text{array\_length}(\text{anyarray}, \text{integer}) \rightarrow \text{integer}$

Function	Description Example(s)
	<p>Returns the length of the requested array dimension. (Produces NULL instead of 0 for empty or missing array dimensions.)</p> <pre>array_length(array[1,2,3], 1) → 3 array_length(array[]::int[], 1) → NULL array_length(array['text'], 2) → NULL</pre>
	<pre>array_lower(anyarray, integer) → integer</pre> <p>Returns the lower bound of the requested array dimension.</p> <pre>array_lower('[0:2]={1,2,3}'::integer[], 1) → 0</pre>
	<pre>array_ndims(anyarray) → integer</pre> <p>Returns the number of dimensions of the array.</p> <pre>array_ndims(ARRAY[[1,2,3], [4,5,6]]) → 2</pre>
	<pre>array_position(anycompatiblearray, anycompatible[, integer]) → integer</pre> <p>Returns the subscript of the first occurrence of the second argument in the array, or NULL if it's not present. If the third argument is given, the search begins at that subscript. The array must be one-dimensional. Comparisons are done using IS NOT DISTINCT FROM semantics, so it is possible to search for NULL.</p> <pre>array_position(ARRAY['sun', 'mon', 'tue', 'wed', 'thu', 'fri', 'sat'], 'mon') → 2</pre>
	<pre>array_positions(anycompatiblearray, anycompatible) → integer[]</pre> <p>Returns an array of the subscripts of all occurrences of the second argument in the array given as first argument. The array must be one-dimensional. Comparisons are done using IS NOT DISTINCT FROM semantics, so it is possible to search for NULL. NULL is returned only if the array is NULL; if the value is not found in the array, an empty array is returned.</p> <pre>array_positions(ARRAY['A', 'A', 'B', 'A'], 'A') → {1,2,4}</pre>
	<pre>array_prepend(anycompatible, anycompatiblearray) → anycompatiblearray</pre> <p>Prepends an element to the beginning of an array (same as the anycompatible    anycompatiblearray operator).</p> <pre>array_prepend(1, ARRAY[2,3]) → {1,2,3}</pre>
	<pre>array_remove(anycompatiblearray, anycompatible) → anycompatiblearray</pre> <p>Removes all elements equal to the given value from the array. The array must be one-dimensional. Comparisons are done using IS NOT DISTINCT FROM semantics, so it is possible to remove NULLs.</p> <pre>array_remove(ARRAY[1,2,3,2], 2) → {1,3}</pre>
	<pre>array_replace(anycompatiblearray, anycompatible, anycompatible) → anycompatiblearray</pre> <p>Replaces each array element equal to the second argument with the third argument.</p> <pre>array_replace(ARRAY[1,2,5,4], 5, 3) → {1,2,3,4}</pre>
	<pre>array_sample(array anyarray, n integer) → anyarray</pre> <p>Returns an array of <i>n</i> items randomly selected from <i>array</i>. <i>n</i> may not exceed the length of <i>array</i>'s first dimension. If <i>array</i> is multi-dimensional, an “item” is a slice having a given first subscript.</p>



Function	Description	Example(s)
		<code>array_sample(ARRAY[1,2,3,4,5,6], 3) → {2,6,1}</code> <code>array_sample(ARRAY[[1,2],[3,4],[5,6]], 2) → {{5,6},{1,2}}</code>
	<code>array_shuffle(anyarray) → anyarray</code> Randomly shuffles the first dimension of the array. <code>array_shuffle(ARRAY[[1,2],[3,4],[5,6]]) → {{5,6},{1,2},{3,4}}</code>	
	<code>array_to_string(array anyarray, delimiter text [, null_string text]) → text</code> Converts each array element to its text representation, and concatenates those separated by the <i>delimiter</i> string. If <i>null_string</i> is given and is not NULL, then NULL array entries are represented by that string; otherwise, they are omitted. See also <code>string_to_array</code> . <code>array_to_string(ARRAY[1, 2, 3, NULL, 5], ',', '*') → 1,2,3,*,5</code>	
	<code>array_upper(anyarray, integer) → integer</code> Returns the upper bound of the requested array dimension. <code>array_upper(ARRAY[1,8,3,7], 1) → 4</code>	
	<code>cardinality(anyarray) → integer</code> Returns the total number of elements in the array, or 0 if the array is empty. <code>cardinality(ARRAY[[1,2],[3,4]]) → 4</code>	
	<code>trim_array(array anyarray, n integer) → anyarray</code> Trims an array by removing the last <i>n</i> elements. If the array is multidimensional, only the first dimension is trimmed. <code>trim_array(ARRAY[1,2,3,4,5,6], 2) → {1,2,3,4}</code>	
	<code>unnest(anyarray) → setof anyelement</code> Expands an array into a set of rows. The array's elements are read out in storage order. <code>unnest(ARRAY[1,2]) →</code>  <div style="margin-left: 40px;">1</div> <div style="margin-left: 40px;">2</div> <code>unnest(ARRAY[['foo','bar'],['baz','quux']]) →</code>  <div style="margin-left: 40px;">foo</div> <div style="margin-left: 40px;">bar</div> <div style="margin-left: 40px;">baz</div> <div style="margin-left: 40px;">quux</div>	
	<code>unnest(anyarray, anyarray[, ...]) → setof anyelement, anyelement [, ...]</code> Expands multiple arrays (possibly of different data types) into a set of rows. If the arrays are not all the same length then the shorter ones are padded with NULLs. This form is only allowed in a query's FROM clause; see Section 7.2.1.4. <code>select * from unnest(ARRAY[1,2], ARRAY['foo','bar','baz'])</code> <code>as x(a,b) →</code>	

Function
<b>Description</b> <b>Example(s)</b>
<pre> a   b ---+----- 1   foo 2   bar     baz </pre>

See also Section 9.21 about the aggregate function `array_agg` for use with arrays.

## 9.20. Range/Multirange Functions and Operators

See Section 8.17 for an overview of range types.

Table 9.55 shows the specialized operators available for range types. Table 9.56 shows the specialized operators available for multirange types. In addition to those, the usual comparison operators shown in Table 9.1 are available for range and multirange types. The comparison operators order first by the range lower bounds, and only if those are equal do they compare the upper bounds. The multirange operators compare each range until one is unequal. This does not usually result in a useful overall ordering, but the operators are provided to allow unique indexes to be constructed on ranges.

**Table 9.55. Range Operators**

Operator
<b>Description</b> <b>Example(s)</b>
<code>anyrange @&gt; anyrange → boolean</code> Does the first range contain the second? <code>int4range(2,4) @&gt; int4range(2,3) → t</code>
<code>anyrange @&gt; anyelement → boolean</code> Does the range contain the element? <code>'[2011-01-01,2011-03-01]':::tsrange @&gt; '2011-01-10':::timestamp → t</code>
<code>anyrange &lt;@ anyrange → boolean</code> Is the first range contained by the second? <code>int4range(2,4) &lt;@ int4range(1,7) → t</code>
<code>anyelement &lt;@ anyrange → boolean</code> Is the element contained in the range? <code>42 &lt;@ int4range(1,7) → f</code>
<code>anyrange &amp;&amp; anyrange → boolean</code> Do the ranges overlap, that is, have any elements in common? <code>int8range(3,7) &amp;&amp; int8range(4,12) → t</code>
<code>anyrange &lt;&lt; anyrange → boolean</code> Is the first range strictly left of the second? <code>int8range(1,10) &lt;&lt; int8range(100,110) → t</code>
<code>anyrange &gt;&gt; anyrange → boolean</code>

<b>Operator</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Example(s)</b>
	Is the first range strictly right of the second?	<code>int8range(50,60) &gt;&gt; int8range(20,30) → t</code>
<code>anyrange &amp;&lt; anyrange</code>	Does the first range not extend to the right of the second?	<code>int8range(1,20) &amp;&lt; int8range(18,20) → t</code>
<code>anyrange &amp;&gt; anyrange</code>	Does the first range not extend to the left of the second?	<code>int8range(7,20) &amp;&gt; int8range(5,10) → t</code>
<code>anyrange - - anyrange</code>	Are the ranges adjacent?	<code>numrange(1.1,2.2) - - numrange(2.2,3.3) → t</code>
<code>anyrange + anyrange</code>	Computes the union of the ranges. The ranges must overlap or be adjacent, so that the union is a single range (but see <code>range_merge()</code> ).	<code>numrange(5,15) + numrange(10,20) → [5,20)</code>
<code>anyrange * anyrange</code>	Computes the intersection of the ranges.	<code>int8range(5,15) * int8range(10,20) → [10,15)</code>
<code>anyrange - anyrange</code>	Computes the difference of the ranges. The second range must not be contained in the first in such a way that the difference would not be a single range.	<code>int8range(5,15) - int8range(10,20) → [5,10)</code>

**Table 9.56. Multirange Operators**

<b>Operator</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Example(s)</b>
<code>anymultirange @&gt; anymultirange</code>	Does the first multirange contain the second?	<code>'{[2,4)]'::int4multirange @&gt; '[2,3)]'::int4multirange → t</code>
<code>anymultirange @&gt; anyrange</code>	Does the multirange contain the range?	<code>'{[2,4)]'::int4multirange @&gt; int4range(2,3) → t</code>
<code>anymultirange @&gt; anyelement</code>	Does the multirange contain the element?	<code>'{[2011-01-01,2011-03-01)]'::tsmultirange @&gt; '2011-01-10'::timestamp → t</code>
<code>anyrange @&gt; anymultirange</code>	Does the range contain the multirange?	<code>'[2,4)'::int4range @&gt; '[2,3)]'::int4multirange → t</code>
<code>anymultirange &lt;@ anymultirange</code>	Is the first multirange contained by the second?	

Operator	Description	Example(s)
		<code>'{[2,4)}'::int4multirange &lt;@ '[1,7)}'::int4multirange → t</code>
	<code>anymultirange &lt;@ anyrange → boolean</code> Is the multirange contained by the range?	<code>'{[2,4)}'::int4multirange &lt;@ int4range(1,7) → t</code>
	<code>anyrange &lt;@ anymultirange → boolean</code> Is the range contained by the multirange?	<code>int4range(2,4) &lt;@ '[1,7)}'::int4multirange → t</code>
	<code>anyelement &lt;@ anymultirange → boolean</code> Is the element contained by the multirange?	<code>4 &lt;@ '[1,7)}'::int4multirange → t</code>
	<code>anymultirange &amp;&amp; anymultirange → boolean</code> Do the multiranges overlap, that is, have any elements in common?	<code>'{[3,7)}'::int8multirange &amp;&amp; '[4,12)}'::int8multirange → t</code>
	<code>anymultirange &amp;&amp; anyrange → boolean</code> Does the multirange overlap the range?	<code>'{[3,7)}'::int8multirange &amp;&amp; int8range(4,12) → t</code>
	<code>anyrange &amp;&amp; anymultirange → boolean</code> Does the range overlap the multirange?	<code>int8range(3,7) &amp;&amp; '[4,12)}'::int8multirange → t</code>
	<code>anymultirange &lt;&lt; anymultirange → boolean</code> Is the first multirange strictly left of the second?	<code>'{[1,10)}'::int8multirange &lt;&lt; '[100,110)}'::int8multirange → t</code>
	<code>anymultirange &lt;&lt; anyrange → boolean</code> Is the multirange strictly left of the range?	<code>'{[1,10)}'::int8multirange &lt;&lt; int8range(100,110) → t</code>
	<code>anyrange &lt;&lt; anymultirange → boolean</code> Is the range strictly left of the multirange?	<code>int8range(1,10) &lt;&lt; '[100,110)}'::int8multirange → t</code>
	<code>anymultirange &gt;&gt; anymultirange → boolean</code> Is the first multirange strictly right of the second?	<code>'{[50,60)}'::int8multirange &gt;&gt; '[20,30)}'::int8multirange → t</code>
	<code>anymultirange &gt;&gt; anyrange → boolean</code> Is the multirange strictly right of the range?	<code>'{[50,60)}'::int8multirange &gt;&gt; int8range(20,30) → t</code>
	<code>anyrange &gt;&gt; anymultirange → boolean</code> Is the range strictly right of the multirange?	<code>int8range(50,60) &gt;&gt; '[20,30)}'::int8multirange → t</code>
	<code>anymultirange &amp;&lt; anymultirange → boolean</code> Does the first multirange not extend to the right of the second?	

Operator	Description	Example(s)
		<code>'{[1,20)}'::int8multirange &lt; ' {[18,20)}'::int8multirange → t</code>
<code>anymultirange &lt; anyrange → boolean</code>	Does the multirange not extend to the right of the range?	<code>'{[1,20)}'::int8multirange &lt; int8range(18,20) → t</code>
<code>anyrange &lt; anymultirange → boolean</code>	Does the range not extend to the right of the multirange?	<code>int8range(1,20) &lt; '{[18,20)}'::int8multirange → t</code>
<code>anymultirange &gt; anymultirange → boolean</code>	Does the first multirange not extend to the left of the second?	<code>'{[7,20)}'::int8multirange &gt; '{[5,10)}'::int8multirange → t</code>
<code>anymultirange &gt; anyrange → boolean</code>	Does the multirange not extend to the left of the range?	<code>'{[7,20)}'::int8multirange &gt; int8range(5,10) → t</code>
<code>anyrange &gt; anymultirange → boolean</code>	Does the range not extend to the left of the multirange?	<code>int8range(7,20) &gt; '{[5,10)}'::int8multirange → t</code>
<code>anymultirange - - anymultirange → boolean</code>	Are the multiranges adjacent?	<code>'{[1.1,2.2)}'::nummultirange - - '{[2.2,3.3)}'::nummultirange → t</code>
<code>anymultirange - - anyrange → boolean</code>	Is the multirange adjacent to the range?	<code>'{[1.1,2.2)}'::nummultirange - - numrange(2.2,3.3) → t</code>
<code>anyrange - - anymultirange → boolean</code>	Is the range adjacent to the multirange?	<code>numrange(1.1,2.2) - - '{[2.2,3.3)}'::nummultirange → t</code>
<code>anymultirange + anymultirange → anymultirange</code>	Computes the union of the multiranges. The multiranges need not overlap or be adjacent.	<code>'{[5,10)}'::nummultirange + '{[15,20)}'::nummultirange → {[5,10), [15,20)}</code>
<code>anymultirange * anymultirange → anymultirange</code>	Computes the intersection of the multiranges.	<code>'{[5,15)}'::int8multirange * '{[10,20)}'::int8multirange → {[10,15)}</code>
<code>anymultirange - anymultirange → anymultirange</code>	Computes the difference of the multiranges.	<code>'{[5,20)}'::int8multirange - '{[10,15)}'::int8multirange → {[5,10), [15,20)}</code>

The left-of/right-of/adjacent operators always return false when an empty range or multirange is involved; that is, an empty range is not considered to be either before or after any other range.

Elsewhere empty ranges and multiranges are treated as the additive identity: anything unioned with an empty value is itself. Anything minus an empty value is itself. An empty multirange has exactly the same points as an empty range. Every range contains the empty range. Every multirange contains as many empty ranges as you like.

The range union and difference operators will fail if the resulting range would need to contain two disjoint sub-ranges, as such a range cannot be represented. There are separate operators for union and difference that take multirange parameters and return a multirange, and they do not fail even if their arguments are disjoint. So if you need a union or difference operation for ranges that may be disjoint, you can avoid errors by first casting your ranges to multiranges.

Table 9.57 shows the functions available for use with range types. Table 9.58 shows the functions available for use with multirange types.

**Table 9.57. Range Functions**

Function	Description	Example(s)
<code>lower ( anyrange ) → anyelement</code>	Extracts the lower bound of the range (NULL if the range is empty or has no lower bound).	<code>lower ( numrange ( 1.1 , 2.2 ) ) → 1.1</code>
<code>upper ( anyrange ) → anyelement</code>	Extracts the upper bound of the range (NULL if the range is empty or has no upper bound).	<code>upper ( numrange ( 1.1 , 2.2 ) ) → 2.2</code>
<code>isempty ( anyrange ) → boolean</code>	Is the range empty?	<code>isempty ( numrange ( 1.1 , 2.2 ) ) → f</code>
<code>lower_inc ( anyrange ) → boolean</code>	Is the range's lower bound inclusive?	<code>lower_inc ( numrange ( 1.1 , 2.2 ) ) → t</code>
<code>upper_inc ( anyrange ) → boolean</code>	Is the range's upper bound inclusive?	<code>upper_inc ( numrange ( 1.1 , 2.2 ) ) → f</code>
<code>lower_inf ( anyrange ) → boolean</code>	Does the range have no lower bound? (A lower bound of -Infinity returns false.)	<code>lower_inf ( ' ( , ) '::daterange ) → t</code>
<code>upper_inf ( anyrange ) → boolean</code>	Does the range have no upper bound? (An upper bound of Infinity returns false.)	<code>upper_inf ( ' ( , ) '::daterange ) → t</code>
<code>range_merge ( anyrange, anyrange ) → anyrange</code>	Computes the smallest range that includes both of the given ranges.	<code>range_merge ( '[ 1,2 ) '::int4range, '[ 3,4 ) '::int4range ) → [ 1,4 )</code>

**Table 9.58. Multirange Functions**

Function	Description	Example(s)
<code>lower (anymultirange) → anyelement</code>	Extracts the lower bound of the multirange (NULL if the multirange is empty has no lower bound).	<code>lower(' {[1.1, 2.2]}'::nummultirange) → 1.1</code>
<code>upper (anymultirange) → anyelement</code>	Extracts the upper bound of the multirange (NULL if the multirange is empty or has no upper bound).	<code>upper(' {[1.1, 2.2]}'::nummultirange) → 2.2</code>
<code>isempty (anymultirange) → boolean</code>	Is the multirange empty?	<code>isempty(' {[1.1, 2.2]}'::nummultirange) → f</code>
<code>lower_inc (anymultirange) → boolean</code>	Is the multirange's lower bound inclusive?	<code>lower_inc(' {[1.1, 2.2]}'::nummultirange) → t</code>
<code>upper_inc (anymultirange) → boolean</code>	Is the multirange's upper bound inclusive?	<code>upper_inc(' {[1.1, 2.2]}'::nummultirange) → f</code>
<code>lower_inf (anymultirange) → boolean</code>	Does the multirange have no lower bound? (A lower bound of -Infinity returns false.)	<code>lower_inf(' {(, )}'::datemultirange) → t</code>
<code>upper_inf (anymultirange) → boolean</code>	Does the multirange have no upper bound? (An upper bound of Infinity returns false.)	<code>upper_inf(' {(, )}'::datemultirange) → t</code>
<code>range_merge (anymultirange) → anyrange</code>	Computes the smallest range that includes the entire multirange.	<code>range_merge(' {[1, 2), [3, 4]}'::int4multirange) → [1, 4)</code>
<code>multirange (anyrange) → anymultirange</code>	Returns a multirange containing just the given range.	<code>multirange(' [1, 2)'::int4range) → {[1, 2)}</code>
<code>unnest (anymultirange) → setof anyrange</code>	Expands a multirange into a set of ranges. The ranges are read out in storage order (ascending).	<code>unnest(' {[1, 2), [3, 4]}'::int4multirange) →</code>  <code>[1, 2)</code> <code>[3, 4)</code>

The `lower_inc`, `upper_inc`, `lower_inf`, and `upper_inf` functions all return false for an empty range or multirange.

## 9.21. Aggregate Functions

*Aggregate functions* compute a single result from a set of input values. The built-in general-purpose aggregate functions are listed in Table 9.59 while statistical aggregates are in Table 9.60. The built-in within-group ordered-set aggregate functions are listed in Table 9.61 while the built-in within-group hypothetical-set ones are in Table 9.62. Grouping operations, which are closely related to aggregate functions, are listed in Table 9.63. The special syntax considerations for aggregate functions are explained in Section 4.2.7. Consult Section 2.7 for additional introductory information.

Aggregate functions that support *Partial Mode* are eligible to participate in various optimizations, such as parallel aggregation.

**Table 9.59. General-Purpose Aggregate Functions**

Function Description	Partial Mode
<code>any_value ( anyelement ) → same as input type</code> Returns an arbitrary value from the non-null input values.	Yes
<code>array_agg ( anynonarray ) → anyarray</code> Collects all the input values, including nulls, into an array.	Yes
<code>array_agg ( anyarray ) → anyarray</code> Concatenates all the input arrays into an array of one higher dimension. (The inputs must all have the same dimensionality, and cannot be empty or null.)	Yes
<code>avg ( smallint ) → numeric</code> <code>avg ( integer ) → numeric</code> <code>avg ( bigint ) → numeric</code> <code>avg ( numeric ) → numeric</code> <code>avg ( real ) → double precision</code> <code>avg ( double precision ) → double precision</code> <code>avg ( interval ) → interval</code> Computes the average (arithmetic mean) of all the non-null input values.	Yes
<code>bit_and ( smallint ) → smallint</code> <code>bit_and ( integer ) → integer</code> <code>bit_and ( bigint ) → bigint</code> <code>bit_and ( bit ) → bit</code> Computes the bitwise AND of all non-null input values.	Yes
<code>bit_or ( smallint ) → smallint</code> <code>bit_or ( integer ) → integer</code> <code>bit_or ( bigint ) → bigint</code> <code>bit_or ( bit ) → bit</code> Computes the bitwise OR of all non-null input values.	Yes
<code>bit_xor ( smallint ) → smallint</code> <code>bit_xor ( integer ) → integer</code> <code>bit_xor ( bigint ) → bigint</code> <code>bit_xor ( bit ) → bit</code> Computes the bitwise exclusive OR of all non-null input values. Can be useful as a checksum for an unordered set of values.	Yes



Function Description	Partial Mode
<code>bool_and ( boolean ) → boolean</code> Returns true if all non-null input values are true, otherwise false.	Yes
<code>bool_or ( boolean ) → boolean</code> Returns true if any non-null input value is true, otherwise false.	Yes
<code>count ( * ) → bigint</code> Computes the number of input rows.	Yes
<code>count ( "any" ) → bigint</code> Computes the number of input rows in which the input value is not null.	Yes
<code>every ( boolean ) → boolean</code> This is the SQL standard's equivalent to <code>bool_and</code> .	Yes
<code>json_agg ( anyelement ) → json</code> <code>jsonb_agg ( anyelement ) → jsonb</code> Collects all the input values, including nulls, into a JSON array. Values are converted to JSON as per <code>to_json</code> or <code>to_jsonb</code> .	No
<code>json_objectagg ( [ { key_expression { VALUE   ':' } value_expression } ] [ { NULL   ABSENT } ON NULL ] [ { WITH   WITHOUT } UNIQUE [ KEYS ] ] [ RETURNING data_type [ FORMAT JSON [ ENCODING UTF8 ] ] ] )</code> Behaves like <code>json_object</code> , but as an aggregate function, so it only takes one <i>key_expression</i> and one <i>value_expression</i> parameter. <code>SELECT json_objectagg(k:v) FROM (VALUES ('a':text,current_date),('b',current_date + 1)) AS t(k,v) → { "a" : "2022-05-10", "b" : "2022-05-11" }</code>	No
<code>json_object_agg ( key "any", value "any" ) → json</code> <code>jsonb_object_agg ( key "any", value "any" ) → jsonb</code> Collects all the key/value pairs into a JSON object. Key arguments are coerced to text; value arguments are converted as per <code>to_json</code> or <code>to_jsonb</code> . Values can be null, but keys cannot.	No
<code>json_object_agg_strict ( key "any", value "any" ) → json</code> <code>jsonb_object_agg_strict ( key "any", value "any" ) → jsonb</code> Collects all the key/value pairs into a JSON object. Key arguments are coerced to text; value arguments are converted as per <code>to_json</code> or <code>to_jsonb</code> . The <i>key</i> can not be null. If the <i>value</i> is null then the entry is skipped,	No
<code>json_object_agg_unique ( key "any", value "any" ) → json</code> <code>jsonb_object_agg_unique ( key "any", value "any" ) → jsonb</code> Collects all the key/value pairs into a JSON object. Key arguments are coerced to text; value arguments are converted as per <code>to_json</code> or <code>to_jsonb</code> . Values can be null, but keys cannot. If there is a duplicate key an error is thrown.	No
<code>json_arrayagg ( [ value_expression ] [ ORDER BY sort_expression ] [ { NULL   ABSENT } ON NULL ] [ RETURNING data_type [ FORMAT JSON [ ENCODING UTF8 ] ] ] )</code> Behaves in the same way as <code>json_array</code> but as an aggregate function so it only takes one <i>value_expression</i> parameter. If <code>ABSENT ON NULL</code> is specified, any NULL values are omitted. If <code>ORDER BY</code> is specified, the elements will appear in the array in that order rather than in the input order. <code>SELECT json_arrayagg(v) FROM (VALUES(2),(1)) t(v) → [ 2, 1 ]</code>	No

Function Description	Partial Mode
<code>json_object_agg_unique_strict ( key "any", value "any" ) → json</code> <code>jsonb_object_agg_unique_strict ( key "any", value "any" ) → jsonb</code> Collects all the key/value pairs into a JSON object. Key arguments are coerced to text; value arguments are converted as per <code>to_json</code> or <code>to_jsonb</code> . The <i>key</i> can not be null. If the <i>value</i> is null then the entry is skipped. If there is a duplicate key an error is thrown.	No
<code>max ( see text ) → same as input type</code> Computes the maximum of the non-null input values. Available for any numeric, string, date/time, or enum type, as well as <code>inet</code> , <code>interval</code> , <code>money</code> , <code>oid</code> , <code>pg_lsn</code> , <code>tid</code> , <code>xid8</code> , and arrays of any of these types.	Yes
<code>min ( see text ) → same as input type</code> Computes the minimum of the non-null input values. Available for any numeric, string, date/time, or enum type, as well as <code>inet</code> , <code>interval</code> , <code>money</code> , <code>oid</code> , <code>pg_lsn</code> , <code>tid</code> , <code>xid8</code> , and arrays of any of these types.	Yes
<code>range_agg ( value anyrange ) → anymultirange</code> <code>range_agg ( value anymultirange ) → anymultirange</code> Computes the union of the non-null input values.	No
<code>range_intersect_agg ( value anyrange ) → anyrange</code> <code>range_intersect_agg ( value anymultirange ) → anymultirange</code> Computes the intersection of the non-null input values.	No
<code>json_agg_strict ( anyelement ) → json</code> <code>jsonb_agg_strict ( anyelement ) → jsonb</code> Collects all the input values, skipping nulls, into a JSON array. Values are converted to JSON as per <code>to_json</code> or <code>to_jsonb</code> .	No
<code>string_agg ( value text, delimiter text ) → text</code> <code>string_agg ( value bytea, delimiter bytea ) → bytea</code> Concatenates the non-null input values into a string. Each value after the first is preceded by the corresponding <i>delimiter</i> (if it's not null).	Yes
<code>sum ( smallint ) → bigint</code> <code>sum ( integer ) → bigint</code> <code>sum ( bigint ) → numeric</code> <code>sum ( numeric ) → numeric</code> <code>sum ( real ) → real</code> <code>sum ( double precision ) → double precision</code> <code>sum ( interval ) → interval</code> <code>sum ( money ) → money</code> Computes the sum of the non-null input values.	Yes
<code>xmlagg ( xml ) → xml</code> Concatenates the non-null XML input values (see Section 9.15.1.7).	No

It should be noted that except for `count`, these functions return a null value when no rows are selected. In particular, `sum` of no rows returns null, not zero as one might expect, and `array_agg` returns null rather than an empty array when there are no input rows. The `coalesce` function can be used to substitute zero or an empty array for null when necessary.

The aggregate functions `array_agg`, `json_agg`, `jsonb_agg`, `json_agg_strict`, `jsonb_agg_strict`, `json_object_agg`, `jsonb_object_agg`, `json_object_agg_strict`, `jsonb_object_agg_strict`, `json_object_agg_unique`, `jsonb_object_agg_unique`, `json_object_agg_unique_strict`, `jsonb_object_agg_unique_strict`, `string_agg`, and `xmlagg`, as well as similar user-defined aggregate functions, produce meaningfully different result values depending on the order of the input values. This ordering is unspecified by default, but can be controlled by writing an `ORDER BY` clause within the aggregate call, as shown in Section 4.2.7. Alternatively, supplying the input values from a sorted subquery will usually work. For example:

```
SELECT xmlagg(x) FROM (SELECT x FROM test ORDER BY y DESC) AS tab;
```

Beware that this approach can fail if the outer query level contains additional processing, such as a join, because that might cause the subquery's output to be reordered before the aggregate is computed.

### Note

The boolean aggregates `bool_and` and `bool_or` correspond to the standard SQL aggregates `every` and `any` or `some`. PostgreSQL supports `every`, but not `any` or `some`, because there is an ambiguity built into the standard syntax:

```
SELECT b1 = ANY((SELECT b2 FROM t2 ...)) FROM t1 ...;
```

Here `ANY` can be considered either as introducing a subquery, or as being an aggregate function, if the subquery returns one row with a Boolean value. Thus the standard name cannot be given to these aggregates.

### Note

Users accustomed to working with other SQL database management systems might be disappointed by the performance of the `count` aggregate when it is applied to the entire table. A query like:

```
SELECT count(*) FROM sometable;
```

will require effort proportional to the size of the table: PostgreSQL will need to scan either the entire table or the entirety of an index that includes all rows in the table.

Table 9.60 shows aggregate functions typically used in statistical analysis. (These are separated out merely to avoid cluttering the listing of more-commonly-used aggregates.) Functions shown as accepting *numeric\_type* are available for all the types `smallint`, `integer`, `bigint`, `numeric`, `real`, and `double precision`. Where the description mentions *N*, it means the number of input rows for which all the input expressions are non-null. In all cases, null is returned if the computation is meaningless, for example when *N* is zero.

**Table 9.60. Aggregate Functions for Statistics**

Function Description	Partial Mode
<code>corr(Y double precision, X double precision) → double precision</code> Computes the correlation coefficient.	Yes

Function Description	Partial Mode
<code>covar_pop(Y double precision, X double precision) → double precision</code> Computes the population covariance.	Yes
<code>covar_samp(Y double precision, X double precision) → double precision</code> Computes the sample covariance.	Yes
<code>regr_avgx(Y double precision, X double precision) → double precision</code> Computes the average of the independent variable, $\text{sum}(X) / N$ .	Yes
<code>regr_avgy(Y double precision, X double precision) → double precision</code> Computes the average of the dependent variable, $\text{sum}(Y) / N$ .	Yes
<code>regr_count(Y double precision, X double precision) → bigint</code> Computes the number of rows in which both inputs are non-null.	Yes
<code>regr_intercept(Y double precision, X double precision) → double precision</code> Computes the y-intercept of the least-squares-fit linear equation determined by the (X, Y) pairs.	Yes
<code>regr_r2(Y double precision, X double precision) → double precision</code> Computes the square of the correlation coefficient.	Yes
<code>regr_slope(Y double precision, X double precision) → double precision</code> Computes the slope of the least-squares-fit linear equation determined by the (X, Y) pairs.	Yes
<code>regr_sxx(Y double precision, X double precision) → double precision</code> Computes the “sum of squares” of the independent variable, $\text{sum}(X^2) - \text{sum}(X)^2 / N$ .	Yes
<code>regr_sxy(Y double precision, X double precision) → double precision</code> Computes the “sum of products” of independent times dependent variables, $\text{sum}(X*Y) - \text{sum}(X) * \text{sum}(Y) / N$ .	Yes
<code>regr_syy(Y double precision, X double precision) → double precision</code> Computes the “sum of squares” of the dependent variable, $\text{sum}(Y^2) - \text{sum}(Y)^2 / N$ .	Yes
<code>stddev(numeric_type) → double precision for real or double precision, otherwise numeric</code> This is a historical alias for <code>stddev_samp</code> .	Yes
<code>stddev_pop(numeric_type) → double precision for real or double precision, otherwise numeric</code> Computes the population standard deviation of the input values.	Yes
<code>stddev_samp(numeric_type) → double precision for real or double precision, otherwise numeric</code>	Yes

Function Description	Partial Mode
Computes the sample standard deviation of the input values.	
<code>variance ( numeric_type ) → double precision</code> for real or double precision, otherwise numeric This is a historical alias for <code>var_samp</code> .	Yes
<code>var_pop ( numeric_type ) → double precision</code> for real or double precision, otherwise numeric Computes the population variance of the input values (square of the population standard deviation).	Yes
<code>var_samp ( numeric_type ) → double precision</code> for real or double precision, otherwise numeric Computes the sample variance of the input values (square of the sample standard deviation).	Yes

Table 9.61 shows some aggregate functions that use the *ordered-set aggregate* syntax. These functions are sometimes referred to as “inverse distribution” functions. Their aggregated input is introduced by `ORDER BY`, and they may also take a *direct argument* that is not aggregated, but is computed only once. All these functions ignore null values in their aggregated input. For those that take a *fraction* parameter, the fraction value must be between 0 and 1; an error is thrown if not. However, a null *fraction* value simply produces a null result.

**Table 9.61. Ordered-Set Aggregate Functions**

Function Description	Partial Mode
<code>mode () WITHIN GROUP ( ORDER BY anyelement ) → anyelement</code> Computes the <i>mode</i> , the most frequent value of the aggregated argument (arbitrarily choosing the first one if there are multiple equally-frequent values). The aggregated argument must be of a sortable type.	No
<code>percentile_cont ( fraction double precision ) WITHIN GROUP ( ORDER BY double precision ) → double precision</code> <code>percentile_cont ( fraction double precision ) WITHIN GROUP ( ORDER BY interval ) → interval</code> Computes the <i>continuous percentile</i> , a value corresponding to the specified <i>fraction</i> within the ordered set of aggregated argument values. This will interpolate between adjacent input items if needed.	No
<code>percentile_cont ( fractions double precision[] ) WITHIN GROUP ( ORDER BY double precision ) → double precision[]</code> <code>percentile_cont ( fractions double precision[] ) WITHIN GROUP ( ORDER BY interval ) → interval[]</code> Computes multiple continuous percentiles. The result is an array of the same dimensions as the <i>fractions</i> parameter, with each non-null element replaced by the (possibly interpolated) value corresponding to that percentile.	No
<code>percentile_disc ( fraction double precision ) WITHIN GROUP ( ORDER BY anyelement ) → anyelement</code> Computes the <i>discrete percentile</i> , the first value within the ordered set of aggregated argument values whose position in the ordering equals or exceeds the specified <i>fraction</i> . The aggregated argument must be of a sortable type.	No
<code>percentile_disc ( fractions double precision[] ) WITHIN GROUP ( ORDER BY anyelement ) → anyarray</code>	No

Function Description	Partial Mode
Computes multiple discrete percentiles. The result is an array of the same dimensions as the <i>fractions</i> parameter, with each non-null element replaced by the input value corresponding to that percentile. The aggregated argument must be of a sortable type.	

Each of the “hypothetical-set” aggregates listed in Table 9.62 is associated with a window function of the same name defined in Section 9.22. In each case, the aggregate's result is the value that the associated window function would have returned for the “hypothetical” row constructed from *args*, if such a row had been added to the sorted group of rows represented by the *sorted\_args*. For each of these functions, the list of direct arguments given in *args* must match the number and types of the aggregated arguments given in *sorted\_args*. Unlike most built-in aggregates, these aggregates are not strict, that is they do not drop input rows containing nulls. Null values sort according to the rule specified in the ORDER BY clause.

**Table 9.62. Hypothetical-Set Aggregate Functions**

Function Description	Partial Mode
<code>rank ( args ) WITHIN GROUP ( ORDER BY sorted_args ) → bigint</code> Computes the rank of the hypothetical row, with gaps; that is, the row number of the first row in its peer group.	No
<code>dense_rank ( args ) WITHIN GROUP ( ORDER BY sorted_args ) → bigint</code> Computes the rank of the hypothetical row, without gaps; this function effectively counts peer groups.	No
<code>percent_rank ( args ) WITHIN GROUP ( ORDER BY sorted_args ) → double precision</code> Computes the relative rank of the hypothetical row, that is $(\text{rank} - 1) / (\text{total rows} - 1)$ . The value thus ranges from 0 to 1 inclusive.	No
<code>cume_dist ( args ) WITHIN GROUP ( ORDER BY sorted_args ) → double precision</code> Computes the cumulative distribution, that is $(\text{number of rows preceding or peers with hypothetical row}) / (\text{total rows})$ . The value thus ranges from $1/N$ to 1.	No

**Table 9.63. Grouping Operations**

Function Description
<code>GROUPING ( group_by_expression(s) ) → integer</code> Returns a bit mask indicating which GROUP BY expressions are not included in the current grouping set. Bits are assigned with the rightmost argument corresponding to the least-significant bit; each bit is 0 if the corresponding expression is included in the grouping criteria of the grouping set generating the current result row, and 1 if it is not included.

The grouping operations shown in Table 9.63 are used in conjunction with grouping sets (see Section 7.2.4) to distinguish result rows. The arguments to the GROUPING function are not actually evaluated, but they must exactly match expressions given in the GROUP BY clause of the associated query level. For example:

```
=> SELECT * FROM items_sold;
```

make	model	sales
Foo	GT	10
Foo	Tour	20
Bar	City	15
Bar	Sport	5

(4 rows)

```
=> SELECT make, model, GROUPING(make,model), sum(sales) FROM
      items_sold GROUP BY ROLLUP(make,model);
```

make	model	grouping	sum
Foo	GT	0	10
Foo	Tour	0	20
Bar	City	0	15
Bar	Sport	0	5
Foo		1	30
Bar		1	20
		3	50

(7 rows)

Here, the grouping value 0 in the first four rows shows that those have been grouped normally, over both the grouping columns. The value 1 indicates that model was not grouped by in the next-to-last two rows, and the value 3 indicates that neither make nor model was grouped by in the last row (which therefore is an aggregate over all the input rows).

## 9.22. Window Functions

*Window functions* provide the ability to perform calculations across sets of rows that are related to the current query row. See Section 3.5 for an introduction to this feature, and Section 4.2.8 for syntax details.

The built-in window functions are listed in Table 9.64. Note that these functions *must* be invoked using window function syntax, i.e., an OVER clause is required.

In addition to these functions, any built-in or user-defined ordinary aggregate (i.e., not ordered-set or hypothetical-set aggregates) can be used as a window function; see Section 9.21 for a list of the built-in aggregates. Aggregate functions act as window functions only when an OVER clause follows the call; otherwise they act as plain aggregates and return a single row for the entire set.

**Table 9.64. General-Purpose Window Functions**

Function	Description
<code>row_number () → bigint</code>	Returns the number of the current row within its partition, counting from 1.
<code>rank () → bigint</code>	Returns the rank of the current row, with gaps; that is, the <code>row_number</code> of the first row in its peer group.
<code>dense_rank () → bigint</code>	Returns the rank of the current row, without gaps; this function effectively counts peer groups.
<code>percent_rank () → double precision</code>	Returns the relative rank of the current row, that is $(rank - 1) / (total\ partition\ rows - 1)$ . The value thus ranges from 0 to 1 inclusive.

Function	Description
<code>cume_dist()</code>	<code>→ double precision</code> Returns the cumulative distribution, that is (number of partition rows preceding or peers with current row) / (total partition rows). The value thus ranges from 1/N to 1.
<code>ntile(num_buckets integer)</code>	<code>→ integer</code> Returns an integer ranging from 1 to the argument value, dividing the partition as equally as possible.
<code>lag(value anycompatible [, offset integer [, default anycompatible]])</code>	<code>→ anycompatible</code> Returns <i>value</i> evaluated at the row that is <i>offset</i> rows before the current row within the partition; if there is no such row, instead returns <i>default</i> (which must be of a type compatible with <i>value</i> ). Both <i>offset</i> and <i>default</i> are evaluated with respect to the current row. If omitted, <i>offset</i> defaults to 1 and <i>default</i> to NULL.
<code>lead(value anycompatible [, offset integer [, default anycompatible]])</code>	<code>→ anycompatible</code> Returns <i>value</i> evaluated at the row that is <i>offset</i> rows after the current row within the partition; if there is no such row, instead returns <i>default</i> (which must be of a type compatible with <i>value</i> ). Both <i>offset</i> and <i>default</i> are evaluated with respect to the current row. If omitted, <i>offset</i> defaults to 1 and <i>default</i> to NULL.
<code>first_value(value anyelement)</code>	<code>→ anyelement</code> Returns <i>value</i> evaluated at the row that is the first row of the window frame.
<code>last_value(value anyelement)</code>	<code>→ anyelement</code> Returns <i>value</i> evaluated at the row that is the last row of the window frame.
<code>nth_value(value anyelement, n integer)</code>	<code>→ anyelement</code> Returns <i>value</i> evaluated at the row that is the <i>n</i> 'th row of the window frame (counting from 1); returns NULL if there is no such row.

All of the functions listed in Table 9.64 depend on the sort ordering specified by the `ORDER BY` clause of the associated window definition. Rows that are not distinct when considering only the `ORDER BY` columns are said to be *peers*. The four ranking functions (including `cume_dist`) are defined so that they give the same answer for all rows of a peer group.

Note that `first_value`, `last_value`, and `nth_value` consider only the rows within the “window frame”, which by default contains the rows from the start of the partition through the last peer of the current row. This is likely to give unhelpful results for `last_value` and sometimes also `nth_value`. You can redefine the frame by adding a suitable frame specification (`RANGE`, `ROWS` or `GROUPS`) to the `OVER` clause. See Section 4.2.8 for more information about frame specifications.

When an aggregate function is used as a window function, it aggregates over the rows within the current row's window frame. An aggregate used with `ORDER BY` and the default window frame definition produces a “running sum” type of behavior, which may or may not be what's wanted. To obtain aggregation over the whole partition, omit `ORDER BY` or use `ROWS BETWEEN UNBOUNDED PRECEDING AND UNBOUNDED FOLLOWING`. Other frame specifications can be used to obtain other effects.

### Note

The SQL standard defines a `RESPECT NULLS` or `IGNORE NULLS` option for `lead`, `lag`, `first_value`, `last_value`, and `nth_value`. This is not implemented in PostgreSQL: the behavior is always the same as the standard's default, namely `RESPECT NULLS`. Likewise, the standard's `FROM FIRST` or `FROM LAST` option for `nth_value` is not implemented:



only the default `FROM FIRST` behavior is supported. (You can achieve the result of `FROM LAST` by reversing the `ORDER BY` ordering.)

## 9.23. Subquery Expressions

This section describes the SQL-compliant subquery expressions available in PostgreSQL. All of the expression forms documented in this section return Boolean (true/false) results.

### 9.23.1. EXISTS

`EXISTS (subquery)`

The argument of `EXISTS` is an arbitrary `SELECT` statement, or *subquery*. The subquery is evaluated to determine whether it returns any rows. If it returns at least one row, the result of `EXISTS` is “true”; if the subquery returns no rows, the result of `EXISTS` is “false”.

The subquery can refer to variables from the surrounding query, which will act as constants during any one evaluation of the subquery.

The subquery will generally only be executed long enough to determine whether at least one row is returned, not all the way to completion. It is unwise to write a subquery that has side effects (such as calling sequence functions); whether the side effects occur might be unpredictable.

Since the result depends only on whether any rows are returned, and not on the contents of those rows, the output list of the subquery is normally unimportant. A common coding convention is to write all `EXISTS` tests in the form `EXISTS (SELECT 1 WHERE ...)`. There are exceptions to this rule however, such as subqueries that use `INTERSECT`.

This simple example is like an inner join on `col2`, but it produces at most one output row for each `tab1` row, even if there are several matching `tab2` rows:

```
SELECT col1
FROM tab1
WHERE EXISTS (SELECT 1 FROM tab2 WHERE col2 = tab1.col2);
```

### 9.23.2. IN

*expression* `IN (subquery)`

The right-hand side is a parenthesized subquery, which must return exactly one column. The left-hand expression is evaluated and compared to each row of the subquery result. The result of `IN` is “true” if any equal subquery row is found. The result is “false” if no equal row is found (including the case where the subquery returns no rows).

Note that if the left-hand expression yields null, or if there are no equal right-hand values and at least one right-hand row yields null, the result of the `IN` construct will be null, not false. This is in accordance with SQL’s normal rules for Boolean combinations of null values.

As with `EXISTS`, it’s unwise to assume that the subquery will be evaluated completely.

*row\_constructor* `IN (subquery)`

The left-hand side of this form of `IN` is a row constructor, as described in Section 4.2.13. The right-hand side is a parenthesized subquery, which must return exactly as many columns as there are ex-

pressions in the left-hand row. The left-hand expressions are evaluated and compared row-wise to each row of the subquery result. The result of `IN` is “true” if any equal subquery row is found. The result is “false” if no equal row is found (including the case where the subquery returns no rows).

As usual, null values in the rows are combined per the normal rules of SQL Boolean expressions. Two rows are considered equal if all their corresponding members are non-null and equal; the rows are unequal if any corresponding members are non-null and unequal; otherwise the result of that row comparison is unknown (null). If all the per-row results are either unequal or null, with at least one null, then the result of `IN` is null.

### 9.23.3. NOT IN

*expression* NOT IN (*subquery*)

The right-hand side is a parenthesized subquery, which must return exactly one column. The left-hand expression is evaluated and compared to each row of the subquery result. The result of `NOT IN` is “true” if only unequal subquery rows are found (including the case where the subquery returns no rows). The result is “false” if any equal row is found.

Note that if the left-hand expression yields null, or if there are no equal right-hand values and at least one right-hand row yields null, the result of the `NOT IN` construct will be null, not true. This is in accordance with SQL’s normal rules for Boolean combinations of null values.

As with `EXISTS`, it’s unwise to assume that the subquery will be evaluated completely.

*row\_constructor* NOT IN (*subquery*)

The left-hand side of this form of `NOT IN` is a row constructor, as described in Section 4.2.13. The right-hand side is a parenthesized subquery, which must return exactly as many columns as there are expressions in the left-hand row. The left-hand expressions are evaluated and compared row-wise to each row of the subquery result. The result of `NOT IN` is “true” if only unequal subquery rows are found (including the case where the subquery returns no rows). The result is “false” if any equal row is found.

As usual, null values in the rows are combined per the normal rules of SQL Boolean expressions. Two rows are considered equal if all their corresponding members are non-null and equal; the rows are unequal if any corresponding members are non-null and unequal; otherwise the result of that row comparison is unknown (null). If all the per-row results are either unequal or null, with at least one null, then the result of `NOT IN` is null.

### 9.23.4. ANY/SOME

*expression operator* ANY (*subquery*)  
*expression operator* SOME (*subquery*)

The right-hand side is a parenthesized subquery, which must return exactly one column. The left-hand expression is evaluated and compared to each row of the subquery result using the given *operator*, which must yield a Boolean result. The result of `ANY` is “true” if any true result is obtained. The result is “false” if no true result is found (including the case where the subquery returns no rows).

`SOME` is a synonym for `ANY`. `IN` is equivalent to `= ANY`.

Note that if there are no successes and at least one right-hand row yields null for the operator’s result, the result of the `ANY` construct will be null, not false. This is in accordance with SQL’s normal rules for Boolean combinations of null values.

As with `EXISTS`, it’s unwise to assume that the subquery will be evaluated completely.

```
row_constructor operator ANY (subquery)
row_constructor operator SOME (subquery)
```

The left-hand side of this form of `ANY` is a row constructor, as described in Section 4.2.13. The right-hand side is a parenthesized subquery, which must return exactly as many columns as there are expressions in the left-hand row. The left-hand expressions are evaluated and compared row-wise to each row of the subquery result, using the given *operator*. The result of `ANY` is “true” if the comparison returns true for any subquery row. The result is “false” if the comparison returns false for every subquery row (including the case where the subquery returns no rows). The result is `NULL` if no comparison with a subquery row returns true, and at least one comparison returns `NULL`.

See Section 9.24.5 for details about the meaning of a row constructor comparison.

## 9.23.5. ALL

```
expression operator ALL (subquery)
```

The right-hand side is a parenthesized subquery, which must return exactly one column. The left-hand expression is evaluated and compared to each row of the subquery result using the given *operator*, which must yield a Boolean result. The result of `ALL` is “true” if all rows yield true (including the case where the subquery returns no rows). The result is “false” if any false result is found. The result is `NULL` if no comparison with a subquery row returns false, and at least one comparison returns `NULL`.

`NOT IN` is equivalent to `<> ALL`.

As with `EXISTS`, it's unwise to assume that the subquery will be evaluated completely.

```
row_constructor operator ALL (subquery)
```

The left-hand side of this form of `ALL` is a row constructor, as described in Section 4.2.13. The right-hand side is a parenthesized subquery, which must return exactly as many columns as there are expressions in the left-hand row. The left-hand expressions are evaluated and compared row-wise to each row of the subquery result, using the given *operator*. The result of `ALL` is “true” if the comparison returns true for all subquery rows (including the case where the subquery returns no rows). The result is “false” if the comparison returns false for any subquery row. The result is `NULL` if no comparison with a subquery row returns false, and at least one comparison returns `NULL`.

See Section 9.24.5 for details about the meaning of a row constructor comparison.

## 9.23.6. Single-Row Comparison

```
row_constructor operator (subquery)
```

The left-hand side is a row constructor, as described in Section 4.2.13. The right-hand side is a parenthesized subquery, which must return exactly as many columns as there are expressions in the left-hand row. Furthermore, the subquery cannot return more than one row. (If it returns zero rows, the result is taken to be null.) The left-hand side is evaluated and compared row-wise to the single subquery result row.

See Section 9.24.5 for details about the meaning of a row constructor comparison.

## 9.24. Row and Array Comparisons

This section describes several specialized constructs for making multiple comparisons between groups of values. These forms are syntactically related to the subquery forms of the previous section, but

do not involve subqueries. The forms involving array subexpressions are PostgreSQL extensions; the rest are SQL-compliant. All of the expression forms documented in this section return Boolean (true/false) results.

## 9.24.1. IN

```
expression IN (value [, ...])
```

The right-hand side is a parenthesized list of expressions. The result is “true” if the left-hand expression's result is equal to any of the right-hand expressions. This is a shorthand notation for

```
expression = value1  
OR  
expression = value2  
OR  
...
```

Note that if the left-hand expression yields null, or if there are no equal right-hand values and at least one right-hand expression yields null, the result of the IN construct will be null, not false. This is in accordance with SQL's normal rules for Boolean combinations of null values.

## 9.24.2. NOT IN

```
expression NOT IN (value [, ...])
```

The right-hand side is a parenthesized list of expressions. The result is “true” if the left-hand expression's result is unequal to all of the right-hand expressions. This is a shorthand notation for

```
expression <> value1  
AND  
expression <> value2  
AND  
...
```

Note that if the left-hand expression yields null, or if there are no equal right-hand values and at least one right-hand expression yields null, the result of the NOT IN construct will be null, not true as one might naively expect. This is in accordance with SQL's normal rules for Boolean combinations of null values.

### Tip

`x NOT IN y` is equivalent to `NOT (x IN y)` in all cases. However, null values are much more likely to trip up the novice when working with NOT IN than when working with IN. It is best to express your condition positively if possible.

## 9.24.3. ANY/SOME (array)

```
expression operator ANY (array expression)  
expression operator SOME (array expression)
```

The right-hand side is a parenthesized expression, which must yield an array value. The left-hand expression is evaluated and compared to each element of the array using the given *operator*, which

must yield a Boolean result. The result of ANY is “true” if any true result is obtained. The result is “false” if no true result is found (including the case where the array has zero elements).

If the array expression yields a null array, the result of ANY will be null. If the left-hand expression yields null, the result of ANY is ordinarily null (though a non-strict comparison operator could possibly yield a different result). Also, if the right-hand array contains any null elements and no true comparison result is obtained, the result of ANY will be null, not false (again, assuming a strict comparison operator). This is in accordance with SQL's normal rules for Boolean combinations of null values.

SOME is a synonym for ANY.

## 9.24.4. ALL (array)

*expression operator ALL (array expression)*

The right-hand side is a parenthesized expression, which must yield an array value. The left-hand expression is evaluated and compared to each element of the array using the given *operator*, which must yield a Boolean result. The result of ALL is “true” if all comparisons yield true (including the case where the array has zero elements). The result is “false” if any false result is found.

If the array expression yields a null array, the result of ALL will be null. If the left-hand expression yields null, the result of ALL is ordinarily null (though a non-strict comparison operator could possibly yield a different result). Also, if the right-hand array contains any null elements and no false comparison result is obtained, the result of ALL will be null, not true (again, assuming a strict comparison operator). This is in accordance with SQL's normal rules for Boolean combinations of null values.

## 9.24.5. Row Constructor Comparison

*row\_constructor operator row\_constructor*

Each side is a row constructor, as described in Section 4.2.13. The two row constructors must have the same number of fields. The given *operator* is applied to each pair of corresponding fields. (Since the fields could be of different types, this means that a different specific operator could be selected for each pair.) All the selected operators must be members of some B-tree operator class, or be the negator of an = member of a B-tree operator class, meaning that row constructor comparison is only possible when the *operator* is =, <>, <, <=, >, or >=, or has semantics similar to one of these.

The = and <> cases work slightly differently from the others. Two rows are considered equal if all their corresponding members are non-null and equal; the rows are unequal if any corresponding members are non-null and unequal; otherwise the result of the row comparison is unknown (null).

For the <, <=, > and >= cases, the row elements are compared left-to-right, stopping as soon as an unequal or null pair of elements is found. If either of this pair of elements is null, the result of the row comparison is unknown (null); otherwise comparison of this pair of elements determines the result. For example, ROW(1, 2, NULL) < ROW(1, 3, 0) yields true, not null, because the third pair of elements are not considered.

*row\_constructor IS DISTINCT FROM row\_constructor*

This construct is similar to a <> row comparison, but it does not yield null for null inputs. Instead, any null value is considered unequal to (distinct from) any non-null value, and any two nulls are considered equal (not distinct). Thus the result will either be true or false, never null.

*row\_constructor IS NOT DISTINCT FROM row\_constructor*

This construct is similar to a = row comparison, but it does not yield null for null inputs. Instead, any null value is considered unequal to (distinct from) any non-null value, and any two nulls are considered equal (not distinct). Thus the result will always be either true or false, never null.

## 9.24.6. Composite Type Comparison

*record operator record*

The SQL specification requires row-wise comparison to return NULL if the result depends on comparing two NULL values or a NULL and a non-NULL. PostgreSQL does this only when comparing the results of two row constructors (as in Section 9.24.5) or comparing a row constructor to the output of a subquery (as in Section 9.23). In other contexts where two composite-type values are compared, two NULL field values are considered equal, and a NULL is considered larger than a non-NULL. This is necessary in order to have consistent sorting and indexing behavior for composite types.

Each side is evaluated and they are compared row-wise. Composite type comparisons are allowed when the *operator* is =, <>, <, <=, > or >=, or has semantics similar to one of these. (To be specific, an operator can be a row comparison operator if it is a member of a B-tree operator class, or is the negator of the = member of a B-tree operator class.) The default behavior of the above operators is the same as for IS [ NOT ] DISTINCT FROM for row constructors (see Section 9.24.5).

To support matching of rows which include elements without a default B-tree operator class, the following operators are defined for composite type comparison: \*=, \*<>, \*<, \*<=, \*>, and \*>=. These operators compare the internal binary representation of the two rows. Two rows might have a different binary representation even though comparisons of the two rows with the equality operator is true. The ordering of rows under these comparison operators is deterministic but not otherwise meaningful. These operators are used internally for materialized views and might be useful for other specialized purposes such as replication and B-Tree deduplication (see Section 67.4.3). They are not intended to be generally useful for writing queries, though.

## 9.25. Set Returning Functions

This section describes functions that possibly return more than one row. The most widely used functions in this class are series generating functions, as detailed in Table 9.65 and Table 9.66. Other, more specialized set-returning functions are described elsewhere in this manual. See Section 7.2.1.4 for ways to combine multiple set-returning functions.

**Table 9.65. Series Generating Functions**

Function	Description
<code>generate_series ( start integer, stop integer [, step integer ] )</code>	<code>→ setof integer</code>
<code>generate_series ( start bigint, stop bigint [, step bigint ] )</code>	<code>→ setof bigint</code>
<code>generate_series ( start numeric, stop numeric [, step numeric ] )</code>	<code>→ setof numeric</code> Generates a series of values from <i>start</i> to <i>stop</i> , with a step size of <i>step</i> . <i>step</i> defaults to 1.
<code>generate_series ( start timestamp, stop timestamp, step interval )</code>	<code>→ setof timestamp</code>
<code>generate_series ( start timestamp with time zone, stop timestamp with time zone, step interval [, timezone text ] )</code>	<code>→ setof timestamp with time zone</code>

Function	Description
	Generates a series of values from <i>start</i> to <i>stop</i> , with a step size of <i>step</i> . In the time-zone-aware form, times of day and daylight-savings adjustments are computed according to the time zone named by the <i>timezone</i> argument, or the current TimeZone setting if that is omitted.

When *step* is positive, zero rows are returned if *start* is greater than *stop*. Conversely, when *step* is negative, zero rows are returned if *start* is less than *stop*. Zero rows are also returned if any input is NULL. It is an error for *step* to be zero. Some examples follow:

```
SELECT * FROM generate_series(2,4);
generate_series
```

```
-----
                2
                3
                4
```

(3 rows)

```
SELECT * FROM generate_series(5,1,-2);
generate_series
```

```
-----
                5
                3
                1
```

(3 rows)

```
SELECT * FROM generate_series(4,3);
generate_series
```

```
-----
(0 rows)
```

```
SELECT generate_series(1.1, 4, 1.3);
generate_series
```

```
-----
                1.1
                2.4
                3.7
```

(3 rows)

-- this example relies on the date-plus-integer operator:

```
SELECT current_date + s.a AS dates FROM generate_series(0,14,7) AS
s(a);
dates
```

```
-----
2004-02-05
2004-02-12
2004-02-19
```

(3 rows)

```
SELECT * FROM generate_series('2008-03-01 00:00'::timestamp,
                              '2008-03-04 12:00', '10 hours');
generate_series
```

```
-----
2008-03-01 00:00:00
2008-03-01 10:00:00
2008-03-01 20:00:00
```

```

2008-03-02 06:00:00
2008-03-02 16:00:00
2008-03-03 02:00:00
2008-03-03 12:00:00
2008-03-03 22:00:00
2008-03-04 08:00:00
(9 rows)

-- this example assumes that TimeZone is set to UTC; note the DST
transition:
SELECT * FROM generate_series('2001-10-22 00:00
-04:00'::timestampz,
                                '2001-11-01 00:00
-05:00'::timestampz,
                                '1 day'::interval, 'America/
New_York');
    generate_series
-----
2001-10-22 04:00:00+00
2001-10-23 04:00:00+00
2001-10-24 04:00:00+00
2001-10-25 04:00:00+00
2001-10-26 04:00:00+00
2001-10-27 04:00:00+00
2001-10-28 04:00:00+00
2001-10-29 05:00:00+00
2001-10-30 05:00:00+00
2001-10-31 05:00:00+00
2001-11-01 05:00:00+00
(11 rows)

```

**Table 9.66. Subscript Generating Functions**

Function	Description
<code>generate_subscripts ( array anyarray, dim integer ) → setof integer</code>	Generates a series comprising the valid subscripts of the <i>dim</i> 'th dimension of the given array.
<code>generate_subscripts ( array anyarray, dim integer, reverse boolean ) → setof integer</code>	Generates a series comprising the valid subscripts of the <i>dim</i> 'th dimension of the given array. When <i>reverse</i> is true, returns the series in reverse order.

`generate_subscripts` is a convenience function that generates the set of valid subscripts for the specified dimension of the given array. Zero rows are returned for arrays that do not have the requested dimension, or if any input is NULL. Some examples follow:

```

-- basic usage:
SELECT generate_subscripts(' {NULL,1,NULL,2}'::int[], 1) AS s;
 s
---
 1
 2
 3
 4
(4 rows)

```



```
-- presenting an array, the subscript and the subscripted
-- value requires a subquery:
SELECT * FROM arrays;
      a
-----
{-1,-2}
{100,200,300}
(2 rows)

SELECT a AS array, s AS subscript, a[s] AS value
FROM (SELECT generate_subscripts(a, 1) AS s, a FROM arrays) foo;
      array      | subscript | value
-----+-----+-----
{-1,-2}          |         1 |    -1
{-1,-2}          |         2 |    -2
{100,200,300}    |         1 |   100
{100,200,300}    |         2 |   200
{100,200,300}    |         3 |   300
(5 rows)

-- unnest a 2D array:
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION unnest2(anyarray)
RETURNS SETOF anyelement AS $$
select $1[i][j]
      from generate_subscripts($1,1) g1(i),
           generate_subscripts($1,2) g2(j);
$$ LANGUAGE sql IMMUTABLE;
CREATE FUNCTION
SELECT * FROM unnest2(ARRAY[[1,2],[3,4]]);
      unnest2
-----
          1
          2
          3
          4
(4 rows)
```

When a function in the FROM clause is suffixed by WITH ORDINALITY, a bigint column is appended to the function's output column(s), which starts from 1 and increments by 1 for each row of the function's output. This is most useful in the case of set returning functions such as `unnest()`.

```
-- set returning function WITH ORDINALITY:
SELECT * FROM pg_ls_dir('.') WITH ORDINALITY AS t(ls,n);
      ls      | n
-----+-----
pg_serial    |  1
pg_twophase  |  2
postmaster.opts |  3
pg_notify    |  4
postgresql.conf |  5
pg_tblspc    |  6
logfile      |  7
base         |  8
postmaster.pid |  9
pg_ident.conf | 10
global       | 11
```

```

pg_xact          | 12
pg_snapshots    | 13
pg_multixact     | 14
PG_VERSION      | 15
pg_wal          | 16
pg_hba.conf     | 17
pg_stat_tmp     | 18
pg_subtrans     | 19
(19 rows)

```

## 9.26. System Information Functions and Operators

The functions described in this section are used to obtain various information about a PostgreSQL installation.

### 9.26.1. Session Information Functions

Table 9.67 shows several functions that extract session and system information.

In addition to the functions listed in this section, there are a number of functions related to the statistics system that also provide system information. See Section 28.2.25 for more information.

**Table 9.67. Session Information Functions**

Function	Description
<code>current_catalog</code> → name <code>current_database()</code> → name	Returns the name of the current database. (Databases are called “catalogs” in the SQL standard, so <code>current_catalog</code> is the standard's spelling.)
<code>current_query()</code> → text	Returns the text of the currently executing query, as submitted by the client (which might contain more than one statement).
<code>current_role</code> → name	This is equivalent to <code>current_user</code> .
<code>current_schema</code> → name <code>current_schema()</code> → name	Returns the name of the schema that is first in the search path (or a null value if the search path is empty). This is the schema that will be used for any tables or other named objects that are created without specifying a target schema.
<code>current_schemas(include_implicit boolean)</code> → name[ ]	Returns an array of the names of all schemas presently in the effective search path, in their priority order. (Items in the <code>current_search_path</code> setting that do not correspond to existing, searchable schemas are omitted.) If the Boolean argument is <code>true</code> , then implicitly-searched system schemas such as <code>pg_catalog</code> are included in the result.
<code>current_user</code> → name	Returns the user name of the current execution context.
<code>inet_client_addr()</code> → inet	Returns the IP address of the current client, or <code>NULL</code> if the current connection is via a Unix-domain socket.

Function	Description
<code>inet_client_port () → integer</code>	Returns the IP port number of the current client, or NULL if the current connection is via a Unix-domain socket.
<code>inet_server_addr () → inet</code>	Returns the IP address on which the server accepted the current connection, or NULL if the current connection is via a Unix-domain socket.
<code>inet_server_port () → integer</code>	Returns the IP port number on which the server accepted the current connection, or NULL if the current connection is via a Unix-domain socket.
<code>pg_backend_pid () → integer</code>	Returns the process ID of the server process attached to the current session.
<code>pg_blocking_pids ( integer ) → integer[ ]</code>	<p>Returns an array of the process ID(s) of the sessions that are blocking the server process with the specified process ID from acquiring a lock, or an empty array if there is no such server process or it is not blocked.</p> <p>One server process blocks another if it either holds a lock that conflicts with the blocked process's lock request (hard block), or is waiting for a lock that would conflict with the blocked process's lock request and is ahead of it in the wait queue (soft block). When using parallel queries the result always lists client-visible process IDs (that is, <code>pg_backend_pid</code> results) even if the actual lock is held or awaited by a child worker process. As a result of that, there may be duplicated PIDs in the result. Also note that when a prepared transaction holds a conflicting lock, it will be represented by a zero process ID. Frequent calls to this function could have some impact on database performance, because it needs exclusive access to the lock manager's shared state for a short time.</p>
<code>pg_conf_load_time () → timestamp with time zone</code>	Returns the time when the server configuration files were last loaded. If the current session was alive at the time, this will be the time when the session itself re-read the configuration files (so the reading will vary a little in different sessions). Otherwise it is the time when the postmaster process re-read the configuration files.
<code>pg_current_logfile ( [ text ] ) → text</code>	Returns the path name of the log file currently in use by the logging collector. The path includes the <code>log_directory</code> directory and the individual log file name. The result is NULL if the logging collector is disabled. When multiple log files exist, each in a different format, <code>pg_current_logfile</code> without an argument returns the path of the file having the first format found in the ordered list: <code>stderr</code> , <code>csvlog</code> , <code>jsonlog</code> . NULL is returned if no log file has any of these formats. To request information about a specific log file format, supply either <code>csvlog</code> , <code>jsonlog</code> or <code>stderr</code> as the value of the optional parameter. The result is NULL if the log format requested is not configured in <code>log_destination</code> . The result reflects the contents of the <code>current_logfiles</code> file.
<code>pg_my_temp_schema () → oid</code>	Returns the OID of the current session's temporary schema, or zero if it has none (because it has not created any temporary tables).
<code>pg_is_other_temp_schema ( oid ) → boolean</code>	Returns true if the given OID is the OID of another session's temporary schema. (This can be useful, for example, to exclude other sessions' temporary tables from a catalog display.)
<code>pg_jit_available () → boolean</code>	

Function	Description
	Returns true if a JIT compiler extension is available (see Chapter 32) and the jit configuration parameter is set to on.
<code>pg_listening_channels () → setof text</code>	Returns the set of names of asynchronous notification channels that the current session is listening to.
<code>pg_notification_queue_usage () → double precision</code>	Returns the fraction (0–1) of the asynchronous notification queue's maximum size that is currently occupied by notifications that are waiting to be processed. See LISTEN and NOTIFY for more information.
<code>pg_postmaster_start_time () → timestamp with time zone</code>	Returns the time when the server started.
<code>pg_safe_snapshot_blocking_pids ( integer ) → integer[]</code>	Returns an array of the process ID(s) of the sessions that are blocking the server process with the specified process ID from acquiring a safe snapshot, or an empty array if there is no such server process or it is not blocked. A session running a <code>SERIALIZABLE</code> transaction blocks a <code>SERIALIZABLE READ ONLY DEFERRABLE</code> transaction from acquiring a snapshot until the latter determines that it is safe to avoid taking any predicate locks. See Section 13.2.3 for more information about serializable and deferrable transactions. Frequent calls to this function could have some impact on database performance, because it needs access to the predicate lock manager's shared state for a short time.
<code>pg_trigger_depth () → integer</code>	Returns the current nesting level of PostgreSQL triggers (0 if not called, directly or indirectly, from inside a trigger).
<code>session_user → name</code>	Returns the session user's name.
<code>system_user → text</code>	Returns the authentication method and the identity (if any) that the user presented during the authentication cycle before they were assigned a database role. It is represented as <code>auth_method:identity</code> or NULL if the user has not been authenticated (for example if Trust authentication has been used).
<code>user → name</code>	This is equivalent to <code>current_user</code> .
<code>version () → text</code>	Returns a string describing the PostgreSQL server's version. You can also get this information from <code>server_version</code> , or for a machine-readable version use <code>server_version_num</code> . Software developers should use <code>server_version_num</code> (available since 8.2) or <code>PQserverVersion</code> instead of parsing the text version.

### Note

`current_catalog`, `current_role`, `current_schema`, `current_user`, `session_user`, and `user` have special syntactic status in SQL: they must be called without trailing parentheses. In PostgreSQL, parentheses can optionally be used with `current_schema`, but not with the others.

The `session_user` is normally the user who initiated the current database connection; but superusers can change this setting with `SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION`. The `current_user` is the user identifier that is applicable for permission checking. Normally it is equal to the session user, but it can be changed with `SET ROLE`. It also changes during the execution of functions with the attribute `SECURITY DEFINER`. In Unix parlance, the session user is the “real user” and the current user is the “effective user”. `current_role` and `user` are synonyms for `current_user`. (The SQL standard draws a distinction between `current_role` and `current_user`, but PostgreSQL does not, since it unifies users and roles into a single kind of entity.)

## 9.26.2. Access Privilege Inquiry Functions

Table 9.68 lists functions that allow querying object access privileges programmatically. (See Section 5.7 for more information about privileges.) In these functions, the user whose privileges are being inquired about can be specified by name or by OID (`pg_authid.oid`), or if the name is given as `public` then the privileges of the `PUBLIC` pseudo-role are checked. Also, the `user` argument can be omitted entirely, in which case the `current_user` is assumed. The object that is being inquired about can be specified either by name or by OID, too. When specifying by name, a schema name can be included if relevant. The access privilege of interest is specified by a text string, which must evaluate to one of the appropriate privilege keywords for the object's type (e.g., `SELECT`). Optionally, `WITH GRANT OPTION` can be added to a privilege type to test whether the privilege is held with grant option. Also, multiple privilege types can be listed separated by commas, in which case the result will be true if any of the listed privileges is held. (Case of the privilege string is not significant, and extra whitespace is allowed between but not within privilege names.) Some examples:

```
SELECT has_table_privilege('myschema.mytable', 'select');
SELECT has_table_privilege('joe', 'mytable', 'INSERT, SELECT WITH
GRANT OPTION');
```

**Table 9.68. Access Privilege Inquiry Functions**

Function	Description
<code>has_any_column_privilege([user name or oid], table text or oid, privilege text) → boolean</code>	Does user have privilege for any column of table? This succeeds either if the privilege is held for the whole table, or if there is a column-level grant of the privilege for at least one column. Allowable privilege types are <code>SELECT</code> , <code>INSERT</code> , <code>UPDATE</code> , and <code>REFERENCES</code> .
<code>has_column_privilege([user name or oid], table text or oid, column text or smallint, privilege text) → boolean</code>	Does user have privilege for the specified table column? This succeeds either if the privilege is held for the whole table, or if there is a column-level grant of the privilege for the column. The column can be specified by name or by attribute number ( <code>pg_attribute.attnum</code> ). Allowable privilege types are <code>SELECT</code> , <code>INSERT</code> , <code>UPDATE</code> , and <code>REFERENCES</code> .
<code>has_database_privilege([user name or oid], database text or oid, privilege text) → boolean</code>	Does user have privilege for database? Allowable privilege types are <code>CREATE</code> , <code>CONNECT</code> , <code>TEMPORARY</code> , and <code>TEMP</code> (which is equivalent to <code>TEMPORARY</code> ).
<code>has_foreign_data_wrapper_privilege([user name or oid], fdw text or oid, privilege text) → boolean</code>	Does user have privilege for foreign-data wrapper? The only allowable privilege type is <code>USAGE</code> .

Function	Description
<code>has_function_privilege ( [ user name or oid, ] function text or oid, privilege text ) → boolean</code>	Does user have privilege for function? The only allowable privilege type is EXECUTE. When specifying a function by name rather than by OID, the allowed input is the same as for the regprocedure data type (see Section 8.19). An example is:  <pre>SELECT has_function_privilege('joeuser', 'myfunc(int, text)', 'execute');</pre>
<code>has_language_privilege ( [ user name or oid, ] language text or oid, privilege text ) → boolean</code>	Does user have privilege for language? The only allowable privilege type is USAGE.
<code>has_parameter_privilege ( [ user name or oid, ] parameter text, privilege text ) → boolean</code>	Does user have privilege for configuration parameter? The parameter name is case-insensitive. Allowable privilege types are SET and ALTER SYSTEM.
<code>has_schema_privilege ( [ user name or oid, ] schema text or oid, privilege text ) → boolean</code>	Does user have privilege for schema? Allowable privilege types are CREATE and USAGE.
<code>has_sequence_privilege ( [ user name or oid, ] sequence text or oid, privilege text ) → boolean</code>	Does user have privilege for sequence? Allowable privilege types are USAGE, SELECT, and UPDATE.
<code>has_server_privilege ( [ user name or oid, ] server text or oid, privilege text ) → boolean</code>	Does user have privilege for foreign server? The only allowable privilege type is USAGE.
<code>has_table_privilege ( [ user name or oid, ] table text or oid, privilege text ) → boolean</code>	Does user have privilege for table? Allowable privilege types are SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, TRUNCATE, REFERENCES, and TRIGGER.
<code>has_tablespace_privilege ( [ user name or oid, ] tablespace text or oid, privilege text ) → boolean</code>	Does user have privilege for tablespace? The only allowable privilege type is CREATE.
<code>has_type_privilege ( [ user name or oid, ] type text or oid, privilege text ) → boolean</code>	Does user have privilege for data type? The only allowable privilege type is USAGE. When specifying a type by name rather than by OID, the allowed input is the same as for the regtype data type (see Section 8.19).
<code>pg_has_role ( [ user name or oid, ] role text or oid, privilege text ) → boolean</code>	Does user have privilege for role? Allowable privilege types are MEMBER, USAGE, and SET. MEMBER denotes direct or indirect membership in the role without regard to what specific privileges may be conferred. USAGE denotes whether the privileges of the role are immediately available without doing SET ROLE, while SET denotes whether it is possible to change to the role using the SET ROLE command. This function does not allow the special case of setting <code>user</code> to <code>public</code> , because the PUBLIC pseudo-role can never be a member of real roles.

Function	Description
<code>row_security_active ( table text or oid ) → boolean</code>	Is row-level security active for the specified table in the context of the current user and current environment?

Table 9.69 shows the operators available for the `aclitem` type, which is the catalog representation of access privileges. See Section 5.7 for information about how to read access privilege values.

**Table 9.69. `aclitem` Operators**

Operator	Description
<code>aclitem = aclitem → boolean</code>	Are <code>aclitems</code> equal? (Notice that type <code>aclitem</code> lacks the usual set of comparison operators; it has only equality. In turn, <code>aclitem</code> arrays can only be compared for equality.) <code>'calvin=r*w/hobbes'::aclitem = 'calvin=r*w*/hobbes'::aclitem → f</code>
<code>aclitem[] @&gt; aclitem → boolean</code>	Does array contain the specified privileges? (This is true if there is an array entry that matches the <code>aclitem</code> 's grantee and grantor, and has at least the specified set of privileges.) <code>'{calvin=r*w/hobbes,hobbes=r*w*/postgres}'::aclitem[] @&gt; 'calvin=r*/hobbes'::aclitem → t</code>
<code>aclitem[] ~ aclitem → boolean</code>	This is a deprecated alias for <code>@&gt;</code> . <code>'{calvin=r*w/hobbes,hobbes=r*w*/postgres}'::aclitem[] ~ 'calvin=r*/hobbes'::aclitem → t</code>

Table 9.70 shows some additional functions to manage the `aclitem` type.

**Table 9.70. `aclitem` Functions**

Function	Description
<code>acldefault ( type "char", ownerId oid ) → aclitem[]</code>	Constructs an <code>aclitem</code> array holding the default access privileges for an object of type <code>type</code> belonging to the role with OID <code>ownerId</code> . This represents the access privileges that will be assumed when an object's ACL entry is null. (The default access privileges are described in Section 5.7.) The <code>type</code> parameter must be one of 'c' for COLUMN, 'r' for TABLE and table-like objects, 's' for SEQUENCE, 'd' for DATABASE, 'f' for FUNCTION or PROCEDURE, 'l' for LANGUAGE, 'L' for LARGE OBJECT, 'n' for SCHEMA, 'p' for PARAMETER, 't' for TABLESPACE, 'F' for FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER, 'S' for FOREIGN SERVER, or 'T' for TYPE or DOMAIN.
<code>aclexplode ( aclitem[] ) → setof record ( grantor oid, grantee oid, privilege_type text, is_grantable boolean )</code>	Returns the <code>aclitem</code> array as a set of rows. If the grantee is the pseudo-role PUBLIC, it is represented by zero in the <code>grantee</code> column. Each granted privilege is represented as SELECT, INSERT, etc (see Table 5.1 for a full list). Note that each privilege is broken out as a separate row, so only one keyword appears in the <code>privilege_type</code> column.

Function	Description
<code>makeaclitem ( <i>grantee oid</i>, <i>grantor oid</i>, <i>privileges text</i>, <i>is_grantable</i> boolean )</code>	<code>→ aclitem</code> Constructs an <code>aclitem</code> with the given properties. <i>privileges</i> is a comma-separated list of privilege names such as <code>SELECT</code> , <code>INSERT</code> , etc, all of which are set in the result. (Case of the privilege string is not significant, and extra whitespace is allowed between but not within privilege names.)

### 9.26.3. Schema Visibility Inquiry Functions

Table 9.71 shows functions that determine whether a certain object is *visible* in the current schema search path. For example, a table is said to be visible if its containing schema is in the search path and no table of the same name appears earlier in the search path. This is equivalent to the statement that the table can be referenced by name without explicit schema qualification. Thus, to list the names of all visible tables:

```
SELECT relname FROM pg_class WHERE pg_table_is_visible(oid);
```

For functions and operators, an object in the search path is said to be visible if there is no object of the same name *and argument data type(s)* earlier in the path. For operator classes and families, both the name and the associated index access method are considered.

**Table 9.71. Schema Visibility Inquiry Functions**

Function	Description
<code>pg_collation_is_visible ( <i>collation oid</i> )</code>	<code>→ boolean</code> Is collation visible in search path?
<code>pg_conversion_is_visible ( <i>conversion oid</i> )</code>	<code>→ boolean</code> Is conversion visible in search path?
<code>pg_function_is_visible ( <i>function oid</i> )</code>	<code>→ boolean</code> Is function visible in search path? (This also works for procedures and aggregates.)
<code>pg_opclass_is_visible ( <i>opclass oid</i> )</code>	<code>→ boolean</code> Is operator class visible in search path?
<code>pg_operator_is_visible ( <i>operator oid</i> )</code>	<code>→ boolean</code> Is operator visible in search path?
<code>pg_opfamily_is_visible ( <i>opclass oid</i> )</code>	<code>→ boolean</code> Is operator family visible in search path?
<code>pg_statistics_obj_is_visible ( <i>stat oid</i> )</code>	<code>→ boolean</code> Is statistics object visible in search path?
<code>pg_table_is_visible ( <i>table oid</i> )</code>	<code>→ boolean</code> Is table visible in search path? (This works for all types of relations, including views, materialized views, indexes, sequences and foreign tables.)
<code>pg_ts_config_is_visible ( <i>config oid</i> )</code>	<code>→ boolean</code> Is text search configuration visible in search path?
<code>pg_ts_dict_is_visible ( <i>dict oid</i> )</code>	<code>→ boolean</code> Is text search dictionary visible in search path?



Function	Description
<code>pg_ts_parser_is_visible ( <i>parser oid</i> ) → boolean</code>	Is text search parser visible in search path?
<code>pg_ts_template_is_visible ( <i>template oid</i> ) → boolean</code>	Is text search template visible in search path?
<code>pg_type_is_visible ( <i>type oid</i> ) → boolean</code>	Is type (or domain) visible in search path?

All these functions require object OIDs to identify the object to be checked. If you want to test an object by name, it is convenient to use the OID alias types (`regclass`, `regtype`, `regprocedure`, `regoperator`, `regconfig`, or `regdictionary`), for example:

```
SELECT pg_type_is_visible( 'myschema.widget'::regtype );
```

Note that it would not make much sense to test a non-schema-qualified type name in this way — if the name can be recognized at all, it must be visible.

## 9.26.4. System Catalog Information Functions

Table 9.72 lists functions that extract information from the system catalogs.

**Table 9.72. System Catalog Information Functions**

Function	Description
<code>format_type ( <i>type oid</i>, <i>typemod integer</i> ) → text</code>	Returns the SQL name for a data type that is identified by its type OID and possibly a type modifier. Pass NULL for the type modifier if no specific modifier is known.
<code>pg_char_to_encoding ( <i>encoding name</i> ) → integer</code>	Converts the supplied encoding name into an integer representing the internal identifier used in some system catalog tables. Returns -1 if an unknown encoding name is provided.
<code>pg_encoding_to_char ( <i>encoding integer</i> ) → name</code>	Converts the integer used as the internal identifier of an encoding in some system catalog tables into a human-readable string. Returns an empty string if an invalid encoding number is provided.
<code>pg_get_catalog_foreign_keys () → setof record ( <i>fktable regclass</i>, <i>fkcols text[]</i>, <i>phtable regclass</i>, <i>pkcols text[]</i>, <i>is_array boolean</i>, <i>is_opt boolean</i> )</code>	Returns a set of records describing the foreign key relationships that exist within the PostgreSQL system catalogs. The <i>fktable</i> column contains the name of the referencing catalog, and the <i>fkcols</i> column contains the name(s) of the referencing column(s). Similarly, the <i>phtable</i> column contains the name of the referenced catalog, and the <i>pkcols</i> column contains the name(s) of the referenced column(s). If <i>is_array</i> is true, the last referencing column is an array, each of whose elements should match some entry in the referenced catalog. If <i>is_opt</i> is true, the referencing column(s) are allowed to contain zeroes instead of a valid reference.
<code>pg_get_constraintdef ( <i>constraint oid</i> [, <i>pretty boolean</i> ] ) → text</code>	Reconstructs the creating command for a constraint. (This is a decompiled reconstruction, not the original text of the command.)

Function	Description
<code>pg_get_expr ( <i>expr</i> <i>pg_node_tree</i>, <i>relation</i> <i>oid</i> [, <i>pretty</i> <i>boolean</i> ] )</code> → text	Decompiles the internal form of an expression stored in the system catalogs, such as the default value for a column. If the expression might contain Vars, specify the OID of the relation they refer to as the second parameter; if no Vars are expected, passing zero is sufficient.
<code>pg_get_functiondef ( <i>func</i> <i>oid</i> )</code> → text	Reconstructs the creating command for a function or procedure. (This is a decompiled reconstruction, not the original text of the command.) The result is a complete CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION or CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE statement.
<code>pg_get_function_arguments ( <i>func</i> <i>oid</i> )</code> → text	Reconstructs the argument list of a function or procedure, in the form it would need to appear in within CREATE FUNCTION (including default values).
<code>pg_get_function_identity_arguments ( <i>func</i> <i>oid</i> )</code> → text	Reconstructs the argument list necessary to identify a function or procedure, in the form it would need to appear in within commands such as ALTER FUNCTION. This form omits default values.
<code>pg_get_function_result ( <i>func</i> <i>oid</i> )</code> → text	Reconstructs the RETURNS clause of a function, in the form it would need to appear in within CREATE FUNCTION. Returns NULL for a procedure.
<code>pg_get_indexdef ( <i>index</i> <i>oid</i> [, <i>column</i> <i>integer</i>, <i>pretty</i> <i>boolean</i> ] )</code> → text	Reconstructs the creating command for an index. (This is a decompiled reconstruction, not the original text of the command.) If <i>column</i> is supplied and is not zero, only the definition of that column is reconstructed.
<code>pg_get_keywords ()</code> → setof record ( <i>word</i> text, <i>catcode</i> "char", <i>barelabel</i> <i>boolean</i> , <i>catdesc</i> text, <i>baredesc</i> text )	Returns a set of records describing the SQL keywords recognized by the server. The <i>word</i> column contains the keyword. The <i>catcode</i> column contains a category code: U for an unreserved keyword, C for a keyword that can be a column name, T for a keyword that can be a type or function name, or R for a fully reserved keyword. The <i>barelabel</i> column contains true if the keyword can be used as a “bare” column label in SELECT lists, or false if it can only be used after AS. The <i>catdesc</i> column contains a possibly-localized string describing the keyword's category. The <i>baredesc</i> column contains a possibly-localized string describing the keyword's column label status.
<code>pg_get_partkeydef ( <i>table</i> <i>oid</i> )</code> → text	Reconstructs the definition of a partitioned table's partition key, in the form it would have in the PARTITION BY clause of CREATE TABLE. (This is a decompiled reconstruction, not the original text of the command.)
<code>pg_get_ruledef ( <i>rule</i> <i>oid</i> [, <i>pretty</i> <i>boolean</i> ] )</code> → text	Reconstructs the creating command for a rule. (This is a decompiled reconstruction, not the original text of the command.)
<code>pg_get_serial_sequence ( <i>table</i> text, <i>column</i> text )</code> → text	Returns the name of the sequence associated with a column, or NULL if no sequence is associated with the column. If the column is an identity column, the associated sequence is the sequence internally created for that column. For columns created using one of the serial types (serial, smallserial, bigserial), it is the sequence created for that serial column definition. In the latter case, the association can be modified or removed with ALTER SEQUENCE OWNED BY. (This function probably should have been called pg_get_owned_sequence; its current name reflects the fact that it has historically

Function	Description
	<p>been used with serial-type columns.) The first parameter is a table name with optional schema, and the second parameter is a column name. Because the first parameter potentially contains both schema and table names, it is parsed per usual SQL rules, meaning it is lower-cased by default. The second parameter, being just a column name, is treated literally and so has its case preserved. The result is suitably formatted for passing to the sequence functions (see Section 9.17).</p> <p>A typical use is in reading the current value of the sequence for an identity or serial column, for example:</p> <pre>SELECT currval(pg_get_serial_sequence('sometable', 'id'));</pre>
<code>pg_get_statisticsobjdef ( <i>statobj oid</i> ) → text</code>	Reconstructs the creating command for an extended statistics object. (This is a decompiled reconstruction, not the original text of the command.)
<code>pg_get_triggerdef ( <i>trigger oid</i> [, <i>pretty boolean</i> ] ) → text</code>	Reconstructs the creating command for a trigger. (This is a decompiled reconstruction, not the original text of the command.)
<code>pg_get_userbyid ( <i>role oid</i> ) → name</code>	Returns a role's name given its OID.
<code>pg_get_viewdef ( <i>view oid</i> [, <i>pretty boolean</i> ] ) → text</code>	Reconstructs the underlying <code>SELECT</code> command for a view or materialized view. (This is a decompiled reconstruction, not the original text of the command.)
<code>pg_get_viewdef ( <i>view oid</i>, <i>wrap_column integer</i> ) → text</code>	Reconstructs the underlying <code>SELECT</code> command for a view or materialized view. (This is a decompiled reconstruction, not the original text of the command.) In this form of the function, pretty-printing is always enabled, and long lines are wrapped to try to keep them shorter than the specified number of columns.
<code>pg_get_viewdef ( <i>view text</i> [, <i>pretty boolean</i> ] ) → text</code>	Reconstructs the underlying <code>SELECT</code> command for a view or materialized view, working from a textual name for the view rather than its OID. (This is deprecated; use the OID variant instead.)
<code>pg_index_column_has_property ( <i>index regclass</i>, <i>column integer</i>, <i>property text</i> ) → boolean</code>	Tests whether an index column has the named property. Common index column properties are listed in Table 9.73. (Note that extension access methods can define additional property names for their indexes.) <code>NULL</code> is returned if the property name is not known or does not apply to the particular object, or if the OID or column number does not identify a valid object.
<code>pg_index_has_property ( <i>index regclass</i>, <i>property text</i> ) → boolean</code>	Tests whether an index has the named property. Common index properties are listed in Table 9.74. (Note that extension access methods can define additional property names for their indexes.) <code>NULL</code> is returned if the property name is not known or does not apply to the particular object, or if the OID does not identify a valid object.
<code>pg_indexam_has_property ( <i>am oid</i>, <i>property text</i> ) → boolean</code>	Tests whether an index access method has the named property. Access method properties are listed in Table 9.75. <code>NULL</code> is returned if the property name is not known or does not apply to the particular object, or if the OID does not identify a valid object.

Function	Description
<code>pg_options_to_table ( options_array text[] ) → setof record ( option_name text, option_value text )</code>	Returns the set of storage options represented by a value from <code>pg_class.reloptions</code> or <code>pg_attribute.attoptions</code> .
<code>pg_settings_get_flags ( guc text ) → text[]</code>	Returns an array of the flags associated with the given GUC, or NULL if it does not exist. The result is an empty array if the GUC exists but there are no flags to show. Only the most useful flags listed in Table 9.76 are exposed.
<code>pg_tablespace_databases ( tablespace oid ) → setof oid</code>	Returns the set of OIDs of databases that have objects stored in the specified tablespace. If this function returns any rows, the tablespace is not empty and cannot be dropped. To identify the specific objects populating the tablespace, you will need to connect to the database(s) identified by <code>pg_tablespace_databases</code> and query their <code>pg_class</code> catalogs.
<code>pg_tablespace_location ( tablespace oid ) → text</code>	Returns the file system path that this tablespace is located in.
<code>pg_typeof ( "any" ) → regtype</code>	<p>Returns the OID of the data type of the value that is passed to it. This can be helpful for troubleshooting or dynamically constructing SQL queries. The function is declared as returning <code>regtype</code>, which is an OID alias type (see Section 8.19); this means that it is the same as an OID for comparison purposes but displays as a type name.</p> <p>For example:</p> <pre> SELECT pg_typeof(33);  pg_typeof ----- integer  SELECT typlen FROM pg_type WHERE oid = pg_typeof(33);  typlen -----       4 </pre>
<code>COLLATION FOR ( "any" ) → text</code>	<p>Returns the name of the collation of the value that is passed to it. The value is quoted and schema-qualified if necessary. If no collation was derived for the argument expression, then NULL is returned. If the argument is not of a collatable data type, then an error is raised.</p> <p>For example:</p> <pre> SELECT collation for (description) FROM pg_description LIMIT 1;  pg_collation_for ----- "default"  SELECT collation for ('foo' COLLATE "de_DE");  pg_collation_for ----- "de_DE" </pre>

Function	Description
<code>to_regclass ( text ) → regclass</code>	Translates a textual relation name to its OID. A similar result is obtained by casting the string to type <code>regclass</code> (see Section 8.19); however, this function will return <code>NULL</code> rather than throwing an error if the name is not found.
<code>to_regcollation ( text ) → regcollation</code>	Translates a textual collation name to its OID. A similar result is obtained by casting the string to type <code>regcollation</code> (see Section 8.19); however, this function will return <code>NULL</code> rather than throwing an error if the name is not found.
<code>to_regnamespace ( text ) → regnamespace</code>	Translates a textual schema name to its OID. A similar result is obtained by casting the string to type <code>regnamespace</code> (see Section 8.19); however, this function will return <code>NULL</code> rather than throwing an error if the name is not found.
<code>to_regoper ( text ) → regoper</code>	Translates a textual operator name to its OID. A similar result is obtained by casting the string to type <code>regoper</code> (see Section 8.19); however, this function will return <code>NULL</code> rather than throwing an error if the name is not found or is ambiguous.
<code>to_regoperator ( text ) → regoperator</code>	Translates a textual operator name (with parameter types) to its OID. A similar result is obtained by casting the string to type <code>regoperator</code> (see Section 8.19); however, this function will return <code>NULL</code> rather than throwing an error if the name is not found.
<code>to_regproc ( text ) → regproc</code>	Translates a textual function or procedure name to its OID. A similar result is obtained by casting the string to type <code>regproc</code> (see Section 8.19); however, this function will return <code>NULL</code> rather than throwing an error if the name is not found or is ambiguous.
<code>to_regprocedure ( text ) → regprocedure</code>	Translates a textual function or procedure name (with argument types) to its OID. A similar result is obtained by casting the string to type <code>regprocedure</code> (see Section 8.19); however, this function will return <code>NULL</code> rather than throwing an error if the name is not found.
<code>to_regrole ( text ) → regrole</code>	Translates a textual role name to its OID. A similar result is obtained by casting the string to type <code>regrole</code> (see Section 8.19); however, this function will return <code>NULL</code> rather than throwing an error if the name is not found.
<code>to_regtype ( text ) → regtype</code>	Translates a textual type name to its OID. A similar result is obtained by casting the string to type <code>regtype</code> (see Section 8.19); however, this function will return <code>NULL</code> rather than throwing an error if the name is not found.

Most of the functions that reconstruct (decompile) database objects have an optional *pretty* flag, which if `true` causes the result to be “pretty-printed”. Pretty-printing suppresses unnecessary parentheses and adds whitespace for legibility. The pretty-printed format is more readable, but the default format is more likely to be interpreted the same way by future versions of PostgreSQL; so avoid using pretty-printed output for dump purposes. Passing `false` for the *pretty* parameter yields the same result as omitting the parameter.

**Table 9.73. Index Column Properties**

Name	Description
asc	Does the column sort in ascending order on a forward scan?
desc	Does the column sort in descending order on a forward scan?
nulls_first	Does the column sort with nulls first on a forward scan?
nulls_last	Does the column sort with nulls last on a forward scan?
orderable	Does the column possess any defined sort ordering?
distance_orderable	Can the column be scanned in order by a “distance” operator, for example <code>ORDER BY col &lt;-&gt; constant</code> ?
returnable	Can the column value be returned by an index-only scan?
search_array	Does the column natively support <code>col = ANY(array)</code> searches?
search_nulls	Does the column support <code>IS NULL</code> and <code>IS NOT NULL</code> searches?

**Table 9.74. Index Properties**

Name	Description
clusterable	Can the index be used in a <code>CLUSTER</code> command?
index_scan	Does the index support plain (non-bitmap) scans?
bitmap_scan	Does the index support bitmap scans?
backward_scan	Can the scan direction be changed in mid-scan (to support <code>FETCH BACKWARD</code> on a cursor without needing materialization)?

**Table 9.75. Index Access Method Properties**

Name	Description
can_order	Does the access method support <code>ASC</code> , <code>DESC</code> and related keywords in <code>CREATE INDEX</code> ?
can_unique	Does the access method support unique indexes?
can_multi_col	Does the access method support indexes with multiple columns?
can_exclude	Does the access method support exclusion constraints?
can_include	Does the access method support the <code>INCLUDE</code> clause of <code>CREATE INDEX</code> ?

**Table 9.76. GUC Flags**

Flag	Description
EXPLAIN	Parameters with this flag are included in EXPLAIN (SETTINGS) commands.
NO_SHOW_ALL	Parameters with this flag are excluded from SHOW ALL commands.
NO_RESET	Parameters with this flag do not support RESET commands.
NO_RESET_ALL	Parameters with this flag are excluded from RESET ALL commands.
NOT_IN_SAMPLE	Parameters with this flag are not included in postgresql.conf by default.
RUNTIME_COMPUTED	Parameters with this flag are runtime-computed ones.

## 9.26.5. Object Information and Addressing Functions

Table 9.77 lists functions related to database object identification and addressing.

**Table 9.77. Object Information and Addressing Functions**

Function	Description
<code>pg_describe_object ( classid oid, objid oid, objsubid integer ) → text</code>	Returns a textual description of a database object identified by catalog OID, object OID, and sub-object ID (such as a column number within a table; the sub-object ID is zero when referring to a whole object). This description is intended to be human-readable, and might be translated, depending on server configuration. This is especially useful to determine the identity of an object referenced in the <code>pg_depend</code> catalog. This function returns NULL values for undefined objects.
<code>pg_identify_object ( classid oid, objid oid, objsubid integer ) → record ( type text, schema text, name text, identity text )</code>	Returns a row containing enough information to uniquely identify the database object specified by catalog OID, object OID and sub-object ID. This information is intended to be machine-readable, and is never translated. <i>type</i> identifies the type of database object; <i>schema</i> is the schema name that the object belongs in, or NULL for object types that do not belong to schemas; <i>name</i> is the name of the object, quoted if necessary, if the name (along with schema name, if pertinent) is sufficient to uniquely identify the object, otherwise NULL; <i>identity</i> is the complete object identity, with the precise format depending on object type, and each name within the format being schema-qualified and quoted as necessary. Undefined objects are identified with NULL values.
<code>pg_identify_object_as_address ( classid oid, objid oid, objsubid integer ) → record ( type text, object_names text[], object_args text[] )</code>	Returns a row containing enough information to uniquely identify the database object specified by catalog OID, object OID and sub-object ID. The returned information is independent of the current server, that is, it could be used to identify an identically named object in another server. <i>type</i> identifies the type of database object; <i>object_names</i> and <i>object_args</i> are text arrays that together form a reference to the object. These three values can be passed to <code>pg_get_object_address</code> to obtain the internal address of the object.

Function	Description
<code>pg_get_object_address ( type text, object_names text[], object_args text[] ) → record ( classid oid, objid oid, objsubid integer )</code>	Returns a row containing enough information to uniquely identify the database object specified by a type code and object name and argument arrays. The returned values are the ones that would be used in system catalogs such as <code>pg_depend</code> ; they can be passed to other system functions such as <code>pg_describe_object</code> or <code>pg_identify_object</code> . <code>classid</code> is the OID of the system catalog containing the object; <code>objid</code> is the OID of the object itself, and <code>objsubid</code> is the sub-object ID, or zero if none. This function is the inverse of <code>pg_identify_object_as_address</code> . Undefined objects are identified with NULL values.

## 9.26.6. Comment Information Functions

The functions shown in Table 9.78 extract comments previously stored with the `COMMENT` command. A null value is returned if no comment could be found for the specified parameters.

**Table 9.78. Comment Information Functions**

Function	Description
<code>col_description ( table oid, column integer ) → text</code>	Returns the comment for a table column, which is specified by the OID of its table and its column number. ( <code>obj_description</code> cannot be used for table columns, since columns do not have OIDs of their own.)
<code>obj_description ( object oid, catalog name ) → text</code>	Returns the comment for a database object specified by its OID and the name of the containing system catalog. For example, <code>obj_description(123456, 'pg_class')</code> would retrieve the comment for the table with OID 123456.
<code>obj_description ( object oid ) → text</code>	Returns the comment for a database object specified by its OID alone. This is <i>deprecated</i> since there is no guarantee that OIDs are unique across different system catalogs; therefore, the wrong comment might be returned.
<code>shobj_description ( object oid, catalog name ) → text</code>	Returns the comment for a shared database object specified by its OID and the name of the containing system catalog. This is just like <code>obj_description</code> except that it is used for retrieving comments on shared objects (that is, databases, roles, and tablespaces). Some system catalogs are global to all databases within each cluster, and the descriptions for objects in them are stored globally as well.

## 9.26.7. Data Validity Checking Functions

The functions shown in Table 9.79 can be helpful for checking validity of proposed input data.

**Table 9.79. Data Validity Checking Functions**

Function	Description
<code>pg_input_is_valid ( string text, type text ) → boolean</code>	Tests whether the given <i>string</i> is valid input for the specified data type, returning true or false.



Function	Description																												
<b>Example(s)</b>																													
	<p>This function will only work as desired if the data type's input function has been updated to report invalid input as a “soft” error. Otherwise, invalid input will abort the transaction, just as if the string had been cast to the type directly.</p> <pre>pg_input_is_valid('42', 'integer') → t pg_input_is_valid('420000000000', 'integer') → f pg_input_is_valid('1234.567', 'numeric(7,4)') → f</pre>																												
	<pre>pg_input_error_info ( string text, type text ) → record ( message text, detail text, hint text, sql_error_code text )</pre> <p>Tests whether the given <i>string</i> is valid input for the specified data type; if not, return the details of the error that would have been thrown. If the input is valid, the results are NULL. The inputs are the same as for <code>pg_input_is_valid</code>.</p> <p>This function will only work as desired if the data type's input function has been updated to report invalid input as a “soft” error. Otherwise, invalid input will abort the transaction, just as if the string had been cast to the type directly.</p> <pre>select * from pg_input_error_info('420000000000', 'integer') →</pre> <table><tr><th>message</th><th>detail</th><th>hint</th><th>sql_error_code</th></tr><tr><td colspan="4">-----</td></tr><tr><td colspan="4">+-----+-----+-----</td></tr><tr><td>value "420000000000" is out of range for type integer</td><td> </td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td> </td><td> </td><td>22003</td><td></td></tr></table> <pre>select message, detail from pg_input_error_info('1234.567', 'numeric(7,4)') →</pre> <table><tr><th>message</th><th>detail</th></tr><tr><td colspan="2">-----</td></tr><tr><td colspan="2">-----</td></tr><tr><td>numeric field overflow</td><td>  A field with precision 7, scale 4 must round to an absolute value less than 10^3.</td></tr></table>	message	detail	hint	sql_error_code	-----				+-----+-----+-----				value "420000000000" is out of range for type integer						22003		message	detail	-----		-----		numeric field overflow	A field with precision 7, scale 4 must round to an absolute value less than 10^3.
message	detail	hint	sql_error_code																										
-----																													
+-----+-----+-----																													
value "420000000000" is out of range for type integer																													
		22003																											
message	detail																												
-----																													
-----																													
numeric field overflow	A field with precision 7, scale 4 must round to an absolute value less than 10^3.																												

## 9.26.8. Transaction ID and Snapshot Information Functions

The functions shown in Table 9.80 provide server transaction information in an exportable form. The main use of these functions is to determine which transactions were committed between two snapshots.

**Table 9.80. Transaction ID and Snapshot Information Functions**

Function	Description
<code>pg_current_xact_id()</code> → xid8	<p>Returns the current transaction's ID. It will assign a new one if the current transaction does not have one already (because it has not performed any database updates); see Section 74.1 for details. If executed in a subtransaction, this will return the top-level transaction ID; see Section 74.3 for details.</p>

Function	Description
<code>pg_current_xact_id_if_assigned() → xid8</code>	Returns the current transaction's ID, or NULL if no ID is assigned yet. (It's best to use this variant if the transaction might otherwise be read-only, to avoid unnecessary consumption of an XID.) If executed in a subtransaction, this will return the top-level transaction ID.
<code>pg_xact_status(xid8) → text</code>	Reports the commit status of a recent transaction. The result is one of <code>in progress</code> , <code>committed</code> , or <code>aborted</code> , provided that the transaction is recent enough that the system retains the commit status of that transaction. If it is old enough that no references to the transaction survive in the system and the commit status information has been discarded, the result is NULL. Applications might use this function, for example, to determine whether their transaction committed or aborted after the application and database server become disconnected while a COMMIT is in progress. Note that prepared transactions are reported as <code>in progress</code> ; applications must check <code>pg_prepared_xacts</code> if they need to determine whether a transaction ID belongs to a prepared transaction.
<code>pg_current_snapshot() → pg_snapshot</code>	Returns a current <i>snapshot</i> , a data structure showing which transaction IDs are now in-progress. Only top-level transaction IDs are included in the snapshot; subtransaction IDs are not shown; see Section 74.3 for details.
<code>pg_snapshot_xip(pg_snapshot) → setof xid8</code>	Returns the set of in-progress transaction IDs contained in a snapshot.
<code>pg_snapshot_xmax(pg_snapshot) → xid8</code>	Returns the <code>xmax</code> of a snapshot.
<code>pg_snapshot_xmin(pg_snapshot) → xid8</code>	Returns the <code>xmin</code> of a snapshot.
<code>pg_visible_in_snapshot(xid8, pg_snapshot) → boolean</code>	Is the given transaction ID <i>visible</i> according to this snapshot (that is, was it completed before the snapshot was taken)? Note that this function will not give the correct answer for a subtransaction ID ( <code>subxid</code> ); see Section 74.3 for details.

The internal transaction ID type `xid` is 32 bits wide and wraps around every 4 billion transactions. However, the functions shown in Table 9.80 use a 64-bit type `xid8` that does not wrap around during the life of an installation and can be converted to `xid` by casting if required; see Section 74.1 for details. The data type `pg_snapshot` stores information about transaction ID visibility at a particular moment in time. Its components are described in Table 9.81. `pg_snapshot`'s textual representation is `xmin:xmax:xip_list`. For example `10:20:10,14,15` means `xmin=10`, `xmax=20`, `xip_list=10, 14, 15`.

**Table 9.81. Snapshot Components**

Name	Description
<code>xmin</code>	Lowest transaction ID that was still active. All transaction IDs less than <code>xmin</code> are either committed and visible, or rolled back and dead.
<code>xmax</code>	One past the highest completed transaction ID. All transaction IDs greater than or equal to <code>xmax</code> had not yet completed as of the time of the snapshot, and thus are invisible.
<code>xip_list</code>	Transactions in progress at the time of the snapshot. A transaction ID that is <code>xmin ≤ X &lt; xmax</code> .

Name	Description
	xmax and not in this list was already completed at the time of the snapshot, and thus is either visible or dead according to its commit status. This list does not include the transaction IDs of subtransactions (subxids).

In releases of PostgreSQL before 13 there was no `xid8` type, so variants of these functions were provided that used `bigint` to represent a 64-bit XID, with a correspondingly distinct snapshot data type `txid_snapshot`. These older functions have `txid` in their names. They are still supported for backward compatibility, but may be removed from a future release. See Table 9.82.

**Table 9.82. Deprecated Transaction ID and Snapshot Information Functions**

Function	Description
<code>txid_current()</code> $\rightarrow$ <code>bigint</code> See <code>pg_current_xact_id()</code> .	
<code>txid_current_if_assigned()</code> $\rightarrow$ <code>bigint</code> See <code>pg_current_xact_id_if_assigned()</code> .	
<code>txid_current_snapshot()</code> $\rightarrow$ <code>txid_snapshot</code> See <code>pg_current_snapshot()</code> .	
<code>txid_snapshot_xip(txid_snapshot)</code> $\rightarrow$ <code>setof bigint</code> See <code>pg_snapshot_xip()</code> .	
<code>txid_snapshot_xmax(txid_snapshot)</code> $\rightarrow$ <code>bigint</code> See <code>pg_snapshot_xmax()</code> .	
<code>txid_snapshot_xmin(txid_snapshot)</code> $\rightarrow$ <code>bigint</code> See <code>pg_snapshot_xmin()</code> .	
<code>txid_visible_in_snapshot(bigint, txid_snapshot)</code> $\rightarrow$ <code>boolean</code> See <code>pg_visible_in_snapshot()</code> .	
<code>txid_status(bigint)</code> $\rightarrow$ <code>text</code> See <code>pg_xact_status()</code> .	

## 9.26.9. Committed Transaction Information Functions

The functions shown in Table 9.83 provide information about when past transactions were committed. They only provide useful data when the `track_commit_timestamp` configuration option is enabled, and only for transactions that were committed after it was enabled. Commit timestamp information is routinely removed during vacuum.

**Table 9.83. Committed Transaction Information Functions**

Function	Description
<code>pg_xact_commit_timestamp(xid)</code> $\rightarrow$ <code>timestamp with time zone</code> Returns the commit timestamp of a transaction.	
<code>pg_xact_commit_timestamp_origin(xid)</code> $\rightarrow$ <code>record(timestamp timestamp with time zone, roident oid)</code> Returns the commit timestamp and replication origin of a transaction.	

Function	Description
<code>pg_last_committed_xact ()</code>	<code>→ record (xid xid, timestamp timestamp with time zone, roident oid)</code> Returns the transaction ID, commit timestamp and replication origin of the latest committed transaction.

## 9.26.10. Control Data Functions

The functions shown in Table 9.84 print information initialized during `initdb`, such as the catalog version. They also show information about write-ahead logging and checkpoint processing. This information is cluster-wide, not specific to any one database. These functions provide most of the same information, from the same source, as the `pg_controldata` application.

**Table 9.84. Control Data Functions**

Function	Description
<code>age (xid) → integer</code>	Returns the number of transactions between the supplied transaction id and the current transaction counter.
<code>mxid_age (xid) → integer</code>	Returns the number of multixacts IDs between the supplied multixact ID and the current multixacts counter.
<code>pg_control_checkpoint () → record</code>	Returns information about current checkpoint state, as shown in Table 9.85.
<code>pg_control_system () → record</code>	Returns information about current control file state, as shown in Table 9.86.
<code>pg_control_init () → record</code>	Returns information about cluster initialization state, as shown in Table 9.87.
<code>pg_control_recovery () → record</code>	Returns information about recovery state, as shown in Table 9.88.

**Table 9.85. `pg_control_checkpoint` Output Columns**

Column Name	Data Type
<code>checkpoint_lsn</code>	<code>pg_lsn</code>
<code>redo_lsn</code>	<code>pg_lsn</code>
<code>redo_wal_file</code>	<code>text</code>
<code>timeline_id</code>	<code>integer</code>
<code>prev_timeline_id</code>	<code>integer</code>
<code>full_page_writes</code>	<code>boolean</code>
<code>next_xid</code>	<code>text</code>
<code>next_oid</code>	<code>oid</code>
<code>next_multixact_id</code>	<code>xid</code>
<code>next_multi_offset</code>	<code>xid</code>
<code>oldest_xid</code>	<code>xid</code>
<code>oldest_xid_dbid</code>	<code>oid</code>

Column Name	Data Type
oldest_active_xid	xid
oldest_multi_xid	xid
oldest_multi_dbid	oid
oldest_commit_ts_xid	xid
newest_commit_ts_xid	xid
checkpoint_time	timestamp with time zone

**Table 9.86. pg\_control\_system Output Columns**

Column Name	Data Type
pg_control_version	integer
catalog_version_no	integer
system_identifier	bigint
pg_control_last_modified	timestamp with time zone

**Table 9.87. pg\_control\_init Output Columns**

Column Name	Data Type
max_data_alignment	integer
database_block_size	integer
blocks_per_segment	integer
wal_block_size	integer
bytes_per_wal_segment	integer
max_identifier_length	integer
max_index_columns	integer
max_toast_chunk_size	integer
large_object_chunk_size	integer
float8_pass_by_value	boolean
data_page_checksum_version	integer

**Table 9.88. pg\_control\_recovery Output Columns**

Column Name	Data Type
min_recovery_end_lsn	pg_lsn
min_recovery_end_timeline	integer
backup_start_lsn	pg_lsn
backup_end_lsn	pg_lsn
end_of_backup_record_required	boolean

## 9.27. System Administration Functions

The functions described in this section are used to control and monitor a PostgreSQL installation.

### 9.27.1. Configuration Settings Functions

Table 9.89 shows the functions available to query and alter run-time configuration parameters.

**Table 9.89. Configuration Settings Functions**

Function	Description
<code>current_setting ( setting_name text [, missing_ok boolean ] ) → text</code>	Returns the current value of the setting <i>setting_name</i> . If there is no such setting, <code>current_setting</code> throws an error unless <i>missing_ok</i> is supplied and is <code>true</code> (in which case <code>NULL</code> is returned). This function corresponds to the SQL command <code>SHOW</code> . <code>current_setting('datestyle') → ISO, MDY</code>
<code>set_config ( setting_name text, new_value text, is_local boolean ) → text</code>	Sets the parameter <i>setting_name</i> to <i>new_value</i> , and returns that value. If <i>is_local</i> is <code>true</code> , the new value will only apply during the current transaction. If you want the new value to apply for the rest of the current session, use <code>false</code> instead. This function corresponds to the SQL command <code>SET</code> . <code>set_config('log_statement_stats', 'off', false) → off</code>

## 9.27.2. Server Signaling Functions

The functions shown in Table 9.90 send control signals to other server processes. Use of these functions is restricted to superusers by default but access may be granted to others using `GRANT`, with noted exceptions.

Each of these functions returns `true` if the signal was successfully sent and `false` if sending the signal failed.

**Table 9.90. Server Signaling Functions**

Function	Description
<code>pg_cancel_backend ( pid integer ) → boolean</code>	Cancels the current query of the session whose backend process has the specified process ID. This is also allowed if the calling role is a member of the role whose backend is being canceled or the calling role has privileges of <code>pg_signal_backend</code> , however only superusers can cancel superuser backends.
<code>pg_log_backend_memory_contexts ( pid integer ) → boolean</code>	Requests to log the memory contexts of the backend with the specified process ID. This function can send the request to backends and auxiliary processes except logger. These memory contexts will be logged at <code>LOG</code> message level. They will appear in the server log based on the log configuration set (see Section 20.8 for more information), but will not be sent to the client regardless of <code>client_min_messages</code> .
<code>pg_reload_conf () → boolean</code>	Causes all processes of the PostgreSQL server to reload their configuration files. (This is initiated by sending a <code>SIGHUP</code> signal to the postmaster process, which in turn sends <code>SIGHUP</code> to each of its children.) You can use the <code>pg_file_settings</code> , <code>pg_hba_file_rules</code> and <code>pg_ident_file_mappings</code> views to check the configuration files for possible errors, before reloading.
<code>pg_rotate_logfile () → boolean</code>	Signals the log-file manager to switch to a new output file immediately. This works only when the built-in log collector is running, since otherwise there is no log-file manager subprocess.

Function	Description
<code>pg_terminate_backend(pid integer, timeout bigint DEFAULT 0) → boolean</code>	<p>Terminates the session whose backend process has the specified process ID. This is also allowed if the calling role is a member of the role whose backend is being terminated or the calling role has privileges of <code>pg_signal_backend</code>, however only superusers can terminate superuser backends.</p> <p>If <i>timeout</i> is not specified or zero, this function returns <code>true</code> whether the process actually terminates or not, indicating only that the sending of the signal was successful. If the <i>timeout</i> is specified (in milliseconds) and greater than zero, the function waits until the process is actually terminated or until the given time has passed. If the process is terminated, the function returns <code>true</code>. On timeout, a warning is emitted and <code>false</code> is returned.</p>

`pg_cancel_backend` and `pg_terminate_backend` send signals (SIGINT or SIGTERM respectively) to backend processes identified by process ID. The process ID of an active backend can be found from the `pid` column of the `pg_stat_activity` view, or by listing the postgres processes on the server (using `ps` on Unix or the Task Manager on Windows). The role of an active backend can be found from the `username` column of the `pg_stat_activity` view.

`pg_log_backend_memory_contexts` can be used to log the memory contexts of a backend process. For example:

```
postgres=# SELECT pg_log_backend_memory_contexts(pg_backend_pid());
pg_log_backend_memory_contexts
-----
t
(1 row)
```

One message for each memory context will be logged. For example:

```
LOG:  logging memory contexts of PID 10377
STATEMENT:  SELECT
pg_log_backend_memory_contexts(pg_backend_pid());
LOG:  level: 0; TopMemoryContext: 80800 total in 6 blocks; 14432
free (5 chunks); 66368 used
LOG:  level: 1; pgstat TabStatusArray lookup hash table: 8192 total
in 1 blocks; 1408 free (0 chunks); 6784 used
LOG:  level: 1; TopTransactionContext: 8192 total in 1 blocks; 7720
free (1 chunks); 472 used
LOG:  level: 1; RowDescriptionContext: 8192 total in 1 blocks; 6880
free (0 chunks); 1312 used
LOG:  level: 1; MessageContext: 16384 total in 2 blocks; 5152 free
(0 chunks); 11232 used
LOG:  level: 1; Operator class cache: 8192 total in 1 blocks; 512
free (0 chunks); 7680 used
LOG:  level: 1; smgr relation table: 16384 total in 2 blocks; 4544
free (3 chunks); 11840 used
LOG:  level: 1; TransactionAbortContext: 32768 total in 1 blocks;
32504 free (0 chunks); 264 used
...
LOG:  level: 1; ErrorContext: 8192 total in 1 blocks; 7928 free (3
chunks); 264 used
LOG:  Grand total: 1651920 bytes in 201 blocks; 622360 free (88
chunks); 1029560 used
```

If there are more than 100 child contexts under the same parent, the first 100 child contexts are logged, along with a summary of the remaining contexts. Note that frequent calls to this function could incur significant overhead, because it may generate a large number of log messages.

## 9.27.3. Backup Control Functions

The functions shown in Table 9.91 assist in making on-line backups. These functions cannot be executed during recovery (except `pg_backup_start`, `pg_backup_stop`, and `pg_wal_lsn_diff`).

For details about proper usage of these functions, see Section 26.3.

**Table 9.91. Backup Control Functions**

Function	Description
<code>pg_create_restore_point ( name text ) → pg_lsn</code>	Creates a named marker record in the write-ahead log that can later be used as a recovery target, and returns the corresponding write-ahead log location. The given name can then be used with <code>recovery_target_name</code> to specify the point up to which recovery will proceed. Avoid creating multiple restore points with the same name, since recovery will stop at the first one whose name matches the recovery target. This function is restricted to superusers by default, but other users can be granted EXECUTE to run the function.
<code>pg_current_wal_flush_lsn () → pg_lsn</code>	Returns the current write-ahead log flush location (see notes below).
<code>pg_current_wal_insert_lsn () → pg_lsn</code>	Returns the current write-ahead log insert location (see notes below).
<code>pg_current_wal_lsn () → pg_lsn</code>	Returns the current write-ahead log write location (see notes below).
<code>pg_backup_start ( label text [, fast boolean ] ) → pg_lsn</code>	Prepares the server to begin an on-line backup. The only required parameter is an arbitrary user-defined label for the backup. (Typically this would be the name under which the backup dump file will be stored.) If the optional second parameter is given as <code>true</code> , it specifies executing <code>pg_backup_start</code> as quickly as possible. This forces an immediate checkpoint which will cause a spike in I/O operations, slowing any concurrently executing queries. This function is restricted to superusers by default, but other users can be granted EXECUTE to run the function.
<code>pg_backup_stop ( [wait_for_archive boolean ] ) → record ( lsn pg_lsn, labelfile text, spcmapfile text )</code>	Finishes performing an on-line backup. The desired contents of the backup label file and the tablespace map file are returned as part of the result of the function and must be written to files in the backup area. These files must not be written to the live data directory (doing so will cause PostgreSQL to fail to restart in the event of a crash). There is an optional parameter of type <code>boolean</code> . If false, the function will return immediately after the backup is completed, without waiting for WAL to be archived. This behavior is only useful with backup software that independently monitors WAL archiving. Otherwise, WAL required to make the backup consistent might be missing and make the backup useless. By default or when this parameter is true, <code>pg_backup_stop</code> will wait for WAL to be archived when archiving is enabled. (On a standby, this means that it will wait only when <code>archive_mode = always</code> . If write activity on the primary is low, it may be useful to run <code>pg_switch_wal</code> on the primary in order to trigger an immediate segment switch.)



Function	Description
	<p>When executed on a primary, this function also creates a backup history file in the write-ahead log archive area. The history file includes the label given to <code>pg_backup_start</code>, the starting and ending write-ahead log locations for the backup, and the starting and ending times of the backup. After recording the ending location, the current write-ahead log insertion point is automatically advanced to the next write-ahead log file, so that the ending write-ahead log file can be archived immediately to complete the backup. The result of the function is a single record. The <code>lsn</code> column holds the backup's ending write-ahead log location (which again can be ignored). The second column returns the contents of the backup label file, and the third column returns the contents of the tablespace map file. These must be stored as part of the backup and are required as part of the restore process.</p> <p>This function is restricted to superusers by default, but other users can be granted <code>EXECUTE</code> to run the function.</p>
<code>pg_switch_wal () → pg_lsn</code>	<p>Forces the server to switch to a new write-ahead log file, which allows the current file to be archived (assuming you are using continuous archiving). The result is the ending write-ahead log location plus 1 within the just-completed write-ahead log file. If there has been no write-ahead log activity since the last write-ahead log switch, <code>pg_switch_wal</code> does nothing and returns the start location of the write-ahead log file currently in use.</p> <p>This function is restricted to superusers by default, but other users can be granted <code>EXECUTE</code> to run the function.</p>
<code>pg_walfile_name ( lsn pg_lsn ) → text</code>	<p>Converts a write-ahead log location to the name of the WAL file holding that location.</p>
<code>pg_walfile_name_offset ( lsn pg_lsn ) → record ( file_name text, file_offset integer )</code>	<p>Converts a write-ahead log location to a WAL file name and byte offset within that file.</p>
<code>pg_split_walfile_name ( file_name text ) → record ( segment_number numeric, timeline_id bigint )</code>	<p>Extracts the sequence number and timeline ID from a WAL file name.</p>
<code>pg_wal_lsn_diff ( lsn1 pg_lsn, lsn2 pg_lsn ) → numeric</code>	<p>Calculates the difference in bytes (<math>lsn1 - lsn2</math>) between two write-ahead log locations. This can be used with <code>pg_stat_replication</code> or some of the functions shown in Table 9.91 to get the replication lag.</p>

`pg_current_wal_lsn` displays the current write-ahead log write location in the same format used by the above functions. Similarly, `pg_current_wal_insert_lsn` displays the current write-ahead log insertion location and `pg_current_wal_flush_lsn` displays the current write-ahead log flush location. The insertion location is the “logical” end of the write-ahead log at any instant, while the write location is the end of what has actually been written out from the server's internal buffers, and the flush location is the last location known to be written to durable storage. The write location is the end of what can be examined from outside the server, and is usually what you want if you are interested in archiving partially-complete write-ahead log files. The insertion and flush locations are made available primarily for server debugging purposes. These are all read-only operations and do not require superuser permissions.

You can use `pg_walfile_name_offset` to extract the corresponding write-ahead log file name and byte offset from a `pg_lsn` value. For example:

```
postgres=# SELECT * FROM
pg_walfile_name_offset ( (pg_backup_stop()) .lsn );
      file_name      | file_offset
```

```
-----+-----
000000010000000000000000D |      4039624
(1 row)
```

Similarly, `pg_walfile_name` extracts just the write-ahead log file name. When the given write-ahead log location is exactly at a write-ahead log file boundary, both these functions return the name of the preceding write-ahead log file. This is usually the desired behavior for managing write-ahead log archiving behavior, since the preceding file is the last one that currently needs to be archived.

`pg_split_walfile_name` is useful to compute a LSN from a file offset and WAL file name, for example:

```
postgres=# \set file_name '000000010000000100C000AB'
postgres=# \set offset 256
postgres=# SELECT '0/0':pg_lsn + pd.segment_number *
ps.setting::int + :offset AS lsn
FROM pg_split_walfile_name(:'file_name') pd,
pg_show_all_settings() ps
WHERE ps.name = 'wal_segment_size';
lsn
-----
C001/AB000100
(1 row)
```

## 9.27.4. Recovery Control Functions

The functions shown in Table 9.92 provide information about the current status of a standby server. These functions may be executed both during recovery and in normal running.

**Table 9.92. Recovery Information Functions**

Function	Description
<code>pg_is_in_recovery()</code> → boolean	Returns true if recovery is still in progress.
<code>pg_last_wal_receive_lsn()</code> → pg_lsn	Returns the last write-ahead log location that has been received and synced to disk by streaming replication. While streaming replication is in progress this will increase monotonically. If recovery has completed then this will remain static at the location of the last WAL record received and synced to disk during recovery. If streaming replication is disabled, or if it has not yet started, the function returns NULL.
<code>pg_last_wal_replay_lsn()</code> → pg_lsn	Returns the last write-ahead log location that has been replayed during recovery. If recovery is still in progress this will increase monotonically. If recovery has completed then this will remain static at the location of the last WAL record applied during recovery. When the server has been started normally without recovery, the function returns NULL.
<code>pg_last_xact_replay_timestamp()</code> → timestamp with time zone	Returns the time stamp of the last transaction replayed during recovery. This is the time at which the commit or abort WAL record for that transaction was generated on the primary. If no transactions have been replayed during recovery, the function returns NULL. Otherwise, if recovery is still in progress this will increase monotonically. If recovery has completed then this will remain static at the time of the last transaction applied during recovery. When the server has been started normally without recovery, the function returns NULL.

Function	Description
<code>pg_get_wal_resource_managers()</code>	<code>→ setof record (rm_id integer, rm_name text, rm_builtin boolean)</code> Returns the currently-loaded WAL resource managers in the system. The column <code>rm_builtin</code> indicates whether it's a built-in resource manager, or a custom resource manager loaded by an extension.

The functions shown in Table 9.93 control the progress of recovery. These functions may be executed only during recovery.

**Table 9.93. Recovery Control Functions**

Function	Description
<code>pg_is_wal_replay_paused()</code>	<code>→ boolean</code> Returns true if recovery pause is requested.
<code>pg_get_wal_replay_pause_state()</code>	<code>→ text</code> Returns recovery pause state. The return values are <code>not paused</code> if pause is not requested, <code>pause requested</code> if pause is requested but recovery is not yet paused, and <code>paused</code> if the recovery is actually paused.
<code>pg_promote (wait boolean DEFAULT true, wait_seconds integer DEFAULT 60)</code>	<code>→ boolean</code> Promotes a standby server to primary status. With <code>wait</code> set to <code>true</code> (the default), the function waits until promotion is completed or <code>wait_seconds</code> seconds have passed, and returns <code>true</code> if promotion is successful and <code>false</code> otherwise. If <code>wait</code> is set to <code>false</code> , the function returns <code>true</code> immediately after sending a SIGUSR1 signal to the postmaster to trigger promotion. This function is restricted to superusers by default, but other users can be granted EXECUTE to run the function.
<code>pg_wal_replay_pause()</code>	<code>→ void</code> Request to pause recovery. A request doesn't mean that recovery stops right away. If you want a guarantee that recovery is actually paused, you need to check for the recovery pause state returned by <code>pg_get_wal_replay_pause_state()</code> . Note that <code>pg_is_wal_replay_paused()</code> returns whether a request is made. While recovery is paused, no further database changes are applied. If hot standby is active, all new queries will see the same consistent snapshot of the database, and no further query conflicts will be generated until recovery is resumed. This function is restricted to superusers by default, but other users can be granted EXECUTE to run the function.
<code>pg_wal_replay_resume()</code>	<code>→ void</code> Restarts recovery if it was paused. This function is restricted to superusers by default, but other users can be granted EXECUTE to run the function.

`pg_wal_replay_pause` and `pg_wal_replay_resume` cannot be executed while a promotion is ongoing. If a promotion is triggered while recovery is paused, the paused state ends and promotion continues.

If streaming replication is disabled, the paused state may continue indefinitely without a problem. If streaming replication is in progress then WAL records will continue to be received, which will eventually fill available disk space, depending upon the duration of the pause, the rate of WAL generation and available disk space.

## 9.27.5. Snapshot Synchronization Functions

PostgreSQL allows database sessions to synchronize their snapshots. A *snapshot* determines which data is visible to the transaction that is using the snapshot. Synchronized snapshots are necessary when two or more sessions need to see identical content in the database. If two sessions just start their transactions independently, there is always a possibility that some third transaction commits between the executions of the two `START TRANSACTION` commands, so that one session sees the effects of that transaction and the other does not.

To solve this problem, PostgreSQL allows a transaction to *export* the snapshot it is using. As long as the exporting transaction remains open, other transactions can *import* its snapshot, and thereby be guaranteed that they see exactly the same view of the database that the first transaction sees. But note that any database changes made by any one of these transactions remain invisible to the other transactions, as is usual for changes made by uncommitted transactions. So the transactions are synchronized with respect to pre-existing data, but act normally for changes they make themselves.

Snapshots are exported with the `pg_export_snapshot` function, shown in Table 9.94, and imported with the `SET TRANSACTION` command.

**Table 9.94. Snapshot Synchronization Functions**

Function	Description
<code>pg_export_snapshot () → text</code>	<p>Saves the transaction's current snapshot and returns a <code>text</code> string identifying the snapshot. This string must be passed (outside the database) to clients that want to import the snapshot. The snapshot is available for import only until the end of the transaction that exported it.</p> <p>A transaction can export more than one snapshot, if needed. Note that doing so is only useful in <code>READ COMMITTED</code> transactions, since in <code>REPEATABLE READ</code> and higher isolation levels, transactions use the same snapshot throughout their lifetime. Once a transaction has exported any snapshots, it cannot be prepared with <code>PREPARE TRANSACTION</code>.</p>
<code>pg_log_standby_snapshot () → pg_lsn</code>	<p>Take a snapshot of running transactions and write it to WAL, without having to wait for bgwriter or checkpoint to log one. This is useful for logical decoding on standby, as logical slot creation has to wait until such a record is replayed on the standby.</p>

## 9.27.6. Replication Management Functions

The functions shown in Table 9.95 are for controlling and interacting with replication features. See Section 27.2.5, Section 27.2.6, and Chapter 50 for information about the underlying features. Use of functions for replication origin is only allowed to the superuser by default, but may be allowed to other users by using the `GRANT` command. Use of functions for replication slots is restricted to superusers and users having `REPLICATION` privilege.

Many of these functions have equivalent commands in the replication protocol; see Section 55.4.

The functions described in Section 9.27.3, Section 9.27.4, and Section 9.27.5 are also relevant for replication.

**Table 9.95. Replication Management Functions**

Function	Description
<code>pg_create_physical_replication_slot ( slot_name name [, immediately_reserve boolean, temporary boolean ] ) → record ( slot_name name, lsn pg_lsn )</code>	Creates a new physical replication slot named <i>slot_name</i> . The optional second parameter, when <code>true</code> , specifies that the LSN for this replication slot be reserved immediately; otherwise the LSN is reserved on first connection from a streaming replication client. Streaming changes from a physical slot is only possible with the streaming-replication protocol — see Section 55.4. The optional third parameter, <i>temporary</i> , when set to <code>true</code> , specifies that the slot should not be permanently stored to disk and is only meant for use by the current session. Temporary slots are also released upon any error. This function corresponds to the replication protocol command <code>CREATE_REPLICATION_SLOT ... PHYSICAL</code> .
<code>pg_drop_replication_slot ( slot_name name ) → void</code>	Drops the physical or logical replication slot named <i>slot_name</i> . Same as replication protocol command <code>DROP_REPLICATION_SLOT</code> . For logical slots, this must be called while connected to the same database the slot was created on.
<code>pg_create_logical_replication_slot ( slot_name name, plugin name [, temporary boolean, twophase boolean ] ) → record ( slot_name name, lsn pg_lsn )</code>	Creates a new logical (decoding) replication slot named <i>slot_name</i> using the output plugin <i>plugin</i> . The optional third parameter, <i>temporary</i> , when set to <code>true</code> , specifies that the slot should not be permanently stored to disk and is only meant for use by the current session. Temporary slots are also released upon any error. The optional fourth parameter, <i>twophase</i> , when set to <code>true</code> , specifies that the decoding of prepared transactions is enabled for this slot. A call to this function has the same effect as the replication protocol command <code>CREATE_REPLICATION_SLOT ... LOGICAL</code> .
<code>pg_copy_physical_replication_slot ( src_slot_name name, dst_slot_name name [, temporary boolean ] ) → record ( slot_name name, lsn pg_lsn )</code>	Copies an existing physical replication slot named <i>src_slot_name</i> to a physical replication slot named <i>dst_slot_name</i> . The copied physical slot starts to reserve WAL from the same LSN as the source slot. <i>temporary</i> is optional. If <i>temporary</i> is omitted, the same value as the source slot is used.
<code>pg_copy_logical_replication_slot ( src_slot_name name, dst_slot_name name [, temporary boolean [, plugin name ] ] ) → record ( slot_name name, lsn pg_lsn )</code>	Copies an existing logical replication slot named <i>src_slot_name</i> to a logical replication slot named <i>dst_slot_name</i> , optionally changing the output plugin and persistence. The copied logical slot starts from the same LSN as the source logical slot. Both <i>temporary</i> and <i>plugin</i> are optional; if they are omitted, the values of the source slot are used.
<code>pg_logical_slot_get_changes ( slot_name name, upto_lsn pg_lsn, upto_nchanges integer, VARIADIC options text[ ] ) → setof record ( lsn pg_lsn, xid xid, data text )</code>	Returns changes in the slot <i>slot_name</i> , starting from the point from which changes have been consumed last. If <i>upto_lsn</i> and <i>upto_nchanges</i> are <code>NULL</code> , logical decoding will continue until end of WAL. If <i>upto_lsn</i> is non- <code>NULL</code> , decoding will include only those transactions which commit prior to the specified LSN. If <i>upto_nchanges</i> is non- <code>NULL</code> , decoding will stop when the number of rows produced by decoding exceeds the specified value. Note, however, that the actual number of rows re-

Function	Description
	turned may be larger, since this limit is only checked after adding the rows produced when decoding each new transaction commit.
<code>pg_logical_slot_peek_changes ( slot_name name, upto_lsn pg_lsn, upto_nchanges integer, VARIADIC options text[] ) → setof record ( lsn pg_lsn, xid xid, data text )</code>	Behaves just like the <code>pg_logical_slot_get_changes ( )</code> function, except that changes are not consumed; that is, they will be returned again on future calls.
<code>pg_logical_slot_get_binary_changes ( slot_name name, upto_lsn pg_lsn, upto_nchanges integer, VARIADIC options text[] ) → setof record ( lsn pg_lsn, xid xid, data bytea )</code>	Behaves just like the <code>pg_logical_slot_get_changes ( )</code> function, except that changes are returned as <code>bytea</code> .
<code>pg_logical_slot_peek_binary_changes ( slot_name name, upto_lsn pg_lsn, upto_nchanges integer, VARIADIC options text[] ) → setof record ( lsn pg_lsn, xid xid, data bytea )</code>	Behaves just like the <code>pg_logical_slot_peek_changes ( )</code> function, except that changes are returned as <code>bytea</code> .
<code>pg_replication_slot_advance ( slot_name name, upto_lsn pg_lsn ) → record ( slot_name name, end_lsn pg_lsn )</code>	Advances the current confirmed position of a replication slot named <code>slot_name</code> . The slot will not be moved backwards, and it will not be moved beyond the current insert location. Returns the name of the slot and the actual position that it was advanced to. The updated slot position information is written out at the next checkpoint if any advancing is done. So in the event of a crash, the slot may return to an earlier position.
<code>pg_replication_origin_create ( node_name text ) → oid</code>	Creates a replication origin with the given external name, and returns the internal ID assigned to it.
<code>pg_replication_origin_drop ( node_name text ) → void</code>	Deletes a previously-created replication origin, including any associated replay progress.
<code>pg_replication_origin_oid ( node_name text ) → oid</code>	Looks up a replication origin by name and returns the internal ID. If no such replication origin is found, NULL is returned.
<code>pg_replication_origin_session_setup ( node_name text ) → void</code>	Marks the current session as replaying from the given origin, allowing replay progress to be tracked. Can only be used if no origin is currently selected. Use <code>pg_replication_origin_session_reset</code> to undo.
<code>pg_replication_origin_session_reset () → void</code>	Cancels the effects of <code>pg_replication_origin_session_setup ( )</code> .
<code>pg_replication_origin_session_is_setup () → boolean</code>	Returns true if a replication origin has been selected in the current session.
<code>pg_replication_origin_session_progress ( flush boolean ) → pg_lsn</code>	Returns the replay location for the replication origin selected in the current session. The parameter <code>flush</code> determines whether the corresponding local transaction will be guaranteed to have been flushed to disk or not.
<code>pg_replication_origin_xact_setup ( origin_lsn pg_lsn, origin_timestamp timestamp with time zone ) → void</code>	

Function	Description
	Marks the current transaction as replaying a transaction that has committed at the given LSN and timestamp. Can only be called when a replication origin has been selected using <code>pg_replication_origin_session_setup</code> .
<code>pg_replication_origin_xact_reset () → void</code>	Cancels the effects of <code>pg_replication_origin_xact_setup()</code> .
<code>pg_replication_origin_advance ( node_name text, lsn pg_lsn ) → void</code>	Sets replication progress for the given node to the given location. This is primarily useful for setting up the initial location, or setting a new location after configuration changes and similar. Be aware that careless use of this function can lead to inconsistently replicated data.
<code>pg_replication_origin_progress ( node_name text, flush boolean ) → pg_lsn</code>	Returns the replay location for the given replication origin. The parameter <i>flush</i> determines whether the corresponding local transaction will be guaranteed to have been flushed to disk or not.
<code>pg_logical_emit_message ( transactional boolean, prefix text, content text ) → pg_lsn</code> <code>pg_logical_emit_message ( transactional boolean, prefix text, content bytea ) → pg_lsn</code>	Emits a logical decoding message. This can be used to pass generic messages to logical decoding plugins through WAL. The <i>transactional</i> parameter specifies if the message should be part of the current transaction, or if it should be written immediately and decoded as soon as the logical decoder reads the record. The <i>prefix</i> parameter is a textual prefix that can be used by logical decoding plugins to easily recognize messages that are interesting for them. The <i>content</i> parameter is the content of the message, given either in text or binary form.

## 9.27.7. Database Object Management Functions

The functions shown in Table 9.96 calculate the disk space usage of database objects, or assist in presentation or understanding of usage results. `bigint` results are measured in bytes. If an OID that does not represent an existing object is passed to one of these functions, `NULL` is returned.

**Table 9.96. Database Object Size Functions**

Function	Description
<code>pg_column_size ( "any" ) → integer</code>	Shows the number of bytes used to store any individual data value. If applied directly to a table column value, this reflects any compression that was done.
<code>pg_column_compression ( "any" ) → text</code>	Shows the compression algorithm that was used to compress an individual variable-length value. Returns <code>NULL</code> if the value is not compressed.
<code>pg_database_size ( name ) → bigint</code> <code>pg_database_size ( oid ) → bigint</code>	Computes the total disk space used by the database with the specified name or OID. To use this function, you must have <code>CONNECT</code> privilege on the specified database (which is granted by default) or have privileges of the <code>pg_read_all_stats</code> role.
<code>pg_indexes_size ( regclass ) → bigint</code>	

Function	Description
	Computes the total disk space used by indexes attached to the specified table.
<code>pg_relation_size ( relation regclass [, fork text ] ) → bigint</code>	Computes the disk space used by one “fork” of the specified relation. (Note that for most purposes it is more convenient to use the higher-level functions <code>pg_total_relation_size</code> or <code>pg_table_size</code> , which sum the sizes of all forks.) With one argument, this returns the size of the main data fork of the relation. The second argument can be provided to specify which fork to examine: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>main</code> returns the size of the main data fork of the relation.</li> <li>• <code>fsm</code> returns the size of the Free Space Map (see Section 73.3) associated with the relation.</li> <li>• <code>vm</code> returns the size of the Visibility Map (see Section 73.4) associated with the relation.</li> <li>• <code>init</code> returns the size of the initialization fork, if any, associated with the relation.</li> </ul>
<code>pg_size_bytes ( text ) → bigint</code>	Converts a size in human-readable format (as returned by <code>pg_size_pretty</code> ) into bytes. Valid units are bytes, B, kB, MB, GB, TB, and PB.
<code>pg_size_pretty ( bigint ) → text</code> <code>pg_size_pretty ( numeric ) → text</code>	Converts a size in bytes into a more easily human-readable format with size units (bytes, kB, MB, GB, TB, or PB as appropriate). Note that the units are powers of 2 rather than powers of 10, so 1kB is 1024 bytes, 1MB is $1024^2 = 1048576$ bytes, and so on.
<code>pg_table_size ( regclass ) → bigint</code>	Computes the disk space used by the specified table, excluding indexes (but including its TOAST table if any, free space map, and visibility map).
<code>pg_tablespace_size ( name ) → bigint</code> <code>pg_tablespace_size ( oid ) → bigint</code>	Computes the total disk space used in the tablespace with the specified name or OID. To use this function, you must have CREATE privilege on the specified tablespace or have privileges of the <code>pg_read_all_stats</code> role, unless it is the default tablespace for the current database.
<code>pg_total_relation_size ( regclass ) → bigint</code>	Computes the total disk space used by the specified table, including all indexes and TOAST data. The result is equivalent to <code>pg_table_size + pg_indexes_size</code> .

The functions above that operate on tables or indexes accept a `regclass` argument, which is simply the OID of the table or index in the `pg_class` system catalog. You do not have to look up the OID by hand, however, since the `regclass` data type's input converter will do the work for you. See Section 8.19 for details.

The functions shown in Table 9.97 assist in identifying the specific disk files associated with database objects.

**Table 9.97. Database Object Location Functions**

Function	Description
<code>pg_relation_filenode ( relation regclass ) → oid</code>	Returns the “filenode” number currently assigned to the specified relation. The filenode is the base component of the file name(s) used for the relation (see Section 73.1 for more



Function	Description
	information). For most relations the result is the same as <code>pg_class.relfilenode</code> , but for certain system catalogs <code>relfilenode</code> is zero and this function must be used to get the correct value. The function returns NULL if passed a relation that does not have storage, such as a view.
<code>pg_relation_filepath( relation regclass ) → text</code>	Returns the entire file path name (relative to the database cluster's data directory, PGDATA) of the relation.
<code>pg_filenode_relation( tablespace oid, filenode oid ) → regclass</code>	Returns a relation's OID given the tablespace OID and filenode it is stored under. This is essentially the inverse mapping of <code>pg_relation_filepath</code> . For a relation in the database's default tablespace, the tablespace can be specified as zero. Returns NULL if no relation in the current database is associated with the given values.

Table 9.98 lists functions used to manage collations.

**Table 9.98. Collation Management Functions**

Function	Description
<code>pg_collation_actual_version( oid ) → text</code>	Returns the actual version of the collation object as it is currently installed in the operating system. If this is different from the value in <code>pg_collation.collversion</code> , then objects depending on the collation might need to be rebuilt. See also ALTER COLLATION.
<code>pg_database_collation_actual_version( oid ) → text</code>	Returns the actual version of the database's collation as it is currently installed in the operating system. If this is different from the value in <code>pg_database.datcollversion</code> , then objects depending on the collation might need to be rebuilt. See also ALTER DATABASE.
<code>pg_import_system_collations( schema regnamespace ) → integer</code>	Adds collations to the system catalog <code>pg_collation</code> based on all the locales it finds in the operating system. This is what <code>initdb</code> uses; see Section 24.2.2 for more details. If additional locales are installed into the operating system later on, this function can be run again to add collations for the new locales. Locales that match existing entries in <code>pg_collation</code> will be skipped. (But collation objects based on locales that are no longer present in the operating system are not removed by this function.) The <i>schema</i> parameter would typically be <code>pg_catalog</code> , but that is not a requirement; the collations could be installed into some other schema as well. The function returns the number of new collation objects it created. Use of this function is restricted to superusers.

Table 9.99 lists functions that provide information about the structure of partitioned tables.

**Table 9.99. Partitioning Information Functions**

Function	Description
<code>pg_partition_tree( regclass ) → setof record( relid regclass, parentrelid regclass, isleaf boolean, level integer )</code>	Lists the tables or indexes in the partition tree of the given partitioned table or partitioned index, with one row for each partition. Information provided includes the OID of the partition, the OID of its immediate parent, a boolean value telling if the partition is a leaf, and an integer telling its level in the hierarchy. The level value is 0 for the input table or

Function	Description
	index, 1 for its immediate child partitions, 2 for their partitions, and so on. Returns no rows if the relation does not exist or is not a partition or partitioned table.
<code>pg_partition_ancestors ( regclass ) → setof regclass</code>	Lists the ancestor relations of the given partition, including the relation itself. Returns no rows if the relation does not exist or is not a partition or partitioned table.
<code>pg_partition_root ( regclass ) → regclass</code>	Returns the top-most parent of the partition tree to which the given relation belongs. Returns NULL if the relation does not exist or is not a partition or partitioned table.

For example, to check the total size of the data contained in a partitioned table `measurement`, one could use the following query:

```
SELECT pg_size_pretty(sum(pg_relation_size(relid))) AS total_size
FROM pg_partition_tree('measurement');
```

## 9.27.8. Index Maintenance Functions

Table 9.100 shows the functions available for index maintenance tasks. (Note that these maintenance tasks are normally done automatically by `autovacuum`; use of these functions is only required in special cases.) These functions cannot be executed during recovery. Use of these functions is restricted to superusers and the owner of the given index.

**Table 9.100. Index Maintenance Functions**

Function	Description
<code>brin_summarize_new_values ( index regclass ) → integer</code>	Scans the specified BRIN index to find page ranges in the base table that are not currently summarized by the index; for any such range it creates a new summary index tuple by scanning those table pages. Returns the number of new page range summaries that were inserted into the index.
<code>brin_summarize_range ( index regclass, blockNumber bigint ) → integer</code>	Summarizes the page range covering the given block, if not already summarized. This is like <code>brin_summarize_new_values</code> except that it only processes the page range that covers the given table block number.
<code>brin_desummarize_range ( index regclass, blockNumber bigint ) → void</code>	Removes the BRIN index tuple that summarizes the page range covering the given table block, if there is one.
<code>gin_clean_pending_list ( index regclass ) → bigint</code>	Cleans up the “pending” list of the specified GIN index by moving entries in it, in bulk, to the main GIN data structure. Returns the number of pages removed from the pending list. If the argument is a GIN index built with the <code>fastupdate</code> option disabled, no cleanup happens and the result is zero, because the index doesn't have a pending list. See Section 70.4.1 and Section 70.5 for details about the pending list and <code>fastupdate</code> option.

## 9.27.9. Generic File Access Functions

The functions shown in Table 9.101 provide native access to files on the machine hosting the server. Only files within the database cluster directory and the `log_directory` can be accessed, unless the

user is a superuser or is granted the role `pg_read_server_files`. Use a relative path for files in the cluster directory, and a path matching the `log_directory` configuration setting for log files.

Note that granting users the `EXECUTE` privilege on `pg_read_file()`, or related functions, allows them the ability to read any file on the server that the database server process can read; these functions bypass all in-database privilege checks. This means that, for example, a user with such access is able to read the contents of the `pg_authid` table where authentication information is stored, as well as read any table data in the database. Therefore, granting access to these functions should be carefully considered.

When granting privilege on these functions, note that the table entries showing optional parameters are mostly implemented as several physical functions with different parameter lists. Privilege must be granted separately on each such function, if it is to be used. `psql`'s `\df` command can be useful to check what the actual function signatures are.

Some of these functions take an optional `missing_ok` parameter, which specifies the behavior when the file or directory does not exist. If `true`, the function returns `NULL` or an empty result set, as appropriate. If `false`, an error is raised. (Failure conditions other than “file not found” are reported as errors in any case.) The default is `false`.

**Table 9.101. Generic File Access Functions**

Function	Description
<code>pg_ls_dir (dirname text [, missing_ok boolean, include_dot_dirs boolean]) → setof text</code>	Returns the names of all files (and directories and other special files) in the specified directory. The <code>include_dot_dirs</code> parameter indicates whether “.” and “..” are to be included in the result set; the default is to exclude them. Including them can be useful when <code>missing_ok</code> is <code>true</code> , to distinguish an empty directory from a non-existent directory. This function is restricted to superusers by default, but other users can be granted <code>EXECUTE</code> to run the function.
<code>pg_ls_logdir () → setof record (name text, size bigint, modification timestamp with time zone)</code>	Returns the name, size, and last modification time (mtime) of each ordinary file in the server's log directory. Filenames beginning with a dot, directories, and other special files are excluded. This function is restricted to superusers and roles with privileges of the <code>pg_monitor</code> role by default, but other users can be granted <code>EXECUTE</code> to run the function.
<code>pg_ls_waldir () → setof record (name text, size bigint, modification timestamp with time zone)</code>	Returns the name, size, and last modification time (mtime) of each ordinary file in the server's write-ahead log (WAL) directory. Filenames beginning with a dot, directories, and other special files are excluded. This function is restricted to superusers and roles with privileges of the <code>pg_monitor</code> role by default, but other users can be granted <code>EXECUTE</code> to run the function.
<code>pg_ls_logicalmapdir () → setof record (name text, size bigint, modification timestamp with time zone)</code>	Returns the name, size, and last modification time (mtime) of each ordinary file in the server's <code>pg_logical/mappings</code> directory. Filenames beginning with a dot, directories, and other special files are excluded. This function is restricted to superusers and members of the <code>pg_monitor</code> role by default, but other users can be granted <code>EXECUTE</code> to run the function.
<code>pg_ls_logicalsnapdir () → setof record (name text, size bigint, modification timestamp with time zone)</code>	

Function	Description
	<p>Returns the name, size, and last modification time (mtime) of each ordinary file in the server's <code>pg_logical/snapshots</code> directory. Filenames beginning with a dot, directories, and other special files are excluded.</p> <p>This function is restricted to superusers and members of the <code>pg_monitor</code> role by default, but other users can be granted <code>EXECUTE</code> to run the function.</p>
<code>pg_ls_replslotdir ( slot_name text ) → setof record ( name text, size bigint, modification timestamp with time zone )</code>	<p>Returns the name, size, and last modification time (mtime) of each ordinary file in the server's <code>pg_replslot/slot_name</code> directory, where <code>slot_name</code> is the name of the replication slot provided as input of the function. Filenames beginning with a dot, directories, and other special files are excluded.</p> <p>This function is restricted to superusers and members of the <code>pg_monitor</code> role by default, but other users can be granted <code>EXECUTE</code> to run the function.</p>
<code>pg_ls_archive_statusdir () → setof record ( name text, size bigint, modification timestamp with time zone )</code>	<p>Returns the name, size, and last modification time (mtime) of each ordinary file in the server's WAL archive status directory (<code>pg_wal/archive_status</code>). Filenames beginning with a dot, directories, and other special files are excluded.</p> <p>This function is restricted to superusers and members of the <code>pg_monitor</code> role by default, but other users can be granted <code>EXECUTE</code> to run the function.</p>
<code>pg_ls_tmpdir ( [ tablespace oid ] ) → setof record ( name text, size bigint, modification timestamp with time zone )</code>	<p>Returns the name, size, and last modification time (mtime) of each ordinary file in the temporary file directory for the specified <code>tablespace</code>. If <code>tablespace</code> is not provided, the <code>pg_default</code> tablespace is examined. Filenames beginning with a dot, directories, and other special files are excluded.</p> <p>This function is restricted to superusers and members of the <code>pg_monitor</code> role by default, but other users can be granted <code>EXECUTE</code> to run the function.</p>
<code>pg_read_file ( filename text [, offset bigint, length bigint ] [, missing_ok boolean ] ) → text</code>	<p>Returns all or part of a text file, starting at the given byte <code>offset</code>, returning at most <code>length</code> bytes (less if the end of file is reached first). If <code>offset</code> is negative, it is relative to the end of the file. If <code>offset</code> and <code>length</code> are omitted, the entire file is returned. The bytes read from the file are interpreted as a string in the database's encoding; an error is thrown if they are not valid in that encoding.</p> <p>This function is restricted to superusers by default, but other users can be granted <code>EXECUTE</code> to run the function.</p>
<code>pg_read_binary_file ( filename text [, offset bigint, length bigint ] [, missing_ok boolean ] ) → bytea</code>	<p>Returns all or part of a file. This function is identical to <code>pg_read_file</code> except that it can read arbitrary binary data, returning the result as <code>bytea</code> not <code>text</code>; accordingly, no encoding checks are performed.</p> <p>This function is restricted to superusers by default, but other users can be granted <code>EXECUTE</code> to run the function.</p> <p>In combination with the <code>convert_from</code> function, this function can be used to read a text file in a specified encoding and convert to the database's encoding:</p> <pre>SELECT   convert_from(pg_read_binary_file('file_in_utf8.txt'),     'UTF8');</pre>

Function	Description
<code>pg_stat_file ( filename text [, missing_ok boolean ] ) → record ( size bigint, access timestamp with time zone, modification timestamp with time zone, change timestamp with time zone, creation timestamp with time zone, isdir boolean )</code>	Returns a record containing the file's size, last access time stamp, last modification time stamp, last file status change time stamp (Unix platforms only), file creation time stamp (Windows only), and a flag indicating if it is a directory. This function is restricted to superusers by default, but other users can be granted EXECUTE to run the function.

## 9.27.10. Advisory Lock Functions

The functions shown in Table 9.102 manage advisory locks. For details about proper use of these functions, see Section 13.3.5.

All these functions are intended to be used to lock application-defined resources, which can be identified either by a single 64-bit key value or two 32-bit key values (note that these two key spaces do not overlap). If another session already holds a conflicting lock on the same resource identifier, the functions will either wait until the resource becomes available, or return a `false` result, as appropriate for the function. Locks can be either shared or exclusive: a shared lock does not conflict with other shared locks on the same resource, only with exclusive locks. Locks can be taken at session level (so that they are held until released or the session ends) or at transaction level (so that they are held until the current transaction ends; there is no provision for manual release). Multiple session-level lock requests stack, so that if the same resource identifier is locked three times there must then be three unlock requests to release the resource in advance of session end.

**Table 9.102. Advisory Lock Functions**

Function	Description
<code>pg_advisory_lock ( key bigint ) → void</code> <code>pg_advisory_lock ( key1 integer, key2 integer ) → void</code>	Obtains an exclusive session-level advisory lock, waiting if necessary.
<code>pg_advisory_lock_shared ( key bigint ) → void</code> <code>pg_advisory_lock_shared ( key1 integer, key2 integer ) → void</code>	Obtains a shared session-level advisory lock, waiting if necessary.
<code>pg_advisory_unlock ( key bigint ) → boolean</code> <code>pg_advisory_unlock ( key1 integer, key2 integer ) → boolean</code>	Releases a previously-acquired exclusive session-level advisory lock. Returns <code>true</code> if the lock is successfully released. If the lock was not held, <code>false</code> is returned, and in addition, an SQL warning will be reported by the server.
<code>pg_advisory_unlock_all () → void</code>	Releases all session-level advisory locks held by the current session. (This function is implicitly invoked at session end, even if the client disconnects ungracefully.)
<code>pg_advisory_unlock_shared ( key bigint ) → boolean</code> <code>pg_advisory_unlock_shared ( key1 integer, key2 integer ) → boolean</code>	Releases a previously-acquired shared session-level advisory lock. Returns <code>true</code> if the lock is successfully released. If the lock was not held, <code>false</code> is returned, and in addition, an SQL warning will be reported by the server.
<code>pg_advisory_xact_lock ( key bigint ) → void</code>	

Function	Description
<code>pg_advisory_xact_lock ( key1 integer, key2 integer ) → void</code>	Obtains an exclusive transaction-level advisory lock, waiting if necessary.
<code>pg_advisory_xact_lock_shared ( key bigint ) → void</code> <code>pg_advisory_xact_lock_shared ( key1 integer, key2 integer ) → void</code>	Obtains a shared transaction-level advisory lock, waiting if necessary.
<code>pg_try_advisory_lock ( key bigint ) → boolean</code> <code>pg_try_advisory_lock ( key1 integer, key2 integer ) → boolean</code>	Obtains an exclusive session-level advisory lock if available. This will either obtain the lock immediately and return <code>true</code> , or return <code>false</code> without waiting if the lock cannot be acquired immediately.
<code>pg_try_advisory_lock_shared ( key bigint ) → boolean</code> <code>pg_try_advisory_lock_shared ( key1 integer, key2 integer ) → boolean</code>	Obtains a shared session-level advisory lock if available. This will either obtain the lock immediately and return <code>true</code> , or return <code>false</code> without waiting if the lock cannot be acquired immediately.
<code>pg_try_advisory_xact_lock ( key bigint ) → boolean</code> <code>pg_try_advisory_xact_lock ( key1 integer, key2 integer ) → boolean</code>	Obtains an exclusive transaction-level advisory lock if available. This will either obtain the lock immediately and return <code>true</code> , or return <code>false</code> without waiting if the lock cannot be acquired immediately.
<code>pg_try_advisory_xact_lock_shared ( key bigint ) → boolean</code> <code>pg_try_advisory_xact_lock_shared ( key1 integer, key2 integer ) → boolean</code>	Obtains a shared transaction-level advisory lock if available. This will either obtain the lock immediately and return <code>true</code> , or return <code>false</code> without waiting if the lock cannot be acquired immediately.

## 9.28. Trigger Functions

While many uses of triggers involve user-written trigger functions, PostgreSQL provides a few built-in trigger functions that can be used directly in user-defined triggers. These are summarized in Table 9.103. (Additional built-in trigger functions exist, which implement foreign key constraints and deferred index constraints. Those are not documented here since users need not use them directly.)

For more information about creating triggers, see `CREATE TRIGGER`.

**Table 9.103. Built-In Trigger Functions**

Function	Description	Example Usage
<code>suppress_redundant_updates_trigger () → trigger</code>	Suppresses do-nothing update operations. See below for details.	<code>CREATE TRIGGER ... suppress_redundant_updates_trigger()</code>
<code>tsvector_update_trigger () → trigger</code>	Automatically updates a <code>tsvector</code> column from associated plain-text document column(s). The text search configuration to use is specified by name as a trigger argument. See Section 12.4.3 for details.	

Function
<b>Description</b>
<b>Example Usage</b>
<pre>CREATE TRIGGER ... tsvector_update_trigger(tsvcol, 'pg_catalog.swedish', title, body)</pre>
<pre>tsvector_update_trigger_column() → trigger</pre> <p>Automatically updates a <code>tsvector</code> column from associated plain-text document column(s). The text search configuration to use is taken from a <code>regconfig</code> column of the table. See Section 12.4.3 for details.</p> <pre>CREATE TRIGGER ... tsvector_update_trigger_column(tsvcol, tsconfigcol, title, body)</pre>

The `suppress_redundant_updates_trigger` function, when applied as a row-level BEFORE UPDATE trigger, will prevent any update that does not actually change the data in the row from taking place. This overrides the normal behavior which always performs a physical row update regardless of whether or not the data has changed. (This normal behavior makes updates run faster, since no checking is required, and is also useful in certain cases.)

Ideally, you should avoid running updates that don't actually change the data in the record. Redundant updates can cost considerable unnecessary time, especially if there are lots of indexes to alter, and space in dead rows that will eventually have to be vacuumed. However, detecting such situations in client code is not always easy, or even possible, and writing expressions to detect them can be error-prone. An alternative is to use `suppress_redundant_updates_trigger`, which will skip updates that don't change the data. You should use this with care, however. The trigger takes a small but non-trivial time for each record, so if most of the records affected by updates do actually change, use of this trigger will make updates run slower on average.

The `suppress_redundant_updates_trigger` function can be added to a table like this:

```
CREATE TRIGGER z_min_update
BEFORE UPDATE ON tablename
FOR EACH ROW EXECUTE FUNCTION suppress_redundant_updates_trigger();
```

In most cases, you need to fire this trigger last for each row, so that it does not override other triggers that might wish to alter the row. Bearing in mind that triggers fire in name order, you would therefore choose a trigger name that comes after the name of any other trigger you might have on the table. (Hence the “z” prefix in the example.)

## 9.29. Event Trigger Functions

PostgreSQL provides these helper functions to retrieve information from event triggers.

For more information about event triggers, see Chapter 40.

### 9.29.1. Capturing Changes at Command End

```
pg_event_trigger_ddl_commands () → setof record
```

`pg_event_trigger_ddl_commands` returns a list of DDL commands executed by each user action, when invoked in a function attached to a `ddl_command_end` event trigger. If called in any other context, an error is raised. `pg_event_trigger_ddl_commands` returns one row for each base command executed; some commands that are a single SQL sentence may return more than one row. This function returns the following columns:

Name	Type	Description
classid	oid	OID of catalog the object belongs in
objid	oid	OID of the object itself
objsubid	integer	Sub-object ID (e.g., attribute number for a column)
command_tag	text	Command tag
object_type	text	Type of the object
schema_name	text	Name of the schema the object belongs in, if any; otherwise NULL. No quoting is applied.
object_identity	text	Text rendering of the object identity, schema-qualified. Each identifier included in the identity is quoted if necessary.
in_extension	boolean	True if the command is part of an extension script
command	pg_ddl_command	A complete representation of the command, in internal format. This cannot be output directly, but it can be passed to other functions to obtain different pieces of information about the command.

## 9.29.2. Processing Objects Dropped by a DDL Command

`pg_event_trigger_dropped_objects () → setof record`

`pg_event_trigger_dropped_objects` returns a list of all objects dropped by the command in whose `sql_drop` event it is called. If called in any other context, an error is raised. This function returns the following columns:

Name	Type	Description
classid	oid	OID of catalog the object belonged in
objid	oid	OID of the object itself
objsubid	integer	Sub-object ID (e.g., attribute number for a column)
original	boolean	True if this was one of the root object(s) of the deletion
normal	boolean	True if there was a normal dependency relationship in the dependency graph leading to this object
is_temporary	boolean	True if this was a temporary object
object_type	text	Type of the object



Name	Type	Description
schema_name	text	Name of the schema the object belonged in, if any; otherwise NULL. No quoting is applied.
object_name	text	Name of the object, if the combination of schema and name can be used as a unique identifier for the object; otherwise NULL. No quoting is applied, and name is never schema-qualified.
object_identity	text	Text rendering of the object identity, schema-qualified. Each identifier included in the identity is quoted if necessary.
address_names	text[]	An array that, together with object_type and address_args, can be used by the pg_get_object_address function to recreate the object address in a remote server containing an identically named object of the same kind.
address_args	text[]	Complement for address_names

The `pg_event_trigger_dropped_objects` function can be used in an event trigger like this:

```
CREATE FUNCTION test_event_trigger_for_drops()
    RETURNS event_trigger LANGUAGE plpgsql AS $$
DECLARE
    obj record;
BEGIN
    FOR obj IN SELECT * FROM pg_event_trigger_dropped_objects()
    LOOP
        RAISE NOTICE '% dropped object: % %.% %',
            tg_tag,
            obj.object_type,
            obj.schema_name,
            obj.object_name,
            obj.object_identity;
    END LOOP;
END;
$$;
CREATE EVENT TRIGGER test_event_trigger_for_drops
    ON sql_drop
    EXECUTE FUNCTION test_event_trigger_for_drops();
```

### 9.29.3. Handling a Table Rewrite Event

The functions shown in Table 9.104 provide information about a table for which a `table_rewrite` event has just been called. If called in any other context, an error is raised.

**Table 9.104. Table Rewrite Information Functions**

Function	Description
<code>pg_event_trigger_table_rewrite_oid() → oid</code>	Returns the OID of the table about to be rewritten.
<code>pg_event_trigger_table_rewrite_reason() → integer</code>	Returns a code explaining the reason(s) for rewriting. The exact meaning of the codes is release dependent.

These functions can be used in an event trigger like this:

```
CREATE FUNCTION test_event_trigger_table_rewrite_oid()
  RETURNS event_trigger
  LANGUAGE plpgsql AS
$$
BEGIN
  RAISE NOTICE 'rewriting table % for reason %',
    pg_event_trigger_table_rewrite_oid()::regclass,
    pg_event_trigger_table_rewrite_reason();
END;
$$;

CREATE EVENT TRIGGER test_table_rewrite_oid
  ON table_rewrite
  EXECUTE FUNCTION test_event_trigger_table_rewrite_oid();
```

## 9.30. Statistics Information Functions

PostgreSQL provides a function to inspect complex statistics defined using the `CREATE STATISTICS` command.

### 9.30.1. Inspecting MCV Lists

`pg_mcv_list_items ( pg_mcv_list ) → setof record`

`pg_mcv_list_items` returns a set of records describing all items stored in a multi-column MCV list. It returns the following columns:

Name	Type	Description
<code>index</code>	<code>integer</code>	index of the item in the MCV list
<code>values</code>	<code>text[]</code>	values stored in the MCV item
<code>nulls</code>	<code>boolean[]</code>	flags identifying NULL values
<code>frequency</code>	<code>double precision</code>	frequency of this MCV item
<code>base_frequency</code>	<code>double precision</code>	base frequency of this MCV item

The `pg_mcv_list_items` function can be used like this:

```
SELECT m.* FROM pg_statistic_ext join pg_statistic_ext_data on (oid
= stxoid),
        pg_mcv_list_items(stxdmcv) m WHERE stxname =
'stts';
```

Values of the `pg_mcv_list` type can be obtained only from the `pg_statistic_ext_data.stxdmcv` column.

---

# Chapter 10. Type Conversion

SQL statements can, intentionally or not, require the mixing of different data types in the same expression. PostgreSQL has extensive facilities for evaluating mixed-type expressions.

In many cases a user does not need to understand the details of the type conversion mechanism. However, implicit conversions done by PostgreSQL can affect the results of a query. When necessary, these results can be tailored by using *explicit* type conversion.

This chapter introduces the PostgreSQL type conversion mechanisms and conventions. Refer to the relevant sections in Chapter 8 and Chapter 9 for more information on specific data types and allowed functions and operators.

## 10.1. Overview

SQL is a strongly typed language. That is, every data item has an associated data type which determines its behavior and allowed usage. PostgreSQL has an extensible type system that is more general and flexible than other SQL implementations. Hence, most type conversion behavior in PostgreSQL is governed by general rules rather than by ad hoc heuristics. This allows the use of mixed-type expressions even with user-defined types.

The PostgreSQL scanner/parser divides lexical elements into five fundamental categories: integers, non-integer numbers, strings, identifiers, and key words. Constants of most non-numeric types are first classified as strings. The SQL language definition allows specifying type names with strings, and this mechanism can be used in PostgreSQL to start the parser down the correct path. For example, the query:

```
SELECT text 'Origin' AS "label", point '(0,0)' AS "value";
```

label	value
Origin	(0,0)

(1 row)

has two literal constants, of type `text` and `point`. If a type is not specified for a string literal, then the placeholder type `unknown` is assigned initially, to be resolved in later stages as described below.

There are four fundamental SQL constructs requiring distinct type conversion rules in the PostgreSQL parser:

### Function calls

Much of the PostgreSQL type system is built around a rich set of functions. Functions can have one or more arguments. Since PostgreSQL permits function overloading, the function name alone does not uniquely identify the function to be called; the parser must select the right function based on the data types of the supplied arguments.

### Operators

PostgreSQL allows expressions with prefix (one-argument) operators, as well as infix (two-argument) operators. Like functions, operators can be overloaded, so the same problem of selecting the right operator exists.

### Value Storage

SQL `INSERT` and `UPDATE` statements place the results of expressions into a table. The expressions in the statement must be matched up with, and perhaps converted to, the types of the target columns.

### UNION, CASE, and related constructs

Since all query results from a unionized `SELECT` statement must appear in a single set of columns, the types of the results of each `SELECT` clause must be matched up and converted to a uniform set. Similarly, the result expressions of a `CASE` construct must be converted to a common type so that the `CASE` expression as a whole has a known output type. Some other constructs, such as `ARRAY[ ]` and the `GREATEST` and `LEAST` functions, likewise require determination of a common type for several subexpressions.

The system catalogs store information about which conversions, or *casts*, exist between which data types, and how to perform those conversions. Additional casts can be added by the user with the `CREATE CAST` command. (This is usually done in conjunction with defining new data types. The set of casts between built-in types has been carefully crafted and is best not altered.)

An additional heuristic provided by the parser allows improved determination of the proper casting behavior among groups of types that have implicit casts. Data types are divided into several basic *type categories*, including boolean, numeric, string, bitstring, datetime, timespan, geometric, network, and user-defined. (For a list see Table 53.65; but note it is also possible to create custom type categories.) Within each category there can be one or more *preferred types*, which are preferred when there is a choice of possible types. With careful selection of preferred types and available implicit casts, it is possible to ensure that ambiguous expressions (those with multiple candidate parsing solutions) can be resolved in a useful way.

All type conversion rules are designed with several principles in mind:

- Implicit conversions should never have surprising or unpredictable outcomes.
- There should be no extra overhead in the parser or executor if a query does not need implicit type conversion. That is, if a query is well-formed and the types already match, then the query should execute without spending extra time in the parser and without introducing unnecessary implicit conversion calls in the query.
- Additionally, if a query usually requires an implicit conversion for a function, and if then the user defines a new function with the correct argument types, the parser should use this new function and no longer do implicit conversion to use the old function.

## 10.2. Operators

The specific operator that is referenced by an operator expression is determined using the following procedure. Note that this procedure is indirectly affected by the precedence of the operators involved, since that will determine which sub-expressions are taken to be the inputs of which operators. See Section 4.1.6 for more information.

### Operator Type Resolution

1. Select the operators to be considered from the `pg_operator` system catalog. If a non-schema-qualified operator name was used (the usual case), the operators considered are those with the matching name and argument count that are visible in the current search path (see Section 5.9.3). If a qualified operator name was given, only operators in the specified schema are considered.
  - (Optional) If the search path finds multiple operators with identical argument types, only the one appearing earliest in the path is considered. Operators with different argument types are considered on an equal footing regardless of search path position.
2. Check for an operator accepting exactly the input argument types. If one exists (there can be only one exact match in the set of operators considered), use it. Lack of an exact match creates a

security hazard when calling, via qualified name<sup>1</sup> (not typical), any operator found in a schema that permits untrusted users to create objects. In such situations, cast arguments to force an exact match.

- a. (Optional) If one argument of a binary operator invocation is of the unknown type, then assume it is the same type as the other argument for this check. Invocations involving two unknown inputs, or a prefix operator with an unknown input, will never find a match at this step.
  - b. (Optional) If one argument of a binary operator invocation is of the unknown type and the other is of a domain type, next check to see if there is an operator accepting exactly the domain's base type on both sides; if so, use it.
3. Look for the best match.
- a. Discard candidate operators for which the input types do not match and cannot be converted (using an implicit conversion) to match. unknown literals are assumed to be convertible to anything for this purpose. If only one candidate remains, use it; else continue to the next step.
  - b. If any input argument is of a domain type, treat it as being of the domain's base type for all subsequent steps. This ensures that domains act like their base types for purposes of ambiguous-operator resolution.
  - c. Run through all candidates and keep those with the most exact matches on input types. Keep all candidates if none have exact matches. If only one candidate remains, use it; else continue to the next step.
  - d. Run through all candidates and keep those that accept preferred types (of the input data type's type category) at the most positions where type conversion will be required. Keep all candidates if none accept preferred types. If only one candidate remains, use it; else continue to the next step.
  - e. If any input arguments are unknown, check the type categories accepted at those argument positions by the remaining candidates. At each position, select the `string` category if any candidate accepts that category. (This bias towards string is appropriate since an unknown-type literal looks like a string.) Otherwise, if all the remaining candidates accept the same type category, select that category; otherwise fail because the correct choice cannot be deduced without more clues. Now discard candidates that do not accept the selected type category. Furthermore, if any candidate accepts a preferred type in that category, discard candidates that accept non-preferred types for that argument. Keep all candidates if none survive these tests. If only one candidate remains, use it; else continue to the next step.
  - f. If there are both unknown and known-type arguments, and all the known-type arguments have the same type, assume that the unknown arguments are also of that type, and check which candidates can accept that type at the unknown-argument positions. If exactly one candidate passes this test, use it. Otherwise, fail.

Some examples follow.

### Example 10.1. Square Root Operator Type Resolution

There is only one square root operator (prefix `|/`) defined in the standard catalog, and it takes an argument of type `double precision`. The scanner assigns an initial type of `integer` to the argument in this query expression:

```
SELECT |/ 40 AS "square root of 40";
```

---

<sup>1</sup> The hazard does not arise with a non-schema-qualified name, because a search path containing schemas that permit untrusted users to create objects is not a secure schema usage pattern.

```
square root of 40
-----
6.324555320336759
(1 row)
```

So the parser does a type conversion on the operand and the query is equivalent to:

```
SELECT || CAST(40 AS double precision) AS "square root of 40";
```

### Example 10.2. String Concatenation Operator Type Resolution

A string-like syntax is used for working with string types and for working with complex extension types. Strings with unspecified type are matched with likely operator candidates.

An example with one unspecified argument:

```
SELECT text 'abc' || 'def' AS "text and unknown";

text and unknown
-----
abcdef
(1 row)
```

In this case the parser looks to see if there is an operator taking `text` for both arguments. Since there is, it assumes that the second argument should be interpreted as type `text`.

Here is a concatenation of two values of unspecified types:

```
SELECT 'abc' || 'def' AS "unspecified";

unspecified
-----
abcdef
(1 row)
```

In this case there is no initial hint for which type to use, since no types are specified in the query. So, the parser looks for all candidate operators and finds that there are candidates accepting both string-category and bit-string-category inputs. Since string category is preferred when available, that category is selected, and then the preferred type for strings, `text`, is used as the specific type to resolve the unknown-type literals as.

### Example 10.3. Absolute-Value and Negation Operator Type Resolution

The PostgreSQL operator catalog has several entries for the prefix operator `@`, all of which implement absolute-value operations for various numeric data types. One of these entries is for type `float8`, which is the preferred type in the numeric category. Therefore, PostgreSQL will use that entry when faced with an unknown input:

```
SELECT @ '-4.5' AS "abs";

abs
-----
4.5
(1 row)
```

Here the system has implicitly resolved the unknown-type literal as type `float8` before applying the chosen operator. We can verify that `float8` and not some other type was used:

```
SELECT @ '-4.5e500' AS "abs";
```

```
ERROR:  "-4.5e500" is out of range for type double precision
```

On the other hand, the prefix operator `~` (bitwise negation) is defined only for integer data types, not for `float8`. So, if we try a similar case with `~`, we get:

```
SELECT ~ '20' AS "negation";
```

```
ERROR:  operator is not unique: ~ "unknown"
```

```
HINT:  Could not choose a best candidate operator. You might need
to add
explicit type casts.
```

This happens because the system cannot decide which of the several possible `~` operators should be preferred. We can help it out with an explicit cast:

```
SELECT ~ CAST('20' AS int8) AS "negation";
```

```
negation
-----
      -21
(1 row)
```

### Example 10.4. Array Inclusion Operator Type Resolution

Here is another example of resolving an operator with one known and one unknown input:

```
SELECT array[1,2] <@ '{1,2,3}' as "is subset";
```

```
is subset
-----
       t
(1 row)
```

The PostgreSQL operator catalog has several entries for the infix operator `<@`, but the only two that could possibly accept an integer array on the left-hand side are array inclusion (`anyarray <@ anyarray`) and range inclusion (`anyelement <@ anyrange`). Since none of these polymorphic pseudo-types (see Section 8.21) are considered preferred, the parser cannot resolve the ambiguity on that basis. However, Step 3.f tells it to assume that the unknown-type literal is of the same type as the other input, that is, integer array. Now only one of the two operators can match, so array inclusion is selected. (Had range inclusion been selected, we would have gotten an error, because the string does not have the right format to be a range literal.)

### Example 10.5. Custom Operator on a Domain Type

Users sometimes try to declare operators applying just to a domain type. This is possible but is not nearly as useful as it might seem, because the operator resolution rules are designed to select operators applying to the domain's base type. As an example consider

```
CREATE DOMAIN mytext AS text CHECK(...);
CREATE FUNCTION mytext_eq_text (mytext, text) RETURNS boolean
AS ...;
```



```
CREATE OPERATOR = (procedure=mytext_eq_text, leftarg=mytext,
  rightarg=text);
CREATE TABLE mytable (val mytext);

SELECT * FROM mytable WHERE val = 'foo';
```

This query will not use the custom operator. The parser will first see if there is a `mytext = mytext` operator (Step 2.a), which there is not; then it will consider the domain's base type `text`, and see if there is a `text = text` operator (Step 2.b), which there is; so it resolves the unknown-type literal as `text` and uses the `text = text` operator. The only way to get the custom operator to be used is to explicitly cast the literal:

```
SELECT * FROM mytable WHERE val = text 'foo';
```

so that the `mytext = text` operator is found immediately according to the exact-match rule. If the best-match rules are reached, they actively discriminate against operators on domain types. If they did not, such an operator would create too many ambiguous-operator failures, because the casting rules always consider a domain as castable to or from its base type, and so the domain operator would be considered usable in all the same cases as a similarly-named operator on the base type.

## 10.3. Functions

The specific function that is referenced by a function call is determined using the following procedure.

### Function Type Resolution

1. Select the functions to be considered from the `pg_proc` system catalog. If a non-schema-qualified function name was used, the functions considered are those with the matching name and argument count that are visible in the current search path (see Section 5.9.3). If a qualified function name was given, only functions in the specified schema are considered.
  - a. (Optional) If the search path finds multiple functions of identical argument types, only the one appearing earliest in the path is considered. Functions of different argument types are considered on an equal footing regardless of search path position.
  - b. (Optional) If a function is declared with a `VARIADIC` array parameter, and the call does not use the `VARIADIC` keyword, then the function is treated as if the array parameter were replaced by one or more occurrences of its element type, as needed to match the call. After such expansion the function might have effective argument types identical to some non-variadic function. In that case the function appearing earlier in the search path is used, or if the two functions are in the same schema, the non-variadic one is preferred.

This creates a security hazard when calling, via qualified name <sup>2</sup>, a variadic function found in a schema that permits untrusted users to create objects. A malicious user can take control and execute arbitrary SQL functions as though you executed them. Substitute a call bearing the `VARIADIC` keyword, which bypasses this hazard. Calls populating `VARIADIC` "any" parameters often have no equivalent formulation containing the `VARIADIC` keyword. To issue those calls safely, the function's schema must permit only trusted users to create objects.

- c. (Optional) Functions that have default values for parameters are considered to match any call that omits zero or more of the defaultable parameter positions. If more than one such function matches a call, the one appearing earliest in the search path is used. If there are two or more such functions in the same schema with identical parameter types in the non-

---

<sup>2</sup> The hazard does not arise with a non-schema-qualified name, because a search path containing schemas that permit untrusted users to create objects is not a secure schema usage pattern.

defaulted positions (which is possible if they have different sets of defaultable parameters), the system will not be able to determine which to prefer, and so an “ambiguous function call” error will result if no better match to the call can be found.

This creates an availability hazard when calling, via qualified name<sup>2</sup>, any function found in a schema that permits untrusted users to create objects. A malicious user can create a function with the name of an existing function, replicating that function's parameters and appending novel parameters having default values. This precludes new calls to the original function. To forestall this hazard, place functions in schemas that permit only trusted users to create objects.

2. Check for a function accepting exactly the input argument types. If one exists (there can be only one exact match in the set of functions considered), use it. Lack of an exact match creates a security hazard when calling, via qualified name<sup>2</sup>, a function found in a schema that permits untrusted users to create objects. In such situations, cast arguments to force an exact match. (Cases involving `unknown` will never find a match at this step.)
3. If no exact match is found, see if the function call appears to be a special type conversion request. This happens if the function call has just one argument and the function name is the same as the (internal) name of some data type. Furthermore, the function argument must be either an `unknown`-type literal, or a type that is binary-coercible to the named data type, or a type that could be converted to the named data type by applying that type's I/O functions (that is, the conversion is either to or from one of the standard string types). When these conditions are met, the function call is treated as a form of `CAST` specification.<sup>3</sup>
4. Look for the best match.
  - a. Discard candidate functions for which the input types do not match and cannot be converted (using an implicit conversion) to match. `unknown` literals are assumed to be convertible to anything for this purpose. If only one candidate remains, use it; else continue to the next step.
  - b. If any input argument is of a domain type, treat it as being of the domain's base type for all subsequent steps. This ensures that domains act like their base types for purposes of ambiguous-function resolution.
  - c. Run through all candidates and keep those with the most exact matches on input types. Keep all candidates if none have exact matches. If only one candidate remains, use it; else continue to the next step.
  - d. Run through all candidates and keep those that accept preferred types (of the input data type's type category) at the most positions where type conversion will be required. Keep all candidates if none accept preferred types. If only one candidate remains, use it; else continue to the next step.
  - e. If any input arguments are `unknown`, check the type categories accepted at those argument positions by the remaining candidates. At each position, select the `string` category if any candidate accepts that category. (This bias towards `string` is appropriate since an `unknown`-type literal looks like a string.) Otherwise, if all the remaining candidates accept the same type category, select that category; otherwise fail because the correct choice cannot be deduced without more clues. Now discard candidates that do not accept the selected type category. Furthermore, if any candidate accepts a preferred type in that category, discard candidates that accept non-preferred types for that argument. Keep all candidates if none survive these tests. If only one candidate remains, use it; else continue to the next step.
  - f. If there are both `unknown` and known-type arguments, and all the known-type arguments have the same type, assume that the `unknown` arguments are also of that type, and check

---

<sup>3</sup> The reason for this step is to support function-style cast specifications in cases where there is not an actual cast function. If there is a cast function, it is conventionally named after its output type, and so there is no need to have a special case. See `CREATE CAST` for additional commentary.

which candidates can accept that type at the unknown-argument positions. If exactly one candidate passes this test, use it. Otherwise, fail.

Note that the “best match” rules are identical for operator and function type resolution. Some examples follow.

### Example 10.6. Rounding Function Argument Type Resolution

There is only one `round` function that takes two arguments; it takes a first argument of type `numeric` and a second argument of type `integer`. So the following query automatically converts the first argument of type `integer` to `numeric`:

```
SELECT round(4, 4);
```

```
round
-----
4.0000
(1 row)
```

That query is actually transformed by the parser to:

```
SELECT round(CAST (4 AS numeric), 4);
```

Since numeric constants with decimal points are initially assigned the type `numeric`, the following query will require no type conversion and therefore might be slightly more efficient:

```
SELECT round(4.0, 4);
```

### Example 10.7. Variadic Function Resolution

```
CREATE FUNCTION public.variadic_example(VARIADIC numeric[]) RETURNS
int
    LANGUAGE sql AS 'SELECT 1';
CREATE FUNCTION
```

This function accepts, but does not require, the `VARIADIC` keyword. It tolerates both integer and numeric arguments:

```
SELECT public.variadic_example(0),
       public.variadic_example(0.0),
       public.variadic_example(VARIADIC array[0.0]);
 variadic_example | variadic_example | variadic_example
-----+-----+-----
1 | 1 | 1
(1 row)
```

However, the first and second calls will prefer more-specific functions, if available:

```
CREATE FUNCTION public.variadic_example(numeric) RETURNS int
    LANGUAGE sql AS 'SELECT 2';
CREATE FUNCTION

CREATE FUNCTION public.variadic_example(int) RETURNS int
```

```

LANGUAGE sql AS 'SELECT 3';
CREATE FUNCTION

SELECT public.variadic_example(0),
       public.variadic_example(0.0),
       public.variadic_example(VARIADIC array[0.0]);
 variadic_example | variadic_example | variadic_example
-----+-----+-----
              3 |              2 |              1
(1 row)

```

Given the default configuration and only the first function existing, the first and second calls are insecure. Any user could intercept them by creating the second or third function. By matching the argument type exactly and using the VARIADIC keyword, the third call is secure.

### Example 10.8. Substring Function Type Resolution

There are several `substr` functions, one of which takes types `text` and `integer`. If called with a string constant of unspecified type, the system chooses the candidate function that accepts an argument of the preferred category `string` (namely of type `text`).

```

SELECT substr('1234', 3);

 substr
-----
      34
(1 row)

```

If the string is declared to be of type `varchar`, as might be the case if it comes from a table, then the parser will try to convert it to become `text`:

```

SELECT substr(varchar '1234', 3);

 substr
-----
      34
(1 row)

```

This is transformed by the parser to effectively become:

```

SELECT substr(CAST (varchar '1234' AS text), 3);

```

#### Note

The parser learns from the `pg_cast` catalog that `text` and `varchar` are binary-compatible, meaning that one can be passed to a function that accepts the other without doing any physical conversion. Therefore, no type conversion call is really inserted in this case.

And, if the function is called with an argument of type `integer`, the parser will try to convert that to `text`:

```

SELECT substr(1234, 3);
ERROR:  function substr(integer, integer) does not exist

```

HINT: No function matches the given name and argument types. You might need to add explicit type casts.

This does not work because `integer` does not have an implicit cast to `text`. An explicit cast will work, however:

```
SELECT substr(CAST (1234 AS text), 3);

 substr
-----
      34
(1 row)
```

## 10.4. Value Storage

Values to be inserted into a table are converted to the destination column's data type according to the following steps.

### Value Storage Type Conversion

1. Check for an exact match with the target.
2. Otherwise, try to convert the expression to the target type. This is possible if an *assignment cast* between the two types is registered in the `pg_cast` catalog (see `CREATE CAST`). Alternatively, if the expression is an unknown-type literal, the contents of the literal string will be fed to the input conversion routine for the target type.
3. Check to see if there is a sizing cast for the target type. A sizing cast is a cast from that type to itself. If one is found in the `pg_cast` catalog, apply it to the expression before storing into the destination column. The implementation function for such a cast always takes an extra parameter of type `integer`, which receives the destination column's `atttypmod` value (typically its declared length, although the interpretation of `atttypmod` varies for different data types), and it may take a third `boolean` parameter that says whether the cast is explicit or implicit. The cast function is responsible for applying any length-dependent semantics such as size checking or truncation.

### Example 10.9. character Storage Type Conversion

For a target column declared as `character(20)` the following statement shows that the stored value is sized correctly:

```
CREATE TABLE vv (v character(20));
INSERT INTO vv SELECT 'abc' || 'def';
SELECT v, octet_length(v) FROM vv;
```

v	octet_length
abcdef	20

(1 row)

What has really happened here is that the two unknown literals are resolved to `text` by default, allowing the `||` operator to be resolved as `text` concatenation. Then the `text` result of the operator is converted to `bpchar` (“blank-padded char”, the internal name of the `character` data type) to match the target column type. (Since the conversion from `text` to `bpchar` is binary-coercible, this conversion does not insert any real function call.) Finally, the sizing function `bpchar(bpchar,`

`integer`, `boolean`) is found in the system catalog and applied to the operator's result and the stored column length. This type-specific function performs the required length check and addition of padding spaces.

## 10.5. UNION, CASE, and Related Constructs

SQL UNION constructs must match up possibly dissimilar types to become a single result set. The resolution algorithm is applied separately to each output column of a union query. The INTERSECT and EXCEPT constructs resolve dissimilar types in the same way as UNION. Some other constructs, including CASE, ARRAY, VALUES, and the GREATEST and LEAST functions, use the identical algorithm to match up their component expressions and select a result data type.

### Type Resolution for UNION, CASE, and Related Constructs

1. If all inputs are of the same type, and it is not unknown, resolve as that type.
2. If any input is of a domain type, treat it as being of the domain's base type for all subsequent steps.<sup>4</sup>
3. If all inputs are of type unknown, resolve as type `text` (the preferred type of the string category). Otherwise, unknown inputs are ignored for the purposes of the remaining rules.
4. If the non-unknown inputs are not all of the same type category, fail.
5. Select the first non-unknown input type as the candidate type, then consider each other non-unknown input type, left to right.<sup>5</sup> If the candidate type can be implicitly converted to the other type, but not vice-versa, select the other type as the new candidate type. Then continue considering the remaining inputs. If, at any stage of this process, a preferred type is selected, stop considering additional inputs.
6. Convert all inputs to the final candidate type. Fail if there is not an implicit conversion from a given input type to the candidate type.

Some examples follow.

#### Example 10.10. Type Resolution with Underspecified Types in a Union

```
SELECT text 'a' AS "text" UNION SELECT 'b';
```

```
text
-----
a
b
(2 rows)
```

Here, the unknown-type literal `'b'` will be resolved to type `text`.

#### Example 10.11. Type Resolution in a Simple Union

```
SELECT 1.2 AS "numeric" UNION SELECT 1;
```

---

<sup>4</sup> Somewhat like the treatment of domain inputs for operators and functions, this behavior allows a domain type to be preserved through a UNION or similar construct, so long as the user is careful to ensure that all inputs are implicitly or explicitly of that exact type. Otherwise the domain's base type will be used.

<sup>5</sup> For historical reasons, CASE treats its ELSE clause (if any) as the “first” input, with the THEN clauses(s) considered after that. In all other cases, “left to right” means the order in which the expressions appear in the query text.

```
numeric
-----
      1
     1.2
(2 rows)
```

The literal `1.2` is of type `numeric`, and the integer value `1` can be cast implicitly to `numeric`, so that type is used.

### Example 10.12. Type Resolution in a Transposed Union

```
SELECT 1 AS "real" UNION SELECT CAST('2.2' AS REAL);
```

```
real
-----
      1
     2.2
(2 rows)
```

Here, since type `real` cannot be implicitly cast to `integer`, but `integer` can be implicitly cast to `real`, the union result type is resolved as `real`.

### Example 10.13. Type Resolution in a Nested Union

```
SELECT NULL UNION SELECT NULL UNION SELECT 1;
```

```
ERROR:  UNION types text and integer cannot be matched
```

This failure occurs because PostgreSQL treats multiple `UNION`s as a nest of pairwise operations; that is, this input is the same as

```
(SELECT NULL UNION SELECT NULL) UNION SELECT 1;
```

The inner `UNION` is resolved as emitting type `text`, according to the rules given above. Then the outer `UNION` has inputs of types `text` and `integer`, leading to the observed error. The problem can be fixed by ensuring that the leftmost `UNION` has at least one input of the desired result type.

`INTERSECT` and `EXCEPT` operations are likewise resolved pairwise. However, the other constructs described in this section consider all of their inputs in one resolution step.

## 10.6. SELECT Output Columns

The rules given in the preceding sections will result in assignment of non-unknown data types to all expressions in an SQL query, except for unspecified-type literals that appear as simple output columns of a `SELECT` command. For example, in

```
SELECT 'Hello World';
```

there is nothing to identify what type the string literal should be taken as. In this situation PostgreSQL will fall back to resolving the literal's type as `text`.

When the `SELECT` is one arm of a `UNION` (or `INTERSECT` or `EXCEPT`) construct, or when it appears within `INSERT ... SELECT`, this rule is not applied since rules given in preceding sections take precedence. The type of an unspecified-type literal can be taken from the other `UNION` arm in the first case, or from the destination column in the second case.

RETURNING lists are treated the same as SELECT output lists for this purpose.

**Note**

Prior to PostgreSQL 10, this rule did not exist, and unspecified-type literals in a SELECT output list were left as type `unknown`. That had assorted bad consequences, so it's been changed.



---

# Chapter 11. Indexes

Indexes are a common way to enhance database performance. An index allows the database server to find and retrieve specific rows much faster than it could do without an index. But indexes also add overhead to the database system as a whole, so they should be used sensibly.

## 11.1. Introduction

Suppose we have a table similar to this:

```
CREATE TABLE test1 (  
    id integer,  
    content varchar  
);
```

and the application issues many queries of the form:

```
SELECT content FROM test1 WHERE id = constant;
```

With no advance preparation, the system would have to scan the entire `test1` table, row by row, to find all matching entries. If there are many rows in `test1` and only a few rows (perhaps zero or one) that would be returned by such a query, this is clearly an inefficient method. But if the system has been instructed to maintain an index on the `id` column, it can use a more efficient method for locating matching rows. For instance, it might only have to walk a few levels deep into a search tree.

A similar approach is used in most non-fiction books: terms and concepts that are frequently looked up by readers are collected in an alphabetic index at the end of the book. The interested reader can scan the index relatively quickly and flip to the appropriate page(s), rather than having to read the entire book to find the material of interest. Just as it is the task of the author to anticipate the items that readers are likely to look up, it is the task of the database programmer to foresee which indexes will be useful.

The following command can be used to create an index on the `id` column, as discussed:

```
CREATE INDEX test1_id_index ON test1 (id);
```

The name `test1_id_index` can be chosen freely, but you should pick something that enables you to remember later what the index was for.

To remove an index, use the `DROP INDEX` command. Indexes can be added to and removed from tables at any time.

Once an index is created, no further intervention is required: the system will update the index when the table is modified, and it will use the index in queries when it thinks doing so would be more efficient than a sequential table scan. But you might have to run the `ANALYZE` command regularly to update statistics to allow the query planner to make educated decisions. See Chapter 14 for information about how to find out whether an index is used and when and why the planner might choose *not* to use an index.

Indexes can also benefit `UPDATE` and `DELETE` commands with search conditions. Indexes can moreover be used in join searches. Thus, an index defined on a column that is part of a join condition can also significantly speed up queries with joins.

In general, PostgreSQL indexes can be used to optimize queries that contain one or more `WHERE` or `JOIN` clauses of the form

*indexed-column indexable-operator comparison-value*

Here, the *indexed-column* is whatever column or expression the index has been defined on. The *indexable-operator* is an operator that is a member of the index's *operator class* for the indexed column. (More details about that appear below.) And the *comparison-value* can be any expression that is not volatile and does not reference the index's table.

In some cases the query planner can extract an indexable clause of this form from another SQL construct. A simple example is that if the original clause was

*comparison-value operator indexed-column*

then it can be flipped around into indexable form if the original *operator* has a commutator operator that is a member of the index's operator class.

Creating an index on a large table can take a long time. By default, PostgreSQL allows reads (SELECT statements) to occur on the table in parallel with index creation, but writes (INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE) are blocked until the index build is finished. In production environments this is often unacceptable. It is possible to allow writes to occur in parallel with index creation, but there are several caveats to be aware of — for more information see [Building Indexes Concurrently](#).

After an index is created, the system has to keep it synchronized with the table. This adds overhead to data manipulation operations. Indexes can also prevent the creation of heap-only tuples. Therefore indexes that are seldom or never used in queries should be removed.

## 11.2. Index Types

PostgreSQL provides several index types: B-tree, Hash, GiST, SP-GiST, GIN, BRIN, and the extension bloom. Each index type uses a different algorithm that is best suited to different types of indexable clauses. By default, the `CREATE INDEX` command creates B-tree indexes, which fit the most common situations. The other index types are selected by writing the keyword `USING` followed by the index type name. For example, to create a Hash index:

```
CREATE INDEX name ON table USING HASH (column);
```

### 11.2.1. B-Tree

B-trees can handle equality and range queries on data that can be sorted into some ordering. In particular, the PostgreSQL query planner will consider using a B-tree index whenever an indexed column is involved in a comparison using one of these operators:

<   <=   =   >=   >

Constructs equivalent to combinations of these operators, such as `BETWEEN` and `IN`, can also be implemented with a B-tree index search. Also, an `IS NULL` or `IS NOT NULL` condition on an index column can be used with a B-tree index.

The optimizer can also use a B-tree index for queries involving the pattern matching operators `LIKE` and `~` if the pattern is a constant and is anchored to the beginning of the string — for example, `col LIKE 'foo%'` or `col ~ '^foo'`, but not `col LIKE '%bar'`. However, if your database does not use the C locale you will need to create the index with a special operator class to support indexing of pattern-matching queries; see [Section 11.10](#) below. It is also possible to use B-tree indexes for `ILIKE` and `~*`, but only if the pattern starts with non-alphabetic characters, i.e., characters that are not affected by upper/lower case conversion.

B-tree indexes can also be used to retrieve data in sorted order. This is not always faster than a simple scan and sort, but it is often helpful.

## 11.2.2. Hash

Hash indexes store a 32-bit hash code derived from the value of the indexed column. Hence, such indexes can only handle simple equality comparisons. The query planner will consider using a hash index whenever an indexed column is involved in a comparison using the equal operator:

=

## 11.2.3. GiST

GiST indexes are not a single kind of index, but rather an infrastructure within which many different indexing strategies can be implemented. Accordingly, the particular operators with which a GiST index can be used vary depending on the indexing strategy (the *operator class*). As an example, the standard distribution of PostgreSQL includes GiST operator classes for several two-dimensional geometric data types, which support indexed queries using these operators:

<<   &<   &>   >>   <<|   &<|   |&>   |>>   @>   <@   ~=   &&

(See Section 9.11 for the meaning of these operators.) The GiST operator classes included in the standard distribution are documented in Table 68.1. Many other GiST operator classes are available in the `contrib` collection or as separate projects. For more information see Chapter 68.

GiST indexes are also capable of optimizing “nearest-neighbor” searches, such as

```
SELECT * FROM places ORDER BY location <-> point '(101,456)' LIMIT
10;
```

which finds the ten places closest to a given target point. The ability to do this is again dependent on the particular operator class being used. In Table 68.1, operators that can be used in this way are listed in the column “Ordering Operators”.

## 11.2.4. SP-GiST

SP-GiST indexes, like GiST indexes, offer an infrastructure that supports various kinds of searches. SP-GiST permits implementation of a wide range of different non-balanced disk-based data structures, such as quadrees, k-d trees, and radix trees (tries). As an example, the standard distribution of PostgreSQL includes SP-GiST operator classes for two-dimensional points, which support indexed queries using these operators:

<<   >>   ~=   <@   <<|   |>>

(See Section 9.11 for the meaning of these operators.) The SP-GiST operator classes included in the standard distribution are documented in Table 69.1. For more information see Chapter 69.

Like GiST, SP-GiST supports “nearest-neighbor” searches. For SP-GiST operator classes that support distance ordering, the corresponding operator is listed in the “Ordering Operators” column in Table 69.1.

## 11.2.5. GIN

GIN indexes are “inverted indexes” which are appropriate for data values that contain multiple component values, such as arrays. An inverted index contains a separate entry for each component value, and can efficiently handle queries that test for the presence of specific component values.

Like GiST and SP-GiST, GIN can support many different user-defined indexing strategies, and the particular operators with which a GIN index can be used vary depending on the indexing strategy. As an example, the standard distribution of PostgreSQL includes a GIN operator class for arrays, which supports indexed queries using these operators:

```
<@    @>    =    &&
```

(See Section 9.19 for the meaning of these operators.) The GIN operator classes included in the standard distribution are documented in Table 70.1. Many other GIN operator classes are available in the `contrib` collection or as separate projects. For more information see Chapter 70.

## 11.2.6. BRIN

BRIN indexes (a shorthand for Block Range Indexes) store summaries about the values stored in consecutive physical block ranges of a table. Thus, they are most effective for columns whose values are well-correlated with the physical order of the table rows. Like GiST, SP-GiST and GIN, BRIN can support many different indexing strategies, and the particular operators with which a BRIN index can be used vary depending on the indexing strategy. For data types that have a linear sort order, the indexed data corresponds to the minimum and maximum values of the values in the column for each block range. This supports indexed queries using these operators:

```
<    <=    =    >=    >
```

The BRIN operator classes included in the standard distribution are documented in Table 71.1. For more information see Chapter 71.

## 11.3. Multicolumn Indexes

An index can be defined on more than one column of a table. For example, if you have a table of this form:

```
CREATE TABLE test2 (  
    major int,  
    minor int,  
    name varchar  
);
```

(say, you keep your `/dev` directory in a database...) and you frequently issue queries like:

```
SELECT name FROM test2 WHERE major = constant AND minor = constant;
```

then it might be appropriate to define an index on the columns `major` and `minor` together, e.g.:

```
CREATE INDEX test2_mm_idx ON test2 (major, minor);
```

Currently, only the B-tree, GiST, GIN, and BRIN index types support multiple-key-column indexes. Whether there can be multiple key columns is independent of whether `INCLUDE` columns can be added to the index. Indexes can have up to 32 columns, including `INCLUDE` columns. (This limit can be altered when building PostgreSQL; see the file `pg_config_manual.h`.)

A multicolumn B-tree index can be used with query conditions that involve any subset of the index's columns, but the index is most efficient when there are constraints on the leading (leftmost) columns. The exact rule is that equality constraints on leading columns, plus any inequality constraints on the first column that does not have an equality constraint, will be used to limit the portion of the index that is scanned. Constraints on columns to the right of these columns are checked in the index, so they save visits to the table proper, but they do not reduce the portion of the index that has to be scanned. For example, given an index on (a, b, c) and a query condition `WHERE a = 5 AND b >= 42 AND c < 77`, the index would have to be scanned from the first entry with a = 5 and b = 42 up through the last entry with a = 5. Index entries with c >= 77 would be skipped, but they'd still have to be scanned through. This index could in principle be used for queries that have constraints on b and/or c with no constraint on a — but the entire index would have to be scanned, so in most cases the planner would prefer a sequential table scan over using the index.

A multicolumn GiST index can be used with query conditions that involve any subset of the index's columns. Conditions on additional columns restrict the entries returned by the index, but the condition on the first column is the most important one for determining how much of the index needs to be scanned. A GiST index will be relatively ineffective if its first column has only a few distinct values, even if there are many distinct values in additional columns.

A multicolumn GIN index can be used with query conditions that involve any subset of the index's columns. Unlike B-tree or GiST, index search effectiveness is the same regardless of which index column(s) the query conditions use.

A multicolumn BRIN index can be used with query conditions that involve any subset of the index's columns. Like GIN and unlike B-tree or GiST, index search effectiveness is the same regardless of which index column(s) the query conditions use. The only reason to have multiple BRIN indexes instead of one multicolumn BRIN index on a single table is to have a different `pages_per_range` storage parameter.

Of course, each column must be used with operators appropriate to the index type; clauses that involve other operators will not be considered.

Multicolumn indexes should be used sparingly. In most situations, an index on a single column is sufficient and saves space and time. Indexes with more than three columns are unlikely to be helpful unless the usage of the table is extremely stylized. See also Section 11.5 and Section 11.9 for some discussion of the merits of different index configurations.

## 11.4. Indexes and ORDER BY

In addition to simply finding the rows to be returned by a query, an index may be able to deliver them in a specific sorted order. This allows a query's `ORDER BY` specification to be honored without a separate sorting step. Of the index types currently supported by PostgreSQL, only B-tree can produce sorted output — the other index types return matching rows in an unspecified, implementation-dependent order.

The planner will consider satisfying an `ORDER BY` specification either by scanning an available index that matches the specification, or by scanning the table in physical order and doing an explicit sort. For a query that requires scanning a large fraction of the table, an explicit sort is likely to be faster than using an index because it requires less disk I/O due to following a sequential access pattern. Indexes are more useful when only a few rows need be fetched. An important special case is `ORDER BY` in combination with `LIMIT n`: an explicit sort will have to process all the data to identify the first *n* rows, but if there is an index matching the `ORDER BY`, the first *n* rows can be retrieved directly, without scanning the remainder at all.

By default, B-tree indexes store their entries in ascending order with nulls last (table TID is treated as a tiebreaker column among otherwise equal entries). This means that a forward scan of an index on column *x* produces output satisfying `ORDER BY x` (or more verbosely, `ORDER BY x ASC NULLS LAST`). The index can also be scanned backward, producing output satisfying `ORDER BY`

`x DESC` (or more verbosely, `ORDER BY x DESC NULLS FIRST`, since `NULLS FIRST` is the default for `ORDER BY DESC`).

You can adjust the ordering of a B-tree index by including the options `ASC`, `DESC`, `NULLS FIRST`, and/or `NULLS LAST` when creating the index; for example:

```
CREATE INDEX test2_info_nulls_low ON test2 (info NULLS FIRST);
CREATE INDEX test3_desc_index ON test3 (id DESC NULLS LAST);
```

An index stored in ascending order with nulls first can satisfy either `ORDER BY x ASC NULLS FIRST` or `ORDER BY x DESC NULLS LAST` depending on which direction it is scanned in.

You might wonder why bother providing all four options, when two options together with the possibility of backward scan would cover all the variants of `ORDER BY`. In single-column indexes the options are indeed redundant, but in multicolumn indexes they can be useful. Consider a two-column index on  $(x, y)$ : this can satisfy `ORDER BY x, y` if we scan forward, or `ORDER BY x DESC, y DESC` if we scan backward. But it might be that the application frequently needs to use `ORDER BY x ASC, y DESC`. There is no way to get that ordering from a plain index, but it is possible if the index is defined as  $(x \text{ ASC}, y \text{ DESC})$  or  $(x \text{ DESC}, y \text{ ASC})$ .

Obviously, indexes with non-default sort orderings are a fairly specialized feature, but sometimes they can produce tremendous speedups for certain queries. Whether it's worth maintaining such an index depends on how often you use queries that require a special sort ordering.

## 11.5. Combining Multiple Indexes

A single index scan can only use query clauses that use the index's columns with operators of its operator class and are joined with `AND`. For example, given an index on  $(a, b)$  a query condition like `WHERE a = 5 AND b = 6` could use the index, but a query like `WHERE a = 5 OR b = 6` could not directly use the index.

Fortunately, PostgreSQL has the ability to combine multiple indexes (including multiple uses of the same index) to handle cases that cannot be implemented by single index scans. The system can form `AND` and `OR` conditions across several index scans. For example, a query like `WHERE x = 42 OR x = 47 OR x = 53 OR x = 99` could be broken down into four separate scans of an index on `x`, each scan using one of the query clauses. The results of these scans are then `ORed` together to produce the result. Another example is that if we have separate indexes on `x` and `y`, one possible implementation of a query like `WHERE x = 5 AND y = 6` is to use each index with the appropriate query clause and then `AND` together the index results to identify the result rows.

To combine multiple indexes, the system scans each needed index and prepares a *bitmap* in memory giving the locations of table rows that are reported as matching that index's conditions. The bitmaps are then `ANDed` and `ORed` together as needed by the query. Finally, the actual table rows are visited and returned. The table rows are visited in physical order, because that is how the bitmap is laid out; this means that any ordering of the original indexes is lost, and so a separate sort step will be needed if the query has an `ORDER BY` clause. For this reason, and because each additional index scan adds extra time, the planner will sometimes choose to use a simple index scan even though additional indexes are available that could have been used as well.

In all but the simplest applications, there are various combinations of indexes that might be useful, and the database developer must make trade-offs to decide which indexes to provide. Sometimes multicolumn indexes are best, but sometimes it's better to create separate indexes and rely on the index-combination feature. For example, if your workload includes a mix of queries that sometimes involve only column `x`, sometimes only column `y`, and sometimes both columns, you might choose to create two separate indexes on `x` and `y`, relying on index combination to process the queries that use both columns. You could also create a multicolumn index on  $(x, y)$ . This index would typically be more efficient than index combination for queries involving both columns, but as discussed in

Section 11.3, it would be almost useless for queries involving only *y*, so it should not be the only index. A combination of the multicolumn index and a separate index on *y* would serve reasonably well. For queries involving only *x*, the multicolumn index could be used, though it would be larger and hence slower than an index on *x* alone. The last alternative is to create all three indexes, but this is probably only reasonable if the table is searched much more often than it is updated and all three types of query are common. If one of the types of query is much less common than the others, you'd probably settle for creating just the two indexes that best match the common types.

## 11.6. Unique Indexes

Indexes can also be used to enforce uniqueness of a column's value, or the uniqueness of the combined values of more than one column.

```
CREATE UNIQUE INDEX name ON table (column [, ...]) [ NULLS [ NOT ]  
DISTINCT ];
```

Currently, only B-tree indexes can be declared unique.

When an index is declared unique, multiple table rows with equal indexed values are not allowed. By default, null values in a unique column are not considered equal, allowing multiple nulls in the column. The `NULLS NOT DISTINCT` option modifies this and causes the index to treat nulls as equal. A multicolumn unique index will only reject cases where all indexed columns are equal in multiple rows.

PostgreSQL automatically creates a unique index when a unique constraint or primary key is defined for a table. The index covers the columns that make up the primary key or unique constraint (a multicolumn index, if appropriate), and is the mechanism that enforces the constraint.

### Note

There's no need to manually create indexes on unique columns; doing so would just duplicate the automatically-created index.

## 11.7. Indexes on Expressions

An index column need not be just a column of the underlying table, but can be a function or scalar expression computed from one or more columns of the table. This feature is useful to obtain fast access to tables based on the results of computations.

For example, a common way to do case-insensitive comparisons is to use the `lower` function:

```
SELECT * FROM test1 WHERE lower(coll) = 'value';
```

This query can use an index if one has been defined on the result of the `lower(coll)` function:

```
CREATE INDEX test1_lower_coll_idx ON test1 (lower(coll));
```

If we were to declare this index `UNIQUE`, it would prevent creation of rows whose `coll` values differ only in case, as well as rows whose `coll` values are actually identical. Thus, indexes on expressions can be used to enforce constraints that are not definable as simple unique constraints.

As another example, if one often does queries like:

```
SELECT * FROM people WHERE (first_name || ' ' || last_name) = 'John  
Smith';
```

then it might be worth creating an index like this:

```
CREATE INDEX people_names ON people ((first_name || ' ' ||  
last_name));
```

The syntax of the `CREATE INDEX` command normally requires writing parentheses around index expressions, as shown in the second example. The parentheses can be omitted when the expression is just a function call, as in the first example.

Index expressions are relatively expensive to maintain, because the derived expression(s) must be computed for each row insertion and non-HOT update. However, the index expressions are *not* recomputed during an indexed search, since they are already stored in the index. In both examples above, the system sees the query as just `WHERE indexedcolumn = 'constant'` and so the speed of the search is equivalent to any other simple index query. Thus, indexes on expressions are useful when retrieval speed is more important than insertion and update speed.

## 11.8. Partial Indexes

A *partial index* is an index built over a subset of a table; the subset is defined by a conditional expression (called the *predicate* of the partial index). The index contains entries only for those table rows that satisfy the predicate. Partial indexes are a specialized feature, but there are several situations in which they are useful.

One major reason for using a partial index is to avoid indexing common values. Since a query searching for a common value (one that accounts for more than a few percent of all the table rows) will not use the index anyway, there is no point in keeping those rows in the index at all. This reduces the size of the index, which will speed up those queries that do use the index. It will also speed up many table update operations because the index does not need to be updated in all cases. Example 11.1 shows a possible application of this idea.

### Example 11.1. Setting up a Partial Index to Exclude Common Values

Suppose you are storing web server access logs in a database. Most accesses originate from the IP address range of your organization but some are from elsewhere (say, employees on dial-up connections). If your searches by IP are primarily for outside accesses, you probably do not need to index the IP range that corresponds to your organization's subnet.

Assume a table like this:

```
CREATE TABLE access_log (  
    url varchar,  
    client_ip inet,  
    ...  
);
```

To create a partial index that suits our example, use a command such as this:

```
CREATE INDEX access_log_client_ip_ix ON access_log (client_ip)  
WHERE NOT (client_ip > inet '192.168.100.0' AND  
          client_ip < inet '192.168.100.255');
```

A typical query that can use this index would be:



```
SELECT *
FROM access_log
WHERE url = '/index.html' AND client_ip = inet '212.78.10.32';
```

Here the query's IP address is covered by the partial index. The following query cannot use the partial index, as it uses an IP address that is excluded from the index:

```
SELECT *
FROM access_log
WHERE url = '/index.html' AND client_ip = inet '192.168.100.23';
```

Observe that this kind of partial index requires that the common values be predetermined, so such partial indexes are best used for data distributions that do not change. Such indexes can be recreated occasionally to adjust for new data distributions, but this adds maintenance effort.

Another possible use for a partial index is to exclude values from the index that the typical query workload is not interested in; this is shown in Example 11.2. This results in the same advantages as listed above, but it prevents the “uninteresting” values from being accessed via that index, even if an index scan might be profitable in that case. Obviously, setting up partial indexes for this kind of scenario will require a lot of care and experimentation.

### **Example 11.2. Setting up a Partial Index to Exclude Uninteresting Values**

If you have a table that contains both billed and unbilled orders, where the unbilled orders take up a small fraction of the total table and yet those are the most-accessed rows, you can improve performance by creating an index on just the unbilled rows. The command to create the index would look like this:

```
CREATE INDEX orders_unbilled_index ON orders (order_nr)
WHERE billed is not true;
```

A possible query to use this index would be:

```
SELECT * FROM orders WHERE billed is not true AND order_nr < 10000;
```

However, the index can also be used in queries that do not involve `order_nr` at all, e.g.:

```
SELECT * FROM orders WHERE billed is not true AND amount > 5000.00;
```

This is not as efficient as a partial index on the `amount` column would be, since the system has to scan the entire index. Yet, if there are relatively few unbilled orders, using this partial index just to find the unbilled orders could be a win.

Note that this query cannot use this index:

```
SELECT * FROM orders WHERE order_nr = 3501;
```

The order 3501 might be among the billed or unbilled orders.

Example 11.2 also illustrates that the indexed column and the column used in the predicate do not need to match. PostgreSQL supports partial indexes with arbitrary predicates, so long as only columns of the table being indexed are involved. However, keep in mind that the predicate must match the conditions used in the queries that are supposed to benefit from the index. To be precise, a partial index can be used in a query only if the system can recognize that the `WHERE` condition of the query mathematically implies the predicate of the index. PostgreSQL does not have a sophisticated theorem prover that can recognize mathematically equivalent expressions that are written in different forms.

(Not only is such a general theorem prover extremely difficult to create, it would probably be too slow to be of any real use.) The system can recognize simple inequality implications, for example “ $x < 1$ ” implies “ $x < 2$ ”; otherwise the predicate condition must exactly match part of the query's WHERE condition or the index will not be recognized as usable. Matching takes place at query planning time, not at run time. As a result, parameterized query clauses do not work with a partial index. For example a prepared query with a parameter might specify “ $x < ?$ ” which will never imply “ $x < 2$ ” for all possible values of the parameter.

A third possible use for partial indexes does not require the index to be used in queries at all. The idea here is to create a unique index over a subset of a table, as in Example 11.3. This enforces uniqueness among the rows that satisfy the index predicate, without constraining those that do not.

### **Example 11.3. Setting up a Partial Unique Index**

Suppose that we have a table describing test outcomes. We wish to ensure that there is only one “successful” entry for a given subject and target combination, but there might be any number of “unsuccessful” entries. Here is one way to do it:

```
CREATE TABLE tests (  
    subject text,  
    target text,  
    success boolean,  
    ...  
);  
  
CREATE UNIQUE INDEX tests_success_constraint ON tests (subject,  
    target)  
    WHERE success;
```

This is a particularly efficient approach when there are few successful tests and many unsuccessful ones. It is also possible to allow only one null in a column by creating a unique partial index with an IS NULL restriction.

Finally, a partial index can also be used to override the system's query plan choices. Also, data sets with peculiar distributions might cause the system to use an index when it really should not. In that case the index can be set up so that it is not available for the offending query. Normally, PostgreSQL makes reasonable choices about index usage (e.g., it avoids them when retrieving common values, so the earlier example really only saves index size, it is not required to avoid index usage), and grossly incorrect plan choices are cause for a bug report.

Keep in mind that setting up a partial index indicates that you know at least as much as the query planner knows, in particular you know when an index might be profitable. Forming this knowledge requires experience and understanding of how indexes in PostgreSQL work. In most cases, the advantage of a partial index over a regular index will be minimal. There are cases where they are quite counterproductive, as in Example 11.4.

### **Example 11.4. Do Not Use Partial Indexes as a Substitute for Partitioning**

You might be tempted to create a large set of non-overlapping partial indexes, for example

```
CREATE INDEX mytable_cat_1 ON mytable (data) WHERE category = 1;  
CREATE INDEX mytable_cat_2 ON mytable (data) WHERE category = 2;  
CREATE INDEX mytable_cat_3 ON mytable (data) WHERE category = 3;  
...  
CREATE INDEX mytable_cat_N ON mytable (data) WHERE category = N;
```

This is a bad idea! Almost certainly, you'll be better off with a single non-partial index, declared like

```
CREATE INDEX mytable_cat_data ON mytable (category, data);
```

(Put the category column first, for the reasons described in Section 11.3.) While a search in this larger index might have to descend through a couple more tree levels than a search in a smaller index, that's almost certainly going to be cheaper than the planner effort needed to select the appropriate one of the partial indexes. The core of the problem is that the system does not understand the relationship among the partial indexes, and will laboriously test each one to see if it's applicable to the current query.

If your table is large enough that a single index really is a bad idea, you should look into using partitioning instead (see Section 5.11). With that mechanism, the system does understand that the tables and indexes are non-overlapping, so far better performance is possible.

More information about partial indexes can be found in [ston89b], [olson93], and [seshadri95].

## 11.9. Index-Only Scans and Covering Indexes

All indexes in PostgreSQL are *secondary* indexes, meaning that each index is stored separately from the table's main data area (which is called the table's *heap* in PostgreSQL terminology). This means that in an ordinary index scan, each row retrieval requires fetching data from both the index and the heap. Furthermore, while the index entries that match a given indexable *WHERE* condition are usually close together in the index, the table rows they reference might be anywhere in the heap. The heap-access portion of an index scan thus involves a lot of random access into the heap, which can be slow, particularly on traditional rotating media. (As described in Section 11.5, bitmap scans try to alleviate this cost by doing the heap accesses in sorted order, but that only goes so far.)

To solve this performance problem, PostgreSQL supports *index-only scans*, which can answer queries from an index alone without any heap access. The basic idea is to return values directly out of each index entry instead of consulting the associated heap entry. There are two fundamental restrictions on when this method can be used:

1. The index type must support index-only scans. B-tree indexes always do. GiST and SP-GiST indexes support index-only scans for some operator classes but not others. Other index types have no support. The underlying requirement is that the index must physically store, or else be able to reconstruct, the original data value for each index entry. As a counterexample, GIN indexes cannot support index-only scans because each index entry typically holds only part of the original data value.
2. The query must reference only columns stored in the index. For example, given an index on columns *x* and *y* of a table that also has a column *z*, these queries could use index-only scans:

```
SELECT x, y FROM tab WHERE x = 'key';  
SELECT x FROM tab WHERE x = 'key' AND y < 42;
```

but these queries could not:

```
SELECT x, z FROM tab WHERE x = 'key';  
SELECT x FROM tab WHERE x = 'key' AND z < 42;
```

(Expression indexes and partial indexes complicate this rule, as discussed below.)

If these two fundamental requirements are met, then all the data values required by the query are available from the index, so an index-only scan is physically possible. But there is an additional requirement for any table scan in PostgreSQL: it must verify that each retrieved row be “visible” to the query's MVCC snapshot, as discussed in Chapter 13. Visibility information is not stored in index entries, only in heap entries; so at first glance it would seem that every row retrieval would require a heap access anyway. And this is indeed the case, if the table row has been modified recently. How-

ever, for seldom-changing data there is a way around this problem. PostgreSQL tracks, for each page in a table's heap, whether all rows stored in that page are old enough to be visible to all current and future transactions. This information is stored in a bit in the table's *visibility map*. An index-only scan, after finding a candidate index entry, checks the visibility map bit for the corresponding heap page. If it's set, the row is known visible and so the data can be returned with no further work. If it's not set, the heap entry must be visited to find out whether it's visible, so no performance advantage is gained over a standard index scan. Even in the successful case, this approach trades visibility map accesses for heap accesses; but since the visibility map is four orders of magnitude smaller than the heap it describes, far less physical I/O is needed to access it. In most situations the visibility map remains cached in memory all the time.

In short, while an index-only scan is possible given the two fundamental requirements, it will be a win only if a significant fraction of the table's heap pages have their all-visible map bits set. But tables in which a large fraction of the rows are unchanging are common enough to make this type of scan very useful in practice.

To make effective use of the index-only scan feature, you might choose to create a *covering index*, which is an index specifically designed to include the columns needed by a particular type of query that you run frequently. Since queries typically need to retrieve more columns than just the ones they search on, PostgreSQL allows you to create an index in which some columns are just “payload” and are not part of the search key. This is done by adding an `INCLUDE` clause listing the extra columns. For example, if you commonly run queries like

```
SELECT y FROM tab WHERE x = 'key';
```

the traditional approach to speeding up such queries would be to create an index on `x` only. However, an index defined as

```
CREATE INDEX tab_x_y ON tab(x) INCLUDE (y);
```

could handle these queries as index-only scans, because `y` can be obtained from the index without visiting the heap.

Because column `y` is not part of the index's search key, it does not have to be of a data type that the index can handle; it's merely stored in the index and is not interpreted by the index machinery. Also, if the index is a unique index, that is

```
CREATE UNIQUE INDEX tab_x_y ON tab(x) INCLUDE (y);
```

the uniqueness condition applies to just column `x`, not to the combination of `x` and `y`. (An `INCLUDE` clause can also be written in `UNIQUE` and `PRIMARY KEY` constraints, providing alternative syntax for setting up an index like this.)

It's wise to be conservative about adding non-key payload columns to an index, especially wide columns. If an index tuple exceeds the maximum size allowed for the index type, data insertion will fail. In any case, non-key columns duplicate data from the index's table and bloat the size of the index, thus potentially slowing searches. And remember that there is little point in including payload columns in an index unless the table changes slowly enough that an index-only scan is likely to not need to access the heap. If the heap tuple must be visited anyway, it costs nothing more to get the column's value from there. Other restrictions are that expressions are not currently supported as included columns, and that only B-tree, GiST and SP-GiST indexes currently support included columns.

Before PostgreSQL had the `INCLUDE` feature, people sometimes made covering indexes by writing the payload columns as ordinary index columns, that is writing

```
CREATE INDEX tab_x_y ON tab(x, y);
```

even though they had no intention of ever using `y` as part of a `WHERE` clause. This works fine as long as the extra columns are trailing columns; making them be leading columns is unwise for the reasons explained in Section 11.3. However, this method doesn't support the case where you want the index to enforce uniqueness on the key column(s).

*Suffix truncation* always removes non-key columns from upper B-Tree levels. As payload columns, they are never used to guide index scans. The truncation process also removes one or more trailing key column(s) when the remaining prefix of key column(s) happens to be sufficient to describe tuples on the lowest B-Tree level. In practice, covering indexes without an `INCLUDE` clause often avoid storing columns that are effectively payload in the upper levels. However, explicitly defining payload columns as non-key columns *reliably* keeps the tuples in upper levels small.

In principle, index-only scans can be used with expression indexes. For example, given an index on `f(x)` where `x` is a table column, it should be possible to execute

```
SELECT f(x) FROM tab WHERE f(x) < 1;
```

as an index-only scan; and this is very attractive if `f()` is an expensive-to-compute function. However, PostgreSQL's planner is currently not very smart about such cases. It considers a query to be potentially executable by index-only scan only when all *columns* needed by the query are available from the index. In this example, `x` is not needed except in the context `f(x)`, but the planner does not notice that and concludes that an index-only scan is not possible. If an index-only scan seems sufficiently worthwhile, this can be worked around by adding `x` as an included column, for example

```
CREATE INDEX tab_f_x ON tab (f(x)) INCLUDE (x);
```

An additional caveat, if the goal is to avoid recalculating `f(x)`, is that the planner won't necessarily match uses of `f(x)` that aren't in indexable `WHERE` clauses to the index column. It will usually get this right in simple queries such as shown above, but not in queries that involve joins. These deficiencies may be remedied in future versions of PostgreSQL.

Partial indexes also have interesting interactions with index-only scans. Consider the partial index shown in Example 11.3:

```
CREATE UNIQUE INDEX tests_success_constraint ON tests (subject,
    target)
    WHERE success;
```

In principle, we could do an index-only scan on this index to satisfy a query like

```
SELECT target FROM tests WHERE subject = 'some-subject' AND
    success;
```

But there's a problem: the `WHERE` clause refers to `success` which is not available as a result column of the index. Nonetheless, an index-only scan is possible because the plan does not need to recheck that part of the `WHERE` clause at run time: all entries found in the index necessarily have `success = true` so this need not be explicitly checked in the plan. PostgreSQL versions 9.6 and later will recognize such cases and allow index-only scans to be generated, but older versions will not.

## 11.10. Operator Classes and Operator Families

An index definition can specify an *operator class* for each column of an index.

```
CREATE INDEX name ON table (column opclass [ ( opclass_options ) ]
    [sort options] [, ...]);
```

The operator class identifies the operators to be used by the index for that column. For example, a B-tree index on the type `int4` would use the `int4_ops` class; this operator class includes comparison functions for values of type `int4`. In practice the default operator class for the column's data type is usually sufficient. The main reason for having operator classes is that for some data types, there could be more than one meaningful index behavior. For example, we might want to sort a complex-number data type either by absolute value or by real part. We could do this by defining two operator classes for the data type and then selecting the proper class when making an index. The operator class determines the basic sort ordering (which can then be modified by adding sort options `COLLATE`, `ASC/DESC` and/or `NULLS FIRST/NULLS LAST`).

There are also some built-in operator classes besides the default ones:

- The operator classes `text_pattern_ops`, `varchar_pattern_ops`, and `bpchar_pattern_ops` support B-tree indexes on the types `text`, `varchar`, and `char` respectively. The difference from the default operator classes is that the values are compared strictly character by character rather than according to the locale-specific collation rules. This makes these operator classes suitable for use by queries involving pattern matching expressions (`LIKE` or POSIX regular expressions) when the database does not use the standard “C” locale. As an example, you might index a `varchar` column like this:

```
CREATE INDEX test_index ON test_table (col varchar_pattern_ops);
```

Note that you should also create an index with the default operator class if you want queries involving ordinary `<`, `<=`, `>`, or `>=` comparisons to use an index. Such queries cannot use the `xxx_pattern_ops` operator classes. (Ordinary equality comparisons can use these operator classes, however.) It is possible to create multiple indexes on the same column with different operator classes. If you do use the C locale, you do not need the `xxx_pattern_ops` operator classes, because an index with the default operator class is usable for pattern-matching queries in the C locale.

The following query shows all defined operator classes:

```
SELECT am.amname AS index_method,
       opc.opcname AS opclass_name,
       opc.opcintype::regtype AS indexed_type,
       opc.opcdefault AS is_default
FROM pg_am am, pg_opclass opc
WHERE opc.opcmethod = am.oid
ORDER BY index_method, opclass_name;
```

An operator class is actually just a subset of a larger structure called an *operator family*. In cases where several data types have similar behaviors, it is frequently useful to define cross-data-type operators and allow these to work with indexes. To do this, the operator classes for each of the types must be grouped into the same operator family. The cross-type operators are members of the family, but are not associated with any single class within the family.

This expanded version of the previous query shows the operator family each operator class belongs to:

```
SELECT am.amname AS index_method,
       opc.opcname AS opclass_name,
       opf.opfname AS opfamily_name,
       opc.opcintype::regtype AS indexed_type,
       opc.opcdefault AS is_default
FROM pg_am am, pg_opclass opc, pg_opfamily opf
WHERE opc.opcmethod = am.oid AND
```

```
        opc.opcfamily = opf.oid
ORDER BY index_method, opclass_name;
```

This query shows all defined operator families and all the operators included in each family:

```
SELECT am.amname AS index_method,
       opf.opfname AS opfamily_name,
       amop.amopopr::regoperator AS opfamily_operator
FROM pg_am am, pg_opfamily opf, pg_amop amop
WHERE opf.opfmethod = am.oid AND
      amop.amopfamily = opf.oid
ORDER BY index_method, opfamily_name, opfamily_operator;
```

### Tip

psql has commands `\dAc`, `\dAf`, and `\dAo`, which provide slightly more sophisticated versions of these queries.

## 11.11. Indexes and Collations

An index can support only one collation per index column. If multiple collations are of interest, multiple indexes may be needed.

Consider these statements:

```
CREATE TABLE testlc (
    id integer,
    content varchar COLLATE "x"
);

CREATE INDEX testlc_content_index ON testlc (content);
```

The index automatically uses the collation of the underlying column. So a query of the form

```
SELECT * FROM testlc WHERE content > constant;
```

could use the index, because the comparison will by default use the collation of the column. However, this index cannot accelerate queries that involve some other collation. So if queries of the form, say,

```
SELECT * FROM testlc WHERE content > constant COLLATE "y";
```

are also of interest, an additional index could be created that supports the "y" collation, like this:

```
CREATE INDEX testlc_content_y_index ON testlc (content COLLATE
"y");
```

## 11.12. Examining Index Usage

Although indexes in PostgreSQL do not need maintenance or tuning, it is still important to check which indexes are actually used by the real-life query workload. Examining index usage for an individual query is done with the EXPLAIN command; its application for this purpose is illustrated in

Section 14.1. It is also possible to gather overall statistics about index usage in a running server, as described in Section 28.2.

It is difficult to formulate a general procedure for determining which indexes to create. There are a number of typical cases that have been shown in the examples throughout the previous sections. A good deal of experimentation is often necessary. The rest of this section gives some tips for that:

- Always run `ANALYZE` first. This command collects statistics about the distribution of the values in the table. This information is required to estimate the number of rows returned by a query, which is needed by the planner to assign realistic costs to each possible query plan. In absence of any real statistics, some default values are assumed, which are almost certain to be inaccurate. Examining an application's index usage without having run `ANALYZE` is therefore a lost cause. See Section 25.1.3 and Section 25.1.6 for more information.
- Use real data for experimentation. Using test data for setting up indexes will tell you what indexes you need for the test data, but that is all.

It is especially fatal to use very small test data sets. While selecting 1000 out of 100000 rows could be a candidate for an index, selecting 1 out of 100 rows will hardly be, because the 100 rows probably fit within a single disk page, and there is no plan that can beat sequentially fetching 1 disk page.

Also be careful when making up test data, which is often unavoidable when the application is not yet in production. Values that are very similar, completely random, or inserted in sorted order will skew the statistics away from the distribution that real data would have.

- When indexes are not used, it can be useful for testing to force their use. There are run-time parameters that can turn off various plan types (see Section 20.7.1). For instance, turning off sequential scans (`enable_seqscan`) and nested-loop joins (`enable_nestloop`), which are the most basic plans, will force the system to use a different plan. If the system still chooses a sequential scan or nested-loop join then there is probably a more fundamental reason why the index is not being used; for example, the query condition does not match the index. (What kind of query can use what kind of index is explained in the previous sections.)
- If forcing index usage does use the index, then there are two possibilities: Either the system is right and using the index is indeed not appropriate, or the cost estimates of the query plans are not reflecting reality. So you should time your query with and without indexes. The `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` command can be useful here.
- If it turns out that the cost estimates are wrong, there are, again, two possibilities. The total cost is computed from the per-row costs of each plan node times the selectivity estimate of the plan node. The costs estimated for the plan nodes can be adjusted via run-time parameters (described in Section 20.7.2). An inaccurate selectivity estimate is due to insufficient statistics. It might be possible to improve this by tuning the statistics-gathering parameters (see `ALTER TABLE`).

If you do not succeed in adjusting the costs to be more appropriate, then you might have to resort to forcing index usage explicitly. You might also want to contact the PostgreSQL developers to examine the issue.



---

# Chapter 12. Full Text Search

## 12.1. Introduction

Full Text Searching (or just *text search*) provides the capability to identify natural-language *documents* that satisfy a *query*, and optionally to sort them by relevance to the query. The most common type of search is to find all documents containing given *query terms* and return them in order of their *similarity* to the query. Notions of *query* and *similarity* are very flexible and depend on the specific application. The simplest search considers *query* as a set of words and *similarity* as the frequency of query words in the document.

Textual search operators have existed in databases for years. PostgreSQL has `~`, `~*`, `LIKE`, and `ILIKE` operators for textual data types, but they lack many essential properties required by modern information systems:

- There is no linguistic support, even for English. Regular expressions are not sufficient because they cannot easily handle derived words, e.g., `satisfies` and `satisfy`. You might miss documents that contain `satisfies`, although you probably would like to find them when searching for `satisfy`. It is possible to use `OR` to search for multiple derived forms, but this is tedious and error-prone (some words can have several thousand derivatives).
- They provide no ordering (ranking) of search results, which makes them ineffective when thousands of matching documents are found.
- They tend to be slow because there is no index support, so they must process all documents for every search.

Full text indexing allows documents to be *preprocessed* and an index saved for later rapid searching. Preprocessing includes:

*Parsing documents into tokens.* It is useful to identify various classes of tokens, e.g., numbers, words, complex words, email addresses, so that they can be processed differently. In principle token classes depend on the specific application, but for most purposes it is adequate to use a predefined set of classes. PostgreSQL uses a *parser* to perform this step. A standard parser is provided, and custom parsers can be created for specific needs.

*Converting tokens into lexemes.* A lexeme is a string, just like a token, but it has been *normalized* so that different forms of the same word are made alike. For example, normalization almost always includes folding upper-case letters to lower-case, and often involves removal of suffixes (such as `s` or `es` in English). This allows searches to find variant forms of the same word, without tediously entering all the possible variants. Also, this step typically eliminates *stop words*, which are words that are so common that they are useless for searching. (In short, then, tokens are raw fragments of the document text, while lexemes are words that are believed useful for indexing and searching.) PostgreSQL uses *dictionaries* to perform this step. Various standard dictionaries are provided, and custom ones can be created for specific needs.

*Storing preprocessed documents optimized for searching.* For example, each document can be represented as a sorted array of normalized lexemes. Along with the lexemes it is often desirable to store positional information to use for *proximity ranking*, so that a document that contains a more “dense” region of query words is assigned a higher rank than one with scattered query words.

Dictionaries allow fine-grained control over how tokens are normalized. With appropriate dictionaries, you can:

- Define stop words that should not be indexed.
- Map synonyms to a single word using `Ispell`.
- Map phrases to a single word using a thesaurus.
- Map different variations of a word to a canonical form using an `Ispell` dictionary.

- Map different variations of a word to a canonical form using Snowball stemmer rules.

A data type `tsvector` is provided for storing preprocessed documents, along with a type `tsquery` for representing processed queries (Section 8.11). There are many functions and operators available for these data types (Section 9.13), the most important of which is the match operator `@@`, which we introduce in Section 12.1.2. Full text searches can be accelerated using indexes (Section 12.9).

### 12.1.1. What Is a Document?

A *document* is the unit of searching in a full text search system; for example, a magazine article or email message. The text search engine must be able to parse documents and store associations of lexemes (key words) with their parent document. Later, these associations are used to search for documents that contain query words.

For searches within PostgreSQL, a document is normally a textual field within a row of a database table, or possibly a combination (concatenation) of such fields, perhaps stored in several tables or obtained dynamically. In other words, a document can be constructed from different parts for indexing and it might not be stored anywhere as a whole. For example:

```
SELECT title || ' ' || author || ' ' || abstract || ' ' || body
       AS document
FROM messages
WHERE mid = 12;
```

```
SELECT m.title || ' ' || m.author || ' ' || m.abstract || ' ' ||
       d.body AS document
FROM messages m, docs d
WHERE m.mid = d.did AND m.mid = 12;
```

#### Note

Actually, in these example queries, `coalesce` should be used to prevent a single `NULL` attribute from causing a `NULL` result for the whole document.

Another possibility is to store the documents as simple text files in the file system. In this case, the database can be used to store the full text index and to execute searches, and some unique identifier can be used to retrieve the document from the file system. However, retrieving files from outside the database requires superuser permissions or special function support, so this is usually less convenient than keeping all the data inside PostgreSQL. Also, keeping everything inside the database allows easy access to document metadata to assist in indexing and display.

For text search purposes, each document must be reduced to the preprocessed `tsvector` format. Searching and ranking are performed entirely on the `tsvector` representation of a document — the original text need only be retrieved when the document has been selected for display to a user. We therefore often speak of the `tsvector` as being the document, but of course it is only a compact representation of the full document.

### 12.1.2. Basic Text Matching

Full text searching in PostgreSQL is based on the match operator `@@`, which returns `true` if a `tsvector` (document) matches a `tsquery` (query). It doesn't matter which data type is written first:

```
SELECT 'a fat cat sat on a mat and ate a fat rat'::tsvector @@ 'cat
& rat'::tsquery;
?column?
```

```
-----
t

SELECT 'fat & cow'::tsquery @@ 'a fat cat sat on a mat and ate a
fat rat'::tsvector;
?column?
-----
f
```

As the above example suggests, a `tsquery` is not just raw text, any more than a `tsvector` is. A `tsquery` contains search terms, which must be already-normalized lexemes, and may combine multiple terms using AND, OR, NOT, and FOLLOWED BY operators. (For syntax details see Section 8.11.2.) There are functions `to_tsquery`, `plainto_tsquery`, and `phraseto_tsquery` that are helpful in converting user-written text into a proper `tsquery`, primarily by normalizing words appearing in the text. Similarly, `to_tsvector` is used to parse and normalize a document string. So in practice a text search match would look more like this:

```
SELECT to_tsvector('fat cats ate fat rats') @@ to_tsquery('fat &
rat');
?column?
-----
t
```

Observe that this match would not succeed if written as

```
SELECT 'fat cats ate fat rats'::tsvector @@ to_tsquery('fat &
rat');
?column?
-----
f
```

since here no normalization of the word `rats` will occur. The elements of a `tsvector` are lexemes, which are assumed already normalized, so `rats` does not match `rat`.

The `@@` operator also supports `text` input, allowing explicit conversion of a text string to `tsvector` or `tsquery` to be skipped in simple cases. The variants available are:

```
tsvector @@ tsquery
tsquery  @@ tsvector
text     @@ tsquery
text     @@ text
```

The first two of these we saw already. The form `text @@ tsquery` is equivalent to `to_tsvector(x) @@ y`. The form `text @@ text` is equivalent to `to_tsvector(x) @@ plainto_tsquery(y)`.

Within a `tsquery`, the `&` (AND) operator specifies that both its arguments must appear in the document to have a match. Similarly, the `|` (OR) operator specifies that at least one of its arguments must appear, while the `!` (NOT) operator specifies that its argument must *not* appear in order to have a match. For example, the query `fat & ! rat` matches documents that contain `fat` but not `rat`.

Searching for phrases is possible with the help of the `<->` (FOLLOWED BY) `tsquery` operator, which matches only if its arguments have matches that are adjacent and in the given order. For example:

```
SELECT to_tsvector('fatal error') @@ to_tsquery('fatal <-> error');
```

```
?column?
-----
t

SELECT to_tsvector('error is not fatal') @@ to_tsquery('fatal <->
error');
?column?
-----
f
```

There is a more general version of the FOLLOWED BY operator having the form `<N>`, where *N* is an integer standing for the difference between the positions of the matching lexemes. `<1>` is the same as `<->`, while `<2>` allows exactly one other lexeme to appear between the matches, and so on. The `phraseto_tsquery` function makes use of this operator to construct a `tsquery` that can match a multi-word phrase when some of the words are stop words. For example:

```
SELECT phraseto_tsquery('cats ate rats');
phraseto_tsquery
-----
'cat' <-> 'ate' <-> 'rat'

SELECT phraseto_tsquery('the cats ate the rats');
phraseto_tsquery
-----
'cat' <-> 'ate' <2> 'rat'
```

A special case that's sometimes useful is that `<0>` can be used to require that two patterns match the same word.

Parentheses can be used to control nesting of the `tsquery` operators. Without parentheses, `|` binds least tightly, then `&`, then `<->`, and `!` most tightly.

It's worth noticing that the AND/OR/NOT operators mean something subtly different when they are within the arguments of a FOLLOWED BY operator than when they are not, because within FOLLOWED BY the exact position of the match is significant. For example, normally `!x` matches only documents that do not contain *x* anywhere. But `!x <-> y` matches *y* if it is not immediately after an *x*; an occurrence of *x* elsewhere in the document does not prevent a match. Another example is that `x & y` normally only requires that *x* and *y* both appear somewhere in the document, but `(x & y) <-> z` requires *x* and *y* to match at the same place, immediately before a *z*. Thus this query behaves differently from `x <-> z & y <-> z`, which will match a document containing two separate sequences *x z* and *y z*. (This specific query is useless as written, since *x* and *y* could not match at the same place; but with more complex situations such as prefix-match patterns, a query of this form could be useful.)

### 12.1.3. Configurations

The above are all simple text search examples. As mentioned before, full text search functionality includes the ability to do many more things: skip indexing certain words (stop words), process synonyms, and use sophisticated parsing, e.g., parse based on more than just white space. This functionality is controlled by *text search configurations*. PostgreSQL comes with predefined configurations for many languages, and you can easily create your own configurations. (psql's `\dF` command shows all available configurations.)

During installation an appropriate configuration is selected and `default_text_search_config` is set accordingly in `postgresql.conf`. If you are using the same text search configuration for the entire cluster you can use the value in `postgresql.conf`. To use different configurations throughout the cluster but the same configuration within any one database, use `ALTER DATABASE ... SET`. Otherwise, you can set `default_text_search_config` in each session.

Each text search function that depends on a configuration has an optional `regconfig` argument, so that the configuration to use can be specified explicitly. `default_text_search_config` is used only when this argument is omitted.

To make it easier to build custom text search configurations, a configuration is built up from simpler database objects. PostgreSQL's text search facility provides four types of configuration-related database objects:

- *Text search parsers* break documents into tokens and classify each token (for example, as words or numbers).
- *Text search dictionaries* convert tokens to normalized form and reject stop words.
- *Text search templates* provide the functions underlying dictionaries. (A dictionary simply specifies a template and a set of parameters for the template.)
- *Text search configurations* select a parser and a set of dictionaries to use to normalize the tokens produced by the parser.

Text search parsers and templates are built from low-level C functions; therefore it requires C programming ability to develop new ones, and superuser privileges to install one into a database. (There are examples of add-on parsers and templates in the `contrib/` area of the PostgreSQL distribution.) Since dictionaries and configurations just parameterize and connect together some underlying parsers and templates, no special privilege is needed to create a new dictionary or configuration. Examples of creating custom dictionaries and configurations appear later in this chapter.

## 12.2. Tables and Indexes

The examples in the previous section illustrated full text matching using simple constant strings. This section shows how to search table data, optionally using indexes.

### 12.2.1. Searching a Table

It is possible to do a full text search without an index. A simple query to print the `title` of each row that contains the word `friend` in its `body` field is:

```
SELECT title
FROM pgweb
WHERE to_tsvector('english', body) @@ to_tsquery('english',
  'friend');
```

This will also find related words such as `friends` and `friendly`, since all these are reduced to the same normalized lexeme.

The query above specifies that the `english` configuration is to be used to parse and normalize the strings. Alternatively we could omit the configuration parameters:

```
SELECT title
FROM pgweb
WHERE to_tsvector(body) @@ to_tsquery('friend');
```

This query will use the configuration set by `default_text_search_config`.

A more complex example is to select the ten most recent documents that contain `create` and `table` in the `title` or `body`:

```
SELECT title
FROM pgweb
WHERE to_tsvector(title || ' ' || body) @@ to_tsquery('create &
  table')
```

```
ORDER BY last_mod_date DESC
LIMIT 10;
```

For clarity we omitted the `coalesce` function calls which would be needed to find rows that contain `NULL` in one of the two fields.

Although these queries will work without an index, most applications will find this approach too slow, except perhaps for occasional ad-hoc searches. Practical use of text searching usually requires creating an index.

## 12.2.2. Creating Indexes

We can create a GIN index (Section 12.9) to speed up text searches:

```
CREATE INDEX pgweb_idx ON pgweb USING GIN (to_tsvector('english',
body));
```

Notice that the 2-argument version of `to_tsvector` is used. Only text search functions that specify a configuration name can be used in expression indexes (Section 11.7). This is because the index contents must be unaffected by `default_text_search_config`. If they were affected, the index contents might be inconsistent because different entries could contain `tsvectors` that were created with different text search configurations, and there would be no way to guess which was which. It would be impossible to dump and restore such an index correctly.

Because the two-argument version of `to_tsvector` was used in the index above, only a query reference that uses the 2-argument version of `to_tsvector` with the same configuration name will use that index. That is, `WHERE to_tsvector('english', body) @@ 'a & b'` can use the index, but `WHERE to_tsvector(body) @@ 'a & b'` cannot. This ensures that an index will be used only with the same configuration used to create the index entries.

It is possible to set up more complex expression indexes wherein the configuration name is specified by another column, e.g.:

```
CREATE INDEX pgweb_idx ON pgweb USING GIN (to_tsvector(config_name,
body));
```

where `config_name` is a column in the `pgweb` table. This allows mixed configurations in the same index while recording which configuration was used for each index entry. This would be useful, for example, if the document collection contained documents in different languages. Again, queries that are meant to use the index must be phrased to match, e.g., `WHERE to_tsvector(config_name, body) @@ 'a & b'`.

Indexes can even concatenate columns:

```
CREATE INDEX pgweb_idx ON pgweb USING GIN (to_tsvector('english',
title || ' ' || body));
```

Another approach is to create a separate `tsvector` column to hold the output of `to_tsvector`. To keep this column automatically up to date with its source data, use a stored generated column. This example is a concatenation of `title` and `body`, using `coalesce` to ensure that one field will still be indexed when the other is `NULL`:

```
ALTER TABLE pgweb
  ADD COLUMN textsearchable_index_col tsvector
  GENERATED ALWAYS AS (to_tsvector('english',
coalesce(title, '') || ' ' || coalesce(body, ''))) STORED;
```

Then we create a GIN index to speed up the search:

```
CREATE INDEX textsearch_idx ON pgweb USING GIN
(textsearchable_index_col);
```

Now we are ready to perform a fast full text search:

```
SELECT title
FROM pgweb
WHERE textsearchable_index_col @@ to_tsquery('create & table')
ORDER BY last_mod_date DESC
LIMIT 10;
```

One advantage of the separate-column approach over an expression index is that it is not necessary to explicitly specify the text search configuration in queries in order to make use of the index. As shown in the example above, the query can depend on `default_text_search_config`. Another advantage is that searches will be faster, since it will not be necessary to redo the `to_tsvector` calls to verify index matches. (This is more important when using a GiST index than a GIN index; see Section 12.9.) The expression-index approach is simpler to set up, however, and it requires less disk space since the `tsvector` representation is not stored explicitly.

## 12.3. Controlling Text Search

To implement full text searching there must be a function to create a `tsvector` from a document and a `tsquery` from a user query. Also, we need to return results in a useful order, so we need a function that compares documents with respect to their relevance to the query. It's also important to be able to display the results nicely. PostgreSQL provides support for all of these functions.

### 12.3.1. Parsing Documents

PostgreSQL provides the function `to_tsvector` for converting a document to the `tsvector` data type.

`to_tsvector([ config regconfig, ] document text)` returns `tsvector`

`to_tsvector` parses a textual document into tokens, reduces the tokens to lexemes, and returns a `tsvector` which lists the lexemes together with their positions in the document. The document is processed according to the specified or default text search configuration. Here is a simple example:

```
SELECT to_tsvector('english', 'a fat  cat sat on a mat - it ate a
fat rats');
           to_tsvector
-----
'ate':9 'cat':3 'fat':2,11 'mat':7 'rat':12 'sat':4
```

In the example above we see that the resulting `tsvector` does not contain the words `a`, `on`, or `it`, the word `rats` became `rat`, and the punctuation sign `-` was ignored.

The `to_tsvector` function internally calls a parser which breaks the document text into tokens and assigns a type to each token. For each token, a list of dictionaries (Section 12.6) is consulted, where the list can vary depending on the token type. The first dictionary that *recognizes* the token emits one or more normalized *lexemes* to represent the token. For example, `rats` became `rat` because one of the dictionaries recognized that the word `rats` is a plural form of `rat`. Some words are recognized as *stop words* (Section 12.6.1), which causes them to be ignored since they occur too frequently to be useful

in searching. In our example these are `a`, `on`, and `it`. If no dictionary in the list recognizes the token then it is also ignored. In this example that happened to the punctuation sign – because there are in fact no dictionaries assigned for its token type (`Space symbols`), meaning space tokens will never be indexed. The choices of parser, dictionaries and which types of tokens to index are determined by the selected text search configuration (Section 12.7). It is possible to have many different configurations in the same database, and predefined configurations are available for various languages. In our example we used the default configuration `english` for the English language.

The function `setweight` can be used to label the entries of a `tsvector` with a given *weight*, where a weight is one of the letters A, B, C, or D. This is typically used to mark entries coming from different parts of a document, such as title versus body. Later, this information can be used for ranking of search results.

Because `to_tsvector(NULL)` will return `NULL`, it is recommended to use `coalesce` whenever a field might be null. Here is the recommended method for creating a `tsvector` from a structured document:

```
UPDATE tt SET ti =
    setweight(to_tsvector(coalesce(title,'')), 'A')      ||
    setweight(to_tsvector(coalesce(keyword,'')), 'B')   ||
    setweight(to_tsvector(coalesce(abstract,'')), 'C')  ||
    setweight(to_tsvector(coalesce(body,'')), 'D');
```

Here we have used `setweight` to label the source of each lexeme in the finished `tsvector`, and then merged the labeled `tsvector` values using the `tsvector` concatenation operator `||`. (Section 12.4.1 gives details about these operations.)

## 12.3.2. Parsing Queries

PostgreSQL provides the functions `to_tsquery`, `plainto_tsquery`, `phraseto_tsquery` and `websearch_to_tsquery` for converting a query to the `tsquery` data type. `to_tsquery` offers access to more features than either `plainto_tsquery` or `phraseto_tsquery`, but it is less forgiving about its input. `websearch_to_tsquery` is a simplified version of `to_tsquery` with an alternative syntax, similar to the one used by web search engines.

`to_tsquery([ config regconfig, ] querytext text)` returns `tsquery`

`to_tsquery` creates a `tsquery` value from *querytext*, which must consist of single tokens separated by the `tsquery` operators `&` (AND), `|` (OR), `!` (NOT), and `<->` (FOLLOWED BY), possibly grouped using parentheses. In other words, the input to `to_tsquery` must already follow the general rules for `tsquery` input, as described in Section 8.11.2. The difference is that while basic `tsquery` input takes the tokens at face value, `to_tsquery` normalizes each token into a lexeme using the specified or default configuration, and discards any tokens that are stop words according to the configuration. For example:

```
SELECT to_tsquery('english', 'The & Fat & Rats');
 to_tsquery
-----
'fat' & 'rat'
```

As in basic `tsquery` input, `weight(s)` can be attached to each lexeme to restrict it to match only `tsvector` lexemes of those `weight(s)`. For example:

```
SELECT to_tsquery('english', 'Fat | Rats:AB');
 to_tsquery
```



```
-----  
'fat' | 'rat':AB
```

Also, \* can be attached to a lexeme to specify prefix matching:

```
SELECT to_tsquery('supern:*A & star:A*B');  
       to_tsquery  
-----  
'supern':*A & 'star':*AB
```

Such a lexeme will match any word in a `tsvector` that begins with the given string.

`to_tsquery` can also accept single-quoted phrases. This is primarily useful when the configuration includes a thesaurus dictionary that may trigger on such phrases. In the example below, a thesaurus contains the rule `supernovae stars : sn`:

```
SELECT to_tsquery(''supernovae stars' & !crab');  
       to_tsquery  
-----  
'sn' & !'crab'
```

Without quotes, `to_tsquery` will generate a syntax error for tokens that are not separated by an AND, OR, or FOLLOWED BY operator.

```
plainto_tsquery([ config regconfig, ] querytext text)  
returns tsquery
```

`plainto_tsquery` transforms the unformatted text `querytext` to a `tsquery` value. The text is parsed and normalized much as for `to_tsvector`, then the & (AND) `tsquery` operator is inserted between surviving words.

Example:

```
SELECT plainto_tsquery('english', 'The Fat Rats');  
       plainto_tsquery  
-----  
'fat' & 'rat'
```

Note that `plainto_tsquery` will not recognize `tsquery` operators, weight labels, or prefix-match labels in its input:

```
SELECT plainto_tsquery('english', 'The Fat & Rats:C');  
       plainto_tsquery  
-----  
'fat' & 'rat' & 'c'
```

Here, all the input punctuation was discarded.

```
phraseto_tsquery([ config regconfig, ] querytext text)  
returns tsquery
```

`phraseto_tsquery` behaves much like `plainto_tsquery`, except that it inserts the `<->` (FOLLOWED BY) operator between surviving words instead of the & (AND) operator. Also, stop words are not simply discarded, but are accounted for by inserting `<N>` operators rather than `<->`

operators. This function is useful when searching for exact lexeme sequences, since the FOLLOWED BY operators check lexeme order not just the presence of all the lexemes.

Example:

```
SELECT phraseto_tsquery('english', 'The Fat Rats');
      phraseto_tsquery
-----
      'fat' <-> 'rat'
```

Like `plainto_tsquery`, the `phraseto_tsquery` function will not recognize `tsquery` operators, weight labels, or prefix-match labels in its input:

```
SELECT phraseto_tsquery('english', 'The Fat & Rats:C');
      phraseto_tsquery
-----
      'fat' <-> 'rat' <-> 'c'
```

```
websearch_to_tsquery([ config regconfig, ] querytext text)
      returns tsquery
```

`websearch_to_tsquery` creates a `tsquery` value from `querytext` using an alternative syntax in which simple unformatted text is a valid query. Unlike `plainto_tsquery` and `phraseto_tsquery`, it also recognizes certain operators. Moreover, this function will never raise syntax errors, which makes it possible to use raw user-supplied input for search. The following syntax is supported:

- `unquoted text`: text not inside quote marks will be converted to terms separated by `&` operators, as if processed by `plainto_tsquery`.
- `"quoted text"`: text inside quote marks will be converted to terms separated by `<->` operators, as if processed by `phraseto_tsquery`.
- `OR`: the word “or” will be converted to the `|` operator.
- `-`: a dash will be converted to the `!` operator.

Other punctuation is ignored. So like `plainto_tsquery` and `phraseto_tsquery`, the `websearch_to_tsquery` function will not recognize `tsquery` operators, weight labels, or prefix-match labels in its input.

Examples:

```
SELECT websearch_to_tsquery('english', 'The fat rats');
      websearch_to_tsquery
-----
      'fat' & 'rat'
(1 row)
```

```
SELECT websearch_to_tsquery('english', '"supernovae stars" -crab');
      websearch_to_tsquery
-----
      'supernova' <-> 'star' & !'crab'
(1 row)
```

```
SELECT websearch_to_tsquery('english', '"sad cat" or "fat rat"');
      websearch_to_tsquery
-----
      'sad' <-> 'cat' | 'fat' <-> 'rat'
```

```
(1 row)

SELECT websearch_to_tsquery('english', 'signal -"segmentation
      fault"');
      websearch_to_tsquery
-----
'signal' & !( 'segment' <-> 'fault' )
(1 row)

SELECT websearch_to_tsquery('english', '""')( dummy \\ query <-
>');
      websearch_to_tsquery
-----
'dummi' & 'queri'
(1 row)
```

### 12.3.3. Ranking Search Results

Ranking attempts to measure how relevant documents are to a particular query, so that when there are many matches the most relevant ones can be shown first. PostgreSQL provides two predefined ranking functions, which take into account lexical, proximity, and structural information; that is, they consider how often the query terms appear in the document, how close together the terms are in the document, and how important is the part of the document where they occur. However, the concept of relevancy is vague and very application-specific. Different applications might require additional information for ranking, e.g., document modification time. The built-in ranking functions are only examples. You can write your own ranking functions and/or combine their results with additional factors to fit your specific needs.

The two ranking functions currently available are:

```
ts_rank([ weights float4[], ] vector tsvector, query tsquery [,
normalization integer ]) returns float4
```

Ranks vectors based on the frequency of their matching lexemes.

```
ts_rank_cd([ weights float4[], ] vector tsvector, query tsquery [,
normalization integer ]) returns float4
```

This function computes the *cover density* ranking for the given document vector and query, as described in Clarke, Cormack, and Tudhope's "Relevance Ranking for One to Three Term Queries" in the journal "Information Processing and Management", 1999. Cover density is similar to `ts_rank` ranking except that the proximity of matching lexemes to each other is taken into consideration.

This function requires lexeme positional information to perform its calculation. Therefore, it ignores any “stripped” lexemes in the `tsvector`. If there are no unstripped lexemes in the input, the result will be zero. (See Section 12.4.1 for more information about the `strip` function and positional information in `tsvectors`.)

For both these functions, the optional *weights* argument offers the ability to weigh word instances more or less heavily depending on how they are labeled. The weight arrays specify how heavily to weigh each category of word, in the order:

```
{D-weight, C-weight, B-weight, A-weight}
```

If no *weights* are provided, then these defaults are used:

```
{0.1, 0.2, 0.4, 1.0}
```

Typically weights are used to mark words from special areas of the document, like the title or an initial abstract, so they can be treated with more or less importance than words in the document body.

Since a longer document has a greater chance of containing a query term it is reasonable to take into account document size, e.g., a hundred-word document with five instances of a search word is probably more relevant than a thousand-word document with five instances. Both ranking functions take an integer *normalization* option that specifies whether and how a document's length should impact its rank. The integer option controls several behaviors, so it is a bit mask: you can specify one or more behaviors using `|` (for example, `2 | 4`).

- 0 (the default) ignores the document length
- 1 divides the rank by  $1 + \text{the logarithm of the document length}$
- 2 divides the rank by the document length
- 4 divides the rank by the mean harmonic distance between extents (this is implemented only by `ts_rank_cd`)
- 8 divides the rank by the number of unique words in document
- 16 divides the rank by  $1 + \text{the logarithm of the number of unique words in document}$
- 32 divides the rank by itself + 1

If more than one flag bit is specified, the transformations are applied in the order listed.

It is important to note that the ranking functions do not use any global information, so it is impossible to produce a fair normalization to 1% or 100% as sometimes desired. Normalization option 32 (`rank / (rank+1)`) can be applied to scale all ranks into the range zero to one, but of course this is just a cosmetic change; it will not affect the ordering of the search results.

Here is an example that selects only the ten highest-ranked matches:

```
SELECT title, ts_rank_cd(textsearch, query) AS rank
FROM apod, to_tsquery('neutrino|(dark & matter)') query
WHERE query @@ textsearch
ORDER BY rank DESC
LIMIT 10;
```

title	rank
Neutrinos in the Sun	3.1
The Sudbury Neutrino Detector	2.4
A MACHO View of Galactic Dark Matter	2.01317
Hot Gas and Dark Matter	1.91171
The Virgo Cluster: Hot Plasma and Dark Matter	1.90953
Rafting for Solar Neutrinos	1.9
NGC 4650A: Strange Galaxy and Dark Matter	1.85774
Hot Gas and Dark Matter	1.6123
Ice Fishing for Cosmic Neutrinos	1.6
Weak Lensing Distorts the Universe	0.818218

This is the same example using normalized ranking:

```
SELECT title, ts_rank_cd(textsearch, query, 32 /* rank/(rank+1)
*/ ) AS rank
FROM apod, to_tsquery('neutrino|(dark & matter)') query
WHERE query @@ textsearch
ORDER BY rank DESC
LIMIT 10;
```

title	rank
Neutrinos in the Sun	0.756097569485493

The Sudbury Neutrino Detector	0.705882361190954
A MACHO View of Galactic Dark Matter	0.668123210574724
Hot Gas and Dark Matter	0.65655958650282
The Virgo Cluster: Hot Plasma and Dark Matter	0.656301290640973
Rafting for Solar Neutrinos	0.655172410958162
NGC 4650A: Strange Galaxy and Dark Matter	0.650072921219637
Hot Gas and Dark Matter	0.617195790024749
Ice Fishing for Cosmic Neutrinos	0.615384618911517
Weak Lensing Distorts the Universe	0.450010798361481

Ranking can be expensive since it requires consulting the `tsvector` of each matching document, which can be I/O bound and therefore slow. Unfortunately, it is almost impossible to avoid since practical queries often result in large numbers of matches.

## 12.3.4. Highlighting Results

To present search results it is ideal to show a part of each document and how it is related to the query. Usually, search engines show fragments of the document with marked search terms. PostgreSQL provides a function `ts_headline` that implements this functionality.

```
ts_headline([ config regconfig, ] document text, query tsquery
            [, options text ]) returns text
```

`ts_headline` accepts a document along with a query, and returns an excerpt from the document in which terms from the query are highlighted. Specifically, the function will use the query to select relevant text fragments, and then highlight all words that appear in the query, even if those word positions do not match the query's restrictions. The configuration to be used to parse the document can be specified by `config`; if `config` is omitted, the `default_text_search_config` configuration is used.

If an `options` string is specified it must consist of a comma-separated list of one or more `option=value` pairs. The available options are:

- `MaxWords`, `MinWords` (integers): these numbers determine the longest and shortest headlines to output. The default values are 35 and 15.
- `ShortWord` (integer): words of this length or less will be dropped at the start and end of a headline, unless they are query terms. The default value of three eliminates common English articles.
- `HighlightAll` (boolean): if `true` the whole document will be used as the headline, ignoring the preceding three parameters. The default is `false`.
- `MaxFragments` (integer): maximum number of text fragments to display. The default value of zero selects a non-fragment-based headline generation method. A value greater than zero selects fragment-based headline generation (see below).
- `StartSel`, `StopSel` (strings): the strings with which to delimit query words appearing in the document, to distinguish them from other excerpted words. The default values are “<b>” and “</b>”, which can be suitable for HTML output.
- `FragmentDelimiter` (string): When more than one fragment is displayed, the fragments will be separated by this string. The default is “ . . . ”.

These option names are recognized case-insensitively. You must double-quote string values if they contain spaces or commas.

In non-fragment-based headline generation, `ts_headline` locates matches for the given `query` and chooses a single one to display, preferring matches that have more query words within the allowed headline length. In fragment-based headline generation, `ts_headline` locates the query matches and splits each match into “fragments” of no more than `MaxWords` words each, preferring fragments with more query words, and when possible “stretching” fragments to include surrounding words. The fragment-based mode is thus more useful when the query matches span large sections of the document,

or when it's desirable to display multiple matches. In either mode, if no query matches can be identified, then a single fragment of the first `MinWords` words in the document will be displayed.

For example:

```
SELECT ts_headline('english',
  'The most common type of search
  is to find all documents containing given query terms
  and return them in order of their similarity to the
  query.',
  to_tsquery('english', 'query & similarity'));
      ts_headline
-----
containing given <b>query</b> terms +
and return them in order of their <b>similarity</b> to the+
<b>query</b>.

SELECT ts_headline('english',
  'Search terms may occur
  many times in a document,
  requiring ranking of the search matches to decide which
  occurrences to display in the result.',
  to_tsquery('english', 'search & term'),
  'MaxFragments=10, MaxWords=7, MinWords=3, StartSel=<<,
  StopSel=>>');
      ts_headline
-----
<<Search>> <<terms>> may occur +
many times ... ranking of the <<search>> matches to decide
```

`ts_headline` uses the original document, not a `tsvector` summary, so it can be slow and should be used with care.

## 12.4. Additional Features

This section describes additional functions and operators that are useful in connection with text search.

### 12.4.1. Manipulating Documents

Section 12.3.1 showed how raw textual documents can be converted into `tsvector` values. PostgreSQL also provides functions and operators that can be used to manipulate documents that are already in `tsvector` form.

```
tsvector || tsvector
```

The `tsvector` concatenation operator returns a vector which combines the lexemes and positional information of the two vectors given as arguments. Positions and weight labels are retained during the concatenation. Positions appearing in the right-hand vector are offset by the largest position mentioned in the left-hand vector, so that the result is nearly equivalent to the result of performing `to_tsvector` on the concatenation of the two original document strings. (The equivalence is not exact, because any stop-words removed from the end of the left-hand argument will not affect the result, whereas they would have affected the positions of the lexemes in the right-hand argument if textual concatenation were used.)

One advantage of using concatenation in the vector form, rather than concatenating text before applying `to_tsvector`, is that you can use different configurations to parse different sections of the document. Also, because the `setweight` function marks all lexemes of the given vector

the same way, it is necessary to parse the text and do `setweight` before concatenating if you want to label different parts of the document with different weights.

```
setweight(vector tsvector, weight "char") returns tsvector
```

`setweight` returns a copy of the input vector in which every position has been labeled with the given *weight*, either A, B, C, or D. (D is the default for new vectors and as such is not displayed on output.) These labels are retained when vectors are concatenated, allowing words from different parts of a document to be weighted differently by ranking functions.

Note that weight labels apply to *positions*, not *lexemes*. If the input vector has been stripped of positions then `setweight` does nothing.

```
length(vector tsvector) returns integer
```

Returns the number of lexemes stored in the vector.

```
strip(vector tsvector) returns tsvector
```

Returns a vector that lists the same lexemes as the given vector, but lacks any position or weight information. The result is usually much smaller than an unstripped vector, but it is also less useful. Relevance ranking does not work as well on stripped vectors as unstripped ones. Also, the `<->` (FOLLOWED BY) `tsquery` operator will never match stripped input, since it cannot determine the distance between lexeme occurrences.

A full list of `tsvector`-related functions is available in Table 9.43.

## 12.4.2. Manipulating Queries

Section 12.3.2 showed how raw textual queries can be converted into `tsquery` values. PostgreSQL also provides functions and operators that can be used to manipulate queries that are already in `tsquery` form.

```
tsquery && tsquery
```

Returns the AND-combination of the two given queries.

```
tsquery || tsquery
```

Returns the OR-combination of the two given queries.

```
!! tsquery
```

Returns the negation (NOT) of the given query.

```
tsquery <-> tsquery
```

Returns a query that searches for a match to the first given query immediately followed by a match to the second given query, using the `<->` (FOLLOWED BY) `tsquery` operator. For example:

```
SELECT to_tsquery('fat') <-> to_tsquery('cat | rat');
           ?column?
-----
'fat' <-> ( 'cat' | 'rat' )
```

```
tsquery_phrase(query1 tsquery, query2 tsquery [, distance integer]
) returns tsquery
```

Returns a query that searches for a match to the first given query followed by a match to the second given query at a distance of exactly *distance* lexemes, using the `<N>` `tsquery` operator. For example:

```
SELECT tsquery_phrase(to_tsquery('fat'), to_tsquery('cat'), 10);
   tsquery_phrase
-----
'fat' <10> 'cat'
```

`numnode(query tsquery)` returns integer

Returns the number of nodes (lexemes plus operators) in a `tsquery`. This function is useful to determine if the *query* is meaningful (returns > 0), or contains only stop words (returns 0). Examples:

```
SELECT numnode(plainto_tsquery('the any'));
NOTICE:  query contains only stopword(s) or doesn't contain
lexeme(s), ignored
 numnode
-----
        0
```

```
SELECT numnode('foo & bar'::tsquery);
 numnode
-----
        3
```

`querytree(query tsquery)` returns text

Returns the portion of a `tsquery` that can be used for searching an index. This function is useful for detecting unindexable queries, for example those containing only stop words or only negated terms. For example:

```
SELECT querytree(to_tsquery('defined'));
 querytree
-----
'defin'

SELECT querytree(to_tsquery('!defined'));
 querytree
-----
T
```

### 12.4.2.1. Query Rewriting

The `ts_rewrite` family of functions search a given `tsquery` for occurrences of a target subquery, and replace each occurrence with a substitute subquery. In essence this operation is a `tsquery`-specific version of substring replacement. A target and substitute combination can be thought of as a *query rewrite rule*. A collection of such rewrite rules can be a powerful search aid. For example, you can expand the search using synonyms (e.g., `new york`, `big apple`, `nyc`, `gotham`) or narrow the search to direct the user to some hot topic. There is some overlap in functionality between this feature and thesaurus dictionaries (Section 12.6.4). However, you can modify a set of rewrite rules on-the-fly without reindexing, whereas updating a thesaurus requires reindexing to be effective.

`ts_rewrite (query tsquery, target tsquery, substitute tsquery)` returns `tsquery`

This form of `ts_rewrite` simply applies a single rewrite rule: *target* is replaced by *substitute* wherever it appears in *query*. For example:



```
SELECT ts_rewrite('a & b'::tsquery, 'a'::tsquery, 'c'::tsquery);
       ts_rewrite
-----
      'b' & 'c'
```

`ts_rewrite (query tsquery, select text)` returns `tsquery`

This form of `ts_rewrite` accepts a starting *query* and an SQL *select* command, which is given as a text string. The *select* must yield two columns of `tsquery` type. For each row of the *select* result, occurrences of the first column value (the target) are replaced by the second column value (the substitute) within the current *query* value. For example:

```
CREATE TABLE aliases (t tsquery PRIMARY KEY, s tsquery);
INSERT INTO aliases VALUES('a', 'c');

SELECT ts_rewrite('a & b'::tsquery, 'SELECT t,s FROM aliases');
       ts_rewrite
-----
      'b' & 'c'
```

Note that when multiple rewrite rules are applied in this way, the order of application can be important; so in practice you will want the source query to `ORDER BY` some ordering key.

Let's consider a real-life astronomical example. We'll expand query *supernovae* using table-driven rewriting rules:

```
CREATE TABLE aliases (t tsquery primary key, s tsquery);
INSERT INTO aliases VALUES(to_tsquery('supernovae'),
                             to_tsquery('supernovae|sn'));

SELECT ts_rewrite(to_tsquery('supernovae & crab'), 'SELECT * FROM
       aliases');
       ts_rewrite
-----
'crab' & ( 'supernova' | 'sn' )
```

We can change the rewriting rules just by updating the table:

```
UPDATE aliases
SET s = to_tsquery('supernovae|sn & !nebulae')
WHERE t = to_tsquery('supernovae');

SELECT ts_rewrite(to_tsquery('supernovae & crab'), 'SELECT * FROM
       aliases');
       ts_rewrite
-----
'crab' & ( 'supernova' | 'sn' & '!nebula' )
```

Rewriting can be slow when there are many rewriting rules, since it checks every rule for a possible match. To filter out obvious non-candidate rules we can use the containment operators for the `tsquery` type. In the example below, we select only those rules which might match the original query:

```
SELECT ts_rewrite('a & b'::tsquery,
                  'SELECT t,s FROM aliases WHERE 'a & b'::tsquery
@> t');
       ts_rewrite
```

```
-----
'b' & 'c'
```

### 12.4.3. Triggers for Automatic Updates

#### Note

The method described in this section has been obsoleted by the use of stored generated columns, as described in Section 12.2.2.

When using a separate column to store the `tsvector` representation of your documents, it is necessary to create a trigger to update the `tsvector` column when the document content columns change. Two built-in trigger functions are available for this, or you can write your own.

```
tsvector_update_trigger(tsvector_column_name,
    config_name, text_column_name [, ... ])
tsvector_update_trigger_column(tsvector_column_name,
    config_column_name, text_column_name [, ... ])
```

These trigger functions automatically compute a `tsvector` column from one or more textual columns, under the control of parameters specified in the `CREATE TRIGGER` command. An example of their use is:

```
CREATE TABLE messages (
    title      text,
    body       text,
    tsv        tsvector
);

CREATE TRIGGER tsvectorupdate BEFORE INSERT OR UPDATE
ON messages FOR EACH ROW EXECUTE FUNCTION
tsvector_update_trigger(tsv, 'pg_catalog.english', title, body);

INSERT INTO messages VALUES('title here', 'the body text is here');

SELECT * FROM messages;
   title      |          body          |          tsv
-----+-----+-----
title here | the body text is here | 'bodi':4 'text':5 'titl':1

SELECT title, body FROM messages WHERE tsv @@ to_tsquery('title &
body');
   title      |          body
-----+-----
title here | the body text is here
```

Having created this trigger, any change in `title` or `body` will automatically be reflected into `tsv`, without the application having to worry about it.

The first trigger argument must be the name of the `tsvector` column to be updated. The second argument specifies the text search configuration to be used to perform the conversion. For `tsvector_update_trigger`, the configuration name is simply given as the second trigger argument. It must be schema-qualified as shown above, so that the trigger behavior will not change with changes in `search_path`. For `tsvector_update_trigger_column`, the second trigger argument is the name of another table column, which must be of type `regconfig`. This allows a per-row selection

of configuration to be made. The remaining argument(s) are the names of textual columns (of type `text`, `varchar`, or `char`). These will be included in the document in the order given. `NULL` values will be skipped (but the other columns will still be indexed).

A limitation of these built-in triggers is that they treat all the input columns alike. To process columns differently — for example, to weight title differently from body — it is necessary to write a custom trigger. Here is an example using PL/pgSQL as the trigger language:

```
CREATE FUNCTION messages_trigger() RETURNS trigger AS $$
begin
    new.tsv :=
        setweight(to_tsvector('pg_catalog.english',
        coalesce(new.title, '')), 'A') ||
        setweight(to_tsvector('pg_catalog.english',
        coalesce(new.body, '')), 'D');
    return new;
end
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;

CREATE TRIGGER tsvectorupdate BEFORE INSERT OR UPDATE
    ON messages FOR EACH ROW EXECUTE FUNCTION messages_trigger();
```

Keep in mind that it is important to specify the configuration name explicitly when creating `tsvector` values inside triggers, so that the column's contents will not be affected by changes to `default_text_search_config`. Failure to do this is likely to lead to problems such as search results changing after a dump and restore.

## 12.4.4. Gathering Document Statistics

The function `ts_stat` is useful for checking your configuration and for finding stop-word candidates.

```
ts_stat(sqlquery text, [ weights text, ]
        OUT word text, OUT ndoc integer,
        OUT nentry integer) returns setof record
```

`sqlquery` is a text value containing an SQL query which must return a single `tsvector` column. `ts_stat` executes the query and returns statistics about each distinct lexeme (word) contained in the `tsvector` data. The columns returned are

- `word text` — the value of a lexeme
- `ndoc integer` — number of documents (`tsvectors`) the word occurred in
- `nentry integer` — total number of occurrences of the word

If `weights` is supplied, only occurrences having one of those weights are counted.

For example, to find the ten most frequent words in a document collection:

```
SELECT * FROM ts_stat('SELECT vector FROM apod')
ORDER BY nentry DESC, ndoc DESC, word
LIMIT 10;
```

The same, but counting only word occurrences with weight A or B:

```
SELECT * FROM ts_stat('SELECT vector FROM apod', 'ab')
ORDER BY nentry DESC, ndoc DESC, word
```

```
LIMIT 10;
```

## 12.5. Parsers

Text search parsers are responsible for splitting raw document text into *tokens* and identifying each token's type, where the set of possible types is defined by the parser itself. Note that a parser does not modify the text at all — it simply identifies plausible word boundaries. Because of this limited scope, there is less need for application-specific custom parsers than there is for custom dictionaries. At present PostgreSQL provides just one built-in parser, which has been found to be useful for a wide range of applications.

The built-in parser is named `pg_catalog.default`. It recognizes 23 token types, shown in Table 12.1.

**Table 12.1. Default Parser's Token Types**

Alias	Description	Example
<code>asciiword</code>	Word, all ASCII letters	elephant
<code>word</code>	Word, all letters	mañana
<code>numword</code>	Word, letters and digits	beta1
<code>asciihword</code>	Hyphenated word, all ASCII	up-to-date
<code>hword</code>	Hyphenated word, all letters	lógico-matemática
<code>numhword</code>	Hyphenated word, letters and digits	postgresql-beta1
<code>hword_asciipart</code>	Hyphenated word part, all ASCII	postgresql in the context post-gresql-beta1
<code>hword_part</code>	Hyphenated word part, all letters	lógico or matemática in the context lógico-matemática
<code>hword_numpart</code>	Hyphenated word part, letters and digits	beta1 in the context post-gresql-beta1
<code>email</code>	Email address	foo@example.com
<code>protocol</code>	Protocol head	http://
<code>url</code>	URL	example.com/stuff/index.html
<code>host</code>	Host	example.com
<code>url_path</code>	URL path	/stuff/index.html, in the context of a URL
<code>file</code>	File or path name	/usr/local/foo.txt, if not within a URL
<code>sfloat</code>	Scientific notation	-1.234e56
<code>float</code>	Decimal notation	-1.234
<code>int</code>	Signed integer	-1234
<code>uint</code>	Unsigned integer	1234
<code>version</code>	Version number	8.3.0
<code>tag</code>	XML tag	<a href="dictionaries.html">
<code>entity</code>	XML entity	&amp;
<code>blank</code>	Space symbols	(any whitespace or punctuation not otherwise recognized)

**Note**

The parser's notion of a “letter” is determined by the database's locale setting, specifically `lc_ctype`. Words containing only the basic ASCII letters are reported as a separate token type, since it is sometimes useful to distinguish them. In most European languages, token types `word` and `asciiword` should be treated alike.

`email` does not support all valid email characters as defined by RFC 5322<sup>1</sup>. Specifically, the only non-alphanumeric characters supported for email user names are period, dash, and underscore.

It is possible for the parser to produce overlapping tokens from the same piece of text. As an example, a hyphenated word will be reported both as the entire word and as each component:

```
SELECT alias, description, token FROM ts_debug('foo-bar-betal');
```

alias	description	token
numhword	Hyphenated word, letters and digits	foo-bar-betal
hword_asciipart	Hyphenated word part, all ASCII	foo
blank	Space symbols	-
hword_asciipart	Hyphenated word part, all ASCII	bar
blank	Space symbols	-
hword_numpart	Hyphenated word part, letters and digits	betal

This behavior is desirable since it allows searches to work for both the whole compound word and for components. Here is another instructive example:

```
SELECT alias, description, token FROM ts_debug('http://example.com/stuff/index.html');
```

alias	description	token
protocol	Protocol head	http://
url	URL	example.com/stuff/index.html
host	Host	example.com
url_path	URL path	/stuff/index.html

## 12.6. Dictionaries

Dictionaries are used to eliminate words that should not be considered in a search (*stop words*), and to *normalize* words so that different derived forms of the same word will match. A successfully normalized word is called a *lexeme*. Aside from improving search quality, normalization and removal of stop words reduce the size of the `tsvector` representation of a document, thereby improving performance. Normalization does not always have linguistic meaning and usually depends on application semantics.

Some examples of normalization:

- Linguistic — Ispell dictionaries try to reduce input words to a normalized form; stemmer dictionaries remove word endings

<sup>1</sup> <https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc5322>

- URL locations can be canonicalized to make equivalent URLs match:
  - `http://www.pgsql.ru/db/mw/index.html`
  - `http://www.pgsql.ru/db/mw/`
  - `http://www.pgsql.ru/db/./db/mw/index.html`
- Color names can be replaced by their hexadecimal values, e.g., `red`, `green`, `blue`, `magenta` -> `FF0000`, `00FF00`, `0000FF`, `FF00FF`
- If indexing numbers, we can remove some fractional digits to reduce the range of possible numbers, so for example `3.14159265359`, `3.1415926`, `3.14` will be the same after normalization if only two digits are kept after the decimal point.

A dictionary is a program that accepts a token as input and returns:

- an array of lexemes if the input token is known to the dictionary (notice that one token can produce more than one lexeme)
- a single lexeme with the `TSL_FILTER` flag set, to replace the original token with a new token to be passed to subsequent dictionaries (a dictionary that does this is called a *filtering dictionary*)
- an empty array if the dictionary knows the token, but it is a stop word
- `NULL` if the dictionary does not recognize the input token

PostgreSQL provides predefined dictionaries for many languages. There are also several predefined templates that can be used to create new dictionaries with custom parameters. Each predefined dictionary template is described below. If no existing template is suitable, it is possible to create new ones; see the `contrib/` area of the PostgreSQL distribution for examples.

A text search configuration binds a parser together with a set of dictionaries to process the parser's output tokens. For each token type that the parser can return, a separate list of dictionaries is specified by the configuration. When a token of that type is found by the parser, each dictionary in the list is consulted in turn, until some dictionary recognizes it as a known word. If it is identified as a stop word, or if no dictionary recognizes the token, it will be discarded and not indexed or searched for. Normally, the first dictionary that returns a non-`NULL` output determines the result, and any remaining dictionaries are not consulted; but a filtering dictionary can replace the given word with a modified word, which is then passed to subsequent dictionaries.

The general rule for configuring a list of dictionaries is to place first the most narrow, most specific dictionary, then the more general dictionaries, finishing with a very general dictionary, like a Snowball stemmer or `simple`, which recognizes everything. For example, for an astronomy-specific search (`astro_en` configuration) one could bind token type `asciiword` (ASCII word) to a synonym dictionary of astronomical terms, a general English dictionary and a Snowball English stemmer:

```
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION astro_en
    ADD MAPPING FOR asciiword WITH astrosyn, english_ispell,
    english_stem;
```

A filtering dictionary can be placed anywhere in the list, except at the end where it'd be useless. Filtering dictionaries are useful to partially normalize words to simplify the task of later dictionaries. For example, a filtering dictionary could be used to remove accents from accented letters, as is done by the `unaccent` module.

## 12.6.1. Stop Words

Stop words are words that are very common, appear in almost every document, and have no discrimination value. Therefore, they can be ignored in the context of full text searching. For example, every English text contains words like `a` and `the`, so it is useless to store them in an index. However, stop words do affect the positions in `tsvector`, which in turn affect ranking:

```
SELECT to_tsvector('english', 'in the list of stop words');
```

```
to_tsvector
-----
'list':3 'stop':5 'word':6
```

The missing positions 1,2,4 are because of stop words. Ranks calculated for documents with and without stop words are quite different:

```
SELECT ts_rank_cd (to_tsvector('english', 'in the list of stop
words'), to_tsquery('list & stop'));
ts_rank_cd
-----
0.05
```

```
SELECT ts_rank_cd (to_tsvector('english', 'list stop words'),
to_tsquery('list & stop'));
ts_rank_cd
-----
0.1
```

It is up to the specific dictionary how it treats stop words. For example, `ispell` dictionaries first normalize words and then look at the list of stop words, while `Snowball` stemmers first check the list of stop words. The reason for the different behavior is an attempt to decrease noise.

## 12.6.2. Simple Dictionary

The simple dictionary template operates by converting the input token to lower case and checking it against a file of stop words. If it is found in the file then an empty array is returned, causing the token to be discarded. If not, the lower-cased form of the word is returned as the normalized lexeme. Alternatively, the dictionary can be configured to report non-stop-words as unrecognized, allowing them to be passed on to the next dictionary in the list.

Here is an example of a dictionary definition using the simple template:

```
CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY public.simple_dict (
    TEMPLATE = pg_catalog.simple,
    STOPWORDS = english
);
```

Here, `english` is the base name of a file of stop words. The file's full name will be `$SHAREDIR/tsearch_data/english.stop`, where `$SHAREDIR` means the PostgreSQL installation's shared-data directory, often `/usr/local/share/postgresql` (use `pg_config --sharedir` to determine it if you're not sure). The file format is simply a list of words, one per line. Blank lines and trailing spaces are ignored, and upper case is folded to lower case, but no other processing is done on the file contents.

Now we can test our dictionary:

```
SELECT ts_lexize('public.simple_dict', 'YeS');
ts_lexize
-----
{yes}

SELECT ts_lexize('public.simple_dict', 'The');
ts_lexize
-----
{}
```

We can also choose to return NULL, instead of the lower-cased word, if it is not found in the stop words file. This behavior is selected by setting the dictionary's `Accept` parameter to `false`. Continuing the example:

```
ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY public.simple_dict ( Accept = false );

SELECT ts_lexize('public.simple_dict', 'YeS');
       ts_lexize
-----
SELECT ts_lexize('public.simple_dict', 'The');
       ts_lexize
-----
       {}
```

With the default setting of `Accept = true`, it is only useful to place a `simple` dictionary at the end of a list of dictionaries, since it will never pass on any token to a following dictionary. Conversely, `Accept = false` is only useful when there is at least one following dictionary.

### Caution

Most types of dictionaries rely on configuration files, such as files of stop words. These files *must* be stored in UTF-8 encoding. They will be translated to the actual database encoding, if that is different, when they are read into the server.

### Caution

Normally, a database session will read a dictionary configuration file only once, when it is first used within the session. If you modify a configuration file and want to force existing sessions to pick up the new contents, issue an `ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY` command on the dictionary. This can be a “dummy” update that doesn't actually change any parameter values.

## 12.6.3. Synonym Dictionary

This dictionary template is used to create dictionaries that replace a word with a synonym. Phrases are not supported (use the thesaurus template (Section 12.6.4) for that). A synonym dictionary can be used to overcome linguistic problems, for example, to prevent an English stemmer dictionary from reducing the word “Paris” to “pari”. It is enough to have a `Paris pari` line in the synonym dictionary and put it before the `english_stem` dictionary. For example:

```
SELECT * FROM ts_debug('english', 'Paris');
       alias | description | token | dictionaries | dictionary
       | lexemes
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----
  asciiword | Word, all ASCII | Paris | {english_stem} |
  english_stem | {pari}
```

```
CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY my_synonym (
    TEMPLATE = synonym,
    SYNONYMS = my_synonyms
```



```
);

ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION english
  ALTER MAPPING FOR asciiword
  WITH my_synonym, english_stem;

SELECT * FROM ts_debug('english', 'Paris');
  alias | description | token | dictionaries |
  dictionary | lexemes
-----+-----+-----+-----
+-----+-----
  asciiword | Word, all ASCII | Paris | {my_synonym,english_stem} |
  my_synonym | {paris}
```

The only parameter required by the synonym template is `SYNONYMS`, which is the base name of its configuration file — `my_synonyms` in the above example. The file's full name will be `$SHAREDIR/tsearch_data/my_synonyms.syn` (where `$SHAREDIR` means the PostgreSQL installation's shared-data directory). The file format is just one line per word to be substituted, with the word followed by its synonym, separated by white space. Blank lines and trailing spaces are ignored.

The synonym template also has an optional parameter `CaseSensitive`, which defaults to `false`. When `CaseSensitive` is `false`, words in the synonym file are folded to lower case, as are input tokens. When it is `true`, words and tokens are not folded to lower case, but are compared as-is.

An asterisk (\*) can be placed at the end of a synonym in the configuration file. This indicates that the synonym is a prefix. The asterisk is ignored when the entry is used in `to_tsvector()`, but when it is used in `to_tsquery()`, the result will be a query item with the prefix match marker (see Section 12.3.2). For example, suppose we have these entries in `$SHAREDIR/tsearch_data/synonym_sample.syn`:

```
postgres      pgsq1
postgresql    pgsq1
postgre pgsq1
gogle googl
indices index*
```

Then we will get these results:

```
mydb=# CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY syn (template=synonym,
      synonyms='synonym_sample');
mydb=# SELECT ts_lexize('syn', 'indices');
      ts_lexize
-----
 {index}
(1 row)

mydb=# CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION tst (copy=simple);
mydb=# ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION tst ALTER MAPPING FOR
      asciiword WITH syn;
mydb=# SELECT to_tsvector('tst', 'indices');
      to_tsvector
-----
 'index':1
(1 row)

mydb=# SELECT to_tsquery('tst', 'indices');
      to_tsquery
```

```
-----  
'index':*  
(1 row)  
  
mydb=# SELECT 'indexes are very useful'::tsvector;  
          tsvector  
-----  
'are' 'indexes' 'useful' 'very'  
(1 row)  
  
mydb=# SELECT 'indexes are very useful'::tsvector @@  
        to_tsquery('tst', 'indices');  
        ?column?  
-----  
t  
(1 row)
```

## 12.6.4. Thesaurus Dictionary

A thesaurus dictionary (sometimes abbreviated as TZ) is a collection of words that includes information about the relationships of words and phrases, i.e., broader terms (BT), narrower terms (NT), preferred terms, non-preferred terms, related terms, etc.

Basically a thesaurus dictionary replaces all non-preferred terms by one preferred term and, optionally, preserves the original terms for indexing as well. PostgreSQL's current implementation of the thesaurus dictionary is an extension of the synonym dictionary with added *phrase* support. A thesaurus dictionary requires a configuration file of the following format:

```
# this is a comment  
sample word(s) : indexed word(s)  
more sample word(s) : more indexed word(s)  
...
```

where the colon (:) symbol acts as a delimiter between a phrase and its replacement.

A thesaurus dictionary uses a *subdictionary* (which is specified in the dictionary's configuration) to normalize the input text before checking for phrase matches. It is only possible to select one subdictionary. An error is reported if the subdictionary fails to recognize a word. In that case, you should remove the use of the word or teach the subdictionary about it. You can place an asterisk (\*) at the beginning of an indexed word to skip applying the subdictionary to it, but all sample words *must* be known to the subdictionary.

The thesaurus dictionary chooses the longest match if there are multiple phrases matching the input, and ties are broken by using the last definition.

Specific stop words recognized by the subdictionary cannot be specified; instead use ? to mark the location where any stop word can appear. For example, assuming that a and the are stop words according to the subdictionary:

```
? one ? two : swsw
```

matches a one the two and the one a two; both would be replaced by swsw.

Since a thesaurus dictionary has the capability to recognize phrases it must remember its state and interact with the parser. A thesaurus dictionary uses these assignments to check if it should handle the next word or stop accumulation. The thesaurus dictionary must be configured carefully. For example, if the thesaurus dictionary is assigned to handle only the `asciiword` token, then a thesaurus dictionary definition like `one 7` will not work since token type `uint` is not assigned to the thesaurus dictionary.

**Caution**

Thesauruses are used during indexing so any change in the thesaurus dictionary's parameters *requires* reindexing. For most other dictionary types, small changes such as adding or removing stopwords does not force reindexing.

### 12.6.4.1. Thesaurus Configuration

To define a new thesaurus dictionary, use the thesaurus template. For example:

```
CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY thesaurus_simple (  
    TEMPLATE = thesaurus,  
    DictFile = mythesaurus,  
    Dictionary = pg_catalog.english_stem  
);
```

Here:

- thesaurus\_simple is the new dictionary's name
- mythesaurus is the base name of the thesaurus configuration file. (Its full name will be \$SHAREDIR/tsearch\_data/mythesaurus.ths, where \$SHAREDIR means the installation shared-data directory.)
- pg\_catalog.english\_stem is the subdictionary (here, a Snowball English stemmer) to use for thesaurus normalization. Notice that the subdictionary will have its own configuration (for example, stop words), which is not shown here.

Now it is possible to bind the thesaurus dictionary thesaurus\_simple to the desired token types in a configuration, for example:

```
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION russian  
    ALTER MAPPING FOR asciiword, asciihword, hword_asciipart  
    WITH thesaurus_simple;
```

### 12.6.4.2. Thesaurus Example

Consider a simple astronomical thesaurus thesaurus\_astro, which contains some astronomical word combinations:

```
supernovae stars : sn  
crab nebulae : crab
```

Below we create a dictionary and bind some token types to an astronomical thesaurus and English stemmer:

```
CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY thesaurus_astro (  
    TEMPLATE = thesaurus,  
    DictFile = thesaurus_astro,  
    Dictionary = english_stem  
);  
  
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION russian  
    ALTER MAPPING FOR asciiword, asciihword, hword_asciipart  
    WITH thesaurus_astro, english_stem;
```

Now we can see how it works. `ts_lexize` is not very useful for testing a thesaurus, because it treats its input as a single token. Instead we can use `plainto_tsquery` and `to_tsvector` which will break their input strings into multiple tokens:

```
SELECT plainto_tsquery('supernova star');
plainto_tsquery
-----
'sn'

SELECT to_tsvector('supernova star');
to_tsvector
-----
'sn':1
```

In principle, one can use `to_tsquery` if you quote the argument:

```
SELECT to_tsquery(''supernova star'');
to_tsquery
-----
'sn'
```

Notice that `supernova star` matches `supernovae stars` in `thesaurus_astro` because we specified the `english_stem` stemmer in the thesaurus definition. The stemmer removed the `e` and `s`.

To index the original phrase as well as the substitute, just include it in the right-hand part of the definition:

```
supernovae stars : sn supernovae stars

SELECT plainto_tsquery('supernova star');
plainto_tsquery
-----
'sn' & 'supernova' & 'star'
```

## 12.6.5. Ispell Dictionary

The Ispell dictionary template supports *morphological dictionaries*, which can normalize many different linguistic forms of a word into the same lexeme. For example, an English Ispell dictionary can match all declensions and conjugations of the search term `bank`, e.g., `banking`, `banked`, `banks`, `banks '`, and `bank 's`.

The standard PostgreSQL distribution does not include any Ispell configuration files. Dictionaries for a large number of languages are available from Ispell<sup>2</sup>. Also, some more modern dictionary file formats are supported — MySpell<sup>3</sup> (OO < 2.0.1) and Hunspell<sup>4</sup> (OO >= 2.0.2). A large list of dictionaries is available on the OpenOffice Wiki<sup>5</sup>.

To create an Ispell dictionary perform these steps:

- download dictionary configuration files. OpenOffice extension files have the `.oxt` extension. It is necessary to extract `.aff` and `.dic` files, change extensions to `.affix` and `.dict`. For some dictionary files it is also needed to convert characters to the UTF-8 encoding with commands (for example, for a Norwegian language dictionary):

---

<sup>2</sup> <https://www.cs.hmc.edu/~geoff/ispell.html>

<sup>3</sup> <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/MySpell>

<sup>4</sup> <https://hunspell.github.io/>

<sup>5</sup> <https://wiki.openoffice.org/wiki/Dictionaries>

```
iconv -f ISO_8859-1 -t UTF-8 -o nn_no.affix nn_NO.aff
iconv -f ISO_8859-1 -t UTF-8 -o nn_no.dict nn_NO.dic
```

- copy files to the `$SHAREDIR/tsearch_data` directory
- load files into PostgreSQL with the following command:

```
CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY english_hunspell (
    TEMPLATE = ispell,
    DictFile = en_us,
    AffFile = en_us,
    Stopwords = english);
```

Here, `DictFile`, `AffFile`, and `StopWords` specify the base names of the dictionary, affixes, and stop-words files. The stop-words file has the same format explained above for the simple dictionary type. The format of the other files is not specified here but is available from the above-mentioned web sites.

Ispell dictionaries usually recognize a limited set of words, so they should be followed by another broader dictionary; for example, a Snowball dictionary, which recognizes everything.

The `.affix` file of Ispell has the following structure:

```
prefixes
flag *A:
    . > RE # As in enter > reenter
suffixes
flag T:
    E > ST # As in late > latest
    [^AEIOU]Y > -Y, IEST # As in dirty > dirtiest
    [AEIOU]Y > EST # As in gray > grayest
    [^EY] > EST # As in small > smallest
```

And the `.dict` file has the following structure:

```
lapse/ADGRS
lard/DGRS
large/PRTY
lark/MRS
```

Format of the `.dict` file is:

```
basic_form/affix_class_name
```

In the `.affix` file every affix flag is described in the following format:

```
condition > [-stripping_letters,] adding_affix
```

Here, `condition` has a format similar to the format of regular expressions. It can use groupings `[...]` and `[^...]`. For example, `[AEIOU]Y` means that the last letter of the word is "y" and the penultimate letter is "a", "e", "i", "o" or "u". `[^EY]` means that the last letter is neither "e" nor "y".

Ispell dictionaries support splitting compound words; a useful feature. Notice that the affix file should specify a special flag using the `compoundwords controlled` statement that marks dictionary words that can participate in compound formation:

compoundwords controlled z

Here are some examples for the Norwegian language:

```
SELECT ts_lexize('norwegian_ispell',
  'overbuljongterningpakkmeisterassistent');
      {over,buljong,terning,pakk,mester,assistent}
SELECT ts_lexize('norwegian_ispell', 'sjokoladefabrikk');
      {sjokoladefabrikk,sjokolade,fabrikk}
```

MySpell format is a subset of Hunspell. The `.affix` file of Hunspell has the following structure:

```
PFX A Y 1
PFX A 0 re .
SFX T N 4
SFX T 0 st e
SFX T y iest [^aeiouly
SFX T 0 est [aeiouly
SFX T 0 est [^ey]
```

The first line of an affix class is the header. Fields of an affix rules are listed after the header:

- parameter name (PFX or SFX)
- flag (name of the affix class)
- stripping characters from beginning (at prefix) or end (at suffix) of the word
- adding affix
- condition that has a format similar to the format of regular expressions.

The `.dict` file looks like the `.dict` file of Ispell:

```
larder/M
lardy/RT
large/RSPMYT
largehearted
```

### Note

MySpell does not support compound words. Hunspell has sophisticated support for compound words. At present, PostgreSQL implements only the basic compound word operations of Hunspell.

## 12.6.6. Snowball Dictionary

The Snowball dictionary template is based on a project by Martin Porter, inventor of the popular Porter's stemming algorithm for the English language. Snowball now provides stemming algorithms for many languages (see the Snowball site<sup>6</sup> for more information). Each algorithm understands how to reduce common variant forms of words to a base, or stem, spelling within its language. A Snowball dictionary requires a language parameter to identify which stemmer to use, and optionally can specify a stopwords file name that gives a list of words to eliminate. (PostgreSQL's standard stopwords lists are also provided by the Snowball project.) For example, there is a built-in definition equivalent to

---

<sup>6</sup> <https://snowballstem.org/>

```
CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY english_stem (  
    TEMPLATE = snowball,  
    Language = english,  
    StopWords = english  
);
```

The stopword file format is the same as already explained.

A Snowball dictionary recognizes everything, whether or not it is able to simplify the word, so it should be placed at the end of the dictionary list. It is useless to have it before any other dictionary because a token will never pass through it to the next dictionary.

## 12.7. Configuration Example

A text search configuration specifies all options necessary to transform a document into a `tsvector`: the parser to use to break text into tokens, and the dictionaries to use to transform each token into a lexeme. Every call of `to_tsvector` or `to_tsquery` needs a text search configuration to perform its processing. The configuration parameter `default_text_search_config` specifies the name of the default configuration, which is the one used by text search functions if an explicit configuration parameter is omitted. It can be set in `postgresql.conf`, or set for an individual session using the `SET` command.

Several predefined text search configurations are available, and you can create custom configurations easily. To facilitate management of text search objects, a set of SQL commands is available, and there are several `psql` commands that display information about text search objects (Section 12.10).

As an example we will create a configuration `pg`, starting by duplicating the built-in `english` configuration:

```
CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION public.pg ( COPY =  
    pg_catalog.english );
```

We will use a PostgreSQL-specific synonym list and store it in `$SHAREDIR/tsearch_data/pg_dict.syn`. The file contents look like:

```
postgres    pg  
pgsql       pg  
postgresql  pg
```

We define the synonym dictionary like this:

```
CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY pg_dict (  
    TEMPLATE = synonym,  
    SYNONYMS = pg_dict  
);
```

Next we register the Ispell dictionary `english_ispell`, which has its own configuration files:

```
CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY english_ispell (  
    TEMPLATE = ispell,  
    DictFile = english,  
    AffFile = english,  
    StopWords = english  
);
```

Now we can set up the mappings for words in configuration `pg`:

```
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION pg
    ALTER MAPPING FOR asciiword, asciihword, hword_asciipart,
                        word, hword, hword_part
    WITH pg_dict, english_ispell, english_stem;
```

We choose not to index or search some token types that the built-in configuration does handle:

```
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION pg
    DROP MAPPING FOR email, url, url_path, sfloat, float;
```

Now we can test our configuration:

```
SELECT * FROM ts_debug('public.pg', '
PostgreSQL, the highly scalable, SQL compliant, open source object-
relational
database management system, is now undergoing beta testing of the
next
version of our software.
');
```

The next step is to set the session to use the new configuration, which was created in the `public` schema:

```
=> \dF
    List of text search configurations
 Schema | Name | Description
-----+-----+-----
 public | pg   |

SET default_text_search_config = 'public.pg';
SET

SHOW default_text_search_config;
 default_text_search_config
-----
 public.pg
```

## 12.8. Testing and Debugging Text Search

The behavior of a custom text search configuration can easily become confusing. The functions described in this section are useful for testing text search objects. You can test a complete configuration, or test parsers and dictionaries separately.

### 12.8.1. Configuration Testing

The function `ts_debug` allows easy testing of a text search configuration.

```
ts_debug([ config regconfig, ] document text,
         OUT alias text,
         OUT description text,
```



```

OUT token text,
OUT dictionaries regdictionary[],
OUT dictionary regdictionary,
OUT lexemes text[])
returns setof record

```

`ts_debug` displays information about every token of *document* as produced by the parser and processed by the configured dictionaries. It uses the configuration specified by *config*, or `default_text_search_config` if that argument is omitted.

`ts_debug` returns one row for each token identified in the text by the parser. The columns returned are

- *alias* text — short name of the token type
- *description* text — description of the token type
- *token* text — text of the token
- *dictionaries* regdictionary[] — the dictionaries selected by the configuration for this token type
- *dictionary* regdictionary — the dictionary that recognized the token, or NULL if none did
- *lexemes* text[] — the lexeme(s) produced by the dictionary that recognized the token, or NULL if none did; an empty array ({} ) means it was recognized as a stop word

Here is a simple example:

```

SELECT * FROM ts_debug('english', 'a fat  cat sat on a mat - it ate
a fat rats');

```

alias	description	token	dictionaries	dictionary
lexemes				
-----+-----+-----+-----				
+-----+-----				
asciiword	Word, all ASCII	a	{english_stem}	
english_stem	{}			
blank	Space symbols		{}	
asciiword	Word, all ASCII	fat	{english_stem}	
english_stem	{fat}			
blank	Space symbols		{}	
asciiword	Word, all ASCII	cat	{english_stem}	
english_stem	{cat}			
blank	Space symbols		{}	
asciiword	Word, all ASCII	sat	{english_stem}	
english_stem	{sat}			
blank	Space symbols		{}	
asciiword	Word, all ASCII	on	{english_stem}	
english_stem	{}			
blank	Space symbols		{}	
asciiword	Word, all ASCII	a	{english_stem}	
english_stem	{}			
blank	Space symbols		{}	
asciiword	Word, all ASCII	mat	{english_stem}	
english_stem	{mat}			
blank	Space symbols		{}	

blank	Space symbols	-	{}
asciiword	Word, all ASCII	it	{english_stem}
english_stem			{}
blank	Space symbols		{}
asciiword	Word, all ASCII	ate	{english_stem}
english_stem			{ate}
blank	Space symbols		{}
asciiword	Word, all ASCII	a	{english_stem}
english_stem			{}
blank	Space symbols		{}
asciiword	Word, all ASCII	fat	{english_stem}
english_stem			{fat}
blank	Space symbols		{}
asciiword	Word, all ASCII	rats	{english_stem}
english_stem			{rat}

For a more extensive demonstration, we first create a `public.english` configuration and Ispell dictionary for the English language:

```
CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION public.english ( COPY =
pg_catalog.english );
```

```
CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY english_ispell (
    TEMPLATE = ispell,
    DictFile = english,
    AffFile = english,
    StopWords = english
);
```

```
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION public.english
    ALTER MAPPING FOR asciiword WITH english_ispell, english_stem;
```

```
SELECT * FROM ts_debug('public.english', 'The Brightest
supernovaes');
```

alias	description	token	dictionaries
	dictionary	lexemes	
asciiword	Word, all ASCII	The	{english_ispell,english_stem}   english_ispell   {}
blank	Space symbols		{}
asciiword	Word, all ASCII	Brightest	{english_ispell,english_stem}   english_ispell   {bright}
blank	Space symbols		{}
asciiword	Word, all ASCII	supernovaes	{english_ispell,english_stem}   english_stem   {supernova}

In this example, the word `Brightest` was recognized by the parser as an ASCII word (alias `asciiword`). For this token type the dictionary list is `english_ispell` and `english_stem`. The word was recognized by `english_ispell`, which reduced it to the noun `bright`. The word

supernovaes is unknown to the `english_ispell` dictionary so it was passed to the next dictionary, and, fortunately, was recognized (in fact, `english_stem` is a Snowball dictionary which recognizes everything; that is why it was placed at the end of the dictionary list).

The word `The` was recognized by the `english_ispell` dictionary as a stop word (Section 12.6.1) and will not be indexed. The spaces are discarded too, since the configuration provides no dictionaries at all for them.

You can reduce the width of the output by explicitly specifying which columns you want to see:

```
SELECT alias, token, dictionary, lexemes
FROM ts_debug('public.english', 'The Brightest supernovaes');
  alias | token | dictionary | lexemes
-----+-----+-----+-----
asciiword | The | english_ispell | {}
blank | | | 
asciiword | Brightest | english_ispell | {bright}
blank | | | 
asciiword | supernovaes | english_stem | {supernova}
```

## 12.8.2. Parser Testing

The following functions allow direct testing of a text search parser.

```
ts_parse(parser_name text, document text,
         OUT tokid integer, OUT token text) returns setof record
ts_parse(parser_oid oid, document text,
         OUT tokid integer, OUT token text) returns setof record
```

`ts_parse` parses the given *document* and returns a series of records, one for each token produced by parsing. Each record includes a `tokid` showing the assigned token type and a `token` which is the text of the token. For example:

```
SELECT * FROM ts_parse('default', '123 - a number');
 tokid | token
-----+-----
    22 | 123
    12 | 
    12 | -
     1 | a
    12 | 
     1 | number
```

```
ts_token_type(parser_name text, OUT tokid integer,
              OUT alias text, OUT description text) returns setof
record
ts_token_type(parser_oid oid, OUT tokid integer,
              OUT alias text, OUT description text) returns setof
record
```

`ts_token_type` returns a table which describes each type of token the specified parser can recognize. For each token type, the table gives the integer `tokid` that the parser uses to label a token of that type, the `alias` that names the token type in configuration commands, and a short `description`. For example:

```
SELECT * FROM ts_token_type('default');
 tokid |      alias      | description
-----+-----
+-----+-----
  1 | asciiword       | Word, all ASCII
  2 | word            | Word, all letters
  3 | numword         | Word, letters and digits
  4 | email           | Email address
  5 | url             | URL
  6 | host            | Host
  7 | sfloat          | Scientific notation
  8 | version         | Version number
  9 | hword_numpart   | Hyphenated word part, letters and digits
10 | hword_part      | Hyphenated word part, all letters
11 | hword_asciipart | Hyphenated word part, all ASCII
12 | blank           | Space symbols
13 | tag             | XML tag
14 | protocol        | Protocol head
15 | numhword        | Hyphenated word, letters and digits
16 | asciihword      | Hyphenated word, all ASCII
17 | hword           | Hyphenated word, all letters
18 | url_path        | URL path
19 | file            | File or path name
20 | float           | Decimal notation
21 | int             | Signed integer
22 | uint            | Unsigned integer
23 | entity          | XML entity
```

### 12.8.3. Dictionary Testing

The `ts_lexize` function facilitates dictionary testing.

`ts_lexize(dict regdictionary, token text)` returns `text[]`

`ts_lexize` returns an array of lexemes if the input *token* is known to the dictionary, or an empty array if the token is known to the dictionary but it is a stop word, or NULL if it is an unknown word.

Examples:

```
SELECT ts_lexize('english_stem', 'stars');
 ts_lexize
-----
 {star}

SELECT ts_lexize('english_stem', 'a');
 ts_lexize
-----
 {}
```

#### Note

The `ts_lexize` function expects a single *token*, not text. Here is a case where this can be confusing:

```
SELECT ts_lexize('thesaurus_astro', 'supernovae stars') is
null;
?column?
-----
t
```

The thesaurus dictionary `thesaurus_astro` does know the phrase `supernovae stars`, but `ts_lexize` fails since it does not parse the input text but treats it as a single token. Use `plainto_tsquery` or `to_tsvector` to test thesaurus dictionaries, for example:

```
SELECT plainto_tsquery('supernovae stars');
plainto_tsquery
-----
'sn'
```

## 12.9. Preferred Index Types for Text Search

There are two kinds of indexes that can be used to speed up full text searches: GIN and GiST. Note that indexes are not mandatory for full text searching, but in cases where a column is searched on a regular basis, an index is usually desirable.

To create such an index, do one of:

```
CREATE INDEX name ON table USING GIN (column);
```

Creates a GIN (Generalized Inverted Index)-based index. The *column* must be of `tsvector` type.

```
CREATE INDEX name ON table USING GIST (column [ { DEFAULT | tsvector_ops } (siglen = number) ] );
```

Creates a GiST (Generalized Search Tree)-based index. The *column* can be of `tsvector` or `tsquery` type. Optional integer parameter *siglen* determines signature length in bytes (see below for details).

GIN indexes are the preferred text search index type. As inverted indexes, they contain an index entry for each word (lexeme), with a compressed list of matching locations. Multi-word searches can find the first match, then use the index to remove rows that are lacking additional words. GIN indexes store only the words (lexemes) of `tsvector` values, and not their weight labels. Thus a table row recheck is needed when using a query that involves weights.

A GiST index is *lossy*, meaning that the index might produce false matches, and it is necessary to check the actual table row to eliminate such false matches. (PostgreSQL does this automatically when needed.) GiST indexes are lossy because each document is represented in the index by a fixed-length signature. The signature length in bytes is determined by the value of the optional integer parameter *siglen*. The default signature length (when *siglen* is not specified) is 124 bytes, the maximum signature length is 2024 bytes. The signature is generated by hashing each word into a single bit in an *n*-bit string, with all these bits OR-ed together to produce an *n*-bit document signature. When two words hash to the same bit position there will be a false match. If all words in the query have matches (real or false) then the table row must be retrieved to see if the match is correct. Longer signatures lead to a more precise search (scanning a smaller fraction of the index and fewer heap pages), at the cost of a larger index.

A GiST index can be covering, i.e., use the `INCLUDE` clause. Included columns can have data types without any GiST operator class. Included attributes will be stored uncompressed.

Lossiness causes performance degradation due to unnecessary fetches of table records that turn out to be false matches. Since random access to table records is slow, this limits the usefulness of GiST

indexes. The likelihood of false matches depends on several factors, in particular the number of unique words, so using dictionaries to reduce this number is recommended.

Note that GIN index build time can often be improved by increasing `maintenance_work_mem`, while GiST index build time is not sensitive to that parameter.

Partitioning of big collections and the proper use of GIN and GiST indexes allows the implementation of very fast searches with online update. Partitioning can be done at the database level using table inheritance, or by distributing documents over servers and collecting external search results, e.g., via Foreign Data access. The latter is possible because ranking functions use only local information.

## 12.10. psql Support

Information about text search configuration objects can be obtained in psql using a set of commands:

```
\dF{d,p,t}[+] [PATTERN]
```

An optional `+` produces more details.

The optional parameter *PATTERN* can be the name of a text search object, optionally schema-qualified. If *PATTERN* is omitted then information about all visible objects will be displayed. *PATTERN* can be a regular expression and can provide *separate* patterns for the schema and object names. The following examples illustrate this:

```
=> \dF *fulltext*
      List of text search configurations
 Schema | Name          | Description
-----+-----+-----
 public | fulltext_cfg |
```

```
=> \dF *.fulltext*
      List of text search configurations
 Schema | Name          | Description
-----+-----+-----
 fulltext | fulltext_cfg |
 public  | fulltext_cfg |
```

The available commands are:

```
\dF[+] [PATTERN]
```

List text search configurations (add `+` for more detail).

```
=> \dF russian
      List of text search configurations
 Schema | Name          | Description
-----+-----+-----
 pg_catalog | russian | configuration for russian language

=> \dF+ russian
Text search configuration "pg_catalog.russian"
Parser: "pg_catalog.default"
      Token          | Dictionaries
-----+-----
 asciihword          | english_stem
 asciiword            | english_stem
```

email	simple
file	simple
float	simple
host	simple
hword	russian_stem
hword_asciipart	english_stem
hword_numpart	simple
hword_part	russian_stem
int	simple
numhword	simple
numword	simple
sfloat	simple
uint	simple
url	simple
url_path	simple
version	simple
word	russian_stem

\dFd[+] [PATTERN]

List text search dictionaries (add + for more detail).

=> \dFd

Schema	Name	List of text search dictionaries
Description		
-----+-----		
+-----+-----		
pg_catalog   language	arabic_stem	snowball stemmer for arabic
pg_catalog   language	armenian_stem	snowball stemmer for armenian
pg_catalog   language	basque_stem	snowball stemmer for basque
pg_catalog   language	catalan_stem	snowball stemmer for catalan
pg_catalog   language	danish_stem	snowball stemmer for danish
pg_catalog   language	dutch_stem	snowball stemmer for dutch
pg_catalog   language	english_stem	snowball stemmer for english
pg_catalog   language	finnish_stem	snowball stemmer for finnish
pg_catalog   language	french_stem	snowball stemmer for french
pg_catalog   language	german_stem	snowball stemmer for german
pg_catalog   language	greek_stem	snowball stemmer for greek
pg_catalog   language	hindi_stem	snowball stemmer for hindi
pg_catalog   language	hungarian_stem	snowball stemmer for hungarian
pg_catalog   language	indonesian_stem	snowball stemmer for indonesian
pg_catalog   language	irish_stem	snowball stemmer for irish

pg_catalog	italian_stem	snowball stemmer for italian language
pg_catalog	lithuanian_stem	snowball stemmer for lithuanian language
pg_catalog	nepali_stem	snowball stemmer for nepali language
pg_catalog	norwegian_stem	snowball stemmer for norwegian language
pg_catalog	portuguese_stem	snowball stemmer for portuguese language
pg_catalog	romanian_stem	snowball stemmer for romanian language
pg_catalog	russian_stem	snowball stemmer for russian language
pg_catalog	serbian_stem	snowball stemmer for serbian language
pg_catalog	simple	simple dictionary: just lower case and check for stopword
pg_catalog	spanish_stem	snowball stemmer for spanish language
pg_catalog	swedish_stem	snowball stemmer for swedish language
pg_catalog	tamil_stem	snowball stemmer for tamil language
pg_catalog	turkish_stem	snowball stemmer for turkish language
pg_catalog	yiddish_stem	snowball stemmer for yiddish language

\dFp[+] [PATTERN]

List text search parsers (add + for more detail).

=> \dFp

List of text search parsers

Schema	Name	Description
pg_catalog	default	default word parser

=> \dFp+

Text search parser "pg\_catalog.default"

Method	Function	Description
Start parse	prsd_start	
Get next token	prsd_nexttoken	
End parse	prsd_end	
Get headline	prsd_headline	
Get token types	prsd_lextype	

Token types for parser "pg\_catalog.default"

Token name	Description
asciihword	Hyphenated word, all ASCII
asciword	Word, all ASCII
blank	Space symbols
email	Email address
entity	XML entity
file	File or path name
float	Decimal notation



host		Host
hword		Hyphenated word, all letters
hword_asciipart		Hyphenated word part, all ASCII
hword_numpart		Hyphenated word part, letters and digits
hword_part		Hyphenated word part, all letters
int		Signed integer
numhword		Hyphenated word, letters and digits
numword		Word, letters and digits
protocol		Protocol head
sfloat		Scientific notation
tag		XML tag
uint		Unsigned integer
url		URL
url_path		URL path
version		Version number
word		Word, all letters
(23 rows)		

```
\dFt[+] [PATTERN]
```

List text search templates (add + for more detail).

```
=> \dFt
```

List of text search templates		
Schema	Name	Description
-----+		
+-----		
pg_catalog	ispell	ispell dictionary
pg_catalog	simple	simple dictionary: just lower case and
check for stopword		
pg_catalog	snowball	snowball stemmer
pg_catalog	synonym	synonym dictionary: replace word by
its synonym		
pg_catalog	thesaurus	thesaurus dictionary: phrase by phrase
substitution		

## 12.11. Limitations

The current limitations of PostgreSQL's text search features are:

- The length of each lexeme must be less than 2 kilobytes
- The length of a `tsvector` (lexemes + positions) must be less than 1 megabyte
- The number of lexemes must be less than  $2^{64}$
- Position values in `tsvector` must be greater than 0 and no more than 16,383
- The match distance in a `<N>` (FOLLOWED BY) `tsquery` operator cannot be more than 16,384
- No more than 256 positions per lexeme
- The number of nodes (lexemes + operators) in a `tsquery` must be less than 32,768

For comparison, the PostgreSQL 8.1 documentation contained 10,441 unique words, a total of 335,420 words, and the most frequent word “postgresql” was mentioned 6,127 times in 655 documents.

Another example — the PostgreSQL mailing list archives contained 910,989 unique words with 57,491,343 lexemes in 461,020 messages.

---

# Chapter 13. Concurrency Control

This chapter describes the behavior of the PostgreSQL database system when two or more sessions try to access the same data at the same time. The goals in that situation are to allow efficient access for all sessions while maintaining strict data integrity. Every developer of database applications should be familiar with the topics covered in this chapter.

## 13.1. Introduction

PostgreSQL provides a rich set of tools for developers to manage concurrent access to data. Internally, data consistency is maintained by using a multiversion model (Multiversion Concurrency Control, MVCC). This means that each SQL statement sees a snapshot of data (a *database version*) as it was some time ago, regardless of the current state of the underlying data. This prevents statements from viewing inconsistent data produced by concurrent transactions performing updates on the same data rows, providing *transaction isolation* for each database session. MVCC, by eschewing the locking methodologies of traditional database systems, minimizes lock contention in order to allow for reasonable performance in multiuser environments.

The main advantage of using the MVCC model of concurrency control rather than locking is that in MVCC locks acquired for querying (reading) data do not conflict with locks acquired for writing data, and so reading never blocks writing and writing never blocks reading. PostgreSQL maintains this guarantee even when providing the strictest level of transaction isolation through the use of an innovative *Serializable Snapshot Isolation* (SSI) level.

Table- and row-level locking facilities are also available in PostgreSQL for applications which don't generally need full transaction isolation and prefer to explicitly manage particular points of conflict. However, proper use of MVCC will generally provide better performance than locks. In addition, application-defined advisory locks provide a mechanism for acquiring locks that are not tied to a single transaction.

## 13.2. Transaction Isolation

The SQL standard defines four levels of transaction isolation. The most strict is Serializable, which is defined by the standard in a paragraph which says that any concurrent execution of a set of Serializable transactions is guaranteed to produce the same effect as running them one at a time in some order. The other three levels are defined in terms of phenomena, resulting from interaction between concurrent transactions, which must not occur at each level. The standard notes that due to the definition of Serializable, none of these phenomena are possible at that level. (This is hardly surprising -- if the effect of the transactions must be consistent with having been run one at a time, how could you see any phenomena caused by interactions?)

The phenomena which are prohibited at various levels are:

dirty read

A transaction reads data written by a concurrent uncommitted transaction.

nonrepeatable read

A transaction re-reads data it has previously read and finds that data has been modified by another transaction (that committed since the initial read).

phantom read

A transaction re-executes a query returning a set of rows that satisfy a search condition and finds that the set of rows satisfying the condition has changed due to another recently-committed transaction.

serialization anomaly

The result of successfully committing a group of transactions is inconsistent with all possible orderings of running those transactions one at a time.

The SQL standard and PostgreSQL-implemented transaction isolation levels are described in Table 13.1.

**Table 13.1. Transaction Isolation Levels**

Isolation Level	Dirty Read	Nonrepeatable Read	Phantom Read	Serialization Anomaly
Read uncommitted	Allowed, but not in PG	Possible	Possible	Possible
Read committed	Not possible	Possible	Possible	Possible
Repeatable read	Not possible	Not possible	Allowed, but not in PG	Possible
Serializable	Not possible	Not possible	Not possible	Not possible

In PostgreSQL, you can request any of the four standard transaction isolation levels, but internally only three distinct isolation levels are implemented, i.e., PostgreSQL's Read Uncommitted mode behaves like Read Committed. This is because it is the only sensible way to map the standard isolation levels to PostgreSQL's multiversion concurrency control architecture.

The table also shows that PostgreSQL's Repeatable Read implementation does not allow phantom reads. This is acceptable under the SQL standard because the standard specifies which anomalies must *not* occur at certain isolation levels; higher guarantees are acceptable. The behavior of the available isolation levels is detailed in the following subsections.

To set the transaction isolation level of a transaction, use the command `SET TRANSACTION`.

### Important

Some PostgreSQL data types and functions have special rules regarding transactional behavior. In particular, changes made to a sequence (and therefore the counter of a column declared using `serial`) are immediately visible to all other transactions and are not rolled back if the transaction that made the changes aborts. See Section 9.17 and Section 8.1.4.

## 13.2.1. Read Committed Isolation Level

*Read Committed* is the default isolation level in PostgreSQL. When a transaction uses this isolation level, a `SELECT` query (without a `FOR UPDATE`/`SHARE` clause) sees only data committed before the query began; it never sees either uncommitted data or changes committed by concurrent transactions during the query's execution. In effect, a `SELECT` query sees a snapshot of the database as of the instant the query begins to run. However, `SELECT` does see the effects of previous updates executed within its own transaction, even though they are not yet committed. Also note that two successive `SELECT` commands can see different data, even though they are within a single transaction, if other transactions commit changes after the first `SELECT` starts and before the second `SELECT` starts.

`UPDATE`, `DELETE`, `SELECT FOR UPDATE`, and `SELECT FOR SHARE` commands behave the same as `SELECT` in terms of searching for target rows: they will only find target rows that were committed as of the command start time. However, such a target row might have already been updated (or deleted or locked) by another concurrent transaction by the time it is found. In this case, the would-be updater will wait for the first updating transaction to commit or roll back (if it is still in progress). If the first updater rolls back, then its effects are negated and the second updater can proceed with updating the originally found row. If the first updater commits, the second updater will ignore the row if the first

updater deleted it, otherwise it will attempt to apply its operation to the updated version of the row. The search condition of the command (the `WHERE` clause) is re-evaluated to see if the updated version of the row still matches the search condition. If so, the second updater proceeds with its operation using the updated version of the row. In the case of `SELECT FOR UPDATE` and `SELECT FOR SHARE`, this means it is the updated version of the row that is locked and returned to the client.

`INSERT` with an `ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE` clause behaves similarly. In Read Committed mode, each row proposed for insertion will either insert or update. Unless there are unrelated errors, one of those two outcomes is guaranteed. If a conflict originates in another transaction whose effects are not yet visible to the `INSERT`, the `UPDATE` clause will affect that row, even though possibly *no* version of that row is conventionally visible to the command.

`INSERT` with an `ON CONFLICT DO NOTHING` clause may have insertion not proceed for a row due to the outcome of another transaction whose effects are not visible to the `INSERT` snapshot. Again, this is only the case in Read Committed mode.

`MERGE` allows the user to specify various combinations of `INSERT`, `UPDATE` and `DELETE` subcommands. A `MERGE` command with both `INSERT` and `UPDATE` subcommands looks similar to `INSERT` with an `ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE` clause but does not guarantee that either `INSERT` or `UPDATE` will occur. If `MERGE` attempts an `UPDATE` or `DELETE` and the row is concurrently updated but the join condition still passes for the current target and the current source tuple, then `MERGE` will behave the same as the `UPDATE` or `DELETE` commands and perform its action on the updated version of the row. However, because `MERGE` can specify several actions and they can be conditional, the conditions for each action are re-evaluated on the updated version of the row, starting from the first action, even if the action that had originally matched appears later in the list of actions. On the other hand, if the row is concurrently updated or deleted so that the join condition fails, then `MERGE` will evaluate the condition's `NOT MATCHED` actions next, and execute the first one that succeeds. If `MERGE` attempts an `INSERT` and a unique index is present and a duplicate row is concurrently inserted, then a uniqueness violation error is raised; `MERGE` does not attempt to avoid such errors by restarting evaluation of `MATCHED` conditions.

Because of the above rules, it is possible for an updating command to see an inconsistent snapshot: it can see the effects of concurrent updating commands on the same rows it is trying to update, but it does not see effects of those commands on other rows in the database. This behavior makes Read Committed mode unsuitable for commands that involve complex search conditions; however, it is just right for simpler cases. For example, consider updating bank balances with transactions like:

```
BEGIN;
UPDATE accounts SET balance = balance + 100.00 WHERE acctnum =
  12345;
UPDATE accounts SET balance = balance - 100.00 WHERE acctnum =
  7534;
COMMIT;
```

If two such transactions concurrently try to change the balance of account 12345, we clearly want the second transaction to start with the updated version of the account's row. Because each command is affecting only a predetermined row, letting it see the updated version of the row does not create any troublesome inconsistency.

More complex usage can produce undesirable results in Read Committed mode. For example, consider a `DELETE` command operating on data that is being both added and removed from its restriction criteria by another command, e.g., assume `website` is a two-row table with `website.hits` equaling 9 and 10:

```
BEGIN;
UPDATE website SET hits = hits + 1;
-- run from another session: DELETE FROM website WHERE hits = 10;
COMMIT;
```

The `DELETE` will have no effect even though there is a `website.hits = 10` row before and after the `UPDATE`. This occurs because the pre-update row value 9 is skipped, and when the `UPDATE` completes and `DELETE` obtains a lock, the new row value is no longer 10 but 11, which no longer matches the criteria.

Because Read Committed mode starts each command with a new snapshot that includes all transactions committed up to that instant, subsequent commands in the same transaction will see the effects of the committed concurrent transaction in any case. The point at issue above is whether or not a *single* command sees an absolutely consistent view of the database.

The partial transaction isolation provided by Read Committed mode is adequate for many applications, and this mode is fast and simple to use; however, it is not sufficient for all cases. Applications that do complex queries and updates might require a more rigorously consistent view of the database than Read Committed mode provides.

## 13.2.2. Repeatable Read Isolation Level

The *Repeatable Read* isolation level only sees data committed before the transaction began; it never sees either uncommitted data or changes committed by concurrent transactions during the transaction's execution. (However, each query does see the effects of previous updates executed within its own transaction, even though they are not yet committed.) This is a stronger guarantee than is required by the SQL standard for this isolation level, and prevents all of the phenomena described in Table 13.1 except for serialization anomalies. As mentioned above, this is specifically allowed by the standard, which only describes the *minimum* protections each isolation level must provide.

This level is different from Read Committed in that a query in a repeatable read transaction sees a snapshot as of the start of the first non-transaction-control statement in the *transaction*, not as of the start of the current statement within the transaction. Thus, successive `SELECT` commands within a *single* transaction see the same data, i.e., they do not see changes made by other transactions that committed after their own transaction started.

Applications using this level must be prepared to retry transactions due to serialization failures.

`UPDATE`, `DELETE`, `MERGE`, `SELECT FOR UPDATE`, and `SELECT FOR SHARE` commands behave the same as `SELECT` in terms of searching for target rows: they will only find target rows that were committed as of the transaction start time. However, such a target row might have already been updated (or deleted or locked) by another concurrent transaction by the time it is found. In this case, the repeatable read transaction will wait for the first updating transaction to commit or roll back (if it is still in progress). If the first updater rolls back, then its effects are negated and the repeatable read transaction can proceed with updating the originally found row. But if the first updater commits (and actually updated or deleted the row, not just locked it) then the repeatable read transaction will be rolled back with the message

```
ERROR:  could not serialize access due to concurrent update
```

because a repeatable read transaction cannot modify or lock rows changed by other transactions after the repeatable read transaction began.

When an application receives this error message, it should abort the current transaction and retry the whole transaction from the beginning. The second time through, the transaction will see the previously-committed change as part of its initial view of the database, so there is no logical conflict in using the new version of the row as the starting point for the new transaction's update.

Note that only updating transactions might need to be retried; read-only transactions will never have serialization conflicts.

The Repeatable Read mode provides a rigorous guarantee that each transaction sees a completely stable view of the database. However, this view will not necessarily always be consistent with some serial

(one at a time) execution of concurrent transactions of the same level. For example, even a read-only transaction at this level may see a control record updated to show that a batch has been completed but *not* see one of the detail records which is logically part of the batch because it read an earlier revision of the control record. Attempts to enforce business rules by transactions running at this isolation level are not likely to work correctly without careful use of explicit locks to block conflicting transactions.

The Repeatable Read isolation level is implemented using a technique known in academic database literature and in some other database products as *Snapshot Isolation*. Differences in behavior and performance may be observed when compared with systems that use a traditional locking technique that reduces concurrency. Some other systems may even offer Repeatable Read and Snapshot Isolation as distinct isolation levels with different behavior. The permitted phenomena that distinguish the two techniques were not formalized by database researchers until after the SQL standard was developed, and are outside the scope of this manual. For a full treatment, please see [berenson95].

### Note

Prior to PostgreSQL version 9.1, a request for the Serializable transaction isolation level provided exactly the same behavior described here. To retain the legacy Serializable behavior, Repeatable Read should now be requested.

## 13.2.3. Serializable Isolation Level

The *Serializable* isolation level provides the strictest transaction isolation. This level emulates serial transaction execution for all committed transactions; as if transactions had been executed one after another, serially, rather than concurrently. However, like the Repeatable Read level, applications using this level must be prepared to retry transactions due to serialization failures. In fact, this isolation level works exactly the same as Repeatable Read except that it also monitors for conditions which could make execution of a concurrent set of serializable transactions behave in a manner inconsistent with all possible serial (one at a time) executions of those transactions. This monitoring does not introduce any blocking beyond that present in repeatable read, but there is some overhead to the monitoring, and detection of the conditions which could cause a *serialization anomaly* will trigger a *serialization failure*.

As an example, consider a table `mytab`, initially containing:

class	value
1	10
1	20
2	100
2	200

Suppose that serializable transaction A computes:

```
SELECT SUM(value) FROM mytab WHERE class = 1;
```

and then inserts the result (30) as the `value` in a new row with `class = 2`. Concurrently, serializable transaction B computes:

```
SELECT SUM(value) FROM mytab WHERE class = 2;
```

and obtains the result 300, which it inserts in a new row with `class = 1`. Then both transactions try to commit. If either transaction were running at the Repeatable Read isolation level, both would be allowed to commit; but since there is no serial order of execution consistent with the result, using

Serializable transactions will allow one transaction to commit and will roll the other back with this message:

```
ERROR:  could not serialize access due to read/write dependencies
among transactions
```

This is because if A had executed before B, B would have computed the sum 330, not 300, and similarly the other order would have resulted in a different sum computed by A.

When relying on Serializable transactions to prevent anomalies, it is important that any data read from a permanent user table not be considered valid until the transaction which read it has successfully committed. This is true even for read-only transactions, except that data read within a *deferrable* read-only transaction is known to be valid as soon as it is read, because such a transaction waits until it can acquire a snapshot guaranteed to be free from such problems before starting to read any data. In all other cases applications must not depend on results read during a transaction that later aborted; instead, they should retry the transaction until it succeeds.

To guarantee true serializability PostgreSQL uses *predicate locking*, which means that it keeps locks which allow it to determine when a write would have had an impact on the result of a previous read from a concurrent transaction, had it run first. In PostgreSQL these locks do not cause any blocking and therefore can *not* play any part in causing a deadlock. They are used to identify and flag dependencies among concurrent Serializable transactions which in certain combinations can lead to serialization anomalies. In contrast, a Read Committed or Repeatable Read transaction which wants to ensure data consistency may need to take out a lock on an entire table, which could block other users attempting to use that table, or it may use `SELECT FOR UPDATE` or `SELECT FOR SHARE` which not only can block other transactions but cause disk access.

Predicate locks in PostgreSQL, like in most other database systems, are based on data actually accessed by a transaction. These will show up in the `pg_locks` system view with a mode of `SIReadLock`. The particular locks acquired during execution of a query will depend on the plan used by the query, and multiple finer-grained locks (e.g., tuple locks) may be combined into fewer coarser-grained locks (e.g., page locks) during the course of the transaction to prevent exhaustion of the memory used to track the locks. A `READ ONLY` transaction may be able to release its `SIRead` locks before completion, if it detects that no conflicts can still occur which could lead to a serialization anomaly. In fact, `READ ONLY` transactions will often be able to establish that fact at startup and avoid taking any predicate locks. If you explicitly request a `SERIALIZABLE READ ONLY DEFERRABLE` transaction, it will block until it can establish this fact. (This is the *only* case where Serializable transactions block but Repeatable Read transactions don't.) On the other hand, `SIRead` locks often need to be kept past transaction commit, until overlapping read write transactions complete.

Consistent use of Serializable transactions can simplify development. The guarantee that any set of successfully committed concurrent Serializable transactions will have the same effect as if they were run one at a time means that if you can demonstrate that a single transaction, as written, will do the right thing when run by itself, you can have confidence that it will do the right thing in any mix of Serializable transactions, even without any information about what those other transactions might do, or it will not successfully commit. It is important that an environment which uses this technique have a generalized way of handling serialization failures (which always return with an `SQLSTATE` value of '40001'), because it will be very hard to predict exactly which transactions might contribute to the read/write dependencies and need to be rolled back to prevent serialization anomalies. The monitoring of read/write dependencies has a cost, as does the restart of transactions which are terminated with a serialization failure, but balanced against the cost and blocking involved in use of explicit locks and `SELECT FOR UPDATE` or `SELECT FOR SHARE`, Serializable transactions are the best performance choice for some environments.

While PostgreSQL's Serializable transaction isolation level only allows concurrent transactions to commit if it can prove there is a serial order of execution that would produce the same effect, it doesn't always prevent errors from being raised that would not occur in true serial execution. In particular, it is possible to see unique constraint violations caused by conflicts with overlapping Serializable

transactions even after explicitly checking that the key isn't present before attempting to insert it. This can be avoided by making sure that *all* Serializable transactions that insert potentially conflicting keys explicitly check if they can do so first. For example, imagine an application that asks the user for a new key and then checks that it doesn't exist already by trying to select it first, or generates a new key by selecting the maximum existing key and adding one. If some Serializable transactions insert new keys directly without following this protocol, unique constraints violations might be reported even in cases where they could not occur in a serial execution of the concurrent transactions.

For optimal performance when relying on Serializable transactions for concurrency control, these issues should be considered:

- Declare transactions as `READ ONLY` when possible.
- Control the number of active connections, using a connection pool if needed. This is always an important performance consideration, but it can be particularly important in a busy system using Serializable transactions.
- Don't put more into a single transaction than needed for integrity purposes.
- Don't leave connections dangling "idle in transaction" longer than necessary. The configuration parameter `idle_in_transaction_session_timeout` may be used to automatically disconnect lingering sessions.
- Eliminate explicit locks, `SELECT FOR UPDATE`, and `SELECT FOR SHARE` where no longer needed due to the protections automatically provided by Serializable transactions.
- When the system is forced to combine multiple page-level predicate locks into a single relation-level predicate lock because the predicate lock table is short of memory, an increase in the rate of serialization failures may occur. You can avoid this by increasing `max_pred_locks_per_transaction`, `max_pred_locks_per_relation`, and/or `max_pred_locks_per_page`.
- A sequential scan will always necessitate a relation-level predicate lock. This can result in an increased rate of serialization failures. It may be helpful to encourage the use of index scans by reducing `random_page_cost` and/or increasing `cpu_tuple_cost`. Be sure to weigh any decrease in transaction rollbacks and restarts against any overall change in query execution time.

The Serializable isolation level is implemented using a technique known in academic database literature as Serializable Snapshot Isolation, which builds on Snapshot Isolation by adding checks for serialization anomalies. Some differences in behavior and performance may be observed when compared with other systems that use a traditional locking technique. Please see [ports12] for detailed information.

## 13.3. Explicit Locking

PostgreSQL provides various lock modes to control concurrent access to data in tables. These modes can be used for application-controlled locking in situations where MVCC does not give the desired behavior. Also, most PostgreSQL commands automatically acquire locks of appropriate modes to ensure that referenced tables are not dropped or modified in incompatible ways while the command executes. (For example, `TRUNCATE` cannot safely be executed concurrently with other operations on the same table, so it obtains an `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock on the table to enforce that.)

To examine a list of the currently outstanding locks in a database server, use the `pg_locks` system view. For more information on monitoring the status of the lock manager subsystem, refer to Chapter 28.

### 13.3.1. Table-Level Locks

The list below shows the available lock modes and the contexts in which they are used automatically by PostgreSQL. You can also acquire any of these locks explicitly with the command `LOCK`. Remember



that all of these lock modes are table-level locks, even if the name contains the word “row”; the names of the lock modes are historical. To some extent the names reflect the typical usage of each lock mode — but the semantics are all the same. The only real difference between one lock mode and another is the set of lock modes with which each conflicts (see Table 13.2). Two transactions cannot hold locks of conflicting modes on the same table at the same time. (However, a transaction never conflicts with itself. For example, it might acquire `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock and later acquire `ACCESS SHARE` lock on the same table.) Non-conflicting lock modes can be held concurrently by many transactions. Notice in particular that some lock modes are self-conflicting (for example, an `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock cannot be held by more than one transaction at a time) while others are not self-conflicting (for example, an `ACCESS SHARE` lock can be held by multiple transactions).

## Table-Level Lock Modes

### `ACCESS SHARE` (`AccessShareLock`)

Conflicts with the `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock mode only.

The `SELECT` command acquires a lock of this mode on referenced tables. In general, any query that only *reads* a table and does not modify it will acquire this lock mode.

### `ROW SHARE` (`RowShareLock`)

Conflicts with the `EXCLUSIVE` and `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock modes.

The `SELECT` command acquires a lock of this mode on all tables on which one of the `FOR UPDATE`, `FOR NO KEY UPDATE`, `FOR SHARE`, or `FOR KEY SHARE` options is specified (in addition to `ACCESS SHARE` locks on any other tables that are referenced without any explicit `FOR . . . locking` option).

### `ROW EXCLUSIVE` (`RowExclusiveLock`)

Conflicts with the `SHARE`, `SHARE ROW EXCLUSIVE`, `EXCLUSIVE`, and `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock modes.

The commands `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, `INSERT`, and `MERGE` acquire this lock mode on the target table (in addition to `ACCESS SHARE` locks on any other referenced tables). In general, this lock mode will be acquired by any command that *modifies data* in a table.

### `SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE` (`ShareUpdateExclusiveLock`)

Conflicts with the `SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE`, `SHARE`, `SHARE ROW EXCLUSIVE`, `EXCLUSIVE`, and `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock modes. This mode protects a table against concurrent schema changes and `VACUUM` runs.

Acquired by `VACUUM` (without `FULL`), `ANALYZE`, `CREATE INDEX CONCURRENTLY`, `CREATE STATISTICS`, `COMMENT ON`, `REINDEX CONCURRENTLY`, and certain `ALTER INDEX` and `ALTER TABLE` variants (for full details see the documentation of these commands).

### `SHARE` (`ShareLock`)

Conflicts with the `ROW EXCLUSIVE`, `SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE`, `SHARE ROW EXCLUSIVE`, `EXCLUSIVE`, and `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock modes. This mode protects a table against concurrent data changes.

Acquired by `CREATE INDEX` (without `CONCURRENTLY`).

### `SHARE ROW EXCLUSIVE` (`ShareRowExclusiveLock`)

Conflicts with the `ROW EXCLUSIVE`, `SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE`, `SHARE`, `SHARE ROW EXCLUSIVE`, `EXCLUSIVE`, and `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock modes. This mode protects a table against concurrent data changes, and is self-exclusive so that only one session can hold it at a time.

Acquired by CREATE TRIGGER and some forms of ALTER TABLE.

#### EXCLUSIVE (ExclusiveLock)

Conflicts with the ROW SHARE, ROW EXCLUSIVE, SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE, SHARE, SHARE ROW EXCLUSIVE, EXCLUSIVE, and ACCESS EXCLUSIVE lock modes. This mode allows only concurrent ACCESS SHARE locks, i.e., only reads from the table can proceed in parallel with a transaction holding this lock mode.

Acquired by REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW CONCURRENTLY.

#### ACCESS EXCLUSIVE (AccessExclusiveLock)

Conflicts with locks of all modes (ACCESS SHARE, ROW SHARE, ROW EXCLUSIVE, SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE, SHARE, SHARE ROW EXCLUSIVE, EXCLUSIVE, and ACCESS EXCLUSIVE). This mode guarantees that the holder is the only transaction accessing the table in any way.

Acquired by the DROP TABLE, TRUNCATE, REINDEX, CLUSTER, VACUUM FULL, and REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW (without CONCURRENTLY) commands. Many forms of ALTER INDEX and ALTER TABLE also acquire a lock at this level. This is also the default lock mode for LOCK TABLE statements that do not specify a mode explicitly.

### Tip

Only an ACCESS EXCLUSIVE lock blocks a SELECT (without FOR UPDATE / SHARE) statement.

Once acquired, a lock is normally held until the end of the transaction. But if a lock is acquired after establishing a savepoint, the lock is released immediately if the savepoint is rolled back to. This is consistent with the principle that ROLLBACK cancels all effects of the commands since the savepoint. The same holds for locks acquired within a PL/pgSQL exception block: an error escape from the block releases locks acquired within it.

**Table 13.2. Conflicting Lock Modes**

Requested Lock Mode	Existing Lock Mode							
	ACCESS SHARE	ROW SHARE	ROW EXCL.	SHARE UPDATE EXCL.	SHARE	SHARE ROW EXCL.	EXCL.	ACCESS EXCL.
ACCESS SHARE								X
ROW SHARE							X	X
ROW EX-CL.					X	X	X	X
SHARE UPDATE EXCL.				X	X	X	X	X
SHARE			X	X		X	X	X
SHARE ROW EX-CL.			X	X	X	X	X	X

Requested Lock Mode	Existing Lock Mode							
	ACCESS SHARE	ROW SHARE	ROW EXCL.	SHARE UPDATE EXCL.	SHARE	SHARE ROW EXCL.	EXCL.	ACCESS EXCL.
EXCL.		X	X	X	X	X	X	X
ACCESS EXCL.	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X

## 13.3.2. Row-Level Locks

In addition to table-level locks, there are row-level locks, which are listed as below with the contexts in which they are used automatically by PostgreSQL. See Table 13.3 for a complete table of row-level lock conflicts. Note that a transaction can hold conflicting locks on the same row, even in different subtransactions; but other than that, two transactions can never hold conflicting locks on the same row. Row-level locks do not affect data querying; they block only *writers and lockers* to the same row. Row-level locks are released at transaction end or during savepoint rollback, just like table-level locks.

### Row-Level Lock Modes

#### FOR UPDATE

`FOR UPDATE` causes the rows retrieved by the `SELECT` statement to be locked as though for update. This prevents them from being locked, modified or deleted by other transactions until the current transaction ends. That is, other transactions that attempt `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, `SELECT FOR UPDATE`, `SELECT FOR NO KEY UPDATE`, `SELECT FOR SHARE` or `SELECT FOR KEY SHARE` of these rows will be blocked until the current transaction ends; conversely, `SELECT FOR UPDATE` will wait for a concurrent transaction that has run any of those commands on the same row, and will then lock and return the updated row (or no row, if the row was deleted). Within a `REPEATABLE READ` or `SERIALIZABLE` transaction, however, an error will be thrown if a row to be locked has changed since the transaction started. For further discussion see Section 13.4.

The `FOR UPDATE` lock mode is also acquired by any `DELETE` on a row, and also by an `UPDATE` that modifies the values of certain columns. Currently, the set of columns considered for the `UPDATE` case are those that have a unique index on them that can be used in a foreign key (so partial indexes and expressional indexes are not considered), but this may change in the future.

#### FOR NO KEY UPDATE

Behaves similarly to `FOR UPDATE`, except that the lock acquired is weaker: this lock will not block `SELECT FOR KEY SHARE` commands that attempt to acquire a lock on the same rows. This lock mode is also acquired by any `UPDATE` that does not acquire a `FOR UPDATE` lock.

#### FOR SHARE

Behaves similarly to `FOR NO KEY UPDATE`, except that it acquires a shared lock rather than exclusive lock on each retrieved row. A shared lock blocks other transactions from performing `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, `SELECT FOR UPDATE` or `SELECT FOR NO KEY UPDATE` on these rows, but it does not prevent them from performing `SELECT FOR SHARE` or `SELECT FOR KEY SHARE`.

#### FOR KEY SHARE

Behaves similarly to `FOR SHARE`, except that the lock is weaker: `SELECT FOR UPDATE` is blocked, but not `SELECT FOR NO KEY UPDATE`. A key-shared lock blocks other transactions from performing `DELETE` or any `UPDATE` that changes the key values, but not other `UPDATE`, and neither does it prevent `SELECT FOR NO KEY UPDATE`, `SELECT FOR SHARE`, or `SELECT FOR KEY SHARE`.

PostgreSQL doesn't remember any information about modified rows in memory, so there is no limit on the number of rows locked at one time. However, locking a row might cause a disk write, e.g., `SELECT FOR UPDATE` modifies selected rows to mark them locked, and so will result in disk writes.

**Table 13.3. Conflicting Row-Level Locks**

Requested Lock Mode	Current Lock Mode			
	FOR KEY SHARE	FOR SHARE	FOR NO KEY UPDATE	FOR UPDATE
FOR KEY SHARE				X
FOR SHARE			X	X
FOR NO KEY UPDATE		X	X	X
FOR UPDATE	X	X	X	X

### 13.3.3. Page-Level Locks

In addition to table and row locks, page-level share/exclusive locks are used to control read/write access to table pages in the shared buffer pool. These locks are released immediately after a row is fetched or updated. Application developers normally need not be concerned with page-level locks, but they are mentioned here for completeness.

### 13.3.4. Deadlocks

The use of explicit locking can increase the likelihood of *deadlocks*, wherein two (or more) transactions each hold locks that the other wants. For example, if transaction 1 acquires an exclusive lock on table A and then tries to acquire an exclusive lock on table B, while transaction 2 has already exclusive-locked table B and now wants an exclusive lock on table A, then neither one can proceed. PostgreSQL automatically detects deadlock situations and resolves them by aborting one of the transactions involved, allowing the other(s) to complete. (Exactly which transaction will be aborted is difficult to predict and should not be relied upon.)

Note that deadlocks can also occur as the result of row-level locks (and thus, they can occur even if explicit locking is not used). Consider the case in which two concurrent transactions modify a table. The first transaction executes:

```
UPDATE accounts SET balance = balance + 100.00 WHERE acctnum =
11111;
```

This acquires a row-level lock on the row with the specified account number. Then, the second transaction executes:

```
UPDATE accounts SET balance = balance + 100.00 WHERE acctnum =
22222;
UPDATE accounts SET balance = balance - 100.00 WHERE acctnum =
11111;
```

The first `UPDATE` statement successfully acquires a row-level lock on the specified row, so it succeeds in updating that row. However, the second `UPDATE` statement finds that the row it is attempting to update has already been locked, so it waits for the transaction that acquired the lock to complete. Transaction two is now waiting on transaction one to complete before it continues execution. Now, transaction one executes:

```
UPDATE accounts SET balance = balance - 100.00 WHERE acctnum =
22222;
```

Transaction one attempts to acquire a row-level lock on the specified row, but it cannot: transaction two already holds such a lock. So it waits for transaction two to complete. Thus, transaction one is blocked on transaction two, and transaction two is blocked on transaction one: a deadlock condition. PostgreSQL will detect this situation and abort one of the transactions.

The best defense against deadlocks is generally to avoid them by being certain that all applications using a database acquire locks on multiple objects in a consistent order. In the example above, if both transactions had updated the rows in the same order, no deadlock would have occurred. One should also ensure that the first lock acquired on an object in a transaction is the most restrictive mode that will be needed for that object. If it is not feasible to verify this in advance, then deadlocks can be handled on-the-fly by retrying transactions that abort due to deadlocks.

So long as no deadlock situation is detected, a transaction seeking either a table-level or row-level lock will wait indefinitely for conflicting locks to be released. This means it is a bad idea for applications to hold transactions open for long periods of time (e.g., while waiting for user input).

### 13.3.5. Advisory Locks

PostgreSQL provides a means for creating locks that have application-defined meanings. These are called *advisory locks*, because the system does not enforce their use — it is up to the application to use them correctly. Advisory locks can be useful for locking strategies that are an awkward fit for the MVCC model. For example, a common use of advisory locks is to emulate pessimistic locking strategies typical of so-called “flat file” data management systems. While a flag stored in a table could be used for the same purpose, advisory locks are faster, avoid table bloat, and are automatically cleaned up by the server at the end of the session.

There are two ways to acquire an advisory lock in PostgreSQL: at session level or at transaction level. Once acquired at session level, an advisory lock is held until explicitly released or the session ends. Unlike standard lock requests, session-level advisory lock requests do not honor transaction semantics: a lock acquired during a transaction that is later rolled back will still be held following the rollback, and likewise an unlock is effective even if the calling transaction fails later. A lock can be acquired multiple times by its owning process; for each completed lock request there must be a corresponding unlock request before the lock is actually released. Transaction-level lock requests, on the other hand, behave more like regular lock requests: they are automatically released at the end of the transaction, and there is no explicit unlock operation. This behavior is often more convenient than the session-level behavior for short-term usage of an advisory lock. Session-level and transaction-level lock requests for the same advisory lock identifier will block each other in the expected way. If a session already holds a given advisory lock, additional requests by it will always succeed, even if other sessions are awaiting the lock; this statement is true regardless of whether the existing lock hold and new request are at session level or transaction level.

Like all locks in PostgreSQL, a complete list of advisory locks currently held by any session can be found in the `pg_locks` system view.

Both advisory locks and regular locks are stored in a shared memory pool whose size is defined by the configuration variables `max_locks_per_transaction` and `max_connections`. Care must be taken not to exhaust this memory or the server will be unable to grant any locks at all. This imposes an upper limit on the number of advisory locks grantable by the server, typically in the tens to hundreds of thousands depending on how the server is configured.

In certain cases using advisory locking methods, especially in queries involving explicit ordering and `LIMIT` clauses, care must be taken to control the locks acquired because of the order in which SQL expressions are evaluated. For example:

```
SELECT pg_advisory_lock(id) FROM foo WHERE id = 12345; -- ok
SELECT pg_advisory_lock(id) FROM foo WHERE id > 12345 LIMIT 100; --
  danger!
SELECT pg_advisory_lock(q.id) FROM
(
```

```
SELECT id FROM foo WHERE id > 12345 LIMIT 100
) q; -- ok
```

In the above queries, the second form is dangerous because the `LIMIT` is not guaranteed to be applied before the locking function is executed. This might cause some locks to be acquired that the application was not expecting, and hence would fail to release (until it ends the session). From the point of view of the application, such locks would be dangling, although still viewable in `pg_locks`.

The functions provided to manipulate advisory locks are described in Section 9.27.10.

## 13.4. Data Consistency Checks at the Application Level

It is very difficult to enforce business rules regarding data integrity using Read Committed transactions because the view of the data is shifting with each statement, and even a single statement may not restrict itself to the statement's snapshot if a write conflict occurs.

While a Repeatable Read transaction has a stable view of the data throughout its execution, there is a subtle issue with using MVCC snapshots for data consistency checks, involving something known as *read/write conflicts*. If one transaction writes data and a concurrent transaction attempts to read the same data (whether before or after the write), it cannot see the work of the other transaction. The reader then appears to have executed first regardless of which started first or which committed first. If that is as far as it goes, there is no problem, but if the reader also writes data which is read by a concurrent transaction there is now a transaction which appears to have run before either of the previously mentioned transactions. If the transaction which appears to have executed last actually commits first, it is very easy for a cycle to appear in a graph of the order of execution of the transactions. When such a cycle appears, integrity checks will not work correctly without some help.

As mentioned in Section 13.2.3, Serializable transactions are just Repeatable Read transactions which add nonblocking monitoring for dangerous patterns of read/write conflicts. When a pattern is detected which could cause a cycle in the apparent order of execution, one of the transactions involved is rolled back to break the cycle.

### 13.4.1. Enforcing Consistency with Serializable Transactions

If the Serializable transaction isolation level is used for all writes and for all reads which need a consistent view of the data, no other effort is required to ensure consistency. Software from other environments which is written to use serializable transactions to ensure consistency should “just work” in this regard in PostgreSQL.

When using this technique, it will avoid creating an unnecessary burden for application programmers if the application software goes through a framework which automatically retries transactions which are rolled back with a serialization failure. It may be a good idea to set `default_transaction_isolation` to `serializable`. It would also be wise to take some action to ensure that no other transaction isolation level is used, either inadvertently or to subvert integrity checks, through checks of the transaction isolation level in triggers.

See Section 13.2.3 for performance suggestions.

#### **Warning: Serializable Transactions and Data Replication**

This level of integrity protection using Serializable transactions does not yet extend to hot standby mode (Section 27.4) or logical replicas. Because of that, those using hot standby or logical replication may want to use Repeatable Read and explicit locking on the primary.

## 13.4.2. Enforcing Consistency with Explicit Blocking Locks

When non-serializable writes are possible, to ensure the current validity of a row and protect it against concurrent updates one must use `SELECT FOR UPDATE`, `SELECT FOR SHARE`, or an appropriate `LOCK TABLE` statement. (`SELECT FOR UPDATE` and `SELECT FOR SHARE` lock just the returned rows against concurrent updates, while `LOCK TABLE` locks the whole table.) This should be taken into account when porting applications to PostgreSQL from other environments.

Also of note to those converting from other environments is the fact that `SELECT FOR UPDATE` does not ensure that a concurrent transaction will not update or delete a selected row. To do that in PostgreSQL you must actually update the row, even if no values need to be changed. `SELECT FOR UPDATE` temporarily blocks other transactions from acquiring the same lock or executing an `UPDATE` or `DELETE` which would affect the locked row, but once the transaction holding this lock commits or rolls back, a blocked transaction will proceed with the conflicting operation unless an actual `UPDATE` of the row was performed while the lock was held.

Global validity checks require extra thought under non-serializable MVCC. For example, a banking application might wish to check that the sum of all credits in one table equals the sum of debits in another table, when both tables are being actively updated. Comparing the results of two successive `SELECT sum( . . . )` commands will not work reliably in Read Committed mode, since the second query will likely include the results of transactions not counted by the first. Doing the two sums in a single repeatable read transaction will give an accurate picture of only the effects of transactions that committed before the repeatable read transaction started — but one might legitimately wonder whether the answer is still relevant by the time it is delivered. If the repeatable read transaction itself applied some changes before trying to make the consistency check, the usefulness of the check becomes even more debatable, since now it includes some but not all post-transaction-start changes. In such cases a careful person might wish to lock all tables needed for the check, in order to get an indisputable picture of current reality. A `SHARE` mode (or higher) lock guarantees that there are no uncommitted changes in the locked table, other than those of the current transaction.

Note also that if one is relying on explicit locking to prevent concurrent changes, one should either use Read Committed mode, or in Repeatable Read mode be careful to obtain locks before performing queries. A lock obtained by a repeatable read transaction guarantees that no other transactions modifying the table are still running, but if the snapshot seen by the transaction predates obtaining the lock, it might predate some now-committed changes in the table. A repeatable read transaction's snapshot is actually frozen at the start of its first query or data-modification command (`SELECT`, `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, or `MERGE`), so it is possible to obtain locks explicitly before the snapshot is frozen.

## 13.5. Serialization Failure Handling

Both Repeatable Read and Serializable isolation levels can produce errors that are designed to prevent serialization anomalies. As previously stated, applications using these levels must be prepared to retry transactions that fail due to serialization errors. Such an error's message text will vary according to the precise circumstances, but it will always have the SQLSTATE code 40001 (`serialization_failure`).

It may also be advisable to retry deadlock failures. These have the SQLSTATE code 40P01 (`deadlock_detected`).

In some cases it is also appropriate to retry unique-key failures, which have SQLSTATE code 23505 (`unique_violation`), and exclusion constraint failures, which have SQLSTATE code 23P01 (`exclusion_violation`). For example, if the application selects a new value for a primary key column after inspecting the currently stored keys, it could get a unique-key failure because another application instance selected the same new key concurrently. This is effectively a serialization failure, but the server will not detect it as such because it cannot “see” the connection between the inserted

value and the previous reads. There are also some corner cases in which the server will issue a unique-key or exclusion constraint error even though in principle it has enough information to determine that a serialization problem is the underlying cause. While it's recommendable to just retry `serialization_failure` errors unconditionally, more care is needed when retrying these other error codes, since they might represent persistent error conditions rather than transient failures.

It is important to retry the complete transaction, including all logic that decides which SQL to issue and/or which values to use. Therefore, PostgreSQL does not offer an automatic retry facility, since it cannot do so with any guarantee of correctness.

Transaction retry does not guarantee that the retried transaction will complete; multiple retries may be needed. In cases with very high contention, it is possible that completion of a transaction may take many attempts. In cases involving a conflicting prepared transaction, it may not be possible to make progress until the prepared transaction commits or rolls back.

## 13.6. Caveats

Some DDL commands, currently only `TRUNCATE` and the table-rewriting forms of `ALTER TABLE`, are not MVCC-safe. This means that after the truncation or rewrite commits, the table will appear empty to concurrent transactions, if they are using a snapshot taken before the DDL command committed. This will only be an issue for a transaction that did not access the table in question before the DDL command started — any transaction that has done so would hold at least an `ACCESS SHARE` table lock, which would block the DDL command until that transaction completes. So these commands will not cause any apparent inconsistency in the table contents for successive queries on the target table, but they could cause visible inconsistency between the contents of the target table and other tables in the database.

Support for the Serializable transaction isolation level has not yet been added to hot standby replication targets (described in Section 27.4). The strictest isolation level currently supported in hot standby mode is Repeatable Read. While performing all permanent database writes within Serializable transactions on the primary will ensure that all standbys will eventually reach a consistent state, a Repeatable Read transaction run on the standby can sometimes see a transient state that is inconsistent with any serial execution of the transactions on the primary.

Internal access to the system catalogs is not done using the isolation level of the current transaction. This means that newly created database objects such as tables are visible to concurrent Repeatable Read and Serializable transactions, even though the rows they contain are not. In contrast, queries that explicitly examine the system catalogs don't see rows representing concurrently created database objects, in the higher isolation levels.

## 13.7. Locking and Indexes

Though PostgreSQL provides nonblocking read/write access to table data, nonblocking read/write access is not currently offered for every index access method implemented in PostgreSQL. The various index types are handled as follows:

B-tree, GiST and SP-GiST indexes

Short-term share/exclusive page-level locks are used for read/write access. Locks are released immediately after each index row is fetched or inserted. These index types provide the highest concurrency without deadlock conditions.

Hash indexes

Share/exclusive hash-bucket-level locks are used for read/write access. Locks are released after the whole bucket is processed. Bucket-level locks provide better concurrency than index-level ones, but deadlock is possible since the locks are held longer than one index operation.



### GIN indexes

Short-term share/exclusive page-level locks are used for read/write access. Locks are released immediately after each index row is fetched or inserted. But note that insertion of a GIN-indexed value usually produces several index key insertions per row, so GIN might do substantial work for a single value's insertion.

Currently, B-tree indexes offer the best performance for concurrent applications; since they also have more features than hash indexes, they are the recommended index type for concurrent applications that need to index scalar data. When dealing with non-scalar data, B-trees are not useful, and GiST, SP-GiST or GIN indexes should be used instead.

---

# Chapter 14. Performance Tips

Query performance can be affected by many things. Some of these can be controlled by the user, while others are fundamental to the underlying design of the system. This chapter provides some hints about understanding and tuning PostgreSQL performance.

## 14.1. Using EXPLAIN

PostgreSQL devises a *query plan* for each query it receives. Choosing the right plan to match the query structure and the properties of the data is absolutely critical for good performance, so the system includes a complex *planner* that tries to choose good plans. You can use the EXPLAIN command to see what query plan the planner creates for any query. Plan-reading is an art that requires some experience to master, but this section attempts to cover the basics.

Examples in this section are drawn from the regression test database after doing a VACUUM ANALYZE, using 9.3 development sources. You should be able to get similar results if you try the examples yourself, but your estimated costs and row counts might vary slightly because ANALYZE's statistics are random samples rather than exact, and because costs are inherently somewhat platform-dependent.

The examples use EXPLAIN's default “text” output format, which is compact and convenient for humans to read. If you want to feed EXPLAIN's output to a program for further analysis, you should use one of its machine-readable output formats (XML, JSON, or YAML) instead.

### 14.1.1. EXPLAIN Basics

The structure of a query plan is a tree of *plan nodes*. Nodes at the bottom level of the tree are scan nodes: they return raw rows from a table. There are different types of scan nodes for different table access methods: sequential scans, index scans, and bitmap index scans. There are also non-table row sources, such as VALUES clauses and set-returning functions in FROM, which have their own scan node types. If the query requires joining, aggregation, sorting, or other operations on the raw rows, then there will be additional nodes above the scan nodes to perform these operations. Again, there is usually more than one possible way to do these operations, so different node types can appear here too. The output of EXPLAIN has one line for each node in the plan tree, showing the basic node type plus the cost estimates that the planner made for the execution of that plan node. Additional lines might appear, indented from the node's summary line, to show additional properties of the node. The very first line (the summary line for the topmost node) has the estimated total execution cost for the plan; it is this number that the planner seeks to minimize.

Here is a trivial example, just to show what the output looks like:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM tenk1;
```

```
QUERY PLAN
```

```
-----  
Seq Scan on tenk1  (cost=0.00..458.00 rows=10000 width=244)
```

Since this query has no WHERE clause, it must scan all the rows of the table, so the planner has chosen to use a simple sequential scan plan. The numbers that are quoted in parentheses are (left to right):

- Estimated start-up cost. This is the time expended before the output phase can begin, e.g., time to do the sorting in a sort node.
- Estimated total cost. This is stated on the assumption that the plan node is run to completion, i.e., all available rows are retrieved. In practice a node's parent node might stop short of reading all available rows (see the LIMIT example below).

- Estimated number of rows output by this plan node. Again, the node is assumed to be run to completion.
- Estimated average width of rows output by this plan node (in bytes).

The costs are measured in arbitrary units determined by the planner's cost parameters (see Section 20.7.2). Traditional practice is to measure the costs in units of disk page fetches; that is, `seq_page_cost` is conventionally set to 1.0 and the other cost parameters are set relative to that. The examples in this section are run with the default cost parameters.

It's important to understand that the cost of an upper-level node includes the cost of all its child nodes. It's also important to realize that the cost only reflects things that the planner cares about. In particular, the cost does not consider the time spent transmitting result rows to the client, which could be an important factor in the real elapsed time; but the planner ignores it because it cannot change it by altering the plan. (Every correct plan will output the same row set, we trust.)

The `rows` value is a little tricky because it is not the number of rows processed or scanned by the plan node, but rather the number emitted by the node. This is often less than the number scanned, as a result of filtering by any `WHERE`-clause conditions that are being applied at the node. Ideally the top-level rows estimate will approximate the number of rows actually returned, updated, or deleted by the query.

Returning to our example:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM tenk1;
```

QUERY PLAN

```
-----  
Seq Scan on tenk1  (cost=0.00..458.00 rows=10000 width=244)
```

These numbers are derived very straightforwardly. If you do:

```
SELECT relpages, reltuples FROM pg_class WHERE relname = 'tenk1';
```

you will find that `tenk1` has 358 disk pages and 10000 rows. The estimated cost is computed as (disk pages read \* `seq_page_cost`) + (rows scanned \* `cpu_tuple_cost`). By default, `seq_page_cost` is 1.0 and `cpu_tuple_cost` is 0.01, so the estimated cost is  $(358 * 1.0) + (10000 * 0.01) = 458$ .

Now let's modify the query to add a `WHERE` condition:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM tenk1 WHERE unique1 < 7000;
```

QUERY PLAN

```
-----  
Seq Scan on tenk1  (cost=0.00..483.00 rows=7001 width=244)  
  Filter: (unique1 < 7000)
```

Notice that the `EXPLAIN` output shows the `WHERE` clause being applied as a “filter” condition attached to the Seq Scan plan node. This means that the plan node checks the condition for each row it scans, and outputs only the ones that pass the condition. The estimate of output rows has been reduced because of the `WHERE` clause. However, the scan will still have to visit all 10000 rows, so the cost hasn't decreased; in fact it has gone up a bit (by  $10000 * \text{cpu\_operator\_cost}$ , to be exact) to reflect the extra CPU time spent checking the `WHERE` condition.

The actual number of rows this query would select is 7000, but the `rows` estimate is only approximate. If you try to duplicate this experiment, you will probably get a slightly different estimate; moreover, it can change after each `ANALYZE` command, because the statistics produced by `ANALYZE` are taken from a randomized sample of the table.

Now, let's make the condition more restrictive:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM tenk1 WHERE unique1 < 100;
```

QUERY PLAN

```
-----  
Bitmap Heap Scan on tenk1  (cost=5.07..229.20 rows=101 width=244)  
  Recheck Cond: (unique1 < 100)  
    -> Bitmap Index Scan on tenk1_unique1  (cost=0.00..5.04  
rows=101 width=0)  
      Index Cond: (unique1 < 100)
```

Here the planner has decided to use a two-step plan: the child plan node visits an index to find the locations of rows matching the index condition, and then the upper plan node actually fetches those rows from the table itself. Fetching rows separately is much more expensive than reading them sequentially, but because not all the pages of the table have to be visited, this is still cheaper than a sequential scan. (The reason for using two plan levels is that the upper plan node sorts the row locations identified by the index into physical order before reading them, to minimize the cost of separate fetches. The “bitmap” mentioned in the node names is the mechanism that does the sorting.)

Now let's add another condition to the WHERE clause:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM tenk1 WHERE unique1 < 100 AND stringul =  
'xxx';
```

QUERY PLAN

```
-----  
Bitmap Heap Scan on tenk1  (cost=5.04..229.43 rows=1 width=244)  
  Recheck Cond: (unique1 < 100)  
  Filter: (stringul = 'xxx'::name)  
    -> Bitmap Index Scan on tenk1_unique1  (cost=0.00..5.04  
rows=101 width=0)  
      Index Cond: (unique1 < 100)
```

The added condition `stringul = 'xxx'` reduces the output row count estimate, but not the cost because we still have to visit the same set of rows. Notice that the `stringul` clause cannot be applied as an index condition, since this index is only on the `unique1` column. Instead it is applied as a filter on the rows retrieved by the index. Thus the cost has actually gone up slightly to reflect this extra checking.

In some cases the planner will prefer a “simple” index scan plan:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM tenk1 WHERE unique1 = 42;
```

QUERY PLAN

```
-----  
Index Scan using tenk1_unique1 on tenk1  (cost=0.29..8.30 rows=1  
width=244)  
  Index Cond: (unique1 = 42)
```

In this type of plan the table rows are fetched in index order, which makes them even more expensive to read, but there are so few that the extra cost of sorting the row locations is not worth it. You'll most often see this plan type for queries that fetch just a single row. It's also often used for queries that have an `ORDER BY` condition that matches the index order, because then no extra sorting step is needed to satisfy the `ORDER BY`. In this example, adding `ORDER BY unique1` would use the same plan because the index already implicitly provides the requested ordering.

The planner may implement an `ORDER BY` clause in several ways. The above example shows that such an ordering clause may be implemented implicitly. The planner may also add an explicit `sort` step:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM tenk1 ORDER BY unique1;
                                QUERY PLAN
-----
Sort  (cost=1109.39..1134.39 rows=10000 width=244)
  Sort Key: unique1
  -> Seq Scan on tenk1  (cost=0.00..445.00 rows=10000 width=244)
```

If a part of the plan guarantees an ordering on a prefix of the required sort keys, then the planner may instead decide to use an incremental `sort` step:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM tenk1 ORDER BY four, ten LIMIT 100;
                                QUERY PLAN
-----
-----
Limit  (cost=521.06..538.05 rows=100 width=244)
  -> Incremental Sort  (cost=521.06..2220.95 rows=10000
width=244)
    Sort Key: four, ten
    Presorted Key: four
    -> Index Scan using index_tenk1_on_four on tenk1
(cost=0.29..1510.08 rows=10000 width=244)
```

Compared to regular sorts, sorting incrementally allows returning tuples before the entire result set has been sorted, which particularly enables optimizations with `LIMIT` queries. It may also reduce memory usage and the likelihood of spilling sorts to disk, but it comes at the cost of the increased overhead of splitting the result set into multiple sorting batches.

If there are separate indexes on several of the columns referenced in `WHERE`, the planner might choose to use an `AND` or `OR` combination of the indexes:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM tenk1 WHERE unique1 < 100 AND unique2 > 9000;
                                QUERY PLAN
-----
-----
Bitmap Heap Scan on tenk1  (cost=25.08..60.21 rows=10 width=244)
  Recheck Cond: ((unique1 < 100) AND (unique2 > 9000))
  -> BitmapAnd  (cost=25.08..25.08 rows=10 width=0)
    -> Bitmap Index Scan on tenk1_unique1  (cost=0.00..5.04
rows=101 width=0)
      Index Cond: (unique1 < 100)
    -> Bitmap Index Scan on tenk1_unique2  (cost=0.00..19.78
rows=999 width=0)
      Index Cond: (unique2 > 9000)
```

But this requires visiting both indexes, so it's not necessarily a win compared to using just one index and treating the other condition as a filter. If you vary the ranges involved you'll see the plan change accordingly.

Here is an example showing the effects of `LIMIT`:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM tenk1 WHERE unique1 < 100 AND unique2 > 9000
LIMIT 2;
```

## QUERY PLAN

```
-----  
Limit  (cost=0.29..14.48 rows=2 width=244)  
  ->  Index Scan using tenk1_unique2 on tenk1  (cost=0.29..71.27  
rows=10 width=244)  
      Index Cond: (unique2 > 9000)  
      Filter: (unique1 < 100)
```

This is the same query as above, but we added a `LIMIT` so that not all the rows need be retrieved, and the planner changed its mind about what to do. Notice that the total cost and row count of the Index Scan node are shown as if it were run to completion. However, the Limit node is expected to stop after retrieving only a fifth of those rows, so its total cost is only a fifth as much, and that's the actual estimated cost of the query. This plan is preferred over adding a Limit node to the previous plan because the Limit could not avoid paying the startup cost of the bitmap scan, so the total cost would be something over 25 units with that approach.

Let's try joining two tables, using the columns we have been discussing:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT *  
FROM tenk1 t1, tenk2 t2  
WHERE t1.unique1 < 10 AND t1.unique2 = t2.unique2;
```

## QUERY PLAN

```
-----  
Nested Loop  (cost=4.65..118.62 rows=10 width=488)  
  ->  Bitmap Heap Scan on tenk1 t1  (cost=4.36..39.47 rows=10  
width=244)  
      Recheck Cond: (unique1 < 10)  
      ->  Bitmap Index Scan on tenk1_unique1  (cost=0.00..4.36  
rows=10 width=0)  
          Index Cond: (unique1 < 10)  
      ->  Index Scan using tenk2_unique2 on tenk2 t2  (cost=0.29..7.91  
rows=1 width=244)  
          Index Cond: (unique2 = t1.unique2)
```

In this plan, we have a nested-loop join node with two table scans as inputs, or children. The indentation of the node summary lines reflects the plan tree structure. The join's first, or “outer”, child is a bitmap scan similar to those we saw before. Its cost and row count are the same as we'd get from `SELECT ... WHERE unique1 < 10` because we are applying the `WHERE` clause `unique1 < 10` at that node. The `t1.unique2 = t2.unique2` clause is not relevant yet, so it doesn't affect the row count of the outer scan. The nested-loop join node will run its second, or “inner” child once for each row obtained from the outer child. Column values from the current outer row can be plugged into the inner scan; here, the `t1.unique2` value from the outer row is available, so we get a plan and costs similar to what we saw above for a simple `SELECT ... WHERE t2.unique2 = constant` case. (The estimated cost is actually a bit lower than what was seen above, as a result of caching that's expected to occur during the repeated index scans on `t2`.) The costs of the loop node are then set on the basis of the cost of the outer scan, plus one repetition of the inner scan for each outer row ( $10 * 7.91$ , here), plus a little CPU time for join processing.

In this example the join's output row count is the same as the product of the two scans' row counts, but that's not true in all cases because there can be additional `WHERE` clauses that mention both tables and so can only be applied at the join point, not to either input scan. Here's an example:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT *  
FROM tenk1 t1, tenk2 t2
```

```
WHERE t1.unique1 < 10 AND t2.unique2 < 10 AND t1.hundred <
      t2.hundred;
```

#### QUERY PLAN

```
-----
Nested Loop  (cost=4.65..49.46 rows=33 width=488)
  Join Filter: (t1.hundred < t2.hundred)
    -> Bitmap Heap Scan on tenk1 t1  (cost=4.36..39.47 rows=10
        width=244)
        Recheck Cond: (unique1 < 10)
        -> Bitmap Index Scan on tenk1_unique1  (cost=0.00..4.36
            rows=10 width=0)
            Index Cond: (unique1 < 10)
    -> Materialize  (cost=0.29..8.51 rows=10 width=244)
        -> Index Scan using tenk2_unique2 on tenk2 t2
            (cost=0.29..8.46 rows=10 width=244)
            Index Cond: (unique2 < 10)
```

The condition `t1.hundred < t2.hundred` can't be tested in the `tenk2_unique2` index, so it's applied at the join node. This reduces the estimated output row count of the join node, but does not change either input scan.

Notice that here the planner has chosen to “materialize” the inner relation of the join, by putting a `Materialize` plan node atop it. This means that the `t2` index scan will be done just once, even though the nested-loop join node needs to read that data ten times, once for each row from the outer relation. The `Materialize` node saves the data in memory as it's read, and then returns the data from memory on each subsequent pass.

When dealing with outer joins, you might see join plan nodes with both “Join Filter” and plain “Filter” conditions attached. Join Filter conditions come from the outer join's `ON` clause, so a row that fails the Join Filter condition could still get emitted as a null-extended row. But a plain Filter condition is applied after the outer-join rules and so acts to remove rows unconditionally. In an inner join there is no semantic difference between these types of filters.

If we change the query's selectivity a bit, we might get a very different join plan:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT *
FROM tenk1 t1, tenk2 t2
WHERE t1.unique1 < 100 AND t1.unique2 = t2.unique2;
```

#### QUERY PLAN

```
-----
Hash Join  (cost=230.47..713.98 rows=101 width=488)
  Hash Cond: (t2.unique2 = t1.unique2)
    -> Seq Scan on tenk2 t2  (cost=0.00..445.00 rows=10000
        width=244)
    -> Hash  (cost=229.20..229.20 rows=101 width=244)
        -> Bitmap Heap Scan on tenk1 t1  (cost=5.07..229.20
            rows=101 width=244)
            Recheck Cond: (unique1 < 100)
            -> Bitmap Index Scan on tenk1_unique1
                (cost=0.00..5.04 rows=101 width=0)
                Index Cond: (unique1 < 100)
```

Here, the planner has chosen to use a hash join, in which rows of one table are entered into an in-memory hash table, after which the other table is scanned and the hash table is probed for matches to each row. Again note how the indentation reflects the plan structure: the bitmap scan on `tenk1` is the

input to the Hash node, which constructs the hash table. That's then returned to the Hash Join node, which reads rows from its outer child plan and searches the hash table for each one.

Another possible type of join is a merge join, illustrated here:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT *
FROM tenk1 t1, onek t2
WHERE t1.unique1 < 100 AND t1.unique2 = t2.unique2;
```

QUERY PLAN

```
-----
Merge Join (cost=198.11..268.19 rows=10 width=488)
  Merge Cond: (t1.unique2 = t2.unique2)
    -> Index Scan using tenk1_unique2 on tenk1 t1
        (cost=0.29..656.28 rows=101 width=244)
        Filter: (unique1 < 100)
    -> Sort (cost=197.83..200.33 rows=1000 width=244)
        Sort Key: t2.unique2
        -> Seq Scan on onek t2 (cost=0.00..148.00 rows=1000
            width=244)
```

Merge join requires its input data to be sorted on the join keys. In this plan the `tenk1` data is sorted by using an index scan to visit the rows in the correct order, but a sequential scan and sort is preferred for `onek`, because there are many more rows to be visited in that table. (Sequential-scan-and-sort frequently beats an index scan for sorting many rows, because of the nonsequential disk access required by the index scan.)

One way to look at variant plans is to force the planner to disregard whatever strategy it thought was the cheapest, using the enable/disable flags described in Section 20.7.1. (This is a crude tool, but useful. See also Section 14.3.) For example, if we're unconvinced that sequential-scan-and-sort is the best way to deal with table `onek` in the previous example, we could try

```
SET enable_sort = off;
```

```
EXPLAIN SELECT *
FROM tenk1 t1, onek t2
WHERE t1.unique1 < 100 AND t1.unique2 = t2.unique2;
```

QUERY PLAN

```
-----
Merge Join (cost=0.56..292.65 rows=10 width=488)
  Merge Cond: (t1.unique2 = t2.unique2)
    -> Index Scan using tenk1_unique2 on tenk1 t1
        (cost=0.29..656.28 rows=101 width=244)
        Filter: (unique1 < 100)
    -> Index Scan using onek_unique2 on onek t2 (cost=0.28..224.79
        rows=1000 width=244)
```

which shows that the planner thinks that sorting `onek` by index-scanning is about 12% more expensive than sequential-scan-and-sort. Of course, the next question is whether it's right about that. We can investigate that using `EXPLAIN ANALYZE`, as discussed below.

## 14.1.2. EXPLAIN ANALYZE

It is possible to check the accuracy of the planner's estimates by using `EXPLAIN`'s `ANALYZE` option. With this option, `EXPLAIN` actually executes the query, and then displays the true row counts and



true run time accumulated within each plan node, along with the same estimates that a plain EXPLAIN shows. For example, we might get a result like this:

```
EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT *
FROM tenk1 t1, tenk2 t2
WHERE t1.unique1 < 10 AND t1.unique2 = t2.unique2;
```

QUERY

```

PLAN
-----
Nested Loop  (cost=4.65..118.62 rows=10 width=488) (actual
time=0.128..0.377 rows=10 loops=1)
  -> Bitmap Heap Scan on tenk1 t1  (cost=4.36..39.47 rows=10
width=244) (actual time=0.057..0.121 rows=10 loops=1)
    Recheck Cond: (unique1 < 10)
    -> Bitmap Index Scan on tenk1_unique1  (cost=0.00..4.36
rows=10 width=0) (actual time=0.024..0.024 rows=10 loops=1)
      Index Cond: (unique1 < 10)
    -> Index Scan using tenk2_unique2 on tenk2 t2  (cost=0.29..7.91
rows=1 width=244) (actual time=0.021..0.022 rows=1 loops=10)
      Index Cond: (unique2 = t1.unique2)
Planning time: 0.181 ms
Execution time: 0.501 ms
```

Note that the “actual time” values are in milliseconds of real time, whereas the `cost` estimates are expressed in arbitrary units; so they are unlikely to match up. The thing that's usually most important to look for is whether the estimated row counts are reasonably close to reality. In this example the estimates were all dead-on, but that's quite unusual in practice.

In some query plans, it is possible for a subplan node to be executed more than once. For example, the inner index scan will be executed once per outer row in the above nested-loop plan. In such cases, the `loops` value reports the total number of executions of the node, and the actual time and rows values shown are averages per-execution. This is done to make the numbers comparable with the way that the cost estimates are shown. Multiply by the `loops` value to get the total time actually spent in the node. In the above example, we spent a total of 0.220 milliseconds executing the index scans on `tenk2`.

In some cases EXPLAIN ANALYZE shows additional execution statistics beyond the plan node execution times and row counts. For example, Sort and Hash nodes provide extra information:

```
EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT *
FROM tenk1 t1, tenk2 t2
WHERE t1.unique1 < 100 AND t1.unique2 = t2.unique2 ORDER BY
  t1.fivethous;
```

QUERY PLAN

```

-----
Sort  (cost=717.34..717.59 rows=101 width=488) (actual
time=7.761..7.774 rows=100 loops=1)
  Sort Key: t1.fivethous
  Sort Method: quicksort  Memory: 77kB
  -> Hash Join  (cost=230.47..713.98 rows=101 width=488) (actual
time=0.711..7.427 rows=100 loops=1)
    Hash Cond: (t2.unique2 = t1.unique2)
```

```
-> Seq Scan on tenk2 t2 (cost=0.00..445.00 rows=10000
width=244) (actual time=0.007..2.583 rows=10000 loops=1)
-> Hash (cost=229.20..229.20 rows=101 width=244) (actual
time=0.659..0.659 rows=100 loops=1)
    Buckets: 1024 Batches: 1 Memory Usage: 28kB
-> Bitmap Heap Scan on tenk1 t1 (cost=5.07..229.20
rows=101 width=244) (actual time=0.080..0.526 rows=100 loops=1)
    Recheck Cond: (unique1 < 100)
-> Bitmap Index Scan on tenk1_unique1
(cost=0.00..5.04 rows=101 width=0) (actual time=0.049..0.049
rows=100 loops=1)
    Index Cond: (unique1 < 100)
Planning time: 0.194 ms
Execution time: 8.008 ms
```

The Sort node shows the sort method used (in particular, whether the sort was in-memory or on-disk) and the amount of memory or disk space needed. The Hash node shows the number of hash buckets and batches as well as the peak amount of memory used for the hash table. (If the number of batches exceeds one, there will also be disk space usage involved, but that is not shown.)

Another type of extra information is the number of rows removed by a filter condition:

```
EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT * FROM tenk1 WHERE ten < 7;
```

QUERY PLAN

```
-----
Seq Scan on tenk1 (cost=0.00..483.00 rows=7000 width=244) (actual
time=0.016..5.107 rows=7000 loops=1)
    Filter: (ten < 7)
    Rows Removed by Filter: 3000
Planning time: 0.083 ms
Execution time: 5.905 ms
```

These counts can be particularly valuable for filter conditions applied at join nodes. The “Rows Removed” line only appears when at least one scanned row, or potential join pair in the case of a join node, is rejected by the filter condition.

A case similar to filter conditions occurs with “lossy” index scans. For example, consider this search for polygons containing a specific point:

```
EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT * FROM polygon_tbl WHERE f1 @> polygon
'(0.5,2.0)';
```

QUERY PLAN

```
-----
Seq Scan on polygon_tbl (cost=0.00..1.05 rows=1 width=32) (actual
time=0.044..0.044 rows=0 loops=1)
    Filter: (f1 @> '((0.5,2))'::polygon)
    Rows Removed by Filter: 4
Planning time: 0.040 ms
Execution time: 0.083 ms
```

The planner thinks (quite correctly) that this sample table is too small to bother with an index scan, so we have a plain sequential scan in which all the rows got rejected by the filter condition. But if we force an index scan to be used, we see:

```
SET enable_seqscan TO off;
```

```
EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT * FROM polygon_tbl WHERE f1 @> polygon
'((0.5,2.0))';
```

QUERY PLAN

```
-----
Index Scan using gpolygonind on polygon_tbl  (cost=0.13..8.15
rows=1 width=32) (actual time=0.062..0.062 rows=0 loops=1)
  Index Cond: (f1 @> '((0.5,2))'::polygon)
  Rows Removed by Index Recheck: 1
Planning time: 0.034 ms
Execution time: 0.144 ms
```

Here we can see that the index returned one candidate row, which was then rejected by a recheck of the index condition. This happens because a GiST index is “lossy” for polygon containment tests: it actually returns the rows with polygons that overlap the target, and then we have to do the exact containment test on those rows.

EXPLAIN has a BUFFERS option that can be used with ANALYZE to get even more run time statistics:

```
EXPLAIN (ANALYZE, BUFFERS) SELECT * FROM tenk1 WHERE unique1 < 100
AND unique2 > 9000;
```

QUERY

PLAN

```
-----
Bitmap Heap Scan on tenk1  (cost=25.08..60.21 rows=10 width=244)
(actual time=0.323..0.342 rows=10 loops=1)
  Recheck Cond: ((unique1 < 100) AND (unique2 > 9000))
  Buffers: shared hit=15
  -> BitmapAnd  (cost=25.08..25.08 rows=10 width=0) (actual
time=0.309..0.309 rows=0 loops=1)
    Buffers: shared hit=7
    -> Bitmap Index Scan on tenk1_unique1  (cost=0.00..5.04
rows=101 width=0) (actual time=0.043..0.043 rows=100 loops=1)
      Index Cond: (unique1 < 100)
      Buffers: shared hit=2
    -> Bitmap Index Scan on tenk1_unique2  (cost=0.00..19.78
rows=999 width=0) (actual time=0.227..0.227 rows=999 loops=1)
      Index Cond: (unique2 > 9000)
      Buffers: shared hit=5
Planning time: 0.088 ms
Execution time: 0.423 ms
```

The numbers provided by BUFFERS help to identify which parts of the query are the most I/O-intensive.

Keep in mind that because EXPLAIN ANALYZE actually runs the query, any side-effects will happen as usual, even though whatever results the query might output are discarded in favor of printing the EXPLAIN data. If you want to analyze a data-modifying query without changing your tables, you can roll the command back afterwards, for example:

```
BEGIN;
```

```
EXPLAIN ANALYZE UPDATE tenk1 SET hundred = hundred + 1 WHERE
unique1 < 100;
```

QUERY

PLAN

```
-----
Update on tenk1 (cost=5.08..230.08 rows=0 width=0) (actual
time=3.791..3.792 rows=0 loops=1)
  -> Bitmap Heap Scan on tenk1 (cost=5.08..230.08 rows=102
width=10) (actual time=0.069..0.513 rows=100 loops=1)
    Recheck Cond: (unique1 < 100)
    Heap Blocks: exact=90
    -> Bitmap Index Scan on tenk1_unique1 (cost=0.00..5.05
rows=102 width=0) (actual time=0.036..0.037 rows=300 loops=1)
        Index Cond: (unique1 < 100)
Planning Time: 0.113 ms
Execution Time: 3.850 ms
```

ROLLBACK;

As seen in this example, when the query is an INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, or MERGE command, the actual work of applying the table changes is done by a top-level Insert, Update, Delete, or Merge plan node. The plan nodes underneath this node perform the work of locating the old rows and/or computing the new data. So above, we see the same sort of bitmap table scan we've seen already, and its output is fed to an Update node that stores the updated rows. It's worth noting that although the data-modifying node can take a considerable amount of run time (here, it's consuming the lion's share of the time), the planner does not currently add anything to the cost estimates to account for that work. That's because the work to be done is the same for every correct query plan, so it doesn't affect planning decisions.

When an UPDATE, DELETE, or MERGE command affects an inheritance hierarchy, the output might look like this:

```
EXPLAIN UPDATE parent SET f2 = f2 + 1 WHERE f1 = 101;
```

QUERY PLAN

```
-----
Update on parent (cost=0.00..24.59 rows=0 width=0)
  Update on parent parent_1
  Update on child1 parent_2
  Update on child2 parent_3
  Update on child3 parent_4
  -> Result (cost=0.00..24.59 rows=4 width=14)
    -> Append (cost=0.00..24.54 rows=4 width=14)
      -> Seq Scan on parent parent_1 (cost=0.00..0.00
rows=1 width=14)
        Filter: (f1 = 101)
      -> Index Scan using child1_pkey on child1 parent_2
(cost=0.15..8.17 rows=1 width=14)
        Index Cond: (f1 = 101)
      -> Index Scan using child2_pkey on child2 parent_3
(cost=0.15..8.17 rows=1 width=14)
        Index Cond: (f1 = 101)
      -> Index Scan using child3_pkey on child3 parent_4
(cost=0.15..8.17 rows=1 width=14)
        Index Cond: (f1 = 101)
```

In this example the Update node needs to consider three child tables as well as the originally-mentioned parent table. So there are four input scanning subplans, one per table. For clarity, the Update node is annotated to show the specific target tables that will be updated, in the same order as the corresponding subplans.

The `Planning time` shown by `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` is the time it took to generate the query plan from the parsed query and optimize it. It does not include parsing or rewriting.

The `Execution time` shown by `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` includes executor start-up and shut-down time, as well as the time to run any triggers that are fired, but it does not include parsing, rewriting, or planning time. Time spent executing BEFORE triggers, if any, is included in the time for the related Insert, Update, or Delete node; but time spent executing AFTER triggers is not counted there because AFTER triggers are fired after completion of the whole plan. The total time spent in each trigger (either BEFORE or AFTER) is also shown separately. Note that deferred constraint triggers will not be executed until end of transaction and are thus not considered at all by `EXPLAIN ANALYZE`.

### 14.1.3. Caveats

There are two significant ways in which run times measured by `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` can deviate from normal execution of the same query. First, since no output rows are delivered to the client, network transmission costs and I/O conversion costs are not included. Second, the measurement overhead added by `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` can be significant, especially on machines with slow `gettimeofday()` operating-system calls. You can use the `pg_test_timing` tool to measure the overhead of timing on your system.

`EXPLAIN` results should not be extrapolated to situations much different from the one you are actually testing; for example, results on a toy-sized table cannot be assumed to apply to large tables. The planner's cost estimates are not linear and so it might choose a different plan for a larger or smaller table. An extreme example is that on a table that only occupies one disk page, you'll nearly always get a sequential scan plan whether indexes are available or not. The planner realizes that it's going to take one disk page read to process the table in any case, so there's no value in expending additional page reads to look at an index. (We saw this happening in the `polygon_tbl` example above.)

There are cases in which the actual and estimated values won't match up well, but nothing is really wrong. One such case occurs when plan node execution is stopped short by a `LIMIT` or similar effect. For example, in the `LIMIT` query we used before,

```
EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT * FROM tenk1 WHERE unique1 < 100 AND unique2
> 9000 LIMIT 2;
```

PLAN	QUERY
-----	
-----	
Limit (cost=0.29..14.71 rows=2 width=244) (actual	
time=0.177..0.249 rows=2 loops=1)	
-> Index Scan using tenk1_unique2 on tenk1 (cost=0.29..72.42	
rows=10 width=244) (actual time=0.174..0.244 rows=2 loops=1)	
Index Cond: (unique2 > 9000)	
Filter: (unique1 < 100)	
Rows Removed by Filter: 287	
Planning time: 0.096 ms	
Execution time: 0.336 ms	

the estimated cost and row count for the Index Scan node are shown as though it were run to completion. But in reality the Limit node stopped requesting rows after it got two, so the actual row count is only 2 and the run time is less than the cost estimate would suggest. This is not an estimation error, only a discrepancy in the way the estimates and true values are displayed.

Merge joins also have measurement artifacts that can confuse the unwary. A merge join will stop reading one input if it's exhausted the other input and the next key value in the one input is greater than the last key value of the other input; in such a case there can be no more matches and so no need to scan the rest of the first input. This results in not reading all of one child, with results like those mentioned for `LIMIT`. Also, if the outer (first) child contains rows with duplicate key values, the inner (second) child is backed up and rescanned for the portion of its rows matching that key value. `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` counts these repeated emissions of the same inner rows as if they were real additional rows. When there are many outer duplicates, the reported actual row count for the inner child plan node can be significantly larger than the number of rows that are actually in the inner relation.

`BitmapAnd` and `BitmapOr` nodes always report their actual row counts as zero, due to implementation limitations.

Normally, `EXPLAIN` will display every plan node created by the planner. However, there are cases where the executor can determine that certain nodes need not be executed because they cannot produce any rows, based on parameter values that were not available at planning time. (Currently this can only happen for child nodes of an `Append` or `MergeAppend` node that is scanning a partitioned table.) When this happens, those plan nodes are omitted from the `EXPLAIN` output and a `Subplans Removed: N` annotation appears instead.

## 14.2. Statistics Used by the Planner

### 14.2.1. Single-Column Statistics

As we saw in the previous section, the query planner needs to estimate the number of rows retrieved by a query in order to make good choices of query plans. This section provides a quick look at the statistics that the system uses for these estimates.

One component of the statistics is the total number of entries in each table and index, as well as the number of disk blocks occupied by each table and index. This information is kept in the table `pg_class`, in the columns `reltuples` and `relpages`. We can look at it with queries similar to this one:

```
SELECT relname, relkind, reltuples, relpages
FROM pg_class
WHERE relname LIKE 'tenk1%';
```

relname	relkind	reltuples	relpages
tenk1	r	10000	358
tenk1_hundred	i	10000	30
tenk1_thous_tenthous	i	10000	30
tenk1_unique1	i	10000	30
tenk1_unique2	i	10000	30

(5 rows)

Here we can see that `tenk1` contains 10000 rows, as do its indexes, but the indexes are (unsurprisingly) much smaller than the table.

For efficiency reasons, `reltuples` and `relpages` are not updated on-the-fly, and so they usually contain somewhat out-of-date values. They are updated by `VACUUM`, `ANALYZE`, and a few DDL commands such as `CREATE INDEX`. A `VACUUM` or `ANALYZE` operation that does not scan the entire table (which is commonly the case) will incrementally update the `reltuples` count on the basis of the part of the table it did scan, resulting in an approximate value. In any case, the planner will scale the values it finds in `pg_class` to match the current physical table size, thus obtaining a closer approximation.

Most queries retrieve only a fraction of the rows in a table, due to `WHERE` clauses that restrict the rows to be examined. The planner thus needs to make an estimate of the *selectivity* of `WHERE` clauses, that is, the fraction of rows that match each condition in the `WHERE` clause. The information used for this task is stored in the `pg_statistic` system catalog. Entries in `pg_statistic` are updated by the `ANALYZE` and `VACUUM ANALYZE` commands, and are always approximate even when freshly updated.

Rather than look at `pg_statistic` directly, it's better to look at its view `pg_stats` when examining the statistics manually. `pg_stats` is designed to be more easily readable. Furthermore, `pg_stats` is readable by all, whereas `pg_statistic` is only readable by a superuser. (This prevents unprivileged users from learning something about the contents of other people's tables from the statistics. The `pg_stats` view is restricted to show only rows about tables that the current user can read.) For example, we might do:

```
SELECT attname, inherited, n_distinct,
       array_to_string(most_common_vals, E'\n') as most_common_vals
FROM pg_stats
WHERE tablename = 'road';
```

attname	inherited	n_distinct	most_common_vals
name	f	-0.363388	I- 580
Ramp+			I- 880
Ramp+			Sp Railroad
+			I- 580
+			I- 680
Ramp			
name	t	-0.284859	I- 880
Ramp+			I- 580
Ramp+			I- 680
Ramp+			I- 580
+			State Hwy 13
Ramp			

(2 rows)

Note that two rows are displayed for the same column, one corresponding to the complete inheritance hierarchy starting at the `road` table (`inherited=t`), and another one including only the `road` table itself (`inherited=f`).

The amount of information stored in `pg_statistic` by `ANALYZE`, in particular the maximum number of entries in the `most_common_vals` and `histogram_bounds` arrays for each column, can be set on a column-by-column basis using the `ALTER TABLE SET STATISTICS` command, or globally by setting the `default_statistics_target` configuration variable. The default limit is presently 100 entries. Raising the limit might allow more accurate planner estimates to be made, particularly for columns with irregular data distributions, at the price of consuming more space in `pg_statistic` and slightly more time to compute the estimates. Conversely, a lower limit might be sufficient for columns with simple data distributions.

Further details about the planner's use of statistics can be found in Chapter 76.

## 14.2.2. Extended Statistics

It is common to see slow queries running bad execution plans because multiple columns used in the query clauses are correlated. The planner normally assumes that multiple conditions are independent of each other, an assumption that does not hold when column values are correlated. Regular statistics, because of their per-individual-column nature, cannot capture any knowledge about cross-column correlation. However, PostgreSQL has the ability to compute *multivariate statistics*, which can capture such information.

Because the number of possible column combinations is very large, it's impractical to compute multivariate statistics automatically. Instead, *extended statistics objects*, more often called just *statistics objects*, can be created to instruct the server to obtain statistics across interesting sets of columns.

Statistics objects are created using the `CREATE STATISTICS` command. Creation of such an object merely creates a catalog entry expressing interest in the statistics. Actual data collection is performed by `ANALYZE` (either a manual command, or background auto-analyze). The collected values can be examined in the `pg_statistic_ext_data` catalog.

`ANALYZE` computes extended statistics based on the same sample of table rows that it takes for computing regular single-column statistics. Since the sample size is increased by increasing the statistics target for the table or any of its columns (as described in the previous section), a larger statistics target will normally result in more accurate extended statistics, as well as more time spent calculating them.

The following subsections describe the kinds of extended statistics that are currently supported.

### 14.2.2.1. Functional Dependencies

The simplest kind of extended statistics tracks *functional dependencies*, a concept used in definitions of database normal forms. We say that column `b` is functionally dependent on column `a` if knowledge of the value of `a` is sufficient to determine the value of `b`, that is there are no two rows having the same value of `a` but different values of `b`. In a fully normalized database, functional dependencies should exist only on primary keys and superkeys. However, in practice many data sets are not fully normalized for various reasons; intentional denormalization for performance reasons is a common example. Even in a fully normalized database, there may be partial correlation between some columns, which can be expressed as partial functional dependency.

The existence of functional dependencies directly affects the accuracy of estimates in certain queries. If a query contains conditions on both the independent and the dependent column(s), the conditions on the dependent columns do not further reduce the result size; but without knowledge of the functional dependency, the query planner will assume that the conditions are independent, resulting in underestimating the result size.

To inform the planner about functional dependencies, `ANALYZE` can collect measurements of cross-column dependency. Assessing the degree of dependency between all sets of columns would be prohibitively expensive, so data collection is limited to those groups of columns appearing together in a statistics object defined with the `dependencies` option. It is advisable to create dependencies statistics only for column groups that are strongly correlated, to avoid unnecessary overhead in both `ANALYZE` and later query planning.

Here is an example of collecting functional-dependency statistics:

```
CREATE STATISTICS stts (dependencies) ON city, zip FROM zipcodes;

ANALYZE zipcodes;

SELECT stxname, stxkeys, stxddependencies
```



```

FROM pg_statistic_ext join pg_statistic_ext_data on (oid =
stxoid)
WHERE stxname = 'stts';
stxname | stxkeys | stxddependencies
-----+-----+-----
stts    | 1 5     | {"1 => 5": 1.000000, "5 => 1": 0.423130}
(1 row)

```

Here it can be seen that column 1 (zip code) fully determines column 5 (city) so the coefficient is 1.0, while city only determines zip code about 42% of the time, meaning that there are many cities (58%) that are represented by more than a single ZIP code.

When computing the selectivity for a query involving functionally dependent columns, the planner adjusts the per-condition selectivity estimates using the dependency coefficients so as not to produce an underestimate.

#### 14.2.2.1.1. Limitations of Functional Dependencies

Functional dependencies are currently only applied when considering simple equality conditions that compare columns to constant values, and IN clauses with constant values. They are not used to improve estimates for equality conditions comparing two columns or comparing a column to an expression, nor for range clauses, LIKE or any other type of condition.

When estimating with functional dependencies, the planner assumes that conditions on the involved columns are compatible and hence redundant. If they are incompatible, the correct estimate would be zero rows, but that possibility is not considered. For example, given a query like

```
SELECT * FROM zipcodes WHERE city = 'San Francisco' AND zip =
'94105';
```

the planner will disregard the `city` clause as not changing the selectivity, which is correct. However, it will make the same assumption about

```
SELECT * FROM zipcodes WHERE city = 'San Francisco' AND zip =
'90210';
```

even though there will really be zero rows satisfying this query. Functional dependency statistics do not provide enough information to conclude that, however.

In many practical situations, this assumption is usually satisfied; for example, there might be a GUI in the application that only allows selecting compatible city and ZIP code values to use in a query. But if that's not the case, functional dependencies may not be a viable option.

#### 14.2.2.2. Multivariate N-Distinct Counts

Single-column statistics store the number of distinct values in each column. Estimates of the number of distinct values when combining more than one column (for example, for `GROUP BY a, b`) are frequently wrong when the planner only has single-column statistical data, causing it to select bad plans.

To improve such estimates, `ANALYZE` can collect n-distinct statistics for groups of columns. As before, it's impractical to do this for every possible column grouping, so data is collected only for those groups of columns appearing together in a statistics object defined with the `ndistinct` option. Data will be collected for each possible combination of two or more columns from the set of listed columns.

Continuing the previous example, the n-distinct counts in a table of ZIP codes might look like the following:

```

CREATE STATISTICS stts2 (ndistinct) ON city, state, zip FROM
zipcodes;

ANALYZE zipcodes;

SELECT stxkeys AS k, stxdndistinct AS nd
  FROM pg_statistic_ext join pg_statistic_ext_data on (oid =
    stxoid)
    WHERE stxname = 'stts2';
-[ RECORD 1 ]-----
--
k | 1 2 5
nd | {"1, 2": 33178, "1, 5": 33178, "2, 5": 27435, "1, 2, 5":
    33178}
(1 row)

```

This indicates that there are three combinations of columns that have 33178 distinct values: ZIP code and state; ZIP code and city; and ZIP code, city and state (the fact that they are all equal is expected given that ZIP code alone is unique in this table). On the other hand, the combination of city and state has only 27435 distinct values.

It's advisable to create `ndistinct` statistics objects only on combinations of columns that are actually used for grouping, and for which misestimation of the number of groups is resulting in bad plans. Otherwise, the `ANALYZE` cycles are just wasted.

### 14.2.2.3. Multivariate MCV Lists

Another type of statistic stored for each column are most-common value lists. This allows very accurate estimates for individual columns, but may result in significant misestimates for queries with conditions on multiple columns.

To improve such estimates, `ANALYZE` can collect MCV lists on combinations of columns. Similarly to functional dependencies and `n-distinct` coefficients, it's impractical to do this for every possible column grouping. Even more so in this case, as the MCV list (unlike functional dependencies and `n-distinct` coefficients) does store the common column values. So data is collected only for those groups of columns appearing together in a statistics object defined with the `mcv` option.

Continuing the previous example, the MCV list for a table of ZIP codes might look like the following (unlike for simpler types of statistics, a function is required for inspection of MCV contents):

```

CREATE STATISTICS stts3 (mcv) ON city, state FROM zipcodes;

ANALYZE zipcodes;

SELECT m.* FROM pg_statistic_ext join pg_statistic_ext_data on (oid
= stxoid),
        pg_mcv_list_items(stxdmcv) m WHERE stxname =
'stts3';

```

index	values	nulls	frequency
0	{Washington, DC}	{f,f}	0.003467
2.7e-05			
1	{Apo, AE}	{f,f}	0.003067
1.9e-05			

```

      2 | {Houston, TX}          | {f,f} | 0.002167 |
0.000133
      3 | {El Paso, TX}          | {f,f} | 0.002 |
0.000113
      4 | {New York, NY}         | {f,f} | 0.001967 |
0.000114
      5 | {Atlanta, GA}          | {f,f} | 0.001633 |
3.3e-05
      6 | {Sacramento, CA}       | {f,f} | 0.001433 |
7.8e-05
      7 | {Miami, FL}            | {f,f} | 0.0014 |
6e-05
      8 | {Dallas, TX}           | {f,f} | 0.001367 |
8.8e-05
      9 | {Chicago, IL}          | {f,f} | 0.001333 |
5.1e-05
...
(99 rows)

```

This indicates that the most common combination of city and state is Washington in DC, with actual frequency (in the sample) about 0.35%. The base frequency of the combination (as computed from the simple per-column frequencies) is only 0.0027%, resulting in two orders of magnitude under-estimates.

It's advisable to create MCV statistics objects only on combinations of columns that are actually used in conditions together, and for which misestimation of the number of groups is resulting in bad plans. Otherwise, the ANALYZE and planning cycles are just wasted.

## 14.3. Controlling the Planner with Explicit JOIN Clauses

It is possible to control the query planner to some extent by using the explicit JOIN syntax. To see why this matters, we first need some background.

In a simple join query, such as:

```
SELECT * FROM a, b, c WHERE a.id = b.id AND b.ref = c.id;
```

the planner is free to join the given tables in any order. For example, it could generate a query plan that joins A to B, using the WHERE condition `a.id = b.id`, and then joins C to this joined table, using the other WHERE condition. Or it could join B to C and then join A to that result. Or it could join A to C and then join them with B — but that would be inefficient, since the full Cartesian product of A and C would have to be formed, there being no applicable condition in the WHERE clause to allow optimization of the join. (All joins in the PostgreSQL executor happen between two input tables, so it's necessary to build up the result in one or another of these fashions.) The important point is that these different join possibilities give semantically equivalent results but might have hugely different execution costs. Therefore, the planner will explore all of them to try to find the most efficient query plan.

When a query only involves two or three tables, there aren't many join orders to worry about. But the number of possible join orders grows exponentially as the number of tables expands. Beyond ten or so input tables it's no longer practical to do an exhaustive search of all the possibilities, and even for six or seven tables planning might take an annoyingly long time. When there are too many input tables, the PostgreSQL planner will switch from exhaustive search to a *genetic* probabilistic search through a limited number of possibilities. (The switch-over threshold is set by the `geqo_threshold` run-time parameter.) The genetic search takes less time, but it won't necessarily find the best possible plan.

When the query involves outer joins, the planner has less freedom than it does for plain (inner) joins. For example, consider:

```
SELECT * FROM a LEFT JOIN (b JOIN c ON (b.ref = c.id)) ON (a.id = b.id);
```

Although this query's restrictions are superficially similar to the previous example, the semantics are different because a row must be emitted for each row of A that has no matching row in the join of B and C. Therefore the planner has no choice of join order here: it must join B to C and then join A to that result. Accordingly, this query takes less time to plan than the previous query. In other cases, the planner might be able to determine that more than one join order is safe. For example, given:

```
SELECT * FROM a LEFT JOIN b ON (a.bid = b.id) LEFT JOIN c ON (a.cid = c.id);
```

it is valid to join A to either B or C first. Currently, only `FULL JOIN` completely constrains the join order. Most practical cases involving `LEFT JOIN` or `RIGHT JOIN` can be rearranged to some extent.

Explicit inner join syntax (`INNER JOIN`, `CROSS JOIN`, or unadorned `JOIN`) is semantically the same as listing the input relations in `FROM`, so it does not constrain the join order.

Even though most kinds of `JOIN` don't completely constrain the join order, it is possible to instruct the PostgreSQL query planner to treat all `JOIN` clauses as constraining the join order anyway. For example, these three queries are logically equivalent:

```
SELECT * FROM a, b, c WHERE a.id = b.id AND b.ref = c.id;
SELECT * FROM a CROSS JOIN b CROSS JOIN c WHERE a.id = b.id AND
    b.ref = c.id;
SELECT * FROM a JOIN (b JOIN c ON (b.ref = c.id)) ON (a.id = b.id);
```

But if we tell the planner to honor the `JOIN` order, the second and third take less time to plan than the first. This effect is not worth worrying about for only three tables, but it can be a lifesaver with many tables.

To force the planner to follow the join order laid out by explicit `JOINS`, set the `join_collapse_limit` run-time parameter to 1. (Other possible values are discussed below.)

You do not need to constrain the join order completely in order to cut search time, because it's OK to use `JOIN` operators within items of a plain `FROM` list. For example, consider:

```
SELECT * FROM a CROSS JOIN b, c, d, e WHERE ...;
```

With `join_collapse_limit = 1`, this forces the planner to join A to B before joining them to other tables, but doesn't constrain its choices otherwise. In this example, the number of possible join orders is reduced by a factor of 5.

Constraining the planner's search in this way is a useful technique both for reducing planning time and for directing the planner to a good query plan. If the planner chooses a bad join order by default, you can force it to choose a better order via `JOIN` syntax — assuming that you know of a better order, that is. Experimentation is recommended.

A closely related issue that affects planning time is collapsing of subqueries into their parent query. For example, consider:

```
SELECT *
FROM x, y,
```

```
(SELECT * FROM a, b, c WHERE something) AS ss  
WHERE somethingelse;
```

This situation might arise from use of a view that contains a join; the view's `SELECT` rule will be inserted in place of the view reference, yielding a query much like the above. Normally, the planner will try to collapse the subquery into the parent, yielding:

```
SELECT * FROM x, y, a, b, c WHERE something AND somethingelse;
```

This usually results in a better plan than planning the subquery separately. (For example, the outer `WHERE` conditions might be such that joining `X` to `A` first eliminates many rows of `A`, thus avoiding the need to form the full logical output of the subquery.) But at the same time, we have increased the planning time; here, we have a five-way join problem replacing two separate three-way join problems. Because of the exponential growth of the number of possibilities, this makes a big difference. The planner tries to avoid getting stuck in huge join search problems by not collapsing a subquery if more than `from_collapse_limit` `FROM` items would result in the parent query. You can trade off planning time against quality of plan by adjusting this run-time parameter up or down.

`from_collapse_limit` and `join_collapse_limit` are similarly named because they do almost the same thing: one controls when the planner will “flatten out” subqueries, and the other controls when it will flatten out explicit joins. Typically you would either set `join_collapse_limit` equal to `from_collapse_limit` (so that explicit joins and subqueries act similarly) or set `join_collapse_limit` to 1 (if you want to control join order with explicit joins). But you might set them differently if you are trying to fine-tune the trade-off between planning time and run time.

## 14.4. Populating a Database

One might need to insert a large amount of data when first populating a database. This section contains some suggestions on how to make this process as efficient as possible.

### 14.4.1. Disable Autocommit

When using multiple `INSERT`s, turn off autocommit and just do one commit at the end. (In plain SQL, this means issuing `BEGIN` at the start and `COMMIT` at the end. Some client libraries might do this behind your back, in which case you need to make sure the library does it when you want it done.) If you allow each insertion to be committed separately, PostgreSQL is doing a lot of work for each row that is added. An additional benefit of doing all insertions in one transaction is that if the insertion of one row were to fail then the insertion of all rows inserted up to that point would be rolled back, so you won't be stuck with partially loaded data.

### 14.4.2. Use COPY

Use `COPY` to load all the rows in one command, instead of using a series of `INSERT` commands. The `COPY` command is optimized for loading large numbers of rows; it is less flexible than `INSERT`, but incurs significantly less overhead for large data loads. Since `COPY` is a single command, there is no need to disable autocommit if you use this method to populate a table.

If you cannot use `COPY`, it might help to use `PREPARE` to create a prepared `INSERT` statement, and then use `EXECUTE` as many times as required. This avoids some of the overhead of repeatedly parsing and planning `INSERT`. Different interfaces provide this facility in different ways; look for “prepared statements” in the interface documentation.

Note that loading a large number of rows using `COPY` is almost always faster than using `INSERT`, even if `PREPARE` is used and multiple insertions are batched into a single transaction.

`COPY` is fastest when used within the same transaction as an earlier `CREATE TABLE` or `TRUNCATE` command. In such cases no WAL needs to be written, because in case of an error, the files contain-

ing the newly loaded data will be removed anyway. However, this consideration only applies when `wal_level` is `minimal` as all commands must write WAL otherwise.

### 14.4.3. Remove Indexes

If you are loading a freshly created table, the fastest method is to create the table, bulk load the table's data using `COPY`, then create any indexes needed for the table. Creating an index on pre-existing data is quicker than updating it incrementally as each row is loaded.

If you are adding large amounts of data to an existing table, it might be a win to drop the indexes, load the table, and then recreate the indexes. Of course, the database performance for other users might suffer during the time the indexes are missing. One should also think twice before dropping a unique index, since the error checking afforded by the unique constraint will be lost while the index is missing.

### 14.4.4. Remove Foreign Key Constraints

Just as with indexes, a foreign key constraint can be checked “in bulk” more efficiently than row-by-row. So it might be useful to drop foreign key constraints, load data, and re-create the constraints. Again, there is a trade-off between data load speed and loss of error checking while the constraint is missing.

What's more, when you load data into a table with existing foreign key constraints, each new row requires an entry in the server's list of pending trigger events (since it is the firing of a trigger that checks the row's foreign key constraint). Loading many millions of rows can cause the trigger event queue to overflow available memory, leading to intolerable swapping or even outright failure of the command. Therefore it may be *necessary*, not just desirable, to drop and re-apply foreign keys when loading large amounts of data. If temporarily removing the constraint isn't acceptable, the only other recourse may be to split up the load operation into smaller transactions.

### 14.4.5. Increase `maintenance_work_mem`

Temporarily increasing the `maintenance_work_mem` configuration variable when loading large amounts of data can lead to improved performance. This will help to speed up `CREATE INDEX` commands and `ALTER TABLE ADD FOREIGN KEY` commands. It won't do much for `COPY` itself, so this advice is only useful when you are using one or both of the above techniques.

### 14.4.6. Increase `max_wal_size`

Temporarily increasing the `max_wal_size` configuration variable can also make large data loads faster. This is because loading a large amount of data into PostgreSQL will cause checkpoints to occur more often than the normal checkpoint frequency (specified by the `checkpoint_timeout` configuration variable). Whenever a checkpoint occurs, all dirty pages must be flushed to disk. By increasing `max_wal_size` temporarily during bulk data loads, the number of checkpoints that are required can be reduced.

### 14.4.7. Disable WAL Archival and Streaming Replication

When loading large amounts of data into an installation that uses WAL archiving or streaming replication, it might be faster to take a new base backup after the load has completed than to process a large amount of incremental WAL data. To prevent incremental WAL logging while loading, disable archiving and streaming replication, by setting `wal_level` to `minimal`, `archive_mode` to `off`, and `max_wal_senders` to zero. But note that changing these settings requires a server restart, and makes any base backups taken before unavailable for archive recovery and standby server, which may lead to data loss.

Aside from avoiding the time for the archiver or WAL sender to process the WAL data, doing this will actually make certain commands faster, because they do not to write WAL at all if `wal_level` is `minimal` and the current subtransaction (or top-level transaction) created or truncated the table or index they change. (They can guarantee crash safety more cheaply by doing an `fsync` at the end than by writing WAL.)

## 14.4.8. Run `ANALYZE` Afterwards

Whenever you have significantly altered the distribution of data within a table, running `ANALYZE` is strongly recommended. This includes bulk loading large amounts of data into the table. Running `ANALYZE` (or `VACUUM ANALYZE`) ensures that the planner has up-to-date statistics about the table. With no statistics or obsolete statistics, the planner might make poor decisions during query planning, leading to poor performance on any tables with inaccurate or nonexistent statistics. Note that if the autovacuum daemon is enabled, it might run `ANALYZE` automatically; see Section 25.1.3 and Section 25.1.6 for more information.

## 14.4.9. Some Notes about `pg_dump`

Dump scripts generated by `pg_dump` automatically apply several, but not all, of the above guidelines. To restore a `pg_dump` dump as quickly as possible, you need to do a few extra things manually. (Note that these points apply while *restoring* a dump, not while *creating* it. The same points apply whether loading a text dump with `psql` or using `pg_restore` to load from a `pg_dump` archive file.)

By default, `pg_dump` uses `COPY`, and when it is generating a complete schema-and-data dump, it is careful to load data before creating indexes and foreign keys. So in this case several guidelines are handled automatically. What is left for you to do is to:

- Set appropriate (i.e., larger than normal) values for `maintenance_work_mem` and `max_wal_size`.
- If using WAL archiving or streaming replication, consider disabling them during the restore. To do that, set `archive_mode` to `off`, `wal_level` to `minimal`, and `max_wal_senders` to zero before loading the dump. Afterwards, set them back to the right values and take a fresh base backup.
- Experiment with the parallel dump and restore modes of both `pg_dump` and `pg_restore` and find the optimal number of concurrent jobs to use. Dumping and restoring in parallel by means of the `-j` option should give you a significantly higher performance over the serial mode.
- Consider whether the whole dump should be restored as a single transaction. To do that, pass the `-1` or `--single-transaction` command-line option to `psql` or `pg_restore`. When using this mode, even the smallest of errors will rollback the entire restore, possibly discarding many hours of processing. Depending on how interrelated the data is, that might seem preferable to manual cleanup, or not. `COPY` commands will run fastest if you use a single transaction and have WAL archiving turned off.
- If multiple CPUs are available in the database server, consider using `pg_restore`'s `--jobs` option. This allows concurrent data loading and index creation.
- Run `ANALYZE` afterwards.

A data-only dump will still use `COPY`, but it does not drop or recreate indexes, and it does not normally touch foreign keys.<sup>1</sup> So when loading a data-only dump, it is up to you to drop and recreate indexes and foreign keys if you wish to use those techniques. It's still useful to increase `max_wal_size` while loading the data, but don't bother increasing `maintenance_work_mem`; rather, you'd do that while manually recreating indexes and foreign keys afterwards. And don't forget to `ANALYZE` when you're done; see Section 25.1.3 and Section 25.1.6 for more information.

---

<sup>1</sup> You can get the effect of disabling foreign keys by using the `--disable-triggers` option — but realize that that eliminates, rather than just postpones, foreign key validation, and so it is possible to insert bad data if you use it.

## 14.5. Non-Durable Settings

Durability is a database feature that guarantees the recording of committed transactions even if the server crashes or loses power. However, durability adds significant database overhead, so if your site does not require such a guarantee, PostgreSQL can be configured to run much faster. The following are configuration changes you can make to improve performance in such cases. Except as noted below, durability is still guaranteed in case of a crash of the database software; only an abrupt operating system crash creates a risk of data loss or corruption when these settings are used.

- Place the database cluster's data directory in a memory-backed file system (i.e., RAM disk). This eliminates all database disk I/O, but limits data storage to the amount of available memory (and perhaps swap).
- Turn off `fsync`; there is no need to flush data to disk.
- Turn off `synchronous_commit`; there might be no need to force WAL writes to disk on every commit. This setting does risk transaction loss (though not data corruption) in case of a crash of the *database*.
- Turn off `full_page_writes`; there is no need to guard against partial page writes.
- Increase `max_wal_size` and `checkpoint_timeout`; this reduces the frequency of checkpoints, but increases the storage requirements of `/pg_wal`.
- Create unlogged tables to avoid WAL writes, though it makes the tables non-crash-safe.



---

# Chapter 15. Parallel Query

PostgreSQL can devise query plans that can leverage multiple CPUs in order to answer queries faster. This feature is known as parallel query. Many queries cannot benefit from parallel query, either due to limitations of the current implementation or because there is no imaginable query plan that is any faster than the serial query plan. However, for queries that can benefit, the speedup from parallel query is often very significant. Many queries can run more than twice as fast when using parallel query, and some queries can run four times faster or even more. Queries that touch a large amount of data but return only a few rows to the user will typically benefit most. This chapter explains some details of how parallel query works and in which situations it can be used so that users who wish to make use of it can understand what to expect.

## 15.1. How Parallel Query Works

When the optimizer determines that parallel query is the fastest execution strategy for a particular query, it will create a query plan that includes a *Gather* or *Gather Merge* node. Here is a simple example:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM pgbench_accounts WHERE filler LIKE '%x%';
                                QUERY PLAN
-----
Gather  (cost=1000.00..217018.43 rows=1 width=97)
  Workers Planned: 2
    -> Parallel Seq Scan on pgbench_accounts  (cost=0.00..216018.33
        rows=1 width=97)
        Filter: (filler ~~ '%x%'::text)
(4 rows)
```

In all cases, the *Gather* or *Gather Merge* node will have exactly one child plan, which is the portion of the plan that will be executed in parallel. If the *Gather* or *Gather Merge* node is at the very top of the plan tree, then the entire query will execute in parallel. If it is somewhere else in the plan tree, then only the portion of the plan below it will run in parallel. In the example above, the query accesses only one table, so there is only one plan node other than the *Gather* node itself; since that plan node is a child of the *Gather* node, it will run in parallel.

Using `EXPLAIN`, you can see the number of workers chosen by the planner. When the *Gather* node is reached during query execution, the process that is implementing the user's session will request a number of background worker processes equal to the number of workers chosen by the planner. The number of background workers that the planner will consider using is limited to at most `max_parallel_workers_per_gather`. The total number of background workers that can exist at any one time is limited by both `max_worker_processes` and `max_parallel_workers`. Therefore, it is possible for a parallel query to run with fewer workers than planned, or even with no workers at all. The optimal plan may depend on the number of workers that are available, so this can result in poor query performance. If this occurrence is frequent, consider increasing `max_worker_processes` and `max_parallel_workers` so that more workers can be run simultaneously or alternatively reducing `max_parallel_workers_per_gather` so that the planner requests fewer workers.

Every background worker process that is successfully started for a given parallel query will execute the parallel portion of the plan. The leader will also execute that portion of the plan, but it has an additional responsibility: it must also read all of the tuples generated by the workers. When the parallel portion of the plan generates only a small number of tuples, the leader will often behave very much like an additional worker, speeding up query execution. Conversely, when the parallel portion of the plan generates a large number of tuples, the leader may be almost entirely occupied with reading the tuples generated by the workers and performing any further processing steps that are required by plan

nodes above the level of the `Gather` node or `Gather Merge` node. In such cases, the leader will do very little of the work of executing the parallel portion of the plan.

When the node at the top of the parallel portion of the plan is `Gather Merge` rather than `Gather`, it indicates that each process executing the parallel portion of the plan is producing tuples in sorted order, and that the leader is performing an order-preserving merge. In contrast, `Gather` reads tuples from the workers in whatever order is convenient, destroying any sort order that may have existed.

## 15.2. When Can Parallel Query Be Used?

There are several settings that can cause the query planner not to generate a parallel query plan under any circumstances. In order for any parallel query plans whatsoever to be generated, the following settings must be configured as indicated.

- `max_parallel_workers_per_gather` must be set to a value that is greater than zero. This is a special case of the more general principle that no more workers should be used than the number configured via `max_parallel_workers_per_gather`.

In addition, the system must not be running in single-user mode. Since the entire database system is running as a single process in this situation, no background workers will be available.

Even when it is in general possible for parallel query plans to be generated, the planner will not generate them for a given query if any of the following are true:

- The query writes any data or locks any database rows. If a query contains a data-modifying operation either at the top level or within a CTE, no parallel plans for that query will be generated. As an exception, the following commands, which create a new table and populate it, can use a parallel plan for the underlying `SELECT` part of the query:
  - `CREATE TABLE ... AS`
  - `SELECT INTO`
  - `CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW`
  - `REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW`
- The query might be suspended during execution. In any situation in which the system thinks that partial or incremental execution might occur, no parallel plan is generated. For example, a cursor created using `DECLARE CURSOR` will never use a parallel plan. Similarly, a PL/pgSQL loop of the form `FOR x IN query LOOP ... END LOOP` will never use a parallel plan, because the parallel query system is unable to verify that the code in the loop is safe to execute while parallel query is active.
- The query uses any function marked `PARALLEL UNSAFE`. Most system-defined functions are `PARALLEL SAFE`, but user-defined functions are marked `PARALLEL UNSAFE` by default. See the discussion of Section 15.4.
- The query is running inside of another query that is already parallel. For example, if a function called by a parallel query issues an SQL query itself, that query will never use a parallel plan. This is a limitation of the current implementation, but it may not be desirable to remove this limitation, since it could result in a single query using a very large number of processes.

Even when parallel query plan is generated for a particular query, there are several circumstances under which it will be impossible to execute that plan in parallel at execution time. If this occurs, the leader will execute the portion of the plan below the `Gather` node entirely by itself, almost as if the `Gather` node were not present. This will happen if any of the following conditions are met:

- No background workers can be obtained because of the limitation that the total number of background workers cannot exceed `max_worker_processes`.

- No background workers can be obtained because of the limitation that the total number of background workers launched for purposes of parallel query cannot exceed `max_parallel_workers`.
- The client sends an Execute message with a non-zero fetch count. See the discussion of the extended query protocol. Since libpq currently provides no way to send such a message, this can only occur when using a client that does not rely on libpq. If this is a frequent occurrence, it may be a good idea to set `max_parallel_workers_per_gather` to zero in sessions where it is likely, so as to avoid generating query plans that may be suboptimal when run serially.

## 15.3. Parallel Plans

Because each worker executes the parallel portion of the plan to completion, it is not possible to simply take an ordinary query plan and run it using multiple workers. Each worker would produce a full copy of the output result set, so the query would not run any faster than normal but would produce incorrect results. Instead, the parallel portion of the plan must be what is known internally to the query optimizer as a *partial plan*; that is, it must be constructed so that each process that executes the plan will generate only a subset of the output rows in such a way that each required output row is guaranteed to be generated by exactly one of the cooperating processes. Generally, this means that the scan on the driving table of the query must be a parallel-aware scan.

### 15.3.1. Parallel Scans

The following types of parallel-aware table scans are currently supported.

- In a *parallel sequential scan*, the table's blocks will be divided into ranges and shared among the cooperating processes. Each worker process will complete the scanning of its given range of blocks before requesting an additional range of blocks.
- In a *parallel bitmap heap scan*, one process is chosen as the leader. That process performs a scan of one or more indexes and builds a bitmap indicating which table blocks need to be visited. These blocks are then divided among the cooperating processes as in a parallel sequential scan. In other words, the heap scan is performed in parallel, but the underlying index scan is not.
- In a *parallel index scan* or *parallel index-only scan*, the cooperating processes take turns reading data from the index. Currently, parallel index scans are supported only for btree indexes. Each process will claim a single index block and will scan and return all tuples referenced by that block; other processes can at the same time be returning tuples from a different index block. The results of a parallel btree scan are returned in sorted order within each worker process.

Other scan types, such as scans of non-btree indexes, may support parallel scans in the future.

### 15.3.2. Parallel Joins

Just as in a non-parallel plan, the driving table may be joined to one or more other tables using a nested loop, hash join, or merge join. The inner side of the join may be any kind of non-parallel plan that is otherwise supported by the planner provided that it is safe to run within a parallel worker. Depending on the join type, the inner side may also be a parallel plan.

- In a *nested loop join*, the inner side is always non-parallel. Although it is executed in full, this is efficient if the inner side is an index scan, because the outer tuples and thus the loops that look up values in the index are divided over the cooperating processes.
- In a *merge join*, the inner side is always a non-parallel plan and therefore executed in full. This may be inefficient, especially if a sort must be performed, because the work and resulting data are duplicated in every cooperating process.
- In a *hash join* (without the "parallel" prefix), the inner side is executed in full by every cooperating process to build identical copies of the hash table. This may be inefficient if the hash table is large

or the plan is expensive. In a *parallel hash join*, the inner side is a *parallel hash* that divides the work of building a shared hash table over the cooperating processes.

### 15.3.3. Parallel Aggregation

PostgreSQL supports parallel aggregation by aggregating in two stages. First, each process participating in the parallel portion of the query performs an aggregation step, producing a partial result for each group of which that process is aware. This is reflected in the plan as a `Partial Aggregate` node. Second, the partial results are transferred to the leader via `Gather` or `Gather Merge`. Finally, the leader re-aggregates the results across all workers in order to produce the final result. This is reflected in the plan as a `Finalize Aggregate` node.

Because the `Finalize Aggregate` node runs on the leader process, queries that produce a relatively large number of groups in comparison to the number of input rows will appear less favorable to the query planner. For example, in the worst-case scenario the number of groups seen by the `Finalize Aggregate` node could be as many as the number of input rows that were seen by all worker processes in the `Partial Aggregate` stage. For such cases, there is clearly going to be no performance benefit to using parallel aggregation. The query planner takes this into account during the planning process and is unlikely to choose parallel aggregate in this scenario.

Parallel aggregation is not supported in all situations. Each aggregate must be safe for parallelism and must have a combine function. If the aggregate has a transition state of type `internal`, it must have serialization and deserialization functions. See `CREATE AGGREGATE` for more details. Parallel aggregation is not supported if any aggregate function call contains `DISTINCT` or `ORDER BY` clause and is also not supported for ordered set aggregates or when the query involves `GROUPING SETS`. It can only be used when all joins involved in the query are also part of the parallel portion of the plan.

### 15.3.4. Parallel Append

Whenever PostgreSQL needs to combine rows from multiple sources into a single result set, it uses an `Append` or `MergeAppend` plan node. This commonly happens when implementing `UNION ALL` or when scanning a partitioned table. Such nodes can be used in parallel plans just as they can in any other plan. However, in a parallel plan, the planner may instead use a `Parallel Append` node.

When an `Append` node is used in a parallel plan, each process will execute the child plans in the order in which they appear, so that all participating processes cooperate to execute the first child plan until it is complete and then move to the second plan at around the same time. When a `Parallel Append` is used instead, the executor will instead spread out the participating processes as evenly as possible across its child plans, so that multiple child plans are executed simultaneously. This avoids contention, and also avoids paying the startup cost of a child plan in those processes that never execute it.

Also, unlike a regular `Append` node, which can only have partial children when used within a parallel plan, a `Parallel Append` node can have both partial and non-partial child plans. Non-partial children will be scanned by only a single process, since scanning them more than once would produce duplicate results. Plans that involve appending multiple results sets can therefore achieve coarse-grained parallelism even when efficient partial plans are not available. For example, consider a query against a partitioned table that can only be implemented efficiently by using an index that does not support parallel scans. The planner might choose a `Parallel Append` of regular `Index Scan` plans; each individual index scan would have to be executed to completion by a single process, but different scans could be performed at the same time by different processes.

`enable_parallel_append` can be used to disable this feature.

### 15.3.5. Parallel Plan Tips

If a query that is expected to do so does not produce a parallel plan, you can try reducing `parallel_setup_cost` or `parallel_tuple_cost`. Of course, this plan may turn out to be slower than the serial plan that the planner preferred, but this will not always be the case. If you don't get a parallel plan even with very

small values of these settings (e.g., after setting them both to zero), there may be some reason why the query planner is unable to generate a parallel plan for your query. See Section 15.2 and Section 15.4 for information on why this may be the case.

When executing a parallel plan, you can use `EXPLAIN (ANALYZE, VERBOSE)` to display per-worker statistics for each plan node. This may be useful in determining whether the work is being evenly distributed between all plan nodes and more generally in understanding the performance characteristics of the plan.

## 15.4. Parallel Safety

The planner classifies operations involved in a query as either *parallel safe*, *parallel restricted*, or *parallel unsafe*. A parallel safe operation is one that does not conflict with the use of parallel query. A parallel restricted operation is one that cannot be performed in a parallel worker, but that can be performed in the leader while parallel query is in use. Therefore, parallel restricted operations can never occur below a `Gather` or `Gather Merge` node, but can occur elsewhere in a plan that contains such a node. A parallel unsafe operation is one that cannot be performed while parallel query is in use, not even in the leader. When a query contains anything that is parallel unsafe, parallel query is completely disabled for that query.

The following operations are always parallel restricted:

- Scans of common table expressions (CTEs).
- Scans of temporary tables.
- Scans of foreign tables, unless the foreign data wrapper has an `IsForeignScanParallelSafe` API that indicates otherwise.
- Plan nodes to which an `InitPlan` is attached.
- Plan nodes that reference a correlated `SubPlan`.

### 15.4.1. Parallel Labeling for Functions and Aggregates

The planner cannot automatically determine whether a user-defined function or aggregate is parallel safe, parallel restricted, or parallel unsafe, because this would require predicting every operation that the function could possibly perform. In general, this is equivalent to the Halting Problem and therefore impossible. Even for simple functions where it could conceivably be done, we do not try, since this would be expensive and error-prone. Instead, all user-defined functions are assumed to be parallel unsafe unless otherwise marked. When using `CREATE FUNCTION` or `ALTER FUNCTION`, markings can be set by specifying `PARALLEL SAFE`, `PARALLEL RESTRICTED`, or `PARALLEL UNSAFE` as appropriate. When using `CREATE AGGREGATE`, the `PARALLEL` option can be specified with `SAFE`, `RESTRICTED`, or `UNSAFE` as the corresponding value.

Functions and aggregates must be marked `PARALLEL UNSAFE` if they write to the database, access sequences, change the transaction state even temporarily (e.g., a PL/pgSQL function that establishes an `EXCEPTION` block to catch errors), or make persistent changes to settings. Similarly, functions must be marked `PARALLEL RESTRICTED` if they access temporary tables, client connection state, cursors, prepared statements, or miscellaneous backend-local state that the system cannot synchronize across workers. For example, `setseed` and `random` are parallel restricted for this last reason.

In general, if a function is labeled as being safe when it is restricted or unsafe, or if it is labeled as being restricted when it is in fact unsafe, it may throw errors or produce wrong answers when used in a parallel query. C-language functions could in theory exhibit totally undefined behavior if mislabeled, since there is no way for the system to protect itself against arbitrary C code, but in most likely cases the result will be no worse than for any other function. If in doubt, it is probably best to label functions as `UNSAFE`.

If a function executed within a parallel worker acquires locks that are not held by the leader, for example by querying a table not referenced in the query, those locks will be released at worker exit, not end of transaction. If you write a function that does this, and this behavior difference is important to you, mark such functions as `PARALLEL RESTRICTED` to ensure that they execute only in the leader.

Note that the query planner does not consider deferring the evaluation of parallel-restricted functions or aggregates involved in the query in order to obtain a superior plan. So, for example, if a `WHERE` clause applied to a particular table is parallel restricted, the query planner will not consider performing a scan of that table in the parallel portion of a plan. In some cases, it would be possible (and perhaps even efficient) to include the scan of that table in the parallel portion of the query and defer the evaluation of the `WHERE` clause so that it happens above the `Gather` node. However, the planner does not do this.

---

# Part III. Server Administration

This part covers topics that are of interest to a PostgreSQL database administrator. This includes installation of the software, set up and configuration of the server, management of users and databases, and maintenance tasks. Anyone who runs a PostgreSQL server, even for personal use, but especially in production, should be familiar with the topics covered in this part.

The information in this part is arranged approximately in the order in which a new user should read it. But the chapters are self-contained and can be read individually as desired. The information in this part is presented in a narrative fashion in topical units. Readers looking for a complete description of a particular command should see Part VI.

The first few chapters are written so they can be understood without prerequisite knowledge, so new users who need to set up their own server can begin their exploration with this part. The rest of this part is about tuning and management; that material assumes that the reader is familiar with the general use of the PostgreSQL database system. Readers are encouraged to look at Part I and Part II for additional information.

---

---

## Table of Contents

16. Installation from Binaries .....	538
17. Installation from Source Code .....	539
17.1. Requirements .....	539
17.2. Getting the Source .....	541
17.3. Building and Installation with Autoconf and Make .....	541
17.3.1. Short Version .....	541
17.3.2. Installation Procedure .....	541
17.3.3. configure Options .....	544
17.3.4. configure Environment Variables .....	551
17.4. Building and Installation with Meson .....	554
17.4.1. Short Version .....	554
17.4.2. Installation Procedure .....	554
17.4.3. meson setup Options .....	556
17.5. Post-Installation Setup .....	563
17.5.1. Shared Libraries .....	563
17.5.2. Environment Variables .....	564
17.6. Supported Platforms .....	565
17.7. Platform-Specific Notes .....	565
17.7.1. AIX .....	565
17.7.2. Cygwin .....	566
17.7.3. macOS .....	567
17.7.4. MinGW/Native Windows .....	568
17.7.5. Solaris .....	568
18. Installation from Source Code on Windows .....	570
18.1. Building with Visual C++ or the Microsoft Windows SDK .....	570
18.1.1. Requirements .....	571
18.1.2. Special Considerations for 64-Bit Windows .....	572
18.1.3. Building .....	573
18.1.4. Cleaning and Installing .....	573
18.1.5. Running the Regression Tests .....	574
19. Server Setup and Operation .....	576
19.1. The PostgreSQL User Account .....	576
19.2. Creating a Database Cluster .....	576
19.2.1. Use of Secondary File Systems .....	578
19.2.2. File Systems .....	578
19.3. Starting the Database Server .....	578
19.3.1. Server Start-up Failures .....	580
19.3.2. Client Connection Problems .....	581
19.4. Managing Kernel Resources .....	582
19.4.1. Shared Memory and Semaphores .....	582
19.4.2. systemd RemoveIPC .....	586
19.4.3. Resource Limits .....	587
19.4.4. Linux Memory Overcommit .....	588
19.4.5. Linux Huge Pages .....	589
19.5. Shutting Down the Server .....	590
19.6. Upgrading a PostgreSQL Cluster .....	590
19.6.1. Upgrading Data via pg_dumpall .....	591
19.6.2. Upgrading Data via pg_upgrade .....	593
19.6.3. Upgrading Data via Replication .....	593
19.7. Preventing Server Spoofing .....	593
19.8. Encryption Options .....	594
19.9. Secure TCP/IP Connections with SSL .....	595
19.9.1. Basic Setup .....	595
19.9.2. OpenSSL Configuration .....	596
19.9.3. Using Client Certificates .....	596



19.9.4. SSL Server File Usage .....	597
19.9.5. Creating Certificates .....	597
19.10. Secure TCP/IP Connections with GSSAPI Encryption .....	599
19.10.1. Basic Setup .....	599
19.11. Secure TCP/IP Connections with SSH Tunnels .....	599
19.12. Registering Event Log on Windows .....	600
20. Server Configuration .....	602
20.1. Setting Parameters .....	602
20.1.1. Parameter Names and Values .....	602
20.1.2. Parameter Interaction via the Configuration File .....	602
20.1.3. Parameter Interaction via SQL .....	603
20.1.4. Parameter Interaction via the Shell .....	604
20.1.5. Managing Configuration File Contents .....	604
20.2. File Locations .....	606
20.3. Connections and Authentication .....	607
20.3.1. Connection Settings .....	607
20.3.2. TCP Settings .....	609
20.3.3. Authentication .....	610
20.3.4. SSL .....	611
20.4. Resource Consumption .....	614
20.4.1. Memory .....	614
20.4.2. Disk .....	617
20.4.3. Kernel Resource Usage .....	618
20.4.4. Cost-based Vacuum Delay .....	618
20.4.5. Background Writer .....	619
20.4.6. Asynchronous Behavior .....	620
20.5. Write Ahead Log .....	622
20.5.1. Settings .....	622
20.5.2. Checkpoints .....	627
20.5.3. Archiving .....	628
20.5.4. Recovery .....	629
20.5.5. Archive Recovery .....	629
20.5.6. Recovery Target .....	631
20.6. Replication .....	632
20.6.1. Sending Servers .....	633
20.6.2. Primary Server .....	634
20.6.3. Standby Servers .....	635
20.6.4. Subscribers .....	638
20.7. Query Planning .....	639
20.7.1. Planner Method Configuration .....	639
20.7.2. Planner Cost Constants .....	641
20.7.3. Genetic Query Optimizer .....	643
20.7.4. Other Planner Options .....	644
20.8. Error Reporting and Logging .....	646
20.8.1. Where to Log .....	646
20.8.2. When to Log .....	649
20.8.3. What to Log .....	652
20.8.4. Using CSV-Format Log Output .....	657
20.8.5. Using JSON-Format Log Output .....	658
20.8.6. Process Title .....	659
20.9. Run-time Statistics .....	659
20.9.1. Cumulative Query and Index Statistics .....	659
20.9.2. Statistics Monitoring .....	661
20.10. Automatic Vacuuming .....	661
20.11. Client Connection Defaults .....	663
20.11.1. Statement Behavior .....	663
20.11.2. Locale and Formatting .....	669
20.11.3. Shared Library Preloading .....	671

20.11.4. Other Defaults .....	673
20.12. Lock Management .....	674
20.13. Version and Platform Compatibility .....	675
20.13.1. Previous PostgreSQL Versions .....	675
20.13.2. Platform and Client Compatibility .....	676
20.14. Error Handling .....	676
20.15. Preset Options .....	677
20.16. Customized Options .....	679
20.17. Developer Options .....	679
20.18. Short Options .....	685
21. Client Authentication .....	686
21.1. The <code>pg_hba.conf</code> File .....	686
21.2. User Name Maps .....	695
21.3. Authentication Methods .....	697
21.4. Trust Authentication .....	697
21.5. Password Authentication .....	698
21.6. GSSAPI Authentication .....	699
21.7. SSPI Authentication .....	700
21.8. Ident Authentication .....	701
21.9. Peer Authentication .....	702
21.10. LDAP Authentication .....	702
21.11. RADIUS Authentication .....	705
21.12. Certificate Authentication .....	706
21.13. PAM Authentication .....	706
21.14. BSD Authentication .....	707
21.15. Authentication Problems .....	707
22. Database Roles .....	709
22.1. Database Roles .....	709
22.2. Role Attributes .....	710
22.3. Role Membership .....	712
22.4. Dropping Roles .....	713
22.5. Predefined Roles .....	714
22.6. Function Security .....	716
23. Managing Databases .....	717
23.1. Overview .....	717
23.2. Creating a Database .....	717
23.3. Template Databases .....	718
23.4. Database Configuration .....	720
23.5. Destroying a Database .....	720
23.6. Tablespaces .....	720
24. Localization .....	723
24.1. Locale Support .....	723
24.1.1. Overview .....	723
24.1.2. Behavior .....	724
24.1.3. Selecting Locales .....	725
24.1.4. Locale Providers .....	725
24.1.5. ICU Locales .....	725
24.1.6. Problems .....	727
24.2. Collation Support .....	727
24.2.1. Concepts .....	727
24.2.2. Managing Collations .....	729
24.2.3. ICU Custom Collations .....	733
24.3. Character Set Support .....	737
24.3.1. Supported Character Sets .....	737
24.3.2. Setting the Character Set .....	739
24.3.3. Automatic Character Set Conversion Between Server and Client .....	741
24.3.4. Available Character Set Conversions .....	742
24.3.5. Further Reading .....	746

25. Routine Database Maintenance Tasks .....	747
25.1. Routine Vacuuming .....	747
25.1.1. Vacuuming Basics .....	747
25.1.2. Recovering Disk Space .....	748
25.1.3. Updating Planner Statistics .....	749
25.1.4. Updating the Visibility Map .....	750
25.1.5. Preventing Transaction ID Wraparound Failures .....	750
25.1.6. The Autovacuum Daemon .....	754
25.2. Routine Reindexing .....	756
25.3. Log File Maintenance .....	757
26. Backup and Restore .....	759
26.1. SQL Dump .....	759
26.1.1. Restoring the Dump .....	760
26.1.2. Using pg_dumpall .....	760
26.1.3. Handling Large Databases .....	761
26.2. File System Level Backup .....	762
26.3. Continuous Archiving and Point-in-Time Recovery (PITR) .....	763
26.3.1. Setting Up WAL Archiving .....	764
26.3.2. Making a Base Backup .....	766
26.3.3. Making a Base Backup Using the Low Level API .....	767
26.3.4. Recovering Using a Continuous Archive Backup .....	769
26.3.5. Timelines .....	771
26.3.6. Tips and Examples .....	771
26.3.7. Caveats .....	772
27. High Availability, Load Balancing, and Replication .....	774
27.1. Comparison of Different Solutions .....	774
27.2. Log-Shipping Standby Servers .....	777
27.2.1. Planning .....	778
27.2.2. Standby Server Operation .....	778
27.2.3. Preparing the Primary for Standby Servers .....	779
27.2.4. Setting Up a Standby Server .....	779
27.2.5. Streaming Replication .....	779
27.2.6. Replication Slots .....	781
27.2.7. Cascading Replication .....	782
27.2.8. Synchronous Replication .....	782
27.2.9. Continuous Archiving in Standby .....	785
27.3. Failover .....	786
27.4. Hot Standby .....	786
27.4.1. User's Overview .....	787
27.4.2. Handling Query Conflicts .....	788
27.4.3. Administrator's Overview .....	790
27.4.4. Hot Standby Parameter Reference .....	793
27.4.5. Caveats .....	793
28. Monitoring Database Activity .....	795
28.1. Standard Unix Tools .....	795
28.2. The Cumulative Statistics System .....	796
28.2.1. Statistics Collection Configuration .....	796
28.2.2. Viewing Statistics .....	797
28.2.3. pg_stat_activity .....	800
28.2.4. pg_stat_replication .....	814
28.2.5. pg_stat_replication_slots .....	816
28.2.6. pg_stat_wal_receiver .....	817
28.2.7. pg_stat_recovery_prefetch .....	818
28.2.8. pg_stat_subscription .....	818
28.2.9. pg_stat_subscription_stats .....	819
28.2.10. pg_stat_ssl .....	819
28.2.11. pg_stat_gssapi .....	820
28.2.12. pg_stat_archiver .....	820

28.2.13.	pg_stat_io .....	821
28.2.14.	pg_stat_bgwriter .....	823
28.2.15.	pg_stat_wal .....	824
28.2.16.	pg_stat_database .....	825
28.2.17.	pg_stat_database_conflicts .....	826
28.2.18.	pg_stat_all_tables .....	827
28.2.19.	pg_stat_all_indexes .....	828
28.2.20.	pg_statio_all_tables .....	829
28.2.21.	pg_statio_all_indexes .....	830
28.2.22.	pg_statio_all_sequences .....	831
28.2.23.	pg_stat_user_functions .....	831
28.2.24.	pg_stat_slru .....	831
28.2.25.	Statistics Functions .....	832
28.3.	Viewing Locks .....	835
28.4.	Progress Reporting .....	835
28.4.1.	ANALYZE Progress Reporting .....	835
28.4.2.	CLUSTER Progress Reporting .....	837
28.4.3.	COPY Progress Reporting .....	838
28.4.4.	CREATE INDEX Progress Reporting .....	839
28.4.5.	VACUUM Progress Reporting .....	840
28.4.6.	Base Backup Progress Reporting .....	842
28.5.	Dynamic Tracing .....	843
28.5.1.	Compiling for Dynamic Tracing .....	843
28.5.2.	Built-in Probes .....	843
28.5.3.	Using Probes .....	850
28.5.4.	Defining New Probes .....	851
29.	Monitoring Disk Usage .....	853
29.1.	Determining Disk Usage .....	853
29.2.	Disk Full Failure .....	854
30.	Reliability and the Write-Ahead Log .....	855
30.1.	Reliability .....	855
30.2.	Data Checksums .....	857
30.2.1.	Off-line Enabling of Checksums .....	857
30.3.	Write-Ahead Logging (WAL) .....	857
30.4.	Asynchronous Commit .....	858
30.5.	WAL Configuration .....	859
30.6.	WAL Internals .....	862
31.	Logical Replication .....	864
31.1.	Publication .....	864
31.2.	Subscription .....	865
31.2.1.	Replication Slot Management .....	866
31.2.2.	Examples: Set Up Logical Replication .....	866
31.2.3.	Examples: Deferred Replication Slot Creation .....	869
31.3.	Row Filters .....	871
31.3.1.	Row Filter Rules .....	872
31.3.2.	Expression Restrictions .....	872
31.3.3.	UPDATE Transformations .....	872
31.3.4.	Partitioned Tables .....	872
31.3.5.	Initial Data Synchronization .....	872
31.3.6.	Combining Multiple Row Filters .....	873
31.3.7.	Examples .....	873
31.4.	Column Lists .....	879
31.4.1.	Examples .....	880
31.5.	Conflicts .....	882
31.6.	Restrictions .....	882
31.7.	Architecture .....	883
31.7.1.	Initial Snapshot .....	884
31.8.	Monitoring .....	884

31.9. Security .....	884
31.10. Configuration Settings .....	885
31.10.1. Publishers .....	885
31.10.2. Subscribers .....	885
31.11. Quick Setup .....	886
32. Just-in-Time Compilation (JIT) .....	887
32.1. What Is JIT compilation? .....	887
32.1.1. JIT Accelerated Operations .....	887
32.1.2. Inlining .....	887
32.1.3. Optimization .....	887
32.2. When to JIT? .....	887
32.3. Configuration .....	889
32.4. Extensibility .....	889
32.4.1. Inlining Support for Extensions .....	889
32.4.2. Pluggable JIT Providers .....	889
33. Regression Tests .....	890
33.1. Running the Tests .....	890
33.1.1. Running the Tests Against a Temporary Installation .....	890
33.1.2. Running the Tests Against an Existing Installation .....	891
33.1.3. Additional Test Suites .....	891
33.1.4. Locale and Encoding .....	893
33.1.5. Custom Server Settings .....	893
33.1.6. Extra Tests .....	893
33.2. Test Evaluation .....	894
33.2.1. Error Message Differences .....	894
33.2.2. Locale Differences .....	894
33.2.3. Date and Time Differences .....	895
33.2.4. Floating-Point Differences .....	895
33.2.5. Row Ordering Differences .....	895
33.2.6. Insufficient Stack Depth .....	895
33.2.7. The “random” Test .....	896
33.2.8. Configuration Parameters .....	896
33.3. Variant Comparison Files .....	896
33.4. TAP Tests .....	897
33.4.1. Environment Variables .....	897
33.5. Test Coverage Examination .....	898
33.5.1. Coverage with Autoconf and Make .....	898
33.5.2. Coverage with Meson .....	898

---

# Chapter 16. Installation from Binaries

PostgreSQL is available in the form of binary packages for most common operating systems today. When available, this is the recommended way to install PostgreSQL for users of the system. Building from source (see Chapter 17) is only recommended for people developing PostgreSQL or extensions.

For an updated list of platforms providing binary packages, please visit the download section on the PostgreSQL website at <https://www.postgresql.org/download/> and follow the instructions for the specific platform.

---

# Chapter 17. Installation from Source Code

This chapter describes the installation of PostgreSQL using the source code distribution. If you are installing a pre-packaged distribution, such as an RPM or Debian package, ignore this chapter and see Chapter 16 instead.

If you are building PostgreSQL for Microsoft Windows, read this chapter if you intend to build with MinGW or Cygwin; but if you intend to build with Microsoft's Visual C++, see Chapter 18 instead.

## 17.1. Requirements

In general, a modern Unix-compatible platform should be able to run PostgreSQL. The platforms that had received specific testing at the time of release are described in Section 17.6 below.

The following software packages are required for building PostgreSQL:

- GNU make version 3.81 or newer is required; other make programs or older GNU make versions will *not* work. (GNU make is sometimes installed under the name `gmake`.) To test for GNU make enter:

```
make --version
```

- Alternatively, PostgreSQL can be built using Meson<sup>1</sup>. This is currently experimental and only works when building from a Git checkout (not from a distribution tarball). If you choose to use Meson, then you don't need GNU make, but the other requirements below still apply.

The minimum required version of Meson is 0.54.

- You need an ISO/ANSI C compiler (at least C99-compliant). Recent versions of GCC are recommended, but PostgreSQL is known to build using a wide variety of compilers from different vendors.
- tar is required to unpack the source distribution, in addition to either `gzip` or `bzip2`.
- The GNU Readline library is used by default. It allows `psql` (the PostgreSQL command line SQL interpreter) to remember each command you type, and allows you to use arrow keys to recall and edit previous commands. This is very helpful and is strongly recommended. If you don't want to use it then you must specify the `--without-readline` option to `configure`. As an alternative, you can often use the BSD-licensed `libedit` library, originally developed on NetBSD. The `libedit` library is GNU Readline-compatible and is used if `libreadline` is not found, or if `--with-libedit-preferred` is used as an option to `configure`. If you are using a package-based Linux distribution, be aware that you need both the `readline` and `readline-devel` packages, if those are separate in your distribution.
- The `zlib` compression library is used by default. If you don't want to use it then you must specify the `--without-zlib` option to `configure`. Using this option disables support for compressed archives in `pg_dump` and `pg_restore`.
- The ICU locale provider (see Section 24.1.4) is used by default. If you don't want to use it then you must specify the `--without-icu` option to `configure`. Using this option disables support for ICU collation features (see Section 24.2).

ICU support requires the ICU4C package to be installed. The minimum required version of ICU4C is currently 4.2.

---

<sup>1</sup> <https://mesonbuild.com/>

By default, pkg-config will be used to find the required compilation options. This is supported for ICU4C version 4.6 and later. For older versions, or if pkg-config is not available, the variables ICU\_CFLAGS and ICU\_LIBS can be specified to configure, like in this example:

```
./configure ... ICU_CFLAGS='-I/some/where/include' ICU_LIBS='-L/some/where/lib -licui18n -licuuc -licudata'
```

(If ICU4C is in the default search path for the compiler, then you still need to specify nonempty strings in order to avoid use of pkg-config, for example, ICU\_CFLAGS=' '.)

The following packages are optional. They are not required in the default configuration, but they are needed when certain build options are enabled, as explained below:

- To build the server programming language PL/Perl you need a full Perl installation, including the `libperl` library and the header files. The minimum required version is Perl 5.14. Since PL/Perl will be a shared library, the `libperl` library must be a shared library also on most platforms. This appears to be the default in recent Perl versions, but it was not in earlier versions, and in any case it is the choice of whomever installed Perl at your site. `configure` will fail if building PL/Perl is selected but it cannot find a shared `libperl`. In that case, you will have to rebuild and install Perl manually to be able to build PL/Perl. During the configuration process for Perl, request a shared library.

If you intend to make more than incidental use of PL/Perl, you should ensure that the Perl installation was built with the `usemultiplicity` option enabled (`perl -V` will show whether this is the case).

- To build the PL/Python server programming language, you need a Python installation with the header files and the `sysconfig` module. The minimum required version is Python 3.2.

Since PL/Python will be a shared library, the `libpython` library must be a shared library also on most platforms. This is not the case in a default Python installation built from source, but a shared library is available in many operating system distributions. `configure` will fail if building PL/Python is selected but it cannot find a shared `libpython`. That might mean that you either have to install additional packages or rebuild (part of) your Python installation to provide this shared library. When building from source, run Python's `configure` with the `--enable-shared` flag.

- To build the PL/Tcl procedural language, you of course need a Tcl installation. The minimum required version is Tcl 8.4.
- To enable Native Language Support (NLS), that is, the ability to display a program's messages in a language other than English, you need an implementation of the Gettext API. Some operating systems have this built-in (e.g., Linux, NetBSD, Solaris), for other systems you can download an add-on package from <https://www.gnu.org/software/gettext/>. If you are using the Gettext implementation in the GNU C library, then you will additionally need the GNU Gettext package for some utility programs. For any of the other implementations you will not need it.
- You need OpenSSL, if you want to support encrypted client connections. OpenSSL is also required for random number generation on platforms that do not have `/dev/urandom` (except Windows). The minimum required version is 1.0.1.
- You need MIT Kerberos (for GSSAPI), OpenLDAP, and/or PAM, if you want to support authentication using those services.
- You need LZ4, if you want to support compression of data with that method; see `default_toast_compression` and `wal_compression`.
- You need Zstandard, if you want to support compression of data with that method; see `wal_compression`. The minimum required version is 1.4.0.



- To build the PostgreSQL documentation, there is a separate set of requirements; see Section J.2.

If you are building from a Git tree instead of using a released source package, or if you want to do server development, you also need the following packages:

- Flex and Bison are needed to build from a Git checkout, or if you changed the actual scanner and parser definition files. If you need them, be sure to get Flex 2.5.35 or later and Bison 2.3 or later. Other lex and yacc programs cannot be used.
- Perl 5.14 or later is needed to build from a Git checkout, or if you changed the input files for any of the build steps that use Perl scripts. If building on Windows you will need Perl in any case. Perl is also required to run some test suites.

If you need to get a GNU package, you can find it at your local GNU mirror site (see <https://www.gnu.org/prep/ftp> for a list) or at <ftp://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/>.

## 17.2. Getting the Source

The PostgreSQL source code for released versions can be obtained from the download section of our website: <https://www.postgresql.org/ftp/source/>. Download the `postgresql-version.tar.gz` or `postgresql-version.tar.bz2` file you're interested in, then unpack it:

```
tar xf postgresql-version.tar.bz2
```

This will create a directory `postgresql-version` under the current directory with the PostgreSQL sources. Change into that directory for the rest of the installation procedure.

Alternatively, you can use the Git version control system; see Section I.1 for more information.

## 17.3. Building and Installation with Autoconf and Make

### 17.3.1. Short Version

```
./configure
make
su
make install
adduser postgres
mkdir -p /usr/local/pgsql/data
chown postgres /usr/local/pgsql/data
su - postgres
/usr/local/pgsql/bin/initdb -D /usr/local/pgsql/data
/usr/local/pgsql/bin/pg_ctl -D /usr/local/pgsql/data -l logfile
start
/usr/local/pgsql/bin/createdb test
/usr/local/pgsql/bin/psql test
```

The long version is the rest of this section.

### 17.3.2. Installation Procedure

#### 1. Configuration

The first step of the installation procedure is to configure the source tree for your system and choose the options you would like. This is done by running the `configure` script. For a default installation simply enter:

```
./configure
```

This script will run a number of tests to determine values for various system dependent variables and detect any quirks of your operating system, and finally will create several files in the build tree to record what it found.

You can also run `configure` in a directory outside the source tree, and then build there, if you want to keep the build directory separate from the original source files. This procedure is called a *VPATH* build. Here's how:

```
mkdir build_dir  
cd build_dir  
/path/to/source/tree/configure [options go here]  
make
```

The default configuration will build the server and utilities, as well as all client applications and interfaces that require only a C compiler. All files will be installed under `/usr/local/pgsql` by default.

You can customize the build and installation process by supplying one or more command line options to `configure`. Typically you would customize the install location, or the set of optional features that are built. `configure` has a large number of options, which are described in Section 17.3.3.

Also, `configure` responds to certain environment variables, as described in Section 17.3.4. These provide additional ways to customize the configuration.

## 2. Build

To start the build, type either of:

```
make  
make all
```

(Remember to use GNU make.) The build will take a few minutes depending on your hardware.

If you want to build everything that can be built, including the documentation (HTML and man pages), and the additional modules (`contrib`), type instead:

```
make world
```

If you want to build everything that can be built, including the additional modules (`contrib`), but without the documentation, type instead:

```
make world-bin
```

If you want to invoke the build from another makefile rather than manually, you must unset `MAKELEVEL` or set it to zero, for instance like this:

```
build-postgresql:
```

```
$(MAKE) -C postgresql MAKELEVEL=0 all
```

Failure to do that can lead to strange error messages, typically about missing header files.

### 3. Regression Tests

If you want to test the newly built server before you install it, you can run the regression tests at this point. The regression tests are a test suite to verify that PostgreSQL runs on your machine in the way the developers expected it to. Type:

```
make check
```

(This won't work as root; do it as an unprivileged user.) See Chapter 33 for detailed information about interpreting the test results. You can repeat this test at any later time by issuing the same command.

### 4. Installing the Files

#### Note

If you are upgrading an existing system be sure to read Section 19.6, which has instructions about upgrading a cluster.

To install PostgreSQL enter:

```
make install
```

This will install files into the directories that were specified in Step 1. Make sure that you have appropriate permissions to write into that area. Normally you need to do this step as root. Alternatively, you can create the target directories in advance and arrange for appropriate permissions to be granted.

To install the documentation (HTML and man pages), enter:

```
make install-docs
```

If you built the world above, type instead:

```
make install-world
```

This also installs the documentation.

If you built the world without the documentation above, type instead:

```
make install-world-bin
```

You can use `make install-strip` instead of `make install` to strip the executable files and libraries as they are installed. This will save some space. If you built with debugging support, stripping will effectively remove the debugging support, so it should only be done if debugging is no longer needed. `install-strip` tries to do a reasonable job saving space, but it does not have perfect knowledge of how to strip every unneeded byte from an executable file, so if you want to save all the disk space you possibly can, you will have to do manual work.

The standard installation provides all the header files needed for client application development as well as for server-side program development, such as custom functions or data types written in C.

**Client-only installation:** If you want to install only the client applications and interface libraries, then you can use these commands:

```
make -C src/bin install
make -C src/include install
make -C src/interfaces install
make -C doc install
```

`src/bin` has a few binaries for server-only use, but they are small.

**Uninstallation:** To undo the installation use the command `make uninstall`. However, this will not remove any created directories.

**Cleaning:** After the installation you can free disk space by removing the built files from the source tree with the command `make clean`. This will preserve the files made by the `configure` program, so that you can rebuild everything with `make` later on. To reset the source tree to the state in which it was distributed, use `make distclean`. If you are going to build for several platforms within the same source tree you must do this and re-configure for each platform. (Alternatively, use a separate build tree for each platform, so that the source tree remains unmodified.)

If you perform a build and then discover that your `configure` options were wrong, or if you change anything that `configure` investigates (for example, software upgrades), then it's a good idea to do `make distclean` before reconfiguring and rebuilding. Without this, your changes in configuration choices might not propagate everywhere they need to.

## 17.3.3. configure Options

`configure`'s command line options are explained below. This list is not exhaustive (use `./configure --help` to get one that is). The options not covered here are meant for advanced use-cases such as cross-compilation, and are documented in the standard Autoconf documentation.

### 17.3.3.1. Installation Locations

These options control where `make install` will put the files. The `--prefix` option is sufficient for most cases. If you have special needs, you can customize the installation subdirectories with the other options described in this section. Beware however that changing the relative locations of the different subdirectories may render the installation non-relocatable, meaning you won't be able to move it after installation. (The `man` and `doc` locations are not affected by this restriction.) For relocatable installs, you might want to use the `--disable-rpath` option described later.

`--prefix=PREFIX`

Install all files under the directory `PREFIX` instead of `/usr/local/pgsql`. The actual files will be installed into various subdirectories; no files will ever be installed directly into the `PREFIX` directory.

`--exec-prefix=EXEC-PREFIX`

You can install architecture-dependent files under a different prefix, `EXEC-PREFIX`, than what `PREFIX` was set to. This can be useful to share architecture-independent files between hosts. If you omit this, then `EXEC-PREFIX` is set equal to `PREFIX` and both architecture-dependent and independent files will be installed under the same tree, which is probably what you want.

`--bindir=DIRECTORY`

Specifies the directory for executable programs. The default is *EXEC-PREFIX/bin*, which normally means */usr/local/pgsql/bin*.

`--sysconfdir=DIRECTORY`

Sets the directory for various configuration files, *PREFIX/etc* by default.

`--libdir=DIRECTORY`

Sets the location to install libraries and dynamically loadable modules. The default is *EXEC-PREFIX/lib*.

`--includedir=DIRECTORY`

Sets the directory for installing C and C++ header files. The default is *PREFIX/include*.

`--datarootdir=DIRECTORY`

Sets the root directory for various types of read-only data files. This only sets the default for some of the following options. The default is *PREFIX/share*.

`--datadir=DIRECTORY`

Sets the directory for read-only data files used by the installed programs. The default is *DATAROOTDIR*. Note that this has nothing to do with where your database files will be placed.

`--localedir=DIRECTORY`

Sets the directory for installing locale data, in particular message translation catalog files. The default is *DATAROOTDIR/locale*.

`--mandir=DIRECTORY`

The man pages that come with PostgreSQL will be installed under this directory, in their respective *manx* subdirectories. The default is *DATAROOTDIR/man*.

`--docdir=DIRECTORY`

Sets the root directory for installing documentation files, except “man” pages. This only sets the default for the following options. The default value for this option is *DATAROOTDIR/doc/postgresql*.

`--htmldir=DIRECTORY`

The HTML-formatted documentation for PostgreSQL will be installed under this directory. The default is *DATAROOTDIR*.

### Note

Care has been taken to make it possible to install PostgreSQL into shared installation locations (such as */usr/local/include*) without interfering with the namespace of the rest of the system. First, the string “*/postgresql*” is automatically appended to *datadir*, *sysconfdir*, and *docdir*, unless the fully expanded directory name already contains the string “*postgres*” or “*pgsql*”. For example, if you choose */usr/local* as prefix, the documentation will be installed in */usr/local/doc/postgresql*, but if the prefix is */opt/postgres*, then it will be in */opt/postgres/doc*. The public C header files of the client interfaces are installed into *includedir* and are namespace-clean. The internal header files and the server header files are installed into private directories under *includedir*. See the documentation of each interface for information about how to access its header files.

Finally, a private subdirectory will also be created, if appropriate, under `libdir` for dynamically loadable modules.

### 17.3.3.2. PostgreSQL Features

The options described in this section enable building of various PostgreSQL features that are not built by default. Most of these are non-default only because they require additional software, as described in Section 17.1.

`--enable-nls[=LANGUAGES]`

Enables Native Language Support (NLS), that is, the ability to display a program's messages in a language other than English. *LANGUAGES* is an optional space-separated list of codes of the languages that you want supported, for example `--enable-nls='de fr'`. (The intersection between your list and the set of actually provided translations will be computed automatically.) If you do not specify a list, then all available translations are installed.

To use this option, you will need an implementation of the Gettext API.

`--with-perl`

Build the PL/Perl server-side language.

`--with-python`

Build the PL/Python server-side language.

`--with-tcl`

Build the PL/Tcl server-side language.

`--with-tclconfig=DIRECTORY`

Tcl installs the file `tclConfig.sh`, which contains configuration information needed to build modules interfacing to Tcl. This file is normally found automatically at a well-known location, but if you want to use a different version of Tcl you can specify the directory in which to look for `tclConfig.sh`.

`--with-llvm`

Build with support for LLVM based JIT compilation (see Chapter 32). This requires the LLVM library to be installed. The minimum required version of LLVM is currently 3.9.

`llvm-config` will be used to find the required compilation options. `llvm-config`, and then `llvm-config-$major-$minor` for all supported versions, will be searched for in your `PATH`. If that would not yield the desired program, use `LLVM_CONFIG` to specify a path to the correct `llvm-config`. For example

```
./configure ... --with-llvm LLVM_CONFIG='/path/to/llvm/bin/llvm-config'
```

LLVM support requires a compatible `clang` compiler (specified, if necessary, using the `CLANG` environment variable), and a working C++ compiler (specified, if necessary, using the `CXX` environment variable).

`--with-lz4`

Build with LZ4 compression support.

`--with-zstd`

Build with Zstandard compression support.

`--with-ssl=LIBRARY`

Build with support for SSL (encrypted) connections. The only *LIBRARY* supported is `openssl`. This requires the OpenSSL package to be installed. `configure` will check for the required header files and libraries to make sure that your OpenSSL installation is sufficient before proceeding.

`--with-openssl`

Obsolete equivalent of `--with-ssl=openssl`.

`--with-gssapi`

Build with support for GSSAPI authentication. MIT Kerberos is required to be installed for GSSAPI. On many systems, the GSSAPI system (a part of the MIT Kerberos installation) is not installed in a location that is searched by default (e.g., `/usr/include`, `/usr/lib`), so you must use the options `--with-includes` and `--with-libraries` in addition to this option. `configure` will check for the required header files and libraries to make sure that your GSSAPI installation is sufficient before proceeding.

`--with-ldap`

Build with LDAP support for authentication and connection parameter lookup (see Section 34.18 and Section 21.10 for more information). On Unix, this requires the OpenLDAP package to be installed. On Windows, the default WinLDAP library is used. `configure` will check for the required header files and libraries to make sure that your OpenLDAP installation is sufficient before proceeding.

`--with-pam`

Build with PAM (Pluggable Authentication Modules) support.

`--with-bsd-auth`

Build with BSD Authentication support. (The BSD Authentication framework is currently only available on OpenBSD.)

`--with-systemd`

Build with support for `systemd` service notifications. This improves integration if the server is started under `systemd` but has no impact otherwise; see Section 19.3 for more information. `lib-systemd` and the associated header files need to be installed to use this option.

`--with-bonjour`

Build with support for Bonjour automatic service discovery. This requires Bonjour support in your operating system. Recommended on macOS.

`--with-uuid=LIBRARY`

Build the `uuid-oss` module (which provides functions to generate UUIDs), using the specified UUID library. *LIBRARY* must be one of:

- `bsd` to use the UUID functions found in FreeBSD and some other BSD-derived systems
- `e2fs` to use the UUID library created by the `e2fsprogs` project; this library is present in most Linux systems and in macOS, and can be obtained for other platforms as well
- `oss` to use the OSSP UUID library<sup>2</sup>

`--with-oss-uuid`

Obsolete equivalent of `--with-uuid=oss`.

---

<sup>2</sup> <http://www.oss.org/pkg/lib/uuid/>

`--with-libxml`

Build with libxml2, enabling SQL/XML support. Libxml2 version 2.6.23 or later is required for this feature.

To detect the required compiler and linker options, PostgreSQL will query `pkg-config`, if that is installed and knows about libxml2. Otherwise the program `xml2-config`, which is installed by libxml2, will be used if it is found. Use of `pkg-config` is preferred, because it can deal with multi-architecture installations better.

To use a libxml2 installation that is in an unusual location, you can set `pkg-config`-related environment variables (see its documentation), or set the environment variable `XML2_CONFIG` to point to the `xml2-config` program belonging to the libxml2 installation, or set the variables `XML2_CFLAGS` and `XML2_LIBS`. (If `pkg-config` is installed, then to override its idea of where libxml2 is you must either set `XML2_CONFIG` or set both `XML2_CFLAGS` and `XML2_LIBS` to nonempty strings.)

`--with-libxslt`

Build with libxslt, enabling the `xml2` module to perform XSL transformations of XML. `--with-libxml` must be specified as well.

### 17.3.3.3. Anti-Features

The options described in this section allow disabling certain PostgreSQL features that are built by default, but which might need to be turned off if the required software or system features are not available. Using these options is not recommended unless really necessary.

`--without-icu`

Build without support for the ICU library, disabling the use of ICU collation features (see Section 24.2).

`--without-readline`

Prevents use of the Readline library (and `libedit` as well). This option disables command-line editing and history in `psql`.

`--with-libedit-preferred`

Favors the use of the BSD-licensed `libedit` library rather than GPL-licensed Readline. This option is significant only if you have both libraries installed; the default in that case is to use Readline.

`--without-zlib`

Prevents use of the Zlib library. This disables support for compressed archives in `pg_dump` and `pg_restore`.

`--disable-spinlocks`

Allow the build to succeed even if PostgreSQL has no CPU spinlock support for the platform. The lack of spinlock support will result in very poor performance; therefore, this option should only be used if the build aborts and informs you that the platform lacks spinlock support. If this option is required to build PostgreSQL on your platform, please report the problem to the PostgreSQL developers.

`--disable-atomics`

Disable use of CPU atomic operations. This option does nothing on platforms that lack such operations. On platforms that do have them, this will result in poor performance. This option is only useful for debugging or making performance comparisons.



`--disable-thread-safety`

Disable the thread-safety of client libraries. This prevents concurrent threads in libpq and ECPG programs from safely controlling their private connection handles. Use this only on platforms with deficient threading support.

### 17.3.3.4. Build Process Details

`--with-includes=DIRECTORIES`

*DIRECTORIES* is a colon-separated list of directories that will be added to the list the compiler searches for header files. If you have optional packages (such as GNU Readline) installed in a non-standard location, you have to use this option and probably also the corresponding `--with-libraries` option.

Example: `--with-includes=/opt/gnu/include:/usr/sup/include`.

`--with-libraries=DIRECTORIES`

*DIRECTORIES* is a colon-separated list of directories to search for libraries. You will probably have to use this option (and the corresponding `--with-includes` option) if you have packages installed in non-standard locations.

Example: `--with-libraries=/opt/gnu/lib:/usr/sup/lib`.

`--with-system-tzdata=DIRECTORY`

PostgreSQL includes its own time zone database, which it requires for date and time operations. This time zone database is in fact compatible with the IANA time zone database provided by many operating systems such as FreeBSD, Linux, and Solaris, so it would be redundant to install it again. When this option is used, the system-supplied time zone database in *DIRECTORY* is used instead of the one included in the PostgreSQL source distribution. *DIRECTORY* must be specified as an absolute path. `/usr/share/zoneinfo` is a likely directory on some operating systems. Note that the installation routine will not detect mismatching or erroneous time zone data. If you use this option, you are advised to run the regression tests to verify that the time zone data you have pointed to works correctly with PostgreSQL.

This option is mainly aimed at binary package distributors who know their target operating system well. The main advantage of using this option is that the PostgreSQL package won't need to be upgraded whenever any of the many local daylight-saving time rules change. Another advantage is that PostgreSQL can be cross-compiled more straightforwardly if the time zone database files do not need to be built during the installation.

`--with-extra-version=STRING`

Append *STRING* to the PostgreSQL version number. You can use this, for example, to mark binaries built from unreleased Git snapshots or containing custom patches with an extra version string, such as a `git describe` identifier or a distribution package release number.

`--disable-rpath`

Do not mark PostgreSQL's executables to indicate that they should search for shared libraries in the installation's library directory (see `--libdir`). On most platforms, this marking uses an absolute path to the library directory, so that it will be unhelpful if you relocate the installation later. However, you will then need to provide some other way for the executables to find the shared libraries. Typically this requires configuring the operating system's dynamic linker to search the library directory; see Section 17.5.1 for more detail.

### 17.3.3.5. Miscellaneous

It's fairly common, particularly for test builds, to adjust the default port number with `--with-pg-port`. The other options in this section are recommended only for advanced users.

`--with-pgport=NUMBER`

Set *NUMBER* as the default port number for server and clients. The default is 5432. The port can always be changed later on, but if you specify it here then both server and clients will have the same default compiled in, which can be very convenient. Usually the only good reason to select a non-default value is if you intend to run multiple PostgreSQL servers on the same machine.

`--with-krb-srvnam=NAME`

The default name of the Kerberos service principal used by GSSAPI. `postgres` is the default. There's usually no reason to change this unless you are building for a Windows environment, in which case it must be set to upper case `POSTGRES`.

`--with-segsize=SEGSIZE`

Set the *segment size*, in gigabytes. Large tables are divided into multiple operating-system files, each of size equal to the segment size. This avoids problems with file size limits that exist on many platforms. The default segment size, 1 gigabyte, is safe on all supported platforms. If your operating system has “largefile” support (which most do, nowadays), you can use a larger segment size. This can be helpful to reduce the number of file descriptors consumed when working with very large tables. But be careful not to select a value larger than is supported by your platform and the file systems you intend to use. Other tools you might wish to use, such as `tar`, could also set limits on the usable file size. It is recommended, though not absolutely required, that this value be a power of 2. Note that changing this value breaks on-disk database compatibility, meaning you cannot use `pg_upgrade` to upgrade to a build with a different segment size.

`--with-blocksize=BLOCKSIZE`

Set the *block size*, in kilobytes. This is the unit of storage and I/O within tables. The default, 8 kilobytes, is suitable for most situations; but other values may be useful in special cases. The value must be a power of 2 between 1 and 32 (kilobytes). Note that changing this value breaks on-disk database compatibility, meaning you cannot use `pg_upgrade` to upgrade to a build with a different block size.

`--with-wal-blocksize=BLOCKSIZE`

Set the *WAL block size*, in kilobytes. This is the unit of storage and I/O within the WAL log. The default, 8 kilobytes, is suitable for most situations; but other values may be useful in special cases. The value must be a power of 2 between 1 and 64 (kilobytes). Note that changing this value breaks on-disk database compatibility, meaning you cannot use `pg_upgrade` to upgrade to a build with a different WAL block size.

### 17.3.3.6. Developer Options

Most of the options in this section are only of interest for developing or debugging PostgreSQL. They are not recommended for production builds, except for `--enable-debug`, which can be useful to enable detailed bug reports in the unlucky event that you encounter a bug. On platforms supporting DTrace, `--enable-dtrace` may also be reasonable to use in production.

When building an installation that will be used to develop code inside the server, it is recommended to use at least the options `--enable-debug` and `--enable-cassert`.

`--enable-debug`

Compiles all programs and libraries with debugging symbols. This means that you can run the programs in a debugger to analyze problems. This enlarges the size of the installed executables considerably, and on non-GCC compilers it usually also disables compiler optimization, causing slowdowns. However, having the symbols available is extremely helpful for dealing with any problems that might arise. Currently, this option is recommended for production installations only if you use GCC. But you should always have it on if you are doing development work or running a beta version.

#### `--enable-cassert`

Enables *assertion* checks in the server, which test for many “cannot happen” conditions. This is invaluable for code development purposes, but the tests can slow down the server significantly. Also, having the tests turned on won't necessarily enhance the stability of your server! The assertion checks are not categorized for severity, and so what might be a relatively harmless bug will still lead to server restarts if it triggers an assertion failure. This option is not recommended for production use, but you should have it on for development work or when running a beta version.

#### `--enable-tap-tests`

Enable tests using the Perl TAP tools. This requires a Perl installation and the Perl module `IPC::Run`. See Section 33.4 for more information.

#### `--enable-depend`

Enables automatic dependency tracking. With this option, the makefiles are set up so that all affected object files will be rebuilt when any header file is changed. This is useful if you are doing development work, but is just wasted overhead if you intend only to compile once and install. At present, this option only works with GCC.

#### `--enable-coverage`

If using GCC, all programs and libraries are compiled with code coverage testing instrumentation. When run, they generate files in the build directory with code coverage metrics. See Section 33.5 for more information. This option is for use only with GCC and when doing development work.

#### `--enable-profiling`

If using GCC, all programs and libraries are compiled so they can be profiled. On backend exit, a subdirectory will be created that contains the `gmon.out` file containing profile data. This option is for use only with GCC and when doing development work.

#### `--enable-dtrace`

Compiles PostgreSQL with support for the dynamic tracing tool DTrace. See Section 28.5 for more information.

To point to the `dtrace` program, the environment variable `DTRACE` can be set. This will often be necessary because `dtrace` is typically installed under `/usr/sbin`, which might not be in your `PATH`.

Extra command-line options for the `dtrace` program can be specified in the environment variable `DTRACEFLAGS`. On Solaris, to include DTrace support in a 64-bit binary, you must specify `DTRACEFLAGS="-64"`. For example, using the GCC compiler:

```
./configure CC='gcc -m64' --enable-dtrace DTRACEFLAGS='-64' ...
```

Using Sun's compiler:

```
./configure CC='/opt/SUNWsprow/bin/cc -xtarget=native64' --  
enable-dtrace DTRACEFLAGS='-64' ...
```

#### `--with-segsize-blocks=SEGSIZE_BLOCKS`

Specify the relation segment size in blocks. If both `--with-segsize` and this option are specified, this option wins. This option is only for developers, to test segment related code.

## 17.3.4. configure Environment Variables

In addition to the ordinary command-line options described above, `configure` responds to a number of environment variables. You can specify environment variables on the `configure` command line, for example:

```
./configure CC=/opt/bin/gcc CFLAGS='-O2 -pipe'
```

In this usage an environment variable is little different from a command-line option. You can also set such variables beforehand:

```
export CC=/opt/bin/gcc  
export CFLAGS='-O2 -pipe'  
./configure
```

This usage can be convenient because many programs' configuration scripts respond to these variables in similar ways.

The most commonly used of these environment variables are `CC` and `CFLAGS`. If you prefer a C compiler different from the one `configure` picks, you can set the variable `CC` to the program of your choice. By default, `configure` will pick `gcc` if available, else the platform's default (usually `cc`). Similarly, you can override the default compiler flags if needed with the `CFLAGS` variable.

Here is a list of the significant variables that can be set in this manner:

BISON

Bison program

CC

C compiler

CFLAGS

options to pass to the C compiler

CLANG

path to `clang` program used to process source code for inlining when compiling with `--with-llvm`

CPP

C preprocessor

CPPFLAGS

options to pass to the C preprocessor

CXX

C++ compiler

CXXFLAGS

options to pass to the C++ compiler

DTRACE

location of the `dtrace` program

#### DTRACEFLAGS

options to pass to the `dtrace` program

#### FLEX

Flex program

#### LDFLAGS

options to use when linking either executables or shared libraries

#### LDFLAGS\_EX

additional options for linking executables only

#### LDFLAGS\_SL

additional options for linking shared libraries only

#### LLVM\_CONFIG

`llvm-config` program used to locate the LLVM installation

#### MSGFMT

`msgfmt` program for native language support

#### PERL

Perl interpreter program. This will be used to determine the dependencies for building PL/Perl. The default is `perl`.

#### PYTHON

Python interpreter program. This will be used to determine the dependencies for building PL/Python. If this is not set, the following are probed in this order: `python3` `python`.

#### TCLSH

Tcl interpreter program. This will be used to determine the dependencies for building PL/Tcl. If this is not set, the following are probed in this order: `tclsh` `tcl` `tclsh8.6` `tclsh86` `tclsh8.5` `tclsh85` `tclsh8.4` `tclsh84`.

#### XML2\_CONFIG

`xml2-config` program used to locate the libxml2 installation

Sometimes it is useful to add compiler flags after-the-fact to the set that were chosen by `configure`. An important example is that `gcc`'s `-Werror` option cannot be included in the `CFLAGS` passed to `configure`, because it will break many of `configure`'s built-in tests. To add such flags, include them in the `COPT` environment variable while running `make`. The contents of `COPT` are added to both the `CFLAGS` and `LDFLAGS` options set up by `configure`. For example, you could do

```
make COPT='-Werror'
```

or

```
export COPT='-Werror'  
make
```

### Note

If using GCC, it is best to build with an optimization level of at least `-O1`, because using no optimization (`-O0`) disables some important compiler warnings (such as the use of uninitialized variables). However, non-zero optimization levels can complicate debugging because stepping through compiled code will usually not match up one-to-one with source code lines. If you get confused while trying to debug optimized code, recompile the specific files of interest with `-O0`. An easy way to do this is by passing an option to make: `make PROFILE=-O0 file.o`.

The `COPT` and `PROFILE` environment variables are actually handled identically by the PostgreSQL makefiles. Which to use is a matter of preference, but a common habit among developers is to use `PROFILE` for one-time flag adjustments, while `COPT` might be kept set all the time.

## 17.4. Building and Installation with Meson

### 17.4.1. Short Version

```
meson setup build --prefix=/usr/local/pgsql
cd build
ninja
su
ninja install
adduser postgres
mkdir -p /usr/local/pgsql/data
chown postgres /usr/local/pgsql/data
su - postgres
/usr/local/pgsql/bin/initdb -D /usr/local/pgsql/data
/usr/local/pgsql/bin/pg_ctl -D /usr/local/pgsql/data -l logfile
start
/usr/local/pgsql/bin/createdb test
/usr/local/pgsql/bin/psql test
```

The long version is the rest of this section.

### 17.4.2. Installation Procedure

#### 1. Configuration

The first step of the installation procedure is to configure the build tree for your system and choose the options you would like. To create and configure the build directory, you can start with the `meson setup` command.

#### **meson setup build**

The setup command takes a `builddir` and a `srcdir` argument. If no `srcdir` is given, Meson will deduce the `srcdir` based on the current directory and the location of `meson.build`. The `builddir` is mandatory.

Running `meson setup` loads the build configuration file and sets up the build directory. Additionally, you can also pass several build options to Meson. Some commonly used options are mentioned in the subsequent sections. For example:

```
# configure with a different installation prefix
meson setup build --prefix=/home/user/pg-install
```

```
# configure to generate a debug build
meson setup build --buildtype=debug
```

```
# configure to build with OpenSSL support
meson setup build -Dssl=openssl
```

Setting up the build directory is a one-time step. To reconfigure before a new build, you can simply use the `meson configure` command

```
meson configure -Dcassert=true
```

`meson configure`'s commonly used command-line options are explained in Section 17.4.3.

## 2. Build

By default, Meson uses the Ninja<sup>3</sup> build tool. To build PostgreSQL from source using Meson, you can simply use the `ninja` command in the build directory.

```
ninja
```

Ninja will automatically detect the number of CPUs in your computer and parallelize itself accordingly. You can override the number of parallel processes used with the command line argument `-j`.

It should be noted that after the initial configure step, `ninja` is the only command you ever need to type to compile. No matter how you alter your source tree (short of moving it to a completely new location), Meson will detect the changes and regenerate itself accordingly. This is especially handy if you have multiple build directories. Often one of them is used for development (the "debug" build) and others only every now and then (such as a "static analysis" build). Any configuration can be built just by cd'ing to the corresponding directory and running Ninja.

If you'd like to build with a backend other than `ninja`, you can use configure with the `--backend` option to select the one you want to use and then build using `meson compile`. To learn more about these backends and other arguments you can provide to `ninja`, you can refer to the Meson documentation<sup>4</sup>.

## 3. Regression Tests

If you want to test the newly built server before you install it, you can run the regression tests at this point. The regression tests are a test suite to verify that PostgreSQL runs on your machine in the way the developers expected it to. Type:

```
meson test
```

(This won't work as root; do it as an unprivileged user.) See Chapter 33 for detailed information about interpreting the test results. You can repeat this test at any later time by issuing the same command.

To run `pg_regress` and `pg_isolation_regress` tests against a running postgres instance, specify **--setup running** as an argument to **meson test**.

---

<sup>3</sup> <https://ninja-build.org/>

<sup>4</sup> <https://mesonbuild.com/Running-Meson.html#building-from-the-source>

#### 4. Installing the Files

### Note

If you are upgrading an existing system be sure to read Section 19.6, which has instructions about upgrading a cluster.

Once PostgreSQL is built, you can install it by simply running the `ninja install` command.

```
ninja install
```

This will install files into the directories that were specified in Step 1. Make sure that you have appropriate permissions to write into that area. You might need to do this step as root. Alternatively, you can create the target directories in advance and arrange for appropriate permissions to be granted. The standard installation provides all the header files needed for client application development as well as for server-side program development, such as custom functions or data types written in C.

`ninja install` should work for most cases, but if you'd like to use more options (such as `--quiet` to suppress extra output), you could also use `meson install` instead. You can learn more about `meson install`<sup>5</sup> and its options in the Meson documentation.

**Uninstallation:** To undo the installation, you can use the `ninja uninstall` command.

**Cleaning:** After the installation, you can free disk space by removing the built files from the source tree with the `ninja clean` command.

## 17.4.3. meson setup Options

`meson setup`'s command-line options are explained below. This list is not exhaustive (use `meson configure --help` to get one that is). The options not covered here are meant for advanced use-cases, and are documented in the standard Meson documentation<sup>6</sup>. These arguments can be used with `meson setup` as well.

### 17.4.3.1. Installation Locations

These options control where `ninja install` (or `meson install`) will put the files. The `--prefix` option (example Section 17.4.1) is sufficient for most cases. If you have special needs, you can customize the installation subdirectories with the other options described in this section. Beware however that changing the relative locations of the different subdirectories may render the installation non-relocatable, meaning you won't be able to move it after installation. (The `man` and `doc` locations are not affected by this restriction.) For relocatable installs, you might want to use the `-Drelocatable=false` option described later.

```
--prefix=PREFIX
```

Install all files under the directory *PREFIX* instead of `/usr/local/pgsql` (on Unix based systems) or *current drive letter*:`/usr/local/pgsql` (on Windows). The actual files will be installed into various subdirectories; no files will ever be installed directly into the *PREFIX* directory.

```
--bindir=DIRECTORY
```

Specifies the directory for executable programs. The default is *PREFIX*/`bin`.

---

<sup>5</sup> <https://mesonbuild.com/Commands.html#install>

<sup>6</sup> <https://mesonbuild.com/Commands.html#configure>



--sysconfdir=*DIRECTORY*

Sets the directory for various configuration files, *PREFIX/etc* by default.

--libdir=*DIRECTORY*

Sets the location to install libraries and dynamically loadable modules. The default is *PREFIX/lib*.

--includedir=*DIRECTORY*

Sets the directory for installing C and C++ header files. The default is *PREFIX/include*.

--datadir=*DIRECTORY*

Sets the directory for read-only data files used by the installed programs. The default is *PREFIX/share*. Note that this has nothing to do with where your database files will be placed.

--localedir=*DIRECTORY*

Sets the directory for installing locale data, in particular message translation catalog files. The default is *DATADIR/locale*.

--mandir=*DIRECTORY*

The man pages that come with PostgreSQL will be installed under this directory, in their respective manx subdirectories. The default is *DATADIR/man*.

### Note

Care has been taken to make it possible to install PostgreSQL into shared installation locations (such as */usr/local/include*) without interfering with the namespace of the rest of the system. First, the string “*/postgresql*” is automatically appended to *datadir*, *sysconfdir*, and *docdir*, unless the fully expanded directory name already contains the string “*postgres*” or “*pgsql*”. For example, if you choose */usr/local* as prefix, the documentation will be installed in */usr/local/doc/postgresql*, but if the prefix is */opt/postgres*, then it will be in */opt/postgres/doc*. The public C header files of the client interfaces are installed into *includedir* and are namespace-clean. The internal header files and the server header files are installed into private directories under *includedir*. See the documentation of each interface for information about how to access its header files. Finally, a private subdirectory will also be created, if appropriate, under *libdir* for dynamically loadable modules.

## 17.4.3.2. PostgreSQL Features

The options described in this section enable building of various optional PostgreSQL features. Most of these require additional software, as described in Section 17.1, and will be automatically enabled if the required software is found. You can change this behavior by manually setting these features to enabled to require them or disabled to not build with them.

To specify PostgreSQL-specific options, the name of the option must be prefixed by *-D*.

*-Dnls*={ auto | enabled | disabled }

Enables or disables Native Language Support (NLS), that is, the ability to display a program's messages in a language other than English. Defaults to auto and will be enabled automatically if an implementation of the Gettext API is found.

*-Dplperl*={ auto | enabled | disabled }

Build the PL/Perl server-side language. Defaults to auto.

`-Dplpython={ auto | enabled | disabled }`

Build the PL/Python server-side language. Defaults to auto.

`-Dpltcl={ auto | enabled | disabled }`

Build the PL/Tcl server-side language. Defaults to auto.

`-Dtcl_version=TCL_VERSION`

Specifies the Tcl version to use when building PL/Tcl.

`-Dicu={ auto | enabled | disabled }`

Build with support for the ICU library, enabling use of ICU collation features (see Section 24.2). Defaults to auto and requires the ICU4C package to be installed. The minimum required version of ICU4C is currently 4.2.

`-Dllvm={ auto | enabled | disabled }`

Build with support for LLVM based JIT compilation (see Chapter 32). This requires the LLVM library to be installed. The minimum required version of LLVM is currently 3.9. Disabled by default.

`llvm-config` will be used to find the required compilation options. `llvm-config`, and then `llvm-config-$version` for all supported versions, will be searched for in your `PATH`. If that would not yield the desired program, use `LLVM_CONFIG` to specify a path to the correct `llvm-config`.

`-Dlz4={ auto | enabled | disabled }`

Build with LZ4 compression support. Defaults to auto.

`-Dzstd={ auto | enabled | disabled }`

Build with Zstandard compression support. Defaults to auto.

`-Dssl={ auto | LIBRARY }`

Build with support for SSL (encrypted) connections. The only *LIBRARY* supported is `openssl`. This requires the OpenSSL package to be installed. Building with this will check for the required header files and libraries to make sure that your OpenSSL installation is sufficient before proceeding. The default for this option is auto.

`-Dgssapi={ auto | enabled | disabled }`

Build with support for GSSAPI authentication. MIT Kerberos is required to be installed for GSSAPI. On many systems, the GSSAPI system (a part of the MIT Kerberos installation) is not installed in a location that is searched by default (e.g., `/usr/include`, `/usr/lib`). In those cases, PostgreSQL will query `pkg-config` to detect the required compiler and linker options. Defaults to auto. `meson configure` will check for the required header files and libraries to make sure that your GSSAPI installation is sufficient before proceeding.

`-Dldap={ auto | enabled | disabled }`

Build with LDAP support for authentication and connection parameter lookup (see Section 34.18 and Section 21.10 for more information). On Unix, this requires the OpenLDAP package to be installed. On Windows, the default WinLDAP library is used. Defaults to auto. `meson configure` will check for the required header files and libraries to make sure that your OpenLDAP installation is sufficient before proceeding.

`-Dpam={ auto | enabled | disabled }`

Build with PAM (Pluggable Authentication Modules) support. Defaults to auto.

`-Dbbsd_auth={ auto | enabled | disabled }`

Build with BSD Authentication support. (The BSD Authentication framework is currently only available on OpenBSD.) Defaults to auto.

`-Dsystemd={ auto | enabled | disabled }`

Build with support for systemd service notifications. This improves integration if the server is started under systemd but has no impact otherwise; see Section 19.3 for more information. Defaults to auto. `libsystemd` and the associated header files need to be installed to use this option.

`-Dbonjour={ auto | enabled | disabled }`

Build with support for Bonjour automatic service discovery. Defaults to auto and requires Bonjour support in your operating system. Recommended on macOS.

`-Duuid=LIBRARY`

Build the uuid-oss module (which provides functions to generate UUIDs), using the specified UUID library. *LIBRARY* must be one of:

- none to not build the uuid module. This is the default.
- bsd to use the UUID functions found in FreeBSD, and some other BSD-derived systems
- e2fs to use the UUID library created by the `e2fsprogs` project; this library is present in most Linux systems and in macOS, and can be obtained for other platforms as well
- ossp to use the OSSP UUID library<sup>7</sup>

`-Dlibxml={ auto | enabled | disabled }`

Build with `libxml2`, enabling SQL/XML support. Defaults to auto. `Libxml2` version 2.6.23 or later is required for this feature.

To use a `libxml2` installation that is in an unusual location, you can set `pkg-config`-related environment variables (see its documentation).

`-Dlibxslt={ auto | enabled | disabled }`

Build with `libxslt`, enabling the `xml2` module to perform XSL transformations of XML. `-Dlibxml` must be specified as well. Defaults to auto.

### 17.4.3.3. Anti-Features

`-Dreadline={ auto | enabled | disabled }`

Allows use of the Readline library (and `libedit` as well). This option defaults to auto and enables command-line editing and history in `psql` and is strongly recommended.

`-Dlibedit_preferred={ true | false }`

Setting this to true favors the use of the BSD-licensed `libedit` library rather than GPL-licensed Readline. This option is significant only if you have both libraries installed; the default is false, that is to use Readline.

`-Dzlib={ auto | enabled | disabled }`

Enables use of the Zlib library. It defaults to auto and enables support for compressed archives in `pg_dump`, `pg_restore` and `pg_basebackup` and is recommended.

---

<sup>7</sup> <http://www.ossp.org/pkg/lib/uuid/>

`-Dspinlocks={ true | false }`

This option is set to true by default; setting it to false will allow the build to succeed even if PostgreSQL has no CPU spinlock support for the platform. The lack of spinlock support will result in very poor performance; therefore, this option should only be changed if the build aborts and informs you that the platform lacks spinlock support. If setting this option to false is required to build PostgreSQL on your platform, please report the problem to the PostgreSQL developers.

`-Datomics={ true | false }`

This option is set to true by default; setting it to false will disable use of CPU atomic operations. The option does nothing on platforms that lack such operations. On platforms that do have them, disabling atomics will result in poor performance. Changing this option is only useful for debugging or making performance comparisons.

### 17.4.3.4. Build Process Details

`--auto_features={ auto | enabled | disabled }`

Setting this option allows you to override the value of all “auto” features (features that are enabled automatically if the required software is found). This can be useful when you want to disable or enable all the “optional” features at once without having to set each of them manually. The default value for this parameter is auto.

`--backend=BACKEND`

The default backend Meson uses is ninja and that should suffice for most use cases. However, if you'd like to fully integrate with Visual Studio, you can set the BACKEND to vs.

`-Dc_args=OPTIONS`

This option can be used to pass extra options to the C compiler.

`-Dc_link_args=OPTIONS`

This option can be used to pass extra options to the C linker.

`-Dextra_include_dirs=DIRECTORIES`

*DIRECTORIES* is a comma-separated list of directories that will be added to the list the compiler searches for header files. If you have optional packages (such as GNU Readline) installed in a non-standard location, you have to use this option and probably also the corresponding `-Dextra_lib_dirs` option.

Example: `-Dextra_include_dirs=/opt/gnu/include,/usr/sup/include`.

`-Dextra_lib_dirs=DIRECTORIES`

*DIRECTORIES* is a comma-separated list of directories to search for libraries. You will probably have to use this option (and the corresponding `-Dextra_include_dirs` option) if you have packages installed in non-standard locations.

Example: `-Dextra_lib_dirs=/opt/gnu/lib,/usr/sup/lib`.

`-Dsystem_tzdata=DIRECTORY`

PostgreSQL includes its own time zone database, which it requires for date and time operations. This time zone database is in fact compatible with the IANA time zone database provided by many operating systems such as FreeBSD, Linux, and Solaris, so it would be redundant to install it again. When this option is used, the system-supplied time zone database in *DIRECTORY* is used instead of the one included in the PostgreSQL source distribution. *DIRECTORY* must be specified

as an absolute path. `/usr/share/zoneinfo` is a likely directory on some operating systems. Note that the installation routine will not detect mismatching or erroneous time zone data. If you use this option, you are advised to run the regression tests to verify that the time zone data you have pointed to works correctly with PostgreSQL.

This option is mainly aimed at binary package distributors who know their target operating system well. The main advantage of using this option is that the PostgreSQL package won't need to be upgraded whenever any of the many local daylight-saving time rules change. Another advantage is that PostgreSQL can be cross-compiled more straightforwardly if the time zone database files do not need to be built during the installation.

`-Dextra_version=STRING`

Append *STRING* to the PostgreSQL version number. You can use this, for example, to mark binaries built from unreleased Git snapshots or containing custom patches with an extra version string, such as a `git describe` identifier or a distribution package release number.

`-Drpath={ true | false }`

This option is set to true by default. If set to false, do not mark PostgreSQL's executables to indicate that they should search for shared libraries in the installation's library directory (see `--libdir`). On most platforms, this marking uses an absolute path to the library directory, so that it will be unhelpful if you relocate the installation later. However, you will then need to provide some other way for the executables to find the shared libraries. Typically this requires configuring the operating system's dynamic linker to search the library directory; see Section 17.5.1 for more detail.

`-DBINARY_NAME=PATH`

If a program required to build PostgreSQL (with or without optional flags) is stored at a non-standard path, you can specify it manually to `meson configure`. The complete list of programs for which this is supported can be found by running `meson configure`. Example:

```
meson configure -DBISON=PATH_TO_BISON
```

### 17.4.3.5. Documentation

See Section J.2 for the tools needed for building the documentation.

`-Ddocs={ auto | enabled | disabled }`

Enables building the documentation in HTML and man format. It defaults to auto.

`-Ddocs_pdf={ auto | enabled | disabled }`

Enables building the documentation in PDF format. It defaults to auto.

`-Ddocs_html_style={ simple | website }`

Controls which CSS stylesheet is used. The default is `simple`. If set to `website`, the HTML documentation will reference the stylesheet for `postgresql.org`<sup>8</sup>.

### 17.4.3.6. Miscellaneous

`-Dpgport=NUMBER`

Set *NUMBER* as the default port number for server and clients. The default is 5432. The port can always be changed later on, but if you specify it here then both server and clients will have the

---

<sup>8</sup> <https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/>

same default compiled in, which can be very convenient. Usually the only good reason to select a non-default value is if you intend to run multiple PostgreSQL servers on the same machine.

`-Dkrb_srvnam=NAME`

The default name of the Kerberos service principal used by GSSAPI. `postgres` is the default. There's usually no reason to change this unless you are building for a Windows environment, in which case it must be set to upper case `POSTGRES`.

`-Dsegsize=SEGSIZE`

Set the *segment size*, in gigabytes. Large tables are divided into multiple operating-system files, each of size equal to the segment size. This avoids problems with file size limits that exist on many platforms. The default segment size, 1 gigabyte, is safe on all supported platforms. If your operating system has “largefile” support (which most do, nowadays), you can use a larger segment size. This can be helpful to reduce the number of file descriptors consumed when working with very large tables. But be careful not to select a value larger than is supported by your platform and the file systems you intend to use. Other tools you might wish to use, such as tar, could also set limits on the usable file size. It is recommended, though not absolutely required, that this value be a power of 2.

`-Dblocksize=BLOCKSIZE`

Set the *block size*, in kilobytes. This is the unit of storage and I/O within tables. The default, 8 kilobytes, is suitable for most situations; but other values may be useful in special cases. The value must be a power of 2 between 1 and 32 (kilobytes).

`-Dwal_blocksize=BLOCKSIZE`

Set the *WAL block size*, in kilobytes. This is the unit of storage and I/O within the WAL log. The default, 8 kilobytes, is suitable for most situations; but other values may be useful in special cases. The value must be a power of 2 between 1 and 64 (kilobytes).

### 17.4.3.7. Developer Options

Most of the options in this section are only of interest for developing or debugging PostgreSQL. They are not recommended for production builds, except for `--debug`, which can be useful to enable detailed bug reports in the unlucky event that you encounter a bug. On platforms supporting DTrace, `-Ddtrace` may also be reasonable to use in production.

When building an installation that will be used to develop code inside the server, it is recommended to use at least the `--buildtype=debug` and `-Dcassert` options.

`--buildtype=BUILDTYPE`

This option can be used to specify the buildtype to use; defaults to `debugoptimized`. If you'd like finer control on the debug symbols and optimization levels than what this option provides, you can refer to the `--debug` and `--optimization` flags.

The following build types are generally used: `plain`, `debug`, `debugoptimized` and `release`. More information about them can be found in the Meson documentation<sup>9</sup>.

`--debug`

Compiles all programs and libraries with debugging symbols. This means that you can run the programs in a debugger to analyze problems. This enlarges the size of the installed executables considerably, and on non-GCC compilers it usually also disables compiler optimization, causing slowdowns. However, having the symbols available is extremely helpful for dealing with any problems that might arise. Currently, this option is recommended for production installations only

---

<sup>9</sup> <https://mesonbuild.com/Running-Meson.html#configuring-the-build-directory>

if you use GCC. But you should always have it on if you are doing development work or running a beta version.

`--optimization=LEVEL`

Specify the optimization level. `LEVEL` can be set to any of `{0,g,1,2,3,s}`.

`--werror`

Setting this option asks the compiler to treat warnings as errors. This can be useful for code development.

`-Dcassert={ true | false }`

Enables *assertion* checks in the server, which test for many “cannot happen” conditions. This is invaluable for code development purposes, but the tests slow down the server significantly. Also, having the tests turned on won't necessarily enhance the stability of your server! The assertion checks are not categorized for severity, and so what might be a relatively harmless bug will still lead to server restarts if it triggers an assertion failure. This option is not recommended for production use, but you should have it on for development work or when running a beta version.

`-Dtap_tests={ auto | enabled | disabled }`

Enable tests using the Perl TAP tools. Defaults to auto and requires a Perl installation and the Perl module `IPC::Run`. See Section 33.4 for more information.

`-DPG_TEST_EXTRA=TEST_SUITES`

Enable test suites which require special software to run. This option accepts arguments via a whitespace-separated list. See Section 33.1.3 for details.

`-Dcoverage={ true | false }`

If using GCC, all programs and libraries are compiled with code coverage testing instrumentation. When run, they generate files in the build directory with code coverage metrics. See Section 33.5 for more information. This option is for use only with GCC and when doing development work.

`-Ddtrace={ auto | enabled | disabled }`

Enabling this compiles PostgreSQL with support for the dynamic tracing tool DTrace. See Section 28.5 for more information.

To point to the `dtrace` program, the `DTRACE` option can be set. This will often be necessary because `dtrace` is typically installed under `/usr/sbin`, which might not be in your `PATH`.

`-Dsegsize_blocks=SEGSIZE_BLOCKS`

Specify the relation segment size in blocks. If both `-Dsegsize` and this option are specified, this option wins. This option is only for developers, to test segment related code.

## 17.5. Post-Installation Setup

### 17.5.1. Shared Libraries

On some systems with shared libraries you need to tell the system how to find the newly installed shared libraries. The systems on which this is *not* necessary include FreeBSD, Linux, NetBSD, OpenBSD, and Solaris.

The method to set the shared library search path varies between platforms, but the most widely-used method is to set the environment variable `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` like so: In Bourne shells (`sh`, `ksh`, `bash`, `zsh`):

```
LD_LIBRARY_PATH=/usr/local/pgsql/lib
export LD_LIBRARY_PATH
```

or in `csh` or `tcsh`:

```
setenv LD_LIBRARY_PATH /usr/local/pgsql/lib
```

Replace `/usr/local/pgsql/lib` with whatever you set `--libdir` to in Step 1. You should put these commands into a shell start-up file such as `/etc/profile` or `~/.bash_profile`. Some good information about the caveats associated with this method can be found at [http://xahlee.info/UnixResource\\_dir/\\_ldpath.html](http://xahlee.info/UnixResource_dir/_ldpath.html).

On some systems it might be preferable to set the environment variable `LD_RUN_PATH` *before* building.

On Cygwin, put the library directory in the `PATH` or move the `.dll` files into the `bin` directory.

If in doubt, refer to the manual pages of your system (perhaps `ld.so` or `rld`). If you later get a message like:

```
psql: error in loading shared libraries
libpq.so.2.1: cannot open shared object file: No such file or
directory
```

then this step was necessary. Simply take care of it then.

If you are on Linux and you have root access, you can run:

```
/sbin/ldconfig /usr/local/pgsql/lib
```

(or equivalent directory) after installation to enable the run-time linker to find the shared libraries faster. Refer to the manual page of `ldconfig` for more information. On FreeBSD, NetBSD, and OpenBSD the command is:

```
/sbin/ldconfig -m /usr/local/pgsql/lib
```

instead. Other systems are not known to have an equivalent command.

## 17.5.2. Environment Variables

If you installed into `/usr/local/pgsql` or some other location that is not searched for programs by default, you should add `/usr/local/pgsql/bin` (or whatever you set `--bindir` to in Step 1) into your `PATH`. Strictly speaking, this is not necessary, but it will make the use of PostgreSQL much more convenient.

To do this, add the following to your shell start-up file, such as `~/.bash_profile` (or `/etc/profile`, if you want it to affect all users):

```
PATH=/usr/local/pgsql/bin:$PATH
export PATH
```

If you are using `csh` or `tcsh`, then use this command:



```
set path = ( /usr/local/pgsql/bin $path )
```

To enable your system to find the man documentation, you need to add lines like the following to a shell start-up file unless you installed into a location that is searched by default:

```
MANPATH=/usr/local/pgsql/share/man:$MANPATH
export MANPATH
```

The environment variables `PGHOST` and `PGPORT` specify to client applications the host and port of the database server, overriding the compiled-in defaults. If you are going to run client applications remotely then it is convenient if every user that plans to use the database sets `PGHOST`. This is not required, however; the settings can be communicated via command line options to most client programs.

## 17.6. Supported Platforms

A platform (that is, a CPU architecture and operating system combination) is considered supported by the PostgreSQL development community if the code contains provisions to work on that platform and it has recently been verified to build and pass its regression tests on that platform. Currently, most testing of platform compatibility is done automatically by test machines in the PostgreSQL Build Farm<sup>10</sup>. If you are interested in using PostgreSQL on a platform that is not represented in the build farm, but on which the code works or can be made to work, you are strongly encouraged to set up a build farm member machine so that continued compatibility can be assured.

In general, PostgreSQL can be expected to work on these CPU architectures: x86, PowerPC, S/390, SPARC, ARM, MIPS, RISC-V, and PA-RISC, including big-endian, little-endian, 32-bit, and 64-bit variants where applicable. It is often possible to build on an unsupported CPU type by configuring with `--disable-spinlocks`, but performance will be poor.

PostgreSQL can be expected to work on current versions of these operating systems: Linux, Windows, FreeBSD, OpenBSD, NetBSD, DragonFlyBSD, macOS, AIX, Solaris, and illumos. Other Unix-like systems may also work but are not currently being tested. In most cases, all CPU architectures supported by a given operating system will work. Look in Section 17.7 below to see if there is information specific to your operating system, particularly if using an older system.

If you have installation problems on a platform that is known to be supported according to recent build farm results, please report it to `<pgsql-bugs@lists.postgresql.org>`. If you are interested in porting PostgreSQL to a new platform, `<pgsql-hackers@lists.postgresql.org>` is the appropriate place to discuss that.

Historical versions of PostgreSQL or POSTGRES also ran on CPU architectures including Alpha, Itanium, M32R, M68K, M88K, NS32K, SuperH, and VAX, and operating systems including 4.3BSD, BEOS, BSD/OS, DG/UX, Dynix, HP-UX, IRIX, NeXTSTEP, QNX, SCO, SINIX, Sprite, SunOS, Tru64 UNIX, and ULTRIX.

## 17.7. Platform-Specific Notes

This section documents additional platform-specific issues regarding the installation and setup of PostgreSQL. Be sure to read the installation instructions, and in particular Section 17.1 as well. Also, check Chapter 33 regarding the interpretation of regression test results.

Platforms that are not covered here have no known platform-specific installation issues.

### 17.7.1. AIX

You can use GCC or the native IBM compiler `xlc` to build PostgreSQL on AIX.

---

<sup>10</sup> <https://buildfarm.postgresql.org/>

AIX versions before 7.1 are no longer tested nor supported by the PostgreSQL community.

### 17.7.1.1. Memory Management

AIX can be somewhat peculiar with regards to the way it does memory management. You can have a server with many multiples of gigabytes of RAM free, but still get out of memory or address space errors when running applications. One example is loading of extensions failing with unusual errors. For example, running as the owner of the PostgreSQL installation:

```
=# CREATE EXTENSION plperl;  
ERROR:  could not load library "/opt/dbs/pgsql/lib/plperl.so": A  
memory address is not in the address space for the process.
```

Running as a non-owner in the group possessing the PostgreSQL installation:

```
=# CREATE EXTENSION plperl;  
ERROR:  could not load library "/opt/dbs/pgsql/lib/plperl.so": Bad  
address
```

Another example is out of memory errors in the PostgreSQL server logs, with every memory allocation near or greater than 256 MB failing.

The overall cause of all these problems is the default bittedness and memory model used by the server process. By default, all binaries built on AIX are 32-bit. This does not depend upon hardware type or kernel in use. These 32-bit processes are limited to 4 GB of memory laid out in 256 MB segments using one of a few models. The default allows for less than 256 MB in the heap as it shares a single segment with the stack.

In the case of the `plperl` example, above, check your `umask` and the permissions of the binaries in your PostgreSQL installation. The binaries involved in that example were 32-bit and installed as mode 750 instead of 755. Due to the permissions being set in this fashion, only the owner or a member of the possessing group can load the library. Since it isn't world-readable, the loader places the object into the process' heap instead of the shared library segments where it would otherwise be placed.

The “ideal” solution for this is to use a 64-bit build of PostgreSQL, but that is not always practical, because systems with 32-bit processors can build, but not run, 64-bit binaries.

If a 32-bit binary is desired, set `LDR_CNTRL` to `MAXDATA=0xn0000000`, where  $1 \leq n \leq 8$ , before starting the PostgreSQL server, and try different values and `postgresql.conf` settings to find a configuration that works satisfactorily. This use of `LDR_CNTRL` tells AIX that you want the server to have `MAXDATA` bytes set aside for the heap, allocated in 256 MB segments. When you find a workable configuration, `ldedit` can be used to modify the binaries so that they default to using the desired heap size. PostgreSQL can also be rebuilt, passing `configure LDFLAGS="-Wl,-bmaxdata:0xn0000000"` to achieve the same effect.

For a 64-bit build, set `OBJECT_MODE` to 64 and pass `CC="gcc -m64"` and `LDFLAGS="-Wl,-bbigtoc"` to `configure`. (Options for `xlc` might differ.) If you omit the export of `OBJECT_MODE`, your build may fail with linker errors. When `OBJECT_MODE` is set, it tells AIX's build utilities such as `ar`, `as`, and `ld` what type of objects to default to handling.

By default, overcommit of paging space can happen. While we have not seen this occur, AIX will kill processes when it runs out of memory and the overcommit is accessed. The closest to this that we have seen is fork failing because the system decided that there was not enough memory for another process. Like many other parts of AIX, the paging space allocation method and out-of-memory kill is configurable on a system- or process-wide basis if this becomes a problem.

## 17.7.2. Cygwin

PostgreSQL can be built using Cygwin, a Linux-like environment for Windows, but that method is inferior to the native Windows build (see Chapter 18) and running a server under Cygwin is no longer recommended.

When building from source, proceed according to the Unix-style installation procedure (i.e., `./configure; make; etc.`), noting the following Cygwin-specific differences:

- Set your path to use the Cygwin bin directory before the Windows utilities. This will help prevent problems with compilation.
- The `adduser` command is not supported; use the appropriate user management application on Windows. Otherwise, skip this step.
- The `su` command is not supported; use `ssh` to simulate `su` on Windows. Otherwise, skip this step.
- OpenSSL is not supported.
- Start `cygserver` for shared memory support. To do this, enter the command `/usr/sbin/cygserver &`. This program needs to be running anytime you start the PostgreSQL server or initialize a database cluster (`initdb`). The default `cygserver` configuration may need to be changed (e.g., increase `SEMMNS`) to prevent PostgreSQL from failing due to a lack of system resources.
- Building might fail on some systems where a locale other than `C` is in use. To fix this, set the locale to `C` by doing `export LANG=C.utf8` before building, and then setting it back to the previous setting after you have installed PostgreSQL.
- The parallel regression tests (`make check`) can generate spurious regression test failures due to overflowing the `listen()` backlog queue which causes connection refused errors or hangs. You can limit the number of connections using the make variable `MAX_CONNECTIONS` thus:

```
make MAX_CONNECTIONS=5 check
```

(On some systems you can have up to about 10 simultaneous connections.)

It is possible to install `cygserver` and the PostgreSQL server as Windows NT services. For information on how to do this, please refer to the `README` document included with the PostgreSQL binary package on Cygwin. It is installed in the directory `/usr/share/doc/Cygwin`.

## 17.7.3. macOS

To build PostgreSQL from source on macOS, you will need to install Apple's command line developer tools, which can be done by issuing

```
xcode-select --install
```

(note that this will pop up a GUI dialog window for confirmation). You may or may not wish to also install Xcode.

On recent macOS releases, it's necessary to embed the “sysroot” path in the include switches used to find some system header files. This results in the outputs of the configure script varying depending on which SDK version was used during configure. That shouldn't pose any problem in simple scenarios, but if you are trying to do something like building an extension on a different machine than the server code was built on, you may need to force use of a different sysroot path. To do that, set `PG_SYSROOT`, for example

```
make PG_SYSROOT=/desired/path all
```

To find out the appropriate path on your machine, run

```
xcrun --show-sdk-path
```

Note that building an extension using a different sysroot version than was used to build the core server is not really recommended; in the worst case it could result in hard-to-debug ABI inconsistencies.

You can also select a non-default sysroot path when configuring, by specifying `PG_SYSROOT` to configure:

```
./configure ... PG_SYSROOT=/desired/path
```

This would primarily be useful to cross-compile for some other macOS version. There is no guarantee that the resulting executables will run on the current host.

To suppress the `-isysroot` options altogether, use

```
./configure ... PG_SYSROOT=none
```

(any nonexistent pathname will work). This might be useful if you wish to build with a non-Apple compiler, but beware that that case is not tested or supported by the PostgreSQL developers.

macOS's "System Integrity Protection" (SIP) feature breaks `make check`, because it prevents passing the needed setting of `DYLD_LIBRARY_PATH` down to the executables being tested. You can work around that by doing `make install` before `make check`. Most PostgreSQL developers just turn off SIP, though.

## 17.7.4. MinGW/Native Windows

PostgreSQL for Windows can be built using MinGW, a Unix-like build environment for Microsoft operating systems, or using Microsoft's Visual C++ compiler suite. The MinGW build procedure uses the normal build system described in this chapter; the Visual C++ build works completely differently and is described in Chapter 18.

The native Windows port requires a 32 or 64-bit version of Windows 2000 or later. Earlier operating systems do not have sufficient infrastructure (but Cygwin may be used on those). MinGW, the Unix-like build tools, and MSYS, a collection of Unix tools required to run shell scripts like `configure`, can be downloaded from <http://www.mingw.org/>. Neither is required to run the resulting binaries; they are needed only for creating the binaries.

To build 64 bit binaries using MinGW, install the 64 bit tool set from <https://mingw-w64.org/>, put its bin directory in the `PATH`, and run `configure` with the `--host=x86_64-w64-mingw32` option.

After you have everything installed, it is suggested that you run `psql` under `CMD . EXE`, as the MSYS console has buffering issues.

### 17.7.4.1. Collecting Crash Dumps on Windows

If PostgreSQL on Windows crashes, it has the ability to generate minidumps that can be used to track down the cause for the crash, similar to core dumps on Unix. These dumps can be read using the Windows Debugger Tools or using Visual Studio. To enable the generation of dumps on Windows, create a subdirectory named `crashdumps` inside the cluster data directory. The dumps will then be written into this directory with a unique name based on the identifier of the crashing process and the current time of the crash.

## 17.7.5. Solaris

PostgreSQL is well-supported on Solaris. The more up to date your operating system, the fewer issues you will experience.

### 17.7.5.1. Required Tools

You can build with either GCC or Sun's compiler suite. For better code optimization, Sun's compiler is strongly recommended on the SPARC architecture. If you are using Sun's compiler, be careful not to select `/usr/ucb/cc`; use `/opt/SUNWsprow/bin/cc`.

You can download Sun Studio from <https://www.oracle.com/technetwork/server-storage/solarisstudio/downloads/>. Many GNU tools are integrated into Solaris 10, or they are present on the Solaris companion CD. If you need packages for older versions of Solaris, you can find these tools at <http://www.sunfreeware.com>. If you prefer sources, look at <https://www.gnu.org/prep/ftp>.

### 17.7.5.2. configure Complains About a Failed Test Program

If `configure` complains about a failed test program, this is probably a case of the run-time linker being unable to find some library, probably `libz`, `libreadline` or some other non-standard library such as `libssl`. To point it to the right location, set the `LD_FLAGS` environment variable on the `configure` command line, e.g.,

```
configure ... LD_FLAGS="-R /usr/sfw/lib:/opt/sfw/lib:/usr/local/lib"
```

See the `ld` man page for more information.

### 17.7.5.3. Compiling for Optimal Performance

On the SPARC architecture, Sun Studio is strongly recommended for compilation. Try using the `-xO5` optimization flag to generate significantly faster binaries. Do not use any flags that modify behavior of floating-point operations and `errno` processing (e.g., `-fast`).

If you do not have a reason to use 64-bit binaries on SPARC, prefer the 32-bit version. The 64-bit operations are slower and 64-bit binaries are slower than the 32-bit variants. On the other hand, 32-bit code on the AMD64 CPU family is not native, so 32-bit code is significantly slower on that CPU family.

### 17.7.5.4. Using DTrace for Tracing PostgreSQL

Yes, using DTrace is possible. See Section 28.5 for further information.

If you see the linking of the `postgres` executable abort with an error message like:

```
Undefined                               first referenced
 symbol                               in file
AbortTransaction                       utils/probes.o
CommitTransaction                     utils/probes.o
ld: fatal: Symbol referencing errors. No output written to postgres
collect2: ld returned 1 exit status
make: *** [postgres] Error 1
```

your DTrace installation is too old to handle probes in static functions. You need Solaris 10u4 or newer to use DTrace.

---

# Chapter 18. Installation from Source Code on Windows

It is recommended that most users download the binary distribution for Windows, available as a graphical installer package from the PostgreSQL website at <https://www.postgresql.org/download/>. Building from source is only intended for people developing PostgreSQL or extensions.

There are several different ways of building PostgreSQL on Windows. The simplest way to build with Microsoft tools is to install Visual Studio 2022 and use the included compiler. It is also possible to build with the full Microsoft Visual C++ 2015 to 2022. In some cases that requires the installation of the Windows SDK in addition to the compiler.

It is also possible to build PostgreSQL using the GNU compiler tools provided by MinGW, or using Cygwin for older versions of Windows.

Building using MinGW or Cygwin uses the normal build system, see Chapter 17 and the specific notes in Section 17.7.4 and Section 17.7.2. To produce native 64 bit binaries in these environments, use the tools from MinGW-w64. These tools can also be used to cross-compile for 32 bit and 64 bit Windows targets on other hosts, such as Linux and macOS. Cygwin is not recommended for running a production server, and it should only be used for running on older versions of Windows where the native build does not work. The official binaries are built using Visual Studio.

Native builds of `psql` don't support command line editing. The Cygwin build does support command line editing, so it should be used where `psql` is needed for interactive use on Windows.

## 18.1. Building with Visual C++ or the Microsoft Windows SDK

PostgreSQL can be built using the Visual C++ compiler suite from Microsoft. These compilers can be either from Visual Studio, Visual Studio Express or some versions of the Microsoft Windows SDK. If you do not already have a Visual Studio environment set up, the easiest ways are to use the compilers from Visual Studio 2022 or those in the Windows SDK 10, which are both free downloads from Microsoft.

Both 32-bit and 64-bit builds are possible with the Microsoft Compiler suite. 32-bit PostgreSQL builds are possible with Visual Studio 2015 to Visual Studio 2022, as well as standalone Windows SDK releases 10 and above. 64-bit PostgreSQL builds are supported with Microsoft Windows SDK version 10 and above or Visual Studio 2015 and above.

The tools for building using Visual C++ or Platform SDK are in the `src\tools\msvc` directory. When building, make sure there are no tools from MinGW or Cygwin present in your system PATH. Also, make sure you have all the required Visual C++ tools available in the PATH. In Visual Studio, start the Visual Studio Command Prompt. If you wish to build a 64-bit version, you must use the 64-bit version of the command, and vice versa. Starting with Visual Studio 2017 this can be done from the command line using `VsDevCmd.bat`, see `-help` for the available options and their default values. `vsvars32.bat` is available in Visual Studio 2015 and earlier versions for the same purpose. From the Visual Studio Command Prompt, you can change the targeted CPU architecture, build type, and target OS by using the `vcvarsall.bat` command, e.g., `vcvarsall.bat x64 10.0.10240.0` to target Windows 10 with a 64-bit release build. See `-help` for the other options of `vcvarsall.bat`. All commands should be run from the `src\tools\msvc` directory.

Before you build, you can create the file `config.pl` to reflect any configuration options you want to change, or the paths to any third party libraries to use. The complete configuration is determined by first reading and parsing the file `config_default.pl`, and then apply any changes from `config.pl`. For example, to specify the location of your Python installation, put the following in `config.pl`:

```
$config->{python} = 'c:\python310';
```

You only need to specify those parameters that are different from what's in `config_default.pl`.

If you need to set any other environment variables, create a file called `buildenv.pl` and put the required commands there. For example, to add the path for bison when it's not in the `PATH`, create a file containing:

```
$ENV{PATH}=$ENV{PATH} . ' ;c:\some\where\bison\bin' ;
```

To pass additional command line arguments to the Visual Studio build command (`msbuild` or `vcbuild`):

```
$ENV{MSBFLAGS}="/m" ;
```

## 18.1.1. Requirements

The following additional products are required to build PostgreSQL. Use the `config.pl` file to specify which directories the libraries are available in.

### Microsoft Windows SDK

If your build environment doesn't ship with a supported version of the Microsoft Windows SDK it is recommended that you upgrade to the latest version (currently version 10), available for download from <https://www.microsoft.com/download>.

You must always include the Windows Headers and Libraries part of the SDK. If you install a Windows SDK including the Visual C++ Compilers, you don't need Visual Studio to build. Note that as of Version 8.0a the Windows SDK no longer ships with a complete command-line build environment.

### ActiveState Perl

ActiveState Perl is required to run the build generation scripts. MinGW or Cygwin Perl will not work. It must also be present in the `PATH`. Binaries can be downloaded from <https://www.activestate.com> (Note: version 5.14 or later is required, the free Standard Distribution is sufficient).

The following additional products are not required to get started, but are required to build the complete package. Use the `config.pl` file to specify which directories the libraries are available in.

### ActiveState TCL

Required for building PL/Tcl (Note: version 8.4 is required, the free Standard Distribution is sufficient).

### Bison and Flex

Bison and Flex are required to build from Git, but not required when building from a release file. Only Bison versions 2.3 and later will work. Flex must be version 2.5.35 or later.

Both Bison and Flex are included in the msys tool suite, available from <http://www.mingw.org/wiki/MSYS> as part of the MinGW compiler suite.

You will need to add the directory containing `flex.exe` and `bison.exe` to the `PATH` environment variable in `buildenv.pl` unless they are already in `PATH`. In the case of MinGW, the directory is the `\msys\1.0\bin` subdirectory of your MinGW installation directory.

### Note

The Bison distribution from GnuWin32 appears to have a bug that causes Bison to malfunction when installed in a directory with spaces in the name, such as the default location on English installations `C:\Program Files\GnuWin32`. Consider installing into `C:\GnuWin32` or use the NTFS short name path to GnuWin32 in your PATH environment setting (e.g., `C:\PROGRA~1\GnuWin32`).

#### Diff

Diff is required to run the regression tests, and can be downloaded from <http://gnuwin32.sourceforge.net>.

#### Gettext

Gettext is required to build with NLS support, and can be downloaded from <http://gnuwin32.sourceforge.net>. Note that binaries, dependencies and developer files are all needed.

#### MIT Kerberos

Required for GSSAPI authentication support. MIT Kerberos can be downloaded from <https://web.mit.edu/Kerberos/dist/index.html>.

#### libxml2 and libxslt

Required for XML support. Binaries can be downloaded from <https://zlatkovic.com/pub/libxml> or source from <http://xmlsoft.org>. Note that libxml2 requires iconv, which is available from the same download location.

#### LZ4

Required for supporting LZ4 compression. Binaries and source can be downloaded from <https://github.com/lz4/lz4/releases>.

#### Zstandard

Required for supporting Zstandard compression. Binaries and source can be downloaded from <https://github.com/facebook/zstd/releases>.

#### OpenSSL

Required for SSL support. Binaries can be downloaded from <https://slproweb.com/products/Win32OpenSSL.html> or source from <https://www.openssl.org>.

#### ossdp-uuid

Required for UUID-OSSP support (contrib only). Source can be downloaded from <http://www.ossdp.org/pkg/lib/uuid/>.

#### Python

Required for building PL/Python. Binaries can be downloaded from <https://www.python.org>.

#### zlib

Required for compression support in `pg_dump` and `pg_restore`. Binaries can be downloaded from <https://www.zlib.net>.

## 18.1.2. Special Considerations for 64-Bit Windows

PostgreSQL will only build for the x64 architecture on 64-bit Windows.



Mixing 32- and 64-bit versions in the same build tree is not supported. The build system will automatically detect if it's running in a 32- or 64-bit environment, and build PostgreSQL accordingly. For this reason, it is important to start the correct command prompt before building.

To use a server-side third party library such as Python or OpenSSL, this library *must* also be 64-bit. There is no support for loading a 32-bit library in a 64-bit server. Several of the third party libraries that PostgreSQL supports may only be available in 32-bit versions, in which case they cannot be used with 64-bit PostgreSQL.

### 18.1.3. Building

To build all of PostgreSQL in release configuration (the default), run the command:

```
build
```

To build all of PostgreSQL in debug configuration, run the command:

```
build DEBUG
```

To build just a single project, for example `psql`, run the commands:

```
build psql  
build DEBUG psql
```

To change the default build configuration to debug, put the following in the `buildenv.pl` file:

```
$ENV{CONFIG}="Debug" ;
```

It is also possible to build from inside the Visual Studio GUI. In this case, you need to run:

```
perl mkvcbuild.pl
```

from the command prompt, and then open the generated `pgsql.sln` (in the root directory of the source tree) in Visual Studio.

### 18.1.4. Cleaning and Installing

Most of the time, the automatic dependency tracking in Visual Studio will handle changed files. But if there have been large changes, you may need to clean the installation. To do this, simply run the `clean.bat` command, which will automatically clean out all generated files. You can also run it with the `dist` parameter, in which case it will behave like **make distclean** and remove the flex/bison output files as well.

By default, all files are written into a subdirectory of the `debug` or `release` directories. To install these files using the standard layout, and also generate the files required to initialize and use the database, run the command:

```
install c:\destination\directory
```

If you want to install only the client applications and interface libraries, then you can use these commands:

```
install c:\destination\directory client
```

## 18.1.5. Running the Regression Tests

To run the regression tests, make sure you have completed the build of all required parts first. Also, make sure that the DLLs required to load all parts of the system (such as the Perl and Python DLLs for the procedural languages) are present in the system path. If they are not, set it through the `buildenv.pl` file. To run the tests, run one of the following commands from the `src\tools\msvc` directory:

```
vcregress check  
vcregress installcheck  
vcregress plcheck  
vcregress contribcheck  
vcregress modulescheck  
vcregress ecpgcheck  
vcregress isolationcheck  
vcregress bincheck  
vcregress recoverycheck  
vcregress taptest
```

To change the schedule used (default is parallel), append it to the command line like:

```
vcregress check serial
```

`vcregress taptest` can be used to run the TAP tests of a target directory, like:

```
vcregress taptest src\bin\initdb\
```

For more information about the regression tests, see Chapter 33.

Running the regression tests on client programs with `vcregress bincheck`, on recovery tests with `vcregress recoverycheck`, or TAP tests specified with `vcregress taptest` requires an additional Perl module to be installed:

IPC::Run

As of this writing, `IPC::Run` is not included in the ActiveState Perl installation, nor in the ActiveState Perl Package Manager (PPM) library. To install, download the `IPC-Run-<version>.tar.gz` source archive from CPAN, at <https://metacpan.org/dist/IPC-Run>, and uncompress. Edit the `buildenv.pl` file, and add a `PERL5LIB` variable to point to the `lib` subdirectory from the extracted archive. For example:

```
$ENV{PERL5LIB}=$ENV{PERL5LIB} . ' ;c:\IPC-Run-0.94\lib' ;
```

The TAP tests run with `vcregress` support the environment variables `PROVE_TESTS`, that is expanded automatically using the name patterns given, and `PROVE_FLAGS`. These can be set on a Windows terminal, before running `vcregress`:

```
set PROVE_FLAGS=--timer --jobs 2  
set PROVE_TESTS=t/020*.pl t/010*.pl
```

It is also possible to set up those parameters in `buildenv.pl`:

```
$ENV{PROVE_FLAGS}='--timer --jobs 2'  
$ENV{PROVE_TESTS}='t/020*.pl t/010*.pl'
```

Additionally, the behavior of TAP tests can be controlled by a set of environment variables, see Section 33.4.1.

Some of the TAP tests depend on a set of external commands that would optionally trigger tests related to them. Each one of those variables can be set or unset in `buildenv.pl`:

#### GZIP\_PROGRAM

Path to a `gzip` command. The default is `gzip`, which will search for a command by that name in the configured `PATH`.

#### LZ4

Path to a `lz4` command. The default is `lz4`, which will search for a command by that name in the configured `PATH`.

#### OPENSSL

Path to an `openssl` command. The default is `openssl`, which will search for a command by that name in the configured `PATH`.

#### TAR

Path to a `tar` command. The default is `tar`, which will search for a command by that name in the configured `PATH`.

#### ZSTD

Path to a `zstd` command. The default is `zstd`, which will search for a command by that name in the configured `PATH`.

---

# Chapter 19. Server Setup and Operation

This chapter discusses how to set up and run the database server, and its interactions with the operating system.

The directions in this chapter assume that you are working with plain PostgreSQL without any additional infrastructure, for example a copy that you built from source according to the directions in the preceding chapters. If you are working with a pre-packaged or vendor-supplied version of PostgreSQL, it is likely that the packager has made special provisions for installing and starting the database server according to your system's conventions. Consult the package-level documentation for details.

## 19.1. The PostgreSQL User Account

As with any server daemon that is accessible to the outside world, it is advisable to run PostgreSQL under a separate user account. This user account should only own the data that is managed by the server, and should not be shared with other daemons. (For example, using the user *nobody* is a bad idea.) In particular, it is advisable that this user account not own the PostgreSQL executable files, to ensure that a compromised server process could not modify those executables.

Pre-packaged versions of PostgreSQL will typically create a suitable user account automatically during package installation.

To add a Unix user account to your system, look for a command `useradd` or `adduser`. The user name `postgres` is often used, and is assumed throughout this book, but you can use another name if you like.

## 19.2. Creating a Database Cluster

Before you can do anything, you must initialize a database storage area on disk. We call this a *database cluster*. (The SQL standard uses the term *catalog cluster*.) A database cluster is a collection of databases that is managed by a single instance of a running database server. After initialization, a database cluster will contain a database named `postgres`, which is meant as a default database for use by utilities, users and third party applications. The database server itself does not require the `postgres` database to exist, but many external utility programs assume it exists. There are two more databases created within each cluster during initialization, named `template1` and `template0`. As the names suggest, these will be used as templates for subsequently-created databases; they should not be used for actual work. (See Chapter 23 for information about creating new databases within a cluster.)

In file system terms, a database cluster is a single directory under which all data will be stored. We call this the *data directory* or *data area*. It is completely up to you where you choose to store your data. There is no default, although locations such as `/usr/local/pgsql/data` or `/var/lib/pgsql/data` are popular. The data directory must be initialized before being used, using the program `initdb` which is installed with PostgreSQL.

If you are using a pre-packaged version of PostgreSQL, it may well have a specific convention for where to place the data directory, and it may also provide a script for creating the data directory. In that case you should use that script in preference to running `initdb` directly. Consult the package-level documentation for details.

To initialize a database cluster manually, run `initdb` and specify the desired file system location of the database cluster with the `-D` option, for example:

```
$ initdb -D /usr/local/pgsql/data
```

Note that you must execute this command while logged into the PostgreSQL user account, which is described in the previous section.

### Tip

As an alternative to the `-D` option, you can set the environment variable `PGDATA`.

Alternatively, you can run `initdb` via the `pg_ctl` program like so:

```
$ pg_ctl -D /usr/local/pgsql/data initdb
```

This may be more intuitive if you are using `pg_ctl` for starting and stopping the server (see Section 19.3), so that `pg_ctl` would be the sole command you use for managing the database server instance.

`initdb` will attempt to create the directory you specify if it does not already exist. Of course, this will fail if `initdb` does not have permissions to write in the parent directory. It's generally recommendable that the PostgreSQL user own not just the data directory but its parent directory as well, so that this should not be a problem. If the desired parent directory doesn't exist either, you will need to create it first, using root privileges if the grandparent directory isn't writable. So the process might look like this:

```
root# mkdir /usr/local/pgsql
root# chown postgres /usr/local/pgsql
root# su postgres
postgres$ initdb -D /usr/local/pgsql/data
```

`initdb` will refuse to run if the data directory exists and already contains files; this is to prevent accidentally overwriting an existing installation.

Because the data directory contains all the data stored in the database, it is essential that it be secured from unauthorized access. `initdb` therefore revokes access permissions from everyone but the PostgreSQL user, and optionally, group. Group access, when enabled, is read-only. This allows an unprivileged user in the same group as the cluster owner to take a backup of the cluster data or perform other operations that only require read access.

Note that enabling or disabling group access on an existing cluster requires the cluster to be shut down and the appropriate mode to be set on all directories and files before restarting PostgreSQL. Otherwise, a mix of modes might exist in the data directory. For clusters that allow access only by the owner, the appropriate modes are 0700 for directories and 0600 for files. For clusters that also allow reads by the group, the appropriate modes are 0750 for directories and 0640 for files.

However, while the directory contents are secure, the default client authentication setup allows any local user to connect to the database and even become the database superuser. If you do not trust other local users, we recommend you use one of `initdb`'s `-W`, `--pwprompt` or `--pwfile` options to assign a password to the database superuser. Also, specify `-A scram-sha-256` so that the default `trust` authentication mode is not used; or modify the generated `pg_hba.conf` file after running `initdb`, but *before* you start the server for the first time. (Other reasonable approaches include using peer authentication or file system permissions to restrict connections. See Chapter 21 for more information.)

`initdb` also initializes the default locale for the database cluster. Normally, it will just take the locale settings in the environment and apply them to the initialized database. It is possible to specify a different locale for the database; more information about that can be found in Section 24.1. The default sort order used within the particular database cluster is set by `initdb`, and while you can create new databases using different sort order, the order used in the template databases that `initdb` creates cannot be changed without dropping and recreating them. There is also a performance impact for using locales other than `C` or `POSIX`. Therefore, it is important to make this choice correctly the first time.

`initdb` also sets the default character set encoding for the database cluster. Normally this should be chosen to match the locale setting. For details see Section 24.3.

Non-C and non-POSIX locales rely on the operating system's collation library for character set ordering. This controls the ordering of keys stored in indexes. For this reason, a cluster cannot switch to an incompatible collation library version, either through snapshot restore, binary streaming replication, a different operating system, or an operating system upgrade.

## 19.2.1. Use of Secondary File Systems

Many installations create their database clusters on file systems (volumes) other than the machine's "root" volume. If you choose to do this, it is not advisable to try to use the secondary volume's topmost directory (mount point) as the data directory. Best practice is to create a directory within the mount-point directory that is owned by the PostgreSQL user, and then create the data directory within that. This avoids permissions problems, particularly for operations such as `pg_upgrade`, and it also ensures clean failures if the secondary volume is taken offline.

## 19.2.2. File Systems

Generally, any file system with POSIX semantics can be used for PostgreSQL. Users prefer different file systems for a variety of reasons, including vendor support, performance, and familiarity. Experience suggests that, all other things being equal, one should not expect major performance or behavior changes merely from switching file systems or making minor file system configuration changes.

### 19.2.2.1. NFS

It is possible to use an NFS file system for storing the PostgreSQL data directory. PostgreSQL does nothing special for NFS file systems, meaning it assumes NFS behaves exactly like locally-connected drives. PostgreSQL does not use any functionality that is known to have nonstandard behavior on NFS, such as file locking.

The only firm requirement for using NFS with PostgreSQL is that the file system is mounted using the `hard` option. With the `hard` option, processes can "hang" indefinitely if there are network problems, so this configuration will require a careful monitoring setup. The `soft` option will interrupt system calls in case of network problems, but PostgreSQL will not repeat system calls interrupted in this way, so any such interruption will result in an I/O error being reported.

It is not necessary to use the `sync` mount option. The behavior of the `async` option is sufficient, since PostgreSQL issues `fsync` calls at appropriate times to flush the write caches. (This is analogous to how it works on a local file system.) However, it is strongly recommended to use the `sync` export option on the NFS *server* on systems where it exists (mainly Linux). Otherwise, an `fsync` or equivalent on the NFS client is not actually guaranteed to reach permanent storage on the server, which could cause corruption similar to running with the parameter `fsync off`. The defaults of these mount and export options differ between vendors and versions, so it is recommended to check and perhaps specify them explicitly in any case to avoid any ambiguity.

In some cases, an external storage product can be accessed either via NFS or a lower-level protocol such as iSCSI. In the latter case, the storage appears as a block device and any available file system can be created on it. That approach might relieve the DBA from having to deal with some of the idiosyncrasies of NFS, but of course the complexity of managing remote storage then happens at other levels.

## 19.3. Starting the Database Server

Before anyone can access the database, you must start the database server. The database server program is called `postgres`.

If you are using a pre-packaged version of PostgreSQL, it almost certainly includes provisions for running the server as a background task according to the conventions of your operating system. Using

the package's infrastructure to start the server will be much less work than figuring out how to do this yourself. Consult the package-level documentation for details.

The bare-bones way to start the server manually is just to invoke `postgres` directly, specifying the location of the data directory with the `-D` option, for example:

```
$ postgres -D /usr/local/pgsql/data
```

which will leave the server running in the foreground. This must be done while logged into the PostgreSQL user account. Without `-D`, the server will try to use the data directory named by the environment variable `PGDATA`. If that variable is not provided either, it will fail.

Normally it is better to start `postgres` in the background. For this, use the usual Unix shell syntax:

```
$ postgres -D /usr/local/pgsql/data >logfile 2>&1 &
```

It is important to store the server's stdout and stderr output somewhere, as shown above. It will help for auditing purposes and to diagnose problems. (See Section 25.3 for a more thorough discussion of log file handling.)

The `postgres` program also takes a number of other command-line options. For more information, see the `postgres` reference page and Chapter 20 below.

This shell syntax can get tedious quickly. Therefore the wrapper program `pg_ctl` is provided to simplify some tasks. For example:

```
pg_ctl start -l logfile
```

will start the server in the background and put the output into the named log file. The `-D` option has the same meaning here as for `postgres`. `pg_ctl` is also capable of stopping the server.

Normally, you will want to start the database server when the computer boots. Autostart scripts are operating-system-specific. There are a few example scripts distributed with PostgreSQL in the `contrib/start-scripts` directory. Installing one will require root privileges.

Different systems have different conventions for starting up daemons at boot time. Many systems have a file `/etc/rc.local` or `/etc/rc.d/rc.local`. Others use `init.d` or `rc.d` directories. Whatever you do, the server must be run by the PostgreSQL user account *and not by root* or any other user. Therefore you probably should form your commands using `su postgres -c '...'`. For example:

```
su postgres -c 'pg_ctl start -D /usr/local/pgsql/data -l serverlog'
```

Here are a few more operating-system-specific suggestions. (In each case be sure to use the proper installation directory and user name where we show generic values.)

- For FreeBSD, look at the file `contrib/start-scripts/freebsd` in the PostgreSQL source distribution.
- On OpenBSD, add the following lines to the file `/etc/rc.local`:

```
if [ -x /usr/local/pgsql/bin/pg_ctl -a -x /usr/local/pgsql/bin/
postgres ]; then
    su -l postgres -c '/usr/local/pgsql/bin/pg_ctl start -s -l /
var/postgresql/log -D /usr/local/pgsql/data'
    echo -n ' postgresql'
```

fi

- On Linux systems either add

```
/usr/local/pgsql/bin/pg_ctl start -l logfile -D /usr/local/pgsql/data
```

to `/etc/rc.d/rc.local` or `/etc/rc.local` or look at the file `contrib/start-scripts/linux` in the PostgreSQL source distribution.

When using `systemd`, you can use the following service unit file (e.g., at `/etc/systemd/system/postgresql.service`):

```
[Unit]
Description=PostgreSQL database server
Documentation=man:postgres(1)
After=network-online.target
Wants=network-online.target

[Service]
Type=notify
User=postgres
ExecStart=/usr/local/pgsql/bin/postgres -D /usr/local/pgsql/data
ExecReload=/bin/kill -HUP $MAINPID
KillMode=mixed
KillSignal=SIGINT
TimeoutSec=infinity

[Install]
WantedBy=multi-user.target
```

Using `Type=notify` requires that the server binary was built with `configure --with-systemd`.

Consider carefully the timeout setting. `systemd` has a default timeout of 90 seconds as of this writing and will kill a process that does not report readiness within that time. But a PostgreSQL server that might have to perform crash recovery at startup could take much longer to become ready. The suggested value of `infinity` disables the timeout logic.

- On NetBSD, use either the FreeBSD or Linux start scripts, depending on preference.
- On Solaris, create a file called `/etc/init.d/postgresql` that contains the following line:

```
su - postgres -c "/usr/local/pgsql/bin/pg_ctl start -l logfile -D /usr/local/pgsql/data"
```

Then, create a symbolic link to it in `/etc/rc3.d` as `S99postgresql`.

While the server is running, its PID is stored in the file `postmaster.pid` in the data directory. This is used to prevent multiple server instances from running in the same data directory and can also be used for shutting down the server.

## 19.3.1. Server Start-up Failures

There are several common reasons the server might fail to start. Check the server's log file, or start it by hand (without redirecting standard output or standard error) and see what error messages appear. Below we explain some of the most common error messages in more detail.



```
LOG:  could not bind IPv4 address "127.0.0.1": Address already in
      use
HINT:  Is another postmaster already running on port 5432? If not,
      wait a few seconds and retry.
FATAL:  could not create any TCP/IP sockets
```

This usually means just what it suggests: you tried to start another server on the same port where one is already running. However, if the kernel error message is not `Address already in use` or some variant of that, there might be a different problem. For example, trying to start a server on a reserved port number might draw something like:

```
$ postgres -p 666
LOG:  could not bind IPv4 address "127.0.0.1": Permission denied
HINT:  Is another postmaster already running on port 666? If not,
      wait a few seconds and retry.
FATAL:  could not create any TCP/IP sockets
```

A message like:

```
FATAL:  could not create shared memory segment: Invalid argument
DETAIL:  Failed system call was shmget(key=5440001,
      size=4011376640, 03600).
```

probably means your kernel's limit on the size of shared memory is smaller than the work area PostgreSQL is trying to create (4011376640 bytes in this example). This is only likely to happen if you have set `shared_memory_type` to `sysv`. In that case, you can try starting the server with a smaller-than-normal number of buffers (`shared_buffers`), or reconfigure your kernel to increase the allowed shared memory size. You might also see this message when trying to start multiple servers on the same machine, if their total space requested exceeds the kernel limit.

An error like:

```
FATAL:  could not create semaphores: No space left on device
DETAIL:  Failed system call was semget(5440126, 17, 03600).
```

does *not* mean you've run out of disk space. It means your kernel's limit on the number of System V semaphores is smaller than the number PostgreSQL wants to create. As above, you might be able to work around the problem by starting the server with a reduced number of allowed connections (`max_connections`), but you'll eventually want to increase the kernel limit.

Details about configuring System V IPC facilities are given in Section 19.4.1.

## 19.3.2. Client Connection Problems

Although the error conditions possible on the client side are quite varied and application-dependent, a few of them might be directly related to how the server was started. Conditions other than those shown below should be documented with the respective client application.

```
psql: error: connection to server at
      "server.joe.com" (123.123.123.123), port 5432 failed: Connection
      refused
      Is the server running on that host and accepting TCP/IP
      connections?
```

This is the generic “I couldn’t find a server to talk to” failure. It looks like the above when TCP/IP communication is attempted. A common mistake is to forget to configure the server to allow TCP/IP connections.

Alternatively, you might get this when attempting Unix-domain socket communication to a local server:

```
psql: error: connection to server on socket "/tmp/.s.PGSQL.5432"
failed: No such file or directory
        Is the server running locally and accepting connections on
        that socket?
```

If the server is indeed running, check that the client’s idea of the socket path (here /tmp) agrees with the server’s `unix_socket_directories` setting.

A connection failure message always shows the server address or socket path name, which is useful in verifying that the client is trying to connect to the right place. If there is in fact no server listening there, the kernel error message will typically be either `Connection refused` or `No such file or directory`, as illustrated. (It is important to realize that `Connection refused` in this context does *not* mean that the server got your connection request and rejected it. That case will produce a different message, as shown in Section 21.15.) Other error messages such as `Connection timed out` might indicate more fundamental problems, like lack of network connectivity, or a firewall blocking the connection.

## 19.4. Managing Kernel Resources

PostgreSQL can sometimes exhaust various operating system resource limits, especially when multiple copies of the server are running on the same system, or in very large installations. This section explains the kernel resources used by PostgreSQL and the steps you can take to resolve problems related to kernel resource consumption.

### 19.4.1. Shared Memory and Semaphores

PostgreSQL requires the operating system to provide inter-process communication (IPC) features, specifically shared memory and semaphores. Unix-derived systems typically provide “System V” IPC, “POSIX” IPC, or both. Windows has its own implementation of these features and is not discussed here.

By default, PostgreSQL allocates a very small amount of System V shared memory, as well as a much larger amount of anonymous mmap shared memory. Alternatively, a single large System V shared memory region can be used (see `shared_memory_type`). In addition a significant number of semaphores, which can be either System V or POSIX style, are created at server startup. Currently, POSIX semaphores are used on Linux and FreeBSD systems while other platforms use System V semaphores.

System V IPC features are typically constrained by system-wide allocation limits. When PostgreSQL exceeds one of these limits, the server will refuse to start and should leave an instructive error message describing the problem and what to do about it. (See also Section 19.3.1.) The relevant kernel parameters are named consistently across different systems; Table 19.1 gives an overview. The methods to set them, however, vary. Suggestions for some platforms are given below.

**Table 19.1. System V IPC Parameters**

Name	Description	Values needed to run one PostgreSQL instance
SHMMAX	Maximum size of shared memory segment (bytes)	at least 1kB, but the default is usually much higher

Name	Description	Values needed to run one PostgreSQL instance
SHMMIN	Minimum size of shared memory segment (bytes)	1
SHMALL	Total amount of shared memory available (bytes or pages)	same as SHMMAX if bytes, or <code>ceil (SHMMAX / PAGE_SIZE)</code> if pages, plus room for other applications
SHMSEG	Maximum number of shared memory segments per process	only 1 segment is needed, but the default is much higher
SHMMNI	Maximum number of shared memory segments system-wide	like SHMSEG plus room for other applications
SEMMNI	Maximum number of semaphore identifiers (i.e., sets)	at least <code>ceil ( (max_connections + autovacuum_max_workers + max_wal_senders + max_worker_processes + 5) / 16 )</code> plus room for other applications
SEMMNS	Maximum number of semaphores system-wide	<code>ceil ( (max_connections + autovacuum_max_workers + max_wal_senders + max_worker_processes + 5) / 16 ) * 17</code> plus room for other applications
SEMMSL	Maximum number of semaphores per set	at least 17
SEMAP	Number of entries in semaphore map	see text
SEVMX	Maximum value of semaphore	at least 1000 (The default is often 32767; do not change unless necessary)

PostgreSQL requires a few bytes of System V shared memory (typically 48 bytes, on 64-bit platforms) for each copy of the server. On most modern operating systems, this amount can easily be allocated. However, if you are running many copies of the server or you explicitly configure the server to use large amounts of System V shared memory (see `shared_memory_type` and `dynamic_shared_memory_type`), it may be necessary to increase `SHMALL`, which is the total amount of System V shared memory system-wide. Note that `SHMALL` is measured in pages rather than bytes on many systems.

Less likely to cause problems is the minimum size for shared memory segments (`SHMMIN`), which should be at most approximately 32 bytes for PostgreSQL (it is usually just 1). The maximum number of segments system-wide (`SHMMNI`) or per-process (`SHMSEG`) are unlikely to cause a problem unless your system has them set to zero.

When using System V semaphores, PostgreSQL uses one semaphore per allowed connection (`max_connections`), allowed autovacuum worker process (`autovacuum_max_workers`) and allowed background process (`max_worker_processes`), in sets of 16. Each such set will also contain a 17th semaphore which contains a “magic number”, to detect collision with semaphore sets used by other applications. The maximum number of semaphores in the system is set by `SEMMNS`, which consequently must be at least as high as `max_connections` plus `autovacuum_max_workers` plus `max_wal_senders`, plus `max_worker_processes`, plus one extra for each 16 allowed connections plus workers (see the formula in Table 19.1). The parameter `SEMMNI` determines the limit on the number of semaphore sets that can exist on the system at one time. Hence this parameter must be at least `ceil ( (max_connections + autovacuum_max_workers + max_wal_senders + max_worker_processes + 5) / 16 )`. Lowering the number of allowed connections is a temporary workaround for failures, which are usually confusingly worded “No space left on device”, from the function `semget`.

In some cases it might also be necessary to increase `SEMAP` to be at least on the order of `SEMMNS`. If the system has this parameter (many do not), it defines the size of the semaphore resource map, in which each contiguous block of available semaphores needs an entry. When a semaphore set is freed it

is either added to an existing entry that is adjacent to the freed block or it is registered under a new map entry. If the map is full, the freed semaphores get lost (until reboot). Fragmentation of the semaphore space could over time lead to fewer available semaphores than there should be.

Various other settings related to “semaphore undo”, such as `SEMMNU` and `SEMUME`, do not affect PostgreSQL.

When using POSIX semaphores, the number of semaphores needed is the same as for System V, that is one semaphore per allowed connection (`max_connections`), allowed autovacuum worker process (`autovacuum_max_workers`) and allowed background process (`max_worker_processes`). On the platforms where this option is preferred, there is no specific kernel limit on the number of POSIX semaphores.

## AIX

It should not be necessary to do any special configuration for such parameters as `SHMMAX`, as it appears this is configured to allow all memory to be used as shared memory. That is the sort of configuration commonly used for other databases such as DB/2.

It might, however, be necessary to modify the global `ulimit` information in `/etc/security/limits`, as the default hard limits for file sizes (`fsize`) and numbers of files (`nofiles`) might be too low.

## FreeBSD

The default shared memory settings are usually good enough, unless you have set `shared_memory_type` to `sysv`. System V semaphores are not used on this platform.

The default IPC settings can be changed using the `sysctl` or `loader` interfaces. The following parameters can be set using `sysctl`:

```
# sysctl kern.ipc.shmall=32768
# sysctl kern.ipc.shmmax=134217728
```

To make these settings persist over reboots, modify `/etc/sysctl.conf`.

If you have set `shared_memory_type` to `sysv`, you might also want to configure your kernel to lock System V shared memory into RAM and prevent it from being paged out to swap. This can be accomplished using the `sysctl` setting `kern.ipc.shm_use_phys`.

If running in a FreeBSD jail, you should set its `sysvshm` parameter to `new`, so that it has its own separate System V shared memory namespace. (Before FreeBSD 11.0, it was necessary to enable shared access to the host's IPC namespace from jails, and take measures to avoid collisions.)

## NetBSD

The default shared memory settings are usually good enough, unless you have set `shared_memory_type` to `sysv`. You will usually want to increase `kern.ipc.semni` and `kern.ipc.semns`, as NetBSD's default settings for these are uncomfortably small.

IPC parameters can be adjusted using `sysctl`, for example:

```
# sysctl -w kern.ipc.semni=100
```

To make these settings persist over reboots, modify `/etc/sysctl.conf`.

If you have set `shared_memory_type` to `sysv`, you might also want to configure your kernel to lock System V shared memory into RAM and prevent it from being paged out to swap. This can be accomplished using the `sysctl` setting `kern.ipc.shm_use_phys`.

## OpenBSD

The default shared memory settings are usually good enough, unless you have set `shared_memory_type` to `sysv`. You will usually want to increase `kern.seminfo.semmni` and `kern.seminfo.semmns`, as OpenBSD's default settings for these are uncomfortably small.

IPC parameters can be adjusted using `sysctl`, for example:

```
# sysctl kern.seminfo.semmni=100
```

To make these settings persist over reboots, modify `/etc/sysctl.conf`.

## Linux

The default shared memory settings are usually good enough, unless you have set `shared_memory_type` to `sysv`, and even then only on older kernel versions that shipped with low defaults. System V semaphores are not used on this platform.

The shared memory size settings can be changed via the `sysctl` interface. For example, to allow 16 GB:

```
$ sysctl -w kernel.shmmax=17179869184
$ sysctl -w kernel.shmall=4194304
```

To make these settings persist over reboots, see `/etc/sysctl.conf`.

## macOS

The default shared memory and semaphore settings are usually good enough, unless you have set `shared_memory_type` to `sysv`.

The recommended method for configuring shared memory in macOS is to create a file named `/etc/sysctl.conf`, containing variable assignments such as:

```
kern.sysv.shmmax=4194304
kern.sysv.shmmin=1
kern.sysv.shmmni=32
kern.sysv.shmseg=8
kern.sysv.shmall=1024
```

Note that in some macOS versions, *all five* shared-memory parameters must be set in `/etc/sysctl.conf`, else the values will be ignored.

SHMMAX can only be set to a multiple of 4096.

SHMALL is measured in 4 kB pages on this platform.

It is possible to change all but SHMMNI on the fly, using `sysctl`. But it's still best to set up your preferred values via `/etc/sysctl.conf`, so that the values will be kept across reboots.

## Solaris illumos

The default shared memory and semaphore settings are usually good enough for most PostgreSQL applications. Solaris defaults to a SHMMAX of one-quarter of system RAM. To further adjust this setting, use a project setting associated with the `postgres` user. For example, run the following as root:

```
projadd -c "PostgreSQL DB User" -K "project.max-shm-  
memory=(privileged,8GB,deny)" -U postgres -G postgres  
user.postgres
```

This command adds the `user.postgres` project and sets the shared memory maximum for the `postgres` user to 8GB, and takes effect the next time that user logs in, or when you restart PostgreSQL (not reload). The above assumes that PostgreSQL is run by the `postgres` user in the `postgres` group. No server reboot is required.

Other recommended kernel setting changes for database servers which will have a large number of connections are:

```
project.max-shm-ids=(priv,32768,deny)  
project.max-sem-ids=(priv,4096,deny)  
project.max-msg-ids=(priv,4096,deny)
```

Additionally, if you are running PostgreSQL inside a zone, you may need to raise the zone resource usage limits as well. See "Chapter2: Projects and Tasks" in the *System Administrator's Guide* for more information on projects and `prctl`.

## 19.4.2. systemd RemoveIPC

If `systemd` is in use, some care must be taken that IPC resources (including shared memory) are not prematurely removed by the operating system. This is especially of concern when installing PostgreSQL from source. Users of distribution packages of PostgreSQL are less likely to be affected, as the `postgres` user is then normally created as a system user.

The setting `RemoveIPC` in `logind.conf` controls whether IPC objects are removed when a user fully logs out. System users are exempt. This setting defaults to on in stock `systemd`, but some operating system distributions default it to off.

A typical observed effect when this setting is on is that shared memory objects used for parallel query execution are removed at apparently random times, leading to errors and warnings while attempting to open and remove them, like

```
WARNING: could not remove shared memory segment "/  
PostgreSQL.1450751626": No such file or directory
```

Different types of IPC objects (shared memory vs. semaphores, System V vs. POSIX) are treated slightly differently by `systemd`, so one might observe that some IPC resources are not removed in the same way as others. But it is not advisable to rely on these subtle differences.

A “user logging out” might happen as part of a maintenance job or manually when an administrator logs in as the `postgres` user or something similar, so it is hard to prevent in general.

What is a “system user” is determined at `systemd` compile time from the `SYS_UID_MAX` setting in `/etc/login.defs`.

Packaging and deployment scripts should be careful to create the `postgres` user as a system user by using `useradd -r`, `adduser --system`, or equivalent.

Alternatively, if the user account was created incorrectly or cannot be changed, it is recommended to set

```
RemoveIPC=no
```

in `/etc/systemd/logind.conf` or another appropriate configuration file.

**Caution**

At least one of these two things has to be ensured, or the PostgreSQL server will be very unreliable.

### 19.4.3. Resource Limits

Unix-like operating systems enforce various kinds of resource limits that might interfere with the operation of your PostgreSQL server. Of particular importance are limits on the number of processes per user, the number of open files per process, and the amount of memory available to each process. Each of these have a “hard” and a “soft” limit. The soft limit is what actually counts but it can be changed by the user up to the hard limit. The hard limit can only be changed by the root user. The system call `setrlimit` is responsible for setting these parameters. The shell's built-in command `ulimit` (Bourne shells) or `limit` (csh) is used to control the resource limits from the command line. On BSD-derived systems the file `/etc/login.conf` controls the various resource limits set during login. See the operating system documentation for details. The relevant parameters are `maxproc`, `openfiles`, and `datasize`. For example:

```
default:\
...
      :datasize-cur=256M:\
      :maxproc-cur=256:\
      :openfiles-cur=256:\
...
```

(`-cur` is the soft limit. Append `-max` to set the hard limit.)

Kernels can also have system-wide limits on some resources.

- On Linux the kernel parameter `fs.file-max` determines the maximum number of open files that the kernel will support. It can be changed with `sysctl -w fs.file-max=N`. To make the setting persist across reboots, add an assignment in `/etc/sysctl.conf`. The maximum limit of files per process is fixed at the time the kernel is compiled; see `/usr/src/linux/Documentation/proc.txt` for more information.

The PostgreSQL server uses one process per connection so you should provide for at least as many processes as allowed connections, in addition to what you need for the rest of your system. This is usually not a problem but if you run several servers on one machine things might get tight.

The factory default limit on open files is often set to “socially friendly” values that allow many users to coexist on a machine without using an inappropriate fraction of the system resources. If you run many servers on a machine this is perhaps what you want, but on dedicated servers you might want to raise this limit.

On the other side of the coin, some systems allow individual processes to open large numbers of files; if more than a few processes do so then the system-wide limit can easily be exceeded. If you find this happening, and you do not want to alter the system-wide limit, you can set PostgreSQL's `max_files_per_process` configuration parameter to limit the consumption of open files.

Another kernel limit that may be of concern when supporting large numbers of client connections is the maximum socket connection queue length. If more than that many connection requests arrive within a very short period, some may get rejected before the PostgreSQL server can service the requests, with those clients receiving unhelpful connection failure errors such as “Resource temporarily unavailable” or “Connection refused”. The default queue length limit is 128 on many platforms. To raise it, adjust the appropriate kernel parameter via `sysctl`, then restart the PostgreSQL server. The parameter is variously named `net.core.somaxconn` on Linux, `kern.ipc.soacceptqueue` on newer FreeBSD, and `kern.ipc.somaxconn` on macOS and other BSD variants.

## 19.4.4. Linux Memory Overcommit

The default virtual memory behavior on Linux is not optimal for PostgreSQL. Because of the way that the kernel implements memory overcommit, the kernel might terminate the PostgreSQL postmaster (the supervisor server process) if the memory demands of either PostgreSQL or another process cause the system to run out of virtual memory.

If this happens, you will see a kernel message that looks like this (consult your system documentation and configuration on where to look for such a message):

```
Out of Memory: Killed process 12345 (postgres).
```

This indicates that the `postgres` process has been terminated due to memory pressure. Although existing database connections will continue to function normally, no new connections will be accepted. To recover, PostgreSQL will need to be restarted.

One way to avoid this problem is to run PostgreSQL on a machine where you can be sure that other processes will not run the machine out of memory. If memory is tight, increasing the swap space of the operating system can help avoid the problem, because the out-of-memory (OOM) killer is invoked only when physical memory and swap space are exhausted.

If PostgreSQL itself is the cause of the system running out of memory, you can avoid the problem by changing your configuration. In some cases, it may help to lower memory-related configuration parameters, particularly `shared_buffers`, `work_mem`, and `hash_mem_multiplier`. In other cases, the problem may be caused by allowing too many connections to the database server itself. In many cases, it may be better to reduce `max_connections` and instead make use of external connection-pooling software.

It is possible to modify the kernel's behavior so that it will not “overcommit” memory. Although this setting will not prevent the OOM killer<sup>1</sup> from being invoked altogether, it will lower the chances significantly and will therefore lead to more robust system behavior. This is done by selecting strict overcommit mode via `sysctl`:

```
sysctl -w vm.overcommit_memory=2
```

or placing an equivalent entry in `/etc/sysctl.conf`. You might also wish to modify the related setting `vm.overcommit_ratio`. For details see the kernel documentation file <https://www.kernel.org/doc/Documentation/vm/overcommit-accounting>.

Another approach, which can be used with or without altering `vm.overcommit_memory`, is to set the process-specific *OOM score adjustment* value for the postmaster process to `-1000`, thereby guaranteeing it will not be targeted by the OOM killer. The simplest way to do this is to execute

```
echo -1000 > /proc/self/oom_score_adj
```

in the PostgreSQL startup script just before invoking `postgres`. Note that this action must be done as root, or it will have no effect; so a root-owned startup script is the easiest place to do it. If you do this, you should also set these environment variables in the startup script before invoking `postgres`:

```
export PG_OOM_ADJUST_FILE=/proc/self/oom_score_adj
export PG_OOM_ADJUST_VALUE=0
```

These settings will cause postmaster child processes to run with the normal OOM score adjustment of zero, so that the OOM killer can still target them at need. You could use some other value for

---

<sup>1</sup> <https://lwn.net/Articles/104179/>



`PG_OOM_ADJUST_VALUE` if you want the child processes to run with some other OOM score adjustment. (`PG_OOM_ADJUST_VALUE` can also be omitted, in which case it defaults to zero.) If you do not set `PG_OOM_ADJUST_FILE`, the child processes will run with the same OOM score adjustment as the postmaster, which is unwise since the whole point is to ensure that the postmaster has a preferential setting.

## 19.4.5. Linux Huge Pages

Using huge pages reduces overhead when using large contiguous chunks of memory, as PostgreSQL does, particularly when using large values of `shared_buffers`. To use this feature in PostgreSQL you need a kernel with `CONFIG_HUGETLBFS=y` and `CONFIG_HUGETLB_PAGE=y`. You will also have to configure the operating system to provide enough huge pages of the desired size. To determine the number of huge pages needed, use the `postgres` command to see the value of `shared_memory_size_in_huge_pages`. Note that the server must be shut down to view this runtime-computed parameter. This might look like:

```
$ postgres -D $PGDATA -C shared_memory_size_in_huge_pages
3170
$ grep ^Hugepagesize /proc/meminfo
Hugepagesize:      2048 kB
$ ls /sys/kernel/mm/hugepages
hugepages-1048576kB  hugepages-2048kB
```

In this example the default is 2MB, but you can also explicitly request either 2MB or 1GB with `huge_page_size` to adapt the number of pages calculated by `shared_memory_size_in_huge_pages`. While we need at least 3170 huge pages in this example, a larger setting would be appropriate if other programs on the machine also need huge pages. We can set this with:

```
# sysctl -w vm.nr_hugepages=3170
```

Don't forget to add this setting to `/etc/sysctl.conf` so that it is reapplied after reboots. For non-default huge page sizes, we can instead use:

```
# echo 3170 > /sys/kernel/mm/hugepages/hugepages-2048kB/
nr_hugepages
```

It is also possible to provide these settings at boot time using kernel parameters such as `hugepagesz=2M hugepages=3170`.

Sometimes the kernel is not able to allocate the desired number of huge pages immediately due to fragmentation, so it might be necessary to repeat the command or to reboot. (Immediately after a reboot, most of the machine's memory should be available to convert into huge pages.) To verify the huge page allocation situation for a given size, use:

```
$ cat /sys/kernel/mm/hugepages/hugepages-2048kB/nr_hugepages
```

It may also be necessary to give the database server's operating system user permission to use huge pages by setting `vm.hugetlb_shm_group` via `sysctl`, and/or give permission to lock memory with `ulimit -l`.

The default behavior for huge pages in PostgreSQL is to use them when possible, with the system's default huge page size, and to fall back to normal pages on failure. To enforce the use of huge pages, you can set `huge_pages` to `on` in `postgresql.conf`. Note that with this setting PostgreSQL will fail to start if not enough huge pages are available.

For a detailed description of the Linux huge pages feature have a look at <https://www.kernel.org/doc/Documentation/vm/hugetlbpage.txt>.

## 19.5. Shutting Down the Server

There are several ways to shut down the database server. Under the hood, they all reduce to sending a signal to the supervisor `postgres` process.

If you are using a pre-packaged version of PostgreSQL, and you used its provisions for starting the server, then you should also use its provisions for stopping the server. Consult the package-level documentation for details.

When managing the server directly, you can control the type of shutdown by sending different signals to the `postgres` process:

### SIGTERM

This is the *Smart Shutdown* mode. After receiving SIGTERM, the server disallows new connections, but lets existing sessions end their work normally. It shuts down only after all of the sessions terminate. If the server is in recovery when a smart shutdown is requested, recovery and streaming replication will be stopped only after all regular sessions have terminated.

### SIGINT

This is the *Fast Shutdown* mode. The server disallows new connections and sends all existing server processes SIGTERM, which will cause them to abort their current transactions and exit promptly. It then waits for all server processes to exit and finally shuts down.

### SIGQUIT

This is the *Immediate Shutdown* mode. The server will send SIGQUIT to all child processes and wait for them to terminate. If any do not terminate within 5 seconds, they will be sent SIGKILL. The supervisor server process exits as soon as all child processes have exited, without doing normal database shutdown processing. This will lead to recovery (by replaying the WAL log) upon next start-up. This is recommended only in emergencies.

The `pg_ctl` program provides a convenient interface for sending these signals to shut down the server. Alternatively, you can send the signal directly using `kill` on non-Windows systems. The PID of the `postgres` process can be found using the `ps` program, or from the file `postmaster.pid` in the data directory. For example, to do a fast shutdown:

```
$ kill -INT `head -1 /usr/local/pgsql/data/postmaster.pid`
```

### Important

It is best not to use SIGKILL to shut down the server. Doing so will prevent the server from releasing shared memory and semaphores. Furthermore, SIGKILL kills the `postgres` process without letting it relay the signal to its subprocesses, so it might be necessary to kill the individual subprocesses by hand as well.

To terminate an individual session while allowing other sessions to continue, use `pg_terminate_backend()` (see Table 9.90) or send a SIGTERM signal to the child process associated with the session.

## 19.6. Upgrading a PostgreSQL Cluster

This section discusses how to upgrade your database data from one PostgreSQL release to a newer one.

Current PostgreSQL version numbers consist of a major and a minor version number. For example, in the version number 10.1, the 10 is the major version number and the 1 is the minor version number, meaning this would be the first minor release of the major release 10. For releases before PostgreSQL version 10.0, version numbers consist of three numbers, for example, 9.5.3. In those cases, the major version consists of the first two digit groups of the version number, e.g., 9.5, and the minor version is the third number, e.g., 3, meaning this would be the third minor release of the major release 9.5.

Minor releases never change the internal storage format and are always compatible with earlier and later minor releases of the same major version number. For example, version 10.1 is compatible with version 10.0 and version 10.6. Similarly, for example, 9.5.3 is compatible with 9.5.0, 9.5.1, and 9.5.6. To update between compatible versions, you simply replace the executables while the server is down and restart the server. The data directory remains unchanged — minor upgrades are that simple.

For *major* releases of PostgreSQL, the internal data storage format is subject to change, thus complicating upgrades. The traditional method for moving data to a new major version is to dump and restore the database, though this can be slow. A faster method is `pg_upgrade`. Replication methods are also available, as discussed below. (If you are using a pre-packaged version of PostgreSQL, it may provide scripts to assist with major version upgrades. Consult the package-level documentation for details.)

New major versions also typically introduce some user-visible incompatibilities, so application programming changes might be required. All user-visible changes are listed in the release notes (Appendix E); pay particular attention to the section labeled "Migration". Though you can upgrade from one major version to another without upgrading to intervening versions, you should read the major release notes of all intervening versions.

Cautious users will want to test their client applications on the new version before switching over fully; therefore, it's often a good idea to set up concurrent installations of old and new versions. When testing a PostgreSQL major upgrade, consider the following categories of possible changes:

#### Administration

The capabilities available for administrators to monitor and control the server often change and improve in each major release.

#### SQL

Typically this includes new SQL command capabilities and not changes in behavior, unless specifically mentioned in the release notes.

#### Library API

Typically libraries like `libpq` only add new functionality, again unless mentioned in the release notes.

#### System Catalogs

System catalog changes usually only affect database management tools.

#### Server C-language API

This involves changes in the backend function API, which is written in the C programming language. Such changes affect code that references backend functions deep inside the server.

## 19.6.1. Upgrading Data via `pg_dumpall`

One upgrade method is to dump data from one major version of PostgreSQL and restore it in another — to do this, you must use a *logical* backup tool like `pg_dumpall`; file system level backup methods will not work. (There are checks in place that prevent you from using a data directory with an incompatible

version of PostgreSQL, so no great harm can be done by trying to start the wrong server version on a data directory.)

It is recommended that you use the `pg_dump` and `pg_dumpall` programs from the *newer* version of PostgreSQL, to take advantage of enhancements that might have been made in these programs. Current releases of the dump programs can read data from any server version back to 9.2.

These instructions assume that your existing installation is under the `/usr/local/pgsql` directory, and that the data area is in `/usr/local/pgsql/data`. Substitute your paths appropriately.

1. If making a backup, make sure that your database is not being updated. This does not affect the integrity of the backup, but the changed data would of course not be included. If necessary, edit the permissions in the file `/usr/local/pgsql/data/pg_hba.conf` (or equivalent) to disallow access from everyone except you. See Chapter 21 for additional information on access control.

To back up your database installation, type:

```
pg_dumpall > outputfile
```

To make the backup, you can use the `pg_dumpall` command from the version you are currently running; see Section 26.1.2 for more details. For best results, however, try to use the `pg_dumpall` command from PostgreSQL 16.2, since this version contains bug fixes and improvements over older versions. While this advice might seem idiosyncratic since you haven't installed the new version yet, it is advisable to follow it if you plan to install the new version in parallel with the old version. In that case you can complete the installation normally and transfer the data later. This will also decrease the downtime.

2. Shut down the old server:

```
pg_ctl stop
```

On systems that have PostgreSQL started at boot time, there is probably a start-up file that will accomplish the same thing. For example, on a Red Hat Linux system one might find that this works:

```
/etc/rc.d/init.d/postgresql stop
```

See Chapter 19 for details about starting and stopping the server.

3. If restoring from backup, rename or delete the old installation directory if it is not version-specific. It is a good idea to rename the directory, rather than delete it, in case you have trouble and need to revert to it. Keep in mind the directory might consume significant disk space. To rename the directory, use a command like this:

```
mv /usr/local/pgsql /usr/local/pgsql.old
```

(Be sure to move the directory as a single unit so relative paths remain unchanged.)

4. Install the new version of PostgreSQL as outlined in Chapter 17.
5. Create a new database cluster if needed. Remember that you must execute these commands while logged in to the special database user account (which you already have if you are upgrading).

```
/usr/local/pgsql/bin/initdb -D /usr/local/pgsql/data
```

6. Restore your previous `pg_hba.conf` and any `postgresql.conf` modifications.

7. Start the database server, again using the special database user account:

```
/usr/local/pgsql/bin/postgres -D /usr/local/pgsql/data
```

8. Finally, restore your data from backup with:

```
/usr/local/pgsql/bin/psql -d postgres -f outputfile
```

using the *new* psql.

The least downtime can be achieved by installing the new server in a different directory and running both the old and the new servers in parallel, on different ports. Then you can use something like:

```
pg_dumpall -p 5432 | psql -d postgres -p 5433
```

to transfer your data.

## 19.6.2. Upgrading Data via pg\_upgrade

The `pg_upgrade` module allows an installation to be migrated in-place from one major PostgreSQL version to another. Upgrades can be performed in minutes, particularly with `--link` mode. It requires steps similar to `pg_dumpall` above, e.g., starting/stopping the server, running `initdb`. The `pg_upgrade` documentation outlines the necessary steps.

## 19.6.3. Upgrading Data via Replication

It is also possible to use logical replication methods to create a standby server with the updated version of PostgreSQL. This is possible because logical replication supports replication between different major versions of PostgreSQL. The standby can be on the same computer or a different computer. Once it has synced up with the primary server (running the older version of PostgreSQL), you can switch primaries and make the standby the primary and shut down the older database instance. Such a switch-over results in only several seconds of downtime for an upgrade.

This method of upgrading can be performed using the built-in logical replication facilities as well as using external logical replication systems such as `pglogical`, `Slony`, `Londiste`, and `Bucardo`.

## 19.7. Preventing Server Spoofing

While the server is running, it is not possible for a malicious user to take the place of the normal database server. However, when the server is down, it is possible for a local user to spoof the normal server by starting their own server. The spoof server could read passwords and queries sent by clients, but could not return any data because the `PGDATA` directory would still be secure because of directory permissions. Spoofing is possible because any user can start a database server; a client cannot identify an invalid server unless it is specially configured.

One way to prevent spoofing of `local` connections is to use a Unix domain socket directory (`unix_socket_directories`) that has write permission only for a trusted local user. This prevents a malicious user from creating their own socket file in that directory. If you are concerned that some applications might still reference `/tmp` for the socket file and hence be vulnerable to spoofing, during operating system startup create a symbolic link `/tmp/.s.PGSQL.5432` that points to the relocated socket file. You also might need to modify your `/tmp` cleanup script to prevent removal of the symbolic link.

Another option for `local` connections is for clients to use `requirepeer` to specify the required owner of the server process connected to the socket.

To prevent spoofing on TCP connections, either use SSL certificates and make sure that clients check the server's certificate, or use GSSAPI encryption (or both, if they're on separate connections).

To prevent spoofing with SSL, the server must be configured to accept only `hostssl` connections (Section 21.1) and have SSL key and certificate files (Section 19.9). The TCP client must connect using `sslmode=verify-ca` or `verify-full` and have the appropriate root certificate file installed (Section 34.19.1). Alternatively the system CA pool can be used using `sslrootcert=system`; in this case, `sslmode=verify-full` is forced for safety, since it is generally trivial to obtain certificates which are signed by a public CA.

To prevent server spoofing from occurring when using `scram-sha-256` password authentication over a network, you should ensure that you connect to the server using SSL and with one of the anti-spoofing methods described in the previous paragraph. Additionally, the SCRAM implementation in `libpq` cannot protect the entire authentication exchange, but using the `channel_binding=require` connection parameter provides a mitigation against server spoofing. An attacker that uses a rogue server to intercept a SCRAM exchange can use offline analysis to potentially determine the hashed password from the client.

To prevent spoofing with GSSAPI, the server must be configured to accept only `hostgssenc` connections (Section 21.1) and use `gss` authentication with them. The TCP client must connect using `gssencmode=require`.

## 19.8. Encryption Options

PostgreSQL offers encryption at several levels, and provides flexibility in protecting data from disclosure due to database server theft, unscrupulous administrators, and insecure networks. Encryption might also be required to secure sensitive data such as medical records or financial transactions.

### Password Encryption

Database user passwords are stored as hashes (determined by the setting `password_encryption`), so the administrator cannot determine the actual password assigned to the user. If SCRAM or MD5 encryption is used for client authentication, the unencrypted password is never even temporarily present on the server because the client encrypts it before being sent across the network. SCRAM is preferred, because it is an Internet standard and is more secure than the PostgreSQL-specific MD5 authentication protocol.

### Encryption For Specific Columns

The `pgcrypto` module allows certain fields to be stored encrypted. This is useful if only some of the data is sensitive. The client supplies the decryption key and the data is decrypted on the server and then sent to the client.

The decrypted data and the decryption key are present on the server for a brief time while it is being decrypted and communicated between the client and server. This presents a brief moment where the data and keys can be intercepted by someone with complete access to the database server, such as the system administrator.

### Data Partition Encryption

Storage encryption can be performed at the file system level or the block level. Linux file system encryption options include `eCryptfs` and `EncFS`, while FreeBSD uses `PEFS`. Block level or full disk encryption options include `dm-crypt` + `LUKS` on Linux and `GEOM` modules `geli` and `gbde` on FreeBSD. Many other operating systems support this functionality, including Windows.

This mechanism prevents unencrypted data from being read from the drives if the drives or the entire computer is stolen. This does not protect against attacks while the file system is mounted, because when mounted, the operating system provides an unencrypted view of the data. However, to mount the file system, you need some way for the encryption key to be passed to the operating system, and sometimes the key is stored somewhere on the host that mounts the disk.

### Encrypting Data Across A Network

SSL connections encrypt all data sent across the network: the password, the queries, and the data returned. The `pg_hba.conf` file allows administrators to specify which hosts can use non-encrypted connections (`host`) and which require SSL-encrypted connections (`hostssl`). Also, clients can specify that they connect to servers only via SSL.

GSSAPI-encrypted connections encrypt all data sent across the network, including queries and data returned. (No password is sent across the network.) The `pg_hba.conf` file allows administrators to specify which hosts can use non-encrypted connections (`host`) and which require GSSAPI-encrypted connections (`hostgssenc`). Also, clients can specify that they connect to servers only on GSSAPI-encrypted connections (`gssencmode=require`).

Stunnel or SSH can also be used to encrypt transmissions.

### SSL Host Authentication

It is possible for both the client and server to provide SSL certificates to each other. It takes some extra configuration on each side, but this provides stronger verification of identity than the mere use of passwords. It prevents a computer from pretending to be the server just long enough to read the password sent by the client. It also helps prevent “man in the middle” attacks where a computer between the client and server pretends to be the server and reads and passes all data between the client and server.

### Client-Side Encryption

If the system administrator for the server's machine cannot be trusted, it is necessary for the client to encrypt the data; this way, unencrypted data never appears on the database server. Data is encrypted on the client before being sent to the server, and database results have to be decrypted on the client before being used.

## 19.9. Secure TCP/IP Connections with SSL

PostgreSQL has native support for using SSL connections to encrypt client/server communications for increased security. This requires that OpenSSL is installed on both client and server systems and that support in PostgreSQL is enabled at build time (see Chapter 17).

The terms SSL and TLS are often used interchangeably to mean a secure encrypted connection using a TLS protocol. SSL protocols are the precursors to TLS protocols, and the term SSL is still used for encrypted connections even though SSL protocols are no longer supported. SSL is used interchangeably with TLS in PostgreSQL.

### 19.9.1. Basic Setup

With SSL support compiled in, the PostgreSQL server can be started with support for encrypted connections using TLS protocols enabled by setting the parameter `ssl` to `on` in `postgresql.conf`. The server will listen for both normal and SSL connections on the same TCP port, and will negotiate with any connecting client on whether to use SSL. By default, this is at the client's option; see Section 21.1 about how to set up the server to require use of SSL for some or all connections.

To start in SSL mode, files containing the server certificate and private key must exist. By default, these files are expected to be named `server.crt` and `server.key`, respectively, in the server's data directory, but other names and locations can be specified using the configuration parameters `ssl_cert_file` and `ssl_key_file`.

On Unix systems, the permissions on `server.key` must disallow any access to world or group; achieve this by the command `chmod 0600 server.key`. Alternatively, the file can be owned by root and have group read access (that is, 0640 permissions). That setup is intended for installations where certificate and key files are managed by the operating system. The user under which the Post-

greSQL server runs should then be made a member of the group that has access to those certificate and key files.

If the data directory allows group read access then certificate files may need to be located outside of the data directory in order to conform to the security requirements outlined above. Generally, group access is enabled to allow an unprivileged user to backup the database, and in that case the backup software will not be able to read the certificate files and will likely error.

If the private key is protected with a passphrase, the server will prompt for the passphrase and will not start until it has been entered. Using a passphrase by default disables the ability to change the server's SSL configuration without a server restart, but see `ssl_passphrase_command_supports_reload`. Furthermore, passphrase-protected private keys cannot be used at all on Windows.

The first certificate in `server.crt` must be the server's certificate because it must match the server's private key. The certificates of "intermediate" certificate authorities can also be appended to the file. Doing this avoids the necessity of storing intermediate certificates on clients, assuming the root and intermediate certificates were created with `v3_ca` extensions. (This sets the certificate's basic constraint of `CA` to `true`.) This allows easier expiration of intermediate certificates.

It is not necessary to add the root certificate to `server.crt`. Instead, clients must have the root certificate of the server's certificate chain.

## 19.9.2. OpenSSL Configuration

PostgreSQL reads the system-wide OpenSSL configuration file. By default, this file is named `openssl.cnf` and is located in the directory reported by `openssl version -d`. This default can be overridden by setting environment variable `OPENSSL_CONF` to the name of the desired configuration file.

OpenSSL supports a wide range of ciphers and authentication algorithms, of varying strength. While a list of ciphers can be specified in the OpenSSL configuration file, you can specify ciphers specifically for use by the database server by modifying `ssl_ciphers` in `postgresql.conf`.

### Note

It is possible to have authentication without encryption overhead by using `NULL-SHA` or `NULL-MD5` ciphers. However, a man-in-the-middle could read and pass communications between client and server. Also, encryption overhead is minimal compared to the overhead of authentication. For these reasons `NULL` ciphers are not recommended.

## 19.9.3. Using Client Certificates

To require the client to supply a trusted certificate, place certificates of the root certificate authorities (CAs) you trust in a file in the data directory, set the parameter `ssl_ca_file` in `postgresql.conf` to the new file name, and add the authentication option `clientcert=verify-ca` or `clientcert=verify-full` to the appropriate `hostssl` line(s) in `pg_hba.conf`. A certificate will then be requested from the client during SSL connection startup. (See Section 34.19 for a description of how to set up certificates on the client.)

For a `hostssl` entry with `clientcert=verify-ca`, the server will verify that the client's certificate is signed by one of the trusted certificate authorities. If `clientcert=verify-full` is specified, the server will not only verify the certificate chain, but it will also check whether the username or its mapping matches the `cn` (Common Name) of the provided certificate. Note that certificate chain validation is always ensured when the `cert` authentication method is used (see Section 21.12).

Intermediate certificates that chain up to existing root certificates can also appear in the `ssl_ca_file` file if you wish to avoid storing them on clients (assuming the root and intermediate certificates were



created with `v3_ca` extensions). Certificate Revocation List (CRL) entries are also checked if the parameter `ssl_crl_file` or `ssl_crl_dir` is set.

The `clientcert` authentication option is available for all authentication methods, but only in `pg_hba.conf` lines specified as `hostssl`. When `clientcert` is not specified, the server verifies the client certificate against its CA file only if a client certificate is presented and the CA is configured.

There are two approaches to enforce that users provide a certificate during login.

The first approach makes use of the `cert` authentication method for `hostssl` entries in `pg_hba.conf`, such that the certificate itself is used for authentication while also providing `ssl` connection security. See Section 21.12 for details. (It is not necessary to specify any `clientcert` options explicitly when using the `cert` authentication method.) In this case, the `cn` (Common Name) provided in the certificate is checked against the user name or an applicable mapping.

The second approach combines any authentication method for `hostssl` entries with the verification of client certificates by setting the `clientcert` authentication option to `verify-ca` or `verify-full`. The former option only enforces that the certificate is valid, while the latter also ensures that the `cn` (Common Name) in the certificate matches the user name or an applicable mapping.

## 19.9.4. SSL Server File Usage

Table 19.2 summarizes the files that are relevant to the SSL setup on the server. (The shown file names are default names. The locally configured names could be different.)

**Table 19.2. SSL Server File Usage**

File	Contents	Effect
<code>ssl_cert_file</code> ( <code>\$PGDATA-TA/server.crt</code> )	server certificate	sent to client to indicate server's identity
<code>ssl_key_file</code> ( <code>\$PGDATA-TA/server.key</code> )	server private key	proves server certificate was sent by the owner; does not indicate certificate owner is trustworthy
<code>ssl_ca_file</code>	trusted certificate authorities	checks that client certificate is signed by a trusted certificate authority
<code>ssl_crl_file</code>	certificates revoked by certificate authorities	client certificate must not be on this list

The server reads these files at server start and whenever the server configuration is reloaded. On Windows systems, they are also re-read whenever a new backend process is spawned for a new client connection.

If an error in these files is detected at server start, the server will refuse to start. But if an error is detected during a configuration reload, the files are ignored and the old SSL configuration continues to be used. On Windows systems, if an error in these files is detected at backend start, that backend will be unable to establish an SSL connection. In all these cases, the error condition is reported in the server log.

## 19.9.5. Creating Certificates

To create a simple self-signed certificate for the server, valid for 365 days, use the following OpenSSL command, replacing `dbhost.yourdomain.com` with the server's host name:

```
openssl req -new -x509 -days 365 -nodes -text -out server.crt \
```

```
-keyout server.key -subj "/CN=dbhost.yourdomain.com"
```

Then do:

```
chmod og-rwx server.key
```

because the server will reject the file if its permissions are more liberal than this. For more details on how to create your server private key and certificate, refer to the OpenSSL documentation.

While a self-signed certificate can be used for testing, a certificate signed by a certificate authority (CA) (usually an enterprise-wide root CA) should be used in production.

To create a server certificate whose identity can be validated by clients, first create a certificate signing request (CSR) and a public/private key file:

```
openssl req -new -nodes -text -out root.csr \  
-keyout root.key -subj "/CN=root.yourdomain.com"  
chmod og-rwx root.key
```

Then, sign the request with the key to create a root certificate authority (using the default OpenSSL configuration file location on Linux):

```
openssl x509 -req -in root.csr -text -days 3650 \  
-extfile /etc/ssl/openssl.cnf -extensions v3_ca \  
-signkey root.key -out root.crt
```

Finally, create a server certificate signed by the new root certificate authority:

```
openssl req -new -nodes -text -out server.csr \  
-keyout server.key -subj "/CN=dbhost.yourdomain.com"  
chmod og-rwx server.key
```

```
openssl x509 -req -in server.csr -text -days 365 \  
-CA root.crt -CAkey root.key -CAcreateserial \  
-out server.crt
```

server.crt and server.key should be stored on the server, and root.crt should be stored on the client so the client can verify that the server's leaf certificate was signed by its trusted root certificate. root.key should be stored offline for use in creating future certificates.

It is also possible to create a chain of trust that includes intermediate certificates:

```
# root  
openssl req -new -nodes -text -out root.csr \  
-keyout root.key -subj "/CN=root.yourdomain.com"  
chmod og-rwx root.key  
openssl x509 -req -in root.csr -text -days 3650 \  
-extfile /etc/ssl/openssl.cnf -extensions v3_ca \  
-signkey root.key -out root.crt  
  
# intermediate  
openssl req -new -nodes -text -out intermediate.csr \  
-keyout intermediate.key -subj "/CN=intermediate.yourdomain.com"  
chmod og-rwx intermediate.key  
openssl x509 -req -in intermediate.csr -text -days 1825 \  
-extfile /etc/ssl/openssl.cnf -extensions v3_ca \  
-signkey root.key -out intermediate.crt
```

```
-CA root.crt -CAkey root.key -CAcreateserial \  
-out intermediate.crt  
  
# leaf  
openssl req -new -nodes -text -out server.csr \  
-keyout server.key -subj "/CN=dbhost.yourdomain.com"  
chmod og-rwx server.key  
openssl x509 -req -in server.csr -text -days 365 \  
-CA intermediate.crt -CAkey intermediate.key -CAcreateserial \  
-out server.crt
```

`server.crt` and `intermediate.crt` should be concatenated into a certificate file bundle and stored on the server. `server.key` should also be stored on the server. `root.crt` should be stored on the client so the client can verify that the server's leaf certificate was signed by a chain of certificates linked to its trusted root certificate. `root.key` and `intermediate.key` should be stored offline for use in creating future certificates.

## 19.10. Secure TCP/IP Connections with GSSAPI Encryption

PostgreSQL also has native support for using GSSAPI to encrypt client/server communications for increased security. Support requires that a GSSAPI implementation (such as MIT Kerberos) is installed on both client and server systems, and that support in PostgreSQL is enabled at build time (see Chapter 17).

### 19.10.1. Basic Setup

The PostgreSQL server will listen for both normal and GSSAPI-encrypted connections on the same TCP port, and will negotiate with any connecting client whether to use GSSAPI for encryption (and for authentication). By default, this decision is up to the client (which means it can be downgraded by an attacker); see Section 21.1 about setting up the server to require the use of GSSAPI for some or all connections.

When using GSSAPI for encryption, it is common to use GSSAPI for authentication as well, since the underlying mechanism will determine both client and server identities (according to the GSSAPI implementation) in any case. But this is not required; another PostgreSQL authentication method can be chosen to perform additional verification.

Other than configuration of the negotiation behavior, GSSAPI encryption requires no setup beyond that which is necessary for GSSAPI authentication. (For more information on configuring that, see Section 21.6.)

## 19.11. Secure TCP/IP Connections with SSH Tunnels

It is possible to use SSH to encrypt the network connection between clients and a PostgreSQL server. Done properly, this provides an adequately secure network connection, even for non-SSL-capable clients.

First make sure that an SSH server is running properly on the same machine as the PostgreSQL server and that you can log in using `ssh` as some user; you then can establish a secure tunnel to the remote server. A secure tunnel listens on a local port and forwards all traffic to a port on the remote machine. Traffic sent to the remote port can arrive on its `localhost` address, or different bind address if desired; it does not appear as coming from your local machine. This command creates a secure tunnel from the client machine to the remote machine `foo.com`:

```
ssh -L 63333:localhost:5432 joe@foo.com
```

The first number in the `-L` argument, 63333, is the local port number of the tunnel; it can be any unused port. (IANA reserves ports 49152 through 65535 for private use.) The name or IP address after this is the remote bind address you are connecting to, i.e., `localhost`, which is the default. The second number, 5432, is the remote end of the tunnel, e.g., the port number your database server is using. In order to connect to the database server using this tunnel, you connect to port 63333 on the local machine:

```
psql -h localhost -p 63333 postgres
```

To the database server it will then look as though you are user `joe` on host `foo.com` connecting to the `localhost` bind address, and it will use whatever authentication procedure was configured for connections by that user to that bind address. Note that the server will not think the connection is SSL-encrypted, since in fact it is not encrypted between the SSH server and the PostgreSQL server. This should not pose any extra security risk because they are on the same machine.

In order for the tunnel setup to succeed you must be allowed to connect via `ssh` as `joe@foo.com`, just as if you had attempted to use `ssh` to create a terminal session.

You could also have set up port forwarding as

```
ssh -L 63333:foo.com:5432 joe@foo.com
```

but then the database server will see the connection as coming in on its `foo.com` bind address, which is not opened by the default setting `listen_addresses = 'localhost'`. This is usually not what you want.

If you have to “hop” to the database server via some login host, one possible setup could look like this:

```
ssh -L 63333:db.foo.com:5432 joe@shell.foo.com
```

Note that this way the connection from `shell.foo.com` to `db.foo.com` will not be encrypted by the SSH tunnel. SSH offers quite a few configuration possibilities when the network is restricted in various ways. Please refer to the SSH documentation for details.

### Tip

Several other applications exist that can provide secure tunnels using a procedure similar in concept to the one just described.

## 19.12. Registering Event Log on Windows

To register a Windows event log library with the operating system, issue this command:

```
regsvr32 pgsq1_library_directory/pgevent.dll
```

This creates registry entries used by the event viewer, under the default event source named `PostgreSQL`.

To specify a different event source name (see `event_source`), use the `/n` and `/i` options:

```
regsvr32 /n /i:event_source_name pgsql_library_directory/  
pgevent.dll
```

To unregister the event log library from the operating system, issue this command:

```
regsvr32 /u [/i:event_source_name] pgsql_library_directory/  
pgevent.dll
```

### Note

To enable event logging in the database server, modify `log_destination` to include `eventlog` in `postgresql.conf`.

---

# Chapter 20. Server Configuration

There are many configuration parameters that affect the behavior of the database system. In the first section of this chapter we describe how to interact with configuration parameters. The subsequent sections discuss each parameter in detail.

## 20.1. Setting Parameters

### 20.1.1. Parameter Names and Values

All parameter names are case-insensitive. Every parameter takes a value of one of five types: boolean, string, integer, floating point, or enumerated (enum). The type determines the syntax for setting the parameter:

- *Boolean*: Values can be written as `on`, `off`, `true`, `false`, `yes`, `no`, `1`, `0` (all case-insensitive) or any unambiguous prefix of one of these.
- *String*: In general, enclose the value in single quotes, doubling any single quotes within the value. Quotes can usually be omitted if the value is a simple number or identifier, however. (Values that match an SQL keyword require quoting in some contexts.)
- *Numeric (integer and floating point)*: Numeric parameters can be specified in the customary integer and floating-point formats; fractional values are rounded to the nearest integer if the parameter is of integer type. Integer parameters additionally accept hexadecimal input (beginning with `0x`) and octal input (beginning with `0`), but these formats cannot have a fraction. Do not use thousands separators. Quotes are not required, except for hexadecimal input.
- *Numeric with Unit*: Some numeric parameters have an implicit unit, because they describe quantities of memory or time. The unit might be bytes, kilobytes, blocks (typically eight kilobytes), milliseconds, seconds, or minutes. An unadorned numeric value for one of these settings will use the setting's default unit, which can be learned from `pg_settings.unit`. For convenience, settings can be given with a unit specified explicitly, for example `'120 ms'` for a time value, and they will be converted to whatever the parameter's actual unit is. Note that the value must be written as a string (with quotes) to use this feature. The unit name is case-sensitive, and there can be whitespace between the numeric value and the unit.
  - Valid memory units are B (bytes), kB (kilobytes), MB (megabytes), GB (gigabytes), and TB (terabytes). The multiplier for memory units is 1024, not 1000.
  - Valid time units are `us` (microseconds), `ms` (milliseconds), `s` (seconds), `min` (minutes), `h` (hours), and `d` (days).

If a fractional value is specified with a unit, it will be rounded to a multiple of the next smaller unit if there is one. For example, `30.1 GB` will be converted to `30822 MB` not `32319628902 B`. If the parameter is of integer type, a final rounding to integer occurs after any unit conversion.

- *Enumerated*: Enumerated-type parameters are written in the same way as string parameters, but are restricted to have one of a limited set of values. The values allowable for such a parameter can be found from `pg_settings.enumvals`. Enum parameter values are case-insensitive.

### 20.1.2. Parameter Interaction via the Configuration File

The most fundamental way to set these parameters is to edit the file `postgresql.conf`, which is normally kept in the data directory. A default copy is installed when the database cluster directory is initialized. An example of what this file might look like is:

```
# This is a comment
log_connections = yes
log_destination = 'syslog'
search_path = '$user', public'
shared_buffers = 128MB
```

One parameter is specified per line. The equal sign between name and value is optional. Whitespace is insignificant (except within a quoted parameter value) and blank lines are ignored. Hash marks (#) designate the remainder of the line as a comment. Parameter values that are not simple identifiers or numbers must be single-quoted. To embed a single quote in a parameter value, write either two quotes (preferred) or backslash-quote. If the file contains multiple entries for the same parameter, all but the last one are ignored.

Parameters set in this way provide default values for the cluster. The settings seen by active sessions will be these values unless they are overridden. The following sections describe ways in which the administrator or user can override these defaults.

The configuration file is reread whenever the main server process receives a SIGHUP signal; this signal is most easily sent by running `pg_ctl reload` from the command line or by calling the SQL function `pg_reload_conf()`. The main server process also propagates this signal to all currently running server processes, so that existing sessions also adopt the new values (this will happen after they complete any currently-executing client command). Alternatively, you can send the signal to a single server process directly. Some parameters can only be set at server start; any changes to their entries in the configuration file will be ignored until the server is restarted. Invalid parameter settings in the configuration file are likewise ignored (but logged) during SIGHUP processing.

In addition to `postgresql.conf`, a PostgreSQL data directory contains a file `postgresql.auto.conf`, which has the same format as `postgresql.conf` but is intended to be edited automatically, not manually. This file holds settings provided through the `ALTER SYSTEM` command. This file is read whenever `postgresql.conf` is, and its settings take effect in the same way. Settings in `postgresql.auto.conf` override those in `postgresql.conf`.

External tools may also modify `postgresql.auto.conf`. It is not recommended to do this while the server is running, since a concurrent `ALTER SYSTEM` command could overwrite such changes. Such tools might simply append new settings to the end, or they might choose to remove duplicate settings and/or comments (as `ALTER SYSTEM` will).

The system view `pg_file_settings` can be helpful for pre-testing changes to the configuration files, or for diagnosing problems if a SIGHUP signal did not have the desired effects.

## 20.1.3. Parameter Interaction via SQL

PostgreSQL provides three SQL commands to establish configuration defaults. The already-mentioned `ALTER SYSTEM` command provides an SQL-accessible means of changing global defaults; it is functionally equivalent to editing `postgresql.conf`. In addition, there are two commands that allow setting of defaults on a per-database or per-role basis:

- The `ALTER DATABASE` command allows global settings to be overridden on a per-database basis.
- The `ALTER ROLE` command allows both global and per-database settings to be overridden with user-specific values.

Values set with `ALTER DATABASE` and `ALTER ROLE` are applied only when starting a fresh database session. They override values obtained from the configuration files or server command line, and constitute defaults for the rest of the session. Note that some settings cannot be changed after server start, and so cannot be set with these commands (or the ones listed below).

Once a client is connected to the database, PostgreSQL provides two additional SQL commands (and equivalent functions) to interact with session-local configuration settings:

- The `SHOW` command allows inspection of the current value of any parameter. The corresponding SQL function is `current_setting(setting_name text)` (see Section 9.27.1).
- The `SET` command allows modification of the current value of those parameters that can be set locally to a session; it has no effect on other sessions. Many parameters can be set this way by any user, but some can only be set by superusers and users who have been granted `SET` privilege on that parameter. The corresponding SQL function is `set_config(setting_name, new_value, is_local)` (see Section 9.27.1).

In addition, the system view `pg_settings` can be used to view and change session-local values:

- Querying this view is similar to using `SHOW ALL` but provides more detail. It is also more flexible, since it's possible to specify filter conditions or join against other relations.
- Using `UPDATE` on this view, specifically updating the `setting` column, is the equivalent of issuing `SET` commands. For example, the equivalent of

```
SET configuration_parameter TO DEFAULT;
```

is:

```
UPDATE pg_settings SET setting = reset_val WHERE name =  
'configuration_parameter';
```

## 20.1.4. Parameter Interaction via the Shell

In addition to setting global defaults or attaching overrides at the database or role level, you can pass settings to PostgreSQL via shell facilities. Both the server and libpq client library accept parameter values via the shell.

- During server startup, parameter settings can be passed to the `postgres` command via the `-c` command-line parameter. For example,

```
postgres -c log_connections=yes -c log_destination='syslog'
```

Settings provided in this way override those set via `postgresql.conf` or `ALTER SYSTEM`, so they cannot be changed globally without restarting the server.

- When starting a client session via libpq, parameter settings can be specified using the `PGOPTIONS` environment variable. Settings established in this way constitute defaults for the life of the session, but do not affect other sessions. For historical reasons, the format of `PGOPTIONS` is similar to that used when launching the `postgres` command; specifically, the `-c` flag must be specified. For example,

```
env PGOPTIONS="-c geqo=off -c statement_timeout=5min" psql
```

Other clients and libraries might provide their own mechanisms, via the shell or otherwise, that allow the user to alter session settings without direct use of SQL commands.

## 20.1.5. Managing Configuration File Contents

PostgreSQL provides several features for breaking down complex `postgresql.conf` files into sub-files. These features are especially useful when managing multiple servers with related, but not identical, configurations.

In addition to individual parameter settings, the `postgresql.conf` file can contain *include directives*, which specify another file to read and process as if it were inserted into the configuration file at



this point. This feature allows a configuration file to be divided into physically separate parts. Include directives simply look like:

```
include 'filename'
```

If the file name is not an absolute path, it is taken as relative to the directory containing the referencing configuration file. Inclusions can be nested.

There is also an `include_if_exists` directive, which acts the same as the `include` directive, except when the referenced file does not exist or cannot be read. A regular `include` will consider this an error condition, but `include_if_exists` merely logs a message and continues processing the referencing configuration file.

The `postgresql.conf` file can also contain `include_dir` directives, which specify an entire directory of configuration files to include. These look like

```
include_dir 'directory'
```

Non-absolute directory names are taken as relative to the directory containing the referencing configuration file. Within the specified directory, only non-directory files whose names end with the suffix `.conf` will be included. File names that start with the `.` character are also ignored, to prevent mistakes since such files are hidden on some platforms. Multiple files within an include directory are processed in file name order (according to C locale rules, i.e., numbers before letters, and uppercase letters before lowercase ones).

Include files or directories can be used to logically separate portions of the database configuration, rather than having a single large `postgresql.conf` file. Consider a company that has two database servers, each with a different amount of memory. There are likely elements of the configuration both will share, for things such as logging. But memory-related parameters on the server will vary between the two. And there might be server specific customizations, too. One way to manage this situation is to break the custom configuration changes for your site into three files. You could add this to the end of your `postgresql.conf` file to include them:

```
include 'shared.conf'
include 'memory.conf'
include 'server.conf'
```

All systems would have the same `shared.conf`. Each server with a particular amount of memory could share the same `memory.conf`; you might have one for all servers with 8GB of RAM, another for those having 16GB. And finally `server.conf` could have truly server-specific configuration information in it.

Another possibility is to create a configuration file directory and put this information into files there. For example, a `conf.d` directory could be referenced at the end of `postgresql.conf`:

```
include_dir 'conf.d'
```

Then you could name the files in the `conf.d` directory like this:

```
00shared.conf
01memory.conf
02server.conf
```

This naming convention establishes a clear order in which these files will be loaded. This is important because only the last setting encountered for a particular parameter while the server is reading con-

figuration files will be used. In this example, something set in `conf.d/02server.conf` would override a value set in `conf.d/01memory.conf`.

You might instead use this approach to naming the files descriptively:

```
00shared.conf
01memory-8GB.conf
02server-foo.conf
```

This sort of arrangement gives a unique name for each configuration file variation. This can help eliminate ambiguity when several servers have their configurations all stored in one place, such as in a version control repository. (Storing database configuration files under version control is another good practice to consider.)

## 20.2. File Locations

In addition to the `postgresql.conf` file already mentioned, PostgreSQL uses two other manually-edited configuration files, which control client authentication (their use is discussed in Chapter 21). By default, all three configuration files are stored in the database cluster's data directory. The parameters described in this section allow the configuration files to be placed elsewhere. (Doing so can ease administration. In particular it is often easier to ensure that the configuration files are properly backed-up when they are kept separate.)

`data_directory(string)`

Specifies the directory to use for data storage. This parameter can only be set at server start.

`config_file(string)`

Specifies the main server configuration file (customarily called `postgresql.conf`). This parameter can only be set on the `postgres` command line.

`hba_file(string)`

Specifies the configuration file for host-based authentication (customarily called `pg_hba.conf`). This parameter can only be set at server start.

`ident_file(string)`

Specifies the configuration file for user name mapping (customarily called `pg_ident.conf`). This parameter can only be set at server start. See also Section 21.2.

`external_pid_file(string)`

Specifies the name of an additional process-ID (PID) file that the server should create for use by server administration programs. This parameter can only be set at server start.

In a default installation, none of the above parameters are set explicitly. Instead, the data directory is specified by the `-D` command-line option or the `PGDATA` environment variable, and the configuration files are all found within the data directory.

If you wish to keep the configuration files elsewhere than the data directory, the `postgres -D` command-line option or `PGDATA` environment variable must point to the directory containing the configuration files, and the `data_directory` parameter must be set in `postgresql.conf` (or on the command line) to show where the data directory is actually located. Notice that `data_directory` overrides `-D` and `PGDATA` for the location of the data directory, but not for the location of the configuration files.

If you wish, you can specify the configuration file names and locations individually using the parameters `config_file`, `hba_file` and/or `ident_file`. `config_file` can only be specified

on the `postgres` command line, but the others can be set within the main configuration file. If all three parameters plus `data_directory` are explicitly set, then it is not necessary to specify `-D` or `PGDATA`.

When setting any of these parameters, a relative path will be interpreted with respect to the directory in which `postgres` is started.

## 20.3. Connections and Authentication

### 20.3.1. Connection Settings

`listen_addresses (string)`

Specifies the TCP/IP address(es) on which the server is to listen for connections from client applications. The value takes the form of a comma-separated list of host names and/or numeric IP addresses. The special entry `*` corresponds to all available IP interfaces. The entry `0.0.0.0` allows listening for all IPv4 addresses and `::` allows listening for all IPv6 addresses. If the list is empty, the server does not listen on any IP interface at all, in which case only Unix-domain sockets can be used to connect to it. If the list is not empty, the server will start if it can listen on at least one TCP/IP address. A warning will be emitted for any TCP/IP address which cannot be opened. The default value is `localhost`, which allows only local TCP/IP “loopback” connections to be made.

While client authentication (Chapter 21) allows fine-grained control over who can access the server, `listen_addresses` controls which interfaces accept connection attempts, which can help prevent repeated malicious connection requests on insecure network interfaces. This parameter can only be set at server start.

`port (integer)`

The TCP port the server listens on; 5432 by default. Note that the same port number is used for all IP addresses the server listens on. This parameter can only be set at server start.

`max_connections (integer)`

Determines the maximum number of concurrent connections to the database server. The default is typically 100 connections, but might be less if your kernel settings will not support it (as determined during `initdb`). This parameter can only be set at server start.

When running a standby server, you must set this parameter to the same or higher value than on the primary server. Otherwise, queries will not be allowed in the standby server.

`reserved_connections (integer)`

Determines the number of connection “slots” that are reserved for connections by roles with privileges of the `pg_use_reserved_connections` role. Whenever the number of free connection slots is greater than `superuser_reserved_connections` but less than or equal to the sum of `superuser_reserved_connections` and `reserved_connections`, new connections will be accepted only for superusers and roles with privileges of `pg_use_reserved_connections`. If `superuser_reserved_connections` or fewer connection slots are available, new connections will be accepted only for superusers.

The default value is zero connections. The value must be less than `max_connections` minus `superuser_reserved_connections`. This parameter can only be set at server start.

`superuser_reserved_connections (integer)`

Determines the number of connection “slots” that are reserved for connections by PostgreSQL superusers. At most `max_connections` connections can ever be active simultaneously. Whenever the number of active concurrent connections is at least `max_connections` minus supe-

`ruser_reserved_connections`, new connections will be accepted only for superusers. The connection slots reserved by this parameter are intended as final reserve for emergency use after the slots reserved by `reserved_connections` have been exhausted.

The default value is three connections. The value must be less than `max_connections` minus `reserved_connections`. This parameter can only be set at server start.

`unix_socket_directories` (string)

Specifies the directory of the Unix-domain socket(s) on which the server is to listen for connections from client applications. Multiple sockets can be created by listing multiple directories separated by commas. Whitespace between entries is ignored; surround a directory name with double quotes if you need to include whitespace or commas in the name. An empty value specifies not listening on any Unix-domain sockets, in which case only TCP/IP sockets can be used to connect to the server.

A value that starts with `@` specifies that a Unix-domain socket in the abstract namespace should be created (currently supported on Linux only). In that case, this value does not specify a “directory” but a prefix from which the actual socket name is computed in the same manner as for the file-system namespace. While the abstract socket name prefix can be chosen freely, since it is not a file-system location, the convention is to nonetheless use file-system-like values such as `@/tmp`.

The default value is normally `/tmp`, but that can be changed at build time. On Windows, the default is empty, which means no Unix-domain socket is created by default. This parameter can only be set at server start.

In addition to the socket file itself, which is named `.s.PGSQL.nnnn` where `nnnn` is the server's port number, an ordinary file named `.s.PGSQL.nnnn.lock` will be created in each of the `unix_socket_directories` directories. Neither file should ever be removed manually. For sockets in the abstract namespace, no lock file is created.

`unix_socket_group` (string)

Sets the owning group of the Unix-domain socket(s). (The owning user of the sockets is always the user that starts the server.) In combination with the parameter `unix_socket_permissions` this can be used as an additional access control mechanism for Unix-domain connections. By default this is the empty string, which uses the default group of the server user. This parameter can only be set at server start.

This parameter is not supported on Windows. Any setting will be ignored. Also, sockets in the abstract namespace have no file owner, so this setting is also ignored in that case.

`unix_socket_permissions` (integer)

Sets the access permissions of the Unix-domain socket(s). Unix-domain sockets use the usual Unix file system permission set. The parameter value is expected to be a numeric mode specified in the format accepted by the `chmod` and `umask` system calls. (To use the customary octal format the number must start with a 0 (zero).)

The default permissions are `0777`, meaning anyone can connect. Reasonable alternatives are `0770` (only user and group, see also `unix_socket_group`) and `0700` (only user). (Note that for a Unix-domain socket, only write permission matters, so there is no point in setting or revoking read or execute permissions.)

This access control mechanism is independent of the one described in Chapter 21.

This parameter can only be set at server start.

This parameter is irrelevant on systems, notably Solaris as of Solaris 10, that ignore socket permissions entirely. There, one can achieve a similar effect by pointing `unix_socket_directories` to a directory having search permission limited to the desired audience.

Sockets in the abstract namespace have no file permissions, so this setting is also ignored in that case.

`bonjour` (boolean)

Enables advertising the server's existence via Bonjour. The default is off. This parameter can only be set at server start.

`bonjour_name` (string)

Specifies the Bonjour service name. The computer name is used if this parameter is set to the empty string `' '` (which is the default). This parameter is ignored if the server was not compiled with Bonjour support. This parameter can only be set at server start.

## 20.3.2. TCP Settings

`tcp_keepalives_idle` (integer)

Specifies the amount of time with no network activity after which the operating system should send a TCP keepalive message to the client. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as seconds. A value of 0 (the default) selects the operating system's default. On Windows, setting a value of 0 will set this parameter to 2 hours, since Windows does not provide a way to read the system default value. This parameter is supported only on systems that support `TCP_KEEPI` or an equivalent socket option, and on Windows; on other systems, it must be zero. In sessions connected via a Unix-domain socket, this parameter is ignored and always reads as zero.

`tcp_keepalives_interval` (integer)

Specifies the amount of time after which a TCP keepalive message that has not been acknowledged by the client should be retransmitted. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as seconds. A value of 0 (the default) selects the operating system's default. On Windows, setting a value of 0 will set this parameter to 1 second, since Windows does not provide a way to read the system default value. This parameter is supported only on systems that support `TCP_KEEPINTVL` or an equivalent socket option, and on Windows; on other systems, it must be zero. In sessions connected via a Unix-domain socket, this parameter is ignored and always reads as zero.

`tcp_keepalives_count` (integer)

Specifies the number of TCP keepalive messages that can be lost before the server's connection to the client is considered dead. A value of 0 (the default) selects the operating system's default. This parameter is supported only on systems that support `TCP_KEEPCNT` or an equivalent socket option (which does not include Windows); on other systems, it must be zero. In sessions connected via a Unix-domain socket, this parameter is ignored and always reads as zero.

`tcp_user_timeout` (integer)

Specifies the amount of time that transmitted data may remain unacknowledged before the TCP connection is forcibly closed. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as milliseconds. A value of 0 (the default) selects the operating system's default. This parameter is supported only on systems that support `TCP_USER_TIMEOUT` (which does not include Windows); on other systems, it must be zero. In sessions connected via a Unix-domain socket, this parameter is ignored and always reads as zero.

`client_connection_check_interval` (integer)

Sets the time interval between optional checks that the client is still connected, while running queries. The check is performed by polling the socket, and allows long running queries to be aborted sooner if the kernel reports that the connection is closed.

This option relies on kernel events exposed by Linux, macOS, illumos and the BSD family of operating systems, and is not currently available on other systems.

If the value is specified without units, it is taken as milliseconds. The default value is 0, which disables connection checks. Without connection checks, the server will detect the loss of the connection only at the next interaction with the socket, when it waits for, receives or sends data.

For the kernel itself to detect lost TCP connections reliably and within a known time-frame in all scenarios including network failure, it may also be necessary to adjust the TCP keepalive settings of the operating system, or the `tcp_keepalives_idle`, `tcp_keepalives_interval` and `tcp_keepalives_count` settings of PostgreSQL.

## 20.3.3. Authentication

`authentication_timeout (integer)`

Maximum amount of time allowed to complete client authentication. If a would-be client has not completed the authentication protocol in this much time, the server closes the connection. This prevents hung clients from occupying a connection indefinitely. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as seconds. The default is one minute (1m). This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

`password_encryption (enum)`

When a password is specified in `CREATE ROLE` or `ALTER ROLE`, this parameter determines the algorithm to use to encrypt the password. Possible values are `scram-sha-256`, which will encrypt the password with SCRAM-SHA-256, and `md5`, which stores the password as an MD5 hash. The default is `scram-sha-256`.

Note that older clients might lack support for the SCRAM authentication mechanism, and hence not work with passwords encrypted with SCRAM-SHA-256. See Section 21.5 for more details.

`scram_iterations (integer)`

The number of computational iterations to be performed when encrypting a password using SCRAM-SHA-256. The default is 4096. A higher number of iterations provides additional protection against brute-force attacks on stored passwords, but makes authentication slower. Changing the value has no effect on existing passwords encrypted with SCRAM-SHA-256 as the iteration count is fixed at the time of encryption. In order to make use of a changed value, a new password must be set.

`krb_server_keyfile (string)`

Sets the location of the server's Kerberos key file. The default is `FILE:/usr/local/pgsql/etc/krb5.keytab` (where the directory part is whatever was specified as `sysconfdir` at build time; use `pg_config --sysconfdir` to determine that). If this parameter is set to an empty string, it is ignored and a system-dependent default is used. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line. See Section 21.6 for more information.

`krb_caseins_users (boolean)`

Sets whether GSSAPI user names should be treated case-insensitively. The default is `off` (case sensitive). This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

`gss_accept_delegation (boolean)`

Sets whether GSSAPI delegation should be accepted from the client. The default is `off` meaning credentials from the client will *not* be accepted. Changing this to `on` will make the server accept credentials delegated to it from the client. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

`db_user_namespace` (boolean)

This parameter enables per-database user names. It is off by default. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

If this is on, you should create users as `username@dbname`. When `username` is passed by a connecting client, `@` and the database name are appended to the user name and that database-specific user name is looked up by the server. Note that when you create users with names containing `@` within the SQL environment, you will need to quote the user name.

With this parameter enabled, you can still create ordinary global users. Simply append `@` when specifying the user name in the client, e.g., `joe@`. The `@` will be stripped off before the user name is looked up by the server.

`db_user_namespace` causes the client's and server's user name representation to differ. Authentication checks are always done with the server's user name so authentication methods must be configured for the server's user name, not the client's. Because `md5` uses the user name as salt on both the client and server, `md5` cannot be used with `db_user_namespace`.

### Note

This feature is intended as a temporary measure until a complete solution is found. At that time, this option will be removed.

## 20.3.4. SSL

See Section 19.9 for more information about setting up SSL. The configuration parameters for controlling transfer encryption using TLS protocols are named `ssl` for historic reasons, even though support for the SSL protocol has been deprecated. SSL is in this context used interchangeably with TLS.

`ssl` (boolean)

Enables SSL connections. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line. The default is `off`.

`ssl_ca_file` (string)

Specifies the name of the file containing the SSL server certificate authority (CA). Relative paths are relative to the data directory. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line. The default is empty, meaning no CA file is loaded, and client certificate verification is not performed.

`ssl_cert_file` (string)

Specifies the name of the file containing the SSL server certificate. Relative paths are relative to the data directory. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line. The default is `server.crt`.

`ssl_crl_file` (string)

Specifies the name of the file containing the SSL client certificate revocation list (CRL). Relative paths are relative to the data directory. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line. The default is empty, meaning no CRL file is loaded (unless `ssl_crl_dir` is set).

`ssl_crl_dir` (string)

Specifies the name of the directory containing the SSL client certificate revocation list (CRL). Relative paths are relative to the data directory. This parameter can only be set in the `post-`

`gresql.conf` file or on the server command line. The default is empty, meaning no CRLs are used (unless `ssl_crl_file` is set).

The directory needs to be prepared with the OpenSSL command `openssl rehash` or `c_rehash`. See its documentation for details.

When using this setting, CRLs in the specified directory are loaded on-demand at connection time. New CRLs can be added to the directory and will be used immediately. This is unlike `ssl_crl_file`, which causes the CRL in the file to be loaded at server start time or when the configuration is reloaded. Both settings can be used together.

`ssl_key_file(string)`

Specifies the name of the file containing the SSL server private key. Relative paths are relative to the data directory. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line. The default is `server.key`.

`ssl_ciphers(string)`

Specifies a list of SSL cipher suites that are allowed to be used by SSL connections. See the ciphers manual page in the OpenSSL package for the syntax of this setting and a list of supported values. Only connections using TLS version 1.2 and lower are affected. There is currently no setting that controls the cipher choices used by TLS version 1.3 connections. The default value is `HIGH:MEDIUM:+3DES:!aNULL`. The default is usually a reasonable choice unless you have specific security requirements.

This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

Explanation of the default value:

HIGH

Cipher suites that use ciphers from HIGH group (e.g., AES, Camellia, 3DES)

MEDIUM

Cipher suites that use ciphers from MEDIUM group (e.g., RC4, SEED)

+3DES

The OpenSSL default order for HIGH is problematic because it orders 3DES higher than AES128. This is wrong because 3DES offers less security than AES128, and it is also much slower. +3DES reorders it after all other HIGH and MEDIUM ciphers.

!aNULL

Disables anonymous cipher suites that do no authentication. Such cipher suites are vulnerable to MITM attacks and therefore should not be used.

Available cipher suite details will vary across OpenSSL versions. Use the command `openssl ciphers -v 'HIGH:MEDIUM:+3DES:!aNULL'` to see actual details for the currently installed OpenSSL version. Note that this list is filtered at run time based on the server key type.

`ssl_prefer_server_ciphers(boolean)`

Specifies whether to use the server's SSL cipher preferences, rather than the client's. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line. The default is on.

Older PostgreSQL versions do not have this setting and always use the client's preferences. This setting is mainly for backward compatibility with those versions. Using the server's preferences is usually better because it is more likely that the server is appropriately configured.



#### `ssl_ecdh_curve (string)`

Specifies the name of the curve to use in ECDH key exchange. It needs to be supported by all clients that connect. It does not need to be the same curve used by the server's Elliptic Curve key. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line. The default is `prime256v1`.

OpenSSL names for the most common curves are: `prime256v1` (NIST P-256), `secp384r1` (NIST P-384), `secp521r1` (NIST P-521). The full list of available curves can be shown with the command `openssl ecparam -list_curves`. Not all of them are usable in TLS though.

#### `ssl_min_protocol_version (enum)`

Sets the minimum SSL/TLS protocol version to use. Valid values are currently: `TLSv1`, `TLSv1.1`, `TLSv1.2`, `TLSv1.3`. Older versions of the OpenSSL library do not support all values; an error will be raised if an unsupported setting is chosen. Protocol versions before TLS 1.0, namely SSL version 2 and 3, are always disabled.

The default is `TLSv1.2`, which satisfies industry best practices as of this writing.

This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

#### `ssl_max_protocol_version (enum)`

Sets the maximum SSL/TLS protocol version to use. Valid values are as for `ssl_min_protocol_version`, with addition of an empty string, which allows any protocol version. The default is to allow any version. Setting the maximum protocol version is mainly useful for testing or if some component has issues working with a newer protocol.

This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

#### `ssl_dh_params_file (string)`

Specifies the name of the file containing Diffie-Hellman parameters used for so-called ephemeral DH family of SSL ciphers. The default is empty, in which case compiled-in default DH parameters used. Using custom DH parameters reduces the exposure if an attacker manages to crack the well-known compiled-in DH parameters. You can create your own DH parameters file with the command `openssl dhparam -out dhparams.pem 2048`.

This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

#### `ssl_passphrase_command (string)`

Sets an external command to be invoked when a passphrase for decrypting an SSL file such as a private key needs to be obtained. By default, this parameter is empty, which means the built-in prompting mechanism is used.

The command must print the passphrase to the standard output and exit with code 0. In the parameter value, `%p` is replaced by a prompt string. (Write `%%` for a literal `%`.) Note that the prompt string will probably contain whitespace, so be sure to quote adequately. A single newline is stripped from the end of the output if present.

The command does not actually have to prompt the user for a passphrase. It can read it from a file, obtain it from a keychain facility, or similar. It is up to the user to make sure the chosen mechanism is adequately secure.

This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

#### `ssl_passphrase_command_supports_reload (boolean)`

This parameter determines whether the passphrase command set by `ssl_passphrase_command` will also be called during a configuration reload if a key file needs a passphrase. If this parameter is off (the default), then `ssl_passphrase_command` will be ignored during a reload

and the SSL configuration will not be reloaded if a passphrase is needed. That setting is appropriate for a command that requires a TTY for prompting, which might not be available when the server is running. Setting this parameter to `on` might be appropriate if the passphrase is obtained from a file, for example.

This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

## 20.4. Resource Consumption

### 20.4.1. Memory

`shared_buffers (integer)`

Sets the amount of memory the database server uses for shared memory buffers. The default is typically 128 megabytes (128MB), but might be less if your kernel settings will not support it (as determined during `initdb`). This setting must be at least 128 kilobytes. However, settings significantly higher than the minimum are usually needed for good performance. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as blocks, that is `BLCKSZ` bytes, typically 8kB. (Non-default values of `BLCKSZ` change the minimum value.) This parameter can only be set at server start.

If you have a dedicated database server with 1GB or more of RAM, a reasonable starting value for `shared_buffers` is 25% of the memory in your system. There are some workloads where even larger settings for `shared_buffers` are effective, but because PostgreSQL also relies on the operating system cache, it is unlikely that an allocation of more than 40% of RAM to `shared_buffers` will work better than a smaller amount. Larger settings for `shared_buffers` usually require a corresponding increase in `max_wal_size`, in order to spread out the process of writing large quantities of new or changed data over a longer period of time.

On systems with less than 1GB of RAM, a smaller percentage of RAM is appropriate, so as to leave adequate space for the operating system.

`huge_pages (enum)`

Controls whether huge pages are requested for the main shared memory area. Valid values are `try` (the default), `on`, and `off`. With `huge_pages` set to `try`, the server will try to request huge pages, but fall back to the default if that fails. With `on`, failure to request huge pages will prevent the server from starting up. With `off`, huge pages will not be requested.

At present, this setting is supported only on Linux and Windows. The setting is ignored on other systems when set to `try`. On Linux, it is only supported when `shared_memory_type` is set to `mmap` (the default).

The use of huge pages results in smaller page tables and less CPU time spent on memory management, increasing performance. For more details about using huge pages on Linux, see Section 19.4.5.

Huge pages are known as large pages on Windows. To use them, you need to assign the user right “Lock pages in memory” to the Windows user account that runs PostgreSQL. You can use Windows Group Policy tool (`gpedit.msc`) to assign the user right “Lock pages in memory”. To start the database server on the command prompt as a standalone process, not as a Windows service, the command prompt must be run as an administrator or User Access Control (UAC) must be disabled. When the UAC is enabled, the normal command prompt revokes the user right “Lock pages in memory” when started.

Note that this setting only affects the main shared memory area. Operating systems such as Linux, FreeBSD, and Illumos can also use huge pages (also known as “super” pages or “large” pages) automatically for normal memory allocation, without an explicit request from PostgreSQL. On Linux, this is called “transparent huge pages” (THP). That feature has been known to cause per-

formance degradation with PostgreSQL for some users on some Linux versions, so its use is currently discouraged (unlike explicit use of `huge_pages`).

#### `huge_page_size (integer)`

Controls the size of huge pages, when they are enabled with `huge_pages`. The default is zero (0). When set to 0, the default huge page size on the system will be used. This parameter can only be set at server start.

Some commonly available page sizes on modern 64 bit server architectures include: 2MB and 1GB (Intel and AMD), 16MB and 16GB (IBM POWER), and 64kB, 2MB, 3 2MB and 1GB (ARM). For more information about usage and support, see Section 19.4.5.

Non-default settings are currently supported only on Linux.

#### `temp_buffers (integer)`

Sets the maximum amount of memory used for temporary buffers within each database session. These are session-local buffers used only for access to temporary tables. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as blocks, that is `BLCKSZ` bytes, typically 8kB. The default is eight megabytes (8MB). (If `BLCKSZ` is not 8kB, the default value scales proportionally to it.) This setting can be changed within individual sessions, but only before the first use of temporary tables within the session; subsequent attempts to change the value will have no effect on that session.

A session will allocate temporary buffers as needed up to the limit given by `temp_buffers`. The cost of setting a large value in sessions that do not actually need many temporary buffers is only a buffer descriptor, or about 64 bytes, per increment in `temp_buffers`. However if a buffer is actually used an additional 8192 bytes will be consumed for it (or in general, `BLCKSZ` bytes).

#### `max_prepared_transactions (integer)`

Sets the maximum number of transactions that can be in the “prepared” state simultaneously (see `PREPARE TRANSACTION`). Setting this parameter to zero (which is the default) disables the prepared-transaction feature. This parameter can only be set at server start.

If you are not planning to use prepared transactions, this parameter should be set to zero to prevent accidental creation of prepared transactions. If you are using prepared transactions, you will probably want `max_prepared_transactions` to be at least as large as `max_connections`, so that every session can have a prepared transaction pending.

When running a standby server, you must set this parameter to the same or higher value than on the primary server. Otherwise, queries will not be allowed in the standby server.

#### `work_mem (integer)`

Sets the base maximum amount of memory to be used by a query operation (such as a sort or hash table) before writing to temporary disk files. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as kilobytes. The default value is four megabytes (4MB). Note that a complex query might perform several sort and hash operations at the same time, with each operation generally being allowed to use as much memory as this value specifies before it starts to write data into temporary files. Also, several running sessions could be doing such operations concurrently. Therefore, the total memory used could be many times the value of `work_mem`; it is necessary to keep this fact in mind when choosing the value. Sort operations are used for `ORDER BY`, `DISTINCT`, and merge joins. Hash tables are used in hash joins, hash-based aggregation, memoize nodes and hash-based processing of `IN` subqueries.

Hash-based operations are generally more sensitive to memory availability than equivalent sort-based operations. The memory limit for a hash table is computed by multiplying `work_mem` by `hash_mem_multiplier`. This makes it possible for hash-based operations to use an amount of memory that exceeds the usual `work_mem` base amount.

### `hash_mem_multiplier` (floating point)

Used to compute the maximum amount of memory that hash-based operations can use. The final limit is determined by multiplying `work_mem` by `hash_mem_multiplier`. The default value is 2.0, which makes hash-based operations use twice the usual `work_mem` base amount.

Consider increasing `hash_mem_multiplier` in environments where spilling by query operations is a regular occurrence, especially when simply increasing `work_mem` results in memory pressure (memory pressure typically takes the form of intermittent out of memory errors). The default setting of 2.0 is often effective with mixed workloads. Higher settings in the range of 2.0 - 8.0 or more may be effective in environments where `work_mem` has already been increased to 40MB or more.

### `maintenance_work_mem` (integer)

Specifies the maximum amount of memory to be used by maintenance operations, such as `VACUUM`, `CREATE INDEX`, and `ALTER TABLE ADD FOREIGN KEY`. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as kilobytes. It defaults to 64 megabytes (64MB). Since only one of these operations can be executed at a time by a database session, and an installation normally doesn't have many of them running concurrently, it's safe to set this value significantly larger than `work_mem`. Larger settings might improve performance for vacuuming and for restoring database dumps.

Note that when `autovacuum` runs, up to `autovacuum_max_workers` times this memory may be allocated, so be careful not to set the default value too high. It may be useful to control for this by separately setting `autovacuum_work_mem`.

Note that for the collection of dead tuple identifiers, `VACUUM` is only able to utilize up to a maximum of 1GB of memory.

### `autovacuum_work_mem` (integer)

Specifies the maximum amount of memory to be used by each `autovacuum` worker process. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as kilobytes. It defaults to -1, indicating that the value of `maintenance_work_mem` should be used instead. The setting has no effect on the behavior of `VACUUM` when run in other contexts. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

For the collection of dead tuple identifiers, `autovacuum` is only able to utilize up to a maximum of 1GB of memory, so setting `autovacuum_work_mem` to a value higher than that has no effect on the number of dead tuples that `autovacuum` can collect while scanning a table.

### `vacuum_buffer_usage_limit` (integer)

Specifies the size of the *Buffer Access Strategy* used by the `VACUUM` and `ANALYZE` commands. A setting of 0 will allow the operation to use any number of `shared_buffers`. Otherwise valid sizes range from 128 kB to 16 GB. If the specified size would exceed 1/8 the size of `shared_buffers`, the size is silently capped to that value. The default value is 256 kB. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as kilobytes. This parameter can be set at any time. It can be overridden for `VACUUM` and `ANALYZE` when passing the `BUFFER_USAGE_LIMIT` option. Higher settings can allow `VACUUM` and `ANALYZE` to run more quickly, but having too large a setting may cause too many other useful pages to be evicted from shared buffers.

### `logical_decoding_work_mem` (integer)

Specifies the maximum amount of memory to be used by logical decoding, before some of the decoded changes are written to local disk. This limits the amount of memory used by logical streaming replication connections. It defaults to 64 megabytes (64MB). Since each replication connection only uses a single buffer of this size, and an installation normally doesn't have many such connections concurrently (as limited by `max_wal_senders`), it's safe to set this value significantly higher than `work_mem`, reducing the amount of decoded changes written to disk.

`max_stack_depth` (integer)

Specifies the maximum safe depth of the server's execution stack. The ideal setting for this parameter is the actual stack size limit enforced by the kernel (as set by `ulimit -s` or local equivalent), less a safety margin of a megabyte or so. The safety margin is needed because the stack depth is not checked in every routine in the server, but only in key potentially-recursive routines. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as kilobytes. The default setting is two megabytes (2MB), which is conservatively small and unlikely to risk crashes. However, it might be too small to allow execution of complex functions. Only superusers and users with the appropriate `SET` privilege can change this setting.

Setting `max_stack_depth` higher than the actual kernel limit will mean that a runaway recursive function can crash an individual backend process. On platforms where PostgreSQL can determine the kernel limit, the server will not allow this variable to be set to an unsafe value. However, not all platforms provide the information, so caution is recommended in selecting a value.

`shared_memory_type` (enum)

Specifies the shared memory implementation that the server should use for the main shared memory region that holds PostgreSQL's shared buffers and other shared data. Possible values are `mmap` (for anonymous shared memory allocated using `mmap`), `sysv` (for System V shared memory allocated via `shmget`) and `windows` (for Windows shared memory). Not all values are supported on all platforms; the first supported option is the default for that platform. The use of the `sysv` option, which is not the default on any platform, is generally discouraged because it typically requires non-default kernel settings to allow for large allocations (see Section 19.4.1).

`dynamic_shared_memory_type` (enum)

Specifies the dynamic shared memory implementation that the server should use. Possible values are `posix` (for POSIX shared memory allocated using `shm_open`), `sysv` (for System V shared memory allocated via `shmget`), `windows` (for Windows shared memory), and `mmap` (to simulate shared memory using memory-mapped files stored in the data directory). Not all values are supported on all platforms; the first supported option is usually the default for that platform. The use of the `mmap` option, which is not the default on any platform, is generally discouraged because the operating system may write modified pages back to disk repeatedly, increasing system I/O load; however, it may be useful for debugging, when the `pg_dynshmem` directory is stored on a RAM disk, or when other shared memory facilities are not available.

`min_dynamic_shared_memory` (integer)

Specifies the amount of memory that should be allocated at server startup for use by parallel queries. When this memory region is insufficient or exhausted by concurrent queries, new parallel queries try to allocate extra shared memory temporarily from the operating system using the method configured with `dynamic_shared_memory_type`, which may be slower due to memory management overheads. Memory that is allocated at startup with `min_dynamic_shared_memory` is affected by the `huge_pages` setting on operating systems where that is supported, and may be more likely to benefit from larger pages on operating systems where that is managed automatically. The default value is 0 (none). This parameter can only be set at server start.

## 20.4.2. Disk

`temp_file_limit` (integer)

Specifies the maximum amount of disk space that a process can use for temporary files, such as sort and hash temporary files, or the storage file for a held cursor. A transaction attempting to exceed this limit will be canceled. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as kilobytes. -1 (the default) means no limit. Only superusers and users with the appropriate `SET` privilege can change this setting.

This setting constrains the total space used at any instant by all temporary files used by a given PostgreSQL process. It should be noted that disk space used for explicit temporary tables, as opposed to temporary files used behind-the-scenes in query execution, does *not* count against this limit.

### 20.4.3. Kernel Resource Usage

`max_files_per_process (integer)`

Sets the maximum number of simultaneously open files allowed to each server subprocess. The default is one thousand files. If the kernel is enforcing a safe per-process limit, you don't need to worry about this setting. But on some platforms (notably, most BSD systems), the kernel will allow individual processes to open many more files than the system can actually support if many processes all try to open that many files. If you find yourself seeing “Too many open files” failures, try reducing this setting. This parameter can only be set at server start.

### 20.4.4. Cost-based Vacuum Delay

During the execution of `VACUUM` and `ANALYZE` commands, the system maintains an internal counter that keeps track of the estimated cost of the various I/O operations that are performed. When the accumulated cost reaches a limit (specified by `vacuum_cost_limit`), the process performing the operation will sleep for a short period of time, as specified by `vacuum_cost_delay`. Then it will reset the counter and continue execution.

The intent of this feature is to allow administrators to reduce the I/O impact of these commands on concurrent database activity. There are many situations where it is not important that maintenance commands like `VACUUM` and `ANALYZE` finish quickly; however, it is usually very important that these commands do not significantly interfere with the ability of the system to perform other database operations. Cost-based vacuum delay provides a way for administrators to achieve this.

This feature is disabled by default for manually issued `VACUUM` commands. To enable it, set the `vacuum_cost_delay` variable to a nonzero value.

`vacuum_cost_delay (floating point)`

The amount of time that the process will sleep when the cost limit has been exceeded. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as milliseconds. The default value is zero, which disables the cost-based vacuum delay feature. Positive values enable cost-based vacuuming.

When using cost-based vacuuming, appropriate values for `vacuum_cost_delay` are usually quite small, perhaps less than 1 millisecond. While `vacuum_cost_delay` can be set to fractional-millisecond values, such delays may not be measured accurately on older platforms. On such platforms, increasing `VACUUM`'s throttled resource consumption above what you get at 1ms will require changing the other vacuum cost parameters. You should, nonetheless, keep `vacuum_cost_delay` as small as your platform will consistently measure; large delays are not helpful.

`vacuum_cost_page_hit (integer)`

The estimated cost for vacuuming a buffer found in the shared buffer cache. It represents the cost to lock the buffer pool, lookup the shared hash table and scan the content of the page. The default value is one.

`vacuum_cost_page_miss (integer)`

The estimated cost for vacuuming a buffer that has to be read from disk. This represents the effort to lock the buffer pool, lookup the shared hash table, read the desired block in from the disk and scan its content. The default value is 2.

`vacuum_cost_page_dirty(integer)`

The estimated cost charged when vacuum modifies a block that was previously clean. It represents the extra I/O required to flush the dirty block out to disk again. The default value is 20.

`vacuum_cost_limit(integer)`

The accumulated cost that will cause the vacuuming process to sleep. The default value is 200.

### Note

There are certain operations that hold critical locks and should therefore complete as quickly as possible. Cost-based vacuum delays do not occur during such operations. Therefore it is possible that the cost accumulates far higher than the specified limit. To avoid uselessly long delays in such cases, the actual delay is calculated as `vacuum_cost_delay * accumulated_balance / vacuum_cost_limit` with a maximum of `vacuum_cost_delay * 4`.

## 20.4.5. Background Writer

There is a separate server process called the *background writer*, whose function is to issue writes of “dirty” (new or modified) shared buffers. When the number of clean shared buffers appears to be insufficient, the background writer writes some dirty buffers to the file system and marks them as clean. This reduces the likelihood that server processes handling user queries will be unable to find clean buffers and have to write dirty buffers themselves. However, the background writer does cause a net overall increase in I/O load, because while a repeatedly-dirtied page might otherwise be written only once per checkpoint interval, the background writer might write it several times as it is dirtied in the same interval. The parameters discussed in this subsection can be used to tune the behavior for local needs.

`bgwriter_delay(integer)`

Specifies the delay between activity rounds for the background writer. In each round the writer issues writes for some number of dirty buffers (controllable by the following parameters). It then sleeps for the length of `bgwriter_delay`, and repeats. When there are no dirty buffers in the buffer pool, though, it goes into a longer sleep regardless of `bgwriter_delay`. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as milliseconds. The default value is 200 milliseconds (200ms). Note that on many systems, the effective resolution of sleep delays is 10 milliseconds; setting `bgwriter_delay` to a value that is not a multiple of 10 might have the same results as setting it to the next higher multiple of 10. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

`bgwriter_lru_maxpages(integer)`

In each round, no more than this many buffers will be written by the background writer. Setting this to zero disables background writing. (Note that checkpoints, which are managed by a separate, dedicated auxiliary process, are unaffected.) The default value is 100 buffers. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

`bgwriter_lru_multiplier(floating point)`

The number of dirty buffers written in each round is based on the number of new buffers that have been needed by server processes during recent rounds. The average recent need is multiplied by `bgwriter_lru_multiplier` to arrive at an estimate of the number of buffers that will be needed during the next round. Dirty buffers are written until there are that many clean, reusable buffers available. (However, no more than `bgwriter_lru_maxpages` buffers will be written per round.) Thus, a setting of 1.0 represents a “just in time” policy of writing exactly the number of buffers predicted to be needed. Larger values provide some cushion against spikes in demand,

while smaller values intentionally leave writes to be done by server processes. The default is 2.0. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

`bgwriter_flush_after(integer)`

Whenever more than this amount of data has been written by the background writer, attempt to force the OS to issue these writes to the underlying storage. Doing so will limit the amount of dirty data in the kernel's page cache, reducing the likelihood of stalls when an `fsync` is issued at the end of a checkpoint, or when the OS writes data back in larger batches in the background. Often that will result in greatly reduced transaction latency, but there also are some cases, especially with workloads that are bigger than `shared_buffers`, but smaller than the OS's page cache, where performance might degrade. This setting may have no effect on some platforms. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as blocks, that is `BLCKSZ` bytes, typically 8kB. The valid range is between 0, which disables forced writeback, and 2MB. The default is 512kB on Linux, 0 elsewhere. (If `BLCKSZ` is not 8kB, the default and maximum values scale proportionally to it.) This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

Smaller values of `bgwriter_lru_maxpages` and `bgwriter_lru_multiplier` reduce the extra I/O load caused by the background writer, but make it more likely that server processes will have to issue writes for themselves, delaying interactive queries.

## 20.4.6. Asynchronous Behavior

`backend_flush_after(integer)`

Whenever more than this amount of data has been written by a single backend, attempt to force the OS to issue these writes to the underlying storage. Doing so will limit the amount of dirty data in the kernel's page cache, reducing the likelihood of stalls when an `fsync` is issued at the end of a checkpoint, or when the OS writes data back in larger batches in the background. Often that will result in greatly reduced transaction latency, but there also are some cases, especially with workloads that are bigger than `shared_buffers`, but smaller than the OS's page cache, where performance might degrade. This setting may have no effect on some platforms. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as blocks, that is `BLCKSZ` bytes, typically 8kB. The valid range is between 0, which disables forced writeback, and 2MB. The default is 0, i.e., no forced writeback. (If `BLCKSZ` is not 8kB, the maximum value scales proportionally to it.)

`effective_io_concurrency(integer)`

Sets the number of concurrent disk I/O operations that PostgreSQL expects can be executed simultaneously. Raising this value will increase the number of I/O operations that any individual PostgreSQL session attempts to initiate in parallel. The allowed range is 1 to 1000, or zero to disable issuance of asynchronous I/O requests. Currently, this setting only affects bitmap heap scans.

For magnetic drives, a good starting point for this setting is the number of separate drives comprising a RAID 0 stripe or RAID 1 mirror being used for the database. (For RAID 5 the parity drive should not be counted.) However, if the database is often busy with multiple queries issued in concurrent sessions, lower values may be sufficient to keep the disk array busy. A value higher than needed to keep the disks busy will only result in extra CPU overhead. SSDs and other memory-based storage can often process many concurrent requests, so the best value might be in the hundreds.

Asynchronous I/O depends on an effective `posix_fadvise` function, which some operating systems lack. If the function is not present then setting this parameter to anything but zero will result in an error. On some operating systems (e.g., Solaris), the function is present but does not actually do anything.

The default is 1 on supported systems, otherwise 0. This value can be overridden for tables in a particular tablespace by setting the tablespace parameter of the same name (see `ALTER TABLESPACE`).



### `maintenance_io_concurrency (integer)`

Similar to `effective_io_concurrency`, but used for maintenance work that is done on behalf of many client sessions.

The default is 10 on supported systems, otherwise 0. This value can be overridden for tables in a particular tablespace by setting the tablespace parameter of the same name (see `ALTER TABLESPACE`).

### `max_worker_processes (integer)`

Sets the maximum number of background processes that the system can support. This parameter can only be set at server start. The default is 8.

When running a standby server, you must set this parameter to the same or higher value than on the primary server. Otherwise, queries will not be allowed in the standby server.

When changing this value, consider also adjusting `max_parallel_workers`, `max_parallel_maintenance_workers`, and `max_parallel_workers_per_gather`.

### `max_parallel_workers_per_gather (integer)`

Sets the maximum number of workers that can be started by a single `Gather` or `Gather Merge` node. Parallel workers are taken from the pool of processes established by `max_worker_processes`, limited by `max_parallel_workers`. Note that the requested number of workers may not actually be available at run time. If this occurs, the plan will run with fewer workers than expected, which may be inefficient. The default value is 2. Setting this value to 0 disables parallel query execution.

Note that parallel queries may consume very substantially more resources than non-parallel queries, because each worker process is a completely separate process which has roughly the same impact on the system as an additional user session. This should be taken into account when choosing a value for this setting, as well as when configuring other settings that control resource utilization, such as `work_mem`. Resource limits such as `work_mem` are applied individually to each worker, which means the total utilization may be much higher across all processes than it would normally be for any single process. For example, a parallel query using 4 workers may use up to 5 times as much CPU time, memory, I/O bandwidth, and so forth as a query which uses no workers at all.

For more information on parallel query, see Chapter 15.

### `max_parallel_maintenance_workers (integer)`

Sets the maximum number of parallel workers that can be started by a single utility command. Currently, the parallel utility commands that support the use of parallel workers are `CREATE INDEX` only when building a B-tree index, and `VACUUM` without `FULL` option. Parallel workers are taken from the pool of processes established by `max_worker_processes`, limited by `max_parallel_workers`. Note that the requested number of workers may not actually be available at run time. If this occurs, the utility operation will run with fewer workers than expected. The default value is 2. Setting this value to 0 disables the use of parallel workers by utility commands.

Note that parallel utility commands should not consume substantially more memory than equivalent non-parallel operations. This strategy differs from that of parallel query, where resource limits generally apply per worker process. Parallel utility commands treat the resource limit `maintenance_work_mem` as a limit to be applied to the entire utility command, regardless of the number of parallel worker processes. However, parallel utility commands may still consume substantially more CPU resources and I/O bandwidth.

### `max_parallel_workers (integer)`

Sets the maximum number of workers that the system can support for parallel operations. The default value is 8. When increasing or decreasing this value, consider also adjusting `max_parallel`

`lel_maintenance_workers` and `max_parallel_workers_per_gather`. Also, note that a setting for this value which is higher than `max_worker_processes` will have no effect, since parallel workers are taken from the pool of worker processes established by that setting.

`parallel_leader_participation` (boolean)

Allows the leader process to execute the query plan under `Gather` and `Gather Merge` nodes instead of waiting for worker processes. The default is `on`. Setting this value to `off` reduces the likelihood that workers will become blocked because the leader is not reading tuples fast enough, but requires the leader process to wait for worker processes to start up before the first tuples can be produced. The degree to which the leader can help or hinder performance depends on the plan type, number of workers and query duration.

`old_snapshot_threshold` (integer)

Sets the minimum amount of time that a query snapshot can be used without risk of a “snapshot too old” error occurring when using the snapshot. Data that has been dead for longer than this threshold is allowed to be vacuumed away. This can help prevent bloat in the face of snapshots which remain in use for a long time. To prevent incorrect results due to cleanup of data which would otherwise be visible to the snapshot, an error is generated when the snapshot is older than this threshold and the snapshot is used to read a page which has been modified since the snapshot was built.

If this value is specified without units, it is taken as minutes. A value of `-1` (the default) disables this feature, effectively setting the snapshot age limit to infinity. This parameter can only be set at server start.

Useful values for production work probably range from a small number of hours to a few days. Small values (such as `0` or `1min`) are only allowed because they may sometimes be useful for testing. While a setting as high as `60d` is allowed, please note that in many workloads extreme bloat or transaction ID wraparound may occur in much shorter time frames.

When this feature is enabled, freed space at the end of a relation cannot be released to the operating system, since that could remove information needed to detect the “snapshot too old” condition. All space allocated to a relation remains associated with that relation for reuse only within that relation unless explicitly freed (for example, with `VACUUM FULL`).

This setting does not attempt to guarantee that an error will be generated under any particular circumstances. In fact, if the correct results can be generated from (for example) a cursor which has materialized a result set, no error will be generated even if the underlying rows in the referenced table have been vacuumed away. Some tables cannot safely be vacuumed early, and so will not be affected by this setting, such as system catalogs. For such tables this setting will neither reduce bloat nor create a possibility of a “snapshot too old” error on scanning.

## 20.5. Write Ahead Log

For additional information on tuning these settings, see Section 30.5.

### 20.5.1. Settings

`wal_level` (enum)

`wal_level` determines how much information is written to the WAL. The default value is `replica`, which writes enough data to support WAL archiving and replication, including running read-only queries on a standby server. `minimal` removes all logging except the information required to recover from a crash or immediate shutdown. Finally, `logical` adds information necessary to support logical decoding. Each level includes the information logged at all lower levels. This parameter can only be set at server start.

The `minimal` level generates the least WAL volume. It logs no row information for permanent relations in transactions that create or rewrite them. This can make operations much faster (see Section 14.4.7). Operations that initiate this optimization include:

```
ALTER ... SET TABLESPACE
CLUSTER
CREATE TABLE
REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW (without CONCURRENTLY)
REINDEX
TRUNCATE
```

However, `minimal` WAL does not contain sufficient information for point-in-time recovery, so `replica` or higher must be used to enable continuous archiving (`archive_mode`) and streaming binary replication. In fact, the server will not even start in this mode if `max_wal_senders` is non-zero. Note that changing `wal_level` to `minimal` makes previous base backups unusable for point-in-time recovery and standby servers.

In `logical` level, the same information is logged as with `replica`, plus information needed to extract logical change sets from the WAL. Using a level of `logical` will increase the WAL volume, particularly if many tables are configured for `REPLICA IDENTITY FULL` and many `UPDATE` and `DELETE` statements are executed.

In releases prior to 9.6, this parameter also allowed the values `archive` and `hot_standby`. These are still accepted but mapped to `replica`.

`fsync` (boolean)

If this parameter is on, the PostgreSQL server will try to make sure that updates are physically written to disk, by issuing `fsync()` system calls or various equivalent methods (see `wal_sync_method`). This ensures that the database cluster can recover to a consistent state after an operating system or hardware crash.

While turning off `fsync` is often a performance benefit, this can result in unrecoverable data corruption in the event of a power failure or system crash. Thus it is only advisable to turn off `fsync` if you can easily recreate your entire database from external data.

Examples of safe circumstances for turning off `fsync` include the initial loading of a new database cluster from a backup file, using a database cluster for processing a batch of data after which the database will be thrown away and recreated, or for a read-only database clone which gets recreated frequently and is not used for failover. High quality hardware alone is not a sufficient justification for turning off `fsync`.

For reliable recovery when changing `fsync` off to on, it is necessary to force all modified buffers in the kernel to durable storage. This can be done while the cluster is shutdown or while `fsync` is on by running `initdb --sync-only`, running `sync`, unmounting the file system, or rebooting the server.

In many situations, turning off `synchronous_commit` for noncritical transactions can provide much of the potential performance benefit of turning off `fsync`, without the attendant risks of data corruption.

`fsync` can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line. If you turn this parameter off, also consider turning off `full_page_writes`.

`synchronous_commit` (enum)

Specifies how much WAL processing must complete before the database server returns a “success” indication to the client. Valid values are `remote_apply`, `on` (the default), `remote_write`, `local`, and `off`.

If `synchronous_standby_names` is empty, the only meaningful settings are `on` and `off`; `remote_apply`, `remote_write` and `local` all provide the same local synchronization level

as `on`. The local behavior of all `non-off` modes is to wait for local flush of WAL to disk. In `off` mode, there is no waiting, so there can be a delay between when success is reported to the client and when the transaction is later guaranteed to be safe against a server crash. (The maximum delay is three times `wal_writer_delay`.) Unlike `fsync`, setting this parameter to `off` does not create any risk of database inconsistency: an operating system or database crash might result in some recent allegedly-committed transactions being lost, but the database state will be just the same as if those transactions had been aborted cleanly. So, turning `synchronous_commit` off can be a useful alternative when performance is more important than exact certainty about the durability of a transaction. For more discussion see Section 30.4.

If `synchronous_standby_names` is non-empty, `synchronous_commit` also controls whether transaction commits will wait for their WAL records to be processed on the standby server(s).

When set to `remote_apply`, commits will wait until replies from the current synchronous standby(s) indicate they have received the commit record of the transaction and applied it, so that it has become visible to queries on the standby(s), and also written to durable storage on the standbys. This will cause much larger commit delays than previous settings since it waits for WAL replay. When set to `on`, commits wait until replies from the current synchronous standby(s) indicate they have received the commit record of the transaction and flushed it to durable storage. This ensures the transaction will not be lost unless both the primary and all synchronous standbys suffer corruption of their database storage. When set to `remote_write`, commits will wait until replies from the current synchronous standby(s) indicate they have received the commit record of the transaction and written it to their file systems. This setting ensures data preservation if a standby instance of PostgreSQL crashes, but not if the standby suffers an operating-system-level crash because the data has not necessarily reached durable storage on the standby. The setting `local` causes commits to wait for local flush to disk, but not for replication. This is usually not desirable when synchronous replication is in use, but is provided for completeness.

This parameter can be changed at any time; the behavior for any one transaction is determined by the setting in effect when it commits. It is therefore possible, and useful, to have some transactions commit synchronously and others asynchronously. For example, to make a single multistatement transaction commit asynchronously when the default is the opposite, issue `SET LOCAL synchronous_commit TO OFF` within the transaction.

Table 20.1 summarizes the capabilities of the `synchronous_commit` settings.

**Table 20.1. `synchronous_commit` Modes**

<code>synchronous_commit</code> setting	local durable commit	standby durable com- mit after PG crash	standby durable com- mit after OS crash	standby query consistency
<code>remote_apply</code>	•	•	•	•
<code>on</code>	•	•	•	
<code>remote_write</code>	•	•		
<code>local</code>	•			
<code>off</code>				

`wal_sync_method` (enum)

Method used for forcing WAL updates out to disk. If `fsync` is off then this setting is irrelevant, since WAL file updates will not be forced out at all. Possible values are:

- `open_datasync` (write WAL files with `open( )` option `O_DSYNC`)
- `fdasync` (call `fdasync( )` at each commit)
- `fsync` (call `fsync( )` at each commit)

- `fsync_writethrough` (call `fsync()` at each commit, forcing write-through of any disk write cache)
- `open_sync` (write WAL files with `open()` option `O_SYNC`)

Not all of these choices are available on all platforms. The default is the first method in the above list that is supported by the platform, except that `fdatasync` is the default on Linux and FreeBSD. The default is not necessarily ideal; it might be necessary to change this setting or other aspects of your system configuration in order to create a crash-safe configuration or achieve optimal performance. These aspects are discussed in Section 30.1. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

`full_page_writes` (boolean)

When this parameter is on, the PostgreSQL server writes the entire content of each disk page to WAL during the first modification of that page after a checkpoint. This is needed because a page write that is in process during an operating system crash might be only partially completed, leading to an on-disk page that contains a mix of old and new data. The row-level change data normally stored in WAL will not be enough to completely restore such a page during post-crash recovery. Storing the full page image guarantees that the page can be correctly restored, but at the price of increasing the amount of data that must be written to WAL. (Because WAL replay always starts from a checkpoint, it is sufficient to do this during the first change of each page after a checkpoint. Therefore, one way to reduce the cost of full-page writes is to increase the checkpoint interval parameters.)

Turning this parameter off speeds normal operation, but might lead to either unrecoverable data corruption, or silent data corruption, after a system failure. The risks are similar to turning off `fsync`, though smaller, and it should be turned off only based on the same circumstances recommended for that parameter.

Turning off this parameter does not affect use of WAL archiving for point-in-time recovery (PITR) (see Section 26.3).

This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line. The default is on.

`wal_log_hints` (boolean)

When this parameter is on, the PostgreSQL server writes the entire content of each disk page to WAL during the first modification of that page after a checkpoint, even for non-critical modifications of so-called hint bits.

If data checksums are enabled, hint bit updates are always WAL-logged and this setting is ignored. You can use this setting to test how much extra WAL-logging would occur if your database had data checksums enabled.

This parameter can only be set at server start. The default value is off.

`wal_compression` (enum)

This parameter enables compression of WAL using the specified compression method. When enabled, the PostgreSQL server compresses full page images written to WAL when `full_page_writes` is on or during a base backup. A compressed page image will be decompressed during WAL replay. The supported methods are `pglz`, `lz4` (if PostgreSQL was compiled with `--with-lz4`) and `zstd` (if PostgreSQL was compiled with `--with-zstd`). The default value is off. Only superusers and users with the appropriate `SET` privilege can change this setting.

Enabling compression can reduce the WAL volume without increasing the risk of unrecoverable data corruption, but at the cost of some extra CPU spent on the compression during WAL logging and on the decompression during WAL replay.

`wal_init_zero (boolean)`

If set to `on` (the default), this option causes new WAL files to be filled with zeroes. On some file systems, this ensures that space is allocated before we need to write WAL records. However, *Copy-On-Write* (COW) file systems may not benefit from this technique, so the option is given to skip the unnecessary work. If set to `off`, only the final byte is written when the file is created so that it has the expected size.

`wal_recycle (boolean)`

If set to `on` (the default), this option causes WAL files to be recycled by renaming them, avoiding the need to create new ones. On COW file systems, it may be faster to create new ones, so the option is given to disable this behavior.

`wal_buffers (integer)`

The amount of shared memory used for WAL data that has not yet been written to disk. The default setting of `-1` selects a size equal to 1/32nd (about 3%) of `shared_buffers`, but not less than 64kB nor more than the size of one WAL segment, typically 16MB. This value can be set manually if the automatic choice is too large or too small, but any positive value less than 32kB will be treated as 32kB. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as WAL blocks, that is `XLOG_BLCKSZ` bytes, typically 8kB. This parameter can only be set at server start.

The contents of the WAL buffers are written out to disk at every transaction commit, so extremely large values are unlikely to provide a significant benefit. However, setting this value to at least a few megabytes can improve write performance on a busy server where many clients are committing at once. The auto-tuning selected by the default setting of `-1` should give reasonable results in most cases.

`wal_writer_delay (integer)`

Specifies how often the WAL writer flushes WAL, in time terms. After flushing WAL the writer sleeps for the length of time given by `wal_writer_delay`, unless woken up sooner by an asynchronously committing transaction. If the last flush happened less than `wal_writer_delay` ago and less than `wal_writer_flush_after` worth of WAL has been produced since, then WAL is only written to the operating system, not flushed to disk. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as milliseconds. The default value is 200 milliseconds (200ms). Note that on many systems, the effective resolution of sleep delays is 10 milliseconds; setting `wal_writer_delay` to a value that is not a multiple of 10 might have the same results as setting it to the next higher multiple of 10. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

`wal_writer_flush_after (integer)`

Specifies how often the WAL writer flushes WAL, in volume terms. If the last flush happened less than `wal_writer_delay` ago and less than `wal_writer_flush_after` worth of WAL has been produced since, then WAL is only written to the operating system, not flushed to disk. If `wal_writer_flush_after` is set to 0 then WAL data is always flushed immediately. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as WAL blocks, that is `XLOG_BLCKSZ` bytes, typically 8kB. The default is 1MB. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

`wal_skip_threshold (integer)`

When `wal_level` is `minimal` and a transaction commits after creating or rewriting a permanent relation, this setting determines how to persist the new data. If the data is smaller than this setting, write it to the WAL log; otherwise, use an `fsync` of affected files. Depending on the properties of your storage, raising or lowering this value might help if such commits are slowing concurrent transactions. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as kilobytes. The default is two megabytes (2MB).

`commit_delay(integer)`

Setting `commit_delay` adds a time delay before a WAL flush is initiated. This can improve group commit throughput by allowing a larger number of transactions to commit via a single WAL flush, if system load is high enough that additional transactions become ready to commit within the given interval. However, it also increases latency by up to the `commit_delay` for each WAL flush. Because the delay is just wasted if no other transactions become ready to commit, a delay is only performed if at least `commit_siblings` other transactions are active when a flush is about to be initiated. Also, no delays are performed if `fsync` is disabled. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as microseconds. The default `commit_delay` is zero (no delay). Only superusers and users with the appropriate `SET` privilege can change this setting.

In PostgreSQL releases prior to 9.3, `commit_delay` behaved differently and was much less effective: it affected only commits, rather than all WAL flushes, and waited for the entire configured delay even if the WAL flush was completed sooner. Beginning in PostgreSQL 9.3, the first process that becomes ready to flush waits for the configured interval, while subsequent processes wait only until the leader completes the flush operation.

`commit_siblings(integer)`

Minimum number of concurrent open transactions to require before performing the `commit_delay` delay. A larger value makes it more probable that at least one other transaction will become ready to commit during the delay interval. The default is five transactions.

## 20.5.2. Checkpoints

`checkpoint_timeout(integer)`

Maximum time between automatic WAL checkpoints. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as seconds. The valid range is between 30 seconds and one day. The default is five minutes (5min). Increasing this parameter can increase the amount of time needed for crash recovery. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

`checkpoint_completion_target(floating point)`

Specifies the target of checkpoint completion, as a fraction of total time between checkpoints. The default is 0.9, which spreads the checkpoint across almost all of the available interval, providing fairly consistent I/O load while also leaving some time for checkpoint completion overhead. Reducing this parameter is not recommended because it causes the checkpoint to complete faster. This results in a higher rate of I/O during the checkpoint followed by a period of less I/O between the checkpoint completion and the next scheduled checkpoint. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

`checkpoint_flush_after(integer)`

Whenever more than this amount of data has been written while performing a checkpoint, attempt to force the OS to issue these writes to the underlying storage. Doing so will limit the amount of dirty data in the kernel's page cache, reducing the likelihood of stalls when an `fsync` is issued at the end of the checkpoint, or when the OS writes data back in larger batches in the background. Often that will result in greatly reduced transaction latency, but there also are some cases, especially with workloads that are bigger than `shared_buffers`, but smaller than the OS's page cache, where performance might degrade. This setting may have no effect on some platforms. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as blocks, that is `BLCKSZ` bytes, typically 8kB. The valid range is between 0, which disables forced writeback, and 2MB. The default is 256kB on Linux, 0 elsewhere. (If `BLCKSZ` is not 8kB, the default and maximum values scale proportionally to it.) This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

`checkpoint_warning(integer)`

Write a message to the server log if checkpoints caused by the filling of WAL segment files happen closer together than this amount of time (which suggests that `max_wal_size` ought to

be raised). If this value is specified without units, it is taken as seconds. The default is 30 seconds (30s). Zero disables the warning. No warnings will be generated if `checkpoint_timeout` is less than `checkpoint_warning`. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

`max_wal_size(integer)`

Maximum size to let the WAL grow during automatic checkpoints. This is a soft limit; WAL size can exceed `max_wal_size` under special circumstances, such as heavy load, a failing `archive_command` or `archive_library`, or a high `wal_keep_size` setting. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as megabytes. The default is 1 GB. Increasing this parameter can increase the amount of time needed for crash recovery. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

`min_wal_size(integer)`

As long as WAL disk usage stays below this setting, old WAL files are always recycled for future use at a checkpoint, rather than removed. This can be used to ensure that enough WAL space is reserved to handle spikes in WAL usage, for example when running large batch jobs. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as megabytes. The default is 80 MB. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

## 20.5.3. Archiving

`archive_mode(enum)`

When `archive_mode` is enabled, completed WAL segments are sent to archive storage by setting `archive_command` or `archive_library`. In addition to `off`, to disable, there are two modes: `on`, and `always`. During normal operation, there is no difference between the two modes, but when set to `always` the WAL archiver is enabled also during archive recovery or standby mode. In `always` mode, all files restored from the archive or streamed with streaming replication will be archived (again). See Section 27.2.9 for details.

`archive_mode` is a separate setting from `archive_command` and `archive_library` so that `archive_command` and `archive_library` can be changed without leaving archiving mode. This parameter can only be set at server start. `archive_mode` cannot be enabled when `wal_level` is set to `minimal`.

`archive_command(string)`

The local shell command to execute to archive a completed WAL file segment. Any `%p` in the string is replaced by the path name of the file to archive, and any `%f` is replaced by only the file name. (The path name is relative to the working directory of the server, i.e., the cluster's data directory.) Use `%%` to embed an actual `%` character in the command. It is important for the command to return a zero exit status only if it succeeds. For more information see Section 26.3.1.

This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line. It is only used if `archive_mode` was enabled at server start and `archive_library` is set to an empty string. If both `archive_command` and `archive_library` are set, an error will be raised. If `archive_command` is an empty string (the default) while `archive_mode` is enabled (and `archive_library` is set to an empty string), WAL archiving is temporarily disabled, but the server continues to accumulate WAL segment files in the expectation that a command will soon be provided. Setting `archive_command` to a command that does nothing but return true, e.g., `/bin/true` (REM on Windows), effectively disables archiving, but also breaks the chain of WAL files needed for archive recovery, so it should only be used in unusual circumstances.

`archive_library(string)`

The library to use for archiving completed WAL file segments. If set to an empty string (the default), archiving via shell is enabled, and `archive_command` is used. If both `archive_com-`



`mand` and `archive_library` are set, an error will be raised. Otherwise, the specified shared library is used for archiving. The WAL archiver process is restarted by the postmaster when this parameter changes. For more information, see Section 26.3.1 and Chapter 51.

This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

`archive_timeout` (integer)

The `archive_command` or `archive_library` is only invoked for completed WAL segments. Hence, if your server generates little WAL traffic (or has slack periods where it does so), there could be a long delay between the completion of a transaction and its safe recording in archive storage. To limit how old unarchived data can be, you can set `archive_timeout` to force the server to switch to a new WAL segment file periodically. When this parameter is greater than zero, the server will switch to a new segment file whenever this amount of time has elapsed since the last segment file switch, and there has been any database activity, including a single checkpoint (checkpoints are skipped if there is no database activity). Note that archived files that are closed early due to a forced switch are still the same length as completely full files. Therefore, it is unwise to use a very short `archive_timeout` — it will bloat your archive storage. `archive_timeout` settings of a minute or so are usually reasonable. You should consider using streaming replication, instead of archiving, if you want data to be copied off the primary server more quickly than that. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as seconds. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

## 20.5.4. Recovery

This section describes the settings that apply to recovery in general, affecting crash recovery, streaming replication and archive-based replication.

`recovery_prefetch` (enum)

Whether to try to prefetch blocks that are referenced in the WAL that are not yet in the buffer pool, during recovery. Valid values are `off`, `on` and `try` (the default). The setting `try` enables prefetching only if the operating system provides the `posix_fadvise` function, which is currently used to implement prefetching. Note that some operating systems provide the function, but it doesn't do anything.

Prefetching blocks that will soon be needed can reduce I/O wait times during recovery with some workloads. See also the `wal_decode_buffer_size` and `maintenance_io_concurrency` settings, which limit prefetching activity.

`wal_decode_buffer_size` (integer)

A limit on how far ahead the server can look in the WAL, to find blocks to prefetch. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as bytes. The default is 512kB.

## 20.5.5. Archive Recovery

This section describes the settings that apply only for the duration of the recovery. They must be reset for any subsequent recovery you wish to perform.

“Recovery” covers using the server as a standby or for executing a targeted recovery. Typically, standby mode would be used to provide high availability and/or read scalability, whereas a targeted recovery is used to recover from data loss.

To start the server in standby mode, create a file called `standby.signal` in the data directory. The server will enter recovery and will not stop recovery when the end of archived WAL is reached, but will keep trying to continue recovery by connecting to the sending server as specified by the `primary_conninfo` setting and/or by fetching new WAL segments using `restore_command`.

For this mode, the parameters from this section and Section 20.6.3 are of interest. Parameters from Section 20.5.6 will also be applied but are typically not useful in this mode.

To start the server in targeted recovery mode, create a file called `recovery.signal` in the data directory. If both `standby.signal` and `recovery.signal` files are created, standby mode takes precedence. Targeted recovery mode ends when the archived WAL is fully replayed, or when `recovery_target` is reached. In this mode, the parameters from both this section and Section 20.5.6 will be used.

`restore_command(string)`

The local shell command to execute to retrieve an archived segment of the WAL file series. This parameter is required for archive recovery, but optional for streaming replication. Any `%f` in the string is replaced by the name of the file to retrieve from the archive, and any `%p` is replaced by the copy destination path name on the server. (The path name is relative to the current working directory, i.e., the cluster's data directory.) Any `%r` is replaced by the name of the file containing the last valid restart point. That is the earliest file that must be kept to allow a restore to be restartable, so this information can be used to truncate the archive to just the minimum required to support restarting from the current restore. `%r` is typically only used by warm-standby configurations (see Section 27.2). Write `%%` to embed an actual `%` character.

It is important for the command to return a zero exit status only if it succeeds. The command *will* be asked for file names that are not present in the archive; it must return nonzero when so asked. Examples:

```
restore_command = 'cp /mnt/server/archivedir/%f "%p" '
restore_command = 'copy "C:\\server\\archivedir\\%f" "%p" ' #
Windows
```

An exception is that if the command was terminated by a signal (other than SIGTERM, which is used as part of a database server shutdown) or an error by the shell (such as command not found), then recovery will abort and the server will not start up.

This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

`archive_cleanup_command(string)`

This optional parameter specifies a shell command that will be executed at every restartpoint. The purpose of `archive_cleanup_command` is to provide a mechanism for cleaning up old archived WAL files that are no longer needed by the standby server. Any `%r` is replaced by the name of the file containing the last valid restart point. That is the earliest file that must be *kept* to allow a restore to be restartable, and so all files earlier than `%r` may be safely removed. This information can be used to truncate the archive to just the minimum required to support restart from the current restore. The `pg_archivecleanup` module is often used in `archive_cleanup_command` for single-standby configurations, for example:

```
archive_cleanup_command = 'pg_archivecleanup /mnt/server/
archivedir %r'
```

Note however that if multiple standby servers are restoring from the same archive directory, you will need to ensure that you do not delete WAL files until they are no longer needed by any of the servers. `archive_cleanup_command` would typically be used in a warm-standby configuration (see Section 27.2). Write `%%` to embed an actual `%` character in the command.

If the command returns a nonzero exit status then a warning log message will be written. An exception is that if the command was terminated by a signal or an error by the shell (such as command not found), a fatal error will be raised.

This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

`recovery_end_command(string)`

This parameter specifies a shell command that will be executed once only at the end of recovery. This parameter is optional. The purpose of the `recovery_end_command` is to provide a mechanism for cleanup following replication or recovery. Any `%r` is replaced by the name of the file containing the last valid restart point, like in `archive_cleanup_command`.

If the command returns a nonzero exit status then a warning log message will be written and the database will proceed to start up anyway. An exception is that if the command was terminated by a signal or an error by the shell (such as command not found), the database will not proceed with startup.

This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

## 20.5.6. Recovery Target

By default, recovery will recover to the end of the WAL log. The following parameters can be used to specify an earlier stopping point. At most one of `recovery_target`, `recovery_target_lsn`, `recovery_target_name`, `recovery_target_time`, or `recovery_target_xid` can be used; if more than one of these is specified in the configuration file, an error will be raised. These parameters can only be set at server start.

`recovery_target = 'immediate'`

This parameter specifies that recovery should end as soon as a consistent state is reached, i.e., as early as possible. When restoring from an online backup, this means the point where taking the backup ended.

Technically, this is a string parameter, but `'immediate'` is currently the only allowed value.

`recovery_target_name(string)`

This parameter specifies the named restore point (created with `pg_create_restore_point()`) to which recovery will proceed.

`recovery_target_time(timestamp)`

This parameter specifies the time stamp up to which recovery will proceed. The precise stopping point is also influenced by `recovery_target_inclusive`.

The value of this parameter is a time stamp in the same format accepted by the `timestamp with time zone` data type, except that you cannot use a time zone abbreviation (unless the `timezone_abbreviations` variable has been set earlier in the configuration file). Preferred style is to use a numeric offset from UTC, or you can write a full time zone name, e.g., `Europe/Helsinki` not `EEST`.

`recovery_target_xid(string)`

This parameter specifies the transaction ID up to which recovery will proceed. Keep in mind that while transaction IDs are assigned sequentially at transaction start, transactions can complete in a different numeric order. The transactions that will be recovered are those that committed before (and optionally including) the specified one. The precise stopping point is also influenced by `recovery_target_inclusive`.

`recovery_target_lsn(pg_lsn)`

This parameter specifies the LSN of the write-ahead log location up to which recovery will proceed. The precise stopping point is also influenced by `recovery_target_inclusive`. This parameter is parsed using the system data type `pg_lsn`.

The following options further specify the recovery target, and affect what happens when the target is reached:

`recovery_target_inclusive` (boolean)

Specifies whether to stop just after the specified recovery target (on), or just before the recovery target (off). Applies when `recovery_target_lsn`, `recovery_target_time`, or `recovery_target_xid` is specified. This setting controls whether transactions having exactly the target WAL location (LSN), commit time, or transaction ID, respectively, will be included in the recovery. Default is on.

`recovery_target_timeline` (string)

Specifies recovering into a particular timeline. The value can be a numeric timeline ID or a special value. The value `current` recovers along the same timeline that was current when the base backup was taken. The value `latest` recovers to the latest timeline found in the archive, which is useful in a standby server. `latest` is the default.

To specify a timeline ID in hexadecimal (for example, if extracted from a WAL file name or history file), prefix it with a `0x`. For instance, if the WAL file name is `00000011000000A10000004F`, then the timeline ID is `0x11` (or 17 decimal).

You usually only need to set this parameter in complex re-recovery situations, where you need to return to a state that itself was reached after a point-in-time recovery. See Section 26.3.5 for discussion.

`recovery_target_action` (enum)

Specifies what action the server should take once the recovery target is reached. The default is `pause`, which means recovery will be paused. `promote` means the recovery process will finish and the server will start to accept connections. Finally `shutdown` will stop the server after reaching the recovery target.

The intended use of the `pause` setting is to allow queries to be executed against the database to check if this recovery target is the most desirable point for recovery. The paused state can be resumed by using `pg_wal_replay_resume()` (see Table 9.93), which then causes recovery to end. If this recovery target is not the desired stopping point, then shut down the server, change the recovery target settings to a later target and restart to continue recovery.

The `shutdown` setting is useful to have the instance ready at the exact replay point desired. The instance will still be able to replay more WAL records (and in fact will have to replay WAL records since the last checkpoint next time it is started).

Note that because `recovery.signal` will not be removed when `recovery_target_action` is set to `shutdown`, any subsequent start will end with immediate shutdown unless the configuration is changed or the `recovery.signal` file is removed manually.

This setting has no effect if no recovery target is set. If `hot_standby` is not enabled, a setting of `pause` will act the same as `shutdown`. If the recovery target is reached while a promotion is ongoing, a setting of `pause` will act the same as `promote`.

In any case, if a recovery target is configured but the archive recovery ends before the target is reached, the server will shut down with a fatal error.

## 20.6. Replication

These settings control the behavior of the built-in *streaming replication* feature (see Section 27.2.5), and the built-in *logical replication* feature (see Chapter 31).

For *streaming replication*, servers will be either a primary or a standby server. Primaries can send data, while standbys are always receivers of replicated data. When cascading replication (see Section 27.2.7) is used, standby servers can also be senders, as well as receivers. Parameters are mainly for sending and standby servers, though some parameters have meaning only on the primary server. Settings may vary across the cluster without problems if that is required.

For *logical replication*, *publishers* (servers that do `CREATE PUBLICATION`) replicate data to *subscribers* (servers that do `CREATE SUBSCRIPTION`). Servers can also be publishers and subscribers at the same time. Note, the following sections refer to publishers as "senders". For more details about logical replication configuration settings refer to Section 31.10.

## 20.6.1. Sending Servers

These parameters can be set on any server that is to send replication data to one or more standby servers. The primary is always a sending server, so these parameters must always be set on the primary. The role and meaning of these parameters does not change after a standby becomes the primary.

`max_wal_senders (integer)`

Specifies the maximum number of concurrent connections from standby servers or streaming base backup clients (i.e., the maximum number of simultaneously running WAL sender processes). The default is 10. The value 0 means replication is disabled. Abrupt disconnection of a streaming client might leave an orphaned connection slot behind until a timeout is reached, so this parameter should be set slightly higher than the maximum number of expected clients so disconnected clients can immediately reconnect. This parameter can only be set at server start. Also, `wal_level` must be set to `replica` or higher to allow connections from standby servers.

When running a standby server, you must set this parameter to the same or higher value than on the primary server. Otherwise, queries will not be allowed in the standby server.

`max_replication_slots (integer)`

Specifies the maximum number of replication slots (see Section 27.2.6) that the server can support. The default is 10. This parameter can only be set at server start. Setting it to a lower value than the number of currently existing replication slots will prevent the server from starting. Also, `wal_level` must be set to `replica` or higher to allow replication slots to be used.

Note that this parameter also applies on the subscriber side, but with a different meaning.

`wal_keep_size (integer)`

Specifies the minimum size of past WAL files kept in the `pg_wal` directory, in case a standby server needs to fetch them for streaming replication. If a standby server connected to the sending server falls behind by more than `wal_keep_size` megabytes, the sending server might remove a WAL segment still needed by the standby, in which case the replication connection will be terminated. Downstream connections will also eventually fail as a result. (However, the standby server can recover by fetching the segment from archive, if WAL archiving is in use.)

This sets only the minimum size of segments retained in `pg_wal`; the system might need to retain more segments for WAL archival or to recover from a checkpoint. If `wal_keep_size` is zero (the default), the system doesn't keep any extra segments for standby purposes, so the number of old WAL segments available to standby servers is a function of the location of the previous checkpoint and status of WAL archiving. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as megabytes. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

`max_slot_wal_keep_size (integer)`

Specify the maximum size of WAL files that replication slots are allowed to retain in the `pg_wal` directory at checkpoint time. If `max_slot_wal_keep_size` is -1 (the default), replication slots may retain an unlimited amount of WAL files. Otherwise, if `restart_lsn` of a replication slot falls behind the current LSN by more than the given size, the standby using the slot may no longer be able to continue replication due to removal of required WAL files. You can see the WAL availability of replication slots in `pg_replication_slots`. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as megabytes. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

`wal_sender_timeout (integer)`

Terminate replication connections that are inactive for longer than this amount of time. This is useful for the sending server to detect a standby crash or network outage. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as milliseconds. The default value is 60 seconds. A value of zero disables the timeout mechanism.

With a cluster distributed across multiple geographic locations, using different values per location brings more flexibility in the cluster management. A smaller value is useful for faster failure detection with a standby having a low-latency network connection, and a larger value helps in judging better the health of a standby if located on a remote location, with a high-latency network connection.

`track_commit_timestamp (boolean)`

Record commit time of transactions. This parameter can only be set in `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line. The default value is `off`.

## 20.6.2. Primary Server

These parameters can be set on the primary server that is to send replication data to one or more standby servers. Note that in addition to these parameters, `wal_level` must be set appropriately on the primary server, and optionally WAL archiving can be enabled as well (see Section 20.5.3). The values of these parameters on standby servers are irrelevant, although you may wish to set them there in preparation for the possibility of a standby becoming the primary.

`synchronous_standby_names (string)`

Specifies a list of standby servers that can support *synchronous replication*, as described in Section 27.2.8. There will be one or more active synchronous standbys; transactions waiting for commit will be allowed to proceed after these standby servers confirm receipt of their data. The synchronous standbys will be those whose names appear in this list, and that are both currently connected and streaming data in real-time (as shown by a state of `streaming` in the `pg_stat_replication` view). Specifying more than one synchronous standby can allow for very high availability and protection against data loss.

The name of a standby server for this purpose is the `application_name` setting of the standby, as set in the standby's connection information. In case of a physical replication standby, this should be set in the `primary_conninfo` setting; the default is the setting of `cluster_name` if set, else `walreceiver`. For logical replication, this can be set in the connection information of the subscription, and it defaults to the subscription name. For other replication stream consumers, consult their documentation.

This parameter specifies a list of standby servers using either of the following syntaxes:

```
[FIRST] num_sync ( standby_name [, ...] )
ANY num_sync ( standby_name [, ...] )
standby_name [, ...]
```

where `num_sync` is the number of synchronous standbys that transactions need to wait for replies from, and `standby_name` is the name of a standby server. `FIRST` and `ANY` specify the method to choose synchronous standbys from the listed servers.

The keyword `FIRST`, coupled with `num_sync`, specifies a priority-based synchronous replication and makes transaction commits wait until their WAL records are replicated to `num_sync` synchronous standbys chosen based on their priorities. For example, a setting of `FIRST 3 (s1, s2, s3, s4)` will cause each commit to wait for replies from three higher-priority standbys chosen from standby servers `s1`, `s2`, `s3` and `s4`. The standbys whose names appear earlier in the list are given higher priority and will be considered as synchronous. Other standby servers

appearing later in this list represent potential synchronous standbys. If any of the current synchronous standbys disconnects for whatever reason, it will be replaced immediately with the next-highest-priority standby. The keyword `FIRST` is optional.

The keyword `ANY`, coupled with `num_sync`, specifies a quorum-based synchronous replication and makes transaction commits wait until their WAL records are replicated to *at least* `num_sync` listed standbys. For example, a setting of `ANY 3 (s1, s2, s3, s4)` will cause each commit to proceed as soon as at least any three standbys of `s1`, `s2`, `s3` and `s4` reply.

`FIRST` and `ANY` are case-insensitive. If these keywords are used as the name of a standby server, its `standby_name` must be double-quoted.

The third syntax was used before PostgreSQL version 9.6 and is still supported. It's the same as the first syntax with `FIRST` and `num_sync` equal to 1. For example, `FIRST 1 (s1, s2)` and `s1, s2` have the same meaning: either `s1` or `s2` is chosen as a synchronous standby.

The special entry `*` matches any standby name.

There is no mechanism to enforce uniqueness of standby names. In case of duplicates one of the matching standbys will be considered as higher priority, though exactly which one is indeterminate.

### Note

Each `standby_name` should have the form of a valid SQL identifier, unless it is `*`. You can use double-quoting if necessary. But note that `standby_names` are compared to standby application names case-insensitively, whether double-quoted or not.

If no synchronous standby names are specified here, then synchronous replication is not enabled and transaction commits will not wait for replication. This is the default configuration. Even when synchronous replication is enabled, individual transactions can be configured not to wait for replication by setting the `synchronous_commit` parameter to `local` or `off`.

This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

## 20.6.3. Standby Servers

These settings control the behavior of a standby server that is to receive replication data. Their values on the primary server are irrelevant.

`primary_conninfo` (string)

Specifies a connection string to be used for the standby server to connect with a sending server. This string is in the format described in Section 34.1.1. If any option is unspecified in this string, then the corresponding environment variable (see Section 34.15) is checked. If the environment variable is not set either, then defaults are used.

The connection string should specify the host name (or address) of the sending server, as well as the port number if it is not the same as the standby server's default. Also specify a user name corresponding to a suitably-privileged role on the sending server (see Section 27.2.5.1). A password needs to be provided too, if the sender demands password authentication. It can be provided in the `primary_conninfo` string, or in a separate `~/.pgpass` file on the standby server (use `replication` as the database name). Do not specify a database name in the `primary_conninfo` string.

This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line. If this parameter is changed while the WAL receiver process is running, that process is signaled

to shut down and expected to restart with the new setting (except if `primary_conninfo` is an empty string). This setting has no effect if the server is not in standby mode.

`primary_slot_name` (string)

Optionally specifies an existing replication slot to be used when connecting to the sending server via streaming replication to control resource removal on the upstream node (see Section 27.2.6). This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line. If this parameter is changed while the WAL receiver process is running, that process is signaled to shut down and expected to restart with the new setting. This setting has no effect if `primary_conninfo` is not set or the server is not in standby mode.

`hot_standby` (boolean)

Specifies whether or not you can connect and run queries during recovery, as described in Section 27.4. The default value is `on`. This parameter can only be set at server start. It only has effect during archive recovery or in standby mode.

`max_standby_archive_delay` (integer)

When hot standby is active, this parameter determines how long the standby server should wait before canceling standby queries that conflict with about-to-be-applied WAL entries, as described in Section 27.4.2. `max_standby_archive_delay` applies when WAL data is being read from WAL archive (and is therefore not current). If this value is specified without units, it is taken as milliseconds. The default is 30 seconds. A value of -1 allows the standby to wait forever for conflicting queries to complete. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

Note that `max_standby_archive_delay` is not the same as the maximum length of time a query can run before cancellation; rather it is the maximum total time allowed to apply any one WAL segment's data. Thus, if one query has resulted in significant delay earlier in the WAL segment, subsequent conflicting queries will have much less grace time.

`max_standby_streaming_delay` (integer)

When hot standby is active, this parameter determines how long the standby server should wait before canceling standby queries that conflict with about-to-be-applied WAL entries, as described in Section 27.4.2. `max_standby_streaming_delay` applies when WAL data is being received via streaming replication. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as milliseconds. The default is 30 seconds. A value of -1 allows the standby to wait forever for conflicting queries to complete. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

Note that `max_standby_streaming_delay` is not the same as the maximum length of time a query can run before cancellation; rather it is the maximum total time allowed to apply WAL data once it has been received from the primary server. Thus, if one query has resulted in significant delay, subsequent conflicting queries will have much less grace time until the standby server has caught up again.

`wal_receiver_create_temp_slot` (boolean)

Specifies whether the WAL receiver process should create a temporary replication slot on the remote instance when no permanent replication slot to use has been configured (using `primary_slot_name`). The default is `off`. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line. If this parameter is changed while the WAL receiver process is running, that process is signaled to shut down and expected to restart with the new setting.

`wal_receiver_status_interval` (integer)

Specifies the minimum frequency for the WAL receiver process on the standby to send information about replication progress to the primary or upstream standby, where it can be seen using



the `pg_stat_replication` view. The standby will report the last write-ahead log location it has written, the last position it has flushed to disk, and the last position it has applied. This parameter's value is the maximum amount of time between reports. Updates are sent each time the write or flush positions change, or as often as specified by this parameter if set to a non-zero value. There are additional cases where updates are sent while ignoring this parameter; for example, when processing of the existing WAL completes or when `synchronous_commit` is set to `remote_apply`. Thus, the apply position may lag slightly behind the true position. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as seconds. The default value is 10 seconds. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

`hot_standby_feedback` (boolean)

Specifies whether or not a hot standby will send feedback to the primary or upstream standby about queries currently executing on the standby. This parameter can be used to eliminate query cancels caused by cleanup records, but can cause database bloat on the primary for some workloads. Feedback messages will not be sent more frequently than once per `wal_receiver_status_interval`. The default value is `off`. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

If cascaded replication is in use the feedback is passed upstream until it eventually reaches the primary. Standbys make no other use of feedback they receive other than to pass upstream.

This setting does not override the behavior of `old_snapshot_threshold` on the primary; a snapshot on the standby which exceeds the primary's age threshold can become invalid, resulting in cancellation of transactions on the standby. This is because `old_snapshot_threshold` is intended to provide an absolute limit on the time which dead rows can contribute to bloat, which would otherwise be violated because of the configuration of a standby.

`wal_receiver_timeout` (integer)

Terminate replication connections that are inactive for longer than this amount of time. This is useful for the receiving standby server to detect a primary node crash or network outage. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as milliseconds. The default value is 60 seconds. A value of zero disables the timeout mechanism. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

`wal_retrieve_retry_interval` (integer)

Specifies how long the standby server should wait when WAL data is not available from any sources (streaming replication, local `pg_wal` or WAL archive) before trying again to retrieve WAL data. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as milliseconds. The default value is 5 seconds. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

This parameter is useful in configurations where a node in recovery needs to control the amount of time to wait for new WAL data to be available. For example, in archive recovery, it is possible to make the recovery more responsive in the detection of a new WAL file by reducing the value of this parameter. On a system with low WAL activity, increasing it reduces the amount of requests necessary to access WAL archives, something useful for example in cloud environments where the number of times an infrastructure is accessed is taken into account.

In logical replication, this parameter also limits how often a failing replication apply worker will be respawned.

`recovery_min_apply_delay` (integer)

By default, a standby server restores WAL records from the sending server as soon as possible. It may be useful to have a time-delayed copy of the data, offering opportunities to correct data loss errors. This parameter allows you to delay recovery by a specified amount of time. For example, if you set this parameter to `5min`, the standby will replay each transaction commit only when the

system time on the standby is at least five minutes past the commit time reported by the primary. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as milliseconds. The default is zero, adding no delay.

It is possible that the replication delay between servers exceeds the value of this parameter, in which case no delay is added. Note that the delay is calculated between the WAL time stamp as written on primary and the current time on the standby. Delays in transfer because of network lag or cascading replication configurations may reduce the actual wait time significantly. If the system clocks on primary and standby are not synchronized, this may lead to recovery applying records earlier than expected; but that is not a major issue because useful settings of this parameter are much larger than typical time deviations between servers.

The delay occurs only on WAL records for transaction commits. Other records are replayed as quickly as possible, which is not a problem because MVCC visibility rules ensure their effects are not visible until the corresponding commit record is applied.

The delay occurs once the database in recovery has reached a consistent state, until the standby is promoted or triggered. After that the standby will end recovery without further waiting.

WAL records must be kept on the standby until they are ready to be applied. Therefore, longer delays will result in a greater accumulation of WAL files, increasing disk space requirements for the standby's `pg_wal` directory.

This parameter is intended for use with streaming replication deployments; however, if the parameter is specified it will be honored in all cases except crash recovery. `hot_standby_feedback` will be delayed by use of this feature which could lead to bloat on the primary; use both together with care.

### Warning

Synchronous replication is affected by this setting when `synchronous_commit` is set to `remote_apply`; every COMMIT will need to wait to be applied.

This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

## 20.6.4. Subscribers

These settings control the behavior of a logical replication subscriber. Their values on the publisher are irrelevant. See Section 31.10 for more details.

`max_replication_slots` (integer)

Specifies how many replication origins (see Chapter 50) can be tracked simultaneously, effectively limiting how many logical replication subscriptions can be created on the server. Setting it to a lower value than the current number of tracked replication origins (reflected in `pg_replication_origin_status`) will prevent the server from starting. `max_replication_slots` must be set to at least the number of subscriptions that will be added to the subscriber, plus some reserve for table synchronization.

Note that this parameter also applies on a sending server, but with a different meaning.

`max_logical_replication_workers` (integer)

Specifies maximum number of logical replication workers. This includes leader apply workers, parallel apply workers, and table synchronization workers.

Logical replication workers are taken from the pool defined by `max_worker_processes`.

The default value is 4. This parameter can only be set at server start.

`max_sync_workers_per_subscription(integer)`

Maximum number of synchronization workers per subscription. This parameter controls the amount of parallelism of the initial data copy during the subscription initialization or when new tables are added.

Currently, there can be only one synchronization worker per table.

The synchronization workers are taken from the pool defined by `max_logical_replication_workers`.

The default value is 2. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

`max_parallel_apply_workers_per_subscription(integer)`

Maximum number of parallel apply workers per subscription. This parameter controls the amount of parallelism for streaming of in-progress transactions with subscription parameter `streaming = parallel`.

The parallel apply workers are taken from the pool defined by `max_logical_replication_workers`.

The default value is 2. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

## 20.7. Query Planning

### 20.7.1. Planner Method Configuration

These configuration parameters provide a crude method of influencing the query plans chosen by the query optimizer. If the default plan chosen by the optimizer for a particular query is not optimal, a *temporary* solution is to use one of these configuration parameters to force the optimizer to choose a different plan. Better ways to improve the quality of the plans chosen by the optimizer include adjusting the planner cost constants (see Section 20.7.2), running `ANALYZE` manually, increasing the value of the `default_statistics_target` configuration parameter, and increasing the amount of statistics collected for specific columns using `ALTER TABLE SET STATISTICS`.

`enable_async_append(boolean)`

Enables or disables the query planner's use of async-aware append plan types. The default is on.

`enable_bitmapscan(boolean)`

Enables or disables the query planner's use of bitmap-scan plan types. The default is on.

`enable_gathermerge(boolean)`

Enables or disables the query planner's use of gather merge plan types. The default is on.

`enable_hashagg(boolean)`

Enables or disables the query planner's use of hashed aggregation plan types. The default is on.

`enable_hashjoin(boolean)`

Enables or disables the query planner's use of hash-join plan types. The default is on.

`enable_incremental_sort(boolean)`

Enables or disables the query planner's use of incremental sort steps. The default is on.

`enable_indexscan` (boolean)

Enables or disables the query planner's use of index-scan plan types. The default is on.

`enable_indexonlyscan` (boolean)

Enables or disables the query planner's use of index-only-scan plan types (see Section 11.9). The default is on.

`enable_material` (boolean)

Enables or disables the query planner's use of materialization. It is impossible to suppress materialization entirely, but turning this variable off prevents the planner from inserting materialize nodes except in cases where it is required for correctness. The default is on.

`enable_memoize` (boolean)

Enables or disables the query planner's use of memoize plans for caching results from parameterized scans inside nested-loop joins. This plan type allows scans to the underlying plans to be skipped when the results for the current parameters are already in the cache. Less commonly looked up results may be evicted from the cache when more space is required for new entries. The default is on.

`enable_mergejoin` (boolean)

Enables or disables the query planner's use of merge-join plan types. The default is on.

`enable_nestloop` (boolean)

Enables or disables the query planner's use of nested-loop join plans. It is impossible to suppress nested-loop joins entirely, but turning this variable off discourages the planner from using one if there are other methods available. The default is on.

`enable_parallel_append` (boolean)

Enables or disables the query planner's use of parallel-aware append plan types. The default is on.

`enable_parallel_hash` (boolean)

Enables or disables the query planner's use of hash-join plan types with parallel hash. Has no effect if hash-join plans are not also enabled. The default is on.

`enable_partition_pruning` (boolean)

Enables or disables the query planner's ability to eliminate a partitioned table's partitions from query plans. This also controls the planner's ability to generate query plans which allow the query executor to remove (ignore) partitions during query execution. The default is on. See Section 5.11.4 for details.

`enable_partitionwise_join` (boolean)

Enables or disables the query planner's use of partitionwise join, which allows a join between partitioned tables to be performed by joining the matching partitions. Partitionwise join currently applies only when the join conditions include all the partition keys, which must be of the same data type and have one-to-one matching sets of child partitions. Because partitionwise join planning can use significantly more CPU time and memory during planning, the default is off.

`enable_partitionwise_aggregate` (boolean)

Enables or disables the query planner's use of partitionwise grouping or aggregation, which allows grouping or aggregation on partitioned tables to be performed separately for each partition. If the

GROUP BY clause does not include the partition keys, only partial aggregation can be performed on a per-partition basis, and finalization must be performed later. Because partitionwise grouping or aggregation can use significantly more CPU time and memory during planning, the default is off.

`enable_presorted_aggregate (boolean)`

Controls if the query planner will produce a plan which will provide rows which are presorted in the order required for the query's ORDER BY / DISTINCT aggregate functions. When disabled, the query planner will produce a plan which will always require the executor to perform a sort before performing aggregation of each aggregate function containing an ORDER BY or DISTINCT clause. When enabled, the planner will try to produce a more efficient plan which provides input to the aggregate functions which is presorted in the order they require for aggregation. The default value is on.

`enable_seqscan (boolean)`

Enables or disables the query planner's use of sequential scan plan types. It is impossible to suppress sequential scans entirely, but turning this variable off discourages the planner from using one if there are other methods available. The default is on.

`enable_sort (boolean)`

Enables or disables the query planner's use of explicit sort steps. It is impossible to suppress explicit sorts entirely, but turning this variable off discourages the planner from using one if there are other methods available. The default is on.

`enable_tidscan (boolean)`

Enables or disables the query planner's use of TID scan plan types. The default is on.

## 20.7.2. Planner Cost Constants

The *cost* variables described in this section are measured on an arbitrary scale. Only their relative values matter, hence scaling them all up or down by the same factor will result in no change in the planner's choices. By default, these cost variables are based on the cost of sequential page fetches; that is, `seq_page_cost` is conventionally set to 1.0 and the other cost variables are set with reference to that. But you can use a different scale if you prefer, such as actual execution times in milliseconds on a particular machine.

### Note

Unfortunately, there is no well-defined method for determining ideal values for the cost variables. They are best treated as averages over the entire mix of queries that a particular installation will receive. This means that changing them on the basis of just a few experiments is very risky.

`seq_page_cost (floating point)`

Sets the planner's estimate of the cost of a disk page fetch that is part of a series of sequential fetches. The default is 1.0. This value can be overridden for tables and indexes in a particular tablespace by setting the tablespace parameter of the same name (see ALTER TABLESPACE).

`random_page_cost (floating point)`

Sets the planner's estimate of the cost of a non-sequentially-fetched disk page. The default is 4.0. This value can be overridden for tables and indexes in a particular tablespace by setting the tablespace parameter of the same name (see ALTER TABLESPACE).

Reducing this value relative to `seq_page_cost` will cause the system to prefer index scans; raising it will make index scans look relatively more expensive. You can raise or lower both values together to change the importance of disk I/O costs relative to CPU costs, which are described by the following parameters.

Random access to mechanical disk storage is normally much more expensive than four times sequential access. However, a lower default is used (4.0) because the majority of random accesses to disk, such as indexed reads, are assumed to be in cache. The default value can be thought of as modeling random access as 40 times slower than sequential, while expecting 90% of random reads to be cached.

If you believe a 90% cache rate is an incorrect assumption for your workload, you can increase `random_page_cost` to better reflect the true cost of random storage reads. Correspondingly, if your data is likely to be completely in cache, such as when the database is smaller than the total server memory, decreasing `random_page_cost` can be appropriate. Storage that has a low random read cost relative to sequential, e.g., solid-state drives, might also be better modeled with a lower value for `random_page_cost`, e.g., 1.1.

### Tip

Although the system will let you set `random_page_cost` to less than `seq_page_cost`, it is not physically sensible to do so. However, setting them equal makes sense if the database is entirely cached in RAM, since in that case there is no penalty for touching pages out of sequence. Also, in a heavily-cached database you should lower both values relative to the CPU parameters, since the cost of fetching a page already in RAM is much smaller than it would normally be.

`cpu_tuple_cost` (floating point)

Sets the planner's estimate of the cost of processing each row during a query. The default is 0.01.

`cpu_index_tuple_cost` (floating point)

Sets the planner's estimate of the cost of processing each index entry during an index scan. The default is 0.005.

`cpu_operator_cost` (floating point)

Sets the planner's estimate of the cost of processing each operator or function executed during a query. The default is 0.0025.

`parallel_setup_cost` (floating point)

Sets the planner's estimate of the cost of launching parallel worker processes. The default is 1000.

`parallel_tuple_cost` (floating point)

Sets the planner's estimate of the cost of transferring one tuple from a parallel worker process to another process. The default is 0.1.

`min_parallel_table_scan_size` (integer)

Sets the minimum amount of table data that must be scanned in order for a parallel scan to be considered. For a parallel sequential scan, the amount of table data scanned is always equal to the size of the table, but when indexes are used the amount of table data scanned will normally be less. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as blocks, that is BLCKSZ bytes, typically 8kB. The default is 8 megabytes (8MB).

`min_parallel_index_scan_size (integer)`

Sets the minimum amount of index data that must be scanned in order for a parallel scan to be considered. Note that a parallel index scan typically won't touch the entire index; it is the number of pages which the planner believes will actually be touched by the scan which is relevant. This parameter is also used to decide whether a particular index can participate in a parallel vacuum. See `VACUUM`. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as blocks, that is `BLCKSZ` bytes, typically 8kB. The default is 512 kilobytes (512kB).

`effective_cache_size (integer)`

Sets the planner's assumption about the effective size of the disk cache that is available to a single query. This is factored into estimates of the cost of using an index; a higher value makes it more likely index scans will be used, a lower value makes it more likely sequential scans will be used. When setting this parameter you should consider both PostgreSQL's shared buffers and the portion of the kernel's disk cache that will be used for PostgreSQL data files, though some data might exist in both places. Also, take into account the expected number of concurrent queries on different tables, since they will have to share the available space. This parameter has no effect on the size of shared memory allocated by PostgreSQL, nor does it reserve kernel disk cache; it is used only for estimation purposes. The system also does not assume data remains in the disk cache between queries. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as blocks, that is `BLCKSZ` bytes, typically 8kB. The default is 4 gigabytes (4GB). (If `BLCKSZ` is not 8kB, the default value scales proportionally to it.)

`jit_above_cost (floating point)`

Sets the query cost above which JIT compilation is activated, if enabled (see Chapter 32). Performing JIT costs planning time but can accelerate query execution. Setting this to `-1` disables JIT compilation. The default is 100000.

`jit_inline_above_cost (floating point)`

Sets the query cost above which JIT compilation attempts to inline functions and operators. Inlining adds planning time, but can improve execution speed. It is not meaningful to set this to less than `jit_above_cost`. Setting this to `-1` disables inlining. The default is 500000.

`jit_optimize_above_cost (floating point)`

Sets the query cost above which JIT compilation applies expensive optimizations. Such optimization adds planning time, but can improve execution speed. It is not meaningful to set this to less than `jit_above_cost`, and it is unlikely to be beneficial to set it to more than `jit_inline_above_cost`. Setting this to `-1` disables expensive optimizations. The default is 500000.

## 20.7.3. Genetic Query Optimizer

The genetic query optimizer (GEQO) is an algorithm that does query planning using heuristic searching. This reduces planning time for complex queries (those joining many relations), at the cost of producing plans that are sometimes inferior to those found by the normal exhaustive-search algorithm. For more information see Chapter 62.

`geqo (boolean)`

Enables or disables genetic query optimization. This is on by default. It is usually best not to turn it off in production; the `geqo_threshold` variable provides more granular control of GEQO.

`geqo_threshold (integer)`

Use genetic query optimization to plan queries with at least this many FROM items involved. (Note that a `FULL OUTER JOIN` construct counts as only one FROM item.) The default is 12. For

simpler queries it is usually best to use the regular, exhaustive-search planner, but for queries with many tables the exhaustive search takes too long, often longer than the penalty of executing a suboptimal plan. Thus, a threshold on the size of the query is a convenient way to manage use of GEQO.

`geqo_effort (integer)`

Controls the trade-off between planning time and query plan quality in GEQO. This variable must be an integer in the range from 1 to 10. The default value is five. Larger values increase the time spent doing query planning, but also increase the likelihood that an efficient query plan will be chosen.

`geqo_effort` doesn't actually do anything directly; it is only used to compute the default values for the other variables that influence GEQO behavior (described below). If you prefer, you can set the other parameters by hand instead.

`geqo_pool_size (integer)`

Controls the pool size used by GEQO, that is the number of individuals in the genetic population. It must be at least two, and useful values are typically 100 to 1000. If it is set to zero (the default setting) then a suitable value is chosen based on `geqo_effort` and the number of tables in the query.

`geqo_generations (integer)`

Controls the number of generations used by GEQO, that is the number of iterations of the algorithm. It must be at least one, and useful values are in the same range as the pool size. If it is set to zero (the default setting) then a suitable value is chosen based on `geqo_pool_size`.

`geqo_selection_bias (floating point)`

Controls the selection bias used by GEQO. The selection bias is the selective pressure within the population. Values can be from 1.50 to 2.00; the latter is the default.

`geqo_seed (floating point)`

Controls the initial value of the random number generator used by GEQO to select random paths through the join order search space. The value can range from zero (the default) to one. Varying the value changes the set of join paths explored, and may result in a better or worse best path being found.

## 20.7.4. Other Planner Options

`default_statistics_target (integer)`

Sets the default statistics target for table columns without a column-specific target set via `ALTER TABLE SET STATISTICS`. Larger values increase the time needed to do `ANALYZE`, but might improve the quality of the planner's estimates. The default is 100. For more information on the use of statistics by the PostgreSQL query planner, refer to Section 14.2.

`constraint_exclusion (enum)`

Controls the query planner's use of table constraints to optimize queries. The allowed values of `constraint_exclusion` are `on` (examine constraints for all tables), `off` (never examine constraints), and `partition` (examine constraints only for inheritance child tables and `UNION ALL` subqueries). `partition` is the default setting. It is often used with traditional inheritance trees to improve performance.

When this parameter allows it for a particular table, the planner compares query conditions with the table's `CHECK` constraints, and omits scanning tables for which the conditions contradict the constraints. For example:



```
CREATE TABLE parent(key integer, ...);
CREATE TABLE child1000(check (key between 1000 and 1999))
  INHERITS(parent);
CREATE TABLE child2000(check (key between 2000 and 2999))
  INHERITS(parent);
...
SELECT * FROM parent WHERE key = 2400;
```

With constraint exclusion enabled, this `SELECT` will not scan `child1000` at all, improving performance.

Currently, constraint exclusion is enabled by default only for cases that are often used to implement table partitioning via inheritance trees. Turning it on for all tables imposes extra planning overhead that is quite noticeable on simple queries, and most often will yield no benefit for simple queries. If you have no tables that are partitioned using traditional inheritance, you might prefer to turn it off entirely. (Note that the equivalent feature for partitioned tables is controlled by a separate parameter, `enable_partition_pruning`.)

Refer to Section 5.11.5 for more information on using constraint exclusion to implement partitioning.

`cursor_tuple_fraction`(floating point)

Sets the planner's estimate of the fraction of a cursor's rows that will be retrieved. The default is 0.1. Smaller values of this setting bias the planner towards using “fast start” plans for cursors, which will retrieve the first few rows quickly while perhaps taking a long time to fetch all rows. Larger values put more emphasis on the total estimated time. At the maximum setting of 1.0, cursors are planned exactly like regular queries, considering only the total estimated time and not how soon the first rows might be delivered.

`from_collapse_limit`(integer)

The planner will merge sub-queries into upper queries if the resulting `FROM` list would have no more than this many items. Smaller values reduce planning time but might yield inferior query plans. The default is eight. For more information see Section 14.3.

Setting this value to `geqo_threshold` or more may trigger use of the GEQO planner, resulting in non-optimal plans. See Section 20.7.3.

`jit`(boolean)

Determines whether JIT compilation may be used by PostgreSQL, if available (see Chapter 32). The default is on.

`join_collapse_limit`(integer)

The planner will rewrite explicit `JOIN` constructs (except `FULL JOINs`) into lists of `FROM` items whenever a list of no more than this many items would result. Smaller values reduce planning time but might yield inferior query plans.

By default, this variable is set the same as `from_collapse_limit`, which is appropriate for most uses. Setting it to 1 prevents any reordering of explicit `JOINs`. Thus, the explicit join order specified in the query will be the actual order in which the relations are joined. Because the query planner does not always choose the optimal join order, advanced users can elect to temporarily set this variable to 1, and then specify the join order they desire explicitly. For more information see Section 14.3.

Setting this value to `geqo_threshold` or more may trigger use of the GEQO planner, resulting in non-optimal plans. See Section 20.7.3.

`plan_cache_mode` (enum)

Prepared statements (either explicitly prepared or implicitly generated, for example by PL/pgSQL) can be executed using custom or generic plans. Custom plans are made afresh for each execution using its specific set of parameter values, while generic plans do not rely on the parameter values and can be re-used across executions. Thus, use of a generic plan saves planning time, but if the ideal plan depends strongly on the parameter values then a generic plan may be inefficient. The choice between these options is normally made automatically, but it can be overridden with `plan_cache_mode`. The allowed values are `auto` (the default), `force_custom_plan` and `force_generic_plan`. This setting is considered when a cached plan is to be executed, not when it is prepared. For more information see `PREPARE`.

`recursive_worktable_factor` (floating point)

Sets the planner's estimate of the average size of the working table of a recursive query, as a multiple of the estimated size of the initial non-recursive term of the query. This helps the planner choose the most appropriate method for joining the working table to the query's other tables. The default value is `10.0`. A smaller value such as `1.0` can be helpful when the recursion has low “fan-out” from one step to the next, as for example in shortest-path queries. Graph analytics queries may benefit from larger-than-default values.

## 20.8. Error Reporting and Logging

### 20.8.1. Where to Log

`log_destination` (string)

PostgreSQL supports several methods for logging server messages, including `stderr`, `csvlog`, `jsonlog`, and `syslog`. On Windows, `eventlog` is also supported. Set this parameter to a list of desired log destinations separated by commas. The default is to log to `stderr` only. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

If `csvlog` is included in `log_destination`, log entries are output in “comma separated value” (CSV) format, which is convenient for loading logs into programs. See Section 20.8.4 for details. `logging_collector` must be enabled to generate CSV-format log output.

If `jsonlog` is included in `log_destination`, log entries are output in JSON format, which is convenient for loading logs into programs. See Section 20.8.5 for details. `logging_collector` must be enabled to generate JSON-format log output.

When either `stderr`, `csvlog` or `jsonlog` are included, the file `current_logfiles` is created to record the location of the log file(s) currently in use by the logging collector and the associated logging destination. This provides a convenient way to find the logs currently in use by the instance. Here is an example of this file's content:

```
stderr log/postgresql.log
csvlog log/postgresql.csv
jsonlog log/postgresql.json
```

`current_logfiles` is recreated when a new log file is created as an effect of rotation, and when `log_destination` is reloaded. It is removed when none of `stderr`, `csvlog` or `jsonlog` are included in `log_destination`, and when the logging collector is disabled.

#### Note

On most Unix systems, you will need to alter the configuration of your system's `syslog` daemon in order to make use of the `syslog` option for `log_destination`. PostgreSQL

can log to syslog facilities LOCAL0 through LOCAL7 (see `syslog_facility`), but the default syslog configuration on most platforms will discard all such messages. You will need to add something like:

```
local0.*      /var/log/postgresql
```

to the syslog daemon's configuration file to make it work.

On Windows, when you use the `eventlog` option for `log_destination`, you should register an event source and its library with the operating system so that the Windows Event Viewer can display event log messages cleanly. See Section 19.12 for details.

`logging_collector` (boolean)

This parameter enables the *logging collector*, which is a background process that captures log messages sent to `stderr` and redirects them into log files. This approach is often more useful than logging to syslog, since some types of messages might not appear in syslog output. (One common example is dynamic-linker failure messages; another is error messages produced by scripts such as `archive_command`.) This parameter can only be set at server start.

### Note

It is possible to log to `stderr` without using the logging collector; the log messages will just go to wherever the server's `stderr` is directed. However, that method is only suitable for low log volumes, since it provides no convenient way to rotate log files. Also, on some platforms not using the logging collector can result in lost or garbled log output, because multiple processes writing concurrently to the same log file can overwrite each other's output.

### Note

The logging collector is designed to never lose messages. This means that in case of extremely high load, server processes could be blocked while trying to send additional log messages when the collector has fallen behind. In contrast, syslog prefers to drop messages if it cannot write them, which means it may fail to log some messages in such cases but it will not block the rest of the system.

`log_directory` (string)

When `logging_collector` is enabled, this parameter determines the directory in which log files will be created. It can be specified as an absolute path, or relative to the cluster data directory. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line. The default is `log`.

`log_filename` (string)

When `logging_collector` is enabled, this parameter sets the file names of the created log files. The value is treated as a `strftime` pattern, so `%`-escapes can be used to specify time-varying file names. (Note that if there are any time-zone-dependent `%`-escapes, the computation is done in the zone specified by `log_timezone`.) The supported `%`-escapes are similar to those listed in the Open Group's `strftime` <sup>1</sup> specification. Note that the system's `strftime` is not used directly,

<sup>1</sup> <https://pubs.opengroup.org/onlinepubs/009695399/functions/strftime.html>

so platform-specific (nonstandard) extensions do not work. The default is `postgresql-%Y-%m-%d_%H%M%S.log`.

If you specify a file name without escapes, you should plan to use a log rotation utility to avoid eventually filling the entire disk. In releases prior to 8.4, if no % escapes were present, PostgreSQL would append the epoch of the new log file's creation time, but this is no longer the case.

If CSV-format output is enabled in `log_destination`, `.csv` will be appended to the time-stamped log file name to create the file name for CSV-format output. (If `log_filename` ends in `.log`, the suffix is replaced instead.)

If JSON-format output is enabled in `log_destination`, `.json` will be appended to the time-stamped log file name to create the file name for JSON-format output. (If `log_filename` ends in `.log`, the suffix is replaced instead.)

This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

`log_file_mode (integer)`

On Unix systems this parameter sets the permissions for log files when `logging_collector` is enabled. (On Microsoft Windows this parameter is ignored.) The parameter value is expected to be a numeric mode specified in the format accepted by the `chmod` and `umask` system calls. (To use the customary octal format the number must start with a 0 (zero).)

The default permissions are `0600`, meaning only the server owner can read or write the log files. The other commonly useful setting is `0640`, allowing members of the owner's group to read the files. Note however that to make use of such a setting, you'll need to alter `log_directory` to store the files somewhere outside the cluster data directory. In any case, it's unwise to make the log files world-readable, since they might contain sensitive data.

This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

`log_rotation_age (integer)`

When `logging_collector` is enabled, this parameter determines the maximum amount of time to use an individual log file, after which a new log file will be created. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as minutes. The default is 24 hours. Set to zero to disable time-based creation of new log files. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

`log_rotation_size (integer)`

When `logging_collector` is enabled, this parameter determines the maximum size of an individual log file. After this amount of data has been emitted into a log file, a new log file will be created. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as kilobytes. The default is 10 megabytes. Set to zero to disable size-based creation of new log files. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

`log_truncate_on_rotation (boolean)`

When `logging_collector` is enabled, this parameter will cause PostgreSQL to truncate (overwrite), rather than append to, any existing log file of the same name. However, truncation will occur only when a new file is being opened due to time-based rotation, not during server startup or size-based rotation. When off, pre-existing files will be appended to in all cases. For example, using this setting in combination with a `log_filename` like `postgresql-%H.log` would result in generating twenty-four hourly log files and then cyclically overwriting them. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

Example: To keep 7 days of logs, one log file per day named `server_log.Mon`, `server_log.Tue`, etc., and automatically overwrite last week's log with this week's log, set `log_filename` to `server_log.%a`, `log_truncate_on_rotation` to `on`, and `log_rotation_age` to 1440.

Example: To keep 24 hours of logs, one log file per hour, but also rotate sooner if the log file size exceeds 1GB, set `log_filename` to `server_log.%H%M`, `log_truncate_on_rotation` to `on`, `log_rotation_age` to 60, and `log_rotation_size` to 1000000. Including `%M` in `log_filename` allows any size-driven rotations that might occur to select a file name different from the hour's initial file name.

`syslog_facility` (enum)

When logging to syslog is enabled, this parameter determines the syslog “facility” to be used. You can choose from `LOCAL0`, `LOCAL1`, `LOCAL2`, `LOCAL3`, `LOCAL4`, `LOCAL5`, `LOCAL6`, `LOCAL7`; the default is `LOCAL0`. See also the documentation of your system's syslog daemon. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

`syslog_ident` (string)

When logging to syslog is enabled, this parameter determines the program name used to identify PostgreSQL messages in syslog logs. The default is `postgres`. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

`syslog_sequence_numbers` (boolean)

When logging to syslog and this is on (the default), then each message will be prefixed by an increasing sequence number (such as [ 2 ]). This circumvents the “--- last message repeated N times ---” suppression that many syslog implementations perform by default. In more modern syslog implementations, repeated message suppression can be configured (for example, `$RepeatedMsgReduction` in `rsyslog`), so this might not be necessary. Also, you could turn this off if you actually want to suppress repeated messages.

This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

`syslog_split_messages` (boolean)

When logging to syslog is enabled, this parameter determines how messages are delivered to syslog. When on (the default), messages are split by lines, and long lines are split so that they will fit into 1024 bytes, which is a typical size limit for traditional syslog implementations. When off, PostgreSQL server log messages are delivered to the syslog service as is, and it is up to the syslog service to cope with the potentially bulky messages.

If syslog is ultimately logging to a text file, then the effect will be the same either way, and it is best to leave the setting on, since most syslog implementations either cannot handle large messages or would need to be specially configured to handle them. But if syslog is ultimately writing into some other medium, it might be necessary or more useful to keep messages logically together.

This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

`event_source` (string)

When logging to event log is enabled, this parameter determines the program name used to identify PostgreSQL messages in the log. The default is `PostgreSQL`. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

## 20.8.2. When to Log

`log_min_messages` (enum)

Controls which message levels are written to the server log. Valid values are `DEBUG5`, `DEBUG4`, `DEBUG3`, `DEBUG2`, `DEBUG1`, `INFO`, `NOTICE`, `WARNING`, `ERROR`, `LOG`, `FATAL`, and `PANIC`. Each level includes all the levels that follow it. The later the level, the fewer messages are sent to the log. The default is `WARNING`. Note that `LOG` has a different rank here than in `client_min_messages`. Only superusers and users with the appropriate `SET` privilege can change this setting.

`log_min_error_statement (enum)`

Controls which SQL statements that cause an error condition are recorded in the server log. The current SQL statement is included in the log entry for any message of the specified severity or higher. Valid values are DEBUG5, DEBUG4, DEBUG3, DEBUG2, DEBUG1, INFO, NOTICE, WARNING, ERROR, LOG, FATAL, and PANIC. The default is ERROR, which means statements causing errors, log messages, fatal errors, or panics will be logged. To effectively turn off logging of failing statements, set this parameter to PANIC. Only superusers and users with the appropriate SET privilege can change this setting.

`log_min_duration_statement (integer)`

Causes the duration of each completed statement to be logged if the statement ran for at least the specified amount of time. For example, if you set it to 250ms then all SQL statements that run 250ms or longer will be logged. Enabling this parameter can be helpful in tracking down unoptimized queries in your applications. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as milliseconds. Setting this to zero prints all statement durations. -1 (the default) disables logging statement durations. Only superusers and users with the appropriate SET privilege can change this setting.

This overrides `log_min_duration_sample`, meaning that queries with duration exceeding this setting are not subject to sampling and are always logged.

For clients using extended query protocol, durations of the Parse, Bind, and Execute steps are logged independently.

**Note**

When using this option together with `log_statement`, the text of statements that are logged because of `log_statement` will not be repeated in the duration log message. If you are not using syslog, it is recommended that you log the PID or session ID using `log_line_prefix` so that you can link the statement message to the later duration message using the process ID or session ID.

`log_min_duration_sample (integer)`

Allows sampling the duration of completed statements that ran for at least the specified amount of time. This produces the same kind of log entries as `log_min_duration_statement`, but only for a subset of the executed statements, with sample rate controlled by `log_statement_sample_rate`. For example, if you set it to 100ms then all SQL statements that run 100ms or longer will be considered for sampling. Enabling this parameter can be helpful when the traffic is too high to log all queries. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as milliseconds. Setting this to zero samples all statement durations. -1 (the default) disables sampling statement durations. Only superusers and users with the appropriate SET privilege can change this setting.

This setting has lower priority than `log_min_duration_statement`, meaning that statements with durations exceeding `log_min_duration_statement` are not subject to sampling and are always logged.

Other notes for `log_min_duration_statement` apply also to this setting.

`log_statement_sample_rate (floating point)`

Determines the fraction of statements with duration exceeding `log_min_duration_sample` that will be logged. Sampling is stochastic, for example 0.5 means there is statistically one chance in two that any given statement will be logged. The default is 1.0, meaning to log all sampled statements. Setting this to zero disables sampled statement-duration logging, the same as setting `log_min_duration_sample` to -1. Only superusers and users with the appropriate SET privilege can change this setting.

`log_transaction_sample_rate` (floating point)

Sets the fraction of transactions whose statements are all logged, in addition to statements logged for other reasons. It applies to each new transaction regardless of its statements' durations. Sampling is stochastic, for example 0.1 means there is statistically one chance in ten that any given transaction will be logged. `log_transaction_sample_rate` can be helpful to construct a sample of transactions. The default is 0, meaning not to log statements from any additional transactions. Setting this to 1 logs all statements of all transactions. Only superusers and users with the appropriate `SET` privilege can change this setting.

### Note

Like all statement-logging options, this option can add significant overhead.

`log_startup_progress_interval` (integer)

Sets the amount of time after which the startup process will log a message about a long-running operation that is still in progress, as well as the interval between further progress messages for that operation. The default is 10 seconds. A setting of 0 disables the feature. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as milliseconds. This setting is applied separately to each operation. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

For example, if syncing the data directory takes 25 seconds and thereafter resetting unlogged relations takes 8 seconds, and if this setting has the default value of 10 seconds, then a messages will be logged for syncing the data directory after it has been in progress for 10 seconds and again after it has been in progress for 20 seconds, but nothing will be logged for resetting unlogged relations.

Table 20.2 explains the message severity levels used by PostgreSQL. If logging output is sent to syslog or Windows' eventlog, the severity levels are translated as shown in the table.

**Table 20.2. Message Severity Levels**

Severity	Usage	syslog	eventlog
DEBUG1 .. DEBUG5	Provides successively-more-detailed information for use by developers.	DEBUG	INFORMATION
INFO	Provides information implicitly requested by the user, e.g., output from <code>VACUUM VERBOSE</code> .	INFO	INFORMATION
NOTICE	Provides information that might be helpful to users, e.g., notice of truncation of long identifiers.	NOTICE	INFORMATION
WARNING	Provides warnings of likely problems, e.g., <code>COMMIT</code> outside a transaction block.	NOTICE	WARNING
ERROR	Reports an error that caused the current command to abort.	WARNING	ERROR
LOG	Reports information of interest to administrators, e.g., checkpoint activity.	INFO	INFORMATION
FATAL	Reports an error that caused the current session to abort.	ERR	ERROR
PANIC	Reports an error that caused all database sessions to abort.	CRIT	ERROR

## 20.8.3. What to Log

### Note

What you choose to log can have security implications; see Section 25.3.

`application_name (string)`

The `application_name` can be any string of less than `NAMEDATALEN` characters (64 characters in a standard build). It is typically set by an application upon connection to the server. The name will be displayed in the `pg_stat_activity` view and included in CSV log entries. It can also be included in regular log entries via the `log_line_prefix` parameter. Only printable ASCII characters may be used in the `application_name` value. Other characters are replaced with C-style hexadecimal escapes.

`debug_print_parse (boolean)`

`debug_print_rewritten (boolean)`

`debug_print_plan (boolean)`

These parameters enable various debugging output to be emitted. When set, they print the resulting parse tree, the query rewriter output, or the execution plan for each executed query. These messages are emitted at LOG message level, so by default they will appear in the server log but will not be sent to the client. You can change that by adjusting `client_min_messages` and/or `log_min_messages`. These parameters are off by default.

`debug_pretty_print (boolean)`

When set, `debug_pretty_print` indents the messages produced by `debug_print_parse`, `debug_print_rewritten`, or `debug_print_plan`. This results in more readable but much longer output than the “compact” format used when it is off. It is on by default.

`log_autovacuum_min_duration (integer)`

Causes each action executed by autovacuum to be logged if it ran for at least the specified amount of time. Setting this to zero logs all autovacuum actions. `-1` disables logging autovacuum actions. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as milliseconds. For example, if you set this to `250ms` then all automatic vacuums and analyzes that run `250ms` or longer will be logged. In addition, when this parameter is set to any value other than `-1`, a message will be logged if an autovacuum action is skipped due to a conflicting lock or a concurrently dropped relation. The default is `10min`. Enabling this parameter can be helpful in tracking autovacuum activity. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line; but the setting can be overridden for individual tables by changing table storage parameters.

`log_checkpoints (boolean)`

Causes checkpoints and restartpoints to be logged in the server log. Some statistics are included in the log messages, including the number of buffers written and the time spent writing them. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line. The default is on.

`log_connections (boolean)`

Causes each attempted connection to the server to be logged, as well as successful completion of both client authentication (if necessary) and authorization. Only superusers and users with the appropriate SET privilege can change this parameter at session start, and it cannot be changed at all within a session. The default is off.



**Note**

Some client programs, like `psql`, attempt to connect twice while determining if a password is required, so duplicate “connection received” messages do not necessarily indicate a problem.

`log_disconnections` (boolean)

Causes session terminations to be logged. The log output provides information similar to `log_connections`, plus the duration of the session. Only superusers and users with the appropriate `SET` privilege can change this parameter at session start, and it cannot be changed at all within a session. The default is `off`.

`log_duration` (boolean)

Causes the duration of every completed statement to be logged. The default is `off`. Only superusers and users with the appropriate `SET` privilege can change this setting.

For clients using extended query protocol, durations of the Parse, Bind, and Execute steps are logged independently.

**Note**

The difference between enabling `log_duration` and setting `log_min_duration_statement` to zero is that exceeding `log_min_duration_statement` forces the text of the query to be logged, but this option doesn't. Thus, if `log_duration` is on and `log_min_duration_statement` has a positive value, all durations are logged but the query text is included only for statements exceeding the threshold. This behavior can be useful for gathering statistics in high-load installations.

`log_error_verbosity` (enum)

Controls the amount of detail written in the server log for each message that is logged. Valid values are `TERSE`, `DEFAULT`, and `VERBOSE`, each adding more fields to displayed messages. `TERSE` excludes the logging of `DETAIL`, `HINT`, `QUERY`, and `CONTEXT` error information. `VERBOSE` output includes the `SQLSTATE` error code (see also Appendix A) and the source code file name, function name, and line number that generated the error. Only superusers and users with the appropriate `SET` privilege can change this setting.

`log_hostname` (boolean)

By default, connection log messages only show the IP address of the connecting host. Turning this parameter on causes logging of the host name as well. Note that depending on your host name resolution setup this might impose a non-negligible performance penalty. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

`log_line_prefix` (string)

This is a `printf`-style string that is output at the beginning of each log line. `%` characters begin “escape sequences” that are replaced with status information as outlined below. Unrecognized escapes are ignored. Other characters are copied straight to the log line. Some escapes are only recognized by session processes, and will be treated as empty by background processes such as the main server process. Status information may be aligned either left or right by specifying a numeric literal after the `%` and before the option. A negative value will cause the status information to be padded on the right with spaces to give it a minimum width, whereas a positive value will pad on the left. Padding can be useful to aid human readability in log files.

This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line. The default is `'%m [%p] '` which logs a time stamp and the process ID.

Escape	Effect	Session only
<code>%a</code>	Application name	yes
<code>%u</code>	User name	yes
<code>%d</code>	Database name	yes
<code>%r</code>	Remote host name or IP address, and remote port	yes
<code>%h</code>	Remote host name or IP address	yes
<code>%b</code>	Backend type	no
<code>%p</code>	Process ID	no
<code>%P</code>	Process ID of the parallel group leader, if this process is a parallel query worker	no
<code>%t</code>	Time stamp without milliseconds	no
<code>%m</code>	Time stamp with milliseconds	no
<code>%n</code>	Time stamp with milliseconds (as a Unix epoch)	no
<code>%i</code>	Command tag: type of session's current command	yes
<code>%e</code>	SQLSTATE error code	no
<code>%c</code>	Session ID: see below	no
<code>%l</code>	Number of the log line for each session or process, starting at 1	no
<code>%s</code>	Process start time stamp	no
<code>%v</code>	Virtual transaction ID (backendID/localXID); see Section 74.1	no
<code>%x</code>	Transaction ID (0 if none is assigned); see Section 74.1	no
<code>%q</code>	Produces no output, but tells non-session processes to stop at this point in the string; ignored by session processes	no
<code>%Q</code>	Query identifier of the current query. Query identifiers are not computed by default, so this field will be zero unless <code>compute_query_id</code> parameter is enabled or a third-party module that computes query identifiers is configured.	yes
<code>%%</code>	Literal %	no

The backend type corresponds to the column `backend_type` in the view `pg_stat_activity`, but additional types can appear in the log that don't show in that view.

The `%c` escape prints a quasi-unique session identifier, consisting of two 4-byte hexadecimal numbers (without leading zeros) separated by a dot. The numbers are the process start time and the process ID, so `%c` can also be used as a space saving way of printing those items. For example, to generate the session identifier from `pg_stat_activity`, use this query:

```
SELECT to_hex(trunc(EXTRACT(EPOCH FROM backend_start))::integer)
|| '.' ||
       to_hex(pid)
FROM pg_stat_activity;
```

### Tip

If you set a nonempty value for `log_line_prefix`, you should usually make its last character be a space, to provide visual separation from the rest of the log line. A punctuation character can be used too.

### Tip

Syslog produces its own time stamp and process ID information, so you probably do not want to include those escapes if you are logging to syslog.

### Tip

The `%q` escape is useful when including information that is only available in session (backend) context like user or database name. For example:

```
log_line_prefix = '%m [%p] %q%u@d/%a '
```

### Note

The `%Q` escape always reports a zero identifier for lines output by `log_statement` because `log_statement` generates output before an identifier can be calculated, including invalid statements for which an identifier cannot be calculated.

`log_lock_waits` (boolean)

Controls whether a log message is produced when a session waits longer than `deadlock_timeout` to acquire a lock. This is useful in determining if lock waits are causing poor performance. The default is `off`. Only superusers and users with the appropriate `SET` privilege can change this setting.

`log_recovery_conflict_waits` (boolean)

Controls whether a log message is produced when the startup process waits longer than `deadlock_timeout` for recovery conflicts. This is useful in determining if recovery conflicts prevent the recovery from applying WAL.

The default is `off`. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

`log_parameter_max_length (integer)`

If greater than zero, each bind parameter value logged with a non-error statement-logging message is trimmed to this many bytes. Zero disables logging of bind parameters for non-error statement logs. -1 (the default) allows bind parameters to be logged in full. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as bytes. Only superusers and users with the appropriate SET privilege can change this setting.

This setting only affects log messages printed as a result of `log_statement`, `log_duration`, and related settings. Non-zero values of this setting add some overhead, particularly if parameters are sent in binary form, since then conversion to text is required.

`log_parameter_max_length_on_error (integer)`

If greater than zero, each bind parameter value reported in error messages is trimmed to this many bytes. Zero (the default) disables including bind parameters in error messages. -1 allows bind parameters to be printed in full. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as bytes.

Non-zero values of this setting add overhead, as PostgreSQL will need to store textual representations of parameter values in memory at the start of each statement, whether or not an error eventually occurs. The overhead is greater when bind parameters are sent in binary form than when they are sent as text, since the former case requires data conversion while the latter only requires copying the string.

`log_statement (enum)`

Controls which SQL statements are logged. Valid values are `none` (off), `ddl`, `mod`, and `all` (all statements). `ddl` logs all data definition statements, such as CREATE, ALTER, and DROP statements. `mod` logs all ddl statements, plus data-modifying statements such as INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, TRUNCATE, and COPY FROM. PREPARE, EXECUTE, and EXPLAIN ANALYZE statements are also logged if their contained command is of an appropriate type. For clients using extended query protocol, logging occurs when an Execute message is received, and values of the Bind parameters are included (with any embedded single-quote marks doubled).

The default is `none`. Only superusers and users with the appropriate SET privilege can change this setting.

### Note

Statements that contain simple syntax errors are not logged even by the `log_statement = all` setting, because the log message is emitted only after basic parsing has been done to determine the statement type. In the case of extended query protocol, this setting likewise does not log statements that fail before the Execute phase (i.e., during parse analysis or planning). Set `log_min_error_statement` to `ERROR` (or lower) to log such statements.

Logged statements might reveal sensitive data and even contain plaintext passwords.

`log_replication_commands (boolean)`

Causes each replication command to be logged in the server log. See Section 55.4 for more information about replication command. The default value is `off`. Only superusers and users with the appropriate SET privilege can change this setting.

`log_temp_files (integer)`

Controls logging of temporary file names and sizes. Temporary files can be created for sorts, hashes, and temporary query results. If enabled by this setting, a log entry is emitted for each

temporary file, with the file size specified in bytes, when it is deleted. A value of zero logs all temporary file information, while positive values log only files whose size is greater than or equal to the specified amount of data. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as kilobytes. The default setting is -1, which disables such logging. Only superusers and users with the appropriate SET privilege can change this setting.

`log_timezone (string)`

Sets the time zone used for timestamps written in the server log. Unlike `TimeZone`, this value is cluster-wide, so that all sessions will report timestamps consistently. The built-in default is GMT, but that is typically overridden in `postgresql.conf`; `initdb` will install a setting there corresponding to its system environment. See Section 8.5.3 for more information. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

## 20.8.4. Using CSV-Format Log Output

Including `csvlog` in the `log_destination` list provides a convenient way to import log files into a database table. This option emits log lines in comma-separated-values (CSV) format, with these columns: time stamp with milliseconds, user name, database name, process ID, client host:port number, session ID, per-session line number, command tag, session start time, virtual transaction ID, regular transaction ID, error severity, SQLSTATE code, error message, error message detail, hint, internal query that led to the error (if any), character count of the error position therein, error context, user query that led to the error (if any and enabled by `log_min_error_statement`), character count of the error position therein, location of the error in the PostgreSQL source code (if `log_error_verbosity` is set to `verbose`), application name, backend type, process ID of parallel group leader, and query id. Here is a sample table definition for storing CSV-format log output:

```
CREATE TABLE postgres_log
(
    log_time timestamp(3) with time zone,
    user_name text,
    database_name text,
    process_id integer,
    connection_from text,
    session_id text,
    session_line_num bigint,
    command_tag text,
    session_start_time timestamp with time zone,
    virtual_transaction_id text,
    transaction_id bigint,
    error_severity text,
    sql_state_code text,
    message text,
    detail text,
    hint text,
    internal_query text,
    internal_query_pos integer,
    context text,
    query text,
    query_pos integer,
    location text,
    application_name text,
    backend_type text,
    leader_pid integer,
    query_id bigint,
    PRIMARY KEY (session_id, session_line_num)
);
```

To import a log file into this table, use the `COPY FROM` command:

```
COPY postgres_log FROM '/full/path/to/logfile.csv' WITH csv;
```

It is also possible to access the file as a foreign table, using the supplied `file_fdw` module.

There are a few things you need to do to simplify importing CSV log files:

1. Set `log_filename` and `log_rotation_age` to provide a consistent, predictable naming scheme for your log files. This lets you predict what the file name will be and know when an individual log file is complete and therefore ready to be imported.
2. Set `log_rotation_size` to 0 to disable size-based log rotation, as it makes the log file name difficult to predict.
3. Set `log_truncate_on_rotation` to on so that old log data isn't mixed with the new in the same file.
4. The table definition above includes a primary key specification. This is useful to protect against accidentally importing the same information twice. The `COPY` command commits all of the data it imports at one time, so any error will cause the entire import to fail. If you import a partial log file and later import the file again when it is complete, the primary key violation will cause the import to fail. Wait until the log is complete and closed before importing. This procedure will also protect against accidentally importing a partial line that hasn't been completely written, which would also cause `COPY` to fail.

## 20.8.5. Using JSON-Format Log Output

Including `jsonlog` in the `log_destination` list provides a convenient way to import log files into many different programs. This option emits log lines in JSON format.

String fields with null values are excluded from output. Additional fields may be added in the future. User applications that process `jsonlog` output should ignore unknown fields.

Each log line is serialized as a JSON object with the set of keys and their associated values shown in Table 20.3.

**Table 20.3. Keys and Values of JSON Log Entries**

Key name	Type	Description
<code>timestamp</code>	string	Time stamp with milliseconds
<code>user</code>	string	User name
<code>dbname</code>	string	Database name
<code>pid</code>	number	Process ID
<code>remote_host</code>	string	Client host
<code>remote_port</code>	number	Client port
<code>session_id</code>	string	Session ID
<code>line_num</code>	number	Per-session line number
<code>ps</code>	string	Current ps display
<code>session_start</code>	string	Session start time
<code>vxid</code>	string	Virtual transaction ID
<code>txid</code>	string	Regular transaction ID
<code>error_severity</code>	string	Error severity

Key name	Type	Description
state_code	string	SQLSTATE code
message	string	Error message
detail	string	Error message detail
hint	string	Error message hint
internal_query	string	Internal query that led to the error
internal_position	number	Cursor index into internal query
context	string	Error context
statement	string	Client-supplied query string
cursor_position	number	Cursor index into query string
func_name	string	Error location function name
file_name	string	File name of error location
file_line_num	number	File line number of the error location
application_name	string	Client application name
backend_type	string	Type of backend
leader_pid	number	Process ID of leader for active parallel workers
query_id	number	Query ID

## 20.8.6. Process Title

These settings control how process titles of server processes are modified. Process titles are typically viewed using programs like `ps` or, on Windows, Process Explorer. See Section 28.1 for details.

`cluster_name` (string)

Sets a name that identifies this database cluster (instance) for various purposes. The cluster name appears in the process title for all server processes in this cluster. Moreover, it is the default application name for a standby connection (see `synchronous_standby_names`.)

The name can be any string of less than `NAMEDATALEN` characters (64 characters in a standard build). Only printable ASCII characters may be used in the `cluster_name` value. Other characters are replaced with C-style hexadecimal escapes. No name is shown if this parameter is set to the empty string `''` (which is the default). This parameter can only be set at server start.

`update_process_title` (boolean)

Enables updating of the process title every time a new SQL command is received by the server. This setting defaults to `on` on most platforms, but it defaults to `off` on Windows due to that platform's larger overhead for updating the process title. Only superusers and users with the appropriate `SET` privilege can change this setting.

## 20.9. Run-time Statistics

### 20.9.1. Cumulative Query and Index Statistics

These parameters control the server-wide cumulative statistics system. When enabled, the data that is collected can be accessed via the `pg_stat` and `pg_statio` family of system views. Refer to Chapter 28 for more information.

`track_activities` (boolean)

Enables the collection of information on the currently executing command of each session, along with its identifier and the time when that command began execution. This parameter is on by default. Note that even when enabled, this information is only visible to superusers, roles with privileges of the `pg_read_all_stats` role and the user owning the sessions being reported on (including sessions belonging to a role they have the privileges of), so it should not represent a security risk. Only superusers and users with the appropriate `SET` privilege can change this setting.

`track_activity_query_size` (integer)

Specifies the amount of memory reserved to store the text of the currently executing command for each active session, for the `pg_stat_activity.query` field. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as bytes. The default value is 1024 bytes. This parameter can only be set at server start.

`track_counts` (boolean)

Enables collection of statistics on database activity. This parameter is on by default, because the autovacuum daemon needs the collected information. Only superusers and users with the appropriate `SET` privilege can change this setting.

`track_io_timing` (boolean)

Enables timing of database I/O calls. This parameter is off by default, as it will repeatedly query the operating system for the current time, which may cause significant overhead on some platforms. You can use the `pg_test_timing` tool to measure the overhead of timing on your system. I/O timing information is displayed in `pg_stat_database`, in the output of `EXPLAIN` when the `BUFFERS` option is used, in the output of `VACUUM` when the `VERBOSE` option is used, by autovacuum for auto-vacuums and auto-analyzes, when `log_autovacuum_min_duration` is set and by `pg_stat_statements`. Only superusers and users with the appropriate `SET` privilege can change this setting.

`track_wal_io_timing` (boolean)

Enables timing of WAL I/O calls. This parameter is off by default, as it will repeatedly query the operating system for the current time, which may cause significant overhead on some platforms. You can use the `pg_test_timing` tool to measure the overhead of timing on your system. I/O timing information is displayed in `pg_stat_wal`. Only superusers and users with the appropriate `SET` privilege can change this setting.

`track_functions` (enum)

Enables tracking of function call counts and time used. Specify `p1` to track only procedural-language functions, `all` to also track SQL and C language functions. The default is `none`, which disables function statistics tracking. Only superusers and users with the appropriate `SET` privilege can change this setting.

### Note

SQL-language functions that are simple enough to be “inlined” into the calling query will not be tracked, regardless of this setting.

`stats_fetch_consistency` (enum)

Determines the behavior when cumulative statistics are accessed multiple times within a transaction. When set to `none`, each access re-fetches counters from shared memory. When set to



cache, the first access to statistics for an object caches those statistics until the end of the transaction unless `pg_stat_clear_snapshot()` is called. When set to `snapshot`, the first statistics access caches all statistics accessible in the current database, until the end of the transaction unless `pg_stat_clear_snapshot()` is called. Changing this parameter in a transaction discards the statistics snapshot. The default is `cache`.

### Note

`none` is most suitable for monitoring systems. If values are only accessed once, it is the most efficient. `cache` ensures repeat accesses yield the same values, which is important for queries involving e.g. self-joins. `snapshot` can be useful when interactively inspecting statistics, but has higher overhead, particularly if many database objects exist.

## 20.9.2. Statistics Monitoring

`compute_query_id` (enum)

Enables in-core computation of a query identifier. Query identifiers can be displayed in the `pg_stat_activity` view, using `EXPLAIN`, or emitted in the log if configured via the `log_line_prefix` parameter. The `pg_stat_statements` extension also requires a query identifier to be computed. Note that an external module can alternatively be used if the in-core query identifier computation method is not acceptable. In this case, in-core computation must be always disabled. Valid values are `off` (always disabled), `on` (always enabled), `auto`, which lets modules such as `pg_stat_statements` automatically enable it, and `regress` which has the same effect as `auto`, except that the query identifier is not shown in the `EXPLAIN` output in order to facilitate automated regression testing. The default is `auto`.

### Note

To ensure that only one query identifier is calculated and displayed, extensions that calculate query identifiers should throw an error if a query identifier has already been computed.

`log_statement_stats` (boolean)  
`log_parser_stats` (boolean)  
`log_planner_stats` (boolean)  
`log_executor_stats` (boolean)

For each query, output performance statistics of the respective module to the server log. This is a crude profiling instrument, similar to the Unix `getrusage()` operating system facility. `log_statement_stats` reports total statement statistics, while the others report per-module statistics. `log_statement_stats` cannot be enabled together with any of the per-module options. All of these options are disabled by default. Only superusers and users with the appropriate `SET` privilege can change these settings.

## 20.10. Automatic Vacuuming

These settings control the behavior of the *autovacuum* feature. Refer to Section 25.1.6 for more information. Note that many of these settings can be overridden on a per-table basis; see Storage Parameters.

`autovacuum` (boolean)

Controls whether the server should run the autovacuum launcher daemon. This is on by default; however, `track_counts` must also be enabled for autovacuum to work. This parameter can only

be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line; however, autovacuuming can be disabled for individual tables by changing table storage parameters.

Note that even when this parameter is disabled, the system will launch autovacuum processes if necessary to prevent transaction ID wraparound. See Section 25.1.5 for more information.

`autovacuum_max_workers` (integer)

Specifies the maximum number of autovacuum processes (other than the autovacuum launcher) that may be running at any one time. The default is three. This parameter can only be set at server start.

`autovacuum_naptime` (integer)

Specifies the minimum delay between autovacuum runs on any given database. In each round the daemon examines the database and issues `VACUUM` and `ANALYZE` commands as needed for tables in that database. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as seconds. The default is one minute (1min). This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

`autovacuum_vacuum_threshold` (integer)

Specifies the minimum number of updated or deleted tuples needed to trigger a `VACUUM` in any one table. The default is 50 tuples. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line; but the setting can be overridden for individual tables by changing table storage parameters.

`autovacuum_vacuum_insert_threshold` (integer)

Specifies the number of inserted tuples needed to trigger a `VACUUM` in any one table. The default is 1000 tuples. If -1 is specified, autovacuum will not trigger a `VACUUM` operation on any tables based on the number of inserts. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line; but the setting can be overridden for individual tables by changing table storage parameters.

`autovacuum_analyze_threshold` (integer)

Specifies the minimum number of inserted, updated or deleted tuples needed to trigger an `ANALYZE` in any one table. The default is 50 tuples. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line; but the setting can be overridden for individual tables by changing table storage parameters.

`autovacuum_vacuum_scale_factor` (floating point)

Specifies a fraction of the table size to add to `autovacuum_vacuum_threshold` when deciding whether to trigger a `VACUUM`. The default is 0.2 (20% of table size). This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line; but the setting can be overridden for individual tables by changing table storage parameters.

`autovacuum_vacuum_insert_scale_factor` (floating point)

Specifies a fraction of the table size to add to `autovacuum_vacuum_insert_threshold` when deciding whether to trigger a `VACUUM`. The default is 0.2 (20% of table size). This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line; but the setting can be overridden for individual tables by changing table storage parameters.

`autovacuum_analyze_scale_factor` (floating point)

Specifies a fraction of the table size to add to `autovacuum_analyze_threshold` when deciding whether to trigger an `ANALYZE`. The default is 0.1 (10% of table size). This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line; but the setting can be overridden for individual tables by changing table storage parameters.

`autovacuum_freeze_max_age` (integer)

Specifies the maximum age (in transactions) that a table's `pg_class.relFrozenxid` field can attain before a VACUUM operation is forced to prevent transaction ID wraparound within the table. Note that the system will launch autovacuum processes to prevent wraparound even when autovacuum is otherwise disabled.

Vacuum also allows removal of old files from the `pg_xact` subdirectory, which is why the default is a relatively low 200 million transactions. This parameter can only be set at server start, but the setting can be reduced for individual tables by changing table storage parameters. For more information see Section 25.1.5.

`autovacuum_multixact_freeze_max_age` (integer)

Specifies the maximum age (in multixacts) that a table's `pg_class.relminmxid` field can attain before a VACUUM operation is forced to prevent multixact ID wraparound within the table. Note that the system will launch autovacuum processes to prevent wraparound even when autovacuum is otherwise disabled.

Vacuuming multixacts also allows removal of old files from the `pg_multixact/members` and `pg_multixact/offsets` subdirectories, which is why the default is a relatively low 400 million multixacts. This parameter can only be set at server start, but the setting can be reduced for individual tables by changing table storage parameters. For more information see Section 25.1.5.1.

`autovacuum_vacuum_cost_delay` (floating point)

Specifies the cost delay value that will be used in automatic VACUUM operations. If -1 is specified, the regular `vacuum_cost_delay` value will be used. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as milliseconds. The default value is 2 milliseconds. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line; but the setting can be overridden for individual tables by changing table storage parameters.

`autovacuum_vacuum_cost_limit` (integer)

Specifies the cost limit value that will be used in automatic VACUUM operations. If -1 is specified (which is the default), the regular `vacuum_cost_limit` value will be used. Note that the value is distributed proportionally among the running autovacuum workers, if there is more than one, so that the sum of the limits for each worker does not exceed the value of this variable. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line; but the setting can be overridden for individual tables by changing table storage parameters.

## 20.11. Client Connection Defaults

### 20.11.1. Statement Behavior

`client_min_messages` (enum)

Controls which message levels are sent to the client. Valid values are `DEBUG5`, `DEBUG4`, `DEBUG3`, `DEBUG2`, `DEBUG1`, `LOG`, `NOTICE`, `WARNING`, and `ERROR`. Each level includes all the levels that follow it. The later the level, the fewer messages are sent. The default is `NOTICE`. Note that `LOG` has a different rank here than in `log_min_messages`.

`INFO` level messages are always sent to the client.

`search_path` (string)

This variable specifies the order in which schemas are searched when an object (table, data type, function, etc.) is referenced by a simple name with no schema specified. When there are objects of

identical names in different schemas, the one found first in the search path is used. An object that is not in any of the schemas in the search path can only be referenced by specifying its containing schema with a qualified (dotted) name.

The value for `search_path` must be a comma-separated list of schema names. Any name that is not an existing schema, or is a schema for which the user does not have `USAGE` permission, is silently ignored.

If one of the list items is the special name `$user`, then the schema having the name returned by `CURRENT_USER` is substituted, if there is such a schema and the user has `USAGE` permission for it. (If not, `$user` is ignored.)

The system catalog schema, `pg_catalog`, is always searched, whether it is mentioned in the path or not. If it is mentioned in the path then it will be searched in the specified order. If `pg_catalog` is not in the path then it will be searched *before* searching any of the path items.

Likewise, the current session's temporary-table schema, `pg_temp_nnn`, is always searched if it exists. It can be explicitly listed in the path by using the alias `pg_temp`. If it is not listed in the path then it is searched first (even before `pg_catalog`). However, the temporary schema is only searched for relation (table, view, sequence, etc.) and data type names. It is never searched for function or operator names.

When objects are created without specifying a particular target schema, they will be placed in the first valid schema named in `search_path`. An error is reported if the search path is empty.

The default value for this parameter is `"$user", public`. This setting supports shared use of a database (where no users have private schemas, and all share use of `public`), private per-user schemas, and combinations of these. Other effects can be obtained by altering the default search path setting, either globally or per-user.

For more information on schema handling, see Section 5.9. In particular, the default configuration is suitable only when the database has a single user or a few mutually-trusting users.

The current effective value of the search path can be examined via the SQL function `current_schemas` (see Section 9.26). This is not quite the same as examining the value of `search_path`, since `current_schemas` shows how the items appearing in `search_path` were resolved.

`row_security` (boolean)

This variable controls whether to raise an error in lieu of applying a row security policy. When set to `on`, policies apply normally. When set to `off`, queries fail which would otherwise apply at least one policy. The default is `on`. Change to `off` where limited row visibility could cause incorrect results; for example, `pg_dump` makes that change by default. This variable has no effect on roles which bypass every row security policy, to wit, superusers and roles with the `BYPASSRLS` attribute.

For more information on row security policies, see `CREATE POLICY`.

`default_table_access_method` (string)

This parameter specifies the default table access method to use when creating tables or materialized views if the `CREATE` command does not explicitly specify an access method, or when `SELECT ... INTO` is used, which does not allow specifying a table access method. The default is `heap`.

`default_tablespace` (string)

This variable specifies the default tablespace in which to create objects (tables and indexes) when a `CREATE` command does not explicitly specify a tablespace.

The value is either the name of a tablespace, or an empty string to specify using the default tablespace of the current database. If the value does not match the name of any existing tablespace, PostgreSQL will automatically use the default tablespace of the current database. If a nondefault tablespace is specified, the user must have `CREATE` privilege for it, or creation attempts will fail.

This variable is not used for temporary tables; for them, `temp_tablespaces` is consulted instead.

This variable is also not used when creating databases. By default, a new database inherits its tablespace setting from the template database it is copied from.

If this parameter is set to a value other than the empty string when a partitioned table is created, the partitioned table's tablespace will be set to that value, which will be used as the default tablespace for partitions created in the future, even if `default_tablespace` has changed since then.

For more information on tablespaces, see Section 23.6.

`default_toast_compression` (enum)

This variable sets the default TOAST compression method for values of compressible columns. (This can be overridden for individual columns by setting the `COMPRESSION` column option in `CREATE TABLE` or `ALTER TABLE`.) The supported compression methods are `pglz` and (if PostgreSQL was compiled with `--with-lz4`) `lz4`. The default is `pglz`.

`temp_tablespaces` (string)

This variable specifies tablespaces in which to create temporary objects (temp tables and indexes on temp tables) when a `CREATE` command does not explicitly specify a tablespace. Temporary files for purposes such as sorting large data sets are also created in these tablespaces.

The value is a list of names of tablespaces. When there is more than one name in the list, PostgreSQL chooses a random member of the list each time a temporary object is to be created; except that within a transaction, successively created temporary objects are placed in successive tablespaces from the list. If the selected element of the list is an empty string, PostgreSQL will automatically use the default tablespace of the current database instead.

When `temp_tablespaces` is set interactively, specifying a nonexistent tablespace is an error, as is specifying a tablespace for which the user does not have `CREATE` privilege. However, when using a previously set value, nonexistent tablespaces are ignored, as are tablespaces for which the user lacks `CREATE` privilege. In particular, this rule applies when using a value set in `postgresql.conf`.

The default value is an empty string, which results in all temporary objects being created in the default tablespace of the current database.

See also `default_tablespace`.

`check_function_bodies` (boolean)

This parameter is normally on. When set to `off`, it disables validation of the routine body string during `CREATE FUNCTION` and `CREATE PROCEDURE`. Disabling validation avoids side effects of the validation process, in particular preventing false positives due to problems such as forward references. Set this parameter to `off` before loading functions on behalf of other users; `pg_dump` does so automatically.

`default_transaction_isolation` (enum)

Each SQL transaction has an isolation level, which can be either “read uncommitted”, “read committed”, “repeatable read”, or “serializable”. This parameter controls the default isolation level of each new transaction. The default is “read committed”.

Consult Chapter 13 and `SET TRANSACTION` for more information.

`default_transaction_read_only` (boolean)

A read-only SQL transaction cannot alter non-temporary tables. This parameter controls the default read-only status of each new transaction. The default is `off` (read/write).

Consult `SET TRANSACTION` for more information.

`default_transaction_deferrable` (boolean)

When running at the `serializable` isolation level, a deferrable read-only SQL transaction may be delayed before it is allowed to proceed. However, once it begins executing it does not incur any of the overhead required to ensure serializability; so serialization code will have no reason to force it to abort because of concurrent updates, making this option suitable for long-running read-only transactions.

This parameter controls the default deferrable status of each new transaction. It currently has no effect on read-write transactions or those operating at isolation levels lower than `serializable`. The default is `off`.

Consult `SET TRANSACTION` for more information.

`transaction_isolation` (enum)

This parameter reflects the current transaction's isolation level. At the beginning of each transaction, it is set to the current value of `default_transaction_isolation`. Any subsequent attempt to change it is equivalent to a `SET TRANSACTION` command.

`transaction_read_only` (boolean)

This parameter reflects the current transaction's read-only status. At the beginning of each transaction, it is set to the current value of `default_transaction_read_only`. Any subsequent attempt to change it is equivalent to a `SET TRANSACTION` command.

`transaction_deferrable` (boolean)

This parameter reflects the current transaction's deferrability status. At the beginning of each transaction, it is set to the current value of `default_transaction_deferrable`. Any subsequent attempt to change it is equivalent to a `SET TRANSACTION` command.

`session_replication_role` (enum)

Controls firing of replication-related triggers and rules for the current session. Possible values are `origin` (the default), `replica` and `local`. Setting this parameter results in discarding any previously cached query plans. Only superusers and users with the appropriate `SET` privilege can change this setting.

The intended use of this setting is that logical replication systems set it to `replica` when they are applying replicated changes. The effect of that will be that triggers and rules (that have not been altered from their default configuration) will not fire on the replica. See the `ALTER TABLE` clauses `ENABLE TRIGGER` and `ENABLE RULE` for more information.

PostgreSQL treats the settings `origin` and `local` the same internally. Third-party replication systems may use these two values for their internal purposes, for example using `local` to designate a session whose changes should not be replicated.

Since foreign keys are implemented as triggers, setting this parameter to `replica` also disables all foreign key checks, which can leave data in an inconsistent state if improperly used.

`statement_timeout` (integer)

Abort any statement that takes more than the specified amount of time. If `log_min_error_statement` is set to `ERROR` or lower, the statement that timed out will also be logged. If this

value is specified without units, it is taken as milliseconds. A value of zero (the default) disables the timeout.

The timeout is measured from the time a command arrives at the server until it is completed by the server. If multiple SQL statements appear in a single simple-Query message, the timeout is applied to each statement separately. (PostgreSQL versions before 13 usually treated the timeout as applying to the whole query string.) In extended query protocol, the timeout starts running when any query-related message (Parse, Bind, Execute, Describe) arrives, and it is canceled by completion of an Execute or Sync message.

Setting `statement_timeout` in `postgresql.conf` is not recommended because it would affect all sessions.

`lock_timeout (integer)`

Abort any statement that waits longer than the specified amount of time while attempting to acquire a lock on a table, index, row, or other database object. The time limit applies separately to each lock acquisition attempt. The limit applies both to explicit locking requests (such as `LOCK TABLE`, or `SELECT FOR UPDATE` without `NOWAIT`) and to implicitly-acquired locks. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as milliseconds. A value of zero (the default) disables the timeout.

Unlike `statement_timeout`, this timeout can only occur while waiting for locks. Note that if `statement_timeout` is nonzero, it is rather pointless to set `lock_timeout` to the same or larger value, since the statement timeout would always trigger first. If `log_min_error_statement` is set to `ERROR` or lower, the statement that timed out will be logged.

Setting `lock_timeout` in `postgresql.conf` is not recommended because it would affect all sessions.

`idle_in_transaction_session_timeout (integer)`

Terminate any session that has been idle (that is, waiting for a client query) within an open transaction for longer than the specified amount of time. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as milliseconds. A value of zero (the default) disables the timeout.

This option can be used to ensure that idle sessions do not hold locks for an unreasonable amount of time. Even when no significant locks are held, an open transaction prevents vacuuming away recently-dead tuples that may be visible only to this transaction; so remaining idle for a long time can contribute to table bloat. See Section 25.1 for more details.

`idle_session_timeout (integer)`

Terminate any session that has been idle (that is, waiting for a client query), but not within an open transaction, for longer than the specified amount of time. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as milliseconds. A value of zero (the default) disables the timeout.

Unlike the case with an open transaction, an idle session without a transaction imposes no large costs on the server, so there is less need to enable this timeout than `idle_in_transaction_session_timeout`.

Be wary of enforcing this timeout on connections made through connection-pooling software or other middleware, as such a layer may not react well to unexpected connection closure. It may be helpful to enable this timeout only for interactive sessions, perhaps by applying it only to particular users.

`vacuum_freeze_table_age (integer)`

`VACUUM` performs an aggressive scan if the table's `pg_class.relfrozenxid` field has reached the age specified by this setting. An aggressive scan differs from a regular `VACUUM` in that it visits every page that might contain unfrozen XIDs or MXIDs, not just those that might contain dead tuples. The default is 150 million transactions. Although users can set this value

anywhere from zero to two billion, VACUUM will silently limit the effective value to 95% of `autovacuum_freeze_max_age`, so that a periodic manual VACUUM has a chance to run before an anti-wraparound autovacuum is launched for the table. For more information see Section 25.1.5.

`vacuum_freeze_min_age`(integer)

Specifies the cutoff age (in transactions) that VACUUM should use to decide whether to trigger freezing of pages that have an older XID. The default is 50 million transactions. Although users can set this value anywhere from zero to one billion, VACUUM will silently limit the effective value to half the value of `autovacuum_freeze_max_age`, so that there is not an unreasonably short time between forced autovacums. For more information see Section 25.1.5.

`vacuum_failsafe_age`(integer)

Specifies the maximum age (in transactions) that a table's `pg_class.relFrozenxid` field can attain before VACUUM takes extraordinary measures to avoid system-wide transaction ID wraparound failure. This is VACUUM's strategy of last resort. The failsafe typically triggers when an autovacuum to prevent transaction ID wraparound has already been running for some time, though it's possible for the failsafe to trigger during any VACUUM.

When the failsafe is triggered, any cost-based delay that is in effect will no longer be applied, further non-essential maintenance tasks (such as index vacuuming) are bypassed, and any *Buffer Access Strategy* in use will be disabled resulting in VACUUM being free to make use of all of *shared buffers*.

The default is 1.6 billion transactions. Although users can set this value anywhere from zero to 2.1 billion, VACUUM will silently adjust the effective value to no less than 105% of `autovacuum_freeze_max_age`.

`vacuum_multixact_freeze_table_age`(integer)

VACUUM performs an aggressive scan if the table's `pg_class.relminmxid` field has reached the age specified by this setting. An aggressive scan differs from a regular VACUUM in that it visits every page that might contain unfrozen XIDs or MXIDs, not just those that might contain dead tuples. The default is 150 million multixacts. Although users can set this value anywhere from zero to two billion, VACUUM will silently limit the effective value to 95% of `autovacuum_multixact_freeze_max_age`, so that a periodic manual VACUUM has a chance to run before an anti-wraparound is launched for the table. For more information see Section 25.1.5.1.

`vacuum_multixact_freeze_min_age`(integer)

Specifies the cutoff age (in multixacts) that VACUUM should use to decide whether to trigger freezing of pages with an older multixact ID. The default is 5 million multixacts. Although users can set this value anywhere from zero to one billion, VACUUM will silently limit the effective value to half the value of `autovacuum_multixact_freeze_max_age`, so that there is not an unreasonably short time between forced autovacums. For more information see Section 25.1.5.1.

`vacuum_multixact_failsafe_age`(integer)

Specifies the maximum age (in multixacts) that a table's `pg_class.relminmxid` field can attain before VACUUM takes extraordinary measures to avoid system-wide multixact ID wraparound failure. This is VACUUM's strategy of last resort. The failsafe typically triggers when an autovacuum to prevent transaction ID wraparound has already been running for some time, though it's possible for the failsafe to trigger during any VACUUM.

When the failsafe is triggered, any cost-based delay that is in effect will no longer be applied, and further non-essential maintenance tasks (such as index vacuuming) are bypassed.

The default is 1.6 billion multixacts. Although users can set this value anywhere from zero to 2.1 billion, VACUUM will silently adjust the effective value to no less than 105% of `autovacuum_multixact_freeze_max_age`.



**bytea\_output (enum)**

Sets the output format for values of type `bytea`. Valid values are `hex` (the default) and `escape` (the traditional PostgreSQL format). See Section 8.4 for more information. The `bytea` type always accepts both formats on input, regardless of this setting.

**xmlbinary (enum)**

Sets how binary values are to be encoded in XML. This applies for example when `bytea` values are converted to XML by the functions `xmlelement` or `xmlforest`. Possible values are `base64` and `hex`, which are both defined in the XML Schema standard. The default is `base64`. For further information about XML-related functions, see Section 9.15.

The actual choice here is mostly a matter of taste, constrained only by possible restrictions in client applications. Both methods support all possible values, although the hex encoding will be somewhat larger than the base64 encoding.

**xmloption (enum)**

Sets whether `DOCUMENT` or `CONTENT` is implicit when converting between XML and character string values. See Section 8.13 for a description of this. Valid values are `DOCUMENT` and `CONTENT`. The default is `CONTENT`.

According to the SQL standard, the command to set this option is

```
SET XML OPTION { DOCUMENT | CONTENT };
```

This syntax is also available in PostgreSQL.

**gin\_pending\_list\_limit (integer)**

Sets the maximum size of a GIN index's pending list, which is used when `fastupdate` is enabled. If the list grows larger than this maximum size, it is cleaned up by moving the entries in it to the index's main GIN data structure in bulk. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as kilobytes. The default is four megabytes (4MB). This setting can be overridden for individual GIN indexes by changing index storage parameters. See Section 70.4.1 and Section 70.5 for more information.

**createrole\_self\_grant (string)**

If a user who has `CREATEROLE` but not `SUPERUSER` creates a role, and if this is set to a non-empty value, the newly-created role will be granted to the creating user with the options specified. The value must be `set`, `inherit`, or a comma-separated list of these. The default value is an empty string, which disables the feature.

The purpose of this option is to allow a `CREATEROLE` user who is not a superuser to automatically inherit, or automatically gain the ability to `SET ROLE` to, any created users. Since a `CREATE-ROLE` user is always implicitly granted `ADMIN OPTION` on created roles, that user could always execute a `GRANT` statement that would achieve the same effect as this setting. However, it can be convenient for usability reasons if the grant happens automatically. A superuser automatically inherits the privileges of every role and can always `SET ROLE` to any role, and this setting can be used to produce a similar behavior for `CREATEROLE` users for users which they create.

## 20.11.2. Locale and Formatting

**DateStyle (string)**

Sets the display format for date and time values, as well as the rules for interpreting ambiguous date input values. For historical reasons, this variable contains two independent components: the output format specification (ISO, Postgres, SQL, or German) and the input/output specifica-

tion for year/month/day ordering (DMY, MDY, or YMD). These can be set separately or together. The keywords `Euro` and `European` are synonyms for `DMY`; the keywords `US`, `NonEuro`, and `NonEuropean` are synonyms for `MDY`. See Section 8.5 for more information. The built-in default is `ISO`, `MDY`, but `initdb` will initialize the configuration file with a setting that corresponds to the behavior of the chosen `lc_time` locale.

#### `IntervalStyle` (enum)

Sets the display format for interval values. The value `sql_standard` will produce output matching SQL standard interval literals. The value `postgres` (which is the default) will produce output matching PostgreSQL releases prior to 8.4 when the `DateStyle` parameter was set to `ISO`. The value `postgres_verbose` will produce output matching PostgreSQL releases prior to 8.4 when the `DateStyle` parameter was set to non-ISO output. The value `iso_8601` will produce output matching the time interval “format with designators” defined in section 4.4.3.2 of ISO 8601.

The `IntervalStyle` parameter also affects the interpretation of ambiguous interval input. See Section 8.5.4 for more information.

#### `TimeZone` (string)

Sets the time zone for displaying and interpreting time stamps. The built-in default is `GMT`, but that is typically overridden in `postgresql.conf`; `initdb` will install a setting there corresponding to its system environment. See Section 8.5.3 for more information.

#### `timezone_abbreviations` (string)

Sets the collection of time zone abbreviations that will be accepted by the server for datetime input. The default is `'Default'`, which is a collection that works in most of the world; there are also `'Australia'` and `'India'`, and other collections can be defined for a particular installation. See Section B.4 for more information.

#### `extra_float_digits` (integer)

This parameter adjusts the number of digits used for textual output of floating-point values, including `float4`, `float8`, and geometric data types.

If the value is 1 (the default) or above, float values are output in shortest-precise format; see Section 8.1.3. The actual number of digits generated depends only on the value being output, not on the value of this parameter. At most 17 digits are required for `float8` values, and 9 for `float4` values. This format is both fast and precise, preserving the original binary float value exactly when correctly read. For historical compatibility, values up to 3 are permitted.

If the value is zero or negative, then the output is rounded to a given decimal precision. The precision used is the standard number of digits for the type (`FLT_DIG` or `DBL_DIG` as appropriate) reduced according to the value of this parameter. (For example, specifying -1 will cause `float4` values to be output rounded to 5 significant digits, and `float8` values rounded to 14 digits.) This format is slower and does not preserve all the bits of the binary float value, but may be more human-readable.

### Note

The meaning of this parameter, and its default value, changed in PostgreSQL 12; see Section 8.1.3 for further discussion.

#### `client_encoding` (string)

Sets the client-side encoding (character set). The default is to use the database encoding. The character sets supported by the PostgreSQL server are described in Section 24.3.1.

**lc\_messages (string)**

Sets the language in which messages are displayed. Acceptable values are system-dependent; see Section 24.1 for more information. If this variable is set to the empty string (which is the default) then the value is inherited from the execution environment of the server in a system-dependent way.

On some systems, this locale category does not exist. Setting this variable will still work, but there will be no effect. Also, there is a chance that no translated messages for the desired language exist. In that case you will continue to see the English messages.

Only superusers and users with the appropriate SET privilege can change this setting.

**lc\_monetary (string)**

Sets the locale to use for formatting monetary amounts, for example with the `to_char` family of functions. Acceptable values are system-dependent; see Section 24.1 for more information. If this variable is set to the empty string (which is the default) then the value is inherited from the execution environment of the server in a system-dependent way.

**lc\_numeric (string)**

Sets the locale to use for formatting numbers, for example with the `to_char` family of functions. Acceptable values are system-dependent; see Section 24.1 for more information. If this variable is set to the empty string (which is the default) then the value is inherited from the execution environment of the server in a system-dependent way.

**lc\_time (string)**

Sets the locale to use for formatting dates and times, for example with the `to_char` family of functions. Acceptable values are system-dependent; see Section 24.1 for more information. If this variable is set to the empty string (which is the default) then the value is inherited from the execution environment of the server in a system-dependent way.

**icu\_validation\_level (enum)**

When ICU locale validation problems are encountered, controls which message level is used to report the problem. Valid values are `DISABLED`, `DEBUG5`, `DEBUG4`, `DEBUG3`, `DEBUG2`, `DEBUG1`, `INFO`, `NOTICE`, `WARNING`, `ERROR`, and `LOG`.

If set to `DISABLED`, does not report validation problems at all. Otherwise reports problems at the given message level. The default is `WARNING`.

**default\_text\_search\_config (string)**

Selects the text search configuration that is used by those variants of the text search functions that do not have an explicit argument specifying the configuration. See Chapter 12 for further information. The built-in default is `pg_catalog.simple`, but `initdb` will initialize the configuration file with a setting that corresponds to the chosen `lc_ctype` locale, if a configuration matching that locale can be identified.

## 20.11.3. Shared Library Preloading

Several settings are available for preloading shared libraries into the server, in order to load additional functionality or achieve performance benefits. For example, a setting of `'$libdir/mylib'` would cause `mylib.so` (or on some platforms, `mylib.sl`) to be preloaded from the installation's standard library directory. The differences between the settings are when they take effect and what privileges are required to change them.

PostgreSQL procedural language libraries can be preloaded in this way, typically by using the syntax `'$libdir/plXXX'` where XXX is `pgsql`, `perl`, `tcl`, or `python`.

Only shared libraries specifically intended to be used with PostgreSQL can be loaded this way. Every PostgreSQL-supported library has a “magic block” that is checked to guarantee compatibility. For this reason, non-PostgreSQL libraries cannot be loaded in this way. You might be able to use operating-system facilities such as `LD_PRELOAD` for that.

In general, refer to the documentation of a specific module for the recommended way to load that module.

`local_preload_libraries (string)`

This variable specifies one or more shared libraries that are to be preloaded at connection start. It contains a comma-separated list of library names, where each name is interpreted as for the `LOAD` command. Whitespace between entries is ignored; surround a library name with double quotes if you need to include whitespace or commas in the name. The parameter value only takes effect at the start of the connection. Subsequent changes have no effect. If a specified library is not found, the connection attempt will fail.

This option can be set by any user. Because of that, the libraries that can be loaded are restricted to those appearing in the `plugins` subdirectory of the installation's standard library directory. (It is the database administrator's responsibility to ensure that only “safe” libraries are installed there.) Entries in `local_preload_libraries` can specify this directory explicitly, for example `$libdir/plugins/mylib`, or just specify the library name — `mylib` would have the same effect as `$libdir/plugins/mylib`.

The intent of this feature is to allow unprivileged users to load debugging or performance-measurement libraries into specific sessions without requiring an explicit `LOAD` command. To that end, it would be typical to set this parameter using the `PGOPTIONS` environment variable on the client or by using `ALTER ROLE SET`.

However, unless a module is specifically designed to be used in this way by non-superusers, this is usually not the right setting to use. Look at `session_preload_libraries` instead.

`session_preload_libraries (string)`

This variable specifies one or more shared libraries that are to be preloaded at connection start. It contains a comma-separated list of library names, where each name is interpreted as for the `LOAD` command. Whitespace between entries is ignored; surround a library name with double quotes if you need to include whitespace or commas in the name. The parameter value only takes effect at the start of the connection. Subsequent changes have no effect. If a specified library is not found, the connection attempt will fail. Only superusers and users with the appropriate `SET` privilege can change this setting.

The intent of this feature is to allow debugging or performance-measurement libraries to be loaded into specific sessions without an explicit `LOAD` command being given. For example, `auto_explain` could be enabled for all sessions under a given user name by setting this parameter with `ALTER ROLE SET`. Also, this parameter can be changed without restarting the server (but changes only take effect when a new session is started), so it is easier to add new modules this way, even if they should apply to all sessions.

Unlike `shared_preload_libraries`, there is no large performance advantage to loading a library at session start rather than when it is first used. There is some advantage, however, when connection pooling is used.

`shared_preload_libraries (string)`

This variable specifies one or more shared libraries to be preloaded at server start. It contains a comma-separated list of library names, where each name is interpreted as for the `LOAD` command. Whitespace between entries is ignored; surround a library name with double quotes if you need to include whitespace or commas in the name. This parameter can only be set at server start. If a specified library is not found, the server will fail to start.

Some libraries need to perform certain operations that can only take place at postmaster start, such as allocating shared memory, reserving light-weight locks, or starting background workers. Those libraries must be loaded at server start through this parameter. See the documentation of each library for details.

Other libraries can also be preloaded. By preloading a shared library, the library startup time is avoided when the library is first used. However, the time to start each new server process might increase slightly, even if that process never uses the library. So this parameter is recommended only for libraries that will be used in most sessions. Also, changing this parameter requires a server restart, so this is not the right setting to use for short-term debugging tasks, say. Use `session_preload_libraries` for that instead.

### Note

On Windows hosts, preloading a library at server start will not reduce the time required to start each new server process; each server process will re-load all preload libraries. However, `shared_preload_libraries` is still useful on Windows hosts for libraries that need to perform operations at postmaster start time.

`jit_provider` (string)

This variable is the name of the JIT provider library to be used (see Section 32.4.2). The default is `llvmjit`. This parameter can only be set at server start.

If set to a non-existent library, JIT will not be available, but no error will be raised. This allows JIT support to be installed separately from the main PostgreSQL package.

## 20.11.4. Other Defaults

`dynamic_library_path` (string)

If a dynamically loadable module needs to be opened and the file name specified in the `CREATE FUNCTION` or `LOAD` command does not have a directory component (i.e., the name does not contain a slash), the system will search this path for the required file.

The value for `dynamic_library_path` must be a list of absolute directory paths separated by colons (or semi-colons on Windows). If a list element starts with the special string `$libdir`, the compiled-in PostgreSQL package library directory is substituted for `$libdir`; this is where the modules provided by the standard PostgreSQL distribution are installed. (Use `pg_config --pkglibdir` to find out the name of this directory.) For example:

```
dynamic_library_path = '/usr/local/lib/postgresql:/home/  
my_project/lib:$libdir'
```

or, in a Windows environment:

```
dynamic_library_path = 'C:\tools\postgresql;H:\my_project\lib;  
$libdir'
```

The default value for this parameter is `'$libdir'`. If the value is set to an empty string, the automatic path search is turned off.

This parameter can be changed at run time by superusers and users with the appropriate `SET` privilege, but a setting done that way will only persist until the end of the client connection, so

this method should be reserved for development purposes. The recommended way to set this parameter is in the `postgresql.conf` configuration file.

`gin_fuzzy_search_limit (integer)`

Soft upper limit of the size of the set returned by GIN index scans. For more information see Section 70.5.

## 20.12. Lock Management

`deadlock_timeout (integer)`

This is the amount of time to wait on a lock before checking to see if there is a deadlock condition. The check for deadlock is relatively expensive, so the server doesn't run it every time it waits for a lock. We optimistically assume that deadlocks are not common in production applications and just wait on the lock for a while before checking for a deadlock. Increasing this value reduces the amount of time wasted in needless deadlock checks, but slows down reporting of real deadlock errors. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as milliseconds. The default is one second (1s), which is probably about the smallest value you would want in practice. On a heavily loaded server you might want to raise it. Ideally the setting should exceed your typical transaction time, so as to improve the odds that a lock will be released before the waiter decides to check for deadlock. Only superusers and users with the appropriate SET privilege can change this setting.

When `log_lock_waits` is set, this parameter also determines the amount of time to wait before a log message is issued about the lock wait. If you are trying to investigate locking delays you might want to set a shorter than normal `deadlock_timeout`.

`max_locks_per_transaction (integer)`

The shared lock table has space for `max_locks_per_transaction` objects (e.g., tables) per server process or prepared transaction; hence, no more than this many distinct objects can be locked at any one time. This parameter limits the average number of object locks used by each transaction; individual transactions can lock more objects as long as the locks of all transactions fit in the lock table. This is *not* the number of rows that can be locked; that value is unlimited. The default, 64, has historically proven sufficient, but you might need to raise this value if you have queries that touch many different tables in a single transaction, e.g., query of a parent table with many children. This parameter can only be set at server start.

When running a standby server, you must set this parameter to have the same or higher value as on the primary server. Otherwise, queries will not be allowed in the standby server.

`max_pred_locks_per_transaction (integer)`

The shared predicate lock table has space for `max_pred_locks_per_transaction` objects (e.g., tables) per server process or prepared transaction; hence, no more than this many distinct objects can be locked at any one time. This parameter limits the average number of object locks used by each transaction; individual transactions can lock more objects as long as the locks of all transactions fit in the lock table. This is *not* the number of rows that can be locked; that value is unlimited. The default, 64, has historically proven sufficient, but you might need to raise this value if you have clients that touch many different tables in a single serializable transaction. This parameter can only be set at server start.

`max_pred_locks_per_relation (integer)`

This controls how many pages or tuples of a single relation can be predicate-locked before the lock is promoted to covering the whole relation. Values greater than or equal to zero mean an absolute limit, while negative values mean `max_pred_locks_per_transaction` divided by the absolute value of this setting. The default is -2, which keeps the behavior from previous versions of PostgreSQL. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

`max_pred_locks_per_page` (integer)

This controls how many rows on a single page can be predicate-locked before the lock is promoted to covering the whole page. The default is 2. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

## 20.13. Version and Platform Compatibility

### 20.13.1. Previous PostgreSQL Versions

`array_nulls` (boolean)

This controls whether the array input parser recognizes unquoted `NULL` as specifying a null array element. By default, this is `on`, allowing array values containing null values to be entered. However, PostgreSQL versions before 8.2 did not support null values in arrays, and therefore would treat `NULL` as specifying a normal array element with the string value “`NULL`”. For backward compatibility with applications that require the old behavior, this variable can be turned `off`.

Note that it is possible to create array values containing null values even when this variable is `off`.

`backslash_quote` (enum)

This controls whether a quote mark can be represented by `\'` in a string literal. The preferred, SQL-standard way to represent a quote mark is by doubling it (`' '`) but PostgreSQL has historically also accepted `\'`. However, use of `\'` creates security risks because in some client character set encodings, there are multibyte characters in which the last byte is numerically equivalent to ASCII `\`. If client-side code does escaping incorrectly then an SQL-injection attack is possible. This risk can be prevented by making the server reject queries in which a quote mark appears to be escaped by a backslash. The allowed values of `backslash_quote` are `on` (allow `\'` always), `off` (reject always), and `safe_encoding` (allow only if client encoding does not allow ASCII `\` within a multibyte character). `safe_encoding` is the default setting.

Note that in a standard-conforming string literal, `\` just means `\` anyway. This parameter only affects the handling of non-standard-conforming literals, including escape string syntax (`E' . . . '`).

`escape_string_warning` (boolean)

When `on`, a warning is issued if a backslash (`\`) appears in an ordinary string literal (`' . . . '` syntax) and `standard_conforming_strings` is `off`. The default is `on`.

Applications that wish to use backslash as escape should be modified to use escape string syntax (`E' . . . '`), because the default behavior of ordinary strings is now to treat backslash as an ordinary character, per SQL standard. This variable can be enabled to help locate code that needs to be changed.

`lo_compat_privileges` (boolean)

In PostgreSQL releases prior to 9.0, large objects did not have access privileges and were, therefore, always readable and writable by all users. Setting this variable to `on` disables the new privilege checks, for compatibility with prior releases. The default is `off`. Only superusers and users with the appropriate `SET` privilege can change this setting.

Setting this variable does not disable all security checks related to large objects — only those for which the default behavior has changed in PostgreSQL 9.0.

`quote_all_identifiers` (boolean)

When the database generates SQL, force all identifiers to be quoted, even if they are not (currently) keywords. This will affect the output of `EXPLAIN` as well as the results of functions

like `pg_get_viewdef`. See also the `--quote-all-identifiers` option of `pg_dump` and `pg_dumpall`.

`standard_conforming_strings` (boolean)

This controls whether ordinary string literals (`' . . . '`) treat backslashes literally, as specified in the SQL standard. Beginning in PostgreSQL 9.1, the default is `on` (prior releases defaulted to `off`). Applications can check this parameter to determine how string literals will be processed. The presence of this parameter can also be taken as an indication that the escape string syntax (`E' . . . '`) is supported. Escape string syntax (Section 4.1.2.2) should be used if an application desires backslashes to be treated as escape characters.

`synchronize_seqscans` (boolean)

This allows sequential scans of large tables to synchronize with each other, so that concurrent scans read the same block at about the same time and hence share the I/O workload. When this is enabled, a scan might start in the middle of the table and then “wrap around” the end to cover all rows, so as to synchronize with the activity of scans already in progress. This can result in unpredictable changes in the row ordering returned by queries that have no `ORDER BY` clause. Setting this parameter to `off` ensures the pre-8.3 behavior in which a sequential scan always starts from the beginning of the table. The default is `on`.

## 20.13.2. Platform and Client Compatibility

`transform_null_equals` (boolean)

When `on`, expressions of the form `expr = NULL` (or `NULL = expr`) are treated as `expr IS NULL`, that is, they return true if `expr` evaluates to the null value, and false otherwise. The correct SQL-spec-compliant behavior of `expr = NULL` is to always return null (unknown). Therefore this parameter defaults to `off`.

However, filtered forms in Microsoft Access generate queries that appear to use `expr = NULL` to test for null values, so if you use that interface to access the database you might want to turn this option `on`. Since expressions of the form `expr = NULL` always return the null value (using the SQL standard interpretation), they are not very useful and do not appear often in normal applications so this option does little harm in practice. But new users are frequently confused about the semantics of expressions involving null values, so this option is `off` by default.

Note that this option only affects the exact form `= NULL`, not other comparison operators or other expressions that are computationally equivalent to some expression involving the equals operator (such as `IN`). Thus, this option is not a general fix for bad programming.

Refer to Section 9.2 for related information.

## 20.14. Error Handling

`exit_on_error` (boolean)

If `on`, any error will terminate the current session. By default, this is set to `off`, so that only FATAL errors will terminate the session.

`restart_after_crash` (boolean)

When set to `on`, which is the default, PostgreSQL will automatically reinitialize after a backend crash. Leaving this value set to `on` is normally the best way to maximize the availability of the database. However, in some circumstances, such as when PostgreSQL is being invoked by clusterware, it may be useful to disable the restart so that the clusterware can gain control and take any actions it deems appropriate.

This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.



`data_sync_retry` (boolean)

When set to off, which is the default, PostgreSQL will raise a PANIC-level error on failure to flush modified data files to the file system. This causes the database server to crash. This parameter can only be set at server start.

On some operating systems, the status of data in the kernel's page cache is unknown after a write-back failure. In some cases it might have been entirely forgotten, making it unsafe to retry; the second attempt may be reported as successful, when in fact the data has been lost. In these circumstances, the only way to avoid data loss is to recover from the WAL after any failure is reported, preferably after investigating the root cause of the failure and replacing any faulty hardware.

If set to on, PostgreSQL will instead report an error but continue to run so that the data flushing operation can be retried in a later checkpoint. Only set it to on after investigating the operating system's treatment of buffered data in case of write-back failure.

`recovery_init_sync_method` (enum)

When set to `fsync`, which is the default, PostgreSQL will recursively open and synchronize all files in the data directory before crash recovery begins. The search for files will follow symbolic links for the WAL directory and each configured tablespace (but not any other symbolic links). This is intended to make sure that all WAL and data files are durably stored on disk before replaying changes. This applies whenever starting a database cluster that did not shut down cleanly, including copies created with `pg_basebackup`.

On Linux, `syncfs` may be used instead, to ask the operating system to synchronize the whole file systems that contain the data directory, the WAL files and each tablespace (but not any other file systems that may be reachable through symbolic links). This may be a lot faster than the `fsync` setting, because it doesn't need to open each file one by one. On the other hand, it may be slower if a file system is shared by other applications that modify a lot of files, since those files will also be written to disk. Furthermore, on versions of Linux before 5.8, I/O errors encountered while writing data to disk may not be reported to PostgreSQL, and relevant error messages may appear only in kernel logs.

This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

## 20.15. Preset Options

The following “parameters” are read-only. As such, they have been excluded from the sample `postgresql.conf` file. These options report various aspects of PostgreSQL behavior that might be of interest to certain applications, particularly administrative front-ends. Most of them are determined when PostgreSQL is compiled or when it is installed.

`block_size` (integer)

Reports the size of a disk block. It is determined by the value of `BLCKSZ` when building the server. The default value is 8192 bytes. The meaning of some configuration variables (such as `shared_buffers`) is influenced by `block_size`. See Section 20.4 for information.

`data_checksums` (boolean)

Reports whether data checksums are enabled for this cluster. See data checksums for more information.

`data_directory_mode` (integer)

On Unix systems this parameter reports the permissions the data directory (defined by `data_directory`) had at server startup. (On Microsoft Windows this parameter will always display 0700.) See group access for more information.

`debug_assertions` (boolean)

Reports whether PostgreSQL has been built with assertions enabled. That is the case if the macro `USE_ASSERT_CHECKING` is defined when PostgreSQL is built (accomplished e.g., by the configure option `--enable-cassert`). By default PostgreSQL is built without assertions.

`integer_datetimes` (boolean)

Reports whether PostgreSQL was built with support for 64-bit-integer dates and times. As of PostgreSQL 10, this is always on.

`in_hot_standby` (boolean)

Reports whether the server is currently in hot standby mode. When this is on, all transactions are forced to be read-only. Within a session, this can change only if the server is promoted to be primary. See Section 27.4 for more information.

`max_function_args` (integer)

Reports the maximum number of function arguments. It is determined by the value of `FUNC_MAX_ARGS` when building the server. The default value is 100 arguments.

`max_identifier_length` (integer)

Reports the maximum identifier length. It is determined as one less than the value of `NAME_DATALEN` when building the server. The default value of `NAMEDATALEN` is 64; therefore the default `max_identifier_length` is 63 bytes, which can be less than 63 characters when using multibyte encodings.

`max_index_keys` (integer)

Reports the maximum number of index keys. It is determined by the value of `INDEX_MAX_KEYS` when building the server. The default value is 32 keys.

`segment_size` (integer)

Reports the number of blocks (pages) that can be stored within a file segment. It is determined by the value of `RELSEG_SIZE` when building the server. The maximum size of a segment file in bytes is equal to `segment_size` multiplied by `block_size`; by default this is 1GB.

`server_encoding` (string)

Reports the database encoding (character set). It is determined when the database is created. Ordinarily, clients need only be concerned with the value of `client_encoding`.

`server_version` (string)

Reports the version number of the server. It is determined by the value of `PG_VERSION` when building the server.

`server_version_num` (integer)

Reports the version number of the server as an integer. It is determined by the value of `PG_VERSION_NUM` when building the server.

`shared_memory_size` (integer)

Reports the size of the main shared memory area, rounded up to the nearest megabyte.

`shared_memory_size_in_huge_pages` (integer)

Reports the number of huge pages that are needed for the main shared memory area based on the specified `huge_page_size`. If huge pages are not supported, this will be -1.

This setting is supported only on Linux. It is always set to `-1` on other platforms. For more details about using huge pages on Linux, see Section 19.4.5.

`ssl_library(string)`

Reports the name of the SSL library that this PostgreSQL server was built with (even if SSL is not currently configured or in use on this instance), for example OpenSSL, or an empty string if none.

`wal_block_size(integer)`

Reports the size of a WAL disk block. It is determined by the value of `XLOG_BLCKSZ` when building the server. The default value is 8192 bytes.

`wal_segment_size(integer)`

Reports the size of write ahead log segments. The default value is 16MB. See Section 30.5 for more information.

## 20.16. Customized Options

This feature was designed to allow parameters not normally known to PostgreSQL to be added by add-on modules (such as procedural languages). This allows extension modules to be configured in the standard ways.

Custom options have two-part names: an extension name, then a dot, then the parameter name proper, much like qualified names in SQL. An example is `plpgsql.variable_conflict`.

Because custom options may need to be set in processes that have not loaded the relevant extension module, PostgreSQL will accept a setting for any two-part parameter name. Such variables are treated as placeholders and have no function until the module that defines them is loaded. When an extension module is loaded, it will add its variable definitions and convert any placeholder values according to those definitions. If there are any unrecognized placeholders that begin with its extension name, warnings are issued and those placeholders are removed.

## 20.17. Developer Options

The following parameters are intended for developer testing, and should never be used on a production database. However, some of them can be used to assist with the recovery of severely damaged databases. As such, they have been excluded from the sample `postgresql.conf` file. Note that many of these parameters require special source compilation flags to work at all.

`allow_in_place_tablespaces(boolean)`

Allows tablespaces to be created as directories inside `pg_tblspc`, when an empty location string is provided to the `CREATE TABLESPACE` command. This is intended to allow testing replication scenarios where primary and standby servers are running on the same machine. Such directories are likely to confuse backup tools that expect to find only symbolic links in that location. Only superusers and users with the appropriate `SET` privilege can change this setting.

`allow_system_table_mods(boolean)`

Allows modification of the structure of system tables as well as certain other risky actions on system tables. This is otherwise not allowed even for superusers. Ill-advised use of this setting can cause irretrievable data loss or seriously corrupt the database system. Only superusers and users with the appropriate `SET` privilege can change this setting.

`backtrace_functions(string)`

This parameter contains a comma-separated list of C function names. If an error is raised and the name of the internal C function where the error happens matches a value in the list, then a

backtrace is written to the server log together with the error message. This can be used to debug specific areas of the source code.

Backtrace support is not available on all platforms, and the quality of the backtraces depends on compilation options.

Only superusers and users with the appropriate SET privilege can change this setting.

`debug_discard_caches (integer)`

When set to 1, each system catalog cache entry is invalidated at the first possible opportunity, whether or not anything that would render it invalid really occurred. Caching of system catalogs is effectively disabled as a result, so the server will run extremely slowly. Higher values run the cache invalidation recursively, which is even slower and only useful for testing the caching logic itself. The default value of 0 selects normal catalog caching behavior.

This parameter can be very helpful when trying to trigger hard-to-reproduce bugs involving concurrent catalog changes, but it is otherwise rarely needed. See the source code files `inval.c` and `pg_config_manual.h` for details.

This parameter is supported when `DISCARD_CACHES_ENABLED` was defined at compile time (which happens automatically when using the configure option `--enable-cassert`). In production builds, its value will always be 0 and attempts to set it to another value will raise an error.

`debug_io_direct (string)`

Ask the kernel to minimize caching effects for relation data and WAL files using `O_DIRECT` (most Unix-like systems), `F_NOCACHE` (macOS) or `FILE_FLAG_NO_BUFFERING` (Windows).

May be set to an empty string (the default) to disable use of direct I/O, or a comma-separated list of operations that should use direct I/O. The valid options are `data` for main data files, `wal` for WAL files, and `wal_init` for WAL files when being initially allocated.

Some operating systems and file systems do not support direct I/O, so non-default settings may be rejected at startup or cause errors.

Currently this feature reduces performance, and is intended for developer testing only.

`debug_parallel_query (enum)`

Allows the use of parallel queries for testing purposes even in cases where no performance benefit is expected. The allowed values of `debug_parallel_query` are `off` (use parallel mode only when it is expected to improve performance), `on` (force parallel query for all queries for which it is thought to be safe), and `regress` (like `on`, but with additional behavior changes as explained below).

More specifically, setting this value to `on` will add a `Gather` node to the top of any query plan for which this appears to be safe, so that the query runs inside of a parallel worker. Even when a parallel worker is not available or cannot be used, operations such as starting a subtransaction that would be prohibited in a parallel query context will be prohibited unless the planner believes that this will cause the query to fail. If failures or unexpected results occur when this option is set, some functions used by the query may need to be marked `PARALLEL UNSAFE` (or, possibly, `PARALLEL RESTRICTED`).

Setting this value to `regress` has all of the same effects as setting it to `on` plus some additional effects that are intended to facilitate automated regression testing. Normally, messages from a parallel worker include a context line indicating that, but a setting of `regress` suppresses this line so that the output is the same as in non-parallel execution. Also, the `Gather` nodes added to plans by this setting are hidden in `EXPLAIN` output so that the output matches what would be obtained if this setting were turned `off`.

`ignore_system_indexes` (boolean)

Ignore system indexes when reading system tables (but still update the indexes when modifying the tables). This is useful when recovering from damaged system indexes. This parameter cannot be changed after session start.

`post_auth_delay` (integer)

The amount of time to delay when a new server process is started, after it conducts the authentication procedure. This is intended to give developers an opportunity to attach to the server process with a debugger. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as seconds. A value of zero (the default) disables the delay. This parameter cannot be changed after session start.

`pre_auth_delay` (integer)

The amount of time to delay just after a new server process is forked, before it conducts the authentication procedure. This is intended to give developers an opportunity to attach to the server process with a debugger to trace down misbehavior in authentication. If this value is specified without units, it is taken as seconds. A value of zero (the default) disables the delay. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

`trace_notify` (boolean)

Generates a great amount of debugging output for the `LISTEN` and `NOTIFY` commands. `client_min_messages` or `log_min_messages` must be `DEBUG1` or lower to send this output to the client or server logs, respectively.

`trace_recovery_messages` (enum)

Enables logging of recovery-related debugging output that otherwise would not be logged. This parameter allows the user to override the normal setting of `log_min_messages`, but only for specific messages. This is intended for use in debugging hot standby. Valid values are `DEBUG5`, `DEBUG4`, `DEBUG3`, `DEBUG2`, `DEBUG1`, and `LOG`. The default, `LOG`, does not affect logging decisions at all. The other values cause recovery-related debug messages of that priority or higher to be logged as though they had `LOG` priority; for common settings of `log_min_messages` this results in unconditionally sending them to the server log. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

`trace_sort` (boolean)

If on, emit information about resource usage during sort operations. This parameter is only available if the `TRACE_SORT` macro was defined when PostgreSQL was compiled. (However, `TRACE_SORT` is currently defined by default.)

`trace_locks` (boolean)

If on, emit information about lock usage. Information dumped includes the type of lock operation, the type of lock and the unique identifier of the object being locked or unlocked. Also included are bit masks for the lock types already granted on this object as well as for the lock types awaited on this object. For each lock type a count of the number of granted locks and waiting locks is also dumped as well as the totals. An example of the log file output is shown here:

```
LOG:  LockAcquire: new: lock(0xb7acd844) id(24688,24696,0,0,0,1)
      grantMask(0) req(0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0)=0 grant(0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0)=0
      wait(0) type(AccessShareLock)
LOG:  GrantLock: lock(0xb7acd844) id(24688,24696,0,0,0,1)
      grantMask(2) req(1,0,0,0,0,0,0,0)=1 grant(1,0,0,0,0,0,0,0)=1
      wait(0) type(AccessShareLock)
LOG:  UnGrantLock: updated: lock(0xb7acd844)
      id(24688,24696,0,0,0,1)
```

```

        grantMask(0) req(0,0,0,0,0,0,0)=0 grant(0,0,0,0,0,0,0)=0
        wait(0) type(AccessShareLock)
LOG:  CleanupLock: deleting: lock(0xb7acd844)
      id(24688,24696,0,0,0,1)
        grantMask(0) req(0,0,0,0,0,0,0)=0 grant(0,0,0,0,0,0,0)=0
        wait(0) type(INVALID)

```

Details of the structure being dumped may be found in `src/include/storage/lock.h`.

This parameter is only available if the `LOCK_DEBUG` macro was defined when PostgreSQL was compiled.

`trace_lwlocks` (boolean)

If on, emit information about lightweight lock usage. Lightweight locks are intended primarily to provide mutual exclusion of access to shared-memory data structures.

This parameter is only available if the `LOCK_DEBUG` macro was defined when PostgreSQL was compiled.

`trace_userlocks` (boolean)

If on, emit information about user lock usage. Output is the same as for `trace_locks`, only for advisory locks.

This parameter is only available if the `LOCK_DEBUG` macro was defined when PostgreSQL was compiled.

`trace_lock_oidmin` (integer)

If set, do not trace locks for tables below this OID (used to avoid output on system tables).

This parameter is only available if the `LOCK_DEBUG` macro was defined when PostgreSQL was compiled.

`trace_lock_table` (integer)

Unconditionally trace locks on this table (OID).

This parameter is only available if the `LOCK_DEBUG` macro was defined when PostgreSQL was compiled.

`debug_deadlocks` (boolean)

If set, dumps information about all current locks when a deadlock timeout occurs.

This parameter is only available if the `LOCK_DEBUG` macro was defined when PostgreSQL was compiled.

`log_btree_build_stats` (boolean)

If set, logs system resource usage statistics (memory and CPU) on various B-tree operations.

This parameter is only available if the `BTREE_BUILD_STATS` macro was defined when PostgreSQL was compiled.

`wal_consistency_checking` (string)

This parameter is intended to be used to check for bugs in the WAL redo routines. When enabled, full-page images of any buffers modified in conjunction with the WAL record are added to the record. If the record is subsequently replayed, the system will first apply each record and then test whether the buffers modified by the record match the stored images. In certain cases (such as

hint bits), minor variations are acceptable, and will be ignored. Any unexpected differences will result in a fatal error, terminating recovery.

The default value of this setting is the empty string, which disables the feature. It can be set to `all` to check all records, or to a comma-separated list of resource managers to check only records originating from those resource managers. Currently, the supported resource managers are `heap`, `heap2`, `btree`, `hash`, `gin`, `gist`, `sequence`, `spgist`, `brin`, and `generic`. Extensions may define additional resource managers. Only superusers and users with the appropriate `SET` privilege can change this setting.

`wal_debug` (boolean)

If on, emit WAL-related debugging output. This parameter is only available if the `WAL_DEBUG` macro was defined when PostgreSQL was compiled.

`ignore_checksum_failure` (boolean)

Only has effect if data checksums are enabled.

Detection of a checksum failure during a read normally causes PostgreSQL to report an error, aborting the current transaction. Setting `ignore_checksum_failure` to on causes the system to ignore the failure (but still report a warning), and continue processing. This behavior may *cause crashes, propagate or hide corruption, or other serious problems*. However, it may allow you to get past the error and retrieve undamaged tuples that might still be present in the table if the block header is still sane. If the header is corrupt an error will be reported even if this option is enabled. The default setting is `off`. Only superusers and users with the appropriate `SET` privilege can change this setting.

`zero_damaged_pages` (boolean)

Detection of a damaged page header normally causes PostgreSQL to report an error, aborting the current transaction. Setting `zero_damaged_pages` to on causes the system to instead report a warning, zero out the damaged page in memory, and continue processing. This behavior *will destroy data*, namely all the rows on the damaged page. However, it does allow you to get past the error and retrieve rows from any undamaged pages that might be present in the table. It is useful for recovering data if corruption has occurred due to a hardware or software error. You should generally not set this on until you have given up hope of recovering data from the damaged pages of a table. Zeroed-out pages are not forced to disk so it is recommended to recreate the table or the index before turning this parameter off again. The default setting is `off`. Only superusers and users with the appropriate `SET` privilege can change this setting.

`ignore_invalid_pages` (boolean)

If set to `off` (the default), detection of WAL records having references to invalid pages during recovery causes PostgreSQL to raise a PANIC-level error, aborting the recovery. Setting `ignore_invalid_pages` to on causes the system to ignore invalid page references in WAL records (but still report a warning), and continue the recovery. This behavior may *cause crashes, data loss, propagate or hide corruption, or other serious problems*. However, it may allow you to get past the PANIC-level error, to finish the recovery, and to cause the server to start up. The parameter can only be set at server start. It only has effect during recovery or in standby mode.

`jit_debugging_support` (boolean)

If LLVM has the required functionality, register generated functions with GDB. This makes debugging easier. The default setting is `off`. This parameter can only be set at server start.

`jit_dump_bitcode` (boolean)

Writes the generated LLVM IR out to the file system, inside `data_directory`. This is only useful for working on the internals of the JIT implementation. The default setting is `off`. Only superusers and users with the appropriate `SET` privilege can change this setting.

`jit_expressions` (boolean)

Determines whether expressions are JIT compiled, when JIT compilation is activated (see Section 32.2). The default is `on`.

`jit_profiling_support` (boolean)

If LLVM has the required functionality, emit the data needed to allow `perf` to profile functions generated by JIT. This writes out files to `~/ .debug/ jit/`; the user is responsible for performing cleanup when desired. The default setting is `off`. This parameter can only be set at server start.

`jit_tuple_deforming` (boolean)

Determines whether tuple deforming is JIT compiled, when JIT compilation is activated (see Section 32.2). The default is `on`.

`remove_temp_files_after_crash` (boolean)

When set to `on`, which is the default, PostgreSQL will automatically remove temporary files after a backend crash. If disabled, the files will be retained and may be used for debugging, for example. Repeated crashes may however result in accumulation of useless files. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

`send_abort_for_crash` (boolean)

By default, after a backend crash the postmaster will stop remaining child processes by sending them `SIGQUIT` signals, which permits them to exit more-or-less gracefully. When this option is set to `on`, `SIGABRT` is sent instead. That normally results in production of a core dump file for each such child process. This can be handy for investigating the states of other processes after a crash. It can also consume lots of disk space in the event of repeated crashes, so do not enable this on systems you are not monitoring carefully. Beware that no support exists for cleaning up the core file(s) automatically. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

`send_abort_for_kill` (boolean)

By default, after attempting to stop a child process with `SIGQUIT`, the postmaster will wait five seconds and then send `SIGKILL` to force immediate termination. When this option is set to `on`, `SIGABRT` is sent instead of `SIGKILL`. That normally results in production of a core dump file for each such child process. This can be handy for investigating the states of “stuck” child processes. It can also consume lots of disk space in the event of repeated crashes, so do not enable this on systems you are not monitoring carefully. Beware that no support exists for cleaning up the core file(s) automatically. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

`debug_logical_replication_streaming` (enum)

The allowed values are `buffered` and `immediate`. The default is `buffered`. This parameter is intended to be used to test logical decoding and replication of large transactions. The effect of `debug_logical_replication_streaming` is different for the publisher and subscriber:

On the publisher side, `debug_logical_replication_streaming` allows streaming or serializing changes immediately in logical decoding. When set to `immediate`, stream each change if the `streaming` option of `CREATE SUBSCRIPTION` is enabled, otherwise, serialize each change. When set to `buffered`, the decoding will stream or serialize changes when `logical_decoding_work_mem` is reached.

On the subscriber side, if the `streaming` option is set to `parallel`, `debug_logical_replication_streaming` can be used to direct the leader apply worker to send changes to the shared memory queue or to serialize all changes to the file. When set to `buffered`, the leader sends changes to parallel apply workers via a shared memory queue. When set to `im-`



mediate, the leader serializes all changes to files and notifies the parallel apply workers to read and apply them at the end of the transaction.

## 20.18. Short Options

For convenience there are also single letter command-line option switches available for some parameters. They are described in Table 20.4. Some of these options exist for historical reasons, and their presence as a single-letter option does not necessarily indicate an endorsement to use the option heavily.

**Table 20.4. Short Option Key**

Short Option	Equivalent
-B x	shared_buffers = x
-d x	log_min_messages = DEBUGx
-e	datestyle = euro
-fb, -fh, -fi, -fm, -fn, -fo, -fs, -ft	enable_bitmapscan = off, enable_hashjoin = off, enable_indexscan = off, enable_mergejoin = off, enable_nestloop = off, enable_indexonlyscan = off, enable_seqscan = off, enable_tidscan = off
-F	fsync = off
-h x	listen_addresses = x
-i	listen_addresses = '*'
-k x	unix_socket_directories = x
-l	ssl = on
-N x	max_connections = x
-O	allow_system_table_mods = on
-p x	port = x
-P	ignore_system_indexes = on
-s	log_statement_stats = on
-S x	work_mem = x
-tpa, -tpl, -te	log_parser_stats = on, log_planner_stats = on, log_executor_stats = on
-W x	post_auth_delay = x

---

# Chapter 21. Client Authentication

When a client application connects to the database server, it specifies which PostgreSQL database user name it wants to connect as, much the same way one logs into a Unix computer as a particular user. Within the SQL environment the active database user name determines access privileges to database objects — see Chapter 22 for more information. Therefore, it is essential to restrict which database users can connect.

## Note

As explained in Chapter 22, PostgreSQL actually does privilege management in terms of “roles”. In this chapter, we consistently use *database user* to mean “role with the LOGIN privilege”.

*Authentication* is the process by which the database server establishes the identity of the client, and by extension determines whether the client application (or the user who runs the client application) is permitted to connect with the database user name that was requested.

PostgreSQL offers a number of different client authentication methods. The method used to authenticate a particular client connection can be selected on the basis of (client) host address, database, and user.

PostgreSQL database user names are logically separate from user names of the operating system in which the server runs. If all the users of a particular server also have accounts on the server's machine, it makes sense to assign database user names that match their operating system user names. However, a server that accepts remote connections might have many database users who have no local operating system account, and in such cases there need be no connection between database user names and OS user names.

## 21.1. The `pg_hba.conf` File

Client authentication is controlled by a configuration file, which traditionally is named `pg_hba.conf` and is stored in the database cluster's data directory. (HBA stands for host-based authentication.) A default `pg_hba.conf` file is installed when the data directory is initialized by `initdb`. It is possible to place the authentication configuration file elsewhere, however; see the `hba_file` configuration parameter.

The general format of the `pg_hba.conf` file is a set of records, one per line. Blank lines are ignored, as is any text after the `#` comment character. A record can be continued onto the next line by ending the line with a backslash. (Backslashes are not special except at the end of a line.) A record is made up of a number of fields which are separated by spaces and/or tabs. Fields can contain white space if the field value is double-quoted. Quoting one of the keywords in a database, user, or address field (e.g., `all` or `replication`) makes the word lose its special meaning, and just match a database, user, or host with that name. Backslash line continuation applies even within quoted text or comments.

Each authentication record specifies a connection type, a client IP address range (if relevant for the connection type), a database name, a user name, and the authentication method to be used for connections matching these parameters. The first record with a matching connection type, client address, requested database, and user name is used to perform authentication. There is no “fall-through” or “backup”: if one record is chosen and the authentication fails, subsequent records are not considered. If no record matches, access is denied.

Each record can be an include directive or an authentication record. Include directives specify files that can be included, that contain additional records. The records will be inserted in place of the include directives. Include directives only contain two fields: `include`, `include_if_exists` or

`include_dir` directive and the file or directory to be included. The file or directory can be a relative or absolute path, and can be double-quoted. For the `include_dir` form, all files not starting with a `.` and ending with `.conf` will be included. Multiple files within an include directory are processed in file name order (according to C locale rules, i.e., numbers before letters, and uppercase letters before lowercase ones).

A record can have several formats:

<code>local</code>	<code>database</code>	<code>user</code>	<code>auth-method</code>	<code>[auth-options]</code>	
<code>host</code>	<code>database</code>	<code>user</code>	<code>address</code>	<code>auth-method</code>	<code>[auth-options]</code>
<code>hostssl</code>	<code>database</code>	<code>user</code>	<code>address</code>	<code>auth-method</code>	<code>[auth-options]</code>
<code>hostnsssl</code>	<code>database</code>	<code>user</code>	<code>address</code>	<code>auth-method</code>	<code>[auth-options]</code>
<code>hostgssenc</code>	<code>database</code>	<code>user</code>	<code>address</code>	<code>auth-method</code>	<code>[auth-options]</code>
<code>hostnogssenc</code>	<code>database</code>	<code>user</code>	<code>address</code>	<code>auth-method</code>	<code>[auth-options]</code>
<code>host</code>	<code>database</code>	<code>user</code>	<code>IP-address</code>	<code>IP-mask</code>	<code>auth-method [auth-options]</code>
<code>hostssl</code>	<code>database</code>	<code>user</code>	<code>IP-address</code>	<code>IP-mask</code>	<code>auth-method [auth-options]</code>
<code>hostnsssl</code>	<code>database</code>	<code>user</code>	<code>IP-address</code>	<code>IP-mask</code>	<code>auth-method [auth-options]</code>
<code>hostgssenc</code>	<code>database</code>	<code>user</code>	<code>IP-address</code>	<code>IP-mask</code>	<code>auth-method [auth-options]</code>
<code>hostnogssenc</code>	<code>database</code>	<code>user</code>	<code>IP-address</code>	<code>IP-mask</code>	<code>auth-method [auth-options]</code>
<code>include</code>	<code>file</code>				
<code>include_if_exists</code>	<code>file</code>				
<code>include_dir</code>	<code>directory</code>				

The meaning of the fields is as follows:

`local`

This record matches connection attempts using Unix-domain sockets. Without a record of this type, Unix-domain socket connections are disallowed.

`host`

This record matches connection attempts made using TCP/IP. `host` records match SSL or non-SSL connection attempts as well as GSSAPI encrypted or non-GSSAPI encrypted connection attempts.

### Note

Remote TCP/IP connections will not be possible unless the server is started with an appropriate value for the `listen_addresses` configuration parameter, since the default behavior is to listen for TCP/IP connections only on the local loopback address `localhost`.

`hostssl`

This record matches connection attempts made using TCP/IP, but only when the connection is made with SSL encryption.

To make use of this option the server must be built with SSL support. Furthermore, SSL must be enabled by setting the `ssl` configuration parameter (see Section 19.9 for more information). Otherwise, the `hostssl` record is ignored except for logging a warning that it cannot match any connections.

#### `hostnossl`

This record type has the opposite behavior of `hostssl`; it only matches connection attempts made over TCP/IP that do not use SSL.

#### `hostgssenc`

This record matches connection attempts made using TCP/IP, but only when the connection is made with GSSAPI encryption.

To make use of this option the server must be built with GSSAPI support. Otherwise, the `hostgssenc` record is ignored except for logging a warning that it cannot match any connections.

#### `hostnogssenc`

This record type has the opposite behavior of `hostgssenc`; it only matches connection attempts made over TCP/IP that do not use GSSAPI encryption.

#### `database`

Specifies which database name(s) this record matches. The value `all` specifies that it matches all databases. The value `sameuser` specifies that the record matches if the requested database has the same name as the requested user. The value `samerole` specifies that the requested user must be a member of the role with the same name as the requested database. (`samegroup` is an obsolete but still accepted spelling of `samerole`.) Superusers are not considered to be members of a role for the purposes of `samerole` unless they are explicitly members of the role, directly or indirectly, and not just by virtue of being a superuser. The value `replication` specifies that the record matches if a physical replication connection is requested, however, it doesn't match with logical replication connections. Note that physical replication connections do not specify any particular database whereas logical replication connections do specify it. Otherwise, this is the name of a specific PostgreSQL database or a regular expression. Multiple database names and/or regular expressions can be supplied by separating them with commas.

If the database name starts with a slash (/), the remainder of the name is treated as a regular expression. (See Section 9.7.3.1 for details of PostgreSQL's regular expression syntax.)

A separate file containing database names and/or regular expressions can be specified by preceding the file name with @.

#### `user`

Specifies which database user name(s) this record matches. The value `all` specifies that it matches all users. Otherwise, this is either the name of a specific database user, a regular expression (when starting with a slash (/), or a group name preceded by +. (Recall that there is no real distinction between users and groups in PostgreSQL; a + mark really means “match any of the roles that are directly or indirectly members of this role”, while a name without a + mark matches only that specific role.) For this purpose, a superuser is only considered to be a member of a role if they are explicitly a member of the role, directly or indirectly, and not just by virtue of being a superuser. Multiple user names and/or regular expressions can be supplied by separating them with commas.

If the user name starts with a slash (/), the remainder of the name is treated as a regular expression. (See Section 9.7.3.1 for details of PostgreSQL's regular expression syntax.)

A separate file containing user names and/or regular expressions can be specified by preceding the file name with @.

*address*

Specifies the client machine address(es) that this record matches. This field can contain either a host name, an IP address range, or one of the special key words mentioned below.

An IP address range is specified using standard numeric notation for the range's starting address, then a slash (/) and a CIDR mask length. The mask length indicates the number of high-order bits of the client IP address that must match. Bits to the right of this should be zero in the given IP address. There must not be any white space between the IP address, the /, and the CIDR mask length.

Typical examples of an IPv4 address range specified this way are `172.20.143.89/32` for a single host, or `172.20.143.0/24` for a small network, or `10.6.0.0/16` for a larger one. An IPv6 address range might look like `::1/128` for a single host (in this case the IPv6 loopback address) or `fe80::7a31:c1ff:0000:0000/96` for a small network. `0.0.0.0/0` represents all IPv4 addresses, and `:::0/0` represents all IPv6 addresses. To specify a single host, use a mask length of 32 for IPv4 or 128 for IPv6. In a network address, do not omit trailing zeroes.

An entry given in IPv4 format will match only IPv4 connections, and an entry given in IPv6 format will match only IPv6 connections, even if the represented address is in the IPv4-in-IPv6 range.

You can also write `all` to match any IP address, `samehost` to match any of the server's own IP addresses, or `samenet` to match any address in any subnet that the server is directly connected to.

If a host name is specified (anything that is not an IP address range or a special key word is treated as a host name), that name is compared with the result of a reverse name resolution of the client's IP address (e.g., reverse DNS lookup, if DNS is used). Host name comparisons are case insensitive. If there is a match, then a forward name resolution (e.g., forward DNS lookup) is performed on the host name to check whether any of the addresses it resolves to are equal to the client's IP address. If both directions match, then the entry is considered to match. (The host name that is used in `pg_hba.conf` should be the one that address-to-name resolution of the client's IP address returns, otherwise the line won't be matched. Some host name databases allow associating an IP address with multiple host names, but the operating system will only return one host name when asked to resolve an IP address.)

A host name specification that starts with a dot (.) matches a suffix of the actual host name. So `.example.com` would match `foo.example.com` (but not just `example.com`).

When host names are specified in `pg_hba.conf`, you should make sure that name resolution is reasonably fast. It can be of advantage to set up a local name resolution cache such as `nsd`. Also, you may wish to enable the configuration parameter `log_hostname` to see the client's host name instead of the IP address in the log.

These fields do not apply to `local` records.

**Note**

Users sometimes wonder why host names are handled in this seemingly complicated way, with two name resolutions including a reverse lookup of the client's IP address. This complicates use of the feature in case the client's reverse DNS entry is not set up or yields some undesirable host name. It is done primarily for efficiency: this way, a connection attempt requires at most two resolver lookups, one reverse and one forward. If there is a resolver problem with some address, it becomes only that client's problem. A hypothetical alternative implementation that only did forward lookups would have to resolve every host name mentioned in `pg_hba.conf` during every connection attempt. That could be quite slow if many names are listed. And if there is a resolver problem with one of the host names, it becomes everyone's problem.

Also, a reverse lookup is necessary to implement the suffix matching feature, because the actual client host name needs to be known in order to match it against the pattern.

Note that this behavior is consistent with other popular implementations of host name-based access control, such as the Apache HTTP Server and TCP Wrappers.

*IP-address*

*IP-mask*

These two fields can be used as an alternative to the *IP-address/mask-length* notation. Instead of specifying the mask length, the actual mask is specified in a separate column. For example, 255.0.0.0 represents an IPv4 CIDR mask length of 8, and 255.255.255.255 represents a CIDR mask length of 32.

These fields do not apply to `local` records.

*auth-method*

Specifies the authentication method to use when a connection matches this record. The possible choices are summarized here; details are in Section 21.3. All the options are lower case and treated case sensitively, so even acronyms like `ldap` must be specified as lower case.

`trust`

Allow the connection unconditionally. This method allows anyone that can connect to the PostgreSQL database server to login as any PostgreSQL user they wish, without the need for a password or any other authentication. See Section 21.4 for details.

`reject`

Reject the connection unconditionally. This is useful for “filtering out” certain hosts from a group, for example a `reject` line could block a specific host from connecting, while a later line allows the remaining hosts in a specific network to connect.

`scram-sha-256`

Perform SCRAM-SHA-256 authentication to verify the user's password. See Section 21.5 for details.

`md5`

Perform SCRAM-SHA-256 or MD5 authentication to verify the user's password. See Section 21.5 for details.

`password`

Require the client to supply an unencrypted password for authentication. Since the password is sent in clear text over the network, this should not be used on untrusted networks. See Section 21.5 for details.

`gss`

Use GSSAPI to authenticate the user. This is only available for TCP/IP connections. See Section 21.6 for details. It can be used in conjunction with GSSAPI encryption.

`sspi`

Use SSPI to authenticate the user. This is only available on Windows. See Section 21.7 for details.

`ident`

Obtain the operating system user name of the client by contacting the ident server on the client and check if it matches the requested database user name. Ident authentication can only

be used on TCP/IP connections. When specified for local connections, peer authentication will be used instead. See Section 21.8 for details.

#### peer

Obtain the client's operating system user name from the operating system and check if it matches the requested database user name. This is only available for local connections. See Section 21.9 for details.

#### ldap

Authenticate using an LDAP server. See Section 21.10 for details.

#### radius

Authenticate using a RADIUS server. See Section 21.11 for details.

#### cert

Authenticate using SSL client certificates. See Section 21.12 for details.

#### pam

Authenticate using the Pluggable Authentication Modules (PAM) service provided by the operating system. See Section 21.13 for details.

#### bsd

Authenticate using the BSD Authentication service provided by the operating system. See Section 21.14 for details.

#### *auth-options*

After the *auth-method* field, there can be field(s) of the form *name=value* that specify options for the authentication method. Details about which options are available for which authentication methods appear below.

In addition to the method-specific options listed below, there is a method-independent authentication option *clientcert*, which can be specified in any *hostssl* record. This option can be set to *verify-ca* or *verify-full*. Both options require the client to present a valid (trusted) SSL certificate, while *verify-full* additionally enforces that the *cn* (Common Name) in the certificate matches the username or an applicable mapping. This behavior is similar to the *cert* authentication method (see Section 21.12) but enables pairing the verification of client certificates with any authentication method that supports *hostssl* entries.

On any record using client certificate authentication (i.e. one using the *cert* authentication method or one using the *clientcert* option), you can specify which part of the client certificate credentials to match using the *clientname* option. This option can have one of two values. If you specify *clientname=CN*, which is the default, the username is matched against the certificate's Common Name (CN). If instead you specify *clientname=DN* the username is matched against the entire Distinguished Name (DN) of the certificate. This option is probably best used in conjunction with a username map. The comparison is done with the DN in RFC 2253<sup>1</sup> format. To see the DN of a client certificate in this format, do

```
openssl x509 -in myclient.crt -noout -subject -nameopt RFC2253 |  
sed "s/^subject=/"
```

---

<sup>1</sup> <https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc2253>

Care needs to be taken when using this option, especially when using regular expression matching against the DN.

`include`

This line will be replaced by the contents of the given file.

`include_if_exists`

This line will be replaced by the content of the given file if the file exists. Otherwise, a message is logged to indicate that the file has been skipped.

`include_dir`

This line will be replaced by the contents of all the files found in the directory, if they don't start with a `.` and end with `.conf`, processed in file name order (according to C locale rules, i.e., numbers before letters, and uppercase letters before lowercase ones).

Files included by `@` constructs are read as lists of names, which can be separated by either whitespace or commas. Comments are introduced by `#`, just as in `pg_hba.conf`, and nested `@` constructs are allowed. Unless the file name following `@` is an absolute path, it is taken to be relative to the directory containing the referencing file.

Since the `pg_hba.conf` records are examined sequentially for each connection attempt, the order of the records is significant. Typically, earlier records will have tight connection match parameters and weaker authentication methods, while later records will have looser match parameters and stronger authentication methods. For example, one might wish to use `trust` authentication for local TCP/IP connections but require a password for remote TCP/IP connections. In this case a record specifying `trust` authentication for connections from 127.0.0.1 would appear before a record specifying password authentication for a wider range of allowed client IP addresses.

The `pg_hba.conf` file is read on start-up and when the main server process receives a `SIGHUP` signal. If you edit the file on an active system, you will need to signal the postmaster (using `pg_ctl reload`, calling the SQL function `pg_reload_conf()`, or using `kill -HUP`) to make it re-read the file.

### Note

The preceding statement is not true on Microsoft Windows: there, any changes in the `pg_hba.conf` file are immediately applied by subsequent new connections.

The system view `pg_hba_file_rules` can be helpful for pre-testing changes to the `pg_hba.conf` file, or for diagnosing problems if loading of the file did not have the desired effects. Rows in the view with non-null `error` fields indicate problems in the corresponding lines of the file.

### Tip

To connect to a particular database, a user must not only pass the `pg_hba.conf` checks, but must have the `CONNECT` privilege for the database. If you wish to restrict which users can connect to which databases, it's usually easier to control this by granting/revoking `CONNECT` privilege than to put the rules in `pg_hba.conf` entries.

Some examples of `pg_hba.conf` entries are shown in Example 21.1. See the next section for details on the different authentication methods.



**Example 21.1. Example `pg_hba.conf` Entries**

```
# Allow any user on the local system to connect to any database
# with
# any database user name using Unix-domain sockets (the default for
# local
# connections).
#
# TYPE      DATABASE      USER      ADDRESS
# METHOD
local      all            all
trust

# The same using local loopback TCP/IP connections.
#
# TYPE      DATABASE      USER      ADDRESS
# METHOD
host       all            all        127.0.0.1/32
trust

# The same as the previous line, but using a separate netmask
# column
#
# TYPE      DATABASE      USER      IP-ADDRESS  IP-MASK
# METHOD
host       all            all        127.0.0.1
255.255.255.255      trust

# The same over IPv6.
#
# TYPE      DATABASE      USER      ADDRESS
# METHOD
host       all            all        ::1/128
trust

# The same using a host name (would typically cover both IPv4 and
# IPv6).
#
# TYPE      DATABASE      USER      ADDRESS
# METHOD
host       all            all        localhost
trust

# The same using a regular expression for DATABASE, that allows
# connection
# to the database db1, db2 and any databases with a name beginning
# with "db"
# and finishing with a number using two to four digits (like
# "db1234" or
# "db12").
#
# TYPE      DATABASE      USER      ADDRESS
# METHOD
local      db1, "/^db\d{2,4}$", db2      all        localhost
trust
```

```

# Allow any user from any host with IP address 192.168.93.x to
# connect
# to database "postgres" as the same user name that ident reports
# for
# the connection (typically the operating system user name).
#
# TYPE  DATABASE          USER                ADDRESS
# METHOD
host    postgres          all                  192.168.93.0/24
ident

# Allow any user from host 192.168.12.10 to connect to database
# "postgres" if the user's password is correctly supplied.
#
# TYPE  DATABASE          USER                ADDRESS
# METHOD
host    postgres          all                  192.168.12.10/32
scram-sha-256

# Allow any user from hosts in the example.com domain to connect to
# any database if the user's password is correctly supplied.
#
# Require SCRAM authentication for most users, but make an
# exception
# for user 'mike', who uses an older client that doesn't support
# SCRAM
# authentication.
#
# TYPE  DATABASE          USER                ADDRESS
# METHOD
host    all                mike                 .example.com          md5
host    all                all                  .example.com
scram-sha-256

# In the absence of preceding "host" lines, these three lines will
# reject all connections from 192.168.54.1 (since that entry will
# be
# matched first), but allow GSSAPI-encrypted connections from
# anywhere else
# on the Internet. The zero mask causes no bits of the host IP
# address to
# be considered, so it matches any host. Unencrypted GSSAPI
# connections
# (which "fall through" to the third line since "hostgssenc" only
# matches
# encrypted GSSAPI connections) are allowed, but only from
# 192.168.12.10.
#
# TYPE  DATABASE          USER                ADDRESS
# METHOD
host    all                all                  192.168.54.1/32
reject
hostgssenc all              all                  0.0.0.0/0              gss
host    all                all                  192.168.12.10/32      gss

# Allow users from 192.168.x.x hosts to connect to any database, if
# they pass the ident check. If, for example, ident says the user
# is

```

```
# "bryanh" and he requests to connect as PostgreSQL user "guest1",
the
# connection is allowed if there is an entry in pg_ident.conf for
map
# "omicron" that says "bryanh" is allowed to connect as "guest1".
#
# TYPE  DATABASE          USER              ADDRESS
METHOD
host    all                all               192.168.0.0/16
ident map=omicron

# If these are the only four lines for local connections, they will
# allow local users to connect only to their own databases
(databases
# with the same name as their database user name) except for users
whose
# name end with "helpdesk", administrators and members of role
"support",
# who can connect to all databases. The file $PGDATA/admins
contains a
# list of names of administrators. Passwords are required in all
cases.
#
# TYPE  DATABASE          USER              ADDRESS
METHOD
local   sameuser        all                md5
local   all              /^.*helpdesk$     md5
local   all              @admins           md5
local   all              +support          md5

# The last two lines above can be combined into a single line:
local   all              @admins,+support   md5

# The database column can also use lists and file names:
local   db1,db2,@demodbs all                md5
```

## 21.2. User Name Maps

When using an external authentication system such as Ident or GSSAPI, the name of the operating system user that initiated the connection might not be the same as the database user (role) that is to be used. In this case, a user name map can be applied to map the operating system user name to a database user. To use user name mapping, specify `map=map-name` in the options field in `pg_hba.conf`. This option is supported for all authentication methods that receive external user names. Since different mappings might be needed for different connections, the name of the map to be used is specified in the `map-name` parameter in `pg_hba.conf` to indicate which map to use for each individual connection.

User name maps are defined in the ident map file, which by default is named `pg_ident.conf` and is stored in the cluster's data directory. (It is possible to place the map file elsewhere, however; see the `ident_file` configuration parameter.) The ident map file contains lines of the general forms:

```
map-name system-username database-username
include file
include_if_exists file
include_dir directory
```

Comments, whitespace and line continuations are handled in the same way as in `pg_hba.conf`. The `map-name` is an arbitrary name that will be used to refer to this mapping in `pg_hba.conf`. The

other two fields specify an operating system user name and a matching database user name. The same *map-name* can be used repeatedly to specify multiple user-mappings within a single map.

As for `pg_hba.conf`, the lines in this file can include directives, following the same rules.

There is no restriction regarding how many database users a given operating system user can correspond to, nor vice versa. Thus, entries in a map should be thought of as meaning “this operating system user is allowed to connect as this database user”, rather than implying that they are equivalent. The connection will be allowed if there is any map entry that pairs the user name obtained from the external authentication system with the database user name that the user has requested to connect as. The value `all` can be used as the *database-username* to specify that if the *system-user* matches, then this user is allowed to log in as any of the existing database users. Quoting `all` makes the keyword lose its special meaning.

If the *database-username* begins with a `+` character, then the operating system user can login as any user belonging to that role, similarly to how user names beginning with `+` are treated in `pg_hba.conf`. Thus, a `+` mark means “match any of the roles that are directly or indirectly members of this role”, while a name without a `+` mark matches only that specific role. Quoting a username starting with a `+` makes the `+` lose its special meaning.

If the *system-username* field starts with a slash (`/`), the remainder of the field is treated as a regular expression. (See Section 9.7.3.1 for details of PostgreSQL's regular expression syntax.) The regular expression can include a single capture, or parenthesized subexpression, which can then be referenced in the *database-username* field as `\1` (backslash-one). This allows the mapping of multiple user names in a single line, which is particularly useful for simple syntax substitutions. For example, these entries

```
mymap    /^(.*)@mydomain\.com$      \1
mymap    /^(.*)@otherdomain\.com$   guest
```

will remove the domain part for users with system user names that end with `@mydomain.com`, and allow any user whose system name ends with `@otherdomain.com` to log in as `guest`. Quoting a *database-username* containing `\1` *does not* make `\1` lose its special meaning.

If the *database-username* field starts with a slash (`/`), the remainder of the field is treated as a regular expression (see Section 9.7.3.1 for details of PostgreSQL's regular expression syntax). It is not possible to use `\1` to use a capture from regular expression on *system-username* for a regular expression on *database-username*.

### Tip

Keep in mind that by default, a regular expression can match just part of a string. It's usually wise to use `^` and `$`, as shown in the above example, to force the match to be to the entire system user name.

The `pg_ident.conf` file is read on start-up and when the main server process receives a `SIGHUP` signal. If you edit the file on an active system, you will need to signal the postmaster (using `pg_ctl reload`, calling the SQL function `pg_reload_conf()`, or using `kill -HUP`) to make it re-read the file.

The system view `pg_ident_file_mappings` can be helpful for pre-testing changes to the `pg_ident.conf` file, or for diagnosing problems if loading of the file did not have the desired effects. Rows in the view with non-null `error` fields indicate problems in the corresponding lines of the file.

A `pg_ident.conf` file that could be used in conjunction with the `pg_hba.conf` file in Example 21.1 is shown in Example 21.2. In this example, anyone logged in to a machine on the 192.168 network that does not have the operating system user name `bryanh`, `ann`, or `robert` would not be granted access. Unix user `robert` would only be allowed access when he tries to connect as Post-

greSQL user `bob`, not as `robert` or anyone else. `ann` would only be allowed to connect as `ann`. User `bryanh` would be allowed to connect as either `bryanh` or as `guest1`.

### Example 21.2. An Example `pg_ident.conf` File

```
# MAPNAME          SYSTEM-USERNAME      PG-USERNAME

omicron            bryanh                bryanh
omicron            ann                  ann
# bob has user name robert on these machines
omicron            robert                bob
# bryanh can also connect as guest1
omicron            bryanh                guest1
```

## 21.3. Authentication Methods

PostgreSQL provides various methods for authenticating users:

- Trust authentication, which simply trusts that users are who they say they are.
- Password authentication, which requires that users send a password.
- GSSAPI authentication, which relies on a GSSAPI-compatible security library. Typically this is used to access an authentication server such as a Kerberos or Microsoft Active Directory server.
- SSPI authentication, which uses a Windows-specific protocol similar to GSSAPI.
- Ident authentication, which relies on an “Identification Protocol” (RFC 1413<sup>2</sup>) service on the client's machine. (On local Unix-socket connections, this is treated as peer authentication.)
- Peer authentication, which relies on operating system facilities to identify the process at the other end of a local connection. This is not supported for remote connections.
- LDAP authentication, which relies on an LDAP authentication server.
- RADIUS authentication, which relies on a RADIUS authentication server.
- Certificate authentication, which requires an SSL connection and authenticates users by checking the SSL certificate they send.
- PAM authentication, which relies on a PAM (Pluggable Authentication Modules) library.
- BSD authentication, which relies on the BSD Authentication framework (currently available only on OpenBSD).

Peer authentication is usually recommendable for local connections, though trust authentication might be sufficient in some circumstances. Password authentication is the easiest choice for remote connections. All the other options require some kind of external security infrastructure (usually an authentication server or a certificate authority for issuing SSL certificates), or are platform-specific.

The following sections describe each of these authentication methods in more detail.

## 21.4. Trust Authentication

When `trust` authentication is specified, PostgreSQL assumes that anyone who can connect to the server is authorized to access the database with whatever database user name they specify (even superuser names). Of course, restrictions made in the database and user columns still apply. This

---

<sup>2</sup> <https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc1413>

method should only be used when there is adequate operating-system-level protection on connections to the server.

`trust` authentication is appropriate and very convenient for local connections on a single-user workstation. It is usually *not* appropriate by itself on a multiuser machine. However, you might be able to use `trust` even on a multiuser machine, if you restrict access to the server's Unix-domain socket file using file-system permissions. To do this, set the `unix_socket_permissions` (and possibly `unix_socket_group`) configuration parameters as described in Section 20.3. Or you could set the `unix_socket_directories` configuration parameter to place the socket file in a suitably restricted directory.

Setting file-system permissions only helps for Unix-socket connections. Local TCP/IP connections are not restricted by file-system permissions. Therefore, if you want to use file-system permissions for local security, remove the `host ... 127.0.0.1 ...` line from `pg_hba.conf`, or change it to a non-`trust` authentication method.

`trust` authentication is only suitable for TCP/IP connections if you trust every user on every machine that is allowed to connect to the server by the `pg_hba.conf` lines that specify `trust`. It is seldom reasonable to use `trust` for any TCP/IP connections other than those from localhost (127.0.0.1).

## 21.5. Password Authentication

There are several password-based authentication methods. These methods operate similarly but differ in how the users' passwords are stored on the server and how the password provided by a client is sent across the connection.

### `scram-sha-256`

The method `scram-sha-256` performs SCRAM-SHA-256 authentication, as described in RFC 7677<sup>3</sup>. It is a challenge-response scheme that prevents password sniffing on untrusted connections and supports storing passwords on the server in a cryptographically hashed form that is thought to be secure.

This is the most secure of the currently provided methods, but it is not supported by older client libraries.

### `md5`

The method `md5` uses a custom less secure challenge-response mechanism. It prevents password sniffing and avoids storing passwords on the server in plain text but provides no protection if an attacker manages to steal the password hash from the server. Also, the MD5 hash algorithm is nowadays no longer considered secure against determined attacks.

The `md5` method cannot be used with the `db_user_namespace` feature.

To ease transition from the `md5` method to the newer SCRAM method, if `md5` is specified as a method in `pg_hba.conf` but the user's password on the server is encrypted for SCRAM (see below), then SCRAM-based authentication will automatically be chosen instead.

### `password`

The method `password` sends the password in clear-text and is therefore vulnerable to password “sniffing” attacks. It should always be avoided if possible. If the connection is protected by SSL encryption then `password` can be used safely, though. (Though SSL certificate authentication might be a better choice if one is depending on using SSL).

PostgreSQL database passwords are separate from operating system user passwords. The password for each database user is stored in the `pg_authid` system catalog. Passwords can be managed with the SQL commands `CREATE ROLE` and `ALTER ROLE`, e.g., **`CREATE ROLE foo WITH LOGIN`**

---

<sup>3</sup> <https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc7677>

**PASSWORD** `'secret'`, or the `psql` command `\password`. If no password has been set up for a user, the stored password is null and password authentication will always fail for that user.

The availability of the different password-based authentication methods depends on how a user's password on the server is encrypted (or hashed, more accurately). This is controlled by the configuration parameter `password_encryption` at the time the password is set. If a password was encrypted using the `scram-sha-256` setting, then it can be used for the authentication methods `scram-sha-256` and `password` (but password transmission will be in plain text in the latter case). The authentication method specification `md5` will automatically switch to using the `scram-sha-256` method in this case, as explained above, so it will also work. If a password was encrypted using the `md5` setting, then it can be used only for the `md5` and `password` authentication method specifications (again, with the password transmitted in plain text in the latter case). (Previous PostgreSQL releases supported storing the password on the server in plain text. This is no longer possible.) To check the currently stored password hashes, see the system catalog `pg_authid`.

To upgrade an existing installation from `md5` to `scram-sha-256`, after having ensured that all client libraries in use are new enough to support SCRAM, set `password_encryption = 'scram-sha-256'` in `postgresql.conf`, make all users set new passwords, and change the authentication method specifications in `pg_hba.conf` to `scram-sha-256`.

## 21.6. GSSAPI Authentication

GSSAPI is an industry-standard protocol for secure authentication defined in RFC 2743<sup>4</sup>. PostgreSQL supports GSSAPI for authentication, communications encryption, or both. GSSAPI provides automatic authentication (single sign-on) for systems that support it. The authentication itself is secure. If GSSAPI encryption or SSL encryption is used, the data sent along the database connection will be encrypted; otherwise, it will not.

GSSAPI support has to be enabled when PostgreSQL is built; see Chapter 17 for more information.

When GSSAPI uses Kerberos, it uses a standard service principal (authentication identity) name in the format `servicename/hostname@realm`. The principal name used by a particular installation is not encoded in the PostgreSQL server in any way; rather it is specified in the `keytab` file that the server reads to determine its identity. If multiple principals are listed in the `keytab` file, the server will accept any one of them. The server's realm name is the preferred realm specified in the Kerberos configuration file(s) accessible to the server.

When connecting, the client must know the principal name of the server it intends to connect to. The `servicename` part of the principal is ordinarily `postgres`, but another value can be selected via `libpq`'s `krbsrvname` connection parameter. The `hostname` part is the fully qualified host name that `libpq` is told to connect to. The realm name is the preferred realm specified in the Kerberos configuration file(s) accessible to the client.

The client will also have a principal name for its own identity (and it must have a valid ticket for this principal). To use GSSAPI for authentication, the client principal must be associated with a PostgreSQL database user name. The `pg_ident.conf` configuration file can be used to map principals to user names; for example, `pgusername@realm` could be mapped to just `pgusername`. Alternatively, you can use the full `username@realm` principal as the role name in PostgreSQL without any mapping.

PostgreSQL also supports mapping client principals to user names by just stripping the realm from the principal. This method is supported for backwards compatibility and is strongly discouraged as it is then impossible to distinguish different users with the same user name but coming from different realms. To enable this, set `include_realm` to 0. For simple single-realm installations, doing that combined with setting the `krb_realm` parameter (which checks that the principal's realm matches exactly what is in the `krb_realm` parameter) is still secure; but this is a less capable approach compared to specifying an explicit mapping in `pg_ident.conf`.

---

<sup>4</sup> <https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc2743>

The location of the server's keytab file is specified by the `krb_server_keyfile` configuration parameter. For security reasons, it is recommended to use a separate keytab just for the PostgreSQL server rather than allowing the server to read the system keytab file. Make sure that your server keytab file is readable (and preferably only readable, not writable) by the PostgreSQL server account. (See also Section 19.1.)

The keytab file is generated using the Kerberos software; see the Kerberos documentation for details. The following example shows doing this using the `kadmin` tool of MIT Kerberos:

```
kadmin% addprinc -randkey postgres/server.my.domain.org
kadmin% ktadd -k krb5.keytab postgres/server.my.domain.org
```

The following authentication options are supported for the GSSAPI authentication method:

`include_realm`

If set to 0, the realm name from the authenticated user principal is stripped off before being passed through the user name mapping (Section 21.2). This is discouraged and is primarily available for backwards compatibility, as it is not secure in multi-realm environments unless `krb_realm` is also used. It is recommended to leave `include_realm` set to the default (1) and to provide an explicit mapping in `pg_ident.conf` to convert principal names to PostgreSQL user names.

`map`

Allows mapping from client principals to database user names. See Section 21.2 for details. For a GSSAPI/Kerberos principal, such as `username@EXAMPLE.COM` (or, less commonly, `username/hostbased@EXAMPLE.COM`), the user name used for mapping is `username@EXAMPLE.COM` (or `username/hostbased@EXAMPLE.COM`, respectively), unless `include_realm` has been set to 0, in which case `username` (or `username/hostbased`) is what is seen as the system user name when mapping.

`krb_realm`

Sets the realm to match user principal names against. If this parameter is set, only users of that realm will be accepted. If it is not set, users of any realm can connect, subject to whatever user name mapping is done.

In addition to these settings, which can be different for different `pg_hba.conf` entries, there is the server-wide `krb_caseins_users` configuration parameter. If that is set to true, client principals are matched to user map entries case-insensitively. `krb_realm`, if set, is also matched case-insensitively.

## 21.7. SSPI Authentication

SSPI is a Windows technology for secure authentication with single sign-on. PostgreSQL will use SSPI in `negotiate` mode, which will use Kerberos when possible and automatically fall back to NTLM in other cases. SSPI and GSSAPI interoperate as clients and servers, e.g., an SSPI client can authenticate to an GSSAPI server. It is recommended to use SSPI on Windows clients and servers and GSSAPI on non-Windows platforms.

When using Kerberos authentication, SSPI works the same way GSSAPI does; see Section 21.6 for details.

The following configuration options are supported for SSPI:

`include_realm`

If set to 0, the realm name from the authenticated user principal is stripped off before being passed through the user name mapping (Section 21.2). This is discouraged and is primarily available for backwards compatibility, as it is not secure in multi-realm environments unless `krb_realm` is



also used. It is recommended to leave `include_realm` set to the default (1) and to provide an explicit mapping in `pg_ident.conf` to convert principal names to PostgreSQL user names.

#### `compat_realm`

If set to 1, the domain's SAM-compatible name (also known as the NetBIOS name) is used for the `include_realm` option. This is the default. If set to 0, the true realm name from the Kerberos user principal name is used.

Do not disable this option unless your server runs under a domain account (this includes virtual service accounts on a domain member system) and all clients authenticating through SSPI are also using domain accounts, or authentication will fail.

#### `upn_username`

If this option is enabled along with `compat_realm`, the user name from the Kerberos UPN is used for authentication. If it is disabled (the default), the SAM-compatible user name is used. By default, these two names are identical for new user accounts.

Note that `libpq` uses the SAM-compatible name if no explicit user name is specified. If you use `libpq` or a driver based on it, you should leave this option disabled or explicitly specify user name in the connection string.

#### `map`

Allows for mapping between system and database user names. See Section 21.2 for details. For an SSPI/Kerberos principal, such as `username@EXAMPLE.COM` (or, less commonly, `username/hostbased@EXAMPLE.COM`), the user name used for mapping is `username@EXAMPLE.COM` (or `username/hostbased@EXAMPLE.COM`, respectively), unless `include_realm` has been set to 0, in which case `username` (or `username/hostbased`) is what is seen as the system user name when mapping.

#### `krb_realm`

Sets the realm to match user principal names against. If this parameter is set, only users of that realm will be accepted. If it is not set, users of any realm can connect, subject to whatever user name mapping is done.

## 21.8. Ident Authentication

The ident authentication method works by obtaining the client's operating system user name from an ident server and using it as the allowed database user name (with an optional user name mapping). This is only supported on TCP/IP connections.

### Note

When `ident` is specified for a local (non-TCP/IP) connection, peer authentication (see Section 21.9) will be used instead.

The following configuration options are supported for `ident`:

#### `map`

Allows for mapping between system and database user names. See Section 21.2 for details.

The “Identification Protocol” is described in RFC 1413<sup>5</sup>. Virtually every Unix-like operating system ships with an ident server that listens on TCP port 113 by default. The basic functionality of an ident

---

<sup>5</sup> <https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc1413>

server is to answer questions like “What user initiated the connection that goes out of your port *X* and connects to my port *Y*?”. Since PostgreSQL knows both *X* and *Y* when a physical connection is established, it can interrogate the ident server on the host of the connecting client and can theoretically determine the operating system user for any given connection.

The drawback of this procedure is that it depends on the integrity of the client: if the client machine is untrusted or compromised, an attacker could run just about any program on port 113 and return any user name they choose. This authentication method is therefore only appropriate for closed networks where each client machine is under tight control and where the database and system administrators operate in close contact. In other words, you must trust the machine running the ident server. Heed the warning:

The Identification Protocol is not intended as an authorization or access control protocol.

—RFC 1413

Some ident servers have a nonstandard option that causes the returned user name to be encrypted, using a key that only the originating machine's administrator knows. This option *must not* be used when using the ident server with PostgreSQL, since PostgreSQL does not have any way to decrypt the returned string to determine the actual user name.

## 21.9. Peer Authentication

The peer authentication method works by obtaining the client's operating system user name from the kernel and using it as the allowed database user name (with optional user name mapping). This method is only supported on local connections.

The following configuration options are supported for peer:

`map`

Allows for mapping between system and database user names. See Section 21.2 for details.

Peer authentication is only available on operating systems providing the `getpeereid()` function, the `SO_PEERCREDS` socket parameter, or similar mechanisms. Currently that includes Linux, most flavors of BSD including macOS, and Solaris.

## 21.10. LDAP Authentication

This authentication method operates similarly to `password` except that it uses LDAP as the password verification method. LDAP is used only to validate the user name/password pairs. Therefore the user must already exist in the database before LDAP can be used for authentication.

LDAP authentication can operate in two modes. In the first mode, which we will call the simple bind mode, the server will bind to the distinguished name constructed as *prefix* *username* *suffix*. Typically, the *prefix* parameter is used to specify `cn=`, or `DOMAIN\` in an Active Directory environment. *suffix* is used to specify the remaining part of the DN in a non-Active Directory environment.

In the second mode, which we will call the search+bind mode, the server first binds to the LDAP directory with a fixed user name and password, specified with `ldapbinddn` and `ldapbindpasswd`, and performs a search for the user trying to log in to the database. If no user and password is configured, an anonymous bind will be attempted to the directory. The search will be performed over the subtree at `ldapbasedn`, and will try to do an exact match of the attribute specified in `ldapsearchattribute`. Once the user has been found in this search, the server disconnects and re-binds to the directory as this user, using the password specified by the client, to verify that the login is correct. This mode is the same as that used by LDAP authentication schemes in other software, such as Apache `mod_authnz_ldap` and `pam_ldap`. This method allows for significantly more flexibility in where

the user objects are located in the directory, but will cause two separate connections to the LDAP server to be made.

The following configuration options are used in both modes:

`ldapservers`

Names or IP addresses of LDAP servers to connect to. Multiple servers may be specified, separated by spaces.

`ldapport`

Port number on LDAP server to connect to. If no port is specified, the LDAP library's default port setting will be used.

`ldapscheme`

Set to `ldaps` to use LDAPS. This is a non-standard way of using LDAP over SSL, supported by some LDAP server implementations. See also the `ldaptls` option for an alternative.

`ldaptls`

Set to 1 to make the connection between PostgreSQL and the LDAP server use TLS encryption. This uses the `StartTLS` operation per RFC 4513<sup>6</sup>. See also the `ldapscheme` option for an alternative.

Note that using `ldapscheme` or `ldaptls` only encrypts the traffic between the PostgreSQL server and the LDAP server. The connection between the PostgreSQL server and the PostgreSQL client will still be unencrypted unless SSL is used there as well.

The following options are used in simple bind mode only:

`ldapprefix`

String to prepend to the user name when forming the DN to bind as, when doing simple bind authentication.

`ldapsuffix`

String to append to the user name when forming the DN to bind as, when doing simple bind authentication.

The following options are used in search+bind mode only:

`ldapbasedn`

Root DN to begin the search for the user in, when doing search+bind authentication.

`ldapbinddn`

DN of user to bind to the directory with to perform the search when doing search+bind authentication.

`ldapbindpasswd`

Password for user to bind to the directory with to perform the search when doing search+bind authentication.

`ldapsearchattribute`

Attribute to match against the user name in the search when doing search+bind authentication. If no attribute is specified, the `uid` attribute will be used.

---

<sup>6</sup> <https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc4513>

### ldapsearchfilter

The search filter to use when doing search+bind authentication. Occurrences of `$username` will be replaced with the user name. This allows for more flexible search filters than `ldapsearchattribute`.

### ldapurl

An RFC 4516<sup>7</sup> LDAP URL. This is an alternative way to write some of the other LDAP options in a more compact and standard form. The format is

```
ldap[s]://host[:port]/basedn[?[attribute][?[scope][?[filter]]]]
```

*scope* must be one of `base`, `one`, `sub`, typically the last. (The default is `base`, which is normally not useful in this application.) *attribute* can nominate a single attribute, in which case it is used as a value for `ldapsearchattribute`. If *attribute* is empty then *filter* can be used as a value for `ldapsearchfilter`.

The URL scheme `ldaps` chooses the LDAPS method for making LDAP connections over SSL, equivalent to using `ldapscheme=ldaps`. To use encrypted LDAP connections using the StartTLS operation, use the normal URL scheme `ldap` and specify the `ldaptls` option in addition to `ldapurl`.

For non-anonymous binds, `ldapbinddn` and `ldapbindpasswd` must be specified as separate options.

LDAP URLs are currently only supported with OpenLDAP, not on Windows.

It is an error to mix configuration options for simple bind with options for search+bind.

When using search+bind mode, the search can be performed using a single attribute specified with `ldapsearchattribute`, or using a custom search filter specified with `ldapsearchfilter`. Specifying `ldapsearchattribute=foo` is equivalent to specifying `ldapsearchfilter="(foo=$username)"`. If neither option is specified the default is `ldapsearchattribute=uid`.

If PostgreSQL was compiled with OpenLDAP as the LDAP client library, the `ldapserver` setting may be omitted. In that case, a list of host names and ports is looked up via RFC 2782<sup>8</sup> DNS SRV records. The name `_ldap._tcp.DOMAIN` is looked up, where `DOMAIN` is extracted from `ldap-basedn`.

Here is an example for a simple-bind LDAP configuration:

```
host ... ldap ldapserver=ldap.example.net ldapprefix="cn="
      ldapsuffix=", dc=example, dc=net"
```

When a connection to the database server as database user `someuser` is requested, PostgreSQL will attempt to bind to the LDAP server using the DN `cn=someuser, dc=example, dc=net` and the password provided by the client. If that connection succeeds, the database access is granted.

Here is an example for a search+bind configuration:

```
host ... ldap ldapserver=ldap.example.net ldapbasedn="dc=example,
      dc=net" ldapsearchattribute=uid
```

---

<sup>7</sup> <https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc4516>

<sup>8</sup> <https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc2782>

When a connection to the database server as database user `someuser` is requested, PostgreSQL will attempt to bind anonymously (since `ldapbinddn` was not specified) to the LDAP server, perform a search for `(uid=someuser)` under the specified base DN. If an entry is found, it will then attempt to bind using that found information and the password supplied by the client. If that second connection succeeds, the database access is granted.

Here is the same search+bind configuration written as a URL:

```
host ... ldap ldapurl="ldap://ldap.example.net/dc=example,dc=net?uid?sub"
```

Some other software that supports authentication against LDAP uses the same URL format, so it will be easier to share the configuration.

Here is an example for a search+bind configuration that uses `ldapsearchfilter` instead of `ldapsearchattribute` to allow authentication by user ID or email address:

```
host ... ldap ldapserver=ldap.example.net ldapbasedn="dc=example,dc=net" ldapsearchfilter="(|(uid=$username)(mail=$username))"
```

Here is an example for a search+bind configuration that uses DNS SRV discovery to find the host name(s) and port(s) for the LDAP service for the domain name `example.net`:

```
host ... ldap ldapbasedn="dc=example,dc=net"
```

### Tip

Since LDAP often uses commas and spaces to separate the different parts of a DN, it is often necessary to use double-quoted parameter values when configuring LDAP options, as shown in the examples.

## 21.11. RADIUS Authentication

This authentication method operates similarly to `password` except that it uses RADIUS as the password verification method. RADIUS is used only to validate the user name/password pairs. Therefore the user must already exist in the database before RADIUS can be used for authentication.

When using RADIUS authentication, an Access Request message will be sent to the configured RADIUS server. This request will be of type `Authenticate Only`, and include parameters for `user name`, `password` (encrypted) and `NAS Identifier`. The request will be encrypted using a secret shared with the server. The RADIUS server will respond to this request with either `Access Accept` or `Access Reject`. There is no support for RADIUS accounting.

Multiple RADIUS servers can be specified, in which case they will be tried sequentially. If a negative response is received from a server, the authentication will fail. If no response is received, the next server in the list will be tried. To specify multiple servers, separate the server names with commas and surround the list with double quotes. If multiple servers are specified, the other RADIUS options can also be given as comma-separated lists, to provide individual values for each server. They can also be specified as a single value, in which case that value will apply to all servers.

The following configuration options are supported for RADIUS:

`radiusservers`

The DNS names or IP addresses of the RADIUS servers to connect to. This parameter is required.

### `radiussecrets`

The shared secrets used when talking securely to the RADIUS servers. This must have exactly the same value on the PostgreSQL and RADIUS servers. It is recommended that this be a string of at least 16 characters. This parameter is required.

#### Note

The encryption vector used will only be cryptographically strong if PostgreSQL is built with support for OpenSSL. In other cases, the transmission to the RADIUS server should only be considered obfuscated, not secured, and external security measures should be applied if necessary.

### `radiusports`

The port numbers to connect to on the RADIUS servers. If no port is specified, the default RADIUS port (1812) will be used.

### `radiusidentifiers`

The strings to be used as `NAS Identifier` in the RADIUS requests. This parameter can be used, for example, to identify which database cluster the user is attempting to connect to, which can be useful for policy matching on the RADIUS server. If no identifier is specified, the default `postgresql` will be used.

If it is necessary to have a comma or whitespace in a RADIUS parameter value, that can be done by putting double quotes around the value, but it is tedious because two layers of double-quoting are now required. An example of putting whitespace into RADIUS secret strings is:

```
host ... radius radiusservers="server1,server2"
      radiussecrets="\"secret one\", \"secret two\""
```

## 21.12. Certificate Authentication

This authentication method uses SSL client certificates to perform authentication. It is therefore only available for SSL connections; see Section 19.9.2 for SSL configuration instructions. When using this authentication method, the server will require that the client provide a valid, trusted certificate. No password prompt will be sent to the client. The `cn` (Common Name) attribute of the certificate will be compared to the requested database user name, and if they match the login will be allowed. User name mapping can be used to allow `cn` to be different from the database user name.

The following configuration options are supported for SSL certificate authentication:

### `map`

Allows for mapping between system and database user names. See Section 21.2 for details.

It is redundant to use the `clientcert` option with `cert` authentication because `cert` authentication is effectively `trust` authentication with `clientcert=verify-full`.

## 21.13. PAM Authentication

This authentication method operates similarly to `password` except that it uses PAM (Pluggable Authentication Modules) as the authentication mechanism. The default PAM service name is `postgresql`. PAM is used only to validate user name/password pairs and optionally the connected remote

host name or IP address. Therefore the user must already exist in the database before PAM can be used for authentication. For more information about PAM, please read the [Linux-PAM Page](#)<sup>9</sup>.

The following configuration options are supported for PAM:

`pamservice`

PAM service name.

`pam_use_hostname`

Determines whether the remote IP address or the host name is provided to PAM modules through the `PAM_RHOST` item. By default, the IP address is used. Set this option to 1 to use the resolved host name instead. Host name resolution can lead to login delays. (Most PAM configurations don't use this information, so it is only necessary to consider this setting if a PAM configuration was specifically created to make use of it.)

### Note

If PAM is set up to read `/etc/shadow`, authentication will fail because the PostgreSQL server is started by a non-root user. However, this is not an issue when PAM is configured to use LDAP or other authentication methods.

## 21.14. BSD Authentication

This authentication method operates similarly to `password` except that it uses BSD Authentication to verify the password. BSD Authentication is used only to validate user name/password pairs. Therefore the user's role must already exist in the database before BSD Authentication can be used for authentication. The BSD Authentication framework is currently only available on OpenBSD.

BSD Authentication in PostgreSQL uses the `auth-postgresql` login type and authenticates with the `postgresql` login class if that's defined in `login.conf`. By default that login class does not exist, and PostgreSQL will use the default login class.

### Note

To use BSD Authentication, the PostgreSQL user account (that is, the operating system user running the server) must first be added to the `auth` group. The `auth` group exists by default on OpenBSD systems.

## 21.15. Authentication Problems

Authentication failures and related problems generally manifest themselves through error messages like the following:

```
FATAL: no pg_hba.conf entry for host "123.123.123.123", user
      "andym", database "testdb"
```

This is what you are most likely to get if you succeed in contacting the server, but it does not want to talk to you. As the message suggests, the server refused the connection request because it found no matching entry in its `pg_hba.conf` configuration file.

---

<sup>9</sup> <https://www.kernel.org/pub/linux/libs/pam/>

```
FATAL: password authentication failed for user "andym"
```

Messages like this indicate that you contacted the server, and it is willing to talk to you, but not until you pass the authorization method specified in the `pg_hba.conf` file. Check the password you are providing, or check your Kerberos or ident software if the complaint mentions one of those authentication types.

```
FATAL: user "andym" does not exist
```

The indicated database user name was not found.

```
FATAL: database "testdb" does not exist
```

The database you are trying to connect to does not exist. Note that if you do not specify a database name, it defaults to the database user name.

### Tip

The server log might contain more information about an authentication failure than is reported to the client. If you are confused about the reason for a failure, check the server log.



---

# Chapter 22. Database Roles

PostgreSQL manages database access permissions using the concept of *roles*. A role can be thought of as either a database user, or a group of database users, depending on how the role is set up. Roles can own database objects (for example, tables and functions) and can assign privileges on those objects to other roles to control who has access to which objects. Furthermore, it is possible to grant *membership* in a role to another role, thus allowing the member role to use privileges assigned to another role.

The concept of roles subsumes the concepts of “users” and “groups”. In PostgreSQL versions before 8.1, users and groups were distinct kinds of entities, but now there are only roles. Any role can act as a user, a group, or both.

This chapter describes how to create and manage roles. More information about the effects of role privileges on various database objects can be found in Section 5.7.

## 22.1. Database Roles

Database roles are conceptually completely separate from operating system users. In practice it might be convenient to maintain a correspondence, but this is not required. Database roles are global across a database cluster installation (and not per individual database). To create a role use the `CREATE ROLE` SQL command:

```
CREATE ROLE name ;
```

*name* follows the rules for SQL identifiers: either unadorned without special characters, or double-quoted. (In practice, you will usually want to add additional options, such as `LOGIN`, to the command. More details appear below.) To remove an existing role, use the analogous `DROP ROLE` command:

```
DROP ROLE name ;
```

For convenience, the programs `createuser` and `dropuser` are provided as wrappers around these SQL commands that can be called from the shell command line:

```
createuser name  
dropuser name
```

To determine the set of existing roles, examine the `pg_roles` system catalog, for example:

```
SELECT rolname FROM pg_roles;
```

or to see just those capable of logging in:

```
SELECT rolname FROM pg_roles WHERE rolcanlogin;
```

The `psql` program's `\du` meta-command is also useful for listing the existing roles.

In order to bootstrap the database system, a freshly initialized system always contains one predefined login-capable role. This role is always a “superuser”, and it will have the same name as the operating system user that initialized the database cluster with `initdb` unless a different name is specified. This role is often named `postgres`. In order to create more roles you first have to connect as this initial role.

Every connection to the database server is made using the name of some particular role, and this role determines the initial access privileges for commands issued in that connection. The role name to use for a particular database connection is indicated by the client that is initiating the connection request in an application-specific fashion. For example, the `psql` program uses the `-U` command line option to indicate the role to connect as. Many applications assume the name of the current operating system user by default (including `createuser` and `psql`). Therefore it is often convenient to maintain a naming correspondence between roles and operating system users.

The set of database roles a given client connection can connect as is determined by the client authentication setup, as explained in Chapter 21. (Thus, a client is not limited to connect as the role matching its operating system user, just as a person's login name need not match his or her real name.) Since the role identity determines the set of privileges available to a connected client, it is important to carefully configure privileges when setting up a multiuser environment.

## 22.2. Role Attributes

A database role can have a number of attributes that define its privileges and interact with the client authentication system.

### login privilege

Only roles that have the `LOGIN` attribute can be used as the initial role name for a database connection. A role with the `LOGIN` attribute can be considered the same as a “database user”. To create a role with login privilege, use either:

```
CREATE ROLE name LOGIN;  
CREATE USER name ;
```

(`CREATE USER` is equivalent to `CREATE ROLE` except that `CREATE USER` includes `LOGIN` by default, while `CREATE ROLE` does not.)

### superuser status

A database superuser bypasses all permission checks, except the right to log in. This is a dangerous privilege and should not be used carelessly; it is best to do most of your work as a role that is not a superuser. To create a new database superuser, use `CREATE ROLE name SUPERUSER`. You must do this as a role that is already a superuser.

### database creation

A role must be explicitly given permission to create databases (except for superusers, since those bypass all permission checks). To create such a role, use `CREATE ROLE name CREATEDB`.

### role creation

A role must be explicitly given permission to create more roles (except for superusers, since those bypass all permission checks). To create such a role, use `CREATE ROLE name CREATEROLE`. A role with `CREATEROLE` privilege can alter and drop roles which have been granted to the `CREATEROLE` user with the `ADMIN` option. Such a grant occurs automatically when a `CREATEROLE` user that is not a superuser creates a new role, so that by default, a `CREATEROLE` user can alter and drop the roles which they have created. Altering a role includes most changes that can be made using `ALTER ROLE`, including, for example, changing passwords. It also includes modifications to a role that can be made using the `COMMENT` and `SECURITY LABEL` commands.

However, `CREATEROLE` does not convey the ability to create `SUPERUSER` roles, nor does it convey any power over `SUPERUSER` roles that already exist. Furthermore, `CREATEROLE` does not convey the power to create `REPLICATION` users, nor the ability to grant or revoke the `REPLICATION` privilege, nor the ability to modify the role properties of such users. However, it

does allow `ALTER ROLE ... SET` and `ALTER ROLE ... RENAME` to be used on `REPLICATION` roles, as well as the use of `COMMENT ON ROLE`, `SECURITY LABEL ON ROLE`, and `DROP ROLE`. Finally, `CREATEROLE` does not confer the ability to grant or revoke the `BYPASSRLS` privilege.

#### initiating replication

A role must explicitly be given permission to initiate streaming replication (except for superusers, since those bypass all permission checks). A role used for streaming replication must have `LOGIN` permission as well. To create such a role, use `CREATE ROLE name REPLICATION LOGIN`.

#### password

A password is only significant if the client authentication method requires the user to supply a password when connecting to the database. The `password` and `md5` authentication methods make use of passwords. Database passwords are separate from operating system passwords. Specify a password upon role creation with `CREATE ROLE name PASSWORD 'string'`.

#### inheritance of privileges

A role inherits the privileges of roles it is a member of, by default. However, to create a role which does not inherit privileges by default, use `CREATE ROLE name NOINHERIT`. Alternatively, inheritance can be overridden for individual grants by using `WITH INHERIT TRUE` or `WITH INHERIT FALSE`.

#### bypassing row-level security

A role must be explicitly given permission to bypass every row-level security (RLS) policy (except for superusers, since those bypass all permission checks). To create such a role, use `CREATE ROLE name BYPASSRLS` as a superuser.

#### connection limit

Connection limit can specify how many concurrent connections a role can make. `-1` (the default) means no limit. Specify connection limit upon role creation with `CREATE ROLE name CONNECTION LIMIT 'integer'`.

A role's attributes can be modified after creation with `ALTER ROLE`. See the reference pages for the `CREATE ROLE` and `ALTER ROLE` commands for details.

A role can also have role-specific defaults for many of the run-time configuration settings described in Chapter 20. For example, if for some reason you want to disable index scans (hint: not a good idea) anytime you connect, you can use:

```
ALTER ROLE myname SET enable_indexscan TO off;
```

This will save the setting (but not set it immediately). In subsequent connections by this role it will appear as though `SET enable_indexscan TO off` had been executed just before the session started. You can still alter this setting during the session; it will only be the default. To remove a role-specific default setting, use `ALTER ROLE rolename RESET varname`. Note that role-specific defaults attached to roles without `LOGIN` privilege are fairly useless, since they will never be invoked.

When a non-superuser creates a role using the `CREATEROLE` privilege, the created role is automatically granted back to the creating user, just as if the bootstrap superuser had executed the command `GRANT created_user TO creating_user WITH ADMIN TRUE, SET FALSE, INHERIT FALSE`. Since a `CREATEROLE` user can only exercise special privileges with regard to an existing role if they have `ADMIN OPTION` on it, this grant is just sufficient to allow a `CREATEROLE` user to administer the roles they created. However, because it is created with `INHERIT FALSE, SET FALSE`, the `CREATEROLE` user doesn't inherit the privileges of the created role, nor can it access

the privileges of that role using `SET ROLE`. However, since any user who has `ADMIN OPTION` on a role can grant membership in that role to any other user, the `CREATEROLE` user can gain access to the created role by simply granting that role back to themselves with the `INHERIT` and/or `SET` options. Thus, the fact that privileges are not inherited by default nor is `SET ROLE` granted by default is a safeguard against accidents, not a security feature. Also note that, because this automatic grant is granted by the bootstrap user, it cannot be removed or changed by the `CREATEROLE` user; however, any superuser could revoke it, modify it, and/or issue additional such grants to other `CREATEROLE` users. Whichever `CREATEROLE` users have `ADMIN OPTION` on a role at any given time can administer it.

## 22.3. Role Membership

It is frequently convenient to group users together to ease management of privileges: that way, privileges can be granted to, or revoked from, a group as a whole. In PostgreSQL this is done by creating a role that represents the group, and then granting *membership* in the group role to individual user roles.

To set up a group role, first create the role:

```
CREATE ROLE name;
```

Typically a role being used as a group would not have the `LOGIN` attribute, though you can set it if you wish.

Once the group role exists, you can add and remove members using the `GRANT` and `REVOKE` commands:

```
GRANT group_role TO role1, ... ;
REVOKE group_role FROM role1, ... ;
```

You can grant membership to other group roles, too (since there isn't really any distinction between group roles and non-group roles). The database will not let you set up circular membership loops. Also, it is not permitted to grant membership in a role to `PUBLIC`.

The members of a group role can use the privileges of the role in two ways. First, member roles that have been granted membership with the `SET` option can do `SET ROLE` to temporarily “become” the group role. In this state, the database session has access to the privileges of the group role rather than the original login role, and any database objects created are considered owned by the group role not the login role. Second, member roles that have been granted membership with the `INHERIT` option automatically have use of the privileges of those directly or indirectly a member of, though the chain stops at memberships lacking the `inherit` option. As an example, suppose we have done:

```
CREATE ROLE joe LOGIN;
CREATE ROLE admin;
CREATE ROLE wheel;
CREATE ROLE island;
GRANT admin TO joe WITH INHERIT TRUE;
GRANT wheel TO admin WITH INHERIT FALSE;
GRANT island TO joe WITH INHERIT TRUE, SET FALSE;
```

Immediately after connecting as role `joe`, a database session will have use of privileges granted directly to `joe` plus any privileges granted to `admin` and `island`, because `joe` “inherits” those privileges. However, privileges granted to `wheel` are not available, because even though `joe` is indirectly a member of `wheel`, the membership is via `admin` which was granted using `WITH INHERIT FALSE`. After:

```
SET ROLE admin;
```

the session would have use of only those privileges granted to `admin`, and not those granted to `joe` or `island`. After:

```
SET ROLE wheel;
```

the session would have use of only those privileges granted to `wheel`, and not those granted to either `joe` or `admin`. The original privilege state can be restored with any of:

```
SET ROLE joe;  
SET ROLE NONE;  
RESET ROLE;
```

### Note

The `SET ROLE` command always allows selecting any role that the original login role is directly or indirectly a member of, provided that there is a chain of membership grants each of which has `SET TRUE` (which is the default). Thus, in the above example, it is not necessary to become `admin` before becoming `wheel`. On the other hand, it is not possible to become `island` at all; `joe` can only access those privileges via inheritance.

### Note

In the SQL standard, there is a clear distinction between users and roles, and users do not automatically inherit privileges while roles do. This behavior can be obtained in PostgreSQL by giving roles being used as SQL roles the `INHERIT` attribute, while giving roles being used as SQL users the `NOINHERIT` attribute. However, PostgreSQL defaults to giving all roles the `INHERIT` attribute, for backward compatibility with pre-8.1 releases in which users always had use of permissions granted to groups they were members of.

The role attributes `LOGIN`, `SUPERUSER`, `CREATEDB`, and `CREATEROLE` can be thought of as special privileges, but they are never inherited as ordinary privileges on database objects are. You must actually `SET ROLE` to a specific role having one of these attributes in order to make use of the attribute. Continuing the above example, we might choose to grant `CREATEDB` and `CREATEROLE` to the `admin` role. Then a session connecting as role `joe` would not have these privileges immediately, only after doing `SET ROLE admin`.

To destroy a group role, use `DROP ROLE`:

```
DROP ROLE name;
```

Any memberships in the group role are automatically revoked (but the member roles are not otherwise affected).

## 22.4. Dropping Roles

Because roles can own database objects and can hold privileges to access other objects, dropping a role is often not just a matter of a quick `DROP ROLE`. Any objects owned by the role must first be dropped or reassigned to other owners; and any permissions granted to the role must be revoked.

Ownership of objects can be transferred one at a time using `ALTER` commands, for example:

```
ALTER TABLE bobs_table OWNER TO alice;
```

Alternatively, the `REASSIGN OWNED` command can be used to reassign ownership of all objects owned by the role-to-be-dropped to a single other role. Because `REASSIGN OWNED` cannot access objects in other databases, it is necessary to run it in each database that contains objects owned by the role. (Note that the first such `REASSIGN OWNED` will change the ownership of any shared-across-databases objects, that is databases or tablespaces, that are owned by the role-to-be-dropped.)

Once any valuable objects have been transferred to new owners, any remaining objects owned by the role-to-be-dropped can be dropped with the `DROP OWNED` command. Again, this command cannot access objects in other databases, so it is necessary to run it in each database that contains objects owned by the role. Also, `DROP OWNED` will not drop entire databases or tablespaces, so it is necessary to do that manually if the role owns any databases or tablespaces that have not been transferred to new owners.

`DROP OWNED` also takes care of removing any privileges granted to the target role for objects that do not belong to it. Because `REASSIGN OWNED` does not touch such objects, it's typically necessary to run both `REASSIGN OWNED` and `DROP OWNED` (in that order!) to fully remove the dependencies of a role to be dropped.

In short then, the most general recipe for removing a role that has been used to own objects is:

```
REASSIGN OWNED BY doomed_role TO successor_role;
DROP OWNED BY doomed_role;
-- repeat the above commands in each database of the cluster
DROP ROLE doomed_role;
```

When not all owned objects are to be transferred to the same successor owner, it's best to handle the exceptions manually and then perform the above steps to mop up.

If `DROP ROLE` is attempted while dependent objects still remain, it will issue messages identifying which objects need to be reassigned or dropped.

## 22.5. Predefined Roles

PostgreSQL provides a set of predefined roles that provide access to certain, commonly needed, privileged capabilities and information. Administrators (including roles that have the `CREATEROLE` privilege) can `GRANT` these roles to users and/or other roles in their environment, providing those users with access to the specified capabilities and information.

The predefined roles are described in Table 22.1. Note that the specific permissions for each of the roles may change in the future as additional capabilities are added. Administrators should monitor the release notes for changes.

**Table 22.1. Predefined Roles**

Role	Allowed Access
<code>pg_read_all_data</code>	Read all data (tables, views, sequences), as if having <code>SELECT</code> rights on those objects, and <code>USAGE</code> rights on all schemas, even without having it explicitly. This role does not have the role attribute <code>BYPASSRLS</code> set. If RLS is being used, an administrator may wish to set <code>BYPASSRLS</code> on roles which this role is <code>GRANTED</code> to.
<code>pg_write_all_data</code>	Write all data (tables, views, sequences), as if having <code>INSERT</code> , <code>UPDATE</code> , and <code>DELETE</code> rights on those objects, and <code>USAGE</code> rights on all schemas, even without having it explicitly. This role

Role	Allowed Access
	does not have the role attribute <code>BYPASSRLS</code> set. If RLS is being used, an administrator may wish to set <code>BYPASSRLS</code> on roles which this role is GRANTED to.
<code>pg_read_all_settings</code>	Read all configuration variables, even those normally visible only to superusers.
<code>pg_read_all_stats</code>	Read all <code>pg_stat_*</code> views and use various statistics related extensions, even those normally visible only to superusers.
<code>pg_stat_scan_tables</code>	Execute monitoring functions that may take <code>ACCESS SHARE</code> locks on tables, potentially for a long time.
<code>pg_monitor</code>	Read/execute various monitoring views and functions. This role is a member of <code>pg_read_all_settings</code> , <code>pg_read_all_stats</code> and <code>pg_stat_scan_tables</code> .
<code>pg_database_owner</code>	None. Membership consists, implicitly, of the current database owner.
<code>pg_signal_backend</code>	Signal another backend to cancel a query or terminate its session.
<code>pg_read_server_files</code>	Allow reading files from any location the database can access on the server with <code>COPY</code> and other file-access functions.
<code>pg_write_server_files</code>	Allow writing to files in any location the database can access on the server with <code>COPY</code> and other file-access functions.
<code>pg_execute_server_program</code>	Allow executing programs on the database server as the user the database runs as with <code>COPY</code> and other functions which allow executing a server-side program.
<code>pg_checkpoint</code>	Allow executing the <code>CHECKPOINT</code> command.
<code>pg_use_reserved_connections</code>	Allow use of connection slots reserved via <code>reserved_connections</code> .
<code>pg_create_subscription</code>	Allow users with <code>CREATE</code> permission on the database to issue <code>CREATE SUBSCRIPTION</code> .

The `pg_monitor`, `pg_read_all_settings`, `pg_read_all_stats` and `pg_stat_scan_tables` roles are intended to allow administrators to easily configure a role for the purpose of monitoring the database server. They grant a set of common privileges allowing the role to read various useful configuration settings, statistics and other system information normally restricted to superusers.

The `pg_database_owner` role has one implicit, situation-dependent member, namely the owner of the current database. Like any role, it can own objects or receive grants of access privileges. Consequently, once `pg_database_owner` has rights within a template database, each owner of a database instantiated from that template will exercise those rights. `pg_database_owner` cannot be a member of any role, and it cannot have non-implicit members. Initially, this role owns the `public` schema, so each database owner governs local use of the schema.

The `pg_signal_backend` role is intended to allow administrators to enable trusted, but non-superuser, roles to send signals to other backends. Currently this role enables sending of signals for canceling a query on another backend or terminating its session. A user granted this role cannot however send signals to a backend owned by a superuser. See Section 9.27.2.

The `pg_read_server_files`, `pg_write_server_files` and `pg_execute_server_program` roles are intended to allow administrators to have trusted, but non-superuser, roles which are able to access files and run programs on the database server as the user the database runs as. As these roles are able to access any file on the server file system, they bypass all database-level permission checks when accessing files directly and they could be used to gain superuser-level access, therefore great care should be taken when granting these roles to users.

Care should be taken when granting these roles to ensure they are only used where needed and with the understanding that these roles grant access to privileged information.

Administrators can grant access to these roles to users using the GRANT command, for example:

```
GRANT pg_signal_backend TO admin_user;
```

## 22.6. Function Security

Functions, triggers and row-level security policies allow users to insert code into the backend server that other users might execute unintentionally. Hence, these mechanisms permit users to “Trojan horse” others with relative ease. The strongest protection is tight control over who can define objects. Where that is infeasible, write queries referring only to objects having trusted owners. Remove from `search_path` any schemas that permit untrusted users to create objects.

Functions run inside the backend server process with the operating system permissions of the database server daemon. If the programming language used for the function allows unchecked memory accesses, it is possible to change the server's internal data structures. Hence, among many other things, such functions can circumvent any system access controls. Function languages that allow such access are considered “untrusted”, and PostgreSQL allows only superusers to create functions written in those languages.



---

# Chapter 23. Managing Databases

Every instance of a running PostgreSQL server manages one or more databases. Databases are therefore the topmost hierarchical level for organizing SQL objects (“database objects”). This chapter describes the properties of databases, and how to create, manage, and destroy them.

## 23.1. Overview

A small number of objects, like role, database, and tablespace names, are defined at the cluster level and stored in the `pg_global` tablespace. Inside the cluster are multiple databases, which are isolated from each other but can access cluster-level objects. Inside each database are multiple schemas, which contain objects like tables and functions. So the full hierarchy is: cluster, database, schema, table (or some other kind of object, such as a function).

When connecting to the database server, a client must specify the database name in its connection request. It is not possible to access more than one database per connection. However, clients can open multiple connections to the same database, or different databases. Database-level security has two components: access control (see Section 21.1), managed at the connection level, and authorization control (see Section 5.7), managed via the grant system. Foreign data wrappers (see `postgres_fdw`) allow for objects within one database to act as proxies for objects in other database or clusters. The older `dblink` module (see `dblink`) provides a similar capability. By default, all users can connect to all databases using all connection methods.

If one PostgreSQL server cluster is planned to contain unrelated projects or users that should be, for the most part, unaware of each other, it is recommended to put them into separate databases and adjust authorizations and access controls accordingly. If the projects or users are interrelated, and thus should be able to use each other's resources, they should be put in the same database but probably into separate schemas; this provides a modular structure with namespace isolation and authorization control. More information about managing schemas is in Section 5.9.

While multiple databases can be created within a single cluster, it is advised to consider carefully whether the benefits outweigh the risks and limitations. In particular, the impact that having a shared WAL (see Chapter 30) has on backup and recovery options. While individual databases in the cluster are isolated when considered from the user's perspective, they are closely bound from the database administrator's point-of-view.

Databases are created with the `CREATE DATABASE` command (see Section 23.2) and destroyed with the `DROP DATABASE` command (see Section 23.5). To determine the set of existing databases, examine the `pg_database` system catalog, for example

```
SELECT datname FROM pg_database;
```

The `psql` program's `\l` meta-command and `-l` command-line option are also useful for listing the existing databases.

### Note

The SQL standard calls databases “catalogs”, but there is no difference in practice.

## 23.2. Creating a Database

In order to create a database, the PostgreSQL server must be up and running (see Section 19.3).

Databases are created with the SQL command `CREATE DATABASE`:

```
CREATE DATABASE name;
```

where *name* follows the usual rules for SQL identifiers. The current role automatically becomes the owner of the new database. It is the privilege of the owner of a database to remove it later (which also removes all the objects in it, even if they have a different owner).

The creation of databases is a restricted operation. See Section 22.2 for how to grant permission.

Since you need to be connected to the database server in order to execute the `CREATE DATABASE` command, the question remains how the *first* database at any given site can be created. The first database is always created by the `initdb` command when the data storage area is initialized. (See Section 19.2.) This database is called `postgres`. So to create the first “ordinary” database you can connect to `postgres`.

Two additional databases, `template1` and `template0`, are also created during database cluster initialization. Whenever a new database is created within the cluster, `template1` is essentially cloned. This means that any changes you make in `template1` are propagated to all subsequently created databases. Because of this, avoid creating objects in `template1` unless you want them propagated to every newly created database. `template0` is meant as a pristine copy of the original contents of `template1`. It can be cloned instead of `template1` when it is important to make a database without any such site-local additions. More details appear in Section 23.3.

As a convenience, there is a program you can execute from the shell to create new databases, `createdb`.

```
createdb dbname
```

`createdb` does no magic. It connects to the `postgres` database and issues the `CREATE DATABASE` command, exactly as described above. The `createdb` reference page contains the invocation details. Note that `createdb` without any arguments will create a database with the current user name.

### Note

Chapter 21 contains information about how to restrict who can connect to a given database.

Sometimes you want to create a database for someone else, and have them become the owner of the new database, so they can configure and manage it themselves. To achieve that, use one of the following commands:

```
CREATE DATABASE dbname OWNER rolename;
```

from the SQL environment, or:

```
createdb -O rolename dbname
```

from the shell. Only the superuser is allowed to create a database for someone else (that is, for a role you are not a member of).

## 23.3. Template Databases

`CREATE DATABASE` actually works by copying an existing database. By default, it copies the standard system database named `template1`. Thus that database is the “template” from which new data-

bases are made. If you add objects to `template1`, these objects will be copied into subsequently created user databases. This behavior allows site-local modifications to the standard set of objects in databases. For example, if you install the procedural language PL/Perl in `template1`, it will automatically be available in user databases without any extra action being taken when those databases are created.

However, `CREATE DATABASE` does not copy database-level `GRANT` permissions attached to the source database. The new database has default database-level permissions.

There is a second standard system database named `template0`. This database contains the same data as the initial contents of `template1`, that is, only the standard objects predefined by your version of PostgreSQL. `template0` should never be changed after the database cluster has been initialized. By instructing `CREATE DATABASE` to copy `template0` instead of `template1`, you can create a “pristine” user database (one where no user-defined objects exist and where the system objects have not been altered) that contains none of the site-local additions in `template1`. This is particularly handy when restoring a `pg_dump` dump: the dump script should be restored in a pristine database to ensure that one recreates the correct contents of the dumped database, without conflicting with objects that might have been added to `template1` later on.

Another common reason for copying `template0` instead of `template1` is that new encoding and locale settings can be specified when copying `template0`, whereas a copy of `template1` must use the same settings it does. This is because `template1` might contain encoding-specific or locale-specific data, while `template0` is known not to.

To create a database by copying `template0`, use:

```
CREATE DATABASE dbname TEMPLATE template0;
```

from the SQL environment, or:

```
createdb -T template0 dbname
```

from the shell.

It is possible to create additional template databases, and indeed one can copy any database in a cluster by specifying its name as the template for `CREATE DATABASE`. It is important to understand, however, that this is not (yet) intended as a general-purpose “`COPY DATABASE`” facility. The principal limitation is that no other sessions can be connected to the source database while it is being copied. `CREATE DATABASE` will fail if any other connection exists when it starts; during the copy operation, new connections to the source database are prevented.

Two useful flags exist in `pg_database` for each database: the columns `datistemplate` and `dataallowconn`. `datistemplate` can be set to indicate that a database is intended as a template for `CREATE DATABASE`. If this flag is set, the database can be cloned by any user with `CREATEDB` privileges; if it is not set, only superusers and the owner of the database can clone it. If `dataallowconn` is false, then no new connections to that database will be allowed (but existing sessions are not terminated simply by setting the flag false). The `template0` database is normally marked `dataallowconn = false` to prevent its modification. Both `template0` and `template1` should always be marked with `datistemplate = true`.

### Note

`template1` and `template0` do not have any special status beyond the fact that the name `template1` is the default source database name for `CREATE DATABASE`. For example, one could drop `template1` and recreate it from `template0` without any ill effects. This course of action might be advisable if one has carelessly added a bunch of junk in `template1`. (To delete `template1`, it must have `pg_database.datistemplate = false`.)

The `postgres` database is also created when a database cluster is initialized. This database is meant as a default database for users and applications to connect to. It is simply a copy of `template1` and can be dropped and recreated if necessary.

## 23.4. Database Configuration

Recall from Chapter 20 that the PostgreSQL server provides a large number of run-time configuration variables. You can set database-specific default values for many of these settings.

For example, if for some reason you want to disable the GEQO optimizer for a given database, you'd ordinarily have to either disable it for all databases or make sure that every connecting client is careful to issue `SET geqo TO off`. To make this setting the default within a particular database, you can execute the command:

```
ALTER DATABASE mydb SET geqo TO off;
```

This will save the setting (but not set it immediately). In subsequent connections to this database it will appear as though `SET geqo TO off` had been executed just before the session started. Note that users can still alter this setting during their sessions; it will only be the default. To undo any such setting, use `ALTER DATABASE dbname RESET varname`.

## 23.5. Destroying a Database

Databases are destroyed with the command `DROP DATABASE`:

```
DROP DATABASE name;
```

Only the owner of the database, or a superuser, can drop a database. Dropping a database removes all objects that were contained within the database. The destruction of a database cannot be undone.

You cannot execute the `DROP DATABASE` command while connected to the victim database. You can, however, be connected to any other database, including the `template1` database. `template1` would be the only option for dropping the last user database of a given cluster.

For convenience, there is also a shell program to drop databases, `dropdb`:

```
dropdb dbname
```

(Unlike `createdb`, it is not the default action to drop the database with the current user name.)

## 23.6. Tablespaces

Tablespaces in PostgreSQL allow database administrators to define locations in the file system where the files representing database objects can be stored. Once created, a tablespace can be referred to by name when creating database objects.

By using tablespaces, an administrator can control the disk layout of a PostgreSQL installation. This is useful in at least two ways. First, if the partition or volume on which the cluster was initialized runs out of space and cannot be extended, a tablespace can be created on a different partition and used until the system can be reconfigured.

Second, tablespaces allow an administrator to use knowledge of the usage pattern of database objects to optimize performance. For example, an index which is very heavily used can be placed on a very

fast, highly available disk, such as an expensive solid state device. At the same time a table storing archived data which is rarely used or not performance critical could be stored on a less expensive, slower disk system.

### Warning

Even though located outside the main PostgreSQL data directory, tablespaces are an integral part of the database cluster and *cannot* be treated as an autonomous collection of data files. They are dependent on metadata contained in the main data directory, and therefore cannot be attached to a different database cluster or backed up individually. Similarly, if you lose a tablespace (file deletion, disk failure, etc.), the database cluster might become unreadable or unable to start. Placing a tablespace on a temporary file system like a RAM disk risks the reliability of the entire cluster.

To define a tablespace, use the `CREATE TABLESPACE` command, for example::

```
CREATE TABLESPACE fastspace LOCATION '/ssdl/postgresql/data';
```

The location must be an existing, empty directory that is owned by the PostgreSQL operating system user. All objects subsequently created within the tablespace will be stored in files underneath this directory. The location must not be on removable or transient storage, as the cluster might fail to function if the tablespace is missing or lost.

### Note

There is usually not much point in making more than one tablespace per logical file system, since you cannot control the location of individual files within a logical file system. However, PostgreSQL does not enforce any such limitation, and indeed it is not directly aware of the file system boundaries on your system. It just stores files in the directories you tell it to use.

Creation of the tablespace itself must be done as a database superuser, but after that you can allow ordinary database users to use it. To do that, grant them the `CREATE` privilege on it.

Tables, indexes, and entire databases can be assigned to particular tablespaces. To do so, a user with the `CREATE` privilege on a given tablespace must pass the tablespace name as a parameter to the relevant command. For example, the following creates a table in the tablespace `space1`:

```
CREATE TABLE foo(i int) TABLESPACE space1;
```

Alternatively, use the `default_tablespace` parameter:

```
SET default_tablespace = space1;  
CREATE TABLE foo(i int);
```

When `default_tablespace` is set to anything but an empty string, it supplies an implicit `TABLESPACE` clause for `CREATE TABLE` and `CREATE INDEX` commands that do not have an explicit one.

There is also a `temp_tablespaces` parameter, which determines the placement of temporary tables and indexes, as well as temporary files that are used for purposes such as sorting large data sets. This can be a list of tablespace names, rather than only one, so that the load associated with temporary objects can be spread over multiple tablespaces. A random member of the list is picked each time a temporary object is to be created.

The tablespace associated with a database is used to store the system catalogs of that database. Furthermore, it is the default tablespace used for tables, indexes, and temporary files created within the database, if no `TABLESPACE` clause is given and no other selection is specified by `default_tablespace` or `temp_tablespaces` (as appropriate). If a database is created without specifying a tablespace for it, it uses the same tablespace as the template database it is copied from.

Two tablespaces are automatically created when the database cluster is initialized. The `pg_global` tablespace is used for shared system catalogs. The `pg_default` tablespace is the default tablespace of the `template1` and `template0` databases (and, therefore, will be the default tablespace for other databases as well, unless overridden by a `TABLESPACE` clause in `CREATE DATABASE`).

Once created, a tablespace can be used from any database, provided the requesting user has sufficient privilege. This means that a tablespace cannot be dropped until all objects in all databases using the tablespace have been removed.

To remove an empty tablespace, use the `DROP TABLESPACE` command.

To determine the set of existing tablespaces, examine the `pg_tablespace` system catalog, for example

```
SELECT spcname FROM pg_tablespace;
```

The `psql` program's `\db` meta-command is also useful for listing the existing tablespaces.

The directory `$PGDATA/pg_tblspc` contains symbolic links that point to each of the non-built-in tablespaces defined in the cluster. Although not recommended, it is possible to adjust the tablespace layout by hand by redefining these links. Under no circumstances perform this operation while the server is running. Note that in PostgreSQL 9.1 and earlier you will also need to update the `pg_tablespace` catalog with the new locations. (If you do not, `pg_dump` will continue to output the old tablespace locations.)

---

# Chapter 24. Localization

This chapter describes the available localization features from the point of view of the administrator. PostgreSQL supports two localization facilities:

- Using the locale features of the operating system to provide locale-specific collation order, number formatting, translated messages, and other aspects. This is covered in Section 24.1 and Section 24.2.
- Providing a number of different character sets to support storing text in all kinds of languages, and providing character set translation between client and server. This is covered in Section 24.3.

## 24.1. Locale Support

*Locale* support refers to an application respecting cultural preferences regarding alphabets, sorting, number formatting, etc. PostgreSQL uses the standard ISO C and POSIX locale facilities provided by the server operating system. For additional information refer to the documentation of your system.

### 24.1.1. Overview

Locale support is automatically initialized when a database cluster is created using `initdb`. `initdb` will initialize the database cluster with the locale setting of its execution environment by default, so if your system is already set to use the locale that you want in your database cluster then there is nothing else you need to do. If you want to use a different locale (or you are not sure which locale your system is set to), you can instruct `initdb` exactly which locale to use by specifying the `--locale` option. For example:

```
initdb --locale=sv_SE
```

This example for Unix systems sets the locale to Swedish (`sv`) as spoken in Sweden (`SE`). Other possibilities might include `en_US` (U.S. English) and `fr_CA` (French Canadian). If more than one character set can be used for a locale then the specifications can take the form *language\_territory.codeset*. For example, `fr_BE.UTF-8` represents the French language (`fr`) as spoken in Belgium (`BE`), with a UTF-8 character set encoding.

What locales are available on your system under what names depends on what was provided by the operating system vendor and what was installed. On most Unix systems, the command `locale -a` will provide a list of available locales. Windows uses more verbose locale names, such as `German_Germany` or `Swedish_Sweden.1252`, but the principles are the same.

Occasionally it is useful to mix rules from several locales, e.g., use English collation rules but Spanish messages. To support that, a set of locale subcategories exist that control only certain aspects of the localization rules:

LC_COLLATE	String sort order
LC_CTYPE	Character classification (What is a letter? Its upper-case equivalent?)
LC_MESSAGES	Language of messages
LC_MONETARY	Formatting of currency amounts
LC_NUMERIC	Formatting of numbers
LC_TIME	Formatting of dates and times

The category names translate into names of `initdb` options to override the locale choice for a specific category. For instance, to set the locale to French Canadian, but use U.S. rules for formatting currency, use `initdb --locale=fr_CA --lc-monetary=en_US`.

If you want the system to behave as if it had no locale support, use the special locale name `C`, or equivalently `POSIX`.

Some locale categories must have their values fixed when the database is created. You can use different settings for different databases, but once a database is created, you cannot change them for that database anymore. `LC_COLLATE` and `LC_CTYPE` are these categories. They affect the sort order of indexes, so they must be kept fixed, or indexes on text columns would become corrupt. (But you can alleviate this restriction using collations, as discussed in Section 24.2.) The default values for these categories are determined when `initdb` is run, and those values are used when new databases are created, unless specified otherwise in the `CREATE DATABASE` command.

The other locale categories can be changed whenever desired by setting the server configuration parameters that have the same name as the locale categories (see Section 20.11.2 for details). The values that are chosen by `initdb` are actually only written into the configuration file `postgresql.conf` to serve as defaults when the server is started. If you remove these assignments from `postgresql.conf` then the server will inherit the settings from its execution environment.

Note that the locale behavior of the server is determined by the environment variables seen by the server, not by the environment of any client. Therefore, be careful to configure the correct locale settings before starting the server. A consequence of this is that if client and server are set up in different locales, messages might appear in different languages depending on where they originated.

### Note

When we speak of inheriting the locale from the execution environment, this means the following on most operating systems: For a given locale category, say the collation, the following environment variables are consulted in this order until one is found to be set: `LC_ALL`, `LC_COLLATE` (or the variable corresponding to the respective category), `LANG`. If none of these environment variables are set then the locale defaults to `C`.

Some message localization libraries also look at the environment variable `LANGUAGE` which overrides all other locale settings for the purpose of setting the language of messages. If in doubt, please refer to the documentation of your operating system, in particular the documentation about `gettext`.

To enable messages to be translated to the user's preferred language, NLS must have been selected at build time (`configure --enable-nls`). All other locale support is built in automatically.

## 24.1.2. Behavior

The locale settings influence the following SQL features:

- Sort order in queries using `ORDER BY` or the standard comparison operators on textual data
- The `upper`, `lower`, and `initcap` functions
- Pattern matching operators (`LIKE`, `SIMILAR TO`, and POSIX-style regular expressions); locales affect both case insensitive matching and the classification of characters by character-class regular expressions
- The `to_char` family of functions
- The ability to use indexes with `LIKE` clauses

The drawback of using locales other than `C` or `POSIX` in PostgreSQL is its performance impact. It slows character handling and prevents ordinary indexes from being used by `LIKE`. For this reason use locales only if you actually need them.

As a workaround to allow PostgreSQL to use indexes with `LIKE` clauses under a non-`C` locale, several custom operator classes exist. These allow the creation of an index that performs a strict character-by-character comparison, ignoring locale comparison rules. Refer to Section 11.10 for more information. Another approach is to create indexes using the `C` collation, as discussed in Section 24.2.



## 24.1.3. Selecting Locales

Locales can be selected in different scopes depending on requirements. The above overview showed how locales are specified using `initdb` to set the defaults for the entire cluster. The following list shows where locales can be selected. Each item provides the defaults for the subsequent items, and each lower item allows overriding the defaults on a finer granularity.

1. As explained above, the environment of the operating system provides the defaults for the locales of a newly initialized database cluster. In many cases, this is enough: If the operating system is configured for the desired language/territory, then PostgreSQL will by default also behave according to that locale.
2. As shown above, command-line options for `initdb` specify the locale settings for a newly initialized database cluster. Use this if the operating system does not have the locale configuration you want for your database system.
3. A locale can be selected separately for each database. The SQL command `CREATE DATABASE` and its command-line equivalent `createdb` have options for that. Use this for example if a database cluster houses databases for multiple tenants with different requirements.
4. Locale settings can be made for individual table columns. This uses an SQL object called *collation* and is explained in Section 24.2. Use this for example to sort data in different languages or customize the sort order of a particular table.
5. Finally, locales can be selected for an individual query. Again, this uses SQL collation objects. This could be used to change the sort order based on run-time choices or for ad-hoc experimentation.

## 24.1.4. Locale Providers

PostgreSQL supports multiple *locale providers*. This specifies which library supplies the locale data. One standard provider name is `libc`, which uses the locales provided by the operating system C library. These are the locales used by most tools provided by the operating system. Another provider is `icu`, which uses the external ICU library. ICU locales can only be used if support for ICU was configured when PostgreSQL was built.

The commands and tools that select the locale settings, as described above, each have an option to select the locale provider. The examples shown earlier all use the `libc` provider, which is the default. Here is an example to initialize a database cluster using the ICU provider:

```
initdb --locale-provider=icu --icu-locale=en
```

See the description of the respective commands and programs for details. Note that you can mix locale providers at different granularities, for example use `libc` by default for the cluster but have one database that uses the `icu` provider, and then have collation objects using either provider within those databases.

Which locale provider to use depends on individual requirements. For most basic uses, either provider will give adequate results. For the `libc` provider, it depends on what the operating system offers; some operating systems are better than others. For advanced uses, ICU offers more locale variants and customization options.

## 24.1.5. ICU Locales

### 24.1.5.1. ICU Locale Names

The ICU format for the locale name is a Language Tag.

```
CREATE COLLATION mycollation1 (provider = icu, locale = 'ja-JP');
CREATE COLLATION mycollation2 (provider = icu, locale = 'fr');
```

### 24.1.5.2. Locale Canonicalization and Validation

When defining a new ICU collation object or database with ICU as the provider, the given locale name is transformed ("canonicalized") into a language tag if not already in that form. For instance,

```
CREATE COLLATION mycollation3 (provider = icu, locale = 'en-US-u-
kn-true');
NOTICE:  using standard form "en-US-u-kn" for locale "en-US-u-kn-
true"
CREATE COLLATION mycollation4 (provider = icu, locale =
'de_DE.utf8');
NOTICE:  using standard form "de-DE" for locale "de_DE.utf8"
```

If you see this notice, ensure that the provider and locale are the expected result. For consistent results when using the ICU provider, specify the canonical language tag instead of relying on the transformation.

A locale with no language name, or the special language name `root`, is transformed to have the language `und` ("undefined").

ICU can transform most libc locale names, as well as some other formats, into language tags for easier transition to ICU. If a libc locale name is used in ICU, it may not have precisely the same behavior as in libc.

If there is a problem interpreting the locale name, or if the locale name represents a language or region that ICU does not recognize, you will see the following warning:

```
CREATE COLLATION nonsense (provider = icu, locale = 'nonsense');
WARNING:  ICU locale "nonsense" has unknown language "nonsense"
HINT:    To disable ICU locale validation, set parameter
        icu_validation_level to DISABLED.
CREATE COLLATION
```

`icu_validation_level` controls how the message is reported. Unless set to `ERROR`, the collation will still be created, but the behavior may not be what the user intended.

### 24.1.5.3. Language Tag

A language tag, defined in BCP 47, is a standardized identifier used to identify languages, regions, and other information about a locale.

Basic language tags are simply *language-region*; or even just *language*. The *language* is a language code (e.g. `fr` for French), and *region* is a region code (e.g. `CA` for Canada). Examples: `ja-JP`, `de`, or `fr-CA`.

Collation settings may be included in the language tag to customize collation behavior. ICU allows extensive customization, such as sensitivity (or insensitivity) to accents, case, and punctuation; treatment of digits within text; and many other options to satisfy a variety of uses.

To include this additional collation information in a language tag, append `-u`, which indicates there are additional collation settings, followed by one or more *-key-value* pairs. The *key* is the key for a collation setting and *value* is a valid value for that setting. For boolean settings, the *-key* may be specified without a corresponding *-value*, which implies a value of `true`.

For example, the language tag `en-US-u-kn-ks-level2` means the locale with the English language in the US region, with collation settings `kn` set to `true` and `ks` set to `level2`. Those settings mean the collation will be case-insensitive and treat a sequence of digits as a single number:

```
CREATE COLLATION mycollation5 (provider = icu, deterministic =
    false, locale = 'en-US-u-kn-ks-level2');
SELECT 'aB' = 'Ab' COLLATE mycollation5 as result;
result
-----
t
(1 row)

SELECT 'N-45' < 'N-123' COLLATE mycollation5 as result;
result
-----
t
(1 row)
```

See Section 24.2.3 for details and additional examples of using language tags with custom collation information for the locale.

## 24.1.6. Problems

If locale support doesn't work according to the explanation above, check that the locale support in your operating system is correctly configured. To check what locales are installed on your system, you can use the command `locale -a` if your operating system provides it.

Check that PostgreSQL is actually using the locale that you think it is. The `LC_COLLATE` and `LC_CTYPE` settings are determined when a database is created, and cannot be changed except by creating a new database. Other locale settings including `LC_MESSAGES` and `LC_MONETARY` are initially determined by the environment the server is started in, but can be changed on-the-fly. You can check the active locale settings using the `SHOW` command.

The directory `src/test/locale` in the source distribution contains a test suite for PostgreSQL's locale support.

Client applications that handle server-side errors by parsing the text of the error message will obviously have problems when the server's messages are in a different language. Authors of such applications are advised to make use of the error code scheme instead.

Maintaining catalogs of message translations requires the on-going efforts of many volunteers that want to see PostgreSQL speak their preferred language well. If messages in your language are currently not available or not fully translated, your assistance would be appreciated. If you want to help, refer to Chapter 57 or write to the developers' mailing list.

## 24.2. Collation Support

The collation feature allows specifying the sort order and character classification behavior of data per-column, or even per-operation. This alleviates the restriction that the `LC_COLLATE` and `LC_CTYPE` settings of a database cannot be changed after its creation.

### 24.2.1. Concepts

Conceptually, every expression of a collatable data type has a collation. (The built-in collatable data types are `text`, `varchar`, and `char`. User-defined base types can also be marked collatable, and of course a *domain* over a collatable data type is collatable.) If the expression is a column reference, the collation of the expression is the defined collation of the column. If the expression is a constant,

the collation is the default collation of the data type of the constant. The collation of a more complex expression is derived from the collations of its inputs, as described below.

The collation of an expression can be the “default” collation, which means the locale settings defined for the database. It is also possible for an expression's collation to be indeterminate. In such cases, ordering operations and other operations that need to know the collation will fail.

When the database system has to perform an ordering or a character classification, it uses the collation of the input expression. This happens, for example, with `ORDER BY` clauses and function or operator calls such as `<`. The collation to apply for an `ORDER BY` clause is simply the collation of the sort key. The collation to apply for a function or operator call is derived from the arguments, as described below. In addition to comparison operators, collations are taken into account by functions that convert between lower and upper case letters, such as `lower`, `upper`, and `initcap`; by pattern matching operators; and by `to_char` and related functions.

For a function or operator call, the collation that is derived by examining the argument collations is used at run time for performing the specified operation. If the result of the function or operator call is of a collatable data type, the collation is also used at parse time as the defined collation of the function or operator expression, in case there is a surrounding expression that requires knowledge of its collation.

The *collation derivation* of an expression can be implicit or explicit. This distinction affects how collations are combined when multiple different collations appear in an expression. An explicit collation derivation occurs when a `COLLATE` clause is used; all other collation derivations are implicit. When multiple collations need to be combined, for example in a function call, the following rules are used:

1. If any input expression has an explicit collation derivation, then all explicitly derived collations among the input expressions must be the same, otherwise an error is raised. If any explicitly derived collation is present, that is the result of the collation combination.
2. Otherwise, all input expressions must have the same implicit collation derivation or the default collation. If any non-default collation is present, that is the result of the collation combination. Otherwise, the result is the default collation.
3. If there are conflicting non-default implicit collations among the input expressions, then the combination is deemed to have indeterminate collation. This is not an error condition unless the particular function being invoked requires knowledge of the collation it should apply. If it does, an error will be raised at run-time.

For example, consider this table definition:

```
CREATE TABLE test1 (
    a text COLLATE "de_DE",
    b text COLLATE "es_ES",
    ...
);
```

Then in

```
SELECT a < 'foo' FROM test1;
```

the `<` comparison is performed according to `de_DE` rules, because the expression combines an implicitly derived collation with the default collation. But in

```
SELECT a < ('foo' COLLATE "fr_FR") FROM test1;
```

the comparison is performed using `fr_FR` rules, because the explicit collation derivation overrides the implicit one. Furthermore, given

```
SELECT a < b FROM test1;
```

the parser cannot determine which collation to apply, since the `a` and `b` columns have conflicting implicit collations. Since the `<` operator does need to know which collation to use, this will result in an error. The error can be resolved by attaching an explicit collation specifier to either input expression, thus:

```
SELECT a < b COLLATE "de_DE" FROM test1;
```

or equivalently

```
SELECT a COLLATE "de_DE" < b FROM test1;
```

On the other hand, the structurally similar case

```
SELECT a || b FROM test1;
```

does not result in an error, because the `||` operator does not care about collations: its result is the same regardless of the collation.

The collation assigned to a function or operator's combined input expressions is also considered to apply to the function or operator's result, if the function or operator delivers a result of a collatable data type. So, in

```
SELECT * FROM test1 ORDER BY a || 'foo';
```

the ordering will be done according to `de_DE` rules. But this query:

```
SELECT * FROM test1 ORDER BY a || b;
```

results in an error, because even though the `||` operator doesn't need to know a collation, the `ORDER BY` clause does. As before, the conflict can be resolved with an explicit collation specifier:

```
SELECT * FROM test1 ORDER BY a || b COLLATE "fr_FR";
```

## 24.2.2. Managing Collations

A collation is an SQL schema object that maps an SQL name to locales provided by libraries installed in the operating system. A collation definition has a *provider* that specifies which library supplies the locale data. One standard provider name is `libc`, which uses the locales provided by the operating system C library. These are the locales used by most tools provided by the operating system. Another provider is `icu`, which uses the external ICU library. ICU locales can only be used if support for ICU was configured when PostgreSQL was built.

A collation object provided by `libc` maps to a combination of `LC_COLLATE` and `LC_CTYPE` settings, as accepted by the `setlocale()` system library call. (As the name would suggest, the main purpose of a collation is to set `LC_COLLATE`, which controls the sort order. But it is rarely necessary in practice to have an `LC_CTYPE` setting that is different from `LC_COLLATE`, so it is more convenient to collect these under one concept than to create another infrastructure for setting `LC_CTYPE` per expression.) Also, a `libc` collation is tied to a character set encoding (see Section 24.3). The same collation name may exist for different encodings.

A collation object provided by `icu` maps to a named collator provided by the ICU library. ICU does not support separate “collate” and “ctype” settings, so they are always the same. Also, ICU collations are independent of the encoding, so there is always only one ICU collation of a given name in a database.

### 24.2.2.1. Standard Collations

On all platforms, the collations named `default`, `C`, and `POSIX` are available. Additional collations may be available depending on operating system support. The `default` collation selects the `LC_COLLATE` and `LC_CTYPE` values specified at database creation time. The `C` and `POSIX` collations both specify “traditional C” behavior, in which only the ASCII letters “A” through “Z” are treated as letters, and sorting is done strictly by character code byte values.

#### Note

The `C` and `POSIX` locales may behave differently depending on the database encoding.

Additionally, two SQL standard collation names are available:

`unicode`

This collation sorts using the Unicode Collation Algorithm with the Default Unicode Collation Element Table. It is available in all encodings. ICU support is required to use this collation. (This collation has the same behavior as the ICU root locale; see `und-x-icu` (for “undefined”).)

`ucs_basic`

This collation sorts by Unicode code point. It is only available for encoding UTF8. (This collation has the same behavior as the `libc` locale specification `C` in UTF8 encoding.)

### 24.2.2.2. Predefined Collations

If the operating system provides support for using multiple locales within a single program (`newlocale` and related functions), or if support for ICU is configured, then when a database cluster is initialized, `initdb` populates the system catalog `pg_collation` with collations based on all the locales it finds in the operating system at the time.

To inspect the currently available locales, use the query `SELECT * FROM pg_collation`, or the command `\dos+` in `psql`.

#### 24.2.2.2.1. libc Collations

For example, the operating system might provide a locale named `de_DE.utf8`. `initdb` would then create a collation named `de_DE.utf8` for encoding UTF8 that has both `LC_COLLATE` and `LC_CTYPE` set to `de_DE.utf8`. It will also create a collation with the `.utf8` tag stripped off the name. So you could also use the collation under the name `de_DE`, which is less cumbersome to write and makes the name less encoding-dependent. Note that, nevertheless, the initial set of collation names is platform-dependent.

The default set of collations provided by `libc` map directly to the locales installed in the operating system, which can be listed using the command `locale -a`. In case a `libc` collation is needed that has different values for `LC_COLLATE` and `LC_CTYPE`, or if new locales are installed in the operating system after the database system was initialized, then a new collation may be created using the `CREATE COLLATION` command. New operating system locales can also be imported en masse using the `pg_import_system_collations()` function.

Within any particular database, only collations that use that database's encoding are of interest. Other entries in `pg_collation` are ignored. Thus, a stripped collation name such as `de_DE` can be considered unique within a given database even though it would not be unique globally. Use of the stripped collation names is recommended, since it will make one fewer thing you need to change if you decide to change to another database encoding. Note however that the `default`, `C`, and `POSIX` collations can be used regardless of the database encoding.

PostgreSQL considers distinct collation objects to be incompatible even when they have identical properties. Thus for example,

```
SELECT a COLLATE "C" < b COLLATE "POSIX" FROM test1;
```

will draw an error even though the C and POSIX collations have identical behaviors. Mixing stripped and non-stripped collation names is therefore not recommended.

#### 24.2.2.2.2. ICU Collations

With ICU, it is not sensible to enumerate all possible locale names. ICU uses a particular naming system for locales, but there are many more ways to name a locale than there are actually distinct locales. `initdb` uses the ICU APIs to extract a set of distinct locales to populate the initial set of collations. Collations provided by ICU are created in the SQL environment with names in BCP 47 language tag format, with a “private use” extension `-x-icu` appended, to distinguish them from libc locales.

Here are some example collations that might be created:

```
de-x-icu
```

German collation, default variant

```
de-AT-x-icu
```

German collation for Austria, default variant

(There are also, say, `de-DE-x-icu` or `de-CH-x-icu`, but as of this writing, they are equivalent to `de-x-icu`.)

```
und-x-icu (for “undefined”)
```

ICU “root” collation. Use this to get a reasonable language-agnostic sort order.

Some (less frequently used) encodings are not supported by ICU. When the database encoding is one of these, ICU collation entries in `pg_collation` are ignored. Attempting to use one will draw an error along the lines of “collation “de-x-icu” for encoding “WIN874” does not exist”.

#### 24.2.2.3. Creating New Collation Objects

If the standard and predefined collations are not sufficient, users can create their own collation objects using the SQL command `CREATE COLLATION`.

The standard and predefined collations are in the schema `pg_catalog`, like all predefined objects. User-defined collations should be created in user schemas. This also ensures that they are saved by `pg_dump`.

##### 24.2.2.3.1. libc Collations

New libc collations can be created like this:

```
CREATE COLLATION german (provider = libc, locale = 'de_DE');
```

The exact values that are acceptable for the `locale` clause in this command depend on the operating system. On Unix-like systems, the command `locale -a` will show a list.

Since the predefined libc collations already include all collations defined in the operating system when the database instance is initialized, it is not often necessary to manually create new ones. Reasons might be if a different naming system is desired (in which case see also Section 24.2.2.3.3) or if the operating system has been upgraded to provide new locale definitions (in which case see also `pg_import_system_collations()`).

### 24.2.2.3.2. ICU Collations

ICU collations can be created like:

```
CREATE COLLATION german (provider = icu, locale = 'de-DE');
```

ICU locales are specified as a BCP 47 Language Tag, but can also accept most libc-style locale names. If possible, libc-style locale names are transformed into language tags.

New ICU collations can customize collation behavior extensively by including collation attributes in the language tag. See Section 24.2.3 for details and examples.

### 24.2.2.3.3. Copying Collations

The command `CREATE COLLATION` can also be used to create a new collation from an existing collation, which can be useful to be able to use operating-system-independent collation names in applications, create compatibility names, or use an ICU-provided collation under a more readable name. For example:

```
CREATE COLLATION german FROM "de_DE";
CREATE COLLATION french FROM "fr-x-icu";
```

### 24.2.2.4. Nondeterministic Collations

A collation is either *deterministic* or *nondeterministic*. A deterministic collation uses deterministic comparisons, which means that it considers strings to be equal only if they consist of the same byte sequence. Nondeterministic comparison may determine strings to be equal even if they consist of different bytes. Typical situations include case-insensitive comparison, accent-insensitive comparison, as well as comparison of strings in different Unicode normal forms. It is up to the collation provider to actually implement such insensitive comparisons; the deterministic flag only determines whether ties are to be broken using bitwise comparison. See also Unicode Technical Standard 10<sup>1</sup> for more information on the terminology.

To create a nondeterministic collation, specify the property `deterministic = false` to `CREATE COLLATION`, for example:

```
CREATE COLLATION ndcoll (provider = icu, locale = 'und',
    deterministic = false);
```

This example would use the standard Unicode collation in a nondeterministic way. In particular, this would allow strings in different normal forms to be compared correctly. More interesting examples make use of the ICU customization facilities explained above. For example:

```
CREATE COLLATION case_insensitive (provider = icu, locale = 'und-u-ks-level2', deterministic = false);
CREATE COLLATION ignore_accents (provider = icu, locale = 'und-u-ks-level1-kc-true', deterministic = false);
```

All standard and predefined collations are deterministic, all user-defined collations are deterministic by default. While nondeterministic collations give a more “correct” behavior, especially when considering the full power of Unicode and its many special cases, they also have some drawbacks. Foremost, their use leads to a performance penalty. Note, in particular, that B-tree cannot use deduplication with indexes that use a nondeterministic collation. Also, certain operations are not possible with nondeterministic collations, such as pattern matching operations. Therefore, they should be used only in cases where they are specifically wanted.

---

<sup>1</sup> <https://www.unicode.org/reports/tr10>



### Tip

To deal with text in different Unicode normalization forms, it is also an option to use the functions/expressions `normalize` and `is_normalized` to preprocess or check the strings, instead of using nondeterministic collations. There are different trade-offs for each approach.

## 24.2.3. ICU Custom Collations

ICU allows extensive control over collation behavior by defining new collations with collation settings as a part of the language tag. These settings can modify the collation order to suit a variety of needs. For instance:

```
-- ignore differences in accents and case
CREATE COLLATION ignore_accent_case (provider = icu, deterministic
= false, locale = 'und-u-ks-level1');
SELECT 'Å' = 'A' COLLATE ignore_accent_case; -- true
SELECT 'z' = 'Z' COLLATE ignore_accent_case; -- true

-- upper case letters sort before lower case.
CREATE COLLATION upper_first (provider = icu, locale = 'und-u-kf-
upper');
SELECT 'B' < 'b' COLLATE upper_first; -- true

-- treat digits numerically and ignore punctuation
CREATE COLLATION num_ignore_punct (provider = icu, deterministic =
false, locale = 'und-u-ka-shifted-kn');
SELECT 'id-45' < 'id-123' COLLATE num_ignore_punct; -- true
SELECT 'w;x*y-z' = 'wxyz' COLLATE num_ignore_punct; -- true
```

Many of the available options are described in Section 24.2.3.2, or see Section 24.2.3.5 for more details.

### 24.2.3.1. ICU Comparison Levels

Comparison of two strings (collation) in ICU is determined by a multi-level process, where textual features are grouped into "levels". Treatment of each level is controlled by the collation settings. Higher levels correspond to finer textual features.

Table 24.1 shows which textual feature differences are considered significant when determining equality at the given level. The Unicode character U+2063 is an invisible separator, and as seen in the table, is ignored for at all levels of comparison less than `identic`.

**Table 24.1. ICU Collation Levels**

Level	Description	'f' = 'f'	'ab' = U&'a \2063b'	'x-y' = 'x_y'	'g' = 'G'	'n' = 'ñ'	'y' = 'z'
level1	Base Character	true	true	true	true	true	false
level2	Accents	true	true	true	true	false	false
level3	Case/Variants	true	true	true	false	false	false
level4	Punctuation	true	true	false	false	false	false
identic	All	true	false	false	false	false	false

At every level, even with full normalization off, basic normalization is performed. For example, 'á' may be composed of the code points U&' \0061\0301 ' or the single code point U&' \00E1 ', and those sequences will be considered equal even at the `identic` level. To treat any difference in code point representation as distinct, use a collation created with `deterministic` set to `true`.

### 24.2.3.1.1. Collation Level Examples

```
CREATE COLLATION level3 (provider = icu, deterministic = false,
    locale = 'und-u-ka-shifted-ks-level3');
CREATE COLLATION level4 (provider = icu, deterministic = false,
    locale = 'und-u-ka-shifted-ks-level4');
CREATE COLLATION identic (provider = icu, deterministic = false,
    locale = 'und-u-ka-shifted-ks-identic');

-- invisible separator ignored at all levels except identic
SELECT 'ab' = U&'a\2063b' COLLATE level4; -- true
SELECT 'ab' = U&'a\2063b' COLLATE identic; -- false

-- punctuation ignored at level3 but not at level 4
SELECT 'x-y' = 'x_y' COLLATE level3; -- true
SELECT 'x-y' = 'x_y' COLLATE level4; -- false
```

### 24.2.3.2. Collation Settings for an ICU Locale

Table 24.2 shows the available collation settings, which can be used as part of a language tag to customize a collation.

**Table 24.2. ICU Collation Settings**

Key	Values	Default	Description
co	emoji, phonebk, standard, ...	standard	Collation type. See Section 24.2.3.5 for additional options and details.
ka	noignore, shifted	noignore	If set to <code>shifted</code> , causes some characters (e.g. punctuation or space) to be ignored in comparison. Key <code>ks</code> must be set to <code>level3</code> or lower to take effect. Set key <code>kv</code> to control which character classes are ignored.
kb	true, false	false	Backwards comparison for the level 2 differences. For example, locale <code>und-u-kb</code> sorts 'âe' before 'aé'.
kc	true, false	false	Separates case into a "level 2.5" that falls between accents and other level 3 features.  If set to <code>true</code> and <code>ks</code> is set to <code>level1</code> , will ignore accents but take case into account.
kf	upper, lower, false	false	If set to <code>upper</code> , upper case sorts before lower case. If set to <code>lower</code> , lower case sorts before upper case. If set to <code>false</code> , the sort depends on the rules of the locale.
kn	true, false	false	If set to <code>true</code> , numbers within a string are treated as a single numeric value rather than a sequence of digits. For example, 'id-45' sorts before 'id-123'.

Key	Values	Default	Description
kk	true, false	false	<p>Enable full normalization; may affect performance. Basic normalization is performed even when set to <code>false</code>. Locales for languages that require full normalization typically enable it by default.</p> <p>Full normalization is important in some cases, such as when multiple accents are applied to a single character. For example, the code point sequences <code>U&amp;' \0065\0323\0302'</code> and <code>U&amp;' \0065\0302\0323'</code> represent an <code>e</code> with circumflex and dot-below accents applied in different orders. With full normalization on, these code point sequences are treated as equal; otherwise they are unequal.</p>
kr	space, punct, symbol, currency, digit, <i>script-id</i>		<p>Set to one or more of the valid values, or any BCP 47 <i>script-id</i>, e.g. <code>latn</code> ("Latin") or <code>grek</code> ("Greek"). Multiple values are separated by <code>"-"</code>.</p> <p>Redefines the ordering of classes of characters; those characters belonging to a class earlier in the list sort before characters belonging to a class later in the list. For instance, the value <code>digit-currency-space</code> (as part of a language tag like <code>und-u-kr-digit-currency-space</code>) sorts punctuation before digits and spaces.</p>
ks	level1, level2, level3, level4, identical	level3	Sensitivity (or "strength") when determining equality, with <code>level1</code> the least sensitive to differences and <code>identical</code> the most sensitive to differences. See Table 24.1 for details.
kv	space, punct, symbol, currency	punct	Classes of characters ignored during comparison at level 3. Setting to a later value includes earlier values; e.g. <code>symbol</code> also includes <code>punct</code> and <code>space</code> in the characters to be ignored. Key <code>ka</code> must be set to <code>shifted</code> and key <code>ks</code> must be set to <code>level3</code> or lower to take effect.

Defaults may depend on locale. The above table is not meant to be complete. See Section 24.2.3.5 for additional options and details.

### Note

For many collation settings, you must create the collation with `deterministic` set to `false` for the setting to have the desired effect (see Section 24.2.2.4). Additionally, some settings only take effect when the key `ka` is set to `shifted` (see Table 24.2).

### 24.2.3.3. Collation Settings Examples

```
CREATE COLLATION "de-u-co-phonebk-x-icu" (provider = icu, locale =
'de-u-co-phonebk' );
```

German collation with phone book collation type

```
CREATE COLLATION "und-u-co-emoji-x-icu" (provider = icu, locale =
'und-u-co-emoji');
```

Root collation with Emoji collation type, per Unicode Technical Standard #51

```
CREATE COLLATION latinlast (provider = icu, locale = 'en-u-kr-grek-
latn');
```

Sort Greek letters before Latin ones. (The default is Latin before Greek.)

```
CREATE COLLATION upperfirst (provider = icu, locale = 'en-u-kf-up-
per');
```

Sort upper-case letters before lower-case letters. (The default is lower-case letters first.)

```
CREATE COLLATION special (provider = icu, locale = 'en-u-kf-upper-kr-
grek-latn');
```

Combines both of the above options.

### 24.2.3.4. ICU Tailoring Rules

If the options provided by the collation settings shown above are not sufficient, the order of collation elements can be changed with tailoring rules, whose syntax is detailed at <https://unicode-org.github.io/icu/userguide/collation/customization/>.

This small example creates a collation based on the root locale with a tailoring rule:

```
CREATE COLLATION custom (provider = icu, locale = 'und', rules =
'&V << w <<< W');
```

With this rule, the letter “W” is sorted after “V”, but is treated as a secondary difference similar to an accent. Rules like this are contained in the locale definitions of some languages. (Of course, if a locale definition already contains the desired rules, then they don't need to be specified again explicitly.)

Here is a more complex example. The following statement sets up a collation named `ebcdic` with rules to sort US-ASCII characters in the order of the EBCDIC encoding.

```
CREATE COLLATION ebcdic (provider = icu, locale = 'und',
rules = $$
& ' ' < '.' < '<' < '(' < '+' < \
< '&' < '!' < '$' < '*' < ')' < ';'
< '-' < '/' < ',' < '%' < '_' < '>' < '?'
< ':' < ':' < '#' < '@' < \ < '=' < '"'
< *a-r < '~' < *s-z < '^' < '[' < ']'
< '{' < *A-I < '}' < *J-R < '\ < *S-Z < *0-9
$$);

SELECT c
FROM (VALUES ('a'), ('b'), ('A'), ('B'), ('1'), ('2'), ('!'),
('^')) AS x(c)
ORDER BY c COLLATE ebcdic;
c
---
!
a
b
^
A
B
```

1  
2

### 24.2.3.5. External References for ICU

This section (Section 24.2.3) is only a brief overview of ICU behavior and language tags. Refer to the following documents for technical details, additional options, and new behavior:

- Unicode Technical Standard #35<sup>2</sup>
- BCP 47<sup>3</sup>
- CLDR repository<sup>4</sup>
- <https://unicode-org.github.io/icu/userguide/locale/>
- <https://unicode-org.github.io/icu/userguide/collation/>

## 24.3. Character Set Support

The character set support in PostgreSQL allows you to store text in a variety of character sets (also called encodings), including single-byte character sets such as the ISO 8859 series and multiple-byte character sets such as EUC (Extended Unix Code), UTF-8, and Mule internal code. All supported character sets can be used transparently by clients, but a few are not supported for use within the server (that is, as a server-side encoding). The default character set is selected while initializing your PostgreSQL database cluster using `initdb`. It can be overridden when you create a database, so you can have multiple databases each with a different character set.

An important restriction, however, is that each database's character set must be compatible with the database's `LC_CTYPE` (character classification) and `LC_COLLATE` (string sort order) locale settings. For C or POSIX locale, any character set is allowed, but for other libc-provided locales there is only one character set that will work correctly. (On Windows, however, UTF-8 encoding can be used with any locale.) If you have ICU support configured, ICU-provided locales can be used with most but not all server-side encodings.

### 24.3.1. Supported Character Sets

Table 24.3 shows the character sets available for use in PostgreSQL.

**Table 24.3. PostgreSQL Character Sets**

Name	Description	Language	Server?	ICU?	Bytes/ Char	Aliases
BIG5	Big Five	Traditional Chinese	No	No	1–2	WIN950, Windows950
EUC_CN	Extended UNIX Code-CN	Simplified Chinese	Yes	Yes	1–3	
EUC_JP	Extended UNIX Code-JP	Japanese	Yes	Yes	1–3	
EUC_JIS_2004	Extended UNIX Code-JP, JIS X 0213	Japanese	Yes	No	1–3	

<sup>2</sup> <https://www.unicode.org/reports/tr35/tr35-collation.html>

<sup>3</sup> <https://tools.ietf.org/html/bcp47>

<sup>4</sup> <https://github.com/unicode-org/cldr/blob/master/common/bcp47/collation.xml>

Name	Description	Language	Server?	ICU?	Bytes/ Char	Aliases
EUC_KR	Extended UNIX Code-KR	Korean	Yes	Yes	1–3	
EUC_TW	Extended UNIX Code-TW	Traditional Chinese, Taiwanese	Yes	Yes	1–3	
GB18030	National Standard	Chinese	No	No	1–4	
GBK	Extended National Standard	Simplified Chinese	No	No	1–2	WIN936, Windows936
ISO_8859_5	ISO 8859-5, ECMA 113	Latin/Cyrillic	Yes	Yes	1	
ISO_8859_6	ISO 8859-6, ECMA 114	Latin/Arabic	Yes	Yes	1	
ISO_8859_7	ISO 8859-7, ECMA 118	Latin/Greek	Yes	Yes	1	
ISO_8859_8	ISO 8859-8, ECMA 121	Latin/Hebrew	Yes	Yes	1	
JOHAB	JOHAB	Korean (Hangul)	No	No	1–3	
KOI8R	KOI8-R	Cyrillic (Russian)	Yes	Yes	1	KOI8
KOI8U	KOI8-U	Cyrillic (Ukrainian)	Yes	Yes	1	
LATIN1	ISO 8859-1, ECMA 94	Western European	Yes	Yes	1	ISO88591
LATIN2	ISO 8859-2, ECMA 94	Central European	Yes	Yes	1	ISO88592
LATIN3	ISO 8859-3, ECMA 94	South European	Yes	Yes	1	ISO88593
LATIN4	ISO 8859-4, ECMA 94	North European	Yes	Yes	1	ISO88594
LATIN5	ISO 8859-9, ECMA 128	Turkish	Yes	Yes	1	ISO88599
LATIN6	ISO 8859-10, ECMA 144	Nordic	Yes	Yes	1	ISO885910
LATIN7	ISO 8859-13	Baltic	Yes	Yes	1	ISO885913
LATIN8	ISO 8859-14	Celtic	Yes	Yes	1	ISO885914
LATIN9	ISO 8859-15	LATIN1 with Euro and accents	Yes	Yes	1	ISO885915
LATIN10	ISO 8859-16, ASRO SR 14111	Romanian	Yes	No	1	ISO885916
MULE_INTERNAL	Mule internal code	Multilingual Emacs	Yes	No	1–4	

Name	Description	Language	Server?	ICU?	Bytes/ Char	Aliases
SJIS	Shift JIS	Japanese	No	No	1–2	Mskanji, ShiftJIS, WIN932, Windows932
SHIFT_JIS_2004	Shift JIS, JIS X 0213	Japanese	No	No	1–2	
SQL_ASCII	unspecified (see text)	<i>any</i>	Yes	No	1	
UHC	Unified Hangul Code	Korean	No	No	1–2	WIN949, Windows949
UTF8	Unicode, 8-bit	<i>all</i>	Yes	Yes	1–4	Unicode
WIN866	Windows CP866	Cyrillic	Yes	Yes	1	ALT
WIN874	Windows CP874	Thai	Yes	No	1	
WIN1250	Windows CP1250	Central Euro- pean	Yes	Yes	1	
WIN1251	Windows CP1251	Cyrillic	Yes	Yes	1	WIN
WIN1252	Windows CP1252	Western Euro- pean	Yes	Yes	1	
WIN1253	Windows CP1253	Greek	Yes	Yes	1	
WIN1254	Windows CP1254	Turkish	Yes	Yes	1	
WIN1255	Windows CP1255	Hebrew	Yes	Yes	1	
WIN1256	Windows CP1256	Arabic	Yes	Yes	1	
WIN1257	Windows CP1257	Baltic	Yes	Yes	1	
WIN1258	Windows CP1258	Vietnamese	Yes	Yes	1	ABC, TCVN, TCVN5712, VSCII

Not all client APIs support all the listed character sets. For example, the PostgreSQL JDBC driver does not support `MULE_INTERNAL`, `LATIN6`, `LATIN8`, and `LATIN10`.

The `SQL_ASCII` setting behaves considerably differently from the other settings. When the server character set is `SQL_ASCII`, the server interprets byte values 0–127 according to the ASCII standard, while byte values 128–255 are taken as uninterpreted characters. No encoding conversion will be done when the setting is `SQL_ASCII`. Thus, this setting is not so much a declaration that a specific encoding is in use, as a declaration of ignorance about the encoding. In most cases, if you are working with any non-ASCII data, it is unwise to use the `SQL_ASCII` setting because PostgreSQL will be unable to help you by converting or validating non-ASCII characters.

## 24.3.2. Setting the Character Set

`initdb` defines the default character set (encoding) for a PostgreSQL cluster. For example,

```
initdb -E EUC_JP
```

sets the default character set to EUC\_JP (Extended Unix Code for Japanese). You can use `--encoding` instead of `-E` if you prefer longer option strings. If no `-E` or `--encoding` option is given, `initdb` attempts to determine the appropriate encoding to use based on the specified or default locale.

You can specify a non-default encoding at database creation time, provided that the encoding is compatible with the selected locale:

```
createdb -E EUC_KR -T template0 --lc-collate=ko_KR.euckr --lc-ctype=ko_KR.euckr korean
```

This will create a database named `korean` that uses the character set EUC\_KR, and locale ko\_KR. Another way to accomplish this is to use this SQL command:

```
CREATE DATABASE korean WITH ENCODING 'EUC_KR'
LC_COLLATE='ko_KR.euckr' LC_CTYPE='ko_KR.euckr'
TEMPLATE=template0;
```

Notice that the above commands specify copying the `template0` database. When copying any other database, the encoding and locale settings cannot be changed from those of the source database, because that might result in corrupt data. For more information see Section 23.3.

The encoding for a database is stored in the system catalog `pg_database`. You can see it by using the `psql -l` option or the `\l` command.

```
$ psql -l
```

List of databases				
Name	Owner	Encoding	Collation	Ctype
Access Privileges				
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----				
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----				
cloudbdb	hlinnaka	SQL_ASCII	C	C
englishdb	hlinnaka	UTF8	en_GB.UTF8	en_GB.UTF8
japanese	hlinnaka	UTF8	ja_JP.UTF8	ja_JP.UTF8
korean	hlinnaka	EUC_KR	ko_KR.euckr	ko_KR.euckr
postgres	hlinnaka	UTF8	fi_FI.UTF8	fi_FI.UTF8
template0	hlinnaka	UTF8	fi_FI.UTF8	fi_FI.UTF8
{=c/hlinnaka,hlinnaka=CTc/hlinnaka}				
template1	hlinnaka	UTF8	fi_FI.UTF8	fi_FI.UTF8
{=c/hlinnaka,hlinnaka=CTc/hlinnaka}				
(7 rows)				

### Important

On most modern operating systems, PostgreSQL can determine which character set is implied by the `LC_CTYPE` setting, and it will enforce that only the matching database encoding is used. On older systems it is your responsibility to ensure that you use the encoding expected by the locale you have selected. A mistake in this area is likely to lead to strange behavior of locale-dependent operations such as sorting.

PostgreSQL will allow superusers to create databases with `SQL_ASCII` encoding even when `LC_CTYPE` is not `C` or `POSIX`. As noted above, `SQL_ASCII` does not enforce that the data stored in the database has any particular encoding, and so this choice poses risks of locale-de-



pendent misbehavior. Using this combination of settings is deprecated and may someday be forbidden altogether.

## 24.3.3. Automatic Character Set Conversion Between Server and Client

PostgreSQL supports automatic character set conversion between server and client for many combinations of character sets (Section 24.3.4 shows which ones).

To enable automatic character set conversion, you have to tell PostgreSQL the character set (encoding) you would like to use in the client. There are several ways to accomplish this:

- Using the `\encoding` command in `psql`. `\encoding` allows you to change client encoding on the fly. For example, to change the encoding to `SJIS`, type:

```
\encoding SJIS
```

- `libpq` (Section 34.11) has functions to control the client encoding.
- Using `SET client_encoding TO`. Setting the client encoding can be done with this SQL command:

```
SET CLIENT_ENCODING TO 'value';
```

Also you can use the standard SQL syntax `SET NAMES` for this purpose:

```
SET NAMES 'value';
```

To query the current client encoding:

```
SHOW client_encoding;
```

To return to the default encoding:

```
RESET client_encoding;
```

- Using `PGCLIENTENCODING`. If the environment variable `PGCLIENTENCODING` is defined in the client's environment, that client encoding is automatically selected when a connection to the server is made. (This can subsequently be overridden using any of the other methods mentioned above.)
- Using the configuration variable `client_encoding`. If the `client_encoding` variable is set, that client encoding is automatically selected when a connection to the server is made. (This can subsequently be overridden using any of the other methods mentioned above.)

If the conversion of a particular character is not possible — suppose you chose `EUC_JP` for the server and `LATIN1` for the client, and some Japanese characters are returned that do not have a representation in `LATIN1` — an error is reported.

If the client character set is defined as `SQL_ASCII`, encoding conversion is disabled, regardless of the server's character set. (However, if the server's character set is not `SQL_ASCII`, the server will still check that incoming data is valid for that encoding; so the net effect is as though the client character set were the same as the server's.) Just as for the server, use of `SQL_ASCII` is unwise unless you are working with all-ASCII data.

## 24.3.4. Available Character Set Conversions

PostgreSQL allows conversion between any two character sets for which a conversion function is listed in the `pg_conversion` system catalog. PostgreSQL comes with some predefined conversions, as summarized in Table 24.4 and shown in more detail in Table 24.5. You can create a new conversion using the SQL command `CREATE CONVERSION`. (To be used for automatic client/server conversions, a conversion must be marked as “default” for its character set pair.)

**Table 24.4. Built-in Client/Server Character Set Conversions**

Server Character Set	Available Client Character Sets
BIG5	<i>not supported as a server encoding</i>
EUC_CN	<i>EUC_CN</i> , MULE_INTERNAL, UTF8
EUC_JP	<i>EUC_JP</i> , MULE_INTERNAL, SJIS, UTF8
EUC_JIS_2004	<i>EUC_JIS_2004</i> , SHIFT_JIS_2004, UTF8
EUC_KR	<i>EUC_KR</i> , MULE_INTERNAL, UTF8
EUC_TW	<i>EUC_TW</i> , BIG5, MULE_INTERNAL, UTF8
GB18030	<i>not supported as a server encoding</i>
GBK	<i>not supported as a server encoding</i>
ISO_8859_5	<i>ISO_8859_5</i> , KOI8R, MULE_INTERNAL, UTF8, WIN866, WIN1251
ISO_8859_6	<i>ISO_8859_6</i> , UTF8
ISO_8859_7	<i>ISO_8859_7</i> , UTF8
ISO_8859_8	<i>ISO_8859_8</i> , UTF8
JOHAB	<i>not supported as a server encoding</i>
KOI8R	<i>KOI8R</i> , ISO_8859_5, MULE_INTERNAL, UTF8, WIN866, WIN1251
KOI8U	<i>KOI8U</i> , UTF8
LATIN1	<i>LATIN1</i> , MULE_INTERNAL, UTF8
LATIN2	<i>LATIN2</i> , MULE_INTERNAL, UTF8, WIN1250
LATIN3	<i>LATIN3</i> , MULE_INTERNAL, UTF8
LATIN4	<i>LATIN4</i> , MULE_INTERNAL, UTF8
LATIN5	<i>LATIN5</i> , UTF8
LATIN6	<i>LATIN6</i> , UTF8
LATIN7	<i>LATIN7</i> , UTF8
LATIN8	<i>LATIN8</i> , UTF8
LATIN9	<i>LATIN9</i> , UTF8
LATIN10	<i>LATIN10</i> , UTF8
MULE_INTERNAL	<i>MULE_INTERNAL</i> , BIG5, EUC_CN, EUC_JP, EUC_KR, EUC_TW, ISO_8859_5, KOI8R, LATIN1 to LATIN4, SJIS, WIN866, WIN1250, WIN1251
SJIS	<i>not supported as a server encoding</i>
SHIFT_JIS_2004	<i>not supported as a server encoding</i>
SQL_ASCII	<i>any (no conversion will be performed)</i>
UHC	<i>not supported as a server encoding</i>
UTF8	<i>all supported encodings</i>
WIN866	<i>WIN866</i> , ISO_8859_5, KOI8R, MULE_INTERNAL, UTF8, WIN1251

Server Character Set	Available Client Character Sets
WIN874	WIN874, UTF8
WIN1250	WIN1250, LATIN2, MULE_INTERNAL, UTF8
WIN1251	WIN1251, ISO_8859_5, KOI8R, MULE_INTERNAL, UTF8, WIN866
WIN1252	WIN1252, UTF8
WIN1253	WIN1253, UTF8
WIN1254	WIN1254, UTF8
WIN1255	WIN1255, UTF8
WIN1256	WIN1256, UTF8
WIN1257	WIN1257, UTF8
WIN1258	WIN1258, UTF8

**Table 24.5. All Built-in Character Set Conversions**

Conversion Name <sup>a</sup>	Source Encoding	Destination Encoding
big5_to_euc_tw	BIG5	EUC_TW
big5_to_mic	BIG5	MULE_INTERNAL
big5_to_utf8	BIG5	UTF8
euc_cn_to_mic	EUC_CN	MULE_INTERNAL
euc_cn_to_utf8	EUC_CN	UTF8
euc_jp_to_mic	EUC_JP	MULE_INTERNAL
euc_jp_to_sjis	EUC_JP	SJIS
euc_jp_to_utf8	EUC_JP	UTF8
euc_kr_to_mic	EUC_KR	MULE_INTERNAL
euc_kr_to_utf8	EUC_KR	UTF8
euc_tw_to_big5	EUC_TW	BIG5
euc_tw_to_mic	EUC_TW	MULE_INTERNAL
euc_tw_to_utf8	EUC_TW	UTF8
gb18030_to_utf8	GB18030	UTF8
gbk_to_utf8	GBK	UTF8
iso_8859_10_to_utf8	LATIN6	UTF8
iso_8859_13_to_utf8	LATIN7	UTF8
iso_8859_14_to_utf8	LATIN8	UTF8
iso_8859_15_to_utf8	LATIN9	UTF8
iso_8859_16_to_utf8	LATIN10	UTF8
iso_8859_1_to_mic	LATIN1	MULE_INTERNAL
iso_8859_1_to_utf8	LATIN1	UTF8
iso_8859_2_to_mic	LATIN2	MULE_INTERNAL
iso_8859_2_to_utf8	LATIN2	UTF8
iso_8859_2_to_windows_1250	LATIN2	WIN1250
iso_8859_3_to_mic	LATIN3	MULE_INTERNAL
iso_8859_3_to_utf8	LATIN3	UTF8
iso_8859_4_to_mic	LATIN4	MULE_INTERNAL

Conversion Name <sup>a</sup>	Source Encoding	Destination Encoding
iso_8859_4_to_utf8	LATIN4	UTF8
iso_8859_5_to_koi8_r	ISO_8859_5	KOI8R
iso_8859_5_to_mic	ISO_8859_5	MULE_INTERNAL
iso_8859_5_to_utf8	ISO_8859_5	UTF8
iso_8859_5_to_windows_1251	ISO_8859_5	WIN1251
iso_8859_5_to_windows_866	ISO_8859_5	WIN866
iso_8859_6_to_utf8	ISO_8859_6	UTF8
iso_8859_7_to_utf8	ISO_8859_7	UTF8
iso_8859_8_to_utf8	ISO_8859_8	UTF8
iso_8859_9_to_utf8	LATIN5	UTF8
johab_to_utf8	JOHAB	UTF8
koi8_r_to_iso_8859_5	KOI8R	ISO_8859_5
koi8_r_to_mic	KOI8R	MULE_INTERNAL
koi8_r_to_utf8	KOI8R	UTF8
koi8_r_to_windows_1251	KOI8R	WIN1251
koi8_r_to_windows_866	KOI8R	WIN866
koi8_u_to_utf8	KOI8U	UTF8
mic_to_big5	MULE_INTERNAL	BIG5
mic_to_euc_cn	MULE_INTERNAL	EUC_CN
mic_to_euc_jp	MULE_INTERNAL	EUC_JP
mic_to_euc_kr	MULE_INTERNAL	EUC_KR
mic_to_euc_tw	MULE_INTERNAL	EUC_TW
mic_to_iso_8859_1	MULE_INTERNAL	LATIN1
mic_to_iso_8859_2	MULE_INTERNAL	LATIN2
mic_to_iso_8859_3	MULE_INTERNAL	LATIN3
mic_to_iso_8859_4	MULE_INTERNAL	LATIN4
mic_to_iso_8859_5	MULE_INTERNAL	ISO_8859_5
mic_to_koi8_r	MULE_INTERNAL	KOI8R
mic_to_sjis	MULE_INTERNAL	SJIS
mic_to_windows_1250	MULE_INTERNAL	WIN1250
mic_to_windows_1251	MULE_INTERNAL	WIN1251
mic_to_windows_866	MULE_INTERNAL	WIN866
sjis_to_euc_jp	SJIS	EUC_JP
sjis_to_mic	SJIS	MULE_INTERNAL
sjis_to_utf8	SJIS	UTF8
windows_1258_to_utf8	WIN1258	UTF8
uhc_to_utf8	UHC	UTF8
utf8_to_big5	UTF8	BIG5
utf8_to_euc_cn	UTF8	EUC_CN
utf8_to_euc_jp	UTF8	EUC_JP
utf8_to_euc_kr	UTF8	EUC_KR

Conversion Name <sup>a</sup>	Source Encoding	Destination Encoding
utf8_to_euc_tw	UTF8	EUC_TW
utf8_to_gbl8030	UTF8	GB18030
utf8_to_gbk	UTF8	GBK
utf8_to_iso_8859_1	UTF8	LATIN1
utf8_to_iso_8859_10	UTF8	LATIN6
utf8_to_iso_8859_13	UTF8	LATIN7
utf8_to_iso_8859_14	UTF8	LATIN8
utf8_to_iso_8859_15	UTF8	LATIN9
utf8_to_iso_8859_16	UTF8	LATIN10
utf8_to_iso_8859_2	UTF8	LATIN2
utf8_to_iso_8859_3	UTF8	LATIN3
utf8_to_iso_8859_4	UTF8	LATIN4
utf8_to_iso_8859_5	UTF8	ISO_8859_5
utf8_to_iso_8859_6	UTF8	ISO_8859_6
utf8_to_iso_8859_7	UTF8	ISO_8859_7
utf8_to_iso_8859_8	UTF8	ISO_8859_8
utf8_to_iso_8859_9	UTF8	LATIN5
utf8_to_johab	UTF8	JOHAB
utf8_to_koi8_r	UTF8	KOI8R
utf8_to_koi8_u	UTF8	KOI8U
utf8_to_sjis	UTF8	SJIS
utf8_to_windows_1258	UTF8	WIN1258
utf8_to_uhc	UTF8	UHC
utf8_to_windows_1250	UTF8	WIN1250
utf8_to_windows_1251	UTF8	WIN1251
utf8_to_windows_1252	UTF8	WIN1252
utf8_to_windows_1253	UTF8	WIN1253
utf8_to_windows_1254	UTF8	WIN1254
utf8_to_windows_1255	UTF8	WIN1255
utf8_to_windows_1256	UTF8	WIN1256
utf8_to_windows_1257	UTF8	WIN1257
utf8_to_windows_866	UTF8	WIN866
utf8_to_windows_874	UTF8	WIN874
windows_1250_to_iso_8859_2	WIN1250	LATIN2
windows_1250_to_mic	WIN1250	MULE_INTERNAL
windows_1250_to_utf8	WIN1250	UTF8
windows_1251_to_iso_8859_5	WIN1251	ISO_8859_5
windows_1251_to_koi8_r	WIN1251	KOI8R
windows_1251_to_mic	WIN1251	MULE_INTERNAL
windows_1251_to_utf8	WIN1251	UTF8
windows_1251_to_windows_866	WIN1251	WIN866

Conversion Name <sup>a</sup>	Source Encoding	Destination Encoding
windows_1252_to_utf8	WIN1252	UTF8
windows_1256_to_utf8	WIN1256	UTF8
windows_866_to_iso_8859_5	WIN866	ISO_8859_5
windows_866_to_koi8_r	WIN866	KOI8R
windows_866_to_mic	WIN866	MULE_INTERNAL
windows_866_to_utf8	WIN866	UTF8
windows_866_to_windows_1251	WIN866	WIN
windows_874_to_utf8	WIN874	UTF8
euc_jis_2004_to_utf8	EUC_JIS_2004	UTF8
utf8_to_euc_jis_2004	UTF8	EUC_JIS_2004
shift_jis_2004_to_utf8	SHIFT_JIS_2004	UTF8
utf8_to_shift_jis_2004	UTF8	SHIFT_JIS_2004
euc_jis_2004_to_shift_jis_2004	EUC_JIS_2004	SHIFT_JIS_2004
shift_jis_2004_to_euc_jis_2004	SHIFT_JIS_2004	EUC_JIS_2004

<sup>a</sup> The conversion names follow a standard naming scheme: The official name of the source encoding with all non-alphanumeric characters replaced by underscores, followed by `_to_`, followed by the similarly processed destination encoding name. Therefore, these names sometimes deviate from the customary encoding names shown in Table 24.3.

## 24.3.5. Further Reading

These are good sources to start learning about various kinds of encoding systems.

*CJKV Information Processing: Chinese, Japanese, Korean & Vietnamese Computing*

Contains detailed explanations of EUC\_JP, EUC\_CN, EUC\_KR, EUC\_TW.

<https://www.unicode.org/>

The web site of the Unicode Consortium.

RFC 3629<sup>5</sup>

UTF-8 (8-bit UCS/Unicode Transformation Format) is defined here.

<sup>5</sup> <https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3629>

---

# Chapter 25. Routine Database Maintenance Tasks

PostgreSQL, like any database software, requires that certain tasks be performed regularly to achieve optimum performance. The tasks discussed here are *required*, but they are repetitive in nature and can easily be automated using standard tools such as cron scripts or Windows' Task Scheduler. It is the database administrator's responsibility to set up appropriate scripts, and to check that they execute successfully.

One obvious maintenance task is the creation of backup copies of the data on a regular schedule. Without a recent backup, you have no chance of recovery after a catastrophe (disk failure, fire, mistakenly dropping a critical table, etc.). The backup and recovery mechanisms available in PostgreSQL are discussed at length in Chapter 26.

The other main category of maintenance task is periodic “vacuuming” of the database. This activity is discussed in Section 25.1. Closely related to this is updating the statistics that will be used by the query planner, as discussed in Section 25.1.3.

Another task that might need periodic attention is log file management. This is discussed in Section 25.3.

`check_postgres`<sup>1</sup> is available for monitoring database health and reporting unusual conditions. `check_postgres` integrates with Nagios and MRTG, but can be run standalone too.

PostgreSQL is low-maintenance compared to some other database management systems. Nonetheless, appropriate attention to these tasks will go far towards ensuring a pleasant and productive experience with the system.

## 25.1. Routine Vacuuming

PostgreSQL databases require periodic maintenance known as *vacuuming*. For many installations, it is sufficient to let vacuuming be performed by the *autovacuum daemon*, which is described in Section 25.1.6. You might need to adjust the autovacuuming parameters described there to obtain best results for your situation. Some database administrators will want to supplement or replace the daemon's activities with manually-managed `VACUUM` commands, which typically are executed according to a schedule by cron or Task Scheduler scripts. To set up manually-managed vacuuming properly, it is essential to understand the issues discussed in the next few subsections. Administrators who rely on autovacuuming may still wish to skim this material to help them understand and adjust autovacuuming.

### 25.1.1. Vacuuming Basics

PostgreSQL's `VACUUM` command has to process each table on a regular basis for several reasons:

1. To recover or reuse disk space occupied by updated or deleted rows.
2. To update data statistics used by the PostgreSQL query planner.
3. To update the visibility map, which speeds up index-only scans.
4. To protect against loss of very old data due to *transaction ID wraparound* or *multixact ID wraparound*.

Each of these reasons dictates performing `VACUUM` operations of varying frequency and scope, as explained in the following subsections.

---

<sup>1</sup> [https://bucardo.org/check\\_postgres/](https://bucardo.org/check_postgres/)

There are two variants of `VACUUM`: standard `VACUUM` and `VACUUM FULL`. `VACUUM FULL` can reclaim more disk space but runs much more slowly. Also, the standard form of `VACUUM` can run in parallel with production database operations. (Commands such as `SELECT`, `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, and `DELETE` will continue to function normally, though you will not be able to modify the definition of a table with commands such as `ALTER TABLE` while it is being vacuumed.) `VACUUM FULL` requires an `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock on the table it is working on, and therefore cannot be done in parallel with other use of the table. Generally, therefore, administrators should strive to use standard `VACUUM` and avoid `VACUUM FULL`.

`VACUUM` creates a substantial amount of I/O traffic, which can cause poor performance for other active sessions. There are configuration parameters that can be adjusted to reduce the performance impact of background vacuuming — see Section 20.4.4.

## 25.1.2. Recovering Disk Space

In PostgreSQL, an `UPDATE` or `DELETE` of a row does not immediately remove the old version of the row. This approach is necessary to gain the benefits of multiversion concurrency control (MVCC, see Chapter 13): the row version must not be deleted while it is still potentially visible to other transactions. But eventually, an outdated or deleted row version is no longer of interest to any transaction. The space it occupies must then be reclaimed for reuse by new rows, to avoid unbounded growth of disk space requirements. This is done by running `VACUUM`.

The standard form of `VACUUM` removes dead row versions in tables and indexes and marks the space available for future reuse. However, it will not return the space to the operating system, except in the special case where one or more pages at the end of a table become entirely free and an exclusive table lock can be easily obtained. In contrast, `VACUUM FULL` actively compacts tables by writing a complete new version of the table file with no dead space. This minimizes the size of the table, but can take a long time. It also requires extra disk space for the new copy of the table, until the operation completes.

The usual goal of routine vacuuming is to do standard `VACUUM`s often enough to avoid needing `VACUUM FULL`. The autovacuum daemon attempts to work this way, and in fact will never issue `VACUUM FULL`. In this approach, the idea is not to keep tables at their minimum size, but to maintain steady-state usage of disk space: each table occupies space equivalent to its minimum size plus however much space gets used up between vacuum runs. Although `VACUUM FULL` can be used to shrink a table back to its minimum size and return the disk space to the operating system, there is not much point in this if the table will just grow again in the future. Thus, moderately-frequent standard `VACUUM` runs are a better approach than infrequent `VACUUM FULL` runs for maintaining heavily-updated tables.

Some administrators prefer to schedule vacuuming themselves, for example doing all the work at night when load is low. The difficulty with doing vacuuming according to a fixed schedule is that if a table has an unexpected spike in update activity, it may get bloated to the point that `VACUUM FULL` is really necessary to reclaim space. Using the autovacuum daemon alleviates this problem, since the daemon schedules vacuuming dynamically in response to update activity. It is unwise to disable the daemon completely unless you have an extremely predictable workload. One possible compromise is to set the daemon's parameters so that it will only react to unusually heavy update activity, thus keeping things from getting out of hand, while scheduled `VACUUM`s are expected to do the bulk of the work when the load is typical.

For those not using autovacuum, a typical approach is to schedule a database-wide `VACUUM` once a day during a low-usage period, supplemented by more frequent vacuuming of heavily-updated tables as necessary. (Some installations with extremely high update rates vacuum their busiest tables as often as once every few minutes.) If you have multiple databases in a cluster, don't forget to `VACUUM` each one; the program `vacuumdb` might be helpful.

### Tip

Plain `VACUUM` may not be satisfactory when a table contains large numbers of dead row versions as a result of massive update or delete activity. If you have such a table and you need to



reclaim the excess disk space it occupies, you will need to use `VACUUM FULL`, or alternatively `CLUSTER` or one of the table-rewriting variants of `ALTER TABLE`. These commands rewrite an entire new copy of the table and build new indexes for it. All these options require an `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock. Note that they also temporarily use extra disk space approximately equal to the size of the table, since the old copies of the table and indexes can't be released until the new ones are complete.

### Tip

If you have a table whose entire contents are deleted on a periodic basis, consider doing it with `TRUNCATE` rather than using `DELETE` followed by `VACUUM`. `TRUNCATE` removes the entire content of the table immediately, without requiring a subsequent `VACUUM` or `VACUUM FULL` to reclaim the now-unused disk space. The disadvantage is that strict MVCC semantics are violated.

## 25.1.3. Updating Planner Statistics

The PostgreSQL query planner relies on statistical information about the contents of tables in order to generate good plans for queries. These statistics are gathered by the `ANALYZE` command, which can be invoked by itself or as an optional step in `VACUUM`. It is important to have reasonably accurate statistics, otherwise poor choices of plans might degrade database performance.

The autovacuum daemon, if enabled, will automatically issue `ANALYZE` commands whenever the content of a table has changed sufficiently. However, administrators might prefer to rely on manually-scheduled `ANALYZE` operations, particularly if it is known that update activity on a table will not affect the statistics of “interesting” columns. The daemon schedules `ANALYZE` strictly as a function of the number of rows inserted or updated; it has no knowledge of whether that will lead to meaningful statistical changes.

Tuples changed in partitions and inheritance children do not trigger analyze on the parent table. If the parent table is empty or rarely changed, it may never be processed by autovacuum, and the statistics for the inheritance tree as a whole won't be collected. It is necessary to run `ANALYZE` on the parent table manually in order to keep the statistics up to date.

As with vacuuming for space recovery, frequent updates of statistics are more useful for heavily-updated tables than for seldom-updated ones. But even for a heavily-updated table, there might be no need for statistics updates if the statistical distribution of the data is not changing much. A simple rule of thumb is to think about how much the minimum and maximum values of the columns in the table change. For example, a `timestamp` column that contains the time of row update will have a constantly-increasing maximum value as rows are added and updated; such a column will probably need more frequent statistics updates than, say, a column containing URLs for pages accessed on a website. The URL column might receive changes just as often, but the statistical distribution of its values probably changes relatively slowly.

It is possible to run `ANALYZE` on specific tables and even just specific columns of a table, so the flexibility exists to update some statistics more frequently than others if your application requires it. In practice, however, it is usually best to just analyze the entire database, because it is a fast operation. `ANALYZE` uses a statistically random sampling of the rows of a table rather than reading every single row.

### Tip

Although per-column tweaking of `ANALYZE` frequency might not be very productive, you might find it worthwhile to do per-column adjustment of the level of detail of the statistics collected by `ANALYZE`. Columns that are heavily used in `WHERE` clauses and have highly

irregular data distributions might require a finer-grain data histogram than other columns. See `ALTER TABLE SET STATISTICS`, or change the database-wide default using the `default_statistics_target` configuration parameter.

Also, by default there is limited information available about the selectivity of functions. However, if you create a statistics object or an expression index that uses a function call, useful statistics will be gathered about the function, which can greatly improve query plans that use the expression index.

### Tip

The autovacuum daemon does not issue `ANALYZE` commands for foreign tables, since it has no means of determining how often that might be useful. If your queries require statistics on foreign tables for proper planning, it's a good idea to run manually-managed `ANALYZE` commands on those tables on a suitable schedule.

### Tip

The autovacuum daemon does not issue `ANALYZE` commands for partitioned tables. Inheritance parents will only be analyzed if the parent itself is changed - changes to child tables do not trigger autoanalyze on the parent table. If your queries require statistics on parent tables for proper planning, it is necessary to periodically run a manual `ANALYZE` on those tables to keep the statistics up to date.

## 25.1.4. Updating the Visibility Map

Vacuum maintains a visibility map for each table to keep track of which pages contain only tuples that are known to be visible to all active transactions (and all future transactions, until the page is again modified). This has two purposes. First, vacuum itself can skip such pages on the next run, since there is nothing to clean up.

Second, it allows PostgreSQL to answer some queries using only the index, without reference to the underlying table. Since PostgreSQL indexes don't contain tuple visibility information, a normal index scan fetches the heap tuple for each matching index entry, to check whether it should be seen by the current transaction. An *index-only scan*, on the other hand, checks the visibility map first. If it's known that all tuples on the page are visible, the heap fetch can be skipped. This is most useful on large data sets where the visibility map can prevent disk accesses. The visibility map is vastly smaller than the heap, so it can easily be cached even when the heap is very large.

## 25.1.5. Preventing Transaction ID Wraparound Failures

PostgreSQL's MVCC transaction semantics depend on being able to compare transaction ID (XID) numbers: a row version with an insertion XID greater than the current transaction's XID is “in the future” and should not be visible to the current transaction. But since transaction IDs have limited size (32 bits) a cluster that runs for a long time (more than 4 billion transactions) would suffer *transaction ID wraparound*: the XID counter wraps around to zero, and all of a sudden transactions that were in the past appear to be in the future — which means their output become invisible. In short, catastrophic data loss. (Actually the data is still there, but that's cold comfort if you cannot get at it.) To avoid this, it is necessary to vacuum every table in every database at least once every two billion transactions.

The reason that periodic vacuuming solves the problem is that `VACUUM` will mark rows as *frozen*, indicating that they were inserted by a transaction that committed sufficiently far in the past that the effects of the inserting transaction are certain to be visible to all current and future transactions.

Normal XIDs are compared using modulo-2<sup>32</sup> arithmetic. This means that for every normal XID, there are two billion XIDs that are “older” and two billion that are “newer”; another way to say it is that the normal XID space is circular with no endpoint. Therefore, once a row version has been created with a particular normal XID, the row version will appear to be “in the past” for the next two billion transactions, no matter which normal XID we are talking about. If the row version still exists after more than two billion transactions, it will suddenly appear to be in the future. To prevent this, PostgreSQL reserves a special XID, `FrozenTransactionId`, which does not follow the normal XID comparison rules and is always considered older than every normal XID. Frozen row versions are treated as if the inserting XID were `FrozenTransactionId`, so that they will appear to be “in the past” to all normal transactions regardless of wraparound issues, and so such row versions will be valid until deleted, no matter how long that is.

### Note

In PostgreSQL versions before 9.4, freezing was implemented by actually replacing a row's insertion XID with `FrozenTransactionId`, which was visible in the row's `xmin` system column. Newer versions just set a flag bit, preserving the row's original `xmin` for possible forensic use. However, rows with `xmin` equal to `FrozenTransactionId` (2) may still be found in databases pg\_upgrade'd from pre-9.4 versions.

Also, system catalogs may contain rows with `xmin` equal to `BootstrapTransactionId` (1), indicating that they were inserted during the first phase of `initdb`. Like `FrozenTransactionId`, this special XID is treated as older than every normal XID.

`vacuum_freeze_min_age` controls how old an XID value has to be before rows bearing that XID will be frozen. Increasing this setting may avoid unnecessary work if the rows that would otherwise be frozen will soon be modified again, but decreasing this setting increases the number of transactions that can elapse before the table must be vacuumed again.

VACUUM uses the visibility map to determine which pages of a table must be scanned. Normally, it will skip pages that don't have any dead row versions even if those pages might still have row versions with old XID values. Therefore, normal VACUUMs won't always freeze every old row version in the table. When that happens, VACUUM will eventually need to perform an *aggressive vacuum*, which will freeze all eligible unfrozen XID and MXID values, including those from all-visible but not all-frozen pages. In practice most tables require periodic aggressive vacuuming. `vacuum_freeze_table_age` controls when VACUUM does that: all-visible but not all-frozen pages are scanned if the number of transactions that have passed since the last such scan is greater than `vacuum_freeze_table_age` minus `vacuum_freeze_min_age`. Setting `vacuum_freeze_table_age` to 0 forces VACUUM to always use its aggressive strategy.

The maximum time that a table can go unvacuumed is two billion transactions minus the `vacuum_freeze_min_age` value at the time of the last aggressive vacuum. If it were to go unvacuumed for longer than that, data loss could result. To ensure that this does not happen, `autovacuum` is invoked on any table that might contain unfrozen rows with XIDs older than the age specified by the configuration parameter `autovacuum_freeze_max_age`. (This will happen even if `autovacuum` is disabled.)

This implies that if a table is not otherwise vacuumed, `autovacuum` will be invoked on it approximately once every `autovacuum_freeze_max_age` minus `vacuum_freeze_min_age` transactions. For tables that are regularly vacuumed for space reclamation purposes, this is of little importance. However, for static tables (including tables that receive inserts, but no updates or deletes), there is no need to vacuum for space reclamation, so it can be useful to try to maximize the interval between forced `autovacuum`s on very large static tables. Obviously one can do this either by increasing `autovacuum_freeze_max_age` or decreasing `vacuum_freeze_min_age`.

The effective maximum for `vacuum_freeze_table_age` is `0.95 * autovacuum_freeze_max_age`; a setting higher than that will be capped to the maximum. A value higher than `autovacuum_freeze_max_age` wouldn't make sense because an anti-wraparound `autovac-`

uum would be triggered at that point anyway, and the 0.95 multiplier leaves some breathing room to run a manual VACUUM before that happens. As a rule of thumb, `vacuum_freeze_table_age` should be set to a value somewhat below `autovacuum_freeze_max_age`, leaving enough gap so that a regularly scheduled VACUUM or an autovacuum triggered by normal delete and update activity is run in that window. Setting it too close could lead to anti-wraparound autovacuaums, even though the table was recently vacuumed to reclaim space, whereas lower values lead to more frequent aggressive vacuuming.

The sole disadvantage of increasing `autovacuum_freeze_max_age` (and `vacuum_freeze_table_age` along with it) is that the `pg_xact` and `pg_commit_ts` subdirectories of the database cluster will take more space, because it must store the commit status and (if `track_commit_timestamp` is enabled) timestamp of all transactions back to the `autovacuum_freeze_max_age` horizon. The commit status uses two bits per transaction, so if `autovacuum_freeze_max_age` is set to its maximum allowed value of two billion, `pg_xact` can be expected to grow to about half a gigabyte and `pg_commit_ts` to about 20GB. If this is trivial compared to your total database size, setting `autovacuum_freeze_max_age` to its maximum allowed value is recommended. Otherwise, set it depending on what you are willing to allow for `pg_xact` and `pg_commit_ts` storage. (The default, 200 million transactions, translates to about 50MB of `pg_xact` storage and about 2GB of `pg_commit_ts` storage.)

One disadvantage of decreasing `vacuum_freeze_min_age` is that it might cause VACUUM to do useless work: freezing a row version is a waste of time if the row is modified soon thereafter (causing it to acquire a new XID). So the setting should be large enough that rows are not frozen until they are unlikely to change any more.

To track the age of the oldest unfrozen XIDs in a database, VACUUM stores XID statistics in the system tables `pg_class` and `pg_database`. In particular, the `relfrozenxid` column of a table's `pg_class` row contains the oldest remaining unfrozen XID at the end of the most recent VACUUM that successfully advanced `relfrozenxid` (typically the most recent aggressive VACUUM). Similarly, the `datfrozenxid` column of a database's `pg_database` row is a lower bound on the unfrozen XIDs appearing in that database — it is just the minimum of the per-table `relfrozenxid` values within the database. A convenient way to examine this information is to execute queries such as:

```
SELECT c.oid::regclass as table_name,
       greatest(age(c.relfrozenxid), age(t.relfrozenxid)) as age
FROM   pg_class c
LEFT JOIN pg_class t ON c.reltoastrelid = t.oid
WHERE  c.relkind IN ('r', 'm');
```

```
SELECT datname, age(datfrozenxid) FROM pg_database;
```

The `age` column measures the number of transactions from the cutoff XID to the current transaction's XID.

### Tip

When the VACUUM command's `VERBOSE` parameter is specified, VACUUM prints various statistics about the table. This includes information about how `relfrozenxid` and `relminmxid` advanced, and the number of newly frozen pages. The same details appear in the server log when autovacuum logging (controlled by `log_autovacuum_min_duration`) reports on a VACUUM operation executed by autovacuum.

VACUUM normally only scans pages that have been modified since the last vacuum, but `relfrozenxid` can only be advanced when every page of the table that might contain unfrozen XIDs is scanned. This happens when `relfrozenxid` is more than `vacuum_freeze_table_age` transactions old, when VACUUM's `FREEZE` option is used, or when all pages that are not already all-frozen happen to require vacuuming to remove dead row versions. When VACUUM scans every page in the ta-

ble that is not already all-frozen, it should set `age(relfrozenxid)` to a value just a little more than the `vacuum_freeze_min_age` setting that was used (more by the number of transactions started since the VACUUM started). VACUUM will set `relfrozenxid` to the oldest XID that remains in the table, so it's possible that the final value will be much more recent than strictly required. If no `relfrozenxid`-advancing VACUUM is issued on the table until `autovacuum_freeze_max_age` is reached, an autovacuum will soon be forced for the table.

If for some reason autovacuum fails to clear old XIDs from a table, the system will begin to emit warning messages like this when the database's oldest XIDs reach forty million transactions from the wraparound point:

```
WARNING: database "mydb" must be vacuumed within 39985967
        transactions
HINT:   To avoid a database shutdown, execute a database-wide VACUUM
        in that database.
```

(A manual VACUUM should fix the problem, as suggested by the hint; but note that the VACUUM should be performed by a superuser, else it will fail to process system catalogs, which prevent it from being able to advance the database's `datfrozenxid`.) If these warnings are ignored, the system will refuse to assign new XIDs once there are fewer than three million transactions left until wraparound:

```
ERROR: database is not accepting commands to avoid wraparound data
       loss in database "mydb"
HINT:   Stop the postmaster and vacuum that database in single-user
       mode.
```

In this condition any transactions already in progress can continue, but only read-only transactions can be started. Operations that modify database records or truncate relations will fail. The VACUUM command can still be run normally. Contrary to what the hint states, it is not necessary or desirable to stop the postmaster or enter single user-mode in order to restore normal operation. Instead, follow these steps:

1. Resolve old prepared transactions. You can find these by checking `pg_prepared_xacts` for rows where `age(transactionid)` is large. Such transactions should be committed or rolled back.
2. End long-running open transactions. You can find these by checking `pg_stat_activity` for rows where `age(backend_xid)` or `age(backend_xmin)` is large. Such transactions should be committed or rolled back, or the session can be terminated using `pg_terminate_backend`.
3. Drop any old replication slots. Use `pg_stat_replication` to find slots where `age(xmin)` or `age/catalog_xmin)` is large. In many cases, such slots were created for replication to servers that no longer exist, or that have been down for a long time. If you drop a slot for a server that still exists and might still try to connect to that slot, that replica may need to be rebuilt.
4. Execute VACUUM in the target database. A database-wide VACUUM is simplest; to reduce the time required, it is also possible to issue manual VACUUM commands on the tables where `relminxid` is oldest. Do not use `VACUUM FULL` in this scenario, because it requires an XID and will therefore fail, except in super-user mode, where it will instead consume an XID and thus increase the risk of transaction ID wraparound. Do not use `VACUUM FREEZE` either, because it will do more than the minimum amount of work required to restore normal operation.
5. Once normal operation is restored, ensure that autovacuum is properly configured in the target database in order to avoid future problems.

### Note

In earlier versions, it was sometimes necessary to stop the postmaster and VACUUM the database in a single-user mode. In typical scenarios, this is no longer necessary, and should be

avoided whenever possible, since it involves taking the system down. It is also riskier, since it disables transaction ID wraparound safeguards that are designed to prevent data loss. The only reason to use single-user mode in this scenario is if you wish to `TRUNCATE` or `DROP` unneeded tables to avoid needing to `VACUUM` them. The three-million-transaction safety margin exists to let the administrator do this. See the postgres reference page for details about using single-user mode.

### 25.1.5.1. Multixacts and Wraparound

*Multixact IDs* are used to support row locking by multiple transactions. Since there is only limited space in a tuple header to store lock information, that information is encoded as a “multiple transaction ID”, or multixact ID for short, whenever there is more than one transaction concurrently locking a row. Information about which transaction IDs are included in any particular multixact ID is stored separately in the `pg_multixact` subdirectory, and only the multixact ID appears in the `xmax` field in the tuple header. Like transaction IDs, multixact IDs are implemented as a 32-bit counter and corresponding storage, all of which requires careful aging management, storage cleanup, and wraparound handling. There is a separate storage area which holds the list of members in each multixact, which also uses a 32-bit counter and which must also be managed.

Whenever `VACUUM` scans any part of a table, it will replace any multixact ID it encounters which is older than `vacuum_multixact_freeze_min_age` by a different value, which can be the zero value, a single transaction ID, or a newer multixact ID. For each table, `pg_class.relmixmapid` stores the oldest possible multixact ID still appearing in any tuple of that table. If this value is older than `vacuum_multixact_freeze_table_age`, an aggressive vacuum is forced. As discussed in the previous section, an aggressive vacuum means that only those pages which are known to be all-frozen will be skipped. `mxid_age()` can be used on `pg_class.relmixmapid` to find its age.

Aggressive `VACUUM`s, regardless of what causes them, are *guaranteed* to be able to advance the table's `relmixmapid`. Eventually, as all tables in all databases are scanned and their oldest multixact values are advanced, on-disk storage for older multixacts can be removed.

As a safety device, an aggressive vacuum scan will occur for any table whose multixact-age is greater than `autovacuum_multixact_freeze_max_age`. Also, if the storage occupied by multixacts members exceeds 2GB, aggressive vacuum scans will occur more often for all tables, starting with those that have the oldest multixact-age. Both of these kinds of aggressive scans will occur even if `autovacuum` is nominally disabled.

Similar to the XID case, if `autovacuum` fails to clear old MXIDs from a table, the system will begin to emit warning messages when the database's oldest MXIDs reach forty million transactions from the wraparound point. And, just as in the XID case, if these warnings are ignored, the system will refuse to generate new MXIDs once there are fewer than three million left until wraparound.

Normal operation when MXIDs are exhausted can be restored in much the same way as when XIDs are exhausted. Follow the same steps in the previous section, but with the following differences:

1. Running transactions and prepared transactions can be ignored if there is no chance that they might appear in a multixact.
2. MXID information is not directly visible in system views such as `pg_stat_activity`; however, looking for old XIDs is still a good way of determining which transactions are causing MXID wraparound problems.
3. XID exhaustion will block all write transactions, but MXID exhaustion will only block a subset of write transactions, specifically those that involve row locks that require an MXID.

### 25.1.6. The Autovacuum Daemon

PostgreSQL has an optional but highly recommended feature called *autovacuum*, whose purpose is to automate the execution of `VACUUM` and `ANALYZE` commands. When enabled, *autovacuum* checks for tables that have had a large number of inserted, updated or deleted tuples. These checks use the statistics collection facility; therefore, *autovacuum* cannot be used unless `track_counts` is set to `true`. In the default configuration, *autovacuuming* is enabled and the related configuration parameters are appropriately set.

The “*autovacuum daemon*” actually consists of multiple processes. There is a persistent daemon process, called the *autovacuum launcher*, which is in charge of starting *autovacuum worker* processes for all databases. The launcher will distribute the work across time, attempting to start one worker within each database every `autovacuum_naptime` seconds. (Therefore, if the installation has  $N$  databases, a new worker will be launched every  $\text{autovacuum\_naptime}/N$  seconds.) A maximum of `autovacuum_max_workers` worker processes are allowed to run at the same time. If there are more than `autovacuum_max_workers` databases to be processed, the next database will be processed as soon as the first worker finishes. Each worker process will check each table within its database and execute `VACUUM` and/or `ANALYZE` as needed. `log_autovacuum_min_duration` can be set to monitor *autovacuum workers'* activity.

If several large tables all become eligible for vacuuming in a short amount of time, all *autovacuum workers* might become occupied with vacuuming those tables for a long period. This would result in other tables and databases not being vacuumed until a worker becomes available. There is no limit on how many workers might be in a single database, but workers do try to avoid repeating work that has already been done by other workers. Note that the number of running workers does not count towards `max_connections` or `superuser_reserved_connections` limits.

Tables whose `relfrozenxid` value is more than `autovacuum_freeze_max_age` transactions old are always vacuumed (this also applies to those tables whose freeze max age has been modified via storage parameters; see below). Otherwise, if the number of tuples obsoleted since the last `VACUUM` exceeds the “vacuum threshold”, the table is vacuumed. The vacuum threshold is defined as:

```
vacuum threshold = vacuum base threshold + vacuum scale factor *  
    number of tuples
```

where the vacuum base threshold is `autovacuum_vacuum_threshold`, the vacuum scale factor is `autovacuum_vacuum_scale_factor`, and the number of tuples is `pg_class.rel tuples`.

The table is also vacuumed if the number of tuples inserted since the last vacuum has exceeded the defined insert threshold, which is defined as:

```
vacuum insert threshold = vacuum base insert threshold + vacuum  
    insert scale factor * number of tuples
```

where the vacuum insert base threshold is `autovacuum_vacuum_insert_threshold`, and vacuum insert scale factor is `autovacuum_vacuum_insert_scale_factor`. Such vacuums may allow portions of the table to be marked as *all visible* and also allow tuples to be frozen, which can reduce the work required in subsequent vacuums. For tables which receive `INSERT` operations but no or almost no `UPDATE/DELETE` operations, it may be beneficial to lower the table's `autovacuum_freeze_min_age` as this may allow tuples to be frozen by earlier vacuums. The number of obsolete tuples and the number of inserted tuples are obtained from the cumulative statistics system; it is a semi-accurate count updated by each `UPDATE`, `DELETE` and `INSERT` operation. (It is only semi-accurate because some information might be lost under heavy load.) If the `relfrozenxid` value of the table is more than `vacuum_freeze_table_age` transactions old, an aggressive vacuum is performed to freeze old tuples and advance `relfrozenxid`; otherwise, only pages that have been modified since the last vacuum are scanned.

For analyze, a similar condition is used: the threshold, defined as:

```
analyze threshold = analyze base threshold + analyze scale factor *  
number of tuples
```

is compared to the total number of tuples inserted, updated, or deleted since the last ANALYZE.

Partitioned tables do not directly store tuples and consequently are not processed by autovacuum. (Autovacuum does process table partitions just like other tables.) Unfortunately, this means that autovacuum does not run ANALYZE on partitioned tables, and this can cause suboptimal plans for queries that reference partitioned table statistics. You can work around this problem by manually running ANALYZE on partitioned tables when they are first populated, and again whenever the distribution of data in their partitions changes significantly.

Temporary tables cannot be accessed by autovacuum. Therefore, appropriate vacuum and analyze operations should be performed via session SQL commands.

The default thresholds and scale factors are taken from `postgresql.conf`, but it is possible to override them (and many other autovacuum control parameters) on a per-table basis; see Storage Parameters for more information. If a setting has been changed via a table's storage parameters, that value is used when processing that table; otherwise the global settings are used. See Section 20.10 for more details on the global settings.

When multiple workers are running, the autovacuum cost delay parameters (see Section 20.4.4) are “balanced” among all the running workers, so that the total I/O impact on the system is the same regardless of the number of workers actually running. However, any workers processing tables whose per-table `autovacuum_vacuum_cost_delay` or `autovacuum_vacuum_cost_limit` storage parameters have been set are not considered in the balancing algorithm.

Autovacuum workers generally don't block other commands. If a process attempts to acquire a lock that conflicts with the `SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE` lock held by autovacuum, lock acquisition will interrupt the autovacuum. For conflicting lock modes, see Table 13.2. However, if the autovacuum is running to prevent transaction ID wraparound (i.e., the autovacuum query name in the `pg_stat_activity` view ends with `(to prevent wraparound)`), the autovacuum is not automatically interrupted.

### Warning

Regularly running commands that acquire locks conflicting with a `SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE` lock (e.g., ANALYZE) can effectively prevent autovacuum from ever completing.

## 25.2. Routine Reindexing

In some situations it is worthwhile to rebuild indexes periodically with the REINDEX command or a series of individual rebuilding steps.

B-tree index pages that have become completely empty are reclaimed for re-use. However, there is still a possibility of inefficient use of space: if all but a few index keys on a page have been deleted, the page remains allocated. Therefore, a usage pattern in which most, but not all, keys in each range are eventually deleted will see poor use of space. For such usage patterns, periodic reindexing is recommended.

The potential for bloat in non-B-tree indexes has not been well researched. It is a good idea to periodically monitor the index's physical size when using any non-B-tree index type.

Also, for B-tree indexes, a freshly-constructed index is slightly faster to access than one that has been updated many times because logically adjacent pages are usually also physically adjacent in a newly built index. (This consideration does not apply to non-B-tree indexes.) It might be worthwhile to reindex periodically just to improve access speed.



REINDEX can be used safely and easily in all cases. This command requires an ACCESS EXCLUSIVE lock by default, hence it is often preferable to execute it with its CONCURRENTLY option, which requires only a SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE lock.

## 25.3. Log File Maintenance

It is a good idea to save the database server's log output somewhere, rather than just discarding it via `/dev/null`. The log output is invaluable when diagnosing problems.

### Note

The server log can contain sensitive information and needs to be protected, no matter how or where it is stored, or the destination to which it is routed. For example, some DDL statements might contain plaintext passwords or other authentication details. Logged statements at the ERROR level might show the SQL source code for applications and might also contain some parts of data rows. Recording data, events and related information is the intended function of this facility, so this is not a leakage or a bug. Please ensure the server logs are visible only to appropriately authorized people.

Log output tends to be voluminous (especially at higher debug levels) so you won't want to save it indefinitely. You need to *rotate* the log files so that new log files are started and old ones removed after a reasonable period of time.

If you simply direct the stderr of `postgres` into a file, you will have log output, but the only way to truncate the log file is to stop and restart the server. This might be acceptable if you are using PostgreSQL in a development environment, but few production servers would find this behavior acceptable.

A better approach is to send the server's stderr output to some type of log rotation program. There is a built-in log rotation facility, which you can use by setting the configuration parameter `logging_collector` to `true` in `postgresql.conf`. The control parameters for this program are described in Section 20.8.1. You can also use this approach to capture the log data in machine readable CSV (comma-separated values) format.

Alternatively, you might prefer to use an external log rotation program if you have one that you are already using with other server software. For example, the `rotatelogs` tool included in the Apache distribution can be used with PostgreSQL. One way to do this is to pipe the server's stderr output to the desired program. If you start the server with `pg_ctl`, then stderr is already redirected to stdout, so you just need a pipe command, for example:

```
pg_ctl start | rotatelogs /var/log/pgsql_log 86400
```

You can combine these approaches by setting up `logrotate` to collect log files produced by PostgreSQL built-in logging collector. In this case, the logging collector defines the names and location of the log files, while `logrotate` periodically archives these files. When initiating log rotation, `logrotate` must ensure that the application sends further output to the new file. This is commonly done with a `postrotate` script that sends a `SIGHUP` signal to the application, which then reopens the log file. In PostgreSQL, you can run `pg_ctl` with the `logrotate` option instead. When the server receives this command, the server either switches to a new log file or reopens the existing file, depending on the logging configuration (see Section 20.8.1).

### Note

When using static log file names, the server might fail to reopen the log file if the max open file limit is reached or a file table overflow occurs. In this case, log messages are sent to the old log

file until a successful log rotation. If logrotate is configured to compress the log file and delete it, the server may lose the messages logged in this time frame. To avoid this issue, you can configure the logging collector to dynamically assign log file names and use a `prerotate` script to ignore open log files.

Another production-grade approach to managing log output is to send it to syslog and let syslog deal with file rotation. To do this, set the configuration parameter `log_destination` to `syslog` (to log to syslog only) in `postgresql.conf`. Then you can send a `SIGHUP` signal to the syslog daemon whenever you want to force it to start writing a new log file. If you want to automate log rotation, the logrotate program can be configured to work with log files from syslog.

On many systems, however, syslog is not very reliable, particularly with large log messages; it might truncate or drop messages just when you need them the most. Also, on Linux, syslog will flush each message to disk, yielding poor performance. (You can use a “-” at the start of the file name in the syslog configuration file to disable syncing.)

Note that all the solutions described above take care of starting new log files at configurable intervals, but they do not handle deletion of old, no-longer-useful log files. You will probably want to set up a batch job to periodically delete old log files. Another possibility is to configure the rotation program so that old log files are overwritten cyclically.

`pgBadger`<sup>2</sup> is an external project that does sophisticated log file analysis. `check_postgres`<sup>3</sup> provides Nagios alerts when important messages appear in the log files, as well as detection of many other extraordinary conditions.

---

<sup>2</sup> <https://pgbadger.darold.net/>

<sup>3</sup> [https://bucardo.org/check\\_postgres/](https://bucardo.org/check_postgres/)

---

# Chapter 26. Backup and Restore

As with everything that contains valuable data, PostgreSQL databases should be backed up regularly. While the procedure is essentially simple, it is important to have a clear understanding of the underlying techniques and assumptions.

There are three fundamentally different approaches to backing up PostgreSQL data:

- SQL dump
- File system level backup
- Continuous archiving

Each has its own strengths and weaknesses; each is discussed in turn in the following sections.

## 26.1. SQL Dump

The idea behind this dump method is to generate a file with SQL commands that, when fed back to the server, will recreate the database in the same state as it was at the time of the dump. PostgreSQL provides the utility program `pg_dump` for this purpose. The basic usage of this command is:

```
pg_dump dbname > dumpfile
```

As you see, `pg_dump` writes its result to the standard output. We will see below how this can be useful. While the above command creates a text file, `pg_dump` can create files in other formats that allow for parallelism and more fine-grained control of object restoration.

`pg_dump` is a regular PostgreSQL client application (albeit a particularly clever one). This means that you can perform this backup procedure from any remote host that has access to the database. But remember that `pg_dump` does not operate with special permissions. In particular, it must have read access to all tables that you want to back up, so in order to back up the entire database you almost always have to run it as a database superuser. (If you do not have sufficient privileges to back up the entire database, you can still back up portions of the database to which you do have access using options such as `-n schema` or `-t table`.)

To specify which database server `pg_dump` should contact, use the command line options `-h host` and `-p port`. The default host is the local host or whatever your `PGHOST` environment variable specifies. Similarly, the default port is indicated by the `PGPORT` environment variable or, failing that, by the compiled-in default. (Conveniently, the server will normally have the same compiled-in default.)

Like any other PostgreSQL client application, `pg_dump` will by default connect with the database user name that is equal to the current operating system user name. To override this, either specify the `-U` option or set the environment variable `PGUSER`. Remember that `pg_dump` connections are subject to the normal client authentication mechanisms (which are described in Chapter 21).

An important advantage of `pg_dump` over the other backup methods described later is that `pg_dump`'s output can generally be re-loaded into newer versions of PostgreSQL, whereas file-level backups and continuous archiving are both extremely server-version-specific. `pg_dump` is also the only method that will work when transferring a database to a different machine architecture, such as going from a 32-bit to a 64-bit server.

Dumps created by `pg_dump` are internally consistent, meaning, the dump represents a snapshot of the database at the time `pg_dump` began running. `pg_dump` does not block other operations on the database while it is working. (Exceptions are those operations that need to operate with an exclusive lock, such as most forms of `ALTER TABLE`.)

## 26.1.1. Restoring the Dump

Text files created by `pg_dump` are intended to be read in by the `psql` program. The general command form to restore a dump is

```
psql dbname < dumpfile
```

where *dumpfile* is the file output by the `pg_dump` command. The database *dbname* will not be created by this command, so you must create it yourself from `template0` before executing `psql` (e.g., with `createdb -T template0 dbname`). `psql` supports options similar to `pg_dump` for specifying the database server to connect to and the user name to use. See the `psql` reference page for more information. Non-text file dumps are restored using the `pg_restore` utility.

Before restoring an SQL dump, all the users who own objects or were granted permissions on objects in the dumped database must already exist. If they do not, the restore will fail to recreate the objects with the original ownership and/or permissions. (Sometimes this is what you want, but usually it is not.)

By default, the `psql` script will continue to execute after an SQL error is encountered. You might wish to run `psql` with the `ON_ERROR_STOP` variable set to alter that behavior and have `psql` exit with an exit status of 3 if an SQL error occurs:

```
psql --set ON_ERROR_STOP=on dbname < dumpfile
```

Either way, you will only have a partially restored database. Alternatively, you can specify that the whole dump should be restored as a single transaction, so the restore is either fully completed or fully rolled back. This mode can be specified by passing the `-1` or `--single-transaction` command-line options to `psql`. When using this mode, be aware that even a minor error can rollback a restore that has already run for many hours. However, that might still be preferable to manually cleaning up a complex database after a partially restored dump.

The ability of `pg_dump` and `psql` to write to or read from pipes makes it possible to dump a database directly from one server to another, for example:

```
pg_dump -h host1 dbname | psql -h host2 dbname
```

### Important

The dumps produced by `pg_dump` are relative to `template0`. This means that any languages, procedures, etc. added via `template1` will also be dumped by `pg_dump`. As a result, when restoring, if you are using a customized `template1`, you must create the empty database from `template0`, as in the example above.

After restoring a backup, it is wise to run `ANALYZE` on each database so the query optimizer has useful statistics; see Section 25.1.3 and Section 25.1.6 for more information. For more advice on how to load large amounts of data into PostgreSQL efficiently, refer to Section 14.4.

## 26.1.2. Using `pg_dumpall`

`pg_dump` dumps only a single database at a time, and it does not dump information about roles or tablespaces (because those are cluster-wide rather than per-database). To support convenient dumping of the entire contents of a database cluster, the `pg_dumpall` program is provided. `pg_dumpall` backs up each database in a given cluster, and also preserves cluster-wide data such as role and tablespace definitions. The basic usage of this command is:

```
pg_dumpall > dumpfile
```

The resulting dump can be restored with `psql`:

```
psql -f dumpfile postgres
```

(Actually, you can specify any existing database name to start from, but if you are loading into an empty cluster then `postgres` should usually be used.) It is always necessary to have database superuser access when restoring a `pg_dumpall` dump, as that is required to restore the role and tablespace information. If you use tablespaces, make sure that the tablespace paths in the dump are appropriate for the new installation.

`pg_dumpall` works by emitting commands to re-create roles, tablespaces, and empty databases, then invoking `pg_dump` for each database. This means that while each database will be internally consistent, the snapshots of different databases are not synchronized.

Cluster-wide data can be dumped alone using the `pg_dumpall --globals-only` option. This is necessary to fully backup the cluster if running the `pg_dump` command on individual databases.

## 26.1.3. Handling Large Databases

Some operating systems have maximum file size limits that cause problems when creating large `pg_dump` output files. Fortunately, `pg_dump` can write to the standard output, so you can use standard Unix tools to work around this potential problem. There are several possible methods:

**Use compressed dumps.** You can use your favorite compression program, for example `gzip`:

```
pg_dump dbname | gzip > filename.gz
```

Reload with:

```
gunzip -c filename.gz | psql dbname
```

or:

```
cat filename.gz | gunzip | psql dbname
```

**Use `split`.** The `split` command allows you to split the output into smaller files that are acceptable in size to the underlying file system. For example, to make 2 gigabyte chunks:

```
pg_dump dbname | split -b 2G - filename
```

Reload with:

```
cat filename* | psql dbname
```

If using GNU `split`, it is possible to use it and `gzip` together:

```
pg_dump dbname | split -b 2G --filter='gzip > $FILE.gz'
```

It can be restored using `zcat`.

**Use `pg_dump`'s custom dump format.** If PostgreSQL was built on a system with the `zlib` compression library installed, the custom dump format will compress data as it writes it to the output file. This will produce dump file sizes similar to using `gzip`, but it has the added advantage that tables can be restored selectively. The following command dumps a database using the custom dump format:

```
pg_dump -Fc dbname > filename
```

A custom-format dump is not a script for `psql`, but instead must be restored with `pg_restore`, for example:

```
pg_restore -d dbname filename
```

See the `pg_dump` and `pg_restore` reference pages for details.

For very large databases, you might need to combine `split` with one of the other two approaches.

**Use `pg_dump`'s parallel dump feature.** To speed up the dump of a large database, you can use `pg_dump`'s parallel mode. This will dump multiple tables at the same time. You can control the degree of parallelism with the `-j` parameter. Parallel dumps are only supported for the "directory" archive format.

```
pg_dump -j num -F d -f out.dir dbname
```

You can use `pg_restore -j` to restore a dump in parallel. This will work for any archive of either the "custom" or the "directory" archive mode, whether or not it has been created with `pg_dump -j`.

## 26.2. File System Level Backup

An alternative backup strategy is to directly copy the files that PostgreSQL uses to store the data in the database; Section 19.2 explains where these files are located. You can use whatever method you prefer for doing file system backups; for example:

```
tar -cf backup.tar /usr/local/pgsql/data
```

There are two restrictions, however, which make this method impractical, or at least inferior to the `pg_dump` method:

1. The database server *must* be shut down in order to get a usable backup. Half-way measures such as disallowing all connections will *not* work (in part because `tar` and similar tools do not take an atomic snapshot of the state of the file system, but also because of internal buffering within the server). Information about stopping the server can be found in Section 19.5. Needless to say, you also need to shut down the server before restoring the data.
2. If you have dug into the details of the file system layout of the database, you might be tempted to try to back up or restore only certain individual tables or databases from their respective files or directories. This will *not* work because the information contained in these files is not usable without the commit log files, `pg_xact/*`, which contain the commit status of all transactions. A table file is only usable with this information. Of course it is also impossible to restore only a table and the associated `pg_xact` data because that would render all other tables in the database cluster useless. So file system backups only work for complete backup and restoration of an entire database cluster.

An alternative file-system backup approach is to make a "consistent snapshot" of the data directory, if the file system supports that functionality (and you are willing to trust that it is implemented correctly).

The typical procedure is to make a “frozen snapshot” of the volume containing the database, then copy the whole data directory (not just parts, see above) from the snapshot to a backup device, then release the frozen snapshot. This will work even while the database server is running. However, a backup created in this way saves the database files in a state as if the database server was not properly shut down; therefore, when you start the database server on the backed-up data, it will think the previous server instance crashed and will replay the WAL log. This is not a problem; just be aware of it (and be sure to include the WAL files in your backup). You can perform a `CHECKPOINT` before taking the snapshot to reduce recovery time.

If your database is spread across multiple file systems, there might not be any way to obtain exactly-simultaneous frozen snapshots of all the volumes. For example, if your data files and WAL log are on different disks, or if tablespaces are on different file systems, it might not be possible to use snapshot backup because the snapshots *must* be simultaneous. Read your file system documentation very carefully before trusting the consistent-snapshot technique in such situations.

If simultaneous snapshots are not possible, one option is to shut down the database server long enough to establish all the frozen snapshots. Another option is to perform a continuous archiving base backup (Section 26.3.2) because such backups are immune to file system changes during the backup. This requires enabling continuous archiving just during the backup process; restore is done using continuous archive recovery (Section 26.3.4).

Another option is to use `rsync` to perform a file system backup. This is done by first running `rsync` while the database server is running, then shutting down the database server long enough to do an `rsync --checksum`. (`--checksum` is necessary because `rsync` only has file modification-time granularity of one second.) The second `rsync` will be quicker than the first, because it has relatively little data to transfer, and the end result will be consistent because the server was down. This method allows a file system backup to be performed with minimal downtime.

Note that a file system backup will typically be larger than an SQL dump. (`pg_dump` does not need to dump the contents of indexes for example, just the commands to recreate them.) However, taking a file system backup might be faster.

## 26.3. Continuous Archiving and Point-in-Time Recovery (PITR)

At all times, PostgreSQL maintains a *write ahead log* (WAL) in the `pg_wal/` subdirectory of the cluster's data directory. The log records every change made to the database's data files. This log exists primarily for crash-safety purposes: if the system crashes, the database can be restored to consistency by “replaying” the log entries made since the last checkpoint. However, the existence of the log makes it possible to use a third strategy for backing up databases: we can combine a file-system-level backup with backup of the WAL files. If recovery is needed, we restore the file system backup and then replay from the backed-up WAL files to bring the system to a current state. This approach is more complex to administer than either of the previous approaches, but it has some significant benefits:

- We do not need a perfectly consistent file system backup as the starting point. Any internal inconsistency in the backup will be corrected by log replay (this is not significantly different from what happens during crash recovery). So we do not need a file system snapshot capability, just `tar` or a similar archiving tool.
- Since we can combine an indefinitely long sequence of WAL files for replay, continuous backup can be achieved simply by continuing to archive the WAL files. This is particularly valuable for large databases, where it might not be convenient to take a full backup frequently.
- It is not necessary to replay the WAL entries all the way to the end. We could stop the replay at any point and have a consistent snapshot of the database as it was at that time. Thus, this technique supports *point-in-time recovery*: it is possible to restore the database to its state at any time since your base backup was taken.

- If we continuously feed the series of WAL files to another machine that has been loaded with the same base backup file, we have a *warm standby* system: at any point we can bring up the second machine and it will have a nearly-current copy of the database.

### Note

`pg_dump` and `pg_dumpall` do not produce file-system-level backups and cannot be used as part of a continuous-archiving solution. Such dumps are *logical* and do not contain enough information to be used by WAL replay.

As with the plain file-system-backup technique, this method can only support restoration of an entire database cluster, not a subset. Also, it requires a lot of archival storage: the base backup might be bulky, and a busy system will generate many megabytes of WAL traffic that have to be archived. Still, it is the preferred backup technique in many situations where high reliability is needed.

To recover successfully using continuous archiving (also called “online backup” by many database vendors), you need a continuous sequence of archived WAL files that extends back at least as far as the start time of your backup. So to get started, you should set up and test your procedure for archiving WAL files *before* you take your first base backup. Accordingly, we first discuss the mechanics of archiving WAL files.

## 26.3.1. Setting Up WAL Archiving

In an abstract sense, a running PostgreSQL system produces an indefinitely long sequence of WAL records. The system physically divides this sequence into WAL *segment files*, which are normally 16MB apiece (although the segment size can be altered during `initdb`). The segment files are given numeric names that reflect their position in the abstract WAL sequence. When not using WAL archiving, the system normally creates just a few segment files and then “recycles” them by renaming no-longer-needed segment files to higher segment numbers. It's assumed that segment files whose contents precede the last checkpoint are no longer of interest and can be recycled.

When archiving WAL data, we need to capture the contents of each segment file once it is filled, and save that data somewhere before the segment file is recycled for reuse. Depending on the application and the available hardware, there could be many different ways of “saving the data somewhere”: we could copy the segment files to an NFS-mounted directory on another machine, write them onto a tape drive (ensuring that you have a way of identifying the original name of each file), or batch them together and burn them onto CDs, or something else entirely. To provide the database administrator with flexibility, PostgreSQL tries not to make any assumptions about how the archiving will be done. Instead, PostgreSQL lets the administrator specify a shell command or an archive library to be executed to copy a completed segment file to wherever it needs to go. This could be as simple as a shell command that uses `cp`, or it could invoke a complex C function — it's all up to you.

To enable WAL archiving, set the `wal_level` configuration parameter to `replica` or higher, `archive_mode` to `on`, specify the shell command to use in the `archive_command` configuration parameter or specify the library to use in the `archive_library` configuration parameter. In practice these settings will always be placed in the `postgresql.conf` file.

In `archive_command`, `%p` is replaced by the path name of the file to archive, while `%f` is replaced by only the file name. (The path name is relative to the current working directory, i.e., the cluster's data directory.) Use `%%` if you need to embed an actual `%` character in the command. The simplest useful command is something like:

```
archive_command = 'test ! -f /mnt/server/archivedir/%f && cp %p /
mnt/server/archivedir/%f' # Unix
archive_command = 'copy "%p" "C:\\server\\archivedir\\%f"' #
Windows
```



which will copy archivable WAL segments to the directory `/mnt/server/archivedir`. (This is an example, not a recommendation, and might not work on all platforms.) After the `%p` and `%f` parameters have been replaced, the actual command executed might look like this:

```
test ! -f /mnt/server/archivedir/00000001000000A900000065
&& cp pg_wal/00000001000000A900000065 /mnt/server/
archivedir/00000001000000A900000065
```

A similar command will be generated for each new file to be archived.

The archive command will be executed under the ownership of the same user that the PostgreSQL server is running as. Since the series of WAL files being archived contains effectively everything in your database, you will want to be sure that the archived data is protected from prying eyes; for example, archive into a directory that does not have group or world read access.

It is important that the archive command return zero exit status if and only if it succeeds. Upon getting a zero result, PostgreSQL will assume that the file has been successfully archived, and will remove or recycle it. However, a nonzero status tells PostgreSQL that the file was not archived; it will try again periodically until it succeeds.

Another way to archive is to use a custom archive module as the `archive_library`. Since such modules are written in C, creating your own may require considerably more effort than writing a shell command. However, archive modules can be more performant than archiving via shell, and they will have access to many useful server resources. For more information about archive modules, see Chapter 51.

When the archive command is terminated by a signal (other than `SIGTERM` that is used as part of a server shutdown) or an error by the shell with an exit status greater than 125 (such as command not found), or if the archive function emits an `ERROR` or `FATAL`, the archiver process aborts and gets restarted by the postmaster. In such cases, the failure is not reported in `pg_stat_archiver`.

Archive commands and libraries should generally be designed to refuse to overwrite any pre-existing archive file. This is an important safety feature to preserve the integrity of your archive in case of administrator error (such as sending the output of two different servers to the same archive directory). It is advisable to test your proposed archive library to ensure that it does not overwrite an existing file.

In rare cases, PostgreSQL may attempt to re-archive a WAL file that was previously archived. For example, if the system crashes before the server makes a durable record of archival success, the server will attempt to archive the file again after restarting (provided archiving is still enabled). When an archive command or library encounters a pre-existing file, it should return a zero status or `true`, respectively, if the WAL file has identical contents to the pre-existing archive and the pre-existing archive is fully persisted to storage. If a pre-existing file contains different contents than the WAL file being archived, the archive command or library *must* return a nonzero status or `false`, respectively.

The example command above for Unix avoids overwriting a pre-existing archive by including a separate `test` step. On some Unix platforms, `cp` has switches such as `-i` that can be used to do the same thing less verbosely, but you should not rely on these without verifying that the right exit status is returned. (In particular, GNU `cp` will return status zero when `-i` is used and the target file already exists, which is *not* the desired behavior.)

While designing your archiving setup, consider what will happen if the archive command or library fails repeatedly because some aspect requires operator intervention or the archive runs out of space. For example, this could occur if you write to tape without an autochanger; when the tape fills, nothing further can be archived until the tape is swapped. You should ensure that any error condition or request to a human operator is reported appropriately so that the situation can be resolved reasonably quickly. The `pg_wal/` directory will continue to fill with WAL segment files until the situation is resolved. (If the file system containing `pg_wal/` fills up, PostgreSQL will do a PANIC shutdown. No committed transactions will be lost, but the database will remain offline until you free some space.)

The speed of the archive command or library is unimportant as long as it can keep up with the average rate at which your server generates WAL data. Normal operation continues even if the archiving process falls a little behind. If archiving falls significantly behind, this will increase the amount of data that would be lost in the event of a disaster. It will also mean that the `pg_wal/` directory will contain large numbers of not-yet-archived segment files, which could eventually exceed available disk space. You are advised to monitor the archiving process to ensure that it is working as you intend.

In writing your archive command or library, you should assume that the file names to be archived can be up to 64 characters long and can contain any combination of ASCII letters, digits, and dots. It is not necessary to preserve the original relative path (`%p`) but it is necessary to preserve the file name (`%f`).

Note that although WAL archiving will allow you to restore any modifications made to the data in your PostgreSQL database, it will not restore changes made to configuration files (that is, `postgresql.conf`, `pg_hba.conf` and `pg_ident.conf`), since those are edited manually rather than through SQL operations. You might wish to keep the configuration files in a location that will be backed up by your regular file system backup procedures. See Section 20.2 for how to relocate the configuration files.

The archive command or function is only invoked on completed WAL segments. Hence, if your server generates only little WAL traffic (or has slack periods where it does so), there could be a long delay between the completion of a transaction and its safe recording in archive storage. To put a limit on how old unarchived data can be, you can set `archive_timeout` to force the server to switch to a new WAL segment file at least that often. Note that archived files that are archived early due to a forced switch are still the same length as completely full files. It is therefore unwise to set a very short `archive_timeout` — it will bloat your archive storage. `archive_timeout` settings of a minute or so are usually reasonable.

Also, you can force a segment switch manually with `pg_switch_wal` if you want to ensure that a just-finished transaction is archived as soon as possible. Other utility functions related to WAL management are listed in Table 9.91.

When `wal_level` is `minimal` some SQL commands are optimized to avoid WAL logging, as described in Section 14.4.7. If archiving or streaming replication were turned on during execution of one of these statements, WAL would not contain enough information for archive recovery. (Crash recovery is unaffected.) For this reason, `wal_level` can only be changed at server start. However, `archive_command` and `archive_library` can be changed with a configuration file reload. If you are archiving via shell and wish to temporarily stop archiving, one way to do it is to set `archive_command` to the empty string (`' '`). This will cause WAL files to accumulate in `pg_wal/` until a working `archive_command` is re-established.

## 26.3.2. Making a Base Backup

The easiest way to perform a base backup is to use the `pg_basebackup` tool. It can create a base backup either as regular files or as a tar archive. If more flexibility than `pg_basebackup` can provide is required, you can also make a base backup using the low level API (see Section 26.3.3).

It is not necessary to be concerned about the amount of time it takes to make a base backup. However, if you normally run the server with `full_page_writes` disabled, you might notice a drop in performance while the backup runs since `full_page_writes` is effectively forced on during backup mode.

To make use of the backup, you will need to keep all the WAL segment files generated during and after the file system backup. To aid you in doing this, the base backup process creates a *backup history file* that is immediately stored into the WAL archive area. This file is named after the first WAL segment file that you need for the file system backup. For example, if the starting WAL file is `0000000100001234000055CD` the backup history file will be named something like `0000000100001234000055CD.007C9330.backup`. (The second part of the file name stands for an exact position within the WAL file, and can ordinarily be ignored.) Once you have safely

archived the file system backup and the WAL segment files used during the backup (as specified in the backup history file), all archived WAL segments with names numerically less are no longer needed to recover the file system backup and can be deleted. However, you should consider keeping several backup sets to be absolutely certain that you can recover your data.

The backup history file is just a small text file. It contains the label string you gave to `pg_basebackup`, as well as the starting and ending times and WAL segments of the backup. If you used the label to identify the associated dump file, then the archived history file is enough to tell you which dump file to restore.

Since you have to keep around all the archived WAL files back to your last base backup, the interval between base backups should usually be chosen based on how much storage you want to expend on archived WAL files. You should also consider how long you are prepared to spend recovering, if recovery should be necessary — the system will have to replay all those WAL segments, and that could take awhile if it has been a long time since the last base backup.

### 26.3.3. Making a Base Backup Using the Low Level API

The procedure for making a base backup using the low level APIs contains a few more steps than the `pg_basebackup` method, but is relatively simple. It is very important that these steps are executed in sequence, and that the success of a step is verified before proceeding to the next step.

Multiple backups are able to be run concurrently (both those started using this backup API and those started using `pg_basebackup`).

1. Ensure that WAL archiving is enabled and working.
2. Connect to the server (it does not matter which database) as a user with rights to run `pg_backup_start` (superuser, or a user who has been granted `EXECUTE` on the function) and issue the command:

```
SELECT pg_backup_start(label => 'label', fast => false);
```

where `label` is any string you want to use to uniquely identify this backup operation. The connection calling `pg_backup_start` must be maintained until the end of the backup, or the backup will be automatically aborted.

Online backups are always started at the beginning of a checkpoint. By default, `pg_backup_start` will wait for the next regularly scheduled checkpoint to complete, which may take a long time (see the configuration parameters `checkpoint_timeout` and `checkpoint_completion_target`). This is usually preferable as it minimizes the impact on the running system. If you want to start the backup as soon as possible, pass `true` as the second parameter to `pg_backup_start` and it will request an immediate checkpoint, which will finish as fast as possible using as much I/O as possible.

3. Perform the backup, using any convenient file-system-backup tool such as `tar` or `cpio` (not `pg_dump` or `pg_dumpall`). It is neither necessary nor desirable to stop normal operation of the database while you do this. See Section 26.3.3.1 for things to consider during this backup.
4. In the same connection as before, issue the command:

```
SELECT * FROM pg_backup_stop(wait_for_archive => true);
```

This terminates backup mode. On a primary, it also performs an automatic switch to the next WAL segment. On a standby, it is not possible to automatically switch WAL segments, so you may wish to run `pg_switch_wal` on the primary to perform a manual switch. The reason for the switch is to arrange for the last WAL segment file written during the backup interval to be ready to archive.

`pg_backup_stop` will return one row with three values. The second of these fields should be written to a file named `backup_label` in the root directory of the backup. The third field should be written to a file named `tablespace_map` unless the field is empty. These files are vital to the backup working and must be written byte for byte without modification, which may require opening the file in binary mode.

5. Once the WAL segment files active during the backup are archived, you are done. The file identified by `pg_backup_stop`'s first return value is the last segment that is required to form a complete set of backup files. On a primary, if `archive_mode` is enabled and the `wait_for_archive` parameter is `true`, `pg_backup_stop` does not return until the last segment has been archived. On a standby, `archive_mode` must be always in order for `pg_backup_stop` to wait. Archiving of these files happens automatically since you have already configured `archive_command` or `archive_library`. In most cases this happens quickly, but you are advised to monitor your archive system to ensure there are no delays. If the archive process has fallen behind because of failures of the archive command or library, it will keep retrying until the archive succeeds and the backup is complete. If you wish to place a time limit on the execution of `pg_backup_stop`, set an appropriate `statement_timeout` value, but make note that if `pg_backup_stop` terminates because of this your backup may not be valid.

If the backup process monitors and ensures that all WAL segment files required for the backup are successfully archived then the `wait_for_archive` parameter (which defaults to `true`) can be set to `false` to have `pg_backup_stop` return as soon as the stop backup record is written to the WAL. By default, `pg_backup_stop` will wait until all WAL has been archived, which can take some time. This option must be used with caution: if WAL archiving is not monitored correctly then the backup might not include all of the WAL files and will therefore be incomplete and not able to be restored.

### 26.3.3.1. Backing Up the Data Directory

Some file system backup tools emit warnings or errors if the files they are trying to copy change while the copy proceeds. When taking a base backup of an active database, this situation is normal and not an error. However, you need to ensure that you can distinguish complaints of this sort from real errors. For example, some versions of `rsync` return a separate exit code for “vanished source files”, and you can write a driver script to accept this exit code as a non-error case. Also, some versions of GNU `tar` return an error code indistinguishable from a fatal error if a file was truncated while `tar` was copying it. Fortunately, GNU `tar` versions 1.16 and later exit with 1 if a file was changed during the backup, and 2 for other errors. With GNU `tar` version 1.23 and later, you can use the warning options `--warning=no-file-changed` `--warning=no-file-removed` to hide the related warning messages.

Be certain that your backup includes all of the files under the database cluster directory (e.g., `/usr/local/pgsql/data`). If you are using tablespaces that do not reside underneath this directory, be careful to include them as well (and be sure that your backup archives symbolic links as links, otherwise the restore will corrupt your tablespaces).

You should, however, omit from the backup the files within the cluster's `pg_wal/` subdirectory. This slight adjustment is worthwhile because it reduces the risk of mistakes when restoring. This is easy to arrange if `pg_wal/` is a symbolic link pointing to someplace outside the cluster directory, which is a common setup anyway for performance reasons. You might also want to exclude `postmaster.pid` and `postmaster.opts`, which record information about the running postmaster, not about the postmaster which will eventually use this backup. (These files can confuse `pg_ctl`.)

It is often a good idea to also omit from the backup the files within the cluster's `pg_replslot/` directory, so that replication slots that exist on the primary do not become part of the backup. Otherwise, the subsequent use of the backup to create a standby may result in indefinite retention of WAL files on the standby, and possibly bloat on the primary if hot standby feedback is enabled, because the clients that are using those replication slots will still be connecting to and updating the slots on the primary, not the standby. Even if the backup is only intended for use in creating a new primary, copying the

replication slots isn't expected to be particularly useful, since the contents of those slots will likely be badly out of date by the time the new primary comes on line.

The contents of the directories `pg_dynshmem/`, `pg_notify/`, `pg_serial/`, `pg_snapshots/`, `pg_stat_tmp/`, and `pg_subtrans/` (but not the directories themselves) can be omitted from the backup as they will be initialized on postmaster startup.

Any file or directory beginning with `pgsql_tmp` can be omitted from the backup. These files are removed on postmaster start and the directories will be recreated as needed.

`pg_internal.init` files can be omitted from the backup whenever a file of that name is found. These files contain relation cache data that is always rebuilt when recovering.

The backup label file includes the label string you gave to `pg_backup_start`, as well as the time at which `pg_backup_start` was run, and the name of the starting WAL file. In case of confusion it is therefore possible to look inside a backup file and determine exactly which backup session the dump file came from. The tablespace map file includes the symbolic link names as they exist in the directory `pg_tblspc/` and the full path of each symbolic link. These files are not merely for your information; their presence and contents are critical to the proper operation of the system's recovery process.

It is also possible to make a backup while the server is stopped. In this case, you obviously cannot use `pg_backup_start` or `pg_backup_stop`, and you will therefore be left to your own devices to keep track of which backup is which and how far back the associated WAL files go. It is generally better to follow the continuous archiving procedure above.

## 26.3.4. Recovering Using a Continuous Archive Backup

Okay, the worst has happened and you need to recover from your backup. Here is the procedure:

1. Stop the server, if it's running.
2. If you have the space to do so, copy the whole cluster data directory and any tablespaces to a temporary location in case you need them later. Note that this precaution will require that you have enough free space on your system to hold two copies of your existing database. If you do not have enough space, you should at least save the contents of the cluster's `pg_wal` subdirectory, as it might contain WAL files which were not archived before the system went down.
3. Remove all existing files and subdirectories under the cluster data directory and under the root directories of any tablespaces you are using.
4. Restore the database files from your file system backup. Be sure that they are restored with the right ownership (the database system user, not `root`!) and with the right permissions. If you are using tablespaces, you should verify that the symbolic links in `pg_tblspc/` were correctly restored.
5. Remove any files present in `pg_wal/`; these came from the file system backup and are therefore probably obsolete rather than current. If you didn't archive `pg_wal/` at all, then recreate it with proper permissions, being careful to ensure that you re-establish it as a symbolic link if you had it set up that way before.
6. If you have unarchived WAL segment files that you saved in step 2, copy them into `pg_wal/`. (It is best to copy them, not move them, so you still have the unmodified files if a problem occurs and you have to start over.)
7. Set recovery configuration settings in `postgresql.conf` (see Section 20.5.5) and create a file `recovery.signal` in the cluster data directory. You might also want to temporarily modify `pg_hba.conf` to prevent ordinary users from connecting until you are sure the recovery was successful.

8. Start the server. The server will go into recovery mode and proceed to read through the archived WAL files it needs. Should the recovery be terminated because of an external error, the server can simply be restarted and it will continue recovery. Upon completion of the recovery process, the server will remove `recovery.signal` (to prevent accidentally re-entering recovery mode later) and then commence normal database operations.
9. Inspect the contents of the database to ensure you have recovered to the desired state. If not, return to step 1. If all is well, allow your users to connect by restoring `pg_hba.conf` to normal.

The key part of all this is to set up a recovery configuration that describes how you want to recover and how far the recovery should run. The one thing that you absolutely must specify is the `restore_command`, which tells PostgreSQL how to retrieve archived WAL file segments. Like the `archive_command`, this is a shell command string. It can contain `%f`, which is replaced by the name of the desired WAL file, and `%p`, which is replaced by the path name to copy the WAL file to. (The path name is relative to the current working directory, i.e., the cluster's data directory.) Write `%%` if you need to embed an actual `%` character in the command. The simplest useful command is something like:

```
restore_command = 'cp /mnt/server/archivedir/%f %p'
```

which will copy previously archived WAL segments from the directory `/mnt/server/archivedir`. Of course, you can use something much more complicated, perhaps even a shell script that requests the operator to mount an appropriate tape.

It is important that the command return nonzero exit status on failure. The command *will* be called requesting files that are not present in the archive; it must return nonzero when so asked. This is not an error condition. An exception is that if the command was terminated by a signal (other than SIGTERM, which is used as part of a database server shutdown) or an error by the shell (such as command not found), then recovery will abort and the server will not start up.

Not all of the requested files will be WAL segment files; you should also expect requests for files with a suffix of `.history`. Also be aware that the base name of the `%p` path will be different from `%f`; do not expect them to be interchangeable.

WAL segments that cannot be found in the archive will be sought in `pg_wal/`; this allows use of recent un-archived segments. However, segments that are available from the archive will be used in preference to files in `pg_wal/`.

Normally, recovery will proceed through all available WAL segments, thereby restoring the database to the current point in time (or as close as possible given the available WAL segments). Therefore, a normal recovery will end with a “file not found” message, the exact text of the error message depending upon your choice of `restore_command`. You may also see an error message at the start of recovery for a file named something like `00000001.history`. This is also normal and does not indicate a problem in simple recovery situations; see Section 26.3.5 for discussion.

If you want to recover to some previous point in time (say, right before the junior DBA dropped your main transaction table), just specify the required stopping point. You can specify the stop point, known as the “recovery target”, either by date/time, named restore point or by completion of a specific transaction ID. As of this writing only the date/time and named restore point options are very usable, since there are no tools to help you identify with any accuracy which transaction ID to use.

### Note

The stop point must be after the ending time of the base backup, i.e., the end time of `pg_backup_stop`. You cannot use a base backup to recover to a time when that backup was in progress. (To recover to such a time, you must go back to your previous base backup and roll forward from there.)

If recovery finds corrupted WAL data, recovery will halt at that point and the server will not start. In such a case the recovery process could be re-run from the beginning, specifying a “recovery target” before the point of corruption so that recovery can complete normally. If recovery fails for an external reason, such as a system crash or if the WAL archive has become inaccessible, then the recovery can simply be restarted and it will restart almost from where it failed. Recovery restart works much like checkpointing in normal operation: the server periodically forces all its state to disk, and then updates the `pg_control` file to indicate that the already-processed WAL data need not be scanned again.

## 26.3.5. Timelines

The ability to restore the database to a previous point in time creates some complexities that are akin to science-fiction stories about time travel and parallel universes. For example, in the original history of the database, suppose you dropped a critical table at 5:15PM on Tuesday evening, but didn't realize your mistake until Wednesday noon. Unfazed, you get out your backup, restore to the point-in-time 5:14PM Tuesday evening, and are up and running. In *this* history of the database universe, you never dropped the table. But suppose you later realize this wasn't such a great idea, and would like to return to sometime Wednesday morning in the original history. You won't be able to if, while your database was up-and-running, it overwrote some of the WAL segment files that led up to the time you now wish you could get back to. Thus, to avoid this, you need to distinguish the series of WAL records generated after you've done a point-in-time recovery from those that were generated in the original database history.

To deal with this problem, PostgreSQL has a notion of *timelines*. Whenever an archive recovery completes, a new timeline is created to identify the series of WAL records generated after that recovery. The timeline ID number is part of WAL segment file names so a new timeline does not overwrite the WAL data generated by previous timelines. For example, in the WAL file name `0000000100001234000055CD`, the leading `00000001` is the timeline ID in hexadecimal. (Note that in other contexts, such as server log messages, timeline IDs are usually printed in decimal.)

It is in fact possible to archive many different timelines. While that might seem like a useless feature, it's often a lifesaver. Consider the situation where you aren't quite sure what point-in-time to recover to, and so have to do several point-in-time recoveries by trial and error until you find the best place to branch off from the old history. Without timelines this process would soon generate an unmanageable mess. With timelines, you can recover to *any* prior state, including states in timeline branches that you abandoned earlier.

Every time a new timeline is created, PostgreSQL creates a “timeline history” file that shows which timeline it branched off from and when. These history files are necessary to allow the system to pick the right WAL segment files when recovering from an archive that contains multiple timelines. Therefore, they are archived into the WAL archive area just like WAL segment files. The history files are just small text files, so it's cheap and appropriate to keep them around indefinitely (unlike the segment files which are large). You can, if you like, add comments to a history file to record your own notes about how and why this particular timeline was created. Such comments will be especially valuable when you have a thicket of different timelines as a result of experimentation.

The default behavior of recovery is to recover to the latest timeline found in the archive. If you wish to recover to the timeline that was current when the base backup was taken or into a specific child timeline (that is, you want to return to some state that was itself generated after a recovery attempt), you need to specify `current` or the target timeline ID in `recovery_target_timeline`. You cannot recover into timelines that branched off earlier than the base backup.

## 26.3.6. Tips and Examples

Some tips for configuring continuous archiving are given here.

### 26.3.6.1. Standalone Hot Backups

It is possible to use PostgreSQL's backup facilities to produce standalone hot backups. These are backups that cannot be used for point-in-time recovery, yet are typically much faster to backup and

restore than `pg_dump` dumps. (They are also much larger than `pg_dump` dumps, so in some cases the speed advantage might be negated.)

As with base backups, the easiest way to produce a standalone hot backup is to use the `pg_basebackup` tool. If you include the `-X` parameter when calling it, all the write-ahead log required to use the backup will be included in the backup automatically, and no special action is required to restore the backup.

### 26.3.6.2. Compressed Archive Logs

If archive storage size is a concern, you can use `gzip` to compress the archive files:

```
archive_command = 'gzip < %p > /mnt/server/archivedir/%f.gz'
```

You will then need to use `gunzip` during recovery:

```
restore_command = 'gunzip < /mnt/server/archivedir/%f.gz > %p'
```

### 26.3.6.3. archive\_command Scripts

Many people choose to use scripts to define their `archive_command`, so that their `postgresql.conf` entry looks very simple:

```
archive_command = 'local_backup_script.sh "%p" "%f"'
```

Using a separate script file is advisable any time you want to use more than a single command in the archiving process. This allows all complexity to be managed within the script, which can be written in a popular scripting language such as `bash` or `perl`.

Examples of requirements that might be solved within a script include:

- Copying data to secure off-site data storage
- Batching WAL files so that they are transferred every three hours, rather than one at a time
- Interfacing with other backup and recovery software
- Interfacing with monitoring software to report errors

#### Tip

When using an `archive_command` script, it's desirable to enable `logging_collector`. Any messages written to `stderr` from the script will then appear in the database server log, allowing complex configurations to be diagnosed easily if they fail.

### 26.3.7. Caveats

At this writing, there are several limitations of the continuous archiving technique. These will probably be fixed in future releases:

- If a `CREATE DATABASE` command is executed while a base backup is being taken, and then the template database that the `CREATE DATABASE` copied is modified while the base backup is still in progress, it is possible that recovery will cause those modifications to be propagated into the created database as well. This is of course undesirable. To avoid this risk, it is best not to modify any template databases while taking a base backup.



- `CREATE TABLESPACE` commands are WAL-logged with the literal absolute path, and will therefore be replayed as tablespace creations with the same absolute path. This might be undesirable if the WAL is being replayed on a different machine. It can be dangerous even if the WAL is being replayed on the same machine, but into a new data directory: the replay will still overwrite the contents of the original tablespace. To avoid potential gotchas of this sort, the best practice is to take a new base backup after creating or dropping tablespaces.

It should also be noted that the default WAL format is fairly bulky since it includes many disk page snapshots. These page snapshots are designed to support crash recovery, since we might need to fix partially-written disk pages. Depending on your system hardware and software, the risk of partial writes might be small enough to ignore, in which case you can significantly reduce the total volume of archived WAL files by turning off page snapshots using the `full_page_writes` parameter. (Read the notes and warnings in Chapter 30 before you do so.) Turning off page snapshots does not prevent use of the WAL for PITR operations. An area for future development is to compress archived WAL data by removing unnecessary page copies even when `full_page_writes` is on. In the meantime, administrators might wish to reduce the number of page snapshots included in WAL by increasing the checkpoint interval parameters as much as feasible.

---

# Chapter 27. High Availability, Load Balancing, and Replication

Database servers can work together to allow a second server to take over quickly if the primary server fails (high availability), or to allow several computers to serve the same data (load balancing). Ideally, database servers could work together seamlessly. Web servers serving static web pages can be combined quite easily by merely load-balancing web requests to multiple machines. In fact, read-only database servers can be combined relatively easily too. Unfortunately, most database servers have a read/write mix of requests, and read/write servers are much harder to combine. This is because though read-only data needs to be placed on each server only once, a write to any server has to be propagated to all servers so that future read requests to those servers return consistent results.

This synchronization problem is the fundamental difficulty for servers working together. Because there is no single solution that eliminates the impact of the sync problem for all use cases, there are multiple solutions. Each solution addresses this problem in a different way, and minimizes its impact for a specific workload.

Some solutions deal with synchronization by allowing only one server to modify the data. Servers that can modify data are called read/write, *master* or *primary* servers. Servers that track changes in the primary are called *standby* or *secondary* servers. A standby server that cannot be connected to until it is promoted to a primary server is called a *warm standby* server, and one that can accept connections and serves read-only queries is called a *hot standby* server.

Some solutions are synchronous, meaning that a data-modifying transaction is not considered committed until all servers have committed the transaction. This guarantees that a failover will not lose any data and that all load-balanced servers will return consistent results no matter which server is queried. In contrast, asynchronous solutions allow some delay between the time of a commit and its propagation to the other servers, opening the possibility that some transactions might be lost in the switch to a backup server, and that load balanced servers might return slightly stale results. Asynchronous communication is used when synchronous would be too slow.

Solutions can also be categorized by their granularity. Some solutions can deal only with an entire database server, while others allow control at the per-table or per-database level.

Performance must be considered in any choice. There is usually a trade-off between functionality and performance. For example, a fully synchronous solution over a slow network might cut performance by more than half, while an asynchronous one might have a minimal performance impact.

The remainder of this section outlines various failover, replication, and load balancing solutions.

## 27.1. Comparison of Different Solutions

### Shared Disk Failover

Shared disk failover avoids synchronization overhead by having only one copy of the database. It uses a single disk array that is shared by multiple servers. If the main database server fails, the standby server is able to mount and start the database as though it were recovering from a database crash. This allows rapid failover with no data loss.

Shared hardware functionality is common in network storage devices. Using a network file system is also possible, though care must be taken that the file system has full POSIX behavior (see Section 19.2.2.1). One significant limitation of this method is that if the shared disk array fails or becomes corrupt, the primary and standby servers are both nonfunctional. Another issue is that the standby server should never access the shared storage while the primary server is running.

### File System (Block Device) Replication

A modified version of shared hardware functionality is file system replication, where all changes to a file system are mirrored to a file system residing on another computer. The only restriction is that the mirroring must be done in a way that ensures the standby server has a consistent copy of the file system — specifically, writes to the standby must be done in the same order as those on the primary. DRBD is a popular file system replication solution for Linux.

### Write-Ahead Log Shipping

Warm and hot standby servers can be kept current by reading a stream of write-ahead log (WAL) records. If the main server fails, the standby contains almost all of the data of the main server, and can be quickly made the new primary database server. This can be synchronous or asynchronous and can only be done for the entire database server.

A standby server can be implemented using file-based log shipping (Section 27.2) or streaming replication (see Section 27.2.5), or a combination of both. For information on hot standby, see Section 27.4.

### Logical Replication

Logical replication allows a database server to send a stream of data modifications to another server. PostgreSQL logical replication constructs a stream of logical data modifications from the WAL. Logical replication allows replication of data changes on a per-table basis. In addition, a server that is publishing its own changes can also subscribe to changes from another server, allowing data to flow in multiple directions. For more information on logical replication, see Chapter 31. Through the logical decoding interface (Chapter 49), third-party extensions can also provide similar functionality.

### Trigger-Based Primary-Standby Replication

A trigger-based replication setup typically funnels data modification queries to a designated primary server. Operating on a per-table basis, the primary server sends data changes (typically) asynchronously to the standby servers. Standby servers can answer queries while the primary is running, and may allow some local data changes or write activity. This form of replication is often used for offloading large analytical or data warehouse queries.

Slony-I is an example of this type of replication, with per-table granularity, and support for multiple standby servers. Because it updates the standby server asynchronously (in batches), there is possible data loss during fail over.

### SQL-Based Replication Middleware

With SQL-based replication middleware, a program intercepts every SQL query and sends it to one or all servers. Each server operates independently. Read-write queries must be sent to all servers, so that every server receives any changes. But read-only queries can be sent to just one server, allowing the read workload to be distributed among them.

If queries are simply broadcast unmodified, functions like `random()`, `CURRENT_TIMESTAMP`, and sequences can have different values on different servers. This is because each server operates independently, and because SQL queries are broadcast rather than actual data changes. If this is unacceptable, either the middleware or the application must determine such values from a single source and then use those values in write queries. Care must also be taken that all transactions either commit or abort on all servers, perhaps using two-phase commit (`PREPARE TRANSACTION` and `COMMIT PREPARED`). Pgpool-II and Continuent Tungsten are examples of this type of replication.

### Asynchronous Multimaster Replication

For servers that are not regularly connected or have slow communication links, like laptops or remote servers, keeping data consistent among servers is a challenge. Using asynchronous mul-

timaster replication, each server works independently, and periodically communicates with the other servers to identify conflicting transactions. The conflicts can be resolved by users or conflict resolution rules. Bucardo is an example of this type of replication.

#### Synchronous Multimaster Replication

In synchronous multimaster replication, each server can accept write requests, and modified data is transmitted from the original server to every other server before each transaction commits. Heavy write activity can cause excessive locking and commit delays, leading to poor performance. Read requests can be sent to any server. Some implementations use shared disk to reduce the communication overhead. Synchronous multimaster replication is best for mostly read workloads, though its big advantage is that any server can accept write requests — there is no need to partition workloads between primary and standby servers, and because the data changes are sent from one server to another, there is no problem with non-deterministic functions like `random()`.

PostgreSQL does not offer this type of replication, though PostgreSQL two-phase commit (PREPARE TRANSACTION and COMMIT PREPARED) can be used to implement this in application code or middleware.

Table 27.1 summarizes the capabilities of the various solutions listed above.

**Table 27.1. High Availability, Load Balancing, and Replication Feature Matrix**

Feature	Shared Disk	File System Repl.	Write-Ahead Log Shipping	Logical Repl.	Trigger-Based Repl.	SQL Repl. Middle-ware	Async. MM Repl.	Sync. MM Repl.
Popular examples	NAS	DRBD	built-in streaming repl.	built-in logical repl., pglogical	Londiste, Slony	pgpool-II	Bucardo	
Comm. method	shared disk	disk blocks	WAL	logical decoding	table rows	SQL	table rows	table rows and row locks
No special hardware required		•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Allows multiple primary servers				•		•	•	•
No overhead on primary	•		•	•		•		
No waiting for multiple servers	•		with sync off	with sync off	•		•	
Primary failure will never lose data	•	•	with sync on	with sync on		•		•
Replicas accept read-only queries			with hot standby	•	•	•	•	•

Feature	Shared Disk	File System Repl.	Write-Ahead Log Shipping	Logical Repl.	Trigger-Based Repl.	SQL Repl. Middleware	Async. MM Repl.	Sync. MM Repl.
Per-table granularity				•	•		•	•
No conflict resolution necessary	•	•	•		•	•		•

There are a few solutions that do not fit into the above categories:

#### Data Partitioning

Data partitioning splits tables into data sets. Each set can be modified by only one server. For example, data can be partitioned by offices, e.g., London and Paris, with a server in each office. If queries combining London and Paris data are necessary, an application can query both servers, or primary/standby replication can be used to keep a read-only copy of the other office's data on each server.

#### Multiple-Server Parallel Query Execution

Many of the above solutions allow multiple servers to handle multiple queries, but none allow a single query to use multiple servers to complete faster. This solution allows multiple servers to work concurrently on a single query. It is usually accomplished by splitting the data among servers and having each server execute its part of the query and return results to a central server where they are combined and returned to the user. This can be implemented using the PL/Proxy tool set.

It should also be noted that because PostgreSQL is open source and easily extended, a number of companies have taken PostgreSQL and created commercial closed-source solutions with unique failover, replication, and load balancing capabilities. These are not discussed here.

## 27.2. Log-Shipping Standby Servers

Continuous archiving can be used to create a *high availability* (HA) cluster configuration with one or more *standby servers* ready to take over operations if the primary server fails. This capability is widely referred to as *warm standby* or *log shipping*.

The primary and standby server work together to provide this capability, though the servers are only loosely coupled. The primary server operates in continuous archiving mode, while each standby server operates in continuous recovery mode, reading the WAL files from the primary. No changes to the database tables are required to enable this capability, so it offers low administration overhead compared to some other replication solutions. This configuration also has relatively low performance impact on the primary server.

Directly moving WAL records from one database server to another is typically described as log shipping. PostgreSQL implements file-based log shipping by transferring WAL records one file (WAL segment) at a time. WAL files (16MB) can be shipped easily and cheaply over any distance, whether it be to an adjacent system, another system at the same site, or another system on the far side of the globe. The bandwidth required for this technique varies according to the transaction rate of the primary server. Record-based log shipping is more granular and streams WAL changes incrementally over a network connection (see Section 27.2.5).

It should be noted that log shipping is asynchronous, i.e., the WAL records are shipped after transaction commit. As a result, there is a window for data loss should the primary server suffer a catastrophic

failure; transactions not yet shipped will be lost. The size of the data loss window in file-based log shipping can be limited by use of the `archive_timeout` parameter, which can be set as low as a few seconds. However such a low setting will substantially increase the bandwidth required for file shipping. Streaming replication (see Section 27.2.5) allows a much smaller window of data loss.

Recovery performance is sufficiently good that the standby will typically be only moments away from full availability once it has been activated. As a result, this is called a warm standby configuration which offers high availability. Restoring a server from an archived base backup and rollforward will take considerably longer, so that technique only offers a solution for disaster recovery, not high availability. A standby server can also be used for read-only queries, in which case it is called a *hot standby* server. See Section 27.4 for more information.

## 27.2.1. Planning

It is usually wise to create the primary and standby servers so that they are as similar as possible, at least from the perspective of the database server. In particular, the path names associated with tablespaces will be passed across unmodified, so both primary and standby servers must have the same mount paths for tablespaces if that feature is used. Keep in mind that if `CREATE TABLESPACE` is executed on the primary, any new mount point needed for it must be created on the primary and all standby servers before the command is executed. Hardware need not be exactly the same, but experience shows that maintaining two identical systems is easier than maintaining two dissimilar ones over the lifetime of the application and system. In any case the hardware architecture must be the same — shipping from, say, a 32-bit to a 64-bit system will not work.

In general, log shipping between servers running different major PostgreSQL release levels is not possible. It is the policy of the PostgreSQL Global Development Group not to make changes to disk formats during minor release upgrades, so it is likely that running different minor release levels on primary and standby servers will work successfully. However, no formal support for that is offered and you are advised to keep primary and standby servers at the same release level as much as possible. When updating to a new minor release, the safest policy is to update the standby servers first — a new minor release is more likely to be able to read WAL files from a previous minor release than vice versa.

## 27.2.2. Standby Server Operation

A server enters standby mode if a `standby.signal` file exists in the data directory when the server is started.

In standby mode, the server continuously applies WAL received from the primary server. The standby server can read WAL from a WAL archive (see `restore_command`) or directly from the primary over a TCP connection (streaming replication). The standby server will also attempt to restore any WAL found in the standby cluster's `pg_wal` directory. That typically happens after a server restart, when the standby replays again WAL that was streamed from the primary before the restart, but you can also manually copy files to `pg_wal` at any time to have them replayed.

At startup, the standby begins by restoring all WAL available in the archive location, calling `restore_command`. Once it reaches the end of WAL available there and `restore_command` fails, it tries to restore any WAL available in the `pg_wal` directory. If that fails, and streaming replication has been configured, the standby tries to connect to the primary server and start streaming WAL from the last valid record found in archive or `pg_wal`. If that fails or streaming replication is not configured, or if the connection is later disconnected, the standby goes back to step 1 and tries to restore the file from the archive again. This loop of retries from the archive, `pg_wal`, and via streaming replication goes on until the server is stopped or is promoted.

Standby mode is exited and the server switches to normal operation when `pg_ctl promote` is run, or `pg_promote()` is called. Before failover, any WAL immediately available in the archive or in `pg_wal` will be restored, but no attempt is made to connect to the primary.

## 27.2.3. Preparing the Primary for Standby Servers

Set up continuous archiving on the primary to an archive directory accessible from the standby, as described in Section 26.3. The archive location should be accessible from the standby even when the primary is down, i.e., it should reside on the standby server itself or another trusted server, not on the primary server.

If you want to use streaming replication, set up authentication on the primary server to allow replication connections from the standby server(s); that is, create a role and provide a suitable entry or entries in `pg_hba.conf` with the database field set to `replication`. Also ensure `max_wal_senders` is set to a sufficiently large value in the configuration file of the primary server. If replication slots will be used, ensure that `max_replication_slots` is set sufficiently high as well.

Take a base backup as described in Section 26.3.2 to bootstrap the standby server.

## 27.2.4. Setting Up a Standby Server

To set up the standby server, restore the base backup taken from primary server (see Section 26.3.4). Create a file `standby.signal` in the standby's cluster data directory. Set `restore_command` to a simple command to copy files from the WAL archive. If you plan to have multiple standby servers for high availability purposes, make sure that `recovery_target_timeline` is set to `latest` (the default), to make the standby server follow the timeline change that occurs at failover to another standby.

### Note

`restore_command` should return immediately if the file does not exist; the server will retry the command again if necessary.

If you want to use streaming replication, fill in `primary_conninfo` with a libpq connection string, including the host name (or IP address) and any additional details needed to connect to the primary server. If the primary needs a password for authentication, the password needs to be specified in `primary_conninfo` as well.

If you're setting up the standby server for high availability purposes, set up WAL archiving, connections and authentication like the primary server, because the standby server will work as a primary server after failover.

If you're using a WAL archive, its size can be minimized using the `archive_cleanup_command` parameter to remove files that are no longer required by the standby server. The `pg_archivecleanup` utility is designed specifically to be used with `archive_cleanup_command` in typical single-standby configurations, see `pg_archivecleanup`. Note however, that if you're using the archive for backup purposes, you need to retain files needed to recover from at least the latest base backup, even if they're no longer needed by the standby.

A simple example of configuration is:

```
primary_conninfo = 'host=192.168.1.50 port=5432 user=foo
password=foopass options='-c wal_sender_timeout=5000'''
restore_command = 'cp /path/to/archive/%f %p'
archive_cleanup_command = 'pg_archivecleanup /path/to/archive %r'
```

You can have any number of standby servers, but if you use streaming replication, make sure you set `max_wal_senders` high enough in the primary to allow them to be connected simultaneously.

## 27.2.5. Streaming Replication

Streaming replication allows a standby server to stay more up-to-date than is possible with file-based log shipping. The standby connects to the primary, which streams WAL records to the standby as they're generated, without waiting for the WAL file to be filled.

Streaming replication is asynchronous by default (see Section 27.2.8), in which case there is a small delay between committing a transaction in the primary and the changes becoming visible in the standby. This delay is however much smaller than with file-based log shipping, typically under one second assuming the standby is powerful enough to keep up with the load. With streaming replication, `archive_timeout` is not required to reduce the data loss window.

If you use streaming replication without file-based continuous archiving, the server might recycle old WAL segments before the standby has received them. If this occurs, the standby will need to be reinitialized from a new base backup. You can avoid this by setting `wal_keep_size` to a value large enough to ensure that WAL segments are not recycled too early, or by configuring a replication slot for the standby. If you set up a WAL archive that's accessible from the standby, these solutions are not required, since the standby can always use the archive to catch up provided it retains enough segments.

To use streaming replication, set up a file-based log-shipping standby server as described in Section 27.2. The step that turns a file-based log-shipping standby into streaming replication standby is setting the `primary_conninfo` setting to point to the primary server. Set `listen_addresses` and authentication options (see `pg_hba.conf`) on the primary so that the standby server can connect to the replication pseudo-database on the primary server (see Section 27.2.5.1).

On systems that support the `keepalive` socket option, setting `tcp_keepalives_idle`, `tcp_keepalives_interval` and `tcp_keepalives_count` helps the primary promptly notice a broken connection.

Set the maximum number of concurrent connections from the standby servers (see `max_wal_senders` for details).

When the standby is started and `primary_conninfo` is set correctly, the standby will connect to the primary after replaying all WAL files available in the archive. If the connection is established successfully, you will see a `walreceiver` in the standby, and a corresponding `walsender` process in the primary.

### 27.2.5.1. Authentication

It is very important that the access privileges for replication be set up so that only trusted users can read the WAL stream, because it is easy to extract privileged information from it. Standby servers must authenticate to the primary as an account that has the `REPLICATION` privilege or a superuser. It is recommended to create a dedicated user account with `REPLICATION` and `LOGIN` privileges for replication. While `REPLICATION` privilege gives very high permissions, it does not allow the user to modify any data on the primary system, which the `SUPERUSER` privilege does.

Client authentication for replication is controlled by a `pg_hba.conf` record specifying `replication` in the `database` field. For example, if the standby is running on host IP `192.168.1.100` and the account name for replication is `foo`, the administrator can add the following line to the `pg_hba.conf` file on the primary:

```
# Allow the user "foo" from host 192.168.1.100 to connect to the
# primary
# as a replication standby if the user's password is correctly
# supplied.
#
# TYPE      DATABASE      USER      ADDRESS      METHOD
host        replication    foo       192.168.1.100/32    md5
```

The host name and port number of the primary, connection user name, and password are specified in the `primary_conninfo`. The password can also be set in the `~/.pgpass` file on the standby (spec-



ify replication in the *database* field). For example, if the primary is running on host IP 192.168.1.50, port 5432, the account name for replication is *foo*, and the password is *foopass*, the administrator can add the following line to the `postgresql.conf` file on the standby:

```
# The standby connects to the primary that is running on host
192.168.1.50
# and port 5432 as the user "foo" whose password is "foopass".
primary_conninfo = 'host=192.168.1.50 port=5432 user=foo
password=foopass'
```

## 27.2.5.2. Monitoring

An important health indicator of streaming replication is the amount of WAL records generated in the primary, but not yet applied in the standby. You can calculate this lag by comparing the current WAL write location on the primary with the last WAL location received by the standby. These locations can be retrieved using `pg_current_wal_lsn` on the primary and `pg_last_wal_receive_lsn` on the standby, respectively (see Table 9.91 and Table 9.92 for details). The last WAL receive location in the standby is also displayed in the process status of the WAL receiver process, displayed using the `ps` command (see Section 28.1 for details).

You can retrieve a list of WAL sender processes via the `pg_stat_replication` view. Large differences between `pg_current_wal_lsn` and the view's `sent_lsn` field might indicate that the primary server is under heavy load, while differences between `sent_lsn` and `pg_last_wal_receive_lsn` on the standby might indicate network delay, or that the standby is under heavy load.

On a hot standby, the status of the WAL receiver process can be retrieved via the `pg_stat_wal_receiver` view. A large difference between `pg_last_wal_replay_lsn` and the view's `flushed_lsn` indicates that WAL is being received faster than it can be replayed.

## 27.2.6. Replication Slots

Replication slots provide an automated way to ensure that the primary does not remove WAL segments until they have been received by all standbys, and that the primary does not remove rows which could cause a recovery conflict even when the standby is disconnected.

In lieu of using replication slots, it is possible to prevent the removal of old WAL segments using `wal_keep_size`, or by storing the segments in an archive using `archive_command` or `archive_library`. However, these methods often result in retaining more WAL segments than required, whereas replication slots retain only the number of segments known to be needed. On the other hand, replication slots can retain so many WAL segments that they fill up the space allocated for `pg_wal`; `max_slot_wal_keep_size` limits the size of WAL files retained by replication slots.

Similarly, `hot_standby_feedback` on its own, without also using a replication slot, provides protection against relevant rows being removed by vacuum, but provides no protection during any time period when the standby is not connected. Replication slots overcome these disadvantages.

### 27.2.6.1. Querying and Manipulating Replication Slots

Each replication slot has a name, which can contain lower-case letters, numbers, and the underscore character.

Existing replication slots and their state can be seen in the `pg_replication_slots` view.

Slots can be created and dropped either via the streaming replication protocol (see Section 55.4) or via SQL functions (see Section 9.27.6).

### 27.2.6.2. Configuration Example

You can create a replication slot like this:

```
postgres=# SELECT * FROM
pg_create_physical_replication_slot('node_a_slot');
 slot_name | lsn
-----+-----
node_a_slot |

postgres=# SELECT slot_name, slot_type, active FROM
pg_replication_slots;
 slot_name | slot_type | active
-----+-----+-----
node_a_slot | physical  | f
(1 row)
```

To configure the standby to use this slot, `primary_slot_name` should be configured on the standby. Here is a simple example:

```
primary_conninfo = 'host=192.168.1.50 port=5432 user=foo
password=foopass'
primary_slot_name = 'node_a_slot'
```

## 27.2.7. Cascading Replication

The cascading replication feature allows a standby server to accept replication connections and stream WAL records to other standbys, acting as a relay. This can be used to reduce the number of direct connections to the primary and also to minimize inter-site bandwidth overheads.

A standby acting as both a receiver and a sender is known as a cascading standby. Standbys that are more directly connected to the primary are known as upstream servers, while those standby servers further away are downstream servers. Cascading replication does not place limits on the number or arrangement of downstream servers, though each standby connects to only one upstream server which eventually links to a single primary server.

A cascading standby sends not only WAL records received from the primary but also those restored from the archive. So even if the replication connection in some upstream connection is terminated, streaming replication continues downstream for as long as new WAL records are available.

Cascading replication is currently asynchronous. Synchronous replication (see Section 27.2.8) settings have no effect on cascading replication at present.

Hot standby feedback propagates upstream, whatever the cascaded arrangement.

If an upstream standby server is promoted to become the new primary, downstream servers will continue to stream from the new primary if `recovery_target_timeline` is set to 'latest' (the default).

To use cascading replication, set up the cascading standby so that it can accept replication connections (that is, set `max_wal_senders` and `hot_standby`, and configure host-based authentication). You will also need to set `primary_conninfo` in the downstream standby to point to the cascading standby.

## 27.2.8. Synchronous Replication

PostgreSQL streaming replication is asynchronous by default. If the primary server crashes then some transactions that were committed may not have been replicated to the standby server, causing data loss. The amount of data loss is proportional to the replication delay at the time of failover.

Synchronous replication offers the ability to confirm that all changes made by a transaction have been transferred to one or more synchronous standby servers. This extends that standard level of durability offered by a transaction commit. This level of protection is referred to as 2-safe replication in computer

science theory, and group-1-safe (group-safe and 1-safe) when `synchronous_commit` is set to `remote_write`.

When requesting synchronous replication, each commit of a write transaction will wait until confirmation is received that the commit has been written to the write-ahead log on disk of both the primary and standby server. The only possibility that data can be lost is if both the primary and the standby suffer crashes at the same time. This can provide a much higher level of durability, though only if the sysadmin is cautious about the placement and management of the two servers. Waiting for confirmation increases the user's confidence that the changes will not be lost in the event of server crashes but it also necessarily increases the response time for the requesting transaction. The minimum wait time is the round-trip time between primary and standby.

Read-only transactions and transaction rollbacks need not wait for replies from standby servers. Sub-transaction commits do not wait for responses from standby servers, only top-level commits. Long running actions such as data loading or index building do not wait until the very final commit message. All two-phase commit actions require commit waits, including both prepare and commit.

A synchronous standby can be a physical replication standby or a logical replication subscriber. It can also be any other physical or logical WAL replication stream consumer that knows how to send the appropriate feedback messages. Besides the built-in physical and logical replication systems, this includes special programs such as `pg_receivewal` and `pg_recvlogical` as well as some third-party replication systems and custom programs. Check the respective documentation for details on synchronous replication support.

### 27.2.8.1. Basic Configuration

Once streaming replication has been configured, configuring synchronous replication requires only one additional configuration step: `synchronous_standby_names` must be set to a non-empty value. `synchronous_commit` must also be set to `on`, but since this is the default value, typically no change is required. (See Section 20.5.1 and Section 20.6.2.) This configuration will cause each commit to wait for confirmation that the standby has written the commit record to durable storage. `synchronous_commit` can be set by individual users, so it can be configured in the configuration file, for particular users or databases, or dynamically by applications, in order to control the durability guarantee on a per-transaction basis.

After a commit record has been written to disk on the primary, the WAL record is then sent to the standby. The standby sends reply messages each time a new batch of WAL data is written to disk, unless `wal_receiver_status_interval` is set to zero on the standby. In the case that `synchronous_commit` is set to `remote_apply`, the standby sends reply messages when the commit record is replayed, making the transaction visible. If the standby is chosen as a synchronous standby, according to the setting of `synchronous_standby_names` on the primary, the reply messages from that standby will be considered along with those from other synchronous standbys to decide when to release transactions waiting for confirmation that the commit record has been received. These parameters allow the administrator to specify which standby servers should be synchronous standbys. Note that the configuration of synchronous replication is mainly on the primary. Named standbys must be directly connected to the primary; the primary knows nothing about downstream standby servers using cascaded replication.

Setting `synchronous_commit` to `remote_write` will cause each commit to wait for confirmation that the standby has received the commit record and written it out to its own operating system, but not for the data to be flushed to disk on the standby. This setting provides a weaker guarantee of durability than `on` does: the standby could lose the data in the event of an operating system crash, though not a PostgreSQL crash. However, it's a useful setting in practice because it can decrease the response time for the transaction. Data loss could only occur if both the primary and the standby crash and the database of the primary gets corrupted at the same time.

Setting `synchronous_commit` to `remote_apply` will cause each commit to wait until the current synchronous standbys report that they have replayed the transaction, making it visible to user queries. In simple cases, this allows for load balancing with causal consistency.

Users will stop waiting if a fast shutdown is requested. However, as when using asynchronous replication, the server will not fully shutdown until all outstanding WAL records are transferred to the currently connected standby servers.

### 27.2.8.2. Multiple Synchronous Standbys

Synchronous replication supports one or more synchronous standby servers; transactions will wait until all the standby servers which are considered as synchronous confirm receipt of their data. The number of synchronous standbys that transactions must wait for replies from is specified in `synchronous_standby_names`. This parameter also specifies a list of standby names and the method (`FIRST` and `ANY`) to choose synchronous standbys from the listed ones.

The method `FIRST` specifies a priority-based synchronous replication and makes transaction commits wait until their WAL records are replicated to the requested number of synchronous standbys chosen based on their priorities. The standbys whose names appear earlier in the list are given higher priority and will be considered as synchronous. Other standby servers appearing later in this list represent potential synchronous standbys. If any of the current synchronous standbys disconnects for whatever reason, it will be replaced immediately with the next-highest-priority standby.

An example of `synchronous_standby_names` for a priority-based multiple synchronous standbys is:

```
synchronous_standby_names = 'FIRST 2 (s1, s2, s3)'
```

In this example, if four standby servers `s1`, `s2`, `s3` and `s4` are running, the two standbys `s1` and `s2` will be chosen as synchronous standbys because their names appear early in the list of standby names. `s3` is a potential synchronous standby and will take over the role of synchronous standby when either of `s1` or `s2` fails. `s4` is an asynchronous standby since its name is not in the list.

The method `ANY` specifies a quorum-based synchronous replication and makes transaction commits wait until their WAL records are replicated to *at least* the requested number of synchronous standbys in the list.

An example of `synchronous_standby_names` for a quorum-based multiple synchronous standbys is:

```
synchronous_standby_names = 'ANY 2 (s1, s2, s3)'
```

In this example, if four standby servers `s1`, `s2`, `s3` and `s4` are running, transaction commits will wait for replies from at least any two standbys of `s1`, `s2` and `s3`. `s4` is an asynchronous standby since its name is not in the list.

The synchronous states of standby servers can be viewed using the `pg_stat_replication` view.

### 27.2.8.3. Planning for Performance

Synchronous replication usually requires carefully planned and placed standby servers to ensure applications perform acceptably. Waiting doesn't utilize system resources, but transaction locks continue to be held until the transfer is confirmed. As a result, incautious use of synchronous replication will reduce performance for database applications because of increased response times and higher contention.

PostgreSQL allows the application developer to specify the durability level required via replication. This can be specified for the system overall, though it can also be specified for specific users or connections, or even individual transactions.

For example, an application workload might consist of: 10% of changes are important customer details, while 90% of changes are less important data that the business can more easily survive if it is lost, such as chat messages between users.

With synchronous replication options specified at the application level (on the primary) we can offer synchronous replication for the most important changes, without slowing down the bulk of the total workload. Application level options are an important and practical tool for allowing the benefits of synchronous replication for high performance applications.

You should consider that the network bandwidth must be higher than the rate of generation of WAL data.

#### 27.2.8.4. Planning for High Availability

`synchronous_standby_names` specifies the number and names of synchronous standbys that transaction commits made when `synchronous_commit` is set to `on`, `remote_apply` or `remote_write` will wait for responses from. Such transaction commits may never be completed if any one of synchronous standbys should crash.

The best solution for high availability is to ensure you keep as many synchronous standbys as requested. This can be achieved by naming multiple potential synchronous standbys using `synchronous_standby_names`.

In a priority-based synchronous replication, the standbys whose names appear earlier in the list will be used as synchronous standbys. Standbys listed after these will take over the role of synchronous standby if one of current ones should fail.

In a quorum-based synchronous replication, all the standbys appearing in the list will be used as candidates for synchronous standbys. Even if one of them should fail, the other standbys will keep performing the role of candidates of synchronous standby.

When a standby first attaches to the primary, it will not yet be properly synchronized. This is described as `catchup` mode. Once the lag between standby and primary reaches zero for the first time we move to real-time `streaming` state. The catch-up duration may be long immediately after the standby has been created. If the standby is shut down, then the catch-up period will increase according to the length of time the standby has been down. The standby is only able to become a synchronous standby once it has reached `streaming` state. This state can be viewed using the `pg_stat_replication` view.

If primary restarts while commits are waiting for acknowledgment, those waiting transactions will be marked fully committed once the primary database recovers. There is no way to be certain that all standbys have received all outstanding WAL data at time of the crash of the primary. Some transactions may not show as committed on the standby, even though they show as committed on the primary. The guarantee we offer is that the application will not receive explicit acknowledgment of the successful commit of a transaction until the WAL data is known to be safely received by all the synchronous standbys.

If you really cannot keep as many synchronous standbys as requested then you should decrease the number of synchronous standbys that transaction commits must wait for responses from in `synchronous_standby_names` (or disable it) and reload the configuration file on the primary server.

If the primary is isolated from remaining standby servers you should fail over to the best candidate of those other remaining standby servers.

If you need to re-create a standby server while transactions are waiting, make sure that the commands `pg_backup_start()` and `pg_backup_stop()` are run in a session with `synchronous_commit = off`, otherwise those requests will wait forever for the standby to appear.

#### 27.2.9. Continuous Archiving in Standby

When continuous WAL archiving is used in a standby, there are two different scenarios: the WAL archive can be shared between the primary and the standby, or the standby can have its own WAL archive. When the standby has its own WAL archive, set `archive_mode` to `always`, and the standby will call the archive command for every WAL segment it receives, whether it's by restoring from the archive or by streaming replication. The shared archive can be handled similarly, but the

`archive_command` or `archive_library` must test if the file being archived exists already, and if the existing file has identical contents. This requires more care in the `archive_command` or `archive_library`, as it must be careful to not overwrite an existing file with different contents, but return success if the exactly same file is archived twice. And all that must be done free of race conditions, if two servers attempt to archive the same file at the same time.

If `archive_mode` is set to `on`, the archiver is not enabled during recovery or standby mode. If the standby server is promoted, it will start archiving after the promotion, but will not archive any WAL or timeline history files that it did not generate itself. To get a complete series of WAL files in the archive, you must ensure that all WAL is archived, before it reaches the standby. This is inherently true with file-based log shipping, as the standby can only restore files that are found in the archive, but not if streaming replication is enabled. When a server is not in recovery mode, there is no difference between `on` and `always` modes.

## 27.3. Failover

If the primary server fails then the standby server should begin failover procedures.

If the standby server fails then no failover need take place. If the standby server can be restarted, even some time later, then the recovery process can also be restarted immediately, taking advantage of restartable recovery. If the standby server cannot be restarted, then a full new standby server instance should be created.

If the primary server fails and the standby server becomes the new primary, and then the old primary restarts, you must have a mechanism for informing the old primary that it is no longer the primary. This is sometimes known as STONITH (Shoot The Other Node In The Head), which is necessary to avoid situations where both systems think they are the primary, which will lead to confusion and ultimately data loss.

Many failover systems use just two systems, the primary and the standby, connected by some kind of heartbeat mechanism to continually verify the connectivity between the two and the viability of the primary. It is also possible to use a third system (called a witness server) to prevent some cases of inappropriate failover, but the additional complexity might not be worthwhile unless it is set up with sufficient care and rigorous testing.

PostgreSQL does not provide the system software required to identify a failure on the primary and notify the standby database server. Many such tools exist and are well integrated with the operating system facilities required for successful failover, such as IP address migration.

Once failover to the standby occurs, there is only a single server in operation. This is known as a degenerate state. The former standby is now the primary, but the former primary is down and might stay down. To return to normal operation, a standby server must be recreated, either on the former primary system when it comes up, or on a third, possibly new, system. The `pg_rewind` utility can be used to speed up this process on large clusters. Once complete, the primary and standby can be considered to have switched roles. Some people choose to use a third server to provide backup for the new primary until the new standby server is recreated, though clearly this complicates the system configuration and operational processes.

So, switching from primary to standby server can be fast but requires some time to re-prepare the failover cluster. Regular switching from primary to standby is useful, since it allows regular downtime on each system for maintenance. This also serves as a test of the failover mechanism to ensure that it will really work when you need it. Written administration procedures are advised.

To trigger failover of a log-shipping standby server, run `pg_ctl promote` or call `pg_promote()`. If you're setting up reporting servers that are only used to offload read-only queries from the primary, not for high availability purposes, you don't need to promote.

## 27.4. Hot Standby

Hot standby is the term used to describe the ability to connect to the server and run read-only queries while the server is in archive recovery or standby mode. This is useful both for replication purposes and for restoring a backup to a desired state with great precision. The term hot standby also refers to the ability of the server to move from recovery through to normal operation while users continue running queries and/or keep their connections open.

Running queries in hot standby mode is similar to normal query operation, though there are several usage and administrative differences explained below.

## 27.4.1. User's Overview

When the `hot_standby` parameter is set to true on a standby server, it will begin accepting connections once the recovery has brought the system to a consistent state. All such connections are strictly read-only; not even temporary tables may be written.

The data on the standby takes some time to arrive from the primary server so there will be a measurable delay between primary and standby. Running the same query nearly simultaneously on both primary and standby might therefore return differing results. We say that data on the standby is *eventually consistent* with the primary. Once the commit record for a transaction is replayed on the standby, the changes made by that transaction will be visible to any new snapshots taken on the standby. Snapshots may be taken at the start of each query or at the start of each transaction, depending on the current transaction isolation level. For more details, see Section 13.2.

Transactions started during hot standby may issue the following commands:

- Query access: `SELECT`, `COPY TO`
- Cursor commands: `DECLARE`, `FETCH`, `CLOSE`
- Settings: `SHOW`, `SET`, `RESET`
- Transaction management commands:
  - `BEGIN`, `END`, `ABORT`, `START TRANSACTION`
  - `SAVEPOINT`, `RELEASE`, `ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT`
  - `EXCEPTION` blocks and other internal subtransactions
- `LOCK TABLE`, though only when explicitly in one of these modes: `ACCESS SHARE`, `ROW SHARE` or `ROW EXCLUSIVE`.
- Plans and resources: `PREPARE`, `EXECUTE`, `DEALLOCATE`, `DISCARD`
- Plugins and extensions: `LOAD`
- `UNLISTEN`

Transactions started during hot standby will never be assigned a transaction ID and cannot write to the system write-ahead log. Therefore, the following actions will produce error messages:

- Data Manipulation Language (DML): `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, `MERGE`, `COPY FROM`, `TRUNCATE`. Note that there are no allowed actions that result in a trigger being executed during recovery. This restriction applies even to temporary tables, because table rows cannot be read or written without assigning a transaction ID, which is currently not possible in a hot standby environment.
- Data Definition Language (DDL): `CREATE`, `DROP`, `ALTER`, `COMMENT`. This restriction applies even to temporary tables, because carrying out these operations would require updating the system catalog tables.
- `SELECT ... FOR SHARE` | `UPDATE`, because row locks cannot be taken without updating the underlying data files.

- Rules on `SELECT` statements that generate DML commands.
- `LOCK` that explicitly requests a mode higher than `ROW EXCLUSIVE MODE`.
- `LOCK` in short default form, since it requests `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE MODE`.
- Transaction management commands that explicitly set non-read-only state:
  - `BEGIN READ WRITE, START TRANSACTION READ WRITE`
  - `SET TRANSACTION READ WRITE, SET SESSION CHARACTERISTICS AS TRANSACTION READ WRITE`
  - `SET transaction_read_only = off`
- Two-phase commit commands: `PREPARE TRANSACTION, COMMIT PREPARED, ROLLBACK PREPARED` because even read-only transactions need to write WAL in the prepare phase (the first phase of two phase commit).
- Sequence updates: `nextval()`, `setval()`
- `LISTEN, NOTIFY`

In normal operation, “read-only” transactions are allowed to use `LISTEN` and `NOTIFY`, so hot standby sessions operate under slightly tighter restrictions than ordinary read-only sessions. It is possible that some of these restrictions might be loosened in a future release.

During hot standby, the parameter `transaction_read_only` is always true and may not be changed. But as long as no attempt is made to modify the database, connections during hot standby will act much like any other database connection. If failover or switchover occurs, the database will switch to normal processing mode. Sessions will remain connected while the server changes mode. Once hot standby finishes, it will be possible to initiate read-write transactions (even from a session begun during hot standby).

Users can determine whether hot standby is currently active for their session by issuing `SHOW in_hot_standby`. (In server versions before 14, the `in_hot_standby` parameter did not exist; a workable substitute method for older servers is `SHOW transaction_read_only`.) In addition, a set of functions (Table 9.92) allow users to access information about the standby server. These allow you to write programs that are aware of the current state of the database. These can be used to monitor the progress of recovery, or to allow you to write complex programs that restore the database to particular states.

## 27.4.2. Handling Query Conflicts

The primary and standby servers are in many ways loosely connected. Actions on the primary will have an effect on the standby. As a result, there is potential for negative interactions or conflicts between them. The easiest conflict to understand is performance: if a huge data load is taking place on the primary then this will generate a similar stream of WAL records on the standby, so standby queries may contend for system resources, such as I/O.

There are also additional types of conflict that can occur with hot standby. These conflicts are *hard conflicts* in the sense that queries might need to be canceled and, in some cases, sessions disconnected to resolve them. The user is provided with several ways to handle these conflicts. Conflict cases include:

- Access Exclusive locks taken on the primary server, including both explicit `LOCK` commands and various DDL actions, conflict with table accesses in standby queries.
- Dropping a tablespace on the primary conflicts with standby queries using that tablespace for temporary work files.



- Dropping a database on the primary conflicts with sessions connected to that database on the standby.
- Application of a vacuum cleanup record from WAL conflicts with standby transactions whose snapshots can still “see” any of the rows to be removed.
- Application of a vacuum cleanup record from WAL conflicts with queries accessing the target page on the standby, whether or not the data to be removed is visible.

On the primary server, these cases simply result in waiting; and the user might choose to cancel either of the conflicting actions. However, on the standby there is no choice: the WAL-logged action already occurred on the primary so the standby must not fail to apply it. Furthermore, allowing WAL application to wait indefinitely may be very undesirable, because the standby's state will become increasingly far behind the primary's. Therefore, a mechanism is provided to forcibly cancel standby queries that conflict with to-be-applied WAL records.

An example of the problem situation is an administrator on the primary server running `DROP TABLE` on a table that is currently being queried on the standby server. Clearly the standby query cannot continue if the `DROP TABLE` is applied on the standby. If this situation occurred on the primary, the `DROP TABLE` would wait until the other query had finished. But when `DROP TABLE` is run on the primary, the primary doesn't have information about what queries are running on the standby, so it will not wait for any such standby queries. The WAL change records come through to the standby while the standby query is still running, causing a conflict. The standby server must either delay application of the WAL records (and everything after them, too) or else cancel the conflicting query so that the `DROP TABLE` can be applied.

When a conflicting query is short, it's typically desirable to allow it to complete by delaying WAL application for a little bit; but a long delay in WAL application is usually not desirable. So the cancel mechanism has parameters, `max_standby_archive_delay` and `max_standby_streaming_delay`, that define the maximum allowed delay in WAL application. Conflicting queries will be canceled once it has taken longer than the relevant delay setting to apply any newly-received WAL data. There are two parameters so that different delay values can be specified for the case of reading WAL data from an archive (i.e., initial recovery from a base backup or “catching up” a standby server that has fallen far behind) versus reading WAL data via streaming replication.

In a standby server that exists primarily for high availability, it's best to set the delay parameters relatively short, so that the server cannot fall far behind the primary due to delays caused by standby queries. However, if the standby server is meant for executing long-running queries, then a high or even infinite delay value may be preferable. Keep in mind however that a long-running query could cause other sessions on the standby server to not see recent changes on the primary, if it delays application of WAL records.

Once the delay specified by `max_standby_archive_delay` or `max_standby_streaming_delay` has been exceeded, conflicting queries will be canceled. This usually results just in a cancellation error, although in the case of replaying a `DROP DATABASE` the entire conflicting session will be terminated. Also, if the conflict is over a lock held by an idle transaction, the conflicting session is terminated (this behavior might change in the future).

Canceled queries may be retried immediately (after beginning a new transaction, of course). Since query cancellation depends on the nature of the WAL records being replayed, a query that was canceled may well succeed if it is executed again.

Keep in mind that the delay parameters are compared to the elapsed time since the WAL data was received by the standby server. Thus, the grace period allowed to any one query on the standby is never more than the delay parameter, and could be considerably less if the standby has already fallen behind as a result of waiting for previous queries to complete, or as a result of being unable to keep up with a heavy update load.

The most common reason for conflict between standby queries and WAL replay is “early cleanup”. Normally, PostgreSQL allows cleanup of old row versions when there are no transactions that need

to see them to ensure correct visibility of data according to MVCC rules. However, this rule can only be applied for transactions executing on the primary. So it is possible that cleanup on the primary will remove row versions that are still visible to a transaction on the standby.

Row version cleanup isn't the only potential cause of conflicts with standby queries. All index-only scans (including those that run on standbys) must use an MVCC snapshot that “agrees” with the visibility map. Conflicts are therefore required whenever VACUUM sets a page as all-visible in the visibility map containing one or more rows *not* visible to all standby queries. So even running VACUUM against a table with no updated or deleted rows requiring cleanup might lead to conflicts.

Users should be clear that tables that are regularly and heavily updated on the primary server will quickly cause cancellation of longer running queries on the standby. In such cases the setting of a finite value for `max_standby_archive_delay` or `max_standby_streaming_delay` can be considered similar to setting `statement_timeout`.

Remedial possibilities exist if the number of standby-query cancellations is found to be unacceptable. The first option is to set the parameter `hot_standby_feedback`, which prevents VACUUM from removing recently-dead rows and so cleanup conflicts do not occur. If you do this, you should note that this will delay cleanup of dead rows on the primary, which may result in undesirable table bloat. However, the cleanup situation will be no worse than if the standby queries were running directly on the primary server, and you are still getting the benefit of off-loading execution onto the standby. If standby servers connect and disconnect frequently, you might want to make adjustments to handle the period when `hot_standby_feedback` feedback is not being provided. For example, consider increasing `max_standby_archive_delay` so that queries are not rapidly canceled by conflicts in WAL archive files during disconnected periods. You should also consider increasing `max_standby_streaming_delay` to avoid rapid cancellations by newly-arrived streaming WAL entries after reconnection.

The number of query cancels and the reason for them can be viewed using the `pg_stat_database_conflicts` system view on the standby server. The `pg_stat_database` system view also contains summary information.

Users can control whether a log message is produced when WAL replay is waiting longer than `deadlock_timeout` for conflicts. This is controlled by the `log_recovery_conflict_waits` parameter.

## 27.4.3. Administrator's Overview

If `hot_standby` is on in `postgresql.conf` (the default value) and there is a `standby.signal` file present, the server will run in hot standby mode. However, it may take some time for hot standby connections to be allowed, because the server will not accept connections until it has completed sufficient recovery to provide a consistent state against which queries can run. During this period, clients that attempt to connect will be refused with an error message. To confirm the server has come up, either loop trying to connect from the application, or look for these messages in the server logs:

```
LOG:  entering standby mode
```

```
... then some time later ...
```

```
LOG:  consistent recovery state reached
```

```
LOG:  database system is ready to accept read-only connections
```

Consistency information is recorded once per checkpoint on the primary. It is not possible to enable hot standby when reading WAL written during a period when `wal_level` was not set to `replica` or `logical` on the primary. Reaching a consistent state can also be delayed in the presence of both of these conditions:

- A write transaction has more than 64 subtransactions
- Very long-lived write transactions

If you are running file-based log shipping ("warm standby"), you might need to wait until the next WAL file arrives, which could be as long as the `archive_timeout` setting on the primary.

The settings of some parameters determine the size of shared memory for tracking transaction IDs, locks, and prepared transactions. These shared memory structures must be no smaller on a standby than on the primary in order to ensure that the standby does not run out of shared memory during recovery. For example, if the primary had used a prepared transaction but the standby had not allocated any shared memory for tracking prepared transactions, then recovery could not continue until the standby's configuration is changed. The parameters affected are:

- `max_connections`
- `max_prepared_transactions`
- `max_locks_per_transaction`
- `max_wal_senders`
- `max_worker_processes`

The easiest way to ensure this does not become a problem is to have these parameters set on the standbys to values equal to or greater than on the primary. Therefore, if you want to increase these values, you should do so on all standby servers first, before applying the changes to the primary server. Conversely, if you want to decrease these values, you should do so on the primary server first, before applying the changes to all standby servers. Keep in mind that when a standby is promoted, it becomes the new reference for the required parameter settings for the standbys that follow it. Therefore, to avoid this becoming a problem during a switchover or failover, it is recommended to keep these settings the same on all standby servers.

The WAL tracks changes to these parameters on the primary. If a hot standby processes WAL that indicates that the current value on the primary is higher than its own value, it will log a warning and pause recovery, for example:

```
WARNING: hot standby is not possible because of insufficient
parameter settings
DETAIL: max_connections = 80 is a lower setting than on the
primary server, where its value was 100.
LOG: recovery has paused
DETAIL: If recovery is unpaused, the server will shut down.
HINT: You can then restart the server after making the necessary
configuration changes.
```

At that point, the settings on the standby need to be updated and the instance restarted before recovery can continue. If the standby is not a hot standby, then when it encounters the incompatible parameter change, it will shut down immediately without pausing, since there is then no value in keeping it up.

It is important that the administrator select appropriate settings for `max_standby_archive_delay` and `max_standby_streaming_delay`. The best choices vary depending on business priorities. For example if the server is primarily tasked as a High Availability server, then you will want low delay settings, perhaps even zero, though that is a very aggressive setting. If the standby server is tasked as an additional server for decision support queries then it might be acceptable to set the maximum delay values to many hours, or even -1 which means wait forever for queries to complete.

Transaction status "hint bits" written on the primary are not WAL-logged, so data on the standby will likely re-write the hints again on the standby. Thus, the standby server will still perform disk writes even though all users are read-only; no changes occur to the data values themselves. Users will still write large sort temporary files and re-generate relcache info files, so no part of the database is truly read-only during hot standby mode. Note also that writes to remote databases using dblink module, and other operations outside the database using PL functions will still be possible, even though the transaction is read-only locally.

The following types of administration commands are not accepted during recovery mode:

- Data Definition Language (DDL): e.g., `CREATE INDEX`
- Privilege and Ownership: `GRANT`, `REVOKE`, `REASSIGN`
- Maintenance commands: `ANALYZE`, `VACUUM`, `CLUSTER`, `REINDEX`

Again, note that some of these commands are actually allowed during "read only" mode transactions on the primary.

As a result, you cannot create additional indexes that exist solely on the standby, nor statistics that exist solely on the standby. If these administration commands are needed, they should be executed on the primary, and eventually those changes will propagate to the standby.

`pg_cancel_backend()` and `pg_terminate_backend()` will work on user backends, but not the startup process, which performs recovery. `pg_stat_activity` does not show recovering transactions as active. As a result, `pg_prepared_xacts` is always empty during recovery. If you wish to resolve in-doubt prepared transactions, view `pg_prepared_xacts` on the primary and issue commands to resolve transactions there or resolve them after the end of recovery.

`pg_locks` will show locks held by backends, as normal. `pg_locks` also shows a virtual transaction managed by the startup process that owns all `AccessExclusiveLocks` held by transactions being replayed by recovery. Note that the startup process does not acquire locks to make database changes, and thus locks other than `AccessExclusiveLocks` do not show in `pg_locks` for the Startup process; they are just presumed to exist.

The Nagios plugin `check_pgsql` will work, because the simple information it checks for exists. The `check_postgres` monitoring script will also work, though some reported values could give different or confusing results. For example, last vacuum time will not be maintained, since no vacuum occurs on the standby. Vacuums running on the primary do still send their changes to the standby.

WAL file control commands will not work during recovery, e.g., `pg_backup_start`, `pg_switch_wal` etc.

Dynamically loadable modules work, including `pg_stat_statements`.

Advisory locks work normally in recovery, including deadlock detection. Note that advisory locks are never WAL logged, so it is impossible for an advisory lock on either the primary or the standby to conflict with WAL replay. Nor is it possible to acquire an advisory lock on the primary and have it initiate a similar advisory lock on the standby. Advisory locks relate only to the server on which they are acquired.

Trigger-based replication systems such as Slony, Londiste and Bucardo won't run on the standby at all, though they will run happily on the primary server as long as the changes are not sent to standby servers to be applied. WAL replay is not trigger-based so you cannot relay from the standby to any system that requires additional database writes or relies on the use of triggers.

New OIDs cannot be assigned, though some UUID generators may still work as long as they do not rely on writing new status to the database.

Currently, temporary table creation is not allowed during read-only transactions, so in some cases existing scripts will not run correctly. This restriction might be relaxed in a later release. This is both an SQL standard compliance issue and a technical issue.

`DROP TABLESPACE` can only succeed if the tablespace is empty. Some standby users may be actively using the tablespace via their `temp_tablespaces` parameter. If there are temporary files in the tablespace, all active queries are canceled to ensure that temporary files are removed, so the tablespace can be removed and WAL replay can continue.

Running `DROP DATABASE` or `ALTER DATABASE ... SET TABLESPACE` on the primary will generate a WAL entry that will cause all users connected to that database on the standby to be forcibly

disconnected. This action occurs immediately, whatever the setting of `max_standby_streaming_delay`. Note that `ALTER DATABASE ... RENAME` does not disconnect users, which in most cases will go unnoticed, though might in some cases cause a program confusion if it depends in some way upon database name.

In normal (non-recovery) mode, if you issue `DROP USER` or `DROP ROLE` for a role with login capability while that user is still connected then nothing happens to the connected user — they remain connected. The user cannot reconnect however. This behavior applies in recovery also, so a `DROP USER` on the primary does not disconnect that user on the standby.

The cumulative statistics system is active during recovery. All scans, reads, blocks, index usage, etc., will be recorded normally on the standby. However, WAL replay will not increment relation and database specific counters. I.e. replay will not increment `pg_stat_all_tables` columns (like `n_tup_ins`), nor will reads or writes performed by the startup process be tracked in the `pg_statio` views, nor will associated `pg_stat_database` columns be incremented.

Autovacuum is not active during recovery. It will start normally at the end of recovery.

The checkpoint process and the background writer process are active during recovery. The checkpoint process will perform restartpoints (similar to checkpoints on the primary) and the background writer process will perform normal block cleaning activities. This can include updates of the hint bit information stored on the standby server. The `CHECKPOINT` command is accepted during recovery, though it performs a restartpoint rather than a new checkpoint.

## 27.4.4. Hot Standby Parameter Reference

Various parameters have been mentioned above in Section 27.4.2 and Section 27.4.3.

On the primary, the `wal_level` parameter can be used. `max_standby_archive_delay` and `max_standby_streaming_delay` have no effect if set on the primary.

On the standby, parameters `hot_standby`, `max_standby_archive_delay` and `max_standby_streaming_delay` can be used.

## 27.4.5. Caveats

There are several limitations of hot standby. These can and probably will be fixed in future releases:

- Full knowledge of running transactions is required before snapshots can be taken. Transactions that use large numbers of subtransactions (currently greater than 64) will delay the start of read-only connections until the completion of the longest running write transaction. If this situation occurs, explanatory messages will be sent to the server log.
- Valid starting points for standby queries are generated at each checkpoint on the primary. If the standby is shut down while the primary is in a shutdown state, it might not be possible to re-enter hot standby until the primary is started up, so that it generates further starting points in the WAL logs. This situation isn't a problem in the most common situations where it might happen. Generally, if the primary is shut down and not available anymore, that's likely due to a serious failure that requires the standby being converted to operate as the new primary anyway. And in situations where the primary is being intentionally taken down, coordinating to make sure the standby becomes the new primary smoothly is also standard procedure.
- At the end of recovery, `AccessExclusiveLocks` held by prepared transactions will require twice the normal number of lock table entries. If you plan on running either a large number of concurrent prepared transactions that normally take `AccessExclusiveLocks`, or you plan on having one large transaction that takes many `AccessExclusiveLocks`, you are advised to select a larger value of `max_locks_per_transaction`, perhaps as much as twice the value of the parameter on the primary server. You need not consider this at all if your setting of `max_prepared_transactions` is 0.

- The Serializable transaction isolation level is not yet available in hot standby. (See Section 13.2.3 and Section 13.4.1 for details.) An attempt to set a transaction to the serializable isolation level in hot standby mode will generate an error.

---

# Chapter 28. Monitoring Database Activity

A database administrator frequently wonders, “What is the system doing right now?” This chapter discusses how to find that out.

Several tools are available for monitoring database activity and analyzing performance. Most of this chapter is devoted to describing PostgreSQL’s cumulative statistics system, but one should not neglect regular Unix monitoring programs such as `ps`, `top`, `iostat`, and `vmstat`. Also, once one has identified a poorly-performing query, further investigation might be needed using PostgreSQL’s `EXPLAIN` command. Section 14.1 discusses `EXPLAIN` and other methods for understanding the behavior of an individual query.

## 28.1. Standard Unix Tools

On most Unix platforms, PostgreSQL modifies its command title as reported by `ps`, so that individual server processes can readily be identified. A sample display is

```
$ ps auxww | grep ^postgres
postgres 15551 0.0 0.1 57536 7132 pts/0    S   18:02   0:00
postgres -i
postgres 15554 0.0 0.0 57536 1184 ?        Ss  18:02   0:00
postgres: background writer
postgres 15555 0.0 0.0 57536  916 ?        Ss  18:02   0:00
postgres: checkpointer
postgres 15556 0.0 0.0 57536  916 ?        Ss  18:02   0:00
postgres: walwriter
postgres 15557 0.0 0.0 58504 2244 ?        Ss  18:02   0:00
postgres: autovacuum launcher
postgres 15582 0.0 0.0 58772 3080 ?        Ss  18:04   0:00
postgres: joe runbug 127.0.0.1 idle
postgres 15606 0.0 0.0 58772 3052 ?        Ss  18:07   0:00
postgres: tgl regression [local] SELECT waiting
postgres 15610 0.0 0.0 58772 3056 ?        Ss  18:07   0:00
postgres: tgl regression [local] idle in transaction
```

(The appropriate invocation of `ps` varies across different platforms, as do the details of what is shown. This example is from a recent Linux system.) The first process listed here is the primary server process. The command arguments shown for it are the same ones used when it was launched. The next four processes are background worker processes automatically launched by the primary process. (The “autovacuum launcher” process will not be present if you have set the system not to run autovacuum.) Each of the remaining processes is a server process handling one client connection. Each such process sets its command line display in the form

```
postgres: user database host activity
```

The user, database, and (client) host items remain the same for the life of the client connection, but the activity indicator changes. The activity can be `idle` (i.e., waiting for a client command), `idle in transaction` (waiting for client inside a `BEGIN` block), or a command type name such as `SELECT`. Also, `waiting` is appended if the server process is presently waiting on a lock held by another session. In the above example we can infer that process 15606 is waiting for process 15610 to complete its transaction and thereby release some lock. (Process 15610 must be the blocker, because there is no other active session. In more complicated cases it would be necessary to look into the `pg_locks` system view to determine who is blocking whom.)

If `cluster_name` has been configured the cluster name will also be shown in `ps` output:

```
$ psql -c 'SHOW cluster_name'
 cluster_name
-----
 server1
(1 row)

$ ps aux|grep server1
postgres  27093  0.0  0.0  30096  2752 ?        Ss   11:34   0:00
 postgres: server1: background writer
...
```

If you have turned off `update_process_title` then the activity indicator is not updated; the process title is set only once when a new process is launched. On some platforms this saves a measurable amount of per-command overhead; on others it's insignificant.

### Tip

Solaris requires special handling. You must use `/usr/ucb/ps`, rather than `/bin/ps`. You also must use two `w` flags, not just one. In addition, your original invocation of the `postgres` command must have a shorter `ps` status display than that provided by each server process. If you fail to do all three things, the `ps` output for each server process will be the original `postgres` command line.

## 28.2. The Cumulative Statistics System

PostgreSQL's *cumulative statistics system* supports collection and reporting of information about server activity. Presently, accesses to tables and indexes in both disk-block and individual-row terms are counted. The total number of rows in each table, and information about vacuum and analyze actions for each table are also counted. If enabled, calls to user-defined functions and the total time spent in each one are counted as well.

PostgreSQL also supports reporting dynamic information about exactly what is going on in the system right now, such as the exact command currently being executed by other server processes, and which other connections exist in the system. This facility is independent of the cumulative statistics system.

### 28.2.1. Statistics Collection Configuration

Since collection of statistics adds some overhead to query execution, the system can be configured to collect or not collect information. This is controlled by configuration parameters that are normally set in `postgresql.conf`. (See Chapter 20 for details about setting configuration parameters.)

The parameter `track_activities` enables monitoring of the current command being executed by any server process.

The parameter `track_counts` controls whether cumulative statistics are collected about table and index accesses.

The parameter `track_functions` enables tracking of usage of user-defined functions.

The parameter `track_io_timing` enables monitoring of block read and write times.

The parameter `track_wal_io_timing` enables monitoring of WAL write times.

Normally these parameters are set in `postgresql.conf` so that they apply to all server processes, but it is possible to turn them on or off in individual sessions using the `SET` command. (To prevent



ordinary users from hiding their activity from the administrator, only superusers are allowed to change these parameters with `SET`.)

Cumulative statistics are collected in shared memory. Every PostgreSQL process collects statistics locally, then updates the shared data at appropriate intervals. When a server, including a physical replica, shuts down cleanly, a permanent copy of the statistics data is stored in the `pg_stat` subdirectory, so that statistics can be retained across server restarts. In contrast, when starting from an unclean shutdown (e.g., after an immediate shutdown, a server crash, starting from a base backup, and point-in-time recovery), all statistics counters are reset.

## 28.2.2. Viewing Statistics

Several predefined views, listed in Table 28.1, are available to show the current state of the system. There are also several other views, listed in Table 28.2, available to show the accumulated statistics. Alternatively, one can build custom views using the underlying cumulative statistics functions, as discussed in Section 28.2.25.

When using the cumulative statistics views and functions to monitor collected data, it is important to realize that the information does not update instantaneously. Each individual server process flushes out accumulated statistics to shared memory just before going idle, but not more frequently than once per `PGSTAT_MIN_INTERVAL` milliseconds (1 second unless altered while building the server); so a query or transaction still in progress does not affect the displayed totals and the displayed information lags behind actual activity. However, current-query information collected by `track_activities` is always up-to-date.

Another important point is that when a server process is asked to display any of the accumulated statistics, accessed values are cached until the end of its current transaction in the default configuration. So the statistics will show static information as long as you continue the current transaction. Similarly, information about the current queries of all sessions is collected when any such information is first requested within a transaction, and the same information will be displayed throughout the transaction. This is a feature, not a bug, because it allows you to perform several queries on the statistics and correlate the results without worrying that the numbers are changing underneath you. When analyzing statistics interactively, or with expensive queries, the time delta between accesses to individual statistics can lead to significant skew in the cached statistics. To minimize skew, `stats_fetch_consistency` can be set to `snapshot`, at the price of increased memory usage for caching not-needed statistics data. Conversely, if it's known that statistics are only accessed once, caching accessed statistics is unnecessary and can be avoided by setting `stats_fetch_consistency` to `none`. You can invoke `pg_stat_clear_snapshot()` to discard the current transaction's statistics snapshot or cached values (if any). The next use of statistical information will (when in `snapshot` mode) cause a new snapshot to be built or (when in `cache` mode) accessed statistics to be cached.

A transaction can also see its own statistics (not yet flushed out to the shared memory statistics) in the views `pg_stat_xact_all_tables`, `pg_stat_xact_sys_tables`, `pg_stat_xact_user_tables`, and `pg_stat_xact_user_functions`. These numbers do not act as stated above; instead they update continuously throughout the transaction.

Some of the information in the dynamic statistics views shown in Table 28.1 is security restricted. Ordinary users can only see all the information about their own sessions (sessions belonging to a role that they are a member of). In rows about other sessions, many columns will be null. Note, however, that the existence of a session and its general properties such as its sessions user and database are visible to all users. Superusers and roles with privileges of built-in role `pg_read_all_stats` (see also Section 22.5) can see all the information about all sessions.

**Table 28.1. Dynamic Statistics Views**

View Name	Description
<code>pg_stat_activity</code>	One row per server process, showing information related to the current activity of that process,

View Name	Description
	such as state and current query. See <code>pg_stat_activity</code> for details.
<code>pg_stat_replication</code>	One row per WAL sender process, showing statistics about replication to that sender's connected standby server. See <code>pg_stat_replication</code> for details.
<code>pg_stat_wal_receiver</code>	Only one row, showing statistics about the WAL receiver from that receiver's connected server. See <code>pg_stat_wal_receiver</code> for details.
<code>pg_stat_recovery_prefetch</code>	Only one row, showing statistics about blocks prefetched during recovery. See <code>pg_stat_recovery_prefetch</code> for details.
<code>pg_stat_subscription</code>	At least one row per subscription, showing information about the subscription workers. See <code>pg_stat_subscription</code> for details.
<code>pg_stat_ssl</code>	One row per connection (regular and replication), showing information about SSL used on this connection. See <code>pg_stat_ssl</code> for details.
<code>pg_stat_gssapi</code>	One row per connection (regular and replication), showing information about GSSAPI authentication and encryption used on this connection. See <code>pg_stat_gssapi</code> for details.
<code>pg_stat_progress_analyze</code>	One row for each backend (including autovacuum worker processes) running ANALYZE, showing current progress. See Section 28.4.1.
<code>pg_stat_progress_create_index</code>	One row for each backend running CREATE INDEX or REINDEX, showing current progress. See Section 28.4.4.
<code>pg_stat_progress_vacuum</code>	One row for each backend (including autovacuum worker processes) running VACUUM, showing current progress. See Section 28.4.5.
<code>pg_stat_progress_cluster</code>	One row for each backend running CLUSTER or VACUUM FULL, showing current progress. See Section 28.4.2.
<code>pg_stat_progress_basebackup</code>	One row for each WAL sender process streaming a base backup, showing current progress. See Section 28.4.6.
<code>pg_stat_progress_copy</code>	One row for each backend running COPY, showing current progress. See Section 28.4.3.

**Table 28.2. Collected Statistics Views**

View Name	Description
<code>pg_stat_archiver</code>	One row only, showing statistics about the WAL archiver process's activity. See <code>pg_stat_archiver</code> for details.
<code>pg_stat_bgwriter</code>	One row only, showing statistics about the background writer process's activity. See <code>pg_stat_bgwriter</code> for details.

View Name	Description
<code>pg_stat_database</code>	One row per database, showing database-wide statistics. See <code>pg_stat_database</code> for details.
<code>pg_stat_database_conflicts</code>	One row per database, showing database-wide statistics about query cancels due to conflict with recovery on standby servers. See <code>pg_stat_database_conflicts</code> for details.
<code>pg_stat_io</code>	One row for each combination of backend type, context, and target object containing cluster-wide I/O statistics. See <code>pg_stat_io</code> for details.
<code>pg_stat_replication_slots</code>	One row per replication slot, showing statistics about the replication slot's usage. See <code>pg_stat_replication_slots</code> for details.
<code>pg_stat_slru</code>	One row per SLRU, showing statistics of operations. See <code>pg_stat_slru</code> for details.
<code>pg_stat_subscription_stats</code>	One row per subscription, showing statistics about errors. See <code>pg_stat_subscription_stats</code> for details.
<code>pg_stat_wal</code>	One row only, showing statistics about WAL activity. See <code>pg_stat_wal</code> for details.
<code>pg_stat_all_tables</code>	One row for each table in the current database, showing statistics about accesses to that specific table. See <code>pg_stat_all_tables</code> for details.
<code>pg_stat_sys_tables</code>	Same as <code>pg_stat_all_tables</code> , except that only system tables are shown.
<code>pg_stat_user_tables</code>	Same as <code>pg_stat_all_tables</code> , except that only user tables are shown.
<code>pg_stat_xact_all_tables</code>	Similar to <code>pg_stat_all_tables</code> , but counts actions taken so far within the current transaction (which are <i>not</i> yet included in <code>pg_stat_all_tables</code> and related views). The columns for numbers of live and dead rows and vacuum and analyze actions are not present in this view.
<code>pg_stat_xact_sys_tables</code>	Same as <code>pg_stat_xact_all_tables</code> , except that only system tables are shown.
<code>pg_stat_xact_user_tables</code>	Same as <code>pg_stat_xact_all_tables</code> , except that only user tables are shown.
<code>pg_stat_all_indexes</code>	One row for each index in the current database, showing statistics about accesses to that specific index. See <code>pg_stat_all_indexes</code> for details.
<code>pg_stat_sys_indexes</code>	Same as <code>pg_stat_all_indexes</code> , except that only indexes on system tables are shown.
<code>pg_stat_user_indexes</code>	Same as <code>pg_stat_all_indexes</code> , except that only indexes on user tables are shown.

View Name	Description
<code>pg_stat_user_functions</code>	One row for each tracked function, showing statistics about executions of that function. See <code>pg_stat_user_functions</code> for details.
<code>pg_stat_xact_user_functions</code>	Similar to <code>pg_stat_user_functions</code> , but counts only calls during the current transaction (which are <i>not</i> yet included in <code>pg_stat_user_functions</code> ).
<code>pg_statio_all_tables</code>	One row for each table in the current database, showing statistics about I/O on that specific table. See <code>pg_statio_all_tables</code> for details.
<code>pg_statio_sys_tables</code>	Same as <code>pg_statio_all_tables</code> , except that only system tables are shown.
<code>pg_statio_user_tables</code>	Same as <code>pg_statio_all_tables</code> , except that only user tables are shown.
<code>pg_statio_all_indexes</code>	One row for each index in the current database, showing statistics about I/O on that specific index. See <code>pg_statio_all_indexes</code> for details.
<code>pg_statio_sys_indexes</code>	Same as <code>pg_statio_all_indexes</code> , except that only indexes on system tables are shown.
<code>pg_statio_user_indexes</code>	Same as <code>pg_statio_all_indexes</code> , except that only indexes on user tables are shown.
<code>pg_statio_all_sequences</code>	One row for each sequence in the current database, showing statistics about I/O on that specific sequence. See <code>pg_statio_all_sequences</code> for details.
<code>pg_statio_sys_sequences</code>	Same as <code>pg_statio_all_sequences</code> , except that only system sequences are shown. (Presently, no system sequences are defined, so this view is always empty.)
<code>pg_statio_user_sequences</code>	Same as <code>pg_statio_all_sequences</code> , except that only user sequences are shown.

The per-index statistics are particularly useful to determine which indexes are being used and how effective they are.

The `pg_stat_io` and `pg_statio_` set of views are useful for determining the effectiveness of the buffer cache. They can be used to calculate a cache hit ratio. Note that while PostgreSQL's I/O statistics capture most instances in which the kernel was invoked in order to perform I/O, they do not differentiate between data which had to be fetched from disk and that which already resided in the kernel page cache. Users are advised to use the PostgreSQL statistics views in combination with operating system utilities for a more complete picture of their database's I/O performance.

### 28.2.3. `pg_stat_activity`

The `pg_stat_activity` view will have one row per server process, showing information related to the current activity of that process.

**Table 28.3. pg\_stat\_activity View**

Column	Type	Description
datid	oid	OID of the database this backend is connected to
datname	name	Name of the database this backend is connected to
pid	integer	Process ID of this backend
leader_pid	integer	Process ID of the parallel group leader if this process is a parallel query worker, or process ID of the leader apply worker if this process is a parallel apply worker. NULL indicates that this process is a parallel group leader or leader apply worker, or does not participate in any parallel operation.
usesysid	oid	OID of the user logged into this backend
username	name	Name of the user logged into this backend
application_name	text	Name of the application that is connected to this backend
client_addr	inet	IP address of the client connected to this backend. If this field is null, it indicates either that the client is connected via a Unix socket on the server machine or that this is an internal process such as autovacuum.
client_hostname	text	Host name of the connected client, as reported by a reverse DNS lookup of <code>client_addr</code> . This field will only be non-null for IP connections, and only when <code>log_hostname</code> is enabled.
client_port	integer	TCP port number that the client is using for communication with this backend, or -1 if a Unix socket is used. If this field is null, it indicates that this is an internal server process.
backend_start	timestamp with time zone	Time when this process was started. For client backends, this is the time the client connected to the server.
xact_start	timestamp with time zone	Time when this process' current transaction was started, or null if no transaction is active. If the current query is the first of its transaction, this column is equal to the <code>query_start</code> column.
query_start	timestamp with time zone	Time when the currently active query was started, or if <code>state</code> is not active, when the last query was started
state_change	timestamp with time zone	Time when the state was last changed
wait_event_type	text	The type of event for which the backend is waiting, if any; otherwise NULL. See Table 28.4.
wait_event	text	Wait event name if backend is currently waiting, otherwise NULL. See Table 28.5 through Table 28.13.
state	text	

Column Type	Description
	<p>Current overall state of this backend. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>active</code>: The backend is executing a query.</li> <li>• <code>idle</code>: The backend is waiting for a new client command.</li> <li>• <code>idle in transaction</code>: The backend is in a transaction, but is not currently executing a query.</li> <li>• <code>idle in transaction (aborted)</code>: This state is similar to <code>idle in transaction</code>, except one of the statements in the transaction caused an error.</li> <li>• <code>fastpath function call</code>: The backend is executing a fast-path function.</li> <li>• <code>disabled</code>: This state is reported if <code>track_activities</code> is disabled in this backend.</li> </ul>
<code>backend_xid</code> <code>xid</code>	Top-level transaction identifier of this backend, if any; see Section 74.1.
<code>backend_xmin</code> <code>xid</code>	The current backend's <code>xmin</code> horizon.
<code>query_id</code> <code>bigint</code>	Identifier of this backend's most recent query. If <code>state</code> is <code>active</code> this field shows the identifier of the currently executing query. In all other states, it shows the identifier of last query that was executed. Query identifiers are not computed by default so this field will be null unless <code>compute_query_id</code> parameter is enabled or a third-party module that computes query identifiers is configured.
<code>query</code> <code>text</code>	Text of this backend's most recent query. If <code>state</code> is <code>active</code> this field shows the currently executing query. In all other states, it shows the last query that was executed. By default the query text is truncated at 1024 bytes; this value can be changed via the parameter <code>track_activity_query_size</code> .
<code>backend_type</code> <code>text</code>	Type of current backend. Possible types are <code>autovacuum launcher</code> , <code>autovacuum worker</code> , <code>logical replication launcher</code> , <code>logical replication worker</code> , <code>parallel worker</code> , <code>background writer</code> , <code>client backend</code> , <code>checkpointer</code> , <code>archiver</code> , <code>standalone backend</code> , <code>startup</code> , <code>walreceiver</code> , <code>walsender</code> and <code>walwriter</code> . In addition, background workers registered by extensions may have additional types.

### Note

The `wait_event` and `state` columns are independent. If a backend is in the `active` state, it may or may not be waiting on some event. If the state is `active` and `wait_event` is non-null, it means that a query is being executed, but is being blocked somewhere in the system.

**Table 28.4. Wait Event Types**

Wait Event Type	Description
<code>Activity</code>	The server process is idle. This event type indicates a process waiting for activity in its main processing loop. <code>wait_event</code> will identify the specific wait point; see Table 28.5.

Wait Event Type	Description
BufferPin	The server process is waiting for exclusive access to a data buffer. Buffer pin waits can be protracted if another process holds an open cursor that last read data from the buffer in question. See Table 28.6.
Client	The server process is waiting for activity on a socket connected to a user application. Thus, the server expects something to happen that is independent of its internal processes. <code>wait_event</code> will identify the specific wait point; see Table 28.7.
Extension	The server process is waiting for some condition defined by an extension module. See Table 28.8.
IO	The server process is waiting for an I/O operation to complete. <code>wait_event</code> will identify the specific wait point; see Table 28.9.
IPC	The server process is waiting for some interaction with another server process. <code>wait_event</code> will identify the specific wait point; see Table 28.10.
Lock	The server process is waiting for a heavyweight lock. Heavyweight locks, also known as lock manager locks or simply locks, primarily protect SQL-visible objects such as tables. However, they are also used to ensure mutual exclusion for certain internal operations such as relation extension. <code>wait_event</code> will identify the type of lock awaited; see Table 28.11.
LWLock	The server process is waiting for a lightweight lock. Most such locks protect a particular data structure in shared memory. <code>wait_event</code> will contain a name identifying the purpose of the lightweight lock. (Some locks have specific names; others are part of a group of locks each with a similar purpose.) See Table 28.12.
Timeout	The server process is waiting for a timeout to expire. <code>wait_event</code> will identify the specific wait point; see Table 28.13.

**Table 28.5. Wait Events of Type Activity**

Activity Wait Event	Description
ArchiverMain	Waiting in main loop of archiver process.
AutoVacuumMain	Waiting in main loop of autovacuum launcher process.
BgWriterHibernate	Waiting in background writer process, hibernating.
BgWriterMain	Waiting in main loop of background writer process.
CheckpointerMain	Waiting in main loop of checkpoint process.

Activity Wait Event	Description
LogicalApplyMain	Waiting in main loop of logical replication apply process.
LogicalLauncherMain	Waiting in main loop of logical replication launcher process.
LogicalParallelApplyMain	Waiting in main loop of logical replication parallel apply process.
RecoveryWalStream	Waiting in main loop of startup process for WAL to arrive, during streaming recovery.
SysLoggerMain	Waiting in main loop of syslogger process.
WalReceiverMain	Waiting in main loop of WAL receiver process.
WalSenderMain	Waiting in main loop of WAL sender process.
WalWriterMain	Waiting in main loop of WAL writer process.

**Table 28.6. Wait Events of Type BufferPin**

BufferPin Wait Event	Description
BufferPin	Waiting to acquire an exclusive pin on a buffer.

**Table 28.7. Wait Events of Type Client**

Client Wait Event	Description
ClientRead	Waiting to read data from the client.
ClientWrite	Waiting to write data to the client.
GSSOpenServer	Waiting to read data from the client while establishing a GSSAPI session.
LibPQWalReceiverConnect	Waiting in WAL receiver to establish connection to remote server.
LibPQWalReceiverReceive	Waiting in WAL receiver to receive data from remote server.
SSLOpenServer	Waiting for SSL while attempting connection.
WalSenderWaitForWAL	Waiting for WAL to be flushed in WAL sender process.
WalSenderWriteData	Waiting for any activity when processing replies from WAL receiver in WAL sender process.

**Table 28.8. Wait Events of Type Extension**

Extension Wait Event	Description
Extension	Waiting in an extension.

**Table 28.9. Wait Events of Type IO**

IO Wait Event	Description
BaseBackupRead	Waiting for base backup to read from a file.
BaseBackupSync	Waiting for data written by a base backup to reach durable storage.
BaseBackupWrite	Waiting for base backup to write to a file.
BufFileRead	Waiting for a read from a buffered file.
BufFileTruncate	Waiting for a buffered file to be truncated.



IO Wait Event	Description
BufFileWrite	Waiting for a write to a buffered file.
ControlFileRead	Waiting for a read from the <code>pg_control</code> file.
ControlFileSync	Waiting for the <code>pg_control</code> file to reach durable storage.
ControlFileSyncUpdate	Waiting for an update to the <code>pg_control</code> file to reach durable storage.
ControlFileWrite	Waiting for a write to the <code>pg_control</code> file.
ControlFileWriteUpdate	Waiting for a write to update the <code>pg_control</code> file.
CopyFileRead	Waiting for a read during a file copy operation.
CopyFileWrite	Waiting for a write during a file copy operation.
DSMAAllocate	Waiting for a dynamic shared memory segment to be allocated.
DSMFillZeroWrite	Waiting to fill a dynamic shared memory backing file with zeroes.
DataFileExtend	Waiting for a relation data file to be extended.
DataFileFlush	Waiting for a relation data file to reach durable storage.
DataFileImmediateSync	Waiting for an immediate synchronization of a relation data file to durable storage.
DataFilePrefetch	Waiting for an asynchronous prefetch from a relation data file.
DataFileRead	Waiting for a read from a relation data file.
DataFileSync	Waiting for changes to a relation data file to reach durable storage.
DataFileTruncate	Waiting for a relation data file to be truncated.
DataFileWrite	Waiting for a write to a relation data file.
LockFileAddToDataDirRead	Waiting for a read while adding a line to the data directory lock file.
LockFileAddToDataDirSync	Waiting for data to reach durable storage while adding a line to the data directory lock file.
LockFileAddToDataDirWrite	Waiting for a write while adding a line to the data directory lock file.
LockFileCreateRead	Waiting to read while creating the data directory lock file.
LockFileCreateSync	Waiting for data to reach durable storage while creating the data directory lock file.
LockFileCreateWrite	Waiting for a write while creating the data directory lock file.
LockFileReCheckDataDirRead	Waiting for a read during recheck of the data directory lock file.
LogicalRewriteCheckpointSync	Waiting for logical rewrite mappings to reach durable storage during a checkpoint.
LogicalRewriteMappingSync	Waiting for mapping data to reach durable storage during a logical rewrite.

IO Wait Event	Description
LogicalRewriteMappingWrite	Waiting for a write of mapping data during a logical rewrite.
LogicalRewriteSync	Waiting for logical rewrite mappings to reach durable storage.
LogicalRewriteTruncate	Waiting for truncate of mapping data during a logical rewrite.
LogicalRewriteWrite	Waiting for a write of logical rewrite mappings.
RelationMapRead	Waiting for a read of the relation map file.
RelationMapReplace	Waiting for durable replacement of a relation map file.
RelationMapWrite	Waiting for a write to the relation map file.
ReorderBufferRead	Waiting for a read during reorder buffer management.
ReorderBufferWrite	Waiting for a write during reorder buffer management.
ReorderLogicalMappingRead	Waiting for a read of a logical mapping during reorder buffer management.
ReplicationSlotRead	Waiting for a read from a replication slot control file.
ReplicationSlotRestoreSync	Waiting for a replication slot control file to reach durable storage while restoring it to memory.
ReplicationSlotSync	Waiting for a replication slot control file to reach durable storage.
ReplicationSlotWrite	Waiting for a write to a replication slot control file.
SLRUFlushSync	Waiting for SLRU data to reach durable storage during a checkpoint or database shutdown.
SLRURead	Waiting for a read of an SLRU page.
SLRUSync	Waiting for SLRU data to reach durable storage following a page write.
SLRUWrite	Waiting for a write of an SLRU page.
SnapbuildRead	Waiting for a read of a serialized historical catalog snapshot.
SnapbuildSync	Waiting for a serialized historical catalog snapshot to reach durable storage.
SnapbuildWrite	Waiting for a write of a serialized historical catalog snapshot.
TimelineHistoryFileSync	Waiting for a timeline history file received via streaming replication to reach durable storage.
TimelineHistoryFileWrite	Waiting for a write of a timeline history file received via streaming replication.
TimelineHistoryRead	Waiting for a read of a timeline history file.
TimelineHistorySync	Waiting for a newly created timeline history file to reach durable storage.
TimelineHistoryWrite	Waiting for a write of a newly created timeline history file.

<b>IO Wait Event</b>	<b>Description</b>
TwophaseFileRead	Waiting for a read of a two phase state file.
TwophaseFileSync	Waiting for a two phase state file to reach durable storage.
TwophaseFileWrite	Waiting for a write of a two phase state file.
VersionFileSync	Waiting for the version file to reach durable storage while creating a database.
VersionFileWrite	Waiting for the version file to be written while creating a database.
WALBootstrapSync	Waiting for WAL to reach durable storage during bootstrapping.
WALBootstrapWrite	Waiting for a write of a WAL page during bootstrapping.
WALCopyRead	Waiting for a read when creating a new WAL segment by copying an existing one.
WALCopySync	Waiting for a new WAL segment created by copying an existing one to reach durable storage.
WALCopyWrite	Waiting for a write when creating a new WAL segment by copying an existing one.
WALInitSync	Waiting for a newly initialized WAL file to reach durable storage.
WALInitWrite	Waiting for a write while initializing a new WAL file.
WALRead	Waiting for a read from a WAL file.
WALSenderTimelineHistoryRead	Waiting for a read from a timeline history file during a walsender timeline command.
WALSync	Waiting for a WAL file to reach durable storage.
WALSyncMethodAssign	Waiting for data to reach durable storage while assigning a new WAL sync method.
WALWrite	Waiting for a write to a WAL file.

**Table 28.10. Wait Events of Type IPC**

<b>IPC Wait Event</b>	<b>Description</b>
AppendReady	Waiting for subplan nodes of an Append plan node to be ready.
ArchiveCleanupCommand	Waiting for archive_cleanup_command to complete.
ArchiveCommand	Waiting for archive_command to complete.
BackendTermination	Waiting for the termination of another backend.
BackupWaitWalArchive	Waiting for WAL files required for a backup to be successfully archived.
BgWorkerShutdown	Waiting for background worker to shut down.
BgWorkerStartup	Waiting for background worker to start up.
BtreePage	Waiting for the page number needed to continue a parallel B-tree scan to become available.
BufferIO	Waiting for buffer I/O to complete.

IPC Wait Event	Description
CheckpointDone	Waiting for a checkpoint to complete.
CheckpointStart	Waiting for a checkpoint to start.
ExecuteGather	Waiting for activity from a child process while executing a Gather plan node.
HashBatchAllocate	Waiting for an elected Parallel Hash participant to allocate a hash table.
HashBatchElect	Waiting to elect a Parallel Hash participant to allocate a hash table.
HashBatchLoad	Waiting for other Parallel Hash participants to finish loading a hash table.
HashBuildAllocate	Waiting for an elected Parallel Hash participant to allocate the initial hash table.
HashBuildElect	Waiting to elect a Parallel Hash participant to allocate the initial hash table.
HashBuildHashInner	Waiting for other Parallel Hash participants to finish hashing the inner relation.
HashBuildHashOuter	Waiting for other Parallel Hash participants to finish partitioning the outer relation.
HashGrowBatchesDecide	Waiting to elect a Parallel Hash participant to decide on future batch growth.
HashGrowBatchesElect	Waiting to elect a Parallel Hash participant to allocate more batches.
HashGrowBatchesFinish	Waiting for an elected Parallel Hash participant to decide on future batch growth.
HashGrowBatchesReallocate	Waiting for an elected Parallel Hash participant to allocate more batches.
HashGrowBatchesRepartition	Waiting for other Parallel Hash participants to finish repartitioning.
HashGrowBucketsElect	Waiting to elect a Parallel Hash participant to allocate more buckets.
HashGrowBucketsReallocate	Waiting for an elected Parallel Hash participant to finish allocating more buckets.
HashGrowBucketsReinsert	Waiting for other Parallel Hash participants to finish inserting tuples into new buckets.
LogicalApplySendData	Waiting for a logical replication leader apply process to send data to a parallel apply process.
LogicalParallelApplyStateChange	Waiting for a logical replication parallel apply process to change state.
LogicalSyncData	Waiting for a logical replication remote server to send data for initial table synchronization.
LogicalSyncStateChange	Waiting for a logical replication remote server to change state.
MessageQueueInternal	Waiting for another process to be attached to a shared message queue.
MessageQueuePutMessage	Waiting to write a protocol message to a shared message queue.

IPC Wait Event	Description
MessageQueueReceive	Waiting to receive bytes from a shared message queue.
MessageQueueSend	Waiting to send bytes to a shared message queue.
ParallelBitmapScan	Waiting for parallel bitmap scan to become initialized.
ParallelCreateIndexScan	Waiting for parallel CREATE INDEX workers to finish heap scan.
ParallelFinish	Waiting for parallel workers to finish computing.
ProcArrayGroupUpdate	Waiting for the group leader to clear the transaction ID at end of a parallel operation.
ProcSignalBarrier	Waiting for a barrier event to be processed by all backends.
Promote	Waiting for standby promotion.
RecoveryConflictSnapshot	Waiting for recovery conflict resolution for a vacuum cleanup.
RecoveryConflictTablespace	Waiting for recovery conflict resolution for dropping a tablespace.
RecoveryEndCommand	Waiting for recovery_end_command to complete.
RecoveryPause	Waiting for recovery to be resumed.
ReplicationOriginDrop	Waiting for a replication origin to become inactive so it can be dropped.
ReplicationSlotDrop	Waiting for a replication slot to become inactive so it can be dropped.
RestoreCommand	Waiting for restore_command to complete.
SafeSnapshot	Waiting to obtain a valid snapshot for a READ ONLY DEFERRABLE transaction.
SyncRep	Waiting for confirmation from a remote server during synchronous replication.
WalReceiverExit	Waiting for the WAL receiver to exit.
WalReceiverWaitStart	Waiting for startup process to send initial data for streaming replication.
XactGroupUpdate	Waiting for the group leader to update transaction status at end of a parallel operation.

**Table 28.11. Wait Events of Type Lock**

Lock Wait Event	Description
advisory	Waiting to acquire an advisory user lock.
applytransaction	Waiting to acquire a lock on a remote transaction being applied by a logical replication subscriber.
extend	Waiting to extend a relation.
frozenid	Waiting to update pg_database.dat-frozenxid and pg_database.datminmxid.

Lock Wait Event	Description
object	Waiting to acquire a lock on a non-relation database object.
page	Waiting to acquire a lock on a page of a relation.
relation	Waiting to acquire a lock on a relation.
spectoken	Waiting to acquire a speculative insertion lock.
transactionid	Waiting for a transaction to finish.
tuple	Waiting to acquire a lock on a tuple.
userlock	Waiting to acquire a user lock.
virtualxid	Waiting to acquire a virtual transaction ID lock; see Section 74.1.

**Table 28.12. Wait Events of Type LWLock**

LWLock Wait Event	Description
AddinShmemInit	Waiting to manage an extension's space allocation in shared memory.
AutoFile	Waiting to update the <code>postgresql.auto.conf</code> file.
Autovacuum	Waiting to read or update the current state of autovacuum workers.
AutovacuumSchedule	Waiting to ensure that a table selected for autovacuum still needs vacuuming.
BackgroundWorker	Waiting to read or update background worker state.
BtreeVacuum	Waiting to read or update vacuum-related information for a B-tree index.
BufferContent	Waiting to access a data page in memory.
BufferMapping	Waiting to associate a data block with a buffer in the buffer pool.
CheckpointerComm	Waiting to manage <code>fsync</code> requests.
CommitTs	Waiting to read or update the last value set for a transaction commit timestamp.
CommitTsBuffer	Waiting for I/O on a commit timestamp SLRU buffer.
CommitTsSLRU	Waiting to access the commit timestamp SLRU cache.
ControlFile	Waiting to read or update the <code>pg_control</code> file or create a new WAL file.
DynamicSharedMemoryControl	Waiting to read or update dynamic shared memory allocation information.
LockFastPath	Waiting to read or update a process' fast-path lock information.
LockManager	Waiting to read or update information about “heavyweight” locks.
LogicalRepLauncherDSA	Waiting to access logical replication launcher's dynamic shared memory allocator.

<b>LWLock Wait Event</b>	<b>Description</b>
LogicalRepLauncherHash	Waiting to access logical replication launcher's shared hash table.
LogicalRepWorker	Waiting to read or update the state of logical replication workers.
MultixactGen	Waiting to read or update shared multixact state.
MultixactMemberBuffer	Waiting for I/O on a multixact member SLRU buffer.
MultixactMemberSLRU	Waiting to access the multixact member SLRU cache.
MultixactOffsetBuffer	Waiting for I/O on a multixact offset SLRU buffer.
MultixactOffsetSLRU	Waiting to access the multixact offset SLRU cache.
MultixactTruncation	Waiting to read or truncate multixact information.
NotifyBuffer	Waiting for I/O on a NOTIFY message SLRU buffer.
NotifyQueue	Waiting to read or update NOTIFY messages.
NotifyQueueTail	Waiting to update limit on NOTIFY message storage.
NotifySLRU	Waiting to access the NOTIFY message SLRU cache.
OidGen	Waiting to allocate a new OID.
OldSnapshotTimeMap	Waiting to read or update old snapshot control information.
ParallelAppend	Waiting to choose the next subplan during Parallel Append plan execution.
ParallelHashJoin	Waiting to synchronize workers during Parallel Hash Join plan execution.
ParallelQueryDSA	Waiting for parallel query dynamic shared memory allocation.
PerSessionDSA	Waiting for parallel query dynamic shared memory allocation.
PerSessionRecordType	Waiting to access a parallel query's information about composite types.
PerSessionRecordTypmod	Waiting to access a parallel query's information about type modifiers that identify anonymous record types.
PerXactPredicateList	Waiting to access the list of predicate locks held by the current serializable transaction during a parallel query.
PgStatsData	Waiting for shared memory stats data access
PgStatsDSA	Waiting for stats dynamic shared memory allocator access
PgStatsHash	Waiting for stats shared memory hash table access

LWLock Wait Event	Description
PredicateLockManager	Waiting to access predicate lock information used by serializable transactions.
ProcArray	Waiting to access the shared per-process data structures (typically, to get a snapshot or report a session's transaction ID).
RelationMapping	Waiting to read or update a <code>pg_filenode.map</code> file (used to track the filenode assignments of certain system catalogs).
RelCacheInit	Waiting to read or update a <code>pg_internal.init</code> relation cache initialization file.
ReplicationOrigin	Waiting to create, drop or use a replication origin.
ReplicationOriginState	Waiting to read or update the progress of one replication origin.
ReplicationSlotAllocation	Waiting to allocate or free a replication slot.
ReplicationSlotControl	Waiting to read or update replication slot state.
ReplicationSlotIO	Waiting for I/O on a replication slot.
SerialBuffer	Waiting for I/O on a serializable transaction conflict SLRU buffer.
SerializableFinishedList	Waiting to access the list of finished serializable transactions.
SerializablePredicateList	Waiting to access the list of predicate locks held by serializable transactions.
SerializableXactHash	Waiting to read or update information about serializable transactions.
SerialSLRU	Waiting to access the serializable transaction conflict SLRU cache.
SharedTidBitmap	Waiting to access a shared TID bitmap during a parallel bitmap index scan.
SharedTupleStore	Waiting to access a shared tuple store during parallel query.
ShmemIndex	Waiting to find or allocate space in shared memory.
SInvalRead	Waiting to retrieve messages from the shared catalog invalidation queue.
SInvalWrite	Waiting to add a message to the shared catalog invalidation queue.
SubtransBuffer	Waiting for I/O on a sub-transaction SLRU buffer.
SubtransSLRU	Waiting to access the sub-transaction SLRU cache.
SyncRep	Waiting to read or update information about the state of synchronous replication.
SyncScan	Waiting to select the starting location of a synchronized table scan.
TablespaceCreate	Waiting to create or drop a tablespace.



LWLock Wait Event	Description
TwoPhaseState	Waiting to read or update the state of prepared transactions.
WALBufMapping	Waiting to replace a page in WAL buffers.
WALInsert	Waiting to insert WAL data into a memory buffer.
WALWrite	Waiting for WAL buffers to be written to disk.
WrapLimitsVacuum	Waiting to update limits on transaction id and multixact consumption.
XactBuffer	Waiting for I/O on a transaction status SLRU buffer.
XactSLRU	Waiting to access the transaction status SLRU cache.
XactTruncation	Waiting to execute <code>pg_xact_status</code> or update the oldest transaction ID available to it.
XidGen	Waiting to allocate a new transaction ID.

### Note

Extensions can add LWLock types to the list shown in Table 28.12. In some cases, the name assigned by an extension will not be available in all server processes; so an LWLock wait event might be reported as just “extension” rather than the extension-assigned name.

**Table 28.13. Wait Events of Type Timeout**

Timeout Wait Event	Description
BaseBackupThrottle	Waiting during base backup when throttling activity.
CheckpointWriteDelay	Waiting between writes while performing a checkpoint.
PgSleep	Waiting due to a call to <code>pg_sleep</code> or a sibling function.
RecoveryApplyDelay	Waiting to apply WAL during recovery because of a delay setting.
RecoveryRetrieveRetryInterval	Waiting during recovery when WAL data is not available from any source ( <code>pg_wal</code> , archive or stream).
RegisterSyncRequest	Waiting while sending synchronization requests to the checkpointer, because the request queue is full.
SpinDelay	Waiting while acquiring a contended spinlock.
VacuumDelay	Waiting in a cost-based vacuum delay point.
VacuumTruncate	Waiting to acquire an exclusive lock to truncate off any empty pages at the end of a table vacuumed.

Here is an example of how wait events can be viewed:

```
SELECT pid, wait_event_type, wait_event FROM pg_stat_activity WHERE
wait_event is NOT NULL;
 pid | wait_event_type | wait_event
-----+-----+-----
 2540 | Lock            | relation
 6644 | LWLock          | ProcArray
(2 rows)
```

## 28.2.4. pg\_stat\_replication

The `pg_stat_replication` view will contain one row per WAL sender process, showing statistics about replication to that sender's connected standby server. Only directly connected standbys are listed; no information is available about downstream standby servers.

**Table 28.14. `pg_stat_replication` View**

Column Type	Description
<code>pid</code> integer	Process ID of a WAL sender process
<code>usesysid</code> oid	OID of the user logged into this WAL sender process
<code>username</code> name	Name of the user logged into this WAL sender process
<code>application_name</code> text	Name of the application that is connected to this WAL sender
<code>client_addr</code> inet	IP address of the client connected to this WAL sender. If this field is null, it indicates that the client is connected via a Unix socket on the server machine.
<code>client_hostname</code> text	Host name of the connected client, as reported by a reverse DNS lookup of <code>client_addr</code> . This field will only be non-null for IP connections, and only when <code>log_hostname</code> is enabled.
<code>client_port</code> integer	TCP port number that the client is using for communication with this WAL sender, or <code>-1</code> if a Unix socket is used
<code>backend_start</code> timestamp with time zone	Time when this process was started, i.e., when the client connected to this WAL sender
<code>backend_xmin</code> xid	This standby's xmin horizon reported by <code>hot_standby_feedback</code> .
<code>state</code> text	Current WAL sender state. Possible values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>startup</code>: This WAL sender is starting up.</li> <li><code>catchup</code>: This WAL sender's connected standby is catching up with the primary.</li> <li><code>streaming</code>: This WAL sender is streaming changes after its connected standby server has caught up with the primary.</li> <li><code>backup</code>: This WAL sender is sending a backup.</li> <li><code>stopping</code>: This WAL sender is stopping.</li> </ul>
<code>sent_lsn</code> pg_lsn	

Column Type	Description
	Last write-ahead log location sent on this connection
<code>write_lsn pg_lsn</code>	Last write-ahead log location written to disk by this standby server
<code>flush_lsn pg_lsn</code>	Last write-ahead log location flushed to disk by this standby server
<code>replay_lsn pg_lsn</code>	Last write-ahead log location replayed into the database on this standby server
<code>write_lag interval</code>	Time elapsed between flushing recent WAL locally and receiving notification that this standby server has written it (but not yet flushed it or applied it). This can be used to gauge the delay that <code>synchronous_commit</code> level <code>remote_write</code> incurred while committing if this server was configured as a synchronous standby.
<code>flush_lag interval</code>	Time elapsed between flushing recent WAL locally and receiving notification that this standby server has written and flushed it (but not yet applied it). This can be used to gauge the delay that <code>synchronous_commit</code> level on incurred while committing if this server was configured as a synchronous standby.
<code>replay_lag interval</code>	Time elapsed between flushing recent WAL locally and receiving notification that this standby server has written, flushed and applied it. This can be used to gauge the delay that <code>synchronous_commit</code> level <code>remote_apply</code> incurred while committing if this server was configured as a synchronous standby.
<code>sync_priority integer</code>	Priority of this standby server for being chosen as the synchronous standby in a priority-based synchronous replication. This has no effect in a quorum-based synchronous replication.
<code>sync_state text</code>	Synchronous state of this standby server. Possible values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>async</code>: This standby server is asynchronous.</li> <li><code>potential</code>: This standby server is now asynchronous, but can potentially become synchronous if one of current synchronous ones fails.</li> <li><code>sync</code>: This standby server is synchronous.</li> <li><code>quorum</code>: This standby server is considered as a candidate for quorum standbys.</li> </ul>
<code>reply_time timestamp with time zone</code>	Send time of last reply message received from standby server

The lag times reported in the `pg_stat_replication` view are measurements of the time taken for recent WAL to be written, flushed and replayed and for the sender to know about it. These times represent the commit delay that was (or would have been) introduced by each synchronous commit level, if the remote server was configured as a synchronous standby. For an asynchronous standby, the `replay_lag` column approximates the delay before recent transactions became visible to queries. If the standby server has entirely caught up with the sending server and there is no more WAL activity, the most recently measured lag times will continue to be displayed for a short time and then show NULL.

Lag times work automatically for physical replication. Logical decoding plugins may optionally emit tracking messages; if they do not, the tracking mechanism will simply display NULL lag.

**Note**

The reported lag times are not predictions of how long it will take for the standby to catch up with the sending server assuming the current rate of replay. Such a system would show similar times while new WAL is being generated, but would differ when the sender becomes idle. In particular, when the standby has caught up completely, `pg_stat_replication` shows the time taken to write, flush and replay the most recent reported WAL location rather than zero as some users might expect. This is consistent with the goal of measuring synchronous commit and transaction visibility delays for recent write transactions. To reduce confusion for users expecting a different model of lag, the lag columns revert to NULL after a short time on a fully replayed idle system. Monitoring systems should choose whether to represent this as missing data, zero or continue to display the last known value.

## 28.2.5. `pg_stat_replication_slots`

The `pg_stat_replication_slots` view will contain one row per logical replication slot, showing statistics about its usage.

**Table 28.15. `pg_stat_replication_slots` View**

Column Type	Description
<code>slot_name</code> text	A unique, cluster-wide identifier for the replication slot
<code>spill_txns</code> bigint	Number of transactions spilled to disk once the memory used by logical decoding to decode changes from WAL has exceeded <code>logical_decoding_work_mem</code> . The counter gets incremented for both top-level transactions and subtransactions.
<code>spill_count</code> bigint	Number of times transactions were spilled to disk while decoding changes from WAL for this slot. This counter is incremented each time a transaction is spilled, and the same transaction may be spilled multiple times.
<code>spill_bytes</code> bigint	Amount of decoded transaction data spilled to disk while performing decoding of changes from WAL for this slot. This and other spill counters can be used to gauge the I/O which occurred during logical decoding and allow tuning <code>logical_decoding_work_mem</code> .
<code>stream_txns</code> bigint	Number of in-progress transactions streamed to the decoding output plugin after the memory used by logical decoding to decode changes from WAL for this slot has exceeded <code>logical_decoding_work_mem</code> . Streaming only works with top-level transactions (subtransactions can't be streamed independently), so the counter is not incremented for subtransactions.
<code>stream_count</code> bigint	Number of times in-progress transactions were streamed to the decoding output plugin while decoding changes from WAL for this slot. This counter is incremented each time a transaction is streamed, and the same transaction may be streamed multiple times.
<code>stream_bytes</code> bigint	Amount of transaction data decoded for streaming in-progress transactions to the decoding output plugin while decoding changes from WAL for this slot. This and other streaming counters for this slot can be used to tune <code>logical_decoding_work_mem</code> .
<code>total_txns</code> bigint	

Column Type	Description
	Number of decoded transactions sent to the decoding output plugin for this slot. This counts top-level transactions only, and is not incremented for subtransactions. Note that this includes the transactions that are streamed and/or spilled.
<code>total_bytes</code> <code>bigint</code>	Amount of transaction data decoded for sending transactions to the decoding output plugin while decoding changes from WAL for this slot. Note that this includes data that is streamed and/or spilled.
<code>stats_reset</code> <code>timestamp with time zone</code>	Time at which these statistics were last reset

## 28.2.6. `pg_stat_wal_receiver`

The `pg_stat_wal_receiver` view will contain only one row, showing statistics about the WAL receiver from that receiver's connected server.

**Table 28.16. `pg_stat_wal_receiver` View**

Column Type	Description
<code>pid</code> <code>integer</code>	Process ID of the WAL receiver process
<code>status</code> <code>text</code>	Activity status of the WAL receiver process
<code>receive_start_lsn</code> <code>pg_lsn</code>	First write-ahead log location used when WAL receiver is started
<code>receive_start_tli</code> <code>integer</code>	First timeline number used when WAL receiver is started
<code>written_lsn</code> <code>pg_lsn</code>	Last write-ahead log location already received and written to disk, but not flushed. This should not be used for data integrity checks.
<code>flushed_lsn</code> <code>pg_lsn</code>	Last write-ahead log location already received and flushed to disk, the initial value of this field being the first log location used when WAL receiver is started
<code>received_tli</code> <code>integer</code>	Timeline number of last write-ahead log location received and flushed to disk, the initial value of this field being the timeline number of the first log location used when WAL receiver is started
<code>last_msg_send_time</code> <code>timestamp with time zone</code>	Send time of last message received from origin WAL sender
<code>last_msg_receipt_time</code> <code>timestamp with time zone</code>	Receipt time of last message received from origin WAL sender
<code>latest_end_lsn</code> <code>pg_lsn</code>	Last write-ahead log location reported to origin WAL sender
<code>latest_end_time</code> <code>timestamp with time zone</code>	Time of last write-ahead log location reported to origin WAL sender
<code>slot_name</code> <code>text</code>	Replication slot name used by this WAL receiver
<code>sender_host</code> <code>text</code>	

Column Type	Description
	Host of the PostgreSQL instance this WAL receiver is connected to. This can be a host name, an IP address, or a directory path if the connection is via Unix socket. (The path case can be distinguished because it will always be an absolute path, beginning with /.)
sender_port integer	Port number of the PostgreSQL instance this WAL receiver is connected to.
conninfo text	Connection string used by this WAL receiver, with security-sensitive fields obfuscated.

## 28.2.7. pg\_stat\_recovery\_prefetch

The `pg_stat_recovery_prefetch` view will contain only one row. The columns `wal_distance`, `block_distance` and `io_depth` show current values, and the other columns show cumulative counters that can be reset with the `pg_stat_reset_shared` function.

**Table 28.17. `pg_stat_recovery_prefetch` View**

Column Type	Description
stats_reset timestamp with time zone	Time at which these statistics were last reset
prefetch bigint	Number of blocks prefetched because they were not in the buffer pool
hit bigint	Number of blocks not prefetched because they were already in the buffer pool
skip_init bigint	Number of blocks not prefetched because they would be zero-initialized
skip_new bigint	Number of blocks not prefetched because they didn't exist yet
skip_fpw bigint	Number of blocks not prefetched because a full page image was included in the WAL
skip_rep bigint	Number of blocks not prefetched because they were already recently prefetched
wal_distance int	How many bytes ahead the prefetcher is looking
block_distance int	How many blocks ahead the prefetcher is looking
io_depth int	How many prefetches have been initiated but are not yet known to have completed

## 28.2.8. pg\_stat\_subscription

**Table 28.18. `pg_stat_subscription` View**

Column Type	Description
subid oid	OID of the subscription
subname name	

Column Type	Description
	Name of the subscription
pid integer	Process ID of the subscription worker process
leader_pid integer	Process ID of the leader apply worker if this process is a parallel apply worker; NULL if this process is a leader apply worker or a synchronization worker
relid oid	OID of the relation that the worker is synchronizing; NULL for the leader apply worker and parallel apply workers
received_lsn pg_lsn	Last write-ahead log location received, the initial value of this field being 0; NULL for parallel apply workers
last_msg_send_time timestamp with time zone	Send time of last message received from origin WAL sender; NULL for parallel apply workers
last_msg_receipt_time timestamp with time zone	Receipt time of last message received from origin WAL sender; NULL for parallel apply workers
latest_end_lsn pg_lsn	Last write-ahead log location reported to origin WAL sender; NULL for parallel apply workers
latest_end_time timestamp with time zone	Time of last write-ahead log location reported to origin WAL sender; NULL for parallel apply workers

## 28.2.9. pg\_stat\_subscription\_stats

The `pg_stat_subscription_stats` view will contain one row per subscription.

**Table 28.19. pg\_stat\_subscription\_stats View**

Column Type	Description
subid oid	OID of the subscription
subname name	Name of the subscription
apply_error_count bigint	Number of times an error occurred while applying changes
sync_error_count bigint	Number of times an error occurred during the initial table synchronization
stats_reset timestamp with time zone	Time at which these statistics were last reset

## 28.2.10. pg\_stat\_ssl

The `pg_stat_ssl` view will contain one row per backend or WAL sender process, showing statistics about SSL usage on this connection. It can be joined to `pg_stat_activity` or `pg_stat_replication` on the `pid` column to get more details about the connection.

**Table 28.20. pg\_stat\_ssl View**

Column Type	Description
pid integer	Process ID of a backend or WAL sender process
ssl boolean	True if SSL is used on this connection
version text	Version of SSL in use, or NULL if SSL is not in use on this connection
cipher text	Name of SSL cipher in use, or NULL if SSL is not in use on this connection
bits integer	Number of bits in the encryption algorithm used, or NULL if SSL is not used on this connection
client_dn text	Distinguished Name (DN) field from the client certificate used, or NULL if no client certificate was supplied or if SSL is not in use on this connection. This field is truncated if the DN field is longer than NAMEDATALEN (64 characters in a standard build).
client_serial numeric	Serial number of the client certificate, or NULL if no client certificate was supplied or if SSL is not in use on this connection. The combination of certificate serial number and certificate issuer uniquely identifies a certificate (unless the issuer erroneously reuses serial numbers).
issuer_dn text	DN of the issuer of the client certificate, or NULL if no client certificate was supplied or if SSL is not in use on this connection. This field is truncated like client_dn.

## 28.2.11. pg\_stat\_gssapi

The `pg_stat_gssapi` view will contain one row per backend, showing information about GSSAPI usage on this connection. It can be joined to `pg_stat_activity` or `pg_stat_replication` on the `pid` column to get more details about the connection.

**Table 28.21. pg\_stat\_gssapi View**

Column Type	Description
pid integer	Process ID of a backend
gss_authenticated boolean	True if GSSAPI authentication was used for this connection
principal text	Principal used to authenticate this connection, or NULL if GSSAPI was not used to authenticate this connection. This field is truncated if the principal is longer than NAMEDATALEN (64 characters in a standard build).
encrypted boolean	True if GSSAPI encryption is in use on this connection
credentials_delegated boolean	True if GSSAPI credentials were delegated on this connection.

## 28.2.12. pg\_stat\_archiver



The `pg_stat_archiver` view will always have a single row, containing data about the archiver process of the cluster.

**Table 28.22. `pg_stat_archiver` View**

Column	Type	Description
<code>archived_count</code>	<code>bigint</code>	Number of WAL files that have been successfully archived
<code>last_archived_wal</code>	<code>text</code>	Name of the WAL file most recently successfully archived
<code>last_archived_time</code>	<code>timestamp with time zone</code>	Time of the most recent successful archive operation
<code>failed_count</code>	<code>bigint</code>	Number of failed attempts for archiving WAL files
<code>last_failed_wal</code>	<code>text</code>	Name of the WAL file of the most recent failed archival operation
<code>last_failed_time</code>	<code>timestamp with time zone</code>	Time of the most recent failed archival operation
<code>stats_reset</code>	<code>timestamp with time zone</code>	Time at which these statistics were last reset

Normally, WAL files are archived in order, oldest to newest, but that is not guaranteed, and does not hold under special circumstances like when promoting a standby or after crash recovery. Therefore it is not safe to assume that all files older than `last_archived_wal` have also been successfully archived.

### 28.2.13. `pg_stat_io`

The `pg_stat_io` view will contain one row for each combination of backend type, target I/O object, and I/O context, showing cluster-wide I/O statistics. Combinations which do not make sense are omitted.

Currently, I/O on relations (e.g. tables, indexes) is tracked. However, relation I/O which bypasses shared buffers (e.g. when moving a table from one tablespace to another) is currently not tracked.

**Table 28.23. `pg_stat_io` View**

Column	Type	Description
<code>backend_type</code>	<code>text</code>	Type of backend (e.g. background worker, autovacuum worker). See <code>pg_stat_activity</code> for more information on <code>backend_types</code> . Some <code>backend_types</code> do not accumulate I/O operation statistics and will not be included in the view.
<code>object</code>	<code>text</code>	Target object of an I/O operation. Possible values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>relation</code>: Permanent relations.</li> <li><code>temp relation</code>: Temporary relations.</li> </ul>
<code>context</code>	<code>text</code>	The context of an I/O operation. Possible values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>normal</code>: The default or standard context for a type of I/O operation. For example, by default, relation data is read into and written out from shared buffers. Thus, reads and writes of relation data to and from shared buffers are tracked in context <code>normal</code>.</li> </ul>

Column Type	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>vacuum:</b> I/O operations performed outside of shared buffers while vacuuming and analyzing permanent relations. Temporary table vacuums use the same local buffer pool as other temporary table I/O operations and are tracked in <code>context normal</code>.</li> <li><b>bulkread:</b> Certain large read I/O operations done outside of shared buffers, for example, a sequential scan of a large table.</li> <li><b>bulkwrite:</b> Certain large write I/O operations done outside of shared buffers, such as <code>COPY</code>.</li> </ul>
<code>reads bigint</code>	Number of read operations, each of the size specified in <code>op_bytes</code> .
<code>read_time double precision</code>	Time spent in read operations in milliseconds (if <code>track_io_timing</code> is enabled, otherwise zero)
<code>writes bigint</code>	Number of write operations, each of the size specified in <code>op_bytes</code> .
<code>write_time double precision</code>	Time spent in write operations in milliseconds (if <code>track_io_timing</code> is enabled, otherwise zero)
<code>writebacks bigint</code>	Number of units of size <code>op_bytes</code> which the process requested the kernel write out to permanent storage.
<code>writeback_time double precision</code>	Time spent in writeback operations in milliseconds (if <code>track_io_timing</code> is enabled, otherwise zero). This includes the time spent queueing write-out requests and, potentially, the time spent to write out the dirty data.
<code>extends bigint</code>	Number of relation extend operations, each of the size specified in <code>op_bytes</code> .
<code>extend_time double precision</code>	Time spent in extend operations in milliseconds (if <code>track_io_timing</code> is enabled, otherwise zero)
<code>op_bytes bigint</code>	<p>The number of bytes per unit of I/O read, written, or extended.</p> <p>Relation data reads, writes, and extends are done in <code>block_size</code> units, derived from the build-time parameter <code>BLCKSZ</code>, which is 8192 by default.</p>
<code>hits bigint</code>	The number of times a desired block was found in a shared buffer.
<code>evictions bigint</code>	<p>Number of times a block has been written out from a shared or local buffer in order to make it available for another use.</p> <p>In <code>context normal</code>, this counts the number of times a block was evicted from a buffer and replaced with another block. In <code>contexts bulkwrite</code>, <code>bulkread</code>, and <code>vacuum</code>, this counts the number of times a block was evicted from shared buffers in order to add the shared buffer to a separate, size-limited ring buffer for use in a bulk I/O operation.</p>
<code>reuses bigint</code>	The number of times an existing buffer in a size-limited ring buffer outside of shared buffers was reused as part of an I/O operation in the <code>bulkread</code> , <code>bulkwrite</code> , or <code>vacuum</code> contexts.
<code>fsyncs bigint</code>	Number of <code>fsync</code> calls. These are only tracked in <code>context normal</code> .

Column Type	Description
<code>fsync_time</code> double precision	Time spent in fsync operations in milliseconds (if <code>track_io_timing</code> is enabled, otherwise zero)
<code>stats_reset</code> timestamp with time zone	Time at which these statistics were last reset.

Some backend types never perform I/O operations on some I/O objects and/or in some I/O contexts. These rows are omitted from the view. For example, the checkpoint does not checkpoint temporary tables, so there will be no rows for `backend_type` `checkpointer` and `object temp relation`.

In addition, some I/O operations will never be performed either by certain backend types or on certain I/O objects and/or in certain I/O contexts. These cells will be NULL. For example, temporary tables are not fsynced, so `fsyncs` will be NULL for `object temp relation`. Also, the background writer does not perform reads, so `reads` will be NULL in rows for `backend_type` `background writer`.

`pg_stat_io` can be used to inform database tuning. For example:

- A high `evictions` count can indicate that shared buffers should be increased.
- Client backends rely on the checkpoint to ensure data is persisted to permanent storage. Large numbers of `fsyncs` by `client` backends could indicate a misconfiguration of shared buffers or of the checkpoint. More information on configuring the checkpoint can be found in Section 30.5.
- Normally, client backends should be able to rely on auxiliary processes like the checkpoint and the background writer to write out dirty data as much as possible. Large numbers of writes by client backends could indicate a misconfiguration of shared buffers or of the checkpoint. More information on configuring the checkpoint can be found in Section 30.5.

### Note

Columns tracking I/O time will only be non-zero when `track_io_timing` is enabled. The user should be careful when referencing these columns in combination with their corresponding IO operations in case `track_io_timing` was not enabled for the entire time since the last stats reset.

## 28.2.14. `pg_stat_bgwriter`

The `pg_stat_bgwriter` view will always have a single row, containing global data for the cluster.

**Table 28.24. `pg_stat_bgwriter` View**

Column Type	Description
<code>checkpoints_timed</code> bigint	Number of scheduled checkpoints that have been performed
<code>checkpoints_req</code> bigint	Number of requested checkpoints that have been performed
<code>checkpoint_write_time</code> double precision	Total amount of time that has been spent in the portion of checkpoint processing where files are written to disk, in milliseconds

Column Type	Description
checkpoint_sync_time double precision	Total amount of time that has been spent in the portion of checkpoint processing where files are synchronized to disk, in milliseconds
buffers_checkpoint bigint	Number of buffers written during checkpoints
buffers_clean bigint	Number of buffers written by the background writer
maxwritten_clean bigint	Number of times the background writer stopped a cleaning scan because it had written too many buffers
buffers_backend bigint	Number of buffers written directly by a backend
buffers_backend_fsync bigint	Number of times a backend had to execute its own fsync call (normally the background writer handles those even when the backend does its own write)
buffers_alloc bigint	Number of buffers allocated
stats_reset timestamp with time zone	Time at which these statistics were last reset

## 28.2.15. pg\_stat\_wal

The `pg_stat_wal` view will always have a single row, containing data about WAL activity of the cluster.

**Table 28.25. `pg_stat_wal` View**

Column Type	Description
wal_records bigint	Total number of WAL records generated
wal_fpi bigint	Total number of WAL full page images generated
wal_bytes numeric	Total amount of WAL generated in bytes
wal_buffers_full bigint	Number of times WAL data was written to disk because WAL buffers became full
wal_write bigint	Number of times WAL buffers were written out to disk via <code>XLogWrite</code> request. See Section 30.5 for more information about the internal WAL function <code>XLogWrite</code> .
wal_sync bigint	Number of times WAL files were synced to disk via <code>issue_xlog_fsync</code> request (if <code>fsync</code> is on and <code>wal_sync_method</code> is either <code>fdatasync</code> , <code>fsync</code> or <code>fsync_writethrough</code> , otherwise zero). See Section 30.5 for more information about the internal WAL function <code>issue_xlog_fsync</code> .
wal_write_time double precision	Total amount of time spent writing WAL buffers to disk via <code>XLogWrite</code> request, in milliseconds (if <code>track_wal_io_timing</code> is enabled, otherwise zero). This includes the sync time when <code>wal_sync_method</code> is either <code>open_datasync</code> or <code>open_sync</code> .

Column Type	Description
wal_sync_time double precision	Total amount of time spent syncing WAL files to disk via <code>issue_xlog_fsync</code> request, in milliseconds (if <code>track_wal_io_timing</code> is enabled, <code>fsync</code> is on, and <code>wal_sync_method</code> is either <code>fdatasync</code> , <code>fsync</code> or <code>fsync_writethrough</code> , otherwise zero).
stats_reset timestamp with time zone	Time at which these statistics were last reset

## 28.2.16. pg\_stat\_database

The `pg_stat_database` view will contain one row for each database in the cluster, plus one for shared objects, showing database-wide statistics.

**Table 28.26. pg\_stat\_database View**

Column Type	Description
datid oid	OID of this database, or 0 for objects belonging to a shared relation
datname name	Name of this database, or NULL for shared objects.
numbackends integer	Number of backends currently connected to this database, or NULL for shared objects. This is the only column in this view that returns a value reflecting current state; all other columns return the accumulated values since the last reset.
xact_commit bigint	Number of transactions in this database that have been committed
xact_rollback bigint	Number of transactions in this database that have been rolled back
blks_read bigint	Number of disk blocks read in this database
blks_hit bigint	Number of times disk blocks were found already in the buffer cache, so that a read was not necessary (this only includes hits in the PostgreSQL buffer cache, not the operating system's file system cache)
tup_returned bigint	Number of live rows fetched by sequential scans and index entries returned by index scans in this database
tup_fetched bigint	Number of live rows fetched by index scans in this database
tup_inserted bigint	Number of rows inserted by queries in this database
tup_updated bigint	Number of rows updated by queries in this database
tup_deleted bigint	Number of rows deleted by queries in this database
conflicts bigint	Number of queries canceled due to conflicts with recovery in this database. (Conflicts occur only on standby servers; see <code>pg_stat_database_conflicts</code> for details.)

Column Type	Description
<code>temp_files bigint</code>	Number of temporary files created by queries in this database. All temporary files are counted, regardless of why the temporary file was created (e.g., sorting or hashing), and regardless of the <code>log_temp_files</code> setting.
<code>temp_bytes bigint</code>	Total amount of data written to temporary files by queries in this database. All temporary files are counted, regardless of why the temporary file was created, and regardless of the <code>log_temp_files</code> setting.
<code>deadlocks bigint</code>	Number of deadlocks detected in this database
<code>checksum_failures bigint</code>	Number of data page checksum failures detected in this database (or on a shared object), or NULL if data checksums are not enabled.
<code>checksum_last_failure timestamp with time zone</code>	Time at which the last data page checksum failure was detected in this database (or on a shared object), or NULL if data checksums are not enabled.
<code>blk_read_time double precision</code>	Time spent reading data file blocks by backends in this database, in milliseconds (if <code>track_io_timing</code> is enabled, otherwise zero)
<code>blk_write_time double precision</code>	Time spent writing data file blocks by backends in this database, in milliseconds (if <code>track_io_timing</code> is enabled, otherwise zero)
<code>session_time double precision</code>	Time spent by database sessions in this database, in milliseconds (note that statistics are only updated when the state of a session changes, so if sessions have been idle for a long time, this idle time won't be included)
<code>active_time double precision</code>	Time spent executing SQL statements in this database, in milliseconds (this corresponds to the states <code>active</code> and <code>fastpath function call</code> in <code>pg_stat_activity</code> )
<code>idle_in_transaction_time double precision</code>	Time spent idling while in a transaction in this database, in milliseconds (this corresponds to the states <code>idle in transaction</code> and <code>idle in transaction (aborted)</code> in <code>pg_stat_activity</code> )
<code>sessions bigint</code>	Total number of sessions established to this database
<code>sessions_abandoned bigint</code>	Number of database sessions to this database that were terminated because connection to the client was lost
<code>sessions_fatal bigint</code>	Number of database sessions to this database that were terminated by fatal errors
<code>sessions_killed bigint</code>	Number of database sessions to this database that were terminated by operator intervention
<code>stats_reset timestamp with time zone</code>	Time at which these statistics were last reset

## 28.2.17. `pg_stat_database_conflicts`

The `pg_stat_database_conflicts` view will contain one row per database, showing database-wide statistics about query cancels occurring due to conflicts with recovery on standby servers.

This view will only contain information on standby servers, since conflicts do not occur on primary servers.

**Table 28.27. `pg_stat_database_conflicts` View**

Column	Type	Description
<code>datid</code>	<code>oid</code>	OID of a database
<code>datname</code>	<code>name</code>	Name of this database
<code>confl_tablespace</code>	<code>bigint</code>	Number of queries in this database that have been canceled due to dropped tablespaces
<code>confl_lock</code>	<code>bigint</code>	Number of queries in this database that have been canceled due to lock timeouts
<code>confl_snapshot</code>	<code>bigint</code>	Number of queries in this database that have been canceled due to old snapshots
<code>confl_bufferpin</code>	<code>bigint</code>	Number of queries in this database that have been canceled due to pinned buffers
<code>confl_deadlock</code>	<code>bigint</code>	Number of queries in this database that have been canceled due to deadlocks
<code>confl_active_logicalslot</code>	<code>bigint</code>	Number of uses of logical slots in this database that have been canceled due to old snapshots or too low a <code>wal_level</code> on the primary

## 28.2.18. `pg_stat_all_tables`

The `pg_stat_all_tables` view will contain one row for each table in the current database (including TOAST tables), showing statistics about accesses to that specific table. The `pg_stat_user_tables` and `pg_stat_sys_tables` views contain the same information, but filtered to only show user and system tables respectively.

**Table 28.28. `pg_stat_all_tables` View**

Column	Type	Description
<code>relid</code>	<code>oid</code>	OID of a table
<code>schemaname</code>	<code>name</code>	Name of the schema that this table is in
<code>relname</code>	<code>name</code>	Name of this table
<code>seq_scan</code>	<code>bigint</code>	Number of sequential scans initiated on this table
<code>last_seq_scan</code>	<code>timestamp with time zone</code>	The time of the last sequential scan on this table, based on the most recent transaction stop time
<code>seq_tup_read</code>	<code>bigint</code>	Number of live rows fetched by sequential scans
<code>idx_scan</code>	<code>bigint</code>	Number of index scans initiated on this table

Column Type	Description
<code>last_idx_scan</code> timestamp with time zone	The time of the last index scan on this table, based on the most recent transaction stop time
<code>idx_tup_fetch</code> bigint	Number of live rows fetched by index scans
<code>n_tup_ins</code> bigint	Total number of rows inserted
<code>n_tup_upd</code> bigint	Total number of rows updated. (This includes row updates counted in <code>n_tup_hot_upd</code> and <code>n_tup_newpage_upd</code> , and remaining non-HOT updates.)
<code>n_tup_del</code> bigint	Total number of rows deleted
<code>n_tup_hot_upd</code> bigint	Number of rows HOT updated. These are updates where no successor versions are required in indexes.
<code>n_tup_newpage_upd</code> bigint	Number of rows updated where the successor version goes onto a <i>new</i> heap page, leaving behind an original version with a <code>t_ctid</code> field that points to a different heap page. These are always non-HOT updates.
<code>n_live_tup</code> bigint	Estimated number of live rows
<code>n_dead_tup</code> bigint	Estimated number of dead rows
<code>n_mod_since_analyze</code> bigint	Estimated number of rows modified since this table was last analyzed
<code>n_ins_since_vacuum</code> bigint	Estimated number of rows inserted since this table was last vacuumed
<code>last_vacuum</code> timestamp with time zone	Last time at which this table was manually vacuumed (not counting <code>VACUUM FULL</code> )
<code>last_autovacuum</code> timestamp with time zone	Last time at which this table was vacuumed by the autovacuum daemon
<code>last_analyze</code> timestamp with time zone	Last time at which this table was manually analyzed
<code>last_autoanalyze</code> timestamp with time zone	Last time at which this table was analyzed by the autovacuum daemon
<code>vacuum_count</code> bigint	Number of times this table has been manually vacuumed (not counting <code>VACUUM FULL</code> )
<code>autovacuum_count</code> bigint	Number of times this table has been vacuumed by the autovacuum daemon
<code>analyze_count</code> bigint	Number of times this table has been manually analyzed
<code>autoanalyze_count</code> bigint	Number of times this table has been analyzed by the autovacuum daemon

## 28.2.19. `pg_stat_all_indexes`

The `pg_stat_all_indexes` view will contain one row for each index in the current database, showing statistics about accesses to that specific index. The `pg_stat_user_indexes` and `pg_s-`



`tat_sys_indexes` views contain the same information, but filtered to only show user and system indexes respectively.

**Table 28.29. `pg_stat_all_indexes` View**

Column	Type	Description
<code>relid</code>	<code>oid</code>	OID of the table for this index
<code>indexrelid</code>	<code>oid</code>	OID of this index
<code>schemaname</code>	<code>name</code>	Name of the schema this index is in
<code>relname</code>	<code>name</code>	Name of the table for this index
<code>indexrelname</code>	<code>name</code>	Name of this index
<code>idx_scan</code>	<code>bigint</code>	Number of index scans initiated on this index
<code>last_idx_scan</code>	<code>timestamp with time zone</code>	The time of the last scan on this index, based on the most recent transaction stop time
<code>idx_tup_read</code>	<code>bigint</code>	Number of index entries returned by scans on this index
<code>idx_tup_fetch</code>	<code>bigint</code>	Number of live table rows fetched by simple index scans using this index

Indexes can be used by simple index scans, “bitmap” index scans, and the optimizer. In a bitmap scan the output of several indexes can be combined via AND or OR rules, so it is difficult to associate individual heap row fetches with specific indexes when a bitmap scan is used. Therefore, a bitmap scan increments the `pg_stat_all_indexes.idx_tup_read` count(s) for the index(es) it uses, and it increments the `pg_stat_all_tables.idx_tup_fetch` count for the table, but it does not affect `pg_stat_all_indexes.idx_tup_fetch`. The optimizer also accesses indexes to check for supplied constants whose values are outside the recorded range of the optimizer statistics because the optimizer statistics might be stale.

### Note

The `idx_tup_read` and `idx_tup_fetch` counts can be different even without any use of bitmap scans, because `idx_tup_read` counts index entries retrieved from the index while `idx_tup_fetch` counts live rows fetched from the table. The latter will be less if any dead or not-yet-committed rows are fetched using the index, or if any heap fetches are avoided by means of an index-only scan.

## 28.2.20. `pg_statio_all_tables`

The `pg_statio_all_tables` view will contain one row for each table in the current database (including TOAST tables), showing statistics about I/O on that specific table. The `pg_statio_user_tables` and `pg_statio_sys_tables` views contain the same information, but filtered to only show user and system tables respectively.

**Table 28.30. pg\_statio\_all\_tables View**

Column Type	Description
relid oid	OID of a table
schemaname name	Name of the schema that this table is in
relname name	Name of this table
heap_blks_read bigint	Number of disk blocks read from this table
heap_blks_hit bigint	Number of buffer hits in this table
idx_blks_read bigint	Number of disk blocks read from all indexes on this table
idx_blks_hit bigint	Number of buffer hits in all indexes on this table
toast_blks_read bigint	Number of disk blocks read from this table's TOAST table (if any)
toast_blks_hit bigint	Number of buffer hits in this table's TOAST table (if any)
tidx_blks_read bigint	Number of disk blocks read from this table's TOAST table indexes (if any)
tidx_blks_hit bigint	Number of buffer hits in this table's TOAST table indexes (if any)

## 28.2.21. pg\_statio\_all\_indexes

The `pg_statio_all_indexes` view will contain one row for each index in the current database, showing statistics about I/O on that specific index. The `pg_statio_user_indexes` and `pg_statio_sys_indexes` views contain the same information, but filtered to only show user and system indexes respectively.

**Table 28.31. pg\_statio\_all\_indexes View**

Column Type	Description
relid oid	OID of the table for this index
indexrelid oid	OID of this index
schemaname name	Name of the schema this index is in
relname name	Name of the table for this index
indexrelname name	Name of this index
idx_blks_read bigint	Number of disk blocks read from this index
idx_blks_hit bigint	

Column Type
<b>Description</b>
Number of buffer hits in this index

## 28.2.22. pg\_statio\_all\_sequences

The `pg_statio_all_sequences` view will contain one row for each sequence in the current database, showing statistics about I/O on that specific sequence.

**Table 28.32. pg\_statio\_all\_sequences View**

Column Type
<b>Description</b>
<code>relid oid</code> OID of a sequence
<code>schemaname name</code> Name of the schema this sequence is in
<code>relname name</code> Name of this sequence
<code>blks_read bigint</code> Number of disk blocks read from this sequence
<code>blks_hit bigint</code> Number of buffer hits in this sequence

## 28.2.23. pg\_stat\_user\_functions

The `pg_stat_user_functions` view will contain one row for each tracked function, showing statistics about executions of that function. The `track_functions` parameter controls exactly which functions are tracked.

**Table 28.33. pg\_stat\_user\_functions View**

Column Type
<b>Description</b>
<code>funcid oid</code> OID of a function
<code>schemaname name</code> Name of the schema this function is in
<code>funcname name</code> Name of this function
<code>calls bigint</code> Number of times this function has been called
<code>total_time double precision</code> Total time spent in this function and all other functions called by it, in milliseconds
<code>self_time double precision</code> Total time spent in this function itself, not including other functions called by it, in milliseconds

## 28.2.24. pg\_stat\_slru

PostgreSQL accesses certain on-disk information via *SLRU* (simple least-recently-used) caches. The `pg_stat_slru` view will contain one row for each tracked SLRU cache, showing statistics about access to cached pages.

**Table 28.34. `pg_stat_slru` View**

Column Type	Description
<code>name text</code>	Name of the SLRU
<code>blks_zeroed bigint</code>	Number of blocks zeroed during initializations
<code>blks_hit bigint</code>	Number of times disk blocks were found already in the SLRU, so that a read was not necessary (this only includes hits in the SLRU, not the operating system's file system cache)
<code>blks_read bigint</code>	Number of disk blocks read for this SLRU
<code>blks_written bigint</code>	Number of disk blocks written for this SLRU
<code>blks_exists bigint</code>	Number of blocks checked for existence for this SLRU
<code>flushes bigint</code>	Number of flushes of dirty data for this SLRU
<code>truncates bigint</code>	Number of truncates for this SLRU
<code>stats_reset timestamp with time zone</code>	Time at which these statistics were last reset

## 28.2.25. Statistics Functions

Other ways of looking at the statistics can be set up by writing queries that use the same underlying statistics access functions used by the standard views shown above. For details such as the functions' names, consult the definitions of the standard views. (For example, in `psql` you could issue `\d+ pg_stat_activity`.) The access functions for per-database statistics take a database OID as an argument to identify which database to report on. The per-table and per-index functions take a table or index OID. The functions for per-function statistics take a function OID. Note that only tables, indexes, and functions in the current database can be seen with these functions.

Additional functions related to the cumulative statistics system are listed in Table 28.35.

**Table 28.35. Additional Statistics Functions**

Function	Description
<code>pg_backend_pid() → integer</code>	Returns the process ID of the server process attached to the current session.
<code>pg_stat_get_activity(integer) → setof record</code>	Returns a record of information about the backend with the specified process ID, or one record for each active backend in the system if <code>NULL</code> is specified. The fields returned are a subset of those in the <code>pg_stat_activity</code> view.
<code>pg_stat_get_snapshot_timestamp() → timestamp with time zone</code>	Returns the timestamp of the current statistics snapshot, or <code>NULL</code> if no statistics snapshot has been taken. A snapshot is taken the first time cumulative statistics are accessed in a transaction if <code>stats_fetch_consistency</code> is set to <code>snapshot</code>
<code>pg_stat_get_xact_blocks_fetched(oid) → bigint</code>	

Function	Description
	Returns the number of block read requests for table or index, in the current transaction. This number minus <code>pg_stat_get_xact_blocks_hit</code> gives the number of kernel <code>read()</code> calls; the number of actual physical reads is usually lower due to kernel-level buffering.
<code>pg_stat_get_xact_blocks_hit(oid) → bigint</code>	Returns the number of block read requests for table or index, in the current transaction, found in cache (not triggering kernel <code>read()</code> calls).
<code>pg_stat_clear_snapshot() → void</code>	Discards the current statistics snapshot or cached information.
<code>pg_stat_reset() → void</code>	Resets all statistics counters for the current database to zero. This function is restricted to superusers by default, but other users can be granted EXECUTE to run the function.
<code>pg_stat_reset_shared(text) → void</code>	Resets some cluster-wide statistics counters to zero, depending on the argument. The argument can be <code>bgwriter</code> to reset all the counters shown in the <code>pg_stat_bgwriter</code> view, <code>archiver</code> to reset all the counters shown in the <code>pg_stat_archiver</code> view, <code>io</code> to reset all the counters shown in the <code>pg_stat_io</code> view, <code>wal</code> to reset all the counters shown in the <code>pg_stat_wal</code> view or <code>recovery_prefetch</code> to reset all the counters shown in the <code>pg_stat_recovery_prefetch</code> view. This function is restricted to superusers by default, but other users can be granted EXECUTE to run the function.
<code>pg_stat_reset_single_table_counters(oid) → void</code>	Resets statistics for a single table or index in the current database or shared across all databases in the cluster to zero. This function is restricted to superusers by default, but other users can be granted EXECUTE to run the function.
<code>pg_stat_reset_single_function_counters(oid) → void</code>	Resets statistics for a single function in the current database to zero. This function is restricted to superusers by default, but other users can be granted EXECUTE to run the function.
<code>pg_stat_reset_slru(text) → void</code>	Resets statistics to zero for a single SLRU cache, or for all SLRUs in the cluster. If the argument is NULL, all counters shown in the <code>pg_stat_slru</code> view for all SLRU caches are reset. The argument can be one of <code>CommitTs</code> , <code>MultiXactMember</code> , <code>MultiXactOffset</code> , <code>Notify</code> , <code>Serial</code> , <code>Subtrans</code> , or <code>Xact</code> to reset the counters for only that entry. If the argument is other (or indeed, any unrecognized name), then the counters for all other SLRU caches, such as extension-defined caches, are reset. This function is restricted to superusers by default, but other users can be granted EXECUTE to run the function.
<code>pg_stat_reset_replication_slot(text) → void</code>	Resets statistics of the replication slot defined by the argument. If the argument is NULL, resets statistics for all the replication slots. This function is restricted to superusers by default, but other users can be granted EXECUTE to run the function.
<code>pg_stat_reset_subscription_stats(oid) → void</code>	Resets statistics for a single subscription shown in the <code>pg_stat_subscription_stats</code> view to zero. If the argument is NULL, reset statistics for all subscriptions.

Function	Description
	This function is restricted to superusers by default, but other users can be granted EXECUTE to run the function.

### Warning

Using `pg_stat_reset()` also resets counters that autovacuum uses to determine when to trigger a vacuum or an analyze. Resetting these counters can cause autovacuum to not perform necessary work, which can cause problems such as table bloat or out-dated table statistics. A database-wide `ANALYZE` is recommended after the statistics have been reset.

`pg_stat_get_activity`, the underlying function of the `pg_stat_activity` view, returns a set of records containing all the available information about each backend process. Sometimes it may be more convenient to obtain just a subset of this information. In such cases, another set of per-backend statistics access functions can be used; these are shown in Table 28.36. These access functions use the session's backend ID number, which is a small positive integer that is distinct from the backend ID of any concurrent session, although a session's ID can be recycled as soon as it exits. The backend ID is used, among other things, to identify the session's temporary schema if it has one. The function `pg_stat_get_backend_idset` provides a convenient way to list all the active backends' ID numbers for invoking these functions. For example, to show the PIDs and current queries of all backends:

```
SELECT pg_stat_get_backend_pid(backendid) AS pid,
       pg_stat_get_backend_activity(backendid) AS query
FROM pg_stat_get_backend_idset() AS backendid;
```

**Table 28.36. Per-Backend Statistics Functions**

Function	Description
<code>pg_stat_get_backend_activity(integer) → text</code>	Returns the text of this backend's most recent query.
<code>pg_stat_get_backend_activity_start(integer) → timestamp with time zone</code>	Returns the time when the backend's most recent query was started.
<code>pg_stat_get_backend_client_addr(integer) → inet</code>	Returns the IP address of the client connected to this backend.
<code>pg_stat_get_backend_client_port(integer) → integer</code>	Returns the TCP port number that the client is using for communication.
<code>pg_stat_get_backend_dbid(integer) → oid</code>	Returns the OID of the database this backend is connected to.
<code>pg_stat_get_backend_idset() → setof integer</code>	Returns the set of currently active backend ID numbers.
<code>pg_stat_get_backend_pid(integer) → integer</code>	Returns the process ID of this backend.
<code>pg_stat_get_backend_start(integer) → timestamp with time zone</code>	Returns the time when this process was started.
<code>pg_stat_get_backend_subxact(integer) → record</code>	

Function	Description
	Returns a record of information about the subtransactions of the backend with the specified ID. The fields returned are <i>subxact_count</i> , which is the number of subtransactions in the backend's subtransaction cache, and <i>subxact_overflow</i> , which indicates whether the backend's subtransaction cache is overflowed or not.
<code>pg_stat_get_backend_userid ( integer ) → oid</code>	Returns the OID of the user logged into this backend.
<code>pg_stat_get_backend_wait_event ( integer ) → text</code>	Returns the wait event name if this backend is currently waiting, otherwise NULL. See Table 28.5 through Table 28.13.
<code>pg_stat_get_backend_wait_event_type ( integer ) → text</code>	Returns the wait event type name if this backend is currently waiting, otherwise NULL. See Table 28.4 for details.
<code>pg_stat_get_backend_xact_start ( integer ) → timestamp with time zone</code>	Returns the time when the backend's current transaction was started.

## 28.3. Viewing Locks

Another useful tool for monitoring database activity is the `pg_locks` system table. It allows the database administrator to view information about the outstanding locks in the lock manager. For example, this capability can be used to:

- View all the locks currently outstanding, all the locks on relations in a particular database, all the locks on a particular relation, or all the locks held by a particular PostgreSQL session.
- Determine the relation in the current database with the most ungranted locks (which might be a source of contention among database clients).
- Determine the effect of lock contention on overall database performance, as well as the extent to which contention varies with overall database traffic.

Details of the `pg_locks` view appear in Section 54.12. For more information on locking and managing concurrency with PostgreSQL, refer to Chapter 13.

## 28.4. Progress Reporting

PostgreSQL has the ability to report the progress of certain commands during command execution. Currently, the only commands which support progress reporting are `ANALYZE`, `CLUSTER`, `CREATE INDEX`, `VACUUM`, `COPY`, and `BASE_BACKUP` (i.e., replication command that `pg_basebackup` issues to take a base backup). This may be expanded in the future.

### 28.4.1. ANALYZE Progress Reporting

Whenever `ANALYZE` is running, the `pg_stat_progress_analyze` view will contain a row for each backend that is currently running that command. The tables below describe the information that will be reported and provide information about how to interpret it.

**Table 28.37. `pg_stat_progress_analyze` View**

Column	Type	Description
<code>pid</code>	<code>integer</code>	

Column Type	Description
	Process ID of backend.
<code>datid oid</code>	OID of the database to which this backend is connected.
<code>datname name</code>	Name of the database to which this backend is connected.
<code>relid oid</code>	OID of the table being analyzed.
<code>phase text</code>	Current processing phase. See Table 28.38.
<code>sample_blks_total bigint</code>	Total number of heap blocks that will be sampled.
<code>sample_blks_scanned bigint</code>	Number of heap blocks scanned.
<code>ext_stats_total bigint</code>	Number of extended statistics.
<code>ext_stats_computed bigint</code>	Number of extended statistics computed. This counter only advances when the phase is computing extended statistics.
<code>child_tables_total bigint</code>	Number of child tables.
<code>child_tables_done bigint</code>	Number of child tables scanned. This counter only advances when the phase is acquiring inherited sample rows.
<code>current_child_table_relid oid</code>	OID of the child table currently being scanned. This field is only valid when the phase is acquiring inherited sample rows.

**Table 28.38. ANALYZE Phases**

Phase	Description
<code>initializing</code>	The command is preparing to begin scanning the heap. This phase is expected to be very brief.
<code>acquiring sample rows</code>	The command is currently scanning the table given by <code>relid</code> to obtain sample rows.
<code>acquiring inherited sample rows</code>	The command is currently scanning child tables to obtain sample rows. Columns <code>child_tables_total</code> , <code>child_tables_done</code> , and <code>current_child_table_relid</code> contain the progress information for this phase.
<code>computing statistics</code>	The command is computing statistics from the sample rows obtained during the table scan.
<code>computing extended statistics</code>	The command is computing extended statistics from the sample rows obtained during the table scan.
<code>finalizing analyze</code>	The command is updating <code>pg_class</code> . When this phase is completed, ANALYZE will end.



**Note**

Note that when `ANALYZE` is run on a partitioned table, all of its partitions are also recursively analyzed. In that case, `ANALYZE` progress is reported first for the parent table, whereby its inheritance statistics are collected, followed by that for each partition.

## 28.4.2. CLUSTER Progress Reporting

Whenever `CLUSTER` or `VACUUM FULL` is running, the `pg_stat_progress_cluster` view will contain a row for each backend that is currently running either command. The tables below describe the information that will be reported and provide information about how to interpret it.

**Table 28.39. `pg_stat_progress_cluster` View**

Column	Type	Description
<code>pid</code>	integer	Process ID of backend.
<code>datid</code>	oid	OID of the database to which this backend is connected.
<code>datname</code>	name	Name of the database to which this backend is connected.
<code>relid</code>	oid	OID of the table being clustered.
<code>command</code>	text	The command that is running. Either <code>CLUSTER</code> or <code>VACUUM FULL</code> .
<code>phase</code>	text	Current processing phase. See Table 28.40.
<code>cluster_index_relid</code>	oid	If the table is being scanned using an index, this is the OID of the index being used; otherwise, it is zero.
<code>heap_tuples_scanned</code>	bigint	Number of heap tuples scanned. This counter only advances when the phase is <code>seq scanning heap</code> , <code>index scanning heap</code> or <code>writing new heap</code> .
<code>heap_tuples_written</code>	bigint	Number of heap tuples written. This counter only advances when the phase is <code>seq scanning heap</code> , <code>index scanning heap</code> or <code>writing new heap</code> .
<code>heap_blks_total</code>	bigint	Total number of heap blocks in the table. This number is reported as of the beginning of <code>seq scanning heap</code> .
<code>heap_blks_scanned</code>	bigint	Number of heap blocks scanned. This counter only advances when the phase is <code>seq scanning heap</code> .
<code>index_rebuild_count</code>	bigint	Number of indexes rebuilt. This counter only advances when the phase is <code>rebuilding index</code> .

**Table 28.40. CLUSTER and VACUUM FULL Phases**

Phase	Description
initializing	The command is preparing to begin scanning the heap. This phase is expected to be very brief.
seq scanning heap	The command is currently scanning the table using a sequential scan.
index scanning heap	CLUSTER is currently scanning the table using an index scan.
sorting tuples	CLUSTER is currently sorting tuples.
writing new heap	CLUSTER is currently writing the new heap.
swapping relation files	The command is currently swapping newly-built files into place.
rebuilding index	The command is currently rebuilding an index.
performing final cleanup	The command is performing final cleanup. When this phase is completed, CLUSTER or VACUUM FULL will end.

### 28.4.3. COPY Progress Reporting

Whenever COPY is running, the `pg_stat_progress_copy` view will contain one row for each backend that is currently running a COPY command. The table below describes the information that will be reported and provides information about how to interpret it.

**Table 28.41. pg\_stat\_progress\_copy View**

Column Type	Description
<code>pid integer</code>	Process ID of backend.
<code>datid oid</code>	OID of the database to which this backend is connected.
<code>datname name</code>	Name of the database to which this backend is connected.
<code>relid oid</code>	OID of the table on which the COPY command is executed. It is set to 0 if copying from a SELECT query.
<code>command text</code>	The command that is running: COPY FROM, or COPY TO.
<code>type text</code>	The io type that the data is read from or written to: FILE, PROGRAM, PIPE (for COPY FROM STDIN and COPY TO STDOUT), or CALLBACK (used for example during the initial table synchronization in logical replication).
<code>bytes_processed bigint</code>	Number of bytes already processed by COPY command.
<code>bytes_total bigint</code>	Size of source file for COPY FROM command in bytes. It is set to 0 if not available.
<code>tuples_processed bigint</code>	Number of tuples already processed by COPY command.
<code>tuples_excluded bigint</code>	Number of tuples not processed because they were excluded by the WHERE clause of the COPY command.

## 28.4.4. CREATE INDEX Progress Reporting

Whenever `CREATE INDEX` or `REINDEX` is running, the `pg_stat_progress_create_index` view will contain one row for each backend that is currently creating indexes. The tables below describe the information that will be reported and provide information about how to interpret it.

**Table 28.42. `pg_stat_progress_create_index` View**

Column	Type	Description
<code>pid</code>	integer	Process ID of the backend creating indexes.
<code>datid</code>	oid	OID of the database to which this backend is connected.
<code>datname</code>	name	Name of the database to which this backend is connected.
<code>relid</code>	oid	OID of the table on which the index is being created.
<code>index_relid</code>	oid	OID of the index being created or reindexed. During a non-concurrent <code>CREATE INDEX</code> , this is 0.
<code>command</code>	text	Specific command type: <code>CREATE INDEX</code> , <code>CREATE INDEX CONCURRENTLY</code> , <code>REINDEX</code> , or <code>REINDEX CONCURRENTLY</code> .
<code>phase</code>	text	Current processing phase of index creation. See Table 28.43.
<code>lockers_total</code>	bigint	Total number of lockers to wait for, when applicable.
<code>lockers_done</code>	bigint	Number of lockers already waited for.
<code>current_locker_pid</code>	bigint	Process ID of the locker currently being waited for.
<code>blocks_total</code>	bigint	Total number of blocks to be processed in the current phase.
<code>blocks_done</code>	bigint	Number of blocks already processed in the current phase.
<code>tuples_total</code>	bigint	Total number of tuples to be processed in the current phase.
<code>tuples_done</code>	bigint	Number of tuples already processed in the current phase.
<code>partitions_total</code>	bigint	Total number of partitions on which the index is to be created or attached, including both direct and indirect partitions. 0 during a <code>REINDEX</code> , or when the index is not partitioned.
<code>partitions_done</code>	bigint	Number of partitions on which the index has already been created or attached, including both direct and indirect partitions. 0 during a <code>REINDEX</code> , or when the index is not partitioned.

**Table 28.43. CREATE INDEX Phases**

Phase	Description
initializing	CREATE INDEX or REINDEX is preparing to create the index. This phase is expected to be very brief.
waiting for writers before build	CREATE INDEX CONCURRENTLY or REINDEX CONCURRENTLY is waiting for transactions with write locks that can potentially see the table to finish. This phase is skipped when not in concurrent mode. Columns <code>lockers_total</code> , <code>lockers_done</code> and <code>current_locker_pid</code> contain the progress information for this phase.
building index	The index is being built by the access method-specific code. In this phase, access methods that support progress reporting fill in their own progress data, and the subphase is indicated in this column. Typically, <code>blocks_total</code> and <code>blocks_done</code> will contain progress data, as well as potentially <code>tuples_total</code> and <code>tuples_done</code> .
waiting for writers before validation	CREATE INDEX CONCURRENTLY or REINDEX CONCURRENTLY is waiting for transactions with write locks that can potentially write into the table to finish. This phase is skipped when not in concurrent mode. Columns <code>lockers_total</code> , <code>lockers_done</code> and <code>current_locker_pid</code> contain the progress information for this phase.
index validation: scanning index	CREATE INDEX CONCURRENTLY is scanning the index searching for tuples that need to be validated. This phase is skipped when not in concurrent mode. Columns <code>blocks_total</code> (set to the total size of the index) and <code>blocks_done</code> contain the progress information for this phase.
index validation: sorting tuples	CREATE INDEX CONCURRENTLY is sorting the output of the index scanning phase.
index validation: scanning table	CREATE INDEX CONCURRENTLY is scanning the table to validate the index tuples collected in the previous two phases. This phase is skipped when not in concurrent mode. Columns <code>blocks_total</code> (set to the total size of the table) and <code>blocks_done</code> contain the progress information for this phase.
waiting for old snapshots	CREATE INDEX CONCURRENTLY or REINDEX CONCURRENTLY is waiting for transactions that can potentially see the table to release their snapshots. This phase is skipped when not in concurrent mode. Columns <code>lockers_total</code> , <code>lockers_done</code> and <code>current_locker_pid</code> contain the progress information for this phase.
waiting for readers before marking dead	REINDEX CONCURRENTLY is waiting for transactions with read locks on the table to finish, before marking the old index dead. This phase is skipped when not in concurrent mode. Columns <code>lockers_total</code> , <code>lockers_done</code> and <code>current_locker_pid</code> contain the progress information for this phase.
waiting for readers before dropping	REINDEX CONCURRENTLY is waiting for transactions with read locks on the table to finish, before dropping the old index. This phase is skipped when not in concurrent mode. Columns <code>lockers_total</code> , <code>lockers_done</code> and <code>current_locker_pid</code> contain the progress information for this phase.

## 28.4.5. VACUUM Progress Reporting

Whenever `VACUUM` is running, the `pg_stat_progress_vacuum` view will contain one row for each backend (including autovacuum worker processes) that is currently vacuuming. The tables below describe the information that will be reported and provide information about how to interpret it. Progress for `VACUUM FULL` commands is reported via `pg_stat_progress_cluster` because both `VACUUM FULL` and `CLUSTER` rewrite the table, while regular `VACUUM` only modifies it in place. See Section 28.4.2.

**Table 28.44. `pg_stat_progress_vacuum` View**

Column	Type	Description
<code>pid</code>	integer	Process ID of backend.
<code>datid</code>	oid	OID of the database to which this backend is connected.
<code>datname</code>	name	Name of the database to which this backend is connected.
<code>relid</code>	oid	OID of the table being vacuumed.
<code>phase</code>	text	Current processing phase of vacuum. See Table 28.45.
<code>heap_blks_total</code>	bigint	Total number of heap blocks in the table. This number is reported as of the beginning of the scan; blocks added later will not be (and need not be) visited by this <code>VACUUM</code> .
<code>heap_blks_scanned</code>	bigint	Number of heap blocks scanned. Because the visibility map is used to optimize scans, some blocks will be skipped without inspection; skipped blocks are included in this total, so that this number will eventually become equal to <code>heap_blks_total</code> when the vacuum is complete. This counter only advances when the phase is <code>scanning heap</code> .
<code>heap_blks_vacuumed</code>	bigint	Number of heap blocks vacuumed. Unless the table has no indexes, this counter only advances when the phase is <code>vacuuming heap</code> . Blocks that contain no dead tuples are skipped, so the counter may sometimes skip forward in large increments.
<code>index_vacuum_count</code>	bigint	Number of completed index vacuum cycles.
<code>max_dead_tuples</code>	bigint	Number of dead tuples that we can store before needing to perform an index vacuum cycle, based on <code>maintenance_work_mem</code> .
<code>num_dead_tuples</code>	bigint	Number of dead tuples collected since the last index vacuum cycle.

**Table 28.45. `VACUUM` Phases**

Phase	Description
<code>initializing</code>	<code>VACUUM</code> is preparing to begin scanning the heap. This phase is expected to be very brief.
<code>scanning heap</code>	<code>VACUUM</code> is currently scanning the heap. It will prune and defragment each page if required, and possibly perform freezing activity. The <code>heap_blks_scanned</code> column can be used to monitor the progress of the scan.
<code>vacuuming indexes</code>	<code>VACUUM</code> is currently vacuuming the indexes. If a table has any indexes, this will happen at least once per vacuum, after the heap

Phase	Description
	has been completely scanned. It may happen multiple times per vacuum if <code>maintenance_work_mem</code> (or, in the case of <code>autovacuum</code> , <code>autovacuum_work_mem</code> if set) is insufficient to store the number of dead tuples found.
vacuuming heap	VACUUM is currently vacuuming the heap. Vacuuming the heap is distinct from scanning the heap, and occurs after each instance of vacuuming indexes. If <code>heap_blks_scanned</code> is less than <code>heap_blks_total</code> , the system will return to scanning the heap after this phase is completed; otherwise, it will begin cleaning up indexes after this phase is completed.
cleaning up indexes	VACUUM is currently cleaning up indexes. This occurs after the heap has been completely scanned and all vacuuming of the indexes and the heap has been completed.
truncating heap	VACUUM is currently truncating the heap so as to return empty pages at the end of the relation to the operating system. This occurs after cleaning up indexes.
performing final cleanup	VACUUM is performing final cleanup. During this phase, VACUUM will vacuum the free space map, update statistics in <code>pg_class</code> , and report statistics to the cumulative statistics system. When this phase is completed, VACUUM will end.

## 28.4.6. Base Backup Progress Reporting

Whenever an application like `pg_basebackup` is taking a base backup, the `pg_stat_progress_basebackup` view will contain a row for each WAL sender process that is currently running the `BASE_BACKUP` replication command and streaming the backup. The tables below describe the information that will be reported and provide information about how to interpret it.

**Table 28.46. `pg_stat_progress_basebackup` View**

Column	Type	Description
<code>pid</code>	integer	Process ID of a WAL sender process.
<code>phase</code>	text	Current processing phase. See Table 28.47.
<code>backup_total</code>	bigint	Total amount of data that will be streamed. This is estimated and reported as of the beginning of streaming database files phase. Note that this is only an approximation since the database may change during streaming database files phase and WAL log may be included in the backup later. This is always the same value as <code>backup_streamed</code> once the amount of data streamed exceeds the estimated total size. If the estimation is disabled in <code>pg_basebackup</code> (i.e., <code>--no-estimate-size</code> option is specified), this is NULL.
<code>backup_streamed</code>	bigint	Amount of data streamed. This counter only advances when the phase is streaming database files or transferring wal files.
<code>tablespaces_total</code>	bigint	Total number of tablespaces that will be streamed.
<code>tablespaces_streamed</code>	bigint	Number of tablespaces streamed. This counter only advances when the phase is streaming database files.

**Table 28.47. Base Backup Phases**

Phase	Description
initializing	The WAL sender process is preparing to begin the backup. This phase is expected to be very brief.
waiting for checkpoint to finish	The WAL sender process is currently performing <code>pg_backup_start</code> to prepare to take a base backup, and waiting for the start-of-backup checkpoint to finish.
estimating backup size	The WAL sender process is currently estimating the total amount of database files that will be streamed as a base backup.
streaming database files	The WAL sender process is currently streaming database files as a base backup.
waiting for wal archiving to finish	The WAL sender process is currently performing <code>pg_backup_stop</code> to finish the backup, and waiting for all the WAL files required for the base backup to be successfully archived. If either <code>--wal-method=none</code> or <code>--wal-method=stream</code> is specified in <code>pg_basebackup</code> , the backup will end when this phase is completed.
transferring wal files	The WAL sender process is currently transferring all WAL logs generated during the backup. This phase occurs after <code>waiting for wal archiving to finish</code> phase if <code>--wal-method=fetch</code> is specified in <code>pg_basebackup</code> . The backup will end when this phase is completed.

## 28.5. Dynamic Tracing

PostgreSQL provides facilities to support dynamic tracing of the database server. This allows an external utility to be called at specific points in the code and thereby trace execution.

A number of probes or trace points are already inserted into the source code. These probes are intended to be used by database developers and administrators. By default the probes are not compiled into PostgreSQL; the user needs to explicitly tell the configure script to make the probes available.

Currently, the DTrace<sup>1</sup> utility is supported, which, at the time of this writing, is available on Solaris, macOS, FreeBSD, NetBSD, and Oracle Linux. The SystemTap<sup>2</sup> project for Linux provides a DTrace equivalent and can also be used. Supporting other dynamic tracing utilities is theoretically possible by changing the definitions for the macros in `src/include/utils/probes.h`.

### 28.5.1. Compiling for Dynamic Tracing

By default, probes are not available, so you will need to explicitly tell the configure script to make the probes available in PostgreSQL. To include DTrace support specify `--enable-dtrace` to configure. See Section 17.3.3.6 for further information.

### 28.5.2. Built-in Probes

A number of standard probes are provided in the source code, as shown in Table 28.48; Table 28.49 shows the types used in the probes. More probes can certainly be added to enhance PostgreSQL's observability.

<sup>1</sup> <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/DTrace>

<sup>2</sup> <https://sourceware.org/systemtap/>

**Table 28.48. Built-in DTrace Probes**

Name	Parameters	Description
transaction-start	(LocalTransactionId)	Probe that fires at the start of a new transaction. arg0 is the transaction ID.
transaction-commit	(LocalTransactionId)	Probe that fires when a transaction completes successfully. arg0 is the transaction ID.
transaction-abort	(LocalTransactionId)	Probe that fires when a transaction completes unsuccessfully. arg0 is the transaction ID.
query-start	(const char *)	Probe that fires when the processing of a query is started. arg0 is the query string.
query-done	(const char *)	Probe that fires when the processing of a query is complete. arg0 is the query string.
query-parse-start	(const char *)	Probe that fires when the parsing of a query is started. arg0 is the query string.
query-parse-done	(const char *)	Probe that fires when the parsing of a query is complete. arg0 is the query string.
query-rewrite-start	(const char *)	Probe that fires when the rewriting of a query is started. arg0 is the query string.
query-rewrite-done	(const char *)	Probe that fires when the rewriting of a query is complete. arg0 is the query string.
query-plan-start	( )	Probe that fires when the planning of a query is started.
query-plan-done	( )	Probe that fires when the planning of a query is complete.
query-execute-start	( )	Probe that fires when the execution of a query is started.
query-execute-done	( )	Probe that fires when the execution of a query is complete.
statement-status	(const char *)	Probe that fires anytime the server process updates its pg_stat_activity.status. arg0 is the new status string.
checkpoint-start	(int)	Probe that fires when a checkpoint is started. arg0 holds the bitwise flags used to distinguish different checkpoint types, such as shutdown, immediate or force.
checkpoint-done	(int, int, int, int, int)	Probe that fires when a checkpoint is complete. (The probes listed next fire in sequence during checkpoint processing.) arg0 is the number of buffers written. arg1 is the total



Name	Parameters	Description
		number of buffers. arg2, arg3 and arg4 contain the number of WAL files added, removed and recycled respectively.
clog-checkpoint-start	(bool)	Probe that fires when the CLOG portion of a checkpoint is started. arg0 is true for normal checkpoint, false for shutdown checkpoint.
clog-checkpoint-done	(bool)	Probe that fires when the CLOG portion of a checkpoint is complete. arg0 has the same meaning as for clog-checkpoint-start.
subtrans-checkpoint-start	(bool)	Probe that fires when the SUBTRANS portion of a checkpoint is started. arg0 is true for normal checkpoint, false for shutdown checkpoint.
subtrans-checkpoint-done	(bool)	Probe that fires when the SUBTRANS portion of a checkpoint is complete. arg0 has the same meaning as for subtrans-checkpoint-start.
multixact-checkpoint-start	(bool)	Probe that fires when the MultiXact portion of a checkpoint is started. arg0 is true for normal checkpoint, false for shutdown checkpoint.
multixact-checkpoint-done	(bool)	Probe that fires when the MultiXact portion of a checkpoint is complete. arg0 has the same meaning as for multixact-checkpoint-start.
buffer-checkpoint-start	(int)	Probe that fires when the buffer-writing portion of a checkpoint is started. arg0 holds the bitwise flags used to distinguish different checkpoint types, such as shutdown, immediate or force.
buffer-sync-start	(int, int)	Probe that fires when we begin to write dirty buffers during checkpoint (after identifying which buffers must be written). arg0 is the total number of buffers. arg1 is the number that are currently dirty and need to be written.
buffer-sync-written	(int)	Probe that fires after each buffer is written during checkpoint. arg0 is the ID number of the buffer.
buffer-sync-done	(int, int, int)	Probe that fires when all dirty buffers have been written. arg0 is the total number of buffers. arg1 is the number of buffers actually written by the checkpoint process. arg2 is the number that were expected

Name	Parameters	Description
		to be written (arg1 of buffer-sync-start); any difference reflects other processes flushing buffers during the checkpoint.
buffer-check-point-sync-start	( )	Probe that fires after dirty buffers have been written to the kernel, and before starting to issue fsync requests.
buffer-check-point-done	( )	Probe that fires when syncing of buffers to disk is complete.
twophase-check-point-start	( )	Probe that fires when the two-phase portion of a checkpoint is started.
twophase-check-point-done	( )	Probe that fires when the two-phase portion of a checkpoint is complete.
buffer-extend-start	(ForkNumber, BlockNumber, Oid, Oid, Oid, int, unsigned int)	Probe that fires when a relation extension starts. arg0 contains the fork to be extended. arg1, arg2, and arg3 contain the tablespace, database, and relation OIDs identifying the relation. arg4 is the ID of the backend which created the temporary relation for a local buffer, or InvalidBackendId (-1) for a shared buffer. arg5 is the number of blocks the caller would like to extend by.
buffer-extend-done	(ForkNumber, BlockNumber, Oid, Oid, Oid, int, unsigned int, BlockNumber)	Probe that fires when a relation extension is complete. arg0 contains the fork to be extended. arg1, arg2, and arg3 contain the tablespace, database, and relation OIDs identifying the relation. arg4 is the ID of the backend which created the temporary relation for a local buffer, or InvalidBackendId (-1) for a shared buffer. arg5 is the number of blocks the relation was extended by, this can be less than the number in the buffer-extend-start due to resource constraints. arg6 contains the BlockNumber of the first new block.
buffer-read-start	(ForkNumber, BlockNumber, Oid, Oid, Oid, int)	Probe that fires when a buffer read is started. arg0 and arg1 contain the fork and block numbers of the page. arg2, arg3, and arg4 contain the tablespace, database, and relation OIDs identifying the relation. arg5 is the ID of the backend which created the temporary relation for a local buffer, or InvalidBackendId (-1) for a shared buffer.

Name	Parameters	Description
buffer-read-done	(ForkNumber, BlockNumber, Oid, Oid, Oid, int, bool)	Probe that fires when a buffer read is complete. arg0 and arg1 contain the fork and block numbers of the page. arg2, arg3, and arg4 contain the tablespace, database, and relation OIDs identifying the relation. arg5 is the ID of the backend which created the temporary relation for a local buffer, or InvalidBackendId (-1) for a shared buffer. arg6 is true if the buffer was found in the pool, false if not.
buffer-flush-start	(ForkNumber, BlockNumber, Oid, Oid, Oid)	Probe that fires before issuing any write request for a shared buffer. arg0 and arg1 contain the fork and block numbers of the page. arg2, arg3, and arg4 contain the tablespace, database, and relation OIDs identifying the relation.
buffer-flush-done	(ForkNumber, BlockNumber, Oid, Oid, Oid)	Probe that fires when a write request is complete. (Note that this just reflects the time to pass the data to the kernel; it's typically not actually been written to disk yet.) The arguments are the same as for buffer-flush-start.
wal-buffer-write-dirty-start	( )	Probe that fires when a server process begins to write a dirty WAL buffer because no more WAL buffer space is available. (If this happens often, it implies that wal_buffers is too small.)
wal-buffer-write-dirty-done	( )	Probe that fires when a dirty WAL buffer write is complete.
wal-insert	(unsigned char, unsigned char)	Probe that fires when a WAL record is inserted. arg0 is the resource manager (rmid) for the record. arg1 contains the info flags.
wal-switch	( )	Probe that fires when a WAL segment switch is requested.
smgr-md-read-start	(ForkNumber, BlockNumber, Oid, Oid, Oid, int)	Probe that fires when beginning to read a block from a relation. arg0 and arg1 contain the fork and block numbers of the page. arg2, arg3, and arg4 contain the tablespace, database, and relation OIDs identifying the relation. arg5 is the ID of the backend which created the temporary relation for a local buffer, or InvalidBackendId (-1) for a shared buffer.

Name	Parameters	Description
smgr-md-read-done	(ForkNumber, BlockNumber, Oid, Oid, Oid, int, int, int)	Probe that fires when a block read is complete. arg0 and arg1 contain the fork and block numbers of the page. arg2, arg3, and arg4 contain the tablespace, database, and relation OIDs identifying the relation. arg5 is the ID of the backend which created the temporary relation for a local buffer, or InvalidBackendId (-1) for a shared buffer. arg6 is the number of bytes actually read, while arg7 is the number requested (if these are different it indicates trouble).
smgr-md-write-start	(ForkNumber, BlockNumber, Oid, Oid, Oid, int)	Probe that fires when beginning to write a block to a relation. arg0 and arg1 contain the fork and block numbers of the page. arg2, arg3, and arg4 contain the tablespace, database, and relation OIDs identifying the relation. arg5 is the ID of the backend which created the temporary relation for a local buffer, or InvalidBackendId (-1) for a shared buffer.
smgr-md-write-done	(ForkNumber, BlockNumber, Oid, Oid, Oid, int, int, int)	Probe that fires when a block write is complete. arg0 and arg1 contain the fork and block numbers of the page. arg2, arg3, and arg4 contain the tablespace, database, and relation OIDs identifying the relation. arg5 is the ID of the backend which created the temporary relation for a local buffer, or InvalidBackendId (-1) for a shared buffer. arg6 is the number of bytes actually written, while arg7 is the number requested (if these are different it indicates trouble).
sort-start	(int, bool, int, int, bool, int)	Probe that fires when a sort operation is started. arg0 indicates heap, index or datum sort. arg1 is true for unique-value enforcement. arg2 is the number of key columns. arg3 is the number of kilobytes of work memory allowed. arg4 is true if random access to the sort result is required. arg5 indicates serial when 0, parallel worker when 1, or parallel leader when 2.
sort-done	(bool, long)	Probe that fires when a sort is complete. arg0 is true for external sort, false for internal sort. arg1 is the number of disk blocks used for an

Name	Parameters	Description
		external sort, or kilobytes of memory used for an internal sort.
lwlock-acquire	(char *, LWLockMode)	Probe that fires when an LWLock has been acquired. arg0 is the LWLock's tranche. arg1 is the requested lock mode, either exclusive or shared.
lwlock-release	(char *)	Probe that fires when an LWLock has been released (but note that any released waiters have not yet been awakened). arg0 is the LWLock's tranche.
lwlock-wait-start	(char *, LWLockMode)	Probe that fires when an LWLock was not immediately available and a server process has begun to wait for the lock to become available. arg0 is the LWLock's tranche. arg1 is the requested lock mode, either exclusive or shared.
lwlock-wait-done	(char *, LWLockMode)	Probe that fires when a server process has been released from its wait for an LWLock (it does not actually have the lock yet). arg0 is the LWLock's tranche. arg1 is the requested lock mode, either exclusive or shared.
lwlock-condacquire	(char *, LWLockMode)	Probe that fires when an LWLock was successfully acquired when the caller specified no waiting. arg0 is the LWLock's tranche. arg1 is the requested lock mode, either exclusive or shared.
lwlock-condacquire-fail	(char *, LWLockMode)	Probe that fires when an LWLock was not successfully acquired when the caller specified no waiting. arg0 is the LWLock's tranche. arg1 is the requested lock mode, either exclusive or shared.
lock-wait-start	(unsigned int, unsigned int, unsigned int, unsigned int, LOCKMODE)	Probe that fires when a request for a heavyweight lock (Imgr lock) has begun to wait because the lock is not available. arg0 through arg3 are the tag fields identifying the object being locked. arg4 indicates the type of object being locked. arg5 indicates the lock type being requested.
lock-wait-done	(unsigned int, unsigned int, unsigned int, unsigned int, LOCKMODE)	Probe that fires when a request for a heavyweight lock (Imgr lock) has finished waiting (i.e., has acquired the lock). The arguments are the same as for lock-wait-start.
deadlock-found	( )	Probe that fires when a deadlock is found by the deadlock detector.

**Table 28.49. Defined Types Used in Probe Parameters**

Type	Definition
LocalTransactionId	unsigned int
LWLockMode	int
LOCKMODE	int
BlockNumber	unsigned int
Oid	unsigned int
ForkNumber	int
bool	unsigned char

### 28.5.3. Using Probes

The example below shows a DTrace script for analyzing transaction counts in the system, as an alternative to snapshotting `pg_stat_database` before and after a performance test:

```
#!/usr/sbin/dtrace -qs

postgresql$1:::transaction-start
{
    @start["Start"] = count();
    self->ts = timestamp;
}

postgresql$1:::transaction-abort
{
    @abort["Abort"] = count();
}

postgresql$1:::transaction-commit
/self->ts/
{
    @commit["Commit"] = count();
    @time["Total time (ns)"] = sum(timestamp - self->ts);
    self->ts=0;
}
```

When executed, the example D script gives output such as:

```
# ./txn_count.d `pgrep -n postgres` or ./txn_count.d <PID>
^C

Start                                71
Commit                               70
Total time (ns)                      2312105013
```

#### Note

SystemTap uses a different notation for trace scripts than DTrace does, even though the underlying trace points are compatible. One point worth noting is that at this writing, SystemTap scripts must reference probe names using double underscores in place of hyphens. This is expected to be fixed in future SystemTap releases.

You should remember that DTrace scripts need to be carefully written and debugged, otherwise the trace information collected might be meaningless. In most cases where problems are found it is the instrumentation that is at fault, not the underlying system. When discussing information found using dynamic tracing, be sure to enclose the script used to allow that too to be checked and discussed.

## 28.5.4. Defining New Probes

New probes can be defined within the code wherever the developer desires, though this will require a recompilation. Below are the steps for inserting new probes:

1. Decide on probe names and data to be made available through the probes
2. Add the probe definitions to `src/backend/utils/probes.d`
3. Include `pg_trace.h` if it is not already present in the module(s) containing the probe points, and insert `TRACE_POSTGRESQL` probe macros at the desired locations in the source code
4. Recompile and verify that the new probes are available

**Example:** Here is an example of how you would add a probe to trace all new transactions by transaction ID.

1. Decide that the probe will be named `transaction-start` and requires a parameter of type `LocalTransactionId`
2. Add the probe definition to `src/backend/utils/probes.d`:

```
probe transaction__start(LocalTransactionId);
```

Note the use of the double underline in the probe name. In a DTrace script using the probe, the double underline needs to be replaced with a hyphen, so `transaction-start` is the name to document for users.

3. At compile time, `transaction__start` is converted to a macro called `TRACE_POSTGRESQL_TRANSACTION_START` (notice the underscores are single here), which is available by including `pg_trace.h`. Add the macro call to the appropriate location in the source code. In this case, it looks like the following:

```
TRACE_POSTGRESQL_TRANSACTION_START(vxid.localTransactionId);
```

4. After recompiling and running the new binary, check that your newly added probe is available by executing the following DTrace command. You should see similar output:

```
# dtrace -ln transaction-start
      ID      PROVIDER      MODULE      FUNCTION NAME
18705 postgresql49878      postgres      StartTransactionCommand
transaction-start
18755 postgresql49877      postgres      StartTransactionCommand
transaction-start
18805 postgresql49876      postgres      StartTransactionCommand
transaction-start
18855 postgresql49875      postgres      StartTransactionCommand
transaction-start
18986 postgresql49873      postgres      StartTransactionCommand
transaction-start
```

There are a few things to be careful about when adding trace macros to the C code:

- You should take care that the data types specified for a probe's parameters match the data types of the variables used in the macro. Otherwise, you will get compilation errors.
- On most platforms, if PostgreSQL is built with `--enable-dtrace`, the arguments to a trace macro will be evaluated whenever control passes through the macro, *even if no tracing is being done*. This is usually not worth worrying about if you are just reporting the values of a few local variables. But beware of putting expensive function calls into the arguments. If you need to do that, consider protecting the macro with a check to see if the trace is actually enabled:

```
if (TRACE_POSTGRESQL_TRANSACTION_START_ENABLED())  
    TRACE_POSTGRESQL_TRANSACTION_START(some_function(...));
```

Each trace macro has a corresponding ENABLED macro.



---

# Chapter 29. Monitoring Disk Usage

This chapter discusses how to monitor the disk usage of a PostgreSQL database system.

## 29.1. Determining Disk Usage

Each table has a primary heap disk file where most of the data is stored. If the table has any columns with potentially-wide values, there also might be a TOAST file associated with the table, which is used to store values too wide to fit comfortably in the main table (see Section 73.2). There will be one valid index on the TOAST table, if present. There also might be indexes associated with the base table. Each table and index is stored in a separate disk file — possibly more than one file, if the file would exceed one gigabyte. Naming conventions for these files are described in Section 73.1.

You can monitor disk space in three ways: using the SQL functions listed in Table 9.96, using the `oid2name` module, or using manual inspection of the system catalogs. The SQL functions are the easiest to use and are generally recommended. The remainder of this section shows how to do it by inspection of the system catalogs.

Using `psql` on a recently vacuumed or analyzed database, you can issue queries to see the disk usage of any table:

```
SELECT pg_relation_filepath(oid), relpages FROM pg_class WHERE
    relname = 'customer';
```

pg_relation_filepath	relpages
base/16384/16806	60

(1 row)

Each page is typically 8 kilobytes. (Remember, `relpages` is only updated by `VACUUM`, `ANALYZE`, and a few DDL commands such as `CREATE INDEX`.) The file path name is of interest if you want to examine the table's disk file directly.

To show the space used by TOAST tables, use a query like the following:

```
SELECT relname, relpages
FROM pg_class,
    (SELECT reltoastrelid
     FROM pg_class
     WHERE relname = 'customer') AS ss
WHERE oid = ss.reltoastrelid OR
      oid = (SELECT indexrelid
            FROM pg_index
            WHERE indrelid = ss.reltoastrelid)
ORDER BY relname;
```

relname	relpages
pg_toast_16806	0
pg_toast_16806_index	1

You can easily display index sizes, too:

```
SELECT c2.relname, c2.relpages
```

```
FROM pg_class c, pg_class c2, pg_index i
WHERE c.relname = 'customer' AND
      c.oid = i.indrelid AND
      c2.oid = i.indexrelid
ORDER BY c2.relname;
```

relname	relpages
customer_id_index	26

It is easy to find your largest tables and indexes using this information:

```
SELECT relname, relpages
FROM pg_class
ORDER BY relpages DESC;
```

relname	relpages
bigtable	3290
customer	3144

## 29.2. Disk Full Failure

The most important disk monitoring task of a database administrator is to make sure the disk doesn't become full. A filled data disk will not result in data corruption, but it might prevent useful activity from occurring. If the disk holding the WAL files grows full, database server panic and consequent shutdown might occur.

If you cannot free up additional space on the disk by deleting other things, you can move some of the database files to other file systems by making use of tablespaces. See Section 23.6 for more information about that.

### Tip

Some file systems perform badly when they are almost full, so do not wait until the disk is completely full to take action.

If your system supports per-user disk quotas, then the database will naturally be subject to whatever quota is placed on the user the server runs as. Exceeding the quota will have the same bad effects as running out of disk space entirely.

---

# Chapter 30. Reliability and the Write-Ahead Log

This chapter explains how to control the reliability of PostgreSQL, including details about the Write-Ahead Log.

## 30.1. Reliability

Reliability is an important property of any serious database system, and PostgreSQL does everything possible to guarantee reliable operation. One aspect of reliable operation is that all data recorded by a committed transaction should be stored in a nonvolatile area that is safe from power loss, operating system failure, and hardware failure (except failure of the nonvolatile area itself, of course). Successfully writing the data to the computer's permanent storage (disk drive or equivalent) ordinarily meets this requirement. In fact, even if a computer is fatally damaged, if the disk drives survive they can be moved to another computer with similar hardware and all committed transactions will remain intact.

While forcing data to the disk platters periodically might seem like a simple operation, it is not. Because disk drives are dramatically slower than main memory and CPUs, several layers of caching exist between the computer's main memory and the disk platters. First, there is the operating system's buffer cache, which caches frequently requested disk blocks and combines disk writes. Fortunately, all operating systems give applications a way to force writes from the buffer cache to disk, and PostgreSQL uses those features. (See the `wal_sync_method` parameter to adjust how this is done.)

Next, there might be a cache in the disk drive controller; this is particularly common on RAID controller cards. Some of these caches are *write-through*, meaning writes are sent to the drive as soon as they arrive. Others are *write-back*, meaning data is sent to the drive at some later time. Such caches can be a reliability hazard because the memory in the disk controller cache is volatile, and will lose its contents in a power failure. Better controller cards have *battery-backup units* (BBUs), meaning the card has a battery that maintains power to the cache in case of system power loss. After power is restored the data will be written to the disk drives.

And finally, most disk drives have caches. Some are write-through while some are write-back, and the same concerns about data loss exist for write-back drive caches as for disk controller caches. Consumer-grade IDE and SATA drives are particularly likely to have write-back caches that will not survive a power failure. Many solid-state drives (SSD) also have volatile write-back caches.

These caches can typically be disabled; however, the method for doing this varies by operating system and drive type:

- On Linux, IDE and SATA drives can be queried using `hdparm -I`; write caching is enabled if there is a `*` next to `Write cache`. `hdparm -W 0` can be used to turn off write caching. SCSI drives can be queried using `sdparm`<sup>1</sup>. Use `sdparm --get=WCE` to check whether the write cache is enabled and `sdparm --clear=WCE` to disable it.
- On FreeBSD, IDE drives can be queried using `camcontrol identify` and write caching turned off using `hw.ata.wc=0` in `/boot/loader.conf`; SCSI drives can be queried using `camcontrol identify`, and the write cache both queried and changed using `sdparm` when available.
- On Solaris, the disk write cache is controlled by `format -e`. (The Solaris ZFS file system is safe with disk write-cache enabled because it issues its own disk cache flush commands.)
- On Windows, if `wal_sync_method` is `open_datasync` (the default), write caching can be disabled by unchecking `My Computer\Open\disk drive\Properties\Hardware\Properties\Policies\Enable write caching on the disk`. Alternative-

---

<sup>1</sup> <http://sg.danny.cz/sg/sdparm.html>

ly, set `wal_sync_method` to `fdatasync` (NTFS only), `fsync` or `fsync_writethrough`, which prevent write caching.

- On macOS, write caching can be prevented by setting `wal_sync_method` to `fsync_writethrough`.

Recent SATA drives (those following ATAPI-6 or later) offer a drive cache flush command (FLUSH CACHE EXT), while SCSI drives have long supported a similar command SYNCHRONIZE CACHE. These commands are not directly accessible to PostgreSQL, but some file systems (e.g., ZFS, ext4) can use them to flush data to the platters on write-back-enabled drives. Unfortunately, such file systems behave suboptimally when combined with battery-backup unit (BBU) disk controllers. In such setups, the synchronize command forces all data from the controller cache to the disks, eliminating much of the benefit of the BBU. You can run the `pg_test_fsync` program to see if you are affected. If you are affected, the performance benefits of the BBU can be regained by turning off write barriers in the file system or reconfiguring the disk controller, if that is an option. If write barriers are turned off, make sure the battery remains functional; a faulty battery can potentially lead to data loss. Hopefully file system and disk controller designers will eventually address this suboptimal behavior.

When the operating system sends a write request to the storage hardware, there is little it can do to make sure the data has arrived at a truly non-volatile storage area. Rather, it is the administrator's responsibility to make certain that all storage components ensure integrity for both data and file-system metadata. Avoid disk controllers that have non-battery-backed write caches. At the drive level, disable write-back caching if the drive cannot guarantee the data will be written before shutdown. If you use SSDs, be aware that many of these do not honor cache flush commands by default. You can test for reliable I/O subsystem behavior using `diskchecker.pl`<sup>2</sup>.

Another risk of data loss is posed by the disk platter write operations themselves. Disk platters are divided into sectors, commonly 512 bytes each. Every physical read or write operation processes a whole sector. When a write request arrives at the drive, it might be for some multiple of 512 bytes (PostgreSQL typically writes 8192 bytes, or 16 sectors, at a time), and the process of writing could fail due to power loss at any time, meaning some of the 512-byte sectors were written while others were not. To guard against such failures, PostgreSQL periodically writes full page images to permanent WAL storage *before* modifying the actual page on disk. By doing this, during crash recovery PostgreSQL can restore partially-written pages from WAL. If you have file-system software that prevents partial page writes (e.g., ZFS), you can turn off this page imaging by turning off the `full_page_writes` parameter. Battery-Backed Unit (BBU) disk controllers do not prevent partial page writes unless they guarantee that data is written to the BBU as full (8kB) pages.

PostgreSQL also protects against some kinds of data corruption on storage devices that may occur because of hardware errors or media failure over time, such as reading/writing garbage data.

- Each individual record in a WAL file is protected by a CRC-32 (32-bit) check that allows us to tell if record contents are correct. The CRC value is set when we write each WAL record and checked during crash recovery, archive recovery and replication.
- Data pages are not currently checksummed by default, though full page images recorded in WAL records will be protected; see `initdb` for details about enabling data checksums.
- Internal data structures such as `pg_xact`, `pg_subtrans`, `pg_multixact`, `pg_serial`, `pg_notify`, `pg_stat`, `pg_snapshots` are not directly checksummed, nor are pages protected by full page writes. However, where such data structures are persistent, WAL records are written that allow recent changes to be accurately rebuilt at crash recovery and those WAL records are protected as discussed above.
- Individual state files in `pg_twophase` are protected by CRC-32.
- Temporary data files used in larger SQL queries for sorts, materializations and intermediate results are not currently checksummed, nor will WAL records be written for changes to those files.

---

<sup>2</sup> <https://brad.livejournal.com/2116715.html>

PostgreSQL does not protect against correctable memory errors and it is assumed you will operate using RAM that uses industry standard Error Correcting Codes (ECC) or better protection.

## 30.2. Data Checksums

By default, data pages are not protected by checksums, but this can optionally be enabled for a cluster. When enabled, each data page includes a checksum that is updated when the page is written and verified each time the page is read. Only data pages are protected by checksums; internal data structures and temporary files are not.

Checksums are normally enabled when the cluster is initialized using `initdb`. They can also be enabled or disabled at a later time as an offline operation. Data checksums are enabled or disabled at the full cluster level, and cannot be specified individually for databases or tables.

The current state of checksums in the cluster can be verified by viewing the value of the read-only configuration variable `data_checksums` by issuing the command `SHOW data_checksums`.

When attempting to recover from page corruptions, it may be necessary to bypass the checksum protection. To do this, temporarily set the configuration parameter `ignore_checksum_failure`.

### 30.2.1. Off-line Enabling of Checksums

The `pg_checksums` application can be used to enable or disable data checksums, as well as verify checksums, on an offline cluster.

## 30.3. Write-Ahead Logging (WAL)

*Write-Ahead Logging* (WAL) is a standard method for ensuring data integrity. A detailed description can be found in most (if not all) books about transaction processing. Briefly, WAL's central concept is that changes to data files (where tables and indexes reside) must be written only after those changes have been logged, that is, after WAL records describing the changes have been flushed to permanent storage. If we follow this procedure, we do not need to flush data pages to disk on every transaction commit, because we know that in the event of a crash we will be able to recover the database using the log: any changes that have not been applied to the data pages can be redone from the WAL records. (This is roll-forward recovery, also known as REDO.)

### Tip

Because WAL restores database file contents after a crash, journaled file systems are not necessary for reliable storage of the data files or WAL files. In fact, journaling overhead can reduce performance, especially if journaling causes file system *data* to be flushed to disk. Fortunately, data flushing during journaling can often be disabled with a file system mount option, e.g., `data=writeback` on a Linux ext3 file system. Journaled file systems do improve boot speed after a crash.

Using WAL results in a significantly reduced number of disk writes, because only the WAL file needs to be flushed to disk to guarantee that a transaction is committed, rather than every data file changed by the transaction. The WAL file is written sequentially, and so the cost of syncing the WAL is much less than the cost of flushing the data pages. This is especially true for servers handling many small transactions touching different parts of the data store. Furthermore, when the server is processing many small concurrent transactions, one `fsync` of the WAL file may suffice to commit many transactions.

WAL also makes it possible to support on-line backup and point-in-time recovery, as described in Section 26.3. By archiving the WAL data we can support reverting to any time instant covered by the available WAL data: we simply install a prior physical backup of the database, and replay the WAL just as far as the desired time. What's more, the physical backup doesn't have to be an instantaneous

snapshot of the database state — if it is made over some period of time, then replaying the WAL for that period will fix any internal inconsistencies.

## 30.4. Asynchronous Commit

*Asynchronous commit* is an option that allows transactions to complete more quickly, at the cost that the most recent transactions may be lost if the database should crash. In many applications this is an acceptable trade-off.

As described in the previous section, transaction commit is normally *synchronous*: the server waits for the transaction's WAL records to be flushed to permanent storage before returning a success indication to the client. The client is therefore guaranteed that a transaction reported to be committed will be preserved, even in the event of a server crash immediately after. However, for short transactions this delay is a major component of the total transaction time. Selecting asynchronous commit mode means that the server returns success as soon as the transaction is logically completed, before the WAL records it generated have actually made their way to disk. This can provide a significant boost in throughput for small transactions.

Asynchronous commit introduces the risk of data loss. There is a short time window between the report of transaction completion to the client and the time that the transaction is truly committed (that is, it is guaranteed not to be lost if the server crashes). Thus asynchronous commit should not be used if the client will take external actions relying on the assumption that the transaction will be remembered. As an example, a bank would certainly not use asynchronous commit for a transaction recording an ATM's dispensing of cash. But in many scenarios, such as event logging, there is no need for a strong guarantee of this kind.

The risk that is taken by using asynchronous commit is of data loss, not data corruption. If the database should crash, it will recover by replaying WAL up to the last record that was flushed. The database will therefore be restored to a self-consistent state, but any transactions that were not yet flushed to disk will not be reflected in that state. The net effect is therefore loss of the last few transactions. Because the transactions are replayed in commit order, no inconsistency can be introduced — for example, if transaction B made changes relying on the effects of a previous transaction A, it is not possible for A's effects to be lost while B's effects are preserved.

The user can select the commit mode of each transaction, so that it is possible to have both synchronous and asynchronous commit transactions running concurrently. This allows flexible trade-offs between performance and certainty of transaction durability. The commit mode is controlled by the user-settable parameter `synchronous_commit`, which can be changed in any of the ways that a configuration parameter can be set. The mode used for any one transaction depends on the value of `synchronous_commit` when transaction commit begins.

Certain utility commands, for instance `DROP TABLE`, are forced to commit synchronously regardless of the setting of `synchronous_commit`. This is to ensure consistency between the server's file system and the logical state of the database. The commands supporting two-phase commit, such as `PREPARE TRANSACTION`, are also always synchronous.

If the database crashes during the risk window between an asynchronous commit and the writing of the transaction's WAL records, then changes made during that transaction *will* be lost. The duration of the risk window is limited because a background process (the “WAL writer”) flushes unwritten WAL records to disk every `wal_writer_delay` milliseconds. The actual maximum duration of the risk window is three times `wal_writer_delay` because the WAL writer is designed to favor writing whole pages at a time during busy periods.

### Caution

An immediate-mode shutdown is equivalent to a server crash, and will therefore cause loss of any unflushed asynchronous commits.

Asynchronous commit provides behavior different from setting `fsync = off`. `fsync` is a server-wide setting that will alter the behavior of all transactions. It disables all logic within PostgreSQL that attempts to synchronize writes to different portions of the database, and therefore a system crash (that is, a hardware or operating system crash, not a failure of PostgreSQL itself) could result in arbitrarily bad corruption of the database state. In many scenarios, asynchronous commit provides most of the performance improvement that could be obtained by turning off `fsync`, but without the risk of data corruption.

`commit_delay` also sounds very similar to asynchronous commit, but it is actually a synchronous commit method (in fact, `commit_delay` is ignored during an asynchronous commit). `commit_delay` causes a delay just before a transaction flushes WAL to disk, in the hope that a single flush executed by one such transaction can also serve other transactions committing at about the same time. The setting can be thought of as a way of increasing the time window in which transactions can join a group about to participate in a single flush, to amortize the cost of the flush among multiple transactions.

## 30.5. WAL Configuration

There are several WAL-related configuration parameters that affect database performance. This section explains their use. Consult Chapter 20 for general information about setting server configuration parameters.

*Checkpoints* are points in the sequence of transactions at which it is guaranteed that the heap and index data files have been updated with all information written before that checkpoint. At checkpoint time, all dirty data pages are flushed to disk and a special checkpoint record is written to the WAL file. (The change records were previously flushed to the WAL files.) In the event of a crash, the crash recovery procedure looks at the latest checkpoint record to determine the point in the WAL (known as the redo record) from which it should start the REDO operation. Any changes made to data files before that point are guaranteed to be already on disk. Hence, after a checkpoint, WAL segments preceding the one containing the redo record are no longer needed and can be recycled or removed. (When WAL archiving is being done, the WAL segments must be archived before being recycled or removed.)

The checkpoint requirement of flushing all dirty data pages to disk can cause a significant I/O load. For this reason, checkpoint activity is throttled so that I/O begins at checkpoint start and completes before the next checkpoint is due to start; this minimizes performance degradation during checkpoints.

The server's checkpoint process automatically performs a checkpoint every so often. A checkpoint is begun every `checkpoint_timeout` seconds, or if `max_wal_size` is about to be exceeded, whichever comes first. The default settings are 5 minutes and 1 GB, respectively. If no WAL has been written since the previous checkpoint, new checkpoints will be skipped even if `checkpoint_timeout` has passed. (If WAL archiving is being used and you want to put a lower limit on how often files are archived in order to bound potential data loss, you should adjust the `archive_timeout` parameter rather than the checkpoint parameters.) It is also possible to force a checkpoint by using the SQL command `CHECKPOINT`.

Reducing `checkpoint_timeout` and/or `max_wal_size` causes checkpoints to occur more often. This allows faster after-crash recovery, since less work will need to be redone. However, one must balance this against the increased cost of flushing dirty data pages more often. If `full_page_writes` is set (as is the default), there is another factor to consider. To ensure data page consistency, the first modification of a data page after each checkpoint results in logging the entire page content. In that case, a smaller checkpoint interval increases the volume of output to the WAL, partially negating the goal of using a smaller interval, and in any case causing more disk I/O.

Checkpoints are fairly expensive, first because they require writing out all currently dirty buffers, and second because they result in extra subsequent WAL traffic as discussed above. It is therefore wise to set the checkpointing parameters high enough so that checkpoints don't happen too often. As a simple sanity check on your checkpointing parameters, you can set the `checkpoint_warning` parameter. If checkpoints happen closer together than `checkpoint_warning` seconds, a message will be output to the server log recommending increasing `max_wal_size`. Occasional appearance of such

a message is not cause for alarm, but if it appears often then the checkpoint control parameters should be increased. Bulk operations such as large COPY transfers might cause a number of such warnings to appear if you have not set `max_wal_size` high enough.

To avoid flooding the I/O system with a burst of page writes, writing dirty buffers during a checkpoint is spread over a period of time. That period is controlled by `checkpoint_completion_target`, which is given as a fraction of the checkpoint interval (configured by using `checkpoint_timeout`). The I/O rate is adjusted so that the checkpoint finishes when the given fraction of `checkpoint_timeout` seconds have elapsed, or before `max_wal_size` is exceeded, whichever is sooner. With the default value of 0.9, PostgreSQL can be expected to complete each checkpoint a bit before the next scheduled checkpoint (at around 90% of the last checkpoint's duration). This spreads out the I/O as much as possible so that the checkpoint I/O load is consistent throughout the checkpoint interval. The disadvantage of this is that prolonging checkpoints affects recovery time, because more WAL segments will need to be kept around for possible use in recovery. A user concerned about the amount of time required to recover might wish to reduce `checkpoint_timeout` so that checkpoints occur more frequently but still spread the I/O across the checkpoint interval. Alternatively, `checkpoint_completion_target` could be reduced, but this would result in times of more intense I/O (during the checkpoint) and times of less I/O (after the checkpoint completed but before the next scheduled checkpoint) and therefore is not recommended. Although `checkpoint_completion_target` could be set as high as 1.0, it is typically recommended to set it to no higher than 0.9 (the default) since checkpoints include some other activities besides writing dirty buffers. A setting of 1.0 is quite likely to result in checkpoints not being completed on time, which would result in performance loss due to unexpected variation in the number of WAL segments needed.

On Linux and POSIX platforms `checkpoint_flush_after` allows to force the OS that pages written by the checkpoint should be flushed to disk after a configurable number of bytes. Otherwise, these pages may be kept in the OS's page cache, inducing a stall when `fsync` is issued at the end of a checkpoint. This setting will often help to reduce transaction latency, but it also can have an adverse effect on performance; particularly for workloads that are bigger than `shared_buffers`, but smaller than the OS's page cache.

The number of WAL segment files in `pg_wal` directory depends on `min_wal_size`, `max_wal_size` and the amount of WAL generated in previous checkpoint cycles. When old WAL segment files are no longer needed, they are removed or recycled (that is, renamed to become future segments in the numbered sequence). If, due to a short-term peak of WAL output rate, `max_wal_size` is exceeded, the unneeded segment files will be removed until the system gets back under this limit. Below that limit, the system recycles enough WAL files to cover the estimated need until the next checkpoint, and removes the rest. The estimate is based on a moving average of the number of WAL files used in previous checkpoint cycles. The moving average is increased immediately if the actual usage exceeds the estimate, so it accommodates peak usage rather than average usage to some extent. `min_wal_size` puts a minimum on the amount of WAL files recycled for future usage; that much WAL is always recycled for future use, even if the system is idle and the WAL usage estimate suggests that little WAL is needed.

Independently of `max_wal_size`, the most recent `wal_keep_size` megabytes of WAL files plus one additional WAL file are kept at all times. Also, if WAL archiving is used, old segments cannot be removed or recycled until they are archived. If WAL archiving cannot keep up with the pace that WAL is generated, or if `archive_command` or `archive_library` fails repeatedly, old WAL files will accumulate in `pg_wal` until the situation is resolved. A slow or failed standby server that uses a replication slot will have the same effect (see Section 27.2.6).

In archive recovery or standby mode, the server periodically performs *restartpoints*, which are similar to checkpoints in normal operation: the server forces all its state to disk, updates the `pg_control` file to indicate that the already-processed WAL data need not be scanned again, and then recycles any old WAL segment files in the `pg_wal` directory. Restartpoints can't be performed more frequently than checkpoints on the primary because restartpoints can only be performed at checkpoint records. A restartpoint is triggered when a checkpoint record is reached if at least `checkpoint_timeout` seconds have passed since the last restartpoint, or if WAL size is about to exceed `max_wal_size`. However, because of limitations on when a restartpoint can be performed, `max_wal_size` is often



exceeded during recovery, by up to one checkpoint cycle's worth of WAL. (`max_wal_size` is never a hard limit anyway, so you should always leave plenty of headroom to avoid running out of disk space.)

There are two commonly used internal WAL functions: `XLogInsertRecord` and `XLogFlush`. `XLogInsertRecord` is used to place a new record into the WAL buffers in shared memory. If there is no space for the new record, `XLogInsertRecord` will have to write (move to kernel cache) a few filled WAL buffers. This is undesirable because `XLogInsertRecord` is used on every database low level modification (for example, row insertion) at a time when an exclusive lock is held on affected data pages, so the operation needs to be as fast as possible. What is worse, writing WAL buffers might also force the creation of a new WAL segment, which takes even more time. Normally, WAL buffers should be written and flushed by an `XLogFlush` request, which is made, for the most part, at transaction commit time to ensure that transaction records are flushed to permanent storage. On systems with high WAL output, `XLogFlush` requests might not occur often enough to prevent `XLogInsertRecord` from having to do writes. On such systems one should increase the number of WAL buffers by modifying the `wal_buffers` parameter. When `full_page_writes` is set and the system is very busy, setting `wal_buffers` higher will help smooth response times during the period immediately following each checkpoint.

The `commit_delay` parameter defines for how many microseconds a group commit leader process will sleep after acquiring a lock within `XLogFlush`, while group commit followers queue up behind the leader. This delay allows other server processes to add their commit records to the WAL buffers so that all of them will be flushed by the leader's eventual sync operation. No sleep will occur if `fsync` is not enabled, or if fewer than `commit_siblings` other sessions are currently in active transactions; this avoids sleeping when it's unlikely that any other session will commit soon. Note that on some platforms, the resolution of a sleep request is ten milliseconds, so that any nonzero `commit_delay` setting between 1 and 10000 microseconds would have the same effect. Note also that on some platforms, sleep operations may take slightly longer than requested by the parameter.

Since the purpose of `commit_delay` is to allow the cost of each flush operation to be amortized across concurrently committing transactions (potentially at the expense of transaction latency), it is necessary to quantify that cost before the setting can be chosen intelligently. The higher that cost is, the more effective `commit_delay` is expected to be in increasing transaction throughput, up to a point. The `pg_test_fsync` program can be used to measure the average time in microseconds that a single WAL flush operation takes. A value of half of the average time the program reports it takes to flush after a single 8kB write operation is often the most effective setting for `commit_delay`, so this value is recommended as the starting point to use when optimizing for a particular workload. While tuning `commit_delay` is particularly useful when the WAL is stored on high-latency rotating disks, benefits can be significant even on storage media with very fast sync times, such as solid-state drives or RAID arrays with a battery-backed write cache; but this should definitely be tested against a representative workload. Higher values of `commit_siblings` should be used in such cases, whereas smaller `commit_siblings` values are often helpful on higher latency media. Note that it is quite possible that a setting of `commit_delay` that is too high can increase transaction latency by so much that total transaction throughput suffers.

When `commit_delay` is set to zero (the default), it is still possible for a form of group commit to occur, but each group will consist only of sessions that reach the point where they need to flush their commit records during the window in which the previous flush operation (if any) is occurring. At higher client counts a “gangway effect” tends to occur, so that the effects of group commit become significant even when `commit_delay` is zero, and thus explicitly setting `commit_delay` tends to help less. Setting `commit_delay` can only help when (1) there are some concurrently committing transactions, and (2) throughput is limited to some degree by commit rate; but with high rotational latency this setting can be effective in increasing transaction throughput with as few as two clients (that is, a single committing client with one sibling transaction).

The `wal_sync_method` parameter determines how PostgreSQL will ask the kernel to force WAL updates out to disk. All the options should be the same in terms of reliability, with the exception of `fsync_writethrough`, which can sometimes force a flush of the disk cache even when other options do not do so. However, it's quite platform-specific which one will be the fastest. You can test

the speeds of different options using the `pg_test_fsync` program. Note that this parameter is irrelevant if `fsync` has been turned off.

Enabling the `wal_debug` configuration parameter (provided that PostgreSQL has been compiled with support for it) will result in each `XLogInsertRecord` and `XLogFlush` WAL call being logged to the server log. This option might be replaced by a more general mechanism in the future.

There are two internal functions to write WAL data to disk: `XLogWrite` and `issue_xlog_fsync`. When `track_wal_io_timing` is enabled, the total amounts of time `XLogWrite` writes and `issue_xlog_fsync` syncs WAL data to disk are counted as `wal_write_time` and `wal_sync_time` in `pg_stat_wal`, respectively. `XLogWrite` is normally called by `XLogInsertRecord` (when there is no space for the new record in WAL buffers), `XLogFlush` and the WAL writer, to write WAL buffers to disk and call `issue_xlog_fsync`. `issue_xlog_fsync` is normally called by `XLogWrite` to sync WAL files to disk. If `wal_sync_method` is either `open_datasync` or `open_sync`, a write operation in `XLogWrite` guarantees to sync written WAL data to disk and `issue_xlog_fsync` does nothing. If `wal_sync_method` is either `fdatasync`, `fsync`, or `fsync_writethrough`, the write operation moves WAL buffers to kernel cache and `issue_xlog_fsync` syncs them to disk. Regardless of the setting of `track_wal_io_timing`, the number of times `XLogWrite` writes and `issue_xlog_fsync` syncs WAL data to disk are also counted as `wal_write` and `wal_sync` in `pg_stat_wal`, respectively.

The `recovery_prefetch` parameter can be used to reduce I/O wait times during recovery by instructing the kernel to initiate reads of disk blocks that will soon be needed but are not currently in PostgreSQL's buffer pool. The `maintenance_io_concurrency` and `wal_decode_buffer_size` settings limit prefetching concurrency and distance, respectively. By default, it is set to `try`, which enables the feature on systems where `posix_fadvise` is available.

## 30.6. WAL Internals

WAL is automatically enabled; no action is required from the administrator except ensuring that the disk-space requirements for the WAL files are met, and that any necessary tuning is done (see Section 30.5).

WAL records are appended to the WAL files as each new record is written. The insert position is described by a Log Sequence Number (LSN) that is a byte offset into the WAL, increasing monotonically with each new record. LSN values are returned as the datatype `pg_lsn`. Values can be compared to calculate the volume of WAL data that separates them, so they are used to measure the progress of replication and recovery.

WAL files are stored in the directory `pg_wal` under the data directory, as a set of segment files, normally each 16 MB in size (but the size can be changed by altering the `--wal-seg-size` initdb option). Each segment is divided into pages, normally 8 kB each (this size can be changed via the `--with-wal-blocksize` configure option). The WAL record headers are described in `access/xlogrecord.h`; the record content is dependent on the type of event that is being logged. Segment files are given ever-increasing numbers as names, starting at `000000010000000000000001`. The numbers do not wrap, but it will take a very, very long time to exhaust the available stock of numbers.

It is advantageous if the WAL is located on a different disk from the main database files. This can be achieved by moving the `pg_wal` directory to another location (while the server is shut down, of course) and creating a symbolic link from the original location in the main data directory to the new location.

The aim of WAL is to ensure that the log is written before database records are altered, but this can be subverted by disk drives that falsely report a successful write to the kernel, when in fact they have only cached the data and not yet stored it on the disk. A power failure in such a situation might lead to irrecoverable data corruption. Administrators should try to ensure that disks holding PostgreSQL's WAL files do not make such false reports. (See Section 30.1.)

After a checkpoint has been made and the WAL flushed, the checkpoint's position is saved in the file `pg_control`. Therefore, at the start of recovery, the server first reads `pg_control` and then the checkpoint record; then it performs the REDO operation by scanning forward from the WAL location indicated in the checkpoint record. Because the entire content of data pages is saved in the WAL on the first page modification after a checkpoint (assuming `full_page_writes` is not disabled), all pages changed since the checkpoint will be restored to a consistent state.

To deal with the case where `pg_control` is corrupt, we should support the possibility of scanning existing WAL segments in reverse order — newest to oldest — in order to find the latest checkpoint. This has not been implemented yet. `pg_control` is small enough (less than one disk page) that it is not subject to partial-write problems, and as of this writing there have been no reports of database failures due solely to the inability to read `pg_control` itself. So while it is theoretically a weak spot, `pg_control` does not seem to be a problem in practice.

---

# Chapter 31. Logical Replication

Logical replication is a method of replicating data objects and their changes, based upon their replication identity (usually a primary key). We use the term logical in contrast to physical replication, which uses exact block addresses and byte-by-byte replication. PostgreSQL supports both mechanisms concurrently, see Chapter 27. Logical replication allows fine-grained control over both data replication and security.

Logical replication uses a *publish* and *subscribe* model with one or more *subscribers* subscribing to one or more *publications* on a *publisher* node. Subscribers pull data from the publications they subscribe to and may subsequently re-publish data to allow cascading replication or more complex configurations.

Logical replication of a table typically starts with taking a snapshot of the data on the publisher database and copying that to the subscriber. Once that is done, the changes on the publisher are sent to the subscriber as they occur in real-time. The subscriber applies the data in the same order as the publisher so that transactional consistency is guaranteed for publications within a single subscription. This method of data replication is sometimes referred to as transactional replication.

The typical use-cases for logical replication are:

- Sending incremental changes in a single database or a subset of a database to subscribers as they occur.
- Firing triggers for individual changes as they arrive on the subscriber.
- Consolidating multiple databases into a single one (for example for analytical purposes).
- Replicating between different major versions of PostgreSQL.
- Replicating between PostgreSQL instances on different platforms (for example Linux to Windows)
- Giving access to replicated data to different groups of users.
- Sharing a subset of the database between multiple databases.

The subscriber database behaves in the same way as any other PostgreSQL instance and can be used as a publisher for other databases by defining its own publications. When the subscriber is treated as read-only by application, there will be no conflicts from a single subscription. On the other hand, if there are other writes done either by an application or by other subscribers to the same set of tables, conflicts can arise.

## 31.1. Publication

A *publication* can be defined on any physical replication primary. The node where a publication is defined is referred to as *publisher*. A publication is a set of changes generated from a table or a group of tables, and might also be described as a change set or replication set. Each publication exists in only one database.

Publications are different from schemas and do not affect how the table is accessed. Each table can be added to multiple publications if needed. Publications may currently only contain tables and all tables in schema. Objects must be added explicitly, except when a publication is created for `ALL TABLES`.

Publications can choose to limit the changes they produce to any combination of `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, and `TRUNCATE`, similar to how triggers are fired by particular event types. By default, all operation types are replicated. These publication specifications apply only for DML operations; they do not affect the initial data synchronization copy. (Row filters have no effect for `TRUNCATE`. See Section 31.3).

A published table must have a *replica identity* configured in order to be able to replicate `UPDATE` and `DELETE` operations, so that appropriate rows to update or delete can be identified on the subscriber side. By default, this is the primary key, if there is one. Another unique index (with certain additional requirements) can also be set to be the replica identity. If the table does not have any suitable key, then it can be set to replica identity `FULL`, which means the entire row becomes the key. When replica identity `FULL` is specified, indexes can be used on the subscriber side for searching the rows. Candidate indexes must be `btree`, non-partial, and the leftmost index field must be a column (not an expression) that references the published table column. These restrictions on the non-unique index properties adhere to some of the restrictions that are enforced for primary keys. If there are no such suitable indexes, the search on the subscriber side can be very inefficient, therefore replica identity `FULL` should only be used as a fallback if no other solution is possible. If a replica identity other than `FULL` is set on the publisher side, a replica identity comprising the same or fewer columns must also be set on the subscriber side. See `REPLICA IDENTITY` for details on how to set the replica identity. If a table without a replica identity is added to a publication that replicates `UPDATE` or `DELETE` operations then subsequent `UPDATE` or `DELETE` operations will cause an error on the publisher. `INSERT` operations can proceed regardless of any replica identity.

Every publication can have multiple subscribers.

A publication is created using the `CREATE PUBLICATION` command and may later be altered or dropped using corresponding commands.

The individual tables can be added and removed dynamically using `ALTER PUBLICATION`. Both the `ADD TABLE` and `DROP TABLE` operations are transactional; so the table will start or stop replicating at the correct snapshot once the transaction has committed.

## 31.2. Subscription

A *subscription* is the downstream side of logical replication. The node where a subscription is defined is referred to as the *subscriber*. A subscription defines the connection to another database and set of publications (one or more) to which it wants to subscribe.

The subscriber database behaves in the same way as any other PostgreSQL instance and can be used as a publisher for other databases by defining its own publications.

A subscriber node may have multiple subscriptions if desired. It is possible to define multiple subscriptions between a single publisher-subscriber pair, in which case care must be taken to ensure that the subscribed publication objects don't overlap.

Each subscription will receive changes via one replication slot (see Section 27.2.6). Additional replication slots may be required for the initial data synchronization of pre-existing table data and those will be dropped at the end of data synchronization.

A logical replication subscription can be a standby for synchronous replication (see Section 27.2.8). The standby name is by default the subscription name. An alternative name can be specified as `aplication_name` in the connection information of the subscription.

Subscriptions are dumped by `pg_dump` if the current user is a superuser. Otherwise a warning is written and subscriptions are skipped, because non-superusers cannot read all subscription information from the `pg_subscription` catalog.

The subscription is added using `CREATE SUBSCRIPTION` and can be stopped/resumed at any time using the `ALTER SUBSCRIPTION` command and removed using `DROP SUBSCRIPTION`.

When a subscription is dropped and recreated, the synchronization information is lost. This means that the data has to be resynchronized afterwards.

The schema definitions are not replicated, and the published tables must exist on the subscriber. Only regular tables may be the target of replication. For example, you can't replicate to a view.

The tables are matched between the publisher and the subscriber using the fully qualified table name. Replication to differently-named tables on the subscriber is not supported.

Columns of a table are also matched by name. The order of columns in the subscriber table does not need to match that of the publisher. The data types of the columns do not need to match, as long as the text representation of the data can be converted to the target type. For example, you can replicate from a column of type `integer` to a column of type `bigint`. The target table can also have additional columns not provided by the published table. Any such columns will be filled with the default value as specified in the definition of the target table. However, logical replication in binary format is more restrictive. See the `binary` option of `CREATE SUBSCRIPTION` for details.

## 31.2.1. Replication Slot Management

As mentioned earlier, each (active) subscription receives changes from a replication slot on the remote (publishing) side.

Additional table synchronization slots are normally transient, created internally to perform initial table synchronization and dropped automatically when they are no longer needed. These table synchronization slots have generated names: “`pg_%u_sync_%u_%llu`” (parameters: Subscription `oid`, Table `relid`, system identifier `sysid`)

Normally, the remote replication slot is created automatically when the subscription is created using `CREATE SUBSCRIPTION` and it is dropped automatically when the subscription is dropped using `DROP SUBSCRIPTION`. In some situations, however, it can be useful or necessary to manipulate the subscription and the underlying replication slot separately. Here are some scenarios:

- When creating a subscription, the replication slot already exists. In that case, the subscription can be created using the `create_slot = false` option to associate with the existing slot.
- When creating a subscription, the remote host is not reachable or in an unclear state. In that case, the subscription can be created using the `connect = false` option. The remote host will then not be contacted at all. This is what `pg_dump` uses. The remote replication slot will then have to be created manually before the subscription can be activated.
- When dropping a subscription, the replication slot should be kept. This could be useful when the subscriber database is being moved to a different host and will be activated from there. In that case, disassociate the slot from the subscription using `ALTER SUBSCRIPTION` before attempting to drop the subscription.
- When dropping a subscription, the remote host is not reachable. In that case, disassociate the slot from the subscription using `ALTER SUBSCRIPTION` before attempting to drop the subscription. If the remote database instance no longer exists, no further action is then necessary. If, however, the remote database instance is just unreachable, the replication slot (and any still remaining table synchronization slots) should then be dropped manually; otherwise it/they would continue to reserve WAL and might eventually cause the disk to fill up. Such cases should be carefully investigated.

## 31.2.2. Examples: Set Up Logical Replication

Create some test tables on the publisher.

```
test_pub=# CREATE TABLE t1(a int, b text, PRIMARY KEY(a));
CREATE TABLE
test_pub=# CREATE TABLE t2(c int, d text, PRIMARY KEY(c));
CREATE TABLE
test_pub=# CREATE TABLE t3(e int, f text, PRIMARY KEY(e));
CREATE TABLE
```

Create the same tables on the subscriber.

```
test_sub=# CREATE TABLE t1(a int, b text, PRIMARY KEY(a));
CREATE TABLE
test_sub=# CREATE TABLE t2(c int, d text, PRIMARY KEY(c));
CREATE TABLE
test_sub=# CREATE TABLE t3(e int, f text, PRIMARY KEY(e));
CREATE TABLE
```

Insert data to the tables at the publisher side.

```
test_pub=# INSERT INTO t1 VALUES (1, 'one'), (2, 'two'), (3,
'three');
INSERT 0 3
test_pub=# INSERT INTO t2 VALUES (1, 'A'), (2, 'B'), (3, 'C');
INSERT 0 3
test_pub=# INSERT INTO t3 VALUES (1, 'i'), (2, 'ii'), (3, 'iii');
INSERT 0 3
```

Create publications for the tables. The publications pub2 and pub3a disallow some publish operations. The publication pub3b has a row filter (see Section 31.3).

```
test_pub=# CREATE PUBLICATION pub1 FOR TABLE t1;
CREATE PUBLICATION
test_pub=# CREATE PUBLICATION pub2 FOR TABLE t2 WITH (publish =
'truncate');
CREATE PUBLICATION
test_pub=# CREATE PUBLICATION pub3a FOR TABLE t3 WITH (publish =
'truncate');
CREATE PUBLICATION
test_pub=# CREATE PUBLICATION pub3b FOR TABLE t3 WHERE (e > 5);
CREATE PUBLICATION
```

Create subscriptions for the publications. The subscription sub3 subscribes to both pub3a and pub3b. All subscriptions will copy initial data by default.

```
test_sub=# CREATE SUBSCRIPTION sub1
test_sub=# CONNECTION 'host=localhost dbname=test_pub
application_name=sub1'
test_sub=# PUBLICATION pub1;
CREATE SUBSCRIPTION
test_sub=# CREATE SUBSCRIPTION sub2
test_sub=# CONNECTION 'host=localhost dbname=test_pub
application_name=sub2'
test_sub=# PUBLICATION pub2;
CREATE SUBSCRIPTION
test_sub=# CREATE SUBSCRIPTION sub3
test_sub=# CONNECTION 'host=localhost dbname=test_pub
application_name=sub3'
test_sub=# PUBLICATION pub3a, pub3b;
CREATE SUBSCRIPTION
```

Observe that initial table data is copied, regardless of the publish operation of the publication.

```
test_sub=# SELECT * FROM t1;
 a | b
---+-----
```

```

1 | one
2 | two
3 | three
(3 rows)

```

```

test_sub=# SELECT * FROM t2;
 c | d
---+---
 1 | A
 2 | B
 3 | C
(3 rows)

```

Furthermore, because the initial data copy ignores the publish operation, and because publication pub3a has no row filter, it means the copied table t3 contains all rows even when they do not match the row filter of publication pub3b.

```

test_sub=# SELECT * FROM t3;
 e | f
---+-----
 1 | i
 2 | ii
 3 | iii
(3 rows)

```

Insert more data to the tables at the publisher side.

```

test_pub=# INSERT INTO t1 VALUES (4, 'four'), (5, 'five'), (6,
'six');
INSERT 0 3
test_pub=# INSERT INTO t2 VALUES (4, 'D'), (5, 'E'), (6, 'F');
INSERT 0 3
test_pub=# INSERT INTO t3 VALUES (4, 'iv'), (5, 'v'), (6, 'vi');
INSERT 0 3

```

Now the publisher side data looks like:

```

test_pub=# SELECT * FROM t1;
 a | b
---+-----
 1 | one
 2 | two
 3 | three
 4 | four
 5 | five
 6 | six
(6 rows)

test_pub=# SELECT * FROM t2;
 c | d
---+---
 1 | A
 2 | B
 3 | C
 4 | D
 5 | E

```



```

6 | F
(6 rows)

```

```

test_pub=# SELECT * FROM t3;
 e |  f
---+-----
 1 |  i
 2 | ii
 3 | iii
 4 | iv
 5 |  v
 6 | vi
(6 rows)

```

Observe that during normal replication the appropriate `publish` operations are used. This means publications `pub2` and `pub3a` will not replicate the `INSERT`. Also, publication `pub3b` will only replicate data that matches the row filter of `pub3b`. Now the subscriber side data looks like:

```

test_sub=# SELECT * FROM t1;
 a |  b
---+-----
 1 | one
 2 | two
 3 | three
 4 | four
 5 | five
 6 | six
(6 rows)

```

```

test_sub=# SELECT * FROM t2;
 c | d
---+---
 1 | A
 2 | B
 3 | C
(3 rows)

```

```

test_sub=# SELECT * FROM t3;
 e |  f
---+-----
 1 |  i
 2 | ii
 3 | iii
 6 | vi
(4 rows)

```

### 31.2.3. Examples: Deferred Replication Slot Creation

There are some cases (e.g. Section 31.2.1) where, if the remote replication slot was not created automatically, the user must create it manually before the subscription can be activated. The steps to create the slot and activate the subscription are shown in the following examples. These examples specify the standard logical decoding output plugin (`pgoutput`), which is what the built-in logical replication uses.

First, create a publication for the examples to use.

```
test_pub=# CREATE PUBLICATION pub1 FOR ALL TABLES;
CREATE PUBLICATION
```

Example 1: Where the subscription says `connect = false`

- Create the subscription.

```
test_sub=# CREATE SUBSCRIPTION sub1
test_sub=# CONNECTION 'host=localhost dbname=test_pub'
test_sub=# PUBLICATION pub1
test_sub=# WITH (connect=false);
WARNING: subscription was created, but is not connected
HINT: To initiate replication, you must manually create the
      replication slot, enable the subscription, and refresh the
      subscription.
CREATE SUBSCRIPTION
```

- On the publisher, manually create a slot. Because the name was not specified during `CREATE SUBSCRIPTION`, the name of the slot to create is same as the subscription name, e.g. "sub1".

```
test_pub=# SELECT * FROM
pg_create_logical_replication_slot('sub1', 'pgoutput');
 slot_name |      lsn
-----+-----
 sub1      | 0/19404D0
(1 row)
```

- On the subscriber, complete the activation of the subscription. After this the tables of pub1 will start replicating.

```
test_sub=# ALTER SUBSCRIPTION sub1 ENABLE;
ALTER SUBSCRIPTION
test_sub=# ALTER SUBSCRIPTION sub1 REFRESH PUBLICATION;
ALTER SUBSCRIPTION
```

Example 2: Where the subscription says `connect = false`, but also specifies the `slot_name` option.

- Create the subscription.

```
test_sub=# CREATE SUBSCRIPTION sub1
test_sub=# CONNECTION 'host=localhost dbname=test_pub'
test_sub=# PUBLICATION pub1
test_sub=# WITH (connect=false, slot_name='myslot');
WARNING: subscription was created, but is not connected
HINT: To initiate replication, you must manually create the
      replication slot, enable the subscription, and refresh the
      subscription.
CREATE SUBSCRIPTION
```

- On the publisher, manually create a slot using the same name that was specified during `CREATE SUBSCRIPTION`, e.g. "myslot".

```
test_pub=# SELECT * FROM
pg_create_logical_replication_slot('myslot', 'pgoutput');
```

```

slot_name |      lsn
-----+-----
myslot    | 0/19059A0
(1 row)

```

- On the subscriber, the remaining subscription activation steps are the same as before.

```

test_sub=# ALTER SUBSCRIPTION sub1 ENABLE;
ALTER SUBSCRIPTION
test_sub=# ALTER SUBSCRIPTION sub1 REFRESH PUBLICATION;
ALTER SUBSCRIPTION

```

Example 3: Where the subscription specifies `slot_name = NONE`

- Create the subscription. When `slot_name = NONE` then `enabled = false`, and `create_slot = false` are also needed.

```

test_sub=# CREATE SUBSCRIPTION sub1
test_sub=# CONNECTION 'host=localhost dbname=test_pub'
test_sub=# PUBLICATION pub1
test_sub=# WITH (slot_name=NONE, enabled=false,
create_slot=false);
CREATE SUBSCRIPTION

```

- On the publisher, manually create a slot using any name, e.g. "myslot".

```

test_pub=# SELECT * FROM
pg_create_logical_replication_slot('myslot', 'pgoutput');
slot_name |      lsn
-----+-----
myslot    | 0/1905930
(1 row)

```

- On the subscriber, associate the subscription with the slot name just created.

```

test_sub=# ALTER SUBSCRIPTION sub1 SET (slot_name='myslot');
ALTER SUBSCRIPTION

```

- The remaining subscription activation steps are same as before.

```

test_sub=# ALTER SUBSCRIPTION sub1 ENABLE;
ALTER SUBSCRIPTION
test_sub=# ALTER SUBSCRIPTION sub1 REFRESH PUBLICATION;
ALTER SUBSCRIPTION

```

## 31.3. Row Filters

By default, all data from all published tables will be replicated to the appropriate subscribers. The replicated data can be reduced by using a *row filter*. A user might choose to use row filters for behavioral, security or performance reasons. If a published table sets a row filter, a row is replicated only if its data satisfies the row filter expression. This allows a set of tables to be partially replicated. The row filter is defined per table. Use a `WHERE` clause after the table name for each published table that requires data to be filtered out. The `WHERE` clause must be enclosed by parentheses. See `CREATE PUBLICATION` for details.

### 31.3.1. Row Filter Rules

Row filters are applied *before* publishing the changes. If the row filter evaluates to `false` or `NULL` then the row is not replicated. The `WHERE` clause expression is evaluated with the same role used for the replication connection (i.e. the role specified in the `CONNECTION` clause of the `CREATE SUBSCRIPTION`). Row filters have no effect for `TRUNCATE` command.

### 31.3.2. Expression Restrictions

The `WHERE` clause allows only simple expressions. It cannot contain user-defined functions, operators, types, and collations, system column references or non-immutable built-in functions.

If a publication publishes `UPDATE` or `DELETE` operations, the row filter `WHERE` clause must contain only columns that are covered by the replica identity (see `REPLICA IDENTITY`). If a publication publishes only `INSERT` operations, the row filter `WHERE` clause can use any column.

### 31.3.3. UPDATE Transformations

Whenever an `UPDATE` is processed, the row filter expression is evaluated for both the old and new row (i.e. using the data before and after the update). If both evaluations are `true`, it replicates the `UPDATE` change. If both evaluations are `false`, it doesn't replicate the change. If only one of the old/new rows matches the row filter expression, the `UPDATE` is transformed to `INSERT` or `DELETE`, to avoid any data inconsistency. The row on the subscriber should reflect what is defined by the row filter expression on the publisher.

If the old row satisfies the row filter expression (it was sent to the subscriber) but the new row doesn't, then, from a data consistency perspective the old row should be removed from the subscriber. So the `UPDATE` is transformed into a `DELETE`.

If the old row doesn't satisfy the row filter expression (it wasn't sent to the subscriber) but the new row does, then, from a data consistency perspective the new row should be added to the subscriber. So the `UPDATE` is transformed into an `INSERT`.

Table 31.1 summarizes the applied transformations.

**Table 31.1. UPDATE Transformation Summary**

Old row	New row	Transformation
no match	no match	don't replicate
no match	match	INSERT
match	no match	DELETE
match	match	UPDATE

### 31.3.4. Partitioned Tables

If the publication contains a partitioned table, the publication parameter `publish_via_partition_root` determines which row filter is used. If `publish_via_partition_root` is `true`, the *root partitioned table's* row filter is used. Otherwise, if `publish_via_partition_root` is `false` (default), each *partition's* row filter is used.

### 31.3.5. Initial Data Synchronization

If the subscription requires copying pre-existing table data and a publication contains `WHERE` clauses, only data that satisfies the row filter expressions is copied to the subscriber.

If the subscription has several publications in which a table has been published with different `WHERE` clauses, rows that satisfy *any* of the expressions will be copied. See Section 31.3.6 for details.

### Warning

Because initial data synchronization does not take into account the `publish` parameter when copying existing table data, some rows may be copied that would not be replicated using DML. Refer to Section 31.7.1, and see Section 31.2.2 for examples.

### Note

If the subscriber is in a release prior to 15, copy pre-existing data doesn't use row filters even if they are defined in the publication. This is because old releases can only copy the entire table data.

## 31.3.6. Combining Multiple Row Filters

If the subscription has several publications in which the same table has been published with different row filters (for the same `publish` operation), those expressions get ORed together, so that rows satisfying *any* of the expressions will be replicated. This means all the other row filters for the same table become redundant if:

- One of the publications has no row filter.
- One of the publications was created using `FOR ALL TABLES`. This clause does not allow row filters.
- One of the publications was created using `FOR TABLES IN SCHEMA` and the table belongs to the referred schema. This clause does not allow row filters.

## 31.3.7. Examples

Create some tables to be used in the following examples.

```
test_pub=# CREATE TABLE t1(a int, b int, c text, PRIMARY KEY(a,c));
CREATE TABLE
test_pub=# CREATE TABLE t2(d int, e int, f int, PRIMARY KEY(d));
CREATE TABLE
test_pub=# CREATE TABLE t3(g int, h int, i int, PRIMARY KEY(g));
CREATE TABLE
```

Create some publications. Publication `p1` has one table (`t1`) and that table has a row filter. Publication `p2` has two tables. Table `t1` has no row filter, and table `t2` has a row filter. Publication `p3` has two tables, and both of them have a row filter.

```
test_pub=# CREATE PUBLICATION p1 FOR TABLE t1 WHERE (a > 5 AND c =
'NSW');
CREATE PUBLICATION
test_pub=# CREATE PUBLICATION p2 FOR TABLE t1, t2 WHERE (e = 99);
CREATE PUBLICATION
test_pub=# CREATE PUBLICATION p3 FOR TABLE t2 WHERE (d = 10), t3
WHERE (g = 10);
```

CREATE PUBLICATION

psql can be used to show the row filter expressions (if defined) for each publication.

test\_pub=# \dRp+

```

                                Publication p1
   Owner   | All tables | Inserts | Updates | Deletes | Truncates |
   Via root
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----
+-----+
postgres | f          | t       | t       | t       | t       |
f

```

Tables:

"public.t1" WHERE ((a > 5) AND (c = 'NSW'::text))

```

                                Publication p2
   Owner   | All tables | Inserts | Updates | Deletes | Truncates |
   Via root
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----
+-----+
postgres | f          | t       | t       | t       | t       |
f

```

Tables:

"public.t1"

"public.t2" WHERE (e = 99)

```

                                Publication p3
   Owner   | All tables | Inserts | Updates | Deletes | Truncates |
   Via root
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----
+-----+
postgres | f          | t       | t       | t       | t       |
f

```

Tables:

"public.t2" WHERE (d = 10)

"public.t3" WHERE (g = 10)

psql can be used to show the row filter expressions (if defined) for each table. See that table t1 is a member of two publications, but has a row filter only in p1. See that table t2 is a member of two publications, and has a different row filter in each of them.

test\_pub=# \d t1

```

                                Table "public.t1"
   Column | Type   | Collation | Nullable | Default
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----
a        | integer |           | not null |
b        | integer |           | not null |
c        | text    |           | not null |

```

Indexes:

"t1\_pkey" PRIMARY KEY, btree (a, c)

Publications:

"p1" WHERE ((a > 5) AND (c = 'NSW'::text))

"p2"

test\_pub=# \d t2

```

                                Table "public.t2"
   Column | Type   | Collation | Nullable | Default
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----

```

d	integer		not null
e	integer		
f	integer		

Indexes:

"t2\_pkey" PRIMARY KEY, btree (d)

Publications:

"p2" WHERE (e = 99)

"p3" WHERE (d = 10)

test\_pub=# \d t3

Table "public.t3"

Column	Type	Collation	Nullable	Default
g	integer		not null	
h	integer			
i	integer			

Indexes:

"t3\_pkey" PRIMARY KEY, btree (g)

Publications:

"p3" WHERE (g = 10)

On the subscriber node, create a table t1 with the same definition as the one on the publisher, and also create the subscription s1 that subscribes to the publication p1.

```
test_sub=# CREATE TABLE t1(a int, b int, c text, PRIMARY KEY(a,c));
CREATE TABLE
test_sub=# CREATE SUBSCRIPTION s1
test_sub=# CONNECTION 'host=localhost dbname=test_pub
application_name=s1'
test_sub=# PUBLICATION p1;
CREATE SUBSCRIPTION
```

Insert some rows. Only the rows satisfying the t1 WHERE clause of publication p1 are replicated.

```
test_pub=# INSERT INTO t1 VALUES (2, 102, 'NSW');
INSERT 0 1
test_pub=# INSERT INTO t1 VALUES (3, 103, 'QLD');
INSERT 0 1
test_pub=# INSERT INTO t1 VALUES (4, 104, 'VIC');
INSERT 0 1
test_pub=# INSERT INTO t1 VALUES (5, 105, 'ACT');
INSERT 0 1
test_pub=# INSERT INTO t1 VALUES (6, 106, 'NSW');
INSERT 0 1
test_pub=# INSERT INTO t1 VALUES (7, 107, 'NT');
INSERT 0 1
test_pub=# INSERT INTO t1 VALUES (8, 108, 'QLD');
INSERT 0 1
test_pub=# INSERT INTO t1 VALUES (9, 109, 'NSW');
INSERT 0 1
```

test\_pub=# SELECT \* FROM t1;

a	b	c
2	102	NSW
3	103	QLD

```

4 | 104 | VIC
5 | 105 | ACT
6 | 106 | NSW
7 | 107 | NT
8 | 108 | QLD
9 | 109 | NSW
(8 rows)

```

```

test_sub=# SELECT * FROM t1;
 a | b | c
---+---+---
 6 | 106 | NSW
 9 | 109 | NSW
(2 rows)

```

Update some data, where the old and new row values both satisfy the t1 WHERE clause of publication p1. The UPDATE replicates the change as normal.

```

test_pub=# UPDATE t1 SET b = 999 WHERE a = 6;
UPDATE 1

```

```

test_pub=# SELECT * FROM t1;
 a | b | c
---+---+---
 2 | 102 | NSW
 3 | 103 | QLD
 4 | 104 | VIC
 5 | 105 | ACT
 7 | 107 | NT
 8 | 108 | QLD
 9 | 109 | NSW
 6 | 999 | NSW
(8 rows)

```

```

test_sub=# SELECT * FROM t1;
 a | b | c
---+---+---
 9 | 109 | NSW
 6 | 999 | NSW
(2 rows)

```

Update some data, where the old row values did not satisfy the t1 WHERE clause of publication p1, but the new row values do satisfy it. The UPDATE is transformed into an INSERT and the change is replicated. See the new row on the subscriber.

```

test_pub=# UPDATE t1 SET a = 555 WHERE a = 2;
UPDATE 1

```

```

test_pub=# SELECT * FROM t1;
 a | b | c
---+---+---
 3 | 103 | QLD
 4 | 104 | VIC
 5 | 105 | ACT
 7 | 107 | NT

```



8	108	QLD
9	109	NSW
6	999	NSW
555	102	NSW

(8 rows)

```
test_sub=# SELECT * FROM t1;
```

a	b	c
9	109	NSW
6	999	NSW
555	102	NSW

(3 rows)

Update some data, where the old row values satisfied the `t1` `WHERE` clause of publication `p1`, but the new row values do not satisfy it. The `UPDATE` is transformed into a `DELETE` and the change is replicated. See that the row is removed from the subscriber.

```
test_pub=# UPDATE t1 SET c = 'VIC' WHERE a = 9;
UPDATE 1
```

```
test_pub=# SELECT * FROM t1;
```

a	b	c
3	103	QLD
4	104	VIC
5	105	ACT
7	107	NT
8	108	QLD
6	999	NSW
555	102	NSW
9	109	VIC

(8 rows)

```
test_sub=# SELECT * FROM t1;
```

a	b	c
6	999	NSW
555	102	NSW

(2 rows)

The following examples show how the publication parameter `publish_via_partition_root` determines whether the row filter of the parent or child table will be used in the case of partitioned tables.

Create a partitioned table on the publisher.

```
test_pub=# CREATE TABLE parent(a int PRIMARY KEY) PARTITION BY
RANGE(a);
CREATE TABLE
test_pub=# CREATE TABLE child PARTITION OF parent DEFAULT;
CREATE TABLE
```

Create the same tables on the subscriber.

```
test_sub=# CREATE TABLE parent(a int PRIMARY KEY) PARTITION BY
    RANGE(a);
CREATE TABLE
test_sub=# CREATE TABLE child PARTITION OF parent DEFAULT;
CREATE TABLE
```

Create a publication p4, and then subscribe to it. The publication parameter `publish_via_partition_root` is set as true. There are row filters defined on both the partitioned table (parent), and on the partition (child).

```
test_pub=# CREATE PUBLICATION p4 FOR TABLE parent WHERE (a < 5),
    child WHERE (a >= 5)
test_pub=# WITH (publish_via_partition_root=true);
CREATE PUBLICATION
```

```
test_sub=# CREATE SUBSCRIPTION s4
test_sub=# CONNECTION 'host=localhost dbname=test_pub
    application_name=s4'
test_sub=# PUBLICATION p4;
CREATE SUBSCRIPTION
```

Insert some values directly into the parent and child tables. They replicate using the row filter of parent (because `publish_via_partition_root` is true).

```
test_pub=# INSERT INTO parent VALUES (2), (4), (6);
INSERT 0 3
test_pub=# INSERT INTO child VALUES (3), (5), (7);
INSERT 0 3
```

```
test_pub=# SELECT * FROM parent ORDER BY a;
 a
---
 2
 3
 4
 5
 6
 7
(6 rows)
```

```
test_sub=# SELECT * FROM parent ORDER BY a;
 a
---
 2
 3
 4
(3 rows)
```

Repeat the same test, but with a different value for `publish_via_partition_root`. The publication parameter `publish_via_partition_root` is set as false. A row filter is defined on the partition (child).

```
test_pub=# DROP PUBLICATION p4;
DROP PUBLICATION
```

```
test_pub=# CREATE PUBLICATION p4 FOR TABLE parent, child WHERE (a
>= 5)
test_pub=# WITH (publish_via_partition_root=false);
CREATE PUBLICATION
```

```
test_sub=# ALTER SUBSCRIPTION s4 REFRESH PUBLICATION;
ALTER SUBSCRIPTION
```

Do the inserts on the publisher same as before. They replicate using the row filter of child (because `publish_via_partition_root` is false).

```
test_pub=# TRUNCATE parent;
TRUNCATE TABLE
test_pub=# INSERT INTO parent VALUES (2), (4), (6);
INSERT 0 3
test_pub=# INSERT INTO child VALUES (3), (5), (7);
INSERT 0 3
```

```
test_pub=# SELECT * FROM parent ORDER BY a;
 a
---
 2
 3
 4
 5
 6
 7
(6 rows)
```

```
test_sub=# SELECT * FROM child ORDER BY a;
 a
---
 5
 6
 7
(3 rows)
```

## 31.4. Column Lists

Each publication can optionally specify which columns of each table are replicated to subscribers. The table on the subscriber side must have at least all the columns that are published. If no column list is specified, then all columns on the publisher are replicated. See `CREATE PUBLICATION` for details on the syntax.

The choice of columns can be based on behavioral or performance reasons. However, do not rely on this feature for security: a malicious subscriber is able to obtain data from columns that are not specifically published. If security is a consideration, protections can be applied at the publisher side.

If no column list is specified, any columns added later are automatically replicated. This means that having a column list which names all columns is not the same as having no column list at all.

A column list can contain only simple column references. The order of columns in the list is not preserved.

Specifying a column list when the publication also publishes `FOR TABLES IN SCHEMA` is not supported.

For partitioned tables, the publication parameter `publish_via_partition_root` determines which column list is used. If `publish_via_partition_root` is true, the root partitioned table's column list is used. Otherwise, if `publish_via_partition_root` is false (the default), each partition's column list is used.

If a publication publishes UPDATE or DELETE operations, any column list must include the table's replica identity columns (see `REPLICA IDENTITY`). If a publication publishes only INSERT operations, then the column list may omit replica identity columns.

Column lists have no effect for the TRUNCATE command.

During initial data synchronization, only the published columns are copied. However, if the subscriber is from a release prior to 15, then all the columns in the table are copied during initial data synchronization, ignoring any column lists.

### Warning: Combining Column Lists from Multiple Publications

There's currently no support for subscriptions comprising several publications where the same table has been published with different column lists. CREATE SUBSCRIPTION disallows creating such subscriptions, but it is still possible to get into that situation by adding or altering column lists on the publication side after a subscription has been created.

This means changing the column lists of tables on publications that are already subscribed could lead to errors being thrown on the subscriber side.

If a subscription is affected by this problem, the only way to resume replication is to adjust one of the column lists on the publication side so that they all match; and then either recreate the subscription, or use `ALTER SUBSCRIPTION ... DROP PUBLICATION` to remove one of the offending publications and add it again.

## 31.4.1. Examples

Create a table `t1` to be used in the following example.

```
test_pub=# CREATE TABLE t1(id int, a text, b text, c text, d text,
e text, PRIMARY KEY(id));
CREATE TABLE
```

Create a publication `p1`. A column list is defined for table `t1` to reduce the number of columns that will be replicated. Notice that the order of column names in the column list does not matter.

```
test_pub=# CREATE PUBLICATION p1 FOR TABLE t1 (id, b, a, d);
CREATE PUBLICATION
```

`psql` can be used to show the column lists (if defined) for each publication.

```
test_pub=# \dRp+
                                     Publication p1
  Owner   | All tables | Inserts | Updates | Deletes | Truncates |
Via root
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----
+-----+
```

```
postgres | f | t | t | t | t |
```

Tables:

```
"public.t1" (id, a, b, d)
```

psql can be used to show the column lists (if defined) for each table.

```
test_pub=# \d t1
```

```
Table "public.t1"
Column | Type          | Collation | Nullable | Default
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----
id      | integer       |           | not null |
a       | text          |           |          |
b       | text          |           |          |
c       | text          |           |          |
d       | text          |           |          |
e       | text          |           |          |
```

Indexes:

```
"t1_pkey" PRIMARY KEY, btree (id)
```

Publications:

```
"p1" (id, a, b, d)
```

On the subscriber node, create a table t1 which now only needs a subset of the columns that were on the publisher table t1, and also create the subscription s1 that subscribes to the publication p1.

```
test_sub=# CREATE TABLE t1(id int, b text, a text, d text, PRIMARY
KEY(id));
CREATE TABLE
test_sub=# CREATE SUBSCRIPTION s1
test_sub=# CONNECTION 'host=localhost dbname=test_pub
application_name=s1'
test_sub=# PUBLICATION p1;
CREATE SUBSCRIPTION
```

On the publisher node, insert some rows to table t1.

```
test_pub=# INSERT INTO t1 VALUES(1, 'a-1', 'b-1', 'c-1', 'd-1',
'e-1');
INSERT 0 1
test_pub=# INSERT INTO t1 VALUES(2, 'a-2', 'b-2', 'c-2', 'd-2',
'e-2');
INSERT 0 1
test_pub=# INSERT INTO t1 VALUES(3, 'a-3', 'b-3', 'c-3', 'd-3',
'e-3');
INSERT 0 1
test_pub=# SELECT * FROM t1 ORDER BY id;
 id | a  | b  | c  | d  | e
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----
  1 | a-1 | b-1 | c-1 | d-1 | e-1
  2 | a-2 | b-2 | c-2 | d-2 | e-2
  3 | a-3 | b-3 | c-3 | d-3 | e-3
(3 rows)
```

Only data from the column list of publication p1 is replicated.

```
test_sub=# SELECT * FROM t1 ORDER BY id;
```

id	b	a	d
1	b-1	a-1	d-1
2	b-2	a-2	d-2
3	b-3	a-3	d-3

(3 rows)

## 31.5. Conflicts

Logical replication behaves similarly to normal DML operations in that the data will be updated even if it was changed locally on the subscriber node. If incoming data violates any constraints the replication will stop. This is referred to as a *conflict*. When replicating UPDATE or DELETE operations, missing data will not produce a conflict and such operations will simply be skipped.

Logical replication operations are performed with the privileges of the role which owns the subscription. Permissions failures on target tables will cause replication conflicts, as will enabled row-level security on target tables that the subscription owner is subject to, without regard to whether any policy would ordinarily reject the INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE or TRUNCATE which is being replicated. This restriction on row-level security may be lifted in a future version of PostgreSQL.

A conflict will produce an error and will stop the replication; it must be resolved manually by the user. Details about the conflict can be found in the subscriber's server log.

The resolution can be done either by changing data or permissions on the subscriber so that it does not conflict with the incoming change or by skipping the transaction that conflicts with the existing data. When a conflict produces an error, the replication won't proceed, and the logical replication worker will emit the following kind of message to the subscriber's server log:

```
ERROR:  duplicate key value violates unique constraint "test_pkey"
DETAIL:  Key (c)=(1) already exists.
CONTEXT:  processing remote data for replication origin "pg_16395"
         during "INSERT" for replication target relation "public.test" in
         transaction 725 finished at 0/14C0378
```

The LSN of the transaction that contains the change violating the constraint and the replication origin name can be found from the server log (LSN 0/14C0378 and replication origin pg\_16395 in the above case). The transaction that produced the conflict can be skipped by using ALTER SUBSCRIPTION ... SKIP with the finish LSN (i.e., LSN 0/14C0378). The finish LSN could be an LSN at which the transaction is committed or prepared on the publisher. Alternatively, the transaction can also be skipped by calling the pg\_replication\_origin\_advance() function. Before using this function, the subscription needs to be disabled temporarily either by ALTER SUBSCRIPTION ... DISABLE or, the subscription can be used with the disable\_on\_error option. Then, you can use pg\_replication\_origin\_advance() function with the node\_name (i.e., pg\_16395) and the next LSN of the finish LSN (i.e., 0/14C0379). The current position of origins can be seen in the pg\_replication\_origin\_status system view. Please note that skipping the whole transaction includes skipping changes that might not violate any constraint. This can easily make the subscriber inconsistent.

When the streaming mode is parallel, the finish LSN of failed transactions may not be logged. In that case, it may be necessary to change the streaming mode to on or off and cause the same conflicts again so the finish LSN of the failed transaction will be written to the server log. For the usage of finish LSN, please refer to ALTER SUBSCRIPTION ... SKIP.

## 31.6. Restrictions

Logical replication currently has the following restrictions or missing functionality. These might be addressed in future releases.

- The database schema and DDL commands are not replicated. The initial schema can be copied by hand using `pg_dump --schema-only`. Subsequent schema changes would need to be kept in sync manually. (Note, however, that there is no need for the schemas to be absolutely the same on both sides.) Logical replication is robust when schema definitions change in a live database: When the schema is changed on the publisher and replicated data starts arriving at the subscriber but does not fit into the table schema, replication will error until the schema is updated. In many cases, intermittent errors can be avoided by applying additive schema changes to the subscriber first.
- Sequence data is not replicated. The data in serial or identity columns backed by sequences will of course be replicated as part of the table, but the sequence itself would still show the start value on the subscriber. If the subscriber is used as a read-only database, then this should typically not be a problem. If, however, some kind of switchover or failover to the subscriber database is intended, then the sequences would need to be updated to the latest values, either by copying the current data from the publisher (perhaps using `pg_dump`) or by determining a sufficiently high value from the tables themselves.
- Replication of `TRUNCATE` commands is supported, but some care must be taken when truncating groups of tables connected by foreign keys. When replicating a truncate action, the subscriber will truncate the same group of tables that was truncated on the publisher, either explicitly specified or implicitly collected via `CASCADE`, minus tables that are not part of the subscription. This will work correctly if all affected tables are part of the same subscription. But if some tables to be truncated on the subscriber have foreign-key links to tables that are not part of the same (or any) subscription, then the application of the truncate action on the subscriber will fail.
- Large objects (see Chapter 35) are not replicated. There is no workaround for that, other than storing data in normal tables.
- Replication is only supported by tables, including partitioned tables. Attempts to replicate other types of relations, such as views, materialized views, or foreign tables, will result in an error.
- When replicating between partitioned tables, the actual replication originates, by default, from the leaf partitions on the publisher, so partitions on the publisher must also exist on the subscriber as valid target tables. (They could either be leaf partitions themselves, or they could be further sub-partitioned, or they could even be independent tables.) Publications can also specify that changes are to be replicated using the identity and schema of the partitioned root table instead of that of the individual leaf partitions in which the changes actually originate (see `publish_via_partition_root` parameter of `CREATE PUBLICATION`).

## 31.7. Architecture

Logical replication starts by copying a snapshot of the data on the publisher database. Once that is done, changes on the publisher are sent to the subscriber as they occur in real time. The subscriber applies data in the order in which commits were made on the publisher so that transactional consistency is guaranteed for the publications within any single subscription.

Logical replication is built with an architecture similar to physical streaming replication (see Section 27.2.5). It is implemented by `walsender` and `apply` processes. The `walsender` process starts logical decoding (described in Chapter 49) of the WAL and loads the standard logical decoding output plugin (`pgoutput`). The plugin transforms the changes read from WAL to the logical replication protocol (see Section 55.5) and filters the data according to the publication specification. The data is then continuously transferred using the streaming replication protocol to the `apply` worker, which maps the data to local tables and applies the individual changes as they are received, in correct transactional order.

The `apply` process on the subscriber database always runs with `session_replication_role` set to `replica`. This means that, by default, triggers and rules will not fire on a subscriber. Users can optionally choose to enable triggers and rules on a table using the `ALTER TABLE` command and the `ENABLE TRIGGER` and `ENABLE RULE` clauses.

The logical replication apply process currently only fires row triggers, not statement triggers. The initial table synchronization, however, is implemented like a `COPY` command and thus fires both row and statement triggers for `INSERT`.

### 31.7.1. Initial Snapshot

The initial data in existing subscribed tables are snapshotted and copied in a parallel instance of a special kind of apply process. This process will create its own replication slot and copy the existing data. As soon as the copy is finished the table contents will become visible to other backends. Once existing data is copied, the worker enters synchronization mode, which ensures that the table is brought up to a synchronized state with the main apply process by streaming any changes that happened during the initial data copy using standard logical replication. During this synchronization phase, the changes are applied and committed in the same order as they happened on the publisher. Once synchronization is done, control of the replication of the table is given back to the main apply process where replication continues as normal.

#### Note

The publication `publish` parameter only affects what DML operations will be replicated. The initial data synchronization does not take this parameter into account when copying the existing table data.

## 31.8. Monitoring

Because logical replication is based on a similar architecture as physical streaming replication, the monitoring on a publication node is similar to monitoring of a physical replication primary (see Section 27.2.5.2).

The monitoring information about subscription is visible in `pg_stat_subscription`. This view contains one row for every subscription worker. A subscription can have zero or more active subscription workers depending on its state.

Normally, there is a single apply process running for an enabled subscription. A disabled subscription or a crashed subscription will have zero rows in this view. If the initial data synchronization of any table is in progress, there will be additional workers for the tables being synchronized. Moreover, if the streaming transaction is applied in parallel, there may be additional parallel apply workers.

## 31.9. Security

The role used for the replication connection must have the `REPLICATION` attribute (or be a superuser). If the role lacks `SUPERUSER` and `BYPASSRLS`, publisher row security policies can execute. If the role does not trust all table owners, include `options=-row_security=off` in the connection string; if a table owner then adds a row security policy, that setting will cause replication to halt rather than execute the policy. Access for the role must be configured in `pg_hba.conf` and it must have the `LOGIN` attribute.

In order to be able to copy the initial table data, the role used for the replication connection must have the `SELECT` privilege on a published table (or be a superuser).

To create a publication, the user must have the `CREATE` privilege in the database.

To add tables to a publication, the user must have ownership rights on the table. To add all tables in schema to a publication, the user must be a superuser. To create a publication that publishes all tables or all tables in schema automatically, the user must be a superuser.



There are currently no privileges on publications. Any subscription (that is able to connect) can access any publication. Thus, if you intend to hide some information from particular subscribers, such as by using row filters or column lists, or by not adding the whole table to the publication, be aware that other publications in the same database could expose the same information. Publication privileges might be added to PostgreSQL in the future to allow for finer-grained access control.

To create a subscription, the user must have the privileges of the `pg_create_subscription` role, as well as `CREATE` privileges on the database.

The subscription apply process will, at a session level, run with the privileges of the subscription owner. However, when performing an insert, update, delete, or truncate operation on a particular table, it will switch roles to the table owner and perform the operation with the table owner's privileges. This means that the subscription owner needs to be able to `SET ROLE` to each role that owns a replicated table.

If the subscription has been configured with `run_as_owner = true`, then no user switching will occur. Instead, all operations will be performed with the permissions of the subscription owner. In this case, the subscription owner only needs privileges to `SELECT`, `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, and `DELETE` from the target table, and does not need privileges to `SET ROLE` to the table owner. However, this also means that any user who owns a table into which replication is happening can execute arbitrary code with the privileges of the subscription owner. For example, they could do this by simply attaching a trigger to one of the tables which they own. Because it is usually undesirable to allow one role to freely assume the privileges of another, this option should be avoided unless user security within the database is of no concern.

On the publisher, privileges are only checked once at the start of a replication connection and are not re-checked as each change record is read.

On the subscriber, the subscription owner's privileges are re-checked for each transaction when applied. If a worker is in the process of applying a transaction when the ownership of the subscription is changed by a concurrent transaction, the application of the current transaction will continue under the old owner's privileges.

## 31.10. Configuration Settings

Logical replication requires several configuration options to be set. Most options are relevant only on one side of the replication. However, `max_replication_slots` is used on both the publisher and the subscriber, but it has a different meaning for each.

### 31.10.1. Publishers

`wal_level` must be set to `logical`.

`max_replication_slots` must be set to at least the number of subscriptions expected to connect, plus some reserve for table synchronization.

`max_wal_senders` should be set to at least the same as `max_replication_slots`, plus the number of physical replicas that are connected at the same time.

Logical replication walsender is also affected by `wal_sender_timeout`.

### 31.10.2. Subscribers

`max_replication_slots` must be set to at least the number of subscriptions that will be added to the subscriber, plus some reserve for table synchronization.

`max_logical_replication_workers` must be set to at least the number of subscriptions (for leader apply workers), plus some reserve for the table synchronization workers and parallel apply workers.

`max_worker_processes` may need to be adjusted to accommodate for replication workers, at least  $(\text{max\_logical\_replication\_workers} + 1)$ . Note, some extensions and parallel queries also take worker slots from `max_worker_processes`.

`max_sync_workers_per_subscription` controls the amount of parallelism of the initial data copy during the subscription initialization or when new tables are added.

`max_parallel_apply_workers_per_subscription` controls the amount of parallelism for streaming of in-progress transactions with subscription parameter `streaming = parallel`.

Logical replication workers are also affected by `wal_receiver_timeout`, `wal_receiver_status_interval` and `wal_retrieve_retry_interval`.

## 31.11. Quick Setup

First set the configuration options in `postgresql.conf`:

```
wal_level = logical
```

The other required settings have default values that are sufficient for a basic setup.

`pg_hba.conf` needs to be adjusted to allow replication (the values here depend on your actual network configuration and user you want to use for connecting):

```
host      all      repuser      0.0.0.0/0      md5
```

Then on the publisher database:

```
CREATE PUBLICATION mypub FOR TABLE users, departments;
```

And on the subscriber database:

```
CREATE SUBSCRIPTION mysub CONNECTION 'dbname=foo host=bar
user=repuser' PUBLICATION mypub;
```

The above will start the replication process, which synchronizes the initial table contents of the tables `users` and `departments` and then starts replicating incremental changes to those tables.

---

# Chapter 32. Just-in-Time Compilation (JIT)

This chapter explains what just-in-time compilation is, and how it can be configured in PostgreSQL.

## 32.1. What Is JIT compilation?

Just-in-Time (JIT) compilation is the process of turning some form of interpreted program evaluation into a native program, and doing so at run time. For example, instead of using general-purpose code that can evaluate arbitrary SQL expressions to evaluate a particular SQL predicate like `WHERE a.col = 3`, it is possible to generate a function that is specific to that expression and can be natively executed by the CPU, yielding a speedup.

PostgreSQL has builtin support to perform JIT compilation using LLVM<sup>1</sup> when PostgreSQL is built with `--with-llvm`.

See `src/backend/jit/README` for further details.

### 32.1.1. JIT Accelerated Operations

Currently PostgreSQL's JIT implementation has support for accelerating expression evaluation and tuple deforming. Several other operations could be accelerated in the future.

Expression evaluation is used to evaluate `WHERE` clauses, target lists, aggregates and projections. It can be accelerated by generating code specific to each case.

Tuple deforming is the process of transforming an on-disk tuple (see Section 73.6.1) into its in-memory representation. It can be accelerated by creating a function specific to the table layout and the number of columns to be extracted.

### 32.1.2. Inlining

PostgreSQL is very extensible and allows new data types, functions, operators and other database objects to be defined; see Chapter 38. In fact the built-in objects are implemented using nearly the same mechanisms. This extensibility implies some overhead, for example due to function calls (see Section 38.3). To reduce that overhead, JIT compilation can inline the bodies of small functions into the expressions using them. That allows a significant percentage of the overhead to be optimized away.

### 32.1.3. Optimization

LLVM has support for optimizing generated code. Some of the optimizations are cheap enough to be performed whenever JIT is used, while others are only beneficial for longer-running queries. See <https://llvm.org/docs/Passes.html#transform-passes> for more details about optimizations.

## 32.2. When to JIT?

JIT compilation is beneficial primarily for long-running CPU-bound queries. Frequently these will be analytical queries. For short queries the added overhead of performing JIT compilation will often be higher than the time it can save.

To determine whether JIT compilation should be used, the total estimated cost of a query (see Chapter 76 and Section 20.7.2) is used. The estimated cost of the query will be compared with the setting of `jit_above_cost`. If the cost is higher, JIT compilation will be performed. Two further decisions are then

---

<sup>1</sup> <https://llvm.org/>

needed. Firstly, if the estimated cost is more than the setting of `jit_inline_above_cost`, short functions and operators used in the query will be inlined. Secondly, if the estimated cost is more than the setting of `jit_optimize_above_cost`, expensive optimizations are applied to improve the generated code. Each of these options increases the JIT compilation overhead, but can reduce query execution time considerably.

These cost-based decisions will be made at plan time, not execution time. This means that when prepared statements are in use, and a generic plan is used (see PREPARE), the values of the configuration parameters in effect at prepare time control the decisions, not the settings at execution time.

### Note

If `jit` is set to `off`, or if no JIT implementation is available (for example because the server was compiled without `--with-llvm`), JIT will not be performed, even if it would be beneficial based on the above criteria. Setting `jit` to `off` has effects at both plan and execution time.

EXPLAIN can be used to see whether JIT is used or not. As an example, here is a query that is not using JIT:

```
=# EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT SUM(relpages) FROM pg_class;
                                         QUERY PLAN
-----
Aggregate  (cost=16.27..16.29 rows=1 width=8) (actual
time=0.303..0.303 rows=1 loops=1)
  -> Seq Scan on pg_class  (cost=0.00..15.42 rows=342 width=4)
    (actual time=0.017..0.111 rows=356 loops=1)
    Planning Time: 0.116 ms
    Execution Time: 0.365 ms
(4 rows)
```

Given the cost of the plan, it is entirely reasonable that no JIT was used; the cost of JIT would have been bigger than the potential savings. Adjusting the cost limits will lead to JIT use:

```
=# SET jit_above_cost = 10;
SET
=# EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT SUM(relpages) FROM pg_class;
                                         QUERY PLAN
-----
Aggregate  (cost=16.27..16.29 rows=1 width=8) (actual
time=6.049..6.049 rows=1 loops=1)
  -> Seq Scan on pg_class  (cost=0.00..15.42 rows=342 width=4)
    (actual time=0.019..0.052 rows=356 loops=1)
    Planning Time: 0.133 ms
    JIT:
      Functions: 3
      Options: Inlining false, Optimization false, Expressions true,
      Deforming true
      Timing: Generation 1.259 ms, Inlining 0.000 ms, Optimization
      0.797 ms, Emission 5.048 ms, Total 7.104 ms
    Execution Time: 7.416 ms
```

As visible here, JIT was used, but inlining and expensive optimization were not. If `jit_inline_above_cost` or `jit_optimize_above_cost` were also lowered, that would change.

## 32.3. Configuration

The configuration variable `jit` determines whether JIT compilation is enabled or disabled. If it is enabled, the configuration variables `jit_above_cost`, `jit_inline_above_cost`, and `jit_optimize_above_cost` determine whether JIT compilation is performed for a query, and how much effort is spent doing so.

`jit_provider` determines which JIT implementation is used. It is rarely required to be changed. See Section 32.4.2.

For development and debugging purposes a few additional configuration parameters exist, as described in Section 20.17.

## 32.4. Extensibility

### 32.4.1. Inlining Support for Extensions

PostgreSQL's JIT implementation can inline the bodies of functions of types `C` and `internal`, as well as operators based on such functions. To do so for functions in extensions, the definitions of those functions need to be made available. When using PGXS to build an extension against a server that has been compiled with LLVM JIT support, the relevant files will be built and installed automatically.

The relevant files have to be installed into `$pkglibdir/bitcode/$extension/` and a summary of them into `$pkglibdir/bitcode/$extension.index.bc`, where `$pkglibdir` is the directory returned by `pg_config --pkglibdir` and `$extension` is the base name of the extension's shared library.

#### Note

For functions built into PostgreSQL itself, the bitcode is installed into `$pkglibdir/bitcode/postgres`.

### 32.4.2. Pluggable JIT Providers

PostgreSQL provides a JIT implementation based on LLVM. The interface to the JIT provider is pluggable and the provider can be changed without recompiling (although currently, the build process only provides inlining support data for LLVM). The active provider is chosen via the setting `jit_provider`.

#### 32.4.2.1. JIT Provider Interface

A JIT provider is loaded by dynamically loading the named shared library. The normal library search path is used to locate the library. To provide the required JIT provider callbacks and to indicate that the library is actually a JIT provider, it needs to provide a C function named `_PG_jit_provider_init`. This function is passed a struct that needs to be filled with the callback function pointers for individual actions:

```
struct JitProviderCallbacks
{
    JitProviderResetAfterErrorCB reset_after_error;
    JitProviderReleaseContextCB release_context;
    JitProviderCompileExprCB compile_expr;
};

extern void _PG_jit_provider_init(JitProviderCallbacks *cb);
```

---

# Chapter 33. Regression Tests

The regression tests are a comprehensive set of tests for the SQL implementation in PostgreSQL. They test standard SQL operations as well as the extended capabilities of PostgreSQL.

## 33.1. Running the Tests

The regression tests can be run against an already installed and running server, or using a temporary installation within the build tree. Furthermore, there is a “parallel” and a “sequential” mode for running the tests. The sequential method runs each test script alone, while the parallel method starts up multiple server processes to run groups of tests in parallel. Parallel testing adds confidence that inter-process communication and locking are working correctly. Some tests may run sequentially even in the “parallel” mode in case this is required by the test.

### 33.1.1. Running the Tests Against a Temporary Installation

To run the parallel regression tests after building but before installation, type:

```
make check
```

in the top-level directory. (Or you can change to `src/test/regress` and run the command there.) Tests which are run in parallel are prefixed with “+”, and tests which run sequentially are prefixed with “-”. At the end you should see something like:

```
# All 213 tests passed.
```

or otherwise a note about which tests failed. See Section 33.2 below before assuming that a “failure” represents a serious problem.

Because this test method runs a temporary server, it will not work if you did the build as the root user, since the server will not start as root. Recommended procedure is not to do the build as root, or else to perform testing after completing the installation.

If you have configured PostgreSQL to install into a location where an older PostgreSQL installation already exists, and you perform `make check` before installing the new version, you might find that the tests fail because the new programs try to use the already-installed shared libraries. (Typical symptoms are complaints about undefined symbols.) If you wish to run the tests before overwriting the old installation, you'll need to build with `configure --disable-rpath`. It is not recommended that you use this option for the final installation, however.

The parallel regression test starts quite a few processes under your user ID. Presently, the maximum concurrency is twenty parallel test scripts, which means forty processes: there's a server process and a `psql` process for each test script. So if your system enforces a per-user limit on the number of processes, make sure this limit is at least fifty or so, else you might get random-seeming failures in the parallel test. If you are not in a position to raise the limit, you can cut down the degree of parallelism by setting the `MAX_CONNECTIONS` parameter. For example:

```
make MAX_CONNECTIONS=10 check
```

runs no more than ten tests concurrently.

## 33.1.2. Running the Tests Against an Existing Installation

To run the tests after installation (see Chapter 17), initialize a data directory and start the server as explained in Chapter 19, then type:

```
make installcheck
```

or for a parallel test:

```
make installcheck-parallel
```

The tests will expect to contact the server at the local host and the default port number, unless directed otherwise by `PGHOST` and `PGPORT` environment variables. The tests will be run in a database named `regression`; any existing database by this name will be dropped.

The tests will also transiently create some cluster-wide objects, such as roles, tablespaces, and subscriptions. These objects will have names beginning with `regress_`. Beware of using `installcheck` mode with an installation that has any actual global objects named that way.

## 33.1.3. Additional Test Suites

The `make check` and `make installcheck` commands run only the “core” regression tests, which test built-in functionality of the PostgreSQL server. The source distribution contains many additional test suites, most of them having to do with add-on functionality such as optional procedural languages.

To run all test suites applicable to the modules that have been selected to be built, including the core tests, type one of these commands at the top of the build tree:

```
make check-world  
make installcheck-world
```

These commands run the tests using temporary servers or an already-installed server, respectively, just as previously explained for `make check` and `make installcheck`. Other considerations are the same as previously explained for each method. Note that `make check-world` builds a separate instance (temporary data directory) for each tested module, so it requires more time and disk space than `make installcheck-world`.

On a modern machine with multiple CPU cores and no tight operating-system limits, you can make things go substantially faster with parallelism. The recipe that most PostgreSQL developers actually use for running all tests is something like

```
make check-world -j8 >/dev/null
```

with a `-j` limit near to or a bit more than the number of available cores. Discarding stdout eliminates chatter that's not interesting when you just want to verify success. (In case of failure, the stderr messages are usually enough to determine where to look closer.)

Alternatively, you can run individual test suites by typing `make check` or `make installcheck` in the appropriate subdirectory of the build tree. Keep in mind that `make installcheck` assumes you've installed the relevant module(s), not only the core server.

The additional tests that can be invoked this way include:

- Regression tests for optional procedural languages. These are located under `src/pl`.
- Regression tests for `contrib` modules, located under `contrib`. Not all `contrib` modules have tests.
- Regression tests for the interface libraries, located in `src/interfaces/libpq/test` and `src/interfaces/ecpg/test`.
- Tests for core-supported authentication methods, located in `src/test/authentication`. (See below for additional authentication-related tests.)
- Tests stressing behavior of concurrent sessions, located in `src/test/isolation`.
- Tests for crash recovery and physical replication, located in `src/test/recovery`.
- Tests for logical replication, located in `src/test/subscription`.
- Tests of client programs, located under `src/bin`.

When using `installcheck` mode, these tests will create and destroy test databases whose names include `regression`, for example `pl_regression` or `contrib_regression`. Beware of using `installcheck` mode with an installation that has any non-test databases named that way.

Some of these auxiliary test suites use the TAP infrastructure explained in Section 33.4. The TAP-based tests are run only when PostgreSQL was configured with the option `--enable-tap-tests`. This is recommended for development, but can be omitted if there is no suitable Perl installation.

Some test suites are not run by default, either because they are not secure to run on a multiuser system, because they require special software or because they are resource intensive. You can decide which test suites to run additionally by setting the make or environment variable `PG_TEST_EXTRA` to a whitespace-separated list, for example:

```
make check-world PG_TEST_EXTRA='kerberos ldap ssl load_balance'
```

The following values are currently supported:

`kerberos`

Runs the test suite under `src/test/kerberos`. This requires an MIT Kerberos installation and opens TCP/IP listen sockets.

`ldap`

Runs the test suite under `src/test/ldap`. This requires an OpenLDAP installation and opens TCP/IP listen sockets.

`ssl`

Runs the test suite under `src/test/ssl`. This opens TCP/IP listen sockets.

`load_balance`

Runs the test `src/interfaces/libpq/t/004_load_balance_dns.pl`. This requires editing the system hosts file and opens TCP/IP listen sockets.

`wal_consistency_checking`

Uses `wal_consistency_checking=all` while running certain tests under `src/test/recovery`. Not enabled by default because it is resource intensive.

Tests for features that are not supported by the current build configuration are not run even if they are mentioned in `PG_TEST_EXTRA`.



In addition, there are tests in `src/test/modules` which will be run by `make check-world` but not by `make installcheck-world`. This is because they install non-production extensions or have other side-effects that are considered undesirable for a production installation. You can use `make install` and `make installcheck` in one of those subdirectories if you wish, but it's not recommended to do so with a non-test server.

### 33.1.4. Locale and Encoding

By default, tests using a temporary installation use the locale defined in the current environment and the corresponding database encoding as determined by `initdb`. It can be useful to test different locales by setting the appropriate environment variables, for example:

```
make check LANG=C
make check LC_COLLATE=en_US.utf8 LC_CTYPE=fr_CA.utf8
```

For implementation reasons, setting `LC_ALL` does not work for this purpose; all the other locale-related environment variables do work.

When testing against an existing installation, the locale is determined by the existing database cluster and cannot be set separately for the test run.

You can also choose the database encoding explicitly by setting the variable `ENCODING`, for example:

```
make check LANG=C ENCODING=EUC_JP
```

Setting the database encoding this way typically only makes sense if the locale is C; otherwise the encoding is chosen automatically from the locale, and specifying an encoding that does not match the locale will result in an error.

The database encoding can be set for tests against either a temporary or an existing installation, though in the latter case it must be compatible with the installation's locale.

### 33.1.5. Custom Server Settings

Custom server settings to use when running a regression test suite can be set in the `PGOPTIONS` environment variable (for settings that allow this):

```
make check PGOPTIONS="-c debug_parallel_query=regress -c
work_mem=50MB"
```

When running against a temporary installation, custom settings can also be set by supplying a pre-written `postgresql.conf`:

```
echo 'log_checkpoints = on' > test_postgresql.conf
echo 'work_mem = 50MB' >> test_postgresql.conf
make check EXTRA_REGRESS_OPTS="--temp-config=test_postgresql.conf"
```

This can be useful to enable additional logging, adjust resource limits, or enable extra run-time checks such as `debug_discard_caches`.

### 33.1.6. Extra Tests

The core regression test suite contains a few test files that are not run by default, because they might be platform-dependent or take a very long time to run. You can run these or other extra test files by setting the variable `EXTRA_TESTS`. For example, to run the `numeric_big` test:

```
make check EXTRA_TESTS=numeric_big
```

## 33.2. Test Evaluation

Some properly installed and fully functional PostgreSQL installations can “fail” some of these regression tests due to platform-specific artifacts such as varying floating-point representation and message wording. The tests are currently evaluated using a simple `diff` comparison against the outputs generated on a reference system, so the results are sensitive to small system differences. When a test is reported as “failed”, always examine the differences between expected and actual results; you might find that the differences are not significant. Nonetheless, we still strive to maintain accurate reference files across all supported platforms, so it can be expected that all tests pass.

The actual outputs of the regression tests are in files in the `src/test/regress/results` directory. The test script uses `diff` to compare each output file against the reference outputs stored in the `src/test/regress/expected` directory. Any differences are saved for your inspection in `src/test/regress/regression.diffs`. (When running a test suite other than the core tests, these files of course appear in the relevant subdirectory, not `src/test/regress`.)

If you don't like the `diff` options that are used by default, set the environment variable `PG_REGRESS_DIFF_OPTS`, for instance `PG_REGRESS_DIFF_OPTS='-c'`. (Or you can run `diff` yourself, if you prefer.)

If for some reason a particular platform generates a “failure” for a given test, but inspection of the output convinces you that the result is valid, you can add a new comparison file to silence the failure report in future test runs. See Section 33.3 for details.

### 33.2.1. Error Message Differences

Some of the regression tests involve intentional invalid input values. Error messages can come from either the PostgreSQL code or from the host platform system routines. In the latter case, the messages can vary between platforms, but should reflect similar information. These differences in messages will result in a “failed” regression test that can be validated by inspection.

### 33.2.2. Locale Differences

If you run the tests against a server that was initialized with a collation-order locale other than C, then there might be differences due to sort order and subsequent failures. The regression test suite is set up to handle this problem by providing alternate result files that together are known to handle a large number of locales.

To run the tests in a different locale when using the temporary-installation method, pass the appropriate locale-related environment variables on the `make` command line, for example:

```
make check LANG=de_DE.utf8
```

(The regression test driver unsets `LC_ALL`, so it does not work to choose the locale using that variable.) To use no locale, either unset all locale-related environment variables (or set them to C) or use the following special invocation:

```
make check NO_LOCALE=1
```

When running the tests against an existing installation, the locale setup is determined by the existing installation. To change it, initialize the database cluster with a different locale by passing the appropriate options to `initdb`.

In general, it is advisable to try to run the regression tests in the locale setup that is wanted for production use, as this will exercise the locale- and encoding-related code portions that will actually be used in production. Depending on the operating system environment, you might get failures, but then you will at least know what locale-specific behaviors to expect when running real applications.

### 33.2.3. Date and Time Differences

Most of the date and time results are dependent on the time zone environment. The reference files are generated for time zone PST8PDT (Berkeley, California), and there will be apparent failures if the tests are not run with that time zone setting. The regression test driver sets environment variable PGTZ to PST8PDT, which normally ensures proper results.

### 33.2.4. Floating-Point Differences

Some of the tests involve computing 64-bit floating-point numbers (`double precision`) from table columns. Differences in results involving mathematical functions of `double precision` columns have been observed. The `float8` and `geometry` tests are particularly prone to small differences across platforms, or even with different compiler optimization settings. Human eyeball comparison is needed to determine the real significance of these differences which are usually 10 places to the right of the decimal point.

Some systems display minus zero as `-0`, while others just show `0`.

Some systems signal errors from `pow()` and `exp()` differently from the mechanism expected by the current PostgreSQL code.

### 33.2.5. Row Ordering Differences

You might see differences in which the same rows are output in a different order than what appears in the expected file. In most cases this is not, strictly speaking, a bug. Most of the regression test scripts are not so pedantic as to use an `ORDER BY` for every single `SELECT`, and so their result row orderings are not well-defined according to the SQL specification. In practice, since we are looking at the same queries being executed on the same data by the same software, we usually get the same result ordering on all platforms, so the lack of `ORDER BY` is not a problem. Some queries do exhibit cross-platform ordering differences, however. When testing against an already-installed server, ordering differences can also be caused by non-C locale settings or non-default parameter settings, such as custom values of `work_mem` or the planner cost parameters.

Therefore, if you see an ordering difference, it's not something to worry about, unless the query does have an `ORDER BY` that your result is violating. However, please report it anyway, so that we can add an `ORDER BY` to that particular query to eliminate the bogus “failure” in future releases.

You might wonder why we don't order all the regression test queries explicitly to get rid of this issue once and for all. The reason is that that would make the regression tests less useful, not more, since they'd tend to exercise query plan types that produce ordered results to the exclusion of those that don't.

### 33.2.6. Insufficient Stack Depth

If the `errors` test results in a server crash at the `select infinite_recurse()` command, it means that the platform's limit on process stack size is smaller than the `max_stack_depth` parameter indicates. This can be fixed by running the server under a higher stack size limit (4MB is recommended with the default value of `max_stack_depth`). If you are unable to do that, an alternative is to reduce the value of `max_stack_depth`.

On platforms supporting `getrlimit()`, the server should automatically choose a safe value of `max_stack_depth`; so unless you've manually overridden this setting, a failure of this kind is a reportable bug.

### 33.2.7. The “random” Test

The random test script is intended to produce random results. In very rare cases, this causes that regression test to fail. Typing:

```
diff results/random.out expected/random.out
```

should produce only one or a few lines of differences. You need not worry unless the random test fails repeatedly.

### 33.2.8. Configuration Parameters

When running the tests against an existing installation, some non-default parameter settings could cause the tests to fail. For example, changing parameters such as `enable_seqscan` or `enable_indexscan` could cause plan changes that would affect the results of tests that use `EXPLAIN`.

## 33.3. Variant Comparison Files

Since some of the tests inherently produce environment-dependent results, we have provided ways to specify alternate “expected” result files. Each regression test can have several comparison files showing possible results on different platforms. There are two independent mechanisms for determining which comparison file is used for each test.

The first mechanism allows comparison files to be selected for specific platforms. There is a mapping file, `src/test/regress/resultmap`, that defines which comparison file to use for each platform. To eliminate bogus test “failures” for a particular platform, you first choose or make a variant result file, and then add a line to the `resultmap` file.

Each line in the mapping file is of the form

```
testname:output:platformpattern=comparisonfilename
```

The test name is just the name of the particular regression test module. The output value indicates which output file to check. For the standard regression tests, this is always `out`. The value corresponds to the file extension of the output file. The platform pattern is a pattern in the style of the Unix tool `expr` (that is, a regular expression with an implicit `^` anchor at the start). It is matched against the platform name as printed by `config.guess`. The comparison file name is the base name of the substitute result comparison file.

For example: some systems lack a working `strtod` function, for which our workaround causes rounding errors in the `float4` regression test. Therefore, we provide a variant comparison file, `float4-misrounded-input.out`, which includes the results to be expected on these systems. To silence the bogus “failure” message on Cygwin platforms, `resultmap` includes:

```
float4:out:.*-.*-cygwin.*=float4-misrounded-input.out
```

which will trigger on any machine where the output of `config.guess` matches `.*-.*-cygwin.*`. Other lines in `resultmap` select the variant comparison file for other platforms where it's appropriate.

The second selection mechanism for variant comparison files is much more automatic: it simply uses the “best match” among several supplied comparison files. The regression test driver script considers both the standard comparison file for a test, `testname.out`, and variant files named `testname_digit.out` (where the `digit` is any single digit 0-9). If any such file is an exact match, the test is considered to pass; otherwise, the one that generates the shortest diff is used to create the

failure report. (If `resultmap` includes an entry for the particular test, then the base `testname` is the substitute name given in `resultmap`.)

For example, for the `char` test, the comparison file `char.out` contains results that are expected in the `C` and `POSIX` locales, while the file `char_1.out` contains results sorted as they appear in many other locales.

The best-match mechanism was devised to cope with locale-dependent results, but it can be used in any situation where the test results cannot be predicted easily from the platform name alone. A limitation of this mechanism is that the test driver cannot tell which variant is actually “correct” for the current environment; it will just pick the variant that seems to work best. Therefore it is safest to use this mechanism only for variant results that you are willing to consider equally valid in all contexts.

## 33.4. TAP Tests

Various tests, particularly the client program tests under `src/bin`, use the Perl TAP tools and are run using the Perl testing program `prove`. You can pass command-line options to `prove` by setting the make variable `PROVE_FLAGS`, for example:

```
make -C src/bin check PROVE_FLAGS='--timer'
```

See the manual page of `prove` for more information.

The make variable `PROVE_TESTS` can be used to define a whitespace-separated list of paths relative to the Makefile invoking `prove` to run the specified subset of tests instead of the default `t/* .pl`. For example:

```
make check PROVE_TESTS='t/001_test1.pl t/003_test3.pl'
```

The TAP tests require the Perl module `IPC::Run`. This module is available from CPAN<sup>1</sup> or an operating system package. They also require PostgreSQL to be configured with the option `--enable-tap-tests`.

Generically speaking, the TAP tests will test the executables in a previously-installed installation tree if you say `make installcheck`, or will build a new local installation tree from current sources if you say `make check`. In either case they will initialize a local instance (data directory) and transiently run a server in it. Some of these tests run more than one server. Thus, these tests can be fairly resource-intensive.

It's important to realize that the TAP tests will start test server(s) even when you say `make installcheck`; this is unlike the traditional non-TAP testing infrastructure, which expects to use an already-running test server in that case. Some PostgreSQL subdirectories contain both traditional-style and TAP-style tests, meaning that `make installcheck` will produce a mix of results from temporary servers and the already-running test server.

### 33.4.1. Environment Variables

Data directories are named according to the test filename, and will be retained if a test fails. If the environment variable `PG_TEST_NOCLEAN` is set, data directories will be retained regardless of test status. For example, retaining the data directory regardless of test results when running the `pg_dump` tests:

```
PG_TEST_NOCLEAN=1 make -C src/bin/pg_dump check
```

This environment variable also prevents the test's temporary directories from being removed.

---

<sup>1</sup> <https://metacpan.org/dist/IPC-Run>

Many operations in the test suites use a 180-second timeout, which on slow hosts may lead to load-induced timeouts. Setting the environment variable `PG_TEST_TIMEOUT_DEFAULT` to a higher number will change the default to avoid this.

## 33.5. Test Coverage Examination

The PostgreSQL source code can be compiled with coverage testing instrumentation, so that it becomes possible to examine which parts of the code are covered by the regression tests or any other test suite that is run with the code. This is currently supported when compiling with GCC, and it requires the `gcov` and `lcov` packages.

### 33.5.1. Coverage with Autoconf and Make

A typical workflow looks like this:

```
./configure --enable-coverage ... OTHER OPTIONS ...
make
make check # or other test suite
make coverage-html
```

Then point your HTML browser to `coverage/index.html`.

If you don't have `lcov` or prefer text output over an HTML report, you can run

```
make coverage
```

instead of `make coverage-html`, which will produce `.gcov` output files for each source file relevant to the test. (`make coverage` and `make coverage-html` will overwrite each other's files, so mixing them might be confusing.)

You can run several different tests before making the coverage report; the execution counts will accumulate. If you want to reset the execution counts between test runs, run:

```
make coverage-clean
```

You can run the `make coverage-html` or `make coverage` command in a subdirectory if you want a coverage report for only a portion of the code tree.

Use `make distclean` to clean up when done.

### 33.5.2. Coverage with Meson

A typical workflow looks like this:

```
meson setup -Db_coverage=true ... OTHER OPTIONS ... builddir/
meson compile -C builddir/
meson test -C builddir/
cd builddir/
ninja coverage-html
```

Then point your HTML browser to `./meson-logs/coveragereport/index.html`.

You can run several different tests before making the coverage report; the execution counts will accumulate.

---

## Part IV. Client Interfaces

This part describes the client programming interfaces distributed with PostgreSQL. Each of these chapters can be read independently. Note that there are many other programming interfaces for client programs that are distributed separately and contain their own documentation (Appendix H lists some of the more popular ones). Readers of this part should be familiar with using SQL commands to manipulate and query the database (see Part II) and of course with the programming language that the interface uses.

---

# Table of Contents

34. libpq — C Library .....	904
34.1. Database Connection Control Functions .....	904
34.1.1. Connection Strings .....	911
34.1.2. Parameter Key Words .....	913
34.2. Connection Status Functions .....	922
34.3. Command Execution Functions .....	929
34.3.1. Main Functions .....	929
34.3.2. Retrieving Query Result Information .....	937
34.3.3. Retrieving Other Result Information .....	941
34.3.4. Escaping Strings for Inclusion in SQL Commands .....	941
34.4. Asynchronous Command Processing .....	944
34.5. Pipeline Mode .....	948
34.5.1. Using Pipeline Mode .....	949
34.5.2. Functions Associated with Pipeline Mode .....	951
34.5.3. When to Use Pipeline Mode .....	952
34.6. Retrieving Query Results Row-by-Row .....	953
34.7. Canceling Queries in Progress .....	953
34.8. The Fast-Path Interface .....	954
34.9. Asynchronous Notification .....	955
34.10. Functions Associated with the COPY Command .....	956
34.10.1. Functions for Sending COPY Data .....	957
34.10.2. Functions for Receiving COPY Data .....	958
34.10.3. Obsolete Functions for COPY .....	958
34.11. Control Functions .....	960
34.12. Miscellaneous Functions .....	962
34.13. Notice Processing .....	966
34.14. Event System .....	967
34.14.1. Event Types .....	967
34.14.2. Event Callback Procedure .....	969
34.14.3. Event Support Functions .....	970
34.14.4. Event Example .....	971
34.15. Environment Variables .....	973
34.16. The Password File .....	975
34.17. The Connection Service File .....	976
34.18. LDAP Lookup of Connection Parameters .....	976
34.19. SSL Support .....	977
34.19.1. Client Verification of Server Certificates .....	977
34.19.2. Client Certificates .....	978
34.19.3. Protection Provided in Different Modes .....	979
34.19.4. SSL Client File Usage .....	980
34.19.5. SSL Library Initialization .....	981
34.20. Behavior in Threaded Programs .....	981
34.21. Building libpq Programs .....	982
34.22. Example Programs .....	983
35. Large Objects .....	995
35.1. Introduction .....	995
35.2. Implementation Features .....	995
35.3. Client Interfaces .....	995
35.3.1. Creating a Large Object .....	996
35.3.2. Importing a Large Object .....	996
35.3.3. Exporting a Large Object .....	997
35.3.4. Opening an Existing Large Object .....	997
35.3.5. Writing Data to a Large Object .....	997
35.3.6. Reading Data from a Large Object .....	998
35.3.7. Seeking in a Large Object .....	998



---

35.3.8. Obtaining the Seek Position of a Large Object .....	998
35.3.9. Truncating a Large Object .....	999
35.3.10. Closing a Large Object Descriptor .....	999
35.3.11. Removing a Large Object .....	999
35.4. Server-Side Functions .....	1000
35.5. Example Program .....	1001
36. ECPG — Embedded SQL in C .....	1007
36.1. The Concept .....	1007
36.2. Managing Database Connections .....	1007
36.2.1. Connecting to the Database Server .....	1007
36.2.2. Choosing a Connection .....	1009
36.2.3. Closing a Connection .....	1011
36.3. Running SQL Commands .....	1011
36.3.1. Executing SQL Statements .....	1011
36.3.2. Using Cursors .....	1012
36.3.3. Managing Transactions .....	1012
36.3.4. Prepared Statements .....	1013
36.4. Using Host Variables .....	1014
36.4.1. Overview .....	1014
36.4.2. Declare Sections .....	1014
36.4.3. Retrieving Query Results .....	1015
36.4.4. Type Mapping .....	1016
36.4.5. Handling Nonprimitive SQL Data Types .....	1023
36.4.6. Indicators .....	1028
36.5. Dynamic SQL .....	1028
36.5.1. Executing Statements without a Result Set .....	1029
36.5.2. Executing a Statement with Input Parameters .....	1029
36.5.3. Executing a Statement with a Result Set .....	1029
36.6. pgtypes Library .....	1030
36.6.1. Character Strings .....	1031
36.6.2. The numeric Type .....	1031
36.6.3. The date Type .....	1034
36.6.4. The timestamp Type .....	1038
36.6.5. The interval Type .....	1041
36.6.6. The decimal Type .....	1042
36.6.7. errno Values of pgtypeslib .....	1043
36.6.8. Special Constants of pgtypeslib .....	1044
36.7. Using Descriptor Areas .....	1044
36.7.1. Named SQL Descriptor Areas .....	1044
36.7.2. SQLDA Descriptor Areas .....	1046
36.8. Error Handling .....	1057
36.8.1. Setting Callbacks .....	1057
36.8.2. sqlca .....	1059
36.8.3. SQLSTATE vs. SQLCODE .....	1060
36.9. Preprocessor Directives .....	1064
36.9.1. Including Files .....	1064
36.9.2. The define and undef Directives .....	1065
36.9.3. ifdef, ifndef, elif, else, and endif Directives .....	1065
36.10. Processing Embedded SQL Programs .....	1066
36.11. Library Functions .....	1067
36.12. Large Objects .....	1068
36.13. C++ Applications .....	1069
36.13.1. Scope for Host Variables .....	1070
36.13.2. C++ Application Development with External C Module .....	1071
36.14. Embedded SQL Commands .....	1073
36.15. Informix Compatibility Mode .....	1097
36.15.1. Additional Types .....	1097
36.15.2. Additional/Missing Embedded SQL Statements .....	1098

---

---

36.15.3. Informix-compatible SQLDA Descriptor Areas .....	1098
36.15.4. Additional Functions .....	1101
36.15.5. Additional Constants .....	1111
36.16. Oracle Compatibility Mode .....	1112
36.17. Internals .....	1112
37. The Information Schema .....	1115
37.1. The Schema .....	1115
37.2. Data Types .....	1115
37.3. information_schema_catalog_name .....	1116
37.4. administrable_role_authorizations .....	1116
37.5. applicable_roles .....	1116
37.6. attributes .....	1117
37.7. character_sets .....	1119
37.8. check_constraint_routine_usage .....	1120
37.9. check_constraints .....	1120
37.10. collations .....	1121
37.11. collation_character_set_applicability .....	1121
37.12. column_column_usage .....	1122
37.13. column_domain_usage .....	1122
37.14. column_options .....	1122
37.15. column_privileges .....	1123
37.16. column_udt_usage .....	1124
37.17. columns .....	1124
37.18. constraint_column_usage .....	1127
37.19. constraint_table_usage .....	1128
37.20. data_type_privileges .....	1128
37.21. domain_constraints .....	1129
37.22. domain_udt_usage .....	1129
37.23. domains .....	1130
37.24. element_types .....	1132
37.25. enabled_roles .....	1134
37.26. foreign_data_wrapper_options .....	1134
37.27. foreign_data_wrappers .....	1135
37.28. foreign_server_options .....	1135
37.29. foreign_servers .....	1135
37.30. foreign_table_options .....	1136
37.31. foreign_tables .....	1136
37.32. key_column_usage .....	1137
37.33. parameters .....	1137
37.34. referential_constraints .....	1139
37.35. role_column_grants .....	1140
37.36. role_routine_grants .....	1140
37.37. role_table_grants .....	1141
37.38. role_udt_grants .....	1142
37.39. role_usage_grants .....	1142
37.40. routine_column_usage .....	1143
37.41. routine_privileges .....	1143
37.42. routine_routine_usage .....	1144
37.43. routine_sequence_usage .....	1145
37.44. routine_table_usage .....	1145
37.45. routines .....	1146
37.46. schemata .....	1150
37.47. sequences .....	1150
37.48. sql_features .....	1151
37.49. sql_implementation_info .....	1152
37.50. sql_parts .....	1152
37.51. sql_sizing .....	1153
37.52. table_constraints .....	1153

---

37.53. table_privileges .....	1154
37.54. tables .....	1154
37.55. transforms .....	1155
37.56. triggered_update_columns .....	1156
37.57. triggers .....	1156
37.58. udt_privileges .....	1158
37.59. usage_privileges .....	1158
37.60. user_defined_types .....	1159
37.61. user_mapping_options .....	1161
37.62. user_mappings .....	1161
37.63. view_column_usage .....	1161
37.64. view_routine_usage .....	1162
37.65. view_table_usage .....	1162
37.66. views .....	1163

---

# Chapter 34. libpq — C Library

libpq is the C application programmer's interface to PostgreSQL. libpq is a set of library functions that allow client programs to pass queries to the PostgreSQL backend server and to receive the results of these queries.

libpq is also the underlying engine for several other PostgreSQL application interfaces, including those written for C++, Perl, Python, Tcl and ECPG. So some aspects of libpq's behavior will be important to you if you use one of those packages. In particular, Section 34.15, Section 34.16 and Section 34.19 describe behavior that is visible to the user of any application that uses libpq.

Some short programs are included at the end of this chapter (Section 34.22) to show how to write programs that use libpq. There are also several complete examples of libpq applications in the directory `src/test/examples` in the source code distribution.

Client programs that use libpq must include the header file `libpq-fe.h` and must link with the libpq library.

## 34.1. Database Connection Control Functions

The following functions deal with making a connection to a PostgreSQL backend server. An application program can have several backend connections open at one time. (One reason to do that is to access more than one database.) Each connection is represented by a `PGconn` object, which is obtained from the function `PQconnectdb`, `PQconnectdbParams`, or `PQsetdbLogin`. Note that these functions will always return a non-null object pointer, unless perhaps there is too little memory even to allocate the `PGconn` object. The `PQstatus` function should be called to check the return value for a successful connection before queries are sent via the connection object.

### Warning

If untrusted users have access to a database that has not adopted a secure schema usage pattern, begin each session by removing publicly-writable schemas from `search_path`. One can set parameter key word options to value `-csearch_path=`. Alternately, one can issue `PQexec(conn, "SELECT pg_catalog.set_config('search_path', '', false)")` after connecting. This consideration is not specific to libpq; it applies to every interface for executing arbitrary SQL commands.

### Warning

On Unix, forking a process with open libpq connections can lead to unpredictable results because the parent and child processes share the same sockets and operating system resources. For this reason, such usage is not recommended, though doing an `exec` from the child process to load a new executable is safe.

`PQconnectdbParams`

Makes a new connection to the database server.

```
PGconn *PQconnectdbParams(const char * const *keywords,
                          const char * const *values,
                          int expand_dbname);
```

This function opens a new database connection using the parameters taken from two NULL-terminated arrays. The first, `keywords`, is defined as an array of strings, each one being a key word. The second, `values`, gives the value for each key word. Unlike `PQsetdbLogin` below, the parameter set can be extended without changing the function signature, so use of this function (or its nonblocking analogs `PQconnectStartParams` and `PQconnectPoll`) is preferred for new application programming.

The currently recognized parameter key words are listed in Section 34.1.2.

The passed arrays can be empty to use all default parameters, or can contain one or more parameter settings. They must be matched in length. Processing will stop at the first NULL entry in the `keywords` array. Also, if the `values` entry associated with a non-NULL `keywords` entry is NULL or an empty string, that entry is ignored and processing continues with the next pair of array entries.

When `expand_dbname` is non-zero, the value for the first `dbname` key word is checked to see if it is a *connection string*. If so, it is “expanded” into the individual connection parameters extracted from the string. The value is considered to be a connection string, rather than just a database name, if it contains an equal sign (=) or it begins with a URI scheme designator. (More details on connection string formats appear in Section 34.1.1.) Only the first occurrence of `dbname` is treated in this way; any subsequent `dbname` parameter is processed as a plain database name.

In general the parameter arrays are processed from start to end. If any key word is repeated, the last value (that is not NULL or empty) is used. This rule applies in particular when a key word found in a connection string conflicts with one appearing in the `keywords` array. Thus, the programmer may determine whether array entries can override or be overridden by values taken from a connection string. Array entries appearing before an expanded `dbname` entry can be overridden by fields of the connection string, and in turn those fields are overridden by array entries appearing after `dbname` (but, again, only if those entries supply non-empty values).

After processing all the array entries and any expanded connection string, any connection parameters that remain unset are filled with default values. If an unset parameter's corresponding environment variable (see Section 34.15) is set, its value is used. If the environment variable is not set either, then the parameter's built-in default value is used.

#### `PQconnectdb`

Makes a new connection to the database server.

```
PGconn *PQconnectdb(const char *conninfo);
```

This function opens a new database connection using the parameters taken from the string `conninfo`.

The passed string can be empty to use all default parameters, or it can contain one or more parameter settings separated by whitespace, or it can contain a URI. See Section 34.1.1 for details.

#### `PQsetdbLogin`

Makes a new connection to the database server.

```
PGconn *PQsetdbLogin(const char *pghost,  
                     const char *pgport,  
                     const char *pgoptions,  
                     const char *pgtty,  
                     const char *dbName,  
                     const char *login,
```

```
const char *pwd);
```

This is the predecessor of `PQconnectdb` with a fixed set of parameters. It has the same functionality except that the missing parameters will always take on default values. Write `NULL` or an empty string for any one of the fixed parameters that is to be defaulted.

If the *dbName* contains an `=` sign or has a valid connection URI prefix, it is taken as a *conninfo* string in exactly the same way as if it had been passed to `PQconnectdb`, and the remaining parameters are then applied as specified for `PQconnectdbParams`.

`pgtty` is no longer used and any value passed will be ignored.

#### `PQsetdb`

Makes a new connection to the database server.

```
PGconn *PQsetdb(char *pghost,
                char *pgport,
                char *pgoptions,
                char *pgtty,
                char *dbName);
```

This is a macro that calls `PQsetdbLogin` with null pointers for the *login* and *pwd* parameters. It is provided for backward compatibility with very old programs.

#### `PQconnectStartParams`

#### `PQconnectStart`

#### `PQconnectPoll`

Make a connection to the database server in a nonblocking manner.

```
PGconn *PQconnectStartParams(const char * const *keywords,
                             const char * const *values,
                             int expand_dbname);
```

```
PGconn *PQconnectStart(const char *conninfo);
```

```
PostgresPollingStatusType PQconnectPoll(PGconn *conn);
```

These three functions are used to open a connection to a database server such that your application's thread of execution is not blocked on remote I/O whilst doing so. The point of this approach is that the waits for I/O to complete can occur in the application's main loop, rather than down inside `PQconnectdbParams` or `PQconnectdb`, and so the application can manage this operation in parallel with other activities.

With `PQconnectStartParams`, the database connection is made using the parameters taken from the *keywords* and *values* arrays, and controlled by *expand\_dbname*, as described above for `PQconnectdbParams`.

With `PQconnectStart`, the database connection is made using the parameters taken from the string *conninfo* as described above for `PQconnectdb`.

Neither `PQconnectStartParams` nor `PQconnectStart` nor `PQconnectPoll` will block, so long as a number of restrictions are met:

- The *hostaddr* parameter must be used appropriately to prevent DNS queries from being made. See the documentation of this parameter in Section 34.1.2 for details.
- If you call `PQtrace`, ensure that the stream object into which you trace will not block.

- You must ensure that the socket is in the appropriate state before calling `PQconnectPoll`, as described below.

To begin a nonblocking connection request, call `PQconnectStart` or `PQconnectStartParams`. If the result is null, then libpq has been unable to allocate a new `PGconn` structure. Otherwise, a valid `PGconn` pointer is returned (though not yet representing a valid connection to the database). Next call `PQstatus(conn)`. If the result is `CONNECTION_BAD`, the connection attempt has already failed, typically because of invalid connection parameters.

If `PQconnectStart` or `PQconnectStartParams` succeeds, the next stage is to poll libpq so that it can proceed with the connection sequence. Use `PQsocket(conn)` to obtain the descriptor of the socket underlying the database connection. (Caution: do not assume that the socket remains the same across `PQconnectPoll` calls.) Loop thus: If `PQconnectPoll(conn)` last returned `PGRES_POLLING_READING`, wait until the socket is ready to read (as indicated by `select()`, `poll()`, or similar system function). Then call `PQconnectPoll(conn)` again. Conversely, if `PQconnectPoll(conn)` last returned `PGRES_POLLING_WRITING`, wait until the socket is ready to write, then call `PQconnectPoll(conn)` again. On the first iteration, i.e., if you have yet to call `PQconnectPoll`, behave as if it last returned `PGRES_POLLING_WRITING`. Continue this loop until `PQconnectPoll(conn)` returns `PGRES_POLLING_FAILED`, indicating the connection procedure has failed, or `PGRES_POLLING_OK`, indicating the connection has been successfully made.

At any time during connection, the status of the connection can be checked by calling `PQstatus`. If this call returns `CONNECTION_BAD`, then the connection procedure has failed; if the call returns `CONNECTION_OK`, then the connection is ready. Both of these states are equally detectable from the return value of `PQconnectPoll`, described above. Other states might also occur during (and only during) an asynchronous connection procedure. These indicate the current stage of the connection procedure and might be useful to provide feedback to the user for example. These statuses are:

`CONNECTION_STARTED`

Waiting for connection to be made.

`CONNECTION_MADE`

Connection OK; waiting to send.

`CONNECTION_AWAITING_RESPONSE`

Waiting for a response from the server.

`CONNECTION_AUTH_OK`

Received authentication; waiting for backend start-up to finish.

`CONNECTION_SSL_STARTUP`

Negotiating SSL encryption.

`CONNECTION_SETENV`

Negotiating environment-driven parameter settings.

`CONNECTION_CHECK_WRITABLE`

Checking if connection is able to handle write transactions.

`CONNECTION_CONSUME`

Consuming any remaining response messages on connection.

Note that, although these constants will remain (in order to maintain compatibility), an application should never rely upon these occurring in a particular order, or at all, or on the status always being one of these documented values. An application might do something like this:

```
switch(PQstatus(conn))
{
    case CONNECTION_STARTED:
        feedback = "Connecting...";
        break;

    case CONNECTION_MADE:
        feedback = "Connected to server...";
        break;

    .
    .
    .

    default:
        feedback = "Connecting...";
}
```

The `connect_timeout` connection parameter is ignored when using `PQconnectPoll`; it is the application's responsibility to decide whether an excessive amount of time has elapsed. Otherwise, `PQconnectStart` followed by a `PQconnectPoll` loop is equivalent to `PQconnectdb`.

Note that when `PQconnectStart` or `PQconnectStartParams` returns a non-null pointer, you must call `PQfinish` when you are finished with it, in order to dispose of the structure and any associated memory blocks. This must be done even if the connection attempt fails or is abandoned.

#### `PQconnndefaults`

Returns the default connection options.

```
PQconninfoOption *PQconnndefaults(void);

typedef struct
{
    char    *keyword;    /* The keyword of the option */
    char    *envvar;     /* Fallback environment variable name */
    char    *compiled;   /* Fallback compiled in default value */
    char    *val;        /* Option's current value, or NULL */
    char    *label;      /* Label for field in connect dialog */
    char    *dispchar;   /* Indicates how to display this field
                        in a connect dialog. Values are:
                        ""      Display entered value as is
                        "*"    Password field - hide value
                        "D"    Debug option - don't show by
                        default */
    int      dispsize;   /* Field size in characters for dialog */
} PQconninfoOption;
```

Returns a connection options array. This can be used to determine all possible `PQconnectdb` options and their current default values. The return value points to an array of `PQconninfoOption` structures, which ends with an entry having a null keyword pointer. The null pointer is returned if memory could not be allocated. Note that the current default values (`val` fields) will depend on environment variables and other context. A missing or invalid service file will be silently ignored. Callers must treat the connection options data as read-only.



After processing the options array, free it by passing it to `PQconninfoFree`. If this is not done, a small amount of memory is leaked for each call to `PQconnndefaults`.

### `PQconninfo`

Returns the connection options used by a live connection.

```
PQconninfoOption *PQconninfo(PGconn *conn);
```

Returns a connection options array. This can be used to determine all possible `PQconnectdb` options and the values that were used to connect to the server. The return value points to an array of `PQconninfoOption` structures, which ends with an entry having a null keyword pointer. All notes above for `PQconnndefaults` also apply to the result of `PQconninfo`.

### `PQconninfoParse`

Returns parsed connection options from the provided connection string.

```
PQconninfoOption *PQconninfoParse(const char *conninfo, char
**errmsg);
```

Parses a connection string and returns the resulting options as an array; or returns `NULL` if there is a problem with the connection string. This function can be used to extract the `PQconnectdb` options in the provided connection string. The return value points to an array of `PQconninfoOption` structures, which ends with an entry having a null keyword pointer.

All legal options will be present in the result array, but the `PQconninfoOption` for any option not present in the connection string will have `val` set to `NULL`; default values are not inserted.

If `errmsg` is not `NULL`, then `*errmsg` is set to `NULL` on success, else to a malloc'd error string explaining the problem. (It is also possible for `*errmsg` to be set to `NULL` and the function to return `NULL`; this indicates an out-of-memory condition.)

After processing the options array, free it by passing it to `PQconninfoFree`. If this is not done, some memory is leaked for each call to `PQconninfoParse`. Conversely, if an error occurs and `errmsg` is not `NULL`, be sure to free the error string using `PQfreemem`.

### `PQfinish`

Closes the connection to the server. Also frees memory used by the `PGconn` object.

```
void PQfinish(PGconn *conn);
```

Note that even if the server connection attempt fails (as indicated by `PQstatus`), the application should call `PQfinish` to free the memory used by the `PGconn` object. The `PGconn` pointer must not be used again after `PQfinish` has been called.

### `PQreset`

Resets the communication channel to the server.

```
void PQreset(PGconn *conn);
```

This function will close the connection to the server and attempt to establish a new connection, using all the same parameters previously used. This might be useful for error recovery if a working connection is lost.

PQresetStart  
PQresetPoll

Reset the communication channel to the server, in a nonblocking manner.

```
int PQresetStart(PGconn *conn);
```

```
PostgresPollingStatusType PQresetPoll(PGconn *conn);
```

These functions will close the connection to the server and attempt to establish a new connection, using all the same parameters previously used. This can be useful for error recovery if a working connection is lost. They differ from `PQreset` (above) in that they act in a nonblocking manner. These functions suffer from the same restrictions as `PQconnectStartParams`, `PQconnectStart` and `PQconnectPoll`.

To initiate a connection reset, call `PQresetStart`. If it returns 0, the reset has failed. If it returns 1, poll the reset using `PQresetPoll` in exactly the same way as you would create the connection using `PQconnectPoll`.

PQpingParams

`PQpingParams` reports the status of the server. It accepts connection parameters identical to those of `PQconnectdbParams`, described above. It is not necessary to supply correct user name, password, or database name values to obtain the server status; however, if incorrect values are provided, the server will log a failed connection attempt.

```
PGPing PQpingParams(const char * const *keywords,  
                   const char * const *values,  
                   int expand_dbname);
```

The function returns one of the following values:

PQPING\_OK

The server is running and appears to be accepting connections.

PQPING\_REJECT

The server is running but is in a state that disallows connections (startup, shutdown, or crash recovery).

PQPING\_NO\_RESPONSE

The server could not be contacted. This might indicate that the server is not running, or that there is something wrong with the given connection parameters (for example, wrong port number), or that there is a network connectivity problem (for example, a firewall blocking the connection request).

PQPING\_NO\_ATTEMPT

No attempt was made to contact the server, because the supplied parameters were obviously incorrect or there was some client-side problem (for example, out of memory).

PQping

`PQping` reports the status of the server. It accepts connection parameters identical to those of `PQconnectdb`, described above. It is not necessary to supply correct user name, password, or database name values to obtain the server status; however, if incorrect values are provided, the server will log a failed connection attempt.

```
PGPing PQping(const char *conninfo);
```

The return values are the same as for `PQpingParams`.

`PQsetSSLKeyPassHook_OpenSSL`

`PQsetSSLKeyPassHook_OpenSSL` lets an application override libpq's default handling of encrypted client certificate key files using `sslpassword` or interactive prompting.

```
void PQsetSSLKeyPassHook_OpenSSL(PQsslKeyPassHook_OpenSSL_type  
hook);
```

The application passes a pointer to a callback function with signature:

```
int callback_fn(char *buf, int size, PGconn *conn);
```

which libpq will then call *instead of* its default `PQdefaultSSLKeyPassHook_OpenSSL` handler. The callback should determine the password for the key and copy it to result-buffer `buf` of size `size`. The string in `buf` must be null-terminated. The callback must return the length of the password stored in `buf` excluding the null terminator. On failure, the callback should set `buf[0] = '\0'` and return 0. See `PQdefaultSSLKeyPassHook_OpenSSL` in libpq's source code for an example.

If the user specified an explicit key location, its path will be in `conn->sslkey` when the callback is invoked. This will be empty if the default key path is being used. For keys that are engine specifiers, it is up to engine implementations whether they use the OpenSSL password callback or define their own handling.

The app callback may choose to delegate unhandled cases to `PQdefaultSSLKeyPassHook_OpenSSL`, or call it first and try something else if it returns 0, or completely override it.

The callback *must not* escape normal flow control with exceptions, `longjmp(...)`, etc. It must return normally.

`PQgetSSLKeyPassHook_OpenSSL`

`PQgetSSLKeyPassHook_OpenSSL` returns the current client certificate key password hook, or NULL if none has been set.

```
PQsslKeyPassHook_OpenSSL_type PQgetSSLKeyPassHook_OpenSSL(void);
```

## 34.1.1. Connection Strings

Several libpq functions parse a user-specified string to obtain connection parameters. There are two accepted formats for these strings: plain keyword/value strings and URIs. URIs generally follow RFC 3986<sup>1</sup>, except that multi-host connection strings are allowed as further described below.

### 34.1.1.1. Keyword/Value Connection Strings

In the keyword/value format, each parameter setting is in the form `keyword = value`, with space(s) between settings. Spaces around a setting's equal sign are optional. To write an empty value, or a value containing spaces, surround it with single quotes, for example `keyword = 'a value'`. Single quotes and backslashes within a value must be escaped with a backslash, i.e., `\'` and `\\`.

---

<sup>1</sup> <https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3986>

Example:

```
host=localhost port=5432 dbname=mydb connect_timeout=10
```

The recognized parameter key words are listed in Section 34.1.2.

### 34.1.1.2. Connection URIs

The general form for a connection URI is:

```
postgresql://[userspec@][hostspec][/dbname][?paramspec]
```

where *userspec* is:

```
user[:password]
```

and *hostspec* is:

```
[host][:port][,...]
```

and *paramspec* is:

```
name=value[&...]
```

The URI scheme designator can be either `postgresql://` or `postgres://`. Each of the remaining URI parts is optional. The following examples illustrate valid URI syntax:

```
postgresql://
postgresql://localhost
postgresql://localhost:5433
postgresql://localhost/mydb
postgresql://user@localhost
postgresql://user:secret@localhost
postgresql://other@localhost/otherdb?
connect_timeout=10&application_name=myapp
postgresql://host1:123,host2:456/somedb?
target_session_attrs=any&application_name=myapp
```

Values that would normally appear in the hierarchical part of the URI can alternatively be given as named parameters. For example:

```
postgresql:///mydb?host=localhost&port=5433
```

All named parameters must match key words listed in Section 34.1.2, except that for compatibility with JDBC connection URIs, instances of `ssl=true` are translated into `sslmode=require`.

The connection URI needs to be encoded with percent-encoding<sup>2</sup> if it includes symbols with special meaning in any of its parts. Here is an example where the equal sign (=) is replaced with %3D and the space character with %20:

```
postgresql://user@localhost:5433/mydb?options=-c
%20synchronous_commit%3Doff
```

---

<sup>2</sup> <https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3986#section-2.1>

The host part may be either a host name or an IP address. To specify an IPv6 address, enclose it in square brackets:

```
postgresql://[2001:db8::1234]/database
```

The host part is interpreted as described for the parameter `host`. In particular, a Unix-domain socket connection is chosen if the host part is either empty or looks like an absolute path name, otherwise a TCP/IP connection is initiated. Note, however, that the slash is a reserved character in the hierarchical part of the URI. So, to specify a non-standard Unix-domain socket directory, either omit the host part of the URI and specify the host as a named parameter, or percent-encode the path in the host part of the URI:

```
postgresql:///dbname?host=/var/lib/postgresql
postgresql://%2Fvar%2Flib%2Fpostgresql/dbname
```

It is possible to specify multiple host components, each with an optional port component, in a single URI. A URI of the form `postgresql://host1:port1,host2:port2,host3:port3/` is equivalent to a connection string of the form `host=host1,host2,host3 port=port1,port2,port3`. As further described below, each host will be tried in turn until a connection is successfully established.

### 34.1.1.3. Specifying Multiple Hosts

It is possible to specify multiple hosts to connect to, so that they are tried in the given order. In the Keyword/Value format, the `host`, `hostaddr`, and `port` options accept comma-separated lists of values. The same number of elements must be given in each option that is specified, such that e.g., the first `hostaddr` corresponds to the first host name, the second `hostaddr` corresponds to the second host name, and so forth. As an exception, if only one `port` is specified, it applies to all the hosts.

In the connection URI format, you can list multiple `host:port` pairs separated by commas in the `host` component of the URI.

In either format, a single host name can translate to multiple network addresses. A common example of this is a host that has both an IPv4 and an IPv6 address.

When multiple hosts are specified, or when a single host name is translated to multiple addresses, all the hosts and addresses will be tried in order, until one succeeds. If none of the hosts can be reached, the connection fails. If a connection is established successfully, but authentication fails, the remaining hosts in the list are not tried.

If a password file is used, you can have different passwords for different hosts. All the other connection options are the same for every host in the list; it is not possible to e.g., specify different usernames for different hosts.

## 34.1.2. Parameter Key Words

The currently recognized parameter key words are:

`host`

Name of host to connect to. If a host name looks like an absolute path name, it specifies Unix-domain communication rather than TCP/IP communication; the value is the name of the directory in which the socket file is stored. (On Unix, an absolute path name begins with a slash. On Windows, paths starting with drive letters are also recognized.) If the host name starts with `@`, it is taken as a Unix-domain socket in the abstract namespace (currently supported on Linux and Windows). The default behavior when `host` is not specified, or is empty, is to connect to a Unix-

domain socket in `/tmp` (or whatever socket directory was specified when PostgreSQL was built). On Windows, the default is to connect to `localhost`.

A comma-separated list of host names is also accepted, in which case each host name in the list is tried in order; an empty item in the list selects the default behavior as explained above. See Section 34.1.1.3 for details.

#### `hostaddr`

Numeric IP address of host to connect to. This should be in the standard IPv4 address format, e.g., `172.28.40.9`. If your machine supports IPv6, you can also use those addresses. TCP/IP communication is always used when a nonempty string is specified for this parameter. If this parameter is not specified, the value of `host` will be looked up to find the corresponding IP address — or, if `host` specifies an IP address, that value will be used directly.

Using `hostaddr` allows the application to avoid a host name look-up, which might be important in applications with time constraints. However, a host name is required for GSSAPI or SSPI authentication methods, as well as for `verify-full` SSL certificate verification. The following rules are used:

- If `host` is specified without `hostaddr`, a host name lookup occurs. (When using `PQconnectPoll`, the lookup occurs when `PQconnectPoll` first considers this host name, and it may cause `PQconnectPoll` to block for a significant amount of time.)
- If `hostaddr` is specified without `host`, the value for `hostaddr` gives the server network address. The connection attempt will fail if the authentication method requires a host name.
- If both `host` and `hostaddr` are specified, the value for `hostaddr` gives the server network address. The value for `host` is ignored unless the authentication method requires it, in which case it will be used as the host name.

Note that authentication is likely to fail if `host` is not the name of the server at network address `hostaddr`. Also, when both `host` and `hostaddr` are specified, `host` is used to identify the connection in a password file (see Section 34.16).

A comma-separated list of `hostaddr` values is also accepted, in which case each host in the list is tried in order. An empty item in the list causes the corresponding host name to be used, or the default host name if that is empty as well. See Section 34.1.1.3 for details.

Without either a host name or host address, libpq will connect using a local Unix-domain socket; or on Windows, it will attempt to connect to `localhost`.

#### `port`

Port number to connect to at the server host, or socket file name extension for Unix-domain connections. If multiple hosts were given in the `host` or `hostaddr` parameters, this parameter may specify a comma-separated list of ports of the same length as the host list, or it may specify a single port number to be used for all hosts. An empty string, or an empty item in a comma-separated list, specifies the default port number established when PostgreSQL was built.

#### `dbname`

The database name. Defaults to be the same as the user name. In certain contexts, the value is checked for extended formats; see Section 34.1.1 for more details on those.

#### `user`

PostgreSQL user name to connect as. Defaults to be the same as the operating system name of the user running the application.

#### `password`

Password to be used if the server demands password authentication.

**passfile**

Specifies the name of the file used to store passwords (see Section 34.16). Defaults to `~/ .pg-pass`, or `%APPDATA%\postgresql\pgpass.conf` on Microsoft Windows. (No error is reported if this file does not exist.)

**require\_auth**

Specifies the authentication method that the client requires from the server. If the server does not use the required method to authenticate the client, or if the authentication handshake is not fully completed by the server, the connection will fail. A comma-separated list of methods may also be provided, of which the server must use exactly one in order for the connection to succeed. By default, any authentication method is accepted, and the server is free to skip authentication altogether.

Methods may be negated with the addition of a `!` prefix, in which case the server must *not* attempt the listed method; any other method is accepted, and the server is free not to authenticate the client at all. If a comma-separated list is provided, the server may not attempt *any* of the listed negated methods. Negated and non-negated forms may not be combined in the same setting.

As a final special case, the `none` method requires the server not to use an authentication challenge. (It may also be negated, to require some form of authentication.)

The following methods may be specified:

**password**

The server must request plaintext password authentication.

**md5**

The server must request MD5 hashed password authentication.

**gss**

The server must either request a Kerberos handshake via GSSAPI or establish a GSS-encrypted channel (see also `gssencmode`).

**sspi**

The server must request Windows SSPI authentication.

**scram-sha-256**

The server must successfully complete a SCRAM-SHA-256 authentication exchange with the client.

**none**

The server must not prompt the client for an authentication exchange. (This does not prohibit client certificate authentication via TLS, nor GSS authentication via its encrypted transport.)

**channel\_binding**

This option controls the client's use of channel binding. A setting of `require` means that the connection must employ channel binding, `prefer` means that the client will choose channel binding if available, and `disable` prevents the use of channel binding. The default is `prefer` if PostgreSQL is compiled with SSL support; otherwise the default is `disable`.

Channel binding is a method for the server to authenticate itself to the client. It is only supported over SSL connections with PostgreSQL 11 or later servers using the SCRAM authentication method.

`connect_timeout`

Maximum time to wait while connecting, in seconds (write as a decimal integer, e.g., 10). Zero, negative, or not specified means wait indefinitely. The minimum allowed timeout is 2 seconds, therefore a value of 1 is interpreted as 2. This timeout applies separately to each host name or IP address. For example, if you specify two hosts and `connect_timeout` is 5, each host will time out if no connection is made within 5 seconds, so the total time spent waiting for a connection might be up to 10 seconds.

`client_encoding`

This sets the `client_encoding` configuration parameter for this connection. In addition to the values accepted by the corresponding server option, you can use `auto` to determine the right encoding from the current locale in the client (`LC_CTYPE` environment variable on Unix systems).

`options`

Specifies command-line options to send to the server at connection start. For example, setting this to `-c geqo=off` sets the session's value of the `geqo` parameter to `off`. Spaces within this string are considered to separate command-line arguments, unless escaped with a backslash (`\`); write `\\` to represent a literal backslash. For a detailed discussion of the available options, consult Chapter 20.

`application_name`

Specifies a value for the `application_name` configuration parameter.

`fallback_application_name`

Specifies a fallback value for the `application_name` configuration parameter. This value will be used if no value has been given for `application_name` via a connection parameter or the `PGAPPNAME` environment variable. Specifying a fallback name is useful in generic utility programs that wish to set a default application name but allow it to be overridden by the user.

`keepalives`

Controls whether client-side TCP keepalives are used. The default value is 1, meaning on, but you can change this to 0, meaning off, if keepalives are not wanted. This parameter is ignored for connections made via a Unix-domain socket.

`keepalives_idle`

Controls the number of seconds of inactivity after which TCP should send a keepalive message to the server. A value of zero uses the system default. This parameter is ignored for connections made via a Unix-domain socket, or if keepalives are disabled. It is only supported on systems where `TCP_KEEPIDL` or an equivalent socket option is available, and on Windows; on other systems, it has no effect.

`keepalives_interval`

Controls the number of seconds after which a TCP keepalive message that is not acknowledged by the server should be retransmitted. A value of zero uses the system default. This parameter is ignored for connections made via a Unix-domain socket, or if keepalives are disabled. It is only supported on systems where `TCP_KEEPINTVL` or an equivalent socket option is available, and on Windows; on other systems, it has no effect.

`keepalives_count`

Controls the number of TCP keepalives that can be lost before the client's connection to the server is considered dead. A value of zero uses the system default. This parameter is ignored for connections made via a Unix-domain socket, or if keepalives are disabled. It is only supported on



systems where `TCP_KEEPCNT` or an equivalent socket option is available; on other systems, it has no effect.

#### `tcp_user_timeout`

Controls the number of milliseconds that transmitted data may remain unacknowledged before a connection is forcibly closed. A value of zero uses the system default. This parameter is ignored for connections made via a Unix-domain socket. It is only supported on systems where `TCP_USER_TIMEOUT` is available; on other systems, it has no effect.

#### `replication`

This option determines whether the connection should use the replication protocol instead of the normal protocol. This is what PostgreSQL replication connections as well as tools such as `pg_basebackup` use internally, but it can also be used by third-party applications. For a description of the replication protocol, consult Section 55.4.

The following values, which are case-insensitive, are supported:

`true, on, yes, 1`

The connection goes into physical replication mode.

#### `database`

The connection goes into logical replication mode, connecting to the database specified in the `dbname` parameter.

`false, off, no, 0`

The connection is a regular one, which is the default behavior.

In physical or logical replication mode, only the simple query protocol can be used.

#### `gssencmode`

This option determines whether or with what priority a secure GSS TCP/IP connection will be negotiated with the server. There are three modes:

##### `disable`

only try a non-GSSAPI-encrypted connection

##### `prefer (default)`

if there are GSSAPI credentials present (i.e., in a credentials cache), first try a GSSAPI-encrypted connection; if that fails or there are no credentials, try a non-GSSAPI-encrypted connection. This is the default when PostgreSQL has been compiled with GSSAPI support.

##### `require`

only try a GSSAPI-encrypted connection

`gssencmode` is ignored for Unix domain socket communication. If PostgreSQL is compiled without GSSAPI support, using the `require` option will cause an error, while `prefer` will be accepted but libpq will not actually attempt a GSSAPI-encrypted connection.

#### `sslmode`

This option determines whether or with what priority a secure SSL TCP/IP connection will be negotiated with the server. There are six modes:

`disable`

only try a non-SSL connection

`allow`

first try a non-SSL connection; if that fails, try an SSL connection

`prefer` (default)

first try an SSL connection; if that fails, try a non-SSL connection

`require`

only try an SSL connection. If a root CA file is present, verify the certificate in the same way as if `verify-ca` was specified

`verify-ca`

only try an SSL connection, and verify that the server certificate is issued by a trusted certificate authority (CA)

`verify-full`

only try an SSL connection, verify that the server certificate is issued by a trusted CA and that the requested server host name matches that in the certificate

See Section 34.19 for a detailed description of how these options work.

`sslmode` is ignored for Unix domain socket communication. If PostgreSQL is compiled without SSL support, using options `require`, `verify-ca`, or `verify-full` will cause an error, while options `allow` and `prefer` will be accepted but libpq will not actually attempt an SSL connection.

Note that if GSSAPI encryption is possible, that will be used in preference to SSL encryption, regardless of the value of `sslmode`. To force use of SSL encryption in an environment that has working GSSAPI infrastructure (such as a Kerberos server), also set `gssencmode` to `disable`.

`requiressl`

This option is deprecated in favor of the `sslmode` setting.

If set to 1, an SSL connection to the server is required (this is equivalent to `sslmode require`). libpq will then refuse to connect if the server does not accept an SSL connection. If set to 0 (default), libpq will negotiate the connection type with the server (equivalent to `sslmode prefer`). This option is only available if PostgreSQL is compiled with SSL support.

`sslcompression`

If set to 1, data sent over SSL connections will be compressed. If set to 0, compression will be disabled. The default is 0. This parameter is ignored if a connection without SSL is made.

SSL compression is nowadays considered insecure and its use is no longer recommended. OpenSSL 1.1.0 disables compression by default, and many operating system distributions disable it in prior versions as well, so setting this parameter to on will not have any effect if the server does not accept compression. PostgreSQL 14 disables compression completely in the backend.

If security is not a primary concern, compression can improve throughput if the network is the bottleneck. Disabling compression can improve response time and throughput if CPU performance is the limiting factor.

**sslcert**

This parameter specifies the file name of the client SSL certificate, replacing the default `~/.postgresql/postgresql.crt`. This parameter is ignored if an SSL connection is not made.

**sslkey**

This parameter specifies the location for the secret key used for the client certificate. It can either specify a file name that will be used instead of the default `~/.postgresql/postgresql.key`, or it can specify a key obtained from an external “engine” (engines are OpenSSL loadable modules). An external engine specification should consist of a colon-separated engine name and an engine-specific key identifier. This parameter is ignored if an SSL connection is not made.

**sslpassword**

This parameter specifies the password for the secret key specified in `sslkey`, allowing client certificate private keys to be stored in encrypted form on disk even when interactive passphrase input is not practical.

Specifying this parameter with any non-empty value suppresses the `Enter PEM passphrase:` prompt that OpenSSL will emit by default when an encrypted client certificate key is provided to `libpq`.

If the key is not encrypted this parameter is ignored. The parameter has no effect on keys specified by OpenSSL engines unless the engine uses the OpenSSL password callback mechanism for prompts.

There is no environment variable equivalent to this option, and no facility for looking it up in `.pgpass`. It can be used in a service file connection definition. Users with more sophisticated uses should consider using OpenSSL engines and tools like PKCS#11 or USB crypto offload devices.

**sslcertmode**

This option determines whether a client certificate may be sent to the server, and whether the server is required to request one. There are three modes:

**disable**

A client certificate is never sent, even if one is available (default location or provided via `sslcert`).

**allow (default)**

A certificate may be sent, if the server requests one and the client has one to send.

**require**

The server *must* request a certificate. The connection will fail if the client does not send a certificate and the server successfully authenticates the client anyway.

**Note**

`sslcertmode=require` doesn't add any additional security, since there is no guarantee that the server is validating the certificate correctly; PostgreSQL servers generally request TLS certificates from clients whether they validate them or not. The option may be useful when troubleshooting more complicated TLS setups.

**sslrootcert**

This parameter specifies the name of a file containing SSL certificate authority (CA) certificate(s). If the file exists, the server's certificate will be verified to be signed by one of these authorities. The default is `~/.postgresql/root.crt`.

The special value `system` may be specified instead, in which case the system's trusted CA roots will be loaded. The exact locations of these root certificates differ by SSL implementation and platform. For OpenSSL in particular, the locations may be further modified by the `SSL_CERT_DIR` and `SSL_CERT_FILE` environment variables.

**Note**

When using `sslrootcert=system`, the default `sslmode` is changed to `verify-full`, and any weaker setting will result in an error. In most cases it is trivial for anyone to obtain a certificate trusted by the system for a hostname they control, rendering `verify-ca` and all weaker modes useless.

The magic `system` value will take precedence over a local certificate file with the same name. If for some reason you find yourself in this situation, use an alternative path like `sslrootcert=./system` instead.

**sslcrl**

This parameter specifies the file name of the SSL server certificate revocation list (CRL). Certificates listed in this file, if it exists, will be rejected while attempting to authenticate the server's certificate. If neither `sslcrl` nor `sslcrlidir` is set, this setting is taken as `~/.postgresql/root.crl`.

**sslcrlidir**

This parameter specifies the directory name of the SSL server certificate revocation list (CRL). Certificates listed in the files in this directory, if it exists, will be rejected while attempting to authenticate the server's certificate.

The directory needs to be prepared with the OpenSSL command `openssl rehash` or `c_rehash`. See its documentation for details.

Both `sslcrl` and `sslcrlidir` can be specified together.

**sslsni**

If set to 1 (default), libpq sets the TLS extension “Server Name Indication” (SNI) on SSL-enabled connections. By setting this parameter to 0, this is turned off.

The Server Name Indication can be used by SSL-aware proxies to route connections without having to decrypt the SSL stream. (Note that this requires a proxy that is aware of the PostgreSQL protocol handshake, not just any SSL proxy.) However, SNI makes the destination host name appear in cleartext in the network traffic, so it might be undesirable in some cases.

**requirepeer**

This parameter specifies the operating-system user name of the server, for example `requirepeer=postgres`. When making a Unix-domain socket connection, if this parameter is set, the client checks at the beginning of the connection that the server process is running under the specified user name; if it is not, the connection is aborted with an error. This parameter can be used to provide server authentication similar to that available with SSL certificates on TCP/IP connections. (Note that if the Unix-domain socket is in `/tmp` or another publicly writable

location, any user could start a server listening there. Use this parameter to ensure that you are connected to a server run by a trusted user.) This option is only supported on platforms for which the peer authentication method is implemented; see Section 21.9.

#### `ssl_min_protocol_version`

This parameter specifies the minimum SSL/TLS protocol version to allow for the connection. Valid values are `TLSv1`, `TLSv1.1`, `TLSv1.2` and `TLSv1.3`. The supported protocols depend on the version of OpenSSL used, older versions not supporting the most modern protocol versions. If not specified, the default is `TLSv1.2`, which satisfies industry best practices as of this writing.

#### `ssl_max_protocol_version`

This parameter specifies the maximum SSL/TLS protocol version to allow for the connection. Valid values are `TLSv1`, `TLSv1.1`, `TLSv1.2` and `TLSv1.3`. The supported protocols depend on the version of OpenSSL used, older versions not supporting the most modern protocol versions. If not set, this parameter is ignored and the connection will use the maximum bound defined by the backend, if set. Setting the maximum protocol version is mainly useful for testing or if some component has issues working with a newer protocol.

#### `krbsrvname`

Kerberos service name to use when authenticating with GSSAPI. This must match the service name specified in the server configuration for Kerberos authentication to succeed. (See also Section 21.6.) The default value is normally `postgres`, but that can be changed when building PostgreSQL via the `--with-krb-srvnam` option of `configure`. In most environments, this parameter never needs to be changed. Some Kerberos implementations might require a different service name, such as Microsoft Active Directory which requires the service name to be in upper case (`POSTGRES`).

#### `gsslib`

GSS library to use for GSSAPI authentication. Currently this is disregarded except on Windows builds that include both GSSAPI and SSPI support. In that case, set this to `gssapi` to cause libpq to use the GSSAPI library for authentication instead of the default SSPI.

#### `gssdelegation`

Forward (delegate) GSS credentials to the server. The default is 0 which means credentials will not be forwarded to the server. Set this to 1 to have credentials forwarded when possible.

#### `service`

Service name to use for additional parameters. It specifies a service name in `pg_service.conf` that holds additional connection parameters. This allows applications to specify only a service name so connection parameters can be centrally maintained. See Section 34.17.

#### `target_session_attrs`

This option determines whether the session must have certain properties to be acceptable. It's typically used in combination with multiple host names to select the first acceptable alternative among several hosts. There are six modes:

`any` (default)

any successful connection is acceptable

`read-write`

session must accept read-write transactions by default (that is, the server must not be in hot standby mode and the `default_transaction_read_only` parameter must be off)

`read-only`

session must not accept read-write transactions by default (the converse)

`primary`

server must not be in hot standby mode

`standby`

server must be in hot standby mode

`prefer-standby`

first try to find a standby server, but if none of the listed hosts is a standby server, try again in any mode

`load_balance_hosts`

Controls the order in which the client tries to connect to the available hosts and addresses. Once a connection attempt is successful no other hosts and addresses will be tried. This parameter is typically used in combination with multiple host names or a DNS record that returns multiple IPs. This parameter can be used in combination with `target_session_attrs` to, for example, load balance over standby servers only. Once successfully connected, subsequent queries on the returned connection will all be sent to the same server. There are currently two modes:

`disable` (default)

No load balancing across hosts is performed. Hosts are tried in the order in which they are provided and addresses are tried in the order they are received from DNS or a hosts file.

`random`

Hosts and addresses are tried in random order. This value is mostly useful when opening multiple connections at the same time, possibly from different machines. This way connections can be load balanced across multiple PostgreSQL servers.

While random load balancing, due to its random nature, will almost never result in a completely uniform distribution, it statistically gets quite close. One important aspect here is that this algorithm uses two levels of random choices: First the hosts will be resolved in random order. Then secondly, before resolving the next host, all resolved addresses for the current host will be tried in random order. This behaviour can skew the amount of connections each node gets greatly in certain cases, for instance when some hosts resolve to more addresses than others. But such a skew can also be used on purpose, e.g. to increase the number of connections a larger server gets by providing its hostname multiple times in the host string.

When using this value it's recommended to also configure a reasonable value for `connect_timeout`. Because then, if one of the nodes that are used for load balancing is not responding, a new node will be tried.

## 34.2. Connection Status Functions

These functions can be used to interrogate the status of an existing database connection object.

### Tip

libpq application programmers should be careful to maintain the `PGconn` abstraction. Use the accessor functions described below to get at the contents of `PGconn`. Reference to internal

PGconn fields using `libpq-int.h` is not recommended because they are subject to change in the future.

The following functions return parameter values established at connection. These values are fixed for the life of the connection. If a multi-host connection string is used, the values of `PQhost`, `PQport`, and `PQpass` can change if a new connection is established using the same `PGconn` object. Other values are fixed for the lifetime of the `PGconn` object.

#### `PQdb`

Returns the database name of the connection.

```
char *PQdb(const PGconn *conn);
```

#### `PQuser`

Returns the user name of the connection.

```
char *PQuser(const PGconn *conn);
```

#### `PQpass`

Returns the password of the connection.

```
char *PQpass(const PGconn *conn);
```

`PQpass` will return either the password specified in the connection parameters, or if there was none and the password was obtained from the password file, it will return that. In the latter case, if multiple hosts were specified in the connection parameters, it is not possible to rely on the result of `PQpass` until the connection is established. The status of the connection can be checked using the function `PQstatus`.

#### `PQhost`

Returns the server host name of the active connection. This can be a host name, an IP address, or a directory path if the connection is via Unix socket. (The path case can be distinguished because it will always be an absolute path, beginning with `/.`)

```
char *PQhost(const PGconn *conn);
```

If the connection parameters specified both `host` and `hostaddr`, then `PQhost` will return the host information. If only `hostaddr` was specified, then that is returned. If multiple hosts were specified in the connection parameters, `PQhost` returns the host actually connected to.

`PQhost` returns `NULL` if the `conn` argument is `NULL`. Otherwise, if there is an error producing the host information (perhaps if the connection has not been fully established or there was an error), it returns an empty string.

If multiple hosts were specified in the connection parameters, it is not possible to rely on the result of `PQhost` until the connection is established. The status of the connection can be checked using the function `PQstatus`.

#### `PQhostaddr`

Returns the server IP address of the active connection. This can be the address that a host name resolved to, or an IP address provided through the `hostaddr` parameter.

```
char *PQhostaddr(const PGconn *conn);
```

`PQhostaddr` returns `NULL` if the `conn` argument is `NULL`. Otherwise, if there is an error producing the host information (perhaps if the connection has not been fully established or there was an error), it returns an empty string.

#### `PQport`

Returns the port of the active connection.

```
char *PQport(const PGconn *conn);
```

If multiple ports were specified in the connection parameters, `PQport` returns the port actually connected to.

`PQport` returns `NULL` if the `conn` argument is `NULL`. Otherwise, if there is an error producing the port information (perhaps if the connection has not been fully established or there was an error), it returns an empty string.

If multiple ports were specified in the connection parameters, it is not possible to rely on the result of `PQport` until the connection is established. The status of the connection can be checked using the function `PQstatus`.

#### `PQtty`

This function no longer does anything, but it remains for backwards compatibility. The function always return an empty string, or `NULL` if the `conn` argument is `NULL`.

```
char *PQtty(const PGconn *conn);
```

#### `PQoptions`

Returns the command-line options passed in the connection request.

```
char *PQoptions(const PGconn *conn);
```

The following functions return status data that can change as operations are executed on the `PGconn` object.

#### `PQstatus`

Returns the status of the connection.

```
ConnStatusType PQstatus(const PGconn *conn);
```

The status can be one of a number of values. However, only two of these are seen outside of an asynchronous connection procedure: `CONNECTION_OK` and `CONNECTION_BAD`. A good connection to the database has the status `CONNECTION_OK`. A failed connection attempt is signaled by status `CONNECTION_BAD`. Ordinarily, an OK status will remain so until `PQfinish`, but a communications failure might result in the status changing to `CONNECTION_BAD` prematurely. In that case the application could try to recover by calling `PQreset`.

See the entry for `PQconnectStartParams`, `PQconnectStart` and `PQconnectPoll` with regards to other status codes that might be returned.

#### `PQtransactionStatus`

Returns the current in-transaction status of the server.



```
PGTransactionStatusType PQtransactionStatus(const PGconn *conn);
```

The status can be `PQTRANS_IDLE` (currently idle), `PQTRANS_ACTIVE` (a command is in progress), `PQTRANS_INTRANS` (idle, in a valid transaction block), or `PQTRANS_INERROR` (idle, in a failed transaction block). `PQTRANS_UNKNOWN` is reported if the connection is bad. `PQTRANS_ACTIVE` is reported only when a query has been sent to the server and not yet completed.

#### `PQparameterStatus`

Looks up a current parameter setting of the server.

```
const char *PQparameterStatus(const PGconn *conn, const char
                               *paramName);
```

Certain parameter values are reported by the server automatically at connection startup or whenever their values change. `PQparameterStatus` can be used to interrogate these settings. It returns the current value of a parameter if known, or `NULL` if the parameter is not known.

Parameters reported as of the current release include `server_version`, `server_encoding`, `client_encoding`, `application_name`, `default_transaction_read_only`, `in_hot_standby`, `is_superuser`, `session_authorization`, `DateStyle`, `IntervalStyle`, `TimeZone`, `integer_datetimes`, and `standard_conforming_strings`. (`server_encoding`, `TimeZone`, and `integer_datetimes` were not reported by releases before 8.0; `standard_conforming_strings` was not reported by releases before 8.1; `IntervalStyle` was not reported by releases before 8.4; `application_name` was not reported by releases before 9.0; `default_transaction_read_only` and `in_hot_standby` were not reported by releases before 14.) Note that `server_version`, `server_encoding` and `integer_datetimes` cannot change after startup.

If no value for `standard_conforming_strings` is reported, applications can assume it is off, that is, backslashes are treated as escapes in string literals. Also, the presence of this parameter can be taken as an indication that the escape string syntax (`E ' . . . '`) is accepted.

Although the returned pointer is declared `const`, it in fact points to mutable storage associated with the `PGconn` structure. It is unwise to assume the pointer will remain valid across queries.

#### `PQprotocolVersion`

Interrogates the frontend/backend protocol being used.

```
int PQprotocolVersion(const PGconn *conn);
```

Applications might wish to use this function to determine whether certain features are supported. Currently, the possible values are 3 (3.0 protocol), or zero (connection bad). The protocol version will not change after connection startup is complete, but it could theoretically change during a connection reset. The 3.0 protocol is supported by PostgreSQL server versions 7.4 and above.

#### `PQserverVersion`

Returns an integer representing the server version.

```
int PQserverVersion(const PGconn *conn);
```

Applications might use this function to determine the version of the database server they are connected to. The result is formed by multiplying the server's major version number by 10000

and adding the minor version number. For example, version 10.1 will be returned as 100001, and version 11.0 will be returned as 110000. Zero is returned if the connection is bad.

Prior to major version 10, PostgreSQL used three-part version numbers in which the first two parts together represented the major version. For those versions, `PQserverVersion` uses two digits for each part; for example version 9.1.5 will be returned as 90105, and version 9.2.0 will be returned as 90200.

Therefore, for purposes of determining feature compatibility, applications should divide the result of `PQserverVersion` by 100 not 10000 to determine a logical major version number. In all release series, only the last two digits differ between minor releases (bug-fix releases).

#### `PQerrorMessage`

Returns the error message most recently generated by an operation on the connection.

```
char *PQerrorMessage(const PGconn *conn);
```

Nearly all libpq functions will set a message for `PQerrorMessage` if they fail. Note that by libpq convention, a nonempty `PQerrorMessage` result can consist of multiple lines, and will include a trailing newline. The caller should not free the result directly. It will be freed when the associated `PGconn` handle is passed to `PQfinish`. The result string should not be expected to remain the same across operations on the `PGconn` structure.

#### `PQsocket`

Obtains the file descriptor number of the connection socket to the server. A valid descriptor will be greater than or equal to 0; a result of -1 indicates that no server connection is currently open. (This will not change during normal operation, but could change during connection setup or reset.)

```
int PQsocket(const PGconn *conn);
```

#### `PQbackendPID`

Returns the process ID (PID) of the backend process handling this connection.

```
int PQbackendPID(const PGconn *conn);
```

The backend PID is useful for debugging purposes and for comparison to NOTIFY messages (which include the PID of the notifying backend process). Note that the PID belongs to a process executing on the database server host, not the local host!

#### `PQconnectionNeedsPassword`

Returns true (1) if the connection authentication method required a password, but none was available. Returns false (0) if not.

```
int PQconnectionNeedsPassword(const PGconn *conn);
```

This function can be applied after a failed connection attempt to decide whether to prompt the user for a password.

#### `PQconnectionUsedPassword`

Returns true (1) if the connection authentication method used a password. Returns false (0) if not.

```
int PQconnectionUsedPassword(const PGconn *conn);
```

This function can be applied after either a failed or successful connection attempt to detect whether the server demanded a password.

PQconnectionUsedGSSAPI

Returns true (1) if the connection authentication method used GSSAPI. Returns false (0) if not.

```
int PQconnectionUsedGSSAPI(const PGconn *conn);
```

This function can be applied to detect whether the connection was authenticated with GSSAPI.

The following functions return information related to SSL. This information usually doesn't change after a connection is established.

PQsslInUse

Returns true (1) if the connection uses SSL, false (0) if not.

```
int PQsslInUse(const PGconn *conn);
```

PQsslAttribute

Returns SSL-related information about the connection.

```
const char *PQsslAttribute(const PGconn *conn, const char
    *attribute_name);
```

The list of available attributes varies depending on the SSL library being used and the type of connection. Returns NULL if the connection does not use SSL or the specified attribute name is not defined for the library in use.

The following attributes are commonly available:

library

Name of the SSL implementation in use. (Currently, only "OpenSSL" is implemented)

protocol

SSL/TLS version in use. Common values are "TLSv1", "TLSv1.1" and "TLSv1.2", but an implementation may return other strings if some other protocol is used.

key\_bits

Number of key bits used by the encryption algorithm.

cipher

A short name of the ciphersuite used, e.g., "DHE-RSA-DES-CBC3-SHA". The names are specific to each SSL implementation.

compression

Returns "on" if SSL compression is in use, else it returns "off".

As a special case, the library attribute may be queried without a connection by passing NULL as the conn argument. The result will be the default SSL library name, or NULL if libpq was

compiled without any SSL support. (Prior to PostgreSQL version 15, passing NULL as the `conn` argument always resulted in NULL. Client programs needing to differentiate between the newer and older implementations of this case may check the `LIBPQ_HAS_SSL_LIBRARY_DETECTION` feature macro.)

#### PQsslAttributeNames

Returns an array of SSL attribute names that can be used in `PQsslAttribute()`. The array is terminated by a NULL pointer.

```
const char * const * PQsslAttributeNames(const PGconn *conn);
```

If `conn` is NULL, the attributes available for the default SSL library are returned, or an empty list if libpq was compiled without any SSL support. If `conn` is not NULL, the attributes available for the SSL library in use for the connection are returned, or an empty list if the connection is not encrypted.

#### PQsslStruct

Returns a pointer to an SSL-implementation-specific object describing the connection. Returns NULL if the connection is not encrypted or the requested type of object is not available from the connection's SSL implementation.

```
void *PQsslStruct(const PGconn *conn, const char *struct_name);
```

The struct(s) available depend on the SSL implementation in use. For OpenSSL, there is one struct, available under the name `OpenSSL`, and it returns a pointer to OpenSSL's SSL struct. To use this function, code along the following lines could be used:

```
#include <libpq-fe.h>
#include <openssl/ssl.h>

...

SSL *ssl;

dbconn = PQconnectdb(...);
...

ssl = PQsslStruct(dbconn, "OpenSSL");
if (ssl)
{
    /* use OpenSSL functions to access ssl */
}
```

This structure can be used to verify encryption levels, check server certificates, and more. Refer to the OpenSSL documentation for information about this structure.

#### PQgetssl

Returns the SSL structure used in the connection, or NULL if SSL is not in use.

```
void *PQgetssl(const PGconn *conn);
```

This function is equivalent to `PQsslStruct(conn, "OpenSSL")`. It should not be used in new applications, because the returned struct is specific to OpenSSL and will not be available

if another SSL implementation is used. To check if a connection uses SSL, call `PQsslInUse` instead, and for more details about the connection, use `PQsslAttribute`.

## 34.3. Command Execution Functions

Once a connection to a database server has been successfully established, the functions described here are used to perform SQL queries and commands.

### 34.3.1. Main Functions

#### `PQexec`

Submits a command to the server and waits for the result.

```
PGresult *PQexec(PGconn *conn, const char *command);
```

Returns a `PGresult` pointer or possibly a null pointer. A non-null pointer will generally be returned except in out-of-memory conditions or serious errors such as inability to send the command to the server. The `PQresultStatus` function should be called to check the return value for any errors (including the value of a null pointer, in which case it will return `PGRES_FATAL_ERROR`). Use `PQerrorMessage` to get more information about such errors.

The command string can include multiple SQL commands (separated by semicolons). Multiple queries sent in a single `PQexec` call are processed in a single transaction, unless there are explicit `BEGIN/COMMIT` commands included in the query string to divide it into multiple transactions. (See Section 55.2.2.1 for more details about how the server handles multi-query strings.) Note however that the returned `PGresult` structure describes only the result of the last command executed from the string. Should one of the commands fail, processing of the string stops with it and the returned `PGresult` describes the error condition.

#### `PQexecParams`

Submits a command to the server and waits for the result, with the ability to pass parameters separately from the SQL command text.

```
PGresult *PQexecParams(PGconn *conn,
                        const char *command,
                        int nParams,
                        const Oid *paramTypes,
                        const char * const *paramValues,
                        const int *paramLengths,
                        const int *paramFormats,
                        int resultFormat);
```

`PQexecParams` is like `PQexec`, but offers additional functionality: parameter values can be specified separately from the command string proper, and query results can be requested in either text or binary format.

The function arguments are:

*conn*

The connection object to send the command through.

*command*

The SQL command string to be executed. If parameters are used, they are referred to in the command string as `$1`, `$2`, etc.

*nParams*

The number of parameters supplied; it is the length of the arrays *paramTypes[]*, *paramValues[]*, *paramLengths[]*, and *paramFormats[]*. (The array pointers can be NULL when *nParams* is zero.)

*paramTypes[]*

Specifies, by OID, the data types to be assigned to the parameter symbols. If *paramTypes* is NULL, or any particular element in the array is zero, the server infers a data type for the parameter symbol in the same way it would do for an untyped literal string.

*paramValues[]*

Specifies the actual values of the parameters. A null pointer in this array means the corresponding parameter is null; otherwise the pointer points to a zero-terminated text string (for text format) or binary data in the format expected by the server (for binary format).

*paramLengths[]*

Specifies the actual data lengths of binary-format parameters. It is ignored for null parameters and text-format parameters. The array pointer can be null when there are no binary parameters.

*paramFormats[]*

Specifies whether parameters are text (put a zero in the array entry for the corresponding parameter) or binary (put a one in the array entry for the corresponding parameter). If the array pointer is null then all parameters are presumed to be text strings.

Values passed in binary format require knowledge of the internal representation expected by the backend. For example, integers must be passed in network byte order. Passing numeric values requires knowledge of the server storage format, as implemented in `src/backend/utils/adt/numeric.c::numeric_send()` and `src/backend/utils/adt/numeric.c::numeric_recv()`.

*resultFormat*

Specify zero to obtain results in text format, or one to obtain results in binary format. (There is not currently a provision to obtain different result columns in different formats, although that is possible in the underlying protocol.)

The primary advantage of `PQexecParams` over `PQexec` is that parameter values can be separated from the command string, thus avoiding the need for tedious and error-prone quoting and escaping.

Unlike `PQexec`, `PQexecParams` allows at most one SQL command in the given string. (There can be semicolons in it, but not more than one nonempty command.) This is a limitation of the underlying protocol, but has some usefulness as an extra defense against SQL-injection attacks.

### Tip

Specifying parameter types via OIDs is tedious, particularly if you prefer not to hard-wire particular OID values into your program. However, you can avoid doing so even in cases where the server by itself cannot determine the type of the parameter, or chooses a different type than you want. In the SQL command text, attach an explicit cast to the parameter symbol to show what data type you will send. For example:

```
SELECT * FROM mytable WHERE x = $1::bigint;
```

This forces parameter \$1 to be treated as `bigint`, whereas by default it would be assigned the same type as `x`. Forcing the parameter type decision, either this way or by specifying a numeric type OID, is strongly recommended when sending parameter values in binary format, because binary format has less redundancy than text format and so there is less chance that the server will detect a type mismatch mistake for you.

### PQprepare

Submits a request to create a prepared statement with the given parameters, and waits for completion.

```
PGresult *PQprepare(PGconn *conn,
                    const char *stmtName,
                    const char *query,
                    int nParams,
                    const Oid *paramTypes);
```

`PQprepare` creates a prepared statement for later execution with `PQexecPrepared`. This feature allows commands to be executed repeatedly without being parsed and planned each time; see `PREPARE` for details.

The function creates a prepared statement named *stmtName* from the *query* string, which must contain a single SQL command. *stmtName* can be `"` to create an unnamed statement, in which case any pre-existing unnamed statement is automatically replaced; otherwise it is an error if the statement name is already defined in the current session. If any parameters are used, they are referred to in the query as \$1, \$2, etc. *nParams* is the number of parameters for which types are pre-specified in the array *paramTypes[]*. (The array pointer can be `NULL` when *nParams* is zero.) *paramTypes[]* specifies, by OID, the data types to be assigned to the parameter symbols. If *paramTypes* is `NULL`, or any particular element in the array is zero, the server assigns a data type to the parameter symbol in the same way it would do for an untyped literal string. Also, the query can use parameter symbols with numbers higher than *nParams*; data types will be inferred for these symbols as well. (See `PQdescribePrepared` for a means to find out what data types were inferred.)

As with `PQexec`, the result is normally a `PGresult` object whose contents indicate server-side success or failure. A null result indicates out-of-memory or inability to send the command at all. Use `PQerrorMessage` to get more information about such errors.

Prepared statements for use with `PQexecPrepared` can also be created by executing SQL `PREPARE` statements. Also, although there is no libpq function for deleting a prepared statement, the SQL `DEALLOCATE` statement can be used for that purpose.

### PQexecPrepared

Sends a request to execute a prepared statement with given parameters, and waits for the result.

```
PGresult *PQexecPrepared(PGconn *conn,
                          const char *stmtName,
                          int nParams,
                          const char * const *paramValues,
                          const int *paramLengths,
                          const int *paramFormats,
                          int resultFormat);
```

`PQexecPrepared` is like `PQexecParams`, but the command to be executed is specified by naming a previously-prepared statement, instead of giving a query string. This feature allows

commands that will be used repeatedly to be parsed and planned just once, rather than each time they are executed. The statement must have been prepared previously in the current session.

The parameters are identical to `PQexecParams`, except that the name of a prepared statement is given instead of a query string, and the `paramTypes[]` parameter is not present (it is not needed since the prepared statement's parameter types were determined when it was created).

### `PQdescribePrepared`

Submits a request to obtain information about the specified prepared statement, and waits for completion.

```
PGresult *PQdescribePrepared(PGconn *conn, const char
                             *stmtName);
```

`PQdescribePrepared` allows an application to obtain information about a previously prepared statement.

*stmtName* can be "" or `NULL` to reference the unnamed statement, otherwise it must be the name of an existing prepared statement. On success, a `PGresult` with status `PGRES_COMMAND_OK` is returned. The functions `PQnparams` and `PQparamtype` can be applied to this `PGresult` to obtain information about the parameters of the prepared statement, and the functions `PQnfields`, `PQfname`, `PQftype`, etc. provide information about the result columns (if any) of the statement.

### `PQdescribePortal`

Submits a request to obtain information about the specified portal, and waits for completion.

```
PGresult *PQdescribePortal(PGconn *conn, const char
                             *portalName);
```

`PQdescribePortal` allows an application to obtain information about a previously created portal. (libpq does not provide any direct access to portals, but you can use this function to inspect the properties of a cursor created with a `DECLARE CURSOR SQL` command.)

*portalName* can be "" or `NULL` to reference the unnamed portal, otherwise it must be the name of an existing portal. On success, a `PGresult` with status `PGRES_COMMAND_OK` is returned. The functions `PQnfields`, `PQfname`, `PQftype`, etc. can be applied to the `PGresult` to obtain information about the result columns (if any) of the portal.

The `PGresult` structure encapsulates the result returned by the server. libpq application programmers should be careful to maintain the `PGresult` abstraction. Use the accessor functions below to get at the contents of `PGresult`. Avoid directly referencing the fields of the `PGresult` structure because they are subject to change in the future.

### `PQresultStatus`

Returns the result status of the command.

```
ExecStatusType PQresultStatus(const PGresult *res);
```

`PQresultStatus` can return one of the following values:

`PGRES_EMPTY_QUERY`

The string sent to the server was empty.



`PGRES_COMMAND_OK`

Successful completion of a command returning no data.

`PGRES_TUPLES_OK`

Successful completion of a command returning data (such as a `SELECT` or `SHOW`).

`PGRES_COPY_OUT`

Copy Out (from server) data transfer started.

`PGRES_COPY_IN`

Copy In (to server) data transfer started.

`PGRES_BAD_RESPONSE`

The server's response was not understood.

`PGRES_NONFATAL_ERROR`

A nonfatal error (a notice or warning) occurred.

`PGRES_FATAL_ERROR`

A fatal error occurred.

`PGRES_COPY_BOTH`

Copy In/Out (to and from server) data transfer started. This feature is currently used only for streaming replication, so this status should not occur in ordinary applications.

`PGRES_SINGLE_TUPLE`

The `PGresult` contains a single result tuple from the current command. This status occurs only when single-row mode has been selected for the query (see Section 34.6).

`PGRES_PIPELINE_SYNC`

The `PGresult` represents a synchronization point in pipeline mode, requested by `PQpipelineSync`. This status occurs only when pipeline mode has been selected.

`PGRES_PIPELINE_ABORTED`

The `PGresult` represents a pipeline that has received an error from the server. `PQgetResult` must be called repeatedly, and each time it will return this status code until the end of the current pipeline, at which point it will return `PGRES_PIPELINE_SYNC` and normal processing can resume.

If the result status is `PGRES_TUPLES_OK` or `PGRES_SINGLE_TUPLE`, then the functions described below can be used to retrieve the rows returned by the query. Note that a `SELECT` command that happens to retrieve zero rows still shows `PGRES_TUPLES_OK`. `PGRES_COMMAND_OK` is for commands that can never return rows (`INSERT` or `UPDATE` without a `RETURNING` clause, etc.). A response of `PGRES_EMPTY_QUERY` might indicate a bug in the client software.

A result of status `PGRES_NONFATAL_ERROR` will never be returned directly by `PQexec` or other query execution functions; results of this kind are instead passed to the notice processor (see Section 34.13).

**PQresStatus**

Converts the enumerated type returned by `PQresultStatus` into a string constant describing the status code. The caller should not free the result.

```
char *PQresStatus(ExecStatusType status);
```

**PQresultErrorMessage**

Returns the error message associated with the command, or an empty string if there was no error.

```
char *PQresultErrorMessage(const PGresult *res);
```

If there was an error, the returned string will include a trailing newline. The caller should not free the result directly. It will be freed when the associated `PGresult` handle is passed to `PQclear`.

Immediately following a `PQexec` or `PQgetResult` call, `PQerrorMessage` (on the connection) will return the same string as `PQresultErrorMessage` (on the result). However, a `PGresult` will retain its error message until destroyed, whereas the connection's error message will change when subsequent operations are done. Use `PQresultErrorMessage` when you want to know the status associated with a particular `PGresult`; use `PQerrorMessage` when you want to know the status from the latest operation on the connection.

**PQresultVerboseErrorMessage**

Returns a reformatted version of the error message associated with a `PGresult` object.

```
char *PQresultVerboseErrorMessage(const PGresult *res,
                                  PGVerbosity verbosity,
                                  PGContextVisibility
                                  show_context);
```

In some situations a client might wish to obtain a more detailed version of a previously-reported error. `PQresultVerboseErrorMessage` addresses this need by computing the message that would have been produced by `PQresultErrorMessage` if the specified verbosity settings had been in effect for the connection when the given `PGresult` was generated. If the `PGresult` is not an error result, “PGresult is not an error result” is reported instead. The returned string includes a trailing newline.

Unlike most other functions for extracting data from a `PGresult`, the result of this function is a freshly allocated string. The caller must free it using `PQfreemem()` when the string is no longer needed.

A NULL return is possible if there is insufficient memory.

**PQresultErrorField**

Returns an individual field of an error report.

```
char *PQresultErrorField(const PGresult *res, int fieldcode);
```

*fieldcode* is an error field identifier; see the symbols listed below. NULL is returned if the `PGresult` is not an error or warning result, or does not include the specified field. Field values will normally not include a trailing newline. The caller should not free the result directly. It will be freed when the associated `PGresult` handle is passed to `PQclear`.

The following field codes are available:

**PG\_DIAG\_SEVERITY**

The severity; the field contents are ERROR, FATAL, or PANIC (in an error message), or WARNING, NOTICE, DEBUG, INFO, or LOG (in a notice message), or a localized translation of one of these. Always present.

**PG\_DIAG\_SEVERITY\_NONLOCALIZED**

The severity; the field contents are ERROR, FATAL, or PANIC (in an error message), or WARNING, NOTICE, DEBUG, INFO, or LOG (in a notice message). This is identical to the PG\_DIAG\_SEVERITY field except that the contents are never localized. This is present only in reports generated by PostgreSQL versions 9.6 and later.

**PG\_DIAG\_SQLSTATE**

The SQLSTATE code for the error. The SQLSTATE code identifies the type of error that has occurred; it can be used by front-end applications to perform specific operations (such as error handling) in response to a particular database error. For a list of the possible SQLSTATE codes, see Appendix A. This field is not localizable, and is always present.

**PG\_DIAG\_MESSAGE\_PRIMARY**

The primary human-readable error message (typically one line). Always present.

**PG\_DIAG\_MESSAGE\_DETAIL**

Detail: an optional secondary error message carrying more detail about the problem. Might run to multiple lines.

**PG\_DIAG\_MESSAGE\_HINT**

Hint: an optional suggestion what to do about the problem. This is intended to differ from detail in that it offers advice (potentially inappropriate) rather than hard facts. Might run to multiple lines.

**PG\_DIAG\_STATEMENT\_POSITION**

A string containing a decimal integer indicating an error cursor position as an index into the original statement string. The first character has index 1, and positions are measured in characters not bytes.

**PG\_DIAG\_INTERNAL\_POSITION**

This is defined the same as the PG\_DIAG\_STATEMENT\_POSITION field, but it is used when the cursor position refers to an internally generated command rather than the one submitted by the client. The PG\_DIAG\_INTERNAL\_QUERY field will always appear when this field appears.

**PG\_DIAG\_INTERNAL\_QUERY**

The text of a failed internally-generated command. This could be, for example, an SQL query issued by a PL/pgSQL function.

**PG\_DIAG\_CONTEXT**

An indication of the context in which the error occurred. Presently this includes a call stack traceback of active procedural language functions and internally-generated queries. The trace is one entry per line, most recent first.

**PG\_DIAG\_SCHEMA\_NAME**

If the error was associated with a specific database object, the name of the schema containing that object, if any.

PG\_DIAG\_TABLE\_NAME

If the error was associated with a specific table, the name of the table. (Refer to the schema name field for the name of the table's schema.)

PG\_DIAG\_COLUMN\_NAME

If the error was associated with a specific table column, the name of the column. (Refer to the schema and table name fields to identify the table.)

PG\_DIAG\_DATATYPE\_NAME

If the error was associated with a specific data type, the name of the data type. (Refer to the schema name field for the name of the data type's schema.)

PG\_DIAG\_CONSTRAINT\_NAME

If the error was associated with a specific constraint, the name of the constraint. Refer to fields listed above for the associated table or domain. (For this purpose, indexes are treated as constraints, even if they weren't created with constraint syntax.)

PG\_DIAG\_SOURCE\_FILE

The file name of the source-code location where the error was reported.

PG\_DIAG\_SOURCE\_LINE

The line number of the source-code location where the error was reported.

PG\_DIAG\_SOURCE\_FUNCTION

The name of the source-code function reporting the error.

### Note

The fields for schema name, table name, column name, data type name, and constraint name are supplied only for a limited number of error types; see Appendix A. Do not assume that the presence of any of these fields guarantees the presence of another field. Core error sources observe the interrelationships noted above, but user-defined functions may use these fields in other ways. In the same vein, do not assume that these fields denote contemporary objects in the current database.

The client is responsible for formatting displayed information to meet its needs; in particular it should break long lines as needed. Newline characters appearing in the error message fields should be treated as paragraph breaks, not line breaks.

Errors generated internally by libpq will have severity and primary message, but typically no other fields.

Note that error fields are only available from `PGresult` objects, not `PGconn` objects; there is no `PQerrorMessage` function.

`PQclear`

Frees the storage associated with a `PGresult`. Every command result should be freed via `PQclear` when it is no longer needed.

```
void PQclear(PGresult *res);
```

If the argument is a `NULL` pointer, no operation is performed.

You can keep a `PGresult` object around for as long as you need it; it does not go away when you issue a new command, nor even if you close the connection. To get rid of it, you must call `PQclear`. Failure to do this will result in memory leaks in your application.

### 34.3.2. Retrieving Query Result Information

These functions are used to extract information from a `PGresult` object that represents a successful query result (that is, one that has status `PGRES_TUPLES_OK` or `PGRES_SINGLE_TUPLE`). They can also be used to extract information from a successful Describe operation: a Describe's result has all the same column information that actual execution of the query would provide, but it has zero rows. For objects with other status values, these functions will act as though the result has zero rows and zero columns.

#### `PQntuples`

Returns the number of rows (tuples) in the query result. (Note that `PGresult` objects are limited to no more than `INT_MAX` rows, so an `int` result is sufficient.)

```
int PQntuples(const PGresult *res);
```

#### `PQnfields`

Returns the number of columns (fields) in each row of the query result.

```
int PQnfields(const PGresult *res);
```

#### `PQfname`

Returns the column name associated with the given column number. Column numbers start at 0. The caller should not free the result directly. It will be freed when the associated `PGresult` handle is passed to `PQclear`.

```
char *PQfname(const PGresult *res,
               int column_number);
```

NULL is returned if the column number is out of range.

#### `PQfnumber`

Returns the column number associated with the given column name.

```
int PQfnumber(const PGresult *res,
               const char *column_name);
```

-1 is returned if the given name does not match any column.

The given name is treated like an identifier in an SQL command, that is, it is downcased unless double-quoted. For example, given a query result generated from the SQL command:

```
SELECT 1 AS FOO, 2 AS "BAR";
```

we would have the results:

<code>PQfname(res, 0)</code>	<code>foo</code>
<code>PQfname(res, 1)</code>	<code>BAR</code>
<code>PQfnumber(res, "FOO")</code>	<code>0</code>

```
PQfnumber(res, "foo")          0
PQfnumber(res, "BAR")         -1
PQfnumber(res, "\"BAR\"")      1
```

### PQftable

Returns the OID of the table from which the given column was fetched. Column numbers start at 0.

```
Oid PQftable(const PGresult *res,
              int column_number);
```

InvalidOid is returned if the column number is out of range, or if the specified column is not a simple reference to a table column. You can query the system table `pg_class` to determine exactly which table is referenced.

The type `Oid` and the constant `InvalidOid` will be defined when you include the libpq header file. They will both be some integer type.

### PQftablecol

Returns the column number (within its table) of the column making up the specified query result column. Query-result column numbers start at 0, but table columns have nonzero numbers.

```
int PQftablecol(const PGresult *res,
                 int column_number);
```

Zero is returned if the column number is out of range, or if the specified column is not a simple reference to a table column.

### PQfformat

Returns the format code indicating the format of the given column. Column numbers start at 0.

```
int PQfformat(const PGresult *res,
               int column_number);
```

Format code zero indicates textual data representation, while format code one indicates binary representation. (Other codes are reserved for future definition.)

### PQftype

Returns the data type associated with the given column number. The integer returned is the internal OID number of the type. Column numbers start at 0.

```
Oid PQftype(const PGresult *res,
             int column_number);
```

You can query the system table `pg_type` to obtain the names and properties of the various data types. The OIDs of the built-in data types are defined in the file `catalog/pg_type_d.h` in the PostgreSQL installation's include directory.

### PQfmod

Returns the type modifier of the column associated with the given column number. Column numbers start at 0.

```
int PQfmod(const PGresult *res,
```

```
int column_number);
```

The interpretation of modifier values is type-specific; they typically indicate precision or size limits. The value -1 is used to indicate “no information available”. Most data types do not use modifiers, in which case the value is always -1.

#### PQfsize

Returns the size in bytes of the column associated with the given column number. Column numbers start at 0.

```
int PQfsize(const PGresult *res,
            int column_number);
```

PQfsize returns the space allocated for this column in a database row, in other words the size of the server's internal representation of the data type. (Accordingly, it is not really very useful to clients.) A negative value indicates the data type is variable-length.

#### PQbinaryTuples

Returns 1 if the PGresult contains binary data and 0 if it contains text data.

```
int PQbinaryTuples(const PGresult *res);
```

This function is deprecated (except for its use in connection with COPY), because it is possible for a single PGresult to contain text data in some columns and binary data in others. PQfformat is preferred. PQbinaryTuples returns 1 only if all columns of the result are binary (format 1).

#### PQgetvalue

Returns a single field value of one row of a PGresult. Row and column numbers start at 0. The caller should not free the result directly. It will be freed when the associated PGresult handle is passed to PQclear.

```
char *PQgetvalue(const PGresult *res,
                 int row_number,
                 int column_number);
```

For data in text format, the value returned by PQgetvalue is a null-terminated character string representation of the field value. For data in binary format, the value is in the binary representation determined by the data type's `typsend` and `typereceive` functions. (The value is actually followed by a zero byte in this case too, but that is not ordinarily useful, since the value is likely to contain embedded nulls.)

An empty string is returned if the field value is null. See `PQgetisnull` to distinguish null values from empty-string values.

The pointer returned by PQgetvalue points to storage that is part of the PGresult structure. One should not modify the data it points to, and one must explicitly copy the data into other storage if it is to be used past the lifetime of the PGresult structure itself.

#### PQgetisnull

Tests a field for a null value. Row and column numbers start at 0.

```
int PQgetisnull(const PGresult *res,
                int row_number,
                int column_number);
```

This function returns 1 if the field is null and 0 if it contains a non-null value. (Note that `PQgetvalue` will return an empty string, not a null pointer, for a null field.)

#### `PQgetlength`

Returns the actual length of a field value in bytes. Row and column numbers start at 0.

```
int PQgetlength(const PGresult *res,
                int row_number,
                int column_number);
```

This is the actual data length for the particular data value, that is, the size of the object pointed to by `PQgetvalue`. For text data format this is the same as `strlen()`. For binary format this is essential information. Note that one should *not* rely on `PQfsize` to obtain the actual data length.

#### `PQnparams`

Returns the number of parameters of a prepared statement.

```
int PQnparams(const PGresult *res);
```

This function is only useful when inspecting the result of `PQdescribePrepared`. For other types of results it will return zero.

#### `PQparamtype`

Returns the data type of the indicated statement parameter. Parameter numbers start at 0.

```
Oid PQparamtype(const PGresult *res, int param_number);
```

This function is only useful when inspecting the result of `PQdescribePrepared`. For other types of results it will return zero.

#### `PQprint`

Prints out all the rows and, optionally, the column names to the specified output stream.

```
void PQprint(FILE *fout,          /* output stream */
             const PGresult *res,
             const PQprintOpt *po);
typedef struct
{
    pqbool  header;      /* print output field headings and row
count */
    pqbool  align;       /* fill align the fields */
    pqbool  standard;    /* old brain dead format */
    pqbool  html3;       /* output HTML tables */
    pqbool  expanded;    /* expand tables */
    pqbool  pager;       /* use pager for output if needed */
    char    *fieldSep;   /* field separator */
    char    *tableOpt;   /* attributes for HTML table element */
    char    *caption;    /* HTML table caption */
    char    **fieldName; /* null-terminated array of replacement
field names */
} PQprintOpt;
```

This function was formerly used by `psql` to print query results, but this is no longer the case. Note that it assumes all the data is in text format.



### 34.3.3. Retrieving Other Result Information

These functions are used to extract other information from `PGresult` objects.

#### `PQcmdStatus`

Returns the command status tag from the SQL command that generated the `PGresult`.

```
char *PQcmdStatus(PGresult *res);
```

Commonly this is just the name of the command, but it might include additional data such as the number of rows processed. The caller should not free the result directly. It will be freed when the associated `PGresult` handle is passed to `PQclear`.

#### `PQcmdTuples`

Returns the number of rows affected by the SQL command.

```
char *PQcmdTuples(PGresult *res);
```

This function returns a string containing the number of rows affected by the SQL statement that generated the `PGresult`. This function can only be used following the execution of a `SELECT`, `CREATE TABLE AS`, `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, `MERGE`, `MOVE`, `FETCH`, or `COPY` statement, or an `EXECUTE` of a prepared query that contains an `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, or `MERGE` statement. If the command that generated the `PGresult` was anything else, `PQcmdTuples` returns an empty string. The caller should not free the return value directly. It will be freed when the associated `PGresult` handle is passed to `PQclear`.

#### `PQoidValue`

Returns the OID of the inserted row, if the SQL command was an `INSERT` that inserted exactly one row into a table that has OIDs, or a `EXECUTE` of a prepared query containing a suitable `INSERT` statement. Otherwise, this function returns `InvalidOid`. This function will also return `InvalidOid` if the table affected by the `INSERT` statement does not contain OIDs.

```
Oid PQoidValue(const PGresult *res);
```

#### `PQoidStatus`

This function is deprecated in favor of `PQoidValue` and is not thread-safe. It returns a string with the OID of the inserted row, while `PQoidValue` returns the OID value.

```
char *PQoidStatus(const PGresult *res);
```

### 34.3.4. Escaping Strings for Inclusion in SQL Commands

#### `PQescapeLiteral`

```
char *PQescapeLiteral(PGconn *conn, const char *str, size_t length);
```

`PQescapeLiteral` escapes a string for use within an SQL command. This is useful when inserting data values as literal constants in SQL commands. Certain characters (such as quotes

and backslashes) must be escaped to prevent them from being interpreted specially by the SQL parser. `PQescapeLiteral` performs this operation.

`PQescapeLiteral` returns an escaped version of the *str* parameter in memory allocated with `malloc()`. This memory should be freed using `PQfreemem()` when the result is no longer needed. A terminating zero byte is not required, and should not be counted in *length*. (If a terminating zero byte is found before *length* bytes are processed, `PQescapeLiteral` stops at the zero; the behavior is thus rather like `strncpy`.) The return string has all special characters replaced so that they can be properly processed by the PostgreSQL string literal parser. A terminating zero byte is also added. The single quotes that must surround PostgreSQL string literals are included in the result string.

On error, `PQescapeLiteral` returns `NULL` and a suitable message is stored in the *conn* object.

### Tip

It is especially important to do proper escaping when handling strings that were received from an untrustworthy source. Otherwise there is a security risk: you are vulnerable to “SQL injection” attacks wherein unwanted SQL commands are fed to your database.

Note that it is neither necessary nor correct to do escaping when a data value is passed as a separate parameter in `PQexecParams` or its sibling routines.

## `PQescapeIdentifier`

```
char *PQescapeIdentifier(PGconn *conn, const char *str, size_t
length);
```

`PQescapeIdentifier` escapes a string for use as an SQL identifier, such as a table, column, or function name. This is useful when a user-supplied identifier might contain special characters that would otherwise not be interpreted as part of the identifier by the SQL parser, or when the identifier might contain upper case characters whose case should be preserved.

`PQescapeIdentifier` returns a version of the *str* parameter escaped as an SQL identifier in memory allocated with `malloc()`. This memory must be freed using `PQfreemem()` when the result is no longer needed. A terminating zero byte is not required, and should not be counted in *length*. (If a terminating zero byte is found before *length* bytes are processed, `PQescapeIdentifier` stops at the zero; the behavior is thus rather like `strncpy`.) The return string has all special characters replaced so that it will be properly processed as an SQL identifier. A terminating zero byte is also added. The return string will also be surrounded by double quotes.

On error, `PQescapeIdentifier` returns `NULL` and a suitable message is stored in the *conn* object.

### Tip

As with string literals, to prevent SQL injection attacks, SQL identifiers must be escaped when they are received from an untrustworthy source.

## `PQescapeStringConn`

```
size_t PQescapeStringConn(PGconn *conn,
                           char *to, const char *from, size_t
length,
```

```
int *error);
```

PQescapeStringConn escapes string literals, much like PQescapeLiteral. Unlike PQescapeLiteral, the caller is responsible for providing an appropriately sized buffer. Furthermore, PQescapeStringConn does not generate the single quotes that must surround PostgreSQL string literals; they should be provided in the SQL command that the result is inserted into. The parameter *from* points to the first character of the string that is to be escaped, and the *length* parameter gives the number of bytes in this string. A terminating zero byte is not required, and should not be counted in *length*. (If a terminating zero byte is found before *length* bytes are processed, PQescapeStringConn stops at the zero; the behavior is thus rather like *strncpy*.) *to* shall point to a buffer that is able to hold at least one more byte than twice the value of *length*, otherwise the behavior is undefined. Behavior is likewise undefined if the *to* and *from* strings overlap.

If the *error* parameter is not NULL, then *\*error* is set to zero on success, nonzero on error. Presently the only possible error conditions involve invalid multibyte encoding in the source string. The output string is still generated on error, but it can be expected that the server will reject it as malformed. On error, a suitable message is stored in the *conn* object, whether or not *error* is NULL.

PQescapeStringConn returns the number of bytes written to *to*, not including the terminating zero byte.

#### PQescapeString

PQescapeString is an older, deprecated version of PQescapeStringConn.

```
size_t PQescapeString (char *to, const char *from, size_t
length);
```

The only difference from PQescapeStringConn is that PQescapeString does not take PGconn or *error* parameters. Because of this, it cannot adjust its behavior depending on the connection properties (such as character encoding) and therefore *it might give the wrong results*. Also, it has no way to report error conditions.

PQescapeString can be used safely in client programs that work with only one PostgreSQL connection at a time (in this case it can find out what it needs to know “behind the scenes”). In other contexts it is a security hazard and should be avoided in favor of PQescapeStringConn.

#### PQescapeByteaConn

Escapes binary data for use within an SQL command with the type *bytea*. As with PQescapeStringConn, this is only used when inserting data directly into an SQL command string.

```
unsigned char *PQescapeByteaConn(PGconn *conn,
                                const unsigned char *from,
                                size_t from_length,
                                size_t *to_length);
```

Certain byte values must be escaped when used as part of a *bytea* literal in an SQL statement. PQescapeByteaConn escapes bytes using either hex encoding or backslash escaping. See Section 8.4 for more information.

The *from* parameter points to the first byte of the string that is to be escaped, and the *from\_length* parameter gives the number of bytes in this binary string. (A terminating zero byte is neither necessary nor counted.) The *to\_length* parameter points to a variable that will hold the resultant escaped string length. This result string length includes the terminating zero byte of the result.

PQescapeByteaConn returns an escaped version of the *from* parameter binary string in memory allocated with `malloc()`. This memory should be freed using `PQfreemem()` when the result is no longer needed. The return string has all special characters replaced so that they can be properly processed by the PostgreSQL string literal parser, and the `bytea` input function. A terminating zero byte is also added. The single quotes that must surround PostgreSQL string literals are not part of the result string.

On error, a null pointer is returned, and a suitable error message is stored in the *conn* object. Currently, the only possible error is insufficient memory for the result string.

#### PQescapeBytea

PQescapeBytea is an older, deprecated version of PQescapeByteaConn.

```
unsigned char *PQescapeBytea(const unsigned char *from,
                             size_t from_length,
                             size_t *to_length);
```

The only difference from PQescapeByteaConn is that PQescapeBytea does not take a *PGconn* parameter. Because of this, PQescapeBytea can only be used safely in client programs that use a single PostgreSQL connection at a time (in this case it can find out what it needs to know “behind the scenes”). It *might give the wrong results* if used in programs that use multiple database connections (use PQescapeByteaConn in such cases).

#### PQunescapeBytea

Converts a string representation of binary data into binary data — the reverse of PQescapeBytea. This is needed when retrieving `bytea` data in text format, but not when retrieving it in binary format.

```
unsigned char *PQunescapeBytea(const unsigned char *from, size_t
                               *to_length);
```

The *from* parameter points to a string such as might be returned by `PQgetvalue` when applied to a `bytea` column. PQunescapeBytea converts this string representation into its binary representation. It returns a pointer to a buffer allocated with `malloc()`, or NULL on error, and puts the size of the buffer in *to\_length*. The result must be freed using `PQfreemem` when it is no longer needed.

This conversion is not exactly the inverse of PQescapeBytea, because the string is not expected to be “escaped” when received from `PQgetvalue`. In particular this means there is no need for string quoting considerations, and so no need for a *PGconn* parameter.

## 34.4. Asynchronous Command Processing

The `PQexec` function is adequate for submitting commands in normal, synchronous applications. It has a few deficiencies, however, that can be of importance to some users:

- `PQexec` waits for the command to be completed. The application might have other work to do (such as maintaining a user interface), in which case it won't want to block waiting for the response.
- Since the execution of the client application is suspended while it waits for the result, it is hard for the application to decide that it would like to try to cancel the ongoing command. (It can be done from a signal handler, but not otherwise.)
- `PQexec` can return only one `PGresult` structure. If the submitted command string contains multiple SQL commands, all but the last `PGresult` are discarded by `PQexec`.

- PQexec always collects the command's entire result, buffering it in a single PGresult. While this simplifies error-handling logic for the application, it can be impractical for results containing many rows.

Applications that do not like these limitations can instead use the underlying functions that PQexec is built from: PQsendQuery and PQgetResult. There are also PQsendQueryParams, PQsendPrepare, PQsendQueryPrepared, PQsendDescribePrepared, and PQsendDescribePortal, which can be used with PQgetResult to duplicate the functionality of PQexecParams, PQprepare, PQexecPrepared, PQdescribePrepared, and PQdescribePortal respectively.

#### PQsendQuery

Submits a command to the server without waiting for the result(s). 1 is returned if the command was successfully dispatched and 0 if not (in which case, use PQerrorMessage to get more information about the failure).

```
int PQsendQuery(PGconn *conn, const char *command);
```

After successfully calling PQsendQuery, call PQgetResult one or more times to obtain the results. PQsendQuery cannot be called again (on the same connection) until PQgetResult has returned a null pointer, indicating that the command is done.

In pipeline mode, this function is disallowed.

#### PQsendQueryParams

Submits a command and separate parameters to the server without waiting for the result(s).

```
int PQsendQueryParams(PGconn *conn,
                      const char *command,
                      int nParams,
                      const Oid *paramTypes,
                      const char * const *paramValues,
                      const int *paramLengths,
                      const int *paramFormats,
                      int resultFormat);
```

This is equivalent to PQsendQuery except that query parameters can be specified separately from the query string. The function's parameters are handled identically to PQexecParams. Like PQexecParams, it allows only one command in the query string.

#### PQsendPrepare

Sends a request to create a prepared statement with the given parameters, without waiting for completion.

```
int PQsendPrepare(PGconn *conn,
                  const char *stmtName,
                  const char *query,
                  int nParams,
                  const Oid *paramTypes);
```

This is an asynchronous version of PQprepare: it returns 1 if it was able to dispatch the request, and 0 if not. After a successful call, call PQgetResult to determine whether the server successfully created the prepared statement. The function's parameters are handled identically to PQprepare.

### PQsendQueryPrepared

Sends a request to execute a prepared statement with given parameters, without waiting for the result(s).

```
int PQsendQueryPrepared(PGconn *conn,
                        const char *stmtName,
                        int nParams,
                        const char * const *paramValues,
                        const int *paramLengths,
                        const int *paramFormats,
                        int resultFormat);
```

This is similar to `PQsendQueryParams`, but the command to be executed is specified by naming a previously-prepared statement, instead of giving a query string. The function's parameters are handled identically to `PQexecPrepared`.

### PQsendDescribePrepared

Submits a request to obtain information about the specified prepared statement, without waiting for completion.

```
int PQsendDescribePrepared(PGconn *conn, const char *stmtName);
```

This is an asynchronous version of `PQdescribePrepared`: it returns 1 if it was able to dispatch the request, and 0 if not. After a successful call, call `PQgetResult` to obtain the results. The function's parameters are handled identically to `PQdescribePrepared`.

### PQsendDescribePortal

Submits a request to obtain information about the specified portal, without waiting for completion.

```
int PQsendDescribePortal(PGconn *conn, const char *portalName);
```

This is an asynchronous version of `PQdescribePortal`: it returns 1 if it was able to dispatch the request, and 0 if not. After a successful call, call `PQgetResult` to obtain the results. The function's parameters are handled identically to `PQdescribePortal`.

### PQgetResult

Waits for the next result from a prior `PQsendQuery`, `PQsendQueryParams`, `PQsendPrepare`, `PQsendQueryPrepared`, `PQsendDescribePrepared`, `PQsendDescribePortal`, or `PQpipelineSync` call, and returns it. A null pointer is returned when the command is complete and there will be no more results.

```
PGresult *PQgetResult(PGconn *conn);
```

`PQgetResult` must be called repeatedly until it returns a null pointer, indicating that the command is done. (If called when no command is active, `PQgetResult` will just return a null pointer at once.) Each non-null result from `PQgetResult` should be processed using the same `PGresult` accessor functions previously described. Don't forget to free each result object with `PQclear` when done with it. Note that `PQgetResult` will block only if a command is active and the necessary response data has not yet been read by `PQconsumeInput`.

In pipeline mode, `PQgetResult` will return normally unless an error occurs; for any subsequent query sent after the one that caused the error until (and excluding) the next synchronization point, a special result of type `PGRES_PIPELINE_ABORTED` will be returned, and a null point-

er will be returned after it. When the pipeline synchronization point is reached, a result of type `PGRES_PIPELINE_SYNC` will be returned. The result of the next query after the synchronization point follows immediately (that is, no null pointer is returned after the synchronization point.)

### Note

Even when `PQresultStatus` indicates a fatal error, `PQgetResult` should be called until it returns a null pointer, to allow libpq to process the error information completely.

Using `PQsendQuery` and `PQgetResult` solves one of `PQexec`'s problems: If a command string contains multiple SQL commands, the results of those commands can be obtained individually. (This allows a simple form of overlapped processing, by the way: the client can be handling the results of one command while the server is still working on later queries in the same command string.)

Another frequently-desired feature that can be obtained with `PQsendQuery` and `PQgetResult` is retrieving large query results a row at a time. This is discussed in Section 34.6.

By itself, calling `PQgetResult` will still cause the client to block until the server completes the next SQL command. This can be avoided by proper use of two more functions:

#### `PQconsumeInput`

If input is available from the server, consume it.

```
int PQconsumeInput(PGconn *conn);
```

`PQconsumeInput` normally returns 1 indicating “no error”, but returns 0 if there was some kind of trouble (in which case `PQerrorMessage` can be consulted). Note that the result does not say whether any input data was actually collected. After calling `PQconsumeInput`, the application can check `PQisBusy` and/or `PQnotifies` to see if their state has changed.

`PQconsumeInput` can be called even if the application is not prepared to deal with a result or notification just yet. The function will read available data and save it in a buffer, thereby causing a `select()` read-ready indication to go away. The application can thus use `PQconsumeInput` to clear the `select()` condition immediately, and then examine the results at leisure.

#### `PQisBusy`

Returns 1 if a command is busy, that is, `PQgetResult` would block waiting for input. A 0 return indicates that `PQgetResult` can be called with assurance of not blocking.

```
int PQisBusy(PGconn *conn);
```

`PQisBusy` will not itself attempt to read data from the server; therefore `PQconsumeInput` must be invoked first, or the busy state will never end.

A typical application using these functions will have a main loop that uses `select()` or `poll()` to wait for all the conditions that it must respond to. One of the conditions will be input available from the server, which in terms of `select()` means readable data on the file descriptor identified by `PQsocket`. When the main loop detects input ready, it should call `PQconsumeInput` to read the input. It can then call `PQisBusy`, followed by `PQgetResult` if `PQisBusy` returns false (0). It can also call `PQnotifies` to detect NOTIFY messages (see Section 34.9).

A client that uses `PQsendQuery/PQgetResult` can also attempt to cancel a command that is still being processed by the server; see Section 34.7. But regardless of the return value of `PQcancel`, the application must continue with the normal result-reading sequence using `PQgetResult`. A successful cancellation will simply cause the command to terminate sooner than it would have otherwise.

By using the functions described above, it is possible to avoid blocking while waiting for input from the database server. However, it is still possible that the application will block waiting to send output to the server. This is relatively uncommon but can happen if very long SQL commands or data values are sent. (It is much more probable if the application sends data via `COPY IN`, however.) To prevent this possibility and achieve completely nonblocking database operation, the following additional functions can be used.

#### `PQsetnonblocking`

Sets the nonblocking status of the connection.

```
int PQsetnonblocking(PGconn *conn, int arg);
```

Sets the state of the connection to nonblocking if *arg* is 1, or blocking if *arg* is 0. Returns 0 if OK, -1 if error.

In the nonblocking state, successful calls to `PQsendQuery`, `PQputline`, `PQputnbytes`, `PQputCopyData`, and `PQendcopy` will not block; their changes are stored in the local output buffer until they are flushed. Unsuccessful calls will return an error and must be retried.

Note that `PQexec` does not honor nonblocking mode; if it is called, it will act in blocking fashion anyway.

#### `PQisnonblocking`

Returns the blocking status of the database connection.

```
int PQisnonblocking(const PGconn *conn);
```

Returns 1 if the connection is set to nonblocking mode and 0 if blocking.

#### `PQflush`

Attempts to flush any queued output data to the server. Returns 0 if successful (or if the send queue is empty), -1 if it failed for some reason, or 1 if it was unable to send all the data in the send queue yet (this case can only occur if the connection is nonblocking).

```
int PQflush(PGconn *conn);
```

After sending any command or data on a nonblocking connection, call `PQflush`. If it returns 1, wait for the socket to become read- or write-ready. If it becomes write-ready, call `PQflush` again. If it becomes read-ready, call `PQconsumeInput`, then call `PQflush` again. Repeat until `PQflush` returns 0. (It is necessary to check for read-ready and drain the input with `PQconsumeInput`, because the server can block trying to send us data, e.g., `NOTICE` messages, and won't read our data until we read its.) Once `PQflush` returns 0, wait for the socket to be read-ready and then read the response as described above.

## 34.5. Pipeline Mode

libpq pipeline mode allows applications to send a query without having to read the result of the previously sent query. Taking advantage of the pipeline mode, a client will wait less for the server, since multiple queries/results can be sent/received in a single network transaction.

While pipeline mode provides a significant performance boost, writing clients using the pipeline mode is more complex because it involves managing a queue of pending queries and finding which result corresponds to which query in the queue.



Pipeline mode also generally consumes more memory on both the client and server, though careful and aggressive management of the send/receive queue can mitigate this. This applies whether or not the connection is in blocking or non-blocking mode.

While libpq's pipeline API was introduced in PostgreSQL 14, it is a client-side feature which doesn't require special server support and works on any server that supports the v3 extended query protocol. For more information see Section 55.2.4.

## 34.5.1. Using Pipeline Mode

To issue pipelines, the application must switch the connection into pipeline mode, which is done with `PQenterPipelineMode`. `PQpipelineStatus` can be used to test whether pipeline mode is active. In pipeline mode, only asynchronous operations that utilize the extended query protocol are permitted, command strings containing multiple SQL commands are disallowed, and so is `COPY`. Using synchronous command execution functions such as `PQfn`, `PQexec`, `PQexecParams`, `PQprepare`, `PQexecPrepared`, `PQdescribePrepared`, `PQdescribePortal`, is an error condition. `PQsendQuery` is also disallowed, because it uses the simple query protocol. Once all dispatched commands have had their results processed, and the end pipeline result has been consumed, the application may return to non-pipelined mode with `PQexitPipelineMode`.

### Note

It is best to use pipeline mode with libpq in non-blocking mode. If used in blocking mode it is possible for a client/server deadlock to occur.<sup>3</sup>

### 34.5.1.1. Issuing Queries

After entering pipeline mode, the application dispatches requests using `PQsendQueryParams` or its prepared-query sibling `PQsendQueryPrepared`. These requests are queued on the client-side until flushed to the server; this occurs when `PQpipelineSync` is used to establish a synchronization point in the pipeline, or when `PQflush` is called. The functions `PQsendPrepare`, `PQsendDescribePrepared`, and `PQsendDescribePortal` also work in pipeline mode. Result processing is described below.

The server executes statements, and returns results, in the order the client sends them. The server will begin executing the commands in the pipeline immediately, not waiting for the end of the pipeline. Note that results are buffered on the server side; the server flushes that buffer when a synchronization point is established with `PQpipelineSync`, or when `PQsendFlushRequest` is called. If any statement encounters an error, the server aborts the current transaction and does not execute any subsequent command in the queue until the next synchronization point; a `PGRES_PIPELINE_ABORTED` result is produced for each such command. (This remains true even if the commands in the pipeline would rollback the transaction.) Query processing resumes after the synchronization point.

It's fine for one operation to depend on the results of a prior one; for example, one query may define a table that the next query in the same pipeline uses. Similarly, an application may create a named prepared statement and execute it with later statements in the same pipeline.

### 34.5.1.2. Processing Results

To process the result of one query in a pipeline, the application calls `PQgetResult` repeatedly and handles each result until `PQgetResult` returns null. The result from the next query in the pipeline may then be retrieved using `PQgetResult` again and the cycle repeated. The application handles

---

<sup>3</sup> The client will block trying to send queries to the server, but the server will block trying to send results to the client from queries it has already processed. This only occurs when the client sends enough queries to fill both its output buffer and the server's receive buffer before it switches to processing input from the server, but it's hard to predict exactly when that will happen.

individual statement results as normal. When the results of all the queries in the pipeline have been returned, `PQgetResult` returns a result containing the status value `PGRES_PIPELINE_SYNC`.

The client may choose to defer result processing until the complete pipeline has been sent, or interleave that with sending further queries in the pipeline; see Section 34.5.1.4.

To enter single-row mode, call `PQsetSingleRowMode` before retrieving results with `PQgetResult`. This mode selection is effective only for the query currently being processed. For more information on the use of `PQsetSingleRowMode`, refer to Section 34.6.

`PQgetResult` behaves the same as for normal asynchronous processing except that it may contain the new `PGresult` types `PGRES_PIPELINE_SYNC` and `PGRES_PIPELINE_ABORTED`. `PGRES_PIPELINE_SYNC` is reported exactly once for each `PQpipelineSync` at the corresponding point in the pipeline. `PGRES_PIPELINE_ABORTED` is emitted in place of a normal query result for the first error and all subsequent results until the next `PGRES_PIPELINE_SYNC`; see Section 34.5.1.3.

`PQisBusy`, `PQconsumeInput`, etc operate as normal when processing pipeline results. In particular, a call to `PQisBusy` in the middle of a pipeline returns 0 if the results for all the queries issued so far have been consumed.

libpq does not provide any information to the application about the query currently being processed (except that `PQgetResult` returns null to indicate that we start returning the results of next query). The application must keep track of the order in which it sent queries, to associate them with their corresponding results. Applications will typically use a state machine or a FIFO queue for this.

### 34.5.1.3. Error Handling

From the client's perspective, after `PQresultStatus` returns `PGRES_FATAL_ERROR`, the pipeline is flagged as aborted. `PQresultStatus` will report a `PGRES_PIPELINE_ABORTED` result for each remaining queued operation in an aborted pipeline. The result for `PQpipelineSync` is reported as `PGRES_PIPELINE_SYNC` to signal the end of the aborted pipeline and resumption of normal result processing.

The client *must* process results with `PQgetResult` during error recovery.

If the pipeline used an implicit transaction, then operations that have already executed are rolled back and operations that were queued to follow the failed operation are skipped entirely. The same behavior holds if the pipeline starts and commits a single explicit transaction (i.e. the first statement is `BEGIN` and the last is `COMMIT`) except that the session remains in an aborted transaction state at the end of the pipeline. If a pipeline contains *multiple explicit transactions*, all transactions that committed prior to the error remain committed, the currently in-progress transaction is aborted, and all subsequent operations are skipped completely, including subsequent transactions. If a pipeline synchronization point occurs with an explicit transaction block in aborted state, the next pipeline will become aborted immediately unless the next command puts the transaction in normal mode with `ROLLBACK`.

#### Note

The client must not assume that work is committed when it *sends* a `COMMIT` — only when the corresponding result is received to confirm the commit is complete. Because errors arrive asynchronously, the application needs to be able to restart from the last *received* committed change and resend work done after that point if something goes wrong.

### 34.5.1.4. Interleaving Result Processing and Query Dispatch

To avoid deadlocks on large pipelines the client should be structured around a non-blocking event loop using operating system facilities such as `select`, `poll`, `WaitForMultipleObjectEx`, etc.

The client application should generally maintain a queue of work remaining to be dispatched and a queue of work that has been dispatched but not yet had its results processed. When the socket is writable it should dispatch more work. When the socket is readable it should read results and process them, matching them up to the next entry in its corresponding results queue. Based on available memory, results from the socket should be read frequently: there's no need to wait until the pipeline end to read the results. Pipelines should be scoped to logical units of work, usually (but not necessarily) one transaction per pipeline. There's no need to exit pipeline mode and re-enter it between pipelines, or to wait for one pipeline to finish before sending the next.

An example using `select()` and a simple state machine to track sent and received work is in `src/test/modules/libpq_pipeline/libpq_pipeline.c` in the PostgreSQL source distribution.

## 34.5.2. Functions Associated with Pipeline Mode

`PQpipelineStatus`

Returns the current pipeline mode status of the libpq connection.

```
PGpipelineStatus PQpipelineStatus(const PGconn *conn);
```

`PQpipelineStatus` can return one of the following values:

`PQ_PIPELINE_ON`

The libpq connection is in pipeline mode.

`PQ_PIPELINE_OFF`

The libpq connection is *not* in pipeline mode.

`PQ_PIPELINE_ABORTED`

The libpq connection is in pipeline mode and an error occurred while processing the current pipeline. The aborted flag is cleared when `PQgetResult` returns a result of type `PGRES_PIPELINE_SYNC`.

`PQenterPipelineMode`

Causes a connection to enter pipeline mode if it is currently idle or already in pipeline mode.

```
int PQenterPipelineMode(PGconn *conn);
```

Returns 1 for success. Returns 0 and has no effect if the connection is not currently idle, i.e., it has a result ready, or it is waiting for more input from the server, etc. This function does not actually send anything to the server, it just changes the libpq connection state.

`PQexitPipelineMode`

Causes a connection to exit pipeline mode if it is currently in pipeline mode with an empty queue and no pending results.

```
int PQexitPipelineMode(PGconn *conn);
```

Returns 1 for success. Returns 0 and takes no action if not in pipeline mode. If the current statement isn't finished processing, or `PQgetResult` has not been called to collect results from all previously sent query, returns 0 (in which case, use `PQerrorMessage` to get more information about the failure).

### PQpipelineSync

Marks a synchronization point in a pipeline by sending a sync message and flushing the send buffer. This serves as the delimiter of an implicit transaction and an error recovery point; see Section 34.5.1.3.

```
int PQpipelineSync(PGconn *conn);
```

Returns 1 for success. Returns 0 if the connection is not in pipeline mode or sending a sync message failed.

### PQsendFlushRequest

Sends a request for the server to flush its output buffer.

```
int PQsendFlushRequest(PGconn *conn);
```

Returns 1 for success. Returns 0 on any failure.

The server flushes its output buffer automatically as a result of PQpipelineSync being called, or on any request when not in pipeline mode; this function is useful to cause the server to flush its output buffer in pipeline mode without establishing a synchronization point. Note that the request is not itself flushed to the server automatically; use PQflush if necessary.

## 34.5.3. When to Use Pipeline Mode

Much like asynchronous query mode, there is no meaningful performance overhead when using pipeline mode. It increases client application complexity, and extra caution is required to prevent client/server deadlocks, but pipeline mode can offer considerable performance improvements, in exchange for increased memory usage from leaving state around longer.

Pipeline mode is most useful when the server is distant, i.e., network latency (“ping time”) is high, and also when many small operations are being performed in rapid succession. There is usually less benefit in using pipelined commands when each query takes many multiples of the client/server round-trip time to execute. A 100-statement operation run on a server 300 ms round-trip-time away would take 30 seconds in network latency alone without pipelining; with pipelining it may spend as little as 0.3 s waiting for results from the server.

Use pipelined commands when your application does lots of small INSERT, UPDATE and DELETE operations that can't easily be transformed into operations on sets, or into a COPY operation.

Pipeline mode is not useful when information from one operation is required by the client to produce the next operation. In such cases, the client would have to introduce a synchronization point and wait for a full client/server round-trip to get the results it needs. However, it's often possible to adjust the client design to exchange the required information server-side. Read-modify-write cycles are especially good candidates; for example:

```
BEGIN;
SELECT x FROM mytable WHERE id = 42 FOR UPDATE;
-- result: x=2
-- client adds 1 to x:
UPDATE mytable SET x = 3 WHERE id = 42;
COMMIT;
```

could be much more efficiently done with:

```
UPDATE mytable SET x = x + 1 WHERE id = 42;
```

Pipelining is less useful, and more complex, when a single pipeline contains multiple transactions (see Section 34.5.1.3).

## 34.6. Retrieving Query Results Row-by-Row

Ordinarily, libpq collects an SQL command's entire result and returns it to the application as a single `PGresult`. This can be unworkable for commands that return a large number of rows. For such cases, applications can use `PQsendQuery` and `PQgetResult` in *single-row mode*. In this mode, the result row(s) are returned to the application one at a time, as they are received from the server.

To enter single-row mode, call `PQsetSingleRowMode` immediately after a successful call of `PQsendQuery` (or a sibling function). This mode selection is effective only for the currently executing query. Then call `PQgetResult` repeatedly, until it returns null, as documented in Section 34.4. If the query returns any rows, they are returned as individual `PGresult` objects, which look like normal query results except for having status code `PGRES_SINGLE_TUPLE` instead of `PGRES_TUPLES_OK`. After the last row, or immediately if the query returns zero rows, a zero-row object with status `PGRES_TUPLES_OK` is returned; this is the signal that no more rows will arrive. (But note that it is still necessary to continue calling `PQgetResult` until it returns null.) All of these `PGresult` objects will contain the same row description data (column names, types, etc.) that an ordinary `PGresult` object for the query would have. Each object should be freed with `PQclear` as usual.

When using pipeline mode, single-row mode needs to be activated for each query in the pipeline before retrieving results for that query with `PQgetResult`. See Section 34.5 for more information.

`PQsetSingleRowMode`

Select single-row mode for the currently-executing query.

```
int PQsetSingleRowMode(PGconn *conn);
```

This function can only be called immediately after `PQsendQuery` or one of its sibling functions, before any other operation on the connection such as `PQconsumeInput` or `PQgetResult`. If called at the correct time, the function activates single-row mode for the current query and returns 1. Otherwise the mode stays unchanged and the function returns 0. In any case, the mode reverts to normal after completion of the current query.

### Caution

While processing a query, the server may return some rows and then encounter an error, causing the query to be aborted. Ordinarily, libpq discards any such rows and reports only the error. But in single-row mode, those rows will have already been returned to the application. Hence, the application will see some `PGRES_SINGLE_TUPLE` `PGresult` objects followed by a `PGRES_FATAL_ERROR` object. For proper transactional behavior, the application must be designed to discard or undo whatever has been done with the previously-processed rows, if the query ultimately fails.

## 34.7. Canceling Queries in Progress

A client application can request cancellation of a command that is still being processed by the server, using the functions described in this section.

`PQgetCancel`

Creates a data structure containing the information needed to cancel a command issued through a particular database connection.

```
PGcancel *PQgetCancel(PGconn *conn);
```

`PQgetCancel` creates a `PGcancel` object given a `PGconn` connection object. It will return `NULL` if the given `conn` is `NULL` or an invalid connection. The `PGcancel` object is an opaque structure that is not meant to be accessed directly by the application; it can only be passed to `PQcancel` or `PQfreeCancel`.

`PQfreeCancel`

Frees a data structure created by `PQgetCancel`.

```
void PQfreeCancel(PGcancel *cancel);
```

`PQfreeCancel` frees a data object previously created by `PQgetCancel`.

`PQcancel`

Requests that the server abandon processing of the current command.

```
int PQcancel(PGcancel *cancel, char *errbuf, int errbufsize);
```

The return value is 1 if the cancel request was successfully dispatched and 0 if not. If not, *errbuf* is filled with an explanatory error message. *errbuf* must be a char array of size *errbufsize* (the recommended size is 256 bytes).

Successful dispatch is no guarantee that the request will have any effect, however. If the cancellation is effective, the current command will terminate early and return an error result. If the cancellation fails (say, because the server was already done processing the command), then there will be no visible result at all.

`PQcancel` can safely be invoked from a signal handler, if the *errbuf* is a local variable in the signal handler. The `PGcancel` object is read-only as far as `PQcancel` is concerned, so it can also be invoked from a thread that is separate from the one manipulating the `PGconn` object.

`PQrequestCancel`

`PQrequestCancel` is a deprecated variant of `PQcancel`.

```
int PQrequestCancel(PGconn *conn);
```

Requests that the server abandon processing of the current command. It operates directly on the `PGconn` object, and in case of failure stores the error message in the `PGconn` object (whence it can be retrieved by `PQerrorMessage`). Although the functionality is the same, this approach is not safe within multiple-thread programs or signal handlers, since it is possible that overwriting the `PGconn`'s error message will mess up the operation currently in progress on the connection.

## 34.8. The Fast-Path Interface

PostgreSQL provides a fast-path interface to send simple function calls to the server.

### Tip

This interface is somewhat obsolete, as one can achieve similar performance and greater functionality by setting up a prepared statement to define the function call. Then, executing the

statement with binary transmission of parameters and results substitutes for a fast-path function call.

The function `PQfn` requests execution of a server function via the fast-path interface:

```
PGresult *PQfn(PGconn *conn,
               int fnid,
               int *result_buf,
               int *result_len,
               int result_is_int,
               const PQArgBlock *args,
               int nargs);

typedef struct
{
    int len;
    int isint;
    union
    {
        int *ptr;
        int integer;
    } u;
} PQArgBlock;
```

The *fnid* argument is the OID of the function to be executed. *args* and *nargs* define the parameters to be passed to the function; they must match the declared function argument list. When the *isint* field of a parameter structure is true, the *u.integer* value is sent to the server as an integer of the indicated length (this must be 2 or 4 bytes); proper byte-swapping occurs. When *isint* is false, the indicated number of bytes at *\*u.ptr* are sent with no processing; the data must be in the format expected by the server for binary transmission of the function's argument data type. (The declaration of *u.ptr* as being of type `int *` is historical; it would be better to consider it `void *`.) *result\_buf* points to the buffer in which to place the function's return value. The caller must have allocated sufficient space to store the return value. (There is no check!) The actual result length in bytes will be returned in the integer pointed to by *result\_len*. If a 2- or 4-byte integer result is expected, set *result\_is\_int* to 1, otherwise set it to 0. Setting *result\_is\_int* to 1 causes libpq to byte-swap the value if necessary, so that it is delivered as a proper `int` value for the client machine; note that a 4-byte integer is delivered into *\*result\_buf* for either allowed result size. When *result\_is\_int* is 0, the binary-format byte string sent by the server is returned unmodified. (In this case it's better to consider *result\_buf* as being of type `void *`.)

`PQfn` always returns a valid `PGresult` pointer, with status `PGRES_COMMAND_OK` for success or `PGRES_FATAL_ERROR` if some problem was encountered. The result status should be checked before the result is used. The caller is responsible for freeing the `PGresult` with `PQclear` when it is no longer needed.

To pass a `NULL` argument to the function, set the *len* field of that parameter structure to `-1`; the *isint* and *u* fields are then irrelevant.

If the function returns `NULL`, *\*result\_len* is set to `-1`, and *\*result\_buf* is not modified.

Note that it is not possible to handle set-valued results when using this interface. Also, the function must be a plain function, not an aggregate, window function, or procedure.

## 34.9. Asynchronous Notification

PostgreSQL offers asynchronous notification via the `LISTEN` and `NOTIFY` commands. A client session registers its interest in a particular notification channel with the `LISTEN` command (and can stop

listening with the `UNLISTEN` command). All sessions listening on a particular channel will be notified asynchronously when a `NOTIFY` command with that channel name is executed by any session. A “payload” string can be passed to communicate additional data to the listeners.

libpq applications submit `LISTEN`, `UNLISTEN`, and `NOTIFY` commands as ordinary SQL commands. The arrival of `NOTIFY` messages can subsequently be detected by calling `PQnotifies`.

The function `PQnotifies` returns the next notification from a list of unhandled notification messages received from the server. It returns a null pointer if there are no pending notifications. Once a notification is returned from `PQnotifies`, it is considered handled and will be removed from the list of notifications.

```
PGnotify *PQnotifies(PGconn *conn);

typedef struct pgNotify
{
    char *relname;           /* notification channel name */
    int be_pid;              /* process ID of notifying server
    process */
    char *extra;             /* notification payload string */
} PGnotify;
```

After processing a `PGnotify` object returned by `PQnotifies`, be sure to free it with `PQfreemem`. It is sufficient to free the `PGnotify` pointer; the `relname` and `extra` fields do not represent separate allocations. (The names of these fields are historical; in particular, channel names need not have anything to do with relation names.)

Example 34.2 gives a sample program that illustrates the use of asynchronous notification.

`PQnotifies` does not actually read data from the server; it just returns messages previously absorbed by another libpq function. In ancient releases of libpq, the only way to ensure timely receipt of `NOTIFY` messages was to constantly submit commands, even empty ones, and then check `PQnotifies` after each `PQexec`. While this still works, it is deprecated as a waste of processing power.

A better way to check for `NOTIFY` messages when you have no useful commands to execute is to call `PQconsumeInput`, then check `PQnotifies`. You can use `select()` to wait for data to arrive from the server, thereby using no CPU power unless there is something to do. (See `PQsocket` to obtain the file descriptor number to use with `select()`.) Note that this will work OK whether you submit commands with `PQsendQuery/PQgetResult` or simply use `PQexec`. You should, however, remember to check `PQnotifies` after each `PQgetResult` or `PQexec`, to see if any notifications came in during the processing of the command.

## 34.10. Functions Associated with the COPY Command

The `COPY` command in PostgreSQL has options to read from or write to the network connection used by libpq. The functions described in this section allow applications to take advantage of this capability by supplying or consuming copied data.

The overall process is that the application first issues the SQL `COPY` command via `PQexec` or one of the equivalent functions. The response to this (if there is no error in the command) will be a `PGresult` object bearing a status code of `PGRES_COPY_OUT` or `PGRES_COPY_IN` (depending on the specified copy direction). The application should then use the functions of this section to receive or transmit data rows. When the data transfer is complete, another `PGresult` object is returned to indicate success or failure of the transfer. Its status will be `PGRES_COMMAND_OK` for success or `PGRES_FATAL_ERROR` if some problem was encountered. At this point further SQL commands can



be issued via `PQexec`. (It is not possible to execute other SQL commands using the same connection while the `COPY` operation is in progress.)

If a `COPY` command is issued via `PQexec` in a string that could contain additional commands, the application must continue fetching results via `PQgetResult` after completing the `COPY` sequence. Only when `PQgetResult` returns `NULL` is it certain that the `PQexec` command string is done and it is safe to issue more commands.

The functions of this section should be executed only after obtaining a result status of `PGRES_COPY_OUT` or `PGRES_COPY_IN` from `PQexec` or `PQgetResult`.

A `PGresult` object bearing one of these status values carries some additional data about the `COPY` operation that is starting. This additional data is available using functions that are also used in connection with query results:

`PQnfields`

Returns the number of columns (fields) to be copied.

`PQbinaryTuples`

0 indicates the overall copy format is textual (rows separated by newlines, columns separated by separator characters, etc.). 1 indicates the overall copy format is binary. See `COPY` for more information.

`PQfformat`

Returns the format code (0 for text, 1 for binary) associated with each column of the copy operation. The per-column format codes will always be zero when the overall copy format is textual, but the binary format can support both text and binary columns. (However, as of the current implementation of `COPY`, only binary columns appear in a binary copy; so the per-column formats always match the overall format at present.)

## 34.10.1. Functions for Sending `COPY` Data

These functions are used to send data during `COPY FROM STDIN`. They will fail if called when the connection is not in `COPY_IN` state.

`PQputCopyData`

Sends data to the server during `COPY_IN` state.

```
int PQputCopyData(PGconn *conn,
                  const char *buffer,
                  int nbytes);
```

Transmits the `COPY` data in the specified *buffer*, of length *nbytes*, to the server. The result is 1 if the data was queued, zero if it was not queued because of full buffers (this will only happen in nonblocking mode), or -1 if an error occurred. (Use `PQerrorMessage` to retrieve details if the return value is -1. If the value is zero, wait for write-ready and try again.)

The application can divide the `COPY` data stream into buffer loads of any convenient size. Buffer-load boundaries have no semantic significance when sending. The contents of the data stream must match the data format expected by the `COPY` command; see `COPY` for details.

`PQputCopyEnd`

Sends end-of-data indication to the server during `COPY_IN` state.

```
int PQputCopyEnd(PGconn *conn,
```

```
const char *errmsg);
```

Ends the `COPY_IN` operation successfully if `errmsg` is `NULL`. If `errmsg` is not `NULL` then the `COPY` is forced to fail, with the string pointed to by `errmsg` used as the error message. (One should not assume that this exact error message will come back from the server, however, as the server might have already failed the `COPY` for its own reasons.)

The result is 1 if the termination message was sent; or in nonblocking mode, this may only indicate that the termination message was successfully queued. (In nonblocking mode, to be certain that the data has been sent, you should next wait for write-ready and call `PQflush`, repeating until it returns zero.) Zero indicates that the function could not queue the termination message because of full buffers; this will only happen in nonblocking mode. (In this case, wait for write-ready and try the `PQputCopyEnd` call again.) If a hard error occurs, -1 is returned; you can use `PQerrorMessage` to retrieve details.

After successfully calling `PQputCopyEnd`, call `PQgetResult` to obtain the final result status of the `COPY` command. One can wait for this result to be available in the usual way. Then return to normal operation.

## 34.10.2. Functions for Receiving COPY Data

These functions are used to receive data during `COPY TO STDOUT`. They will fail if called when the connection is not in `COPY_OUT` state.

`PQgetCopyData`

Receives data from the server during `COPY_OUT` state.

```
int PQgetCopyData(PGconn *conn,
                  char **buffer,
                  int async);
```

Attempts to obtain another row of data from the server during a `COPY`. Data is always returned one data row at a time; if only a partial row is available, it is not returned. Successful return of a data row involves allocating a chunk of memory to hold the data. The `buffer` parameter must be non-`NULL`. `*buffer` is set to point to the allocated memory, or to `NULL` in cases where no buffer is returned. A non-`NULL` result buffer should be freed using `PQfreemem` when no longer needed.

When a row is successfully returned, the return value is the number of data bytes in the row (this will always be greater than zero). The returned string is always null-terminated, though this is probably only useful for textual `COPY`. A result of zero indicates that the `COPY` is still in progress, but no row is yet available (this is only possible when `async` is true). A result of -1 indicates that the `COPY` is done. A result of -2 indicates that an error occurred (consult `PQerrorMessage` for the reason).

When `async` is true (not zero), `PQgetCopyData` will not block waiting for input; it will return zero if the `COPY` is still in progress but no complete row is available. (In this case wait for read-ready and then call `PQconsumeInput` before calling `PQgetCopyData` again.) When `async` is false (zero), `PQgetCopyData` will block until data is available or the operation completes.

After `PQgetCopyData` returns -1, call `PQgetResult` to obtain the final result status of the `COPY` command. One can wait for this result to be available in the usual way. Then return to normal operation.

## 34.10.3. Obsolete Functions for COPY

These functions represent older methods of handling `COPY`. Although they still work, they are deprecated due to poor error handling, inconvenient methods of detecting end-of-data, and lack of support for binary or nonblocking transfers.

### PQgetline

Reads a newline-terminated line of characters (transmitted by the server) into a buffer string of size *length*.

```
int PQgetline(PGconn *conn,
              char *buffer,
              int length);
```

This function copies up to *length*-1 characters into the buffer and converts the terminating newline into a zero byte. `PQgetline` returns EOF at the end of input, 0 if the entire line has been read, and 1 if the buffer is full but the terminating newline has not yet been read.

Note that the application must check to see if a new line consists of the two characters `\.`, which indicates that the server has finished sending the results of the `COPY` command. If the application might receive lines that are more than *length*-1 characters long, care is needed to be sure it recognizes the `\.` line correctly (and does not, for example, mistake the end of a long data line for a terminator line).

### PQgetlineAsync

Reads a row of `COPY` data (transmitted by the server) into a buffer without blocking.

```
int PQgetlineAsync(PGconn *conn,
                  char *buffer,
                  int bufsize);
```

This function is similar to `PQgetline`, but it can be used by applications that must read `COPY` data asynchronously, that is, without blocking. Having issued the `COPY` command and gotten a `PGRES_COPY_OUT` response, the application should call `PQconsumeInput` and `PQgetlineAsync` until the end-of-data signal is detected.

Unlike `PQgetline`, this function takes responsibility for detecting end-of-data.

On each call, `PQgetlineAsync` will return data if a complete data row is available in libpq's input buffer. Otherwise, no data is returned until the rest of the row arrives. The function returns -1 if the end-of-copy-data marker has been recognized, or 0 if no data is available, or a positive number giving the number of bytes of data returned. If -1 is returned, the caller must next call `PQendcopy`, and then return to normal processing.

The data returned will not extend beyond a data-row boundary. If possible a whole row will be returned at one time. But if the buffer offered by the caller is too small to hold a row sent by the server, then a partial data row will be returned. With textual data this can be detected by testing whether the last returned byte is `\n` or not. (In a binary `COPY`, actual parsing of the `COPY` data format will be needed to make the equivalent determination.) The returned string is not null-terminated. (If you want to add a terminating null, be sure to pass a *bufsize* one smaller than the room actually available.)

### PQputline

Sends a null-terminated string to the server. Returns 0 if OK and EOF if unable to send the string.

```
int PQputline(PGconn *conn,
              const char *string);
```

The `COPY` data stream sent by a series of calls to `PQputline` has the same format as that returned by `PQgetlineAsync`, except that applications are not obliged to send exactly one data row per `PQputline` call; it is okay to send a partial line or multiple lines per call.

### Note

Before PostgreSQL protocol 3.0, it was necessary for the application to explicitly send the two characters `\.` as a final line to indicate to the server that it had finished sending COPY data. While this still works, it is deprecated and the special meaning of `\.` can be expected to be removed in a future release. It is sufficient to call `PQendcopy` after having sent the actual data.

#### `PQputnbytes`

Sends a non-null-terminated string to the server. Returns 0 if OK and EOF if unable to send the string.

```
int PQputnbytes(PGconn *conn,
               const char *buffer,
               int nbytes);
```

This is exactly like `PQputline`, except that the data buffer need not be null-terminated since the number of bytes to send is specified directly. Use this procedure when sending binary data.

#### `PQendcopy`

Synchronizes with the server.

```
int PQendcopy(PGconn *conn);
```

This function waits until the server has finished the copying. It should either be issued when the last string has been sent to the server using `PQputline` or when the last string has been received from the server using `PQgetline`. It must be issued or the server will get “out of sync” with the client. Upon return from this function, the server is ready to receive the next SQL command. The return value is 0 on successful completion, nonzero otherwise. (Use `PQerrorMessage` to retrieve details if the return value is nonzero.)

When using `PQgetResult`, the application should respond to a `PGRES_COPY_OUT` result by executing `PQgetline` repeatedly, followed by `PQendcopy` after the terminator line is seen. It should then return to the `PQgetResult` loop until `PQgetResult` returns a null pointer. Similarly a `PGRES_COPY_IN` result is processed by a series of `PQputline` calls followed by `PQendcopy`, then return to the `PQgetResult` loop. This arrangement will ensure that a COPY command embedded in a series of SQL commands will be executed correctly.

Older applications are likely to submit a COPY via `PQexec` and assume that the transaction is done after `PQendcopy`. This will work correctly only if the COPY is the only SQL command in the command string.

## 34.11. Control Functions

These functions control miscellaneous details of libpq's behavior.

#### `PQclientEncoding`

Returns the client encoding.

```
int PQclientEncoding(const PGconn *conn);
```

Note that it returns the encoding ID, not a symbolic string such as `EUC_JP`. If unsuccessful, it returns -1. To convert an encoding ID to an encoding name, you can use:

```
char *pg_encoding_to_char(int encoding_id);
```

#### PQsetClientEncoding

Sets the client encoding.

```
int PQsetClientEncoding(PGconn *conn, const char *encoding);
```

*conn* is a connection to the server, and *encoding* is the encoding you want to use. If the function successfully sets the encoding, it returns 0, otherwise -1. The current encoding for this connection can be determined by using `PQclientEncoding`.

#### PQsetErrorVerbosity

Determines the verbosity of messages returned by `PQerrorMessage` and `PQresultErrorMessage`.

```
typedef enum
{
    PQERRORS_TERSE,
    PQERRORS_DEFAULT,
    PQERRORS_VERBOSE,
    PQERRORS_SQLSTATE
} PGVerbosity;
```

```
PGVerbosity PQsetErrorVerbosity(PGconn *conn, PGVerbosity
    verbosity);
```

`PQsetErrorVerbosity` sets the verbosity mode, returning the connection's previous setting. In *TERSE* mode, returned messages include severity, primary text, and position only; this will normally fit on a single line. The *DEFAULT* mode produces messages that include the above plus any detail, hint, or context fields (these might span multiple lines). The *VERBOSE* mode includes all available fields. The *SQLSTATE* mode includes only the error severity and the *SQLSTATE* error code, if one is available (if not, the output is like *TERSE* mode).

Changing the verbosity setting does not affect the messages available from already-existing `PGresult` objects, only subsequently-created ones. (But see `PQresultVerboseErrorMessage` if you want to print a previous error with a different verbosity.)

#### PQsetErrorContextVisibility

Determines the handling of `CONTEXT` fields in messages returned by `PQerrorMessage` and `PQresultErrorMessage`.

```
typedef enum
{
    PQSHOW_CONTEXT_NEVER,
    PQSHOW_CONTEXT_ERRORS,
    PQSHOW_CONTEXT_ALWAYS
} PGContextVisibility;
```

```
PGContextVisibility PQsetErrorContextVisibility(PGconn *conn,
    PGContextVisibility show_context);
```

`PQsetErrorContextVisibility` sets the context display mode, returning the connection's previous setting. This mode controls whether the `CONTEXT` field is included in messages. The

*NEVER* mode never includes `CONTEXT`, while *ALWAYS* always includes it if available. In *ERRORS* mode (the default), `CONTEXT` fields are included only in error messages, not in notices and warnings. (However, if the verbosity setting is *TERSE* or *SQLSTATE*, `CONTEXT` fields are omitted regardless of the context display mode.)

Changing this mode does not affect the messages available from already-existing `PGresult` objects, only subsequently-created ones. (But see `PQresultVerboseErrorMessage` if you want to print a previous error with a different display mode.)

#### `PQtrace`

Enables tracing of the client/server communication to a debugging file stream.

```
void PQtrace(PGconn *conn, FILE *stream);
```

Each line consists of: an optional timestamp, a direction indicator (F for messages from client to server or B for messages from server to client), message length, message type, and message contents. Non-message contents fields (timestamp, direction, length and message type) are separated by a tab. Message contents are separated by a space. Protocol strings are enclosed in double quotes, while strings used as data values are enclosed in single quotes. Non-printable chars are printed as hexadecimal escapes. Further message-type-specific detail can be found in Section 55.7.

#### Note

On Windows, if the libpq library and an application are compiled with different flags, this function call will crash the application because the internal representation of the `FILE` pointers differ. Specifically, multithreaded/single-threaded, release/debug, and static/dynamic flags should be the same for the library and all applications using that library.

#### `PQsetTraceFlags`

Controls the tracing behavior of client/server communication.

```
void PQsetTraceFlags(PGconn *conn, int flags);
```

`flags` contains flag bits describing the operating mode of tracing. If `flags` contains `PQTRACE_SUPPRESS_TIMESTAMPS`, then the timestamp is not included when printing each message. If `flags` contains `PQTRACE_REGRESS_MODE`, then some fields are redacted when printing each message, such as object OIDs, to make the output more convenient to use in testing frameworks. This function must be called after calling `PQtrace`.

#### `PQuntrace`

Disables tracing started by `PQtrace`.

```
void PQuntrace(PGconn *conn);
```

## 34.12. Miscellaneous Functions

As always, there are some functions that just don't fit anywhere.

#### `PQfreemem`

Frees memory allocated by libpq.

```
void PQfreemem(void *ptr);
```

Frees memory allocated by libpq, particularly PQescapeByteaConn, PQescapeBytea, PQunescapeBytea, and PQnotifies. It is particularly important that this function, rather than `free()`, be used on Microsoft Windows. This is because allocating memory in a DLL and releasing it in the application works only if multithreaded/single-threaded, release/debug, and static/dynamic flags are the same for the DLL and the application. On non-Microsoft Windows platforms, this function is the same as the standard library function `free()`.

#### PQconninfoFree

Frees the data structures allocated by PQconnndefaults or PQconninfoParse.

```
void PQconninfoFree(PQconninfoOption *connOptions);
```

If the argument is a NULL pointer, no operation is performed.

A simple PQfreemem will not do for this, since the array contains references to subsidiary strings.

#### PQencryptPasswordConn

Prepares the encrypted form of a PostgreSQL password.

```
char *PQencryptPasswordConn(PGconn *conn, const char *passwd,
                             const char *user, const char *algorithm);
```

This function is intended to be used by client applications that wish to send commands like `ALTER USER joe PASSWORD 'pwd'`. It is good practice not to send the original cleartext password in such a command, because it might be exposed in command logs, activity displays, and so on. Instead, use this function to convert the password to encrypted form before it is sent.

The *passwd* and *user* arguments are the cleartext password, and the SQL name of the user it is for. *algorithm* specifies the encryption algorithm to use to encrypt the password. Currently supported algorithms are md5 and scram-sha-256 (on and off are also accepted as aliases for md5, for compatibility with older server versions). Note that support for scram-sha-256 was introduced in PostgreSQL version 10, and will not work correctly with older server versions. If *algorithm* is NULL, this function will query the server for the current value of the `password_encryption` setting. That can block, and will fail if the current transaction is aborted, or if the connection is busy executing another query. If you wish to use the default algorithm for the server but want to avoid blocking, query `password_encryption` yourself before calling PQencryptPasswordConn, and pass that value as the *algorithm*.

The return value is a string allocated by `malloc`. The caller can assume the string doesn't contain any special characters that would require escaping. Use PQfreemem to free the result when done with it. On error, returns NULL, and a suitable message is stored in the connection object.

#### PQencryptPassword

Prepares the md5-encrypted form of a PostgreSQL password.

```
char *PQencryptPassword(const char *passwd, const char *user);
```

PQencryptPassword is an older, deprecated version of PQencryptPasswordConn. The difference is that PQencryptPassword does not require a connection object, and md5 is always used as the encryption algorithm.

### PQmakeEmptyPGresult

Constructs an empty PGresult object with the given status.

```
PGresult *PQmakeEmptyPGresult(PGconn *conn, ExecStatusType
    status);
```

This is libpq's internal function to allocate and initialize an empty PGresult object. This function returns NULL if memory could not be allocated. It is exported because some applications find it useful to generate result objects (particularly objects with error status) themselves. If *conn* is not null and *status* indicates an error, the current error message of the specified connection is copied into the PGresult. Also, if *conn* is not null, any event procedures registered in the connection are copied into the PGresult. (They do not get PGEVT\_RESULTCREATE calls, but see PQfireResultCreateEvents.) Note that PQclear should eventually be called on the object, just as with a PGresult returned by libpq itself.

### PQfireResultCreateEvents

Fires a PGEVT\_RESULTCREATE event (see Section 34.14) for each event procedure registered in the PGresult object. Returns non-zero for success, zero if any event procedure fails.

```
int PQfireResultCreateEvents(PGconn *conn, PGresult *res);
```

The *conn* argument is passed through to event procedures but not used directly. It can be NULL if the event procedures won't use it.

Event procedures that have already received a PGEVT\_RESULTCREATE or PGEVT\_RESULTCOPY event for this object are not fired again.

The main reason that this function is separate from PQmakeEmptyPGresult is that it is often appropriate to create a PGresult and fill it with data before invoking the event procedures.

### PQcopyResult

Makes a copy of a PGresult object. The copy is not linked to the source result in any way and PQclear must be called when the copy is no longer needed. If the function fails, NULL is returned.

```
PGresult *PQcopyResult(const PGresult *src, int flags);
```

This is not intended to make an exact copy. The returned result is always put into PGRES\_TUPLES\_OK status, and does not copy any error message in the source. (It does copy the command status string, however.) The *flags* argument determines what else is copied. It is a bit-wise OR of several flags. PG\_COPYRES\_ATTRS specifies copying the source result's attributes (column definitions). PG\_COPYRES\_TUPLES specifies copying the source result's tuples. (This implies copying the attributes, too.) PG\_COPYRES\_NOTICEHOOKS specifies copying the source result's notify hooks. PG\_COPYRES\_EVENTS specifies copying the source result's events. (But any instance data associated with the source is not copied.) The event procedures receive PGEVT\_RESULTCOPY events.

### PQsetResultAttrs

Sets the attributes of a PGresult object.

```
int PQsetResultAttrs(PGresult *res, int numAttributes,
    PGresAttDesc *attDescs);
```



The provided *attDescs* are copied into the result. If the *attDescs* pointer is NULL or *numAttributes* is less than one, the request is ignored and the function succeeds. If *res* already contains attributes, the function will fail. If the function fails, the return value is zero. If the function succeeds, the return value is non-zero.

### PQsetvalue

Sets a tuple field value of a PGresult object.

```
int PQsetvalue(PGresult *res, int tup_num, int field_num, char
               *value, int len);
```

The function will automatically grow the result's internal tuples array as needed. However, the *tup\_num* argument must be less than or equal to *PQntuples*, meaning this function can only grow the tuples array one tuple at a time. But any field of any existing tuple can be modified in any order. If a value at *field\_num* already exists, it will be overwritten. If *len* is -1 or *value* is NULL, the field value will be set to an SQL null value. The *value* is copied into the result's private storage, thus is no longer needed after the function returns. If the function fails, the return value is zero. If the function succeeds, the return value is non-zero.

### PQresultAlloc

Allocate subsidiary storage for a PGresult object.

```
void *PQresultAlloc(PGresult *res, size_t nBytes);
```

Any memory allocated with this function will be freed when *res* is cleared. If the function fails, the return value is NULL. The result is guaranteed to be adequately aligned for any type of data, just as for *malloc*.

### PQresultMemorySize

Retrieves the number of bytes allocated for a PGresult object.

```
size_t PQresultMemorySize(const PGresult *res);
```

This value is the sum of all *malloc* requests associated with the PGresult object, that is, all the space that will be freed by *PQclear*. This information can be useful for managing memory consumption.

### PQlibVersion

Return the version of libpq that is being used.

```
int PQlibVersion(void);
```

The result of this function can be used to determine, at run time, whether specific functionality is available in the currently loaded version of libpq. The function can be used, for example, to determine which connection options are available in *PQconnectdb*.

The result is formed by multiplying the library's major version number by 10000 and adding the minor version number. For example, version 10.1 will be returned as 100001, and version 11.0 will be returned as 110000.

Prior to major version 10, PostgreSQL used three-part version numbers in which the first two parts together represented the major version. For those versions, *PQlibVersion* uses two digits for each part; for example version 9.1.5 will be returned as 90105, and version 9.2.0 will be returned as 90200.

Therefore, for purposes of determining feature compatibility, applications should divide the result of `PQlibVersion` by 100 not 10000 to determine a logical major version number. In all release series, only the last two digits differ between minor releases (bug-fix releases).

### Note

This function appeared in PostgreSQL version 9.1, so it cannot be used to detect required functionality in earlier versions, since calling it will create a link dependency on version 9.1 or later.

## 34.13. Notice Processing

Notice and warning messages generated by the server are not returned by the query execution functions, since they do not imply failure of the query. Instead they are passed to a notice handling function, and execution continues normally after the handler returns. The default notice handling function prints the message on `stderr`, but the application can override this behavior by supplying its own handling function.

For historical reasons, there are two levels of notice handling, called the notice receiver and notice processor. The default behavior is for the notice receiver to format the notice and pass a string to the notice processor for printing. However, an application that chooses to provide its own notice receiver will typically ignore the notice processor layer and just do all the work in the notice receiver.

The function `PQsetNoticeReceiver` sets or examines the current notice receiver for a connection object. Similarly, `PQsetNoticeProcessor` sets or examines the current notice processor.

```
typedef void (*PQnoticeReceiver) (void *arg, const PGresult *res);

PQnoticeReceiver
PQsetNoticeReceiver(PGconn *conn,
                   PQnoticeReceiver proc,
                   void *arg);

typedef void (*PQnoticeProcessor) (void *arg, const char *message);

PQnoticeProcessor
PQsetNoticeProcessor(PGconn *conn,
                    PQnoticeProcessor proc,
                    void *arg);
```

Each of these functions returns the previous notice receiver or processor function pointer, and sets the new value. If you supply a null function pointer, no action is taken, but the current pointer is returned.

When a notice or warning message is received from the server, or generated internally by libpq, the notice receiver function is called. It is passed the message in the form of a `PGRES_NONFATAL_ERROR` `PGresult`. (This allows the receiver to extract individual fields using `PQresultErrorField`, or obtain a complete preformatted message using `PQresultErrorMessage` or `PQresultVerboseErrorMessage`.) The same void pointer passed to `PQsetNoticeReceiver` is also passed. (This pointer can be used to access application-specific state if needed.)

The default notice receiver simply extracts the message (using `PQresultErrorMessage`) and passes it to the notice processor.

The notice processor is responsible for handling a notice or warning message given in text form. It is passed the string text of the message (including a trailing newline), plus a void pointer that is the same

one passed to `PQsetNoticeProcessor`. (This pointer can be used to access application-specific state if needed.)

The default notice processor is simply:

```
static void
defaultNoticeProcessor(void *arg, const char *message)
{
    fprintf(stderr, "%s", message);
}
```

Once you have set a notice receiver or processor, you should expect that that function could be called as long as either the `PGconn` object or `PGresult` objects made from it exist. At creation of a `PGresult`, the `PGconn`'s current notice handling pointers are copied into the `PGresult` for possible use by functions like `PQgetvalue`.

## 34.14. Event System

libpq's event system is designed to notify registered event handlers about interesting libpq events, such as the creation or destruction of `PGconn` and `PGresult` objects. A principal use case is that this allows applications to associate their own data with a `PGconn` or `PGresult` and ensure that that data is freed at an appropriate time.

Each registered event handler is associated with two pieces of data, known to libpq only as opaque `void *` pointers. There is a *pass-through* pointer that is provided by the application when the event handler is registered with a `PGconn`. The pass-through pointer never changes for the life of the `PGconn` and all `PGresults` generated from it; so if used, it must point to long-lived data. In addition there is an *instance data* pointer, which starts out `NULL` in every `PGconn` and `PGresult`. This pointer can be manipulated using the `PQinstanceData`, `PQsetInstanceData`, `PQresultInstanceData` and `PQresultSetInstanceData` functions. Note that unlike the pass-through pointer, instance data of a `PGconn` is not automatically inherited by `PGresults` created from it. libpq does not know what pass-through and instance data pointers point to (if anything) and will never attempt to free them — that is the responsibility of the event handler.

### 34.14.1. Event Types

The enum `PGEventId` names the types of events handled by the event system. All its values have names beginning with `PGEVT`. For each event type, there is a corresponding event info structure that carries the parameters passed to the event handlers. The event types are:

`PGEVT_REGISTER`

The register event occurs when `PQregisterEventProc` is called. It is the ideal time to initialize any `instanceData` an event procedure may need. Only one register event will be fired per event handler per connection. If the event procedure fails (returns zero), the registration is cancelled.

```
typedef struct
{
    PGconn *conn;
} PGEventRegister;
```

When a `PGEVT_REGISTER` event is received, the `evtInfo` pointer should be cast to a `PGEventRegister *`. This structure contains a `PGconn` that should be in the `CONNECTION_OK` status; guaranteed if one calls `PQregisterEventProc` right after obtaining a good `PGconn`. When returning a failure code, all cleanup must be performed as no `PGEVT_CONNDestroy` event will be sent.

**PGEVT\_CONNRESET**

The connection reset event is fired on completion of `PQreset` or `PQresetPoll`. In both cases, the event is only fired if the reset was successful. The return value of the event procedure is ignored in PostgreSQL v15 and later. With earlier versions, however, it's important to return success (nonzero) or the connection will be aborted.

```
typedef struct
{
    PGconn *conn;
} PGEventConnReset;
```

When a `PGEVT_CONNRESET` event is received, the `evtInfo` pointer should be cast to a `PGEventConnReset *`. Although the contained `PGconn` was just reset, all event data remains unchanged. This event should be used to reset/reload/requery any associated `instanceData`. Note that even if the event procedure fails to process `PGEVT_CONNRESET`, it will still receive a `PGEVT_CONNDESTROY` event when the connection is closed.

**PGEVT\_CONNDESTROY**

The connection destroy event is fired in response to `PQfinish`. It is the event procedure's responsibility to properly clean up its event data as libpq has no ability to manage this memory. Failure to clean up will lead to memory leaks.

```
typedef struct
{
    PGconn *conn;
} PGEventConnDestroy;
```

When a `PGEVT_CONNDESTROY` event is received, the `evtInfo` pointer should be cast to a `PGEventConnDestroy *`. This event is fired prior to `PQfinish` performing any other cleanup. The return value of the event procedure is ignored since there is no way of indicating a failure from `PQfinish`. Also, an event procedure failure should not abort the process of cleaning up unwanted memory.

**PGEVT\_RESULTCREATE**

The result creation event is fired in response to any query execution function that generates a result, including `PQgetResult`. This event will only be fired after the result has been created successfully.

```
typedef struct
{
    PGconn *conn;
    PGresult *result;
} PGEventResultCreate;
```

When a `PGEVT_RESULTCREATE` event is received, the `evtInfo` pointer should be cast to a `PGEventResultCreate *`. The `conn` is the connection used to generate the result. This is the ideal place to initialize any `instanceData` that needs to be associated with the result. If an event procedure fails (returns zero), that event procedure will be ignored for the remaining lifetime of the result; that is, it will not receive `PGEVT_RESULTCOPY` or `PGEVT_RESULTDESTROY` events for this result or results copied from it.

**PGEVT\_RESULTCOPY**

The result copy event is fired in response to `PQcopyResult`. This event will only be fired after the copy is complete. Only event procedures that have successfully handled the

PGEVT\_RESULTCREATE or PGEVT\_RESULTCOPY event for the source result will receive PGEVT\_RESULTCOPY events.

```
typedef struct
{
    const PGresult *src;
    PGresult *dest;
} PGEventResultCopy;
```

When a PGEVT\_RESULTCOPY event is received, the *evtInfo* pointer should be cast to a *PGEventResultCopy \**. The *src* result is what was copied while the *dest* result is the copy destination. This event can be used to provide a deep copy of *instanceData*, since *PQcopyResult* cannot do that. If an event procedure fails (returns zero), that event procedure will be ignored for the remaining lifetime of the new result; that is, it will not receive PGEVT\_RESULTCOPY or PGEVT\_RESULTDESTROY events for that result or results copied from it.

#### PGEVT\_RESULTDESTROY

The result destroy event is fired in response to a *PQclear*. It is the event procedure's responsibility to properly clean up its event data as libpq has no ability to manage this memory. Failure to clean up will lead to memory leaks.

```
typedef struct
{
    PGresult *result;
} PGEventResultDestroy;
```

When a PGEVT\_RESULTDESTROY event is received, the *evtInfo* pointer should be cast to a *PGEventResultDestroy \**. This event is fired prior to *PQclear* performing any other cleanup. The return value of the event procedure is ignored since there is no way of indicating a failure from *PQclear*. Also, an event procedure failure should not abort the process of cleaning up unwanted memory.

## 34.14.2. Event Callback Procedure

#### PGEventProc

*PGEventProc* is a typedef for a pointer to an event procedure, that is, the user callback function that receives events from libpq. The signature of an event procedure must be

```
int eventproc(PGEventId evtId, void *evtInfo, void *passThrough)
```

The *evtId* parameter indicates which PGEVT event occurred. The *evtInfo* pointer must be cast to the appropriate structure type to obtain further information about the event. The *passThrough* parameter is the pointer provided to *PQregisterEventProc* when the event procedure was registered. The function should return a non-zero value if it succeeds and zero if it fails.

A particular event procedure can be registered only once in any *PGconn*. This is because the address of the procedure is used as a lookup key to identify the associated instance data.

### Caution

On Windows, functions can have two different addresses: one visible from outside a DLL and another visible from inside the DLL. One should be careful that only one of these addresses is used with libpq's event-procedure functions, else confusion will result. The simplest rule for writing code that will work is to ensure that event procedures are declared

`static`. If the procedure's address must be available outside its own source file, expose a separate function to return the address.

### 34.14.3. Event Support Functions

#### PQregisterEventProc

Registers an event callback procedure with libpq.

```
int PQregisterEventProc(PGconn *conn, PGEventProc proc,
                       const char *name, void *passThrough);
```

An event procedure must be registered once on each `PGconn` you want to receive events about. There is no limit, other than memory, on the number of event procedures that can be registered with a connection. The function returns a non-zero value if it succeeds and zero if it fails.

The `proc` argument will be called when a libpq event is fired. Its memory address is also used to lookup `instanceData`. The `name` argument is used to refer to the event procedure in error messages. This value cannot be `NULL` or a zero-length string. The name string is copied into the `PGconn`, so what is passed need not be long-lived. The `passThrough` pointer is passed to the `proc` whenever an event occurs. This argument can be `NULL`.

#### PQsetInstanceData

Sets the connection `conn`'s `instanceData` for procedure `proc` to `data`. This returns non-zero for success and zero for failure. (Failure is only possible if `proc` has not been properly registered in `conn`.)

```
int PQsetInstanceData(PGconn *conn, PGEventProc proc, void
                      *data);
```

#### PQinstanceData

Returns the connection `conn`'s `instanceData` associated with procedure `proc`, or `NULL` if there is none.

```
void *PQinstanceData(const PGconn *conn, PGEventProc proc);
```

#### PQresultSetInstanceData

Sets the result's `instanceData` for `proc` to `data`. This returns non-zero for success and zero for failure. (Failure is only possible if `proc` has not been properly registered in the result.)

```
int PQresultSetInstanceData(PGresult *res, PGEventProc proc,
                           void *data);
```

Beware that any storage represented by `data` will not be accounted for by `PQresultMemorySize`, unless it is allocated using `PQresultAlloc`. (Doing so is recommendable because it eliminates the need to free such storage explicitly when the result is destroyed.)

#### PQresultInstanceData

Returns the result's `instanceData` associated with `proc`, or `NULL` if there is none.

```
void *PQresultInstanceData(const PGresult *res, PGEventProc
                          proc);
```

## 34.14.4. Event Example

Here is a skeleton example of managing private data associated with libpq connections and results.

```
/* required header for libpq events (note: includes libpq-fe.h) */
#include <libpq-events.h>

/* The instanceData */
typedef struct
{
    int n;
    char *str;
} mydata;

/* PGEventProc */
static int myEventProc(PGEventId evtId, void *evtInfo, void
    *passThrough);

int
main(void)
{
    mydata *data;
    PGresult *res;
    PGconn *conn =
        PQconnectdb("dbname=postgres options=-csearch_path=");

    if (PQstatus(conn) != CONNECTION_OK)
    {
        /* PQerrorMessage's result includes a trailing newline */
        fprintf(stderr, "%s", PQerrorMessage(conn));
        PQfinish(conn);
        return 1;
    }

    /* called once on any connection that should receive events.
     * Sends a PGEVT_REGISTER to myEventProc.
     */
    if (!PQregisterEventProc(conn, myEventProc, "mydata_proc",
        NULL))
    {
        fprintf(stderr, "Cannot register PGEventProc\n");
        PQfinish(conn);
        return 1;
    }

    /* conn instanceData is available */
    data = PQinstanceData(conn, myEventProc);

    /* Sends a PGEVT_RESULTCREATE to myEventProc */
    res = PQexec(conn, "SELECT 1 + 1");

    /* result instanceData is available */
    data = PQresultInstanceData(res, myEventProc);

    /* If PG_COPYRES_EVENTS is used, sends a PGEVT_RESULTCOPY to
    myEventProc */
}
```

```
    res_copy = PQcopyResult(res, PG_COPYRES_TUPLES |
PG_COPYRES_EVENTS);

    /* result instanceData is available if PG_COPYRES_EVENTS was
    * used during the PQcopyResult call.
    */
    data = PQresultInstanceData(res_copy, myEventProc);

    /* Both clears send a PGEVT_RESULTDESTROY to myEventProc */
    PQclear(res);
    PQclear(res_copy);

    /* Sends a PGEVT_CONNDESTROY to myEventProc */
    PQfinish(conn);

    return 0;
}

static int
myEventProc(PGEventId evtId, void *evtInfo, void *passThrough)
{
    switch (evtId)
    {
        case PGEVT_REGISTER:
        {
            PGEventRegister *e = (PGEventRegister *)evtInfo;
            mydata *data = get_mydata(e->conn);

            /* associate app specific data with connection */
            PQsetInstanceData(e->conn, myEventProc, data);
            break;
        }

        case PGEVT_CONNRESET:
        {
            PGEventConnReset *e = (PGEventConnReset *)evtInfo;
            mydata *data = PQinstanceData(e->conn, myEventProc);

            if (data)
                memset(data, 0, sizeof(mydata));
            break;
        }

        case PGEVT_CONNDESTROY:
        {
            PGEventConnDestroy *e = (PGEventConnDestroy *)evtInfo;
            mydata *data = PQinstanceData(e->conn, myEventProc);

            /* free instance data because the conn is being
            destroyed */
            if (data)
                free_mydata(data);
            break;
        }

        case PGEVT_RESULTCREATE:
        {
```



```
        PGEventResultCreate *e = (PGEventResultCreate
*)evtInfo;
        mydata *conn_data = PQinstanceData(e->conn,
myEventProc);
        mydata *res_data = dup_mydata(conn_data);

        /* associate app specific data with result (copy it
from conn) */
        PQresultSetInstanceData(e->result, myEventProc,
res_data);
        break;
    }

    case PGEVT_RESULTCOPY:
    {
        PGEventResultCopy *e = (PGEventResultCopy *)evtInfo;
        mydata *src_data = PQresultInstanceData(e->src,
myEventProc);
        mydata *dest_data = dup_mydata(src_data);

        /* associate app specific data with result (copy it
from a result) */
        PQresultSetInstanceData(e->dest, myEventProc,
dest_data);
        break;
    }

    case PGEVT_RESULTDESTROY:
    {
        PGEventResultDestroy *e = (PGEventResultDestroy
*)evtInfo;
        mydata *data = PQresultInstanceData(e->result,
myEventProc);

        /* free instance data because the result is being
destroyed */
        if (data)
            free_mydata(data);
        break;
    }

    /* unknown event ID, just return true. */
    default:
        break;
}

return true; /* event processing succeeded */
}
```

## 34.15. Environment Variables

The following environment variables can be used to select default connection parameter values, which will be used by `PQconnectdb`, `PQsetdbLogin` and `PQsetdb` if no value is directly specified by the calling code. These are useful to avoid hard-coding database connection information into simple client applications, for example.

- `PGHOST` behaves the same as the host connection parameter.

- `PGHOSTADDR` behaves the same as the `hostaddr` connection parameter. This can be set instead of or in addition to `PGHOST` to avoid DNS lookup overhead.
- `PGPORT` behaves the same as the `port` connection parameter.
- `PGDATABASE` behaves the same as the `dbname` connection parameter.
- `PGUSER` behaves the same as the `user` connection parameter.
- `PGPASSWORD` behaves the same as the `password` connection parameter. Use of this environment variable is not recommended for security reasons, as some operating systems allow non-root users to see process environment variables via `ps`; instead consider using a password file (see Section 34.16).
- `PGPASSFILE` behaves the same as the `passfile` connection parameter.
- `PGREQUIREAUTH` behaves the same as the `require_auth` connection parameter.
- `PGCHANNELBINDING` behaves the same as the `channel_binding` connection parameter.
- `PGSERVICE` behaves the same as the `service` connection parameter.
- `PGSERVICEFILE` specifies the name of the per-user connection service file (see Section 34.17). Defaults to `~/ .pg_service.conf`, or `%APPDATA%\postgresql\ .pg_service.conf` on Microsoft Windows.
- `PGOPTIONS` behaves the same as the `options` connection parameter.
- `PGAPPNAME` behaves the same as the `application_name` connection parameter.
- `PGSSLMODE` behaves the same as the `sslmode` connection parameter.
- `PGREQUIRESSL` behaves the same as the `requiressl` connection parameter. This environment variable is deprecated in favor of the `PGSSLMODE` variable; setting both variables suppresses the effect of this one.
- `PGSSLCOMPRESSION` behaves the same as the `sslcompression` connection parameter.
- `PGSSLCERT` behaves the same as the `sslcert` connection parameter.
- `PGSSLKEY` behaves the same as the `sslkey` connection parameter.
- `PGSSLCERTMODE` behaves the same as the `sslcertmode` connection parameter.
- `PGSSLROOTCERT` behaves the same as the `sslrootcert` connection parameter.
- `PGSSLCRL` behaves the same as the `sslcrll` connection parameter.
- `PGSSLCRLDIR` behaves the same as the `sslcrldir` connection parameter.
- `PGSSLSNI` behaves the same as the `sslsni` connection parameter.
- `PGREQUIREPEER` behaves the same as the `requirepeer` connection parameter.
- `PGSSLMINPROTOCOLVERSION` behaves the same as the `ssl_min_protocol_version` connection parameter.
- `PGSSLMAXPROTOCOLVERSION` behaves the same as the `ssl_max_protocol_version` connection parameter.
- `PGGSSENCMODE` behaves the same as the `gssencmode` connection parameter.
- `PGKRBSRVNAME` behaves the same as the `krbsrvname` connection parameter.
- `PGGSSLIB` behaves the same as the `gsslib` connection parameter.

- `PGSSSDELEGATION` behaves the same as the `gssdelegation` connection parameter.
- `PGCONNECT_TIMEOUT` behaves the same as the `connect_timeout` connection parameter.
- `PGCLIENTENCODING` behaves the same as the `client_encoding` connection parameter.
- `PGTARGETSESSIONATTRS` behaves the same as the `target_session_attrs` connection parameter.
- `PGLOADBALANCEHOSTS` behaves the same as the `load_balance_hosts` connection parameter.

The following environment variables can be used to specify default behavior for each PostgreSQL session. (See also the `ALTER ROLE` and `ALTER DATABASE` commands for ways to set default behavior on a per-user or per-database basis.)

- `PGDATESTYLE` sets the default style of date/time representation. (Equivalent to `SET datestyle TO ...`.)
- `PGTZ` sets the default time zone. (Equivalent to `SET timezone TO ...`.)
- `PGGEQO` sets the default mode for the genetic query optimizer. (Equivalent to `SET geqo TO ...`.)

Refer to the SQL command `SET` for information on correct values for these environment variables.

The following environment variables determine internal behavior of libpq; they override compiled-in defaults.

- `PGSYSCONFDIR` sets the directory containing the `pg_service.conf` file and in a future version possibly other system-wide configuration files.
- `PGLOCALEDIR` sets the directory containing the `locale` files for message localization.

## 34.16. The Password File

The file `.pgpass` in a user's home directory can contain passwords to be used if the connection requires a password (and no password has been specified otherwise). On Microsoft Windows the file is named `%APPDATA%\postgresql\pgpass.conf` (where `%APPDATA%` refers to the Application Data subdirectory in the user's profile). Alternatively, the password file to use can be specified using the connection parameter `passfile` or the environment variable `PGPASSFILE`.

This file should contain lines of the following format:

```
hostname:port:database:username:password
```

(You can add a reminder comment to the file by copying the line above and preceding it with `#`.) Each of the first four fields can be a literal value, or `*`, which matches anything. The password field from the first line that matches the current connection parameters will be used. (Therefore, put more-specific entries first when you are using wildcards.) If an entry needs to contain `:` or `\`, escape this character with `\`. The host name field is matched to the `host` connection parameter if that is specified, otherwise to the `hostaddr` parameter if that is specified; if neither are given then the host name `localhost` is searched for. The host name `localhost` is also searched for when the connection is a Unix-domain socket connection and the `host` parameter matches libpq's default socket directory path. In a standby server, a database field of `replication` matches streaming replication connections made to the primary server. The database field is of limited usefulness otherwise, because users have the same password for all databases in the same cluster.

On Unix systems, the permissions on a password file must disallow any access to world or group; achieve this by a command such as `chmod 0600 ~/.pgpass`. If the permissions are less strict than this, the file will be ignored. On Microsoft Windows, it is assumed that the file is stored in a directory that is secure, so no special permissions check is made.

## 34.17. The Connection Service File

The connection service file allows libpq connection parameters to be associated with a single service name. That service name can then be specified in a libpq connection string, and the associated settings will be used. This allows connection parameters to be modified without requiring a recompile of the libpq-using application. The service name can also be specified using the `PGSERVICE` environment variable.

Service names can be defined in either a per-user service file or a system-wide file. If the same service name exists in both the user and the system file, the user file takes precedence. By default, the per-user service file is named `~/.pg_service.conf`. On Microsoft Windows, it is named `%APPDATA%\postgresql\pg_service.conf` (where `%APPDATA%` refers to the Application Data subdirectory in the user's profile). A different file name can be specified by setting the environment variable `PGSERVICEFILE`. The system-wide file is named `pg_service.conf`. By default it is sought in the `etc` directory of the PostgreSQL installation (use `pg_config --sysconfdir` to identify this directory precisely). Another directory, but not a different file name, can be specified by setting the environment variable `PGSYSCONFDIR`.

Either service file uses an “INI file” format where the section name is the service name and the parameters are connection parameters; see Section 34.1.2 for a list. For example:

```
# comment
[mydb]
host=somehost
port=5433
user=admin
```

An example file is provided in the PostgreSQL installation at `share/pg_service.conf.sample`.

Connection parameters obtained from a service file are combined with parameters obtained from other sources. A service file setting overrides the corresponding environment variable, and in turn can be overridden by a value given directly in the connection string. For example, using the above service file, a connection string `service=mydb port=5434` will use host `somehost`, port `5434`, user `admin`, and other parameters as set by environment variables or built-in defaults.

## 34.18. LDAP Lookup of Connection Parameters

If libpq has been compiled with LDAP support (option `--with-ldap` for `configure`) it is possible to retrieve connection options like `host` or `dbname` via LDAP from a central server. The advantage is that if the connection parameters for a database change, the connection information doesn't have to be updated on all client machines.

LDAP connection parameter lookup uses the connection service file `pg_service.conf` (see Section 34.17). A line in a `pg_service.conf` stanza that starts with `ldap://` will be recognized as an LDAP URL and an LDAP query will be performed. The result must be a list of `keyword = value` pairs which will be used to set connection options. The URL must conform to RFC 1959<sup>4</sup> and be of the form

```
ldap://[hostname[:port]]/search_base?attribute?search_scope?filter
```

where `hostname` defaults to `localhost` and `port` defaults to `389`.

<sup>4</sup> <https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc1959>

Processing of `pg_service.conf` is terminated after a successful LDAP lookup, but is continued if the LDAP server cannot be contacted. This is to provide a fallback with further LDAP URL lines that point to different LDAP servers, classical `keyword = value` pairs, or default connection options. If you would rather get an error message in this case, add a syntactically incorrect line after the LDAP URL.

A sample LDAP entry that has been created with the LDIF file

```
version:1
dn:cn=mydatabase,dc=mycompany,dc=com
changetype:add
objectclass:top
objectclass:device
cn:mydatabase
description:host=dbserver.mycompany.com
description:port=5439
description:dbname=mydb
description:user=mydb_user
description:sslmode=require
```

might be queried with the following LDAP URL:

```
ldap://ldap.mycompany.com/dc=mycompany,dc=com?description?one?
(cn=mydatabase)
```

You can also mix regular service file entries with LDAP lookups. A complete example for a stanza in `pg_service.conf` would be:

```
# only host and port are stored in LDAP, specify dbname and user
explicitly
[customerdb]
dbname=customer
user=appuser
ldap://ldap.acme.com/cn=dbserver,cn=hosts?pgconnectinfo?base?
(objectclass=*)
```

## 34.19. SSL Support

PostgreSQL has native support for using SSL connections to encrypt client/server communications using TLS protocols for increased security. See Section 19.9 for details about the server-side SSL functionality.

libpq reads the system-wide OpenSSL configuration file. By default, this file is named `openssl.cnf` and is located in the directory reported by `openssl version -d`. This default can be overridden by setting environment variable `OPENSSL_CONF` to the name of the desired configuration file.

### 34.19.1. Client Verification of Server Certificates

By default, PostgreSQL will not perform any verification of the server certificate. This means that it is possible to spoof the server identity (for example by modifying a DNS record or by taking over the server IP address) without the client knowing. In order to prevent spoofing, the client must be able to verify the server's identity via a chain of trust. A chain of trust is established by placing a root (self-signed) certificate authority (CA) certificate on one computer and a leaf certificate *signed* by the root certificate on another computer. It is also possible to use an “intermediate” certificate which is signed by the root certificate and signs leaf certificates.

To allow the client to verify the identity of the server, place a root certificate on the client and a leaf certificate signed by the root certificate on the server. To allow the server to verify the identity of the client, place a root certificate on the server and a leaf certificate signed by the root certificate on the client. One or more intermediate certificates (usually stored with the leaf certificate) can also be used to link the leaf certificate to the root certificate.

Once a chain of trust has been established, there are two ways for the client to validate the leaf certificate sent by the server. If the parameter `sslmode` is set to `verify-ca`, libpq will verify that the server is trustworthy by checking the certificate chain up to the root certificate stored on the client. If `sslmode` is set to `verify-full`, libpq will *also* verify that the server host name matches the name stored in the server certificate. The SSL connection will fail if the server certificate cannot be verified. `verify-full` is recommended in most security-sensitive environments.

In `verify-full` mode, the host name is matched against the certificate's Subject Alternative Name attribute(s) (SAN), or against the Common Name attribute if no SAN of type `dnsName` is present. If the certificate's name attribute starts with an asterisk (\*), the asterisk will be treated as a wildcard, which will match all characters *except* a dot (.). This means the certificate will not match subdomains. If the connection is made using an IP address instead of a host name, the IP address will be matched (without doing any DNS lookups) against SANs of type `iPAddress` or `dnsName`. If no `iPAddress` SAN is present and no matching `dnsName` SAN is present, the host IP address is matched against the Common Name attribute.

### Note

For backward compatibility with earlier versions of PostgreSQL, the host IP address is verified in a manner different from RFC 6125<sup>5</sup>. The host IP address is always matched against `dnsName` SANs as well as `iPAddress` SANs, and can be matched against the Common Name attribute if no relevant SANs exist.

To allow server certificate verification, one or more root certificates must be placed in the file `~/.postgresql/root.crt` in the user's home directory. (On Microsoft Windows the file is named `%APPDATA%\postgresql\root.crt`.) Intermediate certificates should also be added to the file if they are needed to link the certificate chain sent by the server to the root certificates stored on the client.

Certificate Revocation List (CRL) entries are also checked if the file `~/.postgresql/root.crl` exists (`%APPDATA%\postgresql\root.crl` on Microsoft Windows).

The location of the root certificate file and the CRL can be changed by setting the connection parameters `sslrootcert` and `sslcrl` or the environment variables `PGSSLROOTCERT` and `PGSSLCRL`. `sslcrldir` or the environment variable `PGSSLCRLDIR` can also be used to specify a directory containing CRL files.

### Note

For backwards compatibility with earlier versions of PostgreSQL, if a root CA file exists, the behavior of `sslmode=require` will be the same as that of `verify-ca`, meaning the server certificate is validated against the CA. Relying on this behavior is discouraged, and applications that need certificate validation should always use `verify-ca` or `verify-full`.

## 34.19.2. Client Certificates

If the server attempts to verify the identity of the client by requesting the client's leaf certificate, libpq will send the certificate(s) stored in file `~/.postgresql/postgresql.crt` in the user's home

<sup>5</sup> <https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc6125>

directory. The certificates must chain to the root certificate trusted by the server. A matching private key file `~/.postgresql/postgresql.key` must also be present. On Microsoft Windows these files are named `%APPDATA%\postgresql\postgresql.crt` and `%APPDATA%\postgresql\postgresql.key`. The location of the certificate and key files can be overridden by the connection parameters `sslcert` and `sslkey`, or by the environment variables `PGSSLCERT` and `PGSSLKEY`.

On Unix systems, the permissions on the private key file must disallow any access to world or group; achieve this by a command such as `chmod 0600 ~/.postgresql/postgresql.key`. Alternatively, the file can be owned by root and have group read access (that is, 0640 permissions). That setup is intended for installations where certificate and key files are managed by the operating system. The user of libpq should then be made a member of the group that has access to those certificate and key files. (On Microsoft Windows, there is no file permissions check, since the `%APPDATA%\postgresql` directory is presumed secure.)

The first certificate in `postgresql.crt` must be the client's certificate because it must match the client's private key. “Intermediate” certificates can be optionally appended to the file — doing so avoids requiring storage of intermediate certificates on the server (`ssl_ca_file`).

The certificate and key may be in PEM or ASN.1 DER format.

The key may be stored in cleartext or encrypted with a passphrase using any algorithm supported by OpenSSL, like AES-128. If the key is stored encrypted, then the passphrase may be provided in the `sslpassword` connection option. If an encrypted key is supplied and the `sslpassword` option is absent or blank, a password will be prompted for interactively by OpenSSL with a `Enter PEM pass phrase:` prompt if a TTY is available. Applications can override the client certificate prompt and the handling of the `sslpassword` parameter by supplying their own key password callback; see `PQsetSSLKeyPassHook_OpenSSL`.

For instructions on creating certificates, see Section 19.9.5.

## 34.19.3. Protection Provided in Different Modes

The different values for the `sslmode` parameter provide different levels of protection. SSL can provide protection against three types of attacks:

### Eavesdropping

If a third party can examine the network traffic between the client and the server, it can read both connection information (including the user name and password) and the data that is passed. SSL uses encryption to prevent this.

### Man-in-the-middle (MITM)

If a third party can modify the data while passing between the client and server, it can pretend to be the server and therefore see and modify data *even if it is encrypted*. The third party can then forward the connection information and data to the original server, making it impossible to detect this attack. Common vectors to do this include DNS poisoning and address hijacking, whereby the client is directed to a different server than intended. There are also several other attack methods that can accomplish this. SSL uses certificate verification to prevent this, by authenticating the server to the client.

### Impersonation

If a third party can pretend to be an authorized client, it can simply access data it should not have access to. Typically this can happen through insecure password management. SSL uses client certificates to prevent this, by making sure that only holders of valid certificates can access the server.

For a connection to be known SSL-secured, SSL usage must be configured on *both the client and the server* before the connection is made. If it is only configured on the server, the client may end up

sending sensitive information (e.g., passwords) before it knows that the server requires high security. In libpq, secure connections can be ensured by setting the `sslmode` parameter to `verify-full` or `verify-ca`, and providing the system with a root certificate to verify against. This is analogous to using an `https` URL for encrypted web browsing.

Once the server has been authenticated, the client can pass sensitive data. This means that up until this point, the client does not need to know if certificates will be used for authentication, making it safe to specify that only in the server configuration.

All SSL options carry overhead in the form of encryption and key-exchange, so there is a trade-off that has to be made between performance and security. Table 34.1 illustrates the risks the different `sslmode` values protect against, and what statement they make about security and overhead.

**Table 34.1. SSL Mode Descriptions**

<code>sslmode</code>	Eavesdropping protection	MITM protection	Statement
<code>disable</code>	No	No	I don't care about security, and I don't want to pay the overhead of encryption.
<code>allow</code>	Maybe	No	I don't care about security, but I will pay the overhead of encryption if the server insists on it.
<code>prefer</code>	Maybe	No	I don't care about encryption, but I wish to pay the overhead of encryption if the server supports it.
<code>require</code>	Yes	No	I want my data to be encrypted, and I accept the overhead. I trust that the network will make sure I always connect to the server I want.
<code>verify-ca</code>	Yes	Depends on CA policy	I want my data encrypted, and I accept the overhead. I want to be sure that I connect to a server that I trust.
<code>verify-full</code>	Yes	Yes	I want my data encrypted, and I accept the overhead. I want to be sure that I connect to a server I trust, and that it's the one I specify.

The difference between `verify-ca` and `verify-full` depends on the policy of the root CA. If a public CA is used, `verify-ca` allows connections to a server that *somebody else* may have registered with the CA. In this case, `verify-full` should always be used. If a local CA is used, or even a self-signed certificate, using `verify-ca` often provides enough protection.

The default value for `sslmode` is `prefer`. As is shown in the table, this makes no sense from a security point of view, and it only promises performance overhead if possible. It is only provided as the default for backward compatibility, and is not recommended in secure deployments.

## 34.19.4. SSL Client File Usage

Table 34.2 summarizes the files that are relevant to the SSL setup on the client.

**Table 34.2. Libpq/Client SSL File Usage**

File	Contents	Effect
<code>~/.postgresql/postgresql.crt</code>	client certificate	sent to server



File	Contents	Effect
<code>~/.postgresql/postgresql.key</code>	client private key	proves client certificate sent by owner; does not indicate certificate owner is trustworthy
<code>~/.postgresql/root.crt</code>	trusted certificate authorities	checks that server certificate is signed by a trusted certificate authority
<code>~/.postgresql/root.crl</code>	certificates revoked by certificate authorities	server certificate must not be on this list

## 34.19.5. SSL Library Initialization

If your application initializes `libssl` and/or `libcrypto` libraries and `libpq` is built with SSL support, you should call `PQinitOpenSSL` to tell `libpq` that the `libssl` and/or `libcrypto` libraries have been initialized by your application, so that `libpq` will not also initialize those libraries. However, this is unnecessary when using OpenSSL version 1.1.0 or later, as duplicate initializations are no longer problematic.

`PQinitOpenSSL`

Allows applications to select which security libraries to initialize.

```
void PQinitOpenSSL(int do_ssl, int do_crypto);
```

When `do_ssl` is non-zero, `libpq` will initialize the OpenSSL library before first opening a database connection. When `do_crypto` is non-zero, the `libcrypto` library will be initialized. By default (if `PQinitOpenSSL` is not called), both libraries are initialized. When SSL support is not compiled in, this function is present but does nothing.

If your application uses and initializes either OpenSSL or its underlying `libcrypto` library, you *must* call this function with zeroes for the appropriate parameter(s) before first opening a database connection. Also be sure that you have done that initialization before opening a database connection.

`PQinitSSL`

Allows applications to select which security libraries to initialize.

```
void PQinitSSL(int do_ssl);
```

This function is equivalent to `PQinitOpenSSL(do_ssl, do_ssl)`. It is sufficient for applications that initialize both or neither of OpenSSL and `libcrypto`.

`PQinitSSL` has been present since PostgreSQL 8.0, while `PQinitOpenSSL` was added in PostgreSQL 8.4, so `PQinitSSL` might be preferable for applications that need to work with older versions of `libpq`.

## 34.20. Behavior in Threaded Programs

`libpq` is reentrant and thread-safe by default. You might need to use special compiler command-line options when you compile your application code. Refer to your system's documentation for information about how to build thread-enabled applications, or look in `src/Makefile.global` for `PTHREAD_CFLAGS` and `PTHREAD_LIBS`. This function allows the querying of `libpq`'s thread-safe status:

`PQisthreadsafe`

Returns the thread safety status of the `libpq` library.

```
int PQisthreadsafe();
```

Returns 1 if the libpq is thread-safe and 0 if it is not.

One thread restriction is that no two threads attempt to manipulate the same `PGconn` object at the same time. In particular, you cannot issue concurrent commands from different threads through the same connection object. (If you need to run concurrent commands, use multiple connections.)

`PGresult` objects are normally read-only after creation, and so can be passed around freely between threads. However, if you use any of the `PGresult`-modifying functions described in Section 34.12 or Section 34.14, it's up to you to avoid concurrent operations on the same `PGresult`, too.

The deprecated functions `PQrequestCancel` and `PQoidStatus` are not thread-safe and should not be used in multithread programs. `PQrequestCancel` can be replaced by `PQcancel`. `PQoidStatus` can be replaced by `PQoidValue`.

If you are using Kerberos inside your application (in addition to inside libpq), you will need to do locking around Kerberos calls because Kerberos functions are not thread-safe. See function `PQregisterThreadLock` in the libpq source code for a way to do cooperative locking between libpq and your application.

## 34.21. Building libpq Programs

To build (i.e., compile and link) a program using libpq you need to do all of the following things:

- Include the `libpq-fe.h` header file:

```
#include <libpq-fe.h>
```

If you failed to do that then you will normally get error messages from your compiler similar to:

```
foo.c: In function `main':
foo.c:34: `PGconn' undeclared (first use in this function)
foo.c:35: `PGresult' undeclared (first use in this function)
foo.c:54: `CONNECTION_BAD' undeclared (first use in this
function)
foo.c:68: `PGRES_COMMAND_OK' undeclared (first use in this
function)
foo.c:95: `PGRES_TUPLES_OK' undeclared (first use in this
function)
```

- Point your compiler to the directory where the PostgreSQL header files were installed, by supplying the `-I` option to your compiler. (In some cases the compiler will look into the directory in question by default, so you can omit this option.) For instance, your compile command line could look like:

```
cc -c -I/usr/local/pgsql/include testprog.c
```

If you are using makefiles then add the option to the `CPPFLAGS` variable:

```
CPPFLAGS += -I/usr/local/pgsql/include
```

If there is any chance that your program might be compiled by other users then you should not hardcode the directory location like that. Instead, you can run the utility `pg_config` to find out where the header files are on the local system:

```
$ pg_config --includedir
/usr/local/include
```

If you have `pkg-config` installed, you can run instead:

```
$ pkg-config --cflags libpq
-I/usr/local/include
```

Note that this will already include the `-I` in front of the path.

Failure to specify the correct option to the compiler will result in an error message such as:

```
testlibpq.c:8:22: libpq-fe.h: No such file or directory
```

- When linking the final program, specify the option `-lpq` so that the `libpq` library gets pulled in, as well as the option `-Ldirectory` to point the compiler to the directory where the `libpq` library resides. (Again, the compiler will search some directories by default.) For maximum portability, put the `-L` option before the `-lpq` option. For example:

```
cc -o testprog testprog1.o testprog2.o -L/usr/local/pgsql/lib -lpq
```

You can find out the library directory using `pg_config` as well:

```
$ pg_config --libdir
/usr/local/pgsql/lib
```

Or again use `pkg-config`:

```
$ pkg-config --libs libpq
-L/usr/local/pgsql/lib -lpq
```

Note again that this prints the full options, not only the path.

Error messages that point to problems in this area could look like the following:

```
testlibpq.o: In function `main':
testlibpq.o(.text+0x60): undefined reference to `PQsetdbLogin'
testlibpq.o(.text+0x71): undefined reference to `PQstatus'
testlibpq.o(.text+0xa4): undefined reference to `PQerrorMessage'
```

This means you forgot `-lpq`.

```
/usr/bin/ld: cannot find -lpq
```

This means you forgot the `-L` option or did not specify the right directory.

## 34.22. Example Programs

These examples and others can be found in the directory `src/test/examples` in the source code distribution.

**Example 34.1. libpq Example Program 1**

```
/*
 * src/test/examples/testlibpq.c
 *
 *
 * testlibpq.c
 *
 *      Test the C version of libpq, the PostgreSQL frontend
 *      library.
 */
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include "libpq-fe.h"

static void
exit_nicely(PGconn *conn)
{
    PQfinish(conn);
    exit(1);
}

int
main(int argc, char **argv)
{
    const char *conninfo;
    PGconn      *conn;
    PGresult     *res;
    int          nFields;
    int          i,
                j;

    /*
     * If the user supplies a parameter on the command line, use it
     * as the
     * conninfo string; otherwise default to setting
     * dbname=postgres and using
     * environment variables or defaults for all other connection
     * parameters.
     */
    if (argc > 1)
        conninfo = argv[1];
    else
        conninfo = "dbname = postgres";

    /* Make a connection to the database */
    conn = PQconnectdb(conninfo);

    /* Check to see that the backend connection was successfully
     * made */
    if (PQstatus(conn) != CONNECTION_OK)
    {
        fprintf(stderr, "%s", PQerrorMessage(conn));
        exit_nicely(conn);
    }
}
```

```
/* Set always-secure search path, so malicious users can't take
control. */
res = PQexec(conn,
              "SELECT pg_catalog.set_config('search_path', '',
false)");
if (PQresultStatus(res) != PGRES_TUPLES_OK)
{
    fprintf(stderr, "SET failed: %s", PQerrorMessage(conn));
    PQclear(res);
    exit_nicely(conn);
}

/*
 * Should PQclear PGresult whenever it is no longer needed to
avoid memory
 * leaks
 */
PQclear(res);

/*
 * Our test case here involves using a cursor, for which we
must be inside
 * a transaction block. We could do the whole thing with a
single
 * PQexec() of "select * from pg_database", but that's too
trivial to make
 * a good example.
 */

/* Start a transaction block */
res = PQexec(conn, "BEGIN");
if (PQresultStatus(res) != PGRES_COMMAND_OK)
{
    fprintf(stderr, "BEGIN command failed: %s",
PQerrorMessage(conn));
    PQclear(res);
    exit_nicely(conn);
}
PQclear(res);

/*
 * Fetch rows from pg_database, the system catalog of databases
 */
res = PQexec(conn, "DECLARE myportal CURSOR FOR select * from
pg_database");
if (PQresultStatus(res) != PGRES_COMMAND_OK)
{
    fprintf(stderr, "DECLARE CURSOR failed: %s",
PQerrorMessage(conn));
    PQclear(res);
    exit_nicely(conn);
}
PQclear(res);

res = PQexec(conn, "FETCH ALL in myportal");
if (PQresultStatus(res) != PGRES_TUPLES_OK)
{
```

```
        fprintf(stderr, "FETCH ALL failed: %s",
PQerrorMessage(conn));
        PQclear(res);
        exit_nicely(conn);
    }

    /* first, print out the attribute names */
    nFields = PQnfields(res);
    for (i = 0; i < nFields; i++)
        printf("%-15s", PQfname(res, i));
    printf("\n\n");

    /* next, print out the rows */
    for (i = 0; i < PQntuples(res); i++)
    {
        for (j = 0; j < nFields; j++)
            printf("%-15s", PQgetvalue(res, i, j));
        printf("\n");
    }

    PQclear(res);

    /* close the portal ... we don't bother to check for errors ...
*/
    res = PQexec(conn, "CLOSE myportal");
    PQclear(res);

    /* end the transaction */
    res = PQexec(conn, "END");
    PQclear(res);

    /* close the connection to the database and cleanup */
    PQfinish(conn);

    return 0;
}
```

### Example 34.2. libpq Example Program 2

```
/*
 * src/test/examples/testlibpq2.c
 *
 *
 * testlibpq2.c
 *     Test of the asynchronous notification interface
 *
 * Start this program, then from psql in another window do
 *     NOTIFY TBL2;
 * Repeat four times to get this program to exit.
 *
 * Or, if you want to get fancy, try this:
 * populate a database with the following commands
 * (provided in src/test/examples/testlibpq2.sql):
 *
 *     CREATE SCHEMA TESTLIBPQ2;
```

```
*   SET search_path = TESTLIBPQ2;
*   CREATE TABLE TBL1 (i int4);
*   CREATE TABLE TBL2 (i int4);
*   CREATE RULE r1 AS ON INSERT TO TBL1 DO
*       (INSERT INTO TBL2 VALUES (new.i); NOTIFY TBL2);
*
* Start this program, then from psql do this four times:
*
*   INSERT INTO TESTLIBPQ2.TBL1 VALUES (10);
*/

#ifdef WIN32
#include <windows.h>
#endif
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <string.h>
#include <errno.h>
#include <sys/select.h>
#include <sys/time.h>
#include <sys/types.h>

#include "libpq-fe.h"

static void
exit_nicely(PGconn *conn)
{
    PQfinish(conn);
    exit(1);
}

int
main(int argc, char **argv)
{
    const char *conninfo;
    PGconn     *conn;
    PGresult    *res;
    PGnotify    *notify;
    int         nnotifies;

    /*
     * If the user supplies a parameter on the command line, use it
     * as the
     * conninfo string; otherwise default to setting
     * dbname=postgres and using
     * environment variables or defaults for all other connection
     * parameters.
     */
    if (argc > 1)
        conninfo = argv[1];
    else
        conninfo = "dbname = postgres";

    /* Make a connection to the database */
    conn = PQconnectdb(conninfo);

    /* Check to see that the backend connection was successfully
     * made */
}
```

```
if (PQstatus(conn) != CONNECTION_OK)
{
    fprintf(stderr, "%s", PQerrorMessage(conn));
    exit_nicely(conn);
}

/* Set always-secure search path, so malicious users can't take
control. */
res = PQexec(conn,
              "SELECT pg_catalog.set_config('search_path', '',
false)");
if (PQresultStatus(res) != PGRES_TUPLES_OK)
{
    fprintf(stderr, "SET failed: %s", PQerrorMessage(conn));
    PQclear(res);
    exit_nicely(conn);
}

/*
 * Should PQclear PGresult whenever it is no longer needed to
avoid memory
 * leaks
 */
PQclear(res);

/*
 * Issue LISTEN command to enable notifications from the rule's
NOTIFY.
 */
res = PQexec(conn, "LISTEN TBL2");
if (PQresultStatus(res) != PGRES_COMMAND_OK)
{
    fprintf(stderr, "LISTEN command failed: %s",
PQerrorMessage(conn));
    PQclear(res);
    exit_nicely(conn);
}
PQclear(res);

/* Quit after four notifies are received. */
nnotifies = 0;
while (nnotifies < 4)
{
    /*
     * Sleep until something happens on the connection. We use
select(2)
     * to wait for input, but you could also use poll() or
similar
     * facilities.
     */
    int sock;
    fd_set input_mask;

    sock = PQsocket(conn);

    if (sock < 0)
        break; /* shouldn't happen */
```



```
    FD_ZERO(&input_mask);
    FD_SET(sock, &input_mask);

    if (select(sock + 1, &input_mask, NULL, NULL, NULL) < 0)
    {
        fprintf(stderr, "select() failed: %s\n",
strerror(errno));
        exit_nicely(conn);
    }

    /* Now check for input */
    PQconsumeInput(conn);
    while ((notify = PQnotifies(conn)) != NULL)
    {
        fprintf(stderr,
            "ASYNC NOTIFY of '%s' received from backend PID
%d\n",
            notify->relname, notify->be_pid);
        PQfreemem(notify);
        nnotifies++;
        PQconsumeInput(conn);
    }
}

fprintf(stderr, "Done.\n");

/* close the connection to the database and cleanup */
PQfinish(conn);

return 0;
}
```

### Example 34.3. libpq Example Program 3

```
/*
 * src/test/examples/testlibpq3.c
 *
 *
 * testlibpq3.c
 *     Test out-of-line parameters and binary I/O.
 *
 * Before running this, populate a database with the following
 * commands
 * (provided in src/test/examples/testlibpq3.sql):
 *
 * CREATE SCHEMA testlibpq3;
 * SET search_path = testlibpq3;
 * SET standard_conforming_strings = ON;
 * CREATE TABLE test1 (i int4, t text, b bytea);
 * INSERT INTO test1 values (1, 'joe's place',
 '\000\001\002\003\004');
 * INSERT INTO test1 values (2, 'ho there',
 '\004\003\002\001\000');
 *
 * The expected output is:
```

```
*
* tuple 0: got
* i = (4 bytes) 1
* t = (11 bytes) 'joe's place'
* b = (5 bytes) \000\001\002\003\004
*
* tuple 0: got
* i = (4 bytes) 2
* t = (8 bytes) 'ho there'
* b = (5 bytes) \004\003\002\001\000
*/

#ifdef WIN32
#include <windows.h>
#endif

#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <stdint.h>
#include <string.h>
#include <sys/types.h>
#include "libpq-fe.h"

/* for ntohl/htonl */
#include <netinet/in.h>
#include <arpa/inet.h>

static void
exit_nicely(PGconn *conn)
{
    PQfinish(conn);
    exit(1);
}

/*
 * This function prints a query result that is a binary-format
 * fetch from
 * a table defined as in the comment above. We split it out
 * because the
 * main() function uses it twice.
 */
static void
show_binary_results(PGresult *res)
{
    int          i,
                j;
    int          i_fnum,
                t_fnum,
                b_fnum;

    /* Use PQfnumber to avoid assumptions about field order in
     result */
    i_fnum = PQfnumber(res, "i");
    t_fnum = PQfnumber(res, "t");
    b_fnum = PQfnumber(res, "b");

    for (i = 0; i < PQntuples(res); i++)
```

```
    {
        char        *iptr;
        char        *tptr;
        char        *bptr;
        int         blen;
        int         ival;

        /* Get the field values (we ignore possibility they are
null!) */
        iptr = PQgetvalue(res, i, i_fnum);
        tptr = PQgetvalue(res, i, t_fnum);
        bptr = PQgetvalue(res, i, b_fnum);

        /*
         * The binary representation of INT4 is in network byte
order, which
         * we'd better coerce to the local byte order.
         */
        ival = ntohl(*(uint32_t *) iptr);

        /*
         * The binary representation of TEXT is, well, text, and
since libpq
         * was nice enough to append a zero byte to it, it'll work
just fine
         * as a C string.
         *
         * The binary representation of BYTEA is a bunch of bytes,
which could
         * include embedded nulls so we have to pay attention to
field length.
         */
        blen = PQgetlength(res, i, b_fnum);

        printf("tuple %d: got\n", i);
        printf(" i = (%d bytes) %d\n",
            PQgetlength(res, i, i_fnum), ival);
        printf(" t = (%d bytes) '%s'\n",
            PQgetlength(res, i, t_fnum), tptr);
        printf(" b = (%d bytes) ", blen);
        for (j = 0; j < blen; j++)
            printf("\\%03o", bptr[j]);
        printf("\n\n");
    }
}

int
main(int argc, char **argv)
{
    const char *conninfo;
    PGconn     *conn;
    PGresult    *res;
    const char *paramValues[1];
    int         paramLengths[1];
    int         paramFormats[1];
    uint32_t     binaryIntVal;

    /*
```

```
    * If the user supplies a parameter on the command line, use it
    as the
    * conninfo string; otherwise default to setting
    dbname=postgres and using
    * environment variables or defaults for all other connection
    parameters.
    */
    if (argc > 1)
        conninfo = argv[1];
    else
        conninfo = "dbname = postgres";

    /* Make a connection to the database */
    conn = PQconnectdb(conninfo);

    /* Check to see that the backend connection was successfully
    made */
    if (PQstatus(conn) != CONNECTION_OK)
    {
        fprintf(stderr, "%s", PQerrorMessage(conn));
        exit_nicely(conn);
    }

    /* Set always-secure search path, so malicious users can't take
    control. */
    res = PQexec(conn, "SET search_path = testlibpq3");
    if (PQresultStatus(res) != PGRES_COMMAND_OK)
    {
        fprintf(stderr, "SET failed: %s", PQerrorMessage(conn));
        PQclear(res);
        exit_nicely(conn);
    }
    PQclear(res);

    /*
    * The point of this program is to illustrate use of
    PQexecParams() with
    * out-of-line parameters, as well as binary transmission of
    data.
    *
    * This first example transmits the parameters as text, but
    receives the
    * results in binary format. By using out-of-line parameters
    we can avoid
    * a lot of tedious mucking about with quoting and escaping,
    even though
    * the data is text. Notice how we don't have to do anything
    special with
    * the quote mark in the parameter value.
    */

    /* Here is our out-of-line parameter value */
    paramValues[0] = "joe's place";

    res = PQexecParams(conn,
                        "SELECT * FROM test1 WHERE t = $1",
                        1,
                        /* one param */
```

```

                                NULL,      /* let the backend deduce param
type */
                                paramValues,
                                NULL,      /* don't need param lengths since
text */
                                NULL,      /* default to all text params */
                                1);       /* ask for binary results */

    if (PQresultStatus(res) != PGRES_TUPLES_OK)
    {
        fprintf(stderr, "SELECT failed: %s", PQerrorMessage(conn));
        PQclear(res);
        exit_nicely(conn);
    }

    show_binary_results(res);

    PQclear(res);

    /*
     * In this second example we transmit an integer parameter in
    binary form,
     * and again retrieve the results in binary form.
     *
     * Although we tell PQexecParams we are letting the backend
    deduce
     * parameter type, we really force the decision by casting the
    parameter
     * symbol in the query text. This is a good safety measure
    when sending
     * binary parameters.
     */

    /* Convert integer value "2" to network byte order */
    binaryIntVal = htonl((uint32_t) 2);

    /* Set up parameter arrays for PQexecParams */
    paramValues[0] = (char *) &binaryIntVal;
    paramLengths[0] = sizeof(binaryIntVal);
    paramFormats[0] = 1;          /* binary */

    res = PQexecParams(conn,
                        "SELECT * FROM test1 WHERE i = $1::int4",
                        1,         /* one param */
                        NULL,      /* let the backend deduce param
type */
                        paramValues,
                        paramLengths,
                        paramFormats,
                        1);       /* ask for binary results */

    if (PQresultStatus(res) != PGRES_TUPLES_OK)
    {
        fprintf(stderr, "SELECT failed: %s", PQerrorMessage(conn));
        PQclear(res);
        exit_nicely(conn);
    }
}
```

```
    show_binary_results(res);

    PQclear(res);

    /* close the connection to the database and cleanup */
    PQfinish(conn);

    return 0;
}
```

---

# Chapter 35. Large Objects

PostgreSQL has a *large object* facility, which provides stream-style access to user data that is stored in a special large-object structure. Streaming access is useful when working with data values that are too large to manipulate conveniently as a whole.

This chapter describes the implementation and the programming and query language interfaces to PostgreSQL large object data. We use the libpq C library for the examples in this chapter, but most programming interfaces native to PostgreSQL support equivalent functionality. Other interfaces might use the large object interface internally to provide generic support for large values. This is not described here.

## 35.1. Introduction

All large objects are stored in a single system table named `pg_largeobject`. Each large object also has an entry in the system table `pg_largeobject_metadata`. Large objects can be created, modified, and deleted using a read/write API that is similar to standard operations on files.

PostgreSQL also supports a storage system called “TOAST”, which automatically stores values larger than a single database page into a secondary storage area per table. This makes the large object facility partially obsolete. One remaining advantage of the large object facility is that it allows values up to 4 TB in size, whereas TOASTed fields can be at most 1 GB. Also, reading and updating portions of a large object can be done efficiently, while most operations on a TOASTed field will read or write the whole value as a unit.

## 35.2. Implementation Features

The large object implementation breaks large objects up into “chunks” and stores the chunks in rows in the database. A B-tree index guarantees fast searches for the correct chunk number when doing random access reads and writes.

The chunks stored for a large object do not have to be contiguous. For example, if an application opens a new large object, seeks to offset 1000000, and writes a few bytes there, this does not result in allocation of 1000000 bytes worth of storage; only of chunks covering the range of data bytes actually written. A read operation will, however, read out zeroes for any unallocated locations preceding the last existing chunk. This corresponds to the common behavior of “sparsely allocated” files in Unix file systems.

As of PostgreSQL 9.0, large objects have an owner and a set of access permissions, which can be managed using `GRANT` and `REVOKE`. `SELECT` privileges are required to read a large object, and `UPDATE` privileges are required to write or truncate it. Only the large object's owner (or a database superuser) can delete, comment on, or change the owner of a large object. To adjust this behavior for compatibility with prior releases, see the `lo_compat_privileges` run-time parameter.

## 35.3. Client Interfaces

This section describes the facilities that PostgreSQL's libpq client interface library provides for accessing large objects. The PostgreSQL large object interface is modeled after the Unix file-system interface, with analogues of `open`, `read`, `write`, `lseek`, etc.

All large object manipulation using these functions *must* take place within an SQL transaction block, since large object file descriptors are only valid for the duration of a transaction. Write operations, including `lo_open` with the `INV_WRITE` mode, are not allowed in a read-only transaction.

If an error occurs while executing any one of these functions, the function will return an otherwise-impossible value, typically 0 or -1. A message describing the error is stored in the connection object and can be retrieved with `PQerrorMessage`.

Client applications that use these functions should include the header file `libpq/libpq-fs.h` and link with the `libpq` library.

Client applications cannot use these functions while a `libpq` connection is in pipeline mode.

### 35.3.1. Creating a Large Object

The function

```
Oid lo_create(PGconn *conn, Oid lobjId);
```

creates a new large object. The OID to be assigned can be specified by *lobjId*; if so, failure occurs if that OID is already in use for some large object. If *lobjId* is `InvalidOid` (zero) then `lo_create` assigns an unused OID. The return value is the OID that was assigned to the new large object, or `InvalidOid` (zero) on failure.

An example:

```
inv_oid = lo_create(conn, desired_oid);
```

The older function

```
Oid lo_creat(PGconn *conn, int mode);
```

also creates a new large object, always assigning an unused OID. The return value is the OID that was assigned to the new large object, or `InvalidOid` (zero) on failure.

In PostgreSQL releases 8.1 and later, the *mode* is ignored, so that `lo_creat` is exactly equivalent to `lo_create` with a zero second argument. However, there is little reason to use `lo_creat` unless you need to work with servers older than 8.1. To work with such an old server, you must use `lo_creat` not `lo_create`, and you must set *mode* to one of `INV_READ`, `INV_WRITE`, or `INV_READ | INV_WRITE`. (These symbolic constants are defined in the header file `libpq/libpq-fs.h`.)

An example:

```
inv_oid = lo_creat(conn, INV_READ|INV_WRITE);
```

### 35.3.2. Importing a Large Object

To import an operating system file as a large object, call

```
Oid lo_import(PGconn *conn, const char *filename);
```

*filename* specifies the operating system name of the file to be imported as a large object. The return value is the OID that was assigned to the new large object, or `InvalidOid` (zero) on failure. Note that the file is read by the client interface library, not by the server; so it must exist in the client file system and be readable by the client application.

The function

```
Oid lo_import_with_oid(PGconn *conn, const char *filename, Oid lobjId);
```

also imports a new large object. The OID to be assigned can be specified by *lobjId*; if so, failure occurs if that OID is already in use for some large object. If *lobjId* is `InvalidOid` (zero) then



`lo_import_with_oid` assigns an unused OID (this is the same behavior as `lo_import`). The return value is the OID that was assigned to the new large object, or `InvalidOid` (zero) on failure.

`lo_import_with_oid` is new as of PostgreSQL 8.4 and uses `lo_create` internally which is new in 8.1; if this function is run against 8.0 or before, it will fail and return `InvalidOid`.

### 35.3.3. Exporting a Large Object

To export a large object into an operating system file, call

```
int lo_export(PGconn *conn, Oid lobjId, const char *filename);
```

The *lobjId* argument specifies the OID of the large object to export and the *filename* argument specifies the operating system name of the file. Note that the file is written by the client interface library, not by the server. Returns 1 on success, -1 on failure.

### 35.3.4. Opening an Existing Large Object

To open an existing large object for reading or writing, call

```
int lo_open(PGconn *conn, Oid lobjId, int mode);
```

The *lobjId* argument specifies the OID of the large object to open. The *mode* bits control whether the object is opened for reading (`INV_READ`), writing (`INV_WRITE`), or both. (These symbolic constants are defined in the header file `libpq/libpq-fs.h`.) `lo_open` returns a (non-negative) large object descriptor for later use in `lo_read`, `lo_write`, `lo_lseek`, `lo_lseek64`, `lo_tell`, `lo_tell64`, `lo_truncate`, `lo_truncate64`, and `lo_close`. The descriptor is only valid for the duration of the current transaction. On failure, -1 is returned.

The server currently does not distinguish between modes `INV_WRITE` and `INV_READ | INV_WRITE`: you are allowed to read from the descriptor in either case. However there is a significant difference between these modes and `INV_READ` alone: with `INV_READ` you cannot write on the descriptor, and the data read from it will reflect the contents of the large object at the time of the transaction snapshot that was active when `lo_open` was executed, regardless of later writes by this or other transactions. Reading from a descriptor opened with `INV_WRITE` returns data that reflects all writes of other committed transactions as well as writes of the current transaction. This is similar to the behavior of `REPEATABLE READ` versus `READ COMMITTED` transaction modes for ordinary SQL `SELECT` commands.

`lo_open` will fail if `SELECT` privilege is not available for the large object, or if `INV_WRITE` is specified and `UPDATE` privilege is not available. (Prior to PostgreSQL 11, these privilege checks were instead performed at the first actual read or write call using the descriptor.) These privilege checks can be disabled with the `lo_compat_privileges` run-time parameter.

An example:

```
inv_fd = lo_open(conn, inv_oid, INV_READ|INV_WRITE);
```

### 35.3.5. Writing Data to a Large Object

The function

```
int lo_write(PGconn *conn, int fd, const char *buf, size_t len);
```

writes *len* bytes from *buf* (which must be of size *len*) to large object descriptor *fd*. The *fd* argument must have been returned by a previous `lo_open`. The number of bytes actually written is

returned (in the current implementation, this will always equal *len* unless there is an error). In the event of an error, the return value is -1.

Although the *len* parameter is declared as `size_t`, this function will reject length values larger than `INT_MAX`. In practice, it's best to transfer data in chunks of at most a few megabytes anyway.

## 35.3.6. Reading Data from a Large Object

The function

```
int lo_read(PGconn *conn, int fd, char *buf, size_t len);
```

reads up to *len* bytes from large object descriptor *fd* into *buf* (which must be of size *len*). The *fd* argument must have been returned by a previous `lo_open`. The number of bytes actually read is returned; this will be less than *len* if the end of the large object is reached first. In the event of an error, the return value is -1.

Although the *len* parameter is declared as `size_t`, this function will reject length values larger than `INT_MAX`. In practice, it's best to transfer data in chunks of at most a few megabytes anyway.

## 35.3.7. Seeking in a Large Object

To change the current read or write location associated with a large object descriptor, call

```
int lo_lseek(PGconn *conn, int fd, int offset, int whence);
```

This function moves the current location pointer for the large object descriptor identified by *fd* to the new location specified by *offset*. The valid values for *whence* are `SEEK_SET` (seek from object start), `SEEK_CUR` (seek from current position), and `SEEK_END` (seek from object end). The return value is the new location pointer, or -1 on error.

When dealing with large objects that might exceed 2GB in size, instead use

```
pg_int64 lo_lseek64(PGconn *conn, int fd, pg_int64 offset, int whence);
```

This function has the same behavior as `lo_lseek`, but it can accept an *offset* larger than 2GB and/or deliver a result larger than 2GB. Note that `lo_lseek` will fail if the new location pointer would be greater than 2GB.

`lo_lseek64` is new as of PostgreSQL 9.3. If this function is run against an older server version, it will fail and return -1.

## 35.3.8. Obtaining the Seek Position of a Large Object

To obtain the current read or write location of a large object descriptor, call

```
int lo_tell(PGconn *conn, int fd);
```

If there is an error, the return value is -1.

When dealing with large objects that might exceed 2GB in size, instead use

```
pg_int64 lo_tell64(PGconn *conn, int fd);
```

This function has the same behavior as `lo_tell`, but it can deliver a result larger than 2GB. Note that `lo_tell` will fail if the current read/write location is greater than 2GB.

`lo_tell64` is new as of PostgreSQL 9.3. If this function is run against an older server version, it will fail and return -1.

### 35.3.9. Truncating a Large Object

To truncate a large object to a given length, call

```
int lo_truncate(PGconn *conn, int fd, size_t len);
```

This function truncates the large object descriptor `fd` to length `len`. The `fd` argument must have been returned by a previous `lo_open`. If `len` is greater than the large object's current length, the large object is extended to the specified length with null bytes ('\0'). On success, `lo_truncate` returns zero. On error, the return value is -1.

The read/write location associated with the descriptor `fd` is not changed.

Although the `len` parameter is declared as `size_t`, `lo_truncate` will reject length values larger than `INT_MAX`.

When dealing with large objects that might exceed 2GB in size, instead use

```
int lo_truncate64(PGconn *conn, int fd, pg_int64 len);
```

This function has the same behavior as `lo_truncate`, but it can accept a `len` value exceeding 2GB.

`lo_truncate` is new as of PostgreSQL 8.3; if this function is run against an older server version, it will fail and return -1.

`lo_truncate64` is new as of PostgreSQL 9.3; if this function is run against an older server version, it will fail and return -1.

### 35.3.10. Closing a Large Object Descriptor

A large object descriptor can be closed by calling

```
int lo_close(PGconn *conn, int fd);
```

where `fd` is a large object descriptor returned by `lo_open`. On success, `lo_close` returns zero. On error, the return value is -1.

Any large object descriptors that remain open at the end of a transaction will be closed automatically.

### 35.3.11. Removing a Large Object

To remove a large object from the database, call

```
int lo_unlink(PGconn *conn, Oid lobjId);
```

The `lobjId` argument specifies the OID of the large object to remove. Returns 1 if successful, -1 on failure.

## 35.4. Server-Side Functions

Server-side functions tailored for manipulating large objects from SQL are listed in Table 35.1.

**Table 35.1. SQL-Oriented Large Object Functions**

Function	Description	Example(s)
<code>lo_from_bytea (loid oid, data bytea) → oid</code>	Creates a large object and stores <i>data</i> in it. If <i>loid</i> is zero then the system will choose a free OID, otherwise that OID is used (with an error if some large object already has that OID). On success, the large object's OID is returned.	<code>lo_from_bytea(0, '\xffffffff00') → 24528</code>
<code>lo_put (loid oid, offset bigint, data bytea) → void</code>	Writes <i>data</i> starting at the given offset within the large object; the large object is enlarged if necessary.	<code>lo_put(24528, 1, '\xaa') →</code>
<code>lo_get (loid oid[, offset bigint, length integer]) → bytea</code>	Extracts the large object's contents, or a substring thereof.	<code>lo_get(24528, 0, 3) → \xffaaff</code>

There are additional server-side functions corresponding to each of the client-side functions described earlier; indeed, for the most part the client-side functions are simply interfaces to the equivalent server-side functions. The ones just as convenient to call via SQL commands are `lo_creat`, `lo_create`, `lo_unlink`, `lo_import`, and `lo_export`. Here are examples of their use:

```
CREATE TABLE image (
    name          text,
    raster        oid
);

SELECT lo_creat(-1);           -- returns OID of new, empty large
                                object

SELECT lo_create(43213);      -- attempts to create large object with
                                OID 43213

SELECT lo_unlink(173454);     -- deletes large object with OID 173454

INSERT INTO image (name, raster)
VALUES ('beautiful image', lo_import('/etc/motd'));

INSERT INTO image (name, raster) -- same as above, but specify OID
to use
VALUES ('beautiful image', lo_import('/etc/motd', 68583));

SELECT lo_export(image.raster, '/tmp/motd') FROM image
WHERE name = 'beautiful image';
```

The server-side `lo_import` and `lo_export` functions behave considerably differently from their client-side analogs. These two functions read and write files in the server's file system, using the permissions of the database's owning user. Therefore, by default their use is restricted to superusers. In contrast, the client-side import and export functions read and write files in the client's file system,

using the permissions of the client program. The client-side functions do not require any database privileges, except the privilege to read or write the large object in question.

### Caution

It is possible to GRANT use of the server-side `lo_import` and `lo_export` functions to non-superusers, but careful consideration of the security implications is required. A malicious user of such privileges could easily parlay them into becoming superuser (for example by rewriting server configuration files), or could attack the rest of the server's file system without bothering to obtain database superuser privileges as such. *Access to roles having such privilege must therefore be guarded just as carefully as access to superuser roles.* Nonetheless, if use of server-side `lo_import` or `lo_export` is needed for some routine task, it's safer to use a role with such privileges than one with full superuser privileges, as that helps to reduce the risk of damage from accidental errors.

The functionality of `lo_read` and `lo_write` is also available via server-side calls, but the names of the server-side functions differ from the client side interfaces in that they do not contain underscores. You must call these functions as `loread` and `lowrite`.

## 35.5. Example Program

Example 35.1 is a sample program which shows how the large object interface in `libpq` can be used. Parts of the program are commented out but are left in the source for the reader's benefit. This program can also be found in `src/test/examples/testlo.c` in the source distribution.

### Example 35.1. Large Objects with `libpq` Example Program

```
/*-----
 *
 * testlo.c
 *   test using large objects with libpq
 *
 * Portions Copyright (c) 1996-2023, PostgreSQL Global Development
 * Group
 * Portions Copyright (c) 1994, Regents of the University of
 * California
 *
 * IDENTIFICATION
 *   src/test/examples/testlo.c
 *-----
 */
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>

#include <sys/types.h>
#include <sys/stat.h>
#include <fcntl.h>
#include <unistd.h>

#include "libpq-fe.h"
#include "libpq/libpq-fs.h"

#define BUFSIZE          1024
```

```
/*
 * importFile -
 *   import file "in_filename" into database as large object
 *   "lobjOid"
 *
 */
static Oid
importFile(PGconn *conn, char *filename)
{
    Oid          lobjId;
    int          lobj_fd;
    char         buf[BUFSIZE];
    int          nbytes,
               tmp;
    int          fd;

    /*
     * open the file to be read in
     */
    fd = open(filename, O_RDONLY, 0666);
    if (fd < 0)
    {
        /* error */
        fprintf(stderr, "cannot open unix file \"%s\"\n", filename);
    }

    /*
     * create the large object
     */
    lobjId = lo_creat(conn, INV_READ | INV_WRITE);
    if (lobjId == 0)
        fprintf(stderr, "cannot create large object");

    lobj_fd = lo_open(conn, lobjId, INV_WRITE);

    /*
     * read in from the Unix file and write to the inversion file
     */
    while ((nbytes = read(fd, buf, BUFSIZE)) > 0)
    {
        tmp = lo_write(conn, lobj_fd, buf, nbytes);
        if (tmp < nbytes)
            fprintf(stderr, "error while reading \"%s\"",
filename);
    }

    close(fd);
    lo_close(conn, lobj_fd);

    return lobjId;
}

static void
pickout(PGconn *conn, Oid lobjId, int start, int len)
{
    int          lobj_fd;
    char         *buf;
    int          nbytes;
```

---

```
int          nread;

lobj_fd = lo_open(conn, lobjId, INV_READ);
if (lobj_fd < 0)
    fprintf(stderr, "cannot open large object %u", lobjId);

lo_lseek(conn, lobj_fd, start, SEEK_SET);
buf = malloc(len + 1);

nread = 0;
while (len - nread > 0)
{
    nbytes = lo_read(conn, lobj_fd, buf, len - nread);
    buf[nbytes] = '\\0';
    fprintf(stderr, ">>> %s", buf);
    nread += nbytes;
    if (nbytes <= 0)
        break;                /* no more data? */
}
free(buf);
fprintf(stderr, "\\n");
lo_close(conn, lobj_fd);
}

static void
overwrite(PGconn *conn, Oid lobjId, int start, int len)
{
    int          lobj_fd;
    char         *buf;
    int          nbytes;
    int          nwritten;
    int          i;

    lobj_fd = lo_open(conn, lobjId, INV_WRITE);
    if (lobj_fd < 0)
        fprintf(stderr, "cannot open large object %u", lobjId);

    lo_lseek(conn, lobj_fd, start, SEEK_SET);
    buf = malloc(len + 1);

    for (i = 0; i < len; i++)
        buf[i] = 'X';
    buf[i] = '\\0';

    nwritten = 0;
    while (len - nwritten > 0)
    {
        nbytes = lo_write(conn, lobj_fd, buf + nwritten, len -
nwritten);
        nwritten += nbytes;
        if (nbytes <= 0)
        {
            fprintf(stderr, "\\nWRITE FAILED!\\n");
            break;
        }
    }
    free(buf);
    fprintf(stderr, "\\n");
}
```

```
        lo_close(conn, lobj_fd);
    }

    /*
     * exportFile -
     *     export large object "lobjOid" to file "out_filename"
     *
     */
    static void
    exportFile(PGconn *conn, Oid lobjId, char *filename)
    {
        int            lobj_fd;
        char            buf[BUFSIZE];
        int            nbytes,
                      tmp;
        int            fd;

        /*
         * open the large object
         */
        lobj_fd = lo_open(conn, lobjId, INV_READ);
        if (lobj_fd < 0)
            fprintf(stderr, "cannot open large object %u", lobjId);

        /*
         * open the file to be written to
         */
        fd = open(filename, O_CREAT | O_WRONLY | O_TRUNC, 0666);
        if (fd < 0)
        {
            /* error */
            fprintf(stderr, "cannot open unix file \"%s\"",
                    filename);
        }

        /*
         * read in from the inversion file and write to the Unix file
         */
        while ((nbytes = lo_read(conn, lobj_fd, buf, BUFSIZE)) > 0)
        {
            tmp = write(fd, buf, nbytes);
            if (tmp < nbytes)
            {
                fprintf(stderr, "error while writing \"%s\"",
                        filename);
            }
        }

        lo_close(conn, lobj_fd);
        close(fd);
    }

    static void
    exit_nicely(PGconn *conn)
    {
        PQfinish(conn);
        exit(1);
    }
}
```



```
int
main(int argc, char **argv)
{
    char        *in_filename,
                *out_filename;
    char        *database;
    Oid          lobjOid;
    PGconn      *conn;
    PGresult     *res;

    if (argc != 4)
    {
        fprintf(stderr, "Usage: %s database_name in_filename
out_filename\n",
                argv[0]);
        exit(1);
    }

    database = argv[1];
    in_filename = argv[2];
    out_filename = argv[3];

    /*
     * set up the connection
     */
    conn = PQsetdb(NULL, NULL, NULL, NULL, database);

    /* check to see that the backend connection was successfully
made */
    if (PQstatus(conn) != CONNECTION_OK)
    {
        fprintf(stderr, "%s", PQerrorMessage(conn));
        exit_nicely(conn);
    }

    /* Set always-secure search path, so malicious users can't take
control. */
    res = PQexec(conn,
                  "SELECT pg_catalog.set_config('search_path', '',
false)");
    if (PQresultStatus(res) != PGRES_TUPLES_OK)
    {
        fprintf(stderr, "SET failed: %s", PQerrorMessage(conn));
        PQclear(res);
        exit_nicely(conn);
    }
    PQclear(res);

    res = PQexec(conn, "begin");
    PQclear(res);
    printf("importing file \"%s\" ... \n", in_filename);
    /* lobjOid = importFile(conn, in_filename); */
    lobjOid = lo_import(conn, in_filename);
    if (lobjOid == 0)
        fprintf(stderr, "%s\n", PQerrorMessage(conn));
    else
    {

```

```
        printf("\tas large object %u.\n", lobjOid);

        printf("picking out bytes 1000-2000 of the large object
\n");
        pickout(conn, lobjOid, 1000, 1000);

        printf("overwriting bytes 1000-2000 of the large object
with X's\n");
        overwrite(conn, lobjOid, 1000, 1000);

        printf("exporting large object to file \"%s\" ...\n",
out_filename);
/*      exportFile(conn, lobjOid, out_filename); */
        if (lo_export(conn, lobjOid, out_filename) < 0)
            fprintf(stderr, "%s\n", PQerrorMessage(conn));
    }

    res = PQexec(conn, "end");
    PQclear(res);
    PQfinish(conn);
    return 0;
}
```

---

# Chapter 36. ECPG — Embedded SQL in C

This chapter describes the embedded SQL package for PostgreSQL. It was written by Linus Tolke (<linus@epact.se>) and Michael Meskes (<meskes@postgresql.org>). Originally it was written to work with C. It also works with C++, but it does not recognize all C++ constructs yet.

This documentation is quite incomplete. But since this interface is standardized, additional information can be found in many resources about SQL.

## 36.1. The Concept

An embedded SQL program consists of code written in an ordinary programming language, in this case C, mixed with SQL commands in specially marked sections. To build the program, the source code (\*.pgc) is first passed through the embedded SQL preprocessor, which converts it to an ordinary C program (\*.c), and afterwards it can be processed by a C compiler. (For details about the compiling and linking see Section 36.10.) Converted ECPG applications call functions in the libpq library through the embedded SQL library (ecpglib), and communicate with the PostgreSQL server using the normal frontend-backend protocol.

Embedded SQL has advantages over other methods for handling SQL commands from C code. First, it takes care of the tedious passing of information to and from variables in your C program. Second, the SQL code in the program is checked at build time for syntactical correctness. Third, embedded SQL in C is specified in the SQL standard and supported by many other SQL database systems. The PostgreSQL implementation is designed to match this standard as much as possible, and it is usually possible to port embedded SQL programs written for other SQL databases to PostgreSQL with relative ease.

As already stated, programs written for the embedded SQL interface are normal C programs with special code inserted to perform database-related actions. This special code always has the form:

```
EXEC SQL ...;
```

These statements syntactically take the place of a C statement. Depending on the particular statement, they can appear at the global level or within a function.

Embedded SQL statements follow the case-sensitivity rules of normal SQL code, and not those of C. Also they allow nested C-style comments as per the SQL standard. The C part of the program, however, follows the C standard of not accepting nested comments. Embedded SQL statements likewise use SQL rules, not C rules, for parsing quoted strings and identifiers. (See Section 4.1.2.1 and Section 4.1.1 respectively. Note that ECPG assumes that `standard_conforming_strings` is on.) Of course, the C part of the program follows C quoting rules.

The following sections explain all the embedded SQL statements.

## 36.2. Managing Database Connections

This section describes how to open, close, and switch database connections.

### 36.2.1. Connecting to the Database Server

One connects to a database using the following statement:

```
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO target [AS connection-name] [USER user-name];
```

The *target* can be specified in the following ways:

- *dbname*[@*hostname*][:*port*]
- tcp:postgresql://*hostname*[:*port*][/*dbname*][?*options*]
- unix:postgresql://localhost[:*port*][/*dbname*][?*options*]
- an SQL string literal containing one of the above forms
- a reference to a character variable containing one of the above forms (see examples)
- DEFAULT

The connection target DEFAULT initiates a connection to the default database under the default user name. No separate user name or connection name can be specified in that case.

If you specify the connection target directly (that is, not as a string literal or variable reference), then the components of the target are passed through normal SQL parsing; this means that, for example, the *hostname* must look like one or more SQL identifiers separated by dots, and those identifiers will be case-folded unless double-quoted. Values of any *options* must be SQL identifiers, integers, or variable references. Of course, you can put nearly anything into an SQL identifier by double-quoting it. In practice, it is probably less error-prone to use a (single-quoted) string literal or a variable reference than to write the connection target directly.

There are also different ways to specify the user name:

- *username*
- *username/password*
- *username IDENTIFIED BY password*
- *username USING password*

As above, the parameters *username* and *password* can be an SQL identifier, an SQL string literal, or a reference to a character variable.

If the connection target includes any *options*, those consist of *keyword=value* specifications separated by ampersands (&). The allowed key words are the same ones recognized by libpq (see Section 34.1.2). Spaces are ignored before any *keyword* or *value*, though not within or after one. Note that there is no way to write & within a *value*.

Notice that when specifying a socket connection (with the `unix:` prefix), the host name must be exactly `localhost`. To select a non-default socket directory, write the directory's pathname as the value of a host option in the *options* part of the target.

The *connection-name* is used to handle multiple connections in one program. It can be omitted if a program uses only one connection. The most recently opened connection becomes the current connection, which is used by default when an SQL statement is to be executed (see later in this chapter).

Here are some examples of CONNECT statements:

```
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO mydb@sql.mydomain.com;
```

```
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO tcp:postgresql://sql.mydomain.com/mydb AS  
myconnection USER john;
```

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
```

```
const char *target = "mydb@sql.mydomain.com";
const char *user = "john";
const char *passwd = "secret";
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
...
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO :target USER :user USING :passwd;
/* or EXEC SQL CONNECT TO :target USER :user/:passwd; */
```

The last example makes use of the feature referred to above as character variable references. You will see in later sections how C variables can be used in SQL statements when you prefix them with a colon.

Be advised that the format of the connection target is not specified in the SQL standard. So if you want to develop portable applications, you might want to use something based on the last example above to encapsulate the connection target string somewhere.

If untrusted users have access to a database that has not adopted a secure schema usage pattern, begin each session by removing publicly-writable schemas from `search_path`. For example, add `options=-c search_path=to options`, or issue `EXEC SQL SELECT pg_catalog.set_config('search_path', '', false);` after connecting. This consideration is not specific to ECPG; it applies to every interface for executing arbitrary SQL commands.

## 36.2.2. Choosing a Connection

SQL statements in embedded SQL programs are by default executed on the current connection, that is, the most recently opened one. If an application needs to manage multiple connections, then there are three ways to handle this.

The first option is to explicitly choose a connection for each SQL statement, for example:

```
EXEC SQL AT connection-name SELECT ...;
```

This option is particularly suitable if the application needs to use several connections in mixed order.

If your application uses multiple threads of execution, they cannot share a connection concurrently. You must either explicitly control access to the connection (using mutexes) or use a connection for each thread.

The second option is to execute a statement to switch the current connection. That statement is:

```
EXEC SQL SET CONNECTION connection-name;
```

This option is particularly convenient if many statements are to be executed on the same connection.

Here is an example program managing multiple database connections:

```
#include <stdio.h>

EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    char dbname[1024];
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

int
main()
{
    EXEC SQL CONNECT TO testdb1 AS con1 USER testuser;
    EXEC SQL SELECT pg_catalog.set_config('search_path', '',
false); EXEC SQL COMMIT;
```

```
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO testdb2 AS con2 USER testuser;
EXEC SQL SELECT pg_catalog.set_config('search_path', '',
false); EXEC SQL COMMIT;
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO testdb3 AS con3 USER testuser;
EXEC SQL SELECT pg_catalog.set_config('search_path', '',
false); EXEC SQL COMMIT;

/* This query would be executed in the last opened database
"testdb3". */
EXEC SQL SELECT current_database() INTO :dbname;
printf("current=%s (should be testdb3)\n", dbname);

/* Using "AT" to run a query in "testdb2" */
EXEC SQL AT con2 SELECT current_database() INTO :dbname;
printf("current=%s (should be testdb2)\n", dbname);

/* Switch the current connection to "testdb1". */
EXEC SQL SET CONNECTION con1;

EXEC SQL SELECT current_database() INTO :dbname;
printf("current=%s (should be testdb1)\n", dbname);

EXEC SQL DISCONNECT ALL;
return 0;
}
```

This example would produce this output:

```
current=testdb3 (should be testdb3)
current=testdb2 (should be testdb2)
current=testdb1 (should be testdb1)
```

The third option is to declare an SQL identifier linked to the connection, for example:

```
EXEC SQL AT connection-name DECLARE statement-name STATEMENT;
EXEC SQL PREPARE statement-name FROM :dyn-string;
```

Once you link an SQL identifier to a connection, you execute dynamic SQL without an AT clause. Note that this option behaves like preprocessor directives, therefore the link is enabled only in the file.

Here is an example program using this option:

```
#include <stdio.h>

EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
char dbname[128];
char *dyn_sql = "SELECT current_database()";
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

int main(){
    EXEC SQL CONNECT TO postgres AS con1;
    EXEC SQL CONNECT TO testdb AS con2;
    EXEC SQL AT con1 DECLARE stmt STATEMENT;
    EXEC SQL PREPARE stmt FROM :dyn_sql;
    EXEC SQL EXECUTE stmt INTO :dbname;
    printf("%s\n", dbname);
}
```

```
EXEC SQL DISCONNECT ALL;
return 0;
}
```

This example would produce this output, even if the default connection is testdb:

```
postgres
```

### 36.2.3. Closing a Connection

To close a connection, use the following statement:

```
EXEC SQL DISCONNECT [connection];
```

The *connection* can be specified in the following ways:

- *connection-name*
- CURRENT
- ALL

If no connection name is specified, the current connection is closed.

It is good style that an application always explicitly disconnect from every connection it opened.

## 36.3. Running SQL Commands

Any SQL command can be run from within an embedded SQL application. Below are some examples of how to do that.

### 36.3.1. Executing SQL Statements

Creating a table:

```
EXEC SQL CREATE TABLE foo (number integer, ascii char(16));
EXEC SQL CREATE UNIQUE INDEX num1 ON foo(number);
EXEC SQL COMMIT;
```

Inserting rows:

```
EXEC SQL INSERT INTO foo (number, ascii) VALUES (9999, 'doodad');
EXEC SQL COMMIT;
```

Deleting rows:

```
EXEC SQL DELETE FROM foo WHERE number = 9999;
EXEC SQL COMMIT;
```

Updates:

```
EXEC SQL UPDATE foo
SET ascii = 'foobar'
```

```
WHERE number = 9999;
EXEC SQL COMMIT;
```

SELECT statements that return a single result row can also be executed using EXEC SQL directly. To handle result sets with multiple rows, an application has to use a cursor; see Section 36.3.2 below. (As a special case, an application can fetch multiple rows at once into an array host variable; see Section 36.4.4.3.1.)

Single-row select:

```
EXEC SQL SELECT foo INTO :FooBar FROM table1 WHERE ascii =
'doodad';
```

Also, a configuration parameter can be retrieved with the SHOW command:

```
EXEC SQL SHOW search_path INTO :var;
```

The tokens of the form *:something* are *host variables*, that is, they refer to variables in the C program. They are explained in Section 36.4.

## 36.3.2. Using Cursors

To retrieve a result set holding multiple rows, an application has to declare a cursor and fetch each row from the cursor. The steps to use a cursor are the following: declare a cursor, open it, fetch a row from the cursor, repeat, and finally close it.

Select using cursors:

```
EXEC SQL DECLARE foo_bar CURSOR FOR
SELECT number, ascii FROM foo
ORDER BY ascii;
EXEC SQL OPEN foo_bar;
EXEC SQL FETCH foo_bar INTO :FooBar, DooDad;
...
EXEC SQL CLOSE foo_bar;
EXEC SQL COMMIT;
```

For more details about declaring a cursor, see DECLARE; for more details about fetching rows from a cursor, see FETCH.

### Note

The ECPG DECLARE command does not actually cause a statement to be sent to the PostgreSQL backend. The cursor is opened in the backend (using the backend's DECLARE command) at the point when the OPEN command is executed.

## 36.3.3. Managing Transactions

In the default mode, statements are committed only when EXEC SQL COMMIT is issued. The embedded SQL interface also supports autocommit of transactions (similar to psql's default behavior) via the `-t` command-line option to `ecpg` (see `ecpg`) or via the EXEC SQL SET AUTOCOMMIT TO ON statement. In autocommit mode, each command is automatically committed unless it is inside an explicit transaction block. This mode can be explicitly turned off using EXEC SQL SET AUTOCOMMIT TO OFF.



The following transaction management commands are available:

```
EXEC SQL COMMIT
```

Commit an in-progress transaction.

```
EXEC SQL ROLLBACK
```

Roll back an in-progress transaction.

```
EXEC SQL PREPARE TRANSACTION transaction_id
```

Prepare the current transaction for two-phase commit.

```
EXEC SQL COMMIT PREPARED transaction_id
```

Commit a transaction that is in prepared state.

```
EXEC SQL ROLLBACK PREPARED transaction_id
```

Roll back a transaction that is in prepared state.

```
EXEC SQL SET AUTOCOMMIT TO ON
```

Enable autocommit mode.

```
EXEC SQL SET AUTOCOMMIT TO OFF
```

Disable autocommit mode. This is the default.

## 36.3.4. Prepared Statements

When the values to be passed to an SQL statement are not known at compile time, or the same statement is going to be used many times, then prepared statements can be useful.

The statement is prepared using the command `PREPARE`. For the values that are not known yet, use the placeholder “?”:

```
EXEC SQL PREPARE stmt1 FROM "SELECT oid, datname FROM pg_database  
WHERE oid = ?";
```

If a statement returns a single row, the application can call `EXECUTE` after `PREPARE` to execute the statement, supplying the actual values for the placeholders with a `USING` clause:

```
EXEC SQL EXECUTE stmt1 INTO :dboid, :dbname USING 1;
```

If a statement returns multiple rows, the application can use a cursor declared based on the prepared statement. To bind input parameters, the cursor must be opened with a `USING` clause:

```
EXEC SQL PREPARE stmt1 FROM "SELECT oid, datname FROM pg_database  
WHERE oid > ?";  
EXEC SQL DECLARE foo_bar CURSOR FOR stmt1;
```

```
/* when end of result set reached, break out of while loop */  
EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND DO BREAK;
```

```
EXEC SQL OPEN foo_bar USING 100;  
...  
while (1)
```

```
{  
    EXEC SQL FETCH NEXT FROM foo_bar INTO :dboid, :dbname;  
    ...  
}  
EXEC SQL CLOSE foo_bar;
```

When you don't need the prepared statement anymore, you should deallocate it:

```
EXEC SQL DEALLOCATE PREPARE name;
```

For more details about `PREPARE`, see `PREPARE`. Also see Section 36.5 for more details about using placeholders and input parameters.

## 36.4. Using Host Variables

In Section 36.3 you saw how you can execute SQL statements from an embedded SQL program. Some of those statements only used fixed values and did not provide a way to insert user-supplied values into statements or have the program process the values returned by the query. Those kinds of statements are not really useful in real applications. This section explains in detail how you can pass data between your C program and the embedded SQL statements using a simple mechanism called *host variables*. In an embedded SQL program we consider the SQL statements to be *guests* in the C program code which is the *host language*. Therefore the variables of the C program are called *host variables*.

Another way to exchange values between PostgreSQL backends and ECPG applications is the use of SQL descriptors, described in Section 36.7.

### 36.4.1. Overview

Passing data between the C program and the SQL statements is particularly simple in embedded SQL. Instead of having the program paste the data into the statement, which entails various complications, such as properly quoting the value, you can simply write the name of a C variable into the SQL statement, prefixed by a colon. For example:

```
EXEC SQL INSERT INTO sometable VALUES (:v1, 'foo', :v2);
```

This statement refers to two C variables named `v1` and `v2` and also uses a regular SQL string literal, to illustrate that you are not restricted to use one kind of data or the other.

This style of inserting C variables in SQL statements works anywhere a value expression is expected in an SQL statement.

### 36.4.2. Declare Sections

To pass data from the program to the database, for example as parameters in a query, or to pass data from the database back to the program, the C variables that are intended to contain this data need to be declared in specially marked sections, so the embedded SQL preprocessor is made aware of them.

This section starts with:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
```

and ends with:

```
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
```

Between those lines, there must be normal C variable declarations, such as:

```
int    x = 4;
char   foo[16], bar[16];
```

As you can see, you can optionally assign an initial value to the variable. The variable's scope is determined by the location of its declaring section within the program. You can also declare variables with the following syntax which implicitly creates a declare section:

```
EXEC SQL int i = 4;
```

You can have as many declare sections in a program as you like.

The declarations are also echoed to the output file as normal C variables, so there's no need to declare them again. Variables that are not intended to be used in SQL commands can be declared normally outside these special sections.

The definition of a structure or union also must be listed inside a DECLARE section. Otherwise the preprocessor cannot handle these types since it does not know the definition.

### 36.4.3. Retrieving Query Results

Now you should be able to pass data generated by your program into an SQL command. But how do you retrieve the results of a query? For that purpose, embedded SQL provides special variants of the usual commands SELECT and FETCH. These commands have a special INTO clause that specifies which host variables the retrieved values are to be stored in. SELECT is used for a query that returns only single row, and FETCH is used for a query that returns multiple rows, using a cursor.

Here is an example:

```
/*
 * assume this table:
 * CREATE TABLE test1 (a int, b varchar(50));
 */

EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
int v1;
VARCHAR v2;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

...

EXEC SQL SELECT a, b INTO :v1, :v2 FROM test;
```

So the INTO clause appears between the select list and the FROM clause. The number of elements in the select list and the list after INTO (also called the target list) must be equal.

Here is an example using the command FETCH:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
int v1;
VARCHAR v2;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

...

EXEC SQL DECLARE foo CURSOR FOR SELECT a, b FROM test;
```

```

...

do
{
    ...
    EXEC SQL FETCH NEXT FROM foo INTO :v1, :v2;
    ...
} while (...);

```

Here the INTO clause appears after all the normal clauses.

## 36.4.4. Type Mapping

When ECPG applications exchange values between the PostgreSQL server and the C application, such as when retrieving query results from the server or executing SQL statements with input parameters, the values need to be converted between PostgreSQL data types and host language variable types (C language data types, concretely). One of the main points of ECPG is that it takes care of this automatically in most cases.

In this respect, there are two kinds of data types: Some simple PostgreSQL data types, such as `integer` and `text`, can be read and written by the application directly. Other PostgreSQL data types, such as `timestamp` and `numeric` can only be accessed through special library functions; see Section 36.4.4.2.

Table 36.1 shows which PostgreSQL data types correspond to which C data types. When you wish to send or receive a value of a given PostgreSQL data type, you should declare a C variable of the corresponding C data type in the declare section.

**Table 36.1. Mapping Between PostgreSQL Data Types and C Variable Types**

PostgreSQL data type	Host variable type
<code>smallint</code>	<code>short</code>
<code>integer</code>	<code>int</code>
<code>bigint</code>	<code>long long int</code>
<code>decimal</code>	<code>decimal</code> <sup>a</sup>
<code>numeric</code>	<code>numeric</code> <sup>a</sup>
<code>real</code>	<code>float</code>
<code>double precision</code>	<code>double</code>
<code>smallserial</code>	<code>short</code>
<code>serial</code>	<code>int</code>
<code>bigserial</code>	<code>long long int</code>
<code>oid</code>	<code>unsigned int</code>
<code>character(n)</code> , <code>varchar(n)</code> , <code>text</code>	<code>char[n+1]</code> , <code>VARCHAR[n+1]</code>
<code>name</code>	<code>char[NAMEDATALEN]</code>
<code>timestamp</code>	<code>timestamp</code> <sup>a</sup>
<code>interval</code>	<code>interval</code> <sup>a</sup>
<code>date</code>	<code>date</code> <sup>a</sup>
<code>boolean</code>	<code>bool</code> <sup>b</sup>
<code>bytea</code>	<code>char *</code> , <code>bytea[n]</code>

<sup>a</sup>This type can only be accessed through special library functions; see Section 36.4.4.2.

<sup>b</sup>declared in `ecpglib.h` if not native

### 36.4.4.1. Handling Character Strings

To handle SQL character string data types, such as `varchar` and `text`, there are two possible ways to declare the host variables.

One way is using `char[ ]`, an array of `char`, which is the most common way to handle character data in C.

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    char str[50];
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
```

Note that you have to take care of the length yourself. If you use this host variable as the target variable of a query which returns a string with more than 49 characters, a buffer overflow occurs.

The other way is using the `VARCHAR` type, which is a special type provided by ECPG. The definition on an array of type `VARCHAR` is converted into a named `struct` for every variable. A declaration like:

```
VARCHAR var[180];
```

is converted into:

```
struct varchar_var { int len; char arr[180]; } var;
```

The member `arr` hosts the string including a terminating zero byte. Thus, to store a string in a `VARCHAR` host variable, the host variable has to be declared with the length including the zero byte terminator. The member `len` holds the length of the string stored in the `arr` without the terminating zero byte. When a host variable is used as input for a query, if `strlen(arr)` and `len` are different, the shorter one is used.

`VARCHAR` can be written in upper or lower case, but not in mixed case.

`char` and `VARCHAR` host variables can also hold values of other SQL types, which will be stored in their string forms.

### 36.4.4.2. Accessing Special Data Types

ECPG contains some special types that help you to interact easily with some special data types from the PostgreSQL server. In particular, it has implemented support for the `numeric`, `decimal`, `date`, `timestamp`, and `interval` types. These data types cannot usefully be mapped to primitive host variable types (such as `int`, `long long int`, or `char[ ]`), because they have a complex internal structure. Applications deal with these types by declaring host variables in special types and accessing them using functions in the `pgtypes` library. The `pgtypes` library, described in detail in Section 36.6 contains basic functions to deal with those types, such that you do not need to send a query to the SQL server just for adding an interval to a time stamp for example.

The follow subsections describe these special data types. For more details about `pgtypes` library functions, see Section 36.6.

#### 36.4.4.2.1. timestamp, date

Here is a pattern for handling `timestamp` variables in the ECPG host application.

First, the program has to include the header file for the `timestamp` type:

```
#include <pgtypes_timestamp.h>
```

Next, declare a host variable as type `timestamp` in the declare section:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
timestamp ts;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
```

And after reading a value into the host variable, process it using `pgtypes` library functions. In following example, the `timestamp` value is converted into text (ASCII) form with the `PGTYPEStimestamp_to_asc()` function:

```
EXEC SQL SELECT now():timestamp INTO :ts;

printf("ts = %s\n", PGTYPEStimestamp_to_asc(ts));
```

This example will show some result like following:

```
ts = 2010-06-27 18:03:56.949343
```

In addition, the `DATE` type can be handled in the same way. The program has to include `pgtypes_date.h`, declare a host variable as the date type and convert a `DATE` value into a text form using `PGTYPESdate_to_asc()` function. For more details about the `pgtypes` library functions, see Section 36.6.

#### 36.4.4.2.2. interval

The handling of the `interval` type is also similar to the `timestamp` and `date` types. It is required, however, to allocate memory for an `interval` type value explicitly. In other words, the memory space for the variable has to be allocated in the heap memory, not in the stack memory.

Here is an example program:

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <pgtypes_interval.h>

int
main(void)
{
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    interval *in;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

    EXEC SQL CONNECT TO testdb;
    EXEC SQL SELECT pg_catalog.set_config('search_path', '',
false); EXEC SQL COMMIT;

    in = PGYPESinterval_new();
EXEC SQL SELECT '1 min':interval INTO :in;
    printf("interval = %s\n", PGYPESinterval_to_asc(in));
    PGYPESinterval_free(in);

    EXEC SQL COMMIT;
    EXEC SQL DISCONNECT ALL;
    return 0;
}
```

```
}
```

### 36.4.4.2.3. numeric, decimal

The handling of the `numeric` and `decimal` types is similar to the `interval` type: It requires defining a pointer, allocating some memory space on the heap, and accessing the variable using the `pgtypes` library functions. For more details about the `pgtypes` library functions, see Section 36.6.

No functions are provided specifically for the `decimal` type. An application has to convert it to a `numeric` variable using a `pgtypes` library function to do further processing.

Here is an example program handling `numeric` and `decimal` type variables.

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <pgtypes_numeric.h>

EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR STOP;

int
main(void)
{
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    numeric *num;
    numeric *num2;
    decimal *dec;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

    EXEC SQL CONNECT TO testdb;
    EXEC SQL SELECT pg_catalog.set_config('search_path', '',
false); EXEC SQL COMMIT;

    num = PGTYPEStnumeric_new();
    dec = PGTYPEStdecimal_new();

    EXEC SQL SELECT 12.345::numeric(4,2), 23.456::decimal(4,2)
INTO :num, :dec;

    printf("numeric = %s\n", PGTYPEStnumeric_to_asc(num, 0));
    printf("numeric = %s\n", PGTYPEStnumeric_to_asc(num, 1));
    printf("numeric = %s\n", PGTYPEStnumeric_to_asc(num, 2));

    /* Convert decimal to numeric to show a decimal value. */
    num2 = PGTYPEStnumeric_new();
    PGTYPEStnumeric_from_decimal(dec, num2);

    printf("decimal = %s\n", PGTYPEStnumeric_to_asc(num2, 0));
    printf("decimal = %s\n", PGTYPEStnumeric_to_asc(num2, 1));
    printf("decimal = %s\n", PGTYPEStnumeric_to_asc(num2, 2));

    PGTYPEStnumeric_free(num2);
    PGTYPEStdecimal_free(dec);
    PGTYPEStnumeric_free(num);

    EXEC SQL COMMIT;
    EXEC SQL DISCONNECT ALL;
    return 0;
}
```

#### 36.4.4.2.4. bytea

The handling of the `bytea` type is similar to that of `VARCHAR`. The definition on an array of type `bytea` is converted into a named struct for every variable. A declaration like:

```
bytea var[180];
```

is converted into:

```
struct bytea_var { int len; char arr[180]; } var;
```

The member `arr` hosts binary format data. It can also handle `'\0'` as part of data, unlike `VARCHAR`. The data is converted from/to hex format and sent/received by `ecpglib`.

#### Note

`bytea` variable can be used only when `bytea_output` is set to `hex`.

### 36.4.4.3. Host Variables with Nonprimitive Types

As a host variable you can also use arrays, typedefs, structs, and pointers.

#### 36.4.4.3.1. Arrays

There are two use cases for arrays as host variables. The first is a way to store some text string in `char[ ]` or `VARCHAR[ ]`, as explained in Section 36.4.4.1. The second use case is to retrieve multiple rows from a query result without using a cursor. Without an array, to process a query result consisting of multiple rows, it is required to use a cursor and the `FETCH` command. But with array host variables, multiple rows can be received at once. The length of the array has to be defined to be able to accommodate all rows, otherwise a buffer overflow will likely occur.

Following example scans the `pg_database` system table and shows all OIDs and names of the available databases:

```
int
main(void)
{
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    int dbid[8];
    char dbname[8][16];
    int i;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

    memset(dbname, 0, sizeof(char)* 16 * 8);
    memset(dbid, 0, sizeof(int) * 8);

    EXEC SQL CONNECT TO testdb;
    EXEC SQL SELECT pg_catalog.set_config('search_path', '',
false); EXEC SQL COMMIT;

    /* Retrieve multiple rows into arrays at once. */
    EXEC SQL SELECT oid,datname INTO :dbid, :dbname FROM
pg_database;

    for (i = 0; i < 8; i++)
```



```
        printf("oid=%d, dbname=%s\n", dbid[i], dbname[i]);

EXEC SQL COMMIT;
EXEC SQL DISCONNECT ALL;
return 0;
}
```

This example shows following result. (The exact values depend on local circumstances.)

```
oid=1, dbname=template1
oid=11510, dbname=template0
oid=11511, dbname=postgres
oid=313780, dbname=testdb
oid=0, dbname=
oid=0, dbname=
oid=0, dbname=
```

### 36.4.4.3.2. Structures

A structure whose member names match the column names of a query result, can be used to retrieve multiple columns at once. The structure enables handling multiple column values in a single host variable.

The following example retrieves OIDs, names, and sizes of the available databases from the `pg_database` system table and using the `pg_database_size()` function. In this example, a structure variable `dbinfo_t` with members whose names match each column in the `SELECT` result is used to retrieve one result row without putting multiple host variables in the `FETCH` statement.

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    typedef struct
    {
        int oid;
        char datname[65];
        long long int size;
    } dbinfo_t;

    dbinfo_t dbval;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

    memset(&dbval, 0, sizeof(dbinfo_t));

    EXEC SQL DECLARE curl CURSOR FOR SELECT oid, datname,
pg_database_size(oid) AS size FROM pg_database;
    EXEC SQL OPEN curl;

    /* when end of result set reached, break out of while loop */
    EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND DO BREAK;

    while (1)
    {
        /* Fetch multiple columns into one structure. */
        EXEC SQL FETCH FROM curl INTO :dbval;

        /* Print members of the structure. */
        printf("oid=%d, datname=%s, size=%lld\n", dbval.oid,
dbval.datname, dbval.size);
    }
```

```
EXEC SQL CLOSE curl;
```

This example shows following result. (The exact values depend on local circumstances.)

```
oid=1, datname=template1, size=4324580
oid=11510, datname=template0, size=4243460
oid=11511, datname=postgres, size=4324580
oid=313780, datname=testdb, size=8183012
```

Structure host variables “absorb” as many columns as the structure as fields. Additional columns can be assigned to other host variables. For example, the above program could also be restructured like this, with the size variable outside the structure:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    typedef struct
    {
        int oid;
        char datname[65];
    } dbinfo_t;

    dbinfo_t dbval;
    long long int size;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

    memset(&dbval, 0, sizeof(dbinfo_t));

    EXEC SQL DECLARE curl CURSOR FOR SELECT oid, datname,
pg_database_size(oid) AS size FROM pg_database;
    EXEC SQL OPEN curl;

    /* when end of result set reached, break out of while loop */
    EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND DO BREAK;

    while (1)
    {
        /* Fetch multiple columns into one structure. */
        EXEC SQL FETCH FROM curl INTO :dbval, :size;

        /* Print members of the structure. */
        printf("oid=%d, datname=%s, size=%lld\n", dbval.oid,
dbval.datname, size);
    }

    EXEC SQL CLOSE curl;
```

### 36.4.4.3.3. Typedefs

Use the typedef keyword to map new types to already existing types.

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    typedef char mychartype[40];
    typedef long serial_t;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
```

Note that you could also use:

```
EXEC SQL TYPE serial_t IS long;
```

This declaration does not need to be part of a declare section; that is, you can also write typedefs as normal C statements.

Any word you declare as a typedef cannot be used as an SQL keyword in EXEC SQL commands later in the same program. For example, this won't work:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    typedef int start;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
...
EXEC SQL START TRANSACTION;
```

ECPG will report a syntax error for START TRANSACTION, because it no longer recognizes START as an SQL keyword, only as a typedef. (If you have such a conflict, and renaming the typedef seems impractical, you could write the SQL command using dynamic SQL.)

### Note

In PostgreSQL releases before v16, use of SQL keywords as typedef names was likely to result in syntax errors associated with use of the typedef itself, rather than use of the name as an SQL keyword. The new behavior is less likely to cause problems when an existing ECPG application is recompiled in a new PostgreSQL release with new keywords.

#### 36.4.4.3.4. Pointers

You can declare pointers to the most common types. Note however that you cannot use pointers as target variables of queries without auto-allocation. See Section 36.7 for more information on auto-allocation.

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    int    *intp;
    char **charp;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
```

### 36.4.5. Handling Nonprimitive SQL Data Types

This section contains information on how to handle nonscalar and user-defined SQL-level data types in ECPG applications. Note that this is distinct from the handling of host variables of nonprimitive types, described in the previous section.

#### 36.4.5.1. Arrays

Multi-dimensional SQL-level arrays are not directly supported in ECPG. One-dimensional SQL-level arrays can be mapped into C array host variables and vice-versa. However, when creating a statement `ecpg` does not know the types of the columns, so that it cannot check if a C array is input into a corresponding SQL-level array. When processing the output of an SQL statement, `ecpg` has the necessary information and thus checks if both are arrays.

If a query accesses *elements* of an array separately, then this avoids the use of arrays in ECPG. Then, a host variable with a type that can be mapped to the element type should be used. For example, if a column type is array of `integer`, a host variable of type `int` can be used. Also if the element type is `varchar` or `text`, a host variable of type `char[ ]` or `VARCHAR[ ]` can be used.

Here is an example. Assume the following table:

```
CREATE TABLE t3 (  
    ii integer[]  
);  
  
testdb=> SELECT * FROM t3;  
        ii  
-----  
    {1,2,3,4,5}  
(1 row)
```

The following example program retrieves the 4th element of the array and stores it into a host variable of type int:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;  
int ii;  
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;  
  
EXEC SQL DECLARE cur1 CURSOR FOR SELECT ii[4] FROM t3;  
EXEC SQL OPEN cur1;  
  
EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND DO BREAK;  
  
while (1)  
{  
    EXEC SQL FETCH FROM cur1 INTO :ii ;  
    printf("ii=%d\n", ii);  
}  
  
EXEC SQL CLOSE cur1;
```

This example shows the following result:

```
ii=4
```

To map multiple array elements to the multiple elements in an array type host variables each element of array column and each element of the host variable array have to be managed separately, for example:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;  
int ii_a[8];  
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;  
  
EXEC SQL DECLARE cur1 CURSOR FOR SELECT ii[1], ii[2], ii[3], ii[4]  
    FROM t3;  
EXEC SQL OPEN cur1;  
  
EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND DO BREAK;  
  
while (1)  
{  
    EXEC SQL FETCH FROM cur1  
    INTO :ii_a[0], :ii_a[1], :ii_a[2], :ii_a[3];  
    ...  
}
```

Note again that

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
int ii_a[8];
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

EXEC SQL DECLARE cur1 CURSOR FOR SELECT ii FROM t3;
EXEC SQL OPEN cur1;

EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND DO BREAK;

while (1)
{
    /* WRONG */
    EXEC SQL FETCH FROM cur1 INTO :ii_a;
    ...
}
```

would not work correctly in this case, because you cannot map an array type column to an array host variable directly.

Another workaround is to store arrays in their external string representation in host variables of type `char[]` or `VARCHAR[]`. For more details about this representation, see Section 8.15.2. Note that this means that the array cannot be accessed naturally as an array in the host program (without further processing that parses the text representation).

### 36.4.5.2. Composite Types

Composite types are not directly supported in ECPG, but an easy workaround is possible. The available workarounds are similar to the ones described for arrays above: Either access each attribute separately or use the external string representation.

For the following examples, assume the following type and table:

```
CREATE TYPE comp_t AS (intval integer, textval varchar(32));
CREATE TABLE t4 (compval comp_t);
INSERT INTO t4 VALUES ( (256, 'PostgreSQL') );
```

The most obvious solution is to access each attribute separately. The following program retrieves data from the example table by selecting each attribute of the type `comp_t` separately:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
int intval;
varchar textval[33];
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

/* Put each element of the composite type column in the SELECT
   list. */
EXEC SQL DECLARE cur1 CURSOR FOR SELECT (compval).intval,
    (compval).textval FROM t4;
EXEC SQL OPEN cur1;

EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND DO BREAK;

while (1)
{
```

```
    /* Fetch each element of the composite type column into host
    variables. */
    EXEC SQL FETCH FROM curl INTO :intval, :textval;

    printf("intval=%d, textval=%s\n", intval, textval.arr);
}

EXEC SQL CLOSE curl;
```

To enhance this example, the host variables to store values in the `FETCH` command can be gathered into one structure. For more details about the host variable in the structure form, see Section 36.4.4.3.2. To switch to the structure, the example can be modified as below. The two host variables, `intval` and `textval`, become members of the `comp_t` structure, and the structure is specified on the `FETCH` command.

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
typedef struct
{
    int intval;
    varchar textval[33];
} comp_t;

comp_t compval;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

/* Put each element of the composite type column in the SELECT
list. */
EXEC SQL DECLARE curl CURSOR FOR SELECT (compval).intval,
(compval).textval FROM t4;
EXEC SQL OPEN curl;

EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND DO BREAK;

while (1)
{
    /* Put all values in the SELECT list into one structure. */
    EXEC SQL FETCH FROM curl INTO :compval;

    printf("intval=%d, textval=%s\n", compval.intval,
    compval.textval.arr);
}

EXEC SQL CLOSE curl;
```

Although a structure is used in the `FETCH` command, the attribute names in the `SELECT` clause are specified one by one. This can be enhanced by using a `*` to ask for all attributes of the composite type value.

```
...
EXEC SQL DECLARE curl CURSOR FOR SELECT (compval).* FROM t4;
EXEC SQL OPEN curl;

EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND DO BREAK;

while (1)
{
    /* Put all values in the SELECT list into one structure. */
```

```
EXEC SQL FETCH FROM curl INTO :compval;

    printf("intval=%d, textval=%s\n", compval.intval,
compval.textval.arr);
}
...
```

This way, composite types can be mapped into structures almost seamlessly, even though ECPG does not understand the composite type itself.

Finally, it is also possible to store composite type values in their external string representation in host variables of type `char [ ]` or `VARCHAR[ ]`. But that way, it is not easily possible to access the fields of the value from the host program.

### 36.4.5.3. User-Defined Base Types

New user-defined base types are not directly supported by ECPG. You can use the external string representation and host variables of type `char [ ]` or `VARCHAR[ ]`, and this solution is indeed appropriate and sufficient for many types.

Here is an example using the data type `complex` from the example in Section 38.13. The external string representation of that type is `(%f,%f)`, which is defined in the functions `complex_in()` and `complex_out()` functions in Section 38.13. The following example inserts the `complex` type values `(1,1)` and `(3,3)` into the columns `a` and `b`, and select them from the table after that.

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    varchar a[64];
    varchar b[64];
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

EXEC SQL INSERT INTO test_complex VALUES ('(1,1)', '(3,3)');

EXEC SQL DECLARE curl CURSOR FOR SELECT a, b FROM test_complex;
EXEC SQL OPEN curl;

EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND DO BREAK;

while (1)
{
    EXEC SQL FETCH FROM curl INTO :a, :b;
    printf("a=%s, b=%s\n", a.arr, b.arr);
}

EXEC SQL CLOSE curl;
```

This example shows following result:

```
a=(1,1), b=(3,3)
```

Another workaround is avoiding the direct use of the user-defined types in ECPG and instead create a function or cast that converts between the user-defined type and a primitive type that ECPG can handle. Note, however, that type casts, especially implicit ones, should be introduced into the type system very carefully.

For example,

```
CREATE FUNCTION create_complex(r double, i double) RETURNS complex
```

```
LANGUAGE SQL
IMMUTABLE
AS $$ SELECT $1 * complex '(1,0\'' + $2 * complex '(0,1\'' $$;
```

After this definition, the following

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
double a, b, c, d;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

a = 1;
b = 2;
c = 3;
d = 4;

EXEC SQL INSERT INTO test_complex VALUES (create_complex(:a, :b),
      create_complex(:c, :d));
```

has the same effect as

```
EXEC SQL INSERT INTO test_complex VALUES ('(1,2)', '(3,4)');
```

## 36.4.6. Indicators

The examples above do not handle null values. In fact, the retrieval examples will raise an error if they fetch a null value from the database. To be able to pass null values to the database or retrieve null values from the database, you need to append a second host variable specification to each host variable that contains data. This second host variable is called the *indicator* and contains a flag that tells whether the datum is null, in which case the value of the real host variable is ignored. Here is an example that handles the retrieval of null values correctly:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
VARCHAR val;
int val_ind;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

...

EXEC SQL SELECT b INTO :val :val_ind FROM test1;
```

The indicator variable `val_ind` will be zero if the value was not null, and it will be negative if the value was null. (See Section 36.16 to enable Oracle-specific behavior.)

The indicator has another function: if the indicator value is positive, it means that the value is not null, but it was truncated when it was stored in the host variable.

If the argument `-r no_indicator` is passed to the preprocessor `ecpg`, it works in “no-indicator” mode. In no-indicator mode, if no indicator variable is specified, null values are signaled (on input and output) for character string types as empty string and for integer types as the lowest possible value for type (for example, `INT_MIN` for `int`).

## 36.5. Dynamic SQL

In many cases, the particular SQL statements that an application has to execute are known at the time the application is written. In some cases, however, the SQL statements are composed at run time or



provided by an external source. In these cases you cannot embed the SQL statements directly into the C source code, but there is a facility that allows you to call arbitrary SQL statements that you provide in a string variable.

### 36.5.1. Executing Statements without a Result Set

The simplest way to execute an arbitrary SQL statement is to use the command `EXECUTE IMMEDIATE`. For example:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
const char *stmt = "CREATE TABLE test1 (...);";
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
```

```
EXEC SQL EXECUTE IMMEDIATE :stmt;
```

`EXECUTE IMMEDIATE` can be used for SQL statements that do not return a result set (e.g., DDL, INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE). You cannot execute statements that retrieve data (e.g., SELECT) this way. The next section describes how to do that.

### 36.5.2. Executing a Statement with Input Parameters

A more powerful way to execute arbitrary SQL statements is to prepare them once and execute the prepared statement as often as you like. It is also possible to prepare a generalized version of a statement and then execute specific versions of it by substituting parameters. When preparing the statement, write question marks where you want to substitute parameters later. For example:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
const char *stmt = "INSERT INTO test1 VALUES(?, ?);";
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

EXEC SQL PREPARE mystmt FROM :stmt;
...
EXEC SQL EXECUTE mystmt USING 42, 'foobar';
```

When you don't need the prepared statement anymore, you should deallocate it:

```
EXEC SQL DEALLOCATE PREPARE name;
```

### 36.5.3. Executing a Statement with a Result Set

To execute an SQL statement with a single result row, `EXECUTE` can be used. To save the result, add an INTO clause.

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
const char *stmt = "SELECT a, b, c FROM test1 WHERE a > ?";
int v1, v2;
VARCHAR v3[50];
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

EXEC SQL PREPARE mystmt FROM :stmt;
...
EXEC SQL EXECUTE mystmt INTO :v1, :v2, :v3 USING 37;
```

An EXECUTE command can have an INTO clause, a USING clause, both, or neither.

If a query is expected to return more than one result row, a cursor should be used, as in the following example. (See Section 36.3.2 for more details about the cursor.)

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
char dbaname[128];
char datname[128];
char *stmt = "SELECT u.username as dbaname, d.datname "
            "   FROM pg_database d, pg_user u "
            "   WHERE d.datdba = u.usesysid";
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

EXEC SQL CONNECT TO testdb AS con1 USER testuser;
EXEC SQL SELECT pg_catalog.set_config('search_path', '', false);
EXEC SQL COMMIT;

EXEC SQL PREPARE stmt1 FROM :stmt;

EXEC SQL DECLARE cursor1 CURSOR FOR stmt1;
EXEC SQL OPEN cursor1;

EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND DO BREAK;

while (1)
{
    EXEC SQL FETCH cursor1 INTO :dbaname,:datname;
    printf("dbaname=%s, datname=%s\n", dbaname, datname);
}

EXEC SQL CLOSE cursor1;

EXEC SQL COMMIT;
EXEC SQL DISCONNECT ALL;
```

## 36.6. pgtypes Library

The pgtypes library maps PostgreSQL database types to C equivalents that can be used in C programs. It also offers functions to do basic calculations with those types within C, i.e., without the help of the PostgreSQL server. See the following example:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    date datel;
    timestamp ts1, tsout;
    interval iv1;
    char *out;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

PGTYPESdate_today(&datel);
EXEC SQL SELECT started, duration INTO :ts1, :iv1 FROM datetbl
    WHERE d=:datel;
PGTYPEStimestamp_add_interval(&ts1, &iv1, &tsout);
out = PGTYPEStimestamp_to_asc(&tsout);
printf("Started + duration: %s\n", out);
PGTYPESchar_free(out);
```

## 36.6.1. Character Strings

Some functions such as `PGTYPESnumeric_to_asc` return a pointer to a freshly allocated character string. These results should be freed with `PGTYPESchar_free` instead of `free`. (This is important only on Windows, where memory allocation and release sometimes need to be done by the same library.)

## 36.6.2. The numeric Type

The numeric type offers to do calculations with arbitrary precision. See Section 8.1 for the equivalent type in the PostgreSQL server. Because of the arbitrary precision this variable needs to be able to expand and shrink dynamically. That's why you can only create numeric variables on the heap, by means of the `PGTYPESnumeric_new` and `PGTYPESnumeric_free` functions. The decimal type, which is similar but limited in precision, can be created on the stack as well as on the heap.

The following functions can be used to work with the numeric type:

`PGTYPESnumeric_new`

Request a pointer to a newly allocated numeric variable.

```
numeric *PGTYPESnumeric_new(void);
```

`PGTYPESnumeric_free`

Free a numeric type, release all of its memory.

```
void PGTYPESnumeric_free(numeric *var);
```

`PGTYPESnumeric_from_asc`

Parse a numeric type from its string notation.

```
numeric *PGTYPESnumeric_from_asc(char *str, char **endptr);
```

Valid formats are for example: `-2`, `.794`, `+3.44`, `592.49E07` or `-32.84e-4`. If the value could be parsed successfully, a valid pointer is returned, else the `NULL` pointer. At the moment ECPG always parses the complete string and so it currently does not support to store the address of the first invalid character in `*endptr`. You can safely set `endptr` to `NULL`.

`PGTYPESnumeric_to_asc`

Returns a pointer to a string allocated by `malloc` that contains the string representation of the numeric type `num`.

```
char *PGTYPESnumeric_to_asc(numeric *num, int dscale);
```

The numeric value will be printed with `dscale` decimal digits, with rounding applied if necessary. The result must be freed with `PGTYPESchar_free()`.

`PGTYPESnumeric_add`

Add two numeric variables into a third one.

```
int PGTYPESnumeric_add(numeric *var1, numeric *var2, numeric
    *result);
```

The function adds the variables `var1` and `var2` into the result variable `result`. The function returns 0 on success and -1 in case of error.

#### PGTYPESnumeric\_sub

Subtract two numeric variables and return the result in a third one.

```
int PGTYPESnumeric_sub(numeric *var1, numeric *var2, numeric
    *result);
```

The function subtracts the variable `var2` from the variable `var1`. The result of the operation is stored in the variable `result`. The function returns 0 on success and -1 in case of error.

#### PGTYPESnumeric\_mul

Multiply two numeric variables and return the result in a third one.

```
int PGTYPESnumeric_mul(numeric *var1, numeric *var2, numeric
    *result);
```

The function multiplies the variables `var1` and `var2`. The result of the operation is stored in the variable `result`. The function returns 0 on success and -1 in case of error.

#### PGTYPESnumeric\_div

Divide two numeric variables and return the result in a third one.

```
int PGTYPESnumeric_div(numeric *var1, numeric *var2, numeric
    *result);
```

The function divides the variables `var1` by `var2`. The result of the operation is stored in the variable `result`. The function returns 0 on success and -1 in case of error.

#### PGTYPESnumeric\_cmp

Compare two numeric variables.

```
int PGTYPESnumeric_cmp(numeric *var1, numeric *var2)
```

This function compares two numeric variables. In case of error, `INT_MAX` is returned. On success, the function returns one of three possible results:

- 1, if `var1` is bigger than `var2`
- -1, if `var1` is smaller than `var2`
- 0, if `var1` and `var2` are equal

#### PGTYPESnumeric\_from\_int

Convert an int variable to a numeric variable.

```
int PGTYPESnumeric_from_int(signed int int_val, numeric *var);
```

This function accepts a variable of type `signed int` and stores it in the numeric variable `var`. Upon success, 0 is returned and -1 in case of a failure.

**PGTYPESnumeric\_from\_long**

Convert a long int variable to a numeric variable.

```
int PGTYPESnumeric_from_long(signed long int long_val, numeric
                             *var);
```

This function accepts a variable of type signed long int and stores it in the numeric variable `var`. Upon success, 0 is returned and -1 in case of a failure.

**PGTYPESnumeric\_copy**

Copy over one numeric variable into another one.

```
int PGTYPESnumeric_copy(numeric *src, numeric *dst);
```

This function copies over the value of the variable that `src` points to into the variable that `dst` points to. It returns 0 on success and -1 if an error occurs.

**PGTYPESnumeric\_from\_double**

Convert a variable of type double to a numeric.

```
int PGTYPESnumeric_from_double(double d, numeric *dst);
```

This function accepts a variable of type double and stores the result in the variable that `dst` points to. It returns 0 on success and -1 if an error occurs.

**PGTYPESnumeric\_to\_double**

Convert a variable of type numeric to double.

```
int PGTYPESnumeric_to_double(numeric *nv, double *dp)
```

The function converts the numeric value from the variable that `nv` points to into the double variable that `dp` points to. It returns 0 on success and -1 if an error occurs, including overflow. On overflow, the global variable `errno` will be set to `PGTYPES_NUM_OVERFLOW` additionally.

**PGTYPESnumeric\_to\_int**

Convert a variable of type numeric to int.

```
int PGTYPESnumeric_to_int(numeric *nv, int *ip);
```

The function converts the numeric value from the variable that `nv` points to into the integer variable that `ip` points to. It returns 0 on success and -1 if an error occurs, including overflow. On overflow, the global variable `errno` will be set to `PGTYPES_NUM_OVERFLOW` additionally.

**PGTYPESnumeric\_to\_long**

Convert a variable of type numeric to long.

```
int PGTYPESnumeric_to_long(numeric *nv, long *lp);
```

The function converts the numeric value from the variable that `nv` points to into the long integer variable that `lp` points to. It returns 0 on success and -1 if an error occurs, including overflow. On overflow, the global variable `errno` will be set to `PGTYPES_NUM_OVERFLOW` additionally.

**PGTYPESnumeric\_to\_decimal**

Convert a variable of type numeric to decimal.

```
int PGTYPESnumeric_to_decimal(numeric *src, decimal *dst);
```

The function converts the numeric value from the variable that `src` points to into the decimal variable that `dst` points to. It returns 0 on success and -1 if an error occurs, including overflow. On overflow, the global variable `errno` will be set to `PGTYPES_NUM_OVERFLOW` additionally.

**PGTYPESnumeric\_from\_decimal**

Convert a variable of type decimal to numeric.

```
int PGTYPESnumeric_from_decimal(decimal *src, numeric *dst);
```

The function converts the decimal value from the variable that `src` points to into the numeric variable that `dst` points to. It returns 0 on success and -1 if an error occurs. Since the decimal type is implemented as a limited version of the numeric type, overflow cannot occur with this conversion.

## 36.6.3. The date Type

The date type in C enables your programs to deal with data of the SQL type date. See Section 8.5 for the equivalent type in the PostgreSQL server.

The following functions can be used to work with the date type:

**PGTYPESdate\_from\_timestamp**

Extract the date part from a timestamp.

```
date PGTYPESdate_from_timestamp(timestamp dt);
```

The function receives a timestamp as its only argument and returns the extracted date part from this timestamp.

**PGTYPESdate\_from\_asc**

Parse a date from its textual representation.

```
date PGTYPESdate_from_asc(char *str, char **endptr);
```

The function receives a C `char*` string `str` and a pointer to a C `char*` string `endptr`. At the moment ECPG always parses the complete string and so it currently does not support to store the address of the first invalid character in `*endptr`. You can safely set `endptr` to `NULL`.

Note that the function always assumes MDY-formatted dates and there is currently no variable to change that within ECPG.

Table 36.2 shows the allowed input formats.

**Table 36.2. Valid Input Formats for PGTYPESdate\_from\_asc**

Input	Result
January 8, 1999	January 8, 1999
1999-01-08	January 8, 1999

Input	Result
1/8/1999	January 8, 1999
1/18/1999	January 18, 1999
01/02/03	February 1, 2003
1999-Jan-08	January 8, 1999
Jan-08-1999	January 8, 1999
08-Jan-1999	January 8, 1999
99-Jan-08	January 8, 1999
08-Jan-99	January 8, 1999
08-Jan-06	January 8, 2006
Jan-08-99	January 8, 1999
19990108	ISO 8601; January 8, 1999
990108	ISO 8601; January 8, 1999
1999.008	year and day of year
J2451187	Julian day
January 8, 99 BC	year 99 before the Common Era

**PGTYPESto\_asc**

Return the textual representation of a date variable.

```
char *PGTYPESto_asc(date dDate);
```

The function receives the date `dDate` as its only parameter. It will output the date in the form 1999-01-18, i.e., in the YYYY-MM-DD format. The result must be freed with `PGTYPE_Schar_free()`.

**PGTYPESto\_julmdy**

Extract the values for the day, the month and the year from a variable of type date.

```
void PGTYPESto_julmdy(date d, int *mdy);
```

The function receives the date `d` and a pointer to an array of 3 integer values `mdy`. The variable name indicates the sequential order: `mdy[0]` will be set to contain the number of the month, `mdy[1]` will be set to the value of the day and `mdy[2]` will contain the year.

**PGTYPESto\_mdjul**

Create a date value from an array of 3 integers that specify the day, the month and the year of the date.

```
void PGTYPESto_mdjul(int *mdy, date *jdate);
```

The function receives the array of the 3 integers (`mdy`) as its first argument and as its second argument a pointer to a variable of type date that should hold the result of the operation.

**PGTYPESto\_dayofweek**

Return a number representing the day of the week for a date value.

```
int PGTYPESto_dayofweek(date d);
```

The function receives the date variable `d` as its only argument and returns an integer that indicates the day of the week for this date.

- 0 - Sunday
- 1 - Monday
- 2 - Tuesday
- 3 - Wednesday
- 4 - Thursday
- 5 - Friday
- 6 - Saturday

`PGTYPESdate_today`

Get the current date.

```
void PGTYPESdate_today(date *d);
```

The function receives a pointer to a date variable (`d`) that it sets to the current date.

`PGTYPESdate_fmt_asc`

Convert a variable of type `date` to its textual representation using a format mask.

```
int PGTYPESdate_fmt_asc(date dDate, char *fmtstring, char
    *outbuf);
```

The function receives the date to convert (`dDate`), the format mask (`fmtstring`) and the string that will hold the textual representation of the date (`outbuf`).

On success, 0 is returned and a negative value if an error occurred.

The following literals are the field specifiers you can use:

- `dd` - The number of the day of the month.
- `mm` - The number of the month of the year.
- `yy` - The number of the year as a two digit number.
- `yyyy` - The number of the year as a four digit number.
- `ddd` - The name of the day (abbreviated).
- `mmm` - The name of the month (abbreviated).

All other characters are copied 1:1 to the output string.

Table 36.3 indicates a few possible formats. This will give you an idea of how to use this function. All output lines are based on the same date: November 23, 1959.

**Table 36.3. Valid Input Formats for `PGTYPESdate_fmt_asc`**

Format	Result
<code>mmddyy</code>	112359
<code>ddmmyy</code>	231159



Format	Result
yymmdd	591123
yy/mm/dd	59/11/23
yy mm dd	59 11 23
yy.mm.dd	59.11.23
.mm.yyyy.dd.	.11.1959.23.
mmm. dd, yyyy	Nov. 23, 1959
mmm dd yyyy	Nov 23 1959
yyyy dd mm	1959 23 11
ddd, mmm. dd, yyyy	Mon, Nov. 23, 1959
(ddd) mmm. dd, yyyy	(Mon) Nov. 23, 1959

## PGTYPESdate\_defmt\_asc

Use a format mask to convert a C char\* string to a value of type date.

```
int PGTYPESdate_defmt_asc(date *d, char *fmt, char *str);
```

The function receives a pointer to the date value that should hold the result of the operation (*d*), the format mask to use for parsing the date (*fmt*) and the C char\* string containing the textual representation of the date (*str*). The textual representation is expected to match the format mask. However you do not need to have a 1:1 mapping of the string to the format mask. The function only analyzes the sequential order and looks for the literals *yy* or *yyyy* that indicate the position of the year, *mm* to indicate the position of the month and *dd* to indicate the position of the day.

Table 36.4 indicates a few possible formats. This will give you an idea of how to use this function.

**Table 36.4. Valid Input Formats for `rdefmtdate`**

Format	String	Result
ddmmyy	21-2-54	1954-02-21
ddmmyy	2-12-54	1954-12-02
ddmmyy	20111954	1954-11-20
ddmmyy	130464	1964-04-13
mmm.dd.yyyy	MAR-12-1967	1967-03-12
yy/mm/dd	1954, February 3rd	1954-02-03
mmm.dd.yyyy	041269	1969-04-12
yy/mm/dd	In the year 2525, in the month of Ju- ly, mankind will be alive on the 28th day	2525-07-28
dd-mm-yy	I said on the 28th of July in the year 2525	2525-07-28
mmm.dd.yyyy	9/14/58	1958-09-14
yy/mm/dd	47/03/29	1947-03-29
mmm.dd.yyyy	oct 28 1975	1975-10-28
mmddy	Nov 14th, 1985	1985-11-14

## 36.6.4. The timestamp Type

The timestamp type in C enables your programs to deal with data of the SQL type timestamp. See Section 8.5 for the equivalent type in the PostgreSQL server.

The following functions can be used to work with the timestamp type:

`PGTYPEStimestamp_from_asc`

Parse a timestamp from its textual representation into a timestamp variable.

```
timestamp PGTYPEStimestamp_from_asc(char *str, char **endptr);
```

The function receives the string to parse (`str`) and a pointer to a C `char*` (`endptr`). At the moment ECPG always parses the complete string and so it currently does not support to store the address of the first invalid character in `*endptr`. You can safely set `endptr` to `NULL`.

The function returns the parsed timestamp on success. On error, `PGTYPEStimestamp_invalidTimestamp` is returned and `errno` is set to `PGTYPEStimestamp_TS_BAD_TIMESTAMP`. See `PGTYPEStimestamp_invalidTimestamp` for important notes on this value.

In general, the input string can contain any combination of an allowed date specification, a white-space character and an allowed time specification. Note that time zones are not supported by ECPG. It can parse them but does not apply any calculation as the PostgreSQL server does for example. Timezone specifiers are silently discarded.

Table 36.5 contains a few examples for input strings.

**Table 36.5. Valid Input Formats for `PGTYPEStimestamp_from_asc`**

Input	Result
1999-01-08 04:05:06	1999-01-08 04:05:06
January 8 04:05:06 1999 PST	1999-01-08 04:05:06
1999-Jan-08 04:05:06.789-8	1999-01-08 04:05:06.789 (time zone specifier ignored)
J2451187 04:05-08:00	1999-01-08 04:05:00 (time zone specifier ignored)

`PGTYPEStimestamp_to_asc`

Converts a date to a C `char*` string.

```
char *PGTYPEStimestamp_to_asc(timestamp tstamp);
```

The function receives the timestamp `tstamp` as its only argument and returns an allocated string that contains the textual representation of the timestamp. The result must be freed with `PGTYPEStimestamp_free()`.

`PGTYPEStimestamp_current`

Retrieve the current timestamp.

```
void PGTYPEStimestamp_current(timestamp *ts);
```

The function retrieves the current timestamp and saves it into the timestamp variable that `ts` points to.

`PGTYPEStimestamp_fmt_asc`

Convert a timestamp variable to a C char\* using a format mask.

```
int PGTYPEStimestamp_fmt_asc(timestamp *ts, char *output, int
    str_len, char *fmtstr);
```

The function receives a pointer to the timestamp to convert as its first argument (`ts`), a pointer to the output buffer (`output`), the maximal length that has been allocated for the output buffer (`str_len`) and the format mask to use for the conversion (`fmtstr`).

Upon success, the function returns 0 and a negative value if an error occurred.

You can use the following format specifiers for the format mask. The format specifiers are the same ones that are used in the `strftime` function in `libc`. Any non-format specifier will be copied into the output buffer.

- `%A` - is replaced by national representation of the full weekday name.
- `%a` - is replaced by national representation of the abbreviated weekday name.
- `%B` - is replaced by national representation of the full month name.
- `%b` - is replaced by national representation of the abbreviated month name.
- `%C` - is replaced by (year / 100) as decimal number; single digits are preceded by a zero.
- `%c` - is replaced by national representation of time and date.
- `%D` - is equivalent to `%m/%d/%Y`.
- `%d` - is replaced by the day of the month as a decimal number (01–31).
- `%E* %O*` - POSIX locale extensions. The sequences `%Ec %EC %Ex %EX %Ey %EY %Od %Oe %OH %OI %Om %OM %OS %Ou %OU %OV %Ow %OW %Oy` are supposed to provide alternative representations.

Additionally `%OB` implemented to represent alternative months names (used standalone, without day mentioned).

- `%e` - is replaced by the day of month as a decimal number (1–31); single digits are preceded by a blank.
- `%F` - is equivalent to `%Y-%m-%d`.
- `%G` - is replaced by a year as a decimal number with century. This year is the one that contains the greater part of the week (Monday as the first day of the week).
- `%g` - is replaced by the same year as in `%G`, but as a decimal number without century (00–99).
- `%H` - is replaced by the hour (24-hour clock) as a decimal number (00–23).
- `%h` - the same as `%b`.
- `%I` - is replaced by the hour (12-hour clock) as a decimal number (01–12).
- `%j` - is replaced by the day of the year as a decimal number (001–366).
- `%k` - is replaced by the hour (24-hour clock) as a decimal number (0–23); single digits are preceded by a blank.
- `%l` - is replaced by the hour (12-hour clock) as a decimal number (1–12); single digits are preceded by a blank.

- %M - is replaced by the minute as a decimal number (00–59).
- %m - is replaced by the month as a decimal number (01–12).
- %n - is replaced by a newline.
- %O\* - the same as %E\*.
- %p - is replaced by national representation of either “ante meridiem” or “post meridiem” as appropriate.
- %R - is equivalent to %H:%M.
- %r - is equivalent to %I:%M:%S %p.
- %S - is replaced by the second as a decimal number (00–60).
- %s - is replaced by the number of seconds since the Epoch, UTC.
- %T - is equivalent to %H:%M:%S
- %t - is replaced by a tab.
- %U - is replaced by the week number of the year (Sunday as the first day of the week) as a decimal number (00–53).
- %u - is replaced by the weekday (Monday as the first day of the week) as a decimal number (1–7).
- %V - is replaced by the week number of the year (Monday as the first day of the week) as a decimal number (01–53). If the week containing January 1 has four or more days in the new year, then it is week 1; otherwise it is the last week of the previous year, and the next week is week 1.
- %v - is equivalent to %e-%b-%Y.
- %W - is replaced by the week number of the year (Monday as the first day of the week) as a decimal number (00–53).
- %w - is replaced by the weekday (Sunday as the first day of the week) as a decimal number (0–6).
- %X - is replaced by national representation of the time.
- %x - is replaced by national representation of the date.
- %Y - is replaced by the year with century as a decimal number.
- %y - is replaced by the year without century as a decimal number (00–99).
- %Z - is replaced by the time zone name.
- %z - is replaced by the time zone offset from UTC; a leading plus sign stands for east of UTC, a minus sign for west of UTC, hours and minutes follow with two digits each and no delimiter between them (common form for RFC 822<sup>1</sup> date headers).
- %+ - is replaced by national representation of the date and time.
- %-\* - GNU libc extension. Do not do any padding when performing numerical outputs.
- \$\_\* - GNU libc extension. Explicitly specify space for padding.
- %0\* - GNU libc extension. Explicitly specify zero for padding.

---

<sup>1</sup> <https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc822>

- %% - is replaced by %.

#### PGTYPEStimestamp\_sub

Subtract one timestamp from another one and save the result in a variable of type interval.

```
int PGTYPEStimestamp_sub(timestamp *ts1, timestamp *ts2,
                          interval *iv);
```

The function will subtract the timestamp variable that `ts2` points to from the timestamp variable that `ts1` points to and will store the result in the interval variable that `iv` points to.

Upon success, the function returns 0 and a negative value if an error occurred.

#### PGTYPEStimestamp\_defmt\_asc

Parse a timestamp value from its textual representation using a formatting mask.

```
int PGTYPEStimestamp_defmt_asc(char *str, char *fmt, timestamp
                               *d);
```

The function receives the textual representation of a timestamp in the variable `str` as well as the formatting mask to use in the variable `fmt`. The result will be stored in the variable that `d` points to.

If the formatting mask `fmt` is NULL, the function will fall back to the default formatting mask which is %Y-%m-%d %H:%M:%S.

This is the reverse function to `PGTYPEStimestamp_fmt_asc`. See the documentation there in order to find out about the possible formatting mask entries.

#### PGTYPEStimestamp\_add\_interval

Add an interval variable to a timestamp variable.

```
int PGTYPEStimestamp_add_interval(timestamp *tin, interval
                                   *span, timestamp *tout);
```

The function receives a pointer to a timestamp variable `tin` and a pointer to an interval variable `span`. It adds the interval to the timestamp and saves the resulting timestamp in the variable that `tout` points to.

Upon success, the function returns 0 and a negative value if an error occurred.

#### PGTYPEStimestamp\_sub\_interval

Subtract an interval variable from a timestamp variable.

```
int PGTYPEStimestamp_sub_interval(timestamp *tin, interval
                                   *span, timestamp *tout);
```

The function subtracts the interval variable that `span` points to from the timestamp variable that `tin` points to and saves the result into the variable that `tout` points to.

Upon success, the function returns 0 and a negative value if an error occurred.

## 36.6.5. The interval Type

The interval type in C enables your programs to deal with data of the SQL type interval. See Section 8.5 for the equivalent type in the PostgreSQL server.

The following functions can be used to work with the interval type:

`PGTYPEInterval_new`

Return a pointer to a newly allocated interval variable.

```
interval *PGTYPEInterval_new(void);
```

`PGTYPEInterval_free`

Release the memory of a previously allocated interval variable.

```
void PGTYPEInterval_free(interval *intvl);
```

`PGTYPEInterval_from_asc`

Parse an interval from its textual representation.

```
interval *PGTYPEInterval_from_asc(char *str, char **endptr);
```

The function parses the input string `str` and returns a pointer to an allocated interval variable. At the moment ECPG always parses the complete string and so it currently does not support to store the address of the first invalid character in `*endptr`. You can safely set `endptr` to `NULL`.

`PGTYPEInterval_to_asc`

Convert a variable of type interval to its textual representation.

```
char *PGTYPEInterval_to_asc(interval *span);
```

The function converts the interval variable that `span` points to into a C `char*`. The output looks like this example: @ 1 day 12 hours 59 mins 10 secs. The result must be freed with `PGTYPEschar_free()`.

`PGTYPEInterval_copy`

Copy a variable of type interval.

```
int PGTYPEInterval_copy(interval *intvlsrc, interval
    *intvldest);
```

The function copies the interval variable that `intvlsrc` points to into the variable that `intvldest` points to. Note that you need to allocate the memory for the destination variable before.

## 36.6.6. The decimal Type

The decimal type is similar to the numeric type. However it is limited to a maximum precision of 30 significant digits. In contrast to the numeric type which can be created on the heap only, the decimal type can be created either on the stack or on the heap (by means of the functions `PGTYPEsdecimal_new` and `PGTYPEsdecimal_free`). There are a lot of other functions that deal with the decimal type in the Informix compatibility mode described in Section 36.15.

The following functions can be used to work with the decimal type and are not only contained in the `libcompat` library.

`PGTYPESdecimal_new`

Request a pointer to a newly allocated decimal variable.

```
decimal *PGTYPESdecimal_new(void);
```

`PGTYPESdecimal_free`

Free a decimal type, release all of its memory.

```
void PGTYPESdecimal_free(decimal *var);
```

## 36.6.7. errno Values of pgtypeslib

`PGTYPES_NUM_BAD_NUMERIC`

An argument should contain a numeric variable (or point to a numeric variable) but in fact its in-memory representation was invalid.

`PGTYPES_NUM_OVERFLOW`

An overflow occurred. Since the numeric type can deal with almost arbitrary precision, converting a numeric variable into other types might cause overflow.

`PGTYPES_NUM_UNDERFLOW`

An underflow occurred. Since the numeric type can deal with almost arbitrary precision, converting a numeric variable into other types might cause underflow.

`PGTYPES_NUM_DIVIDE_ZERO`

A division by zero has been attempted.

`PGTYPES_DATE_BAD_DATE`

An invalid date string was passed to the `PGTYPESdate_from_asc` function.

`PGTYPES_DATE_ERR_EARGS`

Invalid arguments were passed to the `PGTYPESdate_defmt_asc` function.

`PGTYPES_DATE_ERR_ENOSHORTDATE`

An invalid token in the input string was found by the `PGTYPESdate_defmt_asc` function.

`PGTYPES_INTVL_BAD_INTERVAL`

An invalid interval string was passed to the `PGTYPESinterval_from_asc` function, or an invalid interval value was passed to the `PGTYPESinterval_to_asc` function.

`PGTYPES_DATE_ERR_ENOTDMY`

There was a mismatch in the day/month/year assignment in the `PGTYPESdate_defmt_asc` function.

`PGTYPES_DATE_BAD_DAY`

An invalid day of the month value was found by the `PGTYPESdate_defmt_asc` function.

`PGTYPES_DATE_BAD_MONTH`

An invalid month value was found by the `PGTYPESdate_defmt_asc` function.

`PGTYPES_TS_BAD_TIMESTAMP`

An invalid timestamp string was passed to the `PGTYPEStimestamp_from_asc` function, or an invalid timestamp value was passed to the `PGTYPEStimestamp_to_asc` function.

`PGTYPES_TS_ERR_EINFTIME`

An infinite timestamp value was encountered in a context that cannot handle it.

## 36.6.8. Special Constants of pgtypeslib

`PGTYPEStimestampInvalidTimestamp`

A value of type timestamp representing an invalid time stamp. This is returned by the function `PGTYPEStimestamp_from_asc` on parse error. Note that due to the internal representation of the timestamp data type, `PGTYPEStimestampInvalidTimestamp` is also a valid timestamp at the same time. It is set to 1899-12-31 23:59:59. In order to detect errors, make sure that your application does not only test for `PGTYPEStimestampInvalidTimestamp` but also for `errno != 0` after each call to `PGTYPEStimestamp_from_asc`.

## 36.7. Using Descriptor Areas

An SQL descriptor area is a more sophisticated method for processing the result of a `SELECT`, `FETCH` or a `DESCRIBE` statement. An SQL descriptor area groups the data of one row of data together with metadata items into one data structure. The metadata is particularly useful when executing dynamic SQL statements, where the nature of the result columns might not be known ahead of time. PostgreSQL provides two ways to use Descriptor Areas: the named SQL Descriptor Areas and the C-structure SQLDAs.

### 36.7.1. Named SQL Descriptor Areas

A named SQL descriptor area consists of a header, which contains information concerning the entire descriptor, and one or more item descriptor areas, which basically each describe one column in the result row.

Before you can use an SQL descriptor area, you need to allocate one:

```
EXEC SQL ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR identifier;
```

The identifier serves as the “variable name” of the descriptor area. When you don't need the descriptor anymore, you should deallocate it:

```
EXEC SQL DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR identifier;
```

To use a descriptor area, specify it as the storage target in an `INTO` clause, instead of listing host variables:

```
EXEC SQL FETCH NEXT FROM mycursor INTO SQL DESCRIPTOR mydesc;
```

If the result set is empty, the Descriptor Area will still contain the metadata from the query, i.e., the field names.

For not yet executed prepared queries, the `DESCRIBE` statement can be used to get the metadata of the result set:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
```



```
char *sql_stmt = "SELECT * FROM table1";
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

EXEC SQL PREPARE stmt1 FROM :sql_stmt;
EXEC SQL DESCRIBE stmt1 INTO SQL DESCRIPTOR mydesc;
```

Before PostgreSQL 9.0, the SQL keyword was optional, so using DESCRIPTOR and SQL DESCRIPTOR produced named SQL Descriptor Areas. Now it is mandatory, omitting the SQL keyword produces SQLDA Descriptor Areas, see Section 36.7.2.

In DESCRIBE and FETCH statements, the INTO and USING keywords can be used to similarly: they produce the result set and the metadata in a Descriptor Area.

Now how do you get the data out of the descriptor area? You can think of the descriptor area as a structure with named fields. To retrieve the value of a field from the header and store it into a host variable, use the following command:

```
EXEC SQL GET DESCRIPTOR name :hostvar = field;
```

Currently, there is only one header field defined: *COUNT*, which tells how many item descriptor areas exist (that is, how many columns are contained in the result). The host variable needs to be of an integer type. To get a field from the item descriptor area, use the following command:

```
EXEC SQL GET DESCRIPTOR name VALUE num :hostvar = field;
```

*num* can be a literal integer or a host variable containing an integer. Possible fields are:

CARDINALITY (integer)

number of rows in the result set

DATA

actual data item (therefore, the data type of this field depends on the query)

DATETIME\_INTERVAL\_CODE (integer)

When TYPE is 9, DATETIME\_INTERVAL\_CODE will have a value of 1 for DATE, 2 for TIME, 3 for TIMESTAMP, 4 for TIME WITH TIME ZONE, or 5 for TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE.

DATETIME\_INTERVAL\_PRECISION (integer)

not implemented

INDICATOR (integer)

the indicator (indicating a null value or a value truncation)

KEY\_MEMBER (integer)

not implemented

LENGTH (integer)

length of the datum in characters

NAME (string)

name of the column

NULLABLE (integer)

not implemented

OCTET\_LENGTH (integer)

length of the character representation of the datum in bytes

PRECISION (integer)

precision (for type numeric)

RETURNED\_LENGTH (integer)

length of the datum in characters

RETURNED\_OCTET\_LENGTH (integer)

length of the character representation of the datum in bytes

SCALE (integer)

scale (for type numeric)

TYPE (integer)

numeric code of the data type of the column

In EXECUTE, DECLARE and OPEN statements, the effect of the INTO and USING keywords are different. A Descriptor Area can also be manually built to provide the input parameters for a query or a cursor and USING SQL DESCRIPTOR *name* is the way to pass the input parameters into a parameterized query. The statement to build a named SQL Descriptor Area is below:

```
EXEC SQL SET DESCRIPTOR name VALUE num field = :hostvar;
```

PostgreSQL supports retrieving more than one record in one FETCH statement and storing the data in host variables in this case assumes that the variable is an array. E.g.:

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
int id[5];
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

EXEC SQL FETCH 5 FROM mycursor INTO SQL DESCRIPTOR mydesc;

EXEC SQL GET DESCRIPTOR mydesc VALUE 1 :id = DATA;
```

## 36.7.2. SQLDA Descriptor Areas

An SQLDA Descriptor Area is a C language structure which can be also used to get the result set and the metadata of a query. One structure stores one record from the result set.

```
EXEC SQL include sqllda.h;
sqllda_t      *mysqlda;

EXEC SQL FETCH 3 FROM mycursor INTO DESCRIPTOR mysqlda;
```

Note that the SQL keyword is omitted. The paragraphs about the use cases of the INTO and USING keywords in Section 36.7.1 also apply here with an addition. In a DESCRIBE statement the DESCRIPTOR keyword can be completely omitted if the INTO keyword is used:

```
EXEC SQL DESCRIBE prepared_statement INTO mysqlda;
```

The general flow of a program that uses SQLDA is:

1. Prepare a query, and declare a cursor for it.
2. Declare an SQLDA for the result rows.
3. Declare an SQLDA for the input parameters, and initialize them (memory allocation, parameter settings).
4. Open a cursor with the input SQLDA.
5. Fetch rows from the cursor, and store them into an output SQLDA.
6. Read values from the output SQLDA into the host variables (with conversion if necessary).
7. Close the cursor.
8. Free the memory area allocated for the input SQLDA.

### 36.7.2.1. SQLDA Data Structure

SQLDA uses three data structure types: `sqllda_t`, `sqlvar_t`, and `struct sqlname`.

#### Tip

PostgreSQL's SQLDA has a similar data structure to the one in IBM DB2 Universal Database, so some technical information on DB2's SQLDA could help understanding PostgreSQL's one better.

#### 36.7.2.1.1. `sqllda_t` Structure

The structure type `sqllda_t` is the type of the actual SQLDA. It holds one record. And two or more `sqllda_t` structures can be connected in a linked list with the pointer in the `desc_next` field, thus representing an ordered collection of rows. So, when two or more rows are fetched, the application can read them by following the `desc_next` pointer in each `sqllda_t` node.

The definition of `sqllda_t` is:

```
struct sqllda_struct
{
    char            sqldaid[8];
    long            sqldabc;
    short           sqln;
    short           sqld;
    struct sqllda_struct *desc_next;
    struct sqlvar_struct sqlvar[1];
};

typedef struct sqllda_struct sqllda_t;
```

The meaning of the fields is:

`sqldaid`

It contains the literal string "SQLDA".

`sqldabc`

It contains the size of the allocated space in bytes.

`sqln`

It contains the number of input parameters for a parameterized query in case it's passed into `OPEN`, `DECLARE` or `EXECUTE` statements using the `USING` keyword. In case it's used as output of `SELECT`, `EXECUTE` or `FETCH` statements, its value is the same as `sqld` statement

`sqld`

It contains the number of fields in a result set.

`desc_next`

If the query returns more than one record, multiple linked `SQLDA` structures are returned, and `desc_next` holds a pointer to the next entry in the list.

`sqlvar`

This is the array of the columns in the result set.

### 36.7.2.1.2. `sqlvar_t` Structure

The structure type `sqlvar_t` holds a column value and metadata such as type and length. The definition of the type is:

```
struct sqlvar_struct
{
    short      sqltype;
    short      sqllen;
    char       *sqldata;
    short      *sqlind;
    struct sqlname sqlname;
};

typedef struct sqlvar_struct sqlvar_t;
```

The meaning of the fields is:

`sqltype`

Contains the type identifier of the field. For values, see enum `ECPGttype` in `ecpgtype.h`.

`sqllen`

Contains the binary length of the field. e.g., 4 bytes for `ECPGt_int`.

`sqldata`

Points to the data. The format of the data is described in Section 36.4.4.

`sqlind`

Points to the null indicator. 0 means not null, -1 means null.

`sqlname`

The name of the field.

### 36.7.2.1.3. `struct sqlname` Structure

A `struct sqlname` structure holds a column name. It is used as a member of the `sqlvar_t` structure. The definition of the structure is:

```
#define NAMEDATALEN 64

struct sqlname
{
    short      length;
    char       data[NAMEDATALEN];
};
```

The meaning of the fields is:

length

Contains the length of the field name.

data

Contains the actual field name.

### 36.7.2.2. Retrieving a Result Set Using an SQLDA

The general steps to retrieve a query result set through an SQLDA are:

1. Declare an `sqllda_t` structure to receive the result set.
2. Execute `FETCH/EXECUTE/DESCRIBE` commands to process a query specifying the declared SQLDA.
3. Check the number of records in the result set by looking at `sqln`, a member of the `sqllda_t` structure.
4. Get the values of each column from `sqlvar[0]`, `sqlvar[1]`, etc., members of the `sqllda_t` structure.
5. Go to next row (`sqllda_t` structure) by following the `desc_next` pointer, a member of the `sqllda_t` structure.
6. Repeat above as you need.

Here is an example retrieving a result set through an SQLDA.

First, declare a `sqllda_t` structure to receive the result set.

```
sqllda_t *sqllda1;
```

Next, specify the SQLDA in a command. This is a `FETCH` command example.

```
EXEC SQL FETCH NEXT FROM curl INTO DESCRIPTOR sqllda1;
```

Run a loop following the linked list to retrieve the rows.

```
sqllda_t *cur_sqllda;

for (cur_sqllda = sqllda1;
     cur_sqllda != NULL;
     cur_sqllda = cur_sqllda->desc_next)
{
    ...
}
```

```
}
```

Inside the loop, run another loop to retrieve each column data (`sqlvar_t` structure) of the row.

```
for (i = 0; i < cur_sqlda->sqld; i++)
{
    sqlvar_t v = cur_sqlda->sqlvar[i];
    char *sqldata = v.sqldata;
    short sqllen = v.sqllen;
    ...
}
```

To get a column value, check the `sqltype` value, a member of the `sqlvar_t` structure. Then, switch to an appropriate way, depending on the column type, to copy data from the `sqlvar` field to a host variable.

```
char var_buf[1024];

switch (v.sqltype)
{
    case ECPGt_char:
        memset(&var_buf, 0, sizeof(var_buf));
        memcpy(&var_buf, sqldata, (sizeof(var_buf) <= sqllen ?
sizeof(var_buf) - 1 : sqllen));
        break;

    case ECPGt_int: /* integer */
        memcpy(&intval, sqldata, sqllen);
        snprintf(var_buf, sizeof(var_buf), "%d", intval);
        break;

    ...
}
```

### 36.7.2.3. Passing Query Parameters Using an SQLDA

The general steps to use an SQLDA to pass input parameters to a prepared query are:

1. Create a prepared query (prepared statement)
2. Declare an `sqlda_t` structure as an input SQLDA.
3. Allocate memory area (as `sqlda_t` structure) for the input SQLDA.
4. Set (copy) input values in the allocated memory.
5. Open a cursor with specifying the input SQLDA.

Here is an example.

First, create a prepared statement.

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
char query[1024] = "SELECT d.oid, * FROM pg_database d,
pg_stat_database s WHERE d.oid = s.datid AND (d.datname = ? OR
d.oid = ?)";
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
```

```
EXEC SQL PREPARE stmt1 FROM :query;
```

Next, allocate memory for an SQLDA, and set the number of input parameters in `sqln`, a member variable of the `sqlda_t` structure. When two or more input parameters are required for the prepared query, the application has to allocate additional memory space which is calculated by  $(nr. \text{ of params} - 1) * \text{sizeof}(\text{sqlvar\_t})$ . The example shown here allocates memory space for two input parameters.

```
sqlda_t *sqlda2;
```

```
sqlda2 = (sqlda_t *) malloc(sizeof(sqlda_t) + sizeof(sqlvar_t));  
memset(sqlda2, 0, sizeof(sqlda_t) + sizeof(sqlvar_t));
```

```
sqlda2->sqln = 2; /* number of input variables */
```

After memory allocation, store the parameter values into the `sqlvar[ ]` array. (This is same array used for retrieving column values when the SQLDA is receiving a result set.) In this example, the input parameters are "postgres", having a string type, and 1, having an integer type.

```
sqlda2->sqlvar[0].sqltype = ECPGt_char;  
sqlda2->sqlvar[0].sqldata = "postgres";  
sqlda2->sqlvar[0].sqlllen = 8;
```

```
int intval = 1;  
sqlda2->sqlvar[1].sqltype = ECPGt_int;  
sqlda2->sqlvar[1].sqldata = (char *) &intval;  
sqlda2->sqlvar[1].sqlllen = sizeof(intval);
```

By opening a cursor and specifying the SQLDA that was set up beforehand, the input parameters are passed to the prepared statement.

```
EXEC SQL OPEN cur1 USING DESCRIPTOR sqlda2;
```

Finally, after using input SQLDAs, the allocated memory space must be freed explicitly, unlike SQLDAs used for receiving query results.

```
free(sqlda2);
```

### 36.7.2.4. A Sample Application Using SQLDA

Here is an example program, which describes how to fetch access statistics of the databases, specified by the input parameters, from the system catalogs.

This application joins two system tables, `pg_database` and `pg_stat_database` on the database OID, and also fetches and shows the database statistics which are retrieved by two input parameters (a database `postgres`, and OID 1).

First, declare an SQLDA for input and an SQLDA for output.

```
EXEC SQL include sqlda.h;
```

```
sqlda_t *sqlda1; /* an output descriptor */  
sqlda_t *sqlda2; /* an input descriptor */
```

Next, connect to the database, prepare a statement, and declare a cursor for the prepared statement.

```
int
main(void)
{
    EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    char query[1024] = "SELECT d.oid,* FROM pg_database d,
pg_stat_database s WHERE d.oid=s.datid AND ( d.datname=? OR
d.oid=? )";
    EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

    EXEC SQL CONNECT TO testdb AS con1 USER testuser;
    EXEC SQL SELECT pg_catalog.set_config('search_path', '',
false); EXEC SQL COMMIT;

    EXEC SQL PREPARE stmt1 FROM :query;
    EXEC SQL DECLARE curl CURSOR FOR stmt1;
```

Next, put some values in the input SQLDA for the input parameters. Allocate memory for the input SQLDA, and set the number of input parameters to sqln. Store type, value, and value length into sqltype, sqldata, and sqlllen in the sqlvar structure.

```
/* Create SQLDA structure for input parameters. */
sqlda2 = (sqlda_t *) malloc(sizeof(sqlda_t) +
sizeof(sqlvar_t));
memset(sqlda2, 0, sizeof(sqlda_t) + sizeof(sqlvar_t));
sqlda2->sqln = 2; /* number of input variables */

sqlda2->sqlvar[0].sqltype = ECPGt_char;
sqlda2->sqlvar[0].sqldata = "postgres";
sqlda2->sqlvar[0].sqlllen = 8;

intval = 1;
sqlda2->sqlvar[1].sqltype = ECPGt_int;
sqlda2->sqlvar[1].sqldata = (char *)&intval;
sqlda2->sqlvar[1].sqlllen = sizeof(intval);
```

After setting up the input SQLDA, open a cursor with the input SQLDA.

```
/* Open a cursor with input parameters. */
EXEC SQL OPEN curl USING DESCRIPTOR sqlda2;
```

Fetch rows into the output SQLDA from the opened cursor. (Generally, you have to call FETCH repeatedly in the loop, to fetch all rows in the result set.)

```
while (1)
{
    sqlda_t *cur_sqlda;

    /* Assign descriptor to the cursor */
    EXEC SQL FETCH NEXT FROM curl INTO DESCRIPTOR sqlda1;
```

Next, retrieve the fetched records from the SQLDA, by following the linked list of the sqlda\_t structure.

```
for (cur_sqlda = sqlda1 ;
```



```
    cur_sqlda != NULL ;
    cur_sqlda = cur_sqlda->desc_next)
{
    ...
}
```

Read each columns in the first record. The number of columns is stored in `sqld`, the actual data of the first column is stored in `sqlvar[0]`, both members of the `sqlda_t` structure.

```
/* Print every column in a row. */
for (i = 0; i < sqlda1->sqld; i++)
{
    sqlvar_t v = sqlda1->sqlvar[i];
    char *sqldata = v.sqldata;
    short sqllen = v.sqlllen;

    strncpy(name_buf, v.sqlname.data, v.sqlname.length);
    name_buf[v.sqlname.length] = '\0';
}
```

Now, the column data is stored in the variable `v`. Copy every datum into host variables, looking at `v.sqltype` for the type of the column.

```
switch (v.sqltype) {
    int intval;
    double doubleval;
    unsigned long long int longlongval;

    case ECPGt_char:
        memset(&var_buf, 0, sizeof(var_buf));
        memcpy(&var_buf, sqldata, (sizeof(var_buf) <=
sqlllen ? sizeof(var_buf)-1 : sqllen));
        break;

    case ECPGt_int: /* integer */
        memcpy(&intval, sqldata, sqllen);
        snprintf(var_buf, sizeof(var_buf), "%d",
intval);
        break;

    ...

    default:
        ...
}

printf("%s = %s (type: %d)\n", name_buf, var_buf,
v.sqltype);
}
```

Close the cursor after processing all of records, and disconnect from the database.

```
EXEC SQL CLOSE cur1;
EXEC SQL COMMIT;

EXEC SQL DISCONNECT ALL;
```

The whole program is shown in Example 36.1.

**Example 36.1. Example SQLDA Program**

```
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <string.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <stdio.h>
#include <unistd.h>

EXEC SQL include sqlda.h;

sqlda_t *sqlda1; /* descriptor for output */
sqlda_t *sqlda2; /* descriptor for input */

EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND DO BREAK;
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR STOP;

int
main(void)
{
    EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    char query[1024] = "SELECT d.oid,* FROM pg_database d,
pg_stat_database s WHERE d.oid=s.datid AND ( d.datname=? OR
d.oid=? )";

    int intval;
    unsigned long long int longlongval;
    EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

    EXEC SQL CONNECT TO uptimedb AS con1 USER uptime;
    EXEC SQL SELECT pg_catalog.set_config('search_path', '',
false); EXEC SQL COMMIT;

    EXEC SQL PREPARE stmt1 FROM :query;
    EXEC SQL DECLARE curl CURSOR FOR stmt1;

    /* Create an SQLDA structure for an input parameter */
    sqlda2 = (sqlda_t *)malloc(sizeof(sqlda_t) + sizeof(sqlvar_t));
    memset(sqlda2, 0, sizeof(sqlda_t) + sizeof(sqlvar_t));
    sqlda2->sqln = 2; /* a number of input variables */

    sqlda2->sqlvar[0].sqltype = ECPGt_char;
    sqlda2->sqlvar[0].sqldata = "postgres";
    sqlda2->sqlvar[0].sqlllen = 8;

    intval = 1;
    sqlda2->sqlvar[1].sqltype = ECPGt_int;
    sqlda2->sqlvar[1].sqldata = (char *) &intval;
    sqlda2->sqlvar[1].sqlllen = sizeof(intval);

    /* Open a cursor with input parameters. */
    EXEC SQL OPEN curl USING DESCRIPTOR sqlda2;

    while (1)
    {
        sqlda_t *cur_sqlda;

        /* Assign descriptor to the cursor */
```

```
EXEC SQL FETCH NEXT FROM cur1 INTO DESCRIPTOR sqlda1;

for (cur_sqlda = sqlda1 ;
    cur_sqlda != NULL ;
    cur_sqlda = cur_sqlda->desc_next)
{
    int i;
    char name_buf[1024];
    char var_buf[1024];

    /* Print every column in a row. */
    for (i=0 ; i<cur_sqlda->sqld ; i++)
    {
        sqlvar_t v = cur_sqlda->sqlvar[i];
        char *sqldata = v.sqldata;
        short sqllen = v.sqllen;

        strncpy(name_buf, v.sqlname.data,
v.sqlname.length);
        name_buf[v.sqlname.length] = '\\0';

        switch (v.sqltype)
        {
            case ECPGt_char:
                memset(&var_buf, 0, sizeof(var_buf));
                memcpy(&var_buf, sqldata,
(sizeof(var_buf)<=sqllen ? sizeof(var_buf)-1 : sqllen) );
                break;

            case ECPGt_int: /* integer */
                memcpy(&intval, sqldata, sqllen);
                snprintf(var_buf, sizeof(var_buf), "%d",
intval);
                break;

            case ECPGt_long_long: /* bigint */
                memcpy(&longlongval, sqldata, sqllen);
                snprintf(var_buf, sizeof(var_buf), "%lld",
longlongval);
                break;

            default:
            {
                int i;
                memset(var_buf, 0, sizeof(var_buf));
                for (i = 0; i < sqllen; i++)
                {
                    char tmpbuf[16];
                    snprintf(tmpbuf, sizeof(tmpbuf), "%02x",
(unsigned char) sqldata[i]);
                    strncat(var_buf, tmpbuf,
sizeof(var_buf));
                }
            }
            break;
        }
    }
}
```

```
        printf("%s = %s (type: %d)\n", name_buf, var_buf,
v.sqltype);
    }

    printf("\n");
}

EXEC SQL CLOSE cur1;
EXEC SQL COMMIT;

EXEC SQL DISCONNECT ALL;

return 0;
}
```

The output of this example should look something like the following (some numbers will vary).

```
oid = 1 (type: 1)
datname = template1 (type: 1)
datdba = 10 (type: 1)
encoding = 0 (type: 5)
datistemplate = t (type: 1)
datallowconn = t (type: 1)
datconnlimit = -1 (type: 5)
datfrozenxid = 379 (type: 1)
dattablespace = 1663 (type: 1)
datconfig = (type: 1)
datacl = {=c/uptime,uptime=CTc/uptime} (type: 1)
datid = 1 (type: 1)
datname = template1 (type: 1)
numbackends = 0 (type: 5)
xact_commit = 113606 (type: 9)
xact_rollback = 0 (type: 9)
blks_read = 130 (type: 9)
blks_hit = 7341714 (type: 9)
tup_returned = 38262679 (type: 9)
tup_fetched = 1836281 (type: 9)
tup_inserted = 0 (type: 9)
tup_updated = 0 (type: 9)
tup_deleted = 0 (type: 9)

oid = 11511 (type: 1)
datname = postgres (type: 1)
datdba = 10 (type: 1)
encoding = 0 (type: 5)
datistemplate = f (type: 1)
datallowconn = t (type: 1)
datconnlimit = -1 (type: 5)
datfrozenxid = 379 (type: 1)
dattablespace = 1663 (type: 1)
datconfig = (type: 1)
datacl = (type: 1)
datid = 11511 (type: 1)
datname = postgres (type: 1)
numbackends = 0 (type: 5)
xact_commit = 221069 (type: 9)
```

```
xact_rollback = 18 (type: 9)
blks_read = 1176 (type: 9)
blks_hit = 13943750 (type: 9)
tup_returned = 77410091 (type: 9)
tup_fetched = 3253694 (type: 9)
tup_inserted = 0 (type: 9)
tup_updated = 0 (type: 9)
tup_deleted = 0 (type: 9)
```

## 36.8. Error Handling

This section describes how you can handle exceptional conditions and warnings in an embedded SQL program. There are two nonexclusive facilities for this.

- Callbacks can be configured to handle warning and error conditions using the `WHENEVER` command.
- Detailed information about the error or warning can be obtained from the `sqlca` variable.

### 36.8.1. Setting Callbacks

One simple method to catch errors and warnings is to set a specific action to be executed whenever a particular condition occurs. In general:

```
EXEC SQL WHENEVER condition action;
```

*condition* can be one of the following:

`SQLERROR`

The specified action is called whenever an error occurs during the execution of an SQL statement.

`SQLWARNING`

The specified action is called whenever a warning occurs during the execution of an SQL statement.

`NOT FOUND`

The specified action is called whenever an SQL statement retrieves or affects zero rows. (This condition is not an error, but you might be interested in handling it specially.)

*action* can be one of the following:

`CONTINUE`

This effectively means that the condition is ignored. This is the default.

`GOTO label`

`GO TO label`

Jump to the specified label (using a C `goto` statement).

`SQLPRINT`

Print a message to standard error. This is useful for simple programs or during prototyping. The details of the message cannot be configured.

`STOP`

Call `exit(1)`, which will terminate the program.

DO BREAK

Execute the C statement `break`. This should only be used in loops or `switch` statements.

DO CONTINUE

Execute the C statement `continue`. This should only be used in loops statements. if executed, will cause the flow of control to return to the top of the loop.

CALL *name* (*args*)

DO *name* (*args*)

Call the specified C functions with the specified arguments. (This use is different from the meaning of `CALL` and `DO` in the normal PostgreSQL grammar.)

The SQL standard only provides for the actions `CONTINUE` and `GOTO` (and `GO TO`).

Here is an example that you might want to use in a simple program. It prints a simple message when a warning occurs and aborts the program when an error happens:

```
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLWARNING SQLPRINT;  
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR STOP;
```

The statement `EXEC SQL WHENEVER` is a directive of the SQL preprocessor, not a C statement. The error or warning actions that it sets apply to all embedded SQL statements that appear below the point where the handler is set, unless a different action was set for the same condition between the first `EXEC SQL WHENEVER` and the SQL statement causing the condition, regardless of the flow of control in the C program. So neither of the two following C program excerpts will have the desired effect:

```
/*  
 * WRONG  
 */  
int main(int argc, char *argv[])  
{  
    ...  
    if (verbose) {  
        EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLWARNING SQLPRINT;  
    }  
    ...  
    EXEC SQL SELECT ...;  
    ...  
}  
  
/*  
 * WRONG  
 */  
int main(int argc, char *argv[])  
{  
    ...  
    set_error_handler();  
    ...  
    EXEC SQL SELECT ...;  
    ...  
}  
  
static void set_error_handler(void)
```

```
{  
    EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR STOP;  
}
```

## 36.8.2. sqlca

For more powerful error handling, the embedded SQL interface provides a global variable with the name `sqlca` (SQL communication area) that has the following structure:

```
struct  
{  
    char sqlcaid[8];  
    long sqlabc;  
    long sqlcode;  
    struct  
    {  
        int sqlerrml;  
        char sqlerrmc[SQLERRMC_LEN];  
    } sqlerrm;  
    char sqlerrp[8];  
    long sqlerrd[6];  
    char sqlwarn[8];  
    char sqlstate[5];  
} sqlca;
```

(In a multithreaded program, every thread automatically gets its own copy of `sqlca`. This works similarly to the handling of the standard C global variable `errno`.)

`sqlca` covers both warnings and errors. If multiple warnings or errors occur during the execution of a statement, then `sqlca` will only contain information about the last one.

If no error occurred in the last SQL statement, `sqlca.sqlcode` will be 0 and `sqlca.sqlstate` will be "00000". If a warning or error occurred, then `sqlca.sqlcode` will be negative and `sqlca.sqlstate` will be different from "00000". A positive `sqlca.sqlcode` indicates a harmless condition, such as that the last query returned zero rows. `sqlcode` and `sqlstate` are two different error code schemes; details appear below.

If the last SQL statement was successful, then `sqlca.sqlerrd[1]` contains the OID of the processed row, if applicable, and `sqlca.sqlerrd[2]` contains the number of processed or returned rows, if applicable to the command.

In case of an error or warning, `sqlca.sqlerrm.sqlerrmc` will contain a string that describes the error. The field `sqlca.sqlerrm.sqlerrml` contains the length of the error message that is stored in `sqlca.sqlerrm.sqlerrmc` (the result of `strlen()`, not really interesting for a C programmer). Note that some messages are too long to fit in the fixed-size `sqlerrmc` array; they will be truncated.

In case of a warning, `sqlca.sqlwarn[2]` is set to W. (In all other cases, it is set to something different from W.) If `sqlca.sqlwarn[1]` is set to W, then a value was truncated when it was stored in a host variable. `sqlca.sqlwarn[0]` is set to W if any of the other elements are set to indicate a warning.

The fields `sqlcaid`, `sqlabc`, `sqlerrp`, and the remaining elements of `sqlerrd` and `sqlwarn` currently contain no useful information.

The structure `sqlca` is not defined in the SQL standard, but is implemented in several other SQL database systems. The definitions are similar at the core, but if you want to write portable applications, then you should investigate the different implementations carefully.

Here is one example that combines the use of `WHENEVER` and `sqlca`, printing out the contents of `sqlca` when an error occurs. This is perhaps useful for debugging or prototyping applications, before installing a more “user-friendly” error handler.

```
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR CALL print_sqlca();

void
print_sqlca()
{
    fprintf(stderr, "==== sqlca ====\\n");
    fprintf(stderr, "sqlcode: %ld\\n", sqlca.sqlcode);
    fprintf(stderr, "sqlerrm.sqlerrml: %d\\n",
sqlca.sqlerrm.sqlerrml);
    fprintf(stderr, "sqlerrm.sqlerrmc: %s\\n",
sqlca.sqlerrm.sqlerrmc);
    fprintf(stderr, "sqlerrd: %ld %ld %ld %ld %ld %ld\\n",
sqlca.sqlerrd[0], sqlca.sqlerrd[1], sqlca.sqlerrd[2],

sqlca.sqlerrd[3], sqlca.sqlerrd[4], sqlca.sqlerrd[5]);
    fprintf(stderr, "sqlwarn: %d %d %d %d %d %d %d %d\\n",
sqlca.sqlwarn[0], sqlca.sqlwarn[1], sqlca.sqlwarn[2],

sqlca.sqlwarn[3], sqlca.sqlwarn[4], sqlca.sqlwarn[5],

sqlca.sqlwarn[6], sqlca.sqlwarn[7]);
    fprintf(stderr, "sqlstate: %5s\\n", sqlca.sqlstate);
    fprintf(stderr, "=====\\n");
}
```

The result could look as follows (here an error due to a misspelled table name):

```
==== sqlca ====
sqlcode: -400
sqlerrm.sqlerrml: 49
sqlerrm.sqlerrmc: relation "pg_databasep" does not exist on line 38
sqlerrd: 0 0 0 0 0 0
sqlwarn: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
sqlstate: 42P01
=====
```

### 36.8.3. SQLSTATE VS. SQLCODE

The fields `sqlca.sqlstate` and `sqlca.sqlcode` are two different schemes that provide error codes. Both are derived from the SQL standard, but `SQLCODE` has been marked deprecated in the SQL-92 edition of the standard and has been dropped in later editions. Therefore, new applications are strongly encouraged to use `SQLSTATE`.

`SQLSTATE` is a five-character array. The five characters contain digits or upper-case letters that represent codes of various error and warning conditions. `SQLSTATE` has a hierarchical scheme: the first two characters indicate the general class of the condition, the last three characters indicate a subclass of the general condition. A successful state is indicated by the code `00000`. The `SQLSTATE` codes are for the most part defined in the SQL standard. The PostgreSQL server natively supports `SQLSTATE` error codes; therefore a high degree of consistency can be achieved by using this error code scheme throughout all applications. For further information see Appendix A.

`SQLCODE`, the deprecated error code scheme, is a simple integer. A value of 0 indicates success, a positive value indicates success with additional information, a negative value indicates an error. The



SQL standard only defines the positive value +100, which indicates that the last command returned or affected zero rows, and no specific negative values. Therefore, this scheme can only achieve poor portability and does not have a hierarchical code assignment. Historically, the embedded SQL processor for PostgreSQL has assigned some specific `SQLCODE` values for its use, which are listed below with their numeric value and their symbolic name. Remember that these are not portable to other SQL implementations. To simplify the porting of applications to the `SQLSTATE` scheme, the corresponding `SQLSTATE` is also listed. There is, however, no one-to-one or one-to-many mapping between the two schemes (indeed it is many-to-many), so you should consult the global `SQLSTATE` listing in Appendix A in each case.

These are the assigned `SQLCODE` values:

0 (`ECPG_NO_ERROR`)

Indicates no error. (`SQLSTATE 00000`)

100 (`ECPG_NOT_FOUND`)

This is a harmless condition indicating that the last command retrieved or processed zero rows, or that you are at the end of the cursor. (`SQLSTATE 02000`)

When processing a cursor in a loop, you could use this code as a way to detect when to abort the loop, like this:

```
while (1)
{
    EXEC SQL FETCH ... ;
    if (sqlca.sqlcode == ECPG_NOT_FOUND)
        break;
}
```

But `WHENEVER NOT FOUND DO BREAK` effectively does this internally, so there is usually no advantage in writing this out explicitly.

-12 (`ECPG_OUT_OF_MEMORY`)

Indicates that your virtual memory is exhausted. The numeric value is defined as `-ENOMEM`. (`SQLSTATE YE001`)

-200 (`ECPG_UNSUPPORTED`)

Indicates the preprocessor has generated something that the library does not know about. Perhaps you are running incompatible versions of the preprocessor and the library. (`SQLSTATE YE002`)

-201 (`ECPG_TOO_MANY_ARGUMENTS`)

This means that the command specified more host variables than the command expected. (`SQLSTATE 07001` or `07002`)

-202 (`ECPG_TOO_FEW_ARGUMENTS`)

This means that the command specified fewer host variables than the command expected. (`SQLSTATE 07001` or `07002`)

-203 (`ECPG_TOO_MANY_MATCHES`)

This means a query has returned multiple rows but the statement was only prepared to store one result row (for example, because the specified variables are not arrays). (`SQLSTATE 21000`)

**-204 (ECPG\_INT\_FORMAT)**

The host variable is of type `int` and the datum in the database is of a different type and contains a value that cannot be interpreted as an `int`. The library uses `strtol()` for this conversion. (SQLSTATE 42804)

**-205 (ECPG\_UINT\_FORMAT)**

The host variable is of type `unsigned int` and the datum in the database is of a different type and contains a value that cannot be interpreted as an `unsigned int`. The library uses `strtoul()` for this conversion. (SQLSTATE 42804)

**-206 (ECPG\_FLOAT\_FORMAT)**

The host variable is of type `float` and the datum in the database is of another type and contains a value that cannot be interpreted as a `float`. The library uses `strtod()` for this conversion. (SQLSTATE 42804)

**-207 (ECPG\_NUMERIC\_FORMAT)**

The host variable is of type `numeric` and the datum in the database is of another type and contains a value that cannot be interpreted as a `numeric` value. (SQLSTATE 42804)

**-208 (ECPG\_INTERVAL\_FORMAT)**

The host variable is of type `interval` and the datum in the database is of another type and contains a value that cannot be interpreted as an `interval` value. (SQLSTATE 42804)

**-209 (ECPG\_DATE\_FORMAT)**

The host variable is of type `date` and the datum in the database is of another type and contains a value that cannot be interpreted as a `date` value. (SQLSTATE 42804)

**-210 (ECPG\_TIMESTAMP\_FORMAT)**

The host variable is of type `timestamp` and the datum in the database is of another type and contains a value that cannot be interpreted as a `timestamp` value. (SQLSTATE 42804)

**-211 (ECPG\_CONVERT\_BOOL)**

This means the host variable is of type `bool` and the datum in the database is neither `'t'` nor `'f'`. (SQLSTATE 42804)

**-212 (ECPG\_EMPTY)**

The statement sent to the PostgreSQL server was empty. (This cannot normally happen in an embedded SQL program, so it might point to an internal error.) (SQLSTATE YE002)

**-213 (ECPG\_MISSING\_INDICATOR)**

A null value was returned and no null indicator variable was supplied. (SQLSTATE 22002)

**-214 (ECPG\_NO\_ARRAY)**

An ordinary variable was used in a place that requires an array. (SQLSTATE 42804)

**-215 (ECPG\_DATA\_NOT\_ARRAY)**

The database returned an ordinary variable in a place that requires array value. (SQLSTATE 42804)

-216 (ECPG\_ARRAY\_INSERT)

The value could not be inserted into the array. (SQLSTATE 42804)

-220 (ECPG\_NO\_CONN)

The program tried to access a connection that does not exist. (SQLSTATE 08003)

-221 (ECPG\_NOT\_CONN)

The program tried to access a connection that does exist but is not open. (This is an internal error.) (SQLSTATE YE002)

-230 (ECPG\_INVALID\_STMT)

The statement you are trying to use has not been prepared. (SQLSTATE 26000)

-239 (ECPG\_INFORMIX\_DUPLICATE\_KEY)

Duplicate key error, violation of unique constraint (Informix compatibility mode). (SQLSTATE 23505)

-240 (ECPG\_UNKNOWN\_DESCRIPTOR)

The descriptor specified was not found. The statement you are trying to use has not been prepared. (SQLSTATE 33000)

-241 (ECPG\_INVALID\_DESCRIPTOR\_INDEX)

The descriptor index specified was out of range. (SQLSTATE 07009)

-242 (ECPG\_UNKNOWN\_DESCRIPTOR\_ITEM)

An invalid descriptor item was requested. (This is an internal error.) (SQLSTATE YE002)

-243 (ECPG\_VAR\_NOT\_NUMERIC)

During the execution of a dynamic statement, the database returned a numeric value and the host variable was not numeric. (SQLSTATE 07006)

-244 (ECPG\_VAR\_NOT\_CHAR)

During the execution of a dynamic statement, the database returned a non-numeric value and the host variable was numeric. (SQLSTATE 07006)

-284 (ECPG\_INFORMIX\_SUBSELECT\_NOT\_ONE)

A result of the subquery is not single row (Informix compatibility mode). (SQLSTATE 21000)

-400 (ECPG\_PGSQL)

Some error caused by the PostgreSQL server. The message contains the error message from the PostgreSQL server.

-401 (ECPG\_TRANS)

The PostgreSQL server signaled that we cannot start, commit, or rollback the transaction. (SQLSTATE 08007)

-402 (ECPG\_CONNECT)

The connection attempt to the database did not succeed. (SQLSTATE 08001)

-403 (ECPG\_DUPLICATE\_KEY)

Duplicate key error, violation of unique constraint. (SQLSTATE 23505)

-404 (ECPG\_SUBSELECT\_NOT\_ONE)

A result for the subquery is not single row. (SQLSTATE 21000)

-602 (ECPG\_WARNING\_UNKNOWN\_PORTAL)

An invalid cursor name was specified. (SQLSTATE 34000)

-603 (ECPG\_WARNING\_IN\_TRANSACTION)

Transaction is in progress. (SQLSTATE 25001)

-604 (ECPG\_WARNING\_NO\_TRANSACTION)

There is no active (in-progress) transaction. (SQLSTATE 25P01)

-605 (ECPG\_WARNING\_PORTAL\_EXISTS)

An existing cursor name was specified. (SQLSTATE 42P03)

## 36.9. Preprocessor Directives

Several preprocessor directives are available that modify how the `ecpg` preprocessor parses and processes a file.

### 36.9.1. Including Files

To include an external file into your embedded SQL program, use:

```
EXEC SQL INCLUDE filename;  
EXEC SQL INCLUDE <filename>;  
EXEC SQL INCLUDE "filename";
```

The embedded SQL preprocessor will look for a file named *filename*.h, preprocess it, and include it in the resulting C output. Thus, embedded SQL statements in the included file are handled correctly.

The `ecpg` preprocessor will search a file at several directories in following order:

- current directory
- `/usr/local/include`
- PostgreSQL include directory, defined at build time (e.g., `/usr/local/pgsql/include`)
- `/usr/include`

But when `EXEC SQL INCLUDE "filename"` is used, only the current directory is searched.

In each directory, the preprocessor will first look for the file name as given, and if not found will append `.h` to the file name and try again (unless the specified file name already has that suffix).

Note that `EXEC SQL INCLUDE` is *not* the same as:

```
#include <filename.h>
```

because this file would not be subject to SQL command preprocessing. Naturally, you can continue to use the C `#include` directive to include other header files.

### Note

The include file name is case-sensitive, even though the rest of the `EXEC SQL INCLUDE` command follows the normal SQL case-sensitivity rules.

## 36.9.2. The `define` and `undef` Directives

Similar to the directive `#define` that is known from C, embedded SQL has a similar concept:

```
EXEC SQL DEFINE name ;
EXEC SQL DEFINE name value ;
```

So you can define a name:

```
EXEC SQL DEFINE HAVE_FEATURE ;
```

And you can also define constants:

```
EXEC SQL DEFINE MYNUMBER 12 ;
EXEC SQL DEFINE MYSTRING 'abc' ;
```

Use `undef` to remove a previous definition:

```
EXEC SQL UNDEF MYNUMBER ;
```

Of course you can continue to use the C versions `#define` and `#undef` in your embedded SQL program. The difference is where your defined values get evaluated. If you use `EXEC SQL DEFINE` then the `ecpg` preprocessor evaluates the defines and substitutes the values. For example if you write:

```
EXEC SQL DEFINE MYNUMBER 12 ;
...
EXEC SQL UPDATE Tbl SET col = MYNUMBER ;
```

then `ecpg` will already do the substitution and your C compiler will never see any name or identifier `MYNUMBER`. Note that you cannot use `#define` for a constant that you are going to use in an embedded SQL query because in this case the embedded SQL precompiler is not able to see this declaration.

## 36.9.3. `ifdef`, `ifndef`, `elif`, `else`, and `endif` Directives

You can use the following directives to compile code sections conditionally:

```
EXEC SQL ifdef name ;
```

Checks a *name* and processes subsequent lines if *name* has been defined via `EXEC SQL define name`.

```
EXEC SQL ifndef name ;
```

Checks a *name* and processes subsequent lines if *name* has *not* been defined via `EXEC SQL define name`.

```
EXEC SQL elif name;
```

Begins an optional alternative section after an `EXEC SQL ifdef name` or `EXEC SQL ifndef name` directive. Any number of `elif` sections can appear. Lines following an `elif` will be processed if *name* has been defined *and* no previous section of the same `ifdef/ifndef...endif` construct has been processed.

```
EXEC SQL else;
```

Begins an optional, final alternative section after an `EXEC SQL ifdef name` or `EXEC SQL ifndef name` directive. Subsequent lines will be processed if no previous section of the same `ifdef/ifndef...endif` construct has been processed.

```
EXEC SQL endif;
```

Ends an `ifdef/ifndef...endif` construct. Subsequent lines are processed normally.

`ifdef/ifndef...endif` constructs can be nested, up to 127 levels deep.

This example will compile exactly one of the three `SET TIMEZONE` commands:

```
EXEC SQL ifdef TZVAR;
EXEC SQL SET TIMEZONE TO TZVAR;
EXEC SQL elif TZNAME;
EXEC SQL SET TIMEZONE TO TZNAME;
EXEC SQL else;
EXEC SQL SET TIMEZONE TO 'GMT';
EXEC SQL endif;
```

## 36.10. Processing Embedded SQL Programs

Now that you have an idea how to form embedded SQL C programs, you probably want to know how to compile them. Before compiling you run the file through the embedded SQL C preprocessor, which converts the SQL statements you used to special function calls. After compiling, you must link with a special library that contains the needed functions. These functions fetch information from the arguments, perform the SQL command using the libpq interface, and put the result in the arguments specified for output.

The preprocessor program is called `ecpg` and is included in a normal PostgreSQL installation. Embedded SQL programs are typically named with an extension `.pgc`. If you have a program file called `prog1.pgc`, you can preprocess it by simply calling:

```
ecpg prog1.pgc
```

This will create a file called `prog1.c`. If your input files do not follow the suggested naming pattern, you can specify the output file explicitly using the `-o` option.

The preprocessed file can be compiled normally, for example:

```
cc -c prog1.c
```

The generated C source files include header files from the PostgreSQL installation, so if you installed PostgreSQL in a location that is not searched by default, you have to add an option such as `-I/usr/local/pgsql/include` to the compilation command line.

To link an embedded SQL program, you need to include the `libecpg` library, like so:

```
cc -o myprog prog1.o prog2.o ... -lecpg
```

Again, you might have to add an option like `-L/usr/local/pgsql/lib` to that command line.

You can use `pg_config` or `pkg-config` with package name `libecpg` to get the paths for your installation.

If you manage the build process of a larger project using `make`, it might be convenient to include the following implicit rule to your makefiles:

```
ECPG = ecpg

%.c: %.pgc
    $(ECPG) $<
```

The complete syntax of the `ecpg` command is detailed in `ecpg`.

The `ecpg` library is thread-safe by default. However, you might need to use some threading command-line options to compile your client code.

## 36.11. Library Functions

The `libecpg` library primarily contains “hidden” functions that are used to implement the functionality expressed by the embedded SQL commands. But there are some functions that can usefully be called directly. Note that this makes your code unportable.

- `ECPGdebug(int on, FILE *stream)` turns on debug logging if called with the first argument non-zero. Debug logging is done on *stream*. The log contains all SQL statements with all the input variables inserted, and the results from the PostgreSQL server. This can be very useful when searching for errors in your SQL statements.

### Note

On Windows, if the `ecpg` libraries and an application are compiled with different flags, this function call will crash the application because the internal representation of the `FILE` pointers differ. Specifically, multithreaded/single-threaded, release/debug, and static/dynamic flags should be the same for the library and all applications using that library.

- `ECPGget_PGconn(const char *connection_name)` returns the library database connection handle identified by the given name. If *connection\_name* is set to `NULL`, the current connection handle is returned. If no connection handle can be identified, the function returns `NULL`. The returned connection handle can be used to call any other functions from `libpq`, if necessary.

### Note

It is a bad idea to manipulate database connection handles made from `ecpg` directly with `libpq` routines.

- `ECPGtransactionStatus(const char *connection_name)` returns the current transaction status of the given connection identified by *connection\_name*. See Section 34.2 and `libpq`'s `PQtransactionStatus` for details about the returned status codes.
- `ECPGstatus(int lineno, const char* connection_name)` returns true if you are connected to a database and false if not. *connection\_name* can be `NULL` if a single connection is being used.

## 36.12. Large Objects

Large objects are not directly supported by ECPG, but ECPG application can manipulate large objects through the libpq large object functions, obtaining the necessary PGconn object by calling the ECPGget\_PGconn() function. (However, use of the ECPGget\_PGconn() function and touching PGconn objects directly should be done very carefully and ideally not mixed with other ECPG database access calls.)

For more details about the ECPGget\_PGconn(), see Section 36.11. For information about the large object function interface, see Chapter 35.

Large object functions have to be called in a transaction block, so when autocommit is off, BEGIN commands have to be issued explicitly.

Example 36.2 shows an example program that illustrates how to create, write, and read a large object in an ECPG application.

### Example 36.2. ECPG Program Accessing Large Objects

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <libpq-fe.h>
#include <libpq/libpq-fs.h>

EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR STOP;

int
main(void)
{
    PGconn      *conn;
    Oid          loid;
    int          fd;
    char         buf[256];
    int          buflen = 256;
    char         buf2[256];
    int          rc;

    memset(buf, 1, buflen);

    EXEC SQL CONNECT TO testdb AS con1;
    EXEC SQL SELECT pg_catalog.set_config('search_path', '',
false); EXEC SQL COMMIT;

    conn = ECPGget_PGconn("con1");
    printf("conn = %p\n", conn);

    /* create */
    loid = lo_create(conn, 0);
    if (loid < 0)
        printf("lo_create() failed: %s", PQerrorMessage(conn));

    printf("loid = %d\n", loid);

    /* write test */
    fd = lo_open(conn, loid, INV_READ|INV_WRITE);
    if (fd < 0)
        printf("lo_open() failed: %s", PQerrorMessage(conn));
```



```
printf("fd = %d\n", fd);

rc = lo_write(conn, fd, buf, buflen);
if (rc < 0)
    printf("lo_write() failed\n");

rc = lo_close(conn, fd);
if (rc < 0)
    printf("lo_close() failed: %s", PQerrorMessage(conn));

/* read test */
fd = lo_open(conn, loid, INV_READ);
if (fd < 0)
    printf("lo_open() failed: %s", PQerrorMessage(conn));

printf("fd = %d\n", fd);

rc = lo_read(conn, fd, buf2, buflen);
if (rc < 0)
    printf("lo_read() failed\n");

rc = lo_close(conn, fd);
if (rc < 0)
    printf("lo_close() failed: %s", PQerrorMessage(conn));

/* check */
rc = memcmp(buf, buf2, buflen);
printf("memcmp() = %d\n", rc);

/* cleanup */
rc = lo_unlink(conn, loid);
if (rc < 0)
    printf("lo_unlink() failed: %s", PQerrorMessage(conn));

EXEC SQL COMMIT;
EXEC SQL DISCONNECT ALL;
return 0;
}
```

## 36.13. C++ Applications

ECPG has some limited support for C++ applications. This section describes some caveats.

The `ecpg` preprocessor takes an input file written in C (or something like C) and embedded SQL commands, converts the embedded SQL commands into C language chunks, and finally generates a `.c` file. The header file declarations of the library functions used by the C language chunks that `ecpg` generates are wrapped in `extern "C" { ... }` blocks when used under C++, so they should work seamlessly in C++.

In general, however, the `ecpg` preprocessor only understands C; it does not handle the special syntax and reserved words of the C++ language. So, some embedded SQL code written in C++ application code that uses complicated features specific to C++ might fail to be preprocessed correctly or might not work as expected.

A safe way to use the embedded SQL code in a C++ application is hiding the ECPG calls in a C module, which the C++ application code calls into to access the database, and linking that together with the rest of the C++ code. See Section 36.13.2 about that.

### 36.13.1. Scope for Host Variables

The `ecpg` preprocessor understands the scope of variables in C. In the C language, this is rather simple because the scopes of variables is based on their code blocks. In C++, however, the class member variables are referenced in a different code block from the declared position, so the `ecpg` preprocessor will not understand the scope of the class member variables.

For example, in the following case, the `ecpg` preprocessor cannot find any declaration for the variable `dbname` in the `test` method, so an error will occur.

```
class TestCpp
{
    EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    char dbname[1024];
    EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

public:
    TestCpp();
    void test();
    ~TestCpp();
};

TestCpp::TestCpp()
{
    EXEC SQL CONNECT TO testdb1;
    EXEC SQL SELECT pg_catalog.set_config('search_path', '',
false); EXEC SQL COMMIT;
}

void Test::test()
{
    EXEC SQL SELECT current_database() INTO :dbname;
    printf("current_database = %s\n", dbname);
}

TestCpp::~TestCpp()
{
    EXEC SQL DISCONNECT ALL;
}
```

This code will result in an error like this:

**ecpg test\_cpp.pgc**

test\_cpp.pgc:28: ERROR: variable "dbname" is not declared

To avoid this scope issue, the `test` method could be modified to use a local variable as intermediate storage. But this approach is only a poor workaround, because it uglifies the code and reduces performance.

```
void TestCpp::test()
{
    EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    char tmp[1024];
    EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

    EXEC SQL SELECT current_database() INTO :tmp;
```

```
    strcpy(dbname, tmp, sizeof(tmp));

    printf("current_database = %s\n", dbname);
}
```

## 36.13.2. C++ Application Development with External C Module

If you understand these technical limitations of the `ecpg` preprocessor in C++, you might come to the conclusion that linking C objects and C++ objects at the link stage to enable C++ applications to use ECPG features could be better than writing some embedded SQL commands in C++ code directly. This section describes a way to separate some embedded SQL commands from C++ application code with a simple example. In this example, the application is implemented in C++, while C and ECPG is used to connect to the PostgreSQL server.

Three kinds of files have to be created: a C file (`*.pgc`), a header file, and a C++ file:

`test_mod.pgc`

A sub-routine module to execute SQL commands embedded in C. It is going to be converted into `test_mod.c` by the preprocessor.

```
#include "test_mod.h"
#include <stdio.h>

void
db_connect()
{
    EXEC SQL CONNECT TO testdb1;
    EXEC SQL SELECT pg_catalog.set_config('search_path', '',
false); EXEC SQL COMMIT;
}

void
db_test()
{
    EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    char dbname[1024];
    EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

    EXEC SQL SELECT current_database() INTO :dbname;
    printf("current_database = %s\n", dbname);
}

void
db_disconnect()
{
    EXEC SQL DISCONNECT ALL;
}
```

`test_mod.h`

A header file with declarations of the functions in the C module (`test_mod.pgc`). It is included by `test_cpp.cpp`. This file has to have an `extern "C"` block around the declarations, because it will be linked from the C++ module.

```
#ifdef __cplusplus
```

```
extern "C" {  
#endif  
  
void db_connect();  
void db_test();  
void db_disconnect();  
  
#ifdef __cplusplus  
}  
#endif
```

test\_cpp.cpp

The main code for the application, including the main routine, and in this example a C++ class.

```
#include "test_mod.h"  
  
class TestCpp  
{  
public:  
    TestCpp();  
    void test();  
    ~TestCpp();  
};  
  
TestCpp::TestCpp()  
{  
    db_connect();  
}  
  
void  
TestCpp::test()  
{  
    db_test();  
}  
  
TestCpp::~~TestCpp()  
{  
    db_disconnect();  
}  
  
int  
main(void)  
{  
    TestCpp *t = new TestCpp();  
  
    t->test();  
    return 0;  
}
```

To build the application, proceed as follows. Convert `test_mod.pgc` into `test_mod.c` by running `ecpg`, and generate `test_mod.o` by compiling `test_mod.c` with the C compiler:

```
ecpg -o test_mod.c test_mod.pgc  
cc -c test_mod.c -o test_mod.o
```

Next, generate `test_cpp.o` by compiling `test_cpp.cpp` with the C++ compiler:

```
c++ -c test_cpp.cpp -o test_cpp.o
```

Finally, link these object files, `test_cpp.o` and `test_mod.o`, into one executable, using the C++ compiler driver:

```
c++ test_cpp.o test_mod.o -lecpG -o test_cpp
```

## 36.14. Embedded SQL Commands

This section describes all SQL commands that are specific to embedded SQL. Also refer to the SQL commands listed in [SQL Commands](#), which can also be used in embedded SQL, unless stated otherwise.

# ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR

ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR — allocate an SQL descriptor area

## Synopsis

```
ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR name
```

## Description

ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR allocates a new named SQL descriptor area, which can be used to exchange data between the PostgreSQL server and the host program.

Descriptor areas should be freed after use using the DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR command.

## Parameters

*name*

A name of SQL descriptor, case sensitive. This can be an SQL identifier or a host variable.

## Examples

```
EXEC SQL ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR mydesc;
```

## Compatibility

ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR is specified in the SQL standard.

## See Also

DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR, GET DESCRIPTOR, SET DESCRIPTOR

# CONNECT

CONNECT — establish a database connection

## Synopsis

```
CONNECT TO connection_target [ AS connection_name ]  
  [ USER connection_user ]  
CONNECT TO DEFAULT  
CONNECT connection_user  
DATABASE connection_target
```

## Description

The CONNECT command establishes a connection between the client and the PostgreSQL server.

## Parameters

*connection\_target*

*connection\_target* specifies the target server of the connection on one of several forms.

[ *database\_name* ] [ @*host* ] [ :*port* ]

Connect over TCP/IP

unix:postgresql://*host* [ :*port* ] / [ *database\_name* ] [ ?*connection\_option* ]

Connect over Unix-domain sockets

tcp:postgresql://*host* [ :*port* ] / [ *database\_name* ] [ ?*connection\_option* ]

Connect over TCP/IP

SQL string constant

containing a value in one of the above forms

host variable

host variable of type `char[ ]` or `VARCHAR[ ]` containing a value in one of the above forms

*connection\_name*

An optional identifier for the connection, so that it can be referred to in other commands. This can be an SQL identifier or a host variable.

*connection\_user*

The user name for the database connection.

This parameter can also specify user name and password, using one the forms *user\_name/password*, *user\_name IDENTIFIED BY password*, or *user\_name USING password*.

User name and password can be SQL identifiers, string constants, or host variables.

**DEFAULT**

Use all default connection parameters, as defined by libpq.

## Examples

Here are several variants for specifying connection parameters:

```
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO "connectdb" AS main;
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO "connectdb" AS second;
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO "unix:postgresql://200.46.204.71/connectdb" AS
    main USER connectuser;
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO "unix:postgresql://localhost/connectdb" AS main
    USER connectuser;
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO 'connectdb' AS main;
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO 'unix:postgresql://localhost/connectdb' AS main
    USER :user;
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO :db AS :id;
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO :db USER connectuser USING :pw;
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO @localhost AS main USER connectdb;
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO REGRESSDB1 as main;
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO AS main USER connectdb;
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO connectdb AS :id;
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO connectdb AS main USER connectuser/connectdb;
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO connectdb AS main;
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO connectdb@localhost AS main;
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO tcp:postgresql://localhost/ USER connectdb;
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO tcp:postgresql://localhost/connectdb USER
    connectuser IDENTIFIED BY connectpw;
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO tcp:postgresql://localhost:20/connectdb USER
    connectuser IDENTIFIED BY connectpw;
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO unix:postgresql://localhost/ AS main USER
    connectdb;
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO unix:postgresql://localhost/connectdb AS main
    USER connectuser;
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO unix:postgresql://localhost/connectdb USER
    connectuser IDENTIFIED BY "connectpw";
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO unix:postgresql://localhost/connectdb USER
    connectuser USING "connectpw";
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO unix:postgresql://localhost/connectdb?
    connect_timeout=14 USER connectuser;
```

Here is an example program that illustrates the use of host variables to specify connection parameters:

```
int
main(void)
{
    EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
        char *dbname      = "testdb";      /* database name */
        char *user        = "testuser";    /* connection user name */
        char *connection  = "tcp:postgresql://localhost:5432/testdb";
                                           /* connection string */
        char ver[256];      /* buffer to store the version
        string */
    EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

    ECPGdebug(1, stderr);
```



```
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO :dbname USER :user;
EXEC SQL SELECT pg_catalog.set_config('search_path', '',
false); EXEC SQL COMMIT;
EXEC SQL SELECT version() INTO :ver;
EXEC SQL DISCONNECT;

printf("version: %s\n", ver);

EXEC SQL CONNECT TO :connection USER :user;
EXEC SQL SELECT pg_catalog.set_config('search_path', '',
false); EXEC SQL COMMIT;
EXEC SQL SELECT version() INTO :ver;
EXEC SQL DISCONNECT;

printf("version: %s\n", ver);

return 0;
}
```

## Compatibility

CONNECT is specified in the SQL standard, but the format of the connection parameters is implementation-specific.

## See Also

DISCONNECT, SET CONNECTION

# DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR

DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR — deallocate an SQL descriptor area

## Synopsis

```
DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR name
```

## Description

DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR deallocates a named SQL descriptor area.

## Parameters

*name*

The name of the descriptor which is going to be deallocated. It is case sensitive. This can be an SQL identifier or a host variable.

## Examples

```
EXEC SQL DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR mydesc;
```

## Compatibility

DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR is specified in the SQL standard.

## See Also

ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR, GET DESCRIPTOR, SET DESCRIPTOR

# DECLARE

DECLARE — define a cursor

## Synopsis

```
DECLARE cursor_name [ BINARY ] [ ASENSITIVE | INSENSITIVE ]  
  [ [ NO ] SCROLL ] CURSOR [ { WITH | WITHOUT } HOLD ]  
  FOR prepared_name  
DECLARE cursor_name [ BINARY ] [ ASENSITIVE | INSENSITIVE ]  
  [ [ NO ] SCROLL ] CURSOR [ { WITH | WITHOUT } HOLD ] FOR query
```

## Description

DECLARE declares a cursor for iterating over the result set of a prepared statement. This command has slightly different semantics from the direct SQL command DECLARE: Whereas the latter executes a query and prepares the result set for retrieval, this embedded SQL command merely declares a name as a “loop variable” for iterating over the result set of a query; the actual execution happens when the cursor is opened with the OPEN command.

## Parameters

*cursor\_name*

A cursor name, case sensitive. This can be an SQL identifier or a host variable.

*prepared\_name*

The name of a prepared query, either as an SQL identifier or a host variable.

*query*

A SELECT or VALUES command which will provide the rows to be returned by the cursor.

For the meaning of the cursor options, see DECLARE.

## Examples

Examples declaring a cursor for a query:

```
EXEC SQL DECLARE C CURSOR FOR SELECT * FROM My_Table;  
EXEC SQL DECLARE C CURSOR FOR SELECT Item1 FROM T;  
EXEC SQL DECLARE curl CURSOR FOR SELECT version();
```

An example declaring a cursor for a prepared statement:

```
EXEC SQL PREPARE stmt1 AS SELECT version();  
EXEC SQL DECLARE curl CURSOR FOR stmt1;
```

## Compatibility

DECLARE is specified in the SQL standard.

## See Also

OPEN, CLOSE, DECLARE

# DECLARE STATEMENT

DECLARE STATEMENT — declare SQL statement identifier

## Synopsis

```
EXEC SQL [ AT connection_name ] DECLARE statement_name STATEMENT
```

## Description

DECLARE STATEMENT declares an SQL statement identifier. SQL statement identifier can be associated with the connection. When the identifier is used by dynamic SQL statements, the statements are executed using the associated connection. The namespace of the declaration is the precompile unit, and multiple declarations to the same SQL statement identifier are not allowed. Note that if the pre-compiler runs in Informix compatibility mode and some SQL statement is declared, "database" can not be used as a cursor name.

## Parameters

*connection\_name*

A database connection name established by the CONNECT command.

AT clause can be omitted, but such statement has no meaning.

*statement\_name*

The name of an SQL statement identifier, either as an SQL identifier or a host variable.

## Notes

This association is valid only if the declaration is physically placed on top of a dynamic statement.

## Examples

```
EXEC SQL CONNECT TO postgres AS con1;
EXEC SQL AT con1 DECLARE sql_stmt STATEMENT;
EXEC SQL DECLARE cursor_name CURSOR FOR sql_stmt;
EXEC SQL PREPARE sql_stmt FROM :dyn_string;
EXEC SQL OPEN cursor_name;
EXEC SQL FETCH cursor_name INTO :column1;
EXEC SQL CLOSE cursor_name;
```

## Compatibility

DECLARE STATEMENT is an extension of the SQL standard, but can be used in famous DBMSs.

## See Also

CONNECT, DECLARE, OPEN

## DESCRIBE

DESCRIBE — obtain information about a prepared statement or result set

## Synopsis

```
DESCRIBE [ OUTPUT ] prepared_name USING [ SQL ]  
          DESCRIPTOR descriptor_name  
DESCRIBE [ OUTPUT ] prepared_name INTO [ SQL ]  
          DESCRIPTOR descriptor_name  
DESCRIBE [ OUTPUT ] prepared_name INTO sqllda_name
```

## Description

DESCRIBE retrieves metadata information about the result columns contained in a prepared statement, without actually fetching a row.

## Parameters

*prepared\_name*

The name of a prepared statement. This can be an SQL identifier or a host variable.

*descriptor\_name*

A descriptor name. It is case sensitive. It can be an SQL identifier or a host variable.

*sqllda\_name*

The name of an SQLDA variable.

## Examples

```
EXEC SQL ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR mydesc;  
EXEC SQL PREPARE stmt1 FROM :sql_stmt;  
EXEC SQL DESCRIBE stmt1 INTO SQL DESCRIPTOR mydesc;  
EXEC SQL GET DESCRIPTOR mydesc VALUE 1 :charvar = NAME;  
EXEC SQL DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR mydesc;
```

## Compatibility

DESCRIBE is specified in the SQL standard.

## See Also

ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR, GET DESCRIPTOR

# DISCONNECT

DISCONNECT — terminate a database connection

## Synopsis

```
DISCONNECT connection_name
DISCONNECT [ CURRENT ]
DISCONNECT ALL
```

## Description

DISCONNECT closes a connection (or all connections) to the database.

## Parameters

*connection\_name*

A database connection name established by the CONNECT command.

CURRENT

Close the “current” connection, which is either the most recently opened connection, or the connection set by the SET CONNECTION command. This is also the default if no argument is given to the DISCONNECT command.

ALL

Close all open connections.

## Examples

```
int
main(void)
{
    EXEC SQL CONNECT TO testdb AS con1 USER testuser;
    EXEC SQL CONNECT TO testdb AS con2 USER testuser;
    EXEC SQL CONNECT TO testdb AS con3 USER testuser;

    EXEC SQL DISCONNECT CURRENT; /* close con3          */
    EXEC SQL DISCONNECT ALL;     /* close con2 and con1 */

    return 0;
}
```

## Compatibility

DISCONNECT is specified in the SQL standard.

## See Also

CONNECT, SET CONNECTION

# EXECUTE IMMEDIATE

EXECUTE IMMEDIATE — dynamically prepare and execute a statement

## Synopsis

```
EXECUTE IMMEDIATE string
```

## Description

EXECUTE IMMEDIATE immediately prepares and executes a dynamically specified SQL statement, without retrieving result rows.

## Parameters

*string*

A literal string or a host variable containing the SQL statement to be executed.

## Notes

In typical usage, the *string* is a host variable reference to a string containing a dynamically-constructed SQL statement. The case of a literal string is not very useful; you might as well just write the SQL statement directly, without the extra typing of EXECUTE IMMEDIATE.

If you do use a literal string, keep in mind that any double quotes you might wish to include in the SQL statement must be written as octal escapes (`\042`) not the usual C idiom `\"`. This is because the string is inside an EXEC SQL section, so the ECPG lexer parses it according to SQL rules not C rules. Any embedded backslashes will later be handled according to C rules; but `\"` causes an immediate syntax error because it is seen as ending the literal.

## Examples

Here is an example that executes an INSERT statement using EXECUTE IMMEDIATE and a host variable named `command`:

```
sprintf(command, "INSERT INTO test (name, amount, letter) VALUES  
( 'db: 'r1' ', 1, 'f' )");  
EXEC SQL EXECUTE IMMEDIATE :command;
```

## Compatibility

EXECUTE IMMEDIATE is specified in the SQL standard.

# GET DESCRIPTOR

GET DESCRIPTOR — get information from an SQL descriptor area

## Synopsis

```
GET DESCRIPTOR descriptor_name :cvariable = descriptor_header_item
[ , ... ]
GET DESCRIPTOR descriptor_name VALUE column_number :cvariable
= descriptor_item [ , ... ]
```

## Description

GET DESCRIPTOR retrieves information about a query result set from an SQL descriptor area and stores it into host variables. A descriptor area is typically populated using FETCH or SELECT before using this command to transfer the information into host language variables.

This command has two forms: The first form retrieves descriptor “header” items, which apply to the result set in its entirety. One example is the row count. The second form, which requires the column number as additional parameter, retrieves information about a particular column. Examples are the column name and the actual column value.

## Parameters

*descriptor\_name*

A descriptor name.

*descriptor\_header\_item*

A token identifying which header information item to retrieve. Only COUNT, to get the number of columns in the result set, is currently supported.

*column\_number*

The number of the column about which information is to be retrieved. The count starts at 1.

*descriptor\_item*

A token identifying which item of information about a column to retrieve. See Section 36.7.1 for a list of supported items.

*cvariable*

A host variable that will receive the data retrieved from the descriptor area.

## Examples

An example to retrieve the number of columns in a result set:

```
EXEC SQL GET DESCRIPTOR d :d_count = COUNT;
```

An example to retrieve a data length in the first column:

```
EXEC SQL GET DESCRIPTOR d VALUE 1 :d_returned_octet_length =
RETURNED_OCTET_LENGTH;
```



An example to retrieve the data body of the second column as a string:

```
EXEC SQL GET DESCRIPTOR d VALUE 2 :d_data = DATA;
```

Here is an example for a whole procedure of executing `SELECT current_database();` and showing the number of columns, the column data length, and the column data:

```
int
main(void)
{
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    int d_count;
    char d_data[1024];
    int d_returned_octet_length;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

    EXEC SQL CONNECT TO testdb AS con1 USER testuser;
    EXEC SQL SELECT pg_catalog.set_config('search_path', '',
false); EXEC SQL COMMIT;
    EXEC SQL ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR d;

    /* Declare, open a cursor, and assign a descriptor to the
cursor */
    EXEC SQL DECLARE cur CURSOR FOR SELECT current_database();
    EXEC SQL OPEN cur;
    EXEC SQL FETCH NEXT FROM cur INTO SQL DESCRIPTOR d;

    /* Get a number of total columns */
    EXEC SQL GET DESCRIPTOR d :d_count = COUNT;
    printf("d_count                = %d\n", d_count);

    /* Get length of a returned column */
    EXEC SQL GET DESCRIPTOR d VALUE 1 :d_returned_octet_length =
RETURNED_OCTET_LENGTH;
    printf("d_returned_octet_length = %d\n",
d_returned_octet_length);

    /* Fetch the returned column as a string */
    EXEC SQL GET DESCRIPTOR d VALUE 1 :d_data = DATA;
    printf("d_data                = %s\n", d_data);

    /* Closing */
    EXEC SQL CLOSE cur;
    EXEC SQL COMMIT;

    EXEC SQL DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR d;
    EXEC SQL DISCONNECT ALL;

    return 0;
}
```

When the example is executed, the result will look like this:

```
d_count                = 1
d_returned_octet_length = 6
d_data                = testdb
```

## Compatibility

GET DESCRIPTOR is specified in the SQL standard.

## See Also

ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR, SET DESCRIPTOR

# OPEN

OPEN — open a dynamic cursor

## Synopsis

```
OPEN cursor_name
OPEN cursor_name USING value [, ... ]
OPEN cursor_name USING SQL DESCRIPTOR descriptor_name
```

## Description

OPEN opens a cursor and optionally binds actual values to the placeholders in the cursor's declaration. The cursor must previously have been declared with the DECLARE command. The execution of OPEN causes the query to start executing on the server.

## Parameters

*cursor\_name*

The name of the cursor to be opened. This can be an SQL identifier or a host variable.

*value*

A value to be bound to a placeholder in the cursor. This can be an SQL constant, a host variable, or a host variable with indicator.

*descriptor\_name*

The name of a descriptor containing values to be bound to the placeholders in the cursor. This can be an SQL identifier or a host variable.

## Examples

```
EXEC SQL OPEN a;
EXEC SQL OPEN d USING 1, 'test';
EXEC SQL OPEN c1 USING SQL DESCRIPTOR mydesc;
EXEC SQL OPEN :curname1;
```

## Compatibility

OPEN is specified in the SQL standard.

## See Also

DECLARE, CLOSE

# PREPARE

PREPARE — prepare a statement for execution

## Synopsis

```
PREPARE prepared_name FROM string
```

## Description

PREPARE prepares a statement dynamically specified as a string for execution. This is different from the direct SQL statement PREPARE, which can also be used in embedded programs. The EXECUTE command is used to execute either kind of prepared statement.

## Parameters

*prepared\_name*

An identifier for the prepared query.

*string*

A literal string or a host variable containing a preparable SQL statement, one of SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE. Use question marks (?) for parameter values to be supplied at execution.

## Notes

In typical usage, the *string* is a host variable reference to a string containing a dynamically-constructed SQL statement. The case of a literal string is not very useful; you might as well just write a direct SQL PREPARE statement.

If you do use a literal string, keep in mind that any double quotes you might wish to include in the SQL statement must be written as octal escapes (\042) not the usual C idiom \". This is because the string is inside an EXEC SQL section, so the ECPG lexer parses it according to SQL rules not C rules. Any embedded backslashes will later be handled according to C rules; but \" causes an immediate syntax error because it is seen as ending the literal.

## Examples

```
char *stmt = "SELECT * FROM test1 WHERE a = ? AND b = ?";
```

```
EXEC SQL ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR outdesc;  
EXEC SQL PREPARE foo FROM :stmt;
```

```
EXEC SQL EXECUTE foo USING SQL DESCRIPTOR indesc INTO SQL  
DESCRIPTOR outdesc;
```

## Compatibility

PREPARE is specified in the SQL standard.

## See Also

EXECUTE

# SET AUTOCOMMIT

SET AUTOCOMMIT — set the autocommit behavior of the current session

## Synopsis

```
SET AUTOCOMMIT { = | TO } { ON | OFF }
```

## Description

SET AUTOCOMMIT sets the autocommit behavior of the current database session. By default, embedded SQL programs are *not* in autocommit mode, so COMMIT needs to be issued explicitly when desired. This command can change the session to autocommit mode, where each individual statement is committed implicitly.

## Compatibility

SET AUTOCOMMIT is an extension of PostgreSQL ECPG.

# SET CONNECTION

SET CONNECTION — select a database connection

## Synopsis

```
SET CONNECTION [ TO | = ] connection_name
```

## Description

SET CONNECTION sets the “current” database connection, which is the one that all commands use unless overridden.

## Parameters

*connection\_name*

A database connection name established by the CONNECT command.

CURRENT

Set the connection to the current connection (thus, nothing happens).

## Examples

```
EXEC SQL SET CONNECTION TO con2;  
EXEC SQL SET CONNECTION = con1;
```

## Compatibility

SET CONNECTION is specified in the SQL standard.

## See Also

CONNECT, DISCONNECT

# SET DESCRIPTOR

SET DESCRIPTOR — set information in an SQL descriptor area

## Synopsis

```
SET DESCRIPTOR descriptor_name descriptor_header_item = value
[ , ... ]
SET DESCRIPTOR descriptor_name VALUE number descriptor_item = value
[ , ... ]
```

## Description

SET DESCRIPTOR populates an SQL descriptor area with values. The descriptor area is then typically used to bind parameters in a prepared query execution.

This command has two forms: The first form applies to the descriptor “header”, which is independent of a particular datum. The second form assigns values to particular datums, identified by number.

## Parameters

*descriptor\_name*

A descriptor name.

*descriptor\_header\_item*

A token identifying which header information item to set. Only COUNT, to set the number of descriptor items, is currently supported.

*number*

The number of the descriptor item to set. The count starts at 1.

*descriptor\_item*

A token identifying which item of information to set in the descriptor. See Section 36.7.1 for a list of supported items.

*value*

A value to store into the descriptor item. This can be an SQL constant or a host variable.

## Examples

```
EXEC SQL SET DESCRIPTOR indesc COUNT = 1;
EXEC SQL SET DESCRIPTOR indesc VALUE 1 DATA = 2;
EXEC SQL SET DESCRIPTOR indesc VALUE 1 DATA = :val1;
EXEC SQL SET DESCRIPTOR indesc VALUE 2 INDICATOR = :val1, DATA =
    'some string';
EXEC SQL SET DESCRIPTOR indesc VALUE 2 INDICATOR = :val2null, DATA
    = :val2;
```

## Compatibility

SET DESCRIPTOR is specified in the SQL standard.

## **See Also**

ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR, GET DESCRIPTOR



# TYPE

TYPE — define a new data type

## Synopsis

```
TYPE type_name IS ctype
```

## Description

The TYPE command defines a new C type. It is equivalent to putting a typedef into a declare section.

This command is only recognized when `ecpg` is run with the `-c` option.

## Parameters

*type\_name*

The name for the new type. It must be a valid C type name.

*ctype*

A C type specification.

## Examples

```
EXEC SQL TYPE customer IS
    struct
    {
        varchar name[50];
        int      phone;
    };

EXEC SQL TYPE cust_ind IS
    struct ind
    {
        short  name_ind;
        short  phone_ind;
    };

EXEC SQL TYPE c IS char reference;
EXEC SQL TYPE ind IS union { int integer; short smallint; };
EXEC SQL TYPE intarray IS int[AMOUNT];
EXEC SQL TYPE str IS varchar[BUFFERSIZ];
EXEC SQL TYPE string IS char[11];
```

Here is an example program that uses EXEC SQL TYPE:

```
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR SQLPRINT;

EXEC SQL TYPE tt IS
    struct
    {
        varchar v[256];
        int      i;
```

```
};

EXEC SQL TYPE tt_ind IS
    struct ind {
        short    v_ind;
        short    i_ind;
    };

int
main(void)
{
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
    tt t;
    tt_ind t_ind;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

    EXEC SQL CONNECT TO testdb AS con1;
    EXEC SQL SELECT pg_catalog.set_config('search_path', '',
false); EXEC SQL COMMIT;

    EXEC SQL SELECT current_database(), 256 INTO :t:t_ind LIMIT 1;

    printf("t.v = %s\n", t.v.arr);
    printf("t.i = %d\n", t.i);

    printf("t_ind.v_ind = %d\n", t_ind.v_ind);
    printf("t_ind.i_ind = %d\n", t_ind.i_ind);

    EXEC SQL DISCONNECT con1;

    return 0;
}
```

The output from this program looks like this:

```
t.v = testdb
t.i = 256
t_ind.v_ind = 0
t_ind.i_ind = 0
```

## Compatibility

The TYPE command is a PostgreSQL extension.

# VAR

VAR — define a variable

## Synopsis

```
VAR varname IS ctype
```

## Description

The VAR command assigns a new C data type to a host variable. The host variable must be previously declared in a declare section.

## Parameters

*varname*

A C variable name.

*ctype*

A C type specification.

## Examples

```
Exec sql begin declare section;  
short a;  
exec sql end declare section;  
EXEC SQL VAR a IS int;
```

## Compatibility

The VAR command is a PostgreSQL extension.

## WHENEVER

WHENEVER — specify the action to be taken when an SQL statement causes a specific class condition to be raised

## Synopsis

```
WHENEVER { NOT FOUND | SQLERROR | SQLWARNING } action
```

## Description

Define a behavior which is called on the special cases (Rows not found, SQL warnings or errors) in the result of SQL execution.

## Parameters

See Section 36.8.1 for a description of the parameters.

## Examples

```
EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND CONTINUE;
EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND DO BREAK;
EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND DO CONTINUE;
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLWARNING SQLPRINT;
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLWARNING DO warn();
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR sqlprint;
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR CALL print2();
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR DO handle_error("select");
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR DO sqlnotice(NULL, NONO);
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR DO sqlprint();
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR GOTO error_label;
EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR STOP;
```

A typical application is the use of WHENEVER NOT FOUND BREAK to handle looping through result sets:

```
int
main(void)
{
    EXEC SQL CONNECT TO testdb AS con1;
    EXEC SQL SELECT pg_catalog.set_config('search_path', '',
false); EXEC SQL COMMIT;
    EXEC SQL ALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR d;
    EXEC SQL DECLARE cur CURSOR FOR SELECT current_database(),
'hoge', 256;
    EXEC SQL OPEN cur;

    /* when end of result set reached, break out of while loop */
    EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND DO BREAK;

    while (1)
    {
        EXEC SQL FETCH NEXT FROM cur INTO SQL DESCRIPTOR d;
        ...
    }
}
```

```
EXEC SQL CLOSE cur;
EXEC SQL COMMIT;

EXEC SQL DEALLOCATE DESCRIPTOR d;
EXEC SQL DISCONNECT ALL;

return 0;
}
```

## Compatibility

WHENEVER is specified in the SQL standard, but most of the actions are PostgreSQL extensions.

# 36.15. Informix Compatibility Mode

`ecpg` can be run in a so-called *Informix compatibility mode*. If this mode is active, it tries to behave as if it were the Informix precompiler for Informix E/SQL. Generally spoken this will allow you to use the dollar sign instead of the `EXEC SQL` primitive to introduce embedded SQL commands:

```
$int j = 3;
$CONNECT TO :dbname;
$CREATE TABLE test(i INT PRIMARY KEY, j INT);
$INSERT INTO test(i, j) VALUES (7, :j);
$COMMIT;
```

### Note

There must not be any white space between the `$` and a following preprocessor directive, that is, `include`, `define`, `ifdef`, etc. Otherwise, the preprocessor will parse the token as a host variable.

There are two compatibility modes: `INFORMIX`, `INFORMIX_SE`

When linking programs that use this compatibility mode, remember to link against `libcompat` that is shipped with ECPG.

Besides the previously explained syntactic sugar, the Informix compatibility mode ports some functions for input, output and transformation of data as well as embedded SQL statements known from E/SQL to ECPG.

Informix compatibility mode is closely connected to the `pgtypeslib` library of ECPG. `pgtypeslib` maps SQL data types to data types within the C host program and most of the additional functions of the Informix compatibility mode allow you to operate on those C host program types. Note however that the extent of the compatibility is limited. It does not try to copy Informix behavior; it allows you to do more or less the same operations and gives you functions that have the same name and the same basic behavior but it is no drop-in replacement if you are using Informix at the moment. Moreover, some of the data types are different. For example, PostgreSQL's `datetime` and `interval` types do not know about ranges like for example `YEAR TO MINUTE` so you won't find support in ECPG for that either.

## 36.15.1. Additional Types

The Informix-special "string" pseudo-type for storing right-trimmed character string data is now supported in Informix-mode without using `typedef`. In fact, in Informix-mode, ECPG refuses to process source files that contain `typedef sometype string;`

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
string userid; /* this variable will contain trimmed data */
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

EXEC SQL FETCH MYCUR INTO :userid;
```

## 36.15.2. Additional/Missing Embedded SQL Statements

`CLOSE DATABASE`

This statement closes the current connection. In fact, this is a synonym for ECPG's `DISCONNECT CURRENT`:

```
$CLOSE DATABASE;           /* close the current connection
*/
EXEC SQL CLOSE DATABASE;
```

`FREE cursor_name`

Due to differences in how ECPG works compared to Informix's ESQL/C (namely, which steps are purely grammar transformations and which steps rely on the underlying run-time library) there is no `FREE cursor_name` statement in ECPG. This is because in ECPG, `DECLARE CURSOR` doesn't translate to a function call into the run-time library that uses to the cursor name. This means that there's no run-time bookkeeping of SQL cursors in the ECPG run-time library, only in the PostgreSQL server.

`FREE statement_name`

`FREE statement_name` is a synonym for `DEALLOCATE PREPARE statement_name`.

## 36.15.3. Informix-compatible SQLDA Descriptor Areas

Informix-compatible mode supports a different structure than the one described in Section 36.7.2. See below:

```
struct sqlvar_compat
{
    short    sqltype;
    int      sqllen;
    char     *sqldata;
    short    *sqlind;
    char     *sqlname;
    char     *sqlformat;
    short    sqlitype;
    short    sqlilen;
    char     *sqlidata;
    int      sqlxid;
    char     *sqltypename;
    short    sqltypelen;
    short    sqlownerlen;
    short    sqlsourcetype;
    char     *sqlownername;
    int      sqlsourceid;
    char     *sqlilongdata;
```

```
    int      sqlflags;
    void     *sqlreserved;
};

struct sqlda_compat
{
    short  sqld;
    struct sqlvar_compat *sqlvar;
    char   desc_name[19];
    short  desc_occ;
    struct sqlda_compat *desc_next;
    void   *reserved;
};

typedef struct sqlvar_compat    sqlvar_t;
typedef struct sqlda_compat    sqlda_t;
```

The global properties are:

`sqld`

The number of fields in the SQLDA descriptor.

`sqlvar`

Pointer to the per-field properties.

`desc_name`

Unused, filled with zero-bytes.

`desc_occ`

Size of the allocated structure.

`desc_next`

Pointer to the next SQLDA structure if the result set contains more than one record.

`reserved`

Unused pointer, contains NULL. Kept for Informix-compatibility.

The per-field properties are below, they are stored in the `sqlvar` array:

`sqltype`

Type of the field. Constants are in `sqltypes.h`

`sqllen`

Length of the field data.

`sqldata`

Pointer to the field data. The pointer is of `char *` type, the data pointed by it is in a binary format. Example:

```
int intval;

switch (sqldata->sqlvar[i].sqltype)
```

```
{
    case SQLINTEGER:
        intval = *(int *)sqldata->sqlvar[i].sqldata;
        break;
    ...
}
```

`sqlind`

Pointer to the NULL indicator. If returned by DESCRIBE or FETCH then it's always a valid pointer. If used as input for EXECUTE ... USING `sqlda`; then NULL-pointer value means that the value for this field is non-NULL. Otherwise a valid pointer and `sqltype` has to be properly set. Example:

```
if (*(int2 *)sqldata->sqlvar[i].sqlind != 0)
    printf("value is NULL\n");
```

`sqlname`

Name of the field. 0-terminated string.

`sqlformat`

Reserved in Informix, value of `PQfformat` for the field.

`sqltype`

Type of the NULL indicator data. It's always `SQLSMINT` when returning data from the server. When the `SQLDA` is used for a parameterized query, the data is treated according to the set type.

`sqlilen`

Length of the NULL indicator data.

`sqlxid`

Extended type of the field, result of `PQftype`.

`sqltypename`  
`sqltypelen`  
`sqlownerlen`  
`sqlsourcetype`  
`sqlownername`  
`sqlsourceid`  
`sqlflags`  
`sqlreserved`

Unused.

`sqlilongdata`

It equals to `sqldata` if `sqlilen` is larger than 32kB.

Example:

```
EXEC SQL INCLUDE sqlda.h;
```

```
    sqlda_t      *sqlda; /* This doesn't need to be under
embedded DECLARE SECTION */
```



```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
char *prep_stmt = "select * from table1";
int i;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;

...

EXEC SQL PREPARE mystmt FROM :prep_stmt;

EXEC SQL DESCRIBE mystmt INTO sqlda;

printf("# of fields: %d\n", sqlda->sqld);
for (i = 0; i < sqlda->sqld; i++)
    printf("field %d: \"%s\"\n", sqlda->sqlvar[i]->sqlname);

EXEC SQL DECLARE mycursor CURSOR FOR mystmt;
EXEC SQL OPEN mycursor;
EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND GOTO out;

while (1)
{
    EXEC SQL FETCH mycursor USING sqlda;
}

EXEC SQL CLOSE mycursor;

free(sqlda); /* The main structure is all to be free(),
              * sqlda and sqlda->sqlvar is in one allocated
area */
```

For more information, see the `sqlda.h` header and the `src/interfaces/ecpg/test/compat_informix/sqlda.pgc` regression test.

## 36.15.4. Additional Functions

### decadd

Add two decimal type values.

```
int decadd(decimal *arg1, decimal *arg2, decimal *sum);
```

The function receives a pointer to the first operand of type decimal (`arg1`), a pointer to the second operand of type decimal (`arg2`) and a pointer to a value of type decimal that will contain the sum (`sum`). On success, the function returns 0. `ECPG_INFORMIX_NUM_OVERFLOW` is returned in case of overflow and `ECPG_INFORMIX_NUM_UNDERFLOW` in case of underflow. -1 is returned for other failures and `errno` is set to the respective `errno` number of the `pgtypeslib`.

### deccmp

Compare two variables of type decimal.

```
int deccmp(decimal *arg1, decimal *arg2);
```

The function receives a pointer to the first decimal value (`arg1`), a pointer to the second decimal value (`arg2`) and returns an integer value that indicates which is the bigger value.

- 1, if the value that `arg1` points to is bigger than the value that `var2` points to

- -1, if the value that `arg1` points to is smaller than the value that `arg2` points to
- 0, if the value that `arg1` points to and the value that `arg2` points to are equal

#### `deccopy`

Copy a decimal value.

```
void deccopy(decimal *src, decimal *target);
```

The function receives a pointer to the decimal value that should be copied as the first argument (`src`) and a pointer to the target structure of type `decimal` (`target`) as the second argument.

#### `deccvasc`

Convert a value from its ASCII representation into a decimal type.

```
int deccvasc(char *cp, int len, decimal *np);
```

The function receives a pointer to string that contains the string representation of the number to be converted (`cp`) as well as its length `len`. `np` is a pointer to the decimal value that saves the result of the operation.

Valid formats are for example: -2, .794, +3.44, 592.49E07 or -32.84e-4.

The function returns 0 on success. If overflow or underflow occurred, `ECPG_INFORMIX_NUM_OVERFLOW` or `ECPG_INFORMIX_NUM_UNDERFLOW` is returned. If the ASCII representation could not be parsed, `ECPG_INFORMIX_BAD_NUMERIC` is returned or `ECPG_INFORMIX_BAD_EXPONENT` if this problem occurred while parsing the exponent.

#### `deccvdbl`

Convert a value of type double to a value of type decimal.

```
int deccvdbl(double dbl, decimal *np);
```

The function receives the variable of type `double` that should be converted as its first argument (`dbl`). As the second argument (`np`), the function receives a pointer to the decimal variable that should hold the result of the operation.

The function returns 0 on success and a negative value if the conversion failed.

#### `deccvint`

Convert a value of type `int` to a value of type decimal.

```
int deccvint(int in, decimal *np);
```

The function receives the variable of type `int` that should be converted as its first argument (`in`). As the second argument (`np`), the function receives a pointer to the decimal variable that should hold the result of the operation.

The function returns 0 on success and a negative value if the conversion failed.

#### `deccvlong`

Convert a value of type `long` to a value of type decimal.

```
int deccvlong(long lng, decimal *np);
```

The function receives the variable of type long that should be converted as its first argument (lng). As the second argument (np), the function receives a pointer to the decimal variable that should hold the result of the operation.

The function returns 0 on success and a negative value if the conversion failed.

decdiv

Divide two variables of type decimal.

```
int decdiv(decimal *n1, decimal *n2, decimal *result);
```

The function receives pointers to the variables that are the first (n1) and the second (n2) operands and calculates n1/n2. result is a pointer to the variable that should hold the result of the operation.

On success, 0 is returned and a negative value if the division fails. If overflow or underflow occurred, the function returns ECPG\_INFORMIX\_NUM\_OVERFLOW or ECPG\_INFORMIX\_NUM\_UNDERFLOW respectively. If an attempt to divide by zero is observed, the function returns ECPG\_INFORMIX\_DIVIDE\_ZERO.

decmul

Multiply two decimal values.

```
int decmul(decimal *n1, decimal *n2, decimal *result);
```

The function receives pointers to the variables that are the first (n1) and the second (n2) operands and calculates n1\*n2. result is a pointer to the variable that should hold the result of the operation.

On success, 0 is returned and a negative value if the multiplication fails. If overflow or underflow occurred, the function returns ECPG\_INFORMIX\_NUM\_OVERFLOW or ECPG\_INFORMIX\_NUM\_UNDERFLOW respectively.

decsub

Subtract one decimal value from another.

```
int decsub(decimal *n1, decimal *n2, decimal *result);
```

The function receives pointers to the variables that are the first (n1) and the second (n2) operands and calculates n1-n2. result is a pointer to the variable that should hold the result of the operation.

On success, 0 is returned and a negative value if the subtraction fails. If overflow or underflow occurred, the function returns ECPG\_INFORMIX\_NUM\_OVERFLOW or ECPG\_INFORMIX\_NUM\_UNDERFLOW respectively.

dectoasc

Convert a variable of type decimal to its ASCII representation in a C char\* string.

```
int dectoasc(decimal *np, char *cp, int len, int right)
```

The function receives a pointer to a variable of type decimal (`np`) that it converts to its textual representation. `cp` is the buffer that should hold the result of the operation. The parameter `right` specifies, how many digits right of the decimal point should be included in the output. The result will be rounded to this number of decimal digits. Setting `right` to -1 indicates that all available decimal digits should be included in the output. If the length of the output buffer, which is indicated by `len` is not sufficient to hold the textual representation including the trailing zero byte, only a single `*` character is stored in the result and -1 is returned.

The function returns either -1 if the buffer `cp` was too small or `ECPG_INFORMIX_OUT_OF_MEMORY` if memory was exhausted.

#### `dectodbl`

Convert a variable of type decimal to a double.

```
int dectodbl(decimal *np, double *dblp);
```

The function receives a pointer to the decimal value to convert (`np`) and a pointer to the double variable that should hold the result of the operation (`dblp`).

On success, 0 is returned and a negative value if the conversion failed.

#### `dectoint`

Convert a variable to type decimal to an integer.

```
int dectoint(decimal *np, int *ip);
```

The function receives a pointer to the decimal value to convert (`np`) and a pointer to the integer variable that should hold the result of the operation (`ip`).

On success, 0 is returned and a negative value if the conversion failed. If an overflow occurred, `ECPG_INFORMIX_NUM_OVERFLOW` is returned.

Note that the ECPG implementation differs from the Informix implementation. Informix limits an integer to the range from -32767 to 32767, while the limits in the ECPG implementation depend on the architecture (`INT_MIN` .. `INT_MAX`).

#### `dectolong`

Convert a variable to type decimal to a long integer.

```
int dectolong(decimal *np, long *lngp);
```

The function receives a pointer to the decimal value to convert (`np`) and a pointer to the long variable that should hold the result of the operation (`lngp`).

On success, 0 is returned and a negative value if the conversion failed. If an overflow occurred, `ECPG_INFORMIX_NUM_OVERFLOW` is returned.

Note that the ECPG implementation differs from the Informix implementation. Informix limits a long integer to the range from -2,147,483,647 to 2,147,483,647, while the limits in the ECPG implementation depend on the architecture (`-LONG_MAX` .. `LONG_MAX`).

#### `rdatestr`

Converts a date to a C `char*` string.

```
int rdatestr(date d, char *str);
```

The function receives two arguments, the first one is the date to convert (*d*) and the second one is a pointer to the target string. The output format is always *yyyy-mm-dd*, so you need to allocate at least 11 bytes (including the zero-byte terminator) for the string.

The function returns 0 on success and a negative value in case of error.

Note that ECPG's implementation differs from the Informix implementation. In Informix the format can be influenced by setting environment variables. In ECPG however, you cannot change the output format.

#### `rstrdate`

Parse the textual representation of a date.

```
int rstrdate(char *str, date *d);
```

The function receives the textual representation of the date to convert (*str*) and a pointer to a variable of type *date* (*d*). This function does not allow you to specify a format mask. It uses the default format mask of Informix which is *mm/dd/yyyy*. Internally, this function is implemented by means of *rdefmtdate*. Therefore, *rstrdate* is not faster and if you have the choice you should opt for *rdefmtdate* which allows you to specify the format mask explicitly.

The function returns the same values as *rdefmtdate*.

#### `rtoday`

Get the current date.

```
void rtoday(date *d);
```

The function receives a pointer to a date variable (*d*) that it sets to the current date.

Internally this function uses the *PGTYPESdate\_today* function.

#### `rjulmdy`

Extract the values for the day, the month and the year from a variable of type *date*.

```
int rjulmdy(date d, short mdy[3]);
```

The function receives the date *d* and a pointer to an array of 3 short integer values *mdy*. The variable name indicates the sequential order: *mdy[0]* will be set to contain the number of the month, *mdy[1]* will be set to the value of the day and *mdy[2]* will contain the year.

The function always returns 0 at the moment.

Internally the function uses the *PGTYPESdate\_julmdy* function.

#### `rdefmtdate`

Use a format mask to convert a character string to a value of type *date*.

```
int rdefmtdate(date *d, char *fmt, char *str);
```

The function receives a pointer to the date value that should hold the result of the operation (*d*), the format mask to use for parsing the date (*fmt*) and the C *char\** string containing the textual

representation of the date (`str`). The textual representation is expected to match the format mask. However you do not need to have a 1:1 mapping of the string to the format mask. The function only analyzes the sequential order and looks for the literals `yy` or `yyyy` that indicate the position of the year, `mm` to indicate the position of the month and `dd` to indicate the position of the day.

The function returns the following values:

- 0 - The function terminated successfully.
- `ECPG_INFORMIX_ENOSHORTDATE` - The date does not contain delimiters between day, month and year. In this case the input string must be exactly 6 or 8 bytes long but isn't.
- `ECPG_INFORMIX_ENOTDMY` - The format string did not correctly indicate the sequential order of year, month and day.
- `ECPG_INFORMIX_BAD_DAY` - The input string does not contain a valid day.
- `ECPG_INFORMIX_BAD_MONTH` - The input string does not contain a valid month.
- `ECPG_INFORMIX_BAD_YEAR` - The input string does not contain a valid year.

Internally this function is implemented to use the `PGTYPESdate_defmt_asc` function. See the reference there for a table of example input.

#### `rfmtdate`

Convert a variable of type date to its textual representation using a format mask.

```
int rfmtdate(date d, char *fmt, char *str);
```

The function receives the date to convert (`d`), the format mask (`fmt`) and the string that will hold the textual representation of the date (`str`).

On success, 0 is returned and a negative value if an error occurred.

Internally this function uses the `PGTYPESdate_fmt_asc` function, see the reference there for examples.

#### `rmdyjul`

Create a date value from an array of 3 short integers that specify the day, the month and the year of the date.

```
int rmdyjul(short mdy[3], date *d);
```

The function receives the array of the 3 short integers (`mdy`) and a pointer to a variable of type date that should hold the result of the operation.

Currently the function returns always 0.

Internally the function is implemented to use the function `PGTYPESdate_mdyjul`.

#### `rdayofweek`

Return a number representing the day of the week for a date value.

```
int rdayofweek(date d);
```

The function receives the date variable `d` as its only argument and returns an integer that indicates the day of the week for this date.

- 0 - Sunday
- 1 - Monday
- 2 - Tuesday
- 3 - Wednesday
- 4 - Thursday
- 5 - Friday
- 6 - Saturday

Internally the function is implemented to use the function `PGTYPESdate_dayofweek`.

#### `dtcurrent`

Retrieve the current timestamp.

```
void dtcurrent(timestamp *ts);
```

The function retrieves the current timestamp and saves it into the timestamp variable that `ts` points to.

#### `dtcvasc`

Parses a timestamp from its textual representation into a timestamp variable.

```
int dtcvasc(char *str, timestamp *ts);
```

The function receives the string to parse (`str`) and a pointer to the timestamp variable that should hold the result of the operation (`ts`).

The function returns 0 on success and a negative value in case of error.

Internally this function uses the `PGTYPEStimestamp_from_asc` function. See the reference there for a table with example inputs.

#### `dtcvfmtasc`

Parses a timestamp from its textual representation using a format mask into a timestamp variable.

```
dtcvfmtasc(char *inbuf, char *fmtstr, timestamp *dtvalue)
```

The function receives the string to parse (`inbuf`), the format mask to use (`fmtstr`) and a pointer to the timestamp variable that should hold the result of the operation (`dtvalue`).

This function is implemented by means of the `PGTYPEStimestamp_defmt_asc` function. See the documentation there for a list of format specifiers that can be used.

The function returns 0 on success and a negative value in case of error.

#### `dtsub`

Subtract one timestamp from another and return a variable of type interval.

```
int dtsub(timestamp *ts1, timestamp *ts2, interval *iv);
```

The function will subtract the timestamp variable that `ts2` points to from the timestamp variable that `ts1` points to and will store the result in the interval variable that `iv` points to.

Upon success, the function returns 0 and a negative value if an error occurred.

#### `dttoasc`

Convert a timestamp variable to a C `char*` string.

```
int dttoasc(timestamp *ts, char *output);
```

The function receives a pointer to the timestamp variable to convert (`ts`) and the string that should hold the result of the operation (`output`). It converts `ts` to its textual representation according to the SQL standard, which is `YYYY-MM-DD HH:MM:SS`.

Upon success, the function returns 0 and a negative value if an error occurred.

#### `dttofmtasc`

Convert a timestamp variable to a C `char*` using a format mask.

```
int dttofmtasc(timestamp *ts, char *output, int str_len, char
               *fmtstr);
```

The function receives a pointer to the timestamp to convert as its first argument (`ts`), a pointer to the output buffer (`output`), the maximal length that has been allocated for the output buffer (`str_len`) and the format mask to use for the conversion (`fmtstr`).

Upon success, the function returns 0 and a negative value if an error occurred.

Internally, this function uses the `PGTYPEStimestamp_fmt_asc` function. See the reference there for information on what format mask specifiers can be used.

#### `intoasc`

Convert an interval variable to a C `char*` string.

```
int intoasc(interval *i, char *str);
```

The function receives a pointer to the interval variable to convert (`i`) and the string that should hold the result of the operation (`str`). It converts `i` to its textual representation according to the SQL standard, which is `YYYY-MM-DD HH:MM:SS`.

Upon success, the function returns 0 and a negative value if an error occurred.

#### `rfmtlong`

Convert a long integer value to its textual representation using a format mask.

```
int rfmtlong(long lng_val, char *fmt, char *outbuf);
```

The function receives the long value `lng_val`, the format mask `fmt` and a pointer to the output buffer `outbuf`. It converts the long value according to the format mask to its textual representation.

The format mask can be composed of the following format specifying characters:

- `*` (asterisk) - if this position would be blank otherwise, fill it with an asterisk.



- & (ampersand) - if this position would be blank otherwise, fill it with a zero.
- # - turn leading zeroes into blanks.
- < - left-justify the number in the string.
- , (comma) - group numbers of four or more digits into groups of three digits separated by a comma.
- . (period) - this character separates the whole-number part of the number from the fractional part.
- - (minus) - the minus sign appears if the number is a negative value.
- + (plus) - the plus sign appears if the number is a positive value.
- ( - this replaces the minus sign in front of the negative number. The minus sign will not appear.
- ) - this character replaces the minus and is printed behind the negative value.
- \$ - the currency symbol.

#### `rupshift`

Convert a string to upper case.

```
void rupshift(char *str);
```

The function receives a pointer to the string and transforms every lower case character to upper case.

#### `byleng`

Return the number of characters in a string without counting trailing blanks.

```
int byleng(char *str, int len);
```

The function expects a fixed-length string as its first argument (`str`) and its length as its second argument (`len`). It returns the number of significant characters, that is the length of the string without trailing blanks.

#### `ldchar`

Copy a fixed-length string into a null-terminated string.

```
void ldchar(char *src, int len, char *dest);
```

The function receives the fixed-length string to copy (`src`), its length (`len`) and a pointer to the destination memory (`dest`). Note that you need to reserve at least `len+1` bytes for the string that `dest` points to. The function copies at most `len` bytes to the new location (less if the source string has trailing blanks) and adds the null-terminator.

#### `rgetmsg`

```
int rgetmsg(int msgnum, char *s, int maxsize);
```

This function exists but is not implemented at the moment!

### `rtypalign`

```
int rtypalign(int offset, int type);
```

This function exists but is not implemented at the moment!

### `rtypmsize`

```
int rtypmsize(int type, int len);
```

This function exists but is not implemented at the moment!

### `rtypwidth`

```
int rtypwidth(int sqltype, int sqllen);
```

This function exists but is not implemented at the moment!

### `rsetnull`

Set a variable to NULL.

```
int rsetnull(int t, char *ptr);
```

The function receives an integer that indicates the type of the variable and a pointer to the variable itself that is cast to a C `char*` pointer.

The following types exist:

- `CCHARTYPE` - For a variable of type `char` or `char*`
- `CSHORTTYPE` - For a variable of type `short int`
- `CINTTYPE` - For a variable of type `int`
- `CBOOLTYPE` - For a variable of type `boolean`
- `CFLOATTYPE` - For a variable of type `float`
- `CLONGTYPE` - For a variable of type `long`
- `CDOUBLETTYPE` - For a variable of type `double`
- `CDECIMALTYPE` - For a variable of type `decimal`
- `CDATETYPE` - For a variable of type `date`
- `CDTIMETYPE` - For a variable of type `timestamp`

Here is an example of a call to this function:

```
$char c[] = "abc          ";
$short s = 17;
$int i = -74874;

rsetnull(CCHARTYPE, (char *) c);
rsetnull(CSHORTTYPE, (char *) &s);
rsetnull(CINTTYPE, (char *) &i);
```

`risnull`

Test if a variable is NULL.

```
int risnull(int t, char *ptr);
```

The function receives the type of the variable to test (`t`) as well a pointer to this variable (`ptr`). Note that the latter needs to be cast to a `char*`. See the function `rsetnull` for a list of possible variable types.

Here is an example of how to use this function:

```
$char c[] = "abc          ";
$short s = 17;
$int i = -74874;

risnull(CCHARTYPE, (char *) c);
risnull(CSHORTTYPE, (char *) &s);
risnull(CINTTYPE, (char *) &i);
```

## 36.15.5. Additional Constants

Note that all constants here describe errors and all of them are defined to represent negative values. In the descriptions of the different constants you can also find the value that the constants represent in the current implementation. However you should not rely on this number. You can however rely on the fact all of them are defined to represent negative values.

`ECPG_INFORMIX_NUM_OVERFLOW`

Functions return this value if an overflow occurred in a calculation. Internally it is defined as -1200 (the Informix definition).

`ECPG_INFORMIX_NUM_UNDERFLOW`

Functions return this value if an underflow occurred in a calculation. Internally it is defined as -1201 (the Informix definition).

`ECPG_INFORMIX_DIVIDE_ZERO`

Functions return this value if an attempt to divide by zero is observed. Internally it is defined as -1202 (the Informix definition).

`ECPG_INFORMIX_BAD_YEAR`

Functions return this value if a bad value for a year was found while parsing a date. Internally it is defined as -1204 (the Informix definition).

`ECPG_INFORMIX_BAD_MONTH`

Functions return this value if a bad value for a month was found while parsing a date. Internally it is defined as -1205 (the Informix definition).

`ECPG_INFORMIX_BAD_DAY`

Functions return this value if a bad value for a day was found while parsing a date. Internally it is defined as -1206 (the Informix definition).

**ECPG\_INFORMIX\_ENOSHORTDATE**

Functions return this value if a parsing routine needs a short date representation but did not get the date string in the right length. Internally it is defined as -1209 (the Informix definition).

**ECPG\_INFORMIX\_DATE\_CONVERT**

Functions return this value if an error occurred during date formatting. Internally it is defined as -1210 (the Informix definition).

**ECPG\_INFORMIX\_OUT\_OF\_MEMORY**

Functions return this value if memory was exhausted during their operation. Internally it is defined as -1211 (the Informix definition).

**ECPG\_INFORMIX\_ENOTDMY**

Functions return this value if a parsing routine was supposed to get a format mask (like mmddyy) but not all fields were listed correctly. Internally it is defined as -1212 (the Informix definition).

**ECPG\_INFORMIX\_BAD\_NUMERIC**

Functions return this value either if a parsing routine cannot parse the textual representation for a numeric value because it contains errors or if a routine cannot complete a calculation involving numeric variables because at least one of the numeric variables is invalid. Internally it is defined as -1213 (the Informix definition).

**ECPG\_INFORMIX\_BAD\_EXPONENT**

Functions return this value if a parsing routine cannot parse an exponent. Internally it is defined as -1216 (the Informix definition).

**ECPG\_INFORMIX\_BAD\_DATE**

Functions return this value if a parsing routine cannot parse a date. Internally it is defined as -1218 (the Informix definition).

**ECPG\_INFORMIX\_EXTRA\_CHARS**

Functions return this value if a parsing routine is passed extra characters it cannot parse. Internally it is defined as -1264 (the Informix definition).

## 36.16. Oracle Compatibility Mode

`ecpg` can be run in a so-called *Oracle compatibility mode*. If this mode is active, it tries to behave as if it were Oracle Pro\*C.

Specifically, this mode changes `ecpg` in three ways:

- Pad character arrays receiving character string types with trailing spaces to the specified length
- Zero byte terminate these character arrays, and set the indicator variable if truncation occurs
- Set the null indicator to -1 when character arrays receive empty character string types

## 36.17. Internals

This section explains how ECPG works internally. This information can occasionally be useful to help users understand how to use ECPG.

The first four lines written by `ecpg` to the output are fixed lines. Two are comments and two are include lines necessary to interface to the library. Then the preprocessor reads through the file and writes output. Normally it just echoes everything to the output.

When it sees an `EXEC SQL` statement, it intervenes and changes it. The command starts with `EXEC SQL` and ends with `;`. Everything in between is treated as an SQL statement and parsed for variable substitution.

Variable substitution occurs when a symbol starts with a colon (`:`). The variable with that name is looked up among the variables that were previously declared within a `EXEC SQL DECLARE` section.

The most important function in the library is `ECPGdo`, which takes care of executing most commands. It takes a variable number of arguments. This can easily add up to 50 or so arguments, and we hope this will not be a problem on any platform.

The arguments are:

A line number

This is the line number of the original line; used in error messages only.

A string

This is the SQL command that is to be issued. It is modified by the input variables, i.e., the variables that were not known at compile time but are to be entered in the command. Where the variables should go the string contains `?`.

Input variables

Every input variable causes ten arguments to be created. (See below.)

*ECPGt\_EOIT*

An enum telling that there are no more input variables.

Output variables

Every output variable causes ten arguments to be created. (See below.) These variables are filled by the function.

*ECPGt\_EORT*

An enum telling that there are no more variables.

For every variable that is part of the SQL command, the function gets ten arguments:

1. The type as a special symbol.
2. A pointer to the value or a pointer to the pointer.
3. The size of the variable if it is a `char` or `varchar`.
4. The number of elements in the array (for array fetches).
5. The offset to the next element in the array (for array fetches).
6. The type of the indicator variable as a special symbol.
7. A pointer to the indicator variable.
8. 0
9. The number of elements in the indicator array (for array fetches).

10. The offset to the next element in the indicator array (for array fetches).

Note that not all SQL commands are treated in this way. For instance, an open cursor statement like:

```
EXEC SQL OPEN cursor;
```

is not copied to the output. Instead, the cursor's DECLARE command is used at the position of the OPEN command because it indeed opens the cursor.

Here is a complete example describing the output of the preprocessor of a file `foo.pgc` (details might change with each particular version of the preprocessor):

```
EXEC SQL BEGIN DECLARE SECTION;
int index;
int result;
EXEC SQL END DECLARE SECTION;
...
EXEC SQL SELECT res INTO :result FROM mytable WHERE index = :index;
```

is translated into:

```
/* Processed by ecpg (2.6.0) */
/* These two include files are added by the preprocessor */
#include <ecpgtype.h>;
#include <ecpglib.h>;

/* exec sql begin declare section */

#line 1 "foo.pgc"

    int index;
    int result;
/* exec sql end declare section */
...
ECPGdo(__LINE__, NULL, "SELECT res FROM mytable WHERE index = ?
",
        ECPGt_int,&(index),1L,1L,sizeof(int),
        ECPGt_NO_INDICATOR, NULL , 0L, 0L, 0L, ECPGt_EOIT,
        ECPGt_int,&(result),1L,1L,sizeof(int),
        ECPGt_NO_INDICATOR, NULL , 0L, 0L, 0L, ECPGt_EORT);
#line 147 "foo.pgc"
```

(The indentation here is added for readability and not something the preprocessor does.)

---

# Chapter 37. The Information Schema

The information schema consists of a set of views that contain information about the objects defined in the current database. The information schema is defined in the SQL standard and can therefore be expected to be portable and remain stable — unlike the system catalogs, which are specific to PostgreSQL and are modeled after implementation concerns. The information schema views do not, however, contain information about PostgreSQL-specific features; to inquire about those you need to query the system catalogs or other PostgreSQL-specific views.

## Note

When querying the database for constraint information, it is possible for a standard-compliant query that expects to return one row to return several. This is because the SQL standard requires constraint names to be unique within a schema, but PostgreSQL does not enforce this restriction. PostgreSQL automatically-generated constraint names avoid duplicates in the same schema, but users can specify such duplicate names.

This problem can appear when querying information schema views such as `check_constraint_routine_usage`, `check_constraints`, `domain_constraints`, and `referential_constraints`. Some other views have similar issues but contain the table name to help distinguish duplicate rows, e.g., `constraint_column_usage`, `constraint_table_usage`, `table_constraints`.

## 37.1. The Schema

The information schema itself is a schema named `information_schema`. This schema automatically exists in all databases. The owner of this schema is the initial database user in the cluster, and that user naturally has all the privileges on this schema, including the ability to drop it (but the space savings achieved by that are minuscule).

By default, the information schema is not in the schema search path, so you need to access all objects in it through qualified names. Since the names of some of the objects in the information schema are generic names that might occur in user applications, you should be careful if you want to put the information schema in the path.

## 37.2. Data Types

The columns of the information schema views use special data types that are defined in the information schema. These are defined as simple domains over ordinary built-in types. You should not use these types for work outside the information schema, but your applications must be prepared for them if they select from the information schema.

These types are:

`cardinal_number`

A nonnegative integer.

`character_data`

A character string (without specific maximum length).

`sql_identifier`

A character string. This type is used for SQL identifiers, the type `character_data` is used for any other kind of text data.

time\_stamp

A domain over the type timestamp with time zone

yes\_or\_no

A character string domain that contains either YES or NO. This is used to represent Boolean (true/false) data in the information schema. (The information schema was invented before the type boolean was added to the SQL standard, so this convention is necessary to keep the information schema backward compatible.)

Every column in the information schema has one of these five types.

## 37.3. information\_schema\_catalog\_name

information\_schema\_catalog\_name is a table that always contains one row and one column containing the name of the current database (current catalog, in SQL terminology).

**Table 37.1. information\_schema\_catalog\_name Columns**

Column Type
Description
catalog_name sql_identifier
Name of the database that contains this information schema

## 37.4. administrable\_role\_authorizations

The view administrable\_role\_authorizations identifies all roles that the current user has the admin option for.

**Table 37.2. administrable\_role\_authorizations Columns**

Column Type
Description
grantee sql_identifier
Name of the role to which this role membership was granted (can be the current user, or a different role in case of nested role memberships)
role_name sql_identifier
Name of a role
is_grantable yes_or_no
Always YES

## 37.5. applicable\_roles

The view applicable\_roles identifies all roles whose privileges the current user can use. This means there is some chain of role grants from the current user to the role in question. The current user itself is also an applicable role. The set of applicable roles is generally used for permission checking.

**Table 37.3. applicable\_roles Columns**

Column Type
Description
grantee sql_identifier



Column Type	Description
	Name of the role to which this role membership was granted (can be the current user, or a different role in case of nested role memberships)
role_name sql_identifier	Name of a role
is_grantable yes_or_no	YES if the grantee has the admin option on the role, NO if not

## 37.6. attributes

The view `attributes` contains information about the attributes of composite data types defined in the database. (Note that the view does not give information about table columns, which are sometimes called attributes in PostgreSQL contexts.) Only those attributes are shown that the current user has access to (by way of being the owner of or having some privilege on the type).

**Table 37.4. attributes Columns**

Column Type	Description
udt_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database containing the data type (always the current database)
udt_schema sql_identifier	Name of the schema containing the data type
udt_name sql_identifier	Name of the data type
attribute_name sql_identifier	Name of the attribute
ordinal_position cardinal_number	Ordinal position of the attribute within the data type (count starts at 1)
attribute_default character_data	Default expression of the attribute
is_nullable yes_or_no	YES if the attribute is possibly nullable, NO if it is known not nullable.
data_type character_data	Data type of the attribute, if it is a built-in type, or ARRAY if it is some array (in that case, see the view <code>element_types</code> ), else USER-DEFINED (in that case, the type is identified in <code>attribute_udt_name</code> and associated columns).
character_maximum_length cardinal_number	If <code>data_type</code> identifies a character or bit string type, the declared maximum length; null for all other data types or if no maximum length was declared.
character_octet_length cardinal_number	If <code>data_type</code> identifies a character type, the maximum possible length in octets (bytes) of a datum; null for all other data types. The maximum octet length depends on the declared character maximum length (see above) and the server encoding.
character_set_catalog sql_identifier	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
character_set_schema sql_identifier	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
character_set_name sql_identifier	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL

<b>Column Type</b>	<b>Description</b>
<code>collation_catalog sql_identifier</code>	Name of the database containing the collation of the attribute (always the current database), null if default or the data type of the attribute is not collatable
<code>collation_schema sql_identifier</code>	Name of the schema containing the collation of the attribute, null if default or the data type of the attribute is not collatable
<code>collation_name sql_identifier</code>	Name of the collation of the attribute, null if default or the data type of the attribute is not collatable
<code>numeric_precision cardinal_number</code>	If <code>data_type</code> identifies a numeric type, this column contains the (declared or implicit) precision of the type for this attribute. The precision indicates the number of significant digits. It can be expressed in decimal (base 10) or binary (base 2) terms, as specified in the column <code>numeric_precision_radix</code> . For all other data types, this column is null.
<code>numeric_precision_radix cardinal_number</code>	If <code>data_type</code> identifies a numeric type, this column indicates in which base the values in the columns <code>numeric_precision</code> and <code>numeric_scale</code> are expressed. The value is either 2 or 10. For all other data types, this column is null.
<code>numeric_scale cardinal_number</code>	If <code>data_type</code> identifies an exact numeric type, this column contains the (declared or implicit) scale of the type for this attribute. The scale indicates the number of significant digits to the right of the decimal point. It can be expressed in decimal (base 10) or binary (base 2) terms, as specified in the column <code>numeric_precision_radix</code> . For all other data types, this column is null.
<code>datetime_precision cardinal_number</code>	If <code>data_type</code> identifies a date, time, timestamp, or interval type, this column contains the (declared or implicit) fractional seconds precision of the type for this attribute, that is, the number of decimal digits maintained following the decimal point in the seconds value. For all other data types, this column is null.
<code>interval_type character_data</code>	If <code>data_type</code> identifies an interval type, this column contains the specification which fields the intervals include for this attribute, e.g., YEAR TO MONTH, DAY TO SECOND, etc. If no field restrictions were specified (that is, the interval accepts all fields), and for all other data types, this field is null.
<code>interval_precision cardinal_number</code>	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL (see <code>datetime_precision</code> for the fractional seconds precision of interval type attributes)
<code>attribute_udt_catalog sql_identifier</code>	Name of the database that the attribute data type is defined in (always the current database)
<code>attribute_udt_schema sql_identifier</code>	Name of the schema that the attribute data type is defined in
<code>attribute_udt_name sql_identifier</code>	Name of the attribute data type
<code>scope_catalog sql_identifier</code>	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
<code>scope_schema sql_identifier</code>	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
<code>scope_name sql_identifier</code>	

Column Type	Description
	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
<code>maximum_cardinality</code> <code>cardinal_number</code>	Always null, because arrays always have unlimited maximum cardinality in PostgreSQL
<code>dtd_identifier</code> <code>sql_identifier</code>	An identifier of the data type descriptor of the column, unique among the data type descriptors pertaining to the table. This is mainly useful for joining with other instances of such identifiers. (The specific format of the identifier is not defined and not guaranteed to remain the same in future versions.)
<code>is_derived_reference_attribute</code> <code>yes_or_no</code>	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL

See also under Section 37.17, a similarly structured view, for further information on some of the columns.

## 37.7. `character_sets`

The view `character_sets` identifies the character sets available in the current database. Since PostgreSQL does not support multiple character sets within one database, this view only shows one, which is the database encoding.

Take note of how the following terms are used in the SQL standard:

**character repertoire**

An abstract collection of characters, for example `UNICODE`, `UCS`, or `LATIN1`. Not exposed as an SQL object, but visible in this view.

**character encoding form**

An encoding of some character repertoire. Most older character repertoires only use one encoding form, and so there are no separate names for them (e.g., `LATIN2` is an encoding form applicable to the `LATIN2` repertoire). But for example Unicode has the encoding forms `UTF8`, `UTF16`, etc. (not all supported by PostgreSQL). Encoding forms are not exposed as an SQL object, but are visible in this view.

**character set**

A named SQL object that identifies a character repertoire, a character encoding, and a default collation. A predefined character set would typically have the same name as an encoding form, but users could define other names. For example, the character set `UTF8` would typically identify the character repertoire `UCS`, encoding form `UTF8`, and some default collation.

You can think of an “encoding” in PostgreSQL either as a character set or a character encoding form. They will have the same name, and there can only be one in one database.

**Table 37.5. `character_sets` Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>character_set_catalog</code> <code>sql_identifier</code>	Character sets are currently not implemented as schema objects, so this column is null.
<code>character_set_schema</code> <code>sql_identifier</code>	Character sets are currently not implemented as schema objects, so this column is null.
<code>character_set_name</code> <code>sql_identifier</code>	

Column Type	Description
	Name of the character set, currently implemented as showing the name of the database encoding
character_repertoire sql_identifier	Character repertoire, showing UCS if the encoding is UTF8, else just the encoding name
form_of_use sql_identifier	Character encoding form, same as the database encoding
default_collate_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database containing the default collation (always the current database, if any collation is identified)
default_collate_schema sql_identifier	Name of the schema containing the default collation
default_collate_name sql_identifier	Name of the default collation. The default collation is identified as the collation that matches the COLLATE and CTYPE settings of the current database. If there is no such collation, then this column and the associated schema and catalog columns are null.

## 37.8. check\_constraint\_routine\_usage

The view `check_constraint_routine_usage` identifies routines (functions and procedures) that are used by a check constraint. Only those routines are shown that are owned by a currently enabled role.

**Table 37.6. check\_constraint\_routine\_usage Columns**

Column Type	Description
constraint_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database containing the constraint (always the current database)
constraint_schema sql_identifier	Name of the schema containing the constraint
constraint_name sql_identifier	Name of the constraint
specific_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database containing the function (always the current database)
specific_schema sql_identifier	Name of the schema containing the function
specific_name sql_identifier	The “specific name” of the function. See Section 37.45 for more information.

## 37.9. check\_constraints

The view `check_constraints` contains all check constraints, either defined on a table or on a domain, that are owned by a currently enabled role. (The owner of the table or domain is the owner of the constraint.)

**Table 37.7. check\_constraints Columns**

Column Type	Description
constraint_catalog sql_identifier	

Column Type	Description
	Name of the database containing the constraint (always the current database)
constraint_schema sql_identifier	Name of the schema containing the constraint
constraint_name sql_identifier	Name of the constraint
check_clause character_data	The check expression of the check constraint

## 37.10. collations

The view `collations` contains the collations available in the current database.

**Table 37.8. collations Columns**

Column Type	Description
collation_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database containing the collation (always the current database)
collation_schema sql_identifier	Name of the schema containing the collation
collation_name sql_identifier	Name of the default collation
pad_attribute character_data	Always NO PAD (The alternative PAD SPACE is not supported by PostgreSQL.)

## 37.11. collation\_character\_set\_applicability

The view `collation_character_set_applicability` identifies which character set the available collations are applicable to. In PostgreSQL, there is only one character set per database (see explanation in Section 37.7), so this view does not provide much useful information.

**Table 37.9. collation\_character\_set\_applicability Columns**

Column Type	Description
collation_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database containing the collation (always the current database)
collation_schema sql_identifier	Name of the schema containing the collation
collation_name sql_identifier	Name of the default collation
character_set_catalog sql_identifier	Character sets are currently not implemented as schema objects, so this column is null
character_set_schema sql_identifier	Character sets are currently not implemented as schema objects, so this column is null
character_set_name sql_identifier	Name of the character set

## 37.12. column\_column\_usage

The view `column_column_usage` identifies all generated columns that depend on another base column in the same table. Only tables owned by a currently enabled role are included.

**Table 37.10. column\_column\_usage Columns**

Column Type	Description
table_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database containing the table (always the current database)
table_schema sql_identifier	Name of the schema containing the table
table_name sql_identifier	Name of the table
column_name sql_identifier	Name of the base column that a generated column depends on
dependent_column sql_identifier	Name of the generated column

## 37.13. column\_domain\_usage

The view `column_domain_usage` identifies all columns (of a table or a view) that make use of some domain defined in the current database and owned by a currently enabled role.

**Table 37.11. column\_domain\_usage Columns**

Column Type	Description
domain_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database containing the domain (always the current database)
domain_schema sql_identifier	Name of the schema containing the domain
domain_name sql_identifier	Name of the domain
table_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database containing the table (always the current database)
table_schema sql_identifier	Name of the schema containing the table
table_name sql_identifier	Name of the table
column_name sql_identifier	Name of the column

## 37.14. column\_options

The view `column_options` contains all the options defined for foreign table columns in the current database. Only those foreign table columns are shown that the current user has access to (by way of being the owner or having some privilege).

**Table 37.12. column\_options Columns**

Column Type	Description
table_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database that contains the foreign table (always the current database)
table_schema sql_identifier	Name of the schema that contains the foreign table
table_name sql_identifier	Name of the foreign table
column_name sql_identifier	Name of the column
option_name sql_identifier	Name of an option
option_value character_data	Value of the option

## 37.15. column\_privileges

The view `column_privileges` identifies all privileges granted on columns to a currently enabled role or by a currently enabled role. There is one row for each combination of column, grantor, and grantee.

If a privilege has been granted on an entire table, it will show up in this view as a grant for each column, but only for the privilege types where column granularity is possible: `SELECT`, `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `REFERENCES`.

**Table 37.13. column\_privileges Columns**

Column Type	Description
grantor sql_identifier	Name of the role that granted the privilege
grantee sql_identifier	Name of the role that the privilege was granted to
table_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database that contains the table that contains the column (always the current database)
table_schema sql_identifier	Name of the schema that contains the table that contains the column
table_name sql_identifier	Name of the table that contains the column
column_name sql_identifier	Name of the column
privilege_type character_data	Type of the privilege: <code>SELECT</code> , <code>INSERT</code> , <code>UPDATE</code> , or <code>REFERENCES</code>
is_grantable yes_or_no	YES if the privilege is grantable, NO if not

## 37.16. column\_udt\_usage

The view `column_udt_usage` identifies all columns that use data types owned by a currently enabled role. Note that in PostgreSQL, built-in data types behave like user-defined types, so they are included here as well. See also Section 37.17 for details.

**Table 37.14. column\_udt\_usage Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>udt_catalog sql_identifier</code>	Name of the database that the column data type (the underlying type of the domain, if applicable) is defined in (always the current database)
<code>udt_schema sql_identifier</code>	Name of the schema that the column data type (the underlying type of the domain, if applicable) is defined in
<code>udt_name sql_identifier</code>	Name of the column data type (the underlying type of the domain, if applicable)
<code>table_catalog sql_identifier</code>	Name of the database containing the table (always the current database)
<code>table_schema sql_identifier</code>	Name of the schema containing the table
<code>table_name sql_identifier</code>	Name of the table
<code>column_name sql_identifier</code>	Name of the column

## 37.17. columns

The view `columns` contains information about all table columns (or view columns) in the database. System columns (`ctid`, etc.) are not included. Only those columns are shown that the current user has access to (by way of being the owner or having some privilege).

**Table 37.15. columns Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>table_catalog sql_identifier</code>	Name of the database containing the table (always the current database)
<code>table_schema sql_identifier</code>	Name of the schema containing the table
<code>table_name sql_identifier</code>	Name of the table
<code>column_name sql_identifier</code>	Name of the column
<code>ordinal_position cardinal_number</code>	Ordinal position of the column within the table (count starts at 1)
<code>column_default character_data</code>	Default expression of the column
<code>is_nullable yes_or_no</code>	YES if the column is possibly nullable, NO if it is known not nullable. A not-null constraint is one way a column can be known not nullable, but there can be others.



Column Type	Description
<code>data_type</code> <code>character_data</code>	Data type of the column, if it is a built-in type, or ARRAY if it is some array (in that case, see the view <code>element_types</code> ), else USER-DEFINED (in that case, the type is identified in <code>udt_name</code> and associated columns). If the column is based on a domain, this column refers to the type underlying the domain (and the domain is identified in <code>domain_name</code> and associated columns).
<code>character_maximum_length</code> <code>cardinal_number</code>	If <code>data_type</code> identifies a character or bit string type, the declared maximum length; null for all other data types or if no maximum length was declared.
<code>character_octet_length</code> <code>cardinal_number</code>	If <code>data_type</code> identifies a character type, the maximum possible length in octets (bytes) of a datum; null for all other data types. The maximum octet length depends on the declared character maximum length (see above) and the server encoding.
<code>numeric_precision</code> <code>cardinal_number</code>	If <code>data_type</code> identifies a numeric type, this column contains the (declared or implicit) precision of the type for this column. The precision indicates the number of significant digits. It can be expressed in decimal (base 10) or binary (base 2) terms, as specified in the column <code>numeric_precision_radix</code> . For all other data types, this column is null.
<code>numeric_precision_radix</code> <code>cardinal_number</code>	If <code>data_type</code> identifies a numeric type, this column indicates in which base the values in the columns <code>numeric_precision</code> and <code>numeric_scale</code> are expressed. The value is either 2 or 10. For all other data types, this column is null.
<code>numeric_scale</code> <code>cardinal_number</code>	If <code>data_type</code> identifies an exact numeric type, this column contains the (declared or implicit) scale of the type for this column. The scale indicates the number of significant digits to the right of the decimal point. It can be expressed in decimal (base 10) or binary (base 2) terms, as specified in the column <code>numeric_precision_radix</code> . For all other data types, this column is null.
<code>datetime_precision</code> <code>cardinal_number</code>	If <code>data_type</code> identifies a date, time, timestamp, or interval type, this column contains the (declared or implicit) fractional seconds precision of the type for this column, that is, the number of decimal digits maintained following the decimal point in the seconds value. For all other data types, this column is null.
<code>interval_type</code> <code>character_data</code>	If <code>data_type</code> identifies an interval type, this column contains the specification which fields the intervals include for this column, e.g., YEAR TO MONTH, DAY TO SECOND, etc. If no field restrictions were specified (that is, the interval accepts all fields), and for all other data types, this field is null.
<code>interval_precision</code> <code>cardinal_number</code>	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL (see <code>datetime_precision</code> for the fractional seconds precision of interval type columns)
<code>character_set_catalog</code> <code>sql_identifier</code>	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
<code>character_set_schema</code> <code>sql_identifier</code>	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
<code>character_set_name</code> <code>sql_identifier</code>	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
<code>collation_catalog</code> <code>sql_identifier</code>	

<b>Column Type</b>	<b>Description</b>
	Name of the database containing the collation of the column (always the current database), null if default or the data type of the column is not collatable
<code>collation_schema sql_identifier</code>	Name of the schema containing the collation of the column, null if default or the data type of the column is not collatable
<code>collation_name sql_identifier</code>	Name of the collation of the column, null if default or the data type of the column is not collatable
<code>domain_catalog sql_identifier</code>	If the column has a domain type, the name of the database that the domain is defined in (always the current database), else null.
<code>domain_schema sql_identifier</code>	If the column has a domain type, the name of the schema that the domain is defined in, else null.
<code>domain_name sql_identifier</code>	If the column has a domain type, the name of the domain, else null.
<code>udt_catalog sql_identifier</code>	Name of the database that the column data type (the underlying type of the domain, if applicable) is defined in (always the current database)
<code>udt_schema sql_identifier</code>	Name of the schema that the column data type (the underlying type of the domain, if applicable) is defined in
<code>udt_name sql_identifier</code>	Name of the column data type (the underlying type of the domain, if applicable)
<code>scope_catalog sql_identifier</code>	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
<code>scope_schema sql_identifier</code>	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
<code>scope_name sql_identifier</code>	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
<code>maximum_cardinality cardinal_number</code>	Always null, because arrays always have unlimited maximum cardinality in PostgreSQL
<code>dtd_identifier sql_identifier</code>	An identifier of the data type descriptor of the column, unique among the data type descriptors pertaining to the table. This is mainly useful for joining with other instances of such identifiers. (The specific format of the identifier is not defined and not guaranteed to remain the same in future versions.)
<code>is_self_referencing yes_or_no</code>	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
<code>is_identity yes_or_no</code>	If the column is an identity column, then YES, else NO.
<code>identity_generation character_data</code>	If the column is an identity column, then ALWAYS or BY DEFAULT, reflecting the definition of the column.
<code>identity_start character_data</code>	If the column is an identity column, then the start value of the internal sequence, else null.
<code>identity_increment character_data</code>	

Column Type	Description
	If the column is an identity column, then the increment of the internal sequence, else null.
<code>identity_maximum_character_data</code>	If the column is an identity column, then the maximum value of the internal sequence, else null.
<code>identity_minimum_character_data</code>	If the column is an identity column, then the minimum value of the internal sequence, else null.
<code>identity_cycle_yes_or_no</code>	If the column is an identity column, then YES if the internal sequence cycles or NO if it does not; otherwise null.
<code>is_generated_character_data</code>	If the column is a generated column, then ALWAYS, else NEVER.
<code>generation_expression_character_data</code>	If the column is a generated column, then the generation expression, else null.
<code>is_updatable_yes_or_no</code>	YES if the column is updatable, NO if not (Columns in base tables are always updatable, columns in views not necessarily)

Since data types can be defined in a variety of ways in SQL, and PostgreSQL contains additional ways to define data types, their representation in the information schema can be somewhat difficult. The column `data_type` is supposed to identify the underlying built-in type of the column. In PostgreSQL, this means that the type is defined in the system catalog schema `pg_catalog`. This column might be useful if the application can handle the well-known built-in types specially (for example, format the numeric types differently or use the data in the precision columns). The columns `udt_name`, `udt_schema`, and `udt_catalog` always identify the underlying data type of the column, even if the column is based on a domain. (Since PostgreSQL treats built-in types like user-defined types, built-in types appear here as well. This is an extension of the SQL standard.) These columns should be used if an application wants to process data differently according to the type, because in that case it wouldn't matter if the column is really based on a domain. If the column is based on a domain, the identity of the domain is stored in the columns `domain_name`, `domain_schema`, and `domain_catalog`. If you want to pair up columns with their associated data types and treat domains as separate types, you could write `coalesce(domain_name, udt_name)`, etc.

## 37.18. `constraint_column_usage`

The view `constraint_column_usage` identifies all columns in the current database that are used by some constraint. Only those columns are shown that are contained in a table owned by a currently enabled role. For a check constraint, this view identifies the columns that are used in the check expression. For a foreign key constraint, this view identifies the columns that the foreign key references. For a unique or primary key constraint, this view identifies the constrained columns.

**Table 37.16. `constraint_column_usage` Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>table_catalog_sql_identifier</code>	Name of the database that contains the table that contains the column that is used by some constraint (always the current database)
<code>table_schema_sql_identifier</code>	Name of the schema that contains the table that contains the column that is used by some constraint

Column Type	Description
table_name sql_identifier	Name of the table that contains the column that is used by some constraint
column_name sql_identifier	Name of the column that is used by some constraint
constraint_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database that contains the constraint (always the current database)
constraint_schema sql_identifier	Name of the schema that contains the constraint
constraint_name sql_identifier	Name of the constraint

## 37.19. constraint\_table\_usage

The view `constraint_table_usage` identifies all tables in the current database that are used by some constraint and are owned by a currently enabled role. (This is different from the view `table_constraints`, which identifies all table constraints along with the table they are defined on.) For a foreign key constraint, this view identifies the table that the foreign key references. For a unique or primary key constraint, this view simply identifies the table the constraint belongs to. Check constraints and not-null constraints are not included in this view.

**Table 37.17. constraint\_table\_usage Columns**

Column Type	Description
table_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database that contains the table that is used by some constraint (always the current database)
table_schema sql_identifier	Name of the schema that contains the table that is used by some constraint
table_name sql_identifier	Name of the table that is used by some constraint
constraint_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database that contains the constraint (always the current database)
constraint_schema sql_identifier	Name of the schema that contains the constraint
constraint_name sql_identifier	Name of the constraint

## 37.20. data\_type\_privileges

The view `data_type_privileges` identifies all data type descriptors that the current user has access to, by way of being the owner of the described object or having some privilege for it. A data type descriptor is generated whenever a data type is used in the definition of a table column, a domain, or a function (as parameter or return type) and stores some information about how the data type is used in that instance (for example, the declared maximum length, if applicable). Each data type descriptor is assigned an arbitrary identifier that is unique among the data type descriptor identifiers assigned for one object (table, domain, function). This view is probably not useful for applications, but it is used to define some other views in the information schema.

**Table 37.18. data\_type\_privileges Columns**

Column Type	Description
object_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database that contains the described object (always the current database)
object_schema sql_identifier	Name of the schema that contains the described object
object_name sql_identifier	Name of the described object
object_type character_data	The type of the described object: one of TABLE (the data type descriptor pertains to a column of that table), DOMAIN (the data type descriptors pertains to that domain), ROUTINE (the data type descriptor pertains to a parameter or the return data type of that function).
dtd_identifier sql_identifier	The identifier of the data type descriptor, which is unique among the data type descriptors for that same object.

## 37.21. domain\_constraints

The view `domain_constraints` contains all constraints belonging to domains defined in the current database. Only those domains are shown that the current user has access to (by way of being the owner or having some privilege).

**Table 37.19. domain\_constraints Columns**

Column Type	Description
constraint_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database that contains the constraint (always the current database)
constraint_schema sql_identifier	Name of the schema that contains the constraint
constraint_name sql_identifier	Name of the constraint
domain_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database that contains the domain (always the current database)
domain_schema sql_identifier	Name of the schema that contains the domain
domain_name sql_identifier	Name of the domain
is_deferrable yes_or_no	YES if the constraint is deferrable, NO if not
initially_deferred yes_or_no	YES if the constraint is deferrable and initially deferred, NO if not

## 37.22. domain\_udt\_usage

The view `domain_udt_usage` identifies all domains that are based on data types owned by a currently enabled role. Note that in PostgreSQL, built-in data types behave like user-defined types, so they are included here as well.

**Table 37.20. domain\_udt\_usage Columns**

Column Type	Description
udt_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database that the domain data type is defined in (always the current database)
udt_schema sql_identifier	Name of the schema that the domain data type is defined in
udt_name sql_identifier	Name of the domain data type
domain_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database that contains the domain (always the current database)
domain_schema sql_identifier	Name of the schema that contains the domain
domain_name sql_identifier	Name of the domain

## 37.23. domains

The view `domains` contains all *domains* defined in the current database. Only those domains are shown that the current user has access to (by way of being the owner or having some privilege).

**Table 37.21. domains Columns**

Column Type	Description
domain_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database that contains the domain (always the current database)
domain_schema sql_identifier	Name of the schema that contains the domain
domain_name sql_identifier	Name of the domain
data_type character_data	Data type of the domain, if it is a built-in type, or ARRAY if it is some array (in that case, see the view <code>element_types</code> ), else USER-DEFINED (in that case, the type is identified in <code>udt_name</code> and associated columns).
character_maximum_length cardinal_number	If the domain has a character or bit string type, the declared maximum length; null for all other data types or if no maximum length was declared.
character_octet_length cardinal_number	If the domain has a character type, the maximum possible length in octets (bytes) of a datum; null for all other data types. The maximum octet length depends on the declared character maximum length (see above) and the server encoding.
character_set_catalog sql_identifier	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
character_set_schema sql_identifier	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
character_set_name sql_identifier	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
collation_catalog sql_identifier	

Column Type	Description
	Name of the database containing the collation of the domain (always the current database), null if default or the data type of the domain is not collatable
<code>collation_schema sql_identifier</code>	Name of the schema containing the collation of the domain, null if default or the data type of the domain is not collatable
<code>collation_name sql_identifier</code>	Name of the collation of the domain, null if default or the data type of the domain is not collatable
<code>numeric_precision cardinal_number</code>	If the domain has a numeric type, this column contains the (declared or implicit) precision of the type for this domain. The precision indicates the number of significant digits. It can be expressed in decimal (base 10) or binary (base 2) terms, as specified in the column <code>numeric_precision_radix</code> . For all other data types, this column is null.
<code>numeric_precision_radix cardinal_number</code>	If the domain has a numeric type, this column indicates in which base the values in the columns <code>numeric_precision</code> and <code>numeric_scale</code> are expressed. The value is either 2 or 10. For all other data types, this column is null.
<code>numeric_scale cardinal_number</code>	If the domain has an exact numeric type, this column contains the (declared or implicit) scale of the type for this domain. The scale indicates the number of significant digits to the right of the decimal point. It can be expressed in decimal (base 10) or binary (base 2) terms, as specified in the column <code>numeric_precision_radix</code> . For all other data types, this column is null.
<code>datetime_precision cardinal_number</code>	If <code>data_type</code> identifies a date, time, timestamp, or interval type, this column contains the (declared or implicit) fractional seconds precision of the type for this domain, that is, the number of decimal digits maintained following the decimal point in the seconds value. For all other data types, this column is null.
<code>interval_type character_data</code>	If <code>data_type</code> identifies an interval type, this column contains the specification which fields the intervals include for this domain, e.g., <code>YEAR TO MONTH</code> , <code>DAY TO SECOND</code> , etc. If no field restrictions were specified (that is, the interval accepts all fields), and for all other data types, this field is null.
<code>interval_precision cardinal_number</code>	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL (see <code>datetime_precision</code> for the fractional seconds precision of interval type domains)
<code>domain_default character_data</code>	Default expression of the domain
<code>udt_catalog sql_identifier</code>	Name of the database that the domain data type is defined in (always the current database)
<code>udt_schema sql_identifier</code>	Name of the schema that the domain data type is defined in
<code>udt_name sql_identifier</code>	Name of the domain data type
<code>scope_catalog sql_identifier</code>	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
<code>scope_schema sql_identifier</code>	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
<code>scope_name sql_identifier</code>	

Column Type	Description
	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
maximum_cardinality cardinal_number	Always null, because arrays always have unlimited maximum cardinality in PostgreSQL
dtd_identifier sql_identifier	An identifier of the data type descriptor of the domain, unique among the data type descriptors pertaining to the domain (which is trivial, because a domain only contains one data type descriptor). This is mainly useful for joining with other instances of such identifiers. (The specific format of the identifier is not defined and not guaranteed to remain the same in future versions.)

## 37.24. element\_types

The view `element_types` contains the data type descriptors of the elements of arrays. When a table column, composite-type attribute, domain, function parameter, or function return value is defined to be of an array type, the respective information schema view only contains `ARRAY` in the column `data_type`. To obtain information on the element type of the array, you can join the respective view with this view. For example, to show the columns of a table with data types and array element types, if applicable, you could do:

```
SELECT c.column_name, c.data_type, e.data_type AS element_type
FROM information_schema.columns c LEFT JOIN
    information_schema.element_types e
    ON ((c.table_catalog, c.table_schema, c.table_name, 'TABLE',
        c.dtd_identifier)
        = (e.object_catalog, e.object_schema, e.object_name,
        e.object_type, e.collection_type_identifier))
WHERE c.table_schema = '...' AND c.table_name = '...'
ORDER BY c.ordinal_position;
```

This view only includes objects that the current user has access to, by way of being the owner or having some privilege.

**Table 37.22. element\_types Columns**

Column Type	Description
object_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database that contains the object that uses the array being described (always the current database)
object_schema sql_identifier	Name of the schema that contains the object that uses the array being described
object_name sql_identifier	Name of the object that uses the array being described
object_type character_data	The type of the object that uses the array being described: one of <code>TABLE</code> (the array is used by a column of that table), <code>USER-DEFINED TYPE</code> (the array is used by an attribute of that composite type), <code>DOMAIN</code> (the array is used by that domain), <code>ROUTINE</code> (the array is used by a parameter or the return data type of that function).
collection_type_identifier sql_identifier	The identifier of the data type descriptor of the array being described. Use this to join with the <code>dtd_identifier</code> columns of other information schema views.
data_type character_data	



<b>Column Type</b>	<b>Description</b>
	Data type of the array elements, if it is a built-in type, else USER-DEFINED (in that case, the type is identified in <code>udt_name</code> and associated columns).
<code>character_maximum_length</code> <code>cardinal_number</code>	Always null, since this information is not applied to array element data types in PostgreSQL
<code>character_octet_length</code> <code>cardinal_number</code>	Always null, since this information is not applied to array element data types in PostgreSQL
<code>character_set_catalog</code> <code>sql_identifier</code>	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
<code>character_set_schema</code> <code>sql_identifier</code>	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
<code>character_set_name</code> <code>sql_identifier</code>	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
<code>collation_catalog</code> <code>sql_identifier</code>	Name of the database containing the collation of the element type (always the current database), null if default or the data type of the element is not collatable
<code>collation_schema</code> <code>sql_identifier</code>	Name of the schema containing the collation of the element type, null if default or the data type of the element is not collatable
<code>collation_name</code> <code>sql_identifier</code>	Name of the collation of the element type, null if default or the data type of the element is not collatable
<code>numeric_precision</code> <code>cardinal_number</code>	Always null, since this information is not applied to array element data types in PostgreSQL
<code>numeric_precision_radix</code> <code>cardinal_number</code>	Always null, since this information is not applied to array element data types in PostgreSQL
<code>numeric_scale</code> <code>cardinal_number</code>	Always null, since this information is not applied to array element data types in PostgreSQL
<code>datetime_precision</code> <code>cardinal_number</code>	Always null, since this information is not applied to array element data types in PostgreSQL
<code>interval_type</code> <code>character_data</code>	Always null, since this information is not applied to array element data types in PostgreSQL
<code>interval_precision</code> <code>cardinal_number</code>	Always null, since this information is not applied to array element data types in PostgreSQL
<code>domain_default</code> <code>character_data</code>	Not yet implemented
<code>udt_catalog</code> <code>sql_identifier</code>	Name of the database that the data type of the elements is defined in (always the current database)
<code>udt_schema</code> <code>sql_identifier</code>	Name of the schema that the data type of the elements is defined in
<code>udt_name</code> <code>sql_identifier</code>	

Column Type	Description
	Name of the data type of the elements
scope_catalog sql_identifier	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
scope_schema sql_identifier	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
scope_name sql_identifier	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
maximum_cardinality cardinal_number	Always null, because arrays always have unlimited maximum cardinality in PostgreSQL
dtd_identifier sql_identifier	An identifier of the data type descriptor of the element. This is currently not useful.

## 37.25. enabled\_roles

The view `enabled_roles` identifies the currently “enabled roles”. The enabled roles are recursively defined as the current user together with all roles that have been granted to the enabled roles with automatic inheritance. In other words, these are all roles that the current user has direct or indirect, automatically inheriting membership in.

For permission checking, the set of “applicable roles” is applied, which can be broader than the set of enabled roles. So generally, it is better to use the view `applicable_roles` instead of this one; See Section 37.5 for details on `applicable_roles` view.

**Table 37.23. enabled\_roles Columns**

Column Type	Description
role_name sql_identifier	Name of a role

## 37.26. foreign\_data\_wrapper\_options

The view `foreign_data_wrapper_options` contains all the options defined for foreign-data wrappers in the current database. Only those foreign-data wrappers are shown that the current user has access to (by way of being the owner or having some privilege).

**Table 37.24. foreign\_data\_wrapper\_options Columns**

Column Type	Description
foreign_data_wrapper_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database that the foreign-data wrapper is defined in (always the current database)
foreign_data_wrapper_name sql_identifier	Name of the foreign-data wrapper
option_name sql_identifier	Name of an option
option_value character_data	Value of the option

## 37.27. foreign\_data\_wrappers

The view `foreign_data_wrappers` contains all foreign-data wrappers defined in the current database. Only those foreign-data wrappers are shown that the current user has access to (by way of being the owner or having some privilege).

**Table 37.25. foreign\_data\_wrappers Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>foreign_data_wrapper_catalog sql_identifier</code>	Name of the database that contains the foreign-data wrapper (always the current database)
<code>foreign_data_wrapper_name sql_identifier</code>	Name of the foreign-data wrapper
<code>authorization_identifier sql_identifier</code>	Name of the owner of the foreign server
<code>library_name character_data</code>	File name of the library that implementing this foreign-data wrapper
<code>foreign_data_wrapper_language character_data</code>	Language used to implement this foreign-data wrapper

## 37.28. foreign\_server\_options

The view `foreign_server_options` contains all the options defined for foreign servers in the current database. Only those foreign servers are shown that the current user has access to (by way of being the owner or having some privilege).

**Table 37.26. foreign\_server\_options Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>foreign_server_catalog sql_identifier</code>	Name of the database that the foreign server is defined in (always the current database)
<code>foreign_server_name sql_identifier</code>	Name of the foreign server
<code>option_name sql_identifier</code>	Name of an option
<code>option_value character_data</code>	Value of the option

## 37.29. foreign\_servers

The view `foreign_servers` contains all foreign servers defined in the current database. Only those foreign servers are shown that the current user has access to (by way of being the owner or having some privilege).

**Table 37.27. foreign\_servers Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>foreign_server_catalog sql_identifier</code>	Name of the database that the foreign server is defined in (always the current database)

Column Type	Description
foreign_server_name sql_identifier	Name of the foreign server
foreign_data_wrapper_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database that contains the foreign-data wrapper used by the foreign server (always the current database)
foreign_data_wrapper_name sql_identifier	Name of the foreign-data wrapper used by the foreign server
foreign_server_type character_data	Foreign server type information, if specified upon creation
foreign_server_version character_data	Foreign server version information, if specified upon creation
authorization_identifier sql_identifier	Name of the owner of the foreign server

## 37.30. foreign\_table\_options

The view `foreign_table_options` contains all the options defined for foreign tables in the current database. Only those foreign tables are shown that the current user has access to (by way of being the owner or having some privilege).

**Table 37.28. foreign\_table\_options Columns**

Column Type	Description
foreign_table_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database that contains the foreign table (always the current database)
foreign_table_schema sql_identifier	Name of the schema that contains the foreign table
foreign_table_name sql_identifier	Name of the foreign table
option_name sql_identifier	Name of an option
option_value character_data	Value of the option

## 37.31. foreign\_tables

The view `foreign_tables` contains all foreign tables defined in the current database. Only those foreign tables are shown that the current user has access to (by way of being the owner or having some privilege).

**Table 37.29. foreign\_tables Columns**

Column Type	Description
foreign_table_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database that the foreign table is defined in (always the current database)
foreign_table_schema sql_identifier	Name of the schema that contains the foreign table
foreign_table_name sql_identifier	

Column Type
Description
Name of the foreign table
foreign_server_catalog sql_identifier Name of the database that the foreign server is defined in (always the current database)
foreign_server_name sql_identifier Name of the foreign server

## 37.32. key\_column\_usage

The view `key_column_usage` identifies all columns in the current database that are restricted by some unique, primary key, or foreign key constraint. Check constraints are not included in this view. Only those columns are shown that the current user has access to, by way of being the owner or having some privilege.

**Table 37.30. key\_column\_usage Columns**

Column Type
Description
constraint_catalog sql_identifier Name of the database that contains the constraint (always the current database)
constraint_schema sql_identifier Name of the schema that contains the constraint
constraint_name sql_identifier Name of the constraint
table_catalog sql_identifier Name of the database that contains the table that contains the column that is restricted by this constraint (always the current database)
table_schema sql_identifier Name of the schema that contains the table that contains the column that is restricted by this constraint
table_name sql_identifier Name of the table that contains the column that is restricted by this constraint
column_name sql_identifier Name of the column that is restricted by this constraint
ordinal_position cardinal_number Ordinal position of the column within the constraint key (count starts at 1)
position_in_unique_constraint cardinal_number For a foreign-key constraint, ordinal position of the referenced column within its unique constraint (count starts at 1); otherwise null

## 37.33. parameters

The view `parameters` contains information about the parameters (arguments) of all functions in the current database. Only those functions are shown that the current user has access to (by way of being the owner or having some privilege).

**Table 37.31. parameters Columns**

Column Type
Description
specific_catalog sql_identifier

Column Type	Description
	Name of the database containing the function (always the current database)
<code>specific_schema sql_identifier</code>	Name of the schema containing the function
<code>specific_name sql_identifier</code>	The “specific name” of the function. See Section 37.45 for more information.
<code>ordinal_position cardinal_number</code>	Ordinal position of the parameter in the argument list of the function (count starts at 1)
<code>parameter_mode character_data</code>	IN for input parameter, OUT for output parameter, and INOUT for input/output parameter.
<code>is_result yes_or_no</code>	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
<code>as_locator yes_or_no</code>	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
<code>parameter_name sql_identifier</code>	Name of the parameter, or null if the parameter has no name
<code>data_type character_data</code>	Data type of the parameter, if it is a built-in type, or ARRAY if it is some array (in that case, see the view <code>element_types</code> ), else USER-DEFINED (in that case, the type is identified in <code>udt_name</code> and associated columns).
<code>character_maximum_length cardinal_number</code>	Always null, since this information is not applied to parameter data types in PostgreSQL
<code>character_octet_length cardinal_number</code>	Always null, since this information is not applied to parameter data types in PostgreSQL
<code>character_set_catalog sql_identifier</code>	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
<code>character_set_schema sql_identifier</code>	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
<code>character_set_name sql_identifier</code>	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
<code>collation_catalog sql_identifier</code>	Always null, since this information is not applied to parameter data types in PostgreSQL
<code>collation_schema sql_identifier</code>	Always null, since this information is not applied to parameter data types in PostgreSQL
<code>collation_name sql_identifier</code>	Always null, since this information is not applied to parameter data types in PostgreSQL
<code>numeric_precision cardinal_number</code>	Always null, since this information is not applied to parameter data types in PostgreSQL
<code>numeric_precision_radix cardinal_number</code>	Always null, since this information is not applied to parameter data types in PostgreSQL
<code>numeric_scale cardinal_number</code>	Always null, since this information is not applied to parameter data types in PostgreSQL
<code>datetime_precision cardinal_number</code>	Always null, since this information is not applied to parameter data types in PostgreSQL
<code>interval_type character_data</code>	Always null, since this information is not applied to parameter data types in PostgreSQL
<code>interval_precision cardinal_number</code>	

Column Type	Description
	Always null, since this information is not applied to parameter data types in PostgreSQL
<code>udt_catalog sql_identifier</code>	Name of the database that the data type of the parameter is defined in (always the current database)
<code>udt_schema sql_identifier</code>	Name of the schema that the data type of the parameter is defined in
<code>udt_name sql_identifier</code>	Name of the data type of the parameter
<code>scope_catalog sql_identifier</code>	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
<code>scope_schema sql_identifier</code>	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
<code>scope_name sql_identifier</code>	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
<code>maximum_cardinality cardinal_number</code>	Always null, because arrays always have unlimited maximum cardinality in PostgreSQL
<code>dtd_identifier sql_identifier</code>	An identifier of the data type descriptor of the parameter, unique among the data type descriptors pertaining to the function. This is mainly useful for joining with other instances of such identifiers. (The specific format of the identifier is not defined and not guaranteed to remain the same in future versions.)
<code>parameter_default character_data</code>	The default expression of the parameter, or null if none or if the function is not owned by a currently enabled role.

## 37.34. referential\_constraints

The view `referential_constraints` contains all referential (foreign key) constraints in the current database. Only those constraints are shown for which the current user has write access to the referencing table (by way of being the owner or having some privilege other than `SELECT`).

**Table 37.32. referential\_constraints Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>constraint_catalog sql_identifier</code>	Name of the database containing the constraint (always the current database)
<code>constraint_schema sql_identifier</code>	Name of the schema containing the constraint
<code>constraint_name sql_identifier</code>	Name of the constraint
<code>unique_constraint_catalog sql_identifier</code>	Name of the database that contains the unique or primary key constraint that the foreign key constraint references (always the current database)
<code>unique_constraint_schema sql_identifier</code>	Name of the schema that contains the unique or primary key constraint that the foreign key constraint references
<code>unique_constraint_name sql_identifier</code>	Name of the unique or primary key constraint that the foreign key constraint references

Column Type	Description
match_option character_data	Match option of the foreign key constraint: FULL, PARTIAL, or NONE.
update_rule character_data	Update rule of the foreign key constraint: CASCADE, SET NULL, SET DEFAULT, RESTRICT, or NO ACTION.
delete_rule character_data	Delete rule of the foreign key constraint: CASCADE, SET NULL, SET DEFAULT, RESTRICT, or NO ACTION.

## 37.35. role\_column\_grants

The view `role_column_grants` identifies all privileges granted on columns where the grantor or grantee is a currently enabled role. Further information can be found under `column_privileges`. The only effective difference between this view and `column_privileges` is that this view omits columns that have been made accessible to the current user by way of a grant to PUBLIC.

**Table 37.33. role\_column\_grants Columns**

Column Type	Description
grantor sql_identifier	Name of the role that granted the privilege
grantee sql_identifier	Name of the role that the privilege was granted to
table_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database that contains the table that contains the column (always the current database)
table_schema sql_identifier	Name of the schema that contains the table that contains the column
table_name sql_identifier	Name of the table that contains the column
column_name sql_identifier	Name of the column
privilege_type character_data	Type of the privilege: SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, or REFERENCES
is_grantable yes_or_no	YES if the privilege is grantable, NO if not

## 37.36. role\_routine\_grants

The view `role_routine_grants` identifies all privileges granted on functions where the grantor or grantee is a currently enabled role. Further information can be found under `routine_privileges`. The only effective difference between this view and `routine_privileges` is that this view omits functions that have been made accessible to the current user by way of a grant to PUBLIC.

**Table 37.34. role\_routine\_grants Columns**

Column Type	Description
grantor sql_identifier	



Column Type	Description
	Name of the role that granted the privilege
grantee sql_identifier	Name of the role that the privilege was granted to
specific_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database containing the function (always the current database)
specific_schema sql_identifier	Name of the schema containing the function
specific_name sql_identifier	The “specific name” of the function. See Section 37.45 for more information.
routine_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database containing the function (always the current database)
routine_schema sql_identifier	Name of the schema containing the function
routine_name sql_identifier	Name of the function (might be duplicated in case of overloading)
privilege_type character_data	Always EXECUTE (the only privilege type for functions)
is_grantable yes_or_no	YES if the privilege is grantable, NO if not

## 37.37. role\_table\_grants

The view `role_table_grants` identifies all privileges granted on tables or views where the grantor or grantee is a currently enabled role. Further information can be found under `table_privileges`. The only effective difference between this view and `table_privileges` is that this view omits tables that have been made accessible to the current user by way of a grant to PUBLIC.

**Table 37.35. role\_table\_grants Columns**

Column Type	Description
grantor sql_identifier	Name of the role that granted the privilege
grantee sql_identifier	Name of the role that the privilege was granted to
table_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database that contains the table (always the current database)
table_schema sql_identifier	Name of the schema that contains the table
table_name sql_identifier	Name of the table
privilege_type character_data	Type of the privilege: SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, TRUNCATE, REFERENCES, or TRIGGER
is_grantable yes_or_no	YES if the privilege is grantable, NO if not
with_hierarchy yes_or_no	

Column Type	Description
	In the SQL standard, <code>WITH HIERARCHY OPTION</code> is a separate (sub-)privilege allowing certain operations on table inheritance hierarchies. In PostgreSQL, this is included in the <code>SELECT</code> privilege, so this column shows YES if the privilege is <code>SELECT</code> , else NO.

## 37.38. role\_udt\_grants

The view `role_udt_grants` is intended to identify `USAGE` privileges granted on user-defined types where the grantor or grantee is a currently enabled role. Further information can be found under `udt_privileges`. The only effective difference between this view and `udt_privileges` is that this view omits objects that have been made accessible to the current user by way of a grant to `PUBLIC`. Since data types do not have real privileges in PostgreSQL, but only an implicit grant to `PUBLIC`, this view is empty.

**Table 37.36. role\_udt\_grants Columns**

Column Type	Description
grantor sql_identifier	The name of the role that granted the privilege
grantee sql_identifier	The name of the role that the privilege was granted to
udt_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database containing the type (always the current database)
udt_schema sql_identifier	Name of the schema containing the type
udt_name sql_identifier	Name of the type
privilege_type character_data	Always <code>TYPE USAGE</code>
is_grantable yes_or_no	YES if the privilege is grantable, NO if not

## 37.39. role\_usage\_grants

The view `role_usage_grants` identifies `USAGE` privileges granted on various kinds of objects where the grantor or grantee is a currently enabled role. Further information can be found under `usage_privileges`. The only effective difference between this view and `usage_privileges` is that this view omits objects that have been made accessible to the current user by way of a grant to `PUBLIC`.

**Table 37.37. role\_usage\_grants Columns**

Column Type	Description
grantor sql_identifier	The name of the role that granted the privilege
grantee sql_identifier	The name of the role that the privilege was granted to
object_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database containing the object (always the current database)
object_schema sql_identifier	

Column Type	Description
	Name of the schema containing the object, if applicable, else an empty string
object_name sql_identifier	Name of the object
object_type character_data	COLLATION or DOMAIN or FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER or FOREIGN SERVER or SEQUENCE
privilege_type character_data	Always USAGE
is_grantable yes_or_no	YES if the privilege is grantable, NO if not

## 37.40. routine\_column\_usage

The view `routine_column_usage` identifies all columns that are used by a function or procedure, either in the SQL body or in parameter default expressions. (This only works for unquoted SQL bodies, not quoted bodies or functions in other languages.) A column is only included if its table is owned by a currently enabled role.

**Table 37.38. routine\_column\_usage Columns**

Column Type	Description
specific_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database containing the function (always the current database)
specific_schema sql_identifier	Name of the schema containing the function
specific_name sql_identifier	The “specific name” of the function. See Section 37.45 for more information.
routine_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database containing the function (always the current database)
routine_schema sql_identifier	Name of the schema containing the function
routine_name sql_identifier	Name of the function (might be duplicated in case of overloading)
table_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database that contains the table that is used by the function (always the current database)
table_schema sql_identifier	Name of the schema that contains the table that is used by the function
table_name sql_identifier	Name of the table that is used by the function
column_name sql_identifier	Name of the column that is used by the function

## 37.41. routine\_privileges

The view `routine_privileges` identifies all privileges granted on functions to a currently enabled role or by a currently enabled role. There is one row for each combination of function, grantor, and grantee.

**Table 37.39. routine\_privileges Columns**

Column Type	Description
grantor sql_identifier	Name of the role that granted the privilege
grantee sql_identifier	Name of the role that the privilege was granted to
specific_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database containing the function (always the current database)
specific_schema sql_identifier	Name of the schema containing the function
specific_name sql_identifier	The “specific name” of the function. See Section 37.45 for more information.
routine_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database containing the function (always the current database)
routine_schema sql_identifier	Name of the schema containing the function
routine_name sql_identifier	Name of the function (might be duplicated in case of overloading)
privilege_type character_data	Always EXECUTE (the only privilege type for functions)
is_grantable yes_or_no	YES if the privilege is grantable, NO if not

## 37.42. routine\_routine\_usage

The view `routine_routine_usage` identifies all functions or procedures that are used by another (or the same) function or procedure, either in the SQL body or in parameter default expressions. (This only works for unquoted SQL bodies, not quoted bodies or functions in other languages.) An entry is included here only if the used function is owned by a currently enabled role. (There is no such restriction on the using function.)

Note that the entries for both functions in the view refer to the “specific” name of the routine, even though the column names are used in a way that is inconsistent with other information schema views about routines. This is per SQL standard, although it is arguably a misdesign. See Section 37.45 for more information about specific names.

**Table 37.40. routine\_routine\_usage Columns**

Column Type	Description
specific_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database containing the using function (always the current database)
specific_schema sql_identifier	Name of the schema containing the using function
specific_name sql_identifier	The “specific name” of the using function.
routine_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database that contains the function that is used by the first function (always the current database)
routine_schema sql_identifier	

Column Type	Description
	Name of the schema that contains the function that is used by the first function
<code>routine_name sql_identifier</code>	The “specific name” of the function that is used by the first function.

## 37.43. routine\_sequence\_usage

The view `routine_sequence_usage` identifies all sequences that are used by a function or procedure, either in the SQL body or in parameter default expressions. (This only works for unquoted SQL bodies, not quoted bodies or functions in other languages.) A sequence is only included if that sequence is owned by a currently enabled role.

**Table 37.41. routine\_sequence\_usage Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>specific_catalog sql_identifier</code>	Name of the database containing the function (always the current database)
<code>specific_schema sql_identifier</code>	Name of the schema containing the function
<code>specific_name sql_identifier</code>	The “specific name” of the function. See Section 37.45 for more information.
<code>routine_catalog sql_identifier</code>	Name of the database containing the function (always the current database)
<code>routine_schema sql_identifier</code>	Name of the schema containing the function
<code>routine_name sql_identifier</code>	Name of the function (might be duplicated in case of overloading)
<code>schema_catalog sql_identifier</code>	Name of the database that contains the sequence that is used by the function (always the current database)
<code>sequence_schema sql_identifier</code>	Name of the schema that contains the sequence that is used by the function
<code>sequence_name sql_identifier</code>	Name of the sequence that is used by the function

## 37.44. routine\_table\_usage

The view `routine_table_usage` is meant to identify all tables that are used by a function or procedure. This information is currently not tracked by PostgreSQL.

**Table 37.42. routine\_table\_usage Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>specific_catalog sql_identifier</code>	Name of the database containing the function (always the current database)
<code>specific_schema sql_identifier</code>	Name of the schema containing the function
<code>specific_name sql_identifier</code>	The “specific name” of the function. See Section 37.45 for more information.

Column Type	Description
<code>routine_catalog sql_identifier</code>	Name of the database containing the function (always the current database)
<code>routine_schema sql_identifier</code>	Name of the schema containing the function
<code>routine_name sql_identifier</code>	Name of the function (might be duplicated in case of overloading)
<code>table_catalog sql_identifier</code>	Name of the database that contains the table that is used by the function (always the current database)
<code>table_schema sql_identifier</code>	Name of the schema that contains the table that is used by the function
<code>table_name sql_identifier</code>	Name of the table that is used by the function

## 37.45. routines

The view `routines` contains all functions and procedures in the current database. Only those functions and procedures are shown that the current user has access to (by way of being the owner or having some privilege).

**Table 37.43. routines Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>specific_catalog sql_identifier</code>	Name of the database containing the function (always the current database)
<code>specific_schema sql_identifier</code>	Name of the schema containing the function
<code>specific_name sql_identifier</code>	The “specific name” of the function. This is a name that uniquely identifies the function in the schema, even if the real name of the function is overloaded. The format of the specific name is not defined, it should only be used to compare it to other instances of specific routine names.
<code>routine_catalog sql_identifier</code>	Name of the database containing the function (always the current database)
<code>routine_schema sql_identifier</code>	Name of the schema containing the function
<code>routine_name sql_identifier</code>	Name of the function (might be duplicated in case of overloading)
<code>routine_type character_data</code>	FUNCTION for a function, PROCEDURE for a procedure
<code>module_catalog sql_identifier</code>	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
<code>module_schema sql_identifier</code>	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
<code>module_name sql_identifier</code>	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
<code>udt_catalog sql_identifier</code>	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL

<b>Column Type</b>	<b>Description</b>
<code>udt_schema sql_identifier</code>	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
<code>udt_name sql_identifier</code>	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
<code>data_type character_data</code>	Return data type of the function, if it is a built-in type, or ARRAY if it is some array (in that case, see the view <code>element_types</code> ), else USER-DEFINED (in that case, the type is identified in <code>type_udt_name</code> and associated columns). Null for a procedure.
<code>character_maximum_length cardinal_number</code>	Always null, since this information is not applied to return data types in PostgreSQL
<code>character_octet_length cardinal_number</code>	Always null, since this information is not applied to return data types in PostgreSQL
<code>character_set_catalog sql_identifier</code>	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
<code>character_set_schema sql_identifier</code>	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
<code>character_set_name sql_identifier</code>	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
<code>collation_catalog sql_identifier</code>	Always null, since this information is not applied to return data types in PostgreSQL
<code>collation_schema sql_identifier</code>	Always null, since this information is not applied to return data types in PostgreSQL
<code>collation_name sql_identifier</code>	Always null, since this information is not applied to return data types in PostgreSQL
<code>numeric_precision cardinal_number</code>	Always null, since this information is not applied to return data types in PostgreSQL
<code>numeric_precision_radix cardinal_number</code>	Always null, since this information is not applied to return data types in PostgreSQL
<code>numeric_scale cardinal_number</code>	Always null, since this information is not applied to return data types in PostgreSQL
<code>datetime_precision cardinal_number</code>	Always null, since this information is not applied to return data types in PostgreSQL
<code>interval_type character_data</code>	Always null, since this information is not applied to return data types in PostgreSQL
<code>interval_precision cardinal_number</code>	Always null, since this information is not applied to return data types in PostgreSQL
<code>type_udt_catalog sql_identifier</code>	Name of the database that the return data type of the function is defined in (always the current database). Null for a procedure.
<code>type_udt_schema sql_identifier</code>	Name of the schema that the return data type of the function is defined in. Null for a procedure.
<code>type_udt_name sql_identifier</code>	Name of the return data type of the function. Null for a procedure.
<code>scope_catalog sql_identifier</code>	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
<code>scope_schema sql_identifier</code>	

Column Type	Description
	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
scope_name sql_identifier	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
maximum_cardinality cardinal_number	Always null, because arrays always have unlimited maximum cardinality in PostgreSQL
dtd_identifier sql_identifier	An identifier of the data type descriptor of the return data type of this function, unique among the data type descriptors pertaining to the function. This is mainly useful for joining with other instances of such identifiers. (The specific format of the identifier is not defined and not guaranteed to remain the same in future versions.)
routine_body character_data	If the function is an SQL function, then SQL, else EXTERNAL.
routine_definition character_data	The source text of the function (null if the function is not owned by a currently enabled role). (According to the SQL standard, this column is only applicable if routine_body is SQL, but in PostgreSQL it will contain whatever source text was specified when the function was created.)
external_name character_data	If this function is a C function, then the external name (link symbol) of the function; else null. (This works out to be the same value that is shown in routine_definition.)
external_language character_data	The language the function is written in
parameter_style character_data	Always GENERAL (The SQL standard defines other parameter styles, which are not available in PostgreSQL.)
is_deterministic yes_or_no	If the function is declared immutable (called deterministic in the SQL standard), then YES, else NO. (You cannot query the other volatility levels available in PostgreSQL through the information schema.)
sql_data_access character_data	Always MODIFIES, meaning that the function possibly modifies SQL data. This information is not useful for PostgreSQL.
is_null_call yes_or_no	If the function automatically returns null if any of its arguments are null, then YES, else NO. Null for a procedure.
sql_path character_data	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
schema_level_routine yes_or_no	Always YES (The opposite would be a method of a user-defined type, which is a feature not available in PostgreSQL.)
max_dynamic_result_sets cardinal_number	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
is_user_defined_cast yes_or_no	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
is_implicitly_invocable yes_or_no	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
security_type character_data	If the function runs with the privileges of the current user, then INVOKER, if the function runs with the privileges of the user who defined it, then DEFINER.



<b>Column Type</b>	<b>Description</b>
to_sql_specific_catalog sql_identifier	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
to_sql_specific_schema sql_identifier	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
to_sql_specific_name sql_identifier	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
as_locator yes_or_no	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
created time_stamp	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
last_altered time_stamp	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
new_savepoint_level yes_or_no	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
is_udt_dependent yes_or_no	Currently always NO. The alternative YES applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL.
result_cast_from_data_type character_data	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
result_cast_as_locator yes_or_no	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
result_cast_char_max_length cardinal_number	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
result_cast_char_octet_length cardinal_number	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
result_cast_char_set_catalog sql_identifier	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
result_cast_char_set_schema sql_identifier	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
result_cast_char_set_name sql_identifier	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
result_cast_collation_catalog sql_identifier	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
result_cast_collation_schema sql_identifier	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
result_cast_collation_name sql_identifier	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
result_cast_numeric_precision cardinal_number	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
result_cast_numeric_precision_radix cardinal_number	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
result_cast_numeric_scale cardinal_number	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
result_cast_datetime_precision cardinal_number	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
result_cast_interval_type character_data	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL

Column Type	Description
result_cast_interval_precision cardinal_number	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
result_cast_type_udt_catalog sql_identifier	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
result_cast_type_udt_schema sql_identifier	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
result_cast_type_udt_name sql_identifier	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
result_cast_scope_catalog sql_identifier	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
result_cast_scope_schema sql_identifier	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
result_cast_scope_name sql_identifier	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
result_cast_maximum_cardinality cardinal_number	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
result_cast_dtd_identifier sql_identifier	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL

## 37.46. schemata

The view `schemata` contains all schemas in the current database that the current user has access to (by way of being the owner or having some privilege).

**Table 37.44. `schemata` Columns**

Column Type	Description
catalog_name sql_identifier	Name of the database that the schema is contained in (always the current database)
schema_name sql_identifier	Name of the schema
schema_owner sql_identifier	Name of the owner of the schema
default_character_set_catalog sql_identifier	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
default_character_set_schema sql_identifier	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
default_character_set_name sql_identifier	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
sql_path character_data	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL

## 37.47. sequences

The view `sequences` contains all sequences defined in the current database. Only those sequences are shown that the current user has access to (by way of being the owner or having some privilege).

**Table 37.45. sequences Columns**

Column Type	Description
sequence_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database that contains the sequence (always the current database)
sequence_schema sql_identifier	Name of the schema that contains the sequence
sequence_name sql_identifier	Name of the sequence
data_type character_data	The data type of the sequence.
numeric_precision cardinal_number	This column contains the (declared or implicit) precision of the sequence data type (see above). The precision indicates the number of significant digits. It can be expressed in decimal (base 10) or binary (base 2) terms, as specified in the column numeric_precision_radix.
numeric_precision_radix cardinal_number	This column indicates in which base the values in the columns numeric_precision and numeric_scale are expressed. The value is either 2 or 10.
numeric_scale cardinal_number	This column contains the (declared or implicit) scale of the sequence data type (see above). The scale indicates the number of significant digits to the right of the decimal point. It can be expressed in decimal (base 10) or binary (base 2) terms, as specified in the column numeric_precision_radix.
start_value character_data	The start value of the sequence
minimum_value character_data	The minimum value of the sequence
maximum_value character_data	The maximum value of the sequence
increment character_data	The increment of the sequence
cycle_option yes_or_no	YES if the sequence cycles, else NO

Note that in accordance with the SQL standard, the start, minimum, maximum, and increment values are returned as character strings.

## 37.48. sql\_features

The table `sql_features` contains information about which formal features defined in the SQL standard are supported by PostgreSQL. This is the same information that is presented in Appendix D. There you can also find some additional background information.

**Table 37.46. sql\_features Columns**

Column Type	Description
feature_id character_data	Identifier string of the feature
feature_name character_data	

Column Type	Description
	Descriptive name of the feature
sub_feature_id character_data	Identifier string of the subfeature, or a zero-length string if not a subfeature
sub_feature_name character_data	Descriptive name of the subfeature, or a zero-length string if not a subfeature
is_supported yes_or_no	YES if the feature is fully supported by the current version of PostgreSQL, NO if not
is_verified_by character_data	Always null, since the PostgreSQL development group does not perform formal testing of feature conformance
comments character_data	Possibly a comment about the supported status of the feature

## 37.49. sql\_implementation\_info

The table `sql_implementation_info` contains information about various aspects that are left implementation-defined by the SQL standard. This information is primarily intended for use in the context of the ODBC interface; users of other interfaces will probably find this information to be of little use. For this reason, the individual implementation information items are not described here; you will find them in the description of the ODBC interface.

**Table 37.47. sql\_implementation\_info Columns**

Column Type	Description
implementation_info_id character_data	Identifier string of the implementation information item
implementation_info_name character_data	Descriptive name of the implementation information item
integer_value cardinal_number	Value of the implementation information item, or null if the value is contained in the column <code>character_value</code>
character_value character_data	Value of the implementation information item, or null if the value is contained in the column <code>integer_value</code>
comments character_data	Possibly a comment pertaining to the implementation information item

## 37.50. sql\_parts

The table `sql_parts` contains information about which of the several parts of the SQL standard are supported by PostgreSQL.

**Table 37.48. sql\_parts Columns**

Column Type	Description
feature_id character_data	An identifier string containing the number of the part
feature_name character_data	

Column Type	Description
	Descriptive name of the part
is_supported yes_or_no	YES if the part is fully supported by the current version of PostgreSQL, NO if not
is_verified_by character_data	Always null, since the PostgreSQL development group does not perform formal testing of feature conformance
comments character_data	Possibly a comment about the supported status of the part

## 37.51. sql\_sizing

The table `sql_sizing` contains information about various size limits and maximum values in PostgreSQL. This information is primarily intended for use in the context of the ODBC interface; users of other interfaces will probably find this information to be of little use. For this reason, the individual sizing items are not described here; you will find them in the description of the ODBC interface.

**Table 37.49. sql\_sizing Columns**

Column Type	Description
sizing_id cardinal_number	Identifier of the sizing item
sizing_name character_data	Descriptive name of the sizing item
supported_value cardinal_number	Value of the sizing item, or 0 if the size is unlimited or cannot be determined, or null if the features for which the sizing item is applicable are not supported
comments character_data	Possibly a comment pertaining to the sizing item

## 37.52. table\_constraints

The view `table_constraints` contains all constraints belonging to tables that the current user owns or has some privilege other than `SELECT` on.

**Table 37.50. table\_constraints Columns**

Column Type	Description
constraint_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database that contains the constraint (always the current database)
constraint_schema sql_identifier	Name of the schema that contains the constraint
constraint_name sql_identifier	Name of the constraint
table_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database that contains the table (always the current database)
table_schema sql_identifier	Name of the schema that contains the table

Column Type	Description
table_name sql_identifier	Name of the table
constraint_type character_data	Type of the constraint: CHECK, FOREIGN KEY, PRIMARY KEY, or UNIQUE
is_deferrable yes_or_no	YES if the constraint is deferrable, NO if not
initially_deferred yes_or_no	YES if the constraint is deferrable and initially deferred, NO if not
enforced yes_or_no	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL (currently always YES)
nulls_distinct yes_or_no	If the constraint is a unique constraint, then YES if the constraint treats nulls as distinct or NO if it treats nulls as not distinct, otherwise null for other types of constraints.

## 37.53. table\_privileges

The view `table_privileges` identifies all privileges granted on tables or views to a currently enabled role or by a currently enabled role. There is one row for each combination of table, grantor, and grantee.

**Table 37.51. table\_privileges Columns**

Column Type	Description
grantor sql_identifier	Name of the role that granted the privilege
grantee sql_identifier	Name of the role that the privilege was granted to
table_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database that contains the table (always the current database)
table_schema sql_identifier	Name of the schema that contains the table
table_name sql_identifier	Name of the table
privilege_type character_data	Type of the privilege: SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, TRUNCATE, REFERENCES, or TRIGGER
is_grantable yes_or_no	YES if the privilege is grantable, NO if not
with_hierarchy yes_or_no	In the SQL standard, WITH HIERARCHY OPTION is a separate (sub-)privilege allowing certain operations on table inheritance hierarchies. In PostgreSQL, this is included in the SELECT privilege, so this column shows YES if the privilege is SELECT, else NO.

## 37.54. tables

The view `tables` contains all tables and views defined in the current database. Only those tables and views are shown that the current user has access to (by way of being the owner or having some privilege).

**Table 37.52. tables Columns**

Column Type	Description
table_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database that contains the table (always the current database)
table_schema sql_identifier	Name of the schema that contains the table
table_name sql_identifier	Name of the table
table_type character_data	Type of the table: <code>BASE TABLE</code> for a persistent base table (the normal table type), <code>VIEW</code> for a view, <code>FOREIGN</code> for a foreign table, or <code>LOCAL TEMPORARY</code> for a temporary table
self_referencing_column_name sql_identifier	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
reference_generation character_data	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
user_defined_type_catalog sql_identifier	If the table is a typed table, the name of the database that contains the underlying data type (always the current database), else null.
user_defined_type_schema sql_identifier	If the table is a typed table, the name of the schema that contains the underlying data type, else null.
user_defined_type_name sql_identifier	If the table is a typed table, the name of the underlying data type, else null.
is_insertable_into yes_or_no	YES if the table is insertable into, NO if not (Base tables are always insertable into, views not necessarily.)
is_typed yes_or_no	YES if the table is a typed table, NO if not
commit_action character_data	Not yet implemented

## 37.55. transforms

The view `transforms` contains information about the transforms defined in the current database. More precisely, it contains a row for each function contained in a transform (the “from SQL” or “to SQL” function).

**Table 37.53. transforms Columns**

Column Type	Description
udt_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database that contains the type the transform is for (always the current database)
udt_schema sql_identifier	Name of the schema that contains the type the transform is for
udt_name sql_identifier	Name of the type the transform is for
specific_catalog sql_identifier	

Column Type	Description
	Name of the database containing the function (always the current database)
<code>specific_schema sql_identifier</code>	Name of the schema containing the function
<code>specific_name sql_identifier</code>	The “specific name” of the function. See Section 37.45 for more information.
<code>group_name sql_identifier</code>	The SQL standard allows defining transforms in “groups”, and selecting a group at run time. PostgreSQL does not support this. Instead, transforms are specific to a language. As a compromise, this field contains the language the transform is for.
<code>transform_type character_data</code>	FROM SQL or TO SQL

## 37.56. `triggered_update_columns`

For triggers in the current database that specify a column list (like `UPDATE OF column1, column2`), the view `triggered_update_columns` identifies these columns. Triggers that do not specify a column list are not included in this view. Only those columns are shown that the current user owns or has some privilege other than `SELECT` on.

**Table 37.54. `triggered_update_columns` Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>trigger_catalog sql_identifier</code>	Name of the database that contains the trigger (always the current database)
<code>trigger_schema sql_identifier</code>	Name of the schema that contains the trigger
<code>trigger_name sql_identifier</code>	Name of the trigger
<code>event_object_catalog sql_identifier</code>	Name of the database that contains the table that the trigger is defined on (always the current database)
<code>event_object_schema sql_identifier</code>	Name of the schema that contains the table that the trigger is defined on
<code>event_object_table sql_identifier</code>	Name of the table that the trigger is defined on
<code>event_object_column sql_identifier</code>	Name of the column that the trigger is defined on

## 37.57. `triggers`

The view `triggers` contains all triggers defined in the current database on tables and views that the current user owns or has some privilege other than `SELECT` on.

**Table 37.55. `triggers` Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>trigger_catalog sql_identifier</code>	Name of the database that contains the trigger (always the current database)



Column Type	Description
<code>trigger_schema sql_identifier</code>	Name of the schema that contains the trigger
<code>trigger_name sql_identifier</code>	Name of the trigger
<code>event_manipulation character_data</code>	Event that fires the trigger (INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE)
<code>event_object_catalog sql_identifier</code>	Name of the database that contains the table that the trigger is defined on (always the current database)
<code>event_object_schema sql_identifier</code>	Name of the schema that contains the table that the trigger is defined on
<code>event_object_table sql_identifier</code>	Name of the table that the trigger is defined on
<code>action_order cardinal_number</code>	Firing order among triggers on the same table having the same event_manipulation, action_timing, and action_orientation. In PostgreSQL, triggers are fired in name order, so this column reflects that.
<code>action_condition character_data</code>	WHEN condition of the trigger, null if none (also null if the table is not owned by a currently enabled role)
<code>action_statement character_data</code>	Statement that is executed by the trigger (currently always EXECUTE FUNCTION <i>function(...)</i> )
<code>action_orientation character_data</code>	Identifies whether the trigger fires once for each processed row or once for each statement (ROW or STATEMENT)
<code>action_timing character_data</code>	Time at which the trigger fires (BEFORE, AFTER, or INSTEAD OF)
<code>action_reference_old_table sql_identifier</code>	Name of the “old” transition table, or null if none
<code>action_reference_new_table sql_identifier</code>	Name of the “new” transition table, or null if none
<code>action_reference_old_row sql_identifier</code>	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
<code>action_reference_new_row sql_identifier</code>	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
<code>created time_stamp</code>	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL

Triggers in PostgreSQL have two incompatibilities with the SQL standard that affect the representation in the information schema. First, trigger names are local to each table in PostgreSQL, rather than being independent schema objects. Therefore there can be duplicate trigger names defined in one schema, so long as they belong to different tables. (`trigger_catalog` and `trigger_schema` are really the values pertaining to the table that the trigger is defined on.) Second, triggers can be defined to fire on multiple events in PostgreSQL (e.g., ON INSERT OR UPDATE), whereas the SQL standard only allows one. If a trigger is defined to fire on multiple events, it is represented as multiple rows in the information schema, one for each type of event. As a consequence of these two issues, the primary key of the view `triggers` is really (`trigger_catalog`, `trigger_schema`, `event_object_table`, `trigger_name`, `event_manipulation`) instead of (`trigger_catalog`, `trigger_schema`, `trigger_name`), which is what the SQL standard specifies. Nonetheless,

if you define your triggers in a manner that conforms with the SQL standard (trigger names unique in the schema and only one event type per trigger), this will not affect you.

### Note

Prior to PostgreSQL 9.1, this view's columns `action_timing`, `action_reference_old_table`, `action_reference_new_table`, `action_reference_old_row`, and `action_reference_new_row` were named `condition_timing`, `condition_reference_old_table`, `condition_reference_new_table`, `condition_reference_old_row`, and `condition_reference_new_row` respectively. That was how they were named in the SQL:1999 standard. The new naming conforms to SQL:2003 and later.

## 37.58. `udt_privileges`

The view `udt_privileges` identifies `USAGE` privileges granted on user-defined types to a currently enabled role or by a currently enabled role. There is one row for each combination of type, grantor, and grantee. This view shows only composite types (see under Section 37.60 for why); see Section 37.59 for domain privileges.

**Table 37.56. `udt_privileges` Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>grantor sql_identifier</code>	Name of the role that granted the privilege
<code>grantee sql_identifier</code>	Name of the role that the privilege was granted to
<code>udt_catalog sql_identifier</code>	Name of the database containing the type (always the current database)
<code>udt_schema sql_identifier</code>	Name of the schema containing the type
<code>udt_name sql_identifier</code>	Name of the type
<code>privilege_type character_data</code>	Always <code>TYPE USAGE</code>
<code>is_grantable yes_or_no</code>	<code>YES</code> if the privilege is grantable, <code>NO</code> if not

## 37.59. `usage_privileges`

The view `usage_privileges` identifies `USAGE` privileges granted on various kinds of objects to a currently enabled role or by a currently enabled role. In PostgreSQL, this currently applies to collations, domains, foreign-data wrappers, foreign servers, and sequences. There is one row for each combination of object, grantor, and grantee.

Since collations do not have real privileges in PostgreSQL, this view shows implicit non-grantable `USAGE` privileges granted by the owner to `PUBLIC` for all collations. The other object types, however, show real privileges.

In PostgreSQL, sequences also support `SELECT` and `UPDATE` privileges in addition to the `USAGE` privilege. These are nonstandard and therefore not visible in the information schema.

**Table 37.57. usage\_privileges Columns**

Column Type	Description
grantor sql_identifier	Name of the role that granted the privilege
grantee sql_identifier	Name of the role that the privilege was granted to
object_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database containing the object (always the current database)
object_schema sql_identifier	Name of the schema containing the object, if applicable, else an empty string
object_name sql_identifier	Name of the object
object_type character_data	COLLATION or DOMAIN or FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER or FOREIGN SERVER or SEQUENCE
privilege_type character_data	Always USAGE
is_grantable yes_or_no	YES if the privilege is grantable, NO if not

## 37.60. user\_defined\_types

The view `user_defined_types` currently contains all composite types defined in the current database. Only those types are shown that the current user has access to (by way of being the owner or having some privilege).

SQL knows about two kinds of user-defined types: structured types (also known as composite types in PostgreSQL) and distinct types (not implemented in PostgreSQL). To be future-proof, use the column `user_defined_type_category` to differentiate between these. Other user-defined types such as base types and enums, which are PostgreSQL extensions, are not shown here. For domains, see Section 37.23 instead.

**Table 37.58. user\_defined\_types Columns**

Column Type	Description
user_defined_type_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database that contains the type (always the current database)
user_defined_type_schema sql_identifier	Name of the schema that contains the type
user_defined_type_name sql_identifier	Name of the type
user_defined_type_category character_data	Currently always STRUCTURED
is_instantiable yes_or_no	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
is_final yes_or_no	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
ordering_form character_data	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL

<b>Column Type</b>	<b>Description</b>
ordering_category character_data	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
ordering_routine_catalog sql_identifier	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
ordering_routine_schema sql_identifier	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
ordering_routine_name sql_identifier	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
reference_type character_data	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
data_type character_data	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
character_maximum_length cardinal_number	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
character_octet_length cardinal_number	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
character_set_catalog sql_identifier	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
character_set_schema sql_identifier	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
character_set_name sql_identifier	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
collation_catalog sql_identifier	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
collation_schema sql_identifier	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
collation_name sql_identifier	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
numeric_precision cardinal_number	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
numeric_precision_radix cardinal_number	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
numeric_scale cardinal_number	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
datetime_precision cardinal_number	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
interval_type character_data	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
interval_precision cardinal_number	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
source_dtd_identifier sql_identifier	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL
ref_dtd_identifier sql_identifier	Applies to a feature not available in PostgreSQL

## 37.61. user\_mapping\_options

The view `user_mapping_options` contains all the options defined for user mappings in the current database. Only those user mappings are shown where the current user has access to the corresponding foreign server (by way of being the owner or having some privilege).

**Table 37.59. user\_mapping\_options Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>authorization_identifier sql_identifier</code>	Name of the user being mapped, or <code>PUBLIC</code> if the mapping is public
<code>foreign_server_catalog sql_identifier</code>	Name of the database that the foreign server used by this mapping is defined in (always the current database)
<code>foreign_server_name sql_identifier</code>	Name of the foreign server used by this mapping
<code>option_name sql_identifier</code>	Name of an option
<code>option_value character_data</code>	Value of the option. This column will show as null unless the current user is the user being mapped, or the mapping is for <code>PUBLIC</code> and the current user is the server owner, or the current user is a superuser. The intent is to protect password information stored as user mapping option.

## 37.62. user\_mappings

The view `user_mappings` contains all user mappings defined in the current database. Only those user mappings are shown where the current user has access to the corresponding foreign server (by way of being the owner or having some privilege).

**Table 37.60. user\_mappings Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>authorization_identifier sql_identifier</code>	Name of the user being mapped, or <code>PUBLIC</code> if the mapping is public
<code>foreign_server_catalog sql_identifier</code>	Name of the database that the foreign server used by this mapping is defined in (always the current database)
<code>foreign_server_name sql_identifier</code>	Name of the foreign server used by this mapping

## 37.63. view\_column\_usage

The view `view_column_usage` identifies all columns that are used in the query expression of a view (the `SELECT` statement that defines the view). A column is only included if the table that contains the column is owned by a currently enabled role.

### Note

Columns of system tables are not included. This should be fixed sometime.

**Table 37.61. view\_column\_usage Columns**

Column Type	Description
view_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database that contains the view (always the current database)
view_schema sql_identifier	Name of the schema that contains the view
view_name sql_identifier	Name of the view
table_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database that contains the table that contains the column that is used by the view (always the current database)
table_schema sql_identifier	Name of the schema that contains the table that contains the column that is used by the view
table_name sql_identifier	Name of the table that contains the column that is used by the view
column_name sql_identifier	Name of the column that is used by the view

## 37.64. view\_routine\_usage

The view `view_routine_usage` identifies all routines (functions and procedures) that are used in the query expression of a view (the `SELECT` statement that defines the view). A routine is only included if that routine is owned by a currently enabled role.

**Table 37.62. view\_routine\_usage Columns**

Column Type	Description
table_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database containing the view (always the current database)
table_schema sql_identifier	Name of the schema containing the view
table_name sql_identifier	Name of the view
specific_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database containing the function (always the current database)
specific_schema sql_identifier	Name of the schema containing the function
specific_name sql_identifier	The “specific name” of the function. See Section 37.45 for more information.

## 37.65. view\_table\_usage

The view `view_table_usage` identifies all tables that are used in the query expression of a view (the `SELECT` statement that defines the view). A table is only included if that table is owned by a currently enabled role.

**Note**

System tables are not included. This should be fixed sometime.

**Table 37.63. view\_table\_usage Columns**

Column Type	Description
view_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database that contains the view (always the current database)
view_schema sql_identifier	Name of the schema that contains the view
view_name sql_identifier	Name of the view
table_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database that contains the table that is used by the view (always the current database)
table_schema sql_identifier	Name of the schema that contains the table that is used by the view
table_name sql_identifier	Name of the table that is used by the view

## 37.66. views

The view `views` contains all views defined in the current database. Only those views are shown that the current user has access to (by way of being the owner or having some privilege).

**Table 37.64. views Columns**

Column Type	Description
table_catalog sql_identifier	Name of the database that contains the view (always the current database)
table_schema sql_identifier	Name of the schema that contains the view
table_name sql_identifier	Name of the view
view_definition character_data	Query expression defining the view (null if the view is not owned by a currently enabled role)
check_option character_data	CASCADED or LOCAL if the view has a CHECK OPTION defined on it, NONE if not
is_updatable yes_or_no	YES if the view is updatable (allows UPDATE and DELETE), NO if not
is_insertable_into yes_or_no	YES if the view is insertable into (allows INSERT), NO if not
is_trigger_updatable yes_or_no	YES if the view has an INSTEAD OF UPDATE trigger defined on it, NO if not
is_trigger_deletable yes_or_no	

Column Type	Description
	YES if the view has an INSTEAD OF DELETE trigger defined on it, NO if not
is_trigger_insertable_into yes_or_no	YES if the view has an INSTEAD OF INSERT trigger defined on it, NO if not



---

# Part V. Server Programming

This part is about extending the server functionality with user-defined functions, data types, triggers, etc. These are advanced topics which should probably be approached only after all the other user documentation about PostgreSQL has been understood. Later chapters in this part describe the server-side programming languages available in the PostgreSQL distribution as well as general issues concerning server-side programming languages. It is essential to read at least the earlier sections of Chapter 38 (covering functions) before diving into the material about server-side programming languages.

---

## Table of Contents

38. Extending SQL .....	1171
38.1. How Extensibility Works .....	1171
38.2. The PostgreSQL Type System .....	1171
38.2.1. Base Types .....	1171
38.2.2. Container Types .....	1171
38.2.3. Domains .....	1172
38.2.4. Pseudo-Types .....	1172
38.2.5. Polymorphic Types .....	1172
38.3. User-Defined Functions .....	1174
38.4. User-Defined Procedures .....	1175
38.5. Query Language (SQL) Functions .....	1175
38.5.1. Arguments for SQL Functions .....	1176
38.5.2. SQL Functions on Base Types .....	1177
38.5.3. SQL Functions on Composite Types .....	1179
38.5.4. SQL Functions with Output Parameters .....	1181
38.5.5. SQL Procedures with Output Parameters .....	1182
38.5.6. SQL Functions with Variable Numbers of Arguments .....	1183
38.5.7. SQL Functions with Default Values for Arguments .....	1184
38.5.8. SQL Functions as Table Sources .....	1185
38.5.9. SQL Functions Returning Sets .....	1185
38.5.10. SQL Functions Returning TABLE .....	1189
38.5.11. Polymorphic SQL Functions .....	1189
38.5.12. SQL Functions with Collations .....	1191
38.6. Function Overloading .....	1192
38.7. Function Volatility Categories .....	1193
38.8. Procedural Language Functions .....	1194
38.9. Internal Functions .....	1194
38.10. C-Language Functions .....	1195
38.10.1. Dynamic Loading .....	1195
38.10.2. Base Types in C-Language Functions .....	1196
38.10.3. Version 1 Calling Conventions .....	1199
38.10.4. Writing Code .....	1202
38.10.5. Compiling and Linking Dynamically-Loaded Functions .....	1203
38.10.6. Composite-Type Arguments .....	1204
38.10.7. Returning Rows (Composite Types) .....	1205
38.10.8. Returning Sets .....	1207
38.10.9. Polymorphic Arguments and Return Types .....	1213
38.10.10. Shared Memory and LWLocks .....	1214
38.10.11. Using C++ for Extensibility .....	1215
38.11. Function Optimization Information .....	1215
38.12. User-Defined Aggregates .....	1217
38.12.1. Moving-Aggregate Mode .....	1218
38.12.2. Polymorphic and Variadic Aggregates .....	1219
38.12.3. Ordered-Set Aggregates .....	1221
38.12.4. Partial Aggregation .....	1222
38.12.5. Support Functions for Aggregates .....	1223
38.13. User-Defined Types .....	1224
38.13.1. TOAST Considerations .....	1227
38.14. User-Defined Operators .....	1228
38.15. Operator Optimization Information .....	1229
38.15.1. COMMUTATOR .....	1229
38.15.2. NEGATOR .....	1230
38.15.3. RESTRICT .....	1230
38.15.4. JOIN .....	1231
38.15.5. HASHES .....	1231

38.15.6. MERGES .....	1232
38.16. Interfacing Extensions to Indexes .....	1233
38.16.1. Index Methods and Operator Classes .....	1233
38.16.2. Index Method Strategies .....	1233
38.16.3. Index Method Support Routines .....	1235
38.16.4. An Example .....	1238
38.16.5. Operator Classes and Operator Families .....	1240
38.16.6. System Dependencies on Operator Classes .....	1243
38.16.7. Ordering Operators .....	1244
38.16.8. Special Features of Operator Classes .....	1245
38.17. Packaging Related Objects into an Extension .....	1246
38.17.1. Extension Files .....	1247
38.17.2. Extension Relocatability .....	1249
38.17.3. Extension Configuration Tables .....	1250
38.17.4. Extension Updates .....	1251
38.17.5. Installing Extensions Using Update Scripts .....	1252
38.17.6. Security Considerations for Extensions .....	1252
38.17.7. Extension Example .....	1253
38.18. Extension Building Infrastructure .....	1254
39. Triggers .....	1259
39.1. Overview of Trigger Behavior .....	1259
39.2. Visibility of Data Changes .....	1262
39.3. Writing Trigger Functions in C .....	1262
39.4. A Complete Trigger Example .....	1265
40. Event Triggers .....	1269
40.1. Overview of Event Trigger Behavior .....	1269
40.2. Event Trigger Firing Matrix .....	1270
40.3. Writing Event Trigger Functions in C .....	1273
40.4. A Complete Event Trigger Example .....	1274
40.5. A Table Rewrite Event Trigger Example .....	1275
41. The Rule System .....	1277
41.1. The Query Tree .....	1277
41.2. Views and the Rule System .....	1279
41.2.1. How SELECT Rules Work .....	1279
41.2.2. View Rules in Non-SELECT Statements .....	1283
41.2.3. The Power of Views in PostgreSQL .....	1284
41.2.4. Updating a View .....	1285
41.3. Materialized Views .....	1285
41.4. Rules on INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE .....	1288
41.4.1. How Update Rules Work .....	1289
41.4.2. Cooperation with Views .....	1293
41.5. Rules and Privileges .....	1299
41.6. Rules and Command Status .....	1301
41.7. Rules Versus Triggers .....	1301
42. Procedural Languages .....	1304
42.1. Installing Procedural Languages .....	1304
43. PL/pgSQL — SQL Procedural Language .....	1307
43.1. Overview .....	1307
43.1.1. Advantages of Using PL/pgSQL .....	1307
43.1.2. Supported Argument and Result Data Types .....	1307
43.2. Structure of PL/pgSQL .....	1308
43.3. Declarations .....	1310
43.3.1. Declaring Function Parameters .....	1310
43.3.2. ALIAS .....	1314
43.3.3. Copying Types .....	1314
43.3.4. Row Types .....	1314
43.3.5. Record Types .....	1315
43.3.6. Collation of PL/pgSQL Variables .....	1315

43.4. Expressions .....	1316
43.5. Basic Statements .....	1317
43.5.1. Assignment .....	1317
43.5.2. Executing SQL Commands .....	1318
43.5.3. Executing a Command with a Single-Row Result .....	1319
43.5.4. Executing Dynamic Commands .....	1320
43.5.5. Obtaining the Result Status .....	1324
43.5.6. Doing Nothing At All .....	1325
43.6. Control Structures .....	1325
43.6.1. Returning from a Function .....	1325
43.6.2. Returning from a Procedure .....	1328
43.6.3. Calling a Procedure .....	1328
43.6.4. Conditionals .....	1328
43.6.5. Simple Loops .....	1331
43.6.6. Looping through Query Results .....	1334
43.6.7. Looping through Arrays .....	1335
43.6.8. Trapping Errors .....	1336
43.6.9. Obtaining Execution Location Information .....	1339
43.7. Cursors .....	1340
43.7.1. Declaring Cursor Variables .....	1340
43.7.2. Opening Cursors .....	1341
43.7.3. Using Cursors .....	1342
43.7.4. Looping through a Cursor's Result .....	1345
43.8. Transaction Management .....	1346
43.9. Errors and Messages .....	1347
43.9.1. Reporting Errors and Messages .....	1347
43.9.2. Checking Assertions .....	1349
43.10. Trigger Functions .....	1349
43.10.1. Triggers on Data Changes .....	1349
43.10.2. Triggers on Events .....	1357
43.11. PL/pgSQL under the Hood .....	1358
43.11.1. Variable Substitution .....	1358
43.11.2. Plan Caching .....	1360
43.12. Tips for Developing in PL/pgSQL .....	1361
43.12.1. Handling of Quotation Marks .....	1362
43.12.2. Additional Compile-Time and Run-Time Checks .....	1364
43.13. Porting from Oracle PL/SQL .....	1365
43.13.1. Porting Examples .....	1366
43.13.2. Other Things to Watch For .....	1371
43.13.3. Appendix .....	1372
44. PL/Tcl — Tcl Procedural Language .....	1375
44.1. Overview .....	1375
44.2. PL/Tcl Functions and Arguments .....	1375
44.3. Data Values in PL/Tcl .....	1377
44.4. Global Data in PL/Tcl .....	1377
44.5. Database Access from PL/Tcl .....	1378
44.6. Trigger Functions in PL/Tcl .....	1380
44.7. Event Trigger Functions in PL/Tcl .....	1382
44.8. Error Handling in PL/Tcl .....	1382
44.9. Explicit Subtransactions in PL/Tcl .....	1383
44.10. Transaction Management .....	1384
44.11. PL/Tcl Configuration .....	1385
44.12. Tcl Procedure Names .....	1385
45. PL/Perl — Perl Procedural Language .....	1386
45.1. PL/Perl Functions and Arguments .....	1386
45.2. Data Values in PL/Perl .....	1391
45.3. Built-in Functions .....	1391
45.3.1. Database Access from PL/Perl .....	1391

45.3.2. Utility Functions in PL/Perl .....	1395
45.4. Global Values in PL/Perl .....	1396
45.5. Trusted and Untrusted PL/Perl .....	1397
45.6. PL/Perl Triggers .....	1398
45.7. PL/Perl Event Triggers .....	1399
45.8. PL/Perl Under the Hood .....	1400
45.8.1. Configuration .....	1400
45.8.2. Limitations and Missing Features .....	1401
46. PL/Python — Python Procedural Language .....	1402
46.1. PL/Python Functions .....	1402
46.2. Data Values .....	1403
46.2.1. Data Type Mapping .....	1403
46.2.2. Null, None .....	1404
46.2.3. Arrays, Lists .....	1405
46.2.4. Composite Types .....	1406
46.2.5. Set-Returning Functions .....	1407
46.3. Sharing Data .....	1409
46.4. Anonymous Code Blocks .....	1409
46.5. Trigger Functions .....	1409
46.6. Database Access .....	1410
46.6.1. Database Access Functions .....	1410
46.6.2. Trapping Errors .....	1413
46.7. Explicit Subtransactions .....	1414
46.7.1. Subtransaction Context Managers .....	1414
46.8. Transaction Management .....	1415
46.9. Utility Functions .....	1415
46.10. Python 2 vs. Python 3 .....	1416
46.11. Environment Variables .....	1416
47. Server Programming Interface .....	1418
47.1. Interface Functions .....	1418
47.2. Interface Support Functions .....	1460
47.3. Memory Management .....	1469
47.4. Transaction Management .....	1479
47.5. Visibility of Data Changes .....	1482
47.6. Examples .....	1482
48. Background Worker Processes .....	1486
49. Logical Decoding .....	1489
49.1. Logical Decoding Examples .....	1489
49.2. Logical Decoding Concepts .....	1493
49.2.1. Logical Decoding .....	1493
49.2.2. Replication Slots .....	1493
49.2.3. Output Plugins .....	1494
49.2.4. Exported Snapshots .....	1494
49.3. Streaming Replication Protocol Interface .....	1494
49.4. Logical Decoding SQL Interface .....	1495
49.5. System Catalogs Related to Logical Decoding .....	1495
49.6. Logical Decoding Output Plugins .....	1495
49.6.1. Initialization Function .....	1495
49.6.2. Capabilities .....	1496
49.6.3. Output Modes .....	1496
49.6.4. Output Plugin Callbacks .....	1496
49.6.5. Functions for Producing Output .....	1503
49.7. Logical Decoding Output Writers .....	1503
49.8. Synchronous Replication Support for Logical Decoding .....	1503
49.8.1. Overview .....	1503
49.8.2. Caveats .....	1503
49.9. Streaming of Large Transactions for Logical Decoding .....	1504
49.10. Two-phase Commit Support for Logical Decoding .....	1505

50. Replication Progress Tracking .....	1507
51. Archive Modules .....	1508
51.1. Initialization Functions .....	1508
51.2. Archive Module Callbacks .....	1508
51.2.1. Startup Callback .....	1508
51.2.2. Check Callback .....	1509
51.2.3. Archive Callback .....	1509
51.2.4. Shutdown Callback .....	1509

---

# Chapter 38. Extending SQL

In the sections that follow, we will discuss how you can extend the PostgreSQL SQL query language by adding:

- functions (starting in Section 38.3)
- aggregates (starting in Section 38.12)
- data types (starting in Section 38.13)
- operators (starting in Section 38.14)
- operator classes for indexes (starting in Section 38.16)
- packages of related objects (starting in Section 38.17)

## 38.1. How Extensibility Works

PostgreSQL is extensible because its operation is catalog-driven. If you are familiar with standard relational database systems, you know that they store information about databases, tables, columns, etc., in what are commonly known as system catalogs. (Some systems call this the data dictionary.) The catalogs appear to the user as tables like any other, but the DBMS stores its internal bookkeeping in them. One key difference between PostgreSQL and standard relational database systems is that PostgreSQL stores much more information in its catalogs: not only information about tables and columns, but also information about data types, functions, access methods, and so on. These tables can be modified by the user, and since PostgreSQL bases its operation on these tables, this means that PostgreSQL can be extended by users. By comparison, conventional database systems can only be extended by changing hardcoded procedures in the source code or by loading modules specially written by the DBMS vendor.

The PostgreSQL server can moreover incorporate user-written code into itself through dynamic loading. That is, the user can specify an object code file (e.g., a shared library) that implements a new type or function, and PostgreSQL will load it as required. Code written in SQL is even more trivial to add to the server. This ability to modify its operation “on the fly” makes PostgreSQL uniquely suited for rapid prototyping of new applications and storage structures.

## 38.2. The PostgreSQL Type System

PostgreSQL data types can be divided into base types, container types, domains, and pseudo-types.

### 38.2.1. Base Types

Base types are those, like `integer`, that are implemented below the level of the SQL language (typically in a low-level language such as C). They generally correspond to what are often known as abstract data types. PostgreSQL can only operate on such types through functions provided by the user and only understands the behavior of such types to the extent that the user describes them. The built-in base types are described in Chapter 8.

Enumerated (`enum`) types can be considered as a subcategory of base types. The main difference is that they can be created using just SQL commands, without any low-level programming. Refer to Section 8.7 for more information.

### 38.2.2. Container Types

PostgreSQL has three kinds of “container” types, which are types that contain multiple values of other types. These are arrays, composites, and ranges.

Arrays can hold multiple values that are all of the same type. An array type is automatically created for each base type, composite type, range type, and domain type. But there are no arrays of arrays. So far as the type system is concerned, multi-dimensional arrays are the same as one-dimensional arrays. Refer to Section 8.15 for more information.

Composite types, or row types, are created whenever the user creates a table. It is also possible to use `CREATE TYPE` to define a “stand-alone” composite type with no associated table. A composite type is simply a list of types with associated field names. A value of a composite type is a row or record of field values. Refer to Section 8.16 for more information.

A range type can hold two values of the same type, which are the lower and upper bounds of the range. Range types are user-created, although a few built-in ones exist. Refer to Section 8.17 for more information.

### 38.2.3. Domains

A domain is based on a particular underlying type and for many purposes is interchangeable with its underlying type. However, a domain can have constraints that restrict its valid values to a subset of what the underlying type would allow. Domains are created using the SQL command `CREATE DOMAIN`. Refer to Section 8.18 for more information.

### 38.2.4. Pseudo-Types

There are a few “pseudo-types” for special purposes. Pseudo-types cannot appear as columns of tables or components of container types, but they can be used to declare the argument and result types of functions. This provides a mechanism within the type system to identify special classes of functions. Table 8.27 lists the existing pseudo-types.

### 38.2.5. Polymorphic Types

Some pseudo-types of special interest are the *polymorphic types*, which are used to declare *polymorphic functions*. This powerful feature allows a single function definition to operate on many different data types, with the specific data type(s) being determined by the data types actually passed to it in a particular call. The polymorphic types are shown in Table 38.1. Some examples of their use appear in Section 38.5.11.

**Table 38.1. Polymorphic Types**

Name	Family	Description
<code>anyelement</code>	Simple	Indicates that a function accepts any data type
<code>anyarray</code>	Simple	Indicates that a function accepts any array data type
<code>anynonarray</code>	Simple	Indicates that a function accepts any non-array data type
<code>anyenum</code>	Simple	Indicates that a function accepts any enum data type (see Section 8.7)
<code>anyrange</code>	Simple	Indicates that a function accepts any range data type (see Section 8.17)
<code>anymultirange</code>	Simple	Indicates that a function accepts any multirange data type (see Section 8.17)
<code>anycompatible</code>	Common	Indicates that a function accepts any data type, with automatic promotion of multiple arguments to a common data type
<code>anycompatiblearray</code>	Common	Indicates that a function accepts any array data type, with automatic promotion of multiple arguments to a common data type



Name	Family	Description
<code>anycompatiblenonarray</code>	Common	Indicates that a function accepts any non-array data type, with automatic promotion of multiple arguments to a common data type
<code>anycompatiblerange</code>	Common	Indicates that a function accepts any range data type, with automatic promotion of multiple arguments to a common data type
<code>anycompatiblemultirange</code>	Common	Indicates that a function accepts any multirange data type, with automatic promotion of multiple arguments to a common data type

Polymorphic arguments and results are tied to each other and are resolved to specific data types when a query calling a polymorphic function is parsed. When there is more than one polymorphic argument, the actual data types of the input values must match up as described below. If the function's result type is polymorphic, or it has output parameters of polymorphic types, the types of those results are deduced from the actual types of the polymorphic inputs as described below.

For the “simple” family of polymorphic types, the matching and deduction rules work like this:

Each position (either argument or return value) declared as `anyelement` is allowed to have any specific actual data type, but in any given call they must all be the *same* actual type. Each position declared as `anyarray` can have any array data type, but similarly they must all be the same type. And similarly, positions declared as `anyrange` must all be the same range type. Likewise for `anymultirange`.

Furthermore, if there are positions declared `anyarray` and others declared `anyelement`, the actual array type in the `anyarray` positions must be an array whose elements are the same type appearing in the `anyelement` positions. `anynonarray` is treated exactly the same as `anyelement`, but adds the additional constraint that the actual type must not be an array type. `anyenum` is treated exactly the same as `anyelement`, but adds the additional constraint that the actual type must be an enum type.

Similarly, if there are positions declared `anyrange` and others declared `anyelement` or `anyarray`, the actual range type in the `anyrange` positions must be a range whose subtype is the same type appearing in the `anyelement` positions and the same as the element type of the `anyarray` positions. If there are positions declared `anymultirange`, their actual multirange type must contain ranges matching parameters declared `anyrange` and base elements matching parameters declared `anyelement` and `anyarray`.

Thus, when more than one argument position is declared with a polymorphic type, the net effect is that only certain combinations of actual argument types are allowed. For example, a function declared as `equal(anyelement, anyelement)` will take any two input values, so long as they are of the same data type.

When the return value of a function is declared as a polymorphic type, there must be at least one argument position that is also polymorphic, and the actual data type(s) supplied for the polymorphic arguments determine the actual result type for that call. For example, if there were not already an array subscripting mechanism, one could define a function that implements subscripting as `subscript(anyarray, integer) returns anyelement`. This declaration constrains the actual first argument to be an array type, and allows the parser to infer the correct result type from the actual first argument's type. Another example is that a function declared as `f(anyarray) returns anyenum` will only accept arrays of enum types.

In most cases, the parser can infer the actual data type for a polymorphic result type from arguments that are of a different polymorphic type in the same family; for example `anyarray` can be deduced from `anyelement` or vice versa. An exception is that a polymorphic result of type `anyrange`

requires an argument of type `anyrange`; it cannot be deduced from `anyarray` or `anyelement` arguments. This is because there could be multiple range types with the same subtype.

Note that `anynonarray` and `anyenum` do not represent separate type variables; they are the same type as `anyelement`, just with an additional constraint. For example, declaring a function as `f(anyelement, anyenum)` is equivalent to declaring it as `f(anyenum, anyenum)`: both actual arguments have to be the same enum type.

For the “common” family of polymorphic types, the matching and deduction rules work approximately the same as for the “simple” family, with one major difference: the actual types of the arguments need not be identical, so long as they can be implicitly cast to a single common type. The common type is selected following the same rules as for `UNION` and related constructs (see Section 10.5). Selection of the common type considers the actual types of `anycompatible` and `anycompatiblenonarray` inputs, the array element types of `anycompatiblearray` inputs, the range subtypes of `anycompatiblerange` inputs, and the multirange subtypes of `anycompatiblemultirange` inputs. If `anycompatiblenonarray` is present then the common type is required to be a non-array type. Once a common type is identified, arguments in `anycompatible` and `anycompatiblenonarray` positions are automatically cast to that type, and arguments in `anycompatiblearray` positions are automatically cast to the array type for that type.

Since there is no way to select a range type knowing only its subtype, use of `anycompatiblerange` and/or `anycompatiblemultirange` requires that all arguments declared with that type have the same actual range and/or multirange type, and that that type's subtype agree with the selected common type, so that no casting of the range values is required. As with `anyrange` and `anymultirange`, use of `anycompatiblerange` and `anymultirange` as a function result type requires that there be an `anycompatiblerange` or `anycompatiblemultirange` argument.

Notice that there is no `anycompatibleenum` type. Such a type would not be very useful, since there normally are not any implicit casts to enum types, meaning that there would be no way to resolve a common type for dissimilar enum inputs.

The “simple” and “common” polymorphic families represent two independent sets of type variables. Consider for example

```
CREATE FUNCTION myfunc(a anyelement, b anyelement,
                      c anycompatible, d anycompatible)
RETURNS anycompatible AS ...
```

In an actual call of this function, the first two inputs must have exactly the same type. The last two inputs must be promotable to a common type, but this type need not have anything to do with the type of the first two inputs. The result will have the common type of the last two inputs.

A variadic function (one taking a variable number of arguments, as in Section 38.5.6) can be polymorphic: this is accomplished by declaring its last parameter as `VARIADIC anyarray` or `VARIADIC anycompatiblearray`. For purposes of argument matching and determining the actual result type, such a function behaves the same as if you had written the appropriate number of `anynonarray` or `anycompatiblenonarray` parameters.

## 38.3. User-Defined Functions

PostgreSQL provides four kinds of functions:

- query language functions (functions written in SQL) (Section 38.5)
- procedural language functions (functions written in, for example, PL/pgSQL or PL/Tcl) (Section 38.8)
- internal functions (Section 38.9)
- C-language functions (Section 38.10)

Every kind of function can take base types, composite types, or combinations of these as arguments (parameters). In addition, every kind of function can return a base type or a composite type. Functions can also be defined to return sets of base or composite values.

Many kinds of functions can take or return certain pseudo-types (such as polymorphic types), but the available facilities vary. Consult the description of each kind of function for more details.

It's easiest to define SQL functions, so we'll start by discussing those. Most of the concepts presented for SQL functions will carry over to the other types of functions.

Throughout this chapter, it can be useful to look at the reference page of the `CREATE FUNCTION` command to understand the examples better. Some examples from this chapter can be found in `func-s.sql` and `funcs.c` in the `src/tutorial` directory in the PostgreSQL source distribution.

## 38.4. User-Defined Procedures

A procedure is a database object similar to a function. The key differences are:

- Procedures are defined with the `CREATE PROCEDURE` command, not `CREATE FUNCTION`.
- Procedures do not return a function value; hence `CREATE PROCEDURE` lacks a `RETURNS` clause. However, procedures can instead return data to their callers via output parameters.
- While a function is called as part of a query or DML command, a procedure is called in isolation using the `CALL` command.
- A procedure can commit or roll back transactions during its execution (then automatically beginning a new transaction), so long as the invoking `CALL` command is not part of an explicit transaction block. A function cannot do that.
- Certain function attributes, such as strictness, don't apply to procedures. Those attributes control how the function is used in a query, which isn't relevant to procedures.

The explanations in the following sections about how to define user-defined functions apply to procedures as well, except for the points made above.

Collectively, functions and procedures are also known as *routines*. There are commands such as `ALTER ROUTINE` and `DROP ROUTINE` that can operate on functions and procedures without having to know which kind it is. Note, however, that there is no `CREATE ROUTINE` command.

## 38.5. Query Language (SQL) Functions

SQL functions execute an arbitrary list of SQL statements, returning the result of the last query in the list. In the simple (non-set) case, the first row of the last query's result will be returned. (Bear in mind that “the first row” of a multirow result is not well-defined unless you use `ORDER BY`.) If the last query happens to return no rows at all, the null value will be returned.

Alternatively, an SQL function can be declared to return a set (that is, multiple rows) by specifying the function's return type as `SETOF some type`, or equivalently by declaring it as `RETURNS TABLE(columns)`. In this case all rows of the last query's result are returned. Further details appear below.

The body of an SQL function must be a list of SQL statements separated by semicolons. A semicolon after the last statement is optional. Unless the function is declared to return `void`, the last statement must be a `SELECT`, or an `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE` that has a `RETURNING` clause.

Any collection of commands in the SQL language can be packaged together and defined as a function. Besides `SELECT` queries, the commands can include data modification queries (`INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, and `MERGE`), as well as other SQL commands. (You cannot use transaction control commands, e.g., `COMMIT`, `SAVEPOINT`, and some utility commands, e.g., `VACUUM`, in SQL functions.)

However, the final command must be a `SELECT` or have a `RETURNING` clause that returns whatever is specified as the function's return type. Alternatively, if you want to define an SQL function that performs actions but has no useful value to return, you can define it as returning `void`. For example, this function removes rows with negative salaries from the `emp` table:

```
CREATE FUNCTION clean_emp() RETURNS void AS '
    DELETE FROM emp
        WHERE salary < 0;
' LANGUAGE SQL;

SELECT clean_emp();

clean_emp
-----

(1 row)
```

You can also write this as a procedure, thus avoiding the issue of the return type. For example:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE clean_emp() AS '
    DELETE FROM emp
        WHERE salary < 0;
' LANGUAGE SQL;

CALL clean_emp();
```

In simple cases like this, the difference between a function returning `void` and a procedure is mostly stylistic. However, procedures offer additional functionality such as transaction control that is not available in functions. Also, procedures are SQL standard whereas returning `void` is a PostgreSQL extension.

### Note

The entire body of an SQL function is parsed before any of it is executed. While an SQL function can contain commands that alter the system catalogs (e.g., `CREATE TABLE`), the effects of such commands will not be visible during parse analysis of later commands in the function. Thus, for example, `CREATE TABLE foo (...); INSERT INTO foo VALUES (...);` will not work as desired if packaged up into a single SQL function, since `foo` won't exist yet when the `INSERT` command is parsed. It's recommended to use PL/pgSQL instead of an SQL function in this type of situation.

The syntax of the `CREATE FUNCTION` command requires the function body to be written as a string constant. It is usually most convenient to use dollar quoting (see Section 4.1.2.4) for the string constant. If you choose to use regular single-quoted string constant syntax, you must double single quote marks (`'`) and backslashes (`\`) (assuming escape string syntax) in the body of the function (see Section 4.1.2.1).

## 38.5.1. Arguments for SQL Functions

Arguments of an SQL function can be referenced in the function body using either names or numbers. Examples of both methods appear below.

To use a name, declare the function argument as having a name, and then just write that name in the function body. If the argument name is the same as any column name in the current SQL command within the function, the column name will take precedence. To override this, qualify the argument

name with the name of the function itself, that is *function\_name.argument\_name*. (If this would conflict with a qualified column name, again the column name wins. You can avoid the ambiguity by choosing a different alias for the table within the SQL command.)

In the older numeric approach, arguments are referenced using the syntax *\$n*: *\$1* refers to the first input argument, *\$2* to the second, and so on. This will work whether or not the particular argument was declared with a name.

If an argument is of a composite type, then the dot notation, e.g., *argname.fieldname* or *\$1.fieldname*, can be used to access attributes of the argument. Again, you might need to qualify the argument's name with the function name to make the form with an argument name unambiguous.

SQL function arguments can only be used as data values, not as identifiers. Thus for example this is reasonable:

```
INSERT INTO mytable VALUES ($1);
```

but this will not work:

```
INSERT INTO $1 VALUES (42);
```

### Note

The ability to use names to reference SQL function arguments was added in PostgreSQL 9.2. Functions to be used in older servers must use the *\$n* notation.

## 38.5.2. SQL Functions on Base Types

The simplest possible SQL function has no arguments and simply returns a base type, such as integer:

```
CREATE FUNCTION one() RETURNS integer AS $$
    SELECT 1 AS result;
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;
```

```
-- Alternative syntax for string literal:
CREATE FUNCTION one() RETURNS integer AS '
    SELECT 1 AS result;
' LANGUAGE SQL;
```

```
SELECT one();
```

```
one
-----
1
```

Notice that we defined a column alias within the function body for the result of the function (with the name *result*), but this column alias is not visible outside the function. Hence, the result is labeled *one* instead of *result*.

It is almost as easy to define SQL functions that take base types as arguments:

```
CREATE FUNCTION add_em(x integer, y integer) RETURNS integer AS $$
    SELECT x + y;
```

```

$$ LANGUAGE SQL;

SELECT add_em(1, 2) AS answer;

  answer
  -----
       3

```

Alternatively, we could dispense with names for the arguments and use numbers:

```

CREATE FUNCTION add_em(integer, integer) RETURNS integer AS $$
    SELECT $1 + $2;
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;

SELECT add_em(1, 2) AS answer;

  answer
  -----
       3

```

Here is a more useful function, which might be used to debit a bank account:

```

CREATE FUNCTION tfl (accountno integer, debit numeric) RETURNS
numeric AS $$
    UPDATE bank
        SET balance = balance - debit
        WHERE accountno = tfl.accountno;
    SELECT 1;
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;

```

A user could execute this function to debit account 17 by \$100.00 as follows:

```

SELECT tfl(17, 100.0);

```

In this example, we chose the name `accountno` for the first argument, but this is the same as the name of a column in the `bank` table. Within the `UPDATE` command, `accountno` refers to the column `bank.accountno`, so `tfl.accountno` must be used to refer to the argument. We could of course avoid this by using a different name for the argument.

In practice one would probably like a more useful result from the function than a constant 1, so a more likely definition is:

```

CREATE FUNCTION tfl (accountno integer, debit numeric) RETURNS
numeric AS $$
    UPDATE bank
        SET balance = balance - debit
        WHERE accountno = tfl.accountno;
    SELECT balance FROM bank WHERE accountno = tfl.accountno;
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;

```

which adjusts the balance and returns the new balance. The same thing could be done in one command using `RETURNING`:

```

CREATE FUNCTION tfl (accountno integer, debit numeric) RETURNS
numeric AS $$
    UPDATE bank

```

```

        SET balance = balance - debit
        WHERE accountno = tfl.accountno
    RETURNING balance;
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;

```

If the final `SELECT` or `RETURNING` clause in an SQL function does not return exactly the function's declared result type, PostgreSQL will automatically cast the value to the required type, if that is possible with an implicit or assignment cast. Otherwise, you must write an explicit cast. For example, suppose we wanted the previous `add_em` function to return type `float8` instead. It's sufficient to write

```

CREATE FUNCTION add_em(integer, integer) RETURNS float8 AS $$
    SELECT $1 + $2;
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;

```

since the `integer` sum can be implicitly cast to `float8`. (See Chapter 10 or `CREATE CAST` for more about casts.)

### 38.5.3. SQL Functions on Composite Types

When writing functions with arguments of composite types, we must not only specify which argument we want but also the desired attribute (field) of that argument. For example, suppose that `emp` is a table containing employee data, and therefore also the name of the composite type of each row of the table. Here is a function `double_salary` that computes what someone's salary would be if it were doubled:

```

CREATE TABLE emp (
    name          text,
    salary        numeric,
    age           integer,
    cubicle       point
);

INSERT INTO emp VALUES ('Bill', 4200, 45, '(2,1)');

CREATE FUNCTION double_salary(emp) RETURNS numeric AS $$
    SELECT $1.salary * 2 AS salary;
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;

```

```

SELECT name, double_salary(emp.*) AS dream
FROM emp
WHERE emp.cubicle ~= point '(2,1)';

```

```

name | dream
-----+-----
Bill | 8400

```

Notice the use of the syntax `$1.salary` to select one field of the argument row value. Also notice how the calling `SELECT` command uses `table_name.*` to select the entire current row of a table as a composite value. The table row can alternatively be referenced using just the table name, like this:

```

SELECT name, double_salary(emp) AS dream
FROM emp
WHERE emp.cubicle ~= point '(2,1)';

```

but this usage is deprecated since it's easy to get confused. (See Section 8.16.5 for details about these two notations for the composite value of a table row.)

Sometimes it is handy to construct a composite argument value on-the-fly. This can be done with the ROW construct. For example, we could adjust the data being passed to the function:

```
SELECT name, double_salary(ROW(name, salary*1.1, age, cubicle)) AS
dream
FROM emp;
```

It is also possible to build a function that returns a composite type. This is an example of a function that returns a single emp row:

```
CREATE FUNCTION new_emp() RETURNS emp AS $$
SELECT text 'None' AS name,
       1000.0 AS salary,
       25 AS age,
       point '(2,2)' AS cubicle;
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;
```

In this example we have specified each of the attributes with a constant value, but any computation could have been substituted for these constants.

Note two important things about defining the function:

- The select list order in the query must be exactly the same as that in which the columns appear in the composite type. (Naming the columns, as we did above, is irrelevant to the system.)
- We must ensure each expression's type can be cast to that of the corresponding column of the composite type. Otherwise we'll get errors like this:

```
ERROR:  return type mismatch in function declared to return emp
DETAIL:  Final statement returns text instead of point at column
4.
```

As with the base-type case, the system will not insert explicit casts automatically, only implicit or assignment casts.

A different way to define the same function is:

```
CREATE FUNCTION new_emp() RETURNS emp AS $$
SELECT ROW('None', 1000.0, 25, '(2,2)')::emp;
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;
```

Here we wrote a SELECT that returns just a single column of the correct composite type. This isn't really better in this situation, but it is a handy alternative in some cases — for example, if we need to compute the result by calling another function that returns the desired composite value. Another example is that if we are trying to write a function that returns a domain over composite, rather than a plain composite type, it is always necessary to write it as returning a single column, since there is no way to cause a coercion of the whole row result.

We could call this function directly either by using it in a value expression:

```
SELECT new_emp();

new_emp
-----
```



```
(None, 1000.0, 25, "(2,2)")
```

or by calling it as a table function:

```
SELECT * FROM new_emp();

name | salary | age | cubicle
-----+-----+-----+-----
None | 1000.0 | 25  | (2,2)
```

The second way is described more fully in Section 38.5.8.

When you use a function that returns a composite type, you might want only one field (attribute) from its result. You can do that with syntax like this:

```
SELECT (new_emp()) .name;

name
-----
None
```

The extra parentheses are needed to keep the parser from getting confused. If you try to do it without them, you get something like this:

```
SELECT new_emp().name;
ERROR:  syntax error at or near "."
LINE 1: SELECT new_emp().name;
                  ^
```

Another option is to use functional notation for extracting an attribute:

```
SELECT name(new_emp());

name
-----
None
```

As explained in Section 8.16.5, the field notation and functional notation are equivalent.

Another way to use a function returning a composite type is to pass the result to another function that accepts the correct row type as input:

```
CREATE FUNCTION getname(emp) RETURNS text AS $$
    SELECT $1.name;
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;

SELECT getname(new_emp());
 getname
-----
None
(1 row)
```

## 38.5.4. SQL Functions with Output Parameters

An alternative way of describing a function's results is to define it with *output parameters*, as in this example:

```
CREATE FUNCTION add_em (IN x int, IN y int, OUT sum int)
AS 'SELECT x + y'
LANGUAGE SQL;
```

```
SELECT add_em(3,7);
   add_em
-----
      10
(1 row)
```

This is not essentially different from the version of `add_em` shown in Section 38.5.2. The real value of output parameters is that they provide a convenient way of defining functions that return several columns. For example,

```
CREATE FUNCTION sum_n_product (x int, y int, OUT sum int, OUT
    product int)
AS 'SELECT x + y, x * y'
LANGUAGE SQL;
```

```
SELECT * FROM sum_n_product(11,42);
   sum | product
-----+-----
     53 |     462
(1 row)
```

What has essentially happened here is that we have created an anonymous composite type for the result of the function. The above example has the same end result as

```
CREATE TYPE sum_prod AS (sum int, product int);

CREATE FUNCTION sum_n_product (int, int) RETURNS sum_prod
AS 'SELECT $1 + $2, $1 * $2'
LANGUAGE SQL;
```

but not having to bother with the separate composite type definition is often handy. Notice that the names attached to the output parameters are not just decoration, but determine the column names of the anonymous composite type. (If you omit a name for an output parameter, the system will choose a name on its own.)

Notice that output parameters are not included in the calling argument list when invoking such a function from SQL. This is because PostgreSQL considers only the input parameters to define the function's calling signature. That means also that only the input parameters matter when referencing the function for purposes such as dropping it. We could drop the above function with either of

```
DROP FUNCTION sum_n_product (x int, y int, OUT sum int, OUT product
    int);
DROP FUNCTION sum_n_product (int, int);
```

Parameters can be marked as `IN` (the default), `OUT`, `INOUT`, or `VARIADIC`. An `INOUT` parameter serves as both an input parameter (part of the calling argument list) and an output parameter (part of the result record type). `VARIADIC` parameters are input parameters, but are treated specially as described below.

## 38.5.5. SQL Procedures with Output Parameters

Output parameters are also supported in procedures, but they work a bit differently from functions. In `CALL` commands, output parameters must be included in the argument list. For example, the bank account debiting routine from earlier could be written like this:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE tp1 (accountno integer, debit numeric, OUT
new_balance numeric) AS $$
    UPDATE bank
        SET balance = balance - debit
        WHERE accountno = tp1.accountno
    RETURNING balance;
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;
```

To call this procedure, an argument matching the `OUT` parameter must be included. It's customary to write `NULL`:

```
CALL tp1(17, 100.0, NULL);
```

If you write something else, it must be an expression that is implicitly coercible to the declared type of the parameter, just as for input parameters. Note however that such an expression will not be evaluated.

When calling a procedure from PL/pgSQL, instead of writing `NULL` you must write a variable that will receive the procedure's output. See Section 43.6.3 for details.

## 38.5.6. SQL Functions with Variable Numbers of Arguments

SQL functions can be declared to accept variable numbers of arguments, so long as all the “optional” arguments are of the same data type. The optional arguments will be passed to the function as an array. The function is declared by marking the last parameter as `VARIADIC`; this parameter must be declared as being of an array type. For example:

```
CREATE FUNCTION mleast(VARIADIC arr numeric[]) RETURNS numeric AS $
$
    SELECT min($1[i]) FROM generate_subscripts($1, 1) g(i);
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;
```

```
SELECT mleast(10, -1, 5, 4.4);
 mleast
-----
      -1
(1 row)
```

Effectively, all the actual arguments at or beyond the `VARIADIC` position are gathered up into a one-dimensional array, as if you had written

```
SELECT mleast(ARRAY[10, -1, 5, 4.4]);    -- doesn't work
```

You can't actually write that, though — or at least, it will not match this function definition. A parameter marked `VARIADIC` matches one or more occurrences of its element type, not of its own type.

Sometimes it is useful to be able to pass an already-constructed array to a variadic function; this is particularly handy when one variadic function wants to pass on its array parameter to another one. Also, this is the only secure way to call a variadic function found in a schema that permits untrusted users to create objects; see Section 10.3. You can do this by specifying `VARIADIC` in the call:

```
SELECT mleast(VARIADIC ARRAY[10, -1, 5, 4.4]);
```

This prevents expansion of the function's variadic parameter into its element type, thereby allowing the array argument value to match normally. VARIADIC can only be attached to the last actual argument of a function call.

Specifying VARIADIC in the call is also the only way to pass an empty array to a variadic function, for example:

```
SELECT mleast(VARIADIC ARRAY[]::numeric[]);
```

Simply writing `SELECT mleast()` does not work because a variadic parameter must match at least one actual argument. (You could define a second function also named `mleast`, with no parameters, if you wanted to allow such calls.)

The array element parameters generated from a variadic parameter are treated as not having any names of their own. This means it is not possible to call a variadic function using named arguments (Section 4.3), except when you specify VARIADIC. For example, this will work:

```
SELECT mleast(VARIADIC arr => ARRAY[10, -1, 5, 4.4]);
```

but not these:

```
SELECT mleast(arr => 10);
SELECT mleast(arr => ARRAY[10, -1, 5, 4.4]);
```

## 38.5.7. SQL Functions with Default Values for Arguments

Functions can be declared with default values for some or all input arguments. The default values are inserted whenever the function is called with insufficiently many actual arguments. Since arguments can only be omitted from the end of the actual argument list, all parameters after a parameter with a default value have to have default values as well. (Although the use of named argument notation could allow this restriction to be relaxed, it's still enforced so that positional argument notation works sensibly.) Whether or not you use it, this capability creates a need for precautions when calling functions in databases where some users mistrust other users; see Section 10.3.

For example:

```
CREATE FUNCTION foo(a int, b int DEFAULT 2, c int DEFAULT 3)
RETURNS int
LANGUAGE SQL
AS $$
    SELECT $1 + $2 + $3;
$$;

SELECT foo(10, 20, 30);
foo
----
 60
(1 row)

SELECT foo(10, 20);
foo
----
 33
```

```
(1 row)

SELECT foo(10);
   foo
-----
    15
(1 row)

SELECT foo(); -- fails since there is no default for the first
argument
ERROR:  function foo() does not exist
```

The = sign can also be used in place of the key word DEFAULT.

## 38.5.8. SQL Functions as Table Sources

All SQL functions can be used in the FROM clause of a query, but it is particularly useful for functions returning composite types. If the function is defined to return a base type, the table function produces a one-column table. If the function is defined to return a composite type, the table function produces a column for each attribute of the composite type.

Here is an example:

```
CREATE TABLE foo (fooid int, foosubid int, fooname text);
INSERT INTO foo VALUES (1, 1, 'Joe');
INSERT INTO foo VALUES (1, 2, 'Ed');
INSERT INTO foo VALUES (2, 1, 'Mary');

CREATE FUNCTION getfoo(int) RETURNS foo AS $$
    SELECT * FROM foo WHERE fooid = $1;
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;

SELECT *, upper(fooname) FROM getfoo(1) AS t1;

   fooid | foosubid | fooname | upper
-----+-----+-----+-----
      1 |         1 | Joe     | JOE
(1 row)
```

As the example shows, we can work with the columns of the function's result just the same as if they were columns of a regular table.

Note that we only got one row out of the function. This is because we did not use SETOF. That is described in the next section.

## 38.5.9. SQL Functions Returning Sets

When an SQL function is declared as returning SETOF *sometype*, the function's final query is executed to completion, and each row it outputs is returned as an element of the result set.

This feature is normally used when calling the function in the FROM clause. In this case each row returned by the function becomes a row of the table seen by the query. For example, assume that table foo has the same contents as above, and we say:

```
CREATE FUNCTION getfoo(int) RETURNS SETOF foo AS $$
    SELECT * FROM foo WHERE fooid = $1;
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;
```

```
SELECT * FROM getfoo(1) AS t1;
```

Then we would get:

fooid	foosubid	foaname
1	1	Joe
1	2	Ed

(2 rows)

It is also possible to return multiple rows with the columns defined by output parameters, like this:

```
CREATE TABLE tab (y int, z int);
INSERT INTO tab VALUES (1, 2), (3, 4), (5, 6), (7, 8);

CREATE FUNCTION sum_n_product_with_tab (x int, OUT sum int, OUT
    product int)
RETURNS SETOF record
AS $$
    SELECT $1 + tab.y, $1 * tab.y FROM tab;
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;

SELECT * FROM sum_n_product_with_tab(10);
   sum | product
-----+-----
    11 |      10
    13 |      30
    15 |      50
    17 |      70
(4 rows)
```

The key point here is that you must write `RETURNS SETOF record` to indicate that the function returns multiple rows instead of just one. If there is only one output parameter, write that parameter's type instead of `record`.

It is frequently useful to construct a query's result by invoking a set-returning function multiple times, with the parameters for each invocation coming from successive rows of a table or subquery. The preferred way to do this is to use the `LATERAL` key word, which is described in Section 7.2.1.5. Here is an example using a set-returning function to enumerate elements of a tree structure:

```
SELECT * FROM nodes;
   name | parent
-----+-----
   Top |
 Child1 |   Top
 Child2 |   Top
 Child3 |   Top
SubChild1 | Child1
SubChild2 | Child1
(6 rows)

CREATE FUNCTION listchildren(text) RETURNS SETOF text AS $$
    SELECT name FROM nodes WHERE parent = $1
$$ LANGUAGE SQL STABLE;

SELECT * FROM listchildren('Top');
 listchildren
```

```

-----
Child1
Child2
Child3
(3 rows)

SELECT name, child FROM nodes, LATERAL listchildren(name) AS child;
  name  |  child
-----+-----
Top     | Child1
Top     | Child2
Top     | Child3
Child1  | SubChild1
Child1  | SubChild2
(5 rows)

```

This example does not do anything that we couldn't have done with a simple join, but in more complex calculations the option to put some of the work into a function can be quite convenient.

Functions returning sets can also be called in the select list of a query. For each row that the query generates by itself, the set-returning function is invoked, and an output row is generated for each element of the function's result set. The previous example could also be done with queries like these:

```

SELECT listchildren('Top');
 listchildren
-----
Child1
Child2
Child3
(3 rows)

SELECT name, listchildren(name) FROM nodes;
  name  | listchildren
-----+-----
Top     | Child1
Top     | Child2
Top     | Child3
Child1  | SubChild1
Child1  | SubChild2
(5 rows)

```

In the last `SELECT`, notice that no output row appears for `Child2`, `Child3`, etc. This happens because `listchildren` returns an empty set for those arguments, so no result rows are generated. This is the same behavior as we got from an inner join to the function result when using the `LATERAL` syntax.

PostgreSQL's behavior for a set-returning function in a query's select list is almost exactly the same as if the set-returning function had been written in a `LATERAL FROM`-clause item instead. For example,

```
SELECT x, generate_series(1,5) AS g FROM tab;
```

is almost equivalent to

```
SELECT x, g FROM tab, LATERAL generate_series(1,5) AS g;
```

It would be exactly the same, except that in this specific example, the planner could choose to put `g` on the outside of the nested-loop join, since `g` has no actual lateral dependency on `tab`. That would

result in a different output row order. Set-returning functions in the select list are always evaluated as though they are on the inside of a nested-loop join with the rest of the FROM clause, so that the function(s) are run to completion before the next row from the FROM clause is considered.

If there is more than one set-returning function in the query's select list, the behavior is similar to what you get from putting the functions into a single LATERAL ROWS FROM( . . . ) FROM-clause item. For each row from the underlying query, there is an output row using the first result from each function, then an output row using the second result, and so on. If some of the set-returning functions produce fewer outputs than others, null values are substituted for the missing data, so that the total number of rows emitted for one underlying row is the same as for the set-returning function that produced the most outputs. Thus the set-returning functions run “in lockstep” until they are all exhausted, and then execution continues with the next underlying row.

Set-returning functions can be nested in a select list, although that is not allowed in FROM-clause items. In such cases, each level of nesting is treated separately, as though it were a separate LATERAL ROWS FROM( . . . ) item. For example, in

```
SELECT srf1(srf2(x), srf3(y)), srf4(srf5(z)) FROM tab;
```

the set-returning functions srf2, srf3, and srf5 would be run in lockstep for each row of tab, and then srf1 and srf4 would be applied in lockstep to each row produced by the lower functions.

Set-returning functions cannot be used within conditional-evaluation constructs, such as CASE or COALESCE. For example, consider

```
SELECT x, CASE WHEN x > 0 THEN generate_series(1, 5) ELSE 0 END
FROM tab;
```

It might seem that this should produce five repetitions of input rows that have  $x > 0$ , and a single repetition of those that do not; but actually, because `generate_series(1, 5)` would be run in an implicit LATERAL FROM item before the CASE expression is ever evaluated, it would produce five repetitions of every input row. To reduce confusion, such cases produce a parse-time error instead.

### Note

If a function's last command is INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE with RETURNING, that command will always be executed to completion, even if the function is not declared with SETOF or the calling query does not fetch all the result rows. Any extra rows produced by the RETURNING clause are silently dropped, but the commanded table modifications still happen (and are all completed before returning from the function).

### Note

Before PostgreSQL 10, putting more than one set-returning function in the same select list did not behave very sensibly unless they always produced equal numbers of rows. Otherwise, what you got was a number of output rows equal to the least common multiple of the numbers of rows produced by the set-returning functions. Also, nested set-returning functions did not work as described above; instead, a set-returning function could have at most one set-returning argument, and each nest of set-returning functions was run independently. Also, conditional execution (set-returning functions inside CASE etc.) was previously allowed, complicating things even more. Use of the LATERAL syntax is recommended when writing queries that need to work in older PostgreSQL versions, because that will give consistent results across different versions. If you have a query that is relying on conditional execution of a set-returning function, you may be able to fix it by moving the conditional test into a custom set-returning function. For example,



```
SELECT x, CASE WHEN y > 0 THEN generate_series(1, z) ELSE 5
END FROM tab;
```

could become

```
CREATE FUNCTION case_generate_series(cond bool, start int, fin
int, els int)
  RETURNS SETOF int AS $$
BEGIN
  IF cond THEN
    RETURN QUERY SELECT generate_series(start, fin);
  ELSE
    RETURN QUERY SELECT els;
  END IF;
END$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

```
SELECT x, case_generate_series(y > 0, 1, z, 5) FROM tab;
```

This formulation will work the same in all versions of PostgreSQL.

## 38.5.10. SQL Functions Returning TABLE

There is another way to declare a function as returning a set, which is to use the syntax `RETURNS TABLE(columns)`. This is equivalent to using one or more OUT parameters plus marking the function as returning `SETOF record` (or `SETOF` a single output parameter's type, as appropriate). This notation is specified in recent versions of the SQL standard, and thus may be more portable than using `SETOF`.

For example, the preceding sum-and-product example could also be done this way:

```
CREATE FUNCTION sum_n_product_with_tab (x int)
  RETURNS TABLE(sum int, product int) AS $$
  SELECT $1 + tab.y, $1 * tab.y FROM tab;
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;
```

It is not allowed to use explicit OUT or INOUT parameters with the `RETURNS TABLE` notation — you must put all the output columns in the TABLE list.

## 38.5.11. Polymorphic SQL Functions

SQL functions can be declared to accept and return the polymorphic types described in Section 38.2.5. Here is a polymorphic function `make_array` that builds up an array from two arbitrary data type elements:

```
CREATE FUNCTION make_array(anyelement, anyelement) RETURNS anyarray
  AS $$
  SELECT ARRAY[$1, $2];
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;
```

```
SELECT make_array(1, 2) AS intarray, make_array('a'::text, 'b') AS
  textarray;
intarray | textarray
-----+-----
{1,2}   | {a,b}
```

```
(1 row)
```

Notice the use of the typecast `'a'::text` to specify that the argument is of type `text`. This is required if the argument is just a string literal, since otherwise it would be treated as type `unknown`, and array of `unknown` is not a valid type. Without the typecast, you will get errors like this:

```
ERROR:  could not determine polymorphic type because input has type
unknown
```

With `make_array` declared as above, you must provide two arguments that are of exactly the same data type; the system will not attempt to resolve any type differences. Thus for example this does not work:

```
SELECT make_array(1, 2.5) AS numericarray;
ERROR:  function make_array(integer, numeric) does not exist
```

An alternative approach is to use the “common” family of polymorphic types, which allows the system to try to identify a suitable common type:

```
CREATE FUNCTION make_array2(anycompatible, anycompatible)
RETURNS anycompatiblearray AS $$
    SELECT ARRAY[$1, $2];
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;
```

```
SELECT make_array2(1, 2.5) AS numericarray;
numericarray
-----
{1,2.5}
(1 row)
```

Because the rules for common type resolution default to choosing type `text` when all inputs are of unknown types, this also works:

```
SELECT make_array2('a', 'b') AS textarray;
textarray
-----
{a,b}
(1 row)
```

It is permitted to have polymorphic arguments with a fixed return type, but the converse is not. For example:

```
CREATE FUNCTION is_greater(anyelement, anyelement) RETURNS boolean
AS $$
    SELECT $1 > $2;
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;
```

```
SELECT is_greater(1, 2);
is_greater
-----
f
(1 row)
```

```
CREATE FUNCTION invalid_func() RETURNS anyelement AS $$
    SELECT 1;
```

```

$$ LANGUAGE SQL;
ERROR:  cannot determine result data type
DETAIL:  A result of type anyelement requires at least one input of
        type anyelement, anyarray, anynonarray, anyenum, or anyrange.

```

Polymorphism can be used with functions that have output arguments. For example:

```

CREATE FUNCTION dup (f1 anyelement, OUT f2 anyelement, OUT f3
    anyarray)
AS 'select $1, array[$1,$1]' LANGUAGE SQL;

SELECT * FROM dup(22);
 f2 |    f3
-----+-----
 22 | {22,22}
(1 row)

```

Polymorphism can also be used with variadic functions. For example:

```

CREATE FUNCTION anyleast (VARIADIC anyarray) RETURNS anyelement AS
$$
    SELECT min($1[i]) FROM generate_subscripts($1, 1) g(i);
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;

SELECT anyleast(10, -1, 5, 4);
 anyleast
-----
        -1
(1 row)

SELECT anyleast('abc'::text, 'def');
 anyleast
-----
    abc
(1 row)

CREATE FUNCTION concat_values(text, VARIADIC anyarray) RETURNS text
AS $$
    SELECT array_to_string($2, $1);
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;

SELECT concat_values('|', 1, 4, 2);
 concat_values
-----
 1|4|2
(1 row)

```

## 38.5.12. SQL Functions with Collations

When an SQL function has one or more parameters of collatable data types, a collation is identified for each function call depending on the collations assigned to the actual arguments, as described in Section 24.2. If a collation is successfully identified (i.e., there are no conflicts of implicit collations among the arguments) then all the collatable parameters are treated as having that collation implicitly. This will affect the behavior of collation-sensitive operations within the function. For example, using the `anyleast` function described above, the result of

```
SELECT anyleast('abc'::text, 'ABC');
```

will depend on the database's default collation. In C locale the result will be ABC, but in many other locales it will be abc. The collation to use can be forced by adding a COLLATE clause to any of the arguments, for example

```
SELECT anyleast('abc'::text, 'ABC' COLLATE "C");
```

Alternatively, if you wish a function to operate with a particular collation regardless of what it is called with, insert COLLATE clauses as needed in the function definition. This version of anyleast would always use en\_US locale to compare strings:

```
CREATE FUNCTION anyleast (VARIADIC anyarray) RETURNS anyelement AS
$$
    SELECT min($1[i] COLLATE "en_US") FROM generate_subscripts($1,
    1) g(i);
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;
```

But note that this will throw an error if applied to a non-collatable data type.

If no common collation can be identified among the actual arguments, then an SQL function treats its parameters as having their data types' default collation (which is usually the database's default collation, but could be different for parameters of domain types).

The behavior of collatable parameters can be thought of as a limited form of polymorphism, applicable only to textual data types.

## 38.6. Function Overloading

More than one function can be defined with the same SQL name, so long as the arguments they take are different. In other words, function names can be *overloaded*. Whether or not you use it, this capability entails security precautions when calling functions in databases where some users mistrust other users; see Section 10.3. When a query is executed, the server will determine which function to call from the data types and the number of the provided arguments. Overloading can also be used to simulate functions with a variable number of arguments, up to a finite maximum number.

When creating a family of overloaded functions, one should be careful not to create ambiguities. For instance, given the functions:

```
CREATE FUNCTION test(int, real) RETURNS ...
CREATE FUNCTION test(smallint, double precision) RETURNS ...
```

it is not immediately clear which function would be called with some trivial input like test(1, 1.5). The currently implemented resolution rules are described in Chapter 10, but it is unwise to design a system that subtly relies on this behavior.

A function that takes a single argument of a composite type should generally not have the same name as any attribute (field) of that type. Recall that *attribute(table)* is considered equivalent to *table.attribute*. In the case that there is an ambiguity between a function on a composite type and an attribute of the composite type, the attribute will always be used. It is possible to override that choice by schema-qualifying the function name (that is, *schema.func(table)*) but it's better to avoid the problem by not choosing conflicting names.

Another possible conflict is between variadic and non-variadic functions. For instance, it is possible to create both *foo(numeric)* and *foo(VARIADIC numeric[])*. In this case it is unclear which one should be matched to a call providing a single numeric argument, such as *foo(10.1)*. The rule is that the function appearing earlier in the search path is used, or if the two functions are in the same schema, the non-variadic one is preferred.

When overloading C-language functions, there is an additional constraint: The C name of each function in the family of overloaded functions must be different from the C names of all other functions, either internal or dynamically loaded. If this rule is violated, the behavior is not portable. You might get a run-time linker error, or one of the functions will get called (usually the internal one). The alternative form of the AS clause for the SQL CREATE FUNCTION command decouples the SQL function name from the function name in the C source code. For instance:

```
CREATE FUNCTION test(int) RETURNS int
    AS 'filename', 'test_larg'
    LANGUAGE C;
CREATE FUNCTION test(int, int) RETURNS int
    AS 'filename', 'test_2arg'
    LANGUAGE C;
```

The names of the C functions here reflect one of many possible conventions.

## 38.7. Function Volatility Categories

Every function has a *volatility* classification, with the possibilities being VOLATILE, STABLE, or IMMUTABLE. VOLATILE is the default if the CREATE FUNCTION command does not specify a category. The volatility category is a promise to the optimizer about the behavior of the function:

- A VOLATILE function can do anything, including modifying the database. It can return different results on successive calls with the same arguments. The optimizer makes no assumptions about the behavior of such functions. A query using a volatile function will re-evaluate the function at every row where its value is needed.
- A STABLE function cannot modify the database and is guaranteed to return the same results given the same arguments for all rows within a single statement. This category allows the optimizer to optimize multiple calls of the function to a single call. In particular, it is safe to use an expression containing such a function in an index scan condition. (Since an index scan will evaluate the comparison value only once, not once at each row, it is not valid to use a VOLATILE function in an index scan condition.)
- An IMMUTABLE function cannot modify the database and is guaranteed to return the same results given the same arguments forever. This category allows the optimizer to pre-evaluate the function when a query calls it with constant arguments. For example, a query like SELECT ... WHERE  $x = 2 + 2$  can be simplified on sight to SELECT ... WHERE  $x = 4$ , because the function underlying the integer addition operator is marked IMMUTABLE.

For best optimization results, you should label your functions with the strictest volatility category that is valid for them.

Any function with side-effects *must* be labeled VOLATILE, so that calls to it cannot be optimized away. Even a function with no side-effects needs to be labeled VOLATILE if its value can change within a single query; some examples are random(), curval(),timeofday().

Another important example is that the current\_timestamp family of functions qualify as STABLE, since their values do not change within a transaction.

There is relatively little difference between STABLE and IMMUTABLE categories when considering simple interactive queries that are planned and immediately executed: it doesn't matter a lot whether a function is executed once during planning or once during query execution startup. But there is a big difference if the plan is saved and reused later. Labeling a function IMMUTABLE when it really isn't might allow it to be prematurely folded to a constant during planning, resulting in a stale value being re-used during subsequent uses of the plan. This is a hazard when using prepared statements or when using function languages that cache plans (such as PL/pgSQL).

For functions written in SQL or in any of the standard procedural languages, there is a second important property determined by the volatility category, namely the visibility of any data changes that have been

made by the SQL command that is calling the function. A `VOLATILE` function will see such changes, a `STABLE` or `IMMUTABLE` function will not. This behavior is implemented using the snapshotting behavior of MVCC (see Chapter 13): `STABLE` and `IMMUTABLE` functions use a snapshot established as of the start of the calling query, whereas `VOLATILE` functions obtain a fresh snapshot at the start of each query they execute.

### Note

Functions written in C can manage snapshots however they want, but it's usually a good idea to make C functions work this way too.

Because of this snapshotting behavior, a function containing only `SELECT` commands can safely be marked `STABLE`, even if it selects from tables that might be undergoing modifications by concurrent queries. PostgreSQL will execute all commands of a `STABLE` function using the snapshot established for the calling query, and so it will see a fixed view of the database throughout that query.

The same snapshotting behavior is used for `SELECT` commands within `IMMUTABLE` functions. It is generally unwise to select from database tables within an `IMMUTABLE` function at all, since the immutability will be broken if the table contents ever change. However, PostgreSQL does not enforce that you do not do that.

A common error is to label a function `IMMUTABLE` when its results depend on a configuration parameter. For example, a function that manipulates timestamps might well have results that depend on the `TimeZone` setting. For safety, such functions should be labeled `STABLE` instead.

### Note

PostgreSQL requires that `STABLE` and `IMMUTABLE` functions contain no SQL commands other than `SELECT` to prevent data modification. (This is not a completely bulletproof test, since such functions could still call `VOLATILE` functions that modify the database. If you do that, you will find that the `STABLE` or `IMMUTABLE` function does not notice the database changes applied by the called function, since they are hidden from its snapshot.)

## 38.8. Procedural Language Functions

PostgreSQL allows user-defined functions to be written in other languages besides SQL and C. These other languages are generically called *procedural languages* (PLs). Procedural languages aren't built into the PostgreSQL server; they are offered by loadable modules. See Chapter 42 and following chapters for more information.

## 38.9. Internal Functions

Internal functions are functions written in C that have been statically linked into the PostgreSQL server. The “body” of the function definition specifies the C-language name of the function, which need not be the same as the name being declared for SQL use. (For reasons of backward compatibility, an empty body is accepted as meaning that the C-language function name is the same as the SQL name.)

Normally, all internal functions present in the server are declared during the initialization of the database cluster (see Section 19.2), but a user could use `CREATE FUNCTION` to create additional alias names for an internal function. Internal functions are declared in `CREATE FUNCTION` with language name `internal`. For instance, to create an alias for the `sqrt` function:

```
CREATE FUNCTION square_root(double precision) RETURNS double
precision
```

```
AS 'dsqrt'
LANGUAGE internal
STRICT;
```

(Most internal functions expect to be declared “strict”.)

### Note

Not all “predefined” functions are “internal” in the above sense. Some predefined functions are written in SQL.

## 38.10. C-Language Functions

User-defined functions can be written in C (or a language that can be made compatible with C, such as C++). Such functions are compiled into dynamically loadable objects (also called shared libraries) and are loaded by the server on demand. The dynamic loading feature is what distinguishes “C language” functions from “internal” functions — the actual coding conventions are essentially the same for both. (Hence, the standard internal function library is a rich source of coding examples for user-defined C functions.)

Currently only one calling convention is used for C functions (“version 1”). Support for that calling convention is indicated by writing a `PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1( )` macro call for the function, as illustrated below.

### 38.10.1. Dynamic Loading

The first time a user-defined function in a particular loadable object file is called in a session, the dynamic loader loads that object file into memory so that the function can be called. The `CREATE FUNCTION` for a user-defined C function must therefore specify two pieces of information for the function: the name of the loadable object file, and the C name (link symbol) of the specific function to call within that object file. If the C name is not explicitly specified then it is assumed to be the same as the SQL function name.

The following algorithm is used to locate the shared object file based on the name given in the `CREATE FUNCTION` command:

1. If the name is an absolute path, the given file is loaded.
2. If the name starts with the string `$libdir`, that part is replaced by the PostgreSQL package library directory name, which is determined at build time.
3. If the name does not contain a directory part, the file is searched for in the path specified by the configuration variable `dynamic_library_path`.
4. Otherwise (the file was not found in the path, or it contains a non-absolute directory part), the dynamic loader will try to take the name as given, which will most likely fail. (It is unreliable to depend on the current working directory.)

If this sequence does not work, the platform-specific shared library file name extension (often `.so`) is appended to the given name and this sequence is tried again. If that fails as well, the load will fail.

It is recommended to locate shared libraries either relative to `$libdir` or through the dynamic library path. This simplifies version upgrades if the new installation is at a different location. The actual directory that `$libdir` stands for can be found out with the command `pg_config --pkglibdir`.

The user ID the PostgreSQL server runs as must be able to traverse the path to the file you intend to load. Making the file or a higher-level directory not readable and/or not executable by the postgres user is a common mistake.

In any case, the file name that is given in the `CREATE FUNCTION` command is recorded literally in the system catalogs, so if the file needs to be loaded again the same procedure is applied.

### Note

PostgreSQL will not compile a C function automatically. The object file must be compiled before it is referenced in a `CREATE FUNCTION` command. See Section 38.10.5 for additional information.

To ensure that a dynamically loaded object file is not loaded into an incompatible server, PostgreSQL checks that the file contains a “magic block” with the appropriate contents. This allows the server to detect obvious incompatibilities, such as code compiled for a different major version of PostgreSQL. To include a magic block, write this in one (and only one) of the module source files, after having included the header `fmgr.h`:

```
PG_MODULE_MAGIC;
```

After it is used for the first time, a dynamically loaded object file is retained in memory. Future calls in the same session to the function(s) in that file will only incur the small overhead of a symbol table lookup. If you need to force a reload of an object file, for example after recompiling it, begin a fresh session.

Optionally, a dynamically loaded file can contain an initialization function. If the file includes a function named `_PG_init`, that function will be called immediately after loading the file. The function receives no parameters and should return void. There is presently no way to unload a dynamically loaded file.

## 38.10.2. Base Types in C-Language Functions

To know how to write C-language functions, you need to know how PostgreSQL internally represents base data types and how they can be passed to and from functions. Internally, PostgreSQL regards a base type as a “blob of memory”. The user-defined functions that you define over a type in turn define the way that PostgreSQL can operate on it. That is, PostgreSQL will only store and retrieve the data from disk and use your user-defined functions to input, process, and output the data.

Base types can have one of three internal formats:

- pass by value, fixed-length
- pass by reference, fixed-length
- pass by reference, variable-length

By-value types can only be 1, 2, or 4 bytes in length (also 8 bytes, if `sizeof(Datum)` is 8 on your machine). You should be careful to define your types such that they will be the same size (in bytes) on all architectures. For example, the `long` type is dangerous because it is 4 bytes on some machines and 8 bytes on others, whereas `int` type is 4 bytes on most Unix machines. A reasonable implementation of the `int4` type on Unix machines might be:

```
/* 4-byte integer, passed by value */
typedef int int4;
```

(The actual PostgreSQL C code calls this type `int32`, because it is a convention in C that `intXX` means *XX bits*. Note therefore also that the C type `int8` is 1 byte in size. The SQL type `int8` is called `int64` in C. See also Table 38.2.)



On the other hand, fixed-length types of any size can be passed by-reference. For example, here is a sample implementation of a PostgreSQL type:

```
/* 16-byte structure, passed by reference */
typedef struct
{
    double  x, y;
} Point;
```

Only pointers to such types can be used when passing them in and out of PostgreSQL functions. To return a value of such a type, allocate the right amount of memory with `palloc`, fill in the allocated memory, and return a pointer to it. (Also, if you just want to return the same value as one of your input arguments that's of the same data type, you can skip the extra `palloc` and just return the pointer to the input value.)

Finally, all variable-length types must also be passed by reference. All variable-length types must begin with an opaque length field of exactly 4 bytes, which will be set by `SET_VARSIZE`; never set this field directly! All data to be stored within that type must be located in the memory immediately following that length field. The length field contains the total length of the structure, that is, it includes the size of the length field itself.

Another important point is to avoid leaving any uninitialized bits within data type values; for example, take care to zero out any alignment padding bytes that might be present in structs. Without this, logically-equivalent constants of your data type might be seen as unequal by the planner, leading to inefficient (though not incorrect) plans.

### Warning

*Never* modify the contents of a pass-by-reference input value. If you do so you are likely to corrupt on-disk data, since the pointer you are given might point directly into a disk buffer. The sole exception to this rule is explained in Section 38.12.

As an example, we can define the type `text` as follows:

```
typedef struct {
    int32 length;
    char data[FLEXIBLE_ARRAY_MEMBER];
} text;
```

The `[FLEXIBLE_ARRAY_MEMBER]` notation means that the actual length of the data part is not specified by this declaration.

When manipulating variable-length types, we must be careful to allocate the correct amount of memory and set the length field correctly. For example, if we wanted to store 40 bytes in a `text` structure, we might use a code fragment like this:

```
#include "postgres.h"
...
char buffer[40]; /* our source data */
...
text *destination = (text *) palloc(VARHDRSZ + 40);
SET_VARSIZE(destination, VARHDRSZ + 40);
memcpy(destination->data, buffer, 40);
...
```

`VARHDRSZ` is the same as `sizeof(int32)`, but it's considered good style to use the macro `VARHDRSZ` to refer to the size of the overhead for a variable-length type. Also, the length field *must* be set using the `SET_VARSIZE` macro, not by simple assignment.

Table 38.2 shows the C types corresponding to many of the built-in SQL data types of PostgreSQL. The “Defined In” column gives the header file that needs to be included to get the type definition. (The actual definition might be in a different file that is included by the listed file. It is recommended that users stick to the defined interface.) Note that you should always include `postgres.h` first in any source file of server code, because it declares a number of things that you will need anyway, and because including other headers first can cause portability issues.

**Table 38.2. Equivalent C Types for Built-in SQL Types**

SQL Type	C Type	Defined In
boolean	bool	postgres.h (maybe compiler built-in)
box	BOX*	utils/geo_decls.h
bytea	bytea*	postgres.h
"char"	char	(compiler built-in)
character	BpChar*	postgres.h
cid	CommandId	postgres.h
date	DateADT	utils/date.h
float4 (real)	float4	postgres.h
float8 (double precision)	float8	postgres.h
int2 (smallint)	int16	postgres.h
int4 (integer)	int32	postgres.h
int8 (bigint)	int64	postgres.h
interval	Interval*	datatype/timestamp.h
lseg	LSEG*	utils/geo_decls.h
name	Name	postgres.h
numeric	Numeric	utils/numeric.h
oid	Oid	postgres.h
oidvector	oidvector*	postgres.h
path	PATH*	utils/geo_decls.h
point	POINT*	utils/geo_decls.h
regproc	RegProcedure	postgres.h
text	text*	postgres.h
tid	ItemPointer	storage/itmptr.h
time	TimeADT	utils/date.h
time with time zone	TimeTzADT	utils/date.h
timestamp	Timestamp	datatype/timestamp.h
timestamp with time zone	TimestampTz	datatype/timestamp.h
varchar	VarChar*	postgres.h
xid	TransactionId	postgres.h

Now that we've gone over all of the possible structures for base types, we can show some examples of real functions.

### 38.10.3. Version 1 Calling Conventions

The version-1 calling convention relies on macros to suppress most of the complexity of passing arguments and results. The C declaration of a version-1 function is always:

```
Datum funcname(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
```

In addition, the macro call:

```
PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(funcname);
```

must appear in the same source file. (Conventionally, it's written just before the function itself.) This macro call is not needed for internal-language functions, since PostgreSQL assumes that all internal functions use the version-1 convention. It is, however, required for dynamically-loaded functions.

In a version-1 function, each actual argument is fetched using a `PG_GETARG_xxx()` macro that corresponds to the argument's data type. (In non-strict functions there needs to be a previous check about argument null-ness using `PG_ARGISNULL()`; see below.) The result is returned using a `PG_RETURN_xxx()` macro for the return type. `PG_GETARG_xxx()` takes as its argument the number of the function argument to fetch, where the count starts at 0. `PG_RETURN_xxx()` takes as its argument the actual value to return.

Here are some examples using the version-1 calling convention:

```
#include "postgres.h"
#include <string.h>
#include "fmgr.h"
#include "utils/geo_decls.h"
#include "varatt.h"

PG_MODULE_MAGIC;

/* by value */

PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(add_one);

Datum
add_one(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    int32    arg = PG_GETARG_INT32(0);

    PG_RETURN_INT32(arg + 1);
}

/* by reference, fixed length */

PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(add_one_float8);

Datum
add_one_float8(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    /* The macros for FLOAT8 hide its pass-by-reference nature. */
    float8   arg = PG_GETARG_FLOAT8(0);
```

```

        PG_RETURN_FLOAT8(arg + 1.0);
    }

PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(makepoint);

Datum
makepoint(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    /* Here, the pass-by-reference nature of Point is not hidden.
    */
    Point      *pointx = PG_GETARG_POINT_P(0);
    Point      *pointy = PG_GETARG_POINT_P(1);
    Point      *new_point = (Point *) palloc(sizeof(Point));

    new_point->x = pointx->x;
    new_point->y = pointy->y;

    PG_RETURN_POINT_P(new_point);
}

/* by reference, variable length */

PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(copytext);

Datum
copytext(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    text      *t = PG_GETARG_TEXT_PP(0);

    /*
     * VARSIZE_ANY_EXHDR is the size of the struct in bytes, minus
    the
     * VARHDRSZ or VARHDRSZ_SHORT of its header. Construct the
    copy with a
     * full-length header.
    */
    text      *new_t = (text *) palloc(VARSIZE_ANY_EXHDR(t) +
    VARHDRSZ);
    SET_VARSIZE(new_t, VARSIZE_ANY_EXHDR(t) + VARHDRSZ);

    /*
     * VARDATA is a pointer to the data region of the new struct.
    The source
     * could be a short datum, so retrieve its data through
    VARDATA_ANY.
    */
    memcpy(VARDATA(new_t),          /* destination */
           VARDATA_ANY(t),          /* source */
           VARHDRSZ);               /* how many bytes */
    PG_RETURN_TEXT_P(new_t);
}

PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(concat_text);

Datum
concat_text(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    text      *arg1 = PG_GETARG_TEXT_PP(0);

```

```

text  *arg2 = PG_GETARG_TEXT_PP(1);
int32 arg1_size = VARSIZE_ANY_EXHDR(arg1);
int32 arg2_size = VARSIZE_ANY_EXHDR(arg2);
int32 new_text_size = arg1_size + arg2_size + VARHDRSZ;
text *new_text = (text *) palloc(new_text_size);

SET_VARSIZE(new_text, new_text_size);
memcpy(VARDATA(new_text), VARDATA_ANY(arg1), arg1_size);
memcpy(VARDATA(new_text) + arg1_size, VARDATA_ANY(arg2),
arg2_size);
PG_RETURN_TEXT_P(new_text);
}

```

Supposing that the above code has been prepared in file `funcs.c` and compiled into a shared object, we could define the functions to PostgreSQL with commands like this:

```

CREATE FUNCTION add_one(integer) RETURNS integer
  AS 'DIRECTORY/funcs', 'add_one'
  LANGUAGE C STRICT;

-- note overloading of SQL function name "add_one"
CREATE FUNCTION add_one(double precision) RETURNS double precision
  AS 'DIRECTORY/funcs', 'add_one_float8'
  LANGUAGE C STRICT;

CREATE FUNCTION makepoint(point, point) RETURNS point
  AS 'DIRECTORY/funcs', 'makepoint'
  LANGUAGE C STRICT;

CREATE FUNCTION copytext(text) RETURNS text
  AS 'DIRECTORY/funcs', 'copytext'
  LANGUAGE C STRICT;

CREATE FUNCTION concat_text(text, text) RETURNS text
  AS 'DIRECTORY/funcs', 'concat_text'
  LANGUAGE C STRICT;

```

Here, *DIRECTORY* stands for the directory of the shared library file (for instance the PostgreSQL tutorial directory, which contains the code for the examples used in this section). (Better style would be to use just 'funcs' in the AS clause, after having added *DIRECTORY* to the search path. In any case, we can omit the system-specific extension for a shared library, commonly .so.)

Notice that we have specified the functions as “strict”, meaning that the system should automatically assume a null result if any input value is null. By doing this, we avoid having to check for null inputs in the function code. Without this, we’d have to check for null values explicitly, using `PG_ARGISNULL()`.

The macro `PG_ARGISNULL(n)` allows a function to test whether each input is null. (Of course, doing this is only necessary in functions not declared “strict”.) As with the `PG_GETARG_XXX()` macros, the input arguments are counted beginning at zero. Note that one should refrain from executing `PG_GETARG_XXX()` until one has verified that the argument isn’t null. To return a null result, execute `PG_RETURN_NULL()`; this works in both strict and nonstrict functions.

At first glance, the version-1 coding conventions might appear to be just pointless obscurantism, compared to using plain C calling conventions. They do however allow us to deal with NULLable arguments/return values, and “toasted” (compressed or out-of-line) values.

Other options provided by the version-1 interface are two variants of the `PG_GETARG_xxx()` macros. The first of these, `PG_GETARG_xxx_COPY()`, guarantees to return a copy of the specified argument that is safe for writing into. (The normal macros will sometimes return a pointer to a value that is physically stored in a table, which must not be written to. Using the `PG_GETARG_xxx_COPY()` macros guarantees a writable result.) The second variant consists of the `PG_GETARG_xxx_SLICE()` macros which take three arguments. The first is the number of the function argument (as above). The second and third are the offset and length of the segment to be returned. Offsets are counted from zero, and a negative length requests that the remainder of the value be returned. These macros provide more efficient access to parts of large values in the case where they have storage type “external”. (The storage type of a column can be specified using `ALTER TABLE tablename ALTER COLUMN colname SET STORAGE storagetype`. *storagetype* is one of `plain`, `external`, `extended`, or `main`.)

Finally, the version-1 function call conventions make it possible to return set results (Section 38.10.8) and implement trigger functions (Chapter 39) and procedural-language call handlers (Chapter 58). For more details see `src/backend/utils/fmgr/README` in the source distribution.

## 38.10.4. Writing Code

Before we turn to the more advanced topics, we should discuss some coding rules for PostgreSQL C-language functions. While it might be possible to load functions written in languages other than C into PostgreSQL, this is usually difficult (when it is possible at all) because other languages, such as C++, FORTRAN, or Pascal often do not follow the same calling convention as C. That is, other languages do not pass argument and return values between functions in the same way. For this reason, we will assume that your C-language functions are actually written in C.

The basic rules for writing and building C functions are as follows:

- Use `pg_config --includedir-server` to find out where the PostgreSQL server header files are installed on your system (or the system that your users will be running on).
- Compiling and linking your code so that it can be dynamically loaded into PostgreSQL always requires special flags. See Section 38.10.5 for a detailed explanation of how to do it for your particular operating system.
- Remember to define a “magic block” for your shared library, as described in Section 38.10.1.
- When allocating memory, use the PostgreSQL functions `palloc` and `pfree` instead of the corresponding C library functions `malloc` and `free`. The memory allocated by `palloc` will be freed automatically at the end of each transaction, preventing memory leaks.
- Always zero the bytes of your structures using `memset` (or allocate them with `palloc0` in the first place). Even if you assign to each field of your structure, there might be alignment padding (holes in the structure) that contain garbage values. Without this, it's difficult to support hash indexes or hash joins, as you must pick out only the significant bits of your data structure to compute a hash. The planner also sometimes relies on comparing constants via bitwise equality, so you can get undesirable planning results if logically-equivalent values aren't bitwise equal.
- Most of the internal PostgreSQL types are declared in `postgres.h`, while the function manager interfaces (`PG_FUNCTION_ARGS`, etc.) are in `fmgr.h`, so you will need to include at least these two files. For portability reasons it's best to include `postgres.h` *first*, before any other system or user header files. Including `postgres.h` will also include `elog.h` and `palloc.h` for you.
- Symbol names defined within object files must not conflict with each other or with symbols defined in the PostgreSQL server executable. You will have to rename your functions or variables if you get error messages to this effect.

## 38.10.5. Compiling and Linking Dynamically-Loaded Functions

Before you are able to use your PostgreSQL extension functions written in C, they must be compiled and linked in a special way to produce a file that can be dynamically loaded by the server. To be precise, a *shared library* needs to be created.

For information beyond what is contained in this section you should read the documentation of your operating system, in particular the manual pages for the C compiler, `cc`, and the link editor, `ld`. In addition, the PostgreSQL source code contains several working examples in the `contrib` directory. If you rely on these examples you will make your modules dependent on the availability of the PostgreSQL source code, however.

Creating shared libraries is generally analogous to linking executables: first the source files are compiled into object files, then the object files are linked together. The object files need to be created as *position-independent code* (PIC), which conceptually means that they can be placed at an arbitrary location in memory when they are loaded by the executable. (Object files intended for executables are usually not compiled that way.) The command to link a shared library contains special flags to distinguish it from linking an executable (at least in theory — on some systems the practice is much uglier).

In the following examples we assume that your source code is in a file `foo.c` and we will create a shared library `foo.so`. The intermediate object file will be called `foo.o` unless otherwise noted. A shared library can contain more than one object file, but we only use one here.

### FreeBSD

The compiler flag to create PIC is `-fPIC`. To create shared libraries the compiler flag is `-shared`.

```
gcc -fPIC -c foo.c
gcc -shared -o foo.so foo.o
```

This is applicable as of version 3.0 of FreeBSD.

### Linux

The compiler flag to create PIC is `-fPIC`. The compiler flag to create a shared library is `-shared`. A complete example looks like this:

```
cc -fPIC -c foo.c
cc -shared -o foo.so foo.o
```

### macOS

Here is an example. It assumes the developer tools are installed.

```
cc -c foo.c
cc -bundle -flat_namespace -undefined suppress -o foo.so foo.o
```

### NetBSD

The compiler flag to create PIC is `-fPIC`. For ELF systems, the compiler with the flag `-shared` is used to link shared libraries. On the older non-ELF systems, `ld -Bshareable` is used.

```
gcc -fPIC -c foo.c
gcc -shared -o foo.so foo.o
```

#### OpenBSD

The compiler flag to create PIC is `-fPIC`. `ld -Bshareable` is used to link shared libraries.

```
gcc -fPIC -c foo.c
ld -Bshareable -o foo.so foo.o
```

#### Solaris

The compiler flag to create PIC is `-KPIC` with the Sun compiler and `-fPIC` with GCC. To link shared libraries, the compiler option is `-G` with either compiler or alternatively `-shared` with GCC.

```
cc -KPIC -c foo.c
cc -G -o foo.so foo.o
```

or

```
gcc -fPIC -c foo.c
gcc -G -o foo.so foo.o
```

### Tip

If this is too complicated for you, you should consider using GNU Libtool<sup>1</sup>, which hides the platform differences behind a uniform interface.

The resulting shared library file can then be loaded into PostgreSQL. When specifying the file name to the `CREATE FUNCTION` command, one must give it the name of the shared library file, not the intermediate object file. Note that the system's standard shared-library extension (usually `.so` or `.sl`) can be omitted from the `CREATE FUNCTION` command, and normally should be omitted for best portability.

Refer back to Section 38.10.1 about where the server expects to find the shared library files.

## 38.10.6. Composite-Type Arguments

Composite types do not have a fixed layout like C structures. Instances of a composite type can contain null fields. In addition, composite types that are part of an inheritance hierarchy can have different fields than other members of the same inheritance hierarchy. Therefore, PostgreSQL provides a function interface for accessing fields of composite types from C.

Suppose we want to write a function to answer the query:

```
SELECT name, c_overpaid(emp, 1500) AS overpaid
FROM emp
WHERE name = 'Bill' OR name = 'Sam';
```

Using the version-1 calling conventions, we can define `c_overpaid` as:

---

<sup>1</sup> <https://www.gnu.org/software/libtool/>



```
#include "postgres.h"
#include "executor/executor.h" /* for GetAttributeByName() */

PG_MODULE_MAGIC;

PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(c_overpaid);

Datum
c_overpaid(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    HeapTupleHeader t = PG_GETARG_HEAPTUPLEHEADER(0);
    int32          limit = PG_GETARG_INT32(1);
    bool isnull;
    Datum salary;

    salary = GetAttributeByName(t, "salary", &isnull);
    if (isnull)
        PG_RETURN_BOOL(false);
    /* Alternatively, we might prefer to do PG_RETURN_NULL() for
       null salary. */

    PG_RETURN_BOOL(DatumGetInt32(salary) > limit);
}
```

`GetAttributeByName` is the PostgreSQL system function that returns attributes out of the specified row. It has three arguments: the argument of type `HeapTupleHeader` passed into the function, the name of the desired attribute, and a return parameter that tells whether the attribute is null. `GetAttributeByName` returns a `Datum` value that you can convert to the proper data type by using the appropriate `DatumGetXXX()` function. Note that the return value is meaningless if the null flag is set; always check the null flag before trying to do anything with the result.

There is also `GetAttributeByNum`, which selects the target attribute by column number instead of name.

The following command declares the function `c_overpaid` in SQL:

```
CREATE FUNCTION c_overpaid(emp, integer) RETURNS boolean
AS 'DIRECTORY/funcs', 'c_overpaid'
LANGUAGE C STRICT;
```

Notice we have used `STRICT` so that we did not have to check whether the input arguments were `NULL`.

## 38.10.7. Returning Rows (Composite Types)

To return a row or composite-type value from a C-language function, you can use a special API that provides macros and functions to hide most of the complexity of building composite data types. To use this API, the source file must include:

```
#include "funcapi.h"
```

There are two ways you can build a composite data value (henceforth a “tuple”): you can build it from an array of `Datum` values, or from an array of C strings that can be passed to the input conversion functions of the tuple’s column data types. In either case, you first need to obtain or construct a Tu-

`tupleDesc` descriptor for the tuple structure. When working with `Datums`, you pass the `TupleDesc` to `BlessTupleDesc`, and then call `heap_form_tuple` for each row. When working with C strings, you pass the `TupleDesc` to `TupleDescGetAttInMetadata`, and then call `BuildTupleFromCStrings` for each row. In the case of a function returning a set of tuples, the setup steps can all be done once during the first call of the function.

Several helper functions are available for setting up the needed `TupleDesc`. The recommended way to do this in most functions returning composite values is to call:

```
TypeFuncClass get_call_result_type(FunctionCallInfo fcinfo,
                                   Oid *resultTypeId,
                                   TupleDesc *resultTupleDesc)
```

passing the same `fcinfo` struct passed to the calling function itself. (This of course requires that you use the version-1 calling conventions.) `resultTypeId` can be specified as `NULL` or as the address of a local variable to receive the function's result type OID. `resultTupleDesc` should be the address of a local `TupleDesc` variable. Check that the result is `TYPEFUNC_COMPOSITE`; if so, `resultTupleDesc` has been filled with the needed `TupleDesc`. (If it is not, you can report an error along the lines of “function returning record called in context that cannot accept type record”.)

### Tip

`get_call_result_type` can resolve the actual type of a polymorphic function result; so it is useful in functions that return scalar polymorphic results, not only functions that return composites. The `resultTypeId` output is primarily useful for functions returning polymorphic scalars.

### Note

`get_call_result_type` has a sibling `get_expr_result_type`, which can be used to resolve the expected output type for a function call represented by an expression tree. This can be used when trying to determine the result type from outside the function itself. There is also `get_func_result_type`, which can be used when only the function's OID is available. However these functions are not able to deal with functions declared to return `record`, and `get_func_result_type` cannot resolve polymorphic types, so you should preferentially use `get_call_result_type`.

Older, now-deprecated functions for obtaining `TupleDesc`s are:

```
TupleDesc RelationNameGetTupleDesc(const char *relname)
```

to get a `TupleDesc` for the row type of a named relation, and:

```
TupleDesc TypeGetTupleDesc(Oid typeoid, List *colaliases)
```

to get a `TupleDesc` based on a type OID. This can be used to get a `TupleDesc` for a base or composite type. It will not work for a function that returns `record`, however, and it cannot resolve polymorphic types.

Once you have a `TupleDesc`, call:

```
TupleDesc BlessTupleDesc(TupleDesc tupdesc)
```

if you plan to work with Datums, or:

```
AttInMetadata *TupleDescGetAttInMetadata(TupleDesc tupdesc)
```

if you plan to work with C strings. If you are writing a function returning set, you can save the results of these functions in the `FuncCallContext` structure — use the `tuple_desc` or `attinmeta` field respectively.

When working with Datums, use:

```
HeapTuple heap_form_tuple(TupleDesc tupdesc, Datum *values, bool
    *isnull)
```

to build a `HeapTuple` given user data in Datum form.

When working with C strings, use:

```
HeapTuple BuildTupleFromCStrings(AttInMetadata *attinmeta, char
    **values)
```

to build a `HeapTuple` given user data in C string form. *values* is an array of C strings, one for each attribute of the return row. Each C string should be in the form expected by the input function of the attribute data type. In order to return a null value for one of the attributes, the corresponding pointer in the *values* array should be set to `NULL`. This function will need to be called again for each row you return.

Once you have built a tuple to return from your function, it must be converted into a Datum. Use:

```
HeapTupleGetDatum(HeapTuple tuple)
```

to convert a `HeapTuple` into a valid Datum. This Datum can be returned directly if you intend to return just a single row, or it can be used as the current return value in a set-returning function.

An example appears in the next section.

## 38.10.8. Returning Sets

C-language functions have two options for returning sets (multiple rows). In one method, called *ValuePerCall* mode, a set-returning function is called repeatedly (passing the same arguments each time) and it returns one new row on each call, until it has no more rows to return and signals that by returning `NULL`. The set-returning function (SRF) must therefore save enough state across calls to remember what it was doing and return the correct next item on each call. In the other method, called *Materialize* mode, an SRF fills and returns a tuplestore object containing its entire result; then only one call occurs for the whole result, and no inter-call state is needed.

When using *ValuePerCall* mode, it is important to remember that the query is not guaranteed to be run to completion; that is, due to options such as `LIMIT`, the executor might stop making calls to the set-returning function before all rows have been fetched. This means it is not safe to perform cleanup activities in the last call, because that might not ever happen. It's recommended to use *Materialize* mode for functions that need access to external resources, such as file descriptors.

The remainder of this section documents a set of helper macros that are commonly used (though not required to be used) for SRFs using *ValuePerCall* mode. Additional details about *Materialize*

mode can be found in `src/backend/utils/fmgr/README`. Also, the contrib modules in the PostgreSQL source distribution contain many examples of SRFs using both ValuePerCall and Materialize mode.

To use the ValuePerCall support macros described here, include `funcapi.h`. These macros work with a structure `FuncCallContext` that contains the state that needs to be saved across calls. Within the calling SRF, `fcinfo->flinfo->fn_extra` is used to hold a pointer to `FuncCallContext` across calls. The macros automatically fill that field on first use, and expect to find the same pointer there on subsequent uses.

```
typedef struct FuncCallContext
{
    /*
     * Number of times we've been called before
     */
    /* call_cntr is initialized to 0 for you by
     SRF_FIRSTCALL_INIT(), and
     * incremented for you every time SRF_RETURN_NEXT() is called.
     */
    uint64 call_cntr;

    /*
     * OPTIONAL maximum number of calls
     */
    /* max_calls is here for convenience only and setting it is
     optional.
     * If not set, you must provide alternative means to know when
     the
     * function is done.
     */
    uint64 max_calls;

    /*
     * OPTIONAL pointer to miscellaneous user-provided context
     information
     */
    /* user_fctx is for use as a pointer to your own data to retain
     * arbitrary context information between calls of your
     function.
     */
    void *user_fctx;

    /*
     * OPTIONAL pointer to struct containing attribute type input
     metadata
     */
    /* attinmeta is for use when returning tuples (i.e., composite
     data types)
     * and is not used when returning base data types. It is only
     needed
     * if you intend to use BuildTupleFromCStrings() to create the
     return
     * tuple.
     */
    AttInMetadata *attinmeta;

    /*
```

```

    * memory context used for structures that must live for
multiple calls
    *
    * multi_call_memory_ctx is set by SRF_FIRSTCALL_INIT() for
you, and used
    * by SRF_RETURN_DONE() for cleanup. It is the most appropriate
memory
    * context for any memory that is to be reused across multiple
calls
    * of the SRF.
    */
    MemoryContext multi_call_memory_ctx;

    /*
    * OPTIONAL pointer to struct containing tuple description
    *
    * tuple_desc is for use when returning tuples (i.e., composite
data types)
    * and is only needed if you are going to build the tuples with
    * heap_form_tuple() rather than with BuildTupleFromCStrings().
    Note that
    * the TupleDesc pointer stored here should usually have been
run through
    * BlessTupleDesc() first.
    */
    TupleDesc tuple_desc;

} FuncCallContext;

```

The macros to be used by an SRF using this infrastructure are:

`SRF_IS_FIRSTCALL()`

Use this to determine if your function is being called for the first or a subsequent time. On the first call (only), call:

`SRF_FIRSTCALL_INIT()`

to initialize the `FuncCallContext`. On every function call, including the first, call:

`SRF_PERCALL_SETUP()`

to set up for using the `FuncCallContext`.

If your function has data to return in the current call, use:

`SRF_RETURN_NEXT(funcctx, result)`

to return it to the caller. (`result` must be of type `Datum`, either a single value or a tuple prepared as described above.) Finally, when your function is finished returning data, use:

`SRF_RETURN_DONE(funcctx)`

to clean up and end the SRF.

The memory context that is current when the SRF is called is a transient context that will be cleared between calls. This means that you do not need to call `pfree` on everything you allocated using `malloc`; it will go away anyway. However, if you want to allocate any data structures to live across calls, you need to put them somewhere else. The memory context referenced by `multi_call_memory_ctx` is a suitable location for any data that needs to survive until the SRF is finished running. In most cases, this means that you should switch into `multi_call_memory_ctx` while doing the first-call setup. Use `funcctx->user_fctx` to hold a pointer to any such cross-call data structures. (Data you allocate in `multi_call_memory_ctx` will go away automatically when the query ends, so it is not necessary to free that data manually, either.)

### Warning

While the actual arguments to the function remain unchanged between calls, if you detoast the argument values (which is normally done transparently by the `PG_GETARG_XXX` macro) in the transient context then the detoasted copies will be freed on each cycle. Accordingly, if you keep references to such values in your `user_fctx`, you must either copy them into the `multi_call_memory_ctx` after detoasting, or ensure that you detoast the values only in that context.

A complete pseudo-code example looks like the following:

```
Datum
my_set_returning_function(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    FuncCallContext *funcctx;
    Datum          result;
    further declarations as needed

    if (SRF_IS_FIRSTCALL())
    {
        MemoryContext oldcontext;

        funcctx = SRF_FIRSTCALL_INIT();
        oldcontext = MemoryContextSwitchTo(funcctx->
multi_call_memory_ctx);
        /* One-time setup code appears here: */
        user code
        if returning composite
            build TupleDesc, and perhaps AttInMetadata
        endif returning composite
        user code
        MemoryContextSwitchTo(oldcontext);
    }

    /* Each-time setup code appears here: */
    user code
    funcctx = SRF_PERCALL_SETUP();
    user code

    /* this is just one way we might test whether we are done: */
    if (funcctx->call_cntr < funcctx->max_calls)
    {
        /* Here we want to return another item: */
        user code
        obtain result Datum
    }
}
```

```

        SRF_RETURN_NEXT(funcctx, result);
    }
    else
    {
        /* Here we are done returning items, so just report that
fact. */
        /* (Resist the temptation to put cleanup code here.) */
        SRF_RETURN_DONE(funcctx);
    }
}

```

A complete example of a simple SRF returning a composite type looks like:

```

PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(retcomposite);

Datum
retcomposite(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    FuncCallContext    *funcctx;
    int                 call_cntr;
    int                 max_calls;
    TupleDesc           tupdesc;
    AttInMetadata       *attinmeta;

    /* stuff done only on the first call of the function */
    if (SRF_IS_FIRSTCALL())
    {
        MemoryContext    oldcontext;

        /* create a function context for cross-call persistence */
        funcctx = SRF_FIRSTCALL_INIT();

        /* switch to memory context appropriate for multiple
function calls */
        oldcontext = MemoryContextSwitchTo(funcctx-
>multi_call_memory_ctx);

        /* total number of tuples to be returned */
        funcctx->max_calls = PG_GETARG_INT32(0);

        /* Build a tuple descriptor for our result type */
        if (get_call_result_type(fcinfo, NULL, &tupdesc) !=
TYPEFUNC_COMPOSITE)
            ereport(ERROR,
                    (errcode(ERRCODE_FEATURE_NOT_SUPPORTED),
                     errmsg("function returning record called in
context "
                            "that cannot accept type record")));

        /*
         * generate attribute metadata needed later to produce
tuples from raw
         * C strings
         */
        attinmeta = TupleDescGetAttInMetadata(tupdesc);
        funcctx->attinmeta = attinmeta;
    }
}

```

```

        MemoryContextSwitchTo(oldcontext);
    }

    /* stuff done on every call of the function */
    funcctx = SRF_PERCALL_SETUP();

    call_cntr = funcctx->call_cntr;
    max_calls = funcctx->max_calls;
    attinmeta = funcctx->attinmeta;

    if (call_cntr < max_calls)      /* do when there is more left to
send */
    {
        char          **values;
        HeapTuple      tuple;
        Datum          result;

        /*
         * Prepare a values array for building the returned tuple.
         * This should be an array of C strings which will
         * be processed later by the type input functions.
         */
        values = (char **) palloc(3 * sizeof(char *));
        values[0] = (char *) palloc(16 * sizeof(char));
        values[1] = (char *) palloc(16 * sizeof(char));
        values[2] = (char *) palloc(16 * sizeof(char));

        snprintf(values[0], 16, "%d", 1 * PG_GETARG_INT32(1));
        snprintf(values[1], 16, "%d", 2 * PG_GETARG_INT32(1));
        snprintf(values[2], 16, "%d", 3 * PG_GETARG_INT32(1));

        /* build a tuple */
        tuple = BuildTupleFromCStrings(attinmeta, values);

        /* make the tuple into a datum */
        result = HeapTupleGetDatum(tuple);

        /* clean up (this is not really necessary) */
        pfree(values[0]);
        pfree(values[1]);
        pfree(values[2]);
        pfree(values);

        SRF_RETURN_NEXT(funcctx, result);
    }
    else      /* do when there is no more left */
    {
        SRF_RETURN_DONE(funcctx);
    }
}

```

One way to declare this function in SQL is:

```

CREATE TYPE __retcomposite AS (f1 integer, f2 integer, f3 integer);

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION retcomposite(integer, integer)

```



```
RETURNS SETOF __retcomposite
AS 'filename', 'retcomposite'
LANGUAGE C IMMUTABLE STRICT;
```

A different way is to use OUT parameters:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION retcomposite(IN integer, IN integer,
    OUT f1 integer, OUT f2 integer, OUT f3 integer)
RETURNS SETOF record
AS 'filename', 'retcomposite'
LANGUAGE C IMMUTABLE STRICT;
```

Notice that in this method the output type of the function is formally an anonymous record type.

### 38.10.9. Polymorphic Arguments and Return Types

C-language functions can be declared to accept and return the polymorphic types described in Section 38.2.5. When a function's arguments or return types are defined as polymorphic types, the function author cannot know in advance what data type it will be called with, or need to return. There are two routines provided in `fmgr.h` to allow a version-1 C function to discover the actual data types of its arguments and the type it is expected to return. The routines are called `get_fn_expr_rettype(FmgrInfo *flinfo)` and `get_fn_expr_argtype(FmgrInfo *flinfo, int argnum)`. They return the result or argument type OID, or `InvalidOid` if the information is not available. The structure `flinfo` is normally accessed as `fcinfo->flinfo`. The parameter `argnum` is zero based. `get_call_result_type` can also be used as an alternative to `get_fn_expr_rettype`. There is also `get_fn_expr_variadic`, which can be used to find out whether variadic arguments have been merged into an array. This is primarily useful for VARIADIC "any" functions, since such merging will always have occurred for variadic functions taking ordinary array types.

For example, suppose we want to write a function to accept a single element of any type, and return a one-dimensional array of that type:

```
PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(make_array);
Datum
make_array(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    ArrayType *result;
    Oid        element_type = get_fn_expr_argtype(fcinfo->flinfo,
0);
    Datum      element;
    bool        isnull;
    int16       typlen;
    bool        typbyval;
    char        typalign;
    int         ndims;
    int         dims[MAXDIM];
    int         lbs[MAXDIM];

    if (!OidIsValid(element_type))
        elog(ERROR, "could not determine data type of input");

    /* get the provided element, being careful in case it's NULL */
    isnull = PG_ARGISNULL(0);
    if (isnull)
        element = (Datum) 0;
    else
        element = PG_GETARG_DATUM(0);
```

```

/* we have one dimension */
ndims = 1;
/* and one element */
dims[0] = 1;
/* and lower bound is 1 */
lbs[0] = 1;

/* get required info about the element type */
get_typlenbyvalalign(element_type, &typlen, &typbyval,
&typalign);

/* now build the array */
result = construct_md_array(&element, &isnull, ndims, dims,
lbs,
                                element_type, typlen, typbyval,
typalign);

PG_RETURN_ARRAYTYPE_P(result);
}

```

The following command declares the function `make_array` in SQL:

```

CREATE FUNCTION make_array(anyelement) RETURNS anyarray
AS 'DIRECTORY/funcs', 'make_array'
LANGUAGE C IMMUTABLE;

```

There is a variant of polymorphism that is only available to C-language functions: they can be declared to take parameters of type "any". (Note that this type name must be double-quoted, since it's also an SQL reserved word.) This works like `anyelement` except that it does not constrain different "any" arguments to be the same type, nor do they help determine the function's result type. A C-language function can also declare its final parameter to be `VARIADIC "any"`. This will match one or more actual arguments of any type (not necessarily the same type). These arguments will *not* be gathered into an array as happens with normal variadic functions; they will just be passed to the function separately. The `PG_NARGS( )` macro and the methods described above must be used to determine the number of actual arguments and their types when using this feature. Also, users of such a function might wish to use the `VARIADIC` keyword in their function call, with the expectation that the function would treat the array elements as separate arguments. The function itself must implement that behavior if wanted, after using `get_fn_expr_variadic` to detect that the actual argument was marked with `VARIADIC`.

## 38.10.10. Shared Memory and LWLocks

Add-ins can reserve LWLocks and an allocation of shared memory on server startup. The add-in's shared library must be preloaded by specifying it in `shared_preload_libraries`. The shared library should register a `shmem_request_hook` in its `_PG_init` function. This `shmem_request_hook` can reserve LWLocks or shared memory. Shared memory is reserved by calling:

```
void RequestAddinShmemSpace(int size)
```

from your `shmem_request_hook`.

LWLocks are reserved by calling:

```
void RequestNamedLWLockTranche(const char *tranche_name, int
num_lwlocks)
```

from your `shmem_request_hook`. This will ensure that an array of `num_lwlocks` `LWLocks` is available under the name `tranche_name`. Use `GetNamedLWLockTranche` to get a pointer to this array.

An example of a `shmem_request_hook` can be found in `contrib/pg_stat_statements/pg_stat_statements.c` in the PostgreSQL source tree.

To avoid possible race-conditions, each backend should use the `LWLock` `AddinShmemInitLock` when connecting to and initializing its allocation of shared memory, as shown here:

```
static mystruct *ptr = NULL;

if (!ptr)
{
    bool    found;

    LWLockAcquire(AddinShmemInitLock, LW_EXCLUSIVE);
    ptr = ShmemInitStruct("my struct name", size, &found);
    if (!found)
    {
        initialize contents of shmem area;
        acquire any requested LWLocks using:
        ptr->locks = GetNamedLWLockTranche("my tranche
name");
    }
    LWLockRelease(AddinShmemInitLock);
}
```

### 38.10.11. Using C++ for Extensibility

Although the PostgreSQL backend is written in C, it is possible to write extensions in C++ if these guidelines are followed:

- All functions accessed by the backend must present a C interface to the backend; these C functions can then call C++ functions. For example, `extern C` linkage is required for backend-accessed functions. This is also necessary for any functions that are passed as pointers between the backend and C++ code.
- Free memory using the appropriate deallocation method. For example, most backend memory is allocated using `palloc()`, so use `pfree()` to free it. Using C++ `delete` in such cases will fail.
- Prevent exceptions from propagating into the C code (use a catch-all block at the top level of all `extern C` functions). This is necessary even if the C++ code does not explicitly throw any exceptions, because events like out-of-memory can still throw exceptions. Any exceptions must be caught and appropriate errors passed back to the C interface. If possible, compile C++ with `-fno-exceptions` to eliminate exceptions entirely; in such cases, you must check for failures in your C++ code, e.g., check for `NULL` returned by `new()`.
- If calling backend functions from C++ code, be sure that the C++ call stack contains only plain old data structures (POD). This is necessary because backend errors generate a distant `longjmp()` that does not properly unroll a C++ call stack with non-POD objects.

In summary, it is best to place C++ code behind a wall of `extern C` functions that interface to the backend, and avoid exception, memory, and call stack leakage.

## 38.11. Function Optimization Information

By default, a function is just a “black box” that the database system knows very little about the behavior of. However, that means that queries using the function may be executed much less efficiently than they could be. It is possible to supply additional knowledge that helps the planner optimize function calls.

Some basic facts can be supplied by declarative annotations provided in the `CREATE FUNCTION` command. Most important of these is the function's volatility category (`IMMUTABLE`, `STABLE`, or `VOLATILE`); one should always be careful to specify this correctly when defining a function. The parallel safety property (`PARALLEL UNSAFE`, `PARALLEL RESTRICTED`, or `PARALLEL SAFE`) must also be specified if you hope to use the function in parallelized queries. It can also be useful to specify the function's estimated execution cost, and/or the number of rows a set-returning function is estimated to return. However, the declarative way of specifying those two facts only allows specifying a constant value, which is often inadequate.

It is also possible to attach a *planner support function* to an SQL-callable function (called its *target function*), and thereby provide knowledge about the target function that is too complex to be represented declaratively. Planner support functions have to be written in C (although their target functions might not be), so this is an advanced feature that relatively few people will use.

A planner support function must have the SQL signature

```
supportfn(internal) returns internal
```

It is attached to its target function by specifying the `SUPPORT` clause when creating the target function.

The details of the API for planner support functions can be found in file `src/include/nodes/supportnodes.h` in the PostgreSQL source code. Here we provide just an overview of what planner support functions can do. The set of possible requests to a support function is extensible, so more things might be possible in future versions.

Some function calls can be simplified during planning based on properties specific to the function. For example, `int4mul(n, 1)` could be simplified to just `n`. This type of transformation can be performed by a planner support function, by having it implement the `SupportRequestSimplify` request type. The support function will be called for each instance of its target function found in a query parse tree. If it finds that the particular call can be simplified into some other form, it can build and return a parse tree representing that expression. This will automatically work for operators based on the function, too — in the example just given, `n * 1` would also be simplified to `n`. (But note that this is just an example; this particular optimization is not actually performed by standard PostgreSQL.) We make no guarantee that PostgreSQL will never call the target function in cases that the support function could simplify. Ensure rigorous equivalence between the simplified expression and an actual execution of the target function.

For target functions that return `boolean`, it is often useful to estimate the fraction of rows that will be selected by a `WHERE` clause using that function. This can be done by a support function that implements the `SupportRequestSelectivity` request type.

If the target function's run time is highly dependent on its inputs, it may be useful to provide a non-constant cost estimate for it. This can be done by a support function that implements the `SupportRequestCost` request type.

For target functions that return sets, it is often useful to provide a non-constant estimate for the number of rows that will be returned. This can be done by a support function that implements the `SupportRequestRows` request type.

For target functions that return `boolean`, it may be possible to convert a function call appearing in `WHERE` into an indexable operator clause or clauses. The converted clauses might be exactly equivalent to the function's condition, or they could be somewhat weaker (that is, they might accept some values that the function condition does not). In the latter case the index condition is said to be *lossy*; it can

still be used to scan an index, but the function call will have to be executed for each row returned by the index to see if it really passes the `WHERE` condition or not. To create such conditions, the support function must implement the `SupportRequestIndexCondition` request type.

## 38.12. User-Defined Aggregates

Aggregate functions in PostgreSQL are defined in terms of *state values* and *state transition functions*. That is, an aggregate operates using a state value that is updated as each successive input row is processed. To define a new aggregate function, one selects a data type for the state value, an initial value for the state, and a state transition function. The state transition function takes the previous state value and the aggregate's input value(s) for the current row, and returns a new state value. A *final function* can also be specified, in case the desired result of the aggregate is different from the data that needs to be kept in the running state value. The final function takes the ending state value and returns whatever is wanted as the aggregate result. In principle, the transition and final functions are just ordinary functions that could also be used outside the context of the aggregate. (In practice, it's often helpful for performance reasons to create specialized transition functions that can only work when called as part of an aggregate.)

Thus, in addition to the argument and result data types seen by a user of the aggregate, there is an internal state-value data type that might be different from both the argument and result types.

If we define an aggregate that does not use a final function, we have an aggregate that computes a running function of the column values from each row. `sum` is an example of this kind of aggregate. `sum` starts at zero and always adds the current row's value to its running total. For example, if we want to make a `sum` aggregate to work on a data type for complex numbers, we only need the addition function for that data type. The aggregate definition would be:

```
CREATE AGGREGATE sum (complex)
(
    sfunc = complex_add,
    stype = complex,
    initcond = '(0,0)'
);
```

which we might use like this:

```
SELECT sum(a) FROM test_complex;
```

```

      sum
-----
(34,53.9)
```

(Notice that we are relying on function overloading: there is more than one aggregate named `sum`, but PostgreSQL can figure out which kind of `sum` applies to a column of type `complex`.)

The above definition of `sum` will return zero (the initial state value) if there are no nonnull input values. Perhaps we want to return null in that case instead — the SQL standard expects `sum` to behave that way. We can do this simply by omitting the `initcond` phrase, so that the initial state value is null. Ordinarily this would mean that the `sfunc` would need to check for a null state-value input. But for `sum` and some other simple aggregates like `max` and `min`, it is sufficient to insert the first nonnull input value into the state variable and then start applying the transition function at the second nonnull input value. PostgreSQL will do that automatically if the initial state value is null and the transition function is marked “strict” (i.e., not to be called for null inputs).

Another bit of default behavior for a “strict” transition function is that the previous state value is retained unchanged whenever a null input value is encountered. Thus, null values are ignored. If you

need some other behavior for null inputs, do not declare your transition function as strict; instead code it to test for null inputs and do whatever is needed.

`avg` (average) is a more complex example of an aggregate. It requires two pieces of running state: the sum of the inputs and the count of the number of inputs. The final result is obtained by dividing these quantities. Average is typically implemented by using an array as the state value. For example, the built-in implementation of `avg(float8)` looks like:

```
CREATE AGGREGATE avg (float8)
(
    sfunc = float8_accum,
    stype = float8[],
    finalfunc = float8_avg,
    initcond = '{0,0,0}'
);
```

### Note

`float8_accum` requires a three-element array, not just two elements, because it accumulates the sum of squares as well as the sum and count of the inputs. This is so that it can be used for some other aggregates as well as `avg`.

Aggregate function calls in SQL allow `DISTINCT` and `ORDER BY` options that control which rows are fed to the aggregate's transition function and in what order. These options are implemented behind the scenes and are not the concern of the aggregate's support functions.

For further details see the `CREATE AGGREGATE` command.

## 38.12.1. Moving-Aggregate Mode

Aggregate functions can optionally support *moving-aggregate mode*, which allows substantially faster execution of aggregate functions within windows with moving frame starting points. (See Section 3.5 and Section 4.2.8 for information about use of aggregate functions as window functions.) The basic idea is that in addition to a normal “forward” transition function, the aggregate provides an *inverse transition function*, which allows rows to be removed from the aggregate's running state value when they exit the window frame. For example a sum aggregate, which uses addition as the forward transition function, would use subtraction as the inverse transition function. Without an inverse transition function, the window function mechanism must recalculate the aggregate from scratch each time the frame starting point moves, resulting in run time proportional to the number of input rows times the average frame length. With an inverse transition function, the run time is only proportional to the number of input rows.

The inverse transition function is passed the current state value and the aggregate input value(s) for the earliest row included in the current state. It must reconstruct what the state value would have been if the given input row had never been aggregated, but only the rows following it. This sometimes requires that the forward transition function keep more state than is needed for plain aggregation mode. Therefore, the moving-aggregate mode uses a completely separate implementation from the plain mode: it has its own state data type, its own forward transition function, and its own final function if needed. These can be the same as the plain mode's data type and functions, if there is no need for extra state.

As an example, we could extend the `sum` aggregate given above to support moving-aggregate mode like this:

```
CREATE AGGREGATE sum (complex)
```

```
(
    sfunc = complex_add,
    stype = complex,
    initcond = '(0,0)',
    msfunc = complex_add,
    minvfunc = complex_sub,
    mstype = complex,
    minitcond = '(0,0)'
);
```

The parameters whose names begin with `m` define the moving-aggregate implementation. Except for the inverse transition function `minvfunc`, they correspond to the plain-aggregate parameters without `m`.

The forward transition function for moving-aggregate mode is not allowed to return null as the new state value. If the inverse transition function returns null, this is taken as an indication that the inverse function cannot reverse the state calculation for this particular input, and so the aggregate calculation will be redone from scratch for the current frame starting position. This convention allows moving-aggregate mode to be used in situations where there are some infrequent cases that are impractical to reverse out of the running state value. The inverse transition function can “punt” on these cases, and yet still come out ahead so long as it can work for most cases. As an example, an aggregate working with floating-point numbers might choose to punt when a NaN (not a number) input has to be removed from the running state value.

When writing moving-aggregate support functions, it is important to be sure that the inverse transition function can reconstruct the correct state value exactly. Otherwise there might be user-visible differences in results depending on whether the moving-aggregate mode is used. An example of an aggregate for which adding an inverse transition function seems easy at first, yet where this requirement cannot be met is `sum` over `float4` or `float8` inputs. A naive declaration of `sum(float8)` could be

```
CREATE AGGREGATE unsafe_sum (float8)
(
    stype = float8,
    sfunc = float8pl,
    mstype = float8,
    msfunc = float8pl,
    minvfunc = float8mi
);
```

This aggregate, however, can give wildly different results than it would have without the inverse transition function. For example, consider

```
SELECT
    unsafe_sum(x) OVER (ORDER BY n ROWS BETWEEN CURRENT ROW AND 1
    FOLLOWING)
FROM (VALUES (1, 1.0e20::float8),
            (2, 1.0::float8)) AS v (n,x);
```

This query returns 0 as its second result, rather than the expected answer of 1. The cause is the limited precision of floating-point values: adding 1 to `1e20` results in `1e20` again, and so subtracting `1e20` from that yields 0, not 1. Note that this is a limitation of floating-point arithmetic in general, not a limitation of PostgreSQL.

## 38.12.2. Polymorphic and Variadic Aggregates

Aggregate functions can use polymorphic state transition functions or final functions, so that the same functions can be used to implement multiple aggregates. See Section 38.2.5 for an explanation of

polymorphic functions. Going a step further, the aggregate function itself can be specified with polymorphic input type(s) and state type, allowing a single aggregate definition to serve for multiple input data types. Here is an example of a polymorphic aggregate:

```
CREATE AGGREGATE array_accum (anycompatible)
(
    sfunc = array_append,
    stype = anycompatiblearray,
    initcond = '{}'
);
```

Here, the actual state type for any given aggregate call is the array type having the actual input type as elements. The behavior of the aggregate is to concatenate all the inputs into an array of that type. (Note: the built-in aggregate `array_agg` provides similar functionality, with better performance than this definition would have.)

Here's the output using two different actual data types as arguments:

```
SELECT attrelid::regclass, array_accum(attname)
FROM pg_attribute
WHERE attnum > 0 AND attrelid = 'pg_tablespace'::regclass
GROUP BY attrelid;
```

attrelid	array_accum
pg_tablespace	{spcname,spcowner,spcacl,spcoptions}

(1 row)

```
SELECT attrelid::regclass, array_accum(atttypid::regtype)
FROM pg_attribute
WHERE attnum > 0 AND attrelid = 'pg_tablespace'::regclass
GROUP BY attrelid;
```

attrelid	array_accum
pg_tablespace	{name,oid,aclitem[],text[]}

(1 row)

Ordinarily, an aggregate function with a polymorphic result type has a polymorphic state type, as in the above example. This is necessary because otherwise the final function cannot be declared sensibly: it would need to have a polymorphic result type but no polymorphic argument type, which `CREATE FUNCTION` will reject on the grounds that the result type cannot be deduced from a call. But sometimes it is inconvenient to use a polymorphic state type. The most common case is where the aggregate support functions are to be written in C and the state type should be declared as `internal` because there is no SQL-level equivalent for it. To address this case, it is possible to declare the final function as taking extra “dummy” arguments that match the input arguments of the aggregate. Such dummy arguments are always passed as null values since no specific value is available when the final function is called. Their only use is to allow a polymorphic final function's result type to be connected to the aggregate's input type(s). For example, the definition of the built-in aggregate `array_agg` is equivalent to

```
CREATE FUNCTION array_agg_transfn(internal, anynonarray)
RETURNS internal ...;
CREATE FUNCTION array_agg_finalfn(internal, anynonarray)
RETURNS anyarray ...;
```



```
CREATE AGGREGATE array_agg (anynonarray)
(
    sfunc = array_agg_transfn,
    stype = internal,
    finalfunc = array_agg_finalfn,
    finalfunc_extra
);
```

Here, the `finalfunc_extra` option specifies that the final function receives, in addition to the state value, extra dummy argument(s) corresponding to the aggregate's input argument(s). The extra `anynonarray` argument allows the declaration of `array_agg_finalfn` to be valid.

An aggregate function can be made to accept a varying number of arguments by declaring its last argument as a `VARIADIC` array, in much the same fashion as for regular functions; see Section 38.5.6. The aggregate's transition function(s) must have the same array type as their last argument. The transition function(s) typically would also be marked `VARIADIC`, but this is not strictly required.

### Note

Variadic aggregates are easily misused in connection with the `ORDER BY` option (see Section 4.2.7), since the parser cannot tell whether the wrong number of actual arguments have been given in such a combination. Keep in mind that everything to the right of `ORDER BY` is a sort key, not an argument to the aggregate. For example, in

```
SELECT myaggregate(a ORDER BY a, b, c) FROM ...
```

the parser will see this as a single aggregate function argument and three sort keys. However, the user might have intended

```
SELECT myaggregate(a, b, c ORDER BY a) FROM ...
```

If `myaggregate` is variadic, both these calls could be perfectly valid.

For the same reason, it's wise to think twice before creating aggregate functions with the same names and different numbers of regular arguments.

## 38.12.3. Ordered-Set Aggregates

The aggregates we have been describing so far are “normal” aggregates. PostgreSQL also supports *ordered-set aggregates*, which differ from normal aggregates in two key ways. First, in addition to ordinary aggregated arguments that are evaluated once per input row, an ordered-set aggregate can have “direct” arguments that are evaluated only once per aggregation operation. Second, the syntax for the ordinary aggregated arguments specifies a sort ordering for them explicitly. An ordered-set aggregate is usually used to implement a computation that depends on a specific row ordering, for instance rank or percentile, so that the sort ordering is a required aspect of any call. For example, the built-in definition of `percentile_disc` is equivalent to:

```
CREATE FUNCTION ordered_set_transition(internal, anyelement)
    RETURNS internal ...;
CREATE FUNCTION percentile_disc_final(internal, float8, anyelement)
    RETURNS anyelement ...;

CREATE AGGREGATE percentile_disc (float8 ORDER BY anyelement)
(
```

```

    sfunc = ordered_set_transition,
    stype = internal,
    finalfunc = percentile_disc_final,
    finalfunc_extra
);

```

This aggregate takes a `float8` direct argument (the percentile fraction) and an aggregated input that can be of any sortable data type. It could be used to obtain a median household income like this:

```

SELECT percentile_disc(0.5) WITHIN GROUP (ORDER BY income) FROM
   households;
 percentile_disc
-----
              50489

```

Here, `0.5` is a direct argument; it would make no sense for the percentile fraction to be a value varying across rows.

Unlike the case for normal aggregates, the sorting of input rows for an ordered-set aggregate is *not* done behind the scenes, but is the responsibility of the aggregate's support functions. The typical implementation approach is to keep a reference to a “tuplesort” object in the aggregate's state value, feed the incoming rows into that object, and then complete the sorting and read out the data in the final function. This design allows the final function to perform special operations such as injecting additional “hypothetical” rows into the data to be sorted. While normal aggregates can often be implemented with support functions written in PL/pgSQL or another PL language, ordered-set aggregates generally have to be written in C, since their state values aren't definable as any SQL data type. (In the above example, notice that the state value is declared as type `internal` — this is typical.) Also, because the final function performs the sort, it is not possible to continue adding input rows by executing the transition function again later. This means the final function is not `READ_ONLY`; it must be declared in `CREATE AGGREGATE` as `READ_WRITE`, or as `SHAREABLE` if it's possible for additional final-function calls to make use of the already-sorted state.

The state transition function for an ordered-set aggregate receives the current state value plus the aggregated input values for each row, and returns the updated state value. This is the same definition as for normal aggregates, but note that the direct arguments (if any) are not provided. The final function receives the last state value, the values of the direct arguments if any, and (if `finalfunc_extra` is specified) null values corresponding to the aggregated input(s). As with normal aggregates, `finalfunc_extra` is only really useful if the aggregate is polymorphic; then the extra dummy argument(s) are needed to connect the final function's result type to the aggregate's input type(s).

Currently, ordered-set aggregates cannot be used as window functions, and therefore there is no need for them to support moving-aggregate mode.

## 38.12.4. Partial Aggregation

Optionally, an aggregate function can support *partial aggregation*. The idea of partial aggregation is to run the aggregate's state transition function over different subsets of the input data independently, and then to combine the state values resulting from those subsets to produce the same state value that would have resulted from scanning all the input in a single operation. This mode can be used for parallel aggregation by having different worker processes scan different portions of a table. Each worker produces a partial state value, and at the end those state values are combined to produce a final state value. (In the future this mode might also be used for purposes such as combining aggregations over local and remote tables; but that is not implemented yet.)

To support partial aggregation, the aggregate definition must provide a *combine function*, which takes two values of the aggregate's state type (representing the results of aggregating over two subsets of the input rows) and produces a new value of the state type, representing what the state would have been after aggregating over the combination of those sets of rows. It is unspecified what the relative

order of the input rows from the two sets would have been. This means that it's usually impossible to define a useful combine function for aggregates that are sensitive to input row order.

As simple examples, MAX and MIN aggregates can be made to support partial aggregation by specifying the combine function as the same greater-of-two or lesser-of-two comparison function that is used as their transition function. SUM aggregates just need an addition function as combine function. (Again, this is the same as their transition function, unless the state value is wider than the input data type.)

The combine function is treated much like a transition function that happens to take a value of the state type, not of the underlying input type, as its second argument. In particular, the rules for dealing with null values and strict functions are similar. Also, if the aggregate definition specifies a non-null `initcond`, keep in mind that that will be used not only as the initial state for each partial aggregation run, but also as the initial state for the combine function, which will be called to combine each partial result into that state.

If the aggregate's state type is declared as `internal`, it is the combine function's responsibility that its result is allocated in the correct memory context for aggregate state values. This means in particular that when the first input is NULL it's invalid to simply return the second input, as that value will be in the wrong context and will not have sufficient lifespan.

When the aggregate's state type is declared as `internal`, it is usually also appropriate for the aggregate definition to provide a *serialization function* and a *deserialization function*, which allow such a state value to be copied from one process to another. Without these functions, parallel aggregation cannot be performed, and future applications such as local/remote aggregation will probably not work either.

A serialization function must take a single argument of type `internal` and return a result of type `bytea`, which represents the state value packaged up into a flat blob of bytes. Conversely, a deserialization function reverses that conversion. It must take two arguments of types `bytea` and `internal`, and return a result of type `internal`. (The second argument is unused and is always zero, but it is required for type-safety reasons.) The result of the deserialization function should simply be allocated in the current memory context, as unlike the combine function's result, it is not long-lived.

Worth noting also is that for an aggregate to be executed in parallel, the aggregate itself must be marked `PARALLEL SAFE`. The parallel-safety markings on its support functions are not consulted.

## 38.12.5. Support Functions for Aggregates

A function written in C can detect that it is being called as an aggregate support function by calling `AggCheckCallContext`, for example:

```
if (AggCheckCallContext(fcinfo, NULL))
```

One reason for checking this is that when it is true, the first input must be a temporary state value and can therefore safely be modified in-place rather than allocating a new copy. See `int8inc()` for an example. (While aggregate transition functions are always allowed to modify the transition value in-place, aggregate final functions are generally discouraged from doing so; if they do so, the behavior must be declared when creating the aggregate. See `CREATE AGGREGATE` for more detail.)

The second argument of `AggCheckCallContext` can be used to retrieve the memory context in which aggregate state values are being kept. This is useful for transition functions that wish to use “expanded” objects (see Section 38.13.1) as their state values. On first call, the transition function should return an expanded object whose memory context is a child of the aggregate state context, and then keep returning the same expanded object on subsequent calls. See `array_append()` for an example. (`array_append()` is not the transition function of any built-in aggregate, but it is written to behave efficiently when used as transition function of a custom aggregate.)

Another support routine available to aggregate functions written in C is `AggGetAggref`, which returns the `Aggref` parse node that defines the aggregate call. This is mainly useful for ordered-set

aggregates, which can inspect the substructure of the `Aggref` node to find out what sort ordering they are supposed to implement. Examples can be found in `orderedsetaggs.c` in the PostgreSQL source code.

## 38.13. User-Defined Types

As described in Section 38.2, PostgreSQL can be extended to support new data types. This section describes how to define new base types, which are data types defined below the level of the SQL language. Creating a new base type requires implementing functions to operate on the type in a low-level language, usually C.

The examples in this section can be found in `complex.sql` and `complex.c` in the `src/tutorial` directory of the source distribution. See the `README` file in that directory for instructions about running the examples.

A user-defined type must always have input and output functions. These functions determine how the type appears in strings (for input by the user and output to the user) and how the type is organized in memory. The input function takes a null-terminated character string as its argument and returns the internal (in memory) representation of the type. The output function takes the internal representation of the type as argument and returns a null-terminated character string. If we want to do anything more with the type than merely store it, we must provide additional functions to implement whatever operations we'd like to have for the type.

Suppose we want to define a type `complex` that represents complex numbers. A natural way to represent a complex number in memory would be the following C structure:

```
typedef struct Complex {
    double    x;
    double    y;
} Complex;
```

We will need to make this a pass-by-reference type, since it's too large to fit into a single `Datum` value.

As the external string representation of the type, we choose a string of the form `(x,y)`.

The input and output functions are usually not hard to write, especially the output function. But when defining the external string representation of the type, remember that you must eventually write a complete and robust parser for that representation as your input function. For instance:

```
PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(complex_in);

Datum
complex_in(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    char        *str = PG_GETARG_CSTRING(0);
    double      x,
               y;
    Complex     *result;

    if (sscanf(str, " ( %lf , %lf )", &x, &y) != 2)
        ereport(ERROR,
                (errcode(ERRCODE_INVALID_TEXT_REPRESENTATION),
                 errmsg("invalid input syntax for type %s: \"%s\"",
                        "complex", str)));

    result = (Complex *) palloc(sizeof(Complex));
```

```

    result->x = x;
    result->y = y;
    PG_RETURN_POINTER(result);
}

```

The output function can simply be:

```

PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(complex_out);

Datum
complex_out(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    Complex    *complex = (Complex *) PG_GETARG_POINTER(0);
    char       *result;

    result = psprintf("(%g,%g)", complex->x, complex->y);
    PG_RETURN_CSTRING(result);
}

```

You should be careful to make the input and output functions inverses of each other. If you do not, you will have severe problems when you need to dump your data into a file and then read it back in. This is a particularly common problem when floating-point numbers are involved.

Optionally, a user-defined type can provide binary input and output routines. Binary I/O is normally faster but less portable than textual I/O. As with textual I/O, it is up to you to define exactly what the external binary representation is. Most of the built-in data types try to provide a machine-independent binary representation. For `complex`, we will piggy-back on the binary I/O converters for type `float8`:

```

PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(complex_recv);

Datum
complex_recv(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    StringInfo  buf = (StringInfo) PG_GETARG_POINTER(0);
    Complex     *result;

    result = (Complex *) palloc(sizeof(Complex));
    result->x = pq_getmsgfloat8(buf);
    result->y = pq_getmsgfloat8(buf);
    PG_RETURN_POINTER(result);
}

PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(complex_send);

Datum
complex_send(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    Complex     *complex = (Complex *) PG_GETARG_POINTER(0);
    StringInfoData buf;

    pq_begintypsend(&buf);
    pq_sendfloat8(&buf, complex->x);
    pq_sendfloat8(&buf, complex->y);
    PG_RETURN_BYTEA_P(pq_endtypsend(&buf));
}

```

```
}

```

Once we have written the I/O functions and compiled them into a shared library, we can define the complex type in SQL. First we declare it as a shell type:

```
CREATE TYPE complex;
```

This serves as a placeholder that allows us to reference the type while defining its I/O functions. Now we can define the I/O functions:

```
CREATE FUNCTION complex_in(cstring)
    RETURNS complex
    AS 'filename'
    LANGUAGE C IMMUTABLE STRICT;

CREATE FUNCTION complex_out(complex)
    RETURNS cstring
    AS 'filename'
    LANGUAGE C IMMUTABLE STRICT;

CREATE FUNCTION complex_recv(internal)
    RETURNS complex
    AS 'filename'
    LANGUAGE C IMMUTABLE STRICT;

CREATE FUNCTION complex_send(complex)
    RETURNS bytea
    AS 'filename'
    LANGUAGE C IMMUTABLE STRICT;
```

Finally, we can provide the full definition of the data type:

```
CREATE TYPE complex (
    internallength = 16,
    input = complex_in,
    output = complex_out,
    receive = complex_recv,
    send = complex_send,
    alignment = double
);
```

When you define a new base type, PostgreSQL automatically provides support for arrays of that type. The array type typically has the same name as the base type with the underscore character (`_`) prepended.

Once the data type exists, we can declare additional functions to provide useful operations on the data type. Operators can then be defined atop the functions, and if needed, operator classes can be created to support indexing of the data type. These additional layers are discussed in following sections.

If the internal representation of the data type is variable-length, the internal representation must follow the standard layout for variable-length data: the first four bytes must be a `char[4]` field which is never accessed directly (customarily named `vl_len_`). You must use the `SET_VARSIZE( )` macro to store the total size of the datum (including the length field itself) in this field and `VARSIZE( )` to retrieve it. (These macros exist because the length field may be encoded depending on platform.)

For further details see the description of the `CREATE TYPE` command.

## 38.13.1. TOAST Considerations

If the values of your data type vary in size (in internal form), it's usually desirable to make the data type TOAST-able (see Section 73.2). You should do this even if the values are always too small to be compressed or stored externally, because TOAST can save space on small data too, by reducing header overhead.

To support TOAST storage, the C functions operating on the data type must always be careful to unpack any toasted values they are handed by using `PG_DETOAST_DATUM`. (This detail is customarily hidden by defining type-specific `GETARG_DATATYPE_P` macros.) Then, when running the `CREATE TYPE` command, specify the internal length as `variable` and select some appropriate storage option other than `plain`.

If data alignment is unimportant (either just for a specific function or because the data type specifies byte alignment anyway) then it's possible to avoid some of the overhead of `PG_DETOAST_DATUM`. You can use `PG_DETOAST_DATUM_PACKED` instead (customarily hidden by defining a `GETARG_DATATYPE_PP` macro) and using the macros `VARSIZE_ANY_EXHDR` and `VARDATA_ANY` to access a potentially-packed datum. Again, the data returned by these macros is not aligned even if the data type definition specifies an alignment. If the alignment is important you must go through the regular `PG_DETOAST_DATUM` interface.

### Note

Older code frequently declares `vl_len_` as an `int32` field instead of `char[4]`. This is OK as long as the struct definition has other fields that have at least `int32` alignment. But it is dangerous to use such a struct definition when working with a potentially unaligned datum; the compiler may take it as license to assume the datum actually is aligned, leading to core dumps on architectures that are strict about alignment.

Another feature that's enabled by TOAST support is the possibility of having an *expanded* in-memory data representation that is more convenient to work with than the format that is stored on disk. The regular or “flat” varlena storage format is ultimately just a blob of bytes; it cannot for example contain pointers, since it may get copied to other locations in memory. For complex data types, the flat format may be quite expensive to work with, so PostgreSQL provides a way to “expand” the flat format into a representation that is more suited to computation, and then pass that format in-memory between functions of the data type.

To use expanded storage, a data type must define an expanded format that follows the rules given in `src/include/utils/expandeddatum.h`, and provide functions to “expand” a flat varlena value into expanded format and “flatten” the expanded format back to the regular varlena representation. Then ensure that all C functions for the data type can accept either representation, possibly by converting one into the other immediately upon receipt. This does not require fixing all existing functions for the data type at once, because the standard `PG_DETOAST_DATUM` macro is defined to convert expanded inputs into regular flat format. Therefore, existing functions that work with the flat varlena format will continue to work, though slightly inefficiently, with expanded inputs; they need not be converted until and unless better performance is important.

C functions that know how to work with an expanded representation typically fall into two categories: those that can only handle expanded format, and those that can handle either expanded or flat varlena inputs. The former are easier to write but may be less efficient overall, because converting a flat input to expanded form for use by a single function may cost more than is saved by operating on the expanded format. When only expanded format need be handled, conversion of flat inputs to expanded form can be hidden inside an argument-fetching macro, so that the function appears no more complex than one working with traditional varlena input. To handle both types of input, write an argument-fetching function that will detoast external, short-header, and compressed varlena inputs, but not expanded inputs. Such a function can be defined as returning a pointer to a union of the flat varlena format and

the expanded format. Callers can use the `VARATT_IS_EXPANDED_HEADER ( )` macro to determine which format they received.

The TOAST infrastructure not only allows regular varlena values to be distinguished from expanded values, but also distinguishes “read-write” and “read-only” pointers to expanded values. C functions that only need to examine an expanded value, or will only change it in safe and non-semantically-visible ways, need not care which type of pointer they receive. C functions that produce a modified version of an input value are allowed to modify an expanded input value in-place if they receive a read-write pointer, but must not modify the input if they receive a read-only pointer; in that case they have to copy the value first, producing a new value to modify. A C function that has constructed a new expanded value should always return a read-write pointer to it. Also, a C function that is modifying a read-write expanded value in-place should take care to leave the value in a sane state if it fails partway through.

For examples of working with expanded values, see the standard array infrastructure, particularly `src/backend/utils/adt/array_expanded.c`.

## 38.14. User-Defined Operators

Every operator is “syntactic sugar” for a call to an underlying function that does the real work; so you must first create the underlying function before you can create the operator. However, an operator is *not merely* syntactic sugar, because it carries additional information that helps the query planner optimize queries that use the operator. The next section will be devoted to explaining that additional information.

PostgreSQL supports prefix and infix operators. Operators can be overloaded; that is, the same operator name can be used for different operators that have different numbers and types of operands. When a query is executed, the system determines the operator to call from the number and types of the provided operands.

Here is an example of creating an operator for adding two complex numbers. We assume we’ve already created the definition of type `complex` (see Section 38.13). First we need a function that does the work, then we can define the operator:

```
CREATE FUNCTION complex_add(complex, complex)
    RETURNS complex
    AS 'filename', 'complex_add'
    LANGUAGE C IMMUTABLE STRICT;

CREATE OPERATOR + (
    leftarg = complex,
    rightarg = complex,
    function = complex_add,
    commutator = +
);
```

Now we could execute a query like this:

```
SELECT (a + b) AS c FROM test_complex;

      c
-----
(5.2,6.05)
(133.42,144.95)
```

We’ve shown how to create a binary operator here. To create a prefix operator, just omit the `leftarg`. The `function` clause and the argument clauses are the only required items in `CREATE OPERATOR`.



The `commutator` clause shown in the example is an optional hint to the query optimizer. Further details about `commutator` and other optimizer hints appear in the next section.

## 38.15. Operator Optimization Information

A PostgreSQL operator definition can include several optional clauses that tell the system useful things about how the operator behaves. These clauses should be provided whenever appropriate, because they can make for considerable speedups in execution of queries that use the operator. But if you provide them, you must be sure that they are right! Incorrect use of an optimization clause can result in slow queries, subtly wrong output, or other Bad Things. You can always leave out an optimization clause if you are not sure about it; the only consequence is that queries might run slower than they need to.

Additional optimization clauses might be added in future versions of PostgreSQL. The ones described here are all the ones that release 16.2 understands.

It is also possible to attach a planner support function to the function that underlies an operator, providing another way of telling the system about the behavior of the operator. See Section 38.11 for more information.

### 38.15.1. COMMUTATOR

The `COMMUTATOR` clause, if provided, names an operator that is the commutator of the operator being defined. We say that operator *A* is the commutator of operator *B* if  $(x \ A \ y)$  equals  $(y \ B \ x)$  for all possible input values *x*, *y*. Notice that *B* is also the commutator of *A*. For example, operators `<` and `>` for a particular data type are usually each others' commutators, and operator `+` is usually commutative with itself. But operator `-` is usually not commutative with anything.

The left operand type of a commutable operator is the same as the right operand type of its commutator, and vice versa. So the name of the commutator operator is all that PostgreSQL needs to be given to look up the commutator, and that's all that needs to be provided in the `COMMUTATOR` clause.

It's critical to provide commutator information for operators that will be used in indexes and join clauses, because this allows the query optimizer to “flip around” such a clause to the forms needed for different plan types. For example, consider a query with a `WHERE` clause like `tab1.x = tab2.y`, where `tab1.x` and `tab2.y` are of a user-defined type, and suppose that `tab2.y` is indexed. The optimizer cannot generate an index scan unless it can determine how to flip the clause around to `tab2.y = tab1.x`, because the index-scan machinery expects to see the indexed column on the left of the operator it is given. PostgreSQL will *not* simply assume that this is a valid transformation — the creator of the `=` operator must specify that it is valid, by marking the operator with commutator information.

When you are defining a self-commutative operator, you just do it. When you are defining a pair of commutative operators, things are a little trickier: how can the first one to be defined refer to the other one, which you haven't defined yet? There are two solutions to this problem:

- One way is to omit the `COMMUTATOR` clause in the first operator that you define, and then provide one in the second operator's definition. Since PostgreSQL knows that commutative operators come in pairs, when it sees the second definition it will automatically go back and fill in the missing `COMMUTATOR` clause in the first definition.
- The other, more straightforward way is just to include `COMMUTATOR` clauses in both definitions. When PostgreSQL processes the first definition and realizes that `COMMUTATOR` refers to a non-existent operator, the system will make a dummy entry for that operator in the system catalog. This dummy entry will have valid data only for the operator name, left and right operand types, and result type, since that's all that PostgreSQL can deduce at this point. The first operator's catalog entry will link to this dummy entry. Later, when you define the second operator, the system updates the dummy entry with the additional information from the second definition. If you try to use the dummy operator before it's been filled in, you'll just get an error message.

## 38.15.2. NEGATOR

The `NEGATOR` clause, if provided, names an operator that is the negator of the operator being defined. We say that operator *A* is the negator of operator *B* if both return Boolean results and  $(x \ A \ y)$  equals `NOT (x B y)` for all possible inputs *x*, *y*. Notice that *B* is also the negator of *A*. For example, `<` and `>=` are a negator pair for most data types. An operator can never validly be its own negator.

Unlike commutators, a pair of unary operators could validly be marked as each other's negators; that would mean  $(A \ x)$  equals `NOT (B x)` for all *x*.

An operator's negator must have the same left and/or right operand types as the operator to be defined, so just as with `COMMUTATOR`, only the operator name need be given in the `NEGATOR` clause.

Providing a negator is very helpful to the query optimizer since it allows expressions like `NOT (x = y)` to be simplified into  $x \ <> \ y$ . This comes up more often than you might think, because `NOT` operations can be inserted as a consequence of other rearrangements.

Pairs of negator operators can be defined using the same methods explained above for commutator pairs.

## 38.15.3. RESTRICT

The `RESTRICT` clause, if provided, names a restriction selectivity estimation function for the operator. (Note that this is a function name, not an operator name.) `RESTRICT` clauses only make sense for binary operators that return `boolean`. The idea behind a restriction selectivity estimator is to guess what fraction of the rows in a table will satisfy a `WHERE`-clause condition of the form:

```
column OP constant
```

for the current operator and a particular constant value. This assists the optimizer by giving it some idea of how many rows will be eliminated by `WHERE` clauses that have this form. (What happens if the constant is on the left, you might be wondering? Well, that's one of the things that `COMMUTATOR` is for...)

Writing new restriction selectivity estimation functions is far beyond the scope of this chapter, but fortunately you can usually just use one of the system's standard estimators for many of your own operators. These are the standard restriction estimators:

```
eqsel for =
neqsel for <>
scalarltsel for <
scalarelel for <=
scalargtsel for >
scalargesel for >=
```

You can frequently get away with using either `eqsel` or `neqsel` for operators that have very high or very low selectivity, even if they aren't really equality or inequality. For example, the approximate-equality geometric operators use `eqsel` on the assumption that they'll usually only match a small fraction of the entries in a table.

You can use `scalarltsel`, `scalarelel`, `scalargtsel` and `scalargesel` for comparisons on data types that have some sensible means of being converted into numeric scalars for range comparisons. If possible, add the data type to those understood by the function `convert_to_scalar()` in `src/backend/utils/adt/selfuncs.c`. (Eventually, this function should be replaced by per-data-type functions identified through a column of the `pg_type` system catalog; but that hasn't happened yet.) If you do not do this, things will still work, but the optimizer's estimates won't be as good as they could be.

Another useful built-in selectivity estimation function is `matchingsel`, which will work for almost any binary operator, if standard MCV and/or histogram statistics are collected for the input data type(s). Its default estimate is set to twice the default estimate used in `eqsel`, making it most suitable for comparison operators that are somewhat less strict than equality. (Or you could call the underlying `generic_restriction_selectivity` function, providing a different default estimate.)

There are additional selectivity estimation functions designed for geometric operators in `src/backend/utils/adt/geo_selfuncs.c`: `areasel`, `positionsel`, and `contsel`. At this writing these are just stubs, but you might want to use them (or even better, improve them) anyway.

## 38.15.4. JOIN

The `JOIN` clause, if provided, names a join selectivity estimation function for the operator. (Note that this is a function name, not an operator name.) `JOIN` clauses only make sense for binary operators that return `boolean`. The idea behind a join selectivity estimator is to guess what fraction of the rows in a pair of tables will satisfy a `WHERE`-clause condition of the form:

```
table1.column1 OP table2.column2
```

for the current operator. As with the `RESTRICT` clause, this helps the optimizer very substantially by letting it figure out which of several possible join sequences is likely to take the least work.

As before, this chapter will make no attempt to explain how to write a join selectivity estimator function, but will just suggest that you use one of the standard estimators if one is applicable:

```
eqjoinselect for =
neqjoinselect for <>
scalartjoinselect for <
scalartlejoinselect for <=
scalartgtjoinselect for >
scalartgejoinselect for >=
matchingjoinselect for generic matching operators
areajoinselect for 2D area-based comparisons
positionjoinselect for 2D position-based comparisons
contjoinselect for 2D containment-based comparisons
```

## 38.15.5. HASHES

The `HASHES` clause, if present, tells the system that it is permissible to use the hash join method for a join based on this operator. `HASHES` only makes sense for a binary operator that returns `boolean`, and in practice the operator must represent equality for some data type or pair of data types.

The assumption underlying hash join is that the join operator can only return true for pairs of left and right values that hash to the same hash code. If two values get put in different hash buckets, the join will never compare them at all, implicitly assuming that the result of the join operator must be false. So it never makes sense to specify `HASHES` for operators that do not represent some form of equality. In most cases it is only practical to support hashing for operators that take the same data type on both sides. However, sometimes it is possible to design compatible hash functions for two or more data types; that is, functions that will generate the same hash codes for “equal” values, even though the values have different representations. For example, it's fairly simple to arrange this property when hashing integers of different widths.

To be marked `HASHES`, the join operator must appear in a hash index operator family. This is not enforced when you create the operator, since of course the referencing operator family couldn't exist yet. But attempts to use the operator in hash joins will fail at run time if no such operator family exists. The system needs the operator family to find the data-type-specific hash function(s) for the operator's input data type(s). Of course, you must also create suitable hash functions before you can create the operator family.

Care should be exercised when preparing a hash function, because there are machine-dependent ways in which it might fail to do the right thing. For example, if your data type is a structure in which there might be uninteresting pad bits, you cannot simply pass the whole structure to `hash_any`. (Unless you write your other operators and functions to ensure that the unused bits are always zero, which is the recommended strategy.) Another example is that on machines that meet the IEEE floating-point standard, negative zero and positive zero are different values (different bit patterns) but they are defined to compare equal. If a float value might contain negative zero then extra steps are needed to ensure it generates the same hash value as positive zero.

A hash-joinable operator must have a commutator (itself if the two operand data types are the same, or a related equality operator if they are different) that appears in the same operator family. If this is not the case, planner errors might occur when the operator is used. Also, it is a good idea (but not strictly required) for a hash operator family that supports multiple data types to provide equality operators for every combination of the data types; this allows better optimization.

### Note

The function underlying a hash-joinable operator must be marked immutable or stable. If it is volatile, the system will never attempt to use the operator for a hash join.

### Note

If a hash-joinable operator has an underlying function that is marked strict, the function must also be complete: that is, it should return true or false, never null, for any two nonnull inputs. If this rule is not followed, hash-optimization of `IN` operations might generate wrong results. (Specifically, `IN` might return false where the correct answer according to the standard would be null; or it might yield an error complaining that it wasn't prepared for a null result.)

## 38.15.6. MERGES

The `MERGES` clause, if present, tells the system that it is permissible to use the merge-join method for a join based on this operator. `MERGES` only makes sense for a binary operator that returns `boolean`, and in practice the operator must represent equality for some data type or pair of data types.

Merge join is based on the idea of sorting the left- and right-hand tables into order and then scanning them in parallel. So, both data types must be capable of being fully ordered, and the join operator must be one that can only succeed for pairs of values that fall at the “same place” in the sort order. In practice this means that the join operator must behave like equality. But it is possible to merge-join two distinct data types so long as they are logically compatible. For example, the `smallint-versus-integer` equality operator is merge-joinable. We only need sorting operators that will bring both data types into a logically compatible sequence.

To be marked `MERGES`, the join operator must appear as an equality member of a `btree` index operator family. This is not enforced when you create the operator, since of course the referencing operator family couldn't exist yet. But the operator will not actually be used for merge joins unless a matching operator family can be found. The `MERGES` flag thus acts as a hint to the planner that it's worth looking for a matching operator family.

A merge-joinable operator must have a commutator (itself if the two operand data types are the same, or a related equality operator if they are different) that appears in the same operator family. If this is not the case, planner errors might occur when the operator is used. Also, it is a good idea (but not strictly required) for a `btree` operator family that supports multiple data types to provide equality operators for every combination of the data types; this allows better optimization.

### Note

The function underlying a merge-joinable operator must be marked immutable or stable. If it is volatile, the system will never attempt to use the operator for a merge join.

## 38.16. Interfacing Extensions to Indexes

The procedures described thus far let you define new types, new functions, and new operators. However, we cannot yet define an index on a column of a new data type. To do this, we must define an *operator class* for the new data type. Later in this section, we will illustrate this concept in an example: a new operator class for the B-tree index method that stores and sorts complex numbers in ascending absolute value order.

Operator classes can be grouped into *operator families* to show the relationships between semantically compatible classes. When only a single data type is involved, an operator class is sufficient, so we'll focus on that case first and then return to operator families.

### 38.16.1. Index Methods and Operator Classes

The `pg_am` table contains one row for every index method (internally known as access method). Support for regular access to tables is built into PostgreSQL, but all index methods are described in `pg_am`. It is possible to add a new index access method by writing the necessary code and then creating an entry in `pg_am` — but that is beyond the scope of this chapter (see Chapter 64).

The routines for an index method do not directly know anything about the data types that the index method will operate on. Instead, an *operator class* identifies the set of operations that the index method needs to use to work with a particular data type. Operator classes are so called because one thing they specify is the set of WHERE-clause operators that can be used with an index (i.e., can be converted into an index-scan qualification). An operator class can also specify some *support function* that are needed by the internal operations of the index method, but do not directly correspond to any WHERE-clause operator that can be used with the index.

It is possible to define multiple operator classes for the same data type and index method. By doing this, multiple sets of indexing semantics can be defined for a single data type. For example, a B-tree index requires a sort ordering to be defined for each data type it works on. It might be useful for a complex-number data type to have one B-tree operator class that sorts the data by complex absolute value, another that sorts by real part, and so on. Typically, one of the operator classes will be deemed most commonly useful and will be marked as the default operator class for that data type and index method.

The same operator class name can be used for several different index methods (for example, both B-tree and hash index methods have operator classes named `int4_ops`), but each such class is an independent entity and must be defined separately.

### 38.16.2. Index Method Strategies

The operators associated with an operator class are identified by “strategy numbers”, which serve to identify the semantics of each operator within the context of its operator class. For example, B-trees impose a strict ordering on keys, lesser to greater, and so operators like “less than” and “greater than or equal to” are interesting with respect to a B-tree. Because PostgreSQL allows the user to define operators, PostgreSQL cannot look at the name of an operator (e.g., `<` or `>=`) and tell what kind of comparison it is. Instead, the index method defines a set of “strategies”, which can be thought of as generalized operators. Each operator class specifies which actual operator corresponds to each strategy for a particular data type and interpretation of the index semantics.

The B-tree index method defines five strategies, shown in Table 38.3.

**Table 38.3. B-Tree Strategies**

Operation	Strategy Number
less than	1
less than or equal	2
equal	3
greater than or equal	4
greater than	5

Hash indexes support only equality comparisons, and so they use only one strategy, shown in Table 38.4.

**Table 38.4. Hash Strategies**

Operation	Strategy Number
equal	1

GiST indexes are more flexible: they do not have a fixed set of strategies at all. Instead, the “consistency” support routine of each particular GiST operator class interprets the strategy numbers however it likes. As an example, several of the built-in GiST index operator classes index two-dimensional geometric objects, providing the “R-tree” strategies shown in Table 38.5. Four of these are true two-dimensional tests (overlaps, same, contains, contained by); four of them consider only the X direction; and the other four provide the same tests in the Y direction.

**Table 38.5. GiST Two-Dimensional “R-tree” Strategies**

Operation	Strategy Number
strictly left of	1
does not extend to right of	2
overlaps	3
does not extend to left of	4
strictly right of	5
same	6
contains	7
contained by	8
does not extend above	9
strictly below	10
strictly above	11
does not extend below	12

SP-GiST indexes are similar to GiST indexes in flexibility: they don't have a fixed set of strategies. Instead the support routines of each operator class interpret the strategy numbers according to the operator class's definition. As an example, the strategy numbers used by the built-in operator classes for points are shown in Table 38.6.

**Table 38.6. SP-GiST Point Strategies**

Operation	Strategy Number
strictly left of	1
strictly right of	5
same	6

Operation	Strategy Number
contained by	8
strictly below	10
strictly above	11

GIN indexes are similar to GiST and SP-GiST indexes, in that they don't have a fixed set of strategies either. Instead the support routines of each operator class interpret the strategy numbers according to the operator class's definition. As an example, the strategy numbers used by the built-in operator class for arrays are shown in Table 38.7.

**Table 38.7. GIN Array Strategies**

Operation	Strategy Number
overlap	1
contains	2
is contained by	3
equal	4

BRIN indexes are similar to GiST, SP-GiST and GIN indexes in that they don't have a fixed set of strategies either. Instead the support routines of each operator class interpret the strategy numbers according to the operator class's definition. As an example, the strategy numbers used by the built-in Minmax operator classes are shown in Table 38.8.

**Table 38.8. BRIN Minmax Strategies**

Operation	Strategy Number
less than	1
less than or equal	2
equal	3
greater than or equal	4
greater than	5

Notice that all the operators listed above return Boolean values. In practice, all operators defined as index method search operators must return type `boolean`, since they must appear at the top level of a `WHERE` clause to be used with an index. (Some index access methods also support *ordering operators*, which typically don't return Boolean values; that feature is discussed in Section 38.16.7.)

### 38.16.3. Index Method Support Routines

Strategies aren't usually enough information for the system to figure out how to use an index. In practice, the index methods require additional support routines in order to work. For example, the B-tree index method must be able to compare two keys and determine whether one is greater than, equal to, or less than the other. Similarly, the hash index method must be able to compute hash codes for key values. These operations do not correspond to operators used in qualifications in SQL commands; they are administrative routines used by the index methods, internally.

Just as with strategies, the operator class identifies which specific functions should play each of these roles for a given data type and semantic interpretation. The index method defines the set of functions it needs, and the operator class identifies the correct functions to use by assigning them to the “support function numbers” specified by the index method.

Additionally, some opclasses allow users to specify parameters which control their behavior. Each builtin index access method has an optional `options` support function, which defines a set of op-class-specific parameters.

B-trees require a comparison support function, and allow four additional support functions to be supplied at the operator class author's option, as shown in Table 38.9. The requirements for these support functions are explained further in Section 67.3.

**Table 38.9. B-Tree Support Functions**

Function	Support Number
Compare two keys and return an integer less than zero, zero, or greater than zero, indicating whether the first key is less than, equal to, or greater than the second	1
Return the addresses of C-callable sort support function(s) (optional)	2
Compare a test value to a base value plus/minus an offset, and return true or false according to the comparison result (optional)	3
Determine if it is safe for indexes that use the operator class to apply the btree deduplication optimization (optional)	4
Define options that are specific to this operator class (optional)	5

Hash indexes require one support function, and allow two additional ones to be supplied at the operator class author's option, as shown in Table 38.10.

**Table 38.10. Hash Support Functions**

Function	Support Number
Compute the 32-bit hash value for a key	1
Compute the 64-bit hash value for a key given a 64-bit salt; if the salt is 0, the low 32 bits of the result must match the value that would have been computed by function 1 (optional)	2
Define options that are specific to this operator class (optional)	3

GiST indexes have eleven support functions, six of which are optional, as shown in Table 38.11. (For more information see Chapter 68.)

**Table 38.11. GiST Support Functions**

Function	Description	Support Number
consistent	determine whether key satisfies the query qualifier	1
union	compute union of a set of keys	2
compress	compute a compressed representation of a key or value to be indexed (optional)	3
decompress	compute a decompressed representation of a compressed key (optional)	4
penalty	compute penalty for inserting new key into subtree with given subtree's key	5
picksplit	determine which entries of a page are to be moved to the new page and compute the union keys for resulting pages	6
same	compare two keys and return true if they are equal	7
distance	determine distance from key to query value (optional)	8



Function	Description	Support Number
fetch	compute original representation of a compressed key for index-only scans (optional)	9
options	define options that are specific to this operator class (optional)	10
sortsupport	provide a sort comparator to be used in fast index builds (optional)	11

SP-GiST indexes have six support functions, one of which is optional, as shown in Table 38.12. (For more information see Chapter 69.)

**Table 38.12. SP-GiST Support Functions**

Function	Description	Support Number
config	provide basic information about the operator class	1
choose	determine how to insert a new value into an inner tuple	2
picksplit	determine how to partition a set of values	3
inner_consistent	determine which sub-partitions need to be searched for a query	4
leaf_consistent	determine whether key satisfies the query qualifier	5
options	define options that are specific to this operator class (optional)	6

GIN indexes have seven support functions, four of which are optional, as shown in Table 38.13. (For more information see Chapter 70.)

**Table 38.13. GIN Support Functions**

Function	Description	Support Number
compare	compare two keys and return an integer less than zero, zero, or greater than zero, indicating whether the first key is less than, equal to, or greater than the second	1
extractValue	extract keys from a value to be indexed	2
extractQuery	extract keys from a query condition	3
consistent	determine whether value matches query condition (Boolean variant) (optional if support function 6 is present)	4
comparePartial	compare partial key from query and key from index, and return an integer less than zero, zero, or greater than zero, indicating whether GIN should ignore this index entry, treat the entry as a match, or stop the index scan (optional)	5
triConsistent	determine whether value matches query condition (ternary variant) (optional if support function 4 is present)	6

Function	Description	Support Number
options	define options that are specific to this operator class (optional)	7

BRIN indexes have five basic support functions, one of which is optional, as shown in Table 38.14. Some versions of the basic functions require additional support functions to be provided. (For more information see Section 71.3.)

**Table 38.14. BRIN Support Functions**

Function	Description	Support Number
opcInfo	return internal information describing the indexed columns' summary data	1
add_value	add a new value to an existing summary index tuple	2
consistent	determine whether value matches query condition	3
union	compute union of two summary tuples	4
options	define options that are specific to this operator class (optional)	5

Unlike search operators, support functions return whichever data type the particular index method expects; for example in the case of the comparison function for B-trees, a signed integer. The number and types of the arguments to each support function are likewise dependent on the index method. For B-tree and hash the comparison and hashing support functions take the same input data types as do the operators included in the operator class, but this is not the case for most GiST, SP-GiST, GIN, and BRIN support functions.

## 38.16.4. An Example

Now that we have seen the ideas, here is the promised example of creating a new operator class. (You can find a working copy of this example in `src/tutorial/complex.c` and `src/tutorial/complex.sql` in the source distribution.) The operator class encapsulates operators that sort complex numbers in absolute value order, so we choose the name `complex_abs_ops`. First, we need a set of operators. The procedure for defining operators was discussed in Section 38.14. For an operator class on B-trees, the operators we require are:

- absolute-value less-than (strategy 1)
- absolute-value less-than-or-equal (strategy 2)
- absolute-value equal (strategy 3)
- absolute-value greater-than-or-equal (strategy 4)
- absolute-value greater-than (strategy 5)

The least error-prone way to define a related set of comparison operators is to write the B-tree comparison support function first, and then write the other functions as one-line wrappers around the support function. This reduces the odds of getting inconsistent results for corner cases. Following this approach, we first write:

```
#define Mag(c) ((c)->x*(c)->x + (c)->y*(c)->y)

static int
complex_abs_cmp_internal(Complex *a, Complex *b)
```

```
{
    double      amag = Mag(a),
               bmag = Mag(b);

    if (amag < bmag)
        return -1;
    if (amag > bmag)
        return 1;
    return 0;
}
```

Now the less-than function looks like:

```
PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(complex_abs_lt);

Datum
complex_abs_lt(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    Complex      *a = (Complex *) PG_GETARG_POINTER(0);
    Complex      *b = (Complex *) PG_GETARG_POINTER(1);

    PG_RETURN_BOOL(complex_abs_cmp_internal(a, b) < 0);
}
```

The other four functions differ only in how they compare the internal function's result to zero.

Next we declare the functions and the operators based on the functions to SQL:

```
CREATE FUNCTION complex_abs_lt(complex, complex) RETURNS bool
    AS 'filename', 'complex_abs_lt'
    LANGUAGE C IMMUTABLE STRICT;

CREATE OPERATOR < (
    leftarg = complex, rightarg = complex, procedure =
    complex_abs_lt,
    commutator = > , negator = >= ,
    restrict = scalarltsel, join = scalarltjoinsel
);
```

It is important to specify the correct commutator and negator operators, as well as suitable restriction and join selectivity functions, otherwise the optimizer will be unable to make effective use of the index.

Other things worth noting are happening here:

- There can only be one operator named, say, = and taking type `complex` for both operands. In this case we don't have any other operator = for `complex`, but if we were building a practical data type we'd probably want = to be the ordinary equality operation for complex numbers (and not the equality of the absolute values). In that case, we'd need to use some other operator name for `complex_abs_eq`.
- Although PostgreSQL can cope with functions having the same SQL name as long as they have different argument data types, C can only cope with one global function having a given name. So we shouldn't name the C function something simple like `abs_eq`. Usually it's a good practice to include the data type name in the C function name, so as not to conflict with functions for other data types.

- We could have made the SQL name of the function `abs_eq`, relying on PostgreSQL to distinguish it by argument data types from any other SQL function of the same name. To keep the example simple, we make the function have the same names at the C level and SQL level.

The next step is the registration of the support routine required by B-trees. The example C code that implements this is in the same file that contains the operator functions. This is how we declare the function:

```
CREATE FUNCTION complex_abs_cmp(complex, complex)
    RETURNS integer
    AS 'filename'
    LANGUAGE C IMMUTABLE STRICT;
```

Now that we have the required operators and support routine, we can finally create the operator class:

```
CREATE OPERATOR CLASS complex_abs_ops
    DEFAULT FOR TYPE complex USING btree AS
        OPERATOR          1          < ,
        OPERATOR          2          <= ,
        OPERATOR          3          = ,
        OPERATOR          4          >= ,
        OPERATOR          5          > ,
        FUNCTION           1          complex_abs_cmp(complex, complex);
```

And we're done! It should now be possible to create and use B-tree indexes on `complex` columns.

We could have written the operator entries more verbosely, as in:

```
OPERATOR          1          < (complex, complex) ,
```

but there is no need to do so when the operators take the same data type we are defining the operator class for.

The above example assumes that you want to make this new operator class the default B-tree operator class for the `complex` data type. If you don't, just leave out the word `DEFAULT`.

## 38.16.5. Operator Classes and Operator Families

So far we have implicitly assumed that an operator class deals with only one data type. While there certainly can be only one data type in a particular index column, it is often useful to index operations that compare an indexed column to a value of a different data type. Also, if there is use for a cross-data-type operator in connection with an operator class, it is often the case that the other data type has a related operator class of its own. It is helpful to make the connections between related classes explicit, because this can aid the planner in optimizing SQL queries (particularly for B-tree operator classes, since the planner contains a great deal of knowledge about how to work with them).

To handle these needs, PostgreSQL uses the concept of an *operator family*. An operator family contains one or more operator classes, and can also contain indexable operators and corresponding support functions that belong to the family as a whole but not to any single class within the family. We say that such operators and functions are “loose” within the family, as opposed to being bound into a specific class. Typically each operator class contains single-data-type operators while cross-data-type operators are loose in the family.

All the operators and functions in an operator family must have compatible semantics, where the compatibility requirements are set by the index method. You might therefore wonder why bother to single out particular subsets of the family as operator classes; and indeed for many purposes the class

divisions are irrelevant and the family is the only interesting grouping. The reason for defining operator classes is that they specify how much of the family is needed to support any particular index. If there is an index using an operator class, then that operator class cannot be dropped without dropping the index — but other parts of the operator family, namely other operator classes and loose operators, could be dropped. Thus, an operator class should be specified to contain the minimum set of operators and functions that are reasonably needed to work with an index on a specific data type, and then related but non-essential operators can be added as loose members of the operator family.

As an example, PostgreSQL has a built-in B-tree operator family `integer_ops`, which includes operator classes `int8_ops`, `int4_ops`, and `int2_ops` for indexes on `bigint` (`int8`), `integer` (`int4`), and `smallint` (`int2`) columns respectively. The family also contains cross-data-type comparison operators allowing any two of these types to be compared, so that an index on one of these types can be searched using a comparison value of another type. The family could be duplicated by these definitions:

```
CREATE OPERATOR FAMILY integer_ops USING btree;

CREATE OPERATOR CLASS int8_ops
DEFAULT FOR TYPE int8 USING btree FAMILY integer_ops AS
    -- standard int8 comparisons
    OPERATOR 1 < ,
    OPERATOR 2 <= ,
    OPERATOR 3 = ,
    OPERATOR 4 >= ,
    OPERATOR 5 > ,
    FUNCTION 1 btint8cmp(int8, int8) ,
    FUNCTION 2 btint8sortsupport(internal) ,
    FUNCTION 3 in_range(int8, int8, int8, boolean, boolean) ,
    FUNCTION 4 btequalimage(oid) ;

CREATE OPERATOR CLASS int4_ops
DEFAULT FOR TYPE int4 USING btree FAMILY integer_ops AS
    -- standard int4 comparisons
    OPERATOR 1 < ,
    OPERATOR 2 <= ,
    OPERATOR 3 = ,
    OPERATOR 4 >= ,
    OPERATOR 5 > ,
    FUNCTION 1 btint4cmp(int4, int4) ,
    FUNCTION 2 btint4sortsupport(internal) ,
    FUNCTION 3 in_range(int4, int4, int4, boolean, boolean) ,
    FUNCTION 4 btequalimage(oid) ;

CREATE OPERATOR CLASS int2_ops
DEFAULT FOR TYPE int2 USING btree FAMILY integer_ops AS
    -- standard int2 comparisons
    OPERATOR 1 < ,
    OPERATOR 2 <= ,
    OPERATOR 3 = ,
    OPERATOR 4 >= ,
    OPERATOR 5 > ,
    FUNCTION 1 btint2cmp(int2, int2) ,
    FUNCTION 2 btint2sortsupport(internal) ,
    FUNCTION 3 in_range(int2, int2, int2, boolean, boolean) ,
    FUNCTION 4 btequalimage(oid) ;

ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY integer_ops USING btree ADD
```

```

-- cross-type comparisons int8 vs int2
OPERATOR 1 < (int8, int2) ,
OPERATOR 2 <= (int8, int2) ,
OPERATOR 3 = (int8, int2) ,
OPERATOR 4 >= (int8, int2) ,
OPERATOR 5 > (int8, int2) ,
FUNCTION 1 btint82cmp(int8, int2) ,

-- cross-type comparisons int8 vs int4
OPERATOR 1 < (int8, int4) ,
OPERATOR 2 <= (int8, int4) ,
OPERATOR 3 = (int8, int4) ,
OPERATOR 4 >= (int8, int4) ,
OPERATOR 5 > (int8, int4) ,
FUNCTION 1 btint84cmp(int8, int4) ,

-- cross-type comparisons int4 vs int2
OPERATOR 1 < (int4, int2) ,
OPERATOR 2 <= (int4, int2) ,
OPERATOR 3 = (int4, int2) ,
OPERATOR 4 >= (int4, int2) ,
OPERATOR 5 > (int4, int2) ,
FUNCTION 1 btint42cmp(int4, int2) ,

-- cross-type comparisons int4 vs int8
OPERATOR 1 < (int4, int8) ,
OPERATOR 2 <= (int4, int8) ,
OPERATOR 3 = (int4, int8) ,
OPERATOR 4 >= (int4, int8) ,
OPERATOR 5 > (int4, int8) ,
FUNCTION 1 btint48cmp(int4, int8) ,

-- cross-type comparisons int2 vs int8
OPERATOR 1 < (int2, int8) ,
OPERATOR 2 <= (int2, int8) ,
OPERATOR 3 = (int2, int8) ,
OPERATOR 4 >= (int2, int8) ,
OPERATOR 5 > (int2, int8) ,
FUNCTION 1 btint28cmp(int2, int8) ,

-- cross-type comparisons int2 vs int4
OPERATOR 1 < (int2, int4) ,
OPERATOR 2 <= (int2, int4) ,
OPERATOR 3 = (int2, int4) ,
OPERATOR 4 >= (int2, int4) ,
OPERATOR 5 > (int2, int4) ,
FUNCTION 1 btint24cmp(int2, int4) ,

-- cross-type in_range functions
FUNCTION 3 in_range(int4, int4, int8, boolean, boolean) ,
FUNCTION 3 in_range(int4, int4, int2, boolean, boolean) ,
FUNCTION 3 in_range(int2, int2, int8, boolean, boolean) ,
FUNCTION 3 in_range(int2, int2, int4, boolean, boolean) ;

```

Notice that this definition “overloads” the operator strategy and support function numbers: each number occurs multiple times within the family. This is allowed so long as each instance of a particular number has distinct input data types. The instances that have both input types equal to an operator

class's input type are the primary operators and support functions for that operator class, and in most cases should be declared as part of the operator class rather than as loose members of the family.

In a B-tree operator family, all the operators in the family must sort compatibly, as is specified in detail in Section 67.2. For each operator in the family there must be a support function having the same two input data types as the operator. It is recommended that a family be complete, i.e., for each combination of data types, all operators are included. Each operator class should include just the non-cross-type operators and support function for its data type.

To build a multiple-data-type hash operator family, compatible hash support functions must be created for each data type supported by the family. Here compatibility means that the functions are guaranteed to return the same hash code for any two values that are considered equal by the family's equality operators, even when the values are of different types. This is usually difficult to accomplish when the types have different physical representations, but it can be done in some cases. Furthermore, casting a value from one data type represented in the operator family to another data type also represented in the operator family via an implicit or binary coercion cast must not change the computed hash value. Notice that there is only one support function per data type, not one per equality operator. It is recommended that a family be complete, i.e., provide an equality operator for each combination of data types. Each operator class should include just the non-cross-type equality operator and the support function for its data type.

GiST, SP-GiST, and GIN indexes do not have any explicit notion of cross-data-type operations. The set of operators supported is just whatever the primary support functions for a given operator class can handle.

In BRIN, the requirements depends on the framework that provides the operator classes. For operator classes based on minmax, the behavior required is the same as for B-tree operator families: all the operators in the family must sort compatibly, and casts must not change the associated sort ordering.

### Note

Prior to PostgreSQL 8.3, there was no concept of operator families, and so any cross-data-type operators intended to be used with an index had to be bound directly into the index's operator class. While this approach still works, it is deprecated because it makes an index's dependencies too broad, and because the planner can handle cross-data-type comparisons more effectively when both data types have operators in the same operator family.

## 38.16.6. System Dependencies on Operator Classes

PostgreSQL uses operator classes to infer the properties of operators in more ways than just whether they can be used with indexes. Therefore, you might want to create operator classes even if you have no intention of indexing any columns of your data type.

In particular, there are SQL features such as `ORDER BY` and `DISTINCT` that require comparison and sorting of values. To implement these features on a user-defined data type, PostgreSQL looks for the default B-tree operator class for the data type. The “equals” member of this operator class defines the system's notion of equality of values for `GROUP BY` and `DISTINCT`, and the sort ordering imposed by the operator class defines the default `ORDER BY` ordering.

If there is no default B-tree operator class for a data type, the system will look for a default hash operator class. But since that kind of operator class only provides equality, it is only able to support grouping not sorting.

When there is no default operator class for a data type, you will get errors like “could not identify an ordering operator” if you try to use these SQL features with the data type.

### Note

In PostgreSQL versions before 7.4, sorting and grouping operations would implicitly use operators named `=`, `<`, and `>`. The new behavior of relying on default operator classes avoids having to make any assumption about the behavior of operators with particular names.

Sorting by a non-default B-tree operator class is possible by specifying the class's less-than operator in a `USING` option, for example

```
SELECT * FROM mytable ORDER BY somecol USING ~<~;
```

Alternatively, specifying the class's greater-than operator in `USING` selects a descending-order sort.

Comparison of arrays of a user-defined type also relies on the semantics defined by the type's default B-tree operator class. If there is no default B-tree operator class, but there is a default hash operator class, then array equality is supported, but not ordering comparisons.

Another SQL feature that requires even more data-type-specific knowledge is the `RANGE offset PRECEDING/FOLLOWING` framing option for window functions (see Section 4.2.8). For a query such as

```
SELECT sum(x) OVER (ORDER BY x RANGE BETWEEN 5 PRECEDING AND 10
FOLLOWING)
FROM mytable;
```

it is not sufficient to know how to order by `x`; the database must also understand how to “subtract 5” or “add 10” to the current row's value of `x` to identify the bounds of the current window frame. Comparing the resulting bounds to other rows' values of `x` is possible using the comparison operators provided by the B-tree operator class that defines the `ORDER BY` ordering — but addition and subtraction operators are not part of the operator class, so which ones should be used? Hard-wiring that choice would be undesirable, because different sort orders (different B-tree operator classes) might need different behavior. Therefore, a B-tree operator class can specify an *in\_range* support function that encapsulates the addition and subtraction behaviors that make sense for its sort order. It can even provide more than one *in\_range* support function, in case there is more than one data type that makes sense to use as the offset in `RANGE` clauses. If the B-tree operator class associated with the window's `ORDER BY` clause does not have a matching *in\_range* support function, the `RANGE offset PRECEDING/FOLLOWING` option is not supported.

Another important point is that an equality operator that appears in a hash operator family is a candidate for hash joins, hash aggregation, and related optimizations. The hash operator family is essential here since it identifies the hash function(s) to use.

## 38.16.7. Ordering Operators

Some index access methods (currently, only GiST and SP-GiST) support the concept of *ordering operators*. What we have been discussing so far are *search operators*. A search operator is one for which the index can be searched to find all rows satisfying `WHERE indexed_column operator constant`. Note that nothing is promised about the order in which the matching rows will be returned. In contrast, an ordering operator does not restrict the set of rows that can be returned, but instead determines their order. An ordering operator is one for which the index can be scanned to return rows in the order represented by `ORDER BY indexed_column operator constant`. The reason for defining ordering operators that way is that it supports nearest-neighbor searches, if the operator is one that measures distance. For example, a query like



```
SELECT * FROM places ORDER BY location <-> point '(101,456)' LIMIT
10;
```

finds the ten places closest to a given target point. A GiST index on the location column can do this efficiently because `<->` is an ordering operator.

While search operators have to return Boolean results, ordering operators usually return some other type, such as float or numeric for distances. This type is normally not the same as the data type being indexed. To avoid hard-wiring assumptions about the behavior of different data types, the definition of an ordering operator is required to name a B-tree operator family that specifies the sort ordering of the result data type. As was stated in the previous section, B-tree operator families define PostgreSQL's notion of ordering, so this is a natural representation. Since the point `<->` operator returns `float8`, it could be specified in an operator class creation command like this:

```
OPERATOR 15      <-> (point, point) FOR ORDER BY float_ops
```

where `float_ops` is the built-in operator family that includes operations on `float8`. This declaration states that the index is able to return rows in order of increasing values of the `<->` operator.

## 38.16.8. Special Features of Operator Classes

There are two special features of operator classes that we have not discussed yet, mainly because they are not useful with the most commonly used index methods.

Normally, declaring an operator as a member of an operator class (or family) means that the index method can retrieve exactly the set of rows that satisfy a `WHERE` condition using the operator. For example:

```
SELECT * FROM table WHERE integer_column < 4;
```

can be satisfied exactly by a B-tree index on the integer column. But there are cases where an index is useful as an inexact guide to the matching rows. For example, if a GiST index stores only bounding boxes for geometric objects, then it cannot exactly satisfy a `WHERE` condition that tests overlap between nonrectangular objects such as polygons. Yet we could use the index to find objects whose bounding box overlaps the bounding box of the target object, and then do the exact overlap test only on the objects found by the index. If this scenario applies, the index is said to be “lossy” for the operator. Lossy index searches are implemented by having the index method return a *recheck* flag when a row might or might not really satisfy the query condition. The core system will then test the original query condition on the retrieved row to see whether it should be returned as a valid match. This approach works if the index is guaranteed to return all the required rows, plus perhaps some additional rows, which can be eliminated by performing the original operator invocation. The index methods that support lossy searches (currently, GiST, SP-GiST and GIN) allow the support functions of individual operator classes to set the recheck flag, and so this is essentially an operator-class feature.

Consider again the situation where we are storing in the index only the bounding box of a complex object such as a polygon. In this case there's not much value in storing the whole polygon in the index entry — we might as well store just a simpler object of type `box`. This situation is expressed by the `STORAGE` option in `CREATE OPERATOR CLASS`: we'd write something like:

```
CREATE OPERATOR CLASS polygon_ops
    DEFAULT FOR TYPE polygon USING gist AS
    ...
    STORAGE box;
```

At present, only the GiST, SP-GiST, GIN and BRIN index methods support a `STORAGE` type that's different from the column data type. The GiST `compress` and `decompress` support routines must deal with data-type conversion when `STORAGE` is used. SP-GiST likewise requires a `compress` support function to convert to the storage type, when that is different; if an SP-GiST opclass also supports retrieving data, the reverse conversion must be handled by the `consistent` function. In GIN, the `STORAGE` type identifies the type of the “key” values, which normally is different from the type of the indexed column — for example, an operator class for integer-array columns might have keys that are just integers. The GIN `extractValue` and `extractQuery` support routines are responsible for extracting keys from indexed values. BRIN is similar to GIN: the `STORAGE` type identifies the type of the stored summary values, and operator classes' support procedures are responsible for interpreting the summary values correctly.

## 38.17. Packaging Related Objects into an Extension

A useful extension to PostgreSQL typically includes multiple SQL objects; for example, a new data type will require new functions, new operators, and probably new index operator classes. It is helpful to collect all these objects into a single package to simplify database management. PostgreSQL calls such a package an *extension*. To define an extension, you need at least a *script file* that contains the SQL commands to create the extension's objects, and a *control file* that specifies a few basic properties of the extension itself. If the extension includes C code, there will typically also be a shared library file into which the C code has been built. Once you have these files, a simple `CREATE EXTENSION` command loads the objects into your database.

The main advantage of using an extension, rather than just running the SQL script to load a bunch of “loose” objects into your database, is that PostgreSQL will then understand that the objects of the extension go together. You can drop all the objects with a single `DROP EXTENSION` command (no need to maintain a separate “uninstall” script). Even more useful, `pg_dump` knows that it should not dump the individual member objects of the extension — it will just include a `CREATE EXTENSION` command in dumps, instead. This vastly simplifies migration to a new version of the extension that might contain more or different objects than the old version. Note however that you must have the extension's control, script, and other files available when loading such a dump into a new database.

PostgreSQL will not let you drop an individual object contained in an extension, except by dropping the whole extension. Also, while you can change the definition of an extension member object (for example, via `CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION` for a function), bear in mind that the modified definition will not be dumped by `pg_dump`. Such a change is usually only sensible if you concurrently make the same change in the extension's script file. (But there are special provisions for tables containing configuration data; see Section 38.17.3.) In production situations, it's generally better to create an extension update script to perform changes to extension member objects.

The extension script may set privileges on objects that are part of the extension, using `GRANT` and `REVOKE` statements. The final set of privileges for each object (if any are set) will be stored in the `pg_init_privs` system catalog. When `pg_dump` is used, the `CREATE EXTENSION` command will be included in the dump, followed by the set of `GRANT` and `REVOKE` statements necessary to set the privileges on the objects to what they were at the time the dump was taken.

PostgreSQL does not currently support extension scripts issuing `CREATE POLICY` or `SECURITY LABEL` statements. These are expected to be set after the extension has been created. All RLS policies and security labels on extension objects will be included in dumps created by `pg_dump`.

The extension mechanism also has provisions for packaging modification scripts that adjust the definitions of the SQL objects contained in an extension. For example, if version 1.1 of an extension adds one function and changes the body of another function compared to 1.0, the extension author can provide an *update script* that makes just those two changes. The `ALTER EXTENSION UPDATE` command can then be used to apply these changes and track which version of the extension is actually installed in a given database.

The kinds of SQL objects that can be members of an extension are shown in the description of `ALTER EXTENSION`. Notably, objects that are database-cluster-wide, such as databases, roles, and tablespaces, cannot be extension members since an extension is only known within one database. (Although an extension script is not prohibited from creating such objects, if it does so they will not be tracked as part of the extension.) Also notice that while a table can be a member of an extension, its subsidiary objects such as indexes are not directly considered members of the extension. Another important point is that schemas can belong to extensions, but not vice versa: an extension as such has an unqualified name and does not exist “within” any schema. The extension's member objects, however, will belong to schemas whenever appropriate for their object types. It may or may not be appropriate for an extension to own the schema(s) its member objects are within.

If an extension's script creates any temporary objects (such as temp tables), those objects are treated as extension members for the remainder of the current session, but are automatically dropped at session end, as any temporary object would be. This is an exception to the rule that extension member objects cannot be dropped without dropping the whole extension.

### 38.17.1. Extension Files

The `CREATE EXTENSION` command relies on a control file for each extension, which must be named the same as the extension with a suffix of `.control`, and must be placed in the installation's `SHAREDIR/extension` directory. There must also be at least one SQL script file, which follows the naming pattern `extension--version.sql` (for example, `foo--1.0.sql` for version 1.0 of extension `foo`). By default, the script file(s) are also placed in the `SHAREDIR/extension` directory; but the control file can specify a different directory for the script file(s).

The file format for an extension control file is the same as for the `postgresql.conf` file, namely a list of `parameter_name = value` assignments, one per line. Blank lines and comments introduced by `#` are allowed. Be sure to quote any value that is not a single word or number.

A control file can set the following parameters:

`directory(string)`

The directory containing the extension's SQL script file(s). Unless an absolute path is given, the name is relative to the installation's `SHAREDIR` directory. The default behavior is equivalent to specifying `directory = 'extension'`.

`default_version(string)`

The default version of the extension (the one that will be installed if no version is specified in `CREATE EXTENSION`). Although this can be omitted, that will result in `CREATE EXTENSION` failing if no `VERSION` option appears, so you generally don't want to do that.

`comment(string)`

A comment (any string) about the extension. The comment is applied when initially creating an extension, but not during extension updates (since that might override user-added comments). Alternatively, the extension's comment can be set by writing a `COMMENT` command in the script file.

`encoding(string)`

The character set encoding used by the script file(s). This should be specified if the script files contain any non-ASCII characters. Otherwise the files will be assumed to be in the database encoding.

`module_pathname(string)`

The value of this parameter will be substituted for each occurrence of `MODULE_PATHNAME` in the script file(s). If it is not set, no substitution is made. Typically, this is set to `$lib-dir/shared_library_name` and then `MODULE_PATHNAME` is used in `CREATE FUNC-`

TION commands for C-language functions, so that the script files do not need to hard-wire the name of the shared library.

`requires (string)`

A list of names of extensions that this extension depends on, for example `requires = 'foo, bar'`. Those extensions must be installed before this one can be installed.

`no_relocate (string)`

A list of names of extensions that this extension depends on that should be barred from changing their schemas via `ALTER EXTENSION ... SET SCHEMA`. This is needed if this extension's script references the name of a required extension's schema (using the `@extschema:name@` syntax) in a way that cannot track renames.

`superuser (boolean)`

If this parameter is `true` (which is the default), only superusers can create the extension or update it to a new version (but see also `trusted`, below). If it is set to `false`, just the privileges required to execute the commands in the installation or update script are required. This should normally be set to `true` if any of the script commands require superuser privileges. (Such commands would fail anyway, but it's more user-friendly to give the error up front.)

`trusted (boolean)`

This parameter, if set to `true` (which is not the default), allows some non-superusers to install an extension that has `superuser` set to `true`. Specifically, installation will be permitted for anyone who has `CREATE` privilege on the current database. When the user executing `CREATE EXTENSION` is not a superuser but is allowed to install by virtue of this parameter, then the installation or update script is run as the bootstrap superuser, not as the calling user. This parameter is irrelevant if `superuser` is `false`. Generally, this should not be set true for extensions that could allow access to otherwise-superuser-only abilities, such as file system access. Also, marking an extension trusted requires significant extra effort to write the extension's installation and update script(s) securely; see Section 38.17.6.

`relocatable (boolean)`

An extension is *relocatable* if it is possible to move its contained objects into a different schema after initial creation of the extension. The default is `false`, i.e., the extension is not relocatable. See Section 38.17.2 for more information.

`schema (string)`

This parameter can only be set for non-relocatable extensions. It forces the extension to be loaded into exactly the named schema and not any other. The `schema` parameter is consulted only when initially creating an extension, not during extension updates. See Section 38.17.2 for more information.

In addition to the primary control file `extension.control`, an extension can have secondary control files named in the style `extension--version.control`. If supplied, these must be located in the script file directory. Secondary control files follow the same format as the primary control file. Any parameters set in a secondary control file override the primary control file when installing or updating to that version of the extension. However, the parameters `directory` and `default_version` cannot be set in a secondary control file.

An extension's SQL script files can contain any SQL commands, except for transaction control commands (`BEGIN`, `COMMIT`, etc.) and commands that cannot be executed inside a transaction block (such as `VACUUM`). This is because the script files are implicitly executed within a transaction block.

An extension's SQL script files can also contain lines beginning with `\echo`, which will be ignored (treated as comments) by the extension mechanism. This provision is commonly used to throw an error if the script file is fed to `psql` rather than being loaded via `CREATE EXTENSION` (see example script

in Section 38.17.7). Without that, users might accidentally load the extension's contents as “loose” objects rather than as an extension, a state of affairs that's a bit tedious to recover from.

If the extension script contains the string `@extowner@`, that string is replaced with the (suitably quoted) name of the user calling `CREATE EXTENSION` or `ALTER EXTENSION`. Typically this feature is used by extensions that are marked trusted to assign ownership of selected objects to the calling user rather than the bootstrap superuser. (One should be careful about doing so, however. For example, assigning ownership of a C-language function to a non-superuser would create a privilege escalation path for that user.)

While the script files can contain any characters allowed by the specified encoding, control files should contain only plain ASCII, because there is no way for PostgreSQL to know what encoding a control file is in. In practice this is only an issue if you want to use non-ASCII characters in the extension's comment. Recommended practice in that case is to not use the control file `comment` parameter, but instead use `COMMENT ON EXTENSION` within a script file to set the comment.

## 38.17.2. Extension Relocatability

Users often wish to load the objects contained in an extension into a different schema than the extension's author had in mind. There are three supported levels of relocatability:

- A fully relocatable extension can be moved into another schema at any time, even after it's been loaded into a database. This is done with the `ALTER EXTENSION SET SCHEMA` command, which automatically renames all the member objects into the new schema. Normally, this is only possible if the extension contains no internal assumptions about what schema any of its objects are in. Also, the extension's objects must all be in one schema to begin with (ignoring objects that do not belong to any schema, such as procedural languages). Mark a fully relocatable extension by setting `relocatable = true` in its control file.
- An extension might be relocatable during installation but not afterwards. This is typically the case if the extension's script file needs to reference the target schema explicitly, for example in setting `search_path` properties for SQL functions. For such an extension, set `relocatable = false` in its control file, and use `@extschema@` to refer to the target schema in the script file. All occurrences of this string will be replaced by the actual target schema's name (double-quoted if necessary) before the script is executed. The user can set the target schema using the `SCHEMA` option of `CREATE EXTENSION`.
- If the extension does not support relocation at all, set `relocatable = false` in its control file, and also set `schema` to the name of the intended target schema. This will prevent use of the `SCHEMA` option of `CREATE EXTENSION`, unless it specifies the same schema named in the control file. This choice is typically necessary if the extension contains internal assumptions about its schema name that can't be replaced by uses of `@extschema@`. The `@extschema@` substitution mechanism is available in this case too, although it is of limited use since the schema name is determined by the control file.

In all cases, the script file will be executed with `search_path` initially set to point to the target schema; that is, `CREATE EXTENSION` does the equivalent of this:

```
SET LOCAL search_path TO @extschema@, pg_temp;
```

This allows the objects created by the script file to go into the target schema. The script file can change `search_path` if it wishes, but that is generally undesirable. `search_path` is restored to its previous setting upon completion of `CREATE EXTENSION`.

The target schema is determined by the `schema` parameter in the control file if that is given, otherwise by the `SCHEMA` option of `CREATE EXTENSION` if that is given, otherwise the current default object creation schema (the first one in the caller's `search_path`). When the control file `schema` parameter is used, the target schema will be created if it doesn't already exist, but in the other two cases it must already exist.

If any prerequisite extensions are listed in `requires` in the control file, their target schemas are added to the initial setting of `search_path`, following the new extension's target schema. This allows their objects to be visible to the new extension's script file.

For security, `pg_temp` is automatically appended to the end of `search_path` in all cases.

Although a non-relocatable extension can contain objects spread across multiple schemas, it is usually desirable to place all the objects meant for external use into a single schema, which is considered the extension's target schema. Such an arrangement works conveniently with the default setting of `search_path` during creation of dependent extensions.

If an extension references objects belonging to another extension, it is recommended to schema-qualify those references. To do that, write `@extschema:name@` in the extension's script file, where `name` is the name of the other extension (which must be listed in this extension's `requires` list). This string will be replaced by the name (double-quoted if necessary) of that extension's target schema. Although this notation avoids the need to make hard-wired assumptions about schema names in the extension's script file, its use may embed the other extension's schema name into the installed objects of this extension. (Typically, that happens when `@extschema:name@` is used inside a string literal, such as a function body or a `search_path` setting. In other cases, the object reference is reduced to an OID during parsing and does not require subsequent lookups.) If the other extension's schema name is so embedded, you should prevent the other extension from being relocated after yours is installed, by adding the name of the other extension to this one's `no_relocate` list.

### 38.17.3. Extension Configuration Tables

Some extensions include configuration tables, which contain data that might be added or changed by the user after installation of the extension. Ordinarily, if a table is part of an extension, neither the table's definition nor its content will be dumped by `pg_dump`. But that behavior is undesirable for a configuration table; any data changes made by the user need to be included in dumps, or the extension will behave differently after a dump and restore.

To solve this problem, an extension's script file can mark a table or a sequence it has created as a configuration relation, which will cause `pg_dump` to include the table's or the sequence's contents (not its definition) in dumps. To do that, call the function `pg_extension_config_dump(regclass, text)` after creating the table or the sequence, for example

```
CREATE TABLE my_config (key text, value text);
CREATE SEQUENCE my_config_seq;

SELECT pg_catalog.pg_extension_config_dump('my_config', '');
SELECT pg_catalog.pg_extension_config_dump('my_config_seq', '');
```

Any number of tables or sequences can be marked this way. Sequences associated with `serial` or `bigserial` columns can be marked as well.

When the second argument of `pg_extension_config_dump` is an empty string, the entire contents of the table are dumped by `pg_dump`. This is usually only correct if the table is initially empty as created by the extension script. If there is a mixture of initial data and user-provided data in the table, the second argument of `pg_extension_config_dump` provides a `WHERE` condition that selects the data to be dumped. For example, you might do

```
CREATE TABLE my_config (key text, value text, standard_entry
    boolean);

SELECT pg_catalog.pg_extension_config_dump('my_config', 'WHERE NOT
    standard_entry');
```

and then make sure that `standard_entry` is true only in the rows created by the extension's script.

For sequences, the second argument of `pg_extension_config_dump` has no effect.

More complicated situations, such as initially-provided rows that might be modified by users, can be handled by creating triggers on the configuration table to ensure that modified rows are marked correctly.

You can alter the filter condition associated with a configuration table by calling `pg_extension_config_dump` again. (This would typically be useful in an extension update script.) The only way to mark a table as no longer a configuration table is to dissociate it from the extension with `ALTER EXTENSION ... DROP TABLE`.

Note that foreign key relationships between these tables will dictate the order in which the tables are dumped out by `pg_dump`. Specifically, `pg_dump` will attempt to dump the referenced-by table before the referencing table. As the foreign key relationships are set up at `CREATE EXTENSION` time (prior to data being loaded into the tables) circular dependencies are not supported. When circular dependencies exist, the data will still be dumped out but the dump will not be able to be restored directly and user intervention will be required.

Sequences associated with `serial` or `bigserial` columns need to be directly marked to dump their state. Marking their parent relation is not enough for this purpose.

## 38.17.4. Extension Updates

One advantage of the extension mechanism is that it provides convenient ways to manage updates to the SQL commands that define an extension's objects. This is done by associating a version name or number with each released version of the extension's installation script. In addition, if you want users to be able to update their databases dynamically from one version to the next, you should provide *update scripts* that make the necessary changes to go from one version to the next. Update scripts have names following the pattern `extension--old_version--target_version.sql` (for example, `foo--1.0--1.1.sql` contains the commands to modify version 1.0 of extension `foo` into version 1.1).

Given that a suitable update script is available, the command `ALTER EXTENSION UPDATE` will update an installed extension to the specified new version. The update script is run in the same environment that `CREATE EXTENSION` provides for installation scripts: in particular, `search_path` is set up in the same way, and any new objects created by the script are automatically added to the extension. Also, if the script chooses to drop extension member objects, they are automatically dissociated from the extension.

If an extension has secondary control files, the control parameters that are used for an update script are those associated with the script's target (new) version.

`ALTER EXTENSION` is able to execute sequences of update script files to achieve a requested update. For example, if only `foo--1.0--1.1.sql` and `foo--1.1--2.0.sql` are available, `ALTER EXTENSION` will apply them in sequence if an update to version 2.0 is requested when 1.0 is currently installed.

PostgreSQL doesn't assume anything about the properties of version names: for example, it does not know whether 1.1 follows 1.0. It just matches up the available version names and follows the path that requires applying the fewest update scripts. (A version name can actually be any string that doesn't contain `--` or leading or trailing `-`.)

Sometimes it is useful to provide “downgrade” scripts, for example `foo--1.1--1.0.sql` to allow reverting the changes associated with version 1.1. If you do that, be careful of the possibility that a downgrade script might unexpectedly get applied because it yields a shorter path. The risky case is where there is a “fast path” update script that jumps ahead several versions as well as a downgrade script to the fast path's start point. It might take fewer steps to apply the downgrade and then the fast

path than to move ahead one version at a time. If the downgrade script drops any irreplaceable objects, this will yield undesirable results.

To check for unexpected update paths, use this command:

```
SELECT * FROM pg_extension_update_paths('extension_name');
```

This shows each pair of distinct known version names for the specified extension, together with the update path sequence that would be taken to get from the source version to the target version, or NULL if there is no available update path. The path is shown in textual form with `--` separators. You can use `regexp_split_to_array(path, '--')` if you prefer an array format.

## 38.17.5. Installing Extensions Using Update Scripts

An extension that has been around for awhile will probably exist in several versions, for which the author will need to write update scripts. For example, if you have released a `foo` extension in versions 1.0, 1.1, and 1.2, there should be update scripts `foo--1.0--1.1.sql` and `foo--1.1--1.2.sql`. Before PostgreSQL 10, it was necessary to also create new script files `foo--1.1.sql` and `foo--1.2.sql` that directly build the newer extension versions, or else the newer versions could not be installed directly, only by installing 1.0 and then updating. That was tedious and duplicative, but now it's unnecessary, because `CREATE EXTENSION` can follow update chains automatically. For example, if only the script files `foo--1.0.sql`, `foo--1.0--1.1.sql`, and `foo--1.1--1.2.sql` are available then a request to install version 1.2 is honored by running those three scripts in sequence. The processing is the same as if you'd first installed 1.0 and then updated to 1.2. (As with `ALTER EXTENSION UPDATE`, if multiple pathways are available then the shortest is preferred.) Arranging an extension's script files in this style can reduce the amount of maintenance effort needed to produce small updates.

If you use secondary (version-specific) control files with an extension maintained in this style, keep in mind that each version needs a control file even if it has no stand-alone installation script, as that control file will determine how the implicit update to that version is performed. For example, if `foo--1.0.control` specifies `requires = 'bar'` but `foo`'s other control files do not, the extension's dependency on `bar` will be dropped when updating from 1.0 to another version.

## 38.17.6. Security Considerations for Extensions

Widely-distributed extensions should assume little about the database they occupy. Therefore, it's appropriate to write functions provided by an extension in a secure style that cannot be compromised by search-path-based attacks.

An extension that has the `superuser` property set to true must also consider security hazards for the actions taken within its installation and update scripts. It is not terribly difficult for a malicious user to create trojan-horse objects that will compromise later execution of a carelessly-written extension script, allowing that user to acquire superuser privileges.

If an extension is marked `trusted`, then its installation schema can be selected by the installing user, who might intentionally use an insecure schema in hopes of gaining superuser privileges. Therefore, a trusted extension is extremely exposed from a security standpoint, and all its script commands must be carefully examined to ensure that no compromise is possible.

Advice about writing functions securely is provided in Section 38.17.6.1 below, and advice about writing installation scripts securely is provided in Section 38.17.6.2.

### 38.17.6.1. Security Considerations for Extension Functions

SQL-language and PL-language functions provided by extensions are at risk of search-path-based attacks when they are executed, since parsing of these functions occurs at execution time not creation time.



The `CREATE FUNCTION` reference page contains advice about writing `SECURITY DEFINER` functions safely. It's good practice to apply those techniques for any function provided by an extension, since the function might be called by a high-privilege user.

If you cannot set the `search_path` to contain only secure schemas, assume that each unqualified name could resolve to an object that a malicious user has defined. Beware of constructs that depend on `search_path` implicitly; for example, `IN` and `CASE expression WHEN` always select an operator using the search path. In their place, use `OPERATOR(schema.=) ANY` and `CASE WHEN expression`.

A general-purpose extension usually should not assume that it's been installed into a secure schema, which means that even schema-qualified references to its own objects are not entirely risk-free. For example, if the extension has defined a function `myschema.myfunc(bigint)` then a call such as `myschema.myfunc(42)` could be captured by a hostile function `myschema.myfunc(integer)`. Be careful that the data types of function and operator parameters exactly match the declared argument types, using explicit casts where necessary.

### 38.17.6.2. Security Considerations for Extension Scripts

An extension installation or update script should be written to guard against search-path-based attacks occurring when the script executes. If an object reference in the script can be made to resolve to some other object than the script author intended, then a compromise might occur immediately, or later when the mis-defined extension object is used.

DDL commands such as `CREATE FUNCTION` and `CREATE OPERATOR CLASS` are generally secure, but beware of any command having a general-purpose expression as a component. For example, `CREATE VIEW` needs to be vetted, as does a `DEFAULT` expression in `CREATE FUNCTION`.

Sometimes an extension script might need to execute general-purpose SQL, for example to make catalog adjustments that aren't possible via DDL. Be careful to execute such commands with a secure `search_path`; do *not* trust the path provided by `CREATE/ALTER EXTENSION` to be secure. Best practice is to temporarily set `search_path` to `'pg_catalog, pg_temp'` and insert references to the extension's installation schema explicitly where needed. (This practice might also be helpful for creating views.) Examples can be found in the `contrib` modules in the PostgreSQL source code distribution.

Cross-extension references are extremely difficult to make fully secure, partially because of uncertainty about which schema the other extension is in. The hazards are reduced if both extensions are installed in the same schema, because then a hostile object cannot be placed ahead of the referenced extension in the installation-time `search_path`. However, no mechanism currently exists to require that. For now, best practice is to not mark an extension trusted if it depends on another one, unless that other one is always installed in `pg_catalog`.

### 38.17.7. Extension Example

Here is a complete example of an SQL-only extension, a two-element composite type that can store any type of value in its slots, which are named “k” and “v”. Non-text values are automatically coerced to text for storage.

The script file `pair--1.0.sql` looks like this:

```
-- complain if script is sourced in psql, rather than via CREATE
EXTENSION
\echo Use "CREATE EXTENSION pair" to load this file. \quit

CREATE TYPE pair AS ( k text, v text );

CREATE FUNCTION pair(text, text)
```

```

RETURNS pair LANGUAGE SQL AS 'SELECT ROW($1,
    $2)::@extschema@.pair;';

CREATE OPERATOR ~> (LEFTARG = text, RIGHTARG = text, FUNCTION =
    pair);

-- "SET search_path" is easy to get right, but qualified names
    perform better.
CREATE FUNCTION lower(pair)
RETURNS pair LANGUAGE SQL
AS 'SELECT ROW(lower($1.k), lower($1.v))::@extschema@.pair; '
SET search_path = pg_temp;

CREATE FUNCTION pair_concat(pair, pair)
RETURNS pair LANGUAGE SQL
AS 'SELECT ROW($1.k OPERATOR(pg_catalog.||) $2.k,
    $1.v OPERATOR(pg_catalog.||)
    $2.v)::@extschema@.pair;';

```

The control file `pair.control` looks like this:

```

# pair extension
comment = 'A key/value pair data type'
default_version = '1.0'
# cannot be relocatable because of use of @extschema@
relocatable = false

```

While you hardly need a makefile to install these two files into the correct directory, you could use a Makefile containing this:

```

EXTENSION = pair
DATA = pair--1.0.sql

PG_CONFIG = pg_config
PGXS := $(shell $(PG_CONFIG) --pgxs)
include $(PGXS)

```

This makefile relies on PGXS, which is described in Section 38.18. The command `make install` will install the control and script files into the correct directory as reported by `pg_config`.

Once the files are installed, use the `CREATE EXTENSION` command to load the objects into any particular database.

## 38.18. Extension Building Infrastructure

If you are thinking about distributing your PostgreSQL extension modules, setting up a portable build system for them can be fairly difficult. Therefore the PostgreSQL installation provides a build infrastructure for extensions, called PGXS, so that simple extension modules can be built simply against an already installed server. PGXS is mainly intended for extensions that include C code, although it can be used for pure-SQL extensions too. Note that PGXS is not intended to be a universal build system framework that can be used to build any software interfacing to PostgreSQL; it simply automates common build rules for simple server extension modules. For more complicated packages, you might need to write your own build system.

To use the PGXS infrastructure for your extension, you must write a simple makefile. In the makefile, you need to set some variables and include the global PGXS makefile. Here is an example that builds

an extension module named `isbn_issn`, consisting of a shared library containing some C code, an extension control file, an SQL script, an include file (only needed if other modules might need to access the extension functions without going via SQL), and a documentation text file:

```
MODULES = isbn_issn
EXTENSION = isbn_issn
DATA = isbn_issn--1.0.sql
DOCS = README.isbn_issn
HEADERS_isbn_issn = isbn_issn.h

PG_CONFIG = pg_config
PGXS := $(shell $(PG_CONFIG) --pgxs)
include $(PGXS)
```

The last three lines should always be the same. Earlier in the file, you assign variables or add custom make rules.

Set one of these three variables to specify what is built:

`MODULES`

list of shared-library objects to be built from source files with same stem (do not include library suffixes in this list)

`MODULE_big`

a shared library to build from multiple source files (list object files in `OBJS`)

`PROGRAM`

an executable program to build (list object files in `OBJS`)

The following variables can also be set:

`EXTENSION`

extension name(s); for each name you must provide an *extension*.control file, which will be installed into *prefix*/share/extension

`MODULEDIR`

subdirectory of *prefix*/share into which DATA and DOCS files should be installed (if not set, default is extension if EXTENSION is set, or contrib if not)

`DATA`

random files to install into *prefix*/share/\$MODULEDIR

`DATA_built`

random files to install into *prefix*/share/\$MODULEDIR, which need to be built first

`DATA_TSEARCH`

random files to install under *prefix*/share/tsearch\_data

`DOCS`

random files to install under *prefix*/doc/\$MODULEDIR

## HEADERS

### HEADERS\_built

Files to (optionally build and) install under *prefix/include/server/\$MODULEDIR/\$MODULE\_big*.

Unlike `DATA_built`, files in `HEADERS_built` are not removed by the `clean` target; if you want them removed, also add them to `EXTRA_CLEAN` or add your own rules to do it.

### HEADERS\_\$MODULE

### HEADERS\_built\_\$MODULE

Files to install (after building if specified) under *prefix/include/server/\$MODULEDIR/\$MODULE*, where `$MODULE` must be a module name used in `MODULES` or `MODULE_big`.

Unlike `DATA_built`, files in `HEADERS_built_$MODULE` are not removed by the `clean` target; if you want them removed, also add them to `EXTRA_CLEAN` or add your own rules to do it.

It is legal to use both variables for the same module, or any combination, unless you have two module names in the `MODULES` list that differ only by the presence of a prefix `built_`, which would cause ambiguity. In that (hopefully unlikely) case, you should use only the `HEADERS_built_$MODULE` variables.

## SCRIPTS

script files (not binaries) to install into *prefix/bin*

### SCRIPTS\_built

script files (not binaries) to install into *prefix/bin*, which need to be built first

## REGRESS

list of regression test cases (without suffix), see below

### REGRESS\_OPTS

additional switches to pass to `pg_regress`

## ISOLATION

list of isolation test cases, see below for more details

### ISOLATION\_OPTS

additional switches to pass to `pg_isolation_regress`

## TAP\_TESTS

switch defining if TAP tests need to be run, see below

## NO\_INSTALL

don't define an `install` target, useful for test modules that don't need their build products to be installed

## NO\_INSTALLCHECK

don't define an `installcheck` target, useful e.g., if tests require special configuration, or don't use `pg_regress`

EXTRA\_CLEAN

extra files to remove in `make clean`

PG\_CPPFLAGS

will be prepended to CPPFLAGS

PG\_CFLAGS

will be appended to CFLAGS

PG\_CXXFLAGS

will be appended to CXXFLAGS

PG\_LDFLAGS

will be prepended to LDFLAGS

PG\_LIBS

will be added to PROGRAM link line

SHLIB\_LINK

will be added to MODULE\_big link line

PG\_CONFIG

path to `pg_config` program for the PostgreSQL installation to build against (typically just `pg_config` to use the first one in your PATH)

Put this makefile as `Makefile` in the directory which holds your extension. Then you can do `make` to compile, and then `make install` to install your module. By default, the extension is compiled and installed for the PostgreSQL installation that corresponds to the first `pg_config` program found in your PATH. You can use a different installation by setting `PG_CONFIG` to point to its `pg_config` program, either within the makefile or on the `make` command line.

You can also run `make` in a directory outside the source tree of your extension, if you want to keep the build directory separate. This procedure is also called a *VPATH* build. Here's how:

```
mkdir build_dir
cd build_dir
make -f /path/to/extension/source/tree/Makefile
make -f /path/to/extension/source/tree/Makefile install
```

Alternatively, you can set up a directory for a *VPATH* build in a similar way to how it is done for the core code. One way to do this is using the core script `config/prep_buildtree`. Once this has been done you can build by setting the make variable `VPATH` like this:

```
make VPATH=/path/to/extension/source/tree
make VPATH=/path/to/extension/source/tree install
```

This procedure can work with a greater variety of directory layouts.

The scripts listed in the `REGRESS` variable are used for regression testing of your module, which can be invoked by `make installcheck` after doing `make install`. For this to work you must have a running PostgreSQL server. The script files listed in `REGRESS` must appear in a subdirectory named `sql/` in your extension's directory. These files must have extension `.sql`, which must not

be included in the `REGRESS` list in the makefile. For each test there should also be a file containing the expected output in a subdirectory named `expected/`, with the same stem and extension `.out`. `make installcheck` executes each test script with `psql`, and compares the resulting output to the matching expected file. Any differences will be written to the file `regression.diffs` in `diff -c` format. Note that trying to run a test that is missing its expected file will be reported as “trouble”, so make sure you have all expected files.

The scripts listed in the `ISOLATION` variable are used for tests stressing behavior of concurrent session with your module, which can be invoked by `make installcheck` after doing `make install`. For this to work you must have a running PostgreSQL server. The script files listed in `ISOLATION` must appear in a subdirectory named `specs/` in your extension's directory. These files must have extension `.spec`, which must not be included in the `ISOLATION` list in the makefile. For each test there should also be a file containing the expected output in a subdirectory named `expected/`, with the same stem and extension `.out`. `make installcheck` executes each test script, and compares the resulting output to the matching expected file. Any differences will be written to the file `output_iso/regression.diffs` in `diff -c` format. Note that trying to run a test that is missing its expected file will be reported as “trouble”, so make sure you have all expected files.

`TAP_TESTS` enables the use of TAP tests. Data from each run is present in a subdirectory named `tmp_check/`. See also Section 33.4 for more details.

### Tip

The easiest way to create the expected files is to create empty files, then do a test run (which will of course report differences). Inspect the actual result files found in the `results/` directory (for tests in `REGRESS`), or `output_iso/results/` directory (for tests in `ISOLATION`), then copy them to `expected/` if they match what you expect from the test.

---

# Chapter 39. Triggers

This chapter provides general information about writing trigger functions. Trigger functions can be written in most of the available procedural languages, including PL/pgSQL (Chapter 43), PL/Tcl (Chapter 44), PL/Perl (Chapter 45), and PL/Python (Chapter 46). After reading this chapter, you should consult the chapter for your favorite procedural language to find out the language-specific details of writing a trigger in it.

It is also possible to write a trigger function in C, although most people find it easier to use one of the procedural languages. It is not currently possible to write a trigger function in the plain SQL function language.

## 39.1. Overview of Trigger Behavior

A trigger is a specification that the database should automatically execute a particular function whenever a certain type of operation is performed. Triggers can be attached to tables (partitioned or not), views, and foreign tables.

On tables and foreign tables, triggers can be defined to execute either before or after any INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE operation, either once per modified row, or once per SQL statement. UPDATE triggers can moreover be set to fire only if certain columns are mentioned in the SET clause of the UPDATE statement. Triggers can also fire for TRUNCATE statements. If a trigger event occurs, the trigger's function is called at the appropriate time to handle the event.

On views, triggers can be defined to execute instead of INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE operations. Such `INSTEAD OF` triggers are fired once for each row that needs to be modified in the view. It is the responsibility of the trigger's function to perform the necessary modifications to the view's underlying base table(s) and, where appropriate, return the modified row as it will appear in the view. Triggers on views can also be defined to execute once per SQL statement, before or after INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE operations. However, such triggers are fired only if there is also an `INSTEAD OF` trigger on the view. Otherwise, any statement targeting the view must be rewritten into a statement affecting its underlying base table(s), and then the triggers that will be fired are the ones attached to the base table(s).

The trigger function must be defined before the trigger itself can be created. The trigger function must be declared as a function taking no arguments and returning type `trigger`. (The trigger function receives its input through a specially-passed `TriggerData` structure, not in the form of ordinary function arguments.)

Once a suitable trigger function has been created, the trigger is established with `CREATE TRIGGER`. The same trigger function can be used for multiple triggers.

PostgreSQL offers both *per-row* triggers and *per-statement* triggers. With a per-row trigger, the trigger function is invoked once for each row that is affected by the statement that fired the trigger. In contrast, a per-statement trigger is invoked only once when an appropriate statement is executed, regardless of the number of rows affected by that statement. In particular, a statement that affects zero rows will still result in the execution of any applicable per-statement triggers. These two types of triggers are sometimes called *row-level* triggers and *statement-level* triggers, respectively. Triggers on TRUNCATE may only be defined at statement level, not per-row.

Triggers are also classified according to whether they fire *before*, *after*, or *instead of* the operation. These are referred to as `BEFORE` triggers, `AFTER` triggers, and `INSTEAD OF` triggers respectively. Statement-level `BEFORE` triggers naturally fire before the statement starts to do anything, while statement-level `AFTER` triggers fire at the very end of the statement. These types of triggers may be defined on tables, views, or foreign tables. Row-level `BEFORE` triggers fire immediately before a particular row is operated on, while row-level `AFTER` triggers fire at the end of the statement (but before any statement-level `AFTER` triggers). These types of triggers may only be defined on tables and foreign

tables, not views. `INSTEAD OF` triggers may only be defined on views, and only at row level; they fire immediately as each row in the view is identified as needing to be operated on.

The execution of an `AFTER` trigger can be deferred to the end of the transaction, rather than the end of the statement, if it was defined as a *constraint trigger*. In all cases, a trigger is executed as part of the same transaction as the statement that triggered it, so if either the statement or the trigger causes an error, the effects of both will be rolled back.

A statement that targets a parent table in an inheritance or partitioning hierarchy does not cause the statement-level triggers of affected child tables to be fired; only the parent table's statement-level triggers are fired. However, row-level triggers of any affected child tables will be fired.

If an `INSERT` contains an `ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE` clause, it is possible that the effects of row-level `BEFORE INSERT` triggers and row-level `BEFORE UPDATE` triggers can both be applied in a way that is apparent from the final state of the updated row, if an `EXCLUDED` column is referenced. There need not be an `EXCLUDED` column reference for both sets of row-level `BEFORE` triggers to execute, though. The possibility of surprising outcomes should be considered when there are both `BEFORE INSERT` and `BEFORE UPDATE` row-level triggers that change a row being inserted/updated (this can be problematic even if the modifications are more or less equivalent, if they're not also idempotent). Note that statement-level `UPDATE` triggers are executed when `ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE` is specified, regardless of whether or not any rows were affected by the `UPDATE` (and regardless of whether the alternative `UPDATE` path was ever taken). An `INSERT` with an `ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE` clause will execute statement-level `BEFORE INSERT` triggers first, then statement-level `BEFORE UPDATE` triggers, followed by statement-level `AFTER UPDATE` triggers and finally statement-level `AFTER INSERT` triggers.

If an `UPDATE` on a partitioned table causes a row to move to another partition, it will be performed as a `DELETE` from the original partition followed by an `INSERT` into the new partition. In this case, all row-level `BEFORE UPDATE` triggers and all row-level `BEFORE DELETE` triggers are fired on the original partition. Then all row-level `BEFORE INSERT` triggers are fired on the destination partition. The possibility of surprising outcomes should be considered when all these triggers affect the row being moved. As far as `AFTER ROW` triggers are concerned, `AFTER DELETE` and `AFTER INSERT` triggers are applied; but `AFTER UPDATE` triggers are not applied because the `UPDATE` has been converted to a `DELETE` and an `INSERT`. As far as statement-level triggers are concerned, none of the `DELETE` or `INSERT` triggers are fired, even if row movement occurs; only the `UPDATE` triggers defined on the target table used in the `UPDATE` statement will be fired.

No separate triggers are defined for `MERGE`. Instead, statement-level or row-level `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, and `INSERT` triggers are fired depending on (for statement-level triggers) what actions are specified in the `MERGE` query and (for row-level triggers) what actions are performed.

While running a `MERGE` command, statement-level `BEFORE` and `AFTER` triggers are fired for events specified in the actions of the `MERGE` command, irrespective of whether or not the action is ultimately performed. This is the same as an `UPDATE` statement that updates no rows, yet statement-level triggers are fired. The row-level triggers are fired only when a row is actually updated, inserted or deleted. So it's perfectly legal that while statement-level triggers are fired for certain types of action, no row-level triggers are fired for the same kind of action.

Trigger functions invoked by per-statement triggers should always return `NULL`. Trigger functions invoked by per-row triggers can return a table row (a value of type `HeapTuple`) to the calling executor, if they choose. A row-level trigger fired before an operation has the following choices:

- It can return `NULL` to skip the operation for the current row. This instructs the executor to not perform the row-level operation that invoked the trigger (the insertion, modification, or deletion of a particular table row).
- For row-level `INSERT` and `UPDATE` triggers only, the returned row becomes the row that will be inserted or will replace the row being updated. This allows the trigger function to modify the row being inserted or updated.



A row-level `BEFORE` trigger that does not intend to cause either of these behaviors must be careful to return as its result the same row that was passed in (that is, the `NEW` row for `INSERT` and `UPDATE` triggers, the `OLD` row for `DELETE` triggers).

A row-level `INSTEAD OF` trigger should either return `NULL` to indicate that it did not modify any data from the view's underlying base tables, or it should return the view row that was passed in (the `NEW` row for `INSERT` and `UPDATE` operations, or the `OLD` row for `DELETE` operations). A nonnull return value is used to signal that the trigger performed the necessary data modifications in the view. This will cause the count of the number of rows affected by the command to be incremented. For `INSERT` and `UPDATE` operations only, the trigger may modify the `NEW` row before returning it. This will change the data returned by `INSERT RETURNING` or `UPDATE RETURNING`, and is useful when the view will not show exactly the same data that was provided.

The return value is ignored for row-level triggers fired after an operation, and so they can return `NULL`.

Some considerations apply for generated columns. Stored generated columns are computed after `BEFORE` triggers and before `AFTER` triggers. Therefore, the generated value can be inspected in `AFTER` triggers. In `BEFORE` triggers, the `OLD` row contains the old generated value, as one would expect, but the `NEW` row does not yet contain the new generated value and should not be accessed. In the C language interface, the content of the column is undefined at this point; a higher-level programming language should prevent access to a stored generated column in the `NEW` row in a `BEFORE` trigger. Changes to the value of a generated column in a `BEFORE` trigger are ignored and will be overwritten.

If more than one trigger is defined for the same event on the same relation, the triggers will be fired in alphabetical order by trigger name. In the case of `BEFORE` and `INSTEAD OF` triggers, the possibly-modified row returned by each trigger becomes the input to the next trigger. If any `BEFORE` or `INSTEAD OF` trigger returns `NULL`, the operation is abandoned for that row and subsequent triggers are not fired (for that row).

A trigger definition can also specify a Boolean `WHEN` condition, which will be tested to see whether the trigger should be fired. In row-level triggers the `WHEN` condition can examine the old and/or new values of columns of the row. (Statement-level triggers can also have `WHEN` conditions, although the feature is not so useful for them.) In a `BEFORE` trigger, the `WHEN` condition is evaluated just before the function is or would be executed, so using `WHEN` is not materially different from testing the same condition at the beginning of the trigger function. However, in an `AFTER` trigger, the `WHEN` condition is evaluated just after the row update occurs, and it determines whether an event is queued to fire the trigger at the end of statement. So when an `AFTER` trigger's `WHEN` condition does not return true, it is not necessary to queue an event nor to re-fetch the row at end of statement. This can result in significant speedups in statements that modify many rows, if the trigger only needs to be fired for a few of the rows. `INSTEAD OF` triggers do not support `WHEN` conditions.

Typically, row-level `BEFORE` triggers are used for checking or modifying the data that will be inserted or updated. For example, a `BEFORE` trigger might be used to insert the current time into a `timestamp` column, or to check that two elements of the row are consistent. Row-level `AFTER` triggers are most sensibly used to propagate the updates to other tables, or make consistency checks against other tables. The reason for this division of labor is that an `AFTER` trigger can be certain it is seeing the final value of the row, while a `BEFORE` trigger cannot; there might be other `BEFORE` triggers firing after it. If you have no specific reason to make a trigger `BEFORE` or `AFTER`, the `BEFORE` case is more efficient, since the information about the operation doesn't have to be saved until end of statement.

If a trigger function executes SQL commands then these commands might fire triggers again. This is known as cascading triggers. There is no direct limitation on the number of cascade levels. It is possible for cascades to cause a recursive invocation of the same trigger; for example, an `INSERT` trigger might execute a command that inserts an additional row into the same table, causing the `INSERT` trigger to be fired again. It is the trigger programmer's responsibility to avoid infinite recursion in such scenarios.

When a trigger is being defined, arguments can be specified for it. The purpose of including arguments in the trigger definition is to allow different triggers with similar requirements to call the same function. As an example, there could be a generalized trigger function that takes as its arguments two column

names and puts the current user in one and the current time stamp in the other. Properly written, this trigger function would be independent of the specific table it is triggering on. So the same function could be used for `INSERT` events on any table with suitable columns, to automatically track creation of records in a transaction table for example. It could also be used to track last-update events if defined as an `UPDATE` trigger.

Each programming language that supports triggers has its own method for making the trigger input data available to the trigger function. This input data includes the type of trigger event (e.g., `INSERT` or `UPDATE`) as well as any arguments that were listed in `CREATE TRIGGER`. For a row-level trigger, the input data also includes the `NEW` row for `INSERT` and `UPDATE` triggers, and/or the `OLD` row for `UPDATE` and `DELETE` triggers.

By default, statement-level triggers do not have any way to examine the individual row(s) modified by the statement. But an `AFTER STATEMENT` trigger can request that *transition tables* be created to make the sets of affected rows available to the trigger. `AFTER ROW` triggers can also request transition tables, so that they can see the total changes in the table as well as the change in the individual row they are currently being fired for. The method for examining the transition tables again depends on the programming language that is being used, but the typical approach is to make the transition tables act like read-only temporary tables that can be accessed by SQL commands issued within the trigger function.

## 39.2. Visibility of Data Changes

If you execute SQL commands in your trigger function, and these commands access the table that the trigger is for, then you need to be aware of the data visibility rules, because they determine whether these SQL commands will see the data change that the trigger is fired for. Briefly:

- Statement-level triggers follow simple visibility rules: none of the changes made by a statement are visible to statement-level `BEFORE` triggers, whereas all modifications are visible to statement-level `AFTER` triggers.
- The data change (insertion, update, or deletion) causing the trigger to fire is naturally *not* visible to SQL commands executed in a row-level `BEFORE` trigger, because it hasn't happened yet.
- However, SQL commands executed in a row-level `BEFORE` trigger *will* see the effects of data changes for rows previously processed in the same outer command. This requires caution, since the ordering of these change events is not in general predictable; an SQL command that affects multiple rows can visit the rows in any order.
- Similarly, a row-level `INSTEAD OF` trigger will see the effects of data changes made by previous firings of `INSTEAD OF` triggers in the same outer command.
- When a row-level `AFTER` trigger is fired, all data changes made by the outer command are already complete, and are visible to the invoked trigger function.

If your trigger function is written in any of the standard procedural languages, then the above statements apply only if the function is declared `VOLATILE`. Functions that are declared `STABLE` or `IMMUTABLE` will not see changes made by the calling command in any case.

Further information about data visibility rules can be found in Section 47.5. The example in Section 39.4 contains a demonstration of these rules.

## 39.3. Writing Trigger Functions in C

This section describes the low-level details of the interface to a trigger function. This information is only needed when writing trigger functions in C. If you are using a higher-level language then these details are handled for you. In most cases you should consider using a procedural language before

writing your triggers in C. The documentation of each procedural language explains how to write a trigger in that language.

Trigger functions must use the “version 1” function manager interface.

When a function is called by the trigger manager, it is not passed any normal arguments, but it is passed a “context” pointer pointing to a `TriggerData` structure. C functions can check whether they were called from the trigger manager or not by executing the macro:

```
CALLED_AS_TRIGGER(fcinfo)
```

which expands to:

```
((fcinfo)->context != NULL && IsA((fcinfo)->context, TriggerData))
```

If this returns true, then it is safe to cast `fcinfo->context` to type `TriggerData *` and make use of the pointed-to `TriggerData` structure. The function must *not* alter the `TriggerData` structure or any of the data it points to.

struct `TriggerData` is defined in `commands/trigger.h`:

```
typedef struct TriggerData
{
    NodeTag          type;
    TriggerEvent      tg_event;
    Relation          tg_relation;
    HeapTuple         tg_trigtuple;
    HeapTuple         tg_newtuple;
    Trigger           *tg_trigger;
    TupleTableSlot    *tg_trigslot;
    TupleTableSlot    *tg_newslot;
    TupleStorestate   *tg_oldtable;
    TupleStorestate   *tg_newtable;
    const Bitmapset   *tg_updatedcols;
} TriggerData;
```

where the members are defined as follows:

type

Always `T_TriggerData`.

tg\_event

Describes the event for which the function is called. You can use the following macros to examine `tg_event`:

```
TRIGGER_FIRED_BEFORE(tg_event)
```

Returns true if the trigger fired before the operation.

```
TRIGGER_FIRED_AFTER(tg_event)
```

Returns true if the trigger fired after the operation.

```
TRIGGER_FIRED_INSTEAD(tg_event)
```

Returns true if the trigger fired instead of the operation.

`TRIGGER_FIRED_FOR_ROW(tg_event)`

Returns true if the trigger fired for a row-level event.

`TRIGGER_FIRED_FOR_STATEMENT(tg_event)`

Returns true if the trigger fired for a statement-level event.

`TRIGGER_FIRED_BY_INSERT(tg_event)`

Returns true if the trigger was fired by an `INSERT` command.

`TRIGGER_FIRED_BY_UPDATE(tg_event)`

Returns true if the trigger was fired by an `UPDATE` command.

`TRIGGER_FIRED_BY_DELETE(tg_event)`

Returns true if the trigger was fired by a `DELETE` command.

`TRIGGER_FIRED_BY_TRUNCATE(tg_event)`

Returns true if the trigger was fired by a `TRUNCATE` command.

`tg_relation`

A pointer to a structure describing the relation that the trigger fired for. Look at `utils/rel.h` for details about this structure. The most interesting things are `tg_relation->rd_att` (descriptor of the relation tuples) and `tg_relation->rd_rel->relname` (relation name; the type is not `char*` but `NameData`; use `SPI_getrelname(tg_relation)` to get a `char*` if you need a copy of the name).

`tg_trigtuple`

A pointer to the row for which the trigger was fired. This is the row being inserted, updated, or deleted. If this trigger was fired for an `INSERT` or `DELETE` then this is what you should return from the function if you don't want to replace the row with a different one (in the case of `INSERT`) or skip the operation. For triggers on foreign tables, values of system columns herein are unspecified.

`tg_newtuple`

A pointer to the new version of the row, if the trigger was fired for an `UPDATE`, and `NULL` if it is for an `INSERT` or a `DELETE`. This is what you have to return from the function if the event is an `UPDATE` and you don't want to replace this row by a different one or skip the operation. For triggers on foreign tables, values of system columns herein are unspecified.

`tg_trigger`

A pointer to a structure of type `Trigger`, defined in `utils/reltrigger.h`:

```
typedef struct Trigger
{
    Oid          tgoid;
    char         *tgname;
    Oid          tgfoid;
    int16        tgtype;
    char         tgenabled;
    bool         tgisinternal;
```

```
bool        tgisclone;
Oid         tgconstrrelid;
Oid         tgconstrindid;
Oid         tgconstraint;
bool        tgdeferrable;
bool        tginitdeferred;
int16       tgnargs;
int16       tgnattr;
int16       *tgattr;
char        **tgargs;
char        *tgqual;
char        *tgoldtable;
char        *tgnewtable;
} Trigger;
```

where `tgname` is the trigger's name, `tgnargs` is the number of arguments in `tgargs`, and `tgargs` is an array of pointers to the arguments specified in the `CREATE TRIGGER` statement. The other members are for internal use only.

`tg_trigslot`

The slot containing `tg_trigtuple`, or a `NULL` pointer if there is no such tuple.

`tg_newslot`

The slot containing `tg_newtuple`, or a `NULL` pointer if there is no such tuple.

`tg_oldtable`

A pointer to a structure of type `Tuplestorestate` containing zero or more rows in the format specified by `tg_relation`, or a `NULL` pointer if there is no `OLD TABLE` transition relation.

`tg_newtable`

A pointer to a structure of type `Tuplestorestate` containing zero or more rows in the format specified by `tg_relation`, or a `NULL` pointer if there is no `NEW TABLE` transition relation.

`tg_updatedcols`

For `UPDATE` triggers, a bitmap set indicating the columns that were updated by the triggering command. Generic trigger functions can use this to optimize actions by not having to deal with columns that were not changed.

As an example, to determine whether a column with attribute number `attnum` (1-based) is a member of this bitmap set, call `bms_is_member(attnum - FirstLowInvalidHeap-AttributeNumber, trigdata->tg_updatedcols)`.

For triggers other than `UPDATE` triggers, this will be `NULL`.

To allow queries issued through SPI to reference transition tables, see `SPI_register_trigger_data`.

A trigger function must return either a `HeapTuple` pointer or a `NULL` pointer (*not* an SQL null value, that is, do not set `isNull` true). Be careful to return either `tg_trigtuple` or `tg_newtuple`, as appropriate, if you don't want to modify the row being operated on.

## 39.4. A Complete Trigger Example

Here is a very simple example of a trigger function written in C. (Examples of triggers written in procedural languages can be found in the documentation of the procedural languages.)

The function `trigf` reports the number of rows in the table `ttest` and skips the actual operation if the command attempts to insert a null value into the column `x`. (So the trigger acts as a not-null constraint but doesn't abort the transaction.)

First, the table definition:

```
CREATE TABLE ttest (  
    x integer  
);
```

This is the source code of the trigger function:

```
#include "postgres.h"  
#include "fmgr.h"  
#include "executor/spi.h"      /* this is what you need to work  
    with SPI */  
#include "commands/trigger.h" /* ... triggers ... */  
#include "utils/rel.h"        /* ... and relations */  
  
PG_MODULE_MAGIC;  
  
PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(trigf);  
  
Datum  
trigf(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)  
{  
    TriggerData *trigdata = (TriggerData *) fcinfo->context;  
    TupleDesc    tupdesc;  
    HeapTuple    rettupple;  
    char         *when;  
    bool         checknull = false;  
    bool         isnull;  
    int          ret, i;  
  
    /* make sure it's called as a trigger at all */  
    if (!CALLED_AS_TRIGGER(fcinfo))  
        elog(ERROR, "trigf: not called by trigger manager");  
  
    /* tuple to return to executor */  
    if (TRIGGER_FIRED_BY_UPDATE(trigdata->tg_event))  
        rettupple = trigdata->tg_newtuple;  
    else  
        rettupple = trigdata->tg_trigtuple;  
  
    /* check for null values */  
    if (!TRIGGER_FIRED_BY_DELETE(trigdata->tg_event)  
        && TRIGGER_FIRED_BEFORE(trigdata->tg_event))  
        checknull = true;  
  
    if (TRIGGER_FIRED_BEFORE(trigdata->tg_event))  
        when = "before";  
    else  
        when = "after ";  
  
    tupdesc = trigdata->tg_relation->rd_att;  
  
    /* connect to SPI manager */
```

```
    if ((ret = SPI_connect()) < 0)
        elog(ERROR, "trigf (fired %s): SPI_connect returned %d",
when, ret);

    /* get number of rows in table */
    ret = SPI_exec("SELECT count(*) FROM ttest", 0);

    if (ret < 0)
        elog(ERROR, "trigf (fired %s): SPI_exec returned %d", when,
ret);

    /* count(*) returns int8, so be careful to convert */
    i = DatumGetInt64(SPI_getbinval(SPI_tuptable->vals[0],
                                    SPI_tuptable->tupdesc,
                                    1,
                                    &isnull));

    elog (INFO, "trigf (fired %s): there are %d rows in ttest",
when, i);

    SPI_finish();

    if (checknull)
    {
        SPI_getbinval(rettuple, tupdesc, 1, &isnull);
        if (isnull)
            rettuple = NULL;
    }

    return PointerGetDatum(rettuple);
}
```

After you have compiled the source code (see Section 38.10.5), declare the function and the triggers:

```
CREATE FUNCTION trigf() RETURNS trigger
AS 'filename'
LANGUAGE C;

CREATE TRIGGER tbefore BEFORE INSERT OR UPDATE OR DELETE ON ttest
FOR EACH ROW EXECUTE FUNCTION trigf();

CREATE TRIGGER tafter AFTER INSERT OR UPDATE OR DELETE ON ttest
FOR EACH ROW EXECUTE FUNCTION trigf();
```

Now you can test the operation of the trigger:

```
=> INSERT INTO ttest VALUES (NULL);
INFO:  trigf (fired before): there are 0 rows in ttest
INSERT 0 0

-- Insertion skipped and AFTER trigger is not fired

=> SELECT * FROM ttest;
 x
---
(0 rows)
```

```
=> INSERT INTO ttest VALUES (1);
INFO:  trigf (fired before): there are 0 rows in ttest
INFO:  trigf (fired after ): there are 1 rows in ttest
          ^^^^^^^

          remember what we said about
visibility.
INSERT 167793 1
vac=> SELECT * FROM ttest;
 x
---
 1
(1 row)

=> INSERT INTO ttest SELECT x * 2 FROM ttest;
INFO:  trigf (fired before): there are 1 rows in ttest
INFO:  trigf (fired after ): there are 2 rows in ttest
          ^^^^^^

          remember what we said about
visibility.
INSERT 167794 1
=> SELECT * FROM ttest;
 x
---
 1
 2
(2 rows)

=> UPDATE ttest SET x = NULL WHERE x = 2;
INFO:  trigf (fired before): there are 2 rows in ttest
UPDATE 0
=> UPDATE ttest SET x = 4 WHERE x = 2;
INFO:  trigf (fired before): there are 2 rows in ttest
INFO:  trigf (fired after ): there are 2 rows in ttest
UPDATE 1
vac=> SELECT * FROM ttest;
 x
---
 1
 4
(2 rows)

=> DELETE FROM ttest;
INFO:  trigf (fired before): there are 2 rows in ttest
INFO:  trigf (fired before): there are 1 rows in ttest
INFO:  trigf (fired after ): there are 0 rows in ttest
INFO:  trigf (fired after ): there are 0 rows in ttest
          ^^^^^^

          remember what we said about
visibility.
DELETE 2
=> SELECT * FROM ttest;
 x
---
(0 rows)
```

There are more complex examples in `src/test/regress/regress.c` and in `spi`.



---

# Chapter 40. Event Triggers

To supplement the trigger mechanism discussed in Chapter 39, PostgreSQL also provides event triggers. Unlike regular triggers, which are attached to a single table and capture only DML events, event triggers are global to a particular database and are capable of capturing DDL events.

Like regular triggers, event triggers can be written in any procedural language that includes event trigger support, or in C, but not in plain SQL.

## 40.1. Overview of Event Trigger Behavior

An event trigger fires whenever the event with which it is associated occurs in the database in which it is defined. Currently, the only supported events are `ddl_command_start`, `ddl_command_end`, `table_rewrite` and `sql_drop`. Support for additional events may be added in future releases.

The `ddl_command_start` event occurs just before the execution of a `CREATE`, `ALTER`, `DROP`, `SECURITY LABEL`, `COMMENT`, `GRANT` or `REVOKE` command. No check whether the affected object exists or doesn't exist is performed before the event trigger fires. As an exception, however, this event does not occur for DDL commands targeting shared objects — databases, roles, and tablespaces — or for commands targeting event triggers themselves. The event trigger mechanism does not support these object types. `ddl_command_start` also occurs just before the execution of a `SELECT INTO` command, since this is equivalent to `CREATE TABLE AS`.

The `ddl_command_end` event occurs just after the execution of this same set of commands. To obtain more details on the DDL operations that took place, use the set-returning function `pg_event_trigger_ddl_commands()` from the `ddl_command_end` event trigger code (see Section 9.29). Note that the trigger fires after the actions have taken place (but before the transaction commits), and thus the system catalogs can be read as already changed.

The `sql_drop` event occurs just before the `ddl_command_end` event trigger for any operation that drops database objects. To list the objects that have been dropped, use the set-returning function `pg_event_trigger_dropped_objects()` from the `sql_drop` event trigger code (see Section 9.29). Note that the trigger is executed after the objects have been deleted from the system catalogs, so it's not possible to look them up anymore.

The `table_rewrite` event occurs just before a table is rewritten by some actions of the commands `ALTER TABLE` and `ALTER TYPE`. While other control statements are available to rewrite a table, like `CLUSTER` and `VACUUM`, the `table_rewrite` event is not triggered by them.

Event triggers (like other functions) cannot be executed in an aborted transaction. Thus, if a DDL command fails with an error, any associated `ddl_command_end` triggers will not be executed. Conversely, if a `ddl_command_start` trigger fails with an error, no further event triggers will fire, and no attempt will be made to execute the command itself. Similarly, if a `ddl_command_end` trigger fails with an error, the effects of the DDL statement will be rolled back, just as they would be in any other case where the containing transaction aborts.

For a complete list of commands supported by the event trigger mechanism, see Section 40.2.

Event triggers are created using the command `CREATE EVENT TRIGGER`. In order to create an event trigger, you must first create a function with the special return type `event_trigger`. This function need not (and may not) return a value; the return type serves merely as a signal that the function is to be invoked as an event trigger.

If more than one event trigger is defined for a particular event, they will fire in alphabetical order by trigger name.

A trigger definition can also specify a `WHEN` condition so that, for example, a `ddl_command_start` trigger can be fired only for particular commands which the user wishes to intercept. A common use of such triggers is to restrict the range of DDL operations which users may perform.

## 40.2. Event Trigger Firing Matrix

Table 40.1 lists all commands for which event triggers are supported.

**Table 40.1. Event Trigger Support by Command Tag**

Command Tag	ddl_com- mand_ start	ddl_com- mand_end	sql_drop	table_ rewrite	Notes
ALTER AGGREGATE	X	X	-	-	
ALTER COLLATION	X	X	-	-	
ALTER CONVERSION	X	X	-	-	
ALTER DOMAIN	X	X	-	-	
ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES	X	X	-	-	
ALTER EXTENSION	X	X	-	-	
ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER	X	X	-	-	
ALTER FOREIGN TABLE	X	X	X	-	
ALTER FUNCTION	X	X	-	-	
ALTER LANGUAGE	X	X	-	-	
ALTER LARGE OBJECT	X	X	-	-	
ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW	X	X	-	X	
ALTER OPERATOR	X	X	-	-	
ALTER OPERATOR CLASS	X	X	-	-	
ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY	X	X	-	-	
ALTER POLICY	X	X	-	-	
ALTER PROCEDURE	X	X	-	-	
ALTER PUBLICATION	X	X	-	-	
ALTER ROUTINE	X	X	-	-	
ALTER SCHEMA	X	X	-	-	
ALTER SEQUENCE	X	X	-	-	
ALTER SERVER	X	X	-	-	
ALTER STATISTICS	X	X	-	-	
ALTER SUBSCRIPTION	X	X	-	-	
ALTER TABLE	X	X	X	X	
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION	X	X	-	-	
ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY	X	X	-	-	
ALTER TEXT SEARCH PARSER	X	X	-	-	

Command Tag	ddl_com- mand_ start	ddl_com- mand_end	sql_drop	table_ rewrite	Notes
ALTER TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE	X	X	-	-	
ALTER TRIGGER	X	X	-	-	
ALTER TYPE	X	X	-	X	
ALTER USER MAPPING	X	X	-	-	
ALTER VIEW	X	X	-	-	
COMMENT	X	X	-	-	Only for lo- cal objects
CREATE ACCESS METHOD	X	X	-	-	
CREATE AGGREGATE	X	X	-	-	
CREATE CAST	X	X	-	-	
CREATE COLLATION	X	X	-	-	
CREATE CONVERSION	X	X	-	-	
CREATE DOMAIN	X	X	-	-	
CREATE EXTENSION	X	X	-	-	
CREATE FOREIGN DA- TA WRAPPER	X	X	-	-	
CREATE FOREIGN TA- BLE	X	X	-	-	
CREATE FUNCTION	X	X	-	-	
CREATE INDEX	X	X	-	-	
CREATE LANGUAGE	X	X	-	-	
CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW	X	X	-	-	
CREATE OPERATOR	X	X	-	-	
CREATE OPERATOR CLASS	X	X	-	-	
CREATE OPERATOR FAMILY	X	X	-	-	
CREATE POLICY	X	X	-	-	
CREATE PROCEDURE	X	X	-	-	
CREATE PUBLICATION	X	X	-	-	
CREATE RULE	X	X	-	-	
CREATE SCHEMA	X	X	-	-	
CREATE SEQUENCE	X	X	-	-	
CREATE SERVER	X	X	-	-	
CREATE STATISTICS	X	X	-	-	
CREATE SUBSCRIP- TION	X	X	-	-	
CREATE TABLE	X	X	-	-	
CREATE TABLE AS	X	X	-	-	

Command Tag	ddl_com- mand_ start	ddl_com- mand_end	sql_drop	table_ rewrite	Notes
CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION	X	X	-	-	
CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY	X	X	-	-	
CREATE TEXT SEARCH PARSER	X	X	-	-	
CREATE TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE	X	X	-	-	
CREATE TRIGGER	X	X	-	-	
CREATE TYPE	X	X	-	-	
CREATE USER MAP- PING	X	X	-	-	
CREATE VIEW	X	X	-	-	
DROP ACCESS METHOD	X	X	X	-	
DROP AGGREGATE	X	X	X	-	
DROP CAST	X	X	X	-	
DROP COLLATION	X	X	X	-	
DROP CONVERSION	X	X	X	-	
DROP DOMAIN	X	X	X	-	
DROP EXTENSION	X	X	X	-	
DROP FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER	X	X	X	-	
DROP FOREIGN TABLE	X	X	X	-	
DROP FUNCTION	X	X	X	-	
DROP INDEX	X	X	X	-	
DROP LANGUAGE	X	X	X	-	
DROP MATERIALIZED VIEW	X	X	X	-	
DROP OPERATOR	X	X	X	-	
DROP OPERATOR CLASS	X	X	X	-	
DROP OPERATOR FAMILY	X	X	X	-	
DROP OWNED	X	X	X	-	
DROP POLICY	X	X	X	-	
DROP PROCEDURE	X	X	X	-	
DROP PUBLICATION	X	X	X	-	
DROP ROUTINE	X	X	X	-	
DROP RULE	X	X	X	-	
DROP SCHEMA	X	X	X	-	
DROP SEQUENCE	X	X	X	-	
DROP SERVER	X	X	X	-	

Command Tag	ddl_com- mand_ start	ddl_com- mand_end	sql_drop	table_ rewrite	Notes
DROP STATISTICS	X	X	X	-	
DROP SUBSCRIPTION	X	X	X	-	
DROP TABLE	X	X	X	-	
DROP TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION	X	X	X	-	
DROP TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY	X	X	X	-	
DROP TEXT SEARCH PARSER	X	X	X	-	
DROP TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE	X	X	X	-	
DROP TRIGGER	X	X	X	-	
DROP TYPE	X	X	X	-	
DROP USER MAPPING	X	X	X	-	
DROP VIEW	X	X	X	-	
GRANT	X	X	-	-	Only for lo- cal objects
IMPORT FOREIGN SCHEMA	X	X	-	-	
REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW	X	X	-	-	
REVOKE	X	X	-	-	Only for lo- cal objects
SECURITY LABEL	X	X	-	-	Only for lo- cal objects
SELECT INTO	X	X	-	-	

## 40.3. Writing Event Trigger Functions in C

This section describes the low-level details of the interface to an event trigger function. This information is only needed when writing event trigger functions in C. If you are using a higher-level language then these details are handled for you. In most cases you should consider using a procedural language before writing your event triggers in C. The documentation of each procedural language explains how to write an event trigger in that language.

Event trigger functions must use the “version 1” function manager interface.

When a function is called by the event trigger manager, it is not passed any normal arguments, but it is passed a “context” pointer pointing to a `EventTriggerData` structure. C functions can check whether they were called from the event trigger manager or not by executing the macro:

```
CALLED_AS_EVENT_TRIGGER(fcinfo)
```

which expands to:

```
((fcinfo)->context != NULL && IsA((fcinfo)->context,  
EventTriggerData))
```

If this returns true, then it is safe to cast `fcinfo->context` to type `EventTriggerData *` and make use of the pointed-to `EventTriggerData` structure. The function must *not* alter the `EventTriggerData` structure or any of the data it points to.

`struct EventTriggerData` is defined in `commands/event_trigger.h`:

```
typedef struct EventTriggerData
{
    NodeTag      type;
    const char *event;      /* event name */
    Node         *parsetree; /* parse tree */
    CommandTag   tag;       /* command tag */
} EventTriggerData;
```

where the members are defined as follows:

**type**

Always `T_EventTriggerData`.

**event**

Describes the event for which the function is called, one of `"ddl_command_start"`, `"ddl_command_end"`, `"sql_drop"`, `"table_rewrite"`. See Section 40.1 for the meaning of these events.

**parsetree**

A pointer to the parse tree of the command. Check the PostgreSQL source code for details. The parse tree structure is subject to change without notice.

**tag**

The command tag associated with the event for which the event trigger is run, for example `"CREATE FUNCTION"`.

An event trigger function must return a `NULL` pointer (*not* an SQL null value, that is, do not set `isNull` true).

## 40.4. A Complete Event Trigger Example

Here is a very simple example of an event trigger function written in C. (Examples of triggers written in procedural languages can be found in the documentation of the procedural languages.)

The function `nodd1` raises an exception each time it is called. The event trigger definition associated with the function with the `ddl_command_start` event. The effect is that all DDL commands (with the exceptions mentioned in Section 40.1) are prevented from running.

This is the source code of the trigger function:

```
#include "postgres.h"
#include "commands/event_trigger.h"

PG_MODULE_MAGIC;

PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(nodd1);
```

```
Datum
nodd1(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    EventTriggerData *trigdata;

    if (!CALLED_AS_EVENT_TRIGGER(fcinfo)) /* internal error */
        elog(ERROR, "not fired by event trigger manager");

    trigdata = (EventTriggerData *) fcinfo->context;

    ereport(ERROR,
            (errcode(ERRCODE_INSUFFICIENT_PRIVILEGE),
             errmsg("command \"%s\" denied",
                   GetCommandTagName(trigdata->tag))));

    PG_RETURN_NULL();
}
```

After you have compiled the source code (see Section 38.10.5), declare the function and the triggers:

```
CREATE FUNCTION nodd1() RETURNS event_trigger
AS 'nodd1' LANGUAGE C;

CREATE EVENT TRIGGER nodd1 ON ddl_command_start
EXECUTE FUNCTION nodd1();
```

Now you can test the operation of the trigger:

```
=# \dy
                                List of event triggers
   Name   |      Event      | Owner | Enabled | Function | Tags
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----
 nodd1    | ddl_command_start | dim   | enabled | nodd1    |
(1 row)

=# CREATE TABLE foo(id serial);
ERROR:  command "CREATE TABLE" denied
```

In this situation, in order to be able to run some DDL commands when you need to do so, you have to either drop the event trigger or disable it. It can be convenient to disable the trigger for only the duration of a transaction:

```
BEGIN;
ALTER EVENT TRIGGER nodd1 DISABLE;
CREATE TABLE foo (id serial);
ALTER EVENT TRIGGER nodd1 ENABLE;
COMMIT;
```

(Recall that DDL commands on event triggers themselves are not affected by event triggers.)

## 40.5. A Table Rewrite Event Trigger Example

Thanks to the `table_rewrite` event, it is possible to implement a table rewriting policy only allowing the rewrite in maintenance windows.

Here's an example implementing such a policy.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION no_rewrite()
  RETURNS event_trigger
  LANGUAGE plpgsql AS
$$
---
--- Implement local Table Rewriting policy:
---   public.foo is not allowed rewriting, ever
---   other tables are only allowed rewriting between 1am and 6am
---   unless they have more than 100 blocks
---
DECLARE
  table_oid oid := pg_event_trigger_table_rewrite_oid();
  current_hour integer := extract('hour' from current_time);
  pages integer;
  max_pages integer := 100;
BEGIN
  IF pg_event_trigger_table_rewrite_oid() = 'public.foo'::regclass
  THEN
    RAISE EXCEPTION 'you're not allowed to rewrite the table
%',
                    table_oid::regclass;
  END IF;

  SELECT INTO pages relpages FROM pg_class WHERE oid = table_oid;
  IF pages > max_pages
  THEN
    RAISE EXCEPTION 'rewrites only allowed for table with less
than % pages',
                    max_pages;
  END IF;

  IF current_hour NOT BETWEEN 1 AND 6
  THEN
    RAISE EXCEPTION 'rewrites only allowed between 1am and
6am';
  END IF;
END;
$$;

CREATE EVENT TRIGGER no_rewrite_allowed
  ON table_rewrite
  EXECUTE FUNCTION no_rewrite();
```



---

# Chapter 41. The Rule System

This chapter discusses the rule system in PostgreSQL. Production rule systems are conceptually simple, but there are many subtle points involved in actually using them.

Some other database systems define active database rules, which are usually stored procedures and triggers. In PostgreSQL, these can be implemented using functions and triggers as well.

The rule system (more precisely speaking, the query rewrite rule system) is totally different from stored procedures and triggers. It modifies queries to take rules into consideration, and then passes the modified query to the query planner for planning and execution. It is very powerful, and can be used for many things such as query language procedures, views, and versions. The theoretical foundations and the power of this rule system are also discussed in [ston90b] and [ong90].

## 41.1. The Query Tree

To understand how the rule system works it is necessary to know when it is invoked and what its input and results are.

The rule system is located between the parser and the planner. It takes the output of the parser, one query tree, and the user-defined rewrite rules, which are also query trees with some extra information, and creates zero or more query trees as result. So its input and output are always things the parser itself could have produced and thus, anything it sees is basically representable as an SQL statement.

Now what is a query tree? It is an internal representation of an SQL statement where the single parts that it is built from are stored separately. These query trees can be shown in the server log if you set the configuration parameters `debug_print_parse`, `debug_print_rewritten`, or `debug_print_plan`. The rule actions are also stored as query trees, in the system catalog `pg_rewrite`. They are not formatted like the log output, but they contain exactly the same information.

Reading a raw query tree requires some experience. But since SQL representations of query trees are sufficient to understand the rule system, this chapter will not teach how to read them.

When reading the SQL representations of the query trees in this chapter it is necessary to be able to identify the parts the statement is broken into when it is in the query tree structure. The parts of a query tree are

the command type

This is a simple value telling which command (`SELECT`, `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`) produced the query tree.

the range table

The range table is a list of relations that are used in the query. In a `SELECT` statement these are the relations given after the `FROM` key word.

Every range table entry identifies a table or view and tells by which name it is called in the other parts of the query. In the query tree, the range table entries are referenced by number rather than by name, so here it doesn't matter if there are duplicate names as it would in an SQL statement. This can happen after the range tables of rules have been merged in. The examples in this chapter will not have this situation.

the result relation

This is an index into the range table that identifies the relation where the results of the query go.

SELECT queries don't have a result relation. (The special case of SELECT INTO is mostly identical to CREATE TABLE followed by INSERT . . . SELECT, and is not discussed separately here.)

For INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE commands, the result relation is the table (or view!) where the changes are to take effect.

#### the target list

The target list is a list of expressions that define the result of the query. In the case of a SELECT, these expressions are the ones that build the final output of the query. They correspond to the expressions between the key words SELECT and FROM. (\* is just an abbreviation for all the column names of a relation. It is expanded by the parser into the individual columns, so the rule system never sees it.)

DELETE commands don't need a normal target list because they don't produce any result. Instead, the planner adds a special CTID entry to the empty target list, to allow the executor to find the row to be deleted. (CTID is added when the result relation is an ordinary table. If it is a view, a whole-row variable is added instead, by the rule system, as described in Section 41.2.4.)

For INSERT commands, the target list describes the new rows that should go into the result relation. It consists of the expressions in the VALUES clause or the ones from the SELECT clause in INSERT . . . SELECT. The first step of the rewrite process adds target list entries for any columns that were not assigned to by the original command but have defaults. Any remaining columns (with neither a given value nor a default) will be filled in by the planner with a constant null expression.

For UPDATE commands, the target list describes the new rows that should replace the old ones. In the rule system, it contains just the expressions from the SET column = expression part of the command. The planner will handle missing columns by inserting expressions that copy the values from the old row into the new one. Just as for DELETE, a CTID or whole-row variable is added so that the executor can identify the old row to be updated.

Every entry in the target list contains an expression that can be a constant value, a variable pointing to a column of one of the relations in the range table, a parameter, or an expression tree made of function calls, constants, variables, operators, etc.

#### the qualification

The query's qualification is an expression much like one of those contained in the target list entries. The result value of this expression is a Boolean that tells whether the operation (INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, or SELECT) for the final result row should be executed or not. It corresponds to the WHERE clause of an SQL statement.

#### the join tree

The query's join tree shows the structure of the FROM clause. For a simple query like SELECT . . . FROM a, b, c, the join tree is just a list of the FROM items, because we are allowed to join them in any order. But when JOIN expressions, particularly outer joins, are used, we have to join in the order shown by the joins. In that case, the join tree shows the structure of the JOIN expressions. The restrictions associated with particular JOIN clauses (from ON or USING expressions) are stored as qualification expressions attached to those join-tree nodes. It turns out to be convenient to store the top-level WHERE expression as a qualification attached to the top-level join-tree item, too. So really the join tree represents both the FROM and WHERE clauses of a SELECT.

#### the others

The other parts of the query tree like the ORDER BY clause aren't of interest here. The rule system substitutes some entries there while applying rules, but that doesn't have much to do with the fundamentals of the rule system.

## 41.2. Views and the Rule System

Views in PostgreSQL are implemented using the rule system. A view is basically an empty table (having no actual storage) with an `ON SELECT DO INSTEAD` rule. Conventionally, that rule is named `_RETURN`. So a view like

```
CREATE VIEW myview AS SELECT * FROM mytab;
```

is very nearly the same thing as

```
CREATE TABLE myview (same column list as mytab);
CREATE RULE "_RETURN" AS ON SELECT TO myview DO INSTEAD
    SELECT * FROM mytab;
```

although you can't actually write that, because tables are not allowed to have `ON SELECT` rules.

A view can also have other kinds of `DO INSTEAD` rules, allowing `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE` commands to be performed on the view despite its lack of underlying storage. This is discussed further below, in Section 41.2.4.

### 41.2.1. How `SELECT` Rules Work

Rules `ON SELECT` are applied to all queries as the last step, even if the command given is an `INSERT`, `UPDATE` or `DELETE`. And they have different semantics from rules on the other command types in that they modify the query tree in place instead of creating a new one. So `SELECT` rules are described first.

Currently, there can be only one action in an `ON SELECT` rule, and it must be an unconditional `SELECT` action that is `INSTEAD`. This restriction was required to make rules safe enough to open them for ordinary users, and it restricts `ON SELECT` rules to act like views.

The examples for this chapter are two join views that do some calculations and some more views using them in turn. One of the two first views is customized later by adding rules for `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, and `DELETE` operations so that the final result will be a view that behaves like a real table with some magic functionality. This is not such a simple example to start from and this makes things harder to get into. But it's better to have one example that covers all the points discussed step by step rather than having many different ones that might mix up in mind.

The real tables we need in the first two rule system descriptions are these:

```
CREATE TABLE shoe_data (
    shoename    text,           -- primary key
    sh_avail    integer,        -- available number of pairs
    slcolor     text,           -- preferred shoelace color
    slminlen    real,           -- minimum shoelace length
    slmaxlen    real,           -- maximum shoelace length
    slunit      text            -- length unit
);

CREATE TABLE shoelace_data (
    sl_name     text,           -- primary key
    sl_avail    integer,        -- available number of pairs
    sl_color    text,           -- shoelace color
    sl_len      real,           -- shoelace length
    sl_unit     text            -- length unit
);
```

```
CREATE TABLE unit (  
    un_name      text,          -- primary key  
    un_fact      real          -- factor to transform to cm  
);
```

As you can see, they represent shoe-store data.

The views are created as:

```
CREATE VIEW shoe AS  
    SELECT sh.shoename,  
           sh.sh_avail,  
           sh.slcolor,  
           sh.slminlen,  
           sh.slminlen * un.un_fact AS slminlen_cm,  
           sh.slmaxlen,  
           sh.slmaxlen * un.un_fact AS slmaxlen_cm,  
           sh.slunit  
    FROM shoe_data sh, unit un  
    WHERE sh.slunit = un.un_name;  
  
CREATE VIEW shoelace AS  
    SELECT s.sl_name,  
           s.sl_avail,  
           s.sl_color,  
           s.sl_len,  
           s.sl_unit,  
           s.sl_len * u.un_fact AS sl_len_cm  
    FROM shoelace_data s, unit u  
    WHERE s.sl_unit = u.un_name;  
  
CREATE VIEW shoe_ready AS  
    SELECT rsh.shoename,  
           rsh.sh_avail,  
           rsl.sl_name,  
           rsl.sl_avail,  
           least(rsh.sh_avail, rsl.sl_avail) AS total_avail  
    FROM shoe rsh, shoelace rsl  
    WHERE rsl.sl_color = rsh.slcolor  
           AND rsl.sl_len_cm >= rsh.slminlen_cm  
           AND rsl.sl_len_cm <= rsh.slmaxlen_cm;
```

The CREATE VIEW command for the shoelace view (which is the simplest one we have) will create a relation shoelace and an entry in pg\_rewrite that tells that there is a rewrite rule that must be applied whenever the relation shoelace is referenced in a query's range table. The rule has no rule qualification (discussed later, with the non-SELECT rules, since SELECT rules currently cannot have them) and it is INSTEAD. Note that rule qualifications are not the same as query qualifications. The action of our rule has a query qualification. The action of the rule is one query tree that is a copy of the SELECT statement in the view creation command.

### Note

The two extra range table entries for NEW and OLD that you can see in the pg\_rewrite entry aren't of interest for SELECT rules.

Now we populate unit, shoe\_data and shoelace\_data and run a simple query on a view:

```

INSERT INTO unit VALUES ('cm', 1.0);
INSERT INTO unit VALUES ('m', 100.0);
INSERT INTO unit VALUES ('inch', 2.54);

INSERT INTO shoe_data VALUES ('sh1', 2, 'black', 70.0, 90.0, 'cm');
INSERT INTO shoe_data VALUES ('sh2', 0, 'black', 30.0, 40.0,
    'inch');
INSERT INTO shoe_data VALUES ('sh3', 4, 'brown', 50.0, 65.0, 'cm');
INSERT INTO shoe_data VALUES ('sh4', 3, 'brown', 40.0, 50.0,
    'inch');

INSERT INTO shoelace_data VALUES ('sl1', 5, 'black', 80.0, 'cm');
INSERT INTO shoelace_data VALUES ('sl2', 6, 'black', 100.0, 'cm');
INSERT INTO shoelace_data VALUES ('sl3', 0, 'black', 35.0 ,
    'inch');
INSERT INTO shoelace_data VALUES ('sl4', 8, 'black', 40.0 ,
    'inch');
INSERT INTO shoelace_data VALUES ('sl5', 4, 'brown', 1.0 , 'm');
INSERT INTO shoelace_data VALUES ('sl6', 0, 'brown', 0.9 , 'm');
INSERT INTO shoelace_data VALUES ('sl7', 7, 'brown', 60 , 'cm');
INSERT INTO shoelace_data VALUES ('sl8', 1, 'brown', 40 , 'inch');

SELECT * FROM shoelace;

```

sl_name	sl_avail	sl_color	sl_len	sl_unit	sl_len_cm
sl1	5	black	80	cm	80
sl2	6	black	100	cm	100
sl7	7	brown	60	cm	60
sl3	0	black	35	inch	88.9
sl4	8	black	40	inch	101.6
sl8	1	brown	40	inch	101.6
sl5	4	brown	1	m	100
sl6	0	brown	0.9	m	90

(8 rows)

This is the simplest SELECT you can do on our views, so we take this opportunity to explain the basics of view rules. The SELECT \* FROM shoelace was interpreted by the parser and produced the query tree:

```

SELECT shoelace.sl_name, shoelace.sl_avail,
       shoelace.sl_color, shoelace.sl_len,
       shoelace.sl_unit, shoelace.sl_len_cm
FROM shoelace shoelace;

```

and this is given to the rule system. The rule system walks through the range table and checks if there are rules for any relation. When processing the range table entry for shoelace (the only one up to now) it finds the \_RETURN rule with the query tree:

```

SELECT s.sl_name, s.sl_avail,
       s.sl_color, s.sl_len, s.sl_unit,
       s.sl_len * u.un_fact AS sl_len_cm
FROM shoelace old, shoelace new,
     shoelace_data s, unit u

```

```
WHERE s.sl_unit = u.un_name;
```

To expand the view, the rewriter simply creates a subquery range-table entry containing the rule's action query tree, and substitutes this range table entry for the original one that referenced the view. The resulting rewritten query tree is almost the same as if you had typed:

```
SELECT shoelace.sl_name, shoelace.sl_avail,
       shoelace.sl_color, shoelace.sl_len,
       shoelace.sl_unit, shoelace.sl_len_cm
FROM (SELECT s.sl_name,
            s.sl_avail,
            s.sl_color,
            s.sl_len,
            s.sl_unit,
            s.sl_len * u.un_fact AS sl_len_cm
      FROM shoelace_data s, unit u
      WHERE s.sl_unit = u.un_name) shoelace;
```

There is one difference however: the subquery's range table has two extra entries `shoelace old` and `shoelace new`. These entries don't participate directly in the query, since they aren't referenced by the subquery's join tree or target list. The rewriter uses them to store the access privilege check information that was originally present in the range-table entry that referenced the view. In this way, the executor will still check that the user has proper privileges to access the view, even though there's no direct use of the view in the rewritten query.

That was the first rule applied. The rule system will continue checking the remaining range-table entries in the top query (in this example there are no more), and it will recursively check the range-table entries in the added subquery to see if any of them reference views. (But it won't expand `old` or `new` — otherwise we'd have infinite recursion!) In this example, there are no rewrite rules for `shoelace_data` or `unit`, so rewriting is complete and the above is the final result given to the planner.

Now we want to write a query that finds out for which shoes currently in the store we have the matching shoelaces (color and length) and where the total number of exactly matching pairs is greater than or equal to two.

```
SELECT * FROM shoe_ready WHERE total_avail >= 2;
```

shoename	sh_avail	sl_name	sl_avail	total_avail
sh1	2	sl1	5	2
sh3	4	sl7	7	4

(2 rows)

The output of the parser this time is the query tree:

```
SELECT shoe_ready.shoename, shoe_ready.sh_avail,
       shoe_ready.sl_name, shoe_ready.sl_avail,
       shoe_ready.total_avail
FROM shoe_ready shoe_ready
WHERE shoe_ready.total_avail >= 2;
```

The first rule applied will be the one for the `shoe_ready` view and it results in the query tree:

```
SELECT shoe_ready.shoename, shoe_ready.sh_avail,
```

```
        shoe_ready.sl_name, shoe_ready.sl_avail,
        shoe_ready.total_avail
FROM (SELECT rsh.shoename,
            rsh.sh_avail,
            rsl.sl_name,
            rsl.sl_avail,
            least(rsh.sh_avail, rsl.sl_avail) AS total_avail
      FROM shoe rsh, shoelace rsl
     WHERE rsl.sl_color = rsh.slcolor
           AND rsl.sl_len_cm >= rsh.slminlen_cm
           AND rsl.sl_len_cm <= rsh.slmaxlen_cm) shoe_ready
WHERE shoe_ready.total_avail >= 2;
```

Similarly, the rules for shoe and shoelace are substituted into the range table of the subquery, leading to a three-level final query tree:

```
SELECT shoe_ready.shoename, shoe_ready.sh_avail,
       shoe_ready.sl_name, shoe_ready.sl_avail,
       shoe_ready.total_avail
FROM (SELECT rsh.shoename,
            rsh.sh_avail,
            rsl.sl_name,
            rsl.sl_avail,
            least(rsh.sh_avail, rsl.sl_avail) AS total_avail
      FROM (SELECT sh.shoename,
                  sh.sh_avail,
                  sh.slcolor,
                  sh.slminlen,
                  sh.slminlen * un.un_fact AS slminlen_cm,
                  sh.slmaxlen,
                  sh.slmaxlen * un.un_fact AS slmaxlen_cm,
                  sh.slunit
             FROM shoe_data sh, unit un
            WHERE sh.slunit = un.un_name) rsh,
      (SELECT s.sl_name,
              s.sl_avail,
              s.sl_color,
              s.sl_len,
              s.sl_unit,
              s.sl_len * u.un_fact AS sl_len_cm
             FROM shoelace_data s, unit u
            WHERE s.sl_unit = u.un_name) rsl
     WHERE rsl.sl_color = rsh.slcolor
           AND rsl.sl_len_cm >= rsh.slminlen_cm
           AND rsl.sl_len_cm <= rsh.slmaxlen_cm) shoe_ready
WHERE shoe_ready.total_avail > 2;
```

This might look inefficient, but the planner will collapse this into a single-level query tree by “pulling up” the subqueries, and then it will plan the joins just as if we’d written them out manually. So collapsing the query tree is an optimization that the rewrite system doesn’t have to concern itself with.

## 41.2.2. View Rules in Non-SELECT Statements

Two details of the query tree aren’t touched in the description of view rules above. These are the command type and the result relation. In fact, the command type is not needed by view rules, but the result relation may affect the way in which the query rewriter works, because special care needs to be taken if the result relation is a view.

There are only a few differences between a query tree for a `SELECT` and one for any other command. Obviously, they have a different command type and for a command other than a `SELECT`, the result relation points to the range-table entry where the result should go. Everything else is absolutely the same. So having two tables `t1` and `t2` with columns `a` and `b`, the query trees for the two statements:

```
SELECT t2.b FROM t1, t2 WHERE t1.a = t2.a;
```

```
UPDATE t1 SET b = t2.b FROM t2 WHERE t1.a = t2.a;
```

are nearly identical. In particular:

- The range tables contain entries for the tables `t1` and `t2`.
- The target lists contain one variable that points to column `b` of the range table entry for table `t2`.
- The qualification expressions compare the columns `a` of both range-table entries for equality.
- The join trees show a simple join between `t1` and `t2`.

The consequence is, that both query trees result in similar execution plans: They are both joins over the two tables. For the `UPDATE` the missing columns from `t1` are added to the target list by the planner and the final query tree will read as:

```
UPDATE t1 SET a = t1.a, b = t2.b FROM t2 WHERE t1.a = t2.a;
```

and thus the executor run over the join will produce exactly the same result set as:

```
SELECT t1.a, t2.b FROM t1, t2 WHERE t1.a = t2.a;
```

But there is a little problem in `UPDATE`: the part of the executor plan that does the join does not care what the results from the join are meant for. It just produces a result set of rows. The fact that one is a `SELECT` command and the other is an `UPDATE` is handled higher up in the executor, where it knows that this is an `UPDATE`, and it knows that this result should go into table `t1`. But which of the rows that are there has to be replaced by the new row?

To resolve this problem, another entry is added to the target list in `UPDATE` (and also in `DELETE`) statements: the current tuple ID (CTID). This is a system column containing the file block number and position in the block for the row. Knowing the table, the CTID can be used to retrieve the original row of `t1` to be updated. After adding the CTID to the target list, the query actually looks like:

```
SELECT t1.a, t2.b, t1.ctid FROM t1, t2 WHERE t1.a = t2.a;
```

Now another detail of PostgreSQL enters the stage. Old table rows aren't overwritten, and this is why `ROLLBACK` is fast. In an `UPDATE`, the new result row is inserted into the table (after stripping the CTID) and in the row header of the old row, which the CTID pointed to, the `cmx` and `xmx` entries are set to the current command counter and current transaction ID. Thus the old row is hidden, and after the transaction commits the vacuum cleaner can eventually remove the dead row.

Knowing all that, we can simply apply view rules in absolutely the same way to any command. There is no difference.

### 41.2.3. The Power of Views in PostgreSQL

The above demonstrates how the rule system incorporates view definitions into the original query tree. In the second example, a simple `SELECT` from one view created a final query tree that is a join of 4 tables (`unit` was used twice with different names).



The benefit of implementing views with the rule system is that the planner has all the information about which tables have to be scanned plus the relationships between these tables plus the restrictive qualifications from the views plus the qualifications from the original query in one single query tree. And this is still the situation when the original query is already a join over views. The planner has to decide which is the best path to execute the query, and the more information the planner has, the better this decision can be. And the rule system as implemented in PostgreSQL ensures that this is all information available about the query up to that point.

## 41.2.4. Updating a View

What happens if a view is named as the target relation for an `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE`? Doing the substitutions described above would give a query tree in which the result relation points at a subquery range-table entry, which will not work. There are several ways in which PostgreSQL can support the appearance of updating a view, however. In order of user-experienced complexity those are: automatically substitute in the underlying table for the view, execute a user-defined trigger, or rewrite the query per a user-defined rule. These options are discussed below.

If the subquery selects from a single base relation and is simple enough, the rewriter can automatically replace the subquery with the underlying base relation so that the `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE` is applied to the base relation in the appropriate way. Views that are “simple enough” for this are called *automatically updatable*. For detailed information on the kinds of view that can be automatically updated, see `CREATE VIEW`.

Alternatively, the operation may be handled by a user-provided `INSTEAD OF` trigger on the view (see `CREATE TRIGGER`). Rewriting works slightly differently in this case. For `INSERT`, the rewriter does nothing at all with the view, leaving it as the result relation for the query. For `UPDATE` and `DELETE`, it's still necessary to expand the view query to produce the “old” rows that the command will attempt to update or delete. So the view is expanded as normal, but another unexpanded range-table entry is added to the query to represent the view in its capacity as the result relation.

The problem that now arises is how to identify the rows to be updated in the view. Recall that when the result relation is a table, a special `CTID` entry is added to the target list to identify the physical locations of the rows to be updated. This does not work if the result relation is a view, because a view does not have any `CTID`, since its rows do not have actual physical locations. Instead, for an `UPDATE` or `DELETE` operation, a special `wholerow` entry is added to the target list, which expands to include all columns from the view. The executor uses this value to supply the “old” row to the `INSTEAD OF` trigger. It is up to the trigger to work out what to update based on the old and new row values.

Another possibility is for the user to define `INSTEAD` rules that specify substitute actions for `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, and `DELETE` commands on a view. These rules will rewrite the command, typically into a command that updates one or more tables, rather than views. That is the topic of Section 41.4.

Note that rules are evaluated first, rewriting the original query before it is planned and executed. Therefore, if a view has `INSTEAD OF` triggers as well as rules on `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE`, then the rules will be evaluated first, and depending on the result, the triggers may not be used at all.

Automatic rewriting of an `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE` query on a simple view is always tried last. Therefore, if a view has rules or triggers, they will override the default behavior of automatically updatable views.

If there are no `INSTEAD` rules or `INSTEAD OF` triggers for the view, and the rewriter cannot automatically rewrite the query as an update on the underlying base relation, an error will be thrown because the executor cannot update a view as such.

## 41.3. Materialized Views

Materialized views in PostgreSQL use the rule system like views do, but persist the results in a table-like form. The main differences between:

```
CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW mymatview AS SELECT * FROM mytab;
```

and:

```
CREATE TABLE mymatview AS SELECT * FROM mytab;
```

are that the materialized view cannot subsequently be directly updated and that the query used to create the materialized view is stored in exactly the same way that a view's query is stored, so that fresh data can be generated for the materialized view with:

```
REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW mymatview;
```

The information about a materialized view in the PostgreSQL system catalogs is exactly the same as it is for a table or view. So for the parser, a materialized view is a relation, just like a table or a view. When a materialized view is referenced in a query, the data is returned directly from the materialized view, like from a table; the rule is only used for populating the materialized view.

While access to the data stored in a materialized view is often much faster than accessing the underlying tables directly or through a view, the data is not always current; yet sometimes current data is not needed. Consider a table which records sales:

```
CREATE TABLE invoice (  
    invoice_no    integer          PRIMARY KEY,  
    seller_no     integer,          -- ID of salesperson  
    invoice_date  date,             -- date of sale  
    invoice_amt   numeric(13,2)    -- amount of sale  
);
```

If people want to be able to quickly graph historical sales data, they might want to summarize, and they may not care about the incomplete data for the current date:

```
CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW sales_summary AS  
SELECT  
    seller_no,  
    invoice_date,  
    sum(invoice_amt)::numeric(13,2) as sales_amt  
FROM invoice  
WHERE invoice_date < CURRENT_DATE  
GROUP BY  
    seller_no,  
    invoice_date;
```

```
CREATE UNIQUE INDEX sales_summary_seller  
ON sales_summary (seller_no, invoice_date);
```

This materialized view might be useful for displaying a graph in the dashboard created for salespeople. A job could be scheduled to update the statistics each night using this SQL statement:

```
REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW sales_summary;
```

Another use for a materialized view is to allow faster access to data brought across from a remote system through a foreign data wrapper. A simple example using `file_fdw` is below, with timings, but since this is using cache on the local system the performance difference compared to access to a remote system would usually be greater than shown here. Notice we are also exploiting the ability to

put an index on the materialized view, whereas `file_fdw` does not support indexes; this advantage might not apply for other sorts of foreign data access.

Setup:

```
CREATE EXTENSION file_fdw;
CREATE SERVER local_file FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER file_fdw;
CREATE FOREIGN TABLE words (word text NOT NULL)
    SERVER local_file
    OPTIONS (filename '/usr/share/dict/words');
CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW wrd AS SELECT * FROM words;
CREATE UNIQUE INDEX wrd_word ON wrd (word);
CREATE EXTENSION pg_trgm;
CREATE INDEX wrd_trgm ON wrd USING gist (word gist_trgm_ops);
VACUUM ANALYZE wrd;
```

Now let's spell-check a word. Using `file_fdw` directly:

```
SELECT count(*) FROM words WHERE word = 'caterpiler';

count
-----
      0
(1 row)
```

With `EXPLAIN ANALYZE`, we see:

```
Aggregate  (cost=21763.99..21764.00 rows=1 width=0) (actual
time=188.180..188.181 rows=1 loops=1)
  -> Foreign Scan on words  (cost=0.00..21761.41 rows=1032
width=0) (actual time=188.177..188.177 rows=0 loops=1)
    Filter: (word = 'caterpiler'::text)
    Rows Removed by Filter: 479829
    Foreign File: /usr/share/dict/words
    Foreign File Size: 4953699
    Planning time: 0.118 ms
    Execution time: 188.273 ms
```

If the materialized view is used instead, the query is much faster:

```
Aggregate  (cost=4.44..4.45 rows=1 width=0) (actual
time=0.042..0.042 rows=1 loops=1)
  -> Index Only Scan using wrd_word on wrd  (cost=0.42..4.44
rows=1 width=0) (actual time=0.039..0.039 rows=0 loops=1)
    Index Cond: (word = 'caterpiler'::text)
    Heap Fetches: 0
    Planning time: 0.164 ms
    Execution time: 0.117 ms
```

Either way, the word is spelled wrong, so let's look for what we might have wanted. Again using `file_fdw` and `pg_trgm`:

```
SELECT word FROM words ORDER BY word <-> 'caterpiler' LIMIT 10;

word
```

```
-----
cater
caterpillar
Caterpillar
caterpillars
caterpillar's
Caterpillar's
caterer
caterer's
caters
catered
(10 rows)

Limit  (cost=11583.61..11583.64 rows=10 width=32) (actual
time=1431.591..1431.594 rows=10 loops=1)
  -> Sort  (cost=11583.61..11804.76 rows=88459 width=32) (actual
time=1431.589..1431.591 rows=10 loops=1)
        Sort Key: ((word <-> 'caterpiler'::text))
        Sort Method: top-N heapsort  Memory: 25kB
  -> Foreign Scan on words  (cost=0.00..9672.05 rows=88459
width=32) (actual time=0.057..1286.455 rows=479829 loops=1)
        Foreign File: /usr/share/dict/words
        Foreign File Size: 4953699
Planning time: 0.128 ms
Execution time: 1431.679 ms
```

Using the materialized view:

```
Limit  (cost=0.29..1.06 rows=10 width=10) (actual
time=187.222..188.257 rows=10 loops=1)
  -> Index Scan using wrd_trgm on wrd  (cost=0.29..37020.87
rows=479829 width=10) (actual time=187.219..188.252 rows=10
loops=1)
        Order By: (word <-> 'caterpiler'::text)
Planning time: 0.196 ms
Execution time: 198.640 ms
```

If you can tolerate periodic update of the remote data to the local database, the performance benefit can be substantial.

## 41.4. Rules on INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE

Rules that are defined on INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE are significantly different from the view rules described in the previous sections. First, their CREATE RULE command allows more:

- They are allowed to have no action.
- They can have multiple actions.
- They can be INSTEAD or ALSO (the default).
- The pseudorelations NEW and OLD become useful.
- They can have rule qualifications.

Second, they don't modify the query tree in place. Instead they create zero or more new query trees and can throw away the original one.

### Caution

In many cases, tasks that could be performed by rules on INSERT/UPDATE/DELETE are better done with triggers. Triggers are notationally a bit more complicated, but their semantics are much simpler to understand. Rules tend to have surprising results when the original query contains volatile functions: volatile functions may get executed more times than expected in the process of carrying out the rules.

Also, there are some cases that are not supported by these types of rules at all, notably including WITH clauses in the original query and multiple-assignment sub-SELECTs in the SET list of UPDATE queries. This is because copying these constructs into a rule query would result in multiple evaluations of the sub-query, contrary to the express intent of the query's author.

## 41.4.1. How Update Rules Work

Keep the syntax:

```
CREATE [ OR REPLACE ] RULE name AS ON event
    TO table [ WHERE condition ]
    DO [ ALSO | INSTEAD ] { NOTHING | command | ( command ; command
... ) }
```

in mind. In the following, *update rules* means rules that are defined on INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE.

Update rules get applied by the rule system when the result relation and the command type of a query tree are equal to the object and event given in the CREATE RULE command. For update rules, the rule system creates a list of query trees. Initially the query-tree list is empty. There can be zero (NOTHING key word), one, or multiple actions. To simplify, we will look at a rule with one action. This rule can have a qualification or not and it can be INSTEAD or ALSO (the default).

What is a rule qualification? It is a restriction that tells when the actions of the rule should be done and when not. This qualification can only reference the pseudorelations NEW and/or OLD, which basically represent the relation that was given as object (but with a special meaning).

So we have three cases that produce the following query trees for a one-action rule.

No qualification, with either ALSO or INSTEAD

the query tree from the rule action with the original query tree's qualification added

Qualification given and ALSO

the query tree from the rule action with the rule qualification and the original query tree's qualification added

Qualification given and INSTEAD

the query tree from the rule action with the rule qualification and the original query tree's qualification; and the original query tree with the negated rule qualification added

Finally, if the rule is ALSO, the unchanged original query tree is added to the list. Since only qualified INSTEAD rules already add the original query tree, we end up with either one or two output query trees for a rule with one action.

For ON INSERT rules, the original query (if not suppressed by INSTEAD) is done before any actions added by rules. This allows the actions to see the inserted row(s). But for ON UPDATE and ON DELETE rules, the original query is done after the actions added by rules. This ensures that the actions

can see the to-be-updated or to-be-deleted rows; otherwise, the actions might do nothing because they find no rows matching their qualifications.

The query trees generated from rule actions are thrown into the rewrite system again, and maybe more rules get applied resulting in additional or fewer query trees. So a rule's actions must have either a different command type or a different result relation than the rule itself is on, otherwise this recursive process will end up in an infinite loop. (Recursive expansion of a rule will be detected and reported as an error.)

The query trees found in the actions of the `pg_rewrite` system catalog are only templates. Since they can reference the range-table entries for `NEW` and `OLD`, some substitutions have to be made before they can be used. For any reference to `NEW`, the target list of the original query is searched for a corresponding entry. If found, that entry's expression replaces the reference. Otherwise, `NEW` means the same as `OLD` (for an `UPDATE`) or is replaced by a null value (for an `INSERT`). Any reference to `OLD` is replaced by a reference to the range-table entry that is the result relation.

After the system is done applying update rules, it applies view rules to the produced query tree(s). Views cannot insert new update actions so there is no need to apply update rules to the output of view rewriting.

### 41.4.1.1. A First Rule Step by Step

Say we want to trace changes to the `sl_avail` column in the `shoelace_data` relation. So we set up a log table and a rule that conditionally writes a log entry when an `UPDATE` is performed on `shoelace_data`.

```
CREATE TABLE shoelace_log (
    sl_name      text,          -- shoelace changed
    sl_avail     integer,       -- new available value
    log_who      text,          -- who did it
    log_when     timestamp      -- when
);

CREATE RULE log_shoelace AS ON UPDATE TO shoelace_data
    WHERE NEW.sl_avail <> OLD.sl_avail
    DO INSERT INTO shoelace_log VALUES (
        NEW.sl_name,
        NEW.sl_avail,
        current_user,
        current_timestamp
    );
```

Now someone does:

```
UPDATE shoelace_data SET sl_avail = 6 WHERE sl_name = 'sl7';
```

and we look at the log table:

```
SELECT * FROM shoelace_log;
```

sl_name	sl_avail	log_who	log_when
sl7	6	Al	Tue Oct 20 16:14:45 1998 MET DST

(1 row)

That's what we expected. What happened in the background is the following. The parser created the query tree:

```
UPDATE shoelace_data SET sl_avail = 6
  FROM shoelace_data shoelace_data
 WHERE shoelace_data.sl_name = 'sl7';
```

There is a rule `log_shoelace` that is ON `UPDATE` with the rule qualification expression:

```
NEW.sl_avail <> OLD.sl_avail
```

and the action:

```
INSERT INTO shoelace_log VALUES (
  new.sl_name, new.sl_avail,
  current_user, current_timestamp )
FROM shoelace_data new, shoelace_data old;
```

(This looks a little strange since you cannot normally write `INSERT ... VALUES ... FROM`. The `FROM` clause here is just to indicate that there are range-table entries in the query tree for `new` and `old`. These are needed so that they can be referenced by variables in the `INSERT` command's query tree.)

The rule is a qualified `ALSO` rule, so the rule system has to return two query trees: the modified rule action and the original query tree. In step 1, the range table of the original query is incorporated into the rule's action query tree. This results in:

```
INSERT INTO shoelace_log VALUES (
  new.sl_name, new.sl_avail,
  current_user, current_timestamp )
FROM shoelace_data new, shoelace_data old,
     shoelace_data shoelace_data;
```

In step 2, the rule qualification is added to it, so the result set is restricted to rows where `sl_avail` changes:

```
INSERT INTO shoelace_log VALUES (
  new.sl_name, new.sl_avail,
  current_user, current_timestamp )
FROM shoelace_data new, shoelace_data old,
     shoelace_data shoelace_data
WHERE new.sl_avail <> old.sl_avail;
```

(This looks even stranger, since `INSERT ... VALUES` doesn't have a `WHERE` clause either, but the planner and executor will have no difficulty with it. They need to support this same functionality anyway for `INSERT ... SELECT`.)

In step 3, the original query tree's qualification is added, restricting the result set further to only the rows that would have been touched by the original query:

```
INSERT INTO shoelace_log VALUES (
  new.sl_name, new.sl_avail,
  current_user, current_timestamp )
FROM shoelace_data new, shoelace_data old,
     shoelace_data shoelace_data
WHERE new.sl_avail <> old.sl_avail
     AND shoelace_data.sl_name = 'sl7';
```

Step 4 replaces references to NEW by the target list entries from the original query tree or by the matching variable references from the result relation:

```
INSERT INTO shoelace_log VALUES (
    shoelace_data.sl_name, 6,
    current_user, current_timestamp )
FROM shoelace_data new, shoelace_data old,
     shoelace_data shoelace_data
WHERE 6 <> old.sl_avail
     AND shoelace_data.sl_name = 'sl7';
```

Step 5 changes OLD references into result relation references:

```
INSERT INTO shoelace_log VALUES (
    shoelace_data.sl_name, 6,
    current_user, current_timestamp )
FROM shoelace_data new, shoelace_data old,
     shoelace_data shoelace_data
WHERE 6 <> shoelace_data.sl_avail
     AND shoelace_data.sl_name = 'sl7';
```

That's it. Since the rule is ALSO, we also output the original query tree. In short, the output from the rule system is a list of two query trees that correspond to these statements:

```
INSERT INTO shoelace_log VALUES (
    shoelace_data.sl_name, 6,
    current_user, current_timestamp )
FROM shoelace_data
WHERE 6 <> shoelace_data.sl_avail
     AND shoelace_data.sl_name = 'sl7';
```

```
UPDATE shoelace_data SET sl_avail = 6
WHERE sl_name = 'sl7';
```

These are executed in this order, and that is exactly what the rule was meant to do.

The substitutions and the added qualifications ensure that, if the original query would be, say:

```
UPDATE shoelace_data SET sl_color = 'green'
WHERE sl_name = 'sl7';
```

no log entry would get written. In that case, the original query tree does not contain a target list entry for sl\_avail, so NEW.sl\_avail will get replaced by shoelace\_data.sl\_avail. Thus, the extra command generated by the rule is:

```
INSERT INTO shoelace_log VALUES (
    shoelace_data.sl_name, shoelace_data.sl_avail,
    current_user, current_timestamp )
FROM shoelace_data
WHERE shoelace_data.sl_avail <> shoelace_data.sl_avail
     AND shoelace_data.sl_name = 'sl7';
```

and that qualification will never be true.

It will also work if the original query modifies multiple rows. So if someone issued the command:



```
UPDATE shoelace_data SET sl_avail = 0
WHERE sl_color = 'black';
```

four rows in fact get updated (sl1, sl2, sl3, and sl4). But sl3 already has sl\_avail = 0. In this case, the original query trees qualification is different and that results in the extra query tree:

```
INSERT INTO shoelace_log
SELECT shoelace_data.sl_name, 0,
       current_user, current_timestamp
FROM shoelace_data
WHERE 0 <> shoelace_data.sl_avail
AND shoelace_data.sl_color = 'black';
```

being generated by the rule. This query tree will surely insert three new log entries. And that's absolutely correct.

Here we can see why it is important that the original query tree is executed last. If the UPDATE had been executed first, all the rows would have already been set to zero, so the logging INSERT would not find any row where 0 <> shoelace\_data.sl\_avail.

## 41.4.2. Cooperation with Views

A simple way to protect view relations from the mentioned possibility that someone can try to run INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE on them is to let those query trees get thrown away. So we could create the rules:

```
CREATE RULE shoe_ins_protect AS ON INSERT TO shoe
DO INSTEAD NOTHING;
CREATE RULE shoe_upd_protect AS ON UPDATE TO shoe
DO INSTEAD NOTHING;
CREATE RULE shoe_del_protect AS ON DELETE TO shoe
DO INSTEAD NOTHING;
```

If someone now tries to do any of these operations on the view relation shoe, the rule system will apply these rules. Since the rules have no actions and are INSTEAD, the resulting list of query trees will be empty and the whole query will become nothing because there is nothing left to be optimized or executed after the rule system is done with it.

A more sophisticated way to use the rule system is to create rules that rewrite the query tree into one that does the right operation on the real tables. To do that on the shoelace view, we create the following rules:

```
CREATE RULE shoelace_ins AS ON INSERT TO shoelace
DO INSTEAD
INSERT INTO shoelace_data VALUES (
    NEW.sl_name,
    NEW.sl_avail,
    NEW.sl_color,
    NEW.sl_len,
    NEW.sl_unit
);

CREATE RULE shoelace_upd AS ON UPDATE TO shoelace
DO INSTEAD
UPDATE shoelace_data
SET sl_name = NEW.sl_name,
```

```

        sl_avail = NEW.sl_avail,
        sl_color = NEW.sl_color,
        sl_len = NEW.sl_len,
        sl_unit = NEW.sl_unit
WHERE sl_name = OLD.sl_name;

```

```

CREATE RULE shoelace_del AS ON DELETE TO shoelace
DO INSTEAD
DELETE FROM shoelace_data
WHERE sl_name = OLD.sl_name;

```

If you want to support RETURNING queries on the view, you need to make the rules include RETURNING clauses that compute the view rows. This is usually pretty trivial for views on a single table, but it's a bit tedious for join views such as shoelace. An example for the insert case is:

```

CREATE RULE shoelace_ins AS ON INSERT TO shoelace
DO INSTEAD
INSERT INTO shoelace_data VALUES (
    NEW.sl_name,
    NEW.sl_avail,
    NEW.sl_color,
    NEW.sl_len,
    NEW.sl_unit
)
RETURNING
    shoelace_data.*,
    (SELECT shoelace_data.sl_len * u.un_fact
     FROM unit u WHERE shoelace_data.sl_unit = u.un_name);

```

Note that this one rule supports both INSERT and INSERT RETURNING queries on the view — the RETURNING clause is simply ignored for INSERT.

Now assume that once in a while, a pack of shoelaces arrives at the shop and a big parts list along with it. But you don't want to manually update the shoelace view every time. Instead we set up two little tables: one where you can insert the items from the part list, and one with a special trick. The creation commands for these are:

```

CREATE TABLE shoelace_arrive (
    arr_name    text,
    arr_quant   integer
);

CREATE TABLE shoelace_ok (
    ok_name     text,
    ok_quant    integer
);

CREATE RULE shoelace_ok_ins AS ON INSERT TO shoelace_ok
DO INSTEAD
UPDATE shoelace
    SET sl_avail = sl_avail + NEW.ok_quant
    WHERE sl_name = NEW.ok_name;

```

Now you can fill the table shoelace\_arrive with the data from the parts list:

```

SELECT * FROM shoelace_arrive;

```

arr_name	arr_quant
sl3	10
sl6	20
sl8	20

(3 rows)

Take a quick look at the current data:

```
SELECT * FROM shoelace;
```

sl_name	sl_avail	sl_color	sl_len	sl_unit	sl_len_cm
sl1	5	black	80	cm	80
sl2	6	black	100	cm	100
sl7	6	brown	60	cm	60
sl3	0	black	35	inch	88.9
sl4	8	black	40	inch	101.6
sl8	1	brown	40	inch	101.6
sl5	4	brown	1	m	100
sl6	0	brown	0.9	m	90

(8 rows)

Now move the arrived shoelaces in:

```
INSERT INTO shoelace_ok SELECT * FROM shoelace_arrive;
```

and check the results:

```
SELECT * FROM shoelace ORDER BY sl_name;
```

sl_name	sl_avail	sl_color	sl_len	sl_unit	sl_len_cm
sl1	5	black	80	cm	80
sl2	6	black	100	cm	100
sl7	6	brown	60	cm	60
sl4	8	black	40	inch	101.6
sl3	10	black	35	inch	88.9
sl8	21	brown	40	inch	101.6
sl5	4	brown	1	m	100
sl6	20	brown	0.9	m	90

(8 rows)

```
SELECT * FROM shoelace_log;
```

sl_name	sl_avail	log_who	log_when
sl7	6	Al	Tue Oct 20 19:14:45 1998 MET DST
sl3	10	Al	Tue Oct 20 19:25:16 1998 MET DST
sl6	20	Al	Tue Oct 20 19:25:16 1998 MET DST
sl8	21	Al	Tue Oct 20 19:25:16 1998 MET DST

(4 rows)

It's a long way from the one `INSERT ... SELECT` to these results. And the description of the query-tree transformation will be the last in this chapter. First, there is the parser's output:

```
INSERT INTO shoelace_ok
SELECT shoelace_arrive.arr_name, shoelace_arrive.arr_quant
FROM shoelace_arrive shoelace_arrive, shoelace_ok shoelace_ok;
```

Now the first rule shoelace\_ok\_ins is applied and turns this into:

```
UPDATE shoelace
SET sl_avail = shoelace.sl_avail + shoelace_arrive.arr_quant
FROM shoelace_arrive shoelace_arrive, shoelace_ok shoelace_ok,
shoelace_ok old, shoelace_ok new,
shoelace shoelace
WHERE shoelace.sl_name = shoelace_arrive.arr_name;
```

and throws away the original INSERT on shoelace\_ok. This rewritten query is passed to the rule system again, and the second applied rule shoelace\_upd produces:

```
UPDATE shoelace_data
SET sl_name = shoelace.sl_name,
sl_avail = shoelace.sl_avail + shoelace_arrive.arr_quant,
sl_color = shoelace.sl_color,
sl_len = shoelace.sl_len,
sl_unit = shoelace.sl_unit
FROM shoelace_arrive shoelace_arrive, shoelace_ok shoelace_ok,
shoelace_ok old, shoelace_ok new,
shoelace shoelace, shoelace old,
shoelace new, shoelace_data shoelace_data
WHERE shoelace.sl_name = shoelace_arrive.arr_name
AND shoelace_data.sl_name = shoelace.sl_name;
```

Again it's an INSTEAD rule and the previous query tree is trashed. Note that this query still uses the view shoelace. But the rule system isn't finished with this step, so it continues and applies the \_RETURN rule on it, and we get:

```
UPDATE shoelace_data
SET sl_name = s.sl_name,
sl_avail = s.sl_avail + shoelace_arrive.arr_quant,
sl_color = s.sl_color,
sl_len = s.sl_len,
sl_unit = s.sl_unit
FROM shoelace_arrive shoelace_arrive, shoelace_ok shoelace_ok,
shoelace_ok old, shoelace_ok new,
shoelace shoelace, shoelace old,
shoelace new, shoelace_data shoelace_data,
shoelace old, shoelace new,
shoelace_data s, unit u
WHERE s.sl_name = shoelace_arrive.arr_name
AND shoelace_data.sl_name = s.sl_name;
```

Finally, the rule log\_shoelace gets applied, producing the extra query tree:

```
INSERT INTO shoelace_log
SELECT s.sl_name,
s.sl_avail + shoelace_arrive.arr_quant,
current_user,
```

```

        current_timestamp
FROM shoelace_arrive shoelace_arrive, shoelace_ok shoelace_ok,
    shoelace_ok old, shoelace_ok new,
    shoelace shoelace, shoelace old,
    shoelace new, shoelace_data shoelace_data,
    shoelace old, shoelace new,
    shoelace_data s, unit u,
    shoelace_data old, shoelace_data new
    shoelace_log shoelace_log
WHERE s.sl_name = shoelace_arrive.arr_name
    AND shoelace_data.sl_name = s.sl_name
    AND (s.sl_avail + shoelace_arrive.arr_quant) <> s.sl_avail;

```

After that the rule system runs out of rules and returns the generated query trees.

So we end up with two final query trees that are equivalent to the SQL statements:

```

INSERT INTO shoelace_log
SELECT s.sl_name,
    s.sl_avail + shoelace_arrive.arr_quant,
    current_user,
    current_timestamp
FROM shoelace_arrive shoelace_arrive, shoelace_data
shoelace_data,
    shoelace_data s
WHERE s.sl_name = shoelace_arrive.arr_name
    AND shoelace_data.sl_name = s.sl_name
    AND s.sl_avail + shoelace_arrive.arr_quant <> s.sl_avail;

UPDATE shoelace_data
SET sl_avail = shoelace_data.sl_avail +
shoelace_arrive.arr_quant
FROM shoelace_arrive shoelace_arrive,
    shoelace_data shoelace_data,
    shoelace_data s
WHERE s.sl_name = shoelace_arrive.sl_name
    AND shoelace_data.sl_name = s.sl_name;

```

The result is that data coming from one relation inserted into another, changed into updates on a third, changed into updating a fourth plus logging that final update in a fifth gets reduced into two queries.

There is a little detail that's a bit ugly. Looking at the two queries, it turns out that the shoelace\_data relation appears twice in the range table where it could definitely be reduced to one. The planner does not handle it and so the execution plan for the rule systems output of the INSERT will be

```

Nested Loop
-> Merge Join
    -> Seq Scan
        -> Sort
            -> Seq Scan on s
        -> Seq Scan
            -> Sort
                -> Seq Scan on shoelace_arrive
    -> Seq Scan on shoelace_data

```

while omitting the extra range table entry would result in a

```

Merge Join
-> Seq Scan
    -> Sort
        -> Seq Scan on s
-> Seq Scan
    -> Sort
        -> Seq Scan on shoelace_arrive

```

which produces exactly the same entries in the log table. Thus, the rule system caused one extra scan on the table `shoelace_data` that is absolutely not necessary. And the same redundant scan is done once more in the UPDATE. But it was a really hard job to make that all possible at all.

Now we make a final demonstration of the PostgreSQL rule system and its power. Say you add some shoelaces with extraordinary colors to your database:

```

INSERT INTO shoelace VALUES ('sl9', 0, 'pink', 35.0, 'inch', 0.0);
INSERT INTO shoelace VALUES ('sl10', 1000, 'magenta', 40.0, 'inch',
0.0);

```

We would like to make a view to check which shoelace entries do not fit any shoe in color. The view for this is:

```

CREATE VIEW shoelace_mismatch AS
    SELECT * FROM shoelace WHERE NOT EXISTS
        (SELECT shoename FROM shoe WHERE slcolor = sl_color);

```

Its output is:

```

SELECT * FROM shoelace_mismatch;

```

sl_name	sl_avail	sl_color	sl_len	sl_unit	sl_len_cm
sl9	0	pink	35	inch	88.9
sl10	1000	magenta	40	inch	101.6

Now we want to set it up so that mismatching shoelaces that are not in stock are deleted from the database. To make it a little harder for PostgreSQL, we don't delete it directly. Instead we create one more view:

```

CREATE VIEW shoelace_can_delete AS
    SELECT * FROM shoelace_mismatch WHERE sl_avail = 0;

```

and do it this way:

```

DELETE FROM shoelace WHERE EXISTS
    (SELECT * FROM shoelace_can_delete
        WHERE sl_name = shoelace.sl_name);

```

The results are:

```

SELECT * FROM shoelace;

```

sl_name	sl_avail	sl_color	sl_len	sl_unit	sl_len_cm
---------	----------	----------	--------	---------	-----------

s11	5	black	80	cm	80
s12	6	black	100	cm	100
s17	6	brown	60	cm	60
s14	8	black	40	inch	101.6
s13	10	black	35	inch	88.9
s18	21	brown	40	inch	101.6
s110	1000	magenta	40	inch	101.6
s15	4	brown	1	m	100
s16	20	brown	0.9	m	90

(9 rows)

A DELETE on a view, with a subquery qualification that in total uses 4 nesting/joined views, where one of them itself has a subquery qualification containing a view and where calculated view columns are used, gets rewritten into one single query tree that deletes the requested data from a real table.

There are probably only a few situations out in the real world where such a construct is necessary. But it makes you feel comfortable that it works.

## 41.5. Rules and Privileges

Due to rewriting of queries by the PostgreSQL rule system, other tables/views than those used in the original query get accessed. When update rules are used, this can include write access to tables.

Rewrite rules don't have a separate owner. The owner of a relation (table or view) is automatically the owner of the rewrite rules that are defined for it. The PostgreSQL rule system changes the behavior of the default access control system. With the exception of SELECT rules associated with security invoker views (see CREATE VIEW), all relations that are used due to rules get checked against the privileges of the rule owner, not the user invoking the rule. This means that, except for security invoker views, users only need the required privileges for the tables/views that are explicitly named in their queries.

For example: A user has a list of phone numbers where some of them are private, the others are of interest for the assistant of the office. The user can construct the following:

```
CREATE TABLE phone_data (person text, phone text, private boolean);
CREATE VIEW phone_number AS
    SELECT person, CASE WHEN NOT private THEN phone END AS phone
    FROM phone_data;
GRANT SELECT ON phone_number TO assistant;
```

Nobody except that user (and the database superusers) can access the phone\_data table. But because of the GRANT, the assistant can run a SELECT on the phone\_number view. The rule system will rewrite the SELECT from phone\_number into a SELECT from phone\_data. Since the user is the owner of phone\_number and therefore the owner of the rule, the read access to phone\_data is now checked against the user's privileges and the query is permitted. The check for accessing phone\_number is also performed, but this is done against the invoking user, so nobody but the user and the assistant can use it.

The privileges are checked rule by rule. So the assistant is for now the only one who can see the public phone numbers. But the assistant can set up another view and grant access to that to the public. Then, anyone can see the phone\_number data through the assistant's view. What the assistant cannot do is to create a view that directly accesses phone\_data. (Actually the assistant can, but it will not work since every access will be denied during the permission checks.) And as soon as the user notices that the assistant opened their phone\_number view, the user can revoke the assistant's access. Immediately, any access to the assistant's view would fail.

One might think that this rule-by-rule checking is a security hole, but in fact it isn't. But if it did not work this way, the assistant could set up a table with the same columns as phone\_number and copy

the data to there once per day. Then it's the assistant's own data and the assistant can grant access to everyone they want. A `GRANT` command means, "I trust you". If someone you trust does the thing above, it's time to think it over and then use `REVOKE`.

Note that while views can be used to hide the contents of certain columns using the technique shown above, they cannot be used to reliably conceal the data in unseen rows unless the `security_barrier` flag has been set. For example, the following view is insecure:

```
CREATE VIEW phone_number AS
  SELECT person, phone FROM phone_data WHERE phone NOT LIKE
    '412%';
```

This view might seem secure, since the rule system will rewrite any `SELECT` from `phone_number` into a `SELECT` from `phone_data` and add the qualification that only entries where `phone` does not begin with 412 are wanted. But if the user can create their own functions, it is not difficult to convince the planner to execute the user-defined function prior to the `NOT LIKE` expression. For example:

```
CREATE FUNCTION tricky(text, text) RETURNS bool AS $$
BEGIN
  RAISE NOTICE '% => %', $1, $2;
  RETURN true;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql COST 0.000000000000000000000001;

SELECT * FROM phone_number WHERE tricky(person, phone);
```

Every person and phone number in the `phone_data` table will be printed as a `NOTICE`, because the planner will choose to execute the inexpensive `tricky` function before the more expensive `NOT LIKE`. Even if the user is prevented from defining new functions, built-in functions can be used in similar attacks. (For example, most casting functions include their input values in the error messages they produce.)

Similar considerations apply to update rules. In the examples of the previous section, the owner of the tables in the example database could grant the privileges `SELECT`, `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, and `DELETE` on the `shoelace` view to someone else, but only `SELECT` on `shoelace_log`. The rule action to write log entries will still be executed successfully, and that other user could see the log entries. But they could not create fake entries, nor could they manipulate or remove existing ones. In this case, there is no possibility of subverting the rules by convincing the planner to alter the order of operations, because the only rule which references `shoelace_log` is an unqualified `INSERT`. This might not be true in more complex scenarios.

When it is necessary for a view to provide row-level security, the `security_barrier` attribute should be applied to the view. This prevents maliciously-chosen functions and operators from being passed values from rows until after the view has done its work. For example, if the view shown above had been created like this, it would be secure:

```
CREATE VIEW phone_number WITH (security_barrier) AS
  SELECT person, phone FROM phone_data WHERE phone NOT LIKE
    '412%';
```

Views created with the `security_barrier` may perform far worse than views created without this option. In general, there is no way to avoid this: the fastest possible plan must be rejected if it may compromise security. For this reason, this option is not enabled by default.

The query planner has more flexibility when dealing with functions that have no side effects. Such functions are referred to as `LEAKPROOF`, and include many simple, commonly used operators, such as many equality operators. The query planner can safely allow such functions to be evaluated at any



point in the query execution process, since invoking them on rows invisible to the user will not leak any information about the unseen rows. Further, functions which do not take arguments or which are not passed any arguments from the security barrier view do not have to be marked as `LEAKPROOF` to be pushed down, as they never receive data from the view. In contrast, a function that might throw an error depending on the values received as arguments (such as one that throws an error in the event of overflow or division by zero) is not leak-proof, and could provide significant information about the unseen rows if applied before the security view's row filters.

It is important to understand that even a view created with the `security_barrier` option is intended to be secure only in the limited sense that the contents of the invisible tuples will not be passed to possibly-insecure functions. The user may well have other means of making inferences about the unseen data; for example, they can see the query plan using `EXPLAIN`, or measure the run time of queries against the view. A malicious attacker might be able to infer something about the amount of unseen data, or even gain some information about the data distribution or most common values (since these things may affect the run time of the plan; or even, since they are also reflected in the optimizer statistics, the choice of plan). If these types of "covert channel" attacks are of concern, it is probably unwise to grant any access to the data at all.

## 41.6. Rules and Command Status

The PostgreSQL server returns a command status string, such as `INSERT 149592 1`, for each command it receives. This is simple enough when there are no rules involved, but what happens when the query is rewritten by rules?

Rules affect the command status as follows:

- If there is no unconditional `INSTEAD` rule for the query, then the originally given query will be executed, and its command status will be returned as usual. (But note that if there were any conditional `INSTEAD` rules, the negation of their qualifications will have been added to the original query. This might reduce the number of rows it processes, and if so the reported status will be affected.)
- If there is any unconditional `INSTEAD` rule for the query, then the original query will not be executed at all. In this case, the server will return the command status for the last query that was inserted by an `INSTEAD` rule (conditional or unconditional) and is of the same command type (`INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE`) as the original query. If no query meeting those requirements is added by any rule, then the returned command status shows the original query type and zeroes for the row-count and OID fields.

The programmer can ensure that any desired `INSTEAD` rule is the one that sets the command status in the second case, by giving it the alphabetically last rule name among the active rules, so that it gets applied last.

## 41.7. Rules Versus Triggers

Many things that can be done using triggers can also be implemented using the PostgreSQL rule system. One of the things that cannot be implemented by rules are some kinds of constraints, especially foreign keys. It is possible to place a qualified rule that rewrites a command to `NOTHING` if the value of a column does not appear in another table. But then the data is silently thrown away and that's not a good idea. If checks for valid values are required, and in the case of an invalid value an error message should be generated, it must be done by a trigger.

In this chapter, we focused on using rules to update views. All of the update rule examples in this chapter can also be implemented using `INSTEAD OF` triggers on the views. Writing such triggers is often easier than writing rules, particularly if complex logic is required to perform the update.

For the things that can be implemented by both, which is best depends on the usage of the database. A trigger is fired once for each affected row. A rule modifies the query or generates an additional query. So if many rows are affected in one statement, a rule issuing one extra command is likely to

be faster than a trigger that is called for every single row and must re-determine what to do many times. However, the trigger approach is conceptually far simpler than the rule approach, and is easier for novices to get right.

Here we show an example of how the choice of rules versus triggers plays out in one situation. There are two tables:

```
CREATE TABLE computer (  
    hostname      text,      -- indexed  
    manufacturer  text      -- indexed  
);  
  
CREATE TABLE software (  
    software      text,      -- indexed  
    hostname      text      -- indexed  
);
```

Both tables have many thousands of rows and the indexes on hostname are unique. The rule or trigger should implement a constraint that deletes rows from software that reference a deleted computer. The trigger would use this command:

```
DELETE FROM software WHERE hostname = $1;
```

Since the trigger is called for each individual row deleted from computer, it can prepare and save the plan for this command and pass the hostname value in the parameter. The rule would be written as:

```
CREATE RULE computer_del AS ON DELETE TO computer  
DO DELETE FROM software WHERE hostname = OLD.hostname;
```

Now we look at different types of deletes. In the case of a:

```
DELETE FROM computer WHERE hostname = 'mypc.local.net';
```

the table computer is scanned by index (fast), and the command issued by the trigger would also use an index scan (also fast). The extra command from the rule would be:

```
DELETE FROM software WHERE computer.hostname = 'mypc.local.net'  
AND software.hostname = computer.hostname;
```

Since there are appropriate indexes set up, the planner will create a plan of

```
Nestloop  
-> Index Scan using comp_hostidx on computer  
-> Index Scan using soft_hostidx on software
```

So there would be not that much difference in speed between the trigger and the rule implementation.

With the next delete we want to get rid of all the 2000 computers where the hostname starts with old. There are two possible commands to do that. One is:

```
DELETE FROM computer WHERE hostname >= 'old'  
AND hostname < 'ole'
```

The command added by the rule will be:

```
DELETE FROM software WHERE computer.hostname >= 'old' AND
    computer.hostname < 'ole'
    AND software.hostname = computer.hostname;
```

with the plan

```
Hash Join
-> Seq Scan on software
-> Hash
-> Index Scan using comp_hostidx on computer
```

The other possible command is:

```
DELETE FROM computer WHERE hostname ~ '^old';
```

which results in the following executing plan for the command added by the rule:

```
Nestloop
-> Index Scan using comp_hostidx on computer
-> Index Scan using soft_hostidx on software
```

This shows, that the planner does not realize that the qualification for hostname in computer could also be used for an index scan on software when there are multiple qualification expressions combined with AND, which is what it does in the regular-expression version of the command. The trigger will get invoked once for each of the 2000 old computers that have to be deleted, and that will result in one index scan over computer and 2000 index scans over software. The rule implementation will do it with two commands that use indexes. And it depends on the overall size of the table software whether the rule will still be faster in the sequential scan situation. 2000 command executions from the trigger over the SPI manager take some time, even if all the index blocks will soon be in the cache.

The last command we look at is:

```
DELETE FROM computer WHERE manufacturer = 'bim';
```

Again this could result in many rows to be deleted from computer. So the trigger will again run many commands through the executor. The command generated by the rule will be:

```
DELETE FROM software WHERE computer.manufacturer = 'bim'
    AND software.hostname = computer.hostname;
```

The plan for that command will again be the nested loop over two index scans, only using a different index on computer:

```
Nestloop
-> Index Scan using comp_manufidx on computer
-> Index Scan using soft_hostidx on software
```

In any of these cases, the extra commands from the rule system will be more or less independent from the number of affected rows in a command.

The summary is, rules will only be significantly slower than triggers if their actions result in large and badly qualified joins, a situation where the planner fails.

---

# Chapter 42. Procedural Languages

PostgreSQL allows user-defined functions to be written in other languages besides SQL and C. These other languages are generically called *procedural languages* (PLs). For a function written in a procedural language, the database server has no built-in knowledge about how to interpret the function's source text. Instead, the task is passed to a special handler that knows the details of the language. The handler could either do all the work of parsing, syntax analysis, execution, etc. itself, or it could serve as “glue” between PostgreSQL and an existing implementation of a programming language. The handler itself is a C language function compiled into a shared object and loaded on demand, just like any other C function.

There are currently four procedural languages available in the standard PostgreSQL distribution: PL/pgSQL (Chapter 43), PL/Tcl (Chapter 44), PL/Perl (Chapter 45), and PL/Python (Chapter 46). There are additional procedural languages available that are not included in the core distribution. Appendix H has information about finding them. In addition other languages can be defined by users; the basics of developing a new procedural language are covered in Chapter 58.

## 42.1. Installing Procedural Languages

A procedural language must be “installed” into each database where it is to be used. But procedural languages installed in the database `template1` are automatically available in all subsequently created databases, since their entries in `template1` will be copied by `CREATE DATABASE`. So the database administrator can decide which languages are available in which databases and can make some languages available by default if desired.

For the languages supplied with the standard distribution, it is only necessary to execute `CREATE EXTENSION language_name` to install the language into the current database. The manual procedure described below is only recommended for installing languages that have not been packaged as extensions.

### Manual Procedural Language Installation

A procedural language is installed in a database in five steps, which must be carried out by a database superuser. In most cases the required SQL commands should be packaged as the installation script of an “extension”, so that `CREATE EXTENSION` can be used to execute them.

1. The shared object for the language handler must be compiled and installed into an appropriate library directory. This works in the same way as building and installing modules with regular user-defined C functions does; see Section 38.10.5. Often, the language handler will depend on an external library that provides the actual programming language engine; if so, that must be installed as well.
2. The handler must be declared with the command

```
CREATE FUNCTION handler_function_name( )  
    RETURNS language_handler  
    AS 'path-to-shared-object'  
    LANGUAGE C;
```

The special return type of `language_handler` tells the database system that this function does not return one of the defined SQL data types and is not directly usable in SQL statements.

3. (Optional) Optionally, the language handler can provide an “inline” handler function that executes anonymous code blocks (DO commands) written in this language. If an inline handler function is provided by the language, declare it with a command like

```
CREATE FUNCTION inline_function_name(internal)
    RETURNS void
    AS 'path-to-shared-object'
    LANGUAGE C;
```

4. (Optional) Optionally, the language handler can provide a “validator” function that checks a function definition for correctness without actually executing it. The validator function is called by `CREATE FUNCTION` if it exists. If a validator function is provided by the language, declare it with a command like

```
CREATE FUNCTION validator_function_name(oid)
    RETURNS void
    AS 'path-to-shared-object'
    LANGUAGE C STRICT;
```

5. Finally, the PL must be declared with the command

```
CREATE [TRUSTED] LANGUAGE language_name
    HANDLER handler_function_name
    [INLINE inline_function_name]
    [VALIDATOR validator_function_name] ;
```

The optional key word `TRUSTED` specifies that the language does not grant access to data that the user would not otherwise have. Trusted languages are designed for ordinary database users (those without superuser privilege) and allows them to safely create functions and procedures. Since PL functions are executed inside the database server, the `TRUSTED` flag should only be given for languages that do not allow access to database server internals or the file system. The languages PL/pgSQL, PL/Tcl, and PL/Perl are considered trusted; the languages PL/TclU, PL/PerlU, and PL/PythonU are designed to provide unlimited functionality and should *not* be marked trusted.

Example 42.1 shows how the manual installation procedure would work with the language PL/Perl.

### Example 42.1. Manual Installation of PL/Perl

The following command tells the database server where to find the shared object for the PL/Perl language's call handler function:

```
CREATE FUNCTION plperl_call_handler() RETURNS language_handler AS
    '$libdir/plperl' LANGUAGE C;
```

PL/Perl has an inline handler function and a validator function, so we declare those too:

```
CREATE FUNCTION plperl_inline_handler(internal) RETURNS void AS
    '$libdir/plperl' LANGUAGE C STRICT;
```

```
CREATE FUNCTION plperl_validator(oid) RETURNS void AS
    '$libdir/plperl' LANGUAGE C STRICT;
```

The command:

```
CREATE TRUSTED LANGUAGE plperl
    HANDLER plperl_call_handler
    INLINE plperl_inline_handler
    VALIDATOR plperl_validator;
```

then defines that the previously declared functions should be invoked for functions and procedures where the language attribute is `plperl`.

In a default PostgreSQL installation, the handler for the PL/pgSQL language is built and installed into the “library” directory; furthermore, the PL/pgSQL language itself is installed in all databases. If Tcl support is configured in, the handlers for PL/Tcl and PL/TclU are built and installed in the library directory, but the language itself is not installed in any database by default. Likewise, the PL/Perl and PL/PerlU handlers are built and installed if Perl support is configured, and the PL/PythonU handler is installed if Python support is configured, but these languages are not installed by default.

---

# Chapter 43. PL/pgSQL — SQL Procedural Language

## 43.1. Overview

PL/pgSQL is a loadable procedural language for the PostgreSQL database system. The design goals of PL/pgSQL were to create a loadable procedural language that

- can be used to create functions, procedures, and triggers,
- adds control structures to the SQL language,
- can perform complex computations,
- inherits all user-defined types, functions, procedures, and operators,
- can be defined to be trusted by the server,
- is easy to use.

Functions created with PL/pgSQL can be used anywhere that built-in functions could be used. For example, it is possible to create complex conditional computation functions and later use them to define operators or use them in index expressions.

In PostgreSQL 9.0 and later, PL/pgSQL is installed by default. However it is still a loadable module, so especially security-conscious administrators could choose to remove it.

### 43.1.1. Advantages of Using PL/pgSQL

SQL is the language PostgreSQL and most other relational databases use as query language. It's portable and easy to learn. But every SQL statement must be executed individually by the database server.

That means that your client application must send each query to the database server, wait for it to be processed, receive and process the results, do some computation, then send further queries to the server. All this incurs interprocess communication and will also incur network overhead if your client is on a different machine than the database server.

With PL/pgSQL you can group a block of computation and a series of queries *inside* the database server, thus having the power of a procedural language and the ease of use of SQL, but with considerable savings of client/server communication overhead.

- Extra round trips between client and server are eliminated
- Intermediate results that the client does not need do not have to be marshaled or transferred between server and client
- Multiple rounds of query parsing can be avoided

This can result in a considerable performance increase as compared to an application that does not use stored functions.

Also, with PL/pgSQL you can use all the data types, operators and functions of SQL.

### 43.1.2. Supported Argument and Result Data Types

Functions written in PL/pgSQL can accept as arguments any scalar or array data type supported by the server, and they can return a result of any of these types. They can also accept or return any composite

type (row type) specified by name. It is also possible to declare a PL/pgSQL function as accepting `record`, which means that any composite type will do as input, or as returning `record`, which means that the result is a row type whose columns are determined by specification in the calling query, as discussed in Section 7.2.1.4.

PL/pgSQL functions can be declared to accept a variable number of arguments by using the `VARIADIC` marker. This works exactly the same way as for SQL functions, as discussed in Section 38.5.6.

PL/pgSQL functions can also be declared to accept and return the polymorphic types described in Section 38.2.5, thus allowing the actual data types handled by the function to vary from call to call. Examples appear in Section 43.3.1.

PL/pgSQL functions can also be declared to return a “set” (or table) of any data type that can be returned as a single instance. Such a function generates its output by executing `RETURN NEXT` for each desired element of the result set, or by using `RETURN QUERY` to output the result of evaluating a query.

Finally, a PL/pgSQL function can be declared to return `void` if it has no useful return value. (Alternatively, it could be written as a procedure in that case.)

PL/pgSQL functions can also be declared with output parameters in place of an explicit specification of the return type. This does not add any fundamental capability to the language, but it is often convenient, especially for returning multiple values. The `RETURNS TABLE` notation can also be used in place of `RETURNS SETOF`.

Specific examples appear in Section 43.3.1 and Section 43.6.1.

## 43.2. Structure of PL/pgSQL

Functions written in PL/pgSQL are defined to the server by executing `CREATE FUNCTION` commands. Such a command would normally look like, say,

```
CREATE FUNCTION somefunc(integer, text) RETURNS integer
AS 'function body text'
LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

The function body is simply a string literal so far as `CREATE FUNCTION` is concerned. It is often helpful to use dollar quoting (see Section 4.1.2.4) to write the function body, rather than the normal single quote syntax. Without dollar quoting, any single quotes or backslashes in the function body must be escaped by doubling them. Almost all the examples in this chapter use dollar-quoted literals for their function bodies.

PL/pgSQL is a block-structured language. The complete text of a function body must be a *block*. A block is defined as:

```
[ <<label>> ]
[ DECLARE
    declarations ]
BEGIN
    statements
END [ label ];
```

Each declaration and each statement within a block is terminated by a semicolon. A block that appears within another block must have a semicolon after `END`, as shown above; however the final `END` that concludes a function body does not require a semicolon.



### Tip

A common mistake is to write a semicolon immediately after `BEGIN`. This is incorrect and will result in a syntax error.

A *label* is only needed if you want to identify the block for use in an `EXIT` statement, or to qualify the names of the variables declared in the block. If a label is given after `END`, it must match the label at the block's beginning.

All key words are case-insensitive. Identifiers are implicitly converted to lower case unless double-quoted, just as they are in ordinary SQL commands.

Comments work the same way in PL/pgSQL code as in ordinary SQL. A double dash (`--`) starts a comment that extends to the end of the line. A `/*` starts a block comment that extends to the matching occurrence of `*/`. Block comments nest.

Any statement in the statement section of a block can be a *subblock*. Subblocks can be used for logical grouping or to localize variables to a small group of statements. Variables declared in a subblock mask any similarly-named variables of outer blocks for the duration of the subblock; but you can access the outer variables anyway if you qualify their names with their block's label. For example:

```
CREATE FUNCTION somefunc() RETURNS integer AS $$
<< outerblock >>
DECLARE
    quantity integer := 30;
BEGIN
    RAISE NOTICE 'Quantity here is %', quantity; -- Prints 30
    quantity := 50;
    --
    -- Create a subblock
    --
    DECLARE
        quantity integer := 80;
    BEGIN
        RAISE NOTICE 'Quantity here is %', quantity; -- Prints 80
        RAISE NOTICE 'Outer quantity here is %',
outerblock.quantity; -- Prints 50
    END;

    RAISE NOTICE 'Quantity here is %', quantity; -- Prints 50

    RETURN quantity;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

### Note

There is actually a hidden “outer block” surrounding the body of any PL/pgSQL function. This block provides the declarations of the function's parameters (if any), as well as some special variables such as `FOUND` (see Section 43.5.5). The outer block is labeled with the function's name, meaning that parameters and special variables can be qualified with the function's name.

It is important not to confuse the use of `BEGIN/END` for grouping statements in PL/pgSQL with the similarly-named SQL commands for transaction control. PL/pgSQL's `BEGIN/END` are only for grouping; they do not start or end a transaction. See Section 43.8 for information on managing transactions

in PL/pgSQL. Also, a block containing an `EXCEPTION` clause effectively forms a subtransaction that can be rolled back without affecting the outer transaction. For more about that see Section 43.6.8.

## 43.3. Declarations

All variables used in a block must be declared in the declarations section of the block. (The only exceptions are that the loop variable of a `FOR` loop iterating over a range of integer values is automatically declared as an integer variable, and likewise the loop variable of a `FOR` loop iterating over a cursor's result is automatically declared as a record variable.)

PL/pgSQL variables can have any SQL data type, such as `integer`, `varchar`, and `char`.

Here are some examples of variable declarations:

```
user_id integer;
quantity numeric(5);
url varchar;
myrow tablename%ROWTYPE;
myfield tablename.columnname%TYPE;
arow RECORD;
```

The general syntax of a variable declaration is:

```
name [ CONSTANT ] type [ COLLATE collation_name ] [ NOT NULL ]
[ { DEFAULT | := | = } expression ];
```

The `DEFAULT` clause, if given, specifies the initial value assigned to the variable when the block is entered. If the `DEFAULT` clause is not given then the variable is initialized to the SQL null value. The `CONSTANT` option prevents the variable from being assigned to after initialization, so that its value will remain constant for the duration of the block. The `COLLATE` option specifies a collation to use for the variable (see Section 43.3.6). If `NOT NULL` is specified, an assignment of a null value results in a run-time error. All variables declared as `NOT NULL` must have a nonnull default value specified. Equal (`=`) can be used instead of PL/SQL-compliant `:=`.

A variable's default value is evaluated and assigned to the variable each time the block is entered (not just once per function call). So, for example, assigning `now()` to a variable of type `timestamp` causes the variable to have the time of the current function call, not the time when the function was precompiled.

Examples:

```
quantity integer DEFAULT 32;
url varchar := 'http://mysite.com';
transaction_time CONSTANT timestamp with time zone := now();
```

Once declared, a variable's value can be used in later initialization expressions in the same block, for example:

```
DECLARE
    x integer := 1;
    y integer := x + 1;
```

### 43.3.1. Declaring Function Parameters

Parameters passed to functions are named with the identifiers `$1`, `$2`, etc. Optionally, aliases can be declared for `$n` parameter names for increased readability. Either the alias or the numeric identifier can then be used to refer to the parameter value.

There are two ways to create an alias. The preferred way is to give a name to the parameter in the `CREATE FUNCTION` command, for example:

```
CREATE FUNCTION sales_tax(subtotal real) RETURNS real AS $$
BEGIN
    RETURN subtotal * 0.06;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

The other way is to explicitly declare an alias, using the declaration syntax

```
name ALIAS FOR $n;
```

The same example in this style looks like:

```
CREATE FUNCTION sales_tax(real) RETURNS real AS $$
DECLARE
    subtotal ALIAS FOR $1;
BEGIN
    RETURN subtotal * 0.06;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

### Note

These two examples are not perfectly equivalent. In the first case, `subtotal` could be referenced as `sales_tax.subtotal`, but in the second case it could not. (Had we attached a label to the inner block, `subtotal` could be qualified with that label, instead.)

Some more examples:

```
CREATE FUNCTION instr(vvarchar, integer) RETURNS integer AS $$
DECLARE
    v_string ALIAS FOR $1;
    index ALIAS FOR $2;
BEGIN
    -- some computations using v_string and index here
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

```
CREATE FUNCTION concat_selected_fields(in_t sometablename) RETURNS
text AS $$
BEGIN
    RETURN in_t.f1 || in_t.f3 || in_t.f5 || in_t.f7;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

When a PL/pgSQL function is declared with output parameters, the output parameters are given `$n` names and optional aliases in just the same way as the normal input parameters. An output parameter is effectively a variable that starts out `NULL`; it should be assigned to during the execution of the function. The final value of the parameter is what is returned. For instance, the sales-tax example could also be done this way:

```
CREATE FUNCTION sales_tax(subtotal real, OUT tax real) AS $$
BEGIN
    tax := subtotal * 0.06;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

Notice that we omitted `RETURNS real` — we could have included it, but it would be redundant.

To call a function with `OUT` parameters, omit the output parameter(s) in the function call:

```
SELECT sales_tax(100.00);
```

Output parameters are most useful when returning multiple values. A trivial example is:

```
CREATE FUNCTION sum_n_product(x int, y int, OUT sum int, OUT prod
int) AS $$
BEGIN
    sum := x + y;
    prod := x * y;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;

SELECT * FROM sum_n_product(2, 4);
sum | prod
-----+-----
  6 |    8
```

As discussed in Section 38.5.4, this effectively creates an anonymous record type for the function's results. If a `RETURNS` clause is given, it must say `RETURNS record`.

This also works with procedures, for example:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE sum_n_product(x int, y int, OUT sum int, OUT prod
int) AS $$
BEGIN
    sum := x + y;
    prod := x * y;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

In a call to a procedure, all the parameters must be specified. For output parameters, `NULL` may be specified when calling the procedure from plain SQL:

```
CALL sum_n_product(2, 4, NULL, NULL);
sum | prod
-----+-----
  6 |    8
```

However, when calling a procedure from PL/pgSQL, you should instead write a variable for any output parameter; the variable will receive the result of the call. See Section 43.6.3 for details.

Another way to declare a PL/pgSQL function is with `RETURNS TABLE`, for example:

```
CREATE FUNCTION extended_sales(p_itemno int)
RETURNS TABLE(quantity int, total numeric) AS $$
BEGIN
    RETURN QUERY SELECT s.quantity, s.quantity * s.price FROM sales
    AS s
        WHERE s.itemno = p_itemno;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

This is exactly equivalent to declaring one or more OUT parameters and specifying RETURNS SETOF *sometype*.

When the return type of a PL/pgSQL function is declared as a polymorphic type (see Section 38.2.5), a special parameter \$0 is created. Its data type is the actual return type of the function, as deduced from the actual input types. This allows the function to access its actual return type as shown in Section 43.3.3. \$0 is initialized to null and can be modified by the function, so it can be used to hold the return value if desired, though that is not required. \$0 can also be given an alias. For example, this function works on any data type that has a + operator:

```
CREATE FUNCTION add_three_values(v1 anyelement, v2 anyelement, v3
    anyelement)
RETURNS anyelement AS $$
DECLARE
    result ALIAS FOR $0;
BEGIN
    result := v1 + v2 + v3;
    RETURN result;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

The same effect can be obtained by declaring one or more output parameters as polymorphic types. In this case the special \$0 parameter is not used; the output parameters themselves serve the same purpose. For example:

```
CREATE FUNCTION add_three_values(v1 anyelement, v2 anyelement, v3
    anyelement,
        OUT sum anyelement)
AS $$
BEGIN
    sum := v1 + v2 + v3;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

In practice it might be more useful to declare a polymorphic function using the anycompatible family of types, so that automatic promotion of the input arguments to a common type will occur. For example:

```
CREATE FUNCTION add_three_values(v1 anycompatible, v2
    anycompatible, v3 anycompatible)
RETURNS anycompatible AS $$
BEGIN
    RETURN v1 + v2 + v3;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

With this example, a call such as

```
SELECT add_three_values(1, 2, 4.7);
```

will work, automatically promoting the integer inputs to numeric. The function using `anyelement` would require you to cast the three inputs to the same type manually.

## 43.3.2. ALIAS

```
newname ALIAS FOR oldname;
```

The `ALIAS` syntax is more general than is suggested in the previous section: you can declare an alias for any variable, not just function parameters. The main practical use for this is to assign a different name for variables with predetermined names, such as `NEW` or `OLD` within a trigger function.

Examples:

```
DECLARE
    prior ALIAS FOR old;
    updated ALIAS FOR new;
```

Since `ALIAS` creates two different ways to name the same object, unrestricted use can be confusing. It's best to use it only for the purpose of overriding predetermined names.

## 43.3.3. Copying Types

```
variable%TYPE
```

`%TYPE` provides the data type of a variable or table column. You can use this to declare variables that will hold database values. For example, let's say you have a column named `user_id` in your `users` table. To declare a variable with the same data type as `users.user_id` you write:

```
user_id users.user_id%TYPE;
```

By using `%TYPE` you don't need to know the data type of the structure you are referencing, and most importantly, if the data type of the referenced item changes in the future (for instance: you change the type of `user_id` from `integer` to `real`), you might not need to change your function definition.

`%TYPE` is particularly valuable in polymorphic functions, since the data types needed for internal variables can change from one call to the next. Appropriate variables can be created by applying `%TYPE` to the function's arguments or result placeholders.

## 43.3.4. Row Types

```
name table_name%ROWTYPE;
name composite_type_name;
```

A variable of a composite type is called a *row* variable (or *row-type* variable). Such a variable can hold a whole row of a `SELECT` or `FOR` query result, so long as that query's column set matches the declared type of the variable. The individual fields of the row value are accessed using the usual dot notation, for example `rowvar.field`.

A row variable can be declared to have the same type as the rows of an existing table or view, by using the `table_name%ROWTYPE` notation; or it can be declared by giving a composite type's name.

(Since every table has an associated composite type of the same name, it actually does not matter in PostgreSQL whether you write `%ROWTYPE` or not. But the form with `%ROWTYPE` is more portable.)

Parameters to a function can be composite types (complete table rows). In that case, the corresponding identifier `$n` will be a row variable, and fields can be selected from it, for example `$1.user_id`.

Here is an example of using composite types. `table1` and `table2` are existing tables having at least the mentioned fields:

```
CREATE FUNCTION merge_fields(t_row table1) RETURNS text AS $$
DECLARE
    t2_row table2%ROWTYPE;
BEGIN
    SELECT * INTO t2_row FROM table2 WHERE ... ;
    RETURN t_row.f1 || t2_row.f3 || t_row.f5 || t2_row.f7;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;

SELECT merge_fields(t.*) FROM table1 t WHERE ... ;
```

## 43.3.5. Record Types

```
name RECORD;
```

Record variables are similar to row-type variables, but they have no predefined structure. They take on the actual row structure of the row they are assigned during a `SELECT` or `FOR` command. The substructure of a record variable can change each time it is assigned to. A consequence of this is that until a record variable is first assigned to, it has no substructure, and any attempt to access a field in it will draw a run-time error.

Note that `RECORD` is not a true data type, only a placeholder. One should also realize that when a PL/pgSQL function is declared to return type `record`, this is not quite the same concept as a record variable, even though such a function might use a record variable to hold its result. In both cases the actual row structure is unknown when the function is written, but for a function returning `record` the actual structure is determined when the calling query is parsed, whereas a record variable can change its row structure on-the-fly.

## 43.3.6. Collation of PL/pgSQL Variables

When a PL/pgSQL function has one or more parameters of collatable data types, a collation is identified for each function call depending on the collations assigned to the actual arguments, as described in Section 24.2. If a collation is successfully identified (i.e., there are no conflicts of implicit collations among the arguments) then all the collatable parameters are treated as having that collation implicitly. This will affect the behavior of collation-sensitive operations within the function. For example, consider

```
CREATE FUNCTION less_than(a text, b text) RETURNS boolean AS $$
BEGIN
    RETURN a < b;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;

SELECT less_than(text_field_1, text_field_2) FROM table1;
SELECT less_than(text_field_1, text_field_2 COLLATE "C") FROM
table1;
```

The first use of `less_than` will use the common collation of `text_field_1` and `text_field_2` for the comparison, while the second use will use `C` collation.

Furthermore, the identified collation is also assumed as the collation of any local variables that are of collatable types. Thus this function would not work any differently if it were written as

```
CREATE FUNCTION less_than(a text, b text) RETURNS boolean AS $$
DECLARE
    local_a text := a;
    local_b text := b;
BEGIN
    RETURN local_a < local_b;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

If there are no parameters of collatable data types, or no common collation can be identified for them, then parameters and local variables use the default collation of their data type (which is usually the database's default collation, but could be different for variables of domain types).

A local variable of a collatable data type can have a different collation associated with it by including the `COLLATE` option in its declaration, for example

```
DECLARE
    local_a text COLLATE "en_US";
```

This option overrides the collation that would otherwise be given to the variable according to the rules above.

Also, of course explicit `COLLATE` clauses can be written inside a function if it is desired to force a particular collation to be used in a particular operation. For example,

```
CREATE FUNCTION less_than_c(a text, b text) RETURNS boolean AS $$
BEGIN
    RETURN a < b COLLATE "C";
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

This overrides the collations associated with the table columns, parameters, or local variables used in the expression, just as would happen in a plain SQL command.

## 43.4. Expressions

All expressions used in PL/pgSQL statements are processed using the server's main SQL executor. For example, when you write a PL/pgSQL statement like

```
IF expression THEN ...
```

PL/pgSQL will evaluate the expression by feeding a query like

```
SELECT expression
```

to the main SQL engine. While forming the `SELECT` command, any occurrences of PL/pgSQL variable names are replaced by query parameters, as discussed in detail in Section 43.11.1. This allows the query plan for the `SELECT` to be prepared just once and then reused for subsequent evaluations with



different values of the variables. Thus, what really happens on first use of an expression is essentially a `PREPARE` command. For example, if we have declared two integer variables `x` and `y`, and we write

```
IF x < y THEN ...
```

what happens behind the scenes is equivalent to

```
PREPARE statement_name(integer, integer) AS SELECT $1 < $2;
```

and then this prepared statement is `EXECUTED` for each execution of the `IF` statement, with the current values of the PL/pgSQL variables supplied as parameter values. Normally these details are not important to a PL/pgSQL user, but they are useful to know when trying to diagnose a problem. More information appears in Section 43.11.2.

Since an *expression* is converted to a `SELECT` command, it can contain the same clauses that an ordinary `SELECT` would, except that it cannot include a top-level `UNION`, `INTERSECT`, or `EXCEPT` clause. Thus for example one could test whether a table is non-empty with

```
IF count(*) > 0 FROM my_table THEN ...
```

since the *expression* between `IF` and `THEN` is parsed as though it were `SELECT count(*) > 0 FROM my_table`. The `SELECT` must produce a single column, and not more than one row. (If it produces no rows, the result is taken as `NULL`.)

## 43.5. Basic Statements

In this section and the following ones, we describe all the statement types that are explicitly understood by PL/pgSQL. Anything not recognized as one of these statement types is presumed to be an SQL command and is sent to the main database engine to execute, as described in Section 43.5.2.

### 43.5.1. Assignment

An assignment of a value to a PL/pgSQL variable is written as:

```
variable { := | = } expression;
```

As explained previously, the expression in such a statement is evaluated by means of an SQL `SELECT` command sent to the main database engine. The expression must yield a single value (possibly a row value, if the variable is a row or record variable). The target variable can be a simple variable (optionally qualified with a block name), a field of a row or record target, or an element or slice of an array target. Equal (`=`) can be used instead of PL/SQL-compliant `:=`.

If the expression's result data type doesn't match the variable's data type, the value will be coerced as though by an assignment cast (see Section 10.4). If no assignment cast is known for the pair of data types involved, the PL/pgSQL interpreter will attempt to convert the result value textually, that is by applying the result type's output function followed by the variable type's input function. Note that this could result in run-time errors generated by the input function, if the string form of the result value is not acceptable to the input function.

Examples:

```
tax := subtotal * 0.06;  
my_record.user_id := 20;  
my_array[j] := 20;
```

```
my_array[1:3] := array[1,2,3];  
complex_array[n].realpart = 12.3;
```

## 43.5.2. Executing SQL Commands

In general, any SQL command that does not return rows can be executed within a PL/pgSQL function just by writing the command. For example, you could create and fill a table by writing

```
CREATE TABLE mytable (id int primary key, data text);  
INSERT INTO mytable VALUES (1, 'one'), (2, 'two');
```

If the command does return rows (for example `SELECT`, or `INSERT/UPDATE/DELETE` with `RETURNING`), there are two ways to proceed. When the command will return at most one row, or you only care about the first row of output, write the command as usual but add an `INTO` clause to capture the output, as described in Section 43.5.3. To process all of the output rows, write the command as the data source for a `FOR` loop, as described in Section 43.6.6.

Usually it is not sufficient just to execute statically-defined SQL commands. Typically you'll want a command to use varying data values, or even to vary in more fundamental ways such as by using different table names at different times. Again, there are two ways to proceed depending on the situation.

PL/pgSQL variable values can be automatically inserted into optimizable SQL commands, which are `SELECT`, `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, `MERGE`, and certain utility commands that incorporate one of these, such as `EXPLAIN` and `CREATE TABLE ... AS SELECT`. In these commands, any PL/pgSQL variable name appearing in the command text is replaced by a query parameter, and then the current value of the variable is provided as the parameter value at run time. This is exactly like the processing described earlier for expressions; for details see Section 43.11.1.

When executing an optimizable SQL command in this way, PL/pgSQL may cache and re-use the execution plan for the command, as discussed in Section 43.11.2.

Non-optimizable SQL commands (also called utility commands) are not capable of accepting query parameters. So automatic substitution of PL/pgSQL variables does not work in such commands. To include non-constant text in a utility command executed from PL/pgSQL, you must build the utility command as a string and then `EXECUTE` it, as discussed in Section 43.5.4.

`EXECUTE` must also be used if you want to modify the command in some other way than supplying a data value, for example by changing a table name.

Sometimes it is useful to evaluate an expression or `SELECT` query but discard the result, for example when calling a function that has side-effects but no useful result value. To do this in PL/pgSQL, use the `PERFORM` statement:

```
PERFORM query;
```

This executes *query* and discards the result. Write the *query* the same way you would write an SQL `SELECT` command, but replace the initial keyword `SELECT` with `PERFORM`. For `WITH` queries, use `PERFORM` and then place the query in parentheses. (In this case, the query can only return one row.) PL/pgSQL variables will be substituted into the query just as described above, and the plan is cached in the same way. Also, the special variable `FOUND` is set to true if the query produced at least one row, or false if it produced no rows (see Section 43.5.5).

### Note

One might expect that writing `SELECT` directly would accomplish this result, but at present the only accepted way to do it is `PERFORM`. An SQL command that can return rows, such as

`SELECT`, will be rejected as an error unless it has an `INTO` clause as discussed in the next section.

An example:

```
PERFORM create_mv('cs_session_page_requests_mv', my_query);
```

### 43.5.3. Executing a Command with a Single-Row Result

The result of an SQL command yielding a single row (possibly of multiple columns) can be assigned to a record variable, row-type variable, or list of scalar variables. This is done by writing the base SQL command and adding an `INTO` clause. For example,

```
SELECT select_expressions INTO [STRICT] target FROM ...;
INSERT ... RETURNING expressions INTO [STRICT] target;
UPDATE ... RETURNING expressions INTO [STRICT] target;
DELETE ... RETURNING expressions INTO [STRICT] target;
```

where *target* can be a record variable, a row variable, or a comma-separated list of simple variables and record/row fields. PL/pgSQL variables will be substituted into the rest of the command (that is, everything but the `INTO` clause) just as described above, and the plan is cached in the same way. This works for `SELECT`, `INSERT/UPDATE/DELETE` with `RETURNING`, and certain utility commands that return row sets, such as `EXPLAIN`. Except for the `INTO` clause, the SQL command is the same as it would be written outside PL/pgSQL.

#### Tip

Note that this interpretation of `SELECT` with `INTO` is quite different from PostgreSQL's regular `SELECT INTO` command, wherein the `INTO` target is a newly created table. If you want to create a table from a `SELECT` result inside a PL/pgSQL function, use the syntax `CREATE TABLE ... AS SELECT`.

If a row variable or a variable list is used as target, the command's result columns must exactly match the structure of the target as to number and data types, or else a run-time error occurs. When a record variable is the target, it automatically configures itself to the row type of the command's result columns.

The `INTO` clause can appear almost anywhere in the SQL command. Customarily it is written either just before or just after the list of *select\_expressions* in a `SELECT` command, or at the end of the command for other command types. It is recommended that you follow this convention in case the PL/pgSQL parser becomes stricter in future versions.

If `STRICT` is not specified in the `INTO` clause, then *target* will be set to the first row returned by the command, or to nulls if the command returned no rows. (Note that “the first row” is not well-defined unless you've used `ORDER BY`.) Any result rows after the first row are discarded. You can check the special `FOUND` variable (see Section 43.5.5) to determine whether a row was returned:

```
SELECT * INTO myrec FROM emp WHERE empname = myname;
IF NOT FOUND THEN
    RAISE EXCEPTION 'employee % not found', myname;
END IF;
```

If the `STRICT` option is specified, the command must return exactly one row or a run-time error will be reported, either `NO_DATA_FOUND` (no rows) or `TOO_MANY_ROWS` (more than one row). You can use an exception block if you wish to catch the error, for example:

```
BEGIN
    SELECT * INTO STRICT myrec FROM emp WHERE empname = myname;
EXCEPTION
    WHEN NO_DATA_FOUND THEN
        RAISE EXCEPTION 'employee % not found', myname;
    WHEN TOO_MANY_ROWS THEN
        RAISE EXCEPTION 'employee % not unique', myname;
END;
```

Successful execution of a command with `STRICT` always sets `FOUND` to true.

For `INSERT/UPDATE/DELETE` with `RETURNING`, PL/pgSQL reports an error for more than one returned row, even when `STRICT` is not specified. This is because there is no option such as `ORDER BY` with which to determine which affected row should be returned.

If `print_strict_params` is enabled for the function, then when an error is thrown because the requirements of `STRICT` are not met, the `DETAIL` part of the error message will include information about the parameters passed to the command. You can change the `print_strict_params` setting for all functions by setting `plpgsql.print_strict_params`, though only subsequent function compilations will be affected. You can also enable it on a per-function basis by using a compiler option, for example:

```
CREATE FUNCTION get_userid(username text) RETURNS int
AS $$
#print_strict_params on
DECLARE
    userid int;
BEGIN
    SELECT users.userid INTO STRICT userid
        FROM users WHERE users.username = get_userid.username;
    RETURN userid;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

On failure, this function might produce an error message such as

```
ERROR:  query returned no rows
DETAIL:  parameters: $1 = 'nosuchuser'
CONTEXT:  PL/pgSQL function get_userid(text) line 6 at SQL
statement
```

### Note

The `STRICT` option matches the behavior of Oracle PL/SQL's `SELECT INTO` and related statements.

## 43.5.4. Executing Dynamic Commands

Oftentimes you will want to generate dynamic commands inside your PL/pgSQL functions, that is, commands that will involve different tables or different data types each time they are executed. PL/

pgSQL's normal attempts to cache plans for commands (as discussed in Section 43.11.2) will not work in such scenarios. To handle this sort of problem, the `EXECUTE` statement is provided:

```
EXECUTE command-string [ INTO [STRICT] target ] [ USING expression  
[ , ... ] ];
```

where *command-string* is an expression yielding a string (of type `text`) containing the command to be executed. The optional *target* is a record variable, a row variable, or a comma-separated list of simple variables and record/row fields, into which the results of the command will be stored. The optional `USING` expressions supply values to be inserted into the command.

No substitution of PL/pgSQL variables is done on the computed command string. Any required variable values must be inserted in the command string as it is constructed; or you can use parameters as described below.

Also, there is no plan caching for commands executed via `EXECUTE`. Instead, the command is always planned each time the statement is run. Thus the command string can be dynamically created within the function to perform actions on different tables and columns.

The `INTO` clause specifies where the results of an SQL command returning rows should be assigned. If a row variable or variable list is provided, it must exactly match the structure of the command's results; if a record variable is provided, it will configure itself to match the result structure automatically. If multiple rows are returned, only the first will be assigned to the `INTO` variable(s). If no rows are returned, `NULL` is assigned to the `INTO` variable(s). If no `INTO` clause is specified, the command results are discarded.

If the `STRICT` option is given, an error is reported unless the command produces exactly one row.

The command string can use parameter values, which are referenced in the command as `$1`, `$2`, etc. These symbols refer to values supplied in the `USING` clause. This method is often preferable to inserting data values into the command string as text: it avoids run-time overhead of converting the values to text and back, and it is much less prone to SQL-injection attacks since there is no need for quoting or escaping. An example is:

```
EXECUTE 'SELECT count(*) FROM mytable WHERE inserted_by = $1 AND  
inserted <= $2'  
INTO c  
USING checked_user, checked_date;
```

Note that parameter symbols can only be used for data values — if you want to use dynamically determined table or column names, you must insert them into the command string textually. For example, if the preceding query needed to be done against a dynamically selected table, you could do this:

```
EXECUTE 'SELECT count(*) FROM '  
    || quote_ident(tabname)  
    || ' WHERE inserted_by = $1 AND inserted <= $2'  
INTO c  
USING checked_user, checked_date;
```

A cleaner approach is to use `format()`'s `%I` specification to insert table or column names with automatic quoting:

```
EXECUTE format('SELECT count(*) FROM %I '  
    'WHERE inserted_by = $1 AND inserted <= $2', tabname)  
INTO c  
USING checked_user, checked_date;
```

(This example relies on the SQL rule that string literals separated by a newline are implicitly concatenated.)

Another restriction on parameter symbols is that they only work in optimizable SQL commands (SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, MERGE, and certain commands containing one of these). In other statement types (generically called utility statements), you must insert values textually even if they are just data values.

An EXECUTE with a simple constant command string and some USING parameters, as in the first example above, is functionally equivalent to just writing the command directly in PL/pgSQL and allowing replacement of PL/pgSQL variables to happen automatically. The important difference is that EXECUTE will re-plan the command on each execution, generating a plan that is specific to the current parameter values; whereas PL/pgSQL may otherwise create a generic plan and cache it for reuse. In situations where the best plan depends strongly on the parameter values, it can be helpful to use EXECUTE to positively ensure that a generic plan is not selected.

SELECT INTO is not currently supported within EXECUTE; instead, execute a plain SELECT command and specify INTO as part of the EXECUTE itself.

### Note

The PL/pgSQL EXECUTE statement is not related to the EXECUTE SQL statement supported by the PostgreSQL server. The server's EXECUTE statement cannot be used directly within PL/pgSQL functions (and is not needed).

## Example 43.1. Quoting Values in Dynamic Queries

When working with dynamic commands you will often have to handle escaping of single quotes. The recommended method for quoting fixed text in your function body is dollar quoting. (If you have legacy code that does not use dollar quoting, please refer to the overview in Section 43.12.1, which can save you some effort when translating said code to a more reasonable scheme.)

Dynamic values require careful handling since they might contain quote characters. An example using `format()` (this assumes that you are dollar quoting the function body so quote marks need not be doubled):

```
EXECUTE format('UPDATE tbl SET %I = $1 '
              'WHERE key = $2', colname) USING newvalue, keyvalue;
```

It is also possible to call the quoting functions directly:

```
EXECUTE 'UPDATE tbl SET '
      || quote_ident(colname)
      || ' = '
      || quote_literal(newvalue)
      || ' WHERE key = '
      || quote_literal(keyvalue);
```

This example demonstrates the use of the `quote_ident` and `quote_literal` functions (see Section 9.4). For safety, expressions containing column or table identifiers should be passed through `quote_ident` before insertion in a dynamic query. Expressions containing values that should be literal strings in the constructed command should be passed through `quote_literal`. These functions take the appropriate steps to return the input text enclosed in double or single quotes respectively, with any embedded special characters properly escaped.

Because `quote_literal` is labeled `STRICT`, it will always return null when called with a null argument. In the above example, if `newvalue` or `keyvalue` were null, the entire dynamic query string would become null, leading to an error from `EXECUTE`. You can avoid this problem by using the `quote_nullable` function, which works the same as `quote_literal` except that when called with a null argument it returns the string `NULL`. For example,

```
EXECUTE 'UPDATE tbl SET '  
      || quote_ident(colname)  
      || ' = '  
      || quote_nullable(newvalue)  
      || ' WHERE key = '  
      || quote_nullable(keyvalue);
```

If you are dealing with values that might be null, you should usually use `quote_nullable` in place of `quote_literal`.

As always, care must be taken to ensure that null values in a query do not deliver unintended results. For example the `WHERE` clause

```
'WHERE key = ' || quote_nullable(keyvalue)
```

will never succeed if `keyvalue` is null, because the result of using the equality operator `=` with a null operand is always null. If you wish null to work like an ordinary key value, you would need to rewrite the above as

```
'WHERE key IS NOT DISTINCT FROM ' || quote_nullable(keyvalue)
```

(At present, `IS NOT DISTINCT FROM` is handled much less efficiently than `=`, so don't do this unless you must. See Section 9.2 for more information on nulls and `IS DISTINCT`.)

Note that dollar quoting is only useful for quoting fixed text. It would be a very bad idea to try to write this example as:

```
EXECUTE 'UPDATE tbl SET '  
      || quote_ident(colname)  
      || ' = $$'  
      || newvalue  
      || '$$ WHERE key = '  
      || quote_literal(keyvalue);
```

because it would break if the contents of `newvalue` happened to contain `$$`. The same objection would apply to any other dollar-quoting delimiter you might pick. So, to safely quote text that is not known in advance, you *must* use `quote_literal`, `quote_nullable`, or `quote_ident`, as appropriate.

Dynamic SQL statements can also be safely constructed using the `format` function (see Section 9.4.1). For example:

```
EXECUTE format('UPDATE tbl SET %I = %L '  
      'WHERE key = %L', colname, newvalue, keyvalue);
```

`%I` is equivalent to `quote_ident`, and `%L` is equivalent to `quote_nullable`. The `format` function can be used in conjunction with the `USING` clause:

```
EXECUTE format('UPDATE tbl SET %I = $1 WHERE key = $2', colname)
    USING newvalue, keyvalue;
```

This form is better because the variables are handled in their native data type format, rather than unconditionally converting them to text and quoting them via %L. It is also more efficient.

A much larger example of a dynamic command and EXECUTE can be seen in Example 43.10, which builds and executes a CREATE FUNCTION command to define a new function.

## 43.5.5. Obtaining the Result Status

There are several ways to determine the effect of a command. The first method is to use the GET DIAGNOSTICS command, which has the form:

```
GET [ CURRENT ] DIAGNOSTICS variable { = | := } item [ , ... ];
```

This command allows retrieval of system status indicators. CURRENT is a noise word (but see also GET STACKED DIAGNOSTICS in Section 43.6.8.1). Each *item* is a key word identifying a status value to be assigned to the specified *variable* (which should be of the right data type to receive it). The currently available status items are shown in Table 43.1. Colon-equal (:=) can be used instead of the SQL-standard = token. An example:

```
GET DIAGNOSTICS integer_var = ROW_COUNT;
```

**Table 43.1. Available Diagnostics Items**

Name	Type	Description
ROW_COUNT	bigint	the number of rows processed by the most recent SQL command
PG_CONTEXT	text	line(s) of text describing the current call stack (see Section 43.6.9)
PG_ROUTINE_OID	oid	OID of the current function

The second method to determine the effects of a command is to check the special variable named FOUND, which is of type boolean. FOUND starts out false within each PL/pgSQL function call. It is set by each of the following types of statements:

- A SELECT INTO statement sets FOUND true if a row is assigned, false if no row is returned.
- A PERFORM statement sets FOUND true if it produces (and discards) one or more rows, false if no row is produced.
- UPDATE, INSERT, DELETE, and MERGE statements set FOUND true if at least one row is affected, false if no row is affected.
- A FETCH statement sets FOUND true if it returns a row, false if no row is returned.
- A MOVE statement sets FOUND true if it successfully repositions the cursor, false otherwise.
- A FOR or FOREACH statement sets FOUND true if it iterates one or more times, else false. FOUND is set this way when the loop exits; inside the execution of the loop, FOUND is not modified by the loop statement, although it might be changed by the execution of other statements within the loop body.
- RETURN QUERY and RETURN QUERY EXECUTE statements set FOUND true if the query returns at least one row, false if no row is returned.



Other PL/pgSQL statements do not change the state of `FOUND`. Note in particular that `EXECUTE` changes the output of `GET DIAGNOSTICS`, but does not change `FOUND`.

`FOUND` is a local variable within each PL/pgSQL function; any changes to it affect only the current function.

## 43.5.6. Doing Nothing At All

Sometimes a placeholder statement that does nothing is useful. For example, it can indicate that one arm of an if/then/else chain is deliberately empty. For this purpose, use the `NULL` statement:

```
NULL;
```

For example, the following two fragments of code are equivalent:

```
BEGIN
    y := x / 0;
EXCEPTION
    WHEN division_by_zero THEN
        NULL; -- ignore the error
END;
```

```
BEGIN
    y := x / 0;
EXCEPTION
    WHEN division_by_zero THEN -- ignore the error
END;
```

Which is preferable is a matter of taste.

### Note

In Oracle's PL/SQL, empty statement lists are not allowed, and so `NULL` statements are *required* for situations such as this. PL/pgSQL allows you to just write nothing, instead.

## 43.6. Control Structures

Control structures are probably the most useful (and important) part of PL/pgSQL. With PL/pgSQL's control structures, you can manipulate PostgreSQL data in a very flexible and powerful way.

### 43.6.1. Returning from a Function

There are two commands available that allow you to return data from a function: `RETURN` and `RETURN NEXT`.

#### 43.6.1.1. RETURN

```
RETURN expression;
```

`RETURN` with an expression terminates the function and returns the value of *expression* to the caller. This form is used for PL/pgSQL functions that do not return a set.

In a function that returns a scalar type, the expression's result will automatically be cast into the function's return type as described for assignments. But to return a composite (row) value, you must write an expression delivering exactly the requested column set. This may require use of explicit casting.

If you declared the function with output parameters, write just `RETURN` with no expression. The current values of the output parameter variables will be returned.

If you declared the function to return `void`, a `RETURN` statement can be used to exit the function early; but do not write an expression following `RETURN`.

The return value of a function cannot be left undefined. If control reaches the end of the top-level block of the function without hitting a `RETURN` statement, a run-time error will occur. This restriction does not apply to functions with output parameters and functions returning `void`, however. In those cases a `RETURN` statement is automatically executed if the top-level block finishes.

Some examples:

```
-- functions returning a scalar type
RETURN 1 + 2;
RETURN scalar_var;

-- functions returning a composite type
RETURN composite_type_var;
RETURN (1, 2, 'three'::text); -- must cast columns to correct
                               types
```

### 43.6.1.2. RETURN NEXT and RETURN QUERY

```
RETURN NEXT expression;
RETURN QUERY query;
RETURN QUERY EXECUTE command-string [ USING expression [ , ... ] ];
```

When a PL/pgSQL function is declared to return `SETOF sometype`, the procedure to follow is slightly different. In that case, the individual items to return are specified by a sequence of `RETURN NEXT` or `RETURN QUERY` commands, and then a final `RETURN` command with no argument is used to indicate that the function has finished executing. `RETURN NEXT` can be used with both scalar and composite data types; with a composite result type, an entire “table” of results will be returned. `RETURN QUERY` appends the results of executing a query to the function's result set. `RETURN NEXT` and `RETURN QUERY` can be freely intermixed in a single set-returning function, in which case their results will be concatenated.

`RETURN NEXT` and `RETURN QUERY` do not actually return from the function — they simply append zero or more rows to the function's result set. Execution then continues with the next statement in the PL/pgSQL function. As successive `RETURN NEXT` or `RETURN QUERY` commands are executed, the result set is built up. A final `RETURN`, which should have no argument, causes control to exit the function (or you can just let control reach the end of the function).

`RETURN QUERY` has a variant `RETURN QUERY EXECUTE`, which specifies the query to be executed dynamically. Parameter expressions can be inserted into the computed query string via `USING`, in just the same way as in the `EXECUTE` command.

If you declared the function with output parameters, write just `RETURN NEXT` with no expression. On each execution, the current values of the output parameter variable(s) will be saved for eventual return as a row of the result. Note that you must declare the function as returning `SETOF record` when there are multiple output parameters, or `SETOF sometype` when there is just one output parameter of type *sometype*, in order to create a set-returning function with output parameters.

Here is an example of a function using `RETURN NEXT`:

```
CREATE TABLE foo (fooid INT, foosubid INT, fooname TEXT);
INSERT INTO foo VALUES (1, 2, 'three');
INSERT INTO foo VALUES (4, 5, 'six');

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION get_all_foo() RETURNS SETOF foo AS
$BODY$
DECLARE
    r foo%rowtype;
BEGIN
    FOR r IN
        SELECT * FROM foo WHERE fooid > 0
    LOOP
        -- can do some processing here
        RETURN NEXT r; -- return current row of SELECT
    END LOOP;
    RETURN;
END;
$BODY$
LANGUAGE plpgsql;

SELECT * FROM get_all_foo();
```

Here is an example of a function using RETURN QUERY:

```
CREATE FUNCTION get_available_flightid(date) RETURNS SETOF integer
AS
$BODY$
BEGIN
    RETURN QUERY SELECT flightid
                  FROM flight
                  WHERE flightdate >= $1
                     AND flightdate < ($1 + 1);

    -- Since execution is not finished, we can check whether rows
    were returned
    -- and raise exception if not.
    IF NOT FOUND THEN
        RAISE EXCEPTION 'No flight at %.', $1;
    END IF;

    RETURN;
END;
$BODY$
LANGUAGE plpgsql;

-- Returns available flights or raises exception if there are no
-- available flights.
SELECT * FROM get_available_flightid(CURRENT_DATE);
```

### Note

The current implementation of RETURN NEXT and RETURN QUERY stores the entire result set before returning from the function, as discussed above. That means that if a PL/pgSQL function produces a very large result set, performance might be poor: data will be written to disk to avoid memory exhaustion, but the function itself will not return until the entire result set has been generated. A future version of PL/pgSQL might allow users to define set-

returning functions that do not have this limitation. Currently, the point at which data begins being written to disk is controlled by the `work_mem` configuration variable. Administrators who have sufficient memory to store larger result sets in memory should consider increasing this parameter.

## 43.6.2. Returning from a Procedure

A procedure does not have a return value. A procedure can therefore end without a `RETURN` statement. If you wish to use a `RETURN` statement to exit the code early, write just `RETURN` with no expression.

If the procedure has output parameters, the final values of the output parameter variables will be returned to the caller.

## 43.6.3. Calling a Procedure

A PL/pgSQL function, procedure, or DO block can call a procedure using `CALL`. Output parameters are handled differently from the way that `CALL` works in plain SQL. Each `OUT` or `INOUT` parameter of the procedure must correspond to a variable in the `CALL` statement, and whatever the procedure returns is assigned back to that variable after it returns. For example:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE triple(INOUT x int)
LANGUAGE plpgsql
AS $$
BEGIN
    x := x * 3;
END;
$$;

DO $$
DECLARE myvar int := 5;
BEGIN
    CALL triple(myvar);
    RAISE NOTICE 'myvar = %', myvar; -- prints 15
END;
$$;
```

The variable corresponding to an output parameter can be a simple variable or a field of a composite-type variable. Currently, it cannot be an element of an array.

## 43.6.4. Conditionals

`IF` and `CASE` statements let you execute alternative commands based on certain conditions. PL/pgSQL has three forms of `IF`:

- `IF ... THEN ... END IF`
- `IF ... THEN ... ELSE ... END IF`
- `IF ... THEN ... ELSIF ... THEN ... ELSE ... END IF`

and two forms of `CASE`:

- `CASE ... WHEN ... THEN ... ELSE ... END CASE`
- `CASE WHEN ... THEN ... ELSE ... END CASE`

#### 43.6.4.1. IF-THEN

```
IF boolean-expression THEN
    statements
END IF;
```

IF-THEN statements are the simplest form of IF. The statements between THEN and END IF will be executed if the condition is true. Otherwise, they are skipped.

Example:

```
IF v_user_id <> 0 THEN
    UPDATE users SET email = v_email WHERE user_id = v_user_id;
END IF;
```

#### 43.6.4.2. IF-THEN-ELSE

```
IF boolean-expression THEN
    statements
ELSE
    statements
END IF;
```

IF-THEN-ELSE statements add to IF-THEN by letting you specify an alternative set of statements that should be executed if the condition is not true. (Note this includes the case where the condition evaluates to NULL.)

Examples:

```
IF parentid IS NULL OR parentid = ''
THEN
    RETURN fullname;
ELSE
    RETURN hp_true_filename(parentid) || '/' || fullname;
END IF;
```

```
IF v_count > 0 THEN
    INSERT INTO users_count (count) VALUES (v_count);
    RETURN 't';
ELSE
    RETURN 'f';
END IF;
```

#### 43.6.4.3. IF-THEN-ELSIF

```
IF boolean-expression THEN
    statements
[ ELSEIF boolean-expression THEN
    statements
[ ELSEIF boolean-expression THEN
    statements
    ...
]
```

```

]
[ ELSE
    statements ]
END IF;

```

Sometimes there are more than just two alternatives. IF-THEN-ELSIF provides a convenient method of checking several alternatives in turn. The IF conditions are tested successively until the first one that is true is found. Then the associated statement(s) are executed, after which control passes to the next statement after END IF. (Any subsequent IF conditions are *not* tested.) If none of the IF conditions is true, then the ELSE block (if any) is executed.

Here is an example:

```

IF number = 0 THEN
    result := 'zero';
ELSIF number > 0 THEN
    result := 'positive';
ELSIF number < 0 THEN
    result := 'negative';
ELSE
    -- hmm, the only other possibility is that number is null
    result := 'NULL';
END IF;

```

The key word ELSIF can also be spelled ELSEIF.

An alternative way of accomplishing the same task is to nest IF-THEN-ELSE statements, as in the following example:

```

IF demo_row.sex = 'm' THEN
    pretty_sex := 'man';
ELSE
    IF demo_row.sex = 'f' THEN
        pretty_sex := 'woman';
    END IF;
END IF;

```

However, this method requires writing a matching END IF for each IF, so it is much more cumbersome than using ELSIF when there are many alternatives.

#### 43.6.4.4. Simple CASE

```

CASE search-expression
    WHEN expression [, expression [ ... ]] THEN
        statements
    [ WHEN expression [, expression [ ... ]] THEN
        statements
        ... ]
    [ ELSE
        statements ]
END CASE;

```

The simple form of CASE provides conditional execution based on equality of operands. The *search-expression* is evaluated (once) and successively compared to each *expression* in the WHEN clauses. If a match is found, then the corresponding *statements* are executed, and then control passes to the next statement after END CASE. (Subsequent WHEN expressions are not evalu-

ated.) If no match is found, the *ELSE statements* are executed; but if *ELSE* is not present, then a *CASE\_NOT\_FOUND* exception is raised.

Here is a simple example:

```
CASE x
  WHEN 1, 2 THEN
    msg := 'one or two';
  ELSE
    msg := 'other value than one or two';
END CASE;
```

### 43.6.4.5. Searched CASE

```
CASE
  WHEN boolean-expression THEN
    statements
  [ WHEN boolean-expression THEN
    statements
    ... ]
  [ ELSE
    statements ]
END CASE;
```

The searched form of CASE provides conditional execution based on truth of Boolean expressions. Each WHEN clause's *boolean-expression* is evaluated in turn, until one is found that yields true. Then the corresponding *statements* are executed, and then control passes to the next statement after *END CASE*. (Subsequent WHEN expressions are not evaluated.) If no true result is found, the *ELSE statements* are executed; but if *ELSE* is not present, then a *CASE\_NOT\_FOUND* exception is raised.

Here is an example:

```
CASE
  WHEN x BETWEEN 0 AND 10 THEN
    msg := 'value is between zero and ten';
  WHEN x BETWEEN 11 AND 20 THEN
    msg := 'value is between eleven and twenty';
END CASE;
```

This form of CASE is entirely equivalent to IF-THEN-ELSIF, except for the rule that reaching an omitted ELSE clause results in an error rather than doing nothing.

## 43.6.5. Simple Loops

With the LOOP, EXIT, CONTINUE, WHILE, FOR, and FOREACH statements, you can arrange for your PL/pgSQL function to repeat a series of commands.

### 43.6.5.1. LOOP

```
[ <<label>> ]
LOOP
  statements
END LOOP [ label ];
```

LOOP defines an unconditional loop that is repeated indefinitely until terminated by an EXIT or RETURN statement. The optional *label* can be used by EXIT and CONTINUE statements within nested loops to specify which loop those statements refer to.

### 43.6.5.2. EXIT

```
EXIT [ label ] [ WHEN boolean-expression ];
```

If no *label* is given, the innermost loop is terminated and the statement following END LOOP is executed next. If *label* is given, it must be the label of the current or some outer level of nested loop or block. Then the named loop or block is terminated and control continues with the statement after the loop's/block's corresponding END.

If WHEN is specified, the loop exit occurs only if *boolean-expression* is true. Otherwise, control passes to the statement after EXIT.

EXIT can be used with all types of loops; it is not limited to use with unconditional loops.

When used with a BEGIN block, EXIT passes control to the next statement after the end of the block. Note that a label must be used for this purpose; an unlabeled EXIT is never considered to match a BEGIN block. (This is a change from pre-8.4 releases of PostgreSQL, which would allow an unlabeled EXIT to match a BEGIN block.)

Examples:

```
LOOP
    -- some computations
    IF count > 0 THEN
        EXIT; -- exit loop
    END IF;
END LOOP;

LOOP
    -- some computations
    EXIT WHEN count > 0; -- same result as previous example
END LOOP;

<<ablock>>
BEGIN
    -- some computations
    IF stocks > 100000 THEN
        EXIT ablock; -- causes exit from the BEGIN block
    END IF;
    -- computations here will be skipped when stocks > 100000
END;
```

### 43.6.5.3. CONTINUE

```
CONTINUE [ label ] [ WHEN boolean-expression ];
```

If no *label* is given, the next iteration of the innermost loop is begun. That is, all statements remaining in the loop body are skipped, and control returns to the loop control expression (if any) to determine whether another loop iteration is needed. If *label* is present, it specifies the label of the loop whose execution will be continued.

If WHEN is specified, the next iteration of the loop is begun only if *boolean-expression* is true. Otherwise, control passes to the statement after CONTINUE.



CONTINUE can be used with all types of loops; it is not limited to use with unconditional loops.

Examples:

```
LOOP
    -- some computations
    EXIT WHEN count > 100;
    CONTINUE WHEN count < 50;
    -- some computations for count IN [50 .. 100]
END LOOP;
```

#### 43.6.5.4. WHILE

```
[ <<label>> ]
WHILE boolean-expression LOOP
    statements
END LOOP [ label ];
```

The WHILE statement repeats a sequence of statements so long as the *boolean-expression* evaluates to true. The expression is checked just before each entry to the loop body.

For example:

```
WHILE amount_owed > 0 AND gift_certificate_balance > 0 LOOP
    -- some computations here
END LOOP;

WHILE NOT done LOOP
    -- some computations here
END LOOP;
```

#### 43.6.5.5. FOR (Integer Variant)

```
[ <<label>> ]
FOR name IN [ REVERSE ] expression .. expression [ BY expression ]
LOOP
    statements
END LOOP [ label ];
```

This form of FOR creates a loop that iterates over a range of integer values. The variable *name* is automatically defined as type *integer* and exists only inside the loop (any existing definition of the variable name is ignored within the loop). The two expressions giving the lower and upper bound of the range are evaluated once when entering the loop. If the BY clause isn't specified the iteration step is 1, otherwise it's the value specified in the BY clause, which again is evaluated once on loop entry. If REVERSE is specified then the step value is subtracted, rather than added, after each iteration.

Some examples of integer FOR loops:

```
FOR i IN 1..10 LOOP
    -- i will take on the values 1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10 within the
    loop
END LOOP;

FOR i IN REVERSE 10..1 LOOP
```

```
-- i will take on the values 10,9,8,7,6,5,4,3,2,1 within the
loop
END LOOP;
```

```
FOR i IN REVERSE 10..1 BY 2 LOOP
    -- i will take on the values 10,8,6,4,2 within the loop
END LOOP;
```

If the lower bound is greater than the upper bound (or less than, in the REVERSE case), the loop body is not executed at all. No error is raised.

If a *label* is attached to the FOR loop then the integer loop variable can be referenced with a qualified name, using that *label*.

## 43.6.6. Looping through Query Results

Using a different type of FOR loop, you can iterate through the results of a query and manipulate that data accordingly. The syntax is:

```
[ <<label>> ]
FOR target IN query LOOP
    statements
END LOOP [ label ];
```

The *target* is a record variable, row variable, or comma-separated list of scalar variables. The *target* is successively assigned each row resulting from the *query* and the loop body is executed for each row. Here is an example:

```
CREATE FUNCTION refresh_mviews() RETURNS integer AS $$
DECLARE
    mviews RECORD;
BEGIN
    RAISE NOTICE 'Refreshing all materialized views...';

    FOR mviews IN
        SELECT n.nspname AS mv_schema,
               c.relname AS mv_name,
               pg_catalog.pg_get_userbyid(c.relowner) AS owner
        FROM pg_catalog.pg_class c
        LEFT JOIN pg_catalog.pg_namespace n ON (n.oid = c.relnamespace)
        WHERE c.relkind = 'm'
        ORDER BY 1
    LOOP

        -- Now "mviews" has one record with information about the
        materialized view

        RAISE NOTICE 'Refreshing materialized view %.% (owner:
        %)...',
            quote_ident(mviews.mv_schema),
            quote_ident(mviews.mv_name),
            quote_ident(mviews.owner);
        EXECUTE format('REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW %I.%I',
            mviews.mv_schema, mviews.mv_name);
    END LOOP;

    RAISE NOTICE 'Done refreshing materialized views.';
```

```

    RETURN 1;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;

```

If the loop is terminated by an EXIT statement, the last assigned row value is still accessible after the loop.

The *query* used in this type of FOR statement can be any SQL command that returns rows to the caller: SELECT is the most common case, but you can also use INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE with a RETURNING clause. Some utility commands such as EXPLAIN will work too.

PL/pgSQL variables are replaced by query parameters, and the query plan is cached for possible reuse, as discussed in detail in Section 43.11.1 and Section 43.11.2.

The FOR-IN-EXECUTE statement is another way to iterate over rows:

```

[ <<label>> ]
FOR target IN EXECUTE text_expression [ USING expression [, ... ] ]
LOOP
    statements
END LOOP [ label ];

```

This is like the previous form, except that the source query is specified as a string expression, which is evaluated and replanned on each entry to the FOR loop. This allows the programmer to choose the speed of a preplanned query or the flexibility of a dynamic query, just as with a plain EXECUTE statement. As with EXECUTE, parameter values can be inserted into the dynamic command via USING.

Another way to specify the query whose results should be iterated through is to declare it as a cursor. This is described in Section 43.7.4.

## 43.6.7. Looping through Arrays

The FOREACH loop is much like a FOR loop, but instead of iterating through the rows returned by an SQL query, it iterates through the elements of an array value. (In general, FOREACH is meant for looping through components of a composite-valued expression; variants for looping through composites besides arrays may be added in future.) The FOREACH statement to loop over an array is:

```

[ <<label>> ]
FOREACH target [ SLICE number ] IN ARRAY expression LOOP
    statements
END LOOP [ label ];

```

Without SLICE, or if SLICE 0 is specified, the loop iterates through individual elements of the array produced by evaluating the *expression*. The *target* variable is assigned each element value in sequence, and the loop body is executed for each element. Here is an example of looping through the elements of an integer array:

```

CREATE FUNCTION sum(int[]) RETURNS int8 AS $$
DECLARE
    s int8 := 0;
    x int;
BEGIN
    FOREACH x IN ARRAY $1
    LOOP
        s := s + x;
    END LOOP;

```

```
    RETURN s;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

The elements are visited in storage order, regardless of the number of array dimensions. Although the *target* is usually just a single variable, it can be a list of variables when looping through an array of composite values (records). In that case, for each array element, the variables are assigned from successive columns of the composite value.

With a positive *SLICE* value, *FOREACH* iterates through slices of the array rather than single elements. The *SLICE* value must be an integer constant not larger than the number of dimensions of the array. The *target* variable must be an array, and it receives successive slices of the array value, where each slice is of the number of dimensions specified by *SLICE*. Here is an example of iterating through one-dimensional slices:

```
CREATE FUNCTION scan_rows(int[]) RETURNS void AS $$
DECLARE
    x int[];
BEGIN
    FOREACH x SLICE 1 IN ARRAY $1
    LOOP
        RAISE NOTICE 'row = %', x;
    END LOOP;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;

SELECT scan_rows(ARRAY[[1,2,3],[4,5,6],[7,8,9],[10,11,12]]);

NOTICE:  row = {1,2,3}
NOTICE:  row = {4,5,6}
NOTICE:  row = {7,8,9}
NOTICE:  row = {10,11,12}
```

## 43.6.8. Trapping Errors

By default, any error occurring in a PL/pgSQL function aborts execution of the function and the surrounding transaction. You can trap errors and recover from them by using a *BEGIN* block with an *EXCEPTION* clause. The syntax is an extension of the normal syntax for a *BEGIN* block:

```
[ <<label>> ]
[ DECLARE
    declarations ]
BEGIN
    statements
EXCEPTION
    WHEN condition [ OR condition ... ] THEN
        handler_statements
    [ WHEN condition [ OR condition ... ] THEN
        handler_statements
    ... ]
END;
```

If no error occurs, this form of block simply executes all the *statements*, and then control passes to the next statement after *END*. But if an error occurs within the *statements*, further processing of the *statements* is abandoned, and control passes to the *EXCEPTION* list. The list is searched for the first *condition* matching the error that occurred. If a match is found, the corresponding *handler\_statements* are executed, and then control passes to the next statement after *END*. If

no match is found, the error propagates out as though the `EXCEPTION` clause were not there at all: the error can be caught by an enclosing block with `EXCEPTION`, or if there is none it aborts processing of the function.

The *condition* names can be any of those shown in Appendix A. A category name matches any error within its category. The special condition name `OTHERS` matches every error type except `QUERY_CANCELED` and `ASSERT_FAILURE`. (It is possible, but often unwise, to trap those two error types by name.) Condition names are not case-sensitive. Also, an error condition can be specified by `SQLSTATE` code; for example these are equivalent:

```
WHEN division_by_zero THEN ...
WHEN SQLSTATE '22012' THEN ...
```

If a new error occurs within the selected *handler\_statements*, it cannot be caught by this `EXCEPTION` clause, but is propagated out. A surrounding `EXCEPTION` clause could catch it.

When an error is caught by an `EXCEPTION` clause, the local variables of the PL/pgSQL function remain as they were when the error occurred, but all changes to persistent database state within the block are rolled back. As an example, consider this fragment:

```
INSERT INTO mytab(firstname, lastname) VALUES('Tom', 'Jones');
BEGIN
    UPDATE mytab SET firstname = 'Joe' WHERE lastname = 'Jones';
    x := x + 1;
    y := x / 0;
EXCEPTION
    WHEN division_by_zero THEN
        RAISE NOTICE 'caught division_by_zero';
        RETURN x;
END;
```

When control reaches the assignment to `y`, it will fail with a `division_by_zero` error. This will be caught by the `EXCEPTION` clause. The value returned in the `RETURN` statement will be the incremented value of `x`, but the effects of the `UPDATE` command will have been rolled back. The `INSERT` command preceding the block is not rolled back, however, so the end result is that the database contains Tom Jones not Joe Jones.

### Tip

A block containing an `EXCEPTION` clause is significantly more expensive to enter and exit than a block without one. Therefore, don't use `EXCEPTION` without need.

## Example 43.2. Exceptions with UPDATE/INSERT

This example uses exception handling to perform either `UPDATE` or `INSERT`, as appropriate. It is recommended that applications use `INSERT` with `ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE` rather than actually using this pattern. This example serves primarily to illustrate use of PL/pgSQL control flow structures:

```
CREATE TABLE db (a INT PRIMARY KEY, b TEXT);

CREATE FUNCTION merge_db(key INT, data TEXT) RETURNS VOID AS
$$
BEGIN
    LOOP
```

```

-- first try to update the key
UPDATE db SET b = data WHERE a = key;
IF found THEN
    RETURN;
END IF;
-- not there, so try to insert the key
-- if someone else inserts the same key concurrently,
-- we could get a unique-key failure
BEGIN
    INSERT INTO db(a,b) VALUES (key, data);
    RETURN;
EXCEPTION WHEN unique_violation THEN
    -- Do nothing, and loop to try the UPDATE again.
END;
END LOOP;
END;
$$
LANGUAGE plpgsql;

SELECT merge_db(1, 'david');
SELECT merge_db(1, 'dennis');
```

This coding assumes the `unique_violation` error is caused by the `INSERT`, and not by, say, an `INSERT` in a trigger function on the table. It might also misbehave if there is more than one unique index on the table, since it will retry the operation regardless of which index caused the error. More safety could be had by using the features discussed next to check that the trapped error was the one expected.

### 43.6.8.1. Obtaining Information about an Error

Exception handlers frequently need to identify the specific error that occurred. There are two ways to get information about the current exception in PL/pgSQL: special variables and the `GET STACKED DIAGNOSTICS` command.

Within an exception handler, the special variable `SQLSTATE` contains the error code that corresponds to the exception that was raised (refer to Table A.1 for a list of possible error codes). The special variable `SQLERRM` contains the error message associated with the exception. These variables are undefined outside exception handlers.

Within an exception handler, one may also retrieve information about the current exception by using the `GET STACKED DIAGNOSTICS` command, which has the form:

```
GET STACKED DIAGNOSTICS variable { = | := } item [ , ... ];
```

Each *item* is a key word identifying a status value to be assigned to the specified *variable* (which should be of the right data type to receive it). The currently available status items are shown in Table 43.2.

**Table 43.2. Error Diagnostics Items**

Name	Type	Description
RETURNED_SQLSTATE	text	the SQLSTATE error code of the exception
COLUMN_NAME	text	the name of the column related to exception
CONSTRAINT_NAME	text	the name of the constraint related to exception

Name	Type	Description
PG_DATATYPE_NAME	text	the name of the data type related to exception
MESSAGE_TEXT	text	the text of the exception's primary message
TABLE_NAME	text	the name of the table related to exception
SCHEMA_NAME	text	the name of the schema related to exception
PG_EXCEPTION_DETAIL	text	the text of the exception's detail message, if any
PG_EXCEPTION_HINT	text	the text of the exception's hint message, if any
PG_EXCEPTION_CONTEXT	text	line(s) of text describing the call stack at the time of the exception (see Section 43.6.9)

If the exception did not set a value for an item, an empty string will be returned.

Here is an example:

```

DECLARE
    text_var1 text;
    text_var2 text;
    text_var3 text;
BEGIN
    -- some processing which might cause an exception
    ...
EXCEPTION WHEN OTHERS THEN
    GET STACKED DIAGNOSTICS text_var1 = MESSAGE_TEXT,
                           text_var2 = PG_EXCEPTION_DETAIL,
                           text_var3 = PG_EXCEPTION_HINT;
END;
```

## 43.6.9. Obtaining Execution Location Information

The `GET DIAGNOSTICS` command, previously described in Section 43.5.5, retrieves information about current execution state (whereas the `GET STACKED DIAGNOSTICS` command discussed above reports information about the execution state as of a previous error). Its `PG_CONTEXT` status item is useful for identifying the current execution location. `PG_CONTEXT` returns a text string with line(s) of text describing the call stack. The first line refers to the current function and currently executing `GET DIAGNOSTICS` command. The second and any subsequent lines refer to calling functions further up the call stack. For example:

```

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION outer_func() RETURNS integer AS $$
BEGIN
    RETURN inner_func();
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION inner_func() RETURNS integer AS $$
DECLARE
    stack text;
```

```
BEGIN
    GET DIAGNOSTICS stack = PG_CONTEXT;
    RAISE NOTICE E'--- Call Stack ---\n%', stack;
    RETURN 1;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;

SELECT outer_func();

NOTICE: --- Call Stack ---
PL/pgSQL function inner_func() line 5 at GET DIAGNOSTICS
PL/pgSQL function outer_func() line 3 at RETURN
CONTEXT: PL/pgSQL function outer_func() line 3 at RETURN
outer_func
-----
          1
(1 row)
```

GET STACKED DIAGNOSTICS ... PG\_EXCEPTION\_CONTEXT returns the same sort of stack trace, but describing the location at which an error was detected, rather than the current location.

## 43.7. Cursors

Rather than executing a whole query at once, it is possible to set up a *cursor* that encapsulates the query, and then read the query result a few rows at a time. One reason for doing this is to avoid memory overrun when the result contains a large number of rows. (However, PL/pgSQL users do not normally need to worry about that, since FOR loops automatically use a cursor internally to avoid memory problems.) A more interesting usage is to return a reference to a cursor that a function has created, allowing the caller to read the rows. This provides an efficient way to return large row sets from functions.

### 43.7.1. Declaring Cursor Variables

All access to cursors in PL/pgSQL goes through cursor variables, which are always of the special data type `refcursor`. One way to create a cursor variable is just to declare it as a variable of type `refcursor`. Another way is to use the cursor declaration syntax, which in general is:

```
name [ [ NO ] SCROLL ] CURSOR [ ( arguments ) ] FOR query;
```

(FOR can be replaced by IS for Oracle compatibility.) If SCROLL is specified, the cursor will be capable of scrolling backward; if NO SCROLL is specified, backward fetches will be rejected; if neither specification appears, it is query-dependent whether backward fetches will be allowed. *arguments*, if specified, is a comma-separated list of pairs *name datatype* that define names to be replaced by parameter values in the given query. The actual values to substitute for these names will be specified later, when the cursor is opened.

Some examples:

```
DECLARE
    curs1 refcursor;
    curs2 CURSOR FOR SELECT * FROM tenk1;
    curs3 CURSOR (key integer) FOR SELECT * FROM tenk1 WHERE
unique1 = key;
```

All three of these variables have the data type `refcursor`, but the first can be used with any query, while the second has a fully specified query already *bound* to it, and the last has a parameterized query



bound to it. (key will be replaced by an integer parameter value when the cursor is opened.) The variable `cur1` is said to be *unbound* since it is not bound to any particular query.

The `SCROLL` option cannot be used when the cursor's query uses `FOR UPDATE/SHARE`. Also, it is best to use `NO SCROLL` with a query that involves volatile functions. The implementation of `SCROLL` assumes that re-reading the query's output will give consistent results, which a volatile function might not do.

## 43.7.2. Opening Cursors

Before a cursor can be used to retrieve rows, it must be *opened*. (This is the equivalent action to the SQL command `DECLARE CURSOR`.) PL/pgSQL has three forms of the `OPEN` statement, two of which use unbound cursor variables while the third uses a bound cursor variable.

### Note

Bound cursor variables can also be used without explicitly opening the cursor, via the `FOR` statement described in Section 43.7.4. A `FOR` loop will open the cursor and then close it again when the loop completes.

Opening a cursor involves creating a server-internal data structure called a *portal*, which holds the execution state for the cursor's query. A portal has a name, which must be unique within the session for the duration of the portal's existence. By default, PL/pgSQL will assign a unique name to each portal it creates. However, if you assign a non-null string value to a cursor variable, that string will be used as its portal name. This feature can be used as described in Section 43.7.3.5.

### 43.7.2.1. OPEN FOR query

```
OPEN unbound_cursorvar [ [ NO ] SCROLL ] FOR query;
```

The cursor variable is opened and given the specified query to execute. The cursor cannot be open already, and it must have been declared as an unbound cursor variable (that is, as a simple `refcursor` variable). The query must be a `SELECT`, or something else that returns rows (such as `EXPLAIN`). The query is treated in the same way as other SQL commands in PL/pgSQL: PL/pgSQL variable names are substituted, and the query plan is cached for possible reuse. When a PL/pgSQL variable is substituted into the cursor query, the value that is substituted is the one it has at the time of the `OPEN`; subsequent changes to the variable will not affect the cursor's behavior. The `SCROLL` and `NO SCROLL` options have the same meanings as for a bound cursor.

An example:

```
OPEN cur1 FOR SELECT * FROM foo WHERE key = mykey;
```

### 43.7.2.2. OPEN FOR EXECUTE

```
OPEN unbound_cursorvar [ [ NO ] SCROLL ] FOR EXECUTE query_string  
[ USING expression [, ... ] ];
```

The cursor variable is opened and given the specified query to execute. The cursor cannot be open already, and it must have been declared as an unbound cursor variable (that is, as a simple `refcursor` variable). The query is specified as a string expression, in the same way as in the `EXECUTE` command. As usual, this gives flexibility so the query plan can vary from one run to the next (see Section 43.11.2), and it also means that variable substitution is not done on the command string. As

with EXECUTE, parameter values can be inserted into the dynamic command via `format()` and USING. The SCROLL and NO SCROLL options have the same meanings as for a bound cursor.

An example:

```
OPEN curs1 FOR EXECUTE format('SELECT * FROM %I WHERE col1 =
    $1', tabname) USING keyvalue;
```

In this example, the table name is inserted into the query via `format()`. The comparison value for `col1` is inserted via a USING parameter, so it needs no quoting.

### 43.7.2.3. Opening a Bound Cursor

```
OPEN bound_cursorvar [ ( [ argument_name := ] argument_value
    [, ...] ) ];
```

This form of OPEN is used to open a cursor variable whose query was bound to it when it was declared. The cursor cannot be open already. A list of actual argument value expressions must appear if and only if the cursor was declared to take arguments. These values will be substituted in the query.

The query plan for a bound cursor is always considered cacheable; there is no equivalent of EXECUTE in this case. Notice that SCROLL and NO SCROLL cannot be specified in OPEN, as the cursor's scrolling behavior was already determined.

Argument values can be passed using either *positional* or *named* notation. In positional notation, all arguments are specified in order. In named notation, each argument's name is specified using `:=` to separate it from the argument expression. Similar to calling functions, described in Section 4.3, it is also allowed to mix positional and named notation.

Examples (these use the cursor declaration examples above):

```
OPEN curs2;
OPEN curs3(42);
OPEN curs3(key := 42);
```

Because variable substitution is done on a bound cursor's query, there are really two ways to pass values into the cursor: either with an explicit argument to OPEN, or implicitly by referencing a PL/pgSQL variable in the query. However, only variables declared before the bound cursor was declared will be substituted into it. In either case the value to be passed is determined at the time of the OPEN. For example, another way to get the same effect as the `curs3` example above is

```
DECLARE
    key integer;
    curs4 CURSOR FOR SELECT * FROM tenk1 WHERE unique1 = key;
BEGIN
    key := 42;
    OPEN curs4;
```

## 43.7.3. Using Cursors

Once a cursor has been opened, it can be manipulated with the statements described here.

These manipulations need not occur in the same function that opened the cursor to begin with. You can return a `refcursor` value out of a function and let the caller operate on the cursor. (Internally, a `refcursor` value is simply the string name of the portal containing the active query for the cursor. This name can be passed around, assigned to other `refcursor` variables, and so on, without disturbing the portal.)

All portals are implicitly closed at transaction end. Therefore a `refcursor` value is usable to reference an open cursor only until the end of the transaction.

### 43.7.3.1. FETCH

```
FETCH [ direction { FROM | IN } ] cursor INTO target;
```

`FETCH` retrieves the next row from the cursor into a target, which might be a row variable, a record variable, or a comma-separated list of simple variables, just like `SELECT INTO`. If there is no next row, the target is set to `NULL(s)`. As with `SELECT INTO`, the special variable `FOUND` can be checked to see whether a row was obtained or not.

The *direction* clause can be any of the variants allowed in the SQL `FETCH` command except the ones that can fetch more than one row; namely, it can be `NEXT`, `PRIOR`, `FIRST`, `LAST`, `ABSOLUTE count`, `RELATIVE count`, `FORWARD`, or `BACKWARD`. Omitting *direction* is the same as specifying `NEXT`. In the forms using a *count*, the *count* can be any integer-valued expression (unlike the SQL `FETCH` command, which only allows an integer constant). *direction* values that require moving backward are likely to fail unless the cursor was declared or opened with the `SCROLL` option.

*cursor* must be the name of a `refcursor` variable that references an open cursor portal.

Examples:

```
FETCH curs1 INTO rowvar;
FETCH curs2 INTO foo, bar, baz;
FETCH LAST FROM curs3 INTO x, y;
FETCH RELATIVE -2 FROM curs4 INTO x;
```

### 43.7.3.2. MOVE

```
MOVE [ direction { FROM | IN } ] cursor;
```

`MOVE` repositions a cursor without retrieving any data. `MOVE` works exactly like the `FETCH` command, except it only repositions the cursor and does not return the row moved to. As with `SELECT INTO`, the special variable `FOUND` can be checked to see whether there was a next row to move to.

Examples:

```
MOVE curs1;
MOVE LAST FROM curs3;
MOVE RELATIVE -2 FROM curs4;
MOVE FORWARD 2 FROM curs4;
```

### 43.7.3.3. UPDATE/DELETE WHERE CURRENT OF

```
UPDATE table SET ... WHERE CURRENT OF cursor;
DELETE FROM table WHERE CURRENT OF cursor;
```

When a cursor is positioned on a table row, that row can be updated or deleted using the cursor to identify the row. There are restrictions on what the cursor's query can be (in particular, no grouping) and it's best to use `FOR UPDATE` in the cursor. For more information see the `DECLARE` reference page.

An example:

```
UPDATE foo SET dataval = myval WHERE CURRENT OF curs1;
```

#### 43.7.3.4. CLOSE

```
CLOSE cursor;
```

CLOSE closes the portal underlying an open cursor. This can be used to release resources earlier than end of transaction, or to free up the cursor variable to be opened again.

An example:

```
CLOSE curs1;
```

#### 43.7.3.5. Returning Cursors

PL/pgSQL functions can return cursors to the caller. This is useful to return multiple rows or columns, especially with very large result sets. To do this, the function opens the cursor and returns the cursor name to the caller (or simply opens the cursor using a portal name specified by or otherwise known to the caller). The caller can then fetch rows from the cursor. The cursor can be closed by the caller, or it will be closed automatically when the transaction closes.

The portal name used for a cursor can be specified by the programmer or automatically generated. To specify a portal name, simply assign a string to the `refcursor` variable before opening it. The string value of the `refcursor` variable will be used by OPEN as the name of the underlying portal. However, if the `refcursor` variable's value is null (as it will be by default), then OPEN automatically generates a name that does not conflict with any existing portal, and assigns it to the `refcursor` variable.

#### Note

Prior to PostgreSQL 16, bound cursor variables were initialized to contain their own names, rather than being left as null, so that the underlying portal name would be the same as the cursor variable's name by default. This was changed because it created too much risk of conflicts between similarly-named cursors in different functions.

The following example shows one way a cursor name can be supplied by the caller:

```
CREATE TABLE test (col text);
INSERT INTO test VALUES ('123');

CREATE FUNCTION reffunc(refcursor) RETURNS refcursor AS '
BEGIN
    OPEN $1 FOR SELECT col FROM test;
    RETURN $1;
END;
' LANGUAGE plpgsql;

BEGIN;
SELECT reffunc('funcursor');
FETCH ALL IN funcursor;
COMMIT;
```

The following example uses automatic cursor name generation:

```
CREATE FUNCTION reffunc2() RETURNS refcursor AS '
DECLARE
    ref refcursor;
BEGIN
    OPEN ref FOR SELECT col FROM test;
    RETURN ref;
END;
' LANGUAGE plpgsql;

-- need to be in a transaction to use cursors.
BEGIN;
SELECT reffunc2();

        reffunc2
-----
<unnamed cursor 1>
(1 row)

FETCH ALL IN "<unnamed cursor 1>";
COMMIT;
```

The following example shows one way to return multiple cursors from a single function:

```
CREATE FUNCTION myfunc(refcursor, refcursor) RETURNS SETOF
    refcursor AS $$
BEGIN
    OPEN $1 FOR SELECT * FROM table_1;
    RETURN NEXT $1;
    OPEN $2 FOR SELECT * FROM table_2;
    RETURN NEXT $2;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;

-- need to be in a transaction to use cursors.
BEGIN;

SELECT * FROM myfunc('a', 'b');

FETCH ALL FROM a;
FETCH ALL FROM b;
COMMIT;
```

## 43.7.4. Looping through a Cursor's Result

There is a variant of the FOR statement that allows iterating through the rows returned by a cursor. The syntax is:

```
[ <<label>> ]
FOR recordvar IN bound_cursorvar [ ( [ argument_name
    := ] argument_value [, ...] ) ] LOOP
    statements
END LOOP [ label ];
```

The cursor variable must have been bound to some query when it was declared, and it *cannot* be open already. The FOR statement automatically opens the cursor, and it closes the cursor again when the loop exits. A list of actual argument value expressions must appear if and only if the cursor was

declared to take arguments. These values will be substituted in the query, in just the same way as during an OPEN (see Section 43.7.2.3).

The variable *recordvar* is automatically defined as type *record* and exists only inside the loop (any existing definition of the variable name is ignored within the loop). Each row returned by the cursor is successively assigned to this record variable and the loop body is executed.

## 43.8. Transaction Management

In procedures invoked by the CALL command as well as in anonymous code blocks (DO command), it is possible to end transactions using the commands COMMIT and ROLLBACK. A new transaction is started automatically after a transaction is ended using these commands, so there is no separate START TRANSACTION command. (Note that BEGIN and END have different meanings in PL/pgSQL.)

Here is a simple example:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE transaction_test1()
LANGUAGE plpgsql
AS $$
BEGIN
    FOR i IN 0..9 LOOP
        INSERT INTO test1 (a) VALUES (i);
        IF i % 2 = 0 THEN
            COMMIT;
        ELSE
            ROLLBACK;
        END IF;
    END LOOP;
END;
$$;

CALL transaction_test1();
```

A new transaction starts out with default transaction characteristics such as transaction isolation level. In cases where transactions are committed in a loop, it might be desirable to start new transactions automatically with the same characteristics as the previous one. The commands COMMIT AND CHAIN and ROLLBACK AND CHAIN accomplish this.

Transaction control is only possible in CALL or DO invocations from the top level or nested CALL or DO invocations without any other intervening command. For example, if the call stack is CALL proc1() → CALL proc2() → CALL proc3(), then the second and third procedures can perform transaction control actions. But if the call stack is CALL proc1() → SELECT func2() → CALL proc3(), then the last procedure cannot do transaction control, because of the SELECT in between.

Special considerations apply to cursor loops. Consider this example:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE transaction_test2()
LANGUAGE plpgsql
AS $$
DECLARE
    r RECORD;
BEGIN
    FOR r IN SELECT * FROM test2 ORDER BY x LOOP
        INSERT INTO test1 (a) VALUES (r.x);
        COMMIT;
    END LOOP;
END;
```

```

        END LOOP;
    END;
    $$;

CALL transaction_test2();

```

Normally, cursors are automatically closed at transaction commit. However, a cursor created as part of a loop like this is automatically converted to a holdable cursor by the first COMMIT or ROLLBACK. That means that the cursor is fully evaluated at the first COMMIT or ROLLBACK rather than row by row. The cursor is still removed automatically after the loop, so this is mostly invisible to the user.

Transaction commands are not allowed in cursor loops driven by commands that are not read-only (for example UPDATE ... RETURNING).

A transaction cannot be ended inside a block with exception handlers.

## 43.9. Errors and Messages

### 43.9.1. Reporting Errors and Messages

Use the RAISE statement to report messages and raise errors.

```

RAISE [ level ] 'format' [, expression [, ... ]] [ USING option
      = expression [, ... ] ];
RAISE [ level ] condition_name [ USING option = expression
      [, ... ] ];
RAISE [ level ] SQLSTATE 'sqlstate' [ USING option = expression
      [, ... ] ];
RAISE [ level ] USING option = expression [, ... ];
RAISE ;

```

The *level* option specifies the error severity. Allowed levels are DEBUG, LOG, INFO, NOTICE, WARNING, and EXCEPTION, with EXCEPTION being the default. EXCEPTION raises an error (which normally aborts the current transaction); the other levels only generate messages of different priority levels. Whether messages of a particular priority are reported to the client, written to the server log, or both is controlled by the log\_min\_messages and client\_min\_messages configuration variables. See Chapter 20 for more information.

After *level* if any, you can specify a *format* string (which must be a simple string literal, not an expression). The format string specifies the error message text to be reported. The format string can be followed by optional argument expressions to be inserted into the message. Inside the format string, % is replaced by the string representation of the next optional argument's value. Write %% to emit a literal %. The number of arguments must match the number of % placeholders in the format string, or an error is raised during the compilation of the function.

In this example, the value of v\_job\_id will replace the % in the string:

```
RAISE NOTICE 'Calling cs_create_job(%)', v_job_id;
```

You can attach additional information to the error report by writing USING followed by *option* = *expression* items. Each *expression* can be any string-valued expression. The allowed *option* key words are:

MESSAGE

Sets the error message text. This option can't be used in the form of RAISE that includes a format string before USING.

DETAIL

Supplies an error detail message.

HINT

Supplies a hint message.

ERRCODE

Specifies the error code (SQLSTATE) to report, either by condition name, as shown in Appendix A, or directly as a five-character SQLSTATE code.

COLUMN

CONSTRAINT

DATATYPE

TABLE

SCHEMA

Supplies the name of a related object.

This example will abort the transaction with the given error message and hint:

```
RAISE EXCEPTION 'Nonexistent ID --> %', user_id
    USING HINT = 'Please check your user ID';
```

These two examples show equivalent ways of setting the SQLSTATE:

```
RAISE 'Duplicate user ID: %', user_id USING ERRCODE =
    'unique_violation';
RAISE 'Duplicate user ID: %', user_id USING ERRCODE = '23505';
```

There is a second RAISE syntax in which the main argument is the condition name or SQLSTATE to be reported, for example:

```
RAISE division_by_zero;
RAISE SQLSTATE '22012';
```

In this syntax, USING can be used to supply a custom error message, detail, or hint. Another way to do the earlier example is

```
RAISE unique_violation USING MESSAGE = 'Duplicate user ID: ' ||
    user_id;
```

Still another variant is to write RAISE USING or RAISE *level* USING and put everything else into the USING list.

The last variant of RAISE has no parameters at all. This form can only be used inside a BEGIN block's EXCEPTION clause; it causes the error currently being handled to be re-thrown.

### Note

Before PostgreSQL 9.1, RAISE without parameters was interpreted as re-throwing the error from the block containing the active exception handler. Thus an EXCEPTION clause nested within that handler could not catch it, even if the RAISE was within the nested EXCEPTION



clause's block. This was deemed surprising as well as being incompatible with Oracle's PL/SQL.

If no condition name nor `SQLSTATE` is specified in a `RAISE EXCEPTION` command, the default is to use `raise_exception` (P0001). If no message text is specified, the default is to use the condition name or `SQLSTATE` as message text.

### Note

When specifying an error code by `SQLSTATE` code, you are not limited to the predefined error codes, but can select any error code consisting of five digits and/or upper-case ASCII letters, other than 00000. It is recommended that you avoid throwing error codes that end in three zeroes, because these are category codes and can only be trapped by trapping the whole category.

## 43.9.2. Checking Assertions

The `ASSERT` statement is a convenient shorthand for inserting debugging checks into PL/pgSQL functions.

```
ASSERT condition [ , message ];
```

The *condition* is a Boolean expression that is expected to always evaluate to true; if it does, the `ASSERT` statement does nothing further. If the result is false or null, then an `ASSERT_FAILURE` exception is raised. (If an error occurs while evaluating the *condition*, it is reported as a normal error.)

If the optional *message* is provided, it is an expression whose result (if not null) replaces the default error message text “assertion failed”, should the *condition* fail. The *message* expression is not evaluated in the normal case where the assertion succeeds.

Testing of assertions can be enabled or disabled via the configuration parameter `plpgsql.check_asserts`, which takes a Boolean value; the default is `on`. If this parameter is `off` then `ASSERT` statements do nothing.

Note that `ASSERT` is meant for detecting program bugs, not for reporting ordinary error conditions. Use the `RAISE` statement, described above, for that.

## 43.10. Trigger Functions

PL/pgSQL can be used to define trigger functions on data changes or database events. A trigger function is created with the `CREATE FUNCTION` command, declaring it as a function with no arguments and a return type of `trigger` (for data change triggers) or `event_trigger` (for database event triggers). Special local variables named `TG_something` are automatically defined to describe the condition that triggered the call.

### 43.10.1. Triggers on Data Changes

A data change trigger is declared as a function with no arguments and a return type of `trigger`. Note that the function must be declared with no arguments even if it expects to receive some arguments specified in `CREATE TRIGGER` — such arguments are passed via `TG_ARGV`, as described below.

When a PL/pgSQL function is called as a trigger, several special variables are created automatically in the top-level block. They are:

**NEW record**

new database row for INSERT/UPDATE operations in row-level triggers. This variable is null in statement-level triggers and for DELETE operations.

**OLD record**

old database row for UPDATE/DELETE operations in row-level triggers. This variable is null in statement-level triggers and for INSERT operations.

**TG\_NAME name**

name of the trigger which fired.

**TG\_WHEN text**

BEFORE, AFTER, or INSTEAD OF, depending on the trigger's definition.

**TG\_LEVEL text**

ROW or STATEMENT, depending on the trigger's definition.

**TG\_OP text**

operation for which the trigger was fired: INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, or TRUNCATE.

**TG\_RELID oid (references pg\_class.oid)**

object ID of the table that caused the trigger invocation.

**TG\_RELNAME name**

table that caused the trigger invocation. This is now deprecated, and could disappear in a future release. Use TG\_TABLE\_NAME instead.

**TG\_TABLE\_NAME name**

table that caused the trigger invocation.

**TG\_TABLE\_SCHEMA name**

schema of the table that caused the trigger invocation.

**TG\_NARGS integer**

number of arguments given to the trigger function in the CREATE TRIGGER statement.

**TG\_ARGV text[ ]**

arguments from the CREATE TRIGGER statement. The index counts from 0. Invalid indexes (less than 0 or greater than or equal to tg\_nargs) result in a null value.

A trigger function must return either NULL or a record/row value having exactly the structure of the table the trigger was fired for.

Row-level triggers fired BEFORE can return null to signal the trigger manager to skip the rest of the operation for this row (i.e., subsequent triggers are not fired, and the INSERT/UPDATE/DELETE does not occur for this row). If a nonnull value is returned then the operation proceeds with that row value. Returning a row value different from the original value of NEW alters the row that will be inserted or updated. Thus, if the trigger function wants the triggering action to succeed normally without altering the row value, NEW (or a value equal thereto) has to be returned. To alter the row to be stored, it is possible to replace single values directly in NEW and return the modified NEW, or to build a complete

new record/row to return. In the case of a before-trigger on DELETE, the returned value has no direct effect, but it has to be nonnull to allow the trigger action to proceed. Note that NEW is null in DELETE triggers, so returning that is usually not sensible. The usual idiom in DELETE triggers is to return OLD.

INSTEAD OF triggers (which are always row-level triggers, and may only be used on views) can return null to signal that they did not perform any updates, and that the rest of the operation for this row should be skipped (i.e., subsequent triggers are not fired, and the row is not counted in the rows-affected status for the surrounding INSERT/UPDATE/DELETE). Otherwise a nonnull value should be returned, to signal that the trigger performed the requested operation. For INSERT and UPDATE operations, the return value should be NEW, which the trigger function may modify to support INSERT RETURNING and UPDATE RETURNING (this will also affect the row value passed to any subsequent triggers, or passed to a special EXCLUDED alias reference within an INSERT statement with an ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE clause). For DELETE operations, the return value should be OLD.

The return value of a row-level trigger fired AFTER or a statement-level trigger fired BEFORE or AFTER is always ignored; it might as well be null. However, any of these types of triggers might still abort the entire operation by raising an error.

Example 43.3 shows an example of a trigger function in PL/pgSQL.

### Example 43.3. A PL/pgSQL Trigger Function

This example trigger ensures that any time a row is inserted or updated in the table, the current user name and time are stamped into the row. And it checks that an employee's name is given and that the salary is a positive value.

```
CREATE TABLE emp (
    empname      text,
    salary       integer,
    last_date     timestamp,
    last_user     text
);

CREATE FUNCTION emp_stamp() RETURNS trigger AS $emp_stamp$
BEGIN
    -- Check that empname and salary are given
    IF NEW.empname IS NULL THEN
        RAISE EXCEPTION 'empname cannot be null';
    END IF;
    IF NEW.salary IS NULL THEN
        RAISE EXCEPTION '% cannot have null salary',
NEW.empname;
    END IF;

    -- Who works for us when they must pay for it?
    IF NEW.salary < 0 THEN
        RAISE EXCEPTION '% cannot have a negative salary',
NEW.empname;
    END IF;

    -- Remember who changed the payroll when
    NEW.last_date := current_timestamp;
    NEW.last_user := current_user;
    RETURN NEW;
END;
$emp_stamp$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;

CREATE TRIGGER emp_stamp BEFORE INSERT OR UPDATE ON emp
```

```
FOR EACH ROW EXECUTE FUNCTION emp_stamp();
```

Another way to log changes to a table involves creating a new table that holds a row for each insert, update, or delete that occurs. This approach can be thought of as auditing changes to a table. Example 43.4 shows an example of an audit trigger function in PL/pgSQL.

#### Example 43.4. A PL/pgSQL Trigger Function for Auditing

This example trigger ensures that any insert, update or delete of a row in the `emp` table is recorded (i.e., audited) in the `emp_audit` table. The current time and user name are stamped into the row, together with the type of operation performed on it.

```
CREATE TABLE emp (
    empname      text NOT NULL,
    salary       integer
);

CREATE TABLE emp_audit(
    operation     char(1)    NOT NULL,
    stamp         timestamp NOT NULL,
    userid        text      NOT NULL,
    empname       text      NOT NULL,
    salary        integer
);

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION process_emp_audit() RETURNS TRIGGER AS
$emp_audit$
BEGIN
    --
    -- Create a row in emp_audit to reflect the operation
    performed on emp,
    -- making use of the special variable TG_OP to work out the
    operation.
    --
    IF (TG_OP = 'DELETE') THEN
        INSERT INTO emp_audit SELECT 'D', now(), current_user,
OLD.*;
    ELSIF (TG_OP = 'UPDATE') THEN
        INSERT INTO emp_audit SELECT 'U', now(), current_user,
NEW.*;
    ELSIF (TG_OP = 'INSERT') THEN
        INSERT INTO emp_audit SELECT 'I', now(), current_user,
NEW.*;
    END IF;
    RETURN NULL; -- result is ignored since this is an AFTER
trigger
END;
$emp_audit$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;

CREATE TRIGGER emp_audit
AFTER INSERT OR UPDATE OR DELETE ON emp
FOR EACH ROW EXECUTE FUNCTION process_emp_audit();
```

A variation of the previous example uses a view joining the main table to the audit table, to show when each entry was last modified. This approach still records the full audit trail of changes to the table, but also presents a simplified view of the audit trail, showing just the last modified timestamp derived from the audit trail for each entry. Example 43.5 shows an example of an audit trigger on a view in PL/pgSQL.

### Example 43.5. A PL/pgSQL View Trigger Function for Auditing

This example uses a trigger on the view to make it updatable, and ensure that any insert, update or delete of a row in the view is recorded (i.e., audited) in the `emp_audit` table. The current time and user name are recorded, together with the type of operation performed, and the view displays the last modified time of each row.

```
CREATE TABLE emp (  
    empname          text PRIMARY KEY,  
    salary           integer  
);  
  
CREATE TABLE emp_audit(  
    operation        char(1)    NOT NULL,  
    userid           text       NOT NULL,  
    empname          text       NOT NULL,  
    salary           integer,  
    stamp            timestamp NOT NULL  
);  
  
CREATE VIEW emp_view AS  
    SELECT e.empname,  
           e.salary,  
           max(ea.stamp) AS last_updated  
    FROM emp e  
    LEFT JOIN emp_audit ea ON ea.empname = e.empname  
    GROUP BY 1, 2;  
  
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION update_emp_view() RETURNS TRIGGER AS $$  
BEGIN  
    --  
    -- Perform the required operation on emp, and create a row  
in emp_audit  
    -- to reflect the change made to emp.  
    --  
    IF (TG_OP = 'DELETE') THEN  
        DELETE FROM emp WHERE empname = OLD.empname;  
        IF NOT FOUND THEN RETURN NULL; END IF;  
  
        OLD.last_updated = now();  
        INSERT INTO emp_audit VALUES('D', current_user, OLD.*);  
        RETURN OLD;  
    ELSIF (TG_OP = 'UPDATE') THEN  
        UPDATE emp SET salary = NEW.salary WHERE empname =  
OLD.empname;  
        IF NOT FOUND THEN RETURN NULL; END IF;  
  
        NEW.last_updated = now();  
        INSERT INTO emp_audit VALUES('U', current_user, NEW.*);  
        RETURN NEW;  
    ELSIF (TG_OP = 'INSERT') THEN  
        INSERT INTO emp VALUES(NEW.empname, NEW.salary);  
  
        NEW.last_updated = now();  
        INSERT INTO emp_audit VALUES('I', current_user, NEW.*);  
        RETURN NEW;  
    END IF;  
END IF;
```

```

END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;

CREATE TRIGGER emp_audit
INSTEAD OF INSERT OR UPDATE OR DELETE ON emp_view
FOR EACH ROW EXECUTE FUNCTION update_emp_view();

```

One use of triggers is to maintain a summary table of another table. The resulting summary can be used in place of the original table for certain queries — often with vastly reduced run times. This technique is commonly used in Data Warehousing, where the tables of measured or observed data (called fact tables) might be extremely large. Example 43.6 shows an example of a trigger function in PL/pgSQL that maintains a summary table for a fact table in a data warehouse.

### Example 43.6. A PL/pgSQL Trigger Function for Maintaining a Summary Table

The schema detailed here is partly based on the *Grocery Store* example from *The Data Warehouse Toolkit* by Ralph Kimball.

```

--
-- Main tables - time dimension and sales fact.
--
CREATE TABLE time_dimension (
    time_key          integer NOT NULL,
    day_of_week       integer NOT NULL,
    day_of_month      integer NOT NULL,
    month             integer NOT NULL,
    quarter           integer NOT NULL,
    year              integer NOT NULL
);
CREATE UNIQUE INDEX time_dimension_key ON time_dimension(time_key);

CREATE TABLE sales_fact (
    time_key          integer NOT NULL,
    product_key       integer NOT NULL,
    store_key         integer NOT NULL,
    amount_sold       numeric(12,2) NOT NULL,
    units_sold        integer NOT NULL,
    amount_cost       numeric(12,2) NOT NULL
);
CREATE INDEX sales_fact_time ON sales_fact(time_key);

--
-- Summary table - sales by time.
--
CREATE TABLE sales_summary_bytime (
    time_key          integer NOT NULL,
    amount_sold       numeric(15,2) NOT NULL,
    units_sold        numeric(12) NOT NULL,
    amount_cost       numeric(15,2) NOT NULL
);
CREATE UNIQUE INDEX sales_summary_bytime_key ON
    sales_summary_bytime(time_key);

--
-- Function and trigger to amend summarized column(s) on UPDATE,
-- INSERT, DELETE.

```

```
--
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION maint_sales_summary_bytime() RETURNS
    TRIGGER
AS $maint_sales_summary_bytime$
    DECLARE
        delta_time_key          integer;
        delta_amount_sold       numeric(15,2);
        delta_units_sold        numeric(12);
        delta_amount_cost       numeric(15,2);
    BEGIN

        -- Work out the increment/decrement amount(s).
        IF (TG_OP = 'DELETE') THEN

            delta_time_key = OLD.time_key;
            delta_amount_sold = -1 * OLD.amount_sold;
            delta_units_sold = -1 * OLD.units_sold;
            delta_amount_cost = -1 * OLD.amount_cost;

        ELSIF (TG_OP = 'UPDATE') THEN

            -- forbid updates that change the time_key -
            -- (probably not too onerous, as DELETE + INSERT is how
most
            -- changes will be made).
            IF ( OLD.time_key != NEW.time_key) THEN
                RAISE EXCEPTION 'Update of time_key : % -> % not
allowed',
                                                                OLD.time_key,
NEW.time_key;
            END IF;

            delta_time_key = OLD.time_key;
            delta_amount_sold = NEW.amount_sold - OLD.amount_sold;
            delta_units_sold = NEW.units_sold - OLD.units_sold;
            delta_amount_cost = NEW.amount_cost - OLD.amount_cost;

        ELSIF (TG_OP = 'INSERT') THEN

            delta_time_key = NEW.time_key;
            delta_amount_sold = NEW.amount_sold;
            delta_units_sold = NEW.units_sold;
            delta_amount_cost = NEW.amount_cost;

        END IF;

        -- Insert or update the summary row with the new values.
        <<insert_update>>
        LOOP
            UPDATE sales_summary_bytime
                SET amount_sold = amount_sold + delta_amount_sold,
                    units_sold = units_sold + delta_units_sold,
                    amount_cost = amount_cost + delta_amount_cost
                WHERE time_key = delta_time_key;

            EXIT insert_update WHEN found;
        END LOOP;
    END;
$maint_sales_summary_bytime$
```

```

BEGIN
    INSERT INTO sales_summary_bytime (
        time_key,
        amount_sold,
        units_sold,
        amount_cost)
    VALUES (
        delta_time_key,
        delta_amount_sold,
        delta_units_sold,
        delta_amount_cost
    );

    EXIT insert_update;

EXCEPTION
    WHEN UNIQUE_VIOLATION THEN
        -- do nothing
    END;
END LOOP insert_update;

RETURN NULL;

END;
$maint_sales_summary_bytime$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;

CREATE TRIGGER maint_sales_summary_bytime
AFTER INSERT OR UPDATE OR DELETE ON sales_fact
FOR EACH ROW EXECUTE FUNCTION maint_sales_summary_bytime();

INSERT INTO sales_fact VALUES(1,1,1,10,3,15);
INSERT INTO sales_fact VALUES(1,2,1,20,5,35);
INSERT INTO sales_fact VALUES(2,2,1,40,15,135);
INSERT INTO sales_fact VALUES(2,3,1,10,1,13);
SELECT * FROM sales_summary_bytime;
DELETE FROM sales_fact WHERE product_key = 1;
SELECT * FROM sales_summary_bytime;
UPDATE sales_fact SET units_sold = units_sold * 2;
SELECT * FROM sales_summary_bytime;

```

AFTER triggers can also make use of *transition tables* to inspect the entire set of rows changed by the triggering statement. The CREATE TRIGGER command assigns names to one or both transition tables, and then the function can refer to those names as though they were read-only temporary tables. Example 43.7 shows an example.

### Example 43.7. Auditing with Transition Tables

This example produces the same results as Example 43.4, but instead of using a trigger that fires for every row, it uses a trigger that fires once per statement, after collecting the relevant information in a transition table. This can be significantly faster than the row-trigger approach when the invoking statement has modified many rows. Notice that we must make a separate trigger declaration for each kind of event, since the REFERENCING clauses must be different for each case. But this does not stop us from using a single trigger function if we choose. (In practice, it might be better to use three separate functions and avoid the run-time tests on TG\_OP.)

```

CREATE TABLE emp (
    empname          text NOT NULL,
    salary           integer

```



```

);

CREATE TABLE emp_audit(
    operation          char(1)    NOT NULL,
    stamp              timestamp NOT NULL,
    userid             text       NOT NULL,
    empname            text       NOT NULL,
    salary             integer
);

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION process_emp_audit() RETURNS TRIGGER AS
$emp_audit$
BEGIN
    --
    -- Create rows in emp_audit to reflect the operations
    performed on emp,
    -- making use of the special variable TG_OP to work out the
    operation.
    --
    IF (TG_OP = 'DELETE') THEN
        INSERT INTO emp_audit
            SELECT 'D', now(), current_user, o.* FROM old_table
o;
    ELSIF (TG_OP = 'UPDATE') THEN
        INSERT INTO emp_audit
            SELECT 'U', now(), current_user, n.* FROM new_table
n;
    ELSIF (TG_OP = 'INSERT') THEN
        INSERT INTO emp_audit
            SELECT 'I', now(), current_user, n.* FROM new_table
n;
    END IF;
    RETURN NULL; -- result is ignored since this is an AFTER
trigger
END;
$emp_audit$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;

CREATE TRIGGER emp_audit_ins
AFTER INSERT ON emp
REFERENCING NEW TABLE AS new_table
FOR EACH STATEMENT EXECUTE FUNCTION process_emp_audit();
CREATE TRIGGER emp_audit_upd
AFTER UPDATE ON emp
REFERENCING OLD TABLE AS old_table NEW TABLE AS new_table
FOR EACH STATEMENT EXECUTE FUNCTION process_emp_audit();
CREATE TRIGGER emp_audit_del
AFTER DELETE ON emp
REFERENCING OLD TABLE AS old_table
FOR EACH STATEMENT EXECUTE FUNCTION process_emp_audit();

```

## 43.10.2. Triggers on Events

PL/pgSQL can be used to define event triggers. PostgreSQL requires that a function that is to be called as an event trigger must be declared as a function with no arguments and a return type of `event_trigger`.

When a PL/pgSQL function is called as an event trigger, several special variables are created automatically in the top-level block. They are:

TG\_EVENT text

event the trigger is fired for.

TG\_TAG text

command tag for which the trigger is fired.

Example 43.8 shows an example of an event trigger function in PL/pgSQL.

### Example 43.8. A PL/pgSQL Event Trigger Function

This example trigger simply raises a NOTICE message each time a supported command is executed.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION snitch() RETURNS event_trigger AS $$
BEGIN
    RAISE NOTICE 'snitch: % %', tg_event, tg_tag;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;

CREATE EVENT TRIGGER snitch ON ddl_command_start EXECUTE FUNCTION
snitch();
```

## 43.11. PL/pgSQL under the Hood

This section discusses some implementation details that are frequently important for PL/pgSQL users to know.

### 43.11.1. Variable Substitution

SQL statements and expressions within a PL/pgSQL function can refer to variables and parameters of the function. Behind the scenes, PL/pgSQL substitutes query parameters for such references. Query parameters will only be substituted in places where they are syntactically permissible. As an extreme case, consider this example of poor programming style:

```
INSERT INTO foo (foo) VALUES (foo(foo));
```

The first occurrence of `foo` must syntactically be a table name, so it will not be substituted, even if the function has a variable named `foo`. The second occurrence must be the name of a column of that table, so it will not be substituted either. Likewise the third occurrence must be a function name, so it also will not be substituted for. Only the last occurrence is a candidate to be a reference to a variable of the PL/pgSQL function.

Another way to understand this is that variable substitution can only insert data values into an SQL command; it cannot dynamically change which database objects are referenced by the command. (If you want to do that, you must build a command string dynamically, as explained in Section 43.5.4.)

Since the names of variables are syntactically no different from the names of table columns, there can be ambiguity in statements that also refer to tables: is a given name meant to refer to a table column, or a variable? Let's change the previous example to

```
INSERT INTO dest (col) SELECT foo + bar FROM src;
```

Here, `dest` and `src` must be table names, and `col` must be a column of `dest`, but `foo` and `bar` might reasonably be either variables of the function or columns of `src`.

By default, PL/pgSQL will report an error if a name in an SQL statement could refer to either a variable or a table column. You can fix such a problem by renaming the variable or column, or by qualifying the ambiguous reference, or by telling PL/pgSQL which interpretation to prefer.

The simplest solution is to rename the variable or column. A common coding rule is to use a different naming convention for PL/pgSQL variables than you use for column names. For example, if you consistently name function variables `v_something` while none of your column names start with `v_`, no conflicts will occur.

Alternatively you can qualify ambiguous references to make them clear. In the above example, `src.c.foo` would be an unambiguous reference to the table column. To create an unambiguous reference to a variable, declare it in a labeled block and use the block's label (see Section 43.2). For example,

```
<<block>>
DECLARE
    foo int;
BEGIN
    foo := ...;
    INSERT INTO dest (col) SELECT block.foo + bar FROM src;
```

Here `block.foo` means the variable even if there is a column `foo` in `src`. Function parameters, as well as special variables such as `FOUND`, can be qualified by the function's name, because they are implicitly declared in an outer block labeled with the function's name.

Sometimes it is impractical to fix all the ambiguous references in a large body of PL/pgSQL code. In such cases you can specify that PL/pgSQL should resolve ambiguous references as the variable (which is compatible with PL/pgSQL's behavior before PostgreSQL 9.0), or as the table column (which is compatible with some other systems such as Oracle).

To change this behavior on a system-wide basis, set the configuration parameter `plpgsql.variable_conflict` to one of `error`, `use_variable`, or `use_column` (where `error` is the factory default). This parameter affects subsequent compilations of statements in PL/pgSQL functions, but not statements already compiled in the current session. Because changing this setting can cause unexpected changes in the behavior of PL/pgSQL functions, it can only be changed by a superuser.

You can also set the behavior on a function-by-function basis, by inserting one of these special commands at the start of the function text:

```
#variable_conflict error
#variable_conflict use_variable
#variable_conflict use_column
```

These commands affect only the function they are written in, and override the setting of `plpgsql.variable_conflict`. An example is

```
CREATE FUNCTION stamp_user(id int, comment text) RETURNS void AS $$
    #variable_conflict use_variable
    DECLARE
        curtime timestamp := now();
    BEGIN
        UPDATE users SET last_modified = curtime, comment = comment
            WHERE users.id = id;
    END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

In the `UPDATE` command, `curtime`, `comment`, and `id` will refer to the function's variable and parameters whether or not `users` has columns of those names. Notice that we had to qualify the refer-

ence to `users.id` in the `WHERE` clause to make it refer to the table column. But we did not have to qualify the reference to `comment` as a target in the `UPDATE` list, because syntactically that must be a column of `users`. We could write the same function without depending on the `variable_conflict` setting in this way:

```
CREATE FUNCTION stamp_user(id int, comment text) RETURNS void AS $$
    <<fn>>
    DECLARE
        curtime timestamp := now();
    BEGIN
        UPDATE users SET last_modified = fn.curtime, comment =
            stamp_user.comment
            WHERE users.id = stamp_user.id;
    END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

Variable substitution does not happen in a command string given to `EXECUTE` or one of its variants. If you need to insert a varying value into such a command, do so as part of constructing the string value, or use `USING`, as illustrated in Section 43.5.4.

Variable substitution currently works only in `SELECT`, `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, and commands containing one of these (such as `EXPLAIN` and `CREATE TABLE ... AS SELECT`), because the main SQL engine allows query parameters only in these commands. To use a non-constant name or value in other statement types (generically called utility statements), you must construct the utility statement as a string and `EXECUTE` it.

## 43.11.2. Plan Caching

The PL/pgSQL interpreter parses the function's source text and produces an internal binary instruction tree the first time the function is called (within each session). The instruction tree fully translates the PL/pgSQL statement structure, but individual SQL expressions and SQL commands used in the function are not translated immediately.

As each expression and SQL command is first executed in the function, the PL/pgSQL interpreter parses and analyzes the command to create a prepared statement, using the SPI manager's `SPI_prepare` function. Subsequent visits to that expression or command reuse the prepared statement. Thus, a function with conditional code paths that are seldom visited will never incur the overhead of analyzing those commands that are never executed within the current session. A disadvantage is that errors in a specific expression or command cannot be detected until that part of the function is reached in execution. (Trivial syntax errors will be detected during the initial parsing pass, but anything deeper will not be detected until execution.)

PL/pgSQL (or more precisely, the SPI manager) can furthermore attempt to cache the execution plan associated with any particular prepared statement. If a cached plan is not used, then a fresh execution plan is generated on each visit to the statement, and the current parameter values (that is, PL/pgSQL variable values) can be used to optimize the selected plan. If the statement has no parameters, or is executed many times, the SPI manager will consider creating a *generic* plan that is not dependent on specific parameter values, and caching that for re-use. Typically this will happen only if the execution plan is not very sensitive to the values of the PL/pgSQL variables referenced in it. If it is, generating a plan each time is a net win. See `PREPARE` for more information about the behavior of prepared statements.

Because PL/pgSQL saves prepared statements and sometimes execution plans in this way, SQL commands that appear directly in a PL/pgSQL function must refer to the same tables and columns on every execution; that is, you cannot use a parameter as the name of a table or column in an SQL command. To get around this restriction, you can construct dynamic commands using the PL/pgSQL `EXECUTE` statement — at the price of performing new parse analysis and constructing a new execution plan on every execution.

The mutable nature of record variables presents another problem in this connection. When fields of a record variable are used in expressions or statements, the data types of the fields must not change from one call of the function to the next, since each expression will be analyzed using the data type that is present when the expression is first reached. `EXECUTE` can be used to get around this problem when necessary.

If the same function is used as a trigger for more than one table, PL/pgSQL prepares and caches statements independently for each such table — that is, there is a cache for each trigger function and table combination, not just for each function. This alleviates some of the problems with varying data types; for instance, a trigger function will be able to work successfully with a column named `key` even if it happens to have different types in different tables.

Likewise, functions having polymorphic argument types have a separate statement cache for each combination of actual argument types they have been invoked for, so that data type differences do not cause unexpected failures.

Statement caching can sometimes have surprising effects on the interpretation of time-sensitive values. For example there is a difference between what these two functions do:

```
CREATE FUNCTION logfunc1(logtxt text) RETURNS void AS $$
BEGIN
    INSERT INTO logtable VALUES (logtxt, 'now');
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

and:

```
CREATE FUNCTION logfunc2(logtxt text) RETURNS void AS $$
DECLARE
    curtime timestamp;
BEGIN
    curtime := 'now';
    INSERT INTO logtable VALUES (logtxt, curtime);
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

In the case of `logfunc1`, the PostgreSQL main parser knows when analyzing the `INSERT` that the string `'now'` should be interpreted as `timestamp`, because the target column of `logtable` is of that type. Thus, `'now'` will be converted to a `timestamp` constant when the `INSERT` is analyzed, and then used in all invocations of `logfunc1` during the lifetime of the session. Needless to say, this isn't what the programmer wanted. A better idea is to use the `now()` or `current_timestamp` function.

In the case of `logfunc2`, the PostgreSQL main parser does not know what type `'now'` should become and therefore it returns a data value of type `text` containing the string `now`. During the ensuing assignment to the local variable `curtime`, the PL/pgSQL interpreter casts this string to the `timestamp` type by calling the `textout` and `timestamp_in` functions for the conversion. So, the computed time stamp is updated on each execution as the programmer expects. Even though this happens to work as expected, it's not terribly efficient, so use of the `now()` function would still be a better idea.

## 43.12. Tips for Developing in PL/pgSQL

One good way to develop in PL/pgSQL is to use the text editor of your choice to create your functions, and in another window, use `psql` to load and test those functions. If you are doing it this way, it is a good idea to write the function using `CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION`. That way you can just reload the file to update the function definition. For example:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION testfunc(integer) RETURNS integer AS $$  
    ....  
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

While running psql, you can load or reload such a function definition file with:

```
\i filename.sql
```

and then immediately issue SQL commands to test the function.

Another good way to develop in PL/pgSQL is with a GUI database access tool that facilitates development in a procedural language. One example of such a tool is pgAdmin, although others exist. These tools often provide convenient features such as escaping single quotes and making it easier to recreate and debug functions.

## 43.12.1. Handling of Quotation Marks

The code of a PL/pgSQL function is specified in `CREATE FUNCTION` as a string literal. If you write the string literal in the ordinary way with surrounding single quotes, then any single quotes inside the function body must be doubled; likewise any backslashes must be doubled (assuming escape string syntax is used). Doubling quotes is at best tedious, and in more complicated cases the code can become downright incomprehensible, because you can easily find yourself needing half a dozen or more adjacent quote marks. It's recommended that you instead write the function body as a “dollar-quoted” string literal (see Section 4.1.2.4). In the dollar-quoting approach, you never double any quote marks, but instead take care to choose a different dollar-quoting delimiter for each level of nesting you need. For example, you might write the `CREATE FUNCTION` command as:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION testfunc(integer) RETURNS integer AS  
    $PROC$  
    ....  
$PROC$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

Within this, you might use quote marks for simple literal strings in SQL commands and `$$` to delimit fragments of SQL commands that you are assembling as strings. If you need to quote text that includes `$$`, you could use `$Q$`, and so on.

The following chart shows what you have to do when writing quote marks without dollar quoting. It might be useful when translating pre-dollar quoting code into something more comprehensible.

### 1 quotation mark

To begin and end the function body, for example:

```
CREATE FUNCTION foo() RETURNS integer AS '  
    ....  
' LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

Anywhere within a single-quoted function body, quote marks *must* appear in pairs.

### 2 quotation marks

For string literals inside the function body, for example:

```
a_output := 'Blah';
```

```
SELECT * FROM users WHERE f_name='foobar';
```

In the dollar-quoting approach, you'd just write:

```
a_output := 'Blah';  
SELECT * FROM users WHERE f_name='foobar';
```

which is exactly what the PL/pgSQL parser would see in either case.

#### 4 quotation marks

When you need a single quotation mark in a string constant inside the function body, for example:

```
a_output := a_output || ' AND name LIKE '''foobar''' AND  
xyz'
```

The value actually appended to `a_output` would be: `AND name LIKE 'foobar' AND xyz`.

In the dollar-quoting approach, you'd write:

```
a_output := a_output || $$ AND name LIKE 'foobar' AND xyz$$
```

being careful that any dollar-quote delimiters around this are not just `$$`.

#### 6 quotation marks

When a single quotation mark in a string inside the function body is adjacent to the end of that string constant, for example:

```
a_output := a_output || ' AND name LIKE '''foobar''''
```

The value appended to `a_output` would then be: `AND name LIKE 'foobar'`.

In the dollar-quoting approach, this becomes:

```
a_output := a_output || $$ AND name LIKE 'foobar'$$
```

#### 10 quotation marks

When you want two single quotation marks in a string constant (which accounts for 8 quotation marks) and this is adjacent to the end of that string constant (2 more). You will probably only need that if you are writing a function that generates other functions, as in Example 43.10. For example:

```
a_output := a_output || ' if v_' ||  
referrer_keys.kind || ' like ''' ||  
referrer_keys.key_string || ''' ||  
then return ''' || referrer_keys.referrer_type  
|| '''; end if;';
```

The value of `a_output` would then be:

```
if v_... like '...' then return '...'; end if;
```

In the dollar-quoting approach, this becomes:

```
a_output := a_output || $$ if v_$$ || referrer_keys.kind || $$  
like '$$  
|| referrer_keys.key_string || $$'  
then return '$$ || referrer_keys.referrer_type  
|| $$'; end if;$$;
```

where we assume we only need to put single quote marks into `a_output`, because it will be re-quoted before use.

## 43.12.2. Additional Compile-Time and Run-Time Checks

To aid the user in finding instances of simple but common problems before they cause harm, PL/pgSQL provides additional *checks*. When enabled, depending on the configuration, they can be used to emit either a `WARNING` or an `ERROR` during the compilation of a function. A function which has received a `WARNING` can be executed without producing further messages, so you are advised to test in a separate development environment.

Setting `plpgsql.extra_warnings`, or `plpgsql.extra_errors`, as appropriate, to `"all"` is encouraged in development and/or testing environments.

These additional checks are enabled through the configuration variables `plpgsql.extra_warnings` for warnings and `plpgsql.extra_errors` for errors. Both can be set either to a comma-separated list of checks, `"none"` or `"all"`. The default is `"none"`. Currently the list of available checks includes:

`shadowed_variables`

Checks if a declaration shadows a previously defined variable.

`strict_multi_assignment`

Some PL/pgSQL commands allow assigning values to more than one variable at a time, such as `SELECT INTO`. Typically, the number of target variables and the number of source variables should match, though PL/pgSQL will use `NULL` for missing values and extra variables are ignored. Enabling this check will cause PL/pgSQL to throw a `WARNING` or `ERROR` whenever the number of target variables and the number of source variables are different.

`too_many_rows`

Enabling this check will cause PL/pgSQL to check if a given query returns more than one row when an `INTO` clause is used. As an `INTO` statement will only ever use one row, having a query return multiple rows is generally either inefficient and/or nondeterministic and therefore is likely an error.

The following example shows the effect of `plpgsql.extra_warnings` set to `shadowed_variables`:

```
SET plpgsql.extra_warnings TO 'shadowed_variables';
```

```
CREATE FUNCTION foo(f1 int) RETURNS int AS $$  
DECLARE
```



```
f1 int;
BEGIN
RETURN f1;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
WARNING: variable "f1" shadows a previously defined variable
LINE 3: f1 int;
      ^
CREATE FUNCTION
```

The below example shows the effects of setting `plpgsql.extra_warnings` to `strict_multi_assignment`:

```
SET plpgsql.extra_warnings TO 'strict_multi_assignment';

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION public.foo()
  RETURNS void
  LANGUAGE plpgsql
AS $$
DECLARE
  x int;
  y int;
BEGIN
  SELECT 1 INTO x, y;
  SELECT 1, 2 INTO x, y;
  SELECT 1, 2, 3 INTO x, y;
END;
$$;

SELECT foo();
WARNING: number of source and target fields in assignment does not
match
DETAIL: strict_multi_assignment check of extra_warnings is active.
HINT: Make sure the query returns the exact list of columns.
WARNING: number of source and target fields in assignment does not
match
DETAIL: strict_multi_assignment check of extra_warnings is active.
HINT: Make sure the query returns the exact list of columns.

foo
----

(1 row)
```

## 43.13. Porting from Oracle PL/SQL

This section explains differences between PostgreSQL's PL/pgSQL language and Oracle's PL/SQL language, to help developers who port applications from Oracle® to PostgreSQL.

PL/pgSQL is similar to PL/SQL in many aspects. It is a block-structured, imperative language, and all variables have to be declared. Assignments, loops, and conditionals are similar. The main differences you should keep in mind when porting from PL/SQL to PL/pgSQL are:

- If a name used in an SQL command could be either a column name of a table used in the command or a reference to a variable of the function, PL/SQL treats it as a column name. By default, PL/pgSQL will throw an error complaining that the name is ambiguous. You can specify `plpgsql.variable_conflict = use_column` to change this behavior to match PL/SQL, as explained in

Section 43.11.1. It's often best to avoid such ambiguities in the first place, but if you have to port a large amount of code that depends on this behavior, setting `variable_conflict` may be the best solution.

- In PostgreSQL the function body must be written as a string literal. Therefore you need to use dollar quoting or escape single quotes in the function body. (See Section 43.12.1.)
- Data type names often need translation. For example, in Oracle string values are commonly declared as being of type `varchar2`, which is a non-SQL-standard type. In PostgreSQL, use type `varchar` or `text` instead. Similarly, replace type `number` with `numeric`, or use some other numeric data type if there's a more appropriate one.
- Instead of packages, use schemas to organize your functions into groups.
- Since there are no packages, there are no package-level variables either. This is somewhat annoying. You can keep per-session state in temporary tables instead.
- Integer FOR loops with REVERSE work differently: PL/SQL counts down from the second number to the first, while PL/pgSQL counts down from the first number to the second, requiring the loop bounds to be swapped when porting. This incompatibility is unfortunate but is unlikely to be changed. (See Section 43.6.5.5.)
- FOR loops over queries (other than cursors) also work differently: the target variable(s) must have been declared, whereas PL/SQL always declares them implicitly. An advantage of this is that the variable values are still accessible after the loop exits.
- There are various notational differences for the use of cursor variables.

## 43.13.1. Porting Examples

Example 43.9 shows how to port a simple function from PL/SQL to PL/pgSQL.

### Example 43.9. Porting a Simple Function from PL/SQL to PL/pgSQL

Here is an Oracle PL/SQL function:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION cs_fmt_browser_version(v_name varchar2,
                                                    v_version
                                                    varchar2)
RETURN varchar2 IS
BEGIN
    IF v_version IS NULL THEN
        RETURN v_name;
    END IF;
    RETURN v_name || '/' || v_version;
END;
/
show errors;
```

Let's go through this function and see the differences compared to PL/pgSQL:

- The type name `varchar2` has to be changed to `varchar` or `text`. In the examples in this section, we'll use `varchar`, but `text` is often a better choice if you do not need specific string length limits.
- The RETURN key word in the function prototype (not the function body) becomes RETURNS in PostgreSQL. Also, IS becomes AS, and you need to add a LANGUAGE clause because PL/pgSQL is not the only possible function language.

- In PostgreSQL, the function body is considered to be a string literal, so you need to use quote marks or dollar quotes around it. This substitutes for the terminating / in the Oracle approach.
- The `show errors` command does not exist in PostgreSQL, and is not needed since errors are reported automatically.

This is how this function would look when ported to PostgreSQL:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION cs_fmt_browser_version(v_name varchar,
                                                  v_version
                                                  varchar)
RETURNS varchar AS $$
BEGIN
    IF v_version IS NULL THEN
        RETURN v_name;
    END IF;
    RETURN v_name || '/' || v_version;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

Example 43.10 shows how to port a function that creates another function and how to handle the ensuing quoting problems.

### **Example 43.10. Porting a Function that Creates Another Function from PL/SQL to PL/pgSQL**

The following procedure grabs rows from a `SELECT` statement and builds a large function with the results in `IF` statements, for the sake of efficiency.

This is the Oracle version:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE cs_update_referrer_type_proc IS
    CURSOR referrer_keys IS
        SELECT * FROM cs_referrer_keys
        ORDER BY try_order;
    func_cmd VARCHAR(4000);
BEGIN
    func_cmd := 'CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION
cs_find_referrer_type(v_host IN VARCHAR2,
                    v_domain IN VARCHAR2, v_url IN VARCHAR2) RETURN
VARCHAR2 IS BEGIN';

    FOR referrer_key IN referrer_keys LOOP
        func_cmd := func_cmd ||
            ' IF v_' || referrer_key.kind
            || ' LIKE ''' || referrer_key.key_string
            || ''' THEN RETURN ''' || referrer_key.referrer_type
            || '''; END IF;';
    END LOOP;

    func_cmd := func_cmd || ' RETURN NULL; END;';

    EXECUTE IMMEDIATE func_cmd;
END;
/
show errors;
```

Here is how this function would end up in PostgreSQL:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE cs_update_referrer_type_proc() AS $func$
DECLARE
    referrer_keys CURSOR IS
        SELECT * FROM cs_referrer_keys
        ORDER BY try_order;
    func_body text;
    func_cmd text;
BEGIN
    func_body := 'BEGIN';

    FOR referrer_key IN referrer_keys LOOP
        func_body := func_body ||
            ' IF v_' || referrer_key.kind
            || ' LIKE ' || quote_literal(referrer_key.key_string)
            || ' THEN RETURN ' ||
quote_literal(referrer_key.referrer_type)
            || '; END IF;' ;
    END LOOP;

    func_body := func_body || ' RETURN NULL; END;';

    func_cmd :=
        'CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION cs_find_referrer_type(v_host
varchar,
                                                    v_domain
varchar,
                                                    v_url
varchar)
        RETURNS varchar AS '
        || quote_literal(func_body)
        || ' LANGUAGE plpgsql;' ;

    EXECUTE func_cmd;
END;
$func$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

Notice how the body of the function is built separately and passed through `quote_literal` to double any quote marks in it. This technique is needed because we cannot safely use dollar quoting for defining the new function: we do not know for sure what strings will be interpolated from the `referrer_key.key_string` field. (We are assuming here that `referrer_key.kind` can be trusted to always be host, domain, or url, but `referrer_key.key_string` might be anything, in particular it might contain dollar signs.) This function is actually an improvement on the Oracle original, because it will not generate broken code when `referrer_key.key_string` or `referrer_key.referrer_type` contain quote marks.

Example 43.11 shows how to port a function with OUT parameters and string manipulation. PostgreSQL does not have a built-in `instr` function, but you can create one using a combination of other functions. In Section 43.13.3 there is a PL/pgSQL implementation of `instr` that you can use to make your porting easier.

### Example 43.11. Porting a Procedure With String Manipulation and OUT Parameters from PL/SQL to PL/pgSQL

The following Oracle PL/SQL procedure is used to parse a URL and return several elements (host, path, and query).

This is the Oracle version:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE cs_parse_url(
    v_url IN VARCHAR2,
    v_host OUT VARCHAR2, -- This will be passed back
    v_path OUT VARCHAR2, -- This one too
    v_query OUT VARCHAR2) -- And this one
IS
    a_pos1 INTEGER;
    a_pos2 INTEGER;
BEGIN
    v_host := NULL;
    v_path := NULL;
    v_query := NULL;
    a_pos1 := instr(v_url, '//');

    IF a_pos1 = 0 THEN
        RETURN;
    END IF;
    a_pos2 := instr(v_url, '/', a_pos1 + 2);
    IF a_pos2 = 0 THEN
        v_host := substr(v_url, a_pos1 + 2);
        v_path := '/';
        RETURN;
    END IF;

    v_host := substr(v_url, a_pos1 + 2, a_pos2 - a_pos1 - 2);
    a_pos1 := instr(v_url, '?', a_pos2 + 1);

    IF a_pos1 = 0 THEN
        v_path := substr(v_url, a_pos2);
        RETURN;
    END IF;

    v_path := substr(v_url, a_pos2, a_pos1 - a_pos2);
    v_query := substr(v_url, a_pos1 + 1);
END;
/
show errors;
```

Here is a possible translation into PL/pgSQL:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION cs_parse_url(
    v_url IN VARCHAR,
    v_host OUT VARCHAR, -- This will be passed back
    v_path OUT VARCHAR, -- This one too
    v_query OUT VARCHAR) -- And this one
AS $$
DECLARE
    a_pos1 INTEGER;
    a_pos2 INTEGER;
BEGIN
    v_host := NULL;
    v_path := NULL;
    v_query := NULL;
    a_pos1 := instr(v_url, '//');
```

```

IF a_pos1 = 0 THEN
    RETURN;
END IF;
a_pos2 := instr(v_url, '/', a_pos1 + 2);
IF a_pos2 = 0 THEN
    v_host := substr(v_url, a_pos1 + 2);
    v_path := '/';
    RETURN;
END IF;

v_host := substr(v_url, a_pos1 + 2, a_pos2 - a_pos1 - 2);
a_pos1 := instr(v_url, '?', a_pos2 + 1);

IF a_pos1 = 0 THEN
    v_path := substr(v_url, a_pos2);
    RETURN;
END IF;

v_path := substr(v_url, a_pos2, a_pos1 - a_pos2);
v_query := substr(v_url, a_pos1 + 1);
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;

```

This function could be used like this:

```
SELECT * FROM cs_parse_url('http://foobar.com/query.cgi?baz');
```

Example 43.12 shows how to port a procedure that uses numerous features that are specific to Oracle.

### Example 43.12. Porting a Procedure from PL/SQL to PL/pgSQL

The Oracle version:

```

CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE cs_create_job(v_job_id IN INTEGER) IS
    a_running_job_count INTEGER;
BEGIN
    LOCK TABLE cs_jobs IN EXCLUSIVE MODE;

    SELECT count(*) INTO a_running_job_count FROM cs_jobs WHERE
end_stamp IS NULL;

    IF a_running_job_count > 0 THEN
        COMMIT; -- free lock
        raise_application_error(-20000,
            'Unable to create a new job: a job is currently
running.');
```

```

    END IF;

    DELETE FROM cs_active_job;
    INSERT INTO cs_active_job(job_id) VALUES (v_job_id);

    BEGIN
        INSERT INTO cs_jobs (job_id, start_stamp) VALUES (v_job_id,
now());
    EXCEPTION
        WHEN dup_val_on_index THEN NULL; -- don't worry if it
already exists

```

```

        END;
    COMMIT;
END;
/
show errors

```

This is how we could port this procedure to PL/pgSQL:

```

CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE cs_create_job(v_job_id integer) AS $$
DECLARE
    a_running_job_count integer;
BEGIN
    LOCK TABLE cs_jobs IN EXCLUSIVE MODE;

    SELECT count(*) INTO a_running_job_count FROM cs_jobs WHERE
end_stamp IS NULL;

    IF a_running_job_count > 0 THEN
        COMMIT; -- free lock
        RAISE EXCEPTION 'Unable to create a new job: a job is
currently running'; -- ❶
    END IF;

    DELETE FROM cs_active_job;
    INSERT INTO cs_active_job(job_id) VALUES (v_job_id);

    BEGIN
        INSERT INTO cs_jobs (job_id, start_stamp) VALUES (v_job_id,
now());
    EXCEPTION
        WHEN unique_violation THEN -- ❷
            -- don't worry if it already exists
    END;
    COMMIT;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;

```

- ❶ The syntax of RAISE is considerably different from Oracle's statement, although the basic case RAISE *exception\_name* works similarly.
- ❷ The exception names supported by PL/pgSQL are different from Oracle's. The set of built-in exception names is much larger (see Appendix A). There is not currently a way to declare user-defined exception names, although you can throw user-chosen SQLSTATE values instead.

## 43.13.2. Other Things to Watch For

This section explains a few other things to watch for when porting Oracle PL/SQL functions to PostgreSQL.

### 43.13.2.1. Implicit Rollback after Exceptions

In PL/pgSQL, when an exception is caught by an EXCEPTION clause, all database changes since the block's BEGIN are automatically rolled back. That is, the behavior is equivalent to what you'd get in Oracle with:

```

BEGIN
    SAVEPOINT s1;
    ... code here ...

```

```
EXCEPTION
    WHEN ... THEN
        ROLLBACK TO s1;
        ... code here ...
    WHEN ... THEN
        ROLLBACK TO s1;
        ... code here ...
END;
```

If you are translating an Oracle procedure that uses `SAVEPOINT` and `ROLLBACK TO` in this style, your task is easy: just omit the `SAVEPOINT` and `ROLLBACK TO`. If you have a procedure that uses `SAVEPOINT` and `ROLLBACK TO` in a different way then some actual thought will be required.

### 43.13.2.2. EXECUTE

The PL/pgSQL version of `EXECUTE` works similarly to the PL/SQL version, but you have to remember to use `quote_literal` and `quote_ident` as described in Section 43.5.4. Constructs of the type `EXECUTE 'SELECT * FROM $1';` will not work reliably unless you use these functions.

### 43.13.2.3. Optimizing PL/pgSQL Functions

PostgreSQL gives you two function creation modifiers to optimize execution: “volatility” (whether the function always returns the same result when given the same arguments) and “strictness” (whether the function returns null if any argument is null). Consult the `CREATE FUNCTION` reference page for details.

When making use of these optimization attributes, your `CREATE FUNCTION` statement might look something like this:

```
CREATE FUNCTION foo(...) RETURNS integer AS $$
...
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql STRICT IMMUTABLE;
```

## 43.13.3. Appendix

This section contains the code for a set of Oracle-compatible `instr` functions that you can use to simplify your porting efforts.

```
--
-- instr functions that mimic Oracle's counterpart
-- Syntax: instr(string1, string2 [, n [, m]])
-- where [] denotes optional parameters.
--
-- Search string1, beginning at the nth character, for the mth
-- occurrence
-- of string2. If n is negative, search backwards, starting at the
-- abs(n)'th
-- character from the end of string1.
-- If n is not passed, assume 1 (search starts at first character).
-- If m is not passed, assume 1 (find first occurrence).
-- Returns starting index of string2 in string1, or 0 if string2 is
-- not found.
--

CREATE FUNCTION instr(vchar, varchar) RETURNS integer AS $$
BEGIN
    RETURN instr($1, $2, 1);
```



```
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql STRICT IMMUTABLE;

CREATE FUNCTION instr(string varchar, string_to_search_for varchar,
                      beg_index integer)
RETURNS integer AS $$
DECLARE
    pos integer NOT NULL DEFAULT 0;
    temp_str varchar;
    beg integer;
    length integer;
    ss_length integer;
BEGIN
    IF beg_index > 0 THEN
        temp_str := substring(string FROM beg_index);
        pos := position(string_to_search_for IN temp_str);

        IF pos = 0 THEN
            RETURN 0;
        ELSE
            RETURN pos + beg_index - 1;
        END IF;
    ELSIF beg_index < 0 THEN
        ss_length := char_length(string_to_search_for);
        length := char_length(string);
        beg := length + 1 + beg_index;

        WHILE beg > 0 LOOP
            temp_str := substring(string FROM beg FOR ss_length);
            IF string_to_search_for = temp_str THEN
                RETURN beg;
            END IF;

            beg := beg - 1;
        END LOOP;

        RETURN 0;
    ELSE
        RETURN 0;
    END IF;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql STRICT IMMUTABLE;

CREATE FUNCTION instr(string varchar, string_to_search_for varchar,
                      beg_index integer, occur_index integer)
RETURNS integer AS $$
DECLARE
    pos integer NOT NULL DEFAULT 0;
    occur_number integer NOT NULL DEFAULT 0;
    temp_str varchar;
    beg integer;
    i integer;
    length integer;
    ss_length integer;
BEGIN
    IF occur_index <= 0 THEN
```

```
        RAISE 'argument '%' is out of range', occur_index
        USING ERRCODE = '22003';
    END IF;

    IF beg_index > 0 THEN
        beg := beg_index - 1;
        FOR i IN 1..occur_index LOOP
            temp_str := substring(string FROM beg + 1);
            pos := position(string_to_search_for IN temp_str);
            IF pos = 0 THEN
                RETURN 0;
            END IF;
            beg := beg + pos;
        END LOOP;

        RETURN beg;
    ELSIF beg_index < 0 THEN
        ss_length := char_length(string_to_search_for);
        length := char_length(string);
        beg := length + 1 + beg_index;

        WHILE beg > 0 LOOP
            temp_str := substring(string FROM beg FOR ss_length);
            IF string_to_search_for = temp_str THEN
                occur_number := occur_number + 1;
                IF occur_number = occur_index THEN
                    RETURN beg;
                END IF;
            END IF;

            beg := beg - 1;
        END LOOP;

        RETURN 0;
    ELSE
        RETURN 0;
    END IF;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql STRICT IMMUTABLE;
```

---

# Chapter 44. PL/Tcl — Tcl Procedural Language

PL/Tcl is a loadable procedural language for the PostgreSQL database system that enables the Tcl language<sup>1</sup> to be used to write PostgreSQL functions and procedures.

## 44.1. Overview

PL/Tcl offers most of the capabilities a function writer has in the C language, with a few restrictions, and with the addition of the powerful string processing libraries that are available for Tcl.

One compelling *good* restriction is that everything is executed from within the safety of the context of a Tcl interpreter. In addition to the limited command set of safe Tcl, only a few commands are available to access the database via SPI and to raise messages via `elog()`. PL/Tcl provides no way to access internals of the database server or to gain OS-level access under the permissions of the PostgreSQL server process, as a C function can do. Thus, unprivileged database users can be trusted to use this language; it does not give them unlimited authority.

The other notable implementation restriction is that Tcl functions cannot be used to create input/output functions for new data types.

Sometimes it is desirable to write Tcl functions that are not restricted to safe Tcl. For example, one might want a Tcl function that sends email. To handle these cases, there is a variant of PL/Tcl called `PL/TclU` (for untrusted Tcl). This is exactly the same language except that a full Tcl interpreter is used. *If PL/TclU is used, it must be installed as an untrusted procedural language* so that only database superusers can create functions in it. The writer of a PL/TclU function must take care that the function cannot be used to do anything unwanted, since it will be able to do anything that could be done by a user logged in as the database administrator.

The shared object code for the PL/Tcl and PL/TclU call handlers is automatically built and installed in the PostgreSQL library directory if Tcl support is specified in the configuration step of the installation procedure. To install PL/Tcl and/or PL/TclU in a particular database, use the `CREATE EXTENSION` command, for example `CREATE EXTENSION pltcl` or `CREATE EXTENSION pltclu`.

## 44.2. PL/Tcl Functions and Arguments

To create a function in the PL/Tcl language, use the standard `CREATE FUNCTION` syntax:

```
CREATE FUNCTION funcname (argument-types) RETURNS return-type AS $$
    # PL/Tcl function body
$$ LANGUAGE pltcl;
```

PL/TclU is the same, except that the language has to be specified as `pltclu`.

The body of the function is simply a piece of Tcl script. When the function is called, the argument values are passed to the Tcl script as variables named `1 ... n`. The result is returned from the Tcl code in the usual way, with a `return` statement. In a procedure, the return value from the Tcl code is ignored.

For example, a function returning the greater of two integer values could be defined as:

```
CREATE FUNCTION tcl_max(integer, integer) RETURNS integer AS $$
    if {$1 > $2} {return $1}
```

---

<sup>1</sup> <https://www.tcl.tk/>

```
    return $2
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql STRICT;
```

Note the clause `STRICT`, which saves us from having to think about null input values: if a null value is passed, the function will not be called at all, but will just return a null result automatically.

In a nonstrict function, if the actual value of an argument is null, the corresponding `$n` variable will be set to an empty string. To detect whether a particular argument is null, use the function `argisnull`. For example, suppose that we wanted `tcl_max` with one null and one nonnull argument to return the nonnull argument, rather than null:

```
CREATE FUNCTION tcl_max(integer, integer) RETURNS integer AS $$
    if {[argisnull 1]} {
        if {[argisnull 2]} { return_null }
        return $2
    }
    if {[argisnull 2]} { return $1 }
    if {$1 > $2} {return $1}
    return $2
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

As shown above, to return a null value from a PL/Tcl function, execute `return_null`. This can be done whether the function is strict or not.

Composite-type arguments are passed to the function as Tcl arrays. The element names of the array are the attribute names of the composite type. If an attribute in the passed row has the null value, it will not appear in the array. Here is an example:

```
CREATE TABLE employee (
    name text,
    salary integer,
    age integer
);

CREATE FUNCTION overpaid(employee) RETURNS boolean AS $$
    if {200000.0 < $1(salary)} {
        return "t"
    }
    if {$1(age) < 30 && 100000.0 < $1(salary)} {
        return "t"
    }
    return "f"
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

PL/Tcl functions can return composite-type results, too. To do this, the Tcl code must return a list of column name/value pairs matching the expected result type. Any column names omitted from the list are returned as nulls, and an error is raised if there are unexpected column names. Here is an example:

```
CREATE FUNCTION square_cube(in int, out squared int, out cubed int)
AS $$
    return [list squared [expr {$1 * $1}] cubed [expr {$1 * $1 *
$1}]]
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

Output arguments of procedures are returned in the same way, for example:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE tcl_triple(INOUT a integer, INOUT b integer) AS $$
    return [list a [expr {$1 * 3}] b [expr {$2 * 3}]]
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;

CALL tcl_triple(5, 10);
```

### Tip

The result list can be made from an array representation of the desired tuple with the `array_get` Tcl command. For example:

```
CREATE FUNCTION raise_pay(employee, delta int) RETURNS
    employee AS $$
    set l(salary) [expr {$1(salary) + $2}]
    return [array_get l]
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

PL/Tcl functions can return sets. To do this, the Tcl code should call `return_next` once per row to be returned, passing either the appropriate value when returning a scalar type, or a list of column name/value pairs when returning a composite type. Here is an example returning a scalar type:

```
CREATE FUNCTION sequence(int, int) RETURNS SETOF int AS $$
    for {set i $1} {$i < $2} {incr i} {
        return_next $i
    }
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

and here is one returning a composite type:

```
CREATE FUNCTION table_of_squares(int, int) RETURNS TABLE (x int, x2
    int) AS $$
    for {set i $1} {$i < $2} {incr i} {
        return_next [list x $i x2 [expr {$i * $i}]]
    }
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

## 44.3. Data Values in PL/Tcl

The argument values supplied to a PL/Tcl function's code are simply the input arguments converted to text form (just as if they had been displayed by a `SELECT` statement). Conversely, the `return` and `return_next` commands will accept any string that is acceptable input format for the function's declared result type, or for the specified column of a composite result type.

## 44.4. Global Data in PL/Tcl

Sometimes it is useful to have some global data that is held between two calls to a function or is shared between different functions. This is easily done in PL/Tcl, but there are some restrictions that must be understood.

For security reasons, PL/Tcl executes functions called by any one SQL role in a separate Tcl interpreter for that role. This prevents accidental or malicious interference by one user with the behavior of another user's PL/Tcl functions. Each such interpreter will have its own values for any “global” Tcl variables. Thus, two PL/Tcl functions will share the same global variables if and only if they are executed by

the same SQL role. In an application wherein a single session executes code under multiple SQL roles (via `SECURITY DEFINER` functions, use of `SET ROLE`, etc.) you may need to take explicit steps to ensure that PL/Tcl functions can share data. To do that, make sure that functions that should communicate are owned by the same user, and mark them `SECURITY DEFINER`. You must of course take care that such functions can't be used to do anything unintended.

All PL/TclU functions used in a session execute in the same Tcl interpreter, which of course is distinct from the interpreter(s) used for PL/Tcl functions. So global data is automatically shared between PL/TclU functions. This is not considered a security risk because all PL/TclU functions execute at the same trust level, namely that of a database superuser.

To help protect PL/Tcl functions from unintentionally interfering with each other, a global array is made available to each function via the `upvar` command. The global name of this variable is the function's internal name, and the local name is `GD`. It is recommended that `GD` be used for persistent private data of a function. Use regular Tcl global variables only for values that you specifically intend to be shared among multiple functions. (Note that the `GD` arrays are only global within a particular interpreter, so they do not bypass the security restrictions mentioned above.)

An example of using `GD` appears in the `spi_execp` example below.

## 44.5. Database Access from PL/Tcl

In this section, we follow the usual Tcl convention of using question marks, rather than brackets, to indicate an optional element in a syntax synopsis. The following commands are available to access the database from the body of a PL/Tcl function:

```
spi_exec ?-count n? ?-array name? command ?loop-body?
```

Executes an SQL command given as a string. An error in the command causes an error to be raised. Otherwise, the return value of `spi_exec` is the number of rows processed (selected, inserted, updated, or deleted) by the command, or zero if the command is a utility statement. In addition, if the command is a `SELECT` statement, the values of the selected columns are placed in Tcl variables as described below.

The optional `-count` value tells `spi_exec` to stop once *n* rows have been retrieved, much as if the query included a `LIMIT` clause. If *n* is zero, the query is run to completion, the same as when `-count` is omitted.

If the command is a `SELECT` statement, the values of the result columns are placed into Tcl variables named after the columns. If the `-array` option is given, the column values are instead stored into elements of the named associative array, with the column names used as array indexes. In addition, the current row number within the result (counting from zero) is stored into the array element named `". tupno"`, unless that name is in use as a column name in the result.

If the command is a `SELECT` statement and no *loop-body* script is given, then only the first row of results are stored into Tcl variables or array elements; remaining rows, if any, are ignored. No storing occurs if the query returns no rows. (This case can be detected by checking the result of `spi_exec`.) For example:

```
spi_exec "SELECT count(*) AS cnt FROM pg_proc"
```

will set the Tcl variable `$cnt` to the number of rows in the `pg_proc` system catalog.

If the optional *loop-body* argument is given, it is a piece of Tcl script that is executed once for each row in the query result. (*loop-body* is ignored if the given command is not a `SELECT`.) The values of the current row's columns are stored into Tcl variables or array elements before each iteration. For example:

```
spi_exec -array C "SELECT * FROM pg_class" {
    elog DEBUG "have table $C(relname)"
}
```

will print a log message for every row of `pg_class`. This feature works similarly to other Tcl looping constructs; in particular `continue` and `break` work in the usual way inside the loop body.

If a column of a query result is null, the target variable for it is “unset” rather than being set.

#### *spi\_prepare query typelist*

Prepares and saves a query plan for later execution. The saved plan will be retained for the life of the current session.

The query can use parameters, that is, placeholders for values to be supplied whenever the plan is actually executed. In the query string, refer to parameters by the symbols `$1 ... $n`. If the query uses parameters, the names of the parameter types must be given as a Tcl list. (Write an empty list for *typelist* if no parameters are used.)

The return value from `spi_prepare` is a query ID to be used in subsequent calls to `spi_execp`. See `spi_execp` for an example.

`spi_execp ?-count n? ?-array name? ?-nulls string? queryid ?value-list? ?loop-body?`

Executes a query previously prepared with `spi_prepare`. *queryid* is the ID returned by `spi_prepare`. If the query references parameters, a *value-list* must be supplied. This is a Tcl list of actual values for the parameters. The list must be the same length as the parameter type list previously given to `spi_prepare`. Omit *value-list* if the query has no parameters.

The optional value for `-nulls` is a string of spaces and 'n' characters telling `spi_execp` which of the parameters are null values. If given, it must have exactly the same length as the *value-list*. If it is not given, all the parameter values are nonnull.

Except for the way in which the query and its parameters are specified, `spi_execp` works just like `spi_exec`. The `-count`, `-array`, and *loop-body* options are the same, and so is the result value.

Here's an example of a PL/Tcl function using a prepared plan:

```
CREATE FUNCTION tl_count(integer, integer) RETURNS integer AS $$
    if {[ info exists GD(plan) ]} {
        # prepare the saved plan on the first call
        set GD(plan) [ spi_prepare \
            "SELECT count(*) AS cnt FROM tl WHERE num >= \ $1
            AND num <= \ $2" \
            [ list int4 int4 ] ]
    }
    spi_execp -count 1 $GD(plan) [ list $1 $2 ]
    return $cnt
$$ LANGUAGE pltcl;
```

We need backslashes inside the query string given to `spi_prepare` to ensure that the `$n` markers will be passed through to `spi_prepare` as-is, and not replaced by Tcl variable substitution.

#### *subtransaction command*

The Tcl script contained in *command* is executed within an SQL subtransaction. If the script returns an error, that entire subtransaction is rolled back before returning the error out to the surrounding Tcl code. See Section 44.9 for more details and an example.

`quote string`

Doubles all occurrences of single quote and backslash characters in the given string. This can be used to safely quote strings that are to be inserted into SQL commands given to `spi_exec` or `spi_prepare`. For example, think about an SQL command string like:

```
"SELECT '$val' AS ret"
```

where the Tcl variable `val` actually contains `doesn't`. This would result in the final command string:

```
SELECT 'doesn't' AS ret
```

which would cause a parse error during `spi_exec` or `spi_prepare`. To work properly, the submitted command should contain:

```
SELECT 'doesn''t' AS ret
```

which can be formed in PL/Tcl using:

```
"SELECT '[ quote $val ]' AS ret"
```

One advantage of `spi_execp` is that you don't have to quote parameter values like this, since the parameters are never parsed as part of an SQL command string.

`elog level msg`

Emits a log or error message. Possible levels are `DEBUG`, `LOG`, `INFO`, `NOTICE`, `WARNING`, `ERROR`, and `FATAL`. `ERROR` raises an error condition; if this is not trapped by the surrounding Tcl code, the error propagates out to the calling query, causing the current transaction or subtransaction to be aborted. This is effectively the same as the Tcl `error` command. `FATAL` aborts the transaction and causes the current session to shut down. (There is probably no good reason to use this error level in PL/Tcl functions, but it's provided for completeness.) The other levels only generate messages of different priority levels. Whether messages of a particular priority are reported to the client, written to the server log, or both is controlled by the `log_min_messages` and `client_min_messages` configuration variables. See Chapter 20 and Section 44.8 for more information.

## 44.6. Trigger Functions in PL/Tcl

Trigger functions can be written in PL/Tcl. PostgreSQL requires that a function that is to be called as a trigger must be declared as a function with no arguments and a return type of `trigger`.

The information from the trigger manager is passed to the function body in the following variables:

`$TG_name`

The name of the trigger from the `CREATE TRIGGER` statement.

`$TG_relid`

The object ID of the table that caused the trigger function to be invoked.

`$TG_table_name`

The name of the table that caused the trigger function to be invoked.



`$TG_table_schema`

The schema of the table that caused the trigger function to be invoked.

`$TG_relatts`

A Tcl list of the table column names, prefixed with an empty list element. So looking up a column name in the list with Tcl's `lsearch` command returns the element's number starting with 1 for the first column, the same way the columns are customarily numbered in PostgreSQL. (Empty list elements also appear in the positions of columns that have been dropped, so that the attribute numbering is correct for columns to their right.)

`$TG_when`

The string `BEFORE`, `AFTER`, or `INSTEAD OF`, depending on the type of trigger event.

`$TG_level`

The string `ROW` or `STATEMENT` depending on the type of trigger event.

`$TG_op`

The string `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, or `TRUNCATE` depending on the type of trigger event.

`$NEW`

An associative array containing the values of the new table row for `INSERT` or `UPDATE` actions, or empty for `DELETE`. The array is indexed by column name. Columns that are null will not appear in the array. This is not set for statement-level triggers.

`$OLD`

An associative array containing the values of the old table row for `UPDATE` or `DELETE` actions, or empty for `INSERT`. The array is indexed by column name. Columns that are null will not appear in the array. This is not set for statement-level triggers.

`$args`

A Tcl list of the arguments to the function as given in the `CREATE TRIGGER` statement. These arguments are also accessible as `$1 ... $n` in the function body.

The return value from a trigger function can be one of the strings `OK` or `SKIP`, or a list of column name/value pairs. If the return value is `OK`, the operation (`INSERT/UPDATE/DELETE`) that fired the trigger will proceed normally. `SKIP` tells the trigger manager to silently suppress the operation for this row. If a list is returned, it tells PL/Tcl to return a modified row to the trigger manager; the contents of the modified row are specified by the column names and values in the list. Any columns not mentioned in the list are set to null. Returning a modified row is only meaningful for row-level `BEFORE INSERT` or `UPDATE` triggers, for which the modified row will be inserted instead of the one given in `$NEW`; or for row-level `INSTEAD OF INSERT` or `UPDATE` triggers where the returned row is used as the source data for `INSERT RETURNING` or `UPDATE RETURNING` clauses. In row-level `BEFORE DELETE` or `INSTEAD OF DELETE` triggers, returning a modified row has the same effect as returning `OK`, that is the operation proceeds. The trigger return value is ignored for all other types of triggers.

### Tip

The result list can be made from an array representation of the modified tuple with the `array get` Tcl command.

Here's a little example trigger function that forces an integer value in a table to keep track of the number of updates that are performed on the row. For new rows inserted, the value is initialized to 0 and then incremented on every update operation.

```
CREATE FUNCTION trigfunc_modcount() RETURNS trigger AS $$
    switch $TG_op {
        INSERT {
            set NEW($1) 0
        }
        UPDATE {
            set NEW($1) $OLD($1)
            incr NEW($1)
        }
        default {
            return OK
        }
    }
    return [array get NEW]
$$ LANGUAGE pltcl;

CREATE TABLE mytab (num integer, description text, modcnt integer);

CREATE TRIGGER trig_mytab_modcount BEFORE INSERT OR UPDATE ON mytab
    FOR EACH ROW EXECUTE FUNCTION trigfunc_modcount('modcnt');
```

Notice that the trigger function itself does not know the column name; that's supplied from the trigger arguments. This lets the trigger function be reused with different tables.

## 44.7. Event Trigger Functions in PL/Tcl

Event trigger functions can be written in PL/Tcl. PostgreSQL requires that a function that is to be called as an event trigger must be declared as a function with no arguments and a return type of `event_trigger`.

The information from the trigger manager is passed to the function body in the following variables:

`$TG_event`

The name of the event the trigger is fired for.

`$TG_tag`

The command tag for which the trigger is fired.

The return value of the trigger function is ignored.

Here's a little example event trigger function that simply raises a `NOTICE` message each time a supported command is executed:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION tclsnitch() RETURNS event_trigger AS $$
    elog NOTICE "tclsnitch: $TG_event $TG_tag"
$$ LANGUAGE pltcl;

CREATE EVENT TRIGGER tcl_a_snitch ON ddl_command_start EXECUTE
    FUNCTION tclsnitch();
```

## 44.8. Error Handling in PL/Tcl

Tcl code within or called from a PL/Tcl function can raise an error, either by executing some invalid operation or by generating an error using the Tcl `error` command or PL/Tcl's `elog` command. Such errors can be caught within Tcl using the Tcl `catch` command. If an error is not caught but is allowed to propagate out to the top level of execution of the PL/Tcl function, it is reported as an SQL error in the function's calling query.

Conversely, SQL errors that occur within PL/Tcl's `spi_exec`, `spi_prepare`, and `spi_execp` commands are reported as Tcl errors, so they are catchable by Tcl's `catch` command. (Each of these PL/Tcl commands runs its SQL operation in a subtransaction, which is rolled back on error, so that any partially-completed operation is automatically cleaned up.) Again, if an error propagates out to the top level without being caught, it turns back into an SQL error.

Tcl provides an `errorCode` variable that can represent additional information about an error in a form that is easy for Tcl programs to interpret. The contents are in Tcl list format, and the first word identifies the subsystem or library reporting the error; beyond that the contents are left to the individual subsystem or library. For database errors reported by PL/Tcl commands, the first word is `PGRES`, the second word is the PostgreSQL version number, and additional words are field name/value pairs providing detailed information about the error. Fields `SQLSTATE`, `condition`, and `message` are always supplied (the first two represent the error code and condition name as shown in Appendix A). Fields that may be present include `detail`, `hint`, `context`, `schema`, `table`, `column`, `datatype`, `constraint`, `statement`, `cursor_position`, `filename`, `lineno`, and `funcname`.

A convenient way to work with PL/Tcl's `errorCode` information is to load it into an array, so that the field names become array subscripts. Code for doing that might look like

```
if {[catch { spi_exec $sql_command }]} {
    if {[lindex $::errorCode 0] == "PGRES"} {
        array set errorArray $::errorCode
        if {$errorArray(condition) == "undefined_table"} {
            # deal with missing table
        } else {
            # deal with some other type of SQL error
        }
    }
}
```

(The double colons explicitly specify that `errorCode` is a global variable.)

## 44.9. Explicit Subtransactions in PL/Tcl

Recovering from errors caused by database access as described in Section 44.8 can lead to an undesirable situation where some operations succeed before one of them fails, and after recovering from that error the data is left in an inconsistent state. PL/Tcl offers a solution to this problem in the form of explicit subtransactions.

Consider a function that implements a transfer between two accounts:

```
CREATE FUNCTION transfer_funds() RETURNS void AS $$
    if [catch {
        spi_exec "UPDATE accounts SET balance = balance - 100 WHERE
account_name = 'joe'"
        spi_exec "UPDATE accounts SET balance = balance + 100 WHERE
account_name = 'mary'"
    } errmsgs] {
        set result [format "error transferring funds: %s"
$errmsgs]
```

```
    } else {
        set result "funds transferred successfully"
    }
    spi_exec "INSERT INTO operations (result) VALUES ('[quote
$result]')"
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

If the second UPDATE statement results in an exception being raised, this function will log the failure, but the result of the first UPDATE will nevertheless be committed. In other words, the funds will be withdrawn from Joe's account, but will not be transferred to Mary's account. This happens because each `spi_exec` is a separate subtransaction, and only one of those subtransactions got rolled back.

To handle such cases, you can wrap multiple database operations in an explicit subtransaction, which will succeed or roll back as a whole. PL/Tcl provides a `subtransaction` command to manage this. We can rewrite our function as:

```
CREATE FUNCTION transfer_funds2() RETURNS void AS $$
    if [catch {
        subtransaction {
            spi_exec "UPDATE accounts SET balance = balance - 100
WHERE account_name = 'joe'"
            spi_exec "UPDATE accounts SET balance = balance + 100
WHERE account_name = 'mary'"
        }
    } errmsg] {
        set result [format "error transferring funds: %s"
$errmsg]
    } else {
        set result "funds transferred successfully"
    }
    spi_exec "INSERT INTO operations (result) VALUES ('[quote
$result]')"
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

Note that use of `catch` is still required for this purpose. Otherwise the error would propagate to the top level of the function, preventing the desired insertion into the `operations` table. The `subtransaction` command does not trap errors, it only assures that all database operations executed inside its scope will be rolled back together when an error is reported.

A rollback of an explicit subtransaction occurs on any error reported by the contained Tcl code, not only errors originating from database access. Thus a regular Tcl exception raised inside a `subtransaction` command will also cause the subtransaction to be rolled back. However, non-error exits out of the contained Tcl code (for instance, due to `return`) do not cause a rollback.

## 44.10. Transaction Management

In a procedure called from the top level or an anonymous code block (`DO` command) called from the top level it is possible to control transactions. To commit the current transaction, call the `commit` command. To roll back the current transaction, call the `rollback` command. (Note that it is not possible to run the SQL commands `COMMIT` or `ROLLBACK` via `spi_exec` or similar. It has to be done using these functions.) After a transaction is ended, a new transaction is automatically started, so there is no separate command for that.

Here is an example:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE transaction_test1()
LANGUAGE plpgsql
```

```
AS $$
for {set i 0} {$i < 10} {incr i} {
    spi_exec "INSERT INTO test1 (a) VALUES ($i)"
    if {$i % 2 == 0} {
        commit
    } else {
        rollback
    }
}
$$;

CALL transaction_test1();
```

Transactions cannot be ended when an explicit subtransaction is active.

## 44.11. PL/Tcl Configuration

This section lists configuration parameters that affect PL/Tcl.

`pltcl.start_proc(string)`

This parameter, if set to a nonempty string, specifies the name (possibly schema-qualified) of a parameterless PL/Tcl function that is to be executed whenever a new Tcl interpreter is created for PL/Tcl. Such a function can perform per-session initialization, such as loading additional Tcl code. A new Tcl interpreter is created when a PL/Tcl function is first executed in a database session, or when an additional interpreter has to be created because a PL/Tcl function is called by a new SQL role.

The referenced function must be written in the `pltcl` language, and must not be marked `SECURITY DEFINER`. (These restrictions ensure that it runs in the interpreter it's supposed to initialize.) The current user must have permission to call it, too.

If the function fails with an error it will abort the function call that caused the new interpreter to be created and propagate out to the calling query, causing the current transaction or subtransaction to be aborted. Any actions already done within Tcl won't be undone; however, that interpreter won't be used again. If the language is used again the initialization will be attempted again within a fresh Tcl interpreter.

Only superusers can change this setting. Although this setting can be changed within a session, such changes will not affect Tcl interpreters that have already been created.

`pltclu.start_proc(string)`

This parameter is exactly like `pltcl.start_proc`, except that it applies to PL/TclU. The referenced function must be written in the `pltclu` language.

## 44.12. Tcl Procedure Names

In PostgreSQL, the same function name can be used for different function definitions as long as the number of arguments or their types differ. Tcl, however, requires all procedure names to be distinct. PL/Tcl deals with this by making the internal Tcl procedure names contain the object ID of the function from the system table `pg_proc` as part of their name. Thus, PostgreSQL functions with the same name and different argument types will be different Tcl procedures, too. This is not normally a concern for a PL/Tcl programmer, but it might be visible when debugging.

---

# Chapter 45. PL/Perl — Perl Procedural Language

PL/Perl is a loadable procedural language that enables you to write PostgreSQL functions and procedures in the Perl programming language<sup>1</sup>.

The main advantage to using PL/Perl is that this allows use, within stored functions and procedures, of the manyfold “string munging” operators and functions available for Perl. Parsing complex strings might be easier using Perl than it is with the string functions and control structures provided in PL/pgSQL.

To install PL/Perl in a particular database, use `CREATE EXTENSION plperl`.

## Tip

If a language is installed into `template1`, all subsequently created databases will have the language installed automatically.

## Note

Users of source packages must specially enable the build of PL/Perl during the installation process. (Refer to Chapter 17 for more information.) Users of binary packages might find PL/Perl in a separate subpackage.

## 45.1. PL/Perl Functions and Arguments

To create a function in the PL/Perl language, use the standard `CREATE FUNCTION` syntax:

```
CREATE FUNCTION funcname (argument-types)
RETURNS return-type
-- function attributes can go here
AS $$
    # PL/Perl function body goes here
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;
```

The body of the function is ordinary Perl code. In fact, the PL/Perl glue code wraps it inside a Perl subroutine. A PL/Perl function is called in a scalar context, so it can't return a list. You can return non-scalar values (arrays, records, and sets) by returning a reference, as discussed below.

In a PL/Perl procedure, any return value from the Perl code is ignored.

PL/Perl also supports anonymous code blocks called with the `DO` statement:

```
DO $$
    # PL/Perl code
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;
```

---

<sup>1</sup> <https://www.perl.org>

An anonymous code block receives no arguments, and whatever value it might return is discarded. Otherwise it behaves just like a function.

### Note

The use of named nested subroutines is dangerous in Perl, especially if they refer to lexical variables in the enclosing scope. Because a PL/Perl function is wrapped in a subroutine, any named subroutine you place inside one will be nested. In general, it is far safer to create anonymous subroutines which you call via a coderef. For more information, see the entries for `Variable "%s" will not stay shared` and `Variable "%s" is not available` in the `perldiag` man page, or search the Internet for “perl nested named subroutine”.

The syntax of the `CREATE FUNCTION` command requires the function body to be written as a string constant. It is usually most convenient to use dollar quoting (see Section 4.1.2.4) for the string constant. If you choose to use escape string syntax `E' '`, you must double any single quote marks (`'`) and backslashes (`\`) used in the body of the function (see Section 4.1.2.1).

Arguments and results are handled as in any other Perl subroutine: arguments are passed in `@_`, and a result value is returned with `return` or as the last expression evaluated in the function.

For example, a function returning the greater of two integer values could be defined as:

```
CREATE FUNCTION perl_max (integer, integer) RETURNS integer AS $$
    if ($_[0] > $_[1]) { return $_[0]; }
    return $_[1];
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;
```

### Note

Arguments will be converted from the database's encoding to UTF-8 for use inside PL/Perl, and then converted from UTF-8 back to the database encoding upon return.

If an SQL null value is passed to a function, the argument value will appear as “undefined” in Perl. The above function definition will not behave very nicely with null inputs (in fact, it will act as though they are zeroes). We could add `STRICT` to the function definition to make PostgreSQL do something more reasonable: if a null value is passed, the function will not be called at all, but will just return a null result automatically. Alternatively, we could check for undefined inputs in the function body. For example, suppose that we wanted `perl_max` with one null and one nonnull argument to return the nonnull argument, rather than a null value:

```
CREATE FUNCTION perl_max (integer, integer) RETURNS integer AS $$
    my ($x, $y) = @_;
    if (not defined $x) {
        return undef if not defined $y;
        return $y;
    }
    return $x if not defined $y;
    return $x if $x > $y;
    return $y;
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;
```

As shown above, to return an SQL null value from a PL/Perl function, return an undefined value. This can be done whether the function is strict or not.

Anything in a function argument that is not a reference is a string, which is in the standard PostgreSQL external text representation for the relevant data type. In the case of ordinary numeric or text types, Perl will just do the right thing and the programmer will normally not have to worry about it. However, in other cases the argument will need to be converted into a form that is more usable in Perl. For example, the `decode_bytea` function can be used to convert an argument of type `bytea` into unescaped binary.

Similarly, values passed back to PostgreSQL must be in the external text representation format. For example, the `encode_bytea` function can be used to escape binary data for a return value of type `bytea`.

One case that is particularly important is boolean values. As just stated, the default behavior for `bool` values is that they are passed to Perl as text, thus either `'t'` or `'f'`. This is problematic, since Perl will not treat `'f'` as false! It is possible to improve matters by using a “transform” (see `CREATE TRANSFORM`). Suitable transforms are provided by the `bool_plperl` extension. To use it, install the extension:

```
CREATE EXTENSION bool_plperl; -- or bool_plperl_u for PL/PerlU
```

Then use the `TRANSFORM` function attribute for a PL/Perl function that takes or returns `bool`, for example:

```
CREATE FUNCTION perl_and(bool, bool) RETURNS bool
TRANSFORM FOR TYPE bool
AS $$
    my ($a, $b) = @_ ;
    return $a && $b ;
$$ LANGUAGE plperl ;
```

When this transform is applied, `bool` arguments will be seen by Perl as being 1 or empty, thus properly true or false. If the function result is type `bool`, it will be true or false according to whether Perl would evaluate the returned value as true. Similar transformations are also performed for boolean query arguments and results of SPI queries performed inside the function (Section 45.3.1).

Perl can return PostgreSQL arrays as references to Perl arrays. Here is an example:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE function returns_array()
RETURNS text[][] AS $$
    return [['a"b','c,d'],['e\\f','g']] ;
$$ LANGUAGE plperl ;

select returns_array() ;
```

Perl passes PostgreSQL arrays as a blessed `PostgreSQL::InServer::ARRAY` object. This object may be treated as an array reference or a string, allowing for backward compatibility with Perl code written for PostgreSQL versions below 9.1 to run. For example:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION concat_array_elements(text[]) RETURNS
TEXT AS $$
    my $arg = shift ;
    my $result = "" ;
    return undef if (!defined $arg) ;

    # as an array reference
    for (@$arg) {
        $result .= $_ ;
    }
$$
```



```
    }

    # also works as a string
    $result .= $arg;

    return $result;
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;

SELECT concat_array_elements(ARRAY['PL','/','Perl']);
```

### Note

Multidimensional arrays are represented as references to lower-dimensional arrays of references in a way common to every Perl programmer.

Composite-type arguments are passed to the function as references to hashes. The keys of the hash are the attribute names of the composite type. Here is an example:

```
CREATE TABLE employee (
    name text,
    basesalary integer,
    bonus integer
);

CREATE FUNCTION empcomp(employee) RETURNS integer AS $$
    my ($emp) = @_;
    return $emp->{basesalary} + $emp->{bonus};
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;

SELECT name, empcomp(employee.*) FROM employee;
```

A PL/Perl function can return a composite-type result using the same approach: return a reference to a hash that has the required attributes. For example:

```
CREATE TYPE testrowperl AS (f1 integer, f2 text, f3 text);

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION perl_row() RETURNS testrowperl AS $$
    return {f2 => 'hello', f1 => 1, f3 => 'world'};
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;

SELECT * FROM perl_row();
```

Any columns in the declared result data type that are not present in the hash will be returned as null values.

Similarly, output arguments of procedures can be returned as a hash reference:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE perl_triple(INOUT a integer, INOUT b integer) AS $
$
    my ($a, $b) = @_;
    return {a => $a * 3, b => $b * 3};
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;

CALL perl_triple(5, 10);
```

PL/Perl functions can also return sets of either scalar or composite types. Usually you'll want to return rows one at a time, both to speed up startup time and to keep from queuing up the entire result set in memory. You can do this with `return_next` as illustrated below. Note that after the last `return_next`, you must put either `return` or (better) `return undef`.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION perl_set_int(int)
RETURNS SETOF INTEGER AS $$
    foreach (0..$_[0]) {
        return_next($_);
    }
    return undef;
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;

SELECT * FROM perl_set_int(5);

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION perl_set()
RETURNS SETOF testrowperl AS $$
    return_next({ f1 => 1, f2 => 'Hello', f3 => 'World' });
    return_next({ f1 => 2, f2 => 'Hello', f3 => 'PostgreSQL' });
    return_next({ f1 => 3, f2 => 'Hello', f3 => 'PL/Perl' });
    return undef;
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;
```

For small result sets, you can return a reference to an array that contains either scalars, references to arrays, or references to hashes for simple types, array types, and composite types, respectively. Here are some simple examples of returning the entire result set as an array reference:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION perl_set_int(int) RETURNS SETOF INTEGER
AS $$
    return [0..$_[0]];
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;

SELECT * FROM perl_set_int(5);

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION perl_set() RETURNS SETOF testrowperl AS
$$
    return [
        { f1 => 1, f2 => 'Hello', f3 => 'World' },
        { f1 => 2, f2 => 'Hello', f3 => 'PostgreSQL' },
        { f1 => 3, f2 => 'Hello', f3 => 'PL/Perl' }
    ];
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;

SELECT * FROM perl_set();
```

If you wish to use the `strict` pragma with your code you have a few options. For temporary global use you can `SET plperl.use_strict to true`. This will affect subsequent compilations of PL/Perl functions, but not functions already compiled in the current session. For permanent global use you can set `plperl.use_strict to true` in the `postgresql.conf` file.

For permanent use in specific functions you can simply put:

```
use strict;
```

at the top of the function body.

The `feature` pragma is also available to use if your Perl is version 5.10.0 or higher.

## 45.2. Data Values in PL/Perl

The argument values supplied to a PL/Perl function's code are simply the input arguments converted to text form (just as if they had been displayed by a `SELECT` statement). Conversely, the `return` and `return_next` commands will accept any string that is acceptable input format for the function's declared return type.

If this behavior is inconvenient for a particular case, it can be improved by using a transform, as already illustrated for `bool` values. Several examples of transform modules are included in the PostgreSQL distribution.

## 45.3. Built-in Functions

### 45.3.1. Database Access from PL/Perl

Access to the database itself from your Perl function can be done via the following functions:

```
spi_exec_query(query [, limit])
```

`spi_exec_query` executes an SQL command and returns the entire row set as a reference to an array of hash references. If `limit` is specified and is greater than zero, then `spi_exec_query` retrieves at most `limit` rows, much as if the query included a `LIMIT` clause. Omitting `limit` or specifying it as zero results in no row limit.

*You should only use this command when you know that the result set will be relatively small.* Here is an example of a query (`SELECT` command) with the optional maximum number of rows:

```
$rv = spi_exec_query('SELECT * FROM my_table', 5);
```

This returns up to 5 rows from the table `my_table`. If `my_table` has a column `my_column`, you can get that value from row `$i` of the result like this:

```
$foo = $rv->{rows}[$i]->{my_column};
```

The total number of rows returned from a `SELECT` query can be accessed like this:

```
$nrows = $rv->{processed}
```

Here is an example using a different command type:

```
$query = "INSERT INTO my_table VALUES (1, 'test')";  
$rv = spi_exec_query($query);
```

You can then access the command status (e.g., `SPI_OK_INSERT`) like this:

```
$res = $rv->{status};
```

To get the number of rows affected, do:

```
$nrows = $rv->{processed};
```

Here is a complete example:

```
CREATE TABLE test (  
    i int,  
    v varchar  
);  
  
INSERT INTO test (i, v) VALUES (1, 'first line');  
INSERT INTO test (i, v) VALUES (2, 'second line');  
INSERT INTO test (i, v) VALUES (3, 'third line');  
INSERT INTO test (i, v) VALUES (4, 'immortal');  
  
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION test_munge() RETURNS SETOF test AS $$  
    my $rv = spi_exec_query('select i, v from test;');  
    my $status = $rv->{status};  
    my $nrows = $rv->{processed};  
    foreach my $rn (0 .. $nrows - 1) {  
        my $row = $rv->{rows}[$rn];  
        $row->{i} += 200 if defined($row->{i});  
        $row->{v} =~ tr/A-Za-z/a-zA-Z/ if (defined($row->{v}));  
        return_next($row);  
    }  
    return undef;  
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;  
  
SELECT * FROM test_munge();  
  
spi_query(command)  
spi_fetchrow(cursor)  
spi_cursor_close(cursor)
```

`spi_query` and `spi_fetchrow` work together as a pair for row sets which might be large, or for cases where you wish to return rows as they arrive. `spi_fetchrow` works *only* with `spi_query`. The following example illustrates how you use them together:

```
CREATE TYPE foo_type AS (the_num INTEGER, the_text TEXT);  
  
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION lotsa_md5 (INTEGER) RETURNS SETOF  
    foo_type AS $$  
    use Digest::MD5 qw(md5_hex);  
    my $file = '/usr/share/dict/words';  
    my $t = localtime;  
    elog(NOTICE, "opening file $file at $t" );  
    open my $fh, '<', $file # ooh, it's a file access!  
        or elog(ERROR, "cannot open $file for reading: $!");  
    my @words = <$fh>;  
    close $fh;  
    $t = localtime;  
    elog(NOTICE, "closed file $file at $t");  
    chomp(@words);  
    my $row;  
    my $sth = spi_query("SELECT * FROM generate_series(1,$_[0])  
AS b(a)");  
    while (defined ($row = spi_fetchrow($sth))) {  
        return_next({  
            the_num => $row->{a},  
            the_text => md5_hex($words[rand @words])  
        });  
    }  
    return;
```

```
$$ LANGUAGE plperlu;

SELECT * from lotsa_md5(500);
```

Normally, `spi_fetchrow` should be repeated until it returns `undef`, indicating that there are no more rows to read. The cursor returned by `spi_query` is automatically freed when `spi_fetchrow` returns `undef`. If you do not wish to read all the rows, instead call `spi_cursor_close` to free the cursor. Failure to do so will result in memory leaks.

```
spi_prepare(command, argument types)
spi_query_prepared(plan, arguments)
spi_exec_prepared(plan [, attributes], arguments)
spi_freeplan(plan)
```

`spi_prepare`, `spi_query_prepared`, `spi_exec_prepared`, and `spi_freeplan` implement the same functionality but for prepared queries. `spi_prepare` accepts a query string with numbered argument placeholders (`$1`, `$2`, etc.) and a string list of argument types:

```
$plan = spi_prepare('SELECT * FROM test WHERE id > $1 AND name =
    $2',
                                'INTEGER',
                                'TEXT');
```

Once a query plan is prepared by a call to `spi_prepare`, the plan can be used instead of the string query, either in `spi_exec_prepared`, where the result is the same as returned by `spi_exec_query`, or in `spi_query_prepared` which returns a cursor exactly as `spi_query` does, which can be later passed to `spi_fetchrow`. The optional second parameter to `spi_exec_prepared` is a hash reference of attributes; the only attribute currently supported is `limit`, which sets the maximum number of rows returned from the query. Omitting `limit` or specifying it as zero results in no row limit.

The advantage of prepared queries is that it is possible to use one prepared plan for more than one query execution. After the plan is not needed anymore, it can be freed with `spi_freeplan`:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION init() RETURNS VOID AS $$
    $_SHARED{my_plan} = spi_prepare('SELECT (now() +
    $1)::date AS now',
                                    'INTERVAL');
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION add_time( INTERVAL ) RETURNS TEXT AS
$$
    return spi_exec_prepared(
        $_SHARED{my_plan},
        $_[0]
    )->{rows}->[0]->{now};
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION done() RETURNS VOID AS $$
    spi_freeplan( $_SHARED{my_plan} );
    undef $_SHARED{my_plan};
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;

SELECT init();
SELECT add_time('1 day'), add_time('2 days'), add_time('3
    days');
SELECT done();
```

add_time		add_time		add_time
-----+-----+-----				
2005-12-10		2005-12-11		2005-12-12

Note that the parameter subscript in `spi_prepare` is defined via \$1, \$2, \$3, etc., so avoid declaring query strings in double quotes that might easily lead to hard-to-catch bugs.

Another example illustrates usage of an optional parameter in `spi_exec_prepared`:

```
CREATE TABLE hosts AS SELECT id, ('192.168.1.' || id)::inet AS
address
                                FROM generate_series(1,3) AS id;

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION init_hosts_query() RETURNS VOID AS $$
    $_SHARED{plan} = spi_prepare('SELECT * FROM hosts
                                WHERE address << $1',
    'inet');
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION query_hosts(inet) RETURNS SETOF hosts
AS $$
    return spi_exec_prepared(
        $_SHARED{plan},
        {limit => 2},
        $_[0]
    )->{rows};
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION release_hosts_query() RETURNS VOID AS
$$
    spi_freeplan($_SHARED{plan});
    undef $_SHARED{plan};
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;

SELECT init_hosts_query();
SELECT query_hosts('192.168.1.0/30');
SELECT release_hosts_query();

    query_hosts
-----
(1,192.168.1.1)
(2,192.168.1.2)
(2 rows)

spi_commit()
spi_rollback()
```

Commit or roll back the current transaction. This can only be called in a procedure or anonymous code block (DO command) called from the top level. (Note that it is not possible to run the SQL commands COMMIT or ROLLBACK via `spi_exec_query` or similar. It has to be done using these functions.) After a transaction is ended, a new transaction is automatically started, so there is no separate function for that.

Here is an example:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE transaction_test1()
```

```
LANGUAGE plperl
AS $$
foreach my $i (0..9) {
    spi_exec_query("INSERT INTO test1 (a) VALUES ($i)");
    if ($i % 2 == 0) {
        spi_commit();
    } else {
        spi_rollback();
    }
}
$$;

CALL transaction_test1();
```

## 45.3.2. Utility Functions in PL/Perl

`elog(level, msg)`

Emit a log or error message. Possible levels are DEBUG, LOG, INFO, NOTICE, WARNING, and ERROR. ERROR raises an error condition; if this is not trapped by the surrounding Perl code, the error propagates out to the calling query, causing the current transaction or subtransaction to be aborted. This is effectively the same as the Perl `die` command. The other levels only generate messages of different priority levels. Whether messages of a particular priority are reported to the client, written to the server log, or both is controlled by the `log_min_messages` and `client_min_messages` configuration variables. See Chapter 20 for more information.

`quote_literal(string)`

Return the given string suitably quoted to be used as a string literal in an SQL statement string. Embedded single-quotes and backslashes are properly doubled. Note that `quote_literal` returns undef on undef input; if the argument might be undef, `quote_nullable` is often more suitable.

`quote_nullable(string)`

Return the given string suitably quoted to be used as a string literal in an SQL statement string; or, if the argument is undef, return the unquoted string "NULL". Embedded single-quotes and backslashes are properly doubled.

`quote_ident(string)`

Return the given string suitably quoted to be used as an identifier in an SQL statement string. Quotes are added only if necessary (i.e., if the string contains non-identifier characters or would be case-folded). Embedded quotes are properly doubled.

`decode_bytea(string)`

Return the unescaped binary data represented by the contents of the given string, which should be bytea encoded.

`encode_bytea(string)`

Return the bytea encoded form of the binary data contents of the given string.

`encode_array_literal(array)`

`encode_array_literal(array, delimiter)`

Returns the contents of the referenced array as a string in array literal format (see Section 8.15.2). Returns the argument value unaltered if it's not a reference to an array. The delimiter used between elements of the array literal defaults to " , " if a delimiter is not specified or is undef.

`encode_typed_literal(value, typename)`

Converts a Perl variable to the value of the data type passed as a second argument and returns a string representation of this value. Correctly handles nested arrays and values of composite types.

`encode_array_constructor(array)`

Returns the contents of the referenced array as a string in array constructor format (see Section 4.2.12). Individual values are quoted using `quote_nullable`. Returns the argument value, quoted using `quote_nullable`, if it's not a reference to an array.

`looks_like_number(string)`

Returns a true value if the content of the given string looks like a number, according to Perl, returns false otherwise. Returns undef if the argument is undef. Leading and trailing space is ignored. Inf and Infinity are regarded as numbers.

`is_array_ref(argument)`

Returns a true value if the given argument may be treated as an array reference, that is, if ref of the argument is ARRAY or PostgreSQL::InServer::ARRAY. Returns false otherwise.

## 45.4. Global Values in PL/Perl

You can use the global hash `$_SHARED` to store data, including code references, between function calls for the lifetime of the current session.

Here is a simple example for shared data:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION set_var(name text, val text) RETURNS
text AS $$
    if ($_SHARED{$_[0]} = $_[1]) {
        return 'ok';
    } else {
        return "cannot set shared variable $_[0] to $_[1]";
    }
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION get_var(name text) RETURNS text AS $$
    return $_SHARED{$_[0]};
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;

SELECT set_var('sample', 'Hello, PL/Perl!  How's tricks?');
SELECT get_var('sample');
```

Here is a slightly more complicated example using a code reference:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION myfuncs() RETURNS void AS $$
    $_SHARED{myquote} = sub {
        my $arg = shift;
        $arg =~ s/(['\\])/\\$1/g;
        return "'$arg'";
    };
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;

SELECT myfuncs(); /* initializes the function */
```



```
/* Set up a function that uses the quote function */

CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION use_quote(TEXT) RETURNS text AS $$
    my $text_to_quote = shift;
    my $qfunc = $_SHARED{myquote};
    return &$qfunc($text_to_quote);
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;
```

(You could have replaced the above with the one-liner `return $_SHARED{myquote}->($_[0]);` at the expense of readability.)

For security reasons, PL/Perl executes functions called by any one SQL role in a separate Perl interpreter for that role. This prevents accidental or malicious interference by one user with the behavior of another user's PL/Perl functions. Each such interpreter has its own value of the `$_SHARED` variable and other global state. Thus, two PL/Perl functions will share the same value of `$_SHARED` if and only if they are executed by the same SQL role. In an application wherein a single session executes code under multiple SQL roles (via `SECURITY DEFINER` functions, use of `SET ROLE`, etc.) you may need to take explicit steps to ensure that PL/Perl functions can share data via `$_SHARED`. To do that, make sure that functions that should communicate are owned by the same user, and mark them `SECURITY DEFINER`. You must of course take care that such functions can't be used to do anything unintended.

## 45.5. Trusted and Untrusted PL/Perl

Normally, PL/Perl is installed as a “trusted” programming language named `plperl`. In this setup, certain Perl operations are disabled to preserve security. In general, the operations that are restricted are those that interact with the environment. This includes file handle operations, `require`, and `use` (for external modules). There is no way to access internals of the database server process or to gain OS-level access with the permissions of the server process, as a C function can do. Thus, any unprivileged database user can be permitted to use this language.

Here is an example of a function that will not work because file system operations are not allowed for security reasons:

```
CREATE FUNCTION badfunc() RETURNS integer AS $$
    my $tmpfile = "/tmp/badfile";
    open my $fh, '>', $tmpfile
        or elog(ERROR, qq{could not open the file "$tmpfile": $!});
    print $fh "Testing writing to a file\n";
    close $fh or elog(ERROR, qq{could not close the file
"$tmpfile": $!});
    return 1;
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;
```

The creation of this function will fail as its use of a forbidden operation will be caught by the validator.

Sometimes it is desirable to write Perl functions that are not restricted. For example, one might want a Perl function that sends mail. To handle these cases, PL/Perl can also be installed as an “untrusted” language (usually called PL/PerlU). In this case the full Perl language is available. When installing the language, the language name `plperlU` will select the untrusted PL/Perl variant.

The writer of a PL/PerlU function must take care that the function cannot be used to do anything unwanted, since it will be able to do anything that could be done by a user logged in as the database administrator. Note that the database system allows only database superusers to create functions in untrusted languages.

If the above function was created by a superuser using the language `plperlU`, execution would succeed.

In the same way, anonymous code blocks written in Perl can use restricted operations if the language is specified as `plperl_u` rather than `plperl`, but the caller must be a superuser.

### Note

While PL/Perl functions run in a separate Perl interpreter for each SQL role, all PL/PerlU functions executed in a given session run in a single Perl interpreter (which is not any of the ones used for PL/Perl functions). This allows PL/PerlU functions to share data freely, but no communication can occur between PL/Perl and PL/PerlU functions.

### Note

Perl cannot support multiple interpreters within one process unless it was built with the appropriate flags, namely either `usemultiplicity` or `useithreads`. (`usemultiplicity` is preferred unless you actually need to use threads. For more details, see the `perlembed` man page.) If PL/Perl is used with a copy of Perl that was not built this way, then it is only possible to have one Perl interpreter per session, and so any one session can only execute either PL/PerlU functions, or PL/Perl functions that are all called by the same SQL role.

## 45.6. PL/Perl Triggers

PL/Perl can be used to write trigger functions. In a trigger function, the hash reference `$_TD` contains information about the current trigger event. `$_TD` is a global variable, which gets a separate local value for each invocation of the trigger. The fields of the `$_TD` hash reference are:

`$_TD->{new}` {foo}

NEW value of column foo

`$_TD->{old}` {foo}

OLD value of column foo

`$_TD->{name}`

Name of the trigger being called

`$_TD->{event}`

Trigger event: INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, TRUNCATE, or UNKNOWN

`$_TD->{when}`

When the trigger was called: BEFORE, AFTER, INSTEAD OF, or UNKNOWN

`$_TD->{level}`

The trigger level: ROW, STATEMENT, or UNKNOWN

`$_TD->{relid}`

OID of the table on which the trigger fired

`$_TD->{table_name}`

Name of the table on which the trigger fired

`$_TD->{relname}`

Name of the table on which the trigger fired. This has been deprecated, and could be removed in a future release. Please use `$_TD->{table_name}` instead.

`$_TD->{table_schema}`

Name of the schema in which the table on which the trigger fired, is

`$_TD->{argc}`

Number of arguments of the trigger function

`@{$_TD->{args}}`

Arguments of the trigger function. Does not exist if `$_TD->{argc}` is 0.

Row-level triggers can return one of the following:

`return;`

Execute the operation

`"SKIP"`

Don't execute the operation

`"MODIFY"`

Indicates that the NEW row was modified by the trigger function

Here is an example of a trigger function, illustrating some of the above:

```
CREATE TABLE test (  
    i int,  
    v varchar  
);  
  
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION valid_id() RETURNS trigger AS $$  
    if (($TD->{new}{i} >= 100) || ($TD->{new}{i} <= 0)) {  
        return "SKIP";    # skip INSERT/UPDATE command  
    } elsif ($TD->{new}{v} ne "immortal") {  
        $TD->{new}{v} .= "(modified by trigger)";  
        return "MODIFY";  # modify row and execute INSERT/UPDATE  
command  
    } else {  
        return;           # execute INSERT/UPDATE command  
    }  
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;  
  
CREATE TRIGGER test_valid_id_trig  
    BEFORE INSERT OR UPDATE ON test  
    FOR EACH ROW EXECUTE FUNCTION valid_id();
```

## 45.7. PL/Perl Event Triggers

PL/Perl can be used to write event trigger functions. In an event trigger function, the hash reference `$_TD` contains information about the current trigger event. `$_TD` is a global variable, which gets a separate local value for each invocation of the trigger. The fields of the `$_TD` hash reference are:

```
$_TD->{event}
```

The name of the event the trigger is fired for.

```
$_TD->{tag}
```

The command tag for which the trigger is fired.

The return value of the trigger function is ignored.

Here is an example of an event trigger function, illustrating some of the above:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION perlsnitch() RETURNS event_trigger AS $$
    elog(NOTICE, "perlsnitch: " . $_TD->{event} . " " . $_TD->{tag} .
    " ");
$$ LANGUAGE plperl;

CREATE EVENT TRIGGER perl_a_snitch
    ON ddl_command_start
    EXECUTE FUNCTION perlsnitch();
```

## 45.8. PL/Perl Under the Hood

### 45.8.1. Configuration

This section lists configuration parameters that affect PL/Perl.

`plperl.on_init(string)`

Specifies Perl code to be executed when a Perl interpreter is first initialized, before it is specialized for use by `plperl` or `plperlu`. The SPI functions are not available when this code is executed. If the code fails with an error it will abort the initialization of the interpreter and propagate out to the calling query, causing the current transaction or subtransaction to be aborted.

The Perl code is limited to a single string. Longer code can be placed into a module and loaded by the `on_init` string. Examples:

```
plperl.on_init = 'require "plperlinit.pl"'
plperl.on_init = 'use lib "/my/app"; use MyApp::PgInit;'
```

Any modules loaded by `plperl.on_init`, either directly or indirectly, will be available for use by `plperl`. This may create a security risk. To see what modules have been loaded you can use:

```
DO 'elog(WARNING, join ", ", sort keys %INC)' LANGUAGE plperl;
```

Initialization will happen in the postmaster if the `plperl` library is included in `shared_preload_libraries`, in which case extra consideration should be given to the risk of destabilizing the postmaster. The principal reason for making use of this feature is that Perl modules loaded by `plperl.on_init` need be loaded only at postmaster start, and will be instantly available without loading overhead in individual database sessions. However, keep in mind that the overhead is avoided only for the first Perl interpreter used by a database session — either PL/PerlU, or PL/Perl for the first SQL role that calls a PL/Perl function. Any additional Perl interpreters created in a database session will have to execute `plperl.on_init` afresh. Also, on Windows there will be no savings whatsoever from preloading, since the Perl interpreter created in the postmaster process does not propagate to child processes.

This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

```
plperl.on_plperl_init(string)
plperl.on_plperlu_init(string)
```

These parameters specify Perl code to be executed when a Perl interpreter is specialized for `plperl` or `plperlu` respectively. This will happen when a PL/Perl or PL/PerlU function is first executed in a database session, or when an additional interpreter has to be created because the other language is called or a PL/Perl function is called by a new SQL role. This follows any initialization done by `plperl.on_init`. The SPI functions are not available when this code is executed. The Perl code in `plperl.on_plperl_init` is executed after “locking down” the interpreter, and thus it can only perform trusted operations.

If the code fails with an error it will abort the initialization and propagate out to the calling query, causing the current transaction or subtransaction to be aborted. Any actions already done within Perl won't be undone; however, that interpreter won't be used again. If the language is used again the initialization will be attempted again within a fresh Perl interpreter.

Only superusers can change these settings. Although these settings can be changed within a session, such changes will not affect Perl interpreters that have already been used to execute functions.

```
plperl.use_strict(boolean)
```

When set true subsequent compilations of PL/Perl functions will have the `strict` pragma enabled. This parameter does not affect functions already compiled in the current session.

## 45.8.2. Limitations and Missing Features

The following features are currently missing from PL/Perl, but they would make welcome contributions.

- PL/Perl functions cannot call each other directly.
- SPI is not yet fully implemented.
- If you are fetching very large data sets using `spi_exec_query`, you should be aware that these will all go into memory. You can avoid this by using `spi_query/spi_fetchrow` as illustrated earlier.

A similar problem occurs if a set-returning function passes a large set of rows back to PostgreSQL via `return`. You can avoid this problem too by instead using `return_next` for each row returned, as shown previously.

- When a session ends normally, not due to a fatal error, any `END` blocks that have been defined are executed. Currently no other actions are performed. Specifically, file handles are not automatically flushed and objects are not automatically destroyed.

---

# Chapter 46. PL/Python — Python Procedural Language

The PL/Python procedural language allows PostgreSQL functions and procedures to be written in the Python language<sup>1</sup>.

To install PL/Python in a particular database, use `CREATE EXTENSION plpython3u`.

## Tip

If a language is installed into `template1`, all subsequently created databases will have the language installed automatically.

PL/Python is only available as an “untrusted” language, meaning it does not offer any way of restricting what users can do in it and is therefore named `plpython3u`. A trusted variant `plpython` might become available in the future if a secure execution mechanism is developed in Python. The writer of a function in untrusted PL/Python must take care that the function cannot be used to do anything unwanted, since it will be able to do anything that could be done by a user logged in as the database administrator. Only superusers can create functions in untrusted languages such as `plpython3u`.

## Note

Users of source packages must specially enable the build of PL/Python during the installation process. (Refer to the installation instructions for more information.) Users of binary packages might find PL/Python in a separate subpackage.

## 46.1. PL/Python Functions

Functions in PL/Python are declared via the standard `CREATE FUNCTION` syntax:

```
CREATE FUNCTION funcname (argument-list)  
    RETURNS return-type  
AS $$  
    # PL/Python function body  
$$ LANGUAGE plpython3u;
```

The body of a function is simply a Python script. When the function is called, its arguments are passed as elements of the list `args`; named arguments are also passed as ordinary variables to the Python script. Use of named arguments is usually more readable. The result is returned from the Python code in the usual way, with `return` or `yield` (in case of a result-set statement). If you do not provide a return value, Python returns the default `None`. PL/Python translates Python's `None` into the SQL null value. In a procedure, the result from the Python code must be `None` (typically achieved by ending the procedure without a `return` statement or by using a `return` statement without argument); otherwise, an error will be raised.

For example, a function to return the greater of two integers can be defined as:

```
CREATE FUNCTION pymax (a integer, b integer)
```

---

<sup>1</sup> <https://www.python.org>

```

    RETURNS integer
AS $$
    if a > b:
        return a
    return b
$$ LANGUAGE plpython3u;

```

The Python code that is given as the body of the function definition is transformed into a Python function. For example, the above results in:

```

def __plpython_procedure_pymax_23456():
    if a > b:
        return a
    return b

```

assuming that 23456 is the OID assigned to the function by PostgreSQL.

The arguments are set as global variables. Because of the scoping rules of Python, this has the subtle consequence that an argument variable cannot be reassigned inside the function to the value of an expression that involves the variable name itself, unless the variable is redeclared as global in the block. For example, the following won't work:

```

CREATE FUNCTION pystrip(x text)
    RETURNS text
AS $$
    x = x.strip() # error
    return x
$$ LANGUAGE plpython3u;

```

because assigning to `x` makes `x` a local variable for the entire block, and so the `x` on the right-hand side of the assignment refers to a not-yet-assigned local variable `x`, not the PL/Python function parameter. Using the `global` statement, this can be made to work:

```

CREATE FUNCTION pystrip(x text)
    RETURNS text
AS $$
    global x
    x = x.strip() # ok now
    return x
$$ LANGUAGE plpython3u;

```

But it is advisable not to rely on this implementation detail of PL/Python. It is better to treat the function parameters as read-only.

## 46.2. Data Values

Generally speaking, the aim of PL/Python is to provide a “natural” mapping between the PostgreSQL and the Python worlds. This informs the data mapping rules described below.

### 46.2.1. Data Type Mapping

When a PL/Python function is called, its arguments are converted from their PostgreSQL data type to a corresponding Python type:

- PostgreSQL `boolean` is converted to Python `bool`.

- PostgreSQL `smallint`, `int`, `bigint` and `oid` are converted to Python `int`.
- PostgreSQL `real` and `double` are converted to Python `float`.
- PostgreSQL `numeric` is converted to Python `Decimal`. This type is imported from the `cdecimal` package if that is available. Otherwise, `decimal.Decimal` from the standard library will be used. `cdecimal` is significantly faster than `decimal`. In Python 3.3 and up, however, `cdecimal` has been integrated into the standard library under the name `decimal`, so there is no longer any difference.
- PostgreSQL `bytea` is converted to Python `bytes`.
- All other data types, including the PostgreSQL character string types, are converted to a Python `str` (in Unicode like all Python strings).
- For nonscalar data types, see below.

When a PL/Python function returns, its return value is converted to the function's declared PostgreSQL return data type as follows:

- When the PostgreSQL return type is `boolean`, the return value will be evaluated for truth according to the *Python* rules. That is, 0 and empty string are false, but notably 'f' is true.
- When the PostgreSQL return type is `bytea`, the return value will be converted to Python `bytes` using the respective Python built-ins, with the result being converted to `bytea`.
- For all other PostgreSQL return types, the return value is converted to a string using the Python built-in `str`, and the result is passed to the input function of the PostgreSQL data type. (If the Python value is a `float`, it is converted using the `repr` built-in instead of `str`, to avoid loss of precision.)

Strings are automatically converted to the PostgreSQL server encoding when they are passed to PostgreSQL.

- For nonscalar data types, see below.

Note that logical mismatches between the declared PostgreSQL return type and the Python data type of the actual return object are not flagged; the value will be converted in any case.

## 46.2.2. Null, None

If an SQL null value is passed to a function, the argument value will appear as `None` in Python. For example, the function definition of `pymax` shown in Section 46.1 will return the wrong answer for null inputs. We could add `STRICT` to the function definition to make PostgreSQL do something more reasonable: if a null value is passed, the function will not be called at all, but will just return a null result automatically. Alternatively, we could check for null inputs in the function body:

```
CREATE FUNCTION pymax (a integer, b integer)
  RETURNS integer
AS $$
  if (a is None) or (b is None):
    return None
  if a > b:
    return a
  return b
$$ LANGUAGE plpython3u;
```

As shown above, to return an SQL null value from a PL/Python function, return the value `None`. This can be done whether the function is strict or not.



### 46.2.3. Arrays, Lists

SQL array values are passed into PL/Python as a Python list. To return an SQL array value out of a PL/Python function, return a Python list:

```
CREATE FUNCTION return_arr()
  RETURNS int[]
AS $$
return [1, 2, 3, 4, 5]
$$ LANGUAGE plpython3u;

SELECT return_arr();
   return_arr
-----
 {1,2,3,4,5}
(1 row)
```

Multidimensional arrays are passed into PL/Python as nested Python lists. A 2-dimensional array is a list of lists, for example. When returning a multi-dimensional SQL array out of a PL/Python function, the inner lists at each level must all be of the same size. For example:

```
CREATE FUNCTION test_type_conversion_array_int4(x int4[]) RETURNS
  int4[] AS $$
plpy.info(x, type(x))
return x
$$ LANGUAGE plpython3u;

SELECT * FROM test_type_conversion_array_int4(ARRAY[[1,2,3],
[4,5,6]]);
INFO:  ([[1, 2, 3], [4, 5, 6]], <type 'list'>)
test_type_conversion_array_int4
-----
 {{1,2,3},{4,5,6}}
(1 row)
```

Other Python sequences, like tuples, are also accepted for backwards-compatibility with PostgreSQL versions 9.6 and below, when multi-dimensional arrays were not supported. However, they are always treated as one-dimensional arrays, because they are ambiguous with composite types. For the same reason, when a composite type is used in a multi-dimensional array, it must be represented by a tuple, rather than a list.

Note that in Python, strings are sequences, which can have undesirable effects that might be familiar to Python programmers:

```
CREATE FUNCTION return_str_arr()
  RETURNS varchar[]
AS $$
return "hello"
$$ LANGUAGE plpython3u;

SELECT return_str_arr();
   return_str_arr
-----
 {h,e,l,l,o}
(1 row)
```

## 46.2.4. Composite Types

Composite-type arguments are passed to the function as Python mappings. The element names of the mapping are the attribute names of the composite type. If an attribute in the passed row has the null value, it has the value `None` in the mapping. Here is an example:

```
CREATE TABLE employee (  
    name text,  
    salary integer,  
    age integer  
);  
  
CREATE FUNCTION overpaid (e employee)  
    RETURNS boolean  
AS $$  
    if e["salary"] > 200000:  
        return True  
    if (e["age"] < 30) and (e["salary"] > 100000):  
        return True  
    return False  
$$ LANGUAGE plpython3u;
```

There are multiple ways to return row or composite types from a Python function. The following examples assume we have:

```
CREATE TYPE named_value AS (  
    name    text,  
    value   integer  
);
```

A composite result can be returned as a:

Sequence type (a tuple or list, but not a set because it is not indexable)

Returned sequence objects must have the same number of items as the composite result type has fields. The item with index 0 is assigned to the first field of the composite type, 1 to the second and so on. For example:

```
CREATE FUNCTION make_pair (name text, value integer)  
    RETURNS named_value  
AS $$  
    return ( name, value )  
    # or alternatively, as list: return [ name, value ]  
$$ LANGUAGE plpython3u;
```

To return an SQL null for any column, insert `None` at the corresponding position.

When an array of composite types is returned, it cannot be returned as a list, because it is ambiguous whether the Python list represents a composite type, or another array dimension.

Mapping (dictionary)

The value for each result type column is retrieved from the mapping with the column name as key. Example:

```
CREATE FUNCTION make_pair (name text, value integer)
    RETURNS named_value
AS $$
    return { "name": name, "value": value }
$$ LANGUAGE plpython3u;
```

Any extra dictionary key/value pairs are ignored. Missing keys are treated as errors. To return an SQL null value for any column, insert None with the corresponding column name as the key.

Object (any object providing method `__getattr__`)

This works the same as a mapping. Example:

```
CREATE FUNCTION make_pair (name text, value integer)
    RETURNS named_value
AS $$
    class named_value:
        def __init__ (self, n, v):
            self.name = n
            self.value = v
    return named_value(name, value)

    # or simply
    class nv: pass
    nv.name = name
    nv.value = value
    return nv
$$ LANGUAGE plpython3u;
```

Functions with OUT parameters are also supported. For example:

```
CREATE FUNCTION multiout_simple(OUT i integer, OUT j integer) AS $$
return (1, 2)
$$ LANGUAGE plpython3u;

SELECT * FROM multiout_simple();
```

Output parameters of procedures are passed back the same way. For example:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE python_triple(INOUT a integer, INOUT b integer) AS
$$
return (a * 3, b * 3)
$$ LANGUAGE plpython3u;

CALL python_triple(5, 10);
```

## 46.2.5. Set-Returning Functions

A PL/Python function can also return sets of scalar or composite types. There are several ways to achieve this because the returned object is internally turned into an iterator. The following examples assume we have composite type:

```
CREATE TYPE greeting AS (
    how text,
    who text
```

```
);
```

A set result can be returned from a:

Sequence type (tuple, list, set)

```
CREATE FUNCTION greet (how text)
    RETURNS SETOF greeting
AS $$
    # return tuple containing lists as composite types
    # all other combinations work also
    return ( [ how, "World" ], [ how, "PostgreSQL" ], [ how, "PL/
Python" ] )
$$ LANGUAGE plpython3u;
```

Iterator (any object providing `__iter__` and `next` methods)

```
CREATE FUNCTION greet (how text)
    RETURNS SETOF greeting
AS $$
    class producer:
        def __init__ (self, how, who):
            self.how = how
            self.who = who
            self.ndx = -1

        def __iter__ (self):
            return self

        def next (self):
            self.ndx += 1
            if self.ndx == len(self.who):
                raise StopIteration
            return ( self.how, self.who[self.ndx] )

    return producer(how, [ "World", "PostgreSQL", "PL/Python" ])
$$ LANGUAGE plpython3u;
```

Generator (yield)

```
CREATE FUNCTION greet (how text)
    RETURNS SETOF greeting
AS $$
    for who in [ "World", "PostgreSQL", "PL/Python" ]:
        yield ( how, who )
$$ LANGUAGE plpython3u;
```

Set-returning functions with OUT parameters (using `RETURNS SETOF record`) are also supported. For example:

```
CREATE FUNCTION multiout_simple_setof(n integer, OUT integer, OUT
integer) RETURNS SETOF record AS $$
return [(1, 2)] * n
$$ LANGUAGE plpython3u;
```

```
SELECT * FROM multiout_simple_setof(3);
```

## 46.3. Sharing Data

The global dictionary SD is available to store private data between repeated calls to the same function. The global dictionary GD is public data, that is available to all Python functions within a session; use with care.

Each function gets its own execution environment in the Python interpreter, so that global data and function arguments from `myfunc` are not available to `myfunc2`. The exception is the data in the GD dictionary, as mentioned above.

## 46.4. Anonymous Code Blocks

PL/Python also supports anonymous code blocks called with the DO statement:

```
DO $$  
    # PL/Python code  
$$ LANGUAGE plpython3u;
```

An anonymous code block receives no arguments, and whatever value it might return is discarded. Otherwise it behaves just like a function.

## 46.5. Trigger Functions

When a function is used as a trigger, the dictionary TD contains trigger-related values:

TD[ "event" ]

contains the event as a string: INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, or TRUNCATE.

TD[ "when" ]

contains one of BEFORE, AFTER, or INSTEAD OF.

TD[ "level" ]

contains ROW or STATEMENT.

TD[ "new" ]

TD[ "old" ]

For a row-level trigger, one or both of these fields contain the respective trigger rows, depending on the trigger event.

TD[ "name" ]

contains the trigger name.

TD[ "table\_name" ]

contains the name of the table on which the trigger occurred.

TD[ "table\_schema" ]

contains the schema of the table on which the trigger occurred.

`TD["relid"]`

contains the OID of the table on which the trigger occurred.

`TD["args"]`

If the `CREATE TRIGGER` command included arguments, they are available in `TD["args"]` `[0]` to `TD["args"][n-1]`.

If `TD["when"]` is `BEFORE` or `INSTEAD OF` and `TD["level"]` is `ROW`, you can return `None` or `"OK"` from the Python function to indicate the row is unmodified, `"SKIP"` to abort the event, or if `TD["event"]` is `INSERT` or `UPDATE` you can return `"MODIFY"` to indicate you've modified the new row. Otherwise the return value is ignored.

## 46.6. Database Access

The PL/Python language module automatically imports a Python module called `plpy`. The functions and constants in this module are available to you in the Python code as `plpy.foo`.

### 46.6.1. Database Access Functions

The `plpy` module provides several functions to execute database commands:

```
plpy.execute(query [, limit])
```

Calling `plpy.execute` with a query string and an optional row limit argument causes that query to be run and the result to be returned in a result object.

If `limit` is specified and is greater than zero, then `plpy.execute` retrieves at most `limit` rows, much as if the query included a `LIMIT` clause. Omitting `limit` or specifying it as zero results in no row limit.

The result object emulates a list or dictionary object. The result object can be accessed by row number and column name. For example:

```
rv = plpy.execute("SELECT * FROM my_table", 5)
```

returns up to 5 rows from `my_table`. If `my_table` has a column `my_column`, it would be accessed as:

```
foo = rv[i]["my_column"]
```

The number of rows returned can be obtained using the built-in `len` function.

The result object has these additional methods:

```
nrows()
```

Returns the number of rows processed by the command. Note that this is not necessarily the same as the number of rows returned. For example, an `UPDATE` command will set this value but won't return any rows (unless `RETURNING` is used).

```
status()
```

The `SPI_execute()` return value.

```
colnames()  
coltypes()  
coltypmods()
```

Return a list of column names, list of column type OIDs, and list of type-specific type modifiers for the columns, respectively.

These methods raise an exception when called on a result object from a command that did not produce a result set, e.g., `UPDATE` without `RETURNING`, or `DROP TABLE`. But it is OK to use these methods on a result set containing zero rows.

```
__str__()
```

The standard `__str__` method is defined so that it is possible for example to debug query execution results using `plpy.debug(rv)`.

The result object can be modified.

Note that calling `plpy.execute` will cause the entire result set to be read into memory. Only use that function when you are sure that the result set will be relatively small. If you don't want to risk excessive memory usage when fetching large results, use `plpy.cursor` rather than `plpy.execute`.

```
plpy.prepare(query [, argtypes])  
plpy.execute(plan [, arguments [, limit]])
```

`plpy.prepare` prepares the execution plan for a query. It is called with a query string and a list of parameter types, if you have parameter references in the query. For example:

```
plan = plpy.prepare("SELECT last_name FROM my_users WHERE  
first_name = $1", ["text"])
```

`text` is the type of the variable you will be passing for `$1`. The second argument is optional if you don't want to pass any parameters to the query.

After preparing a statement, you use a variant of the function `plpy.execute` to run it:

```
rv = plpy.execute(plan, ["name"], 5)
```

Pass the plan as the first argument (instead of the query string), and a list of values to substitute into the query as the second argument. The second argument is optional if the query does not expect any parameters. The third argument is the optional row limit as before.

Alternatively, you can call the `execute` method on the plan object:

```
rv = plan.execute(["name"], 5)
```

Query parameters and result row fields are converted between PostgreSQL and Python data types as described in Section 46.2.

When you prepare a plan using the PL/Python module it is automatically saved. Read the SPI documentation (Chapter 47) for a description of what this means. In order to make effective use of this across function calls one needs to use one of the persistent storage dictionaries `SD` or `GD` (see Section 46.3). For example:

```
CREATE FUNCTION usesavedplan() RETURNS trigger AS $$
```

```

        if "plan" in SD:
            plan = SD["plan"]
        else:
            plan = plpy.prepare("SELECT 1")
            SD["plan"] = plan
        # rest of function
    $$ LANGUAGE plpython3u;

plpy.cursor(query)
plpy.cursor(plan [, arguments])

```

The `plpy.cursor` function accepts the same arguments as `plpy.execute` (except for the row limit) and returns a cursor object, which allows you to process large result sets in smaller chunks. As with `plpy.execute`, either a query string or a plan object along with a list of arguments can be used, or the `cursor` function can be called as a method of the plan object.

The cursor object provides a `fetch` method that accepts an integer parameter and returns a result object. Each time you call `fetch`, the returned object will contain the next batch of rows, never larger than the parameter value. Once all rows are exhausted, `fetch` starts returning an empty result object. Cursor objects also provide an iterator interface<sup>2</sup>, yielding one row at a time until all rows are exhausted. Data fetched that way is not returned as result objects, but rather as dictionaries, each dictionary corresponding to a single result row.

An example of two ways of processing data from a large table is:

```

CREATE FUNCTION count_odd_iterator() RETURNS integer AS $$
odd = 0
for row in plpy.cursor("select num from largetable"):
    if row['num'] % 2:
        odd += 1
return odd
$$ LANGUAGE plpython3u;

CREATE FUNCTION count_odd_fetch(batch_size integer) RETURNS
integer AS $$
odd = 0
cursor = plpy.cursor("select num from largetable")
while True:
    rows = cursor.fetch(batch_size)
    if not rows:
        break
    for row in rows:
        if row['num'] % 2:
            odd += 1
return odd
$$ LANGUAGE plpython3u;

CREATE FUNCTION count_odd_prepared() RETURNS integer AS $$
odd = 0
plan = plpy.prepare("select num from largetable where num % $1
    <> 0", ["integer"])
rows = list(plpy.cursor(plan, [2])) # or: =
    list(plan.cursor([2]))

return len(rows)
$$ LANGUAGE plpython3u;

```

---

<sup>2</sup> <https://docs.python.org/library/stdtypes.html#iterator-types>



Cursors are automatically disposed of. But if you want to explicitly release all resources held by a cursor, use the `close` method. Once closed, a cursor cannot be fetched from anymore.

### Tip

Do not confuse objects created by `plpy.cursor` with DB-API cursors as defined by the Python Database API specification<sup>3</sup>. They don't have anything in common except for the name.

## 46.6.2. Trapping Errors

Functions accessing the database might encounter errors, which will cause them to abort and raise an exception. Both `plpy.execute` and `plpy.prepare` can raise an instance of a subclass of `plpy.SPIError`, which by default will terminate the function. This error can be handled just like any other Python exception, by using the `try/except` construct. For example:

```
CREATE FUNCTION try_adding_joe() RETURNS text AS $$
    try:
        plpy.execute("INSERT INTO users(username) VALUES ('joe')")
    except plpy.SPIError:
        return "something went wrong"
    else:
        return "Joe added"
$$ LANGUAGE plpython3u;
```

The actual class of the exception being raised corresponds to the specific condition that caused the error. Refer to Table A.1 for a list of possible conditions. The module `plpy.spiexceptions` defines an exception class for each PostgreSQL condition, deriving their names from the condition name. For instance, `division_by_zero` becomes `DivisionByZero`, `unique_violation` becomes `UniqueViolation`, `fdw_error` becomes `FdwError`, and so on. Each of these exception classes inherits from `SPIError`. This separation makes it easier to handle specific errors, for instance:

```
CREATE FUNCTION insert_fraction(numerator int, denominator int)
    RETURNS text AS $$
from plpy import spiexceptions
try:
    plan = plpy.prepare("INSERT INTO fractions (frac) VALUES ($1 /
        $2)", ["int", "int"])
    plpy.execute(plan, [numerator, denominator])
except spiexceptions.DivisionByZero:
    return "denominator cannot equal zero"
except spiexceptions.UniqueViolation:
    return "already have that fraction"
except plpy.SPIError as e:
    return "other error, SQLSTATE %s" % e.sqlstate
else:
    return "fraction inserted"
$$ LANGUAGE plpython3u;
```

Note that because all exceptions from the `plpy.spiexceptions` module inherit from `SPIError`, an `except` clause handling it will catch any database access error.

<sup>3</sup> <https://www.python.org/dev/peps/pep-0249/>

As an alternative way of handling different error conditions, you can catch the `SPLError` exception and determine the specific error condition inside the `except` block by looking at the `sqlstate` attribute of the exception object. This attribute is a string value containing the “SQLSTATE” error code. This approach provides approximately the same functionality

## 46.7. Explicit Subtransactions

Recovering from errors caused by database access as described in Section 46.6.2 can lead to an undesirable situation where some operations succeed before one of them fails, and after recovering from that error the data is left in an inconsistent state. PL/Python offers a solution to this problem in the form of explicit subtransactions.

### 46.7.1. Subtransaction Context Managers

Consider a function that implements a transfer between two accounts:

```
CREATE FUNCTION transfer_funds() RETURNS void AS $$
try:
    plpy.execute("UPDATE accounts SET balance = balance - 100 WHERE
account_name = 'joe'")
    plpy.execute("UPDATE accounts SET balance = balance + 100 WHERE
account_name = 'mary'")
except plpy.SPErr or as e:
    result = "error transferring funds: %s" % e.args
else:
    result = "funds transferred correctly"
plan = plpy.prepare("INSERT INTO operations (result) VALUES ($1)",
["text"])
plpy.execute(plan, [result])
$$ LANGUAGE plpython3u;
```

If the second `UPDATE` statement results in an exception being raised, this function will report the error, but the result of the first `UPDATE` will nevertheless be committed. In other words, the funds will be withdrawn from Joe's account, but will not be transferred to Mary's account.

To avoid such issues, you can wrap your `plpy.execute` calls in an explicit subtransaction. The `plpy` module provides a helper object to manage explicit subtransactions that gets created with the `plpy.subtransaction()` function. Objects created by this function implement the context manager interface<sup>4</sup>. Using explicit subtransactions we can rewrite our function as:

```
CREATE FUNCTION transfer_funds2() RETURNS void AS $$
try:
    with plpy.subtransaction():
        plpy.execute("UPDATE accounts SET balance = balance - 100
WHERE account_name = 'joe'")
        plpy.execute("UPDATE accounts SET balance = balance + 100
WHERE account_name = 'mary'")
except plpy.SPErr or as e:
    result = "error transferring funds: %s" % e.args
else:
    result = "funds transferred correctly"
plan = plpy.prepare("INSERT INTO operations (result) VALUES ($1)",
["text"])
plpy.execute(plan, [result])
```

---

<sup>4</sup> <https://docs.python.org/library/stdtypes.html#context-manager-types>

```
$$ LANGUAGE plpython3u;
```

Note that the use of `try/except` is still required. Otherwise the exception would propagate to the top of the Python stack and would cause the whole function to abort with a PostgreSQL error, so that the `operations` table would not have any row inserted into it. The subtransaction context manager does not trap errors, it only assures that all database operations executed inside its scope will be atomically committed or rolled back. A rollback of the subtransaction block occurs on any kind of exception exit, not only ones caused by errors originating from database access. A regular Python exception raised inside an explicit subtransaction block would also cause the subtransaction to be rolled back.

## 46.8. Transaction Management

In a procedure called from the top level or an anonymous code block (`DO` command) called from the top level it is possible to control transactions. To commit the current transaction, call `plpy.commit()`. To roll back the current transaction, call `plpy.rollback()`. (Note that it is not possible to run the SQL commands `COMMIT` or `ROLLBACK` via `plpy.execute` or similar. It has to be done using these functions.) After a transaction is ended, a new transaction is automatically started, so there is no separate function for that.

Here is an example:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE transaction_test1()
LANGUAGE plpython3u
AS $$
for i in range(0, 10):
    plpy.execute("INSERT INTO test1 (a) VALUES (%d)" % i)
    if i % 2 == 0:
        plpy.commit()
    else:
        plpy.rollback()
$$;

CALL transaction_test1();
```

Transactions cannot be ended when an explicit subtransaction is active.

## 46.9. Utility Functions

The `plpy` module also provides the functions

```
plpy.debug(msg, **kwargs)
plpy.log(msg, **kwargs)
plpy.info(msg, **kwargs)
plpy.notice(msg, **kwargs)
plpy.warning(msg, **kwargs)
plpy.error(msg, **kwargs)
plpy.fatal(msg, **kwargs)
```

`plpy.error` and `plpy.fatal` actually raise a Python exception which, if uncaught, propagates out to the calling query, causing the current transaction or subtransaction to be aborted. `raise plpy.Error(msg)` and `raise plpy.Fatal(msg)` are equivalent to calling `plpy.error(msg)` and `plpy.fatal(msg)`, respectively but the `raise` form does not allow passing keyword arguments. The other functions only generate messages of different priority levels. Whether messages of a particular priority are reported to the client, written to the server log, or both is controlled by the `log_min_messages` and `client_min_messages` configuration variables. See Chapter 20 for more information.

The *msg* argument is given as a positional argument. For backward compatibility, more than one positional argument can be given. In that case, the string representation of the tuple of positional arguments becomes the message reported to the client.

The following keyword-only arguments are accepted:

```
detail
hint
sqlstate
schema_name
table_name
column_name
datatype_name
constraint_name
```

The string representation of the objects passed as keyword-only arguments is used to enrich the messages reported to the client. For example:

```
CREATE FUNCTION raise_custom_exception() RETURNS void AS $$
plpy.error("custom exception message",
           detail="some info about exception",
           hint="hint for users")
$$ LANGUAGE plpython3u;

=# SELECT raise_custom_exception();
ERROR:  plpy.Error: custom exception message
DETAIL:  some info about exception
HINT:   hint for users
CONTEXT:  Traceback (most recent call last):
         PL/Python function "raise_custom_exception", line 4, in <module>
           hint="hint for users")
         PL/Python function "raise_custom_exception"
```

Another set of utility functions are `plpy.quote_literal(string)`, `plpy.quote_nullable(string)`, and `plpy.quote_ident(string)`. They are equivalent to the built-in quoting functions described in Section 9.4. They are useful when constructing ad-hoc queries. A PL/Python equivalent of dynamic SQL from Example 43.1 would be:

```
plpy.execute("UPDATE tbl SET %s = %s WHERE key = %s" % (
    plpy.quote_ident(colname),
    plpy.quote_nullable(newvalue),
    plpy.quote_literal(keyvalue)))
```

## 46.10. Python 2 vs. Python 3

PL/Python supports only Python 3. Past versions of PostgreSQL supported Python 2, using the `plpythonu` and `plpython2u` language names.

## 46.11. Environment Variables

Some of the environment variables that are accepted by the Python interpreter can also be used to affect PL/Python behavior. They would need to be set in the environment of the main PostgreSQL server process, for example in a start script. The available environment variables depend on the version of Python; see the Python documentation for details. At the time of this writing, the following environment variables have an affect on PL/Python, assuming an adequate Python version:

- PYTHONHOME
- PYTHONPATH
- PYTHON2K
- PYTHONOPTIMIZE
- PYTHONDEBUG
- PYTHONVERBOSE
- PYTHONCASEOK
- PYTHONDONTWRITEBYTECODE
- PYTHONIOENCODING
- PYTHONUSERBASE
- PYTHONHASHSEED

(It appears to be a Python implementation detail beyond the control of PL/Python that some of the environment variables listed on the `python` man page are only effective in a command-line interpreter and not an embedded Python interpreter.)

---

# Chapter 47. Server Programming Interface

The *Server Programming Interface* (SPI) gives writers of user-defined C functions the ability to run SQL commands inside their functions or procedures. SPI is a set of interface functions to simplify access to the parser, planner, and executor. SPI also does some memory management.

## Note

The available procedural languages provide various means to execute SQL commands from functions. Most of these facilities are based on SPI, so this documentation might be of use for users of those languages as well.

Note that if a command invoked via SPI fails, then control will not be returned to your C function. Rather, the transaction or subtransaction in which your C function executes will be rolled back. (This might seem surprising given that the SPI functions mostly have documented error-return conventions. Those conventions only apply for errors detected within the SPI functions themselves, however.) It is possible to recover control after an error by establishing your own subtransaction surrounding SPI calls that might fail.

SPI functions return a nonnegative result on success (either via a returned integer value or in the global variable `SPI_result`, as described below). On error, a negative result or `NULL` will be returned.

Source code files that use SPI must include the header file `executor/spi.h`.

## 47.1. Interface Functions

## SPI\_connect

SPI\_connect, SPI\_connect\_ext — connect a C function to the SPI manager

## Synopsis

```
int SPI_connect(void)
```

```
int SPI_connect_ext(int options)
```

## Description

SPI\_connect opens a connection from a C function invocation to the SPI manager. You must call this function if you want to execute commands through SPI. Some utility SPI functions can be called from unconnected C functions.

SPI\_connect\_ext does the same but has an argument that allows passing option flags. Currently, the following option values are available:

SPI\_OPT\_NONATOMIC

Sets the SPI connection to be *nonatomic*, which means that transaction control calls (SPI\_commit, SPI\_rollback) are allowed. Otherwise, calling those functions will result in an immediate error.

SPI\_connect ( ) is equivalent to SPI\_connect\_ext ( 0 ).

## Return Value

SPI\_OK\_CONNECT

on success

SPI\_ERROR\_CONNECT

on error

## SPI\_finish

SPI\_finish — disconnect a C function from the SPI manager

## Synopsis

```
int SPI_finish(void)
```

## Description

SPI\_finish closes an existing connection to the SPI manager. You must call this function after completing the SPI operations needed during your C function's current invocation. You do not need to worry about making this happen, however, if you abort the transaction via `elog(ERROR)`. In that case SPI will clean itself up automatically.

## Return Value

SPI\_OK\_FINISH

if properly disconnected

SPI\_ERROR\_UNCONNECTED

if called from an unconnected C function



## SPI\_execute

SPI\_execute — execute a command

## Synopsis

```
int SPI_execute(const char * command, bool read_only, long count)
```

## Description

SPI\_execute executes the specified SQL command for *count* rows. If *read\_only* is true, the command must be read-only, and execution overhead is somewhat reduced.

This function can only be called from a connected C function.

If *count* is zero then the command is executed for all rows that it applies to. If *count* is greater than zero, then no more than *count* rows will be retrieved; execution stops when the count is reached, much like adding a LIMIT clause to the query. For example,

```
SPI_execute("SELECT * FROM foo", true, 5);
```

will retrieve at most 5 rows from the table. Note that such a limit is only effective when the command actually returns rows. For example,

```
SPI_execute("INSERT INTO foo SELECT * FROM bar", false, 5);
```

inserts all rows from bar, ignoring the *count* parameter. However, with

```
SPI_execute("INSERT INTO foo SELECT * FROM bar RETURNING *", false, 5);
```

at most 5 rows would be inserted, since execution would stop after the fifth RETURNING result row is retrieved.

You can pass multiple commands in one string; SPI\_execute returns the result for the command executed last. The *count* limit applies to each command separately (even though only the last result will actually be returned). The limit is not applied to any hidden commands generated by rules.

When *read\_only* is false, SPI\_execute increments the command counter and computes a new *snapshot* before executing each command in the string. The snapshot does not actually change if the current transaction isolation level is SERIALIZABLE or REPEATABLE READ, but in READ COMMITTED mode the snapshot update allows each command to see the results of newly committed transactions from other sessions. This is essential for consistent behavior when the commands are modifying the database.

When *read\_only* is true, SPI\_execute does not update either the snapshot or the command counter, and it allows only plain SELECT commands to appear in the command string. The commands are executed using the snapshot previously established for the surrounding query. This execution mode is somewhat faster than the read/write mode due to eliminating per-command overhead. It also allows genuinely *stable* functions to be built: since successive executions will all use the same snapshot, there will be no change in the results.

It is generally unwise to mix read-only and read-write commands within a single function using SPI; that could result in very confusing behavior, since the read-only queries would not see the results of any database updates done by the read-write queries.

The actual number of rows for which the (last) command was executed is returned in the global variable `SPI_processed`. If the return value of the function is `SPI_OK_SELECT`, `SPI_OK_INSERT_RETURNING`, `SPI_OK_DELETE_RETURNING`, or `SPI_OK_UPDATE_RETURNING`, then you can use the global pointer `SPITupleTable *SPI_tuptable` to access the result rows. Some utility commands (such as `EXPLAIN`) also return row sets, and `SPI_tuptable` will contain the result in these cases too. Some utility commands (`COPY`, `CREATE TABLE AS`) don't return a row set, so `SPI_tuptable` is `NULL`, but they still return the number of rows processed in `SPI_processed`.

The structure `SPITupleTable` is defined thus:

```
typedef struct SPITupleTable
{
    /* Public members */
    TupleDesc    tupdesc;          /* tuple descriptor */
    HeapTuple    *vals;            /* array of tuples */
    uint64        numvals;         /* number of valid tuples */

    /* Private members, not intended for external callers */
    uint64        allocated;       /* allocated length of vals array */
    /*
     * MemoryContext tuptabcxt;    /* memory context of result table
     */
    slist_node    next;            /* link for internal bookkeeping */
    SubTransactionId subid;        /* subxact in which tuptable was
     * created */
} SPITupleTable;
```

The fields `tupdesc`, `vals`, and `numvals` can be used by SPI callers; the remaining fields are internal. `vals` is an array of pointers to rows. The number of rows is given by `numvals` (for somewhat historical reasons, this count is also returned in `SPI_processed`). `tupdesc` is a row descriptor which you can pass to SPI functions dealing with rows.

`SPI_finish` frees all `SPITupleTables` allocated during the current C function. You can free a particular result table earlier, if you are done with it, by calling `SPI_freetuptable`.

## Arguments

`const char * command`

string containing command to execute

`bool read_only`

true for read-only execution

`long count`

maximum number of rows to return, or 0 for no limit

## Return Value

If the execution of the command was successful then one of the following (nonnegative) values will be returned:

`SPI_OK_SELECT`

if a `SELECT` (but not `SELECT INTO`) was executed

SPI\_OK\_SELINTO

if a `SELECT INTO` was executed

SPI\_OK\_INSERT

if an `INSERT` was executed

SPI\_OK\_DELETE

if a `DELETE` was executed

SPI\_OK\_UPDATE

if an `UPDATE` was executed

SPI\_OK\_MERGE

if a `MERGE` was executed

SPI\_OK\_INSERT\_RETURNING

if an `INSERT RETURNING` was executed

SPI\_OK\_DELETE\_RETURNING

if a `DELETE RETURNING` was executed

SPI\_OK\_UPDATE\_RETURNING

if an `UPDATE RETURNING` was executed

SPI\_OK\_UTILITY

if a utility command (e.g., `CREATE TABLE`) was executed

SPI\_OK\_REWRITTEN

if the command was rewritten into another kind of command (e.g., `UPDATE` became an `INSERT`) by a rule.

On error, one of the following negative values is returned:

SPI\_ERROR\_ARGUMENT

if *command* is `NULL` or *count* is less than 0

SPI\_ERROR\_COPY

if `COPY TO stdout` or `COPY FROM stdin` was attempted

SPI\_ERROR\_TRANSACTION

if a transaction manipulation command was attempted (`BEGIN`, `COMMIT`, `ROLLBACK`, `SAVE-POINT`, `PREPARE TRANSACTION`, `COMMIT PREPARED`, `ROLLBACK PREPARED`, or any variant thereof)

SPI\_ERROR\_OPUNKNOWN

if the command type is unknown (shouldn't happen)

SPI\_ERROR\_UNCONNECTED

if called from an unconnected C function

## Notes

All SPI query-execution functions set both `SPI_processed` and `SPI_tuptable` (just the pointer, not the contents of the structure). Save these two global variables into local C function variables if you need to access the result table of `SPI_execute` or another query-execution function across later calls.

## SPI\_exec

SPI\_exec — execute a read/write command

## Synopsis

```
int SPI_exec(const char * command, long count)
```

## Description

SPI\_exec is the same as SPI\_execute, with the latter's *read\_only* parameter always taken as false.

## Arguments

`const char * command`

string containing command to execute

`long count`

maximum number of rows to return, or 0 for no limit

## Return Value

See SPI\_execute.

## SPI\_execute\_extended

SPI\_execute\_extended — execute a command with out-of-line parameters

### Synopsis

```
int SPI_execute_extended(const char *command,
                        const SPIExecuteOptions * options)
```

### Description

SPI\_execute\_extended executes a command that might include references to externally supplied parameters. The command text refers to a parameter as  $\$n$ , and the *options->params* object (if supplied) provides values and type information for each such symbol. Various execution options can be specified in the *options* struct, too.

The *options->params* object should normally mark each parameter with the PARAM\_FLAG\_CONST flag, since a one-shot plan is always used for the query.

If *options->dest* is not NULL, then result tuples are passed to that object as they are generated by the executor, instead of being accumulated in SPI\_tuptable. Using a caller-supplied DestReceiver object is particularly helpful for queries that might generate many tuples, since the data can be processed on-the-fly instead of being accumulated in memory.

### Arguments

const char \* *command*

command string

const SPIExecuteOptions \* *options*

struct containing optional arguments

Callers should always zero out the entire *options* struct, then fill whichever fields they want to set. This ensures forward compatibility of code, since any fields that are added to the struct in future will be defined to behave backwards-compatibly if they are zero. The currently available *options* fields are:

ParamListInfo *params*

data structure containing query parameter types and values; NULL if none

bool *read\_only*

true for read-only execution

bool *allow\_nonatomic*

true allows non-atomic execution of CALL and DO statements

bool *must\_return\_tuples*

if true, raise error if the query is not of a kind that returns tuples (this does not forbid the case where it happens to return zero tuples)

uint64 *tcount*

maximum number of rows to return, or 0 for no limit

`DestReceiver * dest`

`DestReceiver` object that will receive any tuples emitted by the query; if `NULL`, result tuples are accumulated into a `SPI_tuptable` structure, as in `SPI_execute`

`ResourceOwner owner`

This field is present for consistency with `SPI_execute_plan_extended`, but it is ignored, since the plan used by `SPI_execute_extended` is never saved.

## Return Value

The return value is the same as for `SPI_execute`.

When `options->dest` is `NULL`, `SPI_processed` and `SPI_tuptable` are set as in `SPI_execute`. When `options->dest` is not `NULL`, `SPI_processed` is set to zero and `SPI_tuptable` is set to `NULL`. If a tuple count is required, the caller's `DestReceiver` object must calculate it.

## SPI\_execute\_with\_args

SPI\_execute\_with\_args — execute a command with out-of-line parameters

### Synopsis

```
int SPI_execute_with_args(const char *command,
                          int nargs, Oid *argtypes,
                          Datum *values, const char *nulls,
                          bool read_only, long count)
```

### Description

SPI\_execute\_with\_args executes a command that might include references to externally supplied parameters. The command text refers to a parameter as `$n`, and the call specifies data types and values for each such symbol. `read_only` and `count` have the same interpretation as in SPI\_execute.

The main advantage of this routine compared to SPI\_execute is that data values can be inserted into the command without tedious quoting/escaping, and thus with much less risk of SQL-injection attacks.

Similar results can be achieved with SPI\_prepare followed by SPI\_execute\_plan; however, when using this function the query plan is always customized to the specific parameter values provided. For one-time query execution, this function should be preferred. If the same command is to be executed with many different parameters, either method might be faster, depending on the cost of re-planning versus the benefit of custom plans.

### Arguments

`const char * command`

command string

`int nargs`

number of input parameters (\$1, \$2, etc.)

`Oid * argtypes`

an array of length `nargs`, containing the OIDs of the data types of the parameters

`Datum * values`

an array of length `nargs`, containing the actual parameter values

`const char * nulls`

an array of length `nargs`, describing which parameters are null

If `nulls` is NULL then SPI\_execute\_with\_args assumes that no parameters are null. Otherwise, each entry of the `nulls` array should be ' ' if the corresponding parameter value is non-null, or 'n' if the corresponding parameter value is null. (In the latter case, the actual value in the corresponding `values` entry doesn't matter.) Note that `nulls` is not a text string, just an array: it does not need a '\0' terminator.

`bool read_only`

true for read-only execution



`long count`

maximum number of rows to return, or 0 for no limit

## Return Value

The return value is the same as for `SPI_execute`.

`SPI_processed` and `SPI_tuptable` are set as in `SPI_execute` if successful.

## SPI\_prepare

SPI\_prepare — prepare a statement, without executing it yet

## Synopsis

```
SPIPlanPtr SPI_prepare(const char * command, int nargs, Oid  
* argtypes)
```

## Description

SPI\_prepare creates and returns a prepared statement for the specified command, but doesn't execute the command. The prepared statement can later be executed repeatedly using SPI\_execute\_plan.

When the same or a similar command is to be executed repeatedly, it is generally advantageous to perform parse analysis only once, and might furthermore be advantageous to re-use an execution plan for the command. SPI\_prepare converts a command string into a prepared statement that encapsulates the results of parse analysis. The prepared statement also provides a place for caching an execution plan if it is found that generating a custom plan for each execution is not helpful.

A prepared command can be generalized by writing parameters (\$1, \$2, etc.) in place of what would be constants in a normal command. The actual values of the parameters are then specified when SPI\_execute\_plan is called. This allows the prepared command to be used over a wider range of situations than would be possible without parameters.

The statement returned by SPI\_prepare can be used only in the current invocation of the C function, since SPI\_finish frees memory allocated for such a statement. But the statement can be saved for longer using the functions SPI\_keepplan or SPI\_saveplan.

## Arguments

const char \* *command*

command string

int *nargs*

number of input parameters (\$1, \$2, etc.)

Oid \* *argtypes*

pointer to an array containing the OIDs of the data types of the parameters

## Return Value

SPI\_prepare returns a non-null pointer to an SPIPlan, which is an opaque struct representing a prepared statement. On error, NULL will be returned, and SPI\_result will be set to one of the same error codes used by SPI\_execute, except that it is set to SPI\_ERROR\_ARGUMENT if *command* is NULL, or if *nargs* is less than 0, or if *nargs* is greater than 0 and *argtypes* is NULL.

## Notes

If no parameters are defined, a generic plan will be created at the first use of SPI\_execute\_plan, and used for all subsequent executions as well. If there are parameters, the first few uses of SPI\_execute\_plan will generate custom plans that are specific to the supplied parameter values. Af-

ter enough uses of the same prepared statement, `SPI_execute_plan` will build a generic plan, and if that is not too much more expensive than the custom plans, it will start using the generic plan instead of re-planning each time. If this default behavior is unsuitable, you can alter it by passing the `CURSOR_OPT_GENERIC_PLAN` or `CURSOR_OPT_CUSTOM_PLAN` flag to `SPI_prepare_cursor`, to force use of generic or custom plans respectively.

Although the main point of a prepared statement is to avoid repeated parse analysis and planning of the statement, PostgreSQL will force re-analysis and re-planning of the statement before using it whenever database objects used in the statement have undergone definitional (DDL) changes since the previous use of the prepared statement. Also, if the value of `search_path` changes from one use to the next, the statement will be re-parsed using the new `search_path`. (This latter behavior is new as of PostgreSQL 9.3.) See `PREPARE` for more information about the behavior of prepared statements.

This function should only be called from a connected C function.

`SPIPlanPtr` is declared as a pointer to an opaque struct type in `spi.h`. It is unwise to try to access its contents directly, as that makes your code much more likely to break in future revisions of PostgreSQL.

The name `SPIPlanPtr` is somewhat historical, since the data structure no longer necessarily contains an execution plan.

## SPI\_prepare\_cursor

SPI\_prepare\_cursor — prepare a statement, without executing it yet

## Synopsis

```
SPIPlanPtr SPI_prepare_cursor(const char * command, int nargs,  
                             Oid * argtypes, int cursorOptions)
```

## Description

SPI\_prepare\_cursor is identical to SPI\_prepare, except that it also allows specification of the planner's "cursor options" parameter. This is a bit mask having the values shown in nodes/parsenodes.h for the options field of DeclareCursorStmt. SPI\_prepare always takes the cursor options as zero.

This function is now deprecated in favor of SPI\_prepare\_extended.

## Arguments

const char \* *command*

command string

int *nargs*

number of input parameters (\$1, \$2, etc.)

Oid \* *argtypes*

pointer to an array containing the OIDs of the data types of the parameters

int *cursorOptions*

integer bit mask of cursor options; zero produces default behavior

## Return Value

SPI\_prepare\_cursor has the same return conventions as SPI\_prepare.

## Notes

Useful bits to set in *cursorOptions* include CURSOR\_OPT\_SCROLL, CURSOR\_OPT\_NO\_SCROLL, CURSOR\_OPT\_FAST\_PLAN, CURSOR\_OPT\_GENERIC\_PLAN, and CURSOR\_OPT\_CUSTOM\_PLAN. Note in particular that CURSOR\_OPT\_HOLD is ignored.

## SPI\_prepare\_extended

SPI\_prepare\_extended — prepare a statement, without executing it yet

## Synopsis

```
SPIPlanPtr SPI_prepare_extended(const char * command,
                               const SPIPrepareOptions * options)
```

## Description

SPI\_prepare\_extended creates and returns a prepared statement for the specified command, but doesn't execute the command. This function is equivalent to SPI\_prepare, with the addition that the caller can specify options to control the parsing of external parameter references, as well as other facets of query parsing and planning.

## Arguments

const char \* *command*

command string

const SPIPrepareOptions \* *options*

struct containing optional arguments

Callers should always zero out the entire *options* struct, then fill whichever fields they want to set. This ensures forward compatibility of code, since any fields that are added to the struct in future will be defined to behave backwards-compatibly if they are zero. The currently available *options* fields are:

ParserSetupHook *parserSetup*

Parser hook setup function

void \* *parserSetupArg*

pass-through argument for *parserSetup*

RawParseMode *parseMode*

mode for raw parsing; RAW\_PARSE\_DEFAULT (zero) produces default behavior

int *cursorOptions*

integer bit mask of cursor options; zero produces default behavior

## Return Value

SPI\_prepare\_extended has the same return conventions as SPI\_prepare.

## SPI\_prepare\_params

SPI\_prepare\_params — prepare a statement, without executing it yet

## Synopsis

```
SPIPlanPtr SPI_prepare_params(const char * command,
                             ParserSetupHook parserSetup,
                             void * parserSetupArg,
                             int cursorOptions)
```

## Description

SPI\_prepare\_params creates and returns a prepared statement for the specified command, but doesn't execute the command. This function is equivalent to SPI\_prepare\_cursor, with the addition that the caller can specify parser hook functions to control the parsing of external parameter references.

This function is now deprecated in favor of SPI\_prepare\_extended.

## Arguments

const char \* *command*

command string

ParserSetupHook *parserSetup*

Parser hook setup function

void \* *parserSetupArg*

pass-through argument for *parserSetup*

int *cursorOptions*

integer bit mask of cursor options; zero produces default behavior

## Return Value

SPI\_prepare\_params has the same return conventions as SPI\_prepare.

## SPI\_getargcount

`SPI_getargcount` — return the number of arguments needed by a statement prepared by `SPI_prepare`

## Synopsis

```
int SPI_getargcount(SPIPlanPtr plan)
```

## Description

`SPI_getargcount` returns the number of arguments needed to execute a statement prepared by `SPI_prepare`.

## Arguments

`SPIPlanPtr plan`

prepared statement (returned by `SPI_prepare`)

## Return Value

The count of expected arguments for the *plan*. If the *plan* is `NULL` or invalid, `SPI_result` is set to `SPI_ERROR_ARGUMENT` and -1 is returned.

## SPI\_getargtypeid

SPI\_getargtypeid — return the data type OID for an argument of a statement prepared by SPI\_prepare

## Synopsis

```
Oid SPI_getargtypeid(SPIPlanPtr plan, int argIndex)
```

## Description

SPI\_getargtypeid returns the OID representing the type for the *argIndex*'th argument of a statement prepared by SPI\_prepare. First argument is at index zero.

## Arguments

SPIPlanPtr *plan*

prepared statement (returned by SPI\_prepare)

int *argIndex*

zero based index of the argument

## Return Value

The type OID of the argument at the given index. If the *plan* is NULL or invalid, or *argIndex* is less than 0 or not less than the number of arguments declared for the *plan*, SPI\_result is set to SPI\_ERROR\_ARGUMENT and InvalidOid is returned.



## SPI\_is\_cursor\_plan

`SPI_is_cursor_plan` — return `true` if a statement prepared by `SPI_prepare` can be used with `SPI_cursor_open`

## Synopsis

```
bool SPI_is_cursor_plan(SPIPlanPtr plan)
```

## Description

`SPI_is_cursor_plan` returns `true` if a statement prepared by `SPI_prepare` can be passed as an argument to `SPI_cursor_open`, or `false` if that is not the case. The criteria are that the *plan* represents one single command and that this command returns tuples to the caller; for example, `SELECT` is allowed unless it contains an `INTO` clause, and `UPDATE` is allowed only if it contains a `RETURNING` clause.

## Arguments

`SPIPlanPtr plan`

prepared statement (returned by `SPI_prepare`)

## Return Value

`true` or `false` to indicate if the *plan* can produce a cursor or not, with `SPI_result` set to zero. If it is not possible to determine the answer (for example, if the *plan* is `NULL` or invalid, or if called when not connected to SPI), then `SPI_result` is set to a suitable error code and `false` is returned.

## SPI\_execute\_plan

SPI\_execute\_plan — execute a statement prepared by SPI\_prepare

## Synopsis

```
int SPI_execute_plan(SPIPlanPtr plan, Datum * values, const char
    * nulls,
                    bool read_only, long count)
```

## Description

SPI\_execute\_plan executes a statement prepared by SPI\_prepare or one of its siblings. *read\_only* and *count* have the same interpretation as in SPI\_execute.

## Arguments

SPIPlanPtr *plan*

prepared statement (returned by SPI\_prepare)

Datum \* *values*

An array of actual parameter values. Must have same length as the statement's number of arguments.

const char \* *nulls*

An array describing which parameters are null. Must have same length as the statement's number of arguments.

If *nulls* is NULL then SPI\_execute\_plan assumes that no parameters are null. Otherwise, each entry of the *nulls* array should be ' ' if the corresponding parameter value is non-null, or 'n' if the corresponding parameter value is null. (In the latter case, the actual value in the corresponding *values* entry doesn't matter.) Note that *nulls* is not a text string, just an array: it does not need a '\0' terminator.

bool *read\_only*

true for read-only execution

long *count*

maximum number of rows to return, or 0 for no limit

## Return Value

The return value is the same as for SPI\_execute, with the following additional possible error (negative) results:

SPI\_ERROR\_ARGUMENT

if *plan* is NULL or invalid, or *count* is less than 0

SPI\_ERROR\_PARAM

if *values* is NULL and *plan* was prepared with some parameters

`SPI_processed` and `SPI_tuptable` are set as in `SPI_execute` if successful.

## SPI\_execute\_plan\_extended

SPI\_execute\_plan\_extended — execute a statement prepared by SPI\_prepare

### Synopsis

```
int SPI_execute_plan_extended(SPIPlanPtr plan,
                             const SPIExecuteOptions * options)
```

### Description

SPI\_execute\_plan\_extended executes a statement prepared by SPI\_prepare or one of its siblings. This function is equivalent to SPI\_execute\_plan, except that information about the parameter values to be passed to the query is presented differently, and additional execution-controlling options can be passed.

Query parameter values are represented by a ParamListInfo struct, which is convenient for passing down values that are already available in that format. Dynamic parameter sets can also be used, via hook functions specified in ParamListInfo.

Also, instead of always accumulating the result tuples into a SPI\_tuptable structure, tuples can be passed to a caller-supplied DestReceiver object as they are generated by the executor. This is particularly helpful for queries that might generate many tuples, since the data can be processed on-the-fly instead of being accumulated in memory.

### Arguments

SPIPlanPtr *plan*

prepared statement (returned by SPI\_prepare)

const SPIExecuteOptions \* *options*

struct containing optional arguments

Callers should always zero out the entire *options* struct, then fill whichever fields they want to set. This ensures forward compatibility of code, since any fields that are added to the struct in future will be defined to behave backwards-compatibly if they are zero. The currently available *options* fields are:

ParamListInfo *params*

data structure containing query parameter types and values; NULL if none

bool *read\_only*

true for read-only execution

bool *allow\_nonatomic*

true allows non-atomic execution of CALL and DO statements

bool *must\_return\_tuples*

if true, raise error if the query is not of a kind that returns tuples (this does not forbid the case where it happens to return zero tuples)

uint64 *tcount*

maximum number of rows to return, or 0 for no limit

`DestReceiver * dest`

`DestReceiver` object that will receive any tuples emitted by the query; if `NULL`, result tuples are accumulated into a `SPI_tuptable` structure, as in `SPI_execute_plan`

`ResourceOwner owner`

The resource owner that will hold a reference count on the plan while it is executed. If `NULL`, `CurrentResourceOwner` is used. Ignored for non-saved plans, as SPI does not acquire reference counts on those.

## Return Value

The return value is the same as for `SPI_execute_plan`.

When `options->dest` is `NULL`, `SPI_processed` and `SPI_tuptable` are set as in `SPI_execute_plan`. When `options->dest` is not `NULL`, `SPI_processed` is set to zero and `SPI_tuptable` is set to `NULL`. If a tuple count is required, the caller's `DestReceiver` object must calculate it.

## SPI\_execute\_plan\_with\_paramlist

SPI\_execute\_plan\_with\_paramlist — execute a statement prepared by SPI\_prepare

### Synopsis

```
int SPI_execute_plan_with_paramlist(SPIPlanPtr plan,
                                   ParamListInfo params,
                                   bool read_only,
                                   long count)
```

### Description

SPI\_execute\_plan\_with\_paramlist executes a statement prepared by SPI\_prepare. This function is equivalent to SPI\_execute\_plan except that information about the parameter values to be passed to the query is presented differently. The ParamListInfo representation can be convenient for passing down values that are already available in that format. It also supports use of dynamic parameter sets via hook functions specified in ParamListInfo.

This function is now deprecated in favor of SPI\_execute\_plan\_extended.

### Arguments

SPIPlanPtr *plan*

prepared statement (returned by SPI\_prepare)

ParamListInfo *params*

data structure containing parameter types and values; NULL if none

bool *read\_only*

true for read-only execution

long *count*

maximum number of rows to return, or 0 for no limit

### Return Value

The return value is the same as for SPI\_execute\_plan.

SPI\_processed and SPI\_tuptable are set as in SPI\_execute\_plan if successful.

## SPI\_execp

SPI\_execp — execute a statement in read/write mode

## Synopsis

```
int SPI_execp(SPIPlanPtr plan, Datum * values, const char * nulls,
              long count)
```

## Description

SPI\_execp is the same as SPI\_execute\_plan, with the latter's *read\_only* parameter always taken as false.

## Arguments

SPIPlanPtr *plan*

prepared statement (returned by SPI\_prepare)

Datum \* *values*

An array of actual parameter values. Must have same length as the statement's number of arguments.

const char \* *nulls*

An array describing which parameters are null. Must have same length as the statement's number of arguments.

If *nulls* is NULL then SPI\_execp assumes that no parameters are null. Otherwise, each entry of the *nulls* array should be ' ' if the corresponding parameter value is non-null, or 'n' if the corresponding parameter value is null. (In the latter case, the actual value in the corresponding *values* entry doesn't matter.) Note that *nulls* is not a text string, just an array: it does not need a '\0' terminator.

long *count*

maximum number of rows to return, or 0 for no limit

## Return Value

See SPI\_execute\_plan.

SPI\_processed and SPI\_tuptable are set as in SPI\_execute if successful.

## SPI\_cursor\_open

SPI\_cursor\_open — set up a cursor using a statement created with SPI\_prepare

### Synopsis

```
Portal SPI_cursor_open(const char * name, SPIPlanPtr plan,
                      Datum * values, const char * nulls,
                      bool read_only)
```

### Description

SPI\_cursor\_open sets up a cursor (internally, a portal) that will execute a statement prepared by SPI\_prepare. The parameters have the same meanings as the corresponding parameters to SPI\_execute\_plan.

Using a cursor instead of executing the statement directly has two benefits. First, the result rows can be retrieved a few at a time, avoiding memory overrun for queries that return many rows. Second, a portal can outlive the current C function (it can, in fact, live to the end of the current transaction). Returning the portal name to the C function's caller provides a way of returning a row set as result.

The passed-in parameter data will be copied into the cursor's portal, so it can be freed while the cursor still exists.

### Arguments

const char \* name

name for portal, or NULL to let the system select a name

SPIPlanPtr plan

prepared statement (returned by SPI\_prepare)

Datum \* values

An array of actual parameter values. Must have same length as the statement's number of arguments.

const char \* nulls

An array describing which parameters are null. Must have same length as the statement's number of arguments.

If *nulls* is NULL then SPI\_cursor\_open assumes that no parameters are null. Otherwise, each entry of the *nulls* array should be ' ' if the corresponding parameter value is non-null, or 'n' if the corresponding parameter value is null. (In the latter case, the actual value in the corresponding *values* entry doesn't matter.) Note that *nulls* is not a text string, just an array: it does not need a '\0' terminator.

bool read\_only

true for read-only execution

### Return Value

Pointer to portal containing the cursor. Note there is no error return convention; any error will be reported via elog.



## SPI\_cursor\_open\_with\_args

SPI\_cursor\_open\_with\_args — set up a cursor using a query and parameters

### Synopsis

```
Portal SPI_cursor_open_with_args(const char *name,
                                const char *command,
                                int nargs, Oid *argtypes,
                                Datum *values, const char *nulls,
                                bool read_only, int cursorOptions)
```

### Description

SPI\_cursor\_open\_with\_args sets up a cursor (internally, a portal) that will execute the specified query. Most of the parameters have the same meanings as the corresponding parameters to SPI\_prepare\_cursor and SPI\_cursor\_open.

For one-time query execution, this function should be preferred over SPI\_prepare\_cursor followed by SPI\_cursor\_open. If the same command is to be executed with many different parameters, either method might be faster, depending on the cost of re-planning versus the benefit of custom plans.

The passed-in parameter data will be copied into the cursor's portal, so it can be freed while the cursor still exists.

This function is now deprecated in favor of SPI\_cursor\_parse\_open, which provides equivalent functionality using a more modern API for handling query parameters.

### Arguments

`const char * name`

name for portal, or NULL to let the system select a name

`const char * command`

command string

`int nargs`

number of input parameters (\$1, \$2, etc.)

`Oid * argtypes`

an array of length *nargs*, containing the OIDs of the data types of the parameters

`Datum * values`

an array of length *nargs*, containing the actual parameter values

`const char * nulls`

an array of length *nargs*, describing which parameters are null

If *nulls* is NULL then SPI\_cursor\_open\_with\_args assumes that no parameters are null. Otherwise, each entry of the *nulls* array should be ' ' if the corresponding parameter

value is non-null, or 'n' if the corresponding parameter value is null. (In the latter case, the actual value in the corresponding *values* entry doesn't matter.) Note that *nulls* is not a text string, just an array: it does not need a '\0' terminator.

`bool read_only`

true for read-only execution

`int cursorOptions`

integer bit mask of cursor options; zero produces default behavior

## Return Value

Pointer to portal containing the cursor. Note there is no error return convention; any error will be reported via `elog`.

## SPI\_cursor\_open\_with\_paramlist

SPI\_cursor\_open\_with\_paramlist — set up a cursor using parameters

### Synopsis

```
Portal SPI_cursor_open_with_paramlist(const char *name,  
                                     SPIPlanPtr plan,  
                                     ParamListInfo params,  
                                     bool read_only)
```

### Description

SPI\_cursor\_open\_with\_paramlist sets up a cursor (internally, a portal) that will execute a statement prepared by SPI\_prepare. This function is equivalent to SPI\_cursor\_open except that information about the parameter values to be passed to the query is presented differently. The ParamListInfo representation can be convenient for passing down values that are already available in that format. It also supports use of dynamic parameter sets via hook functions specified in ParamListInfo.

The passed-in parameter data will be copied into the cursor's portal, so it can be freed while the cursor still exists.

### Arguments

const char \* *name*

name for portal, or NULL to let the system select a name

SPIPlanPtr *plan*

prepared statement (returned by SPI\_prepare)

ParamListInfo *params*

data structure containing parameter types and values; NULL if none

bool *read\_only*

true for read-only execution

### Return Value

Pointer to portal containing the cursor. Note there is no error return convention; any error will be reported via elog.

## SPI\_cursor\_parse\_open

SPI\_cursor\_parse\_open — set up a cursor using a query string and parameters

## Synopsis

```
Portal SPI_cursor_parse_open(const char *name,  
                             const char *command,  
                             const SPIParseOpenOptions * options)
```

## Description

SPI\_cursor\_parse\_open sets up a cursor (internally, a portal) that will execute the specified query string. This is comparable to SPI\_prepare\_cursor followed by SPI\_cursor\_open\_with\_paramlist, except that parameter references within the query string are handled entirely by supplying a ParamListInfo object.

For one-time query execution, this function should be preferred over SPI\_prepare\_cursor followed by SPI\_cursor\_open\_with\_paramlist. If the same command is to be executed with many different parameters, either method might be faster, depending on the cost of re-planning versus the benefit of custom plans.

The *options->params* object should normally mark each parameter with the PARAM\_FLAG\_CONST flag, since a one-shot plan is always used for the query.

The passed-in parameter data will be copied into the cursor's portal, so it can be freed while the cursor still exists.

## Arguments

const char \* *name*

name for portal, or NULL to let the system select a name

const char \* *command*

command string

const SPIParseOpenOptions \* *options*

struct containing optional arguments

Callers should always zero out the entire *options* struct, then fill whichever fields they want to set. This ensures forward compatibility of code, since any fields that are added to the struct in future will be defined to behave backwards-compatibly if they are zero. The currently available *options* fields are:

ParamListInfo *params*

data structure containing query parameter types and values; NULL if none

int *cursorOptions*

integer bit mask of cursor options; zero produces default behavior

bool *read\_only*

true for read-only execution

## Return Value

Pointer to portal containing the cursor. Note there is no error return convention; any error will be reported via `elog`.

## SPI\_cursor\_find

SPI\_cursor\_find — find an existing cursor by name

## Synopsis

```
Portal SPI_cursor_find(const char * name)
```

## Description

SPI\_cursor\_find finds an existing portal by name. This is primarily useful to resolve a cursor name returned as text by some other function.

## Arguments

```
const char * name
```

name of the portal

## Return Value

pointer to the portal with the specified name, or NULL if none was found

## Notes

Beware that this function can return a `Portal` object that does not have cursor-like properties; for example it might not return tuples. If you simply pass the `Portal` pointer to other SPI functions, they can defend themselves against such cases, but caution is appropriate when directly inspecting the `Portal`.

## SPI\_cursor\_fetch

SPI\_cursor\_fetch — fetch some rows from a cursor

## Synopsis

```
void SPI_cursor_fetch(Portal portal, bool forward, long count)
```

## Description

SPI\_cursor\_fetch fetches some rows from a cursor. This is equivalent to a subset of the SQL command `FETCH` (see SPI\_scroll\_cursor\_fetch for more functionality).

## Arguments

Portal *portal*

portal containing the cursor

bool *forward*

true for fetch forward, false for fetch backward

long *count*

maximum number of rows to fetch

## Return Value

SPI\_processed and SPI\_tuptable are set as in SPI\_execute if successful.

## Notes

Fetching backward may fail if the cursor's plan was not created with the `CURSOR_OPT_SCROLL` option.

## SPI\_cursor\_move

SPI\_cursor\_move — move a cursor

## Synopsis

```
void SPI_cursor_move(Portal portal, bool forward, long count)
```

## Description

SPI\_cursor\_move skips over some number of rows in a cursor. This is equivalent to a subset of the SQL command MOVE (see SPI\_scroll\_cursor\_move for more functionality).

## Arguments

Portal *portal*

portal containing the cursor

bool *forward*

true for move forward, false for move backward

long *count*

maximum number of rows to move

## Notes

Moving backward may fail if the cursor's plan was not created with the CURSOR\_OPT\_SCROLL option.



## SPI\_scroll\_cursor\_fetch

SPI\_scroll\_cursor\_fetch — fetch some rows from a cursor

## Synopsis

```
void SPI_scroll_cursor_fetch(Portal portal,
                             FetchDirection direction,
                             long count)
```

## Description

SPI\_scroll\_cursor\_fetch fetches some rows from a cursor. This is equivalent to the SQL command FETCH.

## Arguments

Portal *portal*

portal containing the cursor

FetchDirection *direction*

one of FETCH\_FORWARD, FETCH\_BACKWARD, FETCH\_ABSOLUTE or FETCH\_RELATIVE

long *count*

number of rows to fetch for FETCH\_FORWARD or FETCH\_BACKWARD; absolute row number to fetch for FETCH\_ABSOLUTE; or relative row number to fetch for FETCH\_RELATIVE

## Return Value

SPI\_processed and SPI\_tuptable are set as in SPI\_execute if successful.

## Notes

See the SQL FETCH command for details of the interpretation of the *direction* and *count* parameters.

Direction values other than FETCH\_FORWARD may fail if the cursor's plan was not created with the CURSOR\_OPT\_SCROLL option.

## SPI\_scroll\_cursor\_move

SPI\_scroll\_cursor\_move — move a cursor

### Synopsis

```
void SPI_scroll_cursor_move(Portal portal,
    FetchDirection direction,
                           long count)
```

### Description

SPI\_scroll\_cursor\_move skips over some number of rows in a cursor. This is equivalent to the SQL command MOVE.

### Arguments

Portal *portal*

portal containing the cursor

FetchDirection *direction*

one of FETCH\_FORWARD, FETCH\_BACKWARD, FETCH\_ABSOLUTE or FETCH\_RELATIVE

long *count*

number of rows to move for FETCH\_FORWARD or FETCH\_BACKWARD; absolute row number to move to for FETCH\_ABSOLUTE; or relative row number to move to for FETCH\_RELATIVE

### Return Value

SPI\_processed is set as in SPI\_execute if successful. SPI\_tuptable is set to NULL, since no rows are returned by this function.

### Notes

See the SQL FETCH command for details of the interpretation of the *direction* and *count* parameters.

Direction values other than FETCH\_FORWARD may fail if the cursor's plan was not created with the CURSOR\_OPT\_SCROLL option.

## SPI\_cursor\_close

SPI\_cursor\_close — close a cursor

### Synopsis

```
void SPI_cursor_close(Portal portal)
```

### Description

SPI\_cursor\_close closes a previously created cursor and releases its portal storage.

All open cursors are closed automatically at the end of a transaction. SPI\_cursor\_close need only be invoked if it is desirable to release resources sooner.

### Arguments

Portal *portal*

portal containing the cursor

## SPI\_keepplan

SPI\_keepplan — save a prepared statement

## Synopsis

```
int SPI_keepplan(SPIPlanPtr plan)
```

## Description

SPI\_keepplan saves a passed statement (prepared by SPI\_prepare) so that it will not be freed by SPI\_finish nor by the transaction manager. This gives you the ability to reuse prepared statements in the subsequent invocations of your C function in the current session.

## Arguments

SPIPlanPtr *plan*

the prepared statement to be saved

## Return Value

0 on success; SPI\_ERROR\_ARGUMENT if *plan* is NULL or invalid

## Notes

The passed-in statement is relocated to permanent storage by means of pointer adjustment (no data copying is required). If you later wish to delete it, use SPI\_freeplan on it.

## SPI\_saveplan

SPI\_saveplan — save a prepared statement

## Synopsis

```
SPIPlanPtr SPI_saveplan(SPIPlanPtr plan)
```

## Description

SPI\_saveplan copies a passed statement (prepared by SPI\_prepare) into memory that will not be freed by SPI\_finish nor by the transaction manager, and returns a pointer to the copied statement. This gives you the ability to reuse prepared statements in the subsequent invocations of your C function in the current session.

## Arguments

SPIPlanPtr *plan*

the prepared statement to be saved

## Return Value

Pointer to the copied statement; or NULL if unsuccessful. On error, SPI\_result is set thus:

SPI\_ERROR\_ARGUMENT

if *plan* is NULL or invalid

SPI\_ERROR\_UNCONNECTED

if called from an unconnected C function

## Notes

The originally passed-in statement is not freed, so you might wish to do SPI\_freeplan on it to avoid leaking memory until SPI\_finish.

In most cases, SPI\_keepplan is preferred to this function, since it accomplishes largely the same result without needing to physically copy the prepared statement's data structures.

## SPI\_register\_relation

SPI\_register\_relation — make an ephemeral named relation available by name in SPI queries

### Synopsis

```
int SPI_register_relation(EphemeralNamedRelation enr)
```

### Description

SPI\_register\_relation makes an ephemeral named relation, with associated information, available to queries planned and executed through the current SPI connection.

### Arguments

EphemeralNamedRelation *enr*

the ephemeral named relation registry entry

### Return Value

If the execution of the command was successful then the following (nonnegative) value will be returned:

SPI\_OK\_REL\_REGISTER

if the relation has been successfully registered by name

On error, one of the following negative values is returned:

SPI\_ERROR\_ARGUMENT

if *enr* is NULL or its name field is NULL

SPI\_ERROR\_UNCONNECTED

if called from an unconnected C function

SPI\_ERROR\_REL\_DUPLICATE

if the name specified in the name field of *enr* is already registered for this connection

## SPI\_unregister\_relation

SPI\_unregister\_relation — remove an ephemeral named relation from the registry

### Synopsis

```
int SPI_unregister_relation(const char * name)
```

### Description

SPI\_unregister\_relation removes an ephemeral named relation from the registry for the current connection.

### Arguments

`const char * name`

the relation registry entry name

### Return Value

If the execution of the command was successful then the following (nonnegative) value will be returned:

SPI\_OK\_REL\_UNREGISTER

if the tuplestore has been successfully removed from the registry

On error, one of the following negative values is returned:

SPI\_ERROR\_ARGUMENT

if *name* is NULL

SPI\_ERROR\_UNCONNECTED

if called from an unconnected C function

SPI\_ERROR\_REL\_NOT\_FOUND

if *name* is not found in the registry for the current connection

## SPI\_register\_trigger\_data

SPI\_register\_trigger\_data — make ephemeral trigger data available in SPI queries

### Synopsis

```
int SPI_register_trigger_data(TriggerData *tdata)
```

### Description

SPI\_register\_trigger\_data makes any ephemeral relations captured by a trigger available to queries planned and executed through the current SPI connection. Currently, this means the transition tables captured by an AFTER trigger defined with a REFERENCING OLD/NEW TABLE AS ... clause. This function should be called by a PL trigger handler function after connecting.

### Arguments

TriggerData \*tdata

the TriggerData object passed to a trigger handler function as fcinfo->context

### Return Value

If the execution of the command was successful then the following (nonnegative) value will be returned:

SPI\_OK\_TD\_REGISTER

if the captured trigger data (if any) has been successfully registered

On error, one of the following negative values is returned:

SPI\_ERROR\_ARGUMENT

if tdata is NULL

SPI\_ERROR\_UNCONNECTED

if called from an unconnected C function

SPI\_ERROR\_REL\_DUPLICATE

if the name of any trigger data transient relation is already registered for this connection

## 47.2. Interface Support Functions

The functions described here provide an interface for extracting information from result sets returned by SPI\_execute and other SPI functions.

All functions described in this section can be used by both connected and unconnected C functions.



## SPI\_fname

SPI\_fname — determine the column name for the specified column number

## Synopsis

```
char * SPI_fname(TupleDesc rowdesc, int colnumber)
```

## Description

SPI\_fname returns a copy of the column name of the specified column. (You can use `pfree` to release the copy of the name when you don't need it anymore.)

## Arguments

`TupleDesc rowdesc`

input row description

`int colnumber`

column number (count starts at 1)

## Return Value

The column name; NULL if `colnumber` is out of range. `SPI_result` set to `SPI_ERROR_NOATTRIBUTE` on error.

## SPI\_fnumber

SPI\_fnumber — determine the column number for the specified column name

## Synopsis

```
int SPI_fnumber(TupleDesc rowdesc, const char * colname)
```

## Description

SPI\_fnumber returns the column number for the column with the specified name.

If *colname* refers to a system column (e.g., *ctid*) then the appropriate negative column number will be returned. The caller should be careful to test the return value for exact equality to SPI\_ERROR\_NOATTRIBUTE to detect an error; testing the result for less than or equal to 0 is not correct unless system columns should be rejected.

## Arguments

`TupleDesc rowdesc`

input row description

`const char * colname`

column name

## Return Value

Column number (count starts at 1 for user-defined columns), or SPI\_ERROR\_NOATTRIBUTE if the named column was not found.

## SPI\_getvalue

SPI\_getvalue — return the string value of the specified column

## Synopsis

```
char * SPI_getvalue(HeapTuple row, TupleDesc rowdesc,  
    int colnumber)
```

## Description

SPI\_getvalue returns the string representation of the value of the specified column.

The result is returned in memory allocated using `palloc`. (You can use `pfree` to release the memory when you don't need it anymore.)

## Arguments

HeapTuple *row*

input row to be examined

TupleDesc *rowdesc*

input row description

int *colnumber*

column number (count starts at 1)

## Return Value

Column value, or NULL if the column is null, *colnumber* is out of range (SPI\_result is set to SPI\_ERROR\_NOATTRIBUTE), or no output function is available (SPI\_result is set to SPI\_ERROR\_NOOUTFUNC).

## SPI\_getbinval

SPI\_getbinval — return the binary value of the specified column

## Synopsis

```
Datum SPI_getbinval(HeapTuple row, TupleDesc rowdesc,
                    int colnumber,
                    bool * isnull)
```

## Description

SPI\_getbinval returns the value of the specified column in the internal form (as type Datum).

This function does not allocate new space for the datum. In the case of a pass-by-reference data type, the return value will be a pointer into the passed row.

## Arguments

HeapTuple *row*

input row to be examined

TupleDesc *rowdesc*

input row description

int *colnumber*

column number (count starts at 1)

bool \* *isnull*

flag for a null value in the column

## Return Value

The binary value of the column is returned. The variable pointed to by *isnull* is set to true if the column is null, else to false.

SPI\_result is set to SPI\_ERROR\_NOATTRIBUTE on error.

## SPI\_gettype

SPI\_gettype — return the data type name of the specified column

## Synopsis

```
char * SPI_gettype(TupleDesc rowdesc, int colnumber)
```

## Description

SPI\_gettype returns a copy of the data type name of the specified column. (You can use `pfree` to release the copy of the name when you don't need it anymore.)

## Arguments

`TupleDesc rowdesc`

input row description

`int colnumber`

column number (count starts at 1)

## Return Value

The data type name of the specified column, or NULL on error. `SPI_result` is set to `SPI_ERROR_NOATTRIBUTE` on error.

## SPI\_gettypeid

SPI\_gettypeid — return the data type OID of the specified column

## Synopsis

```
Oid SPI_gettypeid(TupleDesc rowdesc, int colnumber)
```

## Description

SPI\_gettypeid returns the OID of the data type of the specified column.

## Arguments

`TupleDesc rowdesc`

input row description

`int colnumber`

column number (count starts at 1)

## Return Value

The OID of the data type of the specified column or `InvalidOid` on error. On error, `SPI_result` is set to `SPI_ERROR_NOATTRIBUTE`.

## SPI\_getrelname

SPI\_getrelname — return the name of the specified relation

## Synopsis

```
char * SPI_getrelname(Relation rel)
```

## Description

SPI\_getrelname returns a copy of the name of the specified relation. (You can use `pfree` to release the copy of the name when you don't need it anymore.)

## Arguments

Relation *rel*

input relation

## Return Value

The name of the specified relation.

## SPI\_getnspname

SPI\_getnspname — return the namespace of the specified relation

## Synopsis

```
char * SPI_getnspname(Relation rel)
```

## Description

SPI\_getnspname returns a copy of the name of the namespace that the specified Relation belongs to. This is equivalent to the relation's schema. You should pfree the return value of this function when you are finished with it.

## Arguments

Relation *rel*

input relation

## Return Value

The name of the specified relation's namespace.



## SPI\_result\_code\_string

SPI\_result\_code\_string — return error code as string

### Synopsis

```
const char * SPI_result_code_string(int code);
```

### Description

SPI\_result\_code\_string returns a string representation of the result code returned by various SPI functions or stored in SPI\_result.

### Arguments

int code

result code

### Return Value

A string representation of the result code.

## 47.3. Memory Management

PostgreSQL allocates memory within *memory contexts*, which provide a convenient method of managing allocations made in many different places that need to live for differing amounts of time. Destroying a context releases all the memory that was allocated in it. Thus, it is not necessary to keep track of individual objects to avoid memory leaks; instead only a relatively small number of contexts have to be managed. `palloc` and related functions allocate memory from the “current” context.

SPI\_connect creates a new memory context and makes it current. SPI\_finish restores the previous current memory context and destroys the context created by SPI\_connect. These actions ensure that transient memory allocations made inside your C function are reclaimed at C function exit, avoiding memory leakage.

However, if your C function needs to return an object in allocated memory (such as a value of a pass-by-reference data type), you cannot allocate that memory using `palloc`, at least not while you are connected to SPI. If you try, the object will be deallocated by SPI\_finish, and your C function will not work reliably. To solve this problem, use `SPI_palloc` to allocate memory for your return object. SPI\_palloc allocates memory in the “upper executor context”, that is, the memory context that was current when SPI\_connect was called, which is precisely the right context for a value returned from your C function. Several of the other utility functions described in this section also return objects created in the upper executor context.

When SPI\_connect is called, the private context of the C function, which is created by SPI\_connect, is made the current context. All allocations made by `palloc`, `repalloc`, or SPI utility functions (except as described in this section) are made in this context. When a C function disconnects from the SPI manager (via SPI\_finish) the current context is restored to the upper executor context, and all allocations made in the C function memory context are freed and cannot be used any more.

## SPI\_palloc

SPI\_palloc — allocate memory in the upper executor context

## Synopsis

```
void * SPI_palloc(Size size)
```

## Description

SPI\_palloc allocates memory in the upper executor context.

This function can only be used while connected to SPI. Otherwise, it throws an error.

## Arguments

Size *size*

size in bytes of storage to allocate

## Return Value

pointer to new storage space of the specified size

## SPI\_realloc

SPI\_realloc — reallocate memory in the upper executor context

## Synopsis

```
void * SPI_realloc(void * pointer, Size size)
```

## Description

SPI\_realloc changes the size of a memory segment previously allocated using SPI\_malloc.

This function is no longer different from plain realloc. It's kept just for backward compatibility of existing code.

## Arguments

`void * pointer`

pointer to existing storage to change

`Size size`

size in bytes of storage to allocate

## Return Value

pointer to new storage space of specified size with the contents copied from the existing area

## SPI\_pfree

SPI\_pfree — free memory in the upper executor context

## Synopsis

```
void SPI_pfree(void * pointer)
```

## Description

SPI\_pfree frees memory previously allocated using SPI\_palloc or SPI\_realloc.

This function is no longer different from plain pfree. It's kept just for backward compatibility of existing code.

## Arguments

```
void * pointer
```

pointer to existing storage to free

## SPI\_copytuple

SPI\_copytuple — make a copy of a row in the upper executor context

## Synopsis

```
HeapTuple SPI_copytuple(HeapTuple row)
```

## Description

SPI\_copytuple makes a copy of a row in the upper executor context. This is normally used to return a modified row from a trigger. In a function declared to return a composite type, use SPI\_resulttuple instead.

This function can only be used while connected to SPI. Otherwise, it returns NULL and sets SPI\_result to SPI\_ERROR\_UNCONNECTED.

## Arguments

HeapTuple *row*

row to be copied

## Return Value

the copied row, or NULL on error (see SPI\_result for an error indication)

## SPI\_returntuple

SPI\_returntuple — prepare to return a tuple as a Datum

## Synopsis

```
HeapTupleHeader SPI_returntuple(HeapTuple row, TupleDesc rowdesc)
```

## Description

SPI\_returntuple makes a copy of a row in the upper executor context, returning it in the form of a row type Datum. The returned pointer need only be converted to Datum via PointerGetDatum before returning.

This function can only be used while connected to SPI. Otherwise, it returns NULL and sets SPI\_result to SPI\_ERROR\_UNCONNECTED.

Note that this should be used for functions that are declared to return composite types. It is not used for triggers; use SPI\_copytuple for returning a modified row in a trigger.

## Arguments

HeapTuple *row*

row to be copied

TupleDesc *rowdesc*

descriptor for row (pass the same descriptor each time for most effective caching)

## Return Value

HeapTupleHeader pointing to copied row, or NULL on error (see SPI\_result for an error indication)

## SPI\_modifytuple

SPI\_modifytuple — create a row by replacing selected fields of a given row

## Synopsis

```
HeapTuple SPI_modifytuple(Relation rel, HeapTuple row, int ncols,
                          int * colnum, Datum * values, const char
                          * nulls)
```

## Description

SPI\_modifytuple creates a new row by substituting new values for selected columns, copying the original row's columns at other positions. The input row is not modified. The new row is returned in the upper executor context.

This function can only be used while connected to SPI. Otherwise, it returns NULL and sets SPI\_result to SPI\_ERROR\_UNCONNECTED.

## Arguments

Relation *rel*

Used only as the source of the row descriptor for the row. (Passing a relation rather than a row descriptor is a misfeature.)

HeapTuple *row*

row to be modified

int *ncols*

number of columns to be changed

int \* *colnum*

an array of length *ncols*, containing the numbers of the columns that are to be changed (column numbers start at 1)

Datum \* *values*

an array of length *ncols*, containing the new values for the specified columns

const char \* *nulls*

an array of length *ncols*, describing which new values are null

If *nulls* is NULL then SPI\_modifytuple assumes that no new values are null. Otherwise, each entry of the *nulls* array should be ' ' if the corresponding new value is non-null, or 'n' if the corresponding new value is null. (In the latter case, the actual value in the corresponding *values* entry doesn't matter.) Note that *nulls* is not a text string, just an array: it does not need a '\0' terminator.

## Return Value

new row with modifications, allocated in the upper executor context, or NULL on error (see SPI\_result for an error indication)

On error, `SPI_result` is set as follows:

`SPI_ERROR_ARGUMENT`

if *rel* is NULL, or if *row* is NULL, or if *ncols* is less than or equal to 0, or if *colnum* is NULL, or if *values* is NULL.

`SPI_ERROR_NOATTRIBUTE`

if *colnum* contains an invalid column number (less than or equal to 0 or greater than the number of columns in *row*)

`SPI_ERROR_UNCONNECTED`

if SPI is not active



## SPI\_freetuple

SPI\_freetuple — free a row allocated in the upper executor context

## Synopsis

```
void SPI_freetuple(HeapTuple row)
```

## Description

SPI\_freetuple frees a row previously allocated in the upper executor context.

This function is no longer different from plain heap\_freetuple. It's kept just for backward compatibility of existing code.

## Arguments

HeapTuple *row*

row to free

## SPI\_freetuptable

`SPI_freetuptable` — free a row set created by `SPI_execute` or a similar function

## Synopsis

```
void SPI_freetuptable(SPITupleTable * tuptable)
```

## Description

`SPI_freetuptable` frees a row set created by a prior SPI command execution function, such as `SPI_execute`. Therefore, this function is often called with the global variable `SPI_tuptable` as argument.

This function is useful if an SPI-using C function needs to execute multiple commands and does not want to keep the results of earlier commands around until it ends. Note that any unfreed row sets will be freed anyway at `SPI_finish`. Also, if a subtransaction is started and then aborted within execution of an SPI-using C function, SPI automatically frees any row sets created while the subtransaction was running.

Beginning in PostgreSQL 9.3, `SPI_freetuptable` contains guard logic to protect against duplicate deletion requests for the same row set. In previous releases, duplicate deletions would lead to crashes.

## Arguments

`SPITupleTable * tuptable`

pointer to row set to free, or NULL to do nothing

## SPI\_freeplan

SPI\_freeplan — free a previously saved prepared statement

## Synopsis

```
int SPI_freeplan(SPIPlanPtr plan)
```

## Description

SPI\_freeplan releases a prepared statement previously returned by SPI\_prepare or saved by SPI\_keepplan or SPI\_saveplan.

## Arguments

SPIPlanPtr *plan*

pointer to statement to free

## Return Value

0 on success; SPI\_ERROR\_ARGUMENT if *plan* is NULL or invalid

# 47.4. Transaction Management

It is not possible to run transaction control commands such as COMMIT and ROLLBACK through SPI functions such as SPI\_execute. There are, however, separate interface functions that allow transaction control through SPI.

It is not generally safe and sensible to start and end transactions in arbitrary user-defined SQL-callable functions without taking into account the context in which they are called. For example, a transaction boundary in the middle of a function that is part of a complex SQL expression that is part of some SQL command will probably result in obscure internal errors or crashes. The interface functions presented here are primarily intended to be used by procedural language implementations to support transaction management in SQL-level procedures that are invoked by the CALL command, taking the context of the CALL invocation into account. SPI-using procedures implemented in C can implement the same logic, but the details of that are beyond the scope of this documentation.

## SPI\_commit

SPI\_commit, SPI\_commit\_and\_chain — commit the current transaction

## Synopsis

```
void SPI_commit(void)
```

```
void SPI_commit_and_chain(void)
```

## Description

SPI\_commit commits the current transaction. It is approximately equivalent to running the SQL command COMMIT. After the transaction is committed, a new transaction is automatically started using default transaction characteristics, so that the caller can continue using SPI facilities. If there is a failure during commit, the current transaction is instead rolled back and a new transaction is started, after which the error is thrown in the usual way.

SPI\_commit\_and\_chain is the same, but the new transaction is started with the same transaction characteristics as the just finished one, like with the SQL command COMMIT AND CHAIN.

These functions can only be executed if the SPI connection has been set as nonatomic in the call to SPI\_connect\_ext.

## SPI\_rollback

SPI\_rollback, SPI\_rollback\_and\_chain — abort the current transaction

## Synopsis

```
void SPI_rollback(void)
```

```
void SPI_rollback_and_chain(void)
```

## Description

SPI\_rollback rolls back the current transaction. It is approximately equivalent to running the SQL command ROLLBACK. After the transaction is rolled back, a new transaction is automatically started using default transaction characteristics, so that the caller can continue using SPI facilities.

SPI\_rollback\_and\_chain is the same, but the new transaction is started with the same transaction characteristics as the just finished one, like with the SQL command ROLLBACK AND CHAIN.

These functions can only be executed if the SPI connection has been set as nonatomic in the call to SPI\_connect\_ext.

## SPI\_start\_transaction

SPI\_start\_transaction — obsolete function

### Synopsis

```
void SPI_start_transaction(void)
```

### Description

SPI\_start\_transaction does nothing, and exists only for code compatibility with earlier PostgreSQL releases. It used to be required after calling SPI\_commit or SPI\_rollback, but now those functions start a new transaction automatically.

## 47.5. Visibility of Data Changes

The following rules govern the visibility of data changes in functions that use SPI (or any other C function):

- During the execution of an SQL command, any data changes made by the command are invisible to the command itself. For example, in:

```
INSERT INTO a SELECT * FROM a;
```

the inserted rows are invisible to the SELECT part.

- Changes made by a command C are visible to all commands that are started after C, no matter whether they are started inside C (during the execution of C) or after C is done.
- Commands executed via SPI inside a function called by an SQL command (either an ordinary function or a trigger) follow one or the other of the above rules depending on the read/write flag passed to SPI. Commands executed in read-only mode follow the first rule: they cannot see changes of the calling command. Commands executed in read-write mode follow the second rule: they can see all changes made so far.
- All standard procedural languages set the SPI read-write mode depending on the volatility attribute of the function. Commands of STABLE and IMMUTABLE functions are done in read-only mode, while commands of VOLATILE functions are done in read-write mode. While authors of C functions are able to violate this convention, it's unlikely to be a good idea to do so.

The next section contains an example that illustrates the application of these rules.

## 47.6. Examples

This section contains a very simple example of SPI usage. The C function `execq` takes an SQL command as its first argument and a row count as its second, executes the command using SPI\_exec and returns the number of rows that were processed by the command. You can find more complex examples for SPI in the source tree in `src/test/regress/regress.c` and in the `spi` module.

```
#include "postgres.h"

#include "executor/spi.h"
#include "utils/builtins.h"
```

```

PG_MODULE_MAGIC;

PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(execq);

Datum
execq(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    char *command;
    int cnt;
    int ret;
    uint64 proc;

    /* Convert given text object to a C string */
    command = text_to_cstring(PG_GETARG_TEXT_PP(0));
    cnt = PG_GETARG_INT32(1);

    SPI_connect();

    ret = SPI_exec(command, cnt);

    proc = SPI_processed;

    /*
     * If some rows were fetched, print them via elog(INFO).
     */
    if (ret > 0 && SPI_tuptable != NULL)
    {
        SPITupleTable *tuptable = SPI_tuptable;
        TupleDesc tupdesc = tuptable->tupdesc;
        char buf[8192];
        uint64 j;

        for (j = 0; j < tuptable->numvals; j++)
        {
            HeapTuple tuple = tuptable->vals[j];
            int i;

            for (i = 1, buf[0] = 0; i <= tupdesc->natts; i++)
                snprintf(buf + strlen(buf), sizeof(buf) -
strlen(buf), " %s",
                        SPI_getvalue(tuple, tupdesc, i),
                        (i == tupdesc->natts) ? " " : " |");
            elog(INFO, "EXECQ: %s", buf);
        }
    }

    SPI_finish();
    pfree(command);

    PG_RETURN_INT64(proc);
}

```

This is how you declare the function after having compiled it into a shared library (details are in Section 38.10.5.):

```
CREATE FUNCTION execq(text, integer) RETURNS int8
```

```

AS 'filename'
LANGUAGE C STRICT;

```

Here is a sample session:

```

=> SELECT execq('CREATE TABLE a (x integer)', 0);
execq
-----
      0
(1 row)

=> INSERT INTO a VALUES (execq('INSERT INTO a VALUES (0)', 0));
INSERT 0 1
=> SELECT execq('SELECT * FROM a', 0);
INFO:  EXECQ:  0      -- inserted by execq
INFO:  EXECQ:  1      -- returned by execq and inserted by upper
INSERT

execq
-----
      2
(1 row)

=> SELECT execq('INSERT INTO a SELECT x + 2 FROM a RETURNING *',
1);
INFO:  EXECQ:  2      -- 0 + 2, then execution was stopped by count
execq
-----
      1
(1 row)

=> SELECT execq('SELECT * FROM a', 10);
INFO:  EXECQ:  0
INFO:  EXECQ:  1
INFO:  EXECQ:  2

execq
-----
      3              -- 10 is the max value only, 3 is the real
number of rows
(1 row)

=> SELECT execq('INSERT INTO a SELECT x + 10 FROM a', 1);
execq
-----
      3              -- all rows processed; count does not stop it,
because nothing is returned
(1 row)

=> SELECT * FROM a;
x
----
  0
  1
  2
10
11

```



```

12
(6 rows)

=> DELETE FROM a;
DELETE 6
=> INSERT INTO a VALUES (execq('SELECT * FROM a', 0) + 1);
INSERT 0 1
=> SELECT * FROM a;
 x
---
 1          -- 0 (no rows in a) + 1
(1 row)

=> INSERT INTO a VALUES (execq('SELECT * FROM a', 0) + 1);
INFO:  EXECQ:  1
INSERT 0 1
=> SELECT * FROM a;
 x
---
 1
 2          -- 1 (there was one row in a) + 1
(2 rows)

-- This demonstrates the data changes visibility rule.
-- execq is called twice and sees different numbers of rows each
time:

=> INSERT INTO a SELECT execq('SELECT * FROM a', 0) * x FROM a;
INFO:  EXECQ:  1    -- results from first execq
INFO:  EXECQ:  2
INFO:  EXECQ:  1    -- results from second execq
INFO:  EXECQ:  2
INFO:  EXECQ:  2
INSERT 0 2
=> SELECT * FROM a;
 x
---
 1
 2
 2          -- 2 rows * 1 (x in first row)
 6          -- 3 rows (2 + 1 just inserted) * 2 (x in
second row)
(4 rows)

```

---

# Chapter 48. Background Worker Processes

PostgreSQL can be extended to run user-supplied code in separate processes. Such processes are started, stopped and monitored by `postgres`, which permits them to have a lifetime closely linked to the server's status. These processes are attached to PostgreSQL's shared memory area and have the option to connect to databases internally; they can also run multiple transactions serially, just like a regular client-connected server process. Also, by linking to `libpq` they can connect to the server and behave like a regular client application.

## Warning

There are considerable robustness and security risks in using background worker processes because, being written in the C language, they have unrestricted access to data. Administrators wishing to enable modules that include background worker processes should exercise extreme caution. Only carefully audited modules should be permitted to run background worker processes.

Background workers can be initialized at the time that PostgreSQL is started by including the module name in `shared_preload_libraries`. A module wishing to run a background worker can register it by calling `RegisterBackgroundWorker(BackgroundWorker *worker)` from its `_PG_init()` function. Background workers can also be started after the system is up and running by calling `RegisterDynamicBackgroundWorker(BackgroundWorker *worker, BackgroundWorkerHandle **handle)`. Unlike `RegisterBackgroundWorker`, which can only be called from within the postmaster process, `RegisterDynamicBackgroundWorker` must be called from a regular backend or another background worker.

The structure `BackgroundWorker` is defined thus:

```
typedef void (*bgworker_main_type)(Datum main_arg);
typedef struct BackgroundWorker
{
    char          bgw_name[BGW_MAXLEN];
    char          bgw_type[BGW_MAXLEN];
    int           bgw_flags;
    BgWorkerStart bgw_start_time;
    int           bgw_restart_time; /* in seconds, or
BGW_NEVER_RESTART */
    char          bgw_library_name[BGW_MAXLEN];
    char          bgw_function_name[BGW_MAXLEN];
    Datum         bgw_main_arg;
    char          bgw_extra[BGW_EXTRALEN];
    pid_t         bgw_notify_pid;
} BackgroundWorker;
```

`bgw_name` and `bgw_type` are strings to be used in log messages, process listings and similar contexts. `bgw_type` should be the same for all background workers of the same type, so that it is possible to group such workers in a process listing, for example. `bgw_name` on the other hand can contain additional information about the specific process. (Typically, the string for `bgw_name` will contain the type somehow, but that is not strictly required.)

`bgw_flags` is a bitwise-or'd bit mask indicating the capabilities that the module wants. Possible values are:

**BGWORKER\_SHMEM\_ACCESS**

Requests shared memory access. This flag is required.

**BGWORKER\_BACKEND\_DATABASE\_CONNECTION**

Requests the ability to establish a database connection through which it can later run transactions and queries. A background worker using `BGWORKER_BACKEND_DATABASE_CONNECTION` to connect to a database must also attach shared memory using `BGWORKER_SHMEM_ACCESS`, or worker start-up will fail.

`bgw_start_time` is the server state during which `postgres` should start the process; it can be one of `BgWorkerStart_PostmasterStart` (start as soon as `postgres` itself has finished its own initialization; processes requesting this are not eligible for database connections), `BgWorkerStart_ConsistentState` (start as soon as a consistent state has been reached in a hot standby, allowing processes to connect to databases and run read-only queries), and `BgWorkerStart_RecoveryFinished` (start as soon as the system has entered normal read-write state). Note the last two values are equivalent in a server that's not a hot standby. Note that this setting only indicates when the processes are to be started; they do not stop when a different state is reached.

`bgw_restart_time` is the interval, in seconds, that `postgres` should wait before restarting the process in the event that it crashes. It can be any positive value, or `BGW_NEVER_RESTART`, indicating not to restart the process in case of a crash.

`bgw_library_name` is the name of a library in which the initial entry point for the background worker should be sought. The named library will be dynamically loaded by the worker process and `bgw_function_name` will be used to identify the function to be called. If calling a function in the core code, this must be set to `"postgres"`.

`bgw_function_name` is the name of the function to use as the initial entry point for the new background worker. If this function is in a dynamically loaded library, it must be marked `PGDLL_EXPORT` (and not `static`).

`bgw_main_arg` is the `Datum` argument to the background worker main function. This main function should take a single argument of type `Datum` and return `void`. `bgw_main_arg` will be passed as the argument. In addition, the global variable `MyBgworkerEntry` points to a copy of the `BackgroundWorker` structure passed at registration time; the worker may find it helpful to examine this structure.

On Windows (and anywhere else where `EXEC_BACKEND` is defined) or in dynamic background workers it is not safe to pass a `Datum` by reference, only by value. If an argument is required, it is safest to pass an `int32` or other small value and use that as an index into an array allocated in shared memory. If a value like a `cstring` or `text` is passed then the pointer won't be valid from the new background worker process.

`bgw_extra` can contain extra data to be passed to the background worker. Unlike `bgw_main_arg`, this data is not passed as an argument to the worker's main function, but it can be accessed via `MyBgworkerEntry`, as discussed above.

`bgw_notify_pid` is the PID of a PostgreSQL backend process to which the postmaster should send `SIGUSR1` when the process is started or exits. It should be 0 for workers registered at postmaster startup time, or when the backend registering the worker does not wish to wait for the worker to start up. Otherwise, it should be initialized to `MyProcPid`.

Once running, the process can connect to a database by calling `BackgroundWorkerInitializeConnection(char *dbname, char *username, uint32 flags)` or `BackgroundWorkerInitializeConnectionByOid(Oid dboid, Oid useroid, uint32 flags)`. This allows the process to run transactions and queries using the SPI interface. If `dbname` is `NULL` or `dboid` is `InvalidOid`, the session is not connected to any particular database, but shared catalogs can be accessed. If `username` is `NULL` or `useroid` is `InvalidOid`, the process

will run as the superuser created during `initdb`. If `BGWORKER_BYPASS_ALLOWCONN` is specified as flags it is possible to bypass the restriction to connect to databases not allowing user connections. A background worker can only call one of these two functions, and only once. It is not possible to switch databases.

Signals are initially blocked when control reaches the background worker's main function, and must be unblocked by it; this is to allow the process to customize its signal handlers, if necessary. Signals can be unblocked in the new process by calling `BackgroundWorkerUnblockSignals` and blocked by calling `BackgroundWorkerBlockSignals`.

If `bgw_restart_time` for a background worker is configured as `BGW_NEVER_RESTART`, or if it exits with an exit code of 0 or is terminated by `TerminateBackgroundWorker`, it will be automatically unregistered by the postmaster on exit. Otherwise, it will be restarted after the time period configured via `bgw_restart_time`, or immediately if the postmaster reinitializes the cluster due to a backend failure. Backends which need to suspend execution only temporarily should use an interruptible sleep rather than exiting; this can be achieved by calling `WaitLatch()`. Make sure the `WL_POSTMASTER_DEATH` flag is set when calling that function, and verify the return code for a prompt exit in the emergency case that `postgres` itself has terminated.

When a background worker is registered using the `RegisterDynamicBackgroundWorker` function, it is possible for the backend performing the registration to obtain information regarding the status of the worker. Backends wishing to do this should pass the address of a `BackgroundWorkerHandle *` as the second argument to `RegisterDynamicBackgroundWorker`. If the worker is successfully registered, this pointer will be initialized with an opaque handle that can subsequently be passed to `GetBackgroundWorkerPid(BackgroundWorkerHandle *, pid_t *)` or `TerminateBackgroundWorker(BackgroundWorkerHandle *)`. `GetBackgroundWorkerPid` can be used to poll the status of the worker: a return value of `BGWH_NOT_YET_STARTED` indicates that the worker has not yet been started by the postmaster; `BGWH_STOPPED` indicates that it has been started but is no longer running; and `BGWH_STARTED` indicates that it is currently running. In this last case, the PID will also be returned via the second argument. `TerminateBackgroundWorker` causes the postmaster to send `SIGTERM` to the worker if it is running, and to unregister it as soon as it is not.

In some cases, a process which registers a background worker may wish to wait for the worker to start up. This can be accomplished by initializing `bgw_notify_pid` to `MyProcPid` and then passing the `BackgroundWorkerHandle *` obtained at registration time to `WaitForBackgroundWorkerStartup(BackgroundWorkerHandle *handle, pid_t *)` function. This function will block until the postmaster has attempted to start the background worker, or until the postmaster dies. If the background worker is running, the return value will be `BGWH_STARTED`, and the PID will be written to the provided address. Otherwise, the return value will be `BGWH_STOPPED` or `BGWH_POSTMASTER_DIED`.

A process can also wait for a background worker to shut down, by using the `WaitForBackgroundWorkerShutdown(BackgroundWorkerHandle *handle)` function and passing the `BackgroundWorkerHandle *` obtained at registration. This function will block until the background worker exits, or postmaster dies. When the background worker exits, the return value is `BGWH_STOPPED`, if postmaster dies it will return `BGWH_POSTMASTER_DIED`.

Background workers can send asynchronous notification messages, either by using the `NOTIFY` command via SPI, or directly via `Async_Notify()`. Such notifications will be sent at transaction commit. Background workers should not register to receive asynchronous notifications with the `LISTEN` command, as there is no infrastructure for a worker to consume such notifications.

The `src/test/modules/worker_spi` module contains a working example, which demonstrates some useful techniques.

The maximum number of registered background workers is limited by `max_worker_processes`.

---

# Chapter 49. Logical Decoding

PostgreSQL provides infrastructure to stream the modifications performed via SQL to external consumers. This functionality can be used for a variety of purposes, including replication solutions and auditing.

Changes are sent out in streams identified by logical replication slots.

The format in which those changes are streamed is determined by the output plugin used. An example plugin is provided in the PostgreSQL distribution. Additional plugins can be written to extend the choice of available formats without modifying any core code. Every output plugin has access to each individual new row produced by INSERT and the new row version created by UPDATE. Availability of old row versions for UPDATE and DELETE depends on the configured replica identity (see REPLICATION IDENTITY).

Changes can be consumed either using the streaming replication protocol (see Section 55.4 and Section 49.3), or by calling functions via SQL (see Section 49.4). It is also possible to write additional methods of consuming the output of a replication slot without modifying core code (see Section 49.7).

## 49.1. Logical Decoding Examples

The following example demonstrates controlling logical decoding using the SQL interface.

Before you can use logical decoding, you must set `wal_level` to `logical` and `max_replication_slots` to at least 1. Then, you should connect to the target database (in the example below, `postgres`) as a superuser.

```
postgres=# -- Create a slot named 'regression_slot' using the
         output plugin 'test_decoding'
postgres=# SELECT * FROM
         pg_create_logical_replication_slot('regression_slot',
         'test_decoding', false, true);
      slot_name      |      lsn
-----+-----
 regression_slot    | 0/16B1970
(1 row)

postgres=# SELECT slot_name, plugin, slot_type, database, active,
         restart_lsn, confirmed_flush_lsn FROM pg_replication_slots;
      slot_name      |      plugin      | slot_type | database | active |
 restart_lsn | confirmed_flush_lsn
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
 regression_slot | test_decoding | logical  | postgres | f      |
 0/16A4408    | 0/16A4440
(1 row)

postgres=# -- There are no changes to see yet
postgres=# SELECT * FROM
         pg_logical_slot_get_changes('regression_slot', NULL, NULL);
      lsn | xid | data
-----+-----+-----
(0 rows)

postgres=# CREATE TABLE data(id serial primary key, data text);
CREATE TABLE
```

```

postgres=# -- DDL isn't replicated, so all you'll see is the
transaction
postgres=# SELECT * FROM
pg_logical_slot_get_changes('regression_slot', NULL, NULL);
   lsn    |   xid   |      data
-----+-----+-----
 0/BA2DA58 |  10297  | BEGIN 10297
 0/BA5A5A0 |  10297  | COMMIT 10297
(2 rows)

postgres=# -- Once changes are read, they're consumed and not
emitted
postgres=# -- in a subsequent call:
postgres=# SELECT * FROM
pg_logical_slot_get_changes('regression_slot', NULL, NULL);
   lsn |   xid | data
-----+-----+-----
(0 rows)

postgres=# BEGIN;
postgres=# INSERT INTO data(data) VALUES('1');
postgres=# INSERT INTO data(data) VALUES('2');
postgres=# COMMIT;

postgres=# SELECT * FROM
pg_logical_slot_get_changes('regression_slot', NULL, NULL);
   lsn    |   xid   |      data
-----+-----+-----
+-----+-----+-----
 0/BA5A688 |  10298  | BEGIN 10298
 0/BA5A6F0 |  10298  | table public.data: INSERT: id[integer]:1
data[text]:'1'
 0/BA5A7F8 |  10298  | table public.data: INSERT: id[integer]:2
data[text]:'2'
 0/BA5A8A8 |  10298  | COMMIT 10298
(4 rows)

postgres=# INSERT INTO data(data) VALUES('3');

postgres=# -- You can also peek ahead in the change stream without
consuming changes
postgres=# SELECT * FROM
pg_logical_slot_peek_changes('regression_slot', NULL, NULL);
   lsn    |   xid   |      data
-----+-----+-----
+-----+-----+-----
 0/BA5A8E0 |  10299  | BEGIN 10299
 0/BA5A8E0 |  10299  | table public.data: INSERT: id[integer]:3
data[text]:'3'
 0/BA5A990 |  10299  | COMMIT 10299
(3 rows)

postgres=# -- The next call to pg_logical_slot_peek_changes()
returns the same changes again
postgres=# SELECT * FROM
pg_logical_slot_peek_changes('regression_slot', NULL, NULL);
   lsn    |   xid   |      data
-----+-----+-----

```

```

-----+-----
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
0/BA5A8E0 | 10299 | BEGIN 10299
0/BA5A8E0 | 10299 | table public.data: INSERT: id[integer]:3
data[text]:'3'
0/BA5A990 | 10299 | COMMIT 10299
(3 rows)

postgres=# -- options can be passed to output plugin, to influence
the formatting
postgres=# SELECT * FROM
pg_logical_slot_peek_changes('regression_slot', NULL, NULL,
'include-timestamp', 'on');
      lsn      |  xid  | data
-----+-----+-----
0/BA5A8E0 | 10299 | BEGIN 10299
0/BA5A8E0 | 10299 | table public.data: INSERT: id[integer]:3
data[text]:'3'
0/BA5A990 | 10299 | COMMIT 10299 (at 2017-05-10
12:07:21.272494-04)
(3 rows)

postgres=# -- Remember to destroy a slot you no longer need to stop
it consuming
postgres=# -- server resources:
postgres=# SELECT pg_drop_replication_slot('regression_slot');
pg_drop_replication_slot
-----
(1 row)

```

The following examples shows how logical decoding is controlled over the streaming replication protocol, using the program `pg_recvlogical` included in the PostgreSQL distribution. This requires that client authentication is set up to allow replication connections (see Section 27.2.5.1) and that `max_wal_senders` is set sufficiently high to allow an additional connection. The second example shows how to stream two-phase transactions. Before you use two-phase commands, you must set `max_prepared_transactions` to at least 1.

Example 1:

```

$ pg_recvlogical -d postgres --slot=test --create-slot
$ pg_recvlogical -d postgres --slot=test --start -f -
Control+Z
$ psql -d postgres -c "INSERT INTO data(data) VALUES('4');"
$ fg
BEGIN 693
table public.data: INSERT: id[integer]:4 data[text]:'4'
COMMIT 693
Control+C
$ pg_recvlogical -d postgres --slot=test --drop-slot

```

Example 2:

```

$ pg_recvlogical -d postgres --slot=test --create-slot --two-phase
$ pg_recvlogical -d postgres --slot=test --start -f -
Control+Z
$ psql -d postgres -c "BEGIN;INSERT INTO data(data)
VALUES('5');PREPARE TRANSACTION 'test';"

```

```
$ fg
BEGIN 694
table public.data: INSERT: id[integer]:5 data[text]:'5'
PREPARE TRANSACTION 'test', txid 694
Control+Z
$ psql -d postgres -c "COMMIT PREPARED 'test';"
$ fg
COMMIT PREPARED 'test', txid 694
Control+C
$ pg_recvlogical -d postgres --slot=test --drop-slot
```

The following example shows SQL interface that can be used to decode prepared transactions. Before you use two-phase commit commands, you must set `max_prepared_transactions` to at least 1. You must also have set the two-phase parameter as 'true' while creating the slot using `pg_create_logical_replication_slot`. Note that we will stream the entire transaction after the commit if it is not already decoded.

```
postgres=# BEGIN;
postgres=# INSERT INTO data(data) VALUES('5');
postgres=# PREPARE TRANSACTION 'test_prepared1';

postgres=# SELECT * FROM
  pg_logical_slot_get_changes('regression_slot', NULL, NULL);
   lsn    | xid | data
-----+-----
+-----+-----+-----
0/1689DC0 | 529 | BEGIN 529
0/1689DC0 | 529 | table public.data: INSERT: id[integer]:3
data[text]:'5'
0/1689FC0 | 529 | PREPARE TRANSACTION 'test_prepared1', txid 529
(3 rows)

postgres=# COMMIT PREPARED 'test_prepared1';
postgres=# select * from
  pg_logical_slot_get_changes('regression_slot', NULL, NULL);
   lsn    | xid | data
-----+-----+-----
0/168A060 | 529 | COMMIT PREPARED 'test_prepared1', txid 529
(4 row)

postgres=#-- you can also rollback a prepared transaction
postgres=# BEGIN;
postgres=# INSERT INTO data(data) VALUES('6');
postgres=# PREPARE TRANSACTION 'test_prepared2';
postgres=# select * from
  pg_logical_slot_get_changes('regression_slot', NULL, NULL);
   lsn    | xid | data
-----+-----
+-----+-----+-----
0/168A180 | 530 | BEGIN 530
0/168A1E8 | 530 | table public.data: INSERT: id[integer]:4
data[text]:'6'
0/168A430 | 530 | PREPARE TRANSACTION 'test_prepared2', txid 530
(3 rows)

postgres=# ROLLBACK PREPARED 'test_prepared2';
```



```

postgres=# select * from
pg_logical_slot_get_changes('regression_slot', NULL, NULL);
   lsn   | xid | data
-----+-----+-----
0/168A4B8 | 530 | ROLLBACK PREPARED 'test_prepared2', txid 530
(1 row)

```

## 49.2. Logical Decoding Concepts

### 49.2.1. Logical Decoding

Logical decoding is the process of extracting all persistent changes to a database's tables into a coherent, easy to understand format which can be interpreted without detailed knowledge of the database's internal state.

In PostgreSQL, logical decoding is implemented by decoding the contents of the write-ahead log, which describe changes on a storage level, into an application-specific form such as a stream of tuples or SQL statements.

### 49.2.2. Replication Slots

In the context of logical replication, a slot represents a stream of changes that can be replayed to a client in the order they were made on the origin server. Each slot streams a sequence of changes from a single database.

#### Note

PostgreSQL also has streaming replication slots (see Section 27.2.5), but they are used somewhat differently there.

A replication slot has an identifier that is unique across all databases in a PostgreSQL cluster. Slots persist independently of the connection using them and are crash-safe.

A logical slot will emit each change just once in normal operation. The current position of each slot is persisted only at checkpoint, so in the case of a crash the slot may return to an earlier LSN, which will then cause recent changes to be sent again when the server restarts. Logical decoding clients are responsible for avoiding ill effects from handling the same message more than once. Clients may wish to record the last LSN they saw when decoding and skip over any repeated data or (when using the replication protocol) request that decoding start from that LSN rather than letting the server determine the start point. The Replication Progress Tracking feature is designed for this purpose, refer to replication origins.

Multiple independent slots may exist for a single database. Each slot has its own state, allowing different consumers to receive changes from different points in the database change stream. For most applications, a separate slot will be required for each consumer.

A logical replication slot knows nothing about the state of the receiver(s). It's even possible to have multiple different receivers using the same slot at different times; they'll just get the changes following on from when the last receiver stopped consuming them. Only one receiver may consume changes from a slot at any given time.

A logical replication slot can also be created on a hot standby. To prevent VACUUM from removing required rows from the system catalogs, `hot_standby_feedback` should be set on the standby. In spite of that, if any required rows get removed, the slot gets invalidated. It's highly recommended to use a physical slot between the primary and the standby. Otherwise, `hot_standby_feedback` will work but only while the connection is alive (for example a node restart would break it). Then, the primary may delete system catalog rows that could be needed by the logical decoding on the standby.

(as it does not know about the `catalog_xmin` on the standby). Existing logical slots on standby also get invalidated if `wal_level` on the primary is reduced to less than `logical`. This is done as soon as the standby detects such a change in the WAL stream. It means that, for walsenders which are lagging (if any), some WAL records up to the `wal_level` parameter change on the primary won't be decoded.

Creation of a logical slot requires information about all the currently running transactions. On the primary, this information is available directly, but on a standby, this information has to be obtained from primary. Thus, slot creation may need to wait for some activity to happen on the primary. If the primary is idle, creating a logical slot on standby may take noticeable time. This can be sped up by calling the `pg_log_standby_snapshot` function on the primary.

### Caution

Replication slots persist across crashes and know nothing about the state of their consumer(s). They will prevent removal of required resources even when there is no connection using them. This consumes storage because neither required WAL nor required rows from the system catalogs can be removed by `VACUUM` as long as they are required by a replication slot. In extreme cases this could cause the database to shut down to prevent transaction ID wraparound (see Section 25.1.5). So if a slot is no longer required it should be dropped.

## 49.2.3. Output Plugins

Output plugins transform the data from the write-ahead log's internal representation into the format the consumer of a replication slot desires.

## 49.2.4. Exported Snapshots

When a new replication slot is created using the streaming replication interface (see `CREATE_REPLICATION_SLOT`), a snapshot is exported (see Section 9.27.5), which will show exactly the state of the database after which all changes will be included in the change stream. This can be used to create a new replica by using `SET TRANSACTION SNAPSHOT` to read the state of the database at the moment the slot was created. This transaction can then be used to dump the database's state at that point in time, which afterwards can be updated using the slot's contents without losing any changes.

Creation of a snapshot is not always possible. In particular, it will fail when connected to a hot standby. Applications that do not require snapshot export may suppress it with the `NOEXPORT_SNAPSHOT` option.

## 49.3. Streaming Replication Protocol Interface

The commands

- `CREATE_REPLICATION_SLOT slot_name LOGICAL output_plugin`
- `DROP_REPLICATION_SLOT slot_name [ WAIT ]`
- `START_REPLICATION SLOT slot_name LOGICAL ...`

are used to create, drop, and stream changes from a replication slot, respectively. These commands are only available over a replication connection; they cannot be used via SQL. See Section 55.4 for details on these commands.

The command `pg_recvlogical` can be used to control logical decoding over a streaming replication connection. (It uses these commands internally.)

## 49.4. Logical Decoding SQL Interface

See Section 9.27.6 for detailed documentation on the SQL-level API for interacting with logical decoding.

Synchronous replication (see Section 27.2.8) is only supported on replication slots used over the streaming replication interface. The function interface and additional, non-core interfaces do not support synchronous replication.

## 49.5. System Catalogs Related to Logical Decoding

The `pg_replication_slots` view and the `pg_stat_replication` view provide information about the current state of replication slots and streaming replication connections respectively. These views apply to both physical and logical replication. The `pg_stat_replication_slots` view provides statistics information about the logical replication slots.

## 49.6. Logical Decoding Output Plugins

An example output plugin can be found in the `contrib/test_decoding` subdirectory of the PostgreSQL source tree.

### 49.6.1. Initialization Function

An output plugin is loaded by dynamically loading a shared library with the output plugin's name as the library base name. The normal library search path is used to locate the library. To provide the required output plugin callbacks and to indicate that the library is actually an output plugin it needs to provide a function named `_PG_output_plugin_init`. This function is passed a struct that needs to be filled with the callback function pointers for individual actions.

```
typedef struct OutputPluginCallbacks
{
    LogicalDecodeStartupCB startup_cb;
    LogicalDecodeBeginCB begin_cb;
    LogicalDecodeChangeCB change_cb;
    LogicalDecodeTruncateCB truncate_cb;
    LogicalDecodeCommitCB commit_cb;
    LogicalDecodeMessageCB message_cb;
    LogicalDecodeFilterByOriginCB filter_by_origin_cb;
    LogicalDecodeShutdownCB shutdown_cb;
    LogicalDecodeFilterPrepareCB filter_prepare_cb;
    LogicalDecodeBeginPrepareCB begin_prepare_cb;
    LogicalDecodePrepareCB prepare_cb;
    LogicalDecodeCommitPreparedCB commit_prepared_cb;
    LogicalDecodeRollbackPreparedCB rollback_prepared_cb;
    LogicalDecodeStreamStartCB stream_start_cb;
    LogicalDecodeStreamStopCB stream_stop_cb;
    LogicalDecodeStreamAbortCB stream_abort_cb;
    LogicalDecodeStreamPrepareCB stream_prepare_cb;
    LogicalDecodeStreamCommitCB stream_commit_cb;
    LogicalDecodeStreamChangeCB stream_change_cb;
    LogicalDecodeStreamMessageCB stream_message_cb;
    LogicalDecodeStreamTruncateCB stream_truncate_cb;
} OutputPluginCallbacks;
```

```
typedef void (*LogicalOutputPluginInit) (struct
    OutputPluginCallbacks *cb);
```

The `begin_cb`, `change_cb` and `commit_cb` callbacks are required, while `startup_cb`, `truncate_cb`, `message_cb`, `filter_by_origin_cb`, and `shutdown_cb` are optional. If `truncate_cb` is not set but a `TRUNCATE` is to be decoded, the action will be ignored.

An output plugin may also define functions to support streaming of large, in-progress transactions. The `stream_start_cb`, `stream_stop_cb`, `stream_abort_cb`, `stream_commit_cb`, and `stream_change_cb` are required, while `stream_message_cb` and `stream_truncate_cb` are optional. The `stream_prepare_cb` is also required if the output plugin also support two-phase commits.

An output plugin may also define functions to support two-phase commits, which allows actions to be decoded on the `PREPARE TRANSACTION`. The `begin_prepare_cb`, `prepare_cb`, `commit_prepared_cb` and `rollback_prepared_cb` callbacks are required, while `filter_prepare_cb` is optional. The `stream_prepare_cb` is also required if the output plugin also supports the streaming of large in-progress transactions.

## 49.6.2. Capabilities

To decode, format and output changes, output plugins can use most of the backend's normal infrastructure, including calling output functions. Read only access to relations is permitted as long as only relations are accessed that either have been created by `initdb` in the `pg_catalog` schema, or have been marked as user provided catalog tables using

```
ALTER TABLE user_catalog_table SET (user_catalog_table = true);
CREATE TABLE another_catalog_table(data text) WITH
    (user_catalog_table = true);
```

Note that access to user catalog tables or regular system catalog tables in the output plugins has to be done via the `systable_*` scan APIs only. Access via the `heap_*` scan APIs will error out. Additionally, any actions leading to transaction ID assignment are prohibited. That, among others, includes writing to tables, performing DDL changes, and calling `pg_current_xact_id()`.

## 49.6.3. Output Modes

Output plugin callbacks can pass data to the consumer in nearly arbitrary formats. For some use cases, like viewing the changes via SQL, returning data in a data type that can contain arbitrary data (e.g., `bytea`) is cumbersome. If the output plugin only outputs textual data in the server's encoding, it can declare that by setting `OutputPluginOptions.output_type` to `OUTPUT_PLUGIN_TEXTUAL_OUTPUT` instead of `OUTPUT_PLUGIN_BINARY_OUTPUT` in the startup callback. In that case, all the data has to be in the server's encoding so that a `text` datum can contain it. This is checked in assertion-enabled builds.

## 49.6.4. Output Plugin Callbacks

An output plugin gets notified about changes that are happening via various callbacks it needs to provide.

Concurrent transactions are decoded in commit order, and only changes belonging to a specific transaction are decoded between the `begin` and `commit` callbacks. Transactions that were rolled back explicitly or implicitly never get decoded. Successful savepoints are folded into the transaction containing them in the order they were executed within that transaction. A transaction that is prepared for a two-phase commit using `PREPARE TRANSACTION` will also be decoded if the output plugin callbacks needed for decoding them are provided. It is possible that the current prepared transaction

which is being decoded is aborted concurrently via a `ROLLBACK PREPARED` command. In that case, the logical decoding of this transaction will be aborted too. All the changes of such a transaction are skipped once the abort is detected and the `prepare_cb` callback is invoked. Thus even in case of a concurrent abort, enough information is provided to the output plugin for it to properly deal with `ROLLBACK PREPARED` once that is decoded.

### Note

Only transactions that have already safely been flushed to disk will be decoded. That can lead to a `COMMIT` not immediately being decoded in a directly following `pg_logical_slot_get_changes()` when `synchronous_commit` is set to `off`.

## 49.6.4.1. Startup Callback

The optional `startup_cb` callback is called whenever a replication slot is created or asked to stream changes, independent of the number of changes that are ready to be put out.

```
typedef void (*LogicalDecodeStartupCB) (struct
    LogicalDecodingContext *ctx,
                                     OutputPluginOptions
    *options,
                                     bool is_init);
```

The `is_init` parameter will be true when the replication slot is being created and false otherwise. `options` points to a struct of options that output plugins can set:

```
typedef struct OutputPluginOptions
{
    OutputPluginOutputType output_type;
    bool receive_rewrites;
} OutputPluginOptions;
```

`output_type` has to either be set to `OUTPUT_PLUGIN_TEXTUAL_OUTPUT` or `OUTPUT_PLUGIN_BINARY_OUTPUT`. See also Section 49.6.3. If `receive_rewrites` is true, the output plugin will also be called for changes made by heap rewrites during certain DDL operations. These are of interest to plugins that handle DDL replication, but they require special handling.

The startup callback should validate the options present in `ctx->output_plugin_options`. If the output plugin needs to have a state, it can use `ctx->output_plugin_private` to store it.

## 49.6.4.2. Shutdown Callback

The optional `shutdown_cb` callback is called whenever a formerly active replication slot is not used anymore and can be used to deallocate resources private to the output plugin. The slot isn't necessarily being dropped, streaming is just being stopped.

```
typedef void (*LogicalDecodeShutdownCB) (struct
    LogicalDecodingContext *ctx);
```

## 49.6.4.3. Transaction Begin Callback

The required `begin_cb` callback is called whenever a start of a committed transaction has been decoded. Aborted transactions and their contents never get decoded.

```
typedef void (*LogicalDecodeBeginCB) (struct LogicalDecodingContext
    *ctx,

                                     ReorderBufferTXN *txn);
```

The *txn* parameter contains meta information about the transaction, like the time stamp at which it has been committed and its XID.

#### 49.6.4.4. Transaction End Callback

The required `commit_cb` callback is called whenever a transaction commit has been decoded. The `change_cb` callbacks for all modified rows will have been called before this, if there have been any modified rows.

```
typedef void (*LogicalDecodeCommitCB) (struct
    LogicalDecodingContext *ctx,

                                     ReorderBufferTXN *txn,
                                     XLogRecPtr commit_lsn);
```

#### 49.6.4.5. Change Callback

The required `change_cb` callback is called for every individual row modification inside a transaction, may it be an INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE. Even if the original command modified several rows at once the callback will be called individually for each row. The `change_cb` callback may access system or user catalog tables to aid in the process of outputting the row modification details. In case of decoding a prepared (but yet uncommitted) transaction or decoding of an uncommitted transaction, this change callback might also error out due to simultaneous rollback of this very same transaction. In that case, the logical decoding of this aborted transaction is stopped gracefully.

```
typedef void (*LogicalDecodeChangeCB) (struct
    LogicalDecodingContext *ctx,

                                     ReorderBufferTXN *txn,
                                     Relation relation,
                                     ReorderBufferChange

    *change);
```

The *ctx* and *txn* parameters have the same contents as for the `begin_cb` and `commit_cb` callbacks, but additionally the relation descriptor *relation* points to the relation the row belongs to and a struct *change* describing the row modification are passed in.

#### Note

Only changes in user defined tables that are not unlogged (see UNLOGGED) and not temporary (see TEMPORARY or TEMP) can be extracted using logical decoding.

#### 49.6.4.6. Truncate Callback

The optional `truncate_cb` callback is called for a TRUNCATE command.

```
typedef void (*LogicalDecodeTruncateCB) (struct
    LogicalDecodingContext *ctx,

                                     ReorderBufferTXN *txn,
                                     int nrelations,
                                     Relation relations[],
                                     ReorderBufferChange

    *change);
```

The parameters are analogous to the `change_cb` callback. However, because `TRUNCATE` actions on tables connected by foreign keys need to be executed together, this callback receives an array of relations instead of just a single one. See the description of the `TRUNCATE` statement for details.

#### 49.6.4.7. Origin Filter Callback

The optional `filter_by_origin_cb` callback is called to determine whether data that has been replayed from `origin_id` is of interest to the output plugin.

```
typedef bool (*LogicalDecodeFilterByOriginCB) (struct
    LogicalDecodingContext *ctx,
                                           RepOriginId
    origin_id);
```

The `ctx` parameter has the same contents as for the other callbacks. No information but the origin is available. To signal that changes originating on the passed in node are irrelevant, return true, causing them to be filtered away; false otherwise. The other callbacks will not be called for transactions and changes that have been filtered away.

This is useful when implementing cascading or multidirectional replication solutions. Filtering by the origin allows to prevent replicating the same changes back and forth in such setups. While transactions and changes also carry information about the origin, filtering via this callback is noticeably more efficient.

#### 49.6.4.8. Generic Message Callback

The optional `message_cb` callback is called whenever a logical decoding message has been decoded.

```
typedef void (*LogicalDecodeMessageCB) (struct
    LogicalDecodingContext *ctx,
                                           ReorderBufferTXN *txn,
                                           XLogRecPtr message_lsn,
                                           bool transactional,
                                           const char *prefix,
                                           Size message_size,
                                           const char *message);
```

The `txn` parameter contains meta information about the transaction, like the time stamp at which it has been committed and its `XID`. Note however that it can be `NULL` when the message is non-transactional and the `XID` was not assigned yet in the transaction which logged the message. The `lsn` has WAL location of the message. The `transactional` says if the message was sent as transactional or not. Similar to the change callback, in case of decoding a prepared (but yet uncommitted) transaction or decoding of an uncommitted transaction, this message callback might also error out due to simultaneous rollback of this very same transaction. In that case, the logical decoding of this aborted transaction is stopped gracefully. The `prefix` is arbitrary null-terminated prefix which can be used for identifying interesting messages for the current plugin. And finally the `message` parameter holds the actual message of `message_size` size.

Extra care should be taken to ensure that the prefix the output plugin considers interesting is unique. Using name of the extension or the output plugin itself is often a good choice.

#### 49.6.4.9. Prepare Filter Callback

The optional `filter_prepare_cb` callback is called to determine whether data that is part of the current two-phase commit transaction should be considered for decoding at this prepare stage or later as a regular one-phase transaction at `COMMIT PREPARED` time. To signal that decoding should be

skipped, return `true`; `false` otherwise. When the callback is not defined, `false` is assumed (i.e. no filtering, all transactions using two-phase commit are decoded in two phases as well).

```
typedef bool (*LogicalDecodeFilterPrepareCB) (struct
    LogicalDecodingContext *ctx,
                                           TransactionId xid,
                                           const char *gid);
```

The `ctx` parameter has the same contents as for the other callbacks. The parameters `xid` and `gid` provide two different ways to identify the transaction. The later `COMMIT PREPARED` or `ROLLBACK PREPARED` carries both identifiers, providing an output plugin the choice of what to use.

The callback may be invoked multiple times per transaction to decode and must provide the same static answer for a given pair of `xid` and `gid` every time it is called.

#### 49.6.4.10. Transaction Begin Prepare Callback

The required `begin_prepare_cb` callback is called whenever the start of a prepared transaction has been decoded. The `gid` field, which is part of the `txn` parameter, can be used in this callback to check if the plugin has already received this `PREPARE` in which case it can either error out or skip the remaining changes of the transaction.

```
typedef void (*LogicalDecodeBeginPrepareCB) (struct
    LogicalDecodingContext *ctx,
                                           ReorderBufferTXN
    *txn);
```

#### 49.6.4.11. Transaction Prepare Callback

The required `prepare_cb` callback is called whenever a transaction which is prepared for two-phase commit has been decoded. The `change_cb` callback for all modified rows will have been called before this, if there have been any modified rows. The `gid` field, which is part of the `txn` parameter, can be used in this callback.

```
typedef void (*LogicalDecodePrepareCB) (struct
    LogicalDecodingContext *ctx,
                                           ReorderBufferTXN *txn,
                                           XLogRecPtr prepare_lsn);
```

#### 49.6.4.12. Transaction Commit Prepared Callback

The required `commit_prepared_cb` callback is called whenever a transaction `COMMIT PREPARED` has been decoded. The `gid` field, which is part of the `txn` parameter, can be used in this callback.

```
typedef void (*LogicalDecodeCommitPreparedCB) (struct
    LogicalDecodingContext *ctx,
                                           ReorderBufferTXN
    *txn,
                                           XLogRecPtr
    commit_lsn);
```

#### 49.6.4.13. Transaction Rollback Prepared Callback

The required `rollback_prepared_cb` callback is called whenever a transaction `ROLLBACK PREPARED` has been decoded. The `gid` field, which is part of the `txn` parameter, can be used in



this callback. The parameters *prepare\_end\_lsn* and *prepare\_time* can be used to check if the plugin has received this PREPARE TRANSACTION in which case it can apply the rollback, otherwise, it can skip the rollback operation. The *gid* alone is not sufficient because the downstream node can have a prepared transaction with same identifier.

```
typedef void (*LogicalDecodeRollbackPreparedCB) (struct
    LogicalDecodingContext *ctx,
                                                    ReorderBufferTXN
    *txn,
                                                    XLogRecPtr
    prepare_end_lsn,
                                                    TimestampTz
    prepare_time);
```

#### 49.6.4.14. Stream Start Callback

The required *stream\_start\_cb* callback is called when opening a block of streamed changes from an in-progress transaction.

```
typedef void (*LogicalDecodeStreamStartCB) (struct
    LogicalDecodingContext *ctx,
                                                    ReorderBufferTXN *txn);
```

#### 49.6.4.15. Stream Stop Callback

The required *stream\_stop\_cb* callback is called when closing a block of streamed changes from an in-progress transaction.

```
typedef void (*LogicalDecodeStreamStopCB) (struct
    LogicalDecodingContext *ctx,
                                                    ReorderBufferTXN *txn);
```

#### 49.6.4.16. Stream Abort Callback

The required *stream\_abort\_cb* callback is called to abort a previously streamed transaction.

```
typedef void (*LogicalDecodeStreamAbortCB) (struct
    LogicalDecodingContext *ctx,
                                                    ReorderBufferTXN *txn,
                                                    XLogRecPtr abort_lsn);
```

#### 49.6.4.17. Stream Prepare Callback

The *stream\_prepare\_cb* callback is called to prepare a previously streamed transaction as part of a two-phase commit. This callback is required when the output plugin supports both the streaming of large in-progress transactions and two-phase commits.

```
typedef void (*LogicalDecodeStreamPrepareCB) (struct
    LogicalDecodingContext *ctx,
                                                    ReorderBufferTXN
    *txn,
                                                    XLogRecPtr
    prepare_lsn);
```

#### 49.6.4.18. Stream Commit Callback

The required `stream_commit_cb` callback is called to commit a previously streamed transaction.

```
typedef void (*LogicalDecodeStreamCommitCB) (struct
    LogicalDecodingContext *ctx,
                                           ReorderBufferTXN *txn,
                                           XLogRecPtr
    commit_lsn);
```

#### 49.6.4.19. Stream Change Callback

The required `stream_change_cb` callback is called when sending a change in a block of streamed changes (demarcated by `stream_start_cb` and `stream_stop_cb` calls). The actual changes are not displayed as the transaction can abort at a later point in time and we don't decode changes for aborted transactions.

```
typedef void (*LogicalDecodeStreamChangeCB) (struct
    LogicalDecodingContext *ctx,
                                           ReorderBufferTXN *txn,
                                           Relation relation,
                                           ReorderBufferChange
    *change);
```

#### 49.6.4.20. Stream Message Callback

The optional `stream_message_cb` callback is called when sending a generic message in a block of streamed changes (demarcated by `stream_start_cb` and `stream_stop_cb` calls). The message contents for transactional messages are not displayed as the transaction can abort at a later point in time and we don't decode changes for aborted transactions.

```
typedef void (*LogicalDecodeStreamMessageCB) (struct
    LogicalDecodingContext *ctx,
                                           ReorderBufferTXN
    *txn,
                                           XLogRecPtr
    message_lsn,
                                           bool transactional,
                                           const char *prefix,
                                           Size message_size,
                                           const char *message);
```

#### 49.6.4.21. Stream Truncate Callback

The optional `stream_truncate_cb` callback is called for a TRUNCATE command in a block of streamed changes (demarcated by `stream_start_cb` and `stream_stop_cb` calls).

```
typedef void (*LogicalDecodeStreamTruncateCB) (struct
    LogicalDecodingContext *ctx,
                                           ReorderBufferTXN
    *txn,
                                           int nrelations,
                                           Relation
    relations[]);
```

ReorderBufferChange

```
*change);
```

The parameters are analogous to the `stream_change_cb` callback. However, because `TRUNCATE` actions on tables connected by foreign keys need to be executed together, this callback receives an array of relations instead of just a single one. See the description of the `TRUNCATE` statement for details.

## 49.6.5. Functions for Producing Output

To actually produce output, output plugins can write data to the `StringInfo` output buffer in `ctx->out` when inside the `begin_cb`, `commit_cb`, or `change_cb` callbacks. Before writing to the output buffer, `OutputPluginPrepareWrite(ctx, last_write)` has to be called, and after finishing writing to the buffer, `OutputPluginWrite(ctx, last_write)` has to be called to perform the write. The `last_write` indicates whether a particular write was the callback's last write.

The following example shows how to output data to the consumer of an output plugin:

```
OutputPluginPrepareWrite(ctx, true);
appendStringInfo(ctx->out, "BEGIN %u", txn->xid);
OutputPluginWrite(ctx, true);
```

## 49.7. Logical Decoding Output Writers

It is possible to add more output methods for logical decoding. For details, see `src/backend/replication/logical/logicalfuncs.c`. Essentially, three functions need to be provided: one to read WAL, one to prepare writing output, and one to write the output (see Section 49.6.5).

## 49.8. Synchronous Replication Support for Logical Decoding

### 49.8.1. Overview

Logical decoding can be used to build synchronous replication solutions with the same user interface as synchronous replication for streaming replication. To do this, the streaming replication interface (see Section 49.3) must be used to stream out data. Clients have to send `Standby status update (F)` (see Section 55.4) messages, just like streaming replication clients do.

#### Note

A synchronous replica receiving changes via logical decoding will work in the scope of a single database. Since, in contrast to that, *synchronous\_standby\_names* currently is server wide, this means this technique will not work properly if more than one database is actively used.

### 49.8.2. Caveats

In synchronous replication setup, a deadlock can happen, if the transaction has locked [user] catalog tables exclusively. See Section 49.6.2 for information on user catalog tables. This is because logical decoding of transactions can lock catalog tables to access them. To avoid this users must refrain from taking an exclusive lock on [user] catalog tables. This can happen in the following ways:

- Issuing an explicit `LOCK` on `pg_class` in a transaction.

- Perform `CLUSTER` on `pg_class` in a transaction.
- `PREPARE TRANSACTION` after `LOCK` command on `pg_class` and allow logical decoding of two-phase transactions.
- `PREPARE TRANSACTION` after `CLUSTER` command on `pg_trigger` and allow logical decoding of two-phase transactions. This will lead to deadlock only when published table have a trigger.
- Executing `TRUNCATE` on [user] catalog table in a transaction.

Note that these commands that can cause deadlock apply to not only explicitly indicated system catalog tables above but also to any other [user] catalog table.

## 49.9. Streaming of Large Transactions for Logical Decoding

The basic output plugin callbacks (e.g., `begin_cb`, `change_cb`, `commit_cb` and `message_cb`) are only invoked when the transaction actually commits. The changes are still decoded from the transaction log, but are only passed to the output plugin at commit (and discarded if the transaction aborts).

This means that while the decoding happens incrementally, and may spill to disk to keep memory usage under control, all the decoded changes have to be transmitted when the transaction finally commits (or more precisely, when the commit is decoded from the transaction log). Depending on the size of the transaction and network bandwidth, the transfer time may significantly increase the apply lag.

To reduce the apply lag caused by large transactions, an output plugin may provide additional callback to support incremental streaming of in-progress transactions. There are multiple required streaming callbacks (`stream_start_cb`, `stream_stop_cb`, `stream_abort_cb`, `stream_commit_cb` and `stream_change_cb`) and two optional callbacks (`stream_message_cb` and `stream_truncate_cb`). Also, if streaming of two-phase commands is to be supported, then additional callbacks must be provided. (See Section 49.10 for details).

When streaming an in-progress transaction, the changes (and messages) are streamed in blocks demarcated by `stream_start_cb` and `stream_stop_cb` callbacks. Once all the decoded changes are transmitted, the transaction can be committed using the `stream_commit_cb` callback (or possibly aborted using the `stream_abort_cb` callback). If two-phase commits are supported, the transaction can be prepared using the `stream_prepare_cb` callback, `COMMIT PREPARED` using the `commit_prepared_cb` callback or aborted using the `rollback_prepared_cb`.

One example sequence of streaming callback calls for one transaction may look like this:

```
stream_start_cb(...);    <-- start of first block of changes
    stream_change_cb(...);
    stream_change_cb(...);
    stream_message_cb(...);
    stream_change_cb(...);
    ...
    stream_change_cb(...);
stream_stop_cb(...);     <-- end of first block of changes

stream_start_cb(...);    <-- start of second block of changes
    stream_change_cb(...);
    stream_change_cb(...);
    stream_change_cb(...);
    ...
    stream_message_cb(...);
    stream_change_cb(...);
```

```
stream_stop_cb(...);    <-- end of second block of changes

[a. when using normal commit]
stream_commit_cb(...);   <-- commit of the streamed transaction

[b. when using two-phase commit]
stream_prepare_cb(...);  <-- prepare the streamed transaction
commit_prepared_cb(...); <-- commit of the prepared transaction
```

The actual sequence of callback calls may be more complicated, of course. There may be blocks for multiple streamed transactions, some of the transactions may get aborted, etc.

Similar to spill-to-disk behavior, streaming is triggered when the total amount of changes decoded from the WAL (for all in-progress transactions) exceeds the limit defined by `logical_decoding_work_mem` setting. At that point, the largest top-level transaction (measured by the amount of memory currently used for decoded changes) is selected and streamed. However, in some cases we still have to spill to disk even if streaming is enabled because we exceed the memory threshold but still have not decoded the complete tuple e.g., only decoded toast table insert but not the main table insert.

Even when streaming large transactions, the changes are still applied in commit order, preserving the same guarantees as the non-streaming mode.

## 49.10. Two-phase Commit Support for Logical Decoding

With the basic output plugin callbacks (eg., `begin_cb`, `change_cb`, `commit_cb` and `message_cb`) two-phase commit commands like `PREPARE TRANSACTION`, `COMMIT PREPARED` and `ROLLBACK PREPARED` are not decoded. While the `PREPARE TRANSACTION` is ignored, `COMMIT PREPARED` is decoded as a `COMMIT` and `ROLLBACK PREPARED` is decoded as a `ROLLBACK`.

To support the streaming of two-phase commands, an output plugin needs to provide additional callbacks. There are multiple two-phase commit callbacks that are required, (`begin_prepare_cb`, `prepare_cb`, `commit_prepared_cb`, `rollback_prepared_cb` and `stream_prepare_cb`) and an optional callback (`filter_prepare_cb`).

If the output plugin callbacks for decoding two-phase commit commands are provided, then on `PREPARE TRANSACTION`, the changes of that transaction are decoded, passed to the output plugin, and the `prepare_cb` callback is invoked. This differs from the basic decoding setup where changes are only passed to the output plugin when a transaction is committed. The start of a prepared transaction is indicated by the `begin_prepare_cb` callback.

When a prepared transaction is rolled back using the `ROLLBACK PREPARED`, then the `rollback_prepared_cb` callback is invoked and when the prepared transaction is committed using `COMMIT PREPARED`, then the `commit_prepared_cb` callback is invoked.

Optionally the output plugin can define filtering rules via `filter_prepare_cb` to decode only specific transaction in two phases. This can be achieved by pattern matching on the `gid` or via lookups using the `xid`.

The users that want to decode prepared transactions need to be careful about below mentioned points:

- If the prepared transaction has locked [user] catalog tables exclusively then decoding prepare can block till the main transaction is committed.
- The logical replication solution that builds distributed two phase commit using this feature can deadlock if the prepared transaction has locked [user] catalog tables exclusively. To avoid this users

must refrain from having locks on catalog tables (e.g. explicit `LOCK` command) in such transactions. See Section 49.8.2 for the details.

---

# Chapter 50. Replication Progress Tracking

Replication origins are intended to make it easier to implement logical replication solutions on top of logical decoding. They provide a solution to two common problems:

- How to safely keep track of replication progress
- How to change replication behavior based on the origin of a row; for example, to prevent loops in bi-directional replication setups

Replication origins have just two properties, a name and an ID. The name, which is what should be used to refer to the origin across systems, is free-form text. It should be used in a way that makes conflicts between replication origins created by different replication solutions unlikely; e.g., by prefixing the replication solution's name to it. The ID is used only to avoid having to store the long version in situations where space efficiency is important. It should never be shared across systems.

Replication origins can be created using the function `pg_replication_origin_create()`; dropped using `pg_replication_origin_drop()`; and seen in the `pg_replication_origin` system catalog.

One nontrivial part of building a replication solution is to keep track of replay progress in a safe manner. When the applying process, or the whole cluster, dies, it needs to be possible to find out up to where data has successfully been replicated. Naïve solutions to this, such as updating a row in a table for every replayed transaction, have problems like run-time overhead and database bloat.

Using the replication origin infrastructure a session can be marked as replaying from a remote node (using the `pg_replication_origin_session_setup()` function). Additionally the LSN and commit time stamp of every source transaction can be configured on a per transaction basis using `pg_replication_origin_xact_setup()`. If that's done replication progress will persist in a crash safe manner. Replay progress for all replication origins can be seen in the `pg_replication_origin_status` view. An individual origin's progress, e.g., when resuming replication, can be acquired using `pg_replication_origin_progress()` for any origin or `pg_replication_origin_session_progress()` for the origin configured in the current session.

In replication topologies more complex than replication from exactly one system to one other system, another problem can be that it is hard to avoid replicating replayed rows again. That can lead both to cycles in the replication and inefficiencies. Replication origins provide an optional mechanism to recognize and prevent that. When configured using the functions referenced in the previous paragraph, every change and transaction passed to output plugin callbacks (see Section 49.6) generated by the session is tagged with the replication origin of the generating session. This allows treating them differently in the output plugin, e.g., ignoring all but locally-originating rows. Additionally the `filter_by_origin_cb` callback can be used to filter the logical decoding change stream based on the source. While less flexible, filtering via that callback is considerably more efficient than doing it in the output plugin.

---

# Chapter 51. Archive Modules

PostgreSQL provides infrastructure to create custom modules for continuous archiving (see Section 26.3). While archiving via a shell command (i.e., `archive_command`) is much simpler, a custom archive module will often be considerably more robust and performant.

When a custom `archive_library` is configured, PostgreSQL will submit completed WAL files to the module, and the server will avoid recycling or removing these WAL files until the module indicates that the files were successfully archived. It is ultimately up to the module to decide what to do with each WAL file, but many recommendations are listed at Section 26.3.1.

Archiving modules must at least consist of an initialization function (see Section 51.1) and the required callbacks (see Section 51.2). However, archive modules are also permitted to do much more (e.g., declare GUCs and register background workers).

The `contrib/basic_archive` module contains a working example, which demonstrates some useful techniques.

## 51.1. Initialization Functions

An archive library is loaded by dynamically loading a shared library with the `archive_library`'s name as the library base name. The normal library search path is used to locate the library. To provide the required archive module callbacks and to indicate that the library is actually an archive module, it needs to provide a function named `_PG_archive_module_init`. The result of the function must be a pointer to a struct of type `ArchiveModuleCallbacks`, which contains everything that the core code needs to know to make use of the archive module. The return value needs to be of server lifetime, which is typically achieved by defining it as a `static const` variable in global scope.

```
typedef struct ArchiveModuleCallbacks
{
    ArchiveStartupCB startup_cb;
    ArchiveCheckConfiguredCB check_configured_cb;
    ArchiveFileCB archive_file_cb;
    ArchiveShutdownCB shutdown_cb;
} ArchiveModuleCallbacks;
typedef const ArchiveModuleCallbacks *(*ArchiveModuleInit) (void);
```

Only the `archive_file_cb` callback is required. The others are optional.

## 51.2. Archive Module Callbacks

The archive callbacks define the actual archiving behavior of the module. The server will call them as required to process each individual WAL file.

### 51.2.1. Startup Callback

The `startup_cb` callback is called shortly after the module is loaded. This callback can be used to perform any additional initialization required. If the archive module has any state, it can use `state->private_data` to store it.

```
typedef void (*ArchiveStartupCB) (ArchiveModuleState *state);
```



## 51.2.2. Check Callback

The `check_configured_cb` callback is called to determine whether the module is fully configured and ready to accept WAL files (e.g., its configuration parameters are set to valid values). If no `check_configured_cb` is defined, the server always assumes the module is configured.

```
typedef bool (*ArchiveCheckConfiguredCB) (ArchiveModuleState
    *state);
```

If `true` is returned, the server will proceed with archiving the file by calling the `archive_file_cb` callback. If `false` is returned, archiving will not proceed, and the archiver will emit the following message to the server log:

```
WARNING:  archive_mode enabled, yet archiving is not configured
```

In the latter case, the server will periodically call this function, and archiving will proceed only when it returns `true`.

## 51.2.3. Archive Callback

The `archive_file_cb` callback is called to archive a single WAL file.

```
typedef bool (*ArchiveFileCB) (ArchiveModuleState *state, const
    char *file, const char *path);
```

If `true` is returned, the server proceeds as if the file was successfully archived, which may include recycling or removing the original WAL file. If `false` is returned, the server will keep the original WAL file and retry archiving later. `file` will contain just the file name of the WAL file to archive, while `path` contains the full path of the WAL file (including the file name).

## 51.2.4. Shutdown Callback

The `shutdown_cb` callback is called when the archiver process exits (e.g., after an error) or the value of `archive_library` changes. If no `shutdown_cb` is defined, no special action is taken in these situations. If the archive module has any state, this callback should free it to avoid leaks.

```
typedef void (*ArchiveShutdownCB) (ArchiveModuleState *state);
```

---

# Part VI. Reference

The entries in this Reference are meant to provide in reasonable length an authoritative, complete, and formal summary about their respective subjects. More information about the use of PostgreSQL, in narrative, tutorial, or example form, can be found in other parts of this book. See the cross-references listed on each reference page.

The reference entries are also available as traditional “man” pages.

---

---

# Table of Contents

I. SQL Commands .....	1515
ABORT .....	1519
ALTER AGGREGATE .....	1520
ALTER COLLATION .....	1522
ALTER CONVERSION .....	1525
ALTER DATABASE .....	1527
ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES .....	1530
ALTER DOMAIN .....	1533
ALTER EVENT TRIGGER .....	1537
ALTER EXTENSION .....	1538
ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER .....	1542
ALTER FOREIGN TABLE .....	1544
ALTER FUNCTION .....	1549
ALTER GROUP .....	1553
ALTER INDEX .....	1555
ALTER LANGUAGE .....	1558
ALTER LARGE OBJECT .....	1559
ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW .....	1560
ALTER OPERATOR .....	1562
ALTER OPERATOR CLASS .....	1564
ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY .....	1565
ALTER POLICY .....	1569
ALTER PROCEDURE .....	1571
ALTER PUBLICATION .....	1574
ALTER ROLE .....	1577
ALTER ROUTINE .....	1581
ALTER RULE .....	1583
ALTER SCHEMA .....	1584
ALTER SEQUENCE .....	1585
ALTER SERVER .....	1588
ALTER STATISTICS .....	1590
ALTER SUBSCRIPTION .....	1591
ALTER SYSTEM .....	1594
ALTER TABLE .....	1596
ALTER TABLESPACE .....	1614
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION .....	1616
ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY .....	1618
ALTER TEXT SEARCH PARSER .....	1620
ALTER TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE .....	1621
ALTER TRIGGER .....	1622
ALTER TYPE .....	1624
ALTER USER .....	1629
ALTER USER MAPPING .....	1630
ALTER VIEW .....	1631
ANALYZE .....	1633
BEGIN .....	1636
CALL .....	1638
CHECKPOINT .....	1640
CLOSE .....	1641
CLUSTER .....	1642
COMMENT .....	1645
COMMIT .....	1650
COMMIT PREPARED .....	1651
COPY .....	1652
CREATE ACCESS METHOD .....	1662

CREATE AGGREGATE .....	1663
CREATE CAST .....	1671
CREATE COLLATION .....	1675
CREATE CONVERSION .....	1678
CREATE DATABASE .....	1680
CREATE DOMAIN .....	1685
CREATE EVENT TRIGGER .....	1688
CREATE EXTENSION .....	1690
CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER .....	1693
CREATE FOREIGN TABLE .....	1695
CREATE FUNCTION .....	1700
CREATE GROUP .....	1709
CREATE INDEX .....	1710
CREATE LANGUAGE .....	1719
CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW .....	1722
CREATE OPERATOR .....	1724
CREATE OPERATOR CLASS .....	1727
CREATE OPERATOR FAMILY .....	1730
CREATE POLICY .....	1731
CREATE PROCEDURE .....	1737
CREATE PUBLICATION .....	1741
CREATE ROLE .....	1745
CREATE RULE .....	1750
CREATE SCHEMA .....	1753
CREATE SEQUENCE .....	1756
CREATE SERVER .....	1760
CREATE STATISTICS .....	1762
CREATE SUBSCRIPTION .....	1766
CREATE TABLE .....	1771
CREATE TABLE AS .....	1794
CREATE TABLESPACE .....	1797
CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION .....	1799
CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY .....	1800
CREATE TEXT SEARCH PARSER .....	1802
CREATE TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE .....	1804
CREATE TRANSFORM .....	1805
CREATE TRIGGER .....	1807
CREATE TYPE .....	1814
CREATE USER .....	1823
CREATE USER MAPPING .....	1824
CREATE VIEW .....	1826
DEALLOCATE .....	1832
DECLARE .....	1833
DELETE .....	1837
DISCARD .....	1840
DO .....	1841
DROP ACCESS METHOD .....	1843
DROP AGGREGATE .....	1844
DROP CAST .....	1846
DROP COLLATION .....	1847
DROP CONVERSION .....	1848
DROP DATABASE .....	1849
DROP DOMAIN .....	1850
DROP EVENT TRIGGER .....	1851
DROP EXTENSION .....	1852
DROP FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER .....	1853
DROP FOREIGN TABLE .....	1854
DROP FUNCTION .....	1855

DROP GROUP .....	1857
DROP INDEX .....	1858
DROP LANGUAGE .....	1860
DROP MATERIALIZED VIEW .....	1861
DROP OPERATOR .....	1862
DROP OPERATOR CLASS .....	1864
DROP OPERATOR FAMILY .....	1866
DROP OWNED .....	1868
DROP POLICY .....	1869
DROP PROCEDURE .....	1870
DROP PUBLICATION .....	1872
DROP ROLE .....	1873
DROP ROUTINE .....	1874
DROP RULE .....	1876
DROP SCHEMA .....	1877
DROP SEQUENCE .....	1878
DROP SERVER .....	1879
DROP STATISTICS .....	1880
DROP SUBSCRIPTION .....	1881
DROP TABLE .....	1883
DROP TABLESPACE .....	1884
DROP TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION .....	1885
DROP TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY .....	1886
DROP TEXT SEARCH PARSER .....	1887
DROP TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE .....	1888
DROP TRANSFORM .....	1889
DROP TRIGGER .....	1890
DROP TYPE .....	1891
DROP USER .....	1892
DROP USER MAPPING .....	1893
DROP VIEW .....	1894
END .....	1895
EXECUTE .....	1896
EXPLAIN .....	1897
FETCH .....	1903
GRANT .....	1907
IMPORT FOREIGN SCHEMA .....	1913
INSERT .....	1915
LISTEN .....	1923
LOAD .....	1925
LOCK .....	1926
MERGE .....	1929
MOVE .....	1935
NOTIFY .....	1937
PREPARE .....	1940
PREPARE TRANSACTION .....	1943
REASSIGN OWNED .....	1945
REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW .....	1946
REINDEX .....	1948
RELEASE SAVEPOINT .....	1953
RESET .....	1955
REVOKE .....	1956
ROLLBACK .....	1961
ROLLBACK PREPARED .....	1962
ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT .....	1963
SAVEPOINT .....	1965
SECURITY LABEL .....	1967
SELECT .....	1970

SELECT INTO .....	1992
SET .....	1994
SET CONSTRAINTS .....	1997
SET ROLE .....	1998
SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION .....	2000
SET TRANSACTION .....	2002
SHOW .....	2005
START TRANSACTION .....	2007
TRUNCATE .....	2008
UNLISTEN .....	2010
UPDATE .....	2012
VACUUM .....	2017
VALUES .....	2022
II. PostgreSQL Client Applications .....	2025
clusterdb .....	2026
createdb .....	2029
createuser .....	2033
dropdb .....	2038
dropuser .....	2041
ecpg .....	2044
pg_amcheck .....	2047
pg_basebackup .....	2053
pgbench .....	2062
pg_config .....	2086
pg_dump .....	2089
pg_dumpall .....	2103
pg_isready .....	2110
pg_receivewal .....	2112
pg_recvlogical .....	2117
pg_restore .....	2121
pg_verifybackup .....	2130
psql .....	2133
reindexdb .....	2177
vacuumdb .....	2181
III. PostgreSQL Server Applications .....	2186
initdb .....	2187
pg_archivecleanup .....	2192
pg_checksums .....	2194
pg_controldata .....	2196
pg_ctl .....	2197
pg_resetwal .....	2203
pg_rewind .....	2207
pg_test_fsync .....	2211
pg_test_timing .....	2212
pg_upgrade .....	2216
pg_waldump .....	2225
postgres .....	2229

---

# SQL Commands

This part contains reference information for the SQL commands supported by PostgreSQL. By “SQL” the language in general is meant; information about the standards conformance and compatibility of each command can be found on the respective reference page.

## Table of Contents

ABORT .....	1519
ALTER AGGREGATE .....	1520
ALTER COLLATION .....	1522
ALTER CONVERSION .....	1525
ALTER DATABASE .....	1527
ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES .....	1530
ALTER DOMAIN .....	1533
ALTER EVENT TRIGGER .....	1537
ALTER EXTENSION .....	1538
ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER .....	1542
ALTER FOREIGN TABLE .....	1544
ALTER FUNCTION .....	1549
ALTER GROUP .....	1553
ALTER INDEX .....	1555
ALTER LANGUAGE .....	1558
ALTER LARGE OBJECT .....	1559
ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW .....	1560
ALTER OPERATOR .....	1562
ALTER OPERATOR CLASS .....	1564
ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY .....	1565
ALTER POLICY .....	1569
ALTER PROCEDURE .....	1571
ALTER PUBLICATION .....	1574
ALTER ROLE .....	1577
ALTER ROUTINE .....	1581
ALTER RULE .....	1583
ALTER SCHEMA .....	1584
ALTER SEQUENCE .....	1585
ALTER SERVER .....	1588
ALTER STATISTICS .....	1590
ALTER SUBSCRIPTION .....	1591
ALTER SYSTEM .....	1594
ALTER TABLE .....	1596
ALTER TABLESPACE .....	1614
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION .....	1616
ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY .....	1618
ALTER TEXT SEARCH PARSER .....	1620
ALTER TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE .....	1621
ALTER TRIGGER .....	1622
ALTER TYPE .....	1624
ALTER USER .....	1629
ALTER USER MAPPING .....	1630
ALTER VIEW .....	1631
ANALYZE .....	1633
BEGIN .....	1636
CALL .....	1638
CHECKPOINT .....	1640
CLOSE .....	1641

CLUSTER .....	1642
COMMENT .....	1645
COMMIT .....	1650
COMMIT PREPARED .....	1651
COPY .....	1652
CREATE ACCESS METHOD .....	1662
CREATE AGGREGATE .....	1663
CREATE CAST .....	1671
CREATE COLLATION .....	1675
CREATE CONVERSION .....	1678
CREATE DATABASE .....	1680
CREATE DOMAIN .....	1685
CREATE EVENT TRIGGER .....	1688
CREATE EXTENSION .....	1690
CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER .....	1693
CREATE FOREIGN TABLE .....	1695
CREATE FUNCTION .....	1700
CREATE GROUP .....	1709
CREATE INDEX .....	1710
CREATE LANGUAGE .....	1719
CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW .....	1722
CREATE OPERATOR .....	1724
CREATE OPERATOR CLASS .....	1727
CREATE OPERATOR FAMILY .....	1730
CREATE POLICY .....	1731
CREATE PROCEDURE .....	1737
CREATE PUBLICATION .....	1741
CREATE ROLE .....	1745
CREATE RULE .....	1750
CREATE SCHEMA .....	1753
CREATE SEQUENCE .....	1756
CREATE SERVER .....	1760
CREATE STATISTICS .....	1762
CREATE SUBSCRIPTION .....	1766
CREATE TABLE .....	1771
CREATE TABLE AS .....	1794
CREATE TABLESPACE .....	1797
CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION .....	1799
CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY .....	1800
CREATE TEXT SEARCH PARSER .....	1802
CREATE TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE .....	1804
CREATE TRANSFORM .....	1805
CREATE TRIGGER .....	1807
CREATE TYPE .....	1814
CREATE USER .....	1823
CREATE USER MAPPING .....	1824
CREATE VIEW .....	1826
DEALLOCATE .....	1832
DECLARE .....	1833
DELETE .....	1837
DISCARD .....	1840
DO .....	1841
DROP ACCESS METHOD .....	1843
DROP AGGREGATE .....	1844
DROP CAST .....	1846
DROP COLLATION .....	1847
DROP CONVERSION .....	1848
DROP DATABASE .....	1849



DROP DOMAIN .....	1850
DROP EVENT TRIGGER .....	1851
DROP EXTENSION .....	1852
DROP FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER .....	1853
DROP FOREIGN TABLE .....	1854
DROP FUNCTION .....	1855
DROP GROUP .....	1857
DROP INDEX .....	1858
DROP LANGUAGE .....	1860
DROP MATERIALIZED VIEW .....	1861
DROP OPERATOR .....	1862
DROP OPERATOR CLASS .....	1864
DROP OPERATOR FAMILY .....	1866
DROP OWNED .....	1868
DROP POLICY .....	1869
DROP PROCEDURE .....	1870
DROP PUBLICATION .....	1872
DROP ROLE .....	1873
DROP ROUTINE .....	1874
DROP RULE .....	1876
DROP SCHEMA .....	1877
DROP SEQUENCE .....	1878
DROP SERVER .....	1879
DROP STATISTICS .....	1880
DROP SUBSCRIPTION .....	1881
DROP TABLE .....	1883
DROP TABLESPACE .....	1884
DROP TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION .....	1885
DROP TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY .....	1886
DROP TEXT SEARCH PARSER .....	1887
DROP TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE .....	1888
DROP TRANSFORM .....	1889
DROP TRIGGER .....	1890
DROP TYPE .....	1891
DROP USER .....	1892
DROP USER MAPPING .....	1893
DROP VIEW .....	1894
END .....	1895
EXECUTE .....	1896
EXPLAIN .....	1897
FETCH .....	1903
GRANT .....	1907
IMPORT FOREIGN SCHEMA .....	1913
INSERT .....	1915
LISTEN .....	1923
LOAD .....	1925
LOCK .....	1926
MERGE .....	1929
MOVE .....	1935
NOTIFY .....	1937
PREPARE .....	1940
PREPARE TRANSACTION .....	1943
REASSIGN OWNED .....	1945
REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW .....	1946
REINDEX .....	1948
RELEASE SAVEPOINT .....	1953
RESET .....	1955
REVOKE .....	1956

ROLLBACK .....	1961
ROLLBACK PREPARED .....	1962
ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT .....	1963
SAVEPOINT .....	1965
SECURITY LABEL .....	1967
SELECT .....	1970
SELECT INTO .....	1992
SET .....	1994
SET CONSTRAINTS .....	1997
SET ROLE .....	1998
SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION .....	2000
SET TRANSACTION .....	2002
SHOW .....	2005
START TRANSACTION .....	2007
TRUNCATE .....	2008
UNLISTEN .....	2010
UPDATE .....	2012
VACUUM .....	2017
VALUES .....	2022

---

# ABORT

ABORT — abort the current transaction

## Synopsis

```
ABORT [ WORK | TRANSACTION ] [ AND [ NO ] CHAIN ]
```

## Description

ABORT rolls back the current transaction and causes all the updates made by the transaction to be discarded. This command is identical in behavior to the standard SQL command ROLLBACK, and is present only for historical reasons.

## Parameters

WORK  
TRANSACTION

Optional key words. They have no effect.

AND CHAIN

If AND CHAIN is specified, a new transaction is immediately started with the same transaction characteristics (see SET TRANSACTION) as the just finished one. Otherwise, no new transaction is started.

## Notes

Use COMMIT to successfully terminate a transaction.

Issuing ABORT outside of a transaction block emits a warning and otherwise has no effect.

## Examples

To abort all changes:

```
ABORT ;
```

## Compatibility

This command is a PostgreSQL extension present for historical reasons. ROLLBACK is the equivalent standard SQL command.

## See Also

BEGIN, COMMIT, ROLLBACK

---

# ALTER AGGREGATE

ALTER AGGREGATE — change the definition of an aggregate function

## Synopsis

```
ALTER AGGREGATE name ( aggregate_signature ) RENAME TO new_name
ALTER AGGREGATE name ( aggregate_signature )
                        OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER
                        | SESSION_USER }
ALTER AGGREGATE name ( aggregate_signature ) SET SCHEMA new_schema
```

where *aggregate\_signature* is:

```
* |
[ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype [ , ... ] |
[ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype [ , ... ] ] ORDER BY [ argmode ]
[ argname ] argtype [ , ... ]
```

## Description

ALTER AGGREGATE changes the definition of an aggregate function.

You must own the aggregate function to use ALTER AGGREGATE. To change the schema of an aggregate function, you must also have CREATE privilege on the new schema. To alter the owner, you must be able to SET ROLE to the new owning role, and that role must have CREATE privilege on the aggregate function's schema. (These restrictions enforce that altering the owner doesn't do anything you couldn't do by dropping and recreating the aggregate function. However, a superuser can alter ownership of any aggregate function anyway.)

## Parameters

*name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing aggregate function.

*argmode*

The mode of an argument: IN or VARIADIC. If omitted, the default is IN.

*argname*

The name of an argument. Note that ALTER AGGREGATE does not actually pay any attention to argument names, since only the argument data types are needed to determine the aggregate function's identity.

*argtype*

An input data type on which the aggregate function operates. To reference a zero-argument aggregate function, write \* in place of the list of argument specifications. To reference an ordered-set aggregate function, write ORDER BY between the direct and aggregated argument specifications.

*new\_name*

The new name of the aggregate function.

*new\_owner*

The new owner of the aggregate function.

*new\_schema*

The new schema for the aggregate function.

## Notes

The recommended syntax for referencing an ordered-set aggregate is to write `ORDER BY` between the direct and aggregated argument specifications, in the same style as in `CREATE AGGREGATE`. However, it will also work to omit `ORDER BY` and just run the direct and aggregated argument specifications into a single list. In this abbreviated form, if `VARIADIC "any"` was used in both the direct and aggregated argument lists, write `VARIADIC "any"` only once.

## Examples

To rename the aggregate function `myavg` for type `integer` to `my_average`:

```
ALTER AGGREGATE myavg(integer) RENAME TO my_average;
```

To change the owner of the aggregate function `myavg` for type `integer` to `joe`:

```
ALTER AGGREGATE myavg(integer) OWNER TO joe;
```

To move the ordered-set aggregate `mypercentile` with direct argument of type `float8` and aggregated argument of type `integer` into schema `myschema`:

```
ALTER AGGREGATE mypercentile(float8 ORDER BY integer) SET SCHEMA
myschema;
```

This will work too:

```
ALTER AGGREGATE mypercentile(float8, integer) SET SCHEMA myschema;
```

## Compatibility

There is no `ALTER AGGREGATE` statement in the SQL standard.

## See Also

`CREATE AGGREGATE`, `DROP AGGREGATE`

---

# ALTER COLLATION

ALTER COLLATION — change the definition of a collation

## Synopsis

```
ALTER COLLATION name REFRESH VERSION
```

```
ALTER COLLATION name RENAME TO new_name
```

```
ALTER COLLATION name OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE |  
CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER }
```

```
ALTER COLLATION name SET SCHEMA new_schema
```

## Description

ALTER COLLATION changes the definition of a collation.

You must own the collation to use ALTER COLLATION. To alter the owner, you must be able to SET ROLE to the new owning role, and that role must have CREATE privilege on the collation's schema. (These restrictions enforce that altering the owner doesn't do anything you couldn't do by dropping and recreating the collation. However, a superuser can alter ownership of any collation anyway.)

## Parameters

*name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing collation.

*new\_name*

The new name of the collation.

*new\_owner*

The new owner of the collation.

*new\_schema*

The new schema for the collation.

REFRESH VERSION

Update the collation's version. See Notes below.

## Notes

When a collation object is created, the provider-specific version of the collation is recorded in the system catalog. When the collation is used, the current version is checked against the recorded version, and a warning is issued when there is a mismatch, for example:

```
WARNING: collation "xx-x-icu" has version mismatch  
DETAIL: The collation in the database was created using version  
1.2.3.4, but the operating system provides version 2.3.4.5.  
HINT: Rebuild all objects affected by this collation and run  
ALTER COLLATION pg_catalog."xx-x-icu" REFRESH VERSION, or build  
PostgreSQL with the right library version.
```

A change in collation definitions can lead to corrupt indexes and other problems because the database system relies on stored objects having a certain sort order. Generally, this should be avoided, but it can happen in legitimate circumstances, such as when upgrading the operating system to a new major version or when using `pg_upgrade` to upgrade to server binaries linked with a newer version of ICU. When this happens, all objects depending on the collation should be rebuilt, for example, using `REINDEX`. When that is done, the collation version can be refreshed using the command `ALTER COLLATION ... REFRESH VERSION`. This will update the system catalog to record the current collation version and will make the warning go away. Note that this does not actually check whether all affected objects have been rebuilt correctly.

When using collations provided by `libc`, version information is recorded on systems using the GNU C library (most Linux systems), FreeBSD and Windows. When using collations provided by ICU, the version information is provided by the ICU library and is available on all platforms.

### Note

When using the GNU C library for collations, the C library's version is used as a proxy for the collation version. Many Linux distributions change collation definitions only when upgrading the C library, but this approach is imperfect as maintainers are free to back-port newer collation definitions to older C library releases.

When using Windows for collations, version information is only available for collations defined with BCP 47 language tags such as `en-US`.

For the database default collation, there is an analogous command `ALTER DATABASE ... REFRESH COLLATION VERSION`.

The following query can be used to identify all collations in the current database that need to be refreshed and the objects that depend on them:

```
SELECT pg_describe_object(refclassid, refobjid, refobjsubid) AS
    "Collation",
       pg_describe_object(classid, objid, objsubid) AS "Object"
FROM pg_depend d JOIN pg_collation c
    ON refclassid = 'pg_collation'::regclass AND refobjid =
    c.oid
WHERE c.collversion <> pg_collation_actual_version(c.oid)
ORDER BY 1, 2;
```

## Examples

To rename the collation `de_DE` to `german`:

```
ALTER COLLATION "de_DE" RENAME TO german;
```

To change the owner of the collation `en_US` to `joe`:

```
ALTER COLLATION "en_US" OWNER TO joe;
```

## Compatibility

There is no `ALTER COLLATION` statement in the SQL standard.

## See Also

CREATE COLLATION, DROP COLLATION



---

# ALTER CONVERSION

ALTER CONVERSION — change the definition of a conversion

## Synopsis

```
ALTER CONVERSION name RENAME TO new_name
ALTER CONVERSION name OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE |
    CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER }
ALTER CONVERSION name SET SCHEMA new_schema
```

## Description

ALTER CONVERSION changes the definition of a conversion.

You must own the conversion to use ALTER CONVERSION. To alter the owner, you must be able to SET ROLE to the new owning role, and that role must have CREATE privilege on the conversion's schema. (These restrictions enforce that altering the owner doesn't do anything you couldn't do by dropping and recreating the conversion. However, a superuser can alter ownership of any conversion anyway.)

## Parameters

*name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing conversion.

*new\_name*

The new name of the conversion.

*new\_owner*

The new owner of the conversion.

*new\_schema*

The new schema for the conversion.

## Examples

To rename the conversion `iso_8859_1_to_utf8` to `latin1_to_unicode`:

```
ALTER CONVERSION iso_8859_1_to_utf8 RENAME TO latin1_to_unicode;
```

To change the owner of the conversion `iso_8859_1_to_utf8` to `joe`:

```
ALTER CONVERSION iso_8859_1_to_utf8 OWNER TO joe;
```

## Compatibility

There is no ALTER CONVERSION statement in the SQL standard.

## See Also

CREATE CONVERSION, DROP CONVERSION

---

# ALTER DATABASE

ALTER DATABASE — change a database

## Synopsis

```
ALTER DATABASE name [ [ WITH ] option [ ... ] ]
```

where *option* can be:

```
ALLOW_CONNECTIONS allowconn
CONNECTION LIMIT connlimit
IS_TEMPLATE istemplate
```

```
ALTER DATABASE name RENAME TO new_name
```

```
ALTER DATABASE name OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE |
CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER }
```

```
ALTER DATABASE name SET TABLESPACE new_tablespace
```

```
ALTER DATABASE name REFRESH COLLATION VERSION
```

```
ALTER DATABASE name SET configuration_parameter { TO | = } { value
| DEFAULT }
ALTER DATABASE name SET configuration_parameter FROM CURRENT
ALTER DATABASE name RESET configuration_parameter
ALTER DATABASE name RESET ALL
```

## Description

ALTER DATABASE changes the attributes of a database.

The first form changes certain per-database settings. (See below for details.) Only the database owner or a superuser can change these settings.

The second form changes the name of the database. Only the database owner or a superuser can rename a database; non-superuser owners must also have the CREATEDB privilege. The current database cannot be renamed. (Connect to a different database if you need to do that.)

The third form changes the owner of the database. To alter the owner, you must be able to SET ROLE to the new owning role, and you must have the CREATEDB privilege. (Note that superusers have all these privileges automatically.)

The fourth form changes the default tablespace of the database. Only the database owner or a superuser can do this; you must also have create privilege for the new tablespace. This command physically moves any tables or indexes in the database's old default tablespace to the new tablespace. The new default tablespace must be empty for this database, and no one can be connected to the database. Tables and indexes in non-default tablespaces are unaffected.

The remaining forms change the session default for a run-time configuration variable for a PostgreSQL database. Whenever a new session is subsequently started in that database, the specified value becomes the session default value. The database-specific default overrides whatever setting is present in `postgresql.conf` or has been received from the `postgres` command line. Only the database

owner or a superuser can change the session defaults for a database. Certain variables cannot be set this way, or can only be set by a superuser.

## Parameters

*name*

The name of the database whose attributes are to be altered.

*allowconn*

If false then no one can connect to this database.

*conlimit*

How many concurrent connections can be made to this database. -1 means no limit.

*istemplate*

If true, then this database can be cloned by any user with CREATEDB privileges; if false, then only superusers or the owner of the database can clone it.

*new\_name*

The new name of the database.

*new\_owner*

The new owner of the database.

*new\_tablespace*

The new default tablespace of the database.

This form of the command cannot be executed inside a transaction block.

REFRESH COLLATION VERSION

Update the database collation version. See Notes for background.

*configuration\_parameter*  
*value*

Set this database's session default for the specified configuration parameter to the given value. If *value* is DEFAULT or, equivalently, RESET is used, the database-specific setting is removed, so the system-wide default setting will be inherited in new sessions. Use RESET ALL to clear all database-specific settings. SET FROM CURRENT saves the session's current value of the parameter as the database-specific value.

See SET and Chapter 20 for more information about allowed parameter names and values.

## Notes

It is also possible to tie a session default to a specific role rather than to a database; see ALTER ROLE. Role-specific settings override database-specific ones if there is a conflict.

## Examples

To disable index scans by default in the database `test`:

```
ALTER DATABASE test SET enable_indexscan TO off;
```

## Compatibility

The `ALTER DATABASE` statement is a PostgreSQL extension.

## See Also

`CREATE DATABASE`, `DROP DATABASE`, `SET`, `CREATE TABLESPACE`

---

# ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES

ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES — define default access privileges

## Synopsis

```
ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES
    [ FOR { ROLE | USER } target_role [, ...] ]
    [ IN SCHEMA schema_name [, ...] ]
    abbreviated_grant_or_revoke
```

where *abbreviated\_grant\_or\_revoke* is one of:

```
GRANT { { SELECT | INSERT | UPDATE | DELETE | TRUNCATE | REFERENCES
| TRIGGER }
    [, ...] | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON TABLES
    TO { [ GROUP ] role_name | PUBLIC } [, ...] [ WITH GRANT
OPTION ]
```

```
GRANT { { USAGE | SELECT | UPDATE }
    [, ...] | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON SEQUENCES
    TO { [ GROUP ] role_name | PUBLIC } [, ...] [ WITH GRANT
OPTION ]
```

```
GRANT { EXECUTE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON { FUNCTIONS | ROUTINES }
    TO { [ GROUP ] role_name | PUBLIC } [, ...] [ WITH GRANT
OPTION ]
```

```
GRANT { USAGE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON TYPES
    TO { [ GROUP ] role_name | PUBLIC } [, ...] [ WITH GRANT
OPTION ]
```

```
GRANT { USAGE | CREATE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON SCHEMAS
    TO { [ GROUP ] role_name | PUBLIC } [, ...] [ WITH GRANT
OPTION ]
```

```
REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
    { { SELECT | INSERT | UPDATE | DELETE | TRUNCATE | REFERENCES |
TRIGGER }
    [, ...] | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON TABLES
    FROM { [ GROUP ] role_name | PUBLIC } [, ...]
    [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

```
REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
    { { USAGE | SELECT | UPDATE }
    [, ...] | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON SEQUENCES
    FROM { [ GROUP ] role_name | PUBLIC } [, ...]
```

```
[ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
{ EXECUTE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
ON { FUNCTIONS | ROUTINES }
FROM { [ GROUP ] role_name | PUBLIC } [, ...]
[ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
{ USAGE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
ON TYPES
FROM { [ GROUP ] role_name | PUBLIC } [, ...]
[ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
{ USAGE | CREATE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
ON SCHEMAS
FROM { [ GROUP ] role_name | PUBLIC } [, ...]
[ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

## Description

ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES allows you to set the privileges that will be applied to objects created in the future. (It does not affect privileges assigned to already-existing objects.) Privileges can be set globally (i.e., for all objects created in the current database), or just for objects created in specified schemas.

While you can change your own default privileges and the defaults of roles that you are a member of, at object creation time, new object permissions are only affected by the default privileges of the current role, and are not inherited from any roles in which the current role is a member.

As explained in Section 5.7, the default privileges for any object type normally grant all grantable permissions to the object owner, and may grant some privileges to PUBLIC as well. However, this behavior can be changed by altering the global default privileges with ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES.

Currently, only the privileges for schemas, tables (including views and foreign tables), sequences, functions, and types (including domains) can be altered. For this command, functions include aggregates and procedures. The words FUNCTIONS and ROUTINES are equivalent in this command. (ROUTINES is preferred going forward as the standard term for functions and procedures taken together. In earlier PostgreSQL releases, only the word FUNCTIONS was allowed. It is not possible to set default privileges for functions and procedures separately.)

Default privileges that are specified per-schema are added to whatever the global default privileges are for the particular object type. This means you cannot revoke privileges per-schema if they are granted globally (either by default, or according to a previous ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES command that did not specify a schema). Per-schema REVOKE is only useful to reverse the effects of a previous per-schema GRANT.

## Parameters

*target\_role*

Change default privileges for objects created by the *target\_role*, or the current role if unspecified.

*schema\_name*

The name of an existing schema. If specified, the default privileges are altered for objects later created in that schema. If IN SCHEMA is omitted, the global default privileges are altered. IN SCHEMA is not allowed when setting privileges for schemas, since schemas can't be nested.

*role\_name*

The name of an existing role to grant or revoke privileges for. This parameter, and all the other parameters in *abbreviated\_grant\_or\_revoke*, act as described under GRANT or REVOKE, except that one is setting permissions for a whole class of objects rather than specific named objects.

## Notes

Use `psql's \ddp` command to obtain information about existing assignments of default privileges. The meaning of the privilege display is the same as explained for `\dp` in Section 5.7.

If you wish to drop a role for which the default privileges have been altered, it is necessary to reverse the changes in its default privileges or use `DROP OWNED BY` to get rid of the default privileges entry for the role.

## Examples

Grant SELECT privilege to everyone for all tables (and views) you subsequently create in schema `myschema`, and allow role `webuser` to INSERT into them too:

```
ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES IN SCHEMA myschema GRANT SELECT ON TABLES
    TO PUBLIC;
ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES IN SCHEMA myschema GRANT INSERT ON TABLES
    TO webuser;
```

Undo the above, so that subsequently-created tables won't have any more permissions than normal:

```
ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES IN SCHEMA myschema REVOKE SELECT ON TABLES
    FROM PUBLIC;
ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES IN SCHEMA myschema REVOKE INSERT ON TABLES
    FROM webuser;
```

Remove the public EXECUTE permission that is normally granted on functions, for all functions subsequently created by role `admin`:

```
ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES FOR ROLE admin REVOKE EXECUTE ON FUNCTIONS
    FROM PUBLIC;
```

Note however that you *cannot* accomplish that effect with a command limited to a single schema. This command has no effect, unless it is undoing a matching GRANT:

```
ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES IN SCHEMA public REVOKE EXECUTE ON
    FUNCTIONS FROM PUBLIC;
```

That's because per-schema default privileges can only add privileges to the global setting, not remove privileges granted by it.

## Compatibility

There is no ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES statement in the SQL standard.

## See Also

GRANT, REVOKE



---

# ALTER DOMAIN

ALTER DOMAIN — change the definition of a domain

## Synopsis

```
ALTER DOMAIN name
    { SET DEFAULT expression | DROP DEFAULT }
ALTER DOMAIN name
    { SET | DROP } NOT NULL
ALTER DOMAIN name
    ADD domain_constraint [ NOT VALID ]
ALTER DOMAIN name
    DROP CONSTRAINT [ IF EXISTS ] constraint_name [ RESTRICT |
    CASCADE ]
ALTER DOMAIN name
    RENAME CONSTRAINT constraint_name TO new_constraint_name
ALTER DOMAIN name
    VALIDATE CONSTRAINT constraint_name
ALTER DOMAIN name
    OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER |
    SESSION_USER }
ALTER DOMAIN name
    RENAME TO new_name
ALTER DOMAIN name
    SET SCHEMA new_schema
```

## Description

ALTER DOMAIN changes the definition of an existing domain. There are several sub-forms:

SET/DROP DEFAULT

These forms set or remove the default value for a domain. Note that defaults only apply to subsequent INSERT commands; they do not affect rows already in a table using the domain.

SET/DROP NOT NULL

These forms change whether a domain is marked to allow NULL values or to reject NULL values. You can only SET NOT NULL when the columns using the domain contain no null values.

ADD *domain\_constraint* [ NOT VALID ]

This form adds a new constraint to a domain using the same syntax as CREATE DOMAIN. When a new constraint is added to a domain, all columns using that domain will be checked against the newly added constraint. These checks can be suppressed by adding the new constraint using the NOT VALID option; the constraint can later be made valid using ALTER DOMAIN ... VALIDATE CONSTRAINT. Newly inserted or updated rows are always checked against all constraints, even those marked NOT VALID. NOT VALID is only accepted for CHECK constraints.

DROP CONSTRAINT [ IF EXISTS ]

This form drops constraints on a domain. If IF EXISTS is specified and the constraint does not exist, no error is thrown. In this case a notice is issued instead.

RENAME CONSTRAINT

This form changes the name of a constraint on a domain.

VALIDATE CONSTRAINT

This form validates a constraint previously added as NOT VALID, that is, it verifies that all values in table columns of the domain type satisfy the specified constraint.

OWNER

This form changes the owner of the domain to the specified user.

RENAME

This form changes the name of the domain.

SET SCHEMA

This form changes the schema of the domain. Any constraints associated with the domain are moved into the new schema as well.

You must own the domain to use ALTER DOMAIN. To change the schema of a domain, you must also have CREATE privilege on the new schema. To alter the owner, you must be able to SET ROLE to the new owning role, and that role must have CREATE privilege on the domain's schema. (These restrictions enforce that altering the owner doesn't do anything you couldn't do by dropping and recreating the domain. However, a superuser can alter ownership of any domain anyway.)

## Parameters

*name*

The name (possibly schema-qualified) of an existing domain to alter.

*domain\_constraint*

New domain constraint for the domain.

*constraint\_name*

Name of an existing constraint to drop or rename.

NOT VALID

Do not verify existing stored data for constraint validity.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the constraint, and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the constraint if there are any dependent objects. This is the default behavior.

*new\_name*

The new name for the domain.

*new\_constraint\_name*

The new name for the constraint.

*new\_owner*

The user name of the new owner of the domain.

*new\_schema*

The new schema for the domain.

## Notes

Although `ALTER DOMAIN ADD CONSTRAINT` attempts to verify that existing stored data satisfies the new constraint, this check is not bulletproof, because the command cannot “see” table rows that are newly inserted or updated and not yet committed. If there is a hazard that concurrent operations might insert bad data, the way to proceed is to add the constraint using the `NOT VALID` option, commit that command, wait until all transactions started before that commit have finished, and then issue `ALTER DOMAIN VALIDATE CONSTRAINT` to search for data violating the constraint. This method is reliable because once the constraint is committed, all new transactions are guaranteed to enforce it against new values of the domain type.

Currently, `ALTER DOMAIN ADD CONSTRAINT`, `ALTER DOMAIN VALIDATE CONSTRAINT`, and `ALTER DOMAIN SET NOT NULL` will fail if the named domain or any derived domain is used within a container-type column (a composite, array, or range column) in any table in the database. They should eventually be improved to be able to verify the new constraint for such nested values.

## Examples

To add a `NOT NULL` constraint to a domain:

```
ALTER DOMAIN zipcode SET NOT NULL;
```

To remove a `NOT NULL` constraint from a domain:

```
ALTER DOMAIN zipcode DROP NOT NULL;
```

To add a check constraint to a domain:

```
ALTER DOMAIN zipcode ADD CONSTRAINT zipchk CHECK
(char_length(VALUE) = 5);
```

To remove a check constraint from a domain:

```
ALTER DOMAIN zipcode DROP CONSTRAINT zipchk;
```

To rename a check constraint on a domain:

```
ALTER DOMAIN zipcode RENAME CONSTRAINT zipchk TO zip_check;
```

To move the domain into a different schema:

```
ALTER DOMAIN zipcode SET SCHEMA customers;
```

## Compatibility

`ALTER DOMAIN` conforms to the SQL standard, except for the `OWNER`, `RENAME`, `SET SCHEMA`, and `VALIDATE CONSTRAINT` variants, which are PostgreSQL extensions. The `NOT VALID` clause of the `ADD CONSTRAINT` variant is also a PostgreSQL extension.

## See Also

CREATE DOMAIN, DROP DOMAIN

---

# ALTER EVENT TRIGGER

ALTER EVENT TRIGGER — change the definition of an event trigger

## Synopsis

```
ALTER EVENT TRIGGER name DISABLE
ALTER EVENT TRIGGER name ENABLE [ REPLICATION | ALWAYS ]
ALTER EVENT TRIGGER name OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE |
CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER }
ALTER EVENT TRIGGER name RENAME TO new_name
```

## Description

ALTER EVENT TRIGGER changes properties of an existing event trigger.

You must be superuser to alter an event trigger.

## Parameters

*name*

The name of an existing trigger to alter.

*new\_owner*

The user name of the new owner of the event trigger.

*new\_name*

The new name of the event trigger.

DISABLE/ENABLE [ REPLICATION | ALWAYS ]

These forms configure the firing of event triggers. A disabled trigger is still known to the system, but is not executed when its triggering event occurs. See also `session_replication_role`.

## Compatibility

There is no ALTER EVENT TRIGGER statement in the SQL standard.

## See Also

CREATE EVENT TRIGGER, DROP EVENT TRIGGER

---

# ALTER EXTENSION

ALTER EXTENSION — change the definition of an extension

## Synopsis

```
ALTER EXTENSION name UPDATE [ TO new_version ]
ALTER EXTENSION name SET SCHEMA new_schema
ALTER EXTENSION name ADD member_object
ALTER EXTENSION name DROP member_object
```

where *member\_object* is:

```
ACCESS METHOD object_name |
AGGREGATE aggregate_name ( aggregate_signature ) |
CAST (source_type AS target_type) |
COLLATION object_name |
CONVERSION object_name |
DOMAIN object_name |
EVENT TRIGGER object_name |
FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER object_name |
FOREIGN TABLE object_name |
FUNCTION function_name [ ( [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype
[ , ... ] ) ] |
MATERIALIZED VIEW object_name |
OPERATOR operator_name (left_type, right_type) |
OPERATOR CLASS object_name USING index_method |
OPERATOR FAMILY object_name USING index_method |
[ PROCEDURAL ] LANGUAGE object_name |
PROCEDURE procedure_name [ ( [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype
[ , ... ] ) ] |
ROUTINE routine_name [ ( [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype
[ , ... ] ) ] |
SCHEMA object_name |
SEQUENCE object_name |
SERVER object_name |
TABLE object_name |
TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION object_name |
TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY object_name |
TEXT SEARCH PARSER object_name |
TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE object_name |
TRANSFORM FOR type_name LANGUAGE lang_name |
TYPE object_name |
VIEW object_name
```

and *aggregate\_signature* is:

```
* |
[ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype [ , ... ] |
[ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype [ , ... ] ] ORDER BY [ argmode ]
[ argname ] argtype [ , ... ]
```

## Description

`ALTER EXTENSION` changes the definition of an installed extension. There are several subforms:

### `UPDATE`

This form updates the extension to a newer version. The extension must supply a suitable update script (or series of scripts) that can modify the currently-installed version into the requested version.

### `SET SCHEMA`

This form moves the extension's objects into another schema. The extension has to be *relocatable* for this command to succeed.

### `ADD member_object`

This form adds an existing object to the extension. This is mainly useful in extension update scripts. The object will subsequently be treated as a member of the extension; notably, it can only be dropped by dropping the extension.

### `DROP member_object`

This form removes a member object from the extension. This is mainly useful in extension update scripts. The object is not dropped, only disassociated from the extension.

See Section 38.17 for more information about these operations.

You must own the extension to use `ALTER EXTENSION`. The `ADD/DROP` forms require ownership of the added/dropped object as well.

## Parameters

### *name*

The name of an installed extension.

### *new\_version*

The desired new version of the extension. This can be written as either an identifier or a string literal. If not specified, `ALTER EXTENSION UPDATE` attempts to update to whatever is shown as the default version in the extension's control file.

### *new\_schema*

The new schema for the extension.

### *object\_name*

### *aggregate\_name*

### *function\_name*

### *operator\_name*

### *procedure\_name*

### *routine\_name*

The name of an object to be added to or removed from the extension. Names of tables, aggregates, domains, foreign tables, functions, operators, operator classes, operator families, procedures, routines, sequences, text search objects, types, and views can be schema-qualified.

### *source\_type*

The name of the source data type of the cast.

*target\_type*

The name of the target data type of the cast.

*argmode*

The mode of a function, procedure, or aggregate argument: IN, OUT, INOUT, or VARIADIC. If omitted, the default is IN. Note that ALTER EXTENSION does not actually pay any attention to OUT arguments, since only the input arguments are needed to determine the function's identity. So it is sufficient to list the IN, INOUT, and VARIADIC arguments.

*argname*

The name of a function, procedure, or aggregate argument. Note that ALTER EXTENSION does not actually pay any attention to argument names, since only the argument data types are needed to determine the function's identity.

*argtype*

The data type of a function, procedure, or aggregate argument.

*left\_type*

*right\_type*

The data type(s) of the operator's arguments (optionally schema-qualified). Write NONE for the missing argument of a prefix operator.

PROCEDURAL

This is a noise word.

*type\_name*

The name of the data type of the transform.

*lang\_name*

The name of the language of the transform.

## Examples

To update the hstore extension to version 2.0:

```
ALTER EXTENSION hstore UPDATE TO '2.0';
```

To change the schema of the hstore extension to utils:

```
ALTER EXTENSION hstore SET SCHEMA utils;
```

To add an existing function to the hstore extension:

```
ALTER EXTENSION hstore ADD FUNCTION populate_record(anyelement,  
hstore);
```

## Compatibility

ALTER EXTENSION is a PostgreSQL extension.



## See Also

CREATE EXTENSION, DROP EXTENSION

---

# ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER

ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER — change the definition of a foreign-data wrapper

## Synopsis

```
ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER name
    [ HANDLER handler_function | NO HANDLER ]
    [ VALIDATOR validator_function | NO VALIDATOR ]
    [ OPTIONS ( [ ADD | SET | DROP ] option ['value'] [, ... ] ) ]
ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER name OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE
    | CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER }
ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER name RENAME TO new_name
```

## Description

ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER changes the definition of a foreign-data wrapper. The first form of the command changes the support functions or the generic options of the foreign-data wrapper (at least one clause is required). The second form changes the owner of the foreign-data wrapper.

Only superusers can alter foreign-data wrappers. Additionally, only superusers can own foreign-data wrappers.

## Parameters

*name*

The name of an existing foreign-data wrapper.

HANDLER *handler\_function*

Specifies a new handler function for the foreign-data wrapper.

NO HANDLER

This is used to specify that the foreign-data wrapper should no longer have a handler function.

Note that foreign tables that use a foreign-data wrapper with no handler cannot be accessed.

VALIDATOR *validator\_function*

Specifies a new validator function for the foreign-data wrapper.

Note that it is possible that pre-existing options of the foreign-data wrapper, or of dependent servers, user mappings, or foreign tables, are invalid according to the new validator. PostgreSQL does not check for this. It is up to the user to make sure that these options are correct before using the modified foreign-data wrapper. However, any options specified in this ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER command will be checked using the new validator.

NO VALIDATOR

This is used to specify that the foreign-data wrapper should no longer have a validator function.

OPTIONS ( [ ADD | SET | DROP ] *option* ['*value*'] [, ... ] )

Change options for the foreign-data wrapper. ADD, SET, and DROP specify the action to be performed. ADD is assumed if no operation is explicitly specified. Option names must be unique; names and values are also validated using the foreign data wrapper's validator function, if any.

*new\_owner*

The user name of the new owner of the foreign-data wrapper.

*new\_name*

The new name for the foreign-data wrapper.

## Examples

Change a foreign-data wrapper `dbi`, add option `foo`, drop `bar`:

```
ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER dbi OPTIONS (ADD foo '1', DROP bar);
```

Change the foreign-data wrapper `dbi` validator to `bob.myvalidator`:

```
ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER dbi VALIDATOR bob.myvalidator;
```

## Compatibility

`ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER` conforms to ISO/IEC 9075-9 (SQL/MED), except that the `HANDLER`, `VALIDATOR`, `OWNER TO`, and `RENAME` clauses are extensions.

## See Also

`CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER`, `DROP FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER`

---

# ALTER FOREIGN TABLE

ALTER FOREIGN TABLE — change the definition of a foreign table

## Synopsis

```
ALTER FOREIGN TABLE [ IF EXISTS ] [ ONLY ] name [ * ]
    action [, ... ]
ALTER FOREIGN TABLE [ IF EXISTS ] [ ONLY ] name [ * ]
    RENAME [ COLUMN ] column_name TO new_column_name
ALTER FOREIGN TABLE [ IF EXISTS ] name
    RENAME TO new_name
ALTER FOREIGN TABLE [ IF EXISTS ] name
    SET SCHEMA new_schema
```

where *action* is one of:

```
    ADD [ COLUMN ] column_name data_type [ COLLATE collation ]
[ column_constraint [ ... ] ]
    DROP [ COLUMN ] [ IF EXISTS ] column_name [ RESTRICT |
CASCADE ]
    ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name [ SET DATA ] TYPE data_type
[ COLLATE collation ]
    ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name SET DEFAULT expression
    ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name DROP DEFAULT
    ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name { SET | DROP } NOT NULL
    ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name SET STATISTICS integer
    ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name SET ( attribute_option = value
[, ... ] )
    ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name RESET ( attribute_option
[, ... ] )
    ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name SET STORAGE { PLAIN | EXTERNAL |
EXTENDED | MAIN | DEFAULT }
    ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name OPTIONS ( [ ADD | SET |
DROP ] option ['value'] [, ... ] )
    ADD table_constraint [ NOT VALID ]
    VALIDATE CONSTRAINT constraint_name
    DROP CONSTRAINT [ IF EXISTS ] constraint_name [ RESTRICT |
CASCADE ]
    DISABLE TRIGGER [ trigger_name | ALL | USER ]
    ENABLE TRIGGER [ trigger_name | ALL | USER ]
    ENABLE REPLICA TRIGGER trigger_name
    ENABLE ALWAYS TRIGGER trigger_name
    SET WITHOUT OIDS
    INHERIT parent_table
    NO INHERIT parent_table
    OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER |
SESSION_USER }
    OPTIONS ( [ ADD | SET | DROP ] option ['value'] [, ... ] )
```

## Description

ALTER FOREIGN TABLE changes the definition of an existing foreign table. There are several subforms:

**ADD COLUMN**

This form adds a new column to the foreign table, using the same syntax as `CREATE FOREIGN TABLE`. Unlike the case when adding a column to a regular table, nothing happens to the underlying storage: this action simply declares that some new column is now accessible through the foreign table.

**DROP COLUMN [ IF EXISTS ]**

This form drops a column from a foreign table. You will need to say `CASCADE` if anything outside the table depends on the column; for example, views. If `IF EXISTS` is specified and the column does not exist, no error is thrown. In this case a notice is issued instead.

**SET DATA TYPE**

This form changes the type of a column of a foreign table. Again, this has no effect on any underlying storage: this action simply changes the type that PostgreSQL believes the column to have.

**SET/DROP DEFAULT**

These forms set or remove the default value for a column. Default values only apply in subsequent `INSERT` or `UPDATE` commands; they do not cause rows already in the table to change.

**SET/DROP NOT NULL**

Mark a column as allowing, or not allowing, null values.

**SET STATISTICS**

This form sets the per-column statistics-gathering target for subsequent `ANALYZE` operations. See the similar form of `ALTER TABLE` for more details.

`SET ( attribute_option = value [, ... ] )`  
`RESET ( attribute_option [, ... ] )`

This form sets or resets per-attribute options. See the similar form of `ALTER TABLE` for more details.

**SET STORAGE**

This form sets the storage mode for a column. See the similar form of `ALTER TABLE` for more details. Note that the storage mode has no effect unless the table's foreign-data wrapper chooses to pay attention to it.

**ADD *table\_constraint* [ NOT VALID ]**

This form adds a new constraint to a foreign table, using the same syntax as `CREATE FOREIGN TABLE`. Currently only `CHECK` constraints are supported.

Unlike the case when adding a constraint to a regular table, nothing is done to verify the constraint is correct; rather, this action simply declares that some new condition should be assumed to hold for all rows in the foreign table. (See the discussion in `CREATE FOREIGN TABLE`.) If the constraint is marked `NOT VALID`, then it isn't assumed to hold, but is only recorded for possible future use.

**VALIDATE CONSTRAINT**

This form marks as valid a constraint that was previously marked as `NOT VALID`. No action is taken to verify the constraint, but future queries will assume that it holds.

**DROP CONSTRAINT [ IF EXISTS ]**

This form drops the specified constraint on a foreign table. If `IF EXISTS` is specified and the constraint does not exist, no error is thrown. In this case a notice is issued instead.

DISABLE/ENABLE [ REPLICATION | ALWAYS ] TRIGGER

These forms configure the firing of trigger(s) belonging to the foreign table. See the similar form of ALTER TABLE for more details.

SET WITHOUT OIDS

Backward compatibility syntax for removing the oid system column. As oid system columns cannot be added anymore, this never has an effect.

INHERIT *parent\_table*

This form adds the target foreign table as a new child of the specified parent table. See the similar form of ALTER TABLE for more details.

NO INHERIT *parent\_table*

This form removes the target foreign table from the list of children of the specified parent table.

OWNER

This form changes the owner of the foreign table to the specified user.

OPTIONS ( [ ADD | SET | DROP ] *option* ['*value*'] [, ... ] )

Change options for the foreign table or one of its columns. ADD, SET, and DROP specify the action to be performed. ADD is assumed if no operation is explicitly specified. Duplicate option names are not allowed (although it's OK for a table option and a column option to have the same name). Option names and values are also validated using the foreign data wrapper library.

RENAME

The RENAME forms change the name of a foreign table or the name of an individual column in a foreign table.

SET SCHEMA

This form moves the foreign table into another schema.

All the actions except RENAME and SET SCHEMA can be combined into a list of multiple alterations to apply in parallel. For example, it is possible to add several columns and/or alter the type of several columns in a single command.

If the command is written as ALTER FOREIGN TABLE IF EXISTS ... and the foreign table does not exist, no error is thrown. A notice is issued in this case.

You must own the table to use ALTER FOREIGN TABLE. To change the schema of a foreign table, you must also have CREATE privilege on the new schema. To alter the owner, you must be able to SET ROLE to the new owning role, and that role must have CREATE privilege on the table's schema. (These restrictions enforce that altering the owner doesn't do anything you couldn't do by dropping and recreating the table. However, a superuser can alter ownership of any table anyway.) To add a column or alter a column type, you must also have USAGE privilege on the data type.

## Parameters

*name*

The name (possibly schema-qualified) of an existing foreign table to alter. If ONLY is specified before the table name, only that table is altered. If ONLY is not specified, the table and all its descendant tables (if any) are altered. Optionally, \* can be specified after the table name to explicitly indicate that descendant tables are included.

*column\_name*

Name of a new or existing column.

*new\_column\_name*

New name for an existing column.

*new\_name*

New name for the table.

*data\_type*

Data type of the new column, or new data type for an existing column.

*table\_constraint*

New table constraint for the foreign table.

*constraint\_name*

Name of an existing constraint to drop.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the dropped column or constraint (for example, views referencing the column), and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the column or constraint if there are any dependent objects. This is the default behavior.

*trigger\_name*

Name of a single trigger to disable or enable.

ALL

Disable or enable all triggers belonging to the foreign table. (This requires superuser privilege if any of the triggers are internally generated triggers. The core system does not add such triggers to foreign tables, but add-on code could do so.)

USER

Disable or enable all triggers belonging to the foreign table except for internally generated triggers.

*parent\_table*

A parent table to associate or de-associate with this foreign table.

*new\_owner*

The user name of the new owner of the table.

*new\_schema*

The name of the schema to which the table will be moved.

## Notes

The key word COLUMN is noise and can be omitted.

Consistency with the foreign server is not checked when a column is added or removed with `ADD COLUMN` or `DROP COLUMN`, a `NOT NULL` or `CHECK` constraint is added, or a column type is changed with `SET DATA TYPE`. It is the user's responsibility to ensure that the table definition matches the remote side.

Refer to `CREATE FOREIGN TABLE` for a further description of valid parameters.

## Examples

To mark a column as not-null:

```
ALTER FOREIGN TABLE distributors ALTER COLUMN street SET NOT NULL;
```

To change options of a foreign table:

```
ALTER FOREIGN TABLE myschema.distributors OPTIONS (ADD opt1  
  'value', SET opt2 'value2', DROP opt3);
```

## Compatibility

The forms `ADD`, `DROP`, and `SET DATA TYPE` conform with the SQL standard. The other forms are PostgreSQL extensions of the SQL standard. Also, the ability to specify more than one manipulation in a single `ALTER FOREIGN TABLE` command is an extension.

`ALTER FOREIGN TABLE DROP COLUMN` can be used to drop the only column of a foreign table, leaving a zero-column table. This is an extension of SQL, which disallows zero-column foreign tables.

## See Also

`CREATE FOREIGN TABLE`, `DROP FOREIGN TABLE`



---

# ALTER FUNCTION

ALTER FUNCTION — change the definition of a function

## Synopsis

```
ALTER FUNCTION name [ ( [ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype
[ , ... ] ) ]
    action [ ... ] [ RESTRICT ]
ALTER FUNCTION name [ ( [ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype
[ , ... ] ) ]
    RENAME TO new_name
ALTER FUNCTION name [ ( [ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype
[ , ... ] ) ]
    OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER |
SESSION_USER }
ALTER FUNCTION name [ ( [ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype
[ , ... ] ) ]
    SET SCHEMA new_schema
ALTER FUNCTION name [ ( [ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype
[ , ... ] ) ]
    [ NO ] DEPENDS ON EXTENSION extension_name
```

where *action* is one of:

```
CALLED ON NULL INPUT | RETURNS NULL ON NULL INPUT | STRICT
IMMUTABLE | STABLE | VOLATILE
[ NOT ] LEAKPROOF
[ EXTERNAL ] SECURITY INVOKER | [ EXTERNAL ] SECURITY DEFINER
PARALLEL { UNSAFE | RESTRICTED | SAFE }
COST execution_cost
ROWS result_rows
SUPPORT support_function
SET configuration_parameter { TO | = } { value | DEFAULT }
SET configuration_parameter FROM CURRENT
RESET configuration_parameter
RESET ALL
```

## Description

ALTER FUNCTION changes the definition of a function.

You must own the function to use ALTER FUNCTION. To change a function's schema, you must also have CREATE privilege on the new schema. To alter the owner, you must be able to SET ROLE to the new owning role, and that role must have CREATE privilege on the function's schema. (These restrictions enforce that altering the owner doesn't do anything you couldn't do by dropping and recreating the function. However, a superuser can alter ownership of any function anyway.)

## Parameters

*name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing function. If no argument list is specified, the name must be unique in its schema.

*argmode*

The mode of an argument: IN, OUT, INOUT, or VARIADIC. If omitted, the default is IN. Note that ALTER FUNCTION does not actually pay any attention to OUT arguments, since only the input arguments are needed to determine the function's identity. So it is sufficient to list the IN, INOUT, and VARIADIC arguments.

*argname*

The name of an argument. Note that ALTER FUNCTION does not actually pay any attention to argument names, since only the argument data types are needed to determine the function's identity.

*argtype*

The data type(s) of the function's arguments (optionally schema-qualified), if any.

*new\_name*

The new name of the function.

*new\_owner*

The new owner of the function. Note that if the function is marked SECURITY DEFINER, it will subsequently execute as the new owner.

*new\_schema*

The new schema for the function.

DEPENDS ON EXTENSION *extension\_name*  
NO DEPENDS ON EXTENSION *extension\_name*

This form marks the function as dependent on the extension, or no longer dependent on that extension if NO is specified. A function that's marked as dependent on an extension is dropped when the extension is dropped, even if CASCADE is not specified. A function can depend upon multiple extensions, and will be dropped when any one of those extensions is dropped.

CALLED ON NULL INPUT  
RETURNS NULL ON NULL INPUT  
STRICT

CALLED ON NULL INPUT changes the function so that it will be invoked when some or all of its arguments are null. RETURNS NULL ON NULL INPUT or STRICT changes the function so that it is not invoked if any of its arguments are null; instead, a null result is assumed automatically. See CREATE FUNCTION for more information.

IMMUTABLE  
STABLE  
VOLATILE

Change the volatility of the function to the specified setting. See CREATE FUNCTION for details.

[ EXTERNAL ] SECURITY INVOKER  
[ EXTERNAL ] SECURITY DEFINER

Change whether the function is a security definer or not. The key word EXTERNAL is ignored for SQL conformance. See CREATE FUNCTION for more information about this capability.

PARALLEL

Change whether the function is deemed safe for parallelism. See CREATE FUNCTION for details.

**LEAKPROOF**

Change whether the function is considered leakproof or not. See `CREATE FUNCTION` for more information about this capability.

**COST** *execution\_cost*

Change the estimated execution cost of the function. See `CREATE FUNCTION` for more information.

**ROWS** *result\_rows*

Change the estimated number of rows returned by a set-returning function. See `CREATE FUNCTION` for more information.

**SUPPORT** *support\_function*

Set or change the planner support function to use for this function. See Section 38.11 for details. You must be superuser to use this option.

This option cannot be used to remove the support function altogether, since it must name a new support function. Use `CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION` if you need to do that.

*configuration\_parameter*  
*value*

Add or change the assignment to be made to a configuration parameter when the function is called. If *value* is `DEFAULT` or, equivalently, `RESET` is used, the function-local setting is removed, so that the function executes with the value present in its environment. Use `RESET ALL` to clear all function-local settings. `SET FROM CURRENT` saves the value of the parameter that is current when `ALTER FUNCTION` is executed as the value to be applied when the function is entered.

See `SET` and Chapter 20 for more information about allowed parameter names and values.

**RESTRICT**

Ignored for conformance with the SQL standard.

## Examples

To rename the function `sqrt` for type `integer` to `square_root`:

```
ALTER FUNCTION sqrt(integer) RENAME TO square_root;
```

To change the owner of the function `sqrt` for type `integer` to `joe`:

```
ALTER FUNCTION sqrt(integer) OWNER TO joe;
```

To change the schema of the function `sqrt` for type `integer` to `maths`:

```
ALTER FUNCTION sqrt(integer) SET SCHEMA maths;
```

To mark the function `sqrt` for type `integer` as being dependent on the extension `mathlib`:

```
ALTER FUNCTION sqrt(integer) DEPENDS ON EXTENSION mathlib;
```

To adjust the search path that is automatically set for a function:

```
ALTER FUNCTION check_password(text) SET search_path = admin,  
pg_temp;
```

To disable automatic setting of `search_path` for a function:

```
ALTER FUNCTION check_password(text) RESET search_path;
```

The function will now execute with whatever search path is used by its caller.

## Compatibility

This statement is partially compatible with the `ALTER FUNCTION` statement in the SQL standard. The standard allows more properties of a function to be modified, but does not provide the ability to rename a function, make a function a security definer, attach configuration parameter values to a function, or change the owner, schema, or volatility of a function. The standard also requires the `RESTRICT` key word, which is optional in PostgreSQL.

## See Also

`CREATE FUNCTION`, `DROP FUNCTION`, `ALTER PROCEDURE`, `ALTER ROUTINE`

---

# ALTER GROUP

ALTER GROUP — change role name or membership

## Synopsis

```
ALTER GROUP role_specification ADD USER user_name [, ... ]  
ALTER GROUP role_specification DROP USER user_name [, ... ]
```

where *role\_specification* can be:

```
role_name  
| CURRENT_ROLE  
| CURRENT_USER  
| SESSION_USER
```

```
ALTER GROUP group_name RENAME TO new_name
```

## Description

ALTER GROUP changes the attributes of a user group. This is an obsolete command, though still accepted for backwards compatibility, because groups (and users too) have been superseded by the more general concept of roles.

The first two variants add users to a group or remove them from a group. (Any role can play the part of either a “user” or a “group” for this purpose.) These variants are effectively equivalent to granting or revoking membership in the role named as the “group”; so the preferred way to do this is to use GRANT or REVOKE. Note that GRANT and REVOKE have additional options which are not available with this command, such as the ability to grant and revoke ADMIN OPTION, and the ability to specify the grantor.

The third variant changes the name of the group. This is exactly equivalent to renaming the role with ALTER ROLE.

## Parameters

*group\_name*

The name of the group (role) to modify.

*user\_name*

Users (roles) that are to be added to or removed from the group. The users must already exist; ALTER GROUP does not create or drop users.

*new\_name*

The new name of the group.

## Examples

Add users to a group:

```
ALTER GROUP staff ADD USER karl, john;
```

Remove a user from a group:

```
ALTER GROUP workers DROP USER beth;
```

## Compatibility

There is no `ALTER GROUP` statement in the SQL standard.

## See Also

GRANT, REVOKE, ALTER ROLE

---

# ALTER INDEX

ALTER INDEX — change the definition of an index

## Synopsis

```
ALTER INDEX [ IF EXISTS ] name RENAME TO new_name
ALTER INDEX [ IF EXISTS ] name SET TABLESPACE tablespace_name
ALTER INDEX name ATTACH PARTITION index_name
ALTER INDEX name [ NO ] DEPENDS ON EXTENSION extension_name
ALTER INDEX [ IF EXISTS ] name SET ( storage_parameter [= value]
    [, ... ] )
ALTER INDEX [ IF EXISTS ] name RESET ( storage_parameter [, ... ] )
ALTER INDEX [ IF EXISTS ] name ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_number
    SET STATISTICS integer
ALTER INDEX ALL IN TABLESPACE name [ OWNED BY role_name [, ... ] ]
    SET TABLESPACE new_tablespace [ NOWAIT ]
```

## Description

ALTER INDEX changes the definition of an existing index. There are several subforms described below. Note that the lock level required may differ for each subform. An ACCESS EXCLUSIVE lock is held unless explicitly noted. When multiple subcommands are listed, the lock held will be the strictest one required from any subcommand.

### RENAME

The RENAME form changes the name of the index. If the index is associated with a table constraint (either UNIQUE, PRIMARY KEY, or EXCLUDE), the constraint is renamed as well. There is no effect on the stored data.

Renaming an index acquires a SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE lock.

### SET TABLESPACE

This form changes the index's tablespace to the specified tablespace and moves the data file(s) associated with the index to the new tablespace. To change the tablespace of an index, you must own the index and have CREATE privilege on the new tablespace. All indexes in the current database in a tablespace can be moved by using the ALL IN TABLESPACE form, which will lock all indexes to be moved and then move each one. This form also supports OWNED BY, which will only move indexes owned by the roles specified. If the NOWAIT option is specified then the command will fail if it is unable to acquire all of the locks required immediately. Note that system catalogs will not be moved by this command, use ALTER DATABASE or explicit ALTER INDEX invocations instead if desired. See also CREATE TABLESPACE.

### ATTACH PARTITION

Causes the named index to become attached to the altered index. The named index must be on a partition of the table containing the index being altered, and have an equivalent definition. An attached index cannot be dropped by itself, and will automatically be dropped if its parent index is dropped.

DEPENDS ON EXTENSION *extension\_name*  
NO DEPENDS ON EXTENSION *extension\_name*

This form marks the index as dependent on the extension, or no longer dependent on that extension if NO is specified. An index that's marked as dependent on an extension is automatically dropped when the extension is dropped.

SET ( *storage\_parameter* [= *value*] [, ... ] )

This form changes one or more index-method-specific storage parameters for the index. See CREATE INDEX for details on the available parameters. Note that the index contents will not be modified immediately by this command; depending on the parameter you might need to rebuild the index with REINDEX to get the desired effects.

RESET ( *storage\_parameter* [, ... ] )

This form resets one or more index-method-specific storage parameters to their defaults. As with SET, a REINDEX might be needed to update the index entirely.

ALTER [ COLUMN ] *column\_number* SET STATISTICS *integer*

This form sets the per-column statistics-gathering target for subsequent ANALYZE operations, though can be used only on index columns that are defined as an expression. Since expressions lack a unique name, we refer to them using the ordinal number of the index column. The target can be set in the range 0 to 10000; alternatively, set it to -1 to revert to using the system default statistics target (*default\_statistics\_target*). For more information on the use of statistics by the PostgreSQL query planner, refer to Section 14.2.

## Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the index does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

*column\_number*

The ordinal number refers to the ordinal (left-to-right) position of the index column.

*name*

The name (possibly schema-qualified) of an existing index to alter.

*new\_name*

The new name for the index.

*tablespace\_name*

The tablespace to which the index will be moved.

*extension\_name*

The name of the extension that the index is to depend on.

*storage\_parameter*

The name of an index-method-specific storage parameter.

*value*

The new value for an index-method-specific storage parameter. This might be a number or a word depending on the parameter.



## Notes

These operations are also possible using `ALTER TABLE`. `ALTER INDEX` is in fact just an alias for the forms of `ALTER TABLE` that apply to indexes.

There was formerly an `ALTER INDEX OWNER` variant, but this is now ignored (with a warning). An index cannot have an owner different from its table's owner. Changing the table's owner automatically changes the index as well.

Changing any part of a system catalog index is not permitted.

## Examples

To rename an existing index:

```
ALTER INDEX distributors RENAME TO suppliers;
```

To move an index to a different tablespace:

```
ALTER INDEX distributors SET TABLESPACE fasttablespace;
```

To change an index's fill factor (assuming that the index method supports it):

```
ALTER INDEX distributors SET (fillfactor = 75);  
REINDEX INDEX distributors;
```

Set the statistics-gathering target for an expression index:

```
CREATE INDEX coord_idx ON measured (x, y, (z + t));  
ALTER INDEX coord_idx ALTER COLUMN 3 SET STATISTICS 1000;
```

## Compatibility

`ALTER INDEX` is a PostgreSQL extension.

## See Also

`CREATE INDEX`, `REINDEX`

---

# ALTER LANGUAGE

ALTER LANGUAGE — change the definition of a procedural language

## Synopsis

```
ALTER [ PROCEDURAL ] LANGUAGE name RENAME TO new_name
ALTER [ PROCEDURAL ] LANGUAGE name OWNER TO { new_owner |
CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER }
```

## Description

ALTER LANGUAGE changes the definition of a procedural language. The only functionality is to rename the language or assign a new owner. You must be superuser or owner of the language to use ALTER LANGUAGE.

## Parameters

*name*

Name of a language

*new\_name*

The new name of the language

*new\_owner*

The new owner of the language

## Compatibility

There is no ALTER LANGUAGE statement in the SQL standard.

## See Also

CREATE LANGUAGE, DROP LANGUAGE

---

# ALTER LARGE OBJECT

ALTER LARGE OBJECT — change the definition of a large object

## Synopsis

```
ALTER LARGE OBJECT large_object_oid OWNER TO { new_owner |  
CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER }
```

## Description

ALTER LARGE OBJECT changes the definition of a large object.

You must own the large object to use ALTER LARGE OBJECT. To alter the owner, you must also be able to SET ROLE to the new owning role. (However, a superuser can alter any large object anyway.) Currently, the only functionality is to assign a new owner, so both restrictions always apply.

## Parameters

*large\_object\_oid*

OID of the large object to be altered

*new\_owner*

The new owner of the large object

## Compatibility

There is no ALTER LARGE OBJECT statement in the SQL standard.

## See Also

Chapter 35

---

# ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW

ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW — change the definition of a materialized view

## Synopsis

```
ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] name
    action [, ... ]
ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW name
    [ NO ] DEPENDS ON EXTENSION extension_name
ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] name
    RENAME [ COLUMN ] column_name TO new_column_name
ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] name
    RENAME TO new_name
ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] name
    SET SCHEMA new_schema
ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW ALL IN TABLESPACE name [ OWNED BY role_name
    [, ... ] ]
    SET TABLESPACE new_tablespace [ NOWAIT ]
```

where *action* is one of:

```
    ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name SET STATISTICS integer
    ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name SET ( attribute_option = value
    [, ... ] )
    ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name RESET ( attribute_option
    [, ... ] )
    ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name SET STORAGE { PLAIN | EXTERNAL |
EXTENDED | MAIN | DEFAULT }
    ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name SET COMPRESSION compression_method
    CLUSTER ON index_name
    SET WITHOUT CLUSTER
    SET ACCESS METHOD new_access_method
    SET TABLESPACE new_tablespace
    SET ( storage_parameter [= value] [, ... ] )
    RESET ( storage_parameter [, ... ] )
    OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER |
SESSION_USER }
```

## Description

ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW changes various auxiliary properties of an existing materialized view.

You must own the materialized view to use ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW. To change a materialized view's schema, you must also have CREATE privilege on the new schema. To alter the owner, you must be able to SET ROLE to the new owning role, and that role must have CREATE privilege on the materialized view's schema. (These restrictions enforce that altering the owner doesn't do anything you couldn't do by dropping and recreating the materialized view. However, a superuser can alter ownership of any view anyway.)

The statement subforms and actions available for ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW are a subset of those available for ALTER TABLE, and have the same meaning when used for materialized views. See the descriptions for ALTER TABLE for details.

## Parameters

*name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing materialized view.

*column\_name*

Name of a new or existing column.

*extension\_name*

The name of the extension that the materialized view is to depend on (or no longer dependent on, if NO is specified). A materialized view that's marked as dependent on an extension is automatically dropped when the extension is dropped.

*new\_column\_name*

New name for an existing column.

*new\_owner*

The user name of the new owner of the materialized view.

*new\_name*

The new name for the materialized view.

*new\_schema*

The new schema for the materialized view.

## Examples

To rename the materialized view `foo` to `bar`:

```
ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW foo RENAME TO bar;
```

## Compatibility

ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW is a PostgreSQL extension.

## See Also

CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW, DROP MATERIALIZED VIEW, REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW

---

# ALTER OPERATOR

ALTER OPERATOR — change the definition of an operator

## Synopsis

```
ALTER OPERATOR name ( { left_type | NONE } , right_type )  
    OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER |  
    SESSION_USER }
```

```
ALTER OPERATOR name ( { left_type | NONE } , right_type )  
    SET SCHEMA new_schema
```

```
ALTER OPERATOR name ( { left_type | NONE } , right_type )  
    SET ( { RESTRICT = { res_proc | NONE }  
        | JOIN = { join_proc | NONE }  
        } [, ... ] )
```

## Description

ALTER OPERATOR changes the definition of an operator.

You must own the operator to use ALTER OPERATOR. To alter the owner, you must be able to SET ROLE to the new owning role, and that role must have CREATE privilege on the operator's schema. (These restrictions enforce that altering the owner doesn't do anything you couldn't do by dropping and recreating the operator. However, a superuser can alter ownership of any operator anyway.)

## Parameters

*name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing operator.

*left\_type*

The data type of the operator's left operand; write NONE if the operator has no left operand.

*right\_type*

The data type of the operator's right operand.

*new\_owner*

The new owner of the operator.

*new\_schema*

The new schema for the operator.

*res\_proc*

The restriction selectivity estimator function for this operator; write NONE to remove existing selectivity estimator.

*join\_proc*

The join selectivity estimator function for this operator; write NONE to remove existing selectivity estimator.

## Examples

Change the owner of a custom operator a @@ b for type text:

```
ALTER OPERATOR @@ (text, text) OWNER TO joe;
```

Change the restriction and join selectivity estimator functions of a custom operator a && b for type int[]:

```
ALTER OPERATOR && (_int4, _int4) SET (RESTRICT = _int_contsel, JOIN  
= _int_contjoinssel);
```

## Compatibility

There is no ALTER OPERATOR statement in the SQL standard.

## See Also

CREATE OPERATOR, DROP OPERATOR

---

# ALTER OPERATOR CLASS

ALTER OPERATOR CLASS — change the definition of an operator class

## Synopsis

```
ALTER OPERATOR CLASS name USING index_method
    RENAME TO new_name

ALTER OPERATOR CLASS name USING index_method
    OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER |
    SESSION_USER }

ALTER OPERATOR CLASS name USING index_method
    SET SCHEMA new_schema
```

## Description

ALTER OPERATOR CLASS changes the definition of an operator class.

You must own the operator class to use ALTER OPERATOR CLASS. To alter the owner, you must be able to SET ROLE to the new owning role, and that role must have CREATE privilege on the operator class's schema. (These restrictions enforce that altering the owner doesn't do anything you couldn't do by dropping and recreating the operator class. However, a superuser can alter ownership of any operator class anyway.)

## Parameters

*name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing operator class.

*index\_method*

The name of the index method this operator class is for.

*new\_name*

The new name of the operator class.

*new\_owner*

The new owner of the operator class.

*new\_schema*

The new schema for the operator class.

## Compatibility

There is no ALTER OPERATOR CLASS statement in the SQL standard.

## See Also

CREATE OPERATOR CLASS, DROP OPERATOR CLASS, ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY



---

# ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY

ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY — change the definition of an operator family

## Synopsis

```
ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY name USING index_method ADD
{ OPERATOR strategy_number operator_name ( op_type, op_type )
  [ FOR SEARCH | FOR ORDER BY sort_family_name ]
| FUNCTION support_number [ ( op_type [ , op_type ] ) ]
  function_name [ ( argument_type [ , ... ] ) ]
} [ , ... ]

ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY name USING index_method DROP
{ OPERATOR strategy_number ( op_type [ , op_type ] )
| FUNCTION support_number ( op_type [ , op_type ] )
} [ , ... ]

ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY name USING index_method
RENAME TO new_name

ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY name USING index_method
OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER |
SESSION_USER }

ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY name USING index_method
SET SCHEMA new_schema
```

## Description

ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY changes the definition of an operator family. You can add operators and support functions to the family, remove them from the family, or change the family's name or owner.

When operators and support functions are added to a family with ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY, they are not part of any specific operator class within the family, but are just “loose” within the family. This indicates that these operators and functions are compatible with the family's semantics, but are not required for correct functioning of any specific index. (Operators and functions that are so required should be declared as part of an operator class, instead; see CREATE OPERATOR CLASS.) PostgreSQL will allow loose members of a family to be dropped from the family at any time, but members of an operator class cannot be dropped without dropping the whole class and any indexes that depend on it. Typically, single-data-type operators and functions are part of operator classes because they are needed to support an index on that specific data type, while cross-data-type operators and functions are made loose members of the family.

You must be a superuser to use ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY. (This restriction is made because an erroneous operator family definition could confuse or even crash the server.)

ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY does not presently check whether the operator family definition includes all the operators and functions required by the index method, nor whether the operators and functions form a self-consistent set. It is the user's responsibility to define a valid operator family.

Refer to Section 38.16 for further information.

## Parameters

*name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing operator family.

*index\_method*

The name of the index method this operator family is for.

*strategy\_number*

The index method's strategy number for an operator associated with the operator family.

*operator\_name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an operator associated with the operator family.

*op\_type*

In an `OPERATOR` clause, the operand data type(s) of the operator, or `NONE` to signify a prefix operator. Unlike the comparable syntax in `CREATE OPERATOR CLASS`, the operand data types must always be specified.

In an `ADD FUNCTION` clause, the operand data type(s) the function is intended to support, if different from the input data type(s) of the function. For B-tree comparison functions and hash functions it is not necessary to specify *op\_type* since the function's input data type(s) are always the correct ones to use. For B-tree sort support functions, B-Tree equal image functions, and all functions in GiST, SP-GiST and GIN operator classes, it is necessary to specify the operand data type(s) the function is to be used with.

In a `DROP FUNCTION` clause, the operand data type(s) the function is intended to support must be specified.

*sort\_family\_name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing btree operator family that describes the sort ordering associated with an ordering operator.

If neither `FOR SEARCH` nor `FOR ORDER BY` is specified, `FOR SEARCH` is the default.

*support\_number*

The index method's support function number for a function associated with the operator family.

*function\_name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of a function that is an index method support function for the operator family. If no argument list is specified, the name must be unique in its schema.

*argument\_type*

The parameter data type(s) of the function.

*new\_name*

The new name of the operator family.

*new\_owner*

The new owner of the operator family.

*new\_schema*

The new schema for the operator family.

The OPERATOR and FUNCTION clauses can appear in any order.

## Notes

Notice that the DROP syntax only specifies the “slot” in the operator family, by strategy or support number and input data type(s). The name of the operator or function occupying the slot is not mentioned. Also, for DROP FUNCTION the type(s) to specify are the input data type(s) the function is intended to support; for GiST, SP-GiST and GIN indexes this might have nothing to do with the actual input argument types of the function.

Because the index machinery does not check access permissions on functions before using them, including a function or operator in an operator family is tantamount to granting public execute permission on it. This is usually not an issue for the sorts of functions that are useful in an operator family.

The operators should not be defined by SQL functions. An SQL function is likely to be inlined into the calling query, which will prevent the optimizer from recognizing that the query matches an index.

Before PostgreSQL 8.4, the OPERATOR clause could include a RECHECK option. This is no longer supported because whether an index operator is “lossy” is now determined on-the-fly at run time. This allows efficient handling of cases where an operator might or might not be lossy.

## Examples

The following example command adds cross-data-type operators and support functions to an operator family that already contains B-tree operator classes for data types `int4` and `int2`.

```
ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY integer_ops USING btree ADD
```

```
-- int4 vs int2
OPERATOR 1 < (int4, int2) ,
OPERATOR 2 <= (int4, int2) ,
OPERATOR 3 = (int4, int2) ,
OPERATOR 4 >= (int4, int2) ,
OPERATOR 5 > (int4, int2) ,
FUNCTION 1 btint42cmp(int4, int2) ,
```

```
-- int2 vs int4
OPERATOR 1 < (int2, int4) ,
OPERATOR 2 <= (int2, int4) ,
OPERATOR 3 = (int2, int4) ,
OPERATOR 4 >= (int2, int4) ,
OPERATOR 5 > (int2, int4) ,
FUNCTION 1 btint24cmp(int2, int4) ;
```

To remove these entries again:

```
ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY integer_ops USING btree DROP
```

```
-- int4 vs int2
OPERATOR 1 (int4, int2) ,
OPERATOR 2 (int4, int2) ,
OPERATOR 3 (int4, int2) ,
OPERATOR 4 (int4, int2) ,
```

```
OPERATOR 5 (int4, int2) ,  
FUNCTION 1 (int4, int2) ,  
  
-- int2 vs int4  
OPERATOR 1 (int2, int4) ,  
OPERATOR 2 (int2, int4) ,  
OPERATOR 3 (int2, int4) ,  
OPERATOR 4 (int2, int4) ,  
OPERATOR 5 (int2, int4) ,  
FUNCTION 1 (int2, int4) ;
```

## Compatibility

There is no `ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY` statement in the SQL standard.

## See Also

`CREATE OPERATOR FAMILY`, `DROP OPERATOR FAMILY`, `CREATE OPERATOR CLASS`,  
`ALTER OPERATOR CLASS`, `DROP OPERATOR CLASS`

---

# ALTER POLICY

ALTER POLICY — change the definition of a row-level security policy

## Synopsis

```
ALTER POLICY name ON table_name RENAME TO new_name

ALTER POLICY name ON table_name
    [ TO { role_name | PUBLIC | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER |
    SESSION_USER } [, ...] ]
    [ USING ( using_expression ) ]
    [ WITH CHECK ( check_expression ) ]
```

## Description

ALTER POLICY changes the definition of an existing row-level security policy. Note that ALTER POLICY only allows the set of roles to which the policy applies and the USING and WITH CHECK expressions to be modified. To change other properties of a policy, such as the command to which it applies or whether it is permissive or restrictive, the policy must be dropped and recreated.

To use ALTER POLICY, you must own the table that the policy applies to.

In the second form of ALTER POLICY, the role list, *using\_expression*, and *check\_expression* are replaced independently if specified. When one of those clauses is omitted, the corresponding part of the policy is unchanged.

## Parameters

*name*

The name of an existing policy to alter.

*table\_name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table that the policy is on.

*new\_name*

The new name for the policy.

*role\_name*

The role(s) to which the policy applies. Multiple roles can be specified at one time. To apply the policy to all roles, use PUBLIC.

*using\_expression*

The USING expression for the policy. See CREATE POLICY for details.

*check\_expression*

The WITH CHECK expression for the policy. See CREATE POLICY for details.

## Compatibility

ALTER POLICY is a PostgreSQL extension.

## See Also

CREATE POLICY, DROP POLICY

---

# ALTER PROCEDURE

ALTER PROCEDURE — change the definition of a procedure

## Synopsis

```
ALTER PROCEDURE name [ ( [ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype
[ , ... ] ] ) ]
    action [ ... ] [ RESTRICT ]
ALTER PROCEDURE name [ ( [ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype
[ , ... ] ] ) ]
    RENAME TO new_name
ALTER PROCEDURE name [ ( [ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype
[ , ... ] ] ) ]
    OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER |
SESSION_USER }
ALTER PROCEDURE name [ ( [ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype
[ , ... ] ] ) ]
    SET SCHEMA new_schema
ALTER PROCEDURE name [ ( [ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype
[ , ... ] ] ) ]
    [ NO ] DEPENDS ON EXTENSION extension_name
```

where *action* is one of:

```
[ EXTERNAL ] SECURITY INVOKER | [ EXTERNAL ] SECURITY DEFINER
SET configuration_parameter { TO | = } { value | DEFAULT }
SET configuration_parameter FROM CURRENT
RESET configuration_parameter
RESET ALL
```

## Description

ALTER PROCEDURE changes the definition of a procedure.

You must own the procedure to use ALTER PROCEDURE. To change a procedure's schema, you must also have CREATE privilege on the new schema. To alter the owner, you must be able to SET ROLE to the new owning role, and that role must have CREATE privilege on the procedure's schema. (These restrictions enforce that altering the owner doesn't do anything you couldn't do by dropping and recreating the procedure. However, a superuser can alter ownership of any procedure anyway.)

## Parameters

*name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing procedure. If no argument list is specified, the name must be unique in its schema.

*argmode*

The mode of an argument: IN, OUT, INOUT, or VARIADIC. If omitted, the default is IN.

*argname*

The name of an argument. Note that ALTER PROCEDURE does not actually pay any attention to argument names, since only the argument data types are used to determine the procedure's identity.

*argtype*

The data type(s) of the procedure's arguments (optionally schema-qualified), if any. See `DROP PROCEDURE` for the details of how the procedure is looked up using the argument data type(s).

*new\_name*

The new name of the procedure.

*new\_owner*

The new owner of the procedure. Note that if the procedure is marked `SECURITY DEFINER`, it will subsequently execute as the new owner.

*new\_schema*

The new schema for the procedure.

*extension\_name*

This form marks the procedure as dependent on the extension, or no longer dependent on the extension if `NO` is specified. A procedure that's marked as dependent on an extension is dropped when the extension is dropped, even if cascade is not specified. A procedure can depend upon multiple extensions, and will be dropped when any one of those extensions is dropped.

[ `EXTERNAL` ] `SECURITY INVOKER`

[ `EXTERNAL` ] `SECURITY DEFINER`

Change whether the procedure is a security definer or not. The key word `EXTERNAL` is ignored for SQL conformance. See `CREATE PROCEDURE` for more information about this capability.

*configuration\_parameter*  
*value*

Add or change the assignment to be made to a configuration parameter when the procedure is called. If *value* is `DEFAULT` or, equivalently, `RESET` is used, the procedure-local setting is removed, so that the procedure executes with the value present in its environment. Use `RESET ALL` to clear all procedure-local settings. `SET FROM CURRENT` saves the value of the parameter that is current when `ALTER PROCEDURE` is executed as the value to be applied when the procedure is entered.

See `SET` and Chapter 20 for more information about allowed parameter names and values.

`RESTRICT`

Ignored for conformance with the SQL standard.

## Examples

To rename the procedure `insert_data` with two arguments of type `integer` to `insert_record`:

```
ALTER PROCEDURE insert_data(integer, integer) RENAME TO
insert_record;
```

To change the owner of the procedure `insert_data` with two arguments of type `integer` to `joe`:

```
ALTER PROCEDURE insert_data(integer, integer) OWNER TO joe;
```



To change the schema of the procedure `insert_data` with two arguments of type `integer` to `accounting`:

```
ALTER PROCEDURE insert_data(integer, integer) SET SCHEMA
accounting;
```

To mark the procedure `insert_data(integer, integer)` as being dependent on the extension `myext`:

```
ALTER PROCEDURE insert_data(integer, integer) DEPENDS ON EXTENSION
myext;
```

To adjust the search path that is automatically set for a procedure:

```
ALTER PROCEDURE check_password(text) SET search_path = admin,
pg_temp;
```

To disable automatic setting of `search_path` for a procedure:

```
ALTER PROCEDURE check_password(text) RESET search_path;
```

The procedure will now execute with whatever search path is used by its caller.

## Compatibility

This statement is partially compatible with the `ALTER PROCEDURE` statement in the SQL standard. The standard allows more properties of a procedure to be modified, but does not provide the ability to rename a procedure, make a procedure a security definer, attach configuration parameter values to a procedure, or change the owner, schema, or volatility of a procedure. The standard also requires the `RESTRICT` key word, which is optional in PostgreSQL.

## See Also

`CREATE PROCEDURE`, `DROP PROCEDURE`, `ALTER FUNCTION`, `ALTER ROUTINE`

---

# ALTER PUBLICATION

ALTER PUBLICATION — change the definition of a publication

## Synopsis

```
ALTER PUBLICATION name ADD publication_object [, ...]
ALTER PUBLICATION name SET publication_object [, ...]
ALTER PUBLICATION name DROP publication_object [, ...]
ALTER PUBLICATION name SET ( publication_parameter [= value]
    [, ... ] )
ALTER PUBLICATION name OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE |
    CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER }
ALTER PUBLICATION name RENAME TO new_name
```

where *publication\_object* is one of:

```
TABLE [ ONLY ] table_name [ * ] [ ( column_name [, ... ] ) ]
[ WHERE ( expression ) ] [, ... ]
TABLES IN SCHEMA { schema_name | CURRENT_SCHEMA } [, ... ]
```

## Description

The command `ALTER PUBLICATION` can change the attributes of a publication.

The first three variants change which tables/schemas are part of the publication. The `SET` clause will replace the list of tables/schemas in the publication with the specified list; the existing tables/schemas that were present in the publication will be removed. The `ADD` and `DROP` clauses will add and remove one or more tables/schemas from the publication. Note that adding tables/schemas to a publication that is already subscribed to will require an `ALTER SUBSCRIPTION ... REFRESH PUBLICATION` action on the subscribing side in order to become effective. Note also that `DROP TABLES IN SCHEMA` will not drop any schema tables that were specified using `FOR TABLE/ ADD TABLE`, and the combination of `DROP` with a `WHERE` clause is not allowed.

The fourth variant of this command listed in the synopsis can change all of the publication properties specified in `CREATE PUBLICATION`. Properties not mentioned in the command retain their previous settings.

The remaining variants change the owner and the name of the publication.

You must own the publication to use `ALTER PUBLICATION`. Adding a table to a publication additionally requires owning that table. The `ADD TABLES IN SCHEMA` and `SET TABLES IN SCHEMA` to a publication requires the invoking user to be a superuser. To alter the owner, you must be able to `SET ROLE` to the new owning role, and that role must have `CREATE` privilege on the database. Also, the new owner of a `FOR ALL TABLES` or `FOR TABLES IN SCHEMA` publication must be a superuser. However, a superuser can change the ownership of a publication regardless of these restrictions.

Adding/Setting any schema when the publication also publishes a table with a column list, and vice versa is not supported.

## Parameters

*name*

The name of an existing publication whose definition is to be altered.

*table\_name*

Name of an existing table. If **ONLY** is specified before the table name, only that table is affected. If **ONLY** is not specified, the table and all its descendant tables (if any) are affected. Optionally, **\*** can be specified after the table name to explicitly indicate that descendant tables are included.

Optionally, a column list can be specified. See **CREATE PUBLICATION** for details. Note that a subscription having several publications in which the same table has been published with different column lists is not supported. See **Warning: Combining Column Lists from Multiple Publications** for details of potential problems when altering column lists.

If the optional **WHERE** clause is specified, rows for which the *expression* evaluates to false or null will not be published. Note that parentheses are required around the expression. The *expression* is evaluated with the role used for the replication connection.

*schema\_name*

Name of an existing schema.

**SET** ( *publication\_parameter* [= *value*] [, ... ] )

This clause alters publication parameters originally set by **CREATE PUBLICATION**. See there for more information.

*new\_owner*

The user name of the new owner of the publication.

*new\_name*

The new name for the publication.

## Examples

Change the publication to publish only deletes and updates:

```
ALTER PUBLICATION noinsert SET (publish = 'update, delete');
```

Add some tables to the publication:

```
ALTER PUBLICATION mypublication ADD TABLE users (user_id,
firstname), departments;
```

Change the set of columns published for a table:

```
ALTER PUBLICATION mypublication SET TABLE users (user_id,
firstname, lastname), TABLE departments;
```

Add schemas marketing and sales to the publication `sales_publication`:

```
ALTER PUBLICATION sales_publication ADD TABLES IN SCHEMA marketing,
sales;
```

Add tables `users`, `departments` and schema `production` to the publication `production_publication`:

```
ALTER PUBLICATION production_publication ADD TABLE users,  
departments, TABLES IN SCHEMA production;
```

## Compatibility

ALTER PUBLICATION is a PostgreSQL extension.

## See Also

CREATE PUBLICATION, DROP PUBLICATION, CREATE SUBSCRIPTION, ALTER SUBSCRIPTION

---

# ALTER ROLE

ALTER ROLE — change a database role

## Synopsis

```
ALTER ROLE role_specification [ WITH ] option [ ... ]
```

where *option* can be:

```
SUPERUSER | NOSUPERUSER
|
CREATEDB | NOCREATEDB
|
CREATEROLE | NOCREATEROLE
|
INHERIT | NOINHERIT
|
LOGIN | NOLOGIN
|
REPLICATION | NOREPLICATION
|
BYPASSRLS | NOBYPASSRLS
|
CONNECTION LIMIT conlimit
|
[ ENCRYPTED ] PASSWORD 'password' | PASSWORD NULL
|
VALID UNTIL 'timestamp'
```

```
ALTER ROLE name RENAME TO new_name
```

```
ALTER ROLE { role_specification | ALL } [ IN DATABASE database_name
] SET configuration_parameter { TO | = } { value | DEFAULT }
ALTER ROLE { role_specification | ALL } [ IN DATABASE database_name
] SET configuration_parameter FROM CURRENT
ALTER ROLE { role_specification | ALL } [ IN DATABASE database_name
] RESET configuration_parameter
ALTER ROLE { role_specification | ALL } [ IN DATABASE database_name
] RESET ALL
```

where *role\_specification* can be:

```
role_name
|
CURRENT_ROLE
|
CURRENT_USER
|
SESSION_USER
```

## Description

ALTER ROLE changes the attributes of a PostgreSQL role.

The first variant of this command listed in the synopsis can change many of the role attributes that can be specified in CREATE ROLE. (All the possible attributes are covered, except that there are no options for adding or removing memberships; use GRANT and REVOKE for that.) Attributes not mentioned in the command retain their previous settings. Database superusers can change any of these settings for any role. Non-superuser roles having CREATEROLE privilege can change most of these properties, but only for non-superuser and non-replication roles for which they have been granted ADMIN OPTION. Non-superusers cannot change the SUPERUSER property and can change the CREATEDB, REPLICATION, and BYPASSRLS properties only if they possess the corresponding property themselves. Ordinary roles can only change their own password.

The second variant changes the name of the role. Database superusers can rename any role. Roles having CREATEROLE privilege can rename non-superuser roles for which they have been granted

ADMIN OPTION. The current session user cannot be renamed. (Connect as a different user if you need to do that.) Because MD5-encrypted passwords use the role name as cryptographic salt, renaming a role clears its password if the password is MD5-encrypted.

The remaining variants change a role's session default for a configuration variable, either for all databases or, when the IN DATABASE clause is specified, only for sessions in the named database. If ALL is specified instead of a role name, this changes the setting for all roles. Using ALL with IN DATABASE is effectively the same as using the command ALTER DATABASE ... SET ....

Whenever the role subsequently starts a new session, the specified value becomes the session default, overriding whatever setting is present in `postgresql.conf` or has been received from the `postgres` command line. This only happens at login time; executing SET ROLE or SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION does not cause new configuration values to be set. Settings set for all databases are overridden by database-specific settings attached to a role. Settings for specific databases or specific roles override settings for all roles.

Superusers can change anyone's session defaults. Roles having CREATEROLE privilege can change defaults for non-superuser roles for which they have been granted ADMIN OPTION. Ordinary roles can only set defaults for themselves. Certain configuration variables cannot be set this way, or can only be set if a superuser issues the command. Only superusers can change a setting for all roles in all databases.

## Parameters

*name*

The name of the role whose attributes are to be altered.

CURRENT\_ROLE  
CURRENT\_USER

Alter the current user instead of an explicitly identified role.

SESSION\_USER

Alter the current session user instead of an explicitly identified role.

SUPERUSER  
NOSUPERUSER  
CREATEDB  
NOCREATEDB  
CREATEROLE  
NOCREATEROLE  
INHERIT  
NOINHERIT  
LOGIN  
NOLOGIN  
REPLICATION  
NOREPLICATION  
BYPASSRLS  
NOBYPASSRLS  
CONNECTION LIMIT *conlimit*  
[ ENCRYPTED ] PASSWORD '*password*'  
PASSWORD NULL  
VALID UNTIL '*timestamp*'

These clauses alter attributes originally set by CREATE ROLE. For more information, see the CREATE ROLE reference page.

*new\_name*

The new name of the role.

*database\_name*

The name of the database the configuration variable should be set in.

*configuration\_parameter*  
*value*

Set this role's session default for the specified configuration parameter to the given value. If *value* is `DEFAULT` or, equivalently, `RESET` is used, the role-specific variable setting is removed, so the role will inherit the system-wide default setting in new sessions. Use `RESET ALL` to clear all role-specific settings. `SET FROM CURRENT` saves the session's current value of the parameter as the role-specific value. If `IN DATABASE` is specified, the configuration parameter is set or removed for the given role and database only.

Role-specific variable settings take effect only at login; `SET ROLE` and `SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION` do not process role-specific variable settings.

See `SET` and Chapter 20 for more information about allowed parameter names and values.

## Notes

Use `CREATE ROLE` to add new roles, and `DROP ROLE` to remove a role.

`ALTER ROLE` cannot change a role's memberships. Use `GRANT` and `REVOKE` to do that.

Caution must be exercised when specifying an unencrypted password with this command. The password will be transmitted to the server in cleartext, and it might also be logged in the client's command history or the server log. `psql` contains a command `\password` that can be used to change a role's password without exposing the cleartext password.

It is also possible to tie a session default to a specific database rather than to a role; see `ALTER DATABASE`. If there is a conflict, database-role-specific settings override role-specific ones, which in turn override database-specific ones.

## Examples

Change a role's password:

```
ALTER ROLE davide WITH PASSWORD 'hu8jmn3';
```

Remove a role's password:

```
ALTER ROLE davide WITH PASSWORD NULL;
```

Change a password expiration date, specifying that the password should expire at midday on 4th May 2015 using the time zone which is one hour ahead of UTC:

```
ALTER ROLE chris VALID UNTIL 'May 4 12:00:00 2015 +1';
```

Make a password valid forever:

```
ALTER ROLE fred VALID UNTIL 'infinity';
```

Give a role the ability to manage other roles and create new databases:

```
ALTER ROLE miriam CREATEROLE CREATEDB;
```

Give a role a non-default setting of the `maintenance_work_mem` parameter:

```
ALTER ROLE worker_bee SET maintenance_work_mem = 100000;
```

Give a role a non-default, database-specific setting of the `client_min_messages` parameter:

```
ALTER ROLE fred IN DATABASE devel SET client_min_messages = DEBUG;
```

## Compatibility

The `ALTER ROLE` statement is a PostgreSQL extension.

## See Also

`CREATE ROLE`, `DROP ROLE`, `ALTER DATABASE`, `SET`



---

# ALTER ROUTINE

ALTER ROUTINE — change the definition of a routine

## Synopsis

```
ALTER ROUTINE name [ ( [ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype
    [, ...] ] ) ]
    action [ ... ] [ RESTRICT ]
ALTER ROUTINE name [ ( [ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype
    [, ...] ] ) ]
    RENAME TO new_name
ALTER ROUTINE name [ ( [ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype
    [, ...] ] ) ]
    OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER |
    SESSION_USER }
ALTER ROUTINE name [ ( [ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype
    [, ...] ] ) ]
    SET SCHEMA new_schema
ALTER ROUTINE name [ ( [ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype
    [, ...] ] ) ]
    [ NO ] DEPENDS ON EXTENSION extension_name
```

where *action* is one of:

```
IMMUTABLE | STABLE | VOLATILE
[ NOT ] LEAKPROOF
[ EXTERNAL ] SECURITY INVOKER | [ EXTERNAL ] SECURITY DEFINER
PARALLEL { UNSAFE | RESTRICTED | SAFE }
COST execution_cost
ROWS result_rows
SET configuration_parameter { TO | = } { value | DEFAULT }
SET configuration_parameter FROM CURRENT
RESET configuration_parameter
RESET ALL
```

## Description

ALTER ROUTINE changes the definition of a routine, which can be an aggregate function, a normal function, or a procedure. See under ALTER AGGREGATE, ALTER FUNCTION, and ALTER PROCEDURE for the description of the parameters, more examples, and further details.

## Examples

To rename the routine `foo` for type `integer` to `foobar`:

```
ALTER ROUTINE foo(integer) RENAME TO foobar;
```

This command will work independent of whether `foo` is an aggregate, function, or procedure.

## Compatibility

This statement is partially compatible with the `ALTER ROUTINE` statement in the SQL standard. See under `ALTER FUNCTION` and `ALTER PROCEDURE` for more details. Allowing routine names to refer to aggregate functions is a PostgreSQL extension.

## See Also

`ALTER AGGREGATE`, `ALTER FUNCTION`, `ALTER PROCEDURE`, `DROP ROUTINE`

Note that there is no `CREATE ROUTINE` command.

---

# ALTER RULE

ALTER RULE — change the definition of a rule

## Synopsis

```
ALTER RULE name ON table_name RENAME TO new_name
```

## Description

ALTER RULE changes properties of an existing rule. Currently, the only available action is to change the rule's name.

To use ALTER RULE, you must own the table or view that the rule applies to.

## Parameters

*name*

The name of an existing rule to alter.

*table\_name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table or view that the rule applies to.

*new\_name*

The new name for the rule.

## Examples

To rename an existing rule:

```
ALTER RULE notify_all ON emp RENAME TO notify_me;
```

## Compatibility

ALTER RULE is a PostgreSQL language extension, as is the entire query rewrite system.

## See Also

CREATE RULE, DROP RULE

---

# ALTER SCHEMA

ALTER SCHEMA — change the definition of a schema

## Synopsis

```
ALTER SCHEMA name RENAME TO new_name
ALTER SCHEMA name OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE |
                               CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER }
```

## Description

ALTER SCHEMA changes the definition of a schema.

You must own the schema to use ALTER SCHEMA. To rename a schema you must also have the CREATE privilege for the database. To alter the owner, you must be able to SET ROLE to the new owning role, and that role must have the CREATE privilege for the database. (Note that superusers have all these privileges automatically.)

## Parameters

*name*

The name of an existing schema.

*new\_name*

The new name of the schema. The new name cannot begin with `pg_`, as such names are reserved for system schemas.

*new\_owner*

The new owner of the schema.

## Compatibility

There is no ALTER SCHEMA statement in the SQL standard.

## See Also

CREATE SCHEMA, DROP SCHEMA

---

# ALTER SEQUENCE

ALTER SEQUENCE — change the definition of a sequence generator

## Synopsis

```
ALTER SEQUENCE [ IF EXISTS ] name
    [ AS data_type ]
    [ INCREMENT [ BY ] increment ]
    [ MINVALUE minvalue | NO MINVALUE ] [ MAXVALUE maxvalue | NO
MAXVALUE ]
    [ START [ WITH ] start ]
    [ RESTART [ [ WITH ] restart ] ]
    [ CACHE cache ] [ [ NO ] CYCLE ]
    [ OWNED BY { table_name.column_name | NONE } ]
ALTER SEQUENCE [ IF EXISTS ] name SET { LOGGED | UNLOGGED }
ALTER SEQUENCE [ IF EXISTS ] name OWNER TO { new_owner |
CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER }
ALTER SEQUENCE [ IF EXISTS ] name RENAME TO new_name
ALTER SEQUENCE [ IF EXISTS ] name SET SCHEMA new_schema
```

## Description

ALTER SEQUENCE changes the parameters of an existing sequence generator. Any parameters not specifically set in the ALTER SEQUENCE command retain their prior settings.

You must own the sequence to use ALTER SEQUENCE. To change a sequence's schema, you must also have CREATE privilege on the new schema. To alter the owner, you must be able to SET ROLE to the new owning role, and that role must have CREATE privilege on the sequence's schema. (These restrictions enforce that altering the owner doesn't do anything you couldn't do by dropping and recreating the sequence. However, a superuser can alter ownership of any sequence anyway.)

## Parameters

*name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of a sequence to be altered.

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the sequence does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

*data\_type*

The optional clause AS *data\_type* changes the data type of the sequence. Valid types are smallint, integer, and bigint.

Changing the data type automatically changes the minimum and maximum values of the sequence if and only if the previous minimum and maximum values were the minimum or maximum value of the old data type (in other words, if the sequence had been created using NO MINVALUE or NO MAXVALUE, implicitly or explicitly). Otherwise, the minimum and maximum values are preserved, unless new values are given as part of the same command. If the minimum and maximum values do not fit into the new data type, an error will be generated.

*increment*

The clause `INCREMENT BY increment` is optional. A positive value will make an ascending sequence, a negative one a descending sequence. If unspecified, the old increment value will be maintained.

*minvalue*

`NO MINVALUE`

The optional clause `MINVALUE minvalue` determines the minimum value a sequence can generate. If `NO MINVALUE` is specified, the defaults of 1 and the minimum value of the data type for ascending and descending sequences, respectively, will be used. If neither option is specified, the current minimum value will be maintained.

*maxvalue*

`NO MAXVALUE`

The optional clause `MAXVALUE maxvalue` determines the maximum value for the sequence. If `NO MAXVALUE` is specified, the defaults of the maximum value of the data type and -1 for ascending and descending sequences, respectively, will be used. If neither option is specified, the current maximum value will be maintained.

*start*

The optional clause `START WITH start` changes the recorded start value of the sequence. This has no effect on the *current* sequence value; it simply sets the value that future `ALTER SEQUENCE RESTART` commands will use.

*restart*

The optional clause `RESTART [ WITH restart ]` changes the current value of the sequence. This is similar to calling the `setval` function with `is_called = false`: the specified value will be returned by the *next* call of `nextval`. Writing `RESTART` with no *restart* value is equivalent to supplying the start value that was recorded by `CREATE SEQUENCE` or last set by `ALTER SEQUENCE START WITH`.

In contrast to a `setval` call, a `RESTART` operation on a sequence is transactional and blocks concurrent transactions from obtaining numbers from the same sequence. If that's not the desired mode of operation, `setval` should be used.

*cache*

The clause `CACHE cache` enables sequence numbers to be preallocated and stored in memory for faster access. The minimum value is 1 (only one value can be generated at a time, i.e., no cache). If unspecified, the old cache value will be maintained.

`CYCLE`

The optional `CYCLE` key word can be used to enable the sequence to wrap around when the *max-value* or *minvalue* has been reached by an ascending or descending sequence respectively. If the limit is reached, the next number generated will be the *minvalue* or *maxvalue*, respectively.

`NO CYCLE`

If the optional `NO CYCLE` key word is specified, any calls to `nextval` after the sequence has reached its maximum value will return an error. If neither `CYCLE` or `NO CYCLE` are specified, the old cycle behavior will be maintained.

`SET { LOGGED | UNLOGGED }`

This form changes the sequence from unlogged to logged or vice-versa (see `CREATE SEQUENCE`). It cannot be applied to a temporary sequence.

OWNED BY *table\_name.column\_name*  
OWNED BY NONE

The OWNED BY option causes the sequence to be associated with a specific table column, such that if that column (or its whole table) is dropped, the sequence will be automatically dropped as well. If specified, this association replaces any previously specified association for the sequence. The specified table must have the same owner and be in the same schema as the sequence. Specifying OWNED BY NONE removes any existing association, making the sequence “free-standing”.

*new\_owner*

The user name of the new owner of the sequence.

*new\_name*

The new name for the sequence.

*new\_schema*

The new schema for the sequence.

## Notes

ALTER SEQUENCE will not immediately affect nextval results in backends, other than the current one, that have preallocated (cached) sequence values. They will use up all cached values prior to noticing the changed sequence generation parameters. The current backend will be affected immediately.

ALTER SEQUENCE does not affect the curval status for the sequence. (Before PostgreSQL 8.3, it sometimes did.)

ALTER SEQUENCE blocks concurrent nextval, curval, lastval, and setval calls.

For historical reasons, ALTER TABLE can be used with sequences too; but the only variants of ALTER TABLE that are allowed with sequences are equivalent to the forms shown above.

## Examples

Restart a sequence called `serial`, at 105:

```
ALTER SEQUENCE serial RESTART WITH 105;
```

## Compatibility

ALTER SEQUENCE conforms to the SQL standard, except for the AS, START WITH, OWNED BY, OWNER TO, RENAME TO, and SET SCHEMA clauses, which are PostgreSQL extensions.

## See Also

CREATE SEQUENCE, DROP SEQUENCE

---

# ALTER SERVER

ALTER SERVER — change the definition of a foreign server

## Synopsis

```
ALTER SERVER name [ VERSION 'new_version' ]  
    [ OPTIONS ( [ ADD | SET | DROP ] option ['value'] [, ... ] ) ]  
ALTER SERVER name OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE |  
    CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER }  
ALTER SERVER name RENAME TO new_name
```

## Description

ALTER SERVER changes the definition of a foreign server. The first form changes the server version string or the generic options of the server (at least one clause is required). The second form changes the owner of the server.

To alter the server you must be the owner of the server. Additionally to alter the owner, you must be able to SET ROLE to the new owning role, and you must have USAGE privilege on the server's foreign-data wrapper. (Note that superusers satisfy all these criteria automatically.)

## Parameters

*name*

The name of an existing server.

*new\_version*

New server version.

OPTIONS ( [ ADD | SET | DROP ] *option* ['*value*'] [, ... ] )

Change options for the server. ADD, SET, and DROP specify the action to be performed. ADD is assumed if no operation is explicitly specified. Option names must be unique; names and values are also validated using the server's foreign-data wrapper library.

*new\_owner*

The user name of the new owner of the foreign server.

*new\_name*

The new name for the foreign server.

## Examples

Alter server `foo`, add connection options:

```
ALTER SERVER foo OPTIONS (host 'foo', dbname 'foodb');
```

Alter server `foo`, change version, change host option:



```
ALTER SERVER foo VERSION '8.4' OPTIONS (SET host 'baz');
```

## Compatibility

`ALTER SERVER` conforms to ISO/IEC 9075-9 (SQL/MED). The `OWNER TO` and `RENAME` forms are PostgreSQL extensions.

## See Also

`CREATE SERVER`, `DROP SERVER`

---

# ALTER STATISTICS

ALTER STATISTICS — change the definition of an extended statistics object

## Synopsis

```
ALTER STATISTICS name OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE |  
    CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER }  
ALTER STATISTICS name RENAME TO new_name  
ALTER STATISTICS name SET SCHEMA new_schema  
ALTER STATISTICS name SET STATISTICS new_target
```

## Description

ALTER STATISTICS changes the parameters of an existing extended statistics object. Any parameters not specifically set in the ALTER STATISTICS command retain their prior settings.

You must own the statistics object to use ALTER STATISTICS. To change a statistics object's schema, you must also have CREATE privilege on the new schema. To alter the owner, you must be able to SET ROLE to the new owning role, and that role must have CREATE privilege on the statistics object's schema. (These restrictions enforce that altering the owner doesn't do anything you couldn't do by dropping and recreating the statistics object. However, a superuser can alter ownership of any statistics object anyway.)

## Parameters

*name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the statistics object to be altered.

*new\_owner*

The user name of the new owner of the statistics object.

*new\_name*

The new name for the statistics object.

*new\_schema*

The new schema for the statistics object.

*new\_target*

The statistic-gathering target for this statistics object for subsequent ANALYZE operations. The target can be set in the range 0 to 10000; alternatively, set it to -1 to revert to using the maximum of the statistics target of the referenced columns, if set, or the system default statistics target (default\_statistics\_target). For more information on the use of statistics by the PostgreSQL query planner, refer to Section 14.2.

## Compatibility

There is no ALTER STATISTICS command in the SQL standard.

## See Also

CREATE STATISTICS, DROP STATISTICS

---

# ALTER SUBSCRIPTION

ALTER SUBSCRIPTION — change the definition of a subscription

## Synopsis

```
ALTER SUBSCRIPTION name CONNECTION 'conninfo'
ALTER SUBSCRIPTION name SET PUBLICATION publication_name [, ...]
    [ WITH ( publication_option [= value] [, ... ] ) ]
ALTER SUBSCRIPTION name ADD PUBLICATION publication_name [, ...]
    [ WITH ( publication_option [= value] [, ... ] ) ]
ALTER SUBSCRIPTION name DROP PUBLICATION publication_name [, ...]
    [ WITH ( publication_option [= value] [, ... ] ) ]
ALTER SUBSCRIPTION name REFRESH PUBLICATION [ WITH ( refresh_option
    [= value] [, ... ] ) ]
ALTER SUBSCRIPTION name ENABLE
ALTER SUBSCRIPTION name DISABLE
ALTER SUBSCRIPTION name SET ( subscription_parameter [= value]
    [, ... ] )
ALTER SUBSCRIPTION name SKIP ( skip_option = value )
ALTER SUBSCRIPTION name OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE |
    CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER }
ALTER SUBSCRIPTION name RENAME TO new_name
```

## Description

ALTER SUBSCRIPTION can change most of the subscription properties that can be specified in CREATE SUBSCRIPTION.

You must own the subscription to use ALTER SUBSCRIPTION. To rename a subscription or alter the owner, you must have CREATE permission on the database. In addition, to alter the owner, you must be able to SET ROLE to the new owning role. If the subscription has password\_required=false, only superusers can modify it.

When refreshing a publication we remove the relations that are no longer part of the publication and we also remove the table synchronization slots if there are any. It is necessary to remove these slots so that the resources allocated for the subscription on the remote host are released. If due to network breakdown or some other error, PostgreSQL is unable to remove the slots, an error will be reported. To proceed in this situation, the user either needs to retry the operation or disassociate the slot from the subscription and drop the subscription as explained in DROP SUBSCRIPTION.

Commands ALTER SUBSCRIPTION ... REFRESH PUBLICATION and ALTER SUBSCRIPTION ... {SET|ADD|DROP} PUBLICATION ... with refresh option as true cannot be executed inside a transaction block. These commands also cannot be executed when the subscription has two\_phase commit enabled, unless copy\_data is false. See column subtwo\_phases\_tate of pg\_subscription to know the actual two-phase state.

## Parameters

*name*

The name of a subscription whose properties are to be altered.

CONNECTION '*conninfo*'

This clause replaces the connection string originally set by CREATE SUBSCRIPTION. See there for more information.

SET PUBLICATION *publication\_name*

ADD PUBLICATION *publication\_name*

DROP PUBLICATION *publication\_name*

These forms change the list of subscribed publications. SET replaces the entire list of publications with a new list, ADD adds additional publications to the list of publications, and DROP removes the publications from the list of publications. We allow non-existent publications to be specified in ADD and SET variants so that users can add those later. See CREATE SUBSCRIPTION for more information. By default, this command will also act like REFRESH PUBLICATION.

*publication\_option* specifies additional options for this operation. The supported options are:

refresh (boolean)

When false, the command will not try to refresh table information. REFRESH PUBLICATION should then be executed separately. The default is true.

Additionally, the options described under REFRESH PUBLICATION may be specified, to control the implicit refresh operation.

REFRESH PUBLICATION

Fetch missing table information from publisher. This will start replication of tables that were added to the subscribed-to publications since CREATE SUBSCRIPTION or the last invocation of REFRESH PUBLICATION.

*refresh\_option* specifies additional options for the refresh operation. The supported options are:

copy\_data (boolean)

Specifies whether to copy pre-existing data in the publications that are being subscribed to when the replication starts. The default is true.

Previously subscribed tables are not copied, even if a table's row filter WHERE clause has since been modified.

See Notes for details of how copy\_data = true can interact with the origin parameter.

See the binary parameter of CREATE SUBSCRIPTION for details about copying pre-existing data in binary format.

ENABLE

Enables a previously disabled subscription, starting the logical replication worker at the end of the transaction.

DISABLE

Disables a running subscription, stopping the logical replication worker at the end of the transaction.

SET ( *subscription\_parameter* [= *value*] [, ... ] )

This clause alters parameters originally set by CREATE SUBSCRIPTION. See there for more information. The parameters that can be altered are slot\_name, synchronous\_commit,

binary, streaming, disable\_on\_error, password\_required, run\_as\_owner, and origin. Only a superuser can set password\_required = false.

SKIP ( *skip\_option* = *value* )

Skips applying all changes of the remote transaction. If incoming data violates any constraints, logical replication will stop until it is resolved. By using the ALTER SUBSCRIPTION ... SKIP command, the logical replication worker skips all data modification changes within the transaction. This option has no effect on the transactions that are already prepared by enabling two\_phase on the subscriber. After the logical replication worker successfully skips the transaction or finishes a transaction, the LSN (stored in pg\_subscription.subskip\_lsn) is cleared. See Section 31.5 for the details of logical replication conflicts.

*skip\_option* specifies options for this operation. The supported option is:

lsn (pg\_lsn)

Specifies the finish LSN of the remote transaction whose changes are to be skipped by the logical replication worker. The finish LSN is the LSN at which the transaction is either committed or prepared. Skipping individual subtransactions is not supported. Setting NONE resets the LSN.

*new\_owner*

The user name of the new owner of the subscription.

*new\_name*

The new name for the subscription.

When specifying a parameter of type boolean, the = *value* part can be omitted, which is equivalent to specifying TRUE.

## Examples

Change the publication subscribed by a subscription to insert\_only:

```
ALTER SUBSCRIPTION mysub SET PUBLICATION insert_only;
```

Disable (stop) the subscription:

```
ALTER SUBSCRIPTION mysub DISABLE;
```

## Compatibility

ALTER SUBSCRIPTION is a PostgreSQL extension.

## See Also

CREATE SUBSCRIPTION, DROP SUBSCRIPTION, CREATE PUBLICATION, ALTER PUBLICATION

---

# ALTER SYSTEM

ALTER SYSTEM — change a server configuration parameter

## Synopsis

```
ALTER SYSTEM SET configuration_parameter { TO | = } { value [, ...]  
| DEFAULT }
```

```
ALTER SYSTEM RESET configuration_parameter  
ALTER SYSTEM RESET ALL
```

## Description

ALTER SYSTEM is used for changing server configuration parameters across the entire database cluster. It can be more convenient than the traditional method of manually editing the `postgresql.conf` file. ALTER SYSTEM writes the given parameter setting to the `postgresql.auto.conf` file, which is read in addition to `postgresql.conf`. Setting a parameter to `DEFAULT`, or using the `RESET` variant, removes that configuration entry from the `postgresql.auto.conf` file. Use `RESET ALL` to remove all such configuration entries.

Values set with ALTER SYSTEM will be effective after the next server configuration reload, or after the next server restart in the case of parameters that can only be changed at server start. A server configuration reload can be commanded by calling the SQL function `pg_reload_conf()`, running `pg_ctl reload`, or sending a `SIGHUP` signal to the main server process.

Only superusers and users granted ALTER SYSTEM privilege on a parameter can change it using ALTER SYSTEM. Also, since this command acts directly on the file system and cannot be rolled back, it is not allowed inside a transaction block or function.

## Parameters

*configuration\_parameter*

Name of a settable configuration parameter. Available parameters are documented in Chapter 20.

*value*

New value of the parameter. Values can be specified as string constants, identifiers, numbers, or comma-separated lists of these, as appropriate for the particular parameter. Values that are neither numbers nor valid identifiers must be quoted. `DEFAULT` can be written to specify removing the parameter and its value from `postgresql.auto.conf`.

For some list-accepting parameters, quoted values will produce double-quoted output to preserve whitespace and commas; for others, double-quotes must be used inside single-quoted strings to get this effect.

## Notes

This command can't be used to set `data_directory`, nor parameters that are not allowed in `postgresql.conf` (e.g., preset options).

See Section 20.1 for other ways to set the parameters.

## Examples

Set the `wal_level`:

```
ALTER SYSTEM SET wal_level = replica;
```

Undo that, restoring whatever setting was effective in `postgresql.conf`:

```
ALTER SYSTEM RESET wal_level;
```

## Compatibility

The `ALTER SYSTEM` statement is a PostgreSQL extension.

## See Also

`SET`, `SHOW`

---

# ALTER TABLE

ALTER TABLE — change the definition of a table

## Synopsis

```
ALTER TABLE [ IF EXISTS ] [ ONLY ] name [ * ]
    action [, ... ]
ALTER TABLE [ IF EXISTS ] [ ONLY ] name [ * ]
    RENAME [ COLUMN ] column_name TO new_column_name
ALTER TABLE [ IF EXISTS ] [ ONLY ] name [ * ]
    RENAME CONSTRAINT constraint_name TO new_constraint_name
ALTER TABLE [ IF EXISTS ] name
    RENAME TO new_name
ALTER TABLE [ IF EXISTS ] name
    SET SCHEMA new_schema
ALTER TABLE ALL IN TABLESPACE name [ OWNED BY role_name [, ... ] ]
    SET TABLESPACE new_tablespace [ NOWAIT ]
ALTER TABLE [ IF EXISTS ] name
    ATTACH PARTITION partition_name { FOR
    VALUES partition_bound_spec | DEFAULT }
ALTER TABLE [ IF EXISTS ] name
    DETACH PARTITION partition_name [ CONCURRENTLY | FINALIZE ]
```

where *action* is one of:

```
    ADD [ COLUMN ] [ IF NOT EXISTS ] column_name data_type
[ COLLATE collation ] [ column_constraint [ ... ] ]
    DROP [ COLUMN ] [ IF EXISTS ] column_name [ RESTRICT |
CASCADE ]
    ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name [ SET DATA ] TYPE data_type
[ COLLATE collation ] [ USING expression ]
    ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name SET DEFAULT expression
    ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name DROP DEFAULT
    ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name { SET | DROP } NOT NULL
    ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name DROP EXPRESSION [ IF EXISTS ]
    ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name ADD GENERATED { ALWAYS | BY
DEFAULT } AS IDENTITY [ ( sequence_options ) ]
    ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name { SET GENERATED { ALWAYS | BY
DEFAULT } | SET sequence_option | RESTART [ [ WITH ] restart ] }
[ ... ]
    ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name DROP IDENTITY [ IF EXISTS ]
    ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name SET STATISTICS integer
    ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name SET ( attribute_option = value
[, ... ] )
    ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name RESET ( attribute_option
[, ... ] )
    ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name SET STORAGE { PLAIN | EXTERNAL |
EXTENDED | MAIN | DEFAULT }
    ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name SET COMPRESSION compression_method
    ADD table_constraint [ NOT VALID ]
    ADD table_constraint_using_index
    ALTER CONSTRAINT constraint_name [ DEFERRABLE | NOT
DEFERRABLE ] [ INITIALLY DEFERRED | INITIALLY IMMEDIATE ]
    VALIDATE CONSTRAINT constraint_name
```



```

    DROP CONSTRAINT [ IF EXISTS ] constraint_name [ RESTRICT |
CASCADE ]
    DISABLE TRIGGER [ trigger_name | ALL | USER ]
    ENABLE TRIGGER [ trigger_name | ALL | USER ]
    ENABLE REPLICA TRIGGER trigger_name
    ENABLE ALWAYS TRIGGER trigger_name
    DISABLE RULE rewrite_rule_name
    ENABLE RULE rewrite_rule_name
    ENABLE REPLICA RULE rewrite_rule_name
    ENABLE ALWAYS RULE rewrite_rule_name
    DISABLE ROW LEVEL SECURITY
    ENABLE ROW LEVEL SECURITY
    FORCE ROW LEVEL SECURITY
    NO FORCE ROW LEVEL SECURITY
    CLUSTER ON index_name
    SET WITHOUT CLUSTER
    SET WITHOUT OIDS
    SET ACCESS METHOD new_access_method
    SET TABLESPACE new_tablespace
    SET { LOGGED | UNLOGGED }
    SET ( storage_parameter [= value] [, ... ] )
    RESET ( storage_parameter [, ... ] )
    INHERIT parent_table
    NO INHERIT parent_table
    OF type_name
    NOT OF
    OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER |
SESSION_USER }
    REPLICA IDENTITY { DEFAULT | USING INDEX index_name | FULL |
NOTHING }

```

and *partition\_bound\_spec* is:

```

IN ( partition_bound_expr [, ...] ) |
FROM ( { partition_bound_expr | MINVALUE | MAXVALUE } [, ...] )
    TO ( { partition_bound_expr | MINVALUE | MAXVALUE } [, ...] ) |
WITH ( MODULUS numeric_literal, REMAINDER numeric_literal )

```

and *column\_constraint* is:

```

[ CONSTRAINT constraint_name ]
{ NOT NULL |
  NULL |
  CHECK ( expression ) [ NO INHERIT ] |
  DEFAULT default_expr |
  GENERATED ALWAYS AS ( generation_expr ) STORED |
  GENERATED { ALWAYS | BY DEFAULT } AS IDENTITY
[ ( sequence_options ) ] |
  UNIQUE [ NULLS [ NOT ] DISTINCT ] index_parameters |
  PRIMARY KEY index_parameters |
  REFERENCES reftable [ ( refcolumn ) ] [ MATCH FULL | MATCH
PARTIAL | MATCH SIMPLE ]
    [ ON DELETE referential_action ] [ ON UPDATE referential_action
] }
[ DEFERRABLE | NOT DEFERRABLE ] [ INITIALLY DEFERRED | INITIALLY
IMMEDIATE ]

```

and *table\_constraint* is:

```
[ CONSTRAINT constraint_name ]
{ CHECK ( expression ) [ NO INHERIT ] |
  UNIQUE [ NULLS [ NOT ] DISTINCT ] ( column_name
    [, ... ] ) index_parameters |
  PRIMARY KEY ( column_name [, ... ] ) index_parameters |
  EXCLUDE [ USING index_method ] ( exclude_element WITH operator
    [, ... ] ) index_parameters [ WHERE ( predicate ) ] |
  FOREIGN KEY ( column_name [, ... ] ) REFERENCES reftable
    [ ( refcolumn [, ... ] ) ]
    [ MATCH FULL | MATCH PARTIAL | MATCH SIMPLE ] [ ON
  DELETE referential_action ] [ ON UPDATE referential_action ] }
[ DEFERRABLE | NOT DEFERRABLE ] [ INITIALLY DEFERRED | INITIALLY
IMMEDIATE ]
```

and *table\_constraint\_using\_index* is:

```
[ CONSTRAINT constraint_name ]
{ UNIQUE | PRIMARY KEY } USING INDEX index_name
[ DEFERRABLE | NOT DEFERRABLE ] [ INITIALLY DEFERRED |
INITIALLY IMMEDIATE ]
```

*index\_parameters* in UNIQUE, PRIMARY KEY, and EXCLUDE constraints are:

```
[ INCLUDE ( column_name [, ... ] ) ]
[ WITH ( storage_parameter [= value] [, ... ] ) ]
[ USING INDEX TABLESPACE tablespace_name ]
```

*exclude\_element* in an EXCLUDE constraint is:

```
{ column_name | ( expression ) } [ opclass ] [ ASC | DESC ] [ NULLS
{ FIRST | LAST } ]
```

*referential\_action* in a FOREIGN KEY/REFERENCES constraint is:

```
{ NO ACTION | RESTRICT | CASCADE | SET NULL [ ( column_name
[, ... ] ) ] | SET DEFAULT [ ( column_name [, ... ] ) ] }
```

## Description

ALTER TABLE changes the definition of an existing table. There are several subforms described below. Note that the lock level required may differ for each subform. An ACCESS EXCLUSIVE lock is acquired unless explicitly noted. When multiple subcommands are given, the lock acquired will be the strictest one required by any subcommand.

ADD COLUMN [ IF NOT EXISTS ]

This form adds a new column to the table, using the same syntax as CREATE TABLE. If IF NOT EXISTS is specified and a column already exists with this name, no error is thrown.

DROP COLUMN [ IF EXISTS ]

This form drops a column from a table. Indexes and table constraints involving the column will be automatically dropped as well. Multivariate statistics referencing the dropped column will also be removed if the removal of the column would cause the statistics to contain data for only a single column. You will need to say CASCADE if anything outside the table depends on the column, for example, foreign key references or views. If IF EXISTS is specified and the column does not exist, no error is thrown. In this case a notice is issued instead.

**SET DATA TYPE**

This form changes the type of a column of a table. Indexes and simple table constraints involving the column will be automatically converted to use the new column type by reparsing the originally supplied expression. The optional `COLLATE` clause specifies a collation for the new column; if omitted, the collation is the default for the new column type. The optional `USING` clause specifies how to compute the new column value from the old; if omitted, the default conversion is the same as an assignment cast from old data type to new. A `USING` clause must be provided if there is no implicit or assignment cast from old to new type.

When this form is used, the column's statistics are removed, so running `ANALYZE` on the table afterwards is recommended.

**SET/DROP DEFAULT**

These forms set or remove the default value for a column (where removal is equivalent to setting the default value to `NULL`). The new default value will only apply in subsequent `INSERT` or `UPDATE` commands; it does not cause rows already in the table to change.

**SET/DROP NOT NULL**

These forms change whether a column is marked to allow null values or to reject null values.

`SET NOT NULL` may only be applied to a column provided none of the records in the table contain a `NULL` value for the column. Ordinarily this is checked during the `ALTER TABLE` by scanning the entire table; however, if a valid `CHECK` constraint is found which proves no `NULL` can exist, then the table scan is skipped.

If this table is a partition, one cannot perform `DROP NOT NULL` on a column if it is marked `NOT NULL` in the parent table. To drop the `NOT NULL` constraint from all the partitions, perform `DROP NOT NULL` on the parent table. Even if there is no `NOT NULL` constraint on the parent, such a constraint can still be added to individual partitions, if desired; that is, the children can disallow nulls even if the parent allows them, but not the other way around.

**DROP EXPRESSION [ IF EXISTS ]**

This form turns a stored generated column into a normal base column. Existing data in the columns is retained, but future changes will no longer apply the generation expression.

If `DROP EXPRESSION IF EXISTS` is specified and the column is not a stored generated column, no error is thrown. In this case a notice is issued instead.

```
ADD GENERATED { ALWAYS | BY DEFAULT } AS IDENTITY
SET GENERATED { ALWAYS | BY DEFAULT }
DROP IDENTITY [ IF EXISTS ]
```

These forms change whether a column is an identity column or change the generation attribute of an existing identity column. See `CREATE TABLE` for details. Like `SET DEFAULT`, these forms only affect the behavior of subsequent `INSERT` and `UPDATE` commands; they do not cause rows already in the table to change.

If `DROP IDENTITY IF EXISTS` is specified and the column is not an identity column, no error is thrown. In this case a notice is issued instead.

```
SET sequence_option
RESTART
```

These forms alter the sequence that underlies an existing identity column. *sequence\_option* is an option supported by `ALTER SEQUENCE` such as `INCREMENT BY`.

**SET STATISTICS**

This form sets the per-column statistics-gathering target for subsequent `ANALYZE` operations. The target can be set in the range 0 to 10000; alternatively, set it to -1 to revert to using the system default statistics target (`default_statistics_target`). For more information on the use of statistics by the PostgreSQL query planner, refer to Section 14.2.

`SET STATISTICS` acquires a `SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE` lock.

```
SET ( attribute_option = value [, ... ] )  
RESET ( attribute_option [, ... ] )
```

This form sets or resets per-attribute options. Currently, the only defined per-attribute options are `n_distinct` and `n_distinct_inherited`, which override the number-of-distinct-values estimates made by subsequent `ANALYZE` operations. `n_distinct` affects the statistics for the table itself, while `n_distinct_inherited` affects the statistics gathered for the table plus its inheritance children. When set to a positive value, `ANALYZE` will assume that the column contains exactly the specified number of distinct nonnull values. When set to a negative value, which must be greater than or equal to -1, `ANALYZE` will assume that the number of distinct nonnull values in the column is linear in the size of the table; the exact count is to be computed by multiplying the estimated table size by the absolute value of the given number. For example, a value of -1 implies that all values in the column are distinct, while a value of -0.5 implies that each value appears twice on the average. This can be useful when the size of the table changes over time, since the multiplication by the number of rows in the table is not performed until query planning time. Specify a value of 0 to revert to estimating the number of distinct values normally. For more information on the use of statistics by the PostgreSQL query planner, refer to Section 14.2.

Changing per-attribute options acquires a `SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE` lock.

```
SET STORAGE { PLAIN | EXTERNAL | EXTENDED | MAIN | DEFAULT }
```

This form sets the storage mode for a column. This controls whether this column is held inline or in a secondary TOAST table, and whether the data should be compressed or not. `PLAIN` must be used for fixed-length values such as `integer` and is inline, uncompressed. `MAIN` is for inline, compressible data. `EXTERNAL` is for external, uncompressed data, and `EXTENDED` is for external, compressed data. Writing `DEFAULT` sets the storage mode to the default mode for the column's data type. `EXTENDED` is the default for most data types that support non-`PLAIN` storage. Use of `EXTERNAL` will make substring operations on very large `text` and `bytea` values run faster, at the penalty of increased storage space. Note that `ALTER TABLE ... SET STORAGE` doesn't itself change anything in the table; it just sets the strategy to be pursued during future table updates. See Section 73.2 for more information.

```
SET COMPRESSION compression_method
```

This form sets the compression method for a column, determining how values inserted in future will be compressed (if the storage mode permits compression at all). This does not cause the table to be rewritten, so existing data may still be compressed with other compression methods. If the table is restored with `pg_restore`, then all values are rewritten with the configured compression method. However, when data is inserted from another relation (for example, by `INSERT ... SELECT`), values from the source table are not necessarily detoasted, so any previously compressed data may retain its existing compression method, rather than being recompressed with the compression method of the target column. The supported compression methods are `pglz` and `lz4`. (`lz4` is available only if `--with-lz4` was used when building PostgreSQL.) In addition, *compression\_method* can be `default`, which selects the default behavior of consulting the `default_toast_compression` setting at the time of data insertion to determine the method to use.

```
ADD table_constraint [ NOT VALID ]
```

This form adds a new constraint to a table using the same constraint syntax as `CREATE TABLE`, plus the option `NOT VALID`, which is currently only allowed for foreign key and `CHECK` constraints.

Normally, this form will cause a scan of the table to verify that all existing rows in the table satisfy the new constraint. But if the `NOT VALID` option is used, this potentially-lengthy scan is skipped. The constraint will still be enforced against subsequent inserts or updates (that is, they'll fail unless there is a matching row in the referenced table, in the case of foreign keys, or they'll fail unless the new row matches the specified check condition). But the database will not assume that the constraint holds for all rows in the table, until it is validated by using the `VALIDATE CONSTRAINT` option. See Notes below for more information about using the `NOT VALID` option.

Although most forms of `ADD table_constraint` require an `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock, `ADD FOREIGN KEY` requires only a `SHARE ROW EXCLUSIVE` lock. Note that `ADD FOREIGN KEY` also acquires a `SHARE ROW EXCLUSIVE` lock on the referenced table, in addition to the lock on the table on which the constraint is declared.

Additional restrictions apply when unique or primary key constraints are added to partitioned tables; see `CREATE TABLE`. Also, foreign key constraints on partitioned tables may not be declared `NOT VALID` at present.

#### `ADD table_constraint_using_index`

This form adds a new `PRIMARY KEY` or `UNIQUE` constraint to a table based on an existing unique index. All the columns of the index will be included in the constraint.

The index cannot have expression columns nor be a partial index. Also, it must be a b-tree index with default sort ordering. These restrictions ensure that the index is equivalent to one that would be built by a regular `ADD PRIMARY KEY` or `ADD UNIQUE` command.

If `PRIMARY KEY` is specified, and the index's columns are not already marked `NOT NULL`, then this command will attempt to do `ALTER COLUMN SET NOT NULL` against each such column. That requires a full table scan to verify the column(s) contain no nulls. In all other cases, this is a fast operation.

If a constraint name is provided then the index will be renamed to match the constraint name. Otherwise the constraint will be named the same as the index.

After this command is executed, the index is “owned” by the constraint, in the same way as if the index had been built by a regular `ADD PRIMARY KEY` or `ADD UNIQUE` command. In particular, dropping the constraint will make the index disappear too.

This form is not currently supported on partitioned tables.

### **Note**

Adding a constraint using an existing index can be helpful in situations where a new constraint needs to be added without blocking table updates for a long time. To do that, create the index using `CREATE INDEX CONCURRENTLY`, and then install it as an official constraint using this syntax. See the example below.

#### `ALTER CONSTRAINT`

This form alters the attributes of a constraint that was previously created. Currently only foreign key constraints may be altered.

#### `VALIDATE CONSTRAINT`

This form validates a foreign key or check constraint that was previously created as `NOT VALID`, by scanning the table to ensure there are no rows for which the constraint is not satisfied. Nothing

happens if the constraint is already marked valid. (See Notes below for an explanation of the usefulness of this command.)

This command acquires a `SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE` lock.

`DROP CONSTRAINT [ IF EXISTS ]`

This form drops the specified constraint on a table, along with any index underlying the constraint. If `IF EXISTS` is specified and the constraint does not exist, no error is thrown. In this case a notice is issued instead.

`DISABLE/ENABLE [ REPLICA | ALWAYS ] TRIGGER`

These forms configure the firing of trigger(s) belonging to the table. A disabled trigger is still known to the system, but is not executed when its triggering event occurs. (For a deferred trigger, the enable status is checked when the event occurs, not when the trigger function is actually executed.) One can disable or enable a single trigger specified by name, or all triggers on the table, or only user triggers (this option excludes internally generated constraint triggers, such as those that are used to implement foreign key constraints or deferrable uniqueness and exclusion constraints). Disabling or enabling internally generated constraint triggers requires superuser privileges; it should be done with caution since of course the integrity of the constraint cannot be guaranteed if the triggers are not executed.

The trigger firing mechanism is also affected by the configuration variable `session_replication_role`. Simply enabled triggers (the default) will fire when the replication role is “origin” (the default) or “local”. Triggers configured as `ENABLE REPLICA` will only fire if the session is in “replica” mode, and triggers configured as `ENABLE ALWAYS` will fire regardless of the current replication role.

The effect of this mechanism is that in the default configuration, triggers do not fire on replicas. This is useful because if a trigger is used on the origin to propagate data between tables, then the replication system will also replicate the propagated data; so the trigger should not fire a second time on the replica, because that would lead to duplication. However, if a trigger is used for another purpose such as creating external alerts, then it might be appropriate to set it to `ENABLE ALWAYS` so that it is also fired on replicas.

When this command is applied to a partitioned table, the states of corresponding clone triggers in the partitions are updated too, unless `ONLY` is specified.

This command acquires a `SHARE ROW EXCLUSIVE` lock.

`DISABLE/ENABLE [ REPLICA | ALWAYS ] RULE`

These forms configure the firing of rewrite rules belonging to the table. A disabled rule is still known to the system, but is not applied during query rewriting. The semantics are as for disabled/enabled triggers. This configuration is ignored for `ON SELECT` rules, which are always applied in order to keep views working even if the current session is in a non-default replication role.

The rule firing mechanism is also affected by the configuration variable `session_replication_role`, analogous to triggers as described above.

`DISABLE/ENABLE ROW LEVEL SECURITY`

These forms control the application of row security policies belonging to the table. If enabled and no policies exist for the table, then a default-deny policy is applied. Note that policies can exist for a table even if row-level security is disabled. In this case, the policies will *not* be applied and the policies will be ignored. See also `CREATE POLICY`.

`NO FORCE/FORCE ROW LEVEL SECURITY`

These forms control the application of row security policies belonging to the table when the user is the table owner. If enabled, row-level security policies will be applied when the user is the table

owner. If disabled (the default) then row-level security will not be applied when the user is the table owner. See also `CREATE POLICY`.

#### `CLUSTER ON`

This form selects the default index for future `CLUSTER` operations. It does not actually re-cluster the table.

Changing cluster options acquires a `SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE` lock.

#### `SET WITHOUT CLUSTER`

This form removes the most recently used `CLUSTER` index specification from the table. This affects future cluster operations that don't specify an index.

Changing cluster options acquires a `SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE` lock.

#### `SET WITHOUT OIDS`

Backward-compatible syntax for removing the `oid` system column. As `oid` system columns cannot be added anymore, this never has an effect.

#### `SET ACCESS METHOD`

This form changes the access method of the table by rewriting it. See Chapter 63 for more information.

#### `SET TABLESPACE`

This form changes the table's tablespace to the specified tablespace and moves the data file(s) associated with the table to the new tablespace. Indexes on the table, if any, are not moved; but they can be moved separately with additional `SET TABLESPACE` commands. When applied to a partitioned table, nothing is moved, but any partitions created afterwards with `CREATE TABLE PARTITION OF` will use that tablespace, unless overridden by a `TABLESPACE` clause.

All tables in the current database in a tablespace can be moved by using the `ALL IN TABLESPACE` form, which will lock all tables to be moved first and then move each one. This form also supports `OWNED BY`, which will only move tables owned by the roles specified. If the `NOWAIT` option is specified then the command will fail if it is unable to acquire all of the locks required immediately. Note that system catalogs are not moved by this command; use `ALTER DATABASE` or explicit `ALTER TABLE` invocations instead if desired. The `information_schema` relations are not considered part of the system catalogs and will be moved. See also `CREATE TABLESPACE`.

#### `SET { LOGGED | UNLOGGED }`

This form changes the table from unlogged to logged or vice-versa (see `UNLOGGED`). It cannot be applied to a temporary table.

This also changes the persistence of any sequences linked to the table (for identity or serial columns). However, it is also possible to change the persistence of such sequences separately.

#### `SET ( storage_parameter [= value] [, ... ] )`

This form changes one or more storage parameters for the table. See Storage Parameters in the `CREATE TABLE` documentation for details on the available parameters. Note that the table contents will not be modified immediately by this command; depending on the parameter you might need to rewrite the table to get the desired effects. That can be done with `VACUUM FULL`, `CLUSTER` or one of the forms of `ALTER TABLE` that forces a table rewrite. For planner related parameters, changes will take effect from the next time the table is locked so currently executing queries will not be affected.

SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE lock will be taken for fillfactor, toast and autovacuum storage parameters, as well as the planner parameter `parallel_workers`.

RESET ( *storage\_parameter* [, ...] )

This form resets one or more storage parameters to their defaults. As with SET, a table rewrite might be needed to update the table entirely.

INHERIT *parent\_table*

This form adds the target table as a new child of the specified parent table. Subsequently, queries against the parent will include records of the target table. To be added as a child, the target table must already contain all the same columns as the parent (it could have additional columns, too). The columns must have matching data types, and if they have NOT NULL constraints in the parent then they must also have NOT NULL constraints in the child.

There must also be matching child-table constraints for all CHECK constraints of the parent, except those marked non-inheritable (that is, created with ALTER TABLE ... ADD CONSTRAINT ... NO INHERIT) in the parent, which are ignored; all child-table constraints matched must not be marked non-inheritable. Currently UNIQUE, PRIMARY KEY, and FOREIGN KEY constraints are not considered, but this might change in the future.

NO INHERIT *parent\_table*

This form removes the target table from the list of children of the specified parent table. Queries against the parent table will no longer include records drawn from the target table.

OF *type\_name*

This form links the table to a composite type as though CREATE TABLE OF had formed it. The table's list of column names and types must precisely match that of the composite type. The table must not inherit from any other table. These restrictions ensure that CREATE TABLE OF would permit an equivalent table definition.

NOT OF

This form dissociates a typed table from its type.

OWNER TO

This form changes the owner of the table, sequence, view, materialized view, or foreign table to the specified user.

REPLICA IDENTITY

This form changes the information which is written to the write-ahead log to identify rows which are updated or deleted. In most cases, the old value of each column is only logged if it differs from the new value; however, if the old value is stored externally, it is always logged regardless of whether it changed. This option has no effect except when logical replication is in use.

DEFAULT

Records the old values of the columns of the primary key, if any. This is the default for non-system tables.

USING INDEX *index\_name*

Records the old values of the columns covered by the named index, that must be unique, not partial, not deferrable, and include only columns marked NOT NULL. If this index is dropped, the behavior is the same as NOTHING.



## FULL

Records the old values of all columns in the row.

## NOTHING

Records no information about the old row. This is the default for system tables.

## RENAME

The RENAME forms change the name of a table (or an index, sequence, view, materialized view, or foreign table), the name of an individual column in a table, or the name of a constraint of the table. When renaming a constraint that has an underlying index, the index is renamed as well. There is no effect on the stored data.

## SET SCHEMA

This form moves the table into another schema. Associated indexes, constraints, and sequences owned by table columns are moved as well.

```
ATTACH PARTITION partition_name { FOR VALUES partition_bound_spec |  
DEFAULT }
```

This form attaches an existing table (which might itself be partitioned) as a partition of the target table. The table can be attached as a partition for specific values using FOR VALUES or as a default partition by using DEFAULT. For each index in the target table, a corresponding one will be created in the attached table; or, if an equivalent index already exists, it will be attached to the target table's index, as if ALTER INDEX ATTACH PARTITION had been executed. Note that if the existing table is a foreign table, it is currently not allowed to attach the table as a partition of the target table if there are UNIQUE indexes on the target table. (See also CREATE FOREIGN TABLE.) For each user-defined row-level trigger that exists in the target table, a corresponding one is created in the attached table.

A partition using FOR VALUES uses same syntax for *partition\_bound\_spec* as CREATE TABLE. The partition bound specification must correspond to the partitioning strategy and partition key of the target table. The table to be attached must have all the same columns as the target table and no more; moreover, the column types must also match. Also, it must have all the NOT NULL and CHECK constraints of the target table. Currently FOREIGN KEY constraints are not considered. UNIQUE and PRIMARY KEY constraints from the parent table will be created in the partition, if they don't already exist. If any of the CHECK constraints of the table being attached are marked NO INHERIT, the command will fail; such constraints must be recreated without the NO INHERIT clause.

If the new partition is a regular table, a full table scan is performed to check that existing rows in the table do not violate the partition constraint. It is possible to avoid this scan by adding a valid CHECK constraint to the table that allows only rows satisfying the desired partition constraint before running this command. The CHECK constraint will be used to determine that the table need not be scanned to validate the partition constraint. This does not work, however, if any of the partition keys is an expression and the partition does not accept NULL values. If attaching a list partition that will not accept NULL values, also add a NOT NULL constraint to the partition key column, unless it's an expression.

If the new partition is a foreign table, nothing is done to verify that all the rows in the foreign table obey the partition constraint. (See the discussion in CREATE FOREIGN TABLE about constraints on the foreign table.)

When a table has a default partition, defining a new partition changes the partition constraint for the default partition. The default partition can't contain any rows that would need to be moved to the new partition, and will be scanned to verify that none are present. This scan, like the scan

of the new partition, can be avoided if an appropriate `CHECK` constraint is present. Also like the scan of the new partition, it is always skipped when the default partition is a foreign table.

Attaching a partition acquires a `SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE` lock on the parent table, in addition to the `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` locks on the table being attached and on the default partition (if any).

Further locks must also be held on all sub-partitions if the table being attached is itself a partitioned table. Likewise if the default partition is itself a partitioned table. The locking of the sub-partitions can be avoided by adding a `CHECK` constraint as described in Section 5.11.2.2.

```
DETACH PARTITION partition_name [ CONCURRENTLY | FINALIZE ]
```

This form detaches the specified partition of the target table. The detached partition continues to exist as a standalone table, but no longer has any ties to the table from which it was detached. Any indexes that were attached to the target table's indexes are detached. Any triggers that were created as clones of those in the target table are removed. `SHARE` lock is obtained on any tables that reference this partitioned table in foreign key constraints.

If `CONCURRENTLY` is specified, it runs using a reduced lock level to avoid blocking other sessions that might be accessing the partitioned table. In this mode, two transactions are used internally. During the first transaction, a `SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE` lock is taken on both parent table and partition, and the partition is marked as undergoing detach; at that point, the transaction is committed and all other transactions using the partitioned table are waited for. Once all those transactions have completed, the second transaction acquires `SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE` on the partitioned table and `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` on the partition, and the detach process completes. A `CHECK` constraint that duplicates the partition constraint is added to the partition. `CONCURRENTLY` cannot be run in a transaction block and is not allowed if the partitioned table contains a default partition.

If `FINALIZE` is specified, a previous `DETACH CONCURRENTLY` invocation that was canceled or interrupted is completed. At most one partition in a partitioned table can be pending detach at a time.

All the forms of `ALTER TABLE` that act on a single table, except `RENAME`, `SET SCHEMA`, `ATTACH PARTITION`, and `DETACH PARTITION` can be combined into a list of multiple alterations to be applied together. For example, it is possible to add several columns and/or alter the type of several columns in a single command. This is particularly useful with large tables, since only one pass over the table need be made.

You must own the table to use `ALTER TABLE`. To change the schema or tablespace of a table, you must also have `CREATE` privilege on the new schema or tablespace. To add the table as a new child of a parent table, you must own the parent table as well. Also, to attach a table as a new partition of the table, you must own the table being attached. To alter the owner, you must be able to `SET ROLE` to the new owning role, and that role must have `CREATE` privilege on the table's schema. (These restrictions enforce that altering the owner doesn't do anything you couldn't do by dropping and recreating the table. However, a superuser can alter ownership of any table anyway.) To add a column or alter a column type or use the `OF` clause, you must also have `USAGE` privilege on the data type.

## Parameters

`IF EXISTS`

Do not throw an error if the table does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

*name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing table to alter. If `ONLY` is specified before the table name, only that table is altered. If `ONLY` is not specified, the table and all its descendant

tables (if any) are altered. Optionally, \* can be specified after the table name to explicitly indicate that descendant tables are included.

*column\_name*

Name of a new or existing column.

*new\_column\_name*

New name for an existing column.

*new\_name*

New name for the table.

*data\_type*

Data type of the new column, or new data type for an existing column.

*table\_constraint*

New table constraint for the table.

*constraint\_name*

Name of a new or existing constraint.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the dropped column or constraint (for example, views referencing the column), and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the column or constraint if there are any dependent objects. This is the default behavior.

*trigger\_name*

Name of a single trigger to disable or enable.

ALL

Disable or enable all triggers belonging to the table. (This requires superuser privilege if any of the triggers are internally generated constraint triggers, such as those that are used to implement foreign key constraints or deferrable uniqueness and exclusion constraints.)

USER

Disable or enable all triggers belonging to the table except for internally generated constraint triggers, such as those that are used to implement foreign key constraints or deferrable uniqueness and exclusion constraints.

*index\_name*

The name of an existing index.

*storage\_parameter*

The name of a table storage parameter.

*value*

The new value for a table storage parameter. This might be a number or a word depending on the parameter.

*parent\_table*

A parent table to associate or de-associate with this table.

*new\_owner*

The user name of the new owner of the table.

*new\_access\_method*

The name of the access method to which the table will be converted.

*new\_tablespace*

The name of the tablespace to which the table will be moved.

*new\_schema*

The name of the schema to which the table will be moved.

*partition\_name*

The name of the table to attach as a new partition or to detach from this table.

*partition\_bound\_spec*

The partition bound specification for a new partition. Refer to CREATE TABLE for more details on the syntax of the same.

## Notes

The key word COLUMN is noise and can be omitted.

When a column is added with ADD COLUMN and a non-volatile DEFAULT is specified, the default is evaluated at the time of the statement and the result stored in the table's metadata. That value will be used for the column for all existing rows. If no DEFAULT is specified, NULL is used. In neither case is a rewrite of the table required.

Adding a column with a volatile DEFAULT or changing the type of an existing column will require the entire table and its indexes to be rewritten. As an exception, when changing the type of an existing column, if the USING clause does not change the column contents and the old type is either binary coercible to the new type or an unconstrained domain over the new type, a table rewrite is not needed. However, indexes must always be rebuilt unless the system can verify that the new index would be logically equivalent to the existing one. For example, if the collation for a column has been changed, an index rebuild is always required because the new sort order might be different. However, in the absence of a collation change, a column can be changed from text to varchar (or vice versa) without rebuilding the indexes because these data types sort identically. Table and/or index rebuilds may take a significant amount of time for a large table; and will temporarily require as much as double the disk space.

Adding a CHECK or NOT NULL constraint requires scanning the table to verify that existing rows meet the constraint, but does not require a table rewrite.

Similarly, when attaching a new partition it may be scanned to verify that existing rows meet the partition constraint.

The main reason for providing the option to specify multiple changes in a single ALTER TABLE is that multiple table scans or rewrites can thereby be combined into a single pass over the table.

Scanning a large table to verify a new foreign key or check constraint can take a long time, and other updates to the table are locked out until the ALTER TABLE ADD CONSTRAINT command is

committed. The main purpose of the `NOT VALID` constraint option is to reduce the impact of adding a constraint on concurrent updates. With `NOT VALID`, the `ADD CONSTRAINT` command does not scan the table and can be committed immediately. After that, a `VALIDATE CONSTRAINT` command can be issued to verify that existing rows satisfy the constraint. The validation step does not need to lock out concurrent updates, since it knows that other transactions will be enforcing the constraint for rows that they insert or update; only pre-existing rows need to be checked. Hence, validation acquires only a `SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE` lock on the table being altered. (If the constraint is a foreign key then a `ROW SHARE` lock is also required on the table referenced by the constraint.) In addition to improving concurrency, it can be useful to use `NOT VALID` and `VALIDATE CONSTRAINT` in cases where the table is known to contain pre-existing violations. Once the constraint is in place, no new violations can be inserted, and the existing problems can be corrected at leisure until `VALIDATE CONSTRAINT` finally succeeds.

The `DROP COLUMN` form does not physically remove the column, but simply makes it invisible to SQL operations. Subsequent insert and update operations in the table will store a null value for the column. Thus, dropping a column is quick but it will not immediately reduce the on-disk size of your table, as the space occupied by the dropped column is not reclaimed. The space will be reclaimed over time as existing rows are updated.

To force immediate reclamation of space occupied by a dropped column, you can execute one of the forms of `ALTER TABLE` that performs a rewrite of the whole table. This results in reconstructing each row with the dropped column replaced by a null value.

The rewriting forms of `ALTER TABLE` are not MVCC-safe. After a table rewrite, the table will appear empty to concurrent transactions, if they are using a snapshot taken before the rewrite occurred. See Section 13.6 for more details.

The `USING` option of `SET DATA TYPE` can actually specify any expression involving the old values of the row; that is, it can refer to other columns as well as the one being converted. This allows very general conversions to be done with the `SET DATA TYPE` syntax. Because of this flexibility, the `USING` expression is not applied to the column's default value (if any); the result might not be a constant expression as required for a default. This means that when there is no implicit or assignment cast from old to new type, `SET DATA TYPE` might fail to convert the default even though a `USING` clause is supplied. In such cases, drop the default with `DROP DEFAULT`, perform the `ALTER TYPE`, and then use `SET DEFAULT` to add a suitable new default. Similar considerations apply to indexes and constraints involving the column.

If a table has any descendant tables, it is not permitted to add, rename, or change the type of a column in the parent table without doing the same to the descendants. This ensures that the descendants always have columns matching the parent. Similarly, a `CHECK` constraint cannot be renamed in the parent without also renaming it in all descendants, so that `CHECK` constraints also match between the parent and its descendants. (That restriction does not apply to index-based constraints, however.) Also, because selecting from the parent also selects from its descendants, a constraint on the parent cannot be marked valid unless it is also marked valid for those descendants. In all of these cases, `ALTER TABLE ONLY` will be rejected.

A recursive `DROP COLUMN` operation will remove a descendant table's column only if the descendant does not inherit that column from any other parents and never had an independent definition of the column. A nonrecursive `DROP COLUMN` (i.e., `ALTER TABLE ONLY . . . DROP COLUMN`) never removes any descendant columns, but instead marks them as independently defined rather than inherited. A nonrecursive `DROP COLUMN` command will fail for a partitioned table, because all partitions of a table must have the same columns as the partitioning root.

The actions for identity columns (`ADD GENERATED`, `SET` etc., `DROP IDENTITY`), as well as the actions `CLUSTER`, `OWNER`, and `TABLESPACE` never recurse to descendant tables; that is, they always act as though `ONLY` were specified. Actions affecting trigger states recurse to partitions of partitioned tables (unless `ONLY` is specified), but never to traditional-inheritance descendants. Adding a constraint recurses only for `CHECK` constraints that are not marked `NO INHERIT`.

Changing any part of a system catalog table is not permitted.

Refer to CREATE TABLE for a further description of valid parameters. Chapter 5 has further information on inheritance.

## Examples

To add a column of type varchar to a table:

```
ALTER TABLE distributors ADD COLUMN address varchar(30);
```

That will cause all existing rows in the table to be filled with null values for the new column.

To add a column with a non-null default:

```
ALTER TABLE measurements
  ADD COLUMN mtime timestamp with time zone DEFAULT now();
```

Existing rows will be filled with the current time as the value of the new column, and then new rows will receive the time of their insertion.

To add a column and fill it with a value different from the default to be used later:

```
ALTER TABLE transactions
  ADD COLUMN status varchar(30) DEFAULT 'old',
  ALTER COLUMN status SET default 'current';
```

Existing rows will be filled with `old`, but then the default for subsequent commands will be `current`. The effects are the same as if the two sub-commands had been issued in separate ALTER TABLE commands.

To drop a column from a table:

```
ALTER TABLE distributors DROP COLUMN address RESTRICT;
```

To change the types of two existing columns in one operation:

```
ALTER TABLE distributors
  ALTER COLUMN address TYPE varchar(80),
  ALTER COLUMN name TYPE varchar(100);
```

To change an integer column containing Unix timestamps to timestamp with time zone via a USING clause:

```
ALTER TABLE foo
  ALTER COLUMN foo_timestamp SET DATA TYPE timestamp with time
  zone
  USING
    timestamp with time zone 'epoch' + foo_timestamp * interval
    '1 second';
```

The same, when the column has a default expression that won't automatically cast to the new data type:

```
ALTER TABLE foo
  ALTER COLUMN foo_timestamp DROP DEFAULT,
```

```
ALTER COLUMN foo_timestamp TYPE timestamp with time zone
USING
    timestamp with time zone 'epoch' + foo_timestamp * interval
'1 second',
ALTER COLUMN foo_timestamp SET DEFAULT now();
```

To rename an existing column:

```
ALTER TABLE distributors RENAME COLUMN address TO city;
```

To rename an existing table:

```
ALTER TABLE distributors RENAME TO suppliers;
```

To rename an existing constraint:

```
ALTER TABLE distributors RENAME CONSTRAINT zipchk TO zip_check;
```

To add a not-null constraint to a column:

```
ALTER TABLE distributors ALTER COLUMN street SET NOT NULL;
```

To remove a not-null constraint from a column:

```
ALTER TABLE distributors ALTER COLUMN street DROP NOT NULL;
```

To add a check constraint to a table and all its children:

```
ALTER TABLE distributors ADD CONSTRAINT zipchk CHECK
(char_length(zipcode) = 5);
```

To add a check constraint only to a table and not to its children:

```
ALTER TABLE distributors ADD CONSTRAINT zipchk CHECK
(char_length(zipcode) = 5) NO INHERIT;
```

(The check constraint will not be inherited by future children, either.)

To remove a check constraint from a table and all its children:

```
ALTER TABLE distributors DROP CONSTRAINT zipchk;
```

To remove a check constraint from one table only:

```
ALTER TABLE ONLY distributors DROP CONSTRAINT zipchk;
```

(The check constraint remains in place for any child tables.)

To add a foreign key constraint to a table:

```
ALTER TABLE distributors ADD CONSTRAINT distfk FOREIGN KEY
(address) REFERENCES addresses (address);
```

To add a foreign key constraint to a table with the least impact on other work:

```
ALTER TABLE distributors ADD CONSTRAINT distfk FOREIGN KEY
(address) REFERENCES addresses (address) NOT VALID;
ALTER TABLE distributors VALIDATE CONSTRAINT distfk;
```

To add a (multicolumn) unique constraint to a table:

```
ALTER TABLE distributors ADD CONSTRAINT dist_id_zipcode_key UNIQUE
(dist_id, zipcode);
```

To add an automatically named primary key constraint to a table, noting that a table can only ever have one primary key:

```
ALTER TABLE distributors ADD PRIMARY KEY (dist_id);
```

To move a table to a different tablespace:

```
ALTER TABLE distributors SET TABLESPACE fasttablespace;
```

To move a table to a different schema:

```
ALTER TABLE myschema.distributors SET SCHEMA yourschema;
```

To recreate a primary key constraint, without blocking updates while the index is rebuilt:

```
CREATE UNIQUE INDEX CONCURRENTLY dist_id_temp_idx ON distributors
(dist_id);
ALTER TABLE distributors DROP CONSTRAINT distributors_pkey,
ADD CONSTRAINT distributors_pkey PRIMARY KEY USING INDEX
dist_id_temp_idx;
```

To attach a partition to a range-partitioned table:

```
ALTER TABLE measurement
ATTACH PARTITION measurement_y2016m07 FOR VALUES FROM
('2016-07-01') TO ('2016-08-01');
```

To attach a partition to a list-partitioned table:

```
ALTER TABLE cities
ATTACH PARTITION cities_ab FOR VALUES IN ('a', 'b');
```

To attach a partition to a hash-partitioned table:

```
ALTER TABLE orders
ATTACH PARTITION orders_p4 FOR VALUES WITH (MODULUS 4,
REMAINDER 3);
```

To attach a default partition to a partitioned table:



```
ALTER TABLE cities
    ATTACH PARTITION cities_partdef DEFAULT;
```

To detach a partition from a partitioned table:

```
ALTER TABLE measurement
    DETACH PARTITION measurement_y2015m12;
```

## Compatibility

The forms `ADD` (without `USING INDEX`), `DROP [COLUMN]`, `DROP IDENTITY`, `RESTART`, `SET DEFAULT`, `SET DATA TYPE` (without `USING`), `SET GENERATED`, and `SET sequence_option` conform with the SQL standard. The other forms are PostgreSQL extensions of the SQL standard. Also, the ability to specify more than one manipulation in a single `ALTER TABLE` command is an extension.

`ALTER TABLE DROP COLUMN` can be used to drop the only column of a table, leaving a zero-column table. This is an extension of SQL, which disallows zero-column tables.

## See Also

`CREATE TABLE`

---

# ALTER TABLESPACE

ALTER TABLESPACE — change the definition of a tablespace

## Synopsis

```
ALTER TABLESPACE name RENAME TO new_name
ALTER TABLESPACE name OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE |
    CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER }
ALTER TABLESPACE name SET ( tablespace_option = value [, ... ] )
ALTER TABLESPACE name RESET ( tablespace_option [, ... ] )
```

## Description

ALTER TABLESPACE can be used to change the definition of a tablespace.

You must own the tablespace to change the definition of a tablespace. To alter the owner, you must also be able to SET ROLE to the new owning role. (Note that superusers have these privileges automatically.)

## Parameters

*name*

The name of an existing tablespace.

*new\_name*

The new name of the tablespace. The new name cannot begin with `pg_`, as such names are reserved for system tablespaces.

*new\_owner*

The new owner of the tablespace.

*tablespace\_option*

A tablespace parameter to be set or reset. Currently, the only available parameters are `seq_page_cost`, `random_page_cost`, `effective_io_concurrency` and `maintenance_io_concurrency`. Setting these values for a particular tablespace will override the planner's usual estimate of the cost of reading pages from tables in that tablespace, and the executor's prefetching behavior, as established by the configuration parameters of the same name (see `seq_page_cost`, `random_page_cost`, `effective_io_concurrency`, `maintenance_io_concurrency`). This may be useful if one tablespace is located on a disk which is faster or slower than the remainder of the I/O subsystem.

## Examples

Rename tablespace `index_space` to `fast_raid`:

```
ALTER TABLESPACE index_space RENAME TO fast_raid;
```

Change the owner of tablespace `index_space`:

```
ALTER TABLESPACE index_space OWNER TO mary;
```

## Compatibility

There is no `ALTER TABLESPACE` statement in the SQL standard.

## See Also

`CREATE TABLESPACE`, `DROP TABLESPACE`

---

# ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION

ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION — change the definition of a text search configuration

## Synopsis

```
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION name
    ADD MAPPING FOR token_type [, ... ] WITH dictionary_name
    [, ... ]
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION name
    ALTER MAPPING FOR token_type [, ... ] WITH dictionary_name
    [, ... ]
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION name
    ALTER MAPPING REPLACE old_dictionary WITH new_dictionary
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION name
    ALTER MAPPING FOR token_type [, ... ] REPLACE old_dictionary
    WITH new_dictionary
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION name
    DROP MAPPING [ IF EXISTS ] FOR token_type [, ... ]
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION name RENAME TO new_name
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION name OWNER TO { new_owner |
    CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER }
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION name SET SCHEMA new_schema
```

## Description

ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION changes the definition of a text search configuration. You can modify its mappings from token types to dictionaries, or change the configuration's name or owner.

You must be the owner of the configuration to use ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION.

## Parameters

*name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing text search configuration.

*token\_type*

The name of a token type that is emitted by the configuration's parser.

*dictionary\_name*

The name of a text search dictionary to be consulted for the specified token type(s). If multiple dictionaries are listed, they are consulted in the specified order.

*old\_dictionary*

The name of a text search dictionary to be replaced in the mapping.

*new\_dictionary*

The name of a text search dictionary to be substituted for *old\_dictionary*.

*new\_name*

The new name of the text search configuration.

*new\_owner*

The new owner of the text search configuration.

*new\_schema*

The new schema for the text search configuration.

The `ADD MAPPING FOR` form installs a list of dictionaries to be consulted for the specified token type(s); it is an error if there is already a mapping for any of the token types. The `ALTER MAPPING FOR` form does the same, but first removing any existing mapping for those token types. The `ALTER MAPPING REPLACE` forms substitute *new\_dictionary* for *old\_dictionary* anywhere the latter appears. This is done for only the specified token types when `FOR` appears, or for all mappings of the configuration when it doesn't. The `DROP MAPPING` form removes all dictionaries for the specified token type(s), causing tokens of those types to be ignored by the text search configuration. It is an error if there is no mapping for the token types, unless `IF EXISTS` appears.

## Examples

The following example replaces the `english` dictionary with the `swedish` dictionary anywhere that `english` is used within `my_config`.

```
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION my_config
ALTER MAPPING REPLACE english WITH swedish;
```

## Compatibility

There is no `ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION` statement in the SQL standard.

## See Also

`CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION`, `DROP TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION`

---

# ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY

ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY — change the definition of a text search dictionary

## Synopsis

```
ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY name (  
    option [ = value ] [, ... ]  
)  
ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY name RENAME TO new_name  
ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY name OWNER TO { new_owner |  
    CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER }  
ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY name SET SCHEMA new_schema
```

## Description

ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY changes the definition of a text search dictionary. You can change the dictionary's template-specific options, or change the dictionary's name or owner.

You must be the owner of the dictionary to use ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY.

## Parameters

*name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing text search dictionary.

*option*

The name of a template-specific option to be set for this dictionary.

*value*

The new value to use for a template-specific option. If the equal sign and value are omitted, then any previous setting for the option is removed from the dictionary, allowing the default to be used.

*new\_name*

The new name of the text search dictionary.

*new\_owner*

The new owner of the text search dictionary.

*new\_schema*

The new schema for the text search dictionary.

Template-specific options can appear in any order.

## Examples

The following example command changes the stopwords list for a Snowball-based dictionary. Other parameters remain unchanged.

```
ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY my_dict ( StopWords = newrussian );
```

The following example command changes the language option to `dutch`, and removes the stopword option entirely.

```
ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY my_dict ( language = dutch,  
StopWords );
```

The following example command “updates” the dictionary's definition without actually changing anything.

```
ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY my_dict ( dummy );
```

(The reason this works is that the option removal code doesn't complain if there is no such option.) This trick is useful when changing configuration files for the dictionary: the `ALTER` will force existing database sessions to re-read the configuration files, which otherwise they would never do if they had read them earlier.

## Compatibility

There is no `ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY` statement in the SQL standard.

## See Also

`CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY`, `DROP TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY`

---

# ALTER TEXT SEARCH PARSER

ALTER TEXT SEARCH PARSER — change the definition of a text search parser

## Synopsis

```
ALTER TEXT SEARCH PARSER name RENAME TO new_name
ALTER TEXT SEARCH PARSER name SET SCHEMA new_schema
```

## Description

ALTER TEXT SEARCH PARSER changes the definition of a text search parser. Currently, the only supported functionality is to change the parser's name.

You must be a superuser to use ALTER TEXT SEARCH PARSER.

## Parameters

*name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing text search parser.

*new\_name*

The new name of the text search parser.

*new\_schema*

The new schema for the text search parser.

## Compatibility

There is no ALTER TEXT SEARCH PARSER statement in the SQL standard.

## See Also

CREATE TEXT SEARCH PARSER, DROP TEXT SEARCH PARSER



---

# ALTER TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE

ALTER TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE — change the definition of a text search template

## Synopsis

```
ALTER TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE name RENAME TO new_name
ALTER TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE name SET SCHEMA new_schema
```

## Description

ALTER TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE changes the definition of a text search template. Currently, the only supported functionality is to change the template's name.

You must be a superuser to use ALTER TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE.

## Parameters

*name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing text search template.

*new\_name*

The new name of the text search template.

*new\_schema*

The new schema for the text search template.

## Compatibility

There is no ALTER TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE statement in the SQL standard.

## See Also

CREATE TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE, DROP TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE

---

# ALTER TRIGGER

ALTER TRIGGER — change the definition of a trigger

## Synopsis

```
ALTER TRIGGER name ON table_name RENAME TO new_name
ALTER TRIGGER name ON table_name [ NO ] DEPENDS ON
EXTENSION extension_name
```

## Description

ALTER TRIGGER changes properties of an existing trigger.

The RENAME clause changes the name of the given trigger without otherwise changing the trigger definition. If the table that the trigger is on is a partitioned table, then corresponding clone triggers in the partitions are renamed too.

The DEPENDS ON EXTENSION clause marks the trigger as dependent on an extension, such that if the extension is dropped, the trigger will automatically be dropped as well.

You must own the table on which the trigger acts to be allowed to change its properties.

## Parameters

*name*

The name of an existing trigger to alter.

*table\_name*

The name of the table on which this trigger acts.

*new\_name*

The new name for the trigger.

*extension\_name*

The name of the extension that the trigger is to depend on (or no longer dependent on, if NO is specified). A trigger that's marked as dependent on an extension is automatically dropped when the extension is dropped.

## Notes

The ability to temporarily enable or disable a trigger is provided by ALTER TABLE, not by ALTER TRIGGER, because ALTER TRIGGER has no convenient way to express the option of enabling or disabling all of a table's triggers at once.

## Examples

To rename an existing trigger:

```
ALTER TRIGGER emp_stamp ON emp RENAME TO emp_track_chgs;
```

To mark a trigger as being dependent on an extension:

```
ALTER TRIGGER emp_stamp ON emp DEPENDS ON EXTENSION emplib;
```

## Compatibility

ALTER TRIGGER is a PostgreSQL extension of the SQL standard.

## See Also

ALTER TABLE

---

# ALTER TYPE

ALTER TYPE — change the definition of a type

## Synopsis

```
ALTER TYPE name OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER  
| SESSION_USER }  
ALTER TYPE name RENAME TO new_name  
ALTER TYPE name SET SCHEMA new_schema  
ALTER TYPE name RENAME ATTRIBUTE attribute_name  
TO new_attribute_name [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]  
ALTER TYPE name action [, ... ]  
ALTER TYPE name ADD VALUE [ IF NOT EXISTS ] new_enum_value  
[ { BEFORE | AFTER } neighbor_enum_value ]  
ALTER TYPE name RENAME VALUE existing_enum_value TO new_enum_value  
ALTER TYPE name SET ( property = value [, ... ] )
```

where *action* is one of:

```
    ADD ATTRIBUTE attribute_name data_type [ COLLATE collation ]  
[ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]  
    DROP ATTRIBUTE [ IF EXISTS ] attribute_name [ CASCADE |  
RESTRICT ]  
    ALTER ATTRIBUTE attribute_name [ SET DATA ] TYPE data_type  
[ COLLATE collation ] [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

## Description

ALTER TYPE changes the definition of an existing type. There are several subforms:

### OWNER

This form changes the owner of the type.

### RENAME

This form changes the name of the type.

### SET SCHEMA

This form moves the type into another schema.

### RENAME ATTRIBUTE

This form is only usable with composite types. It changes the name of an individual attribute of the type.

### ADD ATTRIBUTE

This form adds a new attribute to a composite type, using the same syntax as CREATE TYPE.

### DROP ATTRIBUTE [ IF EXISTS ]

This form drops an attribute from a composite type. If IF EXISTS is specified and the attribute does not exist, no error is thrown. In this case a notice is issued instead.

ALTER ATTRIBUTE ... SET DATA TYPE

This form changes the type of an attribute of a composite type.

ADD VALUE [ IF NOT EXISTS ] [ BEFORE | AFTER ]

This form adds a new value to an enum type. The new value's place in the enum's ordering can be specified as being BEFORE or AFTER one of the existing values. Otherwise, the new item is added at the end of the list of values.

If IF NOT EXISTS is specified, it is not an error if the type already contains the new value: a notice is issued but no other action is taken. Otherwise, an error will occur if the new value is already present.

RENAME VALUE

This form renames a value of an enum type. The value's place in the enum's ordering is not affected. An error will occur if the specified value is not present or the new name is already present.

SET ( *property* = *value* [, ... ] )

This form is only applicable to base types. It allows adjustment of a subset of the base-type properties that can be set in CREATE TYPE. Specifically, these properties can be changed:

- RECEIVE can be set to the name of a binary input function, or NONE to remove the type's binary input function. Using this option requires superuser privilege.
- SEND can be set to the name of a binary output function, or NONE to remove the type's binary output function. Using this option requires superuser privilege.
- TYPMOD\_IN can be set to the name of a type modifier input function, or NONE to remove the type's type modifier input function. Using this option requires superuser privilege.
- TYPMOD\_OUT can be set to the name of a type modifier output function, or NONE to remove the type's type modifier output function. Using this option requires superuser privilege.
- ANALYZE can be set to the name of a type-specific statistics collection function, or NONE to remove the type's statistics collection function. Using this option requires superuser privilege.
- SUBSCRIPT can be set to the name of a type-specific subscripting handler function, or NONE to remove the type's subscripting handler function. Using this option requires superuser privilege.
- STORAGE can be set to plain, extended, external, or main (see Section 73.2 for more information about what these mean). However, changing from plain to another setting requires superuser privilege (because it requires that the type's C functions all be TOAST-ready), and changing to plain from another setting is not allowed at all (since the type may already have TOASTed values present in the database). Note that changing this option doesn't by itself change any stored data, it just sets the default TOAST strategy to be used for table columns created in the future. See ALTER TABLE to change the TOAST strategy for existing table columns.

See CREATE TYPE for more details about these type properties. Note that where appropriate, a change in these properties for a base type will be propagated automatically to domains based on that type.

The ADD ATTRIBUTE, DROP ATTRIBUTE, and ALTER ATTRIBUTE actions can be combined into a list of multiple alterations to apply in parallel. For example, it is possible to add several attributes and/or alter the type of several attributes in a single command.

You must own the type to use ALTER TYPE. To change the schema of a type, you must also have CREATE privilege on the new schema. To alter the owner, you must be able to SET ROLE to the

new owning role, and that role must have `CREATE` privilege on the type's schema. (These restrictions enforce that altering the owner doesn't do anything you couldn't do by dropping and recreating the type. However, a superuser can alter ownership of any type anyway.) To add an attribute or alter an attribute type, you must also have `USAGE` privilege on the attribute's data type.

## Parameters

*name*

The name (possibly schema-qualified) of an existing type to alter.

*new\_name*

The new name for the type.

*new\_owner*

The user name of the new owner of the type.

*new\_schema*

The new schema for the type.

*attribute\_name*

The name of the attribute to add, alter, or drop.

*new\_attribute\_name*

The new name of the attribute to be renamed.

*data\_type*

The data type of the attribute to add, or the new type of the attribute to alter.

*new\_enum\_value*

The new value to be added to an enum type's list of values, or the new name to be given to an existing value. Like all enum literals, it needs to be quoted.

*neighbor\_enum\_value*

The existing enum value that the new value should be added immediately before or after in the enum type's sort ordering. Like all enum literals, it needs to be quoted.

*existing\_enum\_value*

The existing enum value that should be renamed. Like all enum literals, it needs to be quoted.

*property*

The name of a base-type property to be modified; see above for possible values.

`CASCADE`

Automatically propagate the operation to typed tables of the type being altered, and their descendants.

`RESTRICT`

Refuse the operation if the type being altered is the type of a typed table. This is the default.

## Notes

If `ALTER TYPE ... ADD VALUE` (the form that adds a new value to an enum type) is executed inside a transaction block, the new value cannot be used until after the transaction has been committed.

Comparisons involving an added enum value will sometimes be slower than comparisons involving only original members of the enum type. This will usually only occur if `BEFORE` or `AFTER` is used to set the new value's sort position somewhere other than at the end of the list. However, sometimes it will happen even though the new value is added at the end (this occurs if the OID counter “wrapped around” since the original creation of the enum type). The slowdown is usually insignificant; but if it matters, optimal performance can be regained by dropping and recreating the enum type, or by dumping and restoring the database.

## Examples

To rename a data type:

```
ALTER TYPE electronic_mail RENAME TO email;
```

To change the owner of the type email to joe:

```
ALTER TYPE email OWNER TO joe;
```

To change the schema of the type email to customers:

```
ALTER TYPE email SET SCHEMA customers;
```

To add a new attribute to a composite type:

```
ALTER TYPE compfoo ADD ATTRIBUTE f3 int;
```

To add a new value to an enum type in a particular sort position:

```
ALTER TYPE colors ADD VALUE 'orange' AFTER 'red';
```

To rename an enum value:

```
ALTER TYPE colors RENAME VALUE 'purple' TO 'mauve';
```

To create binary I/O functions for an existing base type:

```
CREATE FUNCTION mytypesend(mytype) RETURNS bytea ...;
CREATE FUNCTION mytyperecv(internal, oid, integer) RETURNS
mytype ...;
ALTER TYPE mytype SET (
    SEND = mytypesend,
    RECEIVE = mytyperecv
);
```

## Compatibility

The variants to add and drop attributes are part of the SQL standard; the other variants are PostgreSQL extensions.

## See Also

CREATE TYPE, DROP TYPE



---

# ALTER USER

ALTER USER — change a database role

## Synopsis

```
ALTER USER role_specification [ WITH ] option [ ... ]
```

where *option* can be:

```
SUPERUSER | NOSUPERUSER
|
CREATEDB | NOCREATEDB
|
CREATEROLE | NOCREATEROLE
|
INHERIT | NOINHERIT
|
LOGIN | NOLOGIN
|
REPLICATION | NOREPLICATION
|
BYPASSRLS | NOBYPASSRLS
|
CONNECTION LIMIT conlimit
|
[ ENCRYPTED ] PASSWORD 'password' | PASSWORD NULL
|
VALID UNTIL 'timestamp'
```

```
ALTER USER name RENAME TO new_name
```

```
ALTER USER { role_specification | ALL } [ IN DATABASE database_name
] SET configuration_parameter { TO | = } { value | DEFAULT }
ALTER USER { role_specification | ALL } [ IN DATABASE database_name
] SET configuration_parameter FROM CURRENT
ALTER USER { role_specification | ALL } [ IN DATABASE database_name
] RESET configuration_parameter
ALTER USER { role_specification | ALL } [ IN DATABASE database_name
] RESET ALL
```

where *role\_specification* can be:

```
role_name
|
CURRENT_ROLE
|
CURRENT_USER
|
SESSION_USER
```

## Description

ALTER USER is now an alias for ALTER ROLE.

## Compatibility

The ALTER USER statement is a PostgreSQL extension. The SQL standard leaves the definition of users to the implementation.

## See Also

ALTER ROLE

---

# ALTER USER MAPPING

ALTER USER MAPPING — change the definition of a user mapping

## Synopsis

```
ALTER USER MAPPING FOR { user_name | USER | CURRENT_ROLE |  
CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER | PUBLIC }  
SERVER server_name  
OPTIONS ( [ ADD | SET | DROP ] option ['value'] [, ... ] )
```

## Description

ALTER USER MAPPING changes the definition of a user mapping.

The owner of a foreign server can alter user mappings for that server for any user. Also, a user can alter a user mapping for their own user name if USAGE privilege on the server has been granted to the user.

## Parameters

*user\_name*

User name of the mapping. CURRENT\_ROLE, CURRENT\_USER, and USER match the name of the current user. PUBLIC is used to match all present and future user names in the system.

*server\_name*

Server name of the user mapping.

OPTIONS ( [ ADD | SET | DROP ] *option* ['*value*'] [, ... ] )

Change options for the user mapping. The new options override any previously specified options. ADD, SET, and DROP specify the action to be performed. ADD is assumed if no operation is explicitly specified. Option names must be unique; options are also validated by the server's foreign-data wrapper.

## Examples

Change the password for user mapping bob, server foo:

```
ALTER USER MAPPING FOR bob SERVER foo OPTIONS (SET password  
'public');
```

## Compatibility

ALTER USER MAPPING conforms to ISO/IEC 9075-9 (SQL/MED). There is a subtle syntax issue: The standard omits the FOR key word. Since both CREATE USER MAPPING and DROP USER MAPPING use FOR in analogous positions, and IBM DB2 (being the other major SQL/MED implementation) also requires it for ALTER USER MAPPING, PostgreSQL diverges from the standard here in the interest of consistency and interoperability.

## See Also

CREATE USER MAPPING, DROP USER MAPPING

---

# ALTER VIEW

ALTER VIEW — change the definition of a view

## Synopsis

```
ALTER VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] name ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name SET
    DEFAULT expression
ALTER VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] name ALTER [ COLUMN ] column_name DROP
    DEFAULT
ALTER VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] name OWNER TO { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE |
    CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER }
ALTER VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] name RENAME [ COLUMN ] column_name
    TO new_column_name
ALTER VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] name RENAME TO new_name
ALTER VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] name SET SCHEMA new_schema
ALTER VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] name SET ( view_option_name
    [= view_option_value] [, ... ] )
ALTER VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] name RESET ( view_option_name [, ... ] )
```

## Description

ALTER VIEW changes various auxiliary properties of a view. (If you want to modify the view's defining query, use CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW.)

You must own the view to use ALTER VIEW. To change a view's schema, you must also have CREATE privilege on the new schema. To alter the owner, you must be able to SET ROLE to the new owning role, and that role must have CREATE privilege on the view's schema. (These restrictions enforce that altering the owner doesn't do anything you couldn't do by dropping and recreating the view. However, a superuser can alter ownership of any view anyway.)

## Parameters

*name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing view.

*column\_name*

Name of an existing column.

*new\_column\_name*

New name for an existing column.

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the view does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

SET/DROP DEFAULT

These forms set or remove the default value for a column. A view column's default value is substituted into any INSERT or UPDATE command whose target is the view, before applying any rules or triggers for the view. The view's default will therefore take precedence over any default values from underlying relations.

*new\_owner*

The user name of the new owner of the view.

*new\_name*

The new name for the view.

*new\_schema*

The new schema for the view.

```
SET ( view_option_name [= view_option_value] [, ... ] )
RESET ( view_option_name [, ... ] )
```

Sets or resets a view option. Currently supported options are:

`check_option` (enum)

Changes the check option of the view. The value must be `local` or `cascaded`.

`security_barrier` (boolean)

Changes the security-barrier property of the view. The value must be a Boolean value, such as `true` or `false`.

`security_invoker` (boolean)

Changes the security-invoker property of the view. The value must be a Boolean value, such as `true` or `false`.

## Notes

For historical reasons, `ALTER TABLE` can be used with views too; but the only variants of `ALTER TABLE` that are allowed with views are equivalent to the ones shown above.

## Examples

To rename the view `foo` to `bar`:

```
ALTER VIEW foo RENAME TO bar;
```

To attach a default column value to an updatable view:

```
CREATE TABLE base_table (id int, ts timestamptz);
CREATE VIEW a_view AS SELECT * FROM base_table;
ALTER VIEW a_view ALTER COLUMN ts SET DEFAULT now();
INSERT INTO base_table(id) VALUES(1); -- ts will receive a NULL
INSERT INTO a_view(id) VALUES(2); -- ts will receive the current
time
```

## Compatibility

`ALTER VIEW` is a PostgreSQL extension of the SQL standard.

## See Also

`CREATE VIEW`, `DROP VIEW`

---

# ANALYZE

ANALYZE — collect statistics about a database

## Synopsis

```
ANALYZE [ ( option [, ...] ) ] [ table_and_columns [, ...] ]
ANALYZE [ VERBOSE ] [ table_and_columns [, ...] ]
```

where *option* can be one of:

```
VERBOSE [ boolean ]
SKIP_LOCKED [ boolean ]
BUFFER_USAGE_LIMIT size
```

and *table\_and\_columns* is:

```
table_name [ ( column_name [, ...] ) ]
```

## Description

ANALYZE collects statistics about the contents of tables in the database, and stores the results in the `pg_statistic` system catalog. Subsequently, the query planner uses these statistics to help determine the most efficient execution plans for queries.

Without a *table\_and\_columns* list, ANALYZE processes every table and materialized view in the current database that the current user has permission to analyze. With a list, ANALYZE processes only those table(s). It is further possible to give a list of column names for a table, in which case only the statistics for those columns are collected.

When the option list is surrounded by parentheses, the options can be written in any order. The parenthesized syntax was added in PostgreSQL 11; the unparenthesized syntax is deprecated.

## Parameters

VERBOSE

Enables display of progress messages.

SKIP\_LOCKED

Specifies that ANALYZE should not wait for any conflicting locks to be released when beginning work on a relation: if a relation cannot be locked immediately without waiting, the relation is skipped. Note that even with this option, ANALYZE may still block when opening the relation's indexes or when acquiring sample rows from partitions, table inheritance children, and some types of foreign tables. Also, while ANALYZE ordinarily processes all partitions of specified partitioned tables, this option will cause ANALYZE to skip all partitions if there is a conflicting lock on the partitioned table.

BUFFER\_USAGE\_LIMIT

Specifies the *Buffer Access Strategy* ring buffer size for ANALYZE. This size is used to calculate the number of shared buffers which will be reused as part of this strategy. 0 disables use of a `Buffer Access Strategy`. When this option is not specified, ANALYZE uses the value from `vacuum_buffer_usage_limit`. Higher settings can allow ANALYZE to run more quickly, but

having too large a setting may cause too many other useful pages to be evicted from shared buffers. The minimum value is 128 kB and the maximum value is 16 GB.

*boolean*

Specifies whether the selected option should be turned on or off. You can write `TRUE`, `ON`, or `1` to enable the option, and `FALSE`, `OFF`, or `0` to disable it. The *boolean* value can also be omitted, in which case `TRUE` is assumed.

*size*

Specifies an amount of memory in kilobytes. Sizes may also be specified as a string containing the numerical size followed by any one of the following memory units: B (bytes), kB (kilobytes), MB (megabytes), GB (gigabytes), or TB (terabytes).

*table\_name*

The name (possibly schema-qualified) of a specific table to analyze. If omitted, all regular tables, partitioned tables, and materialized views in the current database are analyzed (but not foreign tables). If the specified table is a partitioned table, both the inheritance statistics of the partitioned table as a whole and statistics of the individual partitions are updated.

*column\_name*

The name of a specific column to analyze. Defaults to all columns.

## Outputs

When `VERBOSE` is specified, `ANALYZE` emits progress messages to indicate which table is currently being processed. Various statistics about the tables are printed as well.

## Notes

To analyze a table, one must ordinarily be the table's owner or a superuser. However, database owners are allowed to analyze all tables in their databases, except shared catalogs. (The restriction for shared catalogs means that a true database-wide `ANALYZE` can only be performed by a superuser.) `ANALYZE` will skip over any tables that the calling user does not have permission to analyze.

Foreign tables are analyzed only when explicitly selected. Not all foreign data wrappers support `ANALYZE`. If the table's wrapper does not support `ANALYZE`, the command prints a warning and does nothing.

In the default PostgreSQL configuration, the autovacuum daemon (see Section 25.1.6) takes care of automatic analyzing of tables when they are first loaded with data, and as they change throughout regular operation. When autovacuum is disabled, it is a good idea to run `ANALYZE` periodically, or just after making major changes in the contents of a table. Accurate statistics will help the planner to choose the most appropriate query plan, and thereby improve the speed of query processing. A common strategy for read-mostly databases is to run `VACUUM` and `ANALYZE` once a day during a low-usage time of day. (This will not be sufficient if there is heavy update activity.)

`ANALYZE` requires only a read lock on the target table, so it can run in parallel with other activity on the table.

The statistics collected by `ANALYZE` usually include a list of some of the most common values in each column and a histogram showing the approximate data distribution in each column. One or both of these can be omitted if `ANALYZE` deems them uninteresting (for example, in a unique-key column, there are no common values) or if the column data type does not support the appropriate operators. There is more information about the statistics in Chapter 25.

For large tables, `ANALYZE` takes a random sample of the table contents, rather than examining every row. This allows even very large tables to be analyzed in a small amount of time. Note, however,

that the statistics are only approximate, and will change slightly each time `ANALYZE` is run, even if the actual table contents did not change. This might result in small changes in the planner's estimated costs shown by `EXPLAIN`. In rare situations, this non-determinism will cause the planner's choices of query plans to change after `ANALYZE` is run. To avoid this, raise the amount of statistics collected by `ANALYZE`, as described below.

The extent of analysis can be controlled by adjusting the `default_statistics_target` configuration variable, or on a column-by-column basis by setting the per-column statistics target with `ALTER TABLE ... ALTER COLUMN ... SET STATISTICS`. The target value sets the maximum number of entries in the most-common-value list and the maximum number of bins in the histogram. The default target value is 100, but this can be adjusted up or down to trade off accuracy of planner estimates against the time taken for `ANALYZE` and the amount of space occupied in `pg_statistic`. In particular, setting the statistics target to zero disables collection of statistics for that column. It might be useful to do that for columns that are never used as part of the `WHERE`, `GROUP BY`, or `ORDER BY` clauses of queries, since the planner will have no use for statistics on such columns.

The largest statistics target among the columns being analyzed determines the number of table rows sampled to prepare the statistics. Increasing the target causes a proportional increase in the time and space needed to do `ANALYZE`.

One of the values estimated by `ANALYZE` is the number of distinct values that appear in each column. Because only a subset of the rows are examined, this estimate can sometimes be quite inaccurate, even with the largest possible statistics target. If this inaccuracy leads to bad query plans, a more accurate value can be determined manually and then installed with `ALTER TABLE ... ALTER COLUMN ... SET (n_distinct = ...)`.

If the table being analyzed has inheritance children, `ANALYZE` gathers two sets of statistics: one on the rows of the parent table only, and a second including rows of both the parent table and all of its children. This second set of statistics is needed when planning queries that process the inheritance tree as a whole. The child tables themselves are not individually analyzed in this case. The autovacuum daemon, however, will only consider inserts or updates on the parent table itself when deciding whether to trigger an automatic analyze for that table. If that table is rarely inserted into or updated, the inheritance statistics will not be up to date unless you run `ANALYZE` manually.

For partitioned tables, `ANALYZE` gathers statistics by sampling rows from all partitions; in addition, it will recurse into each partition and update its statistics. Each leaf partition is analyzed only once, even with multi-level partitioning. No statistics are collected for only the parent table (without data from its partitions), because with partitioning it's guaranteed to be empty.

The autovacuum daemon does not process partitioned tables, nor does it process inheritance parents if only the children are ever modified. It is usually necessary to periodically run a manual `ANALYZE` to keep the statistics of the table hierarchy up to date.

If any child tables or partitions are foreign tables whose foreign data wrappers do not support `ANALYZE`, those tables are ignored while gathering inheritance statistics.

If the table being analyzed is completely empty, `ANALYZE` will not record new statistics for that table. Any existing statistics will be retained.

Each backend running `ANALYZE` will report its progress in the `pg_stat_progress_analyze` view. See Section 28.4.1 for details.

## Compatibility

There is no `ANALYZE` statement in the SQL standard.

## See Also

`VACUUM`, `vacuumdb`, Section 20.4.4, Section 25.1.6, Section 28.4.1

---

# BEGIN

BEGIN — start a transaction block

## Synopsis

```
BEGIN [ WORK | TRANSACTION ] [ transaction_mode [, ...] ]
```

where *transaction\_mode* is one of:

```
ISOLATION LEVEL { SERIALIZABLE | REPEATABLE READ | READ  
COMMITTED | READ UNCOMMITTED }  
READ WRITE | READ ONLY  
[ NOT ] DEFERRABLE
```

## Description

BEGIN initiates a transaction block, that is, all statements after a BEGIN command will be executed in a single transaction until an explicit COMMIT or ROLLBACK is given. By default (without BEGIN), PostgreSQL executes transactions in “autocommit” mode, that is, each statement is executed in its own transaction and a commit is implicitly performed at the end of the statement (if execution was successful, otherwise a rollback is done).

Statements are executed more quickly in a transaction block, because transaction start/commit requires significant CPU and disk activity. Execution of multiple statements inside a transaction is also useful to ensure consistency when making several related changes: other sessions will be unable to see the intermediate states wherein not all the related updates have been done.

If the isolation level, read/write mode, or deferrable mode is specified, the new transaction has those characteristics, as if SET TRANSACTION was executed.

## Parameters

WORK  
TRANSACTION

Optional key words. They have no effect.

Refer to SET TRANSACTION for information on the meaning of the other parameters to this statement.

## Notes

START TRANSACTION has the same functionality as BEGIN.

Use COMMIT or ROLLBACK to terminate a transaction block.

Issuing BEGIN when already inside a transaction block will provoke a warning message. The state of the transaction is not affected. To nest transactions within a transaction block, use savepoints (see SAVEPOINT).

For reasons of backwards compatibility, the commas between successive *transaction\_modes* can be omitted.



## Examples

To begin a transaction block:

```
BEGIN;
```

## Compatibility

BEGIN is a PostgreSQL language extension. It is equivalent to the SQL-standard command `START TRANSACTION`, whose reference page contains additional compatibility information.

The `DEFERRABLE transaction_mode` is a PostgreSQL language extension.

Incidentally, the `BEGIN` key word is used for a different purpose in embedded SQL. You are advised to be careful about the transaction semantics when porting database applications.

## See Also

COMMIT, ROLLBACK, START TRANSACTION, SAVEPOINT

---

# CALL

CALL — invoke a procedure

## Synopsis

```
CALL name ( [ argument ] [ , ... ] )
```

## Description

CALL executes a procedure.

If the procedure has any output parameters, then a result row will be returned, containing the values of those parameters.

## Parameters

*name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the procedure.

*argument*

An argument expression for the procedure call.

Arguments can include parameter names, using the syntax *name* => *value*. This works the same as in ordinary function calls; see Section 4.3 for details.

Arguments must be supplied for all procedure parameters that lack defaults, including OUT parameters. However, arguments matching OUT parameters are not evaluated, so it's customary to just write NULL for them. (Writing something else for an OUT parameter might cause compatibility problems with future PostgreSQL versions.)

## Notes

The user must have EXECUTE privilege on the procedure in order to be allowed to invoke it.

To call a function (not a procedure), use SELECT instead.

If CALL is executed in a transaction block, then the called procedure cannot execute transaction control statements. Transaction control statements are only allowed if CALL is executed in its own transaction.

PL/pgSQL handles output parameters in CALL commands differently; see Section 43.6.3.

## Examples

```
CALL do_db_maintenance();
```

## Compatibility

CALL conforms to the SQL standard, except for the handling of output parameters. The standard says that users should write variables to receive the values of output parameters.

## See Also

CREATE PROCEDURE

---

# CHECKPOINT

CHECKPOINT — force a write-ahead log checkpoint

## Synopsis

CHECKPOINT

## Description

A checkpoint is a point in the write-ahead log sequence at which all data files have been updated to reflect the information in the log. All data files will be flushed to disk. Refer to Section 30.5 for more details about what happens during a checkpoint.

The CHECKPOINT command forces an immediate checkpoint when the command is issued, without waiting for a regular checkpoint scheduled by the system (controlled by the settings in Section 20.5.2). CHECKPOINT is not intended for use during normal operation.

If executed during recovery, the CHECKPOINT command will force a restartpoint (see Section 30.5) rather than writing a new checkpoint.

Only superusers or users with the privileges of the `pg_checkpoint` role can call CHECKPOINT.

## Compatibility

The CHECKPOINT command is a PostgreSQL language extension.

---

# CLOSE

CLOSE — close a cursor

## Synopsis

```
CLOSE { name | ALL }
```

## Description

CLOSE frees the resources associated with an open cursor. After the cursor is closed, no subsequent operations are allowed on it. A cursor should be closed when it is no longer needed.

Every non-holdable open cursor is implicitly closed when a transaction is terminated by COMMIT or ROLLBACK. A holdable cursor is implicitly closed if the transaction that created it aborts via ROLLBACK. If the creating transaction successfully commits, the holdable cursor remains open until an explicit CLOSE is executed, or the client disconnects.

## Parameters

*name*

The name of an open cursor to close.

ALL

Close all open cursors.

## Notes

PostgreSQL does not have an explicit OPEN cursor statement; a cursor is considered open when it is declared. Use the DECLARE statement to declare a cursor.

You can see all available cursors by querying the `pg_cursors` system view.

If a cursor is closed after a savepoint which is later rolled back, the CLOSE is not rolled back; that is, the cursor remains closed.

## Examples

Close the cursor `liahona`:

```
CLOSE liahona;
```

## Compatibility

CLOSE is fully conforming with the SQL standard. CLOSE ALL is a PostgreSQL extension.

## See Also

DECLARE, FETCH, MOVE

---

# CLUSTER

CLUSTER — cluster a table according to an index

## Synopsis

```
CLUSTER [VERBOSE] table_name [ USING index_name ]  
CLUSTER ( option [, ...] ) table_name [ USING index_name ]  
CLUSTER [VERBOSE]
```

where *option* can be one of:

```
VERBOSE [ boolean ]
```

## Description

CLUSTER instructs PostgreSQL to cluster the table specified by *table\_name* based on the index specified by *index\_name*. The index must already have been defined on *table\_name*.

When a table is clustered, it is physically reordered based on the index information. Clustering is a one-time operation: when the table is subsequently updated, the changes are not clustered. That is, no attempt is made to store new or updated rows according to their index order. (If one wishes, one can periodically recluster by issuing the command again. Also, setting the table's `fillfactor` storage parameter to less than 100% can aid in preserving cluster ordering during updates, since updated rows are kept on the same page if enough space is available there.)

When a table is clustered, PostgreSQL remembers which index it was clustered by. The form `CLUSTER table_name` reclusters the table using the same index as before. You can also use the `CLUSTER` or `SET WITHOUT CLUSTER` forms of `ALTER TABLE` to set the index to be used for future cluster operations, or to clear any previous setting.

CLUSTER without a *table\_name* reclusters all the previously-clustered tables in the current database that the calling user owns, or all such tables if called by a superuser. This form of CLUSTER cannot be executed inside a transaction block.

When a table is being clustered, an `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock is acquired on it. This prevents any other database operations (both reads and writes) from operating on the table until the CLUSTER is finished.

## Parameters

*table\_name*

The name (possibly schema-qualified) of a table.

*index\_name*

The name of an index.

VERBOSE

Prints a progress report as each table is clustered.

*boolean*

Specifies whether the selected option should be turned on or off. You can write `TRUE`, `ON`, or `1` to enable the option, and `FALSE`, `OFF`, or `0` to disable it. The *boolean* value can also be omitted, in which case `TRUE` is assumed.

## Notes

In cases where you are accessing single rows randomly within a table, the actual order of the data in the table is unimportant. However, if you tend to access some data more than others, and there is an index that groups them together, you will benefit from using `CLUSTER`. If you are requesting a range of indexed values from a table, or a single indexed value that has multiple rows that match, `CLUSTER` will help because once the index identifies the table page for the first row that matches, all other rows that match are probably already on the same table page, and so you save disk accesses and speed up the query.

`CLUSTER` can re-sort the table using either an index scan on the specified index, or (if the index is a b-tree) a sequential scan followed by sorting. It will attempt to choose the method that will be faster, based on planner cost parameters and available statistical information.

When an index scan is used, a temporary copy of the table is created that contains the table data in the index order. Temporary copies of each index on the table are created as well. Therefore, you need free space on disk at least equal to the sum of the table size and the index sizes.

When a sequential scan and sort is used, a temporary sort file is also created, so that the peak temporary space requirement is as much as double the table size, plus the index sizes. This method is often faster than the index scan method, but if the disk space requirement is intolerable, you can disable this choice by temporarily setting `enable_sort` to `off`.

It is advisable to set `maintenance_work_mem` to a reasonably large value (but not more than the amount of RAM you can dedicate to the `CLUSTER` operation) before clustering.

Because the planner records statistics about the ordering of tables, it is advisable to run `ANALYZE` on the newly clustered table. Otherwise, the planner might make poor choices of query plans.

Because `CLUSTER` remembers which indexes are clustered, one can cluster the tables one wants clustered manually the first time, then set up a periodic maintenance script that executes `CLUSTER` without any parameters, so that the desired tables are periodically reclustered.

Each backend running `CLUSTER` will report its progress in the `pg_stat_progress_cluster` view. See Section 28.4.2 for details.

Clustering a partitioned table clusters each of its partitions using the partition of the specified partitioned index. When clustering a partitioned table, the index may not be omitted. `CLUSTER` on a partitioned table cannot be executed inside a transaction block.

## Examples

Cluster the table `employees` on the basis of its index `employees_ind`:

```
CLUSTER employees USING employees_ind;
```

Cluster the `employees` table using the same index that was used before:

```
CLUSTER employees;
```

Cluster all tables in the database that have previously been clustered:

```
CLUSTER;
```

## Compatibility

There is no `CLUSTER` statement in the SQL standard.

The syntax

```
CLUSTER index_name ON table_name
```

is also supported for compatibility with pre-8.3 PostgreSQL versions.

## See Also

clusterdb, Section 28.4.2



---

# COMMENT

COMMENT — define or change the comment of an object

## Synopsis

```
COMMENT ON
{
    ACCESS METHOD object_name |
    AGGREGATE aggregate_name ( aggregate_signature ) |
    CAST ( source_type AS target_type ) |
    COLLATION object_name |
    COLUMN relation_name.column_name |
    CONSTRAINT constraint_name ON table_name |
    CONSTRAINT constraint_name ON DOMAIN domain_name |
    CONVERSION object_name |
    DATABASE object_name |
    DOMAIN object_name |
    EXTENSION object_name |
    EVENT TRIGGER object_name |
    FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER object_name |
    FOREIGN TABLE object_name |
    FUNCTION function_name [ ( [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype
[ , ... ] ) ] |
    INDEX object_name |
    LARGE OBJECT large_object_oid |
    MATERIALIZED VIEW object_name |
    OPERATOR operator_name ( left_type, right_type ) |
    OPERATOR CLASS object_name USING index_method |
    OPERATOR FAMILY object_name USING index_method |
    POLICY policy_name ON table_name |
    [ PROCEDURAL ] LANGUAGE object_name |
    PROCEDURE procedure_name [ ( [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype
[ , ... ] ) ] |
    PUBLICATION object_name |
    ROLE object_name |
    ROUTINE routine_name [ ( [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype
[ , ... ] ) ] |
    RULE rule_name ON table_name |
    SCHEMA object_name |
    SEQUENCE object_name |
    SERVER object_name |
    STATISTICS object_name |
    SUBSCRIPTION object_name |
    TABLE object_name |
    TABLESPACE object_name |
    TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION object_name |
    TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY object_name |
    TEXT SEARCH PARSER object_name |
    TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE object_name |
    TRANSFORM FOR type_name LANGUAGE lang_name |
    TRIGGER trigger_name ON table_name |
    TYPE object_name |
    VIEW object_name
```

```
} IS { string_literal | NULL }

where aggregate_signature is:

* |
[ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype [ , ... ] |
[ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype [ , ... ] ] ORDER BY [ argmode ]
[ argname ] argtype [ , ... ]
```

## Description

COMMENT stores a comment about a database object.

Only one comment string is stored for each object, so to modify a comment, issue a new COMMENT command for the same object. To remove a comment, write NULL in place of the text string. Comments are automatically dropped when their object is dropped.

A SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE lock is acquired on the object to be commented.

For most kinds of object, only the object's owner can set the comment. Roles don't have owners, so the rule for COMMENT ON ROLE is that you must be superuser to comment on a superuser role, or have the CREATEROLE privilege and have been granted ADMIN OPTION on the target role. Likewise, access methods don't have owners either; you must be superuser to comment on an access method. Of course, a superuser can comment on anything.

Comments can be viewed using psql's \d family of commands. Other user interfaces to retrieve comments can be built atop the same built-in functions that psql uses, namely obj\_description, col\_description, and shobj\_description (see Table 9.78).

## Parameters

*object\_name*  
*relation\_name.column\_name*  
*aggregate\_name*  
*constraint\_name*  
*function\_name*  
*operator\_name*  
*policy\_name*  
*procedure\_name*  
*routine\_name*  
*rule\_name*  
*trigger\_name*

The name of the object to be commented. Names of objects that reside in schemas (tables, functions, etc.) can be schema-qualified. When commenting on a column, *relation\_name* must refer to a table, view, composite type, or foreign table.

*table\_name*  
*domain\_name*

When creating a comment on a constraint, a trigger, a rule or a policy these parameters specify the name of the table or domain on which that object is defined.

*source\_type*

The name of the source data type of the cast.

*target\_type*

The name of the target data type of the cast.

*argmode*

The mode of a function, procedure, or aggregate argument: IN, OUT, INOUT, or VARIADIC. If omitted, the default is IN. Note that COMMENT does not actually pay any attention to OUT arguments, since only the input arguments are needed to determine the function's identity. So it is sufficient to list the IN, INOUT, and VARIADIC arguments.

*argname*

The name of a function, procedure, or aggregate argument. Note that COMMENT does not actually pay any attention to argument names, since only the argument data types are needed to determine the function's identity.

*argtype*

The data type of a function, procedure, or aggregate argument.

*large\_object\_oid*

The OID of the large object.

*left\_type*

*right\_type*

The data type(s) of the operator's arguments (optionally schema-qualified). Write NONE for the missing argument of a prefix operator.

PROCEDURAL

This is a noise word.

*type\_name*

The name of the data type of the transform.

*lang\_name*

The name of the language of the transform.

*string\_literal*

The new comment contents, written as a string literal.

NULL

Write NULL to drop the comment.

## Notes

There is presently no security mechanism for viewing comments: any user connected to a database can see all the comments for objects in that database. For shared objects such as databases, roles, and tablespaces, comments are stored globally so any user connected to any database in the cluster can see all the comments for shared objects. Therefore, don't put security-critical information in comments.

## Examples

Attach a comment to the table mytable:

```
COMMENT ON TABLE mytable IS 'This is my table.';
```

Remove it again:

```
COMMENT ON TABLE mytable IS NULL;
```

Some more examples:

```
COMMENT ON ACCESS METHOD gin IS 'GIN index access method';
COMMENT ON AGGREGATE my_aggregate (double precision) IS 'Computes
    sample variance';
COMMENT ON CAST (text AS int4) IS 'Allow casts from text to int4';
COMMENT ON COLLATION "fr_CA" IS 'Canadian French';
COMMENT ON COLUMN my_table.my_column IS 'Employee ID number';
COMMENT ON CONVERSION my_conv IS 'Conversion to UTF8';
COMMENT ON CONSTRAINT bar_col_cons ON bar IS 'Constrains column
    col';
COMMENT ON CONSTRAINT dom_col_constr ON DOMAIN dom IS 'Constrains
    col of domain';
COMMENT ON DATABASE my_database IS 'Development Database';
COMMENT ON DOMAIN my_domain IS 'Email Address Domain';
COMMENT ON EVENT TRIGGER abort_ddl IS 'Aborts all DDL commands';
COMMENT ON EXTENSION hstore IS 'implements the hstore data type';
COMMENT ON FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER mywrapper IS 'my foreign data
    wrapper';
COMMENT ON FOREIGN TABLE my_foreign_table IS 'Employee Information
    in other database';
COMMENT ON FUNCTION my_function (timestamp) IS 'Returns Roman
    Numeral';
COMMENT ON INDEX my_index IS 'Enforces uniqueness on employee ID';
COMMENT ON LANGUAGE plpython IS 'Python support for stored
    procedures';
COMMENT ON LARGE OBJECT 346344 IS 'Planning document';
COMMENT ON MATERIALIZED VIEW my_matview IS 'Summary of order
    history';
COMMENT ON OPERATOR ^ (text, text) IS 'Performs intersection of two
    texts';
COMMENT ON OPERATOR - (NONE, integer) IS 'Unary minus';
COMMENT ON OPERATOR CLASS int4ops USING btree IS '4 byte integer
    operators for btrees';
COMMENT ON OPERATOR FAMILY integer_ops USING btree IS 'all integer
    operators for btrees';
COMMENT ON POLICY my_policy ON mytable IS 'Filter rows by users';
COMMENT ON PROCEDURE my_proc (integer, integer) IS 'Runs a report';
COMMENT ON PUBLICATION alltables IS 'Publishes all operations on
    all tables';
COMMENT ON ROLE my_role IS 'Administration group for finance
    tables';
COMMENT ON ROUTINE my_routine (integer, integer) IS 'Runs a routine
    (which is a function or procedure)';
COMMENT ON RULE my_rule ON my_table IS 'Logs updates of employee
    records';
COMMENT ON SCHEMA my_schema IS 'Departmental data';
COMMENT ON SEQUENCE my_sequence IS 'Used to generate primary keys';
COMMENT ON SERVER myserver IS 'my foreign server';
COMMENT ON STATISTICS my_statistics IS 'Improves planner row
    estimations';
```

```
COMMENT ON SUBSCRIPTION alltables IS 'Subscription for all
operations on all tables';
COMMENT ON TABLE my_schema.my_table IS 'Employee Information';
COMMENT ON TABLESPACE my_tablespace IS 'Tablespace for indexes';
COMMENT ON TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION my_config IS 'Special word
filtering';
COMMENT ON TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY swedish IS 'Snowball stemmer for
Swedish language';
COMMENT ON TEXT SEARCH PARSER my_parser IS 'Splits text into
words';
COMMENT ON TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE snowball IS 'Snowball stemmer';
COMMENT ON TRANSFORM FOR hstore LANGUAGE plpython3u IS 'Transform
between hstore and Python dict';
COMMENT ON TRIGGER my_trigger ON my_table IS 'Used for RI';
COMMENT ON TYPE complex IS 'Complex number data type';
COMMENT ON VIEW my_view IS 'View of departmental costs';
```

## Compatibility

There is no COMMENT command in the SQL standard.

---

# COMMIT

COMMIT — commit the current transaction

## Synopsis

```
COMMIT [ WORK | TRANSACTION ] [ AND [ NO ] CHAIN ]
```

## Description

COMMIT commits the current transaction. All changes made by the transaction become visible to others and are guaranteed to be durable if a crash occurs.

## Parameters

WORK  
TRANSACTION

Optional key words. They have no effect.

AND CHAIN

If AND CHAIN is specified, a new transaction is immediately started with the same transaction characteristics (see SET TRANSACTION) as the just finished one. Otherwise, no new transaction is started.

## Notes

Use ROLLBACK to abort a transaction.

Issuing COMMIT when not inside a transaction does no harm, but it will provoke a warning message. COMMIT AND CHAIN when not inside a transaction is an error.

## Examples

To commit the current transaction and make all changes permanent:

```
COMMIT ;
```

## Compatibility

The command COMMIT conforms to the SQL standard. The form COMMIT TRANSACTION is a PostgreSQL extension.

## See Also

BEGIN, ROLLBACK

---

# COMMIT PREPARED

COMMIT PREPARED — commit a transaction that was earlier prepared for two-phase commit

## Synopsis

```
COMMIT PREPARED transaction_id
```

## Description

COMMIT PREPARED commits a transaction that is in prepared state.

## Parameters

*transaction\_id*

The transaction identifier of the transaction that is to be committed.

## Notes

To commit a prepared transaction, you must be either the same user that executed the transaction originally, or a superuser. But you do not have to be in the same session that executed the transaction.

This command cannot be executed inside a transaction block. The prepared transaction is committed immediately.

All currently available prepared transactions are listed in the `pg_prepared_xacts` system view.

## Examples

Commit the transaction identified by the transaction identifier `foobar`:

```
COMMIT PREPARED 'foobar';
```

## Compatibility

COMMIT PREPARED is a PostgreSQL extension. It is intended for use by external transaction management systems, some of which are covered by standards (such as X/Open XA), but the SQL side of those systems is not standardized.

## See Also

PREPARE TRANSACTION, ROLLBACK PREPARED

---

# COPY

COPY — copy data between a file and a table

## Synopsis

```
COPY table_name [ ( column_name [, ...] ) ]  
  FROM { 'filename' | PROGRAM 'command' | STDIN }  
  [ [ WITH ] ( option [, ...] ) ]  
  [ WHERE condition ]  
  
COPY { table_name [ ( column_name [, ...] ) ] | ( query ) }  
  TO { 'filename' | PROGRAM 'command' | STDOUT }  
  [ [ WITH ] ( option [, ...] ) ]
```

where *option* can be one of:

```
FORMAT format_name  
FREEZE [ boolean ]  
DELIMITER 'delimiter_character'  
NULL 'null_string'  
DEFAULT 'default_string'  
HEADER [ boolean | MATCH ]  
QUOTE 'quote_character'  
ESCAPE 'escape_character'  
FORCE_QUOTE { ( column_name [, ...] ) | * }  
FORCE_NOT_NULL ( column_name [, ...] )  
FORCE_NULL ( column_name [, ...] )  
ENCODING 'encoding_name'
```

## Description

COPY moves data between PostgreSQL tables and standard file-system files. COPY TO copies the contents of a table *to* a file, while COPY FROM copies data *from* a file to a table (appending the data to whatever is in the table already). COPY TO can also copy the results of a SELECT query.

If a column list is specified, COPY TO copies only the data in the specified columns to the file. For COPY FROM, each field in the file is inserted, in order, into the specified column. Table columns not specified in the COPY FROM column list will receive their default values.

COPY with a file name instructs the PostgreSQL server to directly read from or write to a file. The file must be accessible by the PostgreSQL user (the user ID the server runs as) and the name must be specified from the viewpoint of the server. When PROGRAM is specified, the server executes the given command and reads from the standard output of the program, or writes to the standard input of the program. The command must be specified from the viewpoint of the server, and be executable by the PostgreSQL user. When STDIN or STDOUT is specified, data is transmitted via the connection between the client and the server.

Each backend running COPY will report its progress in the pg\_stat\_progress\_copy view. See Section 28.4.3 for details.

## Parameters

*table\_name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing table.



*column\_name*

An optional list of columns to be copied. If no column list is specified, all columns of the table except generated columns will be copied.

*query*

A SELECT, VALUES, INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE command whose results are to be copied. Note that parentheses are required around the query.

For INSERT, UPDATE and DELETE queries a RETURNING clause must be provided, and the target relation must not have a conditional rule, nor an ALSO rule, nor an INSTEAD rule that expands to multiple statements.

*filename*

The path name of the input or output file. An input file name can be an absolute or relative path, but an output file name must be an absolute path. Windows users might need to use an E ' ' string and double any backslashes used in the path name.

## PROGRAM

A command to execute. In COPY FROM, the input is read from standard output of the command, and in COPY TO, the output is written to the standard input of the command.

Note that the command is invoked by the shell, so if you need to pass any arguments that come from an untrusted source, you must be careful to strip or escape any special characters that might have a special meaning for the shell. For security reasons, it is best to use a fixed command string, or at least avoid including any user input in it.

## STDIN

Specifies that input comes from the client application.

## STDOUT

Specifies that output goes to the client application.

*boolean*

Specifies whether the selected option should be turned on or off. You can write TRUE, ON, or 1 to enable the option, and FALSE, OFF, or 0 to disable it. The *boolean* value can also be omitted, in which case TRUE is assumed.

## FORMAT

Selects the data format to be read or written: `text`, `csv` (Comma Separated Values), or `binary`. The default is `text`.

## FREEZE

Requests copying the data with rows already frozen, just as they would be after running the VACUUM FREEZE command. This is intended as a performance option for initial data loading. Rows will be frozen only if the table being loaded has been created or truncated in the current subtransaction, there are no cursors open and there are no older snapshots held by this transaction. It is currently not possible to perform a COPY FREEZE on a partitioned table.

Note that all other sessions will immediately be able to see the data once it has been successfully loaded. This violates the normal rules of MVCC visibility and users should be aware of the potential problems this might cause.

**DELIMITER**

Specifies the character that separates columns within each row (line) of the file. The default is a tab character in text format, a comma in CSV format. This must be a single one-byte character. This option is not allowed when using `binary` format.

**NULL**

Specifies the string that represents a null value. The default is `\N` (backslash-N) in text format, and an unquoted empty string in CSV format. You might prefer an empty string even in text format for cases where you don't want to distinguish nulls from empty strings. This option is not allowed when using `binary` format.

**Note**

When using `COPY FROM`, any data item that matches this string will be stored as a null value, so you should make sure that you use the same string as you used with `COPY TO`.

**DEFAULT**

Specifies the string that represents a default value. Each time the string is found in the input file, the default value of the corresponding column will be used. This option is allowed only in `COPY FROM`, and only when not using `binary` format.

**HEADER**

Specifies that the file contains a header line with the names of each column in the file. On output, the first line contains the column names from the table. On input, the first line is discarded when this option is set to `true` (or equivalent Boolean value). If this option is set to `MATCH`, the number and names of the columns in the header line must match the actual column names of the table, in order; otherwise an error is raised. This option is not allowed when using `binary` format. The `MATCH` option is only valid for `COPY FROM` commands.

**QUOTE**

Specifies the quoting character to be used when a data value is quoted. The default is double-quote. This must be a single one-byte character. This option is allowed only when using CSV format.

**ESCAPE**

Specifies the character that should appear before a data character that matches the `QUOTE` value. The default is the same as the `QUOTE` value (so that the quoting character is doubled if it appears in the data). This must be a single one-byte character. This option is allowed only when using CSV format.

**FORCE\_QUOTE**

Forces quoting to be used for all non-NULL values in each specified column. NULL output is never quoted. If `*` is specified, non-NULL values will be quoted in all columns. This option is allowed only in `COPY TO`, and only when using CSV format.

**FORCE\_NOT\_NULL**

Do not match the specified columns' values against the null string. In the default case where the null string is empty, this means that empty values will be read as zero-length strings rather than nulls, even when they are not quoted. This option is allowed only in `COPY FROM`, and only when using CSV format.

**FORCE\_NULL**

Match the specified columns' values against the null string, even if it has been quoted, and if a match is found set the value to NULL. In the default case where the null string is empty, this converts a quoted empty string into NULL. This option is allowed only in COPY FROM, and only when using CSV format.

**ENCODING**

Specifies that the file is encoded in the *encoding\_name*. If this option is omitted, the current client encoding is used. See the Notes below for more details.

**WHERE**

The optional WHERE clause has the general form

WHERE *condition*

where *condition* is any expression that evaluates to a result of type boolean. Any row that does not satisfy this condition will not be inserted to the table. A row satisfies the condition if it returns true when the actual row values are substituted for any variable references.

Currently, subqueries are not allowed in WHERE expressions, and the evaluation does not see any changes made by the COPY itself (this matters when the expression contains calls to VOLATILE functions).

## Outputs

On successful completion, a COPY command returns a command tag of the form

COPY *count*

The *count* is the number of rows copied.

### Note

psql will print this command tag only if the command was not COPY ... TO STDOUT, or the equivalent psql meta-command \copy ... to stdout. This is to prevent confusing the command tag with the data that was just printed.

## Notes

COPY TO can be used only with plain tables, not views, and does not copy rows from child tables or child partitions. For example, COPY *table* TO copies the same rows as SELECT \* FROM ONLY *table*. The syntax COPY (SELECT \* FROM *table*) TO ... can be used to dump all of the rows in an inheritance hierarchy, partitioned table, or view.

COPY FROM can be used with plain, foreign, or partitioned tables or with views that have INSTEAD OF INSERT triggers.

You must have select privilege on the table whose values are read by COPY TO, and insert privilege on the table into which values are inserted by COPY FROM. It is sufficient to have column privileges on the column(s) listed in the command.

If row-level security is enabled for the table, the relevant SELECT policies will apply to COPY *table* TO statements. Currently, COPY FROM is not supported for tables with row-level security. Use equivalent INSERT statements instead.

Files named in a `COPY` command are read or written directly by the server, not by the client application. Therefore, they must reside on or be accessible to the database server machine, not the client. They must be accessible to and readable or writable by the PostgreSQL user (the user ID the server runs as), not the client. Similarly, the command specified with `PROGRAM` is executed directly by the server, not by the client application, must be executable by the PostgreSQL user. `COPY` naming a file or command is only allowed to database superusers or users who are granted one of the roles `pg_read_server_files`, `pg_write_server_files`, or `pg_execute_server_program`, since it allows reading or writing any file or running a program that the server has privileges to access.

Do not confuse `COPY` with the `psql` instruction `\copy`. `\copy` invokes `COPY FROM STDIN` or `COPY TO STDOUT`, and then fetches/stores the data in a file accessible to the `psql` client. Thus, file accessibility and access rights depend on the client rather than the server when `\copy` is used.

It is recommended that the file name used in `COPY` always be specified as an absolute path. This is enforced by the server in the case of `COPY TO`, but for `COPY FROM` you do have the option of reading from a file specified by a relative path. The path will be interpreted relative to the working directory of the server process (normally the cluster's data directory), not the client's working directory.

Executing a command with `PROGRAM` might be restricted by the operating system's access control mechanisms, such as SELinux.

`COPY FROM` will invoke any triggers and check constraints on the destination table. However, it will not invoke rules.

For identity columns, the `COPY FROM` command will always write the column values provided in the input data, like the `INSERT` option `OVERRIDING SYSTEM VALUE`.

`COPY` input and output is affected by `DateStyle`. To ensure portability to other PostgreSQL installations that might use non-default `DateStyle` settings, `DateStyle` should be set to `ISO` before using `COPY TO`. It is also a good idea to avoid dumping data with `IntervalStyle` set to `sql_standard`, because negative interval values might be misinterpreted by a server that has a different setting for `IntervalStyle`.

Input data is interpreted according to `ENCODING` option or the current client encoding, and output data is encoded in `ENCODING` or the current client encoding, even if the data does not pass through the client but is read from or written to a file directly by the server.

`COPY` stops operation at the first error. This should not lead to problems in the event of a `COPY TO`, but the target table will already have received earlier rows in a `COPY FROM`. These rows will not be visible or accessible, but they still occupy disk space. This might amount to a considerable amount of wasted disk space if the failure happened well into a large copy operation. You might wish to invoke `VACUUM` to recover the wasted space.

`FORCE_NULL` and `FORCE_NOT_NULL` can be used simultaneously on the same column. This results in converting quoted null strings to null values and unquoted null strings to empty strings.

## File Formats

### Text Format

When the `text` format is used, the data read or written is a text file with one line per table row. Columns in a row are separated by the delimiter character. The column values themselves are strings generated by the output function, or acceptable to the input function, of each attribute's data type. The specified null string is used in place of columns that are null. `COPY FROM` will raise an error if any line of the input file contains more or fewer columns than are expected.

End of data can be represented by a single line containing just backslash-period (`\.`). An end-of-data marker is not necessary when reading from a file, since the end of file serves perfectly well; it is needed only when copying data to or from client applications using pre-3.0 client protocol.

Backslash characters (\) can be used in the COPY data to quote data characters that might otherwise be taken as row or column delimiters. In particular, the following characters *must* be preceded by a backslash if they appear as part of a column value: backslash itself, newline, carriage return, and the current delimiter character.

The specified null string is sent by COPY TO without adding any backslashes; conversely, COPY FROM matches the input against the null string before removing backslashes. Therefore, a null string such as \N cannot be confused with the actual data value \N (which would be represented as \\N).

The following special backslash sequences are recognized by COPY FROM:

Sequence	Represents
\b	Backspace (ASCII 8)
\f	Form feed (ASCII 12)
\n	Newline (ASCII 10)
\r	Carriage return (ASCII 13)
\t	Tab (ASCII 9)
\v	Vertical tab (ASCII 11)
\ <i>digits</i>	Backslash followed by one to three octal digits specifies the byte with that numeric code
\x <i>digits</i>	Backslash x followed by one or two hex digits specifies the byte with that numeric code

Presently, COPY TO will never emit an octal or hex-digits backslash sequence, but it does use the other sequences listed above for those control characters.

Any other backslashed character that is not mentioned in the above table will be taken to represent itself. However, beware of adding backslashes unnecessarily, since that might accidentally produce a string matching the end-of-data marker (\.) or the null string (\N by default). These strings will be recognized before any other backslash processing is done.

It is strongly recommended that applications generating COPY data convert data newlines and carriage returns to the \n and \r sequences respectively. At present it is possible to represent a data carriage return by a backslash and carriage return, and to represent a data newline by a backslash and newline. However, these representations might not be accepted in future releases. They are also highly vulnerable to corruption if the COPY file is transferred across different machines (for example, from Unix to Windows or vice versa).

All backslash sequences are interpreted after encoding conversion. The bytes specified with the octal and hex-digit backslash sequences must form valid characters in the database encoding.

COPY TO will terminate each row with a Unix-style newline (“\n”). Servers running on Microsoft Windows instead output carriage return/newline (“\r\n”), but only for COPY to a server file; for consistency across platforms, COPY TO STDOUT always sends “\n” regardless of server platform. COPY FROM can handle lines ending with newlines, carriage returns, or carriage return/newlines. To reduce the risk of error due to un-backslashed newlines or carriage returns that were meant as data, COPY FROM will complain if the line endings in the input are not all alike.

## CSV Format

This format option is used for importing and exporting the Comma Separated Value (CSV) file format used by many other programs, such as spreadsheets. Instead of the escaping rules used by PostgreSQL's standard text format, it produces and recognizes the common CSV escaping mechanism.

The values in each record are separated by the DELIMITER character. If the value contains the delimiter character, the QUOTE character, the NULL string, a carriage return, or line feed character, then the whole value is prefixed and suffixed by the QUOTE character, and any occurrence within the value

of a `QUOTE` character or the `ESCAPE` character is preceded by the escape character. You can also use `FORCE_QUOTE` to force quotes when outputting non-NULL values in specific columns.

The CSV format has no standard way to distinguish a NULL value from an empty string. PostgreSQL's `COPY` handles this by quoting. A NULL is output as the NULL parameter string and is not quoted, while a non-NULL value matching the NULL parameter string is quoted. For example, with the default settings, a NULL is written as an unquoted empty string, while an empty string data value is written with double quotes (`" "`). Reading values follows similar rules. You can use `FORCE_NOT_NULL` to prevent NULL input comparisons for specific columns. You can also use `FORCE_NULL` to convert quoted null string data values to NULL.

Because backslash is not a special character in the CSV format, `\.`, the end-of-data marker, could also appear as a data value. To avoid any misinterpretation, a `\.` data value appearing as a lone entry on a line is automatically quoted on output, and on input, if quoted, is not interpreted as the end-of-data marker. If you are loading a file created by another application that has a single unquoted column and might have a value of `\.`, you might need to quote that value in the input file.

### Note

In CSV format, all characters are significant. A quoted value surrounded by white space, or any characters other than `DELIMITER`, will include those characters. This can cause errors if you import data from a system that pads CSV lines with white space out to some fixed width. If such a situation arises you might need to preprocess the CSV file to remove the trailing white space, before importing the data into PostgreSQL.

### Note

CSV format will both recognize and produce CSV files with quoted values containing embedded carriage returns and line feeds. Thus the files are not strictly one line per table row like text-format files.

### Note

Many programs produce strange and occasionally perverse CSV files, so the file format is more a convention than a standard. Thus you might encounter some files that cannot be imported using this mechanism, and `COPY` might produce files that other programs cannot process.

## Binary Format

The `binary` format option causes all data to be stored/read as binary format rather than as text. It is somewhat faster than the text and CSV formats, but a binary-format file is less portable across machine architectures and PostgreSQL versions. Also, the binary format is very data type specific; for example it will not work to output binary data from a `smallint` column and read it into an `integer` column, even though that would work fine in text format.

The `binary` file format consists of a file header, zero or more tuples containing the row data, and a file trailer. Headers and data are in network byte order.

### Note

PostgreSQL releases before 7.4 used a different binary file format.

## File Header

The file header consists of 15 bytes of fixed fields, followed by a variable-length header extension area. The fixed fields are:

### Signature

11-byte sequence `PGCOPY\377\0` — note that the zero byte is a required part of the signature. (The signature is designed to allow easy identification of files that have been munged by a non-8-bit-clean transfer. This signature will be changed by end-of-line-translation filters, dropped zero bytes, dropped high bits, or parity changes.)

### Flags field

32-bit integer bit mask to denote important aspects of the file format. Bits are numbered from 0 (LSB) to 31 (MSB). Note that this field is stored in network byte order (most significant byte first), as are all the integer fields used in the file format. Bits 16–31 are reserved to denote critical file format issues; a reader should abort if it finds an unexpected bit set in this range. Bits 0–15 are reserved to signal backwards-compatible format issues; a reader should simply ignore any unexpected bits set in this range. Currently only one flag bit is defined, and the rest must be zero:

#### Bit 16

If 1, OIDs are included in the data; if 0, not. Oid system columns are not supported in PostgreSQL anymore, but the format still contains the indicator.

### Header extension area length

32-bit integer, length in bytes of remainder of header, not including self. Currently, this is zero, and the first tuple follows immediately. Future changes to the format might allow additional data to be present in the header. A reader should silently skip over any header extension data it does not know what to do with.

The header extension area is envisioned to contain a sequence of self-identifying chunks. The flags field is not intended to tell readers what is in the extension area. Specific design of header extension contents is left for a later release.

This design allows for both backwards-compatible header additions (add header extension chunks, or set low-order flag bits) and non-backwards-compatible changes (set high-order flag bits to signal such changes, and add supporting data to the extension area if needed).

## Tuples

Each tuple begins with a 16-bit integer count of the number of fields in the tuple. (Presently, all tuples in a table will have the same count, but that might not always be true.) Then, repeated for each field in the tuple, there is a 32-bit length word followed by that many bytes of field data. (The length word does not include itself, and can be zero.) As a special case, -1 indicates a NULL field value. No value bytes follow in the NULL case.

There is no alignment padding or any other extra data between fields.

Presently, all data values in a binary-format file are assumed to be in binary format (format code one). It is anticipated that a future extension might add a header field that allows per-column format codes to be specified.

To determine the appropriate binary format for the actual tuple data you should consult the PostgreSQL source, in particular the `*send` and `*recv` functions for each column's data type (typically these functions are found in the `src/backend/utils/adts/` directory of the source distribution).

If OIDs are included in the file, the OID field immediately follows the field-count word. It is a normal field except that it's not included in the field-count. Note that oid system columns are not supported in current versions of PostgreSQL.

## File Trailer

The file trailer consists of a 16-bit integer word containing -1. This is easily distinguished from a tuple's field-count word.

A reader should report an error if a field-count word is neither -1 nor the expected number of columns. This provides an extra check against somehow getting out of sync with the data.

## Examples

The following example copies a table to the client using the vertical bar (|) as the field delimiter:

```
COPY country TO STDOUT (DELIMITER '|');
```

To copy data from a file into the country table:

```
COPY country FROM '/usr1/proj/bray/sql/country_data';
```

To copy into a file just the countries whose names start with 'A':

```
COPY (SELECT * FROM country WHERE country_name LIKE 'A%') TO '/usr1/proj/bray/sql/a_list_countries.copy';
```

To copy into a compressed file, you can pipe the output through an external compression program:

```
COPY country TO PROGRAM 'gzip > /usr1/proj/bray/sql/country_data.gz';
```

Here is a sample of data suitable for copying into a table from STDIN:

AF	AFGHANISTAN
AL	ALBANIA
DZ	ALGERIA
ZM	ZAMBIA
ZW	ZIMBABWE

Note that the white space on each line is actually a tab character.

The following is the same data, output in binary format. The data is shown after filtering through the Unix utility `od -c`. The table has three columns; the first has type `char(2)`, the second has type `text`, and the third has type `integer`. All the rows have a null value in the third column.

```
0000000  P  G  C  O  P  Y  \n 377  \r  \n  \0  \0  \0  \0  \0
 \0
0000020  \0  \0  \0  \0 003  \0  \0  \0 002  A  F  \0  \0  \0 013
 A
0000040  F  G  H  A  N  I  S  T  A  N 377 377 377 377  \0
003
0000060  \0  \0  \0 002  A  L  \0  \0  \0 007  A  L  B  A  N
 I
0000100  A 377 377 377 377  \0 003  \0  \0  \0 002  D  Z  \0  \0
 \0
0000120 007  A  L  G  E  R  I  A 377 377 377 377  \0 003  \0
 \0
```



```
0000140  \0 002   Z   M  \0  \0  \0 006   Z   A   M   B   I   A 377
377
0000160 377 377  \0 003  \0  \0  \0 002   Z   W  \0  \0  \0  \b   Z
I
0000200   M   B   A   B   W   E 377 377 377 377 377 377
```

## Compatibility

There is no COPY statement in the SQL standard.

The following syntax was used before PostgreSQL version 9.0 and is still supported:

```
COPY table_name [ ( column_name [, ...] ) ]
FROM { 'filename' | STDIN }
[ [ WITH ]
    [ BINARY ]
    [ DELIMITER [ AS ] 'delimiter_character' ]
    [ NULL [ AS ] 'null_string' ]
    [ CSV [ HEADER ]
        [ QUOTE [ AS ] 'quote_character' ]
        [ ESCAPE [ AS ] 'escape_character' ]
        [ FORCE NOT NULL column_name [, ...] ] ] ] ]

COPY { table_name [ ( column_name [, ...] ) ] | ( query ) }
TO { 'filename' | STDOUT }
[ [ WITH ]
    [ BINARY ]
    [ DELIMITER [ AS ] 'delimiter_character' ]
    [ NULL [ AS ] 'null_string' ]
    [ CSV [ HEADER ]
        [ QUOTE [ AS ] 'quote_character' ]
        [ ESCAPE [ AS ] 'escape_character' ]
        [ FORCE QUOTE { column_name [, ...] | * } ] ] ] ]
```

Note that in this syntax, BINARY and CSV are treated as independent keywords, not as arguments of a FORMAT option.

The following syntax was used before PostgreSQL version 7.3 and is still supported:

```
COPY [ BINARY ] table_name
FROM { 'filename' | STDIN }
[ [USING] DELIMITERS 'delimiter_character' ]
[ WITH NULL AS 'null_string' ]

COPY [ BINARY ] table_name
TO { 'filename' | STDOUT }
[ [USING] DELIMITERS 'delimiter_character' ]
[ WITH NULL AS 'null_string' ]
```

## See Also

Section 28.4.3

---

# CREATE ACCESS METHOD

CREATE ACCESS METHOD — define a new access method

## Synopsis

```
CREATE ACCESS METHOD name
    TYPE access_method_type
    HANDLER handler_function
```

## Description

CREATE ACCESS METHOD creates a new access method.

The access method name must be unique within the database.

Only superusers can define new access methods.

## Parameters

*name*

The name of the access method to be created.

*access\_method\_type*

This clause specifies the type of access method to define. Only TABLE and INDEX are supported at present.

*handler\_function*

*handler\_function* is the name (possibly schema-qualified) of a previously registered function that represents the access method. The handler function must be declared to take a single argument of type `internal`, and its return type depends on the type of access method; for TABLE access methods, it must be `table_am_handler` and for INDEX access methods, it must be `index_am_handler`. The C-level API that the handler function must implement varies depending on the type of access method. The table access method API is described in Chapter 63 and the index access method API is described in Chapter 64.

## Examples

Create an index access method `heptree` with handler function `heptree_handler`:

```
CREATE ACCESS METHOD heptree TYPE INDEX HANDLER heptree_handler;
```

## Compatibility

CREATE ACCESS METHOD is a PostgreSQL extension.

## See Also

DROP ACCESS METHOD, CREATE OPERATOR CLASS, CREATE OPERATOR FAMILY

---

# CREATE AGGREGATE

CREATE AGGREGATE — define a new aggregate function

## Synopsis

```
CREATE [ OR REPLACE ] AGGREGATE name ( [ argmode ] [ argname
] arg_data_type [ , ... ] ) (
    SFUNC = sfunc,
    STYPE = state_data_type
    [ , SSPACE = state_data_size ]
    [ , FINALFUNC = ffunc ]
    [ , FINALFUNC_EXTRA ]
    [ , FINALFUNC_MODIFY = { READ_ONLY | SHAREABLE | READ_WRITE } ]
    [ , COMBINEFUNC = combinefunc ]
    [ , SERIALFUNC = serialfunc ]
    [ , DESERIALFUNC = deserialfunc ]
    [ , INITCOND = initial_condition ]
    [ , MSFUNC = msfunc ]
    [ , MINVFUNC = minvfunc ]
    [ , MSTYPE = mstate_data_type ]
    [ , MSSPACE = mstate_data_size ]
    [ , MFINALFUNC = mffunc ]
    [ , MFINALFUNC_EXTRA ]
    [ , MFINALFUNC_MODIFY = { READ_ONLY | SHAREABLE |
READ_WRITE } ]
    [ , MINITCOND = minitial_condition ]
    [ , SORTOP = sort_operator ]
    [ , PARALLEL = { SAFE | RESTRICTED | UNSAFE } ]
)
```

```
CREATE [ OR REPLACE ] AGGREGATE name ( [ [ argmode ] [ argname
] arg_data_type [ , ... ] ]
                                ORDER BY [ argmode ] [ argname
] arg_data_type [ , ... ] ) (
    SFUNC = sfunc,
    STYPE = state_data_type
    [ , SSPACE = state_data_size ]
    [ , FINALFUNC = ffunc ]
    [ , FINALFUNC_EXTRA ]
    [ , FINALFUNC_MODIFY = { READ_ONLY | SHAREABLE | READ_WRITE } ]
    [ , INITCOND = initial_condition ]
    [ , PARALLEL = { SAFE | RESTRICTED | UNSAFE } ]
    [ , HYPOTHETICAL ]
)
```

or the old syntax

```
CREATE [ OR REPLACE ] AGGREGATE name (
    BASETYPE = base_type,
    SFUNC = sfunc,
    STYPE = state_data_type
    [ , SSPACE = state_data_size ]
    [ , FINALFUNC = ffunc ]
```

```
[ , FINALFUNC_EXTRA ]
[ , FINALFUNC_MODIFY = { READ_ONLY | SHAREABLE | READ_WRITE } ]
[ , COMBINEFUNC = combinefunc ]
[ , SERIALFUNC = serialfunc ]
[ , DESERIALFUNC = deserialfunc ]
[ , INITCOND = initial_condition ]
[ , MSFUNC = msfunc ]
[ , MINVFUNC = minvfunc ]
[ , MSTYPE = mstate_data_type ]
[ , MSSPACE = mstate_data_size ]
[ , MFINALFUNC = mffunc ]
[ , MFINALFUNC_EXTRA ]
[ , MFINALFUNC_MODIFY = { READ_ONLY | SHAREABLE |
READ_WRITE } ]
[ , MINITCOND = minitial_condition ]
[ , SORTOP = sort_operator ]
)
```

## Description

CREATE AGGREGATE defines a new aggregate function. CREATE OR REPLACE AGGREGATE will either define a new aggregate function or replace an existing definition. Some basic and commonly-used aggregate functions are included with the distribution; they are documented in Section 9.21. If one defines new types or needs an aggregate function not already provided, then CREATE AGGREGATE can be used to provide the desired features.

When replacing an existing definition, the argument types, result type, and number of direct arguments may not be changed. Also, the new definition must be of the same kind (ordinary aggregate, ordered-set aggregate, or hypothetical-set aggregate) as the old one.

If a schema name is given (for example, CREATE AGGREGATE *myschema.myagg* ...) then the aggregate function is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema.

An aggregate function is identified by its name and input data type(s). Two aggregates in the same schema can have the same name if they operate on different input types. The name and input data type(s) of an aggregate must also be distinct from the name and input data type(s) of every ordinary function in the same schema. This behavior is identical to overloading of ordinary function names (see CREATE FUNCTION).

A simple aggregate function is made from one or two ordinary functions: a state transition function *sfunc*, and an optional final calculation function *ffunc*. These are used as follows:

```
sfunc( internal-state, next-data-values ) ---> next-internal-state
ffunc( internal-state ) ---> aggregate-value
```

PostgreSQL creates a temporary variable of data type *stype* to hold the current internal state of the aggregate. At each input row, the aggregate argument value(s) are calculated and the state transition function is invoked with the current state value and the new argument value(s) to calculate a new internal state value. After all the rows have been processed, the final function is invoked once to calculate the aggregate's return value. If there is no final function then the ending state value is returned as-is.

An aggregate function can provide an initial condition, that is, an initial value for the internal state value. This is specified and stored in the database as a value of type `text`, but it must be a valid external representation of a constant of the state value data type. If it is not supplied then the state value starts out null.

If the state transition function is declared “strict”, then it cannot be called with null inputs. With such a transition function, aggregate execution behaves as follows. Rows with any null input values are

ignored (the function is not called and the previous state value is retained). If the initial state value is null, then at the first row with all-nonnull input values, the first argument value replaces the state value, and the transition function is invoked at each subsequent row with all-nonnull input values. This is handy for implementing aggregates like `max`. Note that this behavior is only available when `state_data_type` is the same as the first `arg_data_type`. When these types are different, you must supply a nonnull initial condition or use a nonstrict transition function.

If the state transition function is not strict, then it will be called unconditionally at each input row, and must deal with null inputs and null state values for itself. This allows the aggregate author to have full control over the aggregate's handling of null values.

If the final function is declared “strict”, then it will not be called when the ending state value is null; instead a null result will be returned automatically. (Of course this is just the normal behavior of strict functions.) In any case the final function has the option of returning a null value. For example, the final function for `avg` returns null when it sees there were zero input rows.

Sometimes it is useful to declare the final function as taking not just the state value, but extra parameters corresponding to the aggregate's input values. The main reason for doing this is if the final function is polymorphic and the state value's data type would be inadequate to pin down the result type. These extra parameters are always passed as NULL (and so the final function must not be strict when the `FINALFUNC_EXTRA` option is used), but nonetheless they are valid parameters. The final function could for example make use of `get_fn_expr_argtype` to identify the actual argument type in the current call.

An aggregate can optionally support *moving-aggregate mode*, as described in Section 38.12.1. This requires specifying the `MSFUNC`, `MINVFUNC`, and `MSTYPE` parameters, and optionally the `MSSPACE`, `MFINALFUNC`, `MFINALFUNC_EXTRA`, `MFINALFUNC_MODIFY`, and `MINITCOND` parameters. Except for `MINVFUNC`, these parameters work like the corresponding simple-aggregate parameters without `M`; they define a separate implementation of the aggregate that includes an inverse transition function.

The syntax with `ORDER BY` in the parameter list creates a special type of aggregate called an *ordered-set aggregate*; or if `HYPOTHETICAL` is specified, then a *hypothetical-set aggregate* is created. These aggregates operate over groups of sorted values in order-dependent ways, so that specification of an input sort order is an essential part of a call. Also, they can have *direct* arguments, which are arguments that are evaluated only once per aggregation rather than once per input row. Hypothetical-set aggregates are a subclass of ordered-set aggregates in which some of the direct arguments are required to match, in number and data types, the aggregated argument columns. This allows the values of those direct arguments to be added to the collection of aggregate-input rows as an additional “hypothetical” row.

An aggregate can optionally support *partial aggregation*, as described in Section 38.12.4. This requires specifying the `COMBINEFUNC` parameter. If the `state_data_type` is internal, it's usually also appropriate to provide the `SERIALFUNC` and `DESERIALFUNC` parameters so that parallel aggregation is possible. Note that the aggregate must also be marked `PARALLEL SAFE` to enable parallel aggregation.

Aggregates that behave like `MIN` or `MAX` can sometimes be optimized by looking into an index instead of scanning every input row. If this aggregate can be so optimized, indicate it by specifying a *sort operator*. The basic requirement is that the aggregate must yield the first element in the sort ordering induced by the operator; in other words:

```
SELECT agg(col) FROM tab;
```

must be equivalent to:

```
SELECT col FROM tab ORDER BY col USING sortop LIMIT 1;
```

Further assumptions are that the aggregate ignores null inputs, and that it delivers a null result if and only if there were no non-null inputs. Ordinarily, a data type's < operator is the proper sort operator for MIN, and > is the proper sort operator for MAX. Note that the optimization will never actually take effect unless the specified operator is the “less than” or “greater than” strategy member of a B-tree index operator class.

To be able to create an aggregate function, you must have USAGE privilege on the argument types, the state type(s), and the return type, as well as EXECUTE privilege on the supporting functions.

## Parameters

*name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the aggregate function to create.

*argmode*

The mode of an argument: IN or VARIADIC. (Aggregate functions do not support OUT arguments.) If omitted, the default is IN. Only the last argument can be marked VARIADIC.

*argname*

The name of an argument. This is currently only useful for documentation purposes. If omitted, the argument has no name.

*arg\_data\_type*

An input data type on which this aggregate function operates. To create a zero-argument aggregate function, write \* in place of the list of argument specifications. (An example of such an aggregate is count (\*).)

*base\_type*

In the old syntax for CREATE AGGREGATE, the input data type is specified by a basetype parameter rather than being written next to the aggregate name. Note that this syntax allows only one input parameter. To define a zero-argument aggregate function with this syntax, specify the basetype as "ANY" (not \*). Ordered-set aggregates cannot be defined with the old syntax.

*sfunc*

The name of the state transition function to be called for each input row. For a normal *N*-argument aggregate function, the *sfunc* must take *N*+1 arguments, the first being of type *state\_data\_type* and the rest matching the declared input data type(s) of the aggregate. The function must return a value of type *state\_data\_type*. This function takes the current state value and the current input data value(s), and returns the next state value.

For ordered-set (including hypothetical-set) aggregates, the state transition function receives only the current state value and the aggregated arguments, not the direct arguments. Otherwise it is the same.

*state\_data\_type*

The data type for the aggregate's state value.

*state\_data\_size*

The approximate average size (in bytes) of the aggregate's state value. If this parameter is omitted or is zero, a default estimate is used based on the *state\_data\_type*. The planner uses this value to estimate the memory required for a grouped aggregate query.

*ffunc*

The name of the final function called to compute the aggregate's result after all input rows have been traversed. For a normal aggregate, this function must take a single argument of type *state\_data\_type*. The return data type of the aggregate is defined as the return type of this function. If *ffunc* is not specified, then the ending state value is used as the aggregate's result, and the return type is *state\_data\_type*.

For ordered-set (including hypothetical-set) aggregates, the final function receives not only the final state value, but also the values of all the direct arguments.

If `FINALFUNC_EXTRA` is specified, then in addition to the final state value and any direct arguments, the final function receives extra NULL values corresponding to the aggregate's regular (aggregated) arguments. This is mainly useful to allow correct resolution of the aggregate result type when a polymorphic aggregate is being defined.

`FINALFUNC_MODIFY = { READ_ONLY | SHAREABLE | READ_WRITE }`

This option specifies whether the final function is a pure function that does not modify its arguments. `READ_ONLY` indicates it does not; the other two values indicate that it may change the transition state value. See Notes below for more detail. The default is `READ_ONLY`, except for ordered-set aggregates, for which the default is `READ_WRITE`.

*combinefunc*

The *combinefunc* function may optionally be specified to allow the aggregate function to support partial aggregation. If provided, the *combinefunc* must combine two *state\_data\_type* values, each containing the result of aggregation over some subset of the input values, to produce a new *state\_data\_type* that represents the result of aggregating over both sets of inputs. This function can be thought of as an *sfunc*, where instead of acting upon an individual input row and adding it to the running aggregate state, it adds another aggregate state to the running state.

The *combinefunc* must be declared as taking two arguments of the *state\_data\_type* and returning a value of the *state\_data\_type*. Optionally this function may be "strict". In this case the function will not be called when either of the input states are null; the other state will be taken as the correct result.

For aggregate functions whose *state\_data\_type* is *internal*, the *combinefunc* must not be strict. In this case the *combinefunc* must ensure that null states are handled correctly and that the state being returned is properly stored in the aggregate memory context.

*serialfunc*

An aggregate function whose *state\_data\_type* is *internal* can participate in parallel aggregation only if it has a *serialfunc* function, which must serialize the aggregate state into a *bytea* value for transmission to another process. This function must take a single argument of type *internal* and return type *bytea*. A corresponding *deserialfunc* is also required.

*deserialfunc*

Deserialize a previously serialized aggregate state back into *state\_data\_type*. This function must take two arguments of types *bytea* and *internal*, and produce a result of type *internal*. (Note: the second, *internal* argument is unused, but is required for type safety reasons.)

*initial\_condition*

The initial setting for the state value. This must be a string constant in the form accepted for the data type *state\_data\_type*. If not specified, the state value starts out null.

*msfunc*

The name of the forward state transition function to be called for each input row in moving-aggregate mode. This is exactly like the regular transition function, except that its first argument and result are of type *mstate\_data\_type*, which might be different from *state\_data\_type*.

*minvfunc*

The name of the inverse state transition function to be used in moving-aggregate mode. This function has the same argument and result types as *msfunc*, but it is used to remove a value from the current aggregate state, rather than add a value to it. The inverse transition function must have the same strictness attribute as the forward state transition function.

*mstate\_data\_type*

The data type for the aggregate's state value, when using moving-aggregate mode.

*mstate\_data\_size*

The approximate average size (in bytes) of the aggregate's state value, when using moving-aggregate mode. This works the same as *state\_data\_size*.

*mffunc*

The name of the final function called to compute the aggregate's result after all input rows have been traversed, when using moving-aggregate mode. This works the same as *ffunc*, except that its first argument's type is *mstate\_data\_type* and extra dummy arguments are specified by writing `MFINALFUNC_EXTRA`. The aggregate result type determined by *mffunc* or *mstate\_data\_type* must match that determined by the aggregate's regular implementation.

`MFINALFUNC_MODIFY = { READ_ONLY | SHAREABLE | READ_WRITE }`

This option is like `FINALFUNC_MODIFY`, but it describes the behavior of the moving-aggregate final function.

*initial\_condition*

The initial setting for the state value, when using moving-aggregate mode. This works the same as *initial\_condition*.

*sort\_operator*

The associated sort operator for a MIN- or MAX-like aggregate. This is just an operator name (possibly schema-qualified). The operator is assumed to have the same input data types as the aggregate (which must be a single-argument normal aggregate).

`PARALLEL = { SAFE | RESTRICTED | UNSAFE }`

The meanings of `PARALLEL SAFE`, `PARALLEL RESTRICTED`, and `PARALLEL UNSAFE` are the same as in `CREATE FUNCTION`. An aggregate will not be considered for parallelization if it is marked `PARALLEL UNSAFE` (which is the default!) or `PARALLEL RESTRICTED`. Note that the parallel-safety markings of the aggregate's support functions are not consulted by the planner, only the marking of the aggregate itself.

**HYPOTHETICAL**

For ordered-set aggregates only, this flag specifies that the aggregate arguments are to be processed according to the requirements for hypothetical-set aggregates: that is, the last few direct arguments must match the data types of the aggregated (`WITHIN GROUP`) arguments. The **HYPOTHETICAL** flag has no effect on run-time behavior, only on parse-time resolution of the data types and collations of the aggregate's arguments.



The parameters of `CREATE AGGREGATE` can be written in any order, not just the order illustrated above.

## Notes

In parameters that specify support function names, you can write a schema name if needed, for example `SFUNC = public.sum`. Do not write argument types there, however — the argument types of the support functions are determined from other parameters.

Ordinarily, PostgreSQL functions are expected to be true functions that do not modify their input values. However, an aggregate transition function, *when used in the context of an aggregate*, is allowed to cheat and modify its transition-state argument in place. This can provide substantial performance benefits compared to making a fresh copy of the transition state each time.

Likewise, while an aggregate final function is normally expected not to modify its input values, sometimes it is impractical to avoid modifying the transition-state argument. Such behavior must be declared using the `FINALFUNC_MODIFY` parameter. The `READ_WRITE` value indicates that the final function modifies the transition state in unspecified ways. This value prevents use of the aggregate as a window function, and it also prevents merging of transition states for aggregate calls that share the same input values and transition functions. The `SHAREABLE` value indicates that the transition function cannot be applied after the final function, but multiple final-function calls can be performed on the ending transition state value. This value prevents use of the aggregate as a window function, but it allows merging of transition states. (That is, the optimization of interest here is not applying the same final function repeatedly, but applying different final functions to the same ending transition state value. This is allowed as long as none of the final functions are marked `READ_WRITE`.)

If an aggregate supports moving-aggregate mode, it will improve calculation efficiency when the aggregate is used as a window function for a window with moving frame start (that is, a frame start mode other than `UNBOUNDED PRECEDING`). Conceptually, the forward transition function adds input values to the aggregate's state when they enter the window frame from the bottom, and the inverse transition function removes them again when they leave the frame at the top. So, when values are removed, they are always removed in the same order they were added. Whenever the inverse transition function is invoked, it will thus receive the earliest added but not yet removed argument value(s). The inverse transition function can assume that at least one row will remain in the current state after it removes the oldest row. (When this would not be the case, the window function mechanism simply starts a fresh aggregation, rather than using the inverse transition function.)

The forward transition function for moving-aggregate mode is not allowed to return `NULL` as the new state value. If the inverse transition function returns `NULL`, this is taken as an indication that the inverse function cannot reverse the state calculation for this particular input, and so the aggregate calculation will be redone from scratch for the current frame starting position. This convention allows moving-aggregate mode to be used in situations where there are some infrequent cases that are impractical to reverse out of the running state value.

If no moving-aggregate implementation is supplied, the aggregate can still be used with moving frames, but PostgreSQL will recompute the whole aggregation whenever the start of the frame moves. Note that whether or not the aggregate supports moving-aggregate mode, PostgreSQL can handle a moving frame end without recalculation; this is done by continuing to add new values to the aggregate's state. This is why use of an aggregate as a window function requires that the final function be read-only: it must not damage the aggregate's state value, so that the aggregation can be continued even after an aggregate result value has been obtained for one set of frame boundaries.

The syntax for ordered-set aggregates allows `VARIADIC` to be specified for both the last direct parameter and the last aggregated (`WITHIN GROUP`) parameter. However, the current implementation restricts use of `VARIADIC` in two ways. First, ordered-set aggregates can only use `VARIADIC "any"`, not other variadic array types. Second, if the last direct parameter is `VARIADIC "any"`, then there can be only one aggregated parameter and it must also be `VARIADIC "any"`. (In the representation used in the system catalogs, these two parameters are merged into a single `VARIADIC "any"` item, since `pg_proc` cannot represent functions with more than one `VARIADIC` parameter.) If the

aggregate is a hypothetical-set aggregate, the direct arguments that match the `VARIADIC` "any" parameter are the hypothetical ones; any preceding parameters represent additional direct arguments that are not constrained to match the aggregated arguments.

Currently, ordered-set aggregates do not need to support moving-aggregate mode, since they cannot be used as window functions.

Partial (including parallel) aggregation is currently not supported for ordered-set aggregates. Also, it will never be used for aggregate calls that include `DISTINCT` or `ORDER BY` clauses, since those semantics cannot be supported during partial aggregation.

## Examples

See Section 38.12.

## Compatibility

`CREATE AGGREGATE` is a PostgreSQL language extension. The SQL standard does not provide for user-defined aggregate functions.

## See Also

`ALTER AGGREGATE`, `DROP AGGREGATE`

---

# CREATE CAST

CREATE CAST — define a new cast

## Synopsis

```
CREATE CAST (source_type AS target_type)
    WITH FUNCTION function_name [ (argument_type [, ...]) ]
    [ AS ASSIGNMENT | AS IMPLICIT ]

CREATE CAST (source_type AS target_type)
    WITHOUT FUNCTION
    [ AS ASSIGNMENT | AS IMPLICIT ]

CREATE CAST (source_type AS target_type)
    WITH INOUT
    [ AS ASSIGNMENT | AS IMPLICIT ]
```

## Description

CREATE CAST defines a new cast. A cast specifies how to perform a conversion between two data types. For example,

```
SELECT CAST(42 AS float8);
```

converts the integer constant 42 to type float8 by invoking a previously specified function, in this case float8(int4). (If no suitable cast has been defined, the conversion fails.)

Two types can be *binary coercible*, which means that the conversion can be performed “for free” without invoking any function. This requires that corresponding values use the same internal representation. For instance, the types text and varchar are binary coercible both ways. Binary coercibility is not necessarily a symmetric relationship. For example, the cast from xml to text can be performed for free in the present implementation, but the reverse direction requires a function that performs at least a syntax check. (Two types that are binary coercible both ways are also referred to as binary compatible.)

You can define a cast as an *I/O conversion cast* by using the WITH INOUT syntax. An I/O conversion cast is performed by invoking the output function of the source data type, and passing the resulting string to the input function of the target data type. In many common cases, this feature avoids the need to write a separate cast function for conversion. An I/O conversion cast acts the same as a regular function-based cast; only the implementation is different.

By default, a cast can be invoked only by an explicit cast request, that is an explicit CAST(*x* AS *typename*) or *x*::*typename* construct.

If the cast is marked AS ASSIGNMENT then it can be invoked implicitly when assigning a value to a column of the target data type. For example, supposing that foo.f1 is a column of type text, then:

```
INSERT INTO foo (f1) VALUES (42);
```

will be allowed if the cast from type integer to type text is marked AS ASSIGNMENT, otherwise not. (We generally use the term *assignment cast* to describe this kind of cast.)

If the cast is marked `AS IMPLICIT` then it can be invoked implicitly in any context, whether assignment or internally in an expression. (We generally use the term *implicit cast* to describe this kind of cast.) For example, consider this query:

```
SELECT 2 + 4.0;
```

The parser initially marks the constants as being of type `integer` and `numeric` respectively. There is no `integer + numeric` operator in the system catalogs, but there is a `numeric + numeric` operator. The query will therefore succeed if a cast from `integer` to `numeric` is available and is marked `AS IMPLICIT` — which in fact it is. The parser will apply the implicit cast and resolve the query as if it had been written

```
SELECT CAST ( 2 AS numeric ) + 4.0;
```

Now, the catalogs also provide a cast from `numeric` to `integer`. If that cast were marked `AS IMPLICIT` — which it is not — then the parser would be faced with choosing between the above interpretation and the alternative of casting the `numeric` constant to `integer` and applying the `integer + integer` operator. Lacking any knowledge of which choice to prefer, it would give up and declare the query ambiguous. The fact that only one of the two casts is implicit is the way in which we teach the parser to prefer resolution of a mixed `numeric-and-integer` expression as `numeric`; there is no built-in knowledge about that.

It is wise to be conservative about marking casts as implicit. An overabundance of implicit casting paths can cause PostgreSQL to choose surprising interpretations of commands, or to be unable to resolve commands at all because there are multiple possible interpretations. A good rule of thumb is to make a cast implicitly invocable only for information-preserving transformations between types in the same general type category. For example, the cast from `int2` to `int4` can reasonably be implicit, but the cast from `float8` to `int4` should probably be assignment-only. Cross-type-category casts, such as `text` to `int4`, are best made explicit-only.

### Note

Sometimes it is necessary for usability or standards-compliance reasons to provide multiple implicit casts among a set of types, resulting in ambiguity that cannot be avoided as above. The parser has a fallback heuristic based on *type categories* and *preferred types* that can help to provide desired behavior in such cases. See `CREATE TYPE` for more information.

To be able to create a cast, you must own the source or the target data type and have `USAGE` privilege on the other type. To create a binary-coercible cast, you must be superuser. (This restriction is made because an erroneous binary-coercible cast conversion can easily crash the server.)

## Parameters

*source\_type*

The name of the source data type of the cast.

*target\_type*

The name of the target data type of the cast.

*function\_name*[(*argument\_type* [, ...])]

The function used to perform the cast. The function name can be schema-qualified. If it is not, the function will be looked up in the schema search path. The function's result data type must match

the target type of the cast. Its arguments are discussed below. If no argument list is specified, the function name must be unique in its schema.

#### WITHOUT FUNCTION

Indicates that the source type is binary-coercible to the target type, so no function is required to perform the cast.

#### WITH INOUT

Indicates that the cast is an I/O conversion cast, performed by invoking the output function of the source data type, and passing the resulting string to the input function of the target data type.

#### AS ASSIGNMENT

Indicates that the cast can be invoked implicitly in assignment contexts.

#### AS IMPLICIT

Indicates that the cast can be invoked implicitly in any context.

Cast implementation functions can have one to three arguments. The first argument type must be identical to or binary-coercible from the cast's source type. The second argument, if present, must be type `integer`; it receives the type modifier associated with the destination type, or `-1` if there is none. The third argument, if present, must be type `boolean`; it receives `true` if the cast is an explicit cast, `false` otherwise. (Bizarrely, the SQL standard demands different behaviors for explicit and implicit casts in some cases. This argument is supplied for functions that must implement such casts. It is not recommended that you design your own data types so that this matters.)

The return type of a cast function must be identical to or binary-coercible to the cast's target type.

Ordinarily a cast must have different source and target data types. However, it is allowed to declare a cast with identical source and target types if it has a cast implementation function with more than one argument. This is used to represent type-specific length coercion functions in the system catalogs. The named function is used to coerce a value of the type to the type modifier value given by its second argument.

When a cast has different source and target types and a function that takes more than one argument, it supports converting from one type to another and applying a length coercion in a single step. When no such entry is available, coercion to a type that uses a type modifier involves two cast steps, one to convert between data types and a second to apply the modifier.

A cast to or from a domain type currently has no effect. Casting to or from a domain uses the casts associated with its underlying type.

## Notes

Use `DROP CAST` to remove user-defined casts.

Remember that if you want to be able to convert types both ways you need to declare casts both ways explicitly.

It is normally not necessary to create casts between user-defined types and the standard string types (`text`, `varchar`, and `char(n)`), as well as user-defined types that are defined to be in the string category). PostgreSQL provides automatic I/O conversion casts for that. The automatic casts to string types are treated as assignment casts, while the automatic casts from string types are explicit-only. You can override this behavior by declaring your own cast to replace an automatic cast, but usually the only reason to do so is if you want the conversion to be more easily invocable than the standard assignment-only or explicit-only setting. Another possible reason is that you want the conversion to

behave differently from the type's I/O function; but that is sufficiently surprising that you should think twice about whether it's a good idea. (A small number of the built-in types do indeed have different behaviors for conversions, mostly because of requirements of the SQL standard.)

While not required, it is recommended that you continue to follow this old convention of naming cast implementation functions after the target data type. Many users are used to being able to cast data types using a function-style notation, that is *typename(x)*. This notation is in fact nothing more nor less than a call of the cast implementation function; it is not specially treated as a cast. If your conversion functions are not named to support this convention then you will have surprised users. Since PostgreSQL allows overloading of the same function name with different argument types, there is no difficulty in having multiple conversion functions from different types that all use the target type's name.

### Note

Actually the preceding paragraph is an oversimplification: there are two cases in which a function-call construct will be treated as a cast request without having matched it to an actual function. If a function call *name(x)* does not exactly match any existing function, but *name* is the name of a data type and `pg_cast` provides a binary-coercible cast to this type from the type of *x*, then the call will be construed as a binary-coercible cast. This exception is made so that binary-coercible casts can be invoked using functional syntax, even though they lack any function. Likewise, if there is no `pg_cast` entry but the cast would be to or from a string type, the call will be construed as an I/O conversion cast. This exception allows I/O conversion casts to be invoked using functional syntax.

### Note

There is also an exception to the exception: I/O conversion casts from composite types to string types cannot be invoked using functional syntax, but must be written in explicit cast syntax (either `CAST` or `::` notation). This exception was added because after the introduction of automatically-provided I/O conversion casts, it was found too easy to accidentally invoke such a cast when a function or column reference was intended.

## Examples

To create an assignment cast from type `bigint` to type `int4` using the function `int4(bigint)`:

```
CREATE CAST (bigint AS int4) WITH FUNCTION int4(bigint) AS
ASSIGNMENT;
```

(This cast is already predefined in the system.)

## Compatibility

The `CREATE CAST` command conforms to the SQL standard, except that SQL does not make provisions for binary-coercible types or extra arguments to implementation functions. `AS IMPLICIT` is a PostgreSQL extension, too.

## See Also

`CREATE FUNCTION`, `CREATE TYPE`, `DROP CAST`

---

# CREATE COLLATION

CREATE COLLATION — define a new collation

## Synopsis

```
CREATE COLLATION [ IF NOT EXISTS ] name (  
    [ LOCALE = locale, ]  
    [ LC_COLLATE = lc_collate, ]  
    [ LC_CTYPE = lc_ctype, ]  
    [ PROVIDER = provider, ]  
    [ DETERMINISTIC = boolean, ]  
    [ RULES = rules, ]  
    [ VERSION = version ]  
)  
CREATE COLLATION [ IF NOT EXISTS ] name FROM existing_collation
```

## Description

CREATE COLLATION defines a new collation using the specified operating system locale settings, or by copying an existing collation.

To be able to create a collation, you must have CREATE privilege on the destination schema.

## Parameters

IF NOT EXISTS

Do not throw an error if a collation with the same name already exists. A notice is issued in this case. Note that there is no guarantee that the existing collation is anything like the one that would have been created.

*name*

The name of the collation. The collation name can be schema-qualified. If it is not, the collation is defined in the current schema. The collation name must be unique within that schema. (The system catalogs can contain collations with the same name for other encodings, but these are ignored if the database encoding does not match.)

*locale*

The locale name for this collation. See Section 24.2.2.3.1 and Section 24.2.2.3.2 for details.

If *provider* is `libc`, this is a shortcut for setting LC\_COLLATE and LC\_CTYPE at once. If you specify *locale*, you cannot specify either of those parameters.

*lc\_collate*

If *provider* is `libc`, use the specified operating system locale for the LC\_COLLATE locale category.

*lc\_ctype*

If *provider* is `libc`, use the specified operating system locale for the LC\_CTYPE locale category.

*provider*

Specifies the provider to use for locale services associated with this collation. Possible values are `icu` (if the server was built with ICU support) or `libc`. `libc` is the default. See Section 24.1.4 for details.

## DETERMINISTIC

Specifies whether the collation should use deterministic comparisons. The default is true. A deterministic comparison considers strings that are not byte-wise equal to be unequal even if they are considered logically equal by the comparison. PostgreSQL breaks ties using a byte-wise comparison. Comparison that is not deterministic can make the collation be, say, case- or accent-insensitive. For that, you need to choose an appropriate `LC_COLLATE` setting *and* set the collation to not deterministic here.

Nondeterministic collations are only supported with the ICU provider.

*rules*

Specifies additional collation rules to customize the behavior of the collation. This is supported for ICU only. See Section 24.2.3.4 for details.

*version*

Specifies the version string to store with the collation. Normally, this should be omitted, which will cause the version to be computed from the actual version of the collation as provided by the operating system. This option is intended to be used by `pg_upgrade` for copying the version from an existing installation.

See also `ALTER COLLATION` for how to handle collation version mismatches.

*existing\_collation*

The name of an existing collation to copy. The new collation will have the same properties as the existing one, but it will be an independent object.

## Notes

`CREATE COLLATION` takes a `SHARE ROW EXCLUSIVE` lock, which is self-conflicting, on the `pg_collation` system catalog, so only one `CREATE COLLATION` command can run at a time.

Use `DROP COLLATION` to remove user-defined collations.

See Section 24.2.2.3 for more information on how to create collations.

When using the `libc` collation provider, the locale must be applicable to the current database encoding. See `CREATE DATABASE` for the precise rules.

## Examples

To create a collation from the operating system locale `fr_FR.utf8` (assuming the current database encoding is UTF8):

```
CREATE COLLATION french (locale = 'fr_FR.utf8');
```

To create a collation using the ICU provider using German phone book sort order:

```
CREATE COLLATION german_phonebook (provider = icu, locale = 'de-u-co-phonebk');
```



To create a collation using the ICU provider, based on the root ICU locale, with custom rules:

```
CREATE COLLATION custom (provider = icu, locale = 'und', rules =  
    '&V << w <<< W');
```

See Section 24.2.3.4 for further details and examples on the rules syntax.

To create a collation from an existing collation:

```
CREATE COLLATION german FROM "de_DE";
```

This can be convenient to be able to use operating-system-independent collation names in applications.

## Compatibility

There is a `CREATE COLLATION` statement in the SQL standard, but it is limited to copying an existing collation. The syntax to create a new collation is a PostgreSQL extension.

## See Also

`ALTER COLLATION`, `DROP COLLATION`

---

# CREATE CONVERSION

CREATE CONVERSION — define a new encoding conversion

## Synopsis

```
CREATE [ DEFAULT ] CONVERSION name
    FOR source_encoding TO dest_encoding FROM function_name
```

## Description

CREATE CONVERSION defines a new conversion between two character set encodings.

Conversions that are marked DEFAULT can be used for automatic encoding conversion between client and server. To support that usage, two conversions, from encoding A to B *and* from encoding B to A, must be defined.

To be able to create a conversion, you must have EXECUTE privilege on the function and CREATE privilege on the destination schema.

## Parameters

DEFAULT

The DEFAULT clause indicates that this conversion is the default for this particular source to destination encoding. There should be only one default encoding in a schema for the encoding pair.

*name*

The name of the conversion. The conversion name can be schema-qualified. If it is not, the conversion is defined in the current schema. The conversion name must be unique within a schema.

*source\_encoding*

The source encoding name.

*dest\_encoding*

The destination encoding name.

*function\_name*

The function used to perform the conversion. The function name can be schema-qualified. If it is not, the function will be looked up in the path.

The function must have the following signature:

```
conv_proc(
    integer, -- source encoding ID
    integer, -- destination encoding ID
    cstring, -- source string (null terminated C string)
    internal, -- destination (fill with a null terminated C
string)
    integer, -- source string length
```

```
        boolean    -- if true, don't throw an error if conversion
        fails
    ) RETURNS integer;
```

The return value is the number of source bytes that were successfully converted. If the last argument is false, the function must throw an error on invalid input, and the return value is always equal to the source string length.

## Notes

Neither the source nor the destination encoding can be `SQL_ASCII`, as the server's behavior for cases involving the `SQL_ASCII` “encoding” is hard-wired.

Use `DROP CONVERSION` to remove user-defined conversions.

The privileges required to create a conversion might be changed in a future release.

## Examples

To create a conversion from encoding `UTF8` to `LATIN1` using `myfunc`:

```
CREATE CONVERSION myconv FOR 'UTF8' TO 'LATIN1' FROM myfunc;
```

## Compatibility

`CREATE CONVERSION` is a PostgreSQL extension. There is no `CREATE CONVERSION` statement in the SQL standard, but a `CREATE TRANSLATION` statement that is very similar in purpose and syntax.

## See Also

`ALTER CONVERSION`, `CREATE FUNCTION`, `DROP CONVERSION`

---

# CREATE DATABASE

CREATE DATABASE — create a new database

## Synopsis

```
CREATE DATABASE name
    [ WITH ] [ OWNER [=] user_name ]
    [ TEMPLATE [=] template ]
    [ ENCODING [=] encoding ]
    [ STRATEGY [=] strategy ] ]
    [ LOCALE [=] locale ]
    [ LC_COLLATE [=] lc_collate ]
    [ LC_CTYPE [=] lc_ctype ]
    [ ICU_LOCALE [=] icu_locale ]
    [ ICU_RULES [=] icu_rules ]
    [ LOCALE_PROVIDER [=] locale_provider ]
    [ COLLATION_VERSION = collation_version ]
    [ TABLESPACE [=] tablespace_name ]
    [ ALLOW_CONNECTIONS [=] allowconn ]
    [ CONNECTION LIMIT [=] conlimit ]
    [ IS_TEMPLATE [=] istemplate ]
    [ OID [=] oid ]
```

## Description

CREATE DATABASE creates a new PostgreSQL database.

To create a database, you must be a superuser or have the special CREATEDB privilege. See CREATE ROLE.

By default, the new database will be created by cloning the standard system database `template1`. A different template can be specified by writing `TEMPLATE name`. In particular, by writing `TEMPLATE template0`, you can create a pristine database (one where no user-defined objects exist and where the system objects have not been altered) containing only the standard objects predefined by your version of PostgreSQL. This is useful if you wish to avoid copying any installation-local objects that might have been added to `template1`.

## Parameters

*name*

The name of a database to create.

*user\_name*

The role name of the user who will own the new database, or `DEFAULT` to use the default (namely, the user executing the command). To create a database owned by another role, you must be able to SET ROLE to that role.

*template*

The name of the template from which to create the new database, or `DEFAULT` to use the default template (`template1`).

*encoding*

Character set encoding to use in the new database. Specify a string constant (e.g., 'SQL\_ASCII'), or an integer encoding number, or DEFAULT to use the default encoding (namely, the encoding of the template database). The character sets supported by the PostgreSQL server are described in Section 24.3.1. See below for additional restrictions.

*strategy*

Strategy to be used in creating the new database. If the WAL\_LOG strategy is used, the database will be copied block by block and each block will be separately written to the write-ahead log. This is the most efficient strategy in cases where the template database is small, and therefore it is the default. The older FILE\_COPY strategy is also available. This strategy writes a small record to the write-ahead log for each tablespace used by the target database. Each such record represents copying an entire directory to a new location at the filesystem level. While this does reduce the write-ahead log volume substantially, especially if the template database is large, it also forces the system to perform a checkpoint both before and after the creation of the new database. In some situations, this may have a noticeable negative impact on overall system performance.

*locale*

Sets the default collation order and character classification in the new database. Collation affects the sort order applied to strings, e.g., in queries with ORDER BY, as well as the order used in indexes on text columns. Character classification affects the categorization of characters, e.g., lower, upper, and digit. Also sets the associated aspects of the operating system environment, LC\_COLLATE and LC\_CTYPE. The default is the same setting as the template database. See Section 24.2.2.3.1 and Section 24.2.2.3.2 for details.

Can be overridden by setting *lc\_collate*, *lc\_ctype*, or *icu\_locale* individually.

**Tip**

The other locale settings *lc\_messages*, *lc\_monetary*, *lc\_numeric*, and *lc\_time* are not fixed per database and are not set by this command. If you want to make them the default for a specific database, you can use ALTER DATABASE ... SET.

*lc\_collate*

Sets LC\_COLLATE in the database server's operating system environment. The default is the setting of *locale* if specified, otherwise the same setting as the template database. See below for additional restrictions.

If *locale\_provider* is *libc*, also sets the default collation order to use in the new database, overriding the setting *locale*.

*lc\_ctype*

Sets LC\_CTYPE in the database server's operating system environment. The default is the setting of *locale* if specified, otherwise the same setting as the template database. See below for additional restrictions.

If *locale\_provider* is *libc*, also sets the default character classification to use in the new database, overriding the setting *locale*.

*icu\_locale*

Specifies the ICU locale (see Section 24.2.2.3.2) for the database default collation order and character classification, overriding the setting *locale*. The locale provider must be ICU. The default is the setting of *locale* if specified; otherwise the same setting as the template database.

*icu\_rules*

Specifies additional collation rules to customize the behavior of the default collation of this database. This is supported for ICU only. See Section 24.2.3.4 for details.

*locale\_provider*

Specifies the provider to use for the default collation in this database. Possible values are `icu` (if the server was built with ICU support) or `libc`. By default, the provider is the same as that of the *template*. See Section 24.1.4 for details.

*collation\_version*

Specifies the collation version string to store with the database. Normally, this should be omitted, which will cause the version to be computed from the actual version of the database collation as provided by the operating system. This option is intended to be used by `pg_upgrade` for copying the version from an existing installation.

See also ALTER DATABASE for how to handle database collation version mismatches.

*tablespace\_name*

The name of the tablespace that will be associated with the new database, or `DEFAULT` to use the template database's tablespace. This tablespace will be the default tablespace used for objects created in this database. See CREATE TABLESPACE for more information.

*allowconn*

If false then no one can connect to this database. The default is true, allowing connections (except as restricted by other mechanisms, such as `GRANT/REVOKE CONNECT`).

*connlimit*

How many concurrent connections can be made to this database. -1 (the default) means no limit.

*istemplate*

If true, then this database can be cloned by any user with `CREATEDB` privileges; if false (the default), then only superusers or the owner of the database can clone it.

*oid*

The object identifier to be used for the new database. If this parameter is not specified, PostgreSQL will choose a suitable OID automatically. This parameter is primarily intended for internal use by `pg_upgrade`, and only `pg_upgrade` can specify a value less than 16384.

Optional parameters can be written in any order, not only the order illustrated above.

## Notes

`CREATE DATABASE` cannot be executed inside a transaction block.

Errors along the line of “could not initialize database directory” are most likely related to insufficient permissions on the data directory, a full disk, or other file system problems.

Use `DROP DATABASE` to remove a database.

The program `createdb` is a wrapper program around this command, provided for convenience.

Database-level configuration parameters (set via `ALTER DATABASE`) and database-level permissions (set via `GRANT`) are not copied from the template database.

Although it is possible to copy a database other than `template1` by specifying its name as the template, this is not (yet) intended as a general-purpose “COPY DATABASE” facility. The principal limitation is that no other sessions can be connected to the template database while it is being copied. `CREATE DATABASE` will fail if any other connection exists when it starts; otherwise, new connections to the template database are locked out until `CREATE DATABASE` completes. See Section 23.3 for more information.

The character set encoding specified for the new database must be compatible with the chosen locale settings (`LC_COLLATE` and `LC_CTYPE`). If the locale is `C` (or equivalently `POSIX`), then all encodings are allowed, but for other locale settings there is only one encoding that will work properly. (On Windows, however, UTF-8 encoding can be used with any locale.) `CREATE DATABASE` will allow superusers to specify `SQL_ASCII` encoding regardless of the locale settings, but this choice is deprecated and may result in misbehavior of character-string functions if data that is not encoding-compatible with the locale is stored in the database.

The encoding and locale settings must match those of the template database, except when `template0` is used as template. This is because other databases might contain data that does not match the specified encoding, or might contain indexes whose sort ordering is affected by `LC_COLLATE` and `LC_CTYPE`. Copying such data would result in a database that is corrupt according to the new settings. `template0`, however, is known to not contain any data or indexes that would be affected.

There is currently no option to use a database locale with nondeterministic comparisons (see `CREATE COLLATION` for an explanation). If this is needed, then per-column collations would need to be used.

The `CONNECTION LIMIT` option is only enforced approximately; if two new sessions start at about the same time when just one connection “slot” remains for the database, it is possible that both will fail. Also, the limit is not enforced against superusers or background worker processes.

## Examples

To create a new database:

```
CREATE DATABASE lusiadas;
```

To create a database `sales` owned by user `salesapp` with a default tablespace of `salesspace`:

```
CREATE DATABASE sales OWNER salesapp TABLESPACE salesspace;
```

To create a database `music` with a different locale:

```
CREATE DATABASE music
    LOCALE 'sv_SE.utf8'
    TEMPLATE template0;
```

In this example, the `TEMPLATE template0` clause is required if the specified locale is different from the one in `template1`. (If it is not, then specifying the locale explicitly is redundant.)

To create a database `music2` with a different locale and a different character set encoding:

```
CREATE DATABASE music2
    LOCALE 'sv_SE.iso885915'
    ENCODING LATIN9
    TEMPLATE template0;
```

The specified locale and encoding settings must match, or an error will be reported.

Note that locale names are specific to the operating system, so that the above commands might not work in the same way everywhere.

## Compatibility

There is no `CREATE DATABASE` statement in the SQL standard. Databases are equivalent to catalogs, whose creation is implementation-defined.

## See Also

`ALTER DATABASE`, `DROP DATABASE`



---

# CREATE DOMAIN

CREATE DOMAIN — define a new domain

## Synopsis

```
CREATE DOMAIN name [ AS ] data_type
    [ COLLATE collation ]
    [ DEFAULT expression ]
    [ constraint [ ... ] ]
```

where *constraint* is:

```
[ CONSTRAINT constraint_name ]
{ NOT NULL | NULL | CHECK (expression) }
```

## Description

CREATE DOMAIN creates a new domain. A domain is essentially a data type with optional constraints (restrictions on the allowed set of values). The user who defines a domain becomes its owner.

If a schema name is given (for example, CREATE DOMAIN myschema.mydomain ...) then the domain is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema. The domain name must be unique among the types and domains existing in its schema.

Domains are useful for abstracting common constraints on fields into a single location for maintenance. For example, several tables might contain email address columns, all requiring the same CHECK constraint to verify the address syntax. Define a domain rather than setting up each table's constraint individually.

To be able to create a domain, you must have USAGE privilege on the underlying type.

## Parameters

*name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of a domain to be created.

*data\_type*

The underlying data type of the domain. This can include array specifiers.

*collation*

An optional collation for the domain. If no collation is specified, the domain has the same collation behavior as its underlying data type. The underlying type must be collatable if COLLATE is specified.

DEFAULT *expression*

The DEFAULT clause specifies a default value for columns of the domain data type. The value is any variable-free expression (but subqueries are not allowed). The data type of the default expression must match the data type of the domain. If no default value is specified, then the default value is the null value.

The default expression will be used in any insert operation that does not specify a value for the column. If a default value is defined for a particular column, it overrides any default associated with the domain. In turn, the domain default overrides any default value associated with the underlying data type.

`CONSTRAINT constraint_name`

An optional name for a constraint. If not specified, the system generates a name.

`NOT NULL`

Values of this domain are prevented from being null (but see notes below).

`NULL`

Values of this domain are allowed to be null. This is the default.

This clause is only intended for compatibility with nonstandard SQL databases. Its use is discouraged in new applications.

`CHECK (expression)`

CHECK clauses specify integrity constraints or tests which values of the domain must satisfy. Each constraint must be an expression producing a Boolean result. It should use the key word `VALUE` to refer to the value being tested. Expressions evaluating to `TRUE` or `UNKNOWN` succeed. If the expression produces a `FALSE` result, an error is reported and the value is not allowed to be converted to the domain type.

Currently, CHECK expressions cannot contain subqueries nor refer to variables other than `VALUE`.

When a domain has multiple CHECK constraints, they will be tested in alphabetical order by name. (PostgreSQL versions before 9.5 did not honor any particular firing order for CHECK constraints.)

## Notes

Domain constraints, particularly `NOT NULL`, are checked when converting a value to the domain type. It is possible for a column that is nominally of the domain type to read as null despite there being such a constraint. For example, this can happen in an outer-join query, if the domain column is on the nullable side of the outer join. A more subtle example is

```
INSERT INTO tab (domcol) VALUES ((SELECT domcol FROM tab WHERE
false));
```

The empty scalar sub-SELECT will produce a null value that is considered to be of the domain type, so no further constraint checking is applied to it, and the insertion will succeed.

It is very difficult to avoid such problems, because of SQL's general assumption that a null value is a valid value of every data type. Best practice therefore is to design a domain's constraints so that a null value is allowed, and then to apply column `NOT NULL` constraints to columns of the domain type as needed, rather than directly to the domain type.

PostgreSQL assumes that CHECK constraints' conditions are immutable, that is, they will always give the same result for the same input value. This assumption is what justifies examining CHECK constraints only when a value is first converted to be of a domain type, and not at other times. (This is essentially the same as the treatment of table CHECK constraints, as described in Section 5.4.1.)

An example of a common way to break this assumption is to reference a user-defined function in a CHECK expression, and then change the behavior of that function. PostgreSQL does not disallow that, but it will not notice if there are stored values of the domain type that now violate the CHECK

constraint. That would cause a subsequent database dump and restore to fail. The recommended way to handle such a change is to drop the constraint (using `ALTER DOMAIN`), adjust the function definition, and re-add the constraint, thereby rechecking it against stored data.

It's also good practice to ensure that domain `CHECK` expressions will not throw errors.

## Examples

This example creates the `us_postal_code` data type and then uses the type in a table definition. A regular expression test is used to verify that the value looks like a valid US postal code:

```
CREATE DOMAIN us_postal_code AS TEXT
CHECK(
    VALUE ~ '^\\d{5}$'
OR VALUE ~ '^\\d{5}-\\d{4}$'
);

CREATE TABLE us_snail_addy (
    address_id SERIAL PRIMARY KEY,
    street1 TEXT NOT NULL,
    street2 TEXT,
    street3 TEXT,
    city TEXT NOT NULL,
    postal us_postal_code NOT NULL
);
```

## Compatibility

The command `CREATE DOMAIN` conforms to the SQL standard.

## See Also

`ALTER DOMAIN`, `DROP DOMAIN`

---

# CREATE EVENT TRIGGER

CREATE EVENT TRIGGER — define a new event trigger

## Synopsis

```
CREATE EVENT TRIGGER name
  ON event
  [ WHEN filter_variable IN (filter_value [, ... ]) [ AND ... ] ]
  EXECUTE { FUNCTION | PROCEDURE } function_name()
```

## Description

CREATE EVENT TRIGGER creates a new event trigger. Whenever the designated event occurs and the WHEN condition associated with the trigger, if any, is satisfied, the trigger function will be executed. For a general introduction to event triggers, see Chapter 40. The user who creates an event trigger becomes its owner.

## Parameters

*name*

The name to give the new trigger. This name must be unique within the database.

*event*

The name of the event that triggers a call to the given function. See Section 40.1 for more information on event names.

*filter\_variable*

The name of a variable used to filter events. This makes it possible to restrict the firing of the trigger to a subset of the cases in which it is supported. Currently the only supported *filter\_variable* is TAG.

*filter\_value*

A list of values for the associated *filter\_variable* for which the trigger should fire. For TAG, this means a list of command tags (e.g., 'DROP FUNCTION').

*function\_name*

A user-supplied function that is declared as taking no argument and returning type event\_trigger.

In the syntax of CREATE EVENT TRIGGER, the keywords FUNCTION and PROCEDURE are equivalent, but the referenced function must in any case be a function, not a procedure. The use of the keyword PROCEDURE here is historical and deprecated.

## Notes

Only superusers can create event triggers.

Event triggers are disabled in single-user mode (see postgres). If an erroneous event trigger disables the database so much that you can't even drop the trigger, restart in single-user mode and you'll be able to do that.

## Examples

Forbid the execution of any DDL command:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION abort_any_command()  
  RETURNS event_trigger  
  LANGUAGE plpgsql  
  AS $$  
BEGIN  
  RAISE EXCEPTION 'command % is disabled', tg_tag;  
END;  
$$;  
  
CREATE EVENT TRIGGER abort_ddl ON ddl_command_start  
  EXECUTE FUNCTION abort_any_command();
```

## Compatibility

There is no CREATE EVENT TRIGGER statement in the SQL standard.

## See Also

ALTER EVENT TRIGGER, DROP EVENT TRIGGER, CREATE FUNCTION

---

# CREATE EXTENSION

CREATE EXTENSION — install an extension

## Synopsis

```
CREATE EXTENSION [ IF NOT EXISTS ] extension_name
    [ WITH ] [ SCHEMA schema_name ]
    [ VERSION version ]
    [ CASCADE ]
```

## Description

CREATE EXTENSION loads a new extension into the current database. There must not be an extension of the same name already loaded.

Loading an extension essentially amounts to running the extension's script file. The script will typically create new SQL objects such as functions, data types, operators and index support methods. CREATE EXTENSION additionally records the identities of all the created objects, so that they can be dropped again if DROP EXTENSION is issued.

The user who runs CREATE EXTENSION becomes the owner of the extension for purposes of later privilege checks, and normally also becomes the owner of any objects created by the extension's script.

Loading an extension ordinarily requires the same privileges that would be required to create its component objects. For many extensions this means superuser privileges are needed. However, if the extension is marked *trusted* in its control file, then it can be installed by any user who has CREATE privilege on the current database. In this case the extension object itself will be owned by the calling user, but the contained objects will be owned by the bootstrap superuser (unless the extension's script explicitly assigns them to the calling user). This configuration gives the calling user the right to drop the extension, but not to modify individual objects within it.

## Parameters

IF NOT EXISTS

Do not throw an error if an extension with the same name already exists. A notice is issued in this case. Note that there is no guarantee that the existing extension is anything like the one that would have been created from the currently-available script file.

*extension\_name*

The name of the extension to be installed. PostgreSQL will create the extension using details from the file `SHAREDIR/extension/extension_name.control`.

*schema\_name*

The name of the schema in which to install the extension's objects, given that the extension allows its contents to be relocated. The named schema must already exist. If not specified, and the extension's control file does not specify a schema either, the current default object creation schema is used.

If the extension specifies a *schema* parameter in its control file, then that schema cannot be overridden with a SCHEMA clause. Normally, an error will be raised if a SCHEMA clause is given and it conflicts with the extension's *schema* parameter. However, if the CASCADE clause is also

given, then *schema\_name* is ignored when it conflicts. The given *schema\_name* will be used for installation of any needed extensions that do not specify *schema* in their control files.

Remember that the extension itself is not considered to be within any schema: extensions have unqualified names that must be unique database-wide. But objects belonging to the extension can be within schemas.

*version*

The version of the extension to install. This can be written as either an identifier or a string literal. The default version is whatever is specified in the extension's control file.

CASCADE

Automatically install any extensions that this extension depends on that are not already installed. Their dependencies are likewise automatically installed, recursively. The *SCHEMA* clause, if given, applies to all extensions that get installed this way. Other options of the statement are not applied to automatically-installed extensions; in particular, their default versions are always selected.

## Notes

Before you can use `CREATE EXTENSION` to load an extension into a database, the extension's supporting files must be installed. Information about installing the extensions supplied with PostgreSQL can be found in Additional Supplied Modules.

The extensions currently available for loading can be identified from the `pg_available_extensions` or `pg_available_extension_versions` system views.

### Caution

Installing an extension as superuser requires trusting that the extension's author wrote the extension installation script in a secure fashion. It is not terribly difficult for a malicious user to create trojan-horse objects that will compromise later execution of a carelessly-written extension script, allowing that user to acquire superuser privileges. However, trojan-horse objects are only hazardous if they are in the `search_path` during script execution, meaning that they are in the extension's installation target schema or in the schema of some extension it depends on. Therefore, a good rule of thumb when dealing with extensions whose scripts have not been carefully vetted is to install them only into schemas for which `CREATE` privilege has not been and will not be granted to any untrusted users. Likewise for any extensions they depend on.

The extensions supplied with PostgreSQL are believed to be secure against installation-time attacks of this sort, except for a few that depend on other extensions. As stated in the documentation for those extensions, they should be installed into secure schemas, or installed into the same schemas as the extensions they depend on, or both.

For information about writing new extensions, see Section 38.17.

## Examples

Install the `hstore` extension into the current database, placing its objects in schema `addons`:

```
CREATE EXTENSION hstore SCHEMA addons;
```

Another way to accomplish the same thing:

```
SET search_path = addons;  
CREATE EXTENSION hstore;
```

## Compatibility

CREATE EXTENSION is a PostgreSQL extension.

## See Also

ALTER EXTENSION, DROP EXTENSION



---

# CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER

CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER — define a new foreign-data wrapper

## Synopsis

```
CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER name
    [ HANDLER handler_function | NO HANDLER ]
    [ VALIDATOR validator_function | NO VALIDATOR ]
    [ OPTIONS ( option 'value' [, ... ] ) ]
```

## Description

CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER creates a new foreign-data wrapper. The user who defines a foreign-data wrapper becomes its owner.

The foreign-data wrapper name must be unique within the database.

Only superusers can create foreign-data wrappers.

## Parameters

*name*

The name of the foreign-data wrapper to be created.

HANDLER *handler\_function*

*handler\_function* is the name of a previously registered function that will be called to retrieve the execution functions for foreign tables. The handler function must take no arguments, and its return type must be `fdw_handler`.

It is possible to create a foreign-data wrapper with no handler function, but foreign tables using such a wrapper can only be declared, not accessed.

VALIDATOR *validator\_function*

*validator\_function* is the name of a previously registered function that will be called to check the generic options given to the foreign-data wrapper, as well as options for foreign servers, user mappings and foreign tables using the foreign-data wrapper. If no validator function or NO VALIDATOR is specified, then options will not be checked at creation time. (Foreign-data wrappers will possibly ignore or reject invalid option specifications at run time, depending on the implementation.) The validator function must take two arguments: one of type `text[]`, which will contain the array of options as stored in the system catalogs, and one of type `oid`, which will be the OID of the system catalog containing the options. The return type is ignored; the function should report invalid options using the `ereport(ERROR)` function.

OPTIONS ( *option* 'value' [, ... ] )

This clause specifies options for the new foreign-data wrapper. The allowed option names and values are specific to each foreign data wrapper and are validated using the foreign-data wrapper's validator function. Option names must be unique.

## Notes

PostgreSQL's foreign-data functionality is still under active development. Optimization of queries is primitive (and mostly left to the wrapper, too). Thus, there is considerable room for future performance improvements.

## Examples

Create a useless foreign-data wrapper dummy:

```
CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER dummy;
```

Create a foreign-data wrapper file with handler function `file_fdw_handler`:

```
CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER file HANDLER file_fdw_handler;
```

Create a foreign-data wrapper `mywrapper` with some options:

```
CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER mywrapper  
    OPTIONS (debug 'true');
```

## Compatibility

`CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER` conforms to ISO/IEC 9075-9 (SQL/MED), with the exception that the `HANDLER` and `VALIDATOR` clauses are extensions and the standard clauses `LIBRARY` and `LANGUAGE` are not implemented in PostgreSQL.

Note, however, that the SQL/MED functionality as a whole is not yet conforming.

## See Also

`ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER`, `DROP FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER`, `CREATE SERVER`, `CREATE USER MAPPING`, `CREATE FOREIGN TABLE`

---

# CREATE FOREIGN TABLE

CREATE FOREIGN TABLE — define a new foreign table

## Synopsis

```
CREATE FOREIGN TABLE [ IF NOT EXISTS ] table_name ( [
    { column_name data_type [ OPTIONS ( option 'value' [, ... ] ) ]
  [ COLLATE collation ] [ column_constraint [ ... ] ]
    | table_constraint }
    [, ... ]
] )
[ INHERITS ( parent_table [, ... ] ) ]
SERVER server_name
[ OPTIONS ( option 'value' [, ... ] ) ]
```

```
CREATE FOREIGN TABLE [ IF NOT EXISTS ] table_name
PARTITION OF parent_table [ (
    { column_name [ WITH OPTIONS ] [ column_constraint [ ... ] ]
    | table_constraint }
    [, ... ]
) ]
{ FOR VALUES partition_bound_spec | DEFAULT }
SERVER server_name
[ OPTIONS ( option 'value' [, ... ] ) ]
```

where *column\_constraint* is:

```
[ CONSTRAINT constraint_name ]
{ NOT NULL |
  NULL |
  CHECK ( expression ) [ NO INHERIT ] |
  DEFAULT default_expr |
  GENERATED ALWAYS AS ( generation_expr ) STORED }
```

and *table\_constraint* is:

```
[ CONSTRAINT constraint_name ]
CHECK ( expression ) [ NO INHERIT ]
```

and *partition\_bound\_spec* is:

```
IN ( partition_bound_expr [, ...] ) |
FROM ( { partition_bound_expr | MINVALUE | MAXVALUE } [, ...] )
  TO ( { partition_bound_expr | MINVALUE | MAXVALUE } [, ...] ) |
WITH ( MODULUS numeric_literal, REMAINDER numeric_literal )
```

## Description

CREATE FOREIGN TABLE creates a new foreign table in the current database. The table will be owned by the user issuing the command.

If a schema name is given (for example, CREATE FOREIGN TABLE myschema.mytable ...) then the table is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema. The

name of the foreign table must be distinct from the name of any other relation (table, sequence, index, view, materialized view, or foreign table) in the same schema.

CREATE FOREIGN TABLE also automatically creates a data type that represents the composite type corresponding to one row of the foreign table. Therefore, foreign tables cannot have the same name as any existing data type in the same schema.

If PARTITION OF clause is specified then the table is created as a partition of *parent\_table* with specified bounds.

To be able to create a foreign table, you must have USAGE privilege on the foreign server, as well as USAGE privilege on all column types used in the table.

## Parameters

IF NOT EXISTS

Do not throw an error if a relation with the same name already exists. A notice is issued in this case. Note that there is no guarantee that the existing relation is anything like the one that would have been created.

*table\_name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table to be created.

*column\_name*

The name of a column to be created in the new table.

*data\_type*

The data type of the column. This can include array specifiers. For more information on the data types supported by PostgreSQL, refer to Chapter 8.

COLLATE *collation*

The COLLATE clause assigns a collation to the column (which must be of a collatable data type). If not specified, the column data type's default collation is used.

INHERITS ( *parent\_table* [, ... ] )

The optional INHERITS clause specifies a list of tables from which the new foreign table automatically inherits all columns. Parent tables can be plain tables or foreign tables. See the similar form of CREATE TABLE for more details.

PARTITION OF *parent\_table* { FOR VALUES *partition\_bound\_spec* | DEFAULT }

This form can be used to create the foreign table as partition of the given parent table with specified partition bound values. See the similar form of CREATE TABLE for more details. Note that it is currently not allowed to create the foreign table as a partition of the parent table if there are UNIQUE indexes on the parent table. (See also ALTER TABLE ATTACH PARTITION.)

CONSTRAINT *constraint\_name*

An optional name for a column or table constraint. If the constraint is violated, the constraint name is present in error messages, so constraint names like `col must be positive` can be used to communicate helpful constraint information to client applications. (Double-quotes are

needed to specify constraint names that contain spaces.) If a constraint name is not specified, the system generates a name.

NOT NULL

The column is not allowed to contain null values.

NULL

The column is allowed to contain null values. This is the default.

This clause is only provided for compatibility with non-standard SQL databases. Its use is discouraged in new applications.

CHECK ( *expression* ) [ NO INHERIT ]

The CHECK clause specifies an expression producing a Boolean result which each row in the foreign table is expected to satisfy; that is, the expression should produce TRUE or UNKNOWN, never FALSE, for all rows in the foreign table. A check constraint specified as a column constraint should reference that column's value only, while an expression appearing in a table constraint can reference multiple columns.

Currently, CHECK expressions cannot contain subqueries nor refer to variables other than columns of the current row. The system column `tableoid` may be referenced, but not any other system column.

A constraint marked with NO INHERIT will not propagate to child tables.

DEFAULT *default\_expr*

The DEFAULT clause assigns a default data value for the column whose column definition it appears within. The value is any variable-free expression (subqueries and cross-references to other columns in the current table are not allowed). The data type of the default expression must match the data type of the column.

The default expression will be used in any insert operation that does not specify a value for the column. If there is no default for a column, then the default is null.

GENERATED ALWAYS AS ( *generation\_expr* ) STORED

This clause creates the column as a *generated column*. The column cannot be written to, and when read the result of the specified expression will be returned.

The keyword STORED is required to signify that the column will be computed on write. (The computed value will be presented to the foreign-data wrapper for storage and must be returned on reading.)

The generation expression can refer to other columns in the table, but not other generated columns. Any functions and operators used must be immutable. References to other tables are not allowed.

*server\_name*

The name of an existing foreign server to use for the foreign table. For details on defining a server, see CREATE SERVER.

OPTIONS ( *option* 'value' [, ...] )

Options to be associated with the new foreign table or one of its columns. The allowed option names and values are specific to each foreign data wrapper and are validated using the foreign-data wrapper's validator function. Duplicate option names are not allowed (although it's OK for a table option and a column option to have the same name).

## Notes

Constraints on foreign tables (such as `CHECK` or `NOT NULL` clauses) are not enforced by the core PostgreSQL system, and most foreign data wrappers do not attempt to enforce them either; that is, the constraint is simply assumed to hold true. There would be little point in such enforcement since it would only apply to rows inserted or updated via the foreign table, and not to rows modified by other means, such as directly on the remote server. Instead, a constraint attached to a foreign table should represent a constraint that is being enforced by the remote server.

Some special-purpose foreign data wrappers might be the only access mechanism for the data they access, and in that case it might be appropriate for the foreign data wrapper itself to perform constraint enforcement. But you should not assume that a wrapper does that unless its documentation says so.

Although PostgreSQL does not attempt to enforce constraints on foreign tables, it does assume that they are correct for purposes of query optimization. If there are rows visible in the foreign table that do not satisfy a declared constraint, queries on the table might produce errors or incorrect answers. It is the user's responsibility to ensure that the constraint definition matches reality.

### Caution

When a foreign table is used as a partition of a partitioned table, there is an implicit constraint that its contents must satisfy the partitioning rule. Again, it is the user's responsibility to ensure that that is true, which is best done by installing a matching constraint on the remote server.

Within a partitioned table containing foreign-table partitions, an `UPDATE` that changes the partition key value can cause a row to be moved from a local partition to a foreign-table partition, provided the foreign data wrapper supports tuple routing. However, it is not currently possible to move a row from a foreign-table partition to another partition. An `UPDATE` that would require doing that will fail due to the partitioning constraint, assuming that that is properly enforced by the remote server.

Similar considerations apply to generated columns. Stored generated columns are computed on insert or update on the local PostgreSQL server and handed to the foreign-data wrapper for writing out to the foreign data store, but it is not enforced that a query of the foreign table returns values for stored generated columns that are consistent with the generation expression. Again, this might result in incorrect query results.

## Examples

Create foreign table `films`, which will be accessed through the server `film_server`:

```
CREATE FOREIGN TABLE films (  
    code          char(5) NOT NULL,  
    title         varchar(40) NOT NULL,  
    did           integer NOT NULL,  
    date_prod     date,  
    kind          varchar(10),  
    len           interval hour to minute  
)  
SERVER film_server;
```

Create foreign table `measurement_y2016m07`, which will be accessed through the server `server_07`, as a partition of the range partitioned table `measurement`:

```
CREATE FOREIGN TABLE measurement_y2016m07
```

```
PARTITION OF measurement FOR VALUES FROM ('2016-07-01') TO  
( '2016-08-01' )  
SERVER server_07;
```

## Compatibility

The `CREATE FOREIGN TABLE` command largely conforms to the SQL standard; however, much as with `CREATE TABLE`, `NULL` constraints and zero-column foreign tables are permitted. The ability to specify column default values is also a PostgreSQL extension. Table inheritance, in the form defined by PostgreSQL, is nonstandard.

## See Also

`ALTER FOREIGN TABLE`, `DROP FOREIGN TABLE`, `CREATE TABLE`, `CREATE SERVER`, `IMPORT FOREIGN SCHEMA`

---

# CREATE FUNCTION

CREATE FUNCTION — define a new function

## Synopsis

```
CREATE [ OR REPLACE ] FUNCTION
    name ( [ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype [ { DEFAULT |
= } default_expr ] [, ...] ] )
    [ RETURNS rettype
      | RETURNS TABLE ( column_name column_type [, ...] ) ]
    { LANGUAGE lang_name
      | TRANSFORM { FOR TYPE type_name } [, ... ]
      | WINDOW
      | { IMMUTABLE | STABLE | VOLATILE }
      | [ NOT ] LEAKPROOF
      | { CALLED ON NULL INPUT | RETURNS NULL ON NULL INPUT |
STRICT }
      | { [ EXTERNAL ] SECURITY INVOKER | [ EXTERNAL ] SECURITY
DEFINER }
      | PARALLEL { UNSAFE | RESTRICTED | SAFE }
      | COST execution_cost
      | ROWS result_rows
      | SUPPORT support_function
      | SET configuration_parameter { TO value | = value | FROM
CURRENT }
      | AS 'definition'
      | AS 'obj_file', 'link_symbol'
      | sql_body
    } ...
```

## Description

CREATE FUNCTION defines a new function. CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION will either create a new function, or replace an existing definition. To be able to define a function, the user must have the USAGE privilege on the language.

If a schema name is included, then the function is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema. The name of the new function must not match any existing function or procedure with the same input argument types in the same schema. However, functions and procedures of different argument types can share a name (this is called *overloading*).

To replace the current definition of an existing function, use CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION. It is not possible to change the name or argument types of a function this way (if you tried, you would actually be creating a new, distinct function). Also, CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION will not let you change the return type of an existing function. To do that, you must drop and recreate the function. (When using OUT parameters, that means you cannot change the types of any OUT parameters except by dropping the function.)

When CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION is used to replace an existing function, the ownership and permissions of the function do not change. All other function properties are assigned the values specified or implied in the command. You must own the function to replace it (this includes being a member of the owning role).

If you drop and then recreate a function, the new function is not the same entity as the old; you will have to drop existing rules, views, triggers, etc. that refer to the old function. Use CREATE OR REPLACE



FUNCTION to change a function definition without breaking objects that refer to the function. Also, ALTER FUNCTION can be used to change most of the auxiliary properties of an existing function.

The user that creates the function becomes the owner of the function.

To be able to create a function, you must have USAGE privilege on the argument types and the return type.

Refer to Section 38.3 for further information on writing functions.

## Parameters

*name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the function to create.

*argmode*

The mode of an argument: IN, OUT, INOUT, or VARIADIC. If omitted, the default is IN. Only OUT arguments can follow a VARIADIC one. Also, OUT and INOUT arguments cannot be used together with the RETURNS TABLE notation.

*argname*

The name of an argument. Some languages (including SQL and PL/pgSQL) let you use the name in the function body. For other languages the name of an input argument is just extra documentation, so far as the function itself is concerned; but you can use input argument names when calling a function to improve readability (see Section 4.3). In any case, the name of an output argument is significant, because it defines the column name in the result row type. (If you omit the name for an output argument, the system will choose a default column name.)

*argtype*

The data type(s) of the function's arguments (optionally schema-qualified), if any. The argument types can be base, composite, or domain types, or can reference the type of a table column.

Depending on the implementation language it might also be allowed to specify “pseudo-types” such as `cstring`. Pseudo-types indicate that the actual argument type is either incompletely specified, or outside the set of ordinary SQL data types.

The type of a column is referenced by writing `table_name.column_name%TYPE`. Using this feature can sometimes help make a function independent of changes to the definition of a table.

*default\_expr*

An expression to be used as default value if the parameter is not specified. The expression has to be coercible to the argument type of the parameter. Only input (including INOUT) parameters can have a default value. All input parameters following a parameter with a default value must have default values as well.

*rettype*

The return data type (optionally schema-qualified). The return type can be a base, composite, or domain type, or can reference the type of a table column. Depending on the implementation language it might also be allowed to specify “pseudo-types” such as `cstring`. If the function is not supposed to return a value, specify `void` as the return type.

When there are OUT or INOUT parameters, the RETURNS clause can be omitted. If present, it must agree with the result type implied by the output parameters: RECORD if there are multiple output parameters, or the same type as the single output parameter.

The `SETOF` modifier indicates that the function will return a set of items, rather than a single item.

The type of a column is referenced by writing `table_name.column_name%TYPE`.

*column\_name*

The name of an output column in the `RETURNS TABLE` syntax. This is effectively another way of declaring a named `OUT` parameter, except that `RETURNS TABLE` also implies `RETURNS SETOF`.

*column\_type*

The data type of an output column in the `RETURNS TABLE` syntax.

*lang\_name*

The name of the language that the function is implemented in. It can be `sql`, `c`, `internal`, or the name of a user-defined procedural language, e.g., `plpgsql`. The default is `sql` if `sql_body` is specified. Enclosing the name in single quotes is deprecated and requires matching case.

`TRANSFORM { FOR TYPE type_name } [ , ... ] }`

Lists which transforms a call to the function should apply. Transforms convert between SQL types and language-specific data types; see `CREATE TRANSFORM`. Procedural language implementations usually have hardcoded knowledge of the built-in types, so those don't need to be listed here. If a procedural language implementation does not know how to handle a type and no transform is supplied, it will fall back to a default behavior for converting data types, but this depends on the implementation.

`WINDOW`

`WINDOW` indicates that the function is a *window function* rather than a plain function. This is currently only useful for functions written in C. The `WINDOW` attribute cannot be changed when replacing an existing function definition.

`IMMUTABLE`

`STABLE`

`VOLATILE`

These attributes inform the query optimizer about the behavior of the function. At most one choice can be specified. If none of these appear, `VOLATILE` is the default assumption.

`IMMUTABLE` indicates that the function cannot modify the database and always returns the same result when given the same argument values; that is, it does not do database lookups or otherwise use information not directly present in its argument list. If this option is given, any call of the function with all-constant arguments can be immediately replaced with the function value.

`STABLE` indicates that the function cannot modify the database, and that within a single table scan it will consistently return the same result for the same argument values, but that its result could change across SQL statements. This is the appropriate selection for functions whose results depend on database lookups, parameter variables (such as the current time zone), etc. (It is inappropriate for `AFTER` triggers that wish to query rows modified by the current command.) Also note that the `current_timestamp` family of functions qualify as stable, since their values do not change within a transaction.

`VOLATILE` indicates that the function value can change even within a single table scan, so no optimizations can be made. Relatively few database functions are volatile in this sense; some examples are `random()`, `curval()`, `timeofday()`. But note that any function that has side-effects must be classified volatile, even if its result is quite predictable, to prevent calls from being optimized away; an example is `setval()`.

For additional details see Section 38.7.

**LEAKPROOF**

**LEAKPROOF** indicates that the function has no side effects. It reveals no information about its arguments other than by its return value. For example, a function which throws an error message for some argument values but not others, or which includes the argument values in any error message, is not leakproof. This affects how the system executes queries against views created with the `security_barrier` option or tables with row level security enabled. The system will enforce conditions from security policies and security barrier views before any user-supplied conditions from the query itself that contain non-leakproof functions, in order to prevent the inadvertent exposure of data. Functions and operators marked as leakproof are assumed to be trustworthy, and may be executed before conditions from security policies and security barrier views. In addition, functions which do not take arguments or which are not passed any arguments from the security barrier view or table do not have to be marked as leakproof to be executed before security conditions. See **CREATE VIEW** and Section 41.5. This option can only be set by the superuser.

**CALLED ON NULL INPUT****RETURNS NULL ON NULL INPUT****STRICT**

**CALLED ON NULL INPUT** (the default) indicates that the function will be called normally when some of its arguments are null. It is then the function author's responsibility to check for null values if necessary and respond appropriately.

**RETURNS NULL ON NULL INPUT** or **STRICT** indicates that the function always returns null whenever any of its arguments are null. If this parameter is specified, the function is not executed when there are null arguments; instead a null result is assumed automatically.

**[EXTERNAL] SECURITY INVOKER****[EXTERNAL] SECURITY DEFINER**

**SECURITY INVOKER** indicates that the function is to be executed with the privileges of the user that calls it. That is the default. **SECURITY DEFINER** specifies that the function is to be executed with the privileges of the user that owns it. For information on how to write **SECURITY DEFINER** functions safely, see below.

The key word **EXTERNAL** is allowed for SQL conformance, but it is optional since, unlike in SQL, this feature applies to all functions not only external ones.

**PARALLEL**

**PARALLEL UNSAFE** indicates that the function can't be executed in parallel mode and the presence of such a function in an SQL statement forces a serial execution plan. This is the default. **PARALLEL RESTRICTED** indicates that the function can be executed in parallel mode, but the execution is restricted to parallel group leader. **PARALLEL SAFE** indicates that the function is safe to run in parallel mode without restriction.

Functions should be labeled parallel unsafe if they modify any database state, or if they make changes to the transaction such as using sub-transactions, or if they access sequences or attempt to make persistent changes to settings (e.g., `setval`). They should be labeled as parallel restricted if they access temporary tables, client connection state, cursors, prepared statements, or miscellaneous backend-local state which the system cannot synchronize in parallel mode (e.g., `setseed` cannot be executed other than by the group leader because a change made by another process would not be reflected in the leader). In general, if a function is labeled as being safe when it is restricted or unsafe, or if it is labeled as being restricted when it is in fact unsafe, it may throw errors or produce wrong answers when used in a parallel query. C-language functions could in theory exhibit totally undefined behavior if mislabeled, since there is no way for the system to protect itself against arbitrary C code, but in most likely cases the result will be no worse than for any other function. If in doubt, functions should be labeled as **UNSAFE**, which is the default.

*COST execution\_cost*

A positive number giving the estimated execution cost for the function, in units of `cpu_operator_cost`. If the function returns a set, this is the cost per returned row. If the cost is not specified, 1 unit is assumed for C-language and internal functions, and 100 units for functions in all other languages. Larger values cause the planner to try to avoid evaluating the function more often than necessary.

*ROWS result\_rows*

A positive number giving the estimated number of rows that the planner should expect the function to return. This is only allowed when the function is declared to return a set. The default assumption is 1000 rows.

*SUPPORT support\_function*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of a *planner support function* to use for this function. See Section 38.11 for details. You must be superuser to use this option.

*configuration\_parameter  
value*

The `SET` clause causes the specified configuration parameter to be set to the specified value when the function is entered, and then restored to its prior value when the function exits. `SET FROM CURRENT` saves the value of the parameter that is current when `CREATE FUNCTION` is executed as the value to be applied when the function is entered.

If a `SET` clause is attached to a function, then the effects of a `SET LOCAL` command executed inside the function for the same variable are restricted to the function: the configuration parameter's prior value is still restored at function exit. However, an ordinary `SET` command (without `LOCAL`) overrides the `SET` clause, much as it would do for a previous `SET LOCAL` command: the effects of such a command will persist after function exit, unless the current transaction is rolled back.

See `SET` and Chapter 20 for more information about allowed parameter names and values.

*definition*

A string constant defining the function; the meaning depends on the language. It can be an internal function name, the path to an object file, an SQL command, or text in a procedural language.

It is often helpful to use dollar quoting (see Section 4.1.2.4) to write the function definition string, rather than the normal single quote syntax. Without dollar quoting, any single quotes or backslashes in the function definition must be escaped by doubling them.

*obj\_file, link\_symbol*

This form of the `AS` clause is used for dynamically loadable C language functions when the function name in the C language source code is not the same as the name of the SQL function. The string *obj\_file* is the name of the shared library file containing the compiled C function, and is interpreted as for the `LOAD` command. The string *link\_symbol* is the function's link symbol, that is, the name of the function in the C language source code. If the link symbol is omitted, it is assumed to be the same as the name of the SQL function being defined. The C names of all functions must be different, so you must give overloaded C functions different C names (for example, use the argument types as part of the C names).

When repeated `CREATE FUNCTION` calls refer to the same object file, the file is only loaded once per session. To unload and reload the file (perhaps during development), start a new session.

*sql\_body*

The body of a `LANGUAGE SQL` function. This can either be a single statement

```
RETURN expression
```

or a block

```
BEGIN ATOMIC
    statement;
    statement;
    ...
    statement;
END
```

This is similar to writing the text of the function body as a string constant (see *definition* above), but there are some differences: This form only works for `LANGUAGE SQL`, the string constant form works for all languages. This form is parsed at function definition time, the string constant form is parsed at execution time; therefore this form cannot support polymorphic argument types and other constructs that are not resolvable at function definition time. This form tracks dependencies between the function and objects used in the function body, so `DROP ... CASCADE` will work correctly, whereas the form using string literals may leave dangling functions. Finally, this form is more compatible with the SQL standard and other SQL implementations.

## Overloading

PostgreSQL allows function *overloading*; that is, the same name can be used for several different functions so long as they have distinct input argument types. Whether or not you use it, this capability entails security precautions when calling functions in databases where some users mistrust other users; see Section 10.3.

Two functions are considered the same if they have the same names and *input* argument types, ignoring any *OUT* parameters. Thus for example these declarations conflict:

```
CREATE FUNCTION foo(int) ...
CREATE FUNCTION foo(int, out text) ...
```

Functions that have different argument type lists will not be considered to conflict at creation time, but if defaults are provided they might conflict in use. For example, consider

```
CREATE FUNCTION foo(int) ...
CREATE FUNCTION foo(int, int default 42) ...
```

A call `foo(10)` will fail due to the ambiguity about which function should be called.

## Notes

The full SQL type syntax is allowed for declaring a function's arguments and return value. However, parenthesized type modifiers (e.g., the precision field for type `numeric`) are discarded by `CREATE FUNCTION`. Thus for example `CREATE FUNCTION foo (varchar(10)) ...` is exactly the same as `CREATE FUNCTION foo (varchar) ....`

When replacing an existing function with `CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION`, there are restrictions on changing parameter names. You cannot change the name already assigned to any input parameter (although you can add names to parameters that had none before). If there is more than one output parameter, you cannot change the names of the output parameters, because that would change the column names of the anonymous composite type that describes the function's result. These restrictions are made to ensure that existing calls of the function do not stop working when it is replaced.

If a function is declared `STRICT` with a `VARIADIC` argument, the strictness check tests that the variadic array *as a whole* is non-null. The function will still be called if the array has null elements.

## Examples

Add two integers using an SQL function:

```
CREATE FUNCTION add(integer, integer) RETURNS integer
  AS 'select $1 + $2;'
  LANGUAGE SQL
  IMMUTABLE
  RETURNS NULL ON NULL INPUT;
```

The same function written in a more SQL-conforming style, using argument names and an unquoted body:

```
CREATE FUNCTION add(a integer, b integer) RETURNS integer
  LANGUAGE SQL
  IMMUTABLE
  RETURNS NULL ON NULL INPUT
  RETURN a + b;
```

Increment an integer, making use of an argument name, in PL/pgSQL:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION increment(i integer) RETURNS integer AS
  $$
    BEGIN
      RETURN i + 1;
    END;
  $$ LANGUAGE plpgsql;
```

Return a record containing multiple output parameters:

```
CREATE FUNCTION dup(in int, out f1 int, out f2 text)
  AS $$ SELECT $1, CAST($1 AS text) || ' is text' $$
  LANGUAGE SQL;

SELECT * FROM dup(42);
```

You can do the same thing more verbosely with an explicitly named composite type:

```
CREATE TYPE dup_result AS (f1 int, f2 text);

CREATE FUNCTION dup(int) RETURNS dup_result
  AS $$ SELECT $1, CAST($1 AS text) || ' is text' $$
  LANGUAGE SQL;

SELECT * FROM dup(42);
```

Another way to return multiple columns is to use a TABLE function:

```
CREATE FUNCTION dup(int) RETURNS TABLE(f1 int, f2 text)
  AS $$ SELECT $1, CAST($1 AS text) || ' is text' $$
  LANGUAGE SQL;

SELECT * FROM dup(42);
```

However, a `TABLE` function is different from the preceding examples, because it actually returns a *set* of records, not just one record.

## Writing `SECURITY DEFINER` Functions Safely

Because a `SECURITY DEFINER` function is executed with the privileges of the user that owns it, care is needed to ensure that the function cannot be misused. For security, `search_path` should be set to exclude any schemas writable by untrusted users. This prevents malicious users from creating objects (e.g., tables, functions, and operators) that mask objects intended to be used by the function. Particularly important in this regard is the temporary-table schema, which is searched first by default, and is normally writable by anyone. A secure arrangement can be obtained by forcing the temporary schema to be searched last. To do this, write `pg_temp` as the last entry in `search_path`. This function illustrates safe usage:

```
CREATE FUNCTION check_password(uname TEXT, pass TEXT)
RETURNS BOOLEAN AS $$
DECLARE passed BOOLEAN;
BEGIN
    SELECT (pwd = $2) INTO passed
    FROM   pwds
    WHERE  username = $1;

    RETURN passed;
END;
$$ LANGUAGE plpgsql
SECURITY DEFINER
-- Set a secure search_path: trusted schema(s), then 'pg_temp'.
SET search_path = admin, pg_temp;
```

This function's intention is to access a table `admin.pwds`. But without the `SET` clause, or with a `SET` clause mentioning only `admin`, the function could be subverted by creating a temporary table named `pwds`.

If the security definer function intends to create roles, and if it is running as a non-superuser, `create_role_self_grant` should also be set to a known value using the `SET` clause.

Another point to keep in mind is that by default, execute privilege is granted to `PUBLIC` for newly created functions (see Section 5.7 for more information). Frequently you will wish to restrict use of a security definer function to only some users. To do that, you must revoke the default `PUBLIC` privileges and then grant execute privilege selectively. To avoid having a window where the new function is accessible to all, create it and set the privileges within a single transaction. For example:

```
BEGIN;
CREATE FUNCTION check_password(uname TEXT, pass TEXT) ... SECURITY
DEFINER;
REVOKE ALL ON FUNCTION check_password(uname TEXT, pass TEXT) FROM
PUBLIC;
GRANT EXECUTE ON FUNCTION check_password(uname TEXT, pass TEXT) TO
admins;
COMMIT;
```

## Compatibility

A `CREATE FUNCTION` command is defined in the SQL standard. The PostgreSQL implementation can be used in a compatible way but has many extensions. Conversely, the SQL standard specifies a number of optional features that are not implemented in PostgreSQL.

The following are important compatibility issues:

- `OR REPLACE` is a PostgreSQL extension.
- For compatibility with some other database systems, *argmode* can be written either before or after *argname*. But only the first way is standard-compliant.
- For parameter defaults, the SQL standard specifies only the syntax with the `DEFAULT` key word. The syntax with `=` is used in T-SQL and Firebird.
- The `SETOF` modifier is a PostgreSQL extension.
- Only SQL is standardized as a language.
- All other attributes except `CALLED ON NULL INPUT` and `RETURNS NULL ON NULL INPUT` are not standardized.
- For the body of `LANGUAGE SQL` functions, the SQL standard only specifies the *sql\_body* form.

Simple `LANGUAGE SQL` functions can be written in a way that is both standard-conforming and portable to other implementations. More complex functions using advanced features, optimization attributes, or other languages will necessarily be specific to PostgreSQL in a significant way.

## See Also

ALTER FUNCTION, DROP FUNCTION, GRANT, LOAD, REVOKE



---

# CREATE GROUP

CREATE GROUP — define a new database role

## Synopsis

```
CREATE GROUP name [ [ WITH ] option [ ... ] ]
```

where *option* can be:

```
SUPERUSER | NOSUPERUSER
|
CREATEDB | NOCREATEDB
|
CREATEROLE | NOCREATEROLE
|
INHERIT | NOINHERIT
|
LOGIN | NOLOGIN
|
REPLICATION | NOREPLICATION
|
BYPASSRLS | NOBYPASSRLS
|
CONNECTION LIMIT connlimit
|
[ ENCRYPTED ] PASSWORD 'password' | PASSWORD NULL
|
VALID UNTIL 'timestamp'
|
IN ROLE role_name [, ...]
|
IN GROUP role_name [, ...]
|
ROLE role_name [, ...]
|
ADMIN role_name [, ...]
|
USER role_name [, ...]
|
SYSID uid
```

## Description

CREATE GROUP is now an alias for CREATE ROLE.

## Compatibility

There is no CREATE GROUP statement in the SQL standard.

## See Also

CREATE ROLE

---

# CREATE INDEX

CREATE INDEX — define a new index

## Synopsis

```
CREATE [ UNIQUE ] INDEX [ CONCURRENTLY ] [ [ IF NOT EXISTS ] name ]
ON [ ONLY ] table_name [ USING method ]
    ( { column_name | ( expression ) } [ COLLATE collation ]
[ opclass [ ( opclass_parameter = value [, ... ] ) ] ] [ ASC |
DESC ] [ NULLS { FIRST | LAST } ] [, ...] )
    [ INCLUDE ( column_name [, ...] ) ]
    [ NULLS [ NOT ] DISTINCT ]
    [ WITH ( storage_parameter [= value] [, ... ] ) ]
    [ TABLESPACE tablespace_name ]
    [ WHERE predicate ]
```

## Description

CREATE INDEX constructs an index on the specified column(s) of the specified relation, which can be a table or a materialized view. Indexes are primarily used to enhance database performance (though inappropriate use can result in slower performance).

The key field(s) for the index are specified as column names, or alternatively as expressions written in parentheses. Multiple fields can be specified if the index method supports multicolumn indexes.

An index field can be an expression computed from the values of one or more columns of the table row. This feature can be used to obtain fast access to data based on some transformation of the basic data. For example, an index computed on `upper(col)` would allow the clause `WHERE upper(col) = 'JIM'` to use an index.

PostgreSQL provides the index methods B-tree, hash, GiST, SP-GiST, GIN, and BRIN. Users can also define their own index methods, but that is fairly complicated.

When the WHERE clause is present, a *partial index* is created. A partial index is an index that contains entries for only a portion of a table, usually a portion that is more useful for indexing than the rest of the table. For example, if you have a table that contains both billed and unbilled orders where the unbilled orders take up a small fraction of the total table and yet that is an often used section, you can improve performance by creating an index on just that portion. Another possible application is to use WHERE with UNIQUE to enforce uniqueness over a subset of a table. See Section 11.8 for more discussion.

The expression used in the WHERE clause can refer only to columns of the underlying table, but it can use all columns, not just the ones being indexed. Presently, subqueries and aggregate expressions are also forbidden in WHERE. The same restrictions apply to index fields that are expressions.

All functions and operators used in an index definition must be “immutable”, that is, their results must depend only on their arguments and never on any outside influence (such as the contents of another table or the current time). This restriction ensures that the behavior of the index is well-defined. To use a user-defined function in an index expression or WHERE clause, remember to mark the function immutable when you create it.

## Parameters

### UNIQUE

Causes the system to check for duplicate values in the table when the index is created (if data already exist) and each time data is added. Attempts to insert or update data which would result in duplicate entries will generate an error.

Additional restrictions apply when unique indexes are applied to partitioned tables; see `CREATE TABLE`.

### CONCURRENTLY

When this option is used, PostgreSQL will build the index without taking any locks that prevent concurrent inserts, updates, or deletes on the table; whereas a standard index build locks out writes (but not reads) on the table until it's done. There are several caveats to be aware of when using this option — see *Building Indexes Concurrently* below.

For temporary tables, `CREATE INDEX` is always non-concurrent, as no other session can access them, and non-concurrent index creation is cheaper.

### IF NOT EXISTS

Do not throw an error if a relation with the same name already exists. A notice is issued in this case. Note that there is no guarantee that the existing index is anything like the one that would have been created. Index name is required when `IF NOT EXISTS` is specified.

### INCLUDE

The optional `INCLUDE` clause specifies a list of columns which will be included in the index as *non-key* columns. A non-key column cannot be used in an index scan search qualification, and it is disregarded for purposes of any uniqueness or exclusion constraint enforced by the index. However, an index-only scan can return the contents of non-key columns without having to visit the index's table, since they are available directly from the index entry. Thus, addition of non-key columns allows index-only scans to be used for queries that otherwise could not use them.

It's wise to be conservative about adding non-key columns to an index, especially wide columns. If an index tuple exceeds the maximum size allowed for the index type, data insertion will fail. In any case, non-key columns duplicate data from the index's table and bloat the size of the index, thus potentially slowing searches. Furthermore, B-tree deduplication is never used with indexes that have a non-key column.

Columns listed in the `INCLUDE` clause don't need appropriate operator classes; the clause can include columns whose data types don't have operator classes defined for a given access method.

Expressions are not supported as included columns since they cannot be used in index-only scans.

Currently, the B-tree, GiST and SP-GiST index access methods support this feature. In these indexes, the values of columns listed in the `INCLUDE` clause are included in leaf tuples which correspond to heap tuples, but are not included in upper-level index entries used for tree navigation.

### *name*

The name of the index to be created. No schema name can be included here; the index is always created in the same schema as its parent table. The name of the index must be distinct from the name of any other relation (table, sequence, index, view, materialized view, or foreign table) in that schema. If the name is omitted, PostgreSQL chooses a suitable name based on the parent table's name and the indexed column name(s).

ONLY

Indicates not to recurse creating indexes on partitions, if the table is partitioned. The default is to recurse.

*table\_name*

The name (possibly schema-qualified) of the table to be indexed.

*method*

The name of the index method to be used. Choices are btree, hash, gist, spgist, gin, brin, or user-installed access methods like bloom. The default method is btree.

*column\_name*

The name of a column of the table.

*expression*

An expression based on one or more columns of the table. The expression usually must be written with surrounding parentheses, as shown in the syntax. However, the parentheses can be omitted if the expression has the form of a function call.

*collation*

The name of the collation to use for the index. By default, the index uses the collation declared for the column to be indexed or the result collation of the expression to be indexed. Indexes with non-default collations can be useful for queries that involve expressions using non-default collations.

*opclass*

The name of an operator class. See below for details.

*opclass\_parameter*

The name of an operator class parameter. See below for details.

ASC

Specifies ascending sort order (which is the default).

DESC

Specifies descending sort order.

NULLS FIRST

Specifies that nulls sort before non-nulls. This is the default when DESC is specified.

NULLS LAST

Specifies that nulls sort after non-nulls. This is the default when DESC is not specified.

NULLS DISTINCT

NULLS NOT DISTINCT

Specifies whether for a unique index, null values should be considered distinct (not equal). The default is that they are distinct, so that a unique index could contain multiple null values in a column.

*storage\_parameter*

The name of an index-method-specific storage parameter. See Index Storage Parameters below for details.

*tablespace\_name*

The tablespace in which to create the index. If not specified, `default_tablespace` is consulted, or `temp_tablespaces` for indexes on temporary tables.

*predicate*

The constraint expression for a partial index.

## Index Storage Parameters

The optional `WITH` clause specifies *storage parameters* for the index. Each index method has its own set of allowed storage parameters. The B-tree, hash, GiST and SP-GiST index methods all accept this parameter:

`fillfactor (integer)`

The fillfactor for an index is a percentage that determines how full the index method will try to pack index pages. For B-trees, leaf pages are filled to this percentage during initial index builds, and also when extending the index at the right (adding new largest key values). If pages subsequently become completely full, they will be split, leading to fragmentation of the on-disk index structure. B-trees use a default fillfactor of 90, but any integer value from 10 to 100 can be selected.

B-tree indexes on tables where many inserts and/or updates are anticipated can benefit from lower fillfactor settings at `CREATE INDEX` time (following bulk loading into the table). Values in the range of 50 - 90 can usefully “smooth out” the *rate* of page splits during the early life of the B-tree index (lowering fillfactor like this may even lower the absolute number of page splits, though this effect is highly workload dependent). The B-tree bottom-up index deletion technique described in Section 67.4.2 is dependent on having some “extra” space on pages to store “extra” tuple versions, and so can be affected by fillfactor (though the effect is usually not significant).

In other specific cases it might be useful to increase fillfactor to 100 at `CREATE INDEX` time as a way of maximizing space utilization. You should only consider this when you are completely sure that the table is static (i.e. that it will never be affected by either inserts or updates). A fillfactor setting of 100 otherwise risks *harming* performance: even a few updates or inserts will cause a sudden flood of page splits.

The other index methods use fillfactor in different but roughly analogous ways; the default fillfactor varies between methods.

B-tree indexes additionally accept this parameter:

`deduplicate_items (boolean)`

Controls usage of the B-tree deduplication technique described in Section 67.4.3. Set to `ON` or `OFF` to enable or disable the optimization. (Alternative spellings of `ON` and `OFF` are allowed as described in Section 20.1.) The default is `ON`.

### Note

Turning `deduplicate_items` off via `ALTER INDEX` prevents future insertions from triggering deduplication, but does not in itself make existing posting list tuples use the standard tuple representation.

GiST indexes additionally accept this parameter:

`buffering (enum)`

Determines whether the buffered build technique described in Section 68.4.1 is used to build the index. With `OFF` buffering is disabled, with `ON` it is enabled, and with `AUTO` it is initially disabled, but is turned on on-the-fly once the index size reaches `effective_cache_size`. The default is `AUTO`. Note that if sorted build is possible, it will be used instead of buffered build unless `buffering=ON` is specified.

GIN indexes accept different parameters:

`fastupdate (boolean)`

This setting controls usage of the fast update technique described in Section 70.4.1. It is a Boolean parameter: `ON` enables fast update, `OFF` disables it. The default is `ON`.

### Note

Turning `fastupdate` off via `ALTER INDEX` prevents future insertions from going into the list of pending index entries, but does not in itself flush previous entries. You might want to `VACUUM` the table or call `gin_clean_pending_list` function afterward to ensure the pending list is emptied.

`gin_pending_list_limit (integer)`

Custom `gin_pending_list_limit` parameter. This value is specified in kilobytes.

BRIN indexes accept different parameters:

`pages_per_range (integer)`

Defines the number of table blocks that make up one block range for each entry of a BRIN index (see Section 71.1 for more details). The default is 128.

`autosummarize (boolean)`

Defines whether a summarization run is queued for the previous page range whenever an insertion is detected on the next one. See Section 71.1.1 for more details. The default is `off`.

## Building Indexes Concurrently

Creating an index can interfere with regular operation of a database. Normally PostgreSQL locks the table to be indexed against writes and performs the entire index build with a single scan of the table. Other transactions can still read the table, but if they try to insert, update, or delete rows in the table they will block until the index build is finished. This could have a severe effect if the system is a live production database. Very large tables can take many hours to be indexed, and even for smaller tables, an index build can lock out writers for periods that are unacceptably long for a production system.

PostgreSQL supports building indexes without locking out writes. This method is invoked by specifying the `CONCURRENTLY` option of `CREATE INDEX`. When this option is used, PostgreSQL must perform two scans of the table, and in addition it must wait for all existing transactions that could potentially modify or use the index to terminate. Thus this method requires more total work than a standard index build and takes significantly longer to complete. However, since it allows normal operations to continue while the index is built, this method is useful for adding new indexes in a production environment. Of course, the extra CPU and I/O load imposed by the index creation might slow other operations.

In a concurrent index build, the index is actually entered as an “invalid” index into the system catalogs in one transaction, then two table scans occur in two more transactions. Before each table scan, the index build must wait for existing transactions that have modified the table to terminate. After the second scan, the index build must wait for any transactions that have a snapshot (see Chapter 13) predating the second scan to terminate, including transactions used by any phase of concurrent index builds on other tables, if the indexes involved are partial or have columns that are not simple column references. Then finally the index can be marked “valid” and ready for use, and the `CREATE INDEX` command terminates. Even then, however, the index may not be immediately usable for queries: in the worst case, it cannot be used as long as transactions exist that predate the start of the index build.

If a problem arises while scanning the table, such as a deadlock or a uniqueness violation in a unique index, the `CREATE INDEX` command will fail but leave behind an “invalid” index. This index will be ignored for querying purposes because it might be incomplete; however it will still consume update overhead. The `psql \d` command will report such an index as `INVALID`:

```
postgres=# \d tab
          Table "public.tab"
  Column | Type   | Collation | Nullable | Default
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----
  col    | integer |           |          |
Indexes:
    "idx" btree (col) INVALID
```

The recommended recovery method in such cases is to drop the index and try again to perform `CREATE INDEX CONCURRENTLY`. (Another possibility is to rebuild the index with `REINDEX INDEX CONCURRENTLY`).

Another caveat when building a unique index concurrently is that the uniqueness constraint is already being enforced against other transactions when the second table scan begins. This means that constraint violations could be reported in other queries prior to the index becoming available for use, or even in cases where the index build eventually fails. Also, if a failure does occur in the second scan, the “invalid” index continues to enforce its uniqueness constraint afterwards.

Concurrent builds of expression indexes and partial indexes are supported. Errors occurring in the evaluation of these expressions could cause behavior similar to that described above for unique constraint violations.

Regular index builds permit other regular index builds on the same table to occur simultaneously, but only one concurrent index build can occur on a table at a time. In either case, schema modification of the table is not allowed while the index is being built. Another difference is that a regular `CREATE INDEX` command can be performed within a transaction block, but `CREATE INDEX CONCURRENTLY` cannot.

Concurrent builds for indexes on partitioned tables are currently not supported. However, you may concurrently build the index on each partition individually and then finally create the partitioned index non-concurrently in order to reduce the time where writes to the partitioned table will be locked out. In this case, building the partitioned index is a metadata only operation.

## Notes

See Chapter 11 for information about when indexes can be used, when they are not used, and in which particular situations they can be useful.

Currently, only the B-tree, GiST, GIN, and BRIN index methods support multiple-key-column indexes. Whether there can be multiple key columns is independent of whether `INCLUDE` columns can be added to the index. Indexes can have up to 32 columns, including `INCLUDE` columns. (This limit can be altered when building PostgreSQL.) Only B-tree currently supports unique indexes.

An *operator class* with optional parameters can be specified for each column of an index. The operator class identifies the operators to be used by the index for that column. For example, a B-tree index on four-byte integers would use the `int4_ops` class; this operator class includes comparison functions for four-byte integers. In practice the default operator class for the column's data type is usually sufficient. The main point of having operator classes is that for some data types, there could be more than one meaningful ordering. For example, we might want to sort a complex-number data type either by absolute value or by real part. We could do this by defining two operator classes for the data type and then selecting the proper class when creating an index. More information about operator classes is in Section 11.10 and in Section 38.16.

When `CREATE INDEX` is invoked on a partitioned table, the default behavior is to recurse to all partitions to ensure they all have matching indexes. Each partition is first checked to determine whether an equivalent index already exists, and if so, that index will become attached as a partition index to the index being created, which will become its parent index. If no matching index exists, a new index will be created and automatically attached; the name of the new index in each partition will be determined as if no index name had been specified in the command. If the `ONLY` option is specified, no recursion is done, and the index is marked invalid. (`ALTER INDEX ... ATTACH PARTITION` marks the index valid, once all partitions acquire matching indexes.) Note, however, that any partition that is created in the future using `CREATE TABLE ... PARTITION OF` will automatically have a matching index, regardless of whether `ONLY` is specified.

For index methods that support ordered scans (currently, only B-tree), the optional clauses `ASC`, `DESC`, `NULLS FIRST`, and/or `NULLS LAST` can be specified to modify the sort ordering of the index. Since an ordered index can be scanned either forward or backward, it is not normally useful to create a single-column `DESC` index — that sort ordering is already available with a regular index. The value of these options is that multicolumn indexes can be created that match the sort ordering requested by a mixed-ordering query, such as `SELECT ... ORDER BY x ASC, y DESC`. The `NULLS` options are useful if you need to support “nulls sort low” behavior, rather than the default “nulls sort high”, in queries that depend on indexes to avoid sorting steps.

The system regularly collects statistics on all of a table's columns. Newly-created non-expression indexes can immediately use these statistics to determine an index's usefulness. For new expression indexes, it is necessary to run `ANALYZE` or wait for the autovacuum daemon to analyze the table to generate statistics for these indexes.

For most index methods, the speed of creating an index is dependent on the setting of `maintenance_work_mem`. Larger values will reduce the time needed for index creation, so long as you don't make it larger than the amount of memory really available, which would drive the machine into swapping.

PostgreSQL can build indexes while leveraging multiple CPUs in order to process the table rows faster. This feature is known as *parallel index build*. For index methods that support building indexes in parallel (currently, only B-tree), `maintenance_work_mem` specifies the maximum amount of memory that can be used by each index build operation as a whole, regardless of how many worker processes were started. Generally, a cost model automatically determines how many worker processes should be requested, if any.

Parallel index builds may benefit from increasing `maintenance_work_mem` where an equivalent serial index build will see little or no benefit. Note that `maintenance_work_mem` may influence the number of worker processes requested, since parallel workers must have at least a 32MB share of the total `maintenance_work_mem` budget. There must also be a remaining 32MB share for the leader process. Increasing `max_parallel_maintenance_workers` may allow more workers to be used, which will reduce the time needed for index creation, so long as the index build is not already I/O bound. Of course, there should also be sufficient CPU capacity that would otherwise lie idle.

Setting a value for `parallel_workers` via `ALTER TABLE` directly controls how many parallel worker processes will be requested by a `CREATE INDEX` against the table. This bypasses the cost model completely, and prevents `maintenance_work_mem` from affecting how many parallel workers are requested. Setting `parallel_workers` to 0 via `ALTER TABLE` will disable parallel index builds on the table in all cases.



**Tip**

You might want to reset `parallel_workers` after setting it as part of tuning an index build. This avoids inadvertent changes to query plans, since `parallel_workers` affects *all* parallel table scans.

While `CREATE INDEX` with the `CONCURRENTLY` option supports parallel builds without special restrictions, only the first table scan is actually performed in parallel.

Use `DROP INDEX` to remove an index.

Like any long-running transaction, `CREATE INDEX` on a table can affect which tuples can be removed by concurrent `VACUUM` on any other table.

Prior releases of PostgreSQL also had an R-tree index method. This method has been removed because it had no significant advantages over the GiST method. If `USING rtree` is specified, `CREATE INDEX` will interpret it as `USING gist`, to simplify conversion of old databases to GiST.

Each backend running `CREATE INDEX` will report its progress in the `pg_stat_progress_create_index` view. See Section 28.4.4 for details.

## Examples

To create a unique B-tree index on the column `title` in the table `films`:

```
CREATE UNIQUE INDEX title_idx ON films (title);
```

To create a unique B-tree index on the column `title` with included columns `director` and `rating` in the table `films`:

```
CREATE UNIQUE INDEX title_idx ON films (title) INCLUDE (director,
rating);
```

To create a B-Tree index with deduplication disabled:

```
CREATE INDEX title_idx ON films (title) WITH (deduplicate_items =
off);
```

To create an index on the expression `lower(title)`, allowing efficient case-insensitive searches:

```
CREATE INDEX ON films ((lower(title)));
```

(In this example we have chosen to omit the index name, so the system will choose a name, typically `films_lower_idx`.)

To create an index with non-default collation:

```
CREATE INDEX title_idx_german ON films (title COLLATE "de_DE");
```

To create an index with non-default sort ordering of nulls:

```
CREATE INDEX title_idx_nulls_low ON films (title NULLS FIRST);
```

To create an index with non-default fill factor:

```
CREATE UNIQUE INDEX title_idx ON films (title) WITH (fillfactor =
70);
```

To create a GIN index with fast updates disabled:

```
CREATE INDEX gin_idx ON documents_table USING GIN (locations) WITH
(fastupdate = off);
```

To create an index on the column `code` in the table `films` and have the index reside in the tablespace `indexspace`:

```
CREATE INDEX code_idx ON films (code) TABLESPACE indexspace;
```

To create a GiST index on a point attribute so that we can efficiently use box operators on the result of the conversion function:

```
CREATE INDEX pointloc
  ON points USING gist (box(location,location));
SELECT * FROM points
  WHERE box(location,location) && '(0,0),(1,1)::box;
```

To create an index without locking out writes to the table:

```
CREATE INDEX CONCURRENTLY sales_quantity_index ON sales_table
(quantity);
```

## Compatibility

`CREATE INDEX` is a PostgreSQL language extension. There are no provisions for indexes in the SQL standard.

## See Also

`ALTER INDEX`, `DROP INDEX`, `REINDEX`, Section 28.4.4

---

# CREATE LANGUAGE

CREATE LANGUAGE — define a new procedural language

## Synopsis

```
CREATE [ OR REPLACE ] [ TRUSTED ] [ PROCEDURAL ] LANGUAGE name
    HANDLER call_handler [ INLINE inline_handler ]
    [ VALIDATOR valfunction ]
CREATE [ OR REPLACE ] [ TRUSTED ] [ PROCEDURAL ] LANGUAGE name
```

## Description

CREATE LANGUAGE registers a new procedural language with a PostgreSQL database. Subsequently, functions and procedures can be defined in this new language.

CREATE LANGUAGE effectively associates the language name with handler function(s) that are responsible for executing functions written in the language. Refer to Chapter 58 for more information about language handlers.

CREATE OR REPLACE LANGUAGE will either create a new language, or replace an existing definition. If the language already exists, its parameters are updated according to the command, but the language's ownership and permissions settings do not change, and any existing functions written in the language are assumed to still be valid.

One must have the PostgreSQL superuser privilege to register a new language or change an existing language's parameters. However, once the language is created it is valid to assign ownership of it to a non-superuser, who may then drop it, change its permissions, rename it, or assign it to a new owner. (Do not, however, assign ownership of the underlying C functions to a non-superuser; that would create a privilege escalation path for that user.)

The form of CREATE LANGUAGE that does not supply any handler function is obsolete. For backwards compatibility with old dump files, it is interpreted as CREATE EXTENSION. That will work if the language has been packaged into an extension of the same name, which is the conventional way to set up procedural languages.

## Parameters

TRUSTED

TRUSTED specifies that the language does not grant access to data that the user would not otherwise have. If this key word is omitted when registering the language, only users with the PostgreSQL superuser privilege can use this language to create new functions.

PROCEDURAL

This is a noise word.

*name*

The name of the new procedural language. The name must be unique among the languages in the database.

HANDLER *call\_handler*

*call\_handler* is the name of a previously registered function that will be called to execute the procedural language's functions. The call handler for a procedural language must be written

in a compiled language such as C with version 1 call convention and registered with PostgreSQL as a function taking no arguments and returning the `language_handler` type, a placeholder type that is simply used to identify the function as a call handler.

`INLINE inline_handler`

*inline\_handler* is the name of a previously registered function that will be called to execute an anonymous code block (DO command) in this language. If no *inline\_handler* function is specified, the language does not support anonymous code blocks. The handler function must take one argument of type `internal`, which will be the DO command's internal representation, and it will typically return `void`. The return value of the handler is ignored.

`VALIDATOR valfunction`

*valfunction* is the name of a previously registered function that will be called when a new function in the language is created, to validate the new function. If no validator function is specified, then a new function will not be checked when it is created. The validator function must take one argument of type `oid`, which will be the OID of the to-be-created function, and will typically return `void`.

A validator function would typically inspect the function body for syntactical correctness, but it can also look at other properties of the function, for example if the language cannot handle certain argument types. To signal an error, the validator function should use the `ereport()` function. The return value of the function is ignored.

## Notes

Use `DROP LANGUAGE` to drop procedural languages.

The system catalog `pg_language` (see Section 53.29) records information about the currently installed languages. Also, the `psql` command `\dL` lists the installed languages.

To create functions in a procedural language, a user must have the `USAGE` privilege for the language. By default, `USAGE` is granted to `PUBLIC` (i.e., everyone) for trusted languages. This can be revoked if desired.

Procedural languages are local to individual databases. However, a language can be installed into the `template1` database, which will cause it to be available automatically in all subsequently-created databases.

## Examples

A minimal sequence for creating a new procedural language is:

```
CREATE FUNCTION plsample_call_handler() RETURNS language_handler
AS '$libdir/plsample'
LANGUAGE C;
CREATE LANGUAGE plsample
HANDLER plsample_call_handler;
```

Typically that would be written in an extension's creation script, and users would do this to install the extension:

```
CREATE EXTENSION plsample;
```

## Compatibility

`CREATE LANGUAGE` is a PostgreSQL extension.

## See Also

ALTER LANGUAGE, CREATE FUNCTION, DROP LANGUAGE, GRANT, REVOKE

---

# CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW

CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW — define a new materialized view

## Synopsis

```
CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW [ IF NOT EXISTS ] table_name
    [ ( column_name [, ...] ) ]
    [ USING method ]
    [ WITH ( storage_parameter [= value] [, ...] ) ]
    [ TABLESPACE tablespace_name ]
    AS query
    [ WITH [ NO ] DATA ]
```

## Description

CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW defines a materialized view of a query. The query is executed and used to populate the view at the time the command is issued (unless WITH NO DATA is used) and may be refreshed later using REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW.

CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW is similar to CREATE TABLE AS, except that it also remembers the query used to initialize the view, so that it can be refreshed later upon demand. A materialized view has many of the same properties as a table, but there is no support for temporary materialized views.

CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW requires CREATE privilege on the schema used for the materialized view.

## Parameters

IF NOT EXISTS

Do not throw an error if a materialized view with the same name already exists. A notice is issued in this case. Note that there is no guarantee that the existing materialized view is anything like the one that would have been created.

*table\_name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the materialized view to be created. The name must be distinct from the name of any other relation (table, sequence, index, view, materialized view, or foreign table) in the same schema.

*column\_name*

The name of a column in the new materialized view. If column names are not provided, they are taken from the output column names of the query.

USING *method*

This optional clause specifies the table access method to use to store the contents for the new materialized view; the method needs be an access method of type TABLE. See Chapter 63 for more information. If this option is not specified, the default table access method is chosen for the new materialized view. See `default_table_access_method` for more information.

WITH ( *storage\_parameter* [= *value*] [, ...] )

This clause specifies optional storage parameters for the new materialized view; see Storage Parameters in the CREATE TABLE documentation for more information. All parameters supported

for `CREATE TABLE` are also supported for `CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW`. See `CREATE TABLE` for more information.

`TABLESPACE tablespace_name`

The *tablespace\_name* is the name of the tablespace in which the new materialized view is to be created. If not specified, `default_tablespace` is consulted.

*query*

A `SELECT`, `TABLE`, or `VALUES` command. This query will run within a security-restricted operation; in particular, calls to functions that themselves create temporary tables will fail.

`WITH [ NO ] DATA`

This clause specifies whether or not the materialized view should be populated at creation time. If not, the materialized view will be flagged as unscannable and cannot be queried until `REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW` is used.

## Compatibility

`CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW` is a PostgreSQL extension.

## See Also

`ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW`, `CREATE TABLE AS`, `CREATE VIEW`, `DROP MATERIALIZED VIEW`, `REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW`

---

# CREATE OPERATOR

CREATE OPERATOR — define a new operator

## Synopsis

```
CREATE OPERATOR name (  
    {FUNCTION|PROCEDURE} = function_name  
    [, LEFTARG = left_type ] [, RIGHTARG = right_type ]  
    [, COMMUTATOR = com_op ] [, NEGATOR = neg_op ]  
    [, RESTRICT = res_proc ] [, JOIN = join_proc ]  
    [, HASHES ] [, MERGES ]  
)
```

## Description

CREATE OPERATOR defines a new operator, *name*. The user who defines an operator becomes its owner. If a schema name is given then the operator is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema.

The operator name is a sequence of up to NAMEDATALEN-1 (63 by default) characters from the following list:

+ - \* / < > = ~ ! @ # % ^ & | ` ?

There are a few restrictions on your choice of name:

- -- and /\* cannot appear anywhere in an operator name, since they will be taken as the start of a comment.
- A multicharacter operator name cannot end in + or -, unless the name also contains at least one of these characters:

~ ! @ # % ^ & | ` ?

For example, @- is an allowed operator name, but \*- is not. This restriction allows PostgreSQL to parse SQL-compliant commands without requiring spaces between tokens.

- The symbol => is reserved by the SQL grammar, so it cannot be used as an operator name.

The operator != is mapped to <> on input, so these two names are always equivalent.

For binary operators, both LEFTARG and RIGHTARG must be defined. For prefix operators only RIGHTARG should be defined. The *function\_name* function must have been previously defined using CREATE FUNCTION and must be defined to accept the correct number of arguments (either one or two) of the indicated types.

In the syntax of CREATE OPERATOR, the keywords FUNCTION and PROCEDURE are equivalent, but the referenced function must in any case be a function, not a procedure. The use of the keyword PROCEDURE here is historical and deprecated.

The other clauses specify optional operator optimization clauses. Their meaning is detailed in Section 38.15.



To be able to create an operator, you must have `USAGE` privilege on the argument types and the return type, as well as `EXECUTE` privilege on the underlying function. If a commutator or negator operator is specified, you must own these operators.

## Parameters

*name*

The name of the operator to be defined. See above for allowable characters. The name can be schema-qualified, for example `CREATE OPERATOR myschema.+ ( . . . )`. If not, then the operator is created in the current schema. Two operators in the same schema can have the same name if they operate on different data types. This is called *overloading*.

*function\_name*

The function used to implement this operator.

*left\_type*

The data type of the operator's left operand, if any. This option would be omitted for a prefix operator.

*right\_type*

The data type of the operator's right operand.

*com\_op*

The commutator of this operator.

*neg\_op*

The negator of this operator.

*res\_proc*

The restriction selectivity estimator function for this operator.

*join\_proc*

The join selectivity estimator function for this operator.

`HASHES`

Indicates this operator can support a hash join.

`MERGES`

Indicates this operator can support a merge join.

To give a schema-qualified operator name in *com\_op* or the other optional arguments, use the `OPERATOR ( )` syntax, for example:

```
COMMUTATOR = OPERATOR(myschema.===) ,
```

## Notes

Refer to Section 38.14 for further information.

It is not possible to specify an operator's lexical precedence in `CREATE OPERATOR`, because the parser's precedence behavior is hard-wired. See Section 4.1.6 for precedence details.

The obsolete options `SORT1`, `SORT2`, `LTCMP`, and `GTCMP` were formerly used to specify the names of sort operators associated with a merge-joinable operator. This is no longer necessary, since information about associated operators is found by looking at B-tree operator families instead. If one of these options is given, it is ignored except for implicitly setting `MERGES` true.

Use `DROP OPERATOR` to delete user-defined operators from a database. Use `ALTER OPERATOR` to modify operators in a database.

## Examples

The following command defines a new operator, area-equality, for the data type `box`:

```
CREATE OPERATOR === (  
    LEFTARG = box,  
    RIGHTARG = box,  
    FUNCTION = area_equal_function,  
    COMMUTATOR = ===,  
    NEGATOR = !==,  
    RESTRICT = area_restriction_function,  
    JOIN = area_join_function,  
    HASHES, MERGES  
);
```

## Compatibility

`CREATE OPERATOR` is a PostgreSQL extension. There are no provisions for user-defined operators in the SQL standard.

## See Also

`ALTER OPERATOR`, `CREATE OPERATOR CLASS`, `DROP OPERATOR`

---

# CREATE OPERATOR CLASS

CREATE OPERATOR CLASS — define a new operator class

## Synopsis

```
CREATE OPERATOR CLASS name [ DEFAULT ] FOR TYPE data_type
    USING index_method [ FAMILY family_name ] AS
    { OPERATOR strategy_number operator_name [ ( op_type, op_type
    ) ] [ FOR SEARCH | FOR ORDER BY sort_family_name ]
      | FUNCTION support_number [ ( op_type [ , op_type
    ] ) ] function_name ( argument_type [ , ... ] )
      | STORAGE storage_type
    } [ , ... ]
```

## Description

CREATE OPERATOR CLASS creates a new operator class. An operator class defines how a particular data type can be used with an index. The operator class specifies that certain operators will fill particular roles or “strategies” for this data type and this index method. The operator class also specifies the support functions to be used by the index method when the operator class is selected for an index column. All the operators and functions used by an operator class must be defined before the operator class can be created.

If a schema name is given then the operator class is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema. Two operator classes in the same schema can have the same name only if they are for different index methods.

The user who defines an operator class becomes its owner. Presently, the creating user must be a superuser. (This restriction is made because an erroneous operator class definition could confuse or even crash the server.)

CREATE OPERATOR CLASS does not presently check whether the operator class definition includes all the operators and functions required by the index method, nor whether the operators and functions form a self-consistent set. It is the user's responsibility to define a valid operator class.

Related operator classes can be grouped into *operator families*. To add a new operator class to an existing family, specify the FAMILY option in CREATE OPERATOR CLASS. Without this option, the new class is placed into a family named the same as the new class (creating that family if it doesn't already exist).

Refer to Section 38.16 for further information.

## Parameters

*name*

The name of the operator class to be created. The name can be schema-qualified.

DEFAULT

If present, the operator class will become the default operator class for its data type. At most one operator class can be the default for a specific data type and index method.

*data\_type*

The column data type that this operator class is for.

*index\_method*

The name of the index method this operator class is for.

*family\_name*

The name of the existing operator family to add this operator class to. If not specified, a family named the same as the operator class is used (creating it, if it doesn't already exist).

*strategy\_number*

The index method's strategy number for an operator associated with the operator class.

*operator\_name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an operator associated with the operator class.

*op\_type*

In an OPERATOR clause, the operand data type(s) of the operator, or NONE to signify a prefix operator. The operand data types can be omitted in the normal case where they are the same as the operator class's data type.

In a FUNCTION clause, the operand data type(s) the function is intended to support, if different from the input data type(s) of the function (for B-tree comparison functions and hash functions) or the class's data type (for B-tree sort support functions, B-tree equal image functions, and all functions in GiST, SP-GiST, GIN and BRIN operator classes). These defaults are correct, and so *op\_type* need not be specified in FUNCTION clauses, except for the case of a B-tree sort support function that is meant to support cross-data-type comparisons.

*sort\_family\_name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing btree operator family that describes the sort ordering associated with an ordering operator.

If neither FOR SEARCH nor FOR ORDER BY is specified, FOR SEARCH is the default.

*support\_number*

The index method's support function number for a function associated with the operator class.

*function\_name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of a function that is an index method support function for the operator class.

*argument\_type*

The parameter data type(s) of the function.

*storage\_type*

The data type actually stored in the index. Normally this is the same as the column data type, but some index methods (currently GiST, GIN, SP-GiST and BRIN) allow it to be different. The STORAGE clause must be omitted unless the index method allows a different type to be used. If the column *data\_type* is specified as *anyarray*, the *storage\_type* can be declared as *anyelement* to indicate that the index entries are members of the element type belonging to the actual array type that each particular index is created for.

The OPERATOR, FUNCTION, and STORAGE clauses can appear in any order.

## Notes

Because the index machinery does not check access permissions on functions before using them, including a function or operator in an operator class is tantamount to granting public execute permission on it. This is usually not an issue for the sorts of functions that are useful in an operator class.

The operators should not be defined by SQL functions. An SQL function is likely to be inlined into the calling query, which will prevent the optimizer from recognizing that the query matches an index.

Before PostgreSQL 8.4, the `OPERATOR` clause could include a `RECHECK` option. This is no longer supported because whether an index operator is “lossy” is now determined on-the-fly at run time. This allows efficient handling of cases where an operator might or might not be lossy.

## Examples

The following example command defines a GiST index operator class for the data type `_int4` (array of `int4`). See the `intarray` module for the complete example.

```
CREATE OPERATOR CLASS gist__int_ops
  DEFAULT FOR TYPE _int4 USING gist AS
    OPERATOR          3          &&,
    OPERATOR          6          = (anyarray, anyarray),
    OPERATOR          7          @>,
    OPERATOR          8          <@,
    OPERATOR          20         @@ (_int4, query_int),
    FUNCTION           1          g_int_consistent (internal, _int4,
smallint, oid, internal),
    FUNCTION           2          g_int_union (internal, internal),
    FUNCTION           3          g_int_compress (internal),
    FUNCTION           4          g_int_decompress (internal),
    FUNCTION           5          g_int_penalty (internal, internal,
internal),
    FUNCTION           6          g_int_picksplit (internal,
internal),
    FUNCTION           7          g_int_same (_int4, _int4,
internal);
```

## Compatibility

`CREATE OPERATOR CLASS` is a PostgreSQL extension. There is no `CREATE OPERATOR CLASS` statement in the SQL standard.

## See Also

`ALTER OPERATOR CLASS`, `DROP OPERATOR CLASS`, `CREATE OPERATOR FAMILY`, `ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY`

---

# CREATE OPERATOR FAMILY

CREATE OPERATOR FAMILY — define a new operator family

## Synopsis

```
CREATE OPERATOR FAMILY name USING index_method
```

## Description

CREATE OPERATOR FAMILY creates a new operator family. An operator family defines a collection of related operator classes, and perhaps some additional operators and support functions that are compatible with these operator classes but not essential for the functioning of any individual index. (Operators and functions that are essential to indexes should be grouped within the relevant operator class, rather than being “loose” in the operator family. Typically, single-data-type operators are bound to operator classes, while cross-data-type operators can be loose in an operator family containing operator classes for both data types.)

The new operator family is initially empty. It should be populated by issuing subsequent CREATE OPERATOR CLASS commands to add contained operator classes, and optionally ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY commands to add “loose” operators and their corresponding support functions.

If a schema name is given then the operator family is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema. Two operator families in the same schema can have the same name only if they are for different index methods.

The user who defines an operator family becomes its owner. Presently, the creating user must be a superuser. (This restriction is made because an erroneous operator family definition could confuse or even crash the server.)

Refer to Section 38.16 for further information.

## Parameters

*name*

The name of the operator family to be created. The name can be schema-qualified.

*index\_method*

The name of the index method this operator family is for.

## Compatibility

CREATE OPERATOR FAMILY is a PostgreSQL extension. There is no CREATE OPERATOR FAMILY statement in the SQL standard.

## See Also

ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY, DROP OPERATOR FAMILY, CREATE OPERATOR CLASS, ALTER OPERATOR CLASS, DROP OPERATOR CLASS

---

# CREATE POLICY

CREATE POLICY — define a new row-level security policy for a table

## Synopsis

```
CREATE POLICY name ON table_name
    [ AS { PERMISSIVE | RESTRICTIVE } ]
    [ FOR { ALL | SELECT | INSERT | UPDATE | DELETE } ]
    [ TO { role_name | PUBLIC | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER |
SESSION_USER } [, ...] ]
    [ USING ( using_expression ) ]
    [ WITH CHECK ( check_expression ) ]
```

## Description

The CREATE POLICY command defines a new row-level security policy for a table. Note that row-level security must be enabled on the table (using ALTER TABLE ... ENABLE ROW LEVEL SECURITY) in order for created policies to be applied.

A policy grants the permission to select, insert, update, or delete rows that match the relevant policy expression. Existing table rows are checked against the expression specified in USING, while new rows that would be created via INSERT or UPDATE are checked against the expression specified in WITH CHECK. When a USING expression returns true for a given row then that row is visible to the user, while if false or null is returned then the row is not visible. When a WITH CHECK expression returns true for a row then that row is inserted or updated, while if false or null is returned then an error occurs.

For INSERT, UPDATE, and MERGE statements, WITH CHECK expressions are enforced after BEFORE triggers are fired, and before any actual data modifications are made. Thus a BEFORE ROW trigger may modify the data to be inserted, affecting the result of the security policy check. WITH CHECK expressions are enforced before any other constraints.

Policy names are per-table. Therefore, one policy name can be used for many different tables and have a definition for each table which is appropriate to that table.

Policies can be applied for specific commands or for specific roles. The default for newly created policies is that they apply for all commands and roles, unless otherwise specified. Multiple policies may apply to a single command; see below for more details. Table 292 summarizes how the different types of policy apply to specific commands.

For policies that can have both USING and WITH CHECK expressions (ALL and UPDATE), if no WITH CHECK expression is defined, then the USING expression will be used both to determine which rows are visible (normal USING case) and which new rows will be allowed to be added (WITH CHECK case).

If row-level security is enabled for a table, but no applicable policies exist, a “default deny” policy is assumed, so that no rows will be visible or updatable.

## Parameters

*name*

The name of the policy to be created. This must be distinct from the name of any other policy for the table.

*table\_name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table the policy applies to.

PERMISSIVE

Specify that the policy is to be created as a permissive policy. All permissive policies which are applicable to a given query will be combined together using the Boolean “OR” operator. By creating permissive policies, administrators can add to the set of records which can be accessed. Policies are permissive by default.

RESTRICTIVE

Specify that the policy is to be created as a restrictive policy. All restrictive policies which are applicable to a given query will be combined together using the Boolean “AND” operator. By creating restrictive policies, administrators can reduce the set of records which can be accessed as all restrictive policies must be passed for each record.

Note that there needs to be at least one permissive policy to grant access to records before restrictive policies can be usefully used to reduce that access. If only restrictive policies exist, then no records will be accessible. When a mix of permissive and restrictive policies are present, a record is only accessible if at least one of the permissive policies passes, in addition to all the restrictive policies.

*command*

The command to which the policy applies. Valid options are ALL, SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE. ALL is the default. See below for specifics regarding how these are applied.

*role\_name*

The role(s) to which the policy is to be applied. The default is PUBLIC, which will apply the policy to all roles.

*using\_expression*

Any SQL conditional expression (returning boolean). The conditional expression cannot contain any aggregate or window functions. This expression will be added to queries that refer to the table if row-level security is enabled. Rows for which the expression returns true will be visible. Any rows for which the expression returns false or null will not be visible to the user (in a SELECT), and will not be available for modification (in an UPDATE or DELETE). Such rows are silently suppressed; no error is reported.

*check\_expression*

Any SQL conditional expression (returning boolean). The conditional expression cannot contain any aggregate or window functions. This expression will be used in INSERT and UPDATE queries against the table if row-level security is enabled. Only rows for which the expression evaluates to true will be allowed. An error will be thrown if the expression evaluates to false or null for any of the records inserted or any of the records that result from the update. Note that the *check\_expression* is evaluated against the proposed new contents of the row, not the original contents.

## Per-Command Policies

ALL

Using ALL for a policy means that it will apply to all commands, regardless of the type of command. If an ALL policy exists and more specific policies exist, then both the ALL policy and the more specific policy (or policies) will be applied. Additionally, ALL policies will be applied to both the selection side of a query and the modification side, using the USING expression for both cases if only a USING expression has been defined.



As an example, if an `UPDATE` is issued, then the `ALL` policy will be applicable both to what the `UPDATE` will be able to select as rows to be updated (applying the `USING` expression), and to the resulting updated rows, to check if they are permitted to be added to the table (applying the `WITH CHECK` expression, if defined, and the `USING` expression otherwise). If an `INSERT` or `UPDATE` command attempts to add rows to the table that do not pass the `ALL` policy's `WITH CHECK` expression, the entire command will be aborted.

#### SELECT

Using `SELECT` for a policy means that it will apply to `SELECT` queries and whenever `SELECT` permissions are required on the relation the policy is defined for. The result is that only those records from the relation that pass the `SELECT` policy will be returned during a `SELECT` query, and that queries that require `SELECT` permissions, such as `UPDATE`, will also only see those records that are allowed by the `SELECT` policy. A `SELECT` policy cannot have a `WITH CHECK` expression, as it only applies in cases where records are being retrieved from the relation.

#### INSERT

Using `INSERT` for a policy means that it will apply to `INSERT` commands and `MERGE` commands that contain `INSERT` actions. Rows being inserted that do not pass this policy will result in a policy violation error, and the entire `INSERT` command will be aborted. An `INSERT` policy cannot have a `USING` expression, as it only applies in cases where records are being added to the relation.

Note that `INSERT` with `ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE` checks `INSERT` policies' `WITH CHECK` expressions only for rows appended to the relation by the `INSERT` path.

#### UPDATE

Using `UPDATE` for a policy means that it will apply to `UPDATE`, `SELECT FOR UPDATE` and `SELECT FOR SHARE` commands, as well as auxiliary `ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE` clauses of `INSERT` commands. `MERGE` commands containing `UPDATE` actions are affected as well. Since `UPDATE` involves pulling an existing record and replacing it with a new modified record, `UPDATE` policies accept both a `USING` expression and a `WITH CHECK` expression. The `USING` expression determines which records the `UPDATE` command will see to operate against, while the `WITH CHECK` expression defines which modified rows are allowed to be stored back into the relation.

Any rows whose updated values do not pass the `WITH CHECK` expression will cause an error, and the entire command will be aborted. If only a `USING` clause is specified, then that clause will be used for both `USING` and `WITH CHECK` cases.

Typically an `UPDATE` command also needs to read data from columns in the relation being updated (e.g., in a `WHERE` clause or a `RETURNING` clause, or in an expression on the right hand side of the `SET` clause). In this case, `SELECT` rights are also required on the relation being updated, and the appropriate `SELECT` or `ALL` policies will be applied in addition to the `UPDATE` policies. Thus the user must have access to the row(s) being updated through a `SELECT` or `ALL` policy in addition to being granted permission to update the row(s) via an `UPDATE` or `ALL` policy.

When an `INSERT` command has an auxiliary `ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE` clause, if the `UPDATE` path is taken, the row to be updated is first checked against the `USING` expressions of any `UPDATE` policies, and then the new updated row is checked against the `WITH CHECK` expressions. Note, however, that unlike a standalone `UPDATE` command, if the existing row does not pass the `USING` expressions, an error will be thrown (the `UPDATE` path will *never* be silently avoided).

#### DELETE

Using `DELETE` for a policy means that it will apply to `DELETE` commands. Only rows that pass this policy will be seen by a `DELETE` command. There can be rows that are visible through a `SELECT` that are not available for deletion, if they do not pass the `USING` expression for the `DELETE` policy.

In most cases a `DELETE` command also needs to read data from columns in the relation that it is deleting from (e.g., in a `WHERE` clause or a `RETURNING` clause). In this case, `SELECT` rights are also required on the relation, and the appropriate `SELECT` or `ALL` policies will be applied in addition to the `DELETE` policies. Thus the user must have access to the row(s) being deleted through a `SELECT` or `ALL` policy in addition to being granted permission to delete the row(s) via a `DELETE` or `ALL` policy.

A `DELETE` policy cannot have a `WITH CHECK` expression, as it only applies in cases where records are being deleted from the relation, so that there is no new row to check.

**Table 292. Policies Applied by Command Type**

Command	SELECT/ALL policy	INSERT/ALL policy	UPDATE/ALL policy		DELETE/ALL policy
	USING expression	WITH CHECK expression	USING expression	WITH CHECK expression	USING expression
<code>SELECT</code>	Existing row	—	—	—	—
<code>SELECT FOR UPDATE/SHARE</code>	Existing row	—	Existing row	—	—
<code>INSERT / MERGE ... THEN INSERT</code>	—	New row	—	—	—
<code>INSERT ... RETURNING</code>	New row <sup>a</sup>	New row	—	—	—
<code>UPDATE / MERGE ... THEN UPDATE</code>	Existing & new rows <sup>a</sup>	—	Existing row	New row	—
<code>DELETE</code>	Existing row <sup>a</sup>	—	—	—	Existing row
<code>ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE</code>	Existing & new rows	—	Existing row	New row	—

<sup>a</sup> If read access is required to the existing or new row (for example, a `WHERE` or `RETURNING` clause that refers to columns from the relation).

## Application of Multiple Policies

When multiple policies of different command types apply to the same command (for example, `SELECT` and `UPDATE` policies applied to an `UPDATE` command), then the user must have both types of permissions (for example, permission to select rows from the relation as well as permission to update them). Thus the expressions for one type of policy are combined with the expressions for the other type of policy using the `AND` operator.

When multiple policies of the same command type apply to the same command, then there must be at least one `PERMISSIVE` policy granting access to the relation, and all of the `RESTRICTIVE` policies must pass. Thus all the `PERMISSIVE` policy expressions are combined using `OR`, all the `RESTRICTIVE` policy expressions are combined using `AND`, and the results are combined using `AND`. If there are no `PERMISSIVE` policies, then access is denied.

Note that, for the purposes of combining multiple policies, `ALL` policies are treated as having the same type as whichever other type of policy is being applied.

For example, in an `UPDATE` command requiring both `SELECT` and `UPDATE` permissions, if there are multiple applicable policies of each type, they will be combined as follows:

```
expression from RESTRICTIVE SELECT/ALL policy 1
AND
expression from RESTRICTIVE SELECT/ALL policy 2
AND
...
AND
(
    expression from PERMISSIVE SELECT/ALL policy 1
    OR
    expression from PERMISSIVE SELECT/ALL policy 2
    OR
    ...
)
AND
expression from RESTRICTIVE UPDATE/ALL policy 1
AND
expression from RESTRICTIVE UPDATE/ALL policy 2
AND
...
AND
(
    expression from PERMISSIVE UPDATE/ALL policy 1
    OR
    expression from PERMISSIVE UPDATE/ALL policy 2
    OR
    ...
)
```

## Notes

You must be the owner of a table to create or change policies for it.

While policies will be applied for explicit queries against tables in the database, they are not applied when the system is performing internal referential integrity checks or validating constraints. This means there are indirect ways to determine that a given value exists. An example of this is attempting to insert a duplicate value into a column that is a primary key or has a unique constraint. If the insert fails then the user can infer that the value already exists. (This example assumes that the user is permitted by policy to insert records which they are not allowed to see.) Another example is where a user is allowed to insert into a table which references another, otherwise hidden table. Existence can be determined by the user inserting values into the referencing table, where success would indicate that the value exists in the referenced table. These issues can be addressed by carefully crafting policies to prevent users from being able to insert, delete, or update records at all which might possibly indicate a value they are not otherwise able to see, or by using generated values (e.g., surrogate keys) instead of keys with external meanings.

Generally, the system will enforce filter conditions imposed using security policies prior to qualifications that appear in user queries, in order to prevent inadvertent exposure of the protected data to user-defined functions which might not be trustworthy. However, functions and operators marked by the system (or the system administrator) as LEAKPROOF may be evaluated before policy expressions, as they are assumed to be trustworthy.

Since policy expressions are added to the user's query directly, they will be run with the rights of the user running the overall query. Therefore, users who are using a given policy must be able to access any tables or functions referenced in the expression or they will simply receive a permission denied error when attempting to query the table that has row-level security enabled. This does not change how views work, however. As with normal queries and views, permission checks and policies for the tables which are referenced by a view will use the view owner's rights and any policies which

apply to the view owner, except if the view is defined using the `security_invoker` option (see `CREATE VIEW`).

No separate policy exists for `MERGE`. Instead, the policies defined for `SELECT`, `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, and `DELETE` are applied while executing `MERGE`, depending on the actions that are performed.

Additional discussion and practical examples can be found in Section 5.8.

## Compatibility

`CREATE POLICY` is a PostgreSQL extension.

## See Also

`ALTER POLICY`, `DROP POLICY`, `ALTER TABLE`

---

# CREATE PROCEDURE

CREATE PROCEDURE — define a new procedure

## Synopsis

```
CREATE [ OR REPLACE ] PROCEDURE
    name ( [ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype [ { DEFAULT |
= } default_expr ] [, ...] ] )
    { LANGUAGE lang_name
      | TRANSFORM { FOR TYPE type_name } [, ... ]
      | [ EXTERNAL ] SECURITY INVOKER | [ EXTERNAL ] SECURITY DEFINER
      | SET configuration_parameter { TO value | = value | FROM
CURRENT }
      | AS 'definition'
      | AS 'obj_file', 'link_symbol'
      | sql_body
    } ...
```

## Description

CREATE PROCEDURE defines a new procedure. CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE will either create a new procedure, or replace an existing definition. To be able to define a procedure, the user must have the USAGE privilege on the language.

If a schema name is included, then the procedure is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema. The name of the new procedure must not match any existing procedure or function with the same input argument types in the same schema. However, procedures and functions of different argument types can share a name (this is called *overloading*).

To replace the current definition of an existing procedure, use CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE. It is not possible to change the name or argument types of a procedure this way (if you tried, you would actually be creating a new, distinct procedure).

When CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE is used to replace an existing procedure, the ownership and permissions of the procedure do not change. All other procedure properties are assigned the values specified or implied in the command. You must own the procedure to replace it (this includes being a member of the owning role).

The user that creates the procedure becomes the owner of the procedure.

To be able to create a procedure, you must have USAGE privilege on the argument types.

Refer to Section 38.4 for further information on writing procedures.

## Parameters

*name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the procedure to create.

*argmode*

The mode of an argument: IN, OUT, INOUT, or VARIADIC. If omitted, the default is IN.

*argname*

The name of an argument.

*argtype*

The data type(s) of the procedure's arguments (optionally schema-qualified), if any. The argument types can be base, composite, or domain types, or can reference the type of a table column.

Depending on the implementation language it might also be allowed to specify “pseudo-types” such as `cstring`. Pseudo-types indicate that the actual argument type is either incompletely specified, or outside the set of ordinary SQL data types.

The type of a column is referenced by writing `table_name.column_name%TYPE`. Using this feature can sometimes help make a procedure independent of changes to the definition of a table.

*default\_expr*

An expression to be used as default value if the parameter is not specified. The expression has to be coercible to the argument type of the parameter. All input parameters following a parameter with a default value must have default values as well.

*lang\_name*

The name of the language that the procedure is implemented in. It can be `sql`, `c`, `internal`, or the name of a user-defined procedural language, e.g., `plpgsql`. The default is `sql` if `sql_body` is specified. Enclosing the name in single quotes is deprecated and requires matching case.

TRANSFORM { FOR TYPE *type\_name* } [ , ... ] }

Lists which transforms a call to the procedure should apply. Transforms convert between SQL types and language-specific data types; see CREATE TRANSFORM. Procedural language implementations usually have hardcoded knowledge of the built-in types, so those don't need to be listed here. If a procedural language implementation does not know how to handle a type and no transform is supplied, it will fall back to a default behavior for converting data types, but this depends on the implementation.

[EXTERNAL] SECURITY INVOKER

[EXTERNAL] SECURITY DEFINER

SECURITY INVOKER indicates that the procedure is to be executed with the privileges of the user that calls it. That is the default. SECURITY DEFINER specifies that the procedure is to be executed with the privileges of the user that owns it.

The key word EXTERNAL is allowed for SQL conformance, but it is optional since, unlike in SQL, this feature applies to all procedures not only external ones.

A SECURITY DEFINER procedure cannot execute transaction control statements (for example, COMMIT and ROLLBACK, depending on the language).

*configuration\_parameter*

*value*

The SET clause causes the specified configuration parameter to be set to the specified value when the procedure is entered, and then restored to its prior value when the procedure exits. SET FROM CURRENT saves the value of the parameter that is current when CREATE PROCEDURE is executed as the value to be applied when the procedure is entered.

If a SET clause is attached to a procedure, then the effects of a SET LOCAL command executed inside the procedure for the same variable are restricted to the procedure: the configuration

parameter's prior value is still restored at procedure exit. However, an ordinary SET command (without LOCAL) overrides the SET clause, much as it would do for a previous SET LOCAL command: the effects of such a command will persist after procedure exit, unless the current transaction is rolled back.

If a SET clause is attached to a procedure, then that procedure cannot execute transaction control statements (for example, COMMIT and ROLLBACK, depending on the language).

See SET and Chapter 20 for more information about allowed parameter names and values.

#### *definition*

A string constant defining the procedure; the meaning depends on the language. It can be an internal procedure name, the path to an object file, an SQL command, or text in a procedural language.

It is often helpful to use dollar quoting (see Section 4.1.2.4) to write the procedure definition string, rather than the normal single quote syntax. Without dollar quoting, any single quotes or backslashes in the procedure definition must be escaped by doubling them.

#### *obj\_file, link\_symbol*

This form of the AS clause is used for dynamically loadable C language procedures when the procedure name in the C language source code is not the same as the name of the SQL procedure. The string *obj\_file* is the name of the shared library file containing the compiled C procedure, and is interpreted as for the LOAD command. The string *link\_symbol* is the procedure's link symbol, that is, the name of the procedure in the C language source code. If the link symbol is omitted, it is assumed to be the same as the name of the SQL procedure being defined.

When repeated CREATE PROCEDURE calls refer to the same object file, the file is only loaded once per session. To unload and reload the file (perhaps during development), start a new session.

#### *sql\_body*

The body of a LANGUAGE SQL procedure. This should be a block

```
BEGIN ATOMIC
  statement;
  statement;
  ...
  statement;
END
```

This is similar to writing the text of the procedure body as a string constant (see *definition* above), but there are some differences: This form only works for LANGUAGE SQL, the string constant form works for all languages. This form is parsed at procedure definition time, the string constant form is parsed at execution time; therefore this form cannot support polymorphic argument types and other constructs that are not resolvable at procedure definition time. This form tracks dependencies between the procedure and objects used in the procedure body, so DROP ... CASCADE will work correctly, whereas the form using string literals may leave dangling procedures. Finally, this form is more compatible with the SQL standard and other SQL implementations.

## Notes

See CREATE FUNCTION for more details on function creation that also apply to procedures.

Use CALL to execute a procedure.

## Examples

```
CREATE PROCEDURE insert_data(a integer, b integer)
LANGUAGE SQL
AS $$
INSERT INTO tbl VALUES (a);
INSERT INTO tbl VALUES (b);
$$;
```

or

```
CREATE PROCEDURE insert_data(a integer, b integer)
LANGUAGE SQL
BEGIN ATOMIC
    INSERT INTO tbl VALUES (a);
    INSERT INTO tbl VALUES (b);
END;
```

and call like this:

```
CALL insert_data(1, 2);
```

## Compatibility

A `CREATE PROCEDURE` command is defined in the SQL standard. The PostgreSQL implementation can be used in a compatible way but has many extensions. For details see also `CREATE FUNCTION`.

## See Also

`ALTER PROCEDURE`, `DROP PROCEDURE`, `CALL`, `CREATE FUNCTION`



---

# CREATE PUBLICATION

CREATE PUBLICATION — define a new publication

## Synopsis

```
CREATE PUBLICATION name
  [ FOR ALL TABLES
    | FOR publication_object [, ... ] ]
  [ WITH ( publication_parameter [= value] [, ... ] ) ]
```

where *publication\_object* is one of:

```
TABLE [ ONLY ] table_name [ * ] [ ( column_name [, ... ] ) ]
[ WHERE ( expression ) ] [, ... ]
TABLES IN SCHEMA { schema_name | CURRENT_SCHEMA } [, ... ]
```

## Description

CREATE PUBLICATION adds a new publication into the current database. The publication name must be distinct from the name of any existing publication in the current database.

A publication is essentially a group of tables whose data changes are intended to be replicated through logical replication. See Section 31.1 for details about how publications fit into the logical replication setup.

## Parameters

*name*

The name of the new publication.

FOR TABLE

Specifies a list of tables to add to the publication. If ONLY is specified before the table name, only that table is added to the publication. If ONLY is not specified, the table and all its descendant tables (if any) are added. Optionally, \* can be specified after the table name to explicitly indicate that descendant tables are included. This does not apply to a partitioned table, however. The partitions of a partitioned table are always implicitly considered part of the publication, so they are never explicitly added to the publication.

If the optional WHERE clause is specified, it defines a *row filter* expression. Rows for which the *expression* evaluates to false or null will not be published. Note that parentheses are required around the expression. It has no effect on TRUNCATE commands.

When a column list is specified, only the named columns are replicated. If no column list is specified, all columns of the table are replicated through this publication, including any columns added later. It has no effect on TRUNCATE commands. See Section 31.4 for details about column lists.

Only persistent base tables and partitioned tables can be part of a publication. Temporary tables, unlogged tables, foreign tables, materialized views, and regular views cannot be part of a publication.

Specifying a column list when the publication also publishes FOR TABLES IN SCHEMA is not supported.

When a partitioned table is added to a publication, all of its existing and future partitions are implicitly considered to be part of the publication. So, even operations that are performed directly on a partition are also published via publications that its ancestors are part of.

#### FOR ALL TABLES

Marks the publication as one that replicates changes for all tables in the database, including tables created in the future.

#### FOR TABLES IN SCHEMA

Marks the publication as one that replicates changes for all tables in the specified list of schemas, including tables created in the future.

Specifying a schema when the publication also publishes a table with a column list is not supported.

Only persistent base tables and partitioned tables present in the schema will be included as part of the publication. Temporary tables, unlogged tables, foreign tables, materialized views, and regular views from the schema will not be part of the publication.

When a partitioned table is published via schema level publication, all of its existing and future partitions are implicitly considered to be part of the publication, regardless of whether they are from the publication schema or not. So, even operations that are performed directly on a partition are also published via publications that its ancestors are part of.

WITH ( *publication\_parameter* [= *value*] [, ... ] )

This clause specifies optional parameters for a publication. The following parameters are supported:

`publish(string)`

This parameter determines which DML operations will be published by the new publication to the subscribers. The value is comma-separated list of operations. The allowed operations are `insert`, `update`, `delete`, and `truncate`. The default is to publish all actions, and so the default value for this option is `'insert, update, delete, truncate'`.

This parameter only affects DML operations. In particular, the initial data synchronization (see Section 31.7.1) for logical replication does not take this parameter into account when copying existing table data.

`publish_via_partition_root (boolean)`

This parameter determines whether changes in a partitioned table (or on its partitions) contained in the publication will be published using the identity and schema of the partitioned table rather than that of the individual partitions that are actually changed; the latter is the default. Enabling this allows the changes to be replicated into a non-partitioned table or a partitioned table consisting of a different set of partitions.

There can be a case where a subscription combines multiple publications. If a partitioned table is published by any subscribed publications which set `publish_via_partition_root = true`, changes on this partitioned table (or on its partitions) will be published using the identity and schema of this partitioned table rather than that of the individual partitions.

This parameter also affects how row filters and column lists are chosen for partitions; see below for details.

If this is enabled, `TRUNCATE` operations performed directly on partitions are not replicated.

When specifying a parameter of type `boolean`, the `= value` part can be omitted, which is equivalent to specifying `TRUE`.

## Notes

If `FOR TABLE`, `FOR ALL TABLES` or `FOR TABLES IN SCHEMA` are not specified, then the publication starts out with an empty set of tables. That is useful if tables or schemas are to be added later.

The creation of a publication does not start replication. It only defines a grouping and filtering logic for future subscribers.

To create a publication, the invoking user must have the `CREATE` privilege for the current database. (Of course, superusers bypass this check.)

To add a table to a publication, the invoking user must have ownership rights on the table. The `FOR ALL TABLES` and `FOR TABLES IN SCHEMA` clauses require the invoking user to be a superuser.

The tables added to a publication that publishes `UPDATE` and/or `DELETE` operations must have `REPLICA IDENTITY` defined. Otherwise those operations will be disallowed on those tables.

Any column list must include the `REPLICA IDENTITY` columns in order for `UPDATE` or `DELETE` operations to be published. There are no column list restrictions if the publication publishes only `INSERT` operations.

A row filter expression (i.e., the `WHERE` clause) must contain only columns that are covered by the `REPLICA IDENTITY`, in order for `UPDATE` and `DELETE` operations to be published. For publication of `INSERT` operations, any column may be used in the `WHERE` expression. The row filter allows simple expressions that don't have user-defined functions, user-defined operators, user-defined types, user-defined collations, non-immutable built-in functions, or references to system columns.

The row filter on a table becomes redundant if `FOR TABLES IN SCHEMA` is specified and the table belongs to the referred schema.

For published partitioned tables, the row filter for each partition is taken from the published partitioned table if the publication parameter `publish_via_partition_root` is true, or from the partition itself if it is false (the default). See Section 31.3 for details about row filters. Similarly, for published partitioned tables, the column list for each partition is taken from the published partitioned table if the publication parameter `publish_via_partition_root` is true, or from the partition itself if it is false.

For an `INSERT ... ON CONFLICT` command, the publication will publish the operation that results from the command. Depending on the outcome, it may be published as either `INSERT` or `UPDATE`, or it may not be published at all.

For a `MERGE` command, the publication will publish an `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE` for each row inserted, updated, or deleted.

ATTACHing a table into a partition tree whose root is published using a publication with `publish_via_partition_root` set to true does not result in the table's existing contents being replicated.

`COPY ... FROM` commands are published as `INSERT` operations.

DDL operations are not published.

The `WHERE` clause expression is executed with the role used for the replication connection.

## Examples

Create a publication that publishes all changes in two tables:

```
CREATE PUBLICATION mypublication FOR TABLE users, departments;
```

Create a publication that publishes all changes from active departments:

```
CREATE PUBLICATION active_departments FOR TABLE departments WHERE  
  (active IS TRUE);
```

Create a publication that publishes all changes in all tables:

```
CREATE PUBLICATION alltables FOR ALL TABLES;
```

Create a publication that only publishes INSERT operations in one table:

```
CREATE PUBLICATION insert_only FOR TABLE mydata  
  WITH (publish = 'insert');
```

Create a publication that publishes all changes for tables `users`, `departments` and all changes for all the tables present in the schema `production`:

```
CREATE PUBLICATION production_publication FOR TABLE users,  
  departments, TABLES IN SCHEMA production;
```

Create a publication that publishes all changes for all the tables present in the schemas `marketing` and `sales`:

```
CREATE PUBLICATION sales_publication FOR TABLES IN SCHEMA  
  marketing, sales;
```

Create a publication that publishes all changes for table `users`, but replicates only columns `user_id` and `firstname`:

```
CREATE PUBLICATION users_filtered FOR TABLE users (user_id,  
  firstname);
```

## Compatibility

`CREATE PUBLICATION` is a PostgreSQL extension.

## See Also

`ALTER PUBLICATION`, `DROP PUBLICATION`, `CREATE SUBSCRIPTION`, `ALTER SUBSCRIPTION`

---

# CREATE ROLE

CREATE ROLE — define a new database role

## Synopsis

```
CREATE ROLE name [ [ WITH ] option [ ... ] ]
```

where *option* can be:

```
SUPERUSER | NOSUPERUSER
|
CREATEDB | NOCREATEDB
|
CREATEROLE | NOCREATEROLE
|
INHERIT | NOINHERIT
|
LOGIN | NOLOGIN
|
REPLICATION | NOREPLICATION
|
BYPASSRLS | NOBYPASSRLS
|
CONNECTION LIMIT connlimit
|
[ ENCRYPTED ] PASSWORD 'password' | PASSWORD NULL
|
VALID UNTIL 'timestamp'
|
IN ROLE role_name [, ...]
|
IN GROUP role_name [, ...]
|
ROLE role_name [, ...]
|
ADMIN role_name [, ...]
|
USER role_name [, ...]
|
SYSID uid
```

## Description

CREATE ROLE adds a new role to a PostgreSQL database cluster. A role is an entity that can own database objects and have database privileges; a role can be considered a “user”, a “group”, or both depending on how it is used. Refer to Chapter 22 and Chapter 21 for information about managing users and authentication. You must have CREATEROLE privilege or be a database superuser to use this command.

Note that roles are defined at the database cluster level, and so are valid in all databases in the cluster.

During role creation it is possible to immediately assign the newly created role to be a member of an existing role, and also assign existing roles to be members of the newly created role. The rules for which initial role membership options are enabled described below in the IN ROLE, ROLE, and ADMIN clauses. The GRANT command has fine-grained option control during membership creation, and the ability to modify these options after the new role is created.

## Parameters

*name*

The name of the new role.

SUPERUSER  
NOSUPERUSER

These clauses determine whether the new role is a “superuser”, who can override all access restrictions within the database. Superuser status is dangerous and should be used only when really

needed. You must yourself be a superuser to create a new superuser. If not specified, NOSUPERUSER is the default.

CREATEDB  
NOCREATEDB

These clauses define a role's ability to create databases. If CREATEDB is specified, the role being defined will be allowed to create new databases. Specifying NOCREATEDB will deny a role the ability to create databases. If not specified, NOCREATEDB is the default. Only superuser roles or roles with CREATEDB can specify CREATEDB.

CREATEROLE  
NOCREATEROLE

These clauses determine whether a role will be permitted to create, alter, drop, comment on, and change the security label for other roles. See role creation for more details about what capabilities are conferred by this privilege. If not specified, NOCREATEROLE is the default.

INHERIT  
NOINHERIT

This affects the membership inheritance status when this role is added as a member of another role, both in this and future commands. Specifically, it controls the inheritance status of memberships added with this command using the `IN ROLE` clause, and in later commands using the `ROLE` clause. It is also used as the default inheritance status when adding this role as a member using the `GRANT` command. If not specified, `INHERIT` is the default.

In PostgreSQL versions before 16, inheritance was a role-level attribute that controlled all runtime membership checks for that role.

LOGIN  
NOLOGIN

These clauses determine whether a role is allowed to log in; that is, whether the role can be given as the initial session authorization name during client connection. A role having the `LOGIN` attribute can be thought of as a user. Roles without this attribute are useful for managing database privileges, but are not users in the usual sense of the word. If not specified, `NOLOGIN` is the default, except when `CREATE ROLE` is invoked through its alternative spelling `CREATE USER`.

REPLICATION  
NOREPLICATION

These clauses determine whether a role is a replication role. A role must have this attribute (or be a superuser) in order to be able to connect to the server in replication mode (physical or logical replication) and in order to be able to create or drop replication slots. A role having the `REPLICATION` attribute is a very highly privileged role, and should only be used on roles actually used for replication. If not specified, `NOREPLICATION` is the default. Only superuser roles or roles with `REPLICATION` can specify `REPLICATION`.

BYPASSRLS  
NOBYPASSRLS

These clauses determine whether a role bypasses every row-level security (RLS) policy. `NOBYPASSRLS` is the default. Only superuser roles or roles with `BYPASSRLS` can specify `BYPASSRLS`.

Note that `pg_dump` will set `row_security` to `OFF` by default, to ensure all contents of a table are dumped out. If the user running `pg_dump` does not have appropriate permissions, an error will be returned. However, superusers and the owner of the table being dumped always bypass RLS.

CONNECTION LIMIT *conlimit*

If role can log in, this specifies how many concurrent connections the role can make. -1 (the default) means no limit. Note that only normal connections are counted towards this limit. Neither prepared transactions nor background worker connections are counted towards this limit.

[ ENCRYPTED ] PASSWORD '*password*'  
PASSWORD NULL

Sets the role's password. (A password is only of use for roles having the LOGIN attribute, but you can nonetheless define one for roles without it.) If you do not plan to use password authentication you can omit this option. If no password is specified, the password will be set to null and password authentication will always fail for that user. A null password can optionally be written explicitly as PASSWORD NULL.

### Note

Specifying an empty string will also set the password to null, but that was not the case before PostgreSQL version 10. In earlier versions, an empty string could be used, or not, depending on the authentication method and the exact version, and libpq would refuse to use it in any case. To avoid the ambiguity, specifying an empty string should be avoided.

The password is always stored encrypted in the system catalogs. The ENCRYPTED keyword has no effect, but is accepted for backwards compatibility. The method of encryption is determined by the configuration parameter password\_encryption. If the presented password string is already in MD5-encrypted or SCRAM-encrypted format, then it is stored as-is regardless of password\_encryption (since the system cannot decrypt the specified encrypted password string, to encrypt it in a different format). This allows reloading of encrypted passwords during dump/restore.

VALID UNTIL '*timestamp*'

The VALID UNTIL clause sets a date and time after which the role's password is no longer valid. If this clause is omitted the password will be valid for all time.

IN ROLE *role\_name*

The IN ROLE clause causes the new role to be automatically added as a member of the specified existing roles. The new membership will have the SET option enabled and the ADMIN option disabled. The INHERIT option will be enabled unless the NOINHERIT option is specified.

IN GROUP *role\_name*

IN GROUP is an obsolete spelling of IN ROLE.

ROLE *role\_name*

The ROLE clause causes one or more specified existing roles to be automatically added as members, with the SET option enabled. This in effect makes the new role a “group”. Roles named in this clause with role-level the INHERIT attribute will have the INHERIT option enabled in the new membership. New memberships will have the ADMIN option disabled.

ADMIN *role\_name*

The ADMIN clause has the same effect as ROLE, but the named roles are added as members of the new role with ADMIN enabled, giving them the right to grant membership in the new role to others.

USER *role\_name*

The USER clause is an obsolete spelling of the ROLE clause.

`SYSID uid`

The `SYSID` clause is ignored, but is accepted for backwards compatibility.

## Notes

Use `ALTER ROLE` to change the attributes of a role, and `DROP ROLE` to remove a role. All the attributes specified by `CREATE ROLE` can be modified by later `ALTER ROLE` commands.

The preferred way to add and remove members of roles that are being used as groups is to use `GRANT` and `REVOKE`.

The `VALID UNTIL` clause defines an expiration time for a password only, not for the role per se. In particular, the expiration time is not enforced when logging in using a non-password-based authentication method.

The role attributes defined here are non-inheritable, i.e., being a member of a role with, e.g., `CREATEDB` will not allow the member to create new databases even if the membership grant has the `INHERIT` option. Of course, if the membership grant has the `SET` option the member role would be able to `SET ROLE` to the `createdb` role and then create a new database.

The membership grants created by the `IN ROLE`, `ROLE`, and `ADMIN` clauses have the role executing this command as the grantee.

The `INHERIT` attribute is the default for reasons of backwards compatibility: in prior releases of PostgreSQL, users always had access to all privileges of groups they were members of. However, `NOINHERIT` provides a closer match to the semantics specified in the SQL standard.

PostgreSQL includes a program `createuser` that has the same functionality as `CREATE ROLE` (in fact, it calls this command) but can be run from the command shell.

The `CONNECTION LIMIT` option is only enforced approximately; if two new sessions start at about the same time when just one connection “slot” remains for the role, it is possible that both will fail. Also, the limit is never enforced for superusers.

Caution must be exercised when specifying an unencrypted password with this command. The password will be transmitted to the server in cleartext, and it might also be logged in the client's command history or the server log. The command `createuser`, however, transmits the password encrypted. Also, `psql` contains a command `\password` that can be used to safely change the password later.

## Examples

Create a role that can log in, but don't give it a password:

```
CREATE ROLE jonathan LOGIN;
```

Create a role with a password:

```
CREATE USER davide WITH PASSWORD 'jw8s0F4';
```

(`CREATE USER` is the same as `CREATE ROLE` except that it implies `LOGIN`.)

Create a role with a password that is valid until the end of 2004. After one second has ticked in 2005, the password is no longer valid.

```
CREATE ROLE miriam WITH LOGIN PASSWORD 'jw8s0F4' VALID UNTIL
'2005-01-01';
```



Create a role that can create databases and manage roles:

```
CREATE ROLE admin WITH CREATEDB CREATEROLE;
```

## Compatibility

The `CREATE ROLE` statement is in the SQL standard, but the standard only requires the syntax

```
CREATE ROLE name [ WITH ADMIN role_name ]
```

Multiple initial administrators, and all the other options of `CREATE ROLE`, are PostgreSQL extensions.

The SQL standard defines the concepts of users and roles, but it regards them as distinct concepts and leaves all commands defining users to be specified by each database implementation. In PostgreSQL we have chosen to unify users and roles into a single kind of entity. Roles therefore have many more optional attributes than they do in the standard.

The behavior specified by the SQL standard is most closely approximated creating SQL-standard users as PostgreSQL roles with the `NOINHERIT` option, and SQL-standard roles as PostgreSQL roles with the `INHERIT` option.

## See Also

`SET ROLE`, `ALTER ROLE`, `DROP ROLE`, `GRANT`, `REVOKE`, `createuser`, `createrole_self_grant`

---

# CREATE RULE

CREATE RULE — define a new rewrite rule

## Synopsis

```
CREATE [ OR REPLACE ] RULE name AS ON event
    TO table_name [ WHERE condition ]
    DO [ ALSO | INSTEAD ] { NOTHING | command | ( command ; command
... ) }
```

where *event* can be one of:

```
SELECT | INSERT | UPDATE | DELETE
```

## Description

CREATE RULE defines a new rule applying to a specified table or view. CREATE OR REPLACE RULE will either create a new rule, or replace an existing rule of the same name for the same table.

The PostgreSQL rule system allows one to define an alternative action to be performed on insertions, updates, or deletions in database tables. Roughly speaking, a rule causes additional commands to be executed when a given command on a given table is executed. Alternatively, an INSTEAD rule can replace a given command by another, or cause a command not to be executed at all. Rules are used to implement SQL views as well. It is important to realize that a rule is really a command transformation mechanism, or command macro. The transformation happens before the execution of the command starts. If you actually want an operation that fires independently for each physical row, you probably want to use a trigger, not a rule. More information about the rules system is in Chapter 41.

Presently, ON SELECT rules can only be attached to views. Such a rule must be named "\_RETURN", must be an unconditional INSTEAD rule, and must have an action that consists of a single SELECT command. This command defines the visible contents of the view. (The view itself is basically a dummy table with no storage.) It's best to regard such a rule as an implementation detail. While a view can be redefined via CREATE OR REPLACE RULE "\_RETURN" AS ..., it's better style to use CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW.

You can create the illusion of an updatable view by defining ON INSERT, ON UPDATE, and ON DELETE rules (or any subset of those that's sufficient for your purposes) to replace update actions on the view with appropriate updates on other tables. If you want to support INSERT RETURNING and so on, then be sure to put a suitable RETURNING clause into each of these rules.

There is a catch if you try to use conditional rules for complex view updates: there *must* be an unconditional INSTEAD rule for each action you wish to allow on the view. If the rule is conditional, or is not INSTEAD, then the system will still reject attempts to perform the update action, because it thinks it might end up trying to perform the action on the dummy table of the view in some cases. If you want to handle all the useful cases in conditional rules, add an unconditional DO INSTEAD NOTHING rule to ensure that the system understands it will never be called on to update the dummy table. Then make the conditional rules non-INSTEAD; in the cases where they are applied, they add to the default INSTEAD NOTHING action. (This method does not currently work to support RETURNING queries, however.)

### Note

A view that is simple enough to be automatically updatable (see CREATE VIEW) does not require a user-created rule in order to be updatable. While you can create an explicit rule anyway, the automatic update transformation will generally outperform an explicit rule.

Another alternative worth considering is to use `INSTEAD OF` triggers (see `CREATE TRIGGER`) in place of rules.

## Parameters

### *name*

The name of a rule to create. This must be distinct from the name of any other rule for the same table. Multiple rules on the same table and same event type are applied in alphabetical name order.

### *event*

The event is one of `SELECT`, `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE`. Note that an `INSERT` containing an `ON CONFLICT` clause cannot be used on tables that have either `INSERT` or `UPDATE` rules. Consider using an updatable view instead.

### *table\_name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table or view the rule applies to.

### *condition*

Any SQL conditional expression (returning `boolean`). The condition expression cannot refer to any tables except `NEW` and `OLD`, and cannot contain aggregate functions.

### `INSTEAD`

`INSTEAD` indicates that the commands should be executed *instead of* the original command.

### `ALSO`

`ALSO` indicates that the commands should be executed *in addition to* the original command.

If neither `ALSO` nor `INSTEAD` is specified, `ALSO` is the default.

### *command*

The command or commands that make up the rule action. Valid commands are `SELECT`, `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, or `NOTIFY`.

Within *condition* and *command*, the special table names `NEW` and `OLD` can be used to refer to values in the referenced table. `NEW` is valid in `ON INSERT` and `ON UPDATE` rules to refer to the new row being inserted or updated. `OLD` is valid in `ON UPDATE` and `ON DELETE` rules to refer to the existing row being updated or deleted.

## Notes

You must be the owner of a table to create or change rules for it.

In a rule for `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE` on a view, you can add a `RETURNING` clause that emits the view's columns. This clause will be used to compute the outputs if the rule is triggered by an `INSERT RETURNING`, `UPDATE RETURNING`, or `DELETE RETURNING` command respectively. When the rule is triggered by a command without `RETURNING`, the rule's `RETURNING` clause will be ignored. The current implementation allows only unconditional `INSTEAD` rules to contain `RETURNING`; furthermore there can be at most one `RETURNING` clause among all the rules for the same event. (This ensures that there is only one candidate `RETURNING` clause to be used to compute the results.) `RETURNING` queries on the view will be rejected if there is no `RETURNING` clause in any available rule.

It is very important to take care to avoid circular rules. For example, though each of the following two rule definitions are accepted by PostgreSQL, the `SELECT` command would cause PostgreSQL to report an error because of recursive expansion of a rule:

```
CREATE RULE "_RETURN" AS
  ON SELECT TO t1
  DO INSTEAD
    SELECT * FROM t2;
```

```
CREATE RULE "_RETURN" AS
  ON SELECT TO t2
  DO INSTEAD
    SELECT * FROM t1;
```

```
SELECT * FROM t1;
```

Presently, if a rule action contains a `NOTIFY` command, the `NOTIFY` command will be executed unconditionally, that is, the `NOTIFY` will be issued even if there are not any rows that the rule should apply to. For example, in:

```
CREATE RULE notify_me AS ON UPDATE TO mytable DO ALSO NOTIFY
mytable;
```

```
UPDATE mytable SET name = 'foo' WHERE id = 42;
```

one `NOTIFY` event will be sent during the `UPDATE`, whether or not there are any rows that match the condition `id = 42`. This is an implementation restriction that might be fixed in future releases.

## Compatibility

`CREATE RULE` is a PostgreSQL language extension, as is the entire query rewrite system.

## See Also

`ALTER RULE`, `DROP RULE`

---

# CREATE SCHEMA

CREATE SCHEMA — define a new schema

## Synopsis

```
CREATE SCHEMA schema_name [ AUTHORIZATION role_specification ]  
[ schema_element [ ... ] ]  
CREATE SCHEMA AUTHORIZATION role_specification [ schema_element  
[ ... ] ]  
CREATE SCHEMA IF NOT EXISTS schema_name  
[ AUTHORIZATION role_specification ]  
CREATE SCHEMA IF NOT EXISTS AUTHORIZATION role_specification
```

where *role\_specification* can be:

```
user_name  
| CURRENT_ROLE  
| CURRENT_USER  
| SESSION_USER
```

## Description

CREATE SCHEMA enters a new schema into the current database. The schema name must be distinct from the name of any existing schema in the current database.

A schema is essentially a namespace: it contains named objects (tables, data types, functions, and operators) whose names can duplicate those of other objects existing in other schemas. Named objects are accessed either by “qualifying” their names with the schema name as a prefix, or by setting a search path that includes the desired schema(s). A CREATE command specifying an unqualified object name creates the object in the current schema (the one at the front of the search path, which can be determined with the function `current_schema()`).

Optionally, CREATE SCHEMA can include subcommands to create objects within the new schema. The subcommands are treated essentially the same as separate commands issued after creating the schema, except that if the AUTHORIZATION clause is used, all the created objects will be owned by that user.

## Parameters

*schema\_name*

The name of a schema to be created. If this is omitted, the *user\_name* is used as the schema name. The name cannot begin with `pg_`, as such names are reserved for system schemas.

*user\_name*

The role name of the user who will own the new schema. If omitted, defaults to the user executing the command. To create a schema owned by another role, you must be able to SET ROLE to that role.

*schema\_element*

An SQL statement defining an object to be created within the schema. Currently, only CREATE TABLE, CREATE VIEW, CREATE INDEX, CREATE SEQUENCE, CREATE TRIGGER and

GRANT are accepted as clauses within CREATE SCHEMA. Other kinds of objects may be created in separate commands after the schema is created.

IF NOT EXISTS

Do nothing (except issuing a notice) if a schema with the same name already exists. *schema\_element* subcommands cannot be included when this option is used.

## Notes

To create a schema, the invoking user must have the CREATE privilege for the current database. (Of course, superusers bypass this check.)

## Examples

Create a schema:

```
CREATE SCHEMA myschema;
```

Create a schema for user joe; the schema will also be named joe:

```
CREATE SCHEMA AUTHORIZATION joe;
```

Create a schema named test that will be owned by user joe, unless there already is a schema named test. (It does not matter whether joe owns the pre-existing schema.)

```
CREATE SCHEMA IF NOT EXISTS test AUTHORIZATION joe;
```

Create a schema and create a table and view within it:

```
CREATE SCHEMA hollywood
    CREATE TABLE films (title text, release date, awards text[])
    CREATE VIEW winners AS
        SELECT title, release FROM films WHERE awards IS NOT NULL;
```

Notice that the individual subcommands do not end with semicolons.

The following is an equivalent way of accomplishing the same result:

```
CREATE SCHEMA hollywood;
CREATE TABLE hollywood.films (title text, release date, awards
    text[]);
CREATE VIEW hollywood.winners AS
    SELECT title, release FROM hollywood.films WHERE awards IS NOT
    NULL;
```

## Compatibility

The SQL standard allows a DEFAULT CHARACTER SET clause in CREATE SCHEMA, as well as more subcommand types than are presently accepted by PostgreSQL.

The SQL standard specifies that the subcommands in CREATE SCHEMA can appear in any order. The present PostgreSQL implementation does not handle all cases of forward references in subcommands; it might sometimes be necessary to reorder the subcommands in order to avoid forward references.

According to the SQL standard, the owner of a schema always owns all objects within it. PostgreSQL allows schemas to contain objects owned by users other than the schema owner. This can happen only if the schema owner grants the `CREATE` privilege on their schema to someone else, or a superuser chooses to create objects in it.

The `IF NOT EXISTS` option is a PostgreSQL extension.

## See Also

`ALTER SCHEMA`, `DROP SCHEMA`

---

# CREATE SEQUENCE

CREATE SEQUENCE — define a new sequence generator

## Synopsis

```
CREATE [ { TEMPORARY | TEMP } | UNLOGGED ] SEQUENCE [ IF NOT
EXISTS ] name
    [ AS data_type ]
    [ INCREMENT [ BY ] increment ]
    [ MINVALUE minvalue | NO MINVALUE ] [ MAXVALUE maxvalue | NO
MAXVALUE ]
    [ START [ WITH ] start ] [ CACHE cache ] [ [ NO ] CYCLE ]
    [ OWNED BY { table_name.column_name | NONE } ]
```

## Description

CREATE SEQUENCE creates a new sequence number generator. This involves creating and initializing a new special single-row table with the name *name*. The generator will be owned by the user issuing the command.

If a schema name is given then the sequence is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema. Temporary sequences exist in a special schema, so a schema name cannot be given when creating a temporary sequence. The sequence name must be distinct from the name of any other relation (table, sequence, index, view, materialized view, or foreign table) in the same schema.

After a sequence is created, you use the functions `nextval`, `currval`, and `setval` to operate on the sequence. These functions are documented in Section 9.17.

Although you cannot update a sequence directly, you can use a query like:

```
SELECT * FROM name;
```

to examine the parameters and current state of a sequence. In particular, the `last_value` field of the sequence shows the last value allocated by any session. (Of course, this value might be obsolete by the time it's printed, if other sessions are actively doing `nextval` calls.)

## Parameters

TEMPORARY or TEMP

If specified, the sequence object is created only for this session, and is automatically dropped on session exit. Existing permanent sequences with the same name are not visible (in this session) while the temporary sequence exists, unless they are referenced with schema-qualified names.

UNLOGGED

If specified, the sequence is created as an unlogged sequence. Changes to unlogged sequences are not written to the write-ahead log. They are not crash-safe: an unlogged sequence is automatically reset to its initial state after a crash or unclean shutdown. Unlogged sequences are also not replicated to standby servers.

Unlike unlogged tables, unlogged sequences do not offer a significant performance advantage. This option is mainly intended for sequences associated with unlogged tables via identity columns



or serial columns. In those cases, it usually wouldn't make sense to have the sequence WAL-logged and replicated but not its associated table.

IF NOT EXISTS

Do not throw an error if a relation with the same name already exists. A notice is issued in this case. Note that there is no guarantee that the existing relation is anything like the sequence that would have been created — it might not even be a sequence.

*name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the sequence to be created.

*data\_type*

The optional clause AS *data\_type* specifies the data type of the sequence. Valid types are `smallint`, `integer`, and `bigint`. `bigint` is the default. The data type determines the default minimum and maximum values of the sequence.

*increment*

The optional clause INCREMENT BY *increment* specifies which value is added to the current sequence value to create a new value. A positive value will make an ascending sequence, a negative one a descending sequence. The default value is 1.

*minvalue*

NO MINVALUE

The optional clause MINVALUE *minvalue* determines the minimum value a sequence can generate. If this clause is not supplied or NO MINVALUE is specified, then defaults will be used. The default for an ascending sequence is 1. The default for a descending sequence is the minimum value of the data type.

*maxvalue*

NO MAXVALUE

The optional clause MAXVALUE *maxvalue* determines the maximum value for the sequence. If this clause is not supplied or NO MAXVALUE is specified, then default values will be used. The default for an ascending sequence is the maximum value of the data type. The default for a descending sequence is -1.

*start*

The optional clause START WITH *start* allows the sequence to begin anywhere. The default starting value is *minvalue* for ascending sequences and *maxvalue* for descending ones.

*cache*

The optional clause CACHE *cache* specifies how many sequence numbers are to be preallocated and stored in memory for faster access. The minimum value is 1 (only one value can be generated at a time, i.e., no cache), and this is also the default.

CYCLE

NO CYCLE

The CYCLE option allows the sequence to wrap around when the *maxvalue* or *minvalue* has been reached by an ascending or descending sequence respectively. If the limit is reached, the next number generated will be the *minvalue* or *maxvalue*, respectively.

If NO CYCLE is specified, any calls to `nextval` after the sequence has reached its maximum value will return an error. If neither CYCLE or NO CYCLE are specified, NO CYCLE is the default.

```
OWNED BY table_name.column_name
OWNED BY NONE
```

The `OWNED BY` option causes the sequence to be associated with a specific table column, such that if that column (or its whole table) is dropped, the sequence will be automatically dropped as well. The specified table must have the same owner and be in the same schema as the sequence. `OWNED BY NONE`, the default, specifies that there is no such association.

## Notes

Use `DROP SEQUENCE` to remove a sequence.

Sequences are based on `bigint` arithmetic, so the range cannot exceed the range of an eight-byte integer (-9223372036854775808 to 9223372036854775807).

Because `nextval` and `setval` calls are never rolled back, sequence objects cannot be used if “gapless” assignment of sequence numbers is needed. It is possible to build gapless assignment by using exclusive locking of a table containing a counter; but this solution is much more expensive than sequence objects, especially if many transactions need sequence numbers concurrently.

Unexpected results might be obtained if a `cache` setting greater than one is used for a sequence object that will be used concurrently by multiple sessions. Each session will allocate and cache successive sequence values during one access to the sequence object and increase the sequence object's `last_value` accordingly. Then, the next `cache-1` uses of `nextval` within that session simply return the preallocated values without touching the sequence object. So, any numbers allocated but not used within a session will be lost when that session ends, resulting in “holes” in the sequence.

Furthermore, although multiple sessions are guaranteed to allocate distinct sequence values, the values might be generated out of sequence when all the sessions are considered. For example, with a `cache` setting of 10, session A might reserve values 1..10 and return `nextval=1`, then session B might reserve values 11..20 and return `nextval=11` before session A has generated `nextval=2`. Thus, with a `cache` setting of one it is safe to assume that `nextval` values are generated sequentially; with a `cache` setting greater than one you should only assume that the `nextval` values are all distinct, not that they are generated purely sequentially. Also, `last_value` will reflect the latest value reserved by any session, whether or not it has yet been returned by `nextval`.

Another consideration is that a `setval` executed on such a sequence will not be noticed by other sessions until they have used up any preallocated values they have cached.

## Examples

Create an ascending sequence called `serial`, starting at 101:

```
CREATE SEQUENCE serial START 101;
```

Select the next number from this sequence:

```
SELECT nextval('serial');

nextval
-----
      101
```

Select the next number from this sequence:

```
SELECT nextval('serial');
```

```
nextval
-----
      102
```

Use this sequence in an INSERT command:

```
INSERT INTO distributors VALUES (nextval('serial'), 'nothing');
```

Update the sequence value after a COPY FROM:

```
BEGIN;
COPY distributors FROM 'input_file';
SELECT setval('serial', max(id)) FROM distributors;
END;
```

## Compatibility

CREATE SEQUENCE conforms to the SQL standard, with the following exceptions:

- Obtaining the next value is done using the `nextval()` function instead of the standard's `NEXT VALUE FOR` expression.
- The `OWNED BY` clause is a PostgreSQL extension.

## See Also

ALTER SEQUENCE, DROP SEQUENCE

---

# CREATE SERVER

CREATE SERVER — define a new foreign server

## Synopsis

```
CREATE SERVER [ IF NOT EXISTS ] server_name [ TYPE 'server_type' ]  
[ VERSION 'server_version' ]  
  FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER fdw_name  
  [ OPTIONS ( option 'value' [, ... ] ) ]
```

## Description

CREATE SERVER defines a new foreign server. The user who defines the server becomes its owner.

A foreign server typically encapsulates connection information that a foreign-data wrapper uses to access an external data resource. Additional user-specific connection information may be specified by means of user mappings.

The server name must be unique within the database.

Creating a server requires USAGE privilege on the foreign-data wrapper being used.

## Parameters

IF NOT EXISTS

Do not throw an error if a server with the same name already exists. A notice is issued in this case. Note that there is no guarantee that the existing server is anything like the one that would have been created.

*server\_name*

The name of the foreign server to be created.

*server\_type*

Optional server type, potentially useful to foreign-data wrappers.

*server\_version*

Optional server version, potentially useful to foreign-data wrappers.

*fdw\_name*

The name of the foreign-data wrapper that manages the server.

OPTIONS ( *option* '*value*' [, ... ] )

This clause specifies the options for the server. The options typically define the connection details of the server, but the actual names and values are dependent on the server's foreign-data wrapper.

## Notes

When using the dblink module, a foreign server's name can be used as an argument of the dblink\_connect function to indicate the connection parameters. It is necessary to have the USAGE privilege on the foreign server to be able to use it in this way.

If the foreign server supports sort pushdown, it is necessary for it to have the same sort ordering as the local server.

## Examples

Create a server `myserver` that uses the foreign-data wrapper `postgres_fdw`:

```
CREATE SERVER myserver FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER postgres_fdw OPTIONS
  (host 'foo', dbname 'foodb', port '5432');
```

See `postgres_fdw` for more details.

## Compatibility

`CREATE SERVER` conforms to ISO/IEC 9075-9 (SQL/MED).

## See Also

`ALTER SERVER`, `DROP SERVER`, `CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER`, `CREATE FOREIGN TABLE`, `CREATE USER MAPPING`

---

# CREATE STATISTICS

CREATE STATISTICS — define extended statistics

## Synopsis

```
CREATE STATISTICS [ [ IF NOT EXISTS ] statistics_name ]
    ON ( expression )
    FROM table_name

CREATE STATISTICS [ [ IF NOT EXISTS ] statistics_name ]
    [ ( statistics_kind [, ...] ) ]
    ON { column_name | ( expression ) }, { column_name |
    ( expression ) } [, ...]
    FROM table_name
```

## Description

CREATE STATISTICS will create a new extended statistics object tracking data about the specified table, foreign table or materialized view. The statistics object will be created in the current database and will be owned by the user issuing the command.

The CREATE STATISTICS command has two basic forms. The first form allows univariate statistics for a single expression to be collected, providing benefits similar to an expression index without the overhead of index maintenance. This form does not allow the statistics kind to be specified, since the various statistics kinds refer only to multivariate statistics. The second form of the command allows multivariate statistics on multiple columns and/or expressions to be collected, optionally specifying which statistics kinds to include. This form will also automatically cause univariate statistics to be collected on any expressions included in the list.

If a schema name is given (for example, CREATE STATISTICS myschema.mystat ...) then the statistics object is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema. If given, the name of the statistics object must be distinct from the name of any other statistics object in the same schema.

## Parameters

IF NOT EXISTS

Do not throw an error if a statistics object with the same name already exists. A notice is issued in this case. Note that only the name of the statistics object is considered here, not the details of its definition. Statistics name is required when IF NOT EXISTS is specified.

*statistics\_name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the statistics object to be created. If the name is omitted, PostgreSQL chooses a suitable name based on the parent table's name and the defined column name(s) and/or expression(s).

*statistics\_kind*

A multivariate statistics kind to be computed in this statistics object. Currently supported kinds are *ndistinct*, which enables n-distinct statistics, *dependencies*, which enables functional dependency statistics, and *mcv* which enables most-common values lists. If this clause is omitted, all supported statistics kinds are included in the statistics object. Univariate expression statistics

are built automatically if the statistics definition includes any complex expressions rather than just simple column references. For more information, see Section 14.2.2 and Section 76.2.

*column\_name*

The name of a table column to be covered by the computed statistics. This is only allowed when building multivariate statistics. At least two column names or expressions must be specified, and their order is not significant.

*expression*

An expression to be covered by the computed statistics. This may be used to build univariate statistics on a single expression, or as part of a list of multiple column names and/or expressions to build multivariate statistics. In the latter case, separate univariate statistics are built automatically for each expression in the list.

*table\_name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table containing the column(s) the statistics are computed on; see ANALYZE for an explanation of the handling of inheritance and partitions.

## Notes

You must be the owner of a table to create a statistics object reading it. Once created, however, the ownership of the statistics object is independent of the underlying table(s).

Expression statistics are per-expression and are similar to creating an index on the expression, except that they avoid the overhead of index maintenance. Expression statistics are built automatically for each expression in the statistics object definition.

Extended statistics are not currently used by the planner for selectivity estimations made for table joins. This limitation will likely be removed in a future version of PostgreSQL.

## Examples

Create table `t1` with two functionally dependent columns, i.e., knowledge of a value in the first column is sufficient for determining the value in the other column. Then functional dependency statistics are built on those columns:

```
CREATE TABLE t1 (  
    a    int,  
    b    int  
);  
  
INSERT INTO t1 SELECT i/100, i/500  
    FROM generate_series(1,1000000) s(i);  
  
ANALYZE t1;  
  
-- the number of matching rows will be drastically underestimated:  
EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT * FROM t1 WHERE (a = 1) AND (b = 0);  
  
CREATE STATISTICS s1 (dependencies) ON a, b FROM t1;  
  
ANALYZE t1;  
  
-- now the row count estimate is more accurate:  
EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT * FROM t1 WHERE (a = 1) AND (b = 0);
```

Without functional-dependency statistics, the planner would assume that the two WHERE conditions are independent, and would multiply their selectivities together to arrive at a much-too-small row count estimate. With such statistics, the planner recognizes that the WHERE conditions are redundant and does not underestimate the row count.

Create table t2 with two perfectly correlated columns (containing identical data), and an MCV list on those columns:

```
CREATE TABLE t2 (
    a    int,
    b    int
);

INSERT INTO t2 SELECT mod(i,100), mod(i,100)
                  FROM generate_series(1,1000000) s(i);

CREATE STATISTICS s2 (mcv) ON a, b FROM t2;

ANALYZE t2;

-- valid combination (found in MCV)
EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT * FROM t2 WHERE (a = 1) AND (b = 1);

-- invalid combination (not found in MCV)
EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT * FROM t2 WHERE (a = 1) AND (b = 2);
```

The MCV list gives the planner more detailed information about the specific values that commonly appear in the table, as well as an upper bound on the selectivities of combinations of values that do not appear in the table, allowing it to generate better estimates in both cases.

Create table t3 with a single timestamp column, and run queries using expressions on that column. Without extended statistics, the planner has no information about the data distribution for the expressions, and uses default estimates. The planner also does not realize that the value of the date truncated to the month is fully determined by the value of the date truncated to the day. Then expression and ndistinct statistics are built on those two expressions:

```
CREATE TABLE t3 (
    a    timestamp
);

INSERT INTO t3 SELECT i FROM
generate_series('2020-01-01'::timestamp,
               '2020-12-31'::timestamp,
               '1 minute'::interval)
s(i);

ANALYZE t3;

-- the number of matching rows will be drastically underestimated:
EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT * FROM t3
  WHERE date_trunc('month', a) = '2020-01-01'::timestamp;

EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT * FROM t3
  WHERE date_trunc('day', a) BETWEEN '2020-01-01'::timestamp
                                   AND '2020-06-30'::timestamp;
```



```
EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT date_trunc('month', a), date_trunc('day', a)
    FROM t3 GROUP BY 1, 2;

-- build ndistinct statistics on the pair of expressions (per-
expression
-- statistics are built automatically)
CREATE STATISTICS s3 (ndistinct) ON date_trunc('month', a),
    date_trunc('day', a) FROM t3;

ANALYZE t3;

-- now the row count estimates are more accurate:
EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT * FROM t3
    WHERE date_trunc('month', a) = '2020-01-01'::timestamp;

EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT * FROM t3
    WHERE date_trunc('day', a) BETWEEN '2020-01-01'::timestamp
        AND '2020-06-30'::timestamp;

EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT date_trunc('month', a), date_trunc('day', a)
    FROM t3 GROUP BY 1, 2;
```

Without expression and ndistinct statistics, the planner has no information about the number of distinct values for the expressions, and has to rely on default estimates. The equality and range conditions are assumed to have 0.5% selectivity, and the number of distinct values in the expression is assumed to be the same as for the column (i.e. unique). This results in a significant underestimate of the row count in the first two queries. Moreover, the planner has no information about the relationship between the expressions, so it assumes the two WHERE and GROUP BY conditions are independent, and multiplies their selectivities together to arrive at a severe overestimate of the group count in the aggregate query. This is further exacerbated by the lack of accurate statistics for the expressions, forcing the planner to use a default ndistinct estimate for the expression derived from ndistinct for the column. With such statistics, the planner recognizes that the conditions are correlated, and arrives at much more accurate estimates.

## Compatibility

There is no CREATE STATISTICS command in the SQL standard.

## See Also

ALTER STATISTICS, DROP STATISTICS

---

# CREATE SUBSCRIPTION

CREATE SUBSCRIPTION — define a new subscription

## Synopsis

```
CREATE SUBSCRIPTION subscription_name
    CONNECTION 'conninfo'
    PUBLICATION publication_name [, ...]
    [ WITH ( subscription_parameter [= value] [, ... ] ) ]
```

## Description

CREATE SUBSCRIPTION adds a new logical-replication subscription. The user that creates a subscription becomes the owner of the subscription. The subscription name must be distinct from the name of any existing subscription in the current database.

A subscription represents a replication connection to the publisher. Hence, in addition to adding definitions in the local catalogs, this command normally creates a replication slot on the publisher.

A logical replication worker will be started to replicate data for the new subscription at the commit of the transaction where this command is run, unless the subscription is initially disabled.

To be able to create a subscription, you must have the privileges of the `pg_create_subscription` role, as well as CREATE privileges on the current database.

Additional information about subscriptions and logical replication as a whole is available at Section 31.2 and Chapter 31.

## Parameters

*subscription\_name*

The name of the new subscription.

CONNECTION '*conninfo*'

The libpq connection string defining how to connect to the publisher database. For details see Section 34.1.1.

PUBLICATION *publication\_name* [, ...]

Names of the publications on the publisher to subscribe to.

WITH ( *subscription\_parameter* [= *value*] [, ... ] )

This clause specifies optional parameters for a subscription.

The following parameters control what happens during subscription creation:

connect (boolean)

Specifies whether the CREATE SUBSCRIPTION command should connect to the publisher at all. The default is true. Setting this to false will force the values of create\_slot,

enabled and `copy_data` to `false`. (You cannot combine setting `connect` to `false` with setting `create_slot`, `enabled`, or `copy_data` to `true`.)

Since no connection is made when this option is `false`, no tables are subscribed. To initiate replication, you must manually create the replication slot, enable the subscription, and refresh the subscription. See Section 31.2.3 for examples.

`create_slot` (boolean)

Specifies whether the command should create the replication slot on the publisher. The default is `true`.

If set to `false`, you are responsible for creating the publisher's slot in some other way. See Section 31.2.3 for examples.

`enabled` (boolean)

Specifies whether the subscription should be actively replicating or whether it should just be set up but not started yet. The default is `true`.

`slot_name` (string)

Name of the publisher's replication slot to use. The default is to use the name of the subscription for the slot name.

Setting `slot_name` to `NONE` means there will be no replication slot associated with the subscription. Such subscriptions must also have both `enabled` and `create_slot` set to `false`. Use this when you will be creating the replication slot later manually. See Section 31.2.3 for examples.

The following parameters control the subscription's replication behavior after it has been created:

`binary` (boolean)

Specifies whether the subscription will request the publisher to send the data in binary format (as opposed to text). The default is `false`. Any initial table synchronization copy (see `copy_data`) also uses the same format. Binary format can be faster than the text format, but it is less portable across machine architectures and PostgreSQL versions. Binary format is very data type specific; for example, it will not allow copying from a `smallint` column to an `integer` column, even though that would work fine in text format. Even when this option is enabled, only data types having binary send and receive functions will be transferred in binary. Note that the initial synchronization requires all data types to have binary send and receive functions, otherwise the synchronization will fail (see `CREATE TYPE` for more about send/receive functions).

When doing cross-version replication, it could be that the publisher has a binary send function for some data type, but the subscriber lacks a binary receive function for that type. In such a case, data transfer will fail, and the `binary` option cannot be used.

If the publisher is a PostgreSQL version before 16, then any initial table synchronization will use text format even if `binary = true`.

`copy_data` (boolean)

Specifies whether to copy pre-existing data in the publications that are being subscribed to when the replication starts. The default is `true`.

If the publications contain `WHERE` clauses, it will affect what data is copied. Refer to the Notes for details.

See Notes for details of how `copy_data = true` can interact with the `origin` parameter.

**streaming (enum)**

Specifies whether to enable streaming of in-progress transactions for this subscription. The default value is `off`, meaning all transactions are fully decoded on the publisher and only then sent to the subscriber as a whole.

If set to `on`, the incoming changes are written to temporary files and then applied only after the transaction is committed on the publisher and received by the subscriber.

If set to `parallel`, incoming changes are directly applied via one of the parallel apply workers, if available. If no parallel apply worker is free to handle streaming transactions then the changes are written to temporary files and applied after the transaction is committed. Note that if an error happens in a parallel apply worker, the finish LSN of the remote transaction might not be reported in the server log.

**synchronous\_commit (enum)**

The value of this parameter overrides the `synchronous_commit` setting within this subscription's apply worker processes. The default value is `off`.

It is safe to use `off` for logical replication: If the subscriber loses transactions because of missing synchronization, the data will be sent again from the publisher.

A different setting might be appropriate when doing synchronous logical replication. The logical replication workers report the positions of writes and flushes to the publisher, and when using synchronous replication, the publisher will wait for the actual flush. This means that setting `synchronous_commit` for the subscriber to `off` when the subscription is used for synchronous replication might increase the latency for `COMMIT` on the publisher. In this scenario, it can be advantageous to set `synchronous_commit` to `local` or higher.

**two\_phase (boolean)**

Specifies whether two-phase commit is enabled for this subscription. The default is `false`.

When two-phase commit is enabled, prepared transactions are sent to the subscriber at the time of `PREPARE TRANSACTION`, and are processed as two-phase transactions on the subscriber too. Otherwise, prepared transactions are sent to the subscriber only when committed, and are then processed immediately by the subscriber.

The implementation of two-phase commit requires that replication has successfully finished the initial table synchronization phase. So even when `two_phase` is enabled for a subscription, the internal two-phase state remains temporarily “pending” until the initialization phase completes. See column `subtwophasestate` of `pg_subscription` to know the actual two-phase state.

**disable\_on\_error (boolean)**

Specifies whether the subscription should be automatically disabled if any errors are detected by subscription workers during data replication from the publisher. The default is `false`.

**password\_required (boolean)**

If set to `true`, connections to the publisher made as a result of this subscription must use password authentication and the password must be specified as a part of the connection string. This setting is ignored when the subscription is owned by a superuser. The default is `true`. Only superusers can set this value to `false`.

**run\_as\_owner (boolean)**

If `true`, all replication actions are performed as the subscription owner. If `false`, replication workers will perform actions on each table as the owner of that table. The latter configuration is generally much more secure; for details, see Section 31.9. The default is `false`.

`origin(string)`

Specifies whether the subscription will request the publisher to only send changes that don't have an origin or send changes regardless of origin. Setting `origin` to `none` means that the subscription will request the publisher to only send changes that don't have an origin. Setting `origin` to `any` means that the publisher sends changes regardless of their origin. The default is `any`.

See Notes for details of how `copy_data = true` can interact with the `origin` parameter.

When specifying a parameter of type `boolean`, the `= value` part can be omitted, which is equivalent to specifying `TRUE`.

## Notes

See Section 31.9 for details on how to configure access control between the subscription and the publication instance.

When creating a replication slot (the default behavior), `CREATE SUBSCRIPTION` cannot be executed inside a transaction block.

Creating a subscription that connects to the same database cluster (for example, to replicate between databases in the same cluster or to replicate within the same database) will only succeed if the replication slot is not created as part of the same command. Otherwise, the `CREATE SUBSCRIPTION` call will hang. To make this work, create the replication slot separately (using the function `pg_create_logical_replication_slot` with the plugin name `pgoutput`) and create the subscription using the parameter `create_slot = false`. See Section 31.2.3 for examples. This is an implementation restriction that might be lifted in a future release.

If any table in the publication has a `WHERE` clause, rows for which the *expression* evaluates to false or null will not be published. If the subscription has several publications in which the same table has been published with different `WHERE` clauses, a row will be published if any of the expressions (referring to that publish operation) are satisfied. In the case of different `WHERE` clauses, if one of the publications has no `WHERE` clause (referring to that publish operation) or the publication is declared as `FOR ALL TABLES` or `FOR TABLES IN SCHEMA`, rows are always published regardless of the definition of the other expressions. If the subscriber is a PostgreSQL version before 15, then any row filtering is ignored during the initial data synchronization phase. For this case, the user might want to consider deleting any initially copied data that would be incompatible with subsequent filtering. Because initial data synchronization does not take into account the publication `publish` parameter when copying existing table data, some rows may be copied that would not be replicated using DML. See Section 31.2.2 for examples.

Subscriptions having several publications in which the same table has been published with different column lists are not supported.

We allow non-existent publications to be specified so that users can add those later. This means `pg_subscription` can have non-existent publications.

When using a subscription parameter combination of `copy_data = true` and `origin = NONE`, the initial sync table data is copied directly from the publisher, meaning that knowledge of the true origin of that data is not possible. If the publisher also has subscriptions then the copied table data might have originated from further upstream. This scenario is detected and a `WARNING` is logged to the user, but the warning is only an indication of a potential problem; it is the user's responsibility to make the necessary checks to ensure the copied data origins are really as wanted or not.

To find which tables might potentially include non-local origins (due to other subscriptions created on the publisher) try this SQL query:

```
# substitute <pub-names> below with your publication name(s) to be
# queried
SELECT DISTINCT PT.schemaname, PT.tablename
FROM pg_publication_tables PT,
     pg_subscription_rel PS
     JOIN pg_class C ON (C.oid = PS.srrelid)
     JOIN pg_namespace N ON (N.oid = C.relnamespace)
WHERE N.nspname = PT.schemaname AND
      C.relname = PT.tablename AND
      PT.pubname IN (<pub-names>);
```

## Examples

Create a subscription to a remote server that replicates tables in the publications mypublication and insert\_only and starts replicating immediately on commit:

```
CREATE SUBSCRIPTION mysub
    CONNECTION 'host=192.168.1.50 port=5432 user=foo
             dbname=foodb'
    PUBLICATION mypublication, insert_only;
```

Create a subscription to a remote server that replicates tables in the insert\_only publication and does not start replicating until enabled at a later time.

```
CREATE SUBSCRIPTION mysub
    CONNECTION 'host=192.168.1.50 port=5432 user=foo
             dbname=foodb'
    PUBLICATION insert_only
    WITH (enabled = false);
```

## Compatibility

CREATE SUBSCRIPTION is a PostgreSQL extension.

## See Also

ALTER SUBSCRIPTION, DROP SUBSCRIPTION, CREATE PUBLICATION, ALTER PUBLICATION

---

# CREATE TABLE

CREATE TABLE — define a new table

## Synopsis

```
CREATE [ [ GLOBAL | LOCAL ] { TEMPORARY | TEMP } | UNLOGGED ] TABLE
[ IF NOT EXISTS ] table_name ( [
    { column_name data_type [ STORAGE { PLAIN | EXTERNAL |
EXTENDED | MAIN | DEFAULT } ] [ COMPRESSION compression_method ]
  [ COLLATE collation ] [ column_constraint [ ... ] ]
    | table_constraint
    | LIKE source_table [ like_option ... ] }
[ , ... ]
] )
[ INHERITS ( parent_table [ , ... ] ) ]
[ PARTITION BY { RANGE | LIST | HASH } ( { column_name |
( expression ) } [ COLLATE collation ] [ opclass ] [ , ... ] ) ]
[ USING method ]
[ WITH ( storage_parameter [= value] [ , ... ] ) | WITHOUT OIDS ]
[ ON COMMIT { PRESERVE ROWS | DELETE ROWS | DROP } ]
[ TABLESPACE tablespace_name ]
```

```
CREATE [ [ GLOBAL | LOCAL ] { TEMPORARY | TEMP } | UNLOGGED ] TABLE
[ IF NOT EXISTS ] table_name
    OF type_name [ (
        { column_name [ WITH OPTIONS ] [ column_constraint [ ... ] ]
          | table_constraint }
        [ , ... ]
    ) ]
[ PARTITION BY { RANGE | LIST | HASH } ( { column_name |
( expression ) } [ COLLATE collation ] [ opclass ] [ , ... ] ) ]
[ USING method ]
[ WITH ( storage_parameter [= value] [ , ... ] ) | WITHOUT OIDS ]
[ ON COMMIT { PRESERVE ROWS | DELETE ROWS | DROP } ]
[ TABLESPACE tablespace_name ]
```

```
CREATE [ [ GLOBAL | LOCAL ] { TEMPORARY | TEMP } | UNLOGGED ] TABLE
[ IF NOT EXISTS ] table_name
    PARTITION OF parent_table [ (
        { column_name [ WITH OPTIONS ] [ column_constraint [ ... ] ]
          | table_constraint }
        [ , ... ]
    ) ] { FOR VALUES partition_bound_spec | DEFAULT }
[ PARTITION BY { RANGE | LIST | HASH } ( { column_name |
( expression ) } [ COLLATE collation ] [ opclass ] [ , ... ] ) ]
[ USING method ]
[ WITH ( storage_parameter [= value] [ , ... ] ) | WITHOUT OIDS ]
[ ON COMMIT { PRESERVE ROWS | DELETE ROWS | DROP } ]
[ TABLESPACE tablespace_name ]
```

where *column\_constraint* is:

```
[ CONSTRAINT constraint_name ]
{ NOT NULL |
```

```

NULL |
CHECK ( expression ) [ NO INHERIT ] |
DEFAULT default_expr |
GENERATED ALWAYS AS ( generation_expr ) STORED |
GENERATED { ALWAYS | BY DEFAULT } AS IDENTITY
[ ( sequence_options ) ] |
UNIQUE [ NULLS [ NOT ] DISTINCT ] index_parameters |
PRIMARY KEY index_parameters |
REFERENCES reftable [ ( refcolumn ) ] [ MATCH FULL | MATCH
PARTIAL | MATCH SIMPLE ]
    [ ON DELETE referential_action ] [ ON UPDATE referential_action
] }
[ DEFERRABLE | NOT DEFERRABLE ] [ INITIALLY DEFERRED | INITIALLY
IMMEDIATE ]

```

and *table\_constraint* is:

```

[ CONSTRAINT constraint_name ]
{ CHECK ( expression ) [ NO INHERIT ] |
  UNIQUE [ NULLS [ NOT ] DISTINCT ] ( column_name
[, ... ] ) index_parameters |
  PRIMARY KEY ( column_name [, ... ] ) index_parameters |
  EXCLUDE [ USING index_method ] ( exclude_element WITH operator
[, ... ] ) index_parameters [ WHERE ( predicate ) ] |
  FOREIGN KEY ( column_name [, ... ] ) REFERENCES reftable
[ ( refcolumn [, ... ] ) ]
    [ MATCH FULL | MATCH PARTIAL | MATCH SIMPLE ] [ ON
DELETE referential_action ] [ ON UPDATE referential_action ] }
[ DEFERRABLE | NOT DEFERRABLE ] [ INITIALLY DEFERRED | INITIALLY
IMMEDIATE ]

```

and *like\_option* is:

```

{ INCLUDING | EXCLUDING } { COMMENTS | COMPRESSION | CONSTRAINTS |
DEFAULTS | GENERATED | IDENTITY | INDEXES | STATISTICS | STORAGE |
ALL }

```

and *partition\_bound\_spec* is:

```

IN ( partition_bound_expr [, ...] ) |
FROM ( { partition_bound_expr | MINVALUE | MAXVALUE } [, ...] )
  TO ( { partition_bound_expr | MINVALUE | MAXVALUE } [, ...] ) |
WITH ( MODULUS numeric_literal, REMAINDER numeric_literal )

```

*index\_parameters* in UNIQUE, PRIMARY KEY, and EXCLUDE constraints are:

```

[ INCLUDE ( column_name [, ... ] ) ]
[ WITH ( storage_parameter [= value] [, ... ] ) ]
[ USING INDEX TABLESPACE tablespace_name ]

```

*exclude\_element* in an EXCLUDE constraint is:

```

{ column_name | ( expression ) } [ opclass ] [ ASC | DESC ] [ NULLS
{ FIRST | LAST } ]

```

*referential\_action* in a FOREIGN KEY/REFERENCES constraint is:



```
{ NO ACTION | RESTRICT | CASCADE | SET NULL [ ( column_name  
[ , ... ] ) ] | SET DEFAULT [ ( column_name [ , ... ] ) ] }
```

## Description

`CREATE TABLE` will create a new, initially empty table in the current database. The table will be owned by the user issuing the command.

If a schema name is given (for example, `CREATE TABLE myschema.mytable ...`) then the table is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema. Temporary tables exist in a special schema, so a schema name cannot be given when creating a temporary table. The name of the table must be distinct from the name of any other relation (table, sequence, index, view, materialized view, or foreign table) in the same schema.

`CREATE TABLE` also automatically creates a data type that represents the composite type corresponding to one row of the table. Therefore, tables cannot have the same name as any existing data type in the same schema.

The optional constraint clauses specify constraints (tests) that new or updated rows must satisfy for an insert or update operation to succeed. A constraint is an SQL object that helps define the set of valid values in the table in various ways.

There are two ways to define constraints: table constraints and column constraints. A column constraint is defined as part of a column definition. A table constraint definition is not tied to a particular column, and it can encompass more than one column. Every column constraint can also be written as a table constraint; a column constraint is only a notational convenience for use when the constraint only affects one column.

To be able to create a table, you must have `USAGE` privilege on all column types or the type in the `OF` clause, respectively.

## Parameters

`TEMPORARY` or `TEMP`

If specified, the table is created as a temporary table. Temporary tables are automatically dropped at the end of a session, or optionally at the end of the current transaction (see `ON COMMIT` below). The default `search_path` includes the temporary schema first and so identically named existing permanent tables are not chosen for new plans while the temporary table exists, unless they are referenced with schema-qualified names. Any indexes created on a temporary table are automatically temporary as well.

The autovacuum daemon cannot access and therefore cannot vacuum or analyze temporary tables. For this reason, appropriate vacuum and analyze operations should be performed via session SQL commands. For example, if a temporary table is going to be used in complex queries, it is wise to run `ANALYZE` on the temporary table after it is populated.

Optionally, `GLOBAL` or `LOCAL` can be written before `TEMPORARY` or `TEMP`. This presently makes no difference in PostgreSQL and is deprecated; see Compatibility below.

`UNLOGGED`

If specified, the table is created as an unlogged table. Data written to unlogged tables is not written to the write-ahead log (see Chapter 30), which makes them considerably faster than ordinary tables. However, they are not crash-safe: an unlogged table is automatically truncated after a crash or unclean shutdown. The contents of an unlogged table are also not replicated to standby servers. Any indexes created on an unlogged table are automatically unlogged as well.

If this is specified, any sequences created together with the unlogged table (for identity or serial columns) are also created as unlogged.

IF NOT EXISTS

Do not throw an error if a relation with the same name already exists. A notice is issued in this case. Note that there is no guarantee that the existing relation is anything like the one that would have been created.

*table\_name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table to be created.

OF *type\_name*

Creates a *typed table*, which takes its structure from the specified composite type (name optionally schema-qualified). A typed table is tied to its type; for example the table will be dropped if the type is dropped (with `DROP TYPE . . . CASCADE`).

When a typed table is created, then the data types of the columns are determined by the underlying composite type and are not specified by the `CREATE TABLE` command. But the `CREATE TABLE` command can add defaults and constraints to the table and can specify storage parameters.

*column\_name*

The name of a column to be created in the new table.

*data\_type*

The data type of the column. This can include array specifiers. For more information on the data types supported by PostgreSQL, refer to Chapter 8.

COLLATE *collation*

The `COLLATE` clause assigns a collation to the column (which must be of a collatable data type). If not specified, the column data type's default collation is used.

STORAGE { PLAIN | EXTERNAL | EXTENDED | MAIN | DEFAULT }

This form sets the storage mode for the column. This controls whether this column is held inline or in a secondary TOAST table, and whether the data should be compressed or not. `PLAIN` must be used for fixed-length values such as `integer` and is inline, uncompressed. `MAIN` is for inline, compressible data. `EXTERNAL` is for external, uncompressed data, and `EXTENDED` is for external, compressed data. Writing `DEFAULT` sets the storage mode to the default mode for the column's data type. `EXTENDED` is the default for most data types that support non-`PLAIN` storage. Use of `EXTERNAL` will make substring operations on very large text and bytea values run faster, at the penalty of increased storage space. See Section 73.2 for more information.

COMPRESSION *compression\_method*

The `COMPRESSION` clause sets the compression method for the column. Compression is supported only for variable-width data types, and is used only when the column's storage mode is `main` or `extended`. (See `ALTER TABLE` for information on column storage modes.) Setting this property for a partitioned table has no direct effect, because such tables have no storage of their own, but the configured value will be inherited by newly-created partitions. The supported compression methods are `pglz` and `lz4`. (`lz4` is available only if `--with-lz4` was used when building PostgreSQL.) In addition, *compression\_method* can be `default` to explicitly specify the default behavior, which is to consult the `default_toast_compression` setting at the time of data insertion to determine the method to use.

INHERITS ( *parent\_table* [, ... ] )

The optional `INHERITS` clause specifies a list of tables from which the new table automatically inherits all columns. Parent tables can be plain tables or foreign tables.

Use of `INHERITS` creates a persistent relationship between the new child table and its parent table(s). Schema modifications to the parent(s) normally propagate to children as well, and by default the data of the child table is included in scans of the parent(s).

If the same column name exists in more than one parent table, an error is reported unless the data types of the columns match in each of the parent tables. If there is no conflict, then the duplicate columns are merged to form a single column in the new table. If the column name list of the new table contains a column name that is also inherited, the data type must likewise match the inherited column(s), and the column definitions are merged into one. If the new table explicitly specifies a default value for the column, this default overrides any defaults from inherited declarations of the column. Otherwise, any parents that specify default values for the column must all specify the same default, or an error will be reported.

`CHECK` constraints are merged in essentially the same way as columns: if multiple parent tables and/or the new table definition contain identically-named `CHECK` constraints, these constraints must all have the same check expression, or an error will be reported. Constraints having the same name and expression will be merged into one copy. A constraint marked `NO INHERIT` in a parent will not be considered. Notice that an unnamed `CHECK` constraint in the new table will never be merged, since a unique name will always be chosen for it.

Column `STORAGE` settings are also copied from parent tables.

If a column in the parent table is an identity column, that property is not inherited. A column in the child table can be declared identity column if desired.

```
PARTITION BY { RANGE | LIST | HASH } ( { column_name | ( expression
) } [ opclass ] [, ...] )
```

The optional `PARTITION BY` clause specifies a strategy of partitioning the table. The table thus created is called a *partitioned* table. The parenthesized list of columns or expressions forms the *partition key* for the table. When using range or hash partitioning, the partition key can include multiple columns or expressions (up to 32, but this limit can be altered when building PostgreSQL), but for list partitioning, the partition key must consist of a single column or expression.

Range and list partitioning require a btree operator class, while hash partitioning requires a hash operator class. If no operator class is specified explicitly, the default operator class of the appropriate type will be used; if no default operator class exists, an error will be raised. When hash partitioning is used, the operator class used must implement support function 2 (see Section 38.16.3 for details).

A partitioned table is divided into sub-tables (called partitions), which are created using separate `CREATE TABLE` commands. The partitioned table is itself empty. A data row inserted into the table is routed to a partition based on the value of columns or expressions in the partition key. If no existing partition matches the values in the new row, an error will be reported.

Partitioned tables do not support `EXCLUDE` constraints; however, you can define these constraints on individual partitions.

See Section 5.11 for more discussion on table partitioning.

```
PARTITION OF parent_table { FOR VALUES partition_bound_spec | DE-
FAULT }
```

Creates the table as a *partition* of the specified parent table. The table can be created either as a partition for specific values using `FOR VALUES` or as a default partition using `DEFAULT`. Any indexes, constraints and user-defined row-level triggers that exist in the parent table are cloned on the new partition.

The *partition\_bound\_spec* must correspond to the partitioning method and partition key of the parent table, and must not overlap with any existing partition of that parent. The form with

IN is used for list partitioning, the form with FROM and TO is used for range partitioning, and the form with WITH is used for hash partitioning.

*partition\_bound\_expr* is any variable-free expression (subqueries, window functions, aggregate functions, and set-returning functions are not allowed). Its data type must match the data type of the corresponding partition key column. The expression is evaluated once at table creation time, so it can even contain volatile expressions such as CURRENT\_TIMESTAMP.

When creating a list partition, NULL can be specified to signify that the partition allows the partition key column to be null. However, there cannot be more than one such list partition for a given parent table. NULL cannot be specified for range partitions.

When creating a range partition, the lower bound specified with FROM is an inclusive bound, whereas the upper bound specified with TO is an exclusive bound. That is, the values specified in the FROM list are valid values of the corresponding partition key columns for this partition, whereas those in the TO list are not. Note that this statement must be understood according to the rules of row-wise comparison (Section 9.24.5). For example, given PARTITION BY RANGE (*x*, *y*), a partition bound FROM (1, 2) TO (3, 4) allows *x*=1 with any *y*>=2, *x*=2 with any non-null *y*, and *x*=3 with any *y*<4.

The special values MINVALUE and MAXVALUE may be used when creating a range partition to indicate that there is no lower or upper bound on the column's value. For example, a partition defined using FROM (MINVALUE) TO (10) allows any values less than 10, and a partition defined using FROM (10) TO (MAXVALUE) allows any values greater than or equal to 10.

When creating a range partition involving more than one column, it can also make sense to use MAXVALUE as part of the lower bound, and MINVALUE as part of the upper bound. For example, a partition defined using FROM (0, MAXVALUE) TO (10, MAXVALUE) allows any rows where the first partition key column is greater than 0 and less than or equal to 10. Similarly, a partition defined using FROM ('a', MINVALUE) TO ('b', MINVALUE) allows any rows where the first partition key column starts with "a".

Note that if MINVALUE or MAXVALUE is used for one column of a partitioning bound, the same value must be used for all subsequent columns. For example, (10, MINVALUE, 0) is not a valid bound; you should write (10, MINVALUE, MINVALUE).

Also note that some element types, such as timestamp, have a notion of "infinity", which is just another value that can be stored. This is different from MINVALUE and MAXVALUE, which are not real values that can be stored, but rather they are ways of saying that the value is unbounded. MAXVALUE can be thought of as being greater than any other value, including "infinity" and MINVALUE as being less than any other value, including "minus infinity". Thus the range FROM ('infinity') TO (MAXVALUE) is not an empty range; it allows precisely one value to be stored — "infinity".

If DEFAULT is specified, the table will be created as the default partition of the parent table. This option is not available for hash-partitioned tables. A partition key value not fitting into any other partition of the given parent will be routed to the default partition.

When a table has an existing DEFAULT partition and a new partition is added to it, the default partition must be scanned to verify that it does not contain any rows which properly belong in the new partition. If the default partition contains a large number of rows, this may be slow. The scan will be skipped if the default partition is a foreign table or if it has a constraint which proves that it cannot contain rows which should be placed in the new partition.

When creating a hash partition, a modulus and remainder must be specified. The modulus must be a positive integer, and the remainder must be a non-negative integer less than the modulus. Typically, when initially setting up a hash-partitioned table, you should choose a modulus equal to the number of partitions and assign every table the same modulus and a different remainder (see examples, below). However, it is not required that every partition have the same modulus,

only that every modulus which occurs among the partitions of a hash-partitioned table is a factor of the next larger modulus. This allows the number of partitions to be increased incrementally without needing to move all the data at once. For example, suppose you have a hash-partitioned table with 8 partitions, each of which has modulus 8, but find it necessary to increase the number of partitions to 16. You can detach one of the modulus-8 partitions, create two new modulus-16 partitions covering the same portion of the key space (one with a remainder equal to the remainder of the detached partition, and the other with a remainder equal to that value plus 8), and repopulate them with data. You can then repeat this -- perhaps at a later time -- for each modulus-8 partition until none remain. While this may still involve a large amount of data movement at each step, it is still better than having to create a whole new table and move all the data at once.

A partition must have the same column names and types as the partitioned table to which it belongs. Modifications to the column names or types of a partitioned table will automatically propagate to all partitions. CHECK constraints will be inherited automatically by every partition, but an individual partition may specify additional CHECK constraints; additional constraints with the same name and condition as in the parent will be merged with the parent constraint. Defaults may be specified separately for each partition. But note that a partition's default value is not applied when inserting a tuple through a partitioned table.

Rows inserted into a partitioned table will be automatically routed to the correct partition. If no suitable partition exists, an error will occur.

Operations such as TRUNCATE which normally affect a table and all of its inheritance children will cascade to all partitions, but may also be performed on an individual partition.

Note that creating a partition using PARTITION OF requires taking an ACCESS EXCLUSIVE lock on the parent partitioned table. Likewise, dropping a partition with DROP TABLE requires taking an ACCESS EXCLUSIVE lock on the parent table. It is possible to use ALTER TABLE ATTACH/DETACH PARTITION to perform these operations with a weaker lock, thus reducing interference with concurrent operations on the partitioned table.

`LIKE source_table [ like_option ... ]`

The LIKE clause specifies a table from which the new table automatically copies all column names, their data types, and their not-null constraints.

Unlike INHERITS, the new table and original table are completely decoupled after creation is complete. Changes to the original table will not be applied to the new table, and it is not possible to include data of the new table in scans of the original table.

Also unlike INHERITS, columns and constraints copied by LIKE are not merged with similarly named columns and constraints. If the same name is specified explicitly or in another LIKE clause, an error is signaled.

The optional *like\_option* clauses specify which additional properties of the original table to copy. Specifying INCLUDING copies the property, specifying EXCLUDING omits the property. EXCLUDING is the default. If multiple specifications are made for the same kind of object, the last one is used. The available options are:

INCLUDING COMMENTS

Comments for the copied columns, constraints, and indexes will be copied. The default behavior is to exclude comments, resulting in the copied columns and constraints in the new table having no comments.

INCLUDING COMPRESSION

Compression method of the columns will be copied. The default behavior is to exclude compression methods, resulting in columns having the default compression method.

## INCLUDING CONSTRAINTS

CHECK constraints will be copied. No distinction is made between column constraints and table constraints. Not-null constraints are always copied to the new table.

## INCLUDING DEFAULTS

Default expressions for the copied column definitions will be copied. Otherwise, default expressions are not copied, resulting in the copied columns in the new table having null defaults. Note that copying defaults that call database-modification functions, such as `nextval`, may create a functional linkage between the original and new tables.

## INCLUDING GENERATED

Any generation expressions of copied column definitions will be copied. By default, new columns will be regular base columns.

## INCLUDING IDENTITY

Any identity specifications of copied column definitions will be copied. A new sequence is created for each identity column of the new table, separate from the sequences associated with the old table.

## INCLUDING INDEXES

Indexes, PRIMARY KEY, UNIQUE, and EXCLUDE constraints on the original table will be created on the new table. Names for the new indexes and constraints are chosen according to the default rules, regardless of how the originals were named. (This behavior avoids possible duplicate-name failures for the new indexes.)

## INCLUDING STATISTICS

Extended statistics are copied to the new table.

## INCLUDING STORAGE

STORAGE settings for the copied column definitions will be copied. The default behavior is to exclude STORAGE settings, resulting in the copied columns in the new table having type-specific default settings. For more on STORAGE settings, see Section 73.2.

## INCLUDING ALL

INCLUDING ALL is an abbreviated form selecting all the available individual options. (It could be useful to write individual EXCLUDING clauses after INCLUDING ALL to select all but some specific options.)

The LIKE clause can also be used to copy column definitions from views, foreign tables, or composite types. Inapplicable options (e.g., INCLUDING INDEXES from a view) are ignored.

CONSTRAINT *constraint\_name*

An optional name for a column or table constraint. If the constraint is violated, the constraint name is present in error messages, so constraint names like `col must be positive` can be used to communicate helpful constraint information to client applications. (Double-quotes are needed to specify constraint names that contain spaces.) If a constraint name is not specified, the system generates a name.

## NOT NULL

The column is not allowed to contain null values.

## NULL

The column is allowed to contain null values. This is the default.

This clause is only provided for compatibility with non-standard SQL databases. Its use is discouraged in new applications.

## CHECK ( *expression* ) [ NO INHERIT ]

The CHECK clause specifies an expression producing a Boolean result which new or updated rows must satisfy for an insert or update operation to succeed. Expressions evaluating to TRUE or UNKNOWN succeed. Should any row of an insert or update operation produce a FALSE result, an error exception is raised and the insert or update does not alter the database. A check constraint specified as a column constraint should reference that column's value only, while an expression appearing in a table constraint can reference multiple columns.

Currently, CHECK expressions cannot contain subqueries nor refer to variables other than columns of the current row (see Section 5.4.1). The system column `tableoid` may be referenced, but not any other system column.

A constraint marked with NO INHERIT will not propagate to child tables.

When a table has multiple CHECK constraints, they will be tested for each row in alphabetical order by name, after checking NOT NULL constraints. (PostgreSQL versions before 9.5 did not honor any particular firing order for CHECK constraints.)

## DEFAULT *default\_expr*

The DEFAULT clause assigns a default data value for the column whose column definition it appears within. The value is any variable-free expression (in particular, cross-references to other columns in the current table are not allowed). Subqueries are not allowed either. The data type of the default expression must match the data type of the column.

The default expression will be used in any insert operation that does not specify a value for the column. If there is no default for a column, then the default is null.

## GENERATED ALWAYS AS ( *generation\_expr* ) STORED

This clause creates the column as a *generated column*. The column cannot be written to, and when read the result of the specified expression will be returned.

The keyword STORED is required to signify that the column will be computed on write and will be stored on disk.

The generation expression can refer to other columns in the table, but not other generated columns. Any functions and operators used must be immutable. References to other tables are not allowed.

## GENERATED { ALWAYS | BY DEFAULT } AS IDENTITY [ ( *sequence\_options* ) ]

This clause creates the column as an *identity column*. It will have an implicit sequence attached to it and the column in new rows will automatically have values from the sequence assigned to it. Such a column is implicitly NOT NULL.

The clauses ALWAYS and BY DEFAULT determine how explicitly user-specified values are handled in INSERT and UPDATE commands.

In an INSERT command, if ALWAYS is selected, a user-specified value is only accepted if the INSERT statement specifies OVERRIDING SYSTEM VALUE. If BY DEFAULT is selected, then the user-specified value takes precedence. See INSERT for details. (In the COPY command, user-specified values are always used regardless of this setting.)

In an UPDATE command, if ALWAYS is selected, any update of the column to any value other than DEFAULT will be rejected. If BY DEFAULT is selected, the column can be updated normally. (There is no OVERRIDING clause for the UPDATE command.)

The optional *sequence\_options* clause can be used to override the options of the sequence. See CREATE SEQUENCE for details.

```
UNIQUE [ NULLS [ NOT ] DISTINCT ] (column constraint)
UNIQUE [ NULLS [ NOT ] DISTINCT ] ( column_name [ , ... ] ) [ INCLUDE
( column_name [ , ... ] ) ] (table constraint)
```

The UNIQUE constraint specifies that a group of one or more columns of a table can contain only unique values. The behavior of a unique table constraint is the same as that of a unique column constraint, with the additional capability to span multiple columns. The constraint therefore enforces that any two rows must differ in at least one of these columns.

For the purpose of a unique constraint, null values are not considered equal, unless NULLS NOT DISTINCT is specified.

Each unique constraint should name a set of columns that is different from the set of columns named by any other unique or primary key constraint defined for the table. (Otherwise, redundant unique constraints will be discarded.)

When establishing a unique constraint for a multi-level partition hierarchy, all the columns in the partition key of the target partitioned table, as well as those of all its descendant partitioned tables, must be included in the constraint definition.

Adding a unique constraint will automatically create a unique btree index on the column or group of columns used in the constraint.

The optional INCLUDE clause adds to that index one or more columns that are simply “payload”: uniqueness is not enforced on them, and the index cannot be searched on the basis of those columns. However they can be retrieved by an index-only scan. Note that although the constraint is not enforced on included columns, it still depends on them. Consequently, some operations on such columns (e.g., DROP COLUMN) can cause cascaded constraint and index deletion.

```
PRIMARY KEY (column constraint)
PRIMARY KEY ( column_name [ , ... ] ) [ INCLUDE ( column_name [ , ... ] ) ] (table constraint)
```

The PRIMARY KEY constraint specifies that a column or columns of a table can contain only unique (non-duplicate), nonnull values. Only one primary key can be specified for a table, whether as a column constraint or a table constraint.

The primary key constraint should name a set of columns that is different from the set of columns named by any unique constraint defined for the same table. (Otherwise, the unique constraint is redundant and will be discarded.)

PRIMARY KEY enforces the same data constraints as a combination of UNIQUE and NOT NULL. However, identifying a set of columns as the primary key also provides metadata about the design of the schema, since a primary key implies that other tables can rely on this set of columns as a unique identifier for rows.

When placed on a partitioned table, PRIMARY KEY constraints share the restrictions previously described for UNIQUE constraints.

Adding a PRIMARY KEY constraint will automatically create a unique btree index on the column or group of columns used in the constraint.

The optional INCLUDE clause adds to that index one or more columns that are simply “payload”: uniqueness is not enforced on them, and the index cannot be searched on the basis of those



columns. However they can be retrieved by an index-only scan. Note that although the constraint is not enforced on included columns, it still depends on them. Consequently, some operations on such columns (e.g., `DROP COLUMN`) can cause cascaded constraint and index deletion.

```
EXCLUDE [ USING index_method ] ( exclude_element WITH operator
[, ... ] ) index_parameters [ WHERE ( predicate ) ]
```

The `EXCLUDE` clause defines an exclusion constraint, which guarantees that if any two rows are compared on the specified column(s) or expression(s) using the specified operator(s), not all of these comparisons will return `TRUE`. If all of the specified operators test for equality, this is equivalent to a `UNIQUE` constraint, although an ordinary unique constraint will be faster. However, exclusion constraints can specify constraints that are more general than simple equality. For example, you can specify a constraint that no two rows in the table contain overlapping circles (see Section 8.8) by using the `&&` operator.

Exclusion constraints are implemented using an index, so each specified operator must be associated with an appropriate operator class (see Section 11.10) for the index access method *index\_method*. The operators are required to be commutative. Each *exclude\_element* can optionally specify an operator class and/or ordering options; these are described fully under `CREATE INDEX`.

The access method must support `amgettuple` (see Chapter 64); at present this means GIN cannot be used. Although it's allowed, there is little point in using B-tree or hash indexes with an exclusion constraint, because this does nothing that an ordinary unique constraint doesn't do better. So in practice the access method will always be GiST or SP-GiST.

The *predicate* allows you to specify an exclusion constraint on a subset of the table; internally this creates a partial index. Note that parentheses are required around the predicate.

```
REFERENCES reftable [ ( refcolumn ) ] [ MATCH matchtype ] [ ON DELETE
referential_action ] [ ON UPDATE referential_action ] (column constraint)
FOREIGN KEY ( column_name [, ... ] ) REFERENCES reftable [ ( refcolumn
[, ... ] ) ] [ MATCH matchtype ] [ ON DELETE referential_action ]
[ ON UPDATE referential_action ] (table constraint)
```

These clauses specify a foreign key constraint, which requires that a group of one or more columns of the new table must only contain values that match values in the referenced column(s) of some row of the referenced table. If the *refcolumn* list is omitted, the primary key of the *reftable* is used. Otherwise, the *refcolumn* list must refer to the columns of a non-deferrable unique or primary key constraint or be the columns of a non-partial unique index. The user must have `REFERENCES` permission on the referenced table (either the whole table, or the specific referenced columns). The addition of a foreign key constraint requires a `SHARE ROW EXCLUSIVE` lock on the referenced table. Note that foreign key constraints cannot be defined between temporary tables and permanent tables.

A value inserted into the referencing column(s) is matched against the values of the referenced table and referenced columns using the given match type. There are three match types: `MATCH FULL`, `MATCH PARTIAL`, and `MATCH SIMPLE` (which is the default). `MATCH FULL` will not allow one column of a multicolumn foreign key to be null unless all foreign key columns are null; if they are all null, the row is not required to have a match in the referenced table. `MATCH SIMPLE` allows any of the foreign key columns to be null; if any of them are null, the row is not required to have a match in the referenced table. `MATCH PARTIAL` is not yet implemented. (Of course, `NOT NULL` constraints can be applied to the referencing column(s) to prevent these cases from arising.)

In addition, when the data in the referenced columns is changed, certain actions are performed on the data in this table's columns. The `ON DELETE` clause specifies the action to perform when a referenced row in the referenced table is being deleted. Likewise, the `ON UPDATE` clause specifies the action to perform when a referenced column in the referenced table is being updated to a new value. If the row is updated, but the referenced column is not actually changed, no action is done.

Referential actions other than the `NO ACTION` check cannot be deferred, even if the constraint is declared deferrable. There are the following possible actions for each clause:

`NO ACTION`

Produce an error indicating that the deletion or update would create a foreign key constraint violation. If the constraint is deferred, this error will be produced at constraint check time if there still exist any referencing rows. This is the default action.

`RESTRICT`

Produce an error indicating that the deletion or update would create a foreign key constraint violation. This is the same as `NO ACTION` except that the check is not deferrable.

`CASCADE`

Delete any rows referencing the deleted row, or update the values of the referencing column(s) to the new values of the referenced columns, respectively.

`SET NULL [ ( column_name [, ... ] ) ]`

Set all of the referencing columns, or a specified subset of the referencing columns, to null. A subset of columns can only be specified for `ON DELETE` actions.

`SET DEFAULT [ ( column_name [, ... ] ) ]`

Set all of the referencing columns, or a specified subset of the referencing columns, to their default values. A subset of columns can only be specified for `ON DELETE` actions. (There must be a row in the referenced table matching the default values, if they are not null, or the operation will fail.)

If the referenced column(s) are changed frequently, it might be wise to add an index to the referencing column(s) so that referential actions associated with the foreign key constraint can be performed more efficiently.

`DEFERRABLE`

`NOT DEFERRABLE`

This controls whether the constraint can be deferred. A constraint that is not deferrable will be checked immediately after every command. Checking of constraints that are deferrable can be postponed until the end of the transaction (using the `SET CONSTRAINTS` command). `NOT DEFERRABLE` is the default. Currently, only `UNIQUE`, `PRIMARY KEY`, `EXCLUDE`, and `REFERENCES` (foreign key) constraints accept this clause. `NOT NULL` and `CHECK` constraints are not deferrable. Note that deferrable constraints cannot be used as conflict arbitrators in an `INSERT` statement that includes an `ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE` clause.

`INITIALLY IMMEDIATE`

`INITIALLY DEFERRED`

If a constraint is deferrable, this clause specifies the default time to check the constraint. If the constraint is `INITIALLY IMMEDIATE`, it is checked after each statement. This is the default. If the constraint is `INITIALLY DEFERRED`, it is checked only at the end of the transaction. The constraint check time can be altered with the `SET CONSTRAINTS` command.

`USING method`

This optional clause specifies the table access method to use to store the contents for the new table; the method needs be an access method of type `TABLE`. See Chapter 63 for more information. If this option is not specified, the default table access method is chosen for the new table. See `default_table_access_method` for more information.

WITH ( *storage\_parameter* [= *value*] [, ... ] )

This clause specifies optional storage parameters for a table or index; see Storage Parameters below for more information. For backward-compatibility the WITH clause for a table can also include OIDS=FALSE to specify that rows of the new table should not contain OIDs (object identifiers), OIDS=TRUE is not supported anymore.

WITHOUT OIDS

This is backward-compatible syntax for declaring a table WITHOUT OIDS, creating a table WITH OIDS is not supported anymore.

ON COMMIT

The behavior of temporary tables at the end of a transaction block can be controlled using ON COMMIT. The three options are:

PRESERVE ROWS

No special action is taken at the ends of transactions. This is the default behavior.

DELETE ROWS

All rows in the temporary table will be deleted at the end of each transaction block. Essentially, an automatic TRUNCATE is done at each commit. When used on a partitioned table, this is not cascaded to its partitions.

DROP

The temporary table will be dropped at the end of the current transaction block. When used on a partitioned table, this action drops its partitions and when used on tables with inheritance children, it drops the dependent children.

TABLESPACE *tablespace\_name*

The *tablespace\_name* is the name of the tablespace in which the new table is to be created. If not specified, default\_tablespace is consulted, or temp\_tablespaces if the table is temporary. For partitioned tables, since no storage is required for the table itself, the tablespace specified overrides default\_tablespace as the default tablespace to use for any newly created partitions when no other tablespace is explicitly specified.

USING INDEX TABLESPACE *tablespace\_name*

This clause allows selection of the tablespace in which the index associated with a UNIQUE, PRIMARY KEY, or EXCLUDE constraint will be created. If not specified, default\_tablespace is consulted, or temp\_tablespaces if the table is temporary.

## Storage Parameters

The WITH clause can specify *storage parameters* for tables, and for indexes associated with a UNIQUE, PRIMARY KEY, or EXCLUDE constraint. Storage parameters for indexes are documented in CREATE INDEX. The storage parameters currently available for tables are listed below. For many of these parameters, as shown, there is an additional parameter with the same name prefixed with toast., which controls the behavior of the table's secondary TOAST table, if any (see Section 73.2 for more information about TOAST). If a table parameter value is set and the equivalent toast. parameter is not, the TOAST table will use the table's parameter value. Specifying these parameters for partitioned tables is not supported, but you may specify them for individual leaf partitions.

fillfactor (integer)

The fillfactor for a table is a percentage between 10 and 100. 100 (complete packing) is the default. When a smaller fillfactor is specified, INSERT operations pack table pages only to the indicated

percentage; the remaining space on each page is reserved for updating rows on that page. This gives UPDATE a chance to place the updated copy of a row on the same page as the original, which is more efficient than placing it on a different page, and makes heap-only tuple updates more likely. For a table whose entries are never updated, complete packing is the best choice, but in heavily updated tables smaller fillfactors are appropriate. This parameter cannot be set for TOAST tables.

`toast_tuple_target (integer)`

The `toast_tuple_target` specifies the minimum tuple length required before we try to compress and/or move long column values into TOAST tables, and is also the target length we try to reduce the length below once toasting begins. This affects columns marked as External (for move), Main (for compression), or Extended (for both) and applies only to new tuples. There is no effect on existing rows. By default this parameter is set to allow at least 4 tuples per block, which with the default block size will be 2040 bytes. Valid values are between 128 bytes and the (block size - header), by default 8160 bytes. Changing this value may not be useful for very short or very long rows. Note that the default setting is often close to optimal, and it is possible that setting this parameter could have negative effects in some cases. This parameter cannot be set for TOAST tables.

`parallel_workers (integer)`

This sets the number of workers that should be used to assist a parallel scan of this table. If not set, the system will determine a value based on the relation size. The actual number of workers chosen by the planner or by utility statements that use parallel scans may be less, for example due to the setting of `max_worker_processes`.

`autovacuum_enabled, toast.autovacuum_enabled (boolean)`

Enables or disables the autovacuum daemon for a particular table. If true, the autovacuum daemon will perform automatic VACUUM and/or ANALYZE operations on this table following the rules discussed in Section 25.1.6. If false, this table will not be autovacuumed, except to prevent transaction ID wraparound. See Section 25.1.5 for more about wraparound prevention. Note that the autovacuum daemon does not run at all (except to prevent transaction ID wraparound) if the autovacuum parameter is false; setting individual tables' storage parameters does not override that. Therefore there is seldom much point in explicitly setting this storage parameter to true, only to false.

`vacuum_index_cleanup, toast.vacuum_index_cleanup (enum)`

Forces or disables index cleanup when VACUUM is run on this table. The default value is AUTO. With OFF, index cleanup is disabled, with ON it is enabled, and with AUTO a decision is made dynamically, each time VACUUM runs. The dynamic behavior allows VACUUM to avoid needlessly scanning indexes to remove very few dead tuples. Forcibly disabling all index cleanup can speed up VACUUM very significantly, but may also lead to severely bloated indexes if table modifications are frequent. The INDEX\_CLEANUP parameter of VACUUM, if specified, overrides the value of this option.

`vacuum_truncate, toast.vacuum_truncate (boolean)`

Enables or disables vacuum to try to truncate off any empty pages at the end of this table. The default value is true. If true, VACUUM and autovacuum do the truncation and the disk space for the truncated pages is returned to the operating system. Note that the truncation requires ACCESS EXCLUSIVE lock on the table. The TRUNCATE parameter of VACUUM, if specified, overrides the value of this option.

`autovacuum_vacuum_threshold, toast.autovacuum_vacuum_threshold (integer)`

Per-table value for `autovacuum_vacuum_threshold` parameter.

`autovacuum_vacuum_scale_factor`, `toast.autovacuum_vacuum_scale_factor`  
(floating point)

Per-table value for `autovacuum_vacuum_scale_factor` parameter.

`autovacuum_vacuum_insert_threshold`, `toast.autovacuum_vacuum_in-`  
`sert_threshold` (integer)

Per-table value for `autovacuum_vacuum_insert_threshold` parameter. The special value of -1 may be used to disable insert vacuums on the table.

`autovacuum_vacuum_insert_scale_factor`, `toast.autovacuum_vacuum_in-`  
`sert_scale_factor` (floating point)

Per-table value for `autovacuum_vacuum_insert_scale_factor` parameter.

`autovacuum_analyze_threshold` (integer)

Per-table value for `autovacuum_analyze_threshold` parameter.

`autovacuum_analyze_scale_factor` (floating point)

Per-table value for `autovacuum_analyze_scale_factor` parameter.

`autovacuum_vacuum_cost_delay`, `toast.autovacuum_vacuum_cost_delay`  
(floating point)

Per-table value for `autovacuum_vacuum_cost_delay` parameter.

`autovacuum_vacuum_cost_limit`, `toast.autovacuum_vacuum_cost_limit` (in-  
teger)

Per-table value for `autovacuum_vacuum_cost_limit` parameter.

`autovacuum_freeze_min_age`, `toast.autovacuum_freeze_min_age` (integer)

Per-table value for `vacuum_freeze_min_age` parameter. Note that autovacuum will ignore per-table `autovacuum_freeze_min_age` parameters that are larger than half the system-wide `autovacuum_freeze_max_age` setting.

`autovacuum_freeze_max_age`, `toast.autovacuum_freeze_max_age` (integer)

Per-table value for `autovacuum_freeze_max_age` parameter. Note that autovacuum will ignore per-table `autovacuum_freeze_max_age` parameters that are larger than the system-wide setting (it can only be set smaller).

`autovacuum_freeze_table_age`, `toast.autovacuum_freeze_table_age` (inte-  
ger)

Per-table value for `vacuum_freeze_table_age` parameter.

`autovacuum_multixact_freeze_min_age`, `toast.autovacuum_multixac-`  
`t_freeze_min_age` (integer)

Per-table value for `vacuum_multixact_freeze_min_age` parameter. Note that autovacuum will ignore per-table `autovacuum_multixact_freeze_min_age` parameters that are larger than half the system-wide `autovacuum_multixact_freeze_max_age` setting.

`autovacuum_multixact_freeze_max_age`, `toast.autovacuum_multixac-`  
`t_freeze_max_age` (integer)

Per-table value for `autovacuum_multixact_freeze_max_age` parameter. Note that autovacuum will ignore per-table `autovacuum_multixact_freeze_max_age` parameters that are larger than the system-wide setting (it can only be set smaller).

```
autovacuum_multixact_freeze_table_age, toast.autovacuum_multixact_freeze_table_age (integer)
```

Per-table value for vacuum\_multixact\_freeze\_table\_age parameter.

```
log_autovacuum_min_duration, toast.log_autovacuum_min_duration (integer)
```

Per-table value for log\_autovacuum\_min\_duration parameter.

```
user_catalog_table (boolean)
```

Declare the table as an additional catalog table for purposes of logical replication. See Section 49.6.2 for details. This parameter cannot be set for TOAST tables.

## Notes

PostgreSQL automatically creates an index for each unique constraint and primary key constraint to enforce uniqueness. Thus, it is not necessary to create an index explicitly for primary key columns. (See CREATE INDEX for more information.)

Unique constraints and primary keys are not inherited in the current implementation. This makes the combination of inheritance and unique constraints rather dysfunctional.

A table cannot have more than 1600 columns. (In practice, the effective limit is usually lower because of tuple-length constraints.)

## Examples

Create table films and table distributors:

```
CREATE TABLE films (  
    code          char(5) CONSTRAINT firstkey PRIMARY KEY,  
    title         varchar(40) NOT NULL,  
    did           integer NOT NULL,  
    date_prod     date,  
    kind          varchar(10),  
    len           interval hour to minute  
);  
  
CREATE TABLE distributors (  
    did          integer PRIMARY KEY GENERATED BY DEFAULT AS IDENTITY,  
    name         varchar(40) NOT NULL CHECK (name <> '')  
);
```

Create a table with a 2-dimensional array:

```
CREATE TABLE array_int (  
    vector      int[][]  
);
```

Define a unique table constraint for the table films. Unique table constraints can be defined on one or more columns of the table:

```
CREATE TABLE films (  
    code          char(5),  
    title         varchar(40),
```

```

        did            integer,
        date_prod      date,
        kind           varchar(10),
        len            interval hour to minute,
        CONSTRAINT production UNIQUE(date_prod)
    );

```

Define a check column constraint:

```

CREATE TABLE distributors (
    did            integer CHECK (did > 100),
    name          varchar(40)
);

```

Define a check table constraint:

```

CREATE TABLE distributors (
    did            integer,
    name          varchar(40),
    CONSTRAINT con1 CHECK (did > 100 AND name <> '')
);

```

Define a primary key table constraint for the table films:

```

CREATE TABLE films (
    code          char(5),
    title         varchar(40),
    did           integer,
    date_prod     date,
    kind          varchar(10),
    len           interval hour to minute,
    CONSTRAINT code_title PRIMARY KEY(code,title)
);

```

Define a primary key constraint for table distributors. The following two examples are equivalent, the first using the table constraint syntax, the second the column constraint syntax:

```

CREATE TABLE distributors (
    did           integer,
    name          varchar(40),
    PRIMARY KEY(did)
);

```

```

CREATE TABLE distributors (
    did           integer PRIMARY KEY,
    name          varchar(40)
);

```

Assign a literal constant default value for the column name, arrange for the default value of column did to be generated by selecting the next value of a sequence object, and make the default value of modtime be the time at which the row is inserted:

```

CREATE TABLE distributors (
    name          varchar(40) DEFAULT 'Luso Films',
    did           integer DEFAULT nextval('distributors_serial'),
    modtime       timestamp
);

```

```
        modtime    timestamp DEFAULT current_timestamp
    );
```

Define two NOT NULL column constraints on the table `distributors`, one of which is explicitly given a name:

```
CREATE TABLE distributors (
    did        integer CONSTRAINT no_null NOT NULL,
    name       varchar(40) NOT NULL
);
```

Define a unique constraint for the name column:

```
CREATE TABLE distributors (
    did        integer,
    name       varchar(40) UNIQUE
);
```

The same, specified as a table constraint:

```
CREATE TABLE distributors (
    did        integer,
    name       varchar(40),
    UNIQUE(name)
);
```

Create the same table, specifying 70% fill factor for both the table and its unique index:

```
CREATE TABLE distributors (
    did        integer,
    name       varchar(40),
    UNIQUE(name) WITH (fillfactor=70)
)
WITH (fillfactor=70);
```

Create table `circles` with an exclusion constraint that prevents any two circles from overlapping:

```
CREATE TABLE circles (
    c circle,
    EXCLUDE USING gist (c WITH &&)
);
```

Create table `cinemas` in tablespace `diskvol1`:

```
CREATE TABLE cinemas (
    id serial,
    name text,
    location text
) TABLESPACE diskvol1;
```

Create a composite type and a typed table:

```
CREATE TYPE employee_type AS (name text, salary numeric);
```



```
CREATE TABLE employees OF employee_type (  
    PRIMARY KEY (name),  
    salary WITH OPTIONS DEFAULT 1000  
);
```

Create a range partitioned table:

```
CREATE TABLE measurement (  
    logdate          date not null,  
    peaktemp         int,  
    unitsales        int  
) PARTITION BY RANGE (logdate);
```

Create a range partitioned table with multiple columns in the partition key:

```
CREATE TABLE measurement_year_month (  
    logdate          date not null,  
    peaktemp         int,  
    unitsales        int  
) PARTITION BY RANGE (EXTRACT(YEAR FROM logdate), EXTRACT(MONTH  
FROM logdate));
```

Create a list partitioned table:

```
CREATE TABLE cities (  
    city_id          bigint not null,  
    name             text not null,  
    population       bigint  
) PARTITION BY LIST (left(lower(name), 1));
```

Create a hash partitioned table:

```
CREATE TABLE orders (  
    order_id         bigint not null,  
    cust_id          bigint not null,  
    status           text  
) PARTITION BY HASH (order_id);
```

Create partition of a range partitioned table:

```
CREATE TABLE measurement_y2016m07  
    PARTITION OF measurement (  
        unitsales DEFAULT 0  
) FOR VALUES FROM ('2016-07-01') TO ('2016-08-01');
```

Create a few partitions of a range partitioned table with multiple columns in the partition key:

```
CREATE TABLE measurement_ym_older  
    PARTITION OF measurement_year_month  
    FOR VALUES FROM (MINVALUE, MINVALUE) TO (2016, 11);
```

```
CREATE TABLE measurement_ym_y2016m11  
    PARTITION OF measurement_year_month  
    FOR VALUES FROM (2016, 11) TO (2016, 12);
```

```
CREATE TABLE measurement_ym_y2016m12
    PARTITION OF measurement_year_month
    FOR VALUES FROM (2016, 12) TO (2017, 01);
```

```
CREATE TABLE measurement_ym_y2017m01
    PARTITION OF measurement_year_month
    FOR VALUES FROM (2017, 01) TO (2017, 02);
```

Create partition of a list partitioned table:

```
CREATE TABLE cities_ab
    PARTITION OF cities (
        CONSTRAINT city_id_nonzero CHECK (city_id != 0)
    ) FOR VALUES IN ('a', 'b');
```

Create partition of a list partitioned table that is itself further partitioned and then add a partition to it:

```
CREATE TABLE cities_ab
    PARTITION OF cities (
        CONSTRAINT city_id_nonzero CHECK (city_id != 0)
    ) FOR VALUES IN ('a', 'b') PARTITION BY RANGE (population);

CREATE TABLE cities_ab_10000_to_100000
    PARTITION OF cities_ab FOR VALUES FROM (10000) TO (100000);
```

Create partitions of a hash partitioned table:

```
CREATE TABLE orders_p1 PARTITION OF orders
    FOR VALUES WITH (MODULUS 4, REMAINDER 0);
CREATE TABLE orders_p2 PARTITION OF orders
    FOR VALUES WITH (MODULUS 4, REMAINDER 1);
CREATE TABLE orders_p3 PARTITION OF orders
    FOR VALUES WITH (MODULUS 4, REMAINDER 2);
CREATE TABLE orders_p4 PARTITION OF orders
    FOR VALUES WITH (MODULUS 4, REMAINDER 3);
```

Create a default partition:

```
CREATE TABLE cities_partdef
    PARTITION OF cities DEFAULT;
```

## Compatibility

The `CREATE TABLE` command conforms to the SQL standard, with exceptions listed below.

## Temporary Tables

Although the syntax of `CREATE TEMPORARY TABLE` resembles that of the SQL standard, the effect is not the same. In the standard, temporary tables are defined just once and automatically exist (starting with empty contents) in every session that needs them. PostgreSQL instead requires each session to issue its own `CREATE TEMPORARY TABLE` command for each temporary table to be used. This allows different sessions to use the same temporary table name for different purposes, whereas the standard's approach constrains all instances of a given temporary table name to have the same table structure.

The standard's definition of the behavior of temporary tables is widely ignored. PostgreSQL's behavior on this point is similar to that of several other SQL databases.

The SQL standard also distinguishes between global and local temporary tables, where a local temporary table has a separate set of contents for each SQL module within each session, though its definition is still shared across sessions. Since PostgreSQL does not support SQL modules, this distinction is not relevant in PostgreSQL.

For compatibility's sake, PostgreSQL will accept the `GLOBAL` and `LOCAL` keywords in a temporary table declaration, but they currently have no effect. Use of these keywords is discouraged, since future versions of PostgreSQL might adopt a more standard-compliant interpretation of their meaning.

The `ON COMMIT` clause for temporary tables also resembles the SQL standard, but has some differences. If the `ON COMMIT` clause is omitted, SQL specifies that the default behavior is `ON COMMIT DELETE ROWS`. However, the default behavior in PostgreSQL is `ON COMMIT PRESERVE ROWS`. The `ON COMMIT DROP` option does not exist in SQL.

## Non-Deferred Uniqueness Constraints

When a `UNIQUE` or `PRIMARY KEY` constraint is not deferrable, PostgreSQL checks for uniqueness immediately whenever a row is inserted or modified. The SQL standard says that uniqueness should be enforced only at the end of the statement; this makes a difference when, for example, a single command updates multiple key values. To obtain standard-compliant behavior, declare the constraint as `DEFERRABLE` but not deferred (i.e., `INITIALLY IMMEDIATE`). Be aware that this can be significantly slower than immediate uniqueness checking.

## Column Check Constraints

The SQL standard says that `CHECK` column constraints can only refer to the column they apply to; only `CHECK` table constraints can refer to multiple columns. PostgreSQL does not enforce this restriction; it treats column and table check constraints alike.

## EXCLUDE Constraint

The `EXCLUDE` constraint type is a PostgreSQL extension.

## Foreign Key Constraints

The ability to specify column lists in the foreign key actions `SET DEFAULT` and `SET NULL` is a PostgreSQL extension.

It is a PostgreSQL extension that a foreign key constraint may reference columns of a unique index instead of columns of a primary key or unique constraint.

## NULL “Constraint”

The NULL “constraint” (actually a non-constraint) is a PostgreSQL extension to the SQL standard that is included for compatibility with some other database systems (and for symmetry with the `NOT NULL` constraint). Since it is the default for any column, its presence is simply noise.

## Constraint Naming

The SQL standard says that table and domain constraints must have names that are unique across the schema containing the table or domain. PostgreSQL is laxer: it only requires constraint names to be unique across the constraints attached to a particular table or domain. However, this extra freedom does not exist for index-based constraints (`UNIQUE`, `PRIMARY KEY`, and `EXCLUDE` constraints), because the associated index is named the same as the constraint, and index names must be unique across all relations within the same schema.

Currently, PostgreSQL does not record names for `NOT NULL` constraints at all, so they are not subject to the uniqueness restriction. This might change in a future release.

## Inheritance

Multiple inheritance via the `INHERITS` clause is a PostgreSQL language extension. SQL:1999 and later define single inheritance using a different syntax and different semantics. SQL:1999-style inheritance is not yet supported by PostgreSQL.

## Zero-Column Tables

PostgreSQL allows a table of no columns to be created (for example, `CREATE TABLE foo( );`). This is an extension from the SQL standard, which does not allow zero-column tables. Zero-column tables are not in themselves very useful, but disallowing them creates odd special cases for `ALTER TABLE DROP COLUMN`, so it seems cleaner to ignore this spec restriction.

## Multiple Identity Columns

PostgreSQL allows a table to have more than one identity column. The standard specifies that a table can have at most one identity column. This is relaxed mainly to give more flexibility for doing schema changes or migrations. Note that the `INSERT` command supports only one override clause that applies to the entire statement, so having multiple identity columns with different behaviors is not well supported.

## Generated Columns

The option `STORED` is not standard but is also used by other SQL implementations. The SQL standard does not specify the storage of generated columns.

## LIKE Clause

While a `LIKE` clause exists in the SQL standard, many of the options that PostgreSQL accepts for it are not in the standard, and some of the standard's options are not implemented by PostgreSQL.

## WITH Clause

The `WITH` clause is a PostgreSQL extension; storage parameters are not in the standard.

## Tablespaces

The PostgreSQL concept of tablespaces is not part of the standard. Hence, the clauses `TABLESPACE` and `USING INDEX TABLESPACE` are extensions.

## Typed Tables

Typed tables implement a subset of the SQL standard. According to the standard, a typed table has columns corresponding to the underlying composite type as well as one other column that is the “self-referencing column”. PostgreSQL does not support self-referencing columns explicitly.

## PARTITION BY Clause

The `PARTITION BY` clause is a PostgreSQL extension.

## PARTITION OF Clause

The `PARTITION OF` clause is a PostgreSQL extension.

## See Also

ALTER TABLE, DROP TABLE, CREATE TABLE AS, CREATE TABLESPACE, CREATE TYPE

---

# CREATE TABLE AS

CREATE TABLE AS — define a new table from the results of a query

## Synopsis

```
CREATE [ [ GLOBAL | LOCAL ] { TEMPORARY | TEMP } | UNLOGGED ] TABLE
[ IF NOT EXISTS ] table_name
    [ ( column_name [, ...] ) ]
    [ USING method ]
    [ WITH ( storage_parameter [= value] [, ...] ) | WITHOUT
      OIDS ]
    [ ON COMMIT { PRESERVE ROWS | DELETE ROWS | DROP } ]
    [ TABLESPACE tablespace_name ]
    AS query
    [ WITH [ NO ] DATA ]
```

## Description

CREATE TABLE AS creates a table and fills it with data computed by a SELECT command. The table columns have the names and data types associated with the output columns of the SELECT (except that you can override the column names by giving an explicit list of new column names).

CREATE TABLE AS bears some resemblance to creating a view, but it is really quite different: it creates a new table and evaluates the query just once to fill the new table initially. The new table will not track subsequent changes to the source tables of the query. In contrast, a view re-evaluates its defining SELECT statement whenever it is queried.

CREATE TABLE AS requires CREATE privilege on the schema used for the table.

## Parameters

GLOBAL or LOCAL

Ignored for compatibility. Use of these keywords is deprecated; refer to CREATE TABLE for details.

TEMPORARY or TEMP

If specified, the table is created as a temporary table. Refer to CREATE TABLE for details.

UNLOGGED

If specified, the table is created as an unlogged table. Refer to CREATE TABLE for details.

IF NOT EXISTS

Do not throw an error if a relation with the same name already exists; simply issue a notice and leave the table unmodified.

*table\_name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table to be created.

*column\_name*

The name of a column in the new table. If column names are not provided, they are taken from the output column names of the query.

**USING *method***

This optional clause specifies the table access method to use to store the contents for the new table; the method needs be an access method of type TABLE. See Chapter 63 for more information. If this option is not specified, the default table access method is chosen for the new table. See `default_table_access_method` for more information.

**WITH ( *storage\_parameter* [= *value*] [, ... ] )**

This clause specifies optional storage parameters for the new table; see Storage Parameters in the CREATE TABLE documentation for more information. For backward-compatibility the WITH clause for a table can also include `OIDS=FALSE` to specify that rows of the new table should contain no OIDs (object identifiers), `OIDS=TRUE` is not supported anymore.

**WITHOUT OIDS**

This is backward-compatible syntax for declaring a table WITHOUT OIDS, creating a table WITH OIDS is not supported anymore.

**ON COMMIT**

The behavior of temporary tables at the end of a transaction block can be controlled using ON COMMIT. The three options are:

**PRESERVE ROWS**

No special action is taken at the ends of transactions. This is the default behavior.

**DELETE ROWS**

All rows in the temporary table will be deleted at the end of each transaction block. Essentially, an automatic TRUNCATE is done at each commit.

**DROP**

The temporary table will be dropped at the end of the current transaction block.

**TABLESPACE *tablespace\_name***

The *tablespace\_name* is the name of the tablespace in which the new table is to be created. If not specified, `default_tablespace` is consulted, or `temp_tablespaces` if the table is temporary.

***query***

A SELECT, TABLE, or VALUES command, or an EXECUTE command that runs a prepared SELECT, TABLE, or VALUES query.

**WITH [ NO ] DATA**

This clause specifies whether or not the data produced by the query should be copied into the new table. If not, only the table structure is copied. The default is to copy the data.

## Notes

This command is functionally similar to SELECT INTO, but it is preferred since it is less likely to be confused with other uses of the SELECT INTO syntax. Furthermore, CREATE TABLE AS offers a superset of the functionality offered by SELECT INTO.

## Examples

Create a new table `films_recent` consisting of only recent entries from the table `films`:

```
CREATE TABLE films_recent AS
  SELECT * FROM films WHERE date_prod >= '2002-01-01';
```

To copy a table completely, the short form using the TABLE command can also be used:

```
CREATE TABLE films2 AS
  TABLE films;
```

Create a new temporary table `films_recent`, consisting of only recent entries from the table `films`, using a prepared statement. The new table will be dropped at commit:

```
PREPARE recentfilms(date) AS
  SELECT * FROM films WHERE date_prod > $1;
CREATE TEMP TABLE films_recent ON COMMIT DROP AS
  EXECUTE recentfilms('2002-01-01');
```

## Compatibility

CREATE TABLE AS conforms to the SQL standard. The following are nonstandard extensions:

- The standard requires parentheses around the subquery clause; in PostgreSQL, these parentheses are optional.
- In the standard, the WITH [ NO ] DATA clause is required; in PostgreSQL it is optional.
- PostgreSQL handles temporary tables in a way rather different from the standard; see CREATE TABLE for details.
- The WITH clause is a PostgreSQL extension; storage parameters are not in the standard.
- The PostgreSQL concept of tablespaces is not part of the standard. Hence, the clause TABLESPACE is an extension.

## See Also

CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW, CREATE TABLE, EXECUTE, SELECT, SELECT INTO, VALUES



---

# CREATE TABLESPACE

CREATE TABLESPACE — define a new tablespace

## Synopsis

```
CREATE TABLESPACE tablespace_name
    [ OWNER { new_owner | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER |
    SESSION_USER } ]
    LOCATION 'directory'
    [ WITH ( tablespace_option = value [, ... ] ) ]
```

## Description

CREATE TABLESPACE registers a new cluster-wide tablespace. The tablespace name must be distinct from the name of any existing tablespace in the database cluster.

A tablespace allows superusers to define an alternative location on the file system where the data files containing database objects (such as tables and indexes) can reside.

A user with appropriate privileges can pass *tablespace\_name* to CREATE DATABASE, CREATE TABLE, CREATE INDEX or ADD CONSTRAINT to have the data files for these objects stored within the specified tablespace.

### Warning

A tablespace cannot be used independently of the cluster in which it is defined; see Section 23.6.

## Parameters

*tablespace\_name*

The name of a tablespace to be created. The name cannot begin with `pg_`, as such names are reserved for system tablespaces.

*user\_name*

The name of the user who will own the tablespace. If omitted, defaults to the user executing the command. Only superusers can create tablespaces, but they can assign ownership of tablespaces to non-superusers.

*directory*

The directory that will be used for the tablespace. The directory must exist (CREATE TABLESPACE will not create it), should be empty, and must be owned by the PostgreSQL system user. The directory must be specified by an absolute path name.

*tablespace\_option*

A tablespace parameter to be set or reset. Currently, the only available parameters are `seq_page_cost`, `random_page_cost`, `effective_io_concurrency` and `maintenance_io_concurrency`. Setting these values for a particular tablespace will override the

planner's usual estimate of the cost of reading pages from tables in that tablespace, and the executor's prefetching behavior, as established by the configuration parameters of the same name (see `seq_page_cost`, `random_page_cost`, `effective_io_concurrency`, `maintenance_io_concurrency`). This may be useful if one tablespace is located on a disk which is faster or slower than the remainder of the I/O subsystem.

## Notes

`CREATE TABLESPACE` cannot be executed inside a transaction block.

## Examples

To create a tablespace `dbspace` at file system location `/data/dbs`, first create the directory using operating system facilities and set the correct ownership:

```
mkdir /data/dbs
chown postgres:postgres /data/dbs
```

Then issue the tablespace creation command inside PostgreSQL:

```
CREATE TABLESPACE dbspace LOCATION '/data/dbs';
```

To create a tablespace owned by a different database user, use a command like this:

```
CREATE TABLESPACE indexspace OWNER genevieve LOCATION '/data/
indexes';
```

## Compatibility

`CREATE TABLESPACE` is a PostgreSQL extension.

## See Also

`CREATE DATABASE`, `CREATE TABLE`, `CREATE INDEX`, `DROP TABLESPACE`, `ALTER TABLESPACE`

---

# CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION

CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION — define a new text search configuration

## Synopsis

```
CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION name (  
    PARSER = parser_name |  
    COPY = source_config  
)
```

## Description

CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION creates a new text search configuration. A text search configuration specifies a text search parser that can divide a string into tokens, plus dictionaries that can be used to determine which tokens are of interest for searching.

If only the parser is specified, then the new text search configuration initially has no mappings from token types to dictionaries, and therefore will ignore all words. Subsequent ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION commands must be used to create mappings to make the configuration useful. Alternatively, an existing text search configuration can be copied.

If a schema name is given then the text search configuration is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema.

The user who defines a text search configuration becomes its owner.

Refer to Chapter 12 for further information.

## Parameters

*name*

The name of the text search configuration to be created. The name can be schema-qualified.

*parser\_name*

The name of the text search parser to use for this configuration.

*source\_config*

The name of an existing text search configuration to copy.

## Notes

The PARSER and COPY options are mutually exclusive, because when an existing configuration is copied, its parser selection is copied too.

## Compatibility

There is no CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION statement in the SQL standard.

## See Also

ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION, DROP TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION

---

# CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY

CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY — define a new text search dictionary

## Synopsis

```
CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY name (  
    TEMPLATE = template  
    [, option = value [, ... ]]  
)
```

## Description

CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY creates a new text search dictionary. A text search dictionary specifies a way of recognizing interesting or uninteresting words for searching. A dictionary depends on a text search template, which specifies the functions that actually perform the work. Typically the dictionary provides some options that control the detailed behavior of the template's functions.

If a schema name is given then the text search dictionary is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema.

The user who defines a text search dictionary becomes its owner.

Refer to Chapter 12 for further information.

## Parameters

*name*

The name of the text search dictionary to be created. The name can be schema-qualified.

*template*

The name of the text search template that will define the basic behavior of this dictionary.

*option*

The name of a template-specific option to be set for this dictionary.

*value*

The value to use for a template-specific option. If the value is not a simple identifier or number, it must be quoted (but you can always quote it, if you wish).

The options can appear in any order.

## Examples

The following example command creates a Snowball-based dictionary with a nonstandard list of stop words.

```
CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY my_russian (  
    template = snowball,  
    language = russian,
```

```
    stopwords = myrussian  
);
```

## Compatibility

There is no `CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY` statement in the SQL standard.

## See Also

`ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY`, `DROP TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY`

---

# CREATE TEXT SEARCH PARSER

CREATE TEXT SEARCH PARSER — define a new text search parser

## Synopsis

```
CREATE TEXT SEARCH PARSER name (  
    START = start_function ,  
    GETTOKEN = gettoken_function ,  
    END = end_function ,  
    LEXTYPES = lextypes_function  
    [, HEADLINE = headline_function ]  
)
```

## Description

CREATE TEXT SEARCH PARSER creates a new text search parser. A text search parser defines a method for splitting a text string into tokens and assigning types (categories) to the tokens. A parser is not particularly useful by itself, but must be bound into a text search configuration along with some text search dictionaries to be used for searching.

If a schema name is given then the text search parser is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema.

You must be a superuser to use CREATE TEXT SEARCH PARSER. (This restriction is made because an erroneous text search parser definition could confuse or even crash the server.)

Refer to Chapter 12 for further information.

## Parameters

*name*

The name of the text search parser to be created. The name can be schema-qualified.

*start\_function*

The name of the start function for the parser.

*gettoken\_function*

The name of the get-next-token function for the parser.

*end\_function*

The name of the end function for the parser.

*lextypes\_function*

The name of the lextypes function for the parser (a function that returns information about the set of token types it produces).

*headline\_function*

The name of the headline function for the parser (a function that summarizes a set of tokens).

The function names can be schema-qualified if necessary. Argument types are not given, since the argument list for each type of function is predetermined. All except the headline function are required.

The arguments can appear in any order, not only the one shown above.

## Compatibility

There is no `CREATE TEXT SEARCH PARSER` statement in the SQL standard.

## See Also

`ALTER TEXT SEARCH PARSER`, `DROP TEXT SEARCH PARSER`

---

# CREATE TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE

CREATE TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE — define a new text search template

## Synopsis

```
CREATE TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE name (  
    [ INIT = init_function , ]  
    LEXIZE = lexize_function  
)
```

## Description

CREATE TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE creates a new text search template. Text search templates define the functions that implement text search dictionaries. A template is not useful by itself, but must be instantiated as a dictionary to be used. The dictionary typically specifies parameters to be given to the template functions.

If a schema name is given then the text search template is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema.

You must be a superuser to use CREATE TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE. This restriction is made because an erroneous text search template definition could confuse or even crash the server. The reason for separating templates from dictionaries is that a template encapsulates the “unsafe” aspects of defining a dictionary. The parameters that can be set when defining a dictionary are safe for unprivileged users to set, and so creating a dictionary need not be a privileged operation.

Refer to Chapter 12 for further information.

## Parameters

*name*

The name of the text search template to be created. The name can be schema-qualified.

*init\_function*

The name of the init function for the template.

*lexize\_function*

The name of the lexize function for the template.

The function names can be schema-qualified if necessary. Argument types are not given, since the argument list for each type of function is predetermined. The lexize function is required, but the init function is optional.

The arguments can appear in any order, not only the one shown above.

## Compatibility

There is no CREATE TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE statement in the SQL standard.

## See Also

ALTER TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE, DROP TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE



---

# CREATE TRANSFORM

CREATE TRANSFORM — define a new transform

## Synopsis

```
CREATE [ OR REPLACE ] TRANSFORM FOR type_name LANGUAGE lang_name (  
    FROM SQL WITH FUNCTION from_sql_function_name [ (argument_type  
    [, ...]) ],  
    TO SQL WITH FUNCTION to_sql_function_name [ (argument_type  
    [, ...]) ]  
);
```

## Description

CREATE TRANSFORM defines a new transform. CREATE OR REPLACE TRANSFORM will either create a new transform, or replace an existing definition.

A transform specifies how to adapt a data type to a procedural language. For example, when writing a function in PL/Python using the `hstore` type, PL/Python has no prior knowledge how to present `hstore` values in the Python environment. Language implementations usually default to using the text representation, but that is inconvenient when, for example, an associative array or a list would be more appropriate.

A transform specifies two functions:

- A “from SQL” function that converts the type from the SQL environment to the language. This function will be invoked on the arguments of a function written in the language.
- A “to SQL” function that converts the type from the language to the SQL environment. This function will be invoked on the return value of a function written in the language.

It is not necessary to provide both of these functions. If one is not specified, the language-specific default behavior will be used if necessary. (To prevent a transformation in a certain direction from happening at all, you could also write a transform function that always errors out.)

To be able to create a transform, you must own and have USAGE privilege on the type, have USAGE privilege on the language, and own and have EXECUTE privilege on the from-SQL and to-SQL functions, if specified.

## Parameters

*type\_name*

The name of the data type of the transform.

*lang\_name*

The name of the language of the transform.

*from\_sql\_function\_name*[(*argument\_type* [, ...])]

The name of the function for converting the type from the SQL environment to the language. It must take one argument of type `internal` and return type `internal`. The actual argument will be of the type for the transform, and the function should be coded as if it were. (But it is not allowed

to declare an SQL-level function returning `internal` without at least one argument of type `internal`.) The actual return value will be something specific to the language implementation. If no argument list is specified, the function name must be unique in its schema.

```
to_sql_function_name[(argument_type [, ...])]
```

The name of the function for converting the type from the language to the SQL environment. It must take one argument of type `internal` and return the type that is the type for the transform. The actual argument value will be something specific to the language implementation. If no argument list is specified, the function name must be unique in its schema.

## Notes

Use `DROP TRANSFORM` to remove transforms.

## Examples

To create a transform for type `hstore` and language `plpython3u`, first set up the type and the language:

```
CREATE TYPE hstore ...;
```

```
CREATE EXTENSION plpython3u;
```

Then create the necessary functions:

```
CREATE FUNCTION hstore_to_plpython(val internal) RETURNS internal
LANGUAGE C STRICT IMMUTABLE
AS ...;
```

```
CREATE FUNCTION plpython_to_hstore(val internal) RETURNS hstore
LANGUAGE C STRICT IMMUTABLE
AS ...;
```

And finally create the transform to connect them all together:

```
CREATE TRANSFORM FOR hstore LANGUAGE plpython3u (
    FROM SQL WITH FUNCTION hstore_to_plpython(internal),
    TO SQL WITH FUNCTION plpython_to_hstore(internal)
);
```

In practice, these commands would be wrapped up in an extension.

The `contrib` section contains a number of extensions that provide transforms, which can serve as real-world examples.

## Compatibility

This form of `CREATE TRANSFORM` is a PostgreSQL extension. There is a `CREATE TRANSFORM` command in the SQL standard, but it is for adapting data types to client languages. That usage is not supported by PostgreSQL.

## See Also

`CREATE FUNCTION`, `CREATE LANGUAGE`, `CREATE TYPE`, `DROP TRANSFORM`

---

# CREATE TRIGGER

CREATE TRIGGER — define a new trigger

## Synopsis

```
CREATE [ OR REPLACE ] [ CONSTRAINT ] TRIGGER name { BEFORE | AFTER
| INSTEAD OF } { event [ OR ... ] }
    ON table_name
    [ FROM referenced_table_name ]
    [ NOT DEFERRABLE | [ DEFERRABLE ] [ INITIALLY IMMEDIATE |
INITIALLY DEFERRED ] ]
    [ REFERENCING { { OLD | NEW } TABLE
[ AS ] transition_relation_name } [ ... ] ]
    [ FOR [ EACH ] { ROW | STATEMENT } ]
    [ WHEN ( condition ) ]
    EXECUTE { FUNCTION | PROCEDURE } function_name ( arguments )
```

where *event* can be one of:

```
INSERT
UPDATE [ OF column_name [, ... ] ]
DELETE
TRUNCATE
```

## Description

CREATE TRIGGER creates a new trigger. CREATE OR REPLACE TRIGGER will either create a new trigger, or replace an existing trigger. The trigger will be associated with the specified table, view, or foreign table and will execute the specified function *function\_name* when certain operations are performed on that table.

To replace the current definition of an existing trigger, use CREATE OR REPLACE TRIGGER, specifying the existing trigger's name and parent table. All other properties are replaced.

The trigger can be specified to fire before the operation is attempted on a row (before constraints are checked and the INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE is attempted); or after the operation has completed (after constraints are checked and the INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE has completed); or instead of the operation (in the case of inserts, updates or deletes on a view). If the trigger fires before or instead of the event, the trigger can skip the operation for the current row, or change the row being inserted (for INSERT and UPDATE operations only). If the trigger fires after the event, all changes, including the effects of other triggers, are “visible” to the trigger.

A trigger that is marked FOR EACH ROW is called once for every row that the operation modifies. For example, a DELETE that affects 10 rows will cause any ON DELETE triggers on the target relation to be called 10 separate times, once for each deleted row. In contrast, a trigger that is marked FOR EACH STATEMENT only executes once for any given operation, regardless of how many rows it modifies (in particular, an operation that modifies zero rows will still result in the execution of any applicable FOR EACH STATEMENT triggers).

Triggers that are specified to fire INSTEAD OF the trigger event must be marked FOR EACH ROW, and can only be defined on views. BEFORE and AFTER triggers on a view must be marked as FOR EACH STATEMENT.

In addition, triggers may be defined to fire for TRUNCATE, though only FOR EACH STATEMENT.

The following table summarizes which types of triggers may be used on tables, views, and foreign tables:

When	Event	Row-level	Statement-level
BEFORE	INSERT/UP- DATE/DELETE	Tables and for- eign tables	Tables, views, and foreign tables
	TRUNCATE	—	Tables and for- eign tables
AFTER	INSERT/UP- DATE/DELETE	Tables and for- eign tables	Tables, views, and foreign tables
	TRUNCATE	—	Tables and for- eign tables
INSTEAD OF	INSERT/UP- DATE/DELETE	Views	—
	TRUNCATE	—	—

Also, a trigger definition can specify a Boolean `WHEN` condition, which will be tested to see whether the trigger should be fired. In row-level triggers the `WHEN` condition can examine the old and/or new values of columns of the row. Statement-level triggers can also have `WHEN` conditions, although the feature is not so useful for them since the condition cannot refer to any values in the table.

If multiple triggers of the same kind are defined for the same event, they will be fired in alphabetical order by name.

When the `CONSTRAINT` option is specified, this command creates a *constraint trigger*. This is the same as a regular trigger except that the timing of the trigger firing can be adjusted using `SET CONSTRAINTS`. Constraint triggers must be `AFTER ROW` triggers on plain tables (not foreign tables). They can be fired either at the end of the statement causing the triggering event, or at the end of the containing transaction; in the latter case they are said to be *deferred*. A pending deferred-trigger firing can also be forced to happen immediately by using `SET CONSTRAINTS`. Constraint triggers are expected to raise an exception when the constraints they implement are violated.

The `REFERENCING` option enables collection of *transition relations*, which are row sets that include all of the rows inserted, deleted, or modified by the current SQL statement. This feature lets the trigger see a global view of what the statement did, not just one row at a time. This option is only allowed for an `AFTER` trigger that is not a constraint trigger; also, if the trigger is an `UPDATE` trigger, it must not specify a *column\_name* list. `OLD TABLE` may only be specified once, and only for a trigger that can fire on `UPDATE` or `DELETE`; it creates a transition relation containing the *before-images* of all rows updated or deleted by the statement. Similarly, `NEW TABLE` may only be specified once, and only for a trigger that can fire on `UPDATE` or `INSERT`; it creates a transition relation containing the *after-images* of all rows updated or inserted by the statement.

`SELECT` does not modify any rows so you cannot create `SELECT` triggers. Rules and views may provide workable solutions to problems that seem to need `SELECT` triggers.

Refer to Chapter 39 for more information about triggers.

## Parameters

*name*

The name to give the new trigger. This must be distinct from the name of any other trigger for the same table. The name cannot be schema-qualified — the trigger inherits the schema of its table. For a constraint trigger, this is also the name to use when modifying the trigger's behavior using `SET CONSTRAINTS`.

BEFORE  
AFTER  
INSTEAD OF

Determines whether the function is called before, after, or instead of the event. A constraint trigger can only be specified as AFTER.

*event*

One of INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, or TRUNCATE; this specifies the event that will fire the trigger. Multiple events can be specified using OR, except when transition relations are requested.

For UPDATE events, it is possible to specify a list of columns using this syntax:

UPDATE OF *column\_name1* [, *column\_name2* ... ]

The trigger will only fire if at least one of the listed columns is mentioned as a target of the UPDATE command or if one of the listed columns is a generated column that depends on a column that is the target of the UPDATE.

INSTEAD OF UPDATE events do not allow a list of columns. A column list cannot be specified when requesting transition relations, either.

*table\_name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table, view, or foreign table the trigger is for.

*referenced\_table\_name*

The (possibly schema-qualified) name of another table referenced by the constraint. This option is used for foreign-key constraints and is not recommended for general use. This can only be specified for constraint triggers.

DEFERRABLE  
NOT DEFERRABLE  
INITIALLY IMMEDIATE  
INITIALLY DEFERRED

The default timing of the trigger. See the CREATE TABLE documentation for details of these constraint options. This can only be specified for constraint triggers.

REFERENCING

This keyword immediately precedes the declaration of one or two relation names that provide access to the transition relations of the triggering statement.

OLD TABLE  
NEW TABLE

This clause indicates whether the following relation name is for the before-image transition relation or the after-image transition relation.

*transition\_relation\_name*

The (unqualified) name to be used within the trigger for this transition relation.

FOR EACH ROW  
FOR EACH STATEMENT

This specifies whether the trigger function should be fired once for every row affected by the trigger event, or just once per SQL statement. If neither is specified, FOR EACH STATEMENT is the default. Constraint triggers can only be specified FOR EACH ROW.

*condition*

A Boolean expression that determines whether the trigger function will actually be executed. If `WHEN` is specified, the function will only be called if the *condition* returns `true`. In `FOR EACH ROW` triggers, the `WHEN` condition can refer to columns of the old and/or new row values by writing `OLD.column_name` or `NEW.column_name` respectively. Of course, `INSERT` triggers cannot refer to `OLD` and `DELETE` triggers cannot refer to `NEW`.

`INSTEAD OF` triggers do not support `WHEN` conditions.

Currently, `WHEN` expressions cannot contain subqueries.

Note that for constraint triggers, evaluation of the `WHEN` condition is not deferred, but occurs immediately after the row update operation is performed. If the condition does not evaluate to `true` then the trigger is not queued for deferred execution.

*function\_name*

A user-supplied function that is declared as taking no arguments and returning type `trigger`, which is executed when the trigger fires.

In the syntax of `CREATE TRIGGER`, the keywords `FUNCTION` and `PROCEDURE` are equivalent, but the referenced function must in any case be a function, not a procedure. The use of the keyword `PROCEDURE` here is historical and deprecated.

*arguments*

An optional comma-separated list of arguments to be provided to the function when the trigger is executed. The arguments are literal string constants. Simple names and numeric constants can be written here, too, but they will all be converted to strings. Please check the description of the implementation language of the trigger function to find out how these arguments can be accessed within the function; it might be different from normal function arguments.

## Notes

To create or replace a trigger on a table, the user must have the `TRIGGER` privilege on the table. The user must also have `EXECUTE` privilege on the trigger function.

Use `DROP TRIGGER` to remove a trigger.

Creating a row-level trigger on a partitioned table will cause an identical “clone” trigger to be created on each of its existing partitions; and any partitions created or attached later will have an identical trigger, too. If there is a conflictingly-named trigger on a child partition already, an error occurs unless `CREATE OR REPLACE TRIGGER` is used, in which case that trigger is replaced with a clone trigger. When a partition is detached from its parent, its clone triggers are removed.

A column-specific trigger (one defined using the `UPDATE OF column_name` syntax) will fire when any of its columns are listed as targets in the `UPDATE` command's `SET` list. It is possible for a column's value to change even when the trigger is not fired, because changes made to the row's contents by `BEFORE UPDATE` triggers are not considered. Conversely, a command such as `UPDATE ... SET x = x ...` will fire a trigger on column `x`, even though the column's value did not change.

In a `BEFORE` trigger, the `WHEN` condition is evaluated just before the function is or would be executed, so using `WHEN` is not materially different from testing the same condition at the beginning of the trigger function. Note in particular that the `NEW` row seen by the condition is the current value, as possibly modified by earlier triggers. Also, a `BEFORE` trigger's `WHEN` condition is not allowed to examine the system columns of the `NEW` row (such as `ctid`), because those won't have been set yet.

In an `AFTER` trigger, the `WHEN` condition is evaluated just after the row update occurs, and it determines whether an event is queued to fire the trigger at the end of statement. So when an `AFTER` trig-

ger's WHEN condition does not return true, it is not necessary to queue an event nor to re-fetch the row at end of statement. This can result in significant speedups in statements that modify many rows, if the trigger only needs to be fired for a few of the rows.

In some cases it is possible for a single SQL command to fire more than one kind of trigger. For instance an INSERT with an ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE clause may cause both insert and update operations, so it will fire both kinds of triggers as needed. The transition relations supplied to triggers are specific to their event type; thus an INSERT trigger will see only the inserted rows, while an UPDATE trigger will see only the updated rows.

Row updates or deletions caused by foreign-key enforcement actions, such as ON UPDATE CASCADE or ON DELETE SET NULL, are treated as part of the SQL command that caused them (note that such actions are never deferred). Relevant triggers on the affected table will be fired, so that this provides another way in which an SQL command might fire triggers not directly matching its type. In simple cases, triggers that request transition relations will see all changes caused in their table by a single original SQL command as a single transition relation. However, there are cases in which the presence of an AFTER ROW trigger that requests transition relations will cause the foreign-key enforcement actions triggered by a single SQL command to be split into multiple steps, each with its own transition relation(s). In such cases, any statement-level triggers that are present will be fired once per creation of a transition relation set, ensuring that the triggers see each affected row in a transition relation once and only once.

Statement-level triggers on a view are fired only if the action on the view is handled by a row-level INSTEAD OF trigger. If the action is handled by an INSTEAD rule, then whatever statements are emitted by the rule are executed in place of the original statement naming the view, so that the triggers that will be fired are those on tables named in the replacement statements. Similarly, if the view is automatically updatable, then the action is handled by automatically rewriting the statement into an action on the view's base table, so that the base table's statement-level triggers are the ones that are fired.

Modifying a partitioned table or a table with inheritance children fires statement-level triggers attached to the explicitly named table, but not statement-level triggers for its partitions or child tables. In contrast, row-level triggers are fired on the rows in affected partitions or child tables, even if they are not explicitly named in the query. If a statement-level trigger has been defined with transition relations named by a REFERENCING clause, then before and after images of rows are visible from all affected partitions or child tables. In the case of inheritance children, the row images include only columns that are present in the table that the trigger is attached to.

Currently, row-level triggers with transition relations cannot be defined on partitions or inheritance child tables. Also, triggers on partitioned tables may not be INSTEAD OF.

Currently, the OR REPLACE option is not supported for constraint triggers.

Replacing an existing trigger within a transaction that has already performed updating actions on the trigger's table is not recommended. Trigger firing decisions, or portions of firing decisions, that have already been made will not be reconsidered, so the effects could be surprising.

There are a few built-in trigger functions that can be used to solve common problems without having to write your own trigger code; see Section 9.28.

## Examples

Execute the function check\_account\_update whenever a row of the table accounts is about to be updated:

```
CREATE TRIGGER check_update
  BEFORE UPDATE ON accounts
  FOR EACH ROW
```

```
EXECUTE FUNCTION check_account_update();
```

Modify that trigger definition to only execute the function if column balance is specified as a target in the UPDATE command:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE TRIGGER check_update
  BEFORE UPDATE OF balance ON accounts
  FOR EACH ROW
  EXECUTE FUNCTION check_account_update();
```

This form only executes the function if column balance has in fact changed value:

```
CREATE TRIGGER check_update
  BEFORE UPDATE ON accounts
  FOR EACH ROW
  WHEN (OLD.balance IS DISTINCT FROM NEW.balance)
  EXECUTE FUNCTION check_account_update();
```

Call a function to log updates of accounts, but only if something changed:

```
CREATE TRIGGER log_update
  AFTER UPDATE ON accounts
  FOR EACH ROW
  WHEN (OLD.* IS DISTINCT FROM NEW.*)
  EXECUTE FUNCTION log_account_update();
```

Execute the function view\_insert\_row for each row to insert rows into the tables underlying a view:

```
CREATE TRIGGER view_insert
  INSTEAD OF INSERT ON my_view
  FOR EACH ROW
  EXECUTE FUNCTION view_insert_row();
```

Execute the function check\_transfer\_balances\_to\_zero for each statement to confirm that the transfer rows offset to a net of zero:

```
CREATE TRIGGER transfer_insert
  AFTER INSERT ON transfer
  REFERENCING NEW TABLE AS inserted
  FOR EACH STATEMENT
  EXECUTE FUNCTION check_transfer_balances_to_zero();
```

Execute the function check\_matching\_pairs for each row to confirm that changes are made to matching pairs at the same time (by the same statement):

```
CREATE TRIGGER paired_items_update
  AFTER UPDATE ON paired_items
  REFERENCING NEW TABLE AS newtab OLD TABLE AS oldtab
  FOR EACH ROW
  EXECUTE FUNCTION check_matching_pairs();
```

Section 39.4 contains a complete example of a trigger function written in C.



## Compatibility

The `CREATE TRIGGER` statement in PostgreSQL implements a subset of the SQL standard. The following functionalities are currently missing:

- While transition table names for `AFTER` triggers are specified using the `REFERENCING` clause in the standard way, the row variables used in `FOR EACH ROW` triggers may not be specified in a `REFERENCING` clause. They are available in a manner that is dependent on the language in which the trigger function is written, but is fixed for any one language. Some languages effectively behave as though there is a `REFERENCING` clause containing `OLD ROW AS OLD NEW ROW AS NEW`.
- The standard allows transition tables to be used with column-specific `UPDATE` triggers, but then the set of rows that should be visible in the transition tables depends on the trigger's column list. This is not currently implemented by PostgreSQL.
- PostgreSQL only allows the execution of a user-defined function for the triggered action. The standard allows the execution of a number of other SQL commands, such as `CREATE TABLE`, as the triggered action. This limitation is not hard to work around by creating a user-defined function that executes the desired commands.

SQL specifies that multiple triggers should be fired in time-of-creation order. PostgreSQL uses name order, which was judged to be more convenient.

SQL specifies that `BEFORE DELETE` triggers on cascaded deletes fire *after* the cascaded `DELETE` completes. The PostgreSQL behavior is for `BEFORE DELETE` to always fire before the delete action, even a cascading one. This is considered more consistent. There is also nonstandard behavior if `BEFORE` triggers modify rows or prevent updates during an update that is caused by a referential action. This can lead to constraint violations or stored data that does not honor the referential constraint.

The ability to specify multiple actions for a single trigger using `OR` is a PostgreSQL extension of the SQL standard.

The ability to fire triggers for `TRUNCATE` is a PostgreSQL extension of the SQL standard, as is the ability to define statement-level triggers on views.

`CREATE CONSTRAINT TRIGGER` is a PostgreSQL extension of the SQL standard. So is the `OR REPLACE` option.

## See Also

`ALTER TRIGGER`, `DROP TRIGGER`, `CREATE FUNCTION`, `SET CONSTRAINTS`

---

# CREATE TYPE

CREATE TYPE — define a new data type

## Synopsis

```
CREATE TYPE name AS
    ( [ attribute_name data_type [ COLLATE collation ] [, ... ] ] )
```

```
CREATE TYPE name AS ENUM
    ( [ 'label' [, ... ] ] )
```

```
CREATE TYPE name AS RANGE (
    SUBTYPE = subtype
    [ , SUBTYPE_OPCLASS = subtype_operator_class ]
    [ , COLLATION = collation ]
    [ , CANONICAL = canonical_function ]
    [ , SUBTYPE_DIFF = subtype_diff_function ]
    [ , MULTIRANGE_TYPE_NAME = multirange_type_name ]
)
```

```
CREATE TYPE name (
    INPUT = input_function,
    OUTPUT = output_function
    [ , RECEIVE = receive_function ]
    [ , SEND = send_function ]
    [ , TYPMOD_IN = type_modifier_input_function ]
    [ , TYPMOD_OUT = type_modifier_output_function ]
    [ , ANALYZE = analyze_function ]
    [ , SUBSCRIPT = subscript_function ]
    [ , INTERNALLENGTH = { internallength | VARIABLE } ]
    [ , PASSEDBYVALUE ]
    [ , ALIGNMENT = alignment ]
    [ , STORAGE = storage ]
    [ , LIKE = like_type ]
    [ , CATEGORY = category ]
    [ , PREFERRED = preferred ]
    [ , DEFAULT = default ]
    [ , ELEMENT = element ]
    [ , DELIMITER = delimiter ]
    [ , COLLATABLE = collatable ]
)
```

```
CREATE TYPE name
```

## Description

CREATE TYPE registers a new data type for use in the current database. The user who defines a type becomes its owner.

If a schema name is given then the type is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema. The type name must be distinct from the name of any existing type or domain in the same schema. (Because tables have associated data types, the type name must also be distinct from the name of any existing table in the same schema.)

There are five forms of `CREATE TYPE`, as shown in the syntax synopsis above. They respectively create a *composite type*, an *enum type*, a *range type*, a *base type*, or a *shell type*. The first four of these are discussed in turn below. A shell type is simply a placeholder for a type to be defined later; it is created by issuing `CREATE TYPE` with no parameters except for the type name. Shell types are needed as forward references when creating range types and base types, as discussed in those sections.

## Composite Types

The first form of `CREATE TYPE` creates a composite type. The composite type is specified by a list of attribute names and data types. An attribute's collation can be specified too, if its data type is collatable. A composite type is essentially the same as the row type of a table, but using `CREATE TYPE` avoids the need to create an actual table when all that is wanted is to define a type. A stand-alone composite type is useful, for example, as the argument or return type of a function.

To be able to create a composite type, you must have `USAGE` privilege on all attribute types.

## Enumerated Types

The second form of `CREATE TYPE` creates an enumerated (enum) type, as described in Section 8.7. Enum types take a list of quoted labels, each of which must be less than `NAMEDATALEN` bytes long (64 bytes in a standard PostgreSQL build). (It is possible to create an enumerated type with zero labels, but such a type cannot be used to hold values before at least one label is added using `ALTER TYPE`.)

## Range Types

The third form of `CREATE TYPE` creates a new range type, as described in Section 8.17.

The range type's *subtype* can be any type with an associated b-tree operator class (to determine the ordering of values for the range type). Normally the subtype's default b-tree operator class is used to determine ordering; to use a non-default operator class, specify its name with *subtype\_opclass*. If the subtype is collatable, and you want to use a non-default collation in the range's ordering, specify the desired collation with the *collation* option.

The optional *canonical* function must take one argument of the range type being defined, and return a value of the same type. This is used to convert range values to a canonical form, when applicable. See Section 8.17.8 for more information. Creating a *canonical* function is a bit tricky, since it must be defined before the range type can be declared. To do this, you must first create a shell type, which is a placeholder type that has no properties except a name and an owner. This is done by issuing the command `CREATE TYPE name`, with no additional parameters. Then the function can be declared using the shell type as argument and result, and finally the range type can be declared using the same name. This automatically replaces the shell type entry with a valid range type.

The optional *subtype\_diff* function must take two values of the *subtype* type as argument, and return a *double precision* value representing the difference between the two given values. While this is optional, providing it allows much greater efficiency of GiST indexes on columns of the range type. See Section 8.17.8 for more information.

The optional *multirange\_type\_name* parameter specifies the name of the corresponding multirange type. If not specified, this name is chosen automatically as follows. If the range type name contains the substring *range*, then the multirange type name is formed by replacement of the *range* substring with *multirange* in the range type name. Otherwise, the multirange type name is formed by appending a *\_multirange* suffix to the range type name.

## Base Types

The fourth form of `CREATE TYPE` creates a new base type (scalar type). To create a new base type, you must be a superuser. (This restriction is made because an erroneous type definition could confuse or even crash the server.)

The parameters can appear in any order, not only that illustrated above, and most are optional. You must register two or more functions (using `CREATE FUNCTION`) before defining the type. The support functions *input\_function* and *output\_function* are required, while the functions *receive\_function*, *send\_function*, *type\_modifier\_input\_function*, *type\_modifier\_output\_function*, *analyze\_function*, and *subscript\_function* are optional. Generally these functions have to be coded in C or another low-level language.

The *input\_function* converts the type's external textual representation to the internal representation used by the operators and functions defined for the type. *output\_function* performs the reverse transformation. The input function can be declared as taking one argument of type `cstring`, or as taking three arguments of types `cstring`, `oid`, `integer`. The first argument is the input text as a C string, the second argument is the type's own OID (except for array types, which instead receive their element type's OID), and the third is the `typmod` of the destination column, if known (-1 will be passed if not). The input function must return a value of the data type itself. Usually, an input function should be declared `STRICT`; if it is not, it will be called with a `NULL` first parameter when reading a `NULL` input value. The function must still return `NULL` in this case, unless it raises an error. (This case is mainly meant to support domain input functions, which might need to reject `NULL` inputs.) The output function must be declared as taking one argument of the new data type. The output function must return type `cstring`. Output functions are not invoked for `NULL` values.

The optional *receive\_function* converts the type's external binary representation to the internal representation. If this function is not supplied, the type cannot participate in binary input. The binary representation should be chosen to be cheap to convert to internal form, while being reasonably portable. (For example, the standard integer data types use network byte order as the external binary representation, while the internal representation is in the machine's native byte order.) The receive function should perform adequate checking to ensure that the value is valid. The receive function can be declared as taking one argument of type `internal`, or as taking three arguments of types `internal`, `oid`, `integer`. The first argument is a pointer to a `StringInfo` buffer holding the received byte string; the optional arguments are the same as for the text input function. The receive function must return a value of the data type itself. Usually, a receive function should be declared `STRICT`; if it is not, it will be called with a `NULL` first parameter when reading a `NULL` input value. The function must still return `NULL` in this case, unless it raises an error. (This case is mainly meant to support domain receive functions, which might need to reject `NULL` inputs.) Similarly, the optional *send\_function* converts from the internal representation to the external binary representation. If this function is not supplied, the type cannot participate in binary output. The send function must be declared as taking one argument of the new data type. The send function must return type `bytea`. Send functions are not invoked for `NULL` values.

You should at this point be wondering how the input and output functions can be declared to have results or arguments of the new type, when they have to be created before the new type can be created. The answer is that the type should first be defined as a *shell type*, which is a placeholder type that has no properties except a name and an owner. This is done by issuing the command `CREATE TYPE name`, with no additional parameters. Then the C I/O functions can be defined referencing the shell type. Finally, `CREATE TYPE` with a full definition replaces the shell entry with a complete, valid type definition, after which the new type can be used normally.

The optional *type\_modifier\_input\_function* and *type\_modifier\_output\_function* are needed if the type supports modifiers, that is optional constraints attached to a type declaration, such as `char(5)` or `numeric(30,2)`. PostgreSQL allows user-defined types to take one or more simple constants or identifiers as modifiers. However, this information must be capable of being packed into a single non-negative integer value for storage in the system catalogs. The *type\_modifier\_input\_function* is passed the declared modifier(s) in the form of a `cstring` array. It must check the values for validity (throwing an error if they are wrong), and if they are correct, return a single non-negative integer value that will be stored as the column "typmod". Type modifiers will be rejected if the type does not have a *type\_modifier\_input\_function*. The *type\_modifier\_output\_function* converts the internal integer `typmod` value back to the correct form for user display. It must return a `cstring` value that is the exact string to append to the type name; for example `numeric`'s function might return `(30,2)`. It is allowed to omit the *type\_modifi-*

*er\_output\_function*, in which case the default display format is just the stored typmod integer value enclosed in parentheses.

The optional *analyze\_function* performs type-specific statistics collection for columns of the data type. By default, ANALYZE will attempt to gather statistics using the type's “equals” and “less-than” operators, if there is a default b-tree operator class for the type. For non-scalar types this behavior is likely to be unsuitable, so it can be overridden by specifying a custom analysis function. The analysis function must be declared to take a single argument of type *internal*, and return a boolean result. The detailed API for analysis functions appears in `src/include/commands/vacuum.h`.

The optional *subscript\_function* allows the data type to be subscripted in SQL commands. Specifying this function does not cause the type to be considered a “true” array type; for example, it will not be a candidate for the result type of `ARRAY[ ]` constructs. But if subscripting a value of the type is a natural notation for extracting data from it, then a *subscript\_function* can be written to define what that means. The subscript function must be declared to take a single argument of type *internal*, and return an *internal* result, which is a pointer to a struct of methods (functions) that implement subscripting. The detailed API for subscript functions appears in `src/include/nodes/subscripting.h`. It may also be useful to read the array implementation in `src/backend/utils/adt/arraysubs.c`, or the simpler code in `contrib/hstore/hstore_subs.c`. Additional information appears in Array Types below.

While the details of the new type's internal representation are only known to the I/O functions and other functions you create to work with the type, there are several properties of the internal representation that must be declared to PostgreSQL. Foremost of these is *internallength*. Base data types can be fixed-length, in which case *internallength* is a positive integer, or variable-length, indicated by setting *internallength* to *VARIABLE*. (Internally, this is represented by setting *typlen* to -1.) The internal representation of all variable-length types must start with a 4-byte integer giving the total length of this value of the type. (Note that the length field is often encoded, as described in Section 73.2; it's unwise to access it directly.)

The optional flag *PASSEDBYVALUE* indicates that values of this data type are passed by value, rather than by reference. Types passed by value must be fixed-length, and their internal representation cannot be larger than the size of the *Datum* type (4 bytes on some machines, 8 bytes on others).

The *alignment* parameter specifies the storage alignment required for the data type. The allowed values equate to alignment on 1, 2, 4, or 8 byte boundaries. Note that variable-length types must have an alignment of at least 4, since they necessarily contain an *int4* as their first component.

The *storage* parameter allows selection of storage strategies for variable-length data types. (Only *plain* is allowed for fixed-length types.) *plain* specifies that data of the type will always be stored in-line and not compressed. *extended* specifies that the system will first try to compress a long data value, and will move the value out of the main table row if it's still too long. *external* allows the value to be moved out of the main table, but the system will not try to compress it. *main* allows compression, but discourages moving the value out of the main table. (Data items with this storage strategy might still be moved out of the main table if there is no other way to make a row fit, but they will be kept in the main table preferentially over *extended* and *external* items.)

All *storage* values other than *plain* imply that the functions of the data type can handle values that have been *toasted*, as described in Section 73.2 and Section 38.13.1. The specific other value given merely determines the default TOAST storage strategy for columns of a toastable data type; users can pick other strategies for individual columns using `ALTER TABLE SET STORAGE`.

The *like\_type* parameter provides an alternative method for specifying the basic representation properties of a data type: copy them from some existing type. The values of *internallength*, *passedbyvalue*, *alignment*, and *storage* are copied from the named type. (It is possible, though usually undesirable, to override some of these values by specifying them along with the *LIKE* clause.) Specifying representation this way is especially useful when the low-level implementation of the new type “piggybacks” on an existing type in some fashion.

The *category* and *preferred* parameters can be used to help control which implicit cast will be applied in ambiguous situations. Each data type belongs to a category named by a single ASCII

character, and each type is either “preferred” or not within its category. The parser will prefer casting to preferred types (but only from other types within the same category) when this rule is helpful in resolving overloaded functions or operators. For more details see Chapter 10. For types that have no implicit casts to or from any other types, it is sufficient to leave these settings at the defaults. However, for a group of related types that have implicit casts, it is often helpful to mark them all as belonging to a category and select one or two of the “most general” types as being preferred within the category. The *category* parameter is especially useful when adding a user-defined type to an existing built-in category, such as the numeric or string types. However, it is also possible to create new entirely-user-defined type categories. Select any ASCII character other than an upper-case letter to name such a category.

A default value can be specified, in case a user wants columns of the data type to default to something other than the null value. Specify the default with the `DEFAULT` key word. (Such a default can be overridden by an explicit `DEFAULT` clause attached to a particular column.)

To indicate that a type is a fixed-length array type, specify the type of the array elements using the `ELEMENT` key word. For example, to define an array of 4-byte integers (`int4`), specify `ELEMENT = int4`. For more details, see Array Types below.

To indicate the delimiter to be used between values in the external representation of arrays of this type, *delimiter* can be set to a specific character. The default delimiter is the comma (,). Note that the delimiter is associated with the array element type, not the array type itself.

If the optional Boolean parameter *collatable* is true, column definitions and expressions of the type may carry collation information through use of the `COLLATE` clause. It is up to the implementations of the functions operating on the type to actually make use of the collation information; this does not happen automatically merely by marking the type collatable.

## Array Types

Whenever a user-defined type is created, PostgreSQL automatically creates an associated array type, whose name consists of the element type's name prepended with an underscore, and truncated if necessary to keep it less than `NAMEDATALEN` bytes long. (If the name so generated collides with an existing type name, the process is repeated until a non-colliding name is found.) This implicitly-created array type is variable length and uses the built-in input and output functions `array_in` and `array_out`. Furthermore, this type is what the system uses for constructs such as `ARRAY[ ]` over the user-defined type. The array type tracks any changes in its element type's owner or schema, and is dropped if the element type is.

You might reasonably ask why there is an `ELEMENT` option, if the system makes the correct array type automatically. The main case where it's useful to use `ELEMENT` is when you are making a fixed-length type that happens to be internally an array of a number of identical things, and you want to allow these things to be accessed directly by subscripting, in addition to whatever operations you plan to provide for the type as a whole. For example, type `point` is represented as just two floating-point numbers, which can be accessed using `point[0]` and `point[1]`. Note that this facility only works for fixed-length types whose internal form is exactly a sequence of identical fixed-length fields. For historical reasons (i.e., this is clearly wrong but it's far too late to change it), subscripting of fixed-length array types starts from zero, rather than from one as for variable-length arrays.

Specifying the `SUBSCRIPT` option allows a data type to be subscripted, even though the system does not otherwise regard it as an array type. The behavior just described for fixed-length arrays is actually implemented by the `SUBSCRIPT` handler function `raw_array_subscript_handler`, which is used automatically if you specify `ELEMENT` for a fixed-length type without also writing `SUBSCRIPT`.

When specifying a custom `SUBSCRIPT` function, it is not necessary to specify `ELEMENT` unless the `SUBSCRIPT` handler function needs to consult `typelem` to find out what to return. Be aware that specifying `ELEMENT` causes the system to assume that the new type contains, or is somehow physically dependent on, the element type; thus for example changing properties of the element type won't be allowed if there are any columns of the dependent type.

## Parameters

*name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of a type to be created.

*attribute\_name*

The name of an attribute (column) for the composite type.

*data\_type*

The name of an existing data type to become a column of the composite type.

*collation*

The name of an existing collation to be associated with a column of a composite type, or with a range type.

*label*

A string literal representing the textual label associated with one value of an enum type.

*subtype*

The name of the element type that the range type will represent ranges of.

*subtype\_operator\_class*

The name of a b-tree operator class for the subtype.

*canonical\_function*

The name of the canonicalization function for the range type.

*subtype\_diff\_function*

The name of a difference function for the subtype.

*multirange\_type\_name*

The name of the corresponding multirange type.

*input\_function*

The name of a function that converts data from the type's external textual form to its internal form.

*output\_function*

The name of a function that converts data from the type's internal form to its external textual form.

*receive\_function*

The name of a function that converts data from the type's external binary form to its internal form.

*send\_function*

The name of a function that converts data from the type's internal form to its external binary form.

*type\_modifier\_input\_function*

The name of a function that converts an array of modifier(s) for the type into internal form.

*type\_modifier\_output\_function*

The name of a function that converts the internal form of the type's modifier(s) to external textual form.

*analyze\_function*

The name of a function that performs statistical analysis for the data type.

*subscript\_function*

The name of a function that defines what subscripting a value of the data type does.

*internallength*

A numeric constant that specifies the length in bytes of the new type's internal representation. The default assumption is that it is variable-length.

*alignment*

The storage alignment requirement of the data type. If specified, it must be `char`, `int2`, `int4`, or `double`; the default is `int4`.

*storage*

The storage strategy for the data type. If specified, must be `plain`, `external`, `extended`, or `main`; the default is `plain`.

*like\_type*

The name of an existing data type that the new type will have the same representation as. The values of *internallength*, *passedbyvalue*, *alignment*, and *storage* are copied from that type, unless overridden by explicit specification elsewhere in this `CREATE TYPE` command.

*category*

The category code (a single ASCII character) for this type. The default is 'U' for "user-defined type". Other standard category codes can be found in Table 53.65. You may also choose other ASCII characters in order to create custom categories.

*preferred*

True if this type is a preferred type within its type category, else false. The default is false. Be very careful about creating a new preferred type within an existing type category, as this could cause surprising changes in behavior.

*default*

The default value for the data type. If this is omitted, the default is null.

*element*

The type being created is an array; this specifies the type of the array elements.

*delimiter*

The delimiter character to be used between values in arrays made of this type.

*collatable*

True if this type's operations can use collation information. The default is false.



## Notes

Because there are no restrictions on use of a data type once it's been created, creating a base type or range type is tantamount to granting public execute permission on the functions mentioned in the type definition. This is usually not an issue for the sorts of functions that are useful in a type definition. But you might want to think twice before designing a type in a way that would require “secret” information to be used while converting it to or from external form.

Before PostgreSQL version 8.3, the name of a generated array type was always exactly the element type's name with one underscore character (`_`) prepended. (Type names were therefore restricted in length to one fewer character than other names.) While this is still usually the case, the array type name may vary from this in case of maximum-length names or collisions with user type names that begin with underscore. Writing code that depends on this convention is therefore deprecated. Instead, use `pg_type.typarray` to locate the array type associated with a given type.

It may be advisable to avoid using type and table names that begin with underscore. While the server will change generated array type names to avoid collisions with user-given names, there is still risk of confusion, particularly with old client software that may assume that type names beginning with underscores always represent arrays.

Before PostgreSQL version 8.2, the shell-type creation syntax `CREATE TYPE name` did not exist. The way to create a new base type was to create its input function first. In this approach, PostgreSQL will first see the name of the new data type as the return type of the input function. The shell type is implicitly created in this situation, and then it can be referenced in the definitions of the remaining I/O functions. This approach still works, but is deprecated and might be disallowed in some future release. Also, to avoid accidentally cluttering the catalogs with shell types as a result of simple typos in function definitions, a shell type will only be made this way when the input function is written in C.

In PostgreSQL version 16 and later, it is desirable for base types' input functions to return “soft” errors using the new `errsave()`/`ereturn()` mechanism, rather than throwing `ereport()` exceptions as in previous versions. See `src/backend/utils/fmgr/README` for more information.

## Examples

This example creates a composite type and uses it in a function definition:

```
CREATE TYPE compfoo AS (f1 int, f2 text);

CREATE FUNCTION getfoo() RETURNS SETOF compfoo AS $$
    SELECT foid, fooname FROM foo
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;
```

This example creates an enumerated type and uses it in a table definition:

```
CREATE TYPE bug_status AS ENUM ('new', 'open', 'closed');

CREATE TABLE bug (
    id serial,
    description text,
    status bug_status
);
```

This example creates a range type:

```
CREATE TYPE float8_range AS RANGE (subtype = float8, subtype_diff =
    float8mi);
```

This example creates the base data type `box` and then uses the type in a table definition:

```
CREATE TYPE box;

CREATE FUNCTION my_box_in_function(cstring) RETURNS box AS ... ;
CREATE FUNCTION my_box_out_function(box) RETURNS cstring AS ... ;

CREATE TYPE box (
    INTERNALLENGTH = 16,
    INPUT = my_box_in_function,
    OUTPUT = my_box_out_function
);

CREATE TABLE myboxes (
    id integer,
    description box
);
```

If the internal structure of `box` were an array of four `float4` elements, we might instead use:

```
CREATE TYPE box (
    INTERNALLENGTH = 16,
    INPUT = my_box_in_function,
    OUTPUT = my_box_out_function,
    ELEMENT = float4
);
```

which would allow a `box` value's component numbers to be accessed by subscripting. Otherwise the type behaves the same as before.

This example creates a large object type and uses it in a table definition:

```
CREATE TYPE bigobj (
    INPUT = lo_filein, OUTPUT = lo_fileout,
    INTERNALLENGTH = VARIABLE
);

CREATE TABLE big_objs (
    id integer,
    obj bigobj
);
```

More examples, including suitable input and output functions, are in Section 38.13.

## Compatibility

The first form of the `CREATE TYPE` command, which creates a composite type, conforms to the SQL standard. The other forms are PostgreSQL extensions. The `CREATE TYPE` statement in the SQL standard also defines other forms that are not implemented in PostgreSQL.

The ability to create a composite type with zero attributes is a PostgreSQL-specific deviation from the standard (analogous to the same case in `CREATE TABLE`).

## See Also

`ALTER TYPE`, `CREATE DOMAIN`, `CREATE FUNCTION`, `DROP TYPE`

---

# CREATE USER

CREATE USER — define a new database role

## Synopsis

```
CREATE USER name [ [ WITH ] option [ ... ] ]
```

where *option* can be:

```
SUPERUSER | NOSUPERUSER
|
CREATEDB | NOCREATEDB
|
CREATEROLE | NOCREATEROLE
|
INHERIT | NOINHERIT
|
LOGIN | NOLOGIN
|
REPLICATION | NOREPLICATION
|
BYPASSRLS | NOBYPASSRLS
|
CONNECTION LIMIT connlimit
|
[ ENCRYPTED ] PASSWORD 'password' | PASSWORD NULL
|
VALID UNTIL 'timestamp'
|
IN ROLE role_name [, ...]
|
IN GROUP role_name [, ...]
|
ROLE role_name [, ...]
|
ADMIN role_name [, ...]
|
USER role_name [, ...]
|
SYSID uid
```

## Description

CREATE USER is now an alias for CREATE ROLE. The only difference is that when the command is spelled CREATE USER, LOGIN is assumed by default, whereas NOLOGIN is assumed when the command is spelled CREATE ROLE.

## Compatibility

The CREATE USER statement is a PostgreSQL extension. The SQL standard leaves the definition of users to the implementation.

## See Also

CREATE ROLE

---

# CREATE USER MAPPING

CREATE USER MAPPING — define a new mapping of a user to a foreign server

## Synopsis

```
CREATE USER MAPPING [ IF NOT EXISTS ] FOR { user_name | USER |  
CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER | PUBLIC }  
SERVER server_name  
[ OPTIONS ( option 'value' [ , ... ] ) ]
```

## Description

CREATE USER MAPPING defines a mapping of a user to a foreign server. A user mapping typically encapsulates connection information that a foreign-data wrapper uses together with the information encapsulated by a foreign server to access an external data resource.

The owner of a foreign server can create user mappings for that server for any user. Also, a user can create a user mapping for their own user name if USAGE privilege on the server has been granted to the user.

## Parameters

IF NOT EXISTS

Do not throw an error if a mapping of the given user to the given foreign server already exists. A notice is issued in this case. Note that there is no guarantee that the existing user mapping is anything like the one that would have been created.

*user\_name*

The name of an existing user that is mapped to foreign server. CURRENT\_ROLE, CURRENT\_USER, and USER match the name of the current user. When PUBLIC is specified, a so-called public mapping is created that is used when no user-specific mapping is applicable.

*server\_name*

The name of an existing server for which the user mapping is to be created.

OPTIONS ( *option* 'value' [ , ... ] )

This clause specifies the options of the user mapping. The options typically define the actual user name and password of the mapping. Option names must be unique. The allowed option names and values are specific to the server's foreign-data wrapper.

## Examples

Create a user mapping for user bob, server foo:

```
CREATE USER MAPPING FOR bob SERVER foo OPTIONS (user 'bob',  
password 'secret');
```

## Compatibility

CREATE USER MAPPING conforms to ISO/IEC 9075-9 (SQL/MED).

## See Also

ALTER USER MAPPING, DROP USER MAPPING, CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER,  
CREATE SERVER

---

# CREATE VIEW

CREATE VIEW — define a new view

## Synopsis

```
CREATE [ OR REPLACE ] [ TEMP | TEMPORARY ] [ RECURSIVE ] VIEW name
[ ( column_name [, ...] ) ]
  [ WITH ( view_option_name [= view_option_value] [, ...] ) ]
  AS query
  [ WITH [ CASCADED | LOCAL ] CHECK OPTION ]
```

## Description

CREATE VIEW defines a view of a query. The view is not physically materialized. Instead, the query is run every time the view is referenced in a query.

CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW is similar, but if a view of the same name already exists, it is replaced. The new query must generate the same columns that were generated by the existing view query (that is, the same column names in the same order and with the same data types), but it may add additional columns to the end of the list. The calculations giving rise to the output columns may be completely different.

If a schema name is given (for example, CREATE VIEW myschema.myview ...) then the view is created in the specified schema. Otherwise it is created in the current schema. Temporary views exist in a special schema, so a schema name cannot be given when creating a temporary view. The name of the view must be distinct from the name of any other relation (table, sequence, index, view, materialized view, or foreign table) in the same schema.

## Parameters

TEMPORARY or TEMP

If specified, the view is created as a temporary view. Temporary views are automatically dropped at the end of the current session. Existing permanent relations with the same name are not visible to the current session while the temporary view exists, unless they are referenced with schema-qualified names.

If any of the tables referenced by the view are temporary, the view is created as a temporary view (whether TEMPORARY is specified or not).

RECURSIVE

Creates a recursive view. The syntax

```
CREATE RECURSIVE VIEW [ schema . ] view_name (column_names) AS
  SELECT ...;
```

is equivalent to

```
CREATE VIEW [ schema . ] view_name AS WITH RECURSIVE view_name
  (column_names) AS (SELECT ...) SELECT column_names
  FROM view_name;
```

A view column name list must be specified for a recursive view.

*name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of a view to be created.

*column\_name*

An optional list of names to be used for columns of the view. If not given, the column names are deduced from the query.

WITH ( *view\_option\_name* [= *view\_option\_value*] [, ... ] )

This clause specifies optional parameters for a view; the following parameters are supported:

*check\_option* (enum)

This parameter may be either `local` or `cascaded`, and is equivalent to specifying WITH [ `CASCADED` | `LOCAL` ] `CHECK OPTION` (see below).

*security\_barrier* (boolean)

This should be used if the view is intended to provide row-level security. See Section 41.5 for full details.

*security\_invoker* (boolean)

This option causes the underlying base relations to be checked against the privileges of the user of the view rather than the view owner. See the notes below for full details.

All of the above options can be changed on existing views using `ALTER VIEW`.

*query*

A `SELECT` or `VALUES` command which will provide the columns and rows of the view.

WITH [ `CASCADED` | `LOCAL` ] `CHECK OPTION`

This option controls the behavior of automatically updatable views. When this option is specified, `INSERT` and `UPDATE` commands on the view will be checked to ensure that new rows satisfy the view-defining condition (that is, the new rows are checked to ensure that they are visible through the view). If they are not, the update will be rejected. If the `CHECK OPTION` is not specified, `INSERT` and `UPDATE` commands on the view are allowed to create rows that are not visible through the view. The following check options are supported:

`LOCAL`

New rows are only checked against the conditions defined directly in the view itself. Any conditions defined on underlying base views are not checked (unless they also specify the `CHECK OPTION`).

`CASCADED`

New rows are checked against the conditions of the view and all underlying base views. If the `CHECK OPTION` is specified, and neither `LOCAL` nor `CASCADED` is specified, then `CASCADED` is assumed.

The `CHECK OPTION` may not be used with `RECURSIVE` views.

Note that the `CHECK OPTION` is only supported on views that are automatically updatable, and do not have `INSTEAD OF` triggers or `INSTEAD` rules. If an automatically updatable view is defined on top of a base view that has `INSTEAD OF` triggers, then the `LOCAL CHECK OPTION` may be

used to check the conditions on the automatically updatable view, but the conditions on the base view with `INSTEAD OF` triggers will not be checked (a cascaded check option will not cascade down to a trigger-updatable view, and any check options defined directly on a trigger-updatable view will be ignored). If the view or any of its base relations has an `INSTEAD` rule that causes the `INSERT` or `UPDATE` command to be rewritten, then all check options will be ignored in the rewritten query, including any checks from automatically updatable views defined on top of the relation with the `INSTEAD` rule.

## Notes

Use the `DROP VIEW` statement to drop views.

Be careful that the names and types of the view's columns will be assigned the way you want. For example:

```
CREATE VIEW vista AS SELECT 'Hello World';
```

is bad form because the column name defaults to `?column?`; also, the column data type defaults to `text`, which might not be what you wanted. Better style for a string literal in a view's result is something like:

```
CREATE VIEW vista AS SELECT text 'Hello World' AS hello;
```

By default, access to the underlying base relations referenced in the view is determined by the permissions of the view owner. In some cases, this can be used to provide secure but restricted access to the underlying tables. However, not all views are secure against tampering; see Section 41.5 for details.

If the view has the `security_invoker` property set to `true`, access to the underlying base relations is determined by the permissions of the user executing the query, rather than the view owner. Thus, the user of a security invoker view must have the relevant permissions on the view and its underlying base relations.

If any of the underlying base relations is a security invoker view, it will be treated as if it had been accessed directly from the original query. Thus, a security invoker view will always check its underlying base relations using the permissions of the current user, even if it is accessed from a view without the `security_invoker` property.

If any of the underlying base relations has row-level security enabled, then by default, the row-level security policies of the view owner are applied, and access to any additional relations referred to by those policies is determined by the permissions of the view owner. However, if the view has `security_invoker` set to `true`, then the policies and permissions of the invoking user are used instead, as if the base relations had been referenced directly from the query using the view.

Functions called in the view are treated the same as if they had been called directly from the query using the view. Therefore, the user of a view must have permissions to call all functions used by the view. Functions in the view are executed with the privileges of the user executing the query or the function owner, depending on whether the functions are defined as `SECURITY INVOKER` or `SECURITY DEFINER`. Thus, for example, calling `CURRENT_USER` directly in a view will always return the invoking user, not the view owner. This is not affected by the view's `security_invoker` setting, and so a view with `security_invoker` set to `false` is *not* equivalent to a `SECURITY DEFINER` function and those concepts should not be confused.

The user creating or replacing a view must have `USAGE` privileges on any schemas referred to in the view query, in order to look up the referenced objects in those schemas. Note, however, that this lookup only happens when the view is created or replaced. Therefore, the user of the view only requires the `USAGE` privilege on the schema containing the view, not on the schemas referred to in the view query, even for a security invoker view.



When `CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW` is used on an existing view, only the view's defining `SELECT` rule, plus any `WITH ( ... )` parameters and its `CHECK OPTION` are changed. Other view properties, including ownership, permissions, and non-`SELECT` rules, remain unchanged. You must own the view to replace it (this includes being a member of the owning role).

## Updatable Views

Simple views are automatically updatable: the system will allow `INSERT`, `UPDATE` and `DELETE` statements to be used on the view in the same way as on a regular table. A view is automatically updatable if it satisfies all of the following conditions:

- The view must have exactly one entry in its `FROM` list, which must be a table or another updatable view.
- The view definition must not contain `WITH`, `DISTINCT`, `GROUP BY`, `HAVING`, `LIMIT`, or `OFFSET` clauses at the top level.
- The view definition must not contain set operations (`UNION`, `INTERSECT` or `EXCEPT`) at the top level.
- The view's select list must not contain any aggregates, window functions or set-returning functions.

An automatically updatable view may contain a mix of updatable and non-updatable columns. A column is updatable if it is a simple reference to an updatable column of the underlying base relation; otherwise the column is read-only, and an error will be raised if an `INSERT` or `UPDATE` statement attempts to assign a value to it.

If the view is automatically updatable the system will convert any `INSERT`, `UPDATE` or `DELETE` statement on the view into the corresponding statement on the underlying base relation. `INSERT` statements that have an `ON CONFLICT UPDATE` clause are fully supported.

If an automatically updatable view contains a `WHERE` condition, the condition restricts which rows of the base relation are available to be modified by `UPDATE` and `DELETE` statements on the view. However, an `UPDATE` is allowed to change a row so that it no longer satisfies the `WHERE` condition, and thus is no longer visible through the view. Similarly, an `INSERT` command can potentially insert base-relation rows that do not satisfy the `WHERE` condition and thus are not visible through the view (`ON CONFLICT UPDATE` may similarly affect an existing row not visible through the view). The `CHECK OPTION` may be used to prevent `INSERT` and `UPDATE` commands from creating such rows that are not visible through the view.

If an automatically updatable view is marked with the `security_barrier` property then all the view's `WHERE` conditions (and any conditions using operators which are marked as `LEAKPROOF`) will always be evaluated before any conditions that a user of the view has added. See Section 41.5 for full details. Note that, due to this, rows which are not ultimately returned (because they do not pass the user's `WHERE` conditions) may still end up being locked. `EXPLAIN` can be used to see which conditions are applied at the relation level (and therefore do not lock rows) and which are not.

A more complex view that does not satisfy all these conditions is read-only by default: the system will not allow an insert, update, or delete on the view. You can get the effect of an updatable view by creating `INSTEAD OF` triggers on the view, which must convert attempted inserts, etc. on the view into appropriate actions on other tables. For more information see `CREATE TRIGGER`. Another possibility is to create rules (see `CREATE RULE`), but in practice triggers are easier to understand and use correctly.

Note that the user performing the insert, update or delete on the view must have the corresponding insert, update or delete privilege on the view. In addition, by default, the view's owner must have the relevant privileges on the underlying base relations, whereas the user performing the update does not need any permissions on the underlying base relations (see Section 41.5). However, if the view has `security_invoker` set to `true`, the user performing the update, rather than the view owner, must have the relevant privileges on the underlying base relations.

## Examples

Create a view consisting of all comedy films:

```
CREATE VIEW comedies AS
  SELECT *
  FROM films
  WHERE kind = 'Comedy';
```

This will create a view containing the columns that are in the `film` table at the time of view creation. Though `*` was used to create the view, columns added later to the table will not be part of the view.

Create a view with `LOCAL CHECK OPTION`:

```
CREATE VIEW universal_comedies AS
  SELECT *
  FROM comedies
  WHERE classification = 'U'
  WITH LOCAL CHECK OPTION;
```

This will create a view based on the `comedies` view, showing only films with `kind = 'Comedy'` and `classification = 'U'`. Any attempt to `INSERT` or `UPDATE` a row in the view will be rejected if the new row doesn't have `classification = 'U'`, but the film kind will not be checked.

Create a view with `CASCADED CHECK OPTION`:

```
CREATE VIEW pg_comedies AS
  SELECT *
  FROM comedies
  WHERE classification = 'PG'
  WITH CASCADED CHECK OPTION;
```

This will create a view that checks both the `kind` and `classification` of new rows.

Create a view with a mix of updatable and non-updatable columns:

```
CREATE VIEW comedies AS
  SELECT f.*,
         country_code_to_name(f.country_code) AS country,
         (SELECT avg(r.rating)
          FROM user_ratings r
          WHERE r.film_id = f.id) AS avg_rating
  FROM films f
  WHERE f.kind = 'Comedy';
```

This view will support `INSERT`, `UPDATE` and `DELETE`. All the columns from the `films` table will be updatable, whereas the computed columns `country` and `avg_rating` will be read-only.

Create a recursive view consisting of the numbers from 1 to 100:

```
CREATE RECURSIVE VIEW public.nums_1_100 (n) AS
  VALUES (1)
UNION ALL
  SELECT n+1 FROM nums_1_100 WHERE n < 100;
```

Notice that although the recursive view's name is schema-qualified in this `CREATE`, its internal self-reference is not schema-qualified. This is because the implicitly-created CTE's name cannot be schema-qualified.

## Compatibility

`CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW` is a PostgreSQL language extension. So is the concept of a temporary view. The `WITH ( ... )` clause is an extension as well, as are security barrier views and security invoker views.

## See Also

`ALTER VIEW`, `DROP VIEW`, `CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW`

---

# DEALLOCATE

DEALLOCATE — deallocate a prepared statement

## Synopsis

```
DEALLOCATE [ PREPARE ] { name | ALL }
```

## Description

DEALLOCATE is used to deallocate a previously prepared SQL statement. If you do not explicitly deallocate a prepared statement, it is deallocated when the session ends.

For more information on prepared statements, see PREPARE.

## Parameters

PREPARE

This key word is ignored.

*name*

The name of the prepared statement to deallocate.

ALL

Deallocate all prepared statements.

## Compatibility

The SQL standard includes a DEALLOCATE statement, but it is only for use in embedded SQL.

## See Also

EXECUTE, PREPARE

---

# DECLARE

DECLARE — define a cursor

## Synopsis

```
DECLARE name [ BINARY ] [ ASENSITIVE | INSENSITIVE ] [ [ NO ]  
  SCROLL ]  
  CURSOR [ { WITH | WITHOUT } HOLD ] FOR query
```

## Description

DECLARE allows a user to create cursors, which can be used to retrieve a small number of rows at a time out of a larger query. After the cursor is created, rows are fetched from it using `FETCH`.

### Note

This page describes usage of cursors at the SQL command level. If you are trying to use cursors inside a PL/pgSQL function, the rules are different — see Section 43.7.

## Parameters

*name*

The name of the cursor to be created. This must be different from any other active cursor name in the session.

BINARY

Causes the cursor to return data in binary rather than in text format.

ASENSITIVE

INSENSITIVE

Cursor sensitivity determines whether changes to the data underlying the cursor, done in the same transaction, after the cursor has been declared, are visible in the cursor. `INSENSITIVE` means they are not visible, `ASENSITIVE` means the behavior is implementation-dependent. A third behavior, `SENSITIVE`, meaning that such changes are visible in the cursor, is not available in PostgreSQL. In PostgreSQL, all cursors are insensitive; so these key words have no effect and are only accepted for compatibility with the SQL standard.

Specifying `INSENSITIVE` together with `FOR UPDATE` or `FOR SHARE` is an error.

SCROLL

NO SCROLL

`SCROLL` specifies that the cursor can be used to retrieve rows in a nonsequential fashion (e.g., backward). Depending upon the complexity of the query's execution plan, specifying `SCROLL` might impose a performance penalty on the query's execution time. `NO SCROLL` specifies that the cursor cannot be used to retrieve rows in a nonsequential fashion. The default is to allow scrolling in some cases; this is not the same as specifying `SCROLL`. See Notes below for details.

WITH HOLD  
WITHOUT HOLD

WITH HOLD specifies that the cursor can continue to be used after the transaction that created it successfully commits. WITHOUT HOLD specifies that the cursor cannot be used outside of the transaction that created it. If neither WITHOUT HOLD nor WITH HOLD is specified, WITHOUT HOLD is the default.

*query*

A SELECT or VALUES command which will provide the rows to be returned by the cursor.

The key words ASENSITIVE, BINARY, INSENSITIVE, and SCROLL can appear in any order.

## Notes

Normal cursors return data in text format, the same as a SELECT would produce. The BINARY option specifies that the cursor should return data in binary format. This reduces conversion effort for both the server and client, at the cost of more programmer effort to deal with platform-dependent binary data formats. As an example, if a query returns a value of one from an integer column, you would get a string of 1 with a default cursor, whereas with a binary cursor you would get a 4-byte field containing the internal representation of the value (in big-endian byte order).

Binary cursors should be used carefully. Many applications, including psql, are not prepared to handle binary cursors and expect data to come back in the text format.

### Note

When the client application uses the “extended query” protocol to issue a FETCH command, the Bind protocol message specifies whether data is to be retrieved in text or binary format. This choice overrides the way that the cursor is defined. The concept of a binary cursor as such is thus obsolete when using extended query protocol — any cursor can be treated as either text or binary.

Unless WITH HOLD is specified, the cursor created by this command can only be used within the current transaction. Thus, DECLARE without WITH HOLD is useless outside a transaction block: the cursor would survive only to the completion of the statement. Therefore PostgreSQL reports an error if such a command is used outside a transaction block. Use BEGIN and COMMIT (or ROLLBACK) to define a transaction block.

If WITH HOLD is specified and the transaction that created the cursor successfully commits, the cursor can continue to be accessed by subsequent transactions in the same session. (But if the creating transaction is aborted, the cursor is removed.) A cursor created with WITH HOLD is closed when an explicit CLOSE command is issued on it, or the session ends. In the current implementation, the rows represented by a held cursor are copied into a temporary file or memory area so that they remain available for subsequent transactions.

WITH HOLD may not be specified when the query includes FOR UPDATE or FOR SHARE.

The SCROLL option should be specified when defining a cursor that will be used to fetch backwards. This is required by the SQL standard. However, for compatibility with earlier versions, PostgreSQL will allow backward fetches without SCROLL, if the cursor's query plan is simple enough that no extra overhead is needed to support it. However, application developers are advised not to rely on using backward fetches from a cursor that has not been created with SCROLL. If NO SCROLL is specified, then backward fetches are disallowed in any case.

Backward fetches are also disallowed when the query includes FOR UPDATE or FOR SHARE; therefore SCROLL may not be specified in this case.

### Caution

Scrollable cursors may give unexpected results if they invoke any volatile functions (see Section 38.7). When a previously fetched row is re-fetched, the functions might be re-executed, perhaps leading to results different from the first time. It's best to specify `NO SCROLL` for a query involving volatile functions. If that is not practical, one workaround is to declare the cursor `SCROLL WITH HOLD` and commit the transaction before reading any rows from it. This will force the entire output of the cursor to be materialized in temporary storage, so that volatile functions are executed exactly once for each row.

If the cursor's query includes `FOR UPDATE` or `FOR SHARE`, then returned rows are locked at the time they are first fetched, in the same way as for a regular `SELECT` command with these options. In addition, the returned rows will be the most up-to-date versions.

### Caution

It is generally recommended to use `FOR UPDATE` if the cursor is intended to be used with `UPDATE ... WHERE CURRENT OF` or `DELETE ... WHERE CURRENT OF`. Using `FOR UPDATE` prevents other sessions from changing the rows between the time they are fetched and the time they are updated. Without `FOR UPDATE`, a subsequent `WHERE CURRENT OF` command will have no effect if the row was changed since the cursor was created.

Another reason to use `FOR UPDATE` is that without it, a subsequent `WHERE CURRENT OF` might fail if the cursor query does not meet the SQL standard's rules for being “simply updatable” (in particular, the cursor must reference just one table and not use grouping or `ORDER BY`). Cursors that are not simply updatable might work, or might not, depending on plan choice details; so in the worst case, an application might work in testing and then fail in production. If `FOR UPDATE` is specified, the cursor is guaranteed to be updatable.

The main reason not to use `FOR UPDATE` with `WHERE CURRENT OF` is if you need the cursor to be scrollable, or to be isolated from concurrent updates (that is, continue to show the old data). If this is a requirement, pay close heed to the caveats shown above.

The SQL standard only makes provisions for cursors in embedded SQL. The PostgreSQL server does not implement an `OPEN` statement for cursors; a cursor is considered to be open when it is declared. However, ECPG, the embedded SQL preprocessor for PostgreSQL, supports the standard SQL cursor conventions, including those involving `DECLARE` and `OPEN` statements.

The server data structure underlying an open cursor is called a *portal*. Portal names are exposed in the client protocol: a client can fetch rows directly from an open portal, if it knows the portal name. When creating a cursor with `DECLARE`, the portal name is the same as the cursor name.

You can see all available cursors by querying the `pg_cursors` system view.

## Examples

To declare a cursor:

```
DECLARE liahona CURSOR FOR SELECT * FROM films;
```

See `FETCH` for more examples of cursor usage.

## Compatibility

The SQL standard allows cursors only in embedded SQL and in modules. PostgreSQL permits cursors to be used interactively.

According to the SQL standard, changes made to insensitive cursors by UPDATE . . . WHERE CURRENT OF and DELETE . . . WHERE CURRENT OF statements are visible in that same cursor. PostgreSQL treats these statements like all other data changing statements in that they are not visible in insensitive cursors.

Binary cursors are a PostgreSQL extension.

## See Also

CLOSE, FETCH, MOVE



---

# DELETE

DELETE — delete rows of a table

## Synopsis

```
[ WITH [ RECURSIVE ] with_query [, ...] ]  
DELETE FROM [ ONLY ] table_name [ * ] [ [ AS ] alias ]  
    [ USING from_item [, ...] ]  
    [ WHERE condition | WHERE CURRENT OF cursor_name ]  
    [ RETURNING * | output_expression [ [ AS ] output_name ]  
    [, ...] ]
```

## Description

DELETE deletes rows that satisfy the WHERE clause from the specified table. If the WHERE clause is absent, the effect is to delete all rows in the table. The result is a valid, but empty table.

### Tip

TRUNCATE provides a faster mechanism to remove all rows from a table.

There are two ways to delete rows in a table using information contained in other tables in the database: using sub-selects, or specifying additional tables in the USING clause. Which technique is more appropriate depends on the specific circumstances.

The optional RETURNING clause causes DELETE to compute and return value(s) based on each row actually deleted. Any expression using the table's columns, and/or columns of other tables mentioned in USING, can be computed. The syntax of the RETURNING list is identical to that of the output list of SELECT.

You must have the DELETE privilege on the table to delete from it, as well as the SELECT privilege for any table in the USING clause or whose values are read in the *condition*.

## Parameters

*with\_query*

The WITH clause allows you to specify one or more subqueries that can be referenced by name in the DELETE query. See Section 7.8 and SELECT for details.

*table\_name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table to delete rows from. If ONLY is specified before the table name, matching rows are deleted from the named table only. If ONLY is not specified, matching rows are also deleted from any tables inheriting from the named table. Optionally, \* can be specified after the table name to explicitly indicate that descendant tables are included.

*alias*

A substitute name for the target table. When an alias is provided, it completely hides the actual name of the table. For example, given DELETE FROM foo AS f, the remainder of the DELETE statement must refer to this table as f not foo.

*from\_item*

A table expression allowing columns from other tables to appear in the `WHERE` condition. This uses the same syntax as the `FROM` clause of a `SELECT` statement; for example, an alias for the table name can be specified. Do not repeat the target table as a *from\_item* unless you wish to set up a self-join (in which case it must appear with an alias in the *from\_item*).

*condition*

An expression that returns a value of type `boolean`. Only rows for which this expression returns `true` will be deleted.

*cursor\_name*

The name of the cursor to use in a `WHERE CURRENT OF` condition. The row to be deleted is the one most recently fetched from this cursor. The cursor must be a non-grouping query on the `DELETE`'s target table. Note that `WHERE CURRENT OF` cannot be specified together with a Boolean condition. See `DECLARE` for more information about using cursors with `WHERE CURRENT OF`.

*output\_expression*

An expression to be computed and returned by the `DELETE` command after each row is deleted. The expression can use any column names of the table named by *table\_name* or table(s) listed in `USING`. Write `*` to return all columns.

*output\_name*

A name to use for a returned column.

## Outputs

On successful completion, a `DELETE` command returns a command tag of the form

```
DELETE count
```

The *count* is the number of rows deleted. Note that the number may be less than the number of rows that matched the *condition* when deletes were suppressed by a `BEFORE DELETE` trigger. If *count* is 0, no rows were deleted by the query (this is not considered an error).

If the `DELETE` command contains a `RETURNING` clause, the result will be similar to that of a `SELECT` statement containing the columns and values defined in the `RETURNING` list, computed over the row(s) deleted by the command.

## Notes

PostgreSQL lets you reference columns of other tables in the `WHERE` condition by specifying the other tables in the `USING` clause. For example, to delete all films produced by a given producer, one can do:

```
DELETE FROM films USING producers
WHERE producer_id = producers.id AND producers.name = 'foo';
```

What is essentially happening here is a join between `films` and `producers`, with all successfully joined `films` rows being marked for deletion. This syntax is not standard. A more standard way to do it is:

```
DELETE FROM films
```

```
WHERE producer_id IN (SELECT id FROM producers WHERE name =  
'foo');
```

In some cases the join style is easier to write or faster to execute than the sub-select style.

## Examples

Delete all films but musicals:

```
DELETE FROM films WHERE kind <> 'Musical';
```

Clear the table films:

```
DELETE FROM films;
```

Delete completed tasks, returning full details of the deleted rows:

```
DELETE FROM tasks WHERE status = 'DONE' RETURNING *;
```

Delete the row of tasks on which the cursor `c_tasks` is currently positioned:

```
DELETE FROM tasks WHERE CURRENT OF c_tasks;
```

## Compatibility

This command conforms to the SQL standard, except that the `USING` and `RETURNING` clauses are PostgreSQL extensions, as is the ability to use `WITH` with `DELETE`.

## See Also

`TRUNCATE`

---

# DISCARD

DISCARD — discard session state

## Synopsis

```
DISCARD { ALL | PLANS | SEQUENCES | TEMPORARY | TEMP }
```

## Description

DISCARD releases internal resources associated with a database session. This command is useful for partially or fully resetting the session's state. There are several subcommands to release different types of resources; the DISCARD ALL variant subsumes all the others, and also resets additional state.

## Parameters

PLANS

Releases all cached query plans, forcing re-planning to occur the next time the associated prepared statement is used.

SEQUENCES

Discards all cached sequence-related state, including `currval()`/`lastval()` information and any preallocated sequence values that have not yet been returned by `nextval()`. (See CREATE SEQUENCE for a description of preallocated sequence values.)

TEMPORARY or TEMP

Drops all temporary tables created in the current session.

ALL

Releases all temporary resources associated with the current session and resets the session to its initial state. Currently, this has the same effect as executing the following sequence of statements:

```
CLOSE ALL;  
SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION DEFAULT;  
RESET ALL;  
DEALLOCATE ALL;  
UNLISTEN *;  
SELECT pg_advisory_unlock_all();  
DISCARD PLANS;  
DISCARD TEMP;  
DISCARD SEQUENCES;
```

## Notes

DISCARD ALL cannot be executed inside a transaction block.

## Compatibility

DISCARD is a PostgreSQL extension.

---

# DO

DO — execute an anonymous code block

## Synopsis

```
DO [ LANGUAGE lang_name ] code
```

## Description

DO executes an anonymous code block, or in other words a transient anonymous function in a procedural language.

The code block is treated as though it were the body of a function with no parameters, returning `void`. It is parsed and executed a single time.

The optional `LANGUAGE` clause can be written either before or after the code block.

## Parameters

*code*

The procedural language code to be executed. This must be specified as a string literal, just as in `CREATE FUNCTION`. Use of a dollar-quoted literal is recommended.

*lang\_name*

The name of the procedural language the code is written in. If omitted, the default is `plpgsql`.

## Notes

The procedural language to be used must already have been installed into the current database by means of `CREATE EXTENSION`. `plpgsql` is installed by default, but other languages are not.

The user must have `USAGE` privilege for the procedural language, or must be a superuser if the language is untrusted. This is the same privilege requirement as for creating a function in the language.

If `DO` is executed in a transaction block, then the procedure code cannot execute transaction control statements. Transaction control statements are only allowed if `DO` is executed in its own transaction.

## Examples

Grant all privileges on all views in schema `public` to role `webuser`:

```
DO $$DECLARE r record;
BEGIN
    FOR r IN SELECT table_schema, table_name FROM
        information_schema.tables
            WHERE table_type = 'VIEW' AND table_schema = 'public'
    LOOP
        EXECUTE 'GRANT ALL ON ' || quote_ident(r.table_schema) ||
            '.' || quote_ident(r.table_name) || ' TO webuser';
    END LOOP;
```

END\$\$ ;

## Compatibility

There is no DO statement in the SQL standard.

## See Also

CREATE LANGUAGE

---

# DROP ACCESS METHOD

DROP ACCESS METHOD — remove an access method

## Synopsis

```
DROP ACCESS METHOD [ IF EXISTS ] name [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

## Description

DROP ACCESS METHOD removes an existing access method. Only superusers can drop access methods.

## Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the access method does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

*name*

The name of an existing access method.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the access method (such as operator classes, operator families, and indexes), and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the access method if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

## Examples

Drop the access method heptree:

```
DROP ACCESS METHOD heptree;
```

## Compatibility

DROP ACCESS METHOD is a PostgreSQL extension.

## See Also

CREATE ACCESS METHOD

---

# DROP AGGREGATE

DROP AGGREGATE — remove an aggregate function

## Synopsis

```
DROP AGGREGATE [ IF EXISTS ] name ( aggregate_signature ) [, ...]  
  [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

where *aggregate\_signature* is:

```
* |  
[ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype [ , ... ] |  
[ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype [ , ... ] ] ORDER BY [ argmode ]  
  [ argname ] argtype [ , ... ]
```

## Description

DROP AGGREGATE removes an existing aggregate function. To execute this command the current user must be the owner of the aggregate function.

## Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the aggregate does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

*name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing aggregate function.

*argmode*

The mode of an argument: IN or VARIADIC. If omitted, the default is IN.

*argname*

The name of an argument. Note that DROP AGGREGATE does not actually pay any attention to argument names, since only the argument data types are needed to determine the aggregate function's identity.

*argtype*

An input data type on which the aggregate function operates. To reference a zero-argument aggregate function, write \* in place of the list of argument specifications. To reference an ordered-set aggregate function, write ORDER BY between the direct and aggregated argument specifications.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the aggregate function (such as views using it), and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the aggregate function if any objects depend on it. This is the default.



## Notes

Alternative syntaxes for referencing ordered-set aggregates are described under `ALTER AGGREGATE`.

## Examples

To remove the aggregate function `myavg` for type `integer`:

```
DROP AGGREGATE myavg(integer);
```

To remove the hypothetical-set aggregate function `myrank`, which takes an arbitrary list of ordering columns and a matching list of direct arguments:

```
DROP AGGREGATE myrank(VARIADIC "any" ORDER BY VARIADIC "any");
```

To remove multiple aggregate functions in one command:

```
DROP AGGREGATE myavg(integer), myavg(bigint);
```

## Compatibility

There is no `DROP AGGREGATE` statement in the SQL standard.

## See Also

`ALTER AGGREGATE`, `CREATE AGGREGATE`

---

# DROP CAST

DROP CAST — remove a cast

## Synopsis

```
DROP CAST [ IF EXISTS ] (source_type AS target_type) [ CASCADE |  
RESTRICT ]
```

## Description

DROP CAST removes a previously defined cast.

To be able to drop a cast, you must own the source or the target data type. These are the same privileges that are required to create a cast.

## Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the cast does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

*source\_type*

The name of the source data type of the cast.

*target\_type*

The name of the target data type of the cast.

CASCADE

RESTRICT

These key words do not have any effect, since there are no dependencies on casts.

## Examples

To drop the cast from type text to type int:

```
DROP CAST (text AS int);
```

## Compatibility

The DROP CAST command conforms to the SQL standard.

## See Also

CREATE CAST

---

# DROP COLLATION

DROP COLLATION — remove a collation

## Synopsis

```
DROP COLLATION [ IF EXISTS ] name [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

## Description

DROP COLLATION removes a previously defined collation. To be able to drop a collation, you must own the collation.

## Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the collation does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

*name*

The name of the collation. The collation name can be schema-qualified.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the collation, and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the collation if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

## Examples

To drop the collation named `german`:

```
DROP COLLATION german;
```

## Compatibility

The DROP COLLATION command conforms to the SQL standard, apart from the IF EXISTS option, which is a PostgreSQL extension.

## See Also

ALTER COLLATION, CREATE COLLATION

---

# DROP CONVERSION

DROP CONVERSION — remove a conversion

## Synopsis

```
DROP CONVERSION [ IF EXISTS ] name [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

## Description

DROP CONVERSION removes a previously defined conversion. To be able to drop a conversion, you must own the conversion.

## Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the conversion does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

*name*

The name of the conversion. The conversion name can be schema-qualified.

CASCADE

RESTRICT

These key words do not have any effect, since there are no dependencies on conversions.

## Examples

To drop the conversion named myname:

```
DROP CONVERSION myname;
```

## Compatibility

There is no DROP CONVERSION statement in the SQL standard, but a DROP TRANSLATION statement that goes along with the CREATE TRANSLATION statement that is similar to the CREATE CONVERSION statement in PostgreSQL.

## See Also

ALTER CONVERSION, CREATE CONVERSION

---

# DROP DATABASE

DROP DATABASE — remove a database

## Synopsis

```
DROP DATABASE [ IF EXISTS ] name [ [ WITH ] ( option [, ...] ) ]
```

where *option* can be:

FORCE

## Description

DROP DATABASE drops a database. It removes the catalog entries for the database and deletes the directory containing the data. It can only be executed by the database owner. It cannot be executed while you are connected to the target database. (Connect to `postgres` or any other database to issue this command.) Also, if anyone else is connected to the target database, this command will fail unless you use the `FORCE` option described below.

DROP DATABASE cannot be undone. Use it with care!

## Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the database does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

*name*

The name of the database to remove.

FORCE

Attempt to terminate all existing connections to the target database. It doesn't terminate if prepared transactions, active logical replication slots or subscriptions are present in the target database.

This will fail if the current user has no permissions to terminate other connections. Required permissions are the same as with `pg_terminate_backend`, described in Section 9.27.2. This will also fail if we are not able to terminate connections.

## Notes

DROP DATABASE cannot be executed inside a transaction block.

This command cannot be executed while connected to the target database. Thus, it might be more convenient to use the program `dropdb` instead, which is a wrapper around this command.

## Compatibility

There is no DROP DATABASE statement in the SQL standard.

## See Also

CREATE DATABASE

---

# DROP DOMAIN

DROP DOMAIN — remove a domain

## Synopsis

```
DROP DOMAIN [ IF EXISTS ] name [ , ... ] [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

## Description

DROP DOMAIN removes a domain. Only the owner of a domain can remove it.

## Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the domain does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

*name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing domain.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the domain (such as table columns), and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the domain if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

## Examples

To remove the domain box:

```
DROP DOMAIN box;
```

## Compatibility

This command conforms to the SQL standard, except for the IF EXISTS option, which is a PostgreSQL extension.

## See Also

CREATE DOMAIN, ALTER DOMAIN

---

# DROP EVENT TRIGGER

DROP EVENT TRIGGER — remove an event trigger

## Synopsis

```
DROP EVENT TRIGGER [ IF EXISTS ] name [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

## Description

DROP EVENT TRIGGER removes an existing event trigger. To execute this command, the current user must be the owner of the event trigger.

## Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the event trigger does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

*name*

The name of the event trigger to remove.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the trigger, and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the trigger if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

## Examples

Destroy the trigger `snitch`:

```
DROP EVENT TRIGGER snitch;
```

## Compatibility

There is no DROP EVENT TRIGGER statement in the SQL standard.

## See Also

CREATE EVENT TRIGGER, ALTER EVENT TRIGGER

---

# DROP EXTENSION

DROP EXTENSION — remove an extension

## Synopsis

```
DROP EXTENSION [ IF EXISTS ] name [, ...] [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

## Description

DROP EXTENSION removes extensions from the database. Dropping an extension causes its member objects, and other explicitly dependent routines (see ALTER ROUTINE, the DEPENDS ON EXTENSION *extension\_name* action), to be dropped as well.

You must own the extension to use DROP EXTENSION.

## Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the extension does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

*name*

The name of an installed extension.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the extension, and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

This option prevents the specified extensions from being dropped if other objects, besides these extensions, their members, and their explicitly dependent routines, depend on them. This is the default.

## Examples

To remove the extension `hstore` from the current database:

```
DROP EXTENSION hstore;
```

This command will fail if any of `hstore`'s objects are in use in the database, for example if any tables have columns of the `hstore` type. Add the `CASCADE` option to forcibly remove those dependent objects as well.

## Compatibility

DROP EXTENSION is a PostgreSQL extension.

## See Also

CREATE EXTENSION, ALTER EXTENSION



---

# DROP FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER

DROP FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER — remove a foreign-data wrapper

## Synopsis

```
DROP FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER [ IF EXISTS ] name [ , ... ] [ CASCADE |  
RESTRICT ]
```

## Description

DROP FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER removes an existing foreign-data wrapper. To execute this command, the current user must be the owner of the foreign-data wrapper.

## Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the foreign-data wrapper does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

*name*

The name of an existing foreign-data wrapper.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the foreign-data wrapper (such as foreign tables and servers), and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the foreign-data wrapper if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

## Examples

Drop the foreign-data wrapper dbi:

```
DROP FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER dbi;
```

## Compatibility

DROP FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER conforms to ISO/IEC 9075-9 (SQL/MED). The IF EXISTS clause is a PostgreSQL extension.

## See Also

CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER, ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER

---

# DROP FOREIGN TABLE

DROP FOREIGN TABLE — remove a foreign table

## Synopsis

```
DROP FOREIGN TABLE [ IF EXISTS ] name [, ...] [ CASCADE |  
RESTRICT ]
```

## Description

DROP FOREIGN TABLE removes a foreign table. Only the owner of a foreign table can remove it.

## Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the foreign table does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

*name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the foreign table to drop.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the foreign table (such as views), and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the foreign table if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

## Examples

To destroy two foreign tables, `films` and `distributors`:

```
DROP FOREIGN TABLE films, distributors;
```

## Compatibility

This command conforms to ISO/IEC 9075-9 (SQL/MED), except that the standard only allows one foreign table to be dropped per command, and apart from the `IF EXISTS` option, which is a PostgreSQL extension.

## See Also

ALTER FOREIGN TABLE, CREATE FOREIGN TABLE

---

# DROP FUNCTION

DROP FUNCTION — remove a function

## Synopsis

```
DROP FUNCTION [ IF EXISTS ] name [ ( [ argmode ] [ argname  
    ] argtype [ , ... ] ) ] [ , ... ]  
    [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

## Description

DROP FUNCTION removes the definition of an existing function. To execute this command the user must be the owner of the function. The argument types to the function must be specified, since several different functions can exist with the same name and different argument lists.

## Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the function does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

*name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing function. If no argument list is specified, the name must be unique in its schema.

*argmode*

The mode of an argument: IN, OUT, INOUT, or VARIADIC. If omitted, the default is IN. Note that DROP FUNCTION does not actually pay any attention to OUT arguments, since only the input arguments are needed to determine the function's identity. So it is sufficient to list the IN, INOUT, and VARIADIC arguments.

*argname*

The name of an argument. Note that DROP FUNCTION does not actually pay any attention to argument names, since only the argument data types are needed to determine the function's identity.

*argtype*

The data type(s) of the function's arguments (optionally schema-qualified), if any.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the function (such as operators or triggers), and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the function if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

## Examples

This command removes the square root function:

```
DROP FUNCTION sqrt(integer);
```

Drop multiple functions in one command:

```
DROP FUNCTION sqrt(integer), sqrt(bigint);
```

If the function name is unique in its schema, it can be referred to without an argument list:

```
DROP FUNCTION update_employee_salaries;
```

Note that this is different from

```
DROP FUNCTION update_employee_salaries();
```

which refers to a function with zero arguments, whereas the first variant can refer to a function with any number of arguments, including zero, as long as the name is unique.

## Compatibility

This command conforms to the SQL standard, with these PostgreSQL extensions:

- The standard only allows one function to be dropped per command.
- The `IF EXISTS` option
- The ability to specify argument modes and names

## See Also

`CREATE FUNCTION`, `ALTER FUNCTION`, `DROP PROCEDURE`, `DROP ROUTINE`

---

# DROP GROUP

DROP GROUP — remove a database role

## Synopsis

```
DROP GROUP [ IF EXISTS ] name [, ...]
```

## Description

DROP GROUP is now an alias for DROP ROLE.

## Compatibility

There is no DROP GROUP statement in the SQL standard.

## See Also

DROP ROLE

---

# DROP INDEX

DROP INDEX — remove an index

## Synopsis

```
DROP INDEX [ CONCURRENTLY ] [ IF EXISTS ] name [, ...] [ CASCADE |  
RESTRICT ]
```

## Description

DROP INDEX drops an existing index from the database system. To execute this command you must be the owner of the index.

## Parameters

CONCURRENTLY

Drop the index without locking out concurrent selects, inserts, updates, and deletes on the index's table. A normal DROP INDEX acquires an ACCESS EXCLUSIVE lock on the table, blocking other accesses until the index drop can be completed. With this option, the command instead waits until conflicting transactions have completed.

There are several caveats to be aware of when using this option. Only one index name can be specified, and the CASCADE option is not supported. (Thus, an index that supports a UNIQUE or PRIMARY KEY constraint cannot be dropped this way.) Also, regular DROP INDEX commands can be performed within a transaction block, but DROP INDEX CONCURRENTLY cannot. Lastly, indexes on partitioned tables cannot be dropped using this option.

For temporary tables, DROP INDEX is always non-concurrent, as no other session can access them, and non-concurrent index drop is cheaper.

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the index does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

*name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an index to remove.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the index, and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the index if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

## Examples

This command will remove the index `title_idx`:

```
DROP INDEX title_idx;
```

## Compatibility

`DROP INDEX` is a PostgreSQL language extension. There are no provisions for indexes in the SQL standard.

## See Also

`CREATE INDEX`

---

# DROP LANGUAGE

DROP LANGUAGE — remove a procedural language

## Synopsis

```
DROP [ PROCEDURAL ] LANGUAGE [ IF EXISTS ] name [ CASCADE |  
RESTRICT ]
```

## Description

DROP LANGUAGE removes the definition of a previously registered procedural language. You must be a superuser or the owner of the language to use DROP LANGUAGE.

### Note

As of PostgreSQL 9.1, most procedural languages have been made into “extensions”, and should therefore be removed with DROP EXTENSION not DROP LANGUAGE.

## Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the language does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

*name*

The name of an existing procedural language.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the language (such as functions in the language), and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the language if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

## Examples

This command removes the procedural language `plsample`:

```
DROP LANGUAGE plsample;
```

## Compatibility

There is no DROP LANGUAGE statement in the SQL standard.

## See Also

ALTER LANGUAGE, CREATE LANGUAGE



---

# DROP MATERIALIZED VIEW

DROP MATERIALIZED VIEW — remove a materialized view

## Synopsis

```
DROP MATERIALIZED VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] name [, ...] [ CASCADE |  
RESTRICT ]
```

## Description

DROP MATERIALIZED VIEW drops an existing materialized view. To execute this command you must be the owner of the materialized view.

## Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the materialized view does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

*name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the materialized view to remove.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the materialized view (such as other materialized views, or regular views), and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the materialized view if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

## Examples

This command will remove the materialized view called `order_summary`:

```
DROP MATERIALIZED VIEW order_summary;
```

## Compatibility

DROP MATERIALIZED VIEW is a PostgreSQL extension.

## See Also

CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW, ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW, REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW

---

# DROP OPERATOR

DROP OPERATOR — remove an operator

## Synopsis

```
DROP OPERATOR [ IF EXISTS ] name ( { left_type |  
NONE } , right_type ) [ , ... ] [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

## Description

DROP OPERATOR drops an existing operator from the database system. To execute this command you must be the owner of the operator.

## Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the operator does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

*name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing operator.

*left\_type*

The data type of the operator's left operand; write NONE if the operator has no left operand.

*right\_type*

The data type of the operator's right operand.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the operator (such as views using it), and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the operator if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

## Examples

Remove the power operator  $a^b$  for type integer:

```
DROP OPERATOR ^ (integer, integer);
```

Remove the bitwise-complement prefix operator  $\sim b$  for type bit:

```
DROP OPERATOR ~ (none, bit);
```

Remove multiple operators in one command:

`DROP OPERATOR ~ (none, bit), ^ (integer, integer);`

## Compatibility

There is no `DROP OPERATOR` statement in the SQL standard.

## See Also

`CREATE OPERATOR`, `ALTER OPERATOR`

---

# DROP OPERATOR CLASS

DROP OPERATOR CLASS — remove an operator class

## Synopsis

```
DROP OPERATOR CLASS [ IF EXISTS ] name USING index_method [ CASCADE  
| RESTRICT ]
```

## Description

DROP OPERATOR CLASS drops an existing operator class. To execute this command you must be the owner of the operator class.

DROP OPERATOR CLASS does not drop any of the operators or functions referenced by the class. If there are any indexes depending on the operator class, you will need to specify CASCADE for the drop to complete.

## Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the operator class does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

*name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing operator class.

*index\_method*

The name of the index access method the operator class is for.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the operator class (such as indexes), and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the operator class if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

## Notes

DROP OPERATOR CLASS will not drop the operator family containing the class, even if there is nothing else left in the family (in particular, in the case where the family was implicitly created by CREATE OPERATOR CLASS). An empty operator family is harmless, but for the sake of tidiness you might wish to remove the family with DROP OPERATOR FAMILY; or perhaps better, use DROP OPERATOR FAMILY in the first place.

## Examples

Remove the B-tree operator class `widget_ops`:

```
DROP OPERATOR CLASS widget_ops USING btree;
```

This command will not succeed if there are any existing indexes that use the operator class. Add `CASCADE` to drop such indexes along with the operator class.

## Compatibility

There is no `DROP OPERATOR CLASS` statement in the SQL standard.

## See Also

`ALTER OPERATOR CLASS`, `CREATE OPERATOR CLASS`, `DROP OPERATOR FAMILY`

---

# DROP OPERATOR FAMILY

DROP OPERATOR FAMILY — remove an operator family

## Synopsis

```
DROP OPERATOR FAMILY [ IF EXISTS ] name USING index_method
[ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

## Description

DROP OPERATOR FAMILY drops an existing operator family. To execute this command you must be the owner of the operator family.

DROP OPERATOR FAMILY includes dropping any operator classes contained in the family, but it does not drop any of the operators or functions referenced by the family. If there are any indexes depending on operator classes within the family, you will need to specify CASCADE for the drop to complete.

## Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the operator family does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

*name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing operator family.

*index\_method*

The name of the index access method the operator family is for.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the operator family, and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the operator family if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

## Examples

Remove the B-tree operator family `float_ops`:

```
DROP OPERATOR FAMILY float_ops USING btree;
```

This command will not succeed if there are any existing indexes that use operator classes within the family. Add CASCADE to drop such indexes along with the operator family.

## Compatibility

There is no DROP OPERATOR FAMILY statement in the SQL standard.

## See Also

ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY, CREATE OPERATOR FAMILY, ALTER OPERATOR CLASS,  
CREATE OPERATOR CLASS, DROP OPERATOR CLASS

---

# DROP OWNED

DROP OWNED — remove database objects owned by a database role

## Synopsis

```
DROP OWNED BY { name | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER | SESSION_USER }  
[ , ... ] [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

## Description

DROP OWNED drops all the objects within the current database that are owned by one of the specified roles. Any privileges granted to the given roles on objects in the current database or on shared objects (databases, tablespaces, configuration parameters) will also be revoked.

## Parameters

*name*

The name of a role whose objects will be dropped, and whose privileges will be revoked.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the affected objects, and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the objects owned by a role if any other database objects depend on one of the affected objects. This is the default.

## Notes

DROP OWNED is often used to prepare for the removal of one or more roles. Because DROP OWNED only affects the objects in the current database, it is usually necessary to execute this command in each database that contains objects owned by a role that is to be removed.

Using the CASCADE option might make the command recurse to objects owned by other users.

The REASSIGN OWNED command is an alternative that reassigns the ownership of all the database objects owned by one or more roles. However, REASSIGN OWNED does not deal with privileges for other objects.

Databases and tablespaces owned by the role(s) will not be removed.

See Section 22.4 for more discussion.

## Compatibility

The DROP OWNED command is a PostgreSQL extension.

## See Also

REASSIGN OWNED, DROP ROLE



---

# DROP POLICY

DROP POLICY — remove a row-level security policy from a table

## Synopsis

```
DROP POLICY [ IF EXISTS ] name ON table_name [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

## Description

DROP POLICY removes the specified policy from the table. Note that if the last policy is removed for a table and the table still has row-level security enabled via ALTER TABLE, then the default-deny policy will be used. ALTER TABLE ... DISABLE ROW LEVEL SECURITY can be used to disable row-level security for a table, whether policies for the table exist or not.

## Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the policy does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

*name*

The name of the policy to drop.

*table\_name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table that the policy is on.

CASCADE

RESTRICT

These key words do not have any effect, since there are no dependencies on policies.

## Examples

To drop the policy called p1 on the table named my\_table:

```
DROP POLICY p1 ON my_table;
```

## Compatibility

DROP POLICY is a PostgreSQL extension.

## See Also

CREATE POLICY, ALTER POLICY

---

# DROP PROCEDURE

DROP PROCEDURE — remove a procedure

## Synopsis

```
DROP PROCEDURE [ IF EXISTS ] name [ ( [ argmode ] [ argname  
    ] argtype [ , ... ] ) ] [ , ... ]  
    [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

## Description

DROP PROCEDURE removes the definition of one or more existing procedures. To execute this command the user must be the owner of the procedure(s). The argument types to the procedure(s) usually must be specified, since several different procedures can exist with the same name and different argument lists.

## Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the procedure does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

*name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing procedure.

*argmode*

The mode of an argument: IN, OUT, INOUT, or VARIADIC. If omitted, the default is IN (but see below).

*argname*

The name of an argument. Note that DROP PROCEDURE does not actually pay any attention to argument names, since only the argument data types are used to determine the procedure's identity.

*argtype*

The data type(s) of the procedure's arguments (optionally schema-qualified), if any. See below for details.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the procedure, and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the procedure if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

## Notes

If there is only one procedure of the given name, the argument list can be omitted. Omit the parentheses too in this case.

In PostgreSQL, it's sufficient to list the input (including `INOUT`) arguments, because no two routines of the same name are allowed to share the same input-argument list. Moreover, the `DROP` command will not actually check that you wrote the types of `OUT` arguments correctly; so any arguments that are explicitly marked `OUT` are just noise. But writing them is recommendable for consistency with the corresponding `CREATE` command.

For compatibility with the SQL standard, it is also allowed to write all the argument data types (including those of `OUT` arguments) without any *argmode* markers. When this is done, the types of the procedure's `OUT` argument(s) *will* be verified against the command. This provision creates an ambiguity, in that when the argument list contains no *argmode* markers, it's unclear which rule is intended. The `DROP` command will attempt the lookup both ways, and will throw an error if two different procedures are found. To avoid the risk of such ambiguity, it's recommendable to write `IN` markers explicitly rather than letting them be defaulted, thus forcing the traditional PostgreSQL interpretation to be used.

The lookup rules just explained are also used by other commands that act on existing procedures, such as `ALTER PROCEDURE` and `COMMENT ON PROCEDURE`.

## Examples

If there is only one procedure `do_db_maintenance`, this command is sufficient to drop it:

```
DROP PROCEDURE do_db_maintenance;
```

Given this procedure definition:

```
CREATE PROCEDURE do_db_maintenance(IN target_schema text, OUT
  results text) ...
```

any one of these commands would work to drop it:

```
DROP PROCEDURE do_db_maintenance(IN target_schema text, OUT results
  text);
DROP PROCEDURE do_db_maintenance(IN text, OUT text);
DROP PROCEDURE do_db_maintenance(IN text);
DROP PROCEDURE do_db_maintenance(text);
DROP PROCEDURE do_db_maintenance(text, text); -- potentially
  ambiguous
```

However, the last example would be ambiguous if there is also, say,

```
CREATE PROCEDURE do_db_maintenance(IN target_schema text, IN
  options text) ...
```

## Compatibility

This command conforms to the SQL standard, with these PostgreSQL extensions:

- The standard only allows one procedure to be dropped per command.
- The `IF EXISTS` option is an extension.
- The ability to specify argument modes and names is an extension, and the lookup rules differ when modes are given.

## See Also

`CREATE PROCEDURE`, `ALTER PROCEDURE`, `DROP FUNCTION`, `DROP ROUTINE`

---

# DROP PUBLICATION

DROP PUBLICATION — remove a publication

## Synopsis

```
DROP PUBLICATION [ IF EXISTS ] name [, ...] [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

## Description

DROP PUBLICATION removes an existing publication from the database.

A publication can only be dropped by its owner or a superuser.

## Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the publication does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

*name*

The name of an existing publication.

CASCADE

RESTRICT

These key words do not have any effect, since there are no dependencies on publications.

## Examples

Drop a publication:

```
DROP PUBLICATION mypublication;
```

## Compatibility

DROP PUBLICATION is a PostgreSQL extension.

## See Also

CREATE PUBLICATION, ALTER PUBLICATION

---

# DROP ROLE

DROP ROLE — remove a database role

## Synopsis

```
DROP ROLE [ IF EXISTS ] name [, ...]
```

## Description

DROP ROLE removes the specified role(s). To drop a superuser role, you must be a superuser yourself; to drop non-superuser roles, you must have CREATEROLE privilege and have been granted ADMIN OPTION on the role.

A role cannot be removed if it is still referenced in any database of the cluster; an error will be raised if so. Before dropping the role, you must drop all the objects it owns (or reassign their ownership) and revoke any privileges the role has been granted on other objects. The REASSIGN OWNED and DROP OWNED commands can be useful for this purpose; see Section 22.4 for more discussion.

However, it is not necessary to remove role memberships involving the role; DROP ROLE automatically revokes any memberships of the target role in other roles, and of other roles in the target role. The other roles are not dropped nor otherwise affected.

## Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the role does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

*name*

The name of the role to remove.

## Notes

PostgreSQL includes a program dropuser that has the same functionality as this command (in fact, it calls this command) but can be run from the command shell.

## Examples

To drop a role:

```
DROP ROLE jonathan;
```

## Compatibility

The SQL standard defines DROP ROLE, but it allows only one role to be dropped at a time, and it specifies different privilege requirements than PostgreSQL uses.

## See Also

CREATE ROLE, ALTER ROLE, SET ROLE

---

# DROP ROUTINE

DROP ROUTINE — remove a routine

## Synopsis

```
DROP ROUTINE [ IF EXISTS ] name [ ( [ [ argmode ] [ argname  
    ] argtype [ , ... ] ) ] [ , ... ]  
    [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

## Description

DROP ROUTINE removes the definition of one or more existing routines. The term “routine” includes aggregate functions, normal functions, and procedures. See under DROP AGGREGATE, DROP FUNCTION, and DROP PROCEDURE for the description of the parameters, more examples, and further details.

## Notes

The lookup rules used by DROP ROUTINE are fundamentally the same as for DROP PROCEDURE; in particular, DROP ROUTINE shares that command's behavior of considering an argument list that has no *argmode* markers to be possibly using the SQL standard's definition that OUT arguments are included in the list. (DROP AGGREGATE and DROP FUNCTION do not do that.)

In some cases where the same name is shared by routines of different kinds, it is possible for DROP ROUTINE to fail with an ambiguity error when a more specific command (DROP FUNCTION, etc.) would work. Specifying the argument type list more carefully will also resolve such problems.

These lookup rules are also used by other commands that act on existing routines, such as ALTER ROUTINE and COMMENT ON ROUTINE.

## Examples

To drop the routine `foo` for type `integer`:

```
DROP ROUTINE foo(integer);
```

This command will work independent of whether `foo` is an aggregate, function, or procedure.

## Compatibility

This command conforms to the SQL standard, with these PostgreSQL extensions:

- The standard only allows one routine to be dropped per command.
- The IF EXISTS option is an extension.
- The ability to specify argument modes and names is an extension, and the lookup rules differ when modes are given.
- User-definable aggregate functions are an extension.

## See Also

DROP AGGREGATE, DROP FUNCTION, DROP PROCEDURE, ALTER ROUTINE

Note that there is no `CREATE ROUTINE` command.

---

# DROP RULE

DROP RULE — remove a rewrite rule

## Synopsis

```
DROP RULE [ IF EXISTS ] name ON table_name [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

## Description

DROP RULE drops a rewrite rule.

## Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the rule does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

*name*

The name of the rule to drop.

*table\_name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table or view that the rule applies to.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the rule, and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the rule if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

## Examples

To drop the rewrite rule `newrule`:

```
DROP RULE newrule ON mytable;
```

## Compatibility

DROP RULE is a PostgreSQL language extension, as is the entire query rewrite system.

## See Also

CREATE RULE, ALTER RULE



---

# DROP SCHEMA

DROP SCHEMA — remove a schema

## Synopsis

```
DROP SCHEMA [ IF EXISTS ] name [, ...] [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

## Description

DROP SCHEMA removes schemas from the database.

A schema can only be dropped by its owner or a superuser. Note that the owner can drop the schema (and thereby all contained objects) even if they do not own some of the objects within the schema.

## Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the schema does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

*name*

The name of a schema.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects (tables, functions, etc.) that are contained in the schema, and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the schema if it contains any objects. This is the default.

## Notes

Using the CASCADE option might make the command remove objects in other schemas besides the one(s) named.

## Examples

To remove schema `mystuff` from the database, along with everything it contains:

```
DROP SCHEMA mystuff CASCADE;
```

## Compatibility

DROP SCHEMA is fully conforming with the SQL standard, except that the standard only allows one schema to be dropped per command, and apart from the IF EXISTS option, which is a PostgreSQL extension.

## See Also

ALTER SCHEMA, CREATE SCHEMA

---

# DROP SEQUENCE

DROP SEQUENCE — remove a sequence

## Synopsis

```
DROP SEQUENCE [ IF EXISTS ] name [, ...] [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

## Description

DROP SEQUENCE removes sequence number generators. A sequence can only be dropped by its owner or a superuser.

## Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the sequence does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

*name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of a sequence.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the sequence, and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the sequence if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

## Examples

To remove the sequence `serial`:

```
DROP SEQUENCE serial;
```

## Compatibility

DROP SEQUENCE conforms to the SQL standard, except that the standard only allows one sequence to be dropped per command, and apart from the IF EXISTS option, which is a PostgreSQL extension.

## See Also

CREATE SEQUENCE, ALTER SEQUENCE

---

# DROP SERVER

DROP SERVER — remove a foreign server descriptor

## Synopsis

```
DROP SERVER [ IF EXISTS ] name [, ...] [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

## Description

DROP SERVER removes an existing foreign server descriptor. To execute this command, the current user must be the owner of the server.

## Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the server does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

*name*

The name of an existing server.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the server (such as user mappings), and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the server if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

## Examples

Drop a server `foo` if it exists:

```
DROP SERVER IF EXISTS foo;
```

## Compatibility

DROP SERVER conforms to ISO/IEC 9075-9 (SQL/MED). The IF EXISTS clause is a PostgreSQL extension.

## See Also

CREATE SERVER, ALTER SERVER

---

# DROP STATISTICS

DROP STATISTICS — remove extended statistics

## Synopsis

```
DROP STATISTICS [ IF EXISTS ] name [ , ... ] [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

## Description

DROP STATISTICS removes statistics object(s) from the database. Only the statistics object's owner, the schema owner, or a superuser can drop a statistics object.

## Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the statistics object does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

*name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the statistics object to drop.

CASCADE

RESTRICT

These key words do not have any effect, since there are no dependencies on statistics.

## Examples

To destroy two statistics objects in different schemas, without failing if they don't exist:

```
DROP STATISTICS IF EXISTS
    accounting.users_uid_creation,
    public.grants_user_role;
```

## Compatibility

There is no DROP STATISTICS command in the SQL standard.

## See Also

ALTER STATISTICS, CREATE STATISTICS

---

# DROP SUBSCRIPTION

DROP SUBSCRIPTION — remove a subscription

## Synopsis

```
DROP SUBSCRIPTION [ IF EXISTS ] name [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

## Description

DROP SUBSCRIPTION removes a subscription from the database cluster.

To execute this command the user must be the owner of the subscription.

DROP SUBSCRIPTION cannot be executed inside a transaction block if the subscription is associated with a replication slot. (You can use ALTER SUBSCRIPTION to unset the slot.)

## Parameters

*name*

The name of a subscription to be dropped.

CASCADE  
RESTRICT

These key words do not have any effect, since there are no dependencies on subscriptions.

## Notes

When dropping a subscription that is associated with a replication slot on the remote host (the normal state), DROP SUBSCRIPTION will connect to the remote host and try to drop the replication slot (and any remaining table synchronization slots) as part of its operation. This is necessary so that the resources allocated for the subscription on the remote host are released. If this fails, either because the remote host is not reachable or because the remote replication slot cannot be dropped or does not exist or never existed, the DROP SUBSCRIPTION command will fail. To proceed in this situation, first disable the subscription by executing ALTER SUBSCRIPTION ... DISABLE, and then disassociate it from the replication slot by executing ALTER SUBSCRIPTION ... SET (slot\_name = NONE). After that, DROP SUBSCRIPTION will no longer attempt any actions on a remote host. Note that if the remote replication slot still exists, it (and any related table synchronization slots) should then be dropped manually; otherwise it/they will continue to reserve WAL and might eventually cause the disk to fill up. See also Section 31.2.1.

If a subscription is associated with a replication slot, then DROP SUBSCRIPTION cannot be executed inside a transaction block.

## Examples

Drop a subscription:

```
DROP SUBSCRIPTION mysub;
```

## Compatibility

DROP SUBSCRIPTION is a PostgreSQL extension.

## See Also

CREATE SUBSCRIPTION, ALTER SUBSCRIPTION

---

# DROP TABLE

DROP TABLE — remove a table

## Synopsis

```
DROP TABLE [ IF EXISTS ] name [, ...] [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

## Description

DROP TABLE removes tables from the database. Only the table owner, the schema owner, and superuser can drop a table. To empty a table of rows without destroying the table, use DELETE or TRUNCATE.

DROP TABLE always removes any indexes, rules, triggers, and constraints that exist for the target table. However, to drop a table that is referenced by a view or a foreign-key constraint of another table, CASCADE must be specified. (CASCADE will remove a dependent view entirely, but in the foreign-key case it will only remove the foreign-key constraint, not the other table entirely.)

## Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the table does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

*name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table to drop.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the table (such as views), and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the table if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

## Examples

To destroy two tables, films and distributors:

```
DROP TABLE films, distributors;
```

## Compatibility

This command conforms to the SQL standard, except that the standard only allows one table to be dropped per command, and apart from the IF EXISTS option, which is a PostgreSQL extension.

## See Also

ALTER TABLE, CREATE TABLE

---

# DROP TABLESPACE

DROP TABLESPACE — remove a tablespace

## Synopsis

```
DROP TABLESPACE [ IF EXISTS ] name
```

## Description

DROP TABLESPACE removes a tablespace from the system.

A tablespace can only be dropped by its owner or a superuser. The tablespace must be empty of all database objects before it can be dropped. It is possible that objects in other databases might still reside in the tablespace even if no objects in the current database are using the tablespace. Also, if the tablespace is listed in the `temp_tablespaces` setting of any active session, the DROP might fail due to temporary files residing in the tablespace.

## Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the tablespace does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

*name*

The name of a tablespace.

## Notes

DROP TABLESPACE cannot be executed inside a transaction block.

## Examples

To remove tablespace `mystuff` from the system:

```
DROP TABLESPACE mystuff;
```

## Compatibility

DROP TABLESPACE is a PostgreSQL extension.

## See Also

CREATE TABLESPACE, ALTER TABLESPACE



---

# DROP TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION

DROP TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION — remove a text search configuration

## Synopsis

```
DROP TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION [ IF EXISTS ] name [ CASCADE |  
RESTRICT ]
```

## Description

DROP TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION drops an existing text search configuration. To execute this command you must be the owner of the configuration.

## Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the text search configuration does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

*name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing text search configuration.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the text search configuration, and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the text search configuration if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

## Examples

Remove the text search configuration `my_english`:

```
DROP TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION my_english;
```

This command will not succeed if there are any existing indexes that reference the configuration in `to_tsvector` calls. Add `CASCADE` to drop such indexes along with the text search configuration.

## Compatibility

There is no DROP TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION statement in the SQL standard.

## See Also

ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION, CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION

---

# DROP TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY

DROP TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY — remove a text search dictionary

## Synopsis

```
DROP TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY [ IF EXISTS ] name [ CASCADE |  
RESTRICT ]
```

## Description

DROP TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY drops an existing text search dictionary. To execute this command you must be the owner of the dictionary.

## Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the text search dictionary does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

*name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing text search dictionary.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the text search dictionary, and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the text search dictionary if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

## Examples

Remove the text search dictionary `english`:

```
DROP TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY english;
```

This command will not succeed if there are any existing text search configurations that use the dictionary. Add CASCADE to drop such configurations along with the dictionary.

## Compatibility

There is no DROP TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY statement in the SQL standard.

## See Also

ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY, CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY

---

# DROP TEXT SEARCH PARSER

DROP TEXT SEARCH PARSER — remove a text search parser

## Synopsis

```
DROP TEXT SEARCH PARSER [ IF EXISTS ] name [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

## Description

DROP TEXT SEARCH PARSER drops an existing text search parser. You must be a superuser to use this command.

## Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the text search parser does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

*name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing text search parser.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the text search parser, and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the text search parser if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

## Examples

Remove the text search parser `my_parser`:

```
DROP TEXT SEARCH PARSER my_parser;
```

This command will not succeed if there are any existing text search configurations that use the parser. Add CASCADE to drop such configurations along with the parser.

## Compatibility

There is no DROP TEXT SEARCH PARSER statement in the SQL standard.

## See Also

ALTER TEXT SEARCH PARSER, CREATE TEXT SEARCH PARSER

---

# DROP TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE

DROP TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE — remove a text search template

## Synopsis

```
DROP TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE [ IF EXISTS ] name [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

## Description

DROP TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE drops an existing text search template. You must be a superuser to use this command.

## Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the text search template does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

*name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing text search template.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the text search template, and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the text search template if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

## Examples

Remove the text search template thesaurus:

```
DROP TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE thesaurus;
```

This command will not succeed if there are any existing text search dictionaries that use the template. Add CASCADE to drop such dictionaries along with the template.

## Compatibility

There is no DROP TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE statement in the SQL standard.

## See Also

ALTER TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE, CREATE TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE

---

# DROP TRANSFORM

DROP TRANSFORM — remove a transform

## Synopsis

```
DROP TRANSFORM [ IF EXISTS ] FOR type_name LANGUAGE lang_name
[ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

## Description

DROP TRANSFORM removes a previously defined transform.

To be able to drop a transform, you must own the type and the language. These are the same privileges that are required to create a transform.

## Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the transform does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

*type\_name*

The name of the data type of the transform.

*lang\_name*

The name of the language of the transform.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the transform, and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the transform if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

## Examples

To drop the transform for type `hstore` and language `plpython3u`:

```
DROP TRANSFORM FOR hstore LANGUAGE plpython3u;
```

## Compatibility

This form of DROP TRANSFORM is a PostgreSQL extension. See CREATE TRANSFORM for details.

## See Also

CREATE TRANSFORM

---

# DROP TRIGGER

DROP TRIGGER — remove a trigger

## Synopsis

```
DROP TRIGGER [ IF EXISTS ] name ON table_name [ CASCADE |  
RESTRICT ]
```

## Description

DROP TRIGGER removes an existing trigger definition. To execute this command, the current user must be the owner of the table for which the trigger is defined.

## Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the trigger does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

*name*

The name of the trigger to remove.

*table\_name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table for which the trigger is defined.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the trigger, and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the trigger if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

## Examples

Destroy the trigger `if_dist_exists` on the table `films`:

```
DROP TRIGGER if_dist_exists ON films;
```

## Compatibility

The DROP TRIGGER statement in PostgreSQL is incompatible with the SQL standard. In the SQL standard, trigger names are not local to tables, so the command is simply DROP TRIGGER *name*.

## See Also

CREATE TRIGGER

---

# DROP TYPE

DROP TYPE — remove a data type

## Synopsis

```
DROP TYPE [ IF EXISTS ] name [, ...] [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

## Description

DROP TYPE removes a user-defined data type. Only the owner of a type can remove it.

## Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the type does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

*name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the data type to remove.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the type (such as table columns, functions, and operators), and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the type if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

## Examples

To remove the data type box:

```
DROP TYPE box;
```

## Compatibility

This command is similar to the corresponding command in the SQL standard, apart from the IF EXISTS option, which is a PostgreSQL extension. But note that much of the CREATE TYPE command and the data type extension mechanisms in PostgreSQL differ from the SQL standard.

## See Also

ALTER TYPE, CREATE TYPE

---

# DROP USER

DROP USER — remove a database role

## Synopsis

```
DROP USER [ IF EXISTS ] name [, ...]
```

## Description

DROP USER is simply an alternate spelling of DROP ROLE.

## Compatibility

The DROP USER statement is a PostgreSQL extension. The SQL standard leaves the definition of users to the implementation.

## See Also

DROP ROLE



---

# DROP USER MAPPING

DROP USER MAPPING — remove a user mapping for a foreign server

## Synopsis

```
DROP USER MAPPING [ IF EXISTS ] FOR { user_name | USER |  
CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER | PUBLIC } SERVER server_name
```

## Description

DROP USER MAPPING removes an existing user mapping from foreign server.

The owner of a foreign server can drop user mappings for that server for any user. Also, a user can drop a user mapping for their own user name if USAGE privilege on the server has been granted to the user.

## Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the user mapping does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

*user\_name*

User name of the mapping. CURRENT\_ROLE, CURRENT\_USER, and USER match the name of the current user. PUBLIC is used to match all present and future user names in the system.

*server\_name*

Server name of the user mapping.

## Examples

Drop a user mapping bob, server foo if it exists:

```
DROP USER MAPPING IF EXISTS FOR bob SERVER foo;
```

## Compatibility

DROP USER MAPPING conforms to ISO/IEC 9075-9 (SQL/MED). The IF EXISTS clause is a PostgreSQL extension.

## See Also

CREATE USER MAPPING, ALTER USER MAPPING

---

# DROP VIEW

DROP VIEW — remove a view

## Synopsis

```
DROP VIEW [ IF EXISTS ] name [, ...] [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

## Description

DROP VIEW drops an existing view. To execute this command you must be the owner of the view.

## Parameters

IF EXISTS

Do not throw an error if the view does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

*name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the view to remove.

CASCADE

Automatically drop objects that depend on the view (such as other views), and in turn all objects that depend on those objects (see Section 5.14).

RESTRICT

Refuse to drop the view if any objects depend on it. This is the default.

## Examples

This command will remove the view called `kinds`:

```
DROP VIEW kinds;
```

## Compatibility

This command conforms to the SQL standard, except that the standard only allows one view to be dropped per command, and apart from the IF EXISTS option, which is a PostgreSQL extension.

## See Also

ALTER VIEW, CREATE VIEW

---

# END

END — commit the current transaction

## Synopsis

```
END [ WORK | TRANSACTION ] [ AND [ NO ] CHAIN ]
```

## Description

END commits the current transaction. All changes made by the transaction become visible to others and are guaranteed to be durable if a crash occurs. This command is a PostgreSQL extension that is equivalent to COMMIT.

## Parameters

WORK  
TRANSACTION

Optional key words. They have no effect.

AND CHAIN

If AND CHAIN is specified, a new transaction is immediately started with the same transaction characteristics (see SET TRANSACTION) as the just finished one. Otherwise, no new transaction is started.

## Notes

Use ROLLBACK to abort a transaction.

Issuing END when not inside a transaction does no harm, but it will provoke a warning message.

## Examples

To commit the current transaction and make all changes permanent:

```
END ;
```

## Compatibility

END is a PostgreSQL extension that provides functionality equivalent to COMMIT, which is specified in the SQL standard.

## See Also

BEGIN, COMMIT, ROLLBACK

---

# EXECUTE

EXECUTE — execute a prepared statement

## Synopsis

```
EXECUTE name [ ( parameter [, ...] ) ]
```

## Description

EXECUTE is used to execute a previously prepared statement. Since prepared statements only exist for the duration of a session, the prepared statement must have been created by a PREPARE statement executed earlier in the current session.

If the PREPARE statement that created the statement specified some parameters, a compatible set of parameters must be passed to the EXECUTE statement, or else an error is raised. Note that (unlike functions) prepared statements are not overloaded based on the type or number of their parameters; the name of a prepared statement must be unique within a database session.

For more information on the creation and usage of prepared statements, see PREPARE.

## Parameters

*name*

The name of the prepared statement to execute.

*parameter*

The actual value of a parameter to the prepared statement. This must be an expression yielding a value that is compatible with the data type of this parameter, as was determined when the prepared statement was created.

## Outputs

The command tag returned by EXECUTE is that of the prepared statement, and not EXECUTE.

## Examples

Examples are given in Examples in the PREPARE documentation.

## Compatibility

The SQL standard includes an EXECUTE statement, but it is only for use in embedded SQL. This version of the EXECUTE statement also uses a somewhat different syntax.

## See Also

DEALLOCATE, PREPARE

---

# EXPLAIN

EXPLAIN — show the execution plan of a statement

## Synopsis

```
EXPLAIN [ ( option [, ...] ) ] statement
EXPLAIN [ ANALYZE ] [ VERBOSE ] statement
```

where *option* can be one of:

```
ANALYZE [ boolean ]
VERBOSE [ boolean ]
COSTS [ boolean ]
SETTINGS [ boolean ]
GENERIC_PLAN [ boolean ]
BUFFERS [ boolean ]
WAL [ boolean ]
TIMING [ boolean ]
SUMMARY [ boolean ]
FORMAT { TEXT | XML | JSON | YAML }
```

## Description

This command displays the execution plan that the PostgreSQL planner generates for the supplied statement. The execution plan shows how the table(s) referenced by the statement will be scanned — by plain sequential scan, index scan, etc. — and if multiple tables are referenced, what join algorithms will be used to bring together the required rows from each input table.

The most critical part of the display is the estimated statement execution cost, which is the planner's guess at how long it will take to run the statement (measured in cost units that are arbitrary, but conventionally mean disk page fetches). Actually two numbers are shown: the start-up cost before the first row can be returned, and the total cost to return all the rows. For most queries the total cost is what matters, but in contexts such as a subquery in `EXISTS`, the planner will choose the smallest start-up cost instead of the smallest total cost (since the executor will stop after getting one row, anyway). Also, if you limit the number of rows to return with a `LIMIT` clause, the planner makes an appropriate interpolation between the endpoint costs to estimate which plan is really the cheapest.

The `ANALYZE` option causes the statement to be actually executed, not only planned. Then actual run time statistics are added to the display, including the total elapsed time expended within each plan node (in milliseconds) and the total number of rows it actually returned. This is useful for seeing whether the planner's estimates are close to reality.

### Important

Keep in mind that the statement is actually executed when the `ANALYZE` option is used. Although `EXPLAIN` will discard any output that a `SELECT` would return, other side effects of the statement will happen as usual. If you wish to use `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` on an `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, `MERGE`, `CREATE TABLE AS`, or `EXECUTE` statement without letting the command affect your data, use this approach:

```
BEGIN;
EXPLAIN ANALYZE ...;
```

`ROLLBACK ;`

Only the `ANALYZE` and `VERBOSE` options can be specified, and only in that order, without surrounding the option list in parentheses. Prior to PostgreSQL 9.0, the unparenthesized syntax was the only one supported. It is expected that all new options will be supported only in the parenthesized syntax.

## Parameters

### ANALYZE

Carry out the command and show actual run times and other statistics. This parameter defaults to `FALSE`.

### VERBOSE

Display additional information regarding the plan. Specifically, include the output column list for each node in the plan tree, schema-qualify table and function names, always label variables in expressions with their range table alias, and always print the name of each trigger for which statistics are displayed. The query identifier will also be displayed if one has been computed, see `compute_query_id` for more details. This parameter defaults to `FALSE`.

### COSTS

Include information on the estimated startup and total cost of each plan node, as well as the estimated number of rows and the estimated width of each row. This parameter defaults to `TRUE`.

### SETTINGS

Include information on configuration parameters. Specifically, include options affecting query planning with value different from the built-in default value. This parameter defaults to `FALSE`.

### GENERIC\_PLAN

Allow the statement to contain parameter placeholders like `$1`, and generate a generic plan that does not depend on the values of those parameters. See `PREPARE` for details about generic plans and the types of statement that support parameters. This parameter cannot be used together with `ANALYZE`. It defaults to `FALSE`.

### BUFFERS

Include information on buffer usage. Specifically, include the number of shared blocks hit, read, dirtied, and written, the number of local blocks hit, read, dirtied, and written, the number of temp blocks read and written, and the time spent reading and writing data file blocks and temporary file blocks (in milliseconds) if `track_io_timing` is enabled. A *hit* means that a read was avoided because the block was found already in cache when needed. Shared blocks contain data from regular tables and indexes; local blocks contain data from temporary tables and indexes; while temporary blocks contain short-term working data used in sorts, hashes, Materialize plan nodes, and similar cases. The number of blocks *dirtied* indicates the number of previously unmodified blocks that were changed by this query; while the number of blocks *written* indicates the number of previously-dirtied blocks evicted from cache by this backend during query processing. The number of blocks shown for an upper-level node includes those used by all its child nodes. In text format, only non-zero values are printed. This parameter defaults to `FALSE`.

### WAL

Include information on WAL record generation. Specifically, include the number of records, number of full page images (fpi) and the amount of WAL generated in bytes. In text format, only non-zero values are printed. This parameter may only be used when `ANALYZE` is also enabled. It defaults to `FALSE`.

**TIMING**

Include actual startup time and time spent in each node in the output. The overhead of repeatedly reading the system clock can slow down the query significantly on some systems, so it may be useful to set this parameter to `FALSE` when only actual row counts, and not exact times, are needed. Run time of the entire statement is always measured, even when node-level timing is turned off with this option. This parameter may only be used when `ANALYZE` is also enabled. It defaults to `TRUE`.

**SUMMARY**

Include summary information (e.g., totaled timing information) after the query plan. Summary information is included by default when `ANALYZE` is used but otherwise is not included by default, but can be enabled using this option. Planning time in `EXPLAIN EXECUTE` includes the time required to fetch the plan from the cache and the time required for re-planning, if necessary.

**FORMAT**

Specify the output format, which can be `TEXT`, `XML`, `JSON`, or `YAML`. Non-text output contains the same information as the text output format, but is easier for programs to parse. This parameter defaults to `TEXT`.

*boolean*

Specifies whether the selected option should be turned on or off. You can write `TRUE`, `ON`, or `1` to enable the option, and `FALSE`, `OFF`, or `0` to disable it. The *boolean* value can also be omitted, in which case `TRUE` is assumed.

*statement*

Any `SELECT`, `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, `MERGE`, `VALUES`, `EXECUTE`, `DECLARE`, `CREATE TABLE AS`, or `CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW AS` statement, whose execution plan you wish to see.

## Outputs

The command's result is a textual description of the plan selected for the *statement*, optionally annotated with execution statistics. Section 14.1 describes the information provided.

## Notes

In order to allow the PostgreSQL query planner to make reasonably informed decisions when optimizing queries, the `pg_statistic` data should be up-to-date for all tables used in the query. Normally the autovacuum daemon will take care of that automatically. But if a table has recently had substantial changes in its contents, you might need to do a manual `ANALYZE` rather than wait for autovacuum to catch up with the changes.

In order to measure the run-time cost of each node in the execution plan, the current implementation of `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` adds profiling overhead to query execution. As a result, running `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` on a query can sometimes take significantly longer than executing the query normally. The amount of overhead depends on the nature of the query, as well as the platform being used. The worst case occurs for plan nodes that in themselves require very little time per execution, and on machines that have relatively slow operating system calls for obtaining the time of day.

## Examples

To show the plan for a simple query on a table with a single integer column and 10000 rows:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM foo;
```

## QUERY PLAN

```
-----  
Seq Scan on foo  (cost=0.00..155.00 rows=10000 width=4)  
(1 row)
```

Here is the same query, with JSON output formatting:

```
EXPLAIN (FORMAT JSON) SELECT * FROM foo;  
QUERY PLAN
```

```
-----  
[                                                                    +  
  {                                                                    +  
    "Plan": {                                                            +  
      "Node Type": "Seq Scan",+  
      "Relation Name": "foo", +  
      "Alias": "foo",          +  
      "Startup Cost": 0.00,    +  
      "Total Cost": 155.00,   +  
      "Plan Rows": 10000,     +  
      "Plan Width": 4         +  
    }                                                                    +  
  }                                                                    +  
]                                                                    +  
(1 row)
```

If there is an index and we use a query with an indexable WHERE condition, EXPLAIN might show a different plan:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM foo WHERE i = 4;
```

## QUERY PLAN

```
-----  
Index Scan using fi on foo  (cost=0.00..5.98 rows=1 width=4)  
  Index Cond: (i = 4)  
(2 rows)
```

Here is the same query, but in YAML format:

```
EXPLAIN (FORMAT YAML) SELECT * FROM foo WHERE i='4';  
QUERY PLAN
```

```
-----  
- Plan:                                                                    +  
  Node Type: "Index Scan"  +  
  Scan Direction: "Forward"+  
  Index Name: "fi"         +  
  Relation Name: "foo"     +  
  Alias: "foo"             +  
  Startup Cost: 0.00       +  
  Total Cost: 5.98         +  
  Plan Rows: 1             +  
  Plan Width: 4            +  
  Index Cond: "(i = 4)"    +  
(1 row)
```

XML format is left as an exercise for the reader.



Here is the same plan with cost estimates suppressed:

```
EXPLAIN (COSTS FALSE) SELECT * FROM foo WHERE i = 4;
```

```

          QUERY PLAN
-----
Index Scan using fi on foo
    Index Cond: (i = 4)
(2 rows)
```

Here is an example of a query plan for a query using an aggregate function:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT sum(i) FROM foo WHERE i < 10;
```

```

          QUERY PLAN
-----
--
Aggregate  (cost=23.93..23.93 rows=1 width=4)
  -> Index Scan using fi on foo  (cost=0.00..23.92 rows=6
    width=4)
        Index Cond: (i < 10)
(3 rows)
```

Here is an example of using EXPLAIN EXECUTE to display the execution plan for a prepared query:

```
PREPARE query(int, int) AS SELECT sum(bar) FROM test
    WHERE id > $1 AND id < $2
    GROUP BY foo;
```

```
EXPLAIN ANALYZE EXECUTE query(100, 200);
```

```

          QUERY PLAN
-----
HashAggregate  (cost=10.77..10.87 rows=10 width=12) (actual
time=0.043..0.044 rows=10 loops=1)
  Group Key: foo
    Batches: 1  Memory Usage: 24kB
    -> Index Scan using test_pkey on test  (cost=0.29..10.27
      rows=99 width=8) (actual time=0.009..0.025 rows=99 loops=1)
          Index Cond: ((id > 100) AND (id < 200))
Planning Time: 0.244 ms
Execution Time: 0.073 ms
(7 rows)
```

Of course, the specific numbers shown here depend on the actual contents of the tables involved. Also note that the numbers, and even the selected query strategy, might vary between PostgreSQL releases due to planner improvements. In addition, the ANALYZE command uses random sampling to estimate data statistics; therefore, it is possible for cost estimates to change after a fresh run of ANALYZE, even if the actual distribution of data in the table has not changed.

Notice that the previous example showed a “custom” plan for the specific parameter values given in EXECUTE. We might also wish to see the generic plan for a parameterized query, which can be done with GENERIC\_PLAN:

```
EXPLAIN (GENERIC_PLAN)
  SELECT sum(bar) FROM test
     WHERE id > $1 AND id < $2
     GROUP BY foo;
```

QUERY PLAN

```
-----
HashAggregate  (cost=26.79..26.89 rows=10 width=12)
  Group Key: foo
    ->  Index Scan using test_pkey on test  (cost=0.29..24.29
rows=500 width=8)
      Index Cond: ((id > $1) AND (id < $2))
(4 rows)
```

In this case the parser correctly inferred that \$1 and \$2 should have the same data type as id, so the lack of parameter type information from PREPARE was not a problem. In other cases it might be necessary to explicitly specify types for the parameter symbols, which can be done by casting them, for example:

```
EXPLAIN (GENERIC_PLAN)
  SELECT sum(bar) FROM test
     WHERE id > $1::integer AND id < $2::integer
     GROUP BY foo;
```

## Compatibility

There is no EXPLAIN statement defined in the SQL standard.

## See Also

ANALYZE

---

# FETCH

FETCH — retrieve rows from a query using a cursor

## Synopsis

```
FETCH [ direction ] [ FROM | IN ] cursor_name
```

where *direction* can be one of:

```
NEXT  
PRIOR  
FIRST  
LAST  
ABSOLUTE count  
RELATIVE count  
count  
ALL  
FORWARD  
FORWARD count  
FORWARD ALL  
BACKWARD  
BACKWARD count  
BACKWARD ALL
```

## Description

FETCH retrieves rows using a previously-created cursor.

A cursor has an associated position, which is used by FETCH. The cursor position can be before the first row of the query result, on any particular row of the result, or after the last row of the result. When created, a cursor is positioned before the first row. After fetching some rows, the cursor is positioned on the row most recently retrieved. If FETCH runs off the end of the available rows then the cursor is left positioned after the last row, or before the first row if fetching backward. FETCH ALL or FETCH BACKWARD ALL will always leave the cursor positioned after the last row or before the first row.

The forms NEXT, PRIOR, FIRST, LAST, ABSOLUTE, RELATIVE fetch a single row after moving the cursor appropriately. If there is no such row, an empty result is returned, and the cursor is left positioned before the first row or after the last row as appropriate.

The forms using FORWARD and BACKWARD retrieve the indicated number of rows moving in the forward or backward direction, leaving the cursor positioned on the last-returned row (or after/before all rows, if the *count* exceeds the number of rows available).

RELATIVE 0, FORWARD 0, and BACKWARD 0 all request fetching the current row without moving the cursor, that is, re-fetching the most recently fetched row. This will succeed unless the cursor is positioned before the first row or after the last row; in which case, no row is returned.

### Note

This page describes usage of cursors at the SQL command level. If you are trying to use cursors inside a PL/pgSQL function, the rules are different — see Section 43.7.3.

## Parameters

*direction*

*direction* defines the fetch direction and number of rows to fetch. It can be one of the following:

NEXT

Fetch the next row. This is the default if *direction* is omitted.

PRIOR

Fetch the prior row.

FIRST

Fetch the first row of the query (same as ABSOLUTE 1).

LAST

Fetch the last row of the query (same as ABSOLUTE -1).

ABSOLUTE *count*

Fetch the *count*'th row of the query, or the  $\text{abs}(\text{count})$ 'th row from the end if *count* is negative. Position before first row or after last row if *count* is out of range; in particular, ABSOLUTE 0 positions before the first row.

RELATIVE *count*

Fetch the *count*'th succeeding row, or the  $\text{abs}(\text{count})$ 'th prior row if *count* is negative. RELATIVE 0 re-fetches the current row, if any.

*count*

Fetch the next *count* rows (same as FORWARD *count*).

ALL

Fetch all remaining rows (same as FORWARD ALL).

FORWARD

Fetch the next row (same as NEXT).

FORWARD *count*

Fetch the next *count* rows. FORWARD 0 re-fetches the current row.

FORWARD ALL

Fetch all remaining rows.

BACKWARD

Fetch the prior row (same as PRIOR).

BACKWARD *count*

Fetch the prior *count* rows (scanning backwards). BACKWARD 0 re-fetches the current row.

BACKWARD ALL

Fetch all prior rows (scanning backwards).

*count*

*count* is a possibly-signed integer constant, determining the location or number of rows to fetch. For FORWARD and BACKWARD cases, specifying a negative *count* is equivalent to changing the sense of FORWARD and BACKWARD.

*cursor\_name*

An open cursor's name.

## Outputs

On successful completion, a FETCH command returns a command tag of the form

FETCH *count*

The *count* is the number of rows fetched (possibly zero). Note that in psql, the command tag will not actually be displayed, since psql displays the fetched rows instead.

## Notes

The cursor should be declared with the SCROLL option if one intends to use any variants of FETCH other than FETCH NEXT or FETCH FORWARD with a positive count. For simple queries PostgreSQL will allow backwards fetch from cursors not declared with SCROLL, but this behavior is best not relied on. If the cursor is declared with NO SCROLL, no backward fetches are allowed.

ABSOLUTE fetches are not any faster than navigating to the desired row with a relative move: the underlying implementation must traverse all the intermediate rows anyway. Negative absolute fetches are even worse: the query must be read to the end to find the last row, and then traversed backward from there. However, rewinding to the start of the query (as with FETCH ABSOLUTE 0) is fast.

DECLARE is used to define a cursor. Use MOVE to change cursor position without retrieving data.

## Examples

The following example traverses a table using a cursor:

```
BEGIN WORK;

-- Set up a cursor:
DECLARE liahona SCROLL CURSOR FOR SELECT * FROM films;

-- Fetch the first 5 rows in the cursor liahona:
FETCH FORWARD 5 FROM liahona;
```

code len	title	did	date_prod	kind
BL101 01:44	The Third Man	101	1949-12-23	Drama
BL102 01:43	The African Queen	101	1951-08-11	Romantic

```

JL201 | Une Femme est une Femme | 102 | 1961-03-12 | Romantic |
01:25
P_301 | Vertigo | 103 | 1958-11-14 | Action |
02:08
P_302 | Becket | 103 | 1964-02-03 | Drama |
02:28

-- Fetch the previous row:
FETCH PRIOR FROM liahona;

code | title | did | date_prod | kind | len
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----
P_301 | Vertigo | 103 | 1958-11-14 | Action | 02:08

-- Close the cursor and end the transaction:
CLOSE liahona;
COMMIT WORK;
```

## Compatibility

The SQL standard defines `FETCH` for use in embedded SQL only. The variant of `FETCH` described here returns the data as if it were a `SELECT` result rather than placing it in host variables. Other than this point, `FETCH` is fully upward-compatible with the SQL standard.

The `FETCH` forms involving `FORWARD` and `BACKWARD`, as well as the forms `FETCH count` and `FETCH ALL`, in which `FORWARD` is implicit, are PostgreSQL extensions.

The SQL standard allows only `FROM` preceding the cursor name; the option to use `IN`, or to leave them out altogether, is an extension.

## See Also

`CLOSE`, `DECLARE`, `MOVE`

---

# GRANT

GRANT — define access privileges

## Synopsis

```
GRANT { { SELECT | INSERT | UPDATE | DELETE | TRUNCATE | REFERENCES
| TRIGGER }
    [, ...] | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON { [ TABLE ] table_name [, ...]
        | ALL TABLES IN SCHEMA schema_name [, ...] }
    TO role_specification [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]
    [ GRANTED BY role_specification ]

GRANT { { SELECT | INSERT | UPDATE | REFERENCES } ( column_name
[, ...] )
    [, ...] | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] ( column_name [, ...] ) }
    ON [ TABLE ] table_name [, ...]
    TO role_specification [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]
    [ GRANTED BY role_specification ]

GRANT { { USAGE | SELECT | UPDATE }
    [, ...] | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON { SEQUENCE sequence_name [, ...]
        | ALL SEQUENCES IN SCHEMA schema_name [, ...] }
    TO role_specification [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]
    [ GRANTED BY role_specification ]

GRANT { { CREATE | CONNECT | TEMPORARY | TEMP } [, ...] | ALL
    [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON DATABASE database_name [, ...]
    TO role_specification [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]
    [ GRANTED BY role_specification ]

GRANT { USAGE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON DOMAIN domain_name [, ...]
    TO role_specification [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]
    [ GRANTED BY role_specification ]

GRANT { USAGE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER fdw_name [, ...]
    TO role_specification [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]
    [ GRANTED BY role_specification ]

GRANT { USAGE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON FOREIGN SERVER server_name [, ...]
    TO role_specification [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]
    [ GRANTED BY role_specification ]

GRANT { EXECUTE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON { { FUNCTION | PROCEDURE | ROUTINE } routine_name
    [ ( [ [ argmode ] [ arg_name ] arg_type [, ...] ] ) ] [, ...]
        | ALL { FUNCTIONS | PROCEDURES | ROUTINES } IN
    SCHEMA schema_name [, ...] }
```

```
TO role_specification [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]
[ GRANTED BY role_specification ]

GRANT { USAGE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
ON LANGUAGE lang_name [, ...]
TO role_specification [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]
[ GRANTED BY role_specification ]

GRANT { { SELECT | UPDATE } [, ...] | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
ON LARGE OBJECT loid [, ...]
TO role_specification [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]
[ GRANTED BY role_specification ]

GRANT { { SET | ALTER SYSTEM } [, ...] | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
ON PARAMETER configuration_parameter [, ...]
TO role_specification [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]
[ GRANTED BY role_specification ]

GRANT { { CREATE | USAGE } [, ...] | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
ON SCHEMA schema_name [, ...]
TO role_specification [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]
[ GRANTED BY role_specification ]

GRANT { CREATE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
ON TABLESPACE tablespace_name [, ...]
TO role_specification [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]
[ GRANTED BY role_specification ]

GRANT { USAGE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
ON TYPE type_name [, ...]
TO role_specification [, ...] [ WITH GRANT OPTION ]
[ GRANTED BY role_specification ]

GRANT role_name [, ...] TO role_specification [, ...]
[ WITH { ADMIN | INHERIT | SET } { OPTION | TRUE | FALSE } ]
[ GRANTED BY role_specification ]
```

where *role\_specification* can be:

```
[ GROUP ] role_name
| PUBLIC
| CURRENT_ROLE
| CURRENT_USER
| SESSION_USER
```

## Description

The GRANT command has two basic variants: one that grants privileges on a database object (table, column, view, foreign table, sequence, database, foreign-data wrapper, foreign server, function, procedure, procedural language, large object, configuration parameter, schema, tablespace, or type), and one that grants membership in a role. These variants are similar in many ways, but they are different enough to be described separately.

## GRANT on Database Objects

This variant of the GRANT command gives specific privileges on a database object to one or more roles. These privileges are added to those already granted, if any.



The key word `PUBLIC` indicates that the privileges are to be granted to all roles, including those that might be created later. `PUBLIC` can be thought of as an implicitly defined group that always includes all roles. Any particular role will have the sum of privileges granted directly to it, privileges granted to any role it is presently a member of, and privileges granted to `PUBLIC`.

If `WITH GRANT OPTION` is specified, the recipient of the privilege can in turn grant it to others. Without a grant option, the recipient cannot do that. Grant options cannot be granted to `PUBLIC`.

If `GRANTED BY` is specified, the specified grantor must be the current user. This clause is currently present in this form only for SQL compatibility.

There is no need to grant privileges to the owner of an object (usually the user that created it), as the owner has all privileges by default. (The owner could, however, choose to revoke some of their own privileges for safety.)

The right to drop an object, or to alter its definition in any way, is not treated as a grantable privilege; it is inherent in the owner, and cannot be granted or revoked. (However, a similar effect can be obtained by granting or revoking membership in the role that owns the object; see below.) The owner implicitly has all grant options for the object, too.

The possible privileges are:

`SELECT`  
`INSERT`  
`UPDATE`  
`DELETE`  
`TRUNCATE`  
`REFERENCES`  
`TRIGGER`  
`CREATE`  
`CONNECT`  
`TEMPORARY`  
`EXECUTE`  
`USAGE`  
`SET`  
`ALTER SYSTEM`

Specific types of privileges, as defined in Section 5.7.

`TEMP`

Alternative spelling for `TEMPORARY`.

`ALL PRIVILEGES`

Grant all of the privileges available for the object's type. The `PRIVILEGES` key word is optional in PostgreSQL, though it is required by strict SQL.

The `FUNCTION` syntax works for plain functions, aggregate functions, and window functions, but not for procedures; use `PROCEDURE` for those. Alternatively, use `ROUTINE` to refer to a function, aggregate function, window function, or procedure regardless of its precise type.

There is also an option to grant privileges on all objects of the same type within one or more schemas. This functionality is currently supported only for tables, sequences, functions, and procedures. `ALL TABLES` also affects views and foreign tables, just like the specific-object `GRANT` command. `ALL FUNCTIONS` also affects aggregate and window functions, but not procedures, again just like the specific-object `GRANT` command. Use `ALL ROUTINES` to include procedures.

## GRANT on Roles

This variant of the `GRANT` command grants membership in a role to one or more other roles, and the modification of membership options `SET`, `INHERIT`, and `ADMIN`; see Section 22.3 for details.

Membership in a role is significant because it potentially allows access to the privileges granted to a role to each of its members, and potentially also the ability to make changes to the role itself. However, the actual permissions conferred depend on the options associated with the grant. To modify that options of an existing membership, simply specify the membership with updated option values.

Each of the options described below can be set to either `TRUE` or `FALSE`. The keyword `OPTION` is accepted as a synonym for `TRUE`, so that `WITH ADMIN OPTION` is a synonym for `WITH ADMIN TRUE`. When altering an existing membership the omission of an option results in the current value being retained.

The `ADMIN` option allows the member to in turn grant membership in the role to others, and revoke membership in the role as well. Without the admin option, ordinary users cannot do that. A role is not considered to hold `WITH ADMIN OPTION` on itself. Database superusers can grant or revoke membership in any role to anyone. This option defaults to `FALSE`.

The `INHERIT` option controls the inheritance status of the new membership; see Section 22.3 for details on inheritance. If it is set to `TRUE`, it causes the new member to inherit from the granted role. If set to `FALSE`, the new member does not inherit. If unspecified when create a new role membership this defaults to the inheritance attribute of the role being added.

The `SET` option, if it is set to `TRUE`, allows the member to change to the granted role using the `SET ROLE` command. If a role is an indirect member of another role, it can use `SET ROLE` to change to that role only if there is a chain of grants each of which has `SET TRUE`. This option defaults to `TRUE`.

To create an object owned by another role or give ownership of an existing object to another role, you must have the ability to `SET ROLE` to that role; otherwise, commands such as `ALTER . . . OWNER TO` or `CREATE DATABASE . . . OWNER` will fail. However, a user who inherits the privileges of a role but does not have the ability to `SET ROLE` to that role may be able to obtain full access to the role by manipulating existing objects owned by that role (e.g. they could redefine an existing function to act as a Trojan horse). Therefore, if a role's privileges are to be inherited but should not be accessible via `SET ROLE`, it should not own any SQL objects.

If `GRANTED BY` is specified, the grant is recorded as having been done by the specified role. A user can only attribute a grant to another role if they possess the privileges of that role. The role recorded as the grantor must have `ADMIN OPTION` on the target role, unless it is the bootstrap superuser. When a grant is recorded as having a grantor other than the bootstrap superuser, it depends on the grantor continuing to possess `ADMIN OPTION` on the role; so, if `ADMIN OPTION` is revoked, dependent grants must be revoked as well.

Unlike the case with privileges, membership in a role cannot be granted to `PUBLIC`. Note also that this form of the command does not allow the noise word `GROUP` in *role\_specification*.

## Notes

The `REVOKE` command is used to revoke access privileges.

Since PostgreSQL 8.1, the concepts of users and groups have been unified into a single kind of entity called a role. It is therefore no longer necessary to use the keyword `GROUP` to identify whether a grantee is a user or a group. `GROUP` is still allowed in the command, but it is a noise word.

A user may perform `SELECT`, `INSERT`, etc. on a column if they hold that privilege for either the specific column or its whole table. Granting the privilege at the table level and then revoking it for one column will not do what one might wish: the table-level grant is unaffected by a column-level operation.

When a non-owner of an object attempts to `GRANT` privileges on the object, the command will fail outright if the user has no privileges whatsoever on the object. As long as some privilege is available, the command will proceed, but it will grant only those privileges for which the user has grant options. The `GRANT ALL PRIVILEGES` forms will issue a warning message if no grant options are held,

while the other forms will issue a warning if grant options for any of the privileges specifically named in the command are not held. (In principle these statements apply to the object owner as well, but since the owner is always treated as holding all grant options, the cases can never occur.)

It should be noted that database superusers can access all objects regardless of object privilege settings. This is comparable to the rights of `root` in a Unix system. As with `root`, it's unwise to operate as a superuser except when absolutely necessary.

If a superuser chooses to issue a `GRANT` or `REVOKE` command, the command is performed as though it were issued by the owner of the affected object. In particular, privileges granted via such a command will appear to have been granted by the object owner. (For role membership, the membership appears to have been granted by the bootstrap superuser.)

`GRANT` and `REVOKE` can also be done by a role that is not the owner of the affected object, but is a member of the role that owns the object, or is a member of a role that holds privileges `WITH GRANT OPTION` on the object. In this case the privileges will be recorded as having been granted by the role that actually owns the object or holds the privileges `WITH GRANT OPTION`. For example, if table `t1` is owned by role `g1`, of which role `u1` is a member, then `u1` can grant privileges on `t1` to `u2`, but those privileges will appear to have been granted directly by `g1`. Any other member of role `g1` could revoke them later.

If the role executing `GRANT` holds the required privileges indirectly via more than one role membership path, it is unspecified which containing role will be recorded as having done the grant. In such cases it is best practice to use `SET ROLE` to become the specific role you want to do the `GRANT` as.

Granting permission on a table does not automatically extend permissions to any sequences used by the table, including sequences tied to `SERIAL` columns. Permissions on sequences must be set separately.

See Section 5.7 for more information about specific privilege types, as well as how to inspect objects' privileges.

## Examples

Grant insert privilege to all users on table `films`:

```
GRANT INSERT ON films TO PUBLIC;
```

Grant all available privileges to user `manuel` on view `kinds`:

```
GRANT ALL PRIVILEGES ON kinds TO manuel;
```

Note that while the above will indeed grant all privileges if executed by a superuser or the owner of `kinds`, when executed by someone else it will only grant those permissions for which the someone else has grant options.

Grant membership in role `admins` to user `joe`:

```
GRANT admins TO joe;
```

## Compatibility

According to the SQL standard, the `PRIVILEGES` key word in `ALL PRIVILEGES` is required. The SQL standard does not support setting the privileges on more than one object per command.

PostgreSQL allows an object owner to revoke their own ordinary privileges: for example, a table owner can make the table read-only to themselves by revoking their own `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, and `TRUNCATE` privileges. This is not possible according to the SQL standard. The reason is that

PostgreSQL treats the owner's privileges as having been granted by the owner to themselves; therefore they can revoke them too. In the SQL standard, the owner's privileges are granted by an assumed entity “\_SYSTEM”. Not being “\_SYSTEM”, the owner cannot revoke these rights.

According to the SQL standard, grant options can be granted to PUBLIC; PostgreSQL only supports granting grant options to roles.

The SQL standard allows the GRANTED BY option to specify only CURRENT\_USER or CURRENT\_ROLE. The other variants are PostgreSQL extensions.

The SQL standard provides for a USAGE privilege on other kinds of objects: character sets, collations, translations.

In the SQL standard, sequences only have a USAGE privilege, which controls the use of the NEXT VALUE FOR expression, which is equivalent to the function nextval in PostgreSQL. The sequence privileges SELECT and UPDATE are PostgreSQL extensions. The application of the sequence USAGE privilege to the currval function is also a PostgreSQL extension (as is the function itself).

Privileges on databases, tablespaces, schemas, languages, and configuration parameters are PostgreSQL extensions.

## See Also

REVOKE, ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES

---

# IMPORT FOREIGN SCHEMA

IMPORT FOREIGN SCHEMA — import table definitions from a foreign server

## Synopsis

```
IMPORT FOREIGN SCHEMA remote_schema
    [ { LIMIT TO | EXCEPT } ( table_name [, ...] ) ]
FROM SERVER server_name
INTO local_schema
[ OPTIONS ( option 'value' [, ...] ) ]
```

## Description

IMPORT FOREIGN SCHEMA creates foreign tables that represent tables existing on a foreign server. The new foreign tables will be owned by the user issuing the command and are created with the correct column definitions and options to match the remote tables.

By default, all tables and views existing in a particular schema on the foreign server are imported. Optionally, the list of tables can be limited to a specified subset, or specific tables can be excluded. The new foreign tables are all created in the target schema, which must already exist.

To use IMPORT FOREIGN SCHEMA, the user must have USAGE privilege on the foreign server, as well as CREATE privilege on the target schema.

## Parameters

*remote\_schema*

The remote schema to import from. The specific meaning of a remote schema depends on the foreign data wrapper in use.

LIMIT TO ( *table\_name* [, ...] )

Import only foreign tables matching one of the given table names. Other tables existing in the foreign schema will be ignored.

EXCEPT ( *table\_name* [, ...] )

Exclude specified foreign tables from the import. All tables existing in the foreign schema will be imported except the ones listed here.

*server\_name*

The foreign server to import from.

*local\_schema*

The schema in which the imported foreign tables will be created.

OPTIONS ( *option* 'value' [, ...] )

Options to be used during the import. The allowed option names and values are specific to each foreign data wrapper.

## Examples

Import table definitions from a remote schema `foreign_films` on server `film_server`, creating the foreign tables in local schema `films`:

```
IMPORT FOREIGN SCHEMA foreign_films
  FROM SERVER film_server INTO films;
```

As above, but import only the two tables `actors` and `directors` (if they exist):

```
IMPORT FOREIGN SCHEMA foreign_films LIMIT TO (actors, directors)
  FROM SERVER film_server INTO films;
```

## Compatibility

The `IMPORT FOREIGN SCHEMA` command conforms to the SQL standard, except that the `OPTIONS` clause is a PostgreSQL extension.

## See Also

`CREATE FOREIGN TABLE`, `CREATE SERVER`

---

# INSERT

INSERT — create new rows in a table

## Synopsis

```
[ WITH [ RECURSIVE ] with_query [, ...] ]
INSERT INTO table_name [ AS alias ] [ ( column_name [, ...] ) ]
    [ OVERRIDING { SYSTEM | USER } VALUE ]
    { DEFAULT VALUES | VALUES ( { expression | DEFAULT } [, ...] )
    [, ...] | query }
    [ ON CONFLICT [ conflict_target ] conflict_action ]
    [ RETURNING * | output_expression [ [ AS ] output_name ]
    [, ...] ]
```

where *conflict\_target* can be one of:

```
( { index_column_name | ( index_expression
) } [ COLLATE collation ] [ opclass ] [, ...] )
[ WHERE index_predicate ]
ON CONSTRAINT constraint_name
```

and *conflict\_action* is one of:

```
DO NOTHING
DO UPDATE SET { column_name = { expression | DEFAULT } |
                ( column_name [, ...] ) = [ ROW ]
( { expression | DEFAULT } [, ...] ) |
  ( column_name [, ...] ) = ( sub-SELECT )
} [, ...]
[ WHERE condition ]
```

## Description

INSERT inserts new rows into a table. One can insert one or more rows specified by value expressions, or zero or more rows resulting from a query.

The target column names can be listed in any order. If no list of column names is given at all, the default is all the columns of the table in their declared order; or the first *N* column names, if there are only *N* columns supplied by the VALUES clause or *query*. The values supplied by the VALUES clause or *query* are associated with the explicit or implicit column list left-to-right.

Each column not present in the explicit or implicit column list will be filled with a default value, either its declared default value or null if there is none.

If the expression for any column is not of the correct data type, automatic type conversion will be attempted.

INSERT into tables that lack unique indexes will not be blocked by concurrent activity. Tables with unique indexes might block if concurrent sessions perform actions that lock or modify rows matching the unique index values being inserted; the details are covered in Section 64.5. ON CONFLICT can be used to specify an alternative action to raising a unique constraint or exclusion constraint violation error. (See ON CONFLICT Clause below.)

The optional RETURNING clause causes INSERT to compute and return value(s) based on each row actually inserted (or updated, if an ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE clause was used). This is primarily

useful for obtaining values that were supplied by defaults, such as a serial sequence number. However, any expression using the table's columns is allowed. The syntax of the RETURNING list is identical to that of the output list of SELECT. Only rows that were successfully inserted or updated will be returned. For example, if a row was locked but not updated because an ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE ... WHERE clause *condition* was not satisfied, the row will not be returned.

You must have INSERT privilege on a table in order to insert into it. If ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE is present, UPDATE privilege on the table is also required.

If a column list is specified, you only need INSERT privilege on the listed columns. Similarly, when ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE is specified, you only need UPDATE privilege on the column(s) that are listed to be updated. However, ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE also requires SELECT privilege on any column whose values are read in the ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE expressions or *condition*.

Use of the RETURNING clause requires SELECT privilege on all columns mentioned in RETURNING. If you use the *query* clause to insert rows from a query, you of course need to have SELECT privilege on any table or column used in the query.

## Parameters

### Inserting

This section covers parameters that may be used when only inserting new rows. Parameters *exclusively* used with the ON CONFLICT clause are described separately.

*with\_query*

The WITH clause allows you to specify one or more subqueries that can be referenced by name in the INSERT query. See Section 7.8 and SELECT for details.

It is possible for the *query* (SELECT statement) to also contain a WITH clause. In such a case both sets of *with\_query* can be referenced within the *query*, but the second one takes precedence since it is more closely nested.

*table\_name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing table.

*alias*

A substitute name for *table\_name*. When an alias is provided, it completely hides the actual name of the table. This is particularly useful when ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE targets a table named *excluded*, since that will otherwise be taken as the name of the special table representing the row proposed for insertion.

*column\_name*

The name of a column in the table named by *table\_name*. The column name can be qualified with a subfield name or array subscript, if needed. (Inserting into only some fields of a composite column leaves the other fields null.) When referencing a column with ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE, do not include the table's name in the specification of a target column. For example, INSERT INTO *table\_name* ... ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE SET *table\_name.col* = 1 is invalid (this follows the general behavior for UPDATE).

OVERRIDING SYSTEM VALUE

If this clause is specified, then any values supplied for identity columns will override the default sequence-generated values.

For an identity column defined as GENERATED ALWAYS, it is an error to insert an explicit value (other than DEFAULT) without specifying either OVERRIDING SYSTEM VALUE or



OVERRIDING USER VALUE. (For an identity column defined as GENERATED BY DEFAULT, OVERRIDING SYSTEM VALUE is the normal behavior and specifying it does nothing, but PostgreSQL allows it as an extension.)

#### OVERRIDING USER VALUE

If this clause is specified, then any values supplied for identity columns are ignored and the default sequence-generated values are applied.

This clause is useful for example when copying values between tables. Writing `INSERT INTO tbl2 OVERRIDING USER VALUE SELECT * FROM tbl1` will copy from `tbl1` all columns that are not identity columns in `tbl2` while values for the identity columns in `tbl2` will be generated by the sequences associated with `tbl2`.

#### DEFAULT VALUES

All columns will be filled with their default values, as if `DEFAULT` were explicitly specified for each column. (An `OVERRIDING` clause is not permitted in this form.)

#### *expression*

An expression or value to assign to the corresponding column.

#### DEFAULT

The corresponding column will be filled with its default value. An identity column will be filled with a new value generated by the associated sequence. For a generated column, specifying this is permitted but merely specifies the normal behavior of computing the column from its generation expression.

#### *query*

A query (`SELECT` statement) that supplies the rows to be inserted. Refer to the `SELECT` statement for a description of the syntax.

#### *output\_expression*

An expression to be computed and returned by the `INSERT` command after each row is inserted or updated. The expression can use any column names of the table named by *table\_name*. Write `*` to return all columns of the inserted or updated row(s).

#### *output\_name*

A name to use for a returned column.

## ON CONFLICT Clause

The optional `ON CONFLICT` clause specifies an alternative action to raising a unique violation or exclusion constraint violation error. For each individual row proposed for insertion, either the insertion proceeds, or, if an *arbiter* constraint or index specified by *conflict\_target* is violated, the alternative *conflict\_action* is taken. `ON CONFLICT DO NOTHING` simply avoids inserting a row as its alternative action. `ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE` updates the existing row that conflicts with the row proposed for insertion as its alternative action.

*conflict\_target* can perform *unique index inference*. When performing inference, it consists of one or more *index\_column\_name* columns and/or *index\_expression* expressions, and an optional *index\_predicate*. All *table\_name* unique indexes that, without regard to order, contain exactly the *conflict\_target*-specified columns/expressions are inferred (chosen) as arbiter indexes. If an *index\_predicate* is specified, it must, as a further requirement for inference, satisfy arbiter indexes. Note that this means a non-partial unique index (a unique index without a predicate)

will be inferred (and thus used by `ON CONFLICT`) if such an index satisfying every other criteria is available. If an attempt at inference is unsuccessful, an error is raised.

`ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE` guarantees an atomic `INSERT` or `UPDATE` outcome; provided there is no independent error, one of those two outcomes is guaranteed, even under high concurrency. This is also known as *UPSERT* — “UPDATE or INSERT”.

*conflict\_target*

Specifies which conflicts `ON CONFLICT` takes the alternative action on by choosing *arbiter indexes*. Either performs *unique index inference*, or names a constraint explicitly. For `ON CONFLICT DO NOTHING`, it is optional to specify a *conflict\_target*; when omitted, conflicts with all usable constraints (and unique indexes) are handled. For `ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE`, a *conflict\_target* *must* be provided.

*conflict\_action*

*conflict\_action* specifies an alternative `ON CONFLICT` action. It can be either `DO NOTHING`, or a `DO UPDATE` clause specifying the exact details of the `UPDATE` action to be performed in case of a conflict. The `SET` and `WHERE` clauses in `ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE` have access to the existing row using the table's name (or an alias), and to the row proposed for insertion using the special `excluded` table. `SELECT` privilege is required on any column in the target table where corresponding `excluded` columns are read.

Note that the effects of all per-row `BEFORE INSERT` triggers are reflected in `excluded` values, since those effects may have contributed to the row being excluded from insertion.

*index\_column\_name*

The name of a *table\_name* column. Used to infer arbiter indexes. Follows `CREATE INDEX` format. `SELECT` privilege on *index\_column\_name* is required.

*index\_expression*

Similar to *index\_column\_name*, but used to infer expressions on *table\_name* columns appearing within index definitions (not simple columns). Follows `CREATE INDEX` format. `SELECT` privilege on any column appearing within *index\_expression* is required.

*collation*

When specified, mandates that corresponding *index\_column\_name* or *index\_expression* use a particular collation in order to be matched during inference. Typically this is omitted, as collations usually do not affect whether or not a constraint violation occurs. Follows `CREATE INDEX` format.

*opclass*

When specified, mandates that corresponding *index\_column\_name* or *index\_expression* use particular operator class in order to be matched during inference. Typically this is omitted, as the *equality* semantics are often equivalent across a type's operator classes anyway, or because it's sufficient to trust that the defined unique indexes have the pertinent definition of equality. Follows `CREATE INDEX` format.

*index\_predicate*

Used to allow inference of partial unique indexes. Any indexes that satisfy the predicate (which need not actually be partial indexes) can be inferred. Follows `CREATE INDEX` format. `SELECT` privilege on any column appearing within *index\_predicate* is required.

*constraint\_name*

Explicitly specifies an arbiter *constraint* by name, rather than inferring a constraint or index.

*condition*

An expression that returns a value of type `boolean`. Only rows for which this expression returns `true` will be updated, although all rows will be locked when the `ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE` action is taken. Note that *condition* is evaluated last, after a conflict has been identified as a candidate to update.

Note that exclusion constraints are not supported as arbiters with `ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE`. In all cases, only `NOT DEFERRABLE` constraints and unique indexes are supported as arbiters.

`INSERT` with an `ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE` clause is a “deterministic” statement. This means that the command will not be allowed to affect any single existing row more than once; a cardinality violation error will be raised when this situation arises. Rows proposed for insertion should not duplicate each other in terms of attributes constrained by an arbiter index or constraint.

Note that it is currently not supported for the `ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE` clause of an `INSERT` applied to a partitioned table to update the partition key of a conflicting row such that it requires the row be moved to a new partition.

**Tip**

It is often preferable to use unique index inference rather than naming a constraint directly using `ON CONFLICT ON CONSTRAINT constraint_name`. Inference will continue to work correctly when the underlying index is replaced by another more or less equivalent index in an overlapping way, for example when using `CREATE UNIQUE INDEX ... CONCURRENTLY` before dropping the index being replaced.

## Outputs

On successful completion, an `INSERT` command returns a command tag of the form

```
INSERT oid count
```

The *count* is the number of rows inserted or updated. *oid* is always 0 (it used to be the OID assigned to the inserted row if *count* was exactly one and the target table was declared `WITH OIDS` and 0 otherwise, but creating a table `WITH OIDS` is not supported anymore).

If the `INSERT` command contains a `RETURNING` clause, the result will be similar to that of a `SELECT` statement containing the columns and values defined in the `RETURNING` list, computed over the row(s) inserted or updated by the command.

## Notes

If the specified table is a partitioned table, each row is routed to the appropriate partition and inserted into it. If the specified table is a partition, an error will occur if one of the input rows violates the partition constraint.

You may also wish to consider using `MERGE`, since that allows mixing `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, and `DELETE` within a single statement. See `MERGE`.

## Examples

Insert a single row into table `films`:

```
INSERT INTO films VALUES
    ('UA502', 'Bananas', 105, '1971-07-13', 'Comedy', '82
    minutes');
```

In this example, the len column is omitted and therefore it will have the default value:

```
INSERT INTO films (code, title, did, date_prod, kind)
    VALUES ('T_601', 'Yojimbo', 106, '1961-06-16', 'Drama');
```

This example uses the DEFAULT clause for the date columns rather than specifying a value:

```
INSERT INTO films VALUES
    ('UA502', 'Bananas', 105, DEFAULT, 'Comedy', '82 minutes');
INSERT INTO films (code, title, did, date_prod, kind)
    VALUES ('T_601', 'Yojimbo', 106, DEFAULT, 'Drama');
```

To insert a row consisting entirely of default values:

```
INSERT INTO films DEFAULT VALUES;
```

To insert multiple rows using the multirow VALUES syntax:

```
INSERT INTO films (code, title, did, date_prod, kind) VALUES
    ('B6717', 'Tampopo', 110, '1985-02-10', 'Comedy'),
    ('HG120', 'The Dinner Game', 140, DEFAULT, 'Comedy');
```

This example inserts some rows into table films from a table tmp\_films with the same column layout as films:

```
INSERT INTO films SELECT * FROM tmp_films WHERE date_prod <
    '2004-05-07';
```

This example inserts into array columns:

```
-- Create an empty 3x3 gameboard for noughts-and-crosses
INSERT INTO tictactoe (game, board[1:3][1:3])
    VALUES (1, '{{" "," "," "," "},{ " "," "," "," "},{ " "," "," "," "}}');
-- The subscripts in the above example aren't really needed
INSERT INTO tictactoe (game, board)
    VALUES (2, '{{X," "," "," "},{ " ",O," "," "},{ " ",X," "," "}}');
```

Insert a single row into table distributors, returning the sequence number generated by the DEFAULT clause:

```
INSERT INTO distributors (did, dname) VALUES (DEFAULT, 'XYZ
    Widgets')
    RETURNING did;
```

Increment the sales count of the salesperson who manages the account for Acme Corporation, and record the whole updated row along with current time in a log table:

```
WITH upd AS (
```

```

UPDATE employees SET sales_count = sales_count + 1 WHERE id =
  (SELECT sales_person FROM accounts WHERE name = 'Acme
Corporation')
RETURNING *
)
INSERT INTO employees_log SELECT *, current_timestamp FROM upd;

```

Insert or update new distributors as appropriate. Assumes a unique index has been defined that constrains values appearing in the `did` column. Note that the special excluded table is used to reference values originally proposed for insertion:

```

INSERT INTO distributors (did, dname)
VALUES (5, 'Gizmo Transglobal'), (6, 'Associated Computing,
Inc')
ON CONFLICT (did) DO UPDATE SET dname = EXCLUDED.dname;

```

Insert a distributor, or do nothing for rows proposed for insertion when an existing, excluded row (a row with a matching constrained column or columns after before row insert triggers fire) exists. Example assumes a unique index has been defined that constrains values appearing in the `did` column:

```

INSERT INTO distributors (did, dname) VALUES (7, 'Redline GmbH')
ON CONFLICT (did) DO NOTHING;

```

Insert or update new distributors as appropriate. Example assumes a unique index has been defined that constrains values appearing in the `did` column. `WHERE` clause is used to limit the rows actually updated (any existing row not updated will still be locked, though):

```

-- Don't update existing distributors based in a certain ZIP code
INSERT INTO distributors AS d (did, dname) VALUES (8, 'Anvil
Distribution')
ON CONFLICT (did) DO UPDATE
SET dname = EXCLUDED.dname || ' (formerly ' || d.dname || ')'
WHERE d.zipcode <> '21201';

-- Name a constraint directly in the statement (uses associated
-- index to arbitrate taking the DO NOTHING action)
INSERT INTO distributors (did, dname) VALUES (9, 'Antwerp Design')
ON CONFLICT ON CONSTRAINT distributors_pkey DO NOTHING;

```

Insert new distributor if possible; otherwise `DO NOTHING`. Example assumes a unique index has been defined that constrains values appearing in the `did` column on a subset of rows where the `is_active` Boolean column evaluates to true:

```

-- This statement could infer a partial unique index on "did"
-- with a predicate of "WHERE is_active", but it could also
-- just use a regular unique constraint on "did"
INSERT INTO distributors (did, dname) VALUES (10, 'Conrad
International')
ON CONFLICT (did) WHERE is_active DO NOTHING;

```

## Compatibility

`INSERT` conforms to the SQL standard, except that the `RETURNING` clause is a PostgreSQL extension, as is the ability to use `WITH` with `INSERT`, and the ability to specify an alternative action with `ON CONFLICT`. Also, the case in which a column name list is omitted, but not all the columns are

filled from the `VALUES` clause or *query*, is disallowed by the standard. If you prefer a more SQL standard conforming statement than `ON CONFLICT`, see `MERGE`.

The SQL standard specifies that `OVERRIDING SYSTEM VALUE` can only be specified if an identity column that is generated always exists. PostgreSQL allows the clause in any case and ignores it if it is not applicable.

Possible limitations of the *query* clause are documented under `SELECT`.

---

# LISTEN

LISTEN — listen for a notification

## Synopsis

`LISTEN channel`

## Description

`LISTEN` registers the current session as a listener on the notification channel named *channel*. If the current session is already registered as a listener for this notification channel, nothing is done.

Whenever the command `NOTIFY channel` is invoked, either by this session or another one connected to the same database, all the sessions currently listening on that notification channel are notified, and each will in turn notify its connected client application.

A session can be unregistered for a given notification channel with the `UNLISTEN` command. A session's listen registrations are automatically cleared when the session ends.

The method a client application must use to detect notification events depends on which PostgreSQL application programming interface it uses. With the `libpq` library, the application issues `LISTEN` as an ordinary SQL command, and then must periodically call the function `PQnotifies` to find out whether any notification events have been received. Other interfaces such as `libpqctl` provide higher-level methods for handling notify events; indeed, with `libpqctl` the application programmer should not even issue `LISTEN` or `UNLISTEN` directly. See the documentation for the interface you are using for more details.

## Parameters

*channel*

Name of a notification channel (any identifier).

## Notes

`LISTEN` takes effect at transaction commit. If `LISTEN` or `UNLISTEN` is executed within a transaction that later rolls back, the set of notification channels being listened to is unchanged.

A transaction that has executed `LISTEN` cannot be prepared for two-phase commit.

There is a race condition when first setting up a listening session: if concurrently-committing transactions are sending notify events, exactly which of those will the newly listening session receive? The answer is that the session will receive all events committed after an instant during the transaction's commit step. But that is slightly later than any database state that the transaction could have observed in queries. This leads to the following rule for using `LISTEN`: first execute (and commit!) that command, then in a new transaction inspect the database state as needed by the application logic, then rely on notifications to find out about subsequent changes to the database state. The first few received notifications might refer to updates already observed in the initial database inspection, but this is usually harmless.

`NOTIFY` contains a more extensive discussion of the use of `LISTEN` and `NOTIFY`.

## Examples

Configure and execute a listen/notify sequence from `psql`:

```
LISTEN virtual;  
NOTIFY virtual;  
Asynchronous notification "virtual" received from server process  
with PID 8448.
```

## Compatibility

There is no `LISTEN` statement in the SQL standard.

## See Also

`NOTIFY`, `UNLISTEN`



---

# LOAD

LOAD — load a shared library file

## Synopsis

```
LOAD 'filename'
```

## Description

This command loads a shared library file into the PostgreSQL server's address space. If the file has been loaded already, the command does nothing. Shared library files that contain C functions are automatically loaded whenever one of their functions is called. Therefore, an explicit LOAD is usually only needed to load a library that modifies the server's behavior through “hooks” rather than providing a set of functions.

The library file name is typically given as just a bare file name, which is sought in the server's library search path (set by `dynamic_library_path`). Alternatively it can be given as a full path name. In either case the platform's standard shared library file name extension may be omitted. See Section 38.10.1 for more information on this topic.

Non-superusers can only apply LOAD to library files located in `$libdir/plugins/` — the specified *filename* must begin with exactly that string. (It is the database administrator's responsibility to ensure that only “safe” libraries are installed there.)

## Compatibility

LOAD is a PostgreSQL extension.

## See Also

CREATE FUNCTION

---

# LOCK

LOCK — lock a table

## Synopsis

```
LOCK [ TABLE ] [ ONLY ] name [ * ] [ , ... ] [ IN lockmode MODE ]  
[ NOWAIT ]
```

where *lockmode* is one of:

```
ACCESS SHARE | ROW SHARE | ROW EXCLUSIVE | SHARE UPDATE  
EXCLUSIVE  
| SHARE | SHARE ROW EXCLUSIVE | EXCLUSIVE | ACCESS EXCLUSIVE
```

## Description

LOCK TABLE obtains a table-level lock, waiting if necessary for any conflicting locks to be released. If NOWAIT is specified, LOCK TABLE does not wait to acquire the desired lock: if it cannot be acquired immediately, the command is aborted and an error is emitted. Once obtained, the lock is held for the remainder of the current transaction. (There is no UNLOCK TABLE command; locks are always released at transaction end.)

When a view is locked, all relations appearing in the view definition query are also locked recursively with the same lock mode.

When acquiring locks automatically for commands that reference tables, PostgreSQL always uses the least restrictive lock mode possible. LOCK TABLE provides for cases when you might need more restrictive locking. For example, suppose an application runs a transaction at the READ COMMITTED isolation level and needs to ensure that data in a table remains stable for the duration of the transaction. To achieve this you could obtain SHARE lock mode over the table before querying. This will prevent concurrent data changes and ensure subsequent reads of the table see a stable view of committed data, because SHARE lock mode conflicts with the ROW EXCLUSIVE lock acquired by writers, and your LOCK TABLE *name* IN SHARE MODE statement will wait until any concurrent holders of ROW EXCLUSIVE mode locks commit or roll back. Thus, once you obtain the lock, there are no uncommitted writes outstanding; furthermore none can begin until you release the lock.

To achieve a similar effect when running a transaction at the REPEATABLE READ or SERIALIZABLE isolation level, you have to execute the LOCK TABLE statement before executing any SELECT or data modification statement. A REPEATABLE READ or SERIALIZABLE transaction's view of data will be frozen when its first SELECT or data modification statement begins. A LOCK TABLE later in the transaction will still prevent concurrent writes — but it won't ensure that what the transaction reads corresponds to the latest committed values.

If a transaction of this sort is going to change the data in the table, then it should use SHARE ROW EXCLUSIVE lock mode instead of SHARE mode. This ensures that only one transaction of this type runs at a time. Without this, a deadlock is possible: two transactions might both acquire SHARE mode, and then be unable to also acquire ROW EXCLUSIVE mode to actually perform their updates. (Note that a transaction's own locks never conflict, so a transaction can acquire ROW EXCLUSIVE mode when it holds SHARE mode — but not if anyone else holds SHARE mode.) To avoid deadlocks, make sure all transactions acquire locks on the same objects in the same order, and if multiple lock modes are involved for a single object, then transactions should always acquire the most restrictive mode first.

More information about the lock modes and locking strategies can be found in Section 13.3.

## Parameters

### *name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing table to lock. If `ONLY` is specified before the table name, only that table is locked. If `ONLY` is not specified, the table and all its descendant tables (if any) are locked. Optionally, `*` can be specified after the table name to explicitly indicate that descendant tables are included.

The command `LOCK TABLE a, b;` is equivalent to `LOCK TABLE a; LOCK TABLE b;`. The tables are locked one-by-one in the order specified in the `LOCK TABLE` command.

### *lockmode*

The lock mode specifies which locks this lock conflicts with. Lock modes are described in Section 13.3.

If no lock mode is specified, then `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE`, the most restrictive mode, is used.

### `NOWAIT`

Specifies that `LOCK TABLE` should not wait for any conflicting locks to be released: if the specified lock(s) cannot be acquired immediately without waiting, the transaction is aborted.

## Notes

To lock a table, the user must have the right privilege for the specified *lockmode*, or be the table's owner or a superuser. If the user has `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, or `TRUNCATE` privileges on the table, any *lockmode* is permitted. If the user has `INSERT` privileges on the table, `ROW EXCLUSIVE MODE` (or a less-conflicting mode as described in Section 13.3) is permitted. If a user has `SELECT` privileges on the table, `ACCESS SHARE MODE` is permitted.

The user performing the lock on the view must have the corresponding privilege on the view. In addition, by default, the view's owner must have the relevant privileges on the underlying base relations, whereas the user performing the lock does not need any permissions on the underlying base relations. However, if the view has `security_invoker` set to `true` (see `CREATE VIEW`), the user performing the lock, rather than the view owner, must have the relevant privileges on the underlying base relations.

`LOCK TABLE` is useless outside a transaction block: the lock would remain held only to the completion of the statement. Therefore PostgreSQL reports an error if `LOCK` is used outside a transaction block. Use `BEGIN` and `COMMIT` (or `ROLLBACK`) to define a transaction block.

`LOCK TABLE` only deals with table-level locks, and so the mode names involving `ROW` are all misnomers. These mode names should generally be read as indicating the intention of the user to acquire row-level locks within the locked table. Also, `ROW EXCLUSIVE` mode is a shareable table lock. Keep in mind that all the lock modes have identical semantics so far as `LOCK TABLE` is concerned, differing only in the rules about which modes conflict with which. For information on how to acquire an actual row-level lock, see Section 13.3.2 and The Locking Clause in the `SELECT` documentation.

## Examples

Obtain a `SHARE` lock on a primary key table when going to perform inserts into a foreign key table:

```
BEGIN WORK;  
LOCK TABLE films IN SHARE MODE;  
SELECT id FROM films  
    WHERE name = 'Star Wars: Episode I - The Phantom Menace';
```

```
-- Do ROLLBACK if record was not returned
INSERT INTO films_user_comments VALUES
    (_id_, 'GREAT! I was waiting for it for so long!');
COMMIT WORK;
```

Take a `SHARE ROW EXCLUSIVE` lock on a primary key table when going to perform a delete operation:

```
BEGIN WORK;
LOCK TABLE films IN SHARE ROW EXCLUSIVE MODE;
DELETE FROM films_user_comments WHERE id IN
    (SELECT id FROM films WHERE rating < 5);
DELETE FROM films WHERE rating < 5;
COMMIT WORK;
```

## Compatibility

There is no `LOCK TABLE` in the SQL standard, which instead uses `SET TRANSACTION` to specify concurrency levels on transactions. PostgreSQL supports that too; see `SET TRANSACTION` for details.

Except for `ACCESS SHARE`, `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE`, and `SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE` lock modes, the PostgreSQL lock modes and the `LOCK TABLE` syntax are compatible with those present in Oracle.

---

# MERGE

MERGE — conditionally insert, update, or delete rows of a table

## Synopsis

```
[ WITH with_query [, ...] ]  
MERGE INTO [ ONLY ] target_table_name [ * ] [ [ AS ] target_alias ]  
USING data_source ON join_condition  
when_clause [...]
```

where *data\_source* is:

```
{ [ ONLY ] source_table_name [ * ] | ( source_query ) }  
[ [ AS ] source_alias ]
```

and *when\_clause* is:

```
{ WHEN MATCHED [ AND condition ] THEN { merge_update | merge_delete  
  | DO NOTHING } |  
  WHEN NOT MATCHED [ AND condition ] THEN { merge_insert | DO  
  NOTHING } }
```

and *merge\_insert* is:

```
INSERT [( column_name [, ...] )]  
[ OVERRIDING { SYSTEM | USER } VALUE ]  
{ VALUES ( { expression | DEFAULT } [, ...] ) | DEFAULT VALUES }
```

and *merge\_update* is:

```
UPDATE SET { column_name = { expression | DEFAULT } |  
             ( column_name [, ...] ) = ( { expression | DEFAULT }  
             [, ...] ) } [, ...]
```

and *merge\_delete* is:

```
DELETE
```

## Description

MERGE performs actions that modify rows in the *target\_table\_name*, using the *data\_source*. MERGE provides a single SQL statement that can conditionally INSERT, UPDATE or DELETE rows, a task that would otherwise require multiple procedural language statements.

First, the MERGE command performs a join from *data\_source* to *target\_table\_name* producing zero or more candidate change rows. For each candidate change row, the status of MATCHED or NOT MATCHED is set just once, after which WHEN clauses are evaluated in the order specified. For each candidate change row, the first clause to evaluate as true is executed. No more than one WHEN clause is executed for any candidate change row.

MERGE actions have the same effect as regular UPDATE, INSERT, or DELETE commands of the same names. The syntax of those commands is different, notably that there is no WHERE clause and no table name is specified. All actions refer to the *target\_table\_name*, though modifications to other tables may be made using triggers.

When `DO NOTHING` is specified, the source row is skipped. Since actions are evaluated in their specified order, `DO NOTHING` can be handy to skip non-interesting source rows before more fine-grained handling.

There is no separate `MERGE` privilege. If you specify an update action, you must have the `UPDATE` privilege on the column(s) of the *target\_table\_name* that are referred to in the `SET` clause. If you specify an insert action, you must have the `INSERT` privilege on the *target\_table\_name*. If you specify a delete action, you must have the `DELETE` privilege on the *target\_table\_name*. Privileges are tested once at statement start and are checked whether or not particular `WHEN` clauses are executed. You will require the `SELECT` privilege on any column(s) of the *data\_source* and *target\_table\_name* referred to in any condition or expression.

`MERGE` is not supported if the *target\_table\_name* is a materialized view, foreign table, or if it has any rules defined on it.

## Parameters

*target\_table\_name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the target table to merge into. If `ONLY` is specified before the table name, matching rows are updated or deleted in the named table only. If `ONLY` is not specified, matching rows are also updated or deleted in any tables inheriting from the named table. Optionally, `*` can be specified after the table name to explicitly indicate that descendant tables are included. The `ONLY` keyword and `*` option do not affect insert actions, which always insert into the named table only.

*target\_alias*

A substitute name for the target table. When an alias is provided, it completely hides the actual name of the table. For example, given `MERGE INTO foo AS f`, the remainder of the `MERGE` statement must refer to this table as `f` not `foo`.

*source\_table\_name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the source table, view, or transition table. If `ONLY` is specified before the table name, matching rows are included from the named table only. If `ONLY` is not specified, matching rows are also included from any tables inheriting from the named table. Optionally, `*` can be specified after the table name to explicitly indicate that descendant tables are included.

*source\_query*

A query (`SELECT` statement or `VALUES` statement) that supplies the rows to be merged into the *target\_table\_name*. Refer to the `SELECT` statement or `VALUES` statement for a description of the syntax.

*source\_alias*

A substitute name for the data source. When an alias is provided, it completely hides the actual name of the table or the fact that a query was issued.

*join\_condition*

*join\_condition* is an expression resulting in a value of type `boolean` (similar to a `WHERE` clause) that specifies which rows in the *data\_source* match rows in the *target\_table\_name*.

### Warning

Only columns from *target\_table\_name* that attempt to match *data\_source* rows should appear in *join\_condition*. *join\_condition* subexpressions that only ref-

erence *target\_table\_name* columns can affect which action is taken, often in surprising ways.

#### *when\_clause*

At least one WHEN clause is required.

If the WHEN clause specifies WHEN MATCHED and the candidate change row matches a row in the *target\_table\_name*, the WHEN clause is executed if the *condition* is absent or it evaluates to true.

Conversely, if the WHEN clause specifies WHEN NOT MATCHED and the candidate change row does not match a row in the *target\_table\_name*, the WHEN clause is executed if the *condition* is absent or it evaluates to true.

#### *condition*

An expression that returns a value of type boolean. If this expression for a WHEN clause returns true, then the action for that clause is executed for that row.

A condition on a WHEN MATCHED clause can refer to columns in both the source and the target relations. A condition on a WHEN NOT MATCHED clause can only refer to columns from the source relation, since by definition there is no matching target row. Only the system attributes from the target table are accessible.

#### *merge\_insert*

The specification of an INSERT action that inserts one row into the target table. The target column names can be listed in any order. If no list of column names is given at all, the default is all the columns of the table in their declared order.

Each column not present in the explicit or implicit column list will be filled with a default value, either its declared default value or null if there is none.

If *target\_table\_name* is a partitioned table, each row is routed to the appropriate partition and inserted into it. If *target\_table\_name* is a partition, an error will occur if any input row violates the partition constraint.

Column names may not be specified more than once. INSERT actions cannot contain sub-selects.

Only one VALUES clause can be specified. The VALUES clause can only refer to columns from the source relation, since by definition there is no matching target row.

#### *merge\_update*

The specification of an UPDATE action that updates the current row of the *target\_table\_name*. Column names may not be specified more than once.

Neither a table name nor a WHERE clause are allowed.

#### *merge\_delete*

Specifies a DELETE action that deletes the current row of the *target\_table\_name*. Do not include the table name or any other clauses, as you would normally do with a DELETE command.

#### *column\_name*

The name of a column in the *target\_table\_name*. The column name can be qualified with a subfield name or array subscript, if needed. (Inserting into only some fields of a composite column leaves the other fields null.) Do not include the table's name in the specification of a target column.

**OVERRIDING SYSTEM VALUE**

Without this clause, it is an error to specify an explicit value (other than `DEFAULT`) for an identity column defined as `GENERATED ALWAYS`. This clause overrides that restriction.

**OVERRIDING USER VALUE**

If this clause is specified, then any values supplied for identity columns defined as `GENERATED BY DEFAULT` are ignored and the default sequence-generated values are applied.

**DEFAULT VALUES**

All columns will be filled with their default values. (An `OVERRIDING` clause is not permitted in this form.)

*expression*

An expression to assign to the column. If used in a `WHEN MATCHED` clause, the expression can use values from the original row in the target table, and values from the `data_source` row. If used in a `WHEN NOT MATCHED` clause, the expression can use values from the `data_source`.

**DEFAULT**

Set the column to its default value (which will be `NULL` if no specific default expression has been assigned to it).

*with\_query*

The `WITH` clause allows you to specify one or more subqueries that can be referenced by name in the `MERGE` query. See Section 7.8 and `SELECT` for details.

## Outputs

On successful completion, a `MERGE` command returns a command tag of the form

```
MERGE total_count
```

The *total\_count* is the total number of rows changed (whether inserted, updated, or deleted). If *total\_count* is 0, no rows were changed in any way.

## Notes

The following steps take place during the execution of `MERGE`.

1. Perform any `BEFORE STATEMENT` triggers for all actions specified, whether or not their `WHEN` clauses match.
2. Perform a join from source to target table. The resulting query will be optimized normally and will produce a set of candidate change rows. For each candidate change row,
  - a. Evaluate whether each row is `MATCHED` or `NOT MATCHED`.
  - b. Test each `WHEN` condition in the order specified until one returns true.
  - c. When a condition returns true, perform the following actions:
    - i. Perform any `BEFORE ROW` triggers that fire for the action's event type.
    - ii. Perform the specified action, invoking any check constraints on the target table.



- iii. Perform any `AFTER ROW` triggers that fire for the action's event type.
3. Perform any `AFTER STATEMENT` triggers for actions specified, whether or not they actually occur. This is similar to the behavior of an `UPDATE` statement that modifies no rows.

In summary, statement triggers for an event type (say, `INSERT`) will be fired whenever we *specify* an action of that kind. In contrast, row-level triggers will fire only for the specific event type being *executed*. So a `MERGE` command might fire statement triggers for both `UPDATE` and `INSERT`, even though only `UPDATE` row triggers were fired.

You should ensure that the join produces at most one candidate change row for each target row. In other words, a target row shouldn't join to more than one data source row. If it does, then only one of the candidate change rows will be used to modify the target row; later attempts to modify the row will cause an error. This can also occur if row triggers make changes to the target table and the rows so modified are then subsequently also modified by `MERGE`. If the repeated action is an `INSERT`, this will cause a uniqueness violation, while a repeated `UPDATE` or `DELETE` will cause a cardinality violation; the latter behavior is required by the SQL standard. This differs from historical PostgreSQL behavior of joins in `UPDATE` and `DELETE` statements where second and subsequent attempts to modify the same row are simply ignored.

If a `WHEN` clause omits an `AND` sub-clause, it becomes the final reachable clause of that kind (`MATCHED` or `NOT MATCHED`). If a later `WHEN` clause of that kind is specified it would be provably unreachable and an error is raised. If no final reachable clause is specified of either kind, it is possible that no action will be taken for a candidate change row.

The order in which rows are generated from the data source is indeterminate by default. A *source\_query* can be used to specify a consistent ordering, if required, which might be needed to avoid deadlocks between concurrent transactions.

There is no `RETURNING` clause with `MERGE`. Actions of `INSERT`, `UPDATE` and `DELETE` cannot contain `RETURNING` or `WITH` clauses.

When `MERGE` is run concurrently with other commands that modify the target table, the usual transaction isolation rules apply; see Section 13.2 for an explanation on the behavior at each isolation level. You may also wish to consider using `INSERT ... ON CONFLICT` as an alternative statement which offers the ability to run an `UPDATE` if a concurrent `INSERT` occurs. There are a variety of differences and restrictions between the two statement types and they are not interchangeable.

## Examples

Perform maintenance on `customer_accounts` based upon new `recent_transactions`.

```
MERGE INTO customer_account ca
USING recent_transactions t
ON t.customer_id = ca.customer_id
WHEN MATCHED THEN
    UPDATE SET balance = balance + transaction_value
WHEN NOT MATCHED THEN
    INSERT (customer_id, balance)
    VALUES (t.customer_id, t.transaction_value);
```

Notice that this would be exactly equivalent to the following statement because the `MATCHED` result does not change during execution.

```
MERGE INTO customer_account ca
USING (SELECT customer_id, transaction_value FROM
recent_transactions) AS t
```

```
ON t.customer_id = ca.customer_id
WHEN MATCHED THEN
    UPDATE SET balance = balance + transaction_value
WHEN NOT MATCHED THEN
    INSERT (customer_id, balance)
    VALUES (t.customer_id, t.transaction_value);
```

Attempt to insert a new stock item along with the quantity of stock. If the item already exists, instead update the stock count of the existing item. Don't allow entries that have zero stock.

```
MERGE INTO wines w
USING wine_stock_changes s
ON s.winename = w.winename
WHEN NOT MATCHED AND s.stock_delta > 0 THEN
    INSERT VALUES(s.winename, s.stock_delta)
WHEN MATCHED AND w.stock + s.stock_delta > 0 THEN
    UPDATE SET stock = w.stock + s.stock_delta
WHEN MATCHED THEN
    DELETE;
```

The wine\_stock\_changes table might be, for example, a temporary table recently loaded into the database.

## Compatibility

This command conforms to the SQL standard.

The WITH clause and DO NOTHING action are extensions to the SQL standard.

---

# MOVE

MOVE — position a cursor

## Synopsis

```
MOVE [ direction ] [ FROM | IN ] cursor_name
```

where *direction* can be one of:

```
NEXT  
PRIOR  
FIRST  
LAST  
ABSOLUTE count  
RELATIVE count  
count  
ALL  
FORWARD  
FORWARD count  
FORWARD ALL  
BACKWARD  
BACKWARD count  
BACKWARD ALL
```

## Description

MOVE repositions a cursor without retrieving any data. MOVE works exactly like the FETCH command, except it only positions the cursor and does not return rows.

The parameters for the MOVE command are identical to those of the FETCH command; refer to FETCH for details on syntax and usage.

## Outputs

On successful completion, a MOVE command returns a command tag of the form

```
MOVE count
```

The *count* is the number of rows that a FETCH command with the same parameters would have returned (possibly zero).

## Examples

```
BEGIN WORK;  
DECLARE liahona CURSOR FOR SELECT * FROM films;  
  
-- Skip the first 5 rows:  
MOVE FORWARD 5 IN liahona;  
MOVE 5  
  
-- Fetch the 6th row from the cursor liahona:
```

```
FETCH 1 FROM liahona;
  code | title | did | date_prod | kind | len
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----
  P_303 | 48 Hrs | 103 | 1982-10-22 | Action | 01:37
(1 row)

-- Close the cursor liahona and end the transaction:
CLOSE liahona;
COMMIT WORK;
```

## Compatibility

There is no MOVE statement in the SQL standard.

## See Also

CLOSE, DECLARE, FETCH

---

# NOTIFY

NOTIFY — generate a notification

## Synopsis

```
NOTIFY channel [ , payload ]
```

## Description

The NOTIFY command sends a notification event together with an optional “payload” string to each client application that has previously executed `LISTEN channel` for the specified channel name in the current database. Notifications are visible to all users.

NOTIFY provides a simple interprocess communication mechanism for a collection of processes accessing the same PostgreSQL database. A payload string can be sent along with the notification, and higher-level mechanisms for passing structured data can be built by using tables in the database to pass additional data from notifier to listener(s).

The information passed to the client for a notification event includes the notification channel name, the notifying session's server process PID, and the payload string, which is an empty string if it has not been specified.

It is up to the database designer to define the channel names that will be used in a given database and what each one means. Commonly, the channel name is the same as the name of some table in the database, and the notify event essentially means, “I changed this table, take a look at it to see what's new”. But no such association is enforced by the NOTIFY and LISTEN commands. For example, a database designer could use several different channel names to signal different sorts of changes to a single table. Alternatively, the payload string could be used to differentiate various cases.

When NOTIFY is used to signal the occurrence of changes to a particular table, a useful programming technique is to put the NOTIFY in a statement trigger that is triggered by table updates. In this way, notification happens automatically when the table is changed, and the application programmer cannot accidentally forget to do it.

NOTIFY interacts with SQL transactions in some important ways. Firstly, if a NOTIFY is executed inside a transaction, the notify events are not delivered until and unless the transaction is committed. This is appropriate, since if the transaction is aborted, all the commands within it have had no effect, including NOTIFY. But it can be disconcerting if one is expecting the notification events to be delivered immediately. Secondly, if a listening session receives a notification signal while it is within a transaction, the notification event will not be delivered to its connected client until just after the transaction is completed (either committed or aborted). Again, the reasoning is that if a notification were delivered within a transaction that was later aborted, one would want the notification to be undone somehow — but the server cannot “take back” a notification once it has sent it to the client. So notification events are only delivered between transactions. The upshot of this is that applications using NOTIFY for real-time signaling should try to keep their transactions short.

If the same channel name is signaled multiple times with identical payload strings within the same transaction, only one instance of the notification event is delivered to listeners. On the other hand, notifications with distinct payload strings will always be delivered as distinct notifications. Similarly, notifications from different transactions will never get folded into one notification. Except for dropping later instances of duplicate notifications, NOTIFY guarantees that notifications from the same transaction get delivered in the order they were sent. It is also guaranteed that messages from different transactions are delivered in the order in which the transactions committed.

It is common for a client that executes NOTIFY to be listening on the same notification channel itself. In that case it will get back a notification event, just like all the other listening sessions. Depending on the application logic, this could result in useless work, for example, reading a database table to find the same updates that that session just wrote out. It is possible to avoid such extra work by noticing whether the notifying session's server process PID (supplied in the notification event message) is the same as one's own session's PID (available from libpq). When they are the same, the notification event is one's own work bouncing back, and can be ignored.

## Parameters

*channel*

Name of the notification channel to be signaled (any identifier).

*payload*

The “payload” string to be communicated along with the notification. This must be specified as a simple string literal. In the default configuration it must be shorter than 8000 bytes. (If binary data or large amounts of information need to be communicated, it's best to put it in a database table and send the key of the record.)

## Notes

There is a queue that holds notifications that have been sent but not yet processed by all listening sessions. If this queue becomes full, transactions calling NOTIFY will fail at commit. The queue is quite large (8GB in a standard installation) and should be sufficiently sized for almost every use case. However, no cleanup can take place if a session executes LISTEN and then enters a transaction for a very long time. Once the queue is half full you will see warnings in the log file pointing you to the session that is preventing cleanup. In this case you should make sure that this session ends its current transaction so that cleanup can proceed.

The function `pg_notification_queue_usage` returns the fraction of the queue that is currently occupied by pending notifications. See Section 9.26 for more information.

A transaction that has executed NOTIFY cannot be prepared for two-phase commit.

## pg\_notify

To send a notification you can also use the function `pg_notify(text, text)`. The function takes the channel name as the first argument and the payload as the second. The function is much easier to use than the NOTIFY command if you need to work with non-constant channel names and payloads.

## Examples

Configure and execute a listen/notify sequence from psql:

```
LISTEN virtual;
NOTIFY virtual;
Asynchronous notification "virtual" received from server process
with PID 8448.
NOTIFY virtual, 'This is the payload';
Asynchronous notification "virtual" with payload "This is the
payload" received from server process with PID 8448.

LISTEN foo;
SELECT pg_notify('fo' || 'o', 'pay' || 'load');
```

```
Asynchronous notification "foo" with payload "payload" received
from server process with PID 14728.
```

## Compatibility

There is no NOTIFY statement in the SQL standard.

## See Also

[LISTEN](#), [UNLISTEN](#)

---

# PREPARE

PREPARE — prepare a statement for execution

## Synopsis

```
PREPARE name [ ( data_type [, ...] ) ] AS statement
```

## Description

PREPARE creates a prepared statement. A prepared statement is a server-side object that can be used to optimize performance. When the PREPARE statement is executed, the specified statement is parsed, analyzed, and rewritten. When an EXECUTE command is subsequently issued, the prepared statement is planned and executed. This division of labor avoids repetitive parse analysis work, while allowing the execution plan to depend on the specific parameter values supplied.

Prepared statements can take parameters: values that are substituted into the statement when it is executed. When creating the prepared statement, refer to parameters by position, using \$1, \$2, etc. A corresponding list of parameter data types can optionally be specified. When a parameter's data type is not specified or is declared as unknown, the type is inferred from the context in which the parameter is first referenced (if possible). When executing the statement, specify the actual values for these parameters in the EXECUTE statement. Refer to EXECUTE for more information about that.

Prepared statements only last for the duration of the current database session. When the session ends, the prepared statement is forgotten, so it must be recreated before being used again. This also means that a single prepared statement cannot be used by multiple simultaneous database clients; however, each client can create their own prepared statement to use. Prepared statements can be manually cleaned up using the DEALLOCATE command.

Prepared statements potentially have the largest performance advantage when a single session is being used to execute a large number of similar statements. The performance difference will be particularly significant if the statements are complex to plan or rewrite, e.g., if the query involves a join of many tables or requires the application of several rules. If the statement is relatively simple to plan and rewrite but relatively expensive to execute, the performance advantage of prepared statements will be less noticeable.

## Parameters

*name*

An arbitrary name given to this particular prepared statement. It must be unique within a single session and is subsequently used to execute or deallocate a previously prepared statement.

*data\_type*

The data type of a parameter to the prepared statement. If the data type of a particular parameter is unspecified or is specified as unknown, it will be inferred from the context in which the parameter is first referenced. To refer to the parameters in the prepared statement itself, use \$1, \$2, etc.

*statement*

Any SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, MERGE, or VALUES statement.

## Notes

A prepared statement can be executed with either a *generic plan* or a *custom plan*. A generic plan is the same across all executions, while a custom plan is generated for a specific execution using



the parameter values given in that call. Use of a generic plan avoids planning overhead, but in some situations a custom plan will be much more efficient to execute because the planner can make use of knowledge of the parameter values. (Of course, if the prepared statement has no parameters, then this is moot and a generic plan is always used.)

By default (that is, when `plan_cache_mode` is set to `auto`), the server will automatically choose whether to use a generic or custom plan for a prepared statement that has parameters. The current rule for this is that the first five executions are done with custom plans and the average estimated cost of those plans is calculated. Then a generic plan is created and its estimated cost is compared to the average custom-plan cost. Subsequent executions use the generic plan if its cost is not so much higher than the average custom-plan cost as to make repeated replanning seem preferable.

This heuristic can be overridden, forcing the server to use either generic or custom plans, by setting `plan_cache_mode` to `force_generic_plan` or `force_custom_plan` respectively. This setting is primarily useful if the generic plan's cost estimate is badly off for some reason, allowing it to be chosen even though its actual cost is much more than that of a custom plan.

To examine the query plan PostgreSQL is using for a prepared statement, use `EXPLAIN`, for example

```
EXPLAIN EXECUTE name(parameter_values);
```

If a generic plan is in use, it will contain parameter symbols `$n`, while a custom plan will have the supplied parameter values substituted into it.

For more information on query planning and the statistics collected by PostgreSQL for that purpose, see the `ANALYZE` documentation.

Although the main point of a prepared statement is to avoid repeated parse analysis and planning of the statement, PostgreSQL will force re-analysis and re-planning of the statement before using it whenever database objects used in the statement have undergone definitional (DDL) changes or their planner statistics have been updated since the previous use of the prepared statement. Also, if the value of `search_path` changes from one use to the next, the statement will be re-parsed using the new `search_path`. (This latter behavior is new as of PostgreSQL 9.3.) These rules make use of a prepared statement semantically almost equivalent to re-submitting the same query text over and over, but with a performance benefit if no object definitions are changed, especially if the best plan remains the same across uses. An example of a case where the semantic equivalence is not perfect is that if the statement refers to a table by an unqualified name, and then a new table of the same name is created in a schema appearing earlier in the `search_path`, no automatic re-parse will occur since no object used in the statement changed. However, if some other change forces a re-parse, the new table will be referenced in subsequent uses.

You can see all prepared statements available in the session by querying the `pg_prepared_statements` system view.

## Examples

Create a prepared statement for an `INSERT` statement, and then execute it:

```
PREPARE fooplan (int, text, bool, numeric) AS
  INSERT INTO foo VALUES($1, $2, $3, $4);
EXECUTE fooplan(1, 'Hunter Valley', 't', 200.00);
```

Create a prepared statement for a `SELECT` statement, and then execute it:

```
PREPARE usrrptplan (int) AS
  SELECT * FROM users u, logs l WHERE u.usrid=$1 AND
    u.usrid=l.usrid
```

```
AND l.date = $2;  
EXECUTE usrrptplan(1, current_date);
```

In this example, the data type of the second parameter is not specified, so it is inferred from the context in which \$2 is used.

## Compatibility

The SQL standard includes a `PREPARE` statement, but it is only for use in embedded SQL. This version of the `PREPARE` statement also uses a somewhat different syntax.

## See Also

`DEALLOCATE`, `EXECUTE`

---

# PREPARE TRANSACTION

PREPARE TRANSACTION — prepare the current transaction for two-phase commit

## Synopsis

```
PREPARE TRANSACTION transaction_id
```

## Description

PREPARE TRANSACTION prepares the current transaction for two-phase commit. After this command, the transaction is no longer associated with the current session; instead, its state is fully stored on disk, and there is a very high probability that it can be committed successfully, even if a database crash occurs before the commit is requested.

Once prepared, a transaction can later be committed or rolled back with COMMIT PREPARED or ROLLBACK PREPARED, respectively. Those commands can be issued from any session, not only the one that executed the original transaction.

From the point of view of the issuing session, PREPARE TRANSACTION is not unlike a ROLLBACK command: after executing it, there is no active current transaction, and the effects of the prepared transaction are no longer visible. (The effects will become visible again if the transaction is committed.)

If the PREPARE TRANSACTION command fails for any reason, it becomes a ROLLBACK: the current transaction is canceled.

## Parameters

*transaction\_id*

An arbitrary identifier that later identifies this transaction for COMMIT PREPARED or ROLLBACK PREPARED. The identifier must be written as a string literal, and must be less than 200 bytes long. It must not be the same as the identifier used for any currently prepared transaction.

## Notes

PREPARE TRANSACTION is not intended for use in applications or interactive sessions. Its purpose is to allow an external transaction manager to perform atomic global transactions across multiple databases or other transactional resources. Unless you're writing a transaction manager, you probably shouldn't be using PREPARE TRANSACTION.

This command must be used inside a transaction block. Use BEGIN to start one.

It is not currently allowed to PREPARE a transaction that has executed any operations involving temporary tables or the session's temporary namespace, created any cursors WITH HOLD, or executed LISTEN, UNLISTEN, or NOTIFY. Those features are too tightly tied to the current session to be useful in a transaction to be prepared.

If the transaction modified any run-time parameters with SET (without the LOCAL option), those effects persist after PREPARE TRANSACTION, and will not be affected by any later COMMIT PREPARED or ROLLBACK PREPARED. Thus, in this one respect PREPARE TRANSACTION acts more like COMMIT than ROLLBACK.

All currently available prepared transactions are listed in the pg\_prepared\_xacts system view.

### Caution

It is unwise to leave transactions in the prepared state for a long time. This will interfere with the ability of `VACUUM` to reclaim storage, and in extreme cases could cause the database to shut down to prevent transaction ID wraparound (see Section 25.1.5). Keep in mind also that the transaction continues to hold whatever locks it held. The intended usage of the feature is that a prepared transaction will normally be committed or rolled back as soon as an external transaction manager has verified that other databases are also prepared to commit.

If you have not set up an external transaction manager to track prepared transactions and ensure they get closed out promptly, it is best to keep the prepared-transaction feature disabled by setting `max_prepared_transactions` to zero. This will prevent accidental creation of prepared transactions that might then be forgotten and eventually cause problems.

## Examples

Prepare the current transaction for two-phase commit, using `foobar` as the transaction identifier:

```
PREPARE TRANSACTION 'foobar';
```

## Compatibility

`PREPARE TRANSACTION` is a PostgreSQL extension. It is intended for use by external transaction management systems, some of which are covered by standards (such as X/Open XA), but the SQL side of those systems is not standardized.

## See Also

`COMMIT PREPARED`, `ROLLBACK PREPARED`

---

# REASSIGN OWNED

REASSIGN OWNED — change the ownership of database objects owned by a database role

## Synopsis

```
REASSIGN OWNED BY { old_role | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER |  
SESSION_USER } [, ...]  
                TO { new_role | CURRENT_ROLE | CURRENT_USER |  
SESSION_USER }
```

## Description

REASSIGN OWNED instructs the system to change the ownership of database objects owned by any of the *old\_roles* to *new\_role*.

## Parameters

*old\_role*

The name of a role. The ownership of all the objects within the current database, and of all shared objects (databases, tablespaces), owned by this role will be reassigned to *new\_role*.

*new\_role*

The name of the role that will be made the new owner of the affected objects.

## Notes

REASSIGN OWNED is often used to prepare for the removal of one or more roles. Because REASSIGN OWNED does not affect objects within other databases, it is usually necessary to execute this command in each database that contains objects owned by a role that is to be removed.

REASSIGN OWNED requires membership on both the source role(s) and the target role.

The DROP OWNED command is an alternative that simply drops all the database objects owned by one or more roles.

The REASSIGN OWNED command does not affect any privileges granted to the *old\_roles* on objects that are not owned by them. Likewise, it does not affect default privileges created with ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES. Use DROP OWNED to revoke such privileges.

See Section 22.4 for more discussion.

## Compatibility

The REASSIGN OWNED command is a PostgreSQL extension.

## See Also

DROP OWNED, DROP ROLE, ALTER DATABASE

---

# REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW

REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW — replace the contents of a materialized view

## Synopsis

```
REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW [ CONCURRENTLY ] name
[ WITH [ NO ] DATA ]
```

## Description

REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW completely replaces the contents of a materialized view. To execute this command you must be the owner of the materialized view. The old contents are discarded. If WITH DATA is specified (or defaults) the backing query is executed to provide the new data, and the materialized view is left in a scannable state. If WITH NO DATA is specified no new data is generated and the materialized view is left in an unscannable state.

CONCURRENTLY and WITH NO DATA may not be specified together.

## Parameters

CONCURRENTLY

Refresh the materialized view without locking out concurrent selects on the materialized view. Without this option a refresh which affects a lot of rows will tend to use fewer resources and complete more quickly, but could block other connections which are trying to read from the materialized view. This option may be faster in cases where a small number of rows are affected.

This option is only allowed if there is at least one UNIQUE index on the materialized view which uses only column names and includes all rows; that is, it must not be an expression index or include a WHERE clause.

This option may not be used when the materialized view is not already populated.

Even with this option only one REFRESH at a time may run against any one materialized view.

*name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the materialized view to refresh.

## Notes

If there is an ORDER BY clause in the materialized view's defining query, the original contents of the materialized view will be ordered that way; but REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW does not guarantee to preserve that ordering.

## Examples

This command will replace the contents of the materialized view called `order_summary` using the query from the materialized view's definition, and leave it in a scannable state:

```
REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW order_summary;
```

This command will free storage associated with the materialized view `annual_statistics_basis` and leave it in an unscannable state:

```
REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW annual_statistics_basis WITH NO DATA;
```

## Compatibility

`REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW` is a PostgreSQL extension.

## See Also

`CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW`, `ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW`, `DROP MATERIALIZED VIEW`

---

# REINDEX

REINDEX — rebuild indexes

## Synopsis

```
REINDEX [ ( option [, ...] ) ] { INDEX | TABLE | SCHEMA }  
[ CONCURRENTLY ] name  
REINDEX [ ( option [, ...] ) ] { DATABASE | SYSTEM }  
[ CONCURRENTLY ] [ name ]
```

where *option* can be one of:

```
CONCURRENTLY [ boolean ]  
TABLESPACE new_tablespace  
VERBOSE [ boolean ]
```

## Description

REINDEX rebuilds an index using the data stored in the index's table, replacing the old copy of the index. There are several scenarios in which to use REINDEX:

- An index has become corrupted, and no longer contains valid data. Although in theory this should never happen, in practice indexes can become corrupted due to software bugs or hardware failures. REINDEX provides a recovery method.
- An index has become “bloated”, that is it contains many empty or nearly-empty pages. This can occur with B-tree indexes in PostgreSQL under certain uncommon access patterns. REINDEX provides a way to reduce the space consumption of the index by writing a new version of the index without the dead pages. See Section 25.2 for more information.
- You have altered a storage parameter (such as fillfactor) for an index, and wish to ensure that the change has taken full effect.
- If an index build fails with the CONCURRENTLY option, this index is left as “invalid”. Such indexes are useless but it can be convenient to use REINDEX to rebuild them. Note that only REINDEX INDEX is able to perform a concurrent build on an invalid index.

## Parameters

INDEX

Recreate the specified index. This form of REINDEX cannot be executed inside a transaction block when used with a partitioned index.

TABLE

Recreate all indexes of the specified table. If the table has a secondary “TOAST” table, that is reindexed as well. This form of REINDEX cannot be executed inside a transaction block when used with a partitioned table.

SCHEMA

Recreate all indexes of the specified schema. If a table of this schema has a secondary “TOAST” table, that is reindexed as well. Indexes on shared system catalogs are also processed. This form of REINDEX cannot be executed inside a transaction block.



**DATABASE**

Recreate all indexes within the current database, except system catalogs. Indexes on system catalogs are not processed. This form of REINDEX cannot be executed inside a transaction block.

**SYSTEM**

Recreate all indexes on system catalogs within the current database. Indexes on shared system catalogs are included. Indexes on user tables are not processed. This form of REINDEX cannot be executed inside a transaction block.

*name*

The name of the specific index, table, or database to be reindexed. Index and table names can be schema-qualified. Presently, REINDEX DATABASE and REINDEX SYSTEM can only reindex the current database. Their parameter is optional, and it must match the current database's name.

**CONCURRENTLY**

When this option is used, PostgreSQL will rebuild the index without taking any locks that prevent concurrent inserts, updates, or deletes on the table; whereas a standard index rebuild locks out writes (but not reads) on the table until it's done. There are several caveats to be aware of when using this option — see Rebuilding Indexes Concurrently below.

For temporary tables, REINDEX is always non-concurrent, as no other session can access them, and non-concurrent reindex is cheaper.

**TABLESPACE**

Specifies that indexes will be rebuilt on a new tablespace.

**VERBOSE**

Prints a progress report as each index is reindexed.

*boolean*

Specifies whether the selected option should be turned on or off. You can write TRUE, ON, or 1 to enable the option, and FALSE, OFF, or 0 to disable it. The *boolean* value can also be omitted, in which case TRUE is assumed.

*new\_tablespace*

The tablespace where indexes will be rebuilt.

## Notes

If you suspect corruption of an index on a user table, you can simply rebuild that index, or all indexes on the table, using REINDEX INDEX or REINDEX TABLE.

Things are more difficult if you need to recover from corruption of an index on a system table. In this case it's important for the system to not have used any of the suspect indexes itself. (Indeed, in this sort of scenario you might find that server processes are crashing immediately at start-up, due to reliance on the corrupted indexes.) To recover safely, the server must be started with the `-P` option, which prevents it from using indexes for system catalog lookups.

One way to do this is to shut down the server and start a single-user PostgreSQL server with the `-P` option included on its command line. Then, REINDEX DATABASE, REINDEX SYSTEM, REINDEX TABLE, or REINDEX INDEX can be issued, depending on how much you want to reconstruct. If in doubt, use REINDEX SYSTEM to select reconstruction of all system indexes in the database. Then quit the single-user server session and restart the regular server. See the postgres reference page for more information about how to interact with the single-user server interface.

Alternatively, a regular server session can be started with `-P` included in its command line options. The method for doing this varies across clients, but in all libpq-based clients, it is possible to set the `PGOPTIONS` environment variable to `-P` before starting the client. Note that while this method does not require locking out other clients, it might still be wise to prevent other users from connecting to the damaged database until repairs have been completed.

`REINDEX` is similar to a drop and recreate of the index in that the index contents are rebuilt from scratch. However, the locking considerations are rather different. `REINDEX` locks out writes but not reads of the index's parent table. It also takes an `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock on the specific index being processed, which will block reads that attempt to use that index. In particular, the query planner tries to take an `ACCESS SHARE` lock on every index of the table, regardless of the query, and so `REINDEX` blocks virtually any queries except for some prepared queries whose plan has been cached and which don't use this very index. In contrast, `DROP INDEX` momentarily takes an `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock on the parent table, blocking both writes and reads. The subsequent `CREATE INDEX` locks out writes but not reads; since the index is not there, no read will attempt to use it, meaning that there will be no blocking but reads might be forced into expensive sequential scans.

Reindexing a single index or table requires being the owner of that index or table. Reindexing a schema or database requires being the owner of that schema or database. Note specifically that it's thus possible for non-superusers to rebuild indexes of tables owned by other users. However, as a special exception, when `REINDEX DATABASE`, `REINDEX SCHEMA` or `REINDEX SYSTEM` is issued by a non-superuser, indexes on shared catalogs will be skipped unless the user owns the catalog (which typically won't be the case). Of course, superusers can always reindex anything.

Reindexing partitioned indexes or partitioned tables is supported with `REINDEX INDEX` or `REINDEX TABLE`, respectively. Each partition of the specified partitioned relation is reindexed in a separate transaction. Those commands cannot be used inside a transaction block when working on a partitioned table or index.

When using the `TABLESPACE` clause with `REINDEX` on a partitioned index or table, only the tablespace references of the leaf partitions are updated. As partitioned indexes are not updated, it is recommended to separately use `ALTER TABLE ONLY` on them so as any new partitions attached inherit the new tablespace. On failure, it may not have moved all the indexes to the new tablespace. Re-running the command will rebuild all the leaf partitions and move previously-unprocessed indexes to the new tablespace.

If `SCHEMA`, `DATABASE` or `SYSTEM` is used with `TABLESPACE`, system relations are skipped and a single `WARNING` will be generated. Indexes on `TOAST` tables are rebuilt, but not moved to the new tablespace.

## Rebuilding Indexes Concurrently

Rebuilding an index can interfere with regular operation of a database. Normally PostgreSQL locks the table whose index is rebuilt against writes and performs the entire index build with a single scan of the table. Other transactions can still read the table, but if they try to insert, update, or delete rows in the table they will block until the index rebuild is finished. This could have a severe effect if the system is a live production database. Very large tables can take many hours to be indexed, and even for smaller tables, an index rebuild can lock out writers for periods that are unacceptably long for a production system.

PostgreSQL supports rebuilding indexes with minimum locking of writes. This method is invoked by specifying the `CONCURRENTLY` option of `REINDEX`. When this option is used, PostgreSQL must perform two scans of the table for each index that needs to be rebuilt and wait for termination of all existing transactions that could potentially use the index. This method requires more total work than a standard index rebuild and takes significantly longer to complete as it needs to wait for unfinished transactions that might modify the index. However, since it allows normal operations to continue while the index is being rebuilt, this method is useful for rebuilding indexes in a production environment. Of course, the extra CPU, memory and I/O load imposed by the index rebuild may slow down other operations.

The following steps occur in a concurrent reindex. Each step is run in a separate transaction. If there are multiple indexes to be rebuilt, then each step loops through all the indexes before moving to the next step.

1. A new transient index definition is added to the catalog `pg_index`. This definition will be used to replace the old index. A `SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE` lock at session level is taken on the indexes being reindexed as well as their associated tables to prevent any schema modification while processing.
2. A first pass to build the index is done for each new index. Once the index is built, its flag `pg_index.indisready` is switched to “true” to make it ready for inserts, making it visible to other sessions once the transaction that performed the build is finished. This step is done in a separate transaction for each index.
3. Then a second pass is performed to add tuples that were added while the first pass was running. This step is also done in a separate transaction for each index.
4. All the constraints that refer to the index are changed to refer to the new index definition, and the names of the indexes are changed. At this point, `pg_index.indisvalid` is switched to “true” for the new index and to “false” for the old, and a cache invalidation is done causing all sessions that referenced the old index to be invalidated.
5. The old indexes have `pg_index.indisready` switched to “false” to prevent any new tuple insertions, after waiting for running queries that might reference the old index to complete.
6. The old indexes are dropped. The `SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE` session locks for the indexes and the table are released.

If a problem arises while rebuilding the indexes, such as a uniqueness violation in a unique index, the `REINDEX` command will fail but leave behind an “invalid” new index in addition to the pre-existing one. This index will be ignored for querying purposes because it might be incomplete; however it will still consume update overhead. The `psql \d` command will report such an index as `INVALID`:

```
postgres=# \d tab
           Table "public.tab"
  Column | Type   | Modifiers
-----+-----+-----
  col    | integer |
Indexes:
    "idx" btree (col)
    "idx_ccnew" btree (col) INVALID
```

If the index marked `INVALID` is suffixed `ccnew`, then it corresponds to the transient index created during the concurrent operation, and the recommended recovery method is to drop it using `DROP INDEX`, then attempt `REINDEX CONCURRENTLY` again. If the invalid index is instead suffixed `ccold`, it corresponds to the original index which could not be dropped; the recommended recovery method is to just drop said index, since the rebuild proper has been successful.

Regular index builds permit other regular index builds on the same table to occur simultaneously, but only one concurrent index build can occur on a table at a time. In both cases, no other types of schema modification on the table are allowed meanwhile. Another difference is that a regular `REINDEX TABLE` or `REINDEX INDEX` command can be performed within a transaction block, but `REINDEX CONCURRENTLY` cannot.

Like any long-running transaction, `REINDEX` on a table can affect which tuples can be removed by concurrent `VACUUM` on any other table.

`REINDEX SYSTEM` does not support `CONCURRENTLY` since system catalogs cannot be reindexed concurrently.

Furthermore, indexes for exclusion constraints cannot be reindexed concurrently. If such an index is named directly in this command, an error is raised. If a table or database with exclusion constraint indexes is reindexed concurrently, those indexes will be skipped. (It is possible to reindex such indexes without the `CONCURRENTLY` option.)

Each backend running `REINDEX` will report its progress in the `pg_stat_progress_create_index` view. See Section 28.4.4 for details.

## Examples

Rebuild a single index:

```
REINDEX INDEX my_index;
```

Rebuild all the indexes on the table `my_table`:

```
REINDEX TABLE my_table;
```

Rebuild all indexes in a particular database, without trusting the system indexes to be valid already:

```
$ export PGOPTIONS="-P"
$ psql broken_db
...
broken_db=> REINDEX DATABASE broken_db;
broken_db=> \q
```

Rebuild indexes for a table, without blocking read and write operations on involved relations while reindexing is in progress:

```
REINDEX TABLE CONCURRENTLY my_broken_table;
```

## Compatibility

There is no `REINDEX` command in the SQL standard.

## See Also

`CREATE INDEX`, `DROP INDEX`, `reindexdb`, Section 28.4.4

---

# RELEASE SAVEPOINT

RELEASE SAVEPOINT — release a previously defined savepoint

## Synopsis

```
RELEASE [ SAVEPOINT ] savepoint_name
```

## Description

RELEASE SAVEPOINT releases the named savepoint and all active savepoints that were created after the named savepoint, and frees their resources. All changes made since the creation of the savepoint that didn't already get rolled back are merged into the transaction or savepoint that was active when the named savepoint was created. Changes made after RELEASE SAVEPOINT will also be part of this active transaction or savepoint.

## Parameters

*savepoint\_name*

The name of the savepoint to release.

## Notes

Specifying a savepoint name that was not previously defined is an error.

It is not possible to release a savepoint when the transaction is in an aborted state; to do that, use ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT.

If multiple savepoints have the same name, only the most recently defined unreleased one is released. Repeated commands will release progressively older savepoints.

## Examples

To establish and later release a savepoint:

```
BEGIN;  
    INSERT INTO table1 VALUES (3);  
    SAVEPOINT my_savepoint;  
    INSERT INTO table1 VALUES (4);  
    RELEASE SAVEPOINT my_savepoint;  
COMMIT;
```

The above transaction will insert both 3 and 4.

A more complex example with multiple nested subtransactions:

```
BEGIN;  
    INSERT INTO table1 VALUES (1);  
    SAVEPOINT sp1;  
    INSERT INTO table1 VALUES (2);  
    SAVEPOINT sp2;
```

```
INSERT INTO table1 VALUES (3);  
RELEASE SAVEPOINT sp2;  
INSERT INTO table1 VALUES (4)); -- generates an error
```

In this example, the application requests the release of the savepoint `sp2`, which inserted 3. This changes the insert's transaction context to `sp1`. When the statement attempting to insert value 4 generates an error, the insertion of 2 and 4 are lost because they are in the same, now-rolled back savepoint, and value 3 is in the same transaction context. The application can now only choose one of these two commands, since all other commands will be ignored:

```
ROLLBACK;  
ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT sp1;
```

Choosing `ROLLBACK` will abort everything, including value 1, whereas `ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT sp1` will retain value 1 and allow the transaction to continue.

## Compatibility

This command conforms to the SQL standard. The standard specifies that the key word `SAVEPOINT` is mandatory, but PostgreSQL allows it to be omitted.

## See Also

`BEGIN`, `COMMIT`, `ROLLBACK`, `ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT`, `SAVEPOINT`

---

# RESET

RESET — restore the value of a run-time parameter to the default value

## Synopsis

```
RESET configuration_parameter
RESET ALL
```

## Description

RESET restores run-time parameters to their default values. RESET is an alternative spelling for

```
SET configuration_parameter TO DEFAULT
```

Refer to SET for details.

The default value is defined as the value that the parameter would have had, if no SET had ever been issued for it in the current session. The actual source of this value might be a compiled-in default, the configuration file, command-line options, or per-database or per-user default settings. This is subtly different from defining it as “the value that the parameter had at session start”, because if the value came from the configuration file, it will be reset to whatever is specified by the configuration file now. See Chapter 20 for details.

The transactional behavior of RESET is the same as SET: its effects will be undone by transaction rollback.

## Parameters

*configuration\_parameter*

Name of a settable run-time parameter. Available parameters are documented in Chapter 20 and on the SET reference page.

ALL

Resets all settable run-time parameters to default values.

## Examples

Set the `timezone` configuration variable to its default value:

```
RESET timezone;
```

## Compatibility

RESET is a PostgreSQL extension.

## See Also

SET, SHOW

---

# REVOKE

REVOKE — remove access privileges

## Synopsis

```
REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
    { { SELECT | INSERT | UPDATE | DELETE | TRUNCATE | REFERENCES |
      TRIGGER }
      [, ...] | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON { [ TABLE ] table_name [, ...]
        | ALL TABLES IN SCHEMA schema_name [, ...] }
    FROM role_specification [, ...]
    [ GRANTED BY role_specification ]
    [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

```
REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
    { { SELECT | INSERT | UPDATE | REFERENCES } ( column_name
      [, ...] )
      [, ...] | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] ( column_name [, ...] ) }
    ON [ TABLE ] table_name [, ...]
    FROM role_specification [, ...]
    [ GRANTED BY role_specification ]
    [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

```
REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
    { { USAGE | SELECT | UPDATE }
      [, ...] | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON { SEQUENCE sequence_name [, ...]
        | ALL SEQUENCES IN SCHEMA schema_name [, ...] }
    FROM role_specification [, ...]
    [ GRANTED BY role_specification ]
    [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

```
REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
    { { CREATE | CONNECT | TEMPORARY | TEMP } [, ...] | ALL
      [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON DATABASE database_name [, ...]
    FROM role_specification [, ...]
    [ GRANTED BY role_specification ]
    [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

```
REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
    { USAGE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON DOMAIN domain_name [, ...]
    FROM role_specification [, ...]
    [ GRANTED BY role_specification ]
    [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

```
REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
    { USAGE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER fdw_name [, ...]
    FROM role_specification [, ...]
    [ GRANTED BY role_specification ]
    [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```



```

REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
    { USAGE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON FOREIGN SERVER server_name [, ...]
    FROM role_specification [, ...]
    [ GRANTED BY role_specification ]
    [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
    { EXECUTE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON { { FUNCTION | PROCEDURE | ROUTINE } function_name
    | ( [ [ argmode ] [ arg_name ] arg_type [, ...] ] ) } [, ...]
    | ALL { FUNCTIONS | PROCEDURES | ROUTINES } IN
    SCHEMA schema_name [, ...] }
    FROM role_specification [, ...]
    [ GRANTED BY role_specification ]
    [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
    { USAGE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON LANGUAGE lang_name [, ...]
    FROM role_specification [, ...]
    [ GRANTED BY role_specification ]
    [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
    { { SELECT | UPDATE } [, ...] | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON LARGE OBJECT loid [, ...]
    FROM role_specification [, ...]
    [ GRANTED BY role_specification ]
    [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
    { { SET | ALTER SYSTEM } [, ...] | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON PARAMETER configuration_parameter [, ...]
    FROM role_specification [, ...]
    [ GRANTED BY role_specification ]
    [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
    { { CREATE | USAGE } [, ...] | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON SCHEMA schema_name [, ...]
    FROM role_specification [, ...]
    [ GRANTED BY role_specification ]
    [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
    { CREATE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON TABLESPACE tablespace_name [, ...]
    FROM role_specification [, ...]
    [ GRANTED BY role_specification ]
    [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

REVOKE [ GRANT OPTION FOR ]
    { USAGE | ALL [ PRIVILEGES ] }
    ON TYPE type_name [, ...]
    FROM role_specification [, ...]
    [ GRANTED BY role_specification ]

```

```

[ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

REVOKE [ { ADMIN | INHERIT | SET } OPTION FOR ]
       role_name [, ...] FROM role_specification [, ...]
       [ GRANTED BY role_specification ]
       [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]

```

where *role\_specification* can be:

```

[ GROUP ] role_name
| PUBLIC
| CURRENT_ROLE
| CURRENT_USER
| SESSION_USER

```

## Description

The REVOKE command revokes previously granted privileges from one or more roles. The key word PUBLIC refers to the implicitly defined group of all roles.

See the description of the GRANT command for the meaning of the privilege types.

Note that any particular role will have the sum of privileges granted directly to it, privileges granted to any role it is presently a member of, and privileges granted to PUBLIC. Thus, for example, revoking SELECT privilege from PUBLIC does not necessarily mean that all roles have lost SELECT privilege on the object: those who have it granted directly or via another role will still have it. Similarly, revoking SELECT from a user might not prevent that user from using SELECT if PUBLIC or another membership role still has SELECT rights.

If GRANT OPTION FOR is specified, only the grant option for the privilege is revoked, not the privilege itself. Otherwise, both the privilege and the grant option are revoked.

If a user holds a privilege with grant option and has granted it to other users then the privileges held by those other users are called dependent privileges. If the privilege or the grant option held by the first user is being revoked and dependent privileges exist, those dependent privileges are also revoked if CASCADE is specified; if it is not, the revoke action will fail. This recursive revocation only affects privileges that were granted through a chain of users that is traceable to the user that is the subject of this REVOKE command. Thus, the affected users might effectively keep the privilege if it was also granted through other users.

When revoking privileges on a table, the corresponding column privileges (if any) are automatically revoked on each column of the table, as well. On the other hand, if a role has been granted privileges on a table, then revoking the same privileges from individual columns will have no effect.

When revoking membership in a role, GRANT OPTION is instead called ADMIN OPTION, but the behavior is similar. Note that, in releases prior to PostgreSQL 16, dependent privileges were not tracked for grants of role membership, and thus CASCADE had no effect for role membership. This is no longer the case. Note also that this form of the command does not allow the noise word GROUP in *role\_specification*.

Just as ADMIN OPTION can be removed from an existing role grant, it is also possible to revoke INHERIT OPTION or SET OPTION. This is equivalent to setting the value of the corresponding option to FALSE.

## Notes

A user can only revoke privileges that were granted directly by that user. If, for example, user A has granted a privilege with grant option to user B, and user B has in turn granted it to user C, then user

A cannot revoke the privilege directly from C. Instead, user A could revoke the grant option from user B and use the `CASCADE` option so that the privilege is in turn revoked from user C. For another example, if both A and B have granted the same privilege to C, A can revoke their own grant but not B's grant, so C will still effectively have the privilege.

When a non-owner of an object attempts to `REVOKE` privileges on the object, the command will fail outright if the user has no privileges whatsoever on the object. As long as some privilege is available, the command will proceed, but it will revoke only those privileges for which the user has grant options. The `REVOKE ALL PRIVILEGES` forms will issue a warning message if no grant options are held, while the other forms will issue a warning if grant options for any of the privileges specifically named in the command are not held. (In principle these statements apply to the object owner as well, but since the owner is always treated as holding all grant options, the cases can never occur.)

If a superuser chooses to issue a `GRANT` or `REVOKE` command, the command is performed as though it were issued by the owner of the affected object. (Since roles do not have owners, in the case of a `GRANT` of role membership, the command is performed as though it were issued by the bootstrap superuser.) Since all privileges ultimately come from the object owner (possibly indirectly via chains of grant options), it is possible for a superuser to revoke all privileges, but this might require use of `CASCADE` as stated above.

`REVOKE` can also be done by a role that is not the owner of the affected object, but is a member of the role that owns the object, or is a member of a role that holds privileges `WITH GRANT OPTION` on the object. In this case the command is performed as though it were issued by the containing role that actually owns the object or holds the privileges `WITH GRANT OPTION`. For example, if table `t1` is owned by role `g1`, of which role `u1` is a member, then `u1` can revoke privileges on `t1` that are recorded as being granted by `g1`. This would include grants made by `u1` as well as by other members of role `g1`.

If the role executing `REVOKE` holds privileges indirectly via more than one role membership path, it is unspecified which containing role will be used to perform the command. In such cases it is best practice to use `SET ROLE` to become the specific role you want to do the `REVOKE` as. Failure to do so might lead to revoking privileges other than the ones you intended, or not revoking anything at all.

See Section 5.7 for more information about specific privilege types, as well as how to inspect objects' privileges.

## Examples

Revoke insert privilege for the public on table `films`:

```
REVOKE INSERT ON films FROM PUBLIC;
```

Revoke all privileges from user `manuel` on view `kinds`:

```
REVOKE ALL PRIVILEGES ON kinds FROM manuel;
```

Note that this actually means “revoke all privileges that I granted”.

Revoke membership in role `admins` from user `joe`:

```
REVOKE admins FROM joe;
```

## Compatibility

The compatibility notes of the `GRANT` command apply analogously to `REVOKE`. The keyword `RESTRICT` or `CASCADE` is required according to the standard, but PostgreSQL assumes `RESTRICT` by default.

## See Also

GRANT, ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES

---

# ROLLBACK

ROLLBACK — abort the current transaction

## Synopsis

```
ROLLBACK [ WORK | TRANSACTION ] [ AND [ NO ] CHAIN ]
```

## Description

ROLLBACK rolls back the current transaction and causes all the updates made by the transaction to be discarded.

## Parameters

WORK  
TRANSACTION

Optional key words. They have no effect.

AND CHAIN

If AND CHAIN is specified, a new (not aborted) transaction is immediately started with the same transaction characteristics (see SET TRANSACTION) as the just finished one. Otherwise, no new transaction is started.

## Notes

Use COMMIT to successfully terminate a transaction.

Issuing ROLLBACK outside of a transaction block emits a warning and otherwise has no effect. ROLLBACK AND CHAIN outside of a transaction block is an error.

## Examples

To abort all changes:

```
ROLLBACK ;
```

## Compatibility

The command ROLLBACK conforms to the SQL standard. The form ROLLBACK TRANSACTION is a PostgreSQL extension.

## See Also

BEGIN, COMMIT, ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT

---

# ROLLBACK PREPARED

ROLLBACK PREPARED — cancel a transaction that was earlier prepared for two-phase commit

## Synopsis

```
ROLLBACK PREPARED transaction_id
```

## Description

ROLLBACK PREPARED rolls back a transaction that is in prepared state.

## Parameters

*transaction\_id*

The transaction identifier of the transaction that is to be rolled back.

## Notes

To roll back a prepared transaction, you must be either the same user that executed the transaction originally, or a superuser. But you do not have to be in the same session that executed the transaction.

This command cannot be executed inside a transaction block. The prepared transaction is rolled back immediately.

All currently available prepared transactions are listed in the `pg_prepared_xacts` system view.

## Examples

Roll back the transaction identified by the transaction identifier `foobar`:

```
ROLLBACK PREPARED 'foobar';
```

## Compatibility

ROLLBACK PREPARED is a PostgreSQL extension. It is intended for use by external transaction management systems, some of which are covered by standards (such as X/Open XA), but the SQL side of those systems is not standardized.

## See Also

PREPARE TRANSACTION, COMMIT PREPARED

---

# ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT

ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT — roll back to a savepoint

## Synopsis

```
ROLLBACK [ WORK | TRANSACTION ] TO [ SAVEPOINT ] savepoint_name
```

## Description

Roll back all commands that were executed after the savepoint was established and then start a new subtransaction at the same transaction level. The savepoint remains valid and can be rolled back to again later, if needed.

ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT implicitly destroys all savepoints that were established after the named savepoint.

## Parameters

*savepoint\_name*

The savepoint to roll back to.

## Notes

Use `RELEASE SAVEPOINT` to destroy a savepoint without discarding the effects of commands executed after it was established.

Specifying a savepoint name that has not been established is an error.

Cursors have somewhat non-transactional behavior with respect to savepoints. Any cursor that is opened inside a savepoint will be closed when the savepoint is rolled back. If a previously opened cursor is affected by a `FETCH` or `MOVE` command inside a savepoint that is later rolled back, the cursor remains at the position that `FETCH` left it pointing to (that is, the cursor motion caused by `FETCH` is not rolled back). Closing a cursor is not undone by rolling back, either. However, other side-effects caused by the cursor's query (such as side-effects of volatile functions called by the query) *are* rolled back if they occur during a savepoint that is later rolled back. A cursor whose execution causes a transaction to abort is put in a cannot-execute state, so while the transaction can be restored using `ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT`, the cursor can no longer be used.

## Examples

To undo the effects of the commands executed after `my_savepoint` was established:

```
ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT my_savepoint;
```

Cursor positions are not affected by savepoint rollback:

```
BEGIN;
```

```
DECLARE foo CURSOR FOR SELECT 1 UNION SELECT 2;
```

```
SAVEPOINT foo;

FETCH 1 FROM foo;
?column?
-----
      1

ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT foo;

FETCH 1 FROM foo;
?column?
-----
      2

COMMIT;
```

## Compatibility

The SQL standard specifies that the key word `SAVEPOINT` is mandatory, but PostgreSQL and Oracle allow it to be omitted. SQL allows only `WORK`, not `TRANSACTION`, as a noise word after `ROLLBACK`. Also, SQL has an optional clause `AND [ NO ] CHAIN` which is not currently supported by PostgreSQL. Otherwise, this command conforms to the SQL standard.

## See Also

`BEGIN`, `COMMIT`, `RELEASE SAVEPOINT`, `ROLLBACK`, `SAVEPOINT`



---

# SAVEPOINT

SAVEPOINT — define a new savepoint within the current transaction

## Synopsis

```
SAVEPOINT savepoint_name
```

## Description

SAVEPOINT establishes a new savepoint within the current transaction.

A savepoint is a special mark inside a transaction that allows all commands that are executed after it was established to be rolled back, restoring the transaction state to what it was at the time of the savepoint.

## Parameters

*savepoint\_name*

The name to give to the new savepoint. If savepoints with the same name already exist, they will be inaccessible until newer identically-named savepoints are released.

## Notes

Use `ROLLBACK TO` to rollback to a savepoint. Use `RELEASE SAVEPOINT` to destroy a savepoint, keeping the effects of commands executed after it was established.

Savepoints can only be established when inside a transaction block. There can be multiple savepoints defined within a transaction.

## Examples

To establish a savepoint and later undo the effects of all commands executed after it was established:

```
BEGIN;  
  INSERT INTO table1 VALUES (1);  
  SAVEPOINT my_savepoint;  
  INSERT INTO table1 VALUES (2);  
  ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT my_savepoint;  
  INSERT INTO table1 VALUES (3);  
COMMIT;
```

The above transaction will insert the values 1 and 3, but not 2.

To establish and later destroy a savepoint:

```
BEGIN;  
  INSERT INTO table1 VALUES (3);  
  SAVEPOINT my_savepoint;  
  INSERT INTO table1 VALUES (4);  
  RELEASE SAVEPOINT my_savepoint;
```

```
COMMIT;
```

The above transaction will insert both 3 and 4.

To use a single savepoint name:

```
BEGIN;
  INSERT INTO table1 VALUES (1);
  SAVEPOINT my_savepoint;
  INSERT INTO table1 VALUES (2);
  SAVEPOINT my_savepoint;
  INSERT INTO table1 VALUES (3);

  -- rollback to the second savepoint
  ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT my_savepoint;
  SELECT * FROM table1;                -- shows rows 1 and 2

  -- release the second savepoint
  RELEASE SAVEPOINT my_savepoint;

  -- rollback to the first savepoint
  ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT my_savepoint;
  SELECT * FROM table1;                -- shows only row 1
COMMIT;
```

The above transaction shows row 3 being rolled back first, then row 2.

## Compatibility

SQL requires a savepoint to be destroyed automatically when another savepoint with the same name is established. In PostgreSQL, the old savepoint is kept, though only the more recent one will be used when rolling back or releasing. (Releasing the newer savepoint with `RELEASE SAVEPOINT` will cause the older one to again become accessible to `ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT` and `RELEASE SAVEPOINT`.) Otherwise, `SAVEPOINT` is fully SQL conforming.

## See Also

`BEGIN`, `COMMIT`, `RELEASE SAVEPOINT`, `ROLLBACK`, `ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT`

---

# SECURITY LABEL

SECURITY LABEL — define or change a security label applied to an object

## Synopsis

```
SECURITY LABEL [ FOR provider ] ON
{
    TABLE object_name |
    COLUMN table_name.column_name |
    AGGREGATE aggregate_name ( aggregate_signature ) |
    DATABASE object_name |
    DOMAIN object_name |
    EVENT TRIGGER object_name |
    FOREIGN TABLE object_name
    FUNCTION function_name [ ( [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype
    [ , ... ] ) ] |
    LARGE OBJECT large_object_oid |
    MATERIALIZED VIEW object_name |
    [ PROCEDURAL ] LANGUAGE object_name |
    PROCEDURE procedure_name [ ( [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype
    [ , ... ] ) ] |
    PUBLICATION object_name |
    ROLE object_name |
    ROUTINE routine_name [ ( [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype
    [ , ... ] ) ] |
    SCHEMA object_name |
    SEQUENCE object_name |
    SUBSCRIPTION object_name |
    TABLESPACE object_name |
    TYPE object_name |
    VIEW object_name
} IS { string_literal | NULL }
```

where *aggregate\_signature* is:

```
* |
[ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype [ , ... ] |
[ [ argmode ] [ argname ] argtype [ , ... ] ] ORDER BY [ argmode ]
[ argname ] argtype [ , ... ]
```

## Description

SECURITY LABEL applies a security label to a database object. An arbitrary number of security labels, one per label provider, can be associated with a given database object. Label providers are loadable modules which register themselves by using the function `register_label_provider`.

### Note

`register_label_provider` is not an SQL function; it can only be called from C code loaded into the backend.

The label provider determines whether a given label is valid and whether it is permissible to assign that label to a given object. The meaning of a given label is likewise at the discretion of the label provider. PostgreSQL places no restrictions on whether or how a label provider must interpret security labels; it merely provides a mechanism for storing them. In practice, this facility is intended to allow integration with label-based mandatory access control (MAC) systems such as SELinux. Such systems make all access control decisions based on object labels, rather than traditional discretionary access control (DAC) concepts such as users and groups.

## Parameters

*object\_name*  
*table\_name.column\_name*  
*aggregate\_name*  
*function\_name*  
*procedure\_name*  
*routine\_name*

The name of the object to be labeled. Names of objects that reside in schemas (tables, functions, etc.) can be schema-qualified.

*provider*

The name of the provider with which this label is to be associated. The named provider must be loaded and must consent to the proposed labeling operation. If exactly one provider is loaded, the provider name may be omitted for brevity.

*argmode*

The mode of a function, procedure, or aggregate argument: IN, OUT, INOUT, or VARIADIC. If omitted, the default is IN. Note that SECURITY LABEL does not actually pay any attention to OUT arguments, since only the input arguments are needed to determine the function's identity. So it is sufficient to list the IN, INOUT, and VARIADIC arguments.

*argname*

The name of a function, procedure, or aggregate argument. Note that SECURITY LABEL does not actually pay any attention to argument names, since only the argument data types are needed to determine the function's identity.

*argtype*

The data type of a function, procedure, or aggregate argument.

*large\_object\_oid*

The OID of the large object.

PROCEDURAL

This is a noise word.

*string\_literal*

The new setting of the security label, written as a string literal.

NULL

Write NULL to drop the security label.

## Examples

The following example shows how the security label of a table could be set or changed:

```
SECURITY LABEL FOR selinux ON TABLE mytable IS  
'system_u:object_r:sepgsql_table_t:s0';
```

To remove the label:

```
SECURITY LABEL FOR selinux ON TABLE mytable IS NULL;
```

## Compatibility

There is no `SECURITY LABEL` command in the SQL standard.

## See Also

`sepgsql`, `src/test/modules/dummy_seclabel`

---

# SELECT

SELECT, TABLE, WITH — retrieve rows from a table or view

## Synopsis

```
[ WITH [ RECURSIVE ] with_query [, ...] ]
SELECT [ ALL | DISTINCT [ ON ( expression [, ...] ) ] ]
      [ * | expression [ [ AS ] output_name ] [, ...] ]
      [ FROM from_item [, ...] ]
      [ WHERE condition ]
      [ GROUP BY [ ALL | DISTINCT ] grouping_element [, ...] ]
      [ HAVING condition ]
      [ WINDOW window_name AS ( window_definition ) [, ...] ]
      [ { UNION | INTERSECT | EXCEPT } [ ALL | DISTINCT ] select ]
      [ ORDER BY expression [ ASC | DESC | USING operator ] [ NULLS
{ FIRST | LAST } ] [, ...] ]
      [ LIMIT { count | ALL } ]
      [ OFFSET start [ ROW | ROWS ] ]
      [ FETCH { FIRST | NEXT } [ count ] { ROW | ROWS } { ONLY | WITH
TIES } ]
      [ FOR { UPDATE | NO KEY UPDATE | SHARE | KEY SHARE }
[ OF table_name [, ...] ] [ NOWAIT | SKIP LOCKED ] [...] ]
```

where *from\_item* can be one of:

```
      [ ONLY ] table_name [ * ] [ [ AS ] alias [ ( column_alias
[, ...] ) ] ]
      [ TABLESAMPLE sampling_method ( argument [, ...] )
[ REPEATABLE ( seed ) ] ]
      [ LATERAL ] ( select ) [ [ AS ] alias [ ( column_alias
[, ...] ) ] ]
      with_query_name [ [ AS ] alias [ ( column_alias [, ...] ) ] ]
      [ LATERAL ] function_name ( [ argument [, ...] ] )
      [ WITH ORDINALITY ] [ [ AS ] alias [ ( column_alias
[, ...] ) ] ]
      [ LATERAL ] function_name ( [ argument [, ...] ] ) [ AS ] alias
( column_definition [, ...] )
      [ LATERAL ] function_name ( [ argument [, ...] ] ) AS
( column_definition [, ...] )
      [ LATERAL ] ROWS FROM( function_name ( [ argument [, ...] ] )
[ AS ( column_definition [, ...] ) ] [, ...] )
      [ WITH ORDINALITY ] [ [ AS ] alias [ ( column_alias
[, ...] ) ] ]
      from_item join_type from_item { ON join_condition | USING
( join_column [, ...] ) [ AS join_using_alias ] }
      from_item NATURAL join_type from_item
      from_item CROSS JOIN from_item
```

and *grouping\_element* can be one of:

```
( )
expression
( expression [, ...] )
```

```

ROLLUP ( { expression | ( expression [, ...] ) } [, ...] )
CUBE ( { expression | ( expression [, ...] ) } [, ...] )
GROUPING SETS ( grouping_element [, ...] )

```

and *with\_query* is:

```

with_query_name [ ( column_name [, ...] ) ] AS [ [ NOT ]
MATERIALIZED ] ( select | values | insert | update | delete )
[ SEARCH { BREADTH | DEPTH } FIRST BY column_name [, ...]
SET search_seq_col_name ]
[ CYCLE column_name [, ...] SET cycle_mark_col_name
[ TO cycle_mark_value DEFAULT cycle_mark_default ]
USING cycle_path_col_name ]

```

```
TABLE [ ONLY ] table_name [ * ]
```

## Description

SELECT retrieves rows from zero or more tables. The general processing of SELECT is as follows:

1. All queries in the WITH list are computed. These effectively serve as temporary tables that can be referenced in the FROM list. A WITH query that is referenced more than once in FROM is computed only once, unless specified otherwise with NOT MATERIALIZED. (See WITH Clause below.)
2. All elements in the FROM list are computed. (Each element in the FROM list is a real or virtual table.) If more than one element is specified in the FROM list, they are cross-joined together. (See FROM Clause below.)
3. If the WHERE clause is specified, all rows that do not satisfy the condition are eliminated from the output. (See WHERE Clause below.)
4. If the GROUP BY clause is specified, or if there are aggregate function calls, the output is combined into groups of rows that match on one or more values, and the results of aggregate functions are computed. If the HAVING clause is present, it eliminates groups that do not satisfy the given condition. (See GROUP BY Clause and HAVING Clause below.) Although query output columns are nominally computed in the next step, they can also be referenced (by name or ordinal number) in the GROUP BY clause.
5. The actual output rows are computed using the SELECT output expressions for each selected row or row group. (See SELECT List below.)
6. SELECT DISTINCT eliminates duplicate rows from the result. SELECT DISTINCT ON eliminates rows that match on all the specified expressions. SELECT ALL (the default) will return all candidate rows, including duplicates. (See DISTINCT Clause below.)
7. Using the operators UNION, INTERSECT, and EXCEPT, the output of more than one SELECT statement can be combined to form a single result set. The UNION operator returns all rows that are in one or both of the result sets. The INTERSECT operator returns all rows that are strictly in both result sets. The EXCEPT operator returns the rows that are in the first result set but not in the second. In all three cases, duplicate rows are eliminated unless ALL is specified. The noise word DISTINCT can be added to explicitly specify eliminating duplicate rows. Notice that DISTINCT is the default behavior here, even though ALL is the default for SELECT itself. (See UNION Clause, INTERSECT Clause, and EXCEPT Clause below.)
8. If the ORDER BY clause is specified, the returned rows are sorted in the specified order. If ORDER BY is not given, the rows are returned in whatever order the system finds fastest to produce. (See ORDER BY Clause below.)
9. If the LIMIT (or FETCH FIRST) or OFFSET clause is specified, the SELECT statement only returns a subset of the result rows. (See LIMIT Clause below.)

10. If `FOR UPDATE`, `FOR NO KEY UPDATE`, `FOR SHARE` or `FOR KEY SHARE` is specified, the `SELECT` statement locks the selected rows against concurrent updates. (See The Locking Clause below.)

You must have `SELECT` privilege on each column used in a `SELECT` command. The use of `FOR NO KEY UPDATE`, `FOR UPDATE`, `FOR SHARE` or `FOR KEY SHARE` requires `UPDATE` privilege as well (for at least one column of each table so selected).

## Parameters

### WITH Clause

The `WITH` clause allows you to specify one or more subqueries that can be referenced by name in the primary query. The subqueries effectively act as temporary tables or views for the duration of the primary query. Each subquery can be a `SELECT`, `TABLE`, `VALUES`, `INSERT`, `UPDATE` or `DELETE` statement. When writing a data-modifying statement (`INSERT`, `UPDATE` or `DELETE`) in `WITH`, it is usual to include a `RETURNING` clause. It is the output of `RETURNING`, *not* the underlying table that the statement modifies, that forms the temporary table that is read by the primary query. If `RETURNING` is omitted, the statement is still executed, but it produces no output so it cannot be referenced as a table by the primary query.

A name (without schema qualification) must be specified for each `WITH` query. Optionally, a list of column names can be specified; if this is omitted, the column names are inferred from the subquery.

If `RECURSIVE` is specified, it allows a `SELECT` subquery to reference itself by name. Such a subquery must have the form

```
non_recursive_term UNION [ ALL | DISTINCT ] recursive_term
```

where the recursive self-reference must appear on the right-hand side of the `UNION`. Only one recursive self-reference is permitted per query. Recursive data-modifying statements are not supported, but you can use the results of a recursive `SELECT` query in a data-modifying statement. See Section 7.8 for an example.

Another effect of `RECURSIVE` is that `WITH` queries need not be ordered: a query can reference another one that is later in the list. (However, circular references, or mutual recursion, are not implemented.) Without `RECURSIVE`, `WITH` queries can only reference sibling `WITH` queries that are earlier in the `WITH` list.

When there are multiple queries in the `WITH` clause, `RECURSIVE` should be written only once, immediately after `WITH`. It applies to all queries in the `WITH` clause, though it has no effect on queries that do not use recursion or forward references.

The optional `SEARCH` clause computes a *search sequence column* that can be used for ordering the results of a recursive query in either breadth-first or depth-first order. The supplied column name list specifies the row key that is to be used for keeping track of visited rows. A column named *search\_seq\_col\_name* will be added to the result column list of the `WITH` query. This column can be ordered by in the outer query to achieve the respective ordering. See Section 7.8.2.1 for examples.

The optional `CYCLE` clause is used to detect cycles in recursive queries. The supplied column name list specifies the row key that is to be used for keeping track of visited rows. A column named *cycle\_mark\_col\_name* will be added to the result column list of the `WITH` query. This column will be set to *cycle\_mark\_value* when a cycle has been detected, else to *cycle\_mark\_default*. Furthermore, processing of the recursive union will stop when a cycle has been detected. *cycle\_mark\_value* and *cycle\_mark\_default* must be constants and they must be coercible to a common data type, and the data type must have an inequality operator. (The SQL standard requires that they be Boolean constants or character strings, but PostgreSQL does not require that.)



By default, `TRUE` and `FALSE` (of type `boolean`) are used. Furthermore, a column named `cycle_path_col_name` will be added to the result column list of the `WITH` query. This column is used internally for tracking visited rows. See Section 7.8.2.2 for examples.

Both the `SEARCH` and the `CYCLE` clause are only valid for recursive `WITH` queries. The `with_query` must be a `UNION` (or `UNION ALL`) of two `SELECT` (or equivalent) commands (no nested `UNIONS`). If both clauses are used, the column added by the `SEARCH` clause appears before the columns added by the `CYCLE` clause.

The primary query and the `WITH` queries are all (notionally) executed at the same time. This implies that the effects of a data-modifying statement in `WITH` cannot be seen from other parts of the query, other than by reading its `RETURNING` output. If two such data-modifying statements attempt to modify the same row, the results are unspecified.

A key property of `WITH` queries is that they are normally evaluated only once per execution of the primary query, even if the primary query refers to them more than once. In particular, data-modifying statements are guaranteed to be executed once and only once, regardless of whether the primary query reads all or any of their output.

However, a `WITH` query can be marked `NOT MATERIALIZED` to remove this guarantee. In that case, the `WITH` query can be folded into the primary query much as though it were a simple sub-`SELECT` in the primary query's `FROM` clause. This results in duplicate computations if the primary query refers to that `WITH` query more than once; but if each such use requires only a few rows of the `WITH` query's total output, `NOT MATERIALIZED` can provide a net savings by allowing the queries to be optimized jointly. `NOT MATERIALIZED` is ignored if it is attached to a `WITH` query that is recursive or is not side-effect-free (i.e., is not a plain `SELECT` containing no volatile functions).

By default, a side-effect-free `WITH` query is folded into the primary query if it is used exactly once in the primary query's `FROM` clause. This allows joint optimization of the two query levels in situations where that should be semantically invisible. However, such folding can be prevented by marking the `WITH` query as `MATERIALIZED`. That might be useful, for example, if the `WITH` query is being used as an optimization fence to prevent the planner from choosing a bad plan. PostgreSQL versions before v12 never did such folding, so queries written for older versions might rely on `WITH` to act as an optimization fence.

See Section 7.8 for additional information.

## FROM Clause

The `FROM` clause specifies one or more source tables for the `SELECT`. If multiple sources are specified, the result is the Cartesian product (cross join) of all the sources. But usually qualification conditions are added (via `WHERE`) to restrict the returned rows to a small subset of the Cartesian product.

The `FROM` clause can contain the following elements:

*table\_name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of an existing table or view. If `ONLY` is specified before the table name, only that table is scanned. If `ONLY` is not specified, the table and all its descendant tables (if any) are scanned. Optionally, `*` can be specified after the table name to explicitly indicate that descendant tables are included.

*alias*

A substitute name for the `FROM` item containing the alias. An alias is used for brevity or to eliminate ambiguity for self-joins (where the same table is scanned multiple times). When an alias is provided, it completely hides the actual name of the table or function; for example given `FROM foo AS f`, the remainder of the `SELECT` must refer to this `FROM` item as `f` not `foo`. If an alias is written, a column alias list can also be written to provide substitute names for one or more columns of the table.

```
TABLESAMPLE sampling_method ( argument [ , ... ] ) [ REPEATABLE ( seed  
 ) ]
```

A TABLESAMPLE clause after a *table\_name* indicates that the specified *sampling\_method* should be used to retrieve a subset of the rows in that table. This sampling precedes the application of any other filters such as WHERE clauses. The standard PostgreSQL distribution includes two sampling methods, BERNOULLI and SYSTEM, and other sampling methods can be installed in the database via extensions.

The BERNOULLI and SYSTEM sampling methods each accept a single *argument* which is the fraction of the table to sample, expressed as a percentage between 0 and 100. This argument can be any real-valued expression. (Other sampling methods might accept more or different arguments.) These two methods each return a randomly-chosen sample of the table that will contain approximately the specified percentage of the table's rows. The BERNOULLI method scans the whole table and selects or ignores individual rows independently with the specified probability. The SYSTEM method does block-level sampling with each block having the specified chance of being selected; all rows in each selected block are returned. The SYSTEM method is significantly faster than the BERNOULLI method when small sampling percentages are specified, but it may return a less-random sample of the table as a result of clustering effects.

The optional REPEATABLE clause specifies a *seed* number or expression to use for generating random numbers within the sampling method. The seed value can be any non-null floating-point value. Two queries that specify the same seed and *argument* values will select the same sample of the table, if the table has not been changed meanwhile. But different seed values will usually produce different samples. If REPEATABLE is not given then a new random sample is selected for each query, based upon a system-generated seed. Note that some add-on sampling methods do not accept REPEATABLE, and will always produce new samples on each use.

#### *select*

A sub-SELECT can appear in the FROM clause. This acts as though its output were created as a temporary table for the duration of this single SELECT command. Note that the sub-SELECT must be surrounded by parentheses, and an alias can be provided in the same way as for a table. A VALUES command can also be used here.

#### *with\_query\_name*

A WITH query is referenced by writing its name, just as though the query's name were a table name. (In fact, the WITH query hides any real table of the same name for the purposes of the primary query. If necessary, you can refer to a real table of the same name by schema-qualifying the table's name.) An alias can be provided in the same way as for a table.

#### *function\_name*

Function calls can appear in the FROM clause. (This is especially useful for functions that return result sets, but any function can be used.) This acts as though the function's output were created as a temporary table for the duration of this single SELECT command. If the function's result type is composite (including the case of a function with multiple OUT parameters), each attribute becomes a separate column in the implicit table.

When the optional WITH ORDINALITY clause is added to the function call, an additional column of type bigint will be appended to the function's result column(s). This column numbers the rows of the function's result set, starting from 1. By default, this column is named *ordinality*.

An alias can be provided in the same way as for a table. If an alias is written, a column alias list can also be written to provide substitute names for one or more attributes of the function's composite return type, including the ordinality column if present.

Multiple function calls can be combined into a single FROM-clause item by surrounding them with ROWS FROM( ... ). The output of such an item is the concatenation of the first row from each function, then the second row from each function, etc. If some of the functions produce

fewer rows than others, null values are substituted for the missing data, so that the total number of rows returned is always the same as for the function that produced the most rows.

If the function has been defined as returning the `record` data type, then an alias or the key word `AS` must be present, followed by a column definition list in the form ( `column_name data_type [ , ... ]` ). The column definition list must match the actual number and types of columns returned by the function.

When using the `ROWS FROM( ... )` syntax, if one of the functions requires a column definition list, it's preferred to put the column definition list after the function call inside `ROWS FROM( ... )`. A column definition list can be placed after the `ROWS FROM( ... )` construct only if there's just a single function and no `WITH ORDINALITY` clause.

To use `ORDINALITY` together with a column definition list, you must use the `ROWS FROM( ... )` syntax and put the column definition list inside `ROWS FROM( ... )`.

#### *join\_type*

One of

- `[ INNER ] JOIN`
- `LEFT [ OUTER ] JOIN`
- `RIGHT [ OUTER ] JOIN`
- `FULL [ OUTER ] JOIN`

For the `INNER` and `OUTER` join types, a join condition must be specified, namely exactly one of `ON join_condition`, `USING (join_column [ , ... ])`, or `NATURAL`. See below for the meaning.

A `JOIN` clause combines two `FROM` items, which for convenience we will refer to as “tables”, though in reality they can be any type of `FROM` item. Use parentheses if necessary to determine the order of nesting. In the absence of parentheses, `JOINS` nest left-to-right. In any case `JOIN` binds more tightly than the commas separating `FROM`-list items. All the `JOIN` options are just a notational convenience, since they do nothing you couldn't do with plain `FROM` and `WHERE`.

`LEFT OUTER JOIN` returns all rows in the qualified Cartesian product (i.e., all combined rows that pass its join condition), plus one copy of each row in the left-hand table for which there was no right-hand row that passed the join condition. This left-hand row is extended to the full width of the joined table by inserting null values for the right-hand columns. Note that only the `JOIN` clause's own condition is considered while deciding which rows have matches. Outer conditions are applied afterwards.

Conversely, `RIGHT OUTER JOIN` returns all the joined rows, plus one row for each unmatched right-hand row (extended with nulls on the left). This is just a notational convenience, since you could convert it to a `LEFT OUTER JOIN` by switching the left and right tables.

`FULL OUTER JOIN` returns all the joined rows, plus one row for each unmatched left-hand row (extended with nulls on the right), plus one row for each unmatched right-hand row (extended with nulls on the left).

#### *ON join\_condition*

*join\_condition* is an expression resulting in a value of type `boolean` (similar to a `WHERE` clause) that specifies which rows in a join are considered to match.

#### *USING ( join\_column [ , ... ] ) [ AS join\_using\_alias ]*

A clause of the form `USING ( a, b, ... )` is shorthand for `ON left_table.a = right_table.a AND left_table.b = right_table.b ...`. Also, `USING` implies that only one of each pair of equivalent columns will be included in the join output, not both.

If a *join\_using\_alias* name is specified, it provides a table alias for the join columns. Only the join columns listed in the `USING` clause are addressable by this name. Unlike a regular *alias*, this does not hide the names of the joined tables from the rest of the query. Also unlike a regular *alias*, you cannot write a column alias list — the output names of the join columns are the same as they appear in the `USING` list.

#### NATURAL

`NATURAL` is shorthand for a `USING` list that mentions all columns in the two tables that have matching names. If there are no common column names, `NATURAL` is equivalent to `ON TRUE`.

#### CROSS JOIN

`CROSS JOIN` is equivalent to `INNER JOIN ON (TRUE)`, that is, no rows are removed by qualification. They produce a simple Cartesian product, the same result as you get from listing the two tables at the top level of `FROM`, but restricted by the join condition (if any).

#### LATERAL

The `LATERAL` key word can precede a sub-`SELECT FROM` item. This allows the sub-`SELECT` to refer to columns of `FROM` items that appear before it in the `FROM` list. (Without `LATERAL`, each sub-`SELECT` is evaluated independently and so cannot cross-reference any other `FROM` item.)

`LATERAL` can also precede a function-call `FROM` item, but in this case it is a noise word, because the function expression can refer to earlier `FROM` items in any case.

A `LATERAL` item can appear at top level in the `FROM` list, or within a `JOIN` tree. In the latter case it can also refer to any items that are on the left-hand side of a `JOIN` that it is on the right-hand side of.

When a `FROM` item contains `LATERAL` cross-references, evaluation proceeds as follows: for each row of the `FROM` item providing the cross-referenced column(s), or set of rows of multiple `FROM` items providing the columns, the `LATERAL` item is evaluated using that row or row set's values of the columns. The resulting row(s) are joined as usual with the rows they were computed from. This is repeated for each row or set of rows from the column source table(s).

The column source table(s) must be `INNER` or `LEFT` joined to the `LATERAL` item, else there would not be a well-defined set of rows from which to compute each set of rows for the `LATERAL` item. Thus, although a construct such as `X RIGHT JOIN LATERAL Y` is syntactically valid, it is not actually allowed for `Y` to reference `X`.

## WHERE Clause

The optional `WHERE` clause has the general form

`WHERE condition`

where *condition* is any expression that evaluates to a result of type `boolean`. Any row that does not satisfy this condition will be eliminated from the output. A row satisfies the condition if it returns `true` when the actual row values are substituted for any variable references.

## GROUP BY Clause

The optional `GROUP BY` clause has the general form

`GROUP BY [ ALL | DISTINCT ] grouping_element [ , ... ]`

`GROUP BY` will condense into a single row all selected rows that share the same values for the grouped expressions. An *expression* used inside a *grouping\_element* can be an input column name,

or the name or ordinal number of an output column (SELECT list item), or an arbitrary expression formed from input-column values. In case of ambiguity, a GROUP BY name will be interpreted as an input-column name rather than an output column name.

If any of GROUPING SETS, ROLLUP or CUBE are present as grouping elements, then the GROUP BY clause as a whole defines some number of independent *grouping sets*. The effect of this is equivalent to constructing a UNION ALL between subqueries with the individual grouping sets as their GROUP BY clauses. The optional DISTINCT clause removes duplicate sets before processing; it does *not* transform the UNION ALL into a UNION DISTINCT. For further details on the handling of grouping sets see Section 7.2.4.

Aggregate functions, if any are used, are computed across all rows making up each group, producing a separate value for each group. (If there are aggregate functions but no GROUP BY clause, the query is treated as having a single group comprising all the selected rows.) The set of rows fed to each aggregate function can be further filtered by attaching a FILTER clause to the aggregate function call; see Section 4.2.7 for more information. When a FILTER clause is present, only those rows matching it are included in the input to that aggregate function.

When GROUP BY is present, or any aggregate functions are present, it is not valid for the SELECT list expressions to refer to ungrouped columns except within aggregate functions or when the ungrouped column is functionally dependent on the grouped columns, since there would otherwise be more than one possible value to return for an ungrouped column. A functional dependency exists if the grouped columns (or a subset thereof) are the primary key of the table containing the ungrouped column.

Keep in mind that all aggregate functions are evaluated before evaluating any “scalar” expressions in the HAVING clause or SELECT list. This means that, for example, a CASE expression cannot be used to skip evaluation of an aggregate function; see Section 4.2.14.

Currently, FOR NO KEY UPDATE, FOR UPDATE, FOR SHARE and FOR KEY SHARE cannot be specified with GROUP BY.

## HAVING Clause

The optional HAVING clause has the general form

HAVING *condition*

where *condition* is the same as specified for the WHERE clause.

HAVING eliminates group rows that do not satisfy the condition. HAVING is different from WHERE: WHERE filters individual rows before the application of GROUP BY, while HAVING filters group rows created by GROUP BY. Each column referenced in *condition* must unambiguously reference a grouping column, unless the reference appears within an aggregate function or the ungrouped column is functionally dependent on the grouping columns.

The presence of HAVING turns a query into a grouped query even if there is no GROUP BY clause. This is the same as what happens when the query contains aggregate functions but no GROUP BY clause. All the selected rows are considered to form a single group, and the SELECT list and HAVING clause can only reference table columns from within aggregate functions. Such a query will emit a single row if the HAVING condition is true, zero rows if it is not true.

Currently, FOR NO KEY UPDATE, FOR UPDATE, FOR SHARE and FOR KEY SHARE cannot be specified with HAVING.

## WINDOW Clause

The optional WINDOW clause has the general form

```
WINDOW window_name AS ( window_definition ) [, ...]
```

where *window\_name* is a name that can be referenced from OVER clauses or subsequent window definitions, and *window\_definition* is

```
[ existing_window_name ]  
[ PARTITION BY expression [, ...] ]  
[ ORDER BY expression [ ASC | DESC | USING operator ] [ NULLS  
  { FIRST | LAST } ] [, ...] ]  
[ frame_clause ]
```

If an *existing\_window\_name* is specified it must refer to an earlier entry in the WINDOW list; the new window copies its partitioning clause from that entry, as well as its ordering clause if any. In this case the new window cannot specify its own PARTITION BY clause, and it can specify ORDER BY only if the copied window does not have one. The new window always uses its own frame clause; the copied window must not specify a frame clause.

The elements of the PARTITION BY list are interpreted in much the same fashion as elements of a GROUP BY clause, except that they are always simple expressions and never the name or number of an output column. Another difference is that these expressions can contain aggregate function calls, which are not allowed in a regular GROUP BY clause. They are allowed here because windowing occurs after grouping and aggregation.

Similarly, the elements of the ORDER BY list are interpreted in much the same fashion as elements of a statement-level ORDER BY clause, except that the expressions are always taken as simple expressions and never the name or number of an output column.

The optional *frame\_clause* defines the *window frame* for window functions that depend on the frame (not all do). The window frame is a set of related rows for each row of the query (called the *current row*). The *frame\_clause* can be one of

```
{ RANGE | ROWS | GROUPS } frame_start [ frame_exclusion ]  
{ RANGE | ROWS | GROUPS } BETWEEN frame_start AND frame_end  
  [ frame_exclusion ]
```

where *frame\_start* and *frame\_end* can be one of

```
UNBOUNDED PRECEDING  
offset PRECEDING  
CURRENT ROW  
offset FOLLOWING  
UNBOUNDED FOLLOWING
```

and *frame\_exclusion* can be one of

```
EXCLUDE CURRENT ROW  
EXCLUDE GROUP  
EXCLUDE TIES  
EXCLUDE NO OTHERS
```

If *frame\_end* is omitted it defaults to CURRENT ROW. Restrictions are that *frame\_start* cannot be UNBOUNDED FOLLOWING, *frame\_end* cannot be UNBOUNDED PRECEDING, and the *frame\_end* choice cannot appear earlier in the above list of *frame\_start* and *frame\_end* options than the *frame\_start* choice does — for example RANGE BETWEEN CURRENT ROW AND *offset* PRECEDING is not allowed.

The default framing option is `RANGE UNBOUNDED PRECEDING`, which is the same as `RANGE BETWEEN UNBOUNDED PRECEDING AND CURRENT ROW`; it sets the frame to be all rows from the partition start up through the current row's last *peer* (a row that the window's `ORDER BY` clause considers equivalent to the current row; all rows are peers if there is no `ORDER BY`). In general, `UNBOUNDED PRECEDING` means that the frame starts with the first row of the partition, and similarly `UNBOUNDED FOLLOWING` means that the frame ends with the last row of the partition, regardless of `RANGE`, `ROWS` or `GROUPS` mode. In `ROWS` mode, `CURRENT ROW` means that the frame starts or ends with the current row; but in `RANGE` or `GROUPS` mode it means that the frame starts or ends with the current row's first or last peer in the `ORDER BY` ordering. The *offset* `PRECEDING` and *offset* `FOLLOWING` options vary in meaning depending on the frame mode. In `ROWS` mode, the *offset* is an integer indicating that the frame starts or ends that many rows before or after the current row. In `GROUPS` mode, the *offset* is an integer indicating that the frame starts or ends that many peer groups before or after the current row's peer group, where a *peer group* is a group of rows that are equivalent according to the window's `ORDER BY` clause. In `RANGE` mode, use of an *offset* option requires that there be exactly one `ORDER BY` column in the window definition. Then the frame contains those rows whose ordering column value is no more than *offset* less than (for `PRECEDING`) or more than (for `FOLLOWING`) the current row's ordering column value. In these cases the data type of the *offset* expression depends on the data type of the ordering column. For numeric ordering columns it is typically of the same type as the ordering column, but for datetime ordering columns it is an interval. In all these cases, the value of the *offset* must be non-null and non-negative. Also, while the *offset* does not have to be a simple constant, it cannot contain variables, aggregate functions, or window functions.

The *frame\_exclusion* option allows rows around the current row to be excluded from the frame, even if they would be included according to the frame start and frame end options. `EXCLUDE CURRENT ROW` excludes the current row from the frame. `EXCLUDE GROUP` excludes the current row and its ordering peers from the frame. `EXCLUDE TIES` excludes any peers of the current row from the frame, but not the current row itself. `EXCLUDE NO OTHERS` simply specifies explicitly the default behavior of not excluding the current row or its peers.

Beware that the `ROWS` mode can produce unpredictable results if the `ORDER BY` ordering does not order the rows uniquely. The `RANGE` and `GROUPS` modes are designed to ensure that rows that are peers in the `ORDER BY` ordering are treated alike: all rows of a given peer group will be in the frame or excluded from it.

The purpose of a `WINDOW` clause is to specify the behavior of *window functions* appearing in the query's `SELECT` list or `ORDER BY` clause. These functions can reference the `WINDOW` clause entries by name in their `OVER` clauses. A `WINDOW` clause entry does not have to be referenced anywhere, however; if it is not used in the query it is simply ignored. It is possible to use window functions without any `WINDOW` clause at all, since a window function call can specify its window definition directly in its `OVER` clause. However, the `WINDOW` clause saves typing when the same window definition is needed for more than one window function.

Currently, `FOR NO KEY UPDATE`, `FOR UPDATE`, `FOR SHARE` and `FOR KEY SHARE` cannot be specified with `WINDOW`.

Window functions are described in detail in Section 3.5, Section 4.2.8, and Section 7.2.5.

## SELECT List

The `SELECT` list (between the key words `SELECT` and `FROM`) specifies expressions that form the output rows of the `SELECT` statement. The expressions can (and usually do) refer to columns computed in the `FROM` clause.

Just as in a table, every output column of a `SELECT` has a name. In a simple `SELECT` this name is just used to label the column for display, but when the `SELECT` is a sub-query of a larger query, the name is seen by the larger query as the column name of the virtual table produced by the sub-query. To specify the name to use for an output column, write `AS output_name` after the column's expression. (You can omit `AS`, but only if the desired output name does not match any PostgreSQL keyword (see

Appendix C). For protection against possible future keyword additions, it is recommended that you always either write `AS` or double-quote the output name.) If you do not specify a column name, a name is chosen automatically by PostgreSQL. If the column's expression is a simple column reference then the chosen name is the same as that column's name. In more complex cases a function or type name may be used, or the system may fall back on a generated name such as `?column?`.

An output column's name can be used to refer to the column's value in `ORDER BY` and `GROUP BY` clauses, but not in the `WHERE` or `HAVING` clauses; there you must write out the expression instead.

Instead of an expression, `*` can be written in the output list as a shorthand for all the columns of the selected rows. Also, you can write `table_name.*` as a shorthand for the columns coming from just that table. In these cases it is not possible to specify new names with `AS`; the output column names will be the same as the table columns' names.

According to the SQL standard, the expressions in the output list should be computed before applying `DISTINCT`, `ORDER BY`, or `LIMIT`. This is obviously necessary when using `DISTINCT`, since otherwise it's not clear what values are being made distinct. However, in many cases it is convenient if output expressions are computed after `ORDER BY` and `LIMIT`; particularly if the output list contains any volatile or expensive functions. With that behavior, the order of function evaluations is more intuitive and there will not be evaluations corresponding to rows that never appear in the output. PostgreSQL will effectively evaluate output expressions after sorting and limiting, so long as those expressions are not referenced in `DISTINCT`, `ORDER BY` or `GROUP BY`. (As a counterexample, `SELECT f(x) FROM tab ORDER BY 1` clearly must evaluate `f(x)` before sorting.) Output expressions that contain set-returning functions are effectively evaluated after sorting and before limiting, so that `LIMIT` will act to cut off the output from a set-returning function.

### Note

PostgreSQL versions before 9.6 did not provide any guarantees about the timing of evaluation of output expressions versus sorting and limiting; it depended on the form of the chosen query plan.

## DISTINCT Clause

If `SELECT DISTINCT` is specified, all duplicate rows are removed from the result set (one row is kept from each group of duplicates). `SELECT ALL` specifies the opposite: all rows are kept; that is the default.

`SELECT DISTINCT ON ( expression [, ...] )` keeps only the first row of each set of rows where the given expressions evaluate to equal. The `DISTINCT ON` expressions are interpreted using the same rules as for `ORDER BY` (see above). Note that the “first row” of each set is unpredictable unless `ORDER BY` is used to ensure that the desired row appears first. For example:

```
SELECT DISTINCT ON (location) location, time, report
FROM weather_reports
ORDER BY location, time DESC;
```

retrieves the most recent weather report for each location. But if we had not used `ORDER BY` to force descending order of time values for each location, we'd have gotten a report from an unpredictable time for each location.

The `DISTINCT ON` expression(s) must match the leftmost `ORDER BY` expression(s). The `ORDER BY` clause will normally contain additional expression(s) that determine the desired precedence of rows within each `DISTINCT ON` group.

Currently, `FOR NO KEY UPDATE`, `FOR UPDATE`, `FOR SHARE` and `FOR KEY SHARE` cannot be specified with `DISTINCT`.



## UNION Clause

The UNION clause has this general form:

```
select_statement UNION [ ALL | DISTINCT ] select_statement
```

*select\_statement* is any SELECT statement without an ORDER BY, LIMIT, FOR NO KEY UPDATE, FOR UPDATE, FOR SHARE, or FOR KEY SHARE clause. (ORDER BY and LIMIT can be attached to a subexpression if it is enclosed in parentheses. Without parentheses, these clauses will be taken to apply to the result of the UNION, not to its right-hand input expression.)

The UNION operator computes the set union of the rows returned by the involved SELECT statements. A row is in the set union of two result sets if it appears in at least one of the result sets. The two SELECT statements that represent the direct operands of the UNION must produce the same number of columns, and corresponding columns must be of compatible data types.

The result of UNION does not contain any duplicate rows unless the ALL option is specified. ALL prevents elimination of duplicates. (Therefore, UNION ALL is usually significantly quicker than UNION; use ALL when you can.) DISTINCT can be written to explicitly specify the default behavior of eliminating duplicate rows.

Multiple UNION operators in the same SELECT statement are evaluated left to right, unless otherwise indicated by parentheses.

Currently, FOR NO KEY UPDATE, FOR UPDATE, FOR SHARE and FOR KEY SHARE cannot be specified either for a UNION result or for any input of a UNION.

## INTERSECT Clause

The INTERSECT clause has this general form:

```
select_statement INTERSECT [ ALL | DISTINCT ] select_statement
```

*select\_statement* is any SELECT statement without an ORDER BY, LIMIT, FOR NO KEY UPDATE, FOR UPDATE, FOR SHARE, or FOR KEY SHARE clause.

The INTERSECT operator computes the set intersection of the rows returned by the involved SELECT statements. A row is in the intersection of two result sets if it appears in both result sets.

The result of INTERSECT does not contain any duplicate rows unless the ALL option is specified. With ALL, a row that has  $m$  duplicates in the left table and  $n$  duplicates in the right table will appear  $\min(m,n)$  times in the result set. DISTINCT can be written to explicitly specify the default behavior of eliminating duplicate rows.

Multiple INTERSECT operators in the same SELECT statement are evaluated left to right, unless parentheses dictate otherwise. INTERSECT binds more tightly than UNION. That is, A UNION B INTERSECT C will be read as A UNION (B INTERSECT C).

Currently, FOR NO KEY UPDATE, FOR UPDATE, FOR SHARE and FOR KEY SHARE cannot be specified either for an INTERSECT result or for any input of an INTERSECT.

## EXCEPT Clause

The EXCEPT clause has this general form:

*select\_statement* EXCEPT [ ALL | DISTINCT ] *select\_statement*

*select\_statement* is any SELECT statement without an ORDER BY, LIMIT, FOR NO KEY UPDATE, FOR UPDATE, FOR SHARE, or FOR KEY SHARE clause.

The EXCEPT operator computes the set of rows that are in the result of the left SELECT statement but not in the result of the right one.

The result of EXCEPT does not contain any duplicate rows unless the ALL option is specified. With ALL, a row that has  $m$  duplicates in the left table and  $n$  duplicates in the right table will appear  $\max(m-n, 0)$  times in the result set. DISTINCT can be written to explicitly specify the default behavior of eliminating duplicate rows.

Multiple EXCEPT operators in the same SELECT statement are evaluated left to right, unless parentheses dictate otherwise. EXCEPT binds at the same level as UNION.

Currently, FOR NO KEY UPDATE, FOR UPDATE, FOR SHARE and FOR KEY SHARE cannot be specified either for an EXCEPT result or for any input of an EXCEPT.

## ORDER BY Clause

The optional ORDER BY clause has this general form:

ORDER BY *expression* [ ASC | DESC | USING *operator* ] [ NULLS { FIRST | LAST } ] [, ...]

The ORDER BY clause causes the result rows to be sorted according to the specified expression(s). If two rows are equal according to the leftmost expression, they are compared according to the next expression and so on. If they are equal according to all specified expressions, they are returned in an implementation-dependent order.

Each *expression* can be the name or ordinal number of an output column (SELECT list item), or it can be an arbitrary expression formed from input-column values.

The ordinal number refers to the ordinal (left-to-right) position of the output column. This feature makes it possible to define an ordering on the basis of a column that does not have a unique name. This is never absolutely necessary because it is always possible to assign a name to an output column using the AS clause.

It is also possible to use arbitrary expressions in the ORDER BY clause, including columns that do not appear in the SELECT output list. Thus the following statement is valid:

```
SELECT name FROM distributors ORDER BY code;
```

A limitation of this feature is that an ORDER BY clause applying to the result of a UNION, INTERSECT, or EXCEPT clause can only specify an output column name or number, not an expression.

If an ORDER BY expression is a simple name that matches both an output column name and an input column name, ORDER BY will interpret it as the output column name. This is the opposite of the choice that GROUP BY will make in the same situation. This inconsistency is made to be compatible with the SQL standard.

Optionally one can add the key word ASC (ascending) or DESC (descending) after any expression in the ORDER BY clause. If not specified, ASC is assumed by default. Alternatively, a specific ordering operator name can be specified in the USING clause. An ordering operator must be a less-than or greater-than member of some B-tree operator family. ASC is usually equivalent to USING < and DESC is usually equivalent to USING >. (But the creator of a user-defined data type can define exactly what the default sort ordering is, and it might correspond to operators with other names.)

If `NULLS LAST` is specified, null values sort after all non-null values; if `NULLS FIRST` is specified, null values sort before all non-null values. If neither is specified, the default behavior is `NULLS LAST` when `ASC` is specified or implied, and `NULLS FIRST` when `DESC` is specified (thus, the default is to act as though nulls are larger than non-nulls). When `USING` is specified, the default nulls ordering depends on whether the operator is a less-than or greater-than operator.

Note that ordering options apply only to the expression they follow; for example `ORDER BY x, y DESC` does not mean the same thing as `ORDER BY x DESC, y DESC`.

Character-string data is sorted according to the collation that applies to the column being sorted. That can be overridden at need by including a `COLLATE` clause in the *expression*, for example `ORDER BY mycolumn COLLATE "en_US"`. For more information see Section 4.2.10 and Section 24.2.

## LIMIT Clause

The `LIMIT` clause consists of two independent sub-clauses:

```
LIMIT { count | ALL }  
OFFSET start
```

The parameter *count* specifies the maximum number of rows to return, while *start* specifies the number of rows to skip before starting to return rows. When both are specified, *start* rows are skipped before starting to count the *count* rows to be returned.

If the *count* expression evaluates to `NULL`, it is treated as `LIMIT ALL`, i.e., no limit. If *start* evaluates to `NULL`, it is treated the same as `OFFSET 0`.

SQL:2008 introduced a different syntax to achieve the same result, which PostgreSQL also supports. It is:

```
OFFSET start { ROW | ROWS }  
FETCH { FIRST | NEXT } [ count ] { ROW | ROWS } { ONLY | WITH  
TIES }
```

In this syntax, the *start* or *count* value is required by the standard to be a literal constant, a parameter, or a variable name; as a PostgreSQL extension, other expressions are allowed, but will generally need to be enclosed in parentheses to avoid ambiguity. If *count* is omitted in a `FETCH` clause, it defaults to 1. The `WITH TIES` option is used to return any additional rows that tie for the last place in the result set according to the `ORDER BY` clause; `ORDER BY` is mandatory in this case, and `SKIP LOCKED` is not allowed. `ROW` and `ROWS` as well as `FIRST` and `NEXT` are noise words that don't influence the effects of these clauses. According to the standard, the `OFFSET` clause must come before the `FETCH` clause if both are present; but PostgreSQL is laxer and allows either order.

When using `LIMIT`, it is a good idea to use an `ORDER BY` clause that constrains the result rows into a unique order. Otherwise you will get an unpredictable subset of the query's rows — you might be asking for the tenth through twentieth rows, but tenth through twentieth in what ordering? You don't know what ordering unless you specify `ORDER BY`.

The query planner takes `LIMIT` into account when generating a query plan, so you are very likely to get different plans (yielding different row orders) depending on what you use for `LIMIT` and `OFFSET`. Thus, using different `LIMIT/OFFSET` values to select different subsets of a query result *will give inconsistent results* unless you enforce a predictable result ordering with `ORDER BY`. This is not a bug; it is an inherent consequence of the fact that SQL does not promise to deliver the results of a query in any particular order unless `ORDER BY` is used to constrain the order.

It is even possible for repeated executions of the same `LIMIT` query to return different subsets of the rows of a table, if there is not an `ORDER BY` to enforce selection of a deterministic subset. Again, this is not a bug; determinism of the results is simply not guaranteed in such a case.

## The Locking Clause

FOR UPDATE, FOR NO KEY UPDATE, FOR SHARE and FOR KEY SHARE are *locking clauses*; they affect how SELECT locks rows as they are obtained from the table.

The locking clause has the general form

```
FOR lock_strength [ OF table_name [, ...] ] [ NOWAIT | SKIP  
  LOCKED ]
```

where *lock\_strength* can be one of

```
UPDATE  
NO KEY UPDATE  
SHARE  
KEY SHARE
```

For more information on each row-level lock mode, refer to Section 13.3.2.

To prevent the operation from waiting for other transactions to commit, use either the NOWAIT or SKIP LOCKED option. With NOWAIT, the statement reports an error, rather than waiting, if a selected row cannot be locked immediately. With SKIP LOCKED, any selected rows that cannot be immediately locked are skipped. Skipping locked rows provides an inconsistent view of the data, so this is not suitable for general purpose work, but can be used to avoid lock contention with multiple consumers accessing a queue-like table. Note that NOWAIT and SKIP LOCKED apply only to the row-level lock(s) — the required ROW SHARE table-level lock is still taken in the ordinary way (see Chapter 13). You can use LOCK with the NOWAIT option first, if you need to acquire the table-level lock without waiting.

If specific tables are named in a locking clause, then only rows coming from those tables are locked; any other tables used in the SELECT are simply read as usual. A locking clause without a table list affects all tables used in the statement. If a locking clause is applied to a view or sub-query, it affects all tables used in the view or sub-query. However, these clauses do not apply to WITH queries referenced by the primary query. If you want row locking to occur within a WITH query, specify a locking clause within the WITH query.

Multiple locking clauses can be written if it is necessary to specify different locking behavior for different tables. If the same table is mentioned (or implicitly affected) by more than one locking clause, then it is processed as if it was only specified by the strongest one. Similarly, a table is processed as NOWAIT if that is specified in any of the clauses affecting it. Otherwise, it is processed as SKIP LOCKED if that is specified in any of the clauses affecting it.

The locking clauses cannot be used in contexts where returned rows cannot be clearly identified with individual table rows; for example they cannot be used with aggregation.

When a locking clause appears at the top level of a SELECT query, the rows that are locked are exactly those that are returned by the query; in the case of a join query, the rows locked are those that contribute to returned join rows. In addition, rows that satisfied the query conditions as of the query snapshot will be locked, although they will not be returned if they were updated after the snapshot and no longer satisfy the query conditions. If a LIMIT is used, locking stops once enough rows have been returned to satisfy the limit (but note that rows skipped over by OFFSET will get locked). Similarly, if a locking clause is used in a cursor's query, only rows actually fetched or stepped past by the cursor will be locked.

When a locking clause appears in a sub-SELECT, the rows locked are those returned to the outer query by the sub-query. This might involve fewer rows than inspection of the sub-query alone would suggest, since conditions from the outer query might be used to optimize execution of the sub-query. For example,

```
SELECT * FROM (SELECT * FROM mytable FOR UPDATE) ss WHERE col1 = 5;
```

will lock only rows having `col1 = 5`, even though that condition is not textually within the sub-query.

Previous releases failed to preserve a lock which is upgraded by a later savepoint. For example, this code:

```
BEGIN;
SELECT * FROM mytable WHERE key = 1 FOR UPDATE;
SAVEPOINT s;
UPDATE mytable SET ... WHERE key = 1;
ROLLBACK TO s;
```

would fail to preserve the `FOR UPDATE` lock after the `ROLLBACK TO`. This has been fixed in release 9.3.

### Caution

It is possible for a `SELECT` command running at the `READ COMMITTED` transaction isolation level and using `ORDER BY` and a locking clause to return rows out of order. This is because `ORDER BY` is applied first. The command sorts the result, but might then block trying to obtain a lock on one or more of the rows. Once the `SELECT` unblocks, some of the ordering column values might have been modified, leading to those rows appearing to be out of order (though they are in order in terms of the original column values). This can be worked around at need by placing the `FOR UPDATE/SHARE` clause in a sub-query, for example

```
SELECT * FROM (SELECT * FROM mytable FOR UPDATE) ss ORDER BY
column1;
```

Note that this will result in locking all rows of `mytable`, whereas `FOR UPDATE` at the top level would lock only the actually returned rows. This can make for a significant performance difference, particularly if the `ORDER BY` is combined with `LIMIT` or other restrictions. So this technique is recommended only if concurrent updates of the ordering columns are expected and a strictly sorted result is required.

At the `REPEATABLE READ` or `SERIALIZABLE` transaction isolation level this would cause a serialization failure (with an `SQLSTATE` of '40001'), so there is no possibility of receiving rows out of order under these isolation levels.

## TABLE Command

The command

```
TABLE name
```

is equivalent to

```
SELECT * FROM name
```

It can be used as a top-level command or as a space-saving syntax variant in parts of complex queries. Only the `WITH`, `UNION`, `INTERSECT`, `EXCEPT`, `ORDER BY`, `LIMIT`, `OFFSET`, `FETCH` and `FOR` locking clauses can be used with `TABLE`; the `WHERE` clause and any form of aggregation cannot be used.

## Examples

To join the table `films` with the table `distributors`:

```
SELECT f.title, f.did, d.name, f.date_prod, f.kind
      FROM distributors d JOIN films f USING (did);
```

title	did	name	date_prod	kind
The Third Man	101	British Lion	1949-12-23	Drama
The African Queen	101	British Lion	1951-08-11	Romantic
...				

To sum the column `len` of all films and group the results by `kind`:

```
SELECT kind, sum(len) AS total FROM films GROUP BY kind;
```

kind	total
Action	07:34
Comedy	02:58
Drama	14:28
Musical	06:42
Romantic	04:38

To sum the column `len` of all films, group the results by `kind` and show those group totals that are less than 5 hours:

```
SELECT kind, sum(len) AS total
      FROM films
      GROUP BY kind
      HAVING sum(len) < interval '5 hours';
```

kind	total
Comedy	02:58
Romantic	04:38

The following two examples are identical ways of sorting the individual results according to the contents of the second column (`name`):

```
SELECT * FROM distributors ORDER BY name;
SELECT * FROM distributors ORDER BY 2;
```

did	name
109	20th Century Fox
110	Bavaria Atelier
101	British Lion
107	Columbia
102	Jean Luc Godard
113	Luso films
104	Mosfilm
103	Paramount

```

106 | Toho
105 | United Artists
111 | Walt Disney
112 | Warner Bros.
108 | Westward

```

The next example shows how to obtain the union of the tables `distributors` and `actors`, restricting the results to those that begin with the letter W in each table. Only distinct rows are wanted, so the key word `ALL` is omitted.

distributors:		actors:	
did	name	id	name
108	Westward	1	Woody Allen
111	Walt Disney	2	Warren Beatty
112	Warner Bros.	3	Walter Matthau
...		...	

```

SELECT distributors.name
      FROM distributors
     WHERE distributors.name LIKE 'W%'
UNION
SELECT actors.name
      FROM actors
     WHERE actors.name LIKE 'W%';

```

```

      name
-----
Walt Disney
Walter Matthau
Warner Bros.
Warren Beatty
Westward
Woody Allen

```

This example shows how to use a function in the `FROM` clause, both with and without a column definition list:

```

CREATE FUNCTION distributors(int) RETURNS SETOF distributors AS $$
    SELECT * FROM distributors WHERE did = $1;
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;

```

```

SELECT * FROM distributors(111);
 did |  name
-----+-----
 111 | Walt Disney

```

```

CREATE FUNCTION distributors_2(int) RETURNS SETOF record AS $$
    SELECT * FROM distributors WHERE did = $1;
$$ LANGUAGE SQL;

```

```

SELECT * FROM distributors_2(111) AS (f1 int, f2 text);
 f1 |  f2
-----+-----
 111 | Walt Disney

```

Here is an example of a function with an ordinality column added:

```
SELECT * FROM unnest(ARRAY['a','b','c','d','e','f']) WITH
ORDINALITY;
unnest | ordinality
-----+-----
a      |          1
b      |          2
c      |          3
d      |          4
e      |          5
f      |          6
(6 rows)
```

This example shows how to use a simple WITH clause:

```
WITH t AS (
    SELECT random() as x FROM generate_series(1, 3)
)
SELECT * FROM t
UNION ALL
SELECT * FROM t;
      x
-----
0.534150459803641
0.520092216785997
0.0735620250925422
0.534150459803641
0.520092216785997
0.0735620250925422
```

Notice that the WITH query was evaluated only once, so that we got two sets of the same three random values.

This example uses WITH RECURSIVE to find all subordinates (direct or indirect) of the employee Mary, and their level of indirectness, from a table that shows only direct subordinates:

```
WITH RECURSIVE employee_recursive(distance, employee_name,
manager_name) AS (
    SELECT 1, employee_name, manager_name
    FROM employee
    WHERE manager_name = 'Mary'
    UNION ALL
    SELECT er.distance + 1, e.employee_name, e.manager_name
    FROM employee_recursive er, employee e
    WHERE er.employee_name = e.manager_name
)
SELECT distance, employee_name FROM employee_recursive;
```

Notice the typical form of recursive queries: an initial condition, followed by UNION, followed by the recursive part of the query. Be sure that the recursive part of the query will eventually return no tuples, or else the query will loop indefinitely. (See Section 7.8 for more examples.)

This example uses LATERAL to apply a set-returning function get\_product\_names( ) for each row of the manufacturers table:

```
SELECT m.name AS mname, pname
FROM manufacturers m, LATERAL get_product_names(m.id) pname;
```



Manufacturers not currently having any products would not appear in the result, since it is an inner join. If we wished to include the names of such manufacturers in the result, we could do:

```
SELECT m.name AS mname, pname
FROM manufacturers m LEFT JOIN LATERAL get_product_names(m.id)
    pname ON true;
```

## Compatibility

Of course, the `SELECT` statement is compatible with the SQL standard. But there are some extensions and some missing features.

### Omitted `FROM` Clauses

PostgreSQL allows one to omit the `FROM` clause. It has a straightforward use to compute the results of simple expressions:

```
SELECT 2+2;

?column?
-----
      4
```

Some other SQL databases cannot do this except by introducing a dummy one-row table from which to do the `SELECT`.

### Empty `SELECT` Lists

The list of output expressions after `SELECT` can be empty, producing a zero-column result table. This is not valid syntax according to the SQL standard. PostgreSQL allows it to be consistent with allowing zero-column tables. However, an empty list is not allowed when `DISTINCT` is used.

### Omitting the `AS` Key Word

In the SQL standard, the optional key word `AS` can be omitted before an output column name whenever the new column name is a valid column name (that is, not the same as any reserved keyword). PostgreSQL is slightly more restrictive: `AS` is required if the new column name matches any keyword at all, reserved or not. Recommended practice is to use `AS` or double-quote output column names, to prevent any possible conflict against future keyword additions.

In `FROM` items, both the standard and PostgreSQL allow `AS` to be omitted before an alias that is an unreserved keyword. But this is impractical for output column names, because of syntactic ambiguities.

### Omitting Sub-`SELECT` Aliases in `FROM`

According to the SQL standard, a sub-`SELECT` in the `FROM` list must have an alias. In PostgreSQL, this alias may be omitted.

### `ONLY` and Inheritance

The SQL standard requires parentheses around the table name when writing `ONLY`, for example `SELECT * FROM ONLY (tab1), ONLY (tab2) WHERE ...`. PostgreSQL considers these parentheses to be optional.

PostgreSQL allows a trailing `*` to be written to explicitly specify the non-`ONLY` behavior of including child tables. The standard does not allow this.

(These points apply equally to all SQL commands supporting the `ONLY` option.)

## **TABLESAMPLE Clause Restrictions**

The `TABLESAMPLE` clause is currently accepted only on regular tables and materialized views. According to the SQL standard it should be possible to apply it to any `FROM` item.

## **Function Calls in FROM**

PostgreSQL allows a function call to be written directly as a member of the `FROM` list. In the SQL standard it would be necessary to wrap such a function call in a sub-`SELECT`; that is, the syntax `FROM func(...) alias` is approximately equivalent to `FROM LATERAL (SELECT func(...)) alias`. Note that `LATERAL` is considered to be implicit; this is because the standard requires `LATERAL` semantics for an `UNNEST()` item in `FROM`. PostgreSQL treats `UNNEST()` the same as other set-returning functions.

## **Namespace Available to GROUP BY and ORDER BY**

In the SQL-92 standard, an `ORDER BY` clause can only use output column names or numbers, while a `GROUP BY` clause can only use expressions based on input column names. PostgreSQL extends each of these clauses to allow the other choice as well (but it uses the standard's interpretation if there is ambiguity). PostgreSQL also allows both clauses to specify arbitrary expressions. Note that names appearing in an expression will always be taken as input-column names, not as output-column names.

SQL:1999 and later use a slightly different definition which is not entirely upward compatible with SQL-92. In most cases, however, PostgreSQL will interpret an `ORDER BY` or `GROUP BY` expression the same way SQL:1999 does.

## **Functional Dependencies**

PostgreSQL recognizes functional dependency (allowing columns to be omitted from `GROUP BY`) only when a table's primary key is included in the `GROUP BY` list. The SQL standard specifies additional conditions that should be recognized.

## **LIMIT and OFFSET**

The clauses `LIMIT` and `OFFSET` are PostgreSQL-specific syntax, also used by MySQL. The SQL:2008 standard has introduced the clauses `OFFSET ... FETCH {FIRST|NEXT} ...` for the same functionality, as shown above in `LIMIT` Clause. This syntax is also used by IBM DB2. (Applications written for Oracle frequently use a workaround involving the automatically generated `rownum` column, which is not available in PostgreSQL, to implement the effects of these clauses.)

## **FOR NO KEY UPDATE, FOR UPDATE, FOR SHARE, FOR KEY SHARE**

Although `FOR UPDATE` appears in the SQL standard, the standard allows it only as an option of `DECLARE CURSOR`. PostgreSQL allows it in any `SELECT` query as well as in sub-`SELECT`s, but this is an extension. The `FOR NO KEY UPDATE`, `FOR SHARE` and `FOR KEY SHARE` variants, as well as the `NOWAIT` and `SKIP LOCKED` options, do not appear in the standard.

## **Data-Modifying Statements in WITH**

PostgreSQL allows `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, and `DELETE` to be used as `WITH` queries. This is not found in the SQL standard.

## **Nonstandard Clauses**

`DISTINCT ON (...)` is an extension of the SQL standard.

`ROWS FROM( . . . )` is an extension of the SQL standard.

The `MATERIALIZED` and `NOT MATERIALIZED` options of `WITH` are extensions of the SQL standard.

---

# SELECT INTO

SELECT INTO — define a new table from the results of a query

## Synopsis

```
[ WITH [ RECURSIVE ] with_query [, ...] ]
SELECT [ ALL | DISTINCT [ ON ( expression [, ...] ) ] ]
    * | expression [ [ AS ] output_name ] [, ...]
    INTO [ TEMPORARY | TEMP | UNLOGGED ] [ TABLE ] new_table
    [ FROM from_item [, ...] ]
    [ WHERE condition ]
    [ GROUP BY expression [, ...] ]
    [ HAVING condition ]
    [ WINDOW window_name AS ( window_definition ) [, ...] ]
    [ { UNION | INTERSECT | EXCEPT } [ ALL | DISTINCT ] select ]
    [ ORDER BY expression [ ASC | DESC | USING operator ] [ NULLS
{ FIRST | LAST } ] [, ...] ]
    [ LIMIT { count | ALL } ]
    [ OFFSET start [ ROW | ROWS ] ]
    [ FETCH { FIRST | NEXT } [ count ] { ROW | ROWS } ONLY ]
    [ FOR { UPDATE | SHARE } [ OF table_name [, ...] ] [ NOWAIT ]
[ ... ] ]
```

## Description

SELECT INTO creates a new table and fills it with data computed by a query. The data is not returned to the client, as it is with a normal SELECT. The new table's columns have the names and data types associated with the output columns of the SELECT.

## Parameters

TEMPORARY or TEMP

If specified, the table is created as a temporary table. Refer to CREATE TABLE for details.

UNLOGGED

If specified, the table is created as an unlogged table. Refer to CREATE TABLE for details.

*new\_table*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table to be created.

All other parameters are described in detail under SELECT.

## Notes

CREATE TABLE AS is functionally similar to SELECT INTO. CREATE TABLE AS is the recommended syntax, since this form of SELECT INTO is not available in ECPG or PL/pgSQL, because they interpret the INTO clause differently. Furthermore, CREATE TABLE AS offers a superset of the functionality provided by SELECT INTO.

In contrast to CREATE TABLE AS, SELECT INTO does not allow specifying properties like a table's access method with USING *method* or the table's tablespace with TABLESPACE *table-*

*space\_name*. Use `CREATE TABLE AS` if necessary. Therefore, the default table access method is chosen for the new table. See `default_table_access_method` for more information.

## Examples

Create a new table `films_recent` consisting of only recent entries from the table `films`:

```
SELECT * INTO films_recent FROM films WHERE date_prod >=
'2002-01-01';
```

## Compatibility

The SQL standard uses `SELECT INTO` to represent selecting values into scalar variables of a host program, rather than creating a new table. This indeed is the usage found in ECPG (see Chapter 36) and PL/pgSQL (see Chapter 43). The PostgreSQL usage of `SELECT INTO` to represent table creation is historical. Some other SQL implementations also use `SELECT INTO` in this way (but most SQL implementations support `CREATE TABLE AS` instead). Apart from such compatibility considerations, it is best to use `CREATE TABLE AS` for this purpose in new code.

## See Also

`CREATE TABLE AS`

---

# SET

SET — change a run-time parameter

## Synopsis

```
SET [ SESSION | LOCAL ] configuration_parameter { TO | = } { value  
| 'value' | DEFAULT }  
SET [ SESSION | LOCAL ] TIME ZONE { value | 'value' | LOCAL |  
DEFAULT }
```

## Description

The SET command changes run-time configuration parameters. Many of the run-time parameters listed in Chapter 20 can be changed on-the-fly with SET. (Some parameters can only be changed by superusers and users who have been granted SET privilege on that parameter. There are also parameters that cannot be changed after server or session start.) SET only affects the value used by the current session.

If SET (or equivalently SET SESSION) is issued within a transaction that is later aborted, the effects of the SET command disappear when the transaction is rolled back. Once the surrounding transaction is committed, the effects will persist until the end of the session, unless overridden by another SET.

The effects of SET LOCAL last only till the end of the current transaction, whether committed or not. A special case is SET followed by SET LOCAL within a single transaction: the SET LOCAL value will be seen until the end of the transaction, but afterwards (if the transaction is committed) the SET value will take effect.

The effects of SET or SET LOCAL are also canceled by rolling back to a savepoint that is earlier than the command.

If SET LOCAL is used within a function that has a SET option for the same variable (see CREATE FUNCTION), the effects of the SET LOCAL command disappear at function exit; that is, the value in effect when the function was called is restored anyway. This allows SET LOCAL to be used for dynamic or repeated changes of a parameter within a function, while still having the convenience of using the SET option to save and restore the caller's value. However, a regular SET command overrides any surrounding function's SET option; its effects will persist unless rolled back.

### Note

In PostgreSQL versions 8.0 through 8.2, the effects of a SET LOCAL would be canceled by releasing an earlier savepoint, or by successful exit from a PL/pgSQL exception block. This behavior has been changed because it was deemed unintuitive.

## Parameters

SESSION

Specifies that the command takes effect for the current session. (This is the default if neither SESSION nor LOCAL appears.)

## LOCAL

Specifies that the command takes effect for only the current transaction. After COMMIT or ROLLBACK, the session-level setting takes effect again. Issuing this outside of a transaction block emits a warning and otherwise has no effect.

*configuration\_parameter*

Name of a settable run-time parameter. Available parameters are documented in Chapter 20 and below.

*value*

New value of parameter. Values can be specified as string constants, identifiers, numbers, or comma-separated lists of these, as appropriate for the particular parameter. DEFAULT can be written to specify resetting the parameter to its default value (that is, whatever value it would have had if no SET had been executed in the current session).

Besides the configuration parameters documented in Chapter 20, there are a few that can only be adjusted using the SET command or that have a special syntax:

## SCHEMA

SET SCHEMA *'value'* is an alias for SET search\_path TO *value*. Only one schema can be specified using this syntax.

## NAMES

SET NAMES *value* is an alias for SET client\_encoding TO *value*.

## SEED

Sets the internal seed for the random number generator (the function random). Allowed values are floating-point numbers between -1 and 1 inclusive.

The seed can also be set by invoking the function setseed:

```
SELECT setseed(value);
```

## TIME ZONE

SET TIME ZONE *'value'* is an alias for SET timezone TO *'value'*. The syntax SET TIME ZONE allows special syntax for the time zone specification. Here are examples of valid values:

*'PST8PDT'*

The time zone for Berkeley, California.

*'Europe/Rome'*

The time zone for Italy.

*-7*

The time zone 7 hours west from UTC (equivalent to PDT). Positive values are east from UTC.

INTERVAL *'-08:00'* HOUR TO MINUTE

The time zone 8 hours west from UTC (equivalent to PST).

LOCAL  
DEFAULT

Set the time zone to your local time zone (that is, the server's default value of `timezone`).

Timezone settings given as numbers or intervals are internally translated to POSIX timezone syntax. For example, after `SET TIME ZONE -7`, `SHOW TIME ZONE` would report `<-07>+07`.

Time zone abbreviations are not supported by `SET`; see Section 8.5.3 for more information about time zones.

## Notes

The function `set_config` provides equivalent functionality; see Section 9.27.1. Also, it is possible to `UPDATE` the `pg_settings` system view to perform the equivalent of `SET`.

## Examples

Set the schema search path:

```
SET search_path TO my_schema, public;
```

Set the style of date to traditional POSTGRES with “day before month” input convention:

```
SET datestyle TO postgres, dmy;
```

Set the time zone for Berkeley, California:

```
SET TIME ZONE 'PST8PDT';
```

Set the time zone for Italy:

```
SET TIME ZONE 'Europe/Rome';
```

## Compatibility

`SET TIME ZONE` extends syntax defined in the SQL standard. The standard allows only numeric time zone offsets while PostgreSQL allows more flexible time-zone specifications. All other `SET` features are PostgreSQL extensions.

## See Also

`RESET`, `SHOW`



---

# SET CONSTRAINTS

SET CONSTRAINTS — set constraint check timing for the current transaction

## Synopsis

```
SET CONSTRAINTS { ALL | name [, ...] } { DEFERRED | IMMEDIATE }
```

## Description

SET CONSTRAINTS sets the behavior of constraint checking within the current transaction. IMMEDIATE constraints are checked at the end of each statement. DEFERRED constraints are not checked until transaction commit. Each constraint has its own IMMEDIATE or DEFERRED mode.

Upon creation, a constraint is given one of three characteristics: DEFERRABLE INITIALLY DEFERRED, DEFERRABLE INITIALLY IMMEDIATE, or NOT DEFERRABLE. The third class is always IMMEDIATE and is not affected by the SET CONSTRAINTS command. The first two classes start every transaction in the indicated mode, but their behavior can be changed within a transaction by SET CONSTRAINTS.

SET CONSTRAINTS with a list of constraint names changes the mode of just those constraints (which must all be deferrable). Each constraint name can be schema-qualified. The current schema search path is used to find the first matching name if no schema name is specified. SET CONSTRAINTS ALL changes the mode of all deferrable constraints.

When SET CONSTRAINTS changes the mode of a constraint from DEFERRED to IMMEDIATE, the new mode takes effect retroactively: any outstanding data modifications that would have been checked at the end of the transaction are instead checked during the execution of the SET CONSTRAINTS command. If any such constraint is violated, the SET CONSTRAINTS fails (and does not change the constraint mode). Thus, SET CONSTRAINTS can be used to force checking of constraints to occur at a specific point in a transaction.

Currently, only UNIQUE, PRIMARY KEY, REFERENCES (foreign key), and EXCLUDE constraints are affected by this setting. NOT NULL and CHECK constraints are always checked immediately when a row is inserted or modified (*not* at the end of the statement). Uniqueness and exclusion constraints that have not been declared DEFERRABLE are also checked immediately.

The firing of triggers that are declared as “constraint triggers” is also controlled by this setting — they fire at the same time that the associated constraint should be checked.

## Notes

Because PostgreSQL does not require constraint names to be unique within a schema (but only per-table), it is possible that there is more than one match for a specified constraint name. In this case SET CONSTRAINTS will act on all matches. For a non-schema-qualified name, once a match or matches have been found in some schema in the search path, schemas appearing later in the path are not searched.

This command only alters the behavior of constraints within the current transaction. Issuing this outside of a transaction block emits a warning and otherwise has no effect.

## Compatibility

This command complies with the behavior defined in the SQL standard, except for the limitation that, in PostgreSQL, it does not apply to NOT NULL and CHECK constraints. Also, PostgreSQL checks non-deferrable uniqueness constraints immediately, not at end of statement as the standard would suggest.

---

# SET ROLE

SET ROLE — set the current user identifier of the current session

## Synopsis

```
SET [ SESSION | LOCAL ] ROLE role_name
SET [ SESSION | LOCAL ] ROLE NONE
RESET ROLE
```

## Description

This command sets the current user identifier of the current SQL session to be *role\_name*. The role name can be written as either an identifier or a string literal. After SET ROLE, permissions checking for SQL commands is carried out as though the named role were the one that had logged in originally.

The specified *role\_name* must be a role that the current session user is a member of. (If the session user is a superuser, any role can be selected.)

The SESSION and LOCAL modifiers act the same as for the regular SET command.

SET ROLE NONE sets the current user identifier to the current session user identifier, as returned by session\_user. RESET ROLE sets the current user identifier to the connection-time setting specified by the command-line options, ALTER ROLE, or ALTER DATABASE, if any such settings exist. Otherwise, RESET ROLE sets the current user identifier to the current session user identifier. These forms can be executed by any user.

## Notes

Using this command, it is possible to either add privileges or restrict one's privileges. If the session user role has been granted memberships WITH INHERIT TRUE, it automatically has all the privileges of every such role. In this case, SET ROLE effectively drops all the privileges except for those which the target role directly possesses or inherits. On the other hand, if the session user role has been granted memberships WITH INHERIT FALSE, the privileges of the granted roles can't be accessed by default. However, if the role was granted WITH SET TRUE, the session user can use SET ROLE to drop the privileges assigned directly to the session user and instead acquire the privileges available to the named role. If the role was granted WITH INHERIT FALSE, SET FALSE then the privileges of that role cannot be exercised either with or without SET ROLE.

Note that when a superuser chooses to SET ROLE to a non-superuser role, they lose their superuser privileges.

SET ROLE has effects comparable to SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION, but the privilege checks involved are quite different. Also, SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION determines which roles are allowable for later SET ROLE commands, whereas changing roles with SET ROLE does not change the set of roles allowed to a later SET ROLE.

SET ROLE does not process session variables as specified by the role's ALTER ROLE settings; this only happens during login.

SET ROLE cannot be used within a SECURITY DEFINER function.

## Examples

```
SELECT SESSION_USER, CURRENT_USER;
```

session_user	current_user
peter	peter

```
SET ROLE 'paul';
```

```
SELECT SESSION_USER, CURRENT_USER;
```

session_user	current_user
peter	paul

## Compatibility

PostgreSQL allows identifier syntax ("*rolename*"), while the SQL standard requires the role name to be written as a string literal. SQL does not allow this command during a transaction; PostgreSQL does not make this restriction because there is no reason to. The `SESSION` and `LOCAL` modifiers are a PostgreSQL extension, as is the `RESET` syntax.

## See Also

SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION

---

# SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION

SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION — set the session user identifier and the current user identifier of the current session

## Synopsis

```
SET [ SESSION | LOCAL ] SESSION AUTHORIZATION user_name
SET [ SESSION | LOCAL ] SESSION AUTHORIZATION DEFAULT
RESET SESSION AUTHORIZATION
```

## Description

This command sets the session user identifier and the current user identifier of the current SQL session to be *user\_name*. The user name can be written as either an identifier or a string literal. Using this command, it is possible, for example, to temporarily become an unprivileged user and later switch back to being a superuser.

The session user identifier is initially set to be the (possibly authenticated) user name provided by the client. The current user identifier is normally equal to the session user identifier, but might change temporarily in the context of SECURITY DEFINER functions and similar mechanisms; it can also be changed by SET ROLE. The current user identifier is relevant for permission checking.

The session user identifier can be changed only if the initial session user (the *authenticated user*) had the superuser privilege. Otherwise, the command is accepted only if it specifies the authenticated user name.

The SESSION and LOCAL modifiers act the same as for the regular SET command.

The DEFAULT and RESET forms reset the session and current user identifiers to be the originally authenticated user name. These forms can be executed by any user.

## Notes

SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION cannot be used within a SECURITY DEFINER function.

## Examples

```
SELECT SESSION_USER, CURRENT_USER;
```

session_user	current_user
peter	peter

```
SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION 'paul';
```

```
SELECT SESSION_USER, CURRENT_USER;
```

session_user	current_user
paul	paul

## Compatibility

The SQL standard allows some other expressions to appear in place of the literal *user\_name*, but these options are not important in practice. PostgreSQL allows identifier syntax ("*username*"), which SQL does not. SQL does not allow this command during a transaction; PostgreSQL does not make this restriction because there is no reason to. The `SESSION` and `LOCAL` modifiers are a PostgreSQL extension, as is the `RESET` syntax.

The privileges necessary to execute this command are left implementation-defined by the standard.

## See Also

SET ROLE

---

# SET TRANSACTION

SET TRANSACTION — set the characteristics of the current transaction

## Synopsis

```
SET TRANSACTION transaction_mode [, ...]
SET TRANSACTION SNAPSHOT snapshot_id
SET SESSION CHARACTERISTICS AS TRANSACTION transaction_mode [, ...]
```

where *transaction\_mode* is one of:

```
ISOLATION LEVEL { SERIALIZABLE | REPEATABLE READ | READ
COMMITTED | READ UNCOMMITTED }
READ WRITE | READ ONLY
[ NOT ] DEFERRABLE
```

## Description

The SET TRANSACTION command sets the characteristics of the current transaction. It has no effect on any subsequent transactions. SET SESSION CHARACTERISTICS sets the default transaction characteristics for subsequent transactions of a session. These defaults can be overridden by SET TRANSACTION for an individual transaction.

The available transaction characteristics are the transaction isolation level, the transaction access mode (read/write or read-only), and the deferrable mode. In addition, a snapshot can be selected, though only for the current transaction, not as a session default.

The isolation level of a transaction determines what data the transaction can see when other transactions are running concurrently:

READ COMMITTED

A statement can only see rows committed before it began. This is the default.

REPEATABLE READ

All statements of the current transaction can only see rows committed before the first query or data-modification statement was executed in this transaction.

SERIALIZABLE

All statements of the current transaction can only see rows committed before the first query or data-modification statement was executed in this transaction. If a pattern of reads and writes among concurrent serializable transactions would create a situation which could not have occurred for any serial (one-at-a-time) execution of those transactions, one of them will be rolled back with a `serialization_failure` error.

The SQL standard defines one additional level, READ UNCOMMITTED. In PostgreSQL READ UNCOMMITTED is treated as READ COMMITTED.

The transaction isolation level cannot be changed after the first query or data-modification statement (SELECT, INSERT, DELETE, UPDATE, MERGE, FETCH, or COPY) of a transaction has been executed. See Chapter 13 for more information about transaction isolation and concurrency control.

The transaction access mode determines whether the transaction is read/write or read-only. Read/write is the default. When a transaction is read-only, the following SQL commands are disallowed: INSERT,

UPDATE, DELETE, MERGE, and COPY FROM if the table they would write to is not a temporary table; all CREATE, ALTER, and DROP commands; COMMENT, GRANT, REVOKE, TRUNCATE; and EXPLAIN ANALYZE and EXECUTE if the command they would execute is among those listed. This is a high-level notion of read-only that does not prevent all writes to disk.

The DEFERRABLE transaction property has no effect unless the transaction is also SERIALIZABLE and READ ONLY. When all three of these properties are selected for a transaction, the transaction may block when first acquiring its snapshot, after which it is able to run without the normal overhead of a SERIALIZABLE transaction and without any risk of contributing to or being canceled by a serialization failure. This mode is well suited for long-running reports or backups.

The SET TRANSACTION SNAPSHOT command allows a new transaction to run with the same *snapshot* as an existing transaction. The pre-existing transaction must have exported its snapshot with the pg\_export\_snapshot function (see Section 9.27.5). That function returns a snapshot identifier, which must be given to SET TRANSACTION SNAPSHOT to specify which snapshot is to be imported. The identifier must be written as a string literal in this command, for example '00000003-0000001B-1'. SET TRANSACTION SNAPSHOT can only be executed at the start of a transaction, before the first query or data-modification statement (SELECT, INSERT, DELETE, UPDATE, MERGE, FETCH, or COPY) of the transaction. Furthermore, the transaction must already be set to SERIALIZABLE or REPEATABLE READ isolation level (otherwise, the snapshot would be discarded immediately, since READ COMMITTED mode takes a new snapshot for each command). If the importing transaction uses SERIALIZABLE isolation level, then the transaction that exported the snapshot must also use that isolation level. Also, a non-read-only serializable transaction cannot import a snapshot from a read-only transaction.

## Notes

If SET TRANSACTION is executed without a prior START TRANSACTION or BEGIN, it emits a warning and otherwise has no effect.

It is possible to dispense with SET TRANSACTION by instead specifying the desired *transaction\_modes* in BEGIN or START TRANSACTION. But that option is not available for SET TRANSACTION SNAPSHOT.

The session default transaction modes can also be set or examined via the configuration parameters default\_transaction\_isolation, default\_transaction\_read\_only, and default\_transaction\_deferrable. (In fact SET SESSION CHARACTERISTICS is just a verbose equivalent for setting these variables with SET.) This means the defaults can be set in the configuration file, via ALTER DATABASE, etc. Consult Chapter 20 for more information.

The current transaction's modes can similarly be set or examined via the configuration parameters transaction\_isolation, transaction\_read\_only, and transaction\_deferrable. Setting one of these parameters acts the same as the corresponding SET TRANSACTION option, with the same restrictions on when it can be done. However, these parameters cannot be set in the configuration file, or from any source other than live SQL.

## Examples

To begin a new transaction with the same snapshot as an already existing transaction, first export the snapshot from the existing transaction. That will return the snapshot identifier, for example:

```
BEGIN TRANSACTION ISOLATION LEVEL REPEATABLE READ;
SELECT pg_export_snapshot();
pg_export_snapshot
-----
00000003-0000001B-1
(1 row)
```

Then give the snapshot identifier in a `SET TRANSACTION SNAPSHOT` command at the beginning of the newly opened transaction:

```
BEGIN TRANSACTION ISOLATION LEVEL REPEATABLE READ;  
SET TRANSACTION SNAPSHOT '00000003-0000001B-1';
```

## Compatibility

These commands are defined in the SQL standard, except for the `DEFERRABLE` transaction mode and the `SET TRANSACTION SNAPSHOT` form, which are PostgreSQL extensions.

`SERIALIZABLE` is the default transaction isolation level in the standard. In PostgreSQL the default is ordinarily `READ COMMITTED`, but you can change it as mentioned above.

In the SQL standard, there is one other transaction characteristic that can be set with these commands: the size of the diagnostics area. This concept is specific to embedded SQL, and therefore is not implemented in the PostgreSQL server.

The SQL standard requires commas between successive *transaction\_modes*, but for historical reasons PostgreSQL allows the commas to be omitted.



---

# SHOW

SHOW — show the value of a run-time parameter

## Synopsis

```
SHOW name
SHOW ALL
```

## Description

SHOW will display the current setting of run-time parameters. These variables can be set using the SET statement, by editing the `postgresql.conf` configuration file, through the `PGOPTIONS` environmental variable (when using libpq or a libpq-based application), or through command-line flags when starting the `postgres` server. See Chapter 20 for details.

## Parameters

*name*

The name of a run-time parameter. Available parameters are documented in Chapter 20 and on the SET reference page. In addition, there are a few parameters that can be shown but not set:

SERVER\_VERSION

Shows the server's version number.

SERVER\_ENCODING

Shows the server-side character set encoding. At present, this parameter can be shown but not set, because the encoding is determined at database creation time.

LC\_COLLATE

Shows the database's locale setting for collation (text ordering). At present, this parameter can be shown but not set, because the setting is determined at database creation time.

LC\_CTYPE

Shows the database's locale setting for character classification. At present, this parameter can be shown but not set, because the setting is determined at database creation time.

IS\_SUPERUSER

True if the current role has superuser privileges.

ALL

Show the values of all configuration parameters, with descriptions.

## Notes

The function `current_setting` produces equivalent output; see Section 9.27.1. Also, the `pg_settings` system view produces the same information.

## Examples

Show the current setting of the parameter `DateStyle`:

```
SHOW DateStyle;
DateStyle
-----
ISO, MDY
(1 row)
```

Show the current setting of the parameter `geqo`:

```
SHOW geqo;
geqo
-----
on
(1 row)
```

Show all settings:

```
SHOW ALL;
name | setting | description
-----+-----
allow_system_table_mods | off | Allows modifications of the
structure of ...
.
.
.
xmloption | content | Sets whether XML data in
implicit parsing ...
zero_damaged_pages | off | Continues processing past
damaged page headers.
(196 rows)
```

## Compatibility

The `SHOW` command is a PostgreSQL extension.

## See Also

`SET`, `RESET`

---

# START TRANSACTION

START TRANSACTION — start a transaction block

## Synopsis

```
START TRANSACTION [ transaction_mode [, ...] ]
```

where *transaction\_mode* is one of:

```
ISOLATION LEVEL { SERIALIZABLE | REPEATABLE READ | READ  
COMMITTED | READ UNCOMMITTED }  
READ WRITE | READ ONLY  
[ NOT ] DEFERRABLE
```

## Description

This command begins a new transaction block. If the isolation level, read/write mode, or deferrable mode is specified, the new transaction has those characteristics, as if SET TRANSACTION was executed. This is the same as the BEGIN command.

## Parameters

Refer to SET TRANSACTION for information on the meaning of the parameters to this statement.

## Compatibility

In the standard, it is not necessary to issue START TRANSACTION to start a transaction block: any SQL command implicitly begins a block. PostgreSQL's behavior can be seen as implicitly issuing a COMMIT after each command that does not follow START TRANSACTION (or BEGIN), and it is therefore often called “autocommit”. Other relational database systems might offer an autocommit feature as a convenience.

The DEFERRABLE *transaction\_mode* is a PostgreSQL language extension.

The SQL standard requires commas between successive *transaction\_modes*, but for historical reasons PostgreSQL allows the commas to be omitted.

See also the compatibility section of SET TRANSACTION.

## See Also

BEGIN, COMMIT, ROLLBACK, SAVEPOINT, SET TRANSACTION

---

# TRUNCATE

TRUNCATE — empty a table or set of tables

## Synopsis

```
TRUNCATE [ TABLE ] [ ONLY ] name [ * ] [ , ... ]  
        [ RESTART IDENTITY | CONTINUE IDENTITY ] [ CASCADE | RESTRICT ]
```

## Description

TRUNCATE quickly removes all rows from a set of tables. It has the same effect as an unqualified DELETE on each table, but since it does not actually scan the tables it is faster. Furthermore, it reclaims disk space immediately, rather than requiring a subsequent VACUUM operation. This is most useful on large tables.

## Parameters

*name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of a table to truncate. If ONLY is specified before the table name, only that table is truncated. If ONLY is not specified, the table and all its descendant tables (if any) are truncated. Optionally, \* can be specified after the table name to explicitly indicate that descendant tables are included.

RESTART IDENTITY

Automatically restart sequences owned by columns of the truncated table(s).

CONTINUE IDENTITY

Do not change the values of sequences. This is the default.

CASCADE

Automatically truncate all tables that have foreign-key references to any of the named tables, or to any tables added to the group due to CASCADE.

RESTRICT

Refuse to truncate if any of the tables have foreign-key references from tables that are not listed in the command. This is the default.

## Notes

You must have the TRUNCATE privilege on a table to truncate it.

TRUNCATE acquires an ACCESS EXCLUSIVE lock on each table it operates on, which blocks all other concurrent operations on the table. When RESTART IDENTITY is specified, any sequences that are to be restarted are likewise locked exclusively. If concurrent access to a table is required, then the DELETE command should be used instead.

TRUNCATE cannot be used on a table that has foreign-key references from other tables, unless all such tables are also truncated in the same command. Checking validity in such cases would require table scans, and the whole point is not to do one. The CASCADE option can be used to automatically include

all dependent tables — but be very careful when using this option, or else you might lose data you did not intend to! Note in particular that when the table to be truncated is a partition, siblings partitions are left untouched, but cascading occurs to all referencing tables and all their partitions with no distinction.

TRUNCATE will not fire any ON DELETE triggers that might exist for the tables. But it will fire ON TRUNCATE triggers. If ON TRUNCATE triggers are defined for any of the tables, then all BEFORE TRUNCATE triggers are fired before any truncation happens, and all AFTER TRUNCATE triggers are fired after the last truncation is performed and any sequences are reset. The triggers will fire in the order that the tables are to be processed (first those listed in the command, and then any that were added due to cascading).

TRUNCATE is not MVCC-safe. After truncation, the table will appear empty to concurrent transactions, if they are using a snapshot taken before the truncation occurred. See Section 13.6 for more details.

TRUNCATE is transaction-safe with respect to the data in the tables: the truncation will be safely rolled back if the surrounding transaction does not commit.

When RESTART IDENTITY is specified, the implied ALTER SEQUENCE RESTART operations are also done transactionally; that is, they will be rolled back if the surrounding transaction does not commit. Be aware that if any additional sequence operations are done on the restarted sequences before the transaction rolls back, the effects of these operations on the sequences will be rolled back, but not their effects on currval ( ); that is, after the transaction currval ( ) will continue to reflect the last sequence value obtained inside the failed transaction, even though the sequence itself may no longer be consistent with that. This is similar to the usual behavior of currval ( ) after a failed transaction.

TRUNCATE can be used for foreign tables if supported by the foreign data wrapper, for instance, see postgres\_fdw.

## Examples

Truncate the tables bigtable and fattable:

```
TRUNCATE bigtable, fattable;
```

The same, and also reset any associated sequence generators:

```
TRUNCATE bigtable, fattable RESTART IDENTITY;
```

Truncate the table othertable, and cascade to any tables that reference othertable via foreign-key constraints:

```
TRUNCATE othertable CASCADE;
```

## Compatibility

The SQL:2008 standard includes a TRUNCATE command with the syntax TRUNCATE TABLE *tablename*. The clauses CONTINUE IDENTITY/RESTART IDENTITY also appear in that standard, but have slightly different though related meanings. Some of the concurrency behavior of this command is left implementation-defined by the standard, so the above notes should be considered and compared with other implementations if necessary.

## See Also

DELETE

---

# UNLISTEN

UNLISTEN — stop listening for a notification

## Synopsis

```
UNLISTEN { channel | * }
```

## Description

UNLISTEN is used to remove an existing registration for NOTIFY events. UNLISTEN cancels any existing registration of the current PostgreSQL session as a listener on the notification channel named *channel*. The special wildcard *\** cancels all listener registrations for the current session.

NOTIFY contains a more extensive discussion of the use of LISTEN and NOTIFY.

## Parameters

*channel*

Name of a notification channel (any identifier).

*\**

All current listen registrations for this session are cleared.

## Notes

You can unlisten something you were not listening for; no warning or error will appear.

At the end of each session, UNLISTEN *\** is automatically executed.

A transaction that has executed UNLISTEN cannot be prepared for two-phase commit.

## Examples

To make a registration:

```
LISTEN virtual;  
NOTIFY virtual;  
Asynchronous notification "virtual" received from server process  
with PID 8448.
```

Once UNLISTEN has been executed, further NOTIFY messages will be ignored:

```
UNLISTEN virtual;  
NOTIFY virtual;  
-- no NOTIFY event is received
```

## Compatibility

There is no UNLISTEN command in the SQL standard.

## See Also

LISTEN, NOTIFY

---

# UPDATE

UPDATE — update rows of a table

## Synopsis

```
[ WITH [ RECURSIVE ] with_query [, ...] ]
UPDATE [ ONLY ] table_name [ * ] [ [ AS ] alias ]
    SET { column_name = { expression | DEFAULT } |
        ( column_name [, ...] ) = [ ROW ] ( { expression |
DEFAULT } [, ...] ) |
        ( column_name [, ...] ) = ( sub-SELECT )
    } [, ...]
    [ FROM from_item [, ...] ]
    [ WHERE condition | WHERE CURRENT OF cursor_name ]
    [ RETURNING * | output_expression [ [ AS ] output_name ]
    [, ...] ]
```

## Description

UPDATE changes the values of the specified columns in all rows that satisfy the condition. Only the columns to be modified need be mentioned in the SET clause; columns not explicitly modified retain their previous values.

There are two ways to modify a table using information contained in other tables in the database: using sub-selects, or specifying additional tables in the FROM clause. Which technique is more appropriate depends on the specific circumstances.

The optional RETURNING clause causes UPDATE to compute and return value(s) based on each row actually updated. Any expression using the table's columns, and/or columns of other tables mentioned in FROM, can be computed. The new (post-update) values of the table's columns are used. The syntax of the RETURNING list is identical to that of the output list of SELECT.

You must have the UPDATE privilege on the table, or at least on the column(s) that are listed to be updated. You must also have the SELECT privilege on any column whose values are read in the *expressions* or *condition*.

## Parameters

*with\_query*

The WITH clause allows you to specify one or more subqueries that can be referenced by name in the UPDATE query. See Section 7.8 and SELECT for details.

*table\_name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of the table to update. If ONLY is specified before the table name, matching rows are updated in the named table only. If ONLY is not specified, matching rows are also updated in any tables inheriting from the named table. Optionally, \* can be specified after the table name to explicitly indicate that descendant tables are included.

*alias*

A substitute name for the target table. When an alias is provided, it completely hides the actual name of the table. For example, given UPDATE foo AS f, the remainder of the UPDATE statement must refer to this table as f not foo.



*column\_name*

The name of a column in the table named by *table\_name*. The column name can be qualified with a subfield name or array subscript, if needed. Do not include the table's name in the specification of a target column — for example, `UPDATE table_name SET table_name.col = 1` is invalid.

*expression*

An expression to assign to the column. The expression can use the old values of this and other columns in the table.

DEFAULT

Set the column to its default value (which will be NULL if no specific default expression has been assigned to it). An identity column will be set to a new value generated by the associated sequence. For a generated column, specifying this is permitted but merely specifies the normal behavior of computing the column from its generation expression.

*sub-SELECT*

A SELECT sub-query that produces as many output columns as are listed in the parenthesized column list preceding it. The sub-query must yield no more than one row when executed. If it yields one row, its column values are assigned to the target columns; if it yields no rows, NULL values are assigned to the target columns. The sub-query can refer to old values of the current row of the table being updated.

*from\_item*

A table expression allowing columns from other tables to appear in the WHERE condition and update expressions. This uses the same syntax as the FROM clause of a SELECT statement; for example, an alias for the table name can be specified. Do not repeat the target table as a *from\_item* unless you intend a self-join (in which case it must appear with an alias in the *from\_item*).

*condition*

An expression that returns a value of type boolean. Only rows for which this expression returns true will be updated.

*cursor\_name*

The name of the cursor to use in a WHERE CURRENT OF condition. The row to be updated is the one most recently fetched from this cursor. The cursor must be a non-grouping query on the UPDATE's target table. Note that WHERE CURRENT OF cannot be specified together with a Boolean condition. See DECLARE for more information about using cursors with WHERE CURRENT OF.

*output\_expression*

An expression to be computed and returned by the UPDATE command after each row is updated. The expression can use any column names of the table named by *table\_name* or table(s) listed in FROM. Write \* to return all columns.

*output\_name*

A name to use for a returned column.

## Outputs

On successful completion, an UPDATE command returns a command tag of the form

UPDATE *count*

The *count* is the number of rows updated, including matched rows whose values did not change. Note that the number may be less than the number of rows that matched the *condition* when updates were suppressed by a BEFORE UPDATE trigger. If *count* is 0, no rows were updated by the query (this is not considered an error).

If the UPDATE command contains a RETURNING clause, the result will be similar to that of a SELECT statement containing the columns and values defined in the RETURNING list, computed over the row(s) updated by the command.

## Notes

When a FROM clause is present, what essentially happens is that the target table is joined to the tables mentioned in the *from\_item* list, and each output row of the join represents an update operation for the target table. When using FROM you should ensure that the join produces at most one output row for each row to be modified. In other words, a target row shouldn't join to more than one row from the other table(s). If it does, then only one of the join rows will be used to update the target row, but which one will be used is not readily predictable.

Because of this indeterminacy, referencing other tables only within sub-selects is safer, though often harder to read and slower than using a join.

In the case of a partitioned table, updating a row might cause it to no longer satisfy the partition constraint of the containing partition. In that case, if there is some other partition in the partition tree for which this row satisfies its partition constraint, then the row is moved to that partition. If there is no such partition, an error will occur. Behind the scenes, the row movement is actually a DELETE and INSERT operation.

There is a possibility that a concurrent UPDATE or DELETE on the row being moved will get a serialization failure error. Suppose session 1 is performing an UPDATE on a partition key, and meanwhile a concurrent session 2 for which this row is visible performs an UPDATE or DELETE operation on this row. In such case, session 2's UPDATE or DELETE will detect the row movement and raise a serialization failure error (which always returns with an SQLSTATE code '40001'). Applications may wish to retry the transaction if this occurs. In the usual case where the table is not partitioned, or where there is no row movement, session 2 would have identified the newly updated row and carried out the UPDATE/DELETE on this new row version.

Note that while rows can be moved from local partitions to a foreign-table partition (provided the foreign data wrapper supports tuple routing), they cannot be moved from a foreign-table partition to another partition.

An attempt of moving a row from one partition to another will fail if a foreign key is found to directly reference an ancestor of the source partition that is not the same as the ancestor that's mentioned in the UPDATE query.

## Examples

Change the word Drama to Dramatic in the column kind of the table films:

```
UPDATE films SET kind = 'Dramatic' WHERE kind = 'Drama';
```

Adjust temperature entries and reset precipitation to its default value in one row of the table weather:

```
UPDATE weather SET temp_lo = temp_lo+1, temp_hi = temp_lo+15, prcp
= DEFAULT
WHERE city = 'San Francisco' AND date = '2003-07-03';
```

Perform the same operation and return the updated entries:

```
UPDATE weather SET temp_lo = temp_lo+1, temp_hi = temp_lo+15, prcp
= DEFAULT
WHERE city = 'San Francisco' AND date = '2003-07-03'
RETURNING temp_lo, temp_hi, prcp;
```

Use the alternative column-list syntax to do the same update:

```
UPDATE weather SET (temp_lo, temp_hi, prcp) = (temp_lo+1, temp_lo
+15, DEFAULT)
WHERE city = 'San Francisco' AND date = '2003-07-03';
```

Increment the sales count of the salesperson who manages the account for Acme Corporation, using the FROM clause syntax:

```
UPDATE employees SET sales_count = sales_count + 1 FROM accounts
WHERE accounts.name = 'Acme Corporation'
AND employees.id = accounts.sales_person;
```

Perform the same operation, using a sub-select in the WHERE clause:

```
UPDATE employees SET sales_count = sales_count + 1 WHERE id =
(SELECT sales_person FROM accounts WHERE name = 'Acme
Corporation');
```

Update contact names in an accounts table to match the currently assigned salespeople:

```
UPDATE accounts SET (contact_first_name, contact_last_name) =
(SELECT first_name, last_name FROM employees
WHERE employees.id = accounts.sales_person);
```

A similar result could be accomplished with a join:

```
UPDATE accounts SET contact_first_name = first_name,
contact_last_name = last_name
FROM employees WHERE employees.id = accounts.sales_person;
```

However, the second query may give unexpected results if employees.id is not a unique key, whereas the first query is guaranteed to raise an error if there are multiple id matches. Also, if there is no match for a particular accounts.sales\_person entry, the first query will set the corresponding name fields to NULL, whereas the second query will not update that row at all.

Update statistics in a summary table to match the current data:

```
UPDATE summary s SET (sum_x, sum_y, avg_x, avg_y) =
(SELECT sum(x), sum(y), avg(x), avg(y) FROM data d
WHERE d.group_id = s.group_id);
```

Attempt to insert a new stock item along with the quantity of stock. If the item already exists, instead update the stock count of the existing item. To do this without failing the entire transaction, use save-points:

```
BEGIN;
-- other operations
SAVEPOINT sp1;
INSERT INTO wines VALUES('Chateau Lafite 2003', '24');
-- Assume the above fails because of a unique key violation,
-- so now we issue these commands:
ROLLBACK TO sp1;
UPDATE wines SET stock = stock + 24 WHERE winename = 'Chateau
  Lafite 2003';
-- continue with other operations, and eventually
COMMIT;
```

Change the kind column of the table `films` in the row on which the cursor `c_films` is currently positioned:

```
UPDATE films SET kind = 'Dramatic' WHERE CURRENT OF c_films;
```

## Compatibility

This command conforms to the SQL standard, except that the `FROM` and `RETURNING` clauses are PostgreSQL extensions, as is the ability to use `WITH` with `UPDATE`.

Some other database systems offer a `FROM` option in which the target table is supposed to be listed again within `FROM`. That is not how PostgreSQL interprets `FROM`. Be careful when porting applications that use this extension.

According to the standard, the source value for a parenthesized sub-list of target column names can be any row-valued expression yielding the correct number of columns. PostgreSQL only allows the source value to be a row constructor or a sub-`SELECT`. An individual column's updated value can be specified as `DEFAULT` in the row-constructor case, but not inside a sub-`SELECT`.

---

# VACUUM

VACUUM — garbage-collect and optionally analyze a database

## Synopsis

```
VACUUM [ ( option [, ...] ) ] [ table_and_columns [, ...] ]  
VACUUM [ FULL ] [ FREEZE ] [ VERBOSE ] [ ANALYZE ]  
    [ table_and_columns [, ...] ]
```

where *option* can be one of:

```
FULL [ boolean ]  
FREEZE [ boolean ]  
VERBOSE [ boolean ]  
ANALYZE [ boolean ]  
DISABLE_PAGE_SKIPPING [ boolean ]  
SKIP_LOCKED [ boolean ]  
INDEX_CLEANUP { AUTO | ON | OFF }  
PROCESS_MAIN [ boolean ]  
PROCESS_TOAST [ boolean ]  
TRUNCATE [ boolean ]  
PARALLEL integer  
SKIP_DATABASE_STATS [ boolean ]  
ONLY_DATABASE_STATS [ boolean ]  
BUFFER_USAGE_LIMIT size
```

and *table\_and\_columns* is:

```
table_name [ ( column_name [, ...] ) ]
```

## Description

VACUUM reclaims storage occupied by dead tuples. In normal PostgreSQL operation, tuples that are deleted or obsoleted by an update are not physically removed from their table; they remain present until a VACUUM is done. Therefore it's necessary to do VACUUM periodically, especially on frequently-updated tables.

Without a *table\_and\_columns* list, VACUUM processes every table and materialized view in the current database that the current user has permission to vacuum. With a list, VACUUM processes only those table(s).

VACUUM ANALYZE performs a VACUUM and then an ANALYZE for each selected table. This is a handy combination form for routine maintenance scripts. See ANALYZE for more details about its processing.

Plain VACUUM (without FULL) simply reclaims space and makes it available for re-use. This form of the command can operate in parallel with normal reading and writing of the table, as an exclusive lock is not obtained. However, extra space is not returned to the operating system (in most cases); it's just kept available for re-use within the same table. It also allows us to leverage multiple CPUs in order to process indexes. This feature is known as *parallel vacuum*. To disable this feature, one can use PARALLEL option and specify parallel workers as zero. VACUUM FULL rewrites the entire contents of the table into a new disk file with no extra space, allowing unused space to be returned to the operating system. This form is much slower and requires an ACCESS EXCLUSIVE lock on each table while it is being processed.

When the option list is surrounded by parentheses, the options can be written in any order. Without parentheses, options must be specified in exactly the order shown above. The parenthesized syntax was added in PostgreSQL 9.0; the unparenthesized syntax is deprecated.

## Parameters

### FULL

Selects “full” vacuum, which can reclaim more space, but takes much longer and exclusively locks the table. This method also requires extra disk space, since it writes a new copy of the table and doesn't release the old copy until the operation is complete. Usually this should only be used when a significant amount of space needs to be reclaimed from within the table.

### FREEZE

Selects aggressive “freezing” of tuples. Specifying `FREEZE` is equivalent to performing `VACUUM` with the `vacuum_freeze_min_age` and `vacuum_freeze_table_age` parameters set to zero. Aggressive freezing is always performed when the table is rewritten, so this option is redundant when `FULL` is specified.

### VERBOSE

Prints a detailed vacuum activity report for each table.

### ANALYZE

Updates statistics used by the planner to determine the most efficient way to execute a query.

### DISABLE\_PAGE\_SKIPPING

Normally, `VACUUM` will skip pages based on the visibility map. Pages where all tuples are known to be frozen can always be skipped, and those where all tuples are known to be visible to all transactions may be skipped except when performing an aggressive vacuum. Furthermore, except when performing an aggressive vacuum, some pages may be skipped in order to avoid waiting for other sessions to finish using them. This option disables all page-skipping behavior, and is intended to be used only when the contents of the visibility map are suspect, which should happen only if there is a hardware or software issue causing database corruption.

### SKIP\_LOCKED

Specifies that `VACUUM` should not wait for any conflicting locks to be released when beginning work on a relation: if a relation cannot be locked immediately without waiting, the relation is skipped. Note that even with this option, `VACUUM` may still block when opening the relation's indexes. Additionally, `VACUUM ANALYZE` may still block when acquiring sample rows from partitions, table inheritance children, and some types of foreign tables. Also, while `VACUUM` ordinarily processes all partitions of specified partitioned tables, this option will cause `VACUUM` to skip all partitions if there is a conflicting lock on the partitioned table.

### INDEX\_CLEANUP

Normally, `VACUUM` will skip index vacuuming when there are very few dead tuples in the table. The cost of processing all of the table's indexes is expected to greatly exceed the benefit of removing dead index tuples when this happens. This option can be used to force `VACUUM` to process indexes when there are more than zero dead tuples. The default is `AUTO`, which allows `VACUUM` to skip index vacuuming when appropriate. If `INDEX_CLEANUP` is set to `ON`, `VACUUM` will conservatively remove all dead tuples from indexes. This may be useful for backwards compatibility with earlier releases of PostgreSQL where this was the standard behavior.

`INDEX_CLEANUP` can also be set to `OFF` to force `VACUUM` to *always* skip index vacuuming, even when there are many dead tuples in the table. This may be useful when it is necessary to make `VACUUM` run as quickly as possible to avoid imminent transaction ID wraparound (see Section 25.1.5). However, the wraparound failsafe mechanism controlled by `vacuum_failsafe_age`

will generally trigger automatically to avoid transaction ID wraparound failure, and should be preferred. If index cleanup is not performed regularly, performance may suffer, because as the table is modified indexes will accumulate dead tuples and the table itself will accumulate dead line pointers that cannot be removed until index cleanup is completed.

This option has no effect for tables that have no index and is ignored if the `FULL` option is used. It also has no effect on the transaction ID wraparound failsafe mechanism. When triggered it will skip index vacuuming, even when `INDEX_CLEANUP` is set to `ON`.

#### PROCESS\_MAIN

Specifies that `VACUUM` should attempt to process the main relation. This is usually the desired behavior and is the default. Setting this option to false may be useful when it is only necessary to vacuum a relation's corresponding TOAST table.

#### PROCESS\_TOAST

Specifies that `VACUUM` should attempt to process the corresponding TOAST table for each relation, if one exists. This is usually the desired behavior and is the default. Setting this option to false may be useful when it is only necessary to vacuum the main relation. This option is required when the `FULL` option is used.

#### TRUNCATE

Specifies that `VACUUM` should attempt to truncate off any empty pages at the end of the table and allow the disk space for the truncated pages to be returned to the operating system. This is normally the desired behavior and is the default unless the `vacuum_truncate` option has been set to false for the table to be vacuumed. Setting this option to false may be useful to avoid `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock on the table that the truncation requires. This option is ignored if the `FULL` option is used.

#### PARALLEL

Perform index vacuum and index cleanup phases of `VACUUM` in parallel using *integer* background workers (for the details of each vacuum phase, please refer to Table 28.45). The number of workers used to perform the operation is equal to the number of indexes on the relation that support parallel vacuum which is limited by the number of workers specified with `PARALLEL` option if any which is further limited by `max_parallel_maintenance_workers`. An index can participate in parallel vacuum if and only if the size of the index is more than `min_parallel_index_scan_size`. Please note that it is not guaranteed that the number of parallel workers specified in *integer* will be used during execution. It is possible for a vacuum to run with fewer workers than specified, or even with no workers at all. Only one worker can be used per index. So parallel workers are launched only when there are at least 2 indexes in the table. Workers for vacuum are launched before the start of each phase and exit at the end of the phase. These behaviors might change in a future release. This option can't be used with the `FULL` option.

#### SKIP\_DATABASE\_STATS

Specifies that `VACUUM` should skip updating the database-wide statistics about oldest unfrozen XIDs. Normally `VACUUM` will update these statistics once at the end of the command. However, this can take awhile in a database with a very large number of tables, and it will accomplish nothing unless the table that had contained the oldest unfrozen XID was among those vacuumed. Moreover, if multiple `VACUUM` commands are issued in parallel, only one of them can update the database-wide statistics at a time. Therefore, if an application intends to issue a series of many `VACUUM` commands, it can be helpful to set this option in all but the last such command; or set it in all the commands and separately issue `VACUUM (ONLY_DATABASE_STATS)` afterwards.

#### ONLY\_DATABASE\_STATS

Specifies that `VACUUM` should do nothing except update the database-wide statistics about oldest unfrozen XIDs. When this option is specified, the *table\_and\_columns* list must be empty, and no other option may be enabled except `VERBOSE`.

**BUFFER\_USAGE\_LIMIT**

Specifies the *Buffer Access Strategy* ring buffer size for VACUUM. This size is used to calculate the number of shared buffers which will be reused as part of this strategy. 0 disables use of a *Buffer Access Strategy*. If ANALYZE is also specified, the BUFFER\_USAGE\_LIMIT value is used for both the vacuum and analyze stages. This option can't be used with the FULL option except if ANALYZE is also specified. When this option is not specified, VACUUM uses the value from vacuum\_buffer\_usage\_limit. Higher settings can allow VACUUM to run more quickly, but having too large a setting may cause too many other useful pages to be evicted from shared buffers. The minimum value is 128 kB and the maximum value is 16 GB.

*boolean*

Specifies whether the selected option should be turned on or off. You can write TRUE, ON, or 1 to enable the option, and FALSE, OFF, or 0 to disable it. The *boolean* value can also be omitted, in which case TRUE is assumed.

*integer*

Specifies a non-negative integer value passed to the selected option.

*size*

Specifies an amount of memory in kilobytes. Sizes may also be specified as a string containing the numerical size followed by any one of the following memory units: B (bytes), kB (kilobytes), MB (megabytes), GB (gigabytes), or TB (terabytes).

*table\_name*

The name (optionally schema-qualified) of a specific table or materialized view to vacuum. If the specified table is a partitioned table, all of its leaf partitions are vacuumed.

*column\_name*

The name of a specific column to analyze. Defaults to all columns. If a column list is specified, ANALYZE must also be specified.

## Outputs

When VERBOSE is specified, VACUUM emits progress messages to indicate which table is currently being processed. Various statistics about the tables are printed as well.

## Notes

To vacuum a table, one must ordinarily be the table's owner or a superuser. However, database owners are allowed to vacuum all tables in their databases, except shared catalogs. (The restriction for shared catalogs means that a true database-wide VACUUM can only be performed by a superuser.) VACUUM will skip over any tables that the calling user does not have permission to vacuum.

VACUUM cannot be executed inside a transaction block.

For tables with GIN indexes, VACUUM (in any form) also completes any pending index insertions, by moving pending index entries to the appropriate places in the main GIN index structure. See Section 70.4.1 for details.

We recommend that all databases be vacuumed regularly in order to remove dead rows. PostgreSQL includes an “autovacuum” facility which can automate routine vacuum maintenance. For more information about automatic and manual vacuuming, see Section 25.1.

The FULL option is not recommended for routine use, but might be useful in special cases. An example is when you have deleted or updated most of the rows in a table and would like the table to physically



shrink to occupy less disk space and allow faster table scans. `VACUUM FULL` will usually shrink the table more than a plain `VACUUM` would.

The `PARALLEL` option is used only for vacuum purposes. If this option is specified with the `ANALYZE` option, it does not affect `ANALYZE`.

`VACUUM` causes a substantial increase in I/O traffic, which might cause poor performance for other active sessions. Therefore, it is sometimes advisable to use the cost-based vacuum delay feature. For parallel vacuum, each worker sleeps in proportion to the work done by that worker. See Section 20.4.4 for details.

Each backend running `VACUUM` without the `FULL` option will report its progress in the `pg_stat_progress_vacuum` view. Backends running `VACUUM FULL` will instead report their progress in the `pg_stat_progress_cluster` view. See Section 28.4.5 and Section 28.4.2 for details.

## Examples

To clean a single table `onek`, analyze it for the optimizer and print a detailed vacuum activity report:

```
VACUUM (VERBOSE, ANALYZE) onek;
```

## Compatibility

There is no `VACUUM` statement in the SQL standard.

## See Also

`vacuumdb`, Section 20.4.4, Section 25.1.6, Section 28.4.5, Section 28.4.2

---

# VALUES

VALUES — compute a set of rows

## Synopsis

```
VALUES ( expression [, ...] ) [, ...]
    [ ORDER BY sort_expression [ ASC | DESC | USING operator ]
    [, ...] ]
    [ LIMIT { count | ALL } ]
    [ OFFSET start [ ROW | ROWS ] ]
    [ FETCH { FIRST | NEXT } [ count ] { ROW | ROWS } ONLY ]
```

## Description

VALUES computes a row value or set of row values specified by value expressions. It is most commonly used to generate a “constant table” within a larger command, but it can be used on its own.

When more than one row is specified, all the rows must have the same number of elements. The data types of the resulting table's columns are determined by combining the explicit or inferred types of the expressions appearing in that column, using the same rules as for UNION (see Section 10.5).

Within larger commands, VALUES is syntactically allowed anywhere that SELECT is. Because it is treated like a SELECT by the grammar, it is possible to use the ORDER BY, LIMIT (or equivalently FETCH FIRST), and OFFSET clauses with a VALUES command.

## Parameters

*expression*

A constant or expression to compute and insert at the indicated place in the resulting table (set of rows). In a VALUES list appearing at the top level of an INSERT, an *expression* can be replaced by DEFAULT to indicate that the destination column's default value should be inserted. DEFAULT cannot be used when VALUES appears in other contexts.

*sort\_expression*

An expression or integer constant indicating how to sort the result rows. This expression can refer to the columns of the VALUES result as column1, column2, etc. For more details see ORDER BY Clause in the SELECT documentation.

*operator*

A sorting operator. For details see ORDER BY Clause in the SELECT documentation.

*count*

The maximum number of rows to return. For details see LIMIT Clause in the SELECT documentation.

*start*

The number of rows to skip before starting to return rows. For details see LIMIT Clause in the SELECT documentation.

## Notes

VALUES lists with very large numbers of rows should be avoided, as you might encounter out-of-memory failures or poor performance. VALUES appearing within INSERT is a special case (because the desired column types are known from the INSERT's target table, and need not be inferred by scanning the VALUES list), so it can handle larger lists than are practical in other contexts.

## Examples

A bare VALUES command:

```
VALUES (1, 'one'), (2, 'two'), (3, 'three');
```

This will return a table of two columns and three rows. It's effectively equivalent to:

```
SELECT 1 AS column1, 'one' AS column2
UNION ALL
SELECT 2, 'two'
UNION ALL
SELECT 3, 'three';
```

More usually, VALUES is used within a larger SQL command. The most common use is in INSERT:

```
INSERT INTO films (code, title, did, date_prod, kind)
VALUES ('T_601', 'Yojimbo', 106, '1961-06-16', 'Drama');
```

In the context of INSERT, entries of a VALUES list can be DEFAULT to indicate that the column default should be used here instead of specifying a value:

```
INSERT INTO films VALUES
('UA502', 'Bananas', 105, DEFAULT, 'Comedy', '82 minutes'),
('T_601', 'Yojimbo', 106, DEFAULT, 'Drama', DEFAULT);
```

VALUES can also be used where a sub-SELECT might be written, for example in a FROM clause:

```
SELECT f.*
FROM films f, (VALUES('MGM', 'Horror'), ('UA', 'Sci-Fi')) AS t
(studio, kind)
WHERE f.studio = t.studio AND f.kind = t.kind;

UPDATE employees SET salary = salary * v.increase
FROM (VALUES(1, 200000, 1.2), (2, 400000, 1.4)) AS v (depno,
target, increase)
WHERE employees.depno = v.depno AND employees.sales >= v.target;
```

Note that an AS clause is required when VALUES is used in a FROM clause, just as is true for SELECT. It is not required that the AS clause specify names for all the columns, but it's good practice to do so. (The default column names for VALUES are column1, column2, etc. in PostgreSQL, but these names might be different in other database systems.)

When VALUES is used in INSERT, the values are all automatically coerced to the data type of the corresponding destination column. When it's used in other contexts, it might be necessary to specify the correct data type. If the entries are all quoted literal constants, coercing the first is sufficient to determine the assumed type for all:

```
SELECT * FROM machines
WHERE ip_address IN (VALUES('192.168.0.1'::inet), ('192.168.0.10'),
('192.168.1.43'));
```

### Tip

For simple IN tests, it's better to rely on the list-of-scalars form of IN than to write a VALUES query as shown above. The list of scalars method requires less writing and is often more efficient.

## Compatibility

VALUES conforms to the SQL standard. LIMIT and OFFSET are PostgreSQL extensions; see also under SELECT.

## See Also

INSERT, SELECT

---

# PostgreSQL Client Applications

This part contains reference information for PostgreSQL client applications and utilities. Not all of these commands are of general utility; some might require special privileges. The common feature of these applications is that they can be run on any host, independent of where the database server resides.

When specified on the command line, user and database names have their case preserved — the presence of spaces or special characters might require quoting. Table names and other identifiers do not have their case preserved, except where documented, and might require quoting.

## Table of Contents

clusterdb .....	2026
createdb .....	2029
createuser .....	2033
dropdb .....	2038
dropuser .....	2041
ecpg .....	2044
pg_amcheck .....	2047
pg_basebackup .....	2053
pgbench .....	2062
pg_config .....	2086
pg_dump .....	2089
pg_dumpall .....	2103
pg_isready .....	2110
pg_receivewal .....	2112
pg_recvlogical .....	2117
pg_restore .....	2121
pg_verifybackup .....	2130
psql .....	2133
reindexdb .....	2177
vacuumdb .....	2181

---

# clusterdb

clusterdb — cluster a PostgreSQL database

## Synopsis

```
clusterdb [connection-option...] [ --verbose | -v ] [ --table | -t table ] ... [db-name]
```

```
clusterdb [connection-option...] [ --verbose | -v ] --all | -a
```

## Description

clusterdb is a utility for recluster tables in a PostgreSQL database. It finds tables that have previously been clustered, and clusters them again on the same index that was last used. Tables that have never been clustered are not affected.

clusterdb is a wrapper around the SQL command CLUSTER. There is no effective difference between clustering databases via this utility and via other methods for accessing the server.

## Options

clusterdb accepts the following command-line arguments:

-a  
--all

Cluster all databases.

[ -d ] *dbname*  
[ --dbname= ] *dbname*

Specifies the name of the database to be clustered, when -a/--all is not used. If this is not specified, the database name is read from the environment variable PGDATABASE. If that is not set, the user name specified for the connection is used. The *dbname* can be a connection string. If so, connection string parameters will override any conflicting command line options.

-e  
--echo

Echo the commands that clusterdb generates and sends to the server.

-q  
--quiet

Do not display progress messages.

-t *table*  
--table=*table*

Cluster *table* only. Multiple tables can be clustered by writing multiple -t switches.

-v  
--verbose

Print detailed information during processing.

`-V`  
`--version`

Print the clusterdb version and exit.

`-?`  
`--help`

Show help about clusterdb command line arguments, and exit.

clusterdb also accepts the following command-line arguments for connection parameters:

`-h host`  
`--host=host`

Specifies the host name of the machine on which the server is running. If the value begins with a slash, it is used as the directory for the Unix domain socket.

`-p port`  
`--port=port`

Specifies the TCP port or local Unix domain socket file extension on which the server is listening for connections.

`-U username`  
`--username=username`

User name to connect as.

`-w`  
`--no-password`

Never issue a password prompt. If the server requires password authentication and a password is not available by other means such as a `.pgpass` file, the connection attempt will fail. This option can be useful in batch jobs and scripts where no user is present to enter a password.

`-W`  
`--password`

Force clusterdb to prompt for a password before connecting to a database.

This option is never essential, since clusterdb will automatically prompt for a password if the server demands password authentication. However, clusterdb will waste a connection attempt finding out that the server wants a password. In some cases it is worth typing `-W` to avoid the extra connection attempt.

`--maintenance-db=dbname`

Specifies the name of the database to connect to to discover which databases should be clustered, when `-a/--all` is used. If not specified, the `postgres` database will be used, or if that does not exist, `template1` will be used. This can be a connection string. If so, connection string parameters will override any conflicting command line options. Also, connection string parameters other than the database name itself will be re-used when connecting to other databases.

## Environment

`PGDATABASE`  
`PGHOST`  
`PGPORT`  
`PGUSER`

Default connection parameters

PG\_COLOR

Specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are `always`, `auto` and `never`.

This utility, like most other PostgreSQL utilities, also uses the environment variables supported by libpq (see Section 34.15).

## Diagnostics

In case of difficulty, see `CLUSTER` and `psql` for discussions of potential problems and error messages. The database server must be running at the targeted host. Also, any default connection settings and environment variables used by the libpq front-end library will apply.

## Examples

To cluster the database `test`:

```
$ clusterdb test
```

To cluster a single table `foo` in a database named `xyzyz`:

```
$ clusterdb --table=foo xyzyz
```

## See Also

`CLUSTER`



---

# createdb

createdb — create a new PostgreSQL database

## Synopsis

```
createdb [connection-option...] [option...] [dbname [description]]
```

## Description

createdb creates a new PostgreSQL database.

Normally, the database user who executes this command becomes the owner of the new database. However, a different owner can be specified via the `-O` option, if the executing user has appropriate privileges.

createdb is a wrapper around the SQL command `CREATE DATABASE`. There is no effective difference between creating databases via this utility and via other methods for accessing the server.

## Options

createdb accepts the following command-line arguments:

*dbname*

Specifies the name of the database to be created. The name must be unique among all PostgreSQL databases in this cluster. The default is to create a database with the same name as the current system user.

*description*

Specifies a comment to be associated with the newly created database.

`-D tablespace`

`--tablespace=tablespace`

Specifies the default tablespace for the database. (This name is processed as a double-quoted identifier.)

`-e`

`--echo`

Echo the commands that createdb generates and sends to the server.

`-E encoding`

`--encoding=encoding`

Specifies the character encoding scheme to be used in this database. The character sets supported by the PostgreSQL server are described in Section 24.3.1.

`-l locale`

`--locale=locale`

Specifies the locale to be used in this database. This is equivalent to specifying `--lc-collate`, `--lc-ctype`, and `--icu-locale` to the same value. Some locales are only valid for ICU and must be set with `--icu-locale`.

`--lc-collate=locale`

Specifies the LC\_COLLATE setting to be used in this database.

`--lc-ctype=locale`

Specifies the LC\_CTYPE setting to be used in this database.

`--icu-locale=locale`

Specifies the ICU locale ID to be used in this database, if the ICU locale provider is selected.

`--icu-rules=rules`

Specifies additional collation rules to customize the behavior of the default collation of this database. This is supported for ICU only.

`--locale-provider={libc|icu}`

Specifies the locale provider for the database's default collation.

`-O owner`

`--owner=owner`

Specifies the database user who will own the new database. (This name is processed as a double-quoted identifier.)

`-S template`

`--strategy=strategy`

Specifies the database creation strategy. See CREATE DATABASE STRATEGY for more details.

`-T template`

`--template=template`

Specifies the template database from which to build this database. (This name is processed as a double-quoted identifier.)

`-V`

`--version`

Print the createdb version and exit.

`-?`

`--help`

Show help about createdb command line arguments, and exit.

The options `-D`, `-l`, `-E`, `-O`, and `-T` correspond to options of the underlying SQL command CREATE DATABASE; see there for more information about them.

createdb also accepts the following command-line arguments for connection parameters:

`-h host`

`--host=host`

Specifies the host name of the machine on which the server is running. If the value begins with a slash, it is used as the directory for the Unix domain socket.

`-p port`

`--port=port`

Specifies the TCP port or the local Unix domain socket file extension on which the server is listening for connections.

```
-U username  
--username=username
```

User name to connect as.

```
-w  
--no-password
```

Never issue a password prompt. If the server requires password authentication and a password is not available by other means such as a `.pgpass` file, the connection attempt will fail. This option can be useful in batch jobs and scripts where no user is present to enter a password.

```
-W  
--password
```

Force createdb to prompt for a password before connecting to a database.

This option is never essential, since createdb will automatically prompt for a password if the server demands password authentication. However, createdb will waste a connection attempt finding out that the server wants a password. In some cases it is worth typing `-W` to avoid the extra connection attempt.

```
--maintenance-db=dbname
```

Specifies the name of the database to connect to when creating the new database. If not specified, the `postgres` database will be used; if that does not exist (or if it is the name of the new database being created), `template1` will be used. This can be a connection string. If so, connection string parameters will override any conflicting command line options.

## Environment

PGDATABASE

If set, the name of the database to create, unless overridden on the command line.

PGHOST  
PGPORT  
PGUSER

Default connection parameters. PGUSER also determines the name of the database to create, if it is not specified on the command line or by PGDATABASE.

PG\_COLOR

Specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are `always`, `auto` and `never`.

This utility, like most other PostgreSQL utilities, also uses the environment variables supported by libpq (see Section 34.15).

## Diagnostics

In case of difficulty, see `CREATE DATABASE` and `psql` for discussions of potential problems and error messages. The database server must be running at the targeted host. Also, any default connection settings and environment variables used by the libpq front-end library will apply.

## Examples

To create the database demo using the default database server:

```
$ createdb demo
```

To create the database `demo` using the server on host `eden`, port `5000`, using the `template0` template database, here is the command-line command and the underlying SQL command:

```
$ createdb -p 5000 -h eden -T template0 -e demo
CREATE DATABASE demo TEMPLATE template0;
```

## See Also

`dropdb`, `CREATE DATABASE`

---

# createuser

createuser — define a new PostgreSQL user account

## Synopsis

```
createuser [connection-option...] [option...] [username]
```

## Description

createuser creates a new PostgreSQL user (or more precisely, a role). Only superusers and users with CREATEROLE privilege can create new users, so createuser must be invoked by someone who can connect as a superuser or a user with CREATEROLE privilege.

If you wish to create a role with the SUPERUSER, REPLICATION, or BYPASSRLS privilege, you must connect as a superuser, not merely with CREATEROLE privilege. Being a superuser implies the ability to bypass all access permission checks within the database, so superuser access should not be granted lightly. CREATEROLE also conveys very extensive privileges.

createuser is a wrapper around the SQL command CREATE ROLE. There is no effective difference between creating users via this utility and via other methods for accessing the server.

## Options

createuser accepts the following command-line arguments:

*username*

Specifies the name of the PostgreSQL user to be created. This name must be different from all existing roles in this PostgreSQL installation.

*-a role*

*--with-admin=role*

Specifies an existing role that will be automatically added as a member of the new role with admin option, giving it the right to grant membership in the new role to others. Multiple existing roles can be specified by writing multiple *-a* switches.

*-c number*

*--connection-limit=number*

Set a maximum number of connections for the new user. The default is to set no limit.

*-d*

*--createdb*

The new user will be allowed to create databases.

*-D*

*--no-createdb*

The new user will not be allowed to create databases. This is the default.

*-e*

*--echo*

Echo the commands that createuser generates and sends to the server.

`-E`  
`--encrypted`

This option is obsolete but still accepted for backward compatibility.

`-g role`  
`--member-of=role`  
`--role=role` (deprecated)

Specifies the new role should be automatically added as a member of the specified existing role. Multiple existing roles can be specified by writing multiple `-g` switches.

`-i`  
`--inherit`

The new role will automatically inherit privileges of roles it is a member of. This is the default.

`-I`  
`--no-inherit`

The new role will not automatically inherit privileges of roles it is a member of.

`--interactive`

Prompt for the user name if none is specified on the command line, and also prompt for whichever of the options `-d/-D`, `-r/-R`, `-s/-S` is not specified on the command line. (This was the default behavior up to PostgreSQL 9.1.)

`-l`  
`--login`

The new user will be allowed to log in (that is, the user name can be used as the initial session user identifier). This is the default.

`-L`  
`--no-login`

The new user will not be allowed to log in. (A role without login privilege is still useful as a means of managing database permissions.)

`-m role`  
`--with-member=role`

Specifies an existing role that will be automatically added as a member of the new role. Multiple existing roles can be specified by writing multiple `-m` switches.

`-P`  
`--pwprompt`

If given, createuser will issue a prompt for the password of the new user. This is not necessary if you do not plan on using password authentication.

`-r`  
`--createrole`

The new user will be allowed to create, alter, drop, comment on, change the security label for other roles; that is, this user will have `CREATEROLE` privilege. See role creation for more details about what capabilities are conferred by this privilege.

`-R`  
`--no-createrole`

The new user will not be allowed to create new roles. This is the default.

`-s`  
`--superuser`

The new user will be a superuser.

`-S`  
`--no-superuser`

The new user will not be a superuser. This is the default.

`-v timestamp`  
`--valid-until=timestamp`

Set a date and time after which the role's password is no longer valid. The default is to set no password expiry date.

`-V`  
`--version`

Print the createuser version and exit.

`--bypassrls`

The new user will bypass every row-level security (RLS) policy.

`--no-bypassrls`

The new user will not bypass row-level security (RLS) policies. This is the default.

`--replication`

The new user will have the `REPLICATION` privilege, which is described more fully in the documentation for `CREATE ROLE`.

`--no-replication`

The new user will not have the `REPLICATION` privilege, which is described more fully in the documentation for `CREATE ROLE`. This is the default.

`-?`  
`--help`

Show help about createuser command line arguments, and exit.

createuser also accepts the following command-line arguments for connection parameters:

`-h host`  
`--host=host`

Specifies the host name of the machine on which the server is running. If the value begins with a slash, it is used as the directory for the Unix domain socket.

`-p port`  
`--port=port`

Specifies the TCP port or local Unix domain socket file extension on which the server is listening for connections.

`-U username`  
`--username=username`

User name to connect as (not the user name to create).

`-w`  
`--no-password`

Never issue a password prompt. If the server requires password authentication and a password is not available by other means such as a `.pgpass` file, the connection attempt will fail. This option can be useful in batch jobs and scripts where no user is present to enter a password.

`-W`  
`--password`

Force createuser to prompt for a password (for connecting to the server, not for the password of the new user).

This option is never essential, since createuser will automatically prompt for a password if the server demands password authentication. However, createuser will waste a connection attempt finding out that the server wants a password. In some cases it is worth typing `-W` to avoid the extra connection attempt.

## Environment

`PGHOST`  
`PGPORT`  
`PGUSER`

Default connection parameters

`PG_COLOR`

Specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are `always`, `auto` and `never`.

This utility, like most other PostgreSQL utilities, also uses the environment variables supported by libpq (see Section 34.15).

## Diagnostics

In case of difficulty, see `CREATE ROLE` and `psql` for discussions of potential problems and error messages. The database server must be running at the targeted host. Also, any default connection settings and environment variables used by the libpq front-end library will apply.

## Examples

To create a user `joe` on the default database server:

```
$ createuser joe
```

To create a user `joe` on the default database server with prompting for some additional attributes:

```
$ createuser --interactive joe
Shall the new role be a superuser? (y/n) n
Shall the new role be allowed to create databases? (y/n) n
Shall the new role be allowed to create more new roles? (y/n) n
```

To create the same user `joe` using the server on host `eden`, port 5000, with attributes explicitly specified, taking a look at the underlying command:



```
$ createuser -h eden -p 5000 -s -D -R -e joe
CREATE ROLE joe NOSUPERUSER NOCREATEDB NOCREATEROLE INHERIT LOGIN;
```

To create the user joe as a superuser, and assign a password immediately:

```
$ createuser -P -s -e joe
Enter password for new role: xyzzzy
Enter it again: xyzzzy
CREATE ROLE joe PASSWORD 'md5b5f5ba1a423792b526f799ae4eb3d59e'
SUPERUSER CREATEDB CREATEROLE INHERIT LOGIN;
```

In the above example, the new password isn't actually echoed when typed, but we show what was typed for clarity. As you see, the password is encrypted before it is sent to the client.

## See Also

dropuser, CREATE ROLE, createrole\_self\_grant

---

# dropdb

dropdb — remove a PostgreSQL database

## Synopsis

dropdb [*connection-option...*] [*option...*] *dbname*

## Description

dropdb destroys an existing PostgreSQL database. The user who executes this command must be a database superuser or the owner of the database.

dropdb is a wrapper around the SQL command `DROP DATABASE`. There is no effective difference between dropping databases via this utility and via other methods for accessing the server.

## Options

dropdb accepts the following command-line arguments:

*dbname*

Specifies the name of the database to be removed.

`-e`

`--echo`

Echo the commands that dropdb generates and sends to the server.

`-f`

`--force`

Attempt to terminate all existing connections to the target database before dropping it. See `DROP DATABASE` for more information on this option.

`-i`

`--interactive`

Issues a verification prompt before doing anything destructive.

`-V`

`--version`

Print the dropdb version and exit.

`--if-exists`

Do not throw an error if the database does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

`-?`

`--help`

Show help about dropdb command line arguments, and exit.

dropdb also accepts the following command-line arguments for connection parameters:

`-h host`  
`--host=host`

Specifies the host name of the machine on which the server is running. If the value begins with a slash, it is used as the directory for the Unix domain socket.

`-p port`  
`--port=port`

Specifies the TCP port or local Unix domain socket file extension on which the server is listening for connections.

`-U username`  
`--username=username`

User name to connect as.

`-w`  
`--no-password`

Never issue a password prompt. If the server requires password authentication and a password is not available by other means such as a `.pgpass` file, the connection attempt will fail. This option can be useful in batch jobs and scripts where no user is present to enter a password.

`-W`  
`--password`

Force dropdb to prompt for a password before connecting to a database.

This option is never essential, since dropdb will automatically prompt for a password if the server demands password authentication. However, dropdb will waste a connection attempt finding out that the server wants a password. In some cases it is worth typing `-W` to avoid the extra connection attempt.

`--maintenance-db=dbname`

Specifies the name of the database to connect to in order to drop the target database. If not specified, the `postgres` database will be used; if that does not exist (or is the database being dropped), `template1` will be used. This can be a connection string. If so, connection string parameters will override any conflicting command line options.

## Environment

`PGHOST`  
`PGPORT`  
`PGUSER`

Default connection parameters

`PG_COLOR`

Specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are `always`, `auto` and `never`.

This utility, like most other PostgreSQL utilities, also uses the environment variables supported by libpq (see Section 34.15).

## Diagnostics

In case of difficulty, see `DROP DATABASE` and `psql` for discussions of potential problems and error messages. The database server must be running at the targeted host. Also, any default connection settings and environment variables used by the libpq front-end library will apply.

## Examples

To destroy the database demo on the default database server:

```
$ dropdb demo
```

To destroy the database demo using the server on host eden, port 5000, with verification and a peek at the underlying command:

```
$ dropdb -p 5000 -h eden -i -e demo
Database "demo" will be permanently deleted.
Are you sure? (y/n) y
DROP DATABASE demo;
```

## See Also

createdb, DROP DATABASE

---

# dropuser

dropuser — remove a PostgreSQL user account

## Synopsis

```
dropuser [connection-option...] [option...] [username]
```

## Description

dropuser removes an existing PostgreSQL user. Superusers can use this command to remove any role; otherwise, only non-superuser roles can be removed, and only by a user who possesses the `CREATE-ROLE` privilege and has been granted `ADMIN OPTION` on the target role.

dropuser is a wrapper around the SQL command `DROP ROLE`. There is no effective difference between dropping users via this utility and via other methods for accessing the server.

## Options

dropuser accepts the following command-line arguments:

*username*

Specifies the name of the PostgreSQL user to be removed. You will be prompted for a name if none is specified on the command line and the `-i/--interactive` option is used.

`-e`  
`--echo`

Echo the commands that dropuser generates and sends to the server.

`-i`  
`--interactive`

Prompt for confirmation before actually removing the user, and prompt for the user name if none is specified on the command line.

`-V`  
`--version`

Print the dropuser version and exit.

`--if-exists`

Do not throw an error if the user does not exist. A notice is issued in this case.

`-?`  
`--help`

Show help about dropuser command line arguments, and exit.

dropuser also accepts the following command-line arguments for connection parameters:

`-h host`  
`--host=host`

Specifies the host name of the machine on which the server is running. If the value begins with a slash, it is used as the directory for the Unix domain socket.

`-p port`  
`--port=port`

Specifies the TCP port or local Unix domain socket file extension on which the server is listening for connections.

`-U username`  
`--username=username`

User name to connect as (not the user name to drop).

`-w`  
`--no-password`

Never issue a password prompt. If the server requires password authentication and a password is not available by other means such as a `.pgpass` file, the connection attempt will fail. This option can be useful in batch jobs and scripts where no user is present to enter a password.

`-W`  
`--password`

Force dropuser to prompt for a password before connecting to a database.

This option is never essential, since dropuser will automatically prompt for a password if the server demands password authentication. However, dropuser will waste a connection attempt finding out that the server wants a password. In some cases it is worth typing `-W` to avoid the extra connection attempt.

## Environment

PGHOST  
PGPORT  
PGUSER

Default connection parameters

PG\_COLOR

Specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are `always`, `auto` and `never`.

This utility, like most other PostgreSQL utilities, also uses the environment variables supported by libpq (see Section 34.15).

## Diagnostics

In case of difficulty, see `DROP ROLE` and `psql` for discussions of potential problems and error messages. The database server must be running at the targeted host. Also, any default connection settings and environment variables used by the libpq front-end library will apply.

## Examples

To remove user `joe` from the default database server:

```
$ dropuser joe
```

To remove user `joe` using the server on host `eden`, port 5000, with verification and a peek at the underlying command:

```
$ dropuser -p 5000 -h eden -i -e joe
Role "joe" will be permanently removed.
Are you sure? (y/n) y
DROP ROLE joe;
```

## See Also

createuser, DROP ROLE

---

# ecpg

ecpg — embedded SQL C preprocessor

## Synopsis

`ecpg [option...] file...`

## Description

`ecpg` is the embedded SQL preprocessor for C programs. It converts C programs with embedded SQL statements to normal C code by replacing the SQL invocations with special function calls. The output files can then be processed with any C compiler tool chain.

`ecpg` will convert each input file given on the command line to the corresponding C output file. If an input file name does not have any extension, `.pgc` is assumed. The file's extension will be replaced by `.c` to construct the output file name. But the output file name can be overridden using the `-o` option.

If an input file name is just `-`, `ecpg` reads the program from standard input (and writes to standard output, unless that is overridden with `-o`).

This reference page does not describe the embedded SQL language. See Chapter 36 for more information on that topic.

## Options

`ecpg` accepts the following command-line arguments:

`-c`

Automatically generate certain C code from SQL code. Currently, this works for `EXEC SQL TYPE`.

`-C mode`

Set a compatibility mode. *mode* can be `INFORMIX`, `INFORMIX_SE`, or `ORACLE`.

`-D symbol`

Define a C preprocessor symbol.

`-h`

Process header files. When this option is specified, the output file extension becomes `.h` not `.c`, and the default input file extension is `.pgh` not `.pgc`. Also, the `-c` option is forced on.

`-i`

Parse system include files as well.

`-I directory`

Specify an additional include path, used to find files included via `EXEC SQL INCLUDE`. Defaults are `.` (current directory), `/usr/local/include`, the PostgreSQL include directory which is defined at compile time (default: `/usr/local/pgsql/include`), and `/usr/include`, in that order.



`-o filename`

Specifies that `ecpg` should write all its output to the given *filename*. Write `-o -` to send all output to standard output.

`-r option`

Selects run-time behavior. *Option* can be one of the following:

`no_indicator`

Do not use indicators but instead use special values to represent null values. Historically there have been databases using this approach.

`prepare`

Prepare all statements before using them. Libecpg will keep a cache of prepared statements and reuse a statement if it gets executed again. If the cache runs full, libecpg will free the least used statement.

`questionmarks`

Allow question mark as placeholder for compatibility reasons. This used to be the default long ago.

`-t`

Turn on autocommit of transactions. In this mode, each SQL command is automatically committed unless it is inside an explicit transaction block. In the default mode, commands are committed only when `EXEC SQL COMMIT` is issued.

`-v`

Print additional information including the version and the "include" path.

`--version`

Print the `ecpg` version and exit.

`-?`

`--help`

Show help about `ecpg` command line arguments, and exit.

## Notes

When compiling the preprocessed C code files, the compiler needs to be able to find the ECPG header files in the PostgreSQL include directory. Therefore, you might have to use the `-I` option when invoking the compiler (e.g., `-I/usr/local/pgsql/include`).

Programs using C code with embedded SQL have to be linked against the `libecpg` library, for example using the linker options `-L/usr/local/pgsql/lib -lecpg`.

The value of either of these directories that is appropriate for the installation can be found out using `pg_config`.

## Examples

If you have an embedded SQL C source file named `prog1.pgc`, you can create an executable program using the following sequence of commands:

```
ecpg prog1.pgc  
cc -I/usr/local/pgsql/include -c prog1.c  
cc -o prog1 prog1.o -L/usr/local/pgsql/lib -lecpg
```

---

# pg\_amcheck

pg\_amcheck — checks for corruption in one or more PostgreSQL databases

## Synopsis

```
pg_amcheck [option...] [dbname]
```

## Description

pg\_amcheck supports running amcheck's corruption checking functions against one or more databases, with options to select which schemas, tables and indexes to check, which kinds of checking to perform, and whether to perform the checks in parallel, and if so, the number of parallel connections to establish and use.

Only ordinary and toast table relations, materialized views, sequences, and btree indexes are currently supported. Other relation types are silently skipped.

If *dbname* is specified, it should be the name of a single database to check, and no other database selection options should be present. Otherwise, if any database selection options are present, all matching databases will be checked. If no such options are present, the default database will be checked. Database selection options include `--all`, `--database` and `--exclude-database`. They also include `--relation`, `--exclude-relation`, `--table`, `--exclude-table`, `--index`, and `--exclude-index`, but only when such options are used with a three-part pattern (e.g. `mydb*.myschema*.myrel*`). Finally, they include `--schema` and `--exclude-schema` when such options are used with a two-part pattern (e.g. `mydb*.myschema*`).

*dbname* can also be a connection string.

## Options

The following command-line options control what is checked:

```
-a  
--all
```

Check all databases, except for any excluded via `--exclude-database`.

```
-d pattern  
--database=pattern
```

Check databases matching the specified *pattern*, except for any excluded by `--exclude-database`. This option can be specified more than once.

```
-D pattern  
--exclude-database=pattern
```

Exclude databases matching the given *pattern*. This option can be specified more than once.

```
-i pattern  
--index=pattern
```

Check indexes matching the specified *pattern*, unless they are otherwise excluded. This option can be specified more than once.

This is similar to the `--relation` option, except that it applies only to indexes, not to other relation types.

`-I pattern`  
`--exclude-index=pattern`

Exclude indexes matching the specified *pattern*. This option can be specified more than once.

This is similar to the `--exclude-relation` option, except that it applies only to indexes, not other relation types.

`-r pattern`  
`--relation=pattern`

Check relations matching the specified *pattern*, unless they are otherwise excluded. This option can be specified more than once.

Patterns may be unqualified, e.g. `myrel*`, or they may be schema-qualified, e.g. `myschema*.myrel*` or database-qualified and schema-qualified, e.g. `mydb*.myschema*.myrel*`. A database-qualified pattern will add matching databases to the list of databases to be checked.

`-R pattern`  
`--exclude-relation=pattern`

Exclude relations matching the specified *pattern*. This option can be specified more than once.

As with `--relation`, the *pattern* may be unqualified, schema-qualified, or database- and schema-qualified.

`-s pattern`  
`--schema=pattern`

Check tables and indexes in schemas matching the specified *pattern*, unless they are otherwise excluded. This option can be specified more than once.

To select only tables in schemas matching a particular pattern, consider using something like `--table=SCHEMAPAT.* --no-dependent-indexes`. To select only indexes, consider using something like `--index=SCHEMAPAT.*`.

A schema pattern may be database-qualified. For example, you may write `--schema=mydb*.myschema*` to select schemas matching `myschema*` in databases matching `mydb*`.

`-S pattern`  
`--exclude-schema=pattern`

Exclude tables and indexes in schemas matching the specified *pattern*. This option can be specified more than once.

As with `--schema`, the pattern may be database-qualified.

`-t pattern`  
`--table=pattern`

Check tables matching the specified *pattern*, unless they are otherwise excluded. This option can be specified more than once.

This is similar to the `--relation` option, except that it applies only to tables, materialized views, and sequences, not to indexes.

`-T pattern`  
`--exclude-table=pattern`

Exclude tables matching the specified *pattern*. This option can be specified more than once.

This is similar to the `--exclude-relation` option, except that it applies only to tables, materialized views, and sequences, not to indexes.

#### `--no-dependent-indexes`

By default, if a table is checked, any btree indexes of that table will also be checked, even if they are not explicitly selected by an option such as `--index` or `--relation`. This option suppresses that behavior.

#### `--no-dependent-toast`

By default, if a table is checked, its toast table, if any, will also be checked, even if it is not explicitly selected by an option such as `--table` or `--relation`. This option suppresses that behavior.

#### `--no-strict-names`

By default, if an argument to `--database`, `--table`, `--index`, or `--relation` matches no objects, it is a fatal error. This option downgrades that error to a warning.

The following command-line options control checking of tables:

#### `--exclude-toast-pointers`

By default, whenever a toast pointer is encountered in a table, a lookup is performed to ensure that it references apparently-valid entries in the toast table. These checks can be quite slow, and this option can be used to skip them.

#### `--on-error-stop`

After reporting all corruptions on the first page of a table where corruption is found, stop processing that table relation and move on to the next table or index.

Note that index checking always stops after the first corrupt page. This option only has meaning relative to table relations.

#### `--skip=option`

If `all-frozen` is given, table corruption checks will skip over pages in all tables that are marked as all frozen.

If `all-visible` is given, table corruption checks will skip over pages in all tables that are marked as all visible.

By default, no pages are skipped. This can be specified as `none`, but since this is the default, it need not be mentioned.

#### `--startblock=block`

Start checking at the specified block number. An error will occur if the table relation being checked has fewer than this number of blocks. This option does not apply to indexes, and is probably only useful when checking a single table relation. See `--endblock` for further caveats.

#### `--endblock=block`

End checking at the specified block number. An error will occur if the table relation being checked has fewer than this number of blocks. This option does not apply to indexes, and is probably only useful when checking a single table relation. If both a regular table and a toast table are checked, this option will apply to both, but higher-numbered toast blocks may still be accessed while validating toast pointers, unless that is suppressed using `--exclude-toast-pointers`.

The following command-line options control checking of B-tree indexes:

`--heapallindexed`

For each index checked, verify the presence of all heap tuples as index tuples in the index using amcheck's `heapallindexed` option.

`--parent-check`

For each btree index checked, use amcheck's `bt_index_parent_check` function, which performs additional checks of parent/child relationships during index checking.

The default is to use amcheck's `bt_index_check` function, but note that use of the `--root-descend` option implicitly selects `bt_index_parent_check`.

`--rootdescend`

For each index checked, re-find tuples on the leaf level by performing a new search from the root page for each tuple using amcheck's `rootdescend` option.

Use of this option implicitly also selects the `--parent-check` option.

This form of verification was originally written to help in the development of btree index features. It may be of limited use or even of no use in helping detect the kinds of corruption that occur in practice. It may also cause corruption checking to take considerably longer and consume considerably more resources on the server.

### Warning

The extra checks performed against B-tree indexes when the `--parent-check` option or the `--rootdescend` option is specified require relatively strong relation-level locks. These checks are the only checks that will block concurrent data modification from `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, and `DELETE` commands.

The following command-line options control the connection to the server:

`-h hostname`

`--host=hostname`

Specifies the host name of the machine on which the server is running. If the value begins with a slash, it is used as the directory for the Unix domain socket.

`-p port`

`--port=port`

Specifies the TCP port or local Unix domain socket file extension on which the server is listening for connections.

`-U`

`--username=username`

User name to connect as.

`-w`

`--no-password`

Never issue a password prompt. If the server requires password authentication and a password is not available by other means such as a `.pgpass` file, the connection attempt will fail. This option can be useful in batch jobs and scripts where no user is present to enter a password.

-W

--password

Force pg\_amcheck to prompt for a password before connecting to a database.

This option is never essential, since pg\_amcheck will automatically prompt for a password if the server demands password authentication. However, pg\_amcheck will waste a connection attempt finding out that the server wants a password. In some cases it is worth typing -W to avoid the extra connection attempt.

--maintenance-db=*dbname*

Specifies a database or connection string to be used to discover the list of databases to be checked. If neither --all nor any option including a database pattern is used, no such connection is required and this option does nothing. Otherwise, any connection string parameters other than the database name which are included in the value for this option will also be used when connecting to the databases being checked. If this option is omitted, the default is postgres or, if that fails, template1.

Other options are also available:

-e

--echo

Echo to stdout all SQL sent to the server.

-j *num*

--jobs=*num*

Use *num* concurrent connections to the server, or one per object to be checked, whichever is less.

The default is to use a single connection.

-P

--progress

Show progress information. Progress information includes the number of relations for which checking has been completed, and the total size of those relations. It also includes the total number of relations that will eventually be checked, and the estimated size of those relations.

-v

--verbose

Print more messages. In particular, this will print a message for each relation being checked, and will increase the level of detail shown for server errors.

-V

--version

Print the pg\_amcheck version and exit.

--install-missing

--install-missing=*schema*

Install any missing extensions that are required to check the database(s). If not yet installed, each extension's objects will be installed into the given *schema*, or if not specified into schema pg\_catalog.

At present, the only required extension is amcheck.

-?

--help

Show help about pg\_amcheck command line arguments, and exit.

## Notes

pg\_amcheck is designed to work with PostgreSQL 14.0 and later.

## See Also

[amcheck](#)



---

# pg\_basebackup

pg\_basebackup — take a base backup of a PostgreSQL cluster

## Synopsis

```
pg_basebackup [option...]
```

## Description

pg\_basebackup is used to take a base backup of a running PostgreSQL database cluster. The backup is taken without affecting other clients of the database, and can be used both for point-in-time recovery (see Section 26.3) and as the starting point for a log-shipping or streaming-replication standby server (see Section 27.2).

pg\_basebackup makes an exact copy of the database cluster's files, while making sure the server is put into and out of backup mode automatically. Backups are always taken of the entire database cluster; it is not possible to back up individual databases or database objects. For selective backups, another tool such as pg\_dump must be used.

The backup is made over a regular PostgreSQL connection that uses the replication protocol. The connection must be made with a user ID that has `REPLICATION` permissions (see Section 22.2) or is a superuser, and `pg_hba.conf` must permit the replication connection. The server must also be configured with `max_wal_senders` set high enough to provide at least one walsender for the backup plus one for WAL streaming (if used).

There can be multiple pg\_basebackups running at the same time, but it is usually better from a performance point of view to take only one backup, and copy the result.

pg\_basebackup can make a base backup from not only a primary server but also a standby. To take a backup from a standby, set up the standby so that it can accept replication connections (that is, set `max_wal_senders` and `hot_standby`, and configure its `pg_hba.conf` appropriately). You will also need to enable `full_page_writes` on the primary.

Note that there are some limitations in taking a backup from a standby:

- The backup history file is not created in the database cluster backed up.
- pg\_basebackup cannot force the standby to switch to a new WAL file at the end of backup. When you are using `-X none`, if write activity on the primary is low, pg\_basebackup may need to wait a long time for the last WAL file required for the backup to be switched and archived. In this case, it may be useful to run `pg_switch_wal` on the primary in order to trigger an immediate WAL file switch.
- If the standby is promoted to be primary during backup, the backup fails.
- All WAL records required for the backup must contain sufficient full-page writes, which requires you to enable `full_page_writes` on the primary.

Whenever pg\_basebackup is taking a base backup, the server's `pg_stat_progress_basebackup` view will report the progress of the backup. See Section 28.4.6 for details.

## Options

The following command-line options control the location and format of the output:

`-D directory`  
`--pgdata=directory`

Sets the target directory to write the output to. `pg_basebackup` will create this directory (and any missing parent directories) if it does not exist. If it already exists, it must be empty.

When the backup is in tar format, the target directory may be specified as `-` (dash), causing the tar file to be written to `stdout`.

This option is required.

`-F format`  
`--format=format`

Selects the format for the output. *format* can be one of the following:

`p`  
`plain`

Write the output as plain files, with the same layout as the source server's data directory and tablespaces. When the cluster has no additional tablespaces, the whole database will be placed in the target directory. If the cluster contains additional tablespaces, the main data directory will be placed in the target directory, but all other tablespaces will be placed in the same absolute path as they have on the source server. (See `--tablespace-mapping` to change that.)

This is the default format.

`t`  
`tar`

Write the output as tar files in the target directory. The main data directory's contents will be written to a file named `base.tar`, and each other tablespace will be written to a separate tar file named after that tablespace's OID.

If the target directory is specified as `-` (dash), the tar contents will be written to standard output, suitable for piping to (for example) `gzip`. This is only allowed if the cluster has no additional tablespaces and WAL streaming is not used.

`-R`  
`--write-recovery-conf`

Creates a `standby.signal` file and appends connection settings to the `postgresql.auto.conf` file in the target directory (or within the base archive file when using tar format). This eases setting up a standby server using the results of the backup.

The `postgresql.auto.conf` file will record the connection settings and, if specified, the replication slot that `pg_basebackup` is using, so that streaming replication will use the same settings later on.

`-t target`  
`--target=target`

Instructs the server where to place the base backup. The default target is `client`, which specifies that the backup should be sent to the machine where `pg_basebackup` is running. If the target is instead set to `server:some/path`, the backup will be stored on the machine where the server is running in the `/some/path` directory. Storing a backup on the server requires superuser privileges or having privileges of the `pg_write_server_files` role. If the target is set to `blackhole`, the contents are discarded and not stored anywhere. This should only be used for testing purposes, as you will not end up with an actual backup.

Since WAL streaming is implemented by `pg_basebackup` rather than by the server, this option cannot be used together with `-Xstream`. Since that is the default, when this option is specified, you must also specify either `-Xfetch` or `-Xnone`.

`-T olddir=newdir`  
`--tablespace-mapping=olddir=newdir`

Relocates the tablespace in directory *olddir* to *newdir* during the backup. To be effective, *olddir* must exactly match the path specification of the tablespace as it is defined on the source server. (But it is not an error if there is no tablespace in *olddir* on the source server.) Meanwhile *newdir* is a directory in the receiving host's filesystem. As with the main target directory, *newdir* need not exist already, but if it does exist it must be empty. Both *olddir* and *newdir* must be absolute paths. If either path needs to contain an equal sign (=), precede that with a backslash. This option can be specified multiple times for multiple tablespaces.

If a tablespace is relocated in this way, the symbolic links inside the main data directory are updated to point to the new location. So the new data directory is ready to be used for a new server instance with all tablespaces in the updated locations.

Currently, this option only works with plain output format; it is ignored if tar format is selected.

`--waldir=waldir`

Sets the directory to write WAL (write-ahead log) files to. By default WAL files will be placed in the `pg_wal` subdirectory of the target directory, but this option can be used to place them elsewhere. *waldir* must be an absolute path. As with the main target directory, *waldir* need not exist already, but if it does exist it must be empty. This option can only be specified when the backup is in plain format.

`-X method`  
`--wal-method=method`

Includes the required WAL (write-ahead log) files in the backup. This will include all write-ahead logs generated during the backup. Unless the method `none` is specified, it is possible to start a postmaster in the target directory without the need to consult the WAL archive, thus making the output a completely standalone backup.

The following *methods* for collecting the write-ahead logs are supported:

`n`  
`none`

Don't include write-ahead logs in the backup.

`f`  
`fetch`

The write-ahead log files are collected at the end of the backup. Therefore, it is necessary for the source server's `wal_keep_size` parameter to be set high enough that the required log data is not removed before the end of the backup. If the required log data has been recycled before it's time to transfer it, the backup will fail and be unusable.

When tar format is used, the write-ahead log files will be included in the `base.tar` file.

`s`  
`stream`

Stream write-ahead log data while the backup is being taken. This method will open a second connection to the server and start streaming the write-ahead log in parallel while running the backup. Therefore, it will require two replication connections not just one. As long as the

client can keep up with the write-ahead log data, using this method requires no extra write-ahead logs to be saved on the source server.

When tar format is used, the write-ahead log files will be written to a separate file named `pg_wal.tar` (if the server is a version earlier than 10, the file will be named `pg_xlog.tar`).

This value is the default.

`-z`  
`--gzip`

Enables gzip compression of tar file output, with the default compression level. Compression is only available when using the tar format, and the suffix `.gz` will automatically be added to all tar filenames.

`-Z level`  
`-Z [{client|server}]-method[:detail]`  
`--compress=level`  
`--compress=[{client|server}]-method[:detail]`

Requests compression of the backup. If `client` or `server` is included, it specifies where the compression is to be performed. Compressing on the server will reduce transfer bandwidth but will increase server CPU consumption. The default is `client` except when `--target` is used. In that case, the backup is not being sent to the client, so only server compression is sensible. When `-Xstream`, which is the default, is used, server-side compression will not be applied to the WAL. To compress the WAL, use client-side compression, or specify `-Xfetch`.

The compression method can be set to `gzip`, `lz4`, `zstd`, `none` for no compression or an integer (no compression if 0, `gzip` if greater than 0). A compression detail string can optionally be specified. If the detail string is an integer, it specifies the compression level. Otherwise, it should be a comma-separated list of items, each of the form `keyword` or `keyword=value`. Currently, the supported keywords are `level`, `long`, and `workers`. The detail string cannot be used when the compression method is specified as a plain integer.

If no compression level is specified, the default compression level will be used. If only a level is specified without mentioning an algorithm, `gzip` compression will be used if the level is greater than 0, and no compression will be used if the level is 0.

When the tar format is used with `gzip`, `lz4`, or `zstd`, the suffix `.gz`, `.lz4`, or `.zst`, respectively, will be automatically added to all tar filenames. When the plain format is used, client-side compression may not be specified, but it is still possible to request server-side compression. If this is done, the server will compress the backup for transmission, and the client will decompress and extract it.

When this option is used in combination with `-Xstream`, `pg_wal.tar` will be compressed using `gzip` if client-side `gzip` compression is selected, but will not be compressed if any other compression algorithm is selected, or if server-side compression is selected.

The following command-line options control the generation of the backup and the invocation of the program:

`-c {fast|spread}`  
`--checkpoint={fast|spread}`

Sets checkpoint mode to fast (immediate) or spread (the default) (see Section 26.3.3).

`-C`  
`--create-slot`

Specifies that the replication slot named by the `--slot` option should be created before starting the backup. An error is raised if the slot already exists.

`-l label`  
`--label=label`

Sets the label for the backup. If none is specified, a default value of “pg\_basebackup base backup” will be used.

`-n`  
`--no-clean`

By default, when pg\_basebackup aborts with an error, it removes any directories it might have created before discovering that it cannot finish the job (for example, the target directory and write-ahead log directory). This option inhibits tidying-up and is thus useful for debugging.

Note that tablespace directories are not cleaned up either way.

`-N`  
`--no-sync`

By default, pg\_basebackup will wait for all files to be written safely to disk. This option causes pg\_basebackup to return without waiting, which is faster, but means that a subsequent operating system crash can leave the base backup corrupt. Generally, this option is useful for testing but should not be used when creating a production installation.

`-P`  
`--progress`

Enables progress reporting. Turning this on will deliver an approximate progress report during the backup. Since the database may change during the backup, this is only an approximation and may not end at exactly 100%. In particular, when WAL log is included in the backup, the total amount of data cannot be estimated in advance, and in this case the estimated target size will increase once it passes the total estimate without WAL.

`-r rate`  
`--max-rate=rate`

Sets the maximum transfer rate at which data is collected from the source server. This can be useful to limit the impact of pg\_basebackup on the server. Values are in kilobytes per second. Use a suffix of M to indicate megabytes per second. A suffix of k is also accepted, and has no effect. Valid values are between 32 kilobytes per second and 1024 megabytes per second.

This option always affects transfer of the data directory. Transfer of WAL files is only affected if the collection method is `fetch`.

`-S slotname`  
`--slot=slotname`

This option can only be used together with `-X stream`. It causes WAL streaming to use the specified replication slot. If the base backup is intended to be used as a streaming-replication standby using a replication slot, the standby should then use the same replication slot name as `primary_slot_name`. This ensures that the primary server does not remove any necessary WAL data in the time between the end of the base backup and the start of streaming replication on the new standby.

The specified replication slot has to exist unless the option `-C` is also used.

If this option is not specified and the server supports temporary replication slots (version 10 and later), then a temporary replication slot is automatically used for WAL streaming.

`-v`  
`--verbose`

Enables verbose mode. Will output some extra steps during startup and shutdown, as well as show the exact file name that is currently being processed if progress reporting is also enabled.

`--manifest-checksums=algorithm`

Specifies the checksum algorithm that should be applied to each file included in the backup manifest. Currently, the available algorithms are NONE, CRC32C, SHA224, SHA256, SHA384, and SHA512. The default is CRC32C.

If NONE is selected, the backup manifest will not contain any checksums. Otherwise, it will contain a checksum of each file in the backup using the specified algorithm. In addition, the manifest will always contain a SHA256 checksum of its own contents. The SHA algorithms are significantly more CPU-intensive than CRC32C, so selecting one of them may increase the time required to complete the backup.

Using a SHA hash function provides a cryptographically secure digest of each file for users who wish to verify that the backup has not been tampered with, while the CRC32C algorithm provides a checksum that is much faster to calculate; it is good at catching errors due to accidental changes but is not resistant to malicious modifications. Note that, to be useful against an adversary who has access to the backup, the backup manifest would need to be stored securely elsewhere or otherwise verified not to have been modified since the backup was taken.

`pg_verifybackup` can be used to check the integrity of a backup against the backup manifest.

`--manifest-force-encode`

Forces all filenames in the backup manifest to be hex-encoded. If this option is not specified, only non-UTF8 filenames are hex-encoded. This option is mostly intended to test that tools which read a backup manifest file properly handle this case.

`--no-estimate-size`

Prevents the server from estimating the total amount of backup data that will be streamed, resulting in the `backup_total` column in the `pg_stat_progress_basebackup` view always being NULL.

Without this option, the backup will start by enumerating the size of the entire database, and then go back and send the actual contents. This may make the backup take slightly longer, and in particular it will take longer before the first data is sent. This option is useful to avoid such estimation time if it's too long.

This option is not allowed when using `--progress`.

`--no-manifest`

Disables generation of a backup manifest. If this option is not specified, the server will generate and send a backup manifest which can be verified using `pg_verifybackup`. The manifest is a list of every file present in the backup with the exception of any WAL files that may be included. It also stores the size, last modification time, and an optional checksum for each file.

`--no-slot`

Prevents the creation of a temporary replication slot for the backup.

By default, if log streaming is selected but no slot name is given with the `-S` option, then a temporary replication slot is created (if supported by the source server).

The main purpose of this option is to allow taking a base backup when the server has no free replication slots. Using a replication slot is almost always preferred, because it prevents needed WAL from being removed by the server during the backup.

`--no-verify-checksums`

Disables verification of checksums, if they are enabled on the server the base backup is taken from.

By default, checksums are verified and checksum failures will result in a non-zero exit status. However, the base backup will not be removed in such a case, as if the `--no-clean` option had been used. Checksum verification failures will also be reported in the `pg_stat_database` view.

The following command-line options control the connection to the source server:

`-d connstr`  
`--dbname=connstr`

Specifies parameters used to connect to the server, as a connection string; these will override any conflicting command line options.

The option is called `--dbname` for consistency with other client applications, but because `pg_basebackup` doesn't connect to any particular database in the cluster, any database name in the connection string will be ignored.

`-h host`  
`--host=host`

Specifies the host name of the machine on which the server is running. If the value begins with a slash, it is used as the directory for a Unix domain socket. The default is taken from the `PGHOST` environment variable, if set, else a Unix domain socket connection is attempted.

`-p port`  
`--port=port`

Specifies the TCP port or local Unix domain socket file extension on which the server is listening for connections. Defaults to the `PGPORT` environment variable, if set, or a compiled-in default.

`-s interval`  
`--status-interval=interval`

Specifies the number of seconds between status packets sent back to the source server. Smaller values allow more accurate monitoring of backup progress from the server. A value of zero disables periodic status updates completely, although an update will still be sent when requested by the server, to avoid timeout-based disconnects. The default value is 10 seconds.

`-U username`  
`--username=username`

Specifies the user name to connect as.

`-w`  
`--no-password`

Prevents issuing a password prompt. If the server requires password authentication and a password is not available by other means such as a `.pgpass` file, the connection attempt will fail. This option can be useful in batch jobs and scripts where no user is present to enter a password.

`-W`  
`--password`

Forces `pg_basebackup` to prompt for a password before connecting to the source server.

This option is never essential, since `pg_basebackup` will automatically prompt for a password if the server demands password authentication. However, `pg_basebackup` will waste a connection attempt finding out that the server wants a password. In some cases it is worth typing `-W` to avoid the extra connection attempt.

Other options are also available:

`-V`  
`--version`

Prints the `pg_basebackup` version and exits.

`-?`  
`--help`

Shows help about `pg_basebackup` command line arguments, and exits.

## Environment

This utility, like most other PostgreSQL utilities, uses the environment variables supported by `libpq` (see Section 34.15).

The environment variable `PG_COLOR` specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are `always`, `auto` and `never`.

## Notes

At the beginning of the backup, a checkpoint needs to be performed on the source server. This can take some time (especially if the option `--checkpoint=fast` is not used), during which `pg_basebackup` will appear to be idle.

The backup will include all files in the data directory and tablespaces, including the configuration files and any additional files placed in the directory by third parties, except certain temporary files managed by PostgreSQL. But only regular files and directories are copied, except that symbolic links used for tablespaces are preserved. Symbolic links pointing to certain directories known to PostgreSQL are copied as empty directories. Other symbolic links and special device files are skipped. See Section 55.4 for the precise details.

In plain format, tablespaces will be backed up to the same path they have on the source server, unless the option `--tablespace-mapping` is used. Without this option, running a plain format base backup on the same host as the server will not work if tablespaces are in use, because the backup would have to be written to the same directory locations as the original tablespaces.

When tar format is used, it is the user's responsibility to unpack each tar file before starting a PostgreSQL server that uses the data. If there are additional tablespaces, the tar files for them need to be unpacked in the correct locations. In this case the symbolic links for those tablespaces will be created by the server according to the contents of the `tablespace_map` file that is included in the `base.tar` file.

`pg_basebackup` works with servers of the same or an older major version, down to 9.1. However, WAL streaming mode (`-X stream`) only works with server version 9.3 and later, and tar format (`--format=tar`) only works with server version 9.5 and later.

`pg_basebackup` will preserve group permissions for data files if group permissions are enabled on the source cluster.

## Examples

To create a base backup of the server at `mydbserver` and store it in the local directory `/usr/local/pgsql/data`:

```
$ pg_basebackup -h mydbserver -D /usr/local/pgsql/data
```

To create a backup of the local server with one compressed tar file for each tablespace, and store it in the directory `backup`, showing a progress report while running:



```
$ pg_basebackup -D backup -Ft -z -P
```

To create a backup of a single-tablespace local database and compress this with bzip2:

```
$ pg_basebackup -D - -Ft -X fetch | bzip2 > backup.tar.bz2
```

(This command will fail if there are multiple tablespaces in the database.)

To create a backup of a local database where the tablespace in `/opt/ts` is relocated to `./back-up/ts`:

```
$ pg_basebackup -D backup/data -T /opt/ts=$(pwd)/backup/ts
```

To create a backup of a local server with one tar file for each tablespace compressed with gzip at level 9, stored in the directory `backup`:

```
$ pg_basebackup -D backup -Ft --compress=gzip:9
```

## See Also

`pg_dump`, Section 28.4.6

---

# pgbench

pgbench — run a benchmark test on PostgreSQL

## Synopsis

```
pgbench -i [option...] [dbname]
```

```
pgbench [option...] [dbname]
```

## Description

pgbench is a simple program for running benchmark tests on PostgreSQL. It runs the same sequence of SQL commands over and over, possibly in multiple concurrent database sessions, and then calculates the average transaction rate (transactions per second). By default, pgbench tests a scenario that is loosely based on TPC-B, involving five SELECT, UPDATE, and INSERT commands per transaction. However, it is easy to test other cases by writing your own transaction script files.

Typical output from pgbench looks like:

```
transaction type: <builtin: TPC-B (sort of)>
scaling factor: 10
query mode: simple
number of clients: 10
number of threads: 1
maximum number of tries: 1
number of transactions per client: 1000
number of transactions actually processed: 10000/10000
number of failed transactions: 0 (0.000%)
latency average = 11.013 ms
latency stddev = 7.351 ms
initial connection time = 45.758 ms
tps = 896.967014 (without initial connection time)
```

The first seven lines report some of the most important parameter settings. The sixth line reports the maximum number of tries for transactions with serialization or deadlock errors (see Failures and Serialization/Deadlock Retries for more information). The eighth line reports the number of transactions completed and intended (the latter being just the product of number of clients and number of transactions per client); these will be equal unless the run failed before completion or some SQL command(s) failed. (In `-T` mode, only the actual number of transactions is printed.) The next line reports the number of failed transactions due to serialization or deadlock errors (see Failures and Serialization/Deadlock Retries for more information). The last line reports the number of transactions per second.

The default TPC-B-like transaction test requires specific tables to be set up beforehand. pgbench should be invoked with the `-i` (initialize) option to create and populate these tables. (When you are testing a custom script, you don't need this step, but will instead need to do whatever setup your test needs.) Initialization looks like:

```
pgbench -i [ other-options ] dbname
```

where *dbname* is the name of the already-created database to test in. (You may also need `-h`, `-p`, and/or `-U` options to specify how to connect to the database server.)

### Caution

`pgbench -i` creates four tables `pgbench_accounts`, `pgbench_branches`, `pgbench_history`, and `pgbench_tellers`, destroying any existing tables of these names. Be very careful to use another database if you have tables having these names!

At the default “scale factor” of 1, the tables initially contain this many rows:

table	# of rows
-----	-----
<code>pgbench_branches</code>	1
<code>pgbench_tellers</code>	10
<code>pgbench_accounts</code>	100000
<code>pgbench_history</code>	0

You can (and, for most purposes, probably should) increase the number of rows by using the `-s` (scale factor) option. The `-F` (fillfactor) option might also be used at this point.

Once you have done the necessary setup, you can run your benchmark with a command that doesn't include `-i`, that is

```
pgbench [ options ] dbname
```

In nearly all cases, you'll need some options to make a useful test. The most important options are `-c` (number of clients), `-t` (number of transactions), `-T` (time limit), and `-f` (specify a custom script file). See below for a full list.

## Options

The following is divided into three subsections. Different options are used during database initialization and while running benchmarks, but some options are useful in both cases.

### Initialization Options

`pgbench` accepts the following command-line initialization arguments:

*dbname*

Specifies the name of the database to test in. If this is not specified, the environment variable `PGDATABASE` is used. If that is not set, the user name specified for the connection is used.

`-i`

`--initialize`

Required to invoke initialization mode.

`-I init_steps`

`--init-steps=init_steps`

Perform just a selected set of the normal initialization steps. *init\_steps* specifies the initialization steps to be performed, using one character per step. Each step is invoked in the specified order. The default is `dtgvp`. The available steps are:

`d` (Drop)

Drop any existing `pgbench` tables.

**t** (create Tables)

Create the tables used by the standard pgbench scenario, namely `pgbench_accounts`, `pgbench_branches`, `pgbench_history`, and `pgbench_tellers`.

**g** or **G** (Generate data, client-side or server-side)

Generate data and load it into the standard tables, replacing any data already present.

With **g** (client-side data generation), data is generated in `pgbench` client and then sent to the server. This uses the client/server bandwidth extensively through a `COPY`. `pgbench` uses the `FREEZE` option with version 14 or later of PostgreSQL to speed up subsequent `VACUUM`, unless partitions are enabled. Using **g** causes logging to print one message every 100,000 rows while generating data for the `pgbench_accounts` table.

With **G** (server-side data generation), only small queries are sent from the `pgbench` client and then data is actually generated in the server. No significant bandwidth is required for this variant, but the server will do more work. Using **G** causes logging not to print any progress message while generating data.

The default initialization behavior uses client-side data generation (equivalent to **g**).

**v** (Vacuum)

Invoke `VACUUM` on the standard tables.

**p** (create Primary keys)

Create primary key indexes on the standard tables.

**f** (create Foreign keys)

Create foreign key constraints between the standard tables. (Note that this step is not performed by default.)

**-F** *fillfactor*

**--fillfactor=***fillfactor*

Create the `pgbench_accounts`, `pgbench_tellers` and `pgbench_branches` tables with the given *fillfactor*. Default is 100.

**-n**

**--no-vacuum**

Perform no vacuuming during initialization. (This option suppresses the **v** initialization step, even if it was specified in **-I**.)

**-q**

**--quiet**

Switch logging to quiet mode, producing only one progress message per 5 seconds. The default logging prints one message each 100,000 rows, which often outputs many lines per second (especially on good hardware).

This setting has no effect if **G** is specified in **-I**.

**-s** *scale\_factor*

**--scale=***scale\_factor*

Multiply the number of rows generated by the scale factor. For example, **-s 100** will create 10,000,000 rows in the `pgbench_accounts` table. Default is 1. When the scale is 20,000 or larger, the columns used to hold account identifiers (`aid` columns) will switch to using larger integers (`bigint`), in order to be big enough to hold the range of account identifiers.

`--foreign-keys`

Create foreign key constraints between the standard tables. (This option adds the `f` step to the initialization step sequence, if it is not already present.)

`--index-tablespace=index_tablespace`

Create indexes in the specified tablespace, rather than the default tablespace.

`--partition-method=NAME`

Create a partitioned `pgbench_accounts` table with *NAME* method. Expected values are `range` or `hash`. This option requires that `--partitions` is set to non-zero. If unspecified, default is `range`.

`--partitions=NUM`

Create a partitioned `pgbench_accounts` table with *NUM* partitions of nearly equal size for the scaled number of accounts. Default is 0, meaning no partitioning.

`--tablespace=tablespace`

Create tables in the specified tablespace, rather than the default tablespace.

`--unlogged-tables`

Create all tables as unlogged tables, rather than permanent tables.

## Benchmarking Options

pgbench accepts the following command-line benchmarking arguments:

`-b scriptname[@weight]`

`--builtin=scriptname[@weight]`

Add the specified built-in script to the list of scripts to be executed. Available built-in scripts are: `tpcb-like`, `simple-update` and `select-only`. Unambiguous prefixes of built-in names are accepted. With the special name `list`, show the list of built-in scripts and exit immediately.

Optionally, write an integer weight after `@` to adjust the probability of selecting this script versus other ones. The default weight is 1. See below for details.

`-c clients`

`--client=clients`

Number of clients simulated, that is, number of concurrent database sessions. Default is 1.

`-C`

`--connect`

Establish a new connection for each transaction, rather than doing it just once per client session. This is useful to measure the connection overhead.

`-d`

`--debug`

Print debugging output.

`-D varname=value`

`--define=varname=value`

Define a variable for use by a custom script (see below). Multiple `-D` options are allowed.

```
-f filename[@weight]  
--file=filename[@weight]
```

Add a transaction script read from *filename* to the list of scripts to be executed.

Optionally, write an integer weight after @ to adjust the probability of selecting this script versus other ones. The default weight is 1. (To use a script file name that includes an @ character, append a weight so that there is no ambiguity, for example *filen@me@1*.) See below for details.

```
-j threads  
--jobs=threads
```

Number of worker threads within pgbench. Using more than one thread can be helpful on multi-CPU machines. Clients are distributed as evenly as possible among available threads. Default is 1.

```
-l  
--log
```

Write information about each transaction to a log file. See below for details.

```
-L limit  
--latency-limit=limit
```

Transactions that last more than *limit* milliseconds are counted and reported separately, as *late*.

When throttling is used (`--rate=...`), transactions that lag behind schedule by more than *limit* ms, and thus have no hope of meeting the latency limit, are not sent to the server at all. They are counted and reported separately as *skipped*.

When the `--max-tries` option is used, a transaction which fails due to a serialization anomaly or from a deadlock will not be retried if the total time of all its tries is greater than *limit* ms. To limit only the time of tries and not their number, use `--max-tries=0`. By default, the option `--max-tries` is set to 1 and transactions with serialization/deadlock errors are not retried. See Failures and Serialization/Deadlock Retries for more information about retrying such transactions.

```
-M querymode  
--protocol=querymode
```

Protocol to use for submitting queries to the server:

- `simple`: use simple query protocol.
- `extended`: use extended query protocol.
- `prepared`: use extended query protocol with prepared statements.

In the `prepared` mode, pgbench reuses the parse analysis result starting from the second query iteration, so pgbench runs faster than in other modes.

The default is simple query protocol. (See Chapter 55 for more information.)

```
-n  
--no-vacuum
```

Perform no vacuuming before running the test. This option is *necessary* if you are running a custom test scenario that does not include the standard tables `pgbench_accounts`, `pgbench_branches`, `pgbench_history`, and `pgbench_tellers`.

```
-N  
--skip-some-updates
```

Run built-in simple-update script. Shorthand for `-b simple-update`.

`-P sec`  
`--progress=sec`

Show progress report every *sec* seconds. The report includes the time since the beginning of the run, the TPS since the last report, and the transaction latency average, standard deviation, and the number of failed transactions since the last report. Under throttling (`-R`), the latency is computed with respect to the transaction scheduled start time, not the actual transaction beginning time, thus it also includes the average schedule lag time. When `--max-tries` is used to enable transaction retries after serialization/deadlock errors, the report includes the number of retried transactions and the sum of all retries.

`-r`  
`--report-per-command`

Report the following statistics for each command after the benchmark finishes: the average per-statement latency (execution time from the perspective of the client), the number of failures, and the number of retries after serialization or deadlock errors in this command. The report displays retry statistics only if the `--max-tries` option is not equal to 1.

`-R rate`  
`--rate=rate`

Execute transactions targeting the specified rate instead of running as fast as possible (the default). The rate is given in transactions per second. If the targeted rate is above the maximum possible rate, the rate limit won't impact the results.

The rate is targeted by starting transactions along a Poisson-distributed schedule time line. The expected start time schedule moves forward based on when the client first started, not when the previous transaction ended. That approach means that when transactions go past their original scheduled end time, it is possible for later ones to catch up again.

When throttling is active, the transaction latency reported at the end of the run is calculated from the scheduled start times, so it includes the time each transaction had to wait for the previous transaction to finish. The wait time is called the schedule lag time, and its average and maximum are also reported separately. The transaction latency with respect to the actual transaction start time, i.e., the time spent executing the transaction in the database, can be computed by subtracting the schedule lag time from the reported latency.

If `--latency-limit` is used together with `--rate`, a transaction can lag behind so much that it is already over the latency limit when the previous transaction ends, because the latency is calculated from the scheduled start time. Such transactions are not sent to the server, but are skipped altogether and counted separately.

A high schedule lag time is an indication that the system cannot process transactions at the specified rate, with the chosen number of clients and threads. When the average transaction execution time is longer than the scheduled interval between each transaction, each successive transaction will fall further behind, and the schedule lag time will keep increasing the longer the test run is. When that happens, you will have to reduce the specified transaction rate.

`-s scale_factor`  
`--scale=scale_factor`

Report the specified scale factor in pgbench's output. With the built-in tests, this is not necessary; the correct scale factor will be detected by counting the number of rows in the `pgbench_branches` table. However, when testing only custom benchmarks (`-f` option), the scale factor will be reported as 1 unless this option is used.

`-S`  
`--select-only`

Run built-in select-only script. Shorthand for `-b select-only`.

`-t transactions`  
`--transactions=transactions`

Number of transactions each client runs. Default is 10.

`-T seconds`  
`--time=seconds`

Run the test for this many seconds, rather than a fixed number of transactions per client. `-t` and `-T` are mutually exclusive.

`-v`  
`--vacuum-all`

Vacuum all four standard tables before running the test. With neither `-n` nor `-v`, pgbench will vacuum the `pgbench_tellers` and `pgbench_branches` tables, and will truncate `pgbench_history`.

`--aggregate-interval=seconds`

Length of aggregation interval (in seconds). May be used only with `-l` option. With this option, the log contains per-interval summary data, as described below.

`--failures-detailed`

Report failures in per-transaction and aggregation logs, as well as in the main and per-script reports, grouped by the following types:

- serialization failures;
  - deadlock failures;
- See Failures and Serialization/Deadlock Retries for more information.

`--log-prefix=prefix`

Set the filename prefix for the log files created by `--log`. The default is `pgbench_log`.

`--max-tries=number_of_tries`

Enable retries for transactions with serialization/deadlock errors and set the maximum number of these tries. This option can be combined with the `--latency-limit` option which limits the total time of all transaction tries; moreover, you cannot use an unlimited number of tries (`--max-tries=0`) without `--latency-limit` or `--time`. The default value is 1 and transactions with serialization/deadlock errors are not retried. See Failures and Serialization/Deadlock Retries for more information about retrying such transactions.

`--progress-timestamp`

When showing progress (option `-P`), use a timestamp (Unix epoch) instead of the number of seconds since the beginning of the run. The unit is in seconds, with millisecond precision after the dot. This helps compare logs generated by various tools.

`--random-seed=seed`

Set random generator seed. Seeds the system random number generator, which then produces a sequence of initial generator states, one for each thread. Values for `seed` may be: `time` (the default, the seed is based on the current time), `rand` (use a strong random source, failing if none is available), or an unsigned decimal integer value. The random generator is invoked explicitly from a pgbench script (`random...` functions) or implicitly (for instance option `--rate` uses it to schedule transactions). When explicitly set, the value used for seeding is shown on the terminal. Any value allowed for `seed` may also be provided through the environment variable `PGBENCH_RANDOM_SEED`. To ensure that the provided seed impacts all possible uses, put this option first or use the environment variable.



Setting the seed explicitly allows to reproduce a `pgbench` run exactly, as far as random numbers are concerned. As the random state is managed per thread, this means the exact same `pgbench` run for an identical invocation if there is one client per thread and there are no external or data dependencies. From a statistical viewpoint reproducing runs exactly is a bad idea because it can hide the performance variability or improve performance unduly, e.g., by hitting the same pages as a previous run. However, it may also be of great help for debugging, for instance re-running a tricky case which leads to an error. Use wisely.

`--sampling-rate=rate`

Sampling rate, used when writing data into the log, to reduce the amount of log generated. If this option is given, only the specified fraction of transactions are logged. 1.0 means all transactions will be logged, 0.05 means only 5% of the transactions will be logged.

Remember to take the sampling rate into account when processing the log file. For example, when computing TPS values, you need to multiply the numbers accordingly (e.g., with 0.01 sample rate, you'll only get 1/100 of the actual TPS).

`--show-script=scriptname`

Show the actual code of builtin script *scriptname* on stderr, and exit immediately.

`--verbose-errors`

Print messages about all errors and failures (errors without retrying) including which limit for retries was exceeded and how far it was exceeded for the serialization/deadlock failures. (Note that in this case the output can be significantly increased.). See Failures and Serialization/Deadlock Retries for more information.

## Common Options

`pgbench` also accepts the following common command-line arguments for connection parameters:

`-h hostname`

`--host=hostname`

The database server's host name

`-p port`

`--port=port`

The database server's port number

`-U login`

`--username=login`

The user name to connect as

`-V`

`--version`

Print the `pgbench` version and exit.

`-?`

`--help`

Show help about `pgbench` command line arguments, and exit.

## Exit Status

A successful run will exit with status 0. Exit status 1 indicates static problems such as invalid command-line options or internal errors which are supposed to never occur. Early errors that occur when

starting benchmark such as initial connection failures also exit with status 1. Errors during the run such as database errors or problems in the script will result in exit status 2. In the latter case, pgbench will print partial results.

## Environment

PGDATABASE  
PGHOST  
PGPORT  
PGUSER

Default connection parameters.

This utility, like most other PostgreSQL utilities, uses the environment variables supported by libpq (see Section 34.15).

The environment variable PG\_COLOR specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are always, auto and never.

## Notes

### What Is the “Transaction” Actually Performed in pgbench?

pgbench executes test scripts chosen randomly from a specified list. The scripts may include built-in scripts specified with `-b` and user-provided scripts specified with `-f`. Each script may be given a relative weight specified after an `@` so as to change its selection probability. The default weight is 1. Scripts with a weight of 0 are ignored.

The default built-in transaction script (also invoked with `-b tpcb-like`) issues seven commands per transaction over randomly chosen `aid`, `tid`, `bid` and `delta`. The scenario is inspired by the TPC-B benchmark, but is not actually TPC-B, hence the name.

1. `BEGIN;`
2. `UPDATE pgbench_accounts SET abalance = abalance + :delta WHERE aid = :aid;`
3. `SELECT abalance FROM pgbench_accounts WHERE aid = :aid;`
4. `UPDATE pgbench_tellers SET tbalance = tbalance + :delta WHERE tid = :tid;`
5. `UPDATE pgbench_branches SET bbalance = bbalance + :delta WHERE bid = :bid;`
6. `INSERT INTO pgbench_history (tid, bid, aid, delta, mtime) VALUES (:tid, :bid, :aid, :delta, CURRENT_TIMESTAMP);`
7. `END;`

If you select the `simple-update` built-in (also `-N`), steps 4 and 5 aren't included in the transaction. This will avoid update contention on these tables, but it makes the test case even less like TPC-B.

If you select the `select-only` built-in (also `-S`), only the `SELECT` is issued.

## Custom Scripts

pgbench has support for running custom benchmark scenarios by replacing the default transaction script (described above) with a transaction script read from a file (`-f` option). In this case a “transaction” counts as one execution of a script file.

A script file contains one or more SQL commands terminated by semicolons. Empty lines and lines beginning with `--` are ignored. Script files can also contain “meta commands”, which are interpreted by pgbench itself, as described below.

### Note

Before PostgreSQL 9.6, SQL commands in script files were terminated by newlines, and so they could not be continued across lines. Now a semicolon is *required* to separate consecutive SQL commands (though an SQL command does not need one if it is followed by a meta command). If you need to create a script file that works with both old and new versions of pgbench, be sure to write each SQL command on a single line ending with a semicolon.

It is assumed that pgbench scripts do not contain incomplete blocks of SQL transactions. If at runtime the client reaches the end of the script without completing the last transaction block, it will be aborted.

There is a simple variable-substitution facility for script files. Variable names must consist of letters (including non-Latin letters), digits, and underscores, with the first character not being a digit. Variables can be set by the command-line `-D` option, explained above, or by the meta commands explained below. In addition to any variables preset by `-D` command-line options, there are a few variables that are preset automatically, listed in Table 293. A value specified for these variables using `-D` takes precedence over the automatic presets. Once set, a variable's value can be inserted into an SQL command by writing `:variablename`. When running more than one client session, each session has its own set of variables. pgbench supports up to 255 variable uses in one statement.

**Table 293. pgbench Automatic Variables**

Variable	Description
<code>client_id</code>	unique number identifying the client session (starts from zero)
<code>default_seed</code>	seed used in hash and pseudorandom permutation functions by default
<code>random_seed</code>	random generator seed (unless overwritten with <code>-D</code> )
<code>scale</code>	current scale factor

Script file meta commands begin with a backslash (`\`) and normally extend to the end of the line, although they can be continued to additional lines by writing backslash-return. Arguments to a meta command are separated by white space. These meta commands are supported:

```
\gset [prefix] \aset [prefix]
```

These commands may be used to end SQL queries, taking the place of the terminating semicolon (`;`).

When the `\gset` command is used, the preceding SQL query is expected to return one row, the columns of which are stored into variables named after column names, and prefixed with *prefix* if provided.

When the `\aset` command is used, all combined SQL queries (separated by `\;`) have their columns stored into variables named after column names, and prefixed with *prefix* if provided. If a query returns no row, no assignment is made and the variable can be tested for existence to detect this. If a query returns more than one row, the last value is kept.

`\gset` and `\aset` cannot be used in pipeline mode, since the query results are not yet available by the time the commands would need them.

The following example puts the final account balance from the first query into variable *abalance*, and fills variables *p\_two* and *p\_three* with integers from the third query. The result of

the second query is discarded. The result of the two last combined queries are stored in variables *four* and *five*.

```
UPDATE pgbench_accounts
  SET abalance = abalance + :delta
  WHERE aid = :aid
  RETURNING abalance \gset
-- compound of two queries
SELECT 1 \;
SELECT 2 AS two, 3 AS three \gset p_
SELECT 4 AS four \; SELECT 5 AS five \aset

\if expression
\elif expression
\else
\endif
```

This group of commands implements nestable conditional blocks, similarly to `psql`'s `\if expression`. Conditional expressions are identical to those with `\set`, with non-zero values interpreted as true.

```
\set varname expression
```

Sets variable *varname* to a value calculated from *expression*. The expression may contain the NULL constant, Boolean constants TRUE and FALSE, integer constants such as 5432, double constants such as 3.14159, references to variables *:variablename*, operators with their usual SQL precedence and associativity, function calls, SQL CASE generic conditional expressions and parentheses.

Functions and most operators return NULL on NULL input.

For conditional purposes, non zero numerical values are TRUE, zero numerical values and NULL are FALSE.

Too large or small integer and double constants, as well as integer arithmetic operators (+, -, \* and /) raise errors on overflows.

When no final ELSE clause is provided to a CASE, the default value is NULL.

Examples:

```
\set ntellers 10 * :scale
\set aid (1021 * random(1, 100000 * :scale)) % \
        (100000 * :scale) + 1
\set divx CASE WHEN :x <> 0 THEN :y/:x ELSE NULL END

\sleep number [ us | ms | s ]
```

Causes script execution to sleep for the specified duration in microseconds (us), milliseconds (ms) or seconds (s). If the unit is omitted then seconds are the default. *number* can be either an integer constant or a *:variablename* reference to a variable having an integer value.

Example:

```
\sleep 10 ms

\setshell varname command [ argument ... ]
```

Sets variable *varname* to the result of the shell command *command* with the given *argument(s)*. The command must return an integer value through its standard output.

*command* and each *argument* can be either a text constant or a *:variablename* reference to a variable. If you want to use an *argument* starting with a colon, write an additional colon at the beginning of *argument*.

Example:

```
\setshell variable_to_be_assigned command
literal_argument :variable ::literal_starting_with_colon

\shell command [ argument ... ]
```

Same as `\setshell`, but the result of the command is discarded.

Example:

```
\shell command
literal_argument :variable ::literal_starting_with_colon

\startpipeline
\endpipeline
```

These commands delimit the start and end of a pipeline of SQL statements. In pipeline mode, statements are sent to the server without waiting for the results of previous statements. See Section 34.5 for more details. Pipeline mode requires the use of extended query protocol.

## Built-in Operators

The arithmetic, bitwise, comparison and logical operators listed in Table 294 are built into pgbench and may be used in expressions appearing in `\set`. The operators are listed in increasing precedence order. Except as noted, operators taking two numeric inputs will produce a double value if either input is double, otherwise they produce an integer result.

**Table 294. pgbench Operators**

Operator	Description	Example(s)
<i>boolean</i> OR <i>boolean</i> → <i>boolean</i>	Logical OR	5 or 0 → TRUE
<i>boolean</i> AND <i>boolean</i> → <i>boolean</i>	Logical AND	3 and 0 → FALSE
NOT <i>boolean</i> → <i>boolean</i>	Logical NOT	not false → TRUE
<i>boolean</i> IS [NOT] (NULL   TRUE   FALSE) → <i>boolean</i>	Boolean value tests	1 is null → FALSE
<i>value</i> ISNULL   NOTNULL → <i>boolean</i>	Nullness tests	1 notnull → TRUE
<i>number</i> = <i>number</i> → <i>boolean</i>		

Operator	Description	Example(s)
	Equal	$5 = 4 \rightarrow \text{FALSE}$
<i>number &lt;&gt; number</i>	Not equal	$5 <> 4 \rightarrow \text{TRUE}$
<i>number != number</i>	Not equal	$5 != 5 \rightarrow \text{FALSE}$
<i>number &lt; number</i>	Less than	$5 < 4 \rightarrow \text{FALSE}$
<i>number &lt;= number</i>	Less than or equal to	$5 <= 4 \rightarrow \text{FALSE}$
<i>number &gt; number</i>	Greater than	$5 > 4 \rightarrow \text{TRUE}$
<i>number &gt;= number</i>	Greater than or equal to	$5 >= 4 \rightarrow \text{TRUE}$
<i>integer   integer</i>	Bitwise OR	$1   2 \rightarrow 3$
<i>integer # integer</i>	Bitwise XOR	$1 \# 3 \rightarrow 2$
<i>integer &amp; integer</i>	Bitwise AND	$1 \& 3 \rightarrow 1$
<i>~ integer</i>	Bitwise NOT	$\sim 1 \rightarrow -2$
<i>integer &lt;&lt; integer</i>	Bitwise shift left	$1 << 2 \rightarrow 4$
<i>integer &gt;&gt; integer</i>	Bitwise shift right	$8 >> 2 \rightarrow 2$
<i>number + number</i>	Addition	

<b>Operator</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Example(s)</b>
		$5 + 4 \rightarrow 9$
	$number - number \rightarrow number$ Subtraction	$3 - 2.0 \rightarrow 1.0$
	$number * number \rightarrow number$ Multiplication	$5 * 4 \rightarrow 20$
	$number / number \rightarrow number$ Division (truncates the result towards zero if both inputs are integers)	$5 / 3 \rightarrow 1$
	$integer \% integer \rightarrow integer$ Modulo (remainder)	$3 \% 2 \rightarrow 1$
	$- number \rightarrow number$ Negation	$- 2.0 \rightarrow -2.0$

## Built-In Functions

The functions listed in Table 295 are built into pgbench and may be used in expressions appearing in `\set`.

**Table 295. pgbench Functions**

<b>Function</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Example(s)</b>
<code>abs ( number )</code>	$\rightarrow$ same type as input Absolute value	<code>abs ( -17 ) <math>\rightarrow</math> 17</code>
<code>debug ( number )</code>	$\rightarrow$ same type as input Prints the argument to stderr, and returns the argument.	<code>debug ( 5432.1 ) <math>\rightarrow</math> 5432.1</code>
<code>double ( number )</code>	$\rightarrow$ double Casts to double.	<code>double ( 5432 ) <math>\rightarrow</math> 5432.0</code>
<code>exp ( number )</code>	$\rightarrow$ double Exponential (e raised to the given power)	<code>exp ( 1.0 ) <math>\rightarrow</math> 2.718281828459045</code>
<code>greatest ( number [, ... ] )</code>	$\rightarrow$ double if any argument is double, else integer Selects the largest value among the arguments.	<code>greatest ( 5, 4, 3, 2 ) <math>\rightarrow</math> 5</code>
<code>hash ( value [, seed ] )</code>	$\rightarrow$ integer	

Function	Description	Example(s)
	This is an alias for <code>hash_murmur2</code> .	<code>hash(10, 5432) → -5817877081768721676</code>
<code>hash_fnv1a ( value [, seed ] ) → integer</code>	Computes FNV-1a hash <sup>1</sup> .	<code>hash_fnv1a(10, 5432) → -7793829335365542153</code>
<code>hash_murmur2 ( value [, seed ] ) → integer</code>	Computes MurmurHash2 hash <sup>2</sup> .	<code>hash_murmur2(10, 5432) → -5817877081768721676</code>
<code>int ( number ) → integer</code>	Casts to integer.	<code>int(5.4 + 3.8) → 9</code>
<code>least ( number [, ... ] ) → double if any argument is double, else integer</code>	Selects the smallest value among the arguments.	<code>least(5, 4, 3, 2.1) → 2.1</code>
<code>ln ( number ) → double</code>	Natural logarithm	<code>ln(2.718281828459045) → 1.0</code>
<code>mod ( integer, integer ) → integer</code>	Modulo (remainder)	<code>mod(54, 32) → 22</code>
<code>permute ( i, size [, seed ] ) → integer</code>	Permuted value of <i>i</i> , in the range <code>[0, size)</code> . This is the new position of <i>i</i> (modulo <i>size</i> ) in a pseudorandom permutation of the integers <code>0...size-1</code> , parameterized by <i>seed</i> , see below.	<code>permute(0, 4) → an integer between 0 and 3</code>
<code>pi () → double</code>	Approximate value of $\pi$	<code>pi() → 3.14159265358979323846</code>
<code>pow ( x, y ) → double</code> <code>power ( x, y ) → double</code>	<i>x</i> raised to the power of <i>y</i>	<code>pow(2.0, 10) → 1024.0</code>
<code>random ( lb, ub ) → integer</code>	Computes a uniformly-distributed random integer in <code>[lb, ub]</code> .	<code>random(1, 10) → an integer between 1 and 10</code>
<code>random_exponential ( lb, ub, parameter ) → integer</code>	Computes an exponentially-distributed random integer in <code>[lb, ub]</code> , see below.	<code>random_exponential(1, 10, 3.0) → an integer between 1 and 10</code>

<sup>1</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Fowler%E2%80%93Noll%E2%80%93Vo\\_hash\\_function](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Fowler%E2%80%93Noll%E2%80%93Vo_hash_function)

<sup>2</sup> <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/MurmurHash>



Function	Description	Example(s)
<code>random_gaussian( lb, ub, parameter )</code>	$\rightarrow$ integer	Computes a Gaussian-distributed random integer in $[lb, ub]$ , see below. <code>random_gaussian(1, 10, 2.5)</code> $\rightarrow$ an integer between 1 and 10
<code>random_zipfian( lb, ub, parameter )</code>	$\rightarrow$ integer	Computes a Zipfian-distributed random integer in $[lb, ub]$ , see below. <code>random_zipfian(1, 10, 1.5)</code> $\rightarrow$ an integer between 1 and 10
<code>sqrt( number )</code>	$\rightarrow$ double	Square root <code>sqrt(2.0)</code> $\rightarrow$ 1.414213562

The random function generates values using a uniform distribution, that is all the values are drawn within the specified range with equal probability. The `random_exponential`, `random_gaussian` and `random_zipfian` functions require an additional double parameter which determines the precise shape of the distribution.

- For an exponential distribution, *parameter* controls the distribution by truncating a quickly-decreasing exponential distribution at *parameter*, and then projecting onto integers between the bounds. To be precise, with

$$f(x) = \exp(-\text{parameter} * (x - \min) / (\max - \min + 1)) / (1 - \exp(-\text{parameter}))$$

Then value *i* between *min* and *max* inclusive is drawn with probability:  $f(i) - f(i + 1)$ .

Intuitively, the larger the *parameter*, the more frequently values close to *min* are accessed, and the less frequently values close to *max* are accessed. The closer to 0 *parameter* is, the flatter (more uniform) the access distribution. A crude approximation of the distribution is that the most frequent 1% values in the range, close to *min*, are drawn *parameter*% of the time. The *parameter* value must be strictly positive.

- For a Gaussian distribution, the interval is mapped onto a standard normal distribution (the classical bell-shaped Gaussian curve) truncated at  $-\text{parameter}$  on the left and  $+\text{parameter}$  on the right. Values in the middle of the interval are more likely to be drawn. To be precise, if  $\text{PHI}(x)$  is the cumulative distribution function of the standard normal distribution, with mean  $\mu$  defined as  $(\max + \min) / 2.0$ , with

$$f(x) = \text{PHI}(2.0 * \text{parameter} * (x - \mu) / (\max - \min + 1)) / (2.0 * \text{PHI}(\text{parameter}) - 1)$$

then value *i* between *min* and *max* inclusive is drawn with probability:  $f(i + 0.5) - f(i - 0.5)$ . Intuitively, the larger the *parameter*, the more frequently values close to the middle of the interval are drawn, and the less frequently values close to the *min* and *max* bounds. About 67% of values are drawn from the middle  $1.0 / \text{parameter}$ , that is a relative  $0.5 / \text{parameter}$  around the mean, and 95% in the middle  $2.0 / \text{parameter}$ , that is a relative  $1.0 / \text{parameter}$  around the mean; for instance, if *parameter* is 4.0, 67% of values are drawn from the middle quarter ( $1.0 / 4.0$ ) of the interval (i.e., from  $3.0 / 8.0$  to  $5.0 / 8.0$ ) and 95% from the middle half ( $2.0 / 4.0$ ) of the interval (second and third quartiles). The minimum allowed *parameter* value is 2.0.

- `random_zipfian` generates a bounded Zipfian distribution. *parameter* defines how skewed the distribution is. The larger the *parameter*, the more frequently values closer to the beginning of the interval are drawn. The distribution is such that, assuming the range starts from 1, the ratio

of the probability of drawing  $k$  versus drawing  $k+1$  is  $((k+1)/k)**parameter$ . For example, `random_zipfian(1, ..., 2.5)` produces the value 1 about  $(2/1)**2.5 = 5.66$  times more frequently than 2, which itself is produced  $(3/2)**2.5 = 2.76$  times more frequently than 3, and so on.

pgbench's implementation is based on "Non-Uniform Random Variate Generation", Luc Devroye, p. 550-551, Springer 1986. Due to limitations of that algorithm, the *parameter* value is restricted to the range [1.001, 1000].

### Note

When designing a benchmark which selects rows non-uniformly, be aware that the rows chosen may be correlated with other data such as IDs from a sequence or the physical row ordering, which may skew performance measurements.

To avoid this, you may wish to use the `permute` function, or some other additional step with similar effect, to shuffle the selected rows and remove such correlations.

Hash functions `hash`, `hash_murmur2` and `hash_fnv1a` accept an input value and an optional seed parameter. In case the seed isn't provided the value of `:default_seed` is used, which is initialized randomly unless set by the command-line `-D` option.

`permute` accepts an input value, a size, and an optional seed parameter. It generates a pseudorandom permutation of integers in the range  $[0, size)$ , and returns the index of the input value in the permuted values. The permutation chosen is parameterized by the seed, which defaults to `:default_seed`, if not specified. Unlike the hash functions, `permute` ensures that there are no collisions or holes in the output values. Input values outside the interval are interpreted modulo the size. The function raises an error if the size is not positive. `permute` can be used to scatter the distribution of non-uniform random functions such as `random_zipfian` or `random_exponential` so that values drawn more often are not trivially correlated. For instance, the following pgbench script simulates a possible real world workload typical for social media and blogging platforms where a few accounts generate excessive load:

```
\set size 1000000
\set r random_zipfian(1, :size, 1.07)
\set k 1 + permute(:r, :size)
```

In some cases several distinct distributions are needed which don't correlate with each other and this is when the optional seed parameter comes in handy:

```
\set k1 1 + permute(:r, :size, :default_seed + 123)
\set k2 1 + permute(:r, :size, :default_seed + 321)
```

A similar behavior can also be approximated with `hash`:

```
\set size 1000000
\set r random_zipfian(1, 100 * :size, 1.07)
\set k 1 + abs(hash(:r)) % :size
```

However, since `hash` generates collisions, some values will not be reachable and others will be more frequent than expected from the original distribution.

As an example, the full definition of the built-in TPC-B-like transaction is:

```
\set aid random(1, 100000 * :scale)
\set bid random(1, 1 * :scale)
```

```
\set tid random(1, 10 * :scale)
\set delta random(-5000, 5000)
BEGIN;
UPDATE pgbench_accounts SET abalance = abalance + :delta WHERE aid
    = :aid;
SELECT abalance FROM pgbench_accounts WHERE aid = :aid;
UPDATE pgbench_tellers SET tbalance = tbalance + :delta WHERE tid
    = :tid;
UPDATE pgbench_branches SET bbalance = bbalance + :delta WHERE bid
    = :bid;
INSERT INTO pgbench_history (tid, bid, aid, delta, mtime) VALUES
    (:tid, :bid, :aid, :delta, CURRENT_TIMESTAMP);
END;
```

This script allows each iteration of the transaction to reference different, randomly-chosen rows. (This example also shows why it's important for each client session to have its own variables — otherwise they'd not be independently touching different rows.)

## Per-Transaction Logging

With the `-l` option (but without the `--aggregate-interval` option), `pgbench` writes information about each transaction to a log file. The log file will be named *prefix.nnn*, where *prefix* defaults to `pgbench_log`, and *nnn* is the PID of the `pgbench` process. The prefix can be changed by using the `--log-prefix` option. If the `-j` option is 2 or higher, so that there are multiple worker threads, each will have its own log file. The first worker will use the same name for its log file as in the standard single worker case. The additional log files for the other workers will be named *prefix.nnn.mmm*, where *mmm* is a sequential number for each worker starting with 1.

Each line in a log file describes one transaction. It contains the following space-separated fields:

*client\_id*

identifies the client session that ran the transaction

*transaction\_no*

counts how many transactions have been run by that session

*time*

transaction's elapsed time, in microseconds

*script\_no*

identifies the script file that was used for the transaction (useful when multiple scripts are specified with `-f` or `-b`)

*time\_epoch*

transaction's completion time, as a Unix-epoch time stamp

*time\_us*

fractional-second part of transaction's completion time, in microseconds

*schedule\_lag*

transaction start delay, that is the difference between the transaction's scheduled start time and the time it actually started, in microseconds (present only if `--rate` is specified)

*retries*

count of retries after serialization or deadlock errors during the transaction (present only if `--max-tries` is not equal to one)

When both `--rate` and `--latency-limit` are used, the *time* for a skipped transaction will be reported as *skipped*. If the transaction ends with a failure, its *time* will be reported as *failed*. If you use the `--failures-detailed` option, the *time* of the failed transaction will be reported as *serialization* or *deadlock* depending on the type of failure (see *Failures and Serialization/Deadlock Retries* for more information).

Here is a snippet of a log file generated in a single-client run:

```
0 199 2241 0 1175850568 995598
0 200 2465 0 1175850568 998079
0 201 2513 0 1175850569 608
0 202 2038 0 1175850569 2663
```

Another example with `--rate=100` and `--latency-limit=5` (note the additional *schedule\_lag* column):

```
0 81 4621 0 1412881037 912698 3005
0 82 6173 0 1412881037 914578 4304
0 83 skipped 0 1412881037 914578 5217
0 83 skipped 0 1412881037 914578 5099
0 83 4722 0 1412881037 916203 3108
0 84 4142 0 1412881037 918023 2333
0 85 2465 0 1412881037 919759 740
```

In this example, transaction 82 was late, because its latency (6.173 ms) was over the 5 ms limit. The next two transactions were skipped, because they were already late before they were even started.

The following example shows a snippet of a log file with failures and retries, with the maximum number of tries set to 10 (note the additional *retries* column):

```
3 0 47423 0 1499414498 34501 3
3 1 8333 0 1499414498 42848 0
3 2 8358 0 1499414498 51219 0
4 0 72345 0 1499414498 59433 6
1 3 41718 0 1499414498 67879 4
1 4 8416 0 1499414498 76311 0
3 3 33235 0 1499414498 84469 3
0 0 failed 0 1499414498 84905 9
2 0 failed 0 1499414498 86248 9
3 4 8307 0 1499414498 92788 0
```

If the `--failures-detailed` option is used, the type of failure is reported in the *time* like this:

```
3 0 47423 0 1499414498 34501 3
3 1 8333 0 1499414498 42848 0
3 2 8358 0 1499414498 51219 0
4 0 72345 0 1499414498 59433 6
1 3 41718 0 1499414498 67879 4
1 4 8416 0 1499414498 76311 0
3 3 33235 0 1499414498 84469 3
0 0 serialization 0 1499414498 84905 9
2 0 serialization 0 1499414498 86248 9
3 4 8307 0 1499414498 92788 0
```

When running a long test on hardware that can handle a lot of transactions, the log files can become very large. The `--sampling-rate` option can be used to log only a random sample of transactions.

## Aggregated Logging

With the `--aggregate-interval` option, a different format is used for the log files. Each log line describes one aggregation interval. It contains the following space-separated fields:

*interval\_start*

start time of the interval, as a Unix-epoch time stamp

*num\_transactions*

number of transactions within the interval

*sum\_latency*

sum of transaction latencies

*sum\_latency\_2*

sum of squares of transaction latencies

*min\_latency*

minimum transaction latency

*max\_latency*

maximum transaction latency

*sum\_lag*

sum of transaction start delays (zero unless `--rate` is specified)

*sum\_lag\_2*

sum of squares of transaction start delays (zero unless `--rate` is specified)

*min\_lag*

minimum transaction start delay (zero unless `--rate` is specified)

*max\_lag*

maximum transaction start delay (zero unless `--rate` is specified)

*skipped*

number of transactions skipped because they would have started too late (zero unless `--rate` and `--latency-limit` are specified)

*retried*

number of retried transactions (zero unless `--max-tries` is not equal to one)

*retries*

number of retries after serialization or deadlock errors (zero unless `--max-tries` is not equal to one)

*serialization\_failures*

number of transactions that got a serialization error and were not retried afterwards (zero unless `--failures-detailed` is specified)

*deadlock\_failures*

number of transactions that got a deadlock error and were not retried afterwards (zero unless `--failures-detailed` is specified)

Here is some example output generated with these options:

```
pgbench --aggregate-interval=10 --time=20 --client=10 --log --
rate=1000 --latency-limit=10 --failures-detailed --max-tries=10
test
```

```
1650260552 5178 26171317 177284491527 1136 44462 2647617 7321113867
0 9866 64 7564 28340 4148 0
1650260562 4808 25573984 220121792172 1171 62083 3037380 9666800914
0 9998 598 7392 26621 4527 0
```

Notice that while the plain (unaggregated) log format shows which script was used for each transaction, the aggregated format does not. Therefore if you need per-script data, you need to aggregate the data on your own.

## Per-Statement Report

With the `-r` option, pgbench collects the following statistics for each statement:

- **latency** — elapsed transaction time for each statement. pgbench reports an average value of all successful runs of the statement.
- The number of failures in this statement. See [Failures and Serialization/Deadlock Retries](#) for more information.
- The number of retries after a serialization or a deadlock error in this statement. See [Failures and Serialization/Deadlock Retries](#) for more information.

The report displays retry statistics only if the `--max-tries` option is not equal to 1.

All values are computed for each statement executed by every client and are reported after the benchmark has finished.

For the default script, the output will look similar to this:

```
starting vacuum...end.
transaction type: <builtin: TPC-B (sort of)>
scaling factor: 1
query mode: simple
number of clients: 10
number of threads: 1
maximum number of tries: 1
number of transactions per client: 1000
number of transactions actually processed: 10000/10000
number of failed transactions: 0 (0.000%)
number of transactions above the 50.0 ms latency limit: 1311/10000
(13.110 %)
latency average = 28.488 ms
latency stddev = 21.009 ms
initial connection time = 69.068 ms
tps = 346.224794 (without initial connection time)
statement latencies in milliseconds and failures:
    0.012  0  \set aid random(1, 100000 * :scale)
    0.002  0  \set bid random(1, 1 * :scale)
    0.002  0  \set tid random(1, 10 * :scale)
    0.002  0  \set delta random(-5000, 5000)
    0.319  0  BEGIN;
```

```
0.834 0 UPDATE pgbench_accounts SET abalance = abalance
+ :delta WHERE aid = :aid;
0.641 0 SELECT abalance FROM pgbench_accounts WHERE aid
= :aid;
11.126 0 UPDATE pgbench_tellers SET tbalance = tbalance
+ :delta WHERE tid = :tid;
12.961 0 UPDATE pgbench_branches SET bbalance = bbalance
+ :delta WHERE bid = :bid;
0.634 0 INSERT INTO pgbench_history (tid, bid, aid, delta,
mtime) VALUES (:tid, :bid, :aid, :delta, CURRENT_TIMESTAMP);
1.957 0 END;
```

Another example of output for the default script using serializable default transaction isolation level (PGOPTIONS='-c default\_transaction\_isolation=serializable' pgbench ...):

```
starting vacuum...end.
transaction type: <builtin: TPC-B (sort of)>
scaling factor: 1
query mode: simple
number of clients: 10
number of threads: 1
maximum number of tries: 10
number of transactions per client: 1000
number of transactions actually processed: 6317/10000
number of failed transactions: 3683 (36.830%)
number of transactions retried: 7667 (76.670%)
total number of retries: 45339
number of transactions above the 50.0 ms latency limit: 106/6317
(1.678 %)
latency average = 17.016 ms
latency stddev = 13.283 ms
initial connection time = 45.017 ms
tps = 186.792667 (without initial connection time)
statement latencies in milliseconds, failures and retries:
0.006      0      0 \set aid random(1, 100000 * :scale)
0.001      0      0 \set bid random(1, 1 * :scale)
0.001      0      0 \set tid random(1, 10 * :scale)
0.001      0      0 \set delta random(-5000, 5000)
0.385      0      0 BEGIN;
0.773      0      1 UPDATE pgbench_accounts SET abalance =
abalance + :delta WHERE aid = :aid;
0.624      0      0 SELECT abalance FROM pgbench_accounts WHERE
aid = :aid;
1.098    320    3762 UPDATE pgbench_tellers SET tbalance =
tbalance + :delta WHERE tid = :tid;
0.582    3363   41576 UPDATE pgbench_branches SET bbalance =
bbalance + :delta WHERE bid = :bid;
0.465      0      0 INSERT INTO pgbench_history (tid,
bid, aid, delta, mtime) VALUES (:tid, :bid, :aid, :delta,
CURRENT_TIMESTAMP);
1.933      0      0 END;
```

If multiple script files are specified, all statistics are reported separately for each script file.

Note that collecting the additional timing information needed for per-statement latency computation adds some overhead. This will slow average execution speed and lower the computed TPS. The amount of slowdown varies significantly depending on platform and hardware. Comparing average TPS val-

ues with and without latency reporting enabled is a good way to measure if the timing overhead is significant.

## Failures and Serialization/Deadlock Retries

When executing pgbench, there are three main types of errors:

- Errors of the main program. They are the most serious and always result in an immediate exit from pgbench with the corresponding error message. They include:
  - errors at the beginning of pgbench (e.g. an invalid option value);
  - errors in the initialization mode (e.g. the query to create tables for built-in scripts fails);
  - errors before starting threads (e.g. could not connect to the database server, syntax error in the meta command, thread creation failure);
  - internal pgbench errors (which are supposed to never occur...).
- Errors when the thread manages its clients (e.g. the client could not start a connection to the database server / the socket for connecting the client to the database server has become invalid). In such cases all clients of this thread stop while other threads continue to work.
- Direct client errors. They lead to immediate exit from pgbench with the corresponding error message only in the case of an internal pgbench error (which are supposed to never occur...). Otherwise in the worst case they only lead to the abortion of the failed client while other clients continue their run (but some client errors are handled without an abortion of the client and reported separately, see below). Later in this section it is assumed that the discussed errors are only the direct client errors and they are not internal pgbench errors.

A client's run is aborted in case of a serious error; for example, the connection with the database server was lost or the end of script was reached without completing the last transaction. In addition, if execution of an SQL or meta command fails for reasons other than serialization or deadlock errors, the client is aborted. Otherwise, if an SQL command fails with serialization or deadlock errors, the client is not aborted. In such cases, the current transaction is rolled back, which also includes setting the client variables as they were before the run of this transaction (it is assumed that one transaction script contains only one transaction; see What Is the "Transaction" Actually Performed in pgbench? for more information). Transactions with serialization or deadlock errors are repeated after rollbacks until they complete successfully or reach the maximum number of tries (specified by the `--max-tries` option) / the maximum time of retries (specified by the `--latency-limit` option) / the end of benchmark (specified by the `--time` option). If the last trial run fails, this transaction will be reported as failed but the client is not aborted and continues to work.

### Note

Without specifying the `--max-tries` option, a transaction will never be retried after a serialization or deadlock error because its default value is 1. Use an unlimited number of tries (`--max-tries=0`) and the `--latency-limit` option to limit only the maximum time of tries. You can also use the `--time` option to limit the benchmark duration under an unlimited number of tries.

Be careful when repeating scripts that contain multiple transactions: the script is always retried completely, so successful transactions can be performed several times.

Be careful when repeating transactions with shell commands. Unlike the results of SQL commands, the results of shell commands are not rolled back, except for the variable value of the `\setshell` command.



The latency of a successful transaction includes the entire time of transaction execution with rollbacks and retries. The latency is measured only for successful transactions and commands but not for failed transactions or commands.

The main report contains the number of failed transactions. If the `--max-tries` option is not equal to 1, the main report also contains statistics related to retries: the total number of retried transactions and total number of retries. The per-script report inherits all these fields from the main report. The per-statement report displays retry statistics only if the `--max-tries` option is not equal to 1.

If you want to group failures by basic types in per-transaction and aggregation logs, as well as in the main and per-script reports, use the `--failures-detailed` option. If you also want to distinguish all errors and failures (errors without retrying) by type including which limit for retries was exceeded and how much it was exceeded by for the serialization/deadlock failures, use the `--verbose-errors` option.

## Table Access Methods

You may specify the Table Access Method for the pgbench tables. The environment variable `PGOPTIONS` specifies database configuration options that are passed to PostgreSQL via the command line (See Section 20.1.4). For example, a hypothetical default Table Access Method for the tables that pgbench creates called `wuzza` can be specified with:

```
PGOPTIONS='-c default_table_access_method=wuzza'
```

## Good Practices

It is very easy to use pgbench to produce completely meaningless numbers. Here are some guidelines to help you get useful results.

In the first place, *never* believe any test that runs for only a few seconds. Use the `-t` or `-T` option to make the run last at least a few minutes, so as to average out noise. In some cases you could need hours to get numbers that are reproducible. It's a good idea to try the test run a few times, to find out if your numbers are reproducible or not.

For the default TPC-B-like test scenario, the initialization scale factor (`-s`) should be at least as large as the largest number of clients you intend to test (`-c`); else you'll mostly be measuring update contention. There are only `-s` rows in the `pgbench_branches` table, and every transaction wants to update one of them, so `-c` values in excess of `-s` will undoubtedly result in lots of transactions blocked waiting for other transactions.

The default test scenario is also quite sensitive to how long it's been since the tables were initialized: accumulation of dead rows and dead space in the tables changes the results. To understand the results you must keep track of the total number of updates and when vacuuming happens. If autovacuum is enabled it can result in unpredictable changes in measured performance.

A limitation of pgbench is that it can itself become the bottleneck when trying to test a large number of client sessions. This can be alleviated by running pgbench on a different machine from the database server, although low network latency will be essential. It might even be useful to run several pgbench instances concurrently, on several client machines, against the same database server.

## Security

If untrusted users have access to a database that has not adopted a secure schema usage pattern, do not run pgbench in that database. pgbench uses unqualified names and does not manipulate the search path.

---

# pg\_config

pg\_config — retrieve information about the installed version of PostgreSQL

## Synopsis

```
pg_config [option...]
```

## Description

The `pg_config` utility prints configuration parameters of the currently installed version of PostgreSQL. It is intended, for example, to be used by software packages that want to interface to PostgreSQL to facilitate finding the required header files and libraries.

## Options

To use `pg_config`, supply one or more of the following options:

`--bindir`

Print the location of user executables. Use this, for example, to find the `psql` program. This is normally also the location where the `pg_config` program resides.

`--docdir`

Print the location of documentation files.

`--htmldir`

Print the location of HTML documentation files.

`--includedir`

Print the location of C header files of the client interfaces.

`--pkgincludedir`

Print the location of other C header files.

`--includedir-server`

Print the location of C header files for server programming.

`--libdir`

Print the location of object code libraries.

`--pkglibdir`

Print the location of dynamically loadable modules, or where the server would search for them. (Other architecture-dependent data files might also be installed in this directory.)

`--localedir`

Print the location of locale support files. (This will be an empty string if locale support was not configured when PostgreSQL was built.)

`--mandir`

Print the location of manual pages.

`--sharedir`

Print the location of architecture-independent support files.

`--sysconfdir`

Print the location of system-wide configuration files.

`--pgxs`

Print the location of extension makefiles.

`--configure`

Print the options that were given to the `configure` script when PostgreSQL was configured for building. This can be used to reproduce the identical configuration, or to find out with what options a binary package was built. (Note however that binary packages often contain vendor-specific custom patches.) See also the examples below.

`--cc`

Print the value of the `CC` variable that was used for building PostgreSQL. This shows the C compiler used.

`--cppflags`

Print the value of the `CPPFLAGS` variable that was used for building PostgreSQL. This shows C compiler switches needed at preprocessing time (typically, `-I` switches).

`--cflags`

Print the value of the `CFLAGS` variable that was used for building PostgreSQL. This shows C compiler switches.

`--cflags_sl`

Print the value of the `CFLAGS_SL` variable that was used for building PostgreSQL. This shows extra C compiler switches used for building shared libraries.

`--ldflags`

Print the value of the `LDFLAGS` variable that was used for building PostgreSQL. This shows linker switches.

`--ldflags_ex`

Print the value of the `LDFLAGS_EX` variable that was used for building PostgreSQL. This shows linker switches used for building executables only.

`--ldflags_sl`

Print the value of the `LDFLAGS_SL` variable that was used for building PostgreSQL. This shows linker switches used for building shared libraries only.

`--libs`

Print the value of the `LIBS` variable that was used for building PostgreSQL. This normally contains `-l` switches for external libraries linked into PostgreSQL.

`--version`

Print the version of PostgreSQL.

`-?`

`--help`

Show help about `pg_config` command line arguments, and exit.

If more than one option is given, the information is printed in that order, one item per line. If no options are given, all available information is printed, with labels.

## Notes

The options `--docdir`, `--pkgincludedir`, `--localedir`, `--mandir`, `--sharedir`, `--sysconfdir`, `--cc`, `--cppflags`, `--cflags`, `--cflags_sl`, `--ldflags`, `--ldflags_sl`, and `--libs` were added in PostgreSQL 8.1. The option `--htmldir` was added in PostgreSQL 8.4. The option `--ldflags_ex` was added in PostgreSQL 9.0.

## Example

To reproduce the build configuration of the current PostgreSQL installation, run the following command:

```
eval `./configure `pg_config --configure`
```

The output of `pg_config --configure` contains shell quotation marks so arguments with spaces are represented correctly. Therefore, using `eval` is required for proper results.

---

# pg\_dump

pg\_dump — extract a PostgreSQL database into a script file or other archive file

## Synopsis

```
pg_dump [connection-option...] [option...] [dbname]
```

## Description

pg\_dump is a utility for backing up a PostgreSQL database. It makes consistent backups even if the database is being used concurrently. pg\_dump does not block other users accessing the database (readers or writers).

pg\_dump only dumps a single database. To back up an entire cluster, or to back up global objects that are common to all databases in a cluster (such as roles and tablespaces), use pg\_dumpall.

Dumps can be output in script or archive file formats. Script dumps are plain-text files containing the SQL commands required to reconstruct the database to the state it was in at the time it was saved. To restore from such a script, feed it to psql. Script files can be used to reconstruct the database even on other machines and other architectures; with some modifications, even on other SQL database products.

The alternative archive file formats must be used with pg\_restore to rebuild the database. They allow pg\_restore to be selective about what is restored, or even to reorder the items prior to being restored. The archive file formats are designed to be portable across architectures.

When used with one of the archive file formats and combined with pg\_restore, pg\_dump provides a flexible archival and transfer mechanism. pg\_dump can be used to backup an entire database, then pg\_restore can be used to examine the archive and/or select which parts of the database are to be restored. The most flexible output file formats are the “custom” format (`-Fc`) and the “directory” format (`-Fd`). They allow for selection and reordering of all archived items, support parallel restoration, and are compressed by default. The “directory” format is the only format that supports parallel dumps.

While running pg\_dump, one should examine the output for any warnings (printed on standard error), especially in light of the limitations listed below.

## Options

The following command-line options control the content and format of the output.

*dbname*

Specifies the name of the database to be dumped. If this is not specified, the environment variable PGDATABASE is used. If that is not set, the user name specified for the connection is used.

`-a`

`--data-only`

Dump only the data, not the schema (data definitions). Table data, large objects, and sequence values are dumped.

This option is similar to, but for historical reasons not identical to, specifying `--section=da-ta`.

`-b`  
`--large-objects`  
`--blobs` (deprecated)

Include large objects in the dump. This is the default behavior except when `--schema`, `--table`, or `--schema-only` is specified. The `-b` switch is therefore only useful to add large objects to dumps where a specific schema or table has been requested. Note that large objects are considered data and therefore will be included when `--data-only` is used, but not when `--schema-only` is.

`-B`  
`--no-large-objects`  
`--no-blobs` (deprecated)

Exclude large objects in the dump.

When both `-b` and `-B` are given, the behavior is to output large objects, when data is being dumped, see the `-b` documentation.

`-c`  
`--clean`

Output commands to DROP all the dumped database objects prior to outputting the commands for creating them. This option is useful when the restore is to overwrite an existing database. If any of the objects do not exist in the destination database, ignorable error messages will be reported during restore, unless `--if-exists` is also specified.

This option is ignored when emitting an archive (non-text) output file. For the archive formats, you can specify the option when you call `pg_restore`.

`-C`  
`--create`

Begin the output with a command to create the database itself and reconnect to the created database. (With a script of this form, it doesn't matter which database in the destination installation you connect to before running the script.) If `--clean` is also specified, the script drops and recreates the target database before reconnecting to it.

With `--create`, the output also includes the database's comment if any, and any configuration variable settings that are specific to this database, that is, any `ALTER DATABASE ... SET ...` and `ALTER ROLE ... IN DATABASE ... SET ...` commands that mention this database. Access privileges for the database itself are also dumped, unless `--no-acl` is specified.

This option is ignored when emitting an archive (non-text) output file. For the archive formats, you can specify the option when you call `pg_restore`.

`-e pattern`  
`--extension=pattern`

Dump only extensions matching *pattern*. When this option is not specified, all non-system extensions in the target database will be dumped. Multiple extensions can be selected by writing multiple `-e` switches. The *pattern* parameter is interpreted as a pattern according to the same rules used by `psql`'s `\d` commands (see Patterns), so multiple extensions can also be selected by writing wildcard characters in the pattern. When using wildcards, be careful to quote the pattern if needed to prevent the shell from expanding the wildcards.

Any configuration relation registered by `pg_extension_config_dump` is included in the dump if its extension is specified by `--extension`.

**Note**

When `-e` is specified, `pg_dump` makes no attempt to dump any other database objects that the selected extension(s) might depend upon. Therefore, there is no guarantee that the results of a specific-extension dump can be successfully restored by themselves into a clean database.

`-E encoding`  
`--encoding=encoding`

Create the dump in the specified character set encoding. By default, the dump is created in the database encoding. (Another way to get the same result is to set the `PGCLIENTENCODING` environment variable to the desired dump encoding.) The supported encodings are described in Section 24.3.1.

`-f file`  
`--file=file`

Send output to the specified file. This parameter can be omitted for file based output formats, in which case the standard output is used. It must be given for the directory output format however, where it specifies the target directory instead of a file. In this case the directory is created by `pg_dump` and must not exist before.

`-F format`  
`--format=format`

Selects the format of the output. *format* can be one of the following:

`p`  
`plain`

Output a plain-text SQL script file (the default).

`c`  
`custom`

Output a custom-format archive suitable for input into `pg_restore`. Together with the directory output format, this is the most flexible output format in that it allows manual selection and reordering of archived items during restore. This format is also compressed by default.

`d`  
`directory`

Output a directory-format archive suitable for input into `pg_restore`. This will create a directory with one file for each table and large object being dumped, plus a so-called Table of Contents file describing the dumped objects in a machine-readable format that `pg_restore` can read. A directory format archive can be manipulated with standard Unix tools; for example, files in an uncompressed archive can be compressed with the `gzip`, `lz4`, or `zstd` tools. This format is compressed by default using `gzip` and also supports parallel dumps.

`t`  
`tar`

Output a tar-format archive suitable for input into `pg_restore`. The tar format is compatible with the directory format: extracting a tar-format archive produces a valid directory-format archive. However, the tar format does not support compression. Also, when using tar format the relative order of table data items cannot be changed during restore.

```
-j njobs  
--jobs=njobs
```

Run the dump in parallel by dumping *njobs* tables simultaneously. This option may reduce the time needed to perform the dump but it also increases the load on the database server. You can only use this option with the directory output format because this is the only output format where multiple processes can write their data at the same time.

pg\_dump will open *njobs* + 1 connections to the database, so make sure your max\_connections setting is high enough to accommodate all connections.

Requesting exclusive locks on database objects while running a parallel dump could cause the dump to fail. The reason is that the pg\_dump leader process requests shared locks (ACCESS SHARE) on the objects that the worker processes are going to dump later in order to make sure that nobody deletes them and makes them go away while the dump is running. If another client then requests an exclusive lock on a table, that lock will not be granted but will be queued waiting for the shared lock of the leader process to be released. Consequently any other access to the table will not be granted either and will queue after the exclusive lock request. This includes the worker process trying to dump the table. Without any precautions this would be a classic deadlock situation. To detect this conflict, the pg\_dump worker process requests another shared lock using the NOWAIT option. If the worker process is not granted this shared lock, somebody else must have requested an exclusive lock in the meantime and there is no way to continue with the dump, so pg\_dump has no choice but to abort the dump.

To perform a parallel dump, the database server needs to support synchronized snapshots, a feature that was introduced in PostgreSQL 9.2 for primary servers and 10 for standbys. With this feature, database clients can ensure they see the same data set even though they use different connections. pg\_dump -j uses multiple database connections; it connects to the database once with the leader process and once again for each worker job. Without the synchronized snapshot feature, the different worker jobs wouldn't be guaranteed to see the same data in each connection, which could lead to an inconsistent backup.

```
-n pattern  
--schema=pattern
```

Dump only schemas matching *pattern*; this selects both the schema itself, and all its contained objects. When this option is not specified, all non-system schemas in the target database will be dumped. Multiple schemas can be selected by writing multiple -n switches. The *pattern* parameter is interpreted as a pattern according to the same rules used by psql's \d commands (see Patterns), so multiple schemas can also be selected by writing wildcard characters in the pattern. When using wildcards, be careful to quote the pattern if needed to prevent the shell from expanding the wildcards; see Examples below.

### Note

When -n is specified, pg\_dump makes no attempt to dump any other database objects that the selected schema(s) might depend upon. Therefore, there is no guarantee that the results of a specific-schema dump can be successfully restored by themselves into a clean database.

### Note

Non-schema objects such as large objects are not dumped when -n is specified. You can add large objects back to the dump with the --large-objects switch.



`-N pattern`  
`--exclude-schema=pattern`

Do not dump any schemas matching *pattern*. The pattern is interpreted according to the same rules as for `-n`. `-N` can be given more than once to exclude schemas matching any of several patterns.

When both `-n` and `-N` are given, the behavior is to dump just the schemas that match at least one `-n` switch but no `-N` switches. If `-N` appears without `-n`, then schemas matching `-N` are excluded from what is otherwise a normal dump.

`-O`  
`--no-owner`

Do not output commands to set ownership of objects to match the original database. By default, `pg_dump` issues `ALTER OWNER` or `SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION` statements to set ownership of created database objects. These statements will fail when the script is run unless it is started by a superuser (or the same user that owns all of the objects in the script). To make a script that can be restored by any user, but will give that user ownership of all the objects, specify `-O`.

This option is ignored when emitting an archive (non-text) output file. For the archive formats, you can specify the option when you call `pg_restore`.

`-R`  
`--no-reconnect`

This option is obsolete but still accepted for backwards compatibility.

`-s`  
`--schema-only`

Dump only the object definitions (schema), not data.

This option is the inverse of `--data-only`. It is similar to, but for historical reasons not identical to, specifying `--section=pre-data` `--section=post-data`.

(Do not confuse this with the `--schema` option, which uses the word “schema” in a different meaning.)

To exclude table data for only a subset of tables in the database, see `--exclude-table-data`.

`-S username`  
`--superuser=username`

Specify the superuser user name to use when disabling triggers. This is relevant only if `--disable-triggers` is used. (Usually, it's better to leave this out, and instead start the resulting script as superuser.)

`-t pattern`  
`--table=pattern`

Dump only tables with names matching *pattern*. Multiple tables can be selected by writing multiple `-t` switches. The *pattern* parameter is interpreted as a pattern according to the same rules used by `psql's \d` commands (see Patterns), so multiple tables can also be selected by writing wildcard characters in the pattern. When using wildcards, be careful to quote the pattern if needed to prevent the shell from expanding the wildcards; see Examples below.

As well as tables, this option can be used to dump the definition of matching views, materialized views, foreign tables, and sequences. It will not dump the contents of views or materialized views, and the contents of foreign tables will only be dumped if the corresponding foreign server is specified with `--include-foreign-data`.

The `-n` and `-N` switches have no effect when `-t` is used, because tables selected by `-t` will be dumped regardless of those switches, and non-table objects will not be dumped.

### Note

When `-t` is specified, `pg_dump` makes no attempt to dump any other database objects that the selected table(s) might depend upon. Therefore, there is no guarantee that the results of a specific-table dump can be successfully restored by themselves into a clean database.

`-T pattern`  
`--exclude-table=pattern`

Do not dump any tables matching *pattern*. The pattern is interpreted according to the same rules as for `-t`. `-T` can be given more than once to exclude tables matching any of several patterns.

When both `-t` and `-T` are given, the behavior is to dump just the tables that match at least one `-t` switch but no `-T` switches. If `-T` appears without `-t`, then tables matching `-T` are excluded from what is otherwise a normal dump.

`-v`  
`--verbose`

Specifies verbose mode. This will cause `pg_dump` to output detailed object comments and start/stop times to the dump file, and progress messages to standard error. Repeating the option causes additional debug-level messages to appear on standard error.

`-V`  
`--version`

Print the `pg_dump` version and exit.

`-x`  
`--no-privileges`  
`--no-acl`

Prevent dumping of access privileges (grant/revoke commands).

`-Z level`  
`-Z method[:detail]`  
`--compress=level`  
`--compress=method[:detail]`

Specify the compression method and/or the compression level to use. The compression method can be set to `gzip`, `lz4`, `zstd`, or `none` for no compression. A compression detail string can optionally be specified. If the detail string is an integer, it specifies the compression level. Otherwise, it should be a comma-separated list of items, each of the form `keyword` or `keyword=value`. Currently, the supported keywords are `level` and `long`.

If no compression level is specified, the default compression level will be used. If only a level is specified without mentioning an algorithm, `gzip` compression will be used if the level is greater than 0, and no compression will be used if the level is 0.

For the custom and directory archive formats, this specifies compression of individual table-data segments, and the default is to compress using `gzip` at a moderate level. For plain text output, setting a nonzero compression level causes the entire output file to be compressed, as though it had been fed through `gzip`, `lz4`, or `zstd`; but the default is not to compress. With `zstd` compression, `long` mode may improve the compression ratio, at the cost of increased memory use.

The tar archive format currently does not support compression at all.

`--binary-upgrade`

This option is for use by in-place upgrade utilities. Its use for other purposes is not recommended or supported. The behavior of the option may change in future releases without notice.

`--column-inserts`

`--attribute-inserts`

Dump data as INSERT commands with explicit column names (INSERT INTO *table* (*column*, ...) VALUES ...). This will make restoration very slow; it is mainly useful for making dumps that can be loaded into non-PostgreSQL databases. Any error during restoring will cause only rows that are part of the problematic INSERT to be lost, rather than the entire table contents.

`--disable-dollar-quoting`

This option disables the use of dollar quoting for function bodies, and forces them to be quoted using SQL standard string syntax.

`--disable-triggers`

This option is relevant only when creating a data-only dump. It instructs pg\_dump to include commands to temporarily disable triggers on the target tables while the data is restored. Use this if you have referential integrity checks or other triggers on the tables that you do not want to invoke during data restore.

Presently, the commands emitted for `--disable-triggers` must be done as superuser. So, you should also specify a superuser name with `-S`, or preferably be careful to start the resulting script as a superuser.

This option is ignored when emitting an archive (non-text) output file. For the archive formats, you can specify the option when you call `pg_restore`.

`--enable-row-security`

This option is relevant only when dumping the contents of a table which has row security. By default, pg\_dump will set row\_security to off, to ensure that all data is dumped from the table. If the user does not have sufficient privileges to bypass row security, then an error is thrown. This parameter instructs pg\_dump to set row\_security to on instead, allowing the user to dump the parts of the contents of the table that they have access to.

Note that if you use this option currently, you probably also want the dump be in INSERT format, as the COPY FROM during restore does not support row security.

`--exclude-table-and-children=pattern`

This is the same as the `-T/--exclude-table` option, except that it also excludes any partitions or inheritance child tables of the table(s) matching the *pattern*.

`--exclude-table-data=pattern`

Do not dump data for any tables matching *pattern*. The pattern is interpreted according to the same rules as for `-t`. `--exclude-table-data` can be given more than once to exclude tables matching any of several patterns. This option is useful when you need the definition of a particular table even though you do not need the data in it.

To exclude data for all tables in the database, see `--schema-only`.

`--exclude-table-data-and-children=pattern`

This is the same as the `--exclude-table-data` option, except that it also excludes data of any partitions or inheritance child tables of the table(s) matching the *pattern*.

`--extra-float-digits=ndigits`

Use the specified value of `extra_float_digits` when dumping floating-point data, instead of the maximum available precision. Routine dumps made for backup purposes should not use this option.

`--if-exists`

Use `DROP ... IF EXISTS` commands to drop objects in `--clean` mode. This suppresses “does not exist” errors that might otherwise be reported. This option is not valid unless `--clean` is also specified.

`--include-foreign-data=foreignserver`

Dump the data for any foreign table with a foreign server matching *foreignserver* pattern. Multiple foreign servers can be selected by writing multiple `--include-foreign-data` switches. Also, the *foreignserver* parameter is interpreted as a pattern according to the same rules used by `psql's \d` commands (see Patterns), so multiple foreign servers can also be selected by writing wildcard characters in the pattern. When using wildcards, be careful to quote the pattern if needed to prevent the shell from expanding the wildcards; see Examples below. The only exception is that an empty pattern is disallowed.

### Note

When `--include-foreign-data` is specified, `pg_dump` does not check that the foreign table is writable. Therefore, there is no guarantee that the results of a foreign table dump can be successfully restored.

`--inserts`

Dump data as `INSERT` commands (rather than `COPY`). This will make restoration very slow; it is mainly useful for making dumps that can be loaded into non-PostgreSQL databases. Any error during restoring will cause only rows that are part of the problematic `INSERT` to be lost, rather than the entire table contents. Note that the restore might fail altogether if you have rearranged column order. The `--column-inserts` option is safe against column order changes, though even slower.

`--load-via-partition-root`

When dumping data for a table partition, make the `COPY` or `INSERT` statements target the root of the partitioning hierarchy that contains it, rather than the partition itself. This causes the appropriate partition to be re-determined for each row when the data is loaded. This may be useful when restoring data on a server where rows do not always fall into the same partitions as they did on the original server. That could happen, for example, if the partitioning column is of type text and the two systems have different definitions of the collation used to sort the partitioning column.

`--lock-wait-timeout=timeout`

Do not wait forever to acquire shared table locks at the beginning of the dump. Instead fail if unable to lock a table within the specified *timeout*. The timeout may be specified in any of the formats accepted by `SET statement_timeout`. (Allowed formats vary depending on the server version you are dumping from, but an integer number of milliseconds is accepted by all versions.)

`--no-comments`

Do not dump comments.

`--no-publications`

Do not dump publications.

`--no-security-labels`

Do not dump security labels.

`--no-subscriptions`

Do not dump subscriptions.

`--no-sync`

By default, `pg_dump` will wait for all files to be written safely to disk. This option causes `pg_dump` to return without waiting, which is faster, but means that a subsequent operating system crash can leave the dump corrupt. Generally, this option is useful for testing but should not be used when dumping data from production installation.

`--no-table-access-method`

Do not output commands to select table access methods. With this option, all objects will be created with whichever table access method is the default during restore.

This option is ignored when emitting an archive (non-text) output file. For the archive formats, you can specify the option when you call `pg_restore`.

`--no-tablespaces`

Do not output commands to select tablespaces. With this option, all objects will be created in whichever tablespace is the default during restore.

This option is ignored when emitting an archive (non-text) output file. For the archive formats, you can specify the option when you call `pg_restore`.

`--no-toast-compression`

Do not output commands to set TOAST compression methods. With this option, all columns will be restored with the default compression setting.

`--no-unlogged-table-data`

Do not dump the contents of unlogged tables and sequences. This option has no effect on whether or not the table and sequence definitions (schema) are dumped; it only suppresses dumping the table and sequence data. Data in unlogged tables and sequences is always excluded when dumping from a standby server.

`--on-conflict-do-nothing`

Add `ON CONFLICT DO NOTHING` to `INSERT` commands. This option is not valid unless `--inserts`, `--column-inserts` or `--rows-per-insert` is also specified.

`--quote-all-identifiers`

Force quoting of all identifiers. This option is recommended when dumping a database from a server whose PostgreSQL major version is different from `pg_dump`'s, or when the output is intended to be loaded into a server of a different major version. By default, `pg_dump` quotes only identifiers that are reserved words in its own major version. This sometimes results in compatibility issues when dealing with servers of other versions that may have slightly different sets of reserved words. Using `--quote-all-identifiers` prevents such issues, at the price of a harder-to-read dump script.

`--rows-per-insert=nrows`

Dump data as `INSERT` commands (rather than `COPY`). Controls the maximum number of rows per `INSERT` command. The value specified must be a number greater than zero. Any error during restoring will cause only rows that are part of the problematic `INSERT` to be lost, rather than the entire table contents.

`--section=sectionname`

Only dump the named section. The section name can be `pre-data`, `data`, or `post-data`. This option can be specified more than once to select multiple sections. The default is to dump all sections.

The data section contains actual table data, large-object contents, and sequence values. Post-data items include definitions of indexes, triggers, rules, and constraints other than validated check constraints. Pre-data items include all other data definition items.

`--serializable-deferrable`

Use a `serializable` transaction for the dump, to ensure that the snapshot used is consistent with later database states; but do this by waiting for a point in the transaction stream at which no anomalies can be present, so that there isn't a risk of the dump failing or causing other transactions to roll back with a `serialization_failure`. See Chapter 13 for more information about transaction isolation and concurrency control.

This option is not beneficial for a dump which is intended only for disaster recovery. It could be useful for a dump used to load a copy of the database for reporting or other read-only load sharing while the original database continues to be updated. Without it the dump may reflect a state which is not consistent with any serial execution of the transactions eventually committed. For example, if batch processing techniques are used, a batch may show as closed in the dump without all of the items which are in the batch appearing.

This option will make no difference if there are no read-write transactions active when `pg_dump` is started. If read-write transactions are active, the start of the dump may be delayed for an indeterminate length of time. Once running, performance with or without the switch is the same.

`--snapshot=snapshotname`

Use the specified synchronized snapshot when making a dump of the database (see Table 9.94 for more details).

This option is useful when needing to synchronize the dump with a logical replication slot (see Chapter 49) or with a concurrent session.

In the case of a parallel dump, the snapshot name defined by this option is used rather than taking a new snapshot.

`--strict-names`

Require that each extension (`-e/--extension`), schema (`-n/--schema`) and table (`-t/--table`) pattern match at least one extension/schema/table in the database to be dumped. Note that if none of the extension/schema/table patterns find matches, `pg_dump` will generate an error even without `--strict-names`.

This option has no effect on `-N/--exclude-schema`, `-T/--exclude-table`, or `--exclude-table-data`. An exclude pattern failing to match any objects is not considered an error.

`--table-and-children=pattern`

This is the same as the `-t/--table` option, except that it also includes any partitions or inheritance child tables of the table(s) matching the *pattern*.

--use-set-session-authorization

Output SQL-standard SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION commands instead of ALTER OWNER commands to determine object ownership. This makes the dump more standards-compatible, but depending on the history of the objects in the dump, might not restore properly. Also, a dump using SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION will certainly require superuser privileges to restore correctly, whereas ALTER OWNER requires lesser privileges.

-?

--help

Show help about pg\_dump command line arguments, and exit.

The following command-line options control the database connection parameters.

-d *dbname*

--dbname=*dbname*

Specifies the name of the database to connect to. This is equivalent to specifying *dbname* as the first non-option argument on the command line. The *dbname* can be a connection string. If so, connection string parameters will override any conflicting command line options.

-h *host*

--host=*host*

Specifies the host name of the machine on which the server is running. If the value begins with a slash, it is used as the directory for the Unix domain socket. The default is taken from the PGHOST environment variable, if set, else a Unix domain socket connection is attempted.

-p *port*

--port=*port*

Specifies the TCP port or local Unix domain socket file extension on which the server is listening for connections. Defaults to the PGPORT environment variable, if set, or a compiled-in default.

-U *username*

--username=*username*

User name to connect as.

-w

--no-password

Never issue a password prompt. If the server requires password authentication and a password is not available by other means such as a .pgpass file, the connection attempt will fail. This option can be useful in batch jobs and scripts where no user is present to enter a password.

-W

--password

Force pg\_dump to prompt for a password before connecting to a database.

This option is never essential, since pg\_dump will automatically prompt for a password if the server demands password authentication. However, pg\_dump will waste a connection attempt finding out that the server wants a password. In some cases it is worth typing -W to avoid the extra connection attempt.

--role=*rolename*

Specifies a role name to be used to create the dump. This option causes pg\_dump to issue a SET ROLE *rolename* command after connecting to the database. It is useful when the authenticated

user (specified by `-U`) lacks privileges needed by `pg_dump`, but can switch to a role with the required rights. Some installations have a policy against logging in directly as a superuser, and use of this option allows dumps to be made without violating the policy.

## Environment

PGDATABASE  
PGHOST  
PGOPTIONS  
PGPORT  
PGUSER

Default connection parameters.

PG\_COLOR

Specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are `always`, `auto` and `never`.

This utility, like most other PostgreSQL utilities, also uses the environment variables supported by `libpq` (see Section 34.15).

## Diagnostics

`pg_dump` internally executes `SELECT` statements. If you have problems running `pg_dump`, make sure you are able to select information from the database using, for example, `psql`. Also, any default connection settings and environment variables used by the `libpq` front-end library will apply.

The database activity of `pg_dump` is normally collected by the cumulative statistics system. If this is undesirable, you can set parameter `track_counts` to `false` via `PGOPTIONS` or the `ALTER USER` command.

## Notes

If your database cluster has any local additions to the `template1` database, be careful to restore the output of `pg_dump` into a truly empty database; otherwise you are likely to get errors due to duplicate definitions of the added objects. To make an empty database without any local additions, copy from `template0` not `template1`, for example:

```
CREATE DATABASE foo WITH TEMPLATE template0;
```

When a data-only dump is chosen and the option `--disable-triggers` is used, `pg_dump` emits commands to disable triggers on user tables before inserting the data, and then commands to re-enable them after the data has been inserted. If the restore is stopped in the middle, the system catalogs might be left in the wrong state.

The dump file produced by `pg_dump` does not contain the statistics used by the optimizer to make query planning decisions. Therefore, it is wise to run `ANALYZE` after restoring from a dump file to ensure optimal performance; see Section 25.1.3 and Section 25.1.6 for more information.

Because `pg_dump` is used to transfer data to newer versions of PostgreSQL, the output of `pg_dump` can be expected to load into PostgreSQL server versions newer than `pg_dump`'s version. `pg_dump` can also dump from PostgreSQL servers older than its own version. (Currently, servers back to version 9.2 are supported.) However, `pg_dump` cannot dump from PostgreSQL servers newer than its own major version; it will refuse to even try, rather than risk making an invalid dump. Also, it is not guaranteed that `pg_dump`'s output can be loaded into a server of an older major version — not even if the dump was taken from a server of that version. Loading a dump file into an older server may



require manual editing of the dump file to remove syntax not understood by the older server. Use of the `--quote-all-identifiers` option is recommended in cross-version cases, as it can prevent problems arising from varying reserved-word lists in different PostgreSQL versions.

When dumping logical replication subscriptions, `pg_dump` will generate `CREATE SUBSCRIPTION` commands that use the `connect = false` option, so that restoring the subscription does not make remote connections for creating a replication slot or for initial table copy. That way, the dump can be restored without requiring network access to the remote servers. It is then up to the user to reactivate the subscriptions in a suitable way. If the involved hosts have changed, the connection information might have to be changed. It might also be appropriate to truncate the target tables before initiating a new full table copy. If users intend to copy initial data during refresh they must create the slot with `two_phase = false`. After the initial sync, the `two_phase` option will be automatically enabled by the subscriber if the subscription had been originally created with `two_phase = true` option.

## Examples

To dump a database called `mydb` into an SQL-script file:

```
$ pg_dump mydb > db.sql
```

To reload such a script into a (freshly created) database named `newdb`:

```
$ psql -d newdb -f db.sql
```

To dump a database into a custom-format archive file:

```
$ pg_dump -Fc mydb > db.dump
```

To dump a database into a directory-format archive:

```
$ pg_dump -Fd mydb -f dumpdir
```

To dump a database into a directory-format archive in parallel with 5 worker jobs:

```
$ pg_dump -Fd mydb -j 5 -f dumpdir
```

To reload an archive file into a (freshly created) database named `newdb`:

```
$ pg_restore -d newdb db.dump
```

To reload an archive file into the same database it was dumped from, discarding the current contents of that database:

```
$ pg_restore -d postgres --clean --create db.dump
```

To dump a single table named `mytab`:

```
$ pg_dump -t mytab mydb > db.sql
```

To dump all tables whose names start with `emp` in the `detroit` schema, except for the table named `employee_log`:

```
$ pg_dump -t 'detroit.emp*' -T detroit.employee_log mydb > db.sql
```

To dump all schemas whose names start with `east` or `west` and end in `gsm`, excluding any schemas whose names contain the word `test`:

```
$ pg_dump -n 'east*gsm' -n 'west*gsm' -N '*test*' mydb > db.sql
```

The same, using regular expression notation to consolidate the switches:

```
$ pg_dump -n '(east|west)*gsm' -N '*test*' mydb > db.sql
```

To dump all database objects except for tables whose names begin with `ts_`:

```
$ pg_dump -T 'ts_*' mydb > db.sql
```

To specify an upper-case or mixed-case name in `-t` and related switches, you need to double-quote the name; else it will be folded to lower case (see [Patterns](#)). But double quotes are special to the shell, so in turn they must be quoted. Thus, to dump a single table with a mixed-case name, you need something like

```
$ pg_dump -t "\"MixedCaseName\"" mydb > mytab.sql
```

## See Also

`pg_dumpall`, `pg_restore`, `psql`

---

# pg\_dumpall

pg\_dumpall — extract a PostgreSQL database cluster into a script file

## Synopsis

```
pg_dumpall [connection-option...] [option...]
```

## Description

pg\_dumpall is a utility for writing out (“dumping”) all PostgreSQL databases of a cluster into one script file. The script file contains SQL commands that can be used as input to psql to restore the databases. It does this by calling pg\_dump for each database in the cluster. pg\_dumpall also dumps global objects that are common to all databases, namely database roles, tablespaces, and privilege grants for configuration parameters. (pg\_dump does not save these objects.)

Since pg\_dumpall reads tables from all databases you will most likely have to connect as a database superuser in order to produce a complete dump. Also you will need superuser privileges to execute the saved script in order to be allowed to add roles and create databases.

The SQL script will be written to the standard output. Use the `-f/--file` option or shell operators to redirect it into a file.

pg\_dumpall needs to connect several times to the PostgreSQL server (once per database). If you use password authentication it will ask for a password each time. It is convenient to have a `~/.pgpass` file in such cases. See Section 34.16 for more information.

## Options

The following command-line options control the content and format of the output.

`-a`  
`--data-only`

Dump only the data, not the schema (data definitions).

`-c`  
`--clean`

Emit SQL commands to DROP all the dumped databases, roles, and tablespaces before recreating them. This option is useful when the restore is to overwrite an existing cluster. If any of the objects do not exist in the destination cluster, ignorable error messages will be reported during restore, unless `--if-exists` is also specified.

`-E encoding`  
`--encoding=encoding`

Create the dump in the specified character set encoding. By default, the dump is created in the database encoding. (Another way to get the same result is to set the PGCLIENTENCODING environment variable to the desired dump encoding.)

`-f filename`  
`--file=filename`

Send output to the specified file. If this is omitted, the standard output is used.

`-g`  
`--globals-only`

Dump only global objects (roles and tablespaces), no databases.

-O

--no-owner

Do not output commands to set ownership of objects to match the original database. By default, pg\_dumpall issues ALTER OWNER or SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION statements to set ownership of created schema elements. These statements will fail when the script is run unless it is started by a superuser (or the same user that owns all of the objects in the script). To make a script that can be restored by any user, but will give that user ownership of all the objects, specify -O.

-r

--roles-only

Dump only roles, no databases or tablespaces.

-s

--schema-only

Dump only the object definitions (schema), not data.

-S *username*

--superuser=*username*

Specify the superuser user name to use when disabling triggers. This is relevant only if --disable-triggers is used. (Usually, it's better to leave this out, and instead start the resulting script as superuser.)

-t

--tablespaces-only

Dump only tablespaces, no databases or roles.

-v

--verbose

Specifies verbose mode. This will cause pg\_dumpall to output start/stop times to the dump file, and progress messages to standard error. Repeating the option causes additional debug-level messages to appear on standard error. The option is also passed down to pg\_dump.

-V

--version

Print the pg\_dumpall version and exit.

-x

--no-privileges

--no-acl

Prevent dumping of access privileges (grant/revoke commands).

--binary-upgrade

This option is for use by in-place upgrade utilities. Its use for other purposes is not recommended or supported. The behavior of the option may change in future releases without notice.

--column-inserts

--attribute-inserts

Dump data as INSERT commands with explicit column names (INSERT INTO *table* (*column*, ...) VALUES ...). This will make restoration very slow; it is mainly useful for making dumps that can be loaded into non-PostgreSQL databases.

**--disable-dollar-quoting**

This option disables the use of dollar quoting for function bodies, and forces them to be quoted using SQL standard string syntax.

**--disable-triggers**

This option is relevant only when creating a data-only dump. It instructs `pg_dumpall` to include commands to temporarily disable triggers on the target tables while the data is restored. Use this if you have referential integrity checks or other triggers on the tables that you do not want to invoke during data restore.

Presently, the commands emitted for `--disable-triggers` must be done as superuser. So, you should also specify a superuser name with `-S`, or preferably be careful to start the resulting script as a superuser.

**--exclude-database=*pattern***

Do not dump databases whose name matches *pattern*. Multiple patterns can be excluded by writing multiple `--exclude-database` switches. The *pattern* parameter is interpreted as a pattern according to the same rules used by `psql`'s `\d` commands (see Patterns), so multiple databases can also be excluded by writing wildcard characters in the pattern. When using wildcards, be careful to quote the pattern if needed to prevent shell wildcard expansion.

**--extra-float-digits=*ndigits***

Use the specified value of `extra_float_digits` when dumping floating-point data, instead of the maximum available precision. Routine dumps made for backup purposes should not use this option.

**--if-exists**

Use `DROP ... IF EXISTS` commands to drop objects in `--clean` mode. This suppresses “does not exist” errors that might otherwise be reported. This option is not valid unless `--clean` is also specified.

**--inserts**

Dump data as `INSERT` commands (rather than `COPY`). This will make restoration very slow; it is mainly useful for making dumps that can be loaded into non-PostgreSQL databases. Note that the restore might fail altogether if you have rearranged column order. The `--column-inserts` option is safer, though even slower.

**--load-via-partition-root**

When dumping data for a table partition, make the `COPY` or `INSERT` statements target the root of the partitioning hierarchy that contains it, rather than the partition itself. This causes the appropriate partition to be re-determined for each row when the data is loaded. This may be useful when restoring data on a server where rows do not always fall into the same partitions as they did on the original server. That could happen, for example, if the partitioning column is of type text and the two systems have different definitions of the collation used to sort the partitioning column.

**--lock-wait-timeout=*timeout***

Do not wait forever to acquire shared table locks at the beginning of the dump. Instead, fail if unable to lock a table within the specified *timeout*. The timeout may be specified in any of the formats accepted by `SET statement_timeout`.

**--no-comments**

Do not dump comments.

`--no-publications`

Do not dump publications.

`--no-role-passwords`

Do not dump passwords for roles. When restored, roles will have a null password, and password authentication will always fail until the password is set. Since password values aren't needed when this option is specified, the role information is read from the catalog view `pg_roles` instead of `pg_authid`. Therefore, this option also helps if access to `pg_authid` is restricted by some security policy.

`--no-security-labels`

Do not dump security labels.

`--no-subscriptions`

Do not dump subscriptions.

`--no-sync`

By default, `pg_dumpall` will wait for all files to be written safely to disk. This option causes `pg_dumpall` to return without waiting, which is faster, but means that a subsequent operating system crash can leave the dump corrupt. Generally, this option is useful for testing but should not be used when dumping data from production installation.

`--no-table-access-method`

Do not output commands to select table access methods. With this option, all objects will be created with whichever table access method is the default during restore.

`--no-tablespaces`

Do not output commands to create tablespaces nor select tablespaces for objects. With this option, all objects will be created in whichever tablespace is the default during restore.

`--no-toast-compression`

Do not output commands to set TOAST compression methods. With this option, all columns will be restored with the default compression setting.

`--no-unlogged-table-data`

Do not dump the contents of unlogged tables. This option has no effect on whether or not the table definitions (schema) are dumped; it only suppresses dumping the table data.

`--on-conflict-do-nothing`

Add `ON CONFLICT DO NOTHING` to `INSERT` commands. This option is not valid unless `--inserts` or `--column-inserts` is also specified.

`--quote-all-identifiers`

Force quoting of all identifiers. This option is recommended when dumping a database from a server whose PostgreSQL major version is different from `pg_dumpall`'s, or when the output is intended to be loaded into a server of a different major version. By default, `pg_dumpall` quotes only identifiers that are reserved words in its own major version. This sometimes results in compatibility issues when dealing with servers of other versions that may have slightly different sets of reserved words. Using `--quote-all-identifiers` prevents such issues, at the price of a harder-to-read dump script.

`--rows-per-insert=rows`

Dump data as `INSERT` commands (rather than `COPY`). Controls the maximum number of rows per `INSERT` command. The value specified must be a number greater than zero. Any error during restoring will cause only rows that are part of the problematic `INSERT` to be lost, rather than the entire table contents.

`--use-set-session-authorization`

Output SQL-standard `SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION` commands instead of `ALTER OWNER` commands to determine object ownership. This makes the dump more standards compatible, but depending on the history of the objects in the dump, might not restore properly.

`-?`

`--help`

Show help about `pg_dumpall` command line arguments, and exit.

The following command-line options control the database connection parameters.

`-d connstr`

`--dbname=connstr`

Specifies parameters used to connect to the server, as a connection string; these will override any conflicting command line options.

The option is called `--dbname` for consistency with other client applications, but because `pg_dumpall` needs to connect to many databases, the database name in the connection string will be ignored. Use the `-l` option to specify the name of the database used for the initial connection, which will dump global objects and discover what other databases should be dumped.

`-h host`

`--host=host`

Specifies the host name of the machine on which the database server is running. If the value begins with a slash, it is used as the directory for the Unix domain socket. The default is taken from the `PGHOST` environment variable, if set, else a Unix domain socket connection is attempted.

`-l dbname`

`--database=dbname`

Specifies the name of the database to connect to for dumping global objects and discovering what other databases should be dumped. If not specified, the `postgres` database will be used, and if that does not exist, `template1` will be used.

`-p port`

`--port=port`

Specifies the TCP port or local Unix domain socket file extension on which the server is listening for connections. Defaults to the `PGPORT` environment variable, if set, or a compiled-in default.

`-U username`

`--username=username`

User name to connect as.

`-w`

`--no-password`

Never issue a password prompt. If the server requires password authentication and a password is not available by other means such as a `.pgpass` file, the connection attempt will fail. This option can be useful in batch jobs and scripts where no user is present to enter a password.

`-W`  
`--password`

Force `pg_dumpall` to prompt for a password before connecting to a database.

This option is never essential, since `pg_dumpall` will automatically prompt for a password if the server demands password authentication. However, `pg_dumpall` will waste a connection attempt finding out that the server wants a password. In some cases it is worth typing `-W` to avoid the extra connection attempt.

Note that the password prompt will occur again for each database to be dumped. Usually, it's better to set up a `~/.pgpass` file than to rely on manual password entry.

`--role=rolename`

Specifies a role name to be used to create the dump. This option causes `pg_dumpall` to issue a `SET ROLE rolename` command after connecting to the database. It is useful when the authenticated user (specified by `-U`) lacks privileges needed by `pg_dumpall`, but can switch to a role with the required rights. Some installations have a policy against logging in directly as a superuser, and use of this option allows dumps to be made without violating the policy.

## Environment

`PGHOST`  
`PGOPTIONS`  
`PGPORT`  
`PGUSER`

Default connection parameters

`PG_COLOR`

Specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are `always`, `auto` and `never`.

This utility, like most other PostgreSQL utilities, also uses the environment variables supported by `libpq` (see Section 34.15).

## Notes

Since `pg_dumpall` calls `pg_dump` internally, some diagnostic messages will refer to `pg_dump`.

The `--clean` option can be useful even when your intention is to restore the dump script into a fresh cluster. Use of `--clean` authorizes the script to drop and re-create the built-in `postgres` and `template1` databases, ensuring that those databases will retain the same properties (for instance, locale and encoding) that they had in the source cluster. Without the option, those databases will retain their existing database-level properties, as well as any pre-existing contents.

Once restored, it is wise to run `ANALYZE` on each database so the optimizer has useful statistics. You can also run `vacuumdb -a -z` to analyze all databases.

The dump script should not be expected to run completely without errors. In particular, because the script will issue `CREATE ROLE` for every role existing in the source cluster, it is certain to get a “role already exists” error for the bootstrap superuser, unless the destination cluster was initialized with a different bootstrap superuser name. This error is harmless and should be ignored. Use of the `--clean` option is likely to produce additional harmless error messages about non-existent objects, although you can minimize those by adding `--if-exists`.

`pg_dumpall` requires all needed tablespace directories to exist before the restore; otherwise, database creation will fail for databases in non-default locations.



## Examples

To dump all databases:

```
$ pg_dumpall > db.out
```

To restore database(s) from this file, you can use:

```
$ psql -f db.out postgres
```

It is not important to which database you connect here since the script file created by `pg_dumpall` will contain the appropriate commands to create and connect to the saved databases. An exception is that if you specified `--clean`, you must connect to the `postgres` database initially; the script will attempt to drop other databases immediately, and that will fail for the database you are connected to.

## See Also

Check `pg_dump` for details on possible error conditions.

---

# pg\_isready

pg\_isready — check the connection status of a PostgreSQL server

## Synopsis

```
pg_isready [connection-option...] [option...]
```

## Description

pg\_isready is a utility for checking the connection status of a PostgreSQL database server. The exit status specifies the result of the connection check.

## Options

```
-d dbname  
--dbname=dbname
```

Specifies the name of the database to connect to. The *dbname* can be a connection string. If so, connection string parameters will override any conflicting command line options.

```
-h hostname  
--host=hostname
```

Specifies the host name of the machine on which the server is running. If the value begins with a slash, it is used as the directory for the Unix-domain socket.

```
-p port  
--port=port
```

Specifies the TCP port or the local Unix-domain socket file extension on which the server is listening for connections. Defaults to the value of the PGPORT environment variable or, if not set, to the port specified at compile time, usually 5432.

```
-q  
--quiet
```

Do not display status message. This is useful when scripting.

```
-t seconds  
--timeout=seconds
```

The maximum number of seconds to wait when attempting connection before returning that the server is not responding. Setting to 0 disables. The default is 3 seconds.

```
-U username  
--username=username
```

Connect to the database as the user *username* instead of the default.

```
-V  
--version
```

Print the pg\_isready version and exit.

```
-?  
--help
```

Show help about pg\_isready command line arguments, and exit.

## Exit Status

`pg_isready` returns 0 to the shell if the server is accepting connections normally, 1 if the server is rejecting connections (for example during startup), 2 if there was no response to the connection attempt, and 3 if no attempt was made (for example due to invalid parameters).

## Environment

`pg_isready`, like most other PostgreSQL utilities, also uses the environment variables supported by `libpq` (see Section 34.15).

The environment variable `PG_COLOR` specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are `always`, `auto` and `never`.

## Notes

It is not necessary to supply correct user name, password, or database name values to obtain the server status; however, if incorrect values are provided, the server will log a failed connection attempt.

## Examples

Standard Usage:

```
$ pg_isready
/tmp:5432 - accepting connections
$ echo $?
0
```

Running with connection parameters to a PostgreSQL cluster in startup:

```
$ pg_isready -h localhost -p 5433
localhost:5433 - rejecting connections
$ echo $?
1
```

Running with connection parameters to a non-responsive PostgreSQL cluster:

```
$ pg_isready -h someremotehost
someremotehost:5432 - no response
$ echo $?
2
```

---

# pg\_receivewal

pg\_receivewal — stream write-ahead logs from a PostgreSQL server

## Synopsis

pg\_receivewal [*option...*]

## Description

pg\_receivewal is used to stream the write-ahead log from a running PostgreSQL cluster. The write-ahead log is streamed using the streaming replication protocol, and is written to a local directory of files. This directory can be used as the archive location for doing a restore using point-in-time recovery (see Section 26.3).

pg\_receivewal streams the write-ahead log in real time as it's being generated on the server, and does not wait for segments to complete like `archive_command` and `archive_library` do. For this reason, it is not necessary to set `archive_timeout` when using `pg_receivewal`.

Unlike the WAL receiver of a PostgreSQL standby server, `pg_receivewal` by default flushes WAL data only when a WAL file is closed. The option `--synchronous` must be specified to flush WAL data in real time. Since `pg_receivewal` does not apply WAL, you should not allow it to become a synchronous standby when `synchronous_commit` equals `remote_apply`. If it does, it will appear to be a standby that never catches up, and will cause transaction commits to block. To avoid this, you should either configure an appropriate value for `synchronous_standby_names`, or specify `application_name` for `pg_receivewal` that does not match it, or change the value of `synchronous_commit` to something other than `remote_apply`.

The write-ahead log is streamed over a regular PostgreSQL connection and uses the replication protocol. The connection must be made with a user having `REPLICATION` permissions (see Section 22.2) or a superuser, and `pg_hba.conf` must permit the replication connection. The server must also be configured with `max_wal_senders` set high enough to leave at least one session available for the stream.

The starting point of the write-ahead log streaming is calculated when `pg_receivewal` starts:

1. First, scan the directory where the WAL segment files are written and find the newest completed segment file, using as the starting point the beginning of the next WAL segment file.
2. If a starting point cannot be calculated with the previous method, and if a replication slot is used, an extra `READ_REPLICATION_SLOT` command is issued to retrieve the slot's `restart_lsn` to use as the starting point. This option is only available when streaming write-ahead logs from PostgreSQL 15 and up.
3. If a starting point cannot be calculated with the previous method, the latest WAL flush location is used as reported by the server from an `IDENTIFY_SYSTEM` command.

If the connection is lost, or if it cannot be initially established, with a non-fatal error, `pg_receivewal` will retry the connection indefinitely, and reestablish streaming as soon as possible. To avoid this behavior, use the `-n` parameter.

In the absence of fatal errors, `pg_receivewal` will run until terminated by the SIGINT (**Control+C**) or SIGTERM signal.

## Options

`-D directory`  
`--directory=directory`

Directory to write the output to.

This parameter is required.

`-E lsn`  
`--endpos=lsn`

Automatically stop replication and exit with normal exit status 0 when receiving reaches the specified LSN.

If there is a record with LSN exactly equal to `lsn`, the record will be processed.

`--if-not-exists`

Do not error out when `--create-slot` is specified and a slot with the specified name already exists.

`-n`  
`--no-loop`

Don't loop on connection errors. Instead, exit right away with an error.

`--no-sync`

This option causes `pg_receivewal` to not force WAL data to be flushed to disk. This is faster, but means that a subsequent operating system crash can leave the WAL segments corrupt. Generally, this option is useful for testing but should not be used when doing WAL archiving on a production deployment.

This option is incompatible with `--synchronous`.

`-s interval`  
`--status-interval=interval`

Specifies the number of seconds between status packets sent back to the server. This allows for easier monitoring of the progress from server. A value of zero disables the periodic status updates completely, although an update will still be sent when requested by the server, to avoid timeout disconnect. The default value is 10 seconds.

`-S slotname`  
`--slot=slotname`

Require `pg_receivewal` to use an existing replication slot (see Section 27.2.6). When this option is used, `pg_receivewal` will report a flush position to the server, indicating when each segment has been synchronized to disk so that the server can remove that segment if it is not otherwise needed.

When the replication client of `pg_receivewal` is configured on the server as a synchronous standby, then using a replication slot will report the flush position to the server, but only when a WAL file is closed. Therefore, that configuration will cause transactions on the primary to wait for a long time and effectively not work satisfactorily. The option `--synchronous` (see below) must be specified in addition to make this work correctly.

`--synchronous`

Flush the WAL data to disk immediately after it has been received. Also send a status packet back to the server immediately after flushing, regardless of `--status-interval`.

This option should be specified if the replication client of `pg_receivewal` is configured on the server as a synchronous standby, to ensure that timely feedback is sent to the server.

`-v`  
`--verbose`

Enables verbose mode.

```
-Z level
-Z method[:detail]
--compress=level
--compress=method[:detail]
```

Enables compression of write-ahead logs.

The compression method can be set to `gzip`, `lz4` (if PostgreSQL was compiled with `--with-lz4`) or `none` for no compression. A compression detail string can optionally be specified. If the detail string is an integer, it specifies the compression level. Otherwise, it should be a comma-separated list of items, each of the form `keyword` or `keyword=value`. Currently, the only supported keyword is `level`.

If no compression level is specified, the default compression level will be used. If only a level is specified without mentioning an algorithm, `gzip` compression will be used if the level is greater than 0, and no compression will be used if the level is 0.

The suffix `.gz` will automatically be added to all filenames when using `gzip`, and the suffix `.lz4` is added when using `lz4`.

The following command-line options control the database connection parameters.

```
-d connstr
--dbname=connstr
```

Specifies parameters used to connect to the server, as a connection string; these will override any conflicting command line options.

The option is called `--dbname` for consistency with other client applications, but because `pg_receivewal` doesn't connect to any particular database in the cluster, database name in the connection string will be ignored.

```
-h host
--host=host
```

Specifies the host name of the machine on which the server is running. If the value begins with a slash, it is used as the directory for the Unix domain socket. The default is taken from the `PGHOST` environment variable, if set, else a Unix domain socket connection is attempted.

```
-p port
--port=port
```

Specifies the TCP port or local Unix domain socket file extension on which the server is listening for connections. Defaults to the `PGPORT` environment variable, if set, or a compiled-in default.

```
-U username
--username=username
```

User name to connect as.

```
-w
--no-password
```

Never issue a password prompt. If the server requires password authentication and a password is not available by other means such as a `.pgpass` file, the connection attempt will fail. This option can be useful in batch jobs and scripts where no user is present to enter a password.

```
-W
--password
```

Force `pg_receivewal` to prompt for a password before connecting to a database.

This option is never essential, since `pg_receivewal` will automatically prompt for a password if the server demands password authentication. However, `pg_receivewal` will waste a connection attempt finding out that the server wants a password. In some cases it is worth typing `-W` to avoid the extra connection attempt.

`pg_receivewal` can perform one of the two following actions in order to control physical replication slots:

`--create-slot`

Create a new physical replication slot with the name specified in `--slot`, then exit.

`--drop-slot`

Drop the replication slot with the name specified in `--slot`, then exit.

Other options are also available:

`-V`

`--version`

Print the `pg_receivewal` version and exit.

`-?`

`--help`

Show help about `pg_receivewal` command line arguments, and exit.

## Exit Status

`pg_receivewal` will exit with status 0 when terminated by the `SIGINT` or `SIGTERM` signal. (That is the normal way to end it. Hence it is not an error.) For fatal errors or other signals, the exit status will be nonzero.

## Environment

This utility, like most other PostgreSQL utilities, uses the environment variables supported by `libpq` (see Section 34.15).

The environment variable `PG_COLOR` specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are `always`, `auto` and `never`.

## Notes

When using `pg_receivewal` instead of `archive_command` or `archive_library` as the main WAL backup method, it is strongly recommended to use replication slots. Otherwise, the server is free to recycle or remove write-ahead log files before they are backed up, because it does not have any information, either from `archive_command` or `archive_library` or the replication slots, about how far the WAL stream has been archived. Note, however, that a replication slot will fill up the server's disk space if the receiver does not keep up with fetching the WAL data.

`pg_receivewal` will preserve group permissions on the received WAL files if group permissions are enabled on the source cluster.

## Examples

To stream the write-ahead log from the server at `mydbserver` and store it in the local directory `/usr/local/pgsql/archive`:

```
$ pg_receivewal -h mydbserver -D /usr/local/pgsql/archive
```

## See Also

[pg\\_basebackup](#)



---

# pg\_recvlogical

pg\_recvlogical — control PostgreSQL logical decoding streams

## Synopsis

pg\_recvlogical [*option*...]

## Description

pg\_recvlogical controls logical decoding replication slots and streams data from such replication slots.

It creates a replication-mode connection, so it is subject to the same constraints as pg\_receivewal, plus those for logical replication (see Chapter 49).

pg\_recvlogical has no equivalent to the logical decoding SQL interface's peek and get modes. It sends replay confirmations for data lazily as it receives it and on clean exit. To examine pending data on a slot without consuming it, use pg\_logical\_slot\_peek\_changes.

In the absence of fatal errors, pg\_recvlogical will run until terminated by the SIGINT (**Control+C**) or SIGTERM signal.

## Options

At least one of the following options must be specified to select an action:

`--create-slot`

Create a new logical replication slot with the name specified by `--slot`, using the output plugin specified by `--plugin`, for the database specified by `--dbname`.

The `--two-phase` can be specified with `--create-slot` to enable decoding of prepared transactions.

`--drop-slot`

Drop the replication slot with the name specified by `--slot`, then exit.

`--start`

Begin streaming changes from the logical replication slot specified by `--slot`, continuing until terminated by a signal. If the server side change stream ends with a server shutdown or disconnect, retry in a loop unless `--no-loop` is specified.

The stream format is determined by the output plugin specified when the slot was created.

The connection must be to the same database used to create the slot.

`--create-slot` and `--start` can be specified together. `--drop-slot` cannot be combined with another action.

The following command-line options control the location and format of the output and other replication behavior:

`-E lsn`

`--endpos=lsn`

In `--start` mode, automatically stop replication and exit with normal exit status 0 when receiving reaches the specified LSN. If specified when not in `--start` mode, an error is raised.

If there's a record with LSN exactly equal to *lsn*, the record will be output.

The `--endpos` option is not aware of transaction boundaries and may truncate output partway through a transaction. Any partially output transaction will not be consumed and will be replayed again when the slot is next read from. Individual messages are never truncated.

`-f filename`  
`--file=filename`

Write received and decoded transaction data into this file. Use `-` for stdout.

`-F interval_seconds`  
`--fsync-interval=interval_seconds`

Specifies how often `pg_recvlogical` should issue `fsync()` calls to ensure the output file is safely flushed to disk.

The server will occasionally request the client to perform a flush and report the flush position to the server. This setting is in addition to that, to perform flushes more frequently.

Specifying an interval of 0 disables issuing `fsync()` calls altogether, while still reporting progress to the server. In this case, data could be lost in the event of a crash.

`-I lsn`  
`--startpos=lsn`

In `--start` mode, start replication from the given LSN. For details on the effect of this, see the documentation in Chapter 49 and Section 55.4. Ignored in other modes.

`--if-not-exists`

Do not error out when `--create-slot` is specified and a slot with the specified name already exists.

`-n`  
`--no-loop`

When the connection to the server is lost, do not retry in a loop, just exit.

`-o name[=value]`  
`--option=name[=value]`

Pass the option *name* to the output plugin with, if specified, the option value *value*. Which options exist and their effects depends on the used output plugin.

`-P plugin`  
`--plugin=plugin`

When creating a slot, use the specified logical decoding output plugin. See Chapter 49. This option has no effect if the slot already exists.

`-s interval_seconds`  
`--status-interval=interval_seconds`

This option has the same effect as the option of the same name in `pg_receivewal`. See the description there.

`-S slot_name`  
`--slot=slot_name`

In `--start` mode, use the existing logical replication slot named *slot\_name*. In `--create-slot` mode, create the slot with this name. In `--drop-slot` mode, delete the slot with this name.

-t  
--two-phase

Enables decoding of prepared transactions. This option may only be specified with --create-slot

-v  
--verbose

Enables verbose mode.

The following command-line options control the database connection parameters.

-d *dbname*  
--dbname=*dbname*

The database to connect to. See the description of the actions for what this means in detail. The *dbname* can be a connection string. If so, connection string parameters will override any conflicting command line options. Defaults to the user name.

-h *hostname-or-ip*  
--host=*hostname-or-ip*

Specifies the host name of the machine on which the server is running. If the value begins with a slash, it is used as the directory for the Unix domain socket. The default is taken from the PGHOST environment variable, if set, else a Unix domain socket connection is attempted.

-p *port*  
--port=*port*

Specifies the TCP port or local Unix domain socket file extension on which the server is listening for connections. Defaults to the PGPORT environment variable, if set, or a compiled-in default.

-U *user*  
--username=*user*

User name to connect as. Defaults to current operating system user name.

-w  
--no-password

Never issue a password prompt. If the server requires password authentication and a password is not available by other means such as a .pgpass file, the connection attempt will fail. This option can be useful in batch jobs and scripts where no user is present to enter a password.

-W  
--password

Force pg\_recvlogical to prompt for a password before connecting to a database.

This option is never essential, since pg\_recvlogical will automatically prompt for a password if the server demands password authentication. However, pg\_recvlogical will waste a connection attempt finding out that the server wants a password. In some cases it is worth typing -W to avoid the extra connection attempt.

The following additional options are available:

-V  
--version

Print the pg\_recvlogical version and exit.

-?  
--help

Show help about pg\_recvlogical command line arguments, and exit.

## Exit Status

pg\_recvlogical will exit with status 0 when terminated by the SIGINT or SIGTERM signal. (That is the normal way to end it. Hence it is not an error.) For fatal errors or other signals, the exit status will be nonzero.

## Environment

This utility, like most other PostgreSQL utilities, uses the environment variables supported by libpq (see Section 34.15).

The environment variable PG\_COLOR specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are `always`, `auto` and `never`.

## Notes

pg\_recvlogical will preserve group permissions on the received WAL files if group permissions are enabled on the source cluster.

## Examples

See Section 49.1 for an example.

## See Also

pg\_receivewal

---

# pg\_restore

pg\_restore — restore a PostgreSQL database from an archive file created by pg\_dump

## Synopsis

```
pg_restore [connection-option...] [option...] [filename]
```

## Description

pg\_restore is a utility for restoring a PostgreSQL database from an archive created by pg\_dump in one of the non-plain-text formats. It will issue the commands necessary to reconstruct the database to the state it was in at the time it was saved. The archive files also allow pg\_restore to be selective about what is restored, or even to reorder the items prior to being restored. The archive files are designed to be portable across architectures.

pg\_restore can operate in two modes. If a database name is specified, pg\_restore connects to that database and restores archive contents directly into the database. Otherwise, a script containing the SQL commands necessary to rebuild the database is created and written to a file or standard output. This script output is equivalent to the plain text output format of pg\_dump. Some of the options controlling the output are therefore analogous to pg\_dump options.

Obviously, pg\_restore cannot restore information that is not present in the archive file. For instance, if the archive was made using the “dump data as INSERT commands” option, pg\_restore will not be able to load the data using COPY statements.

## Options

pg\_restore accepts the following command line arguments.

*filename*

Specifies the location of the archive file (or directory, for a directory-format archive) to be restored. If not specified, the standard input is used.

-a

--data-only

Restore only the data, not the schema (data definitions). Table data, large objects, and sequence values are restored, if present in the archive.

This option is similar to, but for historical reasons not identical to, specifying --section=data.

-c

--clean

Before restoring database objects, issue commands to DROP all the objects that will be restored. This option is useful for overwriting an existing database. If any of the objects do not exist in the destination database, ignorable error messages will be reported, unless --if-exists is also specified.

-C

--create

Create the database before restoring into it. If --clean is also specified, drop and recreate the target database before connecting to it.

With `--create`, `pg_restore` also restores the database's comment if any, and any configuration variable settings that are specific to this database, that is, any `ALTER DATABASE ... SET ...` and `ALTER ROLE ... IN DATABASE ... SET ...` commands that mention this database. Access privileges for the database itself are also restored, unless `--no-acl` is specified.

When this option is used, the database named with `-d` is used only to issue the initial `DROP DATABASE` and `CREATE DATABASE` commands. All data is restored into the database name that appears in the archive.

`-d dbname`  
`--dbname=dbname`

Connect to database *dbname* and restore directly into the database. The *dbname* can be a connection string. If so, connection string parameters will override any conflicting command line options.

`-e`  
`--exit-on-error`

Exit if an error is encountered while sending SQL commands to the database. The default is to continue and to display a count of errors at the end of the restoration.

`-f filename`  
`--file=filename`

Specify output file for generated script, or for the listing when used with `-l`. Use `-` for stdout.

`-F format`  
`--format=format`

Specify format of the archive. It is not necessary to specify the format, since `pg_restore` will determine the format automatically. If specified, it can be one of the following:

`c`  
`custom`

The archive is in the custom format of `pg_dump`.

`d`  
`directory`

The archive is a directory archive.

`t`  
`tar`

The archive is a tar archive.

`-I index`  
`--index=index`

Restore definition of named index only. Multiple indexes may be specified with multiple `-I` switches.

`-j number-of-jobs`  
`--jobs=number-of-jobs`

Run the most time-consuming steps of `pg_restore` — those that load data, create indexes, or create constraints — concurrently, using up to *number-of-jobs* concurrent sessions. This option can dramatically reduce the time to restore a large database to a server running on a multiprocessor machine. This option is ignored when emitting a script rather than connecting directly to a database server.

Each job is one process or one thread, depending on the operating system, and uses a separate connection to the server.

The optimal value for this option depends on the hardware setup of the server, of the client, and of the network. Factors include the number of CPU cores and the disk setup. A good place to start is the number of CPU cores on the server, but values larger than that can also lead to faster restore times in many cases. Of course, values that are too high will lead to decreased performance because of thrashing.

Only the custom and directory archive formats are supported with this option. The input must be a regular file or directory (not, for example, a pipe or standard input). Also, multiple jobs cannot be used together with the option `--single-transaction`.

`-l`  
`--list`

List the table of contents of the archive. The output of this operation can be used as input to the `-L` option. Note that if filtering switches such as `-n` or `-t` are used with `-l`, they will restrict the items listed.

`-L list-file`  
`--use-list=list-file`

Restore only those archive elements that are listed in *list-file*, and restore them in the order they appear in the file. Note that if filtering switches such as `-n` or `-t` are used with `-L`, they will further restrict the items restored.

*list-file* is normally created by editing the output of a previous `-l` operation. Lines can be moved or removed, and can also be commented out by placing a semicolon (`:`) at the start of the line. See below for examples.

`-n schema`  
`--schema=schema`

Restore only objects that are in the named schema. Multiple schemas may be specified with multiple `-n` switches. This can be combined with the `-t` option to restore just a specific table.

`-N schema`  
`--exclude-schema=schema`

Do not restore objects that are in the named schema. Multiple schemas to be excluded may be specified with multiple `-N` switches.

When both `-n` and `-N` are given for the same schema name, the `-N` switch wins and the schema is excluded.

`-O`  
`--no-owner`

Do not output commands to set ownership of objects to match the original database. By default, `pg_restore` issues `ALTER OWNER` or `SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION` statements to set ownership of created schema elements. These statements will fail unless the initial connection to the database is made by a superuser (or the same user that owns all of the objects in the script). With `-O`, any user name can be used for the initial connection, and this user will own all the created objects.

`-P function-name(argtype [, ...])`  
`--function=function-name(argtype [, ...])`

Restore the named function only. Be careful to spell the function name and arguments exactly as they appear in the dump file's table of contents. Multiple functions may be specified with multiple `-P` switches.

`-R`  
`--no-reconnect`

This option is obsolete but still accepted for backwards compatibility.

`-s`  
`--schema-only`

Restore only the schema (data definitions), not data, to the extent that schema entries are present in the archive.

This option is the inverse of `--data-only`. It is similar to, but for historical reasons not identical to, specifying `--section=pre-data --section=post-data`.

(Do not confuse this with the `--schema` option, which uses the word “schema” in a different meaning.)

`-S username`  
`--superuser=username`

Specify the superuser user name to use when disabling triggers. This is relevant only if `--disable-triggers` is used.

`-t table`  
`--table=table`

Restore definition and/or data of only the named table. For this purpose, “table” includes views, materialized views, sequences, and foreign tables. Multiple tables can be selected by writing multiple `-t` switches. This option can be combined with the `-n` option to specify table(s) in a particular schema.

### Note

When `-t` is specified, `pg_restore` makes no attempt to restore any other database objects that the selected table(s) might depend upon. Therefore, there is no guarantee that a specific-table restore into a clean database will succeed.

### Note

This flag does not behave identically to the `-t` flag of `pg_dump`. There is not currently any provision for wild-card matching in `pg_restore`, nor can you include a schema name within its `-t`. And, while `pg_dump`'s `-t` flag will also dump subsidiary objects (such as indexes) of the selected table(s), `pg_restore`'s `-t` flag does not include such subsidiary objects.

### Note

In versions prior to PostgreSQL 9.6, this flag matched only tables, not any other type of relation.

`-T trigger`  
`--trigger=trigger`

Restore named trigger only. Multiple triggers may be specified with multiple `-T` switches.



`-v`  
`--verbose`

Specifies verbose mode. This will cause `pg_restore` to output detailed object comments and start/stop times to the output file, and progress messages to standard error. Repeating the option causes additional debug-level messages to appear on standard error.

`-V`  
`--version`

Print the `pg_restore` version and exit.

`-x`  
`--no-privileges`  
`--no-acl`

Prevent restoration of access privileges (grant/revoke commands).

`-l`  
`--single-transaction`

Execute the restore as a single transaction (that is, wrap the emitted commands in `BEGIN/COMMIT`). This ensures that either all the commands complete successfully, or no changes are applied. This option implies `--exit-on-error`.

`--disable-triggers`

This option is relevant only when performing a data-only restore. It instructs `pg_restore` to execute commands to temporarily disable triggers on the target tables while the data is restored. Use this if you have referential integrity checks or other triggers on the tables that you do not want to invoke during data restore.

Presently, the commands emitted for `--disable-triggers` must be done as superuser. So you should also specify a superuser name with `-S` or, preferably, run `pg_restore` as a PostgreSQL superuser.

`--enable-row-security`

This option is relevant only when restoring the contents of a table which has row security. By default, `pg_restore` will set `row_security` to off, to ensure that all data is restored in to the table. If the user does not have sufficient privileges to bypass row security, then an error is thrown. This parameter instructs `pg_restore` to set `row_security` to on instead, allowing the user to attempt to restore the contents of the table with row security enabled. This might still fail if the user does not have the right to insert the rows from the dump into the table.

Note that this option currently also requires the dump be in `INSERT` format, as `COPY FROM` does not support row security.

`--if-exists`

Use `DROP ... IF EXISTS` commands to drop objects in `--clean` mode. This suppresses “does not exist” errors that might otherwise be reported. This option is not valid unless `--clean` is also specified.

`--no-comments`

Do not output commands to restore comments, even if the archive contains them.

`--no-data-for-failed-tables`

By default, table data is restored even if the creation command for the table failed (e.g., because it already exists). With this option, data for such a table is skipped. This behavior is useful if

the target database already contains the desired table contents. For example, auxiliary tables for PostgreSQL extensions such as PostGIS might already be loaded in the target database; specifying this option prevents duplicate or obsolete data from being loaded into them.

This option is effective only when restoring directly into a database, not when producing SQL script output.

`--no-publications`

Do not output commands to restore publications, even if the archive contains them.

`--no-security-labels`

Do not output commands to restore security labels, even if the archive contains them.

`--no-subscriptions`

Do not output commands to restore subscriptions, even if the archive contains them.

`--no-table-access-method`

Do not output commands to select table access methods. With this option, all objects will be created with whichever access method is the default during restore.

`--no-tablespaces`

Do not output commands to select tablespaces. With this option, all objects will be created in whichever tablespace is the default during restore.

`--section=sectionname`

Only restore the named section. The section name can be `pre-data`, `data`, or `post-data`. This option can be specified more than once to select multiple sections. The default is to restore all sections.

The data section contains actual table data as well as large-object definitions. Post-data items consist of definitions of indexes, triggers, rules and constraints other than validated check constraints. Pre-data items consist of all other data definition items.

`--strict-names`

Require that each schema (`-n/--schema`) and table (`-t/--table`) qualifier match at least one schema/table in the backup file.

`--use-set-session-authorization`

Output SQL-standard `SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION` commands instead of `ALTER OWNER` commands to determine object ownership. This makes the dump more standards-compatible, but depending on the history of the objects in the dump, might not restore properly.

`-?`

`--help`

Show help about `pg_restore` command line arguments, and exit.

`pg_restore` also accepts the following command line arguments for connection parameters:

`-h host`

`--host=host`

Specifies the host name of the machine on which the server is running. If the value begins with a slash, it is used as the directory for the Unix domain socket. The default is taken from the `PGHOST` environment variable, if set, else a Unix domain socket connection is attempted.

`-p port`  
`--port=port`

Specifies the TCP port or local Unix domain socket file extension on which the server is listening for connections. Defaults to the `PGPORT` environment variable, if set, or a compiled-in default.

`-U username`  
`--username=username`

User name to connect as.

`-w`  
`--no-password`

Never issue a password prompt. If the server requires password authentication and a password is not available by other means such as a `.pgpass` file, the connection attempt will fail. This option can be useful in batch jobs and scripts where no user is present to enter a password.

`-W`  
`--password`

Force `pg_restore` to prompt for a password before connecting to a database.

This option is never essential, since `pg_restore` will automatically prompt for a password if the server demands password authentication. However, `pg_restore` will waste a connection attempt finding out that the server wants a password. In some cases it is worth typing `-W` to avoid the extra connection attempt.

`--role=rolename`

Specifies a role name to be used to perform the restore. This option causes `pg_restore` to issue a `SET ROLE rolename` command after connecting to the database. It is useful when the authenticated user (specified by `-U`) lacks privileges needed by `pg_restore`, but can switch to a role with the required rights. Some installations have a policy against logging in directly as a superuser, and use of this option allows restores to be performed without violating the policy.

## Environment

`PGHOST`  
`PGOPTIONS`  
`PGPORT`  
`PGUSER`

Default connection parameters

`PG_COLOR`

Specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are `always`, `auto` and `never`.

This utility, like most other PostgreSQL utilities, also uses the environment variables supported by `libpq` (see Section 34.15). However, it does not read `PGDATABASE` when a database name is not supplied.

## Diagnostics

When a direct database connection is specified using the `-d` option, `pg_restore` internally executes SQL statements. If you have problems running `pg_restore`, make sure you are able to select information from the database using, for example, `psql`. Also, any default connection settings and environment variables used by the `libpq` front-end library will apply.

## Notes

If your installation has any local additions to the `template1` database, be careful to load the output of `pg_restore` into a truly empty database; otherwise you are likely to get errors due to duplicate definitions of the added objects. To make an empty database without any local additions, copy from `template0` not `template1`, for example:

```
CREATE DATABASE foo WITH TEMPLATE template0;
```

The limitations of `pg_restore` are detailed below.

- When restoring data to a pre-existing table and the option `--disable-triggers` is used, `pg_restore` emits commands to disable triggers on user tables before inserting the data, then emits commands to re-enable them after the data has been inserted. If the restore is stopped in the middle, the system catalogs might be left in the wrong state.
- `pg_restore` cannot restore large objects selectively; for instance, only those for a specific table. If an archive contains large objects, then all large objects will be restored, or none of them if they are excluded via `-L`, `-t`, or other options.

See also the `pg_dump` documentation for details on limitations of `pg_dump`.

Once restored, it is wise to run `ANALYZE` on each restored table so the optimizer has useful statistics; see Section 25.1.3 and Section 25.1.6 for more information.

## Examples

Assume we have dumped a database called `mydb` into a custom-format dump file:

```
$ pg_dump -Fc mydb > db.dump
```

To drop the database and recreate it from the dump:

```
$ dropdb mydb
$ pg_restore -C -d postgres db.dump
```

The database named in the `-d` switch can be any database existing in the cluster; `pg_restore` only uses it to issue the `CREATE DATABASE` command for `mydb`. With `-C`, data is always restored into the database name that appears in the dump file.

To restore the dump into a new database called `newdb`:

```
$ createdb -T template0 newdb
$ pg_restore -d newdb db.dump
```

Notice we don't use `-C`, and instead connect directly to the database to be restored into. Also note that we clone the new database from `template0` not `template1`, to ensure it is initially empty.

To reorder database items, it is first necessary to dump the table of contents of the archive:

```
$ pg_restore -l db.dump > db.list
```

The listing file consists of a header and one line for each item, e.g.:

```
;
; Archive created at Mon Sep 14 13:55:39 2009
;   dbname: DBDEMOS
;   TOC Entries: 81
;   Compression: 9
;   Dump Version: 1.10-0
;   Format: CUSTOM
;   Integer: 4 bytes
;   Offset: 8 bytes
;   Dumped from database version: 8.3.5
;   Dumped by pg_dump version: 8.3.8
;
;
; Selected TOC Entries:
;
3; 2615 2200 SCHEMA - public pasha
1861; 0 0 COMMENT - SCHEMA public pasha
1862; 0 0 ACL - public pasha
317; 1247 17715 TYPE public composite pasha
319; 1247 25899 DOMAIN public domain0 pasha
```

Semicolons start a comment, and the numbers at the start of lines refer to the internal archive ID assigned to each item.

Lines in the file can be commented out, deleted, and reordered. For example:

```
10; 145433 TABLE map_resolutions postgres
;2; 145344 TABLE species postgres
;4; 145359 TABLE nt_header postgres
6; 145402 TABLE species_records postgres
;8; 145416 TABLE ss_old postgres
```

could be used as input to `pg_restore` and would only restore items 10 and 6, in that order:

```
$ pg_restore -L db.list db.dump
```

## See Also

`pg_dump`, `pg_dumpall`, `psql`

---

# pg\_verifybackup

pg\_verifybackup — verify the integrity of a base backup of a PostgreSQL cluster

## Synopsis

```
pg_verifybackup [option...]
```

## Description

pg\_verifybackup is used to check the integrity of a database cluster backup taken using pg\_basebackup against a backup\_manifest generated by the server at the time of the backup. The backup must be stored in the "plain" format; a "tar" format backup can be checked after extracting it.

It is important to note that the validation which is performed by pg\_verifybackup does not and cannot include every check which will be performed by a running server when attempting to make use of the backup. Even if you use this tool, you should still perform test restores and verify that the resulting databases work as expected and that they appear to contain the correct data. However, pg\_verifybackup can detect many problems that commonly occur due to storage problems or user error.

Backup verification proceeds in four stages. First, pg\_verifybackup reads the backup\_manifest file. If that file does not exist, cannot be read, is malformed, or fails verification against its own internal checksum, pg\_verifybackup will terminate with a fatal error.

Second, pg\_verifybackup will attempt to verify that the data files currently stored on disk are exactly the same as the data files which the server intended to send, with some exceptions that are described below. Extra and missing files will be detected, with a few exceptions. This step will ignore the presence or absence of, or any modifications to, postgresql.auto.conf, standby.signal, and recovery.signal, because it is expected that these files may have been created or modified as part of the process of taking the backup. It also won't complain about a backup\_manifest file in the target directory or about anything inside pg\_wal, even though these files won't be listed in the backup manifest. Only files are checked; the presence or absence of directories is not verified, except indirectly: if a directory is missing, any files it should have contained will necessarily also be missing.

Next, pg\_verifybackup will checksum all the files, compare the checksums against the values in the manifest, and emit errors for any files for which the computed checksum does not match the checksum stored in the manifest. This step is not performed for any files which produced errors in the previous step, since they are already known to have problems. Files which were ignored in the previous step are also ignored in this step.

Finally, pg\_verifybackup will use the manifest to verify that the write-ahead log records which will be needed to recover the backup are present and that they can be read and parsed. The backup\_manifest contains information about which write-ahead log records will be needed, and pg\_verifybackup will use that information to invoke pg\_waldump to parse those write-ahead log records. The --quiet flag will be used, so that pg\_waldump will only report errors, without producing any other output. While this level of verification is sufficient to detect obvious problems such as a missing file or one whose internal checksums do not match, they aren't extensive enough to detect every possible problem that might occur when attempting to recover. For instance, a server bug that produces write-ahead log records that have the correct checksums but specify nonsensical actions can't be detected by this method.

Note that if extra WAL files which are not required to recover the backup are present, they will not be checked by this tool, although a separate invocation of pg\_waldump could be used for that purpose. Also note that WAL verification is version-specific: you must use the version of pg\_verifybackup, and thus of pg\_waldump, which pertains to the backup being checked. In contrast, the data file integrity checks should work with any version of the server that generates a backup\_manifest file.

## Options

pg\_verifybackup accepts the following command-line arguments:

`-e`  
`--exit-on-error`

Exit as soon as a problem with the backup is detected. If this option is not specified, pg\_verifybackup will continue checking the backup even after a problem has been detected, and will report all problems detected as errors.

`-i path`  
`--ignore=path`

Ignore the specified file or directory, which should be expressed as a relative path name, when comparing the list of data files actually present in the backup to those listed in the backup\_manifest file. If a directory is specified, this option affects the entire subtree rooted at that location. Complaints about extra files, missing files, file size differences, or checksum mismatches will be suppressed if the relative path name matches the specified path name. This option can be specified multiple times.

`-m path`  
`--manifest-path=path`

Use the manifest file at the specified path, rather than one located in the root of the backup directory.

`-n`  
`--no-parse-wal`

Don't attempt to parse write-ahead log data that will be needed to recover from this backup.

`-p`  
`--progress`

Enable progress reporting. Turning this on will deliver a progress report while verifying checksums.

This option cannot be used together with the option `--quiet`.

`-q`  
`--quiet`

Don't print anything when a backup is successfully verified.

`-s`  
`--skip-checksums`

Do not verify data file checksums. The presence or absence of files and the sizes of those files will still be checked. This is much faster, because the files themselves do not need to be read.

`-w path`  
`--wal-directory=path`

Try to parse WAL files stored in the specified directory, rather than in pg\_wal. This may be useful if the backup is stored in a separate location from the WAL archive.

Other options are also available:

`-v`  
`--version`

Print the pg\_verifybackup version and exit.

-?  
--help

Show help about pg\_verifybackup command line arguments, and exit.

## Examples

To create a base backup of the server at mydbserver and verify the integrity of the backup:

```
$ pg_basebackup -h mydbserver -D /usr/local/pgsql/data  
$ pg_verifybackup /usr/local/pgsql/data
```

To create a base backup of the server at mydbserver, move the manifest somewhere outside the backup directory, and verify the backup:

```
$ pg_basebackup -h mydbserver -D /usr/local/pgsql/backup1234  
$ mv /usr/local/pgsql/backup1234/backup_manifest /my/secure/  
location/backup_manifest.1234  
$ pg_verifybackup -m /my/secure/location/backup_manifest.1234 /usr/  
local/pgsql/backup1234
```

To verify a backup while ignoring a file that was added manually to the backup directory, and also skipping checksum verification:

```
$ pg_basebackup -h mydbserver -D /usr/local/pgsql/data  
$ edit /usr/local/pgsql/data/note.to.self  
$ pg_verifybackup --ignore=note.to.self --skip-checksums /usr/  
local/pgsql/data
```

## See Also

pg\_basebackup



---

# psql

psql — PostgreSQL interactive terminal

## Synopsis

```
psql [option...] [dbname [username]]
```

## Description

psql is a terminal-based front-end to PostgreSQL. It enables you to type in queries interactively, issue them to PostgreSQL, and see the query results. Alternatively, input can be from a file or from command line arguments. In addition, psql provides a number of meta-commands and various shell-like features to facilitate writing scripts and automating a wide variety of tasks.

## Options

```
-a  
--echo-all
```

Print all nonempty input lines to standard output as they are read. (This does not apply to lines read interactively.) This is equivalent to setting the variable `ECHO` to `all`.

```
-A  
--no-align
```

Switches to unaligned output mode. (The default output mode is aligned.) This is equivalent to `\pset format unaligned`.

```
-b  
--echo-errors
```

Print failed SQL commands to standard error output. This is equivalent to setting the variable `ECHO` to `errors`.

```
-c command  
--command=command
```

Specifies that psql is to execute the given command string, *command*. This option can be repeated and combined in any order with the `-f` option. When either `-c` or `-f` is specified, psql does not read commands from standard input; instead it terminates after processing all the `-c` and `-f` options in sequence.

*command* must be either a command string that is completely parsable by the server (i.e., it contains no psql-specific features), or a single backslash command. Thus you cannot mix SQL and psql meta-commands within a `-c` option. To achieve that, you could use repeated `-c` options or pipe the string into psql, for example:

```
psql -c '\x' -c 'SELECT * FROM foo;'
```

or

```
echo '\x \ SELECT * FROM foo;' | psql
```

(\\ is the separator meta-command.)

Each SQL command string passed to `-c` is sent to the server as a single request. Because of this, the server executes it as a single transaction even if the string contains multiple SQL commands, unless there are explicit `BEGIN/COMMIT` commands included in the string to divide it into multiple transactions. (See Section 55.2.2.1 for more details about how the server handles multi-query strings.)

If having several commands executed in one transaction is not desired, use repeated `-c` commands or feed multiple commands to psql's standard input, either using `echo` as illustrated above, or via a shell here-document, for example:

```
psql <<EOF
\x
SELECT * FROM foo;
EOF
```

`--csv`

Switches to CSV (Comma-Separated Values) output mode. This is equivalent to `\pset format csv`.

`-d dbname`

`--dbname=dbname`

Specifies the name of the database to connect to. This is equivalent to specifying *dbname* as the first non-option argument on the command line. The *dbname* can be a connection string. If so, connection string parameters will override any conflicting command line options.

`-e`

`--echo-queries`

Copy all SQL commands sent to the server to standard output as well. This is equivalent to setting the variable `ECHO` to `queries`.

`-E`

`--echo-hidden`

Echo the actual queries generated by `\d` and other backslash commands. You can use this to study psql's internal operations. This is equivalent to setting the variable `ECHO_HIDDEN` to `on`.

`-f filename`

`--file=filename`

Read commands from the file *filename*, rather than standard input. This option can be repeated and combined in any order with the `-c` option. When either `-c` or `-f` is specified, psql does not read commands from standard input; instead it terminates after processing all the `-c` and `-f` options in sequence. Except for that, this option is largely equivalent to the meta-command `\i`.

If *filename* is `-` (hyphen), then standard input is read until an EOF indication or `\q` meta-command. This can be used to intersperse interactive input with input from files. Note however that Readline is not used in this case (much as if `-n` had been specified).

Using this option is subtly different from writing `psql < filename`. In general, both will do what you expect, but using `-f` enables some nice features such as error messages with line numbers. There is also a slight chance that using this option will reduce the start-up overhead. On the other hand, the variant using the shell's input redirection is (in theory) guaranteed to yield exactly the same output you would have received had you entered everything by hand.

`-F separator`  
`--field-separator=separator`

Use *separator* as the field separator for unaligned output. This is equivalent to `\pset fieldsep` or `\f`.

`-h hostname`  
`--host=hostname`

Specifies the host name of the machine on which the server is running. If the value begins with a slash, it is used as the directory for the Unix-domain socket.

`-H`  
`--html`

Switches to HTML output mode. This is equivalent to `\pset format html` or the `\H` command.

`-l`  
`--list`

List all available databases, then exit. Other non-connection options are ignored. This is similar to the meta-command `\list`.

When this option is used, `psql` will connect to the database `postgres`, unless a different database is named on the command line (option `-d` or non-option argument, possibly via a service entry, but not via an environment variable).

`-L filename`  
`--log-file=filename`

Write all query output into file *filename*, in addition to the normal output destination.

`-n`  
`--no-readline`

Do not use Readline for line editing and do not use the command history (see the section called “Command-Line Editing” below).

`-o filename`  
`--output=filename`

Put all query output into file *filename*. This is equivalent to the command `\o`.

`-p port`  
`--port=port`

Specifies the TCP port or the local Unix-domain socket file extension on which the server is listening for connections. Defaults to the value of the `PGPORT` environment variable or, if not set, to the port specified at compile time, usually 5432.

`-P assignment`  
`--pset=assignment`

Specifies printing options, in the style of `\pset`. Note that here you have to separate name and value with an equal sign instead of a space. For example, to set the output format to LaTeX, you could write `-P format=latex`.

`-q`  
`--quiet`

Specifies that `psql` should do its work quietly. By default, it prints welcome messages and various informational output. If this option is used, none of this happens. This is useful with the `-c` option. This is equivalent to setting the variable `QUIET` to `on`.

`-R separator`  
`--record-separator=separator`

Use *separator* as the record separator for unaligned output. This is equivalent to `\pset recordsep`.

`-s`  
`--single-step`

Run in single-step mode. That means the user is prompted before each command is sent to the server, with the option to cancel execution as well. Use this to debug scripts.

`-S`  
`--single-line`

Runs in single-line mode where a newline terminates an SQL command, as a semicolon does.

### Note

This mode is provided for those who insist on it, but you are not necessarily encouraged to use it. In particular, if you mix SQL and meta-commands on a line the order of execution might not always be clear to the inexperienced user.

`-t`  
`--tuples-only`

Turn off printing of column names and result row count footers, etc. This is equivalent to `\t` or `\pset tuples_only`.

`-T table_options`  
`--table-attr=table_options`

Specifies options to be placed within the HTML `table` tag. See `\pset tableattr` for details.

`-U username`  
`--username=username`

Connect to the database as the user *username* instead of the default. (You must have permission to do so, of course.)

`-v assignment`  
`--set=assignment`  
`--variable=assignment`

Perform a variable assignment, like the `\set` meta-command. Note that you must separate name and value, if any, by an equal sign on the command line. To unset a variable, leave off the equal sign. To set a variable with an empty value, use the equal sign but leave off the value. These assignments are done during command line processing, so variables that reflect connection state will get overwritten later.

`-V`  
`--version`

Print the psql version and exit.

`-w`  
`--no-password`

Never issue a password prompt. If the server requires password authentication and a password is not available from other sources such as a `.pgpass` file, the connection attempt will fail. This option can be useful in batch jobs and scripts where no user is present to enter a password.

Note that this option will remain set for the entire session, and so it affects uses of the meta-command `\connect` as well as the initial connection attempt.

`-W`  
`--password`

Force psql to prompt for a password before connecting to a database, even if the password will not be used.

If the server requires password authentication and a password is not available from other sources such as a `.pgpass` file, psql will prompt for a password in any case. However, psql will waste a connection attempt finding out that the server wants a password. In some cases it is worth typing `-W` to avoid the extra connection attempt.

Note that this option will remain set for the entire session, and so it affects uses of the meta-command `\connect` as well as the initial connection attempt.

`-x`  
`--expanded`

Turn on the expanded table formatting mode. This is equivalent to `\x` or `\pset expanded`.

`-X,`  
`--no-psqlrc`

Do not read the start-up file (neither the system-wide `psqlrc` file nor the user's `~/.psqlrc` file).

`-z`  
`--field-separator-zero`

Set the field separator for unaligned output to a zero byte. This is equivalent to `\pset fieldsep_zero`.

`-0`  
`--record-separator-zero`

Set the record separator for unaligned output to a zero byte. This is useful for interfacing, for example, with `xargs -0`. This is equivalent to `\pset recordsep_zero`.

`-1`  
`--single-transaction`

This option can only be used in combination with one or more `-c` and/or `-f` options. It causes psql to issue a `BEGIN` command before the first such option and a `COMMIT` command after the last one, thereby wrapping all the commands into a single transaction. If any of the commands fails and the variable `ON_ERROR_STOP` was set, a `ROLLBACK` command is sent instead. This ensures that either all the commands complete successfully, or no changes are applied.

If the commands themselves contain `BEGIN`, `COMMIT`, or `ROLLBACK`, this option will not have the desired effects. Also, if an individual command cannot be executed inside a transaction block, specifying this option will cause the whole transaction to fail.

`-?`  
`--help[=topic]`

Show help about psql and exit. The optional *topic* parameter (defaulting to `options`) selects which part of psql is explained: `commands` describes psql's backslash commands; `options` describes the command-line options that can be passed to psql; and `variables` shows help about psql configuration variables.

## Exit Status

psql returns 0 to the shell if it finished normally, 1 if a fatal error of its own occurs (e.g., out of memory, file not found), 2 if the connection to the server went bad and the session was not interactive, and 3 if an error occurred in a script and the variable `ON_ERROR_STOP` was set.

## Usage

### Connecting to a Database

psql is a regular PostgreSQL client application. In order to connect to a database you need to know the name of your target database, the host name and port number of the server, and what database user name you want to connect as. psql can be told about those parameters via command line options, namely `-d`, `-h`, `-p`, and `-U` respectively. If an argument is found that does not belong to any option it will be interpreted as the database name (or the database user name, if the database name is already given). Not all of these options are required; there are useful defaults. If you omit the host name, psql will connect via a Unix-domain socket to a server on the local host, or via TCP/IP to `localhost` on Windows. The default port number is determined at compile time. Since the database server uses the same default, you will not have to specify the port in most cases. The default database user name is your operating-system user name. Once the database user name is determined, it is used as the default database name. Note that you cannot just connect to any database under any database user name. Your database administrator should have informed you about your access rights.

When the defaults aren't quite right, you can save yourself some typing by setting the environment variables `PGDATABASE`, `PGHOST`, `PGPORT` and/or `PGUSER` to appropriate values. (For additional environment variables, see Section 34.15.) It is also convenient to have a `~/.pgpass` file to avoid regularly having to type in passwords. See Section 34.16 for more information.

An alternative way to specify connection parameters is in a *conninfo* string or a URI, which is used instead of a database name. This mechanism give you very wide control over the connection. For example:

```
$ psql "service=myservice sslmode=require"
$ psql postgresql://dbmaster:5433/mydb?sslmode=require
```

This way you can also use LDAP for connection parameter lookup as described in Section 34.18. See Section 34.1.2 for more information on all the available connection options.

If the connection could not be made for any reason (e.g., insufficient privileges, server is not running on the targeted host, etc.), psql will return an error and terminate.

If both standard input and standard output are a terminal, then psql sets the client encoding to “auto”, which will detect the appropriate client encoding from the locale settings (`LC_CTYPE` environment variable on Unix systems). If this doesn't work out as expected, the client encoding can be overridden using the environment variable `PGCLIENTENCODING`.

### Entering SQL Commands

In normal operation, psql provides a prompt with the name of the database to which psql is currently connected, followed by the string `=>`. For example:

```
$ psql testdb
psql (16.2)
Type "help" for help.

testdb=>
```

At the prompt, the user can type in SQL commands. Ordinarily, input lines are sent to the server when a command-terminating semicolon is reached. An end of line does not terminate a command. Thus commands can be spread over several lines for clarity. If the command was sent and executed without error, the results of the command are displayed on the screen.

If untrusted users have access to a database that has not adopted a secure schema usage pattern, begin your session by removing publicly-writable schemas from `search_path`. One can add `options=-csearch_path=` to the connection string or issue `SELECT pg_catalog.set_config('search_path', '', false)` before other SQL commands. This consideration is not specific to psql; it applies to every interface for executing arbitrary SQL commands.

Whenever a command is executed, psql also polls for asynchronous notification events generated by `LISTEN` and `NOTIFY`.

While C-style block comments are passed to the server for processing and removal, SQL-standard comments are removed by psql.

## Meta-Commands

Anything you enter in psql that begins with an unquoted backslash is a psql meta-command that is processed by psql itself. These commands make psql more useful for administration or scripting. Meta-commands are often called slash or backslash commands.

The format of a psql command is the backslash, followed immediately by a command verb, then any arguments. The arguments are separated from the command verb and each other by any number of whitespace characters.

To include whitespace in an argument you can quote it with single quotes. To include a single quote in an argument, write two single quotes within single-quoted text. Anything contained in single quotes is furthermore subject to C-like substitutions for `\n` (new line), `\t` (tab), `\b` (backspace), `\r` (carriage return), `\f` (form feed), `\digits` (octal), and `\xdigits` (hexadecimal). A backslash preceding any other character within single-quoted text quotes that single character, whatever it is.

If an unquoted colon (`:`) followed by a psql variable name appears within an argument, it is replaced by the variable's value, as described in SQL Interpolation below. The forms `: 'variable_name'` and `: "variable_name"` described there work as well. The `: {?variable_name}` syntax allows testing whether a variable is defined. It is substituted by `TRUE` or `FALSE`. Escaping the colon with a backslash protects it from substitution.

Within an argument, text that is enclosed in backquotes (```) is taken as a command line that is passed to the shell. The output of the command (with any trailing newline removed) replaces the backquoted text. Within the text enclosed in backquotes, no special quoting or other processing occurs, except that appearances of `:variable_name` where `variable_name` is a psql variable name are replaced by the variable's value. Also, appearances of `: 'variable_name'` are replaced by the variable's value suitably quoted to become a single shell command argument. (The latter form is almost always preferable, unless you are very sure of what is in the variable.) Because carriage return and line feed characters cannot be safely quoted on all platforms, the `: 'variable_name'` form prints an error message and does not substitute the variable value when such characters appear in the value.

Some commands take an SQL identifier (such as a table name) as argument. These arguments follow the syntax rules of SQL: Unquoted letters are forced to lowercase, while double quotes (`"`) protect letters from case conversion and allow incorporation of whitespace into the identifier. Within double quotes, paired double quotes reduce to a single double quote in the resulting name. For example, `FOO"BAR"BAZ` is interpreted as `fooBARbaz`, and `"A weird" " name"` becomes `A weird" name"`.

Parsing for arguments stops at the end of the line, or when another unquoted backslash is found. An unquoted backslash is taken as the beginning of a new meta-command. The special sequence `\\` (two backslashes) marks the end of arguments and continues parsing SQL commands, if any. That way

SQL and psql commands can be freely mixed on a line. But in any case, the arguments of a meta-command cannot continue beyond the end of the line.

Many of the meta-commands act on the *current query buffer*. This is simply a buffer holding whatever SQL command text has been typed but not yet sent to the server for execution. This will include previous input lines as well as any text appearing before the meta-command on the same line.

The following meta-commands are defined:

`\a`

If the current table output format is unaligned, it is switched to aligned. If it is not unaligned, it is set to unaligned. This command is kept for backwards compatibility. See `\pset` for a more general solution.

`\bind [parameter] ...`

Sets query parameters for the next query execution, with the specified parameters passed for any parameter placeholders (\$1 etc.).

Example:

```
INSERT INTO tbl1 VALUES ($1, $2) \bind 'first value' 'second
value' \g
```

This also works for query-execution commands besides `\g`, such as `\gx` and `\gset`.

This command causes the extended query protocol (see Section 55.1.2) to be used, unlike normal psql operation, which uses the simple query protocol. So this command can be useful to test the extended query protocol from psql. (The extended query protocol is used even if the query has no parameters and this command specifies zero parameters.) This command affects only the next query executed; all subsequent queries will use the simple query protocol by default.

`\c` or `\connect [ -reuse-previous=on/off ] [ dbname [ username ] [ host  
[ port ] | conninfo ]`

Establishes a new connection to a PostgreSQL server. The connection parameters to use can be specified either using a positional syntax (one or more of database name, user, host, and port), or using a *conninfo* connection string as detailed in Section 34.1.1. If no arguments are given, a new connection is made using the same parameters as before.

Specifying any of *dbname*, *username*, *host* or *port* as `-` is equivalent to omitting that parameter.

The new connection can re-use connection parameters from the previous connection; not only database name, user, host, and port, but other settings such as *sslmode*. By default, parameters are re-used in the positional syntax, but not when a *conninfo* string is given. Passing a first argument of `-reuse-previous=on` or `-reuse-previous=off` overrides that default. If parameters are re-used, then any parameter not explicitly specified as a positional parameter or in the *conninfo* string is taken from the existing connection's parameters. An exception is that if the *host* setting is changed from its previous value using the positional syntax, any *hostaddr* setting present in the existing connection's parameters is dropped. Also, any password used for the existing connection will be re-used only if the user, host, and port settings are not changed. When the command neither specifies nor reuses a particular parameter, the libpq default is used.

If the new connection is successfully made, the previous connection is closed. If the connection attempt fails (wrong user name, access denied, etc.), the previous connection will be kept if psql is in interactive mode. But when executing a non-interactive script, the old connection is closed and an error is reported. That may or may not terminate the script; if it does not, all database-accessing



commands will fail until another `\connect` command is successfully executed. This distinction was chosen as a user convenience against typos on the one hand, and a safety mechanism that scripts are not accidentally acting on the wrong database on the other hand. Note that whenever a `\connect` command attempts to re-use parameters, the values re-used are those of the last successful connection, not of any failed attempts made subsequently. However, in the case of a non-interactive `\connect` failure, no parameters are allowed to be re-used later, since the script would likely be expecting the values from the failed `\connect` to be re-used.

Examples:

```
=> \c mydb myuser host.dom 6432
=> \c service=foo
=> \c "host=localhost port=5432 dbname=mydb connect_timeout=10
    sslmode=disable"
=> \c -reuse-previous=on sslmode=require      -- changes only
    sslmode
=> \c postgresql://tom@localhost/mydb?application_name=myapp
```

`\C [ title ]`

Sets the title of any tables being printed as the result of a query or unset any such title. This command is equivalent to `\pset title title`. (The name of this command derives from “caption”, as it was previously only used to set the caption in an HTML table.)

`\cd [ directory ]`

Changes the current working directory to *directory*. Without argument, changes to the current user's home directory.

### Tip

To print your current working directory, use `\! pwd`.

`\conninfo`

Outputs information about the current database connection.

```
\copy { table [ ( column_list ) ] } from { 'filename' | program
'command' | stdin | pstdin } [ [ with ] ( option [, ...] ) ] [ where
condition ]
\copy { table [ ( column_list ) ] | ( query ) } to { 'filename' |
program 'command' | stdout | pstdout } [ [ with ] ( option [, ...] ) ]
```

Performs a frontend (client) copy. This is an operation that runs an SQL `COPY` command, but instead of the server reading or writing the specified file, psql reads or writes the file and routes the data between the server and the local file system. This means that file accessibility and privileges are those of the local user, not the server, and no SQL superuser privileges are required.

When *program* is specified, *command* is executed by psql and the data passed from or to *command* is routed between the server and the client. Again, the execution privileges are those of the local user, not the server, and no SQL superuser privileges are required.

For `\copy ... from stdin`, data rows are read from the same source that issued the command, continuing until `\.` is read or the stream reaches EOF. This option is useful for populating tables in-line within an SQL script file. For `\copy ... to stdout`, output is sent to the same place as psql command output, and the `COPY count` command status is not printed (since

it might be confused with a data row). To read/write psql's standard input or output regardless of the current command source or `\o` option, write `from pstdin` or `to pstdout`.

The syntax of this command is similar to that of the SQL `COPY` command. All options other than the data source/destination are as specified for `COPY`. Because of this, special parsing rules apply to the `\copy` meta-command. Unlike most other meta-commands, the entire remainder of the line is always taken to be the arguments of `\copy`, and neither variable interpolation nor backquote expansion are performed in the arguments.

### Tip

Another way to obtain the same result as `\copy ... to` is to use the SQL `COPY ... TO STDOUT` command and terminate it with `\g filename` or `\g |program`. Unlike `\copy`, this method allows the command to span multiple lines; also, variable interpolation and backquote expansion can be used.

### Tip

These operations are not as efficient as the SQL `COPY` command with a file or program data source or destination, because all data must pass through the client/server connection. For large amounts of data the SQL command might be preferable. Also, because of this pass-through method, `\copy ... from` in CSV mode will erroneously treat a `\.` data value alone on a line as an end-of-input marker.

## `\copyright`

Shows the copyright and distribution terms of PostgreSQL.

## `\crosstabview [ colV [ colH [ colD [ sortcolH ] ] ] ]`

Executes the current query buffer (like `\g`) and shows the results in a crosstab grid. The query must return at least three columns. The output column identified by `colV` becomes a vertical header and the output column identified by `colH` becomes a horizontal header. `colD` identifies the output column to display within the grid. `sortcolH` identifies an optional sort column for the horizontal header.

Each column specification can be a column number (starting at 1) or a column name. The usual SQL case folding and quoting rules apply to column names. If omitted, `colV` is taken as column 1 and `colH` as column 2. `colH` must differ from `colV`. If `colD` is not specified, then there must be exactly three columns in the query result, and the column that is neither `colV` nor `colH` is taken to be `colD`.

The vertical header, displayed as the leftmost column, contains the values found in column `colV`, in the same order as in the query results, but with duplicates removed.

The horizontal header, displayed as the first row, contains the values found in column `colH`, with duplicates removed. By default, these appear in the same order as in the query results. But if the optional `sortcolH` argument is given, it identifies a column whose values must be integer numbers, and the values from `colH` will appear in the horizontal header sorted according to the corresponding `sortcolH` values.

Inside the crosstab grid, for each distinct value `x` of `colH` and each distinct value `y` of `colV`, the cell located at the intersection `(x, y)` contains the value of the `colD` column in the query result row for which the value of `colH` is `x` and the value of `colV` is `y`. If there is no such row, the cell is empty. If there are multiple such rows, an error is reported.

`\d[S+] [ pattern ]`

For each relation (table, view, materialized view, index, sequence, or foreign table) or composite type matching the *pattern*, show all columns, their types, the tablespace (if not the default) and any special attributes such as NOT NULL or defaults. Associated indexes, constraints, rules, and triggers are also shown. For foreign tables, the associated foreign server is shown as well. (“Matching the pattern” is defined in Patterns below.)

For some types of relation, `\d` shows additional information for each column: column values for sequences, indexed expressions for indexes, and foreign data wrapper options for foreign tables.

The command form `\d+` is identical, except that more information is displayed: any comments associated with the columns of the table are shown, as is the presence of OIDs in the table, the view definition if the relation is a view, a non-default replica identity setting and the access method name if the relation has an access method.

By default, only user-created objects are shown; supply a pattern or the *S* modifier to include system objects.

### Note

If `\d` is used without a *pattern* argument, it is equivalent to `\dtvmsE` which will show a list of all visible tables, views, materialized views, sequences and foreign tables. This is purely a convenience measure.

`\da[S] [ pattern ]`

Lists aggregate functions, together with their return type and the data types they operate on. If *pattern* is specified, only aggregates whose names match the pattern are shown. By default, only user-created objects are shown; supply a pattern or the *S* modifier to include system objects.

`\dA[+] [ pattern ]`

Lists access methods. If *pattern* is specified, only access methods whose names match the pattern are shown. If *+* is appended to the command name, each access method is listed with its associated handler function and description.

`\dAc[+] [ access-method-pattern [ input-type-pattern ] ]`

Lists operator classes (see Section 38.16.1). If *access-method-pattern* is specified, only operator classes associated with access methods whose names match that pattern are listed. If *input-type-pattern* is specified, only operator classes associated with input types whose names match that pattern are listed. If *+* is appended to the command name, each operator class is listed with its associated operator family and owner.

`\dAf[+] [ access-method-pattern [ input-type-pattern ] ]`

Lists operator families (see Section 38.16.5). If *access-method-pattern* is specified, only operator families associated with access methods whose names match that pattern are listed. If *input-type-pattern* is specified, only operator families associated with input types whose names match that pattern are listed. If *+* is appended to the command name, each operator family is listed with its owner.

`\dAo[+] [ access-method-pattern [ operator-family-pattern ] ]`

Lists operators associated with operator families (see Section 38.16.2). If *access-method-pattern* is specified, only members of operator families associated with access methods whose

names match that pattern are listed. If *operator-family-pattern* is specified, only members of operator families whose names match that pattern are listed. If + is appended to the command name, each operator is listed with its sort operator family (if it is an ordering operator).

`\dAp[+] [access-method-pattern [operator-family-pattern]]`

Lists support functions associated with operator families (see Section 38.16.3). If *access-method-pattern* is specified, only functions of operator families associated with access methods whose names match that pattern are listed. If *operator-family-pattern* is specified, only functions of operator families whose names match that pattern are listed. If + is appended to the command name, functions are displayed verbosely, with their actual parameter lists.

`\db[+] [ pattern ]`

Lists tablespaces. If *pattern* is specified, only tablespaces whose names match the pattern are shown. If + is appended to the command name, each tablespace is listed with its associated options, on-disk size, permissions and description.

`\dc[S+] [ pattern ]`

Lists conversions between character-set encodings. If *pattern* is specified, only conversions whose names match the pattern are listed. By default, only user-created objects are shown; supply a pattern or the *S* modifier to include system objects. If + is appended to the command name, each object is listed with its associated description.

`\dconfig[+] [ pattern ]`

Lists server configuration parameters and their values. If *pattern* is specified, only parameters whose names match the pattern are listed. Without a *pattern*, only parameters that are set to non-default values are listed. (Use `\dconfig *` to see all parameters.) If + is appended to the command name, each parameter is listed with its data type, context in which the parameter can be set, and access privileges (if non-default access privileges have been granted).

`\dC[+] [ pattern ]`

Lists type casts. If *pattern* is specified, only casts whose source or target types match the pattern are listed. If + is appended to the command name, each object is listed with its associated description.

`\dd[S] [ pattern ]`

Shows the descriptions of objects of type constraint, operator class, operator family, rule, and trigger. All other comments may be viewed by the respective backslash commands for those object types.

`\dd` displays descriptions for objects matching the *pattern*, or of visible objects of the appropriate type if no argument is given. But in either case, only objects that have a description are listed. By default, only user-created objects are shown; supply a pattern or the *S* modifier to include system objects.

Descriptions for objects can be created with the `COMMENT SQL` command.

`\dD[S+] [ pattern ]`

Lists domains. If *pattern* is specified, only domains whose names match the pattern are shown. By default, only user-created objects are shown; supply a pattern or the *S* modifier to include system objects. If + is appended to the command name, each object is listed with its associated permissions and description.

`\ddp [ pattern ]`

Lists default access privilege settings. An entry is shown for each role (and schema, if applicable) for which the default privilege settings have been changed from the built-in defaults. If *pattern* is specified, only entries whose role name or schema name matches the pattern are listed.

The `ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES` command is used to set default access privileges. The meaning of the privilege display is explained in Section 5.7.

`\dE[S+] [ pattern ]`

`\di[S+] [ pattern ]`

`\dm[S+] [ pattern ]`

`\ds[S+] [ pattern ]`

`\dt[S+] [ pattern ]`

`\dv[S+] [ pattern ]`

In this group of commands, the letters *E*, *i*, *m*, *s*, *t*, and *v* stand for foreign table, index, materialized view, sequence, table, and view, respectively. You can specify any or all of these letters, in any order, to obtain a listing of objects of these types. For example, `\dt i` lists tables and indexes. If *+* is appended to the command name, each object is listed with its persistence status (permanent, temporary, or unlogged), physical size on disk, and associated description if any. If *pattern* is specified, only objects whose names match the pattern are listed. By default, only user-created objects are shown; supply a pattern or the *S* modifier to include system objects.

`\des[+] [ pattern ]`

Lists foreign servers (mnemonic: “external servers”). If *pattern* is specified, only those servers whose name matches the pattern are listed. If the form `\des+` is used, a full description of each server is shown, including the server’s access privileges, type, version, options, and description.

`\det[+] [ pattern ]`

Lists foreign tables (mnemonic: “external tables”). If *pattern* is specified, only entries whose table name or schema name matches the pattern are listed. If the form `\det+` is used, generic options and the foreign table description are also displayed.

`\deu[+] [ pattern ]`

Lists user mappings (mnemonic: “external users”). If *pattern* is specified, only those mappings whose user names match the pattern are listed. If the form `\deu+` is used, additional information about each mapping is shown.

### Caution

`\deu+` might also display the user name and password of the remote user, so care should be taken not to disclose them.

`\dew[+] [ pattern ]`

Lists foreign-data wrappers (mnemonic: “external wrappers”). If *pattern* is specified, only those foreign-data wrappers whose name matches the pattern are listed. If the form `\dew+` is used, the access privileges, options, and description of the foreign-data wrapper are also shown.

`\df[anptwS+] [ pattern [ arg_pattern ... ] ]`

Lists functions, together with their result data types, argument data types, and function types, which are classified as “agg” (aggregate), “normal”, “procedure”, “trigger”, or “window”. To display only functions of specific type(s), add the corresponding letters *a*, *n*, *p*, *t*, or *w* to the

command. If *pattern* is specified, only functions whose names match the pattern are shown. Any additional arguments are type-name patterns, which are matched to the type names of the first, second, and so on arguments of the function. (Matching functions can have more arguments than what you specify. To prevent that, write a dash - as the last *arg\_pattern*.) By default, only user-created objects are shown; supply a pattern or the *S* modifier to include system objects. If the form `\df+` is used, additional information about each function is shown, including volatility, parallel safety, owner, security classification, access privileges, language, internal name (for C and internal functions only), and description. Source code for a specific function can be seen using `\sf`.

`\dF[+] [ pattern ]`

Lists text search configurations. If *pattern* is specified, only configurations whose names match the pattern are shown. If the form `\dF+` is used, a full description of each configuration is shown, including the underlying text search parser and the dictionary list for each parser token type.

`\dFd[+] [ pattern ]`

Lists text search dictionaries. If *pattern* is specified, only dictionaries whose names match the pattern are shown. If the form `\dFd+` is used, additional information is shown about each selected dictionary, including the underlying text search template and the option values.

`\dFp[+] [ pattern ]`

Lists text search parsers. If *pattern* is specified, only parsers whose names match the pattern are shown. If the form `\dFp+` is used, a full description of each parser is shown, including the underlying functions and the list of recognized token types.

`\dFt[+] [ pattern ]`

Lists text search templates. If *pattern* is specified, only templates whose names match the pattern are shown. If the form `\dFt+` is used, additional information is shown about each template, including the underlying function names.

`\dg[S+] [ pattern ]`

Lists database roles. (Since the concepts of “users” and “groups” have been unified into “roles”, this command is now equivalent to `\du`.) By default, only user-created roles are shown; supply the *S* modifier to include system roles. If *pattern* is specified, only those roles whose names match the pattern are listed. If the form `\dg+` is used, additional information is shown about each role; currently this adds the comment for each role.

`\dl[+]`

This is an alias for `\lo_list`, which shows a list of large objects. If *+* is appended to the command name, each large object is listed with its associated permissions, if any.

`\dL[S+] [ pattern ]`

Lists procedural languages. If *pattern* is specified, only languages whose names match the pattern are listed. By default, only user-created languages are shown; supply the *S* modifier to include system objects. If *+* is appended to the command name, each language is listed with its call handler, validator, access privileges, and whether it is a system object.

`\dn[S+] [ pattern ]`

Lists schemas (namespaces). If *pattern* is specified, only schemas whose names match the pattern are listed. By default, only user-created objects are shown; supply a pattern or the *S* modifier to include system objects. If *+* is appended to the command name, each object is listed with its associated permissions and description, if any.

```
\do[S+] [ pattern [ arg_pattern [ arg_pattern ] ] ]
```

Lists operators with their operand and result types. If *pattern* is specified, only operators whose names match the pattern are listed. If one *arg\_pattern* is specified, only prefix operators whose right argument's type name matches that pattern are listed. If two *arg\_patterns* are specified, only binary operators whose argument type names match those patterns are listed. (Alternatively, write *-* for the unused argument of a unary operator.) By default, only user-created objects are shown; supply a pattern or the *S* modifier to include system objects. If *+* is appended to the command name, additional information about each operator is shown, currently just the name of the underlying function.

```
\do[S+] [ pattern ]
```

Lists collations. If *pattern* is specified, only collations whose names match the pattern are listed. By default, only user-created objects are shown; supply a pattern or the *S* modifier to include system objects. If *+* is appended to the command name, each collation is listed with its associated description, if any. Note that only collations usable with the current database's encoding are shown, so the results may vary in different databases of the same installation.

```
\dp[S] [ pattern ]
```

Lists tables, views and sequences with their associated access privileges. If *pattern* is specified, only tables, views and sequences whose names match the pattern are listed. By default only user-created objects are shown; supply a pattern or the *S* modifier to include system objects.

The GRANT and REVOKE commands are used to set access privileges. The meaning of the privilege display is explained in Section 5.7.

```
\dp[itn+] [ pattern ]
```

Lists partitioned relations. If *pattern* is specified, only entries whose name matches the pattern are listed. The modifiers *t* (tables) and *i* (indexes) can be appended to the command, filtering the kind of relations to list. By default, partitioned tables and indexes are listed.

If the modifier *n* (“nested”) is used, or a pattern is specified, then non-root partitioned relations are included, and a column is shown displaying the parent of each partitioned relation.

If *+* is appended to the command name, the sum of the sizes of each relation's partitions is also displayed, along with the relation's description. If *n* is combined with *+*, two sizes are shown: one including the total size of directly-attached leaf partitions, and another showing the total size of all partitions, including indirectly attached sub-partitions.

```
\drds [ role-pattern [ database-pattern ] ]
```

Lists defined configuration settings. These settings can be role-specific, database-specific, or both. *role-pattern* and *database-pattern* are used to select specific roles and databases to list, respectively. If omitted, or if *\** is specified, all settings are listed, including those not role-specific or database-specific, respectively.

The ALTER ROLE and ALTER DATABASE commands are used to define per-role and per-database configuration settings.

```
\drg[S] [ pattern ]
```

Lists information about each granted role membership, including assigned options (ADMIN, INHERIT and/or SET) and grantor. See the GRANT command for information about role memberships.

By default, only grants to user-created roles are shown; supply the *S* modifier to include system roles. If *pattern* is specified, only grants to those roles whose names match the pattern are listed.

`\dRp[+] [ pattern ]`

Lists replication publications. If *pattern* is specified, only those publications whose names match the pattern are listed. If + is appended to the command name, the tables and schemas associated with each publication are shown as well.

`\dRs[+] [ pattern ]`

Lists replication subscriptions. If *pattern* is specified, only those subscriptions whose names match the pattern are listed. If + is appended to the command name, additional properties of the subscriptions are shown.

`\dT[S+] [ pattern ]`

Lists data types. If *pattern* is specified, only types whose names match the pattern are listed. If + is appended to the command name, each type is listed with its internal name and size, its allowed values if it is an enum type, and its associated permissions. By default, only user-created objects are shown; supply a pattern or the S modifier to include system objects.

`\du[S+] [ pattern ]`

Lists database roles. (Since the concepts of “users” and “groups” have been unified into “roles”, this command is now equivalent to `\dgr`.) By default, only user-created roles are shown; supply the S modifier to include system roles. If *pattern* is specified, only those roles whose names match the pattern are listed. If the form `\du+` is used, additional information is shown about each role; currently this adds the comment for each role.

`\dx[+] [ pattern ]`

Lists installed extensions. If *pattern* is specified, only those extensions whose names match the pattern are listed. If the form `\dx+` is used, all the objects belonging to each matching extension are listed.

`\dx [ pattern ]`

Lists extended statistics. If *pattern* is specified, only those extended statistics whose names match the pattern are listed.

The status of each kind of extended statistics is shown in a column named after its statistic kind (e.g. Ndistinct). `defined` means that it was requested when creating the statistics, and `NULL` means it wasn't requested. You can use `pg_stats_ext` if you'd like to know whether `ANALYZE` was run and statistics are available to the planner.

`\dy[+] [ pattern ]`

Lists event triggers. If *pattern* is specified, only those event triggers whose names match the pattern are listed. If + is appended to the command name, each object is listed with its associated description.

`\e or \edit [ filename ] [ line_number ]`

If *filename* is specified, the file is edited; after the editor exits, the file's content is copied into the current query buffer. If no *filename* is given, the current query buffer is copied to a temporary file which is then edited in the same fashion. Or, if the current query buffer is empty, the most recently executed query is copied to a temporary file and edited in the same fashion.

If you edit a file or the previous query, and you quit the editor without modifying the file, the query buffer is cleared. Otherwise, the new contents of the query buffer are re-parsed according to the normal rules of psql, treating the whole buffer as a single line. Any complete queries are immediately executed; that is, if the query buffer contains or ends with a semicolon, everything up to that point is executed and removed from the query buffer. Whatever remains in the query buffer is redisplayed. Type semicolon or `\g` to send it, or `\r` to cancel it by clearing the query buffer.



Treating the buffer as a single line primarily affects meta-commands: whatever is in the buffer after a meta-command will be taken as argument(s) to the meta-command, even if it spans multiple lines. (Thus you cannot make meta-command-using scripts this way. Use `\i` for that.)

If a line number is specified, psql will position the cursor on the specified line of the file or query buffer. Note that if a single all-digits argument is given, psql assumes it is a line number, not a file name.

**Tip**

See Environment, below, for how to configure and customize your editor.

```
\echo text [ ... ]
```

Prints the evaluated arguments to standard output, separated by spaces and followed by a newline. This can be useful to intersperse information in the output of scripts. For example:

```
=> \echo `date`  
Tue Oct 26 21:40:57 CEST 1999
```

If the first argument is an unquoted `-n` the trailing newline is not written (nor is the first argument).

**Tip**

If you use the `\o` command to redirect your query output you might wish to use `\qecho` instead of this command. See also `\warn`.

```
\ef [ function_description [ line_number ] ]
```

This command fetches and edits the definition of the named function or procedure, in the form of a `CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION` or `CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE` command. Editing is done in the same way as for `\edit`. If you quit the editor without saving, the statement is discarded. If you save and exit the editor, the updated command is executed immediately if you added a semicolon to it. Otherwise it is redisplayed; type semicolon or `\g` to send it, or `\r` to cancel.

The target function can be specified by name alone, or by name and arguments, for example `foo(integer, text)`. The argument types must be given if there is more than one function of the same name.

If no function is specified, a blank `CREATE FUNCTION` template is presented for editing.

If a line number is specified, psql will position the cursor on the specified line of the function body. (Note that the function body typically does not begin on the first line of the file.)

Unlike most other meta-commands, the entire remainder of the line is always taken to be the argument(s) of `\ef`, and neither variable interpolation nor backquote expansion are performed in the arguments.

**Tip**

See Environment, below, for how to configure and customize your editor.

`\encoding [ encoding ]`

Sets the client character set encoding. Without an argument, this command shows the current encoding.

`\errverbose`

Repeats the most recent server error message at maximum verbosity, as though `VERBOSITY` were set to `verbose` and `SHOW_CONTEXT` were set to `always`.

`\ev [ view_name [ line_number ] ]`

This command fetches and edits the definition of the named view, in the form of a `CREATE` OR `REPLACE VIEW` command. Editing is done in the same way as for `\edit`. If you quit the editor without saving, the statement is discarded. If you save and exit the editor, the updated command is executed immediately if you added a semicolon to it. Otherwise it is redisplayed; type semicolon or `\g` to send it, or `\r` to cancel.

If no view is specified, a blank `CREATE VIEW` template is presented for editing.

If a line number is specified, `psql` will position the cursor on the specified line of the view definition.

Unlike most other meta-commands, the entire remainder of the line is always taken to be the argument(s) of `\ev`, and neither variable interpolation nor backquote expansion are performed in the arguments.

`\f [ string ]`

Sets the field separator for unaligned query output. The default is the vertical bar (`|`). It is equivalent to `\pset fieldsep`.

`\g [ (option=value [...]) ] [ filename ]`  
`\g [ (option=value [...]) ] [ |command ]`

Sends the current query buffer to the server for execution.

If parentheses appear after `\g`, they surround a space-separated list of *option=value* formatting-option clauses, which are interpreted in the same way as `\pset optionvalue` commands, but take effect only for the duration of this query. In this list, spaces are not allowed around `=` signs, but are required between option clauses. If *=value* is omitted, the named *option* is changed in the same way as for `\pset option` with no explicit *value*.

If a *filename* or *|command* argument is given, the query's output is written to the named file or piped to the given shell command, instead of displaying it as usual. The file or command is written to only if the query successfully returns zero or more tuples, not if the query fails or is a non-data-returning SQL command.

If the current query buffer is empty, the most recently sent query is re-executed instead. Except for that behavior, `\g` without any arguments is essentially equivalent to a semicolon. With arguments, `\g` provides a “one-shot” alternative to the `\o` command, and additionally allows one-shot adjustments of the output formatting options normally set by `\pset`.

When the last argument begins with `|`, the entire remainder of the line is taken to be the *command* to execute, and neither variable interpolation nor backquote expansion are performed in it. The rest of the line is simply passed literally to the shell.

`\gdesc`

Shows the description (that is, the column names and data types) of the result of the current query buffer. The query is not actually executed; however, if it contains some type of syntax error, that error will be reported in the normal way.

If the current query buffer is empty, the most recently sent query is described instead.

`\getenv psql_var env_var`

Gets the value of the environment variable *env\_var* and assigns it to the psql variable *psql\_var*. If *env\_var* is not defined in the psql process's environment, *psql\_var* is not changed. Example:

```
=> \getenv home HOME
=> \echo :home
/home/postgres
```

`\gexec`

Sends the current query buffer to the server, then treats each column of each row of the query's output (if any) as an SQL statement to be executed. For example, to create an index on each column of *my\_table*:

```
=> SELECT format('create index on my_table(%I)', attname)
-> FROM pg_attribute
-> WHERE attrelid = 'my_table'::regclass AND attnum > 0
-> ORDER BY attnum
-> \gexec
CREATE INDEX
CREATE INDEX
CREATE INDEX
CREATE INDEX
```

The generated queries are executed in the order in which the rows are returned, and left-to-right within each row if there is more than one column. NULL fields are ignored. The generated queries are sent literally to the server for processing, so they cannot be psql meta-commands nor contain psql variable references. If any individual query fails, execution of the remaining queries continues unless `ON_ERROR_STOP` is set. Execution of each query is subject to ECHO processing. (Setting ECHO to all or queries is often advisable when using `\gexec`.) Query logging, single-step mode, timing, and other query execution features apply to each generated query as well.

If the current query buffer is empty, the most recently sent query is re-executed instead.

`\gset [ prefix ]`

Sends the current query buffer to the server and stores the query's output into psql variables (see Variables below). The query to be executed must return exactly one row. Each column of the row is stored into a separate variable, named the same as the column. For example:

```
=> SELECT 'hello' AS var1, 10 AS var2
-> \gset
=> \echo :var1 :var2
hello 10
```

If you specify a *prefix*, that string is prepended to the query's column names to create the variable names to use:

```
=> SELECT 'hello' AS var1, 10 AS var2
-> \gset result_
=> \echo :result_var1 :result_var2
```

```
hello 10
```

If a column result is NULL, the corresponding variable is unset rather than being set.

If the query fails or does not return one row, no variables are changed.

If the current query buffer is empty, the most recently sent query is re-executed instead.

```
\gx [ (option=value [...]) ] [ filename ]  
\gx [ (option=value [...]) ] [ |command ]
```

`\gx` is equivalent to `\g`, except that it forces expanded output mode for this query, as if `expanded=on` were included in the list of `\pset` options. See also `\x`.

```
\h or \help [ command ]
```

Gives syntax help on the specified SQL command. If *command* is not specified, then psql will list all the commands for which syntax help is available. If *command* is an asterisk (\*), then syntax help on all SQL commands is shown.

Unlike most other meta-commands, the entire remainder of the line is always taken to be the argument(s) of `\help`, and neither variable interpolation nor backquote expansion are performed in the arguments.

### Note

To simplify typing, commands that consists of several words do not have to be quoted. Thus it is fine to type **\help alter table**.

```
\H or \html
```

Turns on HTML query output format. If the HTML format is already on, it is switched back to the default aligned text format. This command is for compatibility and convenience, but see `\pset` about setting other output options.

```
\i or \include filename
```

Reads input from the file *filename* and executes it as though it had been typed on the keyboard.

If *filename* is - (hyphen), then standard input is read until an EOF indication or `\q` meta-command. This can be used to intersperse interactive input with input from files. Note that Readline behavior will be used only if it is active at the outermost level.

### Note

If you want to see the lines on the screen as they are read you must set the variable `ECHO` to `all`.

```
\if expression  
\elif expression  
\else  
\endif
```

This group of commands implements nestable conditional blocks. A conditional block must begin with an `\if` and end with an `\endif`. In between there may be any number of `\elif` clauses,

which may optionally be followed by a single `\else` clause. Ordinary queries and other types of backslash commands may (and usually do) appear between the commands forming a conditional block.

The `\if` and `\elif` commands read their argument(s) and evaluate them as a Boolean expression. If the expression yields `true` then processing continues normally; otherwise, lines are skipped until a matching `\elif`, `\else`, or `\endif` is reached. Once an `\if` or `\elif` test has succeeded, the arguments of later `\elif` commands in the same block are not evaluated but are treated as false. Lines following an `\else` are processed only if no earlier matching `\if` or `\elif` succeeded.

The *expression* argument of an `\if` or `\elif` command is subject to variable interpolation and backquote expansion, just like any other backslash command argument. After that it is evaluated like the value of an on/off option variable. So a valid value is any unambiguous case-insensitive match for one of: `true`, `false`, `1`, `0`, `on`, `off`, `yes`, `no`. For example, `t`, `T`, and `tR` will all be considered to be `true`.

Expressions that do not properly evaluate to `true` or `false` will generate a warning and be treated as `false`.

Lines being skipped are parsed normally to identify queries and backslash commands, but queries are not sent to the server, and backslash commands other than conditionals (`\if`, `\elif`, `\else`, `\endif`) are ignored. Conditional commands are checked only for valid nesting. Variable references in skipped lines are not expanded, and backquote expansion is not performed either.

All the backslash commands of a given conditional block must appear in the same source file. If EOF is reached on the main input file or an `\include`-ed file before all local `\if`-blocks have been closed, then `psql` will raise an error.

Here is an example:

```
-- check for the existence of two separate records in the
-- database and store
-- the results in separate psql variables
SELECT
    EXISTS(SELECT 1 FROM customer WHERE customer_id = 123) as
    is_customer,
    EXISTS(SELECT 1 FROM employee WHERE employee_id = 456) as
    is_employee
\gset
\if :is_customer
    SELECT * FROM customer WHERE customer_id = 123;
\elif :is_employee
    \echo 'is not a customer but is an employee'
    SELECT * FROM employee WHERE employee_id = 456;
\else
    \if yes
        \echo 'not a customer or employee'
    \else
        \echo 'this will never print'
    \endif
\endif
```

`\ir` or `\include_relative filename`

The `\ir` command is similar to `\i`, but resolves relative file names differently. When executing in interactive mode, the two commands behave identically. However, when invoked from a script, `\ir` interprets file names relative to the directory in which the script is located, rather than the current working directory.

```
\l[+] or \list[+] [ pattern ]
```

List the databases in the server and show their names, owners, character set encodings, and access privileges. If *pattern* is specified, only databases whose names match the pattern are listed. If + is appended to the command name, database sizes, default tablespaces, and descriptions are also displayed. (Size information is only available for databases that the current user can connect to.)

```
\lo_export loid filename
```

Reads the large object with OID *loid* from the database and writes it to *filename*. Note that this is subtly different from the server function `lo_export`, which acts with the permissions of the user that the database server runs as and on the server's file system.

### Tip

Use `\lo_list` to find out the large object's OID.

```
\lo_import filename [ comment ]
```

Stores the file into a PostgreSQL large object. Optionally, it associates the given comment with the object. Example:

```
foo=> \lo_import '/home/peter/pictures/photo.xcf' 'a picture of  
me'  
lo_import 152801
```

The response indicates that the large object received object ID 152801, which can be used to access the newly-created large object in the future. For the sake of readability, it is recommended to always associate a human-readable comment with every object. Both OIDs and comments can be viewed with the `\lo_list` command.

Note that this command is subtly different from the server-side `lo_import` because it acts as the local user on the local file system, rather than the server's user and file system.

```
\lo_list[+]
```

Shows a list of all PostgreSQL large objects currently stored in the database, along with any comments provided for them. If + is appended to the command name, each large object is listed with its associated permissions, if any.

```
\lo_unlink loid
```

Deletes the large object with OID *loid* from the database.

### Tip

Use `\lo_list` to find out the large object's OID.

```
\o or \out [ filename ]
```

```
\o or \out [ |command ]
```

Arranges to save future query results to the file *filename* or pipe future results to the shell command *command*. If no argument is specified, the query output is reset to the standard output.

If the argument begins with |, then the entire remainder of the line is taken to be the *command* to execute, and neither variable interpolation nor backquote expansion are performed in it. The rest of the line is simply passed literally to the shell.

“Query results” includes all tables, command responses, and notices obtained from the database server, as well as output of various backslash commands that query the database (such as `\d`); but not error messages.

**Tip**

To intersperse text output in between query results, use `\qecho`.

`\p` or `\print`

Print the current query buffer to the standard output. If the current query buffer is empty, the most recently executed query is printed instead.

`\password [ username ]`

Changes the password of the specified user (by default, the current user). This command prompts for the new password, encrypts it, and sends it to the server as an `ALTER ROLE` command. This makes sure that the new password does not appear in cleartext in the command history, the server log, or elsewhere.

`\prompt [ text ] name`

Prompts the user to supply text, which is assigned to the variable *name*. An optional prompt string, *text*, can be specified. (For multiword prompts, surround the text with single quotes.)

By default, `\prompt` uses the terminal for input and output. However, if the `-f` command line switch was used, `\prompt` uses standard input and standard output.

`\pset [ option [ value ] ]`

This command sets options affecting the output of query result tables. *option* indicates which option is to be set. The semantics of *value* vary depending on the selected option. For some options, omitting *value* causes the option to be toggled or unset, as described under the particular option. If no such behavior is mentioned, then omitting *value* just results in the current setting being displayed.

`\pset` without any arguments displays the current status of all printing options.

Adjustable printing options are:

**border**

The *value* must be a number. In general, the higher the number the more borders and lines the tables will have, but details depend on the particular format. In HTML format, this will translate directly into the `border=...` attribute. In most other formats only values 0 (no border), 1 (internal dividing lines), and 2 (table frame) make sense, and values above 2 will be treated the same as `border = 2`. The `latex` and `latex-longtable` formats additionally allow a value of 3 to add dividing lines between data rows.

**columns**

Sets the target width for the `wrapped` format, and also the width limit for determining whether output is wide enough to require the pager or switch to the vertical display in expanded auto mode. Zero (the default) causes the target width to be controlled by the environment variable `COLUMNS`, or the detected screen width if `COLUMNS` is not set. In addition, if `columns` is zero then the `wrapped` format only affects screen output. If `columns` is nonzero then file and pipe output is wrapped to that width as well.

`csv_fieldsep`

Specifies the field separator to be used in CSV output format. If the separator character appears in a field's value, that field is output within double quotes, following standard CSV rules. The default is a comma.

`expanded (or x)`

If *value* is specified it must be either `on` or `off`, which will enable or disable expanded mode, or `auto`. If *value* is omitted the command toggles between the on and off settings. When expanded mode is enabled, query results are displayed in two columns, with the column name on the left and the data on the right. This mode is useful if the data wouldn't fit on the screen in the normal "horizontal" mode. In the auto setting, the expanded mode is used whenever the query output has more than one column and is wider than the screen; otherwise, the regular mode is used. The auto setting is only effective in the aligned and wrapped formats. In other formats, it always behaves as if the expanded mode is off.

`fieldsep`

Specifies the field separator to be used in unaligned output format. That way one can create, for example, tab-separated output, which other programs might prefer. To set a tab as field separator, type `\pset fieldsep '\t'`. The default field separator is `'|'` (a vertical bar).

`fieldsep_zero`

Sets the field separator to use in unaligned output format to a zero byte.

`footer`

If *value* is specified it must be either `on` or `off` which will enable or disable display of the table footer (the `(n rows)` count). If *value* is omitted the command toggles footer display on or off.

`format`

Sets the output format to one of `aligned`, `asciidoc`, `csv`, `html`, `latex`, `latex-longtable`, `troff-ms`, `unaligned`, or `wrapped`. Unique abbreviations are allowed.

`aligned` format is the standard, human-readable, nicely formatted text output; this is the default.

`unaligned` format writes all columns of a row on one line, separated by the currently active field separator. This is useful for creating output that might be intended to be read in by other programs, for example, tab-separated or comma-separated format. However, the field separator character is not treated specially if it appears in a column's value; so CSV format may be better suited for such purposes.

`csv` format writes column values separated by commas, applying the quoting rules described in RFC 4180<sup>1</sup>. This output is compatible with the CSV format of the server's `COPY` command. A header line with column names is generated unless the `tuples_only` parameter is on. Titles and footers are not printed. Each row is terminated by the system-dependent end-of-line character, which is typically a single newline (`\n`) for Unix-like systems or a carriage return and newline sequence (`\r\n`) for Microsoft Windows. Field separator characters other than comma can be selected with `\pset csv_fieldsep`.

`wrapped` format is like `aligned` but wraps wide data values across lines to make the output fit in the target column width. The target width is determined as described under the

---

<sup>1</sup> <https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc4180>



`columns` option. Note that `psql` will not attempt to wrap column header titles; therefore, wrapped format behaves the same as `aligned` if the total width needed for column headers exceeds the target.

The `asciidoc`, `html`, `latex`, `latex-longtable`, and `troff-ms` formats put out tables that are intended to be included in documents using the respective mark-up language. They are not complete documents! This might not be necessary in HTML, but in LaTeX you must have a complete document wrapper. The `latex` format uses LaTeX's `tabular` environment. The `latex-longtable` format requires the LaTeX `longtable` and `booktabs` packages.

#### `linestyle`

Sets the border line drawing style to one of `ascii`, `old-ascii`, or `unicode`. Unique abbreviations are allowed. (That would mean one letter is enough.) The default setting is `ascii`. This option only affects the `aligned` and `wrapped` output formats.

`ascii` style uses plain ASCII characters. Newlines in data are shown using a `+` symbol in the right-hand margin. When the `wrapped` format wraps data from one line to the next without a newline character, a dot (`.`) is shown in the right-hand margin of the first line, and again in the left-hand margin of the following line.

`old-ascii` style uses plain ASCII characters, using the formatting style used in PostgreSQL 8.4 and earlier. Newlines in data are shown using a `:` symbol in place of the left-hand column separator. When the data is wrapped from one line to the next without a newline character, a `;` symbol is used in place of the left-hand column separator.

`unicode` style uses Unicode box-drawing characters. Newlines in data are shown using a carriage return symbol in the right-hand margin. When the data is wrapped from one line to the next without a newline character, an ellipsis symbol is shown in the right-hand margin of the first line, and again in the left-hand margin of the following line.

When the `border` setting is greater than zero, the `linestyle` option also determines the characters with which the border lines are drawn. Plain ASCII characters work everywhere, but Unicode characters look nicer on displays that recognize them.

#### `null`

Sets the string to be printed in place of a null value. The default is to print nothing, which can easily be mistaken for an empty string. For example, one might prefer `\pset null '(null)'`.

#### `numericlocale`

If *value* is specified it must be either `on` or `off` which will enable or disable display of a locale-specific character to separate groups of digits to the left of the decimal marker. If *value* is omitted the command toggles between regular and locale-specific numeric output.

#### `pager`

Controls use of a pager program for query and `psql` help output. When the `pager` option is `off`, the pager program is not used. When the `pager` option is `on`, the pager is used when appropriate, i.e., when the output is to a terminal and will not fit on the screen. The `pager` option can also be set to `always`, which causes the pager to be used for all terminal output regardless of whether it fits on the screen. `\pset pager` without a *value* toggles pager use on and off.

If the environment variable `PSQL_PAGER` or `PAGER` is set, output to be paged is piped to the specified program. Otherwise a platform-dependent default program (such as `more`) is used.

When using the `\watch` command to execute a query repeatedly, the environment variable `PSQL_WATCH_PAGER` is used to find the pager program instead, on Unix systems. This is configured separately because it may confuse traditional pagers, but can be used to send output to tools that understand psql's output format (such as `pspg --stream`).

#### `pager_min_lines`

If `pager_min_lines` is set to a number greater than the page height, the pager program will not be called unless there are at least this many lines of output to show. The default setting is 0.

#### `recordsep`

Specifies the record (line) separator to use in unaligned output format. The default is a newline character.

#### `recordsep_zero`

Sets the record separator to use in unaligned output format to a zero byte.

#### `tableattr` (or `T`)

In HTML format, this specifies attributes to be placed inside the `table` tag. This could for example be `cellpadding` or `bgcolor`. Note that you probably don't want to specify `border` here, as that is already taken care of by `\pset border`. If no *value* is given, the table attributes are unset.

In `latex-longtable` format, this controls the proportional width of each column containing a left-aligned data type. It is specified as a whitespace-separated list of values, e.g., `'0.2 0.2 0.6'`. Unspecified output columns use the last specified value.

#### `title` (or `C`)

Sets the table title for any subsequently printed tables. This can be used to give your output descriptive tags. If no *value* is given, the title is unset.

#### `tuples_only` (or `t`)

If *value* is specified it must be either `on` or `off` which will enable or disable tuples-only mode. If *value* is omitted the command toggles between regular and tuples-only output. Regular output includes extra information such as column headers, titles, and various footers. In tuples-only mode, only actual table data is shown.

#### `unicode_border_linestyle`

Sets the border drawing style for the unicode line style to one of `single` or `double`.

#### `unicode_column_linestyle`

Sets the column drawing style for the unicode line style to one of `single` or `double`.

#### `unicode_header_linestyle`

Sets the header drawing style for the unicode line style to one of `single` or `double`.

#### `xheader_width`

Sets the maximum width of the header for expanded output to one of `full` (the default value), `column`, `page`, or an *integer value*.

`full`: the expanded header is not truncated, and will be as wide as the widest output line.

*column*: truncate the header line to the width of the first column.

*page*: truncate the header line to the terminal width.

*integer value*: specify the exact maximum width of the header line.

Illustrations of how these different formats look can be seen in Examples, below.

### Tip

There are various shortcut commands for `\pset`. See `\a`, `\C`, `\f`, `\H`, `\t`, `\T`, and `\x`.

`\q` or `\quit`

Quits the psql program. In a script file, only execution of that script is terminated.

`\qecho text [ ... ]`

This command is identical to `\echo` except that the output will be written to the query output channel, as set by `\o`.

`\r` or `\reset`

Resets (clears) the query buffer.

`\s [ filename ]`

Print psql's command line history to *filename*. If *filename* is omitted, the history is written to the standard output (using the pager if appropriate). This command is not available if psql was built without Readline support.

`\set [ name [ value [ ... ] ] ]`

Sets the psql variable *name* to *value*, or if more than one value is given, to the concatenation of all of them. If only one argument is given, the variable is set to an empty-string value. To unset a variable, use the `\unset` command.

`\set` without any arguments displays the names and values of all currently-set psql variables.

Valid variable names can contain letters, digits, and underscores. See Variables below for details. Variable names are case-sensitive.

Certain variables are special, in that they control psql's behavior or are automatically set to reflect connection state. These variables are documented in Variables, below.

### Note

This command is unrelated to the SQL command SET.

`\setenv name [ value ]`

Sets the environment variable *name* to *value*, or if the *value* is not supplied, unsets the environment variable. Example:

```
testdb=> \setenv PAGER less
```

```
testdb=> \setenv LESS -imx4F
```

`\sf[+] function_description`

This command fetches and shows the definition of the named function or procedure, in the form of a `CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION` or `CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE` command. The definition is printed to the current query output channel, as set by `\o`.

The target function can be specified by name alone, or by name and arguments, for example `foo(integer, text)`. The argument types must be given if there is more than one function of the same name.

If `+` is appended to the command name, then the output lines are numbered, with the first line of the function body being line 1.

Unlike most other meta-commands, the entire remainder of the line is always taken to be the argument(s) of `\sf`, and neither variable interpolation nor backquote expansion are performed in the arguments.

`\sv[+] view_name`

This command fetches and shows the definition of the named view, in the form of a `CREATE OR REPLACE VIEW` command. The definition is printed to the current query output channel, as set by `\o`.

If `+` is appended to the command name, then the output lines are numbered from 1.

Unlike most other meta-commands, the entire remainder of the line is always taken to be the argument(s) of `\sv`, and neither variable interpolation nor backquote expansion are performed in the arguments.

`\t`

Toggles the display of output column name headings and row count footer. This command is equivalent to `\pset tuples_only` and is provided for convenience.

`\T table_options`

Specifies attributes to be placed within the `table` tag in HTML output format. This command is equivalent to `\pset tableattr table_options`.

`\timing [ on | off ]`

With a parameter, turns displaying of how long each SQL statement takes on or off. Without a parameter, toggles the display between on and off. The display is in milliseconds; intervals longer than 1 second are also shown in minutes:seconds format, with hours and days fields added if needed.

`\unset name`

Unsets (deletes) the psql variable *name*.

Most variables that control psql's behavior cannot be unset; instead, an `\unset` command is interpreted as setting them to their default values. See Variables below.

`\w or \write filename`

`\w or \write |command`

Writes the current query buffer to the file *filename* or pipes it to the shell command *command*. If the current query buffer is empty, the most recently executed query is written instead.

If the argument begins with `|`, then the entire remainder of the line is taken to be the *command* to execute, and neither variable interpolation nor backquote expansion are performed in it. The rest of the line is simply passed literally to the shell.

`\warn text [ ... ]`

This command is identical to `\echo` except that the output will be written to psql's standard error channel, rather than standard output.

`\watch [ i[nterval]=seconds ] [ c[ount]=times ] [ seconds ]`

Repeatedly execute the current query buffer (as `\g` does) until interrupted, or the query fails, or the execution count limit (if given) is reached. Wait the specified number of seconds (default 2) between executions. For backwards compatibility, *seconds* can be specified with or without an *interval=* prefix. Each query result is displayed with a header that includes the `\pset` title string (if any), the time as of query start, and the delay interval.

If the current query buffer is empty, the most recently sent query is re-executed instead.

`\x [ on | off | auto ]`

Sets or toggles expanded table formatting mode. As such it is equivalent to `\pset expanded`.

`\z[S] [ pattern ]`

Lists tables, views and sequences with their associated access privileges. If a *pattern* is specified, only tables, views and sequences whose names match the pattern are listed. By default only user-created objects are shown; supply a pattern or the *S* modifier to include system objects.

This is an alias for `\dp` ("display privileges").

`\! [ command ]`

With no argument, escapes to a sub-shell; psql resumes when the sub-shell exits. With an argument, executes the shell command *command*.

Unlike most other meta-commands, the entire remainder of the line is always taken to be the argument(s) of `\!`, and neither variable interpolation nor backquote expansion are performed in the arguments. The rest of the line is simply passed literally to the shell.

`\? [ topic ]`

Shows help information. The optional *topic* parameter (defaulting to *commands*) selects which part of psql is explained: *commands* describes psql's backslash commands; *options* describes the command-line options that can be passed to psql; and *variables* shows help about psql configuration variables.

`\;`

Backslash-semicolon is not a meta-command in the same way as the preceding commands; rather, it simply causes a semicolon to be added to the query buffer without any further processing.

Normally, psql will dispatch an SQL command to the server as soon as it reaches the command-ending semicolon, even if more input remains on the current line. Thus for example entering

```
select 1; select 2; select 3;
```

will result in the three SQL commands being individually sent to the server, with each one's results being displayed before continuing to the next command. However, a semicolon entered as `\;` will

not trigger command processing, so that the command before it and the one after are effectively combined and sent to the server in one request. So for example

```
select 1\; select 2\; select 3;
```

results in sending the three SQL commands to the server in a single request, when the non-backslashed semicolon is reached. The server executes such a request as a single transaction, unless there are explicit `BEGIN/COMMIT` commands included in the string to divide it into multiple transactions. (See Section 55.2.2.1 for more details about how the server handles multi-query strings.)

## Patterns

The various `\d` commands accept a *pattern* parameter to specify the object name(s) to be displayed. In the simplest case, a pattern is just the exact name of the object. The characters within a pattern are normally folded to lower case, just as in SQL names; for example, `\dt FOO` will display the table named `foo`. As in SQL names, placing double quotes around a pattern stops folding to lower case. Should you need to include an actual double quote character in a pattern, write it as a pair of double quotes within a double-quote sequence; again this is in accord with the rules for SQL quoted identifiers. For example, `\dt "FOO" "BAR"` will display the table named `FOO"BAR` (not `foo"bar`). Unlike the normal rules for SQL names, you can put double quotes around just part of a pattern, for instance `\dt FOO"FOO"BAR` will display the table named `fooFOObar`.

Whenever the *pattern* parameter is omitted completely, the `\d` commands display all objects that are visible in the current schema search path — this is equivalent to using `*` as the pattern. (An object is said to be *visible* if its containing schema is in the search path and no object of the same kind and name appears earlier in the search path. This is equivalent to the statement that the object can be referenced by name without explicit schema qualification.) To see all objects in the database regardless of visibility, use `*.*` as the pattern.

Within a pattern, `*` matches any sequence of characters (including no characters) and `?` matches any single character. (This notation is comparable to Unix shell file name patterns.) For example, `\dt int*` displays tables whose names begin with `int`. But within double quotes, `*` and `?` lose these special meanings and are just matched literally.

A relation pattern that contains a dot (`.`) is interpreted as a schema name pattern followed by an object name pattern. For example, `\dt foo*.bar*` displays all tables whose table name includes `bar` that are in schemas whose schema name starts with `foo`. When no dot appears, then the pattern matches only objects that are visible in the current schema search path. Again, a dot within double quotes loses its special meaning and is matched literally. A relation pattern that contains two dots (`..`) is interpreted as a database name followed by a schema name pattern followed by an object name pattern. The database name portion will not be treated as a pattern and must match the name of the currently connected database, else an error will be raised.

A schema pattern that contains a dot (`.`) is interpreted as a database name followed by a schema name pattern. For example, `\dn mydb.foo*` displays all schemas whose schema name includes `foo`. The database name portion will not be treated as a pattern and must match the name of the currently connected database, else an error will be raised.

Advanced users can use regular-expression notations such as character classes, for example `[0-9]` to match any digit. All regular expression special characters work as specified in Section 9.7.3, except for `.` which is taken as a separator as mentioned above, `*` which is translated to the regular-expression notation `.`, `?` which is translated to `.`, and `$` which is matched literally. You can emulate these pattern characters at need by writing `?` for `.`, `(R+|)` for `R*`, or `(R|)` for `R?`. `$` is not needed as a regular-expression character since the pattern must match the whole name, unlike the usual interpretation of regular expressions (in other words, `$` is automatically appended to your pattern). Write `*` at the beginning and/or end if you don't wish the pattern to be anchored. Note that within double quotes, all regular expression special characters lose their special meanings and are matched literally.

Also, the regular expression special characters are matched literally in operator name patterns (i.e., the argument of `\do`).

## Advanced Features

### Variables

psql provides variable substitution features similar to common Unix command shells. Variables are simply name/value pairs, where the value can be any string of any length. The name must consist of letters (including non-Latin letters), digits, and underscores.

To set a variable, use the psql meta-command `\set`. For example,

```
testdb=> \set foo bar
```

sets the variable `foo` to the value `bar`. To retrieve the content of the variable, precede the name with a colon, for example:

```
testdb=> \echo :foo
bar
```

This works in both regular SQL commands and meta-commands; there is more detail in SQL Interpolation, below.

If you call `\set` without a second argument, the variable is set to an empty-string value. To unset (i.e., delete) a variable, use the command `\unset`. To show the values of all variables, call `\set` without any argument.

#### Note

The arguments of `\set` are subject to the same substitution rules as with other commands. Thus you can construct interesting references such as `\set :foo 'something'` and get “soft links” or “variable variables” of Perl or PHP fame, respectively. Unfortunately (or fortunately?), there is no way to do anything useful with these constructs. On the other hand, `\set bar :foo` is a perfectly valid way to copy a variable.

A number of these variables are treated specially by psql. They represent certain option settings that can be changed at run time by altering the value of the variable, or in some cases represent changeable state of psql. By convention, all specially treated variables' names consist of all upper-case ASCII letters (and possibly digits and underscores). To ensure maximum compatibility in the future, avoid using such variable names for your own purposes.

Variables that control psql's behavior generally cannot be unset or set to invalid values. An `\unset` command is allowed but is interpreted as setting the variable to its default value. A `\set` command without a second argument is interpreted as setting the variable to `on`, for control variables that accept that value, and is rejected for others. Also, control variables that accept the values `on` and `off` will also accept other common spellings of Boolean values, such as `true` and `false`.

The specially treated variables are:

AUTOCOMMIT

When `on` (the default), each SQL command is automatically committed upon successful completion. To postpone commit in this mode, you must enter a `BEGIN` or `START TRANSACTION` SQL command. When `off` or `unset`, SQL commands are not committed until you explicitly issue

COMMIT or END. The autocommit-off mode works by issuing an implicit BEGIN for you, just before any command that is not already in a transaction block and is not itself a BEGIN or other transaction-control command, nor a command that cannot be executed inside a transaction block (such as VACUUM).

### Note

In autocommit-off mode, you must explicitly abandon any failed transaction by entering ABORT or ROLLBACK. Also keep in mind that if you exit the session without committing, your work will be lost.

### Note

The autocommit-on mode is PostgreSQL's traditional behavior, but autocommit-off is closer to the SQL spec. If you prefer autocommit-off, you might wish to set it in the system-wide psqlrc file or your ~/.psqlrc file.

#### COMP\_KEYWORD\_CASE

Determines which letter case to use when completing an SQL key word. If set to lower or upper, the completed word will be in lower or upper case, respectively. If set to preserve-lower or preserve-upper (the default), the completed word will be in the case of the word already entered, but words being completed without anything entered will be in lower or upper case, respectively.

#### DBNAME

The name of the database you are currently connected to. This is set every time you connect to a database (including program start-up), but can be changed or unset.

#### ECHO

If set to all, all nonempty input lines are printed to standard output as they are read. (This does not apply to lines read interactively.) To select this behavior on program start-up, use the switch -a. If set to queries, psql prints each query to standard output as it is sent to the server. The switch to select this behavior is -e. If set to errors, then only failed queries are displayed on standard error output. The switch for this behavior is -b. If set to none (the default), then no queries are displayed.

#### ECHO\_HIDDEN

When this variable is set to on and a backslash command queries the database, the query is first shown. This feature helps you to study PostgreSQL internals and provide similar functionality in your own programs. (To select this behavior on program start-up, use the switch -E.) If you set this variable to the value noexec, the queries are just shown but are not actually sent to the server and executed. The default value is off.

#### ENCODING

The current client character set encoding. This is set every time you connect to a database (including program start-up), and when you change the encoding with \encoding, but it can be changed or unset.

#### ERROR

true if the last SQL query failed, false if it succeeded. See also SQLSTATE.



**FETCH\_COUNT**

If this variable is set to an integer value greater than zero, the results of `SELECT` queries are fetched and displayed in groups of that many rows, rather than the default behavior of collecting the entire result set before display. Therefore only a limited amount of memory is used, regardless of the size of the result set. Settings of 100 to 1000 are commonly used when enabling this feature. Keep in mind that when using this feature, a query might fail after having already displayed some rows.

**Tip**

Although you can use any output format with this feature, the default `aligned` format tends to look bad because each group of `FETCH_COUNT` rows will be formatted separately, leading to varying column widths across the row groups. The other output formats work better.

**HIDE\_TABLEAM**

If this variable is set to `true`, a table's access method details are not displayed. This is mainly useful for regression tests.

**HIDE\_TOAST\_COMPRESSION**

If this variable is set to `true`, column compression method details are not displayed. This is mainly useful for regression tests.

**HISTCONTROL**

If this variable is set to `ignoreSpace`, lines which begin with a space are not entered into the history list. If set to a value of `ignoreDups`, lines matching the previous history line are not entered. A value of `ignoreBoth` combines the two options. If set to `none` (the default), all lines read in interactive mode are saved on the history list.

**Note**

This feature was shamelessly plagiarized from Bash.

**HISTFILE**

The file name that will be used to store the history list. If unset, the file name is taken from the `PSQL_HISTORY` environment variable. If that is not set either, the default is `~/.psql_history`, or `%APPDATA%\postgresql\psql_history` on Windows. For example, putting:

```
\set HISTFILE ~/.psql_history-:DBNAME
```

in `~/.psqlrc` will cause `psql` to maintain a separate history for each database.

**Note**

This feature was shamelessly plagiarized from Bash.

**HISTSIZE**

The maximum number of commands to store in the command history (default 500). If set to a negative value, no limit is applied.

**Note**

This feature was shamelessly plagiarized from Bash.

**HOST**

The database server host you are currently connected to. This is set every time you connect to a database (including program start-up), but can be changed or unset.

**IGNOREEOF**

If set to 1 or less, sending an EOF character (usually **Control+D**) to an interactive session of psql will terminate the application. If set to a larger numeric value, that many consecutive EOF characters must be typed to make an interactive session terminate. If the variable is set to a non-numeric value, it is interpreted as 10. The default is 0.

**Note**

This feature was shamelessly plagiarized from Bash.

**LASTOID**

The value of the last affected OID, as returned from an `INSERT` or `\lo_import` command. This variable is only guaranteed to be valid until after the result of the next SQL command has been displayed. PostgreSQL servers since version 12 do not support OID system columns anymore, thus `LASTOID` will always be 0 following `INSERT` when targeting such servers.

**LAST\_ERROR\_MESSAGE****LAST\_ERROR\_SQLSTATE**

The primary error message and associated `SQLSTATE` code for the most recent failed query in the current psql session, or an empty string and 00000 if no error has occurred in the current session.

**ON\_ERROR\_ROLLBACK**

When set to `on`, if a statement in a transaction block generates an error, the error is ignored and the transaction continues. When set to `interactive`, such errors are only ignored in interactive sessions, and not when reading script files. When set to `off` (the default), a statement in a transaction block that generates an error aborts the entire transaction. The error rollback mode works by issuing an implicit `SAVEPOINT` for you, just before each command that is in a transaction block, and then rolling back to the savepoint if the command fails.

**ON\_ERROR\_STOP**

By default, command processing continues after an error. When this variable is set to `on`, processing will instead stop immediately. In interactive mode, psql will return to the command prompt; otherwise, psql will exit, returning error code 3 to distinguish this case from fatal error conditions, which are reported using error code 1. In either case, any currently running scripts (the top-level script, if any, and any other scripts which it may have invoked) will be terminated immediately. If the top-level command string contained multiple SQL commands, processing will stop with the current command.

**PORT**

The database server port to which you are currently connected. This is set every time you connect to a database (including program start-up), but can be changed or unset.

PROMPT1  
PROMPT2  
PROMPT3

These specify what the prompts psql issues should look like. See Prompting below.

QUIET

Setting this variable to `on` is equivalent to the command line option `-q`. It is probably not too useful in interactive mode.

ROW\_COUNT

The number of rows returned or affected by the last SQL query, or 0 if the query failed or did not report a row count.

SERVER\_VERSION\_NAME  
SERVER\_VERSION\_NUM

The server's version number as a string, for example `9.6.2`, `10.1` or `11beta1`, and in numeric form, for example `90602` or `100001`. These are set every time you connect to a database (including program start-up), but can be changed or unset.

SHELL\_ERROR

`true` if the last shell command failed, `false` if it succeeded. This applies to shell commands invoked via the `\!`, `\g`, `\o`, `\w`, and `\copy` meta-commands, as well as backquote (```) expansion. Note that for `\o`, this variable is updated when the output pipe is closed by the next `\o` command. See also `SHELL_EXIT_CODE`.

SHELL\_EXIT\_CODE

The exit status returned by the last shell command. 0–127 represent program exit codes, 128–255 indicate termination by a signal, and -1 indicates failure to launch a program or to collect its exit status. This applies to shell commands invoked via the `\!`, `\g`, `\o`, `\w`, and `\copy` meta-commands, as well as backquote (```) expansion. Note that for `\o`, this variable is updated when the output pipe is closed by the next `\o` command. See also `SHELL_ERROR`.

SHOW\_ALL\_RESULTS

When this variable is set to `off`, only the last result of a combined query (`\;`) is shown instead of all of them. The default is `on`. The `off` behavior is for compatibility with older versions of psql.

SHOW\_CONTEXT

This variable can be set to the values `never`, `errors`, or `always` to control whether `CONTEXT` fields are displayed in messages from the server. The default is `errors` (meaning that context will be shown in error messages, but not in notice or warning messages). This setting has no effect when `VERBOSITY` is set to `terse` or `sqlstate`. (See also `\errverbose`, for use when you want a verbose version of the error you just got.)

SINGLELINE

Setting this variable to `on` is equivalent to the command line option `-S`.

SINGLESTEP

Setting this variable to `on` is equivalent to the command line option `-s`.

SQLSTATE

The error code (see Appendix A) associated with the last SQL query's failure, or `00000` if it succeeded.

**USER**

The database user you are currently connected as. This is set every time you connect to a database (including program start-up), but can be changed or unset.

**VERBOSITY**

This variable can be set to the values `default`, `verbose`, `terse`, or `sqlstate` to control the verbosity of error reports. (See also `\errverbose`, for use when you want a verbose version of the error you just got.)

**VERSION****VERSION\_NAME****VERSION\_NUM**

These variables are set at program start-up to reflect psql's version, respectively as a verbose string, a short string (e.g., `9.6.2`, `10.1`, or `11beta1`), and a number (e.g., `90602` or `100001`). They can be changed or unset.

## SQL Interpolation

A key feature of psql variables is that you can substitute (“interpolate”) them into regular SQL statements, as well as the arguments of meta-commands. Furthermore, psql provides facilities for ensuring that variable values used as SQL literals and identifiers are properly quoted. The syntax for interpolating a value without any quoting is to prepend the variable name with a colon (`:`). For example,

```
testdb=> \set foo 'my_table'
testdb=> SELECT * FROM :foo;
```

would query the table `my_table`. Note that this may be unsafe: the value of the variable is copied literally, so it can contain unbalanced quotes, or even backslash commands. You must make sure that it makes sense where you put it.

When a value is to be used as an SQL literal or identifier, it is safest to arrange for it to be quoted. To quote the value of a variable as an SQL literal, write a colon followed by the variable name in single quotes. To quote the value as an SQL identifier, write a colon followed by the variable name in double quotes. These constructs deal correctly with quotes and other special characters embedded within the variable value. The previous example would be more safely written this way:

```
testdb=> \set foo 'my_table'
testdb=> SELECT * FROM :"foo";
```

Variable interpolation will not be performed within quoted SQL literals and identifiers. Therefore, a construction such as `:foo` doesn't work to produce a quoted literal from a variable's value (and it would be unsafe if it did work, since it wouldn't correctly handle quotes embedded in the value).

One example use of this mechanism is to copy the contents of a file into a table column. First load the file into a variable and then interpolate the variable's value as a quoted string:

```
testdb=> \set content `cat my_file.txt`
testdb=> INSERT INTO my_table VALUES (:content');
```

(Note that this still won't work if `my_file.txt` contains NUL bytes. psql does not support embedded NUL bytes in variable values.)

Since colons can legally appear in SQL commands, an apparent attempt at interpolation (that is, `:name`, `: 'name'`, or `: "name"`) is not replaced unless the named variable is currently set. In any case, you can escape a colon with a backslash to protect it from substitution.

The `: { ?name }` special syntax returns TRUE or FALSE depending on whether the variable exists or not, and is thus always substituted, unless the colon is backslash-escaped.

The colon syntax for variables is standard SQL for embedded query languages, such as ECPG. The colon syntaxes for array slices and type casts are PostgreSQL extensions, which can sometimes conflict with the standard usage. The colon-quote syntax for escaping a variable's value as an SQL literal or identifier is a psql extension.

## Prompting

The prompts psql issues can be customized to your preference. The three variables `PROMPT1`, `PROMPT2`, and `PROMPT3` contain strings and special escape sequences that describe the appearance of the prompt. Prompt 1 is the normal prompt that is issued when psql requests a new command. Prompt 2 is issued when more input is expected during command entry, for example because the command was not terminated with a semicolon or a quote was not closed. Prompt 3 is issued when you are running an SQL `COPY FROM STDIN` command and you need to type in a row value on the terminal.

The value of the selected prompt variable is printed literally, except where a percent sign (%) is encountered. Depending on the next character, certain other text is substituted instead. Defined substitutions are:

`%M`

The full host name (with domain name) of the database server, or `[local]` if the connection is over a Unix domain socket, or `[local: /dir/name]`, if the Unix domain socket is not at the compiled in default location.

`%m`

The host name of the database server, truncated at the first dot, or `[local]` if the connection is over a Unix domain socket.

`%>`

The port number at which the database server is listening.

`%n`

The database session user name. (The expansion of this value might change during a database session as the result of the command `SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION`.)

`%/`

The name of the current database.

`%~`

Like `%/`, but the output is `~` (tilde) if the database is your default database.

`%#`

If the session user is a database superuser, then a `#`, otherwise a `>`. (The expansion of this value might change during a database session as the result of the command `SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION`.)

`%p`

The process ID of the backend currently connected to.

`%R`

In prompt 1 normally `=`, but `@` if the session is in an inactive branch of a conditional block, or `^` if in single-line mode, or `!` if the session is disconnected from the database (which can happen if

`\connect` fails). In prompt 2 `%R` is replaced by a character that depends on why psql expects more input: `-` if the command simply wasn't terminated yet, but `*` if there is an unfinished `/ * . . . */` comment, a single quote if there is an unfinished quoted string, a double quote if there is an unfinished quoted identifier, a dollar sign if there is an unfinished dollar-quoted string, or `(` if there is an unmatched left parenthesis. In prompt 3 `%R` doesn't produce anything.

`%x`

Transaction status: an empty string when not in a transaction block, or `*` when in a transaction block, or `!` when in a failed transaction block, or `?` when the transaction state is indeterminate (for example, because there is no connection).

`%l`

The line number inside the current statement, starting from 1.

`%digits`

The character with the indicated octal code is substituted.

`%:name:`

The value of the psql variable *name*. See Variables, above, for details.

`%`command``

The output of *command*, similar to ordinary “back-tick” substitution.

`%[ ... %]`

Prompts can contain terminal control characters which, for example, change the color, background, or style of the prompt text, or change the title of the terminal window. In order for the line editing features of Readline to work properly, these non-printing control characters must be designated as invisible by surrounding them with `%[` and `%)`. Multiple pairs of these can occur within the prompt. For example:

```
testdb=> \set PROMPT1 '%[%033[1;33;40m%]%n@%/%R%[%033[0m%]## '
```

results in a boldfaced (1;) yellow-on-black (33;40) prompt on VT100-compatible, color-capable terminals.

`%w`

Whitespace of the same width as the most recent output of `PROMPT1`. This can be used as a `PROMPT2` setting, so that multi-line statements are aligned with the first line, but there is no visible secondary prompt.

To insert a percent sign into your prompt, write `%%`. The default prompts are `'%/%R%x%# '` for prompts 1 and 2, and `'>> '` for prompt 3.

### Note

This feature was shamelessly plagiarized from `tcsh`.

## Command-Line Editing

psql uses the Readline or libedit library, if available, for convenient line editing and retrieval. The command history is automatically saved when psql exits and is reloaded when psql starts up. Type up-arrow or control-P to retrieve previous lines.

You can also use tab completion to fill in partially-typed keywords and SQL object names in many (by no means all) contexts. For example, at the start of a command, typing `ins` and pressing TAB will fill in `insert into` . Then, typing a few characters of a table or schema name and pressing TAB will fill in the unfinished name, or offer a menu of possible completions when there's more than one. (Depending on the library in use, you may need to press TAB more than once to get a menu.)

Tab completion for SQL object names requires sending queries to the server to find possible matches. In some contexts this can interfere with other operations. For example, after `BEGIN` it will be too late to issue `SET TRANSACTION ISOLATION LEVEL` if a tab-completion query is issued in between. If you do not want tab completion at all, you can turn it off permanently by putting this in a file named `.inputrc` in your home directory:

```
$if psql
set disable-completion on
$endif
```

(This is not a psql but a Readline feature. Read its documentation for further details.)

The `-n (--no-readline)` command line option can also be useful to disable use of Readline for a single run of psql. This prevents tab completion, use or recording of command line history, and editing of multi-line commands. It is particularly useful when you need to copy-and-paste text that contains TAB characters.

## Environment

### COLUMNS

If `\pset columns` is zero, controls the width for the wrapped format and width for determining if wide output requires the pager or should be switched to the vertical format in expanded auto mode.

### PGDATABASE

### PGHOST

### PGPORT

### PGUSER

Default connection parameters (see Section 34.15).

### PG\_COLOR

Specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are `always`, `auto` and `never`.

### PSQL\_EDITOR

### EDITOR

### VISUAL

Editor used by the `\e`, `\ef`, and `\ev` commands. These variables are examined in the order listed; the first that is set is used. If none of them is set, the default is to use `vi` on Unix systems or `notepad.exe` on Windows systems.

### PSQL\_EDITOR\_LINENUMBER\_ARG

When `\e`, `\ef`, or `\ev` is used with a line number argument, this variable specifies the command-line argument used to pass the starting line number to the user's editor. For editors such as Emacs or `vi`, this is a plus sign. Include a trailing space in the value of the variable if there needs to be space between the option name and the line number. Examples:

```
PSQL_EDITOR_LINENUMBER_ARG='+'  
PSQL_EDITOR_LINENUMBER_ARG='--line '
```

The default is `+` on Unix systems (corresponding to the default editor `vi`, and useful for many other common editors); but there is no default on Windows systems.

#### PSQL\_HISTORY

Alternative location for the command history file. Tilde (`~`) expansion is performed.

#### PSQL\_PAGER PAGER

If a query's results do not fit on the screen, they are piped through this command. Typical values are `more` or `less`. Use of the pager can be disabled by setting `PSQL_PAGER` or `PAGER` to an empty string, or by adjusting the pager-related options of the `\pset` command. These variables are examined in the order listed; the first that is set is used. If neither of them is set, the default is to use `more` on most platforms, but `less` on Cygwin.

#### PSQL\_WATCH\_PAGER

When a query is executed repeatedly with the `\watch` command, a pager is not used by default. This behavior can be changed by setting `PSQL_WATCH_PAGER` to a pager command, on Unix systems. The `pspg` pager (not part of PostgreSQL but available in many open source software distributions) can display the output of `\watch` if started with the option `--stream`.

#### PSQLRC

Alternative location of the user's `.psqlrc` file. Tilde (`~`) expansion is performed.

#### SHELL

Command executed by the `\!` command.

#### TMPDIR

Directory for storing temporary files. The default is `/tmp`.

This utility, like most other PostgreSQL utilities, also uses the environment variables supported by `libpq` (see Section 34.15).

## Files

#### `psqlrc` and `~/.psqlrc`

Unless it is passed an `-X` option, `psql` attempts to read and execute commands from the system-wide startup file (`psqlrc`) and then the user's personal startup file (`~/.psqlrc`), after connecting to the database but before accepting normal commands. These files can be used to set up the client and/or the server to taste, typically with `\set` and `SET` commands.

The system-wide startup file is named `psqlrc`. By default it is sought in the installation's "system configuration" directory, which is most reliably identified by running `pg_config --sysconfdir`. Typically this directory will be `../etc/` relative to the directory containing the PostgreSQL executables. The directory to look in can be set explicitly via the `PGSYSCONFDIR` environment variable.

The user's personal startup file is named `.psqlrc` and is sought in the invoking user's home directory. On Windows the personal startup file is instead named `%APPDATA%\postgresql\psqlrc.conf`. In either case, this default file path can be overridden by setting the `PSQLRC` environment variable.



Both the system-wide startup file and the user's personal startup file can be made psql-version-specific by appending a dash and the PostgreSQL major or minor release identifier to the file name, for example `~/.psqlrc-16` or `~/.psqlrc-16.2`. The most specific version-matching file will be read in preference to a non-version-specific file. These version suffixes are added after determining the file path as explained above.

#### `.psql_history`

The command-line history is stored in the file `~/.psql_history`, or `%APPDATA%\postgresql\psql_history` on Windows.

The location of the history file can be set explicitly via the `HISTFILE` psql variable or the `PSQL_HISTORY` environment variable.

## Notes

- psql works best with servers of the same or an older major version. Backslash commands are particularly likely to fail if the server is of a newer version than psql itself. However, backslash commands of the `\d` family should work with servers of versions back to 9.2, though not necessarily with servers newer than psql itself. The general functionality of running SQL commands and displaying query results should also work with servers of a newer major version, but this cannot be guaranteed in all cases.

If you want to use psql to connect to several servers of different major versions, it is recommended that you use the newest version of psql. Alternatively, you can keep around a copy of psql from each major version and be sure to use the version that matches the respective server. But in practice, this additional complication should not be necessary.

- Before PostgreSQL 9.6, the `-c` option implied `-X (--no-psqlrc)`; this is no longer the case.
- Before PostgreSQL 8.4, psql allowed the first argument of a single-letter backslash command to start directly after the command, without intervening whitespace. Now, some whitespace is required.

## Notes for Windows Users

psql is built as a “console application”. Since the Windows console windows use a different encoding than the rest of the system, you must take special care when using 8-bit characters within psql. If psql detects a problematic console code page, it will warn you at startup. To change the console code page, two things are necessary:

- Set the code page by entering `cmd.exe /c chcp 1252`. (1252 is a code page that is appropriate for German; replace it with your value.) If you are using Cygwin, you can put this command in `/etc/profile`.
- Set the console font to `Lucida Console`, because the raster font does not work with the ANSI code page.

## Examples

The first example shows how to spread a command over several lines of input. Notice the changing prompt:

```
testdb=> CREATE TABLE my_table (  
testdb(>   first integer not null default 0,  
testdb(>   second text)  
testdb-> ;  
CREATE TABLE
```

Now look at the table definition again:

```
testdb=> \d my_table
          Table "public.my_table"
  Column | Type   | Collation | Nullable | Default
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----
  first  | integer |           | not null | 0
  second | text    |           |          |
```

Now we change the prompt to something more interesting:

```
testdb=> \set PROMPT1 '%n@m %~%R%# '
peter@localhost testdb=>
```

Let's assume you have filled the table with data and want to take a look at it:

```
peter@localhost testdb=> SELECT * FROM my_table;
 first | second
-----+-----
      1 | one
      2 | two
      3 | three
      4 | four
(4 rows)
```

You can display tables in different ways by using the `\pset` command:

```
peter@localhost testdb=> \pset border 2
Border style is 2.
peter@localhost testdb=> SELECT * FROM my_table;
+-----+-----+
| first | second |
+-----+-----+
|      1 | one    |
|      2 | two    |
|      3 | three  |
|      4 | four   |
+-----+-----+
(4 rows)
```

```
peter@localhost testdb=> \pset border 0
Border style is 0.
peter@localhost testdb=> SELECT * FROM my_table;
first second
-----
1 one
2 two
3 three
4 four
(4 rows)
```

```
peter@localhost testdb=> \pset border 1
Border style is 1.
peter@localhost testdb=> \pset format csv
Output format is csv.
```

```
peter@localhost testdb=> \pset tuples_only
Tuples only is on.
peter@localhost testdb=> SELECT second, first FROM my_table;
one,1
two,2
three,3
four,4
peter@localhost testdb=> \pset format unaligned
Output format is unaligned.
peter@localhost testdb=> \pset fieldsep '\t'
Field separator is "    ".
peter@localhost testdb=> SELECT second, first FROM my_table;
one      1
two       2
three     3
four      4
```

Alternatively, use the short commands:

```
peter@localhost testdb=> \a \t \x
Output format is aligned.
Tuples only is off.
Expanded display is on.
peter@localhost testdb=> SELECT * FROM my_table;
-[ RECORD 1 ]-
first  | 1
second | one
-[ RECORD 2 ]-
first  | 2
second | two
-[ RECORD 3 ]-
first  | 3
second | three
-[ RECORD 4 ]-
first  | 4
second | four
```

Also, these output format options can be set for just one query by using \g:

```
peter@localhost testdb=> SELECT * FROM my_table
peter@localhost testdb-> \g (format=aligned tuples_only=off
    expanded=on)
-[ RECORD 1 ]-
first  | 1
second | one
-[ RECORD 2 ]-
first  | 2
second | two
-[ RECORD 3 ]-
first  | 3
second | three
-[ RECORD 4 ]-
first  | 4
second | four
```

Here is an example of using the \df command to find only functions with names matching `int*pl` and whose second argument is of type `bigint`:

```
testdb=> \df int*pl * bigint
```

```

                                List of functions
 Schema      | Name      | Result data type | Argument data types |
Type
-----+-----+-----+-----+
+-----+
pg_catalog | int28pl | bigint           | smallint, bigint    |
func
pg_catalog | int48pl | bigint           | integer, bigint     |
func
pg_catalog | int8pl  | bigint           | bigint, bigint      |
func
(3 rows)

```

When suitable, query results can be shown in a crosstab representation with the `\crosstabview` command:

```
testdb=> SELECT first, second, first > 2 AS gt2 FROM my_table;
```

```

 first | second | gt2
-----+-----+-----
      1 | one    | f
      2 | two    | f
      3 | three  | t
      4 | four   | t
(4 rows)

```

```
testdb=> \crosstabview first second
```

```

 first | one | two | three | four
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----
      1 | f   |     |       |
      2 |     | f   |       |
      3 |     |     | t     |
      4 |     |     |       | t
(4 rows)

```

This second example shows a multiplication table with rows sorted in reverse numerical order and columns with an independent, ascending numerical order.

```
testdb=> SELECT t1.first as "A", t2.first+100 AS "B",
```

```
       t1.first*(t2.first+100) as "AxB",
```

```
testdb(> row_number() over(order by t2.first) AS ord
```

```
testdb(> FROM my_table t1 CROSS JOIN my_table t2 ORDER BY 1 DESC
```

```
testdb(> \crosstabview "A" "B" "AxB" ord
```

```

 A | 101 | 102 | 103 | 104
---+---+---+---+---
 4 | 404 | 408 | 412 | 416
 3 | 303 | 306 | 309 | 312
 2 | 202 | 204 | 206 | 208
 1 | 101 | 102 | 103 | 104
(4 rows)

```

---

# reindexdb

reindexdb — reindex a PostgreSQL database

## Synopsis

```
reindexdb [connection-option...] [option...] [ -S | --schema schema ] ... [ -t | --table table ] ... [ -i | --index index ] ... [dbname]
```

```
reindexdb [connection-option...] [option...] -a | --all
```

```
reindexdb [connection-option...] [option...] -s | --system [dbname]
```

## Description

reindexdb is a utility for rebuilding indexes in a PostgreSQL database.

reindexdb is a wrapper around the SQL command `REINDEX`. There is no effective difference between reindexing databases via this utility and via other methods for accessing the server.

## Options

reindexdb accepts the following command-line arguments:

```
-a  
--all
```

Reindex all databases.

```
--concurrently
```

Use the `CONCURRENTLY` option. See `REINDEX`, where all the caveats of this option are explained in detail.

```
[ -d ] dbname  
[ --dbname= ] dbname
```

Specifies the name of the database to be reindexed, when `-a/--all` is not used. If this is not specified, the database name is read from the environment variable `PGDATABASE`. If that is not set, the user name specified for the connection is used. The *dbname* can be a connection string. If so, connection string parameters will override any conflicting command line options.

```
-e  
--echo
```

Echo the commands that reindexdb generates and sends to the server.

```
-i index  
--index=index
```

Recreate *index* only. Multiple indexes can be recreated by writing multiple `-i` switches.

```
-j njobs  
--jobs=njobs
```

Execute the reindex commands in parallel by running *njobs* commands simultaneously. This option may reduce the processing time but it also increases the load on the database server.

reindexdb will open *njobs* connections to the database, so make sure your `max_connections` setting is high enough to accommodate all connections.

Note that this option is incompatible with the `--index` and `--system` options.

`-q`  
`--quiet`

Do not display progress messages.

`-s`  
`--system`

Reindex database's system catalogs only.

`-S schema`  
`--schema=schema`

Reindex *schema* only. Multiple schemas can be reindexed by writing multiple `-S` switches.

`-t table`  
`--table=table`

Reindex *table* only. Multiple tables can be reindexed by writing multiple `-t` switches.

`--tablespace=tablespace`

Specifies the tablespace where indexes are rebuilt. (This name is processed as a double-quoted identifier.)

`-v`  
`--verbose`

Print detailed information during processing.

`-V`  
`--version`

Print the reindexdb version and exit.

`-?`  
`--help`

Show help about reindexdb command line arguments, and exit.

reindexdb also accepts the following command-line arguments for connection parameters:

`-h host`  
`--host=host`

Specifies the host name of the machine on which the server is running. If the value begins with a slash, it is used as the directory for the Unix domain socket.

`-p port`  
`--port=port`

Specifies the TCP port or local Unix domain socket file extension on which the server is listening for connections.

`-U username`  
`--username=username`

User name to connect as.

`-w`  
`--no-password`

Never issue a password prompt. If the server requires password authentication and a password is not available by other means such as a `.pgpass` file, the connection attempt will fail. This option can be useful in batch jobs and scripts where no user is present to enter a password.

`-W`  
`--password`

Force reindexdb to prompt for a password before connecting to a database.

This option is never essential, since reindexdb will automatically prompt for a password if the server demands password authentication. However, reindexdb will waste a connection attempt finding out that the server wants a password. In some cases it is worth typing `-W` to avoid the extra connection attempt.

`--maintenance-db=dbname`

Specifies the name of the database to connect to to discover which databases should be reindexed, when `-a/--all` is used. If not specified, the `postgres` database will be used, or if that does not exist, `template1` will be used. This can be a connection string. If so, connection string parameters will override any conflicting command line options. Also, connection string parameters other than the database name itself will be re-used when connecting to other databases.

## Environment

`PGDATABASE`  
`PGHOST`  
`PGPORT`  
`PGUSER`

Default connection parameters

`PG_COLOR`

Specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are `always`, `auto` and `never`.

This utility, like most other PostgreSQL utilities, also uses the environment variables supported by libpq (see Section 34.15).

## Diagnostics

In case of difficulty, see `REINDEX` and `psql` for discussions of potential problems and error messages. The database server must be running at the targeted host. Also, any default connection settings and environment variables used by the libpq front-end library will apply.

## Notes

reindexdb might need to connect several times to the PostgreSQL server, asking for a password each time. It is convenient to have a `~/.pgpass` file in such cases. See Section 34.16 for more information.

## Examples

To reindex the database `test`:

```
$ reindexdb test
```

To reindex the table `foo` and the index `bar` in a database named `abcd`:

```
$ reindexdb --table=foo --index=bar abcd
```

## See Also

REINDEX



---

# vacuumdb

vacuumdb — garbage-collect and analyze a PostgreSQL database

## Synopsis

```
vacuumdb [connection-option...] [option...] [-t|--table table [(column [,...])]] ...  
[dbname]
```

```
vacuumdb [connection-option...] [option...] [ [-n|--schema schema] | [-N|--  
exclude-schema schema] ] ... [dbname]
```

```
vacuumdb [connection-option...] [option...] -a|--all
```

## Description

vacuumdb is a utility for cleaning a PostgreSQL database. vacuumdb will also generate internal statistics used by the PostgreSQL query optimizer.

vacuumdb is a wrapper around the SQL command VACUUM. There is no effective difference between vacuuming and analyzing databases via this utility and via other methods for accessing the server.

## Options

vacuumdb accepts the following command-line arguments:

-a  
--all

Vacuum all databases.

--buffer-usage-limit *size*

Specifies the *Buffer Access Strategy* ring buffer size for a given invocation of vacuumdb. This size is used to calculate the number of shared buffers which will be reused as part of this strategy. See VACUUM.

[-d] *dbname*  
[--dbname=] *dbname*

Specifies the name of the database to be cleaned or analyzed, when -a/--all is not used. If this is not specified, the database name is read from the environment variable PGDATABASE. If that is not set, the user name specified for the connection is used. The *dbname* can be a connection string. If so, connection string parameters will override any conflicting command line options.

--disable-page-skipping

Disable skipping pages based on the contents of the visibility map.

-e  
--echo

Echo the commands that vacuumdb generates and sends to the server.

-f  
--full

Perform “full” vacuuming.

`-F`  
`--freeze`

Aggressively “freeze” tuples.

`--force-index-cleanup`

Always remove index entries pointing to dead tuples.

`-j njobs`  
`--jobs=njobs`

Execute the vacuum or analyze commands in parallel by running *njobs* commands simultaneously. This option may reduce the processing time but it also increases the load on the database server.

`vacuumdb` will open *njobs* connections to the database, so make sure your `max_connections` setting is high enough to accommodate all connections.

Note that using this mode together with the `-f` (FULL) option might cause deadlock failures if certain system catalogs are processed in parallel.

`--min-mxid-age mxid_age`

Only execute the vacuum or analyze commands on tables with a multixact ID age of at least *mxid\_age*. This setting is useful for prioritizing tables to process to prevent multixact ID wrap-around (see Section 25.1.5.1).

For the purposes of this option, the multixact ID age of a relation is the greatest of the ages of the main relation and its associated TOAST table, if one exists. Since the commands issued by `vacuumdb` will also process the TOAST table for the relation if necessary, it does not need to be considered separately.

`--min-xid-age xid_age`

Only execute the vacuum or analyze commands on tables with a transaction ID age of at least *xid\_age*. This setting is useful for prioritizing tables to process to prevent transaction ID wrap-around (see Section 25.1.5).

For the purposes of this option, the transaction ID age of a relation is the greatest of the ages of the main relation and its associated TOAST table, if one exists. Since the commands issued by `vacuumdb` will also process the TOAST table for the relation if necessary, it does not need to be considered separately.

`-n schema`  
`--schema=schema`

Clean or analyze all tables in *schema* only. Multiple schemas can be vacuumed by writing multiple `-n` switches.

`-N schema`  
`--exclude-schema=schema`

Do not clean or analyze any tables in *schema*. Multiple schemas can be excluded by writing multiple `-N` switches.

`--no-index-cleanup`

Do not remove index entries pointing to dead tuples.

`--no-process-main`

Skip the main relation.

`--no-process-toast`

Skip the TOAST table associated with the table to vacuum, if any.

`--no-truncate`

Do not truncate empty pages at the end of the table.

`-P parallel_workers`

`--parallel=parallel_workers`

Specify the number of parallel workers for *parallel vacuum*. This allows the vacuum to leverage multiple CPUs to process indexes. See VACUUM.

`-q`

`--quiet`

Do not display progress messages.

`--skip-locked`

Skip relations that cannot be immediately locked for processing.

`-t table [ (column [,...]) ]`

`--table=table [ (column [,...]) ]`

Clean or analyze *table* only. Column names can be specified only in conjunction with the `--analyze` or `--analyze-only` options. Multiple tables can be vacuumed by writing multiple `-t` switches.

### Tip

If you specify columns, you probably have to escape the parentheses from the shell. (See examples below.)

`-v`

`--verbose`

Print detailed information during processing.

`-V`

`--version`

Print the vacuumdb version and exit.

`-z`

`--analyze`

Also calculate statistics for use by the optimizer.

`-Z`

`--analyze-only`

Only calculate statistics for use by the optimizer (no vacuum).

`--analyze-in-stages`

Only calculate statistics for use by the optimizer (no vacuum), like `--analyze-only`. Run three stages of analyze; the first stage uses the lowest possible statistics target (see `default_statistics_target`) to produce usable statistics faster, and subsequent stages build the full statistics.

This option is only useful to analyze a database that currently has no statistics or has wholly incorrect ones, such as if it is newly populated from a restored dump or by `pg_upgrade`. Be aware that running with this option in a database with existing statistics may cause the query optimizer choices to become transiently worse due to the low statistics targets of the early stages.

-?  
--help

Show help about vacuumdb command line arguments, and exit.

vacuumdb also accepts the following command-line arguments for connection parameters:

-h *host*  
--host=*host*

Specifies the host name of the machine on which the server is running. If the value begins with a slash, it is used as the directory for the Unix domain socket.

-p *port*  
--port=*port*

Specifies the TCP port or local Unix domain socket file extension on which the server is listening for connections.

-U *username*  
--username=*username*

User name to connect as.

-w  
--no-password

Never issue a password prompt. If the server requires password authentication and a password is not available by other means such as a `.pgpass` file, the connection attempt will fail. This option can be useful in batch jobs and scripts where no user is present to enter a password.

-W  
--password

Force vacuumdb to prompt for a password before connecting to a database.

This option is never essential, since vacuumdb will automatically prompt for a password if the server demands password authentication. However, vacuumdb will waste a connection attempt finding out that the server wants a password. In some cases it is worth typing `-W` to avoid the extra connection attempt.

--maintenance-db=*dbname*

Specifies the name of the database to connect to to discover which databases should be vacuumed, when `-a/--all` is used. If not specified, the `postgres` database will be used, or if that does not exist, `template1` will be used. This can be a connection string. If so, connection string parameters will override any conflicting command line options. Also, connection string parameters other than the database name itself will be re-used when connecting to other databases.

## Environment

PGDATABASE  
PGHOST  
PGPORT  
PGUSER

Default connection parameters

PG\_COLOR

Specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are `always`, `auto` and `never`.

This utility, like most other PostgreSQL utilities, also uses the environment variables supported by libpq (see Section 34.15).

## Diagnostics

In case of difficulty, see `VACUUM` and `psql` for discussions of potential problems and error messages. The database server must be running at the targeted host. Also, any default connection settings and environment variables used by the libpq front-end library will apply.

## Notes

`vacuumdb` might need to connect several times to the PostgreSQL server, asking for a password each time. It is convenient to have a `~/.pgpass` file in such cases. See Section 34.16 for more information.

## Examples

To clean the database `test`:

```
$ vacuumdb test
```

To clean and analyze for the optimizer a database named `bigdb`:

```
$ vacuumdb --analyze bigdb
```

To clean a single table `foo` in a database named `xyzyz`, and analyze a single column `bar` of the table for the optimizer:

```
$ vacuumdb --analyze --verbose --table='foo(bar)' xyzyz
```

To clean all tables in the `foo` and `bar` schemas in a database named `xyzyz`:

```
$ vacuumdb --schema='foo' --schema='bar' xyzyz
```

## See Also

`VACUUM`

---

# PostgreSQL Server Applications

This part contains reference information for PostgreSQL server applications and support utilities. These commands can only be run usefully on the host where the database server resides. Other utility programs are listed in PostgreSQL Client Applications.

## Table of Contents

initdb .....	2187
pg_archivecleanup .....	2192
pg_checksums .....	2194
pg_controldata .....	2196
pg_ctl .....	2197
pg_resetwal .....	2203
pg_rewind .....	2207
pg_test_fsync .....	2211
pg_test_timing .....	2212
pg_upgrade .....	2216
pg_waldump .....	2225
postgres .....	2229

---

# initdb

initdb — create a new PostgreSQL database cluster

## Synopsis

```
initdb [option...][ --pgdata | -D ] directory
```

## Description

initdb creates a new PostgreSQL *database cluster*.

Creating a database cluster consists of creating the *directories* in which the cluster data will live, generating the shared catalog tables (tables that belong to the whole cluster rather than to any particular database), and creating the `postgres`, `template1`, and `template0` databases. The `postgres` database is a default database meant for use by users, utilities and third party applications. `template1` and `template0` are meant as source databases to be copied by later `CREATE DATABASE` commands. `template0` should never be modified, but you can add objects to `template1`, which by default will be copied into databases created later. See Section 23.3 for more details.

Although `initdb` will attempt to create the specified data directory, it might not have permission if the parent directory of the desired data directory is root-owned. To initialize in such a setup, create an empty data directory as root, then use `chown` to assign ownership of that directory to the database user account, then `su` to become the database user to run `initdb`.

`initdb` must be run as the user that will own the server process, because the server needs to have access to the files and directories that `initdb` creates. Since the server cannot be run as root, you must not run `initdb` as root either. (It will in fact refuse to do so.)

For security reasons the new cluster created by `initdb` will only be accessible by the cluster owner by default. The `--allow-group-access` option allows any user in the same group as the cluster owner to read files in the cluster. This is useful for performing backups as a non-privileged user.

`initdb` initializes the database cluster's default locale and character set encoding. These can also be set separately for each database when it is created. `initdb` determines those settings for the template databases, which will serve as the default for all other databases.

By default, `initdb` uses the locale provider `libc` (see Section 24.1.4). The `libc` locale provider takes the locale settings from the environment, and determines the encoding from the locale settings.

To choose a different locale for the cluster, use the option `--locale`. There are also individual options `--lc-*` and `--icu-locale` (see below) to set values for the individual locale categories. Note that inconsistent settings for different locale categories can give nonsensical results, so this should be used with care.

Alternatively, `initdb` can use the ICU library to provide locale services by specifying `--locale-provider=icu`. The server must be built with ICU support. To choose the specific ICU locale ID to apply, use the option `--icu-locale`. Note that for implementation reasons and to support legacy code, `initdb` will still select and initialize `libc` locale settings when the ICU locale provider is used.

When `initdb` runs, it will print out the locale settings it has chosen. If you have complex requirements or specified multiple options, it is advisable to check that the result matches what was intended.

More details about locale settings can be found in Section 24.1.

To alter the default encoding, use the `--encoding`. More details can be found in Section 24.3.

## Options

`-A authmethod`  
`--auth=authmethod`

This option specifies the default authentication method for local users used in `pg_hba.conf` (host and local lines). See Section 21.1 for an overview of valid values.

`initdb` will prepopulate `pg_hba.conf` entries using the specified authentication method for non-replication as well as replication connections.

Do not use `trust` unless you trust all local users on your system. `trust` is the default for ease of installation.

`--auth-host=authmethod`

This option specifies the authentication method for local users via TCP/IP connections used in `pg_hba.conf` (host lines).

`--auth-local=authmethod`

This option specifies the authentication method for local users via Unix-domain socket connections used in `pg_hba.conf` (local lines).

`-D directory`  
`--pgdata=directory`

This option specifies the directory where the database cluster should be stored. This is the only information required by `initdb`, but you can avoid writing it by setting the `PGDATA` environment variable, which can be convenient since the database server (`postgres`) can find the data directory later by the same variable.

`-E encoding`  
`--encoding=encoding`

Selects the encoding of the template databases. This will also be the default encoding of any database you create later, unless you override it then. The character sets supported by the PostgreSQL server are described in Section 24.3.1.

By default, the template database encoding is derived from the locale. If `--no-locale` is specified (or equivalently, if the locale is C or POSIX), then the default is UTF8 for the ICU provider and `SQL_ASCII` for the libc provider.

`-g`  
`--allow-group-access`

Allows users in the same group as the cluster owner to read all cluster files created by `initdb`. This option is ignored on Windows as it does not support POSIX-style group permissions.

`--icu-locale=locale`

Specifies the ICU locale when the ICU provider is used. Locale support is described in Section 24.1.

`--icu-rules=rules`

Specifies additional collation rules to customize the behavior of the default collation. This is supported for ICU only.



-k

--data-checksums

Use checksums on data pages to help detect corruption by the I/O system that would otherwise be silent. Enabling checksums may incur a noticeable performance penalty. If set, checksums are calculated for all objects, in all databases. All checksum failures will be reported in the `pg_stat_database` view. See Section 30.2 for details.

--locale=*locale*

Sets the default locale for the database cluster. If this option is not specified, the locale is inherited from the environment that `initdb` runs in. Locale support is described in Section 24.1.

--lc-collate=*locale*

--lc-ctype=*locale*

--lc-messages=*locale*

--lc-monetary=*locale*

--lc-numeric=*locale*

--lc-time=*locale*

Like `--locale`, but only sets the locale in the specified category.

--no-locale

Equivalent to `--locale=C`.

--locale-provider={*libc*|*icu*}

This option sets the locale provider for databases created in the new cluster. It can be overridden in the `CREATE DATABASE` command when new databases are subsequently created. The default is `libc` (see Section 24.1.4).

-N

--no-sync

By default, `initdb` will wait for all files to be written safely to disk. This option causes `initdb` to return without waiting, which is faster, but means that a subsequent operating system crash can leave the data directory corrupt. Generally, this option is useful for testing, but should not be used when creating a production installation.

--no-instructions

By default, `initdb` will write instructions for how to start the cluster at the end of its output. This option causes those instructions to be left out. This is primarily intended for use by tools that wrap `initdb` in platform-specific behavior, where those instructions are likely to be incorrect.

--pwfile=*filename*

Makes `initdb` read the bootstrap superuser's password from a file. The first line of the file is taken as the password.

-S

--sync-only

Safely write all database files to disk and exit. This does not perform any of the normal `initdb` operations. Generally, this option is useful for ensuring reliable recovery after changing `fsync` from `off` to `on`.

-T *config*

--text-search-config=*config*

Sets the default text search configuration. See `default_text_search_config` for further information.

`-U username`  
`--username=username`

Sets the user name of the *bootstrap superuser*. This defaults to the name of the operating-system user running `initdb`.

`-W`  
`--pwprompt`

Makes `initdb` prompt for a password to give the bootstrap superuser. If you don't plan on using password authentication, this is not important. Otherwise you won't be able to use password authentication until you have a password set up.

`-X directory`  
`--waldir=directory`

This option specifies the directory where the write-ahead log should be stored.

`--wal-segsize=size`

Set the *WAL segment size*, in megabytes. This is the size of each individual file in the WAL log. The default size is 16 megabytes. The value must be a power of 2 between 1 and 1024 (megabytes). This option can only be set during initialization, and cannot be changed later.

It may be useful to adjust this size to control the granularity of WAL log shipping or archiving. Also, in databases with a high volume of WAL, the sheer number of WAL files per directory can become a performance and management problem. Increasing the WAL file size will reduce the number of WAL files.

Other, less commonly used, options are also available:

`-c name=value`  
`--set name=value`

Forcibly set the server parameter *name* to *value* during `initdb`, and also install that setting in the generated `postgresql.conf` file, so that it will apply during future server runs. This option can be given more than once to set several parameters. It is primarily useful when the environment is such that the server will not start at all using the default parameters.

`-d`  
`--debug`

Print debugging output from the bootstrap backend and a few other messages of lesser interest for the general public. The bootstrap backend is the program `initdb` uses to create the catalog tables. This option generates a tremendous amount of extremely boring output.

`--discard-caches`

Run the bootstrap backend with the `debug_discard_caches=1` option. This takes a very long time and is only of use for deep debugging.

`-L directory`

Specifies where `initdb` should find its input files to initialize the database cluster. This is normally not necessary. You will be told if you need to specify their location explicitly.

`-n`  
`--no-clean`

By default, when `initdb` determines that an error prevented it from completely creating the database cluster, it removes any files it might have created before discovering that it cannot finish the job. This option inhibits tidying-up and is thus useful for debugging.

Other options:

`-V`  
`--version`

Print the initdb version and exit.

`-?`  
`--help`

Show help about initdb command line arguments, and exit.

## Environment

`PGDATA`

Specifies the directory where the database cluster is to be stored; can be overridden using the `-D` option.

`PG_COLOR`

Specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are `always`, `auto` and `never`.

`TZ`

Specifies the default time zone of the created database cluster. The value should be a full time zone name (see Section 8.5.3).

This utility, like most other PostgreSQL utilities, also uses the environment variables supported by libpq (see Section 34.15).

## Notes

`initdb` can also be invoked via `pg_ctl initdb`.

## See Also

`pg_ctl`, `postgres`, Section 21.1

---

# pg\_archivecleanup

pg\_archivecleanup — clean up PostgreSQL WAL archive files

## Synopsis

```
pg_archivecleanup [option...] archive_location oldestkeptwalfile
```

## Description

pg\_archivecleanup is designed to be used as an `archive_cleanup_command` to clean up WAL file archives when running as a standby server (see Section 27.2). pg\_archivecleanup can also be used as a standalone program to clean WAL file archives.

To configure a standby server to use pg\_archivecleanup, put this into its `postgresql.conf` configuration file:

```
archive_cleanup_command = 'pg_archivecleanup archive_location %r'
```

where *archive\_location* is the directory from which WAL segment files should be removed.

When used within `archive_cleanup_command`, all WAL files logically preceding the value of the `%r` argument will be removed from *archive\_location*. This minimizes the number of files that need to be retained, while preserving crash-restart capability. Use of this parameter is appropriate if the *archive\_location* is a transient staging area for this particular standby server, but *not* when the *archive\_location* is intended as a long-term WAL archive area, or when multiple standby servers are recovering from the same archive location.

When used as a standalone program all WAL files logically preceding the *oldestkeptwalfile* will be removed from *archive\_location*. In this mode, if you specify a `.partial` or `.backup` file name, then only the file prefix will be used as the *oldestkeptwalfile*. This treatment of `.backup` file name allows you to remove all WAL files archived prior to a specific base backup without error. For example, the following example will remove all files older than WAL file name 000000010000003700000010:

```
pg_archivecleanup -d archive
000000010000003700000010.00000020.backup
```

```
pg_archivecleanup: keep WAL file
"archive/000000010000003700000010" and later
pg_archivecleanup: removing file
"archive/00000001000000370000000F"
pg_archivecleanup: removing file
"archive/00000001000000370000000E"
```

pg\_archivecleanup assumes that *archive\_location* is a directory readable and writable by the server-owning user.

## Options

pg\_archivecleanup accepts the following command-line arguments:

`-d`

Print lots of debug logging output on `stderr`.

`-n`

Print the names of the files that would have been removed on `stdout` (performs a dry run).

`-V`

`--version`

Print the `pg_archivecleanup` version and exit.

`-x extension`

Provide an extension that will be stripped from all file names before deciding if they should be deleted. This is typically useful for cleaning up archives that have been compressed during storage, and therefore have had an extension added by the compression program. For example: `-x .gz`.

`-?`

`--help`

Show help about `pg_archivecleanup` command line arguments, and exit.

## Environment

The environment variable `PG_COLOR` specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are `always`, `auto` and `never`.

## Notes

`pg_archivecleanup` is designed to work with PostgreSQL 8.0 and later when used as a standalone utility, or with PostgreSQL 9.0 and later when used as an archive cleanup command.

`pg_archivecleanup` is written in C and has an easy-to-modify source code, with specifically designated sections to modify for your own needs

## Examples

On Linux or Unix systems, you might use:

```
archive_cleanup_command = 'pg_archivecleanup -d /mnt/standby/  
archive %r 2>>cleanup.log'
```

where the archive directory is physically located on the standby server, so that the `archive_command` is accessing it across NFS, but the files are local to the standby. This will:

- produce debugging output in `cleanup.log`
- remove no-longer-needed files from the archive directory

---

# pg\_checksums

pg\_checksums — enable, disable or check data checksums in a PostgreSQL database cluster

## Synopsis

```
pg_checksums [option...] [[ -D | --pgdata ]datadir]
```

## Description

pg\_checksums checks, enables or disables data checksums in a PostgreSQL cluster. The server must be shut down cleanly before running pg\_checksums. When verifying checksums, the exit status is zero if there are no checksum errors, and nonzero if at least one checksum failure is detected. When enabling or disabling checksums, the exit status is nonzero if the operation failed.

When verifying checksums, every file in the cluster is scanned. When enabling checksums, each relation file block with a changed checksum is rewritten in-place. Disabling checksums only updates the file `pg_control`.

## Options

The following command-line options are available:

```
-D directory  
--pgdata=directory
```

Specifies the directory where the database cluster is stored.

```
-c  
--check
```

Checks checksums. This is the default mode if nothing else is specified.

```
-d  
--disable
```

Disables checksums.

```
-e  
--enable
```

Enables checksums.

```
-f filenode  
--filenode=filenode
```

Only validate checksums in the relation with filenode *filenode*.

```
-N  
--no-sync
```

By default, pg\_checksums will wait for all files to be written safely to disk. This option causes pg\_checksums to return without waiting, which is faster, but means that a subsequent operating system crash can leave the updated data directory corrupt. Generally, this option is useful for testing but should not be used on a production installation. This option has no effect when using `--check`.

-P

--progress

Enable progress reporting. Turning this on will deliver a progress report while checking or enabling checksums.

-v

--verbose

Enable verbose output. Lists all checked files.

-V

--version

Print the pg\_checksums version and exit.

-?

--help

Show help about pg\_checksums command line arguments, and exit.

## Environment

PGDATA

Specifies the directory where the database cluster is stored; can be overridden using the -D option.

PG\_COLOR

Specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are always, auto and never.

## Notes

Enabling checksums in a large cluster can potentially take a long time. During this operation, the cluster or other programs that write to the data directory must not be started or else data loss may occur.

When using a replication setup with tools which perform direct copies of relation file blocks (for example pg\_rewind), enabling or disabling checksums can lead to page corruptions in the shape of incorrect checksums if the operation is not done consistently across all nodes. When enabling or disabling checksums in a replication setup, it is thus recommended to stop all the clusters before switching them all consistently. Destroying all standbys, performing the operation on the primary and finally recreating the standbys from scratch is also safe.

If pg\_checksums is aborted or killed while enabling or disabling checksums, the cluster's data checksum configuration remains unchanged, and pg\_checksums can be re-run to perform the same operation.

---

# pg\_controldata

pg\_controldata — display control information of a PostgreSQL database cluster

## Synopsis

```
pg_controldata [option] [[ -D | --pgdata ]datadir]
```

## Description

pg\_controldata prints information initialized during `initdb`, such as the catalog version. It also shows information about write-ahead logging and checkpoint processing. This information is cluster-wide, and not specific to any one database.

This utility can only be run by the user who initialized the cluster because it requires read access to the data directory. You can specify the data directory on the command line, or use the environment variable `PGDATA`. This utility supports the options `-V` and `--version`, which print the pg\_controldata version and exit. It also supports options `-?` and `--help`, which output the supported arguments.

## Environment

PGDATA

Default data directory location

PG\_COLOR

Specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are `always`, `auto` and `never`.



---

# pg\_ctl

pg\_ctl — initialize, start, stop, or control a PostgreSQL server

## Synopsis

```
pg_ctl init[db] [-D datadir] [-s] [-o initdb-options]  
  
pg_ctl start [-D datadir] [-l filename] [-W] [-t seconds] [-s] [-o options] [-p  
path] [-c]  
  
pg_ctl stop [-D datadir] [-m s[mart] | f[ast] | i[mmediate] ] [-W] [-t seconds]  
[-s]  
  
pg_ctl restart [-D datadir] [-m s[mart] | f[ast] | i[mmediate] ] [-W] [-t sec-  
onds] [-s] [-o options] [-c]  
  
pg_ctl reload [-D datadir] [-s]  
  
pg_ctl status [-D datadir]  
  
pg_ctl promote [-D datadir] [-W] [-t seconds] [-s]  
  
pg_ctl logrotate [-D datadir] [-s]  
  
pg_ctl kill signal_name process_id  
  
On Microsoft Windows, also:  
  
pg_ctl register [-D datadir] [-N servicename] [-U username] [-P password] [-S  
a[uto] | d[emand] ] [-e source] [-W] [-t seconds] [-s] [-o options]  
  
pg_ctl unregister [-N servicename]
```

## Description

pg\_ctl is a utility for initializing a PostgreSQL database cluster, starting, stopping, or restarting the PostgreSQL database server (postgres), or displaying the status of a running server. Although the server can be started manually, pg\_ctl encapsulates tasks such as redirecting log output and properly detaching from the terminal and process group. It also provides convenient options for controlled shutdown.

The `init` or `initdb` mode creates a new PostgreSQL database cluster, that is, a collection of databases that will be managed by a single server instance. This mode invokes the `initdb` command. See `initdb` for details.

`start` mode launches a new server. The server is started in the background, and its standard input is attached to `/dev/null` (or `nul` on Windows). On Unix-like systems, by default, the server's standard output and standard error are sent to pg\_ctl's standard output (not standard error). The standard output of pg\_ctl should then be redirected to a file or piped to another process such as a log rotating program like `rotatelogs`; otherwise `postgres` will write its output to the controlling terminal (from the background) and will not leave the shell's process group. On Windows, by default the server's standard output and standard error are sent to the terminal. These default behaviors can be changed by using `-l` to append the server's output to a log file. Use of either `-l` or output redirection is recommended.

`stop` mode shuts down the server that is running in the specified data directory. Three different shutdown methods can be selected with the `-m` option. “Smart” mode disallows new connections, then waits for all existing clients to disconnect. If the server is in hot standby, recovery and streaming repli-

cation will be terminated once all clients have disconnected. “Fast” mode (the default) does not wait for clients to disconnect. All active transactions are rolled back and clients are forcibly disconnected, then the server is shut down. “Immediate” mode will abort all server processes immediately, without a clean shutdown. This choice will lead to a crash-recovery cycle during the next server start.

`restart` mode effectively executes a stop followed by a start. This allows changing the `postgres` command-line options, or changing configuration-file options that cannot be changed without restarting the server. If relative paths were used on the command line during server start, `restart` might fail unless `pg_ctl` is executed in the same current directory as it was during server start.

`reload` mode simply sends the `postgres` server process a `SIGHUP` signal, causing it to reread its configuration files (`postgresql.conf`, `pg_hba.conf`, etc.). This allows changing configuration-file options that do not require a full server restart to take effect.

`status` mode checks whether a server is running in the specified data directory. If it is, the server's PID and the command line options that were used to invoke it are displayed. If the server is not running, `pg_ctl` returns an exit status of 3. If an accessible data directory is not specified, `pg_ctl` returns an exit status of 4.

`promote` mode commands the standby server that is running in the specified data directory to end standby mode and begin read-write operations.

`logrotate` mode rotates the server log file. For details on how to use this mode with external log rotation tools, see Section 25.3.

`kill` mode sends a signal to a specified process. This is primarily valuable on Microsoft Windows which does not have a built-in kill command. Use `--help` to see a list of supported signal names.

`register` mode registers the PostgreSQL server as a system service on Microsoft Windows. The `-S` option allows selection of service start type, either “auto” (start service automatically on system startup) or “demand” (start service on demand).

`unregister` mode unregisters a system service on Microsoft Windows. This undoes the effects of the `register` command.

## Options

`-c`  
`--core-files`

Attempt to allow server crashes to produce core files, on platforms where this is possible, by lifting any soft resource limit placed on core files. This is useful in debugging or diagnosing problems by allowing a stack trace to be obtained from a failed server process.

`-D datadir`  
`--pgdata=datadir`

Specifies the file system location of the database configuration files. If this option is omitted, the environment variable `PGDATA` is used.

`-l filename`  
`--log=filename`

Append the server log output to *filename*. If the file does not exist, it is created. The umask is set to 077, so access to the log file is disallowed to other users by default.

`-m mode`  
`--mode=mode`

Specifies the shutdown mode. *mode* can be `smart`, `fast`, or `immediate`, or the first letter of one of these three. If this option is omitted, `fast` is the default.

`-o options`  
`--options=options`

Specifies options to be passed directly to the `postgres` command. `-o` can be specified multiple times, with all the given options being passed through.

The `options` should usually be surrounded by single or double quotes to ensure that they are passed through as a group.

`-o initdb-options`  
`--options=initdb-options`

Specifies options to be passed directly to the `initdb` command. `-o` can be specified multiple times, with all the given options being passed through.

The `initdb-options` should usually be surrounded by single or double quotes to ensure that they are passed through as a group.

`-p path`

Specifies the location of the `postgres` executable. By default the `postgres` executable is taken from the same directory as `pg_ctl`, or failing that, the hard-wired installation directory. It is not necessary to use this option unless you are doing something unusual and get errors that the `postgres` executable was not found.

In `init` mode, this option analogously specifies the location of the `initdb` executable.

`-s`  
`--silent`

Print only errors, no informational messages.

`-t seconds`  
`--timeout=seconds`

Specifies the maximum number of seconds to wait when waiting for an operation to complete (see option `-w`). Defaults to the value of the `PGCTLTIMEOUT` environment variable or, if not set, to 60 seconds.

`-V`  
`--version`

Print the `pg_ctl` version and exit.

`-w`  
`--wait`

Wait for the operation to complete. This is supported for the modes `start`, `stop`, `restart`, `promote`, and `register`, and is the default for those modes.

When waiting, `pg_ctl` repeatedly checks the server's PID file, sleeping for a short amount of time between checks. Startup is considered complete when the PID file indicates that the server is ready to accept connections. Shutdown is considered complete when the server removes the PID file. `pg_ctl` returns an exit code based on the success of the startup or shutdown.

If the operation does not complete within the timeout (see option `-t`), then `pg_ctl` exits with a nonzero exit status. But note that the operation might continue in the background and eventually succeed.

`-W`  
`--no-wait`

Do not wait for the operation to complete. This is the opposite of the option `-w`.

If waiting is disabled, the requested action is triggered, but there is no feedback about its success. In that case, the server log file or an external monitoring system would have to be used to check the progress and success of the operation.

In prior releases of PostgreSQL, this was the default except for the `stop` mode.

`-?`  
`--help`

Show help about `pg_ctl` command line arguments, and exit.

If an option is specified that is valid, but not relevant to the selected operating mode, `pg_ctl` ignores it.

## Options for Windows

`-e source`

Name of the event source for `pg_ctl` to use for logging to the event log when running as a Windows service. The default is `PostgreSQL`. Note that this only controls messages sent from `pg_ctl` itself; once started, the server will use the event source specified by its `event_source` parameter. Should the server fail very early in startup, before that parameter has been set, it might also log using the default event source name `PostgreSQL`.

`-N servicename`

Name of the system service to register. This name will be used as both the service name and the display name. The default is `PostgreSQL`.

`-P password`

Password for the user to run the service as.

`-S start-type`

Start type of the system service. *start-type* can be `auto`, or `demand`, or the first letter of one of these two. If this option is omitted, `auto` is the default.

`-U username`

User name for the user to run the service as. For domain users, use the format `DOMAIN\user-name`.

## Environment

`PGCTLTIMEOUT`

Default limit on the number of seconds to wait when waiting for startup or shutdown to complete. If not set, the default is 60 seconds.

`PGDATA`

Default data directory location.

Most `pg_ctl` modes require knowing the data directory location; therefore, the `-D` option is required unless `PGDATA` is set.

`pg_ctl`, like most other PostgreSQL utilities, also uses the environment variables supported by `libpq` (see Section 34.15).

For additional variables that affect the server, see `postgres`.

## Files

`postmaster.pid`

`pg_ctl` examines this file in the data directory to determine whether the server is currently running.

`postmaster.opts`

If this file exists in the data directory, `pg_ctl` (in `restart` mode) will pass the contents of the file as options to `postgres`, unless overridden by the `-o` option. The contents of this file are also displayed in `status` mode.

## Examples

### Starting the Server

To start the server, waiting until the server is accepting connections:

```
$ pg_ctl start
```

To start the server using port 5433, and running without `fsync`, use:

```
$ pg_ctl -o "-F -p 5433" start
```

### Stopping the Server

To stop the server, use:

```
$ pg_ctl stop
```

The `-m` option allows control over *how* the server shuts down:

```
$ pg_ctl stop -m smart
```

### Restarting the Server

Restarting the server is almost equivalent to stopping the server and starting it again, except that by default, `pg_ctl` saves and reuses the command line options that were passed to the previously-running instance. To restart the server using the same options as before, use:

```
$ pg_ctl restart
```

But if `-o` is specified, that replaces any previous options. To restart using port 5433, disabling `fsync` upon restart:

```
$ pg_ctl -o "-F -p 5433" restart
```

### Showing the Server Status

Here is sample status output from `pg_ctl`:

```
$ pg_ctl status
```

```
pg_ctl: server is running (PID: 13718)
/usr/local/pgsql/bin/postgres "-D" "/usr/local/pgsql/data" "-p"
"5433" "-B" "128"
```

The second line is the command that would be invoked in restart mode.

## See Also

initdb, postgres

---

# pg\_resetwal

`pg_resetwal` — reset the write-ahead log and other control information of a PostgreSQL database cluster

## Synopsis

```
pg_resetwal [ -f | --force ] [ -n | --dry-run ] [option...] [ -D | --pgdata ]datadir
```

## Description

`pg_resetwal` clears the write-ahead log (WAL) and optionally resets some other control information stored in the `pg_control` file. This function is sometimes needed if these files have become corrupted. It should be used only as a last resort, when the server will not start due to such corruption.

After running this command, it should be possible to start the server, but bear in mind that the database might contain inconsistent data due to partially-committed transactions. You should immediately dump your data, run `initdb`, and restore. After restore, check for inconsistencies and repair as needed.

This utility can only be run by the user who installed the server, because it requires read/write access to the data directory. For safety reasons, you must specify the data directory on the command line. `pg_resetwal` does not use the environment variable `PGDATA`.

If `pg_resetwal` complains that it cannot determine valid data for `pg_control`, you can force it to proceed anyway by specifying the `-f` (force) option. In this case plausible values will be substituted for the missing data. Most of the fields can be expected to match, but manual assistance might be needed for the next OID, next transaction ID and epoch, next multitransaction ID and offset, and WAL starting location fields. These fields can be set using the options discussed below. If you are not able to determine correct values for all these fields, `-f` can still be used, but the recovered database must be treated with even more suspicion than usual: an immediate dump and restore is imperative. *Do not* execute any data-modifying operations in the database before you dump, as any such action is likely to make the corruption worse.

## Options

`-f`  
`--force`

Force `pg_resetwal` to proceed even if it cannot determine valid data for `pg_control`, as explained above.

`-n`  
`--dry-run`

The `-n/--dry-run` option instructs `pg_resetwal` to print the values reconstructed from `pg_control` and values about to be changed, and then exit without modifying anything. This is mainly a debugging tool, but can be useful as a sanity check before allowing `pg_resetwal` to proceed for real.

`-V`  
`--version`

Display version information, then exit.

-?  
--help

Show help, then exit.

The following options are only needed when `pg_resetwal` is unable to determine appropriate values by reading `pg_control`. Safe values can be determined as described below. For values that take numeric arguments, hexadecimal values can be specified by using the prefix `0x`.

-c *xid,xid*  
--commit-timestamp-ids=*xid,xid*

Manually set the oldest and newest transaction IDs for which the commit time can be retrieved.

A safe value for the oldest transaction ID for which the commit time can be retrieved (first part) can be determined by looking for the numerically smallest file name in the directory `pg_commit_ts` under the data directory. Conversely, a safe value for the newest transaction ID for which the commit time can be retrieved (second part) can be determined by looking for the numerically greatest file name in the same directory. The file names are in hexadecimal.

-e *xid\_epoch*  
--epoch=*xid\_epoch*

Manually set the next transaction ID's epoch.

The transaction ID epoch is not actually stored anywhere in the database except in the field that is set by `pg_resetwal`, so any value will work so far as the database itself is concerned. You might need to adjust this value to ensure that replication systems such as Slony-I and Skytools work correctly — if so, an appropriate value should be obtainable from the state of the downstream replicated database.

-l *walfile*  
--next-wal-file=*walfile*

Manually set the WAL starting location by specifying the name of the next WAL segment file.

The name of next WAL segment file should be larger than any WAL segment file name currently existing in the directory `pg_wal` under the data directory. These names are also in hexadecimal and have three parts. The first part is the “timeline ID” and should usually be kept the same. For example, if `00000001000000320000004A` is the largest entry in `pg_wal`, use `-l 00000001000000320000004B` or higher.

Note that when using nondefault WAL segment sizes, the numbers in the WAL file names are different from the LSNs that are reported by system functions and system views. This option takes a WAL file name, not an LSN.

### Note

`pg_resetwal` itself looks at the files in `pg_wal` and chooses a default `-l` setting beyond the last existing file name. Therefore, manual adjustment of `-l` should only be needed if you are aware of WAL segment files that are not currently present in `pg_wal`, such as entries in an offline archive; or if the contents of `pg_wal` have been lost entirely.

-m *mxid,mxid*  
--multixact-ids=*mxid,mxid*

Manually set the next and oldest multitransaction ID.



A safe value for the next multitransaction ID (first part) can be determined by looking for the numerically largest file name in the directory `pg_multixact/offsets` under the data directory, adding one, and then multiplying by 65536 (0x10000). Conversely, a safe value for the oldest multitransaction ID (second part of `-m`) can be determined by looking for the numerically smallest file name in the same directory and multiplying by 65536. The file names are in hexadecimal, so the easiest way to do this is to specify the option value in hexadecimal and append four zeroes.

```
-o oid
--next-oid=oid
```

Manually set the next OID.

There is no comparably easy way to determine a next OID that's beyond the largest one in the database, but fortunately it is not critical to get the next-OID setting right.

```
-O mxoff
--multixact-offset=mxoff
```

Manually set the next multitransaction offset.

A safe value can be determined by looking for the numerically largest file name in the directory `pg_multixact/members` under the data directory, adding one, and then multiplying by 52352 (0xCC80). The file names are in hexadecimal. There is no simple recipe such as the ones for other options of appending zeroes.

```
--wal-segsize=wal_segment_size
```

Set the new WAL segment size, in megabytes. The value must be set to a power of 2 between 1 and 1024 (megabytes). See the same option of `initdb` for more information.

### Note

While `pg_resetwal` will set the WAL starting address beyond the latest existing WAL segment file, some segment size changes can cause previous WAL file names to be reused. It is recommended to use `-l` together with this option to manually set the WAL starting address if WAL file name overlap will cause problems with your archiving strategy.

```
-u xid
--oldest-transaction-id=xid
```

Manually set the oldest unfrozen transaction ID.

A safe value can be determined by looking for the numerically smallest file name in the directory `pg_xact` under the data directory and then multiplying by 1048576 (0x100000). Note that the file names are in hexadecimal. It is usually easiest to specify the option value in hexadecimal too. For example, if 0007 is the smallest entry in `pg_xact`, `-u 0x700000` will work (five trailing zeroes provide the proper multiplier).

```
-x xid
--next-transaction-id=xid
```

Manually set the next transaction ID.

A safe value can be determined by looking for the numerically largest file name in the directory `pg_xact` under the data directory, adding one, and then multiplying by 1048576 (0x100000). Note that the file names are in hexadecimal. It is usually easiest to specify the option value in hexadecimal too. For example, if 0011 is the largest entry in `pg_xact`, `-x 0x1200000` will work (five trailing zeroes provide the proper multiplier).

## Environment

PG\_COLOR

Specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are always, auto and never.

## Notes

This command must not be used when the server is running. `pg_resetwal` will refuse to start up if it finds a server lock file in the data directory. If the server crashed then a lock file might have been left behind; in that case you can remove the lock file to allow `pg_resetwal` to run. But before you do so, make doubly certain that there is no server process still alive.

`pg_resetwal` works only with servers of the same major version.

## See Also

`pg_controldata`

---

# pg\_rewind

`pg_rewind` — synchronize a PostgreSQL data directory with another data directory that was forked from it

## Synopsis

```
pg_rewind [option...] { -D | --target-pgdata } directory { --source-pgdata=directory | --source-server=connstr }
```

## Description

`pg_rewind` is a tool for synchronizing a PostgreSQL cluster with another copy of the same cluster, after the clusters' timelines have diverged. A typical scenario is to bring an old primary server back online after failover as a standby that follows the new primary.

After a successful rewind, the state of the target data directory is analogous to a base backup of the source data directory. Unlike taking a new base backup or using a tool like `rsync`, `pg_rewind` does not require comparing or copying unchanged relation blocks in the cluster. Only changed blocks from existing relation files are copied; all other files, including new relation files, configuration files, and WAL segments, are copied in full. As such the rewind operation is significantly faster than other approaches when the database is large and only a small fraction of blocks differ between the clusters.

`pg_rewind` examines the timeline histories of the source and target clusters to determine the point where they diverged, and expects to find WAL in the target cluster's `pg_wal` directory reaching all the way back to the point of divergence. The point of divergence can be found either on the target timeline, the source timeline, or their common ancestor. In the typical failover scenario where the target cluster was shut down soon after the divergence, this is not a problem, but if the target cluster ran for a long time after the divergence, its old WAL files might no longer be present. In this case, you can manually copy them from the WAL archive to the `pg_wal` directory, or run `pg_rewind` with the `-c` option to automatically retrieve them from the WAL archive. The use of `pg_rewind` is not limited to failover, e.g., a standby server can be promoted, run some write transactions, and then rewound to become a standby again.

After running `pg_rewind`, WAL replay needs to complete for the data directory to be in a consistent state. When the target server is started again it will enter archive recovery and replay all WAL generated in the source server from the last checkpoint before the point of divergence. If some of the WAL was no longer available in the source server when `pg_rewind` was run, and therefore could not be copied by the `pg_rewind` session, it must be made available when the target server is started. This can be done by creating a `recovery.signal` file in the target data directory and by configuring a suitable `restore_command` in `postgresql.conf`.

`pg_rewind` requires that the target server either has the `wal_log_hints` option enabled in `postgresql.conf` or data checksums enabled when the cluster was initialized with `initdb`. Neither of these are currently on by default. `full_page_writes` must also be set to `on`, but is enabled by default.

### Warning: Failures While Rewinding

If `pg_rewind` fails while processing, then the data folder of the target is likely not in a state that can be recovered. In such a case, taking a new fresh backup is recommended.

As `pg_rewind` copies configuration files entirely from the source, it may be required to correct the configuration used for recovery before restarting the target server, especially if the target is reintroduced as a standby of the source. If you restart the server after the rewind operation has finished but without configuring recovery, the target may again diverge from the primary.

pg\_rewind will fail immediately if it finds files it cannot write directly to. This can happen for example when the source and the target server use the same file mapping for read-only SSL keys and certificates. If such files are present on the target server it is recommended to remove them before running pg\_rewind. After doing the rewind, some of those files may have been copied from the source, in which case it may be necessary to remove the data copied and restore back the set of links used before the rewind.

## Options

pg\_rewind accepts the following command-line arguments:

`-D directory`  
`--target-pgdata=directory`

This option specifies the target data directory that is synchronized with the source. The target server must be shut down cleanly before running pg\_rewind

`--source-pgdata=directory`

Specifies the file system path to the data directory of the source server to synchronize the target with. This option requires the source server to be cleanly shut down.

`--source-server=connstr`

Specifies a libpq connection string to connect to the source PostgreSQL server to synchronize the target with. The connection must be a normal (non-replication) connection with a role having sufficient permissions to execute the functions used by pg\_rewind on the source server (see Notes section for details) or a superuser role. This option requires the source server to be running and accepting connections.

`-R`  
`--write-recovery-conf`

Create `standby.signal` and append connection settings to `postgresql.auto.conf` in the output directory. `--source-server` is mandatory with this option.

`-n`  
`--dry-run`

Do everything except actually modifying the target directory.

`-N`  
`--no-sync`

By default, pg\_rewind will wait for all files to be written safely to disk. This option causes pg\_rewind to return without waiting, which is faster, but means that a subsequent operating system crash can leave the data directory corrupt. Generally, this option is useful for testing but should not be used on a production installation.

`-P`  
`--progress`

Enables progress reporting. Turning this on will deliver an approximate progress report while copying data from the source cluster.

`-c`  
`--restore-target-wal`

Use `restore_command` defined in the target cluster configuration to retrieve WAL files from the WAL archive if these files are no longer available in the `pg_wal` directory.

`--config-file=filename`

Use the specified main server configuration file for the target cluster. This affects `pg_rewind` when it uses internally the `postgres` command for the rewind operation on this cluster (when retrieving `restore_command` with the option `-c/--restore-target-wal` and when forcing a completion of crash recovery).

`--debug`

Print verbose debugging output that is mostly useful for developers debugging `pg_rewind`.

`--no-ensure-shutdown`

`pg_rewind` requires that the target server is cleanly shut down before rewinding. By default, if the target server is not shut down cleanly, `pg_rewind` starts the target server in single-user mode to complete crash recovery first, and stops it. By passing this option, `pg_rewind` skips this and errors out immediately if the server is not cleanly shut down. Users are expected to handle the situation themselves in that case.

`-V`

`--version`

Display version information, then exit.

`-?`

`--help`

Show help, then exit.

## Environment

When `--source-server` option is used, `pg_rewind` also uses the environment variables supported by `libpq` (see Section 34.15).

The environment variable `PG_COLOR` specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are `always`, `auto` and `never`.

## Notes

When executing `pg_rewind` using an online cluster as source, a role having sufficient permissions to execute the functions used by `pg_rewind` on the source cluster can be used instead of a superuser. Here is how to create such a role, named `rewind_user` here:

```
CREATE USER rewind_user LOGIN;
GRANT EXECUTE ON function pg_catalog.pg_ls_dir(text, boolean,
boolean) TO rewind_user;
GRANT EXECUTE ON function pg_catalog.pg_stat_file(text, boolean) TO
rewind_user;
GRANT EXECUTE ON function pg_catalog.pg_read_binary_file(text) TO
rewind_user;
GRANT EXECUTE ON function pg_catalog.pg_read_binary_file(text,
bigint, bigint, boolean) TO rewind_user;
```

## How It Works

The basic idea is to copy all file system-level changes from the source cluster to the target cluster:

1. Scan the WAL log of the target cluster, starting from the last checkpoint before the point where the source cluster's timeline history forked off from the target cluster. For each WAL record, record

each data block that was touched. This yields a list of all the data blocks that were changed in the target cluster, after the source cluster forked off. If some of the WAL files are no longer available, try re-running `pg_rewind` with the `-c` option to search for the missing files in the WAL archive.

2. Copy all those changed blocks from the source cluster to the target cluster, either using direct file system access (`--source-pgdata`) or SQL (`--source-server`). Relation files are now in a state equivalent to the moment of the last completed checkpoint prior to the point at which the WAL timelines of the source and target diverged plus the current state on the source of any blocks changed on the target after that divergence.
3. Copy all other files, including new relation files, WAL segments, `pg_xact`, and configuration files from the source cluster to the target cluster. Similarly to base backups, the contents of the directories `pg_dynshmem/`, `pg_notify/`, `pg_replslot/`, `pg_serial/`, `pg_snapshots/`, `pg_stat_tmp/`, and `pg_subtrans/` are omitted from the data copied from the source cluster. The files `backup_label`, `tablespace_map`, `pg_internal.init`, `postmaster.opts`, and `postmaster.pid`, as well as any file or directory beginning with `pgsql_tmp`, are omitted.
4. Create a `backup_label` file to begin WAL replay at the checkpoint created at failover and configure the `pg_control` file with a minimum consistency LSN defined as the result of `pg_current_wal_insert_lsn()` when rewinding from a live source or the last checkpoint LSN when rewinding from a stopped source.
5. When starting the target, PostgreSQL replays all the required WAL, resulting in a data directory in a consistent state.

---

# pg\_test\_fsync

pg\_test\_fsync — determine fastest wal\_sync\_method for PostgreSQL

## Synopsis

pg\_test\_fsync [*option*...]

## Description

pg\_test\_fsync is intended to give you a reasonable idea of what the fastest wal\_sync\_method is on your specific system, as well as supplying diagnostic information in the event of an identified I/O problem. However, differences shown by pg\_test\_fsync might not make any significant difference in real database throughput, especially since many database servers are not speed-limited by their write-ahead logs. pg\_test\_fsync reports average file sync operation time in microseconds for each wal\_sync\_method, which can also be used to inform efforts to optimize the value of commit\_delay.

## Options

pg\_test\_fsync accepts the following command-line options:

-f

--filename

Specifies the file name to write test data in. This file should be in the same file system that the pg\_wal directory is or will be placed in. (pg\_wal contains the WAL files.) The default is pg\_test\_fsync.out in the current directory.

-s

--secs-per-test

Specifies the number of seconds for each test. The more time per test, the greater the test's accuracy, but the longer it takes to run. The default is 5 seconds, which allows the program to complete in under 2 minutes.

-V

--version

Print the pg\_test\_fsync version and exit.

-?

--help

Show help about pg\_test\_fsync command line arguments, and exit.

## Environment

The environment variable PG\_COLOR specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are always, auto and never.

## See Also

postgres

---

# pg\_test\_timing

pg\_test\_timing — measure timing overhead

## Synopsis

pg\_test\_timing [*option*...]

## Description

pg\_test\_timing is a tool to measure the timing overhead on your system and confirm that the system time never moves backwards. Systems that are slow to collect timing data can give less accurate EXPLAIN ANALYZE results.

## Options

pg\_test\_timing accepts the following command-line options:

-d *duration*  
--duration=*duration*

Specifies the test duration, in seconds. Longer durations give slightly better accuracy, and are more likely to discover problems with the system clock moving backwards. The default test duration is 3 seconds.

-V  
--version

Print the pg\_test\_timing version and exit.

-?  
--help

Show help about pg\_test\_timing command line arguments, and exit.

## Usage

### Interpreting Results

Good results will show most (>90%) individual timing calls take less than one microsecond. Average per loop overhead will be even lower, below 100 nanoseconds. This example from an Intel i7-860 system using a TSC clock source shows excellent performance:

```
Testing timing overhead for 3 seconds.
Per loop time including overhead: 35.96 ns
Histogram of timing durations:
  < us    % of total    count
    1      96.40465    80435604
    2       3.59518     2999652
    4       0.00015        126
    8       0.00002         13
   16       0.00000          2
```

Note that different units are used for the per loop time than the histogram. The loop can have resolution within a few nanoseconds (ns), while the individual timing calls can only resolve down to one microsecond (us).



## Measuring Executor Timing Overhead

When the query executor is running a statement using `EXPLAIN ANALYZE`, individual operations are timed as well as showing a summary. The overhead of your system can be checked by counting rows with the `psql` program:

```
CREATE TABLE t AS SELECT * FROM generate_series(1,100000);
\timing
SELECT COUNT(*) FROM t;
EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT COUNT(*) FROM t;
```

The i7-860 system measured runs the count query in 9.8 ms while the `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` version takes 16.6 ms, each processing just over 100,000 rows. That 6.8 ms difference means the timing overhead per row is 68 ns, about twice what `pg_test_timing` estimated it would be. Even that relatively small amount of overhead is making the fully timed count statement take almost 70% longer. On more substantial queries, the timing overhead would be less problematic.

## Changing Time Sources

On some newer Linux systems, it's possible to change the clock source used to collect timing data at any time. A second example shows the slowdown possible from switching to the slower `acpi_pm` time source, on the same system used for the fast results above:

```
# cat /sys/devices/system/clocksource/clocksource0/
available_clocksource
tsc hpet acpi_pm
# echo acpi_pm > /sys/devices/system/clocksource/clocksource0/
current_clocksource
# pg_test_timing
Per loop time including overhead: 722.92 ns
Histogram of timing durations:
  < us    % of total    count
    1      27.84870    1155682
    2      72.05956    2990371
    4       0.07810     3241
    8       0.01357     563
   16       0.00007        3
```

In this configuration, the sample `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` above takes 115.9 ms. That's 1061 ns of timing overhead, again a small multiple of what's measured directly by this utility. That much timing overhead means the actual query itself is only taking a tiny fraction of the accounted for time, most of it is being consumed in overhead instead. In this configuration, any `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` totals involving many timed operations would be inflated significantly by timing overhead.

FreeBSD also allows changing the time source on the fly, and it logs information about the timer selected during boot:

```
# dmesg | grep "Timecounter"
Timecounter "ACPI-fast" frequency 3579545 Hz quality 900
Timecounter "i8254" frequency 1193182 Hz quality 0
Timecounters tick every 10.000 msec
Timecounter "TSC" frequency 2531787134 Hz quality 800
# sysctl kern.timecounter.hardware=TSC
kern.timecounter.hardware: ACPI-fast -> TSC
```

Other systems may only allow setting the time source on boot. On older Linux systems the "clock" kernel setting is the only way to make this sort of change. And even on some more recent ones,

the only option you'll see for a clock source is "jiffies". Jiffies are the older Linux software clock implementation, which can have good resolution when it's backed by fast enough timing hardware, as in this example:

```
$ cat /sys/devices/system/clocksource/clocksource0/
available_clocksource
jiffies
$ dmesg | grep time.c
time.c: Using 3.579545 MHz WALL PM GTOD PIT/TSC timer.
time.c: Detected 2400.153 MHz processor.
$ pg_test_timing
Testing timing overhead for 3 seconds.
Per timing duration including loop overhead: 97.75 ns
Histogram of timing durations:
  < us    % of total    count
    1      90.23734    27694571
    2       9.75277     2993204
    4       0.00981       3010
    8       0.00007        22
   16       0.00000         1
   32       0.00000         1
```

## Clock Hardware and Timing Accuracy

Collecting accurate timing information is normally done on computers using hardware clocks with various levels of accuracy. With some hardware the operating systems can pass the system clock time almost directly to programs. A system clock can also be derived from a chip that simply provides timing interrupts, periodic ticks at some known time interval. In either case, operating system kernels provide a clock source that hides these details. But the accuracy of that clock source and how quickly it can return results varies based on the underlying hardware.

Inaccurate time keeping can result in system instability. Test any change to the clock source very carefully. Operating system defaults are sometimes made to favor reliability over best accuracy. And if you are using a virtual machine, look into the recommended time sources compatible with it. Virtual hardware faces additional difficulties when emulating timers, and there are often per operating system settings suggested by vendors.

The Time Stamp Counter (TSC) clock source is the most accurate one available on current generation CPUs. It's the preferred way to track the system time when it's supported by the operating system and the TSC clock is reliable. There are several ways that TSC can fail to provide an accurate timing source, making it unreliable. Older systems can have a TSC clock that varies based on the CPU temperature, making it unusable for timing. Trying to use TSC on some older multicore CPUs can give a reported time that's inconsistent among multiple cores. This can result in the time going backwards, a problem this program checks for. And even the newest systems can fail to provide accurate TSC timing with very aggressive power saving configurations.

Newer operating systems may check for the known TSC problems and switch to a slower, more stable clock source when they are seen. If your system supports TSC time but doesn't default to that, it may be disabled for a good reason. And some operating systems may not detect all the possible problems correctly, or will allow using TSC even in situations where it's known to be inaccurate.

The High Precision Event Timer (HPET) is the preferred timer on systems where it's available and TSC is not accurate. The timer chip itself is programmable to allow up to 100 nanosecond resolution, but you may not see that much accuracy in your system clock.

Advanced Configuration and Power Interface (ACPI) provides a Power Management (PM) Timer, which Linux refers to as the `acpi_pm`. The clock derived from `acpi_pm` will at best provide 300 nanosecond resolution.

Timers used on older PC hardware include the 8254 Programmable Interval Timer (PIT), the real-time clock (RTC), the Advanced Programmable Interrupt Controller (APIC) timer, and the Cyclone timer. These timers aim for millisecond resolution.

## See Also

EXPLAIN

---

# pg\_upgrade

pg\_upgrade — upgrade a PostgreSQL server instance

## Synopsis

```
pg_upgrade -b oldbindir [-B newbindir] -d oldconfigdir -D newconfigdir [option...]
```

## Description

pg\_upgrade (formerly called pg\_migrator) allows data stored in PostgreSQL data files to be upgraded to a later PostgreSQL major version without the data dump/restore typically required for major version upgrades, e.g., from 12.14 to 13.10 or from 14.9 to 15.5. It is not required for minor version upgrades, e.g., from 12.7 to 12.8 or from 14.1 to 14.5.

Major PostgreSQL releases regularly add new features that often change the layout of the system tables, but the internal data storage format rarely changes. pg\_upgrade uses this fact to perform rapid upgrades by creating new system tables and simply reusing the old user data files. If a future major release ever changes the data storage format in a way that makes the old data format unreadable, pg\_upgrade will not be usable for such upgrades. (The community will attempt to avoid such situations.)

pg\_upgrade does its best to make sure the old and new clusters are binary-compatible, e.g., by checking for compatible compile-time settings, including 32/64-bit binaries. It is important that any external modules are also binary compatible, though this cannot be checked by pg\_upgrade.

pg\_upgrade supports upgrades from 9.2.X and later to the current major release of PostgreSQL, including snapshot and beta releases.

## Options

pg\_upgrade accepts the following command-line arguments:

`-b bindir`

`--old-bindir=bindir`

the old PostgreSQL executable directory; environment variable PGBINOLD

`-B bindir`

`--new-bindir=bindir`

the new PostgreSQL executable directory; default is the directory where pg\_upgrade resides; environment variable PGBINNEW

`-c`

`--check`

check clusters only, don't change any data

`-d configdir`

`--old-datadir=configdir`

the old database cluster configuration directory; environment variable PGDATAOLD

`-D configdir`

`--new-datadir=configdir`

the new database cluster configuration directory; environment variable PGDATANEW

`-j njobs`  
`--jobs=njobs`

number of simultaneous processes or threads to use

`-k`  
`--link`

use hard links instead of copying files to the new cluster

`-N`  
`--no-sync`

By default, `pg_upgrade` will wait for all files of the upgraded cluster to be written safely to disk. This option causes `pg_upgrade` to return without waiting, which is faster, but means that a subsequent operating system crash can leave the data directory corrupt. Generally, this option is useful for testing but should not be used on a production installation.

`-o options`  
`--old-options options`

options to be passed directly to the old `postgres` command; multiple option invocations are appended

`-O options`  
`--new-options options`

options to be passed directly to the new `postgres` command; multiple option invocations are appended

`-p port`  
`--old-port=port`

the old cluster port number; environment variable `PGPORTOLD`

`-P port`  
`--new-port=port`

the new cluster port number; environment variable `PGPORTNEW`

`-r`  
`--retain`

retain SQL and log files even after successful completion

`-s dir`  
`--socketdir=dir`

directory to use for postmaster sockets during upgrade; default is current working directory; environment variable `PGSOCKETDIR`

`-U username`  
`--username=username`

cluster's install user name; environment variable `PGUSER`

`-v`  
`--verbose`

enable verbose internal logging

`-V`  
`--version`

display version information, then exit

`--clone`

Use efficient file cloning (also known as “reflinks” on some systems) instead of copying files to the new cluster. This can result in near-instantaneous copying of the data files, giving the speed advantages of `-k/--link` while leaving the old cluster untouched.

File cloning is only supported on some operating systems and file systems. If it is selected but not supported, the `pg_upgrade` run will error. At present, it is supported on Linux (kernel 4.5 or later) with Btrfs and XFS (on file systems created with reflink support), and on macOS with APFS.

`--copy`

Copy files to the new cluster. This is the default. (See also `--link` and `--clone`.)

`-?`  
`--help`

show help, then exit

## Usage

These are the steps to perform an upgrade with `pg_upgrade`:

### 1. Optionally move the old cluster

If you are using a version-specific installation directory, e.g., `/opt/PostgreSQL/16`, you do not need to move the old cluster. The graphical installers all use version-specific installation directories.

If your installation directory is not version-specific, e.g., `/usr/local/pgsql`, it is necessary to move the current PostgreSQL install directory so it does not interfere with the new PostgreSQL installation. Once the current PostgreSQL server is shut down, it is safe to rename the PostgreSQL installation directory; assuming the old directory is `/usr/local/pgsql`, you can do:

```
mv /usr/local/pgsql /usr/local/pgsql.old
```

to rename the directory.

### 2. For source installs, build the new version

Build the new PostgreSQL source with `configure` flags that are compatible with the old cluster. `pg_upgrade` will check `pg_controldata` to make sure all settings are compatible before starting the upgrade.

### 3. Install the new PostgreSQL binaries

Install the new server's binaries and support files. `pg_upgrade` is included in a default installation.

For source installs, if you wish to install the new server in a custom location, use the `prefix` variable:

```
make prefix=/usr/local/pgsql.new install
```

**4. Initialize the new PostgreSQL cluster**

Initialize the new cluster using `initdb`. Again, use compatible `initdb` flags that match the old cluster. Many prebuilt installers do this step automatically. There is no need to start the new cluster.

**5. Install extension shared object files**

Many extensions and custom modules, whether from `contrib` or another source, use shared object files (or DLLs), e.g., `pgcrypto.so`. If the old cluster used these, shared object files matching the new server binary must be installed in the new cluster, usually via operating system commands. Do not load the schema definitions, e.g., `CREATE EXTENSION pgcrypto`, because these will be duplicated from the old cluster. If extension updates are available, `pg_upgrade` will report this and create a script that can be run later to update them.

**6. Copy custom full-text search files**

Copy any custom full text search files (dictionary, synonym, thesaurus, stop words) from the old to the new cluster.

**7. Adjust authentication**

`pg_upgrade` will connect to the old and new servers several times, so you might want to set authentication to `peer` in `pg_hba.conf` or use a `~/.pgpass` file (see Section 34.16).

**8. Stop both servers**

Make sure both database servers are stopped using, on Unix, e.g.:

```
pg_ctl -D /opt/PostgreSQL/12 stop
pg_ctl -D /opt/PostgreSQL/16 stop
```

or on Windows, using the proper service names:

```
NET STOP postgresql-12
NET STOP postgresql-16
```

Streaming replication and log-shipping standby servers must be running during this shutdown so they receive all changes.

**9. Prepare for standby server upgrades**

If you are upgrading standby servers using methods outlined in section Step 11, verify that the old standby servers are caught up by running `pg_controldata` against the old primary and standby clusters. Verify that the “Latest checkpoint location” values match in all clusters. Also, make sure `wal_level` is not set to `minimal` in the `postgresql.conf` file on the new primary cluster.

**10. Run pg\_upgrade**

Always run the `pg_upgrade` binary of the new server, not the old one. `pg_upgrade` requires the specification of the old and new cluster's data and executable (`bin`) directories. You can also specify user and port values, and whether you want the data files linked or cloned instead of the default copy behavior.

If you use link mode, the upgrade will be much faster (no file copying) and use less disk space, but you will not be able to access your old cluster once you start the new cluster after the upgrade. Link mode also requires that the old and new cluster data directories be in the same file system. (Tablespaces and `pg_wal` can be on different file systems.) Clone mode provides the same speed and disk space advantages but does not cause the old cluster to be unusable once the new cluster is

started. Clone mode also requires that the old and new data directories be in the same file system. This mode is only available on certain operating systems and file systems.

The `--jobs` option allows multiple CPU cores to be used for copying/linking of files and to dump and restore database schemas in parallel; a good place to start is the maximum of the number of CPU cores and tablespaces. This option can dramatically reduce the time to upgrade a multi-database server running on a multiprocessor machine.

For Windows users, you must be logged into an administrative account, and then start a shell as the `postgres` user and set the proper path:

```
RUNAS /USER:postgres "CMD.EXE"  
SET PATH=%PATH%;C:\Program Files\PostgreSQL\16\bin;
```

and then run `pg_upgrade` with quoted directories, e.g.:

```
pg_upgrade.exe  
  --old-datadir "C:/Program Files/PostgreSQL/12/data"  
  --new-datadir "C:/Program Files/PostgreSQL/16/data"  
  --old-bindir "C:/Program Files/PostgreSQL/12/bin"  
  --new-bindir "C:/Program Files/PostgreSQL/16/bin"
```

Once started, `pg_upgrade` will verify the two clusters are compatible and then do the upgrade. You can use `pg_upgrade --check` to perform only the checks, even if the old server is still running. `pg_upgrade --check` will also outline any manual adjustments you will need to make after the upgrade. If you are going to be using link or clone mode, you should use the option `--link` or `--clone` with `--check` to enable mode-specific checks. `pg_upgrade` requires write permission in the current directory.

Obviously, no one should be accessing the clusters during the upgrade. `pg_upgrade` defaults to running servers on port 50432 to avoid unintended client connections. You can use the same port number for both clusters when doing an upgrade because the old and new clusters will not be running at the same time. However, when checking an old running server, the old and new port numbers must be different.

If an error occurs while restoring the database schema, `pg_upgrade` will exit and you will have to revert to the old cluster as outlined in Step 17 below. To try `pg_upgrade` again, you will need to modify the old cluster so the `pg_upgrade` schema restore succeeds. If the problem is a `contrib` module, you might need to uninstall the `contrib` module from the old cluster and install it in the new cluster after the upgrade, assuming the module is not being used to store user data.

## 11. Upgrade streaming replication and log-shipping standby servers

If you used link mode and have Streaming Replication (see Section 27.2.5) or Log-Shipping (see Section 27.2) standby servers, you can follow these steps to quickly upgrade them. You will not be running `pg_upgrade` on the standby servers, but rather `rsync` on the primary. Do not start any servers yet.

If you did *not* use link mode, do not have or do not want to use `rsync`, or want an easier solution, skip the instructions in this section and simply recreate the standby servers once `pg_upgrade` completes and the new primary is running.

### 1. Install the new PostgreSQL binaries on standby servers

Make sure the new binaries and support files are installed on all standby servers.



**2. Make sure the new standby data directories do *not* exist**

Make sure the new standby data directories do *not* exist or are empty. If `initdb` was run, delete the standby servers' new data directories.

**3. Install extension shared object files**

Install the same extension shared object files on the new standbys that you installed in the new primary cluster.

**4. Stop standby servers**

If the standby servers are still running, stop them now using the above instructions.

**5. Save configuration files**

Save any configuration files from the old standbys' configuration directories you need to keep, e.g., `postgresql.conf` (and any files included by it), `postgresql.auto.conf`, `pg_hba.conf`, because these will be overwritten or removed in the next step.

**6. Run `rsync`**

When using link mode, standby servers can be quickly upgraded using `rsync`. To accomplish this, from a directory on the primary server that is above the old and new database cluster directories, run this on the *primary* for each standby server:

```
rsync --archive --delete --hard-links --size-only --no-inc-recursive old_cluster new_cluster remote_dir
```

where `old_cluster` and `new_cluster` are relative to the current directory on the primary, and `remote_dir` is *above* the old and new cluster directories on the standby. The directory structure under the specified directories on the primary and standbys must match. Consult the `rsync` manual page for details on specifying the remote directory, e.g.,

```
rsync --archive --delete --hard-links --size-only --no-inc-recursive /opt/PostgreSQL/12 \  
    /opt/PostgreSQL/16 standby.example.com:/opt/PostgreSQL
```

You can verify what the command will do using `rsync`'s `--dry-run` option. While `rsync` must be run on the primary for at least one standby, it is possible to run `rsync` on an upgraded standby to upgrade other standbys, as long as the upgraded standby has not been started.

What this does is to record the links created by `pg_upgrade`'s link mode that connect files in the old and new clusters on the primary server. It then finds matching files in the standby's old cluster and creates links for them in the standby's new cluster. Files that were not linked on the primary are copied from the primary to the standby. (They are usually small.) This provides rapid standby upgrades. Unfortunately, `rsync` needlessly copies files associated with temporary and unlogged tables because these files don't normally exist on standby servers.

If you have tablespaces, you will need to run a similar `rsync` command for each tablespace directory, e.g.:

```
rsync --archive --delete --hard-links --size-only --no-inc-recursive /vol1/pg_tblsp/Pg_12_201909212 \  
    /vol1/pg_tblsp/Pg_16_201909212
```

```
    /voll/pg_tblsp/PG_16_202307071 standby.example.com:/  
voll/pg_tblsp
```

If you have relocated `pg_wal` outside the data directories, `rsync` must be run on those directories too.

#### 7. **Configure streaming replication and log-shipping standby servers**

Configure the servers for log shipping. (You do not need to run `pg_backup_start()` and `pg_backup_stop()` or take a file system backup as the standbys are still synchronized with the primary.) Replication slots are not copied and must be recreated.

#### 12. **Restore `pg_hba.conf`**

If you modified `pg_hba.conf`, restore its original settings. It might also be necessary to adjust other configuration files in the new cluster to match the old cluster, e.g., `postgresql.conf` (and any files included by it), `postgresql.auto.conf`.

#### 13. **Start the new server**

The new server can now be safely started, and then any rsync'ed standby servers.

#### 14. **Post-upgrade processing**

If any post-upgrade processing is required, `pg_upgrade` will issue warnings as it completes. It will also generate script files that must be run by the administrator. The script files will connect to each database that needs post-upgrade processing. Each script should be run using:

```
psql --username=postgres --file=script.sql postgres
```

The scripts can be run in any order and can be deleted once they have been run.

### **Caution**

In general it is unsafe to access tables referenced in rebuild scripts until the rebuild scripts have run to completion; doing so could yield incorrect results or poor performance. Tables not referenced in rebuild scripts can be accessed immediately.

#### 15. **Statistics**

Because optimizer statistics are not transferred by `pg_upgrade`, you will be instructed to run a command to regenerate that information at the end of the upgrade. You might need to set connection parameters to match your new cluster.

#### 16. **Delete old cluster**

Once you are satisfied with the upgrade, you can delete the old cluster's data directories by running the script mentioned when `pg_upgrade` completes. (Automatic deletion is not possible if you have user-defined tablespaces inside the old data directory.) You can also delete the old installation directories (e.g., `bin`, `share`).

#### 17. **Reverting to old cluster**

If, after running `pg_upgrade`, you wish to revert to the old cluster, there are several options:

- If the `--check` option was used, the old cluster was unmodified; it can be restarted.
- If the `--link` option was *not* used, the old cluster was unmodified; it can be restarted.

- If the `--link` option was used, the data files might be shared between the old and new cluster:
  - If `pg_upgrade` aborted before linking started, the old cluster was unmodified; it can be restarted.
  - If you did *not* start the new cluster, the old cluster was unmodified except that, when linking started, a `.old` suffix was appended to `$PGDATA/global/pg_control`. To reuse the old cluster, remove the `.old` suffix from `$PGDATA/global/pg_control`; you can then restart the old cluster.
- If you did start the new cluster, it has written to shared files and it is unsafe to use the old cluster. The old cluster will need to be restored from backup in this case.

## Notes

`pg_upgrade` creates various working files, such as schema dumps, stored within `pg_upgrade_output.d` in the directory of the new cluster. Each run creates a new subdirectory named with a timestamp formatted as per ISO 8601 (`%Y%m%dT%H%M%S`), where all its generated files are stored. `pg_upgrade_output.d` and its contained files will be removed automatically if `pg_upgrade` completes successfully; but in the event of trouble, the files there may provide useful debugging information.

`pg_upgrade` launches short-lived postmasters in the old and new data directories. Temporary Unix socket files for communication with these postmasters are, by default, made in the current working directory. In some situations the path name for the current directory might be too long to be a valid socket name. In that case you can use the `-s` option to put the socket files in some directory with a shorter path name. For security, be sure that that directory is not readable or writable by any other users. (This is not supported on Windows.)

All failure, rebuild, and reindex cases will be reported by `pg_upgrade` if they affect your installation; post-upgrade scripts to rebuild tables and indexes will be generated automatically. If you are trying to automate the upgrade of many clusters, you should find that clusters with identical database schemas require the same post-upgrade steps for all cluster upgrades; this is because the post-upgrade steps are based on the database schemas, and not user data.

For deployment testing, create a schema-only copy of the old cluster, insert dummy data, and upgrade that.

`pg_upgrade` does not support upgrading of databases containing table columns using these `reg*` OID-referencing system data types:

```
regcollation
regconfig
regdictionary
regnamespace
regoper
regoperator
regproc
regprocedure
```

(`regclass`, `regrole`, and `regtype` can be upgraded.)

If you want to use link mode and you do not want your old cluster to be modified when the new cluster is started, consider using the clone mode. If that is not available, make a copy of the old cluster and upgrade that in link mode. To make a valid copy of the old cluster, use `rsync` to create a dirty copy of the old cluster while the server is running, then shut down the old server and run `rsync --checksum` again to update the copy with any changes to make it consistent. (`--checksum` is necessary because `rsync` only has file modification-time granularity of one second.) You might want to exclude some files, e.g., `postmaster.pid`, as documented in Section 26.3.3. If your file system

supports file system snapshots or copy-on-write file copies, you can use that to make a backup of the old cluster and tablespaces, though the snapshot and copies must be created simultaneously or while the database server is down.

## See Also

initdb, pg\_ctl, pg\_dump, postgres

---

# pg\_waldump

`pg_waldump` — display a human-readable rendering of the write-ahead log of a PostgreSQL database cluster

## Synopsis

```
pg_waldump [option...] [startseg [endseg]]
```

## Description

`pg_waldump` displays the write-ahead log (WAL) and is mainly useful for debugging or educational purposes.

This utility can only be run by the user who installed the server, because it requires read-only access to the data directory.

## Options

The following command-line options control the location and format of the output:

*startseg*

Start reading at the specified WAL segment file. This implicitly determines the path in which files will be searched for, and the timeline to use.

*endseg*

Stop after reading the specified WAL segment file.

`-b`

`--bkp-details`

Output detailed information about backup blocks.

`-B block`

`--block=block`

Only display records that modify the given block. The relation must also be provided with `--relation` or `-R`.

`-e end`

`--end=end`

Stop reading at the specified WAL location, instead of reading to the end of the log stream.

`-f`

`--follow`

After reaching the end of valid WAL, keep polling once per second for new WAL to appear.

`-F fork`

`--fork=fork`

If provided, only display records that modify blocks in the given fork. The valid values are `main` for the main fork, `fsm` for the free space map, `vm` for the visibility map, and `init` for the init fork.

`-n limit`  
`--limit=limit`

Display the specified number of records, then stop.

`-p path`  
`--path=path`

Specifies a directory to search for WAL segment files or a directory with a `pg_wal` subdirectory that contains such files. The default is to search in the current directory, the `pg_wal` subdirectory of the current directory, and the `pg_wal` subdirectory of PGDATA.

`-q`  
`--quiet`

Do not print any output, except for errors. This option can be useful when you want to know whether a range of WAL records can be successfully parsed but don't care about the record contents.

`-r rmgr`  
`--rmgr=rmgr`

Only display records generated by the specified resource manager. You can specify the option multiple times to select multiple resource managers. If `list` is passed as name, print a list of valid resource manager names, and exit.

Extensions may define custom resource managers, but `pg_waldump` does not load the extension module and therefore does not recognize custom resource managers by name. Instead, you can specify the custom resource managers as `custom###` where "###" is the three-digit resource manager ID. Names of this form will always be considered valid.

`-R tblspc/db/rel`  
`--relation=tblspc/db/rel`

Only display records that modify blocks in the given relation. The relation is specified with tablespace OID, database OID, and relfilenode separated by slashes, for example `1234/12345/12345`. This is the same format used for relations in the program's output.

`-s start`  
`--start=start`

WAL location at which to start reading. The default is to start reading the first valid WAL record found in the earliest file found.

`-t timeline`  
`--timeline=timeline`

Timeline from which to read WAL records. The default is to use the value in `startseg`, if that is specified; otherwise, the default is 1. The value can be specified in decimal or hexadecimal, for example `17` or `0x11`.

`-V`  
`--version`

Print the `pg_waldump` version and exit.

`-w`  
`--fullpage`

Only display records that include full page images.

`-x xid`  
`--xid=xid`

Only display records marked with the given transaction ID.

`-z`  
`--stats[=record]`

Display summary statistics (number and size of records and full-page images) instead of individual records. Optionally generate statistics per-record instead of per-rmgr.

If `pg_waldump` is terminated by signal `SIGINT` (**Control+C**), the summary of the statistics computed is displayed up to the termination point. This operation is not supported on Windows.

`--save-fullpage=save_path`

Save full page images found in the WAL records to the `save_path` directory. The images saved are subject to the same filtering and limiting criteria as the records displayed.

The full page images are saved with the following file name format: `TIMELINE-LSN.RELTABLESPACE.DATOID.RELNODE.BLKNOFORK`. The file names are composed of the following parts:

Component	Description
TIMELINE	The timeline of the WAL segment file where the record is located formatted as one 8-character hexadecimal number <code>%08X</code>
LSN	The LSN of the record with this image, formatted as two 8-character hexadecimal numbers <code>%08X-%08X</code>
RELTABLESPACE	tablespace OID of the block
DATOID	database OID of the block
RELNODE	filenode of the block
BLKNO	block number of the block
FORK	The name of the fork the full page image came from, such as <code>_main</code> , <code>_fsm</code> , <code>_vm</code> , or <code>_init</code> .

`-?`  
`--help`

Show help about `pg_waldump` command line arguments, and exit.

## Environment

`PGDATA`

Data directory; see also the `-p` option.

`PG_COLOR`

Specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are `always`, `auto` and `never`.

## Notes

Can give wrong results when the server is running.

Only the specified timeline is displayed (or the default, if none is specified). Records in other timelines are ignored.

pg\_waldump cannot read WAL files with suffix `.partial`. If those files need to be read, `.partial` suffix needs to be removed from the file name.

## See Also

Section 30.6



---

# postgres

postgres — PostgreSQL database server

## Synopsis

`postgres [option...]`

## Description

`postgres` is the PostgreSQL database server. In order for a client application to access a database it connects (over a network or locally) to a running `postgres` instance. The `postgres` instance then starts a separate server process to handle the connection.

One `postgres` instance always manages the data of exactly one database cluster. A database cluster is a collection of databases that is stored at a common file system location (the “data area”). More than one `postgres` instance can run on a system at one time, so long as they use different data areas and different communication ports (see below). When `postgres` starts it needs to know the location of the data area. The location must be specified by the `-D` option or the `PGDATA` environment variable; there is no default. Typically, `-D` or `PGDATA` points directly to the data area directory created by `initdb`. Other possible file layouts are discussed in Section 20.2.

By default `postgres` starts in the foreground and prints log messages to the standard error stream. In practical applications `postgres` should be started as a background process, perhaps at boot time.

The `postgres` command can also be called in single-user mode. The primary use for this mode is during bootstrapping by `initdb`. Sometimes it is used for debugging or disaster recovery; note that running a single-user server is not truly suitable for debugging the server, since no realistic interprocess communication and locking will happen. When invoked in single-user mode from the shell, the user can enter queries and the results will be printed to the screen, but in a form that is more useful for developers than end users. In the single-user mode, the session user will be set to the user with ID 1, and implicit superuser powers are granted to this user. This user does not actually have to exist, so the single-user mode can be used to manually recover from certain kinds of accidental damage to the system catalogs.

## Options

`postgres` accepts the following command-line arguments. For a detailed discussion of the options consult Chapter 20. You can save typing most of these options by setting up a configuration file. Some (safe) options can also be set from the connecting client in an application-dependent way to apply only for that session. For example, if the environment variable `PGOPTIONS` is set, then libpq-based clients will pass that string to the server, which will interpret it as `postgres` command-line options.

## General Purpose

`-B nbuffers`

Sets the number of shared buffers for use by the server processes. The default value of this parameter is chosen automatically by `initdb`. Specifying this option is equivalent to setting the `shared_buffers` configuration parameter.

`-c name=value`

Sets a named run-time parameter. The configuration parameters supported by PostgreSQL are described in Chapter 20. Most of the other command line options are in fact short forms of such a parameter assignment. `-c` can appear multiple times to set multiple parameters.

`-C name`

Prints the value of the named run-time parameter, and exits. (See the `-c` option above for details.) This returns values from `postgresql.conf`, modified by any parameters supplied in this invocation. It does not reflect parameters supplied when the cluster was started.

This can be used on a running server for most parameters. However, the server must be shut down for some runtime-computed parameters (e.g., `shared_memory_size`, `shared_memory_size_in_huge_pages`, and `wal_segment_size`).

This option is meant for other programs that interact with a server instance, such as `pg_ctl`, to query configuration parameter values. User-facing applications should instead use `SHOW` or the `pg_settings` view.

`-d debug-level`

Sets the debug level. The higher this value is set, the more debugging output is written to the server log. Values are from 1 to 5. It is also possible to pass `-d 0` for a specific session, which will prevent the server log level of the parent `postgres` process from being propagated to this session.

`-D datadir`

Specifies the file system location of the database configuration files. See Section 20.2 for details.

`-e`

Sets the default date style to “European”, that is DMY ordering of input date fields. This also causes the day to be printed before the month in certain date output formats. See Section 8.5 for more information.

`-F`

Disables `fsync` calls for improved performance, at the risk of data corruption in the event of a system crash. Specifying this option is equivalent to disabling the `fsync` configuration parameter. Read the detailed documentation before using this!

`-h hostname`

Specifies the IP host name or address on which `postgres` is to listen for TCP/IP connections from client applications. The value can also be a comma-separated list of addresses, or `*` to specify listening on all available interfaces. An empty value specifies not listening on any IP addresses, in which case only Unix-domain sockets can be used to connect to the server. Defaults to listening only on localhost. Specifying this option is equivalent to setting the `listen_addresses` configuration parameter.

`-i`

Allows remote clients to connect via TCP/IP (Internet domain) connections. Without this option, only local connections are accepted. This option is equivalent to setting `listen_addresses` to `*` in `postgresql.conf` or via `-h`.

This option is deprecated since it does not allow access to the full functionality of `listen_addresses`. It's usually better to set `listen_addresses` directly.

`-k directory`

Specifies the directory of the Unix-domain socket on which `postgres` is to listen for connections from client applications. The value can also be a comma-separated list of directories. An empty value specifies not listening on any Unix-domain sockets, in which case only TCP/IP sockets can be used to connect to the server. The default value is normally `/tmp`, but that can be

changed at build time. Specifying this option is equivalent to setting the `unix_socket_directories` configuration parameter.

`-l`

Enables secure connections using SSL. PostgreSQL must have been compiled with support for SSL for this option to be available. For more information on using SSL, refer to Section 19.9.

`-N max-connections`

Sets the maximum number of client connections that this server will accept. The default value of this parameter is chosen automatically by `initdb`. Specifying this option is equivalent to setting the `max_connections` configuration parameter.

`-p port`

Specifies the TCP/IP port or local Unix domain socket file extension on which `postgres` is to listen for connections from client applications. Defaults to the value of the `PGPORT` environment variable, or if `PGPORT` is not set, then defaults to the value established during compilation (normally 5432). If you specify a port other than the default port, then all client applications must specify the same port using either command-line options or `PGPORT`.

`-s`

Print time information and other statistics at the end of each command. This is useful for benchmarking or for use in tuning the number of buffers.

`-S work-mem`

Specifies the base amount of memory to be used by sorts and hash tables before resorting to temporary disk files. See the description of the `work_mem` configuration parameter in Section 20.4.1.

`-V`

`--version`

Print the `postgres` version and exit.

`--name=value`

Sets a named run-time parameter; a shorter form of `-c`.

`--describe-config`

This option dumps out the server's internal configuration variables, descriptions, and defaults in tab-delimited COPY format. It is designed primarily for use by administration tools.

`-?`

`--help`

Show help about `postgres` command line arguments, and exit.

## Semi-Internal Options

The options described here are used mainly for debugging purposes, and in some cases to assist with recovery of severely damaged databases. There should be no reason to use them in a production database setup. They are listed here only for use by PostgreSQL system developers. Furthermore, these options might change or be removed in a future release without notice.

`-f { s | i | o | b | t | n | m | h }`

Forbids the use of particular scan and join methods: `s` and `i` disable sequential and index scans respectively, `o`, `b` and `t` disable index-only scans, bitmap index scans, and TID scans respectively, while `n`, `m`, and `h` disable nested-loop, merge and hash joins respectively.

Neither sequential scans nor nested-loop joins can be disabled completely; the `-fs` and `-fn` options simply discourage the optimizer from using those plan types if it has any other alternative.

`-O`

Allows the structure of system tables to be modified. This is used by `initdb`.

`-P`

Ignore system indexes when reading system tables, but still update the indexes when modifying the tables. This is useful when recovering from damaged system indexes.

`-t pa[rser] | pl[anner] | e[xecutor]`

Print timing statistics for each query relating to each of the major system modules. This option cannot be used together with the `-s` option.

`-T`

This option is for debugging problems that cause a server process to die abnormally. The ordinary strategy in this situation is to notify all other server processes that they must terminate, by sending them SIGQUIT signals. With this option, SIGABRT will be sent instead, resulting in production of core dump files.

`-v protocol`

Specifies the version number of the frontend/backend protocol to be used for a particular session. This option is for internal use only.

`-W seconds`

A delay of this many seconds occurs when a new server process is started, after it conducts the authentication procedure. This is intended to give an opportunity to attach to the server process with a debugger.

## Options for Single-User Mode

The following options only apply to the single-user mode (see Single-User Mode below).

`--single`

Selects the single-user mode. This must be the first argument on the command line.

`database`

Specifies the name of the database to be accessed. This must be the last argument on the command line. If it is omitted it defaults to the user name.

`-E`

Echo all commands to standard output before executing them.

`-j`

Use semicolon followed by two newlines, rather than just newline, as the command entry terminator.

`-r filename`

Send all server log output to *filename*. This option is only honored when supplied as a command-line option.

## Environment

### PGCLIENTENCODING

Default character encoding used by clients. (The clients can override this individually.) This value can also be set in the configuration file.

### PGDATA

Default data directory location

### PGDATESTYLE

Default value of the `DateStyle` run-time parameter. (The use of this environment variable is deprecated.)

### PGPORT

Default port number (preferably set in the configuration file)

## Diagnostics

A failure message mentioning `semget` or `shmget` probably indicates you need to configure your kernel to provide adequate shared memory and semaphores. For more discussion see Section 19.4. You might be able to postpone reconfiguring your kernel by decreasing `shared_buffers` to reduce the shared memory consumption of PostgreSQL, and/or by reducing `max_connections` to reduce the semaphore consumption.

A failure message suggesting that another server is already running should be checked carefully, for example by using the command

```
$ ps ax | grep postgres
```

or

```
$ ps -ef | grep postgres
```

depending on your system. If you are certain that no conflicting server is running, you can remove the lock file mentioned in the message and try again.

A failure message indicating inability to bind to a port might indicate that that port is already in use by some non-PostgreSQL process. You might also get this error if you terminate `postgres` and immediately restart it using the same port; in this case, you must simply wait a few seconds until the operating system closes the port before trying again. Finally, you might get this error if you specify a port number that your operating system considers to be reserved. For example, many versions of Unix consider port numbers under 1024 to be “trusted” and only permit the Unix superuser to access them.

## Notes

The utility command `pg_ctl` can be used to start and shut down the `postgres` server safely and comfortably.

If at all possible, *do not* use `SIGKILL` to kill the main `postgres` server. Doing so will prevent `postgres` from freeing the system resources (e.g., shared memory and semaphores) that it holds before terminating. This might cause problems for starting a fresh `postgres` run.

To terminate the `postgres` server normally, the signals `SIGTERM`, `SIGINT`, or `SIGQUIT` can be used. The first will wait for all clients to terminate before quitting, the second will forcefully disconnect

all clients, and the third will quit immediately without proper shutdown, resulting in a recovery run during restart.

The `SIGHUP` signal will reload the server configuration files. It is also possible to send `SIGHUP` to an individual server process, but that is usually not sensible.

To cancel a running query, send the `SIGINT` signal to the process running that command. To terminate a backend process cleanly, send `SIGTERM` to that process. See also `pg_cancel_backend` and `pg_terminate_backend` in Section 9.27.2 for the SQL-callable equivalents of these two actions.

The postgres server uses `SIGQUIT` to tell subordinate server processes to terminate without normal cleanup. This signal *should not* be used by users. It is also unwise to send `SIGKILL` to a server process — the main postgres process will interpret this as a crash and will force all the sibling processes to quit as part of its standard crash-recovery procedure.

## Bugs

The `--` options will not work on FreeBSD or OpenBSD. Use `-c` instead. This is a bug in the affected operating systems; a future release of PostgreSQL will provide a workaround if this is not fixed.

## Single-User Mode

To start a single-user mode server, use a command like

```
postgres --single -D /usr/local/pgsql/data other-options
my_database
```

Provide the correct path to the database directory with `-D`, or make sure that the environment variable `PGDATA` is set. Also specify the name of the particular database you want to work in.

Normally, the single-user mode server treats newline as the command entry terminator; there is no intelligence about semicolons, as there is in `psql`. To continue a command across multiple lines, you must type backslash just before each newline except the last one. The backslash and adjacent newline are both dropped from the input command. Note that this will happen even when within a string literal or comment.

But if you use the `-j` command line switch, a single newline does not terminate command entry; instead, the sequence semicolon-newline-newline does. That is, type a semicolon immediately followed by a completely empty line. Backslash-newline is not treated specially in this mode. Again, there is no intelligence about such a sequence appearing within a string literal or comment.

In either input mode, if you type a semicolon that is not just before or part of a command entry terminator, it is considered a command separator. When you do type a command entry terminator, the multiple statements you've entered will be executed as a single transaction.

To quit the session, type EOF (**Control+D**, usually). If you've entered any text since the last command entry terminator, then EOF will be taken as a command entry terminator, and another EOF will be needed to exit.

Note that the single-user mode server does not provide sophisticated line-editing features (no command history, for example). Single-user mode also does not do any background processing, such as automatic checkpoints or replication.

## Examples

To start postgres in the background using default values, type:

```
$ nohup postgres >logfile 2>&1 </dev/null &
```

To start postgres with a specific port, e.g., 1234:

```
$ postgres -p 1234
```

To connect to this server using psql, specify this port with the -p option:

```
$ psql -p 1234
```

or set the environment variable PGPORT:

```
$ export PGPORT=1234
$ psql
```

Named run-time parameters can be set in either of these styles:

```
$ postgres -c work_mem=1234
$ postgres --work-mem=1234
```

Either form overrides whatever setting might exist for `work_mem` in `postgresql.conf`. Notice that underscores in parameter names can be written as either underscore or dash on the command line. Except for short-term experiments, it's probably better practice to edit the setting in `postgresql.conf` than to rely on a command-line switch to set a parameter.

## See Also

`initdb`, `pg_ctl`

---

# Part VII. Internals

This part contains assorted information that might be of use to PostgreSQL developers.

---



---

## Table of Contents

52. Overview of PostgreSQL Internals .....	2242
52.1. The Path of a Query .....	2242
52.2. How Connections Are Established .....	2242
52.3. The Parser Stage .....	2243
52.3.1. Parser .....	2243
52.3.2. Transformation Process .....	2243
52.4. The PostgreSQL Rule System .....	2244
52.5. Planner/Optimizer .....	2244
52.5.1. Generating Possible Plans .....	2245
52.6. Executor .....	2245
53. System Catalogs .....	2247
53.1. Overview .....	2247
53.2. pg_aggregate .....	2249
53.3. pg_am .....	2250
53.4. pg_amop .....	2251
53.5. pg_amproc .....	2252
53.6. pg_attrdef .....	2252
53.7. pg_attribute .....	2253
53.8. pg_authid .....	2255
53.9. pg_auth_members .....	2256
53.10. pg_cast .....	2256
53.11. pg_class .....	2257
53.12. pg_collation .....	2260
53.13. pg_constraint .....	2260
53.14. pg_conversion .....	2262
53.15. pg_database .....	2263
53.16. pg_db_role_setting .....	2264
53.17. pg_default_acl .....	2264
53.18. pg_depend .....	2265
53.19. pg_description .....	2267
53.20. pg_enum .....	2267
53.21. pg_event_trigger .....	2268
53.22. pg_extension .....	2268
53.23. pg_foreign_data_wrapper .....	2269
53.24. pg_foreign_server .....	2270
53.25. pg_foreign_table .....	2270
53.26. pg_index .....	2270
53.27. pg_inherits .....	2272
53.28. pg_init_privs .....	2272
53.29. pg_language .....	2273
53.30. pg_largeobject .....	2274
53.31. pg_largeobject_metadata .....	2274
53.32. pg_namespace .....	2275
53.33. pg_opclass .....	2275
53.34. pg_operator .....	2276
53.35. pg_opfamily .....	2276
53.36. pg_parameter_acl .....	2277
53.37. pg_partitioned_table .....	2277
53.38. pg_policy .....	2278
53.39. pg_proc .....	2279
53.40. pg_publication .....	2281
53.41. pg_publication_namespace .....	2282
53.42. pg_publication_rel .....	2282
53.43. pg_range .....	2282
53.44. pg_replication_origin .....	2283

53.45. pg_rewrite .....	2283
53.46. pg_seclabel .....	2284
53.47. pg_sequence .....	2285
53.48. pg_shdepend .....	2285
53.49. pg_shdescription .....	2286
53.50. pg_shseclabel .....	2287
53.51. pg_statistic .....	2287
53.52. pg_statistic_ext .....	2288
53.53. pg_statistic_ext_data .....	2289
53.54. pg_subscription .....	2290
53.55. pg_subscription_rel .....	2291
53.56. pg_tablespace .....	2291
53.57. pg_transform .....	2292
53.58. pg_trigger .....	2292
53.59. pg_ts_config .....	2294
53.60. pg_ts_config_map .....	2294
53.61. pg_ts_dict .....	2295
53.62. pg_ts_parser .....	2295
53.63. pg_ts_template .....	2296
53.64. pg_type .....	2296
53.65. pg_user_mapping .....	2300
54. System Views .....	2301
54.1. Overview .....	2301
54.2. pg_available_extensions .....	2302
54.3. pg_available_extension_versions .....	2302
54.4. pg_backend_memory_contexts .....	2303
54.5. pg_config .....	2304
54.6. pg_cursors .....	2304
54.7. pg_file_settings .....	2305
54.8. pg_group .....	2305
54.9. pg_hba_file_rules .....	2306
54.10. pg_ident_file_mappings .....	2307
54.11. pg_indexes .....	2307
54.12. pg_locks .....	2308
54.13. pg_matviews .....	2310
54.14. pg_policies .....	2311
54.15. pg_prepared_statements .....	2311
54.16. pg_prepared_xacts .....	2312
54.17. pg_publication_tables .....	2313
54.18. pg_replication_origin_status .....	2313
54.19. pg_replication_slots .....	2314
54.20. pg_roles .....	2315
54.21. pg_rules .....	2316
54.22. pg_seclabels .....	2316
54.23. pg_sequences .....	2317
54.24. pg_settings .....	2317
54.25. pg_shadow .....	2320
54.26. pg_shmem_allocations .....	2320
54.27. pg_stats .....	2321
54.28. pg_stats_ext .....	2322
54.29. pg_stats_ext_exprs .....	2323
54.30. pg_tables .....	2325
54.31. pg_timezone_abbrevs .....	2325
54.32. pg_timezone_names .....	2326
54.33. pg_user .....	2326
54.34. pg_user_mappings .....	2327
54.35. pg_views .....	2327
55. Frontend/Backend Protocol .....	2329

55.1. Overview .....	2329
55.1.1. Messaging Overview .....	2329
55.1.2. Extended Query Overview .....	2330
55.1.3. Formats and Format Codes .....	2330
55.2. Message Flow .....	2330
55.2.1. Start-up .....	2331
55.2.2. Simple Query .....	2333
55.2.3. Extended Query .....	2336
55.2.4. Pipelining .....	2338
55.2.5. Function Call .....	2339
55.2.6. COPY Operations .....	2339
55.2.7. Asynchronous Operations .....	2340
55.2.8. Canceling Requests in Progress .....	2341
55.2.9. Termination .....	2342
55.2.10. SSL Session Encryption .....	2342
55.2.11. GSSAPI Session Encryption .....	2343
55.3. SASL Authentication .....	2344
55.3.1. SCRAM-SHA-256 Authentication .....	2344
55.4. Streaming Replication Protocol .....	2345
55.5. Logical Streaming Replication Protocol .....	2354
55.5.1. Logical Streaming Replication Parameters .....	2354
55.5.2. Logical Replication Protocol Messages .....	2355
55.5.3. Logical Replication Protocol Message Flow .....	2355
55.6. Message Data Types .....	2356
55.7. Message Formats .....	2356
55.8. Error and Notice Message Fields .....	2373
55.9. Logical Replication Message Formats .....	2375
55.10. Summary of Changes since Protocol 2.0 .....	2384
56. PostgreSQL Coding Conventions .....	2386
56.1. Formatting .....	2386
56.2. Reporting Errors Within the Server .....	2386
56.3. Error Message Style Guide .....	2390
56.4. Miscellaneous Coding Conventions .....	2394
57. Native Language Support .....	2396
57.1. For the Translator .....	2396
57.1.1. Requirements .....	2396
57.1.2. Concepts .....	2396
57.1.3. Creating and Maintaining Message Catalogs .....	2397
57.1.4. Editing the PO Files .....	2398
57.2. For the Programmer .....	2398
57.2.1. Mechanics .....	2398
57.2.2. Message-Writing Guidelines .....	2400
58. Writing a Procedural Language Handler .....	2402
59. Writing a Foreign Data Wrapper .....	2404
59.1. Foreign Data Wrapper Functions .....	2404
59.2. Foreign Data Wrapper Callback Routines .....	2404
59.2.1. FDW Routines for Scanning Foreign Tables .....	2405
59.2.2. FDW Routines for Scanning Foreign Joins .....	2407
59.2.3. FDW Routines for Planning Post-Scan/Join Processing .....	2407
59.2.4. FDW Routines for Updating Foreign Tables .....	2408
59.2.5. FDW Routines for TRUNCATE .....	2414
59.2.6. FDW Routines for Row Locking .....	2415
59.2.7. FDW Routines for EXPLAIN .....	2416
59.2.8. FDW Routines for ANALYZE .....	2417
59.2.9. FDW Routines for IMPORT FOREIGN SCHEMA .....	2417
59.2.10. FDW Routines for Parallel Execution .....	2418
59.2.11. FDW Routines for Asynchronous Execution .....	2419
59.2.12. FDW Routines for Reparameterization of Paths .....	2420

59.3. Foreign Data Wrapper Helper Functions .....	2420
59.4. Foreign Data Wrapper Query Planning .....	2421
59.5. Row Locking in Foreign Data Wrappers .....	2424
60. Writing a Table Sampling Method .....	2426
60.1. Sampling Method Support Functions .....	2426
61. Writing a Custom Scan Provider .....	2429
61.1. Creating Custom Scan Paths .....	2429
61.1.1. Custom Scan Path Callbacks .....	2430
61.2. Creating Custom Scan Plans .....	2430
61.2.1. Custom Scan Plan Callbacks .....	2431
61.3. Executing Custom Scans .....	2431
61.3.1. Custom Scan Execution Callbacks .....	2432
62. Genetic Query Optimizer .....	2434
62.1. Query Handling as a Complex Optimization Problem .....	2434
62.2. Genetic Algorithms .....	2434
62.3. Genetic Query Optimization (GEQO) in PostgreSQL .....	2435
62.3.1. Generating Possible Plans with GEQO .....	2436
62.3.2. Future Implementation Tasks for PostgreSQL GEQO .....	2436
62.4. Further Reading .....	2437
63. Table Access Method Interface Definition .....	2438
64. Index Access Method Interface Definition .....	2439
64.1. Basic API Structure for Indexes .....	2439
64.2. Index Access Method Functions .....	2442
64.3. Index Scanning .....	2448
64.4. Index Locking Considerations .....	2449
64.5. Index Uniqueness Checks .....	2450
64.6. Index Cost Estimation Functions .....	2451
65. Generic WAL Records .....	2455
66. Custom WAL Resource Managers .....	2457
67. B-Tree Indexes .....	2459
67.1. Introduction .....	2459
67.2. Behavior of B-Tree Operator Classes .....	2459
67.3. B-Tree Support Functions .....	2460
67.4. Implementation .....	2463
67.4.1. B-Tree Structure .....	2463
67.4.2. Bottom-up Index Deletion .....	2463
67.4.3. Deduplication .....	2464
68. GiST Indexes .....	2466
68.1. Introduction .....	2466
68.2. Built-in Operator Classes .....	2466
68.3. Extensibility .....	2469
68.4. Implementation .....	2482
68.4.1. GiST Index Build Methods .....	2482
68.5. Examples .....	2482
69. SP-GiST Indexes .....	2484
69.1. Introduction .....	2484
69.2. Built-in Operator Classes .....	2484
69.3. Extensibility .....	2486
69.4. Implementation .....	2495
69.4.1. SP-GiST Limits .....	2495
69.4.2. SP-GiST Without Node Labels .....	2496
69.4.3. “All-the-Same” Inner Tuples .....	2496
69.5. Examples .....	2496
70. GIN Indexes .....	2497
70.1. Introduction .....	2497
70.2. Built-in Operator Classes .....	2497
70.3. Extensibility .....	2498
70.4. Implementation .....	2500

70.4.1. GIN Fast Update Technique .....	2501
70.4.2. Partial Match Algorithm .....	2501
70.5. GIN Tips and Tricks .....	2502
70.6. Limitations .....	2502
70.7. Examples .....	2503
71. BRIN Indexes .....	2504
71.1. Introduction .....	2504
71.1.1. Index Maintenance .....	2504
71.2. Built-in Operator Classes .....	2505
71.2.1. Operator Class Parameters .....	2512
71.3. Extensibility .....	2512
72. Hash Indexes .....	2517
72.1. Overview .....	2517
72.2. Implementation .....	2518
73. Database Physical Storage .....	2519
73.1. Database File Layout .....	2519
73.2. TOAST .....	2521
73.2.1. Out-of-Line, On-Disk TOAST Storage .....	2522
73.2.2. Out-of-Line, In-Memory TOAST Storage .....	2523
73.3. Free Space Map .....	2524
73.4. Visibility Map .....	2524
73.5. The Initialization Fork .....	2525
73.6. Database Page Layout .....	2525
73.6.1. Table Row Layout .....	2527
73.7. Heap-Only Tuples (HOT) .....	2528
74. Transaction Processing .....	2529
74.1. Transactions and Identifiers .....	2529
74.2. Transactions and Locking .....	2529
74.3. Subtransactions .....	2529
74.4. Two-Phase Transactions .....	2530
75. System Catalog Declarations and Initial Contents .....	2531
75.1. System Catalog Declaration Rules .....	2531
75.2. System Catalog Initial Data .....	2532
75.2.1. Data File Format .....	2532
75.2.2. OID Assignment .....	2533
75.2.3. OID Reference Lookup .....	2534
75.2.4. Automatic Creation of Array Types .....	2535
75.2.5. Recipes for Editing Data Files .....	2536
75.3. BKI File Format .....	2537
75.4. BKI Commands .....	2537
75.5. Structure of the Bootstrap BKI File .....	2538
75.6. BKI Example .....	2539
76. How the Planner Uses Statistics .....	2540
76.1. Row Estimation Examples .....	2540
76.2. Multivariate Statistics Examples .....	2545
76.2.1. Functional Dependencies .....	2545
76.2.2. Multivariate N-Distinct Counts .....	2547
76.2.3. MCV Lists .....	2547
76.3. Planner Statistics and Security .....	2549
77. Backup Manifest Format .....	2550
77.1. Backup Manifest Top-level Object .....	2550
77.2. Backup Manifest File Object .....	2550
77.3. Backup Manifest WAL Range Object .....	2551

---

# Chapter 52. Overview of PostgreSQL Internals

## Author

This chapter originated as part of [sim98] Stefan Simkovics' Master's Thesis prepared at Vienna University of Technology under the direction of O.Univ.Prof.Dr. Georg Gottlob and Univ.Ass. Mag. Katrin Seyr.

This chapter gives an overview of the internal structure of the backend of PostgreSQL. After having read the following sections you should have an idea of how a query is processed. This chapter is intended to help the reader understand the general sequence of operations that occur within the backend from the point at which a query is received, to the point at which the results are returned to the client.

## 52.1. The Path of a Query

Here we give a short overview of the stages a query has to pass to obtain a result.

1. A connection from an application program to the PostgreSQL server has to be established. The application program transmits a query to the server and waits to receive the results sent back by the server.
2. The *parser stage* checks the query transmitted by the application program for correct syntax and creates a *query tree*.
3. The *rewrite system* takes the query tree created by the parser stage and looks for any *rules* (stored in the *system catalogs*) to apply to the query tree. It performs the transformations given in the *rule bodies*.

One application of the rewrite system is in the realization of *views*. Whenever a query against a view (i.e., a *virtual table*) is made, the rewrite system rewrites the user's query to a query that accesses the *base tables* given in the *view definition* instead.

4. The *planner/optimizer* takes the (rewritten) query tree and creates a *query plan* that will be the input to the *executor*.

It does so by first creating all possible *paths* leading to the same result. For example if there is an index on a relation to be scanned, there are two paths for the scan. One possibility is a simple sequential scan and the other possibility is to use the index. Next the cost for the execution of each path is estimated and the cheapest path is chosen. The cheapest path is expanded into a complete plan that the executor can use.

5. The executor recursively steps through the *plan tree* and retrieves rows in the way represented by the plan. The executor makes use of the *storage system* while scanning relations, performs *sorts* and *joins*, evaluates *qualifications* and finally hands back the rows derived.

In the following sections we will cover each of the above listed items in more detail to give a better understanding of PostgreSQL's internal control and data structures.

## 52.2. How Connections Are Established

PostgreSQL implements a “process per user” client/server model. In this model, every *client process* connects to exactly one *backend process*. As we do not know ahead of time how many connections will be made, we have to use a “supervisor process” that spawns a new backend process every time a

connection is requested. This supervisor process is called *postmaster* and listens at a specified TCP/IP port for incoming connections. Whenever it detects a request for a connection, it spawns a new backend process. Those backend processes communicate with each other and with other processes of the *instance* using *semaphores* and *shared memory* to ensure data integrity throughout concurrent data access.

The client process can be any program that understands the PostgreSQL protocol described in Chapter 55. Many clients are based on the C-language library libpq, but several independent implementations of the protocol exist, such as the Java JDBC driver.

Once a connection is established, the client process can send a query to the backend process it's connected to. The query is transmitted using plain text, i.e., there is no parsing done in the client. The backend process parses the query, creates an *execution plan*, executes the plan, and returns the retrieved rows to the client by transmitting them over the established connection.

## 52.3. The Parser Stage

The *parser stage* consists of two parts:

- The *parser* defined in `gram.y` and `scan.l` is built using the Unix tools bison and flex.
- The *transformation process* does modifications and augmentations to the data structures returned by the parser.

### 52.3.1. Parser

The parser has to check the query string (which arrives as plain text) for valid syntax. If the syntax is correct a *parse tree* is built up and handed back; otherwise an error is returned. The parser and lexer are implemented using the well-known Unix tools bison and flex.

The *lexer* is defined in the file `scan.l` and is responsible for recognizing *identifiers*, the *SQL key words* etc. For every key word or identifier that is found, a *token* is generated and handed to the parser.

The parser is defined in the file `gram.y` and consists of a set of *grammar rules* and *actions* that are executed whenever a rule is fired. The code of the actions (which is actually C code) is used to build up the parse tree.

The file `scan.l` is transformed to the C source file `scan.c` using the program flex and `gram.y` is transformed to `gram.c` using bison. After these transformations have taken place a normal C compiler can be used to create the parser. Never make any changes to the generated C files as they will be overwritten the next time flex or bison is called.

#### Note

The mentioned transformations and compilations are normally done automatically using the *makefiles* shipped with the PostgreSQL source distribution.

A detailed description of bison or the grammar rules given in `gram.y` would be beyond the scope of this manual. There are many books and documents dealing with flex and bison. You should be familiar with bison before you start to study the grammar given in `gram.y` otherwise you won't understand what happens there.

### 52.3.2. Transformation Process

The parser stage creates a parse tree using only fixed rules about the syntactic structure of SQL. It does not make any lookups in the system catalogs, so there is no possibility to understand the detailed semantics of the requested operations. After the parser completes, the *transformation process* takes the tree handed back by the parser as input and does the semantic interpretation needed to understand

which tables, functions, and operators are referenced by the query. The data structure that is built to represent this information is called the *query tree*.

The reason for separating raw parsing from semantic analysis is that system catalog lookups can only be done within a transaction, and we do not wish to start a transaction immediately upon receiving a query string. The raw parsing stage is sufficient to identify the transaction control commands (BEGIN, ROLLBACK, etc.), and these can then be correctly executed without any further analysis. Once we know that we are dealing with an actual query (such as SELECT or UPDATE), it is okay to start a transaction if we're not already in one. Only then can the transformation process be invoked.

The query tree created by the transformation process is structurally similar to the raw parse tree in most places, but it has many differences in detail. For example, a FuncCall node in the parse tree represents something that looks syntactically like a function call. This might be transformed to either a FuncExpr or Aggref node depending on whether the referenced name turns out to be an ordinary function or an aggregate function. Also, information about the actual data types of columns and expression results is added to the query tree.

## 52.4. The PostgreSQL Rule System

PostgreSQL supports a powerful *rule system* for the specification of *views* and ambiguous *view updates*. Originally the PostgreSQL rule system consisted of two implementations:

- The first one worked using *row level* processing and was implemented deep in the *executor*. The rule system was called whenever an individual row had been accessed. This implementation was removed in 1995 when the last official release of the Berkeley Postgres project was transformed into Postgres95.
- The second implementation of the rule system is a technique called *query rewriting*. The *rewrite system* is a module that exists between the *parser stage* and the *planner/optimizer*. This technique is still implemented.

The query rewriter is discussed in some detail in Chapter 41, so there is no need to cover it here. We will only point out that both the input and the output of the rewriter are query trees, that is, there is no change in the representation or level of semantic detail in the trees. Rewriting can be thought of as a form of macro expansion.

## 52.5. Planner/Optimizer

The task of the *planner/optimizer* is to create an optimal execution plan. A given SQL query (and hence, a query tree) can be actually executed in a wide variety of different ways, each of which will produce the same set of results. If it is computationally feasible, the query optimizer will examine each of these possible execution plans, ultimately selecting the execution plan that is expected to run the fastest.

### Note

In some situations, examining each possible way in which a query can be executed would take an excessive amount of time and memory. In particular, this occurs when executing queries involving large numbers of join operations. In order to determine a reasonable (not necessarily optimal) query plan in a reasonable amount of time, PostgreSQL uses a *Genetic Query Optimizer* (see Chapter 62) when the number of joins exceeds a threshold (see `geqo_threshold`).

The planner's search procedure actually works with data structures called *paths*, which are simply cut-down representations of plans containing only as much information as the planner needs to make its decisions. After the cheapest path is determined, a full-fledged *plan tree* is built to pass to the executor. This represents the desired execution plan in sufficient detail for the executor to run it. In the rest of this section we'll ignore the distinction between paths and plans.



## 52.5.1. Generating Possible Plans

The planner/optimizer starts by generating plans for scanning each individual relation (table) used in the query. The possible plans are determined by the available indexes on each relation. There is always the possibility of performing a sequential scan on a relation, so a sequential scan plan is always created. Assume an index is defined on a relation (for example a B-tree index) and a query contains the restriction `relation.attribute OPR constant`. If `relation.attribute` happens to match the key of the B-tree index and `OPR` is one of the operators listed in the index's *operator class*, another plan is created using the B-tree index to scan the relation. If there are further indexes present and the restrictions in the query happen to match a key of an index, further plans will be considered. Index scan plans are also generated for indexes that have a sort ordering that can match the query's `ORDER BY` clause (if any), or a sort ordering that might be useful for merge joining (see below).

If the query requires joining two or more relations, plans for joining relations are considered after all feasible plans have been found for scanning single relations. The three available join strategies are:

- *nested loop join*: The right relation is scanned once for every row found in the left relation. This strategy is easy to implement but can be very time consuming. (However, if the right relation can be scanned with an index scan, this can be a good strategy. It is possible to use values from the current row of the left relation as keys for the index scan of the right.)
- *merge join*: Each relation is sorted on the join attributes before the join starts. Then the two relations are scanned in parallel, and matching rows are combined to form join rows. This kind of join is attractive because each relation has to be scanned only once. The required sorting might be achieved either by an explicit sort step, or by scanning the relation in the proper order using an index on the join key.
- *hash join*: the right relation is first scanned and loaded into a hash table, using its join attributes as hash keys. Next the left relation is scanned and the appropriate values of every row found are used as hash keys to locate the matching rows in the table.

When the query involves more than two relations, the final result must be built up by a tree of join steps, each with two inputs. The planner examines different possible join sequences to find the cheapest one.

If the query uses fewer than `geqo_threshold` relations, a near-exhaustive search is conducted to find the best join sequence. The planner preferentially considers joins between any two relations for which there exists a corresponding join clause in the `WHERE` qualification (i.e., for which a restriction like `where rel1.attr1=rel2.attr2` exists). Join pairs with no join clause are considered only when there is no other choice, that is, a particular relation has no available join clauses to any other relation. All possible plans are generated for every join pair considered by the planner, and the one that is (estimated to be) the cheapest is chosen.

When `geqo_threshold` is exceeded, the join sequences considered are determined by heuristics, as described in Chapter 62. Otherwise the process is the same.

The finished plan tree consists of sequential or index scans of the base relations, plus nested-loop, merge, or hash join nodes as needed, plus any auxiliary steps needed, such as sort nodes or aggregate-function calculation nodes. Most of these plan node types have the additional ability to do *selection* (discarding rows that do not meet a specified Boolean condition) and *projection* (computation of a derived column set based on given column values, that is, evaluation of scalar expressions where needed). One of the responsibilities of the planner is to attach selection conditions from the `WHERE` clause and computation of required output expressions to the most appropriate nodes of the plan tree.

## 52.6. Executor

The *executor* takes the plan created by the planner/optimizer and recursively processes it to extract the required set of rows. This is essentially a demand-pull pipeline mechanism. Each time a plan node is called, it must deliver one more row, or report that it is done delivering rows.

To provide a concrete example, assume that the top node is a `MergeJoin` node. Before any merge can be done two rows have to be fetched (one from each subplan). So the executor recursively calls itself to process the subplans (it starts with the subplan attached to `lefttree`). The new top node (the top node of the left subplan) is, let's say, a `Sort` node and again recursion is needed to obtain an input row. The child node of the `Sort` might be a `SeqScan` node, representing actual reading of a table. Execution of this node causes the executor to fetch a row from the table and return it up to the calling node. The `Sort` node will repeatedly call its child to obtain all the rows to be sorted. When the input is exhausted (as indicated by the child node returning a `NULL` instead of a row), the `Sort` code performs the sort, and finally is able to return its first output row, namely the first one in sorted order. It keeps the remaining rows stored so that it can deliver them in sorted order in response to later demands.

The `MergeJoin` node similarly demands the first row from its right subplan. Then it compares the two rows to see if they can be joined; if so, it returns a join row to its caller. On the next call, or immediately if it cannot join the current pair of inputs, it advances to the next row of one table or the other (depending on how the comparison came out), and again checks for a match. Eventually, one subplan or the other is exhausted, and the `MergeJoin` node returns `NULL` to indicate that no more join rows can be formed.

Complex queries can involve many levels of plan nodes, but the general approach is the same: each node computes and returns its next output row each time it is called. Each node is also responsible for applying any selection or projection expressions that were assigned to it by the planner.

The executor mechanism is used to evaluate all five basic SQL query types: `SELECT`, `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, and `MERGE`. For `SELECT`, the top-level executor code only needs to send each row returned by the query plan tree off to the client. `INSERT . . . SELECT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, and `MERGE` are effectively `SELECT`s under a special top-level plan node called `ModifyTable`.

`INSERT . . . SELECT` feeds the rows up to `ModifyTable` for insertion. For `UPDATE`, the planner arranges that each computed row includes all the updated column values, plus the *TID* (tuple ID, or row ID) of the original target row; this data is fed up to the `ModifyTable` node, which uses the information to create a new updated row and mark the old row deleted. For `DELETE`, the only column that is actually returned by the plan is the *TID*, and the `ModifyTable` node simply uses the *TID* to visit each target row and mark it deleted. For `MERGE`, the planner joins the source and target relations, and includes all column values required by any of the `WHEN` clauses, plus the *TID* of the target row; this data is fed up to the `ModifyTable` node, which uses the information to work out which `WHEN` clause to execute, and then inserts, updates or deletes the target row, as required.

A simple `INSERT . . . VALUES` command creates a trivial plan tree consisting of a single `Result` node, which computes just one result row, feeding that up to `ModifyTable` to perform the insertion.

---

# Chapter 53. System Catalogs

The system catalogs are the place where a relational database management system stores schema metadata, such as information about tables and columns, and internal bookkeeping information. PostgreSQL's system catalogs are regular tables. You can drop and recreate the tables, add columns, insert and update values, and severely mess up your system that way. Normally, one should not change the system catalogs by hand, there are normally SQL commands to do that. (For example, `CREATE DATABASE` inserts a row into the `pg_database` catalog — and actually creates the database on disk.) There are some exceptions for particularly esoteric operations, but many of those have been made available as SQL commands over time, and so the need for direct manipulation of the system catalogs is ever decreasing.

## 53.1. Overview

Table 53.1 lists the system catalogs. More detailed documentation of each catalog follows below.

Most system catalogs are copied from the template database during database creation and are thereafter database-specific. A few catalogs are physically shared across all databases in a cluster; these are noted in the descriptions of the individual catalogs.

**Table 53.1. System Catalogs**

Catalog Name	Purpose
<code>pg_aggregate</code>	aggregate functions
<code>pg_am</code>	relation access methods
<code>pg_amop</code>	access method operators
<code>pg_amproc</code>	access method support functions
<code>pg_attrdef</code>	column default values
<code>pg_attribute</code>	table columns (“attributes”)
<code>pg_authid</code>	authorization identifiers (roles)
<code>pg_auth_members</code>	authorization identifier membership relationships
<code>pg_cast</code>	casts (data type conversions)
<code>pg_class</code>	tables, indexes, sequences, views (“relations”)
<code>pg_collation</code>	collations (locale information)
<code>pg_constraint</code>	check constraints, unique constraints, primary key constraints, foreign key constraints
<code>pg_conversion</code>	encoding conversion information
<code>pg_database</code>	databases within this database cluster
<code>pg_db_role_setting</code>	per-role and per-database settings
<code>pg_default_acl</code>	default privileges for object types
<code>pg_depend</code>	dependencies between database objects
<code>pg_description</code>	descriptions or comments on database objects
<code>pg_enum</code>	enum label and value definitions
<code>pg_event_trigger</code>	event triggers
<code>pg_extension</code>	installed extensions
<code>pg_foreign_data_wrapper</code>	foreign-data wrapper definitions
<code>pg_foreign_server</code>	foreign server definitions

Catalog Name	Purpose
pg_foreign_table	additional foreign table information
pg_index	additional index information
pg_inherits	table inheritance hierarchy
pg_init_privs	object initial privileges
pg_language	languages for writing functions
pg_largeobject	data pages for large objects
pg_largeobject_metadata	metadata for large objects
pg_namespace	schemas
pg_opclass	access method operator classes
pg_operator	operators
pg_opfamily	access method operator families
pg_parameter_acl	configuration parameters for which privileges have been granted
pg_partitioned_table	information about partition key of tables
pg_policy	row-security policies
pg_proc	functions and procedures
pg_publication	publications for logical replication
pg_publication_namespace	schema to publication mapping
pg_publication_rel	relation to publication mapping
pg_range	information about range types
pg_replication_origin	registered replication origins
pg_rewrite	query rewrite rules
pg_seclabel	security labels on database objects
pg_sequence	information about sequences
pg_shdepend	dependencies on shared objects
pg_shdescription	comments on shared objects
pg_shseclabel	security labels on shared database objects
pg_statistic	planner statistics
pg_statistic_ext	extended planner statistics (definition)
pg_statistic_ext_data	extended planner statistics (built statistics)
pg_subscription	logical replication subscriptions
pg_subscription_rel	relation state for subscriptions
pg_tablespace	tablespaces within this database cluster
pg_transform	transforms (data type to procedural language conversions)
pg_trigger	triggers
pg_ts_config	text search configurations
pg_ts_config_map	text search configurations' token mappings
pg_ts_dict	text search dictionaries
pg_ts_parser	text search parsers
pg_ts_template	text search templates

Catalog Name	Purpose
pg_type	data types
pg_user_mapping	mappings of users to foreign servers

## 53.2. pg\_aggregate

The catalog `pg_aggregate` stores information about aggregate functions. An aggregate function is a function that operates on a set of values (typically one column from each row that matches a query condition) and returns a single value computed from all these values. Typical aggregate functions are `sum`, `count`, and `max`. Each entry in `pg_aggregate` is an extension of an entry in `pg_proc`. The `pg_proc` entry carries the aggregate's name, input and output data types, and other information that is similar to ordinary functions.

**Table 53.2. `pg_aggregate` Columns**

Column Type	Description
aggfnoid regproc (references pg_proc.oid)	pg_proc OID of the aggregate function
aggkind char	Aggregate kind: n for “normal” aggregates, o for “ordered-set” aggregates, or h for “hypothetical-set” aggregates
aggnumdirectargs int2	Number of direct (non-aggregated) arguments of an ordered-set or hypothetical-set aggregate, counting a variadic array as one argument. If equal to <code>pronargs</code> , the aggregate must be variadic and the variadic array describes the aggregated arguments as well as the final direct arguments. Always zero for normal aggregates.
aggtransfn regproc (references pg_proc.oid)	Transition function
aggfinalfn regproc (references pg_proc.oid)	Final function (zero if none)
aggcombinefn regproc (references pg_proc.oid)	Combine function (zero if none)
aggserialfn regproc (references pg_proc.oid)	Serialization function (zero if none)
aggdeserialfn regproc (references pg_proc.oid)	Deserialization function (zero if none)
aggmtransfn regproc (references pg_proc.oid)	Forward transition function for moving-aggregate mode (zero if none)
aggminvtransfn regproc (references pg_proc.oid)	Inverse transition function for moving-aggregate mode (zero if none)
aggmfinalfn regproc (references pg_proc.oid)	Final function for moving-aggregate mode (zero if none)
aggfinalextra bool	True to pass extra dummy arguments to <code>aggfinalfn</code>
aggmfinalextra bool	True to pass extra dummy arguments to <code>aggmfinalfn</code>
aggfinalmodify char	Whether <code>aggfinalfn</code> modifies the transition state value: r if it is read-only, s if the <code>aggtransfn</code> cannot be applied after the <code>aggfinalfn</code> , or w if it writes on the value
aggmfinalmodify char	

Column Type	Description
	Like <code>aggfinalmodify</code> , but for the <code>aggmfinalfn</code>
<code>aggsortop oid</code> (references <code>pg_operator.oid</code> )	Associated sort operator (zero if none)
<code>aggtranstype oid</code> (references <code>pg_type.oid</code> )	Data type of the aggregate function's internal transition (state) data
<code>aggtransspace int4</code>	Approximate average size (in bytes) of the transition state data, or zero to use a default estimate
<code>aggmtranstype oid</code> (references <code>pg_type.oid</code> )	Data type of the aggregate function's internal transition (state) data for moving-aggregate mode (zero if none)
<code>aggmtransspace int4</code>	Approximate average size (in bytes) of the transition state data for moving-aggregate mode, or zero to use a default estimate
<code>agginitval text</code>	The initial value of the transition state. This is a text field containing the initial value in its external string representation. If this field is null, the transition state value starts out null.
<code>aggminitval text</code>	The initial value of the transition state for moving-aggregate mode. This is a text field containing the initial value in its external string representation. If this field is null, the transition state value starts out null.

New aggregate functions are registered with the `CREATE AGGREGATE` command. See Section 38.12 for more information about writing aggregate functions and the meaning of the transition functions, etc.

## 53.3. `pg_am`

The catalog `pg_am` stores information about relation access methods. There is one row for each access method supported by the system. Currently, only tables and indexes have access methods. The requirements for table and index access methods are discussed in detail in Chapter 63 and Chapter 64 respectively.

**Table 53.3. `pg_am` Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>oid oid</code>	Row identifier
<code>amname name</code>	Name of the access method
<code>amhandler regproc</code> (references <code>pg_proc.oid</code> )	OID of a handler function that is responsible for supplying information about the access method
<code>amtype char</code>	<code>t</code> = table (including materialized views), <code>i</code> = index.

**Note**

Before PostgreSQL 9.6, `pg_am` contained many additional columns representing properties of index access methods. That data is now only directly visible at the C code level. However, `pg_index_column_has_property()` and related functions have been added to allow SQL queries to inspect index access method properties; see Table 9.72.

## 53.4. `pg_amop`

The catalog `pg_amop` stores information about operators associated with access method operator families. There is one row for each operator that is a member of an operator family. A family member can be either a *search* operator or an *ordering* operator. An operator can appear in more than one family, but cannot appear in more than one search position nor more than one ordering position within a family. (It is allowed, though unlikely, for an operator to be used for both search and ordering purposes.)

**Table 53.4. `pg_amop` Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>oid oid</code>	Row identifier
<code>amopfamily oid</code> (references <code>pg_opfamily.oid</code> )	The operator family this entry is for
<code>amoplefttype oid</code> (references <code>pg_type.oid</code> )	Left-hand input data type of operator
<code>amoprightrighttype oid</code> (references <code>pg_type.oid</code> )	Right-hand input data type of operator
<code>amopstrategy int2</code>	Operator strategy number
<code>amoppurpose char</code>	Operator purpose, either <code>s</code> for search or <code>o</code> for ordering
<code>amopopr oid</code> (references <code>pg_operator.oid</code> )	OID of the operator
<code>amopmethod oid</code> (references <code>pg_am.oid</code> )	Index access method operator family is for
<code>amopsortfamily oid</code> (references <code>pg_opfamily.oid</code> )	The B-tree operator family this entry sorts according to, if an ordering operator; zero if a search operator

A “search” operator entry indicates that an index of this operator family can be searched to find all rows satisfying `WHERE indexed_column operator constant`. Obviously, such an operator must return `boolean`, and its left-hand input type must match the index's column data type.

An “ordering” operator entry indicates that an index of this operator family can be scanned to return rows in the order represented by `ORDER BY indexed_column operator constant`. Such an operator could return any sortable data type, though again its left-hand input type must match the index's column data type. The exact semantics of the `ORDER BY` are specified by the `amopsortfamily` column, which must reference a B-tree operator family for the operator's result type.

**Note**

At present, it's assumed that the sort order for an ordering operator is the default for the referenced operator family, i.e., `ASC NULLS LAST`. This might someday be relaxed by adding additional columns to specify sort options explicitly.

An entry's `amopmethod` must match the `opfmethod` of its containing operator family (including `amopmethod` here is an intentional denormalization of the catalog structure for performance reasons). Also, `amoplefttype` and `amoprighttype` must match the `oprleft` and `oprright` fields of the referenced `pg_operator` entry.

## 53.5. `pg_amproc`

The catalog `pg_amproc` stores information about support functions associated with access method operator families. There is one row for each support function belonging to an operator family.

**Table 53.5. `pg_amproc` Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>oid oid</code>	Row identifier
<code>amprocfamily oid</code> (references <code>pg_opfamily.oid</code> )	The operator family this entry is for
<code>amproclefttype oid</code> (references <code>pg_type.oid</code> )	Left-hand input data type of associated operator
<code>amprocrighttype oid</code> (references <code>pg_type.oid</code> )	Right-hand input data type of associated operator
<code>amprocnum int2</code>	Support function number
<code>amproc regproc</code> (references <code>pg_proc.oid</code> )	OID of the function

The usual interpretation of the `amproclefttype` and `amprocrighttype` fields is that they identify the left and right input types of the operator(s) that a particular support function supports. For some access methods these match the input data type(s) of the support function itself, for others not. There is a notion of “default” support functions for an index, which are those with `amproclefttype` and `amprocrighttype` both equal to the index operator class's `opcintype`.

## 53.6. `pg_attrdef`

The catalog `pg_attrdef` stores column default values. The main information about columns is stored in `pg_attribute`. Only columns for which a default value has been explicitly set will have an entry here.

**Table 53.6. `pg_attrdef` Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>oid oid</code>	Row identifier
<code>adrelid oid</code> (references <code>pg_class.oid</code> )	The table this column belongs to



Column Type	Description
adnum int2 (references pg_attribute.attnum)	The number of the column
adbin pg_node_tree	The column default value, in nodeToString() representation. Use pg_get_expr(adbin, adrelid) to convert it to an SQL expression.

## 53.7. pg\_attribute

The catalog `pg_attribute` stores information about table columns. There will be exactly one `pg_attribute` row for every column in every table in the database. (There will also be attribute entries for indexes, and indeed all objects that have `pg_class` entries.)

The term attribute is equivalent to column and is used for historical reasons.

**Table 53.7. pg\_attribute Columns**

Column Type	Description
attrelid oid (references pg_class.oid)	The table this column belongs to
attname name	The column name
atttypid oid (references pg_type.oid)	The data type of this column (zero for a dropped column)
attlen int2	A copy of <code>pg_type.typelen</code> of this column's type
attnum int2	The number of the column. Ordinary columns are numbered from 1 up. System columns, such as <code>ctid</code> , have (arbitrary) negative numbers.
attcacheoff int4	Always -1 in storage, but when loaded into a row descriptor in memory this might be updated to cache the offset of the attribute within the row
atttypmod int4	<code>atttypmod</code> records type-specific data supplied at table creation time (for example, the maximum length of a <code>varchar</code> column). It is passed to type-specific input functions and length coercion functions. The value will generally be -1 for types that do not need <code>atttypmod</code> .
attn_dims int2	Number of dimensions, if the column is an array type; otherwise 0. (Presently, the number of dimensions of an array is not enforced, so any nonzero value effectively means "it's an array".)
attbyval bool	A copy of <code>pg_type.typbyval</code> of this column's type
attalign char	A copy of <code>pg_type.typalign</code> of this column's type
attstorage char	Normally a copy of <code>pg_type.typstorage</code> of this column's type. For TOAST-able data types, this can be altered after column creation to control storage policy.
attcompression char	

Column Type	Description
	The current compression method of the column. Typically this is ' <code>\0</code> ' to specify use of the current default setting (see <code>default_toast_compression</code> ). Otherwise, ' <code>p</code> ' selects <code>pglz</code> compression, while ' <code>l</code> ' selects <code>LZ4</code> compression. However, this field is ignored whenever <code>attstorage</code> does not allow compression.
<code>attnotnull</code> bool	This represents a not-null constraint.
<code>atthasdef</code> bool	This column has a default expression or generation expression, in which case there will be a corresponding entry in the <code>pg_attrdef</code> catalog that actually defines the expression. (Check <code>attgenerated</code> to determine whether this is a default or a generation expression.)
<code>atthasmissing</code> bool	This column has a value which is used where the column is entirely missing from the row, as happens when a column is added with a non-volatile <code>DEFAULT</code> value after the row is created. The actual value used is stored in the <code>attmissingval</code> column.
<code>attidentity</code> char	If a zero byte (' '), then not an identity column. Otherwise, <code>a</code> = generated always, <code>d</code> = generated by default.
<code>attgenerated</code> char	If a zero byte (' '), then not a generated column. Otherwise, <code>s</code> = stored. (Other values might be added in the future.)
<code>attisdropped</code> bool	This column has been dropped and is no longer valid. A dropped column is still physically present in the table, but is ignored by the parser and so cannot be accessed via SQL.
<code>attislocal</code> bool	This column is defined locally in the relation. Note that a column can be locally defined and inherited simultaneously.
<code>attinhcount</code> int2	The number of direct ancestors this column has. A column with a nonzero number of ancestors cannot be dropped nor renamed.
<code>attstattarget</code> int2	<code>attstattarget</code> controls the level of detail of statistics accumulated for this column by <code>ANALYZE</code> . A zero value indicates that no statistics should be collected. A negative value says to use the system default statistics target. The exact meaning of positive values is data type-dependent. For scalar data types, <code>attstattarget</code> is both the target number of “most common values” to collect, and the target number of histogram bins to create.
<code>attcollation</code> oid (references <code>pg_collation.oid</code> )	The defined collation of the column, or zero if the column is not of a collatable data type
<code>attaclaclitem[]</code>	Column-level access privileges, if any have been granted specifically on this column
<code>attoptions</code> text[]	Attribute-level options, as “keyword=value” strings
<code>attfdwoptions</code> text[]	Attribute-level foreign data wrapper options, as “keyword=value” strings
<code>attmissingval</code> anyarray	This column has a one element array containing the value used when the column is entirely missing from the row, as happens when the column is added with a non-volatile <code>DEFAULT</code> value after the row is created. The value is only used when <code>atthasmissing</code> is true. If there is no value the column is null.

In a dropped column's `pg_attribute` entry, `atttypid` is reset to zero, but `attlen` and the other fields copied from `pg_type` are still valid. This arrangement is needed to cope with the situation where the dropped column's data type was later dropped, and so there is no `pg_type` row anymore. `attlen` and the other fields can be used to interpret the contents of a row of the table.

## 53.8. `pg_authid`

The catalog `pg_authid` contains information about database authorization identifiers (roles). A role subsumes the concepts of “users” and “groups”. A user is essentially just a role with the `rolcanlogin` flag set. Any role (with or without `rolcanlogin`) can have other roles as members; see `pg_auth_members`.

Since this catalog contains passwords, it must not be publicly readable. `pg_roles` is a publicly readable view on `pg_authid` that blanks out the password field.

Chapter 22 contains detailed information about user and privilege management.

Because user identities are cluster-wide, `pg_authid` is shared across all databases of a cluster: there is only one copy of `pg_authid` per cluster, not one per database.

**Table 53.8. `pg_authid` Columns**

Column	Type	Description
<code>oid</code>	<code>oid</code>	Row identifier
<code>rolname</code>	<code>name</code>	Role name
<code>rolsuper</code>	<code>bool</code>	Role has superuser privileges
<code>rolinherit</code>	<code>bool</code>	Role automatically inherits privileges of roles it is a member of
<code>rolcreaterole</code>	<code>bool</code>	Role can create more roles
<code>rolcreatedb</code>	<code>bool</code>	Role can create databases
<code>rolcanlogin</code>	<code>bool</code>	Role can log in. That is, this role can be given as the initial session authorization identifier.
<code>rolreplication</code>	<code>bool</code>	Role is a replication role. A replication role can initiate replication connections and create and drop replication slots.
<code>rolbypassrls</code>	<code>bool</code>	Role bypasses every row-level security policy, see Section 5.8 for more information.
<code>rolconndefaults</code>	<code>bool</code>	Role has default privileges for all objects it creates.
<code>rolconnlimit</code>	<code>int4</code>	For roles that can log in, this sets maximum number of concurrent connections this role can make. -1 means no limit.
<code>rolpassword</code>	<code>text</code>	Password (possibly encrypted); null if none. The format depends on the form of encryption used.
<code>rolvaliduntil</code>	<code>timestampz</code>	Password expiry time (only used for password authentication); null if no expiration

For an MD5 encrypted password, `rolpassword` column will begin with the string `md5` followed by a 32-character hexadecimal MD5 hash. The MD5 hash will be of the user's password concatenated to their user name. For example, if user `joe` has password `xyzyzy`, PostgreSQL will store the md5 hash of `xyzyzyjoe`.

If the password is encrypted with SCRAM-SHA-256, it has the format:

```
SCRAM-SHA-256$<iteration count>:<salt>$<StoredKey>:<ServerKey>
```

where *salt*, *StoredKey* and *ServerKey* are in Base64 encoded format. This format is the same as that specified by RFC 5803<sup>1</sup>.

A password that does not follow either of those formats is assumed to be unencrypted.

## 53.9. pg\_auth\_members

The catalog `pg_auth_members` shows the membership relations between roles. Any non-circular set of relationships is allowed.

Because user identities are cluster-wide, `pg_auth_members` is shared across all databases of a cluster: there is only one copy of `pg_auth_members` per cluster, not one per database.

**Table 53.9. pg\_auth\_members Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>oid oid</code>	Row identifier
<code>roleid oid (references pg_authid.oid)</code>	ID of a role that has a member
<code>member oid (references pg_authid.oid)</code>	ID of a role that is a member of <code>roleid</code>
<code>grantor oid (references pg_authid.oid)</code>	ID of the role that granted this membership
<code>admin_option bool</code>	True if member can grant membership in <code>roleid</code> to others
<code>inherit_option bool</code>	True if the member automatically inherits the privileges of the granted role
<code>set_option bool</code>	True if the member can <code>SET ROLE</code> to the granted role

## 53.10. pg\_cast

The catalog `pg_cast` stores data type conversion paths, both built-in and user-defined.

It should be noted that `pg_cast` does not represent every type conversion that the system knows how to perform; only those that cannot be deduced from some generic rule. For example, casting between a domain and its base type is not explicitly represented in `pg_cast`. Another important exception is that “automatic I/O conversion casts”, those performed using a data type's own I/O functions to convert to or from `text` or other string types, are not explicitly represented in `pg_cast`.

<sup>1</sup> <https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc5803>

**Table 53.10. `pg_cast` Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>oid oid</code>	Row identifier
<code>castsource oid (references <code>pg_type.oid</code>)</code>	OID of the source data type
<code>casttarget oid (references <code>pg_type.oid</code>)</code>	OID of the target data type
<code>castfunc oid (references <code>pg_proc.oid</code>)</code>	The OID of the function to use to perform this cast. Zero is stored if the cast method doesn't require a function.
<code>castcontext char</code>	Indicates what contexts the cast can be invoked in. <code>e</code> means only as an explicit cast (using <code>CAST</code> or <code>::</code> syntax). <code>a</code> means implicitly in assignment to a target column, as well as explicitly. <code>i</code> means implicitly in expressions, as well as the other cases.
<code>castmethod char</code>	Indicates how the cast is performed. <code>f</code> means that the function specified in the <code>castfunc</code> field is used. <code>i</code> means that the input/output functions are used. <code>b</code> means that the types are binary-coercible, thus no conversion is required.

The cast functions listed in `pg_cast` must always take the cast source type as their first argument type, and return the cast destination type as their result type. A cast function can have up to three arguments. The second argument, if present, must be type `integer`; it receives the type modifier associated with the destination type, or -1 if there is none. The third argument, if present, must be type `boolean`; it receives `true` if the cast is an explicit cast, `false` otherwise.

It is legitimate to create a `pg_cast` entry in which the source and target types are the same, if the associated function takes more than one argument. Such entries represent “length coercion functions” that coerce values of the type to be legal for a particular type modifier value.

When a `pg_cast` entry has different source and target types and a function that takes more than one argument, it represents converting from one type to another and applying a length coercion in a single step. When no such entry is available, coercion to a type that uses a type modifier involves two steps, one to convert between data types and a second to apply the modifier.

## 53.11. `pg_class`

The catalog `pg_class` describes tables and other objects that have columns or are otherwise similar to a table. This includes indexes (but see also `pg_index`), sequences (but see also `pg_sequence`), views, materialized views, composite types, and TOAST tables; see `relkind`. Below, when we mean all of these kinds of objects we speak of “relations”. Not all of `pg_class`'s columns are meaningful for all relation kinds.

**Table 53.11. `pg_class` Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>oid oid</code>	Row identifier
<code>relname name</code>	Name of the table, index, view, etc.
<code>relnamespace oid (references <code>pg_namespace.oid</code>)</code>	The OID of the namespace that contains this relation

Column Type	Description
<code>reltype oid</code> (references <code>pg_type.oid</code> )	The OID of the data type that corresponds to this table's row type, if any; zero for indexes, sequences, and toast tables, which have no <code>pg_type</code> entry
<code>reloftype oid</code> (references <code>pg_type.oid</code> )	For typed tables, the OID of the underlying composite type; zero for all other relations
<code>relowner oid</code> (references <code>pg_authid.oid</code> )	Owner of the relation
<code>relam oid</code> (references <code>pg_am.oid</code> )	If this is a table or an index, the access method used (heap, B-tree, hash, etc.); otherwise zero (zero occurs for sequences, as well as relations without storage, such as views)
<code>relfilenode oid</code>	Name of the on-disk file of this relation; zero means this is a “mapped” relation whose disk file name is determined by low-level state
<code>reltablespace oid</code> (references <code>pg_tablespace.oid</code> )	The tablespace in which this relation is stored. If zero, the database's default tablespace is implied. (Not meaningful if the relation has no on-disk file.)
<code>relpages int4</code>	Size of the on-disk representation of this table in pages (of size <code>BLCKSZ</code> ). This is only an estimate used by the planner. It is updated by <code>VACUUM</code> , <code>ANALYZE</code> , and a few DDL commands such as <code>CREATE INDEX</code> .
<code>reltuples float4</code>	Number of live rows in the table. This is only an estimate used by the planner. It is updated by <code>VACUUM</code> , <code>ANALYZE</code> , and a few DDL commands such as <code>CREATE INDEX</code> . If the table has never yet been vacuumed or analyzed, <code>reltuples</code> contains <code>-1</code> indicating that the row count is unknown.
<code>relallvisible int4</code>	Number of pages that are marked all-visible in the table's visibility map. This is only an estimate used by the planner. It is updated by <code>VACUUM</code> , <code>ANALYZE</code> , and a few DDL commands such as <code>CREATE INDEX</code> .
<code>reltoastrelid oid</code> (references <code>pg_class.oid</code> )	OID of the TOAST table associated with this table, zero if none. The TOAST table stores large attributes “out of line” in a secondary table.
<code>relhasindex bool</code>	True if this is a table and it has (or recently had) any indexes
<code>relisshared bool</code>	True if this table is shared across all databases in the cluster. Only certain system catalogs (such as <code>pg_database</code> ) are shared.
<code>relpersistence char</code>	<code>p</code> = permanent table/sequence, <code>u</code> = unlogged table/sequence, <code>t</code> = temporary table/sequence
<code>relkind char</code>	<code>r</code> = ordinary table, <code>i</code> = index, <code>S</code> = sequence, <code>t</code> = TOAST table, <code>v</code> = view, <code>m</code> = materialized view, <code>c</code> = composite type, <code>f</code> = foreign table, <code>p</code> = partitioned table, <code>I</code> = partitioned index
<code>relnatts int2</code>	Number of user columns in the relation (system columns not counted). There must be this many corresponding entries in <code>pg_attribute</code> . See also <code>pg_attribute.attnum</code> .
<code>relchecks int2</code>	

Column Type	Description
	Number of CHECK constraints on the table; see <code>pg_constraint</code> catalog
<code>relhasrules</code> bool	True if table has (or once had) rules; see <code>pg_rewrite</code> catalog
<code>relhastriggers</code> bool	True if table has (or once had) triggers; see <code>pg_trigger</code> catalog
<code>relhassubclass</code> bool	True if table or index has (or once had) any inheritance children or partitions
<code>relrowsecurity</code> bool	True if table has row-level security enabled; see <code>pg_policy</code> catalog
<code>relforcerowsecurity</code> bool	True if row-level security (when enabled) will also apply to table owner; see <code>pg_policy</code> catalog
<code>relispopulated</code> bool	True if relation is populated (this is true for all relations other than some materialized views)
<code>relreplident</code> char	Columns used to form “replica identity” for rows: d = default (primary key, if any), n = nothing, f = all columns, i = index with <code>indisreplident</code> set (same as nothing if the index used has been dropped)
<code>relispartition</code> bool	True if table or index is a partition
<code>relrewrite</code> oid (references <code>pg_class.oid</code> )	For new relations being written during a DDL operation that requires a table rewrite, this contains the OID of the original relation; otherwise zero. That state is only visible internally; this field should never contain anything other than zero for a user-visible relation.
<code>relfrozenxid</code> xid	All transaction IDs before this one have been replaced with a permanent (“frozen”) transaction ID in this table. This is used to track whether the table needs to be vacuumed in order to prevent transaction ID wraparound or to allow <code>pg_xact</code> to be shrunk. Zero ( <code>InvalidTransactionId</code> ) if the relation is not a table.
<code>relminmxid</code> xid	All multixact IDs before this one have been replaced by a transaction ID in this table. This is used to track whether the table needs to be vacuumed in order to prevent multixact ID wraparound or to allow <code>pg_multixact</code> to be shrunk. Zero ( <code>InvalidMultiXactId</code> ) if the relation is not a table.
<code>relacl</code> aclitem[]	Access privileges; see Section 5.7 for details
<code>reloptions</code> text[]	Access-method-specific options, as “keyword=value” strings
<code>relpartbound</code> <code>pg_node_tree</code>	If table is a partition (see <code>relispartition</code> ), internal representation of the partition bound

Several of the Boolean flags in `pg_class` are maintained lazily: they are guaranteed to be true if that's the correct state, but may not be reset to false immediately when the condition is no longer true. For example, `relhasindex` is set by `CREATE INDEX`, but it is never cleared by `DROP INDEX`. Instead, `VACUUM` clears `relhasindex` if it finds the table has no indexes. This arrangement avoids race conditions and improves concurrency.

## 53.12. pg\_collation

The catalog `pg_collation` describes the available collations, which are essentially mappings from an SQL name to operating system locale categories. See Section 24.2 for more information.

**Table 53.12. pg\_collation Columns**

Column	Type	Description
<code>oid</code>	<code>oid</code>	Row identifier
<code>collname</code>	<code>name</code>	Collation name (unique per namespace and encoding)
<code>collnamespace</code>	<code>oid</code> (references <code>pg_namespace.oid</code> )	The OID of the namespace that contains this collation
<code>collowner</code>	<code>oid</code> (references <code>pg_authid.oid</code> )	Owner of the collation
<code>collprovider</code>	<code>char</code>	Provider of the collation: <code>d</code> = database default, <code>c</code> = libc, <code>i</code> = icu
<code>collisdeterministic</code>	<code>bool</code>	Is the collation deterministic?
<code>collencoding</code>	<code>int4</code>	Encoding in which the collation is applicable, or -1 if it works for any encoding
<code>collcollate</code>	<code>text</code>	<code>LC_COLLATE</code> for this collation object
<code>collctype</code>	<code>text</code>	<code>LC_CTYPE</code> for this collation object
<code>colliculocale</code>	<code>text</code>	ICU locale ID for this collation object
<code>collicurules</code>	<code>text</code>	ICU collation rules for this collation object
<code>collversion</code>	<code>text</code>	Provider-specific version of the collation. This is recorded when the collation is created and then checked when it is used, to detect changes in the collation definition that could lead to data corruption.

Note that the unique key on this catalog is (`collname`, `collencoding`, `collnamespace`) not just (`collname`, `collnamespace`). PostgreSQL generally ignores all collations that do not have `collencoding` equal to either the current database's encoding or -1, and creation of new entries with the same name as an entry with `collencoding` = -1 is forbidden. Therefore it is sufficient to use a qualified SQL name (*schema.name*) to identify a collation, even though this is not unique according to the catalog definition. The reason for defining the catalog this way is that `initdb` fills it in at cluster initialization time with entries for all locales available on the system, so it must be able to hold entries for all encodings that might ever be used in the cluster.

In the `template0` database, it could be useful to create collations whose encoding does not match the database encoding, since they could match the encodings of databases later cloned from `template0`. This would currently have to be done manually.

## 53.13. pg\_constraint

The catalog `pg_constraint` stores check, primary key, unique, foreign key, and exclusion constraints on tables. (Column constraints are not treated specially. Every column constraint is equivalent



to some table constraint.) Not-null constraints are represented in the `pg_attribute` catalog, not here.

User-defined constraint triggers (created with `CREATE CONSTRAINT TRIGGER`) also give rise to an entry in this table.

Check constraints on domains are stored here, too.

**Table 53.13. `pg_constraint` Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>oid oid</code>	Row identifier
<code>conname name</code>	Constraint name (not necessarily unique!)
<code>connamespace oid</code> (references <code>pg_namespace.oid</code> )	The OID of the namespace that contains this constraint
<code>contype char</code>	c = check constraint, f = foreign key constraint, p = primary key constraint, u = unique constraint, t = constraint trigger, x = exclusion constraint
<code>condeferrable bool</code>	Is the constraint deferrable?
<code>condeferred bool</code>	Is the constraint deferred by default?
<code>convalidated bool</code>	Has the constraint been validated? Currently, can be false only for foreign keys and CHECK constraints
<code>conrelid oid</code> (references <code>pg_class.oid</code> )	The table this constraint is on; zero if not a table constraint
<code>contypid oid</code> (references <code>pg_type.oid</code> )	The domain this constraint is on; zero if not a domain constraint
<code>conindid oid</code> (references <code>pg_class.oid</code> )	The index supporting this constraint, if it's a unique, primary key, foreign key, or exclusion constraint; else zero
<code>conparentid oid</code> (references <code>pg_constraint.oid</code> )	The corresponding constraint of the parent partitioned table, if this is a constraint on a partition; else zero
<code>confrelid oid</code> (references <code>pg_class.oid</code> )	If a foreign key, the referenced table; else zero
<code>confupdtype char</code>	Foreign key update action code: a = no action, r = restrict, c = cascade, n = set null, d = set default
<code>confdeltype char</code>	Foreign key deletion action code: a = no action, r = restrict, c = cascade, n = set null, d = set default
<code>confmatchtype char</code>	Foreign key match type: f = full, p = partial, s = simple
<code>conislocal bool</code>	This constraint is defined locally for the relation. Note that a constraint can be locally defined and inherited simultaneously.
<code>coninhcount int2</code>	

Column Type	Description
	The number of direct inheritance ancestors this constraint has. A constraint with a nonzero number of ancestors cannot be dropped nor renamed.
<code>connoinherit bool</code>	This constraint is defined locally for the relation. It is a non-inheritable constraint.
<code>conkey int2[ ]</code> (references <code>pg_attribute.attnum</code> )	If a table constraint (including foreign keys, but not constraint triggers), list of the constrained columns
<code>confkey int2[ ]</code> (references <code>pg_attribute.attnum</code> )	If a foreign key, list of the referenced columns
<code>conpfeqop oid[ ]</code> (references <code>pg_operator.oid</code> )	If a foreign key, list of the equality operators for PK = FK comparisons
<code>conppeqop oid[ ]</code> (references <code>pg_operator.oid</code> )	If a foreign key, list of the equality operators for PK = PK comparisons
<code>conffeqop oid[ ]</code> (references <code>pg_operator.oid</code> )	If a foreign key, list of the equality operators for FK = FK comparisons
<code>confdelsetcols int2[ ]</code> (references <code>pg_attribute.attnum</code> )	If a foreign key with a SET NULL or SET DEFAULT delete action, the columns that will be updated. If null, all of the referencing columns will be updated.
<code>conexcllop oid[ ]</code> (references <code>pg_operator.oid</code> )	If an exclusion constraint, list of the per-column exclusion operators
<code>conbin pg_node_tree</code>	If a check constraint, an internal representation of the expression. (It's recommended to use <code>pg_get_constraintdef()</code> to extract the definition of a check constraint.)

In the case of an exclusion constraint, `conkey` is only useful for constraint elements that are simple column references. For other cases, a zero appears in `conkey` and the associated index must be consulted to discover the expression that is constrained. (`conkey` thus has the same contents as `pg_index.indkey` for the index.)

### Note

`pg_class.relchecks` needs to agree with the number of check-constraint entries found in this table for each relation.

## 53.14. pg\_conversion

The catalog `pg_conversion` describes encoding conversion functions. See `CREATE CONVERSION` for more information.

**Table 53.14. pg\_conversion Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>oid oid</code>	Row identifier
<code>conname name</code>	Conversion name (unique within a namespace)
<code>connamespace oid</code> (references <code>pg_namespace.oid</code> )	The OID of the namespace that contains this conversion

Column Type	Description
conowner oid (references pg_authid.oid)	Owner of the conversion
conforencoding int4	Source encoding ID (pg_encoding_to_char( ) can translate this number to the encoding name)
contoencoding int4	Destination encoding ID (pg_encoding_to_char( ) can translate this number to the encoding name)
conproc regproc (references pg_proc.oid)	Conversion function
condefault bool	True if this is the default conversion

## 53.15. pg\_database

The catalog `pg_database` stores information about the available databases. Databases are created with the `CREATE DATABASE` command. Consult Chapter 23 for details about the meaning of some of the parameters.

Unlike most system catalogs, `pg_database` is shared across all databases of a cluster: there is only one copy of `pg_database` per cluster, not one per database.

**Table 53.15. pg\_database Columns**

Column Type	Description
oid oid	Row identifier
datname name	Database name
datdba oid (references pg_authid.oid)	Owner of the database, usually the user who created it
encoding int4	Character encoding for this database (pg_encoding_to_char( ) can translate this number to the encoding name)
datlocprovider char	Locale provider for this database: <code>c</code> = libc, <code>i</code> = icu
datistemplate bool	If true, then this database can be cloned by any user with <code>CREATEDB</code> privileges; if false, then only superusers or the owner of the database can clone it.
dataallowconn bool	If false then no one can connect to this database. This is used to protect the <code>template0</code> database from being altered.
datconnlimit int4	Sets maximum number of concurrent connections that can be made to this database. -1 means no limit, -2 indicates the database is invalid.
datfrozenxid xid	All transaction IDs before this one have been replaced with a permanent (“frozen”) transaction ID in this database. This is used to track whether the database needs to be vacu-

Column Type	Description
	used in order to prevent transaction ID wraparound or to allow <code>pg_xact</code> to be shrunk. It is the minimum of the per-table <code>pg_class.relFrozenxid</code> values.
<code>datminmxid xid</code>	All multixact IDs before this one have been replaced with a transaction ID in this database. This is used to track whether the database needs to be vacuumed in order to prevent multixact ID wraparound or to allow <code>pg_multixact</code> to be shrunk. It is the minimum of the per-table <code>pg_class.relminmxid</code> values.
<code>dattablespace oid</code> (references <code>pg_tablespace.oid</code> )	The default tablespace for the database. Within this database, all tables for which <code>pg_class.reltablespace</code> is zero will be stored in this tablespace; in particular, all the non-shared system catalogs will be there.
<code>datcollate text</code>	<code>LC_COLLATE</code> for this database
<code>datctype text</code>	<code>LC_CTYPE</code> for this database
<code>daticulocale text</code>	ICU locale ID for this database
<code>daticurules text</code>	ICU collation rules for this database
<code>datcollversion text</code>	Provider-specific version of the collation. This is recorded when the database is created and then checked when it is used, to detect changes in the collation definition that could lead to data corruption.
<code>datacl aclitem[ ]</code>	Access privileges; see Section 5.7 for details

## 53.16. `pg_db_role_setting`

The catalog `pg_db_role_setting` records the default values that have been set for run-time configuration variables, for each role and database combination.

Unlike most system catalogs, `pg_db_role_setting` is shared across all databases of a cluster: there is only one copy of `pg_db_role_setting` per cluster, not one per database.

**Table 53.16. `pg_db_role_setting` Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>setdatabase oid</code> (references <code>pg_database.oid</code> )	The OID of the database the setting is applicable to, or zero if not database-specific
<code>setrole oid</code> (references <code>pg_authid.oid</code> )	The OID of the role the setting is applicable to, or zero if not role-specific
<code>setconfig text[ ]</code>	Defaults for run-time configuration variables

## 53.17. `pg_default_acl`

The catalog `pg_default_acl` stores initial privileges to be assigned to newly created objects.

**Table 53.17. pg\_default\_acl Columns**

Column Type	Description
oid oid	Row identifier
defaclrole oid (references pg_authid.oid)	The OID of the role associated with this entry
defaclnamespace oid (references pg_namespace.oid)	The OID of the namespace associated with this entry, or zero if none
defaclobjtype char	Type of object this entry is for: r = relation (table, view), S = sequence, f = function, T = type, n = schema
defaclacl aclitem[ ]	Access privileges that this type of object should have on creation

A `pg_default_acl` entry shows the initial privileges to be assigned to an object belonging to the indicated user. There are currently two types of entry: “global” entries with `defaclnamespace = zero`, and “per-schema” entries that reference a particular schema. If a global entry is present then it *overrides* the normal hard-wired default privileges for the object type. A per-schema entry, if present, represents privileges to be *added to* the global or hard-wired default privileges.

Note that when an ACL entry in another catalog is null, it is taken to represent the hard-wired default privileges for its object, *not* whatever might be in `pg_default_acl` at the moment. `pg_default_acl` is only consulted during object creation.

## 53.18. pg\_depend

The catalog `pg_depend` records the dependency relationships between database objects. This information allows DROP commands to find which other objects must be dropped by DROP CASCADE or prevent dropping in the DROP RESTRICT case.

See also `pg_shdepend`, which performs a similar function for dependencies involving objects that are shared across a database cluster.

**Table 53.18. pg\_depend Columns**

Column Type	Description
classid oid (references pg_class.oid)	The OID of the system catalog the dependent object is in
objid oid (references any OID column)	The OID of the specific dependent object
objsubid int4	For a table column, this is the column number (the <code>objid</code> and <code>classid</code> refer to the table itself). For all other object types, this column is zero.
refclassid oid (references pg_class.oid)	The OID of the system catalog the referenced object is in
refobjid oid (references any OID column)	The OID of the specific referenced object
refobjsubid int4	For a table column, this is the column number (the <code>refobjid</code> and <code>refclassid</code> refer to the table itself). For all other object types, this column is zero.
deptype char	

Column Type
Description
A code defining the specific semantics of this dependency relationship; see text

In all cases, a `pg_depend` entry indicates that the referenced object cannot be dropped without also dropping the dependent object. However, there are several subflavors identified by `deptype`:

#### `DEPENDENCY_NORMAL (n)`

A normal relationship between separately-created objects. The dependent object can be dropped without affecting the referenced object. The referenced object can only be dropped by specifying `CASCADE`, in which case the dependent object is dropped, too. Example: a table column has a normal dependency on its data type.

#### `DEPENDENCY_AUTO (a)`

The dependent object can be dropped separately from the referenced object, and should be automatically dropped (regardless of `RESTRICT` or `CASCADE` mode) if the referenced object is dropped. Example: a named constraint on a table is made auto-dependent on the table, so that it will go away if the table is dropped.

#### `DEPENDENCY_INTERNAL (i)`

The dependent object was created as part of creation of the referenced object, and is really just a part of its internal implementation. A direct `DROP` of the dependent object will be disallowed outright (we'll tell the user to issue a `DROP` against the referenced object, instead). A `DROP` of the referenced object will result in automatically dropping the dependent object whether `CASCADE` is specified or not. If the dependent object has to be dropped due to a dependency on some other object being removed, its drop is converted to a drop of the referenced object, so that `NORMAL` and `AUTO` dependencies of the dependent object behave much like they were dependencies of the referenced object. Example: a view's `ON SELECT` rule is made internally dependent on the view, preventing it from being dropped while the view remains. Dependencies of the rule (such as tables it refers to) act as if they were dependencies of the view.

#### `DEPENDENCY_PARTITION_PRI (P)`

#### `DEPENDENCY_PARTITION_SEC (S)`

The dependent object was created as part of creation of the referenced object, and is really just a part of its internal implementation; however, unlike `INTERNAL`, there is more than one such referenced object. The dependent object must not be dropped unless at least one of these referenced objects is dropped; if any one is, the dependent object should be dropped whether or not `CASCADE` is specified. Also unlike `INTERNAL`, a drop of some other object that the dependent object depends on does not result in automatic deletion of any partition-referenced object. Hence, if the drop does not cascade to at least one of these objects via some other path, it will be refused. (In most cases, the dependent object shares all its non-partition dependencies with at least one partition-referenced object, so that this restriction does not result in blocking any cascaded delete.) Primary and secondary partition dependencies behave identically except that the primary dependency is preferred for use in error messages; hence, a partition-dependent object should have one primary partition dependency and one or more secondary partition dependencies. Note that partition dependencies are made in addition to, not instead of, any dependencies the object would normally have. This simplifies `ATTACH/DETACH PARTITION` operations: the partition dependencies need only be added or removed. Example: a child partitioned index is made partition-dependent on both the partition table it is on and the parent partitioned index, so that it goes away if either of those is dropped, but not otherwise. The dependency on the parent index is primary, so that if the user tries to drop the child partitioned index, the error message will suggest dropping the parent index instead (not the table).

#### `DEPENDENCY_EXTENSION (e)`

The dependent object is a member of the *extension* that is the referenced object (see `pg_extension`). The dependent object can be dropped only via `DROP EXTENSION` on the referenced

object. Functionally this dependency type acts the same as an `INTERNAL` dependency, but it's kept separate for clarity and to simplify `pg_dump`.

`DEPENDENCY_AUTO_EXTENSION (x)`

The dependent object is not a member of the extension that is the referenced object (and so it should not be ignored by `pg_dump`), but it cannot function without the extension and should be auto-dropped if the extension is. The dependent object may be dropped on its own as well. Functionally this dependency type acts the same as an `AUTO` dependency, but it's kept separate for clarity and to simplify `pg_dump`.

Other dependency flavors might be needed in future.

Note that it's quite possible for two objects to be linked by more than one `pg_depend` entry. For example, a child partitioned index would have both a partition-type dependency on its associated partition table, and an auto dependency on each column of that table that it indexes. This sort of situation expresses the union of multiple dependency semantics. A dependent object can be dropped without `CASCADE` if any of its dependencies satisfies its condition for automatic dropping. Conversely, all the dependencies' restrictions about which objects must be dropped together must be satisfied.

Most objects created during `initdb` are considered “pinned”, which means that the system itself depends on them. Therefore, they are never allowed to be dropped. Also, knowing that pinned objects will not be dropped, the dependency mechanism doesn't bother to make `pg_depend` entries showing dependencies on them. Thus, for example, a table column of type `numeric` notionally has a `NORMAL` dependency on the `numeric` data type, but no such entry actually appears in `pg_depend`.

## 53.19. `pg_description`

The catalog `pg_description` stores optional descriptions (comments) for each database object. Descriptions can be manipulated with the `COMMENT` command and viewed with `psql`'s `\d` commands. Descriptions of many built-in system objects are provided in the initial contents of `pg_description`.

See also `pg_shdescription`, which performs a similar function for descriptions involving objects that are shared across a database cluster.

**Table 53.19. `pg_description` Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>objoid oid</code> (references any <code>OID</code> column)	The <code>OID</code> of the object this description pertains to
<code>classoid oid</code> (references <code>pg_class.oid</code> )	The <code>OID</code> of the system catalog this object appears in
<code>objsubid int4</code>	For a comment on a table column, this is the column number (the <code>objoid</code> and <code>classoid</code> refer to the table itself). For all other object types, this column is zero.
<code>description text</code>	Arbitrary text that serves as the description of this object

## 53.20. `pg_enum`

The `pg_enum` catalog contains entries showing the values and labels for each enum type. The internal representation of a given enum value is actually the `OID` of its associated row in `pg_enum`.

**Table 53.20. pg\_enum Columns**

Column Type	Description
oid oid	Row identifier
enumtypid oid (references pg_type.oid)	The OID of the pg_type entry owning this enum value
enumsortorder float4	The sort position of this enum value within its enum type
enumlabel name	The textual label for this enum value

The OIDs for `pg_enum` rows follow a special rule: even-numbered OIDs are guaranteed to be ordered in the same way as the sort ordering of their enum type. That is, if two even OIDs belong to the same enum type, the smaller OID must have the smaller `enumsortorder` value. Odd-numbered OID values need bear no relationship to the sort order. This rule allows the enum comparison routines to avoid catalog lookups in many common cases. The routines that create and alter enum types attempt to assign even OIDs to enum values whenever possible.

When an enum type is created, its members are assigned sort-order positions 1..*n*. But members added later might be given negative or fractional values of `enumsortorder`. The only requirement on these values is that they be correctly ordered and unique within each enum type.

## 53.21. pg\_event\_trigger

The catalog `pg_event_trigger` stores event triggers. See Chapter 40 for more information.

**Table 53.21. pg\_event\_trigger Columns**

Column Type	Description
oid oid	Row identifier
evtname name	Trigger name (must be unique)
evtevent name	Identifies the event for which this trigger fires
evtowner oid (references pg_authid.oid)	Owner of the event trigger
evtfoid oid (references pg_proc.oid)	The function to be called
evtenabled char	Controls in which session_replication_role modes the event trigger fires. O = trigger fires in “origin” and “local” modes, D = trigger is disabled, R = trigger fires in “replica” mode, A = trigger fires always.
evttags text[ ]	Command tags for which this trigger will fire. If NULL, the firing of this trigger is not restricted on the basis of the command tag.

## 53.22. pg\_extension

The catalog `pg_extension` stores information about the installed extensions. See Section 38.17 for details about extensions.



**Table 53.22. `pg_extension` Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>oid oid</code>	Row identifier
<code>extname name</code>	Name of the extension
<code>extowner oid (references pg_authid.oid)</code>	Owner of the extension
<code>extnamespace oid (references pg_namespace.oid)</code>	Schema containing the extension's exported objects
<code>extrelocatable bool</code>	True if extension can be relocated to another schema
<code>extversion text</code>	Version name for the extension
<code>extconfig oid[ ] (references pg_class.oid)</code>	Array of <code>regclass</code> OIDs for the extension's configuration table(s), or NULL if none
<code>extcondition text[ ]</code>	Array of WHERE-clause filter conditions for the extension's configuration table(s), or NULL if none

Note that unlike most catalogs with a “namespace” column, `extnamespace` is not meant to imply that the extension belongs to that schema. Extension names are never schema-qualified. Rather, `extnamespace` indicates the schema that contains most or all of the extension's objects. If `extrelocatable` is true, then this schema must in fact contain all schema-qualifiable objects belonging to the extension.

## 53.23. `pg_foreign_data_wrapper`

The catalog `pg_foreign_data_wrapper` stores foreign-data wrapper definitions. A foreign-data wrapper is the mechanism by which external data, residing on foreign servers, is accessed.

**Table 53.23. `pg_foreign_data_wrapper` Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>oid oid</code>	Row identifier
<code>fdwname name</code>	Name of the foreign-data wrapper
<code>fdwowner oid (references pg_authid.oid)</code>	Owner of the foreign-data wrapper
<code>fdwhandler oid (references pg_proc.oid)</code>	References a handler function that is responsible for supplying execution routines for the foreign-data wrapper. Zero if no handler is provided
<code>fdwvalidator oid (references pg_proc.oid)</code>	References a validator function that is responsible for checking the validity of the options given to the foreign-data wrapper, as well as options for foreign servers and user mappings using the foreign-data wrapper. Zero if no validator is provided
<code>fdwacl aclitem[ ]</code>	Access privileges; see Section 5.7 for details

Column Type	Description
fdwoptions text[ ]	Foreign-data wrapper specific options, as “keyword=value” strings

## 53.24. pg\_foreign\_server

The catalog `pg_foreign_server` stores foreign server definitions. A foreign server describes a source of external data, such as a remote server. Foreign servers are accessed via foreign-data wrappers.

**Table 53.24. `pg_foreign_server` Columns**

Column Type	Description
oid oid	Row identifier
srvname name	Name of the foreign server
srvowner oid (references <code>pg_authid.oid</code> )	Owner of the foreign server
srvfdw oid (references <code>pg_foreign_data_wrapper.oid</code> )	OID of the foreign-data wrapper of this foreign server
srvtype text	Type of the server (optional)
srvversion text	Version of the server (optional)
srvacl aclitem[ ]	Access privileges; see Section 5.7 for details
srvoptions text[ ]	Foreign server specific options, as “keyword=value” strings

## 53.25. pg\_foreign\_table

The catalog `pg_foreign_table` contains auxiliary information about foreign tables. A foreign table is primarily represented by a `pg_class` entry, just like a regular table. Its `pg_foreign_table` entry contains the information that is pertinent only to foreign tables and not any other kind of relation.

**Table 53.25. `pg_foreign_table` Columns**

Column Type	Description
ftrelid oid (references <code>pg_class.oid</code> )	The OID of the <code>pg_class</code> entry for this foreign table
ftserver oid (references <code>pg_foreign_server.oid</code> )	OID of the foreign server for this foreign table
ftoptions text[ ]	Foreign table options, as “keyword=value” strings

## 53.26. pg\_index

The catalog `pg_index` contains part of the information about indexes. The rest is mostly in `pg_class`.

**Table 53.26. `pg_index` Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>indexrelid oid</code> (references <code>pg_class.oid</code> )	The OID of the <code>pg_class</code> entry for this index
<code>indrelid oid</code> (references <code>pg_class.oid</code> )	The OID of the <code>pg_class</code> entry for the table this index is for
<code>indnatts int2</code>	The total number of columns in the index (duplicates <code>pg_class.relnatts</code> ); this number includes both key and included attributes
<code>indnkeyatts int2</code>	The number of <i>key columns</i> in the index, not counting any <i>included columns</i> , which are merely stored and do not participate in the index semantics
<code>indisunique bool</code>	If true, this is a unique index
<code>indnullsnotdistinct bool</code>	This value is only used for unique indexes. If false, this unique index will consider null values distinct (so the index can contain multiple null values in a column, the default PostgreSQL behavior). If it is true, it will consider null values to be equal (so the index can only contain one null value in a column).
<code>indisprimary bool</code>	If true, this index represents the primary key of the table ( <code>indisunique</code> should always be true when this is true)
<code>indisexclusion bool</code>	If true, this index supports an exclusion constraint
<code>indimmediate bool</code>	If true, the uniqueness check is enforced immediately on insertion (irrelevant if <code>indisunique</code> is not true)
<code>indisclustered bool</code>	If true, the table was last clustered on this index
<code>indisvalid bool</code>	If true, the index is currently valid for queries. False means the index is possibly incomplete: it must still be modified by <code>INSERT/UPDATE</code> operations, but it cannot safely be used for queries. If it is unique, the uniqueness property is not guaranteed true either.
<code>indcheckxmin bool</code>	If true, queries must not use the index until the <code>xmin</code> of this <code>pg_index</code> row is below their <code>TransactionXmin</code> event horizon, because the table may contain broken HOT chains with incompatible rows that they can see
<code>indisready bool</code>	If true, the index is currently ready for inserts. False means the index must be ignored by <code>INSERT/UPDATE</code> operations.
<code>indislive bool</code>	If false, the index is in process of being dropped, and should be ignored for all purposes (including HOT-safety decisions)
<code>indisreplident bool</code>	If true this index has been chosen as “replica identity” using <code>ALTER TABLE ... REPLICA IDENTITY USING INDEX ...</code>
<code>indkey int2vector</code> (references <code>pg_attribute.attnum</code> )	

Column Type	Description
	This is an array of <code>indnatts</code> values that indicate which table columns this index indexes. For example, a value of 1 3 would mean that the first and the third table columns make up the index entries. Key columns come before non-key (included) columns. A zero in this array indicates that the corresponding index attribute is an expression over the table columns, rather than a simple column reference.
<code>indcollation oidvector</code> (references <code>pg_collation.oid</code> )	For each column in the index key ( <code>indnkeyatts</code> values), this contains the OID of the collation to use for the index, or zero if the column is not of a collatable data type.
<code>indclass oidvector</code> (references <code>pg_opclass.oid</code> )	For each column in the index key ( <code>indnkeyatts</code> values), this contains the OID of the operator class to use. See <code>pg_opclass</code> for details.
<code>indoption int2vector</code>	This is an array of <code>indnkeyatts</code> values that store per-column flag bits. The meaning of the bits is defined by the index's access method.
<code>indexprs pg_node_tree</code>	Expression trees (in <code>nodeToString()</code> representation) for index attributes that are not simple column references. This is a list with one element for each zero entry in <code>indkey</code> . Null if all index attributes are simple references.
<code>indpred pg_node_tree</code>	Expression tree (in <code>nodeToString()</code> representation) for partial index predicate. Null if not a partial index.

## 53.27. `pg_inherits`

The catalog `pg_inherits` records information about table and index inheritance hierarchies. There is one entry for each direct parent-child table or index relationship in the database. (Indirect inheritance can be determined by following chains of entries.)

**Table 53.27. `pg_inherits` Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>inhrelid oid</code> (references <code>pg_class.oid</code> )	The OID of the child table or index
<code>inhparent oid</code> (references <code>pg_class.oid</code> )	The OID of the parent table or index
<code>inhseqno int4</code>	If there is more than one direct parent for a child table (multiple inheritance), this number tells the order in which the inherited columns are to be arranged. The count starts at 1. Indexes cannot have multiple inheritance, since they can only inherit when using declarative partitioning.
<code>inhdetachpending bool</code>	<code>true</code> for a partition that is in the process of being detached; <code>false</code> otherwise.

## 53.28. `pg_init_privs`

The catalog `pg_init_privs` records information about the initial privileges of objects in the system. There is one entry for each object in the database which has a non-default (non-NULL) initial set of privileges.

Objects can have initial privileges either by having those privileges set when the system is initialized (by `initdb`) or when the object is created during a `CREATE EXTENSION` and the extension script sets initial privileges using the `GRANT` system. Note that the system will automatically handle recording of the privileges during the extension script and that extension authors need only use the `GRANT` and `REVOKE` statements in their script to have the privileges recorded. The `privtype` column indicates if the initial privilege was set by `initdb` or during a `CREATE EXTENSION` command.

Objects which have initial privileges set by `initdb` will have entries where `privtype` is `'i'`, while objects which have initial privileges set by `CREATE EXTENSION` will have entries where `privtype` is `'e'`.

**Table 53.28. `pg_init_privs` Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>objoid oid</code>	(references any OID column) The OID of the specific object
<code>classoid oid</code>	(references <code>pg_class.oid</code> ) The OID of the system catalog the object is in
<code>objsubid int4</code>	For a table column, this is the column number (the <code>objoid</code> and <code>classoid</code> refer to the table itself). For all other object types, this column is zero.
<code>privtype char</code>	A code defining the type of initial privilege of this object; see text
<code>initprivs aclitem[]</code>	The initial access privileges; see Section 5.7 for details

## 53.29. `pg_language`

The catalog `pg_language` registers languages in which you can write functions or stored procedures. See `CREATE LANGUAGE` and Chapter 42 for more information about language handlers.

**Table 53.29. `pg_language` Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>oid oid</code>	Row identifier
<code>lanname name</code>	Name of the language
<code>lanowner oid</code>	(references <code>pg_authid.oid</code> ) Owner of the language
<code>lanispl bool</code>	This is false for internal languages (such as SQL) and true for user-defined languages. Currently, <code>pg_dump</code> still uses this to determine which languages need to be dumped, but this might be replaced by a different mechanism in the future.
<code>lanpltrusted bool</code>	True if this is a trusted language, which means that it is believed not to grant access to anything outside the normal SQL execution environment. Only superusers can create functions in untrusted languages.
<code>lanplcallfoid oid</code>	(references <code>pg_proc.oid</code> ) For noninternal languages this references the language handler, which is a special function that is responsible for executing all functions that are written in the particular language. Zero for internal languages.

Column Type	Description
<code>laninline oid</code> (references <code>pg_proc.oid</code> )	This references a function that is responsible for executing “inline” anonymous code blocks (DO blocks). Zero if inline blocks are not supported.
<code>lanvalidator oid</code> (references <code>pg_proc.oid</code> )	This references a language validator function that is responsible for checking the syntax and validity of new functions when they are created. Zero if no validator is provided.
<code>lanacl aclitem[ ]</code>	Access privileges; see Section 5.7 for details

## 53.30. `pg_largeobject`

The catalog `pg_largeobject` holds the data making up “large objects”. A large object is identified by an OID assigned when it is created. Each large object is broken into segments or “pages” small enough to be conveniently stored as rows in `pg_largeobject`. The amount of data per page is defined to be `LOBLKSIZE` (which is currently `BLCKSZ / 4`, or typically 2 kB).

Prior to PostgreSQL 9.0, there was no permission structure associated with large objects. As a result, `pg_largeobject` was publicly readable and could be used to obtain the OIDs (and contents) of all large objects in the system. This is no longer the case; use `pg_largeobject_metadata` to obtain a list of large object OIDs.

**Table 53.30. `pg_largeobject` Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>loid oid</code> (references <code>pg_largeobject_metadata.oid</code> )	Identifier of the large object that includes this page
<code>pageno int4</code>	Page number of this page within its large object (counting from zero)
<code>data bytea</code>	Actual data stored in the large object. This will never be more than <code>LOBLKSIZE</code> bytes and might be less.

Each row of `pg_largeobject` holds data for one page of a large object, beginning at byte offset (`pageno * LOBLKSIZE`) within the object. The implementation allows sparse storage: pages might be missing, and might be shorter than `LOBLKSIZE` bytes even if they are not the last page of the object. Missing regions within a large object read as zeroes.

## 53.31. `pg_largeobject_metadata`

The catalog `pg_largeobject_metadata` holds metadata associated with large objects. The actual large object data is stored in `pg_largeobject`.

**Table 53.31. `pg_largeobject_metadata` Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>oid oid</code>	Row identifier
<code>lomowner oid</code> (references <code>pg_authid.oid</code> )	Owner of the large object
<code>lomacl aclitem[ ]</code>	

Column Type
Description
Access privileges; see Section 5.7 for details

## 53.32. pg\_namespace

The catalog `pg_namespace` stores namespaces. A namespace is the structure underlying SQL schemas: each namespace can have a separate collection of relations, types, etc. without name conflicts.

**Table 53.32. pg\_namespace Columns**

Column Type
Description
oid oid
Row identifier
nspname name
Name of the namespace
nspowner oid (references pg_authid.oid)
Owner of the namespace
nspacl aclitem[ ]
Access privileges; see Section 5.7 for details

## 53.33. pg\_opclass

The catalog `pg_opclass` defines index access method operator classes. Each operator class defines semantics for index columns of a particular data type and a particular index access method. An operator class essentially specifies that a particular operator family is applicable to a particular indexable column data type. The set of operators from the family that are actually usable with the indexed column are whichever ones accept the column's data type as their left-hand input.

Operator classes are described at length in Section 38.16.

**Table 53.33. pg\_opclass Columns**

Column Type
Description
oid oid
Row identifier
opcmethod oid (references pg_am.oid)
Index access method operator class is for
opcname name
Name of this operator class
opcnamespace oid (references pg_namespace.oid)
Namespace of this operator class
opcowner oid (references pg_authid.oid)
Owner of the operator class
opcfamily oid (references pg_opfamily.oid)
Operator family containing the operator class
opcintype oid (references pg_type.oid)
Data type that the operator class indexes
opcdefault bool
True if this operator class is the default for opcintype

Column Type	Description
opckeytype oid (references pg_type.oid)	Type of data stored in index, or zero if same as opcintype

An operator class's `opcmethod` must match the `opfmethod` of its containing operator family. Also, there must be no more than one `pg_opclass` row having `opcdefault` true for any given combination of `opcmethod` and `opcintype`.

## 53.34. pg\_operator

The catalog `pg_operator` stores information about operators. See `CREATE OPERATOR` and Section 38.14 for more information.

**Table 53.34. pg\_operator Columns**

Column Type	Description
oid oid	Row identifier
oprname name	Name of the operator
oprnamespace oid (references pg_namespace.oid)	The OID of the namespace that contains this operator
oprowner oid (references pg_authid.oid)	Owner of the operator
oprkind char	b = infix operator (“both”), or l = prefix operator (“left”)
oprcanmerge bool	This operator supports merge joins
oprcanhash bool	This operator supports hash joins
oprleft oid (references pg_type.oid)	Type of the left operand (zero for a prefix operator)
oprright oid (references pg_type.oid)	Type of the right operand
oprresult oid (references pg_type.oid)	Type of the result (zero for a not-yet-defined “shell” operator)
oprcom oid (references pg_operator.oid)	Commutator of this operator (zero if none)
oprnegate oid (references pg_operator.oid)	Negator of this operator (zero if none)
oprcode regproc (references pg_proc.oid)	Function that implements this operator (zero for a not-yet-defined “shell” operator)
oprrest regproc (references pg_proc.oid)	Restriction selectivity estimation function for this operator (zero if none)
oprjoin regproc (references pg_proc.oid)	Join selectivity estimation function for this operator (zero if none)

## 53.35. pg\_opfamily



The catalog `pg_opfamily` defines operator families. Each operator family is a collection of operators and associated support routines that implement the semantics specified for a particular index access method. Furthermore, the operators in a family are all “compatible”, in a way that is specified by the access method. The operator family concept allows cross-data-type operators to be used with indexes and to be reasoned about using knowledge of access method semantics.

Operator families are described at length in Section 38.16.

**Table 53.35. `pg_opfamily` Columns**

Column Type	Description
oid oid	Row identifier
opfmeth oid (references <code>pg_am.oid</code> )	Index access method operator family is for
opfname name	Name of this operator family
opfnamespace oid (references <code>pg_namespace.oid</code> )	Namespace of this operator family
opfowner oid (references <code>pg_authid.oid</code> )	Owner of the operator family

The majority of the information defining an operator family is not in its `pg_opfamily` row, but in the associated rows in `pg_amop`, `pg_amproc`, and `pg_opclass`.

## 53.36. `pg_parameter_acl`

The catalog `pg_parameter_acl` records configuration parameters for which privileges have been granted to one or more roles. No entry is made for parameters that have default privileges.

Unlike most system catalogs, `pg_parameter_acl` is shared across all databases of a cluster: there is only one copy of `pg_parameter_acl` per cluster, not one per database.

**Table 53.36. `pg_parameter_acl` Columns**

Column Type	Description
oid oid	Row identifier
parname text	The name of a configuration parameter for which privileges are granted
paracl aclitem[ ]	Access privileges; see Section 5.7 for details

## 53.37. `pg_partitioned_table`

The catalog `pg_partitioned_table` stores information about how tables are partitioned.

**Table 53.37. `pg_partitioned_table` Columns**

Column Type	Description
partrelid oid (references <code>pg_class.oid</code> )	The OID of the <code>pg_class</code> entry for this partitioned table

Column Type	Description
partstrat char	Partitioning strategy; h = hash partitioned table, l = list partitioned table, r = range partitioned table
partnatts int2	The number of columns in the partition key
partdefid oid (references pg_class.oid)	The OID of the pg_class entry for the default partition of this partitioned table, or zero if this partitioned table does not have a default partition
partattrs int2vector (references pg_attribute.attnum)	This is an array of partnatts values that indicate which table columns are part of the partition key. For example, a value of 1 3 would mean that the first and the third table columns make up the partition key. A zero in this array indicates that the corresponding partition key column is an expression, rather than a simple column reference.
partclass oidvector (references pg_opclass.oid)	For each column in the partition key, this contains the OID of the operator class to use. See pg_opclass for details.
partcollation oidvector (references pg_collation.oid)	For each column in the partition key, this contains the OID of the collation to use for partitioning, or zero if the column is not of a collatable data type.
partexprs pg_node_tree	Expression trees (in nodeToString() representation) for partition key columns that are not simple column references. This is a list with one element for each zero entry in partattrs. Null if all partition key columns are simple references.

## 53.38. pg\_policy

The catalog `pg_policy` stores row-level security policies for tables. A policy includes the kind of command that it applies to (possibly all commands), the roles that it applies to, the expression to be added as a security-barrier qualification to queries that include the table, and the expression to be added as a `WITH CHECK` option for queries that attempt to add new records to the table.

**Table 53.38. pg\_policy Columns**

Column Type	Description
oid oid	Row identifier
polname name	The name of the policy
polrelid oid (references pg_class.oid)	The table to which the policy applies
polcmd char	The command type to which the policy is applied: r for SELECT, a for INSERT, w for UPDATE, d for DELETE, or * for all
polpermissive bool	Is the policy permissive or restrictive?
polroles oid[] (references pg_authid.oid)	The roles to which the policy is applied; zero means PUBLIC (and normally appears alone in the array)
polqual pg_node_tree	

Column Type	Description
	The expression tree to be added to the security barrier qualifications for queries that use the table
<code>polwithcheck pg_node_tree</code>	The expression tree to be added to the WITH CHECK qualifications for queries that attempt to add rows to the table

### Note

Policies stored in `pg_policy` are applied only when `pg_class.relrowsecurity` is set for their table.

## 53.39. `pg_proc`

The catalog `pg_proc` stores information about functions, procedures, aggregate functions, and window functions (collectively also known as routines). See `CREATE FUNCTION`, `CREATE PROCEDURE`, and Section 38.3 for more information.

If `prokind` indicates that the entry is for an aggregate function, there should be a matching row in `pg_aggregate`.

**Table 53.39. `pg_proc` Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>oid oid</code>	Row identifier
<code>proname name</code>	Name of the function
<code>pronamespace oid (references pg_namespace.oid)</code>	The OID of the namespace that contains this function
<code>proowner oid (references pg_authid.oid)</code>	Owner of the function
<code>prolang oid (references pg_language.oid)</code>	Implementation language or call interface of this function
<code>procost float4</code>	Estimated execution cost (in units of <code>cpu_operator_cost</code> ); if <code>proretset</code> , this is cost per row returned
<code>prorows float4</code>	Estimated number of result rows (zero if not <code>proretset</code> )
<code>provariadic oid (references pg_type.oid)</code>	Data type of the variadic array parameter's elements, or zero if the function does not have a variadic parameter
<code>prosupport regproc (references pg_proc.oid)</code>	Planner support function for this function (see Section 38.11), or zero if none
<code>prokind char</code>	<code>f</code> for a normal function, <code>p</code> for a procedure, <code>a</code> for an aggregate function, or <code>w</code> for a window function
<code>prosecdef bool</code>	Function is a security definer (i.e., a “setuid” function)

Column Type	Description
<code>proleakproof bool</code>	The function has no side effects. No information about the arguments is conveyed except via the return value. Any function that might throw an error depending on the values of its arguments is not leak-proof.
<code>proisstrict bool</code>	Function returns null if any call argument is null. In that case the function won't actually be called at all. Functions that are not “strict” must be prepared to handle null inputs.
<code>proretset bool</code>	Function returns a set (i.e., multiple values of the specified data type)
<code>provolatile char</code>	<code>provolatile</code> tells whether the function's result depends only on its input arguments, or is affected by outside factors. It is <code>i</code> for “immutable” functions, which always deliver the same result for the same inputs. It is <code>s</code> for “stable” functions, whose results (for fixed inputs) do not change within a scan. It is <code>v</code> for “volatile” functions, whose results might change at any time. (Use <code>v</code> also for functions with side-effects, so that calls to them cannot get optimized away.)
<code>proparallel char</code>	<code>proparallel</code> tells whether the function can be safely run in parallel mode. It is <code>s</code> for functions which are safe to run in parallel mode without restriction. It is <code>r</code> for functions which can be run in parallel mode, but their execution is restricted to the parallel group leader; parallel worker processes cannot invoke these functions. It is <code>u</code> for functions which are unsafe in parallel mode; the presence of such a function forces a serial execution plan.
<code>pronargs int2</code>	Number of input arguments
<code>pronargdefaults int2</code>	Number of arguments that have defaults
<code>prorettype oid (references pg_type.oid)</code>	Data type of the return value
<code>proargtypes oidvector (references pg_type.oid)</code>	An array of the data types of the function arguments. This includes only input arguments (including <code>INOUT</code> and <code>VARIADIC</code> arguments), and thus represents the call signature of the function.
<code>proallargtypes oid[ ] (references pg_type.oid)</code>	An array of the data types of the function arguments. This includes all arguments (including <code>OUT</code> and <code>INOUT</code> arguments); however, if all the arguments are <code>IN</code> arguments, this field will be null. Note that subscripting is 1-based, whereas for historical reasons <code>proargtypes</code> is subscripted from 0.
<code>proargmodes char[ ]</code>	An array of the modes of the function arguments, encoded as <code>i</code> for <code>IN</code> arguments, <code>o</code> for <code>OUT</code> arguments, <code>b</code> for <code>INOUT</code> arguments, <code>v</code> for <code>VARIADIC</code> arguments, <code>t</code> for <code>TABLE</code> arguments. If all the arguments are <code>IN</code> arguments, this field will be null. Note that subscripts correspond to positions of <code>proallargtypes</code> not <code>proargtypes</code> .
<code>proargnames text[ ]</code>	An array of the names of the function arguments. Arguments without a name are set to empty strings in the array. If none of the arguments have a name, this field will be null. Note that subscripts correspond to positions of <code>proallargtypes</code> not <code>proargtypes</code> .
<code>proargdefaults pg_node_tree</code>	Expression trees (in <code>nodeToString( )</code> representation) for default values. This is a list with <code>pronargdefaults</code> elements, corresponding to the last <i>N</i> input arguments (i.e.,

Column Type	Description
	the last <i>N</i> <code>proargtypes</code> positions). If none of the arguments have defaults, this field will be null.
<code>protrftypes oid[]</code> (references <code>pg_type.oid</code> )	An array of the argument/result data type(s) for which to apply transforms (from the function's <code>TRANSFORM</code> clause). Null if none.
<code>prosrc text</code>	This tells the function handler how to invoke the function. It might be the actual source code of the function for interpreted languages, a link symbol, a file name, or just about anything else, depending on the implementation language/call convention.
<code>probin text</code>	Additional information about how to invoke the function. Again, the interpretation is language-specific.
<code>prosqlbody pg_node_tree</code>	Pre-parsed SQL function body. This is used for SQL-language functions when the body is given in SQL-standard notation rather than as a string literal. It's null in other cases.
<code>proconfig text[]</code>	Function's local settings for run-time configuration variables
<code>proacl aclitem[]</code>	Access privileges; see Section 5.7 for details

For compiled functions, both built-in and dynamically loaded, `prosrc` contains the function's C-language name (link symbol). For SQL-language functions, `prosrc` contains the function's source text if that is specified as a string literal; but if the function body is specified in SQL-standard style, `prosrc` is unused (typically it's an empty string) and `prosqlbody` contains the pre-parsed definition. For all other currently-known language types, `prosrc` contains the function's source text. `probin` is null except for dynamically-loaded C functions, for which it gives the name of the shared library file containing the function.

## 53.40. `pg_publication`

The catalog `pg_publication` contains all publications created in the database. For more on publications see Section 31.1.

**Table 53.40. `pg_publication` Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>oid oid</code>	Row identifier
<code>pubname name</code>	Name of the publication
<code>pubowner oid</code> (references <code>pg_authid.oid</code> )	Owner of the publication
<code>puballtables bool</code>	If true, this publication automatically includes all tables in the database, including any that will be created in the future.
<code>pubinsert bool</code>	If true, INSERT operations are replicated for tables in the publication.
<code>pubupdate bool</code>	If true, UPDATE operations are replicated for tables in the publication.

Column Type	Description
pubdelete bool	If true, DELETE operations are replicated for tables in the publication.
pubtruncate bool	If true, TRUNCATE operations are replicated for tables in the publication.
pubviaroot bool	If true, operations on a leaf partition are replicated using the identity and schema of its topmost partitioned ancestor mentioned in the publication instead of its own.

## 53.41. pg\_publication\_namespace

The catalog `pg_publication_namespace` contains the mapping between schemas and publications in the database. This is a many-to-many mapping.

**Table 53.41. pg\_publication\_namespace Columns**

Column Type	Description
oid oid	Row identifier
pnpubid oid (references pg_publication.oid)	Reference to publication
pnnspid oid (references pg_namespace.oid)	Reference to schema

## 53.42. pg\_publication\_rel

The catalog `pg_publication_rel` contains the mapping between relations and publications in the database. This is a many-to-many mapping. See also Section 54.17 for a more user-friendly view of this information.

**Table 53.42. pg\_publication\_rel Columns**

Column Type	Description
oid oid	Row identifier
prpubid oid (references pg_publication.oid)	Reference to publication
prrelid oid (references pg_class.oid)	Reference to relation
prqual pg_node_tree	Expression tree (in <code>nodeToString( )</code> representation) for the relation's publication qualifying condition. Null if there is no publication qualifying condition.
prattns int2vector (references pg_attribute.attnum)	This is an array of values that indicates which table columns are part of the publication. For example, a value of <code>1 3</code> would mean that the first and the third table columns are published. A null value indicates that all columns are published.

## 53.43. pg\_range

The catalog `pg_range` stores information about range types. This is in addition to the types' entries in `pg_type`.

**Table 53.43. `pg_range` Columns**

Column Type Description
<code>rngtypeid oid</code> (references <code>pg_type.oid</code> ) OID of the range type
<code>rngsubtype oid</code> (references <code>pg_type.oid</code> ) OID of the element type (subtype) of this range type
<code>rngmultitypid oid</code> (references <code>pg_type.oid</code> ) OID of the multirange type for this range type
<code>rngcollation oid</code> (references <code>pg_collation.oid</code> ) OID of the collation used for range comparisons, or zero if none
<code>rngsubopc oid</code> (references <code>pg_opclass.oid</code> ) OID of the subtype's operator class used for range comparisons
<code>rngcanonical regproc</code> (references <code>pg_proc.oid</code> ) OID of the function to convert a range value into canonical form, or zero if none
<code>rngsubdiff regproc</code> (references <code>pg_proc.oid</code> ) OID of the function to return the difference between two element values as double precision, or zero if none

`rngsubopc` (plus `rngcollation`, if the element type is collatable) determines the sort ordering used by the range type. `rngcanonical` is used when the element type is discrete. `rngsubdiff` is optional but should be supplied to improve performance of GiST indexes on the range type.

## 53.44. `pg_replication_origin`

The `pg_replication_origin` catalog contains all replication origins created. For more on replication origins see Chapter 50.

Unlike most system catalogs, `pg_replication_origin` is shared across all databases of a cluster: there is only one copy of `pg_replication_origin` per cluster, not one per database.

**Table 53.44. `pg_replication_origin` Columns**

Column Type Description
<code>roident oid</code> A unique, cluster-wide identifier for the replication origin. Should never leave the system.
<code>roname text</code> The external, user defined, name of a replication origin.

## 53.45. `pg_rewrite`

The catalog `pg_rewrite` stores rewrite rules for tables and views.

**Table 53.45. `pg_rewrite` Columns**

Column Type Description
<code>oid oid</code>

Column Type	Description
	Row identifier
rulename name	Rule name
ev_class oid (references pg_class.oid)	The table this rule is for
ev_type char	Event type that the rule is for: 1 = SELECT, 2 = UPDATE, 3 = INSERT, 4 = DELETE
ev_enabled char	Controls in which session_replication_role modes the rule fires. O = rule fires in “origin” and “local” modes, D = rule is disabled, R = rule fires in “replica” mode, A = rule fires always.
is_instead bool	True if the rule is an INSTEAD rule
ev_qual pg_node_tree	Expression tree (in the form of a nodeToString( ) representation) for the rule's qualifying condition
ev_action pg_node_tree	Query tree (in the form of a nodeToString( ) representation) for the rule's action

**Note**

`pg_class.relhasrules` must be true if a table has any rules in this catalog.

## 53.46. pg\_seclabel

The catalog `pg_seclabel` stores security labels on database objects. Security labels can be manipulated with the `SECURITY LABEL` command. For an easier way to view security labels, see Section 54.22.

See also `pg_shseclabel`, which performs a similar function for security labels of database objects that are shared across a database cluster.

**Table 53.46. pg\_seclabel Columns**

Column Type	Description
objoid oid (references any OID column)	The OID of the object this security label pertains to
classoid oid (references pg_class.oid)	The OID of the system catalog this object appears in
objsubid int4	For a security label on a table column, this is the column number (the <code>objoid</code> and <code>classoid</code> refer to the table itself). For all other object types, this column is zero.
provider text	The label provider associated with this label.
label text	The security label applied to this object.



## 53.47. pg\_sequence

The catalog `pg_sequence` contains information about sequences. Some of the information about sequences, such as the name and the schema, is in `pg_class`

**Table 53.47. pg\_sequence Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>seqrelid oid</code> (references <code>pg_class.oid</code> )	The OID of the <code>pg_class</code> entry for this sequence
<code>seqtypid oid</code> (references <code>pg_type.oid</code> )	Data type of the sequence
<code>seqstart int8</code>	Start value of the sequence
<code>seqincrement int8</code>	Increment value of the sequence
<code>seqmax int8</code>	Maximum value of the sequence
<code>seqmin int8</code>	Minimum value of the sequence
<code>seqcache int8</code>	Cache size of the sequence
<code>seqcycle bool</code>	Whether the sequence cycles

## 53.48. pg\_shdepend

The catalog `pg_shdepend` records the dependency relationships between database objects and shared objects, such as roles. This information allows PostgreSQL to ensure that those objects are unreferenced before attempting to delete them.

See also `pg_depend`, which performs a similar function for dependencies involving objects within a single database.

Unlike most system catalogs, `pg_shdepend` is shared across all databases of a cluster: there is only one copy of `pg_shdepend` per cluster, not one per database.

**Table 53.48. pg\_shdepend Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>dbid oid</code> (references <code>pg_database.oid</code> )	The OID of the database the dependent object is in, or zero for a shared object
<code>classid oid</code> (references <code>pg_class.oid</code> )	The OID of the system catalog the dependent object is in
<code>objid oid</code> (references any OID column)	The OID of the specific dependent object
<code>objsubid int4</code>	For a table column, this is the column number (the <code>objid</code> and <code>classid</code> refer to the table itself). For all other object types, this column is zero.

Column Type	Description
<code>refclassid oid</code> (references <code>pg_class.oid</code> )	The OID of the system catalog the referenced object is in (must be a shared catalog)
<code>refobjid oid</code> (references any OID column)	The OID of the specific referenced object
<code>deptype char</code>	A code defining the specific semantics of this dependency relationship; see text

In all cases, a `pg_shdepend` entry indicates that the referenced object cannot be dropped without also dropping the dependent object. However, there are several subflavors identified by `deptype`:

`SHARED_DEPENDENCY_OWNER` (o)

The referenced object (which must be a role) is the owner of the dependent object.

`SHARED_DEPENDENCY_ACL` (a)

The referenced object (which must be a role) is mentioned in the ACL (access control list, i.e., privileges list) of the dependent object. (A `SHARED_DEPENDENCY_ACL` entry is not made for the owner of the object, since the owner will have a `SHARED_DEPENDENCY_OWNER` entry anyway.)

`SHARED_DEPENDENCY_POLICY` (r)

The referenced object (which must be a role) is mentioned as the target of a dependent policy object.

`SHARED_DEPENDENCY_TABLESPACE` (t)

The referenced object (which must be a tablespace) is mentioned as the tablespace for a relation that doesn't have storage.

Other dependency flavors might be needed in future. Note in particular that the current definition only supports roles and tablespaces as referenced objects.

As in the `pg_depend` catalog, most objects created during `initdb` are considered “pinned”. No entries are made in `pg_shdepend` that would have a pinned object as either referenced or dependent object.

## 53.49. `pg_shdescription`

The catalog `pg_shdescription` stores optional descriptions (comments) for shared database objects. Descriptions can be manipulated with the `COMMENT` command and viewed with `psql`'s `\d` commands.

See also `pg_description`, which performs a similar function for descriptions involving objects within a single database.

Unlike most system catalogs, `pg_shdescription` is shared across all databases of a cluster: there is only one copy of `pg_shdescription` per cluster, not one per database.

**Table 53.49. `pg_shdescription` Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>objoid oid</code> (references any OID column)	

Column Type	Description
	The OID of the object this description pertains to
classoid oid (references pg_class.oid)	The OID of the system catalog this object appears in
description text	Arbitrary text that serves as the description of this object

## 53.50. pg\_shseclabel

The catalog `pg_shseclabel` stores security labels on shared database objects. Security labels can be manipulated with the `SECURITY LABEL` command. For an easier way to view security labels, see Section 54.22.

See also `pg_seclabel`, which performs a similar function for security labels involving objects within a single database.

Unlike most system catalogs, `pg_shseclabel` is shared across all databases of a cluster: there is only one copy of `pg_shseclabel` per cluster, not one per database.

**Table 53.50. `pg_shseclabel` Columns**

Column Type	Description
objoid oid (references any OID column)	The OID of the object this security label pertains to
classoid oid (references pg_class.oid)	The OID of the system catalog this object appears in
provider text	The label provider associated with this label.
label text	The security label applied to this object.

## 53.51. pg\_statistic

The catalog `pg_statistic` stores statistical data about the contents of the database. Entries are created by `ANALYZE` and subsequently used by the query planner. Note that all the statistical data is inherently approximate, even assuming that it is up-to-date.

Normally there is one entry, with `stainherit = false`, for each table column that has been analyzed. If the table has inheritance children or partitions, a second entry with `stainherit = true` is also created. This row represents the column's statistics over the inheritance tree, i.e., statistics for the data you'd see with `SELECT column FROM table*`, whereas the `stainherit = false` row represents the results of `SELECT column FROM ONLY table`.

`pg_statistic` also stores statistical data about the values of index expressions. These are described as if they were actual data columns; in particular, `starelid` references the index. No entry is made for an ordinary non-expression index column, however, since it would be redundant with the entry for the underlying table column. Currently, entries for index expressions always have `stainherit = false`.

Since different kinds of statistics might be appropriate for different kinds of data, `pg_statistic` is designed not to assume very much about what sort of statistics it stores. Only extremely general statistics (such as nullness) are given dedicated columns in `pg_statistic`. Everything else is stored

in “slots”, which are groups of associated columns whose content is identified by a code number in one of the slot's columns. For more information see `src/include/catalog/pg_statistic.h`.

`pg_statistic` should not be readable by the public, since even statistical information about a table's contents might be considered sensitive. (Example: minimum and maximum values of a salary column might be quite interesting.) `pg_stats` is a publicly readable view on `pg_statistic` that only exposes information about those tables that are readable by the current user.

**Table 53.51. `pg_statistic` Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>stareloid oid</code> (references <code>pg_class.oid</code> )	The table or index that the described column belongs to
<code>staattnum int2</code> (references <code>pg_attribute.attnum</code> )	The number of the described column
<code>stainherit bool</code>	If true, the stats include values from child tables, not just the values in the specified relation
<code>stanullfrac float4</code>	The fraction of the column's entries that are null
<code>stawidth int4</code>	The average stored width, in bytes, of nonnull entries
<code>stadistinct float4</code>	The number of distinct nonnull data values in the column. A value greater than zero is the actual number of distinct values. A value less than zero is the negative of a multiplier for the number of rows in the table; for example, a column in which about 80% of the values are nonnull and each nonnull value appears about twice on average could be represented by <code>stadistinct = -0.4</code> . A zero value means the number of distinct values is unknown.
<code>stakindN int2</code>	A code number indicating the kind of statistics stored in the <i>N</i> th “slot” of the <code>pg_statistic</code> row.
<code>staopN oid</code> (references <code>pg_operator.oid</code> )	An operator used to derive the statistics stored in the <i>N</i> th “slot”. For example, a histogram slot would show the <code>&lt;</code> operator that defines the sort order of the data. Zero if the statistics kind does not require an operator.
<code>stacollN oid</code> (references <code>pg_collation.oid</code> )	The collation used to derive the statistics stored in the <i>N</i> th “slot”. For example, a histogram slot for a collatable column would show the collation that defines the sort order of the data. Zero for noncollatable data.
<code>stanumbersN float4[ ]</code>	Numerical statistics of the appropriate kind for the <i>N</i> th “slot”, or null if the slot kind does not involve numerical values
<code>stavaluesN anyarray</code>	Column data values of the appropriate kind for the <i>N</i> th “slot”, or null if the slot kind does not store any data values. Each array's element values are actually of the specific column's data type, or a related type such as an array's element type, so there is no way to define these columns' type more specifically than <code>anyarray</code> .

## 53.52. `pg_statistic_ext`

The catalog `pg_statistic_ext` holds definitions of extended planner statistics. Each row in this catalog corresponds to a *statistics object* created with `CREATE STATISTICS`.

**Table 53.52. pg\_statistic\_ext Columns**

Column Type	Description
oid oid	Row identifier
stxrelid oid (references pg_class.oid)	Table containing the columns described by this object
stxname name	Name of the statistics object
stxnamespace oid (references pg_namespace.oid)	The OID of the namespace that contains this statistics object
stxowner oid (references pg_authid.oid)	Owner of the statistics object
stxstattarget int4	stxstattarget controls the level of detail of statistics accumulated for this statistics object by ANALYZE. A zero value indicates that no statistics should be collected. A negative value says to use the maximum of the statistics targets of the referenced columns, if set, or the system default statistics target. Positive values of stxstattarget determine the target number of “most common values” to collect.
stxkeys int2vector (references pg_attribute.attnum)	An array of attribute numbers, indicating which table columns are covered by this statistics object; for example a value of 1 3 would mean that the first and the third table columns are covered
stxkind char[ ]	An array containing codes for the enabled statistics kinds; valid values are: d for n-distinct statistics, f for functional dependency statistics, m for most common values (MCV) list statistics, and e for expression statistics
stxexprs pg_node_tree	Expression trees (in nodeToString( ) representation) for statistics object attributes that are not simple column references. This is a list with one element per expression. Null if all statistics object attributes are simple references.

The `pg_statistic_ext` entry is filled in completely during `CREATE STATISTICS`, but the actual statistical values are not computed then. Subsequent `ANALYZE` commands compute the desired values and populate an entry in the `pg_statistic_ext_data` catalog.

## 53.53. pg\_statistic\_ext\_data

The catalog `pg_statistic_ext_data` holds data for extended planner statistics defined in `pg_statistic_ext`. Each row in this catalog corresponds to a *statistics object* created with `CREATE STATISTICS`.

Normally there is one entry, with `stxdinherit = false`, for each statistics object that has been analyzed. If the table has inheritance children or partitions, a second entry with `stxdinherit = true` is also created. This row represents the statistics object over the inheritance tree, i.e., statistics for the data you'd see with `SELECT * FROM table*`, whereas the `stxdinherit = false` row represents the results of `SELECT * FROM ONLY table`.

Like `pg_statistic`, `pg_statistic_ext_data` should not be readable by the public, since the contents might be considered sensitive. (Example: most common combinations of values in columns might be quite interesting.) `pg_stats_ext` is a publicly readable view on `pg_statistic_ext_data` (after joining with `pg_statistic_ext`) that only exposes information about those tables and columns that are readable by the current user.

**Table 53.53. pg\_statistic\_ext\_data Columns**

Column Type	Description
stxoid oid (references pg_statistic_ext.oid)	Extended statistics object containing the definition for this data
stxdinherit bool	If true, the stats include values from child tables, not just the values in the specified relation
stxdndistinct pg_ndistinct	N-distinct counts, serialized as pg_ndistinct type
stxddependencies pg_dependencies	Functional dependency statistics, serialized as pg_dependencies type
stxdmcv pg_mcv_list	MCV (most-common values) list statistics, serialized as pg_mcv_list type
stxdexpr pg_statistic[]	Per-expression statistics, serialized as an array of pg_statistic type

## 53.54. pg\_subscription

The catalog `pg_subscription` contains all existing logical replication subscriptions. For more information about logical replication see Chapter 31.

Unlike most system catalogs, `pg_subscription` is shared across all databases of a cluster: there is only one copy of `pg_subscription` per cluster, not one per database.

Access to the column `subconninfo` is revoked from normal users, because it could contain plain-text passwords.

**Table 53.54. pg\_subscription Columns**

Column Type	Description
oid oid	Row identifier
subdbid oid (references pg_database.oid)	OID of the database that the subscription resides in
subskiplsn pg_lsn	Finish LSN of the transaction whose changes are to be skipped, if a valid LSN; otherwise 0/0.
subname name	Name of the subscription
subowner oid (references pg_authid.oid)	Owner of the subscription
subenabled bool	If true, the subscription is enabled and should be replicating
subbinary bool	If true, the subscription will request that the publisher send data in binary format
substream char	Controls how to handle the streaming of in-progress transactions: <code>f</code> = disallow streaming of in-progress transactions, <code>t</code> = spill the changes of in-progress transactions to disk and apply at once after the transaction is committed on the publisher and received by the sub-

Column Type	Description
	scriber, p = apply changes directly using a parallel apply worker if available (same as 't' if no worker is available)
subtwophasestate char	State codes for two-phase mode: d = disabled, p = pending enablement, e = enabled
subdisableonerr bool	If true, the subscription will be disabled if one of its workers detects an error
subpasswordrequired bool	If true, the subscription will be required to specify a password for authentication
subrunasowner bool	If true, the subscription will be run with the permissions of the subscription owner
subconninfo text	Connection string to the upstream database
subslotname name	Name of the replication slot in the upstream database (also used for the local replication origin name); null represents NONE
subsynccommit text	The synchronous_commit setting for the subscription's workers to use
subpublications text[]	Array of subscribed publication names. These reference publications defined in the upstream database. For more on publications see Section 31.1.
suborigin text	The origin value must be either none or any. The default is any. If none, the subscription will request the publisher to only send changes that don't have an origin. If any, the publisher sends changes regardless of their origin.

## 53.55. pg\_subscription\_rel

The catalog `pg_subscription_rel` contains the state for each replicated relation in each subscription. This is a many-to-many mapping.

This catalog only contains tables known to the subscription after running either `CREATE SUBSCRIPTION` or `ALTER SUBSCRIPTION ... REFRESH PUBLICATION`.

**Table 53.55. pg\_subscription\_rel Columns**

Column Type	Description
srsubid oid (references pg_subscription.oid)	Reference to subscription
srrelid oid (references pg_class.oid)	Reference to relation
srsubstate char	State code: i = initialize, d = data is being copied, f = finished table copy, s = synchronized, r = ready (normal replication)
srsublsn pg_lsn	Remote LSN of the state change used for synchronization coordination when in s or r states, otherwise null

## 53.56. pg\_tablespace

The catalog `pg_tablespace` stores information about the available tablespaces. Tables can be placed in particular tablespaces to aid administration of disk layout.

Unlike most system catalogs, `pg_tablespace` is shared across all databases of a cluster: there is only one copy of `pg_tablespace` per cluster, not one per database.

**Table 53.56. `pg_tablespace` Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>oid oid</code>	Row identifier
<code>spcname name</code>	Tablespace name
<code>spcowner oid (references pg_authid.oid)</code>	Owner of the tablespace, usually the user who created it
<code>spcacl aclitem[]</code>	Access privileges; see Section 5.7 for details
<code>spcoptions text[]</code>	Tablespace-level options, as “keyword=value” strings

## 53.57. `pg_transform`

The catalog `pg_transform` stores information about transforms, which are a mechanism to adapt data types to procedural languages. See `CREATE TRANSFORM` for more information.

**Table 53.57. `pg_transform` Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>oid oid</code>	Row identifier
<code>trftype oid (references pg_type.oid)</code>	OID of the data type this transform is for
<code>trflang oid (references pg_language.oid)</code>	OID of the language this transform is for
<code>trffromsql regproc (references pg_proc.oid)</code>	The OID of the function to use when converting the data type for input to the procedural language (e.g., function parameters). Zero is stored if the default behavior should be used.
<code>trftosql regproc (references pg_proc.oid)</code>	The OID of the function to use when converting output from the procedural language (e.g., return values) to the data type. Zero is stored if the default behavior should be used.

## 53.58. `pg_trigger`

The catalog `pg_trigger` stores triggers on tables and views. See `CREATE TRIGGER` for more information.

**Table 53.58. `pg_trigger` Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>oid oid</code>	



Column Type	Description
	Row identifier
tgrelid oid (references pg_class.oid)	The table this trigger is on
tgparentid oid (references pg_trigger.oid)	Parent trigger that this trigger is cloned from (this happens when partitions are created or attached to a partitioned table); zero if not a clone
tgname name	Trigger name (must be unique among triggers of same table)
tgfoid oid (references pg_proc.oid)	The function to be called
tgtype int2	Bit mask identifying trigger firing conditions
tgenabled char	Controls in which session_replication_role modes the trigger fires. O = trigger fires in “origin” and “local” modes, D = trigger is disabled, R = trigger fires in “replica” mode, A = trigger fires always.
tgisinternal bool	True if trigger is internally generated (usually, to enforce the constraint identified by tg-constraint)
tgconstrrelid oid (references pg_class.oid)	The table referenced by a referential integrity constraint (zero if trigger is not for a referential integrity constraint)
tgconstrindid oid (references pg_class.oid)	The index supporting a unique, primary key, referential integrity, or exclusion constraint (zero if trigger is not for one of these types of constraint)
tgconstraint oid (references pg_constraint.oid)	The pg_constraint entry associated with the trigger (zero if trigger is not for a constraint)
tgdeferrable bool	True if constraint trigger is deferrable
tginitdeferred bool	True if constraint trigger is initially deferred
tgargs int2	Number of argument strings passed to trigger function
tgattr int2vector (references pg_attribute.attnum)	Column numbers, if trigger is column-specific; otherwise an empty array
tgargs bytea	Argument strings to pass to trigger, each NULL-terminated
tgqual pg_node_tree	Expression tree (in nodeToString( ) representation) for the trigger's WHEN condition, or null if none
tgoldtable name	REFERENCING clause name for OLD TABLE, or null if none
tgnewtable name	REFERENCING clause name for NEW TABLE, or null if none

Currently, column-specific triggering is supported only for UPDATE events, and so tgattr is relevant only for that event type. tgtype might contain bits for other event types as well, but those are presumed to be table-wide regardless of what is in tgattr.

**Note**

When `tgconstraint` is nonzero, `tgconstrrelid`, `tgconstrindid`, `tgdeferrable`, and `tginitdeferred` are largely redundant with the referenced `pg_constraint` entry. However, it is possible for a non-deferrable trigger to be associated with a deferrable constraint: foreign key constraints can have some deferrable and some non-deferrable triggers.

**Note**

`pg_class.relhastriggers` must be true if a relation has any triggers in this catalog.

## 53.59. `pg_ts_config`

The `pg_ts_config` catalog contains entries representing text search configurations. A configuration specifies a particular text search parser and a list of dictionaries to use for each of the parser's output token types. The parser is shown in the `pg_ts_config` entry, but the token-to-dictionary mapping is defined by subsidiary entries in `pg_ts_config_map`.

PostgreSQL's text search features are described at length in Chapter 12.

**Table 53.59. `pg_ts_config` Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>oid oid</code>	Row identifier
<code>cfgname name</code>	Text search configuration name
<code>cfgnamespace oid (references <code>pg_namespace.oid</code>)</code>	The OID of the namespace that contains this configuration
<code>cfgowner oid (references <code>pg_authid.oid</code>)</code>	Owner of the configuration
<code>cfgparser oid (references <code>pg_ts_parser.oid</code>)</code>	The OID of the text search parser for this configuration

## 53.60. `pg_ts_config_map`

The `pg_ts_config_map` catalog contains entries showing which text search dictionaries should be consulted, and in what order, for each output token type of each text search configuration's parser.

PostgreSQL's text search features are described at length in Chapter 12.

**Table 53.60. `pg_ts_config_map` Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>mapcfg oid (references <code>pg_ts_config.oid</code>)</code>	The OID of the <code>pg_ts_config</code> entry owning this map entry
<code>maptokentype int4</code>	A token type emitted by the configuration's parser
<code>mapseqno int4</code>	

Column Type	Description
	Order in which to consult this entry (lower mapseqnos first)
mapdict oid (references pg_ts_dict.oid)	The OID of the text search dictionary to consult

## 53.61. pg\_ts\_dict

The `pg_ts_dict` catalog contains entries defining text search dictionaries. A dictionary depends on a text search template, which specifies all the implementation functions needed; the dictionary itself provides values for the user-settable parameters supported by the template. This division of labor allows dictionaries to be created by unprivileged users. The parameters are specified by a text string `dictinitoption`, whose format and meaning vary depending on the template.

PostgreSQL's text search features are described at length in Chapter 12.

**Table 53.61. `pg_ts_dict` Columns**

Column Type	Description
oid oid	Row identifier
dictname name	Text search dictionary name
dictnamespace oid (references pg_namespace.oid)	The OID of the namespace that contains this dictionary
dictowner oid (references pg_authid.oid)	Owner of the dictionary
dicttemplate oid (references pg_ts_template.oid)	The OID of the text search template for this dictionary
dictinitoption text	Initialization option string for the template

## 53.62. pg\_ts\_parser

The `pg_ts_parser` catalog contains entries defining text search parsers. A parser is responsible for splitting input text into lexemes and assigning a token type to each lexeme. Since a parser must be implemented by C-language-level functions, creation of new parsers is restricted to database superusers.

PostgreSQL's text search features are described at length in Chapter 12.

**Table 53.62. `pg_ts_parser` Columns**

Column Type	Description
oid oid	Row identifier
prsname name	Text search parser name
prsnamespace oid (references pg_namespace.oid)	The OID of the namespace that contains this parser
prsstart regproc (references pg_proc.oid)	OID of the parser's startup function

Column Type	Description
<code>prstoken regproc</code> (references <code>pg_proc.oid</code> )	OID of the parser's next-token function
<code>prsend regproc</code> (references <code>pg_proc.oid</code> )	OID of the parser's shutdown function
<code>prsheadline regproc</code> (references <code>pg_proc.oid</code> )	OID of the parser's headline function (zero if none)
<code>prsllextype regproc</code> (references <code>pg_proc.oid</code> )	OID of the parser's lextype function

## 53.63. `pg_ts_template`

The `pg_ts_template` catalog contains entries defining text search templates. A template is the implementation skeleton for a class of text search dictionaries. Since a template must be implemented by C-language-level functions, creation of new templates is restricted to database superusers.

PostgreSQL's text search features are described at length in Chapter 12.

**Table 53.63. `pg_ts_template` Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>oid oid</code>	Row identifier
<code>tmplname name</code>	Text search template name
<code>tmplnamespace oid</code> (references <code>pg_namespace.oid</code> )	The OID of the namespace that contains this template
<code>tmplinit regproc</code> (references <code>pg_proc.oid</code> )	OID of the template's initialization function (zero if none)
<code>tmpllexize regproc</code> (references <code>pg_proc.oid</code> )	OID of the template's lexize function

## 53.64. `pg_type`

The catalog `pg_type` stores information about data types. Base types and enum types (scalar types) are created with `CREATE TYPE`, and domains with `CREATE DOMAIN`. A composite type is automatically created for each table in the database, to represent the row structure of the table. It is also possible to create composite types with `CREATE TYPE AS`.

**Table 53.64. `pg_type` Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>oid oid</code>	Row identifier
<code>typname name</code>	Data type name
<code>typnamespace oid</code> (references <code>pg_namespace.oid</code> )	The OID of the namespace that contains this type
<code>typowner oid</code> (references <code>pg_authid.oid</code> )	

Column Type	Description
	Owner of the type
<code>typelen int2</code>	For a fixed-size type, <code>typelen</code> is the number of bytes in the internal representation of the type. But for a variable-length type, <code>typelen</code> is negative. -1 indicates a “varlena” type (one that has a length word), -2 indicates a null-terminated C string.
<code>typbyval bool</code>	<code>typbyval</code> determines whether internal routines pass a value of this type by value or by reference. <code>typbyval</code> had better be false if <code>typelen</code> is not 1, 2, or 4 (or 8 on machines where Datum is 8 bytes). Variable-length types are always passed by reference. Note that <code>typbyval</code> can be false even if the length would allow pass-by-value.
<code>typtype char</code>	<code>typtype</code> is b for a base type, c for a composite type (e.g., a table's row type), d for a domain, e for an enum type, p for a pseudo-type, r for a range type, or m for a multi-range type. See also <code>typrelid</code> and <code>typbasetype</code> .
<code>typcategory char</code>	<code>typcategory</code> is an arbitrary classification of data types that is used by the parser to determine which implicit casts should be “preferred”. See Table 53.65.
<code>typispreferred bool</code>	True if the type is a preferred cast target within its <code>typcategory</code>
<code>typisdefined bool</code>	True if the type is defined, false if this is a placeholder entry for a not-yet-defined type. When <code>typisdefined</code> is false, nothing except the type name, namespace, and OID can be relied on.
<code>typdelim char</code>	Character that separates two values of this type when parsing array input. Note that the delimiter is associated with the array element data type, not the array data type.
<code>typrelid oid</code> (references <code>pg_class.oid</code> )	If this is a composite type (see <code>typtype</code> ), then this column points to the <code>pg_class</code> entry that defines the corresponding table. (For a free-standing composite type, the <code>pg_class</code> entry doesn't really represent a table, but it is needed anyway for the type's <code>pg_attribute</code> entries to link to.) Zero for non-composite types.
<code>typsubscript regproc</code> (references <code>pg_proc.oid</code> )	Subscripting handler function's OID, or zero if this type doesn't support subscripting. Types that are “true” array types have <code>typsubscript = array_subscript_handler</code> , but other types may have other handler functions to implement specialized subscripting behavior.
<code>typelem oid</code> (references <code>pg_type.oid</code> )	If <code>typelem</code> is not zero then it identifies another row in <code>pg_type</code> , defining the type yielded by subscripting. This should be zero if <code>typsubscript</code> is zero. However, it can be zero when <code>typsubscript</code> isn't zero, if the handler doesn't need <code>typelem</code> to determine the subscripting result type. Note that a <code>typelem</code> dependency is considered to imply physical containment of the element type in this type; so DDL changes on the element type might be restricted by the presence of this type.
<code>typarray oid</code> (references <code>pg_type.oid</code> )	If <code>typarray</code> is not zero then it identifies another row in <code>pg_type</code> , which is the “true” array type having this type as element
<code>typinput regproc</code> (references <code>pg_proc.oid</code> )	Input conversion function (text format)
<code>typoutput regproc</code> (references <code>pg_proc.oid</code> )	Output conversion function (text format)

Column Type	Description
<code>typreceive regproc</code> (references <code>pg_proc.oid</code> )	Input conversion function (binary format), or zero if none
<code>typsend regproc</code> (references <code>pg_proc.oid</code> )	Output conversion function (binary format), or zero if none
<code>typmodin regproc</code> (references <code>pg_proc.oid</code> )	Type modifier input function, or zero if type does not support modifiers
<code>typmodout regproc</code> (references <code>pg_proc.oid</code> )	Type modifier output function, or zero to use the standard format
<code>typanalyze regproc</code> (references <code>pg_proc.oid</code> )	Custom ANALYZE function, or zero to use the standard function
<code>typalign char</code>	<p><code>typalign</code> is the alignment required when storing a value of this type. It applies to storage on disk as well as most representations of the value inside PostgreSQL. When multiple values are stored consecutively, such as in the representation of a complete row on disk, padding is inserted before a datum of this type so that it begins on the specified boundary. The alignment reference is the beginning of the first datum in the sequence. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>c</code> = char alignment, i.e., no alignment needed.</li> <li>• <code>s</code> = short alignment (2 bytes on most machines).</li> <li>• <code>i</code> = int alignment (4 bytes on most machines).</li> <li>• <code>d</code> = double alignment (8 bytes on many machines, but by no means all).</li> </ul>
<code>typstorage char</code>	<p><code>typstorage</code> tells for varlena types (those with <code>typplen = -1</code>) if the type is prepared for toasting and what the default strategy for attributes of this type should be. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>p</code> (plain): Values must always be stored plain (non-varlena types always use this value).</li> <li>• <code>e</code> (external): Values can be stored in a secondary “TOAST” relation (if relation has one, see <code>pg_class.reltoastrelid</code>).</li> <li>• <code>m</code> (main): Values can be compressed and stored inline.</li> <li>• <code>x</code> (extended): Values can be compressed and/or moved to a secondary relation.</li> </ul> <p><code>x</code> is the usual choice for toast-able types. Note that <code>m</code> values can also be moved out to secondary storage, but only as a last resort (<code>e</code> and <code>x</code> values are moved first).</p>
<code>typnotnull bool</code>	<code>typnotnull</code> represents a not-null constraint on a type. Used for domains only.
<code>typbasetype oid</code> (references <code>pg_type.oid</code> )	If this is a domain (see <code>typtype</code> ), then <code>typbasetype</code> identifies the type that this one is based on. Zero if this type is not a domain.
<code>typmod int4</code>	Domains use <code>typmod</code> to record the <code>typmod</code> to be applied to their base type (-1 if base type does not use a <code>typmod</code> ). -1 if this type is not a domain.
<code>typndims int4</code>	<code>typndims</code> is the number of array dimensions for a domain over an array (that is, <code>typbasetype</code> is an array type). Zero for types other than domains over array types.

Column Type	Description
<code>typcollation oid</code>	(references <code>pg_collation.oid</code> ) <code>typcollation</code> specifies the collation of the type. If the type does not support collations, this will be zero. A base type that supports collations will have a nonzero value here, typically <code>DEFAULT_COLLATION_OID</code> . A domain over a collatable type can have a collation OID different from its base type's, if one was specified for the domain.
<code>typdefaultbin pg_node_tree</code>	If <code>typdefaultbin</code> is not null, it is the <code>nodeToString()</code> representation of a default expression for the type. This is only used for domains.
<code>typdefault text</code>	<code>typdefault</code> is null if the type has no associated default value. If <code>typdefaultbin</code> is not null, <code>typdefault</code> must contain a human-readable version of the default expression represented by <code>typdefaultbin</code> . If <code>typdefaultbin</code> is null and <code>typdefault</code> is not, then <code>typdefault</code> is the external representation of the type's default value, which can be fed to the type's input converter to produce a constant.
<code>typacl aclitem[]</code>	Access privileges; see Section 5.7 for details

### Note

For fixed-width types used in system tables, it is critical that the size and alignment defined in `pg_type` agree with the way that the compiler will lay out the column in a structure representing a table row.

Table 53.65 lists the system-defined values of `typcategory`. Any future additions to this list will also be upper-case ASCII letters. All other ASCII characters are reserved for user-defined categories.

**Table 53.65. `typcategory` Codes**

Code	Category
A	Array types
B	Boolean types
C	Composite types
D	Date/time types
E	Enum types
G	Geometric types
I	Network address types
N	Numeric types
P	Pseudo-types
R	Range types
S	String types
T	Timespan types
U	User-defined types
V	Bit-string types
X	unknown type
Z	Internal-use types

## 53.65. pg\_user\_mapping

The catalog `pg_user_mapping` stores the mappings from local user to remote. Access to this catalog is restricted from normal users, use the view `pg_user_mappings` instead.

**Table 53.66. pg\_user\_mapping Columns**

Column Type	Description
oid oid	Row identifier
umuser oid (references pg_authid.oid)	OID of the local role being mapped, or zero if the user mapping is public
umserver oid (references pg_foreign_server.oid)	The OID of the foreign server that contains this mapping
umoptions text[]	User mapping specific options, as “keyword=value” strings



---

# Chapter 54. System Views

In addition to the system catalogs, PostgreSQL provides a number of built-in views. Some system views provide convenient access to some commonly used queries on the system catalogs. Other views provide access to internal server state.

The information schema (Chapter 37) provides an alternative set of views which overlap the functionality of the system views. Since the information schema is SQL-standard whereas the views described here are PostgreSQL-specific, it's usually better to use the information schema if it provides all the information you need.

Table 54.1 lists the system views described here. More detailed documentation of each view follows below. There are some additional views that provide access to accumulated statistics; they are described in Table 28.2.

## 54.1. Overview

Table 54.1 lists the system views. More detailed documentation of each catalog follows below. Except where noted, all the views described here are read-only.

**Table 54.1. System Views**

View Name	Purpose
<code>pg_available_extensions</code>	available extensions
<code>pg_available_extension_versions</code>	available versions of extensions
<code>pg_backend_memory_contexts</code>	backend memory contexts
<code>pg_config</code>	compile-time configuration parameters
<code>pg_cursors</code>	open cursors
<code>pg_file_settings</code>	summary of configuration file contents
<code>pg_group</code>	groups of database users
<code>pg_hba_file_rules</code>	summary of client authentication configuration file contents
<code>pg_ident_file_mappings</code>	summary of client user name mapping configuration file contents
<code>pg_indexes</code>	indexes
<code>pg_locks</code>	locks currently held or awaited
<code>pg_matviews</code>	materialized views
<code>pg_policies</code>	policies
<code>pg_prepared_statements</code>	prepared statements
<code>pg_prepared_xacts</code>	prepared transactions
<code>pg_publication_tables</code>	publications and information of their associated tables
<code>pg_replication_origin_status</code>	information about replication origins, including replication progress
<code>pg_replication_slots</code>	replication slot information
<code>pg_roles</code>	database roles
<code>pg_rules</code>	rules
<code>pg_seclabels</code>	security labels

View Name	Purpose
pg_sequences	sequences
pg_settings	parameter settings
pg_shadow	database users
pg_shmem_allocations	shared memory allocations
pg_stats	planner statistics
pg_stats_ext	extended planner statistics
pg_stats_ext_exprs	extended planner statistics for expressions
pg_tables	tables
pg_timezone_abbrevs	time zone abbreviations
pg_timezone_names	time zone names
pg_user	database users
pg_user_mappings	user mappings
pg_views	views

## 54.2. pg\_available\_extensions

The `pg_available_extensions` view lists the extensions that are available for installation. See also the `pg_extension` catalog, which shows the extensions currently installed.

**Table 54.2. pg\_available\_extensions Columns**

Column Type	Description
name name	Extension name
default_version text	Name of default version, or NULL if none is specified
installed_version text	Currently installed version of the extension, or NULL if not installed
comment text	Comment string from the extension's control file

The `pg_available_extensions` view is read-only.

## 54.3. pg\_available\_extension\_versions

The `pg_available_extension_versions` view lists the specific extension versions that are available for installation. See also the `pg_extension` catalog, which shows the extensions currently installed.

**Table 54.3. pg\_available\_extension\_versions Columns**

Column Type	Description
name name	Extension name
version text	Version name

Column Type	Description
installed bool	True if this version of this extension is currently installed
superuser bool	True if only superusers are allowed to install this extension (but see <code>trusted</code> )
trusted bool	True if the extension can be installed by non-superusers with appropriate privileges
relocatable bool	True if extension can be relocated to another schema
schema name	Name of the schema that the extension must be installed into, or NULL if partially or fully relocatable
requires name[ ]	Names of prerequisite extensions, or NULL if none
comment text	Comment string from the extension's control file

The `pg_available_extension_versions` view is read-only.

## 54.4. `pg_backend_memory_contexts`

The view `pg_backend_memory_contexts` displays all the memory contexts of the server process attached to the current session.

`pg_backend_memory_contexts` contains one row for each memory context.

**Table 54.4. `pg_backend_memory_contexts` Columns**

Column Type	Description
name text	Name of the memory context
ident text	Identification information of the memory context. This field is truncated at 1024 bytes
parent text	Name of the parent of this memory context
level int4	Distance from <code>TopMemoryContext</code> in context tree
total_bytes int8	Total bytes allocated for this memory context
total_nblocks int8	Total number of blocks allocated for this memory context
free_bytes int8	Free space in bytes
free_chunks int8	Total number of free chunks
used_bytes int8	Used space in bytes

By default, the `pg_backend_memory_contexts` view can be read only by superusers or roles with the privileges of the `pg_read_all_stats` role.

## 54.5. pg\_config

The view `pg_config` describes the compile-time configuration parameters of the currently installed version of PostgreSQL. It is intended, for example, to be used by software packages that want to interface to PostgreSQL to facilitate finding the required header files and libraries. It provides the same basic information as the `pg_config` PostgreSQL client application.

By default, the `pg_config` view can be read only by superusers.

**Table 54.5. pg\_config Columns**

Column Type	Description
name text	The parameter name
setting text	The parameter value

## 54.6. pg\_cursors

The `pg_cursors` view lists the cursors that are currently available. Cursors can be defined in several ways:

- via the `DECLARE` statement in SQL
- via the Bind message in the frontend/backend protocol, as described in Section 55.2.3
- via the Server Programming Interface (SPI), as described in Section 47.1

The `pg_cursors` view displays cursors created by any of these means. Cursors only exist for the duration of the transaction that defines them, unless they have been declared `WITH HOLD`. Therefore non-holdable cursors are only present in the view until the end of their creating transaction.

### Note

Cursors are used internally to implement some of the components of PostgreSQL, such as procedural languages. Therefore, the `pg_cursors` view might include cursors that have not been explicitly created by the user.

**Table 54.6. pg\_cursors Columns**

Column Type	Description
name text	The name of the cursor
statement text	The verbatim query string submitted to declare this cursor
is_holdable bool	true if the cursor is holdable (that is, it can be accessed after the transaction that declared the cursor has committed); false otherwise
is_binary bool	true if the cursor was declared <code>BINARY</code> ; false otherwise
is_scrollable bool	

Column Type	Description
	true if the cursor is scrollable (that is, it allows rows to be retrieved in a nonsequential manner); false otherwise
creation_time timestampz	The time at which the cursor was declared

The `pg_cursors` view is read-only.

## 54.7. pg\_file\_settings

The view `pg_file_settings` provides a summary of the contents of the server's configuration file(s). A row appears in this view for each “name = value” entry appearing in the files, with annotations indicating whether the value could be applied successfully. Additional row(s) may appear for problems not linked to a “name = value” entry, such as syntax errors in the files.

This view is helpful for checking whether planned changes in the configuration files will work, or for diagnosing a previous failure. Note that this view reports on the *current* contents of the files, not on what was last applied by the server. (The `pg_settings` view is usually sufficient to determine that.)

By default, the `pg_file_settings` view can be read only by superusers.

**Table 54.7. pg\_file\_settings Columns**

Column Type	Description
sourcefile text	Full path name of the configuration file
sourceline int4	Line number within the configuration file where the entry appears
seqno int4	Order in which the entries are processed (1.. <i>n</i> )
name text	Configuration parameter name
setting text	Value to be assigned to the parameter
applied bool	True if the value can be applied successfully
error text	If not null, an error message indicating why this entry could not be applied

If the configuration file contains syntax errors or invalid parameter names, the server will not attempt to apply any settings from it, and therefore all the `applied` fields will read as false. In such a case there will be one or more rows with non-null `error` fields indicating the problem(s). Otherwise, individual settings will be applied if possible. If an individual setting cannot be applied (e.g., invalid value, or the setting cannot be changed after server start) it will have an appropriate message in the `error` field. Another way that an entry might have `applied = false` is that it is overridden by a later entry for the same parameter name; this case is not considered an error so nothing appears in the `error` field.

See Section 20.1 for more information about the various ways to change run-time parameters.

## 54.8. pg\_group

The view `pg_group` exists for backwards compatibility: it emulates a catalog that existed in PostgreSQL before version 8.1. It shows the names and members of all roles that are marked as not `rol-catalogin`, which is an approximation to the set of roles that are being used as groups.

**Table 54.8. `pg_group` Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>groname name</code> (references <code>pg_authid.rolname</code> )	Name of the group
<code>grosysid oid</code> (references <code>pg_authid.oid</code> )	ID of this group
<code>grolist oid[]</code> (references <code>pg_authid.oid</code> )	An array containing the IDs of the roles in this group

## 54.9. `pg_hba_file_rules`

The view `pg_hba_file_rules` provides a summary of the contents of the client authentication configuration file, `pg_hba.conf`. A row appears in this view for each non-empty, non-comment line in the file, with annotations indicating whether the rule could be applied successfully.

This view can be helpful for checking whether planned changes in the authentication configuration file will work, or for diagnosing a previous failure. Note that this view reports on the *current* contents of the file, not on what was last loaded by the server.

By default, the `pg_hba_file_rules` view can be read only by superusers.

**Table 54.9. `pg_hba_file_rules` Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>rule_number int4</code>	Number of this rule, if valid, otherwise NULL. This indicates the order in which each rule is considered until a match is found during authentication.
<code>file_name text</code>	Name of the file containing this rule
<code>line_number int4</code>	Line number of this rule in <code>file_name</code>
<code>type text</code>	Type of connection
<code>database text[]</code>	List of database name(s) to which this rule applies
<code>user_name text[]</code>	List of user and group name(s) to which this rule applies
<code>address text</code>	Host name or IP address, or one of <code>all</code> , <code>samehost</code> , or <code>samenet</code> , or null for local connections
<code>netmask text</code>	IP address mask, or null if not applicable
<code>auth_method text</code>	Authentication method
<code>options text[]</code>	Options specified for authentication method, if any

Column Type	Description
error text	If not null, an error message indicating why this line could not be processed

Usually, a row reflecting an incorrect entry will have values for only the `line_number` and `error` fields.

See Chapter 21 for more information about client authentication configuration.

## 54.10. `pg_ident_file_mappings`

The view `pg_ident_file_mappings` provides a summary of the contents of the client user name mapping configuration file, `pg_ident.conf`. A row appears in this view for each non-empty, non-comment line in the file, with annotations indicating whether the map could be applied successfully.

This view can be helpful for checking whether planned changes in the authentication configuration file will work, or for diagnosing a previous failure. Note that this view reports on the *current* contents of the file, not on what was last loaded by the server.

By default, the `pg_ident_file_mappings` view can be read only by superusers.

**Table 54.10. `pg_ident_file_mappings` Columns**

Column Type	Description
map_number int4	Number of this map, in priority order, if valid, otherwise NULL
file_name text	Name of the file containing this map
line_number int4	Line number of this map in <code>file_name</code>
map_name text	Name of the map
sys_name text	Detected user name of the client
pg_username text	Requested PostgreSQL user name
error text	If not NULL, an error message indicating why this line could not be processed

Usually, a row reflecting an incorrect entry will have values for only the `line_number` and `error` fields.

See Chapter 21 for more information about client authentication configuration.

## 54.11. `pg_indexes`

The view `pg_indexes` provides access to useful information about each index in the database.

**Table 54.11. `pg_indexes` Columns**

Column Type	Description
schemaname name (references <code>pg_namespace.nspname</code> )	

Column Type	Description
	Name of schema containing table and index
tablename name (references pg_class.relname)	Name of table the index is for
indexname name (references pg_class.relname)	Name of index
tablespace name (references pg_tablespace.spcname)	Name of tablespace containing index (null if default for database)
indexdef text	Index definition (a reconstructed CREATE INDEX command)

## 54.12. pg\_locks

The view `pg_locks` provides access to information about the locks held by active processes within the database server. See Chapter 13 for more discussion of locking.

`pg_locks` contains one row per active lockable object, requested lock mode, and relevant process. Thus, the same lockable object might appear many times, if multiple processes are holding or waiting for locks on it. However, an object that currently has no locks on it will not appear at all.

There are several distinct types of lockable objects: whole relations (e.g., tables), individual pages of relations, individual tuples of relations, transaction IDs (both virtual and permanent IDs), and general database objects (identified by class OID and object OID, in the same way as in `pg_description` or `pg_depend`). Also, the right to extend a relation is represented as a separate lockable object, as is the right to update `pg_database.datfrozenxid`. Also, “advisory” locks can be taken on numbers that have user-defined meanings.

**Table 54.12. `pg_locks` Columns**

Column Type	Description
locktype text	Type of the lockable object: relation, extend, frozenid, page, tuple, transactionid, virtualxid, spectoken, object, userlock, advisory, or applytransaction. (See also Table 28.11.)
database oid (references pg_database.oid)	OID of the database in which the lock target exists, or zero if the target is a shared object, or null if the target is a transaction ID
relation oid (references pg_class.oid)	OID of the relation targeted by the lock, or null if the target is not a relation or part of a relation
page int4	Page number targeted by the lock within the relation, or null if the target is not a relation page or tuple
tuple int2	Tuple number targeted by the lock within the page, or null if the target is not a tuple
virtualxid text	Virtual ID of the transaction targeted by the lock, or null if the target is not a virtual transaction ID; see Chapter 74
transactionid xid	ID of the transaction targeted by the lock, or null if the target is not a transaction ID; Chapter 74



Column Type	Description
<code>classid oid</code> (references <code>pg_class.oid</code> )	OID of the system catalog containing the lock target, or null if the target is not a general database object
<code>objid oid</code> (references any OID column)	OID of the lock target within its system catalog, or null if the target is not a general database object
<code>objsubid int2</code>	Column number targeted by the lock (the <code>classid</code> and <code>objid</code> refer to the table itself), or zero if the target is some other general database object, or null if the target is not a general database object
<code>virtualtransaction text</code>	Virtual ID of the transaction that is holding or awaiting this lock
<code>pid int4</code>	Process ID of the server process holding or awaiting this lock, or null if the lock is held by a prepared transaction
<code>mode text</code>	Name of the lock mode held or desired by this process (see Section 13.3.1 and Section 13.2.3)
<code>granted bool</code>	True if lock is held, false if lock is awaited
<code>fastpath bool</code>	True if lock was taken via fast path, false if taken via main lock table
<code>waitstart timestamptz</code>	Time when the server process started waiting for this lock, or null if the lock is held. Note that this can be null for a very short period of time after the wait started even though <code>granted</code> is false.

`granted` is true in a row representing a lock held by the indicated process. False indicates that this process is currently waiting to acquire this lock, which implies that at least one other process is holding or waiting for a conflicting lock mode on the same lockable object. The waiting process will sleep until the other lock is released (or a deadlock situation is detected). A single process can be waiting to acquire at most one lock at a time.

Throughout running a transaction, a server process holds an exclusive lock on the transaction's virtual transaction ID. If a permanent ID is assigned to the transaction (which normally happens only if the transaction changes the state of the database), it also holds an exclusive lock on the transaction's permanent transaction ID until it ends. When a process finds it necessary to wait specifically for another transaction to end, it does so by attempting to acquire share lock on the other transaction's ID (either virtual or permanent ID depending on the situation). That will succeed only when the other transaction terminates and releases its locks.

Although tuples are a lockable type of object, information about row-level locks is stored on disk, not in memory, and therefore row-level locks normally do not appear in this view. If a process is waiting for a row-level lock, it will usually appear in the view as waiting for the permanent transaction ID of the current holder of that row lock.

A speculative insertion lock consists of a transaction ID and a speculative insertion token. The speculative insertion token is displayed in the `objid` column.

Advisory locks can be acquired on keys consisting of either a single `bigint` value or two integer values. A `bigint` key is displayed with its high-order half in the `classid` column, its low-order half in the `objid` column, and `objsubid` equal to 1. The original `bigint` value can be reassembled with the expression `(classid::bigint << 32) | objid::bigint`. Integer keys

are displayed with the first key in the `classid` column, the second key in the `objid` column, and `objsubid` equal to 2. The actual meaning of the keys is up to the user. Advisory locks are local to each database, so the database column is meaningful for an advisory lock.

Apply transaction locks are used in parallel mode to apply the transaction in logical replication. The remote transaction ID is displayed in the `transactionid` column. The `objsubid` displays the lock subtype which is 0 for the lock used to synchronize the set of changes, and 1 for the lock used to wait for the transaction to finish to ensure commit order.

`pg_locks` provides a global view of all locks in the database cluster, not only those relevant to the current database. Although its `relation` column can be joined against `pg_class.oid` to identify locked relations, this will only work correctly for relations in the current database (those for which the database column is either the current database's OID or zero).

The `pid` column can be joined to the `pid` column of the `pg_stat_activity` view to get more information on the session holding or awaiting each lock, for example

```
SELECT * FROM pg_locks pl LEFT JOIN pg_stat_activity psa
      ON pl.pid = psa.pid;
```

Also, if you are using prepared transactions, the `virtualtransaction` column can be joined to the `transaction` column of the `pg_prepared_xacts` view to get more information on prepared transactions that hold locks. (A prepared transaction can never be waiting for a lock, but it continues to hold the locks it acquired while running.) For example:

```
SELECT * FROM pg_locks pl LEFT JOIN pg_prepared_xacts ppx
      ON pl.virtualtransaction = '-1/' || ppx.transaction;
```

While it is possible to obtain information about which processes block which other processes by joining `pg_locks` against itself, this is very difficult to get right in detail. Such a query would have to encode knowledge about which lock modes conflict with which others. Worse, the `pg_locks` view does not expose information about which processes are ahead of which others in lock wait queues, nor information about which processes are parallel workers running on behalf of which other client sessions. It is better to use the `pg_blocking_pids()` function (see Table 9.67) to identify which process(es) a waiting process is blocked behind.

The `pg_locks` view displays data from both the regular lock manager and the predicate lock manager, which are separate systems; in addition, the regular lock manager subdivides its locks into regular and *fast-path* locks. This data is not guaranteed to be entirely consistent. When the view is queried, data on fast-path locks (with `fastpath = true`) is gathered from each backend one at a time, without freezing the state of the entire lock manager, so it is possible for locks to be taken or released while information is gathered. Note, however, that these locks are known not to conflict with any other lock currently in place. After all backends have been queried for fast-path locks, the remainder of the regular lock manager is locked as a unit, and a consistent snapshot of all remaining locks is collected as an atomic action. After unlocking the regular lock manager, the predicate lock manager is similarly locked and all predicate locks are collected as an atomic action. Thus, with the exception of fast-path locks, each lock manager will deliver a consistent set of results, but as we do not lock both lock managers simultaneously, it is possible for locks to be taken or released after we interrogate the regular lock manager and before we interrogate the predicate lock manager.

Locking the regular and/or predicate lock manager could have some impact on database performance if this view is very frequently accessed. The locks are held only for the minimum amount of time necessary to obtain data from the lock managers, but this does not completely eliminate the possibility of a performance impact.

## 54.13. `pg_matviews`

The view `pg_matviews` provides access to useful information about each materialized view in the database.

**Table 54.13. `pg_matviews` Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>schemaname name</code> (references <code>pg_namespace.nspname</code> )	Name of schema containing materialized view
<code>matviewname name</code> (references <code>pg_class.relname</code> )	Name of materialized view
<code>matviewowner name</code> (references <code>pg_authid.rolname</code> )	Name of materialized view's owner
<code>tablespace name</code> (references <code>pg_tablespace.spcname</code> )	Name of tablespace containing materialized view (null if default for database)
<code>hasindexes bool</code>	True if materialized view has (or recently had) any indexes
<code>ispopulated bool</code>	True if materialized view is currently populated
<code>definition text</code>	Materialized view definition (a reconstructed SELECT query)

## 54.14. `pg_policies`

The view `pg_policies` provides access to useful information about each row-level security policy in the database.

**Table 54.14. `pg_policies` Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>schemaname name</code> (references <code>pg_namespace.nspname</code> )	Name of schema containing table policy is on
<code>tablename name</code> (references <code>pg_class.relname</code> )	Name of table policy is on
<code>policyname name</code> (references <code>pg_policy.polname</code> )	Name of policy
<code>permissive text</code>	Is the policy permissive or restrictive?
<code>roles name[ ]</code>	The roles to which this policy applies
<code>cmd text</code>	The command type to which the policy is applied
<code>qual text</code>	The expression added to the security barrier qualifications for queries that this policy applies to
<code>with_check text</code>	The expression added to the WITH CHECK qualifications for queries that attempt to add rows to this table

## 54.15. `pg_prepared_statements`

The `pg_prepared_statements` view displays all the prepared statements that are available in the current session. See `PREPARE` for more information about prepared statements.

`pg_prepared_statements` contains one row for each prepared statement. Rows are added to the view when a new prepared statement is created and removed when a prepared statement is released (for example, via the `DEALLOCATE` command).

**Table 54.15. `pg_prepared_statements` Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>name text</code>	The identifier of the prepared statement
<code>statement text</code>	The query string submitted by the client to create this prepared statement. For prepared statements created via SQL, this is the <code>PREPARE</code> statement submitted by the client. For prepared statements created via the frontend/backend protocol, this is the text of the prepared statement itself.
<code>prepare_time timestamptz</code>	The time at which the prepared statement was created
<code>parameter_types regtype[ ]</code>	The expected parameter types for the prepared statement in the form of an array of <code>regtype</code> . The OID corresponding to an element of this array can be obtained by casting the <code>regtype</code> value to <code>oid</code> .
<code>result_types regtype[ ]</code>	The types of the columns returned by the prepared statement in the form of an array of <code>regtype</code> . The OID corresponding to an element of this array can be obtained by casting the <code>regtype</code> value to <code>oid</code> . If the prepared statement does not provide a result (e.g., a DML statement), then this field will be null.
<code>from_sql bool</code>	<code>true</code> if the prepared statement was created via the <code>PREPARE SQL</code> command; <code>false</code> if the statement was prepared via the frontend/backend protocol
<code>generic_plans int8</code>	Number of times generic plan was chosen
<code>custom_plans int8</code>	Number of times custom plan was chosen

The `pg_prepared_statements` view is read-only.

## 54.16. `pg_prepared_xacts`

The view `pg_prepared_xacts` displays information about transactions that are currently prepared for two-phase commit (see `PREPARE TRANSACTION` for details).

`pg_prepared_xacts` contains one row per prepared transaction. An entry is removed when the transaction is committed or rolled back.

**Table 54.16. `pg_prepared_xacts` Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>transaction xid</code>	Numeric transaction identifier of the prepared transaction
<code>gid text</code>	Global transaction identifier that was assigned to the transaction

Column Type	Description
prepared timestampz	Time at which the transaction was prepared for commit
owner name (references pg_authid.rolname)	Name of the user that executed the transaction
database name (references pg_database.datname)	Name of the database in which the transaction was executed

When the `pg_prepared_xacts` view is accessed, the internal transaction manager data structures are momentarily locked, and a copy is made for the view to display. This ensures that the view produces a consistent set of results, while not blocking normal operations longer than necessary. Nonetheless there could be some impact on database performance if this view is frequently accessed.

## 54.17. pg\_publication\_tables

The view `pg_publication_tables` provides information about the mapping between publications and information of tables they contain. Unlike the underlying catalog `pg_publication_rel`, this view expands publications defined as `FOR ALL TABLES` and `FOR TABLES IN SCHEMA`, so for such publications there will be a row for each eligible table.

**Table 54.17. pg\_publication\_tables Columns**

Column Type	Description
pubname name (references pg_publication.pubname)	Name of publication
schemaname name (references pg_namespace.nspname)	Name of schema containing table
tablename name (references pg_class.relname)	Name of table
attnames name[ ] (references pg_attribute.attname)	Names of table columns included in the publication. This contains all the columns of the table when the user didn't specify the column list for the table.
rowfilter text	Expression for the table's publication qualifying condition

## 54.18. pg\_replication\_origin\_status

The `pg_replication_origin_status` view contains information about how far replay for a certain origin has progressed. For more on replication origins see Chapter 50.

**Table 54.18. pg\_replication\_origin\_status Columns**

Column Type	Description
local_id oid (references pg_replication_origin.roident)	internal node identifier
external_id text (references pg_replication_origin.roname)	external node identifier
remote_lsn pg_lsn	The origin node's LSN up to which data has been replicated.
local_lsn pg_lsn	

Column Type	Description
	This node's LSN at which <code>remote_lsn</code> has been replicated. Used to flush commit records before persisting data to disk when using asynchronous commits.

## 54.19. `pg_replication_slots`

The `pg_replication_slots` view provides a listing of all replication slots that currently exist on the database cluster, along with their current state.

For more on replication slots, see Section 27.2.6 and Chapter 49.

**Table 54.19. `pg_replication_slots` Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>slot_name</code> name	A unique, cluster-wide identifier for the replication slot
<code>plugin</code> name	The base name of the shared object containing the output plugin this logical slot is using, or null for physical slots.
<code>slot_type</code> text	The slot type: <code>physical</code> or <code>logical</code>
<code>datoid</code> oid (references <code>pg_database.oid</code> )	The OID of the database this slot is associated with, or null. Only logical slots have an associated database.
<code>database</code> name (references <code>pg_database.datname</code> )	The name of the database this slot is associated with, or null. Only logical slots have an associated database.
<code>temporary</code> bool	True if this is a temporary replication slot. Temporary slots are not saved to disk and are automatically dropped on error or when the session has finished.
<code>active</code> bool	True if this slot is currently actively being used
<code>active_pid</code> int4	The process ID of the session using this slot if the slot is currently actively being used. NULL if inactive.
<code>xmin</code> xid	The oldest transaction that this slot needs the database to retain. VACUUM cannot remove tuples deleted by any later transaction.
<code>catalog_xmin</code> xid	The oldest transaction affecting the system catalogs that this slot needs the database to retain. VACUUM cannot remove catalog tuples deleted by any later transaction.
<code>restart_lsn</code> pg_lsn	The address (LSN) of oldest WAL which still might be required by the consumer of this slot and thus won't be automatically removed during checkpoints unless this LSN gets behind more than <code>max_slot_wal_keep_size</code> from the current LSN. NULL if the LSN of this slot has never been reserved.
<code>confirmed_flush_lsn</code> pg_lsn	The address (LSN) up to which the logical slot's consumer has confirmed receiving data. Data corresponding to the transactions committed before this LSN is not available anymore. NULL for physical slots.
<code>wal_status</code> text	

Column Type	Description
	<p>Availability of WAL files claimed by this slot. Possible values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>reserved</code> means that the claimed files are within <code>max_wal_size</code>.</li> <li><code>extended</code> means that <code>max_wal_size</code> is exceeded but the files are still retained, either by the replication slot or by <code>wal_keep_size</code>.</li> <li><code>unreserved</code> means that the slot no longer retains the required WAL files and some of them are to be removed at the next checkpoint. This state can return to <code>reserved</code> or <code>extended</code>.</li> <li><code>lost</code> means that some required WAL files have been removed and this slot is no longer usable.</li> </ul> <p>The last two states are seen only when <code>max_slot_wal_keep_size</code> is non-negative. If <code>restart_lsn</code> is NULL, this field is null.</p>
<code>safe_wal_size int8</code>	<p>The number of bytes that can be written to WAL such that this slot is not in danger of getting in state "lost". It is NULL for lost slots, as well as if <code>max_slot_wal_keep_size</code> is -1.</p>
<code>two_phase bool</code>	<p>True if the slot is enabled for decoding prepared transactions. Always false for physical slots.</p>
<code>conflicting bool</code>	<p>True if this logical slot conflicted with recovery (and so is now invalidated). Always NULL for physical slots.</p>

## 54.20. pg\_roles

The view `pg_roles` provides access to information about database roles. This is simply a publicly readable view of `pg_authid` that blanks out the password field.

**Table 54.20. pg\_roles Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>rolname name</code>	Role name
<code>rolsuper bool</code>	Role has superuser privileges
<code>rolinherit bool</code>	Role automatically inherits privileges of roles it is a member of
<code>rolcreaterole bool</code>	Role can create more roles
<code>rolcreatedb bool</code>	Role can create databases
<code>rolcanlogin bool</code>	Role can log in. That is, this role can be given as the initial session authorization identifier
<code>rolreplication bool</code>	Role is a replication role. A replication role can initiate replication connections and create and drop replication slots.

Column Type	Description
<code>rolconnlimit int4</code>	For roles that can log in, this sets maximum number of concurrent connections this role can make. -1 means no limit.
<code>rolpassword text</code>	Not the password (always reads as <code>*****</code> )
<code>rolvaliduntil timestampz</code>	Password expiry time (only used for password authentication); null if no expiration
<code>rolbypassrls bool</code>	Role bypasses every row-level security policy, see Section 5.8 for more information.
<code>rolconfig text[]</code>	Role-specific defaults for run-time configuration variables
<code>oid oid (references pg_authid.oid)</code>	ID of role

## 54.21. pg\_rules

The view `pg_rules` provides access to useful information about query rewrite rules.

**Table 54.21. pg\_rules Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>schemaname name (references pg_namespace.nspname)</code>	Name of schema containing table
<code>tablename name (references pg_class.relname)</code>	Name of table the rule is for
<code>rulename name (references pg_rewrite.rulename)</code>	Name of rule
<code>definition text</code>	Rule definition (a reconstructed creation command)

The `pg_rules` view excludes the `ON SELECT` rules of views and materialized views; those can be seen in `pg_views` and `pg_matviews`.

## 54.22. pg\_seclabels

The view `pg_seclabels` provides information about security labels. It as an easier-to-query version of the `pg_seclabel` catalog.

**Table 54.22. pg\_seclabels Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>objoid oid (references any OID column)</code>	The OID of the object this security label pertains to
<code>classoid oid (references pg_class.oid)</code>	The OID of the system catalog this object appears in
<code>objsubid int4</code>	



Column Type	Description
	For a security label on a table column, this is the column number (the objoid and classoid refer to the table itself). For all other object types, this column is zero.
objtype text	The type of object to which this label applies, as text.
objnamespace oid (references pg_namespace.oid)	The OID of the namespace for this object, if applicable; otherwise NULL.
objname text	The name of the object to which this label applies, as text.
provider text (references pg_seclabel.provider)	The label provider associated with this label.
label text (references pg_seclabel.label)	The security label applied to this object.

## 54.23. pg\_sequences

The view `pg_sequences` provides access to useful information about each sequence in the database.

**Table 54.23. pg\_sequences Columns**

Column Type	Description
schemaname name (references pg_namespace.nspname)	Name of schema containing sequence
sequencename name (references pg_class.relname)	Name of sequence
sequenceowner name (references pg_authid.rolname)	Name of sequence's owner
data_type regtype (references pg_type.oid)	Data type of the sequence
start_value int8	Start value of the sequence
min_value int8	Minimum value of the sequence
max_value int8	Maximum value of the sequence
increment_by int8	Increment value of the sequence
cycle bool	Whether the sequence cycles
cache_size int8	Cache size of the sequence
last_value int8	The last sequence value written to disk. If caching is used, this value can be greater than the last value handed out from the sequence. Null if the sequence has not been read from yet. Also, if the current user does not have <code>USAGE</code> or <code>SELECT</code> privilege on the sequence, the value is null.

## 54.24. pg\_settings

The view `pg_settings` provides access to run-time parameters of the server. It is essentially an alternative interface to the `SHOW` and `SET` commands. It also provides access to some facts about each parameter that are not directly available from `SHOW`, such as minimum and maximum values.

**Table 54.24. `pg_settings` Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>name text</code>	Run-time configuration parameter name
<code>setting text</code>	Current value of the parameter
<code>unit text</code>	Implicit unit of the parameter
<code>category text</code>	Logical group of the parameter
<code>short_desc text</code>	A brief description of the parameter
<code>extra_desc text</code>	Additional, more detailed, description of the parameter
<code>context text</code>	Context required to set the parameter's value (see below)
<code>vartype text</code>	Parameter type ( <code>bool</code> , <code>enum</code> , <code>integer</code> , <code>real</code> , or <code>string</code> )
<code>source text</code>	Source of the current parameter value
<code>min_val text</code>	Minimum allowed value of the parameter (null for non-numeric values)
<code>max_val text</code>	Maximum allowed value of the parameter (null for non-numeric values)
<code>enumvals text[ ]</code>	Allowed values of an enum parameter (null for non-enum values)
<code>boot_val text</code>	Parameter value assumed at server startup if the parameter is not otherwise set
<code>reset_val text</code>	Value that <code>RESET</code> would reset the parameter to in the current session
<code>sourcefile text</code>	Configuration file the current value was set in (null for values set from sources other than configuration files, or when examined by a user who neither is a superuser nor has privileges of <code>pg_read_all_settings</code> ); helpful when using <code>include</code> directives in configuration files
<code>sourceline int4</code>	Line number within the configuration file the current value was set at (null for values set from sources other than configuration files, or when examined by a user who neither is a superuser nor has privileges of <code>pg_read_all_settings</code> ).
<code>pending_restart bool</code>	<code>true</code> if the value has been changed in the configuration file but needs a restart; or <code>false</code> otherwise.

There are several possible values of `context`. In order of decreasing difficulty of changing the setting, they are:

**internal**

These settings cannot be changed directly; they reflect internally determined values. Some of them may be adjustable by rebuilding the server with different configuration options, or by changing options supplied to `initdb`.

**postmaster**

These settings can only be applied when the server starts, so any change requires restarting the server. Values for these settings are typically stored in the `postgresql.conf` file, or passed on the command line when starting the server. Of course, settings with any of the lower context types can also be set at server start time.

**sighup**

Changes to these settings can be made in `postgresql.conf` without restarting the server. Send a `SIGHUP` signal to the postmaster to cause it to re-read `postgresql.conf` and apply the changes. The postmaster will also forward the `SIGHUP` signal to its child processes so that they all pick up the new value.

**superuser-backend**

Changes to these settings can be made in `postgresql.conf` without restarting the server. They can also be set for a particular session in the connection request packet (for example, via libpq's `PGOPTIONS` environment variable), but only if the connecting user is a superuser or has been granted the appropriate `SET` privilege. However, these settings never change in a session after it is started. If you change them in `postgresql.conf`, send a `SIGHUP` signal to the postmaster to cause it to re-read `postgresql.conf`. The new values will only affect subsequently-launched sessions.

**backend**

Changes to these settings can be made in `postgresql.conf` without restarting the server. They can also be set for a particular session in the connection request packet (for example, via libpq's `PGOPTIONS` environment variable); any user can make such a change for their session. However, these settings never change in a session after it is started. If you change them in `postgresql.conf`, send a `SIGHUP` signal to the postmaster to cause it to re-read `postgresql.conf`. The new values will only affect subsequently-launched sessions.

**superuser**

These settings can be set from `postgresql.conf`, or within a session via the `SET` command; but only superusers and users with the appropriate `SET` privilege can change them via `SET`. Changes in `postgresql.conf` will affect existing sessions only if no session-local value has been established with `SET`.

**user**

These settings can be set from `postgresql.conf`, or within a session via the `SET` command. Any user is allowed to change their session-local value. Changes in `postgresql.conf` will affect existing sessions only if no session-local value has been established with `SET`.

See Section 20.1 for more information about the various ways to change these parameters.

This view cannot be inserted into or deleted from, but it can be updated. An `UPDATE` applied to a row of `pg_settings` is equivalent to executing the `SET` command on that named parameter. The change only affects the value used by the current session. If an `UPDATE` is issued within a transaction that is later aborted, the effects of the `UPDATE` command disappear when the transaction is rolled back. Once the surrounding transaction is committed, the effects will persist until the end of the session, unless overridden by another `UPDATE` or `SET`.

This view does not display customized options unless the extension module that defines them has been loaded by the backend process executing the query (e.g., via a mention in `shared_preload_libraries`, a

call to a C function in the extension, or the `LOAD` command). For example, since archive modules are normally loaded only by the archiver process not regular sessions, this view will not display any customized options defined by such modules unless special action is taken to load them into the backend process executing the query.

## 54.25. `pg_shadow`

The view `pg_shadow` exists for backwards compatibility: it emulates a catalog that existed in PostgreSQL before version 8.1. It shows properties of all roles that are marked as `rolcanlogin` in `pg_authid`.

The name stems from the fact that this table should not be readable by the public since it contains passwords. `pg_user` is a publicly readable view on `pg_shadow` that blanks out the password field.

**Table 54.25. `pg_shadow` Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>username name</code> (references <code>pg_authid.rolname</code> )	User name
<code>usesysid oid</code> (references <code>pg_authid.oid</code> )	ID of this user
<code>usecreatedb bool</code>	User can create databases
<code>usesuper bool</code>	User is a superuser
<code>userepl bool</code>	User can initiate streaming replication and put the system in and out of backup mode.
<code>usebypassrls bool</code>	User bypasses every row-level security policy, see Section 5.8 for more information.
<code>passwd text</code>	Password (possibly encrypted); null if none. See <code>pg_authid</code> for details of how encrypted passwords are stored.
<code>valuntil timestamptz</code>	Password expiry time (only used for password authentication)
<code>useconfig text[]</code>	Session defaults for run-time configuration variables

## 54.26. `pg_shmem_allocations`

The `pg_shmem_allocations` view shows allocations made from the server's main shared memory segment. This includes both memory allocated by PostgreSQL itself and memory allocated by extensions using the mechanisms detailed in Section 38.10.10.

Note that this view does not include memory allocated using the dynamic shared memory infrastructure.

**Table 54.26. `pg_shmem_allocations` Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>name text</code>	The name of the shared memory allocation. NULL for unused memory and <anonymous> for anonymous allocations.

Column Type	Description
off int8	The offset at which the allocation starts. NULL for anonymous allocations, since details related to them are not known.
size int8	Size of the allocation in bytes
allocated_size int8	Size of the allocation in bytes including padding. For anonymous allocations, no information about padding is available, so the size and allocated_size columns will always be equal. Padding is not meaningful for free memory, so the columns will be equal in that case also.

Anonymous allocations are allocations that have been made with `ShmemAlloc()` directly, rather than via `ShmemInitStruct()` or `ShmemInitHash()`.

By default, the `pg_shmem_allocations` view can be read only by superusers or roles with privileges of the `pg_read_all_stats` role.

## 54.27. pg\_stats

The view `pg_stats` provides access to the information stored in the `pg_statistic` catalog. This view allows access only to rows of `pg_statistic` that correspond to tables the user has permission to read, and therefore it is safe to allow public read access to this view.

`pg_stats` is also designed to present the information in a more readable format than the underlying catalog — at the cost that its schema must be extended whenever new slot types are defined for `pg_statistic`.

**Table 54.27. pg\_stats Columns**

Column Type	Description
schemaname name (references pg_namespace.nspname)	Name of schema containing table
tablename name (references pg_class.relname)	Name of table
attname name (references pg_attribute.attname)	Name of column described by this row
inherited bool	If true, this row includes values from child tables, not just the values in the specified table
null_frac float4	Fraction of column entries that are null
avg_width int4	Average width in bytes of column's entries
n_distinct float4	If greater than zero, the estimated number of distinct values in the column. If less than zero, the negative of the number of distinct values divided by the number of rows. (The negated form is used when ANALYZE believes that the number of distinct values is likely to increase as the table grows; the positive form is used when the column seems to have a fixed number of possible values.) For example, -1 indicates a unique column in which the number of distinct values is the same as the number of rows.
most_common_vals anyarray	

Column Type	Description
	A list of the most common values in the column. (Null if no values seem to be more common than any others.)
<code>most_common_freqs float4[]</code>	A list of the frequencies of the most common values, i.e., number of occurrences of each divided by total number of rows. (Null when <code>most_common_vals</code> is.)
<code>histogram_bounds anyarray</code>	A list of values that divide the column's values into groups of approximately equal population. The values in <code>most_common_vals</code> , if present, are omitted from this histogram calculation. (This column is null if the column data type does not have a < operator or if the <code>most_common_vals</code> list accounts for the entire population.)
<code>correlation float4</code>	Statistical correlation between physical row ordering and logical ordering of the column values. This ranges from -1 to +1. When the value is near -1 or +1, an index scan on the column will be estimated to be cheaper than when it is near zero, due to reduction of random access to the disk. (This column is null if the column data type does not have a < operator.)
<code>most_common_elems anyarray</code>	A list of non-null element values most often appearing within values of the column. (Null for scalar types.)
<code>most_common_elem_freqs float4[]</code>	A list of the frequencies of the most common element values, i.e., the fraction of rows containing at least one instance of the given value. Two or three additional values follow the per-element frequencies; these are the minimum and maximum of the preceding per-element frequencies, and optionally the frequency of null elements. (Null when <code>most_common_elems</code> is.)
<code>elem_count_histogram float4[]</code>	A histogram of the counts of distinct non-null element values within the values of the column, followed by the average number of distinct non-null elements. (Null for scalar types.)

The maximum number of entries in the array fields can be controlled on a column-by-column basis using the `ALTER TABLE SET STATISTICS` command, or globally by setting the `default_statistics_target` run-time parameter.

## 54.28. `pg_stats_ext`

The view `pg_stats_ext` provides access to information about each extended statistics object in the database, combining information stored in the `pg_statistic_ext` and `pg_statistic_ext_data` catalogs. This view allows access only to rows of `pg_statistic_ext` and `pg_statistic_ext_data` that correspond to tables the user has permission to read, and therefore it is safe to allow public read access to this view.

`pg_stats_ext` is also designed to present the information in a more readable format than the underlying catalogs — at the cost that its schema must be extended whenever new types of extended statistics are added to `pg_statistic_ext`.

**Table 54.28. `pg_stats_ext` Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>schemaname name</code> (references <code>pg_namespace.nspname</code> )	Name of schema containing table
<code>tablename name</code> (references <code>pg_class.relname</code> )	

Column Type	Description
	Name of table
statistics_schemaname name (references pg_namespace.nspname)	Name of schema containing extended statistics object
statistics_name name (references pg_statistic_ext.stxname)	Name of extended statistics object
statistics_owner name (references pg_authid.rolname)	Owner of the extended statistics object
attnames name[ ] (references pg_attribute.attname)	Names of the columns included in the extended statistics object
exprs text[ ]	Expressions included in the extended statistics object
kinds char[ ]	Types of extended statistics object enabled for this record
inherited bool (references pg_statistic_ext_data.stxdinherit)	If true, the stats include values from child tables, not just the values in the specified relation
n_distinct pg_ndistinct	N-distinct counts for combinations of column values. If greater than zero, the estimated number of distinct values in the combination. If less than zero, the negative of the number of distinct values divided by the number of rows. (The negated form is used when ANALYZE believes that the number of distinct values is likely to increase as the table grows; the positive form is used when the column seems to have a fixed number of possible values.) For example, -1 indicates a unique combination of columns in which the number of distinct combinations is the same as the number of rows.
dependencies pg_dependencies	Functional dependency statistics
most_common_vals text[ ]	A list of the most common combinations of values in the columns. (Null if no combinations seem to be more common than any others.)
most_common_val_nulls bool[ ]	A list of NULL flags for the most common combinations of values. (Null when most_common_vals is.)
most_common_freqs float8[ ]	A list of the frequencies of the most common combinations, i.e., number of occurrences of each divided by total number of rows. (Null when most_common_vals is.)
most_common_base_freqs float8[ ]	A list of the base frequencies of the most common combinations, i.e., product of per-value frequencies. (Null when most_common_vals is.)

The maximum number of entries in the array fields can be controlled on a column-by-column basis using the `ALTER TABLE SET STATISTICS` command, or globally by setting the `default_statistics_target` run-time parameter.

## 54.29. pg\_stats\_ext\_exprs

The view `pg_stats_ext_exprs` provides access to information about all expressions included in extended statistics objects, combining information stored in the `pg_statistic_ext` and `pg_statistic_ext_data` catalogs. This view allows access only to rows of `pg_statistic_ext` and `pg_statistic_ext_data` that correspond to tables the user has permission to read, and therefore it is safe to allow public read access to this view.

`pg_stats_ext_exprs` is also designed to present the information in a more readable format than the underlying catalogs — at the cost that its schema must be extended whenever the structure of statistics in `pg_statistic_ext` changes.

**Table 54.29. `pg_stats_ext_exprs` Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>schemaname name</code> (references <code>pg_namespace.nspname</code> )	Name of schema containing table
<code>tablename name</code> (references <code>pg_class.relname</code> )	Name of table the statistics object is defined on
<code>statistics_schemaname name</code> (references <code>pg_namespace.nspname</code> )	Name of schema containing extended statistics object
<code>statistics_name name</code> (references <code>pg_statistic_ext.stxname</code> )	Name of extended statistics object
<code>statistics_owner name</code> (references <code>pg_authid.rolname</code> )	Owner of the extended statistics object
<code>expr text</code>	Expression included in the extended statistics object
<code>inherited bool</code> (references <code>pg_statistic_ext_data.stxdinherit</code> )	If true, the stats include values from child tables, not just the values in the specified relation
<code>null_frac float4</code>	Fraction of expression entries that are null
<code>avg_width int4</code>	Average width in bytes of expression's entries
<code>n_distinct float4</code>	If greater than zero, the estimated number of distinct values in the expression. If less than zero, the negative of the number of distinct values divided by the number of rows. (The negated form is used when ANALYZE believes that the number of distinct values is likely to increase as the table grows; the positive form is used when the expression seems to have a fixed number of possible values.) For example, -1 indicates a unique expression in which the number of distinct values is the same as the number of rows.
<code>most_common_vals anyarray</code>	A list of the most common values in the expression. (Null if no values seem to be more common than any others.)
<code>most_common_freqs float4[]</code>	A list of the frequencies of the most common values, i.e., number of occurrences of each divided by total number of rows. (Null when <code>most_common_vals</code> is.)
<code>histogram_bounds anyarray</code>	A list of values that divide the expression's values into groups of approximately equal population. The values in <code>most_common_vals</code> , if present, are omitted from this histogram calculation. (This expression is null if the expression data type does not have a < operator or if the <code>most_common_vals</code> list accounts for the entire population.)
<code>correlation float4</code>	Statistical correlation between physical row ordering and logical ordering of the expression values. This ranges from -1 to +1. When the value is near -1 or +1, an index scan on the expression will be estimated to be cheaper than when it is near zero, due to reduction of random access to the disk. (This expression is null if the expression's data type does not have a < operator.)
<code>most_common_elems anyarray</code>	



Column Type	Description
	A list of non-null element values most often appearing within values of the expression. (Null for scalar types.)
<code>most_common_elem_freqs float4[]</code>	A list of the frequencies of the most common element values, i.e., the fraction of rows containing at least one instance of the given value. Two or three additional values follow the per-element frequencies; these are the minimum and maximum of the preceding per-element frequencies, and optionally the frequency of null elements. (Null when <code>most_common_elems</code> is.)
<code>elem_count_histogram float4[]</code>	A histogram of the counts of distinct non-null element values within the values of the expression, followed by the average number of distinct non-null elements. (Null for scalar types.)

The maximum number of entries in the array fields can be controlled on a column-by-column basis using the `ALTER TABLE SET STATISTICS` command, or globally by setting the `default_statistics_target` run-time parameter.

## 54.30. `pg_tables`

The view `pg_tables` provides access to useful information about each table in the database.

**Table 54.30. `pg_tables` Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>schemaname name</code> (references <code>pg_namespace.nspname</code> )	Name of schema containing table
<code>tablename name</code> (references <code>pg_class.relname</code> )	Name of table
<code>tableowner name</code> (references <code>pg_authid.rolname</code> )	Name of table's owner
<code>tablespace name</code> (references <code>pg_tablespace.spcname</code> )	Name of tablespace containing table (null if default for database)
<code>hasindexes bool</code> (references <code>pg_class.relhasindex</code> )	True if table has (or recently had) any indexes
<code>hasrules bool</code> (references <code>pg_class.relhasrules</code> )	True if table has (or once had) rules
<code>hastriggers bool</code> (references <code>pg_class.relhastriggers</code> )	True if table has (or once had) triggers
<code>rowsecurity bool</code> (references <code>pg_class.relrowsecurity</code> )	True if row security is enabled on the table

## 54.31. `pg_timezone_abbrevs`

The view `pg_timezone_abbrevs` provides a list of time zone abbreviations that are currently recognized by the datetime input routines. The contents of this view change when the `timezone_abbreviations` run-time parameter is modified.

**Table 54.31. `pg_timezone_abbrevs` Columns**

Column Type	Description
abbrev text	Time zone abbreviation
utc_offset interval	Offset from UTC (positive means east of Greenwich)
is_dst bool	True if this is a daylight-savings abbreviation

While most timezone abbreviations represent fixed offsets from UTC, there are some that have historically varied in value (see Section B.4 for more information). In such cases this view presents their current meaning.

## 54.32. `pg_timezone_names`

The view `pg_timezone_names` provides a list of time zone names that are recognized by `SET TIMEZONE`, along with their associated abbreviations, UTC offsets, and daylight-savings status. (Technically, PostgreSQL does not use UTC because leap seconds are not handled.) Unlike the abbreviations shown in `pg_timezone_abbrevs`, many of these names imply a set of daylight-savings transition date rules. Therefore, the associated information changes across local DST boundaries. The displayed information is computed based on the current value of `CURRENT_TIMESTAMP`.

**Table 54.32. `pg_timezone_names` Columns**

Column Type	Description
name text	Time zone name
abbrev text	Time zone abbreviation
utc_offset interval	Offset from UTC (positive means east of Greenwich)
is_dst bool	True if currently observing daylight savings

## 54.33. `pg_user`

The view `pg_user` provides access to information about database users. This is simply a publicly readable view of `pg_shadow` that blanks out the password field.

**Table 54.33. `pg_user` Columns**

Column Type	Description
username name	User name
usesysid oid	ID of this user
usecreatedb bool	

Column Type	Description
	User can create databases
usesuper bool	User is a superuser
userepl bool	User can initiate streaming replication and put the system in and out of backup mode.
usebypassrls bool	User bypasses every row-level security policy, see Section 5.8 for more information.
passwd text	Not the password (always reads as *****)
valuntil timestampz	Password expiry time (only used for password authentication)
useconfig text[]	Session defaults for run-time configuration variables

## 54.34. pg\_user\_mappings

The view `pg_user_mappings` provides access to information about user mappings. This is essentially a publicly readable view of `pg_user_mapping` that leaves out the `options` field if the user has no rights to use it.

**Table 54.34. pg\_user\_mappings Columns**

Column Type	Description
umid oid (references <code>pg_user_mapping.oid</code> )	OID of the user mapping
srvid oid (references <code>pg_foreign_server.oid</code> )	The OID of the foreign server that contains this mapping
srvname name (references <code>pg_foreign_server.srvname</code> )	Name of the foreign server
umuser oid (references <code>pg_authid.oid</code> )	OID of the local role being mapped, or zero if the user mapping is public
username name	Name of the local user to be mapped
umoptions text[]	User mapping specific options, as “keyword=value” strings

To protect password information stored as a user mapping option, the `umoptions` column will read as null unless one of the following applies:

- current user is the user being mapped, and owns the server or holds `USAGE` privilege on it
- current user is the server owner and mapping is for `PUBLIC`
- current user is a superuser

## 54.35. pg\_views

The view `pg_views` provides access to useful information about each view in the database.

**Table 54.35. pg\_views Columns**

Column Type	Description
schemaname name (references pg_namespace.nspname)	Name of schema containing view
viewname name (references pg_class.relname)	Name of view
viewowner name (references pg_authid.rolname)	Name of view's owner
definition text	View definition (a reconstructed SELECT query)

---

# Chapter 55. Frontend/Backend Protocol

PostgreSQL uses a message-based protocol for communication between frontends and backends (clients and servers). The protocol is supported over TCP/IP and also over Unix-domain sockets. Port number 5432 has been registered with IANA as the customary TCP port number for servers supporting this protocol, but in practice any non-privileged port number can be used.

This document describes version 3.0 of the protocol, implemented in PostgreSQL 7.4 and later. For descriptions of the earlier protocol versions, see previous releases of the PostgreSQL documentation. A single server can support multiple protocol versions. The initial startup-request message tells the server which protocol version the client is attempting to use. If the major version requested by the client is not supported by the server, the connection will be rejected (for example, this would occur if the client requested protocol version 4.0, which does not exist as of this writing). If the minor version requested by the client is not supported by the server (e.g., the client requests version 3.1, but the server supports only 3.0), the server may either reject the connection or may respond with a `NegotiateProtocolVersion` message containing the highest minor protocol version which it supports. The client may then choose either to continue with the connection using the specified protocol version or to abort the connection.

In order to serve multiple clients efficiently, the server launches a new “backend” process for each client. In the current implementation, a new child process is created immediately after an incoming connection is detected. This is transparent to the protocol, however. For purposes of the protocol, the terms “backend” and “server” are interchangeable; likewise “frontend” and “client” are interchangeable.

## 55.1. Overview

The protocol has separate phases for startup and normal operation. In the startup phase, the frontend opens a connection to the server and authenticates itself to the satisfaction of the server. (This might involve a single message, or multiple messages depending on the authentication method being used.) If all goes well, the server then sends status information to the frontend, and finally enters normal operation. Except for the initial startup-request message, this part of the protocol is driven by the server.

During normal operation, the frontend sends queries and other commands to the backend, and the backend sends back query results and other responses. There are a few cases (such as `NOTIFY`) wherein the backend will send unsolicited messages, but for the most part this portion of a session is driven by frontend requests.

Termination of the session is normally by frontend choice, but can be forced by the backend in certain cases. In any case, when the backend closes the connection, it will roll back any open (incomplete) transaction before exiting.

Within normal operation, SQL commands can be executed through either of two sub-protocols. In the “simple query” protocol, the frontend just sends a textual query string, which is parsed and immediately executed by the backend. In the “extended query” protocol, processing of queries is separated into multiple steps: parsing, binding of parameter values, and execution. This offers flexibility and performance benefits, at the cost of extra complexity.

Normal operation has additional sub-protocols for special operations such as `COPY`.

### 55.1.1. Messaging Overview

All communication is through a stream of messages. The first byte of a message identifies the message type, and the next four bytes specify the length of the rest of the message (this length count includes itself, but not the message-type byte). The remaining contents of the message are determined by the

message type. For historical reasons, the very first message sent by the client (the startup message) has no initial message-type byte.

To avoid losing synchronization with the message stream, both servers and clients typically read an entire message into a buffer (using the byte count) before attempting to process its contents. This allows easy recovery if an error is detected while processing the contents. In extreme situations (such as not having enough memory to buffer the message), the receiver can use the byte count to determine how much input to skip before it resumes reading messages.

Conversely, both servers and clients must take care never to send an incomplete message. This is commonly done by marshaling the entire message in a buffer before beginning to send it. If a communications failure occurs partway through sending or receiving a message, the only sensible response is to abandon the connection, since there is little hope of recovering message-boundary synchronization.

## 55.1.2. Extended Query Overview

In the extended-query protocol, execution of SQL commands is divided into multiple steps. The state retained between steps is represented by two types of objects: *prepared statements* and *portals*. A prepared statement represents the result of parsing and semantic analysis of a textual query string. A prepared statement is not in itself ready to execute, because it might lack specific values for *parameters*. A portal represents a ready-to-execute or already-partially-executed statement, with any missing parameter values filled in. (For `SELECT` statements, a portal is equivalent to an open cursor, but we choose to use a different term since cursors don't handle non-`SELECT` statements.)

The overall execution cycle consists of a *parse* step, which creates a prepared statement from a textual query string; a *bind* step, which creates a portal given a prepared statement and values for any needed parameters; and an *execute* step that runs a portal's query. In the case of a query that returns rows (`SELECT`, `SHOW`, etc.), the execute step can be told to fetch only a limited number of rows, so that multiple execute steps might be needed to complete the operation.

The backend can keep track of multiple prepared statements and portals (but note that these exist only within a session, and are never shared across sessions). Existing prepared statements and portals are referenced by names assigned when they were created. In addition, an “unnamed” prepared statement and portal exist. Although these behave largely the same as named objects, operations on them are optimized for the case of executing a query only once and then discarding it, whereas operations on named objects are optimized on the expectation of multiple uses.

## 55.1.3. Formats and Format Codes

Data of a particular data type might be transmitted in any of several different *formats*. As of PostgreSQL 7.4 the only supported formats are “text” and “binary”, but the protocol makes provision for future extensions. The desired format for any value is specified by a *format code*. Clients can specify a format code for each transmitted parameter value and for each column of a query result. Text has format code zero, binary has format code one, and all other format codes are reserved for future definition.

The text representation of values is whatever strings are produced and accepted by the input/output conversion functions for the particular data type. In the transmitted representation, there is no trailing null character; the frontend must add one to received values if it wants to process them as C strings. (The text format does not allow embedded nulls, by the way.)

Binary representations for integers use network byte order (most significant byte first). For other data types consult the documentation or source code to learn about the binary representation. Keep in mind that binary representations for complex data types might change across server versions; the text format is usually the more portable choice.

## 55.2. Message Flow

This section describes the message flow and the semantics of each message type. (Details of the exact representation of each message appear in Section 55.7.) There are several different sub-protocols de-

pending on the state of the connection: start-up, query, function call, COPY, and termination. There are also special provisions for asynchronous operations (including notification responses and command cancellation), which can occur at any time after the start-up phase.

## 55.2.1. Start-up

To begin a session, a frontend opens a connection to the server and sends a startup message. This message includes the names of the user and of the database the user wants to connect to; it also identifies the particular protocol version to be used. (Optionally, the startup message can include additional settings for run-time parameters.) The server then uses this information and the contents of its configuration files (such as `pg_hba.conf`) to determine whether the connection is provisionally acceptable, and what additional authentication is required (if any).

The server then sends an appropriate authentication request message, to which the frontend must reply with an appropriate authentication response message (such as a password). For all authentication methods except GSSAPI, SSPI and SASL, there is at most one request and one response. In some methods, no response at all is needed from the frontend, and so no authentication request occurs. For GSSAPI, SSPI and SASL, multiple exchanges of packets may be needed to complete the authentication.

The authentication cycle ends with the server either rejecting the connection attempt (ErrorResponse), or sending AuthenticationOk.

The possible messages from the server in this phase are:

### ErrorResponse

The connection attempt has been rejected. The server then immediately closes the connection.

### AuthenticationOk

The authentication exchange is successfully completed.

### AuthenticationKerberosV5

The frontend must now take part in a Kerberos V5 authentication dialog (not described here, part of the Kerberos specification) with the server. If this is successful, the server responds with an AuthenticationOk, otherwise it responds with an ErrorResponse. This is no longer supported.

### AuthenticationCleartextPassword

The frontend must now send a PasswordMessage containing the password in clear-text form. If this is the correct password, the server responds with an AuthenticationOk, otherwise it responds with an ErrorResponse.

### AuthenticationMD5Password

The frontend must now send a PasswordMessage containing the password (with user name) encrypted via MD5, then encrypted again using the 4-byte random salt specified in the AuthenticationMD5Password message. If this is the correct password, the server responds with an AuthenticationOk, otherwise it responds with an ErrorResponse. The actual PasswordMessage can be computed in SQL as `concat('md5', md5(concat(md5(concat(password, username)), random-salt)))`. (Keep in mind the `md5()` function returns its result as a hex string.)

### AuthenticationGSS

The frontend must now initiate a GSSAPI negotiation. The frontend will send a GSSResponse message with the first part of the GSSAPI data stream in response to this. If further messages are needed, the server will respond with AuthenticationGSSContinue.

### AuthenticationSSPI

The frontend must now initiate an SSPI negotiation. The frontend will send a GSSResponse with the first part of the SSPI data stream in response to this. If further messages are needed, the server will respond with AuthenticationGSSContinue.

### AuthenticationGSSContinue

This message contains the response data from the previous step of GSSAPI or SSPI negotiation (AuthenticationGSS, AuthenticationSSPI or a previous AuthenticationGSSContinue). If the GSSAPI or SSPI data in this message indicates more data is needed to complete the authentication, the frontend must send that data as another GSSResponse message. If GSSAPI or SSPI authentication is completed by this message, the server will next send AuthenticationOk to indicate successful authentication or ErrorResponse to indicate failure.

### AuthenticationSASL

The frontend must now initiate a SASL negotiation, using one of the SASL mechanisms listed in the message. The frontend will send a SASLInitialResponse with the name of the selected mechanism, and the first part of the SASL data stream in response to this. If further messages are needed, the server will respond with AuthenticationSASLContinue. See Section 55.3 for details.

### AuthenticationSASLContinue

This message contains challenge data from the previous step of SASL negotiation (AuthenticationSASL, or a previous AuthenticationSASLContinue). The frontend must respond with a SASL-Response message.

### AuthenticationSASLFinal

SASL authentication has completed with additional mechanism-specific data for the client. The server will next send AuthenticationOk to indicate successful authentication, or an ErrorResponse to indicate failure. This message is sent only if the SASL mechanism specifies additional data to be sent from server to client at completion.

### NegotiateProtocolVersion

The server does not support the minor protocol version requested by the client, but does support an earlier version of the protocol; this message indicates the highest supported minor version. This message will also be sent if the client requested unsupported protocol options (i.e., beginning with `_p_q_.`) in the startup packet. This message will be followed by an ErrorResponse or a message indicating the success or failure of authentication.

If the frontend does not support the authentication method requested by the server, then it should immediately close the connection.

After having received AuthenticationOk, the frontend must wait for further messages from the server. In this phase a backend process is being started, and the frontend is just an interested bystander. It is still possible for the startup attempt to fail (ErrorResponse) or the server to decline support for the requested minor protocol version (NegotiateProtocolVersion), but in the normal case the backend will send some ParameterStatus messages, BackendKeyData, and finally ReadyForQuery.

During this phase the backend will attempt to apply any additional run-time parameter settings that were given in the startup message. If successful, these values become session defaults. An error causes ErrorResponse and exit.

The possible messages from the backend in this phase are:

### BackendKeyData

This message provides secret-key data that the frontend must save if it wants to be able to issue cancel requests later. The frontend should not respond to this message, but should continue listening for a ReadyForQuery message.



**ParameterStatus**

This message informs the frontend about the current (initial) setting of backend parameters, such as `client_encoding` or `DateStyle`. The frontend can ignore this message, or record the settings for its future use; see Section 55.2.7 for more details. The frontend should not respond to this message, but should continue listening for a `ReadyForQuery` message.

**ReadyForQuery**

Start-up is completed. The frontend can now issue commands.

**ErrorResponse**

Start-up failed. The connection is closed after sending this message.

**NoticeResponse**

A warning message has been issued. The frontend should display the message but continue listening for `ReadyForQuery` or `ErrorResponse`.

The `ReadyForQuery` message is the same one that the backend will issue after each command cycle. Depending on the coding needs of the frontend, it is reasonable to consider `ReadyForQuery` as starting a command cycle, or to consider `ReadyForQuery` as ending the start-up phase and each subsequent command cycle.

## 55.2.2. Simple Query

A simple query cycle is initiated by the frontend sending a `Query` message to the backend. The message includes an SQL command (or commands) expressed as a text string. The backend then sends one or more response messages depending on the contents of the query command string, and finally a `ReadyForQuery` response message. `ReadyForQuery` informs the frontend that it can safely send a new command. (It is not actually necessary for the frontend to wait for `ReadyForQuery` before issuing another command, but the frontend must then take responsibility for figuring out what happens if the earlier command fails and already-issued later commands succeed.)

The possible response messages from the backend are:

**CommandComplete**

An SQL command completed normally.

**CopyInResponse**

The backend is ready to copy data from the frontend to a table; see Section 55.2.6.

**CopyOutResponse**

The backend is ready to copy data from a table to the frontend; see Section 55.2.6.

**RowDescription**

Indicates that rows are about to be returned in response to a `SELECT`, `FETCH`, etc. query. The contents of this message describe the column layout of the rows. This will be followed by a `DataRow` message for each row being returned to the frontend.

**DataRow**

One of the set of rows returned by a `SELECT`, `FETCH`, etc. query.

**EmptyQueryResponse**

An empty query string was recognized.

**ErrorResponse**

An error has occurred.

**ReadyForQuery**

Processing of the query string is complete. A separate message is sent to indicate this because the query string might contain multiple SQL commands. (CommandComplete marks the end of processing one SQL command, not the whole string.) ReadyForQuery will always be sent, whether processing terminates successfully or with an error.

**NoticeResponse**

A warning message has been issued in relation to the query. Notices are in addition to other responses, i.e., the backend will continue processing the command.

The response to a `SELECT` query (or other queries that return row sets, such as `EXPLAIN` or `SHOW`) normally consists of `RowDescription`, zero or more `DataRow` messages, and then `CommandComplete`. `COPY` to or from the frontend invokes special protocol as described in Section 55.2.6. All other query types normally produce only a `CommandComplete` message.

Since a query string could contain several queries (separated by semicolons), there might be several such response sequences before the backend finishes processing the query string. `ReadyForQuery` is issued when the entire string has been processed and the backend is ready to accept a new query string.

If a completely empty (no contents other than whitespace) query string is received, the response is `EmptyQueryResponse` followed by `ReadyForQuery`.

In the event of an error, `ErrorResponse` is issued followed by `ReadyForQuery`. All further processing of the query string is aborted by `ErrorResponse` (even if more queries remained in it). Note that this might occur partway through the sequence of messages generated by an individual query.

In simple Query mode, the format of retrieved values is always text, except when the given command is a `FETCH` from a cursor declared with the `BINARY` option. In that case, the retrieved values are in binary format. The format codes given in the `RowDescription` message tell which format is being used.

A frontend must be prepared to accept `ErrorResponse` and `NoticeResponse` messages whenever it is expecting any other type of message. See also Section 55.2.7 concerning messages that the backend might generate due to outside events.

Recommended practice is to code frontends in a state-machine style that will accept any message type at any time that it could make sense, rather than wiring in assumptions about the exact sequence of messages.

### 55.2.2.1. Multiple Statements in a Simple Query

When a simple Query message contains more than one SQL statement (separated by semicolons), those statements are executed as a single transaction, unless explicit transaction control commands are included to force a different behavior. For example, if the message contains

```
INSERT INTO mytable VALUES(1);  
SELECT 1/0;  
INSERT INTO mytable VALUES(2);
```

then the divide-by-zero failure in the `SELECT` will force rollback of the first `INSERT`. Furthermore, because execution of the message is abandoned at the first error, the second `INSERT` is never attempted at all.

If instead the message contains

```
BEGIN;  
INSERT INTO mytable VALUES(1);  
COMMIT;  
INSERT INTO mytable VALUES(2);  
SELECT 1/0;
```

then the first `INSERT` is committed by the explicit `COMMIT` command. The second `INSERT` and the `SELECT` are still treated as a single transaction, so that the divide-by-zero failure will roll back the second `INSERT`, but not the first one.

This behavior is implemented by running the statements in a multi-statement Query message in an *implicit transaction block* unless there is some explicit transaction block for them to run in. The main difference between an implicit transaction block and a regular one is that an implicit block is closed automatically at the end of the Query message, either by an implicit commit if there was no error, or an implicit rollback if there was an error. This is similar to the implicit commit or rollback that happens for a statement executed by itself (when not in a transaction block).

If the session is already in a transaction block, as a result of a `BEGIN` in some previous message, then the Query message simply continues that transaction block, whether the message contains one statement or several. However, if the Query message contains a `COMMIT` or `ROLLBACK` closing the existing transaction block, then any following statements are executed in an implicit transaction block. Conversely, if a `BEGIN` appears in a multi-statement Query message, then it starts a regular transaction block that will only be terminated by an explicit `COMMIT` or `ROLLBACK`, whether that appears in this Query message or a later one. If the `BEGIN` follows some statements that were executed as an implicit transaction block, those statements are not immediately committed; in effect, they are retroactively included into the new regular transaction block.

A `COMMIT` or `ROLLBACK` appearing in an implicit transaction block is executed as normal, closing the implicit block; however, a warning will be issued since a `COMMIT` or `ROLLBACK` without a previous `BEGIN` might represent a mistake. If more statements follow, a new implicit transaction block will be started for them.

Savepoints are not allowed in an implicit transaction block, since they would conflict with the behavior of automatically closing the block upon any error.

Remember that, regardless of any transaction control commands that may be present, execution of the Query message stops at the first error. Thus for example given

```
BEGIN;  
SELECT 1/0;  
ROLLBACK;
```

in a single Query message, the session will be left inside a failed regular transaction block, since the `ROLLBACK` is not reached after the divide-by-zero error. Another `ROLLBACK` will be needed to restore the session to a usable state.

Another behavior of note is that initial lexical and syntactic analysis is done on the entire query string before any of it is executed. Thus simple errors (such as a misspelled keyword) in later statements can prevent execution of any of the statements. This is normally invisible to users since the statements would all roll back anyway when done as an implicit transaction block. However, it can be visible when attempting to do multiple transactions within a multi-statement Query. For instance, if a typo turned our previous example into

```
BEGIN;  
INSERT INTO mytable VALUES(1);  
COMMIT;  
INSERT INTO mytable VALUES(2);
```

```
SELECT 1/0;
```

then none of the statements would get run, resulting in the visible difference that the first `INSERT` is not committed. Errors detected at semantic analysis or later, such as a misspelled table or column name, do not have this effect.

### 55.2.3. Extended Query

The extended query protocol breaks down the above-described simple query protocol into multiple steps. The results of preparatory steps can be re-used multiple times for improved efficiency. Furthermore, additional features are available, such as the possibility of supplying data values as separate parameters instead of having to insert them directly into a query string.

In the extended protocol, the frontend first sends a `Parse` message, which contains a textual query string, optionally some information about data types of parameter placeholders, and the name of a destination prepared-statement object (an empty string selects the unnamed prepared statement). The response is either `ParseComplete` or `ErrorResponse`. Parameter data types can be specified by `OID`; if not given, the parser attempts to infer the data types in the same way as it would do for untyped literal string constants.

#### Note

A parameter data type can be left unspecified by setting it to zero, or by making the array of parameter type `OID`s shorter than the number of parameter symbols ( $\$n$ ) used in the query string. Another special case is that a parameter's type can be specified as `void` (that is, the `OID` of the `void` pseudo-type). This is meant to allow parameter symbols to be used for function parameters that are actually `OUT` parameters. Ordinarily there is no context in which a `void` parameter could be used, but if such a parameter symbol appears in a function's parameter list, it is effectively ignored. For example, a function call such as `foo($1,$2,$3,$4)` could match a function with two `IN` and two `OUT` arguments, if `$3` and `$4` are specified as having type `void`.

#### Note

The query string contained in a `Parse` message cannot include more than one `SQL` statement; else a syntax error is reported. This restriction does not exist in the simple-query protocol, but it does exist in the extended protocol, because allowing prepared statements or portals to contain multiple commands would complicate the protocol unduly.

If successfully created, a named prepared-statement object lasts till the end of the current session, unless explicitly destroyed. An unnamed prepared statement lasts only until the next `Parse` statement specifying the unnamed statement as destination is issued. (Note that a simple `Query` message also destroys the unnamed statement.) Named prepared statements must be explicitly closed before they can be redefined by another `Parse` message, but this is not required for the unnamed statement. Named prepared statements can also be created and accessed at the `SQL` command level, using `PREPARE` and `EXECUTE`.

Once a prepared statement exists, it can be readied for execution using a `Bind` message. The `Bind` message gives the name of the source prepared statement (empty string denotes the unnamed prepared statement), the name of the destination portal (empty string denotes the unnamed portal), and the values to use for any parameter placeholders present in the prepared statement. The supplied parameter set must match those needed by the prepared statement. (If you declared any `void` parameters in the `Parse` message, pass `NULL` values for them in the `Bind` message.) `Bind` also specifies the format to use for any data returned by the query; the format can be specified overall, or per-column. The response is either `BindComplete` or `ErrorResponse`.

**Note**

The choice between text and binary output is determined by the format codes given in Bind, regardless of the SQL command involved. The `BINARY` attribute in cursor declarations is irrelevant when using extended query protocol.

Query planning typically occurs when the Bind message is processed. If the prepared statement has no parameters, or is executed repeatedly, the server might save the created plan and re-use it during subsequent Bind messages for the same prepared statement. However, it will do so only if it finds that a generic plan can be created that is not much less efficient than a plan that depends on the specific parameter values supplied. This happens transparently so far as the protocol is concerned.

If successfully created, a named portal object lasts till the end of the current transaction, unless explicitly destroyed. An unnamed portal is destroyed at the end of the transaction, or as soon as the next Bind statement specifying the unnamed portal as destination is issued. (Note that a simple Query message also destroys the unnamed portal.) Named portals must be explicitly closed before they can be redefined by another Bind message, but this is not required for the unnamed portal. Named portals can also be created and accessed at the SQL command level, using `DECLARE CURSOR` and `FETCH`.

Once a portal exists, it can be executed using an Execute message. The Execute message specifies the portal name (empty string denotes the unnamed portal) and a maximum result-row count (zero meaning “fetch all rows”). The result-row count is only meaningful for portals containing commands that return row sets; in other cases the command is always executed to completion, and the row count is ignored. The possible responses to Execute are the same as those described above for queries issued via simple query protocol, except that Execute doesn't cause ReadyForQuery or RowDescription to be issued.

If Execute terminates before completing the execution of a portal (due to reaching a nonzero result-row count), it will send a PortalSuspended message; the appearance of this message tells the frontend that another Execute should be issued against the same portal to complete the operation. The CommandComplete message indicating completion of the source SQL command is not sent until the portal's execution is completed. Therefore, an Execute phase is always terminated by the appearance of exactly one of these messages: CommandComplete, EmptyQueryResponse (if the portal was created from an empty query string), ErrorResponse, or PortalSuspended.

At completion of each series of extended-query messages, the frontend should issue a Sync message. This parameterless message causes the backend to close the current transaction if it's not inside a BEGIN/COMMIT transaction block (“close” meaning to commit if no error, or roll back if error). Then a ReadyForQuery response is issued. The purpose of Sync is to provide a resynchronization point for error recovery. When an error is detected while processing any extended-query message, the backend issues ErrorResponse, then reads and discards messages until a Sync is reached, then issues ReadyForQuery and returns to normal message processing. (But note that no skipping occurs if an error is detected *while* processing Sync — this ensures that there is one and only one ReadyForQuery sent for each Sync.)

**Note**

Sync does not cause a transaction block opened with `BEGIN` to be closed. It is possible to detect this situation since the ReadyForQuery message includes transaction status information.

In addition to these fundamental, required operations, there are several optional operations that can be used with extended-query protocol.

The Describe message (portal variant) specifies the name of an existing portal (or an empty string for the unnamed portal). The response is a RowDescription message describing the rows that will be

returned by executing the portal; or a NoData message if the portal does not contain a query that will return rows; or ErrorResponse if there is no such portal.

The Describe message (statement variant) specifies the name of an existing prepared statement (or an empty string for the unnamed prepared statement). The response is a ParameterDescription message describing the parameters needed by the statement, followed by a RowDescription message describing the rows that will be returned when the statement is eventually executed (or a NoData message if the statement will not return rows). ErrorResponse is issued if there is no such prepared statement. Note that since Bind has not yet been issued, the formats to be used for returned columns are not yet known to the backend; the format code fields in the RowDescription message will be zeroes in this case.

### Tip

In most scenarios the frontend should issue one or the other variant of Describe before issuing Execute, to ensure that it knows how to interpret the results it will get back.

The Close message closes an existing prepared statement or portal and releases resources. It is not an error to issue Close against a nonexistent statement or portal name. The response is normally CloseComplete, but could be ErrorResponse if some difficulty is encountered while releasing resources. Note that closing a prepared statement implicitly closes any open portals that were constructed from that statement.

The Flush message does not cause any specific output to be generated, but forces the backend to deliver any data pending in its output buffers. A Flush must be sent after any extended-query command except Sync, if the frontend wishes to examine the results of that command before issuing more commands. Without Flush, messages returned by the backend will be combined into the minimum possible number of packets to minimize network overhead.

### Note

The simple Query message is approximately equivalent to the series Parse, Bind, portal Describe, Execute, Close, Sync, using the unnamed prepared statement and portal objects and no parameters. One difference is that it will accept multiple SQL statements in the query string, automatically performing the bind/describe/execute sequence for each one in succession. Another difference is that it will not return ParseComplete, BindComplete, CloseComplete, or NoData messages.

## 55.2.4. Pipelining

Use of the extended query protocol allows *pipelining*, which means sending a series of queries without waiting for earlier ones to complete. This reduces the number of network round trips needed to complete a given series of operations. However, the user must carefully consider the required behavior if one of the steps fails, since later queries will already be in flight to the server.

One way to deal with that is to make the whole query series be a single transaction, that is wrap it in BEGIN ... COMMIT. However, this does not help if one wishes for some of the commands to commit independently of others.

The extended query protocol provides another way to manage this concern, which is to omit sending Sync messages between steps that are dependent. Since, after an error, the backend will skip command messages until it finds Sync, this allows later commands in a pipeline to be skipped automatically when an earlier one fails, without the client having to manage that explicitly with BEGIN and COMMIT. Independently-committable segments of the pipeline can be separated by Sync messages.

If the client has not issued an explicit BEGIN, then each Sync ordinarily causes an implicit COMMIT if the preceding step(s) succeeded, or an implicit ROLLBACK if they failed. However, there are a few

DDL commands (such as `CREATE DATABASE`) that cannot be executed inside a transaction block. If one of these is executed in a pipeline, it will fail unless it is the first command in the pipeline. Furthermore, upon success it will force an immediate commit to preserve database consistency. Thus a `Sync` immediately following one of these commands has no effect except to respond with `ReadyForQuery`.

When using this method, completion of the pipeline must be determined by counting `ReadyForQuery` messages and waiting for that to reach the number of `Syncs` sent. Counting command completion responses is unreliable, since some of the commands may be skipped and thus not produce a completion message.

## 55.2.5. Function Call

The Function Call sub-protocol allows the client to request a direct call of any function that exists in the database's `pg_proc` system catalog. The client must have `execute` permission for the function.

### Note

The Function Call sub-protocol is a legacy feature that is probably best avoided in new code. Similar results can be accomplished by setting up a prepared statement that does `SELECT function($1, ...)`. The Function Call cycle can then be replaced with `Bind/Execute`.

A Function Call cycle is initiated by the frontend sending a `FunctionCall` message to the backend. The backend then sends one or more response messages depending on the results of the function call, and finally a `ReadyForQuery` response message. `ReadyForQuery` informs the frontend that it can safely send a new query or function call.

The possible response messages from the backend are:

**ErrorResponse**

An error has occurred.

**FunctionCallResponse**

The function call was completed and returned the result given in the message. (Note that the Function Call protocol can only handle a single scalar result, not a row type or set of results.)

**ReadyForQuery**

Processing of the function call is complete. `ReadyForQuery` will always be sent, whether processing terminates successfully or with an error.

**NoticeResponse**

A warning message has been issued in relation to the function call. Notices are in addition to other responses, i.e., the backend will continue processing the command.

## 55.2.6. COPY Operations

The `COPY` command allows high-speed bulk data transfer to or from the server. Copy-in and copy-out operations each switch the connection into a distinct sub-protocol, which lasts until the operation is completed.

Copy-in mode (data transfer to the server) is initiated when the backend executes a `COPY FROM STDIN SQL` statement. The backend sends a `CopyInResponse` message to the frontend. The frontend should then send zero or more `CopyData` messages, forming a stream of input data. (The message boundaries are not required to have anything to do with row boundaries, although that is often a reasonable choice.) The frontend can terminate the copy-in mode by sending either a `CopyDone` message

(allowing successful termination) or a CopyFail message (which will cause the COPY SQL statement to fail with an error). The backend then reverts to the command-processing mode it was in before the COPY started, which will be either simple or extended query protocol. It will next send either CommandComplete (if successful) or ErrorResponse (if not).

In the event of a backend-detected error during copy-in mode (including receipt of a CopyFail message), the backend will issue an ErrorResponse message. If the COPY command was issued via an extended-query message, the backend will now discard frontend messages until a Sync message is received, then it will issue ReadyForQuery and return to normal processing. If the COPY command was issued in a simple Query message, the rest of that message is discarded and ReadyForQuery is issued. In either case, any subsequent CopyData, CopyDone, or CopyFail messages issued by the frontend will simply be dropped.

The backend will ignore Flush and Sync messages received during copy-in mode. Receipt of any other non-copy message type constitutes an error that will abort the copy-in state as described above. (The exception for Flush and Sync is for the convenience of client libraries that always send Flush or Sync after an Execute message, without checking whether the command to be executed is a COPY FROM STDIN.)

Copy-out mode (data transfer from the server) is initiated when the backend executes a COPY TO STDOUT SQL statement. The backend sends a CopyOutResponse message to the frontend, followed by zero or more CopyData messages (always one per row), followed by CopyDone. The backend then reverts to the command-processing mode it was in before the COPY started, and sends CommandComplete. The frontend cannot abort the transfer (except by closing the connection or issuing a Cancel request), but it can discard unwanted CopyData and CopyDone messages.

In the event of a backend-detected error during copy-out mode, the backend will issue an ErrorResponse message and revert to normal processing. The frontend should treat receipt of ErrorResponse as terminating the copy-out mode.

It is possible for NoticeResponse and ParameterStatus messages to be interspersed between CopyData messages; frontends must handle these cases, and should be prepared for other asynchronous message types as well (see Section 55.2.7). Otherwise, any message type other than CopyData or CopyDone may be treated as terminating copy-out mode.

There is another Copy-related mode called copy-both, which allows high-speed bulk data transfer to *and* from the server. Copy-both mode is initiated when a backend in walsender mode executes a START\_REPLICATION statement. The backend sends a CopyBothResponse message to the frontend. Both the backend and the frontend may then send CopyData messages until either end sends a CopyDone message. After the client sends a CopyDone message, the connection goes from copy-both mode to copy-out mode, and the client may not send any more CopyData messages. Similarly, when the server sends a CopyDone message, the connection goes into copy-in mode, and the server may not send any more CopyData messages. After both sides have sent a CopyDone message, the copy mode is terminated, and the backend reverts to the command-processing mode. In the event of a backend-detected error during copy-both mode, the backend will issue an ErrorResponse message, discard frontend messages until a Sync message is received, and then issue ReadyForQuery and return to normal processing. The frontend should treat receipt of ErrorResponse as terminating the copy in both directions; no CopyDone should be sent in this case. See Section 55.4 for more information on the subprotocol transmitted over copy-both mode.

The CopyInResponse, CopyOutResponse and CopyBothResponse messages include fields that inform the frontend of the number of columns per row and the format codes being used for each column. (As of the present implementation, all columns in a given COPY operation will use the same format, but the message design does not assume this.)

## 55.2.7. Asynchronous Operations

There are several cases in which the backend will send messages that are not specifically prompted by the frontend's command stream. Frontends must be prepared to deal with these messages at any time,



even when not engaged in a query. At minimum, one should check for these cases before beginning to read a query response.

It is possible for NoticeResponse messages to be generated due to outside activity; for example, if the database administrator commands a “fast” database shutdown, the backend will send a NoticeResponse indicating this fact before closing the connection. Accordingly, frontends should always be prepared to accept and display NoticeResponse messages, even when the connection is nominally idle.

ParameterStatus messages will be generated whenever the active value changes for any of the parameters the backend believes the frontend should know about. Most commonly this occurs in response to a SET SQL command executed by the frontend, and this case is effectively synchronous — but it is also possible for parameter status changes to occur because the administrator changed a configuration file and then sent the SIGHUP signal to the server. Also, if a SET command is rolled back, an appropriate ParameterStatus message will be generated to report the current effective value.

At present there is a hard-wired set of parameters for which ParameterStatus will be generated: they are `server_version`, `server_encoding`, `client_encoding`, `application_name`, `default_transaction_read_only`, `in_hot_standby`, `is_superuser`, `session_authorization`, `DateStyle`, `IntervalStyle`, `TimeZone`, `integer_datetimes`, and `standard_conforming_strings`. (`server_encoding`, `TimeZone`, and `integer_datetimes` were not reported by releases before 8.0; `standard_conforming_strings` was not reported by releases before 8.1; `IntervalStyle` was not reported by releases before 8.4; `application_name` was not reported by releases before 9.0; `default_transaction_read_only` and `in_hot_standby` were not reported by releases before 14.) Note that `server_version`, `server_encoding` and `integer_datetimes` are pseudo-parameters that cannot change after startup. This set might change in the future, or even become configurable. Accordingly, a frontend should simply ignore ParameterStatus for parameters that it does not understand or care about.

If a frontend issues a LISTEN command, then the backend will send a NotificationResponse message (not to be confused with NoticeResponse!) whenever a NOTIFY command is executed for the same channel name.

### Note

At present, NotificationResponse can only be sent outside a transaction, and thus it will not occur in the middle of a command-response series, though it might occur just before ReadyForQuery. It is unwise to design frontend logic that assumes that, however. Good practice is to be able to accept NotificationResponse at any point in the protocol.

## 55.2.8. Canceling Requests in Progress

During the processing of a query, the frontend might request cancellation of the query. The cancel request is not sent directly on the open connection to the backend for reasons of implementation efficiency: we don't want to have the backend constantly checking for new input from the frontend during query processing. Cancel requests should be relatively infrequent, so we make them slightly cumbersome in order to avoid a penalty in the normal case.

To issue a cancel request, the frontend opens a new connection to the server and sends a CancelRequest message, rather than the StartupMessage message that would ordinarily be sent across a new connection. The server will process this request and then close the connection. For security reasons, no direct reply is made to the cancel request message.

A CancelRequest message will be ignored unless it contains the same key data (PID and secret key) passed to the frontend during connection start-up. If the request matches the PID and secret key for a currently executing backend, the processing of the current query is aborted. (In the existing implementation, this is done by sending a special signal to the backend process that is processing the query.)

The cancellation signal might or might not have any effect — for example, if it arrives after the backend has finished processing the query, then it will have no effect. If the cancellation is effective, it results in the current command being terminated early with an error message.

The upshot of all this is that for reasons of both security and efficiency, the frontend has no direct way to tell whether a cancel request has succeeded. It must continue to wait for the backend to respond to the query. Issuing a cancel simply improves the odds that the current query will finish soon, and improves the odds that it will fail with an error message instead of succeeding.

Since the cancel request is sent across a new connection to the server and not across the regular frontend/backend communication link, it is possible for the cancel request to be issued by any process, not just the frontend whose query is to be canceled. This might provide additional flexibility when building multiple-process applications. It also introduces a security risk, in that unauthorized persons might try to cancel queries. The security risk is addressed by requiring a dynamically generated secret key to be supplied in cancel requests.

## 55.2.9. Termination

The normal, graceful termination procedure is that the frontend sends a `Terminate` message and immediately closes the connection. On receipt of this message, the backend closes the connection and terminates.

In rare cases (such as an administrator-commanded database shutdown) the backend might disconnect without any frontend request to do so. In such cases the backend will attempt to send an error or notice message giving the reason for the disconnection before it closes the connection.

Other termination scenarios arise from various failure cases, such as core dump at one end or the other, loss of the communications link, loss of message-boundary synchronization, etc. If either frontend or backend sees an unexpected closure of the connection, it should clean up and terminate. The frontend has the option of launching a new backend by recontacting the server if it doesn't want to terminate itself. Closing the connection is also advisable if an unrecognizable message type is received, since this probably indicates loss of message-boundary sync.

For either normal or abnormal termination, any open transaction is rolled back, not committed. One should note however that if a frontend disconnects while a non-`SELECT` query is being processed, the backend will probably finish the query before noticing the disconnection. If the query is outside any transaction block (`BEGIN ... COMMIT` sequence) then its results might be committed before the disconnection is recognized.

## 55.2.10. SSL Session Encryption

If PostgreSQL was built with SSL support, frontend/backend communications can be encrypted using SSL. This provides communication security in environments where attackers might be able to capture the session traffic. For more information on encrypting PostgreSQL sessions with SSL, see Section 19.9.

To initiate an SSL-encrypted connection, the frontend initially sends an `SSLRequest` message rather than a `StartupMessage`. The server then responds with a single byte containing `S` or `N`, indicating that it is willing or unwilling to perform SSL, respectively. The frontend might close the connection at this point if it is dissatisfied with the response. To continue after `S`, perform an SSL startup handshake (not described here, part of the SSL specification) with the server. If this is successful, continue with sending the usual `StartupMessage`. In this case the `StartupMessage` and all subsequent data will be SSL-encrypted. To continue after `N`, send the usual `StartupMessage` and proceed without encryption. (Alternatively, it is permissible to issue a `GSSENCRequest` message after an `N` response to try to use GSSAPI encryption instead of SSL.)

The frontend should also be prepared to handle an `ErrorMessage` response to `SSLRequest` from the server. This would only occur if the server predates the addition of SSL support to PostgreSQL. (Such servers are now very ancient, and likely do not exist in the wild anymore.) In this case the connec-

tion must be closed, but the frontend might choose to open a fresh connection and proceed without requesting SSL.

When SSL encryption can be performed, the server is expected to send only the single `S` byte and then wait for the frontend to initiate an SSL handshake. If additional bytes are available to read at this point, it likely means that a man-in-the-middle is attempting to perform a buffer-stuffing attack (CVE-2021-23222<sup>1</sup>). Frontends should be coded either to read exactly one byte from the socket before turning the socket over to their SSL library, or to treat it as a protocol violation if they find they have read additional bytes.

An initial `SSLRequest` can also be used in a connection that is being opened to send a `CancelRequest` message.

While the protocol itself does not provide a way for the server to force SSL encryption, the administrator can configure the server to reject unencrypted sessions as a byproduct of authentication checking.

## 55.2.11. GSSAPI Session Encryption

If PostgreSQL was built with GSSAPI support, frontend/backend communications can be encrypted using GSSAPI. This provides communication security in environments where attackers might be able to capture the session traffic. For more information on encrypting PostgreSQL sessions with GSSAPI, see Section 19.10.

To initiate a GSSAPI-encrypted connection, the frontend initially sends a `GSENCRRequest` message rather than a `StartupMessage`. The server then responds with a single byte containing `G` or `N`, indicating that it is willing or unwilling to perform GSSAPI encryption, respectively. The frontend might close the connection at this point if it is dissatisfied with the response. To continue after `G`, using the GSSAPI C bindings as discussed in RFC 2744<sup>2</sup> or equivalent, perform a GSSAPI initialization by calling `gss_init_sec_context()` in a loop and sending the result to the server, starting with an empty input and then with each result from the server, until it returns no output. When sending the results of `gss_init_sec_context()` to the server, prepend the length of the message as a four byte integer in network byte order. To continue after `N`, send the usual `StartupMessage` and proceed without encryption. (Alternatively, it is permissible to issue an `SSLRequest` message after an `N` response to try to use SSL encryption instead of GSSAPI.)

The frontend should also be prepared to handle an `ErrorMessage` response to `GSENCRRequest` from the server. This would only occur if the server predates the addition of GSSAPI encryption support to PostgreSQL. In this case the connection must be closed, but the frontend might choose to open a fresh connection and proceed without requesting GSSAPI encryption.

When GSSAPI encryption can be performed, the server is expected to send only the single `G` byte and then wait for the frontend to initiate a GSSAPI handshake. If additional bytes are available to read at this point, it likely means that a man-in-the-middle is attempting to perform a buffer-stuffing attack (CVE-2021-23222<sup>3</sup>). Frontends should be coded either to read exactly one byte from the socket before turning the socket over to their GSSAPI library, or to treat it as a protocol violation if they find they have read additional bytes.

An initial `GSENCRRequest` can also be used in a connection that is being opened to send a `CancelRequest` message.

Once GSSAPI encryption has been successfully established, use `gss_wrap()` to encrypt the usual `StartupMessage` and all subsequent data, prepending the length of the result from `gss_wrap()` as a four byte integer in network byte order to the actual encrypted payload. Note that the server will only accept encrypted packets from the client which are less than 16kB; `gss_wrap_size_limit()` should be used by the client to determine the size of the unencrypted message which will fit within this limit and larger messages should be broken up into multiple `gss_wrap()` calls. Typical segments

---

<sup>1</sup> <https://www.postgresql.org/support/security/CVE-2021-23222/>

<sup>2</sup> <https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc2744>

<sup>3</sup> <https://www.postgresql.org/support/security/CVE-2021-23222/>

are 8kB of unencrypted data, resulting in encrypted packets of slightly larger than 8kB but well within the 16kB maximum. The server can be expected to not send encrypted packets of larger than 16kB to the client.

While the protocol itself does not provide a way for the server to force GSSAPI encryption, the administrator can configure the server to reject unencrypted sessions as a byproduct of authentication checking.

## 55.3. SASL Authentication

*SASL* is a framework for authentication in connection-oriented protocols. At the moment, PostgreSQL implements two SASL authentication mechanisms, *SCRAM-SHA-256* and *SCRAM-SHA-256-PLUS*. More might be added in the future. The below steps illustrate how SASL authentication is performed in general, while the next subsection gives more details on *SCRAM-SHA-256* and *SCRAM-SHA-256-PLUS*.

### SASL Authentication Message Flow

1. To begin a SASL authentication exchange, the server sends an `AuthenticationSASL` message. It includes a list of SASL authentication mechanisms that the server can accept, in the server's preferred order.
2. The client selects one of the supported mechanisms from the list, and sends a `SASLInitialResponse` message to the server. The message includes the name of the selected mechanism, and an optional Initial Client Response, if the selected mechanism uses that.
3. One or more server-challenge and client-response message will follow. Each server-challenge is sent in an `AuthenticationSASLContinue` message, followed by a response from client in a `SASLResponse` message. The particulars of the messages are mechanism specific.
4. Finally, when the authentication exchange is completed successfully, the server sends an `AuthenticationSASLFinal` message, followed immediately by an `AuthenticationOk` message. The `AuthenticationSASLFinal` contains additional server-to-client data, whose content is particular to the selected authentication mechanism. If the authentication mechanism doesn't use additional data that's sent at completion, the `AuthenticationSASLFinal` message is not sent.

On error, the server can abort the authentication at any stage, and send an `ErrorMessage`.

### 55.3.1. SCRAM-SHA-256 Authentication

The implemented SASL mechanisms at the moment are *SCRAM-SHA-256* and its variant with channel binding *SCRAM-SHA-256-PLUS*. They are described in detail in RFC 7677<sup>4</sup> and RFC 5802<sup>5</sup>.

When *SCRAM-SHA-256* is used in PostgreSQL, the server will ignore the user name that the client sends in the `client-first-message`. The user name that was already sent in the startup message is used instead. PostgreSQL supports multiple character encodings, while *SCRAM* dictates UTF-8 to be used for the user name, so it might be impossible to represent the PostgreSQL user name in UTF-8.

The *SCRAM* specification dictates that the password is also in UTF-8, and is processed with the *SASLprep* algorithm. PostgreSQL, however, does not require UTF-8 to be used for the password. When a user's password is set, it is processed with *SASLprep* as if it was in UTF-8, regardless of the actual encoding used. However, if it is not a legal UTF-8 byte sequence, or it contains UTF-8 byte sequences that are prohibited by the *SASLprep* algorithm, the raw password will be used without *SASLprep* processing, instead of throwing an error. This allows the password to be normalized when it is in UTF-8, but still allows a non-UTF-8 password to be used, and doesn't require the system to know which encoding the password is in.

---

<sup>4</sup> <https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc7677>

<sup>5</sup> <https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc5802>

*Channel binding* is supported in PostgreSQL builds with SSL support. The SASL mechanism name for SCRAM with channel binding is `SCRAM-SHA-256-PLUS`. The channel binding type used by PostgreSQL is `tls-server-end-point`.

In SCRAM without channel binding, the server chooses a random number that is transmitted to the client to be mixed with the user-supplied password in the transmitted password hash. While this prevents the password hash from being successfully retransmitted in a later session, it does not prevent a fake server between the real server and client from passing through the server's random value and successfully authenticating.

SCRAM with channel binding prevents such man-in-the-middle attacks by mixing the signature of the server's certificate into the transmitted password hash. While a fake server can retransmit the real server's certificate, it doesn't have access to the private key matching that certificate, and therefore cannot prove it is the owner, causing SSL connection failure.

### Example

1. The server sends an `AuthenticationSASL` message. It includes a list of SASL authentication mechanisms that the server can accept. This will be `SCRAM-SHA-256-PLUS` and `SCRAM-SHA-256` if the server is built with SSL support, or else just the latter.
2. The client responds by sending a `SASLInitialResponse` message, which indicates the chosen mechanism, `SCRAM-SHA-256` or `SCRAM-SHA-256-PLUS`. (A client is free to choose either mechanism, but for better security it should choose the channel-binding variant if it can support it.) In the Initial Client response field, the message contains the SCRAM `client-first-message`. The `client-first-message` also contains the channel binding type chosen by the client.
3. Server sends an `AuthenticationSASLContinue` message, with a SCRAM `server-first-message` as the content.
4. Client sends a `SASLResponse` message, with SCRAM `client-final-message` as the content.
5. Server sends an `AuthenticationSASLFinal` message, with the SCRAM `server-final-message`, followed immediately by an `AuthenticationOk` message.

## 55.4. Streaming Replication Protocol

To initiate streaming replication, the frontend sends the `replication` parameter in the startup message. A Boolean value of `true` (or `on`, `yes`, `1`) tells the backend to go into physical replication walsender mode, wherein a small set of replication commands, shown below, can be issued instead of SQL statements.

Passing database as the value for the `replication` parameter instructs the backend to go into logical replication walsender mode, connecting to the database specified in the `dbname` parameter. In logical replication walsender mode, the replication commands shown below as well as normal SQL commands can be issued.

In either physical replication or logical replication walsender mode, only the simple query protocol can be used.

For the purpose of testing replication commands, you can make a replication connection via `psql` or any other libpq-using tool with a connection string including the `replication` option, e.g.:

```
psql "dbname=postgres replication=database" -c "IDENTIFY_SYSTEM;"
```

However, it is often more useful to use `pg_receivewal` (for physical replication) or `pg_recvlogical` (for logical replication).

Replication commands are logged in the server log when `log_replication_commands` is enabled.

The commands accepted in replication mode are:

`IDENTIFY_SYSTEM`

Requests the server to identify itself. Server replies with a result set of a single row, containing four fields:

`systemid (text)`

The unique system identifier identifying the cluster. This can be used to check that the base backup used to initialize the standby came from the same cluster.

`timeline (int8)`

Current timeline ID. Also useful to check that the standby is consistent with the primary.

`xlogpos (text)`

Current WAL flush location. Useful to get a known location in the write-ahead log where streaming can start.

`dbname (text)`

Database connected to or null.

`SHOW name`

Requests the server to send the current setting of a run-time parameter. This is similar to the SQL command `SHOW`.

*name*

The name of a run-time parameter. Available parameters are documented in Chapter 20.

`TIMELINE_HISTORY tli`

Requests the server to send over the timeline history file for timeline *tli*. Server replies with a result set of a single row, containing two fields. While the fields are labeled as `text`, they effectively return raw bytes, with no encoding conversion:

`filename (text)`

File name of the timeline history file, e.g., `00000002.history`.

`content (text)`

Contents of the timeline history file.

`CREATE_REPLICATION_SLOT slot_name [ TEMPORARY ] { PHYSICAL | LOGICAL output_plugin } [ ( option [, ...] ) ]`

Create a physical or logical replication slot. See Section 27.2.6 for more about replication slots.

*slot\_name*

The name of the slot to create. Must be a valid replication slot name (see Section 27.2.6.1).

*output\_plugin*

The name of the output plugin used for logical decoding (see Section 49.6).

**TEMPORARY**

Specify that this replication slot is a temporary one. Temporary slots are not saved to disk and are automatically dropped on error or when the session has finished.

The following options are supported:

**TWO\_PHASE** [ *boolean* ]

If true, this logical replication slot supports decoding of two-phase commit. With this option, commands related to two-phase commit such as `PREPARE TRANSACTION`, `COMMIT PREPARED` and `ROLLBACK PREPARED` are decoded and transmitted. The transaction will be decoded and transmitted at `PREPARE TRANSACTION` time. The default is false.

**RESERVE\_WAL** [ *boolean* ]

If true, this physical replication slot reserves WAL immediately. Otherwise, WAL is only reserved upon connection from a streaming replication client. The default is false.

**SNAPSHOT** { 'export' | 'use' | 'nothing' }

Decides what to do with the snapshot created during logical slot initialization. 'export', which is the default, will export the snapshot for use in other sessions. This option can't be used inside a transaction. 'use' will use the snapshot for the current transaction executing the command. This option must be used in a transaction, and `CREATE_REPLICATION_SLOT` must be the first command run in that transaction. Finally, 'nothing' will just use the snapshot for logical decoding as normal but won't do anything else with it.

In response to this command, the server will send a one-row result set containing the following fields:

**slot\_name**(text)

The name of the newly-created replication slot.

**consistent\_point**(text)

The WAL location at which the slot became consistent. This is the earliest location from which streaming can start on this replication slot.

**snapshot\_name**(text)

The identifier of the snapshot exported by the command. The snapshot is valid until a new command is executed on this connection or the replication connection is closed. Null if the created slot is physical.

**output\_plugin**(text)

The name of the output plugin used by the newly-created replication slot. Null if the created slot is physical.

```
CREATE_REPLICATION_SLOT slot_name [ TEMPORARY ] { PHYSICAL [ RESERVE_WAL ] |  
LOGICAL output_plugin [ EXPORT_SNAPSHOT | NOEXPORT_SNAPSHOT | USE_SNAPSHOT  
| TWO_PHASE ] }
```

For compatibility with older releases, this alternative syntax for the `CREATE_REPLICATION_SLOT` command is still supported.

**READ\_REPLICATION\_SLOT** *slot\_name*

Read some information associated with a replication slot. Returns a tuple with NULL values if the replication slot does not exist. This command is currently only supported for physical replication slots.

In response to this command, the server will return a one-row result set, containing the following fields:

`slot_type` (text)

The replication slot's type, either `physical` or `NULL`.

`restart_lsn` (text)

The replication slot's `restart_lsn`.

`restart_tli` (int8)

The timeline ID associated with `restart_lsn`, following the current timeline history.

`START_REPLICATION [ SLOT slot_name ] [ PHYSICAL ] XXX/XXX [ TIMELINE tli ]`

Instructs server to start streaming WAL, starting at WAL location `XXX/XXX`. If `TIMELINE` option is specified, streaming starts on timeline `tli`; otherwise, the server's current timeline is selected. The server can reply with an error, for example if the requested section of WAL has already been recycled. On success, the server responds with a `CopyBothResponse` message, and then starts to stream WAL to the frontend.

If a slot's name is provided via `slot_name`, it will be updated as replication progresses so that the server knows which WAL segments, and if `hot_standby_feedback` is on which transactions, are still needed by the standby.

If the client requests a timeline that's not the latest but is part of the history of the server, the server will stream all the WAL on that timeline starting from the requested start point up to the point where the server switched to another timeline. If the client requests streaming at exactly the end of an old timeline, the server skips `COPY` mode entirely.

After streaming all the WAL on a timeline that is not the latest one, the server will end streaming by exiting the `COPY` mode. When the client acknowledges this by also exiting `COPY` mode, the server sends a result set with one row and two columns, indicating the next timeline in this server's history. The first column is the next timeline's ID (type `int8`), and the second column is the WAL location where the switch happened (type `text`). Usually, the switch position is the end of the WAL that was streamed, but there are corner cases where the server can send some WAL from the old timeline that it has not itself replayed before promoting. Finally, the server sends two `CommandComplete` messages (one that ends the `CopyData` and the other ends the `START_REPLICATION` itself), and is ready to accept a new command.

WAL data is sent as a series of `CopyData` messages. (This allows other information to be intermixed; in particular the server can send an `ErrorResponse` message if it encounters a failure after beginning to stream.) The payload of each `CopyData` message from server to the client contains a message of one of the following formats:

`XLogData` (B)

`Byte1('w')`

Identifies the message as WAL data.

`Int64`

The starting point of the WAL data in this message.

`Int64`

The current end of WAL on the server.



Int64

The server's system clock at the time of transmission, as microseconds since midnight on 2000-01-01.

Byte $n$

A section of the WAL data stream.

A single WAL record is never split across two XLogData messages. When a WAL record crosses a WAL page boundary, and is therefore already split using continuation records, it can be split at the page boundary. In other words, the first main WAL record and its continuation records can be sent in different XLogData messages.

Primary keepalive message (B)

Byte1('k')

Identifies the message as a sender keepalive.

Int64

The current end of WAL on the server.

Int64

The server's system clock at the time of transmission, as microseconds since midnight on 2000-01-01.

Byte1

1 means that the client should reply to this message as soon as possible, to avoid a timeout disconnect. 0 otherwise.

The receiving process can send replies back to the sender at any time, using one of the following message formats (also in the payload of a CopyData message):

Standby status update (F)

Byte1('r')

Identifies the message as a receiver status update.

Int64

The location of the last WAL byte + 1 received and written to disk in the standby.

Int64

The location of the last WAL byte + 1 flushed to disk in the standby.

Int64

The location of the last WAL byte + 1 applied in the standby.

Int64

The client's system clock at the time of transmission, as microseconds since midnight on 2000-01-01.

Byte1

If 1, the client requests the server to reply to this message immediately. This can be used to ping the server, to test if the connection is still healthy.

## Hot standby feedback message (F)

Byte1('h')

Identifies the message as a hot standby feedback message.

Int64

The client's system clock at the time of transmission, as microseconds since midnight on 2000-01-01.

Int32

The standby's current global xmin, excluding the catalog xmin from any replication slots. If both this value and the following catalog xmin are 0 this is treated as a notification that hot standby feedback will no longer be sent on this connection. Later non-zero messages may reinstate the feedback mechanism.

Int32

The epoch of the global xmin xid on the standby.

Int32

The lowest catalog xmin of any replication slots on the standby. Set to 0 if no catalog xmin exists on the standby or if hot standby feedback is being disabled.

Int32

The epoch of the catalog xmin xid on the standby.

`START_REPLICATION SLOT slot_name LOGICAL XXX/XXX [ ( option_name [ option_value ] [, ...] ) ]`

Instructs server to start streaming WAL for logical replication, starting at either WAL location `XXX/XXX` or the slot's `confirmed_flush_lsn` (see Section 54.19), whichever is greater. This behavior makes it easier for clients to avoid updating their local LSN status when there is no data to process. However, starting at a different LSN than requested might not catch certain kinds of client errors; so the client may wish to check that `confirmed_flush_lsn` matches its expectations before issuing `START_REPLICATION`.

The server can reply with an error, for example if the slot does not exist. On success, the server responds with a `CopyBothResponse` message, and then starts to stream WAL to the frontend.

The messages inside the `CopyBothResponse` messages are of the same format documented for `START_REPLICATION . . . PHYSICAL`, including two `CommandComplete` messages.

The output plugin associated with the selected slot is used to process the output for streaming.

`SLOT slot_name`

The name of the slot to stream changes from. This parameter is required, and must correspond to an existing logical replication slot created with `CREATE_REPLICATION_SLOT` in `LOGICAL` mode.

`XXX/XXX`

The WAL location to begin streaming at.

`option_name`

The name of an option passed to the slot's logical decoding output plugin. See Section 55.5 for options that are accepted by the standard (`pgoutput`) plugin.

*option\_value*

Optional value, in the form of a string constant, associated with the specified option.

`DROP_REPLICATION_SLOT slot_name [ WAIT ]`

Drops a replication slot, freeing any reserved server-side resources. If the slot is a logical slot that was created in a database other than the database the walsender is connected to, this command fails.

*slot\_name*

The name of the slot to drop.

`WAIT`

This option causes the command to wait if the slot is active until it becomes inactive, instead of the default behavior of raising an error.

`BASE_BACKUP [ ( option [, ...] ) ]`

Instructs the server to start streaming a base backup. The system will automatically be put in backup mode before the backup is started, and taken out of it when the backup is complete. The following options are accepted:

`LABEL 'label'`

Sets the label of the backup. If none is specified, a backup label of `base backup` will be used. The quoting rules for the label are the same as a standard SQL string with `standard_conforming_strings` turned on.

`TARGET 'target'`

Tells the server where to send the backup. If the target is `client`, which is the default, the backup data is sent to the client. If it is `server`, the backup data is written to the server at the pathname specified by the `TARGET_DETAIL` option. If it is `blackhole`, the backup data is not sent anywhere; it is simply discarded.

The `server` target requires superuser privilege or being granted the `pg_write_server_files` role.

`TARGET_DETAIL 'detail'`

Provides additional information about the backup target.

Currently, this option can only be used when the backup target is `server`. It specifies the server directory to which the backup should be written.

`PROGRESS [ boolean ]`

If set to `true`, request information required to generate a progress report. This will send back an approximate size in the header of each tablespace, which can be used to calculate how far along the stream is done. This is calculated by enumerating all the file sizes once before the transfer is even started, and might as such have a negative impact on the performance. In particular, it might take longer before the first data is streamed. Since the database files can change during the backup, the size is only approximate and might both grow and shrink between the time of approximation and the sending of the actual files. The default is `false`.

`CHECKPOINT { 'fast' | 'spread' }`

Sets the type of checkpoint to be performed at the beginning of the base backup. The default is `spread`.

WAL [ *boolean* ]

If set to true, include the necessary WAL segments in the backup. This will include all the files between start and stop backup in the `pg_wal` directory of the base directory tar file. The default is false.

WAIT [ *boolean* ]

If set to true, the backup will wait until the last required WAL segment has been archived, or emit a warning if WAL archiving is not enabled. If false, the backup will neither wait nor warn, leaving the client responsible for ensuring the required log is available. The default is true.

COMPRESSION '*method*'

Instructs the server to compress the backup using the specified method. Currently, the supported methods are `gzip`, `lz4`, and `zstd`.

COMPRESSION\_DETAIL *detail*

Specifies details for the chosen compression method. This should only be used in conjunction with the COMPRESSION option. If the value is an integer, it specifies the compression level. Otherwise, it should be a comma-separated list of items, each of the form *keyword* or *keyword=value*. Currently, the supported keywords are `level`, `long` and `workers`.

The `level` keyword sets the compression level. For `gzip` the compression level should be an integer between 1 and 9 (default `Z_DEFAULT_COMPRESSION` or `-1`), for `lz4` an integer between 1 and 12 (default 0 for fast compression mode), and for `zstd` an integer between `ZSTD_minCLevel()` (usually `-131072`) and `ZSTD_maxCLevel()` (usually `22`), (default `ZSTD_CLEVEL_DEFAULT` or `3`).

The `long` keyword enables long-distance matching mode, for improved compression ratio, at the expense of higher memory use. Long-distance mode is supported only for `zstd`.

The `workers` keyword sets the number of threads that should be used for parallel compression. Parallel compression is supported only for `zstd`.

MAX\_RATE *rate*

Limit (throttle) the maximum amount of data transferred from server to client per unit of time. The expected unit is kilobytes per second. If this option is specified, the value must either be equal to zero or it must fall within the range from 32 kB through 1 GB (inclusive). If zero is passed or the option is not specified, no restriction is imposed on the transfer.

TABLESPACE\_MAP [ *boolean* ]

If true, include information about symbolic links present in the directory `pg_tblspc` in a file named `tablespace_map`. The tablespace map file includes each symbolic link name as it exists in the directory `pg_tblspc/` and the full path of that symbolic link. The default is false.

VERIFY\_CHECKSUMS [ *boolean* ]

If true, checksums are verified during a base backup if they are enabled. If false, this is skipped. The default is true.

MANIFEST *manifest\_option*

When this option is specified with a value of `yes` or `force-encode`, a backup manifest is created and sent along with the backup. The manifest is a list of every file present in the backup with the exception of any WAL files that may be included. It also stores the size, last modification time, and optionally a checksum for each file. A value of `force-encode` forces all filenames to be hex-encoded; otherwise, this type of encoding is performed only for

files whose names are non-UTF8 octet sequences. `force-encode` is intended primarily for testing purposes, to be sure that clients which read the backup manifest can handle this case. For compatibility with previous releases, the default is `MANIFEST 'no'`.

`MANIFEST_CHECKSUMS checksum_algorithm`

Specifies the checksum algorithm that should be applied to each file included in the backup manifest. Currently, the available algorithms are `NONE`, `CRC32C`, `SHA224`, `SHA256`, `SHA384`, and `SHA512`. The default is `CRC32C`.

When the backup is started, the server will first send two ordinary result sets, followed by one or more `CopyOutResponse` results.

The first ordinary result set contains the starting position of the backup, in a single row with two columns. The first column contains the start position given in `XLogRecPtr` format, and the second column contains the corresponding timeline ID.

The second ordinary result set has one row for each tablespace. The fields in this row are:

`spcoid(oid)`

The OID of the tablespace, or null if it's the base directory.

`spclocation(text)`

The full path of the tablespace directory, or null if it's the base directory.

`size(int8)`

The approximate size of the tablespace, in kilobytes (1024 bytes), if progress report has been requested; otherwise it's null.

After the second regular result set, a `CopyOutResponse` will be sent. The payload of each `Copy-Data` message will contain a message in one of the following formats:

`new archive(B)`

`Byte1('n')`

Identifies the message as indicating the start of a new archive. There will be one archive for the main data directory and one for each additional tablespace; each will use tar format (following the “ustar interchange format” specified in the POSIX 1003.1-2008 standard).

`String`

The file name for this archive.

`String`

For the main data directory, an empty string. For other tablespaces, the full path to the directory from which this archive was created.

`manifest(B)`

`Byte1('m')`

Identifies the message as indicating the start of the backup manifest.

`archive or manifest data(B)`

`Byte1('d')`

Identifies the message as containing archive or manifest data.

Byte*n*

Data bytes.

progress report (B)

Byte1('p')

Identifies the message as a progress report.

Int64

The number of bytes from the current tablespace for which processing has been completed.

After the CopyOutResponse, or all such responses, have been sent, a final ordinary result set will be sent, containing the WAL end position of the backup, in the same format as the start position.

The tar archive for the data directory and each tablespace will contain all files in the directories, regardless of whether they are PostgreSQL files or other files added to the same directory. The only excluded files are:

- `postmaster.pid`
- `postmaster.opts`
- `pg_internal.init` (found in multiple directories)
- Various temporary files and directories created during the operation of the PostgreSQL server, such as any file or directory beginning with `pgsql_tmp` and temporary relations.
- Unlogged relations, except for the init fork which is required to recreate the (empty) unlogged relation on recovery.
- `pg_wal`, including subdirectories. If the backup is run with WAL files included, a synthesized version of `pg_wal` will be included, but it will only contain the files necessary for the backup to work, not the rest of the contents.
- `pg_dynshmem`, `pg_notify`, `pg_replslot`, `pg_serial`, `pg_snapshots`, `pg_stat_tmp`, and `pg_subtrans` are copied as empty directories (even if they are symbolic links).
- Files other than regular files and directories, such as symbolic links (other than for the directories listed above) and special device files, are skipped. (Symbolic links in `pg_tblspc` are maintained.)

Owner, group, and file mode are set if the underlying file system on the server supports it.

## 55.5. Logical Streaming Replication Protocol

This section describes the logical replication protocol, which is the message flow started by the `START_REPLICATION SLOT slot_name LOGICAL` replication command.

The logical streaming replication protocol builds on the primitives of the physical streaming replication protocol.

PostgreSQL logical decoding supports output plugins. `pgoutput` is the standard one used for the built-in logical replication.

### 55.5.1. Logical Streaming Replication Parameters

Using the `START_REPLICATION` command, `pgoutput` accepts the following options:

`proto_version`

Protocol version. Currently versions 1, 2, 3, and 4 are supported. A valid version is required.

Version 2 is supported only for server version 14 and above, and it allows streaming of large in-progress transactions.

Version 3 is supported only for server version 15 and above, and it allows streaming of two-phase commits.

Version 4 is supported only for server version 16 and above, and it allows streams of large in-progress transactions to be applied in parallel.

#### publication\_names

Comma separated list of publication names for which to subscribe (receive changes). The individual publication names are treated as standard objects names and can be quoted the same as needed. At least one publication name is required.

#### binary

Boolean option to use binary transfer mode. Binary mode is faster than the text mode but slightly less robust.

#### messages

Boolean option to enable sending the messages that are written by `pg_logical_emit_message`.

#### streaming

Boolean option to enable streaming of in-progress transactions. It accepts an additional value "parallel" to enable sending extra information with some messages to be used for parallelisation. Minimum protocol version 2 is required to turn it on. Minimum protocol version 4 is required for the "parallel" option.

#### two\_phase

Boolean option to enable two-phase transactions. Minimum protocol version 3 is required to turn it on.

#### origin

Option to send changes by their origin. Possible values are "none" to only send the changes that have no origin associated, or "any" to send the changes regardless of their origin. This can be used to avoid loops (infinite replication of the same data) among replication nodes.

## 55.5.2. Logical Replication Protocol Messages

The individual protocol messages are discussed in the following subsections. Individual messages are described in Section 55.9.

All top-level protocol messages begin with a message type byte. While represented in code as a character, this is a signed byte with no associated encoding.

Since the streaming replication protocol supplies a message length there is no need for top-level protocol messages to embed a length in their header.

## 55.5.3. Logical Replication Protocol Message Flow

With the exception of the `START_REPLICATION` command and the replay progress messages, all information flows only from the backend to the frontend.

The logical replication protocol sends individual transactions one by one. This means that all messages between a pair of Begin and Commit messages belong to the same transaction. Similarly, all messages between a pair of Begin Prepare and Prepare messages belong to the same transaction. It also sends changes of large in-progress transactions between a pair of Stream Start and Stream Stop messages. The last stream of such a transaction contains a Stream Commit or Stream Abort message.

Every sent transaction contains zero or more DML messages (Insert, Update, Delete). In case of a cascaded setup it can also contain Origin messages. The origin message indicates that the transaction originated on different replication node. Since a replication node in the scope of logical replication protocol can be pretty much anything, the only identifier is the origin name. It's downstream's responsibility to handle this as needed (if needed). The Origin message is always sent before any DML messages in the transaction.

Every DML message contains a relation OID, identifying the publisher's relation that was acted on. Before the first DML message for a given relation OID, a Relation message will be sent, describing the schema of that relation. Subsequently, a new Relation message will be sent if the relation's definition has changed since the last Relation message was sent for it. (The protocol assumes that the client is capable of remembering this metadata for as many relations as needed.)

Relation messages identify column types by their OIDs. In the case of a built-in type, it is assumed that the client can look up that type OID locally, so no additional data is needed. For a non-built-in type OID, a Type message will be sent before the Relation message, to provide the type name associated with that OID. Thus, a client that needs to specifically identify the types of relation columns should cache the contents of Type messages, and first consult that cache to see if the type OID is defined there. If not, look up the type OID locally.

## 55.6. Message Data Types

This section describes the base data types used in messages.

$\text{Intn}(i)$

An  $n$ -bit integer in network byte order (most significant byte first). If  $i$  is specified it is the exact value that will appear, otherwise the value is variable. Eg. `Int16`, `Int32(42)`.

$\text{Intn}[k]$

An array of  $k$   $n$ -bit integers, each in network byte order. The array length  $k$  is always determined by an earlier field in the message. Eg. `Int16[M]`.

$\text{String}(s)$

A null-terminated string (C-style string). There is no specific length limitation on strings. If  $s$  is specified it is the exact value that will appear, otherwise the value is variable. Eg. `String`, `String("user")`.

### Note

*There is no predefined limit on the length of a string that can be returned by the backend. Good coding strategy for a frontend is to use an expandable buffer so that anything that fits in memory can be accepted. If that's not feasible, read the full string and discard trailing characters that don't fit into your fixed-size buffer.*

$\text{Byte}(c)$

Exactly  $n$  bytes. If the field width  $n$  is not a constant, it is always determinable from an earlier field in the message. If  $c$  is specified it is the exact value. Eg. `Byte2`, `Byte1('\n')`.

## 55.7. Message Formats

This section describes the detailed format of each message. Each is marked to indicate that it can be sent by a frontend (F), a backend (B), or both (F & B). Notice that although each message includes a



byte count at the beginning, the message format is defined so that the message end can be found without reference to the byte count. This aids validity checking. (The CopyData message is an exception, because it forms part of a data stream; the contents of any individual CopyData message cannot be interpretable on their own.)

#### AuthenticationOk (B)

Byte1('R')

Identifies the message as an authentication request.

Int32(8)

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Int32(0)

Specifies that the authentication was successful.

#### AuthenticationKerberosV5 (B)

Byte1('R')

Identifies the message as an authentication request.

Int32(8)

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Int32(2)

Specifies that Kerberos V5 authentication is required.

#### AuthenticationCleartextPassword (B)

Byte1('R')

Identifies the message as an authentication request.

Int32(8)

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Int32(3)

Specifies that a clear-text password is required.

#### AuthenticationMD5Password (B)

Byte1('R')

Identifies the message as an authentication request.

Int32(12)

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Int32(5)

Specifies that an MD5-encrypted password is required.

Byte4

The salt to use when encrypting the password.

AuthenticationGSS (B)

Byte1('R')

Identifies the message as an authentication request.

Int32(8)

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Int32(7)

Specifies that GSSAPI authentication is required.

AuthenticationGSSContinue (B)

Byte1('R')

Identifies the message as an authentication request.

Int32

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Int32(8)

Specifies that this message contains GSSAPI or SSPI data.

Byten

GSSAPI or SSPI authentication data.

AuthenticationSSPI (B)

Byte1('R')

Identifies the message as an authentication request.

Int32(8)

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Int32(9)

Specifies that SSPI authentication is required.

AuthenticationSASL (B)

Byte1('R')

Identifies the message as an authentication request.

Int32

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Int32(10)

Specifies that SASL authentication is required.

The message body is a list of SASL authentication mechanisms, in the server's order of preference. A zero byte is required as terminator after the last authentication mechanism name. For each mechanism, there is the following:

String

Name of a SASL authentication mechanism.

AuthenticationSASLContinue (B)

Byte1('R')

Identifies the message as an authentication request.

Int32

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Int32(11)

Specifies that this message contains a SASL challenge.

Byten

SASL data, specific to the SASL mechanism being used.

AuthenticationSASLFinal (B)

Byte1('R')

Identifies the message as an authentication request.

Int32

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Int32(12)

Specifies that SASL authentication has completed.

Byten

SASL outcome "additional data", specific to the SASL mechanism being used.

BackendKeyData (B)

Byte1('K')

Identifies the message as cancellation key data. The frontend must save these values if it wishes to be able to issue CancelRequest messages later.

Int32(12)

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Int32

The process ID of this backend.

Int32

The secret key of this backend.

Bind (F)

Byte1('B')

Identifies the message as a Bind command.

Int32

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

String

The name of the destination portal (an empty string selects the unnamed portal).

String

The name of the source prepared statement (an empty string selects the unnamed prepared statement).

Int16

The number of parameter format codes that follow (denoted *C* below). This can be zero to indicate that there are no parameters or that the parameters all use the default format (text); or one, in which case the specified format code is applied to all parameters; or it can equal the actual number of parameters.

Int16[*C*]

The parameter format codes. Each must presently be zero (text) or one (binary).

Int16

The number of parameter values that follow (possibly zero). This must match the number of parameters needed by the query.

Next, the following pair of fields appear for each parameter:

Int32

The length of the parameter value, in bytes (this count does not include itself). Can be zero. As a special case, -1 indicates a NULL parameter value. No value bytes follow in the NULL case.

Byte $n$

The value of the parameter, in the format indicated by the associated format code.  $n$  is the above length.

After the last parameter, the following fields appear:

Int16

The number of result-column format codes that follow (denoted *R* below). This can be zero to indicate that there are no result columns or that the result columns should all use the default format (text); or one, in which case the specified format code is applied to all result columns (if any); or it can equal the actual number of result columns of the query.

Int16[*R*]

The result-column format codes. Each must presently be zero (text) or one (binary).

BindComplete (B)

Byte1('2')

Identifies the message as a Bind-complete indicator.

Int32(4)

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

## CancelRequest (F)

Int32(16)

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Int32(80877102)

The cancel request code. The value is chosen to contain 1 2 3 4 in the most significant 16 bits, and 5 6 7 8 in the least significant 16 bits. (To avoid confusion, this code must not be the same as any protocol version number.)

Int32

The process ID of the target backend.

Int32

The secret key for the target backend.

## Close (F)

Byte1('C')

Identifies the message as a Close command.

Int32

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Byte1

'S' to close a prepared statement; or 'P' to close a portal.

String

The name of the prepared statement or portal to close (an empty string selects the unnamed prepared statement or portal).

## CloseComplete (B)

Byte1('3')

Identifies the message as a Close-complete indicator.

Int32(4)

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

## CommandComplete (B)

Byte1('C')

Identifies the message as a command-completed response.

Int32

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

String

The command tag. This is usually a single word that identifies which SQL command was completed.

For an INSERT command, the tag is INSERT *oid rows*, where *rows* is the number of rows inserted. *oid* used to be the object ID of the inserted row if *rows* was 1 and the target table had OIDs, but OIDs system columns are not supported anymore; therefore *oid* is always 0.

For a DELETE command, the tag is DELETE *rows* where *rows* is the number of rows deleted.

For an UPDATE command, the tag is UPDATE *rows* where *rows* is the number of rows updated.

For a MERGE command, the tag is MERGE *rows* where *rows* is the number of rows inserted, updated, or deleted.

For a SELECT or CREATE TABLE AS command, the tag is SELECT *rows* where *rows* is the number of rows retrieved.

For a MOVE command, the tag is MOVE *rows* where *rows* is the number of rows the cursor's position has been changed by.

For a FETCH command, the tag is FETCH *rows* where *rows* is the number of rows that have been retrieved from the cursor.

For a COPY command, the tag is COPY *rows* where *rows* is the number of rows copied. (Note: the row count appears only in PostgreSQL 8.2 and later.)

#### CopyData (F & B)

Byte1('d')

Identifies the message as COPY data.

Int32

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Byten

Data that forms part of a COPY data stream. Messages sent from the backend will always correspond to single data rows, but messages sent by frontends might divide the data stream arbitrarily.

#### CopyDone (F & B)

Byte1('c')

Identifies the message as a COPY-complete indicator.

Int32(4)

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

#### CopyFail (F)

Byte1('f')

Identifies the message as a COPY-failure indicator.

Int32

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

String

An error message to report as the cause of failure.

CopyInResponse (B)

Byte1('G')

Identifies the message as a Start Copy In response. The frontend must now send copy-in data (if not prepared to do so, send a CopyFail message).

Int32

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Int8

0 indicates the overall COPY format is textual (rows separated by newlines, columns separated by separator characters, etc.). 1 indicates the overall copy format is binary (similar to DataRow format). See COPY for more information.

Int16

The number of columns in the data to be copied (denoted  $N$  below).

Int16[ $N$ ]

The format codes to be used for each column. Each must presently be zero (text) or one (binary). All must be zero if the overall copy format is textual.

CopyOutResponse (B)

Byte1('H')

Identifies the message as a Start Copy Out response. This message will be followed by copy-out data.

Int32

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Int8

0 indicates the overall COPY format is textual (rows separated by newlines, columns separated by separator characters, etc.). 1 indicates the overall copy format is binary (similar to DataRow format). See COPY for more information.

Int16

The number of columns in the data to be copied (denoted  $N$  below).

Int16[ $N$ ]

The format codes to be used for each column. Each must presently be zero (text) or one (binary). All must be zero if the overall copy format is textual.

CopyBothResponse (B)

Byte1('W')

Identifies the message as a Start Copy Both response. This message is used only for Streaming Replication.

Int32

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Int8

0 indicates the overall COPY format is textual (rows separated by newlines, columns separated by separator characters, etc.). 1 indicates the overall copy format is binary (similar to DataRow format). See COPY for more information.

Int16

The number of columns in the data to be copied (denoted  $N$  below).

Int16[ $N$ ]

The format codes to be used for each column. Each must presently be zero (text) or one (binary). All must be zero if the overall copy format is textual.

DataRow (B)

Byte1('D')

Identifies the message as a data row.

Int32

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Int16

The number of column values that follow (possibly zero).

Next, the following pair of fields appear for each column:

Int32

The length of the column value, in bytes (this count does not include itself). Can be zero. As a special case, -1 indicates a NULL column value. No value bytes follow in the NULL case.

Byte $n$

The value of the column, in the format indicated by the associated format code.  $n$  is the above length.

Describe (F)

Byte1('D')

Identifies the message as a Describe command.

Int32

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Byte1

'S' to describe a prepared statement; or 'P' to describe a portal.

String

The name of the prepared statement or portal to describe (an empty string selects the unnamed prepared statement or portal).



**EmptyQueryResponse (B)****Byte1('T')**

Identifies the message as a response to an empty query string. (This substitutes for CommandComplete.)

**Int32(4)**

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

**ErrorResponse (B)****Byte1('E')**

Identifies the message as an error.

**Int32**

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

The message body consists of one or more identified fields, followed by a zero byte as a terminator. Fields can appear in any order. For each field there is the following:

**Byte1**

A code identifying the field type; if zero, this is the message terminator and no string follows. The presently defined field types are listed in Section 55.8. Since more field types might be added in future, frontends should silently ignore fields of unrecognized type.

**String**

The field value.

**Execute (F)****Byte1('E')**

Identifies the message as an Execute command.

**Int32**

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

**String**

The name of the portal to execute (an empty string selects the unnamed portal).

**Int32**

Maximum number of rows to return, if portal contains a query that returns rows (ignored otherwise). Zero denotes “no limit”.

**Flush (F)****Byte1('H')**

Identifies the message as a Flush command.

**Int32(4)**

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

**FunctionCall (F)****Byte1('F')**

Identifies the message as a function call.

**Int32**

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

**Int32**

Specifies the object ID of the function to call.

**Int16**

The number of argument format codes that follow (denoted *C* below). This can be zero to indicate that there are no arguments or that the arguments all use the default format (text); or one, in which case the specified format code is applied to all arguments; or it can equal the actual number of arguments.

**Int16[*C*]**

The argument format codes. Each must presently be zero (text) or one (binary).

**Int16**

Specifies the number of arguments being supplied to the function.

Next, the following pair of fields appear for each argument:

**Int32**

The length of the argument value, in bytes (this count does not include itself). Can be zero. As a special case, -1 indicates a NULL argument value. No value bytes follow in the NULL case.

**Byte $n$** 

The value of the argument, in the format indicated by the associated format code. *n* is the above length.

After the last argument, the following field appears:

**Int16**

The format code for the function result. Must presently be zero (text) or one (binary).

**FunctionCallResponse (B)****Byte1('V')**

Identifies the message as a function call result.

**Int32**

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

**Int32**

The length of the function result value, in bytes (this count does not include itself). Can be zero. As a special case, -1 indicates a NULL function result. No value bytes follow in the NULL case.

Byten

The value of the function result, in the format indicated by the associated format code. *n* is the above length.

GSSENCRequest (F)

Int32(8)

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Int32(80877104)

The GSSAPI Encryption request code. The value is chosen to contain 1234 in the most significant 16 bits, and 5680 in the least significant 16 bits. (To avoid confusion, this code must not be the same as any protocol version number.)

GSSResponse (F)

Byte1('p')

Identifies the message as a GSSAPI or SSPI response. Note that this is also used for SASL and password response messages. The exact message type can be deduced from the context.

Int32

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Byten

GSSAPI/SSPI specific message data.

NegotiateProtocolVersion (B)

Byte1('v')

Identifies the message as a protocol version negotiation message.

Int32

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Int32

Newest minor protocol version supported by the server for the major protocol version requested by the client.

Int32

Number of protocol options not recognized by the server.

Then, for protocol option not recognized by the server, there is the following:

String

The option name.

NoData (B)

Byte1('n')

Identifies the message as a no-data indicator.

Int32(4)

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

NoticeResponse (B)

Byte1('N')

Identifies the message as a notice.

Int32

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

The message body consists of one or more identified fields, followed by a zero byte as a terminator. Fields can appear in any order. For each field there is the following:

Byte1

A code identifying the field type; if zero, this is the message terminator and no string follows. The presently defined field types are listed in Section 55.8. Since more field types might be added in future, frontends should silently ignore fields of unrecognized type.

String

The field value.

NotificationResponse (B)

Byte1('A')

Identifies the message as a notification response.

Int32

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Int32

The process ID of the notifying backend process.

String

The name of the channel that the notify has been raised on.

String

The “payload” string passed from the notifying process.

ParameterDescription (B)

Byte1('t')

Identifies the message as a parameter description.

Int32

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Int16

The number of parameters used by the statement (can be zero).

Then, for each parameter, there is the following:

Int32

Specifies the object ID of the parameter data type.

ParameterStatus (B)

Byte1('S')

Identifies the message as a run-time parameter status report.

Int32

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

String

The name of the run-time parameter being reported.

String

The current value of the parameter.

Parse (F)

Byte1('P')

Identifies the message as a Parse command.

Int32

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

String

The name of the destination prepared statement (an empty string selects the unnamed prepared statement).

String

The query string to be parsed.

Int16

The number of parameter data types specified (can be zero). Note that this is not an indication of the number of parameters that might appear in the query string, only the number that the frontend wants to prespecify types for.

Then, for each parameter, there is the following:

Int32

Specifies the object ID of the parameter data type. Placing a zero here is equivalent to leaving the type unspecified.

ParseComplete (B)

Byte1('I')

Identifies the message as a Parse-complete indicator.

Int32(4)

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

**PasswordMessage (F)**

Byte1('p')

Identifies the message as a password response. Note that this is also used for GSSAPI, SSPI and SASL response messages. The exact message type can be deduced from the context.

Int32

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

String

The password (encrypted, if requested).

**PortalSuspended (B)**

Byte1('s')

Identifies the message as a portal-suspended indicator. Note this only appears if an Execute message's row-count limit was reached.

Int32(4)

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

**Query (F)**

Byte1('Q')

Identifies the message as a simple query.

Int32

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

String

The query string itself.

**ReadyForQuery (B)**

Byte1('Z')

Identifies the message type. ReadyForQuery is sent whenever the backend is ready for a new query cycle.

Int32(5)

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Byte1

Current backend transaction status indicator. Possible values are 'I' if idle (not in a transaction block); 'T' if in a transaction block; or 'E' if in a failed transaction block (queries will be rejected until block is ended).

**RowDescription (B)**

Byte1('T')

Identifies the message as a row description.

Int32

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Int16

Specifies the number of fields in a row (can be zero).

Then, for each field, there is the following:

String

The field name.

Int32

If the field can be identified as a column of a specific table, the object ID of the table; otherwise zero.

Int16

If the field can be identified as a column of a specific table, the attribute number of the column; otherwise zero.

Int32

The object ID of the field's data type.

Int16

The data type size (see `pg_type.typelen`). Note that negative values denote variable-width types.

Int32

The type modifier (see `pg_attribute.atttypmod`). The meaning of the modifier is type-specific.

Int16

The format code being used for the field. Currently will be zero (text) or one (binary). In a `RowDescription` returned from the statement variant of `Describe`, the format code is not yet known and will always be zero.

SASLInitialResponse (F)

Byte1('p')

Identifies the message as an initial SASL response. Note that this is also used for GSSAPI, SSPI and password response messages. The exact message type is deduced from the context.

Int32

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

String

Name of the SASL authentication mechanism that the client selected.

Int32

Length of SASL mechanism specific "Initial Client Response" that follows, or -1 if there is no Initial Response.

Byten

SASL mechanism specific "Initial Response".

SASLResponse (F)

Byte1('p')

Identifies the message as a SASL response. Note that this is also used for GSSAPI, SSPI and password response messages. The exact message type can be deduced from the context.

Int32

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Byten

SASL mechanism specific message data.

SSLRequest (F)

Int32(8)

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Int32(80877103)

The SSL request code. The value is chosen to contain 1234 in the most significant 16 bits, and 5679 in the least significant 16 bits. (To avoid confusion, this code must not be the same as any protocol version number.)

StartupMessage (F)

Int32

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

Int32(196608)

The protocol version number. The most significant 16 bits are the major version number (3 for the protocol described here). The least significant 16 bits are the minor version number (0 for the protocol described here).

The protocol version number is followed by one or more pairs of parameter name and value strings. A zero byte is required as a terminator after the last name/value pair. Parameters can appear in any order. `user` is required, others are optional. Each parameter is specified as:

String

The parameter name. Currently recognized names are:

`user`

The database user name to connect as. Required; there is no default.

`database`

The database to connect to. Defaults to the user name.

`options`

Command-line arguments for the backend. (This is deprecated in favor of setting individual run-time parameters.) Spaces within this string are considered to separate arguments, unless escaped with a backslash (\); write \\ to represent a literal backslash.



### replication

Used to connect in streaming replication mode, where a small set of replication commands can be issued instead of SQL statements. Value can be `true`, `false`, or `database`, and the default is `false`. See Section 55.4 for details.

In addition to the above, other parameters may be listed. Parameter names beginning with `_pq_` are reserved for use as protocol extensions, while others are treated as run-time parameters to be set at backend start time. Such settings will be applied during backend start (after parsing the command-line arguments if any) and will act as session defaults.

### String

The parameter value.

### Sync (F)

#### Byte1('S')

Identifies the message as a Sync command.

#### Int32(4)

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

### Terminate (F)

#### Byte1('X')

Identifies the message as a termination.

#### Int32(4)

Length of message contents in bytes, including self.

## 55.8. Error and Notice Message Fields

This section describes the fields that can appear in `ErrorResponse` and `NoticeResponse` messages. Each field type has a single-byte identification token. Note that any given field type should appear at most once per message.

### S

Severity: the field contents are `ERROR`, `FATAL`, or `PANIC` (in an error message), or `WARNING`, `NOTICE`, `DEBUG`, `INFO`, or `LOG` (in a notice message), or a localized translation of one of these. Always present.

### V

Severity: the field contents are `ERROR`, `FATAL`, or `PANIC` (in an error message), or `WARNING`, `NOTICE`, `DEBUG`, `INFO`, or `LOG` (in a notice message). This is identical to the `S` field except that the contents are never localized. This is present only in messages generated by PostgreSQL versions 9.6 and later.

### C

Code: the `SQLSTATE` code for the error (see Appendix A). Not localizable. Always present.

### M

Message: the primary human-readable error message. This should be accurate but terse (typically one line). Always present.

D

Detail: an optional secondary error message carrying more detail about the problem. Might run to multiple lines.

H

Hint: an optional suggestion what to do about the problem. This is intended to differ from Detail in that it offers advice (potentially inappropriate) rather than hard facts. Might run to multiple lines.

P

Position: the field value is a decimal ASCII integer, indicating an error cursor position as an index into the original query string. The first character has index 1, and positions are measured in characters not bytes.

p

Internal position: this is defined the same as the P field, but it is used when the cursor position refers to an internally generated command rather than the one submitted by the client. The q field will always appear when this field appears.

q

Internal query: the text of a failed internally-generated command. This could be, for example, an SQL query issued by a PL/pgSQL function.

W

Where: an indication of the context in which the error occurred. Presently this includes a call stack traceback of active procedural language functions and internally-generated queries. The trace is one entry per line, most recent first.

s

Schema name: if the error was associated with a specific database object, the name of the schema containing that object, if any.

t

Table name: if the error was associated with a specific table, the name of the table. (Refer to the schema name field for the name of the table's schema.)

c

Column name: if the error was associated with a specific table column, the name of the column. (Refer to the schema and table name fields to identify the table.)

d

Data type name: if the error was associated with a specific data type, the name of the data type. (Refer to the schema name field for the name of the data type's schema.)

n

Constraint name: if the error was associated with a specific constraint, the name of the constraint. Refer to fields listed above for the associated table or domain. (For this purpose, indexes are treated as constraints, even if they weren't created with constraint syntax.)

F

File: the file name of the source-code location where the error was reported.

L

Line: the line number of the source-code location where the error was reported.

R

Routine: the name of the source-code routine reporting the error.

### Note

The fields for schema name, table name, column name, data type name, and constraint name are supplied only for a limited number of error types; see Appendix A. Frontends should not assume that the presence of any of these fields guarantees the presence of another field. Core error sources observe the interrelationships noted above, but user-defined functions may use these fields in other ways. In the same vein, clients should not assume that these fields denote contemporary objects in the current database.

The client is responsible for formatting displayed information to meet its needs; in particular it should break long lines as needed. Newline characters appearing in the error message fields should be treated as paragraph breaks, not line breaks.

## 55.9. Logical Replication Message Formats

This section describes the detailed format of each logical replication message. These messages are either returned by the replication slot SQL interface or are sent by a walsender. In the case of a walsender, they are encapsulated inside replication protocol WAL messages as described in Section 55.4, and generally obey the same message flow as physical replication.

Begin

Byte1('B')

Identifies the message as a begin message.

Int64 (XLogRecPtr)

The final LSN of the transaction.

Int64 (TimestampTz)

Commit timestamp of the transaction. The value is in number of microseconds since PostgreSQL epoch (2000-01-01).

Int32 (TransactionId)

Xid of the transaction.

Message

Byte1('M')

Identifies the message as a logical decoding message.

Int32 (TransactionId)

Xid of the transaction (only present for streamed transactions). This field is available since protocol version 2.

Int8

Flags; Either 0 for no flags or 1 if the logical decoding message is transactional.

Int64 (XLogRecPtr)

The LSN of the logical decoding message.

String

The prefix of the logical decoding message.

Int32

Length of the content.

Byten

The content of the logical decoding message.

Commit

Byte1('C')

Identifies the message as a commit message.

Int8(0)

Flags; currently unused.

Int64 (XLogRecPtr)

The LSN of the commit.

Int64 (XLogRecPtr)

The end LSN of the transaction.

Int64 (TimestampTz)

Commit timestamp of the transaction. The value is in number of microseconds since PostgreSQL epoch (2000-01-01).

Origin

Byte1('O')

Identifies the message as an origin message.

Int64 (XLogRecPtr)

The LSN of the commit on the origin server.

String

Name of the origin.

Note that there can be multiple Origin messages inside a single transaction.

Relation

Byte1('R')

Identifies the message as a relation message.

Int32 (TransactionId)

Xid of the transaction (only present for streamed transactions). This field is available since protocol version 2.

Int32 (Oid)

OID of the relation.

String

Namespace (empty string for `pg_catalog`).

String

Relation name.

Int8

Replica identity setting for the relation (same as `relreplident` in `pg_class`).

Int16

Number of columns.

Next, the following message part appears for each column included in the publication (except generated columns):

Int8

Flags for the column. Currently can be either 0 for no flags or 1 which marks the column as part of the key.

String

Name of the column.

Int32 (Oid)

OID of the column's data type.

Int32

Type modifier of the column (`atttypmod`).

Type

Byte1('Y')

Identifies the message as a type message.

Int32 (TransactionId)

Xid of the transaction (only present for streamed transactions). This field is available since protocol version 2.

Int32 (Oid)

OID of the data type.

String

Namespace (empty string for `pg_catalog`).

**String**

Name of the data type.

**Insert****Byte1('I')**

Identifies the message as an insert message.

**Int32 (TransactionId)**

Xid of the transaction (only present for streamed transactions). This field is available since protocol version 2.

**Int32 (Oid)**

OID of the relation corresponding to the ID in the relation message.

**Byte1('N')**

Identifies the following TupleData message as a new tuple.

**TupleData**

TupleData message part representing the contents of new tuple.

**Update****Byte1('U')**

Identifies the message as an update message.

**Int32 (TransactionId)**

Xid of the transaction (only present for streamed transactions). This field is available since protocol version 2.

**Int32 (Oid)**

OID of the relation corresponding to the ID in the relation message.

**Byte1('K')**

Identifies the following TupleData submessage as a key. This field is optional and is only present if the update changed data in any of the column(s) that are part of the REPLICA IDENTITY index.

**Byte1('O')**

Identifies the following TupleData submessage as an old tuple. This field is optional and is only present if table in which the update happened has REPLICA IDENTITY set to FULL.

**TupleData**

TupleData message part representing the contents of the old tuple or primary key. Only present if the previous 'O' or 'K' part is present.

**Byte1('N')**

Identifies the following TupleData message as a new tuple.

**TupleData**

TupleData message part representing the contents of a new tuple.

The Update message may contain either a 'K' message part or an 'O' message part or neither of them, but never both of them.

#### Delete

Byte1('D')

Identifies the message as a delete message.

Int32 (TransactionId)

Xid of the transaction (only present for streamed transactions). This field is available since protocol version 2.

Int32 (Oid)

OID of the relation corresponding to the ID in the relation message.

Byte1('K')

Identifies the following TupleData submessage as a key. This field is present if the table in which the delete has happened uses an index as REPLICA IDENTITY.

Byte1('O')

Identifies the following TupleData message as an old tuple. This field is present if the table in which the delete happened has REPLICA IDENTITY set to FULL.

TupleData

TupleData message part representing the contents of the old tuple or primary key, depending on the previous field.

The Delete message may contain either a 'K' message part or an 'O' message part, but never both of them.

#### Truncate

Byte1('T')

Identifies the message as a truncate message.

Int32 (TransactionId)

Xid of the transaction (only present for streamed transactions). This field is available since protocol version 2.

Int32

Number of relations

Int8

Option bits for TRUNCATE: 1 for CASCADE, 2 for RESTART IDENTITY

Int32 (Oid)

OID of the relation corresponding to the ID in the relation message. This field is repeated for each relation.

The following messages (Stream Start, Stream Stop, Stream Commit, and Stream Abort) are available since protocol version 2.

**Stream Start****Byte1('S')**

Identifies the message as a stream start message.

**Int32 (TransactionId)**

Xid of the transaction.

**Int8**

A value of 1 indicates this is the first stream segment for this XID, 0 for any other stream segment.

**Stream Stop****Byte1('E')**

Identifies the message as a stream stop message.

**Stream Commit****Byte1('c')**

Identifies the message as a stream commit message.

**Int32 (TransactionId)**

Xid of the transaction.

**Int8(0)**

Flags; currently unused.

**Int64 (XLogRecPtr)**

The LSN of the commit.

**Int64 (XLogRecPtr)**

The end LSN of the transaction.

**Int64 (TimestampTz)**

Commit timestamp of the transaction. The value is in number of microseconds since PostgreSQL epoch (2000-01-01).

**Stream Abort****Byte1('A')**

Identifies the message as a stream abort message.

**Int32 (TransactionId)**

Xid of the transaction.

**Int32 (TransactionId)**

Xid of the subtransaction (will be same as xid of the transaction for top-level transactions).

**Int64 (XLogRecPtr)**

The LSN of the abort. This field is available since protocol version 4.



Int64 (TimestampTz)

Abort timestamp of the transaction. The value is in number of microseconds since PostgreSQL epoch (2000-01-01). This field is available since protocol version 4.

The following messages (Begin Prepare, Prepare, Commit Prepared, Rollback Prepared, Stream Prepare) are available since protocol version 3.

Begin Prepare

Byte1('b')

Identifies the message as the beginning of a prepared transaction message.

Int64 (XLogRecPtr)

The LSN of the prepare.

Int64 (XLogRecPtr)

The end LSN of the prepared transaction.

Int64 (TimestampTz)

Prepare timestamp of the transaction. The value is in number of microseconds since PostgreSQL epoch (2000-01-01).

Int32 (TransactionId)

Xid of the transaction.

String

The user defined GID of the prepared transaction.

Prepare

Byte1('P')

Identifies the message as a prepared transaction message.

Int8(0)

Flags; currently unused.

Int64 (XLogRecPtr)

The LSN of the prepare.

Int64 (XLogRecPtr)

The end LSN of the prepared transaction.

Int64 (TimestampTz)

Prepare timestamp of the transaction. The value is in number of microseconds since PostgreSQL epoch (2000-01-01).

Int32 (TransactionId)

Xid of the transaction.

String

The user defined GID of the prepared transaction.

**Commit Prepared****Byte1('K')**

Identifies the message as the commit of a prepared transaction message.

**Int8(0)**

Flags; currently unused.

**Int64 (XLogRecPtr)**

The LSN of the commit of the prepared transaction.

**Int64 (XLogRecPtr)**

The end LSN of the commit of the prepared transaction.

**Int64 (TimestampTz)**

Commit timestamp of the transaction. The value is in number of microseconds since PostgreSQL epoch (2000-01-01).

**Int32 (TransactionId)**

Xid of the transaction.

**String**

The user defined GID of the prepared transaction.

**Rollback Prepared****Byte1('r')**

Identifies the message as the rollback of a prepared transaction message.

**Int8(0)**

Flags; currently unused.

**Int64 (XLogRecPtr)**

The end LSN of the prepared transaction.

**Int64 (XLogRecPtr)**

The end LSN of the rollback of the prepared transaction.

**Int64 (TimestampTz)**

Prepare timestamp of the transaction. The value is in number of microseconds since PostgreSQL epoch (2000-01-01).

**Int64 (TimestampTz)**

Rollback timestamp of the transaction. The value is in number of microseconds since PostgreSQL epoch (2000-01-01).

**Int32 (TransactionId)**

Xid of the transaction.

String

The user defined GID of the prepared transaction.

Stream Prepare

Byte1('p')

Identifies the message as a stream prepared transaction message.

Int8(0)

Flags; currently unused.

Int64 (XLogRecPtr)

The LSN of the prepare.

Int64 (XLogRecPtr)

The end LSN of the prepared transaction.

Int64 (TimestampTz)

Prepare timestamp of the transaction. The value is in number of microseconds since PostgreSQL epoch (2000-01-01).

Int32 (TransactionId)

Xid of the transaction.

String

The user defined GID of the prepared transaction.

The following message parts are shared by the above messages.

TupleData

Int16

Number of columns.

Next, one of the following submessages appears for each column (except generated columns):

Byte1('n')

Identifies the data as NULL value.

Or

Byte1('u')

Identifies unchanged TOASTed value (the actual value is not sent).

Or

Byte1('t')

Identifies the data as text formatted value.

Or

Byte1('b')

Identifies the data as binary formatted value.

Int32

Length of the column value.

Byten

The value of the column, either in binary or in text format. (As specified in the preceding format byte). *n* is the above length.

## 55.10. Summary of Changes since Protocol 2.0

This section provides a quick checklist of changes, for the benefit of developers trying to update existing client libraries to protocol 3.0.

The initial startup packet uses a flexible list-of-strings format instead of a fixed format. Notice that session default values for run-time parameters can now be specified directly in the startup packet. (Actually, you could do that before using the `options` field, but given the limited width of `options` and the lack of any way to quote whitespace in the values, it wasn't a very safe technique.)

All messages now have a length count immediately following the message type byte (except for startup packets, which have no type byte). Also note that `PasswordMessage` now has a type byte.

`ErrorResponse` and `NoticeResponse` ('E' and 'N') messages now contain multiple fields, from which the client code can assemble an error message of the desired level of verbosity. Note that individual fields will typically not end with a newline, whereas the single string sent in the older protocol always did.

The `ReadyForQuery` ('Z') message includes a transaction status indicator.

The distinction between `BinaryRow` and `DataRow` message types is gone; the single `DataRow` message type serves for returning data in all formats. Note that the layout of `DataRow` has changed to make it easier to parse. Also, the representation of binary values has changed: it is no longer directly tied to the server's internal representation.

There is a new “extended query” sub-protocol, which adds the frontend message types `Parse`, `Bind`, `Execute`, `Describe`, `Close`, `Flush`, and `Sync`, and the backend message types `ParseComplete`, `BindComplete`, `PortalSuspended`, `ParameterDescription`, `NoData`, and `CloseComplete`. Existing clients do not have to concern themselves with this sub-protocol, but making use of it might allow improvements in performance or functionality.

`COPY` data is now encapsulated into `CopyData` and `CopyDone` messages. There is a well-defined way to recover from errors during `COPY`. The special “\.” last line is not needed anymore, and is not sent during `COPY OUT`. (It is still recognized as a terminator during `COPY IN`, but its use is deprecated and will eventually be removed.) Binary `COPY` is supported. The `CopyInResponse` and `CopyOutResponse` messages include fields indicating the number of columns and the format of each column.

The layout of `FunctionCall` and `FunctionCallResponse` messages has changed. `FunctionCall` can now support passing `NULL` arguments to functions. It also can handle passing parameters and retrieving results in either text or binary format. There is no longer any reason to consider `FunctionCall` a potential security hole, since it does not offer direct access to internal server data representations.

The backend sends `ParameterStatus` ('S') messages during connection startup for all parameters it considers interesting to the client library. Subsequently, a `ParameterStatus` message is sent whenever the active value changes for any of these parameters.

The RowDescription ('T') message carries new table OID and column number fields for each column of the described row. It also shows the format code for each column.

The CursorResponse ('P') message is no longer generated by the backend.

The NotificationResponse ('A') message has an additional string field, which can carry a “payload” string passed from the NOTIFY event sender.

The EmptyQueryResponse ('I') message used to include an empty string parameter; this has been removed.

---

# Chapter 56. PostgreSQL Coding Conventions

## 56.1. Formatting

Source code formatting uses 4 column tab spacing, with tabs preserved (i.e., tabs are not expanded to spaces). Each logical indentation level is one additional tab stop.

Layout rules (brace positioning, etc.) follow BSD conventions. In particular, curly braces for the controlled blocks of `if`, `while`, `switch`, etc. go on their own lines.

Limit line lengths so that the code is readable in an 80-column window. (This doesn't mean that you must never go past 80 columns. For instance, breaking a long error message string in arbitrary places just to keep the code within 80 columns is probably not a net gain in readability.)

To maintain a consistent coding style, do not use C++ style comments (`//` comments). `pgindent` will replace them with `/* ... */`.

The preferred style for multi-line comment blocks is

```
/*
 * comment text begins here
 * and continues here
 */
```

Note that comment blocks that begin in column 1 will be preserved as-is by `pgindent`, but it will re-flow indented comment blocks as though they were plain text. If you want to preserve the line breaks in an indented block, add dashes like this:

```
/*-----
 * comment text begins here
 * and continues here
 *-----
 */
```

While submitted patches do not absolutely have to follow these formatting rules, it's a good idea to do so. Your code will get run through `pgindent` before the next release, so there's no point in making it look nice under some other set of formatting conventions. A good rule of thumb for patches is "make the new code look like the existing code around it".

The `src/tools/editors` directory contains sample settings files that can be used with the Emacs, xemacs or vim editors to help ensure that they format code according to these conventions.

If you'd like to run `pgindent` locally to help make your code match project style, see the `src/tools/pgindent` directory.

The text browsing tools `more` and `less` can be invoked as:

```
more -x4
less -x4
```

to make them show tabs appropriately.

## 56.2. Reporting Errors Within the Server

Error, warning, and log messages generated within the server code should be created using `ereport`, or its older cousin `elog`. The use of this function is complex enough to require some explanation.

There are two required elements for every message: a severity level (ranging from `DEBUG` to `PANIC`) and a primary message text. In addition there are optional elements, the most common of which is an error identifier code that follows the SQL spec's `SQLSTATE` conventions. `ereport` itself is just a shell macro that exists mainly for the syntactic convenience of making message generation look like a single function call in the C source code. The only parameter accepted directly by `ereport` is the severity level. The primary message text and any optional message elements are generated by calling auxiliary functions, such as `errmsg`, within the `ereport` call.

A typical call to `ereport` might look like this:

```
ereport(ERROR,
        errcode(ERRCODE_DIVISION_BY_ZERO),
        errmsg("division by zero"));
```

This specifies error severity level `ERROR` (a run-of-the-mill error). The `errcode` call specifies the `SQLSTATE` error code using a macro defined in `src/include/utils/errcodes.h`. The `errmsg` call provides the primary message text.

You will also frequently see this older style, with an extra set of parentheses surrounding the auxiliary function calls:

```
ereport(ERROR,
        (errcode(ERRCODE_DIVISION_BY_ZERO),
         errmsg("division by zero")));
```

The extra parentheses were required before PostgreSQL version 12, but are now optional.

Here is a more complex example:

```
ereport(ERROR,
        errcode(ERRCODE_AMBIGUOUS_FUNCTION),
        errmsg("function %s is not unique",
               func_signature_string(funcname, nargs,
                                   NIL, actual_arg_types)),
        errhint("Unable to choose a best candidate function. "
                "You might need to add explicit typecasts.));
```

This illustrates the use of format codes to embed run-time values into a message text. Also, an optional “hint” message is provided. The auxiliary function calls can be written in any order, but conventionally `errcode` and `errmsg` appear first.

If the severity level is `ERROR` or higher, `ereport` aborts execution of the current query and does not return to the caller. If the severity level is lower than `ERROR`, `ereport` returns normally.

The available auxiliary routines for `ereport` are:

- `errcode(sqlerrcode)` specifies the `SQLSTATE` error identifier code for the condition. If this routine is not called, the error identifier defaults to `ERRCODE_INTERNAL_ERROR` when the error severity level is `ERROR` or higher, `ERRCODE_WARNING` when the error level is `WARNING`, otherwise (for `NOTICE` and below) `ERRCODE_SUCCESSFUL_COMPLETION`. While these defaults are often convenient, always think whether they are appropriate before omitting the `errcode()` call.
- `errmsg(const char *msg, ...)` specifies the primary error message text, and possibly run-time values to insert into it. Insertions are specified by `sprintf`-style format codes. In addition

to the standard format codes accepted by `sprintf`, the format code `%m` can be used to insert the error message returned by `strerror` for the current value of `errno`.<sup>1</sup> `%m` does not require any corresponding entry in the parameter list for `errmsg`. Note that the message string will be run through `gettext` for possible localization before format codes are processed.

- `errmsg_internal(const char *msg, ...)` is the same as `errmsg`, except that the message string will not be translated nor included in the internationalization message dictionary. This should be used for “cannot happen” cases that are probably not worth expending translation effort on.
- `errmsg_plural(const char *fmt_singular, const char *fmt_plural, unsigned long n, ...)` is like `errmsg`, but with support for various plural forms of the message. *fmt\_singular* is the English singular format, *fmt\_plural* is the English plural format, *n* is the integer value that determines which plural form is needed, and the remaining arguments are formatted according to the selected format string. For more information see Section 57.2.2.
- `errdetail(const char *msg, ...)` supplies an optional “detail” message; this is to be used when there is additional information that seems inappropriate to put in the primary message. The message string is processed in just the same way as for `errmsg`.
- `errdetail_internal(const char *msg, ...)` is the same as `errdetail`, except that the message string will not be translated nor included in the internationalization message dictionary. This should be used for detail messages that are not worth expending translation effort on, for instance because they are too technical to be useful to most users.
- `errdetail_plural(const char *fmt_singular, const char *fmt_plural, unsigned long n, ...)` is like `errdetail`, but with support for various plural forms of the message. For more information see Section 57.2.2.
- `errdetail_log(const char *msg, ...)` is the same as `errdetail` except that this string goes only to the server log, never to the client. If both `errdetail` (or one of its equivalents above) and `errdetail_log` are used then one string goes to the client and the other to the log. This is useful for error details that are too security-sensitive or too bulky to include in the report sent to the client.
- `errdetail_log_plural(const char *fmt_singular, const char *fmt_plural, unsigned long n, ...)` is like `errdetail_log`, but with support for various plural forms of the message. For more information see Section 57.2.2.
- `errhint(const char *msg, ...)` supplies an optional “hint” message; this is to be used when offering suggestions about how to fix the problem, as opposed to factual details about what went wrong. The message string is processed in just the same way as for `errmsg`.
- `errhint_plural(const char *fmt_singular, const char *fmt_plural, unsigned long n, ...)` is like `errhint`, but with support for various plural forms of the message. For more information see Section 57.2.2.
- `errcontext(const char *msg, ...)` is not normally called directly from an `ereport` message site; rather it is used in `error_context_stack` callback functions to provide information about the context in which an error occurred, such as the current location in a PL function. The message string is processed in just the same way as for `errmsg`. Unlike the other auxiliary functions, this can be called more than once per `ereport` call; the successive strings thus supplied are concatenated with separating newlines.
- `errposition(int cursorpos)` specifies the textual location of an error within a query string. Currently it is only useful for errors detected in the lexical and syntactic analysis phases of query processing.

---

<sup>1</sup> That is, the value that was current when the `ereport` call was reached; changes of `errno` within the auxiliary reporting routines will not affect it. That would not be true if you were to write `strerror(errno)` explicitly in `errmsg`'s parameter list; accordingly, do not do so.



- `errtable(Relation rel)` specifies a relation whose name and schema name should be included as auxiliary fields in the error report.
- `errtablecol(Relation rel, int attnum)` specifies a column whose name, table name, and schema name should be included as auxiliary fields in the error report.
- `errtableconstraint(Relation rel, const char *conname)` specifies a table constraint whose name, table name, and schema name should be included as auxiliary fields in the error report. Indexes should be considered to be constraints for this purpose, whether or not they have an associated `pg_constraint` entry. Be careful to pass the underlying heap relation, not the index itself, as `rel`.
- `errdatatype(Oid datatypeOid)` specifies a data type whose name and schema name should be included as auxiliary fields in the error report.
- `errdomainconstraint(Oid datatypeOid, const char *conname)` specifies a domain constraint whose name, domain name, and schema name should be included as auxiliary fields in the error report.
- `errcode_for_file_access()` is a convenience function that selects an appropriate SQLSTATE error identifier for a failure in a file-access-related system call. It uses the saved `errno` to determine which error code to generate. Usually this should be used in combination with `%m` in the primary error message text.
- `errcode_for_socket_access()` is a convenience function that selects an appropriate SQLSTATE error identifier for a failure in a socket-related system call.
- `errhidestmt(bool hide_stmt)` can be called to specify suppression of the `STATEMENT:` portion of a message in the postmaster log. Generally this is appropriate if the message text includes the current statement already.
- `errhidecontext(bool hide_ctx)` can be called to specify suppression of the `CONTEXT:` portion of a message in the postmaster log. This should only be used for verbose debugging messages where the repeated inclusion of context would bloat the log too much.

### Note

At most one of the functions `errtable`, `errtablecol`, `errtableconstraint`, `errdatatype`, or `errdomainconstraint` should be used in an `ereport` call. These functions exist to allow applications to extract the name of a database object associated with the error condition without having to examine the potentially-localized error message text. These functions should be used in error reports for which it's likely that applications would wish to have automatic error handling. As of PostgreSQL 9.3, complete coverage exists only for errors in SQLSTATE class 23 (integrity constraint violation), but this is likely to be expanded in future.

There is an older function `elog` that is still heavily used. An `elog` call:

```
elog(level, "format string", ...);
```

is exactly equivalent to:

```
ereport(level, errmsg_internal("format string", ...));
```

Notice that the SQLSTATE error code is always defaulted, and the message string is not subject to translation. Therefore, `elog` should be used only for internal errors and low-level debug logging. Any message that is likely to be of interest to ordinary users should go through `ereport`. Nonetheless,

there are enough internal “cannot happen” error checks in the system that `elog` is still widely used; it is preferred for those messages for its notational simplicity.

Advice about writing good error messages can be found in Section 56.3.

## 56.3. Error Message Style Guide

This style guide is offered in the hope of maintaining a consistent, user-friendly style throughout all the messages generated by PostgreSQL.

### What Goes Where

The primary message should be short, factual, and avoid reference to implementation details such as specific function names. “Short” means “should fit on one line under normal conditions”. Use a detail message if needed to keep the primary message short, or if you feel a need to mention implementation details such as the particular system call that failed. Both primary and detail messages should be factual. Use a hint message for suggestions about what to do to fix the problem, especially if the suggestion might not always be applicable.

For example, instead of:

```
IpcMemoryCreate: shmget(key=%d, size=%u, 0%o) failed: %m
(plus a long addendum that is basically a hint)
```

write:

```
Primary:    could not create shared memory segment: %m
Detail:     Failed syscall was shmget(key=%d, size=%u, 0%o).
Hint:       the addendum
```

Rationale: keeping the primary message short helps keep it to the point, and lets clients lay out screen space on the assumption that one line is enough for error messages. Detail and hint messages can be relegated to a verbose mode, or perhaps a pop-up error-details window. Also, details and hints would normally be suppressed from the server log to save space. Reference to implementation details is best avoided since users aren't expected to know the details.

### Formatting

Don't put any specific assumptions about formatting into the message texts. Expect clients and the server log to wrap lines to fit their own needs. In long messages, newline characters (`\n`) can be used to indicate suggested paragraph breaks. Don't end a message with a newline. Don't use tabs or other formatting characters. (In error context displays, newlines are automatically added to separate levels of context such as function calls.)

Rationale: Messages are not necessarily displayed on terminal-type displays. In GUI displays or browsers these formatting instructions are at best ignored.

### Quotation Marks

English text should use double quotes when quoting is appropriate. Text in other languages should consistently use one kind of quotes that is consistent with publishing customs and computer output of other programs.

Rationale: The choice of double quotes over single quotes is somewhat arbitrary, but tends to be the preferred use. Some have suggested choosing the kind of quotes depending on the type of object according to SQL conventions (namely, strings single quoted, identifiers double quoted). But this is

a language-internal technical issue that many users aren't even familiar with, it won't scale to other kinds of quoted terms, it doesn't translate to other languages, and it's pretty pointless, too.

## Use of Quotes

Always use quotes to delimit file names, user-supplied identifiers, and other variables that might contain words. Do not use them to mark up variables that will not contain words (for example, operator names).

There are functions in the backend that will double-quote their own output as needed (for example, `format_type_be()`). Do not put additional quotes around the output of such functions.

Rationale: Objects can have names that create ambiguity when embedded in a message. Be consistent about denoting where a plugged-in name starts and ends. But don't clutter messages with unnecessary or duplicate quote marks.

## Grammar and Punctuation

The rules are different for primary error messages and for detail/hint messages:

Primary error messages: Do not capitalize the first letter. Do not end a message with a period. Do not even think about ending a message with an exclamation point.

Detail and hint messages: Use complete sentences, and end each with a period. Capitalize the first word of sentences. Put two spaces after the period if another sentence follows (for English text; might be inappropriate in other languages).

Error context strings: Do not capitalize the first letter and do not end the string with a period. Context strings should normally not be complete sentences.

Rationale: Avoiding punctuation makes it easier for client applications to embed the message into a variety of grammatical contexts. Often, primary messages are not grammatically complete sentences anyway. (And if they're long enough to be more than one sentence, they should be split into primary and detail parts.) However, detail and hint messages are longer and might need to include multiple sentences. For consistency, they should follow complete-sentence style even when there's only one sentence.

## Upper Case vs. Lower Case

Use lower case for message wording, including the first letter of a primary error message. Use upper case for SQL commands and key words if they appear in the message.

Rationale: It's easier to make everything look more consistent this way, since some messages are complete sentences and some not.

## Avoid Passive Voice

Use the active voice. Use complete sentences when there is an acting subject ("A could not do B"). Use telegram style without subject if the subject would be the program itself; do not use "I" for the program.

Rationale: The program is not human. Don't pretend otherwise.

## Present vs. Past Tense

Use past tense if an attempt to do something failed, but could perhaps succeed next time (perhaps after fixing some problem). Use present tense if the failure is certainly permanent.

There is a nontrivial semantic difference between sentences of the form:

```
could not open file "%s": %m
```

and:

```
cannot open file "%s"
```

The first one means that the attempt to open the file failed. The message should give a reason, such as “disk full” or “file doesn't exist”. The past tense is appropriate because next time the disk might not be full anymore or the file in question might exist.

The second form indicates that the functionality of opening the named file does not exist at all in the program, or that it's conceptually impossible. The present tense is appropriate because the condition will persist indefinitely.

Rationale: Granted, the average user will not be able to draw great conclusions merely from the tense of the message, but since the language provides us with a grammar we should use it correctly.

## Type of the Object

When citing the name of an object, state what kind of object it is.

Rationale: Otherwise no one will know what “foo.bar.baz” refers to.

## Brackets

Square brackets are only to be used (1) in command synopses to denote optional arguments, or (2) to denote an array subscript.

Rationale: Anything else does not correspond to widely-known customary usage and will confuse people.

## Assembling Error Messages

When a message includes text that is generated elsewhere, embed it in this style:

```
could not open file %s: %m
```

Rationale: It would be difficult to account for all possible error codes to paste this into a single smooth sentence, so some sort of punctuation is needed. Putting the embedded text in parentheses has also been suggested, but it's unnatural if the embedded text is likely to be the most important part of the message, as is often the case.

## Reasons for Errors

Messages should always state the reason why an error occurred. For example:

```
BAD:      could not open file %s
BETTER:   could not open file %s (I/O failure)
```

If no reason is known you better fix the code.

## Function Names

Don't include the name of the reporting routine in the error text. We have other mechanisms for finding that out when needed, and for most users it's not helpful information. If the error text doesn't make as much sense without the function name, reword it.

```
BAD:      pg_strtoint32: error in "z": cannot parse "z"
BETTER:   invalid input syntax for type integer: "z"
```

Avoid mentioning called function names, either; instead say what the code was trying to do:

```
BAD:      open() failed: %m
BETTER:   could not open file %s: %m
```

If it really seems necessary, mention the system call in the detail message. (In some cases, providing the actual values passed to the system call might be appropriate information for the detail message.)

Rationale: Users don't know what all those functions do.

## Tricky Words to Avoid

**Unable.** “Unable” is nearly the passive voice. Better use “cannot” or “could not”, as appropriate.

**Bad.** Error messages like “bad result” are really hard to interpret intelligently. It's better to write why the result is “bad”, e.g., “invalid format”.

**Illegal.** “Illegal” stands for a violation of the law, the rest is “invalid”. Better yet, say why it's invalid.

**Unknown.** Try to avoid “unknown”. Consider “error: unknown response”. If you don't know what the response is, how do you know it's erroneous? “Unrecognized” is often a better choice. Also, be sure to include the value being complained of.

```
BAD:      unknown node type
BETTER:   unrecognized node type: 42
```

**Find vs. Exists.** If the program uses a nontrivial algorithm to locate a resource (e.g., a path search) and that algorithm fails, it is fair to say that the program couldn't “find” the resource. If, on the other hand, the expected location of the resource is known but the program cannot access it there then say that the resource doesn't “exist”. Using “find” in this case sounds weak and confuses the issue.

**May vs. Can vs. Might.** “May” suggests permission (e.g., “You may borrow my rake.”), and has little use in documentation or error messages. “Can” suggests ability (e.g., “I can lift that log.”), and “might” suggests possibility (e.g., “It might rain today.”). Using the proper word clarifies meaning and assists translation.

**Contractions.** Avoid contractions, like “can't”; use “cannot” instead.

**Non-negative.** Avoid “non-negative” as it is ambiguous about whether it accepts zero. It's better to use “greater than zero” or “greater than or equal to zero”.

## Proper Spelling

Spell out words in full. For instance, avoid:

- spec
- stats
- parens
- auth

- `xact`

Rationale: This will improve consistency.

## Localization

Keep in mind that error message texts need to be translated into other languages. Follow the guidelines in Section 57.2.2 to avoid making life difficult for translators.

# 56.4. Miscellaneous Coding Conventions

## C Standard

Code in PostgreSQL should only rely on language features available in the C99 standard. That means a conforming C99 compiler has to be able to compile postgres, at least aside from a few platform dependent pieces.

A few features included in the C99 standard are, at this time, not permitted to be used in core PostgreSQL code. This currently includes variable length arrays, intermingled declarations and code, `//` comments, universal character names. Reasons for that include portability and historical practices.

Features from later revisions of the C standard or compiler specific features can be used, if a fallback is provided.

For example `_Static_assert()` and `__builtin_constant_p` are currently used, even though they are from newer revisions of the C standard and a GCC extension respectively. If not available we respectively fall back to using a C99 compatible replacement that performs the same checks, but emits rather cryptic messages and do not use `__builtin_constant_p`.

## Function-Like Macros and Inline Functions

Both macros with arguments and `static inline` functions may be used. The latter are preferable if there are multiple-evaluation hazards when written as a macro, as e.g., the case with

```
#define Max(x, y)      ((x) > (y) ? (x) : (y))
```

or when the macro would be very long. In other cases it's only possible to use macros, or at least easier. For example because expressions of various types need to be passed to the macro.

When the definition of an inline function references symbols (i.e., variables, functions) that are only available as part of the backend, the function may not be visible when included from frontend code.

```
#ifndef FRONTEND
static inline MemoryContext
MemoryContextSwitchTo(MemoryContext context)
{
    MemoryContext old = CurrentMemoryContext;

    CurrentMemoryContext = context;
    return old;
}
#endif /* FRONTEND */
```

In this example `CurrentMemoryContext`, which is only available in the backend, is referenced and the function thus hidden with a `#ifndef FRONTEND`. This rule exists because some compilers emit references to symbols contained in inline functions even if the function is not used.

## Writing Signal Handlers

To be suitable to run inside a signal handler code has to be written very carefully. The fundamental problem is that, unless blocked, a signal handler can interrupt code at any time. If code inside the signal handler uses the same state as code outside chaos may ensue. As an example consider what happens if a signal handler tries to acquire a lock that's already held in the interrupted code.

Barring special arrangements code in signal handlers may only call async-signal safe functions (as defined in POSIX) and access variables of type `volatile sig_atomic_t`. A few functions in `postgres` are also deemed signal safe, importantly `SetLatch()`.

In most cases signal handlers should do nothing more than note that a signal has arrived, and wake up code running outside of the handler using a latch. An example of such a handler is the following:

```
static void
handle_sighup(SIGNAL_ARGS)
{
    int            save_errno = errno;

    got_SIGHUP = true;
    SetLatch(MyLatch);

    errno = save_errno;
}
```

`errno` is saved and restored because `SetLatch()` might change it. If that were not done interrupted code that's currently inspecting `errno` might see the wrong value.

## Calling Function Pointers

For clarity, it is preferred to explicitly dereference a function pointer when calling the pointed-to function if the pointer is a simple variable, for example:

```
(*emit_log_hook) (edata);
```

(even though `emit_log_hook(edata)` would also work). When the function pointer is part of a structure, then the extra punctuation can and usually should be omitted, for example:

```
paramInfo->paramFetch(paramInfo, paramId);
```

---

# Chapter 57. Native Language Support

## 57.1. For the Translator

PostgreSQL programs (server and client) can issue their messages in your favorite language — if the messages have been translated. Creating and maintaining translated message sets needs the help of people who speak their own language well and want to contribute to the PostgreSQL effort. You do not have to be a programmer at all to do this. This section explains how to help.

### 57.1.1. Requirements

We won't judge your language skills — this section is about software tools. Theoretically, you only need a text editor. But this is only in the unlikely event that you do not want to try out your translated messages. When you configure your source tree, be sure to use the `--enable-nls` option. This will also check for the `libintl` library and the `msgfmt` program, which all end users will need anyway. To try out your work, follow the applicable portions of the installation instructions.

If you want to start a new translation effort or want to do a message catalog merge (described later), you will need the programs `xgettext` and `msgmerge`, respectively, in a GNU-compatible implementation. Later, we will try to arrange it so that if you use a packaged source distribution, you won't need `xgettext`. (If working from Git, you will still need it.) GNU Gettext 0.10.36 or later is currently recommended.

Your local gettext implementation should come with its own documentation. Some of that is probably duplicated in what follows, but for additional details you should look there.

### 57.1.2. Concepts

The pairs of original (English) messages and their (possibly) translated equivalents are kept in *message catalogs*, one for each program (although related programs can share a message catalog) and for each target language. There are two file formats for message catalogs: The first is the “PO” file (for Portable Object), which is a plain text file with special syntax that translators edit. The second is the “MO” file (for Machine Object), which is a binary file generated from the respective PO file and is used while the internationalized program is run. Translators do not deal with MO files; in fact hardly anyone does.

The extension of the message catalog file is to no surprise either `.po` or `.mo`. The base name is either the name of the program it accompanies, or the language the file is for, depending on the situation. This is a bit confusing. Examples are `psql.po` (PO file for `psql`) or `fr.mo` (MO file in French).

The file format of the PO files is illustrated here:

```
# comment

msgid "original string"
msgstr "translated string"

msgid "more original"
msgstr "another translated"
"string can be broken up like this"

...
```

The `msgid` lines are extracted from the program source. (They need not be, but this is the most common way.) The `msgstr` lines are initially empty and are filled in with useful strings by the translator. The strings can contain C-style escape characters and can be continued across lines as illustrated. (The next line must start at the beginning of the line.)



The # character introduces a comment. If whitespace immediately follows the # character, then this is a comment maintained by the translator. There can also be automatic comments, which have a non-whitespace character immediately following the #. These are maintained by the various tools that operate on the PO files and are intended to aid the translator.

```
#. automatic comment
#: filename.c:1023
#, flags, flags
```

The #. style comments are extracted from the source file where the message is used. Possibly the programmer has inserted information for the translator, such as about expected alignment. The #: comments indicate the exact locations where the message is used in the source. The translator need not look at the program source, but can if there is doubt about the correct translation. The #, comments contain flags that describe the message in some way. There are currently two flags: `fuzzy` is set if the message has possibly been outdated because of changes in the program source. The translator can then verify this and possibly remove the fuzzy flag. Note that fuzzy messages are not made available to the end user. The other flag is `c-format`, which indicates that the message is a `printf`-style format template. This means that the translation should also be a format string with the same number and type of placeholders. There are tools that can verify this, which key off the `c-format` flag.

### 57.1.3. Creating and Maintaining Message Catalogs

OK, so how does one create a “blank” message catalog? First, go into the directory that contains the program whose messages you want to translate. If there is a file `nl.s.mk`, then this program has been prepared for translation.

If there are already some `.po` files, then someone has already done some translation work. The files are named `language.po`, where *language* is the ISO 639-1 two-letter language code (in lower case)<sup>1</sup>, e.g., `fr.po` for French. If there is really a need for more than one translation effort per language then the files can also be named `language_region.po` where *region* is the ISO 3166-1 two-letter country code (in upper case)<sup>2</sup>, e.g., `pt_BR.po` for Portuguese in Brazil. If you find the language you wanted you can just start working on that file.

If you need to start a new translation effort, then first run the command:

```
make init-po
```

This will create a file `prognam.pot`. (`.pot` to distinguish it from PO files that are “in production”. The T stands for “template”.) Copy this file to `language.po` and edit it. To make it known that the new language is available, also edit the file `po/LINGUAS` and add the language (or language and country) code next to languages already listed, like:

```
de fr
```

(Other languages can appear, of course.)

As the underlying program or library changes, messages might be changed or added by the programmers. In this case you do not need to start from scratch. Instead, run the command:

```
make update-po
```

which will create a new blank message catalog file (the `pot` file you started with) and will merge it with the existing PO files. If the merge algorithm is not sure about a particular message it marks it “fuzzy” as explained above. The new PO file is saved with a `.po.new` extension.

---

<sup>1</sup> [https://www.loc.gov/standards/iso639-2/php/English\\_list.php](https://www.loc.gov/standards/iso639-2/php/English_list.php)

<sup>2</sup> <https://www.iso.org/iso-3166-country-codes.html>

## 57.1.4. Editing the PO Files

The PO files can be edited with a regular text editor. There are also several specialized editors for PO files which can help the process with translation-specific features. There is (unsurprisingly) a PO mode for Emacs, which can be quite useful.

The translator should only change the area between the quotes after the `msgstr` directive, add comments, and alter the fuzzy flag.

The PO files need not be completely filled in. The software will automatically fall back to the original string if no translation (or an empty translation) is available. It is no problem to submit incomplete translations for inclusions in the source tree; that gives room for other people to pick up your work. However, you are encouraged to give priority to removing fuzzy entries after doing a merge. Remember that fuzzy entries will not be installed; they only serve as reference for what might be the right translation.

Here are some things to keep in mind while editing the translations:

- Make sure that if the original ends with a newline, the translation does, too. Similarly for tabs, etc.
- If the original is a `printf` format string, the translation also needs to be. The translation also needs to have the same format specifiers in the same order. Sometimes the natural rules of the language make this impossible or at least awkward. In that case you can modify the format specifiers like this:

```
msgstr "Die Datei %2$s hat %1$u Zeichen."
```

Then the first placeholder will actually use the second argument from the list. The `digits$` needs to follow the `%` immediately, before any other format manipulators. (This feature really exists in the `printf` family of functions. You might not have heard of it before because there is little use for it outside of message internationalization.)

- If the original string contains a linguistic mistake, report that (or fix it yourself in the program source) and translate normally. The corrected string can be merged in when the program sources have been updated. If the original string contains a factual mistake, report that (or fix it yourself) and do not translate it. Instead, you can mark the string with a comment in the PO file.
- Maintain the style and tone of the original string. Specifically, messages that are not sentences (`cannot open file %s`) should probably not start with a capital letter (if your language distinguishes letter case) or end with a period (if your language uses punctuation marks). It might help to read Section 56.3.
- If you don't know what a message means, or if it is ambiguous, ask on the developers' mailing list. Chances are that English speaking end users might also not understand it or find it ambiguous, so it's best to improve the message.

## 57.2. For the Programmer

### 57.2.1. Mechanics

This section describes how to implement native language support in a program or library that is part of the PostgreSQL distribution. Currently, it only applies to C programs.

#### Adding NLS Support to a Program

1. Insert this code into the start-up sequence of the program:

```
#ifdef ENABLE_NLS
```

```
#include <locale.h>
#endif

...

#ifdef ENABLE_NLS
setlocale(LC_ALL, "");
bindtextdomain("prognam", LOCALEDIR);
textdomain("prognam");
#endif
```

(The *prognam* can actually be chosen freely.)

2. Wherever a message that is a candidate for translation is found, a call to `gettext()` needs to be inserted. E.g.:

```
fprintf(stderr, "panic level %d\n", lvl);
```

would be changed to:

```
fprintf(stderr, gettext("panic level %d\n"), lvl);
```

(`gettext` is defined as a no-op if NLS support is not configured.)

This tends to add a lot of clutter. One common shortcut is to use:

```
#define _(x) gettext(x)
```

Another solution is feasible if the program does much of its communication through one or a few functions, such as `ereport()` in the backend. Then you make this function call `gettext` internally on all input strings.

3. Add a file `nls.mk` in the directory with the program sources. This file will be read as a makefile. The following variable assignments need to be made here:

CATALOG\_NAME

The program name, as provided in the `textdomain()` call.

GETTEXT\_FILES

List of files that contain translatable strings, i.e., those marked with `gettext` or an alternative solution. Eventually, this will include nearly all source files of the program. If this list gets too long you can make the first “file” be a `+` and the second word be a file that contains one file name per line.

GETTEXT\_TRIGGERS

The tools that generate message catalogs for the translators to work on need to know what function calls contain translatable strings. By default, only `gettext()` calls are known. If you used `_` or other identifiers you need to list them here. If the translatable string is not the first argument, the item needs to be of the form `func:2` (for the second argument). If you have a function that supports pluralized messages, the item should look like `func:1,2` (identifying the singular and plural message arguments).

4. Add a file `po/LINGUAS`, which will contain the list of provided translations — initially empty.

The build system will automatically take care of building and installing the message catalogs.

## 57.2.2. Message-Writing Guidelines

Here are some guidelines for writing messages that are easily translatable.

- Do not construct sentences at run-time, like:

```
printf("Files were %s.\n", flag ? "copied" : "removed");
```

The word order within the sentence might be different in other languages. Also, even if you remember to call `gettext()` on each fragment, the fragments might not translate well separately. It's better to duplicate a little code so that each message to be translated is a coherent whole. Only numbers, file names, and such-like run-time variables should be inserted at run time into a message text.

- For similar reasons, this won't work:

```
printf("copied %d file%s", n, n!=1 ? "s" : "");
```

because it assumes how the plural is formed. If you figured you could solve it like this:

```
if (n==1)
    printf("copied 1 file");
else
    printf("copied %d files", n);
```

then be disappointed. Some languages have more than two forms, with some peculiar rules. It's often best to design the message to avoid the issue altogether, for instance like this:

```
printf("number of copied files: %d", n);
```

If you really want to construct a properly pluralized message, there is support for this, but it's a bit awkward. When generating a primary or detail error message in `errreport()`, you can write something like this:

```
errmsg_plural("copied %d file",
              "copied %d files",
              n,
              n)
```

The first argument is the format string appropriate for English singular form, the second is the format string appropriate for English plural form, and the third is the integer control value that determines which plural form to use. Subsequent arguments are formatted per the format string as usual. (Normally, the pluralization control value will also be one of the values to be formatted, so it has to be written twice.) In English it only matters whether *n* is 1 or not 1, but in other languages there can be many different plural forms. The translator sees the two English forms as a group and has the opportunity to supply multiple substitute strings, with the appropriate one being selected based on the run-time value of *n*.

If you need to pluralize a message that isn't going directly to an `errmsg` or `errdetail` report, you have to use the underlying function `ngettext`. See the `gettext` documentation.

- If you want to communicate something to the translator, such as about how a message is intended to line up with other output, precede the occurrence of the string with a comment that starts with `translator`, e.g.:

```
/* translator: This message is not what it seems to be. */
```

These comments are copied to the message catalog files so that the translators can see them.

---

# Chapter 58. Writing a Procedural Language Handler

All calls to functions that are written in a language other than the current “version 1” interface for compiled languages (this includes functions in user-defined procedural languages and functions written in SQL) go through a *call handler* function for the specific language. It is the responsibility of the call handler to execute the function in a meaningful way, such as by interpreting the supplied source text. This chapter outlines how a new procedural language's call handler can be written.

The call handler for a procedural language is a “normal” function that must be written in a compiled language such as C, using the version-1 interface, and registered with PostgreSQL as taking no arguments and returning the type `language_handler`. This special pseudo-type identifies the function as a call handler and prevents it from being called directly in SQL commands. For more details on C language calling conventions and dynamic loading, see Section 38.10.

The call handler is called in the same way as any other function: It receives a pointer to a `FunctionCallInfoBaseData` struct containing argument values and information about the called function, and it is expected to return a `Datum` result (and possibly set the `isnull` field of the `FunctionCallInfoBaseData` structure, if it wishes to return an SQL null result). The difference between a call handler and an ordinary callee function is that the `flinfo->fn_oid` field of the `FunctionCallInfoBaseData` structure will contain the OID of the actual function to be called, not of the call handler itself. The call handler must use this field to determine which function to execute. Also, the passed argument list has been set up according to the declaration of the target function, not of the call handler.

It's up to the call handler to fetch the entry of the function from the `pg_proc` system catalog and to analyze the argument and return types of the called function. The `AS` clause from the `CREATE FUNCTION` command for the function will be found in the `prosrc` column of the `pg_proc` row. This is commonly source text in the procedural language, but in theory it could be something else, such as a path name to a file, or anything else that tells the call handler what to do in detail.

Often, the same function is called many times per SQL statement. A call handler can avoid repeated lookups of information about the called function by using the `flinfo->fn_extra` field. This will initially be `NULL`, but can be set by the call handler to point at information about the called function. On subsequent calls, if `flinfo->fn_extra` is already non-`NULL` then it can be used and the information lookup step skipped. The call handler must make sure that `flinfo->fn_extra` is made to point at memory that will live at least until the end of the current query, since an `FmgrInfo` data structure could be kept that long. One way to do this is to allocate the extra data in the memory context specified by `flinfo->fn_mcxt`; such data will normally have the same lifespan as the `FmgrInfo` itself. But the handler could also choose to use a longer-lived memory context so that it can cache function definition information across queries.

When a procedural-language function is invoked as a trigger, no arguments are passed in the usual way, but the `FunctionCallInfoBaseData`'s `context` field points at a `TriggerData` structure, rather than being `NULL` as it is in a plain function call. A language handler should provide mechanisms for procedural-language functions to get at the trigger information.

A template for a procedural-language handler written as a C extension is provided in `src/test/modules/plsample`. This is a working sample demonstrating one way to create a procedural-language handler, process parameters, and return a value.

Although providing a call handler is sufficient to create a minimal procedural language, there are two other functions that can optionally be provided to make the language more convenient to use. These are a *validator* and an *inline handler*. A validator can be provided to allow language-specific checking to be done during `CREATE FUNCTION`. An inline handler can be provided to allow the language to support anonymous code blocks executed via the `DO` command.

If a validator is provided by a procedural language, it must be declared as a function taking a single parameter of type `oid`. The validator's result is ignored, so it is customarily declared to return `void`. The validator will be called at the end of a `CREATE FUNCTION` command that has created or updated a function written in the procedural language. The passed-in OID is the OID of the function's `pg_proc` row. The validator must fetch this row in the usual way, and do whatever checking is appropriate. First, call `CheckFunctionValidatorAccess()` to diagnose explicit calls to the validator that the user could not achieve through `CREATE FUNCTION`. Typical checks then include verifying that the function's argument and result types are supported by the language, and that the function's body is syntactically correct in the language. If the validator finds the function to be okay, it should just return. If it finds an error, it should report that via the normal `ereport()` error reporting mechanism. Throwing an error will force a transaction rollback and thus prevent the incorrect function definition from being committed.

Validator functions should typically honor the `check_function_bodies` parameter: if it is turned off then any expensive or context-sensitive checking should be skipped. If the language provides for code execution at compilation time, the validator must suppress checks that would induce such execution. In particular, this parameter is turned off by `pg_dump` so that it can load procedural language functions without worrying about side effects or dependencies of the function bodies on other database objects. (Because of this requirement, the call handler should avoid assuming that the validator has fully checked the function. The point of having a validator is not to let the call handler omit checks, but to notify the user immediately if there are obvious errors in a `CREATE FUNCTION` command.) While the choice of exactly what to check is mostly left to the discretion of the validator function, note that the core `CREATE FUNCTION` code only executes `SET` clauses attached to a function when `check_function_bodies` is on. Therefore, checks whose results might be affected by GUC parameters definitely should be skipped when `check_function_bodies` is off, to avoid false failures when restoring a dump.

If an inline handler is provided by a procedural language, it must be declared as a function taking a single parameter of type `internal`. The inline handler's result is ignored, so it is customarily declared to return `void`. The inline handler will be called when a `DO` statement is executed specifying the procedural language. The parameter actually passed is a pointer to an `InlineCodeBlock` struct, which contains information about the `DO` statement's parameters, in particular the text of the anonymous code block to be executed. The inline handler should execute this code and return.

It's recommended that you wrap all these function declarations, as well as the `CREATE LANGUAGE` command itself, into an *extension* so that a simple `CREATE EXTENSION` command is sufficient to install the language. See Section 38.17 for information about writing extensions.

The procedural languages included in the standard distribution are good references when trying to write your own language handler. Look into the `src/pl` subdirectory of the source tree. The `CREATE LANGUAGE` reference page also has some useful details.

---

# Chapter 59. Writing a Foreign Data Wrapper

All operations on a foreign table are handled through its foreign data wrapper, which consists of a set of functions that the core server calls. The foreign data wrapper is responsible for fetching data from the remote data source and returning it to the PostgreSQL executor. If updating foreign tables is to be supported, the wrapper must handle that, too. This chapter outlines how to write a new foreign data wrapper.

The foreign data wrappers included in the standard distribution are good references when trying to write your own. Look into the `contrib` subdirectory of the source tree. The `CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER` reference page also has some useful details.

## Note

The SQL standard specifies an interface for writing foreign data wrappers. However, PostgreSQL does not implement that API, because the effort to accommodate it into PostgreSQL would be large, and the standard API hasn't gained wide adoption anyway.

## 59.1. Foreign Data Wrapper Functions

The FDW author needs to implement a handler function, and optionally a validator function. Both functions must be written in a compiled language such as C, using the version-1 interface. For details on C language calling conventions and dynamic loading, see Section 38.10.

The handler function simply returns a struct of function pointers to callback functions that will be called by the planner, executor, and various maintenance commands. Most of the effort in writing an FDW is in implementing these callback functions. The handler function must be registered with PostgreSQL as taking no arguments and returning the special pseudo-type `fdw_handler`. The callback functions are plain C functions and are not visible or callable at the SQL level. The callback functions are described in Section 59.2.

The validator function is responsible for validating options given in `CREATE` and `ALTER` commands for its foreign data wrapper, as well as foreign servers, user mappings, and foreign tables using the wrapper. The validator function must be registered as taking two arguments, a text array containing the options to be validated, and an OID representing the type of object the options are associated with. The latter corresponds to the OID of the system catalog the object would be stored in, one of:

- `AttributeRelationId`
- `ForeignDataWrapperRelationId`
- `ForeignServerRelationId`
- `ForeignTableRelationId`
- `UserMappingRelationId`

If no validator function is supplied, options are not checked at object creation time or object alteration time.

## 59.2. Foreign Data Wrapper Callback Routines

The FDW handler function returns a palloc'd `FdwRoutine` struct containing pointers to the callback functions described below. The scan-related functions are required, the rest are optional.



The `FdwRoutine` struct type is declared in `src/include/foreign/fdwapi.h`, which see for additional details.

## 59.2.1. FDW Routines for Scanning Foreign Tables

```
void
GetForeignRelSize(PlannerInfo *root,
                  RelOptInfo *baserel,
                  Oid foreigntableid);
```

Obtain relation size estimates for a foreign table. This is called at the beginning of planning for a query that scans a foreign table. `root` is the planner's global information about the query; `baserel` is the planner's information about this table; and `foreigntableid` is the `pg_class` OID of the foreign table. (`foreigntableid` could be obtained from the planner data structures, but it's passed explicitly to save effort.)

This function should update `baserel->rows` to be the expected number of rows returned by the table scan, after accounting for the filtering done by the restriction quals. The initial value of `baserel->rows` is just a constant default estimate, which should be replaced if at all possible. The function may also choose to update `baserel->width` if it can compute a better estimate of the average result row width. (The initial value is based on column data types and on column average-width values measured by the last `ANALYZE`.) Also, this function may update `baserel->tuples` if it can compute a better estimate of the foreign table's total row count. (The initial value is from `pg_class.rel tuples` which represents the total row count seen by the last `ANALYZE`; it will be `-1` if no `ANALYZE` has been done on this foreign table.)

See Section 59.4 for additional information.

```
void
GetForeignPaths(PlannerInfo *root,
                RelOptInfo *baserel,
                Oid foreigntableid);
```

Create possible access paths for a scan on a foreign table. This is called during query planning. The parameters are the same as for `GetForeignRelSize`, which has already been called.

This function must generate at least one access path (`ForeignPath` node) for a scan on the foreign table and must call `add_path` to add each such path to `baserel->pathlist`. It's recommended to use `create_foreignscan_path` to build the `ForeignPath` nodes. The function can generate multiple access paths, e.g., a path which has valid `pathkeys` to represent a pre-sorted result. Each access path must contain cost estimates, and can contain any FDW-private information that is needed to identify the specific scan method intended.

See Section 59.4 for additional information.

```
ForeignScan *
GetForeignPlan(PlannerInfo *root,
               RelOptInfo *baserel,
               Oid foreigntableid,
               ForeignPath *best_path,
               List *tlist,
               List *scan_clauses,
               Plan *outer_plan);
```

Create a `ForeignScan` plan node from the selected foreign access path. This is called at the end of query planning. The parameters are as for `GetForeignRelSize`, plus the selected `ForeignPath`

(previously produced by `GetForeignPaths`, `GetForeignJoinPaths`, or `GetForeignUpperPaths`), the target list to be emitted by the plan node, the restriction clauses to be enforced by the plan node, and the outer subplan of the `ForeignScan`, which is used for rechecks performed by `RecheckForeignScan`. (If the path is for a join rather than a base relation, `foreigntableid` is `InvalidOid`.)

This function must create and return a `ForeignScan` plan node; it's recommended to use `make_foreignscan` to build the `ForeignScan` node.

See Section 59.4 for additional information.

```
void
BeginForeignScan(ForeignScanState *node,
                 int eflags);
```

Begin executing a foreign scan. This is called during executor startup. It should perform any initialization needed before the scan can start, but not start executing the actual scan (that should be done upon the first call to `IterateForeignScan`). The `ForeignScanState` node has already been created, but its `fdw_state` field is still `NULL`. Information about the table to scan is accessible through the `ForeignScanState` node (in particular, from the underlying `ForeignScan` plan node, which contains any FDW-private information provided by `GetForeignPlan`). `eflags` contains flag bits describing the executor's operating mode for this plan node.

Note that when `(eflags & EXEC_FLAG_EXPLAIN_ONLY)` is true, this function should not perform any externally-visible actions; it should only do the minimum required to make the node state valid for `ExplainForeignScan` and `EndForeignScan`.

```
TupleTableSlot *
IterateForeignScan(ForeignScanState *node);
```

Fetch one row from the foreign source, returning it in a tuple table slot (the node's `ScanTupleSlot` should be used for this purpose). Return `NULL` if no more rows are available. The tuple table slot infrastructure allows either a physical or virtual tuple to be returned; in most cases the latter choice is preferable from a performance standpoint. Note that this is called in a short-lived memory context that will be reset between invocations. Create a memory context in `BeginForeignScan` if you need longer-lived storage, or use the `es_query_cxt` of the node's `EState`.

The rows returned must match the `fdw_scan_tlist` target list if one was supplied, otherwise they must match the row type of the foreign table being scanned. If you choose to optimize away fetching columns that are not needed, you should insert nulls in those column positions, or else generate a `fdw_scan_tlist` list with those columns omitted.

Note that PostgreSQL's executor doesn't care whether the rows returned violate any constraints that were defined on the foreign table — but the planner does care, and may optimize queries incorrectly if there are rows visible in the foreign table that do not satisfy a declared constraint. If a constraint is violated when the user has declared that the constraint should hold true, it may be appropriate to raise an error (just as you would need to do in the case of a data type mismatch).

```
void
ReScanForeignScan(ForeignScanState *node);
```

Restart the scan from the beginning. Note that any parameters the scan depends on may have changed value, so the new scan does not necessarily return exactly the same rows.

```
void
```

```
EndForeignScan(ForeignScanState *node);
```

End the scan and release resources. It is normally not important to release `palloc'd` memory, but for example open files and connections to remote servers should be cleaned up.

## 59.2.2. FDW Routines for Scanning Foreign Joins

If an FDW supports performing foreign joins remotely (rather than by fetching both tables' data and doing the join locally), it should provide this callback function:

```
void
GetForeignJoinPaths(PlannerInfo *root,
                   RelOptInfo *joinrel,
                   RelOptInfo *outerrel,
                   RelOptInfo *innerrel,
                   JoinType jointype,
                   JoinPathExtraData *extra);
```

Create possible access paths for a join of two (or more) foreign tables that all belong to the same foreign server. This optional function is called during query planning. As with `GetForeignPaths`, this function should generate `ForeignPath` path(s) for the supplied `joinrel` (use `create_foreign_join_path` to build them), and call `add_path` to add these paths to the set of paths considered for the join. But unlike `GetForeignPaths`, it is not necessary that this function succeed in creating at least one path, since paths involving local joining are always possible.

Note that this function will be invoked repeatedly for the same join relation, with different combinations of inner and outer relations; it is the responsibility of the FDW to minimize duplicated work.

If a `ForeignPath` path is chosen for the join, it will represent the entire join process; paths generated for the component tables and subsidiary joins will not be used. Subsequent processing of the join path proceeds much as it does for a path scanning a single foreign table. One difference is that the `scanrelid` of the resulting `ForeignScan` plan node should be set to zero, since there is no single relation that it represents; instead, the `fs_relids` field of the `ForeignScan` node represents the set of relations that were joined. (The latter field is set up automatically by the core planner code, and need not be filled by the FDW.) Another difference is that, because the column list for a remote join cannot be found from the system catalogs, the FDW must fill `fdw_scan_tlist` with an appropriate list of `TargetEntry` nodes, representing the set of columns it will supply at run time in the tuples it returns.

### Note

Beginning with PostgreSQL 16, `fs_relids` includes the `rangetable` indexes of outer joins, if any were involved in this join. The new field `fs_base_relids` includes only base relation indexes, and thus mimics `fs_relids`'s old semantics.

See Section 59.4 for additional information.

## 59.2.3. FDW Routines for Planning Post-Scan/Join Processing

If an FDW supports performing remote post-scan/join processing, such as remote aggregation, it should provide this callback function:

```
void
```

```
GetForeignUpperPaths(PlannerInfo *root,  
                     UpperRelationKind stage,  
                     RelOptInfo *input_rel,  
                     RelOptInfo *output_rel,  
                     void *extra);
```

Create possible access paths for *upper relation* processing, which is the planner's term for all post-scan/join query processing, such as aggregation, window functions, sorting, and table updates. This optional function is called during query planning. Currently, it is called only if all base relation(s) involved in the query belong to the same FDW. This function should generate `ForeignPath` path(s) for any post-scan/join processing that the FDW knows how to perform remotely (use `create_foreign_upper_path` to build them), and call `add_path` to add these paths to the indicated upper relation. As with `GetForeignJoinPaths`, it is not necessary that this function succeed in creating any paths, since paths involving local processing are always possible.

The `stage` parameter identifies which post-scan/join step is currently being considered. `output_rel` is the upper relation that should receive paths representing computation of this step, and `input_rel` is the relation representing the input to this step. The `extra` parameter provides additional details, currently, it is set only for `UPPERREL_PARTIAL_GROUP_AGG` or `UPPERREL_GROUP_AGG`, in which case it points to a `GroupPathExtraData` structure; or for `UPPERREL_FINAL`, in which case it points to a `FinalPathExtraData` structure. (Note that `ForeignPath` paths added to `output_rel` would typically not have any direct dependency on paths of the `input_rel`, since their processing is expected to be done externally. However, examining paths previously generated for the previous processing step can be useful to avoid redundant planning work.)

See Section 59.4 for additional information.

## 59.2.4. FDW Routines for Updating Foreign Tables

If an FDW supports writable foreign tables, it should provide some or all of the following callback functions depending on the needs and capabilities of the FDW:

```
void  
AddForeignUpdateTargets(PlannerInfo *root,  
                        Index rtindex,  
                        RangeTblEntry *target_rte,  
                        Relation target_relation);
```

UPDATE and DELETE operations are performed against rows previously fetched by the table-scanning functions. The FDW may need extra information, such as a row ID or the values of primary-key columns, to ensure that it can identify the exact row to update or delete. To support that, this function can add extra hidden, or “junk”, target columns to the list of columns that are to be retrieved from the foreign table during an UPDATE or DELETE.

To do that, construct a `Var` representing an extra value you need, and pass it to `add_row_identity_var`, along with a name for the junk column. (You can do this more than once if several columns are needed.) You must choose a distinct junk column name for each different `Var` you need, except that `Vars` that are identical except for the `varno` field can and should share a column name. The core system uses the junk column names `tableoid` for a table's `tableoid` column, `ctid` or `ctidN` for `ctid`, `wholerow` for a whole-row `Var` marked with `vartype = RECORD`, and `wholerowN` for a whole-row `Var` with `vartype` equal to the table's declared row type. Re-use these names when you can (the planner will combine duplicate requests for identical junk columns). If you need another kind of junk column besides these, it might be wise to choose a name prefixed with your extension name, to avoid conflicts against other FDWs.

If the `AddForeignUpdateTargets` pointer is set to `NULL`, no extra target expressions are added. (This will make it impossible to implement DELETE operations, though UPDATE may still be feasible if the FDW relies on an unchanging primary key to identify rows.)

```
List *
PlanForeignModify(PlannerInfo *root,
                  ModifyTable *plan,
                  Index resultRelation,
                  int subplan_index);
```

Perform any additional planning actions needed for an insert, update, or delete on a foreign table. This function generates the FDW-private information that will be attached to the `ModifyTable` plan node that performs the update action. This private information must have the form of a `List`, and will be delivered to `BeginForeignModify` during the execution stage.

`root` is the planner's global information about the query. `plan` is the `ModifyTable` plan node, which is complete except for the `fdwPrivLists` field. `resultRelation` identifies the target foreign table by its range table index. `subplan_index` identifies which target of the `ModifyTable` plan node this is, counting from zero; use this if you want to index into per-target-relation substructures of the plan node.

See Section 59.4 for additional information.

If the `PlanForeignModify` pointer is set to `NULL`, no additional plan-time actions are taken, and the `fdw_private` list delivered to `BeginForeignModify` will be `NIL`.

```
void
BeginForeignModify(ModifyTableState *mtstate,
                  ResultRelInfo *rinfo,
                  List *fdw_private,
                  int subplan_index,
                  int eflags);
```

Begin executing a foreign table modification operation. This routine is called during executor startup. It should perform any initialization needed prior to the actual table modifications. Subsequently, `ExecForeignInsert`/`ExecForeignBatchInsert`, `ExecForeignUpdate` or `ExecForeignDelete` will be called for tuple(s) to be inserted, updated, or deleted.

`mtstate` is the overall state of the `ModifyTable` plan node being executed; global data about the plan and execution state is available via this structure. `rinfo` is the `ResultRelInfo` struct describing the target foreign table. (The `ri_FdwState` field of `ResultRelInfo` is available for the FDW to store any private state it needs for this operation.) `fdw_private` contains the private data generated by `PlanForeignModify`, if any. `subplan_index` identifies which target of the `ModifyTable` plan node this is. `eflags` contains flag bits describing the executor's operating mode for this plan node.

Note that when `(eflags & EXEC_FLAG_EXPLAIN_ONLY)` is true, this function should not perform any externally-visible actions; it should only do the minimum required to make the node state valid for `ExplainForeignModify` and `EndForeignModify`.

If the `BeginForeignModify` pointer is set to `NULL`, no action is taken during executor startup.

```
TupleTableSlot *
ExecForeignInsert(EState *estate,
                  ResultRelInfo *rinfo,
                  TupleTableSlot *slot,
                  TupleTableSlot *planSlot);
```

Insert one tuple into the foreign table. `estate` is global execution state for the query. `rinfo` is the `ResultRelInfo` struct describing the target foreign table. `slot` contains the tuple to be inserted;

it will match the row-type definition of the foreign table. `planSlot` contains the tuple that was generated by the `ModifyTable` plan node's subplan; it differs from `slot` in possibly containing additional “junk” columns. (The `planSlot` is typically of little interest for `INSERT` cases, but is provided for completeness.)

The return value is either a slot containing the data that was actually inserted (this might differ from the data supplied, for example as a result of trigger actions), or `NULL` if no row was actually inserted (again, typically as a result of triggers). The passed-in `slot` can be re-used for this purpose.

The data in the returned slot is used only if the `INSERT` statement has a `RETURNING` clause or involves a view `WITH CHECK OPTION`; or if the foreign table has an `AFTER ROW` trigger. Triggers require all columns, but the FDW could choose to optimize away returning some or all columns depending on the contents of the `RETURNING` clause or `WITH CHECK OPTION` constraints. Regardless, some slot must be returned to indicate success, or the query's reported row count will be wrong.

If the `ExecForeignInsert` pointer is set to `NULL`, attempts to insert into the foreign table will fail with an error message.

Note that this function is also called when inserting routed tuples into a foreign-table partition or executing `COPY FROM` on a foreign table, in which case it is called in a different way than it is in the `INSERT` case. See the callback functions described below that allow the FDW to support that.

```
TupleTableSlot **
ExecForeignBatchInsert(EState *estate,
                      ResultRelInfo *rinfo,
                      TupleTableSlot **slots,
                      TupleTableSlot **planSlots,
                      int *numSlots);
```

Insert multiple tuples in bulk into the foreign table. The parameters are the same for `ExecForeignInsert` except `slots` and `planSlots` contain multiple tuples and `*numSlots` specifies the number of tuples in those arrays.

The return value is an array of slots containing the data that was actually inserted (this might differ from the data supplied, for example as a result of trigger actions.) The passed-in `slots` can be re-used for this purpose. The number of successfully inserted tuples is returned in `*numSlots`.

The data in the returned slot is used only if the `INSERT` statement involves a view `WITH CHECK OPTION`; or if the foreign table has an `AFTER ROW` trigger. Triggers require all columns, but the FDW could choose to optimize away returning some or all columns depending on the contents of the `WITH CHECK OPTION` constraints.

If the `ExecForeignBatchInsert` or `GetForeignModifyBatchSize` pointer is set to `NULL`, attempts to insert into the foreign table will use `ExecForeignInsert`. This function is not used if the `INSERT` has the `RETURNING` clause.

Note that this function is also called when inserting routed tuples into a foreign-table partition or executing `COPY FROM` on a foreign table, in which case it is called in a different way than it is in the `INSERT` case. See the callback functions described below that allow the FDW to support that.

```
int
GetForeignModifyBatchSize(ResultRelInfo *rinfo);
```

Report the maximum number of tuples that a single `ExecForeignBatchInsert` call can handle for the specified foreign table. The executor passes at most the given number of tuples to `ExecForeignBatchInsert`. `rinfo` is the `ResultRelInfo` struct describing the target foreign table. The FDW is expected to provide a foreign server and/or foreign table option for the user to set this value, or some hard-coded value.

If the `ExecForeignBatchInsert` or `GetForeignModifyBatchSize` pointer is set to `NULL`, attempts to insert into the foreign table will use `ExecForeignInsert`.

```
TupleTableSlot *
ExecForeignUpdate(EState *estate,
                  ResultRelInfo *rinfo,
                  TupleTableSlot *slot,
                  TupleTableSlot *planSlot);
```

Update one tuple in the foreign table. `estate` is global execution state for the query. `rinfo` is the `ResultRelInfo` struct describing the target foreign table. `slot` contains the new data for the tuple; it will match the row-type definition of the foreign table. `planSlot` contains the tuple that was generated by the `ModifyTable` plan node's subplan. Unlike `slot`, this tuple contains only the new values for columns changed by the query, so do not rely on attribute numbers of the foreign table to index into `planSlot`. Also, `planSlot` typically contains additional “junk” columns. In particular, any junk columns that were requested by `AddForeignUpdateTargets` will be available from this slot.

The return value is either a slot containing the row as it was actually updated (this might differ from the data supplied, for example as a result of trigger actions), or `NULL` if no row was actually updated (again, typically as a result of triggers). The passed-in `slot` can be re-used for this purpose.

The data in the returned slot is used only if the `UPDATE` statement has a `RETURNING` clause or involves a view `WITH CHECK OPTION`; or if the foreign table has an `AFTER ROW` trigger. Triggers require all columns, but the FDW could choose to optimize away returning some or all columns depending on the contents of the `RETURNING` clause or `WITH CHECK OPTION` constraints. Regardless, some slot must be returned to indicate success, or the query's reported row count will be wrong.

If the `ExecForeignUpdate` pointer is set to `NULL`, attempts to update the foreign table will fail with an error message.

```
TupleTableSlot *
ExecForeignDelete(EState *estate,
                  ResultRelInfo *rinfo,
                  TupleTableSlot *slot,
                  TupleTableSlot *planSlot);
```

Delete one tuple from the foreign table. `estate` is global execution state for the query. `rinfo` is the `ResultRelInfo` struct describing the target foreign table. `slot` contains nothing useful upon call, but can be used to hold the returned tuple. `planSlot` contains the tuple that was generated by the `ModifyTable` plan node's subplan; in particular, it will carry any junk columns that were requested by `AddForeignUpdateTargets`. The junk column(s) must be used to identify the tuple to be deleted.

The return value is either a slot containing the row that was deleted, or `NULL` if no row was deleted (typically as a result of triggers). The passed-in `slot` can be used to hold the tuple to be returned.

The data in the returned slot is used only if the `DELETE` query has a `RETURNING` clause or the foreign table has an `AFTER ROW` trigger. Triggers require all columns, but the FDW could choose to optimize away returning some or all columns depending on the contents of the `RETURNING` clause. Regardless, some slot must be returned to indicate success, or the query's reported row count will be wrong.

If the `ExecForeignDelete` pointer is set to `NULL`, attempts to delete from the foreign table will fail with an error message.

```
void
EndForeignModify(EState *estate,
```

```
ResultRelInfo *rinfo);
```

End the table update and release resources. It is normally not important to release palloc'd memory, but for example open files and connections to remote servers should be cleaned up.

If the `EndForeignModify` pointer is set to `NULL`, no action is taken during executor shutdown.

Tuples inserted into a partitioned table by `INSERT` or `COPY FROM` are routed to partitions. If an FDW supports routable foreign-table partitions, it should also provide the following callback functions. These functions are also called when `COPY FROM` is executed on a foreign table.

```
void  
BeginForeignInsert(ModifyTableState *mtstate,  
                  ResultRelInfo *rinfo);
```

Begin executing an insert operation on a foreign table. This routine is called right before the first tuple is inserted into the foreign table in both cases when it is the partition chosen for tuple routing and the target specified in a `COPY FROM` command. It should perform any initialization needed prior to the actual insertion. Subsequently, `ExecForeignInsert` or `ExecForeignBatchInsert` will be called for tuple(s) to be inserted into the foreign table.

`mtstate` is the overall state of the `ModifyTable` plan node being executed; global data about the plan and execution state is available via this structure. `rinfo` is the `ResultRelInfo` struct describing the target foreign table. (The `ri_FdwState` field of `ResultRelInfo` is available for the FDW to store any private state it needs for this operation.)

When this is called by a `COPY FROM` command, the plan-related global data in `mtstate` is not provided and the `planSlot` parameter of `ExecForeignInsert` subsequently called for each inserted tuple is `NULL`, whether the foreign table is the partition chosen for tuple routing or the target specified in the command.

If the `BeginForeignInsert` pointer is set to `NULL`, no action is taken for the initialization.

Note that if the FDW does not support routable foreign-table partitions and/or executing `COPY FROM` on foreign tables, this function or `ExecForeignInsert`/`ExecForeignBatchInsert` subsequently called must throw error as needed.

```
void  
EndForeignInsert(EState *estate,  
                ResultRelInfo *rinfo);
```

End the insert operation and release resources. It is normally not important to release palloc'd memory, but for example open files and connections to remote servers should be cleaned up.

If the `EndForeignInsert` pointer is set to `NULL`, no action is taken for the termination.

```
int  
IsForeignRelUpdatable(Relation rel);
```

Report which update operations the specified foreign table supports. The return value should be a bit mask of rule event numbers indicating which operations are supported by the foreign table, using the `CmdType` enumeration; that is,  $(1 \ll \text{CMD\_UPDATE}) = 4$  for `UPDATE`,  $(1 \ll \text{CMD\_INSERT}) = 8$  for `INSERT`, and  $(1 \ll \text{CMD\_DELETE}) = 16$  for `DELETE`.

If the `IsForeignRelUpdatable` pointer is set to `NULL`, foreign tables are assumed to be insertable, updatable, or deletable if the FDW provides `ExecForeignInsert`, `ExecForeignUpdate`, or `ExecForeignDelete` respectively. This function is only needed if the FDW supports some tables that are updatable and some that are not. (Even then, it's permissible to throw an error in



the execution routine instead of checking in this function. However, this function is used to determine updatability for display in the `information_schema` views.)

Some inserts, updates, and deletes to foreign tables can be optimized by implementing an alternative set of interfaces. The ordinary interfaces for inserts, updates, and deletes fetch rows from the remote server and then modify those rows one at a time. In some cases, this row-by-row approach is necessary, but it can be inefficient. If it is possible for the foreign server to determine which rows should be modified without actually retrieving them, and if there are no local structures which would affect the operation (row-level local triggers, stored generated columns, or `WITH CHECK OPTION` constraints from parent views), then it is possible to arrange things so that the entire operation is performed on the remote server. The interfaces described below make this possible.

```
bool
PlanDirectModify(PlannerInfo *root,
                 ModifyTable *plan,
                 Index resultRelation,
                 int subplan_index);
```

Decide whether it is safe to execute a direct modification on the remote server. If so, return `true` after performing planning actions needed for that. Otherwise, return `false`. This optional function is called during query planning. If this function succeeds, `BeginDirectModify`, `IterateDirectModify` and `EndDirectModify` will be called at the execution stage, instead. Otherwise, the table modification will be executed using the table-updating functions described above. The parameters are the same as for `PlanForeignModify`.

To execute the direct modification on the remote server, this function must rewrite the target subplan with a `ForeignScan` plan node that executes the direct modification on the remote server. The `operation` and `resultRelation` fields of the `ForeignScan` must be set appropriately. `operation` must be set to the `CmdType` enumeration corresponding to the statement kind (that is, `CMD_UPDATE` for `UPDATE`, `CMD_INSERT` for `INSERT`, and `CMD_DELETE` for `DELETE`), and the `resultRelation` argument must be copied to the `resultRelation` field.

See Section 59.4 for additional information.

If the `PlanDirectModify` pointer is set to `NULL`, no attempts to execute a direct modification on the remote server are taken.

```
void
BeginDirectModify(ForeignScanState *node,
                 int eflags);
```

Prepare to execute a direct modification on the remote server. This is called during executor startup. It should perform any initialization needed prior to the direct modification (that should be done upon the first call to `IterateDirectModify`). The `ForeignScanState` node has already been created, but its `fdw_state` field is still `NULL`. Information about the table to modify is accessible through the `ForeignScanState` node (in particular, from the underlying `ForeignScan` plan node, which contains any FDW-private information provided by `PlanDirectModify`). `eflags` contains flag bits describing the executor's operating mode for this plan node.

Note that when `(eflags & EXEC_FLAG_EXPLAIN_ONLY)` is true, this function should not perform any externally-visible actions; it should only do the minimum required to make the node state valid for `ExplainDirectModify` and `EndDirectModify`.

If the `BeginDirectModify` pointer is set to `NULL`, no attempts to execute a direct modification on the remote server are taken.

```
TupleTableSlot *
```

```
IterateDirectModify(ForeignScanState *node);
```

When the INSERT, UPDATE or DELETE query doesn't have a RETURNING clause, just return NULL after a direct modification on the remote server. When the query has the clause, fetch one result containing the data needed for the RETURNING calculation, returning it in a tuple table slot (the node's ScanTupleSlot should be used for this purpose). The data that was actually inserted, updated or deleted must be stored in node->resultRelInfo->ri\_projectReturning->pi\_exprContext->ecxt\_scantuple. Return NULL if no more rows are available. Note that this is called in a short-lived memory context that will be reset between invocations. Create a memory context in BeginDirectModify if you need longer-lived storage, or use the es\_query\_cxt of the node's EState.

The rows returned must match the fdw\_scan\_tlist target list if one was supplied, otherwise they must match the row type of the foreign table being updated. If you choose to optimize away fetching columns that are not needed for the RETURNING calculation, you should insert nulls in those column positions, or else generate a fdw\_scan\_tlist list with those columns omitted.

Whether the query has the clause or not, the query's reported row count must be incremented by the FDW itself. When the query doesn't have the clause, the FDW must also increment the row count for the ForeignScanState node in the EXPLAIN ANALYZE case.

If the IterateDirectModify pointer is set to NULL, no attempts to execute a direct modification on the remote server are taken.

```
void  
EndDirectModify(ForeignScanState *node);
```

Clean up following a direct modification on the remote server. It is normally not important to release palloc'd memory, but for example open files and connections to the remote server should be cleaned up.

If the EndDirectModify pointer is set to NULL, no attempts to execute a direct modification on the remote server are taken.

## 59.2.5. FDW Routines for TRUNCATE

```
void  
ExecForeignTruncate(List *rels,  
                    DropBehavior behavior,  
                    bool restart_seqs);
```

Truncate foreign tables. This function is called when TRUNCATE is executed on a foreign table. rels is a list of Relation data structures of foreign tables to truncate.

behavior is either DROP\_RESTRICT or DROP\_CASCADE indicating that the RESTRICT or CASCADE option was requested in the original TRUNCATE command, respectively.

If restart\_seqs is true, the original TRUNCATE command requested the RESTART IDENTITY behavior, otherwise the CONTINUE IDENTITY behavior was requested.

Note that the ONLY options specified in the original TRUNCATE command are not passed to ExecForeignTruncate. This behavior is similar to the callback functions of SELECT, UPDATE and DELETE on a foreign table.

ExecForeignTruncate is invoked once per foreign server for which foreign tables are to be truncated. This means that all foreign tables included in rels must belong to the same server.

If the ExecForeignTruncate pointer is set to NULL, attempts to truncate foreign tables will fail with an error message.

## 59.2.6. FDW Routines for Row Locking

If an FDW wishes to support *late row locking* (as described in Section 59.5), it must provide the following callback functions:

```
RowMarkType
GetForeignRowMarkType(RangeTblEntry *rte,
                      LockClauseStrength strength);
```

Report which row-marking option to use for a foreign table. `rte` is the `RangeTblEntry` node for the table and `strength` describes the lock strength requested by the relevant `FOR UPDATE`/`SHARE` clause, if any. The result must be a member of the `RowMarkType` enum type.

This function is called during query planning for each foreign table that appears in an `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, or `SELECT FOR UPDATE`/`SHARE` query and is not the target of `UPDATE` or `DELETE`.

If the `GetForeignRowMarkType` pointer is set to `NULL`, the `ROW_MARK_COPY` option is always used. (This implies that `RefetchForeignRow` will never be called, so it need not be provided either.)

See Section 59.5 for more information.

```
void
RefetchForeignRow(EState *estate,
                  ExecRowMark *erm,
                  Datum rowid,
                  TupleTableSlot *slot,
                  bool *updated);
```

Re-fetch one tuple slot from the foreign table, after locking it if required. `estate` is global execution state for the query. `erm` is the `ExecRowMark` struct describing the target foreign table and the row lock type (if any) to acquire. `rowid` identifies the tuple to be fetched. `slot` contains nothing useful upon call, but can be used to hold the returned tuple. `updated` is an output parameter.

This function should store the tuple into the provided slot, or clear it if the row lock couldn't be obtained. The row lock type to acquire is defined by `erm->markType`, which is the value previously returned by `GetForeignRowMarkType`. (`ROW_MARK_REFERENCE` means to just re-fetch the tuple without acquiring any lock, and `ROW_MARK_COPY` will never be seen by this routine.)

In addition, `*updated` should be set to `true` if what was fetched was an updated version of the tuple rather than the same version previously obtained. (If the FDW cannot be sure about this, always returning `true` is recommended.)

Note that by default, failure to acquire a row lock should result in raising an error; returning with an empty slot is only appropriate if the `SKIP LOCKED` option is specified by `erm->waitPolicy`.

The `rowid` is the `ctid` value previously read for the row to be re-fetched. Although the `rowid` value is passed as a `Datum`, it can currently only be a `tid`. The function API is chosen in hopes that it may be possible to allow other data types for row IDs in future.

If the `RefetchForeignRow` pointer is set to `NULL`, attempts to re-fetch rows will fail with an error message.

See Section 59.5 for more information.

```
bool
RecheckForeignScan(ForeignScanState *node,
```

```
TupleTableSlot *slot);
```

Recheck that a previously-returned tuple still matches the relevant scan and join qualifiers, and possibly provide a modified version of the tuple. For foreign data wrappers which do not perform join pushdown, it will typically be more convenient to set this to NULL and instead set `fdw_recheck_qual`s appropriately. When outer joins are pushed down, however, it isn't sufficient to reapply the checks relevant to all the base tables to the result tuple, even if all needed attributes are present, because failure to match some qualifier might result in some attributes going to NULL, rather than in no tuple being returned. `RecheckForeignScan` can recheck qualifiers and return true if they are still satisfied and false otherwise, but it can also store a replacement tuple into the supplied slot.

To implement join pushdown, a foreign data wrapper will typically construct an alternative local join plan which is used only for rechecks; this will become the outer subplan of the `ForeignScan`. When a recheck is required, this subplan can be executed and the resulting tuple can be stored in the slot. This plan need not be efficient since no base table will return more than one row; for example, it may implement all joins as nested loops. The function `GetExistingLocalJoinPath` may be used to search existing paths for a suitable local join path, which can be used as the alternative local join plan. `GetExistingLocalJoinPath` searches for an unparameterized path in the path list of the specified join relation. (If it does not find such a path, it returns NULL, in which case a foreign data wrapper may build the local path by itself or may choose not to create access paths for that join.)

## 59.2.7. FDW Routines for EXPLAIN

```
void
ExplainForeignScan(ForeignScanState *node,
                   ExplainState *es);
```

Print additional EXPLAIN output for a foreign table scan. This function can call `ExplainPropertyText` and related functions to add fields to the EXPLAIN output. The flag fields in `es` can be used to determine what to print, and the state of the `ForeignScanState` node can be inspected to provide run-time statistics in the EXPLAIN ANALYZE case.

If the `ExplainForeignScan` pointer is set to NULL, no additional information is printed during EXPLAIN.

```
void
ExplainForeignModify(ModifyTableState *mtstate,
                    ResultRelInfo *rinfo,
                    List *fdw_private,
                    int subplan_index,
                    struct ExplainState *es);
```

Print additional EXPLAIN output for a foreign table update. This function can call `ExplainPropertyText` and related functions to add fields to the EXPLAIN output. The flag fields in `es` can be used to determine what to print, and the state of the `ModifyTableState` node can be inspected to provide run-time statistics in the EXPLAIN ANALYZE case. The first four arguments are the same as for `BeginForeignModify`.

If the `ExplainForeignModify` pointer is set to NULL, no additional information is printed during EXPLAIN.

```
void
ExplainDirectModify(ForeignScanState *node,
                   ExplainState *es);
```

Print additional EXPLAIN output for a direct modification on the remote server. This function can call `ExplainPropertyText` and related functions to add fields to the EXPLAIN output. The flag

fields in `es` can be used to determine what to print, and the state of the `ForeignScanState` node can be inspected to provide run-time statistics in the `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` case.

If the `ExplainDirectModify` pointer is set to `NULL`, no additional information is printed during `EXPLAIN`.

## 59.2.8. FDW Routines for ANALYZE

```
bool
AnalyzeForeignTable(Relation relation,
                    AcquireSampleRowsFunc *func,
                    BlockNumber *totalpages);
```

This function is called when `ANALYZE` is executed on a foreign table. If the FDW can collect statistics for this foreign table, it should return `true`, and provide a pointer to a function that will collect sample rows from the table in `func`, plus the estimated size of the table in pages in `totalpages`. Otherwise, return `false`.

If the FDW does not support collecting statistics for any tables, the `AnalyzeForeignTable` pointer can be set to `NULL`.

If provided, the sample collection function must have the signature

```
int
AcquireSampleRowsFunc(Relation relation,
                      int elevel,
                      HeapTuple *rows,
                      int targrows,
                      double *totalrows,
                      double *totaldeadrows);
```

A random sample of up to `targrows` rows should be collected from the table and stored into the caller-provided `rows` array. The actual number of rows collected must be returned. In addition, store estimates of the total numbers of live and dead rows in the table into the output parameters `totalrows` and `totaldeadrows`. (Set `totaldeadrows` to zero if the FDW does not have any concept of dead rows.)

## 59.2.9. FDW Routines for IMPORT FOREIGN SCHEMA

```
List *
ImportForeignSchema(ImportForeignSchemaStmt *stmt, Oid serverOid);
```

Obtain a list of foreign table creation commands. This function is called when executing `IMPORT FOREIGN SCHEMA`, and is passed the parse tree for that statement, as well as the OID of the foreign server to use. It should return a list of C strings, each of which must contain a `CREATE FOREIGN TABLE` command. These strings will be parsed and executed by the core server.

Within the `ImportForeignSchemaStmt` struct, `remote_schema` is the name of the remote schema from which tables are to be imported. `list_type` identifies how to filter table names: `FDW_IMPORT_SCHEMA_ALL` means that all tables in the remote schema should be imported (in this case `table_list` is empty), `FDW_IMPORT_SCHEMA_LIMIT_TO` means to include only tables listed in `table_list`, and `FDW_IMPORT_SCHEMA_EXCEPT` means to exclude the tables listed in `table_list`. `options` is a list of options used for the import process. The meanings of the options are up to the FDW. For example, an FDW could use an option to define whether the `NOT NULL` attributes of columns should be imported. These options need not have anything to do with those supported by the FDW as database object options.

The FDW may ignore the `local_schema` field of the `ImportForeignSchemaStmt`, because the core server will automatically insert that name into the parsed `CREATE FOREIGN TABLE` commands.

The FDW does not have to concern itself with implementing the filtering specified by `list_type` and `table_list`, either, as the core server will automatically skip any returned commands for tables excluded according to those options. However, it's often useful to avoid the work of creating commands for excluded tables in the first place. The function `IsImportableForeignTable()` may be useful to test whether a given foreign-table name will pass the filter.

If the FDW does not support importing table definitions, the `ImportForeignSchema` pointer can be set to `NULL`.

## 59.2.10. FDW Routines for Parallel Execution

A `ForeignScan` node can, optionally, support parallel execution. A parallel `ForeignScan` will be executed in multiple processes and must return each row exactly once across all cooperating processes. To do this, processes can coordinate through fixed-size chunks of dynamic shared memory. This shared memory is not guaranteed to be mapped at the same address in every process, so it must not contain pointers. The following functions are all optional, but most are required if parallel execution is to be supported.

```
bool
IsForeignScanParallelSafe(PlannerInfo *root, RelOptInfo *rel,
                          RangeTblEntry *rte);
```

Test whether a scan can be performed within a parallel worker. This function will only be called when the planner believes that a parallel plan might be possible, and should return true if it is safe for that scan to run within a parallel worker. This will generally not be the case if the remote data source has transaction semantics, unless the worker's connection to the data can somehow be made to share the same transaction context as the leader.

If this function is not defined, it is assumed that the scan must take place within the parallel leader. Note that returning true does not mean that the scan itself can be done in parallel, only that the scan can be performed within a parallel worker. Therefore, it can be useful to define this method even when parallel execution is not supported.

```
Size
EstimateDSMForeignScan(ForeignScanState *node, ParallelContext
                        *pcxt);
```

Estimate the amount of dynamic shared memory that will be required for parallel operation. This may be higher than the amount that will actually be used, but it must not be lower. The return value is in bytes. This function is optional, and can be omitted if not needed; but if it is omitted, the next three functions must be omitted as well, because no shared memory will be allocated for the FDW's use.

```
void
InitializeDSMForeignScan(ForeignScanState *node, ParallelContext
                        *pcxt,
                        void *coordinate);
```

Initialize the dynamic shared memory that will be required for parallel operation. `coordinate` points to a shared memory area of size equal to the return value of `EstimateDSMForeignScan`. This function is optional, and can be omitted if not needed.

```
void
```

```
ReInitializeDSMForeignScan(ForeignScanState *node, ParallelContext
    *pcxt,
                           void *coordinate);
```

Re-initialize the dynamic shared memory required for parallel operation when the foreign-scan plan node is about to be re-scanned. This function is optional, and can be omitted if not needed. Recommended practice is that this function reset only shared state, while the `ReScanForeignScan` function resets only local state. Currently, this function will be called before `ReScanForeignScan`, but it's best not to rely on that ordering.

```
void
InitializeWorkerForeignScan(ForeignScanState *node, shm_toc *toc,
    void *coordinate);
```

Initialize a parallel worker's local state based on the shared state set up by the leader during `InitializeDSMForeignScan`. This function is optional, and can be omitted if not needed.

```
void
ShutdownForeignScan(ForeignScanState *node);
```

Release resources when it is anticipated the node will not be executed to completion. This is not called in all cases; sometimes, `EndForeignScan` may be called without this function having been called first. Since the DSM segment used by parallel query is destroyed just after this callback is invoked, foreign data wrappers that wish to take some action before the DSM segment goes away should implement this method.

## 59.2.11. FDW Routines for Asynchronous Execution

A `ForeignScan` node can, optionally, support asynchronous execution as described in `src/backend/executor/README`. The following functions are all optional, but are all required if asynchronous execution is to be supported.

```
bool
IsForeignPathAsyncCapable(ForeignPath *path);
```

Test whether a given `ForeignPath` path can scan the underlying foreign relation asynchronously. This function will only be called at the end of query planning when the given path is a direct child of an `AppendPath` path and when the planner believes that asynchronous execution improves performance, and should return true if the given path is able to scan the foreign relation asynchronously.

If this function is not defined, it is assumed that the given path scans the foreign relation using `IterateForeignScan`. (This implies that the callback functions described below will never be called, so they need not be provided either.)

```
void
ForeignAsyncRequest(AsyncRequest *areq);
```

Produce one tuple asynchronously from the `ForeignScan` node. `areq` is the `AsyncRequest` struct describing the `ForeignScan` node and the parent `Append` node that requested the tuple from it. This function should store the tuple into the slot specified by `areq->result`, and set `areq->request_complete` to true; or if it needs to wait on an event external to the core server such as network I/O, and cannot produce any tuple immediately, set the flag to false, and set `areq->callback_pending` to true for the `ForeignScan` node to get a callback from the callback functions described below. If no more tuples are available, set the slot to NULL or an empty slot, and the `areq->request_complete` flag to true. It's recommended to use `ExecAsyncRequestDone` or `ExecAsyncRequestPending` to set the output parameters in the `areq`.

```
void  
ForeignAsyncConfigureWait(AsyncRequest *areq);
```

Configure a file descriptor event for which the `ForeignScan` node wishes to wait. This function will only be called when the `ForeignScan` node has the `areq->callback_pending` flag set, and should add the event to the `as_eventset` of the parent `Append` node described by the `areq`. See the comments for `ExecAsyncConfigureWait` in `src/backend/executor/execAsync.c` for additional information. When the file descriptor event occurs, `ForeignAsyncNotify` will be called.

```
void  
ForeignAsyncNotify(AsyncRequest *areq);
```

Process a relevant event that has occurred, then produce one tuple asynchronously from the `ForeignScan` node. This function should set the output parameters in the `areq` in the same way as `ForeignAsyncRequest`.

## 59.2.12. FDW Routines for Reparameterization of Paths

```
List *  
ReparameterizeForeignPathByChild(PlannerInfo *root, List  
    *fdw_private,  
                                RelOptInfo *child_rel);
```

This function is called while converting a path parameterized by the top-most parent of the given child relation `child_rel` to be parameterized by the child relation. The function is used to reparameterize any paths or translate any expression nodes saved in the given `fdw_private` member of a `ForeignPath`. The callback may use `reparameterize_path_by_child`, `adjust_appendrel_attrs` or `adjust_appendrel_attrs_multilevel` as required.

## 59.3. Foreign Data Wrapper Helper Functions

Several helper functions are exported from the core server so that authors of foreign data wrappers can get easy access to attributes of FDW-related objects, such as FDW options. To use any of these functions, you need to include the header file `foreign/foreign.h` in your source file. That header also defines the struct types that are returned by these functions.

```
ForeignDataWrapper *  
GetForeignDataWrapperExtended(Oid fdwid, bits16 flags);
```

This function returns a `ForeignDataWrapper` object for the foreign-data wrapper with the given OID. A `ForeignDataWrapper` object contains properties of the FDW (see `foreign/foreign.h` for details). `flags` is a bitwise-or'd bit mask indicating an extra set of options. It can take the value `FDW_MISSING_OK`, in which case a `NULL` result is returned to the caller instead of an error for an undefined object.

```
ForeignDataWrapper *  
GetForeignDataWrapper(Oid fdwid);
```

This function returns a `ForeignDataWrapper` object for the foreign-data wrapper with the given OID. A `ForeignDataWrapper` object contains properties of the FDW (see `foreign/foreign.h` for details).



```
ForeignServer *  
GetForeignServerExtended(Oid serverid, bits16 flags);
```

This function returns a `ForeignServer` object for the foreign server with the given OID. A `ForeignServer` object contains properties of the server (see `foreign/foreign.h` for details). `flags` is a bitwise-or'd bit mask indicating an extra set of options. It can take the value `FSV_MISSING_OK`, in which case a `NULL` result is returned to the caller instead of an error for an undefined object.

```
ForeignServer *  
GetForeignServer(Oid serverid);
```

This function returns a `ForeignServer` object for the foreign server with the given OID. A `ForeignServer` object contains properties of the server (see `foreign/foreign.h` for details).

```
UserMapping *  
GetUserMapping(Oid userid, Oid serverid);
```

This function returns a `UserMapping` object for the user mapping of the given role on the given server. (If there is no mapping for the specific user, it will return the mapping for `PUBLIC`, or throw error if there is none.) A `UserMapping` object contains properties of the user mapping (see `foreign/foreign.h` for details).

```
ForeignTable *  
GetForeignTable(Oid relid);
```

This function returns a `ForeignTable` object for the foreign table with the given OID. A `ForeignTable` object contains properties of the foreign table (see `foreign/foreign.h` for details).

```
List *  
GetForeignColumnOptions(Oid relid, AttrNumber attnum);
```

This function returns the per-column FDW options for the column with the given foreign table OID and attribute number, in the form of a list of `DefElem`. `NIL` is returned if the column has no options.

Some object types have name-based lookup functions in addition to the OID-based ones:

```
ForeignDataWrapper *  
GetForeignDataWrapperByName(const char *name, bool missing_ok);
```

This function returns a `ForeignDataWrapper` object for the foreign-data wrapper with the given name. If the wrapper is not found, return `NULL` if `missing_ok` is true, otherwise raise an error.

```
ForeignServer *  
GetForeignServerByName(const char *name, bool missing_ok);
```

This function returns a `ForeignServer` object for the foreign server with the given name. If the server is not found, return `NULL` if `missing_ok` is true, otherwise raise an error.

## 59.4. Foreign Data Wrapper Query Planning

The FDW callback functions `GetForeignRelSize`, `GetForeignPaths`, `GetForeignPlan`, `PlanForeignModify`, `GetForeignJoinPaths`, `GetForeignUpperPaths`, and

`PlanDirectModify` must fit into the workings of the PostgreSQL planner. Here are some notes about what they must do.

The information in `root` and `baserel` can be used to reduce the amount of information that has to be fetched from the foreign table (and therefore reduce the cost). `baserel->baserestrictinfo` is particularly interesting, as it contains restriction quals (WHERE clauses) that should be used to filter the rows to be fetched. (The FDW itself is not required to enforce these quals, as the core executor can check them instead.) `baserel->reltarget->exprs` can be used to determine which columns need to be fetched; but note that it only lists columns that have to be emitted by the `ForeignScan` plan node, not columns that are used in qual evaluation but not output by the query.

Various private fields are available for the FDW planning functions to keep information in. Generally, whatever you store in FDW private fields should be `palloc'd`, so that it will be reclaimed at the end of planning.

`baserel->fdw_private` is a void pointer that is available for FDW planning functions to store information relevant to the particular foreign table. The core planner does not touch it except to initialize it to `NULL` when the `RelOptInfo` node is created. It is useful for passing information forward from `GetForeignRelSize` to `GetForeignPaths` and/or `GetForeignPaths` to `GetForeignPlan`, thereby avoiding recalculation.

`GetForeignPaths` can identify the meaning of different access paths by storing private information in the `fdw_private` field of `ForeignPath` nodes. `fdw_private` is declared as a `List` pointer, but could actually contain anything since the core planner does not touch it. However, best practice is to use a representation that's dumpable by `nodeToString`, for use with debugging support available in the backend.

`GetForeignPlan` can examine the `fdw_private` field of the selected `ForeignPath` node, and can generate `fdw_exprs` and `fdw_private` lists to be placed in the `ForeignScan` plan node, where they will be available at execution time. Both of these lists must be represented in a form that `copyObject` knows how to copy. The `fdw_private` list has no other restrictions and is not interpreted by the core backend in any way. The `fdw_exprs` list, if not `NIL`, is expected to contain expression trees that are intended to be executed at run time. These trees will undergo post-processing by the planner to make them fully executable.

In `GetForeignPlan`, generally the passed-in target list can be copied into the plan node as-is. The passed `scan_clauses` list contains the same clauses as `baserel->baserestrictinfo`, but may be re-ordered for better execution efficiency. In simple cases the FDW can just strip `RestrictInfo` nodes from the `scan_clauses` list (using `extract_actual_clauses`) and put all the clauses into the plan node's qual list, which means that all the clauses will be checked by the executor at run time. More complex FDWs may be able to check some of the clauses internally, in which case those clauses can be removed from the plan node's qual list so that the executor doesn't waste time rechecking them.

As an example, the FDW might identify some restriction clauses of the form *foreign\_variable* = *sub\_expression*, which it determines can be executed on the remote server given the locally-evaluated value of the *sub\_expression*. The actual identification of such a clause should happen during `GetForeignPaths`, since it would affect the cost estimate for the path. The path's `fdw_private` field would probably include a pointer to the identified clause's `RestrictInfo` node. Then `GetForeignPlan` would remove that clause from `scan_clauses`, but add the *sub\_expression* to `fdw_exprs` to ensure that it gets massaged into executable form. It would probably also put control information into the plan node's `fdw_private` field to tell the execution functions what to do at run time. The query transmitted to the remote server would involve something like `WHERE foreign_variable = $1`, with the parameter value obtained at run time from evaluation of the `fdw_exprs` expression tree.

Any clauses removed from the plan node's qual list must instead be added to `fdw_recheck_quals` or rechecked by `RecheckForeignScan` in order to ensure correct behavior at the `READ COMMITTED` isolation level. When a concurrent update occurs for some other table involved in the query,

the executor may need to verify that all of the original quals are still satisfied for the tuple, possibly against a different set of parameter values. Using `fdw_recheck_quals` is typically easier than implementing checks inside `RecheckForeignScan`, but this method will be insufficient when outer joins have been pushed down, since the join tuples in that case might have some fields go to NULL without rejecting the tuple entirely.

Another `ForeignScan` field that can be filled by FDWs is `fdw_scan_tlist`, which describes the tuples returned by the FDW for this plan node. For simple foreign table scans this can be set to NIL, implying that the returned tuples have the row type declared for the foreign table. A non-NIL value must be a target list (list of `TargetEntry`s) containing `Vars` and/or expressions representing the returned columns. This might be used, for example, to show that the FDW has omitted some columns that it noticed won't be needed for the query. Also, if the FDW can compute expressions used by the query more cheaply than can be done locally, it could add those expressions to `fdw_scan_tlist`. Note that join plans (created from paths made by `GetForeignJoinPaths`) must always supply `fdw_scan_tlist` to describe the set of columns they will return.

The FDW should always construct at least one path that depends only on the table's restriction clauses. In join queries, it might also choose to construct path(s) that depend on join clauses, for example `foreign_variable = local_variable`. Such clauses will not be found in `baserel->baserestrictinfo` but must be sought in the relation's join lists. A path using such a clause is called a “parameterized path”. It must identify the other relations used in the selected join clause(s) with a suitable value of `param_info`; use `get_baserel_parampathinfo` to compute that value. In `GetForeignPlan`, the `local_variable` portion of the join clause would be added to `fdw_exprs`, and then at run time the case works the same as for an ordinary restriction clause.

If an FDW supports remote joins, `GetForeignJoinPaths` should produce `ForeignPaths` for potential remote joins in much the same way as `GetForeignPaths` works for base tables. Information about the intended join can be passed forward to `GetForeignPlan` in the same ways described above. However, `baserestrictinfo` is not relevant for join relations; instead, the relevant join clauses for a particular join are passed to `GetForeignJoinPaths` as a separate parameter (`extra->restrictlist`).

An FDW might additionally support direct execution of some plan actions that are above the level of scans and joins, such as grouping or aggregation. To offer such options, the FDW should generate paths and insert them into the appropriate *upper relation*. For example, a path representing remote aggregation should be inserted into the `UPPERREL_GROUP_AGG` relation, using `add_path`. This path will be compared on a cost basis with local aggregation performed by reading a simple scan path for the foreign relation (note that such a path must also be supplied, else there will be an error at plan time). If the remote-aggregation path wins, which it usually would, it will be converted into a plan in the usual way, by calling `GetForeignPlan`. The recommended place to generate such paths is in the `GetForeignUpperPaths` callback function, which is called for each upper relation (i.e., each post-scan/join processing step), if all the base relations of the query come from the same FDW.

`PlanForeignModify` and the other callbacks described in Section 59.2.4 are designed around the assumption that the foreign relation will be scanned in the usual way and then individual row updates will be driven by a local `ModifyTable` plan node. This approach is necessary for the general case where an update requires reading local tables as well as foreign tables. However, if the operation could be executed entirely by the foreign server, the FDW could generate a path representing that and insert it into the `UPPERREL_FINAL` upper relation, where it would compete against the `ModifyTable` approach. This approach could also be used to implement remote `SELECT FOR UPDATE`, rather than using the row locking callbacks described in Section 59.2.6. Keep in mind that a path inserted into `UPPERREL_FINAL` is responsible for implementing *all* behavior of the query.

When planning an `UPDATE` or `DELETE`, `PlanForeignModify` and `PlanDirectModify` can look up the `RelOptInfo` struct for the foreign table and make use of the `baserel->fdw_private` data previously created by the scan-planning functions. However, in `INSERT` the target table is not scanned so there is no `RelOptInfo` for it. The `List` returned by `PlanForeignModify` has the same restrictions as the `fdw_private` list of a `ForeignScan` plan node, that is it must contain only structures that `copyObject` knows how to copy.

INSERT with an ON CONFLICT clause does not support specifying the conflict target, as unique constraints or exclusion constraints on remote tables are not locally known. This in turn implies that ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE is not supported, since the specification is mandatory there.

## 59.5. Row Locking in Foreign Data Wrappers

If an FDW's underlying storage mechanism has a concept of locking individual rows to prevent concurrent updates of those rows, it is usually worthwhile for the FDW to perform row-level locking with as close an approximation as practical to the semantics used in ordinary PostgreSQL tables. There are multiple considerations involved in this.

One key decision to be made is whether to perform *early locking* or *late locking*. In early locking, a row is locked when it is first retrieved from the underlying store, while in late locking, the row is locked only when it is known that it needs to be locked. (The difference arises because some rows may be discarded by locally-checked restriction or join conditions.) Early locking is much simpler and avoids extra round trips to a remote store, but it can cause locking of rows that need not have been locked, resulting in reduced concurrency or even unexpected deadlocks. Also, late locking is only possible if the row to be locked can be uniquely re-identified later. Preferably the row identifier should identify a specific version of the row, as PostgreSQL TIDs do.

By default, PostgreSQL ignores locking considerations when interfacing to FDWs, but an FDW can perform early locking without any explicit support from the core code. The API functions described in Section 59.2.6, which were added in PostgreSQL 9.5, allow an FDW to use late locking if it wishes.

An additional consideration is that in READ COMMITTED isolation mode, PostgreSQL may need to re-check restriction and join conditions against an updated version of some target tuple. Rechecking join conditions requires re-obtaining copies of the non-target rows that were previously joined to the target tuple. When working with standard PostgreSQL tables, this is done by including the TIDs of the non-target tables in the column list projected through the join, and then re-fetching non-target rows when required. This approach keeps the join data set compact, but it requires inexpensive re-fetch capability, as well as a TID that can uniquely identify the row version to be re-fetched. By default, therefore, the approach used with foreign tables is to include a copy of the entire row fetched from a foreign table in the column list projected through the join. This puts no special demands on the FDW but can result in reduced performance of merge and hash joins. An FDW that is capable of meeting the re-fetch requirements can choose to do it the first way.

For an UPDATE or DELETE on a foreign table, it is recommended that the ForeignScan operation on the target table perform early locking on the rows that it fetches, perhaps via the equivalent of SELECT FOR UPDATE. An FDW can detect whether a table is an UPDATE/DELETE target at plan time by comparing its relid to root->parse->resultRelation, or at execution time by using ExecRelationIsTargetRelation(). An alternative possibility is to perform late locking within the ExecForeignUpdate or ExecForeignDelete callback, but no special support is provided for this.

For foreign tables that are specified to be locked by a SELECT FOR UPDATE / SHARE command, the ForeignScan operation can again perform early locking by fetching tuples with the equivalent of SELECT FOR UPDATE / SHARE. To perform late locking instead, provide the callback functions defined in Section 59.2.6. In GetForeignRowMarkType, select rowmark option ROW\_MARK\_EXCLUSIVE, ROW\_MARK\_NOKEYEXCLUSIVE, ROW\_MARK\_SHARE, or ROW\_MARK\_KEYSHARE depending on the requested lock strength. (The core code will act the same regardless of which of these four options you choose.) Elsewhere, you can detect whether a foreign table was specified to be locked by this type of command by using get\_plan\_rowmark at plan time, or ExecFindRowMark at execution time; you must check not only whether a non-null rowmark struct is returned, but that its strength field is not LCS\_NONE.

Lastly, for foreign tables that are used in an UPDATE, DELETE or SELECT FOR UPDATE / SHARE command but are not specified to be row-locked, you can override the default choice to copy entire rows by having GetForeignRowMarkType select option ROW\_MARK\_REFERENCE when it

sees lock strength `LCS_NONE`. This will cause `RefetchForeignRow` to be called with that value for `markType`; it should then re-fetch the row without acquiring any new lock. (If you have a `GetForeignRowMarkType` function but don't wish to re-fetch unlocked rows, select option `ROW_MARK_COPY` for `LCS_NONE`.)

See `src/include/nodes/lockoptions.h`, the comments for `RowMarkType` and `PlanRowMark` in `src/include/nodes/plannodes.h`, and the comments for `ExecRowMark` in `src/include/nodes/execnodes.h` for additional information.

---

# Chapter 60. Writing a Table Sampling Method

PostgreSQL's implementation of the `TABLESAMPLE` clause supports custom table sampling methods, in addition to the `BERNOULLI` and `SYSTEM` methods that are required by the SQL standard. The sampling method determines which rows of the table will be selected when the `TABLESAMPLE` clause is used.

At the SQL level, a table sampling method is represented by a single SQL function, typically implemented in C, having the signature

```
method_name(internal) RETURNS tsm_handler
```

The name of the function is the same method name appearing in the `TABLESAMPLE` clause. The `internal` argument is a dummy (always having value zero) that simply serves to prevent this function from being called directly from an SQL command. The result of the function must be a palloc'd struct of type `TsmRoutine`, which contains pointers to support functions for the sampling method. These support functions are plain C functions and are not visible or callable at the SQL level. The support functions are described in Section 60.1.

In addition to function pointers, the `TsmRoutine` struct must provide these additional fields:

```
List *parameterTypes
```

This is an OID list containing the data type OIDs of the parameter(s) that will be accepted by the `TABLESAMPLE` clause when this sampling method is used. For example, for the built-in methods, this list contains a single item with value `FLOAT4OID`, which represents the sampling percentage. Custom sampling methods can have more or different parameters.

```
bool repeatable_across_queries
```

If `true`, the sampling method can deliver identical samples across successive queries, if the same parameters and `REPEATABLE` seed value are supplied each time and the table contents have not changed. When this is `false`, the `REPEATABLE` clause is not accepted for use with the sampling method.

```
bool repeatable_across_scans
```

If `true`, the sampling method can deliver identical samples across successive scans in the same query (assuming unchanging parameters, seed value, and snapshot). When this is `false`, the planner will not select plans that would require scanning the sampled table more than once, since that might result in inconsistent query output.

The `TsmRoutine` struct type is declared in `src/include/access/tsmapi.h`, which see for additional details.

The table sampling methods included in the standard distribution are good references when trying to write your own. Look into the `src/backend/access/tablesample` subdirectory of the source tree for the built-in sampling methods, and into the `contrib` subdirectory for add-on methods.

## 60.1. Sampling Method Support Functions

The TSM handler function returns a palloc'd `TsmRoutine` struct containing pointers to the support functions described below. Most of the functions are required, but some are optional, and those pointers can be `NULL`.

```
void
SampleScanGetSampleSize (PlannerInfo *root,
                          RelOptInfo *baserel,
                          List *paramexprs,
                          BlockNumber *pages,
                          double *tuples);
```

This function is called during planning. It must estimate the number of relation pages that will be read during a sample scan, and the number of tuples that will be selected by the scan. (For example, these might be determined by estimating the sampling fraction, and then multiplying the `baserel->pages` and `baserel->tuples` numbers by that, being sure to round the results to integral values.) The `paramexprs` list holds the expression(s) that are parameters to the `TABLESAMPLE` clause. It is recommended to use `estimate_expression_value()` to try to reduce these expressions to constants, if their values are needed for estimation purposes; but the function must provide size estimates even if they cannot be reduced, and it should not fail even if the values appear invalid (remember that they're only estimates of what the run-time values will be). The `pages` and `tuples` parameters are outputs.

```
void
InitSampleScan (SampleScanState *node,
                int eflags);
```

Initialize for execution of a `SampleScan` plan node. This is called during executor startup. It should perform any initialization needed before processing can start. The `SampleScanState` node has already been created, but its `tsm_state` field is `NULL`. The `InitSampleScan` function can `palloc` whatever internal state data is needed by the sampling method, and store a pointer to it in `node->tsm_state`. Information about the table to scan is accessible through other fields of the `SampleScanState` node (but note that the `node->ss.ss_currentScanDesc` scan descriptor is not set up yet). `eflags` contains flag bits describing the executor's operating mode for this plan node.

When `(eflags & EXEC_FLAG_EXPLAIN_ONLY)` is true, the scan will not actually be performed, so this function should only do the minimum required to make the node state valid for `EXPLAIN` and `EndSampleScan`.

This function can be omitted (set the pointer to `NULL`), in which case `BeginSampleScan` must perform all initialization needed by the sampling method.

```
void
BeginSampleScan (SampleScanState *node,
                 Datum *params,
                 int nparams,
                 uint32 seed);
```

Begin execution of a sampling scan. This is called just before the first attempt to fetch a tuple, and may be called again if the scan needs to be restarted. Information about the table to scan is accessible through fields of the `SampleScanState` node (but note that the `node->ss.ss_currentScanDesc` scan descriptor is not set up yet). The `params` array, of length `nparams`, contains the values of the parameters supplied in the `TABLESAMPLE` clause. These will have the number and types specified in the sampling method's `parameterTypes` list, and have been checked to not be null. `seed` contains a seed to use for any random numbers generated within the sampling method; it is either a hash derived from the `REPEATABLE` value if one was given, or the result of `random()` if not.

This function may adjust the fields `node->use_bulkread` and `node->use_pagemode`. If `node->use_bulkread` is true, which it is by default, the scan will use a buffer access strategy that encourages recycling buffers after use. It might be reasonable to set this to false if the scan will visit only a small fraction of the table's pages. If `node->use_pagemode` is true, which it is by

default, the scan will perform visibility checking in a single pass for all tuples on each visited page. It might be reasonable to set this to `false` if the scan will select only a small fraction of the tuples on each visited page. That will result in fewer tuple visibility checks being performed, though each one will be more expensive because it will require more locking.

If the sampling method is marked `repeatable_across_scans`, it must be able to select the same set of tuples during a rescan as it did originally, that is a fresh call of `BeginSampleScan` must lead to selecting the same tuples as before (if the `TABLESAMPLE` parameters and seed don't change).

```
BlockNumber
NextSampleBlock (SampleScanState *node, BlockNumber nblocks);
```

Returns the block number of the next page to be scanned, or `InvalidBlockNumber` if no pages remain to be scanned.

This function can be omitted (set the pointer to `NULL`), in which case the core code will perform a sequential scan of the entire relation. Such a scan can use synchronized scanning, so that the sampling method cannot assume that the relation pages are visited in the same order on each scan.

```
OffsetNumber
NextSampleTuple (SampleScanState *node,
                 BlockNumber blockno,
                 OffsetNumber maxoffset);
```

Returns the offset number of the next tuple to be sampled on the specified page, or `InvalidOffsetNumber` if no tuples remain to be sampled. `maxoffset` is the largest offset number in use on the page.

### Note

`NextSampleTuple` is not explicitly told which of the offset numbers in the range 1 .. `maxoffset` actually contain valid tuples. This is not normally a problem since the core code ignores requests to sample missing or invisible tuples; that should not result in any bias in the sample. However, if necessary, the function can use `node->donetuples` to examine how many of the tuples it returned were valid and visible.

### Note

`NextSampleTuple` must *not* assume that `blockno` is the same page number returned by the most recent `NextSampleBlock` call. It was returned by some previous `NextSampleBlock` call, but the core code is allowed to call `NextSampleBlock` in advance of actually scanning pages, so as to support prefetching. It is OK to assume that once sampling of a given page begins, successive `NextSampleTuple` calls all refer to the same page until `InvalidOffsetNumber` is returned.

```
void
EndSampleScan (SampleScanState *node);
```

End the scan and release resources. It is normally not important to release `palloc'd` memory, but any externally-visible resources should be cleaned up. This function can be omitted (set the pointer to `NULL`) in the common case where no such resources exist.



---

# Chapter 61. Writing a Custom Scan Provider

PostgreSQL supports a set of experimental facilities which are intended to allow extension modules to add new scan types to the system. Unlike a foreign data wrapper, which is only responsible for knowing how to scan its own foreign tables, a custom scan provider can provide an alternative method of scanning any relation in the system. Typically, the motivation for writing a custom scan provider will be to allow the use of some optimization not supported by the core system, such as caching or some form of hardware acceleration. This chapter outlines how to write a new custom scan provider.

Implementing a new type of custom scan is a three-step process. First, during planning, it is necessary to generate access paths representing a scan using the proposed strategy. Second, if one of those access paths is selected by the planner as the optimal strategy for scanning a particular relation, the access path must be converted to a plan. Finally, it must be possible to execute the plan and generate the same results that would have been generated for any other access path targeting the same relation.

## 61.1. Creating Custom Scan Paths

A custom scan provider will typically add paths for a base relation by setting the following hook, which is called after the core code has generated all the access paths it can for the relation (except for Gather paths, which are made after this call so that they can use partial paths added by the hook):

```
typedef void (*set_rel_pathlist_hook_type) (PlannerInfo *root,
                                           RelOptInfo *rel,
                                           Index rti,
                                           RangeTblEntry *rte);

extern PGDLLIMPORT set_rel_pathlist_hook_type
    set_rel_pathlist_hook;
```

Although this hook function can be used to examine, modify, or remove paths generated by the core system, a custom scan provider will typically confine itself to generating CustomPath objects and adding them to rel using add\_path. The custom scan provider is responsible for initializing the CustomPath object, which is declared like this:

```
typedef struct CustomPath
{
    Path      path;
    uint32    flags;
    List      *custom_paths;
    List      *custom_private;
    const CustomPathMethods *methods;
} CustomPath;
```

path must be initialized as for any other path, including the row-count estimate, start and total cost, and sort ordering provided by this path. flags is a bit mask, which specifies whether the scan provider can support certain optional capabilities. flags should include CUSTOMPATH\_SUPPORT\_BACKWARD\_SCAN if the custom path can support a backward scan, CUSTOMPATH\_SUPPORT\_MARK\_RESTORE if it can support mark and restore, and CUSTOMPATH\_SUPPORT\_PROJECTION if it can perform projections. (If CUSTOMPATH\_SUPPORT\_PROJECTION is not set, the scan node will only be asked to produce Vars of the scanned relation; while if that flag is set, the scan node must be able to evaluate scalar expressions over these Vars.) An optional custom\_paths is a list of Path nodes used by this custom-path node; these will be transformed into Plan nodes by planner. custom\_private can be used to store the custom path's private data. Private data should

be stored in a form that can be handled by `nodeToString`, so that debugging routines that attempt to print the custom path will work as designed. `methods` must point to a (usually statically allocated) object implementing the required custom path methods, which are further detailed below.

A custom scan provider can also provide join paths. Just as for base relations, such a path must produce the same output as would normally be produced by the join it replaces. To do this, the join provider should set the following hook, and then within the hook function, create `CustomPath` path(s) for the join relation.

```
typedef void (*set_join_pathlist_hook_type) (PlannerInfo *root,
                                             RelOptInfo *joinrel,
                                             RelOptInfo *outerrel,
                                             RelOptInfo *innerrel,
                                             JoinType jointype,
                                             JoinPathExtraData
                                             *extra);
extern PGDLLIMPORT set_join_pathlist_hook_type
set_join_pathlist_hook;
```

This hook will be invoked repeatedly for the same join relation, with different combinations of inner and outer relations; it is the responsibility of the hook to minimize duplicated work.

### 61.1.1. Custom Scan Path Callbacks

```
Plan *(*PlanCustomPath) (PlannerInfo *root,
                          RelOptInfo *rel,
                          CustomPath *best_path,
                          List *tlist,
                          List *clauses,
                          List *custom_plans);
```

Convert a custom path to a finished plan. The return value will generally be a `CustomScan` object, which the callback must allocate and initialize. See Section 61.2 for more details.

```
List *(*ReparameterizeCustomPathByChild) (PlannerInfo *root,
                                           List *custom_private,
                                           RelOptInfo *child_rel);
```

This callback is called while converting a path parameterized by the top-most parent of the given child relation `child_rel` to be parameterized by the child relation. The callback is used to reparameterize any paths or translate any expression nodes saved in the given `custom_private` member of a `CustomPath`. The callback may use `reparameterize_path_by_child`, `adjust_appendrel_attrs` or `adjust_appendrel_attrs_multilevel` as required.

## 61.2. Creating Custom Scan Plans

A custom scan is represented in a finished plan tree using the following structure:

```
typedef struct CustomScan
{
    Scan      scan;
    uint32    flags;
    List      *custom_plans;
    List      *custom_exprs;
```

```
List      *custom_private;
List      *custom_scan_tlist;
Bitmapset *custom_relids;
const CustomScanMethods *methods;
} CustomScan;
```

scan must be initialized as for any other scan, including estimated costs, target lists, qualifications, and so on. `flags` is a bit mask with the same meaning as in `CustomPath`. `custom_plans` can be used to store child `Plan` nodes. `custom_exprs` should be used to store expression trees that will need to be fixed up by `setrefs.c` and `subselect.c`, while `custom_private` should be used to store other private data that is only used by the custom scan provider itself. `custom_scan_tlist` can be `NIL` when scanning a base relation, indicating that the custom scan returns scan tuples that match the base relation's row type. Otherwise it is a target list describing the actual scan tuples. `custom_scan_tlist` must be provided for joins, and could be provided for scans if the custom scan provider can compute some non-Var expressions. `custom_relids` is set by the core code to the set of relations (range table indexes) that this scan node handles; except when this scan is replacing a join, it will have only one member. `methods` must point to a (usually statically allocated) object implementing the required custom scan methods, which are further detailed below.

When a `CustomScan` scans a single relation, `scan.scanrelid` must be the range table index of the table to be scanned. When it replaces a join, `scan.scanrelid` should be zero.

Plan trees must be able to be duplicated using `copyObject`, so all the data stored within the “custom” fields must consist of nodes that that function can handle. Furthermore, custom scan providers cannot substitute a larger structure that embeds a `CustomScan` for the structure itself, as would be possible for a `CustomPath` or `CustomScanState`.

### 61.2.1. Custom Scan Plan Callbacks

```
Node *(*CreateCustomScanState) (CustomScan *cscan);
```

Allocate a `CustomScanState` for this `CustomScan`. The actual allocation will often be larger than required for an ordinary `CustomScanState`, because many providers will wish to embed that as the first field of a larger structure. The value returned must have the node tag and `methods` set appropriately, but other fields should be left as zeroes at this stage; after `ExecInitCustomScan` performs basic initialization, the `BeginCustomScan` callback will be invoked to give the custom scan provider a chance to do whatever else is needed.

## 61.3. Executing Custom Scans

When a `CustomScan` is executed, its execution state is represented by a `CustomScanState`, which is declared as follows:

```
typedef struct CustomScanState
{
    ScanState ss;
    uint32    flags;
    const CustomExecMethods *methods;
} CustomScanState;
```

`ss` is initialized as for any other scan state, except that if the scan is for a join rather than a base relation, `ss.ss_currentRelation` is left `NULL`. `flags` is a bit mask with the same meaning as in `CustomPath` and `CustomScan`. `methods` must point to a (usually statically allocated) object implementing the required custom scan state methods, which are further detailed below. Typically, a `CustomScanState`, which need not support `copyObject`, will actually be a larger structure embedding the above as its first member.

## 61.3.1. Custom Scan Execution Callbacks

```
void (*BeginCustomScan) (CustomScanState *node,  
                        EState *estate,  
                        int eflags);
```

Complete initialization of the supplied CustomScanState. Standard fields have been initialized by ExecInitCustomScan, but any private fields should be initialized here.

```
TupleTableSlot *(*ExecCustomScan) (CustomScanState *node);
```

Fetch the next scan tuple. If any tuples remain, it should fill ps\_ResultTupleSlot with the next tuple in the current scan direction, and then return the tuple slot. If not, NULL or an empty slot should be returned.

```
void (*EndCustomScan) (CustomScanState *node);
```

Clean up any private data associated with the CustomScanState. This method is required, but it does not need to do anything if there is no associated data or it will be cleaned up automatically.

```
void (*ReScanCustomScan) (CustomScanState *node);
```

Rewind the current scan to the beginning and prepare to rescan the relation.

```
void (*MarkPosCustomScan) (CustomScanState *node);
```

Save the current scan position so that it can subsequently be restored by the RestrPosCustomScan callback. This callback is optional, and need only be supplied if the CUSTOMPATH\_SUPPORT\_MARK\_RESTORE flag is set.

```
void (*RestrPosCustomScan) (CustomScanState *node);
```

Restore the previous scan position as saved by the MarkPosCustomScan callback. This callback is optional, and need only be supplied if the CUSTOMPATH\_SUPPORT\_MARK\_RESTORE flag is set.

```
Size (*EstimatedDSMCustomScan) (CustomScanState *node,  
                                ParallelContext *pcxt);
```

Estimate the amount of dynamic shared memory that will be required for parallel operation. This may be higher than the amount that will actually be used, but it must not be lower. The return value is in bytes. This callback is optional, and need only be supplied if this custom scan provider supports parallel execution.

```
void (*InitializedDSMCustomScan) (CustomScanState *node,  
                                ParallelContext *pcxt,  
                                void *coordinate);
```

Initialize the dynamic shared memory that will be required for parallel operation. coordinate points to a shared memory area of size equal to the return value of EstimatedDSMCustomScan. This callback is optional, and need only be supplied if this custom scan provider supports parallel execution.

```
void (*ReInitializedDSMCustomScan) (CustomScanState *node,  
                                     ParallelContext *pcxt,  
                                     void *coordinate);
```

Re-initialize the dynamic shared memory required for parallel operation when the custom-scan plan node is about to be re-scanned. This callback is optional, and need only be supplied if this custom scan provider supports parallel execution. Recommended practice is that this callback reset only shared state, while the `ReScanCustomScan` callback resets only local state. Currently, this callback will be called before `ReScanCustomScan`, but it's best not to rely on that ordering.

```
void (*InitializeWorkerCustomScan) (CustomScanState *node,  
                                     shm_toc *toc,  
                                     void *coordinate);
```

Initialize a parallel worker's local state based on the shared state set up by the leader during `InitializeDSMCustomScan`. This callback is optional, and need only be supplied if this custom scan provider supports parallel execution.

```
void (*ShutdownCustomScan) (CustomScanState *node);
```

Release resources when it is anticipated the node will not be executed to completion. This is not called in all cases; sometimes, `EndCustomScan` may be called without this function having been called first. Since the DSM segment used by parallel query is destroyed just after this callback is invoked, custom scan providers that wish to take some action before the DSM segment goes away should implement this method.

```
void (*ExplainCustomScan) (CustomScanState *node,  
                           List *ancestors,  
                           ExplainState *es);
```

Output additional information for EXPLAIN of a custom-scan plan node. This callback is optional. Common data stored in the `ScanState`, such as the target list and scan relation, will be shown even without this callback, but the callback allows the display of additional, private state.

---

# Chapter 62. Genetic Query Optimizer

## Author

Written by Martin Utesch (<utesch@aut.tu-freiberg.de>) for the Institute of Automatic Control at the University of Mining and Technology in Freiberg, Germany.

## 62.1. Query Handling as a Complex Optimization Problem

Among all relational operators the most difficult one to process and optimize is the *join*. The number of possible query plans grows exponentially with the number of joins in the query. Further optimization effort is caused by the support of a variety of *join methods* (e.g., nested loop, hash join, merge join in PostgreSQL) to process individual joins and a diversity of *indexes* (e.g., B-tree, hash, GiST and GIN in PostgreSQL) as access paths for relations.

The normal PostgreSQL query optimizer performs a *near-exhaustive search* over the space of alternative strategies. This algorithm, first introduced in IBM's System R database, produces a near-optimal join order, but can take an enormous amount of time and memory space when the number of joins in the query grows large. This makes the ordinary PostgreSQL query optimizer inappropriate for queries that join a large number of tables.

The Institute of Automatic Control at the University of Mining and Technology, in Freiberg, Germany, encountered some problems when it wanted to use PostgreSQL as the backend for a decision support knowledge based system for the maintenance of an electrical power grid. The DBMS needed to handle large join queries for the inference machine of the knowledge based system. The number of joins in these queries made using the normal query optimizer infeasible.

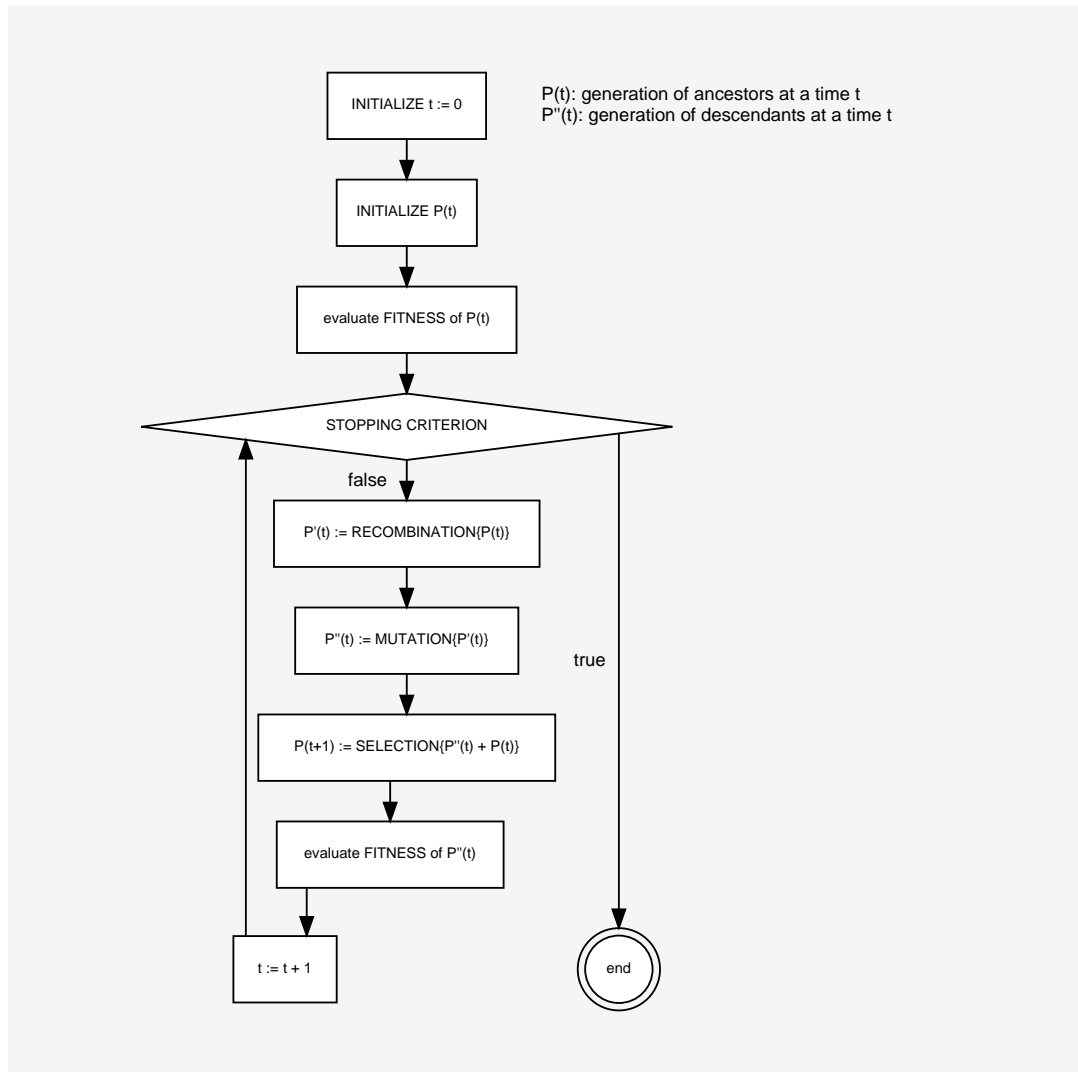
In the following we describe the implementation of a *genetic algorithm* to solve the join ordering problem in a manner that is efficient for queries involving large numbers of joins.

## 62.2. Genetic Algorithms

The genetic algorithm (GA) is a heuristic optimization method which operates through randomized search. The set of possible solutions for the optimization problem is considered as a *population* of *individuals*. The degree of adaptation of an individual to its environment is specified by its *fitness*.

The coordinates of an individual in the search space are represented by *chromosomes*, in essence a set of character strings. A *gene* is a subsection of a chromosome which encodes the value of a single parameter being optimized. Typical encodings for a gene could be *binary* or *integer*.

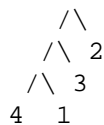
Through simulation of the evolutionary operations *recombination*, *mutation*, and *selection* new generations of search points are found that show a higher average fitness than their ancestors. Figure 62.1 illustrates these steps.

**Figure 62.1. Structure of a Genetic Algorithm**

According to the comp.ai.genetic FAQ it cannot be stressed too strongly that a GA is not a pure random search for a solution to a problem. A GA uses stochastic processes, but the result is distinctly non-random (better than random).

## 62.3. Genetic Query Optimization (GEQO) in PostgreSQL

The GEQO module approaches the query optimization problem as though it were the well-known traveling salesman problem (TSP). Possible query plans are encoded as integer strings. Each string represents the join order from one relation of the query to the next. For example, the join tree



is encoded by the integer string '4-1-3-2', which means, first join relation '4' and '1', then '3', and then '2', where 1, 2, 3, 4 are relation IDs within the PostgreSQL optimizer.

Specific characteristics of the GEQO implementation in PostgreSQL are:

- Usage of a *steady state* GA (replacement of the least fit individuals in a population, not whole-generational replacement) allows fast convergence towards improved query plans. This is essential for query handling with reasonable time;
- Usage of *edge recombination crossover* which is especially suited to keep edge losses low for the solution of the TSP by means of a GA;
- Mutation as genetic operator is deprecated so that no repair mechanisms are needed to generate legal TSP tours.

Parts of the GEQO module are adapted from D. Whitley's Genitor algorithm.

The GEQO module allows the PostgreSQL query optimizer to support large join queries effectively through non-exhaustive search.

### 62.3.1. Generating Possible Plans with GEQO

The GEQO planning process uses the standard planner code to generate plans for scans of individual relations. Then join plans are developed using the genetic approach. As shown above, each candidate join plan is represented by a sequence in which to join the base relations. In the initial stage, the GEQO code simply generates some possible join sequences at random. For each join sequence considered, the standard planner code is invoked to estimate the cost of performing the query using that join sequence. (For each step of the join sequence, all three possible join strategies are considered; and all the initially-determined relation scan plans are available. The estimated cost is the cheapest of these possibilities.) Join sequences with lower estimated cost are considered “more fit” than those with higher cost. The genetic algorithm discards the least fit candidates. Then new candidates are generated by combining genes of more-fit candidates — that is, by using randomly-chosen portions of known low-cost join sequences to create new sequences for consideration. This process is repeated until a preset number of join sequences have been considered; then the best one found at any time during the search is used to generate the finished plan.

This process is inherently nondeterministic, because of the randomized choices made during both the initial population selection and subsequent “mutation” of the best candidates. To avoid surprising changes of the selected plan, each run of the GEQO algorithm restarts its random number generator with the current `geqo_seed` parameter setting. As long as `geqo_seed` and the other GEQO parameters are kept fixed, the same plan will be generated for a given query (and other planner inputs such as statistics). To experiment with different search paths, try changing `geqo_seed`.

### 62.3.2. Future Implementation Tasks for PostgreSQL GEQO

Work is still needed to improve the genetic algorithm parameter settings. In file `src/backend/optimizer/geqo/geqo_main.c`, routines `gimme_pool_size` and `gimme_number_generations`, we have to find a compromise for the parameter settings to satisfy two competing demands:

- Optimality of the query plan
- Computing time

In the current implementation, the fitness of each candidate join sequence is estimated by running the standard planner's join selection and cost estimation code from scratch. To the extent that different candidates use similar sub-sequences of joins, a great deal of work will be repeated. This could be made significantly faster by retaining cost estimates for sub-joins. The problem is to avoid expending unreasonable amounts of memory on retaining that state.

At a more basic level, it is not clear that solving query optimization with a GA algorithm designed for TSP is appropriate. In the TSP case, the cost associated with any substring (partial tour) is independent of the rest of the tour, but this is certainly not true for query optimization. Thus it is questionable whether edge recombination crossover is the most effective mutation procedure.



## 62.4. Further Reading

The following resources contain additional information about genetic algorithms:

- The Hitch-Hiker's Guide to Evolutionary Computation<sup>1</sup>, (FAQ for news://comp.ai.genetic)
- Evolutionary Computation and its application to art and design<sup>2</sup>, by Craig Reynolds
- [elma04]
- [fong]

---

<sup>1</sup> <http://www.faqs.org/faqs/ai-faq/genetic/part1/>

<sup>2</sup> <https://www.red3d.com/cwr/evolve.html>

---

# Chapter 63. Table Access Method Interface Definition

This chapter explains the interface between the core PostgreSQL system and *table access methods*, which manage the storage for tables. The core system knows little about these access methods beyond what is specified here, so it is possible to develop entirely new access method types by writing add-on code.

Each table access method is described by a row in the `pg_am` system catalog. The `pg_am` entry specifies a name and a *handler function* for the table access method. These entries can be created and deleted using the `CREATE ACCESS METHOD` and `DROP ACCESS METHOD` SQL commands.

A table access method handler function must be declared to accept a single argument of type `internal` and to return the pseudo-type `table_am_handler`. The argument is a dummy value that simply serves to prevent handler functions from being called directly from SQL commands. The result of the function must be a pointer to a struct of type `TableAmRoutine`, which contains everything that the core code needs to know to make use of the table access method. The return value needs to be of server lifetime, which is typically achieved by defining it as a `static const` variable in global scope. The `TableAmRoutine` struct, also called the access method's *API struct*, defines the behavior of the access method using callbacks. These callbacks are pointers to plain C functions and are not visible or callable at the SQL level. All the callbacks and their behavior is defined in the `TableAmRoutine` structure (with comments inside the struct defining the requirements for callbacks). Most callbacks have wrapper functions, which are documented from the point of view of a user (rather than an implementor) of the table access method. For details, please refer to the `src/include/access/tableam.h`<sup>1</sup> file.

To implement an access method, an implementor will typically need to implement an AM-specific type of tuple table slot (see `src/include/executor/tuptable.h`<sup>2</sup>), which allows code outside the access method to hold references to tuples of the AM, and to access the columns of the tuple.

Currently, the way an AM actually stores data is fairly unconstrained. For example, it's possible, but not required, to use postgres' shared buffer cache. In case it is used, it likely makes sense to use PostgreSQL's standard page layout as described in Section 73.6.

One fairly large constraint of the table access method API is that, currently, if the AM wants to support modifications and/or indexes, it is necessary for each tuple to have a tuple identifier (TID) consisting of a block number and an item number (see also Section 73.6). It is not strictly necessary that the sub-parts of TIDs have the same meaning they e.g., have for heap, but if bitmap scan support is desired (it is optional), the block number needs to provide locality.

For crash safety, an AM can use postgres' WAL, or a custom implementation. If WAL is chosen, either Generic WAL Records can be used, or a Custom WAL Resource Manager can be implemented.

To implement transactional support in a manner that allows different table access methods be accessed within a single transaction, it likely is necessary to closely integrate with the machinery in `src/backend/access/transam/xlog.c`.

Any developer of a new table access method can refer to the existing heap implementation present in `src/backend/access/heap/heapam_handler.c` for details of its implementation.

---

<sup>1</sup> <https://git.postgresql.org/gitweb/?p=postgresql.git;a=blob;f=src/include/access/tableam.h;hb=HEAD>

<sup>2</sup> <https://git.postgresql.org/gitweb/?p=postgresql.git;a=blob;f=src/include/executor/tuptable.h;hb=HEAD>

---

# Chapter 64. Index Access Method Interface Definition

This chapter defines the interface between the core PostgreSQL system and *index access methods*, which manage individual index types. The core system knows nothing about indexes beyond what is specified here, so it is possible to develop entirely new index types by writing add-on code.

All indexes in PostgreSQL are what are known technically as *secondary indexes*; that is, the index is physically separate from the table file that it describes. Each index is stored as its own physical *relation* and so is described by an entry in the `pg_class` catalog. The contents of an index are entirely under the control of its index access method. In practice, all index access methods divide indexes into standard-size pages so that they can use the regular storage manager and buffer manager to access the index contents. (All the existing index access methods furthermore use the standard page layout described in Section 73.6, and most use the same format for index tuple headers; but these decisions are not forced on an access method.)

An index is effectively a mapping from some data key values to *tuple identifiers*, or TIDs, of row versions (tuples) in the index's parent table. A TID consists of a block number and an item number within that block (see Section 73.6). This is sufficient information to fetch a particular row version from the table. Indexes are not directly aware that under MVCC, there might be multiple extant versions of the same logical row; to an index, each tuple is an independent object that needs its own index entry. Thus, an update of a row always creates all-new index entries for the row, even if the key values did not change. (HOT tuples are an exception to this statement; but indexes do not deal with those, either.) Index entries for dead tuples are reclaimed (by vacuuming) when the dead tuples themselves are reclaimed.

## 64.1. Basic API Structure for Indexes

Each index access method is described by a row in the `pg_am` system catalog. The `pg_am` entry specifies a name and a *handler function* for the index access method. These entries can be created and deleted using the `CREATE ACCESS METHOD` and `DROP ACCESS METHOD` SQL commands.

An index access method handler function must be declared to accept a single argument of type `internal` and to return the pseudo-type `index_am_handler`. The argument is a dummy value that simply serves to prevent handler functions from being called directly from SQL commands. The result of the function must be a palloc'd struct of type `IndexAmRoutine`, which contains everything that the core code needs to know to make use of the index access method. The `IndexAmRoutine` struct, also called the access method's *API struct*, includes fields specifying assorted fixed properties of the access method, such as whether it can support multicolumn indexes. More importantly, it contains pointers to support functions for the access method, which do all of the real work to access indexes. These support functions are plain C functions and are not visible or callable at the SQL level. The support functions are described in Section 64.2.

The structure `IndexAmRoutine` is defined thus:

```
typedef struct IndexAmRoutine
{
    NodeTag      type;

    /*
     * Total number of strategies (operators) by which we can
     * traverse/search
     * this AM. Zero if AM does not have a fixed set of strategy
     * assignments.
     */
}
```

```

uint16      amstrategies;
/* total number of support functions that this AM uses */
uint16      amsupport;
/* opclass options support function number or 0 */
uint16      amoptsprocnum;
/* does AM support ORDER BY indexed column's value? */
bool        amcanorder;
/* does AM support ORDER BY result of an operator on indexed
column? */
bool        amcanorderbyop;
/* does AM support backward scanning? */
bool        amcanbackward;
/* does AM support UNIQUE indexes? */
bool        amcanunique;
/* does AM support multi-column indexes? */
bool        amcanmulticol;
/* does AM require scans to have a constraint on the first
index column? */
bool        amoptionalkey;
/* does AM handle ScalarArrayOpExpr quals? */
bool        amsearcharray;
/* does AM handle IS NULL/IS NOT NULL quals? */
bool        amsearchnulls;
/* can index storage data type differ from column data type? */
bool        amstorage;
/* can an index of this type be clustered on? */
bool        amclusterable;
/* does AM handle predicate locks? */
bool        ampredlocks;
/* does AM support parallel scan? */
bool        amcanparallel;
/* does AM support columns included with clause INCLUDE? */
bool        amcaninclude;
/* does AM use maintenance_work_mem? */
bool        amusemaintenanceworkmem;
/* does AM summarize tuples, with at least all tuples in the
block
    * summarized in one summary */
bool        amsummarizing;
/* OR of parallel vacuum flags */
uint8       amparallelvacuumoptions;
/* type of data stored in index, or InvalidOid if variable */
Oid         amkeytype;

/* interface functions */
ambuild_function ambuild;
ambuildempty_function ambuildempty;
aminert_function aminert;
ambulkdelete_function ambulkdelete;
amvacuumcleanup_function amvacuumcleanup;
amcanreturn_function amcanreturn; /* can be NULL */
amcostestimate_function amcostestimate;
amoptions_function amoptions;
amproperty_function amproperty; /* can be NULL */
ambuildphasename_function ambuildphasename; /* can be NULL */
amvalidate_function amvalidate;
amadjustmembers_function amadjustmembers; /* can be NULL */
ambeginscan_function ambeginscan;

```

```

amrescan_function amrescan;
amgettupple_function amgettupple;      /* can be NULL */
amgetbitmap_function amgetbitmap;      /* can be NULL */
amendscan_function amendscan;
ammarkpos_function ammarkpos;          /* can be NULL */
amrestrpos_function amrestrpos;        /* can be NULL */

/* interface functions to support parallel index scans */
amestimateparallelscan_function amestimateparallelscan; /*
can be NULL */
aminitparallelscan_function aminitparallelscan;      /* can be
NULL */
amparallelrescan_function amparallelrescan;          /* can be NULL
*/
} IndexAmRoutine;

```

To be useful, an index access method must also have one or more *operator families* and *operator classes* defined in `pg_opfamily`, `pg_opclass`, `pg_amop`, and `pg_amproc`. These entries allow the planner to determine what kinds of query qualifications can be used with indexes of this access method. Operator families and classes are described in Section 38.16, which is prerequisite material for reading this chapter.

An individual index is defined by a `pg_class` entry that describes it as a physical relation, plus a `pg_index` entry that shows the logical content of the index — that is, the set of index columns it has and the semantics of those columns, as captured by the associated operator classes. The index columns (key values) can be either simple columns of the underlying table or expressions over the table rows. The index access method normally has no interest in where the index key values come from (it is always handed precomputed key values) but it will be very interested in the operator class information in `pg_index`. Both of these catalog entries can be accessed as part of the `Relation` data structure that is passed to all operations on the index.

Some of the flag fields of `IndexAmRoutine` have nonobvious implications. The requirements of `amcanunique` are discussed in Section 64.5. The `amcanmulticol` flag asserts that the access method supports multi-key-column indexes, while `amoptionalkey` asserts that it allows scans where no indexable restriction clause is given for the first index column. When `amcanmulticol` is false, `amoptionalkey` essentially says whether the access method supports full-index scans without any restriction clause. Access methods that support multiple index columns *must* support scans that omit restrictions on any or all of the columns after the first; however they are permitted to require some restriction to appear for the first index column, and this is signaled by setting `amoptionalkey` false. One reason that an index AM might set `amoptionalkey` false is if it doesn't index null values. Since most indexable operators are strict and hence cannot return true for null inputs, it is at first sight attractive to not store index entries for null values: they could never be returned by an index scan anyway. However, this argument fails when an index scan has no restriction clause for a given index column. In practice this means that indexes that have `amoptionalkey` true must index nulls, since the planner might decide to use such an index with no scan keys at all. A related restriction is that an index access method that supports multiple index columns *must* support indexing null values in columns after the first, because the planner will assume the index can be used for queries that do not restrict these columns. For example, consider an index on (a,b) and a query with `WHERE a = 4`. The system will assume the index can be used to scan for rows with `a = 4`, which is wrong if the index omits rows where `b` is null. It is, however, OK to omit rows where the first indexed column is null. An index access method that does index nulls may also set `amsearchnulls`, indicating that it supports `IS NULL` and `IS NOT NULL` clauses as search conditions.

The `amcaninclude` flag indicates whether the access method supports “included” columns, that is it can store (without processing) additional columns beyond the key column(s). The requirements of the preceding paragraph apply only to the key columns. In particular, the combination of `amcanmulticol=false` and `amcaninclude=true` is sensible: it means that there can only be one key column, but there can also be included column(s). Also, included columns must be allowed to be null, independently of `amoptionalkey`.

The `amsummarizing` flag indicates whether the access method summarizes the indexed tuples, with summarizing granularity of at least per block. Access methods that do not point to individual tuples, but to block ranges (like BRIN), may allow the HOT optimization to continue. This does not apply to attributes referenced in index predicates, an update of such an attribute always disables HOT.

## 64.2. Index Access Method Functions

The index construction and maintenance functions that an index access method must provide in `IndexAmRoutine` are:

```
IndexBuildResult *
ambuild (Relation heapRelation,
         Relation indexRelation,
         IndexInfo *indexInfo);
```

Build a new index. The index relation has been physically created, but is empty. It must be filled in with whatever fixed data the access method requires, plus entries for all tuples already existing in the table. Ordinarily the `ambuild` function will call `table_index_build_scan()` to scan the table for existing tuples and compute the keys that need to be inserted into the index. The function must return a `palloc'd` struct containing statistics about the new index.

```
void
ambuildempty (Relation indexRelation);
```

Build an empty index, and write it to the initialization fork (`INIT_FORKNUM`) of the given relation. This method is called only for unlogged indexes; the empty index written to the initialization fork will be copied over the main relation fork on each server restart.

```
bool
aminert (Relation indexRelation,
         Datum *values,
         bool *isnull,
         ItemPointer heap_tid,
         Relation heapRelation,
         IndexUniqueCheck checkUnique,
         bool indexUnchanged,
         IndexInfo *indexInfo);
```

Insert a new tuple into an existing index. The `values` and `isnull` arrays give the key values to be indexed, and `heap_tid` is the TID to be indexed. If the access method supports unique indexes (its `amcanunique` flag is true) then `checkUnique` indicates the type of uniqueness check to perform. This varies depending on whether the unique constraint is deferrable; see Section 64.5 for details. Normally the access method only needs the `heapRelation` parameter when performing uniqueness checking (since then it will have to look into the heap to verify tuple liveness).

The `indexUnchanged` Boolean value gives a hint about the nature of the tuple to be indexed. When it is true, the tuple is a duplicate of some existing tuple in the index. The new tuple is a logically unchanged successor MVCC tuple version. This happens when an `UPDATE` takes place that does not modify any columns covered by the index, but nevertheless requires a new version in the index. The index AM may use this hint to decide to apply bottom-up index deletion in parts of the index where many versions of the same logical row accumulate. Note that updating a non-key column or a column that only appears in a partial index predicate does not affect the value of `indexUnchanged`. The core code determines each tuple's `indexUnchanged` value using a low overhead approach that allows both false positives and false negatives. Index AMs must not treat `indexUnchanged` as an authoritative source of information about tuple visibility or versioning.

The function's Boolean result value is significant only when `checkUnique` is `UNIQUE_CHECK_PARTIAL`. In this case a true result means the new entry is known unique, whereas false means it might be non-unique (and a deferred uniqueness check must be scheduled). For other cases a constant false result is recommended.

Some indexes might not index all tuples. If the tuple is not to be indexed, `aminert` should just return without doing anything.

If the index AM wishes to cache data across successive index insertions within an SQL statement, it can allocate space in `indexInfo->ii_Context` and store a pointer to the data in `indexInfo->ii_AmCache` (which will be NULL initially).

```
IndexBulkDeleteResult *
ambulkdelete (IndexVacuumInfo *info,
              IndexBulkDeleteResult *stats,
              IndexBulkDeleteCallback callback,
              void *callback_state);
```

Delete tuple(s) from the index. This is a “bulk delete” operation that is intended to be implemented by scanning the whole index and checking each entry to see if it should be deleted. The passed-in callback function must be called, in the style `callback(TID, callback_state)` returns `bool`, to determine whether any particular index entry, as identified by its referenced TID, is to be deleted. Must return either NULL or a palloc'd struct containing statistics about the effects of the deletion operation. It is OK to return NULL if no information needs to be passed on to `amvacuumcleanup`.

Because of limited `maintenance_work_mem`, `ambulkdelete` might need to be called more than once when many tuples are to be deleted. The `stats` argument is the result of the previous call for this index (it is NULL for the first call within a VACUUM operation). This allows the AM to accumulate statistics across the whole operation. Typically, `ambulkdelete` will modify and return the same struct if the passed `stats` is not null.

```
IndexBulkDeleteResult *
amvacuumcleanup (IndexVacuumInfo *info,
                 IndexBulkDeleteResult *stats);
```

Clean up after a VACUUM operation (zero or more `ambulkdelete` calls). This does not have to do anything beyond returning index statistics, but it might perform bulk cleanup such as reclaiming empty index pages. `stats` is whatever the last `ambulkdelete` call returned, or NULL if `ambulkdelete` was not called because no tuples needed to be deleted. If the result is not NULL it must be a palloc'd struct. The statistics it contains will be used to update `pg_class`, and will be reported by VACUUM if VERBOSE is given. It is OK to return NULL if the index was not changed at all during the VACUUM operation, but otherwise correct stats should be returned.

`amvacuumcleanup` will also be called at completion of an ANALYZE operation. In this case `stats` is always NULL and any return value will be ignored. This case can be distinguished by checking `info->analyze_only`. It is recommended that the access method do nothing except post-insert cleanup in such a call, and that only in an autovacuum worker process.

```
bool
amcanreturn (Relation indexRelation, int attno);
```

Check whether the index can support *index-only scans* on the given column, by returning the column's original indexed value. The attribute number is 1-based, i.e., the first column's `attno` is 1. Returns true if supported, else false. This function should always return true for included columns (if those are supported), since there's little point in an included column that can't be retrieved. If the access method

does not support index-only scans at all, the `amcanreturn` field in its `IndexAmRoutine` struct can be set to `NULL`.

```
void
amcostestimate (PlannerInfo *root,
                IndexPath *path,
                double loop_count,
                Cost *indexStartupCost,
                Cost *indexTotalCost,
                Selectivity *indexSelectivity,
                double *indexCorrelation,
                double *indexPages);
```

Estimate the costs of an index scan. This function is described fully in Section 64.6, below.

```
bytea *
amoptions (ArrayType *reloptions,
          bool validate);
```

Parse and validate the `reloptions` array for an index. This is called only when a non-null `reloptions` array exists for the index. *reloptions* is a text array containing entries of the form *name=value*. The function should construct a `bytea` value, which will be copied into the `rd_options` field of the index's relcache entry. The data contents of the `bytea` value are open for the access method to define; most of the standard access methods use struct `StdRdOptions`. When *validate* is true, the function should report a suitable error message if any of the options are unrecognized or have invalid values; when *validate* is false, invalid entries should be silently ignored. (*validate* is false when loading options already stored in `pg_catalog`; an invalid entry could only be found if the access method has changed its rules for options, and in that case ignoring obsolete entries is appropriate.) It is OK to return `NULL` if default behavior is wanted.

```
bool
amproperty (Oid index_oid, int attno,
            IndexAMProperty prop, const char *propname,
            bool *res, bool *isnull);
```

The `amproperty` method allows index access methods to override the default behavior of `pg_index_column_has_property` and related functions. If the access method does not have any special behavior for index property inquiries, the `amproperty` field in its `IndexAmRoutine` struct can be set to `NULL`. Otherwise, the `amproperty` method will be called with *index\_oid* and *attno* both zero for `pg_indexam_has_property` calls, or with *index\_oid* valid and *attno* zero for `pg_index_has_property` calls, or with *index\_oid* valid and *attno* greater than zero for `pg_index_column_has_property` calls. *prop* is an enum value identifying the property being tested, while *propname* is the original property name string. If the core code does not recognize the property name then *prop* is `AMPROP_UNKNOWN`. Access methods can define custom property names by checking *propname* for a match (use `pg_strcasecmp` to match, for consistency with the core code); for names known to the core code, it's better to inspect *prop*. If the `amproperty` method returns true then it has determined the property test result: it must set *\*res* to the Boolean value to return, or set *\*isnull* to true to return a `NULL`. (Both of the referenced variables are initialized to false before the call.) If the `amproperty` method returns false then the core code will proceed with its normal logic for determining the property test result.

Access methods that support ordering operators should implement `AMPROP_DISTANCE_ORDERABLE` property testing, as the core code does not know how to do that and will return `NULL`. It may also be advantageous to implement `AMPROP_RETURNABLE` testing, if that can be done more cheaply than by opening the index and calling `amcanreturn`, which is the core code's default behavior. The default behavior should be satisfactory for all other standard properties.



```
char *
ambuildphasename (int64 phasenum);
```

Return the textual name of the given build phase number. The phase numbers are those reported during an index build via the `pgstat_progress_update_param` interface. The phase names are then exposed in the `pg_stat_progress_create_index` view.

```
bool
amvalidate (Oid opclassoid);
```

Validate the catalog entries for the specified operator class, so far as the access method can reasonably do that. For example, this might include testing that all required support functions are provided. The `amvalidate` function must return false if the opclass is invalid. Problems should be reported with `ereport` messages, typically at INFO level.

```
void
amadjustmembers (Oid opfamilyoid,
                 Oid opclassoid,
                 List *operators,
                 List *functions);
```

Validate proposed new operator and function members of an operator family, so far as the access method can reasonably do that, and set their dependency types if the default is not satisfactory. This is called during `CREATE OPERATOR CLASS` and during `ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY ADD`; in the latter case `opclassoid` is `InvalidOid`. The `List` arguments are lists of `OpFamilyMember` structs, as defined in `amapi.h`. Tests done by this function will typically be a subset of those performed by `amvalidate`, since `amadjustmembers` cannot assume that it is seeing a complete set of members. For example, it would be reasonable to check the signature of a support function, but not to check whether all required support functions are provided. Any problems can be reported by throwing an error. The dependency-related fields of the `OpFamilyMember` structs are initialized by the core code to create hard dependencies on the opclass if this is `CREATE OPERATOR CLASS`, or soft dependencies on the opfamily if this is `ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY ADD`. `amadjustmembers` can adjust these fields if some other behavior is more appropriate. For example, GIN, GiST, and SP-GiST always set operator members to have soft dependencies on the opfamily, since the connection between an operator and an opclass is relatively weak in these index types; so it is reasonable to allow operator members to be added and removed freely. Optional support functions are typically also given soft dependencies, so that they can be removed if necessary.

The purpose of an index, of course, is to support scans for tuples matching an indexable `WHERE` condition, often called a *qualifier* or *scan key*. The semantics of index scanning are described more fully in Section 64.3, below. An index access method can support “plain” index scans, “bitmap” index scans, or both. The scan-related functions that an index access method must or may provide are:

```
IndexScanDesc
ambeginscan (Relation indexRelation,
             int nkeys,
             int norderbys);
```

Prepare for an index scan. The `nkeys` and `norderbys` parameters indicate the number of quals and ordering operators that will be used in the scan; these may be useful for space allocation purposes. Note that the actual values of the scan keys aren't provided yet. The result must be a palloc'd struct. For implementation reasons the index access method *must* create this struct by calling `RelationGetIndexScan()`. In most cases `ambeginscan` does little beyond making that call and perhaps acquiring locks; the interesting parts of index-scan startup are in `amrescan`.

```
void
amrescan (IndexScanDesc scan,
          ScanKey keys,
          int nkeys,
          ScanKey orderbys,
          int norderbys);
```

Start or restart an index scan, possibly with new scan keys. (To restart using previously-passed keys, NULL is passed for keys and/or orderbys.) Note that it is not allowed for the number of keys or order-by operators to be larger than what was passed to `ambeginscan`. In practice the restart feature is used when a new outer tuple is selected by a nested-loop join and so a new key comparison value is needed, but the scan key structure remains the same.

```
bool
amgettuple (IndexScanDesc scan,
            ScanDirection direction);
```

Fetch the next tuple in the given scan, moving in the given direction (forward or backward in the index). Returns true if a tuple was obtained, false if no matching tuples remain. In the true case the tuple TID is stored into the scan structure. Note that “success” means only that the index contains an entry that matches the scan keys, not that the tuple necessarily still exists in the heap or will pass the caller's snapshot test. On success, `amgettuple` must also set `scan->xs_recheck` to true or false. False means it is certain that the index entry matches the scan keys. True means this is not certain, and the conditions represented by the scan keys must be rechecked against the heap tuple after fetching it. This provision supports “lossy” index operators. Note that rechecking will extend only to the scan conditions; a partial index predicate (if any) is never rechecked by `amgettuple` callers.

If the index supports index-only scans (i.e., `amcanreturn` returns true for any of its columns), then on success the AM must also check `scan->xs_want_itup`, and if that is true it must return the originally indexed data for the index entry. Columns for which `amcanreturn` returns false can be returned as nulls. The data can be returned in the form of an `IndexTuple` pointer stored at `scan->xs_itup`, with tuple descriptor `scan->xs_itupdesc`; or in the form of a `HeapTuple` pointer stored at `scan->xs_hitup`, with tuple descriptor `scan->xs_hitupdesc`. (The latter format should be used when reconstructing data that might possibly not fit into an `IndexTuple`.) In either case, management of the data referenced by the pointer is the access method's responsibility. The data must remain good at least until the next `amgettuple`, `amrescan`, or `amendscan` call for the scan.

The `amgettuple` function need only be provided if the access method supports “plain” index scans. If it doesn't, the `amgettuple` field in its `IndexAmRoutine` struct must be set to NULL.

```
int64
amgetbitmap (IndexScanDesc scan,
             TIDBitmap *tbm);
```

Fetch all tuples in the given scan and add them to the caller-supplied `TIDBitmap` (that is, OR the set of tuple IDs into whatever set is already in the bitmap). The number of tuples fetched is returned (this might be just an approximate count, for instance some AMs do not detect duplicates). While inserting tuple IDs into the bitmap, `amgetbitmap` can indicate that rechecking of the scan conditions is required for specific tuple IDs. This is analogous to the `xs_recheck` output parameter of `amgettuple`. Note: in the current implementation, support for this feature is conflated with support for lossy storage of the bitmap itself, and therefore callers recheck both the scan conditions and the partial index predicate (if any) for recheckable tuples. That might not always be true, however. `amgetbitmap` and `amgettuple` cannot be used in the same index scan; there are other restrictions too when using `amgetbitmap`, as explained in Section 64.3.

The `amgetbitmap` function need only be provided if the access method supports “bitmap” index scans. If it doesn't, the `amgetbitmap` field in its `IndexAmRoutine` struct must be set to NULL.

```
void  
amendscan (IndexScanDesc scan);
```

End a scan and release resources. The scan struct itself should not be freed, but any locks or pins taken internally by the access method must be released, as well as any other memory allocated by `ambeginscan` and other scan-related functions.

```
void  
ammarkpos (IndexScanDesc scan);
```

Mark current scan position. The access method need only support one remembered scan position per scan.

The `ammarkpos` function need only be provided if the access method supports ordered scans. If it doesn't, the `ammarkpos` field in its `IndexAmRoutine` struct may be set to `NULL`.

```
void  
amrestrpos (IndexScanDesc scan);
```

Restore the scan to the most recently marked position.

The `amrestrpos` function need only be provided if the access method supports ordered scans. If it doesn't, the `amrestrpos` field in its `IndexAmRoutine` struct may be set to `NULL`.

In addition to supporting ordinary index scans, some types of index may wish to support *parallel index scans*, which allow multiple backends to cooperate in performing an index scan. The index access method should arrange things so that each cooperating process returns a subset of the tuples that would be performed by an ordinary, non-parallel index scan, but in such a way that the union of those subsets is equal to the set of tuples that would be returned by an ordinary, non-parallel index scan. Furthermore, while there need not be any global ordering of tuples returned by a parallel scan, the ordering of that subset of tuples returned within each cooperating backend must match the requested ordering. The following functions may be implemented to support parallel index scans:

```
Size  
amestimateparallelscale (void);
```

Estimate and return the number of bytes of dynamic shared memory which the access method will be needed to perform a parallel scan. (This number is in addition to, not in lieu of, the amount of space needed for AM-independent data in `ParallelIndexScanDescData`.)

It is not necessary to implement this function for access methods which do not support parallel scans or for which the number of additional bytes of storage required is zero.

```
void  
aminitparallelscale (void *target);
```

This function will be called to initialize dynamic shared memory at the beginning of a parallel scan. `target` will point to at least the number of bytes previously returned by `amestimateparallelscale`, and this function may use that amount of space to store whatever data it wishes.

It is not necessary to implement this function for access methods which do not support parallel scans or in cases where the shared memory space required needs no initialization.

```
void
```

```
amparallelrescan (IndexScanDesc scan);
```

This function, if implemented, will be called when a parallel index scan must be restarted. It should reset any shared state set up by `aminitparallelscan` such that the scan will be restarted from the beginning.

## 64.3. Index Scanning

In an index scan, the index access method is responsible for regurgitating the TIDs of all the tuples it has been told about that match the *scan keys*. The access method is *not* involved in actually fetching those tuples from the index's parent table, nor in determining whether they pass the scan's visibility test or other conditions.

A scan key is the internal representation of a `WHERE` clause of the form *index\_key operator constant*, where the index key is one of the columns of the index and the operator is one of the members of the operator family associated with that index column. An index scan has zero or more scan keys, which are implicitly ANDed — the returned tuples are expected to satisfy all the indicated conditions.

The access method can report that the index is *lossy*, or requires rechecks, for a particular query. This implies that the index scan will return all the entries that pass the scan key, plus possibly additional entries that do not. The core system's index-scan machinery will then apply the index conditions again to the heap tuple to verify whether or not it really should be selected. If the recheck option is not specified, the index scan must return exactly the set of matching entries.

Note that it is entirely up to the access method to ensure that it correctly finds all and only the entries passing all the given scan keys. Also, the core system will simply hand off all the `WHERE` clauses that match the index keys and operator families, without any semantic analysis to determine whether they are redundant or contradictory. As an example, given `WHERE x > 4 AND x > 14` where `x` is a b-tree indexed column, it is left to the b-tree `amrescan` function to realize that the first scan key is redundant and can be discarded. The extent of preprocessing needed during `amrescan` will depend on the extent to which the index access method needs to reduce the scan keys to a “normalized” form.

Some access methods return index entries in a well-defined order, others do not. There are actually two different ways that an access method can support sorted output:

- Access methods that always return entries in the natural ordering of their data (such as btree) should set `amcanorder` to true. Currently, such access methods must use btree-compatible strategy numbers for their equality and ordering operators.
- Access methods that support ordering operators should set `amcanorderbyop` to true. This indicates that the index is capable of returning entries in an order satisfying `ORDER BY index_key operator constant`. Scan modifiers of that form can be passed to `amrescan` as described previously.

The `amgettuple` function has a `direction` argument, which can be either `ForwardScanDirection` (the normal case) or `BackwardScanDirection`. If the first call after `amrescan` specifies `BackwardScanDirection`, then the set of matching index entries is to be scanned back-to-front rather than in the normal front-to-back direction, so `amgettuple` must return the last matching tuple in the index, rather than the first one as it normally would. (This will only occur for access methods that set `amcanorder` to true.) After the first call, `amgettuple` must be prepared to advance the scan in either direction from the most recently returned entry. (But if `amcanbackward` is false, all subsequent calls will have the same direction as the first one.)

Access methods that support ordered scans must support “marking” a position in a scan and later returning to the marked position. The same position might be restored multiple times. However, only one position need be remembered per scan; a new `ammarkpos` call overrides the previously marked position. An access method that does not support ordered scans need not provide `ammarkpos` and `amrestrpos` functions in `IndexAmRoutine`; set those pointers to NULL instead.

Both the scan position and the mark position (if any) must be maintained consistently in the face of concurrent insertions or deletions in the index. It is OK if a freshly-inserted entry is not returned by a scan that would have found the entry if it had existed when the scan started, or for the scan to return such an entry upon rescanning or backing up even though it had not been returned the first time through. Similarly, a concurrent delete might or might not be reflected in the results of a scan. What is important is that insertions or deletions not cause the scan to miss or multiply return entries that were not themselves being inserted or deleted.

If the index stores the original indexed data values (and not some lossy representation of them), it is useful to support index-only scans, in which the index returns the actual data not just the TID of the heap tuple. This will only avoid I/O if the visibility map shows that the TID is on an all-visible page; else the heap tuple must be visited anyway to check MVCC visibility. But that is no concern of the access method's.

Instead of using `amgettupple`, an index scan can be done with `amgetbitmap` to fetch all tuples in one call. This can be noticeably more efficient than `amgettupple` because it allows avoiding lock/unlock cycles within the access method. In principle `amgetbitmap` should have the same effects as repeated `amgettupple` calls, but we impose several restrictions to simplify matters. First of all, `amgetbitmap` returns all tuples at once and marking or restoring scan positions isn't supported. Secondly, the tuples are returned in a bitmap which doesn't have any specific ordering, which is why `amgetbitmap` doesn't take a `direction` argument. (Ordering operators will never be supplied for such a scan, either.) Also, there is no provision for index-only scans with `amgetbitmap`, since there is no way to return the contents of index tuples. Finally, `amgetbitmap` does not guarantee any locking of the returned tuples, with implications spelled out in Section 64.4.

Note that it is permitted for an access method to implement only `amgetbitmap` and not `amgettupple`, or vice versa, if its internal implementation is unsuited to one API or the other.

## 64.4. Index Locking Considerations

Index access methods must handle concurrent updates of the index by multiple processes. The core PostgreSQL system obtains `AccessShareLock` on the index during an index scan, and `RowExclusiveLock` when updating the index (including plain `VACUUM`). Since these lock types do not conflict, the access method is responsible for handling any fine-grained locking it might need. An `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock on the index as a whole will be taken only during index creation, destruction, or `REINDEX` (`SHARE UPDATE EXCLUSIVE` is taken instead with `CONCURRENTLY`).

Building an index type that supports concurrent updates usually requires extensive and subtle analysis of the required behavior. For the b-tree and hash index types, you can read about the design decisions involved in `src/backend/access/nbtree/README` and `src/backend/access/hash/README`.

Aside from the index's own internal consistency requirements, concurrent updates create issues about consistency between the parent table (the *heap*) and the index. Because PostgreSQL separates accesses and updates of the heap from those of the index, there are windows in which the index might be inconsistent with the heap. We handle this problem with the following rules:

- A new heap entry is made before making its index entries. (Therefore a concurrent index scan is likely to fail to see the heap entry. This is okay because the index reader would be uninterested in an uncommitted row anyway. But see Section 64.5.)
- When a heap entry is to be deleted (by `VACUUM`), all its index entries must be removed first.
- An index scan must maintain a pin on the index page holding the item last returned by `amgettupple`, and `ambulkdelete` cannot delete entries from pages that are pinned by other backends. The need for this rule is explained below.

Without the third rule, it is possible for an index reader to see an index entry just before it is removed by `VACUUM`, and then to arrive at the corresponding heap entry after that was removed by `VACUUM`.

This creates no serious problems if that item number is still unused when the reader reaches it, since an empty item slot will be ignored by `heap_fetch()`. But what if a third backend has already re-used the item slot for something else? When using an MVCC-compliant snapshot, there is no problem because the new occupant of the slot is certain to be too new to pass the snapshot test. However, with a non-MVCC-compliant snapshot (such as `SnapshotAny`), it would be possible to accept and return a row that does not in fact match the scan keys. We could defend against this scenario by requiring the scan keys to be rechecked against the heap row in all cases, but that is too expensive. Instead, we use a pin on an index page as a proxy to indicate that the reader might still be “in flight” from the index entry to the matching heap entry. Making `ambulkdelete` block on such a pin ensures that `VACUUM` cannot delete the heap entry before the reader is done with it. This solution costs little in run time, and adds blocking overhead only in the rare cases where there actually is a conflict.

This solution requires that index scans be “synchronous”: we have to fetch each heap tuple immediately after scanning the corresponding index entry. This is expensive for a number of reasons. An “asynchronous” scan in which we collect many TIDs from the index, and only visit the heap tuples sometime later, requires much less index locking overhead and can allow a more efficient heap access pattern. Per the above analysis, we must use the synchronous approach for non-MVCC-compliant snapshots, but an asynchronous scan is workable for a query using an MVCC snapshot.

In an `amgetbitmap` index scan, the access method does not keep an index pin on any of the returned tuples. Therefore it is only safe to use such scans with MVCC-compliant snapshots.

When the `ampredlocks` flag is not set, any scan using that index access method within a serializable transaction will acquire a nonblocking predicate lock on the full index. This will generate a read-write conflict with the insert of any tuple into that index by a concurrent serializable transaction. If certain patterns of read-write conflicts are detected among a set of concurrent serializable transactions, one of those transactions may be canceled to protect data integrity. When the flag is set, it indicates that the index access method implements finer-grained predicate locking, which will tend to reduce the frequency of such transaction cancellations.

## 64.5. Index Uniqueness Checks

PostgreSQL enforces SQL uniqueness constraints using *unique indexes*, which are indexes that disallow multiple entries with identical keys. An access method that supports this feature sets `amcanunique` true. (At present, only b-tree supports it.) Columns listed in the `INCLUDE` clause are not considered when enforcing uniqueness.

Because of MVCC, it is always necessary to allow duplicate entries to exist physically in an index: the entries might refer to successive versions of a single logical row. The behavior we actually want to enforce is that no MVCC snapshot could include two rows with equal index keys. This breaks down into the following cases that must be checked when inserting a new row into a unique index:

- If a conflicting valid row has been deleted by the current transaction, it's okay. (In particular, since an `UPDATE` always deletes the old row version before inserting the new version, this will allow an `UPDATE` on a row without changing the key.)
- If a conflicting row has been inserted by an as-yet-uncommitted transaction, the would-be inserter must wait to see if that transaction commits. If it rolls back then there is no conflict. If it commits without deleting the conflicting row again, there is a uniqueness violation. (In practice we just wait for the other transaction to end and then redo the visibility check in toto.)
- Similarly, if a conflicting valid row has been deleted by an as-yet-uncommitted transaction, the would-be inserter must wait for that transaction to commit or abort, and then repeat the test.

Furthermore, immediately before reporting a uniqueness violation according to the above rules, the access method must recheck the liveness of the row being inserted. If it is committed dead then no violation should be reported. (This case cannot occur during the ordinary scenario of inserting a row that's just been created by the current transaction. It can happen during `CREATE UNIQUE INDEX CONCURRENTLY`, however.)

We require the index access method to apply these tests itself, which means that it must reach into the heap to check the commit status of any row that is shown to have a duplicate key according to the index contents. This is without a doubt ugly and non-modular, but it saves redundant work: if we did a separate probe then the index lookup for a conflicting row would be essentially repeated while finding the place to insert the new row's index entry. What's more, there is no obvious way to avoid race conditions unless the conflict check is an integral part of insertion of the new index entry.

If the unique constraint is deferrable, there is additional complexity: we need to be able to insert an index entry for a new row, but defer any uniqueness-violation error until end of statement or even later. To avoid unnecessary repeat searches of the index, the index access method should do a preliminary uniqueness check during the initial insertion. If this shows that there is definitely no conflicting live tuple, we are done. Otherwise, we schedule a recheck to occur when it is time to enforce the constraint. If, at the time of the recheck, both the inserted tuple and some other tuple with the same key are live, then the error must be reported. (Note that for this purpose, “live” actually means “any tuple in the index entry's HOT chain is live”.) To implement this, the `amininsert` function is passed a `checkUnique` parameter having one of the following values:

- `UNIQUE_CHECK_NO` indicates that no uniqueness checking should be done (this is not a unique index).
- `UNIQUE_CHECK_YES` indicates that this is a non-deferrable unique index, and the uniqueness check must be done immediately, as described above.
- `UNIQUE_CHECK_PARTIAL` indicates that the unique constraint is deferrable. PostgreSQL will use this mode to insert each row's index entry. The access method must allow duplicate entries into the index, and report any potential duplicates by returning false from `amininsert`. For each row for which false is returned, a deferred recheck will be scheduled.

The access method must identify any rows which might violate the unique constraint, but it is not an error for it to report false positives. This allows the check to be done without waiting for other transactions to finish; conflicts reported here are not treated as errors and will be rechecked later, by which time they may no longer be conflicts.

- `UNIQUE_CHECK_EXISTING` indicates that this is a deferred recheck of a row that was reported as a potential uniqueness violation. Although this is implemented by calling `amininsert`, the access method must *not* insert a new index entry in this case. The index entry is already present. Rather, the access method must check to see if there is another live index entry. If so, and if the target row is also still live, report error.

It is recommended that in a `UNIQUE_CHECK_EXISTING` call, the access method further verify that the target row actually does have an existing entry in the index, and report error if not. This is a good idea because the index tuple values passed to `amininsert` will have been recomputed. If the index definition involves functions that are not really immutable, we might be checking the wrong area of the index. Checking that the target row is found in the recheck verifies that we are scanning for the same tuple values as were used in the original insertion.

## 64.6. Index Cost Estimation Functions

The `amcostestimate` function is given information describing a possible index scan, including lists of `WHERE` and `ORDER BY` clauses that have been determined to be usable with the index. It must return estimates of the cost of accessing the index and the selectivity of the `WHERE` clauses (that is, the fraction of parent-table rows that will be retrieved during the index scan). For simple cases, nearly all the work of the cost estimator can be done by calling standard routines in the optimizer; the point of having an `amcostestimate` function is to allow index access methods to provide index-type-specific knowledge, in case it is possible to improve on the standard estimates.

Each `amcostestimate` function must have the signature:

```
void  
amcostestimate (PlannerInfo *root,  
                IndexPath *path,  
                double loop_count,  
                Cost *indexStartupCost,  
                Cost *indexTotalCost,  
                Selectivity *indexSelectivity,  
                double *indexCorrelation,  
                double *indexPages);
```

The first three parameters are inputs:

*root*

The planner's information about the query being processed.

*path*

The index access path being considered. All fields except cost and selectivity values are valid.

*loop\_count*

The number of repetitions of the index scan that should be factored into the cost estimates. This will typically be greater than one when considering a parameterized scan for use in the inside of a nestloop join. Note that the cost estimates should still be for just one scan; a larger *loop\_count* means that it may be appropriate to allow for some caching effects across multiple scans.

The last five parameters are pass-by-reference outputs:

*\*indexStartupCost*

Set to cost of index start-up processing

*\*indexTotalCost*

Set to total cost of index processing

*\*indexSelectivity*

Set to index selectivity

*\*indexCorrelation*

Set to correlation coefficient between index scan order and underlying table's order

*\*indexPages*

Set to number of index leaf pages

Note that cost estimate functions must be written in C, not in SQL or any available procedural language, because they must access internal data structures of the planner/optimizer.

The index access costs should be computed using the parameters used by `src/backend/optimizer/path/costsize.c`: a sequential disk block fetch has cost `seq_page_cost`, a nonsequential fetch has cost `random_page_cost`, and the cost of processing one index row should usually be taken as `cpu_index_tuple_cost`. In addition, an appropriate multiple of `cpu_operator_cost` should be charged for any comparison operators invoked during index processing (especially evaluation of the `indexquals` themselves).

The access costs should include all disk and CPU costs associated with scanning the index itself, but *not* the costs of retrieving or processing the parent-table rows that are identified by the index.



The “start-up cost” is the part of the total scan cost that must be expended before we can begin to fetch the first row. For most indexes this can be taken as zero, but an index type with a high start-up cost might want to set it nonzero.

The *indexSelectivity* should be set to the estimated fraction of the parent table rows that will be retrieved during the index scan. In the case of a lossy query, this will typically be higher than the fraction of rows that actually pass the given qual conditions.

The *indexCorrelation* should be set to the correlation (ranging between -1.0 and 1.0) between the index order and the table order. This is used to adjust the estimate for the cost of fetching rows from the parent table.

The *indexPages* should be set to the number of leaf pages. This is used to estimate the number of workers for parallel index scan.

When *loop\_count* is greater than one, the returned numbers should be averages expected for any one scan of the index.

## Cost Estimation

A typical cost estimator will proceed as follows:

1. Estimate and return the fraction of parent-table rows that will be visited based on the given qual conditions. In the absence of any index-type-specific knowledge, use the standard optimizer function `clauselist_selectivity()`:

```
*indexSelectivity = clauselist_selectivity(root, path-
>indexquals,
                                           path->indexinfo-
>rel->reloid,
                                           JOIN_INNER, NULL);
```

2. Estimate the number of index rows that will be visited during the scan. For many index types this is the same as *indexSelectivity* times the number of rows in the index, but it might be more. (Note that the index's size in pages and rows is available from the `path->indexinfo` struct.)
3. Estimate the number of index pages that will be retrieved during the scan. This might be just *indexSelectivity* times the index's size in pages.
4. Compute the index access cost. A generic estimator might do this:

```
/*
 * Our generic assumption is that the index pages will be read
 * sequentially, so they cost seq_page_cost each, not
 * random_page_cost.
 * Also, we charge for evaluation of the indexquals at each
 * index row.
 * All the costs are assumed to be paid incrementally during
 * the scan.
 */
cost_qual_eval(&index_qual_cost, path->indexquals, root);
*indexStartupCost = index_qual_cost.startup;
*indexTotalCost = seq_page_cost * numIndexPages +
    (cpu_index_tuple_cost + index_qual_cost.per_tuple) *
    numIndexTuples;
```

However, the above does not account for amortization of index reads across repeated index scans.

5. Estimate the index correlation. For a simple ordered index on a single field, this can be retrieved from `pg_statistic`. If the correlation is not known, the conservative estimate is zero (no correlation).

Examples of cost estimator functions can be found in `src/backend/utils/adt/selfuncs.c`.

---

# Chapter 65. Generic WAL Records

Although all built-in WAL-logged modules have their own types of WAL records, there is also a generic WAL record type, which describes changes to pages in a generic way. This is useful for extensions that provide custom access methods.

In comparison with Custom WAL Resource Managers, Generic WAL is simpler for an extension to implement and does not require the extension library to be loaded in order to apply the records.

## Note

Generic WAL records are ignored during Logical Decoding. If logical decoding is required for your extension, consider a Custom WAL Resource Manager.

The API for constructing generic WAL records is defined in `access/generic_xlog.h` and implemented in `access/transam/generic_xlog.c`.

To perform a WAL-logged data update using the generic WAL record facility, follow these steps:

1. `state = GenericXLogStart(relation)` — start construction of a generic WAL record for the given relation.
2. `page = GenericXLogRegisterBuffer(state, buffer, flags)` — register a buffer to be modified within the current generic WAL record. This function returns a pointer to a temporary copy of the buffer's page, where modifications should be made. (Do not modify the buffer's contents directly.) The third argument is a bit mask of flags applicable to the operation. Currently the only such flag is `GENERIC_XLOG_FULL_IMAGE`, which indicates that a full-page image rather than a delta update should be included in the WAL record. Typically this flag would be set if the page is new or has been rewritten completely. `GenericXLogRegisterBuffer` can be repeated if the WAL-logged action needs to modify multiple pages.
3. Apply modifications to the page images obtained in the previous step.
4. `GenericXLogFinish(state)` — apply the changes to the buffers and emit the generic WAL record.

WAL record construction can be canceled between any of the above steps by calling `GenericXLogAbort(state)`. This will discard all changes to the page image copies.

Please note the following points when using the generic WAL record facility:

- No direct modifications of buffers are allowed! All modifications must be done in copies acquired from `GenericXLogRegisterBuffer()`. In other words, code that makes generic WAL records should never call `BufferGetPage()` for itself. However, it remains the caller's responsibility to pin/unpin and lock/unlock the buffers at appropriate times. Exclusive lock must be held on each target buffer from before `GenericXLogRegisterBuffer()` until after `GenericXLogFinish()`.
- Registrations of buffers (step 2) and modifications of page images (step 3) can be mixed freely, i.e., both steps may be repeated in any sequence. Keep in mind that buffers should be registered in the same order in which locks are to be obtained on them during replay.
- The maximum number of buffers that can be registered for a generic WAL record is `MAX_GENERIC_XLOG_PAGES`. An error will be thrown if this limit is exceeded.
- Generic WAL assumes that the pages to be modified have standard layout, and in particular that there is no useful data between `pd_lower` and `pd_upper`.

- Since you are modifying copies of buffer pages, `GenericXLogStart()` does not start a critical section. Thus, you can safely do memory allocation, error throwing, etc. between `GenericXLogStart()` and `GenericXLogFinish()`. The only actual critical section is present inside `GenericXLogFinish()`. There is no need to worry about calling `GenericXLogAbort()` during an error exit, either.
- `GenericXLogFinish()` takes care of marking buffers dirty and setting their LSNs. You do not need to do this explicitly.
- For unlogged relations, everything works the same except that no actual WAL record is emitted. Thus, you typically do not need to do any explicit checks for unlogged relations.
- The generic WAL redo function will acquire exclusive locks to buffers in the same order as they were registered. After redoing all changes, the locks will be released in the same order.
- If `GENERIC_XLOG_FULL_IMAGE` is not specified for a registered buffer, the generic WAL record contains a delta between the old and the new page images. This delta is based on byte-by-byte comparison. This is not very compact for the case of moving data within a page, and might be improved in the future.

---

# Chapter 66. Custom WAL Resource Managers

This chapter explains the interface between the core PostgreSQL system and custom WAL resource managers, which enable extensions to integrate directly with the WAL.

An extension, especially a Table Access Method or Index Access Method, may need to use WAL for recovery, replication, and/or Logical Decoding. Custom resource managers are a more flexible alternative to Generic WAL (which does not support logical decoding), but more complex for an extension to implement.

To create a new custom WAL resource manager, first define an `RmgrData` structure with implementations for the resource manager methods. Refer to `src/backend/access/transam/README` and `src/include/access/xlog_internal.h` in the PostgreSQL source.

```
/*
 * Method table for resource managers.
 *
 * This struct must be kept in sync with the PG_RMGR definition in
 * rmgr.c.
 *
 * rm_identify must return a name for the record based on xl_info
 * (without
 * reference to the rmid). For example, XLOG_BTREE_VACUUM would be
 * named
 * "VACUUM". rm_desc can then be called to obtain additional detail
 * for the
 * record, if available (e.g. the last block).
 *
 * rm_mask takes as input a page modified by the resource manager
 * and masks
 * out bits that shouldn't be flagged by wal_consistency_checking.
 *
 * RmgrTable[] is indexed by RmgrId values (see rmgrlist.h). If
 * rm_name is
 * NULL, the corresponding RmgrTable entry is considered invalid.
 */
typedef struct RmgrData
{
    const char *rm_name;
    void (*rm_redo) (XLogReaderState *record);
    void (*rm_desc) (StringInfo buf, XLogReaderState
*record);
    const char *(*rm_identify) (uint8 info);
    void (*rm_startup) (void);
    void (*rm_cleanup) (void);
    void (*rm_mask) (char *pagedata, BlockNumber blkno);
    void (*rm_decode) (struct LogicalDecodingContext *ctx,
                        struct XLogRecordBuffer *buf);
} RmgrData;
```

The `src/test/modules/test_custom_rmgrs` module contains a working example, which demonstrates usage of custom WAL resource managers.

Then, register your new resource manager.

```
/*
 * Register a new custom WAL resource manager.
 *
 * Resource manager IDs must be globally unique across all
 * extensions. Refer
 * to https://wiki.postgresql.org/wiki/CustomWALResourceManagers to
 * reserve a
 * unique RmgrId for your extension, to avoid conflicts with other
 * extension
 * developers. During development, use RM_EXPERIMENTAL_ID to avoid
 * needlessly
 * reserving a new ID.
 */
extern void RegisterCustomRmgr(RmgrId rmid, const RmgrData *rmgr);
```

`RegisterCustomRmgr` must be called from the extension module's `_PG_init` function. While developing a new extension, use `RM_EXPERIMENTAL_ID` for *rmid*. When you are ready to release the extension to users, reserve a new resource manager ID at the Custom WAL Resource Manager<sup>1</sup> page.

Place the extension module implementing the custom resource manager in `shared_preload_libraries` so that it will be loaded early during PostgreSQL startup.

### Note

The extension must remain in `shared_preload_libraries` as long as any custom WAL records may exist in the system. Otherwise PostgreSQL will not be able to apply or decode the custom WAL records, which may prevent the server from starting.

---

<sup>1</sup> <https://wiki.postgresql.org/wiki/CustomWALResourceManagers>

---

# Chapter 67. B-Tree Indexes

## 67.1. Introduction

PostgreSQL includes an implementation of the standard btree (multi-way balanced tree) index data structure. Any data type that can be sorted into a well-defined linear order can be indexed by a btree index. The only limitation is that an index entry cannot exceed approximately one-third of a page (after TOAST compression, if applicable).

Because each btree operator class imposes a sort order on its data type, btree operator classes (or, really, operator families) have come to be used as PostgreSQL's general representation and understanding of sorting semantics. Therefore, they've acquired some features that go beyond what would be needed just to support btree indexes, and parts of the system that are quite distant from the btree AM make use of them.

## 67.2. Behavior of B-Tree Operator Classes

As shown in Table 38.3, a btree operator class must provide five comparison operators, `<`, `<=`, `=`, `>=` and `>`. One might expect that `<>` should also be part of the operator class, but it is not, because it would almost never be useful to use a `<>` WHERE clause in an index search. (For some purposes, the planner treats `<>` as associated with a btree operator class; but it finds that operator via the `=` operator's negator link, rather than from `pg_amop`.)

When several data types share near-identical sorting semantics, their operator classes can be grouped into an operator family. Doing so is advantageous because it allows the planner to make deductions about cross-type comparisons. Each operator class within the family should contain the single-type operators (and associated support functions) for its input data type, while cross-type comparison operators and support functions are “loose” in the family. It is recommendable that a complete set of cross-type operators be included in the family, thus ensuring that the planner can represent any comparison conditions that it deduces from transitivity.

There are some basic assumptions that a btree operator family must satisfy:

- An `=` operator must be an equivalence relation; that is, for all non-null values *A*, *B*, *C* of the data type:
  - *A* = *A* is true (*reflexive law*)
  - if *A* = *B*, then *B* = *A* (*symmetric law*)
  - if *A* = *B* and *B* = *C*, then *A* = *C* (*transitive law*)
- A `<` operator must be a strong ordering relation; that is, for all non-null values *A*, *B*, *C*:
  - *A* < *A* is false (*irreflexive law*)
  - if *A* < *B* and *B* < *C*, then *A* < *C* (*transitive law*)
- Furthermore, the ordering is total; that is, for all non-null values *A*, *B*:
  - exactly one of *A* < *B*, *A* = *B*, and *B* < *A* is true (*trichotomy law*)(The trichotomy law justifies the definition of the comparison support function, of course.)

The other three operators are defined in terms of `=` and `<` in the obvious way, and must act consistently with them.

For an operator family supporting multiple data types, the above laws must hold when *A*, *B*, *C* are taken from any data types in the family. The transitive laws are the trickiest to ensure, as in cross-type situations they represent statements that the behaviors of two or three different operators are consistent.

As an example, it would not work to put `float8` and `numeric` into the same operator family, at least not with the current semantics that `numeric` values are converted to `float8` for comparison to a `float8`. Because of the limited accuracy of `float8`, this means there are distinct `numeric` values that will compare equal to the same `float8` value, and thus the transitive law would fail.

Another requirement for a multiple-data-type family is that any implicit or binary-coercion casts that are defined between data types included in the operator family must not change the associated sort ordering.

It should be fairly clear why a btree index requires these laws to hold within a single data type: without them there is no ordering to arrange the keys with. Also, index searches using a comparison key of a different data type require comparisons to behave sanely across two data types. The extensions to three or more data types within a family are not strictly required by the btree index mechanism itself, but the planner relies on them for optimization purposes.

## 67.3. B-Tree Support Functions

As shown in Table 38.9, btree defines one required and four optional support functions. The five user-defined methods are:

### `order`

For each combination of data types that a btree operator family provides comparison operators for, it must provide a comparison support function, registered in `pg_amproc` with support function number 1 and `amproclefttype/amprocrighttype` equal to the left and right data types for the comparison (i.e., the same data types that the matching operators are registered with in `pg_amop`). The comparison function must take two non-null values *A* and *B* and return an `int32` value that is `< 0`, `0`, or `> 0` when *A* < *B*, *A* = *B*, or *A* > *B*, respectively. A null result is disallowed: all values of the data type must be comparable. See `src/backend/access/nbtree/nbt-compare.c` for examples.

If the compared values are of a collatable data type, the appropriate collation OID will be passed to the comparison support function, using the standard `PG_GET_COLLATION()` mechanism.

### `sortsupport`

Optionally, a btree operator family may provide *sort support* function(s), registered under support function number 2. These functions allow implementing comparisons for sorting purposes in a more efficient way than naively calling the comparison support function. The APIs involved in this are defined in `src/include/utils/sortsupport.h`.

### `in_range`

Optionally, a btree operator family may provide *in\_range* support function(s), registered under support function number 3. These are not used during btree index operations; rather, they extend the semantics of the operator family so that it can support window clauses containing the `RANGE offset PRECEDING` and `RANGE offset FOLLOWING` frame bound types (see Section 4.2.8). Fundamentally, the extra information provided is how to add or subtract an *offset* value in a way that is compatible with the family's data ordering.

An *in\_range* function must have the signature

```
in_range(val type1, base type1, offset type2, sub bool, less
        bool)
returns bool
```

*val* and *base* must be of the same type, which is one of the types supported by the operator family (i.e., a type for which it provides an ordering). However, *offset* could be of a different



type, which might be one otherwise unsupported by the family. An example is that the built-in `time_ops` family provides an `in_range` function that has `offset` of type `interval`. A family can provide `in_range` functions for any of its supported types and one or more `offset` types. Each `in_range` function should be entered in `pg_amproc` with `amproclefttype` equal to `type1` and `amprocrighttype` equal to `type2`.

The essential semantics of an `in_range` function depend on the two Boolean flag parameters. It should add or subtract `base` and `offset`, then compare `val` to the result, as follows:

- if `!sub` and `!less`, return `val >= (base + offset)`
- if `!sub` and `less`, return `val <= (base + offset)`
- if `sub` and `!less`, return `val >= (base - offset)`
- if `sub` and `less`, return `val <= (base - offset)`

Before doing so, the function should check the sign of `offset`: if it is less than zero, raise error `ERRCODE_INVALID_PRECEDING_OR_FOLLOWING_SIZE` (22013) with error text like “invalid preceding or following size in window function”. (This is required by the SQL standard, although nonstandard operator families might perhaps choose to ignore this restriction, since there seems to be little semantic necessity for it.) This requirement is delegated to the `in_range` function so that the core code needn't understand what “less than zero” means for a particular data type.

An additional expectation is that `in_range` functions should, if practical, avoid throwing an error if `base + offset` or `base - offset` would overflow. The correct comparison result can be determined even if that value would be out of the data type's range. Note that if the data type includes concepts such as “infinity” or “NaN”, extra care may be needed to ensure that `in_range`'s results agree with the normal sort order of the operator family.

The results of the `in_range` function must be consistent with the sort ordering imposed by the operator family. To be precise, given any fixed values of `offset` and `sub`, then:

- If `in_range` with `less = true` is true for some `val1` and `base`, it must be true for every `val2 <= val1` with the same `base`.
- If `in_range` with `less = true` is false for some `val1` and `base`, it must be false for every `val2 >= val1` with the same `base`.
- If `in_range` with `less = true` is true for some `val` and `base1`, it must be true for every `base2 >= base1` with the same `val`.
- If `in_range` with `less = true` is false for some `val` and `base1`, it must be false for every `base2 <= base1` with the same `val`.

Analogous statements with inverted conditions hold when `less = false`.

If the type being ordered (`type1`) is collatable, the appropriate collation OID will be passed to the `in_range` function, using the standard `PG_GET_COLLATION()` mechanism.

`in_range` functions need not handle NULL inputs, and typically will be marked strict.

#### `equalimage`

Optionally, a btree operator family may provide `equalimage` (“equality implies image equality”) support functions, registered under support function number 4. These functions allow the core code to determine when it is safe to apply the btree deduplication optimization. Currently, `equalimage` functions are only called when building or rebuilding an index.

An `equalimage` function must have the signature

```
equalimage(opcintype oid) returns bool
```

The return value is static information about an operator class and collation. Returning `true` indicates that the `order` function for the operator class is guaranteed to only return 0 (“arguments are equal”) when its *A* and *B* arguments are also interchangeable without any loss of semantic information. Not registering an `equalimage` function or returning `false` indicates that this condition cannot be assumed to hold.

The *opcintype* argument is the `pg_type.oid` of the data type that the operator class indexes. This is a convenience that allows reuse of the same underlying `equalimage` function across operator classes. If *opcintype* is a collatable data type, the appropriate collation OID will be passed to the `equalimage` function, using the standard `PG_GET_COLLATION()` mechanism.

As far as the operator class is concerned, returning `true` indicates that deduplication is safe (or safe for the collation whose OID was passed to its `equalimage` function). However, the core code will only deem deduplication safe for an index when *every* indexed column uses an operator class that registers an `equalimage` function, and each function actually returns `true` when called.

Image equality is *almost* the same condition as simple bitwise equality. There is one subtle difference: When indexing a varlena data type, the on-disk representation of two image equal datums may not be bitwise equal due to inconsistent application of TOAST compression on input. Formally, when an operator class's `equalimage` function returns `true`, it is safe to assume that the `datum_image_eq()` C function will always agree with the operator class's `order` function (provided that the same collation OID is passed to both the `equalimage` and `order` functions).

The core code is fundamentally unable to deduce anything about the “equality implies image equality” status of an operator class within a multiple-data-type family based on details from other operator classes in the same family. Also, it is not sensible for an operator family to register a cross-type `equalimage` function, and attempting to do so will result in an error. This is because “equality implies image equality” status does not just depend on sorting/equality semantics, which are more or less defined at the operator family level. In general, the semantics that one particular data type implements must be considered separately.

The convention followed by the operator classes included with the core PostgreSQL distribution is to register a stock, generic `equalimage` function. Most operator classes register `btequalimage()`, which indicates that deduplication is safe unconditionally. Operator classes for collatable data types such as `text` register `btvarstrequalimage()`, which indicates that deduplication is safe with deterministic collations. Best practice for third-party extensions is to register their own custom function to retain control.

#### options

Optionally, a B-tree operator family may provide `options` (“operator class specific options”) support functions, registered under support function number 5. These functions define a set of user-visible parameters that control operator class behavior.

An `options` support function must have the signature

```
options(relopts local_relopts *) returns void
```

The function is passed a pointer to a `local_relopts` struct, which needs to be filled with a set of operator class specific options. The options can be accessed from other support functions using the `PG_HAS_OPCLASS_OPTIONS()` and `PG_GET_OPCLASS_OPTIONS()` macros.

Currently, no B-Tree operator class has an `options` support function. B-tree doesn't allow flexible representation of keys like GiST, SP-GiST, GIN and BRIN do. So, `options` probably doesn't have much application in the current B-tree index access method. Nevertheless, this support function was added to B-tree for uniformity, and will probably find uses during further evolution of B-tree in PostgreSQL.

## 67.4. Implementation

This section covers B-Tree index implementation details that may be of use to advanced users. See `src/backend/access/nbtree/README` in the source distribution for a much more detailed, internals-focused description of the B-Tree implementation.

### 67.4.1. B-Tree Structure

PostgreSQL B-Tree indexes are multi-level tree structures, where each level of the tree can be used as a doubly-linked list of pages. A single metapage is stored in a fixed position at the start of the first segment file of the index. All other pages are either leaf pages or internal pages. Leaf pages are the pages on the lowest level of the tree. All other levels consist of internal pages. Each leaf page contains tuples that point to table rows. Each internal page contains tuples that point to the next level down in the tree. Typically, over 99% of all pages are leaf pages. Both internal pages and leaf pages use the standard page format described in Section 73.6.

New leaf pages are added to a B-Tree index when an existing leaf page cannot fit an incoming tuple. A *page split* operation makes room for items that originally belonged on the overflowing page by moving a portion of the items to a new page. Page splits must also insert a new *downlink* to the new page in the parent page, which may cause the parent to split in turn. Page splits “cascade upwards” in a recursive fashion. When the root page finally cannot fit a new downlink, a *root page split* operation takes place. This adds a new level to the tree structure by creating a new root page that is one level above the original root page.

### 67.4.2. Bottom-up Index Deletion

B-Tree indexes are not directly aware that under MVCC, there might be multiple extant versions of the same logical table row; to an index, each tuple is an independent object that needs its own index entry. “Version churn” tuples may sometimes accumulate and adversely affect query latency and throughput. This typically occurs with UPDATE-heavy workloads where most individual updates cannot apply the HOT optimization. Changing the value of only one column covered by one index during an UPDATE *always* necessitates a new set of index tuples — one for *each and every* index on the table. Note in particular that this includes indexes that were not “logically modified” by the UPDATE. All indexes will need a successor physical index tuple that points to the latest version in the table. Each new tuple within each index will generally need to coexist with the original “updated” tuple for a short period of time (typically until shortly after the UPDATE transaction commits).

B-Tree indexes incrementally delete version churn index tuples by performing *bottom-up index deletion* passes. Each deletion pass is triggered in reaction to an anticipated “version churn page split”. This only happens with indexes that are not logically modified by UPDATE statements, where concentrated build up of obsolete versions in particular pages would occur otherwise. A page split will usually be avoided, though it's possible that certain implementation-level heuristics will fail to identify and delete even one garbage index tuple (in which case a page split or deduplication pass resolves the issue of an incoming new tuple not fitting on a leaf page). The worst-case number of versions that any index scan must traverse (for any single logical row) is an important contributor to overall system responsiveness and throughput. A bottom-up index deletion pass targets suspected garbage tuples in a single leaf page based on *qualitative* distinctions involving logical rows and versions. This contrasts with the “top-down” index cleanup performed by autovacuum workers, which is triggered when certain *quantitative* table-level thresholds are exceeded (see Section 25.1.6).

#### Note

Not all deletion operations that are performed within B-Tree indexes are bottom-up deletion operations. There is a distinct category of index tuple deletion: *simple index tuple deletion*. This is a deferred maintenance operation that deletes index tuples that are known to be safe to delete (those whose item identifier's `LP_DEAD` bit is already set). Like bottom-up index

deletion, simple index deletion takes place at the point that a page split is anticipated as a way of avoiding the split.

Simple deletion is opportunistic in the sense that it can only take place when recent index scans set the `LP_DEAD` bits of affected items in passing. Prior to PostgreSQL 14, the only category of B-Tree deletion was simple deletion. The main differences between it and bottom-up deletion are that only the former is opportunistically driven by the activity of passing index scans, while only the latter specifically targets version churn from `UPDATES` that do not logically modify indexed columns.

Bottom-up index deletion performs the vast majority of all garbage index tuple cleanup for particular indexes with certain workloads. This is expected with any B-Tree index that is subject to significant version churn from `UPDATES` that rarely or never logically modify the columns that the index covers. The average and worst-case number of versions per logical row can be kept low purely through targeted incremental deletion passes. It's quite possible that the on-disk size of certain indexes will never increase by even one single page/block despite *constant* version churn from `UPDATES`. Even then, an exhaustive “clean sweep” by a `VACUUM` operation (typically run in an autovacuum worker process) will eventually be required as a part of *collective* cleanup of the table and each of its indexes.

Unlike `VACUUM`, bottom-up index deletion does not provide any strong guarantees about how old the oldest garbage index tuple may be. No index can be permitted to retain “floating garbage” index tuples that became dead prior to a conservative cutoff point shared by the table and all of its indexes collectively. This fundamental table-level invariant makes it safe to recycle table TIDs. This is how it is possible for distinct logical rows to reuse the same table TID over time (though this can never happen with two logical rows whose lifetimes span the same `VACUUM` cycle).

### 67.4.3. Deduplication

A duplicate is a leaf page tuple (a tuple that points to a table row) where *all* indexed key columns have values that match corresponding column values from at least one other leaf page tuple in the same index. Duplicate tuples are quite common in practice. B-Tree indexes can use a special, space-efficient representation for duplicates when an optional technique is enabled: *deduplication*.

Deduplication works by periodically merging groups of duplicate tuples together, forming a single *posting list* tuple for each group. The column key value(s) only appear once in this representation. This is followed by a sorted array of TIDs that point to rows in the table. This significantly reduces the storage size of indexes where each value (or each distinct combination of column values) appears several times on average. The latency of queries can be reduced significantly. Overall query throughput may increase significantly. The overhead of routine index vacuuming may also be reduced significantly.

#### Note

B-Tree deduplication is just as effective with “duplicates” that contain a `NULL` value, even though `NULL` values are never equal to each other according to the `=` member of any B-Tree operator class. As far as any part of the implementation that understands the on-disk B-Tree structure is concerned, `NULL` is just another value from the domain of indexed values.

The deduplication process occurs lazily, when a new item is inserted that cannot fit on an existing leaf page, though only when index tuple deletion could not free sufficient space for the new item (typically deletion is briefly considered and then skipped over). Unlike GIN posting list tuples, B-Tree posting list tuples do not need to expand every time a new duplicate is inserted; they are merely an alternative physical representation of the original logical contents of the leaf page. This design prioritizes consistent performance with mixed read-write workloads. Most client applications will at least see a moderate performance benefit from using deduplication. Deduplication is enabled by default.

`CREATE INDEX` and `REINDEX` apply deduplication to create posting list tuples, though the strategy they use is slightly different. Each group of duplicate ordinary tuples encountered in the sorted input taken from the table is merged into a posting list tuple *before* being added to the current pending leaf page. Individual posting list tuples are packed with as many TIDs as possible. Leaf pages are written out in the usual way, without any separate deduplication pass. This strategy is well-suited to `CREATE INDEX` and `REINDEX` because they are once-off batch operations.

Write-heavy workloads that don't benefit from deduplication due to having few or no duplicate values in indexes will incur a small, fixed performance penalty (unless deduplication is explicitly disabled). The `deduplicate_items` storage parameter can be used to disable deduplication within individual indexes. There is never any performance penalty with read-only workloads, since reading posting list tuples is at least as efficient as reading the standard tuple representation. Disabling deduplication isn't usually helpful.

It is sometimes possible for unique indexes (as well as unique constraints) to use deduplication. This allows leaf pages to temporarily “absorb” extra version churn duplicates. Deduplication in unique indexes augments bottom-up index deletion, especially in cases where a long-running transaction holds a snapshot that blocks garbage collection. The goal is to buy time for the bottom-up index deletion strategy to become effective again. Delaying page splits until a single long-running transaction naturally goes away can allow a bottom-up deletion pass to succeed where an earlier deletion pass failed.

### Tip

A special heuristic is applied to determine whether a deduplication pass in a unique index should take place. It can often skip straight to splitting a leaf page, avoiding a performance penalty from wasting cycles on unhelpful deduplication passes. If you're concerned about the overhead of deduplication, consider setting `deduplicate_items = off` selectively. Leaving deduplication enabled in unique indexes has little downside.

Deduplication cannot be used in all cases due to implementation-level restrictions. Deduplication safety is determined when `CREATE INDEX` or `REINDEX` is run.

Note that deduplication is deemed unsafe and cannot be used in the following cases involving semantically significant differences among equal datums:

- `text`, `varchar`, and `char` cannot use deduplication when a *nondeterministic* collation is used. Case and accent differences must be preserved among equal datums.
- `numeric` cannot use deduplication. Numeric display scale must be preserved among equal datums.
- `jsonb` cannot use deduplication, since the `jsonb` B-Tree operator class uses `numeric` internally.
- `float4` and `float8` cannot use deduplication. These types have distinct representations for `-0` and `0`, which are nevertheless considered equal. This difference must be preserved.

There is one further implementation-level restriction that may be lifted in a future version of PostgreSQL:

- Container types (such as composite types, arrays, or range types) cannot use deduplication.

There is one further implementation-level restriction that applies regardless of the operator class or collation used:

- `INCLUDE` indexes can never use deduplication.

# Chapter 68. GiST Indexes

## 68.1. Introduction

GiST stands for Generalized Search Tree. It is a balanced, tree-structured access method, that acts as a base template in which to implement arbitrary indexing schemes. B-trees, R-trees and many other indexing schemes can be implemented in GiST.

One advantage of GiST is that it allows the development of custom data types with the appropriate access methods, by an expert in the domain of the data type, rather than a database expert.

Some of the information here is derived from the University of California at Berkeley's GiST Indexing Project web site<sup>1</sup> and Marcel Kornacker's thesis, Access Methods for Next-Generation Database Systems<sup>2</sup>. The GiST implementation in PostgreSQL is primarily maintained by Teodor Sigaev and Oleg Bartunov, and there is more information on their web site<sup>3</sup>.

## 68.2. Built-in Operator Classes

The core PostgreSQL distribution includes the GiST operator classes shown in Table 68.1. (Some of the optional modules described in Appendix F provide additional GiST operator classes.)

**Table 68.1. Built-in GiST Operator Classes**

Name	Indexable Operators	Ordering Operators
box_ops	<< (box, box)	<-> (box, point)
	&< (box, box)	
	&& (box, box)	
	&> (box, box)	
	>> (box, box)	
	~= (box, box)	
	@> (box, box)	
	<@ (box, box)	
	&<  (box, box)	
	<<  (box, box)	
	>> (box, box)	
	&> (box, box)	
	~ (box, box)	
	@ (box, box)	
circle_ops	<< (circle, circle)	<-> (circle, point)
	&< (circle, circle)	
	&> (circle, circle)	
	>> (circle, circle)	
	<@ (circle, circle)	
	@> (circle, circle)	
	~= (circle, circle)	

<sup>1</sup> <http://gist.cs.berkeley.edu/>

<sup>2</sup> <http://www.sai.msu.su/~megera/postgres/gist/papers/concurrency/access-methods-for-next-generation.pdf.gz>

<sup>3</sup> <http://www.sai.msu.su/~megera/postgres/gist/>

Name	Indexable Operators	Ordering Operators
	&& (circle, circle)	
	>> (circle, circle)	
	<<  (circle, circle)	
	&<  (circle, circle)	
	&> (circle, circle)	
	@ (circle, circle)	
	~ (circle, circle)	
inet_ops	<< (inet, inet)	
	<<= (inet, inet)	
	>> (inet, inet)	
	>>= (inet, inet)	
	= (inet, inet)	
	<> (inet, inet)	
	< (inet, inet)	
	<= (inet, inet)	
	> (inet, inet)	
	>= (inet, inet)	
	&& (inet, inet)	
multirange_ops	= (anymultirange, anymulti- range)	
	&& (anymultirange, anymulti- range)	
	&& (anymultirange, anyrange)	
	@> (anymultirange, anyele- ment)	
	@> (anymultirange, anymulti- range)	
	@> (anymultirange, anyrange)	
	<@ (anymultirange, anymulti- range)	
	<@ (anymultirange, anyrange)	
	<< (anymultirange, anymulti- range)	
	<< (anymultirange, anyrange)	
	>> (anymultirange, anymulti- range)	
	>> (anymultirange, anyrange)	
	&< (anymultirange, anymulti- range)	
	&< (anymultirange, anyrange)	
	&> (anymultirange, anymulti- range)	
	&> (anymultirange, anyrange)	

Name	Indexable Operators	Ordering Operators
	- - (anymultirange, anymultirange)	
	- - (anymultirange, anyrange)	
point_ops	>> (point, point)	<-> (point, point)
	<< (point, point)	
	>> (point, point)	
	<<  (point, point)	
	~= (point, point)	
	<@ (point, box)	
	<@ (point, polygon)	
	<@ (point, circle)	
poly_ops	<< (polygon, polygon)	<-> (polygon, point)
	&< (polygon, polygon)	
	&> (polygon, polygon)	
	>> (polygon, polygon)	
	<@ (polygon, polygon)	
	@> (polygon, polygon)	
	~= (polygon, polygon)	
	&& (polygon, polygon)	
	<<  (polygon, polygon)	
	&<  (polygon, polygon)	
	&> (polygon, polygon)	
	>> (polygon, polygon)	
	@ (polygon, polygon)	
	~ (polygon, polygon)	
range_ops	= (anyrange, anyrange)	
	&& (anyrange, anyrange)	
	&& (anyrange, anymultirange)	
	@> (anyrange, anyelement)	
	@> (anyrange, anyrange)	
	@> (anyrange, anymultirange)	
	<@ (anyrange, anyrange)	
	<@ (anyrange, anymultirange)	
	<< (anyrange, anyrange)	
	<< (anyrange, anymultirange)	
	>> (anyrange, anyrange)	
	>> (anyrange, anymultirange)	
	&< (anyrange, anyrange)	
	&< (anyrange, anymultirange)	
	&> (anyrange, anyrange)	



Name	Indexable Operators	Ordering Operators
	&> (anyrange, anymultirange)	
	- - (anyrange, anyrange)	
	- - (anyrange, anymulti-range)	
tsquery_ops	<@ (tsquery, tsquery)	
	@> (tsquery, tsquery)	
tsvector_ops	@@ (tsvector, tsquery)	

For historical reasons, the `inet_ops` operator class is not the default class for types `inet` and `cidr`. To use it, mention the class name in `CREATE INDEX`, for example

```
CREATE INDEX ON my_table USING GIST (my_inet_column inet_ops);
```

## 68.3. Extensibility

Traditionally, implementing a new index access method meant a lot of difficult work. It was necessary to understand the inner workings of the database, such as the lock manager and Write-Ahead Log. The GiST interface has a high level of abstraction, requiring the access method implementer only to implement the semantics of the data type being accessed. The GiST layer itself takes care of concurrency, logging and searching the tree structure.

This extensibility should not be confused with the extensibility of the other standard search trees in terms of the data they can handle. For example, PostgreSQL supports extensible B-trees and hash indexes. That means that you can use PostgreSQL to build a B-tree or hash over any data type you want. But B-trees only support range predicates (`<`, `=`, `>`), and hash indexes only support equality queries.

So if you index, say, an image collection with a PostgreSQL B-tree, you can only issue queries such as “is imagex equal to imagey”, “is imagex less than imagey” and “is imagex greater than imagey”. Depending on how you define “equals”, “less than” and “greater than” in this context, this could be useful. However, by using a GiST based index, you could create ways to ask domain-specific questions, perhaps “find all images of horses” or “find all over-exposed images”.

All it takes to get a GiST access method up and running is to implement several user-defined methods, which define the behavior of keys in the tree. Of course these methods have to be pretty fancy to support fancy queries, but for all the standard queries (B-trees, R-trees, etc.) they're relatively straightforward. In short, GiST combines extensibility along with generality, code reuse, and a clean interface.

There are five methods that an index operator class for GiST must provide, and six that are optional. Correctness of the index is ensured by proper implementation of the `same`, `consistent` and `union` methods, while efficiency (size and speed) of the index will depend on the `penalty` and `picksplit` methods. Two optional methods are `compress` and `decompress`, which allow an index to have internal tree data of a different type than the data it indexes. The leaves are to be of the indexed data type, while the other tree nodes can be of any C struct (but you still have to follow PostgreSQL data type rules here, see about `varlena` for variable sized data). If the tree's internal data type exists at the SQL level, the `STORAGE` option of the `CREATE OPERATOR CLASS` command can be used. The optional eighth method is `distance`, which is needed if the operator class wishes to support ordered scans (nearest-neighbor searches). The optional ninth method `fetch` is needed if the operator class wishes to support index-only scans, except when the `compress` method is omitted. The optional tenth method `options` is needed if the operator class has user-specified parameters. The optional eleventh method `sortsupport` is used to speed up building a GiST index.

`consistent`

Given an index entry `p` and a query value `q`, this function determines whether the index entry is “consistent” with the query; that is, could the predicate “`indexed_column indexable_op-`

*erator q*” be true for any row represented by the index entry? For a leaf index entry this is equivalent to testing the indexable condition, while for an internal tree node this determines whether it is necessary to scan the subtree of the index represented by the tree node. When the result is true, a *recheck* flag must also be returned. This indicates whether the predicate is certainly true or only possibly true. If *recheck* = false then the index has tested the predicate condition exactly, whereas if *recheck* = true the row is only a candidate match. In that case the system will automatically evaluate the *indexable\_operator* against the actual row value to see if it is really a match. This convention allows GiST to support both lossless and lossy index structures.

The SQL declaration of the function must look like this:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION my_consistent(internal, data_type,
    smallint, oid, internal)
RETURNS bool
AS 'MODULE_PATHNAME'
LANGUAGE C STRICT;
```

And the matching code in the C module could then follow this skeleton:

```
PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(my_consistent);

Datum
my_consistent(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    GISTENTRY *entry = (GISTENTRY *) PG_GETARG_POINTER(0);
    data_type *query = PG_GETARG_DATA_TYPE_P(1);
    StrategyNumber strategy = (StrategyNumber)
    PG_GETARG_UINT16(2);
    /* Oid subtype = PG_GETARG_OID(3); */
    bool *recheck = (bool *) PG_GETARG_POINTER(4);
    data_type *key = DatumGetDataType(entry->key);
    bool retval;

    /*
     * determine return value as a function of strategy, key and
     * query.
     *
     * Use GIST_LEAF(entry) to know where you're called in the
     * index tree,
     * which comes handy when supporting the = operator for
     * example (you could
     * check for non empty union() in non-leaf nodes and
     * equality in leaf
     * nodes).
     */

    *recheck = true;          /* or false if check is exact */

    PG_RETURN_BOOL(retval);
}
```

Here, *key* is an element in the index and *query* the value being looked up in the index. The *StrategyNumber* parameter indicates which operator of your operator class is being applied — it matches one of the operator numbers in the `CREATE OPERATOR CLASS` command.

Depending on which operators you have included in the class, the data type of *query* could vary with the operator, since it will be whatever type is on the right-hand side of the operator, which

might be different from the indexed data type appearing on the left-hand side. (The above code skeleton assumes that only one type is possible; if not, fetching the `query` argument value would have to depend on the operator.) It is recommended that the SQL declaration of the `consistent` function use the opclass's indexed data type for the `query` argument, even though the actual type might be something else depending on the operator.

`union`

This method consolidates information in the tree. Given a set of entries, this function generates a new index entry that represents all the given entries.

The SQL declaration of the function must look like this:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION my_union(internal, internal)
RETURNS storage_type
AS 'MODULE_PATHNAME'
LANGUAGE C STRICT;
```

And the matching code in the C module could then follow this skeleton:

```
PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(my_union);

Datum
my_union(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    GistEntryVector *entryvec = (GistEntryVector *)
    PG_GETARG_POINTER(0);
    GISTENTRY *ent = entryvec->vector;
    data_type *out,
                *tmp,
                *old;
    int         numranges,
                i = 0;

    numranges = entryvec->n;
    tmp = DatumGetDataTypes(ent[0].key);
    out = tmp;

    if (numranges == 1)
    {
        out = data_type_deep_copy(tmp);

        PG_RETURN_DATA_TYPE_P(out);
    }

    for (i = 1; i < numranges; i++)
    {
        old = out;
        tmp = DatumGetDataTypes(ent[i].key);
        out = my_union_implementation(out, tmp);
    }

    PG_RETURN_DATA_TYPE_P(out);
}
```

As you can see, in this skeleton we're dealing with a data type where `union(X, Y, Z) = union(union(X, Y), Z)`. It's easy enough to support data types where this is not the case, by implementing the proper union algorithm in this GiST support method.

The result of the union function must be a value of the index's storage type, whatever that is (it might or might not be different from the indexed column's type). The union function should return a pointer to newly `palloc()`ed memory. You can't just return the input value as-is, even if there is no type change.

As shown above, the union function's first internal argument is actually a `GistEntryVector` pointer. The second argument is a pointer to an integer variable, which can be ignored. (It used to be required that the union function store the size of its result value into that variable, but this is no longer necessary.)

#### `compress`

Converts a data item into a format suitable for physical storage in an index page. If the `compress` method is omitted, data items are stored in the index without modification.

The SQL declaration of the function must look like this:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION my_compress(internal)
RETURNS internal
AS 'MODULE_PATHNAME'
LANGUAGE C STRICT;
```

And the matching code in the C module could then follow this skeleton:

```
PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(my_compress);

Datum
my_compress(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    GISTENTRY *entry = (GISTENTRY *) PG_GETARG_POINTER(0);
    GISTENTRY *retval;

    if (entry->leafkey)
    {
        /* replace entry->key with a compressed version */
        compressed_data_type *compressed_data =
            palloc(sizeof(compressed_data_type));

        /* fill *compressed_data from entry->key ... */

        retval = palloc(sizeof(GISTENTRY));
        gistentryinit(*retval, PointerGetDatum(compressed_data),
                      entry->rel, entry->page, entry->offset,
FALSE);
    }
    else
    {
        /* typically we needn't do anything with non-leaf
entries */
        retval = entry;
    }

    PG_RETURN_POINTER(retval);
}
```

You have to adapt *compressed\_data\_type* to the specific type you're converting to in order to compress your leaf nodes, of course.

## decompress

Converts the stored representation of a data item into a format that can be manipulated by the other GiST methods in the operator class. If the `decompress` method is omitted, it is assumed that the other GiST methods can work directly on the stored data format. (`decompress` is not necessarily the reverse of the `compress` method; in particular, if `compress` is lossy then it's impossible for `decompress` to exactly reconstruct the original data. `decompress` is not necessarily equivalent to `fetch`, either, since the other GiST methods might not require full reconstruction of the data.)

The SQL declaration of the function must look like this:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION my_decompress(internal)
RETURNS internal
AS 'MODULE_PATHNAME'
LANGUAGE C STRICT;
```

And the matching code in the C module could then follow this skeleton:

```
PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(my_decompress);

Datum
my_decompress(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    PG_RETURN_POINTER(PG_GETARG_POINTER(0));
}
```

The above skeleton is suitable for the case where no decompression is needed. (But, of course, omitting the method altogether is even easier, and is recommended in such cases.)

## penalty

Returns a value indicating the “cost” of inserting the new entry into a particular branch of the tree. Items will be inserted down the path of least `penalty` in the tree. Values returned by `penalty` should be non-negative. If a negative value is returned, it will be treated as zero.

The SQL declaration of the function must look like this:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION my_penalty(internal, internal,
internal)
RETURNS internal
AS 'MODULE_PATHNAME'
LANGUAGE C STRICT; -- in some cases penalty functions need not
be strict
```

And the matching code in the C module could then follow this skeleton:

```
PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(my_penalty);

Datum
my_penalty(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    GISTENTRY *origentry = (GISTENTRY *) PG_GETARG_POINTER(0);
    GISTENTRY *newentry = (GISTENTRY *) PG_GETARG_POINTER(1);
    float *penalty = (float *) PG_GETARG_POINTER(2);
    data_type *orig = DatumGetDataType(origentry->key);
    data_type *new = DatumGetDataType(newentry->key);
}
```

```
    *penalty = my_penalty_implementation(orig, new);
    PG_RETURN_POINTER(penalty);
}
```

For historical reasons, the `penalty` function doesn't just return a `float` result; instead it has to store the value at the location indicated by the third argument. The return value per se is ignored, though it's conventional to pass back the address of that argument.

The `penalty` function is crucial to good performance of the index. It'll get used at insertion time to determine which branch to follow when choosing where to add the new entry in the tree. At query time, the more balanced the index, the quicker the lookup.

#### `picksplit`

When an index page split is necessary, this function decides which entries on the page are to stay on the old page, and which are to move to the new page.

The SQL declaration of the function must look like this:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION my_picksplit(internal, internal)
RETURNS internal
AS 'MODULE_PATHNAME'
LANGUAGE C STRICT;
```

And the matching code in the C module could then follow this skeleton:

```
PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(my_picksplit);

Datum
my_picksplit(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    GistEntryVector *entryvec = (GistEntryVector *)
    PG_GETARG_POINTER(0);
    GIST_SPLITVEC *v = (GIST_SPLITVEC *) PG_GETARG_POINTER(1);
    OffsetNumber maxoff = entryvec->n - 1;
    GISTENTRY *ent = entryvec->vector;
    int i,
        nbytes;
    OffsetNumber *left,
        *right;
    data_type *tmp_union;
    data_type *unionL;
    data_type *unionR;
    GISTENTRY **raw_entryvec;

    maxoff = entryvec->n - 1;
    nbytes = (maxoff + 1) * sizeof(OffsetNumber);

    v->spl_left = (OffsetNumber *) palloc(nbytes);
    left = v->spl_left;
    v->spl_nleft = 0;

    v->spl_right = (OffsetNumber *) palloc(nbytes);
    right = v->spl_right;
    v->spl_nright = 0;

    unionL = NULL;
```

```
unionR = NULL;

/* Initialize the raw entry vector. */
raw_entryvec = (GISTENTRY **) malloc(entryvec->n *
sizeof(void *));
for (i = FirstOffsetNumber; i <= maxoff; i =
OffsetNumberNext(i))
    raw_entryvec[i] = &(entryvec->vector[i]);

for (i = FirstOffsetNumber; i <= maxoff; i =
OffsetNumberNext(i))
{
    int          real_index = raw_entryvec[i] - entryvec-
>vector;

    tmp_union = DatumGetDataTypes(entryvec-
>vector[real_index].key);
    Assert(tmp_union != NULL);

    /*
     * Choose where to put the index entries and update
unionL and unionR
     * accordingly. Append the entries to either v->spl_left
or
     * v->spl_right, and care about the counters.
     */

    if (my_choice_is_left(unionL, curl, unionR, curr))
    {
        if (unionL == NULL)
            unionL = tmp_union;
        else
            unionL = my_union_implementation(unionL,
tmp_union);

        *left = real_index;
        ++left;
        ++(v->spl_nleft);
    }
    else
    {
        /*
         * Same on the right
         */
    }
}

v->spl_ldatum = DataTypeGetDatum(unionL);
v->spl_rdatum = DataTypeGetDatum(unionR);
PG_RETURN_POINTER(v);
}
```

Notice that the `picksplit` function's result is delivered by modifying the passed-in `v` structure. The return value per se is ignored, though it's conventional to pass back the address of `v`.

Like `penalty`, the `picksplit` function is crucial to good performance of the index. Designing suitable `penalty` and `picksplit` implementations is where the challenge of implementing well-performing GiST indexes lies.

same

Returns true if two index entries are identical, false otherwise. (An “index entry” is a value of the index's storage type, not necessarily the original indexed column's type.)

The SQL declaration of the function must look like this:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION my_same(storage_type, storage_type,
    internal)
RETURNS internal
AS 'MODULE_PATHNAME'
LANGUAGE C STRICT;
```

And the matching code in the C module could then follow this skeleton:

```
PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(my_same);
```

Datum

```
my_same(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    prefix_range *v1 = PG_GETARG_PREFIX_RANGE_P(0);
    prefix_range *v2 = PG_GETARG_PREFIX_RANGE_P(1);
    bool          *result = (bool *) PG_GETARG_POINTER(2);

    *result = my_eq(v1, v2);
    PG_RETURN_POINTER(result);
}
```

For historical reasons, the same function doesn't just return a Boolean result; instead it has to store the flag at the location indicated by the third argument. The return value per se is ignored, though it's conventional to pass back the address of that argument.

distance

Given an index entry *p* and a query value *q*, this function determines the index entry's “distance” from the query value. This function must be supplied if the operator class contains any ordering operators. A query using the ordering operator will be implemented by returning index entries with the smallest “distance” values first, so the results must be consistent with the operator's semantics. For a leaf index entry the result just represents the distance to the index entry; for an internal tree node, the result must be the smallest distance that any child entry could have.

The SQL declaration of the function must look like this:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION my_distance(internal, data_type,
    smallint, oid, internal)
RETURNS float8
AS 'MODULE_PATHNAME'
LANGUAGE C STRICT;
```

And the matching code in the C module could then follow this skeleton:

```
PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(my_distance);
```

Datum

```
my_distance(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    GISTENTRY *entry = (GISTENTRY *) PG_GETARG_POINTER(0);
    data_type *query = PG_GETARG_DATA_TYPE_P(1);
```



```
    StrategyNumber strategy = (StrategyNumber)
PG_GETARG_UINT16(2);
    /* Oid subtype = PG_GETARG_OID(3); */
    /* bool *recheck = (bool *) PG_GETARG_POINTER(4); */
    data_type *key = DatumGetDataTypes(entry->key);
    double      retval;

    /*
     * determine return value as a function of strategy, key and
     query.
     */

    PG_RETURN_FLOAT8(retval);
}
```

The arguments to the distance function are identical to the arguments of the consistent function.

Some approximation is allowed when determining the distance, so long as the result is never greater than the entry's actual distance. Thus, for example, distance to a bounding box is usually sufficient in geometric applications. For an internal tree node, the distance returned must not be greater than the distance to any of the child nodes. If the returned distance is not exact, the function must set `*recheck` to true. (This is not necessary for internal tree nodes; for them, the calculation is always assumed to be inexact.) In this case the executor will calculate the accurate distance after fetching the tuple from the heap, and reorder the tuples if necessary.

If the distance function returns `*recheck = true` for any leaf node, the original ordering operator's return type must be `float8` or `float4`, and the distance function's result values must be comparable to those of the original ordering operator, since the executor will sort using both distance function results and recalculated ordering-operator results. Otherwise, the distance function's result values can be any finite `float8` values, so long as the relative order of the result values matches the order returned by the ordering operator. (Infinity and minus infinity are used internally to handle cases such as nulls, so it is not recommended that distance functions return these values.)

#### `fetch`

Converts the compressed index representation of a data item into the original data type, for index-only scans. The returned data must be an exact, non-lossy copy of the originally indexed value.

The SQL declaration of the function must look like this:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION my_fetch(internal)
RETURNS internal
AS 'MODULE_PATHNAME'
LANGUAGE C STRICT;
```

The argument is a pointer to a `GISTENTRY` struct. On entry, its `key` field contains a non-NULL leaf datum in compressed form. The return value is another `GISTENTRY` struct, whose `key` field contains the same datum in its original, uncompressed form. If the `opclass`'s `compress` function does nothing for leaf entries, the `fetch` method can return the argument as-is. Or, if the `opclass` does not have a `compress` function, the `fetch` method can be omitted as well, since it would necessarily be a no-op.

The matching code in the C module could then follow this skeleton:

```
PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(my_fetch);
```

```
Datum
my_fetch(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    GISTENTRY *entry = (GISTENTRY *) PG_GETARG_POINTER(0);
    input_data_type *in = DatumGetPointer(entry->key);
    fetched_data_type *fetched_data;
    GISTENTRY *retval;

    retval = palloc(sizeof(GISTENTRY));
    fetched_data = palloc(sizeof(fetched_data_type));

    /*
     * Convert 'fetched_data' into the a Datum of the original
     datatype.
     */

    /* fill *retval from fetched_data. */
    gistentryinit(*retval, PointerGetDatum(converted_datum),
                  entry->rel, entry->page, entry->offset,
                  FALSE);

    PG_RETURN_POINTER(retval);
}
```

If the compress method is lossy for leaf entries, the operator class cannot support index-only scans, and must not define a fetch function.

#### options

Allows definition of user-visible parameters that control operator class behavior.

The SQL declaration of the function must look like this:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION my_options(internal)
RETURNS void
AS 'MODULE_PATHNAME'
LANGUAGE C STRICT;
```

The function is passed a pointer to a `local_relopts` struct, which needs to be filled with a set of operator class specific options. The options can be accessed from other support functions using the `PG_HAS_OPCLASS_OPTIONS()` and `PG_GET_OPCLASS_OPTIONS()` macros.

An example implementation of `my_options()` and parameters use from other support functions are given below:

```
typedef enum MyEnumType
{
    MY_ENUM_ON,
    MY_ENUM_OFF,
    MY_ENUM_AUTO
} MyEnumType;

typedef struct
{
    int32    vl_len_;      /* varlena header (do not touch
    directly!) */
    int      int_param;    /* integer parameter */
    double   real_param;   /* real parameter */
}
```

```
        MyEnumType enum_param; /* enum parameter */
        int        str_param;  /* string parameter */
    } MyOptionsStruct;

/* String representation of enum values */
static relopt_enum_elt_def myEnumValues[] =
{
    {"on", MY_ENUM_ON},
    {"off", MY_ENUM_OFF},
    {"auto", MY_ENUM_AUTO},
    {(const char *) NULL} /* list terminator */
};

static char *str_param_default = "default";

/*
 * Sample validator: checks that string is not longer than 8
 * bytes.
 */
static void
validate_my_string_relopt(const char *value)
{
    if (strlen(value) > 8)
        ereport(ERROR,
                (errcode(ERRCODE_INVALID_PARAMETER_VALUE),
                 errmsg("str_param must be at most 8 bytes")));
}

/*
 * Sample filler: switches characters to lower case.
 */
static Size
fill_my_string_relopt(const char *value, void *ptr)
{
    char    *tmp = str_tolower(value, strlen(value),
                                DEFAULT_COLLATION_OID);
    int      len = strlen(tmp);

    if (ptr)
        strcpy((char *) ptr, tmp);

    pfree(tmp);
    return len + 1;
}

PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(my_options);

Datum
my_options(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    local_relopts *relopts = (local_relopts *)
        PG_GETARG_POINTER(0);

    init_local_reloptions(relopts, sizeof(MyOptionsStruct));
    add_local_int_reloption(relopts, "int_param", "integer
parameter",
                           100, 0, 1000000,
```

```
                                offsetof(MyOptionsStruct,
int_param));
    add_local_real_reloption(relopts, "real_param", "real
parameter",
                                1.0, 0.0, 1000000.0,
                                offsetof(MyOptionsStruct,
real_param));
    add_local_enum_reloption(relopts, "enum_param", "enum
parameter",
                                myEnumValues, MY_ENUM_ON,
                                "Valid values are: \"on\", \"off\"
and \"auto\".",
                                offsetof(MyOptionsStruct,
enum_param));
    add_local_string_reloption(relopts, "str_param", "string
parameter",
                                str_param_default,
                                &validate_my_string_relopt,
                                &fill_my_string_relopt,
                                offsetof(MyOptionsStruct,
str_param));

    PG_RETURN_VOID();
}

PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(my_compress);

Datum
my_compress(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    int        int_param = 100;
    double     real_param = 1.0;
    MyEnumType enum_param = MY_ENUM_ON;
    char      *str_param = str_param_default;

    /*
     * Normally, when opclass contains 'options' method, then
     options are always
     * passed to support functions. However, if you add
     'options' method to
     * existing opclass, previously defined indexes have no
     options, so the
     * check is required.
     */
    if (PG_HAS_OPCLASS_OPTIONS())
    {
        MyOptionsStruct *options = (MyOptionsStruct *)
PG_GET_OPCLASS_OPTIONS();

        int_param = options->int_param;
        real_param = options->real_param;
        enum_param = options->enum_param;
        str_param = GET_STRING_RELOPTION(options, str_param);
    }

    /* the rest implementation of support function */
}
```

Since the representation of the key in GiST is flexible, it may depend on user-specified parameters. For instance, the length of key signature may be specified. See `gtsvector_options()` for example.

#### `sortsupport`

Returns a comparator function to sort data in a way that preserves locality. It is used by `CREATE INDEX` and `REINDEX` commands. The quality of the created index depends on how well the sort order determined by the comparator function preserves locality of the inputs.

The `sortsupport` method is optional. If it is not provided, `CREATE INDEX` builds the index by inserting each tuple to the tree using the `penalty` and `picksplit` functions, which is much slower.

The SQL declaration of the function must look like this:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION my_sortsupport(internal)
RETURNS void
AS 'MODULE_PATHNAME'
LANGUAGE C STRICT;
```

The argument is a pointer to a `SortSupport` struct. At a minimum, the function must fill in its comparator field. The comparator takes three arguments: two `Datums` to compare, and a pointer to the `SortSupport` struct. The `Datums` are the two indexed values in the format that they are stored in the index; that is, in the format returned by the `compress` method. The full API is defined in `src/include/utils/sortsupport.h`.

The matching code in the C module could then follow this skeleton:

```
PG_FUNCTION_INFO_V1(my_sortsupport);

static int
my_fastcmp(Datum x, Datum y, SortSupport ssup)
{
    /* establish order between x and y by computing some sorting
       value z */

    int z1 = ComputeSpatialCode(x);
    int z2 = ComputeSpatialCode(y);

    return z1 == z2 ? 0 : z1 > z2 ? 1 : -1;
}

Datum
my_sortsupport(PG_FUNCTION_ARGS)
{
    SortSupport ssup = (SortSupport) PG_GETARG_POINTER(0);

    ssup->comparator = my_fastcmp;
    PG_RETURN_VOID();
}
```

All the GiST support methods are normally called in short-lived memory contexts; that is, `CurrentMemoryContext` will get reset after each tuple is processed. It is therefore not very important to worry about `pfree`'ing everything you `palloc`. However, in some cases it's useful for a support method to cache data across repeated calls. To do that, allocate the longer-lived data in `fcinfo->flinfo->fn_mcxt`, and keep a pointer to it in `fcinfo->flinfo->fn_extra`. Such data will survive for the life of the index operation (e.g., a single GiST index scan, index build, or index tuple insertion).

Be careful to pfree the previous value when replacing a `fn_extra` value, or the leak will accumulate for the duration of the operation.

## 68.4. Implementation

### 68.4.1. GiST Index Build Methods

The simplest way to build a GiST index is just to insert all the entries, one by one. This tends to be slow for large indexes, because if the index tuples are scattered across the index and the index is large enough to not fit in cache, a lot of random I/O will be needed. PostgreSQL supports two alternative methods for initial build of a GiST index: *sorted* and *buffered* modes.

The sorted method is only available if each of the opclasses used by the index provides a `sortsupport` function, as described in Section 68.3. If they do, this method is usually the best, so it is used by default.

The buffered method works by not inserting tuples directly into the index right away. It can dramatically reduce the amount of random I/O needed for non-ordered data sets. For well-ordered data sets the benefit is smaller or non-existent, because only a small number of pages receive new tuples at a time, and those pages fit in cache even if the index as a whole does not.

The buffered method needs to call the `penalty` function more often than the simple method does, which consumes some extra CPU resources. Also, the buffers need temporary disk space, up to the size of the resulting index. Buffering can also influence the quality of the resulting index, in both positive and negative directions. That influence depends on various factors, like the distribution of the input data and the operator class implementation.

If sorting is not possible, then by default a GiST index build switches to the buffering method when the index size reaches `effective_cache_size`. Buffering can be manually forced or prevented by the `buffering` parameter to the `CREATE INDEX` command. The default behavior is good for most cases, but turning buffering off might speed up the build somewhat if the input data is ordered.

## 68.5. Examples

The PostgreSQL source distribution includes several examples of index methods implemented using GiST. The core system currently provides text search support (indexing for `tsvector` and `tsquery`) as well as R-Tree equivalent functionality for some of the built-in geometric data types (see `src/backend/access/gist/gistproc.c`). The following `contrib` modules also contain GiST operator classes:

`btree_gist`

B-tree equivalent functionality for several data types

`cube`

Indexing for multidimensional cubes

`hstore`

Module for storing (key, value) pairs

`intarray`

RD-Tree for one-dimensional array of int4 values

`ltree`

Indexing for tree-like structures

`pg_trgm`

Text similarity using trigram matching

`seg`

Indexing for “float ranges”

# Chapter 69. SP-GiST Indexes

## 69.1. Introduction

SP-GiST is an abbreviation for space-partitioned GiST. SP-GiST supports partitioned search trees, which facilitate development of a wide range of different non-balanced data structures, such as quad-trees, k-d trees, and radix trees (tries). The common feature of these structures is that they repeatedly divide the search space into partitions that need not be of equal size. Searches that are well matched to the partitioning rule can be very fast.

These popular data structures were originally developed for in-memory usage. In main memory, they are usually designed as a set of dynamically allocated nodes linked by pointers. This is not suitable for direct storing on disk, since these chains of pointers can be rather long which would require too many disk accesses. In contrast, disk-based data structures should have a high fanout to minimize I/O. The challenge addressed by SP-GiST is to map search tree nodes to disk pages in such a way that a search need access only a few disk pages, even if it traverses many nodes.

Like GiST, SP-GiST is meant to allow the development of custom data types with the appropriate access methods, by an expert in the domain of the data type, rather than a database expert.

Some of the information here is derived from Purdue University's SP-GiST Indexing Project web site<sup>1</sup>. The SP-GiST implementation in PostgreSQL is primarily maintained by Teodor Sigaev and Oleg Bartunov, and there is more information on their web site<sup>2</sup>.

## 69.2. Built-in Operator Classes

The core PostgreSQL distribution includes the SP-GiST operator classes shown in Table 69.1.

**Table 69.1. Built-in SP-GiST Operator Classes**

Name	Indexable Operators	Ordering Operators
box_ops	<< (box,box)	<-> (box,point)
	&< (box,box)	
	&> (box,box)	
	>> (box,box)	
	<@ (box,box)	
	@> (box,box)	
	~= (box,box)	
	&& (box,box)	
	<<  (box,box)	
	&<  (box,box)	
	&> (box,box)	
	>> (box,box)	
inet_ops	<< (inet,inet)	
	<<= (inet,inet)	
	>> (inet,inet)	
	>>= (inet,inet)	
	= (inet,inet)	

<sup>1</sup> <https://www.cs.purdue.edu/spgist/>

<sup>2</sup> [http://www.sai.msu.su/~megera/wiki/spgist\\_dev](http://www.sai.msu.su/~megera/wiki/spgist_dev)



Name	Indexable Operators	Ordering Operators
	<> (inet,inet)	
	< (inet,inet)	
	<= (inet,inet)	
	> (inet,inet)	
	>= (inet,inet)	
	&& (inet,inet)	
kd_point_ops	>> (point,point)	<-> (point,point)
	<< (point,point)	
	>> (point,point)	
	<<  (point,point)	
	~= (point,point)	
	<@ (point,box)	
poly_ops	<< (polygon,polygon)	<-> (polygon,point)
	&< (polygon,polygon)	
	&> (polygon,polygon)	
	>> (polygon,polygon)	
	<@ (polygon,polygon)	
	@> (polygon,polygon)	
	~= (polygon,polygon)	
	&& (polygon,polygon)	
	<<  (polygon,polygon)	
	&<  (polygon,polygon)	
	>> (polygon,polygon)	
	&> (polygon,polygon)	
quad_point_ops	>> (point,point)	<-> (point,point)
	<< (point,point)	
	>> (point,point)	
	<<  (point,point)	
	~= (point,point)	
	<@ (point,box)	
range_ops	= (anyrange,anyrange)	
	&& (anyrange,anyrange)	
	@> (anyrange,anyelement)	
	@> (anyrange,anyrange)	
	<@ (anyrange,anyrange)	
	<< (anyrange,anyrange)	

Name	Indexable Operators	Ordering Operators
	>> (anyrange, anyrange)	
	&< (anyrange, anyrange)	
	&> (anyrange, anyrange)	
	- - (anyrange, anyrange)	
text_ops	= (text, text)	
	< (text, text)	
	<= (text, text)	
	> (text, text)	
	>= (text, text)	
	~<~ (text, text)	
	~<=~ (text, text)	
	~>=~ (text, text)	
	~>~ (text, text)	
	^@ (text, text)	

Of the two operator classes for type `point`, `quad_point_ops` is the default. `kd_point_ops` supports the same operators but uses a different index data structure that may offer better performance in some applications.

The `quad_point_ops`, `kd_point_ops` and `poly_ops` operator classes support the `<->` ordering operator, which enables the k-nearest neighbor (k-NN) search over indexed point or polygon data sets.

## 69.3. Extensibility

SP-GiST offers an interface with a high level of abstraction, requiring the access method developer to implement only methods specific to a given data type. The SP-GiST core is responsible for efficient disk mapping and searching the tree structure. It also takes care of concurrency and logging considerations.

Leaf tuples of an SP-GiST tree usually contain values of the same data type as the indexed column, although it is also possible for them to contain lossy representations of the indexed column. Leaf tuples stored at the root level will directly represent the original indexed data value, but leaf tuples at lower levels might contain only a partial value, such as a suffix. In that case the operator class support functions must be able to reconstruct the original value using information accumulated from the inner tuples that are passed through to reach the leaf level.

When an SP-GiST index is created with `INCLUDE` columns, the values of those columns are also stored in leaf tuples. The `INCLUDE` columns are of no concern to the SP-GiST operator class, so they are not discussed further here.

Inner tuples are more complex, since they are branching points in the search tree. Each inner tuple contains a set of one or more *nodes*, which represent groups of similar leaf values. A node contains a downlink that leads either to another, lower-level inner tuple, or to a short list of leaf tuples that all lie on the same index page. Each node normally has a *label* that describes it; for example, in a radix tree the node label could be the next character of the string value. (Alternatively, an operator class can omit the node labels, if it works with a fixed set of nodes for all inner tuples; see Section 69.4.2.) Optionally, an inner tuple can have a *prefix* value that describes all its members. In a radix tree this

could be the common prefix of the represented strings. The prefix value is not necessarily really a prefix, but can be any data needed by the operator class; for example, in a quad-tree it can store the central point that the four quadrants are measured with respect to. A quad-tree inner tuple would then also contain four nodes corresponding to the quadrants around this central point.

Some tree algorithms require knowledge of level (or depth) of the current tuple, so the SP-GiST core provides the possibility for operator classes to manage level counting while descending the tree. There is also support for incrementally reconstructing the represented value when that is needed, and for passing down additional data (called *traverse values*) during a tree descent.

### Note

The SP-GiST core code takes care of null entries. Although SP-GiST indexes do store entries for nulls in indexed columns, this is hidden from the index operator class code: no null index entries or search conditions will ever be passed to the operator class methods. (It is assumed that SP-GiST operators are strict and so cannot succeed for null values.) Null values are therefore not discussed further here.

There are five user-defined methods that an index operator class for SP-GiST must provide, and two are optional. All five mandatory methods follow the convention of accepting two `internal` arguments, the first of which is a pointer to a C struct containing input values for the support method, while the second argument is a pointer to a C struct where output values must be placed. Four of the mandatory methods just return `void`, since all their results appear in the output struct; but `leaf_consistent` returns a `boolean` result. The methods must not modify any fields of their input structs. In all cases, the output struct is initialized to zeroes before calling the user-defined method. The optional sixth method `compress` accepts a datum to be indexed as the only argument and returns a value suitable for physical storage in a leaf tuple. The optional seventh method `options` accepts an `internal` pointer to a C struct, where `opclass`-specific parameters should be placed, and returns `void`.

The five mandatory user-defined methods are:

`config`

Returns static information about the index implementation, including the data type OIDs of the prefix and node label data types.

The SQL declaration of the function must look like this:

```
CREATE FUNCTION my_config(internal, internal) RETURNS void ...
```

The first argument is a pointer to a `spgConfigIn` C struct, containing input data for the function. The second argument is a pointer to a `spgConfigOut` C struct, which the function must fill with result data.

```
typedef struct spgConfigIn
{
    Oid      attType;          /* Data type to be indexed */
} spgConfigIn;

typedef struct spgConfigOut
{
    Oid      prefixType;       /* Data type of inner-tuple
    prefixes */
    Oid      labelType;        /* Data type of inner-tuple node
    labels */
    Oid      leafType;         /* Data type of leaf-tuple
    values */
}
```

```

        bool        canReturnData; /* Oclass can reconstruct
original data */
        bool        longValuesOK; /* Oclass can cope with values
> 1 page */
    } spgConfigOut;

```

`attType` is passed in order to support polymorphic index operator classes; for ordinary fixed-data-type operator classes, it will always have the same value and so can be ignored.

For operator classes that do not use prefixes, `prefixType` can be set to `VOIDOID`. Likewise, for operator classes that do not use node labels, `labelType` can be set to `VOIDOID`. `canReturnData` should be set true if the operator class is capable of reconstructing the originally-supplied index value. `longValuesOK` should be set true only when the `attType` is of variable length and the operator class is capable of segmenting long values by repeated suffixing (see Section 69.4.1).

`leafType` should match the index storage type defined by the operator class's `opkeytype` catalog entry. (Note that `opkeytype` can be zero, implying the storage type is the same as the operator class's input type, which is the most common situation.) For reasons of backward compatibility, the `config` method can set `leafType` to some other value, and that value will be used; but this is deprecated since the index contents are then incorrectly identified in the catalogs. Also, it's permissible to leave `leafType` uninitialized (zero); that is interpreted as meaning the index storage type derived from `opkeytype`.

When `attType` and `leafType` are different, the optional method `compress` must be provided. Method `compress` is responsible for transformation of datums to be indexed from `attType` to `leafType`.

choose

Chooses a method for inserting a new value into an inner tuple.

The SQL declaration of the function must look like this:

```
CREATE FUNCTION my_choose(internal, internal) RETURNS void ...
```

The first argument is a pointer to a `spgChooseIn` C struct, containing input data for the function. The second argument is a pointer to a `spgChooseOut` C struct, which the function must fill with result data.

```

typedef struct spgChooseIn
{
    Datum        datum;          /* original datum to be indexed
    */
    Datum        leafDatum;      /* current datum to be stored at
leaf */
    int          level;          /* current level (counting from
zero) */

    /* Data from current inner tuple */
    bool         allTheSame;     /* tuple is marked all-the-same?
    */
    bool         hasPrefix;      /* tuple has a prefix? */
    Datum        prefixDatum;    /* if so, the prefix value */
    int          nNodes;         /* number of nodes in the inner
tuple */
    Datum        *nodeLabels;    /* node label values (NULL if
none) */
} spgChooseIn;

```

```

typedef enum spgChooseResultType
{
    spgMatchNode = 1,          /* descend into existing node */
    spgAddNode,                /* add a node to the inner tuple
    */
    spgSplitTuple              /* split inner tuple (change its
    prefix) */
} spgChooseResultType;

typedef struct spgChooseOut
{
    spgChooseResultType resultType; /* action code, see
    above */
    union
    {
        struct                /* results for spgMatchNode */
        {
            int                nodeN; /* descend to this node
            (index from 0) */
            int                levelAdd; /* increment level by this
            much */
            Datum              restDatum; /* new leaf datum */
        } matchNode;
        struct                /* results for spgAddNode */
        {
            Datum              nodeLabel; /* new node's label */
            int                nodeN; /* where to insert it (index
            from 0) */
        } addNode;
        struct                /* results for spgSplitTuple */
        {
            /* Info to form new upper-level inner tuple with one
            child tuple */
            bool                prefixHasPrefix; /* tuple should have
            a prefix? */
            Datum              prefixPrefixDatum; /* if so, its value
            */
            int                prefixNNodes; /* number of nodes
            */
            Datum              *prefixNodeLabels; /* their labels (or
            NULL for
            no labels) */
            int                childNodeN; /* which node gets
            child tuple */

            /* Info to form new lower-level inner tuple with all
            old nodes */
            bool                postfixHasPrefix; /* tuple should have
            a prefix? */
            Datum              postfixPrefixDatum; /* if so, its value
            */
        } splitTuple;
    } result;
} spgChooseOut;

```

datum is the original datum of spgConfigIn.attType type that was to be inserted into the index. leafDatum is a value of spgConfigOut.leafType type, which is initially a result

of method `compress` applied to datum when method `compress` is provided, or the same value as datum otherwise. `leafDatum` can change at lower levels of the tree if the `choose` or `picksplit` methods change it. When the insertion search reaches a leaf page, the current value of `leafDatum` is what will be stored in the newly created leaf tuple. `level` is the current inner tuple's level, starting at zero for the root level. `allTheSame` is true if the current inner tuple is marked as containing multiple equivalent nodes (see Section 69.4.3). `hasPrefix` is true if the current inner tuple contains a prefix; if so, `prefixDatum` is its value. `nNodes` is the number of child nodes contained in the inner tuple, and `nodeLabels` is an array of their label values, or NULL if there are no labels.

The `choose` function can determine either that the new value matches one of the existing child nodes, or that a new child node must be added, or that the new value is inconsistent with the tuple prefix and so the inner tuple must be split to create a less restrictive prefix.

If the new value matches one of the existing child nodes, set `resultType` to `spgMatchNode`. Set `nodeN` to the index (from zero) of that node in the node array. Set `levelAdd` to the increment in `level` caused by descending through that node, or leave it as zero if the operator class does not use levels. Set `restDatum` to equal `leafDatum` if the operator class does not modify datums from one level to the next, or otherwise set it to the modified value to be used as `leafDatum` at the next level.

If a new child node must be added, set `resultType` to `spgAddNode`. Set `nodeLabel` to the label to be used for the new node, and set `nodeN` to the index (from zero) at which to insert the node in the node array. After the node has been added, the `choose` function will be called again with the modified inner tuple; that call should result in an `spgMatchNode` result.

If the new value is inconsistent with the tuple prefix, set `resultType` to `spgSplitTuple`. This action moves all the existing nodes into a new lower-level inner tuple, and replaces the existing inner tuple with a tuple having a single downlink pointing to the new lower-level inner tuple. Set `prefixHasPrefix` to indicate whether the new upper tuple should have a prefix, and if so set `prefixPrefixDatum` to the prefix value. This new prefix value must be sufficiently less restrictive than the original to accept the new value to be indexed. Set `prefixNNodes` to the number of nodes needed in the new tuple, and set `prefixNodeLabels` to a palloc'd array holding their labels, or to NULL if node labels are not required. Note that the total size of the new upper tuple must be no more than the total size of the tuple it is replacing; this constrains the lengths of the new prefix and new labels. Set `childNodeN` to the index (from zero) of the node that will downlink to the new lower-level inner tuple. Set `postfixHasPrefix` to indicate whether the new lower-level inner tuple should have a prefix, and if so set `postfixPrefixDatum` to the prefix value. The combination of these two prefixes and the downlink node's label (if any) must have the same meaning as the original prefix, because there is no opportunity to alter the node labels that are moved to the new lower-level tuple, nor to change any child index entries. After the node has been split, the `choose` function will be called again with the replacement inner tuple. That call may return an `spgAddNode` result, if no suitable node was created by the `spgSplitTuple` action. Eventually `choose` must return `spgMatchNode` to allow the insertion to descend to the next level.

#### `picksplit`

Decides how to create a new inner tuple over a set of leaf tuples.

The SQL declaration of the function must look like this:

```
CREATE FUNCTION my_picksplit(internal, internal) RETURNS
void ...
```

The first argument is a pointer to a `spgPickSplitIn` C struct, containing input data for the function. The second argument is a pointer to a `spgPickSplitOut` C struct, which the function must fill with result data.

```
typedef struct spgPickSplitIn
{
    int          nTuples;          /* number of leaf tuples */
    Datum        *datums;          /* their datums (array of length
nTuples) */
    int          level;            /* current level (counting from
zero) */
} spgPickSplitIn;

typedef struct spgPickSplitOut
{
    bool         hasPrefix;        /* new inner tuple should have a
prefix? */
    Datum        prefixDatum;      /* if so, its value */

    int          nNodes;           /* number of nodes for new inner
tuple */
    Datum        *nodeLabels;      /* their labels (or NULL for no
labels) */

    int          *mapTuplesToNodes; /* node index for each leaf
tuple */
    Datum        *leafTupleDatums; /* datum to store in each
new leaf tuple */
} spgPickSplitOut;
```

`nTuples` is the number of leaf tuples provided. `datums` is an array of their datum values of `spgConfigOut.leafType` type. `level` is the current level that all the leaf tuples share, which will become the level of the new inner tuple.

Set `hasPrefix` to indicate whether the new inner tuple should have a prefix, and if so set `prefixDatum` to the prefix value. Set `nNodes` to indicate the number of nodes that the new inner tuple will contain, and set `nodeLabels` to an array of their label values, or to `NULL` if node labels are not required. Set `mapTuplesToNodes` to an array that gives the index (from zero) of the node that each leaf tuple should be assigned to. Set `leafTupleDatums` to an array of the values to be stored in the new leaf tuples (these will be the same as the input datums if the operator class does not modify datums from one level to the next). Note that the `picksplit` function is responsible for allocating the `nodeLabels`, `mapTuplesToNodes` and `leafTupleDatums` arrays.

If more than one leaf tuple is supplied, it is expected that the `picksplit` function will classify them into more than one node; otherwise it is not possible to split the leaf tuples across multiple pages, which is the ultimate purpose of this operation. Therefore, if the `picksplit` function ends up placing all the leaf tuples in the same node, the core SP-GiST code will override that decision and generate an inner tuple in which the leaf tuples are assigned at random to several identically-labeled nodes. Such a tuple is marked `allTheSame` to signify that this has happened. The `choose` and `inner_consistent` functions must take suitable care with such inner tuples. See Section 69.4.3 for more information.

`picksplit` can be applied to a single leaf tuple only in the case that the `config` function set `longValuesOK` to true and a larger-than-a-page input value has been supplied. In this case the point of the operation is to strip off a prefix and produce a new, shorter leaf datum value. The call will be repeated until a leaf datum short enough to fit on a page has been produced. See Section 69.4.1 for more information.

`inner_consistent`

Returns set of nodes (branches) to follow during tree search.

The SQL declaration of the function must look like this:

```
CREATE FUNCTION my_inner_consistent(internal, internal) RETURNS
void ...
```

The first argument is a pointer to a `spgInnerConsistentIn` C struct, containing input data for the function. The second argument is a pointer to a `spgInnerConsistentOut` C struct, which the function must fill with result data.

```
typedef struct spgInnerConsistentIn
{
    ScanKey      scankeys;          /* array of operators and
    comparison values */
    ScanKey      orderbys;          /* array of ordering operators
    and comparison
                                     * values */
    int           nkeys;             /* length of scankeys array */
    int           norderbys;         /* length of orderbys array */

    Datum         reconstructedValue; /* value reconstructed
    at parent */
    void          *traversalValue; /* opclass-specific traverse
    value */
    MemoryContext traversalMemoryContext; /* put new traverse
    values here */
    int           level;             /* current level (counting from
    zero) */
    bool          returnData;         /* original data must be
    returned? */

    /* Data from current inner tuple */
    bool          allTheSame;         /* tuple is marked all-the-same?
    */
    bool          hasPrefix;          /* tuple has a prefix? */
    Datum         prefixDatum;        /* if so, the prefix value */
    int           nNodes;             /* number of nodes in the inner
    tuple */
    Datum         *nodeLabels;        /* node label values (NULL if
    none) */
} spgInnerConsistentIn;

typedef struct spgInnerConsistentOut
{
    int           nNodes;             /* number of child nodes to be
    visited */
    int           *nodeNumbers;       /* their indexes in the node
    array */
    int           *levelAdds;         /* increment level by this much
    for each */
    Datum         *reconstructedValues; /* associated
    reconstructed values */
    void          **traversalValues;  /* opclass-specific
    traverse values */
    double        **distances;        /* associated distances
    */
} spgInnerConsistentOut;
```

The array `scankeys`, of length `nkeys`, describes the index search condition(s). These conditions are combined with AND — only index entries that satisfy all of them are interesting. (Note



that `nkeys = 0` implies that all index entries satisfy the query.) Usually the consistent function only cares about the `sk_strategy` and `sk_argument` fields of each array entry, which respectively give the indexable operator and comparison value. In particular it is not necessary to check `sk_flags` to see if the comparison value is `NULL`, because the SP-GiST core code will filter out such conditions. The array `orderbys`, of length `norderbys`, describes ordering operators (if any) in the same manner. `reconstructedValue` is the value reconstructed for the parent tuple; it is (`Datum`) 0 at the root level or if the `inner_consistent` function did not provide a value at the parent level. `traversalValue` is a pointer to any traverse data passed down from the previous call of `inner_consistent` on the parent index tuple, or `NULL` at the root level. `traversalMemoryContext` is the memory context in which to store output traverse values (see below). `level` is the current inner tuple's level, starting at zero for the root level. `returnData` is true if reconstructed data is required for this query; this will only be so if the `config` function asserted `canReturnData`. `allTheSame` is true if the current inner tuple is marked "all-the-same"; in this case all the nodes have the same label (if any) and so either all or none of them match the query (see Section 69.4.3). `hasPrefix` is true if the current inner tuple contains a prefix; if so, `prefixDatum` is its value. `nNodes` is the number of child nodes contained in the inner tuple, and `nodeLabels` is an array of their label values, or `NULL` if the nodes do not have labels.

`nNodes` must be set to the number of child nodes that need to be visited by the search, and `nodeNumbers` must be set to an array of their indexes. If the operator class keeps track of levels, set `levelAdds` to an array of the level increments required when descending to each node to be visited. (Often these increments will be the same for all the nodes, but that's not necessarily so, so an array is used.) If value reconstruction is needed, set `reconstructedValues` to an array of the values reconstructed for each child node to be visited; otherwise, leave `reconstructedValues` as `NULL`. The reconstructed values are assumed to be of type `spgConfigOut.leafType`. (However, since the core system will do nothing with them except possibly copy them, it is sufficient for them to have the same `typlen` and `typbyval` properties as `leafType`.) If ordered search is performed, set `distances` to an array of distance values according to `orderbys` array (nodes with lowest distances will be processed first). Leave it `NULL` otherwise. If it is desired to pass down additional out-of-band information ("traverse values") to lower levels of the tree search, set `traversalValues` to an array of the appropriate traverse values, one for each child node to be visited; otherwise, leave `traversalValues` as `NULL`. Note that the `inner_consistent` function is responsible for `palloc`'ing the `nodeNumbers`, `levelAdds`, `distances`, `reconstructedValues`, and `traversalValues` arrays in the current memory context. However, any output traverse values pointed to by the `traversalValues` array should be allocated in `traversalMemoryContext`. Each traverse value must be a single `palloc`'d chunk.

`leaf_consistent`

Returns true if a leaf tuple satisfies a query.

The SQL declaration of the function must look like this:

```
CREATE FUNCTION my_leaf_consistent(internal, internal) RETURNS
bool ...
```

The first argument is a pointer to a `spgLeafConsistentIn` C struct, containing input data for the function. The second argument is a pointer to a `spgLeafConsistentOut` C struct, which the function must fill with result data.

```
typedef struct spgLeafConsistentIn
{
    ScanKey      scankeys;          /* array of operators and
    comparison values */
    ScanKey      orderbys;          /* array of ordering operators
    and comparison
```

```

                                * values */
    int      nkeys;              /* length of scankeys array */
    int      norderbys;          /* length of orderbys array */

    Datum    reconstructedValue; /* value reconstructed
at parent */
    void     *traversalValue; /* opclass-specific traverse
value */
    int      level;              /* current level (counting from
zero) */
    bool     returnData;         /* original data must be
returned? */

    Datum    leafDatum;          /* datum in leaf tuple */
} spgLeafConsistentIn;

typedef struct spgLeafConsistentOut
{
    Datum    leafValue;          /* reconstructed original
data, if any */
    bool     recheck;            /* set true if operator must
be rechecked */
    bool     recheckDistances; /* set true if distances must
be rechecked */
    double   *distances;         /* associated distances */
} spgLeafConsistentOut;

```

The array `scankeys`, of length `nkeys`, describes the index search condition(s). These conditions are combined with AND — only index entries that satisfy all of them satisfy the query. (Note that `nkeys = 0` implies that all index entries satisfy the query.) Usually the consistent function only cares about the `sk_strategy` and `sk_argument` fields of each array entry, which respectively give the indexable operator and comparison value. In particular it is not necessary to check `sk_flags` to see if the comparison value is NULL, because the SP-GiST core code will filter out such conditions. The array `orderbys`, of length `norderbys`, describes the ordering operators in the same manner. `reconstructedValue` is the value reconstructed for the parent tuple; it is (Datum) 0 at the root level or if the `inner_consistent` function did not provide a value at the parent level. `traversalValue` is a pointer to any traverse data passed down from the previous call of `inner_consistent` on the parent index tuple, or NULL at the root level. `level` is the current leaf tuple's level, starting at zero for the root level. `returnData` is true if reconstructed data is required for this query; this will only be so if the `config` function asserted `canReturnData`. `leafDatum` is the key value of `spgConfigOut.leafType` stored in the current leaf tuple.

The function must return true if the leaf tuple matches the query, or false if not. In the true case, if `returnData` is true then `leafValue` must be set to the value (of type `spgConfigIn.attType`) originally supplied to be indexed for this leaf tuple. Also, `recheck` may be set to true if the match is uncertain and so the operator(s) must be re-applied to the actual heap tuple to verify the match. If ordered search is performed, set `distances` to an array of distance values according to `orderbys` array. Leave it NULL otherwise. If at least one of returned distances is not exact, set `recheckDistances` to true. In this case, the executor will calculate the exact distances after fetching the tuple from the heap, and will reorder the tuples if needed.

The optional user-defined methods are:

`Datum compress(Datum in)`

Converts a data item into a format suitable for physical storage in a leaf tuple of the index. It accepts a value of type `spgConfigIn.attType` and returns a value of type `spgConfigOut.leafType`. The output value must not contain an out-of-line TOAST pointer.

Note: the `compress` method is only applied to values to be stored. The consistent methods receive query scankeys unchanged, without transformation using `compress`.

#### options

Defines a set of user-visible parameters that control operator class behavior.

The SQL declaration of the function must look like this:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION my_options(internal)
RETURNS void
AS 'MODULE_PATHNAME'
LANGUAGE C STRICT;
```

The function is passed a pointer to a `local_relopts` struct, which needs to be filled with a set of operator class specific options. The options can be accessed from other support functions using the `PG_HAS_OPCLASS_OPTIONS()` and `PG_GET_OPCLASS_OPTIONS()` macros.

Since the representation of the key in SP-GiST is flexible, it may depend on user-specified parameters.

All the SP-GiST support methods are normally called in a short-lived memory context; that is, `CurrentMemoryContext` will be reset after processing of each tuple. It is therefore not very important to worry about freeing everything you `palloc`. (The `config` method is an exception: it should try to avoid leaking memory. But usually the `config` method need do nothing but assign constants into the passed parameter struct.)

If the indexed column is of a collatable data type, the index collation will be passed to all the support methods, using the standard `PG_GET_COLLATION()` mechanism.

## 69.4. Implementation

This section covers implementation details and other tricks that are useful for implementers of SP-GiST operator classes to know.

### 69.4.1. SP-GiST Limits

Individual leaf tuples and inner tuples must fit on a single index page (8kB by default). Therefore, when indexing values of variable-length data types, long values can only be supported by methods such as radix trees, in which each level of the tree includes a prefix that is short enough to fit on a page, and the final leaf level includes a suffix also short enough to fit on a page. The operator class should set `longValuesOK` to true only if it is prepared to arrange for this to happen. Otherwise, the SP-GiST core will reject any request to index a value that is too large to fit on an index page.

Likewise, it is the operator class's responsibility that inner tuples do not grow too large to fit on an index page; this limits the number of child nodes that can be used in one inner tuple, as well as the maximum size of a prefix value.

Another limitation is that when an inner tuple's node points to a set of leaf tuples, those tuples must all be in the same index page. (This is a design decision to reduce seeking and save space in the links that chain such tuples together.) If the set of leaf tuples grows too large for a page, a split is performed and an intermediate inner tuple is inserted. For this to fix the problem, the new inner tuple *must* divide the set of leaf values into more than one node group. If the operator class's `picksplit` function fails to do that, the SP-GiST core resorts to extraordinary measures described in Section 69.4.3.

When `longValuesOK` is true, it is expected that successive levels of the SP-GiST tree will absorb more and more information into the prefixes and node labels of the inner tuples, making the required leaf datum smaller and smaller, so that eventually it will fit on a page. To prevent bugs in operator

classes from causing infinite insertion loops, the SP-GiST core will raise an error if the leaf datum does not become any smaller within ten cycles of `choose` method calls.

### 69.4.2. SP-GiST Without Node Labels

Some tree algorithms use a fixed set of nodes for each inner tuple; for example, in a quad-tree there are always exactly four nodes corresponding to the four quadrants around the inner tuple's centroid point. In such a case the code typically works with the nodes by number, and there is no need for explicit node labels. To suppress node labels (and thereby save some space), the `picksplit` function can return `NULL` for the `nodeLabels` array, and likewise the `choose` function can return `NULL` for the `prefixNodeLabels` array during a `spgSplitTuple` action. This will in turn result in `nodeLabels` being `NULL` during subsequent calls to `choose` and `inner_consistent`. In principle, node labels could be used for some inner tuples and omitted for others in the same index.

When working with an inner tuple having unlabeled nodes, it is an error for `choose` to return `spgAddNode`, since the set of nodes is supposed to be fixed in such cases.

### 69.4.3. “All-the-Same” Inner Tuples

The SP-GiST core can override the results of the operator class's `picksplit` function when `picksplit` fails to divide the supplied leaf values into at least two node categories. When this happens, the new inner tuple is created with multiple nodes that each have the same label (if any) that `picksplit` gave to the one node it did use, and the leaf values are divided at random among these equivalent nodes. The `allTheSame` flag is set on the inner tuple to warn the `choose` and `inner_consistent` functions that the tuple does not have the node set that they might otherwise expect.

When dealing with an `allTheSame` tuple, a `choose` result of `spgMatchNode` is interpreted to mean that the new value can be assigned to any of the equivalent nodes; the core code will ignore the supplied `nodeN` value and descend into one of the nodes at random (so as to keep the tree balanced). It is an error for `choose` to return `spgAddNode`, since that would make the nodes not all equivalent; the `spgSplitTuple` action must be used if the value to be inserted doesn't match the existing nodes.

When dealing with an `allTheSame` tuple, the `inner_consistent` function should return either all or none of the nodes as targets for continuing the index search, since they are all equivalent. This may or may not require any special-case code, depending on how much the `inner_consistent` function normally assumes about the meaning of the nodes.

## 69.5. Examples

The PostgreSQL source distribution includes several examples of index operator classes for SP-GiST, as described in Table 69.1. Look into `src/backend/access/spgist/` and `src/backend/utils/adt/` to see the code.

---

# Chapter 70. GIN Indexes

## 70.1. Introduction

GIN stands for Generalized Inverted Index. GIN is designed for handling cases where the items to be indexed are composite values, and the queries to be handled by the index need to search for element values that appear within the composite items. For example, the items could be documents, and the queries could be searches for documents containing specific words.

We use the word *item* to refer to a composite value that is to be indexed, and the word *key* to refer to an element value. GIN always stores and searches for keys, not item values per se.

A GIN index stores a set of (key, posting list) pairs, where a *posting list* is a set of row IDs in which the key occurs. The same row ID can appear in multiple posting lists, since an item can contain more than one key. Each key value is stored only once, so a GIN index is very compact for cases where the same key appears many times.

GIN is generalized in the sense that the GIN access method code does not need to know the specific operations that it accelerates. Instead, it uses custom strategies defined for particular data types. The strategy defines how keys are extracted from indexed items and query conditions, and how to determine whether a row that contains some of the key values in a query actually satisfies the query.

One advantage of GIN is that it allows the development of custom data types with the appropriate access methods, by an expert in the domain of the data type, rather than a database expert. This is much the same advantage as using GiST.

The GIN implementation in PostgreSQL is primarily maintained by Teodor Sigaev and Oleg Bartunov. There is more information about GIN on their website<sup>1</sup>.

## 70.2. Built-in Operator Classes

The core PostgreSQL distribution includes the GIN operator classes shown in Table 70.1. (Some of the optional modules described in Appendix F provide additional GIN operator classes.)

**Table 70.1. Built-in GIN Operator Classes**

Name	Indexable Operators
array_ops	&& (anyarray, anyarray)
	@> (anyarray, anyarray)
	<@ (anyarray, anyarray)
	= (anyarray, anyarray)
jsonb_ops	@> (jsonb, jsonb)
	@? (jsonb, jsonpath)
	@@ (jsonb, jsonpath)
	? (jsonb, text)
	?  (jsonb, text[])
	?& (jsonb, text[])
jsonb_path_ops	@> (jsonb, jsonb)
	@? (jsonb, jsonpath)
	@@ (jsonb, jsonpath)

---

<sup>1</sup> <http://www.sai.msu.su/~megeera/wiki/Gin>

Name	Indexable Operators
tsvector_ops	@@ (tsvector, tsquery)
	@@@ (tsvector, tsquery)

Of the two operator classes for type jsonb, jsonb\_ops is the default. jsonb\_path\_ops supports fewer operators but offers better performance for those operators. See Section 8.14.4 for details.

## 70.3. Extensibility

The GIN interface has a high level of abstraction, requiring the access method implementer only to implement the semantics of the data type being accessed. The GIN layer itself takes care of concurrency, logging and searching the tree structure.

All it takes to get a GIN access method working is to implement a few user-defined methods, which define the behavior of keys in the tree and the relationships between keys, indexed items, and indexable queries. In short, GIN combines extensibility with generality, code reuse, and a clean interface.

There are two methods that an operator class for GIN must provide:

```
Datum *extractValue(Datum itemValue, int32 *nkeys, bool **nullFlags)
```

Returns a palloc'd array of keys given an item to be indexed. The number of returned keys must be stored into *\*nkeys*. If any of the keys can be null, also palloc an array of *\*nkeys* bool fields, store its address at *\*nullFlags*, and set these null flags as needed. *\*nullFlags* can be left NULL (its initial value) if all keys are non-null. The return value can be NULL if the item contains no keys.

```
Datum *extractQuery(Datum query, int32 *nkeys, StrategyNumber n, bool
**pmatch, Pointer **extra_data, bool **nullFlags, int32 *searchMode)
```

Returns a palloc'd array of keys given a value to be queried; that is, *query* is the value on the right-hand side of an indexable operator whose left-hand side is the indexed column. *n* is the strategy number of the operator within the operator class (see Section 38.16.2). Often, *extractQuery* will need to consult *n* to determine the data type of *query* and the method it should use to extract key values. The number of returned keys must be stored into *\*nkeys*. If any of the keys can be null, also palloc an array of *\*nkeys* bool fields, store its address at *\*nullFlags*, and set these null flags as needed. *\*nullFlags* can be left NULL (its initial value) if all keys are non-null. The return value can be NULL if the query contains no keys.

*searchMode* is an output argument that allows *extractQuery* to specify details about how the search will be done. If *\*searchMode* is set to GIN\_SEARCH\_MODE\_DEFAULT (which is the value it is initialized to before call), only items that match at least one of the returned keys are considered candidate matches. If *\*searchMode* is set to GIN\_SEARCH\_MODE\_INCLUDE\_EMPTY, then in addition to items containing at least one matching key, items that contain no keys at all are considered candidate matches. (This mode is useful for implementing is-subset-of operators, for example.) If *\*searchMode* is set to GIN\_SEARCH\_MODE\_ALL, then all non-null items in the index are considered candidate matches, whether they match any of the returned keys or not. (This mode is much slower than the other two choices, since it requires scanning essentially the entire index, but it may be necessary to implement corner cases correctly. An operator that needs this mode in most cases is probably not a good candidate for a GIN operator class.) The symbols to use for setting this mode are defined in *access/gin.h*.

*pmatch* is an output argument for use when partial match is supported. To use it, *extractQuery* must allocate an array of *\*nkeys* bools and store its address at *\*pmatch*. Each element of the array should be set to true if the corresponding key requires partial match, false if not. If *\*pmatch* is set to NULL then GIN assumes partial match is not required. The variable is initialized to NULL before call, so this argument can simply be ignored by operator classes that do not support partial match.

`extra_data` is an output argument that allows `extractQuery` to pass additional data to the `consistent` and `comparePartial` methods. To use it, `extractQuery` must allocate an array of `*nkeys` pointers and store its address at `*extra_data`, then store whatever it wants to into the individual pointers. The variable is initialized to `NULL` before call, so this argument can simply be ignored by operator classes that do not require extra data. If `*extra_data` is set, the whole array is passed to the `consistent` method, and the appropriate element to the `comparePartial` method.

An operator class must also provide a function to check if an indexed item matches the query. It comes in two flavors, a Boolean `consistent` function, and a ternary `triConsistent` function. `triConsistent` covers the functionality of both, so providing `triConsistent` alone is sufficient. However, if the Boolean variant is significantly cheaper to calculate, it can be advantageous to provide both. If only the Boolean variant is provided, some optimizations that depend on refuting index items before fetching all the keys are disabled.

```
bool consistent(bool check[], StrategyNumber n, Datum query, int32
nkeys, Pointer extra_data[], bool *recheck, Datum queryKeys[], bool
nullFlags[])
```

Returns true if an indexed item satisfies the query operator with strategy number `n` (or might satisfy it, if the `recheck` indication is returned). This function does not have direct access to the indexed item's value, since GIN does not store items explicitly. Rather, what is available is knowledge about which key values extracted from the query appear in a given indexed item. The `check` array has length `nkeys`, which is the same as the number of keys previously returned by `extractQuery` for this query datum. Each element of the `check` array is true if the indexed item contains the corresponding query key, i.e., if `(check[i] == true)` the `i`-th key of the `extractQuery` result array is present in the indexed item. The original query datum is passed in case the `consistent` method needs to consult it, and so are the `queryKeys[]` and `nullFlags[]` arrays previously returned by `extractQuery`. `extra_data` is the extra-data array returned by `extractQuery`, or `NULL` if none.

When `extractQuery` returns a null key in `queryKeys[]`, the corresponding `check[]` element is true if the indexed item contains a null key; that is, the semantics of `check[]` are like `IS NOT DISTINCT FROM`. The `consistent` function can examine the corresponding `nullFlags[]` element if it needs to tell the difference between a regular value match and a null match.

On success, `*recheck` should be set to true if the heap tuple needs to be rechecked against the query operator, or false if the index test is exact. That is, a false return value guarantees that the heap tuple does not match the query; a true return value with `*recheck` set to false guarantees that the heap tuple does match the query; and a true return value with `*recheck` set to true means that the heap tuple might match the query, so it needs to be fetched and rechecked by evaluating the query operator directly against the originally indexed item.

```
GinTernaryValue triConsistent(GinTernaryValue check[], StrategyNum-
ber n, Datum query, int32 nkeys, Pointer extra_data[], Datum
queryKeys[], bool nullFlags[])
```

`triConsistent` is similar to `consistent`, but instead of Booleans in the `check` vector, there are three possible values for each key: `GIN_TRUE`, `GIN_FALSE` and `GIN_MAYBE`. `GIN_FALSE` and `GIN_TRUE` have the same meaning as regular Boolean values, while `GIN_MAYBE` means that the presence of that key is not known. When `GIN_MAYBE` values are present, the function should only return `GIN_TRUE` if the item certainly matches whether or not the index item contains the corresponding query keys. Likewise, the function must return `GIN_FALSE` only if the item certainly does not match, whether or not it contains the `GIN_MAYBE` keys. If the result depends on the `GIN_MAYBE` entries, i.e., the match cannot be confirmed or refuted based on the known query keys, the function must return `GIN_MAYBE`.

When there are no `GIN_MAYBE` values in the `check` vector, a `GIN_MAYBE` return value is the equivalent of setting the `recheck` flag in the Boolean `consistent` function.

In addition, GIN must have a way to sort the key values stored in the index. The operator class can define the sort ordering by specifying a comparison method:

```
int compare(Datum a, Datum b)
```

Compares two keys (not indexed items!) and returns an integer less than zero, zero, or greater than zero, indicating whether the first key is less than, equal to, or greater than the second. Null keys are never passed to this function.

Alternatively, if the operator class does not provide a `compare` method, GIN will look up the default btree operator class for the index key data type, and use its comparison function. It is recommended to specify the comparison function in a GIN operator class that is meant for just one data type, as looking up the btree operator class costs a few cycles. However, polymorphic GIN operator classes (such as `array_ops`) typically cannot specify a single comparison function.

An operator class for GIN can optionally supply the following methods:

```
int comparePartial(Datum partial_key, Datum key, StrategyNumber n,
Pointer extra_data)
```

Compare a partial-match query key to an index key. Returns an integer whose sign indicates the result: less than zero means the index key does not match the query, but the index scan should continue; zero means that the index key does match the query; greater than zero indicates that the index scan should stop because no more matches are possible. The strategy number `n` of the operator that generated the partial match query is provided, in case its semantics are needed to determine when to end the scan. Also, `extra_data` is the corresponding element of the extra-data array made by `extractQuery`, or `NULL` if none. Null keys are never passed to this function.

```
void options(local_relopts *relopts)
```

Defines a set of user-visible parameters that control operator class behavior.

The `options` function is passed a pointer to a `local_relopts` struct, which needs to be filled with a set of operator class specific options. The options can be accessed from other support functions using the `PG_HAS_OPCLASS_OPTIONS()` and `PG_GET_OPCLASS_OPTIONS()` macros.

Since both key extraction of indexed values and representation of the key in GIN are flexible, they may depend on user-specified parameters.

To support “partial match” queries, an operator class must provide the `comparePartial` method, and its `extractQuery` method must set the `pmatch` parameter when a partial-match query is encountered. See Section 70.4.2 for details.

The actual data types of the various `Datum` values mentioned above vary depending on the operator class. The item values passed to `extractValue` are always of the operator class's input type, and all key values must be of the class's `STORAGE` type. The type of the `query` argument passed to `extractQuery`, `consistent` and `triConsistent` is whatever is the right-hand input type of the class member operator identified by the strategy number. This need not be the same as the indexed type, so long as key values of the correct type can be extracted from it. However, it is recommended that the SQL declarations of these three support functions use the opclass's indexed data type for the `query` argument, even though the actual type might be something else depending on the operator.

## 70.4. Implementation

Internally, a GIN index contains a B-tree index constructed over keys, where each key is an element of one or more indexed items (a member of an array, for example) and where each tuple in a leaf page contains either a pointer to a B-tree of heap pointers (a “posting tree”), or a simple list of heap pointers

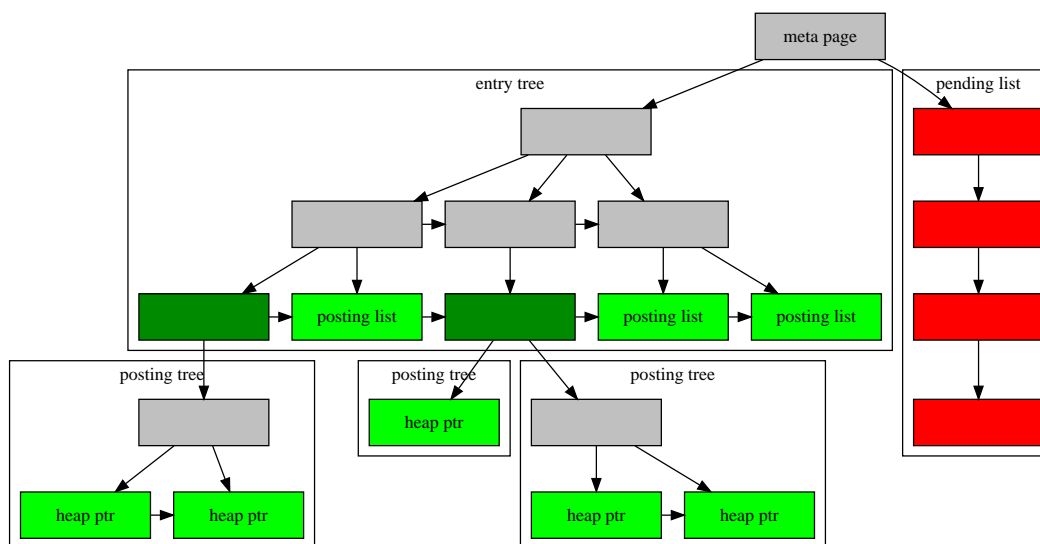


(a “posting list”) when the list is small enough to fit into a single index tuple along with the key value. Figure 70.1 illustrates these components of a GIN index.

As of PostgreSQL 9.1, null key values can be included in the index. Also, placeholder nulls are included in the index for indexed items that are null or contain no keys according to `extractValue`. This allows searches that should find empty items to do so.

Multicolumn GIN indexes are implemented by building a single B-tree over composite values (column number, key value). The key values for different columns can be of different types.

**Figure 70.1. GIN Internals**



### 70.4.1. GIN Fast Update Technique

Updating a GIN index tends to be slow because of the intrinsic nature of inverted indexes: inserting or updating one heap row can cause many inserts into the index (one for each key extracted from the indexed item). GIN is capable of postponing much of this work by inserting new tuples into a temporary, unsorted list of pending entries. When the table is vacuumed or autoanalyzed, or when `gin_clean_pending_list` function is called, or if the pending list becomes larger than `gin_pending_list_limit`, the entries are moved to the main GIN data structure using the same bulk insert techniques used during initial index creation. This greatly improves GIN index update speed, even counting the additional vacuum overhead. Moreover the overhead work can be done by a background process instead of in foreground query processing.

The main disadvantage of this approach is that searches must scan the list of pending entries in addition to searching the regular index, and so a large list of pending entries will slow searches significantly. Another disadvantage is that, while most updates are fast, an update that causes the pending list to become “too large” will incur an immediate cleanup cycle and thus be much slower than other updates. Proper use of autovacuum can minimize both of these problems.

If consistent response time is more important than update speed, use of pending entries can be disabled by turning off the `fastupdate` storage parameter for a GIN index. See `CREATE INDEX` for details.

### 70.4.2. Partial Match Algorithm

GIN can support “partial match” queries, in which the query does not determine an exact match for one or more keys, but the possible matches fall within a reasonably narrow range of key values (within the key sorting order determined by the `compare` support method). The `extractQuery` method, instead of returning a key value to be matched exactly, returns a key value that is the lower bound

of the range to be searched, and sets the `pmatch` flag true. The key range is then scanned using the `comparePartial` method. `comparePartial` must return zero for a matching index key, less than zero for a non-match that is still within the range to be searched, or greater than zero if the index key is past the range that could match.

## 70.5. GIN Tips and Tricks

### Create vs. insert

Insertion into a GIN index can be slow due to the likelihood of many keys being inserted for each item. So, for bulk insertions into a table it is advisable to drop the GIN index and recreate it after finishing bulk insertion.

When `fastupdate` is enabled for GIN (see Section 70.4.1 for details), the penalty is less than when it is not. But for very large updates it may still be best to drop and recreate the index.

### `maintenance_work_mem`

Build time for a GIN index is very sensitive to the `maintenance_work_mem` setting; it doesn't pay to skimp on work memory during index creation.

### `gin_pending_list_limit`

During a series of insertions into an existing GIN index that has `fastupdate` enabled, the system will clean up the pending-entry list whenever the list grows larger than `gin_pending_list_limit`. To avoid fluctuations in observed response time, it's desirable to have pending-list cleanup occur in the background (i.e., via autovacuum). Foreground cleanup operations can be avoided by increasing `gin_pending_list_limit` or making autovacuum more aggressive. However, enlarging the threshold of the cleanup operation means that if a foreground cleanup does occur, it will take even longer.

`gin_pending_list_limit` can be overridden for individual GIN indexes by changing storage parameters, which allows each GIN index to have its own cleanup threshold. For example, it's possible to increase the threshold only for the GIN index which can be updated heavily, and decrease it otherwise.

### `gin_fuzzy_search_limit`

The primary goal of developing GIN indexes was to create support for highly scalable full-text search in PostgreSQL, and there are often situations when a full-text search returns a very large set of results. Moreover, this often happens when the query contains very frequent words, so that the large result set is not even useful. Since reading many tuples from the disk and sorting them could take a lot of time, this is unacceptable for production. (Note that the index search itself is very fast.)

To facilitate controlled execution of such queries, GIN has a configurable soft upper limit on the number of rows returned: the `gin_fuzzy_search_limit` configuration parameter. It is set to 0 (meaning no limit) by default. If a non-zero limit is set, then the returned set is a subset of the whole result set, chosen at random.

“Soft” means that the actual number of returned results could differ somewhat from the specified limit, depending on the query and the quality of the system's random number generator.

From experience, values in the thousands (e.g., 5000 — 20000) work well.

## 70.6. Limitations

GIN assumes that indexable operators are strict. This means that `extractValue` will not be called at all on a null item value (instead, a placeholder index entry is created automatically), and `extrac-`

`tQuery` will not be called on a null query value either (instead, the query is presumed to be unsatisfiable). Note however that null key values contained within a non-null composite item or query value are supported.

## 70.7. Examples

The core PostgreSQL distribution includes the GIN operator classes previously shown in Table 70.1. The following `contrib` modules also contain GIN operator classes:

`btree_gin`

B-tree equivalent functionality for several data types

`hstore`

Module for storing (key, value) pairs

`intarray`

Enhanced support for `int[]`

`pg_trgm`

Text similarity using trigram matching

---

# Chapter 71. BRIN Indexes

## 71.1. Introduction

BRIN stands for Block Range Index. BRIN is designed for handling very large tables in which certain columns have some natural correlation with their physical location within the table.

BRIN works in terms of *block ranges* (or “page ranges”). A block range is a group of pages that are physically adjacent in the table; for each block range, some summary info is stored by the index. For example, a table storing a store's sale orders might have a date column on which each order was placed, and most of the time the entries for earlier orders will appear earlier in the table as well; a table storing a ZIP code column might have all codes for a city grouped together naturally.

BRIN indexes can satisfy queries via regular bitmap index scans, and will return all tuples in all pages within each range if the summary info stored by the index is *consistent* with the query conditions. The query executor is in charge of rechecking these tuples and discarding those that do not match the query conditions — in other words, these indexes are lossy. Because a BRIN index is very small, scanning the index adds little overhead compared to a sequential scan, but may avoid scanning large parts of the table that are known not to contain matching tuples.

The specific data that a BRIN index will store, as well as the specific queries that the index will be able to satisfy, depend on the operator class selected for each column of the index. Data types having a linear sort order can have operator classes that store the minimum and maximum value within each block range, for instance; geometrical types might store the bounding box for all the objects in the block range.

The size of the block range is determined at index creation time by the `pages_per_range` storage parameter. The number of index entries will be equal to the size of the relation in pages divided by the selected value for `pages_per_range`. Therefore, the smaller the number, the larger the index becomes (because of the need to store more index entries), but at the same time the summary data stored can be more precise and more data blocks can be skipped during an index scan.

### 71.1.1. Index Maintenance

At the time of creation, all existing heap pages are scanned and a summary index tuple is created for each range, including the possibly-incomplete range at the end. As new pages are filled with data, page ranges that are already summarized will cause the summary information to be updated with data from the new tuples. When a new page is created that does not fall within the last summarized range, the range that the new page belongs to does not automatically acquire a summary tuple; those tuples remain unsummarized until a summarization run is invoked later, creating the initial summary for that range.

There are several ways to trigger the initial summarization of a page range. If the table is vacuumed, either manually or by autovacuum, all existing unsummarized page ranges are summarized. Also, if the index's `autosummarize` parameter is enabled, which it isn't by default, whenever autovacuum runs in that database, summarization will occur for all unsummarized page ranges that have been filled, regardless of whether the table itself is processed by autovacuum; see below.

Lastly, the following functions can be used:

`brin_summarize_new_values(regclass)` which summarizes all unsummarized ranges;  
`brin_summarize_range(regclass, bigint)` which summarizes only the range containing the given page, if it is unsummarized.

When autosummarization is enabled, a request is sent to `autovacuum` to execute a targeted summarization for a block range when an insertion is detected for the first item of the first page of the next block range, to be fulfilled the next time an autovacuum worker finishes running in the same database. If the request queue is full, the request is not recorded and a message is sent to the server log:

LOG: request for BRIN range summarization for index "brin\_wi\_idx"  
page 128 was not recorded

When this happens, the range will remain unsummarized until the next regular vacuum run on the table, or one of the functions mentioned above are invoked.

Conversely, a range can be de-summarized using the `brin_desummarize_range(regclass, bigint)` function, which is useful when the index tuple is no longer a very good representation because the existing values have changed. See Section 9.27.8 for details.

## 71.2. Built-in Operator Classes

The core PostgreSQL distribution includes the BRIN operator classes shown in Table 71.1.

The *minmax* operator classes store the minimum and the maximum values appearing in the indexed column within the range. The *inclusion* operator classes store a value which includes the values in the indexed column within the range. The *bloom* operator classes build a Bloom filter for all values in the range. The *minmax-multi* operator classes store multiple minimum and maximum values, representing values appearing in the indexed column within the range.

**Table 71.1. Built-in BRIN Operator Classes**

Name	Indexable Operators
bit_minmax_ops	= (bit,bit)
	< (bit,bit)
	> (bit,bit)
	<= (bit,bit)
	>= (bit,bit)
box_inclusion_ops	@> (box,point)
	<< (box,box)
	&< (box,box)
	&> (box,box)
	>> (box,box)
	<@ (box,box)
	@> (box,box)
	~= (box,box)
	&& (box,box)
	<<  (box,box)
	&<  (box,box)
	&> (box,box)
	>> (box,box)
bpchar_bloom_ops	= (character,character)
bpchar_minmax_ops	= (character,character)
	< (character,character)
	<= (character,character)
	> (character,character)
	>= (character,character)
bytea_bloom_ops	= (bytea,bytea)

Name	Indexable Operators
bytea_minmax_ops	= (bytea,bytea)
	< (bytea,bytea)
	<= (bytea,bytea)
	> (bytea,bytea)
	>= (bytea,bytea)
char_bloom_ops	= ("char","char")
char_minmax_ops	= ("char","char")
	< ("char","char")
	<= ("char","char")
	> ("char","char")
	>= ("char","char")
date_bloom_ops	= (date,date)
date_minmax_ops	= (date,date)
	< (date,date)
	<= (date,date)
	> (date,date)
	>= (date,date)
date_minmax_multi_ops	= (date,date)
	< (date,date)
	<= (date,date)
	> (date,date)
	>= (date,date)
float4_bloom_ops	= (float4,float4)
float4_minmax_ops	= (float4,float4)
	< (float4,float4)
	> (float4,float4)
	<= (float4,float4)
	>= (float4,float4)
float4_minmax_multi_ops	= (float4,float4)
	< (float4,float4)
	> (float4,float4)
	<= (float4,float4)
	>= (float4,float4)
float8_bloom_ops	= (float8,float8)
float8_minmax_ops	= (float8,float8)
	< (float8,float8)
	<= (float8,float8)
	> (float8,float8)
	>= (float8,float8)
float8_minmax_multi_ops	= (float8,float8)
	< (float8,float8)

Name	Indexable Operators
	<= (float8,float8)
	> (float8,float8)
	>= (float8,float8)
inet_inclusion_ops	<< (inet,inet)
	<<= (inet,inet)
	>> (inet,inet)
	>>= (inet,inet)
	= (inet,inet)
	&& (inet,inet)
inet_bloom_ops	= (inet,inet)
inet_minmax_ops	= (inet,inet)
	< (inet,inet)
	<= (inet,inet)
	> (inet,inet)
	>= (inet,inet)
inet_minmax_multi_ops	= (inet,inet)
	< (inet,inet)
	<= (inet,inet)
	> (inet,inet)
	>= (inet,inet)
int2_bloom_ops	= (int2,int2)
int2_minmax_ops	= (int2,int2)
	< (int2,int2)
	> (int2,int2)
	<= (int2,int2)
	>= (int2,int2)
int2_minmax_multi_ops	= (int2,int2)
	< (int2,int2)
	> (int2,int2)
	<= (int2,int2)
	>= (int2,int2)
int4_bloom_ops	= (int4,int4)
int4_minmax_ops	= (int4,int4)
	< (int4,int4)
	> (int4,int4)
	<= (int4,int4)
	>= (int4,int4)
int4_minmax_multi_ops	= (int4,int4)
	< (int4,int4)
	> (int4,int4)
	<= (int4,int4)

Name	Indexable Operators
	>= (int4,int4)
int8_bloom_ops	= (bigint,bigint)
int8_minmax_ops	= (bigint,bigint)
	< (bigint,bigint)
	> (bigint,bigint)
	<= (bigint,bigint)
	>= (bigint,bigint)
int8_minmax_multi_ops	= (bigint,bigint)
	< (bigint,bigint)
	> (bigint,bigint)
	<= (bigint,bigint)
	>= (bigint,bigint)
interval_bloom_ops	= (interval,interval)
interval_minmax_ops	= (interval,interval)
	< (interval,interval)
	<= (interval,interval)
	> (interval,interval)
	>= (interval,interval)
interval_minmax_multi_ops	= (interval,interval)
	< (interval,interval)
	<= (interval,interval)
	> (interval,interval)
	>= (interval,interval)
macaddr_bloom_ops	= (macaddr,macaddr)
macaddr_minmax_ops	= (macaddr,macaddr)
	< (macaddr,macaddr)
	<= (macaddr,macaddr)
	> (macaddr,macaddr)
	>= (macaddr,macaddr)
macaddr_minmax_multi_ops	= (macaddr,macaddr)
	< (macaddr,macaddr)
	<= (macaddr,macaddr)
	> (macaddr,macaddr)
	>= (macaddr,macaddr)
macaddr8_bloom_ops	= (macaddr8,macaddr8)
macaddr8_minmax_ops	= (macaddr8,macaddr8)
	< (macaddr8,macaddr8)
	<= (macaddr8,macaddr8)
	> (macaddr8,macaddr8)
	>= (macaddr8,macaddr8)
macaddr8_minmax_multi_ops	= (macaddr8,macaddr8)



Name	Indexable Operators
	< (macaddr8,macaddr8)
	<= (macaddr8,macaddr8)
	> (macaddr8,macaddr8)
	>= (macaddr8,macaddr8)
name_bloom_ops	= (name,name)
name_minmax_ops	= (name,name)
	< (name,name)
	<= (name,name)
	> (name,name)
	>= (name,name)
numeric_bloom_ops	= (numeric,numeric)
numeric_minmax_ops	= (numeric,numeric)
	< (numeric,numeric)
	<= (numeric,numeric)
	> (numeric,numeric)
	>= (numeric,numeric)
numeric_minmax_multi_ops	= (numeric,numeric)
	< (numeric,numeric)
	<= (numeric,numeric)
	> (numeric,numeric)
	>= (numeric,numeric)
oid_bloom_ops	= (oid,oid)
oid_minmax_ops	= (oid,oid)
	< (oid,oid)
	> (oid,oid)
	<= (oid,oid)
	>= (oid,oid)
oid_minmax_multi_ops	= (oid,oid)
	< (oid,oid)
	> (oid,oid)
	<= (oid,oid)
	>= (oid,oid)
pg_lsn_bloom_ops	= (pg_lsn,pg_lsn)
pg_lsn_minmax_ops	= (pg_lsn,pg_lsn)
	< (pg_lsn,pg_lsn)
	> (pg_lsn,pg_lsn)
	<= (pg_lsn,pg_lsn)
	>= (pg_lsn,pg_lsn)
pg_lsn_minmax_multi_ops	= (pg_lsn,pg_lsn)
	< (pg_lsn,pg_lsn)
	> (pg_lsn,pg_lsn)

Name	Indexable Operators
	<= (pg_lsn,pg_lsn)
	>= (pg_lsn,pg_lsn)
range_inclusion_ops	= (anyrange,anyrange)
	< (anyrange,anyrange)
	<= (anyrange,anyrange)
	>= (anyrange,anyrange)
	> (anyrange,anyrange)
	&& (anyrange,anyrange)
	@> (anyrange,anyelement)
	@> (anyrange,anyrange)
	<@ (anyrange,anyrange)
	<< (anyrange,anyrange)
	>> (anyrange,anyrange)
	&< (anyrange,anyrange)
	&> (anyrange,anyrange)
	- - (anyrange,anyrange)
text_bloom_ops	= (text,text)
text_minmax_ops	= (text,text)
	< (text,text)
	<= (text,text)
	> (text,text)
	>= (text,text)
tid_bloom_ops	= (tid,tid)
tid_minmax_ops	= (tid,tid)
	< (tid,tid)
	> (tid,tid)
	<= (tid,tid)
	>= (tid,tid)
tid_minmax_multi_ops	= (tid,tid)
	< (tid,tid)
	> (tid,tid)
	<= (tid,tid)
	>= (tid,tid)
timestamp_bloom_ops	= (timestamp,timestamp)
timestamp_minmax_ops	= (timestamp,timestamp)
	< (timestamp,timestamp)
	<= (timestamp,timestamp)
	> (timestamp,timestamp)
	>= (timestamp,timestamp)
timestamp_minmax_multi_ops	= (timestamp,timestamp)
	< (timestamp,timestamp)

Name	Indexable Operators
	<= (timestamp,timestamp)
	> (timestamp,timestamp)
	>= (timestamp,timestamp)
timestamp_bloom_ops	= (timestamp,timestamp)
timestamp_minmax_ops	= (timestamp,timestamp)
	< (timestamp,timestamp)
	<= (timestamp,timestamp)
	> (timestamp,timestamp)
	>= (timestamp,timestamp)
timestamp_minmax_multi_ops	= (timestamp,timestamp)
	< (timestamp,timestamp)
	<= (timestamp,timestamp)
	> (timestamp,timestamp)
	>= (timestamp,timestamp)
time_bloom_ops	= (time,time)
time_minmax_ops	= (time,time)
	< (time,time)
	<= (time,time)
	> (time,time)
	>= (time,time)
time_minmax_multi_ops	= (time,time)
	< (time,time)
	<= (time,time)
	> (time,time)
	>= (time,time)
timetz_bloom_ops	= (timetz,timetz)
timetz_minmax_ops	= (timetz,timetz)
	< (timetz,timetz)
	<= (timetz,timetz)
	> (timetz,timetz)
	>= (timetz,timetz)
timetz_minmax_multi_ops	= (timetz,timetz)
	< (timetz,timetz)
	<= (timetz,timetz)
	> (timetz,timetz)
	>= (timetz,timetz)
uuid_bloom_ops	= (uuid,uuid)
uuid_minmax_ops	= (uuid,uuid)
	< (uuid,uuid)
	> (uuid,uuid)
	<= (uuid,uuid)

Name	Indexable Operators
	<code>&gt;= (uuid,uuid)</code>
<code>uuid_minmax_multi_ops</code>	<code>= (uuid,uuid)</code>
	<code>&lt; (uuid,uuid)</code>
	<code>&gt; (uuid,uuid)</code>
	<code>&lt;= (uuid,uuid)</code>
	<code>&gt;= (uuid,uuid)</code>
<code>varbit_minmax_ops</code>	<code>= (varbit,varbit)</code>
	<code>&lt; (varbit,varbit)</code>
	<code>&gt; (varbit,varbit)</code>
	<code>&lt;= (varbit,varbit)</code>
	<code>&gt;= (varbit,varbit)</code>

## 71.2.1. Operator Class Parameters

Some of the built-in operator classes allow specifying parameters affecting behavior of the operator class. Each operator class has its own set of allowed parameters. Only the `bloom` and `minmax-multi` operator classes allow specifying parameters:

`bloom` operator classes accept these parameters:

`n_distinct_per_range`

Defines the estimated number of distinct non-null values in the block range, used by BRIN bloom indexes for sizing of the Bloom filter. It behaves similarly to `n_distinct` option for `ALTER TABLE`. When set to a positive value, each block range is assumed to contain this number of distinct non-null values. When set to a negative value, which must be greater than or equal to -1, the number of distinct non-null values is assumed to grow linearly with the maximum possible number of tuples in the block range (about 290 rows per block). The default value is `-0.1`, and the minimum number of distinct non-null values is 16.

`false_positive_rate`

Defines the desired false positive rate used by BRIN bloom indexes for sizing of the Bloom filter. The values must be between 0.0001 and 0.25. The default value is 0.01, which is 1% false positive rate.

`minmax-multi` operator classes accept these parameters:

`values_per_range`

Defines the maximum number of values stored by BRIN minmax indexes to summarize a block range. Each value may represent either a point, or a boundary of an interval. Values must be between 8 and 256, and the default value is 32.

## 71.3. Extensibility

The BRIN interface has a high level of abstraction, requiring the access method implementer only to implement the semantics of the data type being accessed. The BRIN layer itself takes care of concurrency, logging and searching the index structure.

All it takes to get a BRIN access method working is to implement a few user-defined methods, which define the behavior of summary values stored in the index and the way they interact with scan keys. In short, BRIN combines extensibility with generality, code reuse, and a clean interface.

There are four methods that an operator class for BRIN must provide:

```
BrinOpcInfo *opcInfo(Oid type_oid)
```

Returns internal information about the indexed columns' summary data. The return value must point to a palloc'd `BrinOpcInfo`, which has this definition:

```
typedef struct BrinOpcInfo
{
    /* Number of columns stored in an index column of this
    opclass */
    uint16      oi_nstored;

    /* Opaque pointer for the opclass' private use */
    void        *oi_opaque;

    /* Type cache entries of the stored columns */
    TypeCacheEntry *oi_tpcache[FLEXIBLE_ARRAY_MEMBER];
} BrinOpcInfo;
```

`BrinOpcInfo.oi_opaque` can be used by the operator class routines to pass information between support functions during an index scan.

```
bool consistent(BrinDesc *bdesc, BrinValues *column, ScanKey *keys,
int nkeys)
```

Returns whether all the `ScanKey` entries are consistent with the given indexed values for a range. The attribute number to use is passed as part of the scan key. Multiple scan keys for the same attribute may be passed at once; the number of entries is determined by the `nkeys` parameter.

```
bool consistent(BrinDesc *bdesc, BrinValues *column, ScanKey key)
```

Returns whether the `ScanKey` is consistent with the given indexed values for a range. The attribute number to use is passed as part of the scan key. This is an older backward-compatible variant of the `consistent` function.

```
bool addValue(BrinDesc *bdesc, BrinValues *column, Datum newval, bool
isnull)
```

Given an index tuple and an indexed value, modifies the indicated attribute of the tuple so that it additionally represents the new value. If any modification was done to the tuple, `true` is returned.

```
bool unionTuples(BrinDesc *bdesc, BrinValues *a, BrinValues *b)
```

Consolidates two index tuples. Given two index tuples, modifies the indicated attribute of the first of them so that it represents both tuples. The second tuple is not modified.

An operator class for BRIN can optionally specify the following method:

```
void options(local_relopts *relopts)
```

Defines a set of user-visible parameters that control operator class behavior.

The `options` function is passed a pointer to a `local_relopts` struct, which needs to be filled with a set of operator class specific options. The options can be accessed from other support functions using the `PG_HAS_OPCLASS_OPTIONS()` and `PG_GET_OPCLASS_OPTIONS()` macros.

Since both key extraction of indexed values and representation of the key in BRIN are flexible, they may depend on user-specified parameters.

The core distribution includes support for four types of operator classes: minmax, minmax-multi, inclusion and bloom. Operator class definitions using them are shipped for in-core data types as appropriate. Additional operator classes can be defined by the user for other data types using equivalent definitions, without having to write any source code; appropriate catalog entries being declared is enough. Note that assumptions about the semantics of operator strategies are embedded in the support functions' source code.

Operator classes that implement completely different semantics are also possible, provided implementations of the four main support functions described above are written. Note that backwards compatibility across major releases is not guaranteed: for example, additional support functions might be required in later releases.

To write an operator class for a data type that implements a totally ordered set, it is possible to use the minmax support functions alongside the corresponding operators, as shown in Table 71.2. All operator class members (functions and operators) are mandatory.

**Table 71.2. Function and Support Numbers for Minmax Operator Classes**

Operator class member	Object
Support Function 1	internal function <code>brin_minmax_opcinfo()</code>
Support Function 2	internal function <code>brin_minmax_add_value()</code>
Support Function 3	internal function <code>brin_minmax_consistent()</code>
Support Function 4	internal function <code>brin_minmax_union()</code>
Operator Strategy 1	operator less-than
Operator Strategy 2	operator less-than-or-equal-to
Operator Strategy 3	operator equal-to
Operator Strategy 4	operator greater-than-or-equal-to
Operator Strategy 5	operator greater-than

To write an operator class for a complex data type which has values included within another type, it's possible to use the inclusion support functions alongside the corresponding operators, as shown in Table 71.3. It requires only a single additional function, which can be written in any language. More functions can be defined for additional functionality. All operators are optional. Some operators require other operators, as shown as dependencies on the table.

**Table 71.3. Function and Support Numbers for Inclusion Operator Classes**

Operator class member	Object	Dependency
Support Function 1	internal function <code>brin_inclusion_opcinfo()</code>	
Support Function 2	internal function <code>brin_inclusion_add_value()</code>	
Support Function 3	internal function <code>brin_inclusion_consistent()</code>	
Support Function 4	internal function <code>brin_inclusion_union()</code>	
Support Function 11	function to merge two elements	
Support Function 12	optional function to check whether two elements are mergeable	
Support Function 13	optional function to check if an element is contained within another	

Operator class member	Object	Dependency
Support Function 14	optional function to check whether an element is empty	
Operator Strategy 1	operator left-of	Operator Strategy 4
Operator Strategy 2	operator does-not-extend-to-the-right-of	Operator Strategy 5
Operator Strategy 3	operator overlaps	
Operator Strategy 4	operator does-not-extend-to-the-left-of	Operator Strategy 1
Operator Strategy 5	operator right-of	Operator Strategy 2
Operator Strategy 6, 18	operator same-as-or-equal-to	Operator Strategy 7
Operator Strategy 7, 16, 24, 25	operator contains-or-equal-to	
Operator Strategy 8, 26, 27	operator is-contained-by-or-equal-to	Operator Strategy 3
Operator Strategy 9	operator does-not-extend-above	Operator Strategy 11
Operator Strategy 10	operator is-below	Operator Strategy 12
Operator Strategy 11	operator is-above	Operator Strategy 9
Operator Strategy 12	operator does-not-extend-below	Operator Strategy 10
Operator Strategy 20	operator less-than	Operator Strategy 5
Operator Strategy 21	operator less-than-or-equal-to	Operator Strategy 5
Operator Strategy 22	operator greater-than	Operator Strategy 1
Operator Strategy 23	operator greater-than-or-equal-to	Operator Strategy 1

Support function numbers 1 through 10 are reserved for the BRIN internal functions, so the SQL level functions start with number 11. Support function number 11 is the main function required to build the index. It should accept two arguments with the same data type as the operator class, and return the union of them. The inclusion operator class can store union values with different data types if it is defined with the `STORAGE` parameter. The return value of the union function should match the `STORAGE` data type.

Support function numbers 12 and 14 are provided to support irregularities of built-in data types. Function number 12 is used to support network addresses from different families which are not mergeable. Function number 14 is used to support empty ranges. Function number 13 is an optional but recommended one, which allows the new value to be checked before it is passed to the union function. As the BRIN framework can shortcut some operations when the union is not changed, using this function can improve index performance.

To write an operator class for a data type that implements only an equality operator and supports hashing, it is possible to use the bloom support procedures alongside the corresponding operators, as shown in Table 71.4. All operator class members (procedures and operators) are mandatory.

**Table 71.4. Procedure and Support Numbers for Bloom Operator Classes**

Operator class member	Object
Support Procedure 1	internal function <code>brin_bloom_opcinfo()</code>
Support Procedure 2	internal function <code>brin_bloom_add_value()</code>
Support Procedure 3	internal function <code>brin_bloom_consistent()</code>
Support Procedure 4	internal function <code>brin_bloom_union()</code>

Operator class member	Object
Support Procedure 5	internal function <code>brin_bloom_options()</code>
Support Procedure 11	function to compute hash of an element
Operator Strategy 1	operator equal-to

Support procedure numbers 1-10 are reserved for the BRIN internal functions, so the SQL level functions start with number 11. Support function number 11 is the main function required to build the index. It should accept one argument with the same data type as the operator class, and return a hash of the value.

The minmax-multi operator class is also intended for data types implementing a totally ordered set, and may be seen as a simple extension of the minmax operator class. While minmax operator class summarizes values from each block range into a single contiguous interval, minmax-multi allows summarization into multiple smaller intervals to improve handling of outlier values. It is possible to use the minmax-multi support procedures alongside the corresponding operators, as shown in Table 71.5. All operator class members (procedures and operators) are mandatory.

**Table 71.5. Procedure and Support Numbers for minmax-multi Operator Classes**

Operator class member	Object
Support Procedure 1	internal function <code>brin_minmax_multi_opcinfo()</code>
Support Procedure 2	internal function <code>brin_minmax_multi_add_value()</code>
Support Procedure 3	internal function <code>brin_minmax_multi_consistent()</code>
Support Procedure 4	internal function <code>brin_minmax_multi_union()</code>
Support Procedure 5	internal function <code>brin_minmax_multi_options()</code>
Support Procedure 11	function to compute distance between two values (length of a range)
Operator Strategy 1	operator less-than
Operator Strategy 2	operator less-than-or-equal-to
Operator Strategy 3	operator equal-to
Operator Strategy 4	operator greater-than-or-equal-to
Operator Strategy 5	operator greater-than

Both minmax and inclusion operator classes support cross-data-type operators, though with these the dependencies become more complicated. The minmax operator class requires a full set of operators to be defined with both arguments having the same data type. It allows additional data types to be supported by defining extra sets of operators. Inclusion operator class operator strategies are dependent on another operator strategy as shown in Table 71.3, or the same operator strategy as themselves. They require the dependency operator to be defined with the `STORAGE` data type as the left-hand-side argument and the other supported data type to be the right-hand-side argument of the supported operator. See `float4_minmax_ops` as an example of minmax, and `box_inclusion_ops` as an example of inclusion.



---

# Chapter 72. Hash Indexes

## 72.1. Overview

PostgreSQL includes an implementation of persistent on-disk hash indexes, which are fully crash recoverable. Any data type can be indexed by a hash index, including data types that do not have a well-defined linear ordering. Hash indexes store only the hash value of the data being indexed, thus there are no restrictions on the size of the data column being indexed.

Hash indexes support only single-column indexes and do not allow uniqueness checking.

Hash indexes support only the = operator, so WHERE clauses that specify range operations will not be able to take advantage of hash indexes.

Each hash index tuple stores just the 4-byte hash value, not the actual column value. As a result, hash indexes may be much smaller than B-trees when indexing longer data items such as UUIDs, URLs, etc. The absence of the column value also makes all hash index scans lossy. Hash indexes may take part in bitmap index scans and backward scans.

Hash indexes are best optimized for SELECT and UPDATE-heavy workloads that use equality scans on larger tables. In a B-tree index, searches must descend through the tree until the leaf page is found. In tables with millions of rows, this descent can increase access time to data. The equivalent of a leaf page in a hash index is referred to as a bucket page. In contrast, a hash index allows accessing the bucket pages directly, thereby potentially reducing index access time in larger tables. This reduction in "logical I/O" becomes even more pronounced on indexes/data larger than shared\_buffers/RAM.

Hash indexes have been designed to cope with uneven distributions of hash values. Direct access to the bucket pages works well if the hash values are evenly distributed. When inserts mean that the bucket page becomes full, additional overflow pages are chained to that specific bucket page, locally expanding the storage for index tuples that match that hash value. When scanning a hash bucket during queries, we need to scan through all of the overflow pages. Thus an unbalanced hash index might actually be worse than a B-tree in terms of number of block accesses required, for some data.

As a result of the overflow cases, we can say that hash indexes are most suitable for unique, nearly unique data or data with a low number of rows per hash bucket. One possible way to avoid problems is to exclude highly non-unique values from the index using a partial index condition, but this may not be suitable in many cases.

Like B-Trees, hash indexes perform simple index tuple deletion. This is a deferred maintenance operation that deletes index tuples that are known to be safe to delete (those whose item identifier's LP\_DEAD bit is already set). If an insert finds no space is available on a page we try to avoid creating a new overflow page by attempting to remove dead index tuples. Removal cannot occur if the page is pinned at that time. Deletion of dead index pointers also occurs during VACUUM.

If it can, VACUUM will also try to squeeze the index tuples onto as few overflow pages as possible, minimizing the overflow chain. If an overflow page becomes empty, overflow pages can be recycled for reuse in other buckets, though we never return them to the operating system. There is currently no provision to shrink a hash index, other than by rebuilding it with REINDEX. There is no provision for reducing the number of buckets, either.

Hash indexes may expand the number of bucket pages as the number of rows indexed grows. The hash key-to-bucket-number mapping is chosen so that the index can be incrementally expanded. When a new bucket is to be added to the index, exactly one existing bucket will need to be "split", with some of its tuples being transferred to the new bucket according to the updated key-to-bucket-number mapping.

The expansion occurs in the foreground, which could increase execution time for user inserts. Thus, hash indexes may not be suitable for tables with rapidly increasing number of rows.

## 72.2. Implementation

There are four kinds of pages in a hash index: the meta page (page zero), which contains statically allocated control information; primary bucket pages; overflow pages; and bitmap pages, which keep track of overflow pages that have been freed and are available for re-use. For addressing purposes, bitmap pages are regarded as a subset of the overflow pages.

Both scanning the index and inserting tuples require locating the bucket where a given tuple ought to be located. To do this, we need the bucket count, highmask, and lowmask from the metapage; however, it's undesirable for performance reasons to have to lock and pin the metapage for every such operation. Instead, we retain a cached copy of the metapage in each backend's relcache entry. This will produce the correct bucket mapping as long as the target bucket hasn't been split since the last cache refresh.

Primary bucket pages and overflow pages are allocated independently since any given index might need more or fewer overflow pages relative to its number of buckets. The hash code uses an interesting set of addressing rules to support a variable number of overflow pages while not having to move primary bucket pages around after they are created.

Each row in the table indexed is represented by a single index tuple in the hash index. Hash index tuples are stored in bucket pages, and if they exist, overflow pages. We speed up searches by keeping the index entries in any one index page sorted by hash code, thus allowing binary search to be used within an index page. Note however that there is *\*no\** assumption about the relative ordering of hash codes across different index pages of a bucket.

The bucket splitting algorithms to expand the hash index are too complex to be worthy of mention here, though are described in more detail in `src/backend/access/hash/README`. The split algorithm is crash safe and can be restarted if not completed successfully.

---

# Chapter 73. Database Physical Storage

This chapter provides an overview of the physical storage format used by PostgreSQL databases.

## 73.1. Database File Layout

This section describes the storage format at the level of files and directories.

Traditionally, the configuration and data files used by a database cluster are stored together within the cluster's data directory, commonly referred to as PGDATA (after the name of the environment variable that can be used to define it). A common location for PGDATA is `/var/lib/pgsql/data`. Multiple clusters, managed by different server instances, can exist on the same machine.

The PGDATA directory contains several subdirectories and control files, as shown in Table 73.1. In addition to these required items, the cluster configuration files `postgresql.conf`, `pg_hba.conf`, and `pg_ident.conf` are traditionally stored in PGDATA, although it is possible to place them elsewhere.

**Table 73.1. Contents of PGDATA**

Item	Description
PG_VERSION	A file containing the major version number of PostgreSQL
base	Subdirectory containing per-database subdirectories
current_logfiles	File recording the log file(s) currently written to by the logging collector
global	Subdirectory containing cluster-wide tables, such as <code>pg_database</code>
pg_commit_ts	Subdirectory containing transaction commit timestamp data
pg_dynshmem	Subdirectory containing files used by the dynamic shared memory subsystem
pg_logical	Subdirectory containing status data for logical decoding
pg_multixact	Subdirectory containing multitransaction status data (used for shared row locks)
pg_notify	Subdirectory containing LISTEN/NOTIFY status data
pg_replslot	Subdirectory containing replication slot data
pg_serial	Subdirectory containing information about committed serializable transactions
pg_snapshots	Subdirectory containing exported snapshots
pg_stat	Subdirectory containing permanent files for the statistics subsystem
pg_stat_tmp	Subdirectory containing temporary files for the statistics subsystem
pg_subtrans	Subdirectory containing subtransaction status data

Item	Description
<code>pg_tblspc</code>	Subdirectory containing symbolic links to tablespaces
<code>pg_twophase</code>	Subdirectory containing state files for prepared transactions
<code>pg_wal</code>	Subdirectory containing WAL (Write Ahead Log) files
<code>pg_xact</code>	Subdirectory containing transaction commit status data
<code>postgresql.auto.conf</code>	A file used for storing configuration parameters that are set by <code>ALTER SYSTEM</code>
<code>postmaster.opts</code>	A file recording the command-line options the server was last started with
<code>postmaster.pid</code>	A lock file recording the current postmaster process ID (PID), cluster data directory path, postmaster start timestamp, port number, Unix-domain socket directory path (could be empty), first valid listen_address (IP address or *, or empty if not listening on TCP), and shared memory segment ID (this file is not present after server shutdown)

For each database in the cluster there is a subdirectory within `PGDATA/base`, named after the database's OID in `pg_database`. This subdirectory is the default location for the database's files; in particular, its system catalogs are stored there.

Note that the following sections describe the behavior of the builtin heap table access method, and the builtin index access methods. Due to the extensible nature of PostgreSQL, other access methods might work differently.

Each table and index is stored in a separate file. For ordinary relations, these files are named after the table or index's *filenode* number, which can be found in `pg_class.relfilenode`. But for temporary relations, the file name is of the form `tBBB_FFF`, where *BBB* is the backend ID of the backend which created the file, and *FFF* is the filenode number. In either case, in addition to the main file (a/k/a main fork), each table and index has a *free space map* (see Section 73.3), which stores information about free space available in the relation. The free space map is stored in a file named with the filenode number plus the suffix `_fsm`. Tables also have a *visibility map*, stored in a fork with the suffix `_vm`, to track which pages are known to have no dead tuples. The visibility map is described further in Section 73.4. Unlogged tables and indexes have a third fork, known as the initialization fork, which is stored in a fork with the suffix `_init` (see Section 73.5).

### Caution

Note that while a table's filenode often matches its OID, this is *not* necessarily the case; some operations, like `TRUNCATE`, `REINDEX`, `CLUSTER` and some forms of `ALTER TABLE`, can change the filenode while preserving the OID. Avoid assuming that filenode and table OID are the same. Also, for certain system catalogs including `pg_class` itself, `pg_class.relfilenode` contains zero. The actual filenode number of these catalogs is stored in a lower-level data structure, and can be obtained using the `pg_relation_filenode()` function.

When a table or index exceeds 1 GB, it is divided into gigabyte-sized *segments*. The first segment's file name is the same as the filenode; subsequent segments are named `filenode.1`, `filenode.2`, etc. This

arrangement avoids problems on platforms that have file size limitations. (Actually, 1 GB is just the default segment size. The segment size can be adjusted using the configuration option `--with-segsize` when building PostgreSQL.) In principle, free space map and visibility map forks could require multiple segments as well, though this is unlikely to happen in practice.

A table that has columns with potentially large entries will have an associated *TOAST* table, which is used for out-of-line storage of field values that are too large to keep in the table rows proper. `pg_class.relttoastrelid` links from a table to its TOAST table, if any. See Section 73.2 for more information.

The contents of tables and indexes are discussed further in Section 73.6.

Tablespaces make the scenario more complicated. Each user-defined tablespace has a symbolic link inside the `PGDATA/pg_tblspc` directory, which points to the physical tablespace directory (i.e., the location specified in the tablespace's `CREATE TABLESPACE` command). This symbolic link is named after the tablespace's OID. Inside the physical tablespace directory there is a subdirectory with a name that depends on the PostgreSQL server version, such as `PG_9.0_201008051`. (The reason for using this subdirectory is so that successive versions of the database can use the same `CREATE TABLESPACE` location value without conflicts.) Within the version-specific subdirectory, there is a subdirectory for each database that has elements in the tablespace, named after the database's OID. Tables and indexes are stored within that directory, using the filenode naming scheme. The `pg_default` tablespace is not accessed through `pg_tblspc`, but corresponds to `PGDATA/base`. Similarly, the `pg_global` tablespace is not accessed through `pg_tblspc`, but corresponds to `PGDATA/global`.

The `pg_relation_filepath()` function shows the entire path (relative to `PGDATA`) of any relation. It is often useful as a substitute for remembering many of the above rules. But keep in mind that this function just gives the name of the first segment of the main fork of the relation — you may need to append a segment number and/or `_fsm`, `_vm`, or `_init` to find all the files associated with the relation.

Temporary files (for operations such as sorting more data than can fit in memory) are created within `PGDATA/base/pgsql_tmp`, or within a `pgsql_tmp` subdirectory of a tablespace directory if a tablespace other than `pg_default` is specified for them. The name of a temporary file has the form `pgsql_tmpPPP.NNN`, where `PPP` is the PID of the owning backend and `NNN` distinguishes different temporary files of that backend.

## 73.2. TOAST

This section provides an overview of TOAST (The Oversized-Attribute Storage Technique).

PostgreSQL uses a fixed page size (commonly 8 kB), and does not allow tuples to span multiple pages. Therefore, it is not possible to store very large field values directly. To overcome this limitation, large field values are compressed and/or broken up into multiple physical rows. This happens transparently to the user, with only small impact on most of the backend code. The technique is affectionately known as TOAST (or “the best thing since sliced bread”). The TOAST infrastructure is also used to improve handling of large data values in-memory.

Only certain data types support TOAST — there is no need to impose the overhead on data types that cannot produce large field values. To support TOAST, a data type must have a variable-length (*varlena*) representation, in which, ordinarily, the first four-byte word of any stored value contains the total length of the value in bytes (including itself). TOAST does not constrain the rest of the data type's representation. The special representations collectively called *TOASTed values* work by modifying or reinterpreting this initial length word. Therefore, the C-level functions supporting a TOAST-able data type must be careful about how they handle potentially TOASTed input values: an input might not actually consist of a four-byte length word and contents until after it's been *detoasted*. (This is normally done by invoking `PG_DETOAST_DATUM` before doing anything with an input value, but in some cases more efficient approaches are possible. See Section 38.13.1 for more detail.)

TOAST usurps two bits of the varlena length word (the high-order bits on big-endian machines, the low-order bits on little-endian machines), thereby limiting the logical size of any value of a TOASTable data type to 1 GB ( $2^{30}$  - 1 bytes). When both bits are zero, the value is an ordinary un-TOASTed value of the data type, and the remaining bits of the length word give the total datum size (including length word) in bytes. When the highest-order or lowest-order bit is set, the value has only a single-byte header instead of the normal four-byte header, and the remaining bits of that byte give the total datum size (including length byte) in bytes. This alternative supports space-efficient storage of values shorter than 127 bytes, while still allowing the data type to grow to 1 GB at need. Values with single-byte headers aren't aligned on any particular boundary, whereas values with four-byte headers are aligned on at least a four-byte boundary; this omission of alignment padding provides additional space savings that is significant compared to short values. As a special case, if the remaining bits of a single-byte header are all zero (which would be impossible for a self-inclusive length), the value is a pointer to out-of-line data, with several possible alternatives as described below. The type and size of such a *TOAST pointer* are determined by a code stored in the second byte of the datum. Lastly, when the highest-order or lowest-order bit is clear but the adjacent bit is set, the content of the datum has been compressed and must be decompressed before use. In this case the remaining bits of the four-byte length word give the total size of the compressed datum, not the original data. Note that compression is also possible for out-of-line data but the varlena header does not tell whether it has occurred — the content of the TOAST pointer tells that, instead.

The compression technique used for either in-line or out-of-line compressed data can be selected for each column by setting the `COMPRESSION` column option in `CREATE TABLE` or `ALTER TABLE`. The default for columns with no explicit setting is to consult the `default_toast_compression` parameter at the time data is inserted.

As mentioned, there are multiple types of TOAST pointer datums. The oldest and most common type is a pointer to out-of-line data stored in a *TOAST table* that is separate from, but associated with, the table containing the TOAST pointer datum itself. These *on-disk* pointer datums are created by the TOAST management code (in `access/common/toast_internals.c`) when a tuple to be stored on disk is too large to be stored as-is. Further details appear in Section 73.2.1. Alternatively, a TOAST pointer datum can contain a pointer to out-of-line data that appears elsewhere in memory. Such datums are necessarily short-lived, and will never appear on-disk, but they are very useful for avoiding copying and redundant processing of large data values. Further details appear in Section 73.2.2.

## 73.2.1. Out-of-Line, On-Disk TOAST Storage

If any of the columns of a table are TOASTable, the table will have an associated TOAST table, whose OID is stored in the table's `pg_class.reltoastrelid` entry. On-disk TOASTed values are kept in the TOAST table, as described in more detail below.

Out-of-line values are divided (after compression if used) into chunks of at most `TOAST_MAX_CHUNK_SIZE` bytes (by default this value is chosen so that four chunk rows will fit on a page, making it about 2000 bytes). Each chunk is stored as a separate row in the TOAST table belonging to the owning table. Every TOAST table has the columns `chunk_id` (an OID identifying the particular TOASTed value), `chunk_seq` (a sequence number for the chunk within its value), and `chunk_data` (the actual data of the chunk). A unique index on `chunk_id` and `chunk_seq` provides fast retrieval of the values. A pointer datum representing an out-of-line on-disk TOASTed value therefore needs to store the OID of the TOAST table in which to look and the OID of the specific value (its `chunk_id`). For convenience, pointer datums also store the logical datum size (original uncompressed data length), physical stored size (different if compression was applied), and the compression method used, if any. Allowing for the varlena header bytes, the total size of an on-disk TOAST pointer datum is therefore 18 bytes regardless of the actual size of the represented value.

The TOAST management code is triggered only when a row value to be stored in a table is wider than `TOAST_TUPLE_THRESHOLD` bytes (normally 2 kB). The TOAST code will compress and/or move field values out-of-line until the row value is shorter than `TOAST_TUPLE_TARGET` bytes (also normally 2 kB, adjustable) or no more gains can be had. During an `UPDATE` operation, values of unchanged fields are normally preserved as-is; so an `UPDATE` of a row with out-of-line values incurs no TOAST costs if none of the out-of-line values change.

The TOAST management code recognizes four different strategies for storing TOAST-able columns on disk:

- `PLAIN` prevents either compression or out-of-line storage. This is the only possible strategy for columns of non-TOAST-able data types.
- `EXTENDED` allows both compression and out-of-line storage. This is the default for most TOAST-able data types. Compression will be attempted first, then out-of-line storage if the row is still too big.
- `EXTERNAL` allows out-of-line storage but not compression. Use of `EXTERNAL` will make substring operations on wide `text` and `bytea` columns faster (at the penalty of increased storage space) because these operations are optimized to fetch only the required parts of the out-of-line value when it is not compressed.
- `MAIN` allows compression but not out-of-line storage. (Actually, out-of-line storage will still be performed for such columns, but only as a last resort when there is no other way to make the row small enough to fit on a page.)

Each TOAST-able data type specifies a default strategy for columns of that data type, but the strategy for a given table column can be altered with `ALTER TABLE ... SET STORAGE`.

`TOAST_TUPLE_TARGET` can be adjusted for each table using `ALTER TABLE ... SET (toast_tuple_target = N)`

This scheme has a number of advantages compared to a more straightforward approach such as allowing row values to span pages. Assuming that queries are usually qualified by comparisons against relatively small key values, most of the work of the executor will be done using the main row entry. The big values of TOASTed attributes will only be pulled out (if selected at all) at the time the result set is sent to the client. Thus, the main table is much smaller and more of its rows fit in the shared buffer cache than would be the case without any out-of-line storage. Sort sets shrink also, and sorts will more often be done entirely in memory. A little test showed that a table containing typical HTML pages and their URLs was stored in about half of the raw data size including the TOAST table, and that the main table contained only about 10% of the entire data (the URLs and some small HTML pages). There was no run time difference compared to an un-TOASTed comparison table, in which all the HTML pages were cut down to 7 kB to fit.

## 73.2.2. Out-of-Line, In-Memory TOAST Storage

TOAST pointers can point to data that is not on disk, but is elsewhere in the memory of the current server process. Such pointers obviously cannot be long-lived, but they are nonetheless useful. There are currently two sub-cases: pointers to *indirect* data and pointers to *expanded* data.

Indirect TOAST pointers simply point at a non-indirect varlena value stored somewhere in memory. This case was originally created merely as a proof of concept, but it is currently used during logical decoding to avoid possibly having to create physical tuples exceeding 1 GB (as pulling all out-of-line field values into the tuple might do). The case is of limited use since the creator of the pointer datum is entirely responsible that the referenced data survives for as long as the pointer could exist, and there is no infrastructure to help with this.

Expanded TOAST pointers are useful for complex data types whose on-disk representation is not especially suited for computational purposes. As an example, the standard varlena representation of a PostgreSQL array includes dimensionality information, a nulls bitmap if there are any null elements, then the values of all the elements in order. When the element type itself is variable-length, the only way to find the *N*th element is to scan through all the preceding elements. This representation is appropriate for on-disk storage because of its compactness, but for computations with the array it's much nicer to have an “expanded” or “deconstructed” representation in which all the element starting locations have been identified. The TOAST pointer mechanism supports this need by allowing a pass-by-reference Datum to point to either a standard varlena value (the on-disk representation) or a

TOAST pointer that points to an expanded representation somewhere in memory. The details of this expanded representation are up to the data type, though it must have a standard header and meet the other API requirements given in `src/include/utils/expandeddatum.h`. C-level functions working with the data type can choose to handle either representation. Functions that do not know about the expanded representation, but simply apply `PG_DETOAST_DATUM` to their inputs, will automatically receive the traditional varlena representation; so support for an expanded representation can be introduced incrementally, one function at a time.

TOAST pointers to expanded values are further broken down into *read-write* and *read-only* pointers. The pointed-to representation is the same either way, but a function that receives a read-write pointer is allowed to modify the referenced value in-place, whereas one that receives a read-only pointer must not; it must first create a copy if it wants to make a modified version of the value. This distinction and some associated conventions make it possible to avoid unnecessary copying of expanded values during query execution.

For all types of in-memory TOAST pointer, the TOAST management code ensures that no such pointer datum can accidentally get stored on disk. In-memory TOAST pointers are automatically expanded to normal in-line varlena values before storage — and then possibly converted to on-disk TOAST pointers, if the containing tuple would otherwise be too big.

## 73.3. Free Space Map

Each heap and index relation, except for hash indexes, has a Free Space Map (FSM) to keep track of available space in the relation. It's stored alongside the main relation data in a separate relation fork, named after the filenode number of the relation, plus a `_fsm` suffix. For example, if the filenode of a relation is 12345, the FSM is stored in a file called `12345_fsm`, in the same directory as the main relation file.

The Free Space Map is organized as a tree of FSM pages. The bottom level FSM pages store the free space available on each heap (or index) page, using one byte to represent each such page. The upper levels aggregate information from the lower levels.

Within each FSM page is a binary tree, stored in an array with one byte per node. Each leaf node represents a heap page, or a lower level FSM page. In each non-leaf node, the higher of its children's values is stored. The maximum value in the leaf nodes is therefore stored at the root.

See `src/backend/storage/freespace/README` for more details on how the FSM is structured, and how it's updated and searched. The `pg_freespacemap` module can be used to examine the information stored in free space maps.

## 73.4. Visibility Map

Each heap relation has a Visibility Map (VM) to keep track of which pages contain only tuples that are known to be visible to all active transactions; it also keeps track of which pages contain only frozen tuples. It's stored alongside the main relation data in a separate relation fork, named after the filenode number of the relation, plus a `_vm` suffix. For example, if the filenode of a relation is 12345, the VM is stored in a file called `12345_vm`, in the same directory as the main relation file. Note that indexes do not have VMs.

The visibility map stores two bits per heap page. The first bit, if set, indicates that the page is all-visible, or in other words that the page does not contain any tuples that need to be vacuumed. This information can also be used by *index-only scans* to answer queries using only the index tuple. The second bit, if set, means that all tuples on the page have been frozen. That means that even an anti-wraparound vacuum need not revisit the page.

The map is conservative in the sense that we make sure that whenever a bit is set, we know the condition is true, but if a bit is not set, it might or might not be true. Visibility map bits are only set by vacuum, but are cleared by any data-modifying operations on a page.



The `pg_visibility` module can be used to examine the information stored in the visibility map.

## 73.5. The Initialization Fork

Each unlogged table, and each index on an unlogged table, has an initialization fork. The initialization fork is an empty table or index of the appropriate type. When an unlogged table must be reset to empty due to a crash, the initialization fork is copied over the main fork, and any other forks are erased (they will be recreated automatically as needed).

## 73.6. Database Page Layout

This section provides an overview of the page format used within PostgreSQL tables and indexes.<sup>1</sup> Sequences and TOAST tables are formatted just like a regular table.

In the following explanation, a *byte* is assumed to contain 8 bits. In addition, the term *item* refers to an individual data value that is stored on a page. In a table, an item is a row; in an index, an item is an index entry.

Every table and index is stored as an array of *pages* of a fixed size (usually 8 kB, although a different page size can be selected when compiling the server). In a table, all the pages are logically equivalent, so a particular item (row) can be stored in any page. In indexes, the first page is generally reserved as a *metapage* holding control information, and there can be different types of pages within the index, depending on the index access method.

Table 73.2 shows the overall layout of a page. There are five parts to each page.

**Table 73.2. Overall Page Layout**

Item	Description
PageHeaderData	24 bytes long. Contains general information about the page, including free space pointers.
ItemIdData	Array of item identifiers pointing to the actual items. Each entry is an (offset,length) pair. 4 bytes per item.
Free space	The unallocated space. New item identifiers are allocated from the start of this area, new items from the end.
Items	The actual items themselves.
Special space	Index access method specific data. Different methods store different data. Empty in ordinary tables.

The first 24 bytes of each page consists of a page header (`PageHeaderData`). Its format is detailed in Table 73.3. The first field tracks the most recent WAL entry related to this page. The second field contains the page checksum if data checksums are enabled. Next is a 2-byte field containing flag bits. This is followed by three 2-byte integer fields (`pd_lower`, `pd_upper`, and `pd_special`). These contain byte offsets from the page start to the start of unallocated space, to the end of unallocated space, and to the start of the special space. The next 2 bytes of the page header, `pd_pagesize_version`, store both the page size and a version indicator. Beginning with PostgreSQL 8.3 the version number is 4; PostgreSQL 8.1 and 8.2 used version number 3; PostgreSQL 8.0 used version number 2; PostgreSQL 7.3 and 7.4 used version number 1; prior releases used version number 0. (The basic page

<sup>1</sup> Actually, use of this page format is not required for either table or index access methods. The heap table access method always uses this format. All the existing index methods also use the basic format, but the data kept on index metapages usually doesn't follow the item layout rules.

layout and header format has not changed in most of these versions, but the layout of heap row headers has.) The page size is basically only present as a cross-check; there is no support for having more than one page size in an installation. The last field is a hint that shows whether pruning the page is likely to be profitable: it tracks the oldest un-pruned XMAX on the page.

**Table 73.3. PageHeaderData Layout**

Field	Type	Length	Description
pd_lsn	PageXLogRecPtr	8 bytes	LSN: next byte after last byte of WAL record for last change to this page
pd_checksum	uint16	2 bytes	Page checksum
pd_flags	uint16	2 bytes	Flag bits
pd_lower	LocationIndex	2 bytes	Offset to start of free space
pd_upper	LocationIndex	2 bytes	Offset to end of free space
pd_special	LocationIndex	2 bytes	Offset to start of special space
pd_pagesize_version	uint16	2 bytes	Page size and layout version number information
pd_prune_xid	TransactionId	4 bytes	Oldest unpruned XMAX on page, or zero if none

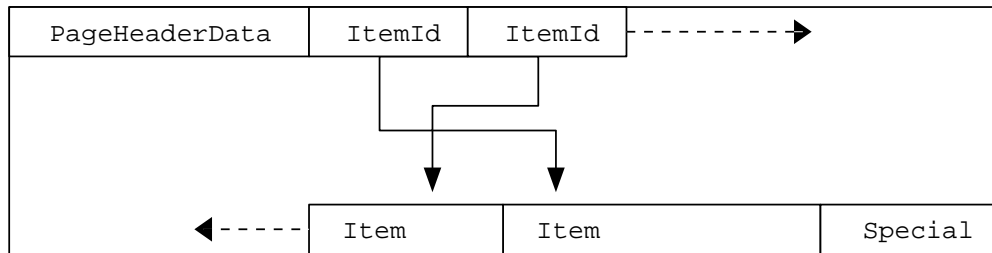
All the details can be found in `src/include/storage/bufpage.h`.

Following the page header are item identifiers (`ItemIdData`), each requiring four bytes. An item identifier contains a byte-offset to the start of an item, its length in bytes, and a few attribute bits which affect its interpretation. New item identifiers are allocated as needed from the beginning of the unallocated space. The number of item identifiers present can be determined by looking at `pd_lower`, which is increased to allocate a new identifier. Because an item identifier is never moved until it is freed, its index can be used on a long-term basis to reference an item, even when the item itself is moved around on the page to compact free space. In fact, every pointer to an item (`ItemPointer`, also known as `CTID`) created by PostgreSQL consists of a page number and the index of an item identifier.

The items themselves are stored in space allocated backwards from the end of unallocated space. The exact structure varies depending on what the table is to contain. Tables and sequences both use a structure named `HeapTupleHeaderData`, described below.

The final section is the “special section” which can contain anything the access method wishes to store. For example, b-tree indexes store links to the page's left and right siblings, as well as some other data relevant to the index structure. Ordinary tables do not use a special section at all (indicated by setting `pd_special` to equal the page size).

Figure 73.1 illustrates how these parts are laid out in a page.

**Figure 73.1. Page Layout**

## 73.6.1. Table Row Layout

All table rows are structured in the same way. There is a fixed-size header (occupying 23 bytes on most machines), followed by an optional null bitmap, an optional object ID field, and the user data. The header is detailed in Table 73.4. The actual user data (columns of the row) begins at the offset indicated by `t_hoff`, which must always be a multiple of the `MAXALIGN` distance for the platform. The null bitmap is only present if the `HEAP_HASNULL` bit is set in `t_infomask`. If it is present it begins just after the fixed header and occupies enough bytes to have one bit per data column (that is, the number of bits that equals the attribute count in `t_infomask2`). In this list of bits, a 1 bit indicates not-null, a 0 bit is a null. When the bitmap is not present, all columns are assumed not-null. The object ID is only present if the `HEAP_HASOID_OLD` bit is set in `t_infomask`. If present, it appears just before the `t_hoff` boundary. Any padding needed to make `t_hoff` a `MAXALIGN` multiple will appear between the null bitmap and the object ID. (This in turn ensures that the object ID is suitably aligned.)

**Table 73.4. HeapTupleHeaderData Layout**

Field	Type	Length	Description
<code>t_xmin</code>	TransactionId	4 bytes	insert XID stamp
<code>t_xmax</code>	TransactionId	4 bytes	delete XID stamp
<code>t_cid</code>	CommandId	4 bytes	insert and/or delete CID stamp (overlays with <code>t_xvac</code> )
<code>t_xvac</code>	TransactionId	4 bytes	XID for VACUUM operation moving a row version
<code>t_ctid</code>	ItemPointerData	6 bytes	current TID of this or newer row version
<code>t_infomask2</code>	uint16	2 bytes	number of attributes, plus various flag bits
<code>t_infomask</code>	uint16	2 bytes	various flag bits
<code>t_hoff</code>	uint8	1 byte	offset to user data

All the details can be found in `src/include/access/htup_details.h`.

Interpreting the actual data can only be done with information obtained from other tables, mostly `pg_attribute`. The key values needed to identify field locations are `attlen` and `attalign`. There is no way to directly get a particular attribute, except when there are only fixed width fields and no null values. All this trickery is wrapped up in the functions `heap_getattr`, `fastgetattr` and `heap_getsysattr`.

To read the data you need to examine each attribute in turn. First check whether the field is NULL according to the null bitmap. If it is, go to the next. Then make sure you have the right alignment. If the field is a fixed width field, then all the bytes are simply placed. If it's a variable length field (`attlen = -1`) then it's a bit more complicated. All variable-length data types share the common header structure `struct varlena`, which includes the total length of the stored value and some flag bits. Depending on the flags, the data can be either inline or in a TOAST table; it might be compressed, too (see Section 73.2).

## 73.7. Heap-Only Tuples (HOT)

To allow for high concurrency, PostgreSQL uses multiversion concurrency control (MVCC) to store rows. However, MVCC has some downsides for update queries. Specifically, updates require new versions of rows to be added to tables. This can also require new index entries for each updated row, and removal of old versions of rows and their index entries can be expensive.

To help reduce the overhead of updates, PostgreSQL has an optimization called heap-only tuples (HOT). This optimization is possible when:

- The update does not modify any columns referenced by the table's indexes, including expression and partial indexes.
- There is sufficient free space on the page containing the old row for the updated row.

In such cases, heap-only tuples provide two optimizations:

- New index entries are not needed to represent updated rows.
- Old versions of updated rows can be completely removed during normal operation, including `SELECTs`, instead of requiring periodic vacuum operations. (This is possible because indexes do not reference their page item identifiers.)

In summary, heap-only tuple updates can only be created if columns used by indexes are not updated. You can increase the likelihood of sufficient page space for HOT updates by decreasing a table's `fillfactor`. If you don't, HOT updates will still happen because new rows will naturally migrate to new pages and existing pages with sufficient free space for new row versions. The system view `pg_stat_all_tables` allows monitoring of the occurrence of HOT and non-HOT updates.

---

# Chapter 74. Transaction Processing

This chapter provides an overview of the internals of PostgreSQL's transaction management system. The word transaction is often abbreviated as *xact*.

## 74.1. Transactions and Identifiers

Transactions can be created explicitly using `BEGIN` or `START TRANSACTION` and ended using `COMMIT` or `ROLLBACK`. SQL statements outside of explicit transactions automatically use single-statement transactions.

Every transaction is identified by a unique `VirtualTransactionId` (also called `virtualXID` or `vxid`), which is comprised of a backend ID (or `backendID`) and a sequentially-assigned number local to each backend, known as `localXID`. For example, the virtual transaction ID 4/12532 has a `backendID` of 4 and a `localXID` of 12532.

Non-virtual `TransactionIds` (or `xid`), e.g., 278394, are assigned sequentially to transactions from a global counter used by all databases within the PostgreSQL cluster. This assignment happens when a transaction first writes to the database. This means lower-numbered `xids` started writing before higher-numbered `xids`. Note that the order in which transactions perform their first database write might be different from the order in which the transactions started, particularly if the transaction started with statements that only performed database reads.

The internal transaction ID type `xid` is 32 bits wide and wraps around every 4 billion transactions. A 32-bit epoch is incremented during each wraparound. There is also a 64-bit type `xid8` which includes this epoch and therefore does not wrap around during the life of an installation; it can be converted to `xid` by casting. The functions in Table 9.80 return `xid8` values. `Xids` are used as the basis for PostgreSQL's MVCC concurrency mechanism and streaming replication.

When a top-level transaction with a (non-virtual) `xid` commits, it is marked as committed in the `pg_xact` directory. Additional information is recorded in the `pg_commit_ts` directory if `track_commit_timestamp` is enabled.

In addition to `vxid` and `xid`, prepared transactions are also assigned Global Transaction Identifiers (GID). GIDs are string literals up to 200 bytes long, which must be unique amongst other currently prepared transactions. The mapping of GID to `xid` is shown in `pg_prepared_xacts`.

## 74.2. Transactions and Locking

The transaction IDs of currently executing transactions are shown in `pg_locks` in columns `virtualxid` and `transactionid`. Read-only transactions will have `virtualxids` but NULL `transactionids`, while both columns will be set in read-write transactions.

Some lock types wait on `virtualxid`, while other types wait on `transactionid`. Row-level read and write locks are recorded directly in the locked rows and can be inspected using the `pgrowlocks` extension. Row-level read locks might also require the assignment of multixact IDs (`mxid`; see Section 25.1.5.1).

## 74.3. Subtransactions

Subtransactions are started inside transactions, allowing large transactions to be broken into smaller units. Subtransactions can commit or abort without affecting their parent transactions, allowing parent transactions to continue. This allows errors to be handled more easily, which is a common application development pattern. The word subtransaction is often abbreviated as *subxact*.

Subtransactions can be started explicitly using the `SAVEPOINT` command, but can also be started in other ways, such as PL/pgSQL's `EXCEPTION` clause. PL/Python and PL/Tcl also support explicit

subtransactions. Subtransactions can also be started from other subtransactions. The top-level transaction and its child subtransactions form a hierarchy or tree, which is why we refer to the main transaction as the top-level transaction.

If a subtransaction is assigned a non-virtual transaction ID, its transaction ID is referred to as a “subxid”. Read-only subtransactions are not assigned subxids, but once they attempt to write, they will be assigned one. This also causes all of a subxid’s parents, up to and including the top-level transaction, to be assigned non-virtual transaction ids. We ensure that a parent xid is always lower than any of its child subxids.

The immediate parent xid of each subxid is recorded in the `pg_subtrans` directory. No entry is made for top-level xids since they do not have a parent, nor is an entry made for read-only subtransactions.

When a subtransaction commits, all of its committed child subtransactions with subxids will also be considered subcommitted in that transaction. When a subtransaction aborts, all of its child subtransactions will also be considered aborted.

When a top-level transaction with an xid commits, all of its subcommitted child subtransactions are also persistently recorded as committed in the `pg_xact` subdirectory. If the top-level transaction aborts, all its subtransactions are also aborted, even if they were subcommitted.

The more subtransactions each transaction keeps open (not rolled back or released), the greater the transaction management overhead. Up to 64 open subxids are cached in shared memory for each backend; after that point, the storage I/O overhead increases significantly due to additional lookups of subxid entries in `pg_subtrans`.

## 74.4. Two-Phase Transactions

PostgreSQL supports a two-phase commit (2PC) protocol that allows multiple distributed systems to work together in a transactional manner. The commands are `PREPARE TRANSACTION`, `COMMIT PREPARED` and `ROLLBACK PREPARED`. Two-phase transactions are intended for use by external transaction management systems. PostgreSQL follows the features and model proposed by the X/Open XA standard, but does not implement some less often used aspects.

When the user executes `PREPARE TRANSACTION`, the only possible next commands are `COMMIT PREPARED` or `ROLLBACK PREPARED`. In general, this prepared state is intended to be of very short duration, but external availability issues might mean transactions stay in this state for an extended interval. Short-lived prepared transactions are stored only in shared memory and WAL. Transactions that span checkpoints are recorded in the `pg_twophase` directory. Transactions that are currently prepared can be inspected using `pg_prepared_xacts`.

---

# Chapter 75. System Catalog Declarations and Initial Contents

PostgreSQL uses many different system catalogs to keep track of the existence and properties of database objects, such as tables and functions. Physically there is no difference between a system catalog and a plain user table, but the backend C code knows the structure and properties of each catalog, and can manipulate it directly at a low level. Thus, for example, it is inadvisable to attempt to alter the structure of a catalog on-the-fly; that would break assumptions built into the C code about how rows of the catalog are laid out. But the structure of the catalogs can change between major versions.

The structures of the catalogs are declared in specially formatted C header files in the `src/include/catalog/` directory of the source tree. For each catalog there is a header file named after the catalog (e.g., `pg_class.h` for `pg_class`), which defines the set of columns the catalog has, as well as some other basic properties such as its OID.

Many of the catalogs have initial data that must be loaded into them during the “bootstrap” phase of `initdb`, to bring the system up to a point where it is capable of executing SQL commands. (For example, `pg_class.h` must contain an entry for itself, as well as one for each other system catalog and index.) This initial data is kept in editable form in data files that are also stored in the `src/include/catalog/` directory. For example, `pg_proc.dat` describes all the initial rows that must be inserted into the `pg_proc` catalog.

To create the catalog files and load this initial data into them, a backend running in bootstrap mode reads a BKI (Backend Interface) file containing commands and initial data. The `postgres.bki` file used in this mode is prepared from the aforementioned header and data files, while building a PostgreSQL distribution, by a Perl script named `genbki.pl`. Although it's specific to a particular PostgreSQL release, `postgres.bki` is platform-independent and is installed in the `share` subdirectory of the installation tree.

`genbki.pl` also produces a derived header file for each catalog, for example `pg_class_d.h` for the `pg_class` catalog. This file contains automatically-generated macro definitions, and may contain other macros, enum declarations, and so on that can be useful for client C code that reads a particular catalog.

Most PostgreSQL developers don't need to be directly concerned with the BKI file, but almost any nontrivial feature addition in the backend will require modifying the catalog header files and/or initial data files. The rest of this chapter gives some information about that, and for completeness describes the BKI file format.

## 75.1. System Catalog Declaration Rules

The key part of a catalog header file is a C structure definition describing the layout of each row of the catalog. This begins with a `CATALOG` macro, which so far as the C compiler is concerned is just shorthand for `typedef struct FormData_catalogname`. Each field in the struct gives rise to a catalog column. Fields can be annotated using the BKI property macros described in `genbki.h`, for example to define a default value for a field or mark it as nullable or not nullable. The `CATALOG` line can also be annotated, with some other BKI property macros described in `genbki.h`, to define other properties of the catalog as a whole, such as whether it is a shared relation.

The system catalog cache code (and most catalog-munging code in general) assumes that the fixed-length portions of all system catalog tuples are in fact present, because it maps this C struct declaration onto them. Thus, all variable-length fields and nullable fields must be placed at the end, and they cannot be accessed as struct fields. For example, if you tried to set `pg_type.typeprelid` to be `NULL`, it would fail when some piece of code tried to reference `typetup->typeprelid` (or worse, `typetup->typelem`, because that follows `typeprelid`). This would result in random errors or even segmentation violations.

As a partial guard against this type of error, variable-length or nullable fields should not be made directly visible to the C compiler. This is accomplished by wrapping them in `#ifdef CATALOG_VARLEN ... #endif` (where `CATALOG_VARLEN` is a symbol that is never defined). This prevents C code from carelessly trying to access fields that might not be there or might be at some other offset. As an independent guard against creating incorrect rows, we require all columns that should be non-nullable to be marked so in `pg_attribute`. The bootstrap code will automatically mark catalog columns as `NOT NULL` if they are fixed-width and are not preceded by any nullable or variable-width column. Where this rule is inadequate, you can force correct marking by using `BKI_FORCE_NOT_NULL` and `BKI_FORCE_NULL` annotations as needed.

Frontend code should not include any `pg_xxx.h` catalog header file, as these files may contain C code that won't compile outside the backend. (Typically, that happens because these files also contain declarations for functions in `src/backend/catalog/` files.) Instead, frontend code may include the corresponding generated `pg_xxx_d.h` header, which will contain `OID` `#defines` and any other data that might be of use on the client side. If you want macros or other code in a catalog header to be visible to frontend code, write `#ifdef EXPOSE_TO_CLIENT_CODE ... #endif` around that section to instruct `genbki.pl` to copy that section to the `pg_xxx_d.h` header.

A few of the catalogs are so fundamental that they can't even be created by the `BKI create` command that's used for most catalogs, because that command needs to write information into these catalogs to describe the new catalog. These are called *bootstrap* catalogs, and defining one takes a lot of extra work: you have to manually prepare appropriate entries for them in the pre-loaded contents of `pg_class` and `pg_type`, and those entries will need to be updated for subsequent changes to the catalog's structure. (Bootstrap catalogs also need pre-loaded entries in `pg_attribute`, but fortunately `genbki.pl` handles that chore nowadays.) Avoid making new catalogs be bootstrap catalogs if at all possible.

## 75.2. System Catalog Initial Data

Each catalog that has any manually-created initial data (some do not) has a corresponding `.dat` file that contains its initial data in an editable format.

### 75.2.1. Data File Format

Each `.dat` file contains Perl data structure literals that are simply eval'd to produce an in-memory data structure consisting of an array of hash references, one per catalog row. A slightly modified excerpt from `pg_database.dat` will demonstrate the key features:

```
[
# A comment could appear here.
{ oid => '1', oid_symbol => 'Template1DbOid',
  descr => 'database\'s default template',
  datname => 'template1', encoding => 'ENCODING',
  datlocprovider => 'LOCALE_PROVIDER', datistemplate => 't',
  dataallowconn => 't', datconnlimit => '-1', datfrozenxid => '0',
  datminmxid => '1', dattablespace => 'pg_default', datcollate =>
  'LC_COLLATE',
  datatype => 'LC_CTYPE', daticulocale => 'ICU_LOCALE', dataacl =>
  '_null_' },
]
```

Points to note:

- The overall file layout is: open square bracket, one or more sets of curly braces each of which represents a catalog row, close square bracket. Write a comma after each closing curly brace.



- Within each catalog row, write comma-separated *key => value* pairs. The allowed *keys* are the names of the catalog's columns, plus the metadata keys `oid`, `oid_symbol`, `array_type_oid`, and `descr`. (The use of `oid` and `oid_symbol` is described in Section 75.2.2 below, while `array_type_oid` is described in Section 75.2.4. `descr` supplies a description string for the object, which will be inserted into `pg_description` or `pg_shdescription` as appropriate.) While the metadata keys are optional, the catalog's defined columns must all be provided, except when the catalog's `.h` file specifies a default value for the column. (In the example above, the `datdba` field has been omitted because `pg_database.h` supplies a suitable default value for it.)
- All values must be single-quoted. Escape single quotes used within a value with a backslash. Backslashes meant as data can, but need not, be doubled; this follows Perl's rules for simple quoted literals. Note that backslashes appearing as data will be treated as escapes by the bootstrap scanner, according to the same rules as for escape string constants (see Section 4.1.2.2); for example `\t` converts to a tab character. If you actually want a backslash in the final value, you will need to write four of them: Perl strips two, leaving `\\` for the bootstrap scanner to see.
- Null values are represented by `_null_`. (Note that there is no way to create a value that is just that string.)
- Comments are preceded by `#`, and must be on their own lines.
- Field values that are OIDs of other catalog entries should be represented by symbolic names rather than actual numeric OIDs. (In the example above, `dattablespace` contains such a reference.) This is described in Section 75.2.3 below.
- Since hashes are unordered data structures, field order and line layout aren't semantically significant. However, to maintain a consistent appearance, we set a few rules that are applied by the formatting script `reformat_dat_file.pl`:
  - Within each pair of curly braces, the metadata fields `oid`, `oid_symbol`, `array_type_oid`, and `descr` (if present) come first, in that order, then the catalog's own fields appear in their defined order.
  - Newlines are inserted between fields as needed to limit line length to 80 characters, if possible. A newline is also inserted between the metadata fields and the regular fields.
  - If the catalog's `.h` file specifies a default value for a column, and a data entry has that same value, `reformat_dat_file.pl` will omit it from the data file. This keeps the data representation compact.
  - `reformat_dat_file.pl` preserves blank lines and comment lines as-is.
- It's recommended to run `reformat_dat_file.pl` before submitting catalog data patches. For convenience, you can simply change to `src/include/catalog/` and run `make reformat-dat-files`.
- If you want to add a new method of making the data representation smaller, you must implement it in `reformat_dat_file.pl` and also teach `Catalog::ParseData()` how to expand the data back into the full representation.

## 75.2.2. OID Assignment

A catalog row appearing in the initial data can be given a manually-assigned OID by writing an `oid => nnnn` metadata field. Furthermore, if an OID is assigned, a C macro for that OID can be created by writing an `oid_symbol => name` metadata field.

Pre-loaded catalog rows must have preassigned OIDs if there are OID references to them in other pre-loaded rows. A preassigned OID is also needed if the row's OID must be referenced from C code. If neither case applies, the `oid` metadata field can be omitted, in which case the bootstrap code assigns an OID automatically. In practice we usually preassign OIDs for all or none of the pre-loaded rows in a given catalog, even if only some of them are actually cross-referenced.

Writing the actual numeric value of any OID in C code is considered very bad form; always use a macro, instead. Direct references to `pg_proc` OIDs are common enough that there's a special mechanism to create the necessary macros automatically; see `src/backend/utils/Gen_fm-grtab.pl`. Similarly — but, for historical reasons, not done the same way — there's an automatic method for creating macros for `pg_type` OIDs. `oid_symbol` entries are therefore not necessary in those two catalogs. Likewise, macros for the `pg_class` OIDs of system catalogs and indexes are set up automatically. For all other system catalogs, you have to manually specify any macros you need via `oid_symbol` entries.

To find an available OID for a new pre-loaded row, run the script `src/include/catalog/unused_oids`. It prints inclusive ranges of unused OIDs (e.g., the output line 45–900 means OIDs 45 through 900 have not been allocated yet). Currently, OIDs 1–9999 are reserved for manual assignment; the `unused_oids` script simply looks through the catalog headers and `.dat` files to see which ones do not appear. You can also use the `duplicate_oids` script to check for mistakes. (`genbki.pl` will assign OIDs for any rows that didn't get one hand-assigned to them, and it will also detect duplicate OIDs at compile time.)

When choosing OIDs for a patch that is not expected to be committed immediately, best practice is to use a group of more-or-less consecutive OIDs starting with some random choice in the range 8000—9999. This minimizes the risk of OID collisions with other patches being developed concurrently. To keep the 8000—9999 range free for development purposes, after a patch has been committed to the master git repository its OIDs should be renumbered into available space below that range. Typically, this will be done near the end of each development cycle, moving all OIDs consumed by patches committed in that cycle at the same time. The script `renumber_oids.pl` can be used for this purpose. If an uncommitted patch is found to have OID conflicts with some recently-committed patch, `renumber_oids.pl` may also be useful for recovering from that situation.

Because of this convention of possibly renumbering OIDs assigned by patches, the OIDs assigned by a patch should not be considered stable until the patch has been included in an official release. We do not change manually-assigned object OIDs once released, however, as that would create assorted compatibility problems.

If `genbki.pl` needs to assign an OID to a catalog entry that does not have a manually-assigned OID, it will use a value in the range 10000—11999. The server's OID counter is set to 10000 at the start of a bootstrap run, so that any objects created on-the-fly during bootstrap processing also receive OIDs in this range. (The usual OID assignment mechanism takes care of preventing any conflicts.)

Objects with OIDs below `FirstUnpinnedObjectId` (12000) are considered “pinned”, preventing them from being deleted. (There are a small number of exceptions, which are hard-wired into `IsPinnedObject()`.) `initdb` forces the OID counter up to `FirstUnpinnedObjectId` as soon as it's ready to create unpinned objects. Thus objects created during the later phases of `initdb`, such as objects created while running the `information_schema.sql` script, will not be pinned, while all objects known to `genbki.pl` will be.

OIDs assigned during normal database operation are constrained to be 16384 or higher. This ensures that the range 10000—16383 is free for OIDs assigned automatically by `genbki.pl` or during `initdb`. These automatically-assigned OIDs are not considered stable, and may change from one installation to another.

## 75.2.3. OID Reference Lookup

In principle, cross-references from one initial catalog row to another could be written just by writing the preassigned OID of the referenced row in the referencing field. However, that is against project policy, because it is error-prone, hard to read, and subject to breakage if a newly-assigned OID is renumbered. Therefore `genbki.pl` provides mechanisms to write symbolic references instead. The rules are as follows:

- Use of symbolic references is enabled in a particular catalog column by attaching `BKI_LOOKUP(lookuprule)` to the column's definition, where *lookuprule* is the name of

the referenced catalog, e.g., `pg_proc`. `BKI_LOOKUP` can be attached to columns of type `Oid`, `regproc`, `oidvector`, or `Oid[ ]`; in the latter two cases it implies performing a lookup on each element of the array.

- It's also permissible to attach `BKI_LOOKUP(encoding)` to integer columns to reference character set encodings, which are not currently represented as catalog OIDs, but have a set of values known to `genbki.pl`.
- In some catalog columns, it's allowed for entries to be zero instead of a valid reference. If this is allowed, write `BKI_LOOKUP_OPT` instead of `BKI_LOOKUP`. Then you can write 0 for an entry. (If the column is declared `regproc`, you can optionally write `-` instead of 0.) Except for this special case, all entries in a `BKI_LOOKUP` column must be symbolic references. `genbki.pl` will warn about unrecognized names.
- Most kinds of catalog objects are simply referenced by their names. Note that type names must exactly match the referenced `pg_type` entry's `typname`; you do not get to use any aliases such as `integer` for `int4`.
- A function can be represented by its `prname`, if that is unique among the `pg_proc.dat` entries (this works like `regproc` input). Otherwise, write it as `prname(argtypename, argtype-name, ...)`, like `regprocedure`. The argument type names must be spelled exactly as they are in the `pg_proc.dat` entry's `proargtypes` field. Do not insert any spaces.
- Operators are represented by `oprname(lefttype, righttype)`, writing the type names exactly as they appear in the `pg_operator.dat` entry's `oprleft` and `oprright` fields. (Write 0 for the omitted operand of a unary operator.)
- The names of `opclasses` and `opfamilies` are only unique within an access method, so they are represented by `access_method_name/object_name`.
- In none of these cases is there any provision for schema-qualification; all objects created during bootstrap are expected to be in the `pg_catalog` schema.

`genbki.pl` resolves all symbolic references while it runs, and puts simple numeric OIDs into the emitted BKI file. There is therefore no need for the bootstrap backend to deal with symbolic references.

It's desirable to mark OID reference columns with `BKI_LOOKUP` or `BKI_LOOKUP_OPT` even if the catalog has no initial data that requires lookup. This allows `genbki.pl` to record the foreign key relationships that exist in the system catalogs. That information is used in the regression tests to check for incorrect entries. See also the macros `DECLARE_FOREIGN_KEY`, `DECLARE_FOREIGN_KEY_OPT`, `DECLARE_ARRAY_FOREIGN_KEY`, and `DECLARE_ARRAY_FOREIGN_KEY_OPT`, which are used to declare foreign key relationships that are too complex for `BKI_LOOKUP` (typically, multi-column foreign keys).

## 75.2.4. Automatic Creation of Array Types

Most scalar data types should have a corresponding array type (that is, a standard varlena array type whose element type is the scalar type, and which is referenced by the `typarray` field of the scalar type's `pg_type` entry). `genbki.pl` is able to generate the `pg_type` entry for the array type automatically in most cases.

To use this facility, just write an `array_type_oid => nnnn` metadata field in the scalar type's `pg_type` entry, specifying the OID to use for the array type. You may then omit the `typarray` field, since it will be filled automatically with that OID.

The generated array type's name is the scalar type's name with an underscore prepended. The array entry's other fields are filled from `BKI_ARRAY_DEFAULT(value)` annotations in `pg_type.h`, or if there isn't one, copied from the scalar type. (There's also a special case for `typalign`.) Then the `typelem` and `typarray` fields of the two entries are set to cross-reference each other.

## 75.2.5. Recipes for Editing Data Files

Here are some suggestions about the easiest ways to perform common tasks when updating catalog data files.

**Add a new column with a default to a catalog:** Add the column to the header file with a `BKI_DEFAULT(value)` annotation. The data file need only be adjusted by adding the field in existing rows where a non-default value is needed.

**Add a default value to an existing column that doesn't have one:** Add a `BKI_DEFAULT` annotation to the header file, then run `make reformat-dat-files` to remove now-redundant field entries.

**Remove a column, whether it has a default or not:** Remove the column from the header, then run `make reformat-dat-files` to remove now-useless field entries.

**Change or remove an existing default value:** You cannot simply change the header file, since that will cause the current data to be interpreted incorrectly. First run `make expand-dat-files` to rewrite the data files with all default values inserted explicitly, then change or remove the `BKI_DEFAULT` annotation, then run `make reformat-dat-files` to remove superfluous fields again.

**Ad-hoc bulk editing:** `reformat_dat_file.pl` can be adapted to perform many kinds of bulk changes. Look for its block comments showing where one-off code can be inserted. In the following example, we are going to consolidate two Boolean fields in `pg_proc` into a char field:

1. Add the new column, with a default, to `pg_proc.h`:

```
+    /* see PROKIND_ categories below */
+    char          prokind BKI_DEFAULT(f);
```

2. Create a new script based on `reformat_dat_file.pl` to insert appropriate values on-the-fly:

```
-          # At this point we have the full row in memory as a
hash
-          # and can do any operations we want. As written, it
only
-          # removes default values, but this script can be
adapted to
-          # do one-off bulk-editing.
+          # One-off change to migrate to prokind
+          # Default has already been filled in by now, so
change to other
+          # values as appropriate
+          if ($values{proisagg} eq 't')
+          {
+              $values{prokind} = 'a';
+          }
+          elsif ($values{proiswindow} eq 't')
+          {
+              $values{prokind} = 'w';
+          }
```

3. Run the new script:

```
$ cd src/include/catalog
$ perl rewrite_dat_with_prokind.pl pg_proc.dat
```

At this point `pg_proc.dat` has all three columns, `prokind`, `proisagg`, and `proiswindow`, though they will appear only in rows where they have non-default values.

4. Remove the old columns from `pg_proc.h`:

```
-    /* is it an aggregate? */
-    bool        proisagg BKI_DEFAULT(f);
-
-    /* is it a window function? */
-    bool        proiswindow BKI_DEFAULT(f);
```

5. Finally, run `make reformat-dat-files` to remove the useless old entries from `pg_proc.dat`.

For further examples of scripts used for bulk editing, see `convert_oid2name.pl` and `remove_pg_type_oid_symbols.pl` attached to this message: <https://www.postgresql.org/message-id/CAJVSVGvX8gXnPm+Xa=DxR7kFYprcQ1tNcCT5D0O3ShfnM6jehA@mail.gmail.com>

## 75.3. BKI File Format

This section describes how the PostgreSQL backend interprets BKI files. This description will be easier to understand if the `postgres.bki` file is at hand as an example.

BKI input consists of a sequence of commands. Commands are made up of a number of tokens, depending on the syntax of the command. Tokens are usually separated by whitespace, but need not be if there is no ambiguity. There is no special command separator; the next token that syntactically cannot belong to the preceding command starts a new one. (Usually you would put a new command on a new line, for clarity.) Tokens can be certain key words, special characters (parentheses, commas, etc.), identifiers, numbers, or single-quoted strings. Everything is case sensitive.

Lines starting with `#` are ignored.

## 75.4. BKI Commands

```
create tablename tableoid [bootstrap] [shared_relation] [rowtype_oid oid]
(name1 = type1 [FORCE NOT NULL | FORCE NULL] [, name2 = type2 [FORCE NOT NULL
| FORCE NULL] , ...])
```

Create a table named *tablename*, and having the OID *tableoid*, with the columns given in parentheses.

The following column types are supported directly by `bootstrap.c`: `bool`, `bytea`, `char` (1 byte), `name`, `int2`, `int4`, `regproc`, `regclass`, `regtype`, `text`, `oid`, `tid`, `xid`, `cid`, `int2vector`, `oidvector`, `_int4` (array), `_text` (array), `_oid` (array), `_char` (array), `_aclitem` (array). Although it is possible to create tables containing columns of other types, this cannot be done until after `pg_type` has been created and filled with appropriate entries. (That effectively means that only these column types can be used in bootstrap catalogs, but non-bootstrap catalogs can contain any built-in type.)

When `bootstrap` is specified, the table will only be created on disk; nothing is entered into `pg_class`, `pg_attribute`, etc., for it. Thus the table will not be accessible by ordinary SQL operations until such entries are made the hard way (with `insert` commands). This option is used for creating `pg_class` etc. themselves.

The table is created as shared if `shared_relation` is specified. The table's row type OID (`pg_type` OID) can optionally be specified via the `rowtype_oid` clause; if not specified, an

OID is automatically generated for it. (The `rowtype_oid` clause is useless if `bootstrap` is specified, but it can be provided anyway for documentation.)

`open tablename`

Open the table named *tablename* for insertion of data. Any currently open table is closed.

`close tablename`

Close the open table. The name of the table must be given as a cross-check.

`insert ( [oid_value] value1 value2 ... )`

Insert a new row into the open table using *value1*, *value2*, etc., for its column values.

NULL values can be specified using the special key word `_null_`. Values that do not look like identifiers or digit strings must be single-quoted. (To include a single quote in a value, write it twice. Escape-string-style backslash escapes are allowed in the string, too.)

`declare [unique] index indexname indexoid on tablename using amname ( op-  
class1 name1 [, ...] )`

Create an index named *indexname*, having OID *indexoid*, on the table named *tablename*, using the *amname* access method. The fields to index are called *name1*, *name2* etc., and the operator classes to use are *opclass1*, *opclass2* etc., respectively. The index file is created and appropriate catalog entries are made for it, but the index contents are not initialized by this command.

`declare toast toasttableoid toastindexoid on tablename`

Create a TOAST table for the table named *tablename*. The TOAST table is assigned OID *toasttableoid* and its index is assigned OID *toastindexoid*. As with `declare index`, filling of the index is postponed.

`build indices`

Fill in the indices that have previously been declared.

## 75.5. Structure of the Bootstrap BKI File

The `open` command cannot be used until the tables it uses exist and have entries for the table that is to be opened. (These minimum tables are `pg_class`, `pg_attribute`, `pg_proc`, and `pg_type`.) To allow those tables themselves to be filled, create with the `bootstrap` option implicitly opens the created table for data insertion.

Also, the `declare index` and `declare toast` commands cannot be used until the system catalogs they need have been created and filled in.

Thus, the structure of the `postgres.bki` file has to be:

1. `create bootstrap` one of the critical tables
2. `insert` data describing at least the critical tables
3. `close`
4. Repeat for the other critical tables.
5. `create` (without `bootstrap`) a noncritical table
6. `open`

7. insert desired data
8. close
9. Repeat for the other noncritical tables.
10. Define indexes and toast tables.
11. build indices

There are doubtless other, undocumented ordering dependencies.

## 75.6. BKI Example

The following sequence of commands will create the table `test_table` with OID 420, having three columns `oid`, `cola` and `colb` of type `oid`, `int4` and `text`, respectively, and insert two rows into the table:

```
create test_table 420 (oid = oid, cola = int4, colb = text)
open test_table
insert ( 421 1 'value 1' )
insert ( 422 2 _null_ )
close test_table
```

---

# Chapter 76. How the Planner Uses Statistics

This chapter builds on the material covered in Section 14.1 and Section 14.2 to show some additional details about how the planner uses the system statistics to estimate the number of rows each part of a query might return. This is a significant part of the planning process, providing much of the raw material for cost calculation.

The intent of this chapter is not to document the code in detail, but to present an overview of how it works. This will perhaps ease the learning curve for someone who subsequently wishes to read the code.

## 76.1. Row Estimation Examples

The examples shown below use tables in the PostgreSQL regression test database. The outputs shown are taken from version 8.3. The behavior of earlier (or later) versions might vary. Note also that since ANALYZE uses random sampling while producing statistics, the results will change slightly after any new ANALYZE.

Let's start with a very simple query:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM tenk1;
```

QUERY PLAN

```
-----  
Seq Scan on tenk1  (cost=0.00..458.00 rows=10000 width=244)
```

How the planner determines the cardinality of tenk1 is covered in Section 14.2, but is repeated here for completeness. The number of pages and rows is looked up in pg\_class:

```
SELECT relpages, reltuples FROM pg_class WHERE relname = 'tenk1';
```

```
relpages | reltuples  
-----+-----  
      358 |      10000
```

These numbers are current as of the last VACUUM or ANALYZE on the table. The planner then fetches the actual current number of pages in the table (this is a cheap operation, not requiring a table scan). If that is different from relpages then reltuples is scaled accordingly to arrive at a current number-of-rows estimate. In the example above, the value of relpages is up-to-date so the rows estimate is the same as reltuples.

Let's move on to an example with a range condition in its WHERE clause:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM tenk1 WHERE unique1 < 1000;
```

QUERY PLAN

```
-----  
Bitmap Heap Scan on tenk1  (cost=24.06..394.64 rows=1007  
width=244)  
  Recheck Cond: (unique1 < 1000)  
    -> Bitmap Index Scan on tenk1_unique1  (cost=0.00..23.80  
rows=1007 width=0)
```



```
Index Cond: (unique1 < 1000)
```

The planner examines the WHERE clause condition and looks up the selectivity function for the operator < in pg\_operator. This is held in the column oprrest, and the entry in this case is scalarltsel. The scalarltsel function retrieves the histogram for unique1 from pg\_statistic. For manual queries it is more convenient to look in the simpler pg\_stats view:

```
SELECT histogram_bounds FROM pg_stats
WHERE tablename='tenk1' AND attname='unique1';

          histogram_bounds
-----
{0,993,1997,3050,4040,5036,5957,7057,8029,9016,9995}
```

Next the fraction of the histogram occupied by “< 1000” is worked out. This is the selectivity. The histogram divides the range into equal frequency buckets, so all we have to do is locate the bucket that our value is in and count *part* of it and *all* of the ones before. The value 1000 is clearly in the second bucket (993–1997). Assuming a linear distribution of values inside each bucket, we can calculate the selectivity as:

```
selectivity = (1 + (1000 - bucket[2].min)/(bucket[2].max -
                bucket[2].min))/num_buckets
              = (1 + (1000 - 993)/(1997 - 993))/10
              = 0.100697
```

that is, one whole bucket plus a linear fraction of the second, divided by the number of buckets. The estimated number of rows can now be calculated as the product of the selectivity and the cardinality of tenk1:

```
rows = rel_cardinality * selectivity
      = 10000 * 0.100697
      = 1007 (rounding off)
```

Next let's consider an example with an equality condition in its WHERE clause:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM tenk1 WHERE stringul = 'CRAAAA';
```

```
          QUERY PLAN
-----
Seq Scan on tenk1 (cost=0.00..483.00 rows=30 width=244)
  Filter: (stringul = 'CRAAAA'::name)
```

Again the planner examines the WHERE clause condition and looks up the selectivity function for =, which is eqsel. For equality estimation the histogram is not useful; instead the list of *most common values* (MCVs) is used to determine the selectivity. Let's have a look at the MCVs, with some additional columns that will be useful later:

```
SELECT null_frac, n_distinct, most_common_vals, most_common_freqs
FROM pg_stats
WHERE tablename='tenk1' AND attname='stringul';

null_frac      | 0
n_distinct     | 676
most_common_vals | {EJAAAA,BBAAAA,CRAAAA,FCAAAA,FEAAAA,GSAAAA,JOAAAA,MCAAAA,NAAAAA,WGAAAA}
```

```
most_common_freqs | {0.00333333,0.003,0.003,0.003,0.003,0.003,
0.003,0.003,0.003,0.003}
```

Since CRAAAA appears in the list of MCVs, the selectivity is merely the corresponding entry in the list of most common frequencies (MCFs):

```
selectivity = mcf[3]
             = 0.003
```

As before, the estimated number of rows is just the product of this with the cardinality of `tenk1`:

```
rows = 10000 * 0.003
      = 30
```

Now consider the same query, but with a constant that is not in the MCV list:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM tenk1 WHERE stringul = 'xxx';
```

QUERY PLAN

```
-----
Seq Scan on tenk1  (cost=0.00..483.00 rows=15 width=244)
  Filter: (stringul = 'xxx'::name)
```

This is quite a different problem: how to estimate the selectivity when the value is *not* in the MCV list. The approach is to use the fact that the value is not in the list, combined with the knowledge of the frequencies for all of the MCVs:

```
selectivity = (1 - sum(mcv_freqs))/(num_distinct - num_mcv)
             = (1 - (0.00333333 + 0.003 + 0.003 + 0.003 + 0.003 +
0.003 +
                        0.003 + 0.003 + 0.003 + 0.003))/(676 - 10)
             = 0.0014559
```

That is, add up all the frequencies for the MCVs and subtract them from one, then divide by the number of *other* distinct values. This amounts to assuming that the fraction of the column that is not any of the MCVs is evenly distributed among all the other distinct values. Notice that there are no null values so we don't have to worry about those (otherwise we'd subtract the null fraction from the numerator as well). The estimated number of rows is then calculated as usual:

```
rows = 10000 * 0.0014559
      = 15  (rounding off)
```

The previous example with `unique1 < 1000` was an oversimplification of what `scalarltsel` really does; now that we have seen an example of the use of MCVs, we can fill in some more detail. The example was correct as far as it went, because since `unique1` is a unique column it has no MCVs (obviously, no value is any more common than any other value). For a non-unique column, there will normally be both a histogram and an MCV list, and *the histogram does not include the portion of the column population represented by the MCVs*. We do things this way because it allows more precise estimation. In this situation `scalarltsel` directly applies the condition (e.g., “< 1000”) to each value of the MCV list, and adds up the frequencies of the MCVs for which the condition is true. This gives an exact estimate of the selectivity within the portion of the table that is MCVs. The histogram is then used in the same way as above to estimate the selectivity in the portion of the table that is not MCVs, and then the two numbers are combined to estimate the overall selectivity. For example, consider

```
EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM tenk1 WHERE stringul < 'IAAAAA';
```

QUERY PLAN

```
-----  
Seq Scan on tenk1  (cost=0.00..483.00 rows=3077 width=244)  
  Filter: (stringul < 'IAAAAA'::name)
```

We already saw the MCV information for stringul, and here is its histogram:

```
SELECT histogram_bounds FROM pg_stats  
WHERE tablename='tenk1' AND attname='stringul';
```

histogram\_bounds

```
-----  
{AAAAAA,CQAAAA,FRAAAA,IBAAAA,KRAAAA,NFAAAA,PSAAAA,SGAAAA,VAAAAA,  
XLAAAA,ZZAAAA}
```

Checking the MCV list, we find that the condition `stringul < 'IAAAAA'` is satisfied by the first six entries and not the last four, so the selectivity within the MCV part of the population is

```
selectivity = sum(relevant mvfs)  
             = 0.00333333 + 0.003 + 0.003 + 0.003 + 0.003 + 0.003  
             = 0.01833333
```

Summing all the MCFs also tells us that the total fraction of the population represented by MCVs is 0.03033333, and therefore the fraction represented by the histogram is 0.96966667 (again, there are no nulls, else we'd have to exclude them here). We can see that the value `IAAAAA` falls nearly at the end of the third histogram bucket. Using some rather cheesy assumptions about the frequency of different characters, the planner arrives at the estimate 0.298387 for the portion of the histogram population that is less than `IAAAAA`. We then combine the estimates for the MCV and non-MCV populations:

```
selectivity = mcv_selectivity + histogram_selectivity *  
             histogram_fraction  
             = 0.01833333 + 0.298387 * 0.96966667  
             = 0.307669  
  
rows        = 10000 * 0.307669  
             = 3077  (rounding off)
```

In this particular example, the correction from the MCV list is fairly small, because the column distribution is actually quite flat (the statistics showing these particular values as being more common than others are mostly due to sampling error). In a more typical case where some values are significantly more common than others, this complicated process gives a useful improvement in accuracy because the selectivity for the most common values is found exactly.

Now let's consider a case with more than one condition in the WHERE clause:

```
EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM tenk1 WHERE unique1 < 1000 AND stringul =  
  'xxx';
```

QUERY PLAN

```
-----  
Bitmap Heap Scan on tenk1  (cost=23.80..396.91 rows=1 width=244)
```

```

Recheck Cond: (unique1 < 1000)
Filter: (stringul = 'xxx'::name)
-> Bitmap Index Scan on tenk1_unique1 (cost=0.00..23.80
rows=1007 width=0)
    Index Cond: (unique1 < 1000)

```

The planner assumes that the two conditions are independent, so that the individual selectivities of the clauses can be multiplied together:

```

selectivity = selectivity(unique1 < 1000) * selectivity(stringul =
'xxx')
              = 0.100697 * 0.0014559
              = 0.0001466

rows         = 10000 * 0.0001466
              = 1 (rounding off)

```

Notice that the number of rows estimated to be returned from the bitmap index scan reflects only the condition used with the index; this is important since it affects the cost estimate for the subsequent heap fetches.

Finally we will examine a query that involves a join:

```

EXPLAIN SELECT * FROM tenk1 t1, tenk2 t2
WHERE t1.unique1 < 50 AND t1.unique2 = t2.unique2;

```

QUERY PLAN

```

-----
Nested Loop (cost=4.64..456.23 rows=50 width=488)
-> Bitmap Heap Scan on tenk1 t1 (cost=4.64..142.17 rows=50
width=244)
    Recheck Cond: (unique1 < 50)
    -> Bitmap Index Scan on tenk1_unique1 (cost=0.00..4.63
rows=50 width=0)
        Index Cond: (unique1 < 50)
    -> Index Scan using tenk2_unique2 on tenk2 t2 (cost=0.00..6.27
rows=1 width=244)
        Index Cond: (unique2 = t1.unique2)

```

The restriction on `tenk1.unique1 < 50`, is evaluated before the nested-loop join. This is handled analogously to the previous range example. This time the value 50 falls into the first bucket of the `unique1` histogram:

```

selectivity = (0 + (50 - bucket[1].min)/(bucket[1].max -
bucket[1].min))/num_buckets
              = (0 + (50 - 0)/(993 - 0))/10
              = 0.005035

rows         = 10000 * 0.005035
              = 50 (rounding off)

```

The restriction for the join is `t2.unique2 = t1.unique2`. The operator is just our familiar `=`, however the selectivity function is obtained from the `oprjoin` column of `pg_operator`, and is `eqjoinsel`. `eqjoinsel` looks up the statistical information for both `tenk2` and `tenk1`:

```
SELECT tablename, null_frac, n_distinct, most_common_vals FROM
pg_stats
WHERE tablename IN ('tenk1', 'tenk2') AND attname='unique2';
```

tablename	null_frac	n_distinct	most_common_vals
tenk1	0	-1	
tenk2	0	-1	

In this case there is no MCV information for `unique2` because all the values appear to be unique, so we use an algorithm that relies only on the number of distinct values for both relations together with their null fractions:

```
selectivity = (1 - null_frac1) * (1 - null_frac2) * min(1/
num_distinct1, 1/num_distinct2)
             = (1 - 0) * (1 - 0) / max(10000, 10000)
             = 0.0001
```

This is, subtract the null fraction from one for each of the relations, and divide by the maximum of the numbers of distinct values. The number of rows that the join is likely to emit is calculated as the cardinality of the Cartesian product of the two inputs, multiplied by the selectivity:

```
rows = (outer_cardinality * inner_cardinality) * selectivity
      = (50 * 10000) * 0.0001
      = 50
```

Had there been MCV lists for the two columns, `eqjoinsel` would have used direct comparison of the MCV lists to determine the join selectivity within the part of the column populations represented by the MCVs. The estimate for the remainder of the populations follows the same approach shown here.

Notice that we showed `inner_cardinality` as 10000, that is, the unmodified size of `tenk2`. It might appear from inspection of the `EXPLAIN` output that the estimate of join rows comes from `50 * 1`, that is, the number of outer rows times the estimated number of rows obtained by each inner index scan on `tenk2`. But this is not the case: the join relation size is estimated before any particular join plan has been considered. If everything is working well then the two ways of estimating the join size will produce about the same answer, but due to round-off error and other factors they sometimes diverge significantly.

For those interested in further details, estimation of the size of a table (before any `WHERE` clauses) is done in `src/backend/optimizer/util/plancat.c`. The generic logic for clause selectivities is in `src/backend/optimizer/path/clausesel.c`. The operator-specific selectivity functions are mostly found in `src/backend/utils/adt/selfuncs.c`.

## 76.2. Multivariate Statistics Examples

### 76.2.1. Functional Dependencies

Multivariate correlation can be demonstrated with a very simple data set — a table with two columns, both containing the same values:

```
CREATE TABLE t (a INT, b INT);
INSERT INTO t SELECT i % 100, i % 100 FROM generate_series(1,
10000) s(i);
ANALYZE t;
```

As explained in Section 14.2, the planner can determine cardinality of `t` using the number of pages and rows obtained from `pg_class`:

```
SELECT relpages, reltuples FROM pg_class WHERE relname = 't';
```

```
relpages | reltuples
-----+-----
      45 |      10000
```

The data distribution is very simple; there are only 100 distinct values in each column, uniformly distributed.

The following example shows the result of estimating a WHERE condition on the a column:

```
EXPLAIN (ANALYZE, TIMING OFF) SELECT * FROM t WHERE a = 1;
                                QUERY PLAN
-----
Seq Scan on t  (cost=0.00..170.00 rows=100 width=8) (actual
rows=100 loops=1)
  Filter: (a = 1)
  Rows Removed by Filter: 9900
```

The planner examines the condition and determines the selectivity of this clause to be 1%. By comparing this estimate and the actual number of rows, we see that the estimate is very accurate (in fact exact, as the table is very small). Changing the WHERE condition to use the b column, an identical plan is generated. But observe what happens if we apply the same condition on both columns, combining them with AND:

```
EXPLAIN (ANALYZE, TIMING OFF) SELECT * FROM t WHERE a = 1 AND b =
1;
                                QUERY PLAN
-----
Seq Scan on t  (cost=0.00..195.00 rows=1 width=8) (actual rows=100
loops=1)
  Filter: ((a = 1) AND (b = 1))
  Rows Removed by Filter: 9900
```

The planner estimates the selectivity for each condition individually, arriving at the same 1% estimates as above. Then it assumes that the conditions are independent, and so it multiplies their selectivities, producing a final selectivity estimate of just 0.01%. This is a significant underestimate, as the actual number of rows matching the conditions (100) is two orders of magnitude higher.

This problem can be fixed by creating a statistics object that directs ANALYZE to calculate functional-dependency multivariate statistics on the two columns:

```
CREATE STATISTICS stts (dependencies) ON a, b FROM t;
ANALYZE t;
EXPLAIN (ANALYZE, TIMING OFF) SELECT * FROM t WHERE a = 1 AND b =
1;
                                QUERY PLAN
-----
Seq Scan on t  (cost=0.00..195.00 rows=100 width=8) (actual
rows=100 loops=1)
  Filter: ((a = 1) AND (b = 1))
  Rows Removed by Filter: 9900
```

## 76.2.2. Multivariate N-Distinct Counts

A similar problem occurs with estimation of the cardinality of sets of multiple columns, such as the number of groups that would be generated by a `GROUP BY` clause. When `GROUP BY` lists a single column, the n-distinct estimate (which is visible as the estimated number of rows returned by the `HashAggregate` node) is very accurate:

```
EXPLAIN (ANALYZE, TIMING OFF) SELECT COUNT(*) FROM t GROUP BY a;
                                QUERY PLAN
```

```
-----
HashAggregate (cost=195.00..196.00 rows=100 width=12) (actual
rows=100 loops=1)
  Group Key: a
    -> Seq Scan on t (cost=0.00..145.00 rows=10000 width=4)
      (actual rows=10000 loops=1)
```

But without multivariate statistics, the estimate for the number of groups in a query with two columns in `GROUP BY`, as in the following example, is off by an order of magnitude:

```
EXPLAIN (ANALYZE, TIMING OFF) SELECT COUNT(*) FROM t GROUP BY a, b;
                                QUERY PLAN
```

```
-----
HashAggregate (cost=220.00..230.00 rows=1000 width=16) (actual
rows=100 loops=1)
  Group Key: a, b
    -> Seq Scan on t (cost=0.00..145.00 rows=10000 width=8)
      (actual rows=10000 loops=1)
```

By redefining the statistics object to include n-distinct counts for the two columns, the estimate is much improved:

```
DROP STATISTICS stts;
CREATE STATISTICS stts (dependencies, ndistinct) ON a, b FROM t;
ANALYZE t;
EXPLAIN (ANALYZE, TIMING OFF) SELECT COUNT(*) FROM t GROUP BY a, b;
                                QUERY PLAN
```

```
-----
HashAggregate (cost=220.00..221.00 rows=100 width=16) (actual
rows=100 loops=1)
  Group Key: a, b
    -> Seq Scan on t (cost=0.00..145.00 rows=10000 width=8)
      (actual rows=10000 loops=1)
```

## 76.2.3. MCV Lists

As explained in Section 76.2.1, functional dependencies are very cheap and efficient type of statistics, but their main limitation is their global nature (only tracking dependencies at the column level, not between individual column values).

This section introduces multivariate variant of MCV (most-common values) lists, a straightforward extension of the per-column statistics described in Section 76.1. These statistics address the limitation by storing individual values, but it is naturally more expensive, both in terms of building the statistics in `ANALYZE`, storage and planning time.

Let's look at the query from Section 76.2.1 again, but this time with a MCV list created on the same set of columns (be sure to drop the functional dependencies, to make sure the planner uses the newly created statistics).

```
DROP STATISTICS stts;
CREATE STATISTICS stts2 (mcv) ON a, b FROM t;
ANALYZE t;
EXPLAIN (ANALYZE, TIMING OFF) SELECT * FROM t WHERE a = 1 AND b =
1;
```

QUERY PLAN

```
-----
Seq Scan on t  (cost=0.00..195.00 rows=100 width=8) (actual
rows=100 loops=1)
  Filter: ((a = 1) AND (b = 1))
  Rows Removed by Filter: 9900
```

The estimate is as accurate as with the functional dependencies, mostly thanks to the table being fairly small and having a simple distribution with a low number of distinct values. Before looking at the second query, which was not handled by functional dependencies particularly well, let's inspect the MCV list a bit.

Inspecting the MCV list is possible using `pg_mcv_list_items` set-returning function.

```
SELECT m.* FROM pg_statistic_ext join pg_statistic_ext_data on (oid
= stxoid),
       pg_mcv_list_items(stxdmcv) m WHERE stxname =
'stts2';
```

index	values	nulls	frequency	base_frequency
0	{0, 0}	{f,f}	0.01	0.0001
1	{1, 1}	{f,f}	0.01	0.0001
...				
49	{49, 49}	{f,f}	0.01	0.0001
50	{50, 50}	{f,f}	0.01	0.0001
...				
97	{97, 97}	{f,f}	0.01	0.0001
98	{98, 98}	{f,f}	0.01	0.0001
99	{99, 99}	{f,f}	0.01	0.0001

(100 rows)

This confirms there are 100 distinct combinations in the two columns, and all of them are about equally likely (1% frequency for each one). The base frequency is the frequency computed from per-column statistics, as if there were no multi-column statistics. Had there been any null values in either of the columns, this would be identified in the `nulls` column.

When estimating the selectivity, the planner applies all the conditions on items in the MCV list, and then sums the frequencies of the matching ones. See `mcv_clauselist_selectivity` in `src/backend/statistics/mcv.c` for details.

Compared to functional dependencies, MCV lists have two major advantages. Firstly, the list stores actual values, making it possible to decide which combinations are compatible.

```
EXPLAIN (ANALYZE, TIMING OFF) SELECT * FROM t WHERE a = 1 AND b =
10;
```

QUERY PLAN



```
-----  
Seq Scan on t  (cost=0.00..195.00 rows=1 width=8) (actual rows=0  
loops=1)  
  Filter: ((a = 1) AND (b = 10))  
  Rows Removed by Filter: 10000
```

Secondly, MCV lists handle a wider range of clause types, not just equality clauses like functional dependencies. For example, consider the following range query for the same table:

```
EXPLAIN (ANALYZE, TIMING OFF) SELECT * FROM t WHERE a <= 49 AND b >  
49;
```

QUERY PLAN

```
-----  
Seq Scan on t  (cost=0.00..195.00 rows=1 width=8) (actual rows=0  
loops=1)  
  Filter: ((a <= 49) AND (b > 49))  
  Rows Removed by Filter: 10000
```

## 76.3. Planner Statistics and Security

Access to the table `pg_statistic` is restricted to superusers, so that ordinary users cannot learn about the contents of the tables of other users from it. Some selectivity estimation functions will use a user-provided operator (either the operator appearing in the query or a related operator) to analyze the stored statistics. For example, in order to determine whether a stored most common value is applicable, the selectivity estimator will have to run the appropriate `=` operator to compare the constant in the query to the stored value. Thus the data in `pg_statistic` is potentially passed to user-defined operators. An appropriately crafted operator can intentionally leak the passed operands (for example, by logging them or writing them to a different table), or accidentally leak them by showing their values in error messages, in either case possibly exposing data from `pg_statistic` to a user who should not be able to see it.

In order to prevent this, the following applies to all built-in selectivity estimation functions. When planning a query, in order to be able to use stored statistics, the current user must either have `SELECT` privilege on the table or the involved columns, or the operator used must be `LEAKPROOF` (more accurately, the function that the operator is based on). If not, then the selectivity estimator will behave as if no statistics are available, and the planner will proceed with default or fall-back assumptions.

If a user does not have the required privilege on the table or columns, then in many cases the query will ultimately receive a permission-denied error, in which case this mechanism is invisible in practice. But if the user is reading from a security-barrier view, then the planner might wish to check the statistics of an underlying table that is otherwise inaccessible to the user. In that case, the operator should be leak-proof or the statistics will not be used. There is no direct feedback about that, except that the plan might be suboptimal. If one suspects that this is the case, one could try running the query as a more privileged user, to see if a different plan results.

This restriction applies only to cases where the planner would need to execute a user-defined operator on one or more values from `pg_statistic`. Thus the planner is permitted to use generic statistical information, such as the fraction of null values or the number of distinct values in a column, regardless of access privileges.

Selectivity estimation functions contained in third-party extensions that potentially operate on statistics with user-defined operators should follow the same security rules. Consult the PostgreSQL source code for guidance.

---

# Chapter 77. Backup Manifest Format

The backup manifest generated by `pg_basebackup` is primarily intended to permit the backup to be verified using `pg_verifybackup`. However, it is also possible for other tools to read the backup manifest file and use the information contained therein for their own purposes. To that end, this chapter describes the format of the backup manifest file.

A backup manifest is a JSON document encoded as UTF-8. (Although in general JSON documents are required to be Unicode, PostgreSQL permits the `json` and `jsonb` data types to be used with any supported server encoding. There is no similar exception for backup manifests.) The JSON document is always an object; the keys that are present in this object are described in the next section.

## 77.1. Backup Manifest Top-level Object

The backup manifest JSON document contains the following keys.

`PostgreSQL-Backup-Manifest-Version`

The associated value is always the integer 1.

`Files`

The associated value is always a list of objects, each describing one file that is present in the backup. No entries are present in this list for the WAL files that are needed in order to use the backup, or for the backup manifest itself. The structure of each object in the list is described in Section 77.2.

`WAL-Ranges`

The associated value is always a list of objects, each describing a range of WAL records that must be readable from a particular timeline in order to make use of the backup. The structure of these objects is further described in Section 77.3.

`Manifest-Checksum`

This key is always present on the last line of the backup manifest file. The associated value is a SHA256 checksum of all the preceding lines. We use a fixed checksum method here to make it possible for clients to do incremental parsing of the manifest. While a SHA256 checksum is significantly more expensive than a CRC32C checksum, the manifest should normally be small enough that the extra computation won't matter very much.

## 77.2. Backup Manifest File Object

The object which describes a single file contains either a `Path` key or an `Encoded-Path` key. Normally, the `Path` key will be present. The associated string value is the path of the file relative to the root of the backup directory. Files located in a user-defined tablespace will have paths whose first two components are `pg_tblspc` and the OID of the tablespace. If the path is not a string that is legal in UTF-8, or if the user requests that encoded paths be used for all files, then the `Encoded-Path` key will be present instead. This stores the same data, but it is encoded as a string of hexadecimal digits. Each pair of hexadecimal digits in the string represents a single octet.

The following two keys are always present:

`Size`

The expected size of this file, as an integer.

**Last-Modified**

The last modification time of the file as reported by the server at the time of the backup. Unlike the other fields stored in the backup, this field is not used by `pg_verifybackup`. It is included only for informational purposes.

If the backup was taken with file checksums enabled, the following keys will be present:

**Checksum-Algorithm**

The checksum algorithm used to compute a checksum for this file. Currently, this will be the same for every file in the backup manifest, but this may change in future releases. At present, the supported checksum algorithms are CRC32C, SHA224, SHA256, SHA384, and SHA512.

**Checksum**

The checksum computed for this file, stored as a series of hexadecimal characters, two for each byte of the checksum.

## 77.3. Backup Manifest WAL Range Object

The object which describes a WAL range always has three keys:

**Timeline**

The timeline for this range of WAL records, as an integer.

**Start-LSN**

The LSN at which replay must begin on the indicated timeline in order to make use of this backup. The LSN is stored in the format normally used by PostgreSQL; that is, it is a string consisting of two strings of hexadecimal characters, each with a length of between 1 and 8, separated by a slash.

**End-LSN**

The earliest LSN at which replay on the indicated timeline may end when making use of this backup. This is stored in the same format as `Start-LSN`.

Ordinarily, there will be only a single WAL range. However, if a backup is taken from a standby which switches timelines during the backup due to an upstream promotion, it is possible for multiple ranges to be present, each with a different timeline. There will never be multiple WAL ranges present for the same timeline.

---

## **Part VIII. Appendixes**

---

---

# Table of Contents

A. PostgreSQL Error Codes .....	2559
B. Date/Time Support .....	2568
B.1. Date/Time Input Interpretation .....	2568
B.2. Handling of Invalid or Ambiguous Timestamps .....	2569
B.3. Date/Time Key Words .....	2570
B.4. Date/Time Configuration Files .....	2571
B.5. POSIX Time Zone Specifications .....	2572
B.6. History of Units .....	2574
B.7. Julian Dates .....	2575
C. SQL Key Words .....	2576
D. SQL Conformance .....	2601
D.1. Supported Features .....	2602
D.2. Unsupported Features .....	2613
D.3. XML Limits and Conformance to SQL/XML .....	2622
D.3.1. Queries Are Restricted to XPath 1.0 .....	2623
D.3.2. Incidental Limits of the Implementation .....	2624
E. Release Notes .....	2626
E.1. Release 16.2 .....	2626
E.1.1. Migration to Version 16.2 .....	2626
E.1.2. Changes .....	2626
E.2. Release 16.1 .....	2632
E.2.1. Migration to Version 16.1 .....	2632
E.2.2. Changes .....	2632
E.3. Release 16 .....	2637
E.3.1. Overview .....	2637
E.3.2. Migration to Version 16 .....	2638
E.3.3. Changes .....	2639
E.3.4. Acknowledgments .....	2652
E.4. Prior Releases .....	2658
F. Additional Supplied Modules and Extensions .....	2659
F.1. adminpack — pgAdmin support toolpack .....	2661
F.2. amcheck — tools to verify table and index consistency .....	2663
F.2.1. Functions .....	2663
F.2.2. Optional <i>heapallindexed</i> Verification .....	2666
F.2.3. Using amcheck Effectively .....	2666
F.2.4. Repairing Corruption .....	2667
F.3. auth_delay — pause on authentication failure .....	2669
F.3.1. Configuration Parameters .....	2669
F.3.2. Author .....	2669
F.4. auto_explain — log execution plans of slow queries .....	2670
F.4.1. Configuration Parameters .....	2670
F.4.2. Example .....	2672
F.4.3. Author .....	2672
F.5. basebackup_to_shell — example "shell" pg_basebackup module .....	2673
F.5.1. Configuration Parameters .....	2673
F.5.2. Author .....	2673
F.6. basic_archive — an example WAL archive module .....	2674
F.6.1. Configuration Parameters .....	2674
F.6.2. Notes .....	2674
F.6.3. Author .....	2674
F.7. bloom — bloom filter index access method .....	2675
F.7.1. Parameters .....	2675
F.7.2. Examples .....	2675
F.7.3. Operator Class Interface .....	2678
F.7.4. Limitations .....	2678

F.7.5. Authors .....	2678
F.8. btree_gin — GIN operator classes with B-tree behavior .....	2679
F.8.1. Example Usage .....	2679
F.8.2. Authors .....	2679
F.9. btree_gist — GiST operator classes with B-tree behavior .....	2680
F.9.1. Example Usage .....	2680
F.9.2. Authors .....	2681
F.10. citext — a case-insensitive character string type .....	2682
F.10.1. Rationale .....	2682
F.10.2. How to Use It .....	2682
F.10.3. String Comparison Behavior .....	2683
F.10.4. Limitations .....	2683
F.10.5. Author .....	2684
F.11. cube — a multi-dimensional cube data type .....	2685
F.11.1. Syntax .....	2685
F.11.2. Precision .....	2685
F.11.3. Usage .....	2685
F.11.4. Defaults .....	2688
F.11.5. Notes .....	2689
F.11.6. Credits .....	2689
F.12. dblink — connect to other PostgreSQL databases .....	2690
F.13. dict_int — example full-text search dictionary for integers .....	2722
F.13.1. Configuration .....	2722
F.13.2. Usage .....	2722
F.14. dict_xsyn — example synonym full-text search dictionary .....	2723
F.14.1. Configuration .....	2723
F.14.2. Usage .....	2723
F.15. earthdistance — calculate great-circle distances .....	2725
F.15.1. Cube-Based Earth Distances .....	2725
F.15.2. Point-Based Earth Distances .....	2726
F.16. file_fdw — access data files in the server's file system .....	2727
F.17. fuzzystrmatch — determine string similarities and distance .....	2730
F.17.1. Soundex .....	2730
F.17.2. Daitch-Mokotoff Soundex .....	2731
F.17.3. Levenshtein .....	2732
F.17.4. Metaphone .....	2733
F.17.5. Double Metaphone .....	2734
F.18. hstore — hstore key/value datatype .....	2735
F.18.1. hstore External Representation .....	2735
F.18.2. hstore Operators and Functions .....	2735
F.18.3. Indexes .....	2739
F.18.4. Examples .....	2740
F.18.5. Statistics .....	2741
F.18.6. Compatibility .....	2742
F.18.7. Transforms .....	2742
F.18.8. Authors .....	2742
F.19. intagg — integer aggregator and enumerator .....	2743
F.19.1. Functions .....	2743
F.19.2. Sample Uses .....	2743
F.20. intarray — manipulate arrays of integers .....	2745
F.20.1. intarray Functions and Operators .....	2745
F.20.2. Index Support .....	2747
F.20.3. Example .....	2747
F.20.4. Benchmark .....	2747
F.20.5. Authors .....	2748
F.21. isn — data types for international standard numbers (ISBN, EAN, UPC, etc.) .....	2749
F.21.1. Data Types .....	2749
F.21.2. Casts .....	2750

F.21.3. Functions and Operators .....	2750
F.21.4. Examples .....	2751
F.21.5. Bibliography .....	2752
F.21.6. Author .....	2752
F.22. lo — manage large objects .....	2753
F.22.1. Rationale .....	2753
F.22.2. How to Use It .....	2753
F.22.3. Limitations .....	2753
F.22.4. Author .....	2754
F.23. ltree — hierarchical tree-like data type .....	2755
F.23.1. Definitions .....	2755
F.23.2. Operators and Functions .....	2756
F.23.3. Indexes .....	2758
F.23.4. Example .....	2759
F.23.5. Transforms .....	2761
F.23.6. Authors .....	2762
F.24. old_snapshot — inspect old_snapshot_threshold state .....	2763
F.24.1. Functions .....	2763
F.25. pageinspect — low-level inspection of database pages .....	2764
F.25.1. General Functions .....	2764
F.25.2. Heap Functions .....	2765
F.25.3. B-Tree Functions .....	2766
F.25.4. BRIN Functions .....	2769
F.25.5. GIN Functions .....	2770
F.25.6. GiST Functions .....	2771
F.25.7. Hash Functions .....	2773
F.26. passwordcheck — verify password strength .....	2775
F.27. pg_buffercache — inspect PostgreSQL buffer cache state .....	2776
F.27.1. The pg_buffercache View .....	2776
F.27.2. The pg_buffercache_summary( ) Function .....	2777
F.27.3. The pg_buffercache_usage_counts( ) Function .....	2777
F.27.4. Sample Output .....	2778
F.27.5. Authors .....	2779
F.28. pgcrypto — cryptographic functions .....	2780
F.28.1. General Hashing Functions .....	2780
F.28.2. Password Hashing Functions .....	2780
F.28.3. PGP Encryption Functions .....	2782
F.28.4. Raw Encryption Functions .....	2788
F.28.5. Random-Data Functions .....	2788
F.28.6. Notes .....	2789
F.28.7. Author .....	2790
F.29. pg_freespacemap — examine the free space map .....	2791
F.29.1. Functions .....	2791
F.29.2. Sample Output .....	2791
F.29.3. Author .....	2792
F.30. pg_preload — preload relation data into buffer caches .....	2793
F.30.1. Functions .....	2793
F.30.2. Configuration Parameters .....	2793
F.30.3. Author .....	2794
F.31. pgrowlocks — show a table's row locking information .....	2795
F.31.1. Overview .....	2795
F.31.2. Sample Output .....	2796
F.31.3. Author .....	2796
F.32. pg_stat_statements — track statistics of SQL planning and execution .....	2797
F.32.1. The pg_stat_statements View .....	2797
F.32.2. The pg_stat_statements_info View .....	2800
F.32.3. Functions .....	2801
F.32.4. Configuration Parameters .....	2801

F.32.5. Sample Output .....	2802
F.32.6. Authors .....	2804
F.33. pgstattuple — obtain tuple-level statistics .....	2805
F.33.1. Functions .....	2805
F.33.2. Authors .....	2809
F.34. pg_surgery — perform low-level surgery on relation data .....	2810
F.34.1. Functions .....	2810
F.34.2. Authors .....	2811
F.35. pg_trgm — support for similarity of text using trigram matching .....	2812
F.35.1. Trigram (or Trigraph) Concepts .....	2812
F.35.2. Functions and Operators .....	2812
F.35.3. GUC Parameters .....	2814
F.35.4. Index Support .....	2814
F.35.5. Text Search Integration .....	2816
F.35.6. References .....	2817
F.35.7. Authors .....	2817
F.36. pg_visibility — visibility map information and utilities .....	2818
F.36.1. Functions .....	2818
F.36.2. Author .....	2819
F.37. pg_walinspect — low-level WAL inspection .....	2820
F.37.1. General Functions .....	2820
F.37.2. Author .....	2823
F.38. postgres_fdw — access data stored in external PostgreSQL servers .....	2824
F.38.1. FDW Options of postgres_fdw .....	2824
F.38.2. Functions .....	2830
F.38.3. Connection Management .....	2830
F.38.4. Transaction Management .....	2831
F.38.5. Remote Query Optimization .....	2831
F.38.6. Remote Query Execution Environment .....	2831
F.38.7. Cross-Version Compatibility .....	2832
F.38.8. Configuration Parameters .....	2832
F.38.9. Examples .....	2833
F.38.10. Author .....	2833
F.39. seg — a datatype for line segments or floating point intervals .....	2834
F.39.1. Rationale .....	2834
F.39.2. Syntax .....	2834
F.39.3. Precision .....	2835
F.39.4. Usage .....	2835
F.39.5. Notes .....	2836
F.39.6. Credits .....	2836
F.40. sepgsql — SELinux-, label-based mandatory access control (MAC) security module .....	2837
F.40.1. Overview .....	2837
F.40.2. Installation .....	2837
F.40.3. Regression Tests .....	2838
F.40.4. GUC Parameters .....	2839
F.40.5. Features .....	2840
F.40.6. Sepgsql Functions .....	2843
F.40.7. Limitations .....	2844
F.40.8. External Resources .....	2844
F.40.9. Author .....	2844
F.41. spi — Server Programming Interface features/examples .....	2845
F.41.1. refint — Functions for Implementing Referential Integrity .....	2845
F.41.2. autoinc — Functions for Autoincrementing Fields .....	2845
F.41.3. insert_username — Functions for Tracking Who Changed a Table .....	2845
F.41.4. moddatetime — Functions for Tracking Last Modification Time .....	2846
F.42. sslinfo — obtain client SSL information .....	2847
F.42.1. Functions Provided .....	2847



F.42.2. Author .....	2848
F.43. tablefunc — functions that return tables ( <i>crosstab</i> and others) .....	2849
F.43.1. Functions Provided .....	2849
F.43.2. Author .....	2858
F.44. tcn — a trigger function to notify listeners of changes to table content .....	2859
F.45. test_decoding — SQL-based test/example module for WAL logical decoding .....	2861
F.46. tsm_system_rows — the SYSTEM_ROWS sampling method for TABLESAMPLE ..	2862
F.46.1. Examples .....	2862
F.47. tsm_system_time — the SYSTEM_TIME sampling method for TABLESAMPLE ...	2863
F.47.1. Examples .....	2863
F.48. unaccent — a text search dictionary which removes diacritics .....	2864
F.48.1. Configuration .....	2864
F.48.2. Usage .....	2865
F.48.3. Functions .....	2865
F.49. uuid-osp — a UUID generator .....	2867
F.49.1. uuid-osp Functions .....	2867
F.49.2. Building uuid-osp .....	2868
F.49.3. Author .....	2868
F.50. xml2 — XPath querying and XSLT functionality .....	2869
F.50.1. Deprecation Notice .....	2869
F.50.2. Description of Functions .....	2869
F.50.3. xpath_table .....	2870
F.50.4. XSLT Functions .....	2872
F.50.5. Author .....	2872
G. Additional Supplied Programs .....	2874
G.1. Client Applications .....	2874
G.2. Server Applications .....	2881
H. External Projects .....	2882
H.1. Client Interfaces .....	2882
H.2. Administration Tools .....	2882
H.3. Procedural Languages .....	2882
H.4. Extensions .....	2882
I. The Source Code Repository .....	2883
I.1. Getting the Source via Git .....	2883
J. Documentation .....	2884
J.1. DocBook .....	2884
J.2. Tool Sets .....	2884
J.2.1. Installation on Fedora, RHEL, and Derivatives .....	2885
J.2.2. Installation on FreeBSD .....	2885
J.2.3. Debian Packages .....	2885
J.2.4. macOS .....	2885
J.2.5. Detection by configure .....	2886
J.3. Building the Documentation with Make .....	2886
J.3.1. HTML .....	2886
J.3.2. Manpages .....	2887
J.3.3. PDF .....	2887
J.3.4. Plain Text Files .....	2888
J.3.5. Syntax Check .....	2888
J.4. Building the Documentation with Meson .....	2888
J.5. Documentation Authoring .....	2888
J.5.1. Emacs .....	2888
J.6. Style Guide .....	2889
J.6.1. Reference Pages .....	2889
K. PostgreSQL Limits .....	2891
L. Acronyms .....	2892
M. Glossary .....	2899
N. Color Support .....	2913
N.1. When Color is Used .....	2913

N.2. Configuring the Colors .....	2913
O. Obsolete or Renamed Features .....	2914
O.1. <code>recovery.conf</code> file merged into <code>postgresql.conf</code> .....	2914
O.2. Default Roles Renamed to Predefined Roles .....	2914
O.3. <code>pg_xlogdump</code> renamed to <code>pg_waldump</code> .....	2914
O.4. <code>pg_resetxlog</code> renamed to <code>pg_resetwal</code> .....	2914
O.5. <code>pg_receivexlog</code> renamed to <code>pg_receivewal</code> .....	2914

---

# Appendix A. PostgreSQL Error Codes

All messages emitted by the PostgreSQL server are assigned five-character error codes that follow the SQL standard's conventions for “SQLSTATE” codes. Applications that need to know which error condition has occurred should usually test the error code, rather than looking at the textual error message. The error codes are less likely to change across PostgreSQL releases, and also are not subject to change due to localization of error messages. Note that some, but not all, of the error codes produced by PostgreSQL are defined by the SQL standard; some additional error codes for conditions not defined by the standard have been invented or borrowed from other databases.

According to the standard, the first two characters of an error code denote a class of errors, while the last three characters indicate a specific condition within that class. Thus, an application that does not recognize the specific error code might still be able to infer what to do from the error class.

Table A.1 lists all the error codes defined in PostgreSQL 16.2. (Some are not actually used at present, but are defined by the SQL standard.) The error classes are also shown. For each error class there is a “standard” error code having the last three characters 000. This code is used only for error conditions that fall within the class but do not have any more-specific code assigned.

The symbol shown in the column “Condition Name” is the condition name to use in PL/pgSQL. Condition names can be written in either upper or lower case. (Note that PL/pgSQL does not recognize warning, as opposed to error, condition names; those are classes 00, 01, and 02.)

For some types of errors, the server reports the name of a database object (a table, table column, data type, or constraint) associated with the error; for example, the name of the unique constraint that caused a `unique_violation` error. Such names are supplied in separate fields of the error report message so that applications need not try to extract them from the possibly-localized human-readable text of the message. As of PostgreSQL 9.3, complete coverage for this feature exists only for errors in SQLSTATE class 23 (integrity constraint violation), but this is likely to be expanded in future.

**Table A.1. PostgreSQL Error Codes**

Error Code	Condition Name
<b>Class 00 — Successful Completion</b>	
00000	<code>successful_completion</code>
<b>Class 01 — Warning</b>	
01000	<code>warning</code>
0100C	<code>dynamic_result_sets_returned</code>
01008	<code>implicit_zero_bit_padding</code>
01003	<code>null_value_eliminated_in_set_function</code>
01007	<code>privilege_not_granted</code>
01006	<code>privilege_not_revoked</code>
01004	<code>string_data_right_truncation</code>
01P01	<code>deprecated_feature</code>
<b>Class 02 — No Data (this is also a warning class per the SQL standard)</b>	
02000	<code>no_data</code>
02001	<code>no_additional_dynamic_result_sets_returned</code>
<b>Class 03 — SQL Statement Not Yet Complete</b>	
03000	<code>sql_statement_not_yet_complete</code>
<b>Class 08 — Connection Exception</b>	

Error Code	Condition Name
08000	connection_exception
08003	connection_does_not_exist
08006	connection_failure
08001	sqlclient_unable_to_establish_sqlconnection
08004	sqlserver_rejected_establishment_of_sqlconnection
08007	transaction_resolution_unknown
08P01	protocol_violation
<b>Class 09 — Triggered Action Exception</b>	
09000	triggered_action_exception
<b>Class 0A — Feature Not Supported</b>	
0A000	feature_not_supported
<b>Class 0B — Invalid Transaction Initiation</b>	
0B000	invalid_transaction_initiation
<b>Class 0F — Locator Exception</b>	
0F000	locator_exception
0F001	invalid_locator_specification
<b>Class 0L — Invalid Grantor</b>	
0L000	invalid_grantor
0LP01	invalid_grant_operation
<b>Class 0P — Invalid Role Specification</b>	
0P000	invalid_role_specification
<b>Class 0Z — Diagnostics Exception</b>	
0Z000	diagnostics_exception
0Z002	stacked_diagnostics_accessed_without_active_handler
<b>Class 20 — Case Not Found</b>	
20000	case_not_found
<b>Class 21 — Cardinality Violation</b>	
21000	cardinality_violation
<b>Class 22 — Data Exception</b>	
22000	data_exception
2202E	array_subscript_error
22021	character_not_in_repertoire
22008	datetime_field_overflow
22012	division_by_zero
22005	error_in_assignment
2200B	escape_character_conflict
22022	indicator_overflow
22015	interval_field_overflow
2201E	invalid_argument_for_logarithm
22014	invalid_argument_for_ntile_function

Error Code	Condition Name
22016	invalid_argument_for_nth_value_function
2201F	invalid_argument_for_power_function
2201G	invalid_argument_for_width_bucket_function
22018	invalid_character_value_for_cast
22007	invalid_datetime_format
22019	invalid_escape_character
2200D	invalid_escape_octet
22025	invalid_escape_sequence
22P06	nonstandard_use_of_escape_character
22010	invalid_indicator_parameter_value
22023	invalid_parameter_value
22013	invalid_preceding_or_following_size
2201B	invalid_regular_expression
2201W	invalid_row_count_in_limit_clause
2201X	invalid_row_count_in_result_offset_clause
2202H	invalid_tablesample_argument
2202G	invalid_tablesample_repeat
22009	invalid_time_zone_displacement_value
2200C	invalid_use_of_escape_character
2200G	most_specific_type_mismatch
22004	null_value_not_allowed
22002	null_value_no_indicator_parameter
22003	numeric_value_out_of_range
2200H	sequence_generator_limit_exceeded
22026	string_data_length_mismatch
22001	string_data_right_truncation
22011	substring_error
22027	trim_error
22024	unterminated_c_string
2200F	zero_length_character_string
22P01	floating_point_exception
22P02	invalid_text_representation
22P03	invalid_binary_representation
22P04	bad_copy_file_format
22P05	untranslatable_character
2200L	not_an_xml_document
2200M	invalid_xml_document
2200N	invalid_xml_content
2200S	invalid_xml_comment
2200T	invalid_xml_processing_instruction

Error Code	Condition Name
22030	duplicate_json_object_key_value
22031	invalid_argument_for_sql_json_datetime_function
22032	invalid_json_text
22033	invalid_sql_json_subscript
22034	more_than_one_sql_json_item
22035	no_sql_json_item
22036	non_numeric_sql_json_item
22037	non_unique_keys_in_a_json_object
22038	singleton_sql_json_item_required
22039	sql_json_array_not_found
2203A	sql_json_member_not_found
2203B	sql_json_number_not_found
2203C	sql_json_object_not_found
2203D	too_many_json_array_elements
2203E	too_many_json_object_members
2203F	sql_json_scalar_required
2203G	sql_json_item_cannot_be_cast_to_target_type
<b>Class 23 — Integrity Constraint Violation</b>	
23000	integrity_constraint_violation
23001	restrict_violation
23502	not_null_violation
23503	foreign_key_violation
23505	unique_violation
23514	check_violation
23P01	exclusion_violation
<b>Class 24 — Invalid Cursor State</b>	
24000	invalid_cursor_state
<b>Class 25 — Invalid Transaction State</b>	
25000	invalid_transaction_state
25001	active_sql_transaction
25002	branch_transaction_already_active
25008	held_cursor_requires_same_isolation_level
25003	inappropriate_access_mode_for_branch_transaction
25004	inappropriate_isolation_level_for_branch_transaction
25005	no_active_sql_transaction_for_branch_transaction
25006	read_only_sql_transaction
25007	schema_and_data_statement_mixing_not_supported
25P01	no_active_sql_transaction
25P02	in_failed_sql_transaction
25P03	idle_in_transaction_session_timeout

Error Code	Condition Name
<b>Class 26 — Invalid SQL Statement Name</b>	
26000	invalid_sql_statement_name
<b>Class 27 — Triggered Data Change Violation</b>	
27000	triggered_data_change_violation
<b>Class 28 — Invalid Authorization Specification</b>	
28000	invalid_authorization_specification
28P01	invalid_password
<b>Class 2B — Dependent Privilege Descriptors Still Exist</b>	
2B000	dependent_privilege_descriptors_still_exist
2BP01	dependent_objects_still_exist
<b>Class 2D — Invalid Transaction Termination</b>	
2D000	invalid_transaction_termination
<b>Class 2F — SQL Routine Exception</b>	
2F000	sql_routine_exception
2F005	function_executed_no_return_statement
2F002	modifying_sql_data_not_permitted
2F003	prohibited_sql_statement_attempted
2F004	reading_sql_data_not_permitted
<b>Class 34 — Invalid Cursor Name</b>	
34000	invalid_cursor_name
<b>Class 38 — External Routine Exception</b>	
38000	external_routine_exception
38001	containing_sql_not_permitted
38002	modifying_sql_data_not_permitted
38003	prohibited_sql_statement_attempted
38004	reading_sql_data_not_permitted
<b>Class 39 — External Routine Invocation Exception</b>	
39000	external_routine_invocation_exception
39001	invalid_sqlstate_returned
39004	null_value_not_allowed
39P01	trigger_protocol_violated
39P02	srf_protocol_violated
39P03	event_trigger_protocol_violated
<b>Class 3B — Savepoint Exception</b>	
3B000	savepoint_exception
3B001	invalid_savepoint_specification
<b>Class 3D — Invalid Catalog Name</b>	
3D000	invalid_catalog_name
<b>Class 3F — Invalid Schema Name</b>	
3F000	invalid_schema_name

Error Code	Condition Name
<b>Class 40 — Transaction Rollback</b>	
40000	transaction_rollback
40002	transaction_integrity_constraint_violation
40001	serialization_failure
40003	statement_completion_unknown
40P01	deadlock_detected
<b>Class 42 — Syntax Error or Access Rule Violation</b>	
42000	syntax_error_or_access_rule_violation
42601	syntax_error
42501	insufficient_privilege
42846	cannot_coerce
42803	grouping_error
42P20	windowing_error
42P19	invalid_recursion
42830	invalid_foreign_key
42602	invalid_name
42622	name_too_long
42939	reserved_name
42804	datatype_mismatch
42P18	indeterminate_datatype
42P21	collation_mismatch
42P22	indeterminate_collation
42809	wrong_object_type
428C9	generated_always
42703	undefined_column
42883	undefined_function
42P01	undefined_table
42P02	undefined_parameter
42704	undefined_object
42701	duplicate_column
42P03	duplicate_cursor
42P04	duplicate_database
42723	duplicate_function
42P05	duplicate_prepared_statement
42P06	duplicate_schema
42P07	duplicate_table
42712	duplicate_alias
42710	duplicate_object
42702	ambiguous_column
42725	ambiguous_function



Error Code	Condition Name
42P08	ambiguous_parameter
42P09	ambiguous_alias
42P10	invalid_column_reference
42611	invalid_column_definition
42P11	invalid_cursor_definition
42P12	invalid_database_definition
42P13	invalid_function_definition
42P14	invalid_prepared_statement_definition
42P15	invalid_schema_definition
42P16	invalid_table_definition
42P17	invalid_object_definition
<b>Class 44 — WITH CHECK OPTION Violation</b>	
44000	with_check_option_violation
<b>Class 53 — Insufficient Resources</b>	
53000	insufficient_resources
53100	disk_full
53200	out_of_memory
53300	too_many_connections
53400	configuration_limit_exceeded
<b>Class 54 — Program Limit Exceeded</b>	
54000	program_limit_exceeded
54001	statement_too_complex
54011	too_many_columns
54023	too_many_arguments
<b>Class 55 — Object Not In Prerequisite State</b>	
55000	object_not_in_prerequisite_state
55006	object_in_use
55P02	cant_change_runtime_param
55P03	lock_not_available
55P04	unsafe_new_enum_value_usage
<b>Class 57 — Operator Intervention</b>	
57000	operator_intervention
57014	query_canceled
57P01	admin_shutdown
57P02	crash_shutdown
57P03	cannot_connect_now
57P04	database_dropped
57P05	idle_session_timeout
<b>Class 58 — System Error (errors external to PostgreSQL itself)</b>	
58000	system_error

Error Code	Condition Name
58030	io_error
58P01	undefined_file
58P02	duplicate_file
<b>Class 72 — Snapshot Failure</b>	
72000	snapshot_too_old
<b>Class F0 — Configuration File Error</b>	
F0000	config_file_error
F0001	lock_file_exists
<b>Class HV — Foreign Data Wrapper Error (SQL/MED)</b>	
HV000	fdw_error
HV005	fdw_column_name_not_found
HV002	fdw_dynamic_parameter_value_needed
HV010	fdw_function_sequence_error
HV021	fdw_inconsistent_descriptor_information
HV024	fdw_invalid_attribute_value
HV007	fdw_invalid_column_name
HV008	fdw_invalid_column_number
HV004	fdw_invalid_data_type
HV006	fdw_invalid_data_type_descriptors
HV091	fdw_invalid_descriptor_field_identifier
HV00B	fdw_invalid_handle
HV00C	fdw_invalid_option_index
HV00D	fdw_invalid_option_name
HV090	fdw_invalid_string_length_or_buffer_length
HV00A	fdw_invalid_string_format
HV009	fdw_invalid_use_of_null_pointer
HV014	fdw_too_many_handles
HV001	fdw_out_of_memory
HV00P	fdw_no_schemas
HV00J	fdw_option_name_not_found
HV00K	fdw_reply_handle
HV00Q	fdw_schema_not_found
HV00R	fdw_table_not_found
HV00L	fdw_unable_to_create_execution
HV00M	fdw_unable_to_create_reply
HV00N	fdw_unable_to_establish_connection
<b>Class P0 — PL/pgSQL Error</b>	
P0000	plpgsql_error
P0001	raise_exception
P0002	no_data_found

Error Code	Condition Name
P0003	too_many_rows
P0004	assert_failure
<b>Class XX — Internal Error</b>	
XX000	internal_error
XX001	data_corrupted
XX002	index_corrupted

---

# Appendix B. Date/Time Support

PostgreSQL uses an internal heuristic parser for all date/time input support. Dates and times are input as strings, and are broken up into distinct fields with a preliminary determination of what kind of information can be in the field. Each field is interpreted and either assigned a numeric value, ignored, or rejected. The parser contains internal lookup tables for all textual fields, including months, days of the week, and time zones.

This appendix includes information on the content of these lookup tables and describes the steps used by the parser to decode dates and times.

## B.1. Date/Time Input Interpretation

Date/time input strings are decoded using the following procedure.

1. Break the input string into tokens and categorize each token as a string, time, time zone, or number.
  - a. If the numeric token contains a colon (:), this is a time string. Include all subsequent digits and colons.
  - b. If the numeric token contains a dash (-), slash (/), or two or more dots (.), this is a date string which might have a text month. If a date token has already been seen, it is instead interpreted as a time zone name (e.g., `America/New_York`).
  - c. If the token is numeric only, then it is either a single field or an ISO 8601 concatenated date (e.g., 19990113 for January 13, 1999) or time (e.g., 141516 for 14:15:16).
  - d. If the token starts with a plus (+) or minus (-), then it is either a numeric time zone or a special field.
2. If the token is an alphabetic string, match up with possible strings:
  - a. See if the token matches any known time zone abbreviation. These abbreviations are supplied by the configuration file described in Section B.4.
  - b. If not found, search an internal table to match the token as either a special string (e.g., `today`), day (e.g., `Thursday`), month (e.g., `January`), or noise word (e.g., `at`, `on`).
  - c. If still not found, throw an error.
3. When the token is a number or number field:
  - a. If there are eight or six digits, and if no other date fields have been previously read, then interpret as a “concatenated date” (e.g., 19990118 or 990118). The interpretation is YYYYMM-MDD or YYMMDD.
  - b. If the token is three digits and a year has already been read, then interpret as day of year.
  - c. If four or six digits and a year has already been read, then interpret as a time (HHMM or HHMMSS).
  - d. If three or more digits and no date fields have yet been found, interpret as a year (this forces yy-mm-dd ordering of the remaining date fields).
  - e. Otherwise the date field ordering is assumed to follow the `DateStyle` setting: mm-dd-yy, dd-mm-yy, or yy-mm-dd. Throw an error if a month or day field is found to be out of range.
4. If BC has been specified, negate the year and add one for internal storage. (There is no year zero in the Gregorian calendar, so numerically 1 BC becomes year zero.)

5. If BC was not specified, and if the year field was two digits in length, then adjust the year to four digits. If the field is less than 70, then add 2000, otherwise add 1900.

**Tip**

Gregorian years AD 1–99 can be entered by using 4 digits with leading zeros (e.g., 0099 is AD 99).

## B.2. Handling of Invalid or Ambiguous Time-stamps

Ordinarily, if a date/time string is syntactically valid but contains out-of-range field values, an error will be thrown. For example, input specifying the 31st of February will be rejected.

During a daylight-savings-time transition, it is possible for a seemingly valid timestamp string to represent a nonexistent or ambiguous timestamp. Such cases are not rejected; the ambiguity is resolved by determining which UTC offset to apply. For example, supposing that the `TimeZone` parameter is set to `America/New_York`, consider

```
=> SELECT '2018-03-11 02:30'::timestampz;
      timestampz
-----
2018-03-11 03:30:00-04
(1 row)
```

Because that day was a spring-forward transition date in that time zone, there was no civil time instant 2:30AM; clocks jumped forward from 2AM EST to 3AM EDT. PostgreSQL interprets the given time as if it were standard time (UTC-5), which then renders as 3:30AM EDT (UTC-4).

Conversely, consider the behavior during a fall-back transition:

```
=> SELECT '2018-11-04 01:30'::timestampz;
      timestampz
-----
2018-11-04 01:30:00-05
(1 row)
```

On that date, there were two possible interpretations of 1:30AM; there was 1:30AM EDT, and then an hour later after clocks jumped back from 2AM EDT to 1AM EST, there was 1:30AM EST. Again, PostgreSQL interprets the given time as if it were standard time (UTC-5). We can force the other interpretation by specifying daylight-savings time:

```
=> SELECT '2018-11-04 01:30 EDT'::timestampz;
      timestampz
-----
2018-11-04 01:30:00-04
(1 row)
```

The precise rule that is applied in such cases is that an invalid timestamp that appears to fall within a jump-forward daylight savings transition is assigned the UTC offset that prevailed in the time zone just before the transition, while an ambiguous timestamp that could fall on either side of a jump-back transition is assigned the UTC offset that prevailed just after the transition. In most time zones this is equivalent to saying that “the standard-time interpretation is preferred when in doubt”.

In all cases, the UTC offset associated with a timestamp can be specified explicitly, using either a numeric UTC offset or a time zone abbreviation that corresponds to a fixed UTC offset. The rule just given applies only when it is necessary to infer a UTC offset for a time zone in which the offset varies.

## B.3. Date/Time Key Words

Table B.1 shows the tokens that are recognized as names of months.

**Table B.1. Month Names**

Month	Abbreviations
January	Jan
February	Feb
March	Mar
April	Apr
May	
June	Jun
July	Jul
August	Aug
September	Sep, Sept
October	Oct
November	Nov
December	Dec

Table B.2 shows the tokens that are recognized as names of days of the week.

**Table B.2. Day of the Week Names**

Day	Abbreviations
Sunday	Sun
Monday	Mon
Tuesday	Tue, Tues
Wednesday	Wed, Weds
Thursday	Thu, Thur, Thurs
Friday	Fri
Saturday	Sat

Table B.3 shows the tokens that serve various modifier purposes.

**Table B.3. Date/Time Field Modifiers**

Identifier	Description
AM	Time is before 12:00
AT	Ignored
JULIAN, JD, J	Next field is Julian Date
ON	Ignored
PM	Time is on or after 12:00
T	Next field is time

## B.4. Date/Time Configuration Files

Since timezone abbreviations are not well standardized, PostgreSQL provides a means to customize the set of abbreviations accepted by the server. The `timezone_abbreviations` run-time parameter determines the active set of abbreviations. While this parameter can be altered by any database user, the possible values for it are under the control of the database administrator — they are in fact names of configuration files stored in `.../share/timezonesets/` of the installation directory. By adding or altering files in that directory, the administrator can set local policy for timezone abbreviations.

`timezone_abbreviations` can be set to any file name found in `.../share/timezone-sets/`, if the file's name is entirely alphabetic. (The prohibition against non-alphabetic characters in `timezone_abbreviations` prevents reading files outside the intended directory, as well as reading editor backup files and other extraneous files.)

A timezone abbreviation file can contain blank lines and comments beginning with `#`. Non-comment lines must have one of these formats:

```
zone_abbreviation offset
zone_abbreviation offset D
zone_abbreviation time_zone_name
@INCLUDE file_name
@OVERRIDE
```

A *zone\_abbreviation* is just the abbreviation being defined. An *offset* is an integer giving the equivalent offset in seconds from UTC, positive being east from Greenwich and negative being west. For example, -18000 would be five hours west of Greenwich, or North American east coast standard time. `D` indicates that the zone name represents local daylight-savings time rather than standard time.

Alternatively, a *time\_zone\_name* can be given, referencing a zone name defined in the IANA timezone database. The zone's definition is consulted to see whether the abbreviation is or has been in use in that zone, and if so, the appropriate meaning is used — that is, the meaning that was currently in use at the timestamp whose value is being determined, or the meaning in use immediately before that if it wasn't current at that time, or the oldest meaning if it was used only after that time. This behavior is essential for dealing with abbreviations whose meaning has historically varied. It is also allowed to define an abbreviation in terms of a zone name in which that abbreviation does not appear; then using the abbreviation is just equivalent to writing out the zone name.

### Tip

Using a simple integer *offset* is preferred when defining an abbreviation whose offset from UTC has never changed, as such abbreviations are much cheaper to process than those that require consulting a time zone definition.

The `@INCLUDE` syntax allows inclusion of another file in the `.../share/timezonesets/` directory. Inclusion can be nested, to a limited depth.

The `@OVERRIDE` syntax indicates that subsequent entries in the file can override previous entries (typically, entries obtained from included files). Without this, conflicting definitions of the same time-zone abbreviation are considered an error.

In an unmodified installation, the file `Default` contains all the non-conflicting time zone abbreviations for most of the world. Additional files `Australia` and `India` are provided for those regions: these files first include the `Default` file and then add or modify abbreviations as needed.

For reference purposes, a standard installation also contains files `Africa.txt`, `America.txt`, etc., containing information about every time zone abbreviation known to be in use according to the

IANA timezone database. The zone name definitions found in these files can be copied and pasted into a custom configuration file as needed. Note that these files cannot be directly referenced as `time-zone_abbreviations` settings, because of the dot embedded in their names.

### Note

If an error occurs while reading the time zone abbreviation set, no new value is applied and the old set is kept. If the error occurs while starting the database, startup fails.

### Caution

Time zone abbreviations defined in the configuration file override non-timezone meanings built into PostgreSQL. For example, the *Australia* configuration file defines SAT (for South Australian Standard Time). When this file is active, SAT will not be recognized as an abbreviation for Saturday.

### Caution

If you modify files in `.../share/timezonesets/`, it is up to you to make backups — a normal database dump will not include this directory.

## B.5. POSIX Time Zone Specifications

PostgreSQL can accept time zone specifications that are written according to the POSIX standard's rules for the TZ environment variable. POSIX time zone specifications are inadequate to deal with the complexity of real-world time zone history, but there are sometimes reasons to use them.

A POSIX time zone specification has the form

```
STD offset [ DST [ dstoffset ] [ , rule ] ]
```

(For readability, we show spaces between the fields, but spaces should not be used in practice.) The fields are:

- *STD* is the zone abbreviation to be used for standard time.
- *offset* is the zone's standard-time offset from UTC.
- *DST* is the zone abbreviation to be used for daylight-savings time. If this field and the following ones are omitted, the zone uses a fixed UTC offset with no daylight-savings rule.
- *dstoffset* is the daylight-savings offset from UTC. This field is typically omitted, since it defaults to one hour less than the standard-time *offset*, which is usually the right thing.
- *rule* defines the rule for when daylight savings is in effect, as described below.

In this syntax, a zone abbreviation can be a string of letters, such as EST, or an arbitrary string surrounded by angle brackets, such as <UTC-05>. Note that the zone abbreviations given here are only used for output, and even then only in some timestamp output formats. The zone abbreviations recognized in timestamp input are determined as explained in Section B.4.

The offset fields specify the hours, and optionally minutes and seconds, difference from UTC. They have the format *hh[:mm[:ss]]* optionally with a leading sign (+ or -). The positive sign is used



for zones *west* of Greenwich. (Note that this is the opposite of the ISO-8601 sign convention used elsewhere in PostgreSQL.) *hh* can have one or two digits; *mm* and *ss* (if used) must have two.

The daylight-savings transition *rule* has the format

*dstdate* [ / *dsttime* ] , *stddate* [ / *stdtime* ]

(As before, spaces should not be included in practice.) The *dstdate* and *dsttime* fields define when daylight-savings time starts, while *stddate* and *stdtime* define when standard time starts. (In some cases, notably in zones south of the equator, the former might be later in the year than the latter.) The date fields have one of these formats:

*n*

A plain integer denotes a day of the year, counting from zero to 364, or to 365 in leap years.

*Jn*

In this form, *n* counts from 1 to 365, and February 29 is not counted even if it is present. (Thus, a transition occurring on February 29 could not be specified this way. However, days after February have the same numbers whether it's a leap year or not, so that this form is usually more useful than the plain-integer form for transitions on fixed dates.)

*Mm.n.d*

This form specifies a transition that always happens during the same month and on the same day of the week. *m* identifies the month, from 1 to 12. *n* specifies the *n*'th occurrence of the weekday identified by *d*. *n* is a number between 1 and 4, or 5 meaning the last occurrence of that weekday in the month (which could be the fourth or the fifth). *d* is a number between 0 and 6, with 0 indicating Sunday. For example, *M3.2.0* means "the second Sunday in March".

### Note

The M format is sufficient to describe many common daylight-savings transition laws. But note that none of these variants can deal with daylight-savings law changes, so in practice the historical data stored for named time zones (in the IANA time zone database) is necessary to interpret past time stamps correctly.

The time fields in a transition rule have the same format as the offset fields described previously, except that they cannot contain signs. They define the current local time at which the change to the other time occurs. If omitted, they default to 02:00:00.

If a daylight-savings abbreviation is given but the transition *rule* field is omitted, the fallback behavior is to use the rule *M3.2.0,M11.1.0*, which corresponds to USA practice as of 2020 (that is, spring forward on the second Sunday of March, fall back on the first Sunday of November, both transitions occurring at 2AM prevailing time). Note that this rule does not give correct USA transition dates for years before 2007.

As an example, *CET-1CEST,M3.5.0,M10.5.0/3* describes current (as of 2020) timekeeping practice in Paris. This specification says that standard time has the abbreviation CET and is one hour ahead (east) of UTC; daylight savings time has the abbreviation CEST and is implicitly two hours ahead of UTC; daylight savings time begins on the last Sunday in March at 2AM CET and ends on the last Sunday in October at 3AM CEST.

The four timezone names *EST5EDT*, *CST6CDT*, *MST7MDT*, and *PST8PDT* look like they are POSIX zone specifications. However, they actually are treated as named time zones because (for historical reasons) there are files by those names in the IANA time zone database. The practical implication

of this is that these zone names will produce valid historical USA daylight-savings transitions, even when a plain POSIX specification would not.

One should be wary that it is easy to misspell a POSIX-style time zone specification, since there is no check on the reasonableness of the zone abbreviation(s). For example, `SET TIMEZONE TO FOOBAR0` will work, leaving the system effectively using a rather peculiar abbreviation for UTC.

## B.6. History of Units

The SQL standard states that “Within the definition of a ‘datetime literal’, the ‘datetime values’ are constrained by the natural rules for dates and times according to the Gregorian calendar”. PostgreSQL follows the SQL standard's lead by counting dates exclusively in the Gregorian calendar, even for years before that calendar was in use. This rule is known as the *proleptic Gregorian calendar*.

The Julian calendar was introduced by Julius Caesar in 45 BC. It was in common use in the Western world until the year 1582, when countries started changing to the Gregorian calendar. In the Julian calendar, the tropical year is approximated as  $365 \frac{1}{4}$  days = 365.25 days. This gives an error of about 1 day in 128 years.

The accumulating calendar error prompted Pope Gregory XIII to reform the calendar in accordance with instructions from the Council of Trent. In the Gregorian calendar, the tropical year is approximated as  $365 + 97 / 400$  days = 365.2425 days. Thus it takes approximately 3300 years for the tropical year to shift one day with respect to the Gregorian calendar.

The approximation  $365+97/400$  is achieved by having 97 leap years every 400 years, using the following rules:

Every year divisible by 4 is a leap year.

However, every year divisible by 100 is not a leap year.

However, every year divisible by 400 is a leap year after all.

So, 1700, 1800, 1900, 2100, and 2200 are not leap years. But 1600, 2000, and 2400 are leap years. By contrast, in the older Julian calendar all years divisible by 4 are leap years.

The papal bull of February 1582 decreed that 10 days should be dropped from October 1582 so that 15 October should follow immediately after 4 October. This was observed in Italy, Poland, Portugal, and Spain. Other Catholic countries followed shortly after, but Protestant countries were reluctant to change, and the Greek Orthodox countries didn't change until the start of the 20th century. The reform was observed by Great Britain and its dominions (including what is now the USA) in 1752. Thus 2 September 1752 was followed by 14 September 1752. This is why Unix systems that have the `cal` program produce the following:

```
$ cal 9 1752
      September 1752
S  M Tu  W Th  F  S
      1  2 14 15 16
17 18 19 20 21 22 23
24 25 26 27 28 29 30
```

But, of course, this calendar is only valid for Great Britain and dominions, not other places. Since it would be difficult and confusing to try to track the actual calendars that were in use in various places at various times, PostgreSQL does not try, but rather follows the Gregorian calendar rules for all dates, even though this method is not historically accurate.

Different calendars have been developed in various parts of the world, many predating the Gregorian system. For example, the beginnings of the Chinese calendar can be traced back to the 14th century BC. Legend has it that the Emperor Huangdi invented that calendar in 2637 BC. The People's Republic of China uses the Gregorian calendar for civil purposes. The Chinese calendar is used for determining festivals.

## B.7. Julian Dates

The *Julian Date* system is a method for numbering days. It is unrelated to the Julian calendar, though it is confusingly named similarly to that calendar. The Julian Date system was invented by the French scholar Joseph Justus Scaliger (1540–1609) and probably takes its name from Scaliger's father, the Italian scholar Julius Caesar Scaliger (1484–1558).

In the Julian Date system, each day has a sequential number, starting from JD 0 (which is sometimes called *the* Julian Date). JD 0 corresponds to 1 January 4713 BC in the Julian calendar, or 24 November 4714 BC in the Gregorian calendar. Julian Date counting is most often used by astronomers for labeling their nightly observations, and therefore a date runs from noon UTC to the next noon UTC, rather than from midnight to midnight: JD 0 designates the 24 hours from noon UTC on 24 November 4714 BC to noon UTC on 25 November 4714 BC.

Although PostgreSQL supports Julian Date notation for input and output of dates (and also uses Julian dates for some internal datetime calculations), it does not observe the nicety of having dates run from noon to noon. PostgreSQL treats a Julian Date as running from local midnight to local midnight, the same as a normal date.

This definition does, however, provide a way to obtain the astronomical definition when you need it: do the arithmetic in time zone UTC+12. For example,

```
=> SELECT extract(julian from '2021-06-23 7:00:00-04'::timestampz
    at time zone 'UTC+12');
    extract
-----
 2459388.95833333333333333333333333
(1 row)
=> SELECT extract(julian from '2021-06-23 8:00:00-04'::timestampz
    at time zone 'UTC+12');
    extract
-----
 2459389.00000000000000000000000000
(1 row)
=> SELECT extract(julian from date '2021-06-23');
    extract
-----
 2459389
(1 row)
```

---

# Appendix C. SQL Key Words

Table C.1 lists all tokens that are key words in the SQL standard and in PostgreSQL 16.2. Background information can be found in Section 4.1.1. (For space reasons, only the latest two versions of the SQL standard, and SQL-92 for historical comparison, are included. The differences between those and the other intermediate standard versions are small.)

SQL distinguishes between *reserved* and *non-reserved* key words. According to the standard, reserved key words are the only real key words; they are never allowed as identifiers. Non-reserved key words only have a special meaning in particular contexts and can be used as identifiers in other contexts. Most non-reserved key words are actually the names of built-in tables and functions specified by SQL. The concept of non-reserved key words essentially only exists to declare that some predefined meaning is attached to a word in some contexts.

In the PostgreSQL parser, life is a bit more complicated. There are several different classes of tokens ranging from those that can never be used as an identifier to those that have absolutely no special status in the parser, but are considered ordinary identifiers. (The latter is usually the case for functions specified by SQL.) Even reserved key words are not completely reserved in PostgreSQL, but can be used as column labels (for example, `SELECT 55 AS CHECK`, even though `CHECK` is a reserved key word).

In Table C.1 in the column for PostgreSQL we classify as “non-reserved” those key words that are explicitly known to the parser but are allowed as column or table names. Some key words that are otherwise non-reserved cannot be used as function or data type names and are marked accordingly. (Most of these words represent built-in functions or data types with special syntax. The function or type is still available but it cannot be redefined by the user.) Labeled “reserved” are those tokens that are not allowed as column or table names. Some reserved key words are allowable as names for functions or data types; this is also shown in the table. If not so marked, a reserved key word is only allowed as a column label. A blank entry in this column means that the word is treated as an ordinary identifier by PostgreSQL.

Furthermore, while most key words can be used as “bare” column labels without writing `AS` before them (as described in Section 7.3.2), there are a few that require a leading `AS` to avoid ambiguity. These are marked in the table as “requires AS”.

As a general rule, if you get spurious parser errors for commands that use any of the listed key words as an identifier, you should try quoting the identifier to see if the problem goes away.

It is important to understand before studying Table C.1 that the fact that a key word is not reserved in PostgreSQL does not mean that the feature related to the word is not implemented. Conversely, the presence of a key word does not indicate the existence of a feature.

**Table C.1. SQL Key Words**

Key Word	PostgreSQL	SQL:2023	SQL:2016	SQL-92
A		non-reserved	non-reserved	
ABORT	non-reserved			
ABS		reserved	reserved	
ABSENT	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	
ABSOLUTE	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
ACCESS	non-reserved			
ACCORDING		non-reserved	non-reserved	
ACOS		reserved	reserved	
ACTION	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
ADA		non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved

Key Word	PostgreSQL	SQL:2023	SQL:2016	SQL-92
ADD	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
ADMIN	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
AFTER	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
AGGREGATE	non-reserved			
ALL	reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
ALLOCATE		reserved	reserved	reserved
ALSO	non-reserved			
ALTER	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
ALWAYS	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
ANALYSE	reserved			
ANALYZE	reserved			
AND	reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
ANY	reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
ANY_VALUE		reserved		
ARE		reserved	reserved	reserved
ARRAY	reserved, requires AS	reserved	reserved	
ARRAY_AGG		reserved	reserved	
ARRAY_MAX_CARDINALITY		reserved	reserved	
AS	reserved, requires AS	reserved	reserved	reserved
ASC	reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
ASENSITIVE	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	
ASIN		reserved	reserved	
ASSERTION	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
ASSIGNMENT	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
ASYMMETRIC	reserved	reserved	reserved	
AT	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
ATAN		reserved	reserved	
ATOMIC	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	
ATTACH	non-reserved			
ATTRIBUTE	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
ATTRIBUTES		non-reserved	non-reserved	
AUTHORIZATION	reserved (can be function or type)	reserved	reserved	reserved
AVG		reserved	reserved	reserved
BACKWARD	non-reserved			
BASE64		non-reserved	non-reserved	
BEFORE	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
BEGIN	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
BEGIN_FRAME		reserved	reserved	
BEGIN_PARTITION		reserved	reserved	

Key Word	PostgreSQL	SQL:2023	SQL:2016	SQL-92
BERNOULLI		non-reserved	non-reserved	
BETWEEN	non-reserved (cannot be function or type)	reserved	reserved	reserved
BIGINT	non-reserved (cannot be function or type)	reserved	reserved	
BINARY	reserved (can be function or type)	reserved	reserved	
BIT	non-reserved (cannot be function or type)			reserved
BIT_LENGTH				reserved
BLOB		reserved	reserved	
BLOCKED		non-reserved	non-reserved	
BOM		non-reserved	non-reserved	
BOOLEAN	non-reserved (cannot be function or type)	reserved	reserved	
BOTH	reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
BREADTH	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
BTRIM		reserved		
BY	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
C		non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved
CACHE	non-reserved			
CALL	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	
CALLED	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	
CARDINALITY		reserved	reserved	
CASCADE	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
CASCADED	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
CASE	reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
CAST	reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
CATALOG	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
CATALOG_NAME		non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved
CEIL		reserved	reserved	
CEILING		reserved	reserved	
CHAIN	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
CHAINING		non-reserved	non-reserved	
CHAR	non-reserved (cannot be function or type), requires AS	reserved	reserved	reserved
CHARACTER	non-reserved (cannot be function or type), requires AS	reserved	reserved	reserved

Key Word	PostgreSQL	SQL:2023	SQL:2016	SQL-92
CHARACTERISTICS	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
CHARACTERS		non-reserved	non-reserved	
CHARACTER_LENGTH		reserved	reserved	reserved
CHARACTER_SET_CATALOG		non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved
CHARACTER_SET_NAME		non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved
CHARACTER_SET_SCHEMA		non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved
CHAR_LENGTH		reserved	reserved	reserved
CHECK	reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
CHECKPOINT	non-reserved			
CLASS	non-reserved			
CLASSIFIER		reserved	reserved	
CLASS_ORIGIN		non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved
CLOB		reserved	reserved	
CLOSE	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
CLUSTER	non-reserved			
COALESCE	non-reserved (can not be function or type)	reserved	reserved	reserved
COBOL		non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved
COLLATE	reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
COLLATION	reserved (can be function or type)	non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
COLLATION_CATALOG		non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved
COLLATION_NAME		non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved
COLLATION_SCHEMA		non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved
COLLECT		reserved	reserved	
COLUMN	reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
COLUMNS	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
COLUMN_NAME		non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved
COMMAND_FUNCTION		non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved
COMMAND_FUNCTION_CODE		non-reserved	non-reserved	
COMMENT	non-reserved			
COMMENTS	non-reserved			
COMMIT	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
COMMITTED	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved
COMPRESSION	non-reserved			
CONCURRENTLY	reserved (can be function or type)			
CONDITION		reserved	reserved	
CONDITIONAL		non-reserved	non-reserved	
CONDITION_NUMBER		non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved
CONFIGURATION	non-reserved			

Key Word	PostgreSQL	SQL:2023	SQL:2016	SQL-92
CONFLICT	non-reserved			
CONNECT		reserved	reserved	reserved
CONNECTION	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
CONNECTION_NAME		non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved
CONSTRAINT	reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
CONSTRAINTS	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
CONSTRAINT_CATALOG		non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved
CONSTRAINT_NAME		non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved
CONSTRAINT_SCHEMA		non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved
CONSTRUCTOR		non-reserved	non-reserved	
CONTAINS		reserved	reserved	
CONTENT	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
CONTINUE	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
CONTROL		non-reserved	non-reserved	
CONVERSION	non-reserved			
CONVERT		reserved	reserved	reserved
COPARTITION		non-reserved		
COPY	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	
CORR		reserved	reserved	
CORRESPONDING		reserved	reserved	reserved
COS		reserved	reserved	
COSH		reserved	reserved	
COST	non-reserved			
COUNT		reserved	reserved	reserved
COVAR_POP		reserved	reserved	
COVAR_SAMP		reserved	reserved	
CREATE	reserved, requires AS	reserved	reserved	reserved
CROSS	reserved (can be function or type)	reserved	reserved	reserved
CSV	non-reserved			
CUBE	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	
CUME_DIST		reserved	reserved	
CURRENT	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
CURRENT_CATALOG	reserved	reserved	reserved	
CURRENT_DATE	reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
CURRENT_DEFAULT_TRANSFORM_GROUP		reserved	reserved	
CURRENT_PATH		reserved	reserved	
CURRENT_ROLE	reserved	reserved	reserved	
CURRENT_ROW		reserved	reserved	



Key Word	PostgreSQL	SQL:2023	SQL:2016	SQL-92
CURRENT_SCHEMA	reserved (can be function or type)	reserved	reserved	
CURRENT_TIME	reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
CURRENT_TIMESTAMP	reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
CURRENT_TRANSFORM_GROUP_FOR_TYPE		reserved	reserved	
CURRENT_USER	reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
CURSOR	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
CURSOR_NAME		non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved
CYCLE	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	
DATA	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved
DATABASE	non-reserved			
DATALINK		reserved	reserved	
DATE		reserved	reserved	reserved
DATETIME_INTERVAL_CODE		non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved
DATETIME_INTERVAL_PRECISION		non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved
DAY	non-reserved, requires AS	reserved	reserved	reserved
DB		non-reserved	non-reserved	
DEALLOCATE	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
DEC	non-reserved (cannot be function or type)	reserved	reserved	reserved
DECFLOAT		reserved	reserved	
DECIMAL	non-reserved (cannot be function or type)	reserved	reserved	reserved
DECLARE	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
DEFAULT	reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
DEFAULTS	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
DEFERRABLE	reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
DEFERRED	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
DEFINE		reserved	reserved	
DEFINED		non-reserved	non-reserved	
DEFINER	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
DEGREE		non-reserved	non-reserved	
DELETE	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
DELIMITER	non-reserved			
DELIMITERS	non-reserved			
DENSE_RANK		reserved	reserved	
DEPENDS	non-reserved			
DEPTH	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	

Key Word	PostgreSQL	SQL:2023	SQL:2016	SQL-92
DEREF		reserved	reserved	
DERIVED		non-reserved	non-reserved	
DESC	reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
DESCRIBE		reserved	reserved	reserved
DESCRIPTOR		non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
DETACH	non-reserved			
DETERMINISTIC		reserved	reserved	
DIAGNOSTICS		non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
DICTIONARY	non-reserved			
DISABLE	non-reserved			
DISCARD	non-reserved			
DISCONNECT		reserved	reserved	reserved
DISPATCH		non-reserved	non-reserved	
DISTINCT	reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
DLNEWCOPY		reserved	reserved	
DLPREVIOUSCOPY		reserved	reserved	
DLURLCOMPLETE		reserved	reserved	
DLURLCOMPLETEONLY		reserved	reserved	
DLURLCOMPLETEWRITE		reserved	reserved	
DLURLPATH		reserved	reserved	
DLURLPATHONLY		reserved	reserved	
DLURLPATHWRITE		reserved	reserved	
DLURLSCHEME		reserved	reserved	
DLURLSERVER		reserved	reserved	
DLVALUE		reserved	reserved	
DO	reserved			
DOCUMENT	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
DOMAIN	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
DOUBLE	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
DROP	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
DYNAMIC		reserved	reserved	
DYNAMIC_FUNCTION		non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved
DYNAMIC_FUNCTION_CODE		non-reserved	non-reserved	
EACH	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	
ELEMENT		reserved	reserved	
ELSE	reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
EMPTY		reserved	reserved	
ENABLE	non-reserved			
ENCODING	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
ENCRYPTED	non-reserved			
END	reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved

Key Word	PostgreSQL	SQL:2023	SQL:2016	SQL-92
END-EXEC		reserved	reserved	reserved
END_FRAME		reserved	reserved	
END_PARTITION		reserved	reserved	
ENFORCED		non-reserved	non-reserved	
ENUM	non-reserved			
EQUALS		reserved	reserved	
ERROR		non-reserved	non-reserved	
ESCAPE	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
EVENT	non-reserved			
EVERY		reserved	reserved	
EXCEPT	reserved, requires AS	reserved	reserved	reserved
EXCEPTION				reserved
EXCLUDE	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
EXCLUDING	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
EXCLUSIVE	non-reserved			
EXEC		reserved	reserved	reserved
EXECUTE	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
EXISTS	non-reserved (cannot be function or type)	reserved	reserved	reserved
EXP		reserved	reserved	
EXPLAIN	non-reserved			
EXPRESSION	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
EXTENSION	non-reserved			
EXTERNAL	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
EXTRACT	non-reserved (cannot be function or type)	reserved	reserved	reserved
FALSE	reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
FAMILY	non-reserved			
FETCH	reserved, requires AS	reserved	reserved	reserved
FILE		non-reserved	non-reserved	
FILTER	non-reserved, requires AS	reserved	reserved	
FINAL		non-reserved	non-reserved	
FINALIZE	non-reserved			
FINISH		non-reserved	non-reserved	
FIRST	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
FIRST_VALUE		reserved	reserved	
FLAG		non-reserved	non-reserved	

Key Word	PostgreSQL	SQL:2023	SQL:2016	SQL-92
FLOAT	non-reserved (cannot be function or type)	reserved	reserved	reserved
FLOOR		reserved	reserved	
FOLLOWING	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
FOR	reserved, requires AS	reserved	reserved	reserved
FORCE	non-reserved			
FOREIGN	reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
FORMAT	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
FORTRAN		non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved
FORWARD	non-reserved			
FOUND		non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
FRAME_ROW		reserved	reserved	
FREE		reserved	reserved	
FREEZE	reserved (can be function or type)			
FROM	reserved, requires AS	reserved	reserved	reserved
FS		non-reserved	non-reserved	
FULFILL		non-reserved	non-reserved	
FULL	reserved (can be function or type)	reserved	reserved	reserved
FUNCTION	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	
FUNCTIONS	non-reserved			
FUSION		reserved	reserved	
G		non-reserved	non-reserved	
GENERAL		non-reserved	non-reserved	
GENERATED	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
GET		reserved	reserved	reserved
GLOBAL	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
GO		non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
GOTO		non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
GRANT	reserved, requires AS	reserved	reserved	reserved
GRANTED	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
GREATEST	non-reserved (cannot be function or type)	reserved		
GROUP	reserved, requires AS	reserved	reserved	reserved
GROUPING	non-reserved (cannot be function or type)	reserved	reserved	

Key Word	PostgreSQL	SQL:2023	SQL:2016	SQL-92
GROUPS	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	
HANDLER	non-reserved			
HAVING	reserved, requires AS	reserved	reserved	reserved
HEADER	non-reserved			
HEX		non-reserved	non-reserved	
HIERARCHY		non-reserved	non-reserved	
HOLD	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	
HOURL	non-reserved, requires AS	reserved	reserved	reserved
ID		non-reserved	non-reserved	
IDENTITY	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
IF	non-reserved			
IGNORE		non-reserved	non-reserved	
ILIKE	reserved (can be function or type)			
IMMEDIATE	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
IMMEDIATELY		non-reserved	non-reserved	
IMMUTABLE	non-reserved			
IMPLEMENTATION		non-reserved	non-reserved	
IMPLICIT	non-reserved			
IMPORT	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	
IN	reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
INCLUDE	non-reserved			
INCLUDING	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
INCREMENT	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
INDENT	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
INDEX	non-reserved			
INDEXES	non-reserved			
INDICATOR		reserved	reserved	reserved
INHERIT	non-reserved			
INHERITS	non-reserved			
INITIAL		reserved	reserved	
INITIALLY	reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
INLINE	non-reserved			
INNER	reserved (can be function or type)	reserved	reserved	reserved
INOUT	non-reserved (cannot be function or type)	reserved	reserved	
INPUT	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
INSENSITIVE	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved

Key Word	PostgreSQL	SQL:2023	SQL:2016	SQL-92
INSERT	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
INSTANCE		non-reserved	non-reserved	
INSTANTIABLE		non-reserved	non-reserved	
INSTEAD	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
INT	non-reserved (cannot be function or type)	reserved	reserved	reserved
INTEGER	non-reserved (cannot be function or type)	reserved	reserved	reserved
INTEGRITY		non-reserved	non-reserved	
INTERSECT	reserved, requires AS	reserved	reserved	reserved
INTERSECTION		reserved	reserved	
INTERVAL	non-reserved (cannot be function or type)	reserved	reserved	reserved
INTO	reserved, requires AS	reserved	reserved	reserved
INVOKER	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
IS	reserved (can be function or type)	reserved	reserved	reserved
ISNULL	reserved (can be function or type), requires AS			
ISOLATION	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
JOIN	reserved (can be function or type)	reserved	reserved	reserved
JSON	non-reserved	reserved		
JSON_ARRAY	non-reserved (cannot be function or type)	reserved	reserved	
JSON_ARRAYAGG	non-reserved (cannot be function or type)	reserved	reserved	
JSON_EXISTS		reserved	reserved	
JSON_OBJECT	non-reserved (cannot be function or type)	reserved	reserved	
JSON_OBJECTAGG	non-reserved (cannot be function or type)	reserved	reserved	
JSON_QUERY		reserved	reserved	
JSON_SCALAR		reserved		
JSON_SERIALIZE		reserved		
JSON_TABLE		reserved	reserved	

Key Word	PostgreSQL	SQL:2023	SQL:2016	SQL-92
JSON_TABLE_PRIMITIVE		reserved	reserved	
JSON_VALUE		reserved	reserved	
K		non-reserved	non-reserved	
KEEP		non-reserved	non-reserved	
KEY	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
KEYS	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
KEY_MEMBER		non-reserved	non-reserved	
KEY_TYPE		non-reserved	non-reserved	
LABEL	non-reserved			
LAG		reserved	reserved	
LANGUAGE	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
LARGE	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	
LAST	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
LAST_VALUE		reserved	reserved	
LATERAL	reserved	reserved	reserved	
LEAD		reserved	reserved	
LEADING	reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
LEAKPROOF	non-reserved			
LEAST	non-reserved (can not be function or type)	reserved		
LEFT	reserved (can be function or type)	reserved	reserved	reserved
LENGTH		non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved
LEVEL	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
LIBRARY		non-reserved	non-reserved	
LIKE	reserved (can be function or type)	reserved	reserved	reserved
LIKE_REGEX		reserved	reserved	
LIMIT	reserved, requires AS	non-reserved	non-reserved	
LINK		non-reserved	non-reserved	
LISTAGG		reserved	reserved	
LISTEN	non-reserved			
LN		reserved	reserved	
LOAD	non-reserved			
LOCAL	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
LOCALTIME	reserved	reserved	reserved	
LOCALTIMESTAMP	reserved	reserved	reserved	
LOCATION	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
LOCATOR		non-reserved	non-reserved	
LOCK	non-reserved			

Key Word	PostgreSQL	SQL:2023	SQL:2016	SQL-92
LOCKED	non-reserved			
LOG		reserved	reserved	
LOG10		reserved	reserved	
LOGGED	non-reserved			
LOWER		reserved	reserved	reserved
LPAD		reserved		
LTRIM		reserved		
M		non-reserved	non-reserved	
MAP		non-reserved	non-reserved	
MAPPING	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
MATCH	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
MATCHED	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
MATCHES		reserved	reserved	
MATCH_NUMBER		reserved	reserved	
MATCH_RECOGNIZE		reserved	reserved	
MATERIALIZED	non-reserved			
MAX		reserved	reserved	reserved
MAXVALUE	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
MEASURES		non-reserved	non-reserved	
MEMBER		reserved	reserved	
MERGE	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	
MESSAGE_LENGTH		non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved
MESSAGE_OCTET_LENGTH		non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved
MESSAGE_TEXT		non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved
METHOD	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	
MIN		reserved	reserved	reserved
MINUTE	non-reserved, re- quires AS	reserved	reserved	reserved
MINVALUE	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
MOD		reserved	reserved	
MODE	non-reserved			
MODIFIES		reserved	reserved	
MODULE		reserved	reserved	reserved
MONTH	non-reserved, re- quires AS	reserved	reserved	reserved
MORE		non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved
MOVE	non-reserved			
MULTISET		reserved	reserved	
MUMPS		non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved
NAME	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved
NAMES	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved



Key Word	PostgreSQL	SQL:2023	SQL:2016	SQL-92
NAMESPACE		non-reserved	non-reserved	
NATIONAL	non-reserved (cannot be function or type)	reserved	reserved	reserved
NATURAL	reserved (can be function or type)	reserved	reserved	reserved
NCHAR	non-reserved (cannot be function or type)	reserved	reserved	reserved
NCLOB		reserved	reserved	
NESTED		non-reserved	non-reserved	
NESTING		non-reserved	non-reserved	
NEW	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	
NEXT	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
NFC	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
NFD	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
NFKC	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
NFKD	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
NIL		non-reserved	non-reserved	
NO	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
NONE	non-reserved (cannot be function or type)	reserved	reserved	
NORMALIZE	non-reserved (cannot be function or type)	reserved	reserved	
NORMALIZED	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
NOT	reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
NOTHING	non-reserved			
NOTIFY	non-reserved			
NOTNULL	reserved (can be function or type), requires AS			
NOWAIT	non-reserved			
NTH_VALUE		reserved	reserved	
NTILE		reserved	reserved	
NULL	reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
NULLABLE		non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved
NULLIF	non-reserved (cannot be function or type)	reserved	reserved	reserved
NULLS	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
NULL_ORDERING		non-reserved	non-reserved	
NUMBER		non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved

Key Word	PostgreSQL	SQL:2023	SQL:2016	SQL-92
NUMERIC	non-reserved (cannot be function or type)	reserved	reserved	reserved
OBJECT	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
OCCURRENCE		non-reserved	non-reserved	
OCCURRENCES_REGEX		reserved	reserved	
OCTETS		non-reserved	non-reserved	
OCTET_LENGTH		reserved	reserved	reserved
OF	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
OFF	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
OFFSET	reserved, requires AS	reserved	reserved	
OIDS	non-reserved			
OLD	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	
OMIT		reserved	reserved	
ON	reserved, requires AS	reserved	reserved	reserved
ONE		reserved	reserved	
ONLY	reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
OPEN		reserved	reserved	reserved
OPERATOR	non-reserved			
OPTION	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
OPTIONS	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
OR	reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
ORDER	reserved, requires AS	reserved	reserved	reserved
ORDERING		non-reserved	non-reserved	
ORDINALITY	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
OTHERS	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
OUT	non-reserved (cannot be function or type)	reserved	reserved	
OUTER	reserved (can be function or type)	reserved	reserved	reserved
OUTPUT		non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
OVER	non-reserved, requires AS	reserved	reserved	
OVERFLOW		non-reserved	non-reserved	
OVERLAPS	reserved (can be function or type), requires AS	reserved	reserved	reserved
OVERLAY	non-reserved (cannot be function or type)	reserved	reserved	

Key Word	PostgreSQL	SQL:2023	SQL:2016	SQL-92
OVERRIDING	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
OWNED	non-reserved			
OWNER	non-reserved			
P		non-reserved	non-reserved	
PAD		non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
PARALLEL	non-reserved			
PARAMETER	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	
PARAMETER_MODE		non-reserved	non-reserved	
PARAMETER_NAME		non-reserved	non-reserved	
PARAMETER_ORDINAL_POSITION		non-reserved	non-reserved	
PARAMETER_SPECIFIC_CATALOG		non-reserved	non-reserved	
PARAMETER_SPECIFIC_NAME		non-reserved	non-reserved	
PARAMETER_SPECIFIC_SCHEMA		non-reserved	non-reserved	
PARSER	non-reserved			
PARTIAL	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
PARTITION	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	
PASCAL		non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved
PASS		non-reserved	non-reserved	
PASSING	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
PASSTHROUGH		non-reserved	non-reserved	
PASSWORD	non-reserved			
PAST		non-reserved	non-reserved	
PATH		non-reserved	non-reserved	
PATTERN		reserved	reserved	
PER		reserved	reserved	
PERCENT		reserved	reserved	
PERCENTILE_CONT		reserved	reserved	
PERCENTILE_DISC		reserved	reserved	
PERCENT_RANK		reserved	reserved	
PERIOD		reserved	reserved	
PERMISSION		non-reserved	non-reserved	
PERMUTE		non-reserved	non-reserved	
PIPE		non-reserved	non-reserved	
PLACING	reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
PLAN		non-reserved	non-reserved	
PLANS	non-reserved			
PLI		non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved
POLICY	non-reserved			
PORTION		reserved	reserved	

Key Word	PostgreSQL	SQL:2023	SQL:2016	SQL-92
POSITION	non-reserved (cannot be function or type)	reserved	reserved	reserved
POSITION_REGEX		reserved	reserved	
POWER		reserved	reserved	
PRECEDES		reserved	reserved	
PRECEDING	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
PRECISION	non-reserved (cannot be function or type), requires AS	reserved	reserved	reserved
PREPARE	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
PREPARED	non-reserved			
PRESERVE	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
PREV		non-reserved	non-reserved	
PRIMARY	reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
PRIOR	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
PRIVATE		non-reserved	non-reserved	
PRIVILEGES	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
PROCEDURAL	non-reserved			
PROCEDURE	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
PROCEDURES	non-reserved			
PROGRAM	non-reserved			
PRUNE		non-reserved	non-reserved	
PTF		reserved	reserved	
PUBLIC		non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
PUBLICATION	non-reserved			
QUOTE	non-reserved			
QUOTES		non-reserved	non-reserved	
RANGE	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	
RANK		reserved	reserved	
READ	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
READS		reserved	reserved	
REAL	non-reserved (cannot be function or type)	reserved	reserved	reserved
REASSIGN	non-reserved			
RECHECK	non-reserved			
RECOVERY		non-reserved	non-reserved	
RECURSIVE	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	
REF	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	
REFERENCES	reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
REFERENCING	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	

Key Word	PostgreSQL	SQL:2023	SQL:2016	SQL-92
REFRESH	non-reserved			
REGR_AVGX		reserved	reserved	
REGR_AVGY		reserved	reserved	
REGR_COUNT		reserved	reserved	
REGR_INTERCEPT		reserved	reserved	
REGR_R2		reserved	reserved	
REGR_SLOPE		reserved	reserved	
REGR_SXX		reserved	reserved	
REGR_SXY		reserved	reserved	
REGR_SYY		reserved	reserved	
REINDEX	non-reserved			
RELATIVE	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
RELEASE	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	
RENAME	non-reserved			
REPEATABLE	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved
REPLACE	non-reserved			
REPLICA	non-reserved			
REQUIRING		non-reserved	non-reserved	
RESET	non-reserved			
RESPECT		non-reserved	non-reserved	
RESTART	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
RESTORE		non-reserved	non-reserved	
RESTRICT	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
RESULT		reserved	reserved	
RETURN	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	
RETURNED_CARDINALITY		non-reserved	non-reserved	
RETURNED_LENGTH		non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved
RETURNED_OCTET_LENGTH		non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved
RETURNED_SQLSTATE		non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved
RETURNING	reserved, requires AS	non-reserved	non-reserved	
RETURNS	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	
REVOKE	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
RIGHT	reserved (can be function or type)	reserved	reserved	reserved
ROLE	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
ROLLBACK	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
ROLLUP	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	
ROUTINE	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
ROUTINES	non-reserved			
ROUTINE_CATALOG		non-reserved	non-reserved	

Key Word	PostgreSQL	SQL:2023	SQL:2016	SQL-92
ROUTINE_NAME		non-reserved	non-reserved	
ROUTINE_SCHEMA		non-reserved	non-reserved	
ROW	non-reserved (cannot be function or type)	reserved	reserved	
ROWS	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
ROW_COUNT		non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved
ROW_NUMBER		reserved	reserved	
RPAD		reserved		
RTRIM		reserved		
RULE	non-reserved			
RUNNING		reserved	reserved	
SAVEPOINT	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	
SCALAR	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
SCALE		non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved
SCHEMA	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
SCHEMAS	non-reserved			
SCHEMA_NAME		non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved
SCOPE		reserved	reserved	
SCOPE_CATALOG		non-reserved	non-reserved	
SCOPE_NAME		non-reserved	non-reserved	
SCOPE_SCHEMA		non-reserved	non-reserved	
SCROLL	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
SEARCH	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	
SECOND	non-reserved, requires AS	reserved	reserved	reserved
SECTION		non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
SECURITY	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
SEEK		reserved	reserved	
SELECT	reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
SELECTIVE		non-reserved	non-reserved	
SELF		non-reserved	non-reserved	
SEMANTICS		non-reserved	non-reserved	
SENSITIVE		reserved	reserved	
SEQUENCE	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
SEQUENCES	non-reserved			
SERIALIZABLE	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved
SERVER	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
SERVER_NAME		non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved
SESSION	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
SESSION_USER	reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
SET	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved

Key Word	PostgreSQL	SQL:2023	SQL:2016	SQL-92
SETOF	non-reserved (cannot be function or type)			
SETS	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
SHARE	non-reserved			
SHOW	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	
SIMILAR	reserved (can be function or type)	reserved	reserved	
SIMPLE	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
SIN		reserved	reserved	
SINH		reserved	reserved	
SIZE		non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
SKIP	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	
SMALLINT	non-reserved (cannot be function or type)	reserved	reserved	reserved
SNAPSHOT	non-reserved			
SOME	reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
SORT_DIRECTION		non-reserved	non-reserved	
SOURCE		non-reserved	non-reserved	
SPACE		non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
SPECIFIC		reserved	reserved	
SPECIFICTYPE		reserved	reserved	
SPECIFIC_NAME		non-reserved	non-reserved	
SQL	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
SQLCODE				reserved
SQLERROR				reserved
SQLException		reserved	reserved	
SQLSTATE		reserved	reserved	reserved
SQLWARNING		reserved	reserved	
SQRT		reserved	reserved	
STABLE	non-reserved			
STANDALONE	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
START	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	
STATE		non-reserved	non-reserved	
STATEMENT	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
STATIC		reserved	reserved	
STATISTICS	non-reserved			
STDDEV_POP		reserved	reserved	
STDDEV_SAMP		reserved	reserved	
STDIN	non-reserved			
STDOUT	non-reserved			

Key Word	PostgreSQL	SQL:2023	SQL:2016	SQL-92
STORAGE	non-reserved			
STORED	non-reserved			
STRICT	non-reserved			
STRING		non-reserved	non-reserved	
STRIP	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
STRUCTURE		non-reserved	non-reserved	
STYLE		non-reserved	non-reserved	
SUBCLASS_ORIGIN		non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved
SUBMULTISET		reserved	reserved	
SUBSCRIPTION	non-reserved			
SUBSET		reserved	reserved	
SUBSTRING	non-reserved (cannot be function or type)	reserved	reserved	reserved
SUBSTRING_REGEX		reserved	reserved	
SUCCEEDS		reserved	reserved	
SUM		reserved	reserved	reserved
SUPPORT	non-reserved			
SYMMETRIC	reserved	reserved	reserved	
SYSID	non-reserved			
SYSTEM	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	
SYSTEM_TIME		reserved	reserved	
SYSTEM_USER	reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
T		non-reserved	non-reserved	
TABLE	reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
TABLES	non-reserved			
TABLESAMPLE	reserved (can be function or type)	reserved	reserved	
TABLESPACE	non-reserved			
TABLE_NAME		non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved
TAN		reserved	reserved	
TANH		reserved	reserved	
TEMP	non-reserved			
TEMPLATE	non-reserved			
TEMPORARY	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
TEXT	non-reserved			
THEN	reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
THROUGH		non-reserved	non-reserved	
TIES	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
TIME	non-reserved (cannot be function or type)	reserved	reserved	reserved



Key Word	PostgreSQL	SQL:2023	SQL:2016	SQL-92
TIMESTAMP	non-reserved (cannot be function or type)	reserved	reserved	reserved
TIMEZONE_HOUR		reserved	reserved	reserved
TIMEZONE_MINUTE		reserved	reserved	reserved
TO	reserved, requires AS	reserved	reserved	reserved
TOKEN		non-reserved	non-reserved	
TOP_LEVEL_COUNT		non-reserved	non-reserved	
TRAILING	reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
TRANSACTION	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
TRANSACTIONS_COMMITTED		non-reserved	non-reserved	
TRANSACTIONS_ROLLED_BACK		non-reserved	non-reserved	
TRANSACTION_ACTIVE		non-reserved	non-reserved	
TRANSFORM	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
TRANSFORMS		non-reserved	non-reserved	
TRANSLATE		reserved	reserved	reserved
TRANSLATE_REGEX		reserved	reserved	
TRANSLATION		reserved	reserved	reserved
TREAT	non-reserved (cannot be function or type)	reserved	reserved	
TRIGGER	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	
TRIGGER_CATALOG		non-reserved	non-reserved	
TRIGGER_NAME		non-reserved	non-reserved	
TRIGGER_SCHEMA		non-reserved	non-reserved	
TRIM	non-reserved (cannot be function or type)	reserved	reserved	reserved
TRIM_ARRAY		reserved	reserved	
TRUE	reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
TRUNCATE	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	
TRUSTED	non-reserved			
TYPE	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved
TYPES	non-reserved			
UESCAPE	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	
UNBOUNDED	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
UNCOMMITTED	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved
UNCONDITIONAL		non-reserved	non-reserved	
UNDER		non-reserved	non-reserved	
UNENCRYPTED	non-reserved			

Key Word	PostgreSQL	SQL:2023	SQL:2016	SQL-92
UNION	reserved, requires AS	reserved	reserved	reserved
UNIQUE	reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
UNKNOWN	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
UNLINK		non-reserved	non-reserved	
UNLISTEN	non-reserved			
UNLOGGED	non-reserved			
UNMATCHED		non-reserved	non-reserved	
UNNAMED		non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved
UNNEST		reserved	reserved	
UNTIL	non-reserved			
UNTYPED		non-reserved	non-reserved	
UPDATE	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
UPPER		reserved	reserved	reserved
URI		non-reserved	non-reserved	
USAGE		non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
USER	reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
USER_DEFINED_TYPE_CATALOG		non-reserved	non-reserved	
USER_DEFINED_TYPE_CODE		non-reserved	non-reserved	
USER_DEFINED_TYPE_NAME		non-reserved	non-reserved	
USER_DEFINED_TYPE_SCHEMA		non-reserved	non-reserved	
USING	reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
UTF16		non-reserved	non-reserved	
UTF32		non-reserved	non-reserved	
UTF8		non-reserved	non-reserved	
VACUUM	non-reserved			
VALID	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
VALIDATE	non-reserved			
VALIDATOR	non-reserved			
VALUE	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
VALUES	non-reserved (cannot be function or type)	reserved	reserved	reserved
VALUE_OF		reserved	reserved	
VARBINARY		reserved	reserved	
VARCHAR	non-reserved (cannot be function or type)	reserved	reserved	reserved
VARIADIC	reserved			
VARYING	non-reserved, requires AS	reserved	reserved	reserved

Key Word	PostgreSQL	SQL:2023	SQL:2016	SQL-92
VAR_POP		reserved	reserved	
VAR_SAMP		reserved	reserved	
VERBOSE	reserved (can be function or type)			
VERSION	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
VERSIONING		reserved	reserved	
VIEW	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
VIEWS	non-reserved			
VOLATILE	non-reserved			
WHEN	reserved	reserved	reserved	reserved
WHENEVER		reserved	reserved	reserved
WHERE	reserved, requires AS	reserved	reserved	reserved
WHITESPACE	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
WIDTH_BUCKET		reserved	reserved	
WINDOW	reserved, requires AS	reserved	reserved	
WITH	reserved, requires AS	reserved	reserved	reserved
WITHIN	non-reserved, requires AS	reserved	reserved	
WITHOUT	non-reserved, requires AS	reserved	reserved	
WORK	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
WRAPPER	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
WRITE	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved
XML	non-reserved	reserved	reserved	
XMLAGG		reserved	reserved	
XMLATTRIBUTES	non-reserved (cannot be function or type)	reserved	reserved	
XMLBINARY		reserved	reserved	
XMLCAST		reserved	reserved	
XMLCOMMENT		reserved	reserved	
XMLCONCAT	non-reserved (cannot be function or type)	reserved	reserved	
XMLDECLARATION		non-reserved	non-reserved	
XMLDOCUMENT		reserved	reserved	
XMLELEMENT	non-reserved (cannot be function or type)	reserved	reserved	
XML EXISTS	non-reserved (cannot be function or type)	reserved	reserved	

Key Word	PostgreSQL	SQL:2023	SQL:2016	SQL-92
XMLFOREST	non-reserved (cannot be function or type)	reserved	reserved	
XMLITERATE		reserved	reserved	
XMLNAMESPACES	non-reserved (cannot be function or type)	reserved	reserved	
XMLPARSE	non-reserved (cannot be function or type)	reserved	reserved	
XMLPI	non-reserved (cannot be function or type)	reserved	reserved	
XMLQUERY		reserved	reserved	
XMLROOT	non-reserved (cannot be function or type)			
XMLSCHEMA		non-reserved	non-reserved	
XMLSERIALIZE	non-reserved (cannot be function or type)	reserved	reserved	
XMLTABLE	non-reserved (cannot be function or type)	reserved	reserved	
XMLTEXT		reserved	reserved	
XMLVALIDATE		reserved	reserved	
YEAR	non-reserved, requires AS	reserved	reserved	reserved
YES	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	
ZONE	non-reserved	non-reserved	non-reserved	reserved

---

# Appendix D. SQL Conformance

This section attempts to outline to what extent PostgreSQL conforms to the current SQL standard. The following information is not a full statement of conformance, but it presents the main topics in as much detail as is both reasonable and useful for users.

The formal name of the SQL standard is ISO/IEC 9075 “Database Language SQL”. A revised version of the standard is released from time to time; the most recent update appearing in 2023. The 2023 version is referred to as ISO/IEC 9075:2023, or simply as SQL:2023. The versions prior to that were SQL:2016, SQL:2011, SQL:2008, SQL:2006, SQL:2003, SQL:1999, and SQL-92. Each version replaces the previous one, so claims of conformance to earlier versions have no official merit. PostgreSQL development aims for conformance with the latest official version of the standard where such conformance does not contradict traditional features or common sense. Many of the features required by the SQL standard are supported, though sometimes with slightly differing syntax or function. Further moves towards conformance can be expected over time.

SQL-92 defined three feature sets for conformance: Entry, Intermediate, and Full. Most database management systems claiming SQL standard conformance were conforming at only the Entry level, since the entire set of features in the Intermediate and Full levels was either too voluminous or in conflict with legacy behaviors.

Starting with SQL:1999, the SQL standard defines a large set of individual features rather than the ineffectively broad three levels found in SQL-92. A large subset of these features represents the “Core” features, which every conforming SQL implementation must supply. The rest of the features are purely optional.

The standard is split into a number of parts, each also known by a shorthand name:

- ISO/IEC 9075-1 Framework (SQL/Framework)
- ISO/IEC 9075-2 Foundation (SQL/Foundation)
- ISO/IEC 9075-3 Call Level Interface (SQL/CLI)
- ISO/IEC 9075-4 Persistent Stored Modules (SQL/PSM)
- ISO/IEC 9075-9 Management of External Data (SQL/MED)
- ISO/IEC 9075-10 Object Language Bindings (SQL/OLB)
- ISO/IEC 9075-11 Information and Definition Schemas (SQL/Schemata)
- ISO/IEC 9075-13 Routines and Types using the Java Language (SQL/JRT)
- ISO/IEC 9075-14 XML-related specifications (SQL/XML)
- ISO/IEC 9075-15 Multi-dimensional arrays (SQL/MDA)
- ISO/IEC 9075-16 Property Graph Queries (SQL/PGQ)

Note that some part numbers are not (or no longer) used.

The PostgreSQL core covers parts 1, 2, 9, 11, and 14. Part 3 is covered by the ODBC driver, and part 13 is covered by the PL/Java plug-in, but exact conformance is currently not being verified for these components. There are currently no implementations of parts 4, 10, 15, and 16 for PostgreSQL.

PostgreSQL supports most of the major features of SQL:2023. Out of 177 mandatory features required for full Core conformance, PostgreSQL conforms to at least 170. In addition, there is a long list of supported optional features. It might be worth noting that at the time of writing, no current version of any database management system claims full conformance to Core SQL:2023.

In the following two sections, we provide a list of those features that PostgreSQL supports, followed by a list of the features defined in SQL:2023 which are not yet supported in PostgreSQL. Both of these lists are approximate: There might be minor details that are nonconforming for a feature that is listed as supported, and large parts of an unsupported feature might in fact be implemented. The main body of the documentation always contains the most accurate information about what does and does not work.

### Note

Feature codes containing a hyphen are subfeatures. Therefore, if a particular subfeature is not supported, the main feature is listed as unsupported even if some other subfeatures are supported.

## D.1. Supported Features

Identifier	Core?	Description	Comment
B012		Embedded C	
B021		Direct SQL	
B128		Routine language SQL	
E011	Core	Numeric data types	
E011-01	Core	INTEGER and SMALLINT data types	
E011-02	Core	REAL, DOUBLE PRECISION, and FLOAT data types	
E011-03	Core	DECIMAL and NUMERIC data types	
E011-04	Core	Arithmetic operators	
E011-05	Core	Numeric comparison	
E011-06	Core	Implicit casting among the numeric data types	
E021	Core	Character data types	
E021-01	Core	CHARACTER data type	
E021-02	Core	CHARACTER VARYING data type	
E021-03	Core	Character literals	
E021-04	Core	CHARACTER_LENGTH function	trims trailing spaces from CHARACTER values before counting
E021-05	Core	OCTET_LENGTH function	
E021-06	Core	SUBSTRING function	
E021-07	Core	Character concatenation	
E021-08	Core	UPPER and LOWER functions	
E021-09	Core	TRIM function	
E021-10	Core	Implicit casting among the character string types	

Identifier	Core?	Description	Comment
E021-11	Core	POSITION function	
E021-12	Core	Character comparison	
E031	Core	Identifiers	
E031-01	Core	Delimited identifiers	
E031-02	Core	Lower case identifiers	
E031-03	Core	Trailing underscore	
E051	Core	Basic query specification	
E051-01	Core	SELECT DISTINCT	
E051-02	Core	GROUP BY clause	
E051-04	Core	GROUP BY can contain columns not in <select list>	
E051-05	Core	Select list items can be renamed	
E051-06	Core	HAVING clause	
E051-07	Core	Qualified * in select list	
E051-08	Core	Correlation names in the FROM clause	
E051-09	Core	Rename columns in the FROM clause	
E061	Core	Basic predicates and search conditions	
E061-01	Core	Comparison predicate	
E061-02	Core	BETWEEN predicate	
E061-03	Core	IN predicate with list of values	
E061-04	Core	LIKE predicate	
E061-05	Core	LIKE predicate ESCAPE clause	
E061-06	Core	NULL predicate	
E061-07	Core	Quantified comparison predicate	
E061-08	Core	EXISTS predicate	
E061-09	Core	Subqueries in comparison predicate	
E061-11	Core	Subqueries in IN predicate	
E061-12	Core	Subqueries in quantified comparison predicate	
E061-13	Core	Correlated subqueries	
E061-14	Core	Search condition	
E071	Core	Basic query expressions	
E071-01	Core	UNION DISTINCT table operator	
E071-02	Core	UNION ALL table operator	
E071-03	Core	EXCEPT DISTINCT table operator	
E071-05	Core	Columns combined via table operators need not have exactly the same data type	
E071-06	Core	Table operators in subqueries	
E081	Core	Basic Privileges	
E081-01	Core	SELECT privilege	
E081-02	Core	DELETE privilege	
E081-03	Core	INSERT privilege at the table level	
E081-04	Core	UPDATE privilege at the table level	

Identifier	Core?	Description	Comment
E081-05	Core	UPDATE privilege at the column level	
E081-06	Core	REFERENCES privilege at the table level	
E081-07	Core	REFERENCES privilege at the column level	
E081-08	Core	WITH GRANT OPTION	
E081-09	Core	USAGE privilege	
E081-10	Core	EXECUTE privilege	
E091	Core	Set functions	
E091-01	Core	AVG	
E091-02	Core	COUNT	
E091-03	Core	MAX	
E091-04	Core	MIN	
E091-05	Core	SUM	
E091-06	Core	ALL quantifier	
E091-07	Core	DISTINCT quantifier	
E101	Core	Basic data manipulation	
E101-01	Core	INSERT statement	
E101-03	Core	Searched UPDATE statement	
E101-04	Core	Searched DELETE statement	
E111	Core	Single row SELECT statement	
E121	Core	Basic cursor support	
E121-01	Core	DECLARE CURSOR	
E121-02	Core	ORDER BY columns need not be in select list	
E121-03	Core	Value expressions in ORDER BY clause	
E121-04	Core	OPEN statement	
E121-06	Core	Positioned UPDATE statement	
E121-07	Core	Positioned DELETE statement	
E121-08	Core	CLOSE statement	
E121-10	Core	FETCH statement implicit NEXT	
E121-17	Core	WITH HOLD cursors	
E131	Core	Null value support (nulls in lieu of values)	
E141	Core	Basic integrity constraints	
E141-01	Core	NOT NULL constraints	
E141-02	Core	UNIQUE constraints of NOT NULL columns	
E141-03	Core	PRIMARY KEY constraints	
E141-04	Core	Basic FOREIGN KEY constraint with the NO ACTION default for both referential delete action and referential update action	
E141-06	Core	CHECK constraints	
E141-07	Core	Column defaults	
E141-08	Core	NOT NULL inferred on PRIMARY KEY	
E141-10	Core	Names in a foreign key can be specified in any order	



Identifier	Core?	Description	Comment
E151	Core	Transaction support	
E151-01	Core	COMMIT statement	
E151-02	Core	ROLLBACK statement	
E152	Core	Basic SET TRANSACTION statement	
E152-01	Core	SET TRANSACTION statement: ISOLATION LEVEL SERIALIZABLE clause	
E152-02	Core	SET TRANSACTION statement: READ ONLY and READ WRITE clauses	
E153	Core	Updatable queries with subqueries	
E161	Core	SQL comments using leading double minus	
E171	Core	SQLSTATE support	
E182	Core	Host language binding	
F021	Core	Basic information schema	
F021-01	Core	COLUMNS view	
F021-02	Core	TABLES view	
F021-03	Core	VIEWS view	
F021-04	Core	TABLE_CONSTRAINTS view	
F021-05	Core	REFERENTIAL_CONSTRAINTS view	
F021-06	Core	CHECK_CONSTRAINTS view	
F031	Core	Basic schema manipulation	
F031-01	Core	CREATE TABLE statement to create persistent base tables	
F031-02	Core	CREATE VIEW statement	
F031-03	Core	GRANT statement	
F031-04	Core	ALTER TABLE statement: ADD COLUMN clause	
F031-13	Core	DROP TABLE statement: RESTRICT clause	
F031-16	Core	DROP VIEW statement: RESTRICT clause	
F031-19	Core	REVOKE statement: RESTRICT clause	
F032		CASCADE drop behavior	
F033		ALTER TABLE statement: DROP COLUMN clause	
F034		Extended REVOKE statement	
F035		REVOKE with CASCADE	
F036		REVOKE statement performed by non-owner	
F037		REVOKE statement: GRANT OPTION FOR clause	
F038		REVOKE of a WITH GRANT OPTION privilege	
F041	Core	Basic joined table	
F041-01	Core	Inner join (but not necessarily the INNER keyword)	
F041-02	Core	INNER keyword	
F041-03	Core	LEFT OUTER JOIN	
F041-04	Core	RIGHT OUTER JOIN	
F041-05	Core	Outer joins can be nested	

Identifier	Core?	Description	Comment
F041-07	Core	The inner table in a left or right outer join can also be used in an inner join	
F041-08	Core	All comparison operators are supported (rather than just =)	
F051	Core	Basic date and time	
F051-01	Core	DATE data type (including support of DATE literal)	
F051-02	Core	TIME data type (including support of TIME literal) with fractional seconds precision of at least 0	
F051-03	Core	TIMESTAMP data type (including support of TIMESTAMP literal) with fractional seconds precision of at least 0 and 6	
F051-04	Core	Comparison predicate on DATE, TIME, and TIMESTAMP data types	
F051-05	Core	Explicit CAST between datetime types and character string types	
F051-06	Core	CURRENT_DATE	
F051-07	Core	LOCALTIME	
F051-08	Core	LOCALTIMESTAMP	
F052		Intervals and datetime arithmetic	
F053		OVERLAPS predicate	
F081	Core	UNION and EXCEPT in views	
F111		Isolation levels other than SERIALIZABLE	
F112		Isolation level READ UNCOMMITTED	
F113		Isolation level READ COMMITTED	
F114		Isolation level REPEATABLE READ	
F131	Core	Grouped operations	
F131-01	Core	WHERE, GROUP BY, and HAVING clauses supported in queries with grouped views	
F131-02	Core	Multiple tables supported in queries with grouped views	
F131-03	Core	Set functions supported in queries with grouped views	
F131-04	Core	Subqueries with GROUP BY and HAVING clauses and grouped views	
F131-05	Core	Single row SELECT with GROUP BY and HAVING clauses and grouped views	
F171		Multiple schemas per user	
F181	Core	Multiple module support	
F191		Referential delete actions	
F200		TRUNCATE TABLE statement	
F201	Core	CAST function	
F202		TRUNCATE TABLE: identity column restart option	
F221	Core	Explicit defaults	
F222		INSERT statement: DEFAULT VALUES clause	
F231		Privilege tables	

Identifier	Core?	Description	Comment
F251		Domain support	
F261	Core	CASE expression	
F261-01	Core	Simple CASE	
F261-02	Core	Searched CASE	
F261-03	Core	NULLIF	
F261-04	Core	COALESCE	
F262		Extended CASE expression	
F271		Compound character literals	
F281		LIKE enhancements	
F292		UNIQUE null treatment	
F302		INTERSECT table operator	
F303		INTERSECT DISTINCT table operator	
F302-02		INTERSECT ALL table operator	
F304		EXCEPT ALL table operator	
F305		INTERSECT ALL table operator	
F311	Core	Schema definition statement	
F311-01	Core	CREATE SCHEMA	
F311-02	Core	CREATE TABLE for persistent base tables	
F311-03	Core	CREATE VIEW	
F311-04	Core	CREATE VIEW: WITH CHECK OPTION	
F311-05	Core	GRANT statement	
F312		MERGE statement	
F313		Enhanced MERGE statement	
F314		MERGE statement with DELETE branch	
F321		User authorization	
F341		Usage tables	
F361		Subprogram support	
F381		Extended schema manipulation	
F382		Alter column data type	
F383		Set column not null clause	
F384		Drop identity property clause	
F385		Drop column generation expression clause	
F386		Set identity column generation clause	
F387		ALTER TABLE statement: ALTER COLUMN clause	
F388		ALTER TABLE statement: ADD/DROP CONSTRAINT clause	
F391		Long identifiers	
F392		Unicode escapes in identifiers	
F393		Unicode escapes in literals	
F394		Optional normal form specification	
F401		Extended joined table	

Identifier	Core?	Description	Comment
F402		Named column joins for LOBs, arrays, and multisets	
F404		Range variable for common column names	
F405		NATURAL JOIN	
F406		FULL OUTER JOIN	
F407		CROSS JOIN	
F411		Time zone specification	differences regarding literal interpretation
F421		National character	
F431		Read-only scrollable cursors	
F432		FETCH with explicit NEXT	
F433		FETCH FIRST	
F434		FETCH LAST	
F435		FETCH PRIOR	
F436		FETCH ABSOLUTE	
F437		FETCH RELATIVE	
F438		Scrollable cursors	
F441		Extended set function support	
F442		Mixed column references in set functions	
F471	Core	Scalar subquery values	
F481	Core	Expanded NULL predicate	
F491		Constraint management	
F501	Core	Features and conformance views	
F501-01	Core	SQL_FEATURES view	
F501-02	Core	SQL_SIZING view	
F502		Enhanced documentation tables	
F531		Temporary tables	
F555		Enhanced seconds precision	
F561		Full value expressions	
F571		Truth value tests	
F591		Derived tables	
F611		Indicator data types	
F641		Row and table constructors	
F651		Catalog name qualifiers	
F661		Simple tables	
F672		Retrospective CHECK constraints	
F690		Collation support	
F692		Extended collation support	
F701		Referential update actions	
F711		ALTER domain	
F731		INSERT column privileges	
F751		View CHECK enhancements	

Identifier	Core?	Description	Comment
F761		Session management	
F762		CURRENT_CATALOG	
F763		CURRENT_SCHEMA	
F771		Connection management	
F781		Self-referencing operations	
F791		Insensitive cursors	
F801		Full set function	
F850		Top-level ORDER BY in query expression	
F851		ORDER BY in subqueries	
F852		Top-level ORDER BY in views	
F855		Nested ORDER BY in query expression	
F856		Nested FETCH FIRST in query expression	
F857		Top-level FETCH FIRST in query expression	
F858		FETCH FIRST in subqueries	
F859		Top-level FETCH FIRST in views	
F860		Dynamic FETCH FIRST row count	
F861		Top-level OFFSET in query expression	
F862		OFFSET in subqueries	
F863		Nested OFFSET in query expression	
F864		Top-level OFFSET in views	
F865		Dynamic offset row count in OFFSET	
F867		FETCH FIRST clause: WITH TIES option	
F868		ORDER BY in grouped table	
F869		SQL implementation info population	
S071		SQL paths in function and type name resolution	
S090		Minimal array support	
S092		Arrays of user-defined types	
S095		Array constructors by query	
S096		Optional array bounds	
S098		ARRAY_AGG	
S099		Array expressions	
S111		ONLY in query expressions	
S201		SQL-invoked routines on arrays	
S203		Array parameters	
S204		Array as result type of functions	
S211		User-defined cast functions	
S301		Enhanced UNNEST	
S404		TRIM_ARRAY	
T031		BOOLEAN data type	
T054		GREATEST and LEAST	different null handling
T055		String padding functions	

Identifier	Core?	Description	Comment
T056		Multi-character TRIM functions	
T061		UCS support	
T071		BIGINT data type	
T081		Optional string types maximum length	
T121		WITH (excluding RECURSIVE) in query expression	
T122		WITH (excluding RECURSIVE) in subquery	
T131		Recursive query	
T132		Recursive query in subquery	
T133		Enhanced cycle mark values	
T141		SIMILAR predicate	
T151		DISTINCT predicate	
T152		DISTINCT predicate with negation	
T171		LIKE clause in table definition	
T172		AS subquery clause in table definition	
T173		Extended LIKE clause in table definition	
T174		Identity columns	
T177		Sequence generator support: simple restart option	
T178		Identity columns: simple restart option	
T191		Referential action RESTRICT	
T201		Comparable data types for referential constraints	
T212		Enhanced trigger capability	
T213		INSTEAD OF triggers	
T214		BEFORE triggers	
T215		AFTER triggers	
T216		Ability to require true search condition before trigger is invoked	
T217		TRIGGER privilege	
T241		START TRANSACTION statement	
T261		Chained transactions	
T271		Savepoints	
T281		SELECT privilege with column granularity	
T285		Enhanced derived column names	
T312		OVERLAY function	
T321-01	Core	User-defined functions with no overloading	
T321-02	Core	User-defined stored procedures with no overloading	
T321-03	Core	Function invocation	
T321-04	Core	CALL statement	
T321-05	Core	RETURN statement	
T321-06	Core	ROUTINES view	
T321-07	Core	PARAMETERS view	
T323		Explicit security for external routines	

Identifier	Core?	Description	Comment
T325		Qualified SQL parameter references	
T331		Basic roles	
T332		Extended roles	
T341		Overloading of SQL-invoked functions and SQL-invoked procedures	
T351		Bracketed comments	
T431		Extended grouping capabilities	
T432		Nested and concatenated GROUPING SETS	
T433		Multi-argument GROUPING function	
T434		GROUP BY DISTINCT	
T441		ABS and MOD functions	
T461		Symmetric BETWEEN predicate	
T491		LATERAL derived table	
T501		Enhanced EXISTS predicate	
T521		Named arguments in CALL statement	
T523		Default values for INOUT parameters of SQL-invoked procedures	
T524		Named arguments in routine invocations other than a CALL statement	
T525		Default values for parameters of SQL-invoked functions	
T551		Optional key words for default syntax	
T581		Regular expression substring function	
T591		UNIQUE constraints of possibly null columns	
T611		Elementary OLAP operations	
T612		Advanced OLAP operations	
T613		Sampling	
T614		NTILE function	
T615		LEAD and LAG functions	
T617		FIRST_VALUE and LAST_VALUE functions	
T620		WINDOW clause: GROUPS option	
T621		Enhanced numeric functions	
T622		Trigonometric functions	
T623		General logarithm functions	
T624		Common logarithm functions	
T626		ANY_VALUE	
T627		Window framed COUNT DISTINCT	
T631	Core	IN predicate with one list element	
T651		SQL-schema statements in SQL routines	
T653		SQL-schema statements in external routines	
T655		Cyclically dependent routines	
T661		Non-decimal integer literals	

Identifier	Core?	Description	Comment
T662		Underscores in numeric literals	
T670		Schema and data statement mixing	
T803		String-based JSON	
T811		Basic SQL/JSON constructor functions	
T812		SQL/JSON: JSON_OBJECTAGG	
T813		SQL/JSON: JSON_ARRAYAGG with ORDER BY	
T814		Colon in JSON_OBJECT or JSON_OBJECTAGG	
T822		SQL/JSON: IS JSON WITH UNIQUE KEYS predicate	
T830		Enforcing unique keys in SQL/JSON constructor functions	
T831		SQL/JSON path language: strict mode	
T832		SQL/JSON path language: item method	
T833		SQL/JSON path language: multiple subscripts	
T834		SQL/JSON path language: wildcard member accessor	
T835		SQL/JSON path language: filter expressions	
T836		SQL/JSON path language: starts with predicate	
T837		SQL/JSON path language: regex_like predicate	
T840		Hex integer literals in SQL/JSON path language	
T851		SQL/JSON: optional keywords for default syntax	
T879		JSON in equality operations	with jsonb
T880		JSON in grouping operations	with jsonb
X010		XML type	
X011		Arrays of XML type	
X014		Attributes of XML type	
X016		Persistent XML values	
X020		XMLConcat	
X031		XMLElement	
X032		XMLForest	
X034		XMLAgg	
X035		XMLAgg: ORDER BY option	
X036		XMLComment	
X037		XMLPI	
X040		Basic table mapping	
X041		Basic table mapping: null absent	
X042		Basic table mapping: null as nil	
X043		Basic table mapping: table as forest	
X044		Basic table mapping: table as element	
X045		Basic table mapping: with target namespace	
X046		Basic table mapping: data mapping	
X047		Basic table mapping: metadata mapping	



Identifier	Core?	Description	Comment
X048		Basic table mapping: base64 encoding of binary strings	
X049		Basic table mapping: hex encoding of binary strings	
X050		Advanced table mapping	
X051		Advanced table mapping: null absent	
X052		Advanced table mapping: null as nil	
X053		Advanced table mapping: table as forest	
X054		Advanced table mapping: table as element	
X055		Advanced table mapping: with target namespace	
X056		Advanced table mapping: data mapping	
X057		Advanced table mapping: metadata mapping	
X058		Advanced table mapping: base64 encoding of binary strings	
X059		Advanced table mapping: hex encoding of binary strings	
X060		XMLParse: character string input and CONTENT option	
X061		XMLParse: character string input and DOCUMENT option	
X069		XMLSerialize: INDENT	
X070		XMLSerialize: character string serialization and CONTENT option	
X071		XMLSerialize: character string serialization and DOCUMENT option	
X072		XMLSerialize: character string serialization	
X090		XML document predicate	
X120		XML parameters in SQL routines	
X121		XML parameters in external routines	
X221		XML passing mechanism BY VALUE	
X301		XMLTable: derived column list option	
X302		XMLTable: ordinality column option	
X303		XMLTable: column default option	
X304		XMLTable: passing a context item	must be XML DOCUMENT
X400		Name and identifier mapping	
X410		Alter column data type: XML type	

## D.2. Unsupported Features

The following features defined in SQL:2023 are not implemented in this release of PostgreSQL. In a few cases, equivalent functionality is available.

Identifier	Core?	Description	Comment
B011		Embedded Ada	
B013		Embedded COBOL	

Identifier	Core?	Description	Comment
B014		Embedded Fortran	
B015		Embedded MUMPS	
B016		Embedded Pascal	
B017		Embedded PL/I	
B030		Enhanced dynamic SQL	
B031		Basic dynamic SQL	
B032		Extended dynamic SQL	
B033		Untyped SQL-invoked function arguments	
B034		Dynamic specification of cursor attributes	
B035		Non-extended descriptor names	
B036		Describe input statement	
B041		Extensions to embedded SQL exception declarations	
B051		Enhanced execution rights	
B111		Module language Ada	
B112		Module language C	
B113		Module language COBOL	
B114		Module language Fortran	
B115		Module language MUMPS	
B116		Module language Pascal	
B117		Module language PL/I	
B121		Routine language Ada	
B122		Routine language C	
B123		Routine language COBOL	
B124		Routine language Fortran	
B125		Routine language MUMPS	
B126		Routine language Pascal	
B127		Routine language PL/I	
B200		Polymorphic table functions	
B201		More than one PTF generic table parameter	
B202		PTF copartitioning	
B203		More than one copartition specification	
B204		PRUNE WHEN EMPTY	
B205		Pass-through columns	
B206		PTF descriptor parameters	
B207		Cross products of partitionings	
B208		PTF component procedure interface	
B209		PTF extended names	
B211		Module language Ada: VARCHAR and NUMERIC support	
B221		Routine language Ada: VARCHAR and NUMERIC support	

Identifier	Core?	Description	Comment
F054		TIMESTAMP in DATE type precedence list	
F120		Get diagnostics statement	
F121		Basic diagnostics management	
F122		Enhanced diagnostics management	
F123		All diagnostics	
F124		SET TRANSACTION statement: DIAGNOSTICS SIZE clause	
F263		Comma-separated predicates in simple CASE expression	
F291		UNIQUE predicate	
F301		CORRESPONDING in query expressions	
F403		Partitioned join tables	
F451		Character set definition	
F461		Named character sets	
F492		Optional table constraint enforcement	
F521		Assertions	
F671		Subqueries in CHECK constraints	intentionally omitted
F673		Reads SQL-data routine invocations in CHECK constraints	
F693		SQL-session and client module collations	
F695		Translation support	
F696		Additional translation documentation	
F721		Deferrable constraints	foreign and unique keys only
F741		Referential MATCH types	no partial match yet
F812		Basic flagging	
F813		Extended flagging	
F821		Local table references	
F831		Full cursor update	
F832		Updatable scrollable cursors	
F833		Updatable ordered cursors	
F841		LIKE_REGEX predicate	consider regexp_like()
F842		OCCURRENCES_REGEX function	consider regexp_matches()
F843		POSITION_REGEX function	consider regexp_instr()
F844		SUBSTRING_REGEX function	consider regexp_substr()
F845		TRANSLATE_REGEX function	consider regexp_replace()
F846		Octet support in regular expression operators	
F847		Non-constant regular expressions	
F866		FETCH FIRST clause: PERCENT option	

Identifier	Core?	Description	Comment
R010		Row pattern recognition: FROM clause	
R020		Row pattern recognition: WINDOW clause	
R030		Row pattern recognition: full aggregate support	
S011	Core	Distinct data types	
S011-01	Core	USER_DEFINED_TYPES view	
S023		Basic structured types	
S024		Enhanced structured types	
S025		Final structured types	
S026		Self-referencing structured types	
S027		Create method by specific method name	
S028		Permutable UDT options list	
S041		Basic reference types	
S043		Enhanced reference types	
S051		Create table of type	partially supported
S081		Subtables	
S091		Basic array support	partially supported
S093		Arrays of distinct types	
S094		Arrays of reference types	
S097		Array element assignment	
S151		Type predicate	see pg_typeof()
S161		Subtype treatment	
S162		Subtype treatment for references	
S202		SQL-invoked routines on multisets	
S231		Structured type locators	
S232		Array locators	
S233		Multiset locators	
S241		Transform functions	
S242		Alter transform statement	
S251		User-defined orderings	
S261		Specific type method	
S271		Basic multiset support	
S272		Multisets of user-defined types	
S274		Multisets of reference types	
S275		Advanced multiset support	
S281		Nested collection types	
S291		Unique constraint on entire row	
S401		Distinct types based on array types	
S402		Distinct types based on multiset types	
S403		ARRAY_MAX_CARDINALITY	
T011		Timestamp in Information Schema	
T021		BINARY and VARBINARY data types	

Identifier	Core?	Description	Comment
T022		Advanced support for BINARY and VARBINARY data types	
T023		Compound binary literals	
T024		Spaces in binary literals	
T039		CLOB locator: non-holdable	
T040		Concatenation of CLOBs	
T041		Basic LOB data type support	
T042		Extended LOB data type support	
T043		Multiplier T	
T044		Multiplier P	
T045		BLOB data type	
T046		CLOB data type	
T047		POSITION, OCTET_LENGTH, TRIM, and SUBSTRING for BLOBs	
T048		Concatenation of BLOBs	
T049		BLOB locator: non-holdable	
T050		POSITION, CHAR_LENGTH, OCTET_LENGTH, LOWER, TRIM, UPPER, and SUBSTRING for CLOBs	
T051		Row types	
T053		Explicit aliases for all-fields reference	
T062		Character length units	
T076		DECFLOAT data type	
T101		Enhanced nullability determination	
T111		Updatable joins, unions, and columns	
T175		Generated columns	mostly supported
T176		Sequence generator support	supported except for NEXT VALUE FOR
T180		System-versioned tables	
T181		Application-time period tables	
T200		Trigger DDL	similar but not fully compatible
T211		Basic trigger capability	
T218		Multiple triggers for the same event executed in the order created	intentionally omitted
T231		Sensitive cursors	
T251		SET TRANSACTION statement: LOCAL option	
T262		Multiple server transactions	
T272		Enhanced savepoint management	
T301		Functional dependencies	partially supported
T321	Core	Basic SQL-invoked routines	partially supported
T322		Declared data type attributes	
T324		Explicit security for SQL routines	

Identifier	Core?	Description	Comment
T326		Table functions	
T471		Result sets return value	
T472		DESCRIBE CURSOR	
T495		Combined data change and retrieval	different syntax
T502		Period predicates	
T511		Transaction counts	
T522		Default values for IN parameters of SQL-invoked procedures	supported except DEFAULT key word in invocation
T561		Holdable locators	
T571		Array-returning external SQL-invoked functions	
T572		Multiset-returning external SQL-invoked functions	
T601		Local cursor references	
T616		Null treatment option for LEAD and LAG functions	
T618		NTH_VALUE function	function exists, but some options missing
T619		Nested window functions	
T625		LISTAGG	
T641		Multiple column assignment	only some syntax variants supported
T652		SQL-dynamic statements in SQL routines	
T654		SQL-dynamic statements in external routines	
T801		JSON data type	
T802		Enhanced JSON data type	
T821		Basic SQL/JSON query operators	
T823		SQL/JSON: PASSING clause	
T824		JSON_TABLE: specific PLAN clause	
T825		SQL/JSON: ON EMPTY and ON ERROR clauses	
T826		General value expression in ON ERROR or ON EMPTY clauses	
T827		JSON_TABLE: sibling NESTED COLUMNS clauses	
T828		JSON_QUERY	
T829		JSON_QUERY: array wrapper options	
T838		JSON_TABLE: PLAN DEFAULT clause	
T839		Formatted cast of datetimes to/from character strings	
T860		SQL/JSON simplified accessor: column reference only	
T861		SQL/JSON simplified accessor: case-sensitive JSON member accessor	
T862		SQL/JSON simplified accessor: wildcard member accessor	
T863		SQL/JSON simplified accessor: single-quoted string literal as member accessor	
T864		SQL/JSON simplified accessor	

Identifier	Core?	Description	Comment
T865		SQL/JSON item method: bigint()	
T866		SQL/JSON item method: boolean()	
T867		SQL/JSON item method: date()	
T868		SQL/JSON item method: decimal()	
T869		SQL/JSON item method: decimal() with precision and scale	
T870		SQL/JSON item method: integer()	
T871		SQL/JSON item method: number()	
T872		SQL/JSON item method: string()	
T873		SQL/JSON item method: time()	
T874		SQL/JSON item method: time_tz()	
T875		SQL/JSON item method: time precision	
T876		SQL/JSON item method: timestamp()	
T877		SQL/JSON item method: timestamp_tz()	
T878		SQL/JSON item method: timestamp precision	
T881		JSON in ordering operations	with jsonb, partially supported
T882		JSON in multiset element grouping operations	
M001		Datalinks	
M002		Datalinks via SQL/CLI	
M003		Datalinks via Embedded SQL	
M004		Foreign data support	partially supported
M005		Foreign schema support	
M006		GetSQLString routine	
M007		TransmitRequest	
M009		GetOpts and GetStatistics routines	
M010		Foreign-data wrapper support	different API
M011		Datalinks via Ada	
M012		Datalinks via C	
M013		Datalinks via COBOL	
M014		Datalinks via Fortran	
M015		Datalinks via M	
M016		Datalinks via Pascal	
M017		Datalinks via PL/I	
M018		Foreign-data wrapper interface routines in Ada	
M019		Foreign-data wrapper interface routines in C	different API
M020		Foreign-data wrapper interface routines in COBOL	
M021		Foreign-data wrapper interface routines in Fortran	
M022		Foreign-data wrapper interface routines in MUMPS	
M023		Foreign-data wrapper interface routines in Pascal	
M024		Foreign-data wrapper interface routines in PL/I	

Identifier	Core?	Description	Comment
M030		SQL-server foreign data support	
M031		Foreign-data wrapper general routines	
X012		Multisets of XML type	
X013		Distinct types of XML type	
X015		Fields of XML type	
X025		XMLCast	
X030		XMLDocument	
X038		XMLText	
X065		XMLParse: binary string input and CONTENT option	
X066		XMLParse: binary string input and DOCUMENT option	
X068		XMLSerialize: BOM	
X073		XMLSerialize: binary string serialization and CONTENT option	
X074		XMLSerialize: binary string serialization and DOCUMENT option	
X075		XMLSerialize: binary string serialization	
X076		XMLSerialize: VERSION	
X077		XMLSerialize: explicit ENCODING option	
X078		XMLSerialize: explicit XML declaration	
X080		Namespaces in XML publishing	
X081		Query-level XML namespace declarations	
X082		XML namespace declarations in DML	
X083		XML namespace declarations in DDL	
X084		XML namespace declarations in compound statements	
X085		Predefined namespace prefixes	
X086		XML namespace declarations in XMLTable	
X091		XML content predicate	
X096		XMLExists	XPath 1.0 only
X100		Host language support for XML: CONTENT option	
X101		Host language support for XML: DOCUMENT option	
X110		Host language support for XML: VARCHAR mapping	
X111		Host language support for XML: CLOB mapping	
X112		Host language support for XML: BLOB mapping	
X113		Host language support for XML: STRIP WHITESPACE option	
X114		Host language support for XML: PRESERVE WHITESPACE option	
X131		Query-level XMLBINARY clause	
X132		XMLBINARY clause in DML	
X133		XMLBINARY clause in DDL	
X134		XMLBINARY clause in compound statements	



Identifier	Core?	Description	Comment
X135		XMLBINARY clause in subqueries	
X141		IS VALID predicate: data-driven case	
X142		IS VALID predicate: ACCORDING TO clause	
X143		IS VALID predicate: ELEMENT clause	
X144		IS VALID predicate: schema location	
X145		IS VALID predicate outside check constraints	
X151		IS VALID predicate: with DOCUMENT option	
X152		IS VALID predicate: with CONTENT option	
X153		IS VALID predicate: with SEQUENCE option	
X155		IS VALID predicate: NAMESPACE without ELEMENT clause	
X157		IS VALID predicate: NO NAMESPACE with ELEMENT clause	
X160		Basic Information Schema for registered XML schemas	
X161		Advanced Information Schema for registered XML schemas	
X170		XML null handling options	
X171		NIL ON NO CONTENT option	
X181		XML(DOCUMENT(UNTYPED)) type	
X182		XML(DOCUMENT(ANY)) type	
X190		XML(SEQUENCE) type	
X191		XML(DOCUMENT(XMLSCHEMA)) type	
X192		XML(CONTENT(XMLSCHEMA)) type	
X200		XMLQuery	
X201		XMLQuery: RETURNING CONTENT	
X202		XMLQuery: RETURNING SEQUENCE	
X203		XMLQuery: passing a context item	
X204		XMLQuery: initializing an XQuery variable	
X205		XMLQuery: EMPTY ON EMPTY option	
X206		XMLQuery: NULL ON EMPTY option	
X211		XML 1.1 support	
X222		XML passing mechanism BY REF	parser accepts BY REF but ignores it; passing is always BY VALUE
X231		XML(CONTENT(UNTYPED)) type	
X232		XML(CONTENT(ANY)) type	
X241		RETURNING CONTENT in XML publishing	
X242		RETURNING SEQUENCE in XML publishing	
X251		Persistent XML values of XML(DOCUMENT(UNTYPED)) type	

Identifier	Core?	Description	Comment
X252		Persistent XML values of XML(DOCUMENT(ANY)) type	
X253		Persistent XML values of XML(CONTENT(UN-TYPED)) type	
X254		Persistent XML values of XML(CONTENT(ANY)) type	
X255		Persistent XML values of XML(SEQUENCE) type	
X256		Persistent XML values of XML(DOCUMENT(XM-LSHEMA)) type	
X257		Persistent XML values of XML(CONTENT(XM-LSHEMA)) type	
X260		XML type: ELEMENT clause	
X261		XML type: NAMESPACE without ELEMENT clause	
X263		XML type: NO NAMESPACE with ELEMENT clause	
X264		XML type: schema location	
X271		XMLValidate: data-driven case	
X272		XMLValidate: ACCORDING TO clause	
X273		XMLValidate: ELEMENT clause	
X274		XMLValidate: schema location	
X281		XMLValidate with DOCUMENT option	
X282		XMLValidate with CONTENT option	
X283		XMLValidate with SEQUENCE option	
X284		XMLValidate: NAMESPACE without ELEMENT clause	
X286		XMLValidate: NO NAMESPACE with ELEMENT clause	
X300		XMLTable	XPath 1.0 only
X305		XMLTable: initializing an XQuery variable	

## D.3. XML Limits and Conformance to SQL/XML

Significant revisions to the XML-related specifications in ISO/IEC 9075-14 (SQL/XML) were introduced with SQL:2006. PostgreSQL's implementation of the XML data type and related functions largely follows the earlier 2003 edition, with some borrowing from later editions. In particular:

- Where the current standard provides a family of XML data types to hold “document” or “content” in untyped or XML Schema-typed variants, and a type `XML ( SEQUENCE )` to hold arbitrary pieces of XML content, PostgreSQL provides the single `xml` type, which can hold “document” or “content”. There is no equivalent of the standard's “sequence” type.
- PostgreSQL provides two functions introduced in SQL:2006, but in variants that use the XPath 1.0 language, rather than XML Query as specified for them in the standard.

This section presents some of the resulting differences you may encounter.

## D.3.1. Queries Are Restricted to XPath 1.0

The PostgreSQL-specific functions `xpath()` and `xpath_exists()` query XML documents using the XPath language. PostgreSQL also provides XPath-only variants of the standard functions `XML-EXISTS` and `XMLTABLE`, which officially use the XQuery language. For all of these functions, PostgreSQL relies on the `libxml2` library, which provides only XPath 1.0.

There is a strong connection between the XQuery language and XPath versions 2.0 and later: any expression that is syntactically valid and executes successfully in both produces the same result (with a minor exception for expressions containing numeric character references or predefined entity references, which XQuery replaces with the corresponding character while XPath leaves them alone). But there is no such connection between these languages and XPath 1.0; it was an earlier language and differs in many respects.

There are two categories of limitation to keep in mind: the restriction from XQuery to XPath for the functions specified in the SQL standard, and the restriction of XPath to version 1.0 for both the standard and the PostgreSQL-specific functions.

### D.3.1.1. Restriction of XQuery to XPath

Features of XQuery beyond those of XPath include:

- XQuery expressions can construct and return new XML nodes, in addition to all possible XPath values. XPath can create and return values of the atomic types (numbers, strings, and so on) but can only return XML nodes that were already present in documents supplied as input to the expression.
- XQuery has control constructs for iteration, sorting, and grouping.
- XQuery allows declaration and use of local functions.

Recent XPath versions begin to offer capabilities overlapping with these (such as functional-style `for-each` and `sort`, anonymous functions, and `parse-xml` to create a node from a string), but such features were not available before XPath 3.0.

### D.3.1.2. Restriction of XPath to 1.0

For developers familiar with XQuery and XPath 2.0 or later, XPath 1.0 presents a number of differences to contend with:

- The fundamental type of an XQuery/XPath expression, the *sequence*, which can contain XML nodes, atomic values, or both, does not exist in XPath 1.0. A 1.0 expression can only produce a node-set (containing zero or more XML nodes), or a single atomic value.
- Unlike an XQuery/XPath sequence, which can contain any desired items in any desired order, an XPath 1.0 node-set has no guaranteed order and, like any set, does not allow multiple appearances of the same item.

#### Note

The `libxml2` library does seem to always return node-sets to PostgreSQL with their members in the same relative order they had in the input document. Its documentation does not commit to this behavior, and an XPath 1.0 expression cannot control it.

- While XQuery/XPath provides all of the types defined in XML Schema and many operators and functions over those types, XPath 1.0 has only node-sets and the three atomic types `boolean`, `double`, and `string`.

- XPath 1.0 has no conditional operator. An XQuery/XPath expression such as `if ( hat ) then hat/@size else "no hat"` has no XPath 1.0 equivalent.
- XPath 1.0 has no ordering comparison operator for strings. Both `"cat" < "dog"` and `"cat" > "dog"` are false, because each is a numeric comparison of two NaNs. In contrast, `=` and `!=` do compare the strings as strings.
- XPath 1.0 blurs the distinction between *value comparisons* and *general comparisons* as XQuery/XPath define them. Both `sale/@hatsize = 7` and `sale/@customer = "alice"` are existentially quantified comparisons, true if there is any `sale` with the given value for the attribute, but `sale/@taxable = false()` is a value comparison to the *effective boolean value* of a whole node-set. It is true only if no `sale` has a `taxable` attribute at all.
- In the XQuery/XPath data model, a *document node* can have either document form (i.e., exactly one top-level element, with only comments and processing instructions outside of it) or content form (with those constraints relaxed). Its equivalent in XPath 1.0, the *root node*, can only be in document form. This is part of the reason an `xml` value passed as the context item to any PostgreSQL XPath-based function must be in document form.

The differences highlighted here are not all of them. In XQuery and the 2.0 and later versions of XPath, there is an XPath 1.0 compatibility mode, and the W3C lists of function library changes<sup>1</sup> and language changes<sup>2</sup> applied in that mode offer a more complete (but still not exhaustive) account of the differences. The compatibility mode cannot make the later languages exactly equivalent to XPath 1.0.

### D.3.1.3. Mappings between SQL and XML Data Types and Values

In SQL:2006 and later, both directions of conversion between standard SQL data types and the XML Schema types are specified precisely. However, the rules are expressed using the types and semantics of XQuery/XPath, and have no direct application to the different data model of XPath 1.0.

When PostgreSQL maps SQL data values to XML (as in `xmlelement`), or XML to SQL (as in the output columns of `xmltable`), except for a few cases treated specially, PostgreSQL simply assumes that the XML data type's XPath 1.0 string form will be valid as the text-input form of the SQL datatype, and conversely. This rule has the virtue of simplicity while producing, for many data types, results similar to the mappings specified in the standard.

Where interoperability with other systems is a concern, for some data types, it may be necessary to use data type formatting functions (such as those in Section 9.8) explicitly to produce the standard mappings.

## D.3.2. Incidental Limits of the Implementation

This section concerns limits that are not inherent in the libxml2 library, but apply to the current implementation in PostgreSQL.

### D.3.2.1. Only BY VALUE Passing Mechanism Is Supported

The SQL standard defines two *passing mechanisms* that apply when passing an XML argument from SQL to an XML function or receiving a result: `BY REF`, in which a particular XML value retains its node identity, and `BY VALUE`, in which the content of the XML is passed but node identity is not preserved. A mechanism can be specified before a list of parameters, as the default mechanism for all of them, or after any parameter, to override the default.

To illustrate the difference, if `x` is an XML value, these two queries in an SQL:2006 environment would produce true and false, respectively:

---

<sup>1</sup> <https://www.w3.org/TR/2010/REC-xpath-functions-20101214/#xpath1-compatibility>

<sup>2</sup> <https://www.w3.org/TR/xpath20/#id-backwards-compatibility>

```
SELECT XMLQUERY('$a is $b' PASSING BY REF x AS a, x AS b NULL ON  
EMPTY);  
SELECT XMLQUERY('$a is $b' PASSING BY VALUE x AS a, x AS b NULL ON  
EMPTY);
```

PostgreSQL will accept `BY VALUE` or `BY REF` in an `XMLEXISTS` or `XMLTABLE` construct, but it ignores them. The `xml` data type holds a character-string serialized representation, so there is no node identity to preserve, and passing is always effectively `BY VALUE`.

### **D.3.2.2. Cannot Pass Named Parameters to Queries**

The XPath-based functions support passing one parameter to serve as the XPath expression's context item, but do not support passing additional values to be available to the expression as named parameters.

### **D.3.2.3. No XML(SEQUENCE) Type**

The PostgreSQL `xml` data type can only hold a value in `DOCUMENT` or `CONTENT` form. An XQuery/XPath expression context item must be a single XML node or atomic value, but XPath 1.0 further restricts it to be only an XML node, and has no node type allowing `CONTENT`. The upshot is that a well-formed `DOCUMENT` is the only form of XML value that PostgreSQL can supply as an XPath context item.

---

# Appendix E. Release Notes

The release notes contain the significant changes in each PostgreSQL release, with major features and migration issues listed at the top. The release notes do not contain changes that affect only a few users or changes that are internal and therefore not user-visible. For example, the optimizer is improved in almost every release, but the improvements are usually observed by users as simply faster queries.

A complete list of changes for each release can be obtained by viewing the Git logs for each release. The `pgsql-committers` email list<sup>1</sup> records all source code changes as well. There is also a web interface<sup>2</sup> that shows changes to specific files.

The name appearing next to each item represents the major developer for that item. Of course all changes involve community discussion and patch review, so each item is truly a community effort.

## E.1. Release 16.2

**Release date:** 2024-02-08

This release contains a variety of fixes from 16.1. For information about new features in major release 16, see Section E.3.

### E.1.1. Migration to Version 16.2

A dump/restore is not required for those running 16.X.

However, one bug was fixed that could have resulted in corruption of GIN indexes during concurrent updates. If you suspect such corruption, reindex affected indexes after installing this update.

Also, if you are upgrading from a version earlier than 16.1, see Section E.2.

### E.1.2. Changes

- Tighten security restrictions within `REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW CONCURRENTLY` (Heikki Linnakangas)

One step of a concurrent refresh command was run under weak security restrictions. If a materialized view's owner could persuade a superuser or other high-privileged user to perform a concurrent refresh on that view, the view's owner could control code executed with the privileges of the user running `REFRESH`. Fix things so that all user-determined code is run as the view's owner, as expected.

The only known exploit for this error does not work in PostgreSQL 16.0 and later, so it may be that v16 is not vulnerable in practice.

The PostgreSQL Project thanks Pedro Gallegos for reporting this problem. (CVE-2024-0985)

- Fix memory leak when performing JIT inlining (Andres Freund, Daniel Gustafsson)

There have been multiple reports of backend processes suffering out-of-memory conditions after sufficiently many JIT compilations. This fix should resolve that.

- Avoid generating incorrect partitioned-join plans (Richard Guo)

Some uncommon situations involving lateral references could create incorrect plans. Affected queries could produce wrong answers, or odd failures such as “variable not found in subplan target list”, or executor crashes.

---

<sup>1</sup> <https://www.postgresql.org/list/pgsql-committers/>

<sup>2</sup> <https://git.postgresql.org/gitweb/?p=postgresql.git;a=summary>

- Fix incorrect wrapping of subquery output expressions in PlaceholderVars (Tom Lane)

This fixes incorrect results when a subquery is underneath an outer join and has an output column that laterally references something outside the outer join's scope. The output column might not appear as NULL when it should do so due to the action of the outer join.

- Fix misprocessing of window function run conditions (Richard Guo)

This oversight could lead to “WindowFunc not found in subplan target lists” errors.

- Fix detection of inner-side uniqueness for Memoize plans (Richard Guo)

This mistake could lead to “cache entry already complete” errors.

- Fix computation of nullingrels when constant-folding field selection (Richard Guo)

Failure to do this led to errors like “wrong varnullingrels (b) (expected (b 3)) for Var 2/2”.

- Skip inappropriate actions when MERGE causes a cross-partition update (Dean Rasheed)

When executing a MERGE UPDATE action on a partitioned table, if the UPDATE is turned into a DELETE and INSERT due to changing a partition key column, skip firing AFTER UPDATE ROW triggers, as well as other post-update actions such as RLS checks. These actions would typically fail, which is why a regular UPDATE doesn't do them in such cases; MERGE shouldn't either.

- Cope with BEFORE ROW DELETE triggers in cross-partition MERGE updates (Dean Rasheed)

If such a trigger attempted to prevent the update by returning NULL, MERGE would suffer an error or assertion failure.

- Prevent access to a no-longer-pinned buffer in BEFORE ROW UPDATE triggers (Alexander Lakhin, Tom Lane)

If the tuple being updated had just been updated and moved to another page by another session, there was a narrow window where we would attempt to fetch data from the new tuple version without any pin on its buffer. In principle this could result in garbage data appearing in non-updated columns of the proposed new tuple. The odds of problems in practice seem rather low, however.

- Avoid requesting an oversize shared-memory area in parallel hash join (Thomas Munro, Andrei Lepikhov, Alexander Korotkov)

The limiting value was too large, allowing “invalid DSA memory alloc request size” errors to occur with sufficiently large expected hash table sizes.

- Fix corruption of local buffer state when an error occurs while trying to extend a temporary table (Tender Wang)

- Fix use of wrong tuple slot while evaluating DISTINCT aggregates that have multiple arguments (David Rowley)

This mistake could lead to errors such as “attribute 1 of type record has wrong type”.

- Avoid assertion failures in heap\_update( ) and heap\_delete( ) when a tuple to be updated by a foreign-key enforcement trigger fails the extra visibility crosscheck (Alexander Lakhin)

This error had no impact in non-assert builds.

- Fix possible failure during ALTER TABLE ADD COLUMN on a complex inheritance tree (Tender Wang)

If a grandchild table would inherit the new column via multiple intermediate parents, the command failed with “tuple already updated by self”.

- Fix problems with duplicate token names in `ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION ... MAPPING` commands (Tender Wang, Michael Paquier)

- Fix `DROP ROLE` with duplicate role names (Michael Paquier)

Previously this led to a “tuple already updated by self” failure. Instead, ignore the duplicate.

- Properly lock the associated table during `DROP STATISTICS` (Tomas Vondra)

Failure to acquire the lock could result in “tuple concurrently deleted” errors if the `DROP` executes concurrently with `ANALYZE`.

- Fix function volatility checking for `GENERATED` and `DEFAULT` expressions (Tom Lane)

These places could fail to detect insertion of a volatile function default-argument expression, or decide that a polymorphic function is volatile although it is actually immutable on the datatype of interest. This could lead to improperly rejecting or accepting a `GENERATED` clause, or to mistakenly applying the constant-default-value optimization in `ALTER TABLE ADD COLUMN`.

- Detect that a new catalog cache entry became stale while detoasting its fields (Tom Lane)

We expand any out-of-line fields in a catalog tuple before inserting it into the catalog caches. That involves database access which might cause invalidation of catalog cache entries — but the new entry isn't in the cache yet, so we would miss noticing that it should get invalidated. The result is a race condition in which an already-stale cache entry could get made, and then persist indefinitely. This would lead to hard-to-predict misbehavior. Fix by rechecking the tuple's visibility after detoasting.

- Fix edge-case integer overflow detection bug on some platforms (Dean Rasheed)

Computing `0 - INT64_MIN` should result in an overflow error, and did on most platforms. However, platforms with neither integer overflow builtins nor 128-bit integers would fail to spot the overflow, instead returning `INT64_MIN`.

- Detect Julian-date overflow when adding or subtracting an interval to/from a timestamp (Tom Lane)

Some cases that should cause an out-of-range error produced an incorrect result instead.

- Add more checks for overflow in `interval_mul()` and `interval_div()` (Dean Rasheed)

Some cases that should cause an out-of-range error produced an incorrect result instead.

- Allow `scram_SaltedPassword()` to be interrupted (Bowen Shi)

With large `scram_iterations` values, this function could take a long time to run. Allow it to be interrupted by query cancel requests.

- Ensure cached statistics are discarded after a change to `stats_fetch_consistency` (Shinya Kato)

In some code paths, it was possible for stale statistics to be returned.

- Make the `pg_file_settings` view check validity of unapplied values for settings with `backend` or `superuser-backend` context (Tom Lane)

Invalid values were not noted in the view as intended. This escaped detection because there are very few settings in these groups.

- Match collation too when matching an existing index to a new partitioned index (Peter Eisentraut)

Previously we could accept an index that has a different collation from the corresponding element of the partition key, possibly leading to misbehavior.



- Avoid failure if a child index is dropped concurrently with `REINDEX INDEX` on a partitioned index (Fei Changhong)
- Fix insufficient locking when cleaning up an incomplete split of a GIN index's internal page (Fei Changhong, Heikki Linnakangas)

The code tried to do this with shared rather than exclusive lock on the buffer. This could lead to index corruption if two processes attempted the cleanup concurrently.

- Avoid premature release of buffer pin in GIN index insertion (Tom Lane)

If an index root page split occurs concurrently with our own insertion, the code could fail with “buffer NNNN is not owned by resource owner”.

- Avoid failure with partitioned SP-GiST indexes (Tom Lane)

Trying to use an index of this kind could lead to “No such file or directory” errors.

- Fix ownership tests for large objects (Tom Lane)

Operations on large objects that require ownership privilege failed with “unrecognized class ID: 2613”, unless run by a superuser.

- Fix ownership change reporting for large objects (Tom Lane)

A no-op `ALTER LARGE OBJECT OWNER` command (that is, one selecting the existing owner) passed the wrong class ID to the `PostAlterHook`, probably confusing any extension using that hook.

- Fix reporting of I/O timing data in `EXPLAIN (BUFFERS)` (Michael Paquier)

The numbers labeled as “shared/local” actually refer only to shared buffers, so change that label to “shared”.

- Ensure durability of `CREATE DATABASE` (Noah Misch)

If an operating system crash occurred during or shortly after `CREATE DATABASE`, recovery could fail, or subsequent connections to the new database could fail. If a base backup was taken in that window, similar problems could be observed when trying to use the backup. The symptom would be that the database directory, `PG_VERSION` file, or `pg_filenode.map` file was missing or empty.

- Add more LOG messages when starting and ending recovery from a backup (Andres Freund)

This change provides additional information in the postmaster log that may be useful for diagnosing recovery problems.

- Prevent standby servers from incorrectly processing dead index tuples during subtransactions (Fei Changhong)

The `startedInRecovery` flag was not correctly set for a subtransaction. This affects only processing of dead index tuples. It could allow a query in a subtransaction to ignore index entries that it should return (if they are already dead on the primary server, but not dead to the standby transaction), or to prematurely mark index entries as dead that are not yet dead on the primary. It is not clear that the latter case has any serious consequences, but it's not the intended behavior.

- Fix signal handling in walreceiver processes (Heikki Linnakangas)

Revert a change that made walreceivers non-responsive to `SIGTERM` while waiting for the replication connection to be established.

- Fix integer overflow hazard in checking whether a record will fit into the WAL decoding buffer (Thomas Munro)

This bug appears to be only latent except when running a 32-bit PostgreSQL build on a 64-bit platform.

- Fix deadlock between a logical replication apply worker, its tablesync worker, and a session process trying to alter the subscription (Shlok Kyal)

One edge of the deadlock loop did not involve a lock wait, so the deadlock went undetected and would persist until manual intervention.

- Ensure that column default values are correctly transmitted by the pgoutput logical replication plugin (Nikhil Benesch)

`ALTER TABLE ADD COLUMN` with a constant default value for the new column avoids rewriting existing tuples, instead expecting that reading code will insert the correct default into a tuple that lacks that column. If replication was subsequently initiated on the table, pgoutput would transmit `NULL` instead of the correct default for such a column, causing incorrect replication on the subscriber.

- Fix failure of logical replication's initial sync for a table with no columns (Vignesh C)

This case generated an improperly-formatted `COPY` command.

- Re-validate a subscription's connection string before use (Vignesh C)

This is meant to detect cases where a subscription was created without a password (which is allowed to superusers) but then the subscription owner is changed to a non-superuser.

- Return the correct status code when a new client disconnects without responding to the server's password challenge (Liu Lang, Tom Lane)

In some cases we'd treat this as a loggable error, which was not the intention and tends to create log spam, since common clients like `psql` frequently do this. It may also confuse extensions that use `ClientAuthentication_hook`.

- Fix incompatibility with OpenSSL 3.2 (Tristan Partin, Bo Andreson)

Use the `BIO "app_data"` field for our private storage, instead of assuming it's okay to use the `"data"` field. This mistake didn't cause problems before, but with 3.2 it leads to crashes and complaints about double frees.

- Be more wary about OpenSSL not setting `errno` on error (Tom Lane)

If `errno` isn't set, assume the cause of the reported failure is read EOF. This fixes rare cases of strange error reports like "could not accept SSL connection: Success".

- Fix file descriptor leakage when a foreign data wrapper's `ForeignAsyncRequest` function fails (Heikki Linnakangas)

- Fix minor memory leak in connection string validation for `CREATE SUBSCRIPTION` (Jeff Davis)

- Report `ENOMEM` errors from file-related system calls as `ERRCODE_OUT_OF_MEMORY`, not `ERRCODE_INTERNAL_ERROR` (Alexander Kuzmenkov)

- In PL/pgSQL, support SQL commands that are `CREATE FUNCTION/CREATE PROCEDURE` with SQL-standard bodies (Tom Lane)

Previously, such cases failed with parsing errors due to the semicolon(s) appearing in the function body.

- Fix libpq's handling of errors in pipelines (Álvaro Herrera)

The pipeline state could get out of sync if an error is returned for reasons other than a query problem (for example, if the connection is lost). Potentially this would lead to a busy-loop in the calling application.

- Make libpq's `PQsendFlushRequest()` function flush the client output buffer under the same rules as other `PQsend` functions (Jelte Fennema-Nio)

In pipeline mode, it may still be necessary to call `PQflush()` as well; but this change removes some inconsistency.

- Avoid race condition when libpq initializes OpenSSL support concurrently in two different threads (Willi Mann, Michael Paquier)
- Fix timing-dependent failure in GSSAPI data transmission (Tom Lane)

When using GSSAPI encryption in non-blocking mode, libpq sometimes failed with “GSSAPI caller failed to retransmit all data needing to be retried”.

- Change `initdb` to always un-comment the `postgresql.conf` entries for the `lc_XXX` parameters (Kyotaro Horiguchi)

`initdb` used to work this way before v16, and now it does again. The change caused `initdb's --no-locale` option to not have the intended effect on `lc_messages`.

- In `pg_dump`, don't dump RLS policies or security labels for extension member objects (Tom Lane, Jacob Champion)

Previously, commands would be included in the dump to set these properties, which is really incorrect since they should be considered as internal affairs of the extension. Moreover, the restoring user might not have adequate privilege to set them, and indeed the dumping user might not have enough privilege to dump them (since dumping RLS policies requires acquiring lock on their table).

- In `pg_dump`, don't dump an extended statistics object if its underlying table isn't being dumped (Rian McGuire, Tom Lane)

This conforms to the behavior for other dependent objects such as indexes.

- Properly detect out-of-memory in one code path in `pg_dump` (Daniel Gustafsson)
- Make it an error for a `pgbench` script to end with an open pipeline (Anthonin Bonnefoy)

Previously, `pgbench` would behave oddly if a `\startpipeline` command lacked a matching `\endpipeline`. This seems like a scripting mistake rather than a case that `pgbench` needs to handle nicely, so throw an error.

- In `contrib/bloom`, fix overly tight assertion about `false_positive_rate` (Alexander Lakhin)
- Fix crash in `contrib/intarray` if an array with an element equal to `INT_MAX` is inserted into a `gist__int_ops` index (Alexander Lakhin, Tom Lane)
- Report a better error when `contrib/pageinspect's hash_bitmap_info()` function is applied to a partitioned hash index (Alexander Lakhin, Michael Paquier)
- Report a better error when `contrib/pgstattuple's pgstathashindex()` function is applied to a partitioned hash index (Alexander Lakhin)
- On Windows, suppress `autorun` options when launching subprocesses in `pg_ctl` and `pg_regress` (Kyotaro Horiguchi)

When launching a child process via `cmd.exe`, pass the `/D` flag to prevent executing any `autorun` commands specified in the registry. This avoids possibly-surprising side effects.

- Move `is_valid_ascii()` from `mb/pg_wchar.h` to `utils/ascii.h` (Jubilee Young)

This change avoids the need to include `<simd.h>` in `pg_wchar.h`, which was causing problems for some third-party code.

- Fix compilation failures with libxml2 version 2.12.0 and later (Tom Lane)
- Fix compilation failure of `WAL_DEBUG` code on Windows (Bharath Rupireddy)
- Suppress compiler warnings from Python's header files (Peter Eisentraut, Tom Lane)

Our preferred compiler options provoke warnings about constructs appearing in recent versions of Python's header files. When using `gcc`, we can suppress these warnings with a `pragma`.

- Avoid deprecation warning when compiling with LLVM 18 (Thomas Munro)
- Update time zone data files to tzdata release 2024a for DST law changes in Greenland, Kazakhstan, and Palestine, plus corrections for the Antarctic stations Casey and Vostok. Also historical corrections for Vietnam, Toronto, and Miquelon.

## E.2. Release 16.1

**Release date:** 2023-11-09

This release contains a variety of fixes from 16.0. For information about new features in major release 16, see Section E.3.

### E.2.1. Migration to Version 16.1

A dump/restore is not required for those running 16.X.

However, several mistakes have been discovered that could lead to certain types of indexes yielding wrong search results or being unnecessarily inefficient. It is advisable to `REINDEX` potentially-affected indexes after installing this update. See the fourth through seventh changelog entries below.

### E.2.2. Changes

- Fix handling of unknown-type arguments in `DISTINCT "any"` aggregate functions (Tom Lane)

This error led to a `text`-type value being interpreted as an unknown-type value (that is, a zero-terminated string) at runtime. This could result in disclosure of server memory following the `text` value.

The PostgreSQL Project thanks Jingzhou Fu for reporting this problem. (CVE-2023-5868)

- Detect integer overflow while computing new array dimensions (Tom Lane)

When assigning new elements to array subscripts that are outside the current array bounds, an undetected integer overflow could occur in edge cases. Memory stomps that are potentially exploitable for arbitrary code execution are possible, and so is disclosure of server memory.

The PostgreSQL Project thanks Pedro Gallegos for reporting this problem. (CVE-2023-5869)

- Prevent the `pg_signal_backend` role from signalling background workers and autovacuum processes (Noah Misch, Jelte Fennema-Nio)

The documentation says that `pg_signal_backend` cannot issue signals to superuser-owned processes. It was able to signal these background processes, though, because they advertise a role OID of zero. Treat that as indicating superuser ownership. The security implications of cancelling

one of these process types are fairly small so far as the core code goes (we'll just start another one), but extensions might add background workers that are more vulnerable.

Also ensure that the `is_superuser` parameter is set correctly in such processes. No specific security consequences are known for that oversight, but it might be significant for some extensions.

The PostgreSQL Project thanks Hemanth Sandrana and Mahendrakar Srinivasarao for reporting this problem. (CVE-2023-5870)

- Fix misbehavior during recursive page split in GiST index build (Heikki Linnakangas)

Fix a case where the location of a page downlink was incorrectly tracked, and introduce some logic to allow recovering from such situations rather than silently doing the wrong thing. This error could result in incorrect answers from subsequent index searches. It may be advisable to reindex all GiST indexes after installing this update.

- Prevent de-duplication of btree index entries for `interval` columns (Noah Misch)

There are `interval` values that are distinguishable but compare equal, for example `24:00:00` and `1 day`. This breaks assumptions made by btree de-duplication, so `interval` columns need to be excluded from de-duplication. This oversight can cause incorrect results from index-only scans. Moreover, after updating `amcheck` will report an error for almost all such indexes. Users should reindex any btree indexes on `interval` columns.

- Process `date` values more sanely in BRIN `datetime_minmax_multi_ops` indexes (Tomas Vondra)

The distance calculation for dates was backward, causing poor decisions about which entries to merge. The index still produces correct results, but is much less efficient than it should be. Reindexing BRIN `minmax_multi` indexes on `date` columns is advisable.

- Process large `timestamp` and `timestampz` values more sanely in BRIN `datetime_minmax_multi_ops` indexes (Tomas Vondra)

Infinities were mistakenly treated as having distance zero rather than a large distance from other values, causing poor decisions about which entries to merge. Also, finite-but-very-large values (near the endpoints of the representable timestamp range) could result in internal overflows, again causing poor decisions. The index still produces correct results, but is much less efficient than it should be. Reindexing BRIN `minmax_multi` indexes on `timestamp` and `timestampz` columns is advisable if the column contains, or has contained, infinities or large finite values.

- Avoid calculation overflows in BRIN `interval_minmax_multi_ops` indexes with extreme `interval` values (Tomas Vondra)

This bug might have caused unexpected failures while trying to insert large `interval` values into such an index.

- Fix partition step generation and runtime partition pruning for hash-partitioned tables with multiple partition keys (David Rowley)

Some cases involving an `IS NULL` condition on one of the partition keys could result in a crash.

- Fix inconsistent rechecking of concurrently-updated rows during `MERGE` (Dean Rasheed)

In `READ COMMITTED` mode, an update that finds that its target row was just updated by a concurrent transaction will recheck the query's `WHERE` conditions on the updated row. `MERGE` failed to ensure that the proper rows of other joined tables were used during this recheck, possibly resulting in incorrect decisions about whether the newly-updated row should be updated again by `MERGE`.

- Correctly identify the target table in an inherited `UPDATE/DELETE/MERGE` even when the parent table is excluded by constraints (Amit Langote, Tom Lane)

If the initially-named table is excluded by constraints, but not all its inheritance descendants are, the first non-excluded descendant was identified as the primary target table. This would lead to firing statement-level triggers associated with that table, rather than the initially-named table as should happen. In v16, the same oversight could also lead to “invalid perminfoindex 0 in RTE with relid NNNN” errors.

- Fix edge case in btree mark/restore processing of `ScalarArrayOpExpr` clauses (Peter Geoghegan)

When restoring an indexscan to a previously marked position, the code could miss required setup steps if the scan had advanced exactly to the end of the matches for a `ScalarArrayOpExpr` (that is, an `indexcol = ANY(ARRAY[ ])`) clause. This could result in missing some rows that should have been fetched.

- Fix intra-query memory leak in Memoize execution (Orlov Aleksej, David Rowley)
- Fix intra-query memory leak when a set-returning function repeatedly returns zero rows (Tom Lane)
- Don't crash if `cursor_to_xmlschema()` is applied to a non-data-returning Portal (Boyu Yang)
- Fix improper sharing of origin filter condition across successive `pg_logical_slot_get_changes()` calls (Hou Zhijie)

The origin condition set by one call of this function would be re-used by later calls that did not specify the origin argument. This was not intended.

- Throw the intended error if `pgrowlocks()` is applied to a partitioned table (David Rowley)

Previously, a not-on-point complaint “only heap AM is supported” would be raised.

- Handle invalid indexes more cleanly in assorted SQL functions (Noah Misch)

Report an error if `pgstatindex()`, `pgstatginindex()`, `pgstathashindex()`, or `pgstattuple()` is applied to an invalid index. If `brin_desummarize_range()`, `brin_summarize_new_values()`, `brin_summarize_range()`, or `gin_clean_pending_list()` is applied to an invalid index, do nothing except to report a debug-level message. Formerly these functions attempted to process the index, and might fail in strange ways depending on what the failed `CREATE INDEX` had left behind.

- Avoid premature memory allocation failure with long inputs to `to_tsvector()` (Tom Lane)
- Fix over-allocation of the constructed `tsvector` in `tsvectorrecv()` (Denis Erokhin)

If the incoming vector includes position data, the binary receive function left wasted space (roughly equal to the size of the position data) in the finished `tsvector`. In extreme cases this could lead to “maximum total lexeme length exceeded” failures for vectors that were under the length limit when emitted. In any case it could lead to wasted space on-disk.

- Improve checks for corrupt PGLZ compressed data (Flavien Guedez)
- Fix `ALTER SUBSCRIPTION` so that a commanded change in the `run_as_owner` option is actually applied (Hou Zhijie)
- Fix bulk table insertion into partitioned tables (Andres Freund)

Improper sharing of insertion state across partitions could result in failures during `COPY FROM`, typically manifesting as “could not read block NNNN in file XXXX: read only 0 of 8192 bytes” errors.

- In `COPY FROM`, avoid evaluating column default values that will not be needed by the command (Laurenz Albe)

This avoids a possible error if the default value isn't actually valid for the column, or if the default's expression would fail in the current execution context. Such edge cases sometimes arise while restoring dumps, for example. Previous releases did not fail in this situation, so prevent v16 from doing so.

- In `COPY FROM`, fail cleanly when an unsupported encoding conversion is needed (Tom Lane)

Recent refactoring accidentally removed the intended error check for this, such that it ended in “cache lookup failed for function 0” instead of a useful error message.

- Avoid crash in `EXPLAIN` if a parameter marked to be displayed by `EXPLAIN` has a NULL boot-time value (Xing Guo, Aleksander Alekseev, Tom Lane)

No built-in parameter fits this description, but an extension could define such a parameter.

- Ensure we have a snapshot while dropping `ON COMMIT DROP` temp tables (Tom Lane)

This prevents possible misbehavior if any catalog entries for the temp tables have fields wide enough to require toasting (such as a very complex `CHECK` condition).

- Avoid improper response to shutdown signals in child processes just forked by `system()` (Nathan Bossart)

This fix avoids a race condition in which a child process that has been forked off by `system()`, but hasn't yet exec'd the intended child program, might receive and act on a signal intended for the parent server process. That would lead to duplicate cleanup actions being performed, which will not end well.

- Cope with torn reads of `pg_control` in frontend programs (Thomas Munro)

On some file systems, reading `pg_control` may not be an atomic action when the server concurrently writes that file. This is detectable via a bad CRC. Retry a few times to see if the file becomes valid before we report error.

- Avoid torn reads of `pg_control` in relevant SQL functions (Thomas Munro)

Acquire the appropriate lock before reading `pg_control`, to ensure we get a consistent view of that file.

- Fix “could not find pathkey item to sort” errors occurring while planning aggregate functions with `ORDER BY` or `DISTINCT` options (David Rowley)

- Avoid integer overflow when computing size of backend activity string array (Jakub Wartak)

On 64-bit machines we will allow values of `track_activity_query_size` large enough to cause 32-bit overflow when multiplied by the allowed number of connections. The code actually allocating the per-backend local array was careless about this though, and allocated the array incorrectly.

- Fix briefly showing inconsistent progress statistics for `ANALYZE` on inherited tables (Heikki Lin-nakangas)

The block-level counters should be reset to zero at the same time we update the current-relation field.

- Fix the background writer to report any WAL writes it makes to the statistics counters (Nazir Bilal Yavuz)

- Fix confusion about forced-flush behavior in `pgstat_report_wal()` (Ryoga Yoshida, Michael Paquier)

This could result in some statistics about WAL I/O being forgotten in a shutdown.

- Fix statistics tracking of temporary-table extensions (Karina Litskevich, Andres Freund)

These were counted as normal-table writes when they should be counted as temp-table writes.

- When `track_io_timing` is enabled, include the time taken by relation extension operations as write time (Nazir Bilal Yavuz)
- Track the dependencies of cached CALL statements, and re-plan them when needed (Tom Lane)

DDL commands, such as replacement of a function that has been inlined into a CALL argument, can create the need to re-plan a CALL that has been cached by PL/pgSQL. That was not happening, leading to misbehavior or strange errors such as “cache lookup failed”.

- Avoid a possible pfree-a-NULL-pointer crash after an error in OpenSSL connection setup (Sergey Shinderuk)
- Track nesting depth correctly when inspecting RECORD-type Vars from outer query levels (Richard Guo)

This oversight could lead to assertion failures, core dumps, or “bogus varno” errors.

- Track hash function and negator function dependencies of ScalarArrayOpExpr plan nodes (David Rowley)

In most cases this oversight was harmless, since these functions would be unlikely to disappear while the node’s original operator remains present.

- Fix error-handling bug in RECORD type cache management (Thomas Munro)

An out-of-memory error occurring at just the wrong point could leave behind inconsistent state that would lead to an infinite loop.

- Treat out-of-memory failures as fatal while reading WAL (Michael Paquier)

Previously this would be treated as a bogus-data condition, leading to the conclusion that we’d reached the end of WAL, which is incorrect and could lead to inconsistent WAL replay.

- Fix possible recovery failure due to trying to allocate memory based on a bogus WAL record length field (Thomas Munro, Michael Paquier)
- Fix “could not duplicate handle” error occurring on Windows when `min_dynamic_shared_memory` is set above zero (Thomas Munro)
- Fix order of operations in `GenericXLogFinish` (Jeff Davis)

This code violated the conditions required for crash safety by writing WAL before marking changed buffers dirty. No core code uses this function, but extensions do (`contrib/bloom` does, for example).

- Remove incorrect assertion in PL/Python exception handling (Alexander Lakhin)
- Fix `pg_dump` to dump the new `run_as_owner` option of subscriptions (Philip Warner)

Due to this oversight, subscriptions would always be restored with `run_as_owner` set to `false`, which is not equivalent to their behavior in pre-v16 releases.

- Fix `pg_restore` so that selective restores will include both table-level and column-level ACLs for selected tables (Euler Taveira, Tom Lane)



Formerly, only the table-level ACL would get restored if both types were present.

- Add logic to `pg_upgrade` to check for use of `abstime`, `reltime`, and `tinterval` data types (Álvaro Herrera)

These obsolete data types were removed in PostgreSQL version 12, so check to make sure they aren't present in an older database before claiming it can be upgraded.

- Avoid false “too many client connections” errors in `pgbench` on Windows (Noah Misch)
- Fix `vacuumdb`'s handling of multiple `-N` switches (Nathan Bossart, Kuwamura Masaki)

Multiple `-N` switches should exclude tables in multiple schemas, but in fact excluded nothing due to faulty construction of a generated query.

- Fix `vacuumdb` to honor its `--buffer-usage-limit` option in analyze-only mode (Ryoga Yoshida, David Rowley)
- In `contrib/amcheck`, do not report interrupted page deletion as corruption (Noah Misch)

This fix prevents false-positive reports of “the first child of leftmost target page is not leftmost of its level”, “block NNNN is not leftmost” or “left link/right link pair in index XXXX not in agreement”. They appeared if `amcheck` ran after an unfinished btree index page deletion and before `VACUUM` had cleaned things up.

- Fix failure of `contrib/btree_gin` indexes on interval columns, when an `indexscan` using the `<` or `<=` operator is performed (Dean Rasheed)

Such an `indexscan` failed to return all the entries it should.

- Add support for LLVM 16 and 17 (Thomas Munro, Dmitry Dolgov)
- Suppress assorted build-time warnings on recent macOS (Tom Lane)

Xcode 15 (released with macOS Sonoma) changed the linker's behavior in a way that causes many duplicate-library warnings while building PostgreSQL. These were harmless, but they're annoying so avoid citing the same libraries twice. Also remove use of the `-multiply_defined suppress` linker switch, which apparently has been a no-op for a long time, and is now actively complained of.

- When building `contrib/unaccent`'s rules file, fall back to using `python` if `--with-python` was not given and make variable `PYTHON` was not set (Japin Li)
- Remove `PHOT` (Phoenix Islands Time) from the default timezone abbreviations list (Tom Lane)

Presence of this abbreviation in the default list can cause failures on recent Debian and Ubuntu releases, as they no longer install the underlying `tzdb` entry by default. Since this is a made-up abbreviation for a zone with a total human population of about two dozen, it seems unlikely that anyone will miss it. If someone does, they can put it back via a custom abbreviations file.

## E.3. Release 16

Release date: 2023-09-14

### E.3.1. Overview

PostgreSQL 16 contains many new features and enhancements, including:

- Allow parallelization of `FULL` and internal right `OUTER` hash joins

- Allow logical replication from standby servers
- Allow logical replication subscribers to apply large transactions in parallel
- Allow monitoring of I/O statistics using the new `pg_stat_io` view
- Add SQL/JSON constructors and identity functions
- Improve performance of vacuum freezing
- Add support for regular expression matching of user and database names in `pg_hba.conf`, and user names in `pg_ident.conf`

The above items and other new features of PostgreSQL 16 are explained in more detail in the sections below.

## E.3.2. Migration to Version 16

A dump/restore using `pg_dumpall` or use of `pg_upgrade` or logical replication is required for those wishing to migrate data from any previous release. See Section 19.6 for general information on migrating to new major releases.

Version 16 contains a number of changes that may affect compatibility with previous releases. Observe the following incompatibilities:

- Change assignment rules for PL/pgSQL bound cursor variables (Tom Lane)

Previously, the string value of such variables was set to match the variable name during cursor assignment; now it will be assigned during OPEN, and will not match the variable name. To restore the previous behavior, assign the desired portal name to the cursor variable before OPEN.

- Disallow `NULLS NOT DISTINCT` indexes for primary keys (Daniel Gustafsson)
- Change `REINDEX DATABASE` and `reindexdb` to not process indexes on system catalogs (Simon Riggs)

Processing such indexes is still possible using `REINDEX SYSTEM` and `reindexdb --system`.

- Tighten `GENERATED` expression restrictions on inherited and partitioned tables (Amit Langote, Tom Lane)

Columns of parent/partitioned and child/partition tables must all have the same generation status, though now the actual generation expressions can be different.

- Remove `pg_walinspect` functions `pg_get_wal_records_info_till_end_of_wal()` and `pg_get_wal_stats_till_end_of_wal()` (Bharath Rupireddy)
- Rename server variable `force_parallel_mode` to `debug_parallel_query` (David Rowley)
- Remove the ability to create views manually with `ON SELECT` rules (Tom Lane)
- Remove the server variable `vacuum_defer_cleanup_age` (Andres Freund)

This has been unnecessary since `hot_standby_feedback` and replication slots were added.

- Remove server variable `promote_trigger_file` (Simon Riggs)

This was used to promote a standby to primary, but is now more easily accomplished with `pg_ctl promote` or `pg_promote()`.

- Remove read-only server variables `lc_collate` and `lc_ctype` (Peter Eisentraut)

Collations and locales can vary between databases so having them as read-only server variables was unhelpful.

- Role inheritance now controls the default inheritance status of member roles added during `GRANT` (Robert Haas)

The role's default inheritance behavior can be overridden with the new `GRANT . . . WITH INHERIT` clause. This allows inheritance of some roles and not others because the members' inheritance status is set at `GRANT` time. Previously the inheritance status of member roles was controlled only by the role's inheritance status, and changes to a role's inheritance status affected all previous and future member roles.

- Restrict the privileges of `CREATEROLE` and its ability to modify other roles (Robert Haas)

Previously roles with `CREATEROLE` privileges could change many aspects of any non-superuser role. Such changes, including adding members, now require the role requesting the change to have `ADMIN OPTION` permission. For example, they can now change the `CREATEDB`, `REPLICATION`, and `BYPASSRLS` properties only if they also have those permissions.

- Remove symbolic links for the postmaster binary (Peter Eisentraut)

## E.3.3. Changes

Below you will find a detailed account of the changes between PostgreSQL 16 and the previous major release.

### E.3.3.1. Server

#### E.3.3.1.1. Optimizer

- Allow incremental sorts in more cases, including `DISTINCT` (David Rowley)
- Add the ability for aggregates having `ORDER BY` or `DISTINCT` to use pre-sorted data (David Rowley)

The new server variable `enable_presorted_aggregate` can be used to disable this.

- Allow memoize atop a `UNION ALL` (Richard Guo)
- Allow anti-joins to be performed with the non-nullable input as the inner relation (Richard Guo)
- Allow parallelization of `FULL` and internal right `OUTER` hash joins (Melanie Plageman, Thomas Munro)
- Improve the accuracy of `GIN` index access optimizer costs (Ronan Dunklau)

#### E.3.3.1.2. General Performance

- Allow more efficient addition of heap and index pages (Andres Freund)
- During non-freeze operations, perform page freezing where appropriate (Peter Geoghegan)

This makes full-table freeze vacuums less necessary.

- Allow window functions to use the faster `ROWS` mode internally when `RANGE` mode is active but unnecessary (David Rowley)

- Allow optimization of always-increasing window functions `ntile()`, `cume_dist()` and `percent_rank()` (David Rowley)
- Allow aggregate functions `string_agg()` and `array_agg()` to be parallelized (David Rowley)
- Improve performance by caching `RANGE` and `LIST` partition lookups (Amit Langote, Hou Zhijie, David Rowley)
- Allow control of the shared buffer usage by `vacuum` and `analyze` (Melanie Plageman)

The `VACUUM/ANALYZE` option is `BUFFER_USAGE_LIMIT`, and the `vacuumdb` option is `--buffer-usage-limit`. The default value is set by server variable `vacuum_buffer_usage_limit`, which also controls `autovacuum`.

- Support `wal_sync_method=fdatasync` on Windows (Thomas Munro)
- Allow `HOT` updates if only `BRIN`-indexed columns are updated (Matthias van de Meent, Josef Simanek, Tomas Vondra)
- Improve the speed of updating the process title (David Rowley)
- Allow `xid/subxid` searches and `ASCII` string detection to use vector operations (Nathan Bossart, John Naylor)

`ASCII` detection is particularly useful for `COPY FROM`. Vector operations are also used for some `C` array searches.

- Reduce overhead of memory allocations (Andres Freund, David Rowley)

### E.3.3.1.3. Monitoring

- Add system view `pg_stat_io` view to track I/O statistics (Melanie Plageman)
- Record statistics on the last sequential and index scans on tables (Dave Page)

This information appears in `pg_stat_*_tables` and `pg_stat_*_indexes`.

- Record statistics on the occurrence of updated rows moving to new pages (Corey Huinker)

The `pg_stat_*_tables` column is `n_tup_newpage_upd`.

- Add speculative lock information to the `pg_locks` system view (Masahiko Sawada, Noriyoshi Shinoda)

The transaction id is displayed in the `transactionid` column and the speculative insertion token is displayed in the `objid` column.

- Add the display of prepared statement result types to the `pg_prepared_statements` view (Dagfinn Ilmari Mannsåker)
- Create subscription statistics entries at subscription creation time so `stats_reset` is accurate (Andres Freund)

Previously entries were created only when the first statistics were reported.

- Correct the I/O accounting for temp relation writes shown in `pg_stat_database` (Melanie Plageman)
- Add function `pg_stat_get_backend_subxact()` to report on a session's subtransaction cache (Dilip Kumar)

- Have `pg_stat_get_backend_idset()`, `pg_stat_get_backend_activity()`, and related functions use the unchanging backend id (Nathan Bossart)

Previously the index values might change during the lifetime of the session.

- Report stand-alone backends with a special backend type (Melanie Plageman)
- Add wait event `SpinDelay` to report spinlock sleep delays (Andres Freund)
- Create new wait event `DSMAllocate` to indicate waiting for dynamic shared memory allocation (Thomas Munro)

Previously this type of wait was reported as `DSMFillZeroWrite`, which was also used by `mmap()` allocations.

- Add the database name to the process title of logical WAL senders (Tatsuhiko Nakamori)

Physical WAL senders do not display a database name.

- Add checkpoint and REDO LSN information to `log_checkpoints` messages (Bharath Rupireddy, Kyotaro Horiguchi)
- Provide additional details during client certificate failures (Jacob Champion)

#### **E.3.3.1.4. Privileges**

- Add predefined role `pg_create_subscription` with permission to create subscriptions (Robert Haas)
- Allow subscriptions to not require passwords (Robert Haas)

This is accomplished with the option `password_required=false`.

- Simplify permissions for `LOCK TABLE` (Jeff Davis)

Previously a user's ability to perform `LOCK TABLE` at various lock levels was limited to the lock levels required by the commands they had permission to execute on the table. For example, someone with `UPDATE` permission could perform all lock levels except `ACCESS SHARE`, even though it was a lesser lock level. Now users can issue lesser lock levels if they already have permission for greater lock levels.

- Allow `ALTER GROUP group_name ADD USER user_name` to be performed with `ADMIN OPTION` (Robert Haas)

Previously `CREATEROLE` permission was required.

- Allow `GRANT` to use `WITH ADMIN TRUE/FALSE` syntax (Robert Haas)

Previously only the `WITH ADMIN OPTION` syntax was supported.

- Allow roles that create other roles to automatically inherit the new role's rights or the ability to `SET ROLE` to the new role (Robert Haas, Shi Yu)

This is controlled by server variable `createrole_self_grant`.

- Prevent users from changing the default privileges of non-inherited roles (Robert Haas)

This is now only allowed for inherited roles.

- When granting role membership, require the granted-by role to be a role that has appropriate permissions (Robert Haas)

This is a requirement even when a non-bootstrap superuser is granting role membership.

- Allow non-superusers to grant permissions using a granted-by user that is not the current user (Robert Haas)

The current user still must have sufficient permissions given by the specified granted-by user.

- Add GRANT to control permission to use SET ROLE (Robert Haas)

This is controlled by a new GRANT . . . SET option.

- Add dependency tracking to roles which have granted privileges (Robert Haas)

For example, removing ADMIN OPTION will fail if there are privileges using that option; CASCADE must be used to revoke dependent permissions.

- Add dependency tracking of grantors for GRANT records (Robert Haas)

This guarantees that pg\_auth\_members.grantor values are always valid.

- Allow multiple role membership records (Robert Haas)

Previously a new membership grant would remove a previous matching membership grant, even if other aspects of the grant did not match.

- Prevent removal of superuser privileges for the bootstrap user (Robert Haas)

Restoring such users could lead to errors.

- Allow makeaclitem() to accept multiple privilege names (Robins Tharakan)

Previously only a single privilege name, like SELECT, was accepted.

### **E.3.3.1.5. Server Configuration**

- Add support for Kerberos credential delegation (Stephen Frost)

This is enabled with server variable gss\_accept\_delegation and libpq connection parameter gssdelegation.

- Allow the SCRAM iteration count to be set with server variable scram\_iterations (Daniel Gustafsson)

- Improve performance of server variable management (Tom Lane)

- Tighten restrictions on which server variables can be reset (Masahiko Sawada)

Previously, while certain variables, like transaction\_isolation, were not affected by RESET ALL, they could be individually reset in inappropriate situations.

- Move various postgresql.conf items into new categories (Shinya Kato)

This also affects the categories displayed in the pg\_settings view.

- Prevent configuration file recursion beyond 10 levels (Julien Rouhaud)

- Allow autovacuum to more frequently honor changes to delay settings (Melanie Plageman)

Rather than honor changes only at the start of each relation, honor them at the start of each block.

- Remove restrictions that archive files be durably renamed (Nathan Bossart)

The `archive_command` command is now more likely to be called with already-archived files after a crash.

- Prevent `archive_library` and `archive_command` from being set at the same time (Nathan Bossart)

Previously `archive_library` would override `archive_command`.

- Allow the postmaster to terminate children with an abort signal (Tom Lane)

This allows collection of a core dump for a stuck child process. This is controlled by `send_abort_for_crash` and `send_abort_for_kill`. The postmaster's `-T` switch is now the same as setting `send_abort_for_crash`.

- Remove the non-functional postmaster `-n` option (Tom Lane)
- Allow the server to reserve backend slots for roles with `pg_use_reserved_connections` membership (Nathan Bossart)

The number of reserved slots is set by server variable `reserved_connections`.

- Allow huge pages to work on newer versions of Windows 10 (Thomas Munro)

This adds the special handling required to enable huge pages on newer versions of Windows 10.

- Add `debug_io_direct` setting for developer usage (Thomas Munro, Andres Freund, Bharath Rupireddy)

While primarily for developers, `wal_sync_method=open_sync/open_datasync` has been modified to not use direct I/O with `wal_level=minimal`; this is now enabled with `debug_io_direct=wal`.

- Add function `pg_split_walfile_name()` to report the segment and timeline values of WAL file names (Bharath Rupireddy)

#### **E.3.3.1.6. `pg_hba.conf`**

- Add support for regular expression matching on database and role entries in `pg_hba.conf` (Bertrand Drouvot)

Regular expression patterns are prefixed with a slash. Database and role names that begin with slashes need to be double-quoted if referenced in `pg_hba.conf`.

- Improve user-column handling of `pg_ident.conf` to match `pg_hba.conf` (Jelte Fennema)

Specifically, add support for `all`, role membership with `+`, and regular expressions with a leading slash. Any user name that matches these patterns must be double-quoted.

- Allow include files in `pg_hba.conf` and `pg_ident.conf` (Julien Rouhaud)

These are controlled by `include`, `include_if_exists`, and `include_dir`. System views `pg_hba_file_rules` and `pg_ident_file_mappings` now display the file name.

- Allow `pg_hba.conf` tokens to be of unlimited length (Tom Lane)
- Add rule and map numbers to the system view `pg_hba_file_rules` (Julien Rouhaud)

#### **E.3.3.1.7. Localization**

- Determine the default encoding from the locale when using ICU (Jeff Davis)

Previously the default was always UTF-8.

- Have `CREATE DATABASE` and `CREATE COLLATION`'s `LOCALE` options, and `initdb` and `createdb` `--locale` options, control non-libc collation providers (Jeff Davis)

Previously they only controlled libc providers.

- Add predefined collations `unicode` and `ucs_basic` (Peter Eisentraut)

This only works if ICU support is enabled.

- Allow custom ICU collation rules to be created (Peter Eisentraut)

This is done using `CREATE COLLATION`'s new `RULES` clause, as well as new options for `CREATE DATABASE`, `createdb`, and `initdb`.

- Allow Windows to import system locales automatically (Juan José Santamaría Flecha)

Previously, only ICU locales could be imported on Windows.

### E.3.3.2. Logical Replication

- Allow logical decoding on standbys (Bertrand Drouvot, Andres Freund, Amit Khandekar)

Snapshot WAL records are required for logical slot creation but cannot be created on standbys. To avoid delays, the new function `pg_log_standby_snapshot()` allows creation of such records.

- Add server variable to control how logical decoding publishers transfer changes and how subscribers apply them (Shi Yu)

The variable is `debug_logical_replication_streaming`.

- Allow logical replication initial table synchronization to copy rows in binary format (Melih Mutlu)

This is only possible for subscriptions marked as binary.

- Allow parallel application of logical replication (Hou Zhijie, Wang Wei, Amit Kapila)

The `CREATE SUBSCRIPTION STREAMING` option now supports `parallel` to enable application of large transactions by parallel workers. The number of parallel workers is controlled by the new server variable `max_parallel_apply_workers_per_subscription`. Wait events `LogicalParallelApplyMain`, `LogicalParallelApplyStateChange`, and `LogicalApplySendData` were also added. Column `leader_pid` was added to system view `pg_stat_subscription` to track parallel activity.

- Improve performance for logical replication apply without a primary key (Onder Kalaci, Amit Kapila)

Specifically, `REPLICA IDENTITY FULL` can now use btree indexes rather than sequentially scanning the table to find matches.

- Allow logical replication subscribers to process only changes that have no origin (Vignesh C, Amit Kapila)

This can be used to avoid replication loops. This is controlled by the new `CREATE SUBSCRIPTION ... ORIGIN` option.

- Perform logical replication `SELECT` and DML actions as the table owner (Robert Haas)



This improves security and now requires subscription owners to be either superusers or to have `SET ROLE` permission on all roles owning tables in the replication set. The previous behavior of performing all operations as the subscription owner can be enabled with the subscription `run_as_owner` option.

- Have `wal_retrieve_retry_interval` operate on a per-subscription basis (Nathan Bossart)

Previously the retry time was applied globally. This also adds wait events `>LogicalRepLauncherDSA` and `LogicalRepLauncherHash`.

### E.3.3.3. Utility Commands

- Add `EXPLAIN` option `GENERIC_PLAN` to display the generic plan for a parameterized query (Laurenz Albe)
- Allow a `COPY FROM` value to map to a column's `DEFAULT` (Israel Barth Rubio)
- Allow `COPY` into foreign tables to add rows in batches (Andrey Lepikhov, Etsuro Fujita)

This is controlled by the `postgres_fdw` option `batch_size`.

- Allow the `STORAGE` type to be specified by `CREATE TABLE` (Teodor Sigaev, Aleksander Alekseev)

Previously only `ALTER TABLE` could control this.

- Allow truncate triggers on foreign tables (Yugo Nagata)
- Allow `VACUUM` and `vacuumdb` to only process `TOAST` tables (Nathan Bossart)

This is accomplished by having `VACUUM` turn off `PROCESS_MAIN` or by `vacuumdb` using the `--no-process-main` option.

- Add `VACUUM` options to skip or update all frozen statistics (Tom Lane, Nathan Bossart)

The options are `SKIP_DATABASE_STATS` and `ONLY_DATABASE_STATS`.

- Change `REINDEX DATABASE` and `REINDEX SYSTEM` to no longer require an argument (Simon Riggs)

Previously the database name had to be specified.

- Allow `CREATE STATISTICS` to generate a statistics name if none is specified (Simon Riggs)

### E.3.3.4. Data Types

- Allow non-decimal integer literals (Peter Eisentraut)

For example, `0x42F`, `0o273`, and `0b100101`.

- Allow `NUMERIC` to process hexadecimal, octal, and binary integers of any size (Dean Rasheed)

Previously only unquoted eight-byte integers were supported with these non-decimal bases.

- Allow underscores in integer and numeric constants (Peter Eisentraut, Dean Rasheed)

This can improve readability for long strings of digits.

- Accept the spelling `+infinity` in datetime input (Vik Fearing)

- Prevent the specification of `epoch` and `infinity` together with other fields in datetime strings (Joseph Koshakow)
- Remove undocumented support for date input in the form `YyearMmonthDday` (Joseph Koshakow)
- Add functions `pg_input_is_valid()` and `pg_input_error_info()` to check for type conversion errors (Tom Lane)

### E.3.3.5. General Queries

- Allow subqueries in the `FROM` clause to omit aliases (Dean Rasheed)
- Add support for enhanced numeric literals in SQL/JSON paths (Peter Eisentraut)

For example, allow hexadecimal, octal, and binary integers and underscores between digits.

### E.3.3.6. Functions

- Add SQL/JSON constructors (Nikita Glukhov, Teodor Sigaev, Oleg Bartunov, Alexander Korotkov, Amit Langote)

The new functions `JSON_ARRAY()`, `JSON_ARRAYAGG()`, `JSON_OBJECT()`, and `JSON_OBJECTAGG()` are part of the SQL standard.

- Add SQL/JSON object checks (Nikita Glukhov, Teodor Sigaev, Oleg Bartunov, Alexander Korotkov, Amit Langote, Andrew Dunstan)

The `IS JSON` checks include checks for values, arrays, objects, scalars, and unique keys.

- Allow JSON string parsing to use vector operations (John Naylor)
- Improve the handling of full text highlighting function `ts_headline()` for OR and NOT expressions (Tom Lane)
- Add functions to add, subtract, and generate `timestampz` values in a specified time zone (Przemyslaw Sztoch, Gurjeet Singh)

The functions are `date_add()`, `date_subtract()`, and `generate_series()`.

- Change `date_trunc(unit, timestampz, time_zone)` to be an immutable function (Przemyslaw Sztoch)

This allows the creation of expression indexes using this function.

- Add server variable `SYSTEM_USER` (Bertrand Drouvot)

This reports the authentication method and its authenticated user.

- Add functions `array_sample()` and `array_shuffle()` (Martin Kalcher)
- Add aggregate function `ANY_VALUE()` which returns any value from a set (Vik Fearing)
- Add function `random_normal()` to supply normally-distributed random numbers (Paul Ramsey)
- Add error function `erf()` and its complement `erfc()` (Dean Rasheed)
- Improve the accuracy of numeric `power()` for integer exponents (Dean Rasheed)

- Add `XMLSERIALIZE()` option `INDENT` to pretty-print its output (Jim Jones)
- Change `pg_collation_actual_version()` to return a reasonable value for the default collation (Jeff Davis)

Previously it returned `NULL`.

- Allow `pg_read_file()` and `pg_read_binary_file()` to ignore missing files (Kyotaro Horiguchi)
- Add byte specification (B) to `pg_size_bytes()` (Peter Eisentraut)
- Allow `to_reg*` functions to accept numeric OIDs as input (Tom Lane)

### E.3.3.7. PL/pgSQL

- Add the ability to get the current function's OID in PL/pgSQL (Pavel Stehule)

This is accomplished with `GET DIAGNOSTICS variable = PG_ROUTINE_OID`.

### E.3.3.8. libpq

- Add libpq connection option `require_auth` to specify a list of acceptable authentication methods (Jacob Champion)

This can also be used to disallow certain authentication methods.

- Allow multiple libpq-specified hosts to be randomly selected (Jelte Fennema)

This is enabled with `load_balance_hosts=random` and can be used for load balancing.

- Add libpq option `sslcertmode` to control transmission of the client certificate (Jacob Champion)

The option values are `disable`, `allow`, and `require`.

- Allow libpq to use the system certificate pool for certificate verification (Jacob Champion, Thomas Habets)

This is enabled with `sslrootcert=system`, which also enables `sslmode=verify-full`.

### E.3.3.9. Client Applications

- Allow ECPG variable declarations to use typedef names that match unreserved SQL keywords (Tom Lane)

This change does prevent keywords which match C typedef names from being processed as keywords in later `EXEC SQL` blocks.

#### E.3.3.9.1. psql

- Allow psql to control the maximum width of header lines in expanded format (Platon Pronko)

This is controlled by `xheader_width`.

- Add psql command `\drg` to show role membership details (Pavel Luzanov)

The `Member` of output column has been removed from `\du` and `\dg` because this new command displays this information in more detail.

- Allow psql's access privilege commands to show system objects (Nathan Bossart)

The options are `\dpS` and `\zS`.

- Add `FOREIGN` designation to `psql \d+` for foreign table children and partitions (Ian Lawrence Barwick)
- Prevent `\df+` from showing function source code (Isaac Morland)

Function bodies are more easily viewed with `\sf`.

- Allow `psql` to submit queries using the extended query protocol (Peter Eisentraut)

Passing arguments to such queries is done using the new `psql \bind` command.

- Allow `psql \watch` to limit the number of executions (Andrey Borodin)

The `\watch` options can now be named when specified.

- Detect invalid values for `psql \watch`, and allow zero to specify no delay (Andrey Borodin)
- Allow `psql` scripts to obtain the exit status of shell commands and queries (Corey Huinker, Tom Lane)

The new `psql` control variables are `SHELL_ERROR` and `SHELL_EXIT_CODE`.

- Various `psql` tab completion improvements (Vignesh C, Aleksander Alekseev, Dagfinn Ilmari Mannsåker, Shi Yu, Michael Paquier, Ken Kato, Peter Smith)

### E.3.3.9.2. `pg_dump`

- Add `pg_dump` control of dumping child tables and partitions (Gilles Darold)

The new options are `--table-and-children`, `--exclude-table-and-children`, and `--exclude-table-data-and-children`.

- Add LZ4 and Zstandard compression to `pg_dump` (Georgios Kokolatos, Justin Pryzby)
- Allow `pg_dump` and `pg_basebackup` to use `long` mode for compression (Justin Pryzby)
- Improve `pg_dump` to accept a more consistent compression syntax (Georgios Kokolatos)

Options like `--compress=gzip:5`.

### E.3.3.10. Server Applications

- Add `initdb` option to set server variables for the duration of `initdb` and all future server starts (Tom Lane)

The option is `-c name=value`.

- Add options to `createuser` to control more user options (Shinya Kato)

Specifically, the new options control the valid-until date, bypassing of row-level security, and role membership.

- Deprecate `createuser` option `--role` (Nathan Bossart)

This option could be easily confused with new `createuser` role membership options, so option `--member-of` has been added with the same functionality. The `--role` option can still be used.

- Allow control of `vacuumdb` schema processing (Gilles Darold)

These are controlled by options `--schema` and `--exclude-schema`.

- Use new `VACUUM` options to improve the performance of `vacuumdb` (Tom Lane, Nathan Bossart)
- Have `pg_upgrade` set the new cluster's locale and encoding (Jeff Davis)

This removes the requirement that the new cluster be created with the same locale and encoding settings.

- Add `pg_upgrade` option to specify the default transfer mode (Peter Eisentraut)

The option is `--copy`.

- Improve `pg_basebackup` to accept numeric compression options (Georgios Kokolatos, Michael Paquier)

Options like `--compress=server-5` are now supported.

- Fix `pg_basebackup` to handle tablespaces stored in the `PGDATA` directory (Robert Haas)
- Add `pg_waldump` option `--save-fullpage` to dump full page images (David Christensen)
- Allow `pg_waldump` options `-t/--timeline` to accept hexadecimal values (Peter Eisentraut)
- Add support for progress reporting to `pg_verifybackup` (Masahiko Sawada)
- Allow `pg_rewind` to properly track timeline changes (Heikki Linnakangas)

Previously if `pg_rewind` was run after a timeline switch but before a checkpoint was issued, it might incorrectly determine that a rewind was unnecessary.

- Have `pg_receivewal` and `pg_recvlogical` cleanly exit on `SIGTERM` (Christoph Berg)

This signal is often used by `systemd`.

### E.3.3.11. Source Code

- Build ICU support by default (Jeff Davis)

This removes build flag `--with-icu` and adds flag `--without-icu`.

- Add support for SSE2 (Streaming SIMD Extensions 2) vector operations on x86-64 architectures (John Naylor)
- Add support for Advanced SIMD (Single Instruction Multiple Data) (NEON) instructions on ARM architectures (Nathan Bossart)
- Have Windows binaries built with MSVC use `RandomizedBaseAddress` (ASLR) (Michael Paquier)

This was already enabled on MinGW builds.

- Prevent extension libraries from exporting their symbols by default (Andres Freund, Tom Lane)

Functions that need to be called from the core backend or other extensions must now be explicitly marked `PGDLL_EXPORT`.

- Require Windows 10 or newer versions (Michael Paquier, Juan José Santamaría Flecha)

Previously Windows Vista and Windows XP were supported.

- Require Perl version 5.14 or later (John Naylor)
- Require Bison version 2.3 or later (John Naylor)
- Require Flex version 2.5.35 or later (John Naylor)
- Require MIT Kerberos for GSSAPI support (Stephen Frost)
- Remove support for Visual Studio 2013 (Michael Paquier)
- Remove support for HP-UX (Thomas Munro)
- Remove support for HP/Intel Itanium (Thomas Munro)
- Remove support for M68K, M88K, M32R, and SuperH CPU architectures (Thomas Munro)
- Remove libpq support for SCM credential authentication (Michael Paquier)

Backend support for this authentication method was removed in PostgreSQL 9.1.

- Add meson build system (Andres Freund, Nazir Bilal Yavuz, Peter Eisentraut)

This eventually will replace the Autoconf and Windows-based MSVC build systems.

- Allow control of the location of the openssl binary used by the build system (Peter Eisentraut)

Make finding openssl program a configure or meson option

- Add build option to allow testing of small table segment sizes (Andres Freund)

The build options are `--with-segsize-blocks` and `-Dsegsize_blocks`.

- Add pgindent options (Andrew Dunstan)

The new options are `--show-diff`, `--silent-diff`, `--commit`, and `--help`, and allow multiple `--exclude` options. Also require the typedef file to be explicitly specified. Options `--code-base` and `--build` were also removed.

- Add `pg_bsd_indent` source code to the main tree (Tom Lane)
- Improve `make_ctags` and `make_etags` (Yugo Nagata)
- Adjust `pg_attribute` columns for efficiency (Peter Eisentraut)

### E.3.3.12. Additional Modules

- Improve use of extension-based indexes on boolean columns (Zongliang Quan, Tom Lane)
- Add support for Daitch-Mokotoff Soundex to `fuzzystrmatch` (Dag Lem)
- Allow `auto_explain` to log values passed to parameterized statements (Dagfinn Ilmari Mannsåker)

This affects queries using server-side `PREPARE/EXECUTE` and client-side `parse/bind`. Logging is controlled by `auto_explain.log_parameter_max_length`; by default query parameters will be logged with no length restriction.

- Have `auto_explain`'s `log_verbose` mode honor the value of `compute_query_id` (Atsushi Torikoshi)

Previously even if `compute_query_id` was enabled, `log_verbose` was not showing the query identifier.

- Change the maximum length of ltree labels from 256 to 1000 and allow hyphens (Garen Torikian)
- Have `pg_stat_statements` normalize constants used in utility commands (Michael Paquier)

Previously constants appeared instead of placeholders, e.g., `$1`.

- Add `pg_walinspect` function `pg_get_wal_block_info()` to report WAL block information (Michael Paquier, Melanie Plageman, Bharath Rupireddy)
- Change how `pg_walinspect` functions `pg_get_wal_records_info()` and `pg_get_wal_stats()` interpret ending LSNs (Bharath Rupireddy)

Previously ending LSNs which represent nonexistent WAL locations would generate an error, while they will now be interpreted as the end of the WAL.

- Add detailed descriptions of WAL records in `pg_walinspect` and `pg_waldump` (Melanie Plageman, Peter Geoghegan)
- Add `pageinspect` function `bt_multi_page_stats()` to report statistics on multiple pages (Hamid Akhtar)

This is similar to `bt_page_stats()` except it can report on a range of pages.

- Add empty range output column to `pageinspect` function `brin_page_items()` (Tomas Vondra)
- Redesign archive modules to be more flexible (Nathan Bossart)

Initialization changes will require modules written for older versions of Postgres to be updated.

- Correct inaccurate `pg_stat_statements` row tracking extended query protocol statements (Sami Imseih)
- Add `pg_buffercache` function `pg_buffercache_usage_counts()` to report usage totals (Nathan Bossart)
- Add `pg_buffercache` function `pg_buffercache_summary()` to report summarized buffer statistics (Melih Mutlu)
- Allow the schemas of required extensions to be referenced in extension scripts using the new syntax `@extschema:referenced_extension_name@` (Regina Obe)
- Allow required extensions to be marked as non-relocatable using `no_relocate` (Regina Obe)

This allows `@extschema:referenced_extension_name@` to be treated as a constant for the lifetime of the extension.

### **E.3.3.12.1. postgres\_fdw**

- Allow `postgres_fdw` to do aborts in parallel (Etsuro Fujita)

This is enabled with `postgres_fdw` option `parallel_abort`.

- Make `ANALYZE` on foreign `postgres_fdw` tables more efficient (Tomas Vondra)

The `postgres_fdw` option `analyze_sampling` controls the sampling method.

- Restrict shipment of `reg*` type constants in `postgres_fdw` to those referencing built-in objects or extensions marked as shippable (Tom Lane)
- Have `postgres_fdw` and `dblink` handle interrupts during connection establishment (Andres Freund)

## E.3.4. Acknowledgments

The following individuals (in alphabetical order) have contributed to this release as patch authors, committers, reviewers, testers, or reporters of issues.

Abhijit Menon-Sen  
Adam Mackler  
Adrian Klaver  
Ahsan Hadi  
Ajin Cherian  
Ajit Awekar  
Alan Hodgson  
Aleksander Alekseev  
Alex Denman  
Alex Kozhemyakin  
Alexander Korolev  
Alexander Korotkov  
Alexander Lakhin  
Alexander Pyhalov  
Alexey Borzov  
Alexey Ermakov  
Alexey Makhmutov  
Álvaro Herrera  
Amit Kapila  
Amit Khandekar  
Amit Langote  
Amul Sul  
Anastasia Lubennikova  
Anban Company  
Andreas Dijkman  
Andreas Karlsson  
Andreas Scherbaum  
Andrei Zubkov  
Andres Freund  
Andrew Alsup  
Andrew Bille  
Andrew Dunstan  
Andrew Gierth  
Andrew Kesper  
Andrey Borodin  
Andrey Lepikhov  
Andrey Sokolov  
Ankit Kumar Pandey  
Ante Kresic  
Anton Melnikov  
Anton Sidiyakin  
Anton Voloshin  
Antonin Houska  
Arne Roland  
Artem Anisimov  
Arthur Zakirov  
Ashutosh Bapat  
Ashutosh Sharma  
Asim Praveen  
Atsushi Torikoshi  
Ayaki Tachikake  
Balazs Szilfai  
Benoit Lobréau



Bernd Helmle  
Bertrand Drouvot  
Bharath Rupireddy  
Bilva Sanaba  
Bob Krier  
Boris Zentner  
Brad Nicholson  
Brar Piening  
Bruce Momjian  
Bruno da Silva  
Carl Sopchak  
Cary Huang  
Changhong Fei  
Chris Travers  
Christoph Berg  
Christophe Pettus  
Corey Huinker  
Craig Ringer  
Curt Kolovson  
Dag Lem  
Dagfinn Ilmari Mannsåker  
Daniel Gustafsson  
Daniel Vérité  
Daniel Watzinger  
Daniel Westermann  
Daniele Varrazzo  
Daniil Anisimov  
Danny Shemesh  
Dave Page  
David Christensen  
David G. Johnston  
David Geier  
David Gilman  
David Kimura  
David Rowley  
David Steele  
David Turon  
David Zhang  
Davinder Singh  
Dean Rasheed  
Denis Laxalde  
Dilip Kumar  
Dimos Stamatakis  
Dmitriy Kuzmin  
Dmitry Astapov  
Dmitry Dolgov  
Dmitry Koval  
Dong Wook Lee  
Dongming Liu  
Drew DeVault  
Duncan Sands  
Ed Maste  
Egor Chindyaskin  
Ekaterina Kiryanova  
Elena Indrups kaya  
Emmanuel Quincerot  
Eric Mutta  
Erik Rijkers

Erki Eessaar  
Erwin Brandstetter  
Etsuro Fujita  
Eugeny Zhuzhnev  
Euler Taveira  
Evan Jones  
Evgeny Morozov  
Fabrízio de Royes Mello  
Farias de Oliveira  
Florin Irion  
Franz-Josef Färber  
Garen Torikian  
Georgios Kokolatos  
Gilles Darold  
Greg Stark  
Guillaume Lelarge  
Gunnar Bluth  
Gunnar Morling  
Gurjeet Singh  
Haiyang Wang  
Haiying Tang  
Hamid Akhtar  
Hans Buschmann  
Hao Wu  
Hayato Kuroda  
Heath Lord  
Heikki Linnakangas  
Himanshu Upadhyaya  
Hisahiro Kauchi  
Hongyu Song  
Hubert Lubaczewski  
Hung Nguyen  
Ian Barwick  
Ibrar Ahmed  
Ilya Gladyshev  
Ilya Nenashev  
Isaac Morland  
Israel Barth Rubio  
Jacob Champion  
Jacob Speidel  
Jaime Casanova  
Jakub Wartak  
James Coleman  
James Inform  
James Vanns  
Jan Wieck  
Japin Li  
Jeevan Ladhe  
Jeff Davis  
Jeff Janes  
Jehan-Guillaume de Rorthais  
Jelte Fennema  
Jian He  
Jim Jones  
Jinbao Chen  
Joe Conway  
Joel Jacobson  
John Naylor

Jonathan Katz  
Josef Simanek  
Joseph Koshakow  
Juan José Santamaría Flecha  
Julien Rouhaud  
Julien Roze  
Junwang Zhao  
Justin Pryzby  
Justin Zhang  
Karina Litskevich  
Karl O. Pinc  
Keisuke Kuroda  
Ken Kato  
Kevin McKibbin  
Kieran McCusker  
Kirk Wolak  
Konstantin Knizhnik  
Koshi Shibagaki  
Kotaro Kawamoto  
Kui Liu  
Kyotaro Horiguchi  
Lakshmi Narayanan Sreethar  
Laurence Parry  
Laurenz Albe  
Luca Ferrari  
Lukas Fittl  
Maciek Sakrejda  
Magnus Hagander  
Maja Založnik  
Marcel Hofstetter  
Marina Polyakova  
Mark Dilger  
Marko Tiikkaja  
Markus Winand  
Martijn van Oosterhout  
Martin Jurca  
Martin Kalcher  
Mary Xu  
Masahiko Sawada  
Masahiro Ikeda  
Masao Fujii  
Mason Sharp  
Matheus Alcantara  
Mats Kindahl  
Matthias van de Meent  
Matthijs van der Vleuten  
Maxim Orlov  
Maxim Yablokov  
Mehmet Emin Karakas  
Melanie Plageman  
Melih Mutlu  
Micah Gates  
Michael Banck  
Michael Paquier  
Michail Nikolaev  
Michel Pelletier  
Mike Oh  
Mikhail Gribkov

Mingli Zhang  
Miroslav Bendik  
Mitsuru Hinata  
Myo Wai Thant  
Naeem Akhter  
Naoki Okano  
Nathan Bossart  
Nazir Bilal Yavuz  
Neha Sharma  
Nick Babadzhanian  
Nicola Contu  
Nikhil Shetty  
Nikita Glukhov  
Nikolay Samokhvalov  
Nikolay Shaplov  
Nishant Sharma  
Nitin Jadhav  
Noah Misch  
Noboru Saito  
Noriyoshi Shinoda  
Nuko Yokohama  
Oleg Bartunov  
Oleg Tselebrovskiy  
Olly Betts  
Onder Kalaci  
Onur Tirtir  
Pablo Federico  
Palle Girgensohn  
Paul Guo  
Paul Jungwirth  
Paul Ramsey  
Pavel Borisov  
Pavel Kulakov  
Pavel Luzanov  
Pavel Stehule  
Peifeng Qiu  
Peter Eisentraut  
Peter Geoghegan  
Peter Smith  
Phil Florent  
Philippe Godfrin  
Platon Pronko  
Przemyslaw Sztoch  
Rachel Heaton  
Ranier Vilela  
Regina Obe  
Reid Thompson  
Reiner Peterke  
Richard Guo  
Riivo Kolka  
Rishu Bagga  
Robert Haas  
Robert Sjöblom  
Robert Treat  
Roberto Mello  
Robins Tharakan  
Roman Zharkov  
Ronan Dunklau

Rushabh Lathia  
Ryo Matsumura  
Samay Sharma  
Sami Imseih  
Sandeep Thakkar  
Sandro Santilli  
Sebastien Flaesch  
Sébastien Lardi re  
Sehrope Sarkuni  
Sergey Belyashov  
Sergey Pankov  
Sergey Shinderuk  
Shi Yu  
Shinya Kato  
Sho Kato  
Shruthi Gowda  
Shveta Mallik  
Simon Riggs  
Sindy Seniorita  
Sirisha Chamarthi  
Sravan Kumar  
St phane Tachaires  
Stephen Frost  
Steve Chavez  
Stone Tickle  
Sven Klemm  
Takamichi Osumi  
Takeshi Ideriha  
Tatsuhiko Nakamori  
Tatsuo Ishii  
Teja Mupparti  
Tender Wang  
Teodor Sigaev  
Thiago Nunes  
Thom Brown  
Thomas Habets  
Thomas Mc Kay  
Thomas Munro  
Tim Carey-Smith  
Tim Field  
Timo Stolz  
Tom Lane  
Tomas Vondra  
Tor Erik Linnerud  
Torsten F rtsch  
Tristan Partin  
Troy Frericks  
Tushar Ahuja  
Valerie Woolard  
Vibhor Kumar  
Victor Spirin  
Victoria Shepard  
Vignesh C  
Vik Fearing  
Vitaly Burovoy  
Vitaly Davydov  
Wang Wei  
Wenjing Zeng

Whale Song  
Will Mortensen  
Wolfgang Walther  
Xin Wen  
Xing Guo  
Xingwang Xu  
XueJing Zhao  
Yanliang Lei  
Youmiu Mo  
Yugo Nagata  
Yura Sokolov  
Yuta Katsuragi  
Zhen Mingyang  
Zheng Li  
Zhihong Yu  
Zhijie Hou  
Zongliang Quan  
Zuming Jiang

## E.4. Prior Releases

Release notes for prior release branches can be found at <https://www.postgresql.org/docs/release/>

---

# Appendix F. Additional Supplied Modules and Extensions

This appendix and the next one contain information on the optional components found in the `contrib` directory of the PostgreSQL distribution. These include porting tools, analysis utilities, and plug-in features that are not part of the core PostgreSQL system. They are separate mainly because they address a limited audience or are too experimental to be part of the main source tree. This does not preclude their usefulness.

This appendix covers extensions and other server plug-in module libraries found in `contrib`. Appendix G covers utility programs.

When building from the source distribution, these optional components are not built automatically, unless you build the "world" target (see Step 2). You can build and install all of them by running:

```
make
make install
```

in the `contrib` directory of a configured source tree; or to build and install just one selected module, do the same in that module's subdirectory. Many of the modules have regression tests, which can be executed by running:

```
make check
```

before installation or

```
make installcheck
```

once you have a PostgreSQL server running.

If you are using a pre-packaged version of PostgreSQL, these components are typically made available as a separate subpackage, such as `postgresql-contrib`.

Many components supply new user-defined functions, operators, or types, packaged as *extensions*. To make use of one of these extensions, after you have installed the code you need to register the new SQL objects in the database system. This is done by executing a `CREATE EXTENSION` command. In a fresh database, you can simply do

```
CREATE EXTENSION extension_name;
```

This command registers the new SQL objects in the current database only, so you need to run it in every database in which you want the extension's facilities to be available. Alternatively, run it in database `template1` so that the extension will be copied into subsequently-created databases by default.

For all extensions, the `CREATE EXTENSION` command must be run by a database superuser, unless the extension is considered "trusted". Trusted extensions can be run by any user who has `CREATE` privilege on the current database. Extensions that are trusted are identified as such in the sections that follow. Generally, trusted extensions are ones that cannot provide access to outside-the-database functionality.

The following extensions are trusted in a default installation:

<code>btree_gin</code>	<code>fuzzystrmatch</code>	<code>ltree</code>	<code>tcn</code>
<code>btree_gist</code>	<code>hstore</code>	<code>pgcrypto</code>	<code>tsm_system_rows</code>

Additional Supplied  
Modules and Extensions

---

citext	intarray	pg_trgm	tsm_system_time
cube	isn	seg	unaccent
dict_int	lo	tablefunc	uuid-oss

Many extensions allow you to install their objects in a schema of your choice. To do that, add `SCHEMA schema_name` to the `CREATE EXTENSION` command. By default, the objects will be placed in your current creation target schema, which in turn defaults to `public`.

Note, however, that some of these components are not “extensions” in this sense, but are loaded into the server in some other way, for instance by way of `shared_preload_libraries`. See the documentation of each component for details.



## F.1. adminpack — pgAdmin support toolpack

adminpack provides a number of support functions which pgAdmin and other administration and management tools can use to provide additional functionality, such as remote management of server log files. Use of all these functions is only allowed to database superusers by default, but may be allowed to other users by using the GRANT command.

The functions shown in Table F.1 provide write access to files on the machine hosting the server. (See also the functions in Table 9.101, which provide read-only access.) Only files within the database cluster directory can be accessed, unless the user is a superuser or given privileges of one of the `pg_read_server_files` or `pg_write_server_files` roles, as appropriate for the function, but either a relative or absolute path is allowable.

**Table F.1. adminpack Functions**

Function	Description
<code>pg_catalog.pg_file_write ( filename text, data text, append boolean ) → bigint</code>	Writes, or appends to, a text file.
<code>pg_catalog.pg_file_sync ( filename text ) → void</code>	Flushes a file or directory to disk.
<code>pg_catalog.pg_file_rename ( oldname text, newname text [, archivename text ] ) → boolean</code>	Renames a file.
<code>pg_catalog.pg_file_unlink ( filename text ) → boolean</code>	Removes a file.
<code>pg_catalog.pg_logdir_ls () → setof record</code>	Lists the log files in the <code>log_directory</code> directory.

`pg_file_write` writes the specified *data* into the file named by *filename*. If *append* is false, the file must not already exist. If *append* is true, the file can already exist, and will be appended to if so. Returns the number of bytes written.

`pg_file_sync` fsyncs the specified file or directory named by *filename*. An error is thrown on failure (e.g., the specified file is not present). Note that `data_sync_retry` has no effect on this function, and therefore a PANIC-level error will not be raised even on failure to flush database files.

`pg_file_rename` renames a file. If *archivename* is omitted or NULL, it simply renames *oldname* to *newname* (which must not already exist). If *archivename* is provided, it first renames *newname* to *archivename* (which must not already exist), and then renames *oldname* to *newname*. In event of failure of the second rename step, it will try to rename *archivename* back to *newname* before reporting the error. Returns true on success, false if the source file(s) are not present or not writable; other cases throw errors.

`pg_file_unlink` removes the specified file. Returns true on success, false if the specified file is not present or the `unlink()` call fails; other cases throw errors.

`pg_logdir_ls` returns the start timestamps and path names of all the log files in the `log_directory` directory. The `log_filename` parameter must have its default setting (`postgresql-%Y-%m-%d_%H%M%S.log`) to use this function.



## F.2. amcheck — tools to verify table and index consistency

The `amcheck` module provides functions that allow you to verify the logical consistency of the structure of relations.

The B-Tree checking functions verify various *invariants* in the structure of the representation of particular relations. The correctness of the access method functions behind index scans and other important operations relies on these invariants always holding. For example, certain functions verify, among other things, that all B-Tree pages have items in “logical” order (e.g., for B-Tree indexes on `text`, index tuples should be in collated lexical order). If that particular invariant somehow fails to hold, we can expect binary searches on the affected page to incorrectly guide index scans, resulting in wrong answers to SQL queries. If the structure appears to be valid, no error is raised.

Verification is performed using the same procedures as those used by index scans themselves, which may be user-defined operator class code. For example, B-Tree index verification relies on comparisons made with one or more B-Tree support function 1 routines. See Section 38.16.3 for details of operator class support functions.

Unlike the B-Tree checking functions which report corruption by raising errors, the heap checking function `verify_heapam` checks a table and attempts to return a set of rows, one row per corruption detected. Despite this, if facilities that `verify_heapam` relies upon are themselves corrupted, the function may be unable to continue and may instead raise an error.

Permission to execute `amcheck` functions may be granted to non-superusers, but before granting such permissions careful consideration should be given to data security and privacy concerns. Although the corruption reports generated by these functions do not focus on the contents of the corrupted data so much as on the structure of that data and the nature of the corruptions found, an attacker who gains permission to execute these functions, particularly if the attacker can also induce corruption, might be able to infer something of the data itself from such messages.

### F.2.1. Functions

`bt_index_check(index regclass, heapallindexed boolean)` returns void

`bt_index_check` tests that its target, a B-Tree index, respects a variety of invariants. Example usage:

```
test=# SELECT bt_index_check(index => c.oid, heapallindexed =>
        i.indisunique),
        c.relname,
        c.relpages
FROM pg_index i
JOIN pg_opclass op ON i.indclass[0] = op.oid
JOIN pg_am am ON op.opcmethod = am.oid
JOIN pg_class c ON i.indexrelid = c.oid
JOIN pg_namespace n ON c.relnamespace = n.oid
WHERE am.amname = 'btree' AND n.nspname = 'pg_catalog'
-- Don't check temp tables, which may be from another session:
AND c.relpersistence != 't'
-- Function may throw an error when this is omitted:
AND c.relkind = 'i' AND i.indisready AND i.indisvalid
ORDER BY c.relpages DESC LIMIT 10;
```

<code>bt_index_check</code>	<code>relname</code>	<code>relpages</code>
	<code>pg_depend_reference_index</code>	43

pg_depend_depender_index	40
pg_proc_prname_args_nsp_index	31
pg_description_o_c_o_index	21
pg_attribute_relid_attnam_index	14
pg_proc_oid_index	10
pg_attribute_relid_attnum_index	9
pg_amproc_fam_proc_index	5
pg_amop_opr_fam_index	5
pg_amop_fam_strat_index	5
(10 rows)	

This example shows a session that performs verification of the 10 largest catalog indexes in the database “test”. Verification of the presence of heap tuples as index tuples is requested for the subset that are unique indexes. Since no error is raised, all indexes tested appear to be logically consistent. Naturally, this query could easily be changed to call `bt_index_check` for every index in the database where verification is supported.

`bt_index_check` acquires an `AccessShareLock` on the target index and the heap relation it belongs to. This lock mode is the same lock mode acquired on relations by simple `SELECT` statements. `bt_index_check` does not verify invariants that span child/parent relationships, but will verify the presence of all heap tuples as index tuples within the index when *heapallindexed* is true. When a routine, lightweight test for corruption is required in a live production environment, using `bt_index_check` often provides the best trade-off between thoroughness of verification and limiting the impact on application performance and availability.

`bt_index_parent_check(index regclass, heapallindexed boolean, rootdescend boolean)` returns void

`bt_index_parent_check` tests that its target, a B-Tree index, respects a variety of invariants. Optionally, when the *heapallindexed* argument is true, the function verifies the presence of all heap tuples that should be found within the index. When the optional *rootdescend* argument is true, verification re-finds tuples on the leaf level by performing a new search from the root page for each tuple. The checks that can be performed by `bt_index_parent_check` are a superset of the checks that can be performed by `bt_index_check`. `bt_index_parent_check` can be thought of as a more thorough variant of `bt_index_check`: unlike `bt_index_check`, `bt_index_parent_check` also checks invariants that span parent/child relationships, including checking that there are no missing downlinks in the index structure. `bt_index_parent_check` follows the general convention of raising an error if it finds a logical inconsistency or other problem.

A `ShareLock` is required on the target index by `bt_index_parent_check` (a `ShareLock` is also acquired on the heap relation). These locks prevent concurrent data modification from `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, and `DELETE` commands. The locks also prevent the underlying relation from being concurrently processed by `VACUUM`, as well as all other utility commands. Note that the function holds locks only while running, not for the entire transaction.

`bt_index_parent_check`'s additional verification is more likely to detect various pathological cases. These cases may involve an incorrectly implemented B-Tree operator class used by the index that is checked, or, hypothetically, undiscovered bugs in the underlying B-Tree index access method code. Note that `bt_index_parent_check` cannot be used when hot standby mode is enabled (i.e., on read-only physical replicas), unlike `bt_index_check`.

### Tip

`bt_index_check` and `bt_index_parent_check` both output log messages about the verification process at `DEBUG1` and `DEBUG2` severity levels. These messages provide detailed information about the verification process that may be of interest to PostgreSQL developers. Advanced users may also find this information helpful, since it provides additional context should verification actually detect an inconsistency. Running:

```
SET client_min_messages = DEBUG1;
```

in an interactive psql session before running a verification query will display messages about the progress of verification with a manageable level of detail.

`verify_heapam(relation regclass, on_error_stop boolean, check_toast boolean, skip text, startblock bigint, endblock bigint, blkno OUT bigint, offnum OUT integer, attnum OUT integer, msg OUT text)` returns setof record

Checks a table, sequence, or materialized view for structural corruption, where pages in the relation contain data that is invalidly formatted, and for logical corruption, where pages are structurally valid but inconsistent with the rest of the database cluster.

The following optional arguments are recognized:

`on_error_stop`

If true, corruption checking stops at the end of the first block in which any corruptions are found.

Defaults to false.

`check_toast`

If true, toasted values are checked against the target relation's TOAST table.

This option is known to be slow. Also, if the toast table or its index is corrupt, checking it against toast values could conceivably crash the server, although in many cases this would just produce an error.

Defaults to false.

`skip`

If not none, corruption checking skips blocks that are marked as all-visible or all-frozen, as specified. Valid options are `all-visible`, `all-frozen` and `none`.

Defaults to none.

`startblock`

If specified, corruption checking begins at the specified block, skipping all previous blocks. It is an error to specify a `startblock` outside the range of blocks in the target table.

By default, checking begins at the first block.

`endblock`

If specified, corruption checking ends at the specified block, skipping all remaining blocks. It is an error to specify an `endblock` outside the range of blocks in the target table.

By default, all blocks are checked.

For each corruption detected, `verify_heapam` returns a row with the following columns:

`blkno`

The number of the block containing the corrupt page.

`offnum`

The OffsetNumber of the corrupt tuple.

`attnum`

The attribute number of the corrupt column in the tuple, if the corruption is specific to a column and not the tuple as a whole.

`msg`

A message describing the problem detected.

## F.2.2. Optional *heapallindexed* Verification

When the *heapallindexed* argument to B-Tree verification functions is `true`, an additional phase of verification is performed against the table associated with the target index relation. This consists of a “dummy” `CREATE INDEX` operation, which checks for the presence of all hypothetical new index tuples against a temporary, in-memory summarizing structure (this is built when needed during the basic first phase of verification). The summarizing structure “fingerprints” every tuple found within the target index. The high level principle behind *heapallindexed* verification is that a new index that is equivalent to the existing, target index must only have entries that can be found in the existing structure.

The additional *heapallindexed* phase adds significant overhead: verification will typically take several times longer. However, there is no change to the relation-level locks acquired when *heapallindexed* verification is performed.

The summarizing structure is bound in size by `maintenance_work_mem`. In order to ensure that there is no more than a 2% probability of failure to detect an inconsistency for each heap tuple that should be represented in the index, approximately 2 bytes of memory are needed per tuple. As less memory is made available per tuple, the probability of missing an inconsistency slowly increases. This approach limits the overhead of verification significantly, while only slightly reducing the probability of detecting a problem, especially for installations where verification is treated as a routine maintenance task. Any single absent or malformed tuple has a new opportunity to be detected with each new verification attempt.

## F.2.3. Using *amcheck* Effectively

*amcheck* can be effective at detecting various types of failure modes that data checksums will fail to catch. These include:

- Structural inconsistencies caused by incorrect operator class implementations.

This includes issues caused by the comparison rules of operating system collations changing. Comparisons of datums of a collatable type like `text` must be immutable (just as all comparisons used for B-Tree index scans must be immutable), which implies that operating system collation rules must never change. Though rare, updates to operating system collation rules can cause these issues. More commonly, an inconsistency in the collation order between a primary server and a standby server is implicated, possibly because the *major* operating system version in use is inconsistent. Such inconsistencies will generally only arise on standby servers, and so can generally only be detected on standby servers.

If a problem like this arises, it may not affect each individual index that is ordered using an affected collation, simply because *indexed* values might happen to have the same absolute ordering regardless of the behavioral inconsistency. See Section 24.1 and Section 24.2 for further details about how PostgreSQL uses operating system locales and collations.

- Structural inconsistencies between indexes and the heap relations that are indexed (when *heapallindexed* verification is performed).

There is no cross-checking of indexes against their heap relation during normal operation. Symptoms of heap corruption can be subtle.

- Corruption caused by hypothetical undiscovered bugs in the underlying PostgreSQL access method code, sort code, or transaction management code.

Automatic verification of the structural integrity of indexes plays a role in the general testing of new or proposed PostgreSQL features that could plausibly allow a logical inconsistency to be introduced. Verification of table structure and associated visibility and transaction status information plays a similar role. One obvious testing strategy is to call `amcheck` functions continuously when running the standard regression tests. See Section 33.1 for details on running the tests.

- File system or storage subsystem faults where checksums happen to simply not be enabled.

Note that `amcheck` examines a page as represented in some shared memory buffer at the time of verification if there is only a shared buffer hit when accessing the block. Consequently, `amcheck` does not necessarily examine data read from the file system at the time of verification. Note that when checksums are enabled, `amcheck` may raise an error due to a checksum failure when a corrupt block is read into a buffer.

- Corruption caused by faulty RAM, or the broader memory subsystem.

PostgreSQL does not protect against correctable memory errors and it is assumed you will operate using RAM that uses industry standard Error Correcting Codes (ECC) or better protection. However, ECC memory is typically only immune to single-bit errors, and should not be assumed to provide *absolute* protection against failures that result in memory corruption.

When *heapallindexed* verification is performed, there is generally a greatly increased chance of detecting single-bit errors, since strict binary equality is tested, and the indexed attributes within the heap are tested.

Structural corruption can happen due to faulty storage hardware, or relation files being overwritten or modified by unrelated software. This kind of corruption can also be detected with data page checksums.

Relation pages which are correctly formatted, internally consistent, and correct relative to their own internal checksums may still contain logical corruption. As such, this kind of corruption cannot be detected with checksums. Examples include toasted values in the main table which lack a corresponding entry in the toast table, and tuples in the main table with a Transaction ID that is older than the oldest valid Transaction ID in the database or cluster.

Multiple causes of logical corruption have been observed in production systems, including bugs in the PostgreSQL server software, faulty and ill-conceived backup and restore tools, and user error.

Corrupt relations are most concerning in live production environments, precisely the same environments where high risk activities are least welcome. For this reason, `verify_heapam` has been designed to diagnose corruption without undue risk. It cannot guard against all causes of backend crashes, as even executing the calling query could be unsafe on a badly corrupted system. Access to catalog tables is performed and could be problematic if the catalogs themselves are corrupted.

In general, `amcheck` can only prove the presence of corruption; it cannot prove its absence.

## F.2.4. Repairing Corruption

No error concerning corruption raised by `amcheck` should ever be a false positive. `amcheck` raises errors in the event of conditions that, by definition, should never happen, and so careful analysis of `amcheck` errors is often required.

There is no general method of repairing problems that `amcheck` detects. An explanation for the root cause of an invariant violation should be sought. `pageinspect` may play a useful role in diagnosing corruption that `amcheck` detects. A `REINDEX` may not be effective in repairing corruption.





## F.3. auth\_delay — pause on authentication failure

`auth_delay` causes the server to pause briefly before reporting authentication failure, to make brute-force attacks on database passwords more difficult. Note that it does nothing to prevent denial-of-service attacks, and may even exacerbate them, since processes that are waiting before reporting authentication failure will still consume connection slots.

In order to function, this module must be loaded via `shared_preload_libraries` in `postgresql.conf`.

### F.3.1. Configuration Parameters

`auth_delay.milliseconds` (integer)

The number of milliseconds to wait before reporting an authentication failure. The default is 0.

These parameters must be set in `postgresql.conf`. Typical usage might be:

```
# postgresql.conf
shared_preload_libraries = 'auth_delay'

auth_delay.milliseconds = '500'
```

### F.3.2. Author

KaiGai Kohei <kaigai@ak.jp.nec.com>

## F.4. auto\_explain — log execution plans of slow queries

The `auto_explain` module provides a means for logging execution plans of slow statements automatically, without having to run `EXPLAIN` by hand. This is especially helpful for tracking down un-optimized queries in large applications.

The module provides no SQL-accessible functions. To use it, simply load it into the server. You can load it into an individual session:

```
LOAD 'auto_explain';
```

(You must be superuser to do that.) More typical usage is to preload it into some or all sessions by including `auto_explain` in `session_preload_libraries` or `shared_preload_libraries` in `postgresql.conf`. Then you can track unexpectedly slow queries no matter when they happen. Of course there is a price in overhead for that.

### F.4.1. Configuration Parameters

There are several configuration parameters that control the behavior of `auto_explain`. Note that the default behavior is to do nothing, so you must set at least `auto_explain.log_min_duration` if you want any results.

`auto_explain.log_min_duration(integer)`

`auto_explain.log_min_duration` is the minimum statement execution time, in milliseconds, that will cause the statement's plan to be logged. Setting this to 0 logs all plans. -1 (the default) disables logging of plans. For example, if you set it to 250ms then all statements that run 250ms or longer will be logged. Only superusers can change this setting.

`auto_explain.log_parameter_max_length(integer)`

`auto_explain.log_parameter_max_length` controls the logging of query parameter values. A value of -1 (the default) logs the parameter values in full. 0 disables logging of parameter values. A value greater than zero truncates each parameter value to that many bytes. Only superusers can change this setting.

`auto_explain.log_analyze(boolean)`

`auto_explain.log_analyze` causes `EXPLAIN ANALYZE` output, rather than just `EXPLAIN` output, to be printed when an execution plan is logged. This parameter is off by default. Only superusers can change this setting.

#### Note

When this parameter is on, per-plan-node timing occurs for all statements executed, whether or not they run long enough to actually get logged. This can have an extremely negative impact on performance. Turning off `auto_explain.log_timing` ameliorates the performance cost, at the price of obtaining less information.

`auto_explain.log_buffers(boolean)`

`auto_explain.log_buffers` controls whether buffer usage statistics are printed when an execution plan is logged; it's equivalent to the `BUFFERS` option of `EXPLAIN`. This parameter has

no effect unless `auto_explain.log_analyze` is enabled. This parameter is off by default. Only superusers can change this setting.

`auto_explain.log_wal` (boolean)

`auto_explain.log_wal` controls whether WAL usage statistics are printed when an execution plan is logged; it's equivalent to the `WAL` option of `EXPLAIN`. This parameter has no effect unless `auto_explain.log_analyze` is enabled. This parameter is off by default. Only superusers can change this setting.

`auto_explain.log_timing` (boolean)

`auto_explain.log_timing` controls whether per-node timing information is printed when an execution plan is logged; it's equivalent to the `TIMING` option of `EXPLAIN`. The overhead of repeatedly reading the system clock can slow down queries significantly on some systems, so it may be useful to set this parameter to off when only actual row counts, and not exact times, are needed. This parameter has no effect unless `auto_explain.log_analyze` is enabled. This parameter is on by default. Only superusers can change this setting.

`auto_explain.log_triggers` (boolean)

`auto_explain.log_triggers` causes trigger execution statistics to be included when an execution plan is logged. This parameter has no effect unless `auto_explain.log_analyze` is enabled. This parameter is off by default. Only superusers can change this setting.

`auto_explain.log_verbose` (boolean)

`auto_explain.log_verbose` controls whether verbose details are printed when an execution plan is logged; it's equivalent to the `VERBOSE` option of `EXPLAIN`. This parameter is off by default. Only superusers can change this setting.

`auto_explain.log_settings` (boolean)

`auto_explain.log_settings` controls whether information about modified configuration options is printed when an execution plan is logged. Only options affecting query planning with value different from the built-in default value are included in the output. This parameter is off by default. Only superusers can change this setting.

`auto_explain.log_format` (enum)

`auto_explain.log_format` selects the `EXPLAIN` output format to be used. The allowed values are `text`, `xml`, `json`, and `yaml`. The default is `text`. Only superusers can change this setting.

`auto_explain.log_level` (enum)

`auto_explain.log_level` selects the log level at which `auto_explain` will log the query plan. Valid values are `DEBUG5`, `DEBUG4`, `DEBUG3`, `DEBUG2`, `DEBUG1`, `INFO`, `NOTICE`, `WARNING`, and `LOG`. The default is `LOG`. Only superusers can change this setting.

`auto_explain.log_nested_statements` (boolean)

`auto_explain.log_nested_statements` causes nested statements (statements executed inside a function) to be considered for logging. When it is off, only top-level query plans are logged. This parameter is off by default. Only superusers can change this setting.

`auto_explain.sample_rate` (real)

`auto_explain.sample_rate` causes `auto_explain` to only explain a fraction of the statements in each session. The default is 1, meaning explain all the queries. In case of nested statements, either all will be explained or none. Only superusers can change this setting.

In ordinary usage, these parameters are set in `postgresql.conf`, although superusers can alter them on-the-fly within their own sessions. Typical usage might be:

```
# postgresql.conf
session_preload_libraries = 'auto_explain'

auto_explain.log_min_duration = '3s'
```

## F.4.2. Example

```
postgres=# LOAD 'auto_explain';
postgres=# SET auto_explain.log_min_duration = 0;
postgres=# SET auto_explain.log_analyze = true;
postgres=# SELECT count(*)
           FROM pg_class, pg_index
           WHERE oid = indrelid AND indisunique;
```

This might produce log output such as:

```
LOG:  duration: 3.651 ms  plan:
       Query Text: SELECT count(*)
                   FROM pg_class, pg_index
                   WHERE oid = indrelid AND indisunique;
       Aggregate  (cost=16.79..16.80 rows=1 width=0) (actual
time=3.626..3.627 rows=1 loops=1)
         -> Hash Join  (cost=4.17..16.55 rows=92 width=0) (actual
time=3.349..3.594 rows=92 loops=1)
           Hash Cond: (pg_class.oid = pg_index.indrelid)
             -> Seq Scan on pg_class  (cost=0.00..9.55 rows=255
width=4) (actual time=0.016..0.140 rows=255 loops=1)
               -> Hash  (cost=3.02..3.02 rows=92 width=4) (actual
time=3.238..3.238 rows=92 loops=1)
                 Buckets: 1024  Batches: 1  Memory Usage: 4kB
                 -> Seq Scan on pg_index  (cost=0.00..3.02 rows=92
width=4) (actual time=0.008..3.187 rows=92 loops=1)
                   Filter: indisunique
```

## F.4.3. Author

Takahiro Itagaki <itagaki.takahiro@oss.ntt.co.jp>

## F.5. basebackup\_to\_shell — example "shell" pg\_basebackup module

`basebackup_to_shell` adds a custom basebackup target called `shell`. This makes it possible to run `pg_basebackup --target=shell` or, depending on how this module is configured, `pg_basebackup --target=shell:DETAIL_STRING`, and cause a server command chosen by the server administrator to be executed for each tar archive generated by the backup process. The command will receive the contents of the archive via standard input.

This module is primarily intended as an example of how to create a new backup targets via an extension module, but in some scenarios it may be useful for its own sake. In order to function, this module must be loaded via `shared_preload_libraries` or `local_preload_libraries`.

### F.5.1. Configuration Parameters

`basebackup_to_shell.command(string)`

The command which the server should execute for each archive generated by the backup process. If `%f` occurs in the command string, it will be replaced by the name of the archive (e.g. `base.tar`). If `%d` occurs in the command string, it will be replaced by the target detail provided by the user. A target detail is required if `%d` is used in the command string, and prohibited otherwise. For security reasons, it may contain only alphanumeric characters. If `%%` occurs in the command string, it will be replaced by a single `%`. If `%` occurs in the command string followed by any other character or at the end of the string, an error occurs.

`basebackup_to_shell.required_role(string)`

The role required in order to make use of the `shell` backup target. If this is not set, any replication user may make use of the `shell` backup target.

### F.5.2. Author

Robert Haas <[rhaas@postgresql.org](mailto:rhaas@postgresql.org)>

## F.6. basic\_archive — an example WAL archive module

`basic_archive` is an example of an archive module. This module copies completed WAL segment files to the specified directory. This may not be especially useful, but it can serve as a starting point for developing your own archive module. For more information about archive modules, see Chapter 51.

In order to function, this module must be loaded via `archive_library`, and `archive_mode` must be enabled.

### F.6.1. Configuration Parameters

`basic_archive.archive_directory` (string)

The directory where the server should copy WAL segment files. This directory must already exist. The default is an empty string, which effectively halts WAL archiving, but if `archive_mode` is enabled, the server will accumulate WAL segment files in the expectation that a value will soon be provided.

These parameters must be set in `postgresql.conf`. Typical usage might be:

```
# postgresql.conf
archive_mode = 'on'
archive_library = 'basic_archive'
basic_archive.archive_directory = '/path/to/archive/directory'
```

### F.6.2. Notes

Server crashes may leave temporary files with the prefix `archtemp` in the archive directory. It is recommended to delete such files before restarting the server after a crash. It is safe to remove such files while the server is running as long as they are unrelated to any archiving still in progress, but users should use extra caution when doing so.

### F.6.3. Author

Nathan Bossart

## F.7. bloom — bloom filter index access method

bloom provides an index access method based on Bloom filters<sup>1</sup>.

A Bloom filter is a space-efficient data structure that is used to test whether an element is a member of a set. In the case of an index access method, it allows fast exclusion of non-matching tuples via signatures whose size is determined at index creation.

A signature is a lossy representation of the indexed attribute(s), and as such is prone to reporting false positives; that is, it may be reported that an element is in the set, when it is not. So index search results must always be rechecked using the actual attribute values from the heap entry. Larger signatures reduce the odds of a false positive and thus reduce the number of useless heap visits, but of course also make the index larger and hence slower to scan.

This type of index is most useful when a table has many attributes and queries test arbitrary combinations of them. A traditional btree index is faster than a bloom index, but it can require many btree indexes to support all possible queries where one needs only a single bloom index. Note however that bloom indexes only support equality queries, whereas btree indexes can also perform inequality and range searches.

### F.7.1. Parameters

A bloom index accepts the following parameters in its WITH clause:

`length`

Length of each signature (index entry) in bits. It is rounded up to the nearest multiple of 16. The default is 80 bits and the maximum is 4096.

`col1 – col32`

Number of bits generated for each index column. Each parameter's name refers to the number of the index column that it controls. The default is 2 bits and the maximum is 4095. Parameters for index columns not actually used are ignored.

### F.7.2. Examples

This is an example of creating a bloom index:

```
CREATE INDEX bloomidx ON tbloom USING bloom (i1,i2,i3)
WITH (length=80, col1=2, col2=2, col3=4);
```

The index is created with a signature length of 80 bits, with attributes i1 and i2 mapped to 2 bits, and attribute i3 mapped to 4 bits. We could have omitted the `length`, `col1`, and `col2` specifications since those have the default values.

Here is a more complete example of bloom index definition and usage, as well as a comparison with equivalent btree indexes. The bloom index is considerably smaller than the btree index, and can perform better.

```
=# CREATE TABLE tbloom AS
```

---

<sup>1</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bloom\\_filter](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bloom_filter)

```
SELECT
  (random() * 1000000)::int as i1,
  (random() * 1000000)::int as i2,
  (random() * 1000000)::int as i3,
  (random() * 1000000)::int as i4,
  (random() * 1000000)::int as i5,
  (random() * 1000000)::int as i6
FROM
  generate_series(1,10000000);
SELECT 10000000
```

A sequential scan over this large table takes a long time:

```
=# EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT * FROM tbloom WHERE i2 = 898732 AND i5 =
123451;
```

QUERY PLAN

```
-----
Seq Scan on tbloom (cost=0.00..2137.14 rows=3 width=24) (actual
time=16.971..16.971 rows=0 loops=1)
  Filter: ((i2 = 898732) AND (i5 = 123451))
  Rows Removed by Filter: 100000
Planning Time: 0.346 ms
Execution Time: 16.988 ms
(5 rows)
```

Even with the btree index defined the result will still be a sequential scan:

```
=# CREATE INDEX btreeidx ON tbloom (i1, i2, i3, i4, i5, i6);
CREATE INDEX
=# SELECT pg_size_pretty(pg_relation_size('btreeidx'));
pg_size_pretty
-----
3976 kB
(1 row)
=# EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT * FROM tbloom WHERE i2 = 898732 AND i5 =
123451;
```

QUERY PLAN

```
-----
Seq Scan on tbloom (cost=0.00..2137.00 rows=2 width=24) (actual
time=12.805..12.805 rows=0 loops=1)
  Filter: ((i2 = 898732) AND (i5 = 123451))
  Rows Removed by Filter: 100000
Planning Time: 0.138 ms
Execution Time: 12.817 ms
(5 rows)
```

Having the bloom index defined on the table is better than btree in handling this type of search:

```
=# CREATE INDEX bloomidx ON tbloom USING bloom (i1, i2, i3, i4, i5,
i6);
CREATE INDEX
=# SELECT pg_size_pretty(pg_relation_size('bloomidx'));
pg_size_pretty
-----
```



```
1584 kB
(1 row)
=# EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT * FROM tbloom WHERE i2 = 898732 AND i5 =
123451;

                                QUERY PLAN
-----
Bitmap Heap Scan on tbloom  (cost=1792.00..1799.69 rows=2
width=24) (actual time=0.388..0.388 rows=0 loops=1)
  Recheck Cond: ((i2 = 898732) AND (i5 = 123451))
  Rows Removed by Index Recheck: 29
  Heap Blocks: exact=28
    -> Bitmap Index Scan on bloomidx  (cost=0.00..1792.00 rows=2
width=0) (actual time=0.356..0.356 rows=29 loops=1)
      Index Cond: ((i2 = 898732) AND (i5 = 123451))
Planning Time: 0.099 ms
Execution Time: 0.408 ms
(8 rows)
```

Now, the main problem with the btree search is that btree is inefficient when the search conditions do not constrain the leading index column(s). A better strategy for btree is to create a separate index on each column. Then the planner will choose something like this:

```
=# CREATE INDEX btreeidx1 ON tbloom (i1);
CREATE INDEX
=# CREATE INDEX btreeidx2 ON tbloom (i2);
CREATE INDEX
=# CREATE INDEX btreeidx3 ON tbloom (i3);
CREATE INDEX
=# CREATE INDEX btreeidx4 ON tbloom (i4);
CREATE INDEX
=# CREATE INDEX btreeidx5 ON tbloom (i5);
CREATE INDEX
=# CREATE INDEX btreeidx6 ON tbloom (i6);
CREATE INDEX
=# EXPLAIN ANALYZE SELECT * FROM tbloom WHERE i2 = 898732 AND i5 =
123451;

                                QUERY PLAN
-----
Bitmap Heap Scan on tbloom  (cost=24.34..32.03 rows=2 width=24)
(actual time=0.028..0.029 rows=0 loops=1)
  Recheck Cond: ((i5 = 123451) AND (i2 = 898732))
    -> BitmapAnd  (cost=24.34..24.34 rows=2 width=0) (actual
time=0.027..0.027 rows=0 loops=1)
      -> Bitmap Index Scan on btreeidx5  (cost=0.00..12.04
rows=500 width=0) (actual time=0.026..0.026 rows=0 loops=1)
        Index Cond: (i5 = 123451)
      -> Bitmap Index Scan on btreeidx2  (cost=0.00..12.04
rows=500 width=0) (never executed)
        Index Cond: (i2 = 898732)
Planning Time: 0.491 ms
Execution Time: 0.055 ms
(9 rows)
```

Although this query runs much faster than with either of the single indexes, we pay a penalty in index size. Each of the single-column btree indexes occupies 2 MB, so the total space needed is 12 MB, eight times the space used by the bloom index.

## F.7.3. Operator Class Interface

An operator class for bloom indexes requires only a hash function for the indexed data type and an equality operator for searching. This example shows the operator class definition for the `text` data type:

```
CREATE OPERATOR CLASS text_ops
DEFAULT FOR TYPE text USING bloom AS
    OPERATOR      1      =(text, text),
    FUNCTION      1      hashtext(text);
```

## F.7.4. Limitations

- Only operator classes for `int4` and `text` are included with the module.
- Only the `=` operator is supported for search. But it is possible to add support for arrays with union and intersection operations in the future.
- bloom access method doesn't support `UNIQUE` indexes.
- bloom access method doesn't support searching for `NULL` values.

## F.7.5. Authors

Teodor Sigaev <teodor@postgrespro.ru>, Postgres Professional, Moscow, Russia

Alexander Korotkov <a.korotkov@postgrespro.ru>, Postgres Professional, Moscow, Russia

Oleg Bartunov <obartunov@postgrespro.ru>, Postgres Professional, Moscow, Russia

## F.8. btree\_gin — GIN operator classes with B-tree behavior

`btree_gin` provides GIN operator classes that implement B-tree equivalent behavior for the data types `int2`, `int4`, `int8`, `float4`, `float8`, `timestamp with time zone`, `timestamp without time zone`, `time with time zone`, `time without time zone`, `date`, `interval`, `oid`, `money`, `"char"`, `varchar`, `text`, `bytea`, `bit`, `varbit`, `macaddr`, `macaddr8`, `inet`, `cidr`, `uuid`, `name`, `bool`, `bpchar`, and all enum types.

In general, these operator classes will not outperform the equivalent standard B-tree index methods, and they lack one major feature of the standard B-tree code: the ability to enforce uniqueness. However, they are useful for GIN testing and as a base for developing other GIN operator classes. Also, for queries that test both a GIN-indexable column and a B-tree-indexable column, it might be more efficient to create a multicolumn GIN index that uses one of these operator classes than to create two separate indexes that would have to be combined via bitmap ANDing.

This module is considered “trusted”, that is, it can be installed by non-superusers who have CREATE privilege on the current database.

### F.8.1. Example Usage

```
CREATE TABLE test (a int4);
-- create index
CREATE INDEX testidx ON test USING GIN (a);
-- query
SELECT * FROM test WHERE a < 10;
```

### F.8.2. Authors

Teodor Sigaev (<teodor@stack.net>) and Oleg Bartunov (<oleg@sai.msu.su>). See <http://www.sai.msu.su/~megera/oddmuse/index.cgi/Gin> for additional information.

## F.9. btree\_gist — GiST operator classes with B-tree behavior

`btree_gist` provides GiST index operator classes that implement B-tree equivalent behavior for the data types `int2`, `int4`, `int8`, `float4`, `float8`, `numeric`, `timestamp with time zone`, `timestamp without time zone`, `time with time zone`, `time without time zone`, `date`, `interval`, `oid`, `money`, `char`, `varchar`, `text`, `bytea`, `bit`, `varbit`, `macaddr`, `macaddr8`, `inet`, `cidr`, `uuid`, `bool` and all enum types.

In general, these operator classes will not outperform the equivalent standard B-tree index methods, and they lack one major feature of the standard B-tree code: the ability to enforce uniqueness. However, they provide some other features that are not available with a B-tree index, as described below. Also, these operator classes are useful when a multicolumn GiST index is needed, wherein some of the columns are of data types that are only indexable with GiST but other columns are just simple data types. Lastly, these operator classes are useful for GiST testing and as a base for developing other GiST operator classes.

In addition to the typical B-tree search operators, `btree_gist` also provides index support for `<>` (“not equals”). This may be useful in combination with an exclusion constraint, as described below.

Also, for data types for which there is a natural distance metric, `btree_gist` defines a distance operator `<->`, and provides GiST index support for nearest-neighbor searches using this operator. Distance operators are provided for `int2`, `int4`, `int8`, `float4`, `float8`, `timestamp with time zone`, `timestamp without time zone`, `time without time zone`, `date`, `interval`, `oid`, and `money`.

This module is considered “trusted”, that is, it can be installed by non-superusers who have `CREATE` privilege on the current database.

### F.9.1. Example Usage

Simple example using `btree_gist` instead of `btree`:

```
CREATE TABLE test (a int4);
-- create index
CREATE INDEX testidx ON test USING GIST (a);
-- query
SELECT * FROM test WHERE a < 10;
-- nearest-neighbor search: find the ten entries closest to "42"
SELECT *, a <-> 42 AS dist FROM test ORDER BY a <-> 42 LIMIT 10;
```

Use an exclusion constraint to enforce the rule that a cage at a zoo can contain only one kind of animal:

```
=> CREATE TABLE zoo (
    cage    INTEGER,
    animal  TEXT,
    EXCLUDE USING GIST (cage WITH =, animal WITH <>)
);

=> INSERT INTO zoo VALUES(123, 'zebra');
INSERT 0 1
=> INSERT INTO zoo VALUES(123, 'zebra');
INSERT 0 1
=> INSERT INTO zoo VALUES(123, 'lion');
```

```
ERROR:  conflicting key value violates exclusion constraint
        "zoo_cage_animal_excl"
DETAIL:  Key (cage, animal)=(123, lion) conflicts with existing key
        (cage, animal)=(123, zebra).
=> INSERT INTO zoo VALUES(124, 'lion');
INSERT 0 1
```

## F.9.2. Authors

Teodor Sigaev (<teodor@stack.net>), Oleg Bartunov (<oleg@sai.msu.su>), Janko Richter (<jankorichter@yahoo.de>), and Paul Jungwirth (<pj@illuminatedcomputing.com>). See <http://www.sai.msu.su/~megera/postgres/gist/> for additional information.

## F.10. citext — a case-insensitive character string type

The `citext` module provides a case-insensitive character string type, `citext`. Essentially, it internally calls `lower` when comparing values. Otherwise, it behaves almost exactly like `text`.

### Tip

Consider using *nondeterministic collations* (see Section 24.2.2.4) instead of this module. They can be used for case-insensitive comparisons, accent-insensitive comparisons, and other combinations, and they handle more Unicode special cases correctly.

This module is considered “trusted”, that is, it can be installed by non-superusers who have `CREATE` privilege on the current database.

### F.10.1. Rationale

The standard approach to doing case-insensitive matches in PostgreSQL has been to use the `lower` function when comparing values, for example

```
SELECT * FROM tab WHERE lower(col) = LOWER(?);
```

This works reasonably well, but has a number of drawbacks:

- It makes your SQL statements verbose, and you always have to remember to use `lower` on both the column and the query value.
- It won't use an index, unless you create a functional index using `lower`.
- If you declare a column as `UNIQUE` or `PRIMARY KEY`, the implicitly generated index is case-sensitive. So it's useless for case-insensitive searches, and it won't enforce uniqueness case-insensitively.

The `citext` data type allows you to eliminate calls to `lower` in SQL queries, and allows a primary key to be case-insensitive. `citext` is locale-aware, just like `text`, which means that the matching of upper case and lower case characters is dependent on the rules of the database's `LC_CTYPE` setting. Again, this behavior is identical to the use of `lower` in queries. But because it's done transparently by the data type, you don't have to remember to do anything special in your queries.

### F.10.2. How to Use It

Here's a simple example of usage:

```
CREATE TABLE users (  
    nick CITEXT PRIMARY KEY,  
    pass TEXT NOT NULL  
);  
  
INSERT INTO users VALUES ( 'larry',  
    sha256(random()::text::bytea) );  
INSERT INTO users VALUES ( 'Tom',  
    sha256(random()::text::bytea) );
```

```
INSERT INTO users VALUES ( 'Damian',
    sha256(random()::text::bytea) );
INSERT INTO users VALUES ( 'NEAL',
    sha256(random()::text::bytea) );
INSERT INTO users VALUES ( 'Bjørn',
    sha256(random()::text::bytea) );

SELECT * FROM users WHERE nick = 'Larry';
```

The `SELECT` statement will return one tuple, even though the `nick` column was set to `larry` and the query was for `Larry`.

## F.10.3. String Comparison Behavior

`citext` performs comparisons by converting each string to lower case (as though `lower` were called) and then comparing the results normally. Thus, for example, two strings are considered equal if `lower` would produce identical results for them.

In order to emulate a case-insensitive collation as closely as possible, there are `citext`-specific versions of a number of string-processing operators and functions. So, for example, the regular expression operators `~` and `~*` exhibit the same behavior when applied to `citext`: they both match case-insensitively. The same is true for `!~` and `!~*`, as well as for the `LIKE` operators `~~` and `~~*`, and `!~~` and `!~~*`. If you'd like to match case-sensitively, you can cast the operator's arguments to `text`.

Similarly, all of the following functions perform matching case-insensitively if their arguments are `citext`:

- `regexp_match()`
- `regexp_matches()`
- `regexp_replace()`
- `regexp_split_to_array()`
- `regexp_split_to_table()`
- `replace()`
- `split_part()`
- `strpos()`
- `translate()`

For the `regexp` functions, if you want to match case-sensitively, you can specify the “`c`” flag to force a case-sensitive match. Otherwise, you must cast to `text` before using one of these functions if you want case-sensitive behavior.

## F.10.4. Limitations

- `citext`'s case-folding behavior depends on the `LC_CTYPE` setting of your database. How it compares values is therefore determined when the database is created. It is not truly case-insensitive in the terms defined by the Unicode standard. Effectively, what this means is that, as long as you're happy with your collation, you should be happy with `citext`'s comparisons. But if you have data in different languages stored in your database, users of one language may find their query results are not as expected if the collation is for another language.
- As of PostgreSQL 9.1, you can attach a `COLLATE` specification to `citext` columns or data values. Currently, `citext` operators will honor a non-default `COLLATE` specification while comparing

case-folded strings, but the initial folding to lower case is always done according to the database's LC\_CTYPE setting (that is, as though COLLATE "default" were given). This may be changed in a future release so that both steps follow the input COLLATE specification.

- `citext` is not as efficient as `text` because the operator functions and the B-tree comparison functions must make copies of the data and convert it to lower case for comparisons. Also, only `text` can support B-Tree deduplication. However, `citext` is slightly more efficient than using `lower` to get case-insensitive matching.
- `citext` doesn't help much if you need data to compare case-sensitively in some contexts and case-insensitively in other contexts. The standard answer is to use the `text` type and manually use the `lower` function when you need to compare case-insensitively; this works all right if case-insensitive comparison is needed only infrequently. If you need case-insensitive behavior most of the time and case-sensitive infrequently, consider storing the data as `citext` and explicitly casting the column to `text` when you want case-sensitive comparison. In either situation, you will need two indexes if you want both types of searches to be fast.
- The schema containing the `citext` operators must be in the current `search_path` (typically `public`); if it is not, the normal case-sensitive `text` operators will be invoked instead.
- The approach of lower-casing strings for comparison does not handle some Unicode special cases correctly, for example when one upper-case letter has two lower-case letter equivalents. Unicode distinguishes between *case mapping* and *case folding* for this reason. Use nondeterministic collations instead of `citext` to handle that correctly.

## F.10.5. Author

David E. Wheeler <david@kineticcode.com>

Inspired by the original `citext` module by Donald Fraser.



## F.11. cube — a multi-dimensional cube data type

This module implements a data type `cube` for representing multidimensional cubes.

This module is considered “trusted”, that is, it can be installed by non-superusers who have `CREATE` privilege on the current database.

### F.11.1. Syntax

Table F.2 shows the valid external representations for the `cube` type.  $x$ ,  $y$ , etc. denote floating-point numbers.

**Table F.2. Cube External Representations**

External Syntax	Meaning
$x$	A one-dimensional point (or, zero-length one-dimensional interval)
$(x)$	Same as above
$x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$	A point in $n$ -dimensional space, represented internally as a zero-volume cube
$(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$	Same as above
$(x), (y)$	A one-dimensional interval starting at $x$ and ending at $y$ or vice versa; the order does not matter
$[(x), (y)]$	Same as above
$(x_1, \dots, x_n), (y_1, \dots, y_n)$	An $n$ -dimensional cube represented by a pair of its diagonally opposite corners
$[(x_1, \dots, x_n), (y_1, \dots, y_n)]$	Same as above

It does not matter which order the opposite corners of a cube are entered in. The `cube` functions automatically swap values if needed to create a uniform “lower left — upper right” internal representation. When the corners coincide, `cube` stores only one corner along with an “is point” flag to avoid wasting space.

White space is ignored on input, so  $[(x), (y)]$  is the same as  $[(x), (y)]$ .

### F.11.2. Precision

Values are stored internally as 64-bit floating point numbers. This means that numbers with more than about 16 significant digits will be truncated.

### F.11.3. Usage

Table F.3 shows the specialized operators provided for type `cube`.

**Table F.3. Cube Operators**

Operator	Description
<code>cube &amp;&amp; cube</code>	<code>→ boolean</code> Do the cubes overlap?
<code>cube @&gt; cube</code>	<code>→ boolean</code>

Operator	Description
<code>cube &lt;@ cube</code>	Does the first cube contain the second?
<code>cube &lt;@ cube → boolean</code>	Is the first cube contained in the second?
<code>cube -&gt; integer → float8</code>	Extracts the $n$ -th coordinate of the cube (counting from 1).
<code>cube ~&gt; integer → float8</code>	Extracts the $n$ -th coordinate of the cube, counting in the following way: $n = 2 * k - 1$ means lower bound of $k$ -th dimension, $n = 2 * k$ means upper bound of $k$ -th dimension. Negative $n$ denotes the inverse value of the corresponding positive coordinate. This operator is designed for KNN-GiST support.
<code>cube &lt;-&gt; cube → float8</code>	Computes the Euclidean distance between the two cubes.
<code>cube &lt;#&gt; cube → float8</code>	Computes the taxicab (L-1 metric) distance between the two cubes.
<code>cube &lt;=&gt; cube → float8</code>	Computes the Chebyshev (L-inf metric) distance between the two cubes.

In addition to the above operators, the usual comparison operators shown in Table 9.1 are available for type `cube`. These operators first compare the first coordinates, and if those are equal, compare the second coordinates, etc. They exist mainly to support the b-tree index operator class for `cube`, which can be useful for example if you would like a UNIQUE constraint on a `cube` column. Otherwise, this ordering is not of much practical use.

The `cube` module also provides a GiST index operator class for `cube` values. A `cube` GiST index can be used to search for values using the `=`, `&&`, `@>`, and `<@` operators in WHERE clauses.

In addition, a `cube` GiST index can be used to find nearest neighbors using the metric operators `<->`, `<#>`, and `<=>` in ORDER BY clauses. For example, the nearest neighbor of the 3-D point (0.5, 0.5, 0.5) could be found efficiently with:

```
SELECT c FROM test ORDER BY c <-> cube(array[0.5,0.5,0.5]) LIMIT 1;
```

The `~>` operator can also be used in this way to efficiently retrieve the first few values sorted by a selected coordinate. For example, to get the first few cubes ordered by the first coordinate (lower left corner) ascending one could use the following query:

```
SELECT c FROM test ORDER BY c ~> 1 LIMIT 5;
```

And to get 2-D cubes ordered by the first coordinate of the upper right corner descending:

```
SELECT c FROM test ORDER BY c ~> 3 DESC LIMIT 5;
```

Table F.4 shows the available functions.

**Table F.4. Cube Functions**

Function	Description Example(s)
<code>cube ( float8 ) → cube</code>	Makes a one dimensional cube with both coordinates the same.

Function	Description	Example(s)
		<code>cube(1) → (1)</code>
<code>cube(float8, float8) → cube</code>	Makes a one dimensional cube.	<code>cube(1, 2) → (1), (2)</code>
<code>cube(float8[]) → cube</code>	Makes a zero-volume cube using the coordinates defined by the array.	<code>cube(ARRAY[1,2,3]) → (1, 2, 3)</code>
<code>cube(float8[], float8[]) → cube</code>	Makes a cube with upper right and lower left coordinates as defined by the two arrays, which must be of the same length.	<code>cube(ARRAY[1,2], ARRAY[3,4]) → (1, 2), (3, 4)</code>
<code>cube(cube, float8) → cube</code>	Makes a new cube by adding a dimension on to an existing cube, with the same values for both endpoints of the new coordinate. This is useful for building cubes piece by piece from calculated values.	<code>cube('(1,2),(3,4)':cube, 5) → (1, 2, 5), (3, 4, 5)</code>
<code>cube(cube, float8, float8) → cube</code>	Makes a new cube by adding a dimension on to an existing cube. This is useful for building cubes piece by piece from calculated values.	<code>cube('(1,2),(3,4)':cube, 5, 6) → (1, 2, 5), (3, 4, 6)</code>
<code>cube_dim(cube) → integer</code>	Returns the number of dimensions of the cube.	<code>cube_dim('(1,2),(3,4)') → 2</code>
<code>cube_ll_coord(cube, integer) → float8</code>	Returns the <i>n</i> -th coordinate value for the lower left corner of the cube.	<code>cube_ll_coord('(1,2),(3,4)', 2) → 2</code>
<code>cube_ur_coord(cube, integer) → float8</code>	Returns the <i>n</i> -th coordinate value for the upper right corner of the cube.	<code>cube_ur_coord('(1,2),(3,4)', 2) → 4</code>
<code>cube_is_point(cube) → boolean</code>	Returns true if the cube is a point, that is, the two defining corners are the same.	<code>cube_is_point(cube(1,1)) → t</code>
<code>cube_distance(cube, cube) → float8</code>	Returns the distance between two cubes. If both cubes are points, this is the normal distance function.	<code>cube_distance('(1,2)', '(3,4)') → 2.8284271247461903</code>
<code>cube_subset(cube, integer[]) → cube</code>	Makes a new cube from an existing cube, using a list of dimension indexes from an array. Can be used to extract the endpoints of a single dimension, or to drop dimensions, or to reorder them as desired.	<code>cube_subset(cube('(1,3,5),(6,7,8)'), ARRAY[2]) → (3), (7)</code>

Function	Description	Example(s)
		<code>cube_subset( cube( ' (1,3,5) , (6,7,8) ' ) , ARRAY[ 3,2,1,1 ] ) → ( 5 , 3 , 1 , 1 ) , ( 8 , 7 , 6 , 6 )</code>
	<code>cube_union( cube, cube ) → cube</code> Produces the union of two cubes.	<code>cube_union( ' (1,2) ' , ' (3,4) ' ) → ( 1 , 2 ) , ( 3 , 4 )</code>
	<code>cube_inter( cube, cube ) → cube</code> Produces the intersection of two cubes.	<code>cube_inter( ' (1,2) ' , ' (3,4) ' ) → ( 3 , 4 ) , ( 1 , 2 )</code>
	<code>cube_enlarge( c cube, r double, n integer ) → cube</code> Increases the size of the cube by the specified radius $r$ in at least $n$ dimensions. If the radius is negative the cube is shrunk instead. All defined dimensions are changed by the radius $r$ . Lower-left coordinates are decreased by $r$ and upper-right coordinates are increased by $r$ . If a lower-left coordinate is increased to more than the corresponding upper-right coordinate (this can only happen when $r < 0$ ) then both coordinates are set to their average. If $n$ is greater than the number of defined dimensions and the cube is being enlarged ( $r > 0$ ), then extra dimensions are added to make $n$ altogether; 0 is used as the initial value for the extra coordinates. This function is useful for creating bounding boxes around a point for searching for nearby points.	<code>cube_enlarge( ' (1,2) , (3,4) ' , 0.5 , 3 ) → ( 0.5 , 1.5 , -0.5 ) , ( 3.5 , 4.5 , 0.5 )</code>

## F.11.4. Defaults

This union:

```
select cube_union(' (0,5,2) , (2,3,1) ' , ' 0 ' );
cube_union
-----
( 0 , 0 , 0 ) , ( 2 , 5 , 2 )
( 1 row)
```

does not contradict common sense, neither does the intersection:

```
select cube_inter(' (0,-1) , (1,1) ' , ' (-2) , (2) ' );
cube_inter
-----
( 0 , 0 ) , ( 1 , 0 )
( 1 row)
```

In all binary operations on differently-dimensional cubes, the lower-dimensional one is assumed to be a Cartesian projection, i. e., having zeroes in place of coordinates omitted in the string representation. The above examples are equivalent to:

```
cube_union(' (0,5,2) , (2,3,1) ' , ' (0,0,0) , (0,0,0) ' );
cube_inter(' (0,-1) , (1,1) ' , ' (-2,0) , (2,0) ' );
```

The following containment predicate uses the point syntax, while in fact the second argument is internally represented by a box. This syntax makes it unnecessary to define a separate point type and functions for (box,point) predicates.

```
select cube_contains('(0,0),(1,1)', '0.5,0.5');
cube_contains
-----
t
(1 row)
```

## F.11.5. Notes

For examples of usage, see the regression test `sql/cube.sql`.

To make it harder for people to break things, there is a limit of 100 on the number of dimensions of cubes. This is set in `cubedata.h` if you need something bigger.

## F.11.6. Credits

Original author: Gene Selkov, Jr. <selkovjr@mcs.anl.gov>, Mathematics and Computer Science Division, Argonne National Laboratory.

My thanks are primarily to Prof. Joe Hellerstein (<https://dsf.berkeley.edu/jmh/>) for elucidating the gist of the GiST (<http://gist.cs.berkeley.edu/>), and to his former student Andy Dong for his example written for Illustra. I am also grateful to all Postgres developers, present and past, for enabling myself to create my own world and live undisturbed in it. And I would like to acknowledge my gratitude to Argonne Lab and to the U.S. Department of Energy for the years of faithful support of my database research.

Minor updates to this package were made by Bruno Wolff III <bruno@wolff.to> in August/September of 2002. These include changing the precision from single precision to double precision and adding some new functions.

Additional updates were made by Joshua Reich <josh@root.net> in July 2006. These include `cube(float8[], float8[])` and cleaning up the code to use the V1 call protocol instead of the deprecated V0 protocol.

## F.12. dblink — connect to other PostgreSQL databases

`dblink` is a module that supports connections to other PostgreSQL databases from within a database session.

See also `postgres_fdw`, which provides roughly the same functionality using a more modern and standards-compliant infrastructure.

## dblink\_connect

`dblink_connect` — opens a persistent connection to a remote database

## Synopsis

```
dblink_connect(text connstr) returns text
dblink_connect(text connname, text connstr) returns text
```

## Description

`dblink_connect()` establishes a connection to a remote PostgreSQL database. The server and database to be contacted are identified through a standard libpq connection string. Optionally, a name can be assigned to the connection. Multiple named connections can be open at once, but only one unnamed connection is permitted at a time. The connection will persist until closed or until the database session is ended.

The connection string may also be the name of an existing foreign server. It is recommended to use the foreign-data wrapper `dblink_fdw` when defining the foreign server. See the example below, as well as `CREATE SERVER` and `CREATE USER MAPPING`.

## Arguments

*connname*

The name to use for this connection; if omitted, an unnamed connection is opened, replacing any existing unnamed connection.

*connstr*

libpq-style connection info string, for example `hostaddr=127.0.0.1 port=5432 dbname=mydb user=postgres password=mypasswd options=-csearch_path=`. For details see Section 34.1.1. Alternatively, the name of a foreign server.

## Return Value

Returns status, which is always OK (since any error causes the function to throw an error instead of returning).

## Notes

If untrusted users have access to a database that has not adopted a secure schema usage pattern, begin each session by removing publicly-writable schemas from `search_path`. One could, for example, add `options=-csearch_path=` to *connstr*. This consideration is not specific to `dblink`; it applies to every interface for executing arbitrary SQL commands.

Only superusers may use `dblink_connect` to create non-password-authenticated and non-GSSAPI-authenticated connections. If non-superusers need this capability, use `dblink_connect_u` instead.

It is unwise to choose connection names that contain equal signs, as this opens a risk of confusion with connection info strings in other `dblink` functions.

## Examples

```
SELECT dblink_connect('dbname=postgres options=-csearch_path=');
dblink_connect
```

```

-----
OK
(1 row)

SELECT dblink_connect('myconn', 'dbname=postgres options=-
csearch_path=');
    dblink_connect
-----
OK
(1 row)

-- FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER functionality
-- Note: local connection must require password authentication for
--       this to work properly
--       Otherwise, you will receive the following error from
--       dblink_connect():
--       ERROR:  password is required
--       DETAIL: Non-superuser cannot connect if the server does
--               not request a password.
--       HINT:  Target server's authentication method must be
--               changed.

CREATE SERVER fdtest FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER dblink_fdw OPTIONS
    (hostaddr '127.0.0.1', dbname 'contrib_regression');

CREATE USER regress_dblink_user WITH PASSWORD 'secret';
CREATE USER MAPPING FOR regress_dblink_user SERVER fdtest OPTIONS
    (user 'regress_dblink_user', password 'secret');
GRANT USAGE ON FOREIGN SERVER fdtest TO regress_dblink_user;
GRANT SELECT ON TABLE foo TO regress_dblink_user;

\set ORIGINAL_USER :USER
\c - regress_dblink_user
SELECT dblink_connect('myconn', 'fdtest');
    dblink_connect
-----
OK
(1 row)

SELECT * FROM dblink('myconn', 'SELECT * FROM foo') AS t(a int, b
text, c text[]);
 a | b | c
-----+-----+-----
 0 | a | {a0,b0,c0}
 1 | b | {a1,b1,c1}
 2 | c | {a2,b2,c2}
 3 | d | {a3,b3,c3}
 4 | e | {a4,b4,c4}
 5 | f | {a5,b5,c5}
 6 | g | {a6,b6,c6}
 7 | h | {a7,b7,c7}
 8 | i | {a8,b8,c8}
 9 | j | {a9,b9,c9}
10 | k | {a10,b10,c10}
(11 rows)

\c - :ORIGINAL_USER
REVOKE USAGE ON FOREIGN SERVER fdtest FROM regress_dblink_user;

```



```
REVOKE SELECT ON TABLE foo FROM regress_dblink_user;  
DROP USER MAPPING FOR regress_dblink_user SERVER fdtest;  
DROP USER regress_dblink_user;  
DROP SERVER fdtest;
```

## dblink\_connect\_u

`dblink_connect_u` — opens a persistent connection to a remote database, insecurely

## Synopsis

```
dblink_connect_u(text connstr) returns text  
dblink_connect_u(text connname, text connstr) returns text
```

## Description

`dblink_connect_u()` is identical to `dblink_connect()`, except that it will allow non-superusers to connect using any authentication method.

If the remote server selects an authentication method that does not involve a password, then impersonation and subsequent escalation of privileges can occur, because the session will appear to have originated from the user as which the local PostgreSQL server runs. Also, even if the remote server does demand a password, it is possible for the password to be supplied from the server environment, such as a `~/.pgpass` file belonging to the server's user. This opens not only a risk of impersonation, but the possibility of exposing a password to an untrustworthy remote server. Therefore, `dblink_connect_u()` is initially installed with all privileges revoked from `PUBLIC`, making it un-callable except by superusers. In some situations it may be appropriate to grant `EXECUTE` permission for `dblink_connect_u()` to specific users who are considered trustworthy, but this should be done with care. It is also recommended that any `~/.pgpass` file belonging to the server's user *not* contain any records specifying a wildcard host name.

For further details see `dblink_connect()`.

## dblink\_disconnect

`dblink_disconnect` — closes a persistent connection to a remote database

## Synopsis

```
dblink_disconnect() returns text
dblink_disconnect(text connname) returns text
```

## Description

`dblink_disconnect()` closes a connection previously opened by `dblink_connect()`. The form with no arguments closes an unnamed connection.

## Arguments

*connname*

The name of a named connection to be closed.

## Return Value

Returns status, which is always OK (since any error causes the function to throw an error instead of returning).

## Examples

```
SELECT dblink_disconnect();
 dblink_disconnect
-----
      OK
(1 row)

SELECT dblink_disconnect('myconn');
 dblink_disconnect
-----
      OK
(1 row)
```

## dblink

dblink — executes a query in a remote database

## Synopsis

```
dblink(text connname, text sql [, bool fail_on_error]) returns
  setof record
dblink(text connstr, text sql [, bool fail_on_error]) returns setof
  record
dblink(text sql [, bool fail_on_error]) returns setof record
```

## Description

dblink executes a query (usually a `SELECT`, but it can be any SQL statement that returns rows) in a remote database.

When two `text` arguments are given, the first one is first looked up as a persistent connection's name; if found, the command is executed on that connection. If not found, the first argument is treated as a connection info string as for `dblink_connect`, and the indicated connection is made just for the duration of this command.

## Arguments

*connname*

Name of the connection to use; omit this parameter to use the unnamed connection.

*connstr*

A connection info string, as previously described for `dblink_connect`.

*sql*

The SQL query that you wish to execute in the remote database, for example `select * from foo`.

*fail\_on\_error*

If true (the default when omitted) then an error thrown on the remote side of the connection causes an error to also be thrown locally. If false, the remote error is locally reported as a `NOTICE`, and the function returns no rows.

## Return Value

The function returns the row(s) produced by the query. Since `dblink` can be used with any query, it is declared to return `record`, rather than specifying any particular set of columns. This means that you must specify the expected set of columns in the calling query — otherwise PostgreSQL would not know what to expect. Here is an example:

```
SELECT *
FROM dblink('dbname=mydb options=-csearch_path=',
            'select proname, prosrc from pg_proc')
AS t1(proname name, prosrc text)
WHERE proname LIKE 'bytea%';
```

The “alias” part of the FROM clause must specify the column names and types that the function will return. (Specifying column names in an alias is actually standard SQL syntax, but specifying column types is a PostgreSQL extension.) This allows the system to understand what \* should expand to, and what pronom in the WHERE clause refers to, in advance of trying to execute the function. At run time, an error will be thrown if the actual query result from the remote database does not have the same number of columns shown in the FROM clause. The column names need not match, however, and dblink does not insist on exact type matches either. It will succeed so long as the returned data strings are valid input for the column type declared in the FROM clause.

## Notes

A convenient way to use dblink with predetermined queries is to create a view. This allows the column type information to be buried in the view, instead of having to spell it out in every query. For example,

```
CREATE VIEW myremote_pg_proc AS
  SELECT *
    FROM dblink('dbname=postgres options=-csearch_path=',
                'select pronom, prosrc from pg_proc')
    AS t1(pronom name, prosrc text);

SELECT * FROM myremote_pg_proc WHERE pronom LIKE 'bytea%';
```

## Examples

```
SELECT * FROM dblink('dbname=postgres options=-csearch_path=',
                    'select pronom, prosrc from pg_proc')
  AS t1(pronom name, prosrc text) WHERE pronom LIKE 'bytea%';
```

pronom	prosrc
byteacat	byteacat
byteaeq	byteaeq
bytealt	bytealt
byteale	byteale
byteagt	byteagt
byteage	byteage
byteane	byteane
byteacmp	byteacmp
bytealike	bytealike
byteanlike	byteanlike
byteain	byteain
byteaout	byteaout

(12 rows)

```
SELECT dblink_connect('dbname=postgres options=-csearch_path=');
dblink_connect
```

OK  
(1 row)

```
SELECT * FROM dblink('select pronom, prosrc from pg_proc')
  AS t1(pronom name, prosrc text) WHERE pronom LIKE 'bytea%';
```

pronom	prosrc
byteacat	byteacat
byteaeq	byteaeq

bytealt		bytealt
byteale		byteale
byteagt		byteagt
byteage		byteage
byteane		byteane
byteacmp		byteacmp
bytealike		bytealike
byteanlike		byteanlike
byteain		byteain
byteaout		byteaout

(12 rows)

```
SELECT dblink_connect('myconn', 'dbname=regression options=-
csearch_path=');
dblink_connect
-----
OK
(1 row)
```

```
SELECT * FROM dblink('myconn', 'select proname, prosrc from
pg_proc')
  AS t1(proname name, prosrc text) WHERE proname LIKE 'bytea%';
  proname      |      prosrc
-----+-----
bytearecv      | bytearecv
byteasend      | byteasend
byteale        | byteale
byteagt        | byteagt
byteage        | byteage
byteane        | byteane
byteacmp       | byteacmp
bytealike      | bytealike
byteanlike     | byteanlike
byteacat       | byteacat
byteaeq        | byteaeq
bytealt        | bytealt
byteain        | byteain
byteaout       | byteaout
(14 rows)
```

## dblink\_exec

`dblink_exec` — executes a command in a remote database

## Synopsis

```
dblink_exec(text connname, text sql [, bool fail_on_error]) returns
text
dblink_exec(text connstr, text sql [, bool fail_on_error]) returns
text
dblink_exec(text sql [, bool fail_on_error]) returns text
```

## Description

`dblink_exec` executes a command (that is, any SQL statement that doesn't return rows) in a remote database.

When two text arguments are given, the first one is first looked up as a persistent connection's name; if found, the command is executed on that connection. If not found, the first argument is treated as a connection info string as for `dblink_connect`, and the indicated connection is made just for the duration of this command.

## Arguments

*connname*

Name of the connection to use; omit this parameter to use the unnamed connection.

*connstr*

A connection info string, as previously described for `dblink_connect`.

*sql*

The SQL command that you wish to execute in the remote database, for example `insert into foo values(0, 'a', '{"a0","b0","c0"}')`.

*fail\_on\_error*

If true (the default when omitted) then an error thrown on the remote side of the connection causes an error to also be thrown locally. If false, the remote error is locally reported as a NOTICE, and the function's return value is set to ERROR.

## Return Value

Returns status, either the command's status string or ERROR.

## Examples

```
SELECT dblink_connect('dbname=dblink_test_standby');
 dblink_connect
-----
OK
(1 row)
```

```
SELECT dblink_exec('insert into foo values(21, ''z'',
''{"a0","b0","c0"}''));
    dblink_exec
-----
INSERT 943366 1
(1 row)

SELECT dblink_connect('myconn', 'dbname=regression');
    dblink_connect
-----
OK
(1 row)

SELECT dblink_exec('myconn', 'insert into foo values(21, ''z'',
''{"a0","b0","c0"}''));
    dblink_exec
-----
INSERT 6432584 1
(1 row)

SELECT dblink_exec('myconn', 'insert into pg_class values
(''foo''),false);
NOTICE:  sql error
DETAIL:  ERROR:  null value in column "relnamespace" violates not-
null constraint

    dblink_exec
-----
ERROR
(1 row)
```



## dblink\_open

`dblink_open` — opens a cursor in a remote database

## Synopsis

```
dblink_open(text cursorname, text sql [, bool fail_on_error])  
  returns text  
dblink_open(text connname, text cursorname, text sql [, bool  
  fail_on_error]) returns text
```

## Description

`dblink_open()` opens a cursor in a remote database. The cursor can subsequently be manipulated with `dblink_fetch()` and `dblink_close()`.

## Arguments

*connname*

Name of the connection to use; omit this parameter to use the unnamed connection.

*cursorname*

The name to assign to this cursor.

*sql*

The `SELECT` statement that you wish to execute in the remote database, for example `select * from pg_class`.

*fail\_on\_error*

If true (the default when omitted) then an error thrown on the remote side of the connection causes an error to also be thrown locally. If false, the remote error is locally reported as a NOTICE, and the function's return value is set to ERROR.

## Return Value

Returns status, either OK or ERROR.

## Notes

Since a cursor can only persist within a transaction, `dblink_open` starts an explicit transaction block (BEGIN) on the remote side, if the remote side was not already within a transaction. This transaction will be closed again when the matching `dblink_close` is executed. Note that if you use `dblink_exec` to change data between `dblink_open` and `dblink_close`, and then an error occurs or you use `dblink_disconnect` before `dblink_close`, your change *will be lost* because the transaction will be aborted.

## Examples

```
SELECT dblink_connect('dbname=postgres options=-csearch_path=');  
dblink_connect
```

-----

OK  
(1 row)

```
SELECT dblink_open('foo', 'select proname, prosrc from pg_proc');
dblink_open
```

-----

OK  
(1 row)

## dblink\_fetch

`dblink_fetch` — returns rows from an open cursor in a remote database

## Synopsis

```
dblink_fetch(text cursorname, int howmany [, bool fail_on_error])  
  returns setof record  
dblink_fetch(text connname, text cursorname, int howmany [, bool  
  fail_on_error]) returns setof record
```

## Description

`dblink_fetch` fetches rows from a cursor previously established by `dblink_open`.

## Arguments

*connname*

Name of the connection to use; omit this parameter to use the unnamed connection.

*cursorname*

The name of the cursor to fetch from.

*howmany*

The maximum number of rows to retrieve. The next *howmany* rows are fetched, starting at the current cursor position, moving forward. Once the cursor has reached its end, no more rows are produced.

*fail\_on\_error*

If true (the default when omitted) then an error thrown on the remote side of the connection causes an error to also be thrown locally. If false, the remote error is locally reported as a NOTICE, and the function returns no rows.

## Return Value

The function returns the row(s) fetched from the cursor. To use this function, you will need to specify the expected set of columns, as previously discussed for `dblink`.

## Notes

On a mismatch between the number of return columns specified in the FROM clause, and the actual number of columns returned by the remote cursor, an error will be thrown. In this event, the remote cursor is still advanced by as many rows as it would have been if the error had not occurred. The same is true for any other error occurring in the local query after the remote FETCH has been done.

## Examples

```
SELECT dblink_connect('dbname=postgres options=-csearch_path=');  
dblink_connect  
-----
```

OK  
(1 row)

```
SELECT dblink_open('foo', 'select proname, prosrc from pg_proc
where proname like ''bytea%'');
dblink_open
```

OK  
(1 row)

```
SELECT * FROM dblink_fetch('foo', 5) AS (funcname name, source
text);
```

funcname	source
byteacat	byteacat
byteacmp	byteacmp
byteaeq	byteaeq
byteage	byteage
byteagt	byteagt

(5 rows)

```
SELECT * FROM dblink_fetch('foo', 5) AS (funcname name, source
text);
```

funcname	source
byteain	byteain
byteale	byteale
bytealike	bytealike
bytealt	bytealt
byteane	byteane

(5 rows)

```
SELECT * FROM dblink_fetch('foo', 5) AS (funcname name, source
text);
```

funcname	source
byteanlike	byteanlike
byteaout	byteaout

(2 rows)

```
SELECT * FROM dblink_fetch('foo', 5) AS (funcname name, source
text);
```

funcname	source
----------	--------

(0 rows)

## dblink\_close

`dblink_close` — closes a cursor in a remote database

## Synopsis

```
dblink_close(text cursorname [, bool fail_on_error]) returns text
dblink_close(text connname, text cursorname [, bool fail_on_error])
returns text
```

## Description

`dblink_close` closes a cursor previously opened with `dblink_open`.

## Arguments

*connname*

Name of the connection to use; omit this parameter to use the unnamed connection.

*cursorname*

The name of the cursor to close.

*fail\_on\_error*

If true (the default when omitted) then an error thrown on the remote side of the connection causes an error to also be thrown locally. If false, the remote error is locally reported as a NOTICE, and the function's return value is set to ERROR.

## Return Value

Returns status, either OK or ERROR.

## Notes

If `dblink_open` started an explicit transaction block, and this is the last remaining open cursor in this connection, `dblink_close` will issue the matching COMMIT.

## Examples

```
SELECT dblink_connect('dbname=postgres options=-csearch_path=');
 dblink_connect
-----
OK
(1 row)

SELECT dblink_open('foo', 'select proname, prosrc from pg_proc');
 dblink_open
-----
OK
(1 row)

SELECT dblink_close('foo');
```

dblink\_close

-----  
OK  
(1 row)

## **dblink\_get\_connections**

`dblink_get_connections` — returns the names of all open named dblink connections

### **Synopsis**

```
dblink_get_connections() returns text[]
```

### **Description**

`dblink_get_connections` returns an array of the names of all open named dblink connections.

### **Return Value**

Returns a text array of connection names, or NULL if none.

### **Examples**

```
SELECT dblink_get_connections();
```

## dblink\_error\_message

`dblink_error_message` — gets last error message on the named connection

### Synopsis

```
dblink_error_message(text connname) returns text
```

### Description

`dblink_error_message` fetches the most recent remote error message for a given connection.

### Arguments

*connname*

Name of the connection to use.

### Return Value

Returns last error message, or OK if there has been no error in this connection.

### Notes

When asynchronous queries are initiated by `dblink_send_query`, the error message associated with the connection might not get updated until the server's response message is consumed. This typically means that `dblink_is_busy` or `dblink_get_result` should be called prior to `dblink_error_message`, so that any error generated by the asynchronous query will be visible.

### Examples

```
SELECT dblink_error_message('dtest1');
```



## dblink\_send\_query

`dblink_send_query` — sends an async query to a remote database

## Synopsis

```
dblink_send_query(text connname, text sql) returns int
```

## Description

`dblink_send_query` sends a query to be executed asynchronously, that is, without immediately waiting for the result. There must not be an async query already in progress on the connection.

After successfully dispatching an async query, completion status can be checked with `dblink_is_busy`, and the results are ultimately collected with `dblink_get_result`. It is also possible to attempt to cancel an active async query using `dblink_cancel_query`.

## Arguments

*connname*

Name of the connection to use.

*sql*

The SQL statement that you wish to execute in the remote database, for example `select * from pg_class`.

## Return Value

Returns 1 if the query was successfully dispatched, 0 otherwise.

## Examples

```
SELECT dblink_send_query('dtest1', 'SELECT * FROM foo WHERE f1 <
3');
```

## **dblink\_is\_busy**

`dblink_is_busy` — checks if connection is busy with an async query

### **Synopsis**

```
dblink_is_busy(text connname) returns int
```

### **Description**

`dblink_is_busy` tests whether an async query is in progress.

### **Arguments**

*connname*

Name of the connection to check.

### **Return Value**

Returns 1 if connection is busy, 0 if it is not busy. If this function returns 0, it is guaranteed that `dblink_get_result` will not block.

### **Examples**

```
SELECT dblink_is_busy('dtest1');
```

## dblink\_get\_notify

dblink\_get\_notify — retrieve async notifications on a connection

## Synopsis

```
dblink_get_notify() returns setof (notify_name text, be_pid int,  
    extra text)  
dblink_get_notify(text connname) returns setof (notify_name text,  
    be_pid int, extra text)
```

## Description

dblink\_get\_notify retrieves notifications on either the unnamed connection, or on a named connection if specified. To receive notifications via dblink, LISTEN must first be issued, using dblink\_exec. For details see LISTEN and NOTIFY.

## Arguments

*connname*

The name of a named connection to get notifications on.

## Return Value

Returns setof (notify\_name text, be\_pid int, extra text), or an empty set if none.

## Examples

```
SELECT dblink_exec('LISTEN virtual');  
dblink_exec  
-----  
LISTEN  
(1 row)  
  
SELECT * FROM dblink_get_notify();  
notify_name | be_pid | extra  
-----+-----+-----  
(0 rows)  
  
NOTIFY virtual;  
NOTIFY  
  
SELECT * FROM dblink_get_notify();  
notify_name | be_pid | extra  
-----+-----+-----  
virtual      |    1229 |  
(1 row)
```

## dblink\_get\_result

`dblink_get_result` — gets an async query result

## Synopsis

```
dblink_get_result(text connname [, bool fail_on_error]) returns  
  setof record
```

## Description

`dblink_get_result` collects the results of an asynchronous query previously sent with `dblink_send_query`. If the query is not already completed, `dblink_get_result` will wait until it is.

## Arguments

*connname*

Name of the connection to use.

*fail\_on\_error*

If true (the default when omitted) then an error thrown on the remote side of the connection causes an error to also be thrown locally. If false, the remote error is locally reported as a NOTICE, and the function returns no rows.

## Return Value

For an async query (that is, an SQL statement returning rows), the function returns the row(s) produced by the query. To use this function, you will need to specify the expected set of columns, as previously discussed for `dblink`.

For an async command (that is, an SQL statement not returning rows), the function returns a single row with a single text column containing the command's status string. It is still necessary to specify that the result will have a single text column in the calling FROM clause.

## Notes

This function *must* be called if `dblink_send_query` returned 1. It must be called once for each query sent, and one additional time to obtain an empty set result, before the connection can be used again.

When using `dblink_send_query` and `dblink_get_result`, `dblink` fetches the entire remote query result before returning any of it to the local query processor. If the query returns a large number of rows, this can result in transient memory bloat in the local session. It may be better to open such a query as a cursor with `dblink_open` and then fetch a manageable number of rows at a time. Alternatively, use plain `dblink()`, which avoids memory bloat by spooling large result sets to disk.

## Examples

```
contrib_regression=# SELECT dblink_connect('dtest1',  
  'dbname=contrib_regression');  
dblink_connect  
-----
```

```

OK
(1 row)

contrib_regression=# SELECT * FROM
contrib_regression=# dblink_send_query('dtest1', 'select * from foo
  where f1 < 3') AS t1;
 t1
----
  1
(1 row)

contrib_regression=# SELECT * FROM dblink_get_result('dtest1') AS
  t1(f1 int, f2 text, f3 text[]);
 f1 | f2 |      f3
-----+-----+-----
  0 | a  | {a0,b0,c0}
  1 | b  | {a1,b1,c1}
  2 | c  | {a2,b2,c2}
(3 rows)

contrib_regression=# SELECT * FROM dblink_get_result('dtest1') AS
  t1(f1 int, f2 text, f3 text[]);
 f1 | f2 | f3
-----+-----+-----
(0 rows)

contrib_regression=# SELECT * FROM
contrib_regression=# dblink_send_query('dtest1', 'select * from foo
  where f1 < 3; select * from foo where f1 > 6') AS t1;
 t1
----
  1
(1 row)

contrib_regression=# SELECT * FROM dblink_get_result('dtest1') AS
  t1(f1 int, f2 text, f3 text[]);
 f1 | f2 |      f3
-----+-----+-----
  0 | a  | {a0,b0,c0}
  1 | b  | {a1,b1,c1}
  2 | c  | {a2,b2,c2}
(3 rows)

contrib_regression=# SELECT * FROM dblink_get_result('dtest1') AS
  t1(f1 int, f2 text, f3 text[]);
 f1 | f2 |      f3
-----+-----+-----
  7 | h  | {a7,b7,c7}
  8 | i  | {a8,b8,c8}
  9 | j  | {a9,b9,c9}
 10 | k  | {a10,b10,c10}
(4 rows)

contrib_regression=# SELECT * FROM dblink_get_result('dtest1') AS
  t1(f1 int, f2 text, f3 text[]);
 f1 | f2 | f3
-----+-----+-----
(0 rows)

```

## **dblink\_cancel\_query**

`dblink_cancel_query` — cancels any active query on the named connection

### **Synopsis**

```
dblink_cancel_query(text connname) returns text
```

### **Description**

`dblink_cancel_query` attempts to cancel any query that is in progress on the named connection. Note that this is not certain to succeed (since, for example, the remote query might already have finished). A cancel request simply improves the odds that the query will fail soon. You must still complete the normal query protocol, for example by calling `dblink_get_result`.

### **Arguments**

*connname*

Name of the connection to use.

### **Return Value**

Returns OK if the cancel request has been sent, or the text of an error message on failure.

### **Examples**

```
SELECT dblink_cancel_query('dtest1');
```

## dblink\_get\_pkey

`dblink_get_pkey` — returns the positions and field names of a relation's primary key fields

## Synopsis

```
dblink_get_pkey(text relname) returns setof dblink_pkey_results
```

## Description

`dblink_get_pkey` provides information about the primary key of a relation in the local database. This is sometimes useful in generating queries to be sent to remote databases.

## Arguments

*relname*

Name of a local relation, for example `foo` or `myschema.mytab`. Include double quotes if the name is mixed-case or contains special characters, for example `"FooBar"`; without quotes, the string will be folded to lower case.

## Return Value

Returns one row for each primary key field, or no rows if the relation has no primary key. The result row type is defined as

```
CREATE TYPE dblink_pkey_results AS (position int, colname text);
```

The `position` column simply runs from 1 to *N*; it is the number of the field within the primary key, not the number within the table's columns.

## Examples

```
CREATE TABLE foobar (  
    f1 int,  
    f2 int,  
    f3 int,  
    PRIMARY KEY (f1, f2, f3)  
);  
CREATE TABLE  
  
SELECT * FROM dblink_get_pkey('foobar');  
 position | colname  
-----+-----  
         1 | f1  
         2 | f2  
         3 | f3  
(3 rows)
```

## dblink\_build\_sql\_insert

`dblink_build_sql_insert` — builds an INSERT statement using a local tuple, replacing the primary key field values with alternative supplied values

## Synopsis

```
dblink_build_sql_insert(text relname,  
                        int2vector primary_key_attnums,  
                        integer num_primary_key_atts,  
                        text[] src_pk_att_vals_array,  
                        text[] tgt_pk_att_vals_array) returns text
```

## Description

`dblink_build_sql_insert` can be useful in doing selective replication of a local table to a remote database. It selects a row from the local table based on primary key, and then builds an SQL INSERT command that will duplicate that row, but with the primary key values replaced by the values in the last argument. (To make an exact copy of the row, just specify the same values for the last two arguments.)

## Arguments

*relname*

Name of a local relation, for example `foo` or `myschema.mytab`. Include double quotes if the name is mixed-case or contains special characters, for example `"FooBar"`; without quotes, the string will be folded to lower case.

*primary\_key\_attnums*

Attribute numbers (1-based) of the primary key fields, for example `1 2`.

*num\_primary\_key\_atts*

The number of primary key fields.

*src\_pk\_att\_vals\_array*

Values of the primary key fields to be used to look up the local tuple. Each field is represented in text form. An error is thrown if there is no local row with these primary key values.

*tgt\_pk\_att\_vals\_array*

Values of the primary key fields to be placed in the resulting INSERT command. Each field is represented in text form.

## Return Value

Returns the requested SQL statement as text.

## Notes

As of PostgreSQL 9.0, the attribute numbers in *primary\_key\_attnums* are interpreted as logical column numbers, corresponding to the column's position in `SELECT * FROM relname`. Previous



versions interpreted the numbers as physical column positions. There is a difference if any column(s) to the left of the indicated column have been dropped during the lifetime of the table.

## Examples

```
SELECT dblink_build_sql_insert('foo', '1 2', 2, '{"1", "a"}',
    '{"1", "b'a"}');
          dblink_build_sql_insert
-----
INSERT INTO foo(f1,f2,f3) VALUES('1','b'a','1')
(1 row)
```

## dblink\_build\_sql\_delete

`dblink_build_sql_delete` — builds a DELETE statement using supplied values for primary key field values

## Synopsis

```
dblink_build_sql_delete(text relname,  
                        int2vector primary_key_attnums,  
                        integer num_primary_key_atts,  
                        text[] tgt_pk_att_vals_array) returns text
```

## Description

`dblink_build_sql_delete` can be useful in doing selective replication of a local table to a remote database. It builds an SQL DELETE command that will delete the row with the given primary key values.

## Arguments

*relname*

Name of a local relation, for example `foo` or `myschema.mytab`. Include double quotes if the name is mixed-case or contains special characters, for example `"FooBar"`; without quotes, the string will be folded to lower case.

*primary\_key\_attnums*

Attribute numbers (1-based) of the primary key fields, for example `1 2`.

*num\_primary\_key\_atts*

The number of primary key fields.

*tgt\_pk\_att\_vals\_array*

Values of the primary key fields to be used in the resulting DELETE command. Each field is represented in text form.

## Return Value

Returns the requested SQL statement as text.

## Notes

As of PostgreSQL 9.0, the attribute numbers in *primary\_key\_attnums* are interpreted as logical column numbers, corresponding to the column's position in `SELECT * FROM relname`. Previous versions interpreted the numbers as physical column positions. There is a difference if any column(s) to the left of the indicated column have been dropped during the lifetime of the table.

## Examples

```
SELECT dblink_build_sql_delete('MyFoo', '1 2', 2, '{"1", "b"}');  
dblink_build_sql_delete
```

```
-----  
DELETE FROM "MyFoo" WHERE f1='1' AND f2='b'  
(1 row)
```

## dblink\_build\_sql\_update

`dblink_build_sql_update` — builds an UPDATE statement using a local tuple, replacing the primary key field values with alternative supplied values

## Synopsis

```
dblink_build_sql_update(text relname,  
                        int2vector primary_key_attnums,  
                        integer num_primary_key_atts,  
                        text[] src_pk_att_vals_array,  
                        text[] tgt_pk_att_vals_array) returns text
```

## Description

`dblink_build_sql_update` can be useful in doing selective replication of a local table to a remote database. It selects a row from the local table based on primary key, and then builds an SQL UPDATE command that will duplicate that row, but with the primary key values replaced by the values in the last argument. (To make an exact copy of the row, just specify the same values for the last two arguments.) The UPDATE command always assigns all fields of the row — the main difference between this and `dblink_build_sql_insert` is that it's assumed that the target row already exists in the remote table.

## Arguments

*relname*

Name of a local relation, for example `foo` or `myschema.mytab`. Include double quotes if the name is mixed-case or contains special characters, for example `"FooBar"`; without quotes, the string will be folded to lower case.

*primary\_key\_attnums*

Attribute numbers (1-based) of the primary key fields, for example `1 2`.

*num\_primary\_key\_atts*

The number of primary key fields.

*src\_pk\_att\_vals\_array*

Values of the primary key fields to be used to look up the local tuple. Each field is represented in text form. An error is thrown if there is no local row with these primary key values.

*tgt\_pk\_att\_vals\_array*

Values of the primary key fields to be placed in the resulting UPDATE command. Each field is represented in text form.

## Return Value

Returns the requested SQL statement as text.

## Notes

As of PostgreSQL 9.0, the attribute numbers in *primary\_key\_attnums* are interpreted as logical column numbers, corresponding to the column's position in `SELECT * FROM relname`. Previous

versions interpreted the numbers as physical column positions. There is a difference if any column(s) to the left of the indicated column have been dropped during the lifetime of the table.

## Examples

```
SELECT dblink_build_sql_update('foo', '1 2', 2, '{"1", "a"}',
    '{"1", "b"}');
          dblink_build_sql_update
-----
UPDATE foo SET f1='1',f2='b',f3='1' WHERE f1='1' AND f2='b'
(1 row)
```

## F.13. dict\_int — example full-text search dictionary for integers

`dict_int` is an example of an add-on dictionary template for full-text search. The motivation for this example dictionary is to control the indexing of integers (signed and unsigned), allowing such numbers to be indexed while preventing excessive growth in the number of unique words, which greatly affects the performance of searching.

This module is considered “trusted”, that is, it can be installed by non-superusers who have `CREATE` privilege on the current database.

### F.13.1. Configuration

The dictionary accepts three options:

- The `maxlen` parameter specifies the maximum number of digits allowed in an integer word. The default value is 6.
- The `rejectlong` parameter specifies whether an overlength integer should be truncated or ignored. If `rejectlong` is `false` (the default), the dictionary returns the first `maxlen` digits of the integer. If `rejectlong` is `true`, the dictionary treats an overlength integer as a stop word, so that it will not be indexed. Note that this also means that such an integer cannot be searched for.
- The `absval` parameter specifies whether leading “+” or “-” signs should be removed from integer words. The default is `false`. When `true`, the sign is removed before `maxlen` is applied.

### F.13.2. Usage

Installing the `dict_int` extension creates a text search template `intdict_template` and a dictionary `intdict` based on it, with the default parameters. You can alter the parameters, for example

```
mydb# ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY intdict (MAXLEN = 4, REJECTLONG
      = true);
ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY
```

or create new dictionaries based on the template.

To test the dictionary, you can try

```
mydb# select ts_lexize('intdict', '12345678');
      ts_lexize
-----
{123456}
```

but real-world usage will involve including it in a text search configuration as described in Chapter 12. That might look like this:

```
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION english
      ALTER MAPPING FOR int, uint WITH intdict;
```

## F.14. dict\_xsyn — example synonym full-text search dictionary

`dict_xsyn` (Extended Synonym Dictionary) is an example of an add-on dictionary template for full-text search. This dictionary type replaces words with groups of their synonyms, and so makes it possible to search for a word using any of its synonyms.

### F.14.1. Configuration

A `dict_xsyn` dictionary accepts the following options:

- `matchorig` controls whether the original word is accepted by the dictionary. Default is `true`.
- `matchsynonyms` controls whether the synonyms are accepted by the dictionary. Default is `false`.
- `keeporig` controls whether the original word is included in the dictionary's output. Default is `true`.
- `keepsynonyms` controls whether the synonyms are included in the dictionary's output. Default is `true`.
- `rules` is the base name of the file containing the list of synonyms. This file must be stored in `$SHAREDIR/tsearch_data/` (where `$SHAREDIR` means the PostgreSQL installation's shared-data directory). Its name must end in `.rules` (which is not to be included in the `rules` parameter).

The rules file has the following format:

- Each line represents a group of synonyms for a single word, which is given first on the line. Synonyms are separated by whitespace, thus:

```
word syn1 syn2 syn3
```

- The sharp (#) sign is a comment delimiter. It may appear at any position in a line. The rest of the line will be skipped.

Look at `xsyn_sample.rules`, which is installed in `$SHAREDIR/tsearch_data/`, for an example.

### F.14.2. Usage

Installing the `dict_xsyn` extension creates a text search template `xsyn_template` and a dictionary `xsyn` based on it, with default parameters. You can alter the parameters, for example

```
mydb# ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY xsyn (RULES='my_rules',  
      KEEPORIG=false);  
ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY
```

or create new dictionaries based on the template.

To test the dictionary, you can try

```
mydb=# SELECT ts_lexize('xsyn', 'word');  
          ts_lexize
```

```
-----
{syn1,syn2,syn3}

mydb# ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY xsyn (RULES='my_rules',
      KEEPORIG=true);
ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY

mydb=# SELECT ts_lexize('xsyn', 'word');
      ts_lexize
-----
{word,syn1,syn2,syn3}

mydb# ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY xsyn (RULES='my_rules',
      KEEPORIG=false, MATCHSYNONYMS=true);
ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY

mydb=# SELECT ts_lexize('xsyn', 'syn1');
      ts_lexize
-----
{syn1,syn2,syn3}

mydb# ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY xsyn (RULES='my_rules',
      KEEPORIG=true, MATCHORIG=false, KEEPSYNONYMS=false);
ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY

mydb=# SELECT ts_lexize('xsyn', 'syn1');
      ts_lexize
-----
{word}
```

Real-world usage will involve including it in a text search configuration as described in Chapter 12. That might look like this:

```
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION english
      ALTER MAPPING FOR word, asciiword WITH xsyn, english_stem;
```



## F.15. earthdistance — calculate great-circle distances

The `earthdistance` module provides two different approaches to calculating great circle distances on the surface of the Earth. The one described first depends on the `cube` module. The second one is based on the built-in `point` data type, using longitude and latitude for the coordinates.

In this module, the Earth is assumed to be perfectly spherical. (If that's too inaccurate for you, you might want to look at the PostGIS<sup>1</sup> project.)

The `cube` module must be installed before `earthdistance` can be installed (although you can use the `CASCADE` option of `CREATE EXTENSION` to install both in one command).

### Caution

It is strongly recommended that `earthdistance` and `cube` be installed in the same schema, and that that schema be one for which `CREATE` privilege has not been and will not be granted to any untrusted users. Otherwise there are installation-time security hazards if `earthdistance`'s schema contains objects defined by a hostile user. Furthermore, when using `earthdistance`'s functions after installation, the entire search path should contain only trusted schemas.

### F.15.1. Cube-Based Earth Distances

Data is stored in cubes that are points (both corners are the same) using 3 coordinates representing the x, y, and z distance from the center of the Earth. A *domain* `earth` over type `cube` is provided, which includes constraint checks that the value meets these restrictions and is reasonably close to the actual surface of the Earth.

The radius of the Earth is obtained from the `earth()` function. It is given in meters. But by changing this one function you can change the module to use some other units, or to use a different value of the radius that you feel is more appropriate.

This package has applications to astronomical databases as well. Astronomers will probably want to change `earth()` to return a radius of  $180/\pi()$  so that distances are in degrees.

Functions are provided to support input in latitude and longitude (in degrees), to support output of latitude and longitude, to calculate the great circle distance between two points and to easily specify a bounding box usable for index searches.

The provided functions are shown in Table F.5.

**Table F.5. Cube-Based Earthdistance Functions**

Function	Description
<code>earth() → float8</code>	Returns the assumed radius of the Earth.
<code>sec_to_gc(float8) → float8</code>	Converts the normal straight line (secant) distance between two points on the surface of the Earth to the great circle distance between them.

<sup>1</sup> <https://postgis.net/>

Function	Description
<code>gc_to_sec ( float8 ) → float8</code>	Converts the great circle distance between two points on the surface of the Earth to the normal straight line (secant) distance between them.
<code>ll_to_earth ( float8, float8 ) → earth</code>	Returns the location of a point on the surface of the Earth given its latitude (argument 1) and longitude (argument 2) in degrees.
<code>latitude ( earth ) → float8</code>	Returns the latitude in degrees of a point on the surface of the Earth.
<code>longitude ( earth ) → float8</code>	Returns the longitude in degrees of a point on the surface of the Earth.
<code>earth_distance ( earth, earth ) → float8</code>	Returns the great circle distance between two points on the surface of the Earth.
<code>earth_box ( earth, float8 ) → cube</code>	Returns a box suitable for an indexed search using the <code>cube @&gt;</code> operator for points within a given great circle distance of a location. Some points in this box are further than the specified great circle distance from the location, so a second check using <code>earth_distance</code> should be included in the query.

## F.15.2. Point-Based Earth Distances

The second part of the module relies on representing Earth locations as values of type `point`, in which the first component is taken to represent longitude in degrees, and the second component is taken to represent latitude in degrees. Points are taken as (longitude, latitude) and not vice versa because longitude is closer to the intuitive idea of x-axis and latitude to y-axis.

A single operator is provided, shown in Table F.6.

**Table F.6. Point-Based Earthdistance Operators**

Operator	Description
<code>point &lt;@&gt; point → float8</code>	Computes the distance in statute miles between two points on the Earth's surface.

Note that unlike the `cube`-based part of the module, units are hardwired here: changing the `earth ( )` function will not affect the results of this operator.

One disadvantage of the longitude/latitude representation is that you need to be careful about the edge conditions near the poles and near +/- 180 degrees of longitude. The `cube`-based representation avoids these discontinuities.

## F.16. file\_fdw — access data files in the server's file system

The `file_fdw` module provides the foreign-data wrapper `file_fdw`, which can be used to access data files in the server's file system, or to execute programs on the server and read their output. The data file or program output must be in a format that can be read by `COPY FROM`; see `COPY` for details. Access to data files is currently read-only.

A foreign table created using this wrapper can have the following options:

`filename`

Specifies the file to be read. Relative paths are relative to the data directory. Either `filename` or `program` must be specified, but not both.

`program`

Specifies the command to be executed. The standard output of this command will be read as though `COPY FROM PROGRAM` were used. Either `program` or `filename` must be specified, but not both.

`format`

Specifies the data format, the same as `COPY`'s `FORMAT` option.

`header`

Specifies whether the data has a header line, the same as `COPY`'s `HEADER` option.

`delimiter`

Specifies the data delimiter character, the same as `COPY`'s `DELIMITER` option.

`quote`

Specifies the data quote character, the same as `COPY`'s `QUOTE` option.

`escape`

Specifies the data escape character, the same as `COPY`'s `ESCAPE` option.

`null`

Specifies the data null string, the same as `COPY`'s `NULL` option.

`encoding`

Specifies the data encoding, the same as `COPY`'s `ENCODING` option.

Note that while `COPY` allows options such as `HEADER` to be specified without a corresponding value, the foreign table option syntax requires a value to be present in all cases. To activate `COPY` options typically written without a value, you can pass the value `TRUE`, since all such options are Booleans.

A column of a foreign table created using this wrapper can have the following options:

`force_not_null`

This is a Boolean option. If true, it specifies that values of the column should not be matched against the null string (that is, the table-level `null` option). This has the same effect as listing the column in `COPY`'s `FORCE_NOT_NULL` option.

`force_null`

This is a Boolean option. If true, it specifies that values of the column which match the null string are returned as NULL even if the value is quoted. Without this option, only unquoted values matching the null string are returned as NULL. This has the same effect as listing the column in COPY's `FORCE_NULL` option.

COPY's `FORCE_QUOTE` option is currently not supported by `file_fdw`.

These options can only be specified for a foreign table or its columns, not in the options of the `file_fdw` foreign-data wrapper, nor in the options of a server or user mapping using the wrapper.

Changing table-level options requires being a superuser or having the privileges of the role `pg_read_server_files` (to use a filename) or the role `pg_execute_server_program` (to use a program), for security reasons: only certain users should be able to control which file is read or which program is run. In principle regular users could be allowed to change the other options, but that's not supported at present.

When specifying the `program` option, keep in mind that the option string is executed by the shell. If you need to pass any arguments to the command that come from an untrusted source, you must be careful to strip or escape any characters that might have special meaning to the shell. For security reasons, it is best to use a fixed command string, or at least avoid passing any user input in it.

For a foreign table using `file_fdw`, `EXPLAIN` shows the name of the file to be read or program to be run. For a file, unless `COSTS OFF` is specified, the file size (in bytes) is shown as well.

### Example F.1. Create a Foreign Table for PostgreSQL CSV Logs

One of the obvious uses for `file_fdw` is to make the PostgreSQL activity log available as a table for querying. To do this, first you must be logging to a CSV file, which here we will call `pglog.csv`. First, install `file_fdw` as an extension:

```
CREATE EXTENSION file_fdw;
```

Then create a foreign server:

```
CREATE SERVER pglog FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER file_fdw;
```

Now you are ready to create the foreign data table. Using the `CREATE FOREIGN TABLE` command, you will need to define the columns for the table, the CSV file name, and its format:

```
CREATE FOREIGN TABLE pglog (  
    log_time timestamp(3) with time zone,  
    user_name text,  
    database_name text,  
    process_id integer,  
    connection_from text,  
    session_id text,  
    session_line_num bigint,  
    command_tag text,  
    session_start_time timestamp with time zone,  
    virtual_transaction_id text,  
    transaction_id bigint,  
    error_severity text,  
    sql_state_code text,  
    message text,  
    detail text,
```

```
hint text,  
internal_query text,  
internal_query_pos integer,  
context text,  
query text,  
query_pos integer,  
location text,  
application_name text,  
backend_type text,  
leader_pid integer,  
query_id bigint  
) SERVER pglog  
OPTIONS ( filename 'log/pglog.csv', format 'csv' );
```

That's it — now you can query your log directly. In production, of course, you would need to define some way to deal with log rotation.

## F.17. fuzzystmatch — determine string similarities and distance

The `fuzzystmatch` module provides several functions to determine similarities and distance between strings.

### Caution

At present, the `soundex`, `metaphone`, `dmetaphone`, and `dmetaphone_alt` functions do not work well with multibyte encodings (such as UTF-8). Use `daitch_mokotoff` or `levenshtein` with such data.

This module is considered “trusted”, that is, it can be installed by non-superusers who have `CREATE` privilege on the current database.

### F.17.1. Soundex

The Soundex system is a method of matching similar-sounding names by converting them to the same code. It was initially used by the United States Census in 1880, 1900, and 1910. Note that Soundex is not very useful for non-English names.

The `fuzzystmatch` module provides two functions for working with Soundex codes:

```
soundex(text) returns text  
difference(text, text) returns int
```

The `soundex` function converts a string to its Soundex code. The `difference` function converts two strings to their Soundex codes and then reports the number of matching code positions. Since Soundex codes have four characters, the result ranges from zero to four, with zero being no match and four being an exact match. (Thus, the function is misnamed — *similarity* would have been a better name.)

Here are some usage examples:

```
SELECT soundex('hello world!');  
  
SELECT soundex('Anne'), soundex('Ann'), difference('Anne', 'Ann');  
SELECT soundex('Anne'), soundex('Andrew'), difference('Anne',  
  'Andrew');  
SELECT soundex('Anne'), soundex('Margaret'), difference('Anne',  
  'Margaret');  
  
CREATE TABLE s (nm text);  
  
INSERT INTO s VALUES ('john');  
INSERT INTO s VALUES ('joan');  
INSERT INTO s VALUES ('wobbly');  
INSERT INTO s VALUES ('jack');  
  
SELECT * FROM s WHERE soundex(nm) = soundex('john');  
  
SELECT * FROM s WHERE difference(s.nm, 'john') > 2;
```

## F.17.2. Daitch-Mokotoff Soundex

Like the original Soundex system, Daitch-Mokotoff Soundex matches similar-sounding names by converting them to the same code. However, Daitch-Mokotoff Soundex is significantly more useful for non-English names than the original system. Major improvements over the original system include:

- The code is based on the first six meaningful letters rather than four.
- A letter or combination of letters maps into ten possible codes rather than seven.
- Where two consecutive letters have a single sound, they are coded as a single number.
- When a letter or combination of letters may have different sounds, multiple codes are emitted to cover all possibilities.

This function generates the Daitch-Mokotoff soundex codes for its input:

```
daitch_mokotoff(source text) returns text[]
```

The result may contain one or more codes depending on how many plausible pronunciations there are, so it is represented as an array.

Since a Daitch-Mokotoff soundex code consists of only 6 digits, *source* should be preferably a single word or name.

Here are some examples:

```
SELECT daitch_mokotoff('George');
       daitch_mokotoff
-----
      {595000}

SELECT daitch_mokotoff('John');
       daitch_mokotoff
-----
      {160000,460000}

SELECT daitch_mokotoff('Bierschbach');
               daitch_mokotoff
-----
{794575,794574,794750,794740,745750,745740,747500,747400}

SELECT daitch_mokotoff('Schwartzenegger');
       daitch_mokotoff
-----
      {479465}
```

For matching of single names, returned text arrays can be matched directly using the && operator: any overlap can be considered a match. A GIN index may be used for efficiency, see Chapter 70 and this example:

```
CREATE TABLE s (nm text);
CREATE INDEX ix_s_dm ON s USING gin (daitch_mokotoff(nm)) WITH
    (fastupdate = off);

INSERT INTO s (nm) VALUES
    ('Schwartzenegger'),
    ('John'),
    ('James'),
```

```
    ('Steinman'),
    ('Steinmetz');

SELECT * FROM s WHERE daitch_mokotoff(nm) &&
    daitch_mokotoff('Swartzenegger');
SELECT * FROM s WHERE daitch_mokotoff(nm) &&
    daitch_mokotoff('Jane');
SELECT * FROM s WHERE daitch_mokotoff(nm) &&
    daitch_mokotoff('Jens');
```

For indexing and matching of any number of names in any order, Full Text Search features can be used. See Chapter 12 and this example:

```
CREATE FUNCTION soundex_tsvector(v_name text) RETURNS tsvector
BEGIN ATOMIC
    SELECT to_tsvector('simple',
        string_agg(array_to_string(daitch_mokotoff(n),
            ' '), ' '))
    FROM regexp_split_to_table(v_name, '\s+') AS n;
END;

CREATE FUNCTION soundex_tsquery(v_name text) RETURNS tsquery
BEGIN ATOMIC
    SELECT string_agg('(' || array_to_string(daitch_mokotoff(n), '|')
        || ')', '&')::tsquery
    FROM regexp_split_to_table(v_name, '\s+') AS n;
END;

CREATE TABLE s (nm text);
CREATE INDEX ix_s_txt ON s USING gin (soundex_tsvector(nm)) WITH
    (fastupdate = off);

INSERT INTO s (nm) VALUES
    ('John Doe'),
    ('Jane Roe'),
    ('Public John Q.'),
    ('George Best'),
    ('John Yamson');

SELECT * FROM s WHERE soundex_tsvector(nm) @@
    soundex_tsquery('john');
SELECT * FROM s WHERE soundex_tsvector(nm) @@ soundex_tsquery('jane
    doe');
SELECT * FROM s WHERE soundex_tsvector(nm) @@ soundex_tsquery('john
    public');
SELECT * FROM s WHERE soundex_tsvector(nm) @@
    soundex_tsquery('besst, giorgio');
SELECT * FROM s WHERE soundex_tsvector(nm) @@
    soundex_tsquery('Jameson John');
```

If it is desired to avoid recalculation of soundex codes during index rechecks, an index on a separate column can be used instead of an index on an expression. A stored generated column can be used for this; see Section 5.3.

## F.17.3. Levenshtein

This function calculates the Levenshtein distance between two strings:



```
levenshtein(source text, target text, ins_cost int, del_cost int,  
sub_cost int) returns int  
levenshtein(source text, target text) returns int  
levenshtein_less_equal(source text, target text, ins_cost int,  
del_cost int, sub_cost int, max_d int) returns int  
levenshtein_less_equal(source text, target text, max_d int) returns  
int
```

Both `source` and `target` can be any non-null string, with a maximum of 255 characters. The cost parameters specify how much to charge for a character insertion, deletion, or substitution, respectively. You can omit the cost parameters, as in the second version of the function; in that case they all default to 1.

`levenshtein_less_equal` is an accelerated version of the Levenshtein function for use when only small distances are of interest. If the actual distance is less than or equal to `max_d`, then `levenshtein_less_equal` returns the correct distance; otherwise it returns some value greater than `max_d`. If `max_d` is negative then the behavior is the same as `levenshtein`.

Examples:

```
test=# SELECT levenshtein('GUMBO', 'GAMBOL');  
levenshtein  
-----  
2  
(1 row)  
  
test=# SELECT levenshtein('GUMBO', 'GAMBOL', 2, 1, 1);  
levenshtein  
-----  
3  
(1 row)  
  
test=# SELECT levenshtein_less_equal('extensive', 'exhaustive', 2);  
levenshtein_less_equal  
-----  
3  
(1 row)  
  
test=# SELECT levenshtein_less_equal('extensive', 'exhaustive', 4);  
levenshtein_less_equal  
-----  
4  
(1 row)
```

## F.17.4. Metaphone

Metaphone, like Soundex, is based on the idea of constructing a representative code for an input string. Two strings are then deemed similar if they have the same codes.

This function calculates the metaphone code of an input string:

```
metaphone(source text, max_output_length int) returns text
```

`source` has to be a non-null string with a maximum of 255 characters. `max_output_length` sets the maximum length of the output metaphone code; if longer, the output is truncated to this length.

Example:

```
test=# SELECT metaphone('GUMBO', 4);
 metaphone
-----
      KM
(1 row)
```

## F.17.5. Double Metaphone

The Double Metaphone system computes two “sounds like” strings for a given input string — a “primary” and an “alternate”. In most cases they are the same, but for non-English names especially they can be a bit different, depending on pronunciation. These functions compute the primary and alternate codes:

```
dmetaphone(source text) returns text
dmetaphone_alt(source text) returns text
```

There is no length limit on the input strings.

Example:

```
test=# SELECT dmetaphone('gumbo');
 dmetaphone
-----
      KMP
(1 row)
```

## F.18. hstore — hstore key/value datatype

This module implements the `hstore` data type for storing sets of key/value pairs within a single PostgreSQL value. This can be useful in various scenarios, such as rows with many attributes that are rarely examined, or semi-structured data. Keys and values are simply text strings.

This module is considered “trusted”, that is, it can be installed by non-superusers who have `CREATE` privilege on the current database.

### F.18.1. hstore External Representation

The text representation of an `hstore`, used for input and output, includes zero or more *key => value* pairs separated by commas. Some examples:

```
k => v
foo => bar, baz => whatever
"1-a" => "anything at all"
```

The order of the pairs is not significant (and may not be reproduced on output). Whitespace between pairs or around the `=>` sign is ignored. Double-quote keys and values that include whitespace, commas, `=` or `>`. To include a double quote or a backslash in a key or value, escape it with a backslash.

Each key in an `hstore` is unique. If you declare an `hstore` with duplicate keys, only one will be stored in the `hstore` and there is no guarantee as to which will be kept:

```
SELECT 'a=>1,a=>2':hstore;
 hstore
-----
"a"=>"1"
```

A value (but not a key) can be an SQL `NULL`. For example:

```
key => NULL
```

The `NULL` keyword is case-insensitive. Double-quote the `NULL` to treat it as the ordinary string “`NULL`”.

#### Note

Keep in mind that the `hstore` text format, when used for input, applies *before* any required quoting or escaping. If you are passing an `hstore` literal via a parameter, then no additional processing is needed. But if you're passing it as a quoted literal constant, then any single-quote characters and (depending on the setting of the `standard_conforming_strings` configuration parameter) backslash characters need to be escaped correctly. See Section 4.1.2.1 for more on the handling of string constants.

On output, double quotes always surround keys and values, even when it's not strictly necessary.

### F.18.2. hstore Operators and Functions

The operators provided by the `hstore` module are shown in Table F.7, the functions in Table F.8.

**Table F.7. hstore Operators**

Operator	Description	Example(s)
<code>hstore -&gt; text → text</code>	Returns value associated with given key, or NULL if not present.	<code>'a=&gt;x, b=&gt;y'::hstore -&gt; 'a' → x</code>
<code>hstore -&gt; text[] → text[]</code>	Returns values associated with given keys, or NULL if not present.	<code>'a=&gt;x, b=&gt;y, c=&gt;z'::hstore -&gt; ARRAY['c','a'] → {"z","x"}</code>
<code>hstore    hstore → hstore</code>	Concatenates two hstores.	<code>'a=&gt;b, c=&gt;d'::hstore    'c=&gt;x, d=&gt;q'::hstore → "a"=&gt;"b", "c"=&gt;"x", "d"=&gt;"q"</code>
<code>hstore ? text → boolean</code>	Does hstore contain key?	<code>'a=&gt;1'::hstore ? 'a' → t</code>
<code>hstore ?&amp; text[] → boolean</code>	Does hstore contain all the specified keys?	<code>'a=&gt;1,b=&gt;2'::hstore ?&amp; ARRAY['a','b'] → t</code>
<code>hstore ?  text[] → boolean</code>	Does hstore contain any of the specified keys?	<code>'a=&gt;1,b=&gt;2'::hstore ?  ARRAY['b','c'] → t</code>
<code>hstore @&gt; hstore → boolean</code>	Does left operand contain right?	<code>'a=&gt;b, b=&gt;1, c=&gt;NULL'::hstore @&gt; 'b=&gt;1' → t</code>
<code>hstore &lt;@ hstore → boolean</code>	Is left operand contained in right?	<code>'a=&gt;c'::hstore &lt;@ 'a=&gt;b, b=&gt;1, c=&gt;NULL' → f</code>
<code>hstore - text → hstore</code>	Deletes key from left operand.	<code>'a=&gt;1, b=&gt;2, c=&gt;3'::hstore - 'b'::text → "a"=&gt;"1", "c"=&gt;"3"</code>
<code>hstore - text[] → hstore</code>	Deletes keys from left operand.	<code>'a=&gt;1, b=&gt;2, c=&gt;3'::hstore - ARRAY['a','b'] → "c"=&gt;"3"</code>
<code>hstore - hstore → hstore</code>	Deletes pairs from left operand that match pairs in the right operand.	<code>'a=&gt;1, b=&gt;2, c=&gt;3'::hstore - 'a=&gt;4, b=&gt;2'::hstore → "a"=&gt;"1", "c"=&gt;"3"</code>
<code>anyelement #= hstore → anyelement</code>	Replaces fields in the left operand (which must be a composite type) with matching values from hstore.	<code>ROW(1,3) #= 'f1=&gt;11'::hstore → (11,3)</code>
<code>%% hstore → text[]</code>		

Operator	Description
<b>Example(s)</b>	
	Converts hstore to an array of alternating keys and values. <code>%% 'a=&gt;foo, b=&gt;bar': :hstore → {a,foo,b,bar}</code>
<code>%# hstore → text[]</code>	Converts hstore to a two-dimensional key/value array. <code>%# 'a=&gt;foo, b=&gt;bar': :hstore → {{a,foo},{b,bar}}</code>

**Table F.8. hstore Functions**

Function	Description
<b>Example(s)</b>	
<code>hstore ( record ) → hstore</code>	Constructs an hstore from a record or row. <code>hstore(ROW(1,2)) → "f1"=&gt;"1", "f2"=&gt;"2"</code>
<code>hstore ( text[] ) → hstore</code>	Constructs an hstore from an array, which may be either a key/value array, or a two-dimensional array. <code>hstore(ARRAY['a','1','b','2']) → "a"=&gt;"1", "b"=&gt;"2"</code> <code>hstore(ARRAY[['c','3'],['d','4']]) → "c"=&gt;"3", "d"=&gt;"4"</code>
<code>hstore ( text[], text[] ) → hstore</code>	Constructs an hstore from separate key and value arrays. <code>hstore(ARRAY['a','b'], ARRAY['1','2']) → "a"=&gt;"1", "b"=&gt;"2"</code>
<code>hstore ( text, text ) → hstore</code>	Makes a single-item hstore. <code>hstore('a', 'b') → "a"=&gt;"b"</code>
<code>akeys ( hstore ) → text[]</code>	Extracts an hstore's keys as an array. <code>akeys('a=&gt;1,b=&gt;2') → {a,b}</code>
<code>skeys ( hstore ) → setof text</code>	Extracts an hstore's keys as a set. <code>skeys('a=&gt;1,b=&gt;2') →</code>  <code>a</code> <code>b</code>
<code>avals ( hstore ) → text[]</code>	Extracts an hstore's values as an array. <code>avals('a=&gt;1,b=&gt;2') → {1,2}</code>
<code>svals ( hstore ) → setof text</code>	Extracts an hstore's values as a set. <code>svals('a=&gt;1,b=&gt;2') →</code>  <code>1</code> <code>2</code>

Function	Description	Example(s)
<code>hstore_to_array(hstore) → text[]</code>	Extracts an hstore's keys and values as an array of alternating keys and values.	<code>hstore_to_array('a=&gt;1,b=&gt;2') → {a,1,b,2}</code>
<code>hstore_to_matrix(hstore) → text[]</code>	Extracts an hstore's keys and values as a two-dimensional array.	<code>hstore_to_matrix('a=&gt;1,b=&gt;2') → {{a,1},{b,2}}</code>
<code>hstore_to_json(hstore) → json</code>	Converts an hstore to a json value, converting all non-null values to JSON strings. This function is used implicitly when an hstore value is cast to json.	<code>hstore_to_json('"a key"=&gt;1, b=&gt;t, c=&gt;null, d=&gt;12345, e=&gt;012345, f=&gt;1.234, g=&gt;2.345e+4') → {"a key": "1", "b": "t", "c": null, "d": "12345", "e": "012345", "f": "1.234", "g": "2.345e+4"}</code>
<code>hstore_to_jsonb(hstore) → jsonb</code>	Converts an hstore to a jsonb value, converting all non-null values to JSON strings. This function is used implicitly when an hstore value is cast to jsonb.	<code>hstore_to_jsonb('"a key"=&gt;1, b=&gt;t, c=&gt;null, d=&gt;12345, e=&gt;012345, f=&gt;1.234, g=&gt;2.345e+4') → {"a key": "1", "b": "t", "c": null, "d": "12345", "e": "012345", "f": "1.234", "g": "2.345e+4"}</code>
<code>hstore_to_json_loose(hstore) → json</code>	Converts an hstore to a json value, but attempts to distinguish numerical and Boolean values so they are unquoted in the JSON.	<code>hstore_to_json_loose('"a key"=&gt;1, b=&gt;t, c=&gt;null, d=&gt;12345, e=&gt;012345, f=&gt;1.234, g=&gt;2.345e+4') → {"a key": 1, "b": true, "c": null, "d": 12345, "e": "012345", "f": 1.234, "g": 2.345e+4}</code>
<code>hstore_to_jsonb_loose(hstore) → jsonb</code>	Converts an hstore to a jsonb value, but attempts to distinguish numerical and Boolean values so they are unquoted in the JSON.	<code>hstore_to_jsonb_loose('"a key"=&gt;1, b=&gt;t, c=&gt;null, d=&gt;12345, e=&gt;012345, f=&gt;1.234, g=&gt;2.345e+4') → {"a key": 1, "b": true, "c": null, "d": 12345, "e": "012345", "f": 1.234, "g": 2.345e+4}</code>
<code>slice(hstore, text[]) → hstore</code>	Extracts a subset of an hstore containing only the specified keys.	<code>slice('a=&gt;1,b=&gt;2,c=&gt;3'::hstore, ARRAY['b','c','x']) → "b"=&gt;"2", "c"=&gt;"3"</code>
<code>each(hstore) → setof record (key text, value text)</code>	Extracts an hstore's keys and values as a set of records.	<code>select * from each('a=&gt;1,b=&gt;2') →</code>  <div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <div style="text-align: center; margin-right: 10px;"> key   value  -----+-----  a      1 </div> </div>

Function	Description	Example(s)
		b   2
	exist ( hstore, text ) → boolean Does hstore contain key? exist( 'a=>1', 'a' ) → t	
	defined ( hstore, text ) → boolean Does hstore contain a non-NULL value for key? defined( 'a=>NULL', 'a' ) → f	
	delete ( hstore, text ) → hstore Deletes pair with matching key. delete( 'a=>1,b=>2', 'b' ) → "a"=>"1"	
	delete ( hstore, text[] ) → hstore Deletes pairs with matching keys. delete( 'a=>1,b=>2,c=>3', ARRAY[ 'a','b' ] ) → "c"=>"3"	
	delete ( hstore, hstore ) → hstore Deletes pairs matching those in the second argument. delete( 'a=>1,b=>2', 'a=>4,b=>2'::hstore ) → "a"=>"1"	
	populate_record ( anyelement, hstore ) → anyelement Replaces fields in the left operand (which must be a composite type) with matching values from hstore. populate_record(ROW(1,2), 'f1=>42'::hstore) → (42,2)	

In addition to these operators and functions, values of the `hstore` type can be subscripted, allowing them to act like associative arrays. Only a single subscript of type `text` can be specified; it is interpreted as a key and the corresponding value is fetched or stored. For example,

```
CREATE TABLE mytable (h hstore);
INSERT INTO mytable VALUES ('a=>b, c=>d');
SELECT h['a'] FROM mytable;
h
---
b
(1 row)

UPDATE mytable SET h['c'] = 'new';
SELECT h FROM mytable;
h
-----
"a"=>"b", "c"=>"new"
(1 row)
```

A subscripted fetch returns `NULL` if the subscript is `NULL` or that key does not exist in the `hstore`. (Thus, a subscripted fetch is not greatly different from the `->` operator.) A subscripted update fails if the subscript is `NULL`; otherwise, it replaces the value for that key, adding an entry to the `hstore` if the key does not already exist.

## F.18.3. Indexes

`hstore` has GiST and GIN index support for the `@>`, `?`, `?&` and `?|` operators. For example:

```
CREATE INDEX hidx ON testhstore USING GIST (h);
```

```
CREATE INDEX hidx ON testhstore USING GIN (h);
```

`gist_hstore_ops` GiST opclass approximates a set of key/value pairs as a bitmap signature. Its optional integer parameter `siglen` determines the signature length in bytes. The default length is 16 bytes. Valid values of signature length are between 1 and 2024 bytes. Longer signatures lead to a more precise search (scanning a smaller fraction of the index and fewer heap pages), at the cost of a larger index.

Example of creating such an index with a signature length of 32 bytes:

```
CREATE INDEX hidx ON testhstore USING GIST (h  
gist_hstore_ops(siglen=32));
```

`hstore` also supports `btree` or `hash` indexes for the `=` operator. This allows `hstore` columns to be declared `UNIQUE`, or to be used in `GROUP BY`, `ORDER BY` or `DISTINCT` expressions. The sort ordering for `hstore` values is not particularly useful, but these indexes may be useful for equivalence lookups. Create indexes for `=` comparisons as follows:

```
CREATE INDEX hidx ON testhstore USING BTREE (h);
```

```
CREATE INDEX hidx ON testhstore USING HASH (h);
```

## F.18.4. Examples

Add a key, or update an existing key with a new value:

```
UPDATE tab SET h['c'] = '3';
```

Another way to do the same thing is:

```
UPDATE tab SET h = h || hstore('c', '3');
```

If multiple keys are to be added or changed in one operation, the concatenation approach is more efficient than subscripting:

```
UPDATE tab SET h = h || hstore(array['q', 'w'], array['11', '12']);
```

Delete a key:

```
UPDATE tab SET h = delete(h, 'k1');
```

Convert a record to an `hstore`:

```
CREATE TABLE test (col1 integer, col2 text, col3 text);  
INSERT INTO test VALUES (123, 'foo', 'bar');
```

```
SELECT hstore(t) FROM test AS t;  
      hstore
```

```
-----  
"col1"=>"123", "col2"=>"foo", "col3"=>"bar"
```



(1 row)

Convert an hstore to a predefined record type:

```
CREATE TABLE test (col1 integer, col2 text, col3 text);

SELECT * FROM populate_record(null::test,
                              '"col1"=>"456", "col2"=>"zzz"');

 col1 | col2 | col3
-----+-----+-----
  456 | zzz  |
(1 row)
```

Modify an existing record using the values from an hstore:

```
CREATE TABLE test (col1 integer, col2 text, col3 text);
INSERT INTO test VALUES (123, 'foo', 'bar');

SELECT (r).* FROM (SELECT t #= '"col3"=>"baz"' AS r FROM test t) s;
 col1 | col2 | col3
-----+-----+-----
  123 | foo  | baz
(1 row)
```

## F.18.5. Statistics

The `hstore` type, because of its intrinsic liberality, could contain a lot of different keys. Checking for valid keys is the task of the application. The following examples demonstrate several techniques for checking keys and obtaining statistics.

Simple example:

```
SELECT * FROM each('aaa=>bq, b=>NULL, ""=>1');
```

Using a table:

```
CREATE TABLE stat AS SELECT (each(h)).key, (each(h)).value FROM
testhstore;
```

Online statistics:

```
SELECT key, count(*) FROM
  (SELECT (each(h)).key FROM testhstore) AS stat
GROUP BY key
ORDER BY count DESC, key;

 key | count
-----+-----
line |    883
query |    207
pos  |    203
node |    202
space |    197
status |    195
public |    194
```

```
title      | 190
org        | 189
.....
```

## F.18.6. Compatibility

As of PostgreSQL 9.0, `hstore` uses a different internal representation than previous versions. This presents no obstacle for dump/restore upgrades since the text representation (used in the dump) is unchanged.

In the event of a binary upgrade, upward compatibility is maintained by having the new code recognize old-format data. This will entail a slight performance penalty when processing data that has not yet been modified by the new code. It is possible to force an upgrade of all values in a table column by doing an `UPDATE` statement as follows:

```
UPDATE tablename SET hstorecol = hstorecol || '';
```

Another way to do it is:

```
ALTER TABLE tablename ALTER hstorecol TYPE hstore USING hstorecol
|| '';
```

The `ALTER TABLE` method requires an `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock on the table, but does not result in bloating the table with old row versions.

## F.18.7. Transforms

Additional extensions are available that implement transforms for the `hstore` type for the languages PL/Perl and PL/Python. The extensions for PL/Perl are called `hstore_plperl` and `hstore_plperl_u`, for trusted and untrusted PL/Perl. If you install these transforms and specify them when creating a function, `hstore` values are mapped to Perl hashes. The extension for PL/Python is called `hstore_plpython3u`. If you use it, `hstore` values are mapped to Python dictionaries.

### Caution

It is strongly recommended that the transform extensions be installed in the same schema as `hstore`. Otherwise there are installation-time security hazards if a transform extension's schema contains objects defined by a hostile user.

## F.18.8. Authors

Oleg Bartunov <oleg@sai.msu.su>, Moscow, Moscow University, Russia

Teodor Sigaev <teodor@sigaev.ru>, Moscow, Delta-Soft Ltd., Russia

Additional enhancements by Andrew Gierth <andrew@tao11.riddles.org.uk>, United Kingdom

## F.19. intagg — integer aggregator and enumerator

The `intagg` module provides an integer aggregator and an enumerator. `intagg` is now obsolete, because there are built-in functions that provide a superset of its capabilities. However, the module is still provided as a compatibility wrapper around the built-in functions.

### F.19.1. Functions

The aggregator is an aggregate function `int_array_aggregate(integer)` that produces an integer array containing exactly the integers it is fed. This is a wrapper around `array_agg`, which does the same thing for any array type.

The enumerator is a function `int_array_enum(integer[])` that returns `setof integer`. It is essentially the reverse operation of the aggregator: given an array of integers, expand it into a set of rows. This is a wrapper around `unnest`, which does the same thing for any array type.

### F.19.2. Sample Uses

Many database systems have the notion of a one to many table. Such a table usually sits between two indexed tables, for example:

```
CREATE TABLE left (id INT PRIMARY KEY, ...);
CREATE TABLE right (id INT PRIMARY KEY, ...);
CREATE TABLE one_to_many(left INT REFERENCES left, right INT
    REFERENCES right);
```

It is typically used like this:

```
SELECT right.* from right JOIN one_to_many ON (right.id =
    one_to_many.right)
    WHERE one_to_many.left = item;
```

This will return all the items in the right hand table for an entry in the left hand table. This is a very common construct in SQL.

Now, this methodology can be cumbersome with a very large number of entries in the `one_to_many` table. Often, a join like this would result in an index scan and a fetch for each right hand entry in the table for a particular left hand entry. If you have a very dynamic system, there is not much you can do. However, if you have some data which is fairly static, you can create a summary table with the aggregator.

```
CREATE TABLE summary AS
    SELECT left, int_array_aggregate(right) AS right
    FROM one_to_many
    GROUP BY left;
```

This will create a table with one row per left item, and an array of right items. Now this is pretty useless without some way of using the array; that's why there is an array enumerator. You can do

```
SELECT left, int_array_enum(right) FROM summary WHERE left = item;
```

The above query using `int_array_enum` produces the same results as

```
SELECT left, right FROM one_to_many WHERE left = item;
```

The difference is that the query against the summary table has to get only one row from the table, whereas the direct query against `one_to_many` must index scan and fetch a row for each entry.

On one system, an EXPLAIN showed a query with a cost of 8488 was reduced to a cost of 329. The original query was a join involving the `one_to_many` table, which was replaced by:

```
SELECT right, count(right) FROM
  ( SELECT left, int_array_enum(right) AS right
    FROM summary JOIN (SELECT left FROM left_table WHERE left
= item) AS lefts
      ON (summary.left = lefts.left)
    ) AS list
GROUP BY right
ORDER BY count DESC;
```

## F.20. intarray — manipulate arrays of integers

The `intarray` module provides a number of useful functions and operators for manipulating null-free arrays of integers. There is also support for indexed searches using some of the operators.

All of these operations will throw an error if a supplied array contains any NULL elements.

Many of these operations are only sensible for one-dimensional arrays. Although they will accept input arrays of more dimensions, the data is treated as though it were a linear array in storage order.

This module is considered “trusted”, that is, it can be installed by non-superusers who have CREATE privilege on the current database.

### F.20.1. intarray Functions and Operators

The functions provided by the `intarray` module are shown in Table F.9, the operators in Table F.10.

**Table F.9. intarray Functions**

Function Description Example(s)
<code>icount ( integer[] ) → integer</code> Returns the number of elements in the array. <code>icount ( '{1,2,3}' :: integer[] ) → 3</code>
<code>sort ( integer[], dir text ) → integer[]</code> Sorts the array in either ascending or descending order. <i>dir</i> must be <code>asc</code> or <code>desc</code> . <code>sort ( '{1,3,2}' :: integer[], 'desc' ) → {3,2,1}</code>
<code>sort ( integer[] ) → integer[]</code> <code>sort_asc ( integer[] ) → integer[]</code> Sorts in ascending order. <code>sort ( array[11,77,44] ) → {11,44,77}</code>
<code>sort_desc ( integer[] ) → integer[]</code> Sorts in descending order. <code>sort_desc ( array[11,77,44] ) → {77,44,11}</code>
<code>uniq ( integer[] ) → integer[]</code> Removes adjacent duplicates. Often used with <code>sort</code> to remove all duplicates. <code>uniq ( '{1,2,2,3,1,1}' :: integer[] ) → {1,2,3,1}</code> <code>uniq ( sort ( '{1,2,3,2,1}' :: integer[] ) ) → {1,2,3}</code>
<code>idx ( integer[], item integer ) → integer</code> Returns index of the first array element matching <i>item</i> , or 0 if no match. <code>idx ( array[11,22,33,22,11], 22 ) → 2</code>
<code>subarray ( integer[], start integer, len integer ) → integer[]</code> Extracts the portion of the array starting at position <i>start</i> , with <i>len</i> elements. <code>subarray ( '{1,2,3,2,1}' :: integer[], 2, 3 ) → {2,3,2}</code>
<code>subarray ( integer[], start integer ) → integer[]</code> Extracts the portion of the array starting at position <i>start</i> . <code>subarray ( '{1,2,3,2,1}' :: integer[], 2 ) → {2,3,2,1}</code>

Function
Description
Example(s)
<code>intset ( integer ) → integer [ ]</code> Makes a single-element array. <code>intset ( 42 ) → { 42 }</code>

**Table F.10. intarray Operators**

Operator
Description
<code>integer [ ] &amp;&amp; integer [ ] → boolean</code> Do arrays overlap (have at least one element in common)?
<code>integer [ ] @&gt; integer [ ] → boolean</code> Does left array contain right array?
<code>integer [ ] &lt;@ integer [ ] → boolean</code> Is left array contained in right array?
<code># integer [ ] → integer</code> Returns the number of elements in the array.
<code>integer [ ] # integer → integer</code> Returns index of the first array element matching the right argument, or 0 if no match. (Same as <code>idx</code> function.)
<code>integer [ ] + integer → integer [ ]</code> Adds element to end of array.
<code>integer [ ] + integer [ ] → integer [ ]</code> Concatenates the arrays.
<code>integer [ ] - integer → integer [ ]</code> Removes entries matching the right argument from the array.
<code>integer [ ] - integer [ ] → integer [ ]</code> Removes elements of the right array from the left array.
<code>integer [ ]   integer → integer [ ]</code> Computes the union of the arguments.
<code>integer [ ]   integer [ ] → integer [ ]</code> Computes the union of the arguments.
<code>integer [ ] &amp; integer [ ] → integer [ ]</code> Computes the intersection of the arguments.
<code>integer [ ] @@ query_int → boolean</code> Does array satisfy query? (see below)
<code>query_int ~~ integer [ ] → boolean</code> Does array satisfy query? (commutator of @@)

The operators `&&`, `@>` and `<@` are equivalent to PostgreSQL's built-in operators of the same names, except that they work only on integer arrays that do not contain nulls, while the built-in operators work for any array type. This restriction makes them faster than the built-in operators in many cases.

The `@@` and `~~` operators test whether an array satisfies a *query*, which is expressed as a value of a specialized data type `query_int`. A *query* consists of integer values that are checked against

the elements of the array, possibly combined using the operators & (AND), | (OR), and ! (NOT). Parentheses can be used as needed. For example, the query `1 & ( 2 | 3 )` matches arrays that contain 1 and also contain either 2 or 3.

## F.20.2. Index Support

`intarray` provides index support for the `&&`, `@>`, and `@@` operators, as well as regular array equality.

Two parameterized GiST index operator classes are provided: `gist__int_ops` (used by default) is suitable for small- to medium-size data sets, while `gist__intbig_ops` uses a larger signature and is more suitable for indexing large data sets (i.e., columns containing a large number of distinct array values). The implementation uses an RD-tree data structure with built-in lossy compression.

`gist__int_ops` approximates an integer set as an array of integer ranges. Its optional integer parameter `numranges` determines the maximum number of ranges in one index key. The default value of `numranges` is 100. Valid values are between 1 and 253. Using larger arrays as GiST index keys leads to a more precise search (scanning a smaller fraction of the index and fewer heap pages), at the cost of a larger index.

`gist__intbig_ops` approximates an integer set as a bitmap signature. Its optional integer parameter `siglen` determines the signature length in bytes. The default signature length is 16 bytes. Valid values of signature length are between 1 and 2024 bytes. Longer signatures lead to a more precise search (scanning a smaller fraction of the index and fewer heap pages), at the cost of a larger index.

There is also a non-default GIN operator class `gin__int_ops`, which supports these operators as well as `<@`.

The choice between GiST and GIN indexing depends on the relative performance characteristics of GiST and GIN, which are discussed elsewhere.

## F.20.3. Example

```
-- a message can be in one or more "sections"
CREATE TABLE message (mid INT PRIMARY KEY, sections INT[], ...);

-- create specialized index with signature length of 32 bytes
CREATE INDEX message_rdtree_idx ON message USING GIST (sections
  gist__intbig_ops (siglen = 32));

-- select messages in section 1 OR 2 - OVERLAP operator
SELECT message.mid FROM message WHERE message.sections && '{1,2}';

-- select messages in sections 1 AND 2 - CONTAINS operator
SELECT message.mid FROM message WHERE message.sections @> '{1,2}';

-- the same, using QUERY operator
SELECT message.mid FROM message WHERE message.sections @@
  '1&2'::query_int;
```

## F.20.4. Benchmark

The source directory `contrib/intarray/bench` contains a benchmark test suite, which can be run against an installed PostgreSQL server. (It also requires `DBD::Pg` to be installed.) To run:

```
cd ../contrib/intarray/bench
createdb TEST
```

```
psql -c "CREATE EXTENSION intarray" TEST  
./create_test.pl | psql TEST  
./bench.pl
```

The `bench.pl` script has numerous options, which are displayed when it is run without any arguments.

## F.20.5. Authors

All work was done by Teodor Sigaev (<teodor@sigaev.ru>) and Oleg Bartunov (<oleg@sai.msu.su>). See <http://www.sai.msu.su/~megeera/postgres/gist/> for additional information. Andrey Oktyabrski did a great work on adding new functions and operations.



## F.21. isn — data types for international standard numbers (ISBN, EAN, UPC, etc.)

The `isn` module provides data types for the following international product numbering standards: EAN13, UPC, ISBN (books), ISMN (music), and ISSN (serials). Numbers are validated on input according to a hard-coded list of prefixes; this list of prefixes is also used to hyphenate numbers on output. Since new prefixes are assigned from time to time, the list of prefixes may be out of date. It is hoped that a future version of this module will obtain the prefix list from one or more tables that can be easily updated by users as needed; however, at present, the list can only be updated by modifying the source code and recompiling. Alternatively, prefix validation and hyphenation support may be dropped from a future version of this module.

This module is considered “trusted”, that is, it can be installed by non-superusers who have CREATE privilege on the current database.

### F.21.1. Data Types

Table F.11 shows the data types provided by the `isn` module.

**Table F.11. isn Data Types**

Data Type	Description
EAN13	European Article Numbers, always displayed in the EAN13 display format
ISBN13	International Standard Book Numbers to be displayed in the new EAN13 display format
ISMN13	International Standard Music Numbers to be displayed in the new EAN13 display format
ISSN13	International Standard Serial Numbers to be displayed in the new EAN13 display format
ISBN	International Standard Book Numbers to be displayed in the old short display format
ISMN	International Standard Music Numbers to be displayed in the old short display format
ISSN	International Standard Serial Numbers to be displayed in the old short display format
UPC	Universal Product Codes

Some notes:

1. ISBN13, ISMN13, ISSN13 numbers are all EAN13 numbers.
2. EAN13 numbers aren't always ISBN13, ISMN13 or ISSN13 (some are).
3. Some ISBN13 numbers can be displayed as ISBN.
4. Some ISMN13 numbers can be displayed as ISMN.
5. Some ISSN13 numbers can be displayed as ISSN.
6. UPC numbers are a subset of the EAN13 numbers (they are basically EAN13 without the first 0 digit).
7. All UPC, ISBN, ISMN and ISSN numbers can be represented as EAN13 numbers.

Internally, all these types use the same representation (a 64-bit integer), and all are interchangeable. Multiple types are provided to control display formatting and to permit tighter validity checking of input that is supposed to denote one particular type of number.

The ISBN, ISMN, and ISSN types will display the short version of the number (ISxN 10) whenever it's possible, and will show ISxN 13 format for numbers that do not fit in the short version. The EAN13, ISBN13, ISMN13 and ISSN13 types will always display the long version of the ISxN (EAN13).

## F.21.2. Casts

The `isn` module provides the following pairs of type casts:

- ISBN13 <=> EAN13
- ISMN13 <=> EAN13
- ISSN13 <=> EAN13
- ISBN <=> EAN13
- ISMN <=> EAN13
- ISSN <=> EAN13
- UPC <=> EAN13
- ISBN <=> ISBN13
- ISMN <=> ISMN13
- ISSN <=> ISSN13

When casting from EAN13 to another type, there is a run-time check that the value is within the domain of the other type, and an error is thrown if not. The other casts are simply relabelings that will always succeed.

## F.21.3. Functions and Operators

The `isn` module provides the standard comparison operators, plus B-tree and hash indexing support for all these data types. In addition there are several specialized functions; shown in Table F.12. In this table, `isn` means any one of the module's data types.

**Table F.12. `isn` Functions**

Function	Description
<code>isn_weak (boolean) → boolean</code>	Sets the weak input mode, and returns new setting.
<code>isn_weak () → boolean</code>	Returns the current status of the weak mode.
<code>make_valid (isn) → isn</code>	Validates an invalid number (clears the invalid flag).
<code>is_valid (isn) → boolean</code>	Checks for the presence of the invalid flag.

*Weak* mode is used to be able to insert invalid data into a table. Invalid means the check digit is wrong, not that there are missing numbers.

Why would you want to use the weak mode? Well, it could be that you have a huge collection of ISBN numbers, and that there are so many of them that for weird reasons some have the wrong check digit (perhaps the numbers were scanned from a printed list and the OCR got the numbers wrong, perhaps the numbers were manually captured... who knows). Anyway, the point is you might want to clean the mess up, but you still want to be able to have all the numbers in your database and maybe use an external tool to locate the invalid numbers in the database so you can verify the information and validate it more easily; so for example you'd want to select all the invalid numbers in the table.

When you insert invalid numbers in a table using the weak mode, the number will be inserted with the corrected check digit, but it will be displayed with an exclamation mark (!) at the end, for example 0-11-000322-5!. This invalid marker can be checked with the `is_valid` function and cleared with the `make_valid` function.

You can also force the insertion of invalid numbers even when not in the weak mode, by appending the `!` character at the end of the number.

Another special feature is that during input, you can write `?` in place of the check digit, and the correct check digit will be inserted automatically.

## F.21.4. Examples

```
--Using the types directly:
SELECT isbn('978-0-393-04002-9');
SELECT isbn13('0901690546');
SELECT issn('1436-4522');

--Casting types:
-- note that you can only cast from ean13 to another type when the
-- number would be valid in the realm of the target type;
-- thus, the following will NOT work: select
  isbn(ean13('0220356483481'));
-- but these will:
SELECT upc(ean13('0220356483481'));
SELECT ean13(upc('220356483481'));

--Create a table with a single column to hold ISBN numbers:
CREATE TABLE test (id isbn);
INSERT INTO test VALUES('9780393040029');

--Automatically calculate check digits (observe the '?'):
INSERT INTO test VALUES('220500896?');
INSERT INTO test VALUES('978055215372?');

SELECT issn('3251231?');
SELECT ismn('979047213542?');

--Using the weak mode:
SELECT isn_weak(true);
INSERT INTO test VALUES('978-0-11-000533-4');
INSERT INTO test VALUES('9780141219307');
INSERT INTO test VALUES('2-205-00876-X');
SELECT isn_weak(false);

SELECT id FROM test WHERE NOT is_valid(id);
UPDATE test SET id = make_valid(id) WHERE id = '2-205-00876-X!';

SELECT * FROM test;
```

```
SELECT isbn13(id) FROM test;
```

## F.21.5. Bibliography

The information to implement this module was collected from several sites, including:

- <https://www.isbn-international.org/>
- <https://www.issn.org/>
- <https://www.ismn-international.org/>
- <https://www.wikipedia.org/>

The prefixes used for hyphenation were also compiled from:

- <https://www.gs1.org/standards/id-keys>
- [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List\\_of\\_ISBN\\_identifier\\_groups](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_ISBN_identifier_groups)
- <https://www.isbn-international.org/content/isbn-users-manual>
- [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/International\\_Standard\\_Music\\_Number](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/International_Standard_Music_Number)
- <https://www.ismn-international.org/ranges.html>

Care was taken during the creation of the algorithms and they were meticulously verified against the suggested algorithms in the official ISBN, ISMN, ISSN User Manuals.

## F.21.6. Author

Germán Méndez Bravo (Kronuz), 2004–2006

This module was inspired by Garrett A. Wollman's `isbn_issn` code.

## F.22. lo — manage large objects

The `lo` module provides support for managing Large Objects (also called LOs or BLOBs). This includes a data type `lo` and a trigger `lo_manage`.

This module is considered “trusted”, that is, it can be installed by non-superusers who have `CREATE` privilege on the current database.

### F.22.1. Rationale

One of the problems with the JDBC driver (and this affects the ODBC driver also), is that the specification assumes that references to BLOBs (Binary Large Objects) are stored within a table, and if that entry is changed, the associated BLOB is deleted from the database.

As PostgreSQL stands, this doesn't occur. Large objects are treated as objects in their own right; a table entry can reference a large object by `OID`, but there can be multiple table entries referencing the same large object `OID`, so the system doesn't delete the large object just because you change or remove one such entry.

Now this is fine for PostgreSQL-specific applications, but standard code using JDBC or ODBC won't delete the objects, resulting in orphan objects — objects that are not referenced by anything, and simply occupy disk space.

The `lo` module allows fixing this by attaching a trigger to tables that contain `LO` reference columns. The trigger essentially just does a `lo_unlink` whenever you delete or modify a value referencing a large object. When you use this trigger, you are assuming that there is only one database reference to any large object that is referenced in a trigger-controlled column!

The module also provides a data type `lo`, which is really just a *domain* over the `oid` type. This is useful for differentiating database columns that hold large object references from those that are `OID`s of other things. You don't have to use the `lo` type to use the trigger, but it may be convenient to use it to keep track of which columns in your database represent large objects that you are managing with the trigger. It is also rumored that the ODBC driver gets confused if you don't use `lo` for BLOB columns.

### F.22.2. How to Use It

Here's a simple example of usage:

```
CREATE TABLE image (title text, raster lo);

CREATE TRIGGER t_raster BEFORE UPDATE OR DELETE ON image
    FOR EACH ROW EXECUTE FUNCTION lo_manage(raster);
```

For each column that will contain unique references to large objects, create a `BEFORE UPDATE OR DELETE` trigger, and give the column name as the sole trigger argument. You can also restrict the trigger to only execute on updates to the column by using `BEFORE UPDATE OF column_name`. If you need multiple `lo` columns in the same table, create a separate trigger for each one, remembering to give a different name to each trigger on the same table.

### F.22.3. Limitations

- Dropping a table will still orphan any objects it contains, as the trigger is not executed. You can avoid this by preceding the `DROP TABLE` with `DELETE FROM table`.

`TRUNCATE` has the same hazard.

If you already have, or suspect you have, orphaned large objects, see the `vacuumlo` module to help you clean them up. It's a good idea to run `vacuumlo` occasionally as a back-stop to the `lo_manage` trigger.

- Some frontends may create their own tables, and will not create the associated trigger(s). Also, users may not remember (or know) to create the triggers.

## **F.22.4. Author**

Peter Mount <[peter@retep.org.uk](mailto:peter@retep.org.uk)>

## F.23. ltree — hierarchical tree-like data type

This module implements a data type `ltree` for representing labels of data stored in a hierarchical tree-like structure. Extensive facilities for searching through label trees are provided.

This module is considered “trusted”, that is, it can be installed by non-superusers who have `CREATE` privilege on the current database.

### F.23.1. Definitions

A *label* is a sequence of alphanumeric characters, underscores, and hyphens. Valid alphanumeric character ranges are dependent on the database locale. For example, in C locale, the characters A–Za–z0–9\_– are allowed. Labels must be no more than 1000 characters long.

Examples: 42, Personal\_Services

A *label path* is a sequence of zero or more labels separated by dots, for example L1.L2.L3, representing a path from the root of a hierarchical tree to a particular node. The length of a label path cannot exceed 65535 labels.

Example: Top.Countries.Europe.Russia

The `ltree` module provides several data types:

- `ltree` stores a label path.
- `lquery` represents a regular-expression-like pattern for matching `ltree` values. A simple word matches that label within a path. A star symbol (\*) matches zero or more labels. These can be joined with dots to form a pattern that must match the whole label path. For example:

<code>foo</code>	<i>Match the exact label path foo</i>
<code>*.foo.*</code>	<i>Match any label path containing the label foo</i>
<code>*.foo</code>	<i>Match any label path whose last label is foo</i>

Both star symbols and simple words can be quantified to restrict how many labels they can match:

<code>*{n}</code>	<i>Match exactly n labels</i>
<code>*{n,}</code>	<i>Match at least n labels</i>
<code>*{n,m}</code>	<i>Match at least n but not more than m labels</i>
<code>*{,m}</code>	<i>Match at most m labels – same as *{0,m}</i>
<code>foo{n,m}</code>	<i>Match at least n but not more than m occurrences of foo</i>
<code>foo{,}</code>	<i>Match any number of occurrences of foo, including zero</i>

In the absence of any explicit quantifier, the default for a star symbol is to match any number of labels (that is, `{,}`) while the default for a non-star item is to match exactly once (that is, `{1}`).

There are several modifiers that can be put at the end of a non-star `lquery` item to make it match more than just the exact match:

<code>@</code>	<i>Match case-insensitively, for example a@ matches A</i>
<code>*</code>	<i>Match any label with this prefix, for example foo* matches foobar</i>
<code>%</code>	<i>Match initial underscore-separated words</i>

The behavior of % is a bit complicated. It tries to match words rather than the entire label. For example `foo_bar%` matches `foo_bar_baz` but not `foo_barbaz`. If combined with `*`, prefix matching applies to each word separately, for example `foo_bar%*` matches `foo1_bar2_baz` but not `foo1_br2_baz`.

Also, you can write several possibly-modified non-star items separated with `|` (OR) to match any of those items, and you can put `!` (NOT) at the start of a non-star group to match any label that doesn't match any of the alternatives. A quantifier, if any, goes at the end of the group; it means some number of matches for the group as a whole (that is, some number of labels matching or not matching any of the alternatives).

Here's an annotated example of `lquery`:

```
Top.*{0,2}.sport*@.!football|tennis{1,}.Russ*|Spain
a.   b.       c.       d.               e.
```

This query will match any label path that:

- a. begins with the label `Top`
  - b. and next has zero to two labels before
  - c. a label beginning with the case-insensitive prefix `sport`
  - d. then has one or more labels, none of which match `football` nor `tennis`
  - e. and then ends with a label beginning with `Russ` or exactly matching `Spain`.
- `ltxquery` represents a full-text-search-like pattern for matching `ltree` values. An `ltxquery` value contains words, possibly with the modifiers `@`, `*`, `%` at the end; the modifiers have the same meanings as in `lquery`. Words can be combined with `&` (AND), `|` (OR), `!` (NOT), and parentheses. The key difference from `lquery` is that `ltxquery` matches words without regard to their position in the label path.

Here's an example `ltxquery`:

```
Europe & Russia*@ & !Transportation
```

This will match paths that contain the label `Europe` and any label beginning with `Russia` (case-insensitive), but not paths containing the label `Transportation`. The location of these words within the path is not important. Also, when `%` is used, the word can be matched to any underscore-separated word within a label, regardless of position.

Note: `ltxquery` allows whitespace between symbols, but `ltree` and `lquery` do not.

## F.23.2. Operators and Functions

Type `ltree` has the usual comparison operators `=`, `<>`, `<`, `>`, `<=`, `>=`. Comparison sorts in the order of a tree traversal, with the children of a node sorted by label text. In addition, the specialized operators shown in Table F.13 are available.

**Table F.13. `ltree` Operators**

Operator	Description
<code>ltree @&gt; ltree</code>	<code>→ boolean</code>
	Is left argument an ancestor of right (or equal)?



Operator	Description
<code>ltree &lt;@ ltree → boolean</code>	Is left argument a descendant of right (or equal)?
<code>ltree ~ lquery → boolean</code> <code>lquery ~ ltree → boolean</code>	Does <code>ltree</code> match <code>lquery</code> ?
<code>ltree ? lquery[] → boolean</code> <code>lquery[] ? ltree → boolean</code>	Does <code>ltree</code> match any <code>lquery</code> in array?
<code>ltree @ ltxtquery → boolean</code> <code>ltxtquery @ ltree → boolean</code>	Does <code>ltree</code> match <code>ltxtquery</code> ?
<code>ltree    ltree → ltree</code>	Concatenates <code>ltree</code> paths.
<code>ltree    text → ltree</code> <code>text    ltree → ltree</code>	Converts text to <code>ltree</code> and concatenates.
<code>ltree[] @&gt; ltree → boolean</code> <code>ltree &lt;@ ltree[] → boolean</code>	Does array contain an ancestor of <code>ltree</code> ?
<code>ltree[] &lt;@ ltree → boolean</code> <code>ltree @&gt; ltree[] → boolean</code>	Does array contain a descendant of <code>ltree</code> ?
<code>ltree[] ~ lquery → boolean</code> <code>lquery ~ ltree[] → boolean</code>	Does array contain any path matching <code>lquery</code> ?
<code>ltree[] ? lquery[] → boolean</code> <code>lquery[] ? ltree[] → boolean</code>	Does <code>ltree</code> array contain any path matching any <code>lquery</code> ?
<code>ltree[] @ ltxtquery → boolean</code> <code>ltxtquery @ ltree[] → boolean</code>	Does array contain any path matching <code>ltxtquery</code> ?
<code>ltree[] ?@&gt; ltree → ltree</code>	Returns first array entry that is an ancestor of <code>ltree</code> , or NULL if none.
<code>ltree[] ?&lt;@ ltree → ltree</code>	Returns first array entry that is a descendant of <code>ltree</code> , or NULL if none.
<code>ltree[] ?~ lquery → ltree</code>	Returns first array entry that matches <code>lquery</code> , or NULL if none.
<code>ltree[] ?@ ltxtquery → ltree</code>	Returns first array entry that matches <code>ltxtquery</code> , or NULL if none.

The operators `<@`, `@>`, `@` and `~` have analogues `^<@`, `^@>`, `^@`, `^~`, which are the same except they do not use indexes. These are useful only for testing purposes.

The available functions are shown in Table F.14.

**Table F.14. ltree Functions**

Function	Description	Example(s)
<code>subltree ( ltree, start integer, end integer ) → ltree</code>	Returns subpath of <code>ltree</code> from position <code>start</code> to position <code>end-1</code> (counting from 0).	<code>subltree( 'Top.Child1.Child2' , 1, 2 ) → Child1</code>
<code>subpath ( ltree, offset integer, len integer ) → ltree</code>	Returns subpath of <code>ltree</code> starting at position <code>offset</code> , with length <code>len</code> . If <code>offset</code> is negative, subpath starts that far from the end of the path. If <code>len</code> is negative, leaves that many labels off the end of the path.	<code>subpath( 'Top.Child1.Child2' , 0, 2 ) → Top.Child1</code>
<code>subpath ( ltree, offset integer ) → ltree</code>	Returns subpath of <code>ltree</code> starting at position <code>offset</code> , extending to end of path. If <code>offset</code> is negative, subpath starts that far from the end of the path.	<code>subpath( 'Top.Child1.Child2' , 1 ) → Child1.Child2</code>
<code>nlevel ( ltree ) → integer</code>	Returns number of labels in path.	<code>nlevel( 'Top.Child1.Child2' ) → 3</code>
<code>index ( a ltree, b ltree ) → integer</code>	Returns position of first occurrence of <code>b</code> in <code>a</code> , or -1 if not found.	<code>index( '0.1.2.3.5.4.5.6.8.5.6.8' , '5.6' ) → 6</code>
<code>index ( a ltree, b ltree, offset integer ) → integer</code>	Returns position of first occurrence of <code>b</code> in <code>a</code> , or -1 if not found. The search starts at position <code>offset</code> ; negative <code>offset</code> means start <code>-offset</code> labels from the end of the path.	<code>index( '0.1.2.3.5.4.5.6.8.5.6.8' , '5.6' , -4 ) → 9</code>
<code>text2ltree ( text ) → ltree</code>	Casts <code>text</code> to <code>ltree</code> .	
<code>ltree2text ( ltree ) → text</code>	Casts <code>ltree</code> to <code>text</code> .	
<code>lca ( ltree [ , ltree [ , ... ] ] ) → ltree</code>	Computes longest common ancestor of paths (up to 8 arguments are supported).	<code>lca( '1.2.3' , '1.2.3.4.5.6' ) → 1.2</code>
<code>lca ( ltree [ ] ) → ltree</code>	Computes longest common ancestor of paths in array.	<code>lca(array[ '1.2.3' ::ltree, '1.2.3.4' ]) → 1.2</code>

## F.23.3. Indexes

`ltree` supports several types of indexes that can speed up the indicated operators:

- B-tree index over `ltree`: `<`, `<=`, `=`, `>=`, `>`
- GiST index over `ltree` (`gist_ltree_ops` opclass): `<`, `<=`, `=`, `>=`, `>`, `@>`, `<@`, `@`, `~`, `?`

`gist_ltree_ops` GiST opclass approximates a set of path labels as a bitmap signature. Its optional integer parameter `siglen` determines the signature length in bytes. The default signature length is 8 bytes. The length must be a positive multiple of `int` alignment (4 bytes on most machines) up to 2024. Longer signatures lead to a more precise search (scanning a smaller fraction of the index and fewer heap pages), at the cost of a larger index.

Example of creating such an index with the default signature length of 8 bytes:

```
CREATE INDEX path_gist_idx ON test USING GIST (path);
```

Example of creating such an index with a signature length of 100 bytes:

```
CREATE INDEX path_gist_idx ON test USING GIST (path
gist_ltree_ops(siglen=100));
```

- GiST index over `ltree[]` (`gist__ltree_ops` opclass): `ltree[] <@ ltree, ltree @> ltree[], @, ~, ?`

`gist__ltree_ops` GiST opclass works similarly to `gist_ltree_ops` and also takes signature length as a parameter. The default value of `siglen` in `gist__ltree_ops` is 28 bytes.

Example of creating such an index with the default signature length of 28 bytes:

```
CREATE INDEX path_gist_idx ON test USING GIST (array_path);
```

Example of creating such an index with a signature length of 100 bytes:

```
CREATE INDEX path_gist_idx ON test USING GIST (array_path
gist__ltree_ops(siglen=100));
```

Note: This index type is lossy.

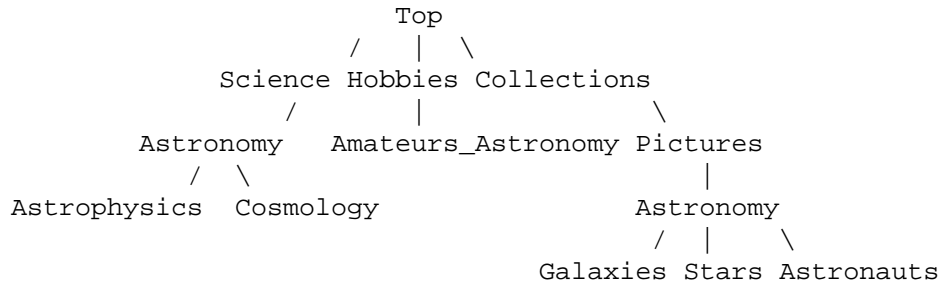
## F.23.4. Example

This example uses the following data (also available in file `contrib/ltree/ltreetest.sql` in the source distribution):

```
CREATE TABLE test (path ltree);
INSERT INTO test VALUES ('Top');
INSERT INTO test VALUES ('Top.Science');
INSERT INTO test VALUES ('Top.Science.Astronomy');
INSERT INTO test VALUES ('Top.Science.Astronomy.Astrophysics');
INSERT INTO test VALUES ('Top.Science.Astronomy.Cosmology');
INSERT INTO test VALUES ('Top.Hobbies');
INSERT INTO test VALUES ('Top.Hobbies.Amateurs_Astronomy');
INSERT INTO test VALUES ('Top.Collections');
INSERT INTO test VALUES ('Top.Collections.Pictures');
INSERT INTO test VALUES ('Top.Collections.Pictures.Astronomy');
INSERT INTO test VALUES
('Top.Collections.Pictures.Astronomy.Stars');
INSERT INTO test VALUES
('Top.Collections.Pictures.Astronomy.Galaxies');
INSERT INTO test VALUES
('Top.Collections.Pictures.Astronomy.Astronauts');
```

```
CREATE INDEX path_gist_idx ON test USING GIST (path);
CREATE INDEX path_idx ON test USING BTREE (path);
```

Now, we have a table test populated with data describing the hierarchy shown below:



We can do inheritance:

```
ltreetest=> SELECT path FROM test WHERE path <@ 'Top.Science';
           path
-----
Top.Science
Top.Science.Astronomy
Top.Science.Astronomy.Astrophysics
Top.Science.Astronomy.Cosmology
(4 rows)
```

Here are some examples of path matching:

```
ltreetest=> SELECT path FROM test WHERE path ~ '*.Astronomy.*';
           path
-----
Top.Science.Astronomy
Top.Science.Astronomy.Astrophysics
Top.Science.Astronomy.Cosmology
Top.Collections.Pictures.Astronomy
Top.Collections.Pictures.Astronomy.Stars
Top.Collections.Pictures.Astronomy.Galaxies
Top.Collections.Pictures.Astronomy.Astronauts
(7 rows)
```

```
ltreetest=> SELECT path FROM test WHERE path ~ '*.!
pictures@.Astronomy.*';
           path
-----
Top.Science.Astronomy
Top.Science.Astronomy.Astrophysics
Top.Science.Astronomy.Cosmology
(3 rows)
```

Here are some examples of full text search:

```
ltreetest=> SELECT path FROM test WHERE path @ 'Astro*% & !
pictures@';
           path
-----
```

```
Top.Science.Astronomy
Top.Science.Astronomy.Astrophysics
Top.Science.Astronomy.Cosmology
Top.Hobbies.Amateurs_Astronomy
(4 rows)
```

```
ltreetest=> SELECT path FROM test WHERE path @ 'Astro*' & !
pictures@';
           path
```

```
-----
Top.Science.Astronomy
Top.Science.Astronomy.Astrophysics
Top.Science.Astronomy.Cosmology
(3 rows)
```

Path construction using functions:

```
ltreetest=> SELECT subpath(path,0,2) || 'Space' || subpath(path,2) FROM
test WHERE path <@ 'Top.Science.Astronomy';
           ?column?
```

```
-----
Top.Science.Space.Astronomy
Top.Science.Space.Astronomy.Astrophysics
Top.Science.Space.Astronomy.Cosmology
(3 rows)
```

We could simplify this by creating an SQL function that inserts a label at a specified position in a path:

```
CREATE FUNCTION ins_label(ltree, int, text) RETURNS ltree
AS 'select subpath($1,0,$2) || $3 || subpath($1,$2);'
LANGUAGE SQL IMMUTABLE;
```

```
ltreetest=> SELECT ins_label(path,2,'Space') FROM test WHERE path
<@ 'Top.Science.Astronomy';
           ins_label
```

```
-----
Top.Science.Space.Astronomy
Top.Science.Space.Astronomy.Astrophysics
Top.Science.Space.Astronomy.Cosmology
(3 rows)
```

## F.23.5. Transforms

The `ltree_plpython3u` extension implements transforms for the `ltree` type for PL/Python. If installed and specified when creating a function, `ltree` values are mapped to Python lists. (The reverse is currently not supported, however.)

### Caution

It is strongly recommended that the transform extension be installed in the same schema as `ltree`. Otherwise there are installation-time security hazards if a transform extension's schema contains objects defined by a hostile user.

## F.23.6. Authors

All work was done by Teodor Sigaev (<teodor@stack.net>) and Oleg Bartunov (<oleg@sai.msu.su>). See <http://www.sai.msu.su/~megera/postgres/gist/> for additional information. Authors would like to thank Eugeny Rodichev for helpful discussions. Comments and bug reports are welcome.

## F.24. `old_snapshot` — inspect `old_snapshot_threshold` state

The `old_snapshot` module allows inspection of the server state that is used to implement `old_snapshot_threshold`.

### F.24.1. Functions

`pg_old_snapshot_time_mapping(array_offset OUT int4, end_timestamp OUT timestamptz, newest_xmin OUT xid) returns setof record`

Returns all of the entries in the server's timestamp to XID mapping. Each entry represents the newest xmin of any snapshot taken in the corresponding minute.

## F.25. pageinspect — low-level inspection of database pages

The `pageinspect` module provides functions that allow you to inspect the contents of database pages at a low level, which is useful for debugging purposes. All of these functions may be used only by superusers.

### F.25.1. General Functions

`get_raw_page(relname text, fork text, blkno bigint)` returns `bytea`

`get_raw_page` reads the specified block of the named relation and returns a copy as a `bytea` value. This allows a single time-consistent copy of the block to be obtained. *fork* should be 'main' for the main data fork, 'fsm' for the free space map, 'vm' for the visibility map, or 'init' for the initialization fork.

`get_raw_page(relname text, blkno bigint)` returns `bytea`

A shorthand version of `get_raw_page`, for reading from the main fork. Equivalent to `get_raw_page(relname, 'main', blkno)`

`page_header(page bytea)` returns `record`

`page_header` shows fields that are common to all PostgreSQL heap and index pages.

A page image obtained with `get_raw_page` should be passed as argument. For example:

```
test=# SELECT * FROM page_header(get_raw_page('pg_class', 0));
   lsn      | checksum | flags | lower | upper | special |
   pagesize | version  | prune_xid
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
0/24A1B50 |         0 |      1 |    232 |    368 |    8192 |
8192 |         4 |         0
```

The returned columns correspond to the fields in the `PageHeaderData` struct. See `src/include/storage/bufpage.h` for details.

The `checksum` field is the checksum stored in the page, which might be incorrect if the page is somehow corrupted. If data checksums are not enabled for this instance, then the value stored is meaningless.

`page_checksum(page bytea, blkno bigint)` returns `smallint`

`page_checksum` computes the checksum for the page, as if it was located at the given block.

A page image obtained with `get_raw_page` should be passed as argument. For example:

```
test=# SELECT page_checksum(get_raw_page('pg_class', 0), 0);
 page_checksum
-----
      13443
```

Note that the checksum depends on the block number, so matching block numbers should be passed (except when doing esoteric debugging).



The checksum computed with this function can be compared with the `checksum` result field of the function `page_header`. If data checksums are enabled for this instance, then the two values should be equal.

`fsm_page_contents(page bytea)` returns `text`

`fsm_page_contents` shows the internal node structure of an FSM page. For example:

```
test=# SELECT fsm_page_contents(get_raw_page('pg_class', 'fsm',
0));
```

The output is a multiline string, with one line per node in the binary tree within the page. Only those nodes that are not zero are printed. The so-called "next" pointer, which points to the next slot to be returned from the page, is also printed.

See `src/backend/storage/freespace/README` for more information on the structure of an FSM page.

## F.25.2. Heap Functions

`heap_page_items(page bytea)` returns `setof record`

`heap_page_items` shows all line pointers on a heap page. For those line pointers that are in use, tuple headers as well as tuple raw data are also shown. All tuples are shown, whether or not the tuples were visible to an MVCC snapshot at the time the raw page was copied.

A heap page image obtained with `get_raw_page` should be passed as argument. For example:

```
test=# SELECT * FROM heap_page_items(get_raw_page('pg_class',
0));
```

See `src/include/storage/itemid.h` and `src/include/access/htup_details.h` for explanations of the fields returned.

The `heap_tuple_infomask_flags` function can be used to unpack the flag bits of `t_infomask` and `t_infomask2` for heap tuples.

`tuple_data_split(rel_oid oid, t_data bytea, t_infomask integer, t_infomask2 integer, t_bits text [, do_detoast bool])` returns `bytea[]`

`tuple_data_split` splits tuple data into attributes in the same way as backend internals.

```
test=# SELECT tuple_data_split('pg_class'::regclass,
t_data, t_infomask, t_infomask2, t_bits) FROM
heap_page_items(get_raw_page('pg_class', 0));
```

This function should be called with the same arguments as the return attributes of `heap_page_items`.

If `do_detoast` is true, attributes will be detoasted as needed. Default value is false.

`heap_page_item_attrs(page bytea, rel_oid regclass [, do_detoast bool])` returns `setof record`

`heap_page_item_attrs` is equivalent to `heap_page_items` except that it returns tuple raw data as an array of attributes that can optionally be detoasted by `do_detoast` which is false by default.

A heap page image obtained with `get_raw_page` should be passed as argument. For example:

```
test=# SELECT * FROM
heap_page_item_attrs(get_raw_page('pg_class', 0),
'pg_class'::regclass);
```

`heap_tuple_infomask_flags(t_infomask integer, t_infomask2 integer)`  
returns record

`heap_tuple_infomask_flags` decodes the `t_infomask` and `t_infomask2` returned by `heap_page_items` into a human-readable set of arrays made of flag names, with one column for all the flags and one column for combined flags. For example:

```
test=# SELECT t_ctid, raw_flags, combined_flags
FROM heap_page_items(get_raw_page('pg_class', 0)),
LATERAL heap_tuple_infomask_flags(t_infomask,
t_infomask2)
WHERE t_infomask IS NOT NULL OR t_infomask2 IS NOT
NULL;
```

This function should be called with the same arguments as the return attributes of `heap_page_items`.

Combined flags are displayed for source-level macros that take into account the value of more than one raw bit, such as `HEAP_XMIN_FROZEN`.

See `src/include/access/htup_details.h` for explanations of the flag names returned.

## F.25.3. B-Tree Functions

`bt_metap(relname text)` returns record

`bt_metap` returns information about a B-tree index's metapage. For example:

```
test=# SELECT * FROM bt_metap('pg_cast_oid_index');
-[ RECORD 1 ]-----+-----
magic                | 340322
version              | 4
root                 | 1
level                | 0
fastroot             | 1
fastlevel            | 0
last_cleanup_num_delpages | 0
last_cleanup_num_tuples | 230
allequalimage        | f
```

`bt_page_stats(relname text, blkno bigint)` returns record

`bt_page_stats` returns summary information about a data page of a B-tree index. For example:

```
test=# SELECT * FROM bt_page_stats('pg_cast_oid_index', 1);
-[ RECORD 1 ]+-----
blkno        | 1
type         | 1
live_items   | 224
dead_items   | 0
```

```

avg_item_size | 16
page_size     | 8192
free_size     | 3668
btpo_prev     | 0
btpo_next     | 0
btpo_level    | 0
btpo_flags    | 3

```

`bt_multi_page_stats(relname text, blkno bigint, blk_count bigint)`  
returns setof record

`bt_multi_page_stats` returns the same information as `bt_page_stats`, but does so for each page of the range of pages beginning at `blkno` and extending for `blk_count` pages. If `blk_count` is negative, all pages from `blkno` to the end of the index are reported on. For example:

```

test=# SELECT * FROM bt_multi_page_stats('pg_proc_oid_index', 5,
2);
-[ RECORD 1 ]-+-----
blkno         | 5
type          | 1
live_items    | 367
dead_items    | 0
avg_item_size | 16
page_size     | 8192
free_size     | 808
btpo_prev     | 4
btpo_next     | 6
btpo_level    | 0
btpo_flags    | 1
-[ RECORD 2 ]-+-----
blkno         | 6
type          | 1
live_items    | 367
dead_items    | 0
avg_item_size | 16
page_size     | 8192
free_size     | 808
btpo_prev     | 5
btpo_next     | 7
btpo_level    | 0
btpo_flags    | 1

```

`bt_page_items(relname text, blkno bigint)` returns setof record

`bt_page_items` returns detailed information about all of the items on a B-tree index page. For example:

```

test=# SELECT itemoffset, ctid, itemlen, nulls, vars, data,
dead, htid, tids[0:2] AS some_tids
FROM bt_page_items('tenk2_hundred', 5);
 itemoffset | ctid   | itemlen | nulls | vars | data |
            | dead  | htid   | some_tids
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
1 | (16,1) | 16 | f | f | 30 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 |

```

```

      2 | (16,8292) |      616 | f      | f      | 24 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 | f      | (1,6) | {"(1,6)","(10,22)"}
      3 | (16,8292) |      616 | f      | f      | 25 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 | f      | (1,18) | {"(1,18)","(4,22)"}
      4 | (16,8292) |      616 | f      | f      | 26 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 | f      | (4,18) | {"(4,18)","(6,17)"}
      5 | (16,8292) |      616 | f      | f      | 27 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 | f      | (1,2) | {"(1,2)","(1,19)"}
      6 | (16,8292) |      616 | f      | f      | 28 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 | f      | (2,24) | {"(2,24)","(4,11)"}
      7 | (16,8292) |      616 | f      | f      | 29 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 | f      | (2,17) | {"(2,17)","(11,2)"}
      8 | (16,8292) |      616 | f      | f      | 2a 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 | f      | (0,25) | {"(0,25)","(3,20)"}
      9 | (16,8292) |      616 | f      | f      | 2b 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 | f      | (0,10) | {"(0,10)","(0,14)"}
     10 | (16,8292) |      616 | f      | f      | 2c 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 | f      | (1,3) | {"(1,3)","(3,9)"}
     11 | (16,8292) |      616 | f      | f      | 2d 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 | f      | (6,28) | {"(6,28)","(11,1)"}
     12 | (16,8292) |      616 | f      | f      | 2e 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 | f      | (0,27) | {"(0,27)","(1,13)"}
     13 | (16,8292) |      616 | f      | f      | 2f 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 | f      | (4,17) | {"(4,17)","(4,21)"}
(13 rows)

```

This is a B-tree leaf page. All tuples that point to the table happen to be posting list tuples (all of which store a total of 100 6 byte TIDs). There is also a “high key” tuple at `itemoffset` number 1. `ctid` is used to store encoded information about each tuple in this example, though leaf page tuples often store a heap TID directly in the `ctid` field instead. `tids` is the list of TIDs stored as a posting list.

In an internal page (not shown), the block number part of `ctid` is a “downlink”, which is a block number of another page in the index itself. The offset part (the second number) of `ctid` stores encoded information about the tuple, such as the number of columns present (suffix truncation may have removed unneeded suffix columns). Truncated columns are treated as having the value “minus infinity”.

`htid` shows a heap TID for the tuple, regardless of the underlying tuple representation. This value may match `ctid`, or may be decoded from the alternative representations used by posting list tuples and tuples from internal pages. Tuples in internal pages usually have the implementation level heap TID column truncated away, which is represented as a NULL `htid` value.

Note that the first item on any non-rightmost page (any page with a non-zero value in the `bt_po_next` field) is the page’s “high key”, meaning its data serves as an upper bound on all items appearing on the page, while its `ctid` field does not point to another block. Also, on internal pages, the first real data item (the first item that is not a high key) reliably has every column truncated away, leaving no actual value in its `data` field. Such an item does have a valid downlink in its `ctid` field, however.

For more details about the structure of B-tree indexes, see Section 67.4.1. For more details about deduplication and posting lists, see Section 67.4.3.

`bt_page_items(page bytea)` returns `setof record`

It is also possible to pass a page to `bt_page_items` as a `bytea` value. A page image obtained with `get_raw_page` should be passed as argument. So the last example could also be rewritten like this:

```
test=# SELECT itemoffset, ctid, itemlen, nulls, vars, data,
       dead, htid, tids[0:2] AS some_tids
       FROM bt_page_items(get_raw_page('tenk2_hundred', 5));
 itemoffset |   ctid   | itemlen | nulls | vars |          data          |
            | dead | htid |          some_tids          |
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----
1 | (16,1) | 16 | f | f | 30 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 |
2 | (16,8292) | 616 | f | f | 24 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 | f | (1,6) | {"(1,6)","(10,22)"}
3 | (16,8292) | 616 | f | f | 25 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 | f | (1,18) | {"(1,18)","(4,22)"}
4 | (16,8292) | 616 | f | f | 26 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 | f | (4,18) | {"(4,18)","(6,17)"}
5 | (16,8292) | 616 | f | f | 27 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 | f | (1,2) | {"(1,2)","(1,19)"}
6 | (16,8292) | 616 | f | f | 28 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 | f | (2,24) | {"(2,24)","(4,11)"}
7 | (16,8292) | 616 | f | f | 29 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 | f | (2,17) | {"(2,17)","(11,2)"}
8 | (16,8292) | 616 | f | f | 2a 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 | f | (0,25) | {"(0,25)","(3,20)"}
9 | (16,8292) | 616 | f | f | 2b 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 | f | (0,10) | {"(0,10)","(0,14)"}
10 | (16,8292) | 616 | f | f | 2c 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 | f | (1,3) | {"(1,3)","(3,9)"}
11 | (16,8292) | 616 | f | f | 2d 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 | f | (6,28) | {"(6,28)","(11,1)"}
12 | (16,8292) | 616 | f | f | 2e 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 | f | (0,27) | {"(0,27)","(1,13)"}
13 | (16,8292) | 616 | f | f | 2f 00 00 00
00 00 00 00 | f | (4,17) | {"(4,17)","(4,21)"}
(13 rows)
```

All the other details are the same as explained in the previous item.

## F.25.4. BRIN Functions

`brin_page_type(page bytea)` returns text

`brin_page_type` returns the page type of the given BRIN index page, or throws an error if the page is not a valid BRIN page. For example:

```
test=# SELECT brin_page_type(get_raw_page('brinidx', 0));
 brin_page_type
-----
meta
```

`brin_metapage_info(page bytea)` returns record

`brin_metapage_info` returns assorted information about a BRIN index metapage. For example:

```
test=# SELECT * FROM brin_metapage_info(get_raw_page('brinidx',
0));
 magic | version | pagesperpage | lastrevmappage
```

```
-----+-----+-----+-----
0xA8109CFA | 1 | 4 | 2
```

`brin_revmap_data(page bytea)` returns setof tid

`brin_revmap_data` returns the list of tuple identifiers in a BRIN index range map page. For example:

```
test=# SELECT * FROM brin_revmap_data(get_raw_page('brinidx',
2)) LIMIT 5;
 pages
-----
(6,137)
(6,138)
(6,139)
(6,140)
(6,141)
```

`brin_page_items(page bytea, index oid)` returns setof record

`brin_page_items` returns the data stored in the BRIN data page. For example:

```
test=# SELECT * FROM brin_page_items(get_raw_page('brinidx', 5),
                                     'brinidx')
      ORDER BY blknum, attnum LIMIT 6;
 itemoffset | blknum | attnum | allnulls | hasnulls |
placeholder | empty  | value
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
| f         | 137    | 0      | 1        | t         | f         | f
| f         | 137    | 0      | 2        | f         | f         | f
| f         | {1 .. 88}
| f         | 138    | 4      | 1        | t         | f         | f
| f         | 138    | 4      | 2        | f         | f         | f
| f         | {89 .. 176}
| f         | 139    | 8      | 1        | t         | f         | f
| f         | 139    | 8      | 2        | f         | f         | f
| f         | {177 .. 264}
```

The returned columns correspond to the fields in the `BrinMemTuple` and `BrinValues` structs. See `src/include/access/brin_tuple.h` for details.

## F.25.5. GIN Functions

`gin_metapage_info(page bytea)` returns record

`gin_metapage_info` returns information about a GIN index metapage. For example:

```
test=# SELECT * FROM gin_metapage_info(get_raw_page('gin_index',
0));
-[ RECORD 1 ]-----+-----
pending_head      | 4294967295
pending_tail      | 4294967295
tail_free_size    | 0
```

n_pending_pages		0
n_pending_tuples		0
n_total_pages		7
n_entry_pages		6
n_data_pages		0
n_entries		693
version		2

gin\_page\_opaque\_info(page bytea) returns record

gin\_page\_opaque\_info returns information about a GIN index opaque area, like the page type. For example:

```
test=# SELECT * FROM
      gin_page_opaque_info(get_raw_page('gin_index', 2));
rightlink | maxoff | flags
-----+-----+-----
          5 |        0 | {data,leaf,compressed}
(1 row)
```

gin\_leafpage\_items(page bytea) returns setof record

gin\_leafpage\_items returns information about the data stored in a GIN leaf page. For example:

```
test=# SELECT first_tid, nbytes, tids[0:5] AS some_tids
      FROM gin_leafpage_items(get_raw_page('gin_test_idx',
      2));
first_tid | nbytes | some_tids
-----+-----+-----
(8,41)    |    244 | {"(8,41)","(8,43)","(8,44)","(8,45)","(8,46)"}
(10,45)   |    248 | {"(10,45)","(10,46)","(10,47)","(10,48)","(10,49)"}
(12,52)   |    248 | {"(12,52)","(12,53)","(12,54)","(12,55)","(12,56)"}
(14,59)   |    320 | {"(14,59)","(14,60)","(14,61)","(14,62)","(14,63)"}
(167,16)  |    376 | {"(167,16)","(167,17)","(167,18)","(167,19)","(167,20)"}
(170,30)  |    376 | {"(170,30)","(170,31)","(170,32)","(170,33)","(170,34)"}
(173,44)  |    197 | {"(173,44)","(173,45)","(173,46)","(173,47)","(173,48)"}
(7 rows)
```

## F.25.6. GiST Functions

gist\_page\_opaque\_info(page bytea) returns record

gist\_page\_opaque\_info returns information from a GiST index page's opaque area, such as the NSN, rightlink and page type. For example:

```
test=# SELECT * FROM
      gist_page_opaque_info(get_raw_page('test_gist_idx', 2));
```

lsn	nsn	rightlink	flags
0/1	0/0	1	{leaf}

(1 row)

`gist_page_items(page bytea, index_oid regclass)` returns setof record

`gist_page_items` returns information about the data stored in a page of a GiST index. For example:

```
test=# SELECT * FROM
gist_page_items(get_raw_page('test_gist_idx', 0),
'test_gist_idx');
 itemoffset |   ctid   | itemlen | dead | keys
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----
1 | (1,65535) |    40 | f | (p)=("(185,185),
(1,1)")
2 | (2,65535) |    40 | f | (p)=("(370,370),
(186,186)")
3 | (3,65535) |    40 | f | (p)=("(555,555),
(371,371)")
4 | (4,65535) |    40 | f | (p)=("(740,740),
(556,556)")
5 | (5,65535) |    40 | f | (p)=("(870,870),
(741,741)")
6 | (6,65535) |    40 | f | (p)=("(1000,1000),
(871,871)")
(6 rows)
```

`gist_page_items_bytea(page bytea)` returns setof record

Same as `gist_page_items`, but returns the key data as a raw bytea blob. Since it does not attempt to decode the key, it does not need to know which index is involved. For example:

```
test=# SELECT * FROM
gist_page_items_bytea(get_raw_page('test_gist_idx', 0));
 itemoffset |   ctid   | itemlen | dead | key_data
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----
1 | (1,65535) |    40 | f | \x00000100ffff2800000000000000c0644000000000
00c0644000000000000000f03f000000000000f03f
2 | (2,65535) |    40 | f | \x00000200ffff2800000000000000c0744000000000
00c07440000000000000e064400000000000e06440
3 | (3,65535) |    40 | f | \x00000300ffff2800000000000000207f4000000000
00207f40000000000000d074400000000000d07440
4 | (4,65535) |    40 | f | \x00000400ffff2800000000000000c0844000000000
00c08440000000000000307f400000000000307f40
5 | (5,65535) |    40 | f | \x00000500ffff2800000000000000f0894000000000
00f08940000000000000c884400000000000c88440
```



```

        6 | (6,65535) |      40 | f      |
\000000600ffff280000000000000208f4000000000
00208f4000000000000f889400000000000f88940
        7 | (7,65535) |      40 | f      |
\000000700ffff280000000000000408f4000000000
00408f4000000000000288f400000000000288f40
(7 rows)

```

## F.25.7. Hash Functions

`hash_page_type(page bytea)` returns text

`hash_page_type` returns page type of the given HASH index page. For example:

```

test=# SELECT hash_page_type(get_raw_page('con_hash_index', 0));
 hash_page_type
-----
metapage

```

`hash_page_stats(page bytea)` returns setof record

`hash_page_stats` returns information about a bucket or overflow page of a HASH index. For example:

```

test=# SELECT * FROM
      hash_page_stats(get_raw_page('con_hash_index', 1));
-[ RECORD 1 ]-----
live_items      | 407
dead_items      | 0
page_size       | 8192
free_size       | 8
hasho_prevblkno | 4096
hasho_nextblkno | 8474
hasho_bucket    | 0
hasho_flag      | 66
hasho_page_id   | 65408

```

`hash_page_items(page bytea)` returns setof record

`hash_page_items` returns information about the data stored in a bucket or overflow page of a HASH index. For example:

```

test=# SELECT * FROM
      hash_page_items(get_raw_page('con_hash_index', 1)) LIMIT 5;
 itemoffset | ctid  | data
-----+-----+-----
          1 | (899,77) | 1053474816
          2 | (897,29) | 1053474816
          3 | (894,207) | 1053474816
          4 | (892,159) | 1053474816
          5 | (890,111) | 1053474816

```

`hash_bitmap_info(index oid, blkno bigint)` returns record

`hash_bitmap_info` shows the status of a bit in the bitmap page for a particular overflow page of HASH index. For example:

```
test=# SELECT * FROM hash_bitmap_info('con_hash_index', 2052);
 bitmapblkno | bitmapbit | bitstatus
-----+-----+-----
          65 |          3 | t
```

hash\_metapage\_info(page bytea) returns record

hash\_metapage\_info returns information stored in the meta page of a HASH index. For example:

```
test=# SELECT magic, version, ntuples, ffactor, bsize, bmsize,
 bmshift,
test-#      maxbucket, highmask, lowmask, ovflpoint, firstfree,
 nmaps, procid,
test-#      regexp_replace(spares::text, '(.0)*}', '{}') as
 spares,
test-#      regexp_replace(mapp::text, '(.0)*}', '{}') as mapp
test=# FROM hash_metapage_info(get_raw_page('con_hash_index',
 0));
-[ RECORD 1 ]-----
 magic      | 105121344
 version    | 4
 ntuples    | 500500
 ffactor    | 40
 bsize      | 8152
 bmsize     | 4096
 bmshift    | 15
 maxbucket  | 12512
 highmask   | 16383
 lowmask    | 8191
 ovflpoint  | 28
 firstfree  | 1204
 nmaps      | 1
 procid     | 450
 spares     | {0,0,0,0,0,0,1,1,1,1,1,1,1,1,3,4,4,4,45,55,58,59,
 508,567,628,704,1193,1202,1204}
 mapp       | {65}
```

## F.26. passwordcheck — verify password strength

The `passwordcheck` module checks users' passwords whenever they are set with `CREATE ROLE` or `ALTER ROLE`. If a password is considered too weak, it will be rejected and the command will terminate with an error.

To enable this module, add `'$libdir/passwordcheck'` to `shared_preload_libraries` in `postgresql.conf`, then restart the server.

You can adapt this module to your needs by changing the source code. For example, you can use `CrackLib`<sup>2</sup> to check passwords — this only requires uncommenting two lines in the `Makefile` and rebuilding the module. (We cannot include `CrackLib` by default for license reasons.) Without `CrackLib`, the module enforces a few simple rules for password strength, which you can modify or extend as you see fit.

### Caution

To prevent unencrypted passwords from being sent across the network, written to the server log or otherwise stolen by a database administrator, PostgreSQL allows the user to supply pre-encrypted passwords. Many client programs make use of this functionality and encrypt the password before sending it to the server.

This limits the usefulness of the `passwordcheck` module, because in that case it can only try to guess the password. For this reason, `passwordcheck` is not recommended if your security requirements are high. It is more secure to use an external authentication method such as GSSAPI (see Chapter 21) than to rely on passwords within the database.

Alternatively, you could modify `passwordcheck` to reject pre-encrypted passwords, but forcing users to set their passwords in clear text carries its own security risks.

---

<sup>2</sup> <https://github.com/cracklib/cracklib>

## F.27. `pg_buffercache` — inspect PostgreSQL buffer cache state

The `pg_buffercache` module provides a means for examining what's happening in the shared buffer cache in real time.

This module provides the `pg_buffercache_pages()` function (wrapped in the `pg_buffercache` view), the `pg_buffercache_summary()` function, and the `pg_buffercache_usage_counts()` function.

The `pg_buffercache_pages()` function returns a set of records, each row describing the state of one shared buffer entry. The `pg_buffercache` view wraps the function for convenient use.

The `pg_buffercache_summary()` function returns a single row summarizing the state of the shared buffer cache.

The `pg_buffercache_usage_counts()` function returns a set of records, each row describing the number of buffers with a given usage count.

By default, use is restricted to superusers and roles with privileges of the `pg_monitor` role. Access may be granted to others using `GRANT`.

### F.27.1. The `pg_buffercache` View

The definitions of the columns exposed by the view are shown in Table F.15.

**Table F.15. `pg_buffercache` Columns**

Column	Type	Description
<code>bufferid</code>	<code>integer</code>	ID, in the range 1.. <code>shared_buffers</code>
<code>relfilenode</code>	<code>oid</code> (references <code>pg_class.relfilenode</code> )	Filenode number of the relation
<code>reltablespace</code>	<code>oid</code> (references <code>pg_tablespace.oid</code> )	Tablespace OID of the relation
<code>reldatabase</code>	<code>oid</code> (references <code>pg_database.oid</code> )	Database OID of the relation
<code>relforknumber</code>	<code>smallint</code>	Fork number within the relation; see <code>common/relpath.h</code>
<code>relblocknumber</code>	<code>bigint</code>	Page number within the relation
<code>isdirty</code>	<code>boolean</code>	Is the page dirty?
<code>usagecount</code>	<code>smallint</code>	Clock-sweep access count
<code>pinning_backends</code>	<code>integer</code>	Number of backends pinning this buffer

There is one row for each buffer in the shared cache. Unused buffers are shown with all fields null except `bufferid`. Shared system catalogs are shown as belonging to database zero.

Because the cache is shared by all the databases, there will normally be pages from relations not belonging to the current database. This means that there may not be matching join rows in `pg_class` for some rows, or that there could even be incorrect joins. If you are trying to join against `pg_class`, it's a good idea to restrict the join to rows having `relatabase` equal to the current database's OID or zero.

Since buffer manager locks are not taken to copy the buffer state data that the view will display, accessing `pg_buffercache` view has less impact on normal buffer activity but it doesn't provide a consistent set of results across all buffers. However, we ensure that the information of each buffer is self-consistent.

## F.27.2. The `pg_buffercache_summary()` Function

The definitions of the columns exposed by the function are shown in Table F.16.

**Table F.16. `pg_buffercache_summary()` Output Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>buffers_used</code> int4	Number of used shared buffers
<code>buffers_unused</code> int4	Number of unused shared buffers
<code>buffers_dirty</code> int4	Number of dirty shared buffers
<code>buffers_pinned</code> int4	Number of pinned shared buffers
<code>usagecount_avg</code> float8	Average usage count of used shared buffers

The `pg_buffercache_summary()` function returns a single row summarizing the state of all shared buffers. Similar and more detailed information is provided by the `pg_buffercache` view, but `pg_buffercache_summary()` is significantly cheaper.

Like the `pg_buffercache` view, `pg_buffercache_summary()` does not acquire buffer manager locks. Therefore concurrent activity can lead to minor inaccuracies in the result.

## F.27.3. The `pg_buffercache_usage_counts()` Function

The definitions of the columns exposed by the function are shown in Table F.17.

**Table F.17. `pg_buffercache_usage_counts()` Output Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>usage_count</code> int4	A possible buffer usage count
<code>buffers</code> int4	Number of buffers with the usage count
<code>dirty</code> int4	Number of dirty buffers with the usage count
<code>pinned</code> int4	

Column Type
Description
Number of pinned buffers with the usage count

The `pg_buffercache_usage_counts()` function returns a set of rows summarizing the states of all shared buffers, aggregated over the possible usage count values. Similar and more detailed information is provided by the `pg_buffercache` view, but `pg_buffercache_usage_counts()` is significantly cheaper.

Like the `pg_buffercache` view, `pg_buffercache_usage_counts()` does not acquire buffer manager locks. Therefore concurrent activity can lead to minor inaccuracies in the result.

## F.27.4. Sample Output

```
regression=# SELECT n.nspname, c.relname, count(*) AS buffers
              FROM pg_buffercache b JOIN pg_class c
              ON b.relfilenode = pg_relation_filenode(c.oid) AND
                 b.reldatabase IN (0, (SELECT oid FROM pg_database
                                       WHERE datname =
current_database()))
              JOIN pg_namespace n ON n.oid = c.relnamespace
              GROUP BY n.nspname, c.relname
              ORDER BY 3 DESC
              LIMIT 10;
```

nspname	relname	buffers
public	delete_test_table	593
public	delete_test_table_pkey	494
pg_catalog	pg_attribute	472
public	quad_poly_tbl	353
public	tenk2	349
public	tenk1	349
public	gin_test_idx	306
pg_catalog	pg_largeobject	206
public	gin_test_tbl	188
public	spgist_text_tbl	182

(10 rows)

```
regression=# SELECT * FROM pg_buffercache_summary();
 buffers_used | buffers_unused | buffers_dirty | buffers_pinned |
 usagecount_avg
```

248	2096904	39	0	
3.141129				

(1 row)

```
regression=# SELECT * FROM pg_buffercache_usage_counts();
 usage_count | buffers | dirty | pinned
```

usage_count	buffers	dirty	pinned
0	14650	0	0
1	1436	671	0
2	102	88	0
3	23	21	0

4		9		7		0
5		164		106		0

(6 rows)

## F.27.5. Authors

Mark Kirkwood <markir@paradise.net.nz>

Design suggestions: Neil Conway <neilc@samurai.com>

Debugging advice: Tom Lane <tgl@sss.pgh.pa.us>

## F.28. pgcrypto — cryptographic functions

The `pgcrypto` module provides cryptographic functions for PostgreSQL.

This module is considered “trusted”, that is, it can be installed by non-superusers who have `CREATE` privilege on the current database.

`pgcrypto` requires OpenSSL and won't be installed if OpenSSL support was not selected when PostgreSQL was built.

### F.28.1. General Hashing Functions

#### F.28.1.1. `digest()`

`digest(data text, type text)` returns `bytea`  
`digest(data bytea, type text)` returns `bytea`

Computes a binary hash of the given *data*. *type* is the algorithm to use. Standard algorithms are `md5`, `sha1`, `sha224`, `sha256`, `sha384` and `sha512`. Moreover, any digest algorithm OpenSSL supports is automatically picked up.

If you want the digest as a hexadecimal string, use `encode()` on the result. For example:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION sha1(bytea) returns text AS $$  
    SELECT encode(digest($1, 'sha1'), 'hex')  
$$ LANGUAGE SQL STRICT IMMUTABLE;
```

#### F.28.1.2. `hmac()`

`hmac(data text, key text, type text)` returns `bytea`  
`hmac(data bytea, key bytea, type text)` returns `bytea`

Calculates hashed MAC for *data* with key *key*. *type* is the same as in `digest()`.

This is similar to `digest()` but the hash can only be recalculated knowing the key. This prevents the scenario of someone altering data and also changing the hash to match.

If the key is larger than the hash block size it will first be hashed and the result will be used as key.

### F.28.2. Password Hashing Functions

The functions `crypt()` and `gen_salt()` are specifically designed for hashing passwords. `crypt()` does the hashing and `gen_salt()` prepares algorithm parameters for it.

The algorithms in `crypt()` differ from the usual MD5 or SHA1 hashing algorithms in the following respects:

1. They are slow. As the amount of data is so small, this is the only way to make brute-forcing passwords hard.
2. They use a random value, called the *salt*, so that users having the same password will have different encrypted passwords. This is also an additional defense against reversing the algorithm.
3. They include the algorithm type in the result, so passwords hashed with different algorithms can co-exist.
4. Some of them are adaptive — that means when computers get faster, you can tune the algorithm to be slower, without introducing incompatibility with existing passwords.



Table F.18 lists the algorithms supported by the `crypt ( )` function.

**Table F.18. Supported Algorithms for `crypt ( )`**

Algorithm	Max Password Length	Adaptive?	Salt Bits	Output Length	Description
bf	72	yes	128	60	Blow-fish-based, variant 2a
md5	unlimited	no	48	34	MD5-based crypt
xdes	8	yes	24	20	Extended DES
des	8	no	12	13	Original UNIX crypt

### F.28.2.1. `crypt ( )`

`crypt(password text, salt text)` returns `text`

Calculates a `crypt(3)`-style hash of *password*. When storing a new password, you need to use `gen_salt ( )` to generate a new *salt* value. To check a password, pass the stored hash value as *salt*, and test whether the result matches the stored value.

Example of setting a new password:

```
UPDATE ... SET pswhash = crypt('new password', gen_salt('md5'));
```

Example of authentication:

```
SELECT (pswhash = crypt('entered password', pswhash)) AS pswmatch
FROM ... ;
```

This returns true if the entered password is correct.

### F.28.2.2. `gen_salt ( )`

`gen_salt(type text [, iter_count integer ])` returns `text`

Generates a new random salt string for use in `crypt ( )`. The salt string also tells `crypt ( )` which algorithm to use.

The *type* parameter specifies the hashing algorithm. The accepted types are: `des`, `xdes`, `md5` and `bf`.

The *iter\_count* parameter lets the user specify the iteration count, for algorithms that have one. The higher the count, the more time it takes to hash the password and therefore the more time to break it. Although with too high a count the time to calculate a hash may be several years — which is somewhat impractical. If the *iter\_count* parameter is omitted, the default iteration count is used. Allowed values for *iter\_count* depend on the algorithm and are shown in Table F.19.

**Table F.19. Iteration Counts for `crypt ( )`**

Algorithm	Default	Min	Max
xdes	725	1	16777215

Algorithm	Default	Min	Max
bf	6	4	31

For `xdes` there is an additional limitation that the iteration count must be an odd number.

To pick an appropriate iteration count, consider that the original DES crypt was designed to have the speed of 4 hashes per second on the hardware of that time. Slower than 4 hashes per second would probably dampen usability. Faster than 100 hashes per second is probably too fast.

Table F.20 gives an overview of the relative slowness of different hashing algorithms. The table shows how much time it would take to try all combinations of characters in an 8-character password, assuming that the password contains either only lower case letters, or upper- and lower-case letters and numbers. In the `crypt-bf` entries, the number after a slash is the `iter_count` parameter of `gen_salt`.

**Table F.20. Hash Algorithm Speeds**

Algorithm	Hashes/sec	For [a-z]	For [A-Za-z0-9]	Duration relative to md5 hash
<code>crypt-bf/8</code>	1792	4 years	3927 years	100k
<code>crypt-bf/7</code>	3648	2 years	1929 years	50k
<code>crypt-bf/6</code>	7168	1 year	982 years	25k
<code>crypt-bf/5</code>	13504	188 days	521 years	12.5k
<code>crypt-md5</code>	171584	15 days	41 years	1k
<code>crypt-des</code>	23221568	157.5 minutes	108 days	7
<code>sha1</code>	37774272	90 minutes	68 days	4
<code>md5 (hash)</code>	150085504	22.5 minutes	17 days	1

Notes:

- The machine used is an Intel Mobile Core i3.
- `crypt-des` and `crypt-md5` algorithm numbers are taken from John the Ripper v1.6.38 `-test` output.
- `md5 hash` numbers are from `mdcrack 1.2`.
- `sha1` numbers are from `lcrack-20031130-beta`.
- `crypt-bf` numbers are taken using a simple program that loops over 1000 8-character passwords. That way the speed with different numbers of iterations can be shown. For reference: `john -test` shows 13506 loops/sec for `crypt-bf/5`. (The very small difference in results is in accordance with the fact that the `crypt-bf` implementation in `pgcrypto` is the same one used in John the Ripper.)

Note that “try all combinations” is not a realistic exercise. Usually password cracking is done with the help of dictionaries, which contain both regular words and various mutations of them. So, even somewhat word-like passwords could be cracked much faster than the above numbers suggest, while a 6-character non-word-like password may escape cracking. Or not.

## F.28.3. PGP Encryption Functions

The functions here implement the encryption part of the OpenPGP (RFC 4880<sup>3</sup>) standard. Supported are both symmetric-key and public-key encryption.

An encrypted PGP message consists of 2 parts, or *packets*:

<sup>3</sup> <https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc4880>

- Packet containing a session key — either symmetric-key or public-key encrypted.
- Packet containing data encrypted with the session key.

When encrypting with a symmetric key (i.e., a password):

1. The given password is hashed using a String2Key (S2K) algorithm. This is rather similar to `crypt ( )` algorithms — purposefully slow and with random salt — but it produces a full-length binary key.
2. If a separate session key is requested, a new random key will be generated. Otherwise the S2K key will be used directly as the session key.
3. If the S2K key is to be used directly, then only S2K settings will be put into the session key packet. Otherwise the session key will be encrypted with the S2K key and put into the session key packet.

When encrypting with a public key:

1. A new random session key is generated.
2. It is encrypted using the public key and put into the session key packet.

In either case the data to be encrypted is processed as follows:

1. Optional data-manipulation: compression, conversion to UTF-8, and/or conversion of line-endings.
2. The data is prefixed with a block of random bytes. This is equivalent to using a random IV.
3. A SHA1 hash of the random prefix and data is appended.
4. All this is encrypted with the session key and placed in the data packet.

### F.28.3.1. `pgp_sym_encrypt ( )`

```
pgp_sym_encrypt(data text, psw text [, options text ]) returns  
bytea  
pgp_sym_encrypt_bytea(data bytea, psw text [, options text ])  
returns bytea
```

Encrypt *data* with a symmetric PGP key *psw*. The *options* parameter can contain option settings, as described below.

### F.28.3.2. `pgp_sym_decrypt ( )`

```
pgp_sym_decrypt(msg bytea, psw text [, options text ]) returns text  
pgp_sym_decrypt_bytea(msg bytea, psw text [, options text ])  
returns bytea
```

Decrypt a symmetric-key-encrypted PGP message.

Decrypting *bytea* data with `pgp_sym_decrypt` is disallowed. This is to avoid outputting invalid character data. Decrypting originally textual data with `pgp_sym_decrypt_bytea` is fine.

The *options* parameter can contain option settings, as described below.

### F.28.3.3. `pgp_pub_encrypt ( )`

```
pgp_pub_encrypt(data text, key bytea [, options text ]) returns  
bytea  
pgp_pub_encrypt_bytea(data bytea, key bytea [, options text ])  
returns bytea
```

Encrypt *data* with a public PGP key *key*. Giving this function a secret key will produce an error.

The *options* parameter can contain option settings, as described below.

### F.28.3.4. `pgp_pub_decrypt()`

```
pgp_pub_decrypt(msg bytea, key bytea [, psw text [, options  
text ]]) returns text  
pgp_pub_decrypt_bytea(msg bytea, key bytea [, psw text [, options  
text ]]) returns bytea
```

Decrypt a public-key-encrypted message. *key* must be the secret key corresponding to the public key that was used to encrypt. If the secret key is password-protected, you must give the password in *psw*. If there is no password, but you want to specify options, you need to give an empty password.

Decrypting *bytea* data with `pgp_pub_decrypt` is disallowed. This is to avoid outputting invalid character data. Decrypting originally textual data with `pgp_pub_decrypt_bytea` is fine.

The *options* parameter can contain option settings, as described below.

### F.28.3.5. `pgp_key_id()`

```
pgp_key_id(bytea) returns text
```

`pgp_key_id` extracts the key ID of a PGP public or secret key. Or it gives the key ID that was used for encrypting the data, if given an encrypted message.

It can return 2 special key IDs:

- SYMKEY

The message is encrypted with a symmetric key.

- ANYKEY

The message is public-key encrypted, but the key ID has been removed. That means you will need to try all your secret keys on it to see which one decrypts it. `pgcrypto` itself does not produce such messages.

Note that different keys may have the same ID. This is rare but a normal event. The client application should then try to decrypt with each one, to see which fits — like handling ANYKEY.

### F.28.3.6. `armor()`, `dearmor()`

```
armor(data bytea [, keys text[], values text[] ]) returns text  
dearmor(data text) returns bytea
```

These functions wrap/unwrap binary data into PGP ASCII-armor format, which is basically Base64 with CRC and additional formatting.

If the *keys* and *values* arrays are specified, an *armor header* is added to the armored format for each key/value pair. Both arrays must be single-dimensional, and they must be of the same length. The *keys* and *values* cannot contain any non-ASCII characters.

### F.28.3.7. `pgp_armor_headers`

`pgp_armor_headers(data text, key out text, value out text)` returns  
setof record

`pgp_armor_headers()` extracts the armor headers from *data*. The return value is a set of rows with two columns, key and value. If the keys or values contain any non-ASCII characters, they are treated as UTF-8.

### F.28.3.8. Options for PGP Functions

Options are named to be similar to GnuPG. An option's value should be given after an equal sign; separate options from each other with commas. For example:

```
pgp_sym_encrypt(data, psw, 'compress-algo=1, cipher-algo=aes256')
```

All of the options except `convert-crlf` apply only to encrypt functions. Decrypt functions get the parameters from the PGP data.

The most interesting options are probably `compress-algo` and `unicode-mode`. The rest should have reasonable defaults.

#### F.28.3.8.1. `cipher-algo`

Which cipher algorithm to use.

Values: bf, aes128, aes192, aes256, 3des, cast5

Default: aes128

Applies to: `pgp_sym_encrypt`, `pgp_pub_encrypt`

#### F.28.3.8.2. `compress-algo`

Which compression algorithm to use. Only available if PostgreSQL was built with zlib.

Values:

0 - no compression

1 - ZIP compression

2 - ZLIB compression (= ZIP plus meta-data and block CRCs)

Default: 0

Applies to: `pgp_sym_encrypt`, `pgp_pub_encrypt`

#### F.28.3.8.3. `compress-level`

How much to compress. Higher levels compress smaller but are slower. 0 disables compression.

Values: 0, 1-9

Default: 6

Applies to: `pgp_sym_encrypt`, `pgp_pub_encrypt`

#### F.28.3.8.4. `convert-crlf`

Whether to convert `\n` into `\r\n` when encrypting and `\r\n` to `\n` when decrypting. RFC 4880 specifies that text data should be stored using `\r\n` line-feeds. Use this to get fully RFC-compliant behavior.

Values: 0, 1

Default: 0

Applies to: pgp\_sym\_encrypt, pgp\_pub\_encrypt, pgp\_sym\_decrypt, pgp\_pub\_decrypt

#### **F.28.3.8.5. disable-mdc**

Do not protect data with SHA-1. The only good reason to use this option is to achieve compatibility with ancient PGP products, predating the addition of SHA-1 protected packets to RFC 4880. Recent gnupg.org and pgp.com software supports it fine.

Values: 0, 1

Default: 0

Applies to: pgp\_sym\_encrypt, pgp\_pub\_encrypt

#### **F.28.3.8.6. sess-key**

Use separate session key. Public-key encryption always uses a separate session key; this option is for symmetric-key encryption, which by default uses the S2K key directly.

Values: 0, 1

Default: 0

Applies to: pgp\_sym\_encrypt

#### **F.28.3.8.7. s2k-mode**

Which S2K algorithm to use.

Values:

0 - Without salt. Dangerous!

1 - With salt but with fixed iteration count.

3 - Variable iteration count.

Default: 3

Applies to: pgp\_sym\_encrypt

#### **F.28.3.8.8. s2k-count**

The number of iterations of the S2K algorithm to use. It must be a value between 1024 and 65011712, inclusive.

Default: A random value between 65536 and 253952

Applies to: pgp\_sym\_encrypt, only with s2k-mode=3

#### **F.28.3.8.9. s2k-digest-algo**

Which digest algorithm to use in S2K calculation.

Values: md5, sha1

Default: sha1

Applies to: pgp\_sym\_encrypt

#### **F.28.3.8.10. s2k-cipher-algo**

Which cipher to use for encrypting separate session key.

Values: bf, aes, aes128, aes192, aes256  
Default: use cipher-algo  
Applies to: pgp\_sym\_encrypt

#### F.28.3.8.11. unicode-mode

Whether to convert textual data from database internal encoding to UTF-8 and back. If your database already is UTF-8, no conversion will be done, but the message will be tagged as UTF-8. Without this option it will not be.

Values: 0, 1  
Default: 0  
Applies to: pgp\_sym\_encrypt, pgp\_pub\_encrypt

### F.28.3.9. Generating PGP Keys with GnuPG

To generate a new key:

```
gpg --gen-key
```

The preferred key type is “DSA and Elgamal”.

For RSA encryption you must create either DSA or RSA sign-only key as master and then add an RSA encryption subkey with `gpg --edit-key`.

To list keys:

```
gpg --list-secret-keys
```

To export a public key in ASCII-armor format:

```
gpg -a --export KEYID > public.key
```

To export a secret key in ASCII-armor format:

```
gpg -a --export-secret-keys KEYID > secret.key
```

You need to use `dearmor()` on these keys before giving them to the PGP functions. Or if you can handle binary data, you can drop `-a` from the command.

For more details see `man gpg`, The GNU Privacy Handbook<sup>4</sup> and other documentation on <https://www.gnupg.org/>.

### F.28.3.10. Limitations of PGP Code

- No support for signing. That also means that it is not checked whether the encryption subkey belongs to the master key.
- No support for encryption key as master key. As such practice is generally discouraged, this should not be a problem.
- No support for several subkeys. This may seem like a problem, as this is common practice. On the other hand, you should not use your regular GPG/PGP keys with `pgcrypto`, but create new ones, as the usage scenario is rather different.

---

<sup>4</sup> <https://www.gnupg.org/gph/en/manual.html>

## F.28.4. Raw Encryption Functions

These functions only run a cipher over data; they don't have any advanced features of PGP encryption. Therefore they have some major problems:

1. They use user key directly as cipher key.
2. They don't provide any integrity checking, to see if the encrypted data was modified.
3. They expect that users manage all encryption parameters themselves, even IV.
4. They don't handle text.

So, with the introduction of PGP encryption, usage of raw encryption functions is discouraged.

```
encrypt(data bytea, key bytea, type text) returns bytea  
decrypt(data bytea, key bytea, type text) returns bytea
```

```
encrypt_iv(data bytea, key bytea, iv bytea, type text) returns  
bytea  
decrypt_iv(data bytea, key bytea, iv bytea, type text) returns  
bytea
```

Encrypt/decrypt data using the cipher method specified by *type*. The syntax of the *type* string is:

```
algorithm [ - mode ] [ /pad: padding ]
```

where *algorithm* is one of:

- bf — Blowfish
- aes — AES (Rijndael-128, -192 or -256)

and *mode* is one of:

- cbc — next block depends on previous (default)
- ecb — each block is encrypted separately (for testing only)

and *padding* is one of:

- pkcs — data may be any length (default)
- none — data must be multiple of cipher block size

So, for example, these are equivalent:

```
encrypt(data, 'fooz', 'bf')  
encrypt(data, 'fooz', 'bf-cbc/pad:pkcs')
```

In `encrypt_iv` and `decrypt_iv`, the *iv* parameter is the initial value for the CBC mode; it is ignored for ECB. It is clipped or padded with zeroes if not exactly block size. It defaults to all zeroes in the functions without this parameter.

## F.28.5. Random-Data Functions



`gen_random_bytes(count integer)` returns `bytea`

Returns *count* cryptographically strong random bytes. At most 1024 bytes can be extracted at a time. This is to avoid draining the randomness generator pool.

`gen_random_uuid()` returns `uuid`

Returns a version 4 (random) UUID. (Obsolete, this function internally calls the core function of the same name.)

## F.28.6. Notes

### F.28.6.1. Configuration

`pgcrypto` configures itself according to the findings of the main PostgreSQL `configure` script. The options that affect it are `--with-zlib` and `--with-ssl=openssl`.

When compiled with `zlib`, PGP encryption functions are able to compress data before encrypting.

`pgcrypto` requires `OpenSSL`. Otherwise, it will not be built or installed.

When compiled against `OpenSSL 3.0.0` and later versions, the legacy provider must be activated in the `openssl.cnf` configuration file in order to use older ciphers like `DES` or `Blowfish`.

### F.28.6.2. NULL Handling

As is standard in SQL, all functions return `NULL`, if any of the arguments are `NULL`. This may create security risks on careless usage.

### F.28.6.3. Security Limitations

All `pgcrypto` functions run inside the database server. That means that all the data and passwords move between `pgcrypto` and client applications in clear text. Thus you must:

1. Connect locally or use SSL connections.
2. Trust both system and database administrator.

If you cannot, then better do crypto inside client application.

The implementation does not resist side-channel attacks<sup>5</sup>. For example, the time required for a `pgcrypto` decryption function to complete varies among ciphertexts of a given size.

### F.28.6.4. Useful Reading

- <https://www.gnupg.org/gph/en/manual.html>

The GNU Privacy Handbook.

- <https://www.openwall.com/crypt/>

Describes the crypt-blowfish algorithm.

- <https://www.iusmentis.com/security/passphrasefaq/>

How to choose a good password.

---

<sup>5</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Side-channel\\_attack](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Side-channel_attack)

- <http://world.std.com/~reinhold/diceware.html>  
Interesting idea for picking passwords.
- <http://www.interhack.net/people/cmcurtin/snake-oil-faq.html>  
Describes good and bad cryptography.

### F.28.6.5. Technical References

- <https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc4880>  
OpenPGP message format.
- <https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc1321>  
The MD5 Message-Digest Algorithm.
- <https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc2104>  
HMAC: Keyed-Hashing for Message Authentication.
- <https://www.usenix.org/legacy/events/usenix99/provos.html>  
Comparison of crypt-des, crypt-md5 and bcrypt algorithms.
- [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Fortuna\\_\(PRNG\)](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Fortuna_(PRNG))  
Description of Fortuna CSPRNG.
- <https://jlcooke.ca/random/>  
Jean-Luc Cooke Fortuna-based `/dev/random` driver for Linux.

### F.28.7. Author

Marko Kreen <markokr@gmail.com>

pgcrypto uses code from the following sources:

Algorithm	Author	Source origin
DES crypt	David Burren and others	FreeBSD libcrypt
MD5 crypt	Poul-Henning Kamp	FreeBSD libcrypt
Blowfish crypt	Solar Designer	www.openwall.com

## F.29. pg\_freespacemap — examine the free space map

The `pg_freespacemap` module provides a means for examining the free space map (FSM). It provides a function called `pg_freespace`, or two overloaded functions, to be precise. The functions show the value recorded in the free space map for a given page, or for all pages in the relation.

By default use is restricted to superusers and roles with privileges of the `pg_stat_scan_tables` role. Access may be granted to others using `GRANT`.

### F.29.1. Functions

`pg_freespace(rel regclass IN, blkno bigint IN) returns int2`

Returns the amount of free space on the page of the relation, specified by `blkno`, according to the FSM.

`pg_freespace(rel regclass IN, blkno OUT bigint, avail OUT int2)`

Displays the amount of free space on each page of the relation, according to the FSM. A set of (`blkno bigint`, `avail int2`) tuples is returned, one tuple for each page in the relation.

The values stored in the free space map are not exact. They're rounded to precision of 1/256th of `BLCKSZ` (32 bytes with default `BLCKSZ`), and they're not kept fully up-to-date as tuples are inserted and updated.

For indexes, what is tracked is entirely-unused pages, rather than free space within pages. Therefore, the values are not meaningful, just whether a page is full or empty.

### F.29.2. Sample Output

```
postgres=# SELECT * FROM pg_freespace('foo');
 blkno | avail
-----+-----
      0 |      0
      1 |      0
      2 |      0
      3 |     32
      4 |    704
      5 |    704
      6 |    704
      7 |   1216
      8 |    704
      9 |    704
     10 |    704
     11 |    704
     12 |    704
     13 |    704
     14 |    704
     15 |    704
     16 |    704
     17 |    704
     18 |    704
     19 |   3648
(20 rows)
```

```
postgres=# SELECT * FROM pg_freespace('foo', 7);
pg_freespace
-----
          1216
(1 row)
```

### F.29.3. Author

Original version by Mark Kirkwood <markir@paradise.net.nz>. Rewritten in version 8.4 to suit new FSM implementation by Heikki Linnakangas <heikki@enterprisedb.com>

## F.30. pg\_prewarm — preload relation data into buffer caches

The `pg_prewarm` module provides a convenient way to load relation data into either the operating system buffer cache or the PostgreSQL buffer cache. Prewarming can be performed manually using the `pg_prewarm` function, or can be performed automatically by including `pg_prewarm` in `shared_preload_libraries`. In the latter case, the system will run a background worker which periodically records the contents of shared buffers in a file called `autoprewarm.blocks` and will, using 2 background workers, reload those same blocks after a restart.

### F.30.1. Functions

```
pg_prewarm(regclass, mode text default 'buffer', fork text default
'main',
          first_block int8 default null,
          last_block int8 default null) RETURNS int8
```

The first argument is the relation to be prewarmed. The second argument is the prewarming method to be used, as further discussed below; the third is the relation fork to be prewarmed, usually `main`. The fourth argument is the first block number to prewarm (NULL is accepted as a synonym for zero). The fifth argument is the last block number to prewarm (NULL means prewarm through the last block in the relation). The return value is the number of blocks prewarmed.

There are three available prewarming methods. `prefetch` issues asynchronous prefetch requests to the operating system, if this is supported, or throws an error otherwise. `read` reads the requested range of blocks; unlike `prefetch`, this is synchronous and supported on all platforms and builds, but may be slower. `buffer` reads the requested range of blocks into the database buffer cache.

Note that with any of these methods, attempting to prewarm more blocks than can be cached — by the OS when using `prefetch` or `read`, or by PostgreSQL when using `buffer` — will likely result in lower-numbered blocks being evicted as higher numbered blocks are read in. Prewarmed data also enjoys no special protection from cache evictions, so it is possible that other system activity may evict the newly prewarmed blocks shortly after they are read; conversely, prewarming may also evict other data from cache. For these reasons, prewarming is typically most useful at startup, when caches are largely empty.

```
autoprewarm_start_worker() RETURNS void
```

Launch the main autoprewarm worker. This will normally happen automatically, but is useful if automatic prewarm was not configured at server startup time and you wish to start up the worker at a later time.

```
autoprewarm_dump_now() RETURNS int8
```

Update `autoprewarm.blocks` immediately. This may be useful if the autoprewarm worker is not running but you anticipate running it after the next restart. The return value is the number of records written to `autoprewarm.blocks`.

### F.30.2. Configuration Parameters

```
pg_prewarm.autoprewarm (boolean)
```

Controls whether the server should run the autoprewarm worker. This is on by default. This parameter can only be set at server start.

`pg_prewarm.autoprewarm_interval (integer)`

This is the interval between updates to `autoprewarm.blocks`. The default is 300 seconds. If set to 0, the file will not be dumped at regular intervals, but only when the server is shut down.

These parameters must be set in `postgresql.conf`. Typical usage might be:

```
# postgresql.conf
shared_preload_libraries = 'pg_prewarm'

pg_prewarm.autoprewarm = true
pg_prewarm.autoprewarm_interval = 300s
```

## F.30.3. Author

Robert Haas <[rhaas@postgresql.org](mailto:rhaas@postgresql.org)>

## F.31. pgrowlocks — show a table's row locking information

The `pgrowlocks` module provides a function to show row locking information for a specified table.

By default use is restricted to superusers, roles with privileges of the `pg_stat_scan_tables` role, and users with `SELECT` permissions on the table.

### F.31.1. Overview

`pgrowlocks(text)` returns `setof record`

The parameter is the name of a table. The result is a set of records, with one row for each locked row within the table. The output columns are shown in Table F.21.

**Table F.21. `pgrowlocks` Output Columns**

Name	Type	Description
<code>locked_row</code>	<code>tid</code>	Tuple ID (TID) of locked row
<code>locker</code>	<code>xid</code>	Transaction ID of locker, or multixact ID if multitransaction; see Section 74.1
<code>multi</code>	<code>boolean</code>	True if locker is a multitransaction
<code>xids</code>	<code>xid[]</code>	Transaction IDs of lockers (more than one if multitransaction)
<code>modes</code>	<code>text[]</code>	Lock mode of lockers (more than one if multitransaction), an array of Key Share, Share, For No Key Update, No Key Update, For Update, Update.
<code>pids</code>	<code>integer[]</code>	Process IDs of locking backends (more than one if multitransaction)

`pgrowlocks` takes `AccessShareLock` for the target table and reads each row one by one to collect the row locking information. This is not very speedy for a large table. Note that:

1. If an `ACCESS EXCLUSIVE` lock is taken on the table, `pgrowlocks` will be blocked.
2. `pgrowlocks` is not guaranteed to produce a self-consistent snapshot. It is possible that a new row lock is taken, or an old lock is freed, during its execution.

`pgrowlocks` does not show the contents of locked rows. If you want to take a look at the row contents at the same time, you could do something like this:

```
SELECT * FROM accounts AS a, pgrowlocks('accounts') AS p
WHERE p.locked_row = a.ctid;
```

Be aware however that such a query will be very inefficient.

## F.31.2. Sample Output

```
=# SELECT * FROM pgrowlocks('t1');
locked_row | locker | multi | xids | modes | pids
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----
(0,1)      |      609 | f      | {609} | {"For Share"} | {3161}
(0,2)      |      609 | f      | {609} | {"For Share"} | {3161}
(0,3)      |      607 | f      | {607} | {"For Update"} | {3107}
(0,4)      |      607 | f      | {607} | {"For Update"} | {3107}
(4 rows)
```

## F.31.3. Author

Tatsuo Ishii



## F.32. pg\_stat\_statements — track statistics of SQL planning and execution

The `pg_stat_statements` module provides a means for tracking planning and execution statistics of all SQL statements executed by a server.

The module must be loaded by adding `pg_stat_statements` to `shared_preload_libraries` in `postgresql.conf`, because it requires additional shared memory. This means that a server restart is needed to add or remove the module. In addition, query identifier calculation must be enabled in order for the module to be active, which is done automatically if `compute_query_id` is set to `auto` or `on`, or any third-party module that calculates query identifiers is loaded.

When `pg_stat_statements` is active, it tracks statistics across all databases of the server. To access and manipulate these statistics, the module provides views `pg_stat_statements` and `pg_stat_statements_info`, and the utility functions `pg_stat_statements_reset` and `pg_stat_statements`. These are not available globally but can be enabled for a specific database with `CREATE EXTENSION pg_stat_statements`.

### F.32.1. The pg\_stat\_statements View

The statistics gathered by the module are made available via a view named `pg_stat_statements`. This view contains one row for each distinct combination of database ID, user ID, query ID and whether it's a top-level statement or not (up to the maximum number of distinct statements that the module can track). The columns of the view are shown in Table F.22.

**Table F.22. pg\_stat\_statements Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>userid oid</code> (references <code>pg_authid.oid</code> )	OID of user who executed the statement
<code>dbid oid</code> (references <code>pg_database.oid</code> )	OID of database in which the statement was executed
<code>toplevel bool</code>	True if the query was executed as a top-level statement (always true if <code>pg_stat_statements.track</code> is set to <code>top</code> )
<code>queryid bigint</code>	Hash code to identify identical normalized queries.
<code>query text</code>	Text of a representative statement
<code>plans bigint</code>	Number of times the statement was planned (if <code>pg_stat_statements.track_planning</code> is enabled, otherwise zero)
<code>total_plan_time double precision</code>	Total time spent planning the statement, in milliseconds (if <code>pg_stat_statements.track_planning</code> is enabled, otherwise zero)
<code>min_plan_time double precision</code>	Minimum time spent planning the statement, in milliseconds (if <code>pg_stat_statements.track_planning</code> is enabled, otherwise zero)
<code>max_plan_time double precision</code>	Maximum time spent planning the statement, in milliseconds (if <code>pg_stat_statements.track_planning</code> is enabled, otherwise zero)
<code>mean_plan_time double precision</code>	

Column Type	Description
	Mean time spent planning the statement, in milliseconds (if <code>pg_stat_statements.track_planning</code> is enabled, otherwise zero)
<code>stddev_plan_time</code> double precision	Population standard deviation of time spent planning the statement, in milliseconds (if <code>pg_stat_statements.track_planning</code> is enabled, otherwise zero)
<code>calls</code> bigint	Number of times the statement was executed
<code>total_exec_time</code> double precision	Total time spent executing the statement, in milliseconds
<code>min_exec_time</code> double precision	Minimum time spent executing the statement, in milliseconds
<code>max_exec_time</code> double precision	Maximum time spent executing the statement, in milliseconds
<code>mean_exec_time</code> double precision	Mean time spent executing the statement, in milliseconds
<code>stddev_exec_time</code> double precision	Population standard deviation of time spent executing the statement, in milliseconds
<code>rows</code> bigint	Total number of rows retrieved or affected by the statement
<code>shared_blks_hit</code> bigint	Total number of shared block cache hits by the statement
<code>shared_blks_read</code> bigint	Total number of shared blocks read by the statement
<code>shared_blks_dirtied</code> bigint	Total number of shared blocks dirtied by the statement
<code>shared_blks_written</code> bigint	Total number of shared blocks written by the statement
<code>local_blks_hit</code> bigint	Total number of local block cache hits by the statement
<code>local_blks_read</code> bigint	Total number of local blocks read by the statement
<code>local_blks_dirtied</code> bigint	Total number of local blocks dirtied by the statement
<code>local_blks_written</code> bigint	Total number of local blocks written by the statement
<code>temp_blks_read</code> bigint	Total number of temp blocks read by the statement
<code>temp_blks_written</code> bigint	Total number of temp blocks written by the statement
<code>blk_read_time</code> double precision	Total time the statement spent reading data file blocks, in milliseconds (if <code>track_io_timing</code> is enabled, otherwise zero)
<code>blk_write_time</code> double precision	Total time the statement spent writing data file blocks, in milliseconds (if <code>track_io_timing</code> is enabled, otherwise zero)
<code>temp_blk_read_time</code> double precision	

Column Type	Description
	Total time the statement spent reading temporary file blocks, in milliseconds (if <code>track_io_timing</code> is enabled, otherwise zero)
<code>temp_blk_write_time</code> double precision	Total time the statement spent writing temporary file blocks, in milliseconds (if <code>track_io_timing</code> is enabled, otherwise zero)
<code>wal_records</code> bigint	Total number of WAL records generated by the statement
<code>wal_fpi</code> bigint	Total number of WAL full page images generated by the statement
<code>wal_bytes</code> numeric	Total amount of WAL generated by the statement in bytes
<code>jit_functions</code> bigint	Total number of functions JIT-compiled by the statement
<code>jit_generation_time</code> double precision	Total time spent by the statement on generating JIT code, in milliseconds
<code>jit_inlining_count</code> bigint	Number of times functions have been inlined
<code>jit_inlining_time</code> double precision	Total time spent by the statement on inlining functions, in milliseconds
<code>jit_optimization_count</code> bigint	Number of times the statement has been optimized
<code>jit_optimization_time</code> double precision	Total time spent by the statement on optimizing, in milliseconds
<code>jit_emission_count</code> bigint	Number of times code has been emitted
<code>jit_emission_time</code> double precision	Total time spent by the statement on emitting code, in milliseconds

For security reasons, only superusers and roles with privileges of the `pg_read_all_stats` role are allowed to see the SQL text and `queryid` of queries executed by other users. Other users can see the statistics, however, if the view has been installed in their database.

Plannable queries (that is, `SELECT`, `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, and `MERGE`) and utility commands are combined into a single `pg_stat_statements` entry whenever they have identical query structures according to an internal hash calculation. Typically, two queries will be considered the same for this purpose if they are semantically equivalent except for the values of literal constants appearing in the query.

### Note

The following details about constant replacement and `queryid` only apply when `compute_query_id` is enabled. If you use an external module instead to compute `queryid`, you should refer to its documentation for details.

When a constant's value has been ignored for purposes of matching the query to other queries, the constant is replaced by a parameter symbol, such as `$1`, in the `pg_stat_statements` display. The rest of the query text is that of the first query that had the particular `queryid` hash value associated with the `pg_stat_statements` entry.

Queries on which normalization can be applied may be observed with constant values in `pg_stat_statements`, especially when there is a high rate of entry deallocations. To reduce the likelihood of this happening, consider increasing `pg_stat_statements.max`. The `pg_stat_statements_info` view, discussed below in Section F.32.2, provides statistics about entry deallocations.

In some cases, queries with visibly different texts might get merged into a single `pg_stat_statements` entry. Normally this will happen only for semantically equivalent queries, but there is a small chance of hash collisions causing unrelated queries to be merged into one entry. (This cannot happen for queries belonging to different users or databases, however.)

Since the `queryid` hash value is computed on the post-parse-analysis representation of the queries, the opposite is also possible: queries with identical texts might appear as separate entries, if they have different meanings as a result of factors such as different `search_path` settings.

Consumers of `pg_stat_statements` may wish to use `queryid` (perhaps in combination with `dbid` and `userid`) as a more stable and reliable identifier for each entry than its query text. However, it is important to understand that there are only limited guarantees around the stability of the `queryid` hash value. Since the identifier is derived from the post-parse-analysis tree, its value is a function of, among other things, the internal object identifiers appearing in this representation. This has some counterintuitive implications. For example, `pg_stat_statements` will consider two apparently-identical queries to be distinct, if they reference a table that was dropped and recreated between the executions of the two queries. The hashing process is also sensitive to differences in machine architecture and other facets of the platform. Furthermore, it is not safe to assume that `queryid` will be stable across major versions of PostgreSQL.

As a rule of thumb, `queryid` values can be assumed to be stable and comparable only so long as the underlying server version and catalog metadata details stay exactly the same. Two servers participating in replication based on physical WAL replay can be expected to have identical `queryid` values for the same query. However, logical replication schemes do not promise to keep replicas identical in all relevant details, so `queryid` will not be a useful identifier for accumulating costs across a set of logical replicas. If in doubt, direct testing is recommended.

The parameter symbols used to replace constants in representative query texts start from the next number after the highest `$n` parameter in the original query text, or `$1` if there was none. It's worth noting that in some cases there may be hidden parameter symbols that affect this numbering. For example, PL/pgSQL uses hidden parameter symbols to insert values of function local variables into queries, so that a PL/pgSQL statement like `SELECT i + 1 INTO j` would have representative text like `SELECT i + $2`.

The representative query texts are kept in an external disk file, and do not consume shared memory. Therefore, even very lengthy query texts can be stored successfully. However, if many long query texts are accumulated, the external file might grow unmanageably large. As a recovery method if that happens, `pg_stat_statements` may choose to discard the query texts, whereupon all existing entries in the `pg_stat_statements` view will show null `query` fields, though the statistics associated with each `queryid` are preserved. If this happens, consider reducing `pg_stat_statements.max` to prevent recurrences.

`plans` and `calls` aren't always expected to match because planning and execution statistics are updated at their respective end phase, and only for successful operations. For example, if a statement is successfully planned but fails during the execution phase, only its planning statistics will be updated. If planning is skipped because a cached plan is used, only its execution statistics will be updated.

## F.32.2. The `pg_stat_statements_info` View

The statistics of the `pg_stat_statements` module itself are tracked and made available via a view named `pg_stat_statements_info`. This view contains only a single row. The columns of the view are shown in Table F.23.

**Table F.23. `pg_stat_statements_info` Columns**

Column Type	Description
<code>dealloc bigint</code>	Total number of times <code>pg_stat_statements</code> entries about the least-executed statements were deallocated because more distinct statements than <code>pg_stat_statements.max</code> were observed
<code>stats_reset timestamp with time zone</code>	Time at which all statistics in the <code>pg_stat_statements</code> view were last reset.

## F.32.3. Functions

`pg_stat_statements_reset(userid Oid, dbid Oid, queryid bigint)` returns `void`

`pg_stat_statements_reset` discards statistics gathered so far by `pg_stat_statements` corresponding to the specified `userid`, `dbid` and `queryid`. If any of the parameters are not specified, the default value 0 (invalid) is used for each of them and the statistics that match with other parameters will be reset. If no parameter is specified or all the specified parameters are 0 (invalid), it will discard all statistics. If all statistics in the `pg_stat_statements` view are discarded, it will also reset the statistics in the `pg_stat_statements_info` view. By default, this function can only be executed by superusers. Access may be granted to others using `GRANT`.

`pg_stat_statements(showtext boolean)` returns `setof record`

The `pg_stat_statements` view is defined in terms of a function also named `pg_stat_statements`. It is possible for clients to call the `pg_stat_statements` function directly, and by specifying `showtext := false` have query text be omitted (that is, the `OUT` argument that corresponds to the view's `query` column will return nulls). This feature is intended to support external tools that might wish to avoid the overhead of repeatedly retrieving query texts of indeterminate length. Such tools can instead cache the first query text observed for each entry themselves, since that is all `pg_stat_statements` itself does, and then retrieve query texts only as needed. Since the server stores query texts in a file, this approach may reduce physical I/O for repeated examination of the `pg_stat_statements` data.

## F.32.4. Configuration Parameters

`pg_stat_statements.max (integer)`

`pg_stat_statements.max` is the maximum number of statements tracked by the module (i.e., the maximum number of rows in the `pg_stat_statements` view). If more distinct statements than that are observed, information about the least-executed statements is discarded. The number of times such information was discarded can be seen in the `pg_stat_statements_info` view. The default value is 5000. This parameter can only be set at server start.

`pg_stat_statements.track (enum)`

`pg_stat_statements.track` controls which statements are counted by the module. Specify `top` to track top-level statements (those issued directly by clients), `all` to also track nested statements (such as statements invoked within functions), or `none` to disable statement statistics collection. The default value is `top`. Only superusers can change this setting.

`pg_stat_statements.track_utility (boolean)`

`pg_stat_statements.track_utility` controls whether utility commands are tracked by the module. Utility commands are all those other than `SELECT`, `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, and `MERGE`. The default value is `on`. Only superusers can change this setting.

`pg_stat_statements.track_planning` (boolean)

`pg_stat_statements.track_planning` controls whether planning operations and duration are tracked by the module. Enabling this parameter may incur a noticeable performance penalty, especially when statements with identical query structure are executed by many concurrent connections which compete to update a small number of `pg_stat_statements` entries. The default value is off. Only superusers can change this setting.

`pg_stat_statements.save` (boolean)

`pg_stat_statements.save` specifies whether to save statement statistics across server shutdowns. If it is off then statistics are not saved at shutdown nor reloaded at server start. The default value is on. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

The module requires additional shared memory proportional to `pg_stat_statements.max`. Note that this memory is consumed whenever the module is loaded, even if `pg_stat_statements.track` is set to none.

These parameters must be set in `postgresql.conf`. Typical usage might be:

```
# postgresql.conf
shared_preload_libraries = 'pg_stat_statements'

compute_query_id = on
pg_stat_statements.max = 10000
pg_stat_statements.track = all
```

## F.32.5. Sample Output

```
bench=# SELECT pg_stat_statements_reset();

$ pgbench -i bench
$ pgbench -c10 -t300 bench

bench=# \x
bench=# SELECT query, calls, total_exec_time, rows, 100.0 *
        shared_blks_hit /
            nullif(shared_blks_hit + shared_blks_read, 0) AS
        hit_percent
        FROM pg_stat_statements ORDER BY total_exec_time DESC
        LIMIT 5;
-[ RECORD 1 ]---+-----
query          | UPDATE pgbench_branches SET bbalance = bbalance +
$1 WHERE bid = $2
calls          | 3000
total_exec_time | 25565.855387
rows           | 3000
hit_percent     | 100.0000000000000000
-[ RECORD 2 ]---+-----
query          | UPDATE pgbench_tellers SET tbalance = tbalance +
$1 WHERE tid = $2
calls          | 3000
total_exec_time | 20756.669379
rows           | 3000
hit_percent     | 100.0000000000000000
```

```

-[ RECORD 3 ]---+-----
query          | copy pgbench_accounts from stdin
calls          | 1
total_exec_time | 291.865911
rows           | 100000
hit_percent    | 100.0000000000000000
-[ RECORD 4 ]---+-----
query          | UPDATE pgbench_accounts SET abalance = abalance +
  $1 WHERE aid = $2
calls          | 3000
total_exec_time | 271.232977
rows           | 3000
hit_percent    | 98.8454011741682975
-[ RECORD 5 ]---+-----
query          | alter table pgbench_accounts add primary key
  (aid)
calls          | 1
total_exec_time | 160.588563
rows           | 0
hit_percent    | 100.0000000000000000

bench=# SELECT pg_stat_statements_reset(0,0,s.queryid) FROM
pg_stat_statements AS s
        WHERE s.query = 'UPDATE pgbench_branches SET bbalance =
bbalance + $1 WHERE bid = $2';

bench=# SELECT query, calls, total_exec_time, rows, 100.0 *
  shared_blks_hit /
        nullif(shared_blks_hit + shared_blks_read, 0) AS
hit_percent
        FROM pg_stat_statements ORDER BY total_exec_time DESC
LIMIT 5;
-[ RECORD 1 ]---+-----
query          | UPDATE pgbench_tellers SET tbalance = tbalance +
  $1 WHERE tid = $2
calls          | 3000
total_exec_time | 20756.669379
rows           | 3000
hit_percent    | 100.0000000000000000
-[ RECORD 2 ]---+-----
query          | copy pgbench_accounts from stdin
calls          | 1
total_exec_time | 291.865911
rows           | 100000
hit_percent    | 100.0000000000000000
-[ RECORD 3 ]---+-----
query          | UPDATE pgbench_accounts SET abalance = abalance +
  $1 WHERE aid = $2
calls          | 3000
total_exec_time | 271.232977
rows           | 3000

```

```

hit_percent      | 98.8454011741682975
-[ RECORD 4 ]---+-----
-----
query            | alter table pgbench_accounts add primary key
(aid)
calls            | 1
total_exec_time  | 160.588563
rows             | 0
hit_percent      | 100.0000000000000000
-[ RECORD 5 ]---+-----
-----
query            | vacuum analyze pgbench_accounts
calls            | 1
total_exec_time  | 136.448116
rows             | 0
hit_percent      | 99.9201915403032721

bench=# SELECT pg_stat_statements_reset(0,0,0);

bench=# SELECT query, calls, total_exec_time, rows, 100.0 *
shared_blks_hit /
           nullif(shared_blks_hit + shared_blks_read, 0) AS
hit_percent
FROM pg_stat_statements ORDER BY total_exec_time DESC
LIMIT 5;
-[ RECORD 1 ]---+-----
-----
query            | SELECT pg_stat_statements_reset(0,0,0)
calls            | 1
total_exec_time  | 0.189497
rows             | 1
hit_percent      |
-[ RECORD 2 ]---+-----
-----
query            | SELECT query, calls, total_exec_time, rows, $1 *
shared_blks_hit /          +
                           |          nullif(shared_blks_hit +
shared_blks_read, $2) AS hit_percent+
                           |          FROM pg_stat_statements ORDER BY
total_exec_time DESC LIMIT $3
calls            | 0
total_exec_time  | 0
rows             | 0
hit_percent      |

```

## F.32.6. Authors

Takahiro Itagaki <itagaki.takahiro@oss.ntt.co.jp>. Query normalization added by Peter Geoghegan <peter@2ndquadrant.com>.



## F.33. pgstattuple — obtain tuple-level statistics

The `pgstattuple` module provides various functions to obtain tuple-level statistics.

Because these functions return detailed page-level information, access is restricted by default. By default, only the role `pg_stat_scan_tables` has `EXECUTE` privilege. Superusers of course bypass this restriction. After the extension has been installed, users may issue `GRANT` commands to change the privileges on the functions to allow others to execute them. However, it might be preferable to add those users to the `pg_stat_scan_tables` role instead.

### F.33.1. Functions

`pgstattuple(regclass)` returns record

`pgstattuple` returns a relation's physical length, percentage of “dead” tuples, and other info. This may help users to determine whether vacuum is necessary or not. The argument is the target relation's name (optionally schema-qualified) or OID. For example:

```
test=> SELECT * FROM pgstattuple('pg_catalog.pg_proc');
-[ RECORD 1 ]-----+-----
table_len          | 458752
tuple_count        | 1470
tuple_len          | 438896
tuple_percent      | 95.67
dead_tuple_count   | 11
dead_tuple_len     | 3157
dead_tuple_percent | 0.69
free_space         | 8932
free_percent       | 1.95
```

The output columns are described in Table F.24.

**Table F.24. `pgstattuple` Output Columns**

Column	Type	Description
<code>table_len</code>	<code>bigint</code>	Physical relation length in bytes
<code>tuple_count</code>	<code>bigint</code>	Number of live tuples
<code>tuple_len</code>	<code>bigint</code>	Total length of live tuples in bytes
<code>tuple_percent</code>	<code>float8</code>	Percentage of live tuples
<code>dead_tuple_count</code>	<code>bigint</code>	Number of dead tuples
<code>dead_tuple_len</code>	<code>bigint</code>	Total length of dead tuples in bytes
<code>dead_tuple_percent</code>	<code>float8</code>	Percentage of dead tuples
<code>free_space</code>	<code>bigint</code>	Total free space in bytes
<code>free_percent</code>	<code>float8</code>	Percentage of free space

#### Note

The `table_len` will always be greater than the sum of the `tuple_len`, `dead_tuple_len` and `free_space`. The difference is accounted for by fixed page overhead,

the per-page table of pointers to tuples, and padding to ensure that tuples are correctly aligned.

`pgstattuple` acquires only a read lock on the relation. So the results do not reflect an instantaneous snapshot; concurrent updates will affect them.

`pgstattuple` judges a tuple is “dead” if `HeapTupleSatisfiesDirty` returns false.

`pgstattuple(text)` returns record

This is the same as `pgstattuple(regclass)`, except that the target relation is specified as TEXT. This function is kept because of backward-compatibility so far, and will be deprecated in some future release.

`pgstatindex(regclass)` returns record

`pgstatindex` returns a record showing information about a B-tree index. For example:

```
test=> SELECT * FROM pgstatindex('pg_cast_oid_index');
-[ RECORD 1 ]-----+-----
version          | 2
tree_level       | 0
index_size       | 16384
root_block_no    | 1
internal_pages   | 0
leaf_pages       | 1
empty_pages      | 0
deleted_pages    | 0
avg_leaf_density | 54.27
leaf_fragmentation | 0
```

The output columns are:

Column	Type	Description
version	integer	B-tree version number
tree_level	integer	Tree level of the root page
index_size	bigint	Total index size in bytes
root_block_no	bigint	Location of root page (zero if none)
internal_pages	bigint	Number of “internal” (up- per-level) pages
leaf_pages	bigint	Number of leaf pages
empty_pages	bigint	Number of empty pages
deleted_pages	bigint	Number of deleted pages
avg_leaf_density	float8	Average density of leaf pages
leaf_fragmentation	float8	Leaf page fragmentation

The reported `index_size` will normally correspond to one more page than is accounted for by `internal_pages` + `leaf_pages` + `empty_pages` + `deleted_pages`, because it also includes the index's metapage.

As with `pgstattuple`, the results are accumulated page-by-page, and should not be expected to represent an instantaneous snapshot of the whole index.

`pgstatindex(text)` returns record

This is the same as `pgstatindex(regclass)`, except that the target index is specified as TEXT. This function is kept because of backward-compatibility so far, and will be deprecated in some future release.

`pgstatginindex(regclass)` returns record

`pgstatginindex` returns a record showing information about a GIN index. For example:

```
test=> SELECT * FROM pgstatginindex('test_gin_index');
-[ RECORD 1 ]--+-
version          | 1
pending_pages    | 0
pending_tuples   | 0
```

The output columns are:

Column	Type	Description
version	integer	GIN version number
pending_pages	integer	Number of pages in the pending list
pending_tuples	bigint	Number of tuples in the pending list

`pgstathashindex(regclass)` returns record

`pgstathashindex` returns a record showing information about a HASH index. For example:

```
test=> select * from pgstathashindex('con_hash_index');
-[ RECORD 1 ]--+-
version          | 4
bucket_pages     | 33081
overflow_pages   | 0
bitmap_pages     | 1
unused_pages     | 32455
live_items       | 10204006
dead_items       | 0
free_percent     | 61.8005949100872
```

The output columns are:

Column	Type	Description
version	integer	HASH version number
bucket_pages	bigint	Number of bucket pages
overflow_pages	bigint	Number of overflow pages
bitmap_pages	bigint	Number of bitmap pages
unused_pages	bigint	Number of unused pages
live_items	bigint	Number of live tuples
dead_tuples	bigint	Number of dead tuples
free_percent	float	Percentage of free space

`pg_relpages(regclass)` returns bigint

`pg_relpages` returns the number of pages in the relation.

`pg_relpages(text)` returns `bigint`

This is the same as `pg_relpages(regclass)`, except that the target relation is specified as `TEXT`. This function is kept because of backward-compatibility so far, and will be deprecated in some future release.

`pgstattuple_approx(regclass)` returns `record`

`pgstattuple_approx` is a faster alternative to `pgstattuple` that returns approximate results. The argument is the target relation's name or `OID`. For example:

```
test=> SELECT * FROM
       pgstattuple_approx('pg_catalog.pg_proc'::regclass);
-[ RECORD 1 ]-----+-----
table_len          | 573440
scanned_percent    | 2
approx_tuple_count | 2740
approx_tuple_len   | 561210
approx_tuple_percent | 97.87
dead_tuple_count   | 0
dead_tuple_len     | 0
dead_tuple_percent | 0
approx_free_space  | 11996
approx_free_percent | 2.09
```

The output columns are described in Table F.25.

Whereas `pgstattuple` always performs a full-table scan and returns an exact count of live and dead tuples (and their sizes) and free space, `pgstattuple_approx` tries to avoid the full-table scan and returns exact dead tuple statistics along with an approximation of the number and size of live tuples and free space.

It does this by skipping pages that have only visible tuples according to the visibility map (if a page has the corresponding VM bit set, then it is assumed to contain no dead tuples). For such pages, it derives the free space value from the free space map, and assumes that the rest of the space on the page is taken up by live tuples.

For pages that cannot be skipped, it scans each tuple, recording its presence and size in the appropriate counters, and adding up the free space on the page. At the end, it estimates the total number of live tuples based on the number of pages and tuples scanned (in the same way that `VACUUM` estimates `pg_class.reltuples`).

**Table F.25. `pgstattuple_approx` Output Columns**

Column	Type	Description
<code>table_len</code>	<code>bigint</code>	Physical relation length in bytes (exact)
<code>scanned_percent</code>	<code>float8</code>	Percentage of table scanned
<code>approx_tuple_count</code>	<code>bigint</code>	Number of live tuples (estimated)
<code>approx_tuple_len</code>	<code>bigint</code>	Total length of live tuples in bytes (estimated)
<code>approx_tuple_percent</code>	<code>float8</code>	Percentage of live tuples
<code>dead_tuple_count</code>	<code>bigint</code>	Number of dead tuples (exact)
<code>dead_tuple_len</code>	<code>bigint</code>	Total length of dead tuples in bytes (exact)

Column	Type	Description
dead_tuple_percent	float8	Percentage of dead tuples
approx_free_space	bigint	Total free space in bytes (estimated)
approx_free_percent	float8	Percentage of free space

In the above output, the free space figures may not match the `pgstattuple` output exactly, because the free space map gives us an exact figure, but is not guaranteed to be accurate to the byte.

## F.33.2. Authors

Tatsuo Ishii, Satoshi Nagayasu and Abhijit Menon-Sen

## F.34. pg\_surgery — perform low-level surgery on relation data

The `pg_surgery` module provides various functions to perform surgery on a damaged relation. These functions are unsafe by design and using them may corrupt (or further corrupt) your database. For example, these functions can easily be used to make a table inconsistent with its own indexes, to cause `UNIQUE` or `FOREIGN KEY` constraint violations, or even to make tuples visible which, when read, will cause a database server crash. They should be used with great caution and only as a last resort.

### F.34.1. Functions

`heap_force_kill(regclass, tid[])` returns void

`heap_force_kill` marks “used” line pointers as “dead” without examining the tuples. The intended use of this function is to forcibly remove tuples that are not otherwise accessible. For example:

```
test=> select * from t1 where ctid = '(0, 1)';
ERROR:  could not access status of transaction 4007513275
DETAIL:  Could not open file "pg_xact/0EED": No such file or
         directory.

test=# select heap_force_kill('t1'::regclass, ARRAY['(0,
1)']::tid[]);
heap_force_kill
-----

(1 row)

test=# select * from t1 where ctid = '(0, 1)';
(0 rows)
```

`heap_force_freeze(regclass, tid[])` returns void

`heap_force_freeze` marks tuples as frozen without examining the tuple data. The intended use of this function is to make accessible tuples which are inaccessible due to corrupted visibility information, or which prevent the table from being successfully vacuumed due to corrupted visibility information. For example:

```
test=> vacuum t1;
ERROR:  found xmin 507 from before relfrozenxid 515
CONTEXT:  while scanning block 0 of relation "public.t1"

test=# select ctid from t1 where xmin = 507;
ctid
-----
(0,3)
(1 row)

test=# select heap_force_freeze('t1'::regclass, ARRAY['(0,
3)']::tid[]);
heap_force_freeze
-----
```

(1 row)

```
test=# select ctid from t1 where xmin = 2;  
      ctid  
-----  
      (0,3)  
(1 row)
```

## F.34.2. Authors

Ashutosh Sharma <ashu.coek88@gmail.com>

## F.35. pg\_trgm — support for similarity of text using trigram matching

The `pg_trgm` module provides functions and operators for determining the similarity of alphanumeric text based on trigram matching, as well as index operator classes that support fast searching for similar strings.

This module is considered “trusted”, that is, it can be installed by non-superusers who have `CREATE` privilege on the current database.

### F.35.1. Trigram (or Trigraph) Concepts

A trigram is a group of three consecutive characters taken from a string. We can measure the similarity of two strings by counting the number of trigrams they share. This simple idea turns out to be very effective for measuring the similarity of words in many natural languages.

#### Note

`pg_trgm` ignores non-word characters (non-alphanumerics) when extracting trigrams from a string. Each word is considered to have two spaces prefixed and one space suffixed when determining the set of trigrams contained in the string. For example, the set of trigrams in the string “cat” is “ c”, “ ca”, “cat”, and “at ”. The set of trigrams in the string “foo | bar” is “ f”, “ fo”, “foo”, “oo ”, “ b”, “ ba”, “bar”, and “ar ”.

### F.35.2. Functions and Operators

The functions provided by the `pg_trgm` module are shown in Table F.26, the operators in Table F.27.

**Table F.26. `pg_trgm` Functions**

Function	Description
<code>similarity ( text, text ) → real</code>	Returns a number that indicates how similar the two arguments are. The range of the result is zero (indicating that the two strings are completely dissimilar) to one (indicating that the two strings are identical).
<code>show_trgm ( text ) → text [ ]</code>	Returns an array of all the trigrams in the given string. (In practice this is seldom useful except for debugging.)
<code>word_similarity ( text, text ) → real</code>	Returns a number that indicates the greatest similarity between the set of trigrams in the first string and any continuous extent of an ordered set of trigrams in the second string. For details, see the explanation below.
<code>strict_word_similarity ( text, text ) → real</code>	Same as <code>word_similarity</code> , but forces extent boundaries to match word boundaries. Since we don't have cross-word trigrams, this function actually returns greatest similarity between first string and any continuous extent of words of the second string.
<code>show_limit () → real</code>	Returns the current similarity threshold used by the <code>%</code> operator. This sets the minimum similarity between two words for them to be considered similar enough to be mis-



Function	Description
	spellings of each other, for example. ( <i>Deprecated</i> ; instead use <code>SHOW pg_trgm.similarity_threshold</code> .)
<code>set_limit (real) → real</code>	Sets the current similarity threshold that is used by the <code>%</code> operator. The threshold must be between 0 and 1 (default is 0.3). Returns the same value passed in. ( <i>Deprecated</i> ; instead use <code>SET pg_trgm.similarity_threshold</code> .)

Consider the following example:

```
# SELECT word_similarity('word', 'two words');
 word_similarity
-----
              0.8
(1 row)
```

In the first string, the set of trigrams is { " w", " wo", "wor", "ord", "rd " }. In the second string, the ordered set of trigrams is { " t", " tw", "two", "wo ", " w", " wo", "wor", "or-d", "rds", "ds " }. The most similar extent of an ordered set of trigrams in the second string is { " w", " wo", "wor", "ord" }, and the similarity is 0.8.

This function returns a value that can be approximately understood as the greatest similarity between the first string and any substring of the second string. However, this function does not add padding to the boundaries of the extent. Thus, the number of additional characters present in the second string is not considered, except for the mismatched word boundaries.

At the same time, `strict_word_similarity` selects an extent of words in the second string. In the example above, `strict_word_similarity` would select the extent of a single word 'words', whose set of trigrams is { " w", " wo", "wor", "ord", "rds", "ds " }.

```
# SELECT strict_word_similarity('word', 'two words'),
 similarity('word', 'words');
strict_word_similarity | similarity
-----+-----
              0.571429 |    0.571429
(1 row)
```

Thus, the `strict_word_similarity` function is useful for finding the similarity to whole words, while `word_similarity` is more suitable for finding the similarity for parts of words.

**Table F.27. `pg_trgm` Operators**

Operator	Description
<code>text % text → boolean</code>	Returns true if its arguments have a similarity that is greater than the current similarity threshold set by <code>pg_trgm.similarity_threshold</code> .
<code>text &lt;% text → boolean</code>	Returns true if the similarity between the trigram set in the first argument and a continuous extent of an ordered trigram set in the second argument is greater than the current word similarity threshold set by <code>pg_trgm.word_similarity_threshold</code> parameter.
<code>text %&gt; text → boolean</code>	

Operator	Description
	Commutator of the <% operator.
<code>text &lt;&lt;% text → boolean</code>	Returns <code>true</code> if its second argument has a continuous extent of an ordered trigram set that matches word boundaries, and its similarity to the trigram set of the first argument is greater than the current strict word similarity threshold set by the <code>pg_trgm.strict_word_similarity_threshold</code> parameter.
<code>text %&gt;&gt; text → boolean</code>	Commutator of the <<% operator.
<code>text &lt;-&gt; text → real</code>	Returns the “distance” between the arguments, that is one minus the <code>similarity()</code> value.
<code>text &lt;&lt;-&gt; text → real</code>	Returns the “distance” between the arguments, that is one minus the <code>word_similarity()</code> value.
<code>text &lt;-&gt;&gt; text → real</code>	Commutator of the <<-> operator.
<code>text &lt;&lt;&lt;-&gt; text → real</code>	Returns the “distance” between the arguments, that is one minus the <code>strict_word_similarity()</code> value.
<code>text &lt;-&gt;&gt;&gt; text → real</code>	Commutator of the <<<-> operator.

### F.35.3. GUC Parameters

`pg_trgm.similarity_threshold(real)`

Sets the current similarity threshold that is used by the % operator. The threshold must be between 0 and 1 (default is 0.3).

`pg_trgm.word_similarity_threshold(real)`

Sets the current word similarity threshold that is used by the <% and %> operators. The threshold must be between 0 and 1 (default is 0.6).

`pg_trgm.strict_word_similarity_threshold(real)`

Sets the current strict word similarity threshold that is used by the <<% and %>> operators. The threshold must be between 0 and 1 (default is 0.5).

### F.35.4. Index Support

The `pg_trgm` module provides GiST and GIN index operator classes that allow you to create an index over a text column for the purpose of very fast similarity searches. These index types support the above-described similarity operators, and additionally support trigram-based index searches for `LIKE`, `ILIKE`, `~`, `~*` and `=` queries. The similarity comparisons are case-insensitive in a default build of `pg_trgm`. Inequality operators are not supported. Note that those indexes may not be as efficient as regular B-tree indexes for equality operator.

Example:

```
CREATE TABLE test_trgm (t text);
CREATE INDEX trgm_idx ON test_trgm USING GIST (t gist_trgm_ops);
```

or

```
CREATE INDEX trgm_idx ON test_trgm USING GIN (t gin_trgm_ops);
```

`gist_trgm_ops` GiST opclass approximates a set of trigrams as a bitmap signature. Its optional integer parameter `siglen` determines the signature length in bytes. The default length is 12 bytes. Valid values of signature length are between 1 and 2024 bytes. Longer signatures lead to a more precise search (scanning a smaller fraction of the index and fewer heap pages), at the cost of a larger index.

Example of creating such an index with a signature length of 32 bytes:

```
CREATE INDEX trgm_idx ON test_trgm USING GIST (t
gist_trgm_ops(siglen=32));
```

At this point, you will have an index on the `t` column that you can use for similarity searching. A typical query is

```
SELECT t, similarity(t, 'word') AS sml
FROM test_trgm
WHERE t % 'word'
ORDER BY sml DESC, t;
```

This will return all values in the text column that are sufficiently similar to `word`, sorted from best match to worst. The index will be used to make this a fast operation even over very large data sets.

A variant of the above query is

```
SELECT t, t <-> 'word' AS dist
FROM test_trgm
ORDER BY dist LIMIT 10;
```

This can be implemented quite efficiently by GiST indexes, but not by GIN indexes. It will usually beat the first formulation when only a small number of the closest matches is wanted.

Also you can use an index on the `t` column for word similarity or strict word similarity. Typical queries are:

```
SELECT t, word_similarity('word', t) AS sml
FROM test_trgm
WHERE 'word' <% t
ORDER BY sml DESC, t;
```

and

```
SELECT t, strict_word_similarity('word', t) AS sml
FROM test_trgm
WHERE 'word' <<% t
ORDER BY sml DESC, t;
```

This will return all values in the text column for which there is a continuous extent in the corresponding ordered trigram set that is sufficiently similar to the trigram set of `word`, sorted from best match to worst. The index will be used to make this a fast operation even over very large data sets.

Possible variants of the above queries are:

```
SELECT t, 'word' <-> t AS dist
FROM test_trgm
ORDER BY dist LIMIT 10;
```

and

```
SELECT t, 'word' <<-> t AS dist
FROM test_trgm
ORDER BY dist LIMIT 10;
```

This can be implemented quite efficiently by GiST indexes, but not by GIN indexes.

Beginning in PostgreSQL 9.1, these index types also support index searches for `LIKE` and `ILIKE`, for example

```
SELECT * FROM test_trgm WHERE t LIKE '%foo%bar';
```

The index search works by extracting trigrams from the search string and then looking these up in the index. The more trigrams in the search string, the more effective the index search is. Unlike B-tree based searches, the search string need not be left-anchored.

Beginning in PostgreSQL 9.3, these index types also support index searches for regular-expression matches (`~` and `~*` operators), for example

```
SELECT * FROM test_trgm WHERE t ~ '(foo|bar)';
```

The index search works by extracting trigrams from the regular expression and then looking these up in the index. The more trigrams that can be extracted from the regular expression, the more effective the index search is. Unlike B-tree based searches, the search string need not be left-anchored.

For both `LIKE` and regular-expression searches, keep in mind that a pattern with no extractable trigrams will degenerate to a full-index scan.

The choice between GiST and GIN indexing depends on the relative performance characteristics of GiST and GIN, which are discussed elsewhere.

## F.35.5. Text Search Integration

Trigram matching is a very useful tool when used in conjunction with a full text index. In particular it can help to recognize misspelled input words that will not be matched directly by the full text search mechanism.

The first step is to generate an auxiliary table containing all the unique words in the documents:

```
CREATE TABLE words AS SELECT word FROM
    ts_stat('SELECT to_tsvector(''simple'', bodytext) FROM
documents');
```

where `documents` is a table that has a text field `bodytext` that we wish to search. The reason for using the `simple` configuration with the `to_tsvector` function, instead of using a language-specific configuration, is that we want a list of the original (unstemmed) words.

Next, create a trigram index on the word column:

```
CREATE INDEX words_idx ON words USING GIN (word gin_trgm_ops);
```

Now, a `SELECT` query similar to the previous example can be used to suggest spellings for misspelled words in user search terms. A useful extra test is to require that the selected words are also of similar length to the misspelled word.

### Note

Since the `words` table has been generated as a separate, static table, it will need to be periodically regenerated so that it remains reasonably up-to-date with the document collection. Keeping it exactly current is usually unnecessary.

## F.35.6. References

GiST Development Site <http://www.sai.msu.su/~megeera/postgres/gist/>

Tsearch2 Development Site <http://www.sai.msu.su/~megeera/postgres/gist/tsearch/V2/>

## F.35.7. Authors

Oleg Bartunov <[oleg@sai.msu.su](mailto:oleg@sai.msu.su)>, Moscow, Moscow University, Russia

Teodor Sigaev <[teodor@sigaev.ru](mailto:teodor@sigaev.ru)>, Moscow, Delta-Soft Ltd., Russia

Alexander Korotkov <[a.korotkov@postgrespro.ru](mailto:a.korotkov@postgrespro.ru)>, Moscow, Postgres Professional, Russia

Documentation: Christopher Kings-Lynne

This module is sponsored by Delta-Soft Ltd., Moscow, Russia.

## F.36. `pg_visibility` — visibility map information and utilities

The `pg_visibility` module provides a means for examining the visibility map (VM) and page-level visibility information of a table. It also provides functions to check the integrity of a visibility map and to force it to be rebuilt.

Three different bits are used to store information about page-level visibility. The all-visible bit in the visibility map indicates that every tuple in the corresponding page of the relation is visible to every current and future transaction. The all-frozen bit in the visibility map indicates that every tuple in the page is frozen; that is, no future vacuum will need to modify the page until such time as a tuple is inserted, updated, deleted, or locked on that page. The page header's `PD_ALL_VISIBLE` bit has the same meaning as the all-visible bit in the visibility map, but is stored within the data page itself rather than in a separate data structure. These two bits will normally agree, but the page's all-visible bit can sometimes be set while the visibility map bit is clear after a crash recovery. The reported values can also disagree because of a change that occurs after `pg_visibility` examines the visibility map and before it examines the data page. Any event that causes data corruption can also cause these bits to disagree.

Functions that display information about `PD_ALL_VISIBLE` bits are much more costly than those that only consult the visibility map, because they must read the relation's data blocks rather than only the (much smaller) visibility map. Functions that check the relation's data blocks are similarly expensive.

### F.36.1. Functions

```
pg_visibility_map(relation regclass, blkno bigint, all_visible OUT
boolean, all_frozen OUT boolean) returns record
```

Returns the all-visible and all-frozen bits in the visibility map for the given block of the given relation.

```
pg_visibility(relation regclass, blkno bigint, all_visible OUT
boolean, all_frozen OUT boolean, pd_all_visible OUT boolean) returns
record
```

Returns the all-visible and all-frozen bits in the visibility map for the given block of the given relation, plus the `PD_ALL_VISIBLE` bit of that block.

```
pg_visibility_map(relation regclass, blkno OUT bigint, all_visible
OUT boolean, all_frozen OUT boolean) returns setof record
```

Returns the all-visible and all-frozen bits in the visibility map for each block of the given relation.

```
pg_visibility(relation regclass, blkno OUT bigint, all_visible OUT
boolean, all_frozen OUT boolean, pd_all_visible OUT boolean) returns
setof record
```

Returns the all-visible and all-frozen bits in the visibility map for each block of the given relation, plus the `PD_ALL_VISIBLE` bit of each block.

```
pg_visibility_map_summary(relation regclass, all_visible OUT bigint,
all_frozen OUT bigint) returns record
```

Returns the number of all-visible pages and the number of all-frozen pages in the relation according to the visibility map.

`pg_check_frozen(relation regclass, t_ctid OUT tid)` returns `setof tid`

Returns the TIDs of non-frozen tuples stored in pages marked all-frozen in the visibility map. If this function returns a non-empty set of TIDs, the visibility map is corrupt.

`pg_check_visible(relation regclass, t_ctid OUT tid)` returns `setof tid`

Returns the TIDs of non-all-visible tuples stored in pages marked all-visible in the visibility map. If this function returns a non-empty set of TIDs, the visibility map is corrupt.

`pg_truncate_visibility_map(relation regclass)` returns `void`

Truncates the visibility map for the given relation. This function is useful if you believe that the visibility map for the relation is corrupt and wish to force rebuilding it. The first `VACUUM` executed on the given relation after this function is executed will scan every page in the relation and rebuild the visibility map. (Until that is done, queries will treat the visibility map as containing all zeroes.)

By default, these functions are executable only by superusers and roles with privileges of the `pg_stat_scan_tables` role, with the exception of `pg_truncate_visibility_map(relation regclass)` which can only be executed by superusers.

## F.36.2. Author

Robert Haas <[rhaas@postgresql.org](mailto:rhaas@postgresql.org)>

## F.37. pg\_walinspect — low-level WAL inspection

The `pg_walinspect` module provides SQL functions that allow you to inspect the contents of write-ahead log of a running PostgreSQL database cluster at a low level, which is useful for debugging, analytical, reporting or educational purposes. It is similar to `pg_waldump`, but accessible through SQL rather than a separate utility.

All the functions of this module will provide the WAL information using the server's current timeline ID.

### Note

The `pg_walinspect` functions are often called using an LSN argument that specifies the location at which a known WAL record of interest *begins*. However, some functions, such as `pg_logical_emit_message`, return the LSN *after* the record that was just inserted.

### Tip

All of the `pg_walinspect` functions that show information about records that fall within a certain LSN range are permissive about accepting `end_lsn` arguments that are after the server's current LSN. Using an `end_lsn` “from the future” will not raise an error.

It may be convenient to provide the value `FFFFFFFF/FFFFFFFF` (the maximum valid `pg_lsn` value) as an `end_lsn` argument. This is equivalent to providing an `end_lsn` argument matching the server's current LSN.

By default, use of these functions is restricted to superusers and members of the `pg_read_server_files` role. Access may be granted by superusers to others using `GRANT`.

### F.37.1. General Functions

`pg_get_wal_record_info(in_lsn pg_lsn)` returns record

Gets WAL record information about a record that is located at or after the `in_lsn` argument. For example:

```
postgres=# SELECT * FROM pg_get_wal_record_info('0/E419E28');
-[ RECORD 1 ]----
+-----+-----+
start_lsn      | 0/E419E28
end_lsn        | 0/E419E68
prev_lsn       | 0/E419D78
xid            | 0
resource_manager | Heap2
record_type    | VACUUM
record_length  | 58
main_data_length | 2
fpi_length     | 0
description    | nunused: 5, unused: [1, 2, 3, 4, 5]
block_ref      | blkref #0: rel 1663/16385/1249 fork main blk
               | 364
```



If *in\_lsn* isn't at the start of a WAL record, information about the next valid WAL record is shown instead. If there is no next valid WAL record, the function raises an error.

`pg_get_wal_records_info(start_lsn pg_lsn, end_lsn pg_lsn)` returns  
setof record

Gets information of all the valid WAL records between *start\_lsn* and *end\_lsn*. Returns one row per WAL record. For example:

```
postgres=# SELECT * FROM pg_get_wal_records_info('0/1E913618',
'0/1E913740') LIMIT 1;
-[ RECORD 1 ]-----
+-----+
start_lsn      | 0/1E913618
end_lsn        | 0/1E913650
prev_lsn       | 0/1E9135A0
xid            | 0
resource_manager | Standby
record_type     | RUNNING_XACTS
record_length   | 50
main_data_length | 24
fpi_length      | 0
description     | nextXid 33775 latestCompletedXid 33774
oldestRunningXid | 33775
block_ref       |
```

The function raises an error if *start\_lsn* is not available.

`pg_get_wal_block_info(start_lsn pg_lsn, end_lsn pg_lsn, show_data  
boolean DEFAULT true)` returns setof record

Gets information about each block reference from all the valid WAL records between *start\_lsn* and *end\_lsn* with one or more block references. Returns one row per block reference per WAL record. For example:

```
postgres=# SELECT * FROM pg_get_wal_block_info('0/1230278',
'0/12302B8');
-[ RECORD 1 ]-----+-----+
start_lsn      | 0/1230278
end_lsn        | 0/12302B8
prev_lsn       | 0/122FD40
block_id       | 0
reltablespace  | 1663
reldatabase    | 1
relfilenode    | 2658
relforknumber  | 0
relblocknumber | 11
xid            | 341
resource_manager | Btree
record_type     | INSERT_LEAF
record_length   | 64
main_data_length | 2
block_data_length | 16
block_fpi_length | 0
block_fpi_info  |
description     | off: 46
block_data      | \x00002a00070010402630000070696400
```

block\_fpi\_data |

This example involves a WAL record that only contains one block reference, but many WAL records contain several block references. Rows output by `pg_get_wal_block_info` are guaranteed to have a unique combination of `start_lsn` and `block_id` values.

Much of the information shown here matches the output that `pg_get_wal_records_info` would show, given the same arguments. However, `pg_get_wal_block_info` unnests the information from each WAL record into an expanded form by outputting one row per block reference, so certain details are tracked at the block reference level rather than at the whole-record level. This structure is useful with queries that track how individual blocks changed over time. Note that records with no block references (e.g., COMMIT WAL records) will have no rows returned, so `pg_get_wal_block_info` may actually return *fewer* rows than `pg_get_wal_records_info`.

The `reltablespace`, `reldatabase`, and `relfilenode` parameters reference `pg_tablespace.oid`, `pg_database.oid`, and `pg_class.relfilenode` respectively. The `relforknumber` field is the fork number within the relation for the block reference; see `common/relpath.h` for details.

### Tip

The `pg_filenode_relation` function (see Table 9.97) can help you to determine which relation was modified during original execution.

It is possible for clients to avoid the overhead of materializing block data. This may make function execution significantly faster. When `show_data` is set to `false`, `block_data` and `block_fpi_data` values are omitted (that is, the `block_data` and `block_fpi_data` OUT arguments are NULL for all rows returned). Obviously, this optimization is only feasible with queries where block data isn't truly required.

The function raises an error if `start_lsn` is not available.

`pg_get_wal_stats(start_lsn pg_lsn, end_lsn pg_lsn, per_record boolean DEFAULT false)` returns setof record

Gets statistics of all the valid WAL records between `start_lsn` and `end_lsn`. By default, it returns one row per `resource_manager` type. When `per_record` is set to `true`, it returns one row per `record_type`. For example:

```
postgres=# SELECT * FROM pg_get_wal_stats('0/1E847D00',
      '0/1E84F500')
      WHERE count > 0 AND
            "resource_manager/record_type" = 'Transaction'
      LIMIT 1;
-[ RECORD 1 ]-----+-----
resource_manager/record_type | Transaction
count                       | 2
count_percentage            | 8
record_size                 | 875
record_size_percentage      | 41.23468426013195
fpi_size                    | 0
fpi_size_percentage         | 0
combined_size               | 875
combined_size_percentage    | 2.8634072910530795
```

The function raises an error if `start_lsn` is not available.

## **F.37.2. Author**

Bharath Rupireddy <bharath.rupireddyforpostgres@gmail.com>

## F.38. `postgres_fdw` — access data stored in external PostgreSQL servers

The `postgres_fdw` module provides the foreign-data wrapper `postgres_fdw`, which can be used to access data stored in external PostgreSQL servers.

The functionality provided by this module overlaps substantially with the functionality of the older `dblink` module. But `postgres_fdw` provides more transparent and standards-compliant syntax for accessing remote tables, and can give better performance in many cases.

To prepare for remote access using `postgres_fdw`:

1. Install the `postgres_fdw` extension using `CREATE EXTENSION`.
2. Create a foreign server object, using `CREATE SERVER`, to represent each remote database you want to connect to. Specify connection information, except `user` and `password`, as options of the server object.
3. Create a user mapping, using `CREATE USER MAPPING`, for each database user you want to allow to access each foreign server. Specify the remote user name and password to use as `user` and `password` options of the user mapping.
4. Create a foreign table, using `CREATE FOREIGN TABLE` or `IMPORT FOREIGN SCHEMA`, for each remote table you want to access. The columns of the foreign table must match the referenced remote table. You can, however, use table and/or column names different from the remote table's, if you specify the correct remote names as options of the foreign table object.

Now you need only `SELECT` from a foreign table to access the data stored in its underlying remote table. You can also modify the remote table using `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE`, `COPY`, or `TRUNCATE`. (Of course, the remote user you have specified in your user mapping must have privileges to do these things.)

Note that the `ONLY` option specified in `SELECT`, `UPDATE`, `DELETE` or `TRUNCATE` has no effect when accessing or modifying the remote table.

Note that `postgres_fdw` currently lacks support for `INSERT` statements with an `ON CONFLICT DO UPDATE` clause. However, the `ON CONFLICT DO NOTHING` clause is supported, provided a unique index inference specification is omitted. Note also that `postgres_fdw` supports row movement invoked by `UPDATE` statements executed on partitioned tables, but it currently does not handle the case where a remote partition chosen to insert a moved row into is also an `UPDATE` target partition that will be updated elsewhere in the same command.

It is generally recommended that the columns of a foreign table be declared with exactly the same data types, and collations if applicable, as the referenced columns of the remote table. Although `postgres_fdw` is currently rather forgiving about performing data type conversions at need, surprising semantic anomalies may arise when types or collations do not match, due to the remote server interpreting query conditions differently from the local server.

Note that a foreign table can be declared with fewer columns, or with a different column order, than its underlying remote table has. Matching of columns to the remote table is by name, not position.

### F.38.1. FDW Options of `postgres_fdw`

#### F.38.1.1. Connection Options

A foreign server using the `postgres_fdw` foreign data wrapper can have the same options that `libpq` accepts in connection strings, as described in Section 34.1.2, except that these options are not allowed or have special handling:

- `user`, `password` and `sslpassword` (specify these in a user mapping, instead, or use a service file)

- `client_encoding` (this is automatically set from the local server encoding)
- `application_name` - this may appear in *either or both* a connection and `postgres_fdw.application_name`. If both are present, `postgres_fdw.application_name` overrides the connection setting. Unlike `libpq`, `postgres_fdw` allows `application_name` to include “escape sequences”. See `postgres_fdw.application_name` for details.
- `fallback_application_name` (always set to `postgres_fdw`)
- `sslkey` and `sslcert` - these may appear in *either or both* a connection and a user mapping. If both are present, the user mapping setting overrides the connection setting.

Only superusers may create or modify user mappings with the `sslcert` or `sslkey` settings.

Non-superusers may connect to foreign servers using password authentication or with GSSAPI delegated credentials, so specify the `password` option for user mappings belonging to non-superusers where password authentication is required.

A superuser may override this check on a per-user-mapping basis by setting the user mapping option `password_required 'false'`, e.g.,

```
ALTER USER MAPPING FOR some_non_superuser SERVER loopback_nopw
OPTIONS (ADD password_required 'false');
```

To prevent unprivileged users from exploiting the authentication rights of the unix user the postgres server is running as to escalate to superuser rights, only the superuser may set this option on a user mapping.

Care is required to ensure that this does not allow the mapped user the ability to connect as superuser to the mapped database per CVE-2007-3278 and CVE-2007-6601. Don't set `password_required=false` on the `public` role. Keep in mind that the mapped user can potentially use any client certificates, `.pgpass`, `.pg_service.conf` etc. in the unix home directory of the system user the postgres server runs as. They can also use any trust relationship granted by authentication modes like `peer` or `ident` authentication.

### F.38.1.2. Object Name Options

These options can be used to control the names used in SQL statements sent to the remote PostgreSQL server. These options are needed when a foreign table is created with names different from the underlying remote table's names.

`schema_name (string)`

This option, which can be specified for a foreign table, gives the schema name to use for the foreign table on the remote server. If this option is omitted, the name of the foreign table's schema is used.

`table_name (string)`

This option, which can be specified for a foreign table, gives the table name to use for the foreign table on the remote server. If this option is omitted, the foreign table's name is used.

`column_name (string)`

This option, which can be specified for a column of a foreign table, gives the column name to use for the column on the remote server. If this option is omitted, the column's name is used.

### F.38.1.3. Cost Estimation Options

`postgres_fdw` retrieves remote data by executing queries against remote servers, so ideally the estimated cost of scanning a foreign table should be whatever it costs to be done on the remote server, plus some overhead for communication. The most reliable way to get such an estimate is to ask the remote server and then add something for overhead — but for simple queries, it may not be worth the

cost of an additional remote query to get a cost estimate. So `postgres_fdw` provides the following options to control how cost estimation is done:

`use_remote_estimate` (boolean)

This option, which can be specified for a foreign table or a foreign server, controls whether `postgres_fdw` issues remote `EXPLAIN` commands to obtain cost estimates. A setting for a foreign table overrides any setting for its server, but only for that table. The default is `false`.

`fdw_startup_cost` (floating point)

This option, which can be specified for a foreign server, is a floating point value that is added to the estimated startup cost of any foreign-table scan on that server. This represents the additional overhead of establishing a connection, parsing and planning the query on the remote side, etc. The default value is 100.

`fdw_tuple_cost` (floating point)

This option, which can be specified for a foreign server, is a floating point value that is used as extra cost per-tuple for foreign-table scans on that server. This represents the additional overhead of data transfer between servers. You might increase or decrease this number to reflect higher or lower network delay to the remote server. The default value is 0.01.

When `use_remote_estimate` is true, `postgres_fdw` obtains row count and cost estimates from the remote server and then adds `fdw_startup_cost` and `fdw_tuple_cost` to the cost estimates. When `use_remote_estimate` is false, `postgres_fdw` performs local row count and cost estimation and then adds `fdw_startup_cost` and `fdw_tuple_cost` to the cost estimates. This local estimation is unlikely to be very accurate unless local copies of the remote table's statistics are available. Running `ANALYZE` on the foreign table is the way to update the local statistics; this will perform a scan of the remote table and then calculate and store statistics just as though the table were local. Keeping local statistics can be a useful way to reduce per-query planning overhead for a remote table — but if the remote table is frequently updated, the local statistics will soon be obsolete.

The following option controls how such an `ANALYZE` operation behaves:

`analyze_sampling` (text)

This option, which can be specified for a foreign table or a foreign server, determines if `ANALYZE` on a foreign table samples the data on the remote side, or reads and transfers all data and performs the sampling locally. The supported values are `off`, `random`, `system`, `bernoulli` and `auto`. `off` disables remote sampling, so all data are transferred and sampled locally. `random` performs remote sampling using the `random()` function to choose returned rows, while `system` and `bernoulli` rely on the built-in `TABLESAMPLE` methods of those names. `random` works on all remote server versions, while `TABLESAMPLE` is supported only since 9.5. `auto` (the default) picks the recommended sampling method automatically; currently it means either `bernoulli` or `random` depending on the remote server version.

### F.38.1.4. Remote Execution Options

By default, only `WHERE` clauses using built-in operators and functions will be considered for execution on the remote server. Clauses involving non-built-in functions are checked locally after rows are fetched. If such functions are available on the remote server and can be relied on to produce the same results as they do locally, performance can be improved by sending such `WHERE` clauses for remote execution. This behavior can be controlled using the following option:

`extensions` (string)

This option is a comma-separated list of names of PostgreSQL extensions that are installed, in compatible versions, on both the local and remote servers. Functions and operators that are immutable and belong to a listed extension will be considered shippable to the remote server. This option can only be specified for foreign servers, not per-table.

When using the `extensions` option, *it is the user's responsibility* that the listed extensions exist and behave identically on both the local and remote servers. Otherwise, remote queries may fail or behave unexpectedly.

`fetch_size` (integer)

This option specifies the number of rows `postgres_fdw` should get in each fetch operation. It can be specified for a foreign table or a foreign server. The option specified on a table overrides an option specified for the server. The default is 100.

`batch_size` (integer)

This option specifies the number of rows `postgres_fdw` should insert in each insert operation. It can be specified for a foreign table or a foreign server. The option specified on a table overrides an option specified for the server. The default is 1.

Note the actual number of rows `postgres_fdw` inserts at once depends on the number of columns and the provided `batch_size` value. The batch is executed as a single query, and the libpq protocol (which `postgres_fdw` uses to connect to a remote server) limits the number of parameters in a single query to 65535. When the number of columns \* `batch_size` exceeds the limit, the `batch_size` will be adjusted to avoid an error.

This option also applies when copying into foreign tables. In that case the actual number of rows `postgres_fdw` copies at once is determined in a similar way to the insert case, but it is limited to at most 1000 due to implementation restrictions of the `COPY` command.

### F.38.1.5. Asynchronous Execution Options

`postgres_fdw` supports asynchronous execution, which runs multiple parts of an Append node concurrently rather than serially to improve performance. This execution can be controlled using the following option:

`async_capable` (boolean)

This option controls whether `postgres_fdw` allows foreign tables to be scanned concurrently for asynchronous execution. It can be specified for a foreign table or a foreign server. A table-level option overrides a server-level option. The default is `false`.

In order to ensure that the data being returned from a foreign server is consistent, `postgres_fdw` will only open one connection for a given foreign server and will run all queries against that server sequentially even if there are multiple foreign tables involved, unless those tables are subject to different user mappings. In such a case, it may be more performant to disable this option to eliminate the overhead associated with running queries asynchronously.

Asynchronous execution is applied even when an Append node contains subplan(s) executed synchronously as well as subplan(s) executed asynchronously. In such a case, if the asynchronous subplans are ones processed using `postgres_fdw`, tuples from the asynchronous subplans are not returned until after at least one synchronous subplan returns all tuples, as that subplan is executed while the asynchronous subplans are waiting for the results of asynchronous queries sent to foreign servers. This behavior might change in a future release.

### F.38.1.6. Transaction Management Options

As described in the Transaction Management section, in `postgres_fdw` transactions are managed by creating corresponding remote transactions, and subtransactions are managed by creating corresponding remote subtransactions. When multiple remote transactions are involved in the current local transaction, by default `postgres_fdw` commits or aborts those remote transactions serially when the local transaction is committed or aborted. When multiple remote subtransactions are involved in the current local subtransaction, by default `postgres_fdw` commits or aborts those remote sub-

transactions serially when the local subtransaction is committed or aborted. Performance can be improved with the following options:

`parallel_commit` (boolean)

This option controls whether `postgres_fdw` commits, in parallel, remote transactions opened on a foreign server in a local transaction when the local transaction is committed. This setting also applies to remote and local subtransactions. This option can only be specified for foreign servers, not per-table. The default is `false`.

`parallel_abort` (boolean)

This option controls whether `postgres_fdw` aborts, in parallel, remote transactions opened on a foreign server in a local transaction when the local transaction is aborted. This setting also applies to remote and local subtransactions. This option can only be specified for foreign servers, not per-table. The default is `false`.

If multiple foreign servers with these options enabled are involved in a local transaction, multiple remote transactions on those foreign servers are committed or aborted in parallel across those foreign servers when the local transaction is committed or aborted.

When these options are enabled, a foreign server with many remote transactions may see a negative performance impact when the local transaction is committed or aborted.

### F.38.1.7. Updatability Options

By default all foreign tables using `postgres_fdw` are assumed to be updatable. This may be overridden using the following option:

`updatable` (boolean)

This option controls whether `postgres_fdw` allows foreign tables to be modified using `INSERT`, `UPDATE` and `DELETE` commands. It can be specified for a foreign table or a foreign server. A table-level option overrides a server-level option. The default is `true`.

Of course, if the remote table is not in fact updatable, an error would occur anyway. Use of this option primarily allows the error to be thrown locally without querying the remote server. Note however that the `information_schema` views will report a `postgres_fdw` foreign table to be updatable (or not) according to the setting of this option, without any check of the remote server.

### F.38.1.8. Truncatability Options

By default all foreign tables using `postgres_fdw` are assumed to be truncatable. This may be overridden using the following option:

`truncatable` (boolean)

This option controls whether `postgres_fdw` allows foreign tables to be truncated using the `TRUNCATE` command. It can be specified for a foreign table or a foreign server. A table-level option overrides a server-level option. The default is `true`.

Of course, if the remote table is not in fact truncatable, an error would occur anyway. Use of this option primarily allows the error to be thrown locally without querying the remote server.

### F.38.1.9. Importing Options

`postgres_fdw` is able to import foreign table definitions using `IMPORT FOREIGN SCHEMA`. This command creates foreign table definitions on the local server that match tables or views present on the remote server. If the remote tables to be imported have columns of user-defined data types, the local server must have compatible types of the same names.



Importing behavior can be customized with the following options (given in the `IMPORT FOREIGN SCHEMA` command):

`import_collate` (boolean)

This option controls whether column `COLLATE` options are included in the definitions of foreign tables imported from a foreign server. The default is `true`. You might need to turn this off if the remote server has a different set of collation names than the local server does, which is likely to be the case if it's running on a different operating system. If you do so, however, there is a very severe risk that the imported table columns' collations will not match the underlying data, resulting in anomalous query behavior.

Even when this parameter is set to `true`, importing columns whose collation is the remote server's default can be risky. They will be imported with `COLLATE "default"`, which will select the local server's default collation, which could be different.

`import_default` (boolean)

This option controls whether column `DEFAULT` expressions are included in the definitions of foreign tables imported from a foreign server. The default is `false`. If you enable this option, be wary of defaults that might get computed differently on the local server than they would be on the remote server; `nextval()` is a common source of problems. The `IMPORT` will fail altogether if an imported default expression uses a function or operator that does not exist locally.

`import_generated` (boolean)

This option controls whether column `GENERATED` expressions are included in the definitions of foreign tables imported from a foreign server. The default is `true`. The `IMPORT` will fail altogether if an imported generated expression uses a function or operator that does not exist locally.

`import_not_null` (boolean)

This option controls whether column `NOT NULL` constraints are included in the definitions of foreign tables imported from a foreign server. The default is `true`.

Note that constraints other than `NOT NULL` will never be imported from the remote tables. Although PostgreSQL does support check constraints on foreign tables, there is no provision for importing them automatically, because of the risk that a constraint expression could evaluate differently on the local and remote servers. Any such inconsistency in the behavior of a check constraint could lead to hard-to-detect errors in query optimization. So if you wish to import check constraints, you must do so manually, and you should verify the semantics of each one carefully. For more detail about the treatment of check constraints on foreign tables, see `CREATE FOREIGN TABLE`.

Tables or foreign tables which are partitions of some other table are imported only when they are explicitly specified in `LIMIT TO` clause. Otherwise they are automatically excluded from `IMPORT FOREIGN SCHEMA`. Since all data can be accessed through the partitioned table which is the root of the partitioning hierarchy, importing only partitioned tables should allow access to all the data without creating extra objects.

## F.38.1.10. Connection Management Options

By default, all connections that `postgres_fdw` establishes to foreign servers are kept open in the local session for re-use.

`keep_connections` (boolean)

This option controls whether `postgres_fdw` keeps the connections to the foreign server open so that subsequent queries can re-use them. It can only be specified for a foreign server. The default is `on`. If set to `off`, all connections to this foreign server will be discarded at the end of each transaction.

## F.38.2. Functions

`postgres_fdw_get_connections(OUT server_name text, OUT valid boolean)` returns setof record

This function returns the foreign server names of all the open connections that `postgres_fdw` established from the local session to the foreign servers. It also returns whether each connection is valid or not. `false` is returned if the foreign server connection is used in the current local transaction but its foreign server or user mapping is changed or dropped (Note that server name of an invalid connection will be `NULL` if the server is dropped), and then such invalid connection will be closed at the end of that transaction. `true` is returned otherwise. If there are no open connections, no record is returned. Example usage of the function:

```
postgres=# SELECT * FROM postgres_fdw_get_connections() ORDER BY
1;
 server_name | valid 
-----+-----
 loopback1   | t
 loopback2   | f
```

`postgres_fdw_disconnect(server_name text)` returns boolean

This function discards the open connections that are established by `postgres_fdw` from the local session to the foreign server with the given name. Note that there can be multiple connections to the given server using different user mappings. If the connections are used in the current local transaction, they are not disconnected and warning messages are reported. This function returns `true` if it disconnects at least one connection, otherwise `false`. If no foreign server with the given name is found, an error is reported. Example usage of the function:

```
postgres=# SELECT postgres_fdw_disconnect('loopback1');
postgres_fdw_disconnect
-----
 t
```

`postgres_fdw_disconnect_all()` returns boolean

This function discards all the open connections that are established by `postgres_fdw` from the local session to foreign servers. If the connections are used in the current local transaction, they are not disconnected and warning messages are reported. This function returns `true` if it disconnects at least one connection, otherwise `false`. Example usage of the function:

```
postgres=# SELECT postgres_fdw_disconnect_all();
postgres_fdw_disconnect_all
-----
 t
```

## F.38.3. Connection Management

`postgres_fdw` establishes a connection to a foreign server during the first query that uses a foreign table associated with the foreign server. By default this connection is kept and re-used for subsequent queries in the same session. This behavior can be controlled using `keep_connections` option for a foreign server. If multiple user identities (user mappings) are used to access the foreign server, a connection is established for each user mapping.

When changing the definition of or removing a foreign server or a user mapping, the associated connections are closed. But note that if any connections are in use in the current local transaction, they are

kept until the end of the transaction. Closed connections will be re-established when they are necessary by future queries using a foreign table.

Once a connection to a foreign server has been established, it's by default kept until the local or corresponding remote session exits. To disconnect a connection explicitly, `keep_connections` option for a foreign server may be disabled, or `postgres_fdw_disconnect` and `postgres_fdw_disconnect_all` functions may be used. For example, these are useful to close connections that are no longer necessary, thereby releasing connections on the foreign server.

## F.38.4. Transaction Management

During a query that references any remote tables on a foreign server, `postgres_fdw` opens a transaction on the remote server if one is not already open corresponding to the current local transaction. The remote transaction is committed or aborted when the local transaction commits or aborts. Savepoints are similarly managed by creating corresponding remote savepoints.

The remote transaction uses `SERIALIZABLE` isolation level when the local transaction has `SERIALIZABLE` isolation level; otherwise it uses `REPEATABLE READ` isolation level. This choice ensures that if a query performs multiple table scans on the remote server, it will get snapshot-consistent results for all the scans. A consequence is that successive queries within a single transaction will see the same data from the remote server, even if concurrent updates are occurring on the remote server due to other activities. That behavior would be expected anyway if the local transaction uses `SERIALIZABLE` or `REPEATABLE READ` isolation level, but it might be surprising for a `READ COMMITTED` local transaction. A future PostgreSQL release might modify these rules.

Note that it is currently not supported by `postgres_fdw` to prepare the remote transaction for two-phase commit.

## F.38.5. Remote Query Optimization

`postgres_fdw` attempts to optimize remote queries to reduce the amount of data transferred from foreign servers. This is done by sending query `WHERE` clauses to the remote server for execution, and by not retrieving table columns that are not needed for the current query. To reduce the risk of misexecution of queries, `WHERE` clauses are not sent to the remote server unless they use only data types, operators, and functions that are built-in or belong to an extension that's listed in the foreign server's `extensions` option. Operators and functions in such clauses must be `IMMUTABLE` as well. For an `UPDATE` or `DELETE` query, `postgres_fdw` attempts to optimize the query execution by sending the whole query to the remote server if there are no query `WHERE` clauses that cannot be sent to the remote server, no local joins for the query, no row-level local `BEFORE` or `AFTER` triggers or stored generated columns on the target table, and no `CHECK OPTION` constraints from parent views. In `UPDATE`, expressions to assign to target columns must use only built-in data types, `IMMUTABLE` operators, or `IMMUTABLE` functions, to reduce the risk of misexecution of the query.

When `postgres_fdw` encounters a join between foreign tables on the same foreign server, it sends the entire join to the foreign server, unless for some reason it believes that it will be more efficient to fetch rows from each table individually, or unless the table references involved are subject to different user mappings. While sending the `JOIN` clauses, it takes the same precautions as mentioned above for the `WHERE` clauses.

The query that is actually sent to the remote server for execution can be examined using `EXPLAIN VERBOSE`.

## F.38.6. Remote Query Execution Environment

In the remote sessions opened by `postgres_fdw`, the `search_path` parameter is set to just `pg_catalog`, so that only built-in objects are visible without schema qualification. This is not an issue for queries generated by `postgres_fdw` itself, because it always supplies such qualification. However, this can pose a hazard for functions that are executed on the remote server via triggers or rules on

remote tables. For example, if a remote table is actually a view, any functions used in that view will be executed with the restricted search path. It is recommended to schema-qualify all names in such functions, or else attach `SET search_path` options (see `CREATE FUNCTION`) to such functions to establish their expected search path environment.

`postgres_fdw` likewise establishes remote session settings for various parameters:

- `TimeZone` is set to `UTC`
- `DateStyle` is set to `ISO`
- `IntervalStyle` is set to `postgres`
- `extra_float_digits` is set to 3 for remote servers 9.0 and newer and is set to 2 for older versions

These are less likely to be problematic than `search_path`, but can be handled with function `SET` options if the need arises.

It is *not* recommended that you override this behavior by changing the session-level settings of these parameters; that is likely to cause `postgres_fdw` to malfunction.

## F.38.7. Cross-Version Compatibility

`postgres_fdw` can be used with remote servers dating back to PostgreSQL 8.3. Read-only capability is available back to 8.1. A limitation however is that `postgres_fdw` generally assumes that immutable built-in functions and operators are safe to send to the remote server for execution, if they appear in a `WHERE` clause for a foreign table. Thus, a built-in function that was added since the remote server's release might be sent to it for execution, resulting in “function does not exist” or a similar error. This type of failure can be worked around by rewriting the query, for example by embedding the foreign table reference in a sub-`SELECT` with `OFFSET 0` as an optimization fence, and placing the problematic function or operator outside the sub-`SELECT`.

## F.38.8. Configuration Parameters

`postgres_fdw.application_name` (string)

Specifies a value for `application_name` configuration parameter used when `postgres_fdw` establishes a connection to a foreign server. This overrides `application_name` option of the server object. Note that change of this parameter doesn't affect any existing connections until they are re-established.

`postgres_fdw.application_name` can be any string of any length and contain even non-ASCII characters. However when it's passed to and used as `application_name` in a foreign server, note that it will be truncated to less than `NAMEDATALEN` characters. Anything other than printable ASCII characters are replaced with C-style hexadecimal escapes. See `application_name` for details.

% characters begin “escape sequences” that are replaced with status information as outlined below. Unrecognized escapes are ignored. Other characters are copied straight to the application name. Note that it's not allowed to specify a plus/minus sign or a numeric literal after the % and before the option, for alignment and padding.

Escape	Effect
%a	Application name on local server
%c	Session ID on local server (see <code>log_line_prefix</code> for details)
%C	Cluster name on local server (see <code>cluster_name</code> for details)
%u	User name on local server
%d	Database name on local server

Escape	Effect
%p	Process ID of backend on local server
%%	Literal %

For example, suppose user `local_user` establishes a connection from database `local_db` to `foreign_db` as user `foreign_user`, the setting `'db=%d, user=%u'` is replaced with `'db=local_db, user=local_user'`.

## F.38.9. Examples

Here is an example of creating a foreign table with `postgres_fdw`. First install the extension:

```
CREATE EXTENSION postgres_fdw;
```

Then create a foreign server using `CREATE SERVER`. In this example we wish to connect to a PostgreSQL server on host `192.83.123.89` listening on port `5432`. The database to which the connection is made is named `foreign_db` on the remote server:

```
CREATE SERVER foreign_server
    FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER postgres_fdw
    OPTIONS (host '192.83.123.89', port '5432', dbname
'foreign_db');
```

A user mapping, defined with `CREATE USER MAPPING`, is needed as well to identify the role that will be used on the remote server:

```
CREATE USER MAPPING FOR local_user
    SERVER foreign_server
    OPTIONS (user 'foreign_user', password 'password');
```

Now it is possible to create a foreign table with `CREATE FOREIGN TABLE`. In this example we wish to access the table named `some_schema.some_table` on the remote server. The local name for it will be `foreign_table`:

```
CREATE FOREIGN TABLE foreign_table (
    id integer NOT NULL,
    data text
)
    SERVER foreign_server
    OPTIONS (schema_name 'some_schema', table_name
'some_table');
```

It's essential that the data types and other properties of the columns declared in `CREATE FOREIGN TABLE` match the actual remote table. Column names must match as well, unless you attach `column_name` options to the individual columns to show how they are named in the remote table. In many cases, use of `IMPORT FOREIGN SCHEMA` is preferable to constructing foreign table definitions manually.

## F.38.10. Author

Shigeru Hanada <shigeru.hanada@gmail.com>

## F.39. seg — a datatype for line segments or floating point intervals

This module implements a data type `seg` for representing line segments, or floating point intervals. `seg` can represent uncertainty in the interval endpoints, making it especially useful for representing laboratory measurements.

This module is considered “trusted”, that is, it can be installed by non-superusers who have `CREATE` privilege on the current database.

### F.39.1. Rationale

The geometry of measurements is usually more complex than that of a point in a numeric continuum. A measurement is usually a segment of that continuum with somewhat fuzzy limits. The measurements come out as intervals because of uncertainty and randomness, as well as because the value being measured may naturally be an interval indicating some condition, such as the temperature range of stability of a protein.

Using just common sense, it appears more convenient to store such data as intervals, rather than pairs of numbers. In practice, it even turns out more efficient in most applications.

Further along the line of common sense, the fuzziness of the limits suggests that the use of traditional numeric data types leads to a certain loss of information. Consider this: your instrument reads 6.50, and you input this reading into the database. What do you get when you fetch it? Watch:

```
test=> select 6.50 :: float8 as "pH";
      pH
----
6.5
(1 row)
```

In the world of measurements, 6.50 is not the same as 6.5. It may sometimes be critically different. The experimenters usually write down (and publish) the digits they trust. 6.50 is actually a fuzzy interval contained within a bigger and even fuzzier interval, 6.5, with their center points being (probably) the only common feature they share. We definitely do not want such different data items to appear the same.

Conclusion? It is nice to have a special data type that can record the limits of an interval with arbitrarily variable precision. Variable in the sense that each data element records its own precision.

Check this out:

```
test=> select '6.25 .. 6.50'::seg as "pH";
      pH
-----
6.25 .. 6.50
(1 row)
```

### F.39.2. Syntax

The external representation of an interval is formed using one or two floating-point numbers joined by the range operator (`..` or `...`). Alternatively, it can be specified as a center point plus or minus a deviation. Optional certainty indicators (`<`, `>` or `~`) can be stored as well. (Certainty indicators are ignored by all the built-in operators, however.) Table F.28 gives an overview of allowed representations; Table F.29 shows some examples.

In Table F.28,  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $\delta$  denote floating-point numbers.  $x$  and  $y$ , but not  $\delta$ , can be preceded by a certainty indicator.

**Table F.28. `seg` External Representations**

$x$	Single value (zero-length interval)
$x \dots y$	Interval from $x$ to $y$
$x (+-) \delta$	Interval from $x - \delta$ to $x + \delta$
$x \dots$	Open interval with lower bound $x$
$\dots x$	Open interval with upper bound $x$

**Table F.29. Examples of Valid `seg` Input**

5.0	Creates a zero-length segment (a point, if you will)
~5.0	Creates a zero-length segment and records ~ in the data. ~ is ignored by <code>seg</code> operations, but is preserved as a comment.
<5.0	Creates a point at 5.0. < is ignored but is preserved as a comment.
>5.0	Creates a point at 5.0. > is ignored but is preserved as a comment.
5(+-.0.3	Creates an interval 4.7 . . 5.3. Note that the (+-) notation isn't preserved.
50 . .	Everything that is greater than or equal to 50
. . 0	Everything that is less than or equal to 0
1.5e-2 . . 2E-2	Creates an interval 0.015 . . 0.02
1 . . . 2	The same as 1 . . . 2, or 1 . . 2, or 1 . . 2 (spaces around the range operator are ignored)

Because the . . . operator is widely used in data sources, it is allowed as an alternative spelling of the . . operator. Unfortunately, this creates a parsing ambiguity: it is not clear whether the upper bound in 0 . . . 23 is meant to be 23 or 0.23. This is resolved by requiring at least one digit before the decimal point in all numbers in `seg` input.

As a sanity check, `seg` rejects intervals with the lower bound greater than the upper, for example 5 . . 2.

## F.39.3. Precision

`seg` values are stored internally as pairs of 32-bit floating point numbers. This means that numbers with more than 7 significant digits will be truncated.

Numbers with 7 or fewer significant digits retain their original precision. That is, if your query returns 0.00, you will be sure that the trailing zeroes are not the artifacts of formatting: they reflect the precision of the original data. The number of leading zeroes does not affect precision: the value 0.0067 is considered to have just 2 significant digits.

## F.39.4. Usage

The `seg` module includes a GiST index operator class for `seg` values. The operators supported by the GiST operator class are shown in Table F.30.

**Table F.30. `Seg` GiST Operators**

Operator	Description
<code>seg &lt;&lt; seg</code>	<code>→ boolean</code>

Operator	Description
	Is the first <code>seg</code> entirely to the left of the second? <code>[a, b] &lt;&lt; [c, d]</code> is true if <code>b &lt; c</code> .
<code>seg &gt;&gt; seg</code>	<code>boolean</code> Is the first <code>seg</code> entirely to the right of the second? <code>[a, b] &gt;&gt; [c, d]</code> is true if <code>a &gt; d</code> .
<code>seg &amp;&lt; seg</code>	<code>boolean</code> Does the first <code>seg</code> not extend to the right of the second? <code>[a, b] &amp;&lt; [c, d]</code> is true if <code>b &lt;= d</code> .
<code>seg &amp;&gt; seg</code>	<code>boolean</code> Does the first <code>seg</code> not extend to the left of the second? <code>[a, b] &amp;&gt; [c, d]</code> is true if <code>a &gt;= c</code> .
<code>seg = seg</code>	<code>boolean</code> Are the two <code>segs</code> equal?
<code>seg &amp;&amp; seg</code>	<code>boolean</code> Do the two <code>segs</code> overlap?
<code>seg @&gt; seg</code>	<code>boolean</code> Does the first <code>seg</code> contain the second?
<code>seg &lt;@ seg</code>	<code>boolean</code> Is the first <code>seg</code> contained in the second?

In addition to the above operators, the usual comparison operators shown in Table 9.1 are available for type `seg`. These operators first compare (a) to (c), and if these are equal, compare (b) to (d). That results in reasonably good sorting in most cases, which is useful if you want to use `ORDER BY` with this type.

## F.39.5. Notes

For examples of usage, see the regression test `sql/seg.sql`.

The mechanism that converts `(+-)` to regular ranges isn't completely accurate in determining the number of significant digits for the boundaries. For example, it adds an extra digit to the lower boundary if the resulting interval includes a power of ten:

```
postgres=> select '10(+-)1'::seg as seg;
      seg
-----
9.0 .. 11          -- should be: 9 .. 11
```

The performance of an R-tree index can largely depend on the initial order of input values. It may be very helpful to sort the input table on the `seg` column; see the script `sort-segments.pl` for an example.

## F.39.6. Credits

Original author: Gene Selkov, Jr. <selkovjr@mcs.anl.gov>, Mathematics and Computer Science Division, Argonne National Laboratory.

My thanks are primarily to Prof. Joe Hellerstein (<https://dsf.berkeley.edu/jmh/>) for elucidating the gist of the GiST (<http://gist.cs.berkeley.edu/>). I am also grateful to all Postgres developers, present and past, for enabling myself to create my own world and live undisturbed in it. And I would like to acknowledge my gratitude to Argonne Lab and to the U.S. Department of Energy for the years of faithful support of my database research.



## F.40. sepgsql — SELinux-, label-based mandatory access control (MAC) security module

`sepgsql` is a loadable module that supports label-based mandatory access control (MAC) based on SELinux security policy.

### Warning

The current implementation has significant limitations, and does not enforce mandatory access control for all actions. See Section F.40.7.

### F.40.1. Overview

This module integrates with SELinux to provide an additional layer of security checking above and beyond what is normally provided by PostgreSQL. From the perspective of SELinux, this module allows PostgreSQL to function as a user-space object manager. Each table or function access initiated by a DML query will be checked against the system security policy. This check is in addition to the usual SQL permissions checking performed by PostgreSQL.

SELinux access control decisions are made using security labels, which are represented by strings such as `system_u:object_r:sepgsql_table_t:s0`. Each access control decision involves two labels: the label of the subject attempting to perform the action, and the label of the object on which the operation is to be performed. Since these labels can be applied to any sort of object, access control decisions for objects stored within the database can be (and, with this module, are) subjected to the same general criteria used for objects of any other type, such as files. This design is intended to allow a centralized security policy to protect information assets independent of the particulars of how those assets are stored.

The `SECURITY LABEL` statement allows assignment of a security label to a database object.

### F.40.2. Installation

`sepgsql` can only be used on Linux 2.6.28 or higher with SELinux enabled. It is not available on any other platform. You will also need `libselinux` 2.1.10 or higher and `selinux-policy` 3.9.13 or higher (although some distributions may backport the necessary rules into older policy versions).

The `sestatus` command allows you to check the status of SELinux. A typical display is:

```
$ sestatus
SELinux status:                enabled
SELinuxfs mount:              /selinux
Current mode:                  enforcing
Mode from config file:         enforcing
Policy version:                24
Policy from config file:       targeted
```

If SELinux is disabled or not installed, you must set that product up first before installing this module.

To build this module, include the option `--with-selinux` in your PostgreSQL configure command. Be sure that the `libselinux-devel` RPM is installed at build time.

To use this module, you must include `sepgsql` in the `shared_preload_libraries` parameter in `postgresql.conf`. The module will not function correctly if loaded in any other manner. Once the module is loaded, you should execute `sepgsql.sql` in each database. This will install functions needed for security label management, and assign initial security labels.

Here is an example showing how to initialize a fresh database cluster with `sepgsql` functions and security labels installed. Adjust the paths shown as appropriate for your installation:

```
$ export PGDATA=/path/to/data/directory
$ initdb
$ vi $PGDATA/postgresql.conf
    change
        #shared_preload_libraries = ''                # (change
requires restart)
    to
        shared_preload_libraries = 'sepgsql'          # (change
requires restart)
$ for DBNAME in template0 template1 postgres; do
    postgres --single -F -c exit_on_error=true $DBNAME \
        </usr/local/pgsql/share/contrib/sepgsql.sql >/dev/null
done
```

Please note that you may see some or all of the following notifications depending on the particular versions you have of `libselinux` and `selinux-policy`:

```
/etc/selinux/targeted/contexts/sepgsql_contexts: line 33 has
invalid object type db_blobs
/etc/selinux/targeted/contexts/sepgsql_contexts: line 36 has
invalid object type db_language
/etc/selinux/targeted/contexts/sepgsql_contexts: line 37 has
invalid object type db_language
/etc/selinux/targeted/contexts/sepgsql_contexts: line 38 has
invalid object type db_language
/etc/selinux/targeted/contexts/sepgsql_contexts: line 39 has
invalid object type db_language
/etc/selinux/targeted/contexts/sepgsql_contexts: line 40 has
invalid object type db_language
```

These messages are harmless and should be ignored.

If the installation process completes without error, you can now start the server normally.

## F.40.3. Regression Tests

Due to the nature of SELinux, running the regression tests for `sepgsql` requires several extra configuration steps, some of which must be done as root. The regression tests will not be run by an ordinary `make check` or `make installcheck` command; you must set up the configuration and then invoke the test script manually. The tests must be run in the `contrib/sepgsql` directory of a configured PostgreSQL build tree. Although they require a build tree, the tests are designed to be executed against an installed server, that is they are comparable to `make installcheck` not `make check`.

First, set up `sepgsql` in a working database according to the instructions in Section F.40.2. Note that the current operating system user must be able to connect to the database as superuser without password authentication.

Second, build and install the policy package for the regression test. The `sepgsql-regtest` policy is a special purpose policy package which provides a set of rules to be allowed during the regression

tests. It should be built from the policy source file `sepgsql-regtest.te`, which is done using `make` with a Makefile supplied by SELinux. You will need to locate the appropriate Makefile on your system; the path shown below is only an example. (This Makefile is usually supplied by the `selinux-policy-devel` or `selinux-policy` RPM.) Once built, install this policy package using the `semodule` command, which loads supplied policy packages into the kernel. If the package is correctly installed, `semodule -l` should list `sepgsql-regtest` as an available policy package:

```
$ cd .../contrib/sepgsql
$ make -f /usr/share/selinux/devel/Makefile
$ sudo semodule -u sepgsql-regtest.pp
$ sudo semodule -l | grep sepgsql
sepgsql-regtest 1.07
```

Third, turn on `sepgsql_regression_test_mode`. For security reasons, the rules in `sepgsql-regtest` are not enabled by default; the `sepgsql_regression_test_mode` parameter enables the rules needed to launch the regression tests. It can be turned on using the `setsebool` command:

```
$ sudo setsebool sepgsql_regression_test_mode on
$ getsebool sepgsql_regression_test_mode
sepgsql_regression_test_mode --> on
```

Fourth, verify your shell is operating in the `unconfined_t` domain:

```
$ id -Z
unconfined_u:unconfined_r:unconfined_t:s0-s0:c0.c1023
```

See Section F.40.8 for details on adjusting your working domain, if necessary.

Finally, run the regression test script:

```
$ ./test_sepgsql
```

This script will attempt to verify that you have done all the configuration steps correctly, and then it will run the regression tests for the `sepgsql` module.

After completing the tests, it's recommended you disable the `sepgsql_regression_test_mode` parameter:

```
$ sudo setsebool sepgsql_regression_test_mode off
```

You might prefer to remove the `sepgsql-regtest` policy entirely:

```
$ sudo semodule -r sepgsql-regtest
```

## F.40.4. GUC Parameters

`sepgsql.permissive` (boolean)

This parameter enables `sepgsql` to function in permissive mode, regardless of the system setting. The default is off. This parameter can only be set in the `postgresql.conf` file or on the server command line.

When this parameter is on, `sepgsql` functions in permissive mode, even if SELinux in general is working in enforcing mode. This parameter is primarily useful for testing purposes.

`sepgsql.debug_audit` (boolean)

This parameter enables the printing of audit messages regardless of the system policy settings. The default is off, which means that messages will be printed according to the system settings.

The security policy of SELinux also has rules to control whether or not particular accesses are logged. By default, access violations are logged, but allowed accesses are not.

This parameter forces all possible logging to be turned on, regardless of the system policy.

## F.40.5. Features

### F.40.5.1. Controlled Object Classes

The security model of SELinux describes all the access control rules as relationships between a subject entity (typically, a client of the database) and an object entity (such as a database object), each of which is identified by a security label. If access to an unlabeled object is attempted, the object is treated as if it were assigned the label `unlabeled_t`.

Currently, `sepgsql` allows security labels to be assigned to schemas, tables, columns, sequences, views, and functions. When `sepgsql` is in use, security labels are automatically assigned to supported database objects at creation time. This label is called a default security label, and is decided according to the system security policy, which takes as input the creator's label, the label assigned to the new object's parent object and optionally name of the constructed object.

A new database object basically inherits the security label of the parent object, except when the security policy has special rules known as type-transition rules, in which case a different label may be applied. For schemas, the parent object is the current database; for tables, sequences, views, and functions, it is the containing schema; for columns, it is the containing table.

### F.40.5.2. DML Permissions

For tables, `db_table:select`, `db_table:insert`, `db_table:update` or `db_table:delete` are checked for all the referenced target tables depending on the kind of statement; in addition, `db_table:select` is also checked for all the tables that contain columns referenced in the `WHERE` or `RETURNING` clause, as a data source for `UPDATE`, and so on.

Column-level permissions will also be checked for each referenced column. `db_column:select` is checked on not only the columns being read using `SELECT`, but those being referenced in other DML statements; `db_column:update` or `db_column:insert` will also be checked for columns being modified by `UPDATE` or `INSERT`.

For example, consider:

```
UPDATE t1 SET x = 2, y = func1(y) WHERE z = 100;
```

Here, `db_column:update` will be checked for `t1.x`, since it is being updated, `db_column:{select update}` will be checked for `t1.y`, since it is both updated and referenced, and `db_column:select` will be checked for `t1.z`, since it is only referenced. `db_table:{select update}` will also be checked at the table level.

For sequences, `db_sequence:get_value` is checked when we reference a sequence object using `SELECT`; however, note that we do not currently check permissions on execution of corresponding functions such as `lastval()`.

For views, `db_view:expand` will be checked, then any other required permissions will be checked on the objects being expanded from the view, individually.

For functions, `db_procedure: {execute}` will be checked when user tries to execute a function as a part of query, or using fast-path invocation. If this function is a trusted procedure, it also checks `db_procedure: {entrypoint}` permission to check whether it can perform as entry point of trusted procedure.

In order to access any schema object, `db_schema: search` permission is required on the containing schema. When an object is referenced without schema qualification, schemas on which this permission is not present will not be searched (just as if the user did not have `USAGE` privilege on the schema). If an explicit schema qualification is present, an error will occur if the user does not have the requisite permission on the named schema.

The client must be allowed to access all referenced tables and columns, even if they originated from views which were then expanded, so that we apply consistent access control rules independent of the manner in which the table contents are referenced.

The default database privilege system allows database superusers to modify system catalogs using DML commands, and reference or modify toast tables. These operations are prohibited when `sepgsql` is enabled.

### F.40.5.3. DDL Permissions

SELinux defines several permissions to control common operations for each object type; such as creation, alter, drop and relabel of security label. In addition, several object types have special permissions to control their characteristic operations; such as addition or deletion of name entries within a particular schema.

Creating a new database object requires `create` permission. SELinux will grant or deny this permission based on the client's security label and the proposed security label for the new object. In some cases, additional privileges are required:

- `CREATE DATABASE` additionally requires `getattr` permission for the source or template database.
- Creating a schema object additionally requires `add_name` permission on the parent schema.
- Creating a table additionally requires permission to create each individual table column, just as if each table column were a separate top-level object.
- Creating a function marked as `LEAKPROOF` additionally requires `install` permission. (This permission is also checked when `LEAKPROOF` is set for an existing function.)

When `DROP` command is executed, `drop` will be checked on the object being removed. Permissions will be also checked for objects dropped indirectly via `CASCADE`. Deletion of objects contained within a particular schema (tables, views, sequences and procedures) additionally requires `remove_name` on the schema.

When `ALTER` command is executed, `setattr` will be checked on the object being modified for each object types, except for subsidiary objects such as the indexes or triggers of a table, where permissions are instead checked on the parent object. In some cases, additional permissions are required:

- Moving an object to a new schema additionally requires `remove_name` permission on the old schema and `add_name` permission on the new one.
- Setting the `LEAKPROOF` attribute on a function requires `install` permission.
- Using `SECURITY LABEL` on an object additionally requires `relabelfrom` permission for the object in conjunction with its old security label and `relabelto` permission for the object in conjunction with its new security label. (In cases where multiple label providers are installed and the user tries to set a security label, but it is not managed by SELinux, only `setattr` should be checked here. This is currently not done due to implementation restrictions.)

## F.40.5.4. Trusted Procedures

Trusted procedures are similar to security definer functions or setuid commands. SELinux provides a feature to allow trusted code to run using a security label different from that of the client, generally for the purpose of providing highly controlled access to sensitive data (e.g., rows might be omitted, or the precision of stored values might be reduced). Whether or not a function acts as a trusted procedure is controlled by its security label and the operating system security policy. For example:

```
postgres=# CREATE TABLE customer (
           cid      int primary key,
           cname    text,
           credit   text
        );
CREATE TABLE
postgres=# SECURITY LABEL ON COLUMN customer.credit
           IS 'system_u:object_r:sepgsql_secret_table_t:s0';
SECURITY LABEL
postgres=# CREATE FUNCTION show_credit(int) RETURNS text
           AS 'SELECT regexp_replace(credit, ''-[0-9]+$'', ''-
xxxx'', ''g'')
           FROM customer WHERE cid = $1'
           LANGUAGE sql;
CREATE FUNCTION
postgres=# SECURITY LABEL ON FUNCTION show_credit(int)
           IS
           'system_u:object_r:sepgsql_trusted_proc_exec_t:s0';
SECURITY LABEL
```

The above operations should be performed by an administrative user.

```
postgres=# SELECT * FROM customer;
ERROR:  SELinux: security policy violation
postgres=# SELECT cid, cname, show_credit(cid) FROM customer;
 cid | cname | show_credit
-----+-----+-----
   1 | taro  | 1111-2222-3333-xxxx
   2 | hanako | 5555-6666-7777-xxxx
(2 rows)
```

In this case, a regular user cannot reference `customer.credit` directly, but a trusted procedure `show_credit` allows the user to print the credit card numbers of customers with some of the digits masked out.

## F.40.5.5. Dynamic Domain Transitions

It is possible to use SELinux's dynamic domain transition feature to switch the security label of the client process, the client domain, to a new context, if that is allowed by the security policy. The client domain needs the `setcurrent` permission and also `dyntransition` from the old to the new domain.

Dynamic domain transitions should be considered carefully, because they allow users to switch their label, and therefore their privileges, at their option, rather than (as in the case of a trusted procedure) as mandated by the system. Thus, the `dyntransition` permission is only considered safe when used to switch to a domain with a smaller set of privileges than the original one. For example:

```
regression=# select sepgsql_getcon();
```

```

sepgsql_getcon
-----
unconfined_u:unconfined_r:unconfined_t:s0-s0:c0.c1023
(1 row)

regression=# SELECT
  sepgsql_setcon('unconfined_u:unconfined_r:unconfined_t:s0-
s0:c1.c4');
sepgsql_setcon
-----
t
(1 row)

regression=# SELECT
  sepgsql_setcon('unconfined_u:unconfined_r:unconfined_t:s0-
s0:c1.c1023');
ERROR:  SELinux: security policy violation

```

In this example above we were allowed to switch from the larger MCS range `c1 . c1023` to the smaller range `c1 . c4`, but switching back was denied.

A combination of dynamic domain transition and trusted procedure enables an interesting use case that fits the typical process life-cycle of connection pooling software. Even if your connection pooling software is not allowed to run most of SQL commands, you can allow it to switch the security label of the client using the `sepgsql_setcon()` function from within a trusted procedure; that should take some credential to authorize the request to switch the client label. After that, this session will have the privileges of the target user, rather than the connection pooler. The connection pooler can later revert the security label change by again using `sepgsql_setcon()` with `NULL` argument, again invoked from within a trusted procedure with appropriate permissions checks. The point here is that only the trusted procedure actually has permission to change the effective security label, and only does so when given proper credentials. Of course, for secure operation, the credential store (table, procedure definition, or whatever) must be protected from unauthorized access.

### F.40.5.6. Miscellaneous

We reject the `LOAD` command across the board, because any module loaded could easily circumvent security policy enforcement.

## F.40.6. Sepgsql Functions

Table F.31 shows the available functions.

**Table F.31. Sepgsql Functions**

Function	Description
<code>sepgsql_getcon()</code> → text	Returns the client domain, the current security label of the client.
<code>sepgsql_setcon(text)</code> → boolean	Switches the client domain of the current session to the new domain, if allowed by the security policy. It also accepts <code>NULL</code> input as a request to transition to the client's original domain.
<code>sepgsql_mcstrans_in(text)</code> → text	Translates the given qualified MLS/MCS range into raw format if the <code>mcstrans</code> daemon is running.

Function	Description
<code>sepgsql_mcstrans_out ( text ) → text</code>	Translates the given raw MLS/MCS range into qualified format if the mcstrans daemon is running.
<code>sepgsql_restorecon ( text ) → boolean</code>	Sets up initial security labels for all objects within the current database. The argument may be NULL, or the name of a specfile to be used as alternative of the system default.

## F.40.7. Limitations

### Data Definition Language (DDL) Permissions

Due to implementation restrictions, some DDL operations do not check permissions.

### Data Control Language (DCL) Permissions

Due to implementation restrictions, DCL operations do not check permissions.

### Row-level access control

PostgreSQL supports row-level access, but `sepgsql` does not.

### Covert channels

`sepgsql` does not try to hide the existence of a certain object, even if the user is not allowed to reference it. For example, we can infer the existence of an invisible object as a result of primary key conflicts, foreign key violations, and so on, even if we cannot obtain the contents of the object. The existence of a top secret table cannot be hidden; we only hope to conceal its contents.

## F.40.8. External Resources

### SE-PostgreSQL Introduction<sup>6</sup>

This wiki page provides a brief overview, security design, architecture, administration and upcoming features.

### SELinux User's and Administrator's Guide<sup>7</sup>

This document provides a wide spectrum of knowledge to administer SELinux on your systems. It focuses primarily on Red Hat operating systems, but is not limited to them.

### Fedora SELinux FAQ<sup>8</sup>

This document answers frequently asked questions about SELinux. It focuses primarily on Fedora, but is not limited to Fedora.

## F.40.9. Author

KaiGai Kohei <kaigai@ak.jp.nec.com>

---

<sup>6</sup> <https://wiki.postgresql.org/wiki/SEPostgreSQL>

<sup>7</sup> [https://access.redhat.com/documentation/en-us/red\\_hat\\_enterprise\\_linux/7/html/selinux\\_users\\_and\\_administrators\\_guide/index](https://access.redhat.com/documentation/en-us/red_hat_enterprise_linux/7/html/selinux_users_and_administrators_guide/index)

<sup>8</sup> [https://fedoraproject.org/wiki/SELinux\\_FAQ](https://fedoraproject.org/wiki/SELinux_FAQ)



## F.41. spi — Server Programming Interface features/examples

The `spi` module provides several workable examples of using the Server Programming Interface (SPI) and triggers. While these functions are of some value in their own right, they are even more useful as examples to modify for your own purposes. The functions are general enough to be used with any table, but you have to specify table and field names (as described below) while creating a trigger.

Each of the groups of functions described below is provided as a separately-installable extension.

### F.41.1. refint — Functions for Implementing Referential Integrity

`check_primary_key()` and `check_foreign_key()` are used to check foreign key constraints. (This functionality is long since superseded by the built-in foreign key mechanism, of course, but the module is still useful as an example.)

`check_primary_key()` checks the referencing table. To use, create a `BEFORE INSERT OR UPDATE` trigger using this function on a table referencing another table. Specify as the trigger arguments: the referencing table's column name(s) which form the foreign key, the referenced table name, and the column names in the referenced table which form the primary/unique key. To handle multiple foreign keys, create a trigger for each reference.

`check_foreign_key()` checks the referenced table. To use, create a `BEFORE DELETE OR UPDATE` trigger using this function on a table referenced by other table(s). Specify as the trigger arguments: the number of referencing tables for which the function has to perform checking, the action if a referencing key is found (`cascade` — to delete the referencing row, `restrict` — to abort transaction if referencing keys exist, `setnull` — to set referencing key fields to null), the triggered table's column names which form the primary/unique key, then the referencing table name and column names (repeated for as many referencing tables as were specified by first argument). Note that the primary/unique key columns should be marked `NOT NULL` and should have a unique index.

There are examples in `refint.example`.

### F.41.2. autoinc — Functions for Autoincrementing Fields

`autoinc()` is a trigger that stores the next value of a sequence into an integer field. This has some overlap with the built-in “serial column” feature, but it is not the same: `autoinc()` will override attempts to substitute a different field value during inserts, and optionally it can be used to increment the field during updates, too.

To use, create a `BEFORE INSERT` (or optionally `BEFORE INSERT OR UPDATE`) trigger using this function. Specify two trigger arguments: the name of the integer column to be modified, and the name of the sequence object that will supply values. (Actually, you can specify any number of pairs of such names, if you'd like to update more than one autoincrementing column.)

There is an example in `autoinc.example`.

### F.41.3. insert\_username — Functions for Tracking Who Changed a Table

`insert_username()` is a trigger that stores the current user's name into a text field. This can be useful for tracking who last modified a particular row within a table.

To use, create a `BEFORE INSERT` and/or `UPDATE` trigger using this function. Specify a single trigger argument: the name of the text column to be modified.

There is an example in `insert_username.example`.

## F.41.4. `moddatetime` — Functions for Tracking Last Modification Time

`moddatetime()` is a trigger that stores the current time into a `timestamp` field. This can be useful for tracking the last modification time of a particular row within a table.

To use, create a `BEFORE UPDATE` trigger using this function. Specify a single trigger argument: the name of the column to be modified. The column must be of type `timestamp` or `timestamp with time zone`.

There is an example in `moddatetime.example`.

## F.42. sslinfo — obtain client SSL information

The `sslinfo` module provides information about the SSL certificate that the current client provided when connecting to PostgreSQL. The module is useless (most functions will return NULL) if the current connection does not use SSL.

Some of the information available through this module can also be obtained using the built-in system view `pg_stat_ssl`.

This extension won't build at all unless the installation was configured with `--with-ssl=openssl`.

### F.42.1. Functions Provided

`ssl_is_used()` returns boolean

Returns true if current connection to server uses SSL, and false otherwise.

`ssl_version()` returns text

Returns the name of the protocol used for the SSL connection (e.g., TLSv1.0, TLSv1.1, TLSv1.2 or TLSv1.3).

`ssl_cipher()` returns text

Returns the name of the cipher used for the SSL connection (e.g., DHE-RSA-AES256-SHA).

`ssl_client_cert_present()` returns boolean

Returns true if current client has presented a valid SSL client certificate to the server, and false otherwise. (The server might or might not be configured to require a client certificate.)

`ssl_client_serial()` returns numeric

Returns serial number of current client certificate. The combination of certificate serial number and certificate issuer is guaranteed to uniquely identify a certificate (but not its owner — the owner ought to regularly change their keys, and get new certificates from the issuer).

So, if you run your own CA and allow only certificates from this CA to be accepted by the server, the serial number is the most reliable (albeit not very mnemonic) means to identify a user.

`ssl_client_dn()` returns text

Returns the full subject of the current client certificate, converting character data into the current database encoding. It is assumed that if you use non-ASCII characters in the certificate names, your database is able to represent these characters, too. If your database uses the `SQL_ASCII` encoding, non-ASCII characters in the name will be represented as UTF-8 sequences.

The result looks like `/CN=Somebody /C=Some country/O=Some organization`.

`ssl_issuer_dn()` returns text

Returns the full issuer name of the current client certificate, converting character data into the current database encoding. Encoding conversions are handled the same as for `ssl_client_dn`.

The combination of the return value of this function with the certificate serial number uniquely identifies the certificate.

This function is really useful only if you have more than one trusted CA certificate in your server's certificate authority file, or if this CA has issued some intermediate certificate authority certificates.

`ssl_client_dn_field(fieldname text)` returns text

This function returns the value of the specified field in the certificate subject, or NULL if the field is not present. Field names are string constants that are converted into ASN1 object identifiers using the OpenSSL object database. The following values are acceptable:

```
commonName (alias CN)
surname (alias SN)
name
givenName (alias GN)
countryName (alias C)
localityName (alias L)
stateOrProvinceName (alias ST)
organizationName (alias O)
organizationalUnitName (alias OU)
title
description
initials
postalCode
streetAddress
generationQualifier
description
dnQualifier
x500UniqueIdentifier
pseudonym
role
emailAddress
```

All of these fields are optional, except `commonName`. It depends entirely on your CA's policy which of them would be included and which wouldn't. The meaning of these fields, however, is strictly defined by the X.500 and X.509 standards, so you cannot just assign arbitrary meaning to them.

`ssl_issuer_field(fieldname text)` returns text

Same as `ssl_client_dn_field`, but for the certificate issuer rather than the certificate subject.

`ssl_extension_info()` returns setof record

Provide information about extensions of client certificate: extension name, extension value, and if it is a critical extension.

## F.42.2. Author

Victor Wagner <vitus@cryptocom.ru>, Cryptocom LTD

Dmitry Voronin <carriingfate92@yandex.ru>

E-Mail of Cryptocom OpenSSL development group: <openssl@cryptocom.ru>

## F.43. tablefunc — functions that return tables (crosstab and others)

The `tablefunc` module includes various functions that return tables (that is, multiple rows). These functions are useful both in their own right and as examples of how to write C functions that return multiple rows.

This module is considered “trusted”, that is, it can be installed by non-superusers who have `CREATE` privilege on the current database.

### F.43.1. Functions Provided

Table F.32 summarizes the functions provided by the `tablefunc` module.

**Table F.32. tablefunc Functions**

Function	Description
<code>normal_rand ( numvals integer, mean float8, stddev float8 ) → setof float8</code>	Produces a set of normally distributed random values.
<code>crosstab ( sql text ) → setof record</code>	Produces a “pivot table” containing row names plus <i>N</i> value columns, where <i>N</i> is determined by the row type specified in the calling query.
<code>crosstabN ( sql text ) → setof table_crosstab_N</code>	Produces a “pivot table” containing row names plus <i>N</i> value columns. <code>crosstab2</code> , <code>crosstab3</code> , and <code>crosstab4</code> are predefined, but you can create additional <code>crosstabN</code> functions as described below.
<code>crosstab ( source_sql text, category_sql text ) → setof record</code>	Produces a “pivot table” with the value columns specified by a second query.
<code>crosstab ( sql text, N integer ) → setof record</code>	Obsolete version of <code>crosstab ( text )</code> . The parameter <i>N</i> is now ignored, since the number of value columns is always determined by the calling query.
<code>connectby ( relname text, keyid_fld text, parent_keyid_fld text [, order-by_fld text ], start_with text, max_depth integer [, branch_delim text ] ) → setof record</code>	Produces a representation of a hierarchical tree structure.

#### F.43.1.1. normal\_rand

`normal_rand (int numvals, float8 mean, float8 stddev)` returns `setof float8`

`normal_rand` produces a set of normally distributed random values (Gaussian distribution).

*numvals* is the number of values to be returned from the function. *mean* is the mean of the normal distribution of values and *stddev* is the standard deviation of the normal distribution of values.

For example, this call requests 1000 values with a mean of 5 and a standard deviation of 3:

```
test=# SELECT * FROM normal_rand(1000, 5, 3);
      normal_rand
-----
 1.56556322244898
 9.10040991424657
 5.36957140345079
-0.369151492880995
 0.283600703686639
      .
      .
      .
 4.82992125404908
 9.71308014517282
 2.49639286969028
(1000 rows)
```

### F.43.1.2. crosstab(text)

```
crosstab(text sql)
crosstab(text sql, int N)
```

The `crosstab` function is used to produce “pivot” displays, wherein data is listed across the page rather than down. For example, we might have data like

```
row1    val11
row1    val12
row1    val13
...
row2    val21
row2    val22
row2    val23
...
```

which we wish to display like

```
row1    val11    val12    val13    ...
row2    val21    val22    val23    ...
...
```

The `crosstab` function takes a `text` parameter that is an SQL query producing raw data formatted in the first way, and produces a table formatted in the second way.

The `sql` parameter is an SQL statement that produces the source set of data. This statement must return one `row_name` column, one `category` column, and one `value` column. `N` is an obsolete parameter, ignored if supplied (formerly this had to match the number of output value columns, but now that is determined by the calling query).

For example, the provided query might produce a set something like:

```
row_name    cat    value
-----+-----+-----
row1        cat1    val1
row1        cat2    val2
row1        cat3    val3
row1        cat4    val4
```

row2	cat1	val5
row2	cat2	val6
row2	cat3	val7
row2	cat4	val8

The `crosstab` function is declared to return `setof record`, so the actual names and types of the output columns must be defined in the `FROM` clause of the calling `SELECT` statement, for example:

```
SELECT * FROM crosstab('...') AS ct(row_name text, category_1 text,
category_2 text);
```

This example produces a set something like:

	<= value columns ==>	
row_name	category_1	category_2
-----+-----+-----		
row1	val1	val2
row2	val5	val6

The `FROM` clause must define the output as one `row_name` column (of the same data type as the first result column of the SQL query) followed by `N` `value` columns (all of the same data type as the third result column of the SQL query). You can set up as many output value columns as you wish. The names of the output columns are up to you.

The `crosstab` function produces one output row for each consecutive group of input rows with the same `row_name` value. It fills the output value columns, left to right, with the value fields from these rows. If there are fewer rows in a group than there are output value columns, the extra output columns are filled with nulls; if there are more rows, the extra input rows are skipped.

In practice the SQL query should always specify `ORDER BY 1, 2` to ensure that the input rows are properly ordered, that is, values with the same `row_name` are brought together and correctly ordered within the row. Notice that `crosstab` itself does not pay any attention to the second column of the query result; it's just there to be ordered by, to control the order in which the third-column values appear across the page.

Here is a complete example:

```
CREATE TABLE ct(id SERIAL, rowid TEXT, attribute TEXT, value TEXT);
INSERT INTO ct(rowid, attribute, value)
VALUES('test1','att1','val1');
INSERT INTO ct(rowid, attribute, value)
VALUES('test1','att2','val2');
INSERT INTO ct(rowid, attribute, value)
VALUES('test1','att3','val3');
INSERT INTO ct(rowid, attribute, value)
VALUES('test1','att4','val4');
INSERT INTO ct(rowid, attribute, value)
VALUES('test2','att1','val5');
INSERT INTO ct(rowid, attribute, value)
VALUES('test2','att2','val6');
INSERT INTO ct(rowid, attribute, value)
VALUES('test2','att3','val7');
INSERT INTO ct(rowid, attribute, value)
VALUES('test2','att4','val8');

SELECT *
```

```
FROM crosstab(
  'select rowid, attribute, value
   from ct
   where attribute = ''att2'' or attribute = ''att3''
   order by 1,2')
AS ct(row_name text, category_1 text, category_2 text, category_3
text);
```

row_name	category_1	category_2	category_3
test1	val2	val3	
test2	val6	val7	

(2 rows)

You can avoid always having to write out a FROM clause to define the output columns, by setting up a custom crosstab function that has the desired output row type wired into its definition. This is described in the next section. Another possibility is to embed the required FROM clause in a view definition.

### Note

See also the `\crosstabview` command in `psql`, which provides functionality similar to `crosstab()`.

## F.43.1.3. `crosstabN(text)`

```
crosstabN(text sql)
```

The `crosstabN` functions are examples of how to set up custom wrappers for the general `crosstab` function, so that you need not write out column names and types in the calling `SELECT` query. The `tablefunc` module includes `crosstab2`, `crosstab3`, and `crosstab4`, whose output row types are defined as

```
CREATE TYPE tablefunc_crosstab_N AS (
  row_name TEXT,
  category_1 TEXT,
  category_2 TEXT,
  .
  .
  .
  category_N TEXT
);
```

Thus, these functions can be used directly when the input query produces `row_name` and `value` columns of type `text`, and you want 2, 3, or 4 output values columns. In all other ways they behave exactly as described above for the general `crosstab` function.

For instance, the example given in the previous section would also work as

```
SELECT *
FROM crosstab3(
  'select rowid, attribute, value
   from ct
   where attribute = ''att2'' or attribute = ''att3''
```



```
order by 1,2');
```

These functions are provided mostly for illustration purposes. You can create your own return types and functions based on the underlying `crosstab()` function. There are two ways to do it:

- Create a composite type describing the desired output columns, similar to the examples in `contrib/tablefunc/tablefunc--1.0.sql`. Then define a unique function name accepting one text parameter and returning `setof your_type_name`, but linking to the same underlying `crosstab C` function. For example, if your source data produces row names that are text, and values that are `float8`, and you want 5 value columns:

```
CREATE TYPE my_crosstab_float8_5_cols AS (  
    my_row_name text,  
    my_category_1 float8,  
    my_category_2 float8,  
    my_category_3 float8,  
    my_category_4 float8,  
    my_category_5 float8  
);  
  
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION crosstab_float8_5_cols(text)  
    RETURNS setof my_crosstab_float8_5_cols  
    AS '$libdir/tablefunc','crosstab' LANGUAGE C STABLE STRICT;
```

- Use OUT parameters to define the return type implicitly. The same example could also be done this way:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE FUNCTION crosstab_float8_5_cols(  
    IN text,  
    OUT my_row_name text,  
    OUT my_category_1 float8,  
    OUT my_category_2 float8,  
    OUT my_category_3 float8,  
    OUT my_category_4 float8,  
    OUT my_category_5 float8)  
    RETURNS setof record  
    AS '$libdir/tablefunc','crosstab' LANGUAGE C STABLE STRICT;
```

### F.43.1.4. `crosstab(text, text)`

```
crosstab(text source_sql, text category_sql)
```

The main limitation of the single-parameter form of `crosstab` is that it treats all values in a group alike, inserting each value into the first available column. If you want the value columns to correspond to specific categories of data, and some groups might not have data for some of the categories, that doesn't work well. The two-parameter form of `crosstab` handles this case by providing an explicit list of the categories corresponding to the output columns.

`source_sql` is an SQL statement that produces the source set of data. This statement must return one `row_name` column, one `category` column, and one value column. It may also have one or more “extra” columns. The `row_name` column must be first. The `category` and value columns must be the last two columns, in that order. Any columns between `row_name` and `category` are treated as “extra”. The “extra” columns are expected to be the same for all rows with the same `row_name` value.

For example, `source_sql` might produce a set something like:

```
SELECT row_name, extra_col, cat, value FROM foo ORDER BY 1;
```

row_name	extra_col	cat	value
row1	extra1	cat1	val1
row1	extra1	cat2	val2
row1	extra1	cat4	val4
row2	extra2	cat1	val5
row2	extra2	cat2	val6
row2	extra2	cat3	val7
row2	extra2	cat4	val8

*category\_sql* is an SQL statement that produces the set of categories. This statement must return only one column. It must produce at least one row, or an error will be generated. Also, it must not produce duplicate values, or an error will be generated. *category\_sql* might be something like:

```
SELECT DISTINCT cat FROM foo ORDER BY 1;
cat
-----
cat1
cat2
cat3
cat4
```

The `crosstab` function is declared to return `setof record`, so the actual names and types of the output columns must be defined in the `FROM` clause of the calling `SELECT` statement, for example:

```
SELECT * FROM crosstab('...', '...')
AS ct(row_name text, extra text, cat1 text, cat2 text, cat3
text, cat4 text);
```

This will produce a result something like:

		<== value columns ==>			
row_name	extra	cat1	cat2	cat3	cat4
row1	extra1	val1	val2		val4
row2	extra2	val5	val6	val7	val8

The `FROM` clause must define the proper number of output columns of the proper data types. If there are *N* columns in the *source\_sql* query's result, the first *N-2* of them must match up with the first *N-2* output columns. The remaining output columns must have the type of the last column of the *source\_sql* query's result, and there must be exactly as many of them as there are rows in the *category\_sql* query's result.

The `crosstab` function produces one output row for each consecutive group of input rows with the same `row_name` value. The output `row_name` column, plus any “extra” columns, are copied from the first row of the group. The output value columns are filled with the `value` fields from rows having matching category values. If a row's category does not match any output of the *category\_sql* query, its value is ignored. Output columns whose matching category is not present in any input row of the group are filled with nulls.

In practice the *source\_sql* query should always specify `ORDER BY 1` to ensure that values with the same `row_name` are brought together. However, ordering of the categories within a group is not important. Also, it is essential to be sure that the order of the *category\_sql* query's output matches the specified output column order.

Here are two complete examples:

```
create table sales(year int, month int, qty int);
insert into sales values(2007, 1, 1000);
insert into sales values(2007, 2, 1500);
insert into sales values(2007, 7, 500);
insert into sales values(2007, 11, 1500);
insert into sales values(2007, 12, 2000);
insert into sales values(2008, 1, 1000);

select * from crosstab(
  'select year, month, qty from sales order by 1',
  'select m from generate_series(1,12) m'
) as (
  year int,
  "Jan" int,
  "Feb" int,
  "Mar" int,
  "Apr" int,
  "May" int,
  "Jun" int,
  "Jul" int,
  "Aug" int,
  "Sep" int,
  "Oct" int,
  "Nov" int,
  "Dec" int
);

```

year	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun	Jul	Aug	Sep	Oct
2007	1000	1500					500			
	1500	2000								
2008	1000									

(2 rows)

```
CREATE TABLE cth(rowid text, rowdt timestamp, attribute text, val
text);
INSERT INTO cth VALUES('test1','01 March 2003','temperature','42');
INSERT INTO cth VALUES('test1','01 March
2003','test_result','PASS');
INSERT INTO cth VALUES('test1','01 March 2003','volts','2.6987');
INSERT INTO cth VALUES('test2','02 March 2003','temperature','53');
INSERT INTO cth VALUES('test2','02 March
2003','test_result','FAIL');
INSERT INTO cth VALUES('test2','02 March 2003','test_startdate','01
March 2003');
INSERT INTO cth VALUES('test2','02 March 2003','volts','3.1234');

SELECT * FROM crosstab
(
  'SELECT rowid, rowdt, attribute, val FROM cth ORDER BY 1',
  'SELECT DISTINCT attribute FROM cth ORDER BY 1'
)
```

```

AS
(
    rowid text,
    rowdt timestamp,
    temperature int4,
    test_result text,
    test_startdate timestamp,
    volts float8
);
rowid |          rowdt          | temperature | test_result |
test_startdate | volts
-----+-----+-----+-----+
+-----+-----+-----+-----+
test1 | Sat Mar 01 00:00:00 2003 |          42 | PASS        |
          |          2.6987          |
test2 | Sun Mar 02 00:00:00 2003 |          53 | FAIL        | Sat
Mar 01 00:00:00 2003 | 3.1234
(2 rows)

```

You can create predefined functions to avoid having to write out the result column names and types in each query. See the examples in the previous section. The underlying C function for this form of crosstab is named `crosstab_hash`.

### F.43.1.5. connectby

```

connectby(text relname, text keyid_fld, text parent_keyid_fld
        [, text orderby_fld ], text start_with, int max_depth
        [, text branch_delim ])

```

The `connectby` function produces a display of hierarchical data that is stored in a table. The table must have a key field that uniquely identifies rows, and a parent-key field that references the parent (if any) of each row. `connectby` can display the sub-tree descending from any row.

Table F.33 explains the parameters.

**Table F.33. connectby Parameters**

Parameter	Description
<i>relname</i>	Name of the source relation
<i>keyid_fld</i>	Name of the key field
<i>parent_keyid_fld</i>	Name of the parent-key field
<i>orderby_fld</i>	Name of the field to order siblings by (optional)
<i>start_with</i>	Key value of the row to start at
<i>max_depth</i>	Maximum depth to descend to, or zero for unlimited depth
<i>branch_delim</i>	String to separate keys with in branch output (optional)

The key and parent-key fields can be any data type, but they must be the same type. Note that the *start\_with* value must be entered as a text string, regardless of the type of the key field.

The `connectby` function is declared to return `setof record`, so the actual names and types of the output columns must be defined in the FROM clause of the calling SELECT statement, for example:

```
SELECT * FROM connectby('connectby_tree', 'keyid', 'parent_keyid',
    'pos', 'row2', 0, '~')
    AS t(keyid text, parent_keyid text, level int, branch text, pos
    int);
```

The first two output columns are used for the current row's key and its parent row's key; they must match the type of the table's key field. The third output column is the depth in the tree and must be of type `integer`. If a `branch_delim` parameter was given, the next output column is the branch display and must be of type `text`. Finally, if an `orderby_fld` parameter was given, the last output column is a serial number, and must be of type `integer`.

The “branch” output column shows the path of keys taken to reach the current row. The keys are separated by the specified `branch_delim` string. If no branch display is wanted, omit both the `branch_delim` parameter and the branch column in the output column list.

If the ordering of siblings of the same parent is important, include the `orderby_fld` parameter to specify which field to order siblings by. This field can be of any sortable data type. The output column list must include a final integer serial-number column, if and only if `orderby_fld` is specified.

The parameters representing table and field names are copied as-is into the SQL queries that `connectby` generates internally. Therefore, include double quotes if the names are mixed-case or contain special characters. You may also need to schema-qualify the table name.

In large tables, performance will be poor unless there is an index on the parent-key field.

It is important that the `branch_delim` string not appear in any key values, else `connectby` may incorrectly report an infinite-recursion error. Note that if `branch_delim` is not provided, a default value of `~` is used for recursion detection purposes.

Here is an example:

```
CREATE TABLE connectby_tree(keyid text, parent_keyid text, pos
    int);

INSERT INTO connectby_tree VALUES('row1',NULL, 0);
INSERT INTO connectby_tree VALUES('row2','row1', 0);
INSERT INTO connectby_tree VALUES('row3','row1', 0);
INSERT INTO connectby_tree VALUES('row4','row2', 1);
INSERT INTO connectby_tree VALUES('row5','row2', 0);
INSERT INTO connectby_tree VALUES('row6','row4', 0);
INSERT INTO connectby_tree VALUES('row7','row3', 0);
INSERT INTO connectby_tree VALUES('row8','row6', 0);
INSERT INTO connectby_tree VALUES('row9','row5', 0);

-- with branch, without orderby_fld (order of results is not
-- guaranteed)
SELECT * FROM connectby('connectby_tree', 'keyid', 'parent_keyid',
    'row2', 0, '~')
    AS t(keyid text, parent_keyid text, level int, branch text);
```

keyid	parent_keyid	level	branch
row2		0	row2
row4	row2	1	row2~row4
row6	row4	2	row2~row4~row6
row8	row6	3	row2~row4~row6~row8
row5	row2	1	row2~row5
row9	row5	2	row2~row5~row9

(6 rows)

```
-- without branch, without orderby_fld (order of results is not
guaranteed)
SELECT * FROM connectby('connectby_tree', 'keyid', 'parent_keyid',
'row2', 0)
AS t(keyid text, parent_keyid text, level int);
keyid | parent_keyid | level
-----+-----+-----
row2  |              |      0
row4  | row2         |      1
row6  | row4         |      2
row8  | row6         |      3
row5  | row2         |      1
row9  | row5         |      2
(6 rows)
```

```
-- with branch, with orderby_fld (notice that row5 comes before
row4)
SELECT * FROM connectby('connectby_tree', 'keyid', 'parent_keyid',
'pos', 'row2', 0, '~')
AS t(keyid text, parent_keyid text, level int, branch text, pos
int);
keyid | parent_keyid | level |      branch      | pos
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----
row2  |              |      0 | row2              | 1
row5  | row2         |      1 | row2~row5         | 2
row9  | row5         |      2 | row2~row5~row9    | 3
row4  | row2         |      1 | row2~row4         | 4
row6  | row4         |      2 | row2~row4~row6    | 5
row8  | row6         |      3 | row2~row4~row6~row8 | 6
(6 rows)
```

```
-- without branch, with orderby_fld (notice that row5 comes before
row4)
SELECT * FROM connectby('connectby_tree', 'keyid', 'parent_keyid',
'pos', 'row2', 0)
AS t(keyid text, parent_keyid text, level int, pos int);
keyid | parent_keyid | level | pos
-----+-----+-----+-----
row2  |              |      0 | 1
row5  | row2         |      1 | 2
row9  | row5         |      2 | 3
row4  | row2         |      1 | 4
row6  | row4         |      2 | 5
row8  | row6         |      3 | 6
(6 rows)
```

## F.43.2. Author

Joe Conway

## F.44. tcn — a trigger function to notify listeners of changes to table content

The `tcn` module provides a trigger function that notifies listeners of changes to any table on which it is attached. It must be used as an `AFTER` trigger `FOR EACH ROW`.

This module is considered “trusted”, that is, it can be installed by non-superusers who have `CREATE` privilege on the current database.

Only one parameter may be supplied to the function in a `CREATE TRIGGER` statement, and that is optional. If supplied it will be used for the channel name for the notifications. If omitted `tcn` will be used for the channel name.

The payload of the notifications consists of the table name, a letter to indicate which type of operation was performed, and column name/value pairs for primary key columns. Each part is separated from the next by a comma. For ease of parsing using regular expressions, table and column names are always wrapped in double quotes, and data values are always wrapped in single quotes. Embedded quotes are doubled.

A brief example of using the extension follows.

```
test=# create table tcndata
test=# (
test(#   a int not null,
test(#   b date not null,
test(#   c text,
test(#   primary key (a, b)
test(# );
CREATE TABLE
test=# create trigger tcndata_tcn_trigger
test=# after insert or update or delete on tcndata
test=# for each row execute function
      triggered_change_notification();
CREATE TRIGGER
test=# listen tcn;
LISTEN
test=# insert into tcndata values (1, date '2012-12-22', 'one'),
test=#                               (1, date '2012-12-23',
      'another'),
test=#                               (2, date '2012-12-23', 'two');
INSERT 0 3
Asynchronous notification "tcn" with payload
  ""tcndata",I,"a"='1',"b"='2012-12-22'" received from server
  process with PID 22770.
Asynchronous notification "tcn" with payload
  ""tcndata",I,"a"='1',"b"='2012-12-23'" received from server
  process with PID 22770.
Asynchronous notification "tcn" with payload
  ""tcndata",I,"a"='2',"b"='2012-12-23'" received from server
  process with PID 22770.
test=# update tcndata set c = 'uno' where a = 1;
UPDATE 2
Asynchronous notification "tcn" with payload
  ""tcndata",U,"a"='1',"b"='2012-12-22'" received from server
  process with PID 22770.
```

```
Asynchronous notification "tcn" with payload
  ""tcndata",U,"a"='1',"b"='2012-12-23'" received from server
  process with PID 22770.
test=# delete from tcndata where a = 1 and b = date '2012-12-22';
DELETE 1
Asynchronous notification "tcn" with payload
  ""tcndata",D,"a"='1',"b"='2012-12-22'" received from server
  process with PID 22770.
```



## F.45. test\_decoding — SQL-based test/example module for WAL logical decoding

`test_decoding` is an example of a logical decoding output plugin. It doesn't do anything especially useful, but can serve as a starting point for developing your own output plugin.

`test_decoding` receives WAL through the logical decoding mechanism and decodes it into text representations of the operations performed.

Typical output from this plugin, used over the SQL logical decoding interface, might be:

```
postgres=# SELECT * FROM pg_logical_slot_get_changes('test_slot',
NULL, NULL, 'include-xids', '0');
   lsn   | xid | data
-----+-----
0/16D30F8 | 691 | BEGIN
0/16D32A0 | 691 | table public.data: INSERT: id[int4]:2
data[text]: 'arg'
0/16D32A0 | 691 | table public.data: INSERT: id[int4]:3
data[text]: 'demo'
0/16D32A0 | 691 | COMMIT
0/16D32D8 | 692 | BEGIN
0/16D3398 | 692 | table public.data: DELETE: id[int4]:2
0/16D3398 | 692 | table public.data: DELETE: id[int4]:3
0/16D3398 | 692 | COMMIT
(8 rows)
```

We can also get the changes of the in-progress transaction, and the typical output might be:

```
postgres[33712]=#* SELECT * FROM
pg_logical_slot_get_changes('test_slot', NULL, NULL, 'stream-
changes', '1');
   lsn   | xid | data
-----+-----
0/16B21F8 | 503 | opening a streamed block for transaction TXN 503
0/16B21F8 | 503 | streaming change for TXN 503
0/16B2300 | 503 | streaming change for TXN 503
0/16B2408 | 503 | streaming change for TXN 503
0/16BEBA0 | 503 | closing a streamed block for transaction TXN 503
0/16B21F8 | 503 | opening a streamed block for transaction TXN 503
0/16BECA8 | 503 | streaming change for TXN 503
0/16BEDB0 | 503 | streaming change for TXN 503
0/16BEEB8 | 503 | streaming change for TXN 503
0/16BEBA0 | 503 | closing a streamed block for transaction TXN 503
(10 rows)
```

## F.46. tsm\_system\_rows — the SYSTEM\_ROWS sampling method for TABLESAMPLE

The `tsm_system_rows` module provides the table sampling method `SYSTEM_ROWS`, which can be used in the `TABLESAMPLE` clause of a `SELECT` command.

This table sampling method accepts a single integer argument that is the maximum number of rows to read. The resulting sample will always contain exactly that many rows, unless the table does not contain enough rows, in which case the whole table is selected.

Like the built-in `SYSTEM` sampling method, `SYSTEM_ROWS` performs block-level sampling, so that the sample is not completely random but may be subject to clustering effects, especially if only a small number of rows are requested.

`SYSTEM_ROWS` does not support the `REPEATABLE` clause.

This module is considered “trusted”, that is, it can be installed by non-superusers who have `CREATE` privilege on the current database.

### F.46.1. Examples

Here is an example of selecting a sample of a table with `SYSTEM_ROWS`. First install the extension:

```
CREATE EXTENSION tsm_system_rows;
```

Then you can use it in a `SELECT` command, for instance:

```
SELECT * FROM my_table TABLESAMPLE SYSTEM_ROWS(100);
```

This command will return a sample of 100 rows from the table `my_table` (unless the table does not have 100 visible rows, in which case all its rows are returned).

## F.47. tsm\_system\_time — the SYSTEM\_TIME sampling method for TABLESAMPLE

The `tsm_system_time` module provides the table sampling method `SYSTEM_TIME`, which can be used in the `TABLESAMPLE` clause of a `SELECT` command.

This table sampling method accepts a single floating-point argument that is the maximum number of milliseconds to spend reading the table. This gives you direct control over how long the query takes, at the price that the size of the sample becomes hard to predict. The resulting sample will contain as many rows as could be read in the specified time, unless the whole table has been read first.

Like the built-in `SYSTEM` sampling method, `SYSTEM_TIME` performs block-level sampling, so that the sample is not completely random but may be subject to clustering effects, especially if only a small number of rows are selected.

`SYSTEM_TIME` does not support the `REPEATABLE` clause.

This module is considered “trusted”, that is, it can be installed by non-superusers who have `CREATE` privilege on the current database.

### F.47.1. Examples

Here is an example of selecting a sample of a table with `SYSTEM_TIME`. First install the extension:

```
CREATE EXTENSION tsm_system_time;
```

Then you can use it in a `SELECT` command, for instance:

```
SELECT * FROM my_table TABLESAMPLE SYSTEM_TIME(1000);
```

This command will return as large a sample of `my_table` as it can read in 1 second (1000 milliseconds). Of course, if the whole table can be read in under 1 second, all its rows will be returned.

## F.48. unaccent — a text search dictionary which removes diacritics

`unaccent` is a text search dictionary that removes accents (diacritic signs) from lexemes. It's a filtering dictionary, which means its output is always passed to the next dictionary (if any), unlike the normal behavior of dictionaries. This allows accent-insensitive processing for full text search.

The current implementation of `unaccent` cannot be used as a normalizing dictionary for the `thesaurus` dictionary.

This module is considered “trusted”, that is, it can be installed by non-superusers who have `CREATE` privilege on the current database.

### F.48.1. Configuration

An `unaccent` dictionary accepts the following options:

- `RULES` is the base name of the file containing the list of translation rules. This file must be stored in `$SHAREDIR/tsearch_data/` (where `$SHAREDIR` means the PostgreSQL installation's shared-data directory). Its name must end in `.rules` (which is not to be included in the `RULES` parameter).

The rules file has the following format:

- Each line represents one translation rule, consisting of a character with accent followed by a character without accent. The first is translated into the second. For example,

À	A
Á	A
Â	A
Ã	A
Ä	A
Å	A
Æ	AE

The two characters must be separated by whitespace, and any leading or trailing whitespace on a line is ignored.

- Alternatively, if only one character is given on a line, instances of that character are deleted; this is useful in languages where accents are represented by separate characters.
- Actually, each “character” can be any string not containing whitespace, so `unaccent` dictionaries could be used for other sorts of substring substitutions besides diacritic removal.
- As with other PostgreSQL text search configuration files, the rules file must be stored in UTF-8 encoding. The data is automatically translated into the current database's encoding when loaded. Any lines containing untranslatable characters are silently ignored, so that rules files can contain rules that are not applicable in the current encoding.

A more complete example, which is directly useful for most European languages, can be found in `unaccent.rules`, which is installed in `$SHAREDIR/tsearch_data/` when the `unaccent` module is installed. This rules file translates characters with accents to the same characters without accents, and it also expands ligatures into the equivalent series of simple characters (for example, `Æ` to `AE`).

## F.48.2. Usage

Installing the `unaccent` extension creates a text search template `unaccent` and a dictionary `unaccent` based on it. The `unaccent` dictionary has the default parameter setting `RULES='unaccent'`, which makes it immediately usable with the standard `unaccent.rules` file. If you wish, you can alter the parameter, for example

```
mydb=# ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY unaccent (RULES='my_rules');
```

or create new dictionaries based on the template.

To test the dictionary, you can try:

```
mydb=# select ts_lexize('unaccent','Hôtel');
 ts_lexize
-----
 {Hotel}
(1 row)
```

Here is an example showing how to insert the `unaccent` dictionary into a text search configuration:

```
mydb=# CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION fr ( COPY = french );
mydb=# ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION fr
        ALTER MAPPING FOR hword, hword_part, word
        WITH unaccent, french_stem;
mydb=# select to_tsvector('fr','Hôtels de la Mer');
 to_tsvector
-----
 'hotel':1 'mer':4
(1 row)

mydb=# select to_tsvector('fr','Hôtel de la Mer') @@
 to_tsquery('fr','Hotels');
?column?
-----
 t
(1 row)

mydb=# select ts_headline('fr','Hôtel de la
 Mer',to_tsquery('fr','Hotels'));
 ts_headline
-----
 <b>Hôtel</b> de la Mer
(1 row)
```

## F.48.3. Functions

The `unaccent()` function removes accents (diacritic signs) from a given string. Basically, it's a wrapper around `unaccent`-type dictionaries, but it can be used outside normal text search contexts.

`unaccent([dictionary regdictionary, ] string text)` returns *text*

If the *dictionary* argument is omitted, the text search dictionary named `unaccent` and appearing in the same schema as the `unaccent()` function itself is used.

For example:

```
SELECT unaccent('unaccent', 'Hôtel');  
SELECT unaccent('Hôtel');
```

## F.49. uuid-ossP — a UUID generator

The `uuid-ossP` module provides functions to generate universally unique identifiers (UUIDs) using one of several standard algorithms. There are also functions to produce certain special UUID constants. This module is only necessary for special requirements beyond what is available in core PostgreSQL. See Section 9.14 for built-in ways to generate UUIDs.

This module is considered “trusted”, that is, it can be installed by non-superusers who have `CREATE` privilege on the current database.

### F.49.1. uuid-ossP Functions

Table F.34 shows the functions available to generate UUIDs. The relevant standards ITU-T Rec. X.667, ISO/IEC 9834-8:2005, and RFC 4122<sup>9</sup> specify four algorithms for generating UUIDs, identified by the version numbers 1, 3, 4, and 5. (There is no version 2 algorithm.) Each of these algorithms could be suitable for a different set of applications.

**Table F.34. Functions for UUID Generation**

Function	Description
<code>uuid_generate_v1 () → uuid</code>	Generates a version 1 UUID. This involves the MAC address of the computer and a time stamp. Note that UUIDs of this kind reveal the identity of the computer that created the identifier and the time at which it did so, which might make it unsuitable for certain security-sensitive applications.
<code>uuid_generate_v1mc () → uuid</code>	Generates a version 1 UUID, but uses a random multicast MAC address instead of the real MAC address of the computer.
<code>uuid_generate_v3 ( namespace uuid, name text ) → uuid</code>	Generates a version 3 UUID in the given namespace using the specified input name. The namespace should be one of the special constants produced by the <code>uuid_ns_*</code> ( ) functions shown in Table F.35. (It could be any UUID in theory.) The name is an identifier in the selected namespace. For example:  <pre>SELECT uuid_generate_v3(uuid_ns_url(), 'http:// www.postgresql.org');</pre> The name parameter will be MD5-hashed, so the cleartext cannot be derived from the generated UUID. The generation of UUIDs by this method has no random or environment-dependent element and is therefore reproducible.
<code>uuid_generate_v4 () → uuid</code>	Generates a version 4 UUID, which is derived entirely from random numbers.
<code>uuid_generate_v5 ( namespace uuid, name text ) → uuid</code>	Generates a version 5 UUID, which works like a version 3 UUID except that SHA-1 is used as a hashing method. Version 5 should be preferred over version 3 because SHA-1 is thought to be more secure than MD5.

<sup>9</sup> <https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc4122>

**Table F.35. Functions Returning UUID Constants**

Function	Description
<code>uuid_nil () → uuid</code>	Returns a “nil” UUID constant, which does not occur as a real UUID.
<code>uuid_ns_dns () → uuid</code>	Returns a constant designating the DNS namespace for UUIDs.
<code>uuid_ns_url () → uuid</code>	Returns a constant designating the URL namespace for UUIDs.
<code>uuid_ns_oid () → uuid</code>	Returns a constant designating the ISO object identifier (OID) namespace for UUIDs. (This pertains to ASN.1 OIDs, which are unrelated to the OIDs used in PostgreSQL.)
<code>uuid_ns_x500 () → uuid</code>	Returns a constant designating the X.500 distinguished name (DN) namespace for UUIDs.

## F.49.2. Building `uuid-ossdp`

Historically this module depended on the OSSP UUID library, which accounts for the module's name. While the OSSP UUID library can still be found at <http://www.ossdp.org/pkg/lib/uuid/>, it is not well maintained, and is becoming increasingly difficult to port to newer platforms. `uuid-ossdp` can now be built without the OSSP library on some platforms. On FreeBSD and some other BSD-derived platforms, suitable UUID creation functions are included in the core `libc` library. On Linux, macOS, and some other platforms, suitable functions are provided in the `libuuid` library, which originally came from the `e2fsprogs` project (though on modern Linux it is considered part of `util-linux-ng`). When invoking `configure`, specify `--with-uuid=bsd` to use the BSD functions, or `--with-uuid=e2fs` to use `e2fsprogs`' `libuuid`, or `--with-uuid=ossdp` to use the OSSP UUID library. More than one of these libraries might be available on a particular machine, so `configure` does not automatically choose one.

## F.49.3. Author

Peter Eisentraut <[peter\\_e@gmx.net](mailto:peter_e@gmx.net)>



## F.50. xml2 — XPath querying and XSLT functionality

The `xml2` module provides XPath querying and XSLT functionality.

### F.50.1. Deprecation Notice

From PostgreSQL 8.3 on, there is XML-related functionality based on the SQL/XML standard in the core server. That functionality covers XML syntax checking and XPath queries, which is what this module does, and more, but the API is not at all compatible. It is planned that this module will be removed in a future version of PostgreSQL in favor of the newer standard API, so you are encouraged to try converting your applications. If you find that some of the functionality of this module is not available in an adequate form with the newer API, please explain your issue to `<pgsql-hacker-s@lists.postgresql.org>` so that the deficiency can be addressed.

### F.50.2. Description of Functions

Table F.36 shows the functions provided by this module. These functions provide straightforward XML parsing and XPath queries.

**Table F.36. `xml2` Functions**

Function	Description
<code>xml_valid ( document text ) → boolean</code>	Parses the given document and returns true if the document is well-formed XML. (Note: this is an alias for the standard PostgreSQL function <code>xml_is_well_formed()</code> . The name <code>xml_valid()</code> is technically incorrect since validity and well-formedness have different meanings in XML.)
<code>xpath_string ( document text, query text ) → text</code>	Evaluates the XPath query on the supplied document, and casts the result to <code>text</code> .
<code>xpath_number ( document text, query text ) → real</code>	Evaluates the XPath query on the supplied document, and casts the result to <code>real</code> .
<code>xpath_bool ( document text, query text ) → boolean</code>	Evaluates the XPath query on the supplied document, and casts the result to <code>boolean</code> .
<code>xpath_nodeset ( document text, query text, toptag text, itemtag text ) → text</code>	Evaluates the query on the document and wraps the result in XML tags. If the result is multivalued, the output will look like: <pre> &lt;toptag&gt;   &lt;itemtag&gt;Value 1 which could be an XML fragment&lt;/itemtag&gt;   &lt;itemtag&gt;Value 2....&lt;/itemtag&gt; &lt;/toptag&gt; </pre> If either <code>toptag</code> or <code>itemtag</code> is an empty string, the relevant tag is omitted.
<code>xpath_nodeset ( document text, query text, itemtag text ) → text</code>	Like <code>xpath_nodeset (document, query, toptag, itemtag)</code> but result omits <code>toptag</code> .
<code>xpath_nodeset ( document text, query text ) → text</code>	

Function	Description
	Like <code>xpath_node_set(document, query, toptag, itemtag)</code> but result omits both tags.
<code>xpath_list(document text, query text, separator text) → text</code>	Evaluates the query on the document and returns multiple values separated by the specified separator, for example <code>Value 1, Value 2, Value 3</code> if <code>separator</code> is <code>,</code> .
<code>xpath_list(document text, query text) → text</code>	This is a wrapper for the above function that uses <code>,</code> as the separator.

### F.50.3. xpath\_table

`xpath_table(text key, text document, text relation, text xpaths, text criteria)` returns set of record

`xpath_table` is a table function that evaluates a set of XPath queries on each of a set of documents and returns the results as a table. The primary key field from the original document table is returned as the first column of the result so that the result set can readily be used in joins. The parameters are described in Table F.37.

**Table F.37. xpath\_table Parameters**

Parameter	Description
<i>key</i>	the name of the “key” field — this is just a field to be used as the first column of the output table, i.e., it identifies the record from which each output row came (see note below about multiple values)
<i>document</i>	the name of the field containing the XML document
<i>relation</i>	the name of the table or view containing the documents
<i>xpaths</i>	one or more XPath expressions, separated by <code> </code>
<i>criteria</i>	the contents of the WHERE clause. This cannot be omitted, so use <code>true</code> or <code>1=1</code> if you want to process all the rows in the relation

These parameters (except the XPath strings) are just substituted into a plain SQL SELECT statement, so you have some flexibility — the statement is

```
SELECT <key>, <document> FROM <relation> WHERE <criteria>
```

so those parameters can be *anything* valid in those particular locations. The result from this SELECT needs to return exactly two columns (which it will unless you try to list multiple fields for key or document). Beware that this simplistic approach requires that you validate any user-supplied values to avoid SQL injection attacks.

The function has to be used in a FROM expression, with an AS clause to specify the output columns; for example

```
SELECT * FROM
xpath_table('article_id',
            'article_xml',
            'articles',
            '/article/author|/article/pages|/article/title',
```

```
        'date_entered > '2003-01-01' ' ' )
AS t(article_id integer, author text, page_count integer, title
text);
```

The AS clause defines the names and types of the columns in the output table. The first is the “key” field and the rest correspond to the XPath queries. If there are more XPath queries than result columns, the extra queries will be ignored. If there are more result columns than XPath queries, the extra columns will be NULL.

Notice that this example defines the `page_count` result column as an integer. The function deals internally with string representations, so when you say you want an integer in the output, it will take the string representation of the XPath result and use PostgreSQL input functions to transform it into an integer (or whatever type the AS clause requests). An error will result if it can't do this — for example if the result is empty — so you may wish to just stick to `text` as the column type if you think your data has any problems.

The calling `SELECT` statement doesn't necessarily have to be just `SELECT *` — it can reference the output columns by name or join them to other tables. The function produces a virtual table with which you can perform any operation you wish (e.g., aggregation, joining, sorting etc.). So we could also have:

```
SELECT t.title, p.fullname, p.email
FROM xpath_table('article_id', 'article_xml', 'articles',
                '/article/title|/article/author/@id',
                'xpath_string(article_xml, '/article/@date') >
                '2003-03-20' ' ')
        AS t(article_id integer, title text, author_id integer),
tblPeopleInfo AS p
WHERE t.author_id = p.person_id;
```

as a more complicated example. Of course, you could wrap all of this in a view for convenience.

### F.50.3.1. Multivalued Results

The `xpath_table` function assumes that the results of each XPath query might be multivalued, so the number of rows returned by the function may not be the same as the number of input documents. The first row returned contains the first result from each query, the second row the second result from each query. If one of the queries has fewer values than the others, null values will be returned instead.

In some cases, a user will know that a given XPath query will return only a single result (perhaps a unique document identifier) — if used alongside an XPath query returning multiple results, the single-valued result will appear only on the first row of the result. The solution to this is to use the key field as part of a join against a simpler XPath query. As an example:

```
CREATE TABLE test (
    id int PRIMARY KEY,
    xml text
);

INSERT INTO test VALUES (1, '<doc num="C1">
<line num="L1"><a>1</a><b>2</b><c>3</c></line>
<line num="L2"><a>11</a><b>22</b><c>33</c></line>
</doc>');

INSERT INTO test VALUES (2, '<doc num="C2">
<line num="L1"><a>111</a><b>222</b><c>333</c></line>
<line num="L2"><a>111</a><b>222</b><c>333</c></line>
```

```
</doc>');

SELECT * FROM
  xpath_table('id','xml','test',
              '/doc/@num|/doc/line/@num|/doc/line/a|/doc/line/b|/
doc/line/c',
              'true')
  AS t(id int, doc_num varchar(10), line_num varchar(10), val1 int,
      val2 int, val3 int)
WHERE id = 1 ORDER BY doc_num, line_num
```

id	doc_num	line_num	val1	val2	val3
1	C1	L1	1	2	3
1		L2	11	22	33

To get doc\_num on every line, the solution is to use two invocations of xpath\_table and join the results:

```
SELECT t.*,i.doc_num FROM
  xpath_table('id','xml','test',
              '/doc/line/@num|/doc/line/a|/doc/line/b|/doc/line/c',
              'true')
  AS t(id int, line_num varchar(10), val1 int, val2 int, val3
int),
  xpath_table('id','xml','test','/doc/@num','true')
  AS i(id int, doc_num varchar(10))
WHERE i.id=t.id AND i.id=1
ORDER BY doc_num, line_num;
```

id	line_num	val1	val2	val3	doc_num
1	L1	1	2	3	C1
1	L2	11	22	33	C1

(2 rows)

## F.50.4. XSLT Functions

The following functions are available if libxslt is installed:

### F.50.4.1. xslt\_process

```
xslt_process(text document, text stylesheet, text paramlist)
  returns text
```

This function applies the XSL stylesheet to the document and returns the transformed result. The paramlist is a list of parameter assignments to be used in the transformation, specified in the form a=1,b=2. Note that the parameter parsing is very simple-minded: parameter values cannot contain commas!

There is also a two-parameter version of xslt\_process which does not pass any parameters to the transformation.

## F.50.5. Author

John Gray <jgray@azuli.co.uk>

Development of this module was sponsored by Torchbox Ltd. ([www.torchbox.com](http://www.torchbox.com)). It has the same BSD license as PostgreSQL.

---

# Appendix G. Additional Supplied Programs

This appendix and the previous one contain information regarding the modules that can be found in the `contrib` directory of the PostgreSQL distribution. See Appendix F for more information about the `contrib` section in general and server extensions and plug-ins found in `contrib` specifically.

This appendix covers utility programs found in `contrib`. Once installed, either from source or a packaging system, they are found in the `bin` directory of the PostgreSQL installation and can be used like any other program.

## G.1. Client Applications

This section covers PostgreSQL client applications in `contrib`. They can be run from anywhere, independent of where the database server resides. See also PostgreSQL Client Applications for information about client applications that are part of the core PostgreSQL distribution.

## oid2name

oid2name — resolve OIDs and file nodes in a PostgreSQL data directory

## Synopsis

```
oid2name [option...]
```

## Description

oid2name is a utility program that helps administrators to examine the file structure used by PostgreSQL. To make use of it, you need to be familiar with the database file structure, which is described in Chapter 73.

### Note

The name “oid2name” is historical, and is actually rather misleading, since most of the time when you use it, you will really be concerned with tables' filenode numbers (which are the file names visible in the database directories). Be sure you understand the difference between table OIDs and table filenodes!

oid2name connects to a target database and extracts OID, filenode, and/or table name information. You can also have it show database OIDs or tablespace OIDs.

## Options

oid2name accepts the following command-line arguments:

```
-f filenode  
--filenode=filenode
```

show info for table with filenode *filenode*.

```
-i  
--indexes
```

include indexes and sequences in the listing.

```
-o oid  
--oid=oid
```

show info for table with OID *oid*.

```
-q  
--quiet
```

omit headers (useful for scripting).

```
-s  
--tablespaces
```

show tablespace OIDs.

```
-S  
--system-objects
```

include system objects (those in `information_schema`, `pg_toast` and `pg_catalog` schemas).

```
-t tablename_pattern  
--table=tablename_pattern
```

show info for table(s) matching *tablename\_pattern*.

```
-V  
--version
```

Print the oid2name version and exit.

```
-x  
--extended
```

display more information about each object shown: tablespace name, schema name, and OID.

```
-?  
--help
```

Show help about oid2name command line arguments, and exit.

oid2name also accepts the following command-line arguments for connection parameters:

```
-d database  
--dbname=database
```

database to connect to.

```
-h host  
--host=host
```

database server's host.

```
-H host
```

database server's host. Use of this parameter is *deprecated* as of PostgreSQL 12.

```
-p port  
--port=port
```

database server's port.

```
-U username  
--username=username
```

user name to connect as.

To display specific tables, select which tables to show by using `-o`, `-f` and/or `-t`. `-o` takes an OID, `-f` takes a filenode, and `-t` takes a table name (actually, it's a `LIKE` pattern, so you can use things like `foo%`). You can use as many of these options as you like, and the listing will include all objects matched by any of the options. But note that these options can only show objects in the database given by `-d`.

If you don't give any of `-o`, `-f` or `-t`, but do give `-d`, it will list all tables in the database named by `-d`. In this mode, the `-S` and `-i` options control what gets listed.

If you don't give `-d` either, it will show a listing of database OIDs. Alternatively you can give `-s` to get a tablespace listing.

## Environment

```
PGHOST  
PGPORT  
PGUSER
```

Default connection parameters.



This utility, like most other PostgreSQL utilities, also uses the environment variables supported by libpq (see Section 34.15).

The environment variable PG\_COLOR specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are always, auto and never.

## Notes

oid2name requires a running database server with non-corrupt system catalogs. It is therefore of only limited use for recovering from catastrophic database corruption situations.

## Examples

```
$ # what's in this database server, anyway?
$ oid2name
All databases:
  Oid  Database Name  Tablespace
-----
 17228      alvherre  pg_default
 17255      regression pg_default
 17227      template0  pg_default
      1      template1  pg_default

$ oid2name -s
All tablespaces:
  Oid  Tablespace Name
-----
 1663      pg_default
 1664      pg_global
 155151     fastdisk
 155152     bigdisk

$ # OK, let's look into database alvherre
$ cd $PGDATA/base/17228

$ # get top 10 db objects in the default tablespace, ordered by
size
$ ls -lS * | head -10
-rw----- 1 alvherre alvherre 136536064 sep 14 09:51 155173
-rw----- 1 alvherre alvherre 17965056  sep 14 09:51 1155291
-rw----- 1 alvherre alvherre 1204224  sep 14 09:51 16717
-rw----- 1 alvherre alvherre 581632   sep 6 17:51 1255
-rw----- 1 alvherre alvherre 237568   sep 14 09:50 16674
-rw----- 1 alvherre alvherre 212992   sep 14 09:51 1249
-rw----- 1 alvherre alvherre 204800   sep 14 09:51 16684
-rw----- 1 alvherre alvherre 196608   sep 14 09:50 16700
-rw----- 1 alvherre alvherre 163840   sep 14 09:50 16699
-rw----- 1 alvherre alvherre 122880   sep 6 17:51 16751

$ # I wonder what file 155173 is ...
$ oid2name -d alvherre -f 155173
From database "alvherre":
  Filenode  Table Name
-----
 155173     accounts

$ # you can ask for more than one object
```

```
$ oid2name -d alvherre -f 155173 -f 1155291
From database "alvherre":
  Filenode      Table Name
-----
    155173      accounts
    1155291     accounts_pkey

$ # you can mix the options, and get more details with -x
$ oid2name -d alvherre -t accounts -f 1155291 -x
From database "alvherre":
  Filenode      Table Name      Oid  Schema  Tablespace
-----
    155173      accounts      155173  public  pg_default
    1155291     accounts_pkey  1155291  public  pg_default

$ # show disk space for every db object
$ du [0-9]* |
> while read SIZE FILENODE
> do
>   echo "$SIZE      `oid2name -q -d alvherre -i -f $FILENODE`"
> done
16              1155287  branches_pkey
16              1155289  tellers_pkey
17561           1155291  accounts_pkey
...

$ # same, but sort by size
$ du [0-9]* | sort -rn | while read SIZE FN
> do
>   echo "$SIZE      `oid2name -q -d alvherre -f $FN`"
> done
133466          155173    accounts
17561           1155291  accounts_pkey
1177            16717    pg_proc_proname_args_nsp_index
...

$ # If you want to see what's in tablespaces, use the pg_tblspc
  directory
$ cd $PGDATA/pg_tblspc
$ oid2name -s
All tablespaces:
  Oid  Tablespace Name
-----
    1663      pg_default
    1664      pg_global
    155151     fastdisk
    155152     bigdisk

$ # what databases have objects in tablespace "fastdisk"?
$ ls -d 155151/*
155151/17228/ 155151/PG_VERSION

$ # Oh, what was database 17228 again?
$ oid2name
All databases:
  Oid  Database Name  Tablespace
-----
    17228      alvherre  pg_default
```

```
17255      regression  pg_default
17227      template0   pg_default
          1      template1 pg_default

$ # Let's see what objects does this database have in the
  tablespace.
$ cd 155151/17228
$ ls -l
total 0
-rw-----  1 postgres postgres 0 sep 13 23:20 155156

$ # OK, this is a pretty small table ... but which one is it?
$ oid2name -d alvherre -f 155156
From database "alvherre":
  Filenode  Table Name
-----
      155156          foo
```

## Author

B. Palmer <bpalmer@crimelabs.net>

## vacuumlo

`vacuumlo` — remove orphaned large objects from a PostgreSQL database

## Synopsis

```
vacuumlo [option...] dbname...
```

## Description

`vacuumlo` is a simple utility program that will remove any “orphaned” large objects from a PostgreSQL database. An orphaned large object (LO) is considered to be any LO whose OID does not appear in any `oid` or `lo` data column of the database.

If you use this, you may also be interested in the `lo_manage` trigger in the `lo` module. `lo_manage` is useful to try to avoid creating orphaned LOs in the first place.

All databases named on the command line are processed.

## Options

`vacuumlo` accepts the following command-line arguments:

```
-l limit  
--limit=limit
```

Remove no more than *limit* large objects per transaction (default 1000). Since the server acquires a lock per LO removed, removing too many LOs in one transaction risks exceeding `max_locks_per_transaction`. Set the limit to zero if you want all removals done in a single transaction.

```
-n  
--dry-run
```

Don't remove anything, just show what would be done.

```
-v  
--verbose
```

Write a lot of progress messages.

```
-V  
--version
```

Print the `vacuumlo` version and exit.

```
-?  
--help
```

Show help about `vacuumlo` command line arguments, and exit.

`vacuumlo` also accepts the following command-line arguments for connection parameters:

```
-h host  
--host=host
```

Database server's host.

```
-p port  
--port=port
```

Database server's port.

```
-U username  
--username=username
```

User name to connect as.

```
-w  
--no-password
```

Never issue a password prompt. If the server requires password authentication and a password is not available by other means such as a `.pgpass` file, the connection attempt will fail. This option can be useful in batch jobs and scripts where no user is present to enter a password.

```
-W  
--password
```

Force vacuumlo to prompt for a password before connecting to a database.

This option is never essential, since vacuumlo will automatically prompt for a password if the server demands password authentication. However, vacuumlo will waste a connection attempt finding out that the server wants a password. In some cases it is worth typing `-W` to avoid the extra connection attempt.

## Environment

```
PGHOST  
PGPORT  
PGUSER
```

Default connection parameters.

This utility, like most other PostgreSQL utilities, also uses the environment variables supported by libpq (see Section 34.15).

The environment variable `PG_COLOR` specifies whether to use color in diagnostic messages. Possible values are `always`, `auto` and `never`.

## Notes

vacuumlo works by the following method: First, vacuumlo builds a temporary table which contains all of the OIDs of the large objects in the selected database. It then scans through all columns in the database that are of type `oid` or `lo`, and removes matching entries from the temporary table. (Note: Only types with these names are considered; in particular, domains over them are not considered.) The remaining entries in the temporary table identify orphaned LOs. These are removed.

## Author

Peter Mount <pete@retap.org.uk>

## G.2. Server Applications

Some applications run on the PostgreSQL server itself. Currently, no such applications are included in the `contrib` directory. See also PostgreSQL Server Applications for information about server applications that are part of the core PostgreSQL distribution.

---

# Appendix H. External Projects

PostgreSQL is a complex software project, and managing the project is difficult. We have found that many enhancements to PostgreSQL can be more efficiently developed separately from the core project.

## H.1. Client Interfaces

There are only two client interfaces included in the base PostgreSQL distribution:

- libpq is included because it is the primary C language interface, and because many other client interfaces are built on top of it.
- ECPG is included because it depends on the server-side SQL grammar, and is therefore sensitive to changes in PostgreSQL itself.

All other language interfaces are external projects and are distributed separately. A list of language interfaces<sup>1</sup> is maintained on the PostgreSQL wiki. Note that some of these packages are not released under the same license as PostgreSQL. For more information on each language interface, including licensing terms, refer to its website and documentation.

[https://wiki.postgresql.org/wiki/List\\_of\\_drivers](https://wiki.postgresql.org/wiki/List_of_drivers)

## H.2. Administration Tools

There are several administration tools available for PostgreSQL. The most popular is pgAdmin<sup>2</sup>, and there are several commercially available ones as well.

## H.3. Procedural Languages

PostgreSQL includes several procedural languages with the base distribution: PL/pgSQL, PL/Tcl, PL/Perl, and PL/Python.

In addition, there are a number of procedural languages that are developed and maintained outside the core PostgreSQL distribution. A list of procedural languages<sup>3</sup> is maintained on the PostgreSQL wiki. Note that some of these projects are not released under the same license as PostgreSQL. For more information on each procedural language, including licensing information, refer to its website and documentation.

[https://wiki.postgresql.org/wiki/PL\\_Matrix](https://wiki.postgresql.org/wiki/PL_Matrix)

## H.4. Extensions

PostgreSQL is designed to be easily extensible. For this reason, extensions loaded into the database can function just like features that are built in. The `contrib/` directory shipped with the source code contains several extensions, which are described in Appendix F. Other extensions are developed independently, like PostGIS<sup>4</sup>. Even PostgreSQL replication solutions can be developed externally. For example, Slony-I<sup>5</sup> is a popular primary/standby replication solution that is developed independently from the core project.

---

<sup>1</sup> [https://wiki.postgresql.org/wiki/List\\_of\\_drivers](https://wiki.postgresql.org/wiki/List_of_drivers)

<sup>2</sup> <https://www.pgadmin.org/>

<sup>3</sup> [https://wiki.postgresql.org/wiki/PL\\_Matrix](https://wiki.postgresql.org/wiki/PL_Matrix)

<sup>4</sup> <https://postgis.net/>

<sup>5</sup> <https://www.slony.info>

---

# Appendix I. The Source Code Repository

The PostgreSQL source code is stored and managed using the Git version control system. A public mirror of the master repository is available; it is updated within a minute of any change to the master repository.

Our wiki, [https://wiki.postgresql.org/wiki/Working\\_with\\_Git](https://wiki.postgresql.org/wiki/Working_with_Git), has some discussion on working with Git.

Note that building PostgreSQL from the source repository requires reasonably up-to-date versions of bison, flex, and Perl. These tools are not needed to build from a distribution tarball, because the files generated with these tools are included in the tarball. Other tool requirements are the same as shown in Section 17.1.

## I.1. Getting the Source via Git

With Git you will make a copy of the entire code repository on your local machine, so you will have access to all history and branches offline. This is the fastest and most flexible way to develop or test patches.

### Git

1. You will need an installed version of Git, which you can get from <https://git-scm.com>. Many systems already have a recent version of Git installed by default, or available in their package distribution system.
2. To begin using the Git repository, make a clone of the official mirror:

```
git clone https://git.postgresql.org/git/postgresql.git
```

This will copy the full repository to your local machine, so it may take a while to complete, especially if you have a slow Internet connection. The files will be placed in a new subdirectory `postgresql` of your current directory.

The Git mirror can also be reached via the Git protocol. Just change the URL prefix to `git`, as in:

```
git clone git://git.postgresql.org/git/postgresql.git
```

3. Whenever you want to get the latest updates in the system, `cd` into the repository, and run:

```
git fetch
```

Git can do a lot more things than just fetch the source. For more information, consult the Git man pages, or see the website at <https://git-scm.com>.

---

# Appendix J. Documentation

PostgreSQL has four primary documentation formats:

- Plain text, for pre-installation information
- HTML, for on-line browsing and reference
- PDF, for printing
- man pages, for quick reference.

Additionally, a number of plain-text README files can be found throughout the PostgreSQL source tree, documenting various implementation issues.

HTML documentation and man pages are part of a standard distribution and are installed by default. PDF format documentation is available separately for download.

## J.1. DocBook

The documentation sources are written in *DocBook*, which is a markup language defined in XML. In what follows, the terms DocBook and XML are both used, but technically they are not interchangeable.

DocBook allows an author to specify the structure and content of a technical document without worrying about presentation details. A document style defines how that content is rendered into one of several final forms. DocBook is maintained by the OASIS group<sup>1</sup>. The official DocBook site<sup>2</sup> has good introductory and reference documentation and a complete O'Reilly book for your online reading pleasure. The NewbieDoc Docbook Guide<sup>3</sup> is very helpful for beginners. The FreeBSD Documentation Project<sup>4</sup> also uses DocBook and has some good information, including a number of style guidelines that might be worth considering.

## J.2. Tool Sets

The following tools are used to process the documentation. Some might be optional, as noted.

### DocBook DTD<sup>5</sup>

This is the definition of DocBook itself. We currently use version 4.5; you cannot use later or earlier versions. You need the XML variant of the DocBook DTD, not the SGML variant.

### DocBook XSL Stylesheets<sup>6</sup>

These contain the processing instructions for converting the DocBook sources to other formats, such as HTML.

The minimum required version is currently 1.77.0, but it is recommended to use the latest available version for best results.

### Libxml2<sup>7</sup> for `xmllint`

This library and the `xmllint` tool it contains are used for processing XML. Many developers will already have Libxml2 installed, because it is also used when building the PostgreSQL code. Note, however, that `xmllint` might need to be installed from a separate subpackage.

---

<sup>1</sup> <https://www.oasis-open.org>

<sup>2</sup> <https://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/>

<sup>3</sup> <http://newbiedoc.sourceforge.net/metadoc/docbook-guide.html>

<sup>4</sup> <https://www.freebsd.org/docproj/>

<sup>5</sup> <https://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/>

<sup>6</sup> <https://github.com/docbook/wiki/wiki/DocBookXslStylesheets>

<sup>7</sup> <http://xmlsoft.org/>



Libxslt<sup>8</sup> for xsltproc

xsltproc is an XSLT processor, that is, a program to convert XML to other formats using XSLT stylesheets.

FOP<sup>9</sup>

This is a program for converting, among other things, XML to PDF. It is needed only if you want to build the documentation in PDF format.

We have documented experience with several installation methods for the various tools that are needed to process the documentation. These will be described below. There might be some other packaged distributions for these tools. Please report package status to the documentation mailing list, and we will include that information here.

## J.2.1. Installation on Fedora, RHEL, and Derivatives

To install the required packages, use:

```
yum install docbook-dtds docbook-style-xsl libxslt fop
```

## J.2.2. Installation on FreeBSD

To install the required packages with pkg, use:

```
pkg install docbook-xml docbook-xsl libxslt fop
```

When building the documentation from the doc directory you'll need to use gmake, because the makefile provided is not suitable for FreeBSD's make.

## J.2.3. Debian Packages

There is a full set of packages of the documentation tools available for Debian GNU/Linux. To install, simply use:

```
apt-get install docbook-xml docbook-xsl libxml2-utils xsltproc fop
```

## J.2.4. macOS

If you use MacPorts, the following will get you set up:

```
sudo port install docbook-xml docbook-xsl-nons libxslt fop
```

If you use Homebrew, use this:

```
brew install docbook docbook-xsl libxslt fop
```

The Homebrew-supplied programs require the following environment variable to be set. For Intel based machines, use this:

---

<sup>8</sup> <http://xmlsoft.org/XSLT/>

<sup>9</sup> <https://xmlgraphics.apache.org/fop/>

```
export XML_CATALOG_FILES=/usr/local/etc/xml/catalog
```

On Apple Silicon based machines, use this:

```
export XML_CATALOG_FILES=/opt/homebrew/etc/xml/catalog
```

Without it, `xsltproc` will throw errors like this:

```
I/O error : Attempt to load network entity http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.5/docbookx.dtd
postgres.sgml:21: warning: failed to load external entity "http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.5/docbookx.dtd"
...
```

While it is possible to use the Apple-provided versions of `xmllint` and `xsltproc` instead of those from MacPorts or Homebrew, you'll still need to install the DocBook DTD and stylesheets, and set up a catalog file that points to them.

## J.2.5. Detection by configure

Before you can build the documentation you need to run the `configure` script, as you would when building the PostgreSQL programs themselves. Check the output near the end of the run; it should look something like this:

```
checking for xmllint... xmllint
checking for xsltproc... xsltproc
checking for fop... fop
checking for dbtoepub... dbtoepub
```

If `xmllint` or `xsltproc` is not found, you will not be able to build any of the documentation. `fop` is only needed to build the documentation in PDF format. `dbtoepub` is only needed to build the documentation in EPUB format.

If necessary, you can tell `configure` where to find these programs, for example

```
./configure ... XMLLINT=/opt/local/bin/xmllint ...
```

If you prefer to build PostgreSQL using Meson, instead run `meson setup` as described in Section 17.4, and then see Section J.4.

## J.3. Building the Documentation with Make

Once you have everything set up, change to the directory `doc/src/sgml` and run one of the commands described in the following subsections to build the documentation. (Remember to use GNU `make`.)

### J.3.1. HTML

To build the HTML version of the documentation:

```
doc/src/sgml$ make html
```

This is also the default target. The output appears in the subdirectory `html`.

To produce HTML documentation with the stylesheet used on [postgresql.org](https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/)<sup>10</sup> instead of the default simple style use:

```
doc/src/sgml$ make STYLE=website html
```

If the `STYLE=website` option is used, the generated HTML files include references to stylesheets hosted on [postgresql.org](https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/)<sup>11</sup> and require network access to view.

## J.3.2. Manpages

We use the DocBook XSL stylesheets to convert DocBook `refentry` pages to `*roff` output suitable for man pages. To create the man pages, use the command:

```
doc/src/sgml$ make man
```

## J.3.3. PDF

To produce a PDF rendition of the documentation using FOP, you can use one of the following commands, depending on the preferred paper format:

- For A4 format:

```
doc/src/sgml$ make postgres-A4.pdf
```

- For U.S. letter format:

```
doc/src/sgml$ make postgres-US.pdf
```

Because the PostgreSQL documentation is fairly big, FOP will require a significant amount of memory. Because of that, on some systems, the build will fail with a memory-related error message. This can usually be fixed by configuring Java heap settings in the configuration file `~/foprc`, for example:

```
# FOP binary distribution
FOP_OPTS='-Xmx1500m'
# Debian
JAVA_ARGS='-Xmx1500m'
# Red Hat
ADDITIONAL_FLAGS='-Xmx1500m'
```

There is a minimum amount of memory that is required, and to some extent more memory appears to make things a bit faster. On systems with very little memory (less than 1 GB), the build will either be very slow due to swapping or will not work at all.

In its default configuration FOP will emit an `INFO` message for each page. The log level can be changed via `~/foprc`:

```
LOGCHOICE=-Dorg.apache.commons.logging.Log=
org.apache.commons.logging.impl.SimpleLog
LOGLEVEL=-Dorg.apache.commons.logging.simplelog.defaultlog=WARN
```

---

<sup>10</sup> <https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/>

<sup>11</sup> <https://www.postgresql.org/docs/current/>

Other XSL-FO processors can also be used manually, but the automated build process only supports FOP.

### J.3.4. Plain Text Files

The installation instructions are also distributed as plain text, in case they are needed in a situation where better reading tools are not available. The `INSTALL` file corresponds to Chapter 17, with some minor changes to account for the different context. To recreate the file, change to the directory `doc/src/sgml` and enter **make INSTALL**. Building text output requires Pandoc version 1.13 or newer as an additional build tool.

In the past, the release notes and regression testing instructions were also distributed as plain text, but this practice has been discontinued.

### J.3.5. Syntax Check

Building the documentation can take very long. But there is a method to just check the correct syntax of the documentation files, which only takes a few seconds:

```
doc/src/sgml$ make check
```

## J.4. Building the Documentation with Meson

Two options are provided for building the documentation using Meson. Change to the `build` directory before running one of these commands, or add `-C build` to the command.

To build just the HTML version of the documentation:

```
build$ ninja docs
```

To build all forms of the documentation:

```
build$ ninja alldocs
```

The output appears in the subdirectory `build/doc/src/sgml`.

## J.5. Documentation Authoring

The documentation sources are most conveniently modified with an editor that has a mode for editing XML, and even more so if it has some awareness of XML schema languages so that it can know about DocBook syntax specifically.

Note that for historical reasons the documentation source files are named with an extension `.sgml` even though they are now XML files. So you might need to adjust your editor configuration to set the correct mode.

### J.5.1. Emacs

nXML Mode, which ships with Emacs, is the most common mode for editing XML documents with Emacs. It will allow you to use Emacs to insert tags and check markup consistency, and it supports DocBook out of the box. Check the nXML manual<sup>12</sup> for detailed documentation.

`src/tools/editors/emacs.samples` contains recommended settings for this mode.

---

<sup>12</sup> [https://www.gnu.org/software/emacs/manual/html\\_mono/nxml-mode.html](https://www.gnu.org/software/emacs/manual/html_mono/nxml-mode.html)

## J.6. Style Guide

### J.6.1. Reference Pages

Reference pages should follow a standard layout. This allows users to find the desired information more quickly, and it also encourages writers to document all relevant aspects of a command. Consistency is not only desired among PostgreSQL reference pages, but also with reference pages provided by the operating system and other packages. Hence the following guidelines have been developed. They are for the most part consistent with similar guidelines established by various operating systems.

Reference pages that describe executable commands should contain the following sections, in this order. Sections that do not apply can be omitted. Additional top-level sections should only be used in special circumstances; often that information belongs in the “Usage” section.

#### Name

This section is generated automatically. It contains the command name and a half-sentence summary of its functionality.

#### Synopsis

This section contains the syntax diagram of the command. The synopsis should normally not list each command-line option; that is done below. Instead, list the major components of the command line, such as where input and output files go.

#### Description

Several paragraphs explaining what the command does.

#### Options

A list describing each command-line option. If there are a lot of options, subsections can be used.

#### Exit Status

If the program uses 0 for success and non-zero for failure, then you do not need to document it. If there is a meaning behind the different non-zero exit codes, list them here.

#### Usage

Describe any sublanguage or run-time interface of the program. If the program is not interactive, this section can usually be omitted. Otherwise, this section is a catch-all for describing run-time features. Use subsections if appropriate.

#### Environment

List all environment variables that the program might use. Try to be complete; even seemingly trivial variables like `SHELL` might be of interest to the user.

#### Files

List any files that the program might access implicitly. That is, do not list input and output files that were specified on the command line, but list configuration files, etc.

#### Diagnostics

Explain any unusual output that the program might create. Refrain from listing every possible error message. This is a lot of work and has little use in practice. But if, say, the error messages have a standard format that the user can parse, this would be the place to explain it.

## Notes

Anything that doesn't fit elsewhere, but in particular bugs, implementation flaws, security considerations, compatibility issues.

## Examples

Examples

## History

If there were some major milestones in the history of the program, they might be listed here. Usually, this section can be omitted.

## Author

Author (only used in the contrib section)

## See Also

Cross-references, listed in the following order: other PostgreSQL command reference pages, PostgreSQL SQL command reference pages, citation of PostgreSQL manuals, other reference pages (e.g., operating system, other packages), other documentation. Items in the same group are listed alphabetically.

Reference pages describing SQL commands should contain the following sections: Name, Synopsis, Description, Parameters, Outputs, Notes, Examples, Compatibility, History, See Also. The Parameters section is like the Options section, but there is more freedom about which clauses of the command can be listed. The Outputs section is only needed if the command returns something other than a default command-completion tag. The Compatibility section should explain to what extent this command conforms to the SQL standard(s), or to which other database system it is compatible. The See Also section of SQL commands should list SQL commands before cross-references to programs.

---

# Appendix K. PostgreSQL Limits

Table K.1 describes various hard limits of PostgreSQL. However, practical limits, such as performance limitations or available disk space may apply before absolute hard limits are reached.

**Table K.1. PostgreSQL Limitations**

Item	Upper Limit	Comment
database size	unlimited	
number of databases	4,294,950,911	
relations per database	1,431,650,303	
relation size	32 TB	with the default BLCKSZ of 8192 bytes
rows per table	limited by the number of tuples that can fit onto 4,294,967,295 pages	
columns per table	1,600	further limited by tuple size fitting on a single page; see note below
columns in a result set	1,664	
field size	1 GB	
indexes per table	unlimited	constrained by maximum relations per database
columns per index	32	can be increased by recompiling PostgreSQL
partition keys	32	can be increased by recompiling PostgreSQL
identifier length	63 bytes	can be increased by recompiling PostgreSQL
function arguments	100	can be increased by recompiling PostgreSQL
query parameters	65,535	

The maximum number of columns for a table is further reduced as the tuple being stored must fit in a single 8192-byte heap page. For example, excluding the tuple header, a tuple made up of 1,600 `int` columns would consume 6400 bytes and could be stored in a heap page, but a tuple of 1,600 `bigint` columns would consume 12800 bytes and would therefore not fit inside a heap page. Variable-length fields of types such as `text`, `varchar`, and `char` can have their values stored out of line in the table's TOAST table when the values are large enough to require it. Only an 18-byte pointer must remain inside the tuple in the table's heap. For shorter length variable-length fields, either a 4-byte or 1-byte field header is used and the value is stored inside the heap tuple.

Columns that have been dropped from the table also contribute to the maximum column limit. Moreover, although the dropped column values for newly created tuples are internally marked as null in the tuple's null bitmap, the null bitmap also occupies space.

---

# Appendix L. Acronyms

This is a list of acronyms commonly used in the PostgreSQL documentation and in discussions about PostgreSQL.

## ANSI

American National Standards Institute<sup>1</sup>

## API

Application Programming Interface<sup>2</sup>

## ASCII

American Standard Code for Information Interchange<sup>3</sup>

## BKI

Backend Interface

## CA

Certificate Authority<sup>4</sup>

## CIDR

Classless Inter-Domain Routing<sup>5</sup>

## CPAN

Comprehensive Perl Archive Network<sup>6</sup>

## CRL

Certificate Revocation List<sup>7</sup>

## CSV

Comma Separated Values<sup>8</sup>

## CTE

Common Table Expression

## CVE

Common Vulnerabilities and Exposures<sup>9</sup>

## DBA

Database Administrator<sup>10</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/American\\_National\\_Standards\\_Institute](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/American_National_Standards_Institute)

<sup>2</sup> <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/API>

<sup>3</sup> <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ascii>

<sup>4</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Certificate\\_authority](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Certificate_authority)

<sup>5</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Classless\\_Inter-Domain\\_Routing](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Classless_Inter-Domain_Routing)

<sup>6</sup> <https://www.cpan.org/>

<sup>7</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Certificate\\_revocation\\_list](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Certificate_revocation_list)

<sup>8</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Comma-separated\\_values](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Comma-separated_values)

<sup>9</sup> <https://cve.mitre.org/>

<sup>10</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Database\\_administrator](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Database_administrator)



DBI

Database Interface (Perl)<sup>11</sup>

DBMS

Database Management System<sup>12</sup>

DDL

Data Definition Language<sup>13</sup>, SQL commands such as CREATE TABLE, ALTER USER

DML

Data Manipulation Language<sup>14</sup>, SQL commands such as INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE

DST

Daylight Saving Time<sup>15</sup>

ECPG

Embedded C for PostgreSQL

ESQL

Embedded SQL<sup>16</sup>

FAQ

Frequently Asked Questions<sup>17</sup>

FSM

Free Space Map

GEQO

Genetic Query Optimizer

GIN

Generalized Inverted Index

GiST

Generalized Search Tree

Git

Git<sup>18</sup>

GMT

Greenwich Mean Time<sup>19</sup>

---

<sup>11</sup> <https://dbi.perl.org/>

<sup>12</sup> <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Dbms>

<sup>13</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Data\\_Definition\\_Language](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Data_Definition_Language)

<sup>14</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Data\\_Manipulation\\_Language](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Data_Manipulation_Language)

<sup>15</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Daylight\\_saving\\_time](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Daylight_saving_time)

<sup>16</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Embedded\\_SQL](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Embedded_SQL)

<sup>17</sup> <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/FAQ>

<sup>18</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Git\\_\(software\)](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Git_(software))

<sup>19</sup> <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/GMT>

GSSAPI

Generic Security Services Application Programming Interface<sup>20</sup>

GUC

Grand Unified Configuration, the PostgreSQL subsystem that handles server configuration

HBA

Host-Based Authentication

HOT

Heap-Only Tuples

IEC

International Electrotechnical Commission<sup>21</sup>

IEEE

Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers<sup>22</sup>

IPC

Inter-Process Communication<sup>23</sup>

ISO

International Organization for Standardization<sup>24</sup>

ISSN

International Standard Serial Number<sup>25</sup>

JDBC

Java Database Connectivity<sup>26</sup>

JIT

Just-in-Time compilation<sup>27</sup>

JSON

JavaScript Object Notation<sup>28</sup>

LDAP

Lightweight Directory Access Protocol<sup>29</sup>

LSN

*Log Sequence Number*

---

<sup>20</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Generic\\_Security\\_Services\\_Application\\_Program\\_Interface](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Generic_Security_Services_Application_Program_Interface)

<sup>21</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/International\\_Electrotechnical\\_Commission](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/International_Electrotechnical_Commission)

<sup>22</sup> <https://standards.ieee.org/>

<sup>23</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Inter-process\\_communication](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Inter-process_communication)

<sup>24</sup> <https://www.iso.org/home.html>

<sup>25</sup> <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Issn>

<sup>26</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Java\\_Database\\_Connectivity](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Java_Database_Connectivity)

<sup>27</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Just-in-time\\_compilation](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Just-in-time_compilation)

<sup>28</sup> <https://www.json.org>

<sup>29</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lightweight\\_Directory\\_Access\\_Protocol](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lightweight_Directory_Access_Protocol)

MCF

Most Common Frequency, that is the frequency associated with some Most Common Value

MCV

Most Common Value, one of the values appearing most often within a particular table column

MITM

Man-in-the-middle attack<sup>30</sup>

MSVC

Microsoft Visual C<sup>31</sup>

MVCC

Multi-Version Concurrency Control

NLS

National Language Support<sup>32</sup>

ODBC

Open Database Connectivity<sup>33</sup>

OID

Object Identifier

OLAP

Online Analytical Processing<sup>34</sup>

OLTP

Online Transaction Processing<sup>35</sup>

ORDBMS

Object-Relational Database Management System<sup>36</sup>

PAM

Pluggable Authentication Modules<sup>37</sup>

PGSQL

PostgreSQL

PGXS

PostgreSQL Extension System

---

<sup>30</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Man-in-the-middle\\_attack](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Man-in-the-middle_attack)

<sup>31</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Visual\\_C++](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Visual_C++)

<sup>32</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Internationalization\\_and\\_localization](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Internationalization_and_localization)

<sup>33</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Open\\_Database\\_Connectivity](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Open_Database_Connectivity)

<sup>34</sup> <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Olap>

<sup>35</sup> <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/OLTP>

<sup>36</sup> <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/ORDBMS>

<sup>37</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pluggable\\_Authentication\\_Modules](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pluggable_Authentication_Modules)

PID

Process Identifier<sup>38</sup>

PITR

Point-In-Time Recovery (Continuous Archiving)

PL

Procedural Languages (server-side)

POSIX

Portable Operating System Interface<sup>39</sup>

RDBMS

Relational Database Management System<sup>40</sup>

RFC

Request For Comments<sup>41</sup>

SGML

Standard Generalized Markup Language<sup>42</sup>

SNI

Server Name Indication<sup>43</sup>, RFC 6066<sup>44</sup>

SPI

Server Programming Interface

SP-GiST

Space-Partitioned Generalized Search Tree

SQL

Structured Query Language<sup>45</sup>

SRF

Set-Returning Function

SSH

Secure Shell<sup>46</sup>

SSL

Secure Sockets Layer<sup>47</sup>

---

<sup>38</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Process\\_identifier](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Process_identifier)

<sup>39</sup> <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/POSIX>

<sup>40</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Relational\\_database\\_management\\_system](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Relational_database_management_system)

<sup>41</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Request\\_for\\_Comments](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Request_for_Comments)

<sup>42</sup> <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/SGML>

<sup>43</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Server\\_Name\\_Indication](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Server_Name_Indication)

<sup>44</sup> <https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc6066#section-3>

<sup>45</sup> <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/SQL>

<sup>46</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Secure\\_Shell](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Secure_Shell)

<sup>47</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Secure\\_Sockets\\_Layer](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Secure_Sockets_Layer)

SSPI

Security Support Provider Interface<sup>48</sup>

SYSV

Unix System V<sup>49</sup>

TCP/IP

Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) / Internet Protocol (IP)<sup>50</sup>

TID

Tuple Identifier

TLS

Transport Layer Security<sup>51</sup>

TOAST

The Oversized-Attribute Storage Technique

TPC

Transaction Processing Performance Council<sup>52</sup>

URL

Uniform Resource Locator<sup>53</sup>

UTC

Coordinated Universal Time<sup>54</sup>

UTF

Unicode Transformation Format<sup>55</sup>

UTF8

Eight-Bit Unicode Transformation Format<sup>56</sup>

UUID

Universally Unique Identifier

WAL

Write-Ahead Log

XID

Transaction Identifier

---

<sup>48</sup> <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/aa380493%28VS.85%29.aspx>

<sup>49</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/System\\_V](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/System_V)

<sup>50</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Transmission\\_Control\\_Protocol](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Transmission_Control_Protocol)

<sup>51</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Transport\\_Layer\\_Security](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Transport_Layer_Security)

<sup>52</sup> <http://www.tpc.org/>

<sup>53</sup> <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/URL>

<sup>54</sup> [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Coordinated\\_Universal\\_Time](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Coordinated_Universal_Time)

<sup>55</sup> <https://www.unicode.org/>

<sup>56</sup> <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Utf8>

XML

Extensible Markup Language<sup>57</sup>

---

<sup>57</sup> <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/XML>

---

# Appendix M. Glossary

This is a list of terms and their meaning in the context of PostgreSQL and relational database systems in general.

ACID	<i>Atomicity, Consistency, Isolation, and Durability.</i> This set of properties of database transactions is intended to guarantee validity in concurrent operation and even in event of errors, power failures, etc.
Aggregate function (routine)	<p>A <i>function</i> that combines (<i>aggregates</i>) multiple input values, for example by counting, averaging or adding, yielding a single output value.</p> <p>For more information, see Section 9.21.</p> <p>See Also Window function (routine).</p>
Analytic function	See Window function (routine).
Analyze (operation)	<p>The act of collecting statistics from data in <i>tables</i> and other <i>relations</i> to help the <i>query planner</i> to make decisions about how to execute <i>queries</i>.</p> <p>(Don't confuse this term with the ANALYZE option to the EXPLAIN command.)</p> <p>For more information, see ANALYZE.</p>
Atomic	<p>In reference to a <i>datum</i>: the fact that its value cannot be broken down into smaller components.</p> <p>In reference to a <i>database transaction</i>: see <i>atomicity</i>.</p>
Atomicity	The property of a <i>transaction</i> that either all its operations complete as a single unit or none do. In addition, if a system failure occurs during the execution of a transaction, no partial results are visible after recovery. This is one of the ACID properties.
Attribute	An element with a certain name and data type found within a <i>tuple</i> .
Autovacuum (process)	<p>A set of background processes that routinely perform <i>vacuum</i> and <i>analyze</i> operations. The <i>auxiliary process</i> that coordinates the work and is always present (unless autovacuum is disabled) is known as the <i>autovacuum launcher</i>, and the processes that carry out the tasks are known as the <i>autovacuum workers</i>.</p> <p>For more information, see Section 25.1.6.</p>
Auxiliary process	A process within an <i>instance</i> that is in charge of some specific background task for the instance. The auxiliary processes consist of the <i>autovacuum launcher</i> (but not the autovacuum workers), the <i>background writer</i> , the <i>checkpointer</i> , the <i>logger</i> , the <i>startup process</i> , the <i>WAL archiver</i> , the <i>WAL receiver</i> (but not the <i>WAL senders</i> ), and the <i>WAL writer</i> .
Backend (process)	<p>Process of an <i>instance</i> which acts on behalf of a <i>client session</i> and handles its requests.</p> <p>(Don't confuse this term with the similar terms <i>Background Worker</i> or <i>Background Writer</i>).</p>

Background worker (process)	<p>Process within an <i>instance</i>, which runs system- or user-supplied code. Serves as infrastructure for several features in PostgreSQL, such as <i>logical replication</i> and <i>parallel queries</i>. In addition, <i>Extensions</i> can add custom background worker processes.</p> <p>For more information, see Chapter 48.</p>
Background writer (process)	<p>An <i>auxiliary process</i> that writes dirty <i>data pages</i> from <i>shared memory</i> to the file system. It wakes up periodically, but works only for a short period in order to distribute its expensive I/O activity over time to avoid generating larger I/O peaks which could block other processes.</p> <p>For more information, see Section 20.4.5.</p>
Base Backup	<p>A binary copy of all <i>database cluster</i> files. It is generated by the tool <code>pg_basebackup</code>. In combination with WAL files it can be used as the starting point for recovery, log shipping, or streaming replication.</p>
Bloat	<p>Space in data pages which does not contain current row versions, such as unused (free) space or outdated row versions.</p>
Bootstrap superuser	<p>The first <i>user</i> initialized in a <i>database cluster</i>.</p> <p>This user owns all system catalog tables in each database. It is also the role from which all granted permissions originate. Because of these things, this role may not be dropped.</p> <p>This role also behaves as a normal <i>database superuser</i>.</p>
Buffer Access Strategy	<p>Some operations will access a large number of <i>pages</i>. A <i>Buffer Access Strategy</i> helps to prevent these operations from evicting too many pages from <i>shared buffers</i>.</p> <p>A Buffer Access Strategy sets up references to a limited number of <i>shared buffers</i> and reuses them circularly. When the operation requires a new page, a victim buffer is chosen from the buffers in the strategy ring, which may require flushing the page's dirty data and possibly also unflushed WAL to permanent storage.</p> <p>Buffer Access Strategies are used for various operations such as sequential scans of large tables, <code>VACUUM</code>, <code>COPY</code>, <code>CREATE TABLE AS SELECT</code>, <code>ALTER TABLE</code>, <code>CREATE DATABASE</code>, <code>CREATE INDEX</code>, and <code>CLUSTER</code>.</p>
Cast	<p>A conversion of a <i>datum</i> from its current data type to another data type.</p> <p>For more information, see <code>CREATE CAST</code>.</p>
Catalog	<p>The SQL standard uses this term to indicate what is called a <i>database</i> in PostgreSQL's terminology.</p> <p>(Don't confuse this term with <i>system catalog</i>).</p> <p>For more information, see Section 23.1.</p>
Check constraint	<p>A type of <i>constraint</i> defined on a <i>relation</i> which restricts the values allowed in one or more <i>attributes</i>. The check constraint can</p>



make reference to any attribute of the same row in the relation, but cannot reference other rows of the same relation or other relations.

For more information, see Section 5.4.

Checkpoint

A point in the *WAL* sequence at which it is guaranteed that the heap and index data files have been updated with all information from *shared memory* modified before that checkpoint; a *checkpoint record* is written and flushed to *WAL* to mark that point.

A checkpoint is also the act of carrying out all the actions that are necessary to reach a checkpoint as defined above. This process is initiated when predefined conditions are met, such as a specified amount of time has passed, or a certain volume of records has been written; or it can be invoked by the user with the command `CHECKPOINT`.

For more information, see Section 30.5.

Checkpointer (process)

An *auxiliary process* that is responsible for executing *checkpoints*.

Class (archaic)

See *Relation*.

Client (process)

Any process, possibly remote, that establishes a *session* by *connecting* to an *instance* to interact with a *database*.

Cluster owner

The operating system user that owns the *data directory* and under which the `postgres` process is run. It is required that this user exist prior to creating a new *database cluster*.

On operating systems with a `root` user, said user is not allowed to be the cluster owner.

Column

An *attribute* found in a *table* or *view*.

Commit

The act of finalizing a *transaction* within the *database*, which makes it visible to other transactions and assures its *durability*.

For more information, see `COMMIT`.

Concurrency

The concept that multiple independent operations happen within the *database* at the same time. In PostgreSQL, concurrency is controlled by the *multiversion concurrency control* mechanism.

Connection

An established line of communication between a client process and a *backend* process, usually over a network, supporting a *session*. This term is sometimes used as a synonym for *session*.

For more information, see Section 20.3.

Consistency

The property that the data in the *database* is always in compliance with *integrity constraints*. Transactions may be allowed to violate some of the constraints transiently before it commits, but if such violations are not resolved by the time it commits, such a transaction is automatically *rolled back*. This is one of the ACID properties.

Constraint

A restriction on the values of data allowed within a *table*, or in attributes of a *domain*.

For more information, see Section 5.4.

Cumulative Statistics System	<p>A system which, if enabled, accumulates statistical information about the <i>instance's</i> activities.</p> <p>For more information, see Section 28.2.</p>
Data area	<p>See Data directory.</p>
Database	<p>A named collection of <i>local SQL objects</i>.</p> <p>For more information, see Section 23.1.</p>
Database cluster	<p>A collection of databases and global SQL objects, and their common static and dynamic metadata. Sometimes referred to as a <i>cluster</i>. A database cluster is created using the <code>initdb</code> program.</p> <p>In PostgreSQL, the term <i>cluster</i> is also sometimes used to refer to an instance. (Don't confuse this term with the SQL command <code>CLUSTER</code>.)</p> <p>See also <i>cluster owner</i>, the operating-system owner of a cluster, and <i>bootstrap superuser</i>, the PostgreSQL owner of a cluster.</p>
Database server	<p>See Instance.</p>
Database superuser	<p>A role having <i>superuser status</i> (see Section 22.2).</p> <p>Frequently referred to as <i>superuser</i>.</p>
Data directory	<p>The base directory on the file system of a <i>server</i> that contains all data files and subdirectories associated with a <i>database cluster</i> (with the exception of <i>tablespaces</i>, and optionally <i>WAL</i>). The environment variable <code>PGDATA</code> is commonly used to refer to the data directory.</p> <p>A <i>cluster's</i> storage space comprises the data directory plus any additional tablespaces.</p> <p>For more information, see Section 73.1.</p>
Data page	<p>The basic structure used to store relation data. All pages are of the same size. Data pages are typically stored on disk, each in a specific file, and can be read to <i>shared buffers</i> where they can be modified, becoming <i>dirty</i>. They become clean when written to disk. New pages, which initially exist in memory only, are also dirty until written.</p>
Datum	<p>The internal representation of one value of an SQL data type.</p>
Delete	<p>An SQL command which removes <i>rows</i> from a given <i>table</i> or <i>relation</i>.</p> <p>For more information, see <code>DELETE</code>.</p>
Domain	<p>A user-defined data type that is based on another underlying data type. It acts the same as the underlying type except for possibly restricting the set of allowed values.</p> <p>For more information, see Section 8.18.</p>
Durability	<p>The assurance that once a <i>transaction</i> has been <i>committed</i>, the changes remain even after a system failure or crash. This is one of the ACID properties.</p>

Epoch	See Transaction ID.
Extension	<p>A software add-on package that can be installed on an <i>instance</i> to get extra features.</p> <p>For more information, see Section 38.17.</p>
File segment	<p>A physical file which stores data for a given <i>relation</i>. File segments are limited in size by a configuration value (typically 1 gigabyte), so if a relation exceeds that size, it is split into multiple segments.</p> <p>For more information, see Section 73.1.</p> <p>(Don't confuse this term with the similar term <i>WAL segment</i>).</p>
Foreign data wrapper	<p>A means of representing data that is not contained in the local <i>database</i> so that it appears as if were in local <i>table(s)</i>. With a foreign data wrapper it is possible to define a <i>foreign server</i> and <i>foreign tables</i>.</p> <p>For more information, see CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER.</p>
Foreign key	A type of <i>constraint</i> defined on one or more <i>columns</i> in a <i>table</i> which requires the value(s) in those <i>columns</i> to identify zero or one <i>row</i> in another (or, infrequently, the same) <i>table</i> .
Foreign server	<p>A named collection of <i>foreign tables</i> which all use the same <i>foreign data wrapper</i> and have other configuration values in common.</p> <p>For more information, see CREATE SERVER.</p>
Foreign table (relation)	<p>A <i>relation</i> which appears to have <i>rows</i> and <i>columns</i> similar to a regular <i>table</i>, but will forward requests for data through its <i>foreign data wrapper</i>, which will return <i>result sets</i> structured according to the definition of the <i>foreign table</i>.</p> <p>For more information, see CREATE FOREIGN TABLE.</p>
Fork	Each of the separate segmented file sets in which a relation is stored. The <i>main fork</i> is where the actual data resides. There also exist two secondary forks for metadata: the <i>free space map</i> and the <i>visibility map</i> . <i>Unlogged relations</i> also have an <i>init fork</i> .
Free space map (fork)	<p>A storage structure that keeps metadata about each data page of a table's main fork. The free space map entry for each page stores the amount of free space that's available for future tuples, and is structured to be efficiently searched for available space for a new tuple of a given size.</p> <p>For more information, see Section 73.3.</p>
Function (routine)	<p>A type of routine that receives zero or more arguments, returns zero or more output values, and is constrained to run within one transaction. Functions are invoked as part of a query, for example via SELECT. Certain functions can return <i>sets</i>; those are called <i>set-returning functions</i>.</p> <p>Functions can also be used for <i>triggers</i> to invoke.</p>

	For more information, see CREATE FUNCTION.
Grant	An SQL command that is used to allow a <i>user</i> or <i>role</i> to access specific objects within the <i>database</i> .  For more information, see GRANT.
Heap	Contains the values of <i>row</i> attributes (i.e., the data) for a <i>relation</i> . The heap is realized within one or more <i>file segments</i> in the relation's <i>main fork</i> .
Host	A computer that communicates with other computers over a network. This is sometimes used as a synonym for <i>server</i> . It is also used to refer to a computer where <i>client processes</i> run.
Index (relation)	A <i>relation</i> that contains data derived from a <i>table</i> or <i>materialized view</i> . Its internal structure supports fast retrieval of and access to the original data.  For more information, see CREATE INDEX.
Insert	An SQL command used to add new data into a <i>table</i> .  For more information, see INSERT.
Instance	A group of <i>backend</i> and <i>auxiliary processes</i> that communicate using a common shared memory area. One <i>postmaster process</i> manages the instance; one instance manages exactly one <i>database cluster</i> with all its databases. Many instances can run on the same <i>server</i> as long as their TCP ports do not conflict.  The instance handles all key features of a DBMS: read and write access to files and shared memory, assurance of the ACID properties, <i>connections</i> to <i>client processes</i> , privilege verification, crash recovery, replication, etc.
Isolation	The property that the effects of a transaction are not visible to <i>concurrent transactions</i> before it commits. This is one of the ACID properties.  For more information, see Section 13.2.
Join	An operation and SQL keyword used in <i>queries</i> for combining data from multiple <i>relations</i> .
Key	A means of identifying a <i>row</i> within a <i>table</i> or other <i>relation</i> by values contained within one or more <i>attributes</i> in that relation.
Lock	A mechanism that allows a process to limit or prevent simultaneous access to a resource.
Log file	Log files contain human-readable text lines about events. Examples include login failures, long-running queries, etc.  For more information, see Section 25.3.
Logged	A <i>table</i> is considered <i>logged</i> if changes to it are sent to the WAL. By default, all regular tables are logged. A table can be specified as <i>unlogged</i> either at creation time or via the ALTER TABLE command.

Logger (process)	<p>An <i>auxiliary process</i> which, if enabled, writes information about database events into the current <i>log file</i>. When reaching certain time- or volume-dependent criteria, a new log file is created. Also called <i>syslogger</i>.</p> <p>For more information, see Section 20.8.</p>
Log record	<p>Archaic term for a <i>WAL record</i>.</p>
Log sequence number (LSN)	<p>Byte offset into the <i>WAL</i>, increasing monotonically with each new <i>WAL record</i>.</p> <p>For more information, see <code>pg_lsn</code> and Section 30.6.</p>
LSN	<p>See Log sequence number.</p>
Master (server)	<p>See Primary (server).</p>
Materialized	<p>The property that some information has been pre-computed and stored for later use, rather than computing it on-the-fly.</p> <p>This term is used in <i>materialized view</i>, to mean that the data derived from the view's query is stored on disk separately from the sources of that data.</p> <p>This term is also used to refer to some multi-step queries to mean that the data resulting from executing a given step is stored in memory (with the possibility of spilling to disk), so that it can be read multiple times by another step.</p>
Materialized view (relation)	<p>A <i>relation</i> that is defined by a <code>SELECT</code> statement (just like a <i>view</i>), but stores data in the same way that a <i>table</i> does. It cannot be modified via <code>INSERT</code>, <code>UPDATE</code>, <code>DELETE</code>, or <code>MERGE</code> operations.</p> <p>For more information, see <code>CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW</code>.</p>
Merge	<p>An SQL command used to conditionally add, modify, or remove <i>rows</i> in a given <i>table</i>, using data from a source <i>relation</i>.</p> <p>For more information, see <code>MERGE</code>.</p>
Multi-version concurrency control (MVCC)	<p>A mechanism designed to allow several <i>transactions</i> to be reading and writing the same rows without one process causing other processes to stall. In PostgreSQL, MVCC is implemented by creating copies (<i>versions</i>) of <i>tuples</i> as they are modified; after transactions that can see the old versions terminate, those old versions need to be removed.</p>
Null	<p>A concept of non-existence that is a central tenet of relational database theory. It represents the absence of a definite value.</p>
Optimizer	<p>See Query planner.</p>
Parallel query	<p>The ability to handle parts of executing a <i>query</i> to take advantage of parallel processes on servers with multiple CPUs.</p>
Partition	<p>One of several disjoint (not overlapping) subsets of a larger set.</p> <p>In reference to a <i>partitioned table</i>: One of the tables that each contain part of the data of the partitioned table, which is said to be the <i>parent</i>. The partition is itself a table, so it can also be queried di-</p>

	rectly; at the same time, a partition can sometimes be a partitioned table, allowing hierarchies to be created.
	In reference to a <i>window function</i> in a <i>query</i> , a partition is a user-defined criterion that identifies which neighboring <i>rows</i> of the <i>query's result set</i> can be considered by the function.
Partitioned table (relation)	A <i>relation</i> that is in semantic terms the same as a <i>table</i> , but whose storage is distributed across several <i>partitions</i> .
Postmaster (process)	The very first process of an <i>instance</i> . It starts and manages the <i>auxiliary processes</i> and creates <i>backend processes</i> on demand.  For more information, see Section 19.3.
Primary key	A special case of a <i>unique constraint</i> defined on a <i>table</i> or other <i>relation</i> that also guarantees that all of the <i>attributes</i> within the <i>primary key</i> do not have <i>null</i> values. As the name implies, there can be only one primary key per table, though it is possible to have multiple unique constraints that also have no null-capable attributes.
Primary (server)	When two or more <i>databases</i> are linked via <i>replication</i> , the <i>server</i> that is considered the authoritative source of information is called the <i>primary</i> , also known as a <i>master</i> .
Procedure (routine)	A type of routine. Their distinctive qualities are that they do not return values, and that they are allowed to make transactional statements such as COMMIT and ROLLBACK. They are invoked via the CALL command.  For more information, see CREATE PROCEDURE.
Query	A request sent by a client to a <i>backend</i> , usually to return results or to modify data on the database.
Query planner	The part of PostgreSQL that is devoted to determining ( <i>planning</i> ) the most efficient way to execute <i>queries</i> . Also known as <i>query optimizer</i> , <i>optimizer</i> , or simply <i>planner</i> .
Record	See Tuple.
Recycling	See WAL file.
Referential integrity	A means of restricting data in one <i>relation</i> by a <i>foreign key</i> so that it must have matching data in another <i>relation</i> .
Relation	The generic term for all objects in a <i>database</i> that have a name and a list of <i>attributes</i> defined in a specific order. <i>Tables</i> , <i>sequences</i> , <i>views</i> , <i>foreign tables</i> , <i>materialized views</i> , composite types, and <i>indexes</i> are all relations.  More generically, a relation is a set of tuples; for example, the result of a query is also a relation.  In PostgreSQL, <i>Class</i> is an archaic synonym for <i>relation</i> .
Replica (server)	A <i>database</i> that is paired with a <i>primary</i> database and is maintaining a copy of some or all of the primary database's data. The foremost reasons for doing this are to allow for greater access to that data, and to maintain availability of the data in the event that the <i>primary</i> becomes unavailable.

Replication	<p>The act of reproducing data on one <i>server</i> onto another server called a <i>replica</i>. This can take the form of <i>physical replication</i>, where all file changes from one server are copied verbatim, or <i>logical replication</i> where a defined subset of data changes are conveyed using a higher-level representation.</p>
Restartpoint	<p>A variant of a <i>checkpoint</i> performed on a <i>replica</i>.</p> <p>For more information, see Section 30.5.</p>
Result set	<p>A <i>relation</i> transmitted from a <i>backend process</i> to a <i>client</i> upon the completion of an SQL command, usually a <code>SELECT</code> but it can be an <code>INSERT</code>, <code>UPDATE</code>, or <code>DELETE</code> command if the <code>RETURNING</code> clause is specified.</p> <p>The fact that a result set is a relation means that a query can be used in the definition of another query, becoming a <i>subquery</i>.</p>
Revoke	<p>A command to prevent access to a named set of <i>database</i> objects for a named list of <i>roles</i>.</p> <p>For more information, see <code>REVOKE</code>.</p>
Role	<p>A collection of access privileges to the <i>instance</i>. Roles are themselves a privilege that can be granted to other roles. This is often done for convenience or to ensure completeness when multiple <i>users</i> need the same privileges.</p> <p>For more information, see <code>CREATE ROLE</code>.</p>
Rollback	<p>A command to undo all of the operations performed since the beginning of a <i>transaction</i>.</p> <p>For more information, see <code>ROLLBACK</code>.</p>
Routine	<p>A defined set of instructions stored in the database system that can be invoked for execution. A routine can be written in a variety of programming languages. Routines can be <i>functions</i> (including set-returning functions and <i>trigger functions</i>), <i>aggregate functions</i>, and <i>procedures</i>.</p> <p>Many routines are already defined within PostgreSQL itself, but user-defined ones can also be added.</p>
Row	<p>See <i>Tuple</i>.</p>
Savepoint	<p>A special mark in the sequence of steps in a <i>transaction</i>. Data modifications after this point in time may be reverted to the time of the savepoint.</p> <p>For more information, see <code>SAVEPOINT</code>.</p>
Schema	<p>A schema is a namespace for <i>SQL objects</i>, which all reside in the same <i>database</i>. Each SQL object must reside in exactly one schema.</p> <p>All system-defined SQL objects reside in schema <code>pg_catalog</code>.</p> <p>More generically, the term <i>schema</i> is used to mean all data descriptions (<i>table</i> definitions, <i>constraints</i>, comments, etc.) for a given <i>database</i> or subset thereof.</p>

	For more information, see Section 5.9.
Segment	See File segment.
Select	<p>The SQL command used to request data from a <i>database</i>. Normally, SELECT commands are not expected to modify the <i>database</i> in any way, but it is possible that <i>functions</i> invoked within the query could have side effects that do modify data.</p> <p>For more information, see SELECT.</p>
Sequence (relation)	A type of relation that is used to generate values. Typically the generated values are sequential non-repeating numbers. They are commonly used to generate surrogate <i>primary key</i> values.
Server	<p>A computer on which PostgreSQL <i>instances</i> run. The term <i>server</i> denotes real hardware, a container, or a <i>virtual machine</i>.</p> <p>This term is sometimes used to refer to an instance or to a host.</p>
Session	A state that allows a client and a backend to interact, communicating over a <i>connection</i> .
Shared memory	<p>RAM which is used by the processes common to an <i>instance</i>. It mirrors parts of <i>database</i> files, provides a transient area for <i>WAL records</i>, and stores additional common information. Note that shared memory belongs to the complete instance, not to a single database.</p> <p>The largest part of shared memory is known as <i>shared buffers</i> and is used to mirror part of data files, organized into pages. When a page is modified, it is called a dirty page until it is written back to the file system.</p> <p>For more information, see Section 20.4.1.</p>
SQL object	<p>Any object that can be created with a CREATE command. Most objects are specific to one database, and are commonly known as <i>local objects</i>.</p> <p>Most local objects reside in a specific <i>schema</i> in their containing database, such as <i>relations</i> (all types), <i>routines</i> (all types), data types, etc. The names of such objects of the same type in the same schema are enforced to be unique.</p> <p>There also exist local objects that do not reside in schemas; some examples are <i>extensions</i>, <i>data type casts</i>, and <i>foreign data wrappers</i>. The names of such objects of the same type are enforced to be unique within the database.</p> <p>Other object types, such as <i>roles</i>, <i>tablespaces</i>, replication origins, subscriptions for logical replication, and databases themselves are not local SQL objects since they exist entirely outside of any specific database; they are called <i>global objects</i>. The names of such objects are enforced to be unique within the whole database cluster.</p> <p>For more information, see Section 23.1.</p>
SQL standard	A series of documents that define the SQL language.



Standby (server)	See Replica (server).
Startup process	<p>An <i>auxiliary process</i> that replays WAL during crash recovery and in a <i>physical replica</i>.</p> <p>(The name is historical: the startup process was named before replication was implemented; the name refers to its task as it relates to the server startup following a crash.)</p>
Superuser	As used in this documentation, it is a synonym for <i>database superuser</i> .
System catalog	<p>A collection of <i>tables</i> which describe the structure of all <i>SQL objects</i> of the instance. The system catalog resides in the schema <code>pg_catalog</code>. These tables contain data in internal representation and are not typically considered useful for user examination; a number of user-friendlier <i>views</i>, also in schema <code>pg_catalog</code>, offer more convenient access to some of that information, while additional tables and views exist in schema <code>information_schema</code> (see Chapter 37) that expose some of the same and additional information as mandated by the <i>SQL standard</i>.</p> <p>For more information, see Section 5.9.</p>
Table	<p>A collection of <i>tuples</i> having a common data structure (the same number of <i>attributes</i>, in the same order, having the same name and type per position). A table is the most common form of <i>relation</i> in PostgreSQL.</p> <p>For more information, see CREATE TABLE.</p>
Tablespace	<p>A named location on the server file system. All <i>SQL objects</i> which require storage beyond their definition in the <i>system catalog</i> must belong to a single tablespace. Initially, a database cluster contains a single usable tablespace which is used as the default for all SQL objects, called <code>pg_default</code>.</p> <p>For more information, see Section 23.6.</p>
Temporary table	<p><i>Tables</i> that exist either for the lifetime of a <i>session</i> or a <i>transaction</i>, as specified at the time of creation. The data in them is not visible to other sessions, and is not <i>logged</i>. Temporary tables are often used to store intermediate data for a multi-step operation.</p> <p>For more information, see CREATE TABLE.</p>
TOAST	<p>A mechanism by which large attributes of table rows are split and stored in a secondary table, called the <i>TOAST table</i>. Each relation with large attributes has its own TOAST table.</p> <p>For more information, see Section 73.2.</p>
Transaction	<p>A combination of commands that must act as a single <i>atomic</i> command: they all succeed or all fail as a single unit, and their effects are not visible to other <i>sessions</i> until the transaction is complete, and possibly even later, depending on the isolation level.</p> <p>For more information, see Section 13.2.</p>
Transaction ID	The numerical, unique, sequentially-assigned identifier that each transaction receives when it first causes a database modification.

Frequently abbreviated as *xid*. When stored on disk, xids are only 32-bits wide, so only approximately four billion write transaction IDs can be generated; to permit the system to run for longer than that, *epochs* are used, also 32 bits wide. When the counter reaches the maximum xid value, it starts over at 3 (values under that are reserved) and the epoch value is incremented by one. In some contexts, the epoch and xid values are considered together as a single 64-bit value; see Section 74.1 for more details.

For more information, see Section 8.19.

**Transactions per second (TPS)** Average number of transactions that are executed per second, totaled across all sessions active for a measured run. This is used as a measure of the performance characteristics of an instance.

**Trigger** A *function* which can be defined to execute whenever a certain operation (INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, TRUNCATE) is applied to a *relation*. A trigger executes within the same *transaction* as the statement which invoked it, and if the function fails, then the invoking statement also fails.

For more information, see CREATE TRIGGER.

**Tuple** A collection of *attributes* in a fixed order. That order may be defined by the *table* (or other *relation*) where the tuple is contained, in which case the tuple is often called a *row*. It may also be defined by the structure of a result set, in which case it is sometimes called a *record*.

**Unique constraint** A type of *constraint* defined on a *relation* which restricts the values allowed in one or a combination of columns so that each value or combination of values can only appear once in the relation — that is, no other row in the relation contains values that are equal to those.

Because *null values* are not considered equal to each other, multiple rows with null values are allowed to exist without violating the unique constraint.

**Unlogged** The property of certain *relations* that the changes to them are not reflected in the WAL. This disables replication and crash recovery for these relations.

The primary use of unlogged tables is for storing transient work data that must be shared across processes.

*Temporary tables* are always unlogged.

**Update** An SQL command used to modify *rows* that may already exist in a specified *table*. It cannot create or remove rows.

For more information, see UPDATE.

**User** A *role* that has the *login privilege* (see Section 22.2).

**User mapping** The translation of login credentials in the local *database* to credentials in a remote data system defined by a *foreign data wrapper*.

For more information, see CREATE USER MAPPING.

Vacuum	<p>The process of removing outdated <i>tuple versions</i> from tables or materialized views, and other closely related processing required by PostgreSQL's implementation of <i>MVCC</i>. This can be initiated through the use of the <code>VACUUM</code> command, but can also be handled automatically via <i>autovacuum</i> processes.</p> <p>For more information, see Section 25.1 .</p>
View	<p>A <i>relation</i> that is defined by a <code>SELECT</code> statement, but has no storage of its own. Any time a query references a view, the definition of the view is substituted into the query as if the user had typed it as a subquery instead of the name of the view.</p> <p>For more information, see <code>CREATE VIEW</code>.</p>
Visibility map (fork)	<p>A storage structure that keeps metadata about each data page of a table's main fork. The visibility map entry for each page stores two bits: the first one (<code>all-visible</code>) indicates that all tuples in the page are visible to all transactions. The second one (<code>all-frozen</code>) indicates that all tuples in the page are marked frozen.</p>
WAL	<p>See Write-ahead log.</p>
WAL archiver (process)	<p>An <i>auxiliary process</i> which, if enabled, saves copies of <i>WAL files</i> for the purpose of creating backups or keeping <i>replicas</i> current.</p> <p>For more information, see Section 26.3.</p>
WAL file	<p>Also known as <i>WAL segment</i> or <i>WAL segment file</i>. Each of the sequentially-numbered files that provide storage space for <i>WAL</i>. The files are all of the same predefined size and are written in sequential order, interspersing changes as they occur in multiple simultaneous sessions. If the system crashes, the files are read in order, and each of the changes is replayed to restore the system to the state it was in before the crash.</p> <p>Each WAL file can be released after a <i>checkpoint</i> writes all the changes in it to the corresponding data files. Releasing the file can be done either by deleting it, or by changing its name so that it will be used in the future, which is called <i>recycling</i>.</p> <p>For more information, see Section 30.6.</p>
WAL record	<p>A low-level description of an individual data change. It contains sufficient information for the data change to be re-executed (<i>replayed</i>) in case a system failure causes the change to be lost. WAL records use a non-printable binary format.</p> <p>For more information, see Section 30.6.</p>
WAL receiver (process)	<p>An <i>auxiliary process</i> that runs on a <i>replica</i> to receive WAL from the <i>primary server</i> for replay by the <i>startup process</i>.</p> <p>For more information, see Section 27.2.</p>
WAL segment	<p>See WAL file.</p>
WAL sender (process)	<p>A special <i>backend process</i> that streams WAL over a network. The receiving end can be a <i>WAL receiver</i> in a <i>replica</i>, <code>pg_receivewal</code>, or any other client program that speaks the replication protocol.</p>

WAL writer (process)	<p>A process that writes <i>WAL records</i> from <i>shared memory</i> to <i>WAL files</i>.</p> <p>For more information, see Section 20.5.</p>
Window function (routine)	<p>A type of <i>function</i> used in a <i>query</i> that applies to a <i>partition</i> of the query's <i>result set</i>; the function's result is based on values found in <i>rows</i> of the same partition or frame.</p> <p>All <i>aggregate functions</i> can be used as window functions, but window functions can also be used to, for example, give ranks to each of the rows in the partition. Also known as <i>analytic functions</i>.</p> <p>For more information, see Section 3.5.</p>
Write-ahead log	<p>The journal that keeps track of the changes in the <i>database cluster</i> as user- and system-invoked operations take place. It comprises many individual <i>WAL records</i> written sequentially to <i>WAL files</i>.</p>

---

# Appendix N. Color Support

Most programs in the PostgreSQL package can produce colored console output. This appendix describes how that is configured.

## N.1. When Color is Used

To use colored output, set the environment variable `PG_COLOR` as follows:

1. If the value is `always`, then color is used.
2. If the value is `auto` and the standard error stream is associated with a terminal device, then color is used.
3. Otherwise, color is not used.

## N.2. Configuring the Colors

The actual colors to be used are configured using the environment variable `PG_COLORS` (note plural). The value is a colon-separated list of *key=value* pairs. The keys specify what the color is to be used for. The values are SGR (Select Graphic Rendition) specifications, which are interpreted by the terminal.

The following keys are currently in use:

`error`

used to highlight the text “error” in error messages

`warning`

used to highlight the text “warning” in warning messages

`note`

used to highlight the text “detail” and “hint” in such messages

`locus`

used to highlight location information (e.g., program name and file name) in messages

The default value is `error=01;31:warning=01;35:note=01;36:locus=01` (`01;31` = bold red, `01;35` = bold magenta, `01;36` = bold cyan, `01` = bold default color).

### Tip

This color specification format is also used by other software packages such as GCC, GNU coreutils, and GNU grep.

---

# Appendix O. Obsolete or Renamed Features

Functionality is sometimes removed from PostgreSQL, feature, setting and file names sometimes change, or documentation moves to different places. This section directs users coming from old versions of the documentation or from external links to the appropriate new location for the information they need.

## O.1. `recovery.conf` file merged into `postgresql.conf`

PostgreSQL 11 and below used a configuration file named `recovery.conf` to manage replicas and standbys. Support for this file was removed in PostgreSQL 12. See the release notes for PostgreSQL 12 for details on this change.

On PostgreSQL 12 and above, archive recovery, streaming replication, and PITR are configured using normal server configuration parameters. These are set in `postgresql.conf` or via `ALTER SYSTEM` like any other parameter.

The server will not start if a `recovery.conf` exists.

PostgreSQL 15 and below had a setting `promote_trigger_file`, or `trigger_file` before 12. Use `pg_ctl promote` or call `pg_promote()` to promote a standby instead.

The `standby_mode` setting has been removed. A `standby.signal` file in the data directory is used instead. See Standby Server Operation for details.

## O.2. Default Roles Renamed to Predefined Roles

PostgreSQL 13 and below used the term “Default Roles”. However, as these roles are not able to actually be changed and are installed as part of the system at initialization time, the more appropriate term to use is “Predefined Roles”. See Section 22.5 for current documentation regarding Predefined Roles, and the release notes for PostgreSQL 14 for details on this change.

## O.3. `pg_xlogdump` renamed to `pg_waldump`

PostgreSQL 9.6 and below provided a command named `pg_xlogdump` to read write-ahead-log (WAL) files. This command was renamed to `pg_waldump`, see `pg_waldump` for documentation of `pg_waldump` and see the release notes for PostgreSQL 10 for details on this change.

## O.4. `pg_resetxlog` renamed to `pg_resetwal`

PostgreSQL 9.6 and below provided a command named `pg_resetxlog` to reset the write-ahead-log (WAL) files. This command was renamed to `pg_resetwal`, see `pg_resetwal` for documentation of `pg_resetwal` and see the release notes for PostgreSQL 10 for details on this change.

## O.5. `pg_receivexlog` renamed to `pg_receivewal`

PostgreSQL 9.6 and below provided a command named `pg_receivexlog` to fetch write-ahead-log (WAL) files. This command was renamed to `pg_receivewal`, see `pg_receivewal` for documentation of `pg_receivewal` and see the release notes for PostgreSQL 10 for details on this change.

---

# Bibliography

Selected references and readings for SQL and PostgreSQL.

Some white papers and technical reports from the original POSTGRES development team are available at the University of California, Berkeley, Computer Science Department web site<sup>1</sup>.

## SQL Reference Books

- [bowman01] *The Practical SQL Handbook*. Using SQL Variants. Fourth Edition. Judith Bowman, Sandra Emerson, and Marcy Darnovsky. ISBN 0-201-70309-2. Addison-Wesley Professional. 2001.
- [date97] *A Guide to the SQL Standard*. A user's guide to the standard database language SQL. Fourth Edition. C. J. Date and Hugh Darwen. ISBN 0-201-96426-0. Addison-Wesley. 1997.
- [date04] *An Introduction to Database Systems*. Eighth Edition. C. J. Date. ISBN 0-321-19784-4. Addison-Wesley. 2003.
- [elma04] *Fundamentals of Database Systems*. Fourth Edition. Ramez Elmasri and Shamkant Navathe. ISBN 0-321-12226-7. Addison-Wesley. 2003.
- [melt93] *Understanding the New SQL*. A complete guide. Jim Melton and Alan R. Simon. ISBN 1-55860-245-3. Morgan Kaufmann. 1993.
- [ull88] *Principles of Database and Knowledge-Base Systems*. Classical Database Systems. Jeffrey D. Ullman. Volume 1. Computer Science Press. 1988.
- [sqltr-19075-6] *SQL Technical Report*. Part 6: SQL support for JavaScript Object Notation (JSON). First Edition. 2017.

## PostgreSQL-specific Documentation

- [sim98] *Enhancement of the ANSI SQL Implementation of PostgreSQL*. Stefan Simkovics. Department of Information Systems, Vienna University of Technology. Vienna, Austria. November 29, 1998.
- [yu95] *The Postgres95. User Manual*. A. Yu and J. Chen. University of California. Berkeley, California. Sept. 5, 1995.
- [fong] *The design and implementation of the POSTGRES query optimizer*<sup>2</sup>. Zelaine Fong. University of California, Berkeley, Computer Science Department.

## Proceedings and Articles

- [ports12] “Serializable Snapshot Isolation in PostgreSQL<sup>3</sup>”. D. Ports and K. Grittner. VLDB Conference, August 2012.
- [berenson95] “A Critique of ANSI SQL Isolation Levels<sup>4</sup>”. H. Berenson, P. Bernstein, J. Gray, J. Melton, E. O’Neil, and P. O’Neil. ACM-SIGMOD Conference on Management of Data, June 1995.
- [olson93] *Partial indexing in POSTGRES: research project*. Nels Olson. UCB Engin T7.49.1993 O676. University of California. Berkeley, California. 1993.

---

<sup>1</sup> <https://dsf.berkeley.edu/papers/>

<sup>2</sup> <https://dsf.berkeley.edu/papers/UCB-MS-zfong.pdf>

<sup>3</sup> <https://arxiv.org/pdf/1208.4179>

<sup>4</sup> <https://www.microsoft.com/en-us/research/wp-content/uploads/2016/02/tr-95-51.pdf>



- [ong90] “A Unified Framework for Version Modeling Using Production Rules in a Database System”. L. Ong and J. Goh. *ERL Technical Memorandum M90/33*. University of California. Berkeley, California. April, 1990.
- [rowe87] “The POSTGRES data model<sup>5</sup>”. L. Rowe and M. Stonebraker. VLDB Conference, Sept. 1987.
- [seshadri95] “Generalized Partial Indexes<sup>6</sup>”. P. Seshadri and A. Swami. Eleventh International Conference on Data Engineering, 6–10 March 1995. Cat. No.95CH35724. IEEE Computer Society Press. Los Alamitos, California. 1995. 420–7.
- [ston86] “The design of POSTGRES<sup>7</sup>”. M. Stonebraker and L. Rowe. ACM-SIGMOD Conference on Management of Data, May 1986.
- [ston87a] “The design of the POSTGRES. rules system”. M. Stonebraker, E. Hanson, and C. H. Hong. IEEE Conference on Data Engineering, Feb. 1987.
- [ston87b] “The design of the POSTGRES storage system<sup>8</sup>”. M. Stonebraker. VLDB Conference, Sept. 1987.
- [ston89] “A commentary on the POSTGRES rules system<sup>9</sup>”. M. Stonebraker, M. Hearst, and S. Potamianos. *SIGMOD Record* 18(3). Sept. 1989.
- [ston89b] “The case for partial indexes<sup>10</sup>”. M. Stonebraker. *SIGMOD Record* 18(4). Dec. 1989. 4–11.
- [ston90a] “The implementation of POSTGRES<sup>11</sup>”. M. Stonebraker, L. A. Rowe, and M. Hirohama. *Transactions on Knowledge and Data Engineering* 2(1). IEEE. March 1990.
- [ston90b] “On Rules, Procedures, Caching and Views in Database Systems<sup>12</sup>”. M. Stonebraker, A. Jhingran, J. Goh, and S. Potamianos. ACM-SIGMOD Conference on Management of Data, June 1990.

---

<sup>5</sup> <https://dsf.berkeley.edu/papers/ERL-M87-13.pdf>

<sup>6</sup> <https://citeseer.ist.psu.edu/viewdoc/summary?doi=10.1.1.40.5740>

<sup>7</sup> <https://dsf.berkeley.edu/papers/ERL-M85-95.pdf>

<sup>8</sup> <https://dsf.berkeley.edu/papers/ERL-M87-06.pdf>

<sup>9</sup> <https://dsf.berkeley.edu/papers/ERL-M89-82.pdf>

<sup>10</sup> <https://dsf.berkeley.edu/papers/ERL-M89-17.pdf>

<sup>11</sup> <https://dsf.berkeley.edu/papers/ERL-M90-34.pdf>

<sup>12</sup> <https://dsf.berkeley.edu/papers/ERL-M90-36.pdf>

---

# Index

## Symbols

\$, 43  
\$libdir, 1195  
\$libdir/plugins, 672, 1925  
\*, 131  
.pgpass, 975  
.pg\_service.conf, 976  
::, 50  
\_PG\_archive\_module\_init, 1508  
\_PG\_init, 1195  
\_PG\_output\_plugin\_init, 1495

## A

abbrev, 299  
ABORT, 1519  
abs, 226  
ACL, 75  
aclcontains, 379  
acldefault, 379  
aclexplode, 379  
aclitem, 79  
aclitemeq, 379  
acos, 229  
acosd, 229  
acosh, 231  
administration tools  
    externally maintained, 2882  
adminpack, 2661  
advisory lock, 497  
age, 276, 392  
aggregate function, 13  
    built-in, 356  
    invocation, 45  
    moving aggregate, 1218  
    ordered set, 1221  
    partial aggregation, 1222  
    polymorphic, 1219  
    support functions for, 1223  
    user-defined, 1217  
    variadic, 1219  
AIX  
    installation on, 565  
    IPC configuration, 584  
akeys, 2737  
alias  
    for table name in query, 12  
    in the FROM clause, 120  
    in the select list, 132  
ALL, 365, 367  
    GROUP BY ALL, 128  
    SELECT ALL, 132  
allow\_in\_place\_tablespaces configuration parameter, 679  
allow\_system\_table\_mods configuration parameter, 679  
ALTER AGGREGATE, 1520  
ALTER COLLATION, 1522  
ALTER CONVERSION, 1525  
ALTER DATABASE, 1527  
ALTER DEFAULT PRIVILEGES, 1530  
ALTER DOMAIN, 1533  
ALTER EVENT TRIGGER, 1537  
ALTER EXTENSION, 1538  
ALTER FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER, 1542  
ALTER FOREIGN TABLE, 1544  
ALTER FUNCTION, 1549  
ALTER GROUP, 1553  
ALTER INDEX, 1555  
ALTER LANGUAGE, 1558  
ALTER LARGE OBJECT, 1559  
ALTER MATERIALIZED VIEW, 1560  
ALTER OPERATOR, 1562  
ALTER OPERATOR CLASS, 1564  
ALTER OPERATOR FAMILY, 1565  
ALTER POLICY, 1569  
ALTER PROCEDURE, 1571  
ALTER PUBLICATION, 1574  
ALTER ROLE, 711, 1577  
ALTER ROUTINE, 1581  
ALTER RULE, 1583  
ALTER SCHEMA, 1584  
ALTER SEQUENCE, 1585  
ALTER SERVER, 1588  
ALTER STATISTICS, 1590  
ALTER SUBSCRIPTION, 1591  
ALTER SYSTEM, 1594  
ALTER TABLE, 1596  
ALTER TABLESPACE, 1614  
ALTER TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION, 1616  
ALTER TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY, 1618  
ALTER TEXT SEARCH PARSER, 1620  
ALTER TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE, 1621  
ALTER TRIGGER, 1622  
ALTER TYPE, 1624  
ALTER USER, 1629  
ALTER USER MAPPING, 1630  
ALTER VIEW, 1631  
amcheck, 2663  
ANALYZE, 749, 1633  
AND (operator), 219  
anonymous code blocks, 1841  
any, 217  
ANY, 359, 365, 367  
anyarray, 217  
anycompatible, 217  
anycompatiblearray, 217  
anycompatiblemultirange, 217  
anycompatiblenonarray, 217  
anycompatiblerange, 217  
anyelement, 217  
anyenum, 217

- anymultirange, 217
- anynonarray, 217
- anyrange, 217
- any\_value, 356
- applicable role, 1116
- application\_name configuration parameter, 652
- arbitrary precision numbers, 148
- Archive Modules, 1508
- archive\_cleanup\_command configuration parameter, 630
- archive\_command configuration parameter, 628
- archive\_library configuration parameter, 628
- archive\_mode configuration parameter, 628
- archive\_timeout configuration parameter, 629
- area, 295
- armor, 2784
- array, 191
  - accessing, 194
  - constant, 192
  - constructor, 52
  - declaration, 192
  - I/O, 200
  - modifying, 196
  - of user-defined type, 1226
  - searching, 199
- ARRAY, 52
  - determination of result type, 426
- array\_agg, 356, 2743
- array\_append, 347
- array\_cat, 347
- array\_dims, 347
- array\_fill, 347
- array\_length, 347
- array\_lower, 348
- array\_ndims, 348
- array\_nulls configuration parameter, 675
- array\_position, 348
- array\_positions, 348
- array\_prepend, 348
- array\_remove, 348
- array\_replace, 348
- array\_sample, 348
- array\_shuffle, 349
- array\_to\_json, 326
- array\_to\_string, 349
- array\_to\_tsvector, 303
- array\_upper, 349
- ascii, 234
- asin, 230
- asind, 230
- asinh, 231
- ASSERT
  - in PL/pgSQL, 1349
- assertions
  - in PL/pgSQL, 1349
- asynchronous commit, 858
- AT TIME ZONE, 287
- atan, 230
- atan2, 230
- atan2d, 230
- atand, 230
- atanh, 231
- authentication\_timeout configuration parameter, 610
- auth\_delay, 2669
- auth\_delay.milliseconds configuration parameter, 2669
- auto-increment (see serial)
- autocommit
  - bulk-loading data, 521
  - psql, 2163
- autosummarize storage parameter, 1714
- autovacuum
  - configuration parameters, 661
  - general information, 754
- autovacuum configuration parameter, 661
- autovacuum\_analyze\_scale\_factor
  - configuration parameter, 662
  - storage parameter, 1785
- autovacuum\_analyze\_threshold
  - configuration parameter, 662
  - storage parameter, 1785
- autovacuum\_enabled storage parameter, 1784
- autovacuum\_freeze\_max\_age
  - configuration parameter, 663
  - storage parameter, 1785
- autovacuum\_freeze\_min\_age storage parameter, 1785
- autovacuum\_freeze\_table\_age storage parameter, 1785
- autovacuum\_max\_workers configuration parameter, 662
- autovacuum\_multixact\_freeze\_max\_age
  - configuration parameter, 663
  - storage parameter, 1785
- autovacuum\_multixact\_freeze\_min\_age storage parameter, 1785
- autovacuum\_multixact\_freeze\_table\_age storage parameter, 1786
- autovacuum\_naptime configuration parameter, 662
- autovacuum\_vacuum\_cost\_delay
  - configuration parameter, 663
  - storage parameter, 1785
- autovacuum\_vacuum\_cost\_limit
  - configuration parameter, 663
  - storage parameter, 1785
- autovacuum\_vacuum\_insert\_scale\_factor
  - configuration parameter, 662
  - storage parameter, 1785
- autovacuum\_vacuum\_insert\_threshold
  - configuration parameter, 662
  - storage parameter, 1785
- autovacuum\_vacuum\_scale\_factor
  - configuration parameter, 662
  - storage parameter, 1785
- autovacuum\_vacuum\_threshold
  - configuration parameter, 662
  - storage parameter, 1784
- autovacuum\_work\_mem configuration parameter, 616
- auto\_explain, 2670

- auto\_explain.log\_analyze configuration parameter, 2670
- auto\_explain.log\_buffers configuration parameter, 2670
- auto\_explain.log\_format configuration parameter, 2671
- auto\_explain.log\_level configuration parameter, 2671
- auto\_explain.log\_min\_duration configuration parameter, 2670
- auto\_explain.log\_nested\_statements configuration parameter, 2671
- auto\_explain.log\_parameter\_max\_length configuration parameter, 2670
- auto\_explain.log\_settings configuration parameter, 2671
- auto\_explain.log\_timing configuration parameter, 2671
- auto\_explain.log\_triggers configuration parameter, 2671
- auto\_explain.log\_verbose configuration parameter, 2671
- auto\_explain.log\_wal configuration parameter, 2671
- auto\_explain.sample\_rate configuration parameter, 2671
- avals, 2737
- average, 356
- avg, 356
- B**
- B-Tree (see index)
- backend\_flush\_after configuration parameter, 620
- Background workers, 1486
- backslash escapes, 35
- backslash\_quote configuration parameter, 675
- backtrace\_functions configuration parameter, 679
- backup, 396, 759
- Backup Manifest, 2550
- base type, 1171
- base64 format, 245
- basebackup\_to\_shell, 2673
- basebackup\_to\_shell.command configuration parameter, 2673
- basebackup\_to\_shell.required\_role configuration parameter, 2673
- BASE\_BACKUP, 2351
- basic\_archive, 2674
- basic\_archive.archive\_directory configuration parameter, 2674
- batch mode
  - in libpq, 948
- BEGIN, 1636
- BETWEEN, 222
- BETWEEN SYMMETRIC, 222
- BGWORKER\_BACKEND\_DATABASE\_CONNECTION, 1487
- BGWORKER\_SHMEM\_ACCESS, 1487
- bgwriter\_delay configuration parameter, 619
- bgwriter\_flush\_after configuration parameter, 620
- bgwriter\_lru\_maxpages configuration parameter, 619
- bgwriter\_lru\_multiplier configuration parameter, 619
- bigint, 39, 148
- bigserial, 152
- binary data, 156
  - functions, 241
- binary string
  - concatenation, 242
  - converting to character string, 244
  - length, 243
- bison, 541
- bit string
  - constant, 38
  - data type, 175
  - length, 246
- bit strings
  - functions, 245
- bitmap scan, 434, 639
- bit\_and, 356
- bit\_count, 243, 246
- bit\_length, 232, 242, 246
- bit\_or, 356
- bit\_xor, 356
- BLOB (see large object)
- block\_size configuration parameter, 677
- bloom, 2675
- bonjour configuration parameter, 609
- bonjour\_name configuration parameter, 609
- Boolean
  - data type, 167
  - operators (see operators, logical)
- bool\_and, 357
- bool\_or, 357
- booting
  - starting the server during, 579
- bound\_box, 296
- box, 296
- box (data type), 171
- bpchar, 153
- BRIN (see index)
- brin\_desummarize\_range, 406
- brin\_metapage\_info, 2769
- brin\_page\_items, 2770
- brin\_page\_type, 2769
- brin\_revmap\_data, 2770
- brin\_summarize\_new\_values, 406
- brin\_summarize\_range, 406
- broadcast, 300
- BSD Authentication, 707
- btree\_gin, 2679
- btree\_gist, 2680
- btrim, 232, 242
- bt\_index\_check, 2663
- bt\_index\_parent\_check, 2664
- bt\_metap, 2766
- bt\_multi\_page\_stats, 2767
- bt\_page\_items, 2767, 2768
- bt\_page\_stats, 2766
- buffering storage parameter, 1714

bytea, 156  
bytea\_output configuration parameter, 669

## C

C, 904, 1007  
C++, 1215  
CALL, 1638  
canceling  
    SQL command, 953  
cardinality, 349  
CASCADE  
    with DROP, 108  
    foreign key action, 69  
Cascading Replication, 774  
CASE, 343  
    determination of result type, 426  
case sensitivity  
    of SQL commands, 34  
cast  
    I/O conversion, 1671  
cbrt, 226  
ceil, 226  
ceiling, 226  
center, 295  
Certificate, 706  
chained transactions, 1650, 1961  
    in PL/pgSQL, 1346  
char, 153  
character, 153  
character set, 670, 678, 737  
character string  
    concatenation, 232  
    constant, 35  
    converting to binary string, 244  
    data types, 153  
    length, 232  
    prefix test, 234  
character varying, 153  
character\_length, 232  
char\_length, 232  
check constraint, 62  
CHECK OPTION, 1826  
checkpoint, 859  
CHECKPOINT, 1640  
checkpoint\_completion\_target configuration parameter, 627  
checkpoint\_flush\_after configuration parameter, 627  
checkpoint\_timeout configuration parameter, 627  
checkpoint\_warning configuration parameter, 627  
checksums, 857  
check\_function\_bodies configuration parameter, 665  
chr, 234  
cid, 214  
cidr, 173  
circle, 172, 296  
citext, 2682  
client authentication, 686  
    timeout during, 610  
client\_connection\_check\_interval configuration parameter, 609  
client\_encoding configuration parameter, 670  
client\_min\_messages configuration parameter, 663  
clock\_timestamp, 276  
CLOSE, 1641  
cluster  
    of databases (see database cluster)  
CLUSTER, 1642  
clusterdb, 2026  
clustering, 774  
cluster\_name configuration parameter, 659  
cmax, 72  
cmin, 72  
COALESCE, 345  
COLLATE, 51  
collation, 727  
    in PL/pgSQL, 1315  
    in SQL functions, 1191  
COLLATION FOR, 384  
color, 2913  
column, 7, 59  
    adding, 73  
    removing, 73  
    renaming, 75  
    system column, 71  
column data type  
    changing, 74  
column reference, 43  
col\_description, 388  
comment  
    about database objects, 388  
    in SQL, 41  
COMMENT, 1645  
COMMIT, 1650  
COMMIT PREPARED, 1651  
commit\_delay configuration parameter, 627  
commit\_siblings configuration parameter, 627  
common table expression (see WITH)  
comparison  
    composite type, 367  
    operators, 220  
    row constructor, 367  
    subquery result row, 365  
compiling  
    libpq applications, 982  
composite type, 201, 1171  
    comparison, 367  
    constant, 202  
    constructor, 53  
computed field, 206  
compute\_query\_id configuration parameter, 661  
concat, 235  
concat\_ws, 235  
concurrency, 486  
conditional expression, 343  
configuration  
    of recovery

- general settings, 629
  - of a standby server, 629
  - of the server, 602
  - of the server
    - functions, 393
- configure, 541
- configure environment variables, 551
- configure options, 544
- config\_file configuration parameter, 606
- conjunction, 219
- connectby, 2849, 2856
- connection service file, 976
- conninfo, 911
- constant, 35
- constraint, 62
  - adding, 73
  - check, 62
  - exclusion, 71
  - foreign key, 68
  - name, 63
  - NOT NULL, 65
  - primary key, 67
  - removing, 74
  - unique, 65
- constraint exclusion, 106, 644
- constraint\_exclusion configuration parameter, 644
- container type, 1171
- CONTINUE
  - in PL/pgSQL, 1332
- continuous archiving, 759
  - in standby, 785
- control file, 1247
- convert, 244
- convert\_from, 244
- convert\_to, 245
- COPY, 9, 1652
  - with libpq, 956
- corr, 359
- correlation, 359
  - in the query planner, 516
- cos, 230
- cosd, 230
- cosh, 231
- cot, 230
- cotd, 230
- count, 357
- covariance
  - population, 360
  - sample, 360
- covar\_pop, 360
- covar\_samp, 360
- covering index, 439
- cpu\_index\_tuple\_cost configuration parameter, 642
- cpu\_operator\_cost configuration parameter, 642
- cpu\_tuple\_cost configuration parameter, 642
- CREATE ACCESS METHOD, 1662
- CREATE AGGREGATE, 1663
- CREATE CAST, 1671
- CREATE COLLATION, 1675
- CREATE CONVERSION, 1678
- CREATE DATABASE, 717, 1680
- CREATE DOMAIN, 1685
- CREATE EVENT TRIGGER, 1688
- CREATE EXTENSION, 1690
- CREATE FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER, 1693
- CREATE FOREIGN TABLE, 1695
- CREATE FUNCTION, 1700
- CREATE GROUP, 1709
- CREATE INDEX, 1710
- CREATE LANGUAGE, 1719
- CREATE MATERIALIZED VIEW, 1722
- CREATE OPERATOR, 1724
- CREATE OPERATOR CLASS, 1727
- CREATE OPERATOR FAMILY, 1730
- CREATE POLICY, 1731
- CREATE PROCEDURE, 1737
- CREATE PUBLICATION, 1741
- CREATE ROLE, 709, 1745
- CREATE RULE, 1750
- CREATE SCHEMA, 1753
- CREATE SEQUENCE, 1756
- CREATE SERVER, 1760
- CREATE STATISTICS, 1762
- CREATE SUBSCRIPTION, 1766
- CREATE TABLE, 7, 1771
- CREATE TABLE AS, 1794
- CREATE TABLESPACE, 721, 1797
- CREATE TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION, 1799
- CREATE TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY, 1800
- CREATE TEXT SEARCH PARSER, 1802
- CREATE TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE, 1804
- CREATE TRANSFORM, 1805
- CREATE TRIGGER, 1807
- CREATE TYPE, 1814
- CREATE USER, 1823
- CREATE USER MAPPING, 1824
- CREATE VIEW, 1826
- createdb, 3, 718, 2029
- createrole\_self\_grant
  - configuration parameter, 669
- createrole\_self\_grant configuration parameter
  - use in securing functions, 1707
- createuser, 709, 2033
- CREATE\_REPLICATION\_SLOT, 2346
- cross compilation, 549, 561
- cross join, 116
- crostab, 2850, 2852, 2853
- crypt, 2781
- cstring, 217
- CSV (Comma-Separated Values) format
  - in psql, 2156
- ctid, 72
- CTID, 1284
- CUBE, 128
- cube (extension), 2685
- cume\_dist, 364

- hypothetical, 362
- current\_catalog, 374
- current\_database, 374
- current\_date, 276
- current\_logfiles
  - and the log\_destination configuration parameter, 646
  - and the pg\_current\_logfile function, 375
- current\_query, 374
- current\_role, 374
- current\_schema, 374
- current\_schemas, 374
- current\_setting, 394
- current\_time, 276
- current\_timestamp, 277
- current\_user, 374
- currval, 342
- cursor
  - CLOSE, 1641
  - DECLARE, 1833
  - FETCH, 1903
  - in PL/pgSQL, 1340
  - MOVE, 1935
  - showing the query plan, 1897
- cursor\_tuple\_fraction configuration parameter, 645
- custom scan provider
  - handler for, 2429
- Cygwin
  - installation on, 566

## D

- daitch\_mokotoff, 2731
- data area (see database cluster)
- data partitioning, 774
- data type, 146
  - base, 1171
  - category, 417
  - composite, 1171
  - constant, 39
  - container, 1171
  - conversion, 416
  - domain, 213
  - enumerated (enum), 168
  - internal organization, 1196
  - numeric, 147
  - polymorphic, 1172
  - type cast, 50
  - user-defined, 1224
- database, 717
  - creating, 3
  - privilege to create, 710
- database activity
  - monitoring, 795
- database cluster, 7, 576
- data\_checksums configuration parameter, 677
- data\_directory configuration parameter, 606
- data\_directory\_mode configuration parameter, 677
- data\_sync\_retry configuration parameter, 677

- date, 158, 159
  - constants, 162
  - current, 288
  - output format, 163
    - (see also formatting)
- DateStyle configuration parameter, 669
- date\_add, 277
- date\_bin, 286
- date\_part, 277, 281
- date\_subtract, 277
- date\_trunc, 277, 285
- dblink, 2690, 2696
  - dblink\_build\_sql\_delete, 2718
  - dblink\_build\_sql\_insert, 2716
  - dblink\_build\_sql\_update, 2720
  - dblink\_cancel\_query, 2714
  - dblink\_close, 2705
  - dblink\_connect, 2691
  - dblink\_connect\_u, 2694
  - dblink\_disconnect, 2695
  - dblink\_error\_message, 2708
  - dblink\_exec, 2699
  - dblink\_fetch, 2703
  - dblink\_get\_connections, 2707
  - dblink\_get\_notify, 2711
  - dblink\_get\_pkey, 2715
  - dblink\_get\_result, 2712
  - dblink\_is\_busy, 2710
  - dblink\_open, 2701
  - dblink\_send\_query, 2709
- db\_user\_namespace configuration parameter, 611
- deadlock, 496
  - timeout during, 674
- deadlock\_timeout configuration parameter, 674
- DEALLOCATE, 1832
- dearmor, 2784
- debug\_assertions configuration parameter, 678
- debug\_deadlocks configuration parameter, 682
- debug\_discard\_caches configuration parameter, 680
- debug\_io\_direct configuration parameter, 680
- debug\_logical\_replication\_streaming configuration parameter, 684
- debug\_parallel\_query configuration parameter, 680
- debug\_pretty\_print configuration parameter, 652
- debug\_print\_parse configuration parameter, 652
- debug\_print\_plan configuration parameter, 652
- debug\_print\_rewritten configuration parameter, 652
- decimal (see numeric)
- DECLARE, 1833
- decode, 245
- decode\_bytea
  - in PL/Perl, 1395
- decrypt, 2788
- decrypt\_iv, 2788
- deduplicate\_items storage parameter, 1713
- default value, 60
  - changing, 74
- default-roles, 2914

- default\_statistics\_target configuration parameter, 644
  - default\_tablespace configuration parameter, 664
  - default\_table\_access\_method configuration parameter, 664
  - default\_text\_search\_config configuration parameter, 671
  - default\_toast\_compression configuration parameter, 665
  - default\_transaction\_deferrable configuration parameter, 666
  - default\_transaction\_isolation configuration parameter, 665
  - default\_transaction\_read\_only configuration parameter, 666
  - deferrable transaction, 666
    - setting, 2002
    - setting default, 666
  - defined, 2739
  - degrees, 226
  - delay, 289
  - DELETE, 15, 113, 1837
    - RETURNING, 113
  - delete, 2739
  - deleting, 113
  - dense\_rank, 363
    - hypothetical, 362
  - diagonal, 295
  - diameter, 295
  - dict\_int, 2722
  - dict\_xsyn, 2723
  - difference, 2730
  - digest, 2780
  - dirty read, 486
  - DISCARD, 1840
  - disjunction, 219
  - disk drive, 862
  - disk space, 748
  - disk usage, 853
  - DISTINCT, 10
    - GROUP BY DISTINCT, 128
    - SELECT DISTINCT, 132
  - div, 226
  - dmetaphone, 2734
  - dmetaphone\_alt, 2734
  - DO, 1841
  - document
    - text search, 446
  - dollar quoting, 37
  - domain, 213
  - double precision, 150
  - DROP ACCESS METHOD, 1843
  - DROP AGGREGATE, 1844
  - DROP CAST, 1846
  - DROP COLLATION, 1847
  - DROP CONVERSION, 1848
  - DROP DATABASE, 720, 1849
  - DROP DOMAIN, 1850
  - DROP EVENT TRIGGER, 1851
  - DROP EXTENSION, 1852
  - DROP FOREIGN DATA WRAPPER, 1853
  - DROP FOREIGN TABLE, 1854
  - DROP FUNCTION, 1855
  - DROP GROUP, 1857
  - DROP INDEX, 1858
  - DROP LANGUAGE, 1860
  - DROP MATERIALIZED VIEW, 1861
  - DROP OPERATOR, 1862
  - DROP OPERATOR CLASS, 1864
  - DROP OPERATOR FAMILY, 1866
  - DROP OWNED, 1868
  - DROP POLICY, 1869
  - DROP PROCEDURE, 1870
  - DROP PUBLICATION, 1872
  - DROP ROLE, 709, 1873
  - DROP ROUTINE, 1874
  - DROP RULE, 1876
  - DROP SCHEMA, 1877
  - DROP SEQUENCE, 1878
  - DROP SERVER, 1879
  - DROP STATISTICS, 1880
  - DROP SUBSCRIPTION, 1881
  - DROP TABLE, 8, 1883
  - DROP TABLESPACE, 1884
  - DROP TEXT SEARCH CONFIGURATION, 1885
  - DROP TEXT SEARCH DICTIONARY, 1886
  - DROP TEXT SEARCH PARSER, 1887
  - DROP TEXT SEARCH TEMPLATE, 1888
  - DROP TRANSFORM, 1889
  - DROP TRIGGER, 1890
  - DROP TYPE, 1891
  - DROP USER, 1892
  - DROP USER MAPPING, 1893
  - DROP VIEW, 1894
  - dropdb, 720, 2038
  - dropuser, 709, 2041
  - DROP\_REPLICATION\_SLOT, 2351
  - DTD, 180
  - DTrace, 551, 563, 843
  - duplicate, 10
  - duplicates, 132
  - dynamic loading, 673, 1195
  - dynamic\_library\_path, 1195
  - dynamic\_library\_path configuration parameter, 673
  - dynamic\_shared\_memory\_type configuration parameter, 617
- ## E
- each, 2738
  - earth, 2725
  - earthdistance, 2725
  - earth\_box, 2726
  - earth\_distance, 2726
  - ECPG, 1007
  - ecpg, 2044
  - effective\_cache\_size configuration parameter, 643
  - effective\_io\_concurrency configuration parameter, 620



- elog, 2387
    - in PL/Perl, 1395
    - in PL/Python, 1415
    - in PL/Tcl, 1380
  - embedded SQL
    - in C, 1007
  - enabled role, 1134
  - enable\_async\_append configuration parameter, 639
  - enable\_bitmapscan configuration parameter, 639
  - enable\_gathermerge configuration parameter, 639
  - enable\_hashagg configuration parameter, 639
  - enable\_hashjoin configuration parameter, 639
  - enable\_incremental\_sort configuration parameter, 639
  - enable\_indexonlyscan configuration parameter, 640
  - enable\_indexscan configuration parameter, 640
  - enable\_material configuration parameter, 640
  - enable\_memoize configuration parameter, 640
  - enable\_mergejoin configuration parameter, 640
  - enable\_nestloop configuration parameter, 640
  - enable\_parallel\_append configuration parameter, 640
  - enable\_parallel\_hash configuration parameter, 640
  - enable\_partitionwise\_aggregate configuration parameter, 640
  - enable\_partitionwise\_join configuration parameter, 640
  - enable\_partition\_pruning configuration parameter, 640
  - enable\_presorted\_aggregate configuration parameter, 641
  - enable\_seqscan configuration parameter, 641
  - enable\_sort configuration parameter, 641
  - enable\_tidscan configuration parameter, 641
  - encode, 245
  - encode\_array\_constructor
    - in PL/Perl, 1396
  - encode\_array\_literal
    - in PL/Perl, 1395
  - encode\_bytea
    - in PL/Perl, 1395
  - encode\_typed\_literal
    - in PL/Perl, 1396
  - encrypt, 2788
  - encryption, 594
    - for specific columns, 2780
  - encrypt\_iv, 2788
  - END, 1895
  - enumerated types, 168
  - enum\_first, 290
  - enum\_last, 290
  - enum\_range, 290
  - environment variable, 973
  - ephemeral named relation
    - registering with SPI, 1458, 1460
    - unregistering from SPI, 1459
  - ereport, 2386
  - erf, 226
  - erfc, 226
  - error codes
    - libpq, 935
    - list of, 2559
  - error message, 926
  - escape format, 245
  - escape string syntax, 35
  - escape\_string\_warning configuration parameter, 675
  - escaping strings
    - in libpq, 941
  - event log
    - event log, 600
  - event trigger, 1269
    - in C, 1273
    - in PL/Tcl, 1382
  - event\_source configuration parameter, 649
  - event\_trigger, 217
  - every, 357
  - EXCEPT, 133
  - exceptions
    - in PL/pgSQL, 1336
    - in PL/Tcl, 1382
  - exclusion constraint, 71
  - EXECUTE, 1896
  - exist, 2739
  - EXISTS, 365
  - EXIT
    - in PL/pgSQL, 1332
  - exit\_on\_error configuration parameter, 676
  - exp, 226
  - EXPLAIN, 502, 1897
  - expression
    - order of evaluation, 55
    - syntax, 42
  - extending SQL, 1171
  - extension, 1246
    - externally maintained, 2882
  - external\_pid\_file configuration parameter, 606
  - extract, 278, 281
  - extra\_float\_digits configuration parameter, 670
- ## F
- factorial, 226
  - failover, 774
  - false, 167
  - family, 300
  - fast path, 954
  - fastupdate storage parameter, 1714
  - fdw\_handler, 217
  - FETCH, 1903
  - field
    - computed, 206
  - field selection, 44
  - file system mount points, 578
  - file\_fdw, 2727
  - fillfactor storage parameter, 1713, 1783
  - FILTER, 45
  - first\_value, 364
  - flex, 541
  - float4 (see real)
  - float8 (see double precision)

floating point, 150  
floating-point  
  display, 670  
floor, 226  
foreign data, 108  
foreign data wrapper  
  handler for, 2404  
foreign key, 17, 68  
  self-referential, 68  
foreign table, 108  
format, 235, 239  
  use in PL/pgSQL, 1322  
formatting, 266  
format\_type, 381  
Free Space Map, 2524  
FreeBSD  
  IPC configuration, 584  
  shared library, 1203  
  start script, 579  
from\_collapse\_limit configuration parameter, 645  
FSM (see Free Space Map)  
fsm\_page\_contents, 2765  
fsync configuration parameter, 623  
full text search, 445  
  data types, 176  
  functions and operators, 176  
full\_page\_writes configuration parameter, 625  
function, 219  
  default values for arguments, 1184  
  in the FROM clause, 121  
  internal, 1194  
  invocation, 45  
  mixed notation, 58  
  named argument, 1176  
  named notation, 57  
  output parameter, 1181  
  polymorphic, 1172  
  positional notation, 57  
  RETURNS TABLE, 1189  
  statistics, 414  
  type resolution in an invocation, 421  
  user-defined, 1174  
    in C, 1195  
    in SQL, 1175  
  variadic, 1183  
  with SETOF, 1185  
functional dependency, 127  
fuzzystmatch, 2730

## G

gcd, 227  
gc\_to\_sec, 2726  
generated column, 61, 1697, 1779  
  in triggers, 1261  
generate\_series, 370  
generate\_subscripts, 372  
genetic query optimization, 643  
gen\_random\_bytes, 2788

gen\_random\_uuid, 308, 2789  
gen\_salt, 2781  
GEQO (see genetic query optimization)  
geqo configuration parameter, 643  
geqo\_effort configuration parameter, 644  
geqo\_generations configuration parameter, 644  
geqo\_pool\_size configuration parameter, 644  
geqo\_seed configuration parameter, 644  
geqo\_selection\_bias configuration parameter, 644  
geqo\_threshold configuration parameter, 643  
get\_bit, 243, 247  
get\_byte, 243  
get\_current\_ts\_config, 303  
get\_raw\_page, 2764  
GIN (see index)  
gin\_clean\_pending\_list, 406  
gin\_fuzzy\_search\_limit configuration parameter, 674  
gin\_leafpage\_items, 2771  
gin\_metapage\_info, 2770  
gin\_page\_opaque\_info, 2771  
gin\_pending\_list\_limit  
  configuration parameter, 669  
  storage parameter, 1714  
GiST (see index)  
gist\_page\_items, 2772  
gist\_page\_items\_bytea, 2772  
gist\_page\_opaque\_info, 2771  
global data  
  in PL/Python, 1409  
  in PL/Tcl, 1377  
GRANT, 75, 1907  
GREATEST, 346  
  determination of result type, 426  
Gregorian calendar, 2574  
GROUP BY, 14, 125  
grouping, 125  
GROUPING, 362  
GROUPING SETS, 128  
gssapi, 599  
GSSAPI, 699  
  with libpq, 917  
gss\_accept\_delegation configuration parameter, 610  
GUID, 179

## H

hash (see index)  
hash\_bitmap\_info, 2773  
hash\_mem\_multiplier configuration parameter, 616  
hash\_metapage\_info, 2774  
hash\_page\_items, 2773  
hash\_page\_stats, 2773  
hash\_page\_type, 2773  
has\_any\_column\_privilege, 377  
has\_column\_privilege, 377  
has\_database\_privilege, 377  
has\_foreign\_data\_wrapper\_privilege, 377  
has\_function\_privilege, 378  
has\_language\_privilege, 378

- has\_parameter\_privilege, 378
- has\_schema\_privilege, 378
- has\_sequence\_privilege, 378
- has\_server\_privilege, 378
- has\_tablespace\_privilege, 378
- has\_table\_privilege, 378
- has\_type\_privilege, 378
- HAVING, 14, 127
- hba\_file configuration parameter, 606
- heap\_page\_items, 2765
- heap\_page\_item\_attrs, 2765
- heap\_tuple\_infomask\_flags, 2766
- height, 295
- hex format, 245
- hierarchical database, 7
- high availability, 774
- history
  - of PostgreSQL, xxxii
- hmac, 2780
- host, 300
- host name, 913
- hostmask, 300
- hot standby, 774
- hot\_standby configuration parameter, 636
- hot\_standby\_feedback configuration parameter, 637
- hstore, 2735, 2737
- hstore\_to\_array, 2738
- hstore\_to\_json, 2738
- hstore\_to\_jsonb, 2738
- hstore\_to\_jsonb\_loose, 2738
- hstore\_to\_json\_loose, 2738
- hstore\_to\_matrix, 2738
- huge\_pages configuration parameter, 614
- huge\_page\_size configuration parameter, 615
- hypothetical-set aggregate
  - built-in, 362

**I**

- icount, 2745
- ICU, 548, 558, 725, 729, 1676, 1682
- icu\_validation\_level configuration parameter, 671
- ident, 701
- identifier
  - length, 34
  - syntax of, 33
- IDENTIFY\_SYSTEM, 2346
- ident\_file configuration parameter, 606
- idle\_in\_transaction\_session\_timeout configuration parameter, 667
- idle\_session\_timeout configuration parameter, 667
- idx, 2745
- IFNULL, 345
- ignore\_checksum\_failure configuration parameter, 683
- ignore\_invalid\_pages configuration parameter, 683
- ignore\_system\_indexes configuration parameter, 681
- IMMUTABLE, 1193
- IMPORT FOREIGN SCHEMA, 1913
- IN, 365, 367

- INCLUDE
  - in index definitions, 440
- include
  - in configuration file, 604
- include\_dir
  - in configuration file, 605
- include\_if\_exists
  - in configuration file, 605
- index, 429, 2758
  - and ORDER BY, 433
  - B-Tree, 430, 2459
  - BRIN, 432, 2504
  - building concurrently, 1714
  - combining multiple indexes, 434
  - covering, 439
  - examining usage, 443
  - on expressions, 435
  - for user-defined data type, 1233
  - GIN, 431, 2497
    - text search, 481
  - GiST, 431, 2466
    - text search, 481
  - hash, 431
  - Hash, 2517
  - index-only scans, 439
  - locks, 500
  - multicolumn, 432
  - partial, 436
  - rebuilding concurrently, 1950
  - SP-GiST, 431, 2484
  - unique, 435
- Index Access Method, 2439
- index scan, 640
- index-only scan, 439
- indexam
  - Index Access Method, 2439
- index\_am\_handler, 217
- inet (data type), 173
- inet\_client\_addr, 374
- inet\_client\_port, 375
- inet\_merge, 300
- inet\_same\_family, 300
- inet\_server\_addr, 375
- inet\_server\_port, 375
- infinity
  - floating point, 151
  - numeric (data type), 149
- information schema, 1115
- inheritance, 23, 90
- initcap, 235
- initdb, 576, 2187
- Initialization Fork, 2525
- input function, 1224
- INSERT, 8, 111, 1915
  - RETURNING, 113
- inserting, 111
- installation, 539
  - binaries, 538

- on Windows, 570
- instr function, 1372
- int2 (see smallint)
- int4 (see integer)
- int8 (see bigint)
- intagg, 2743
- intarray, 2745
- integer, 39, 148
- integer\_datetimes configuration parameter, 678
- interfaces
  - externally maintained, 2882
- internal, 217
- INTERSECT, 133
- interval, 158, 165
  - output format, 167
  - (see also formatting)
- IntervalStyle configuration parameter, 670
- intset, 2746
- int\_array\_aggregate, 2743
- int\_array\_enum, 2743
- inverse distribution, 361
- in\_hot\_standby configuration parameter, 678
- in\_range support functions, 2460
- IS DISTINCT FROM, 222, 367
- IS DOCUMENT, 312
- IS FALSE, 223
- IS JSON, 327
- IS NOT DISTINCT FROM, 222, 367
- IS NOT DOCUMENT, 313
- IS NOT FALSE, 223
- IS NOT NULL, 222
- IS NOT TRUE, 223
- IS NOT UNKNOWN, 223
- IS NULL, 222, 676
- IS TRUE, 223
- IS UNKNOWN, 223
- isclosed, 295
- isempty, 354, 355
- isfinite, 278
- isn, 2749
- ISNULL, 222
- isn\_weak, 2750
- isopen, 295
- is\_array\_ref
  - in PL/Perl, 1396
- is\_valid, 2750

## J

- JIT, 887
- jit configuration parameter, 645
- jit\_above\_cost configuration parameter, 643
- jit\_debugging\_support configuration parameter, 683
- jit\_dump\_bitcode configuration parameter, 683
- jit\_expressions configuration parameter, 684
- jit\_inline\_above\_cost configuration parameter, 643
- jit\_optimize\_above\_cost configuration parameter, 643
- jit\_profiling\_support configuration parameter, 684
- jit\_provider configuration parameter, 673
- jit\_tuple\_deforming configuration parameter, 684
- join, 11, 116
  - controlling the order, 519
  - cross, 116
  - left, 117
  - natural, 118
  - outer, 12, 117
  - right, 117
  - self, 12
- join\_collapse\_limit configuration parameter, 645
- JSON, 181
  - functions and operators, 322
- JSONB, 181
- jsonb
  - containment, 184
  - existence, 184
  - indexes on, 186
- jsonb\_agg, 357
- jsonb\_agg\_strict, 358
- jsonb\_array\_elements, 328
- jsonb\_array\_elements\_text, 328
- jsonb\_array\_length, 329
- jsonb\_build\_array, 326
- jsonb\_build\_object, 326
- jsonb\_each, 329
- jsonb\_each\_text, 329
- jsonb\_extract\_path, 329
- jsonb\_extract\_path\_text, 329
- jsonb\_insert, 332
- jsonb\_object, 327
- jsonb\_object\_agg, 357
- jsonb\_object\_agg\_strict, 357
- jsonb\_object\_agg\_unique, 357
- jsonb\_object\_agg\_unique\_strict, 358
- jsonb\_object\_keys, 330
- jsonb\_path\_exists, 332
- jsonb\_path\_exists\_tz, 333
- jsonb\_path\_match, 333
- jsonb\_path\_match\_tz, 333
- jsonb\_path\_query, 333
- jsonb\_path\_query\_array, 333
- jsonb\_path\_query\_array\_tz, 333
- jsonb\_path\_query\_first, 333
- jsonb\_path\_query\_first\_tz, 334
- jsonb\_path\_query\_tz, 333
- jsonb\_populate\_record, 330
- jsonb\_populate\_recordset, 331
- jsonb\_pretty, 334
- jsonb\_set, 331
- jsonb\_set\_lax, 332
- jsonb\_strip\_nulls, 332
- jsonb\_to\_record, 331
- jsonb\_to\_recordset, 331
- jsonb\_to\_tsvector, 304
- jsonb\_typeof, 334
- jsonpath, 190
- json\_agg, 357
- json\_agg\_strict, 358

- json\_array, 326
- json\_arrayagg, 357
- json\_array\_elements, 328
- json\_array\_elements\_text, 328
- json\_array\_length, 329
- json\_build\_array, 326
- json\_build\_object, 326
- json\_each, 329
- json\_each\_text, 329
- json\_extract\_path, 329
- json\_extract\_path\_text, 329
- json\_object, 327, 327
- json\_objectagg, 357
- json\_object\_agg, 357
- json\_object\_agg\_strict, 357
- json\_object\_agg\_unique, 357
- json\_object\_agg\_unique\_strict, 358
- json\_object\_keys, 329
- json\_populate\_record, 330
- json\_populate\_recordset, 331
- json\_strip\_nulls, 332
- json\_to\_record, 331
- json\_to\_recordset, 331
- json\_to\_tsvector, 304
- json\_typeof, 334
- Julian date, 2575
- Just-In-Time compilation (see JIT)
- justify\_days, 278
- justify\_hours, 278
- justify\_interval, 278

## K

- key word
  - list of, 2576
  - syntax of, 33
- krb\_caseins\_users configuration parameter, 610
- krb\_server\_keyfile configuration parameter, 610

## L

- label (see alias)
- lag, 364
- language\_handler, 217
- large object, 995
- lastval, 343
- last\_value, 364
- LATERAL
  - in the FROM clause, 123
- latitude, 2726
- lca, 2758
- lcm, 227
- lc\_messages configuration parameter, 671
- lc\_monetary configuration parameter, 671
- lc\_numeric configuration parameter, 671
- lc\_time configuration parameter, 671
- LDAP, 547, 558, 702
- LDAP connection parameter lookup, 976
- ldconfig, 564

- lead, 364
- LEAST, 346
  - determination of result type, 426
- left, 235
- left join, 117
- length, 235, 243, 246, 295, 303
  - of a binary string (see binary strings, length)
  - of a character string (see character string, length)
- length(tsvector), 459
- levenshtein, 2733
- levenshtein\_less\_equal, 2733
- lex, 541
- libedit, 539
  - in psql, 2170
- libperl, 540
- libpq, 904
  - pipeline mode, 948
  - single-row mode, 953
- libpq-fe.h, 904, 922
- libpq-int.h, 922
- libpython, 540
- library initialization function, 1195
- LIKE, 248
  - and locales, 724
- LIKE\_REGEX, 265
  - in SQL/JSON, 341
- LIMIT, 135
- line, 171, 297
- line segment, 171
- linear regression, 359
- Linux
  - IPC configuration, 585
  - shared library, 1203
  - start script, 580
- LISTEN, 1923
- listen\_addresses configuration parameter, 607
- llvm-config, 546, 558
- ll\_to\_earth, 2726
- ln, 227
- lo, 2753
- LOAD, 1925
- load balancing, 774
- locale, 577, 723
- localtime, 278
- localtimestamp, 278
- local\_preload\_libraries configuration parameter, 672
- lock, 492
  - advisory, 497
  - monitoring, 835
- LOCK, 492, 1926
- lock\_timeout configuration parameter, 667
- log, 227
- log shipping, 774
- log10, 227
- Logging
  - current\_logfiles file and the pg\_current\_logfile function, 375
  - pg\_current\_logfile function, 375

- logging\_collector configuration parameter, 647
  - Logical Decoding, 1489, 1493
  - logical\_decoding\_work\_mem configuration parameter, 616
  - login privilege, 710
  - log\_autovacuum\_min\_duration
    - configuration parameter, 652
    - storage parameter, 1786
  - log\_btree\_build\_stats configuration parameter, 682
  - log\_checkpoints configuration parameter, 652
  - log\_connections configuration parameter, 652
  - log\_destination configuration parameter, 646
  - log\_directory configuration parameter, 647
  - log\_disconnections configuration parameter, 653
  - log\_duration configuration parameter, 653
  - log\_error\_verbosity configuration parameter, 653
  - log\_executor\_stats configuration parameter, 661
  - log\_filename configuration parameter, 647
  - log\_file\_mode configuration parameter, 648
  - log\_hostname configuration parameter, 653
  - log\_line\_prefix configuration parameter, 653
  - log\_lock\_waits configuration parameter, 655
  - log\_min\_duration\_sample configuration parameter, 650
  - log\_min\_duration\_statement configuration parameter, 650
  - log\_min\_error\_statement configuration parameter, 650
  - log\_min\_messages configuration parameter, 649
  - log\_parameter\_max\_length configuration parameter, 656
  - log\_parameter\_max\_length\_on\_error configuration parameter, 656
  - log\_parser\_stats configuration parameter, 661
  - log\_planner\_stats configuration parameter, 661
  - log\_recovery\_conflict\_waits configuration parameter, 655
  - log\_replication\_commands configuration parameter, 656
  - log\_rotation\_age configuration parameter, 648
  - log\_rotation\_size configuration parameter, 648
  - log\_startup\_progress\_interval configuration parameter, 651
  - log\_statement configuration parameter, 656
  - log\_statement\_sample\_rate configuration parameter, 650
  - log\_statement\_stats configuration parameter, 661
  - log\_temp\_files configuration parameter, 656
  - log\_timezone configuration parameter, 657
  - log\_transaction\_sample\_rate configuration parameter, 651
  - log\_truncate\_on\_rotation configuration parameter, 648
  - longitude, 2726
  - looks\_like\_number
    - in PL/Perl, 1396
  - loop
    - in PL/pgSQL, 1331
  - lower, 232, 354, 355
    - and locales, 724
  - lower\_inc, 354, 355
  - lower\_inf, 354, 355
  - lo\_close, 999
  - lo\_compat\_privileges configuration parameter, 675
  - lo\_creat, 996, 1000
  - lo\_create, 996
  - lo\_export, 997, 1000
  - lo\_from\_bytea, 1000
  - lo\_get, 1000
  - lo\_import, 996, 1000
  - lo\_import\_with\_oid, 996
  - lo\_lseek, 998
  - lo\_lseek64, 998
  - lo\_open, 997
  - lo\_put, 1000
  - lo\_read, 998
  - lo\_tell, 998
  - lo\_tell64, 998
  - lo\_truncate, 999
  - lo\_truncate64, 999
  - lo\_unlink, 999, 1000
  - lo\_write, 997
  - lpad, 232
  - lseg, 171, 297
  - LSN, 862
  - ltree, 2755
  - ltree2text, 2758
  - ltrim, 233, 242
- ## M
- MAC address (see macaddr)
  - MAC address (EUI-64 format) (see macaddr)
  - macaddr (data type), 174
  - macaddr8 (data type), 174
  - macaddr8\_set7bit, 301
  - macOS
    - installation on, 567
    - IPC configuration, 585
    - shared library, 1203
  - magic block, 1195
  - maintenance, 747
  - maintenance\_io\_concurrency configuration parameter, 621
  - maintenance\_work\_mem configuration parameter, 616
  - make, 539
  - makeaclitem, 380
  - make\_date, 279
  - make\_interval, 279
  - make\_time, 279
  - make\_timestamp, 279
  - make\_timestamptz, 279
  - make\_valid, 2750
  - MANPATH, 565
  - masklen, 300
  - materialized view
    - implementation through rules, 1285
  - materialized views, 2310
  - max, 358

max\_connections configuration parameter, 607  
max\_files\_per\_process configuration parameter, 618  
max\_function\_args configuration parameter, 678  
max\_identifier\_length configuration parameter, 678  
max\_index\_keys configuration parameter, 678  
max\_locks\_per\_transaction configuration parameter, 674  
max\_logical\_replication\_workers configuration parameter, 638  
max\_parallel\_apply\_workers\_per\_subscription configuration parameter, 639  
max\_parallel\_maintenance\_workers configuration parameter, 621  
max\_parallel\_workers configuration parameter, 621  
max\_parallel\_workers\_per\_gather configuration parameter, 621  
max\_pred\_locks\_per\_page configuration parameter, 675  
max\_pred\_locks\_per\_relation configuration parameter, 674  
max\_pred\_locks\_per\_transaction configuration parameter, 674  
max\_prepared\_transactions configuration parameter, 615  
max\_replication\_slots configuration parameter  
    in a sending server, 633  
    in a subscriber, 638  
max\_slot\_wal\_keep\_size configuration parameter, 633  
max\_stack\_depth configuration parameter, 617  
max\_standby\_archive\_delay configuration parameter, 636  
max\_standby\_streaming\_delay configuration parameter, 636  
max\_sync\_workers\_per\_subscription configuration parameter, 639  
max\_wal\_senders configuration parameter, 633  
max\_wal\_size configuration parameter, 628  
max\_worker\_processes configuration parameter, 621  
md5, 235, 243  
MD5, 698  
median, 47  
    (see also percentile)  
memory context  
    in SPI, 1469  
memory overcommit, 588  
MERGE, 1929  
Meson, 539  
metaphone, 2733  
min, 358  
MinGW  
    installation on, 568  
min\_dynamic\_shared\_memory configuration parameter, 617  
min\_parallel\_index\_scan\_size configuration parameter, 643  
min\_parallel\_table\_scan\_size configuration parameter, 642  
min\_scale, 227

min\_wal\_size configuration parameter, 628  
mod, 227  
mode  
    statistical, 361  
monitoring  
    database activity, 795  
MOVE, 1935  
moving-aggregate mode, 1218  
multirange (function), 355  
multirange type, 207  
Multiversion Concurrency Control, 486  
MultiXactId, 754  
MVCC, 486  
mxid\_age, 392

## N

name  
    qualified, 86  
    syntax of, 33  
    unqualified, 87  
NaN (see not a number)  
natural join, 118  
negation, 219  
NetBSD  
    IPC configuration, 584  
    shared library, 1203  
    start script, 580  
netmask, 300  
network, 300  
    data types, 173  
nextval, 342  
NFS, 578  
nlevel, 2758  
non-durable, 524  
nonblocking connection, 906, 944  
nonrepeatable read, 486  
normalize, 233  
normalized, 232  
normal\_rand, 2849  
NOT (operator), 219  
not a number  
    floating point, 151  
    numeric (data type), 149  
NOT IN, 365, 367  
not-null constraint, 65  
notation  
    functions, 56  
notice processing  
    in libpq, 966  
notice processor, 966  
notice receiver, 966  
NOTIFY, 1937  
    in libpq, 955  
NOTNULL, 222  
now, 279  
npoints, 295  
nth\_value, 364  
ntile, 364

- null value
  - with check constraints, 64
  - comparing, 223
  - default value, 60
  - in DISTINCT, 132
  - in libpq, 939
  - in PL/Perl, 1387
  - in PL/Python, 1404
  - with unique constraints, 66
- NULLIF, 345
- number
  - constant, 38
- numeric, 39
- numeric (data type), 148
- numnode, 303, 460
- num\_nonnulls, 223
- num\_nulls, 224
- NVL, 345

## O

- object identifier
  - data type, 214
- object-oriented database, 7
- obj\_description, 388
- OCCURRENCES\_REGEX, 265
- octet\_length, 233, 233, 242, 246
- OFFSET, 135
- oid, 214
- OID
  - in libpq, 941
- oid2name, 2875
- old\_snapshot, 2763
- old\_snapshot\_threshold configuration parameter, 622
- ON CONFLICT, 1915
- ONLY, 116
- OOM, 588
- OpenBSD
  - IPC configuration, 585
  - shared library, 1204
  - start script, 579
- OpenSSL, 547, 558
  - (see also SSL)
- operator, 219
  - invocation, 44
  - logical, 219
  - precedence, 41
  - syntax, 40
  - type resolution in an invocation, 417
  - user-defined, 1228
- operator class, 441, 1233
- operator family, 441, 1240
- optimization information
  - for functions, 1215
  - for operators, 1229
- OR (operator), 219
- Oracle
  - porting from PL/SQL to PL/pgSQL, 1365
- ORDER BY, 10, 134

- and locales, 724
- ordered-set aggregate, 45
  - built-in, 361
- ordering operator, 1243
- ordinality, 373
- outer join, 117
- output function, 1224
- OVER clause, 47
- overcommit, 588
- OVERLAPS, 280
- overlay, 233, 242, 247
- overloading
  - functions, 1192
  - operators, 1228
- owner, 75

## P

- pageinspect, 2764
- pages\_per\_range storage parameter, 1714
- page\_checksum, 2764
- page\_header, 2764
- pallo, 1202
- PAM, 547, 558, 706
- parallel query, 525
- parallel\_leader\_participation configuration parameter, 622
- parallel\_setup\_cost configuration parameter, 642
- parallel\_tuple\_cost configuration parameter, 642
- parallel\_workers storage parameter, 1784
- parameter
  - syntax, 43
- parenthesis, 43
- parse\_ident, 235
- partition pruning, 104
- partitioned table, 94
- partitioning, 94
- password, 711
  - authentication, 698
  - of the superuser, 577
- password file, 975
- passwordcheck, 2775
- password\_encryption configuration parameter, 610
- path, 297
  - for schemas, 663
- PATH, 564
- path (data type), 172
- pattern matching, 247
- patterns
  - in psql and pg\_dump, 2162
- pclose, 295
- peer, 702
- percentile
  - continuous, 361
  - discrete, 361
- percent\_rank, 363
- hypothetical, 362
- performance, 502
- perl, 541



Perl, 1386  
permission (see privilege)  
pfree, 1202  
PGAPPNAME, 974  
pgbench, 2062  
PGcancel, 954  
PGCHANNELBINDING, 974  
PGCLIENTENCODING, 975  
PGconn, 904  
PGCONNECT\_TIMEOUT, 975  
pgcrypto, 2780  
PGDATA, 577  
PGDATABASE, 974  
PGDATESTYLE, 975  
PGEvtProc, 969  
PGGEQO, 975  
PGGSSDELEGATION, 975  
PGGSSENCMODE, 974  
PGSSLIB, 974  
PGHOST, 973  
PGHOSTADDR, 974  
PGKRBSRVNAME, 974  
PGLOADBALANCEHOSTS, 975  
PGLOCALEDIR, 975  
PGOPTIONS, 974  
PGPASSFILE, 974  
PGPASSWORD, 974  
PGPORT, 974  
pgp\_armor\_headers, 2785  
pgp\_key\_id, 2784  
pgp\_pub\_decrypt, 2784  
pgp\_pub\_decrypt\_bytea, 2784  
pgp\_pub\_encrypt, 2783  
pgp\_pub\_encrypt\_bytea, 2783  
pgp\_sym\_decrypt, 2783  
pgp\_sym\_decrypt\_bytea, 2783  
pgp\_sym\_encrypt, 2783  
pgp\_sym\_encrypt\_bytea, 2783  
PGREQUIREAUTH, 974  
PGREQUIREPEER, 974  
PGREQUIRESSL, 974  
PGresult, 932  
pgrowlocks, 2795, 2795  
PGSERVICE, 974  
PGSERVICEFILE, 974  
PGSSLCERT, 974  
PGSSLCERTMODE, 974  
PGSSLCOMPRESSION, 974  
PGSSLCRL, 974  
PGSSLCRLDIR, 974  
PGSSLKEY, 974  
PGSSLMAXPROTOCOLVERSION, 974  
PGSSLMINPROTOCOLVERSION, 974  
PGSSLMODE, 974  
PGSSLROOTCERT, 974  
PGSSLSNI, 974  
pgstatginindex, 2807  
pgstathashindex, 2807  
pgstatindex, 2806  
pgstattuple, 2805, 2805  
pgstattuple\_approx, 2808  
PGSYSCONFDIR, 975  
PGTARGETSESSIONATTRS, 975  
PGTZ, 975  
PGUSER, 974  
pgxs, 1254  
pg\_advisory\_lock, 409  
pg\_advisory\_lock\_shared, 409  
pg\_advisory\_unlock, 409  
pg\_advisory\_unlock\_all, 409  
pg\_advisory\_unlock\_shared, 409  
pg\_advisory\_xact\_lock, 409  
pg\_advisory\_xact\_lock\_shared, 410  
pg\_aggregate, 2249  
pg\_am, 2250  
pg\_amcheck, 2047  
pg\_amop, 2251  
pg\_amproc, 2252  
pg\_archivecleanup, 2192  
pg\_attrdef, 2252  
pg\_attribute, 2253  
pg\_authid, 2255  
pg\_auth\_members, 2256  
pg\_available\_extensions, 2302  
pg\_available\_extension\_versions, 2302  
pg\_backend\_memory\_contexts, 2303  
pg\_backend\_pid, 375  
pg\_backup\_start, 396  
pg\_backup\_stop, 396  
pg\_basebackup, 2053  
pg\_blocking\_pids, 375  
pg\_buffercache, 2776  
pg\_buffercache\_pages, 2776  
pg\_buffercache\_summary, 2776  
pg\_cancel\_backend, 394  
pg\_cast, 2256  
pg\_char\_to\_encoding, 381  
pg\_checksums, 2194  
pg\_class, 2257  
pg\_client\_encoding, 235  
pg\_collation, 2260  
pg\_collation\_actual\_version, 405  
pg\_collation\_is\_visible, 380  
PG\_COLOR, 2913  
PG\_COLORS, 2913  
pg\_column\_compression, 403  
pg\_column\_size, 403  
pg\_config, 2086, 2304  
    with ecpg, 1067  
    with libpq, 982  
    with user-defined C functions, 1202  
pg\_conf\_load\_time, 375  
pg\_constraint, 2260  
pg\_controldata, 2196  
pg\_control\_checkpoint, 392  
pg\_control\_init, 392

pg\_control\_recovery, 392  
pg\_control\_system, 392  
pg\_conversion, 2262  
pg\_conversion\_is\_visible, 380  
pg\_copy\_logical\_replication\_slot, 401  
pg\_copy\_physical\_replication\_slot, 401  
pg\_create\_logical\_replication\_slot, 401  
pg\_create\_physical\_replication\_slot, 401  
pg\_create\_restore\_point, 396  
pg\_ctl, 577, 579, 2197  
pg\_current\_logfile, 375  
pg\_current\_snapshot, 390  
pg\_current\_wal\_flush\_lsn, 396  
pg\_current\_wal\_insert\_lsn, 396  
pg\_current\_wal\_lsn, 396  
pg\_current\_xact\_id, 389  
pg\_current\_xact\_id\_if\_assigned, 390  
pg\_cursors, 2304  
pg\_database, 719, 2263  
pg\_database\_collation\_actual\_version, 405  
pg\_database\_size, 403  
pg\_db\_role\_setting, 2264  
pg\_ddl\_command, 217  
pg\_default\_acl, 2264  
pg\_depend, 2265  
pg\_describe\_object, 387  
pg\_description, 2267  
pg\_drop\_replication\_slot, 401  
pg\_dump, 2089  
pg\_dumpall, 2103  
    use during upgrade, 592  
pg\_encoding\_to\_char, 381  
pg\_enum, 2267  
pg\_event\_trigger, 2268  
pg\_event\_trigger\_ddl\_commands, 411  
pg\_event\_trigger\_dropped\_objects, 412  
pg\_event\_trigger\_table\_rewrite\_oid, 414  
pg\_event\_trigger\_table\_rewrite\_reason, 414  
pg\_export\_snapshot, 400  
pg\_extension, 2268  
pg\_extension\_config\_dump, 1250  
pg\_filenode\_relation, 405  
pg\_file\_rename, 2661  
pg\_file\_settings, 2305  
pg\_file\_sync, 2661  
pg\_file\_unlink, 2661  
pg\_file\_write, 2661  
pg\_foreign\_data\_wrapper, 2269  
pg\_foreign\_server, 2270  
pg\_foreign\_table, 2270  
pg\_freespace, 2791  
pg\_freespacemap, 2791  
pg\_function\_is\_visible, 380  
pg\_get\_catalog\_foreign\_keys, 381  
pg\_get\_constraintdef, 381  
pg\_get\_expr, 382  
pg\_get\_functiondef, 382  
pg\_get\_function\_arguments, 382  
pg\_get\_function\_identity\_arguments, 382  
pg\_get\_function\_result, 382  
pg\_get\_indexdef, 382  
pg\_get\_keywords, 382  
pg\_get\_object\_address, 388  
pg\_get\_partkeydef, 382  
pg\_get\_ruledef, 382  
pg\_get\_serial\_sequence, 382  
pg\_get\_statisticsobjdef, 383  
pg\_get\_triggerdef, 383  
pg\_get\_userbyid, 383  
pg\_get\_viewdef, 383  
pg\_get\_wal\_replay\_pause\_state, 399  
pg\_get\_wal\_resource\_managers, 399  
pg\_group, 2305  
pg\_has\_role, 378  
pg\_hba.conf, 686  
pg\_hba\_file\_rules, 2306  
pg\_ident.conf, 695  
pg\_identify\_object, 387  
pg\_identify\_object\_as\_address, 387  
pg\_ident\_file\_mappings, 2307  
pg\_import\_system\_collations, 405  
pg\_index, 2270  
pg\_indexam\_has\_property, 383  
pg\_indexes, 2307  
pg\_indexes\_size, 403  
pg\_index\_column\_has\_property, 383  
pg\_index\_has\_property, 383  
pg\_inherits, 2272  
pg\_init\_privs, 2272  
pg\_input\_error\_info, 389  
pg\_input\_is\_valid, 388  
pg\_isready, 2110  
pg\_is\_in\_recovery, 398  
pg\_is\_other\_temp\_schema, 375  
pg\_is\_wal\_replay\_paused, 399  
pg\_jit\_available, 375  
pg\_language, 2273  
pg\_largeobject, 2274  
pg\_largeobject\_metadata, 2274  
pg\_last\_committed\_xact, 392  
pg\_last\_wal\_receive\_lsn, 398  
pg\_last\_wal\_replay\_lsn, 398  
pg\_last\_xact\_replay\_timestamp, 398  
pg\_listening\_channels, 376  
pg\_locks, 2308  
pg\_logdir\_ls, 2661  
pg\_logical\_emit\_message, 403  
pg\_logical\_slot\_get\_binary\_changes, 402  
pg\_logical\_slot\_get\_changes, 401  
pg\_logical\_slot\_peek\_binary\_changes, 402  
pg\_logical\_slot\_peek\_changes, 402  
pg\_log\_backend\_memory\_contexts, 394  
pg\_log\_standby\_snapshot, 400  
pg\_lsn, 216  
pg\_ls\_archive\_statusdir, 408  
pg\_ls\_dir, 407

pg\_ls\_logdir, 407  
pg\_ls\_logicalmapdir, 407  
pg\_ls\_logicalsnapdir, 407  
pg\_ls\_replslotdir, 408  
pg\_ls\_tmpdir, 408  
pg\_ls\_waldir, 407  
pg\_matviews, 2310  
pg\_mcv\_list\_items, 414  
pg\_my\_temp\_schema, 375  
pg\_namespace, 2275  
pg\_notification\_queue\_usage, 376  
pg\_notify, 1938  
pg\_opclass, 2275  
pg\_opclass\_is\_visible, 380  
pg\_operator, 2276  
pg\_operator\_is\_visible, 380  
pg\_opfamily, 2276  
pg\_opfamily\_is\_visible, 380  
pg\_options\_to\_table, 384  
pg\_parameter\_acl, 2277  
pg\_partitioned\_table, 2277  
pg\_partition\_ancestors, 406  
pg\_partition\_root, 406  
pg\_partition\_tree, 405  
pg\_policies, 2311  
pg\_policy, 2278  
pg\_postmaster\_start\_time, 376  
pg\_prepared\_statements, 2311  
pg\_prepared\_xacts, 2312  
pg\_prewarm, 2793  
pg\_prewarm.autoprewarm configuration parameter, 2793  
pg\_prewarm.autoprewarm\_interval configuration parameter, 2794  
pg\_proc, 2279  
pg\_promote, 399  
pg\_publication, 2281  
pg\_publication\_namespace, 2282  
pg\_publication\_rel, 2282  
pg\_publication\_tables, 2313  
pg\_range, 2282  
pg\_read\_binary\_file, 408  
pg\_read\_file, 408  
pg\_receivewal, 2112  
pg\_receivevlog, 2915 (see pg\_receivewal)  
pg\_recvlogical, 2117  
pg\_relation\_filenode, 404  
pg\_relation\_filepath, 405  
pg\_relation\_size, 404  
pg\_reload\_conf, 394  
pg\_relpages, 2807  
pg\_replication\_origin, 2283  
pg\_replication\_origin\_advance, 403  
pg\_replication\_origin\_create, 402  
pg\_replication\_origin\_drop, 402  
pg\_replication\_origin\_oid, 402  
pg\_replication\_origin\_progress, 403  
pg\_replication\_origin\_session\_is\_setup, 402  
pg\_replication\_origin\_session\_progress, 402  
pg\_replication\_origin\_session\_reset, 402  
pg\_replication\_origin\_session\_setup, 402  
pg\_replication\_origin\_status, 2313  
pg\_replication\_origin\_xact\_reset, 403  
pg\_replication\_origin\_xact\_setup, 402  
pg\_replication\_slots, 2314  
pg\_replication\_slot\_advance, 402  
pg\_resetwal, 2203  
pg\_resetxlog, 2914 (see pg\_resetwal)  
pg\_restore, 2121  
pg\_rewind, 2207  
pg\_rewrite, 2283  
pg\_roles, 2315  
pg\_rotate\_logfile, 394  
pg\_rules, 2316  
pg\_safe\_snapshot\_blocking\_pids, 376  
pg\_seclabel, 2284  
pg\_seclabels, 2316  
pg\_sequence, 2285  
pg\_sequences, 2317  
pg\_service.conf, 976  
pg\_settings, 2317  
pg\_settings\_get\_flags, 384  
pg\_shadow, 2320  
pg\_shdepend, 2285  
pg\_shdescription, 2286  
pg\_shmem\_allocations, 2320  
pg\_shseclabel, 2287  
pg\_size\_bytes, 404  
pg\_size\_pretty, 404  
pg\_sleep, 289  
pg\_sleep\_for, 289  
pg\_sleep\_until, 289  
pg\_snapshot\_xip, 390  
pg\_snapshot\_xmax, 390  
pg\_snapshot\_xmin, 390  
pg\_split\_walfile\_name, 397  
pg\_statio\_all\_indexes, 800, 830  
pg\_statio\_all\_sequences, 800, 831  
pg\_statio\_all\_tables, 800, 829  
pg\_statio\_sys\_indexes, 800  
pg\_statio\_sys\_sequences, 800  
pg\_statio\_sys\_tables, 800  
pg\_statio\_user\_indexes, 800  
pg\_statio\_user\_sequences, 800  
pg\_statio\_user\_tables, 800  
pg\_statistic, 515, 2287  
pg\_statistics\_obj\_is\_visible, 380  
pg\_statistic\_ext, 516, 2288  
pg\_statistic\_ext\_data, 516, 2288  
pg\_stats, 515, 2321  
pg\_stats\_ext, 2322  
pg\_stats\_ext\_exprs, 2323  
pg\_stat\_activity, 797, 800  
pg\_stat\_all\_indexes, 799, 828  
pg\_stat\_all\_tables, 799, 827  
pg\_stat\_archiver, 798, 820

- pg\_stat\_bgwriter, 798, 823
- pg\_stat\_clear\_snapshot, 833
- pg\_stat\_database, 799, 825
- pg\_stat\_database\_conflicts, 799, 826
- pg\_stat\_file, 409
- pg\_stat\_get\_activity, 832
- pg\_stat\_get\_backend\_activity, 834
- pg\_stat\_get\_backend\_activity\_start, 834
- pg\_stat\_get\_backend\_client\_addr, 834
- pg\_stat\_get\_backend\_client\_port, 834
- pg\_stat\_get\_backend\_dbid, 834
- pg\_stat\_get\_backend\_idset, 834
- pg\_stat\_get\_backend\_pid, 834
- pg\_stat\_get\_backend\_start, 834
- pg\_stat\_get\_backend\_subxact, 834
- pg\_stat\_get\_backend\_userid, 835
- pg\_stat\_get\_backend\_wait\_event, 835
- pg\_stat\_get\_backend\_wait\_event\_type, 835
- pg\_stat\_get\_backend\_xact\_start, 835
- pg\_stat\_get\_snapshot\_timestamp, 832
- pg\_stat\_get\_xact\_blocks\_fetched, 832
- pg\_stat\_get\_xact\_blocks\_hit, 833
- pg\_stat\_gssapi, 798, 820
- pg\_stat\_io, 799, 821
- pg\_stat\_progress\_analyze, 798, 835
- pg\_stat\_progress\_basebackup, 798, 842
- pg\_stat\_progress\_cluster, 798, 837
- pg\_stat\_progress\_copy, 798, 838
- pg\_stat\_progress\_create\_index, 798, 839
- pg\_stat\_progress\_vacuum, 798, 840
- pg\_stat\_recovery\_prefetch, 798, 818
- pg\_stat\_replication, 798, 814
- pg\_stat\_replication\_slots, 799, 816
- pg\_stat\_reset, 833
- pg\_stat\_reset\_replication\_slot, 833
- pg\_stat\_reset\_shared, 833
- pg\_stat\_reset\_single\_function\_counters, 833
- pg\_stat\_reset\_single\_table\_counters, 833
- pg\_stat\_reset\_slru, 833
- pg\_stat\_reset\_subscription\_stats, 833
- pg\_stat\_slru, 799, 831
- pg\_stat\_ssl, 798, 819
- pg\_stat\_statements, 2797
  - function, 2801
- pg\_stat\_statements.max configuration parameter, 2801
- pg\_stat\_statements.save configuration parameter, 2802
- pg\_stat\_statements.track configuration parameter, 2801
- pg\_stat\_statements.track\_planning configuration parameter, 2802
- pg\_stat\_statements.track\_utility configuration parameter, 2801
- pg\_stat\_statements\_info, 2800
- pg\_stat\_statements\_reset, 2801
- pg\_stat\_subscription, 798, 818
- pg\_stat\_subscription\_stats, 799, 819
- pg\_stat\_sys\_indexes, 799
- pg\_stat\_sys\_tables, 799
- pg\_stat\_user\_functions, 800, 831
- pg\_stat\_user\_indexes, 799
- pg\_stat\_user\_tables, 799
- pg\_stat\_wal, 799, 824
- pg\_stat\_wal\_receiver, 798, 817
- pg\_stat\_xact\_all\_tables, 799
- pg\_stat\_xact\_sys\_tables, 799
- pg\_stat\_xact\_user\_functions, 800
- pg\_stat\_xact\_user\_tables, 799
- pg\_subscription, 2290
- pg\_subscription\_rel, 2291
- pg\_surgery, 2810
- pg\_switch\_wal, 397
- pg\_tables, 2325
- pg\_tablespace, 2291
- pg\_tablespace\_databases, 384
- pg\_tablespace\_location, 384
- pg\_tablespace\_size, 404
- pg\_table\_is\_visible, 380
- pg\_table\_size, 404
- pg\_temp, 664
  - securing functions, 1707
- pg\_terminate\_backend, 395
- pg\_test\_fsync, 2211
- pg\_test\_timing, 2212
- pg\_timezone\_abbrevs, 2325
- pg\_timezone\_names, 2326
- pg\_total\_relation\_size, 404
- pg\_transform, 2292
- pg\_trgm, 2812
- pg\_trgm.similarity\_threshold configuration parameter, 2814
- pg\_trgm.strict\_word\_similarity\_threshold configuration parameter, 2814
- pg\_trgm.word\_similarity\_threshold configuration parameter, 2814
- pg\_trigger, 2292
- pg\_trigger\_depth, 376
- pg\_try\_advisory\_lock, 410
- pg\_try\_advisory\_lock\_shared, 410
- pg\_try\_advisory\_xact\_lock, 410
- pg\_try\_advisory\_xact\_lock\_shared, 410
- pg\_ts\_config, 2294
- pg\_ts\_config\_is\_visible, 380
- pg\_ts\_config\_map, 2294
- pg\_ts\_dict, 2295
- pg\_ts\_dict\_is\_visible, 380
- pg\_ts\_parser, 2295
- pg\_ts\_parser\_is\_visible, 381
- pg\_ts\_template, 2296
- pg\_ts\_template\_is\_visible, 381
- pg\_type, 2296
- pg\_typeof, 384
- pg\_type\_is\_visible, 381
- pg\_upgrade, 2216
- pg\_user, 2326
- pg\_user\_mapping, 2300
- pg\_user\_mappings, 2327

- pg\_verifybackup, 2130
- pg\_views, 2327
- pg\_visibility, 2818
- pg\_visible\_in\_snapshot, 390
- pg\_waldump, 2225
- pg\_walfile\_name, 397
- pg\_walfile\_name\_offset, 397
- pg\_walinspect, 2820
- pg\_wal\_lsn\_diff, 397
- pg\_wal\_replay\_pause, 399
- pg\_wal\_replay\_resume, 399
- pg\_xact\_commit\_timestamp, 391
- pg\_xact\_commit\_timestamp\_origin, 391
- pg\_xact\_status, 390
- pg\_xlogdump, 2914 (see pg\_waldump)
- phantom read, 486
- phraseto\_tsquery, 303, 453
- pi, 227
- PIC, 1203
- PID
  - determining PID of server process
  - in libpq, 926
- pipelining
  - in libpq, 948
  - protocol specification, 2338
- PITR, 759
- PITR standby, 774
- pkg-config, 540
  - with ecpg, 1067
  - with libpq, 983
- PL/Perl, 1386
- PL/PerlU, 1397
- PL/pgSQL, 1307
- PL/Python, 1402
- PL/SQL (Oracle)
  - porting to PL/pgSQL, 1365
- PL/Tcl, 1375
- plainto\_tsquery, 303, 453
- plan\_cache\_mode configuration parameter, 646
- plperl.on\_init configuration parameter, 1400
- plperl.on\_plperlu\_init configuration parameter, 1401
- plperl.on\_plperl\_init configuration parameter, 1401
- plperl.use\_strict configuration parameter, 1401
- plpgsql.check\_asserts configuration parameter, 1349
- plpgsql.variable\_conflict configuration parameter, 1359
- pltcl.start\_proc configuration parameter, 1385
- pltclu.start\_proc configuration parameter, 1385
- point, 171, 297
- point-in-time recovery, 759
- policy, 80
- polygon, 172, 297
- polymorphic function, 1172
- polymorphic type, 1172
- popcount (see bit\_count)
- popen, 295
- populate\_record, 2739
- port, 914
- port configuration parameter, 607
- portal
  - DECLARE, 1833
  - in PL/pgSQL, 1341
- position, 233, 242, 247
- POSITION\_REGEX, 265
- POSTGRES, xxxiii
- postgres, 3, 578, 718, 2229
- postgres user, 576
- Postgres95, xxxiii
- postgresql.auto.conf, 603
- postgresql.conf, 602
- postgres\_fdw, 2824
- postgres\_fdw.application\_name configuration parameter, 2832
- post\_auth\_delay configuration parameter, 681
- power, 227
- PQbackendPID, 926
- PQbinaryTuples, 939
  - with COPY, 957
- PQcancel, 954
- PQclear, 936
- PQclientEncoding, 960
- PQcmdStatus, 941
- PQcmdTuples, 941
- PQconndefaults, 908
- PQconnectdb, 905
- PQconnectdbParams, 904
- PQconnectionNeedsPassword, 926
- PQconnectionUsedGSSAPI, 927
- PQconnectionUsedPassword, 926
- PQconnectPoll, 906
- PQconnectStart, 906
- PQconnectStartParams, 906
- PQconninfo, 909
- PQconninfoFree, 963
- PQconninfoParse, 909
- PQconsumeInput, 947
- PQcopyResult, 964
- PQdb, 923
- PQdescribePortal, 932
- PQdescribePrepared, 932
- PQencryptPassword, 963
- PQencryptPasswordConn, 963
- PQendcopy, 960
- PQenterPipelineMode, 951
- PQerrorMessage, 926
- PQescapeBytea, 944
- PQescapeByteaConn, 943
- PQescapeIdentifier, 942
- PQescapeLiteral, 941
- PQescapeString, 943
- PQescapeStringConn, 942
- PQexec, 929
- PQexecParams, 929
- PQexecPrepared, 931
- PQexitPipelineMode, 951
- PQfformat, 938

- with COPY, 957
- PQfinish, 909
- PQfireResultCreateEvents, 964
- PQflush, 948
- PQfmod, 938
- PQfn, 955
- PQfname, 937
- PQfnumber, 937
- PQfreeCancel, 954
- PQfreemem, 962
- PQfsize, 939
- PQftable, 938
- PQftablecol, 938
- PQftype, 938
- PQgetCancel, 953
- PQgetCopyData, 958
- PQgetisnull, 939
- PQgetlength, 940
- PQgetline, 959
- PQgetlineAsync, 959
- PQgetResult, 946
- PQgetssl, 928
- PQgetSSLKeyPassHook\_OpenSSL, 911
- PQgetvalue, 939
- PQhost, 923
- PQhostaddr, 923
- PQinitOpenSSL, 981
- PQinitSSL, 981
- PQinstanceData, 970
- PQisBusy, 947
- PQisnonblocking, 948
- PQisthreadsafe, 981
- PQlibVersion, 965
  - (see also PQserverVersion)
- PQmakeEmptyPGresult, 964
- PQnfields, 937
  - with COPY, 957
- PQnotifies, 956
- PQnparams, 940
- PQntuples, 937
- PQoidStatus, 941
- PQoidValue, 941
- PQoptions, 924
- PQparameterStatus, 925
- PQparamtype, 940
- PQpass, 923
- PQping, 910
- PQpingParams, 910
- PQpipelineStatus, 951
- PQpipelineSync, 952
- PQport, 924
- PQprepare, 931
- PQprint, 940
- PQprotocolVersion, 925
- PQputCopyData, 957
- PQputCopyEnd, 957
- PQputline, 959
- PQputnbytes, 960
- PQregisterEventProc, 970
- PQrequestCancel, 954
- PQreset, 909
- PQresetPoll, 910
- PQresetStart, 910
- PQresStatus, 934
- PQresultAlloc, 965
- PQresultErrorField, 934
- PQresultErrorMessage, 934
- PQresultInstanceData, 970
- PQresultMemorySize, 965
- PQresultSetInstanceData, 970
- PQresultStatus, 932
- PQresultVerboseErrorMessage, 934
- PQsendDescribePortal, 946
- PQsendDescribePrepared, 946
- PQsendFlushRequest, 952
- PQsendPrepare, 945
- PQsendQuery, 945
- PQsendQueryParams, 945
- PQsendQueryPrepared, 946
- PQserverVersion, 925
- PQsetClientEncoding, 961
- PQsetdb, 906
- PQsetdbLogin, 905
- PQsetErrorContextVisibility, 961
- PQsetErrorVerbosity, 961
- PQsetInstanceData, 970
- PQsetnonblocking, 948
- PQsetNoticeProcessor, 966
- PQsetNoticeReceiver, 966
- PQsetResultAttrs, 964
- PQsetSingleRowMode, 953
- PQsetSSLKeyPassHook\_OpenSSL, 911
- PQsetTraceFlags, 962
- PQsetvalue, 965
- PQsocket, 926
- PQsslAttribute, 927
- PQsslAttributeNames, 928
- PQsslInUse, 927
- PQsslStruct, 928
- PQstatus, 924
- PQtrace, 962
- PQtransactionStatus, 924
- PQtty, 924
- PQunescapeBytea, 944
- PQuntrace, 962
- PQuser, 923
- predicate locking, 490
- PREPARE, 1940
- PREPARE TRANSACTION, 1943
- prepared statements
  - creating, 1940
  - executing, 1896
  - removing, 1832
  - showing the query plan, 1897
- preparing a query
  - in PL/pgSQL, 1360

- in PL/Python, 1411
- in PL/Tcl, 1379
- pre\_auth\_delay configuration parameter, 681
- primary key, 67
- primary\_conninfo configuration parameter, 635
- primary\_slot\_name configuration parameter, 636
- privilege, 75
  - querying, 377
  - with rules, 1299
  - for schemas, 89
  - with views, 1299
- procedural language, 1304
  - externally maintained, 2882
  - handler for, 2402
- procedure
  - user-defined, 1175
- procedures
  - output parameter, 1182
- protocol
  - frontend-backend, 2329
- ps
  - to monitor activity, 795
- psql, 5, 2133
- Python, 1402

## Q

- qualified name, 86
- query, 9, 115
- query plan, 502
- query tree, 1277
- querytree, 303, 460
- quotation marks
  - and identifiers, 34
  - escaping, 35
- quote\_all\_identifiers configuration parameter, 675
- quote\_ident, 235
  - in PL/Perl, 1395
  - use in PL/pgSQL, 1322
- quote\_literal, 236
  - in PL/Perl, 1395
  - use in PL/pgSQL, 1322
- quote\_nullable, 236
  - in PL/Perl, 1395
  - use in PL/pgSQL, 1322

## R

- radians, 227
- radius, 296
- RADIUS, 705
- RAISE
  - in PL/pgSQL, 1347
- random, 229
- random\_normal, 229
- random\_page\_cost configuration parameter, 641
- range table, 1277
- range type, 207
  - exclude, 212

- indexes on, 212
- range\_agg, 358
- range\_intersect\_agg, 358
- range\_merge, 354, 355
- rank, 363
  - hypothetical, 362
- read committed, 487
- read-only transaction, 666
  - setting, 2002
  - setting default, 666
- readline, 539
- Readline
  - in psql, 2170
- READ\_REPLICATION\_SLOT, 2347
- real, 150
- REASSIGN OWNED, 1945
- record, 217
- recovery.conf, 2914, 2914
- recovery.signal, 630
- recovery\_end\_command configuration parameter, 631
- recovery\_init\_sync\_method configuration parameter, 677
- recovery\_min\_apply\_delay configuration parameter, 637
- recovery\_prefetch configuration parameter, 629
- recovery\_target configuration parameter, 631
- recovery\_target\_action configuration parameter, 632
- recovery\_target\_inclusive configuration parameter, 632
- recovery\_target\_lsn configuration parameter, 631
- recovery\_target\_name configuration parameter, 631
- recovery\_target\_time configuration parameter, 631
- recovery\_target\_timeline configuration parameter, 632
- recovery\_target\_xid configuration parameter, 631
- rectangle, 171
- RECURSIVE
  - in common table expressions, 137
  - in views, 1826
- recursive\_worktable\_factor configuration parameter, 646
- referential integrity, 17, 68
- REFRESH MATERIALIZED VIEW, 1946
- regclass, 214
- regcollation, 214
- regconfig, 214
- regdictionary, 214
- regexp\_count, 236, 250
- regexp\_instr, 236, 250
- regexp\_like, 236, 250
- regexp\_match, 236, 250
- regexp\_matches, 236, 250
- regexp\_replace, 237, 250
- regexp\_split\_to\_array, 237, 250
- regexp\_split\_to\_table, 237, 250
- regexp\_substr, 237, 250
- regnamespace, 214
- regoper, 214
- regoperator, 214

- regproc, 214
- regprocedure, 214
- regression intercept, 360
- regression slope, 360
- regression test, 543, 555
- regression tests, 890
- regrole, 214
- regr\_avgx, 360
- regr\_avgy, 360
- regr\_count, 360
- regr\_intercept, 360
- regr\_r2, 360
- regr\_slope, 360
- regr\_sxx, 360
- regr\_sxy, 360
- regr\_syy, 360
- regtype, 214
- regular expression, 249, 250
  - (see also pattern matching)
- regular expressions
  - and locales, 724
- reindex, 756
- REINDEX, 1948
- reindexdb, 2177
- relation, 7
- relational database, 7
- RELEASE SAVEPOINT, 1953
- remove\_temp\_files\_after\_crash configuration parameter, 684
- repeat, 237
- repeatable read, 489
- replace, 237
- replication, 774
- Replication Origins, 1507
- Replication Progress Tracking, 1507
- replication slot
  - logical replication, 1493
  - streaming replication, 781
- reporting errors
  - in PL/pgSQL, 1347
- reserved\_connections configuration parameter, 607
- RESET, 1955
- restartpoint, 860
- restart\_after\_crash configuration parameter, 676
- restore\_command configuration parameter, 630
- RESTRICT
  - with DROP, 108
  - foreign key action, 69
- retryable error, 499
- RETURN NEXT
  - in PL/pgSQL, 1326
- RETURN QUERY
  - in PL/pgSQL, 1326
- RETURNING, 113
- RETURNING INTO
  - in PL/pgSQL, 1319
- reverse, 237
- REVOKE, 75, 1956

- right, 237
- right join, 117
- role, 709, 714
  - applicable, 1116
  - enabled, 1134
  - membership in, 712
  - privilege to bypass, 711
  - privilege to create, 710
  - privilege to inherit, 711
  - privilege to initiate replication, 711
  - privilege to limit connection, 711
- ROLLBACK, 1961
- rollback
  - psql, 2166
- ROLLBACK PREPARED, 1962
- ROLLBACK TO SAVEPOINT, 1963
- ROLLUP, 128
- round, 228
- routine, 1175
- routine maintenance, 747
- row, 7, 59
- ROW, 53
- row estimation
  - multivariate, 2545
  - planner, 2540
- row type, 201
  - constructor, 53
- row-level security, 80
- row-wise comparison, 367
- row\_number, 363
- row\_security configuration parameter, 664
- row\_security\_active, 379
- row\_to\_json, 326
- rpad, 233
- rtrim, 233, 242
- rule, 1277
  - and materialized views, 1285
  - and views, 1279
  - for DELETE, 1288
  - for INSERT, 1288
  - for SELECT, 1279
  - compared with triggers, 1301
  - for UPDATE, 1288

## S

- SAVEPOINT, 1965
- savepoints
  - defining, 1965
  - releasing, 1953
  - rolling back, 1963
- scalar (see expression)
- scale, 228
- schema, 86, 717
  - creating, 86
  - current, 88, 374
  - public, 87
  - removing, 87
- SCRAM, 698



- scram\_iterations configuration parameter, 610
- search\_path, 87
  - current, 374
  - object visibility, 380
- search\_path configuration parameter, 88, 663
  - use in securing functions, 1707
- SECURITY LABEL, 1967
- sec\_to\_gc, 2725
- seg, 2834
- segment\_size configuration parameter, 678
- SELECT, 9, 115, 1970
  - determination of result type, 427
  - select list, 131
- SELECT INTO, 1992
  - in PL/pgSQL, 1319
- semaphores, 582
- send\_abort\_for\_crash configuration parameter, 684
- send\_abort\_for\_kill configuration parameter, 684
- sepgsql, 2837
- sepgsql.debug\_audit configuration parameter, 2840
- sepgsql.permissive configuration parameter, 2839
- sequence, 342
  - and serial type, 152
- sequential scan, 641
- seq\_page\_cost configuration parameter, 641
- serial, 152
- serial2, 152
- serial4, 152
- serial8, 152
- serializable, 490
- Serializable Snapshot Isolation, 486
- serialization anomaly, 487, 490
- serialization failure, 499
- server log, 646
  - log file maintenance, 757
- Server Name Indication, 920
- server spoofing, 593
- server\_encoding configuration parameter, 678
- server\_version configuration parameter, 678
- server\_version\_num configuration parameter, 678
- session\_preload\_libraries configuration parameter, 672
- session\_replication\_role configuration parameter, 666
- session\_user, 376
- SET, 393, 1994
- SET CONSTRAINTS, 1997
- set difference, 133
- set intersection, 133
- set operation, 133
- set returning functions
  - functions, 370
- SET ROLE, 1998
- SET SESSION AUTHORIZATION, 2000
- SET TRANSACTION, 2002
- set union, 133
- SET XML OPTION, 669
- setseed, 229
- setval, 342
- setweight, 303, 459
  - setweight for specific lexeme(s), 304
- set\_bit, 243, 247
- set\_byte, 243
- set\_config, 394
- set\_limit, 2813
- set\_masklen, 300
- sha224, 243
- sha256, 244
- sha384, 244
- sha512, 244
- shared library, 563, 1203
- shared memory, 582
- shared\_buffers configuration parameter, 614
- shared\_memory\_size configuration parameter, 678
- shared\_memory\_size\_in\_huge\_pages configuration parameter, 678
- shared\_memory\_type configuration parameter, 617
- shared\_preload\_libraries, 1214
- shared\_preload\_libraries configuration parameter, 672
- shobj\_description, 388
- SHOW, 393, 2005, 2346
- show\_limit, 2812
- show\_trgm, 2812
- shutdown, 590
- SIGHUP, 603, 692, 696
- SIGINT, 590
- sign, 228
- signal
  - backend processes, 394
- significant digits, 670
- SIGQUIT, 590
- SIGTERM, 590
- SIMILAR TO, 249
- similarity, 2812
- sin, 230
- sind, 230
- single-user mode, 2232
- sinh, 231
- keys, 2737
- sleep, 289
- slice, 2738
- sliced bread (see TOAST)
- slope, 296
- SLRU, 831
- smallint, 148
- smallserial, 152
- Solaris
  - installation on, 568
  - shared library, 1204
  - start script, 580
- SOME, 359, 365, 367
- sort, 2745
- sorting, 134
- sort\_asc, 2745
- sort\_desc, 2745
- soundex, 2730
- SP-GiST (see index)
- SPI, 1418

- examples, 2845
- spi\_commit
  - in PL/Perl, 1394
- SPI\_commit, 1480
- SPI\_commit\_and\_chain, 1480
- SPI\_connect, 1419
- SPI\_connect\_ext, 1419
- SPI\_copytuple, 1473
- spi\_cursor\_close
  - in PL/Perl, 1392
- SPI\_cursor\_close, 1455
- SPI\_cursor\_fetch, 1451
- SPI\_cursor\_find, 1450
- SPI\_cursor\_move, 1452
- SPI\_cursor\_open, 1444
- SPI\_cursor\_open\_with\_args, 1445
- SPI\_cursor\_open\_with\_paramlist, 1447
- SPI\_cursor\_parse\_open, 1448
- SPI\_exec, 1425
- SPI\_execp, 1443
- SPI\_execute, 1421
- SPI\_execute\_extended, 1426
- SPI\_execute\_plan, 1438
- SPI\_execute\_plan\_extended, 1440
- SPI\_execute\_plan\_with\_paramlist, 1442
- SPI\_execute\_with\_args, 1428
- spi\_exec\_prepared
  - in PL/Perl, 1393
- spi\_exec\_query
  - in PL/Perl, 1391
- spi\_fetchrow
  - in PL/Perl, 1392
- SPI\_finish, 1420
- SPI\_fname, 1461
- SPI\_fnumber, 1462
- spi\_freeplan
  - in PL/Perl, 1393
- SPI\_freeplan, 1479
- SPI\_freetuple, 1477
- SPI\_freetuptable, 1478
- SPI\_getargcount, 1435
- SPI\_getargetypeid, 1436
- SPI\_getbinval, 1464
- SPI\_getnspname, 1468
- SPI\_getrelname, 1467
- SPI\_gettype, 1465
- SPI\_gettypeid, 1466
- SPI\_getvalue, 1463
- SPI\_is\_cursor\_plan, 1437
- SPI\_keepplan, 1456
- SPI\_modifytuple, 1475
- SPI\_palloc, 1470
- SPI\_pfree, 1472
- spi\_prepare
  - in PL/Perl, 1393
- SPI\_prepare, 1430
- SPI\_prepare\_cursor, 1432
- SPI\_prepare\_extended, 1433
- SPI\_prepare\_params, 1434
- spi\_query
  - in PL/Perl, 1392
- spi\_query\_prepared
  - in PL/Perl, 1393
- SPI\_register\_relation, 1458
- SPI\_register\_trigger\_data, 1460
- SPI\_repalloc, 1471
- SPI\_result\_code\_string, 1469
- SPI\_returntuple, 1474
- spi\_rollback
  - in PL/Perl, 1394
- SPI\_rollback, 1481
- SPI\_rollback\_and\_chain, 1481
- SPI\_saveplan, 1457
- SPI\_scroll\_cursor\_fetch, 1453
- SPI\_scroll\_cursor\_move, 1454
- SPI\_start\_transaction, 1482
- SPI\_unregister\_relation, 1459
- split\_part, 238
- SQL/CLI, 2601
- SQL/Foundation, 2601
- SQL/Framework, 2601
- SQL/JRT, 2601
- SQL/JSON
  - functions and expressions, 322
- SQL/JSON path language, 334
- SQL/MDA, 2601
- SQL/MED, 2601
- SQL/OLB, 2601
- SQL/PGQ, 2601
- SQL/PSM, 2601
- SQL/Schemata, 2601
- SQL/XML, 2601
  - limits and conformance, 2622
- sqrt, 228
- ssh, 599
- SSI, 486
- SSL
  - in libpq, 928
  - with libpq, 918
  - TLS, 595, 977
- ssl configuration parameter, 611
- sslinfo, 2847
- ssl\_ca\_file configuration parameter, 611
- ssl\_cert\_file configuration parameter, 611
- ssl\_cipher, 2847
- ssl\_ciphers configuration parameter, 612
- ssl\_client\_cert\_present, 2847
- ssl\_client\_dn, 2847
- ssl\_client\_dn\_field, 2848
- ssl\_client\_serial, 2847
- ssl\_crl\_dir configuration parameter, 611
- ssl\_crl\_file configuration parameter, 611
- ssl\_dh\_params\_file configuration parameter, 613
- ssl\_ecdh\_curve configuration parameter, 613
- ssl\_extension\_info, 2848
- ssl\_issuer\_dn, 2847

- ssl\_issuer\_field, 2848
  - ssl\_is\_used, 2847
  - ssl\_key\_file configuration parameter, 612
  - ssl\_library configuration parameter, 679
  - ssl\_max\_protocol\_version configuration parameter, 613
  - ssl\_min\_protocol\_version configuration parameter, 613
  - ssl\_passphrase\_command configuration parameter, 613
  - ssl\_passphrase\_command\_supports\_reload configuration parameter, 613
  - ssl\_prefer\_server\_ciphers configuration parameter, 612
  - ssl\_version, 2847
  - SSPI, 700
  - STABLE, 1193
  - standard deviation, 360
    - population, 360
    - sample, 360
  - standard\_conforming\_strings configuration parameter, 676
  - standby server, 774
  - standby.signal, 629, 778, 779
    - for hot standby, 790
    - pg\_basebackup --write-recovery-conf, 2054
  - standby\_mode (see standby.signal)
  - START TRANSACTION, 2007
  - starts\_with, 238
  - START\_REPLICATION, 2348
  - statement\_timeout configuration parameter, 666
  - statement\_timestamp, 279
  - statistics, 359, 796
    - of the planner, 514, 516, 749
  - stats\_fetch\_consistency configuration parameter, 660
  - stddev, 360
  - stddev\_pop, 360
  - stddev\_samp, 360
  - STONITH, 774
  - storage parameters, 1783
  - Streaming Replication, 774
  - strict\_word\_similarity, 2812
  - string (see character string)
  - strings
    - backslash quotes, 675
    - escape warning, 675
    - standard conforming, 676
  - string\_agg, 358
  - string\_to\_array, 238
  - string\_to\_table, 238
  - strip, 304, 459
  - strpos, 238
  - subarray, 2745
  - subltree, 2758
  - subpath, 2758
  - subquery, 13, 52, 121, 365
  - subscript, 43
  - substr, 238, 244
  - substring, 233, 242, 247, 249, 250
  - SUBSTRING\_REGEX, 265
  - subtransactions
    - in PL/Tcl, 1383
  - sum, 358
  - superuser, 5, 710
  - superuser\_reserved\_connections configuration parameter, 607
  - support functions
    - in\_range, 2460
  - suppress\_redundant\_updates\_trigger, 410
  - svals, 2737
  - synchronize\_seqscans configuration parameter, 676
  - synchronous commit, 858
  - Synchronous Replication, 774
  - synchronous\_commit configuration parameter, 623
  - synchronous\_standby\_names configuration parameter, 634
  - syntax
    - SQL, 33
  - syslog\_facility configuration parameter, 649
  - syslog\_ident configuration parameter, 649
  - syslog\_sequence\_numbers configuration parameter, 649
  - syslog\_split\_messages configuration parameter, 649
  - system catalog
    - schema, 89
  - systemd, 547, 559, 580
    - RemoveIPC, 586
  - system\_user, 376
- ## T
- table, 7, 59
    - creating, 59
    - inheritance, 90
    - modifying, 72
    - partitioning, 94
    - removing, 60
    - renaming, 75
  - Table Access Method, 2438
  - TABLE command, 1970
  - table expression, 115
  - table function, 121
    - XMLTABLE, 315
  - table sampling method, 2426
  - tableam
    - Table Access Method, 2438
  - tablefunc, 2849
  - tableoid, 71
  - TABLESAMPLE method, 2426
  - tablespace, 720
    - default, 664
    - temporary, 665
  - table\_am\_handler, 217
  - tan, 230
  - tand, 231
  - tanh, 231
  - target list, 1278
  - Tcl, 1375

- tcn, 2859
- tcp\_keepalives\_count configuration parameter, 609
- tcp\_keepalives\_idle configuration parameter, 609
- tcp\_keepalives\_interval configuration parameter, 609
- tcp\_user\_timeout configuration parameter, 609
- template0, 718, 719
- template1, 718, 718
- temp\_buffers configuration parameter, 615
- temp\_file\_limit configuration parameter, 617
- temp\_tablespace configuration parameter, 665
- test, 890
- test\_decoding, 2861
- text, 153, 301
- text search, 445
  - data types, 176
  - functions and operators, 176
  - indexes, 481
- text2ltree, 2758
- threads
  - with libpq, 981
- tid, 214
- time, 158, 160
  - constants, 162
  - current, 288
  - output format, 163
    - (see also formatting)
- time span, 158
- time with time zone, 158, 160
- time without time zone, 158, 160
- time zone, 164, 670
  - conversion, 287
  - input abbreviations, 2571
  - POSIX-style specification, 2572
- time zone data, 549, 560
- time zone names, 670
- timelines, 759
- TIMELINE\_HISTORY, 2346
- timeofday, 279
- timeout
  - client authentication, 610
  - deadlock, 674
- timestamp, 158, 161
- timestamp with time zone, 158, 161
- timestamp without time zone, 158, 161
- timestampz, 158
- TimeZone configuration parameter, 670
- timezone\_abbreviations configuration parameter, 670
- TOAST, 2521
  - and user-defined types, 1227
  - per-column storage settings, 1600, 1774
  - per-type storage settings, 1625
  - versus large objects, 995
- toast\_tuple\_target storage parameter, 1784
- token, 33
- to\_ascii, 238
- to\_char, 266
  - and locales, 724
- to\_date, 267
- to\_hex, 239
- to\_json, 326
- to\_jsonb, 326
- to\_number, 267
- to\_regclass, 385
- to\_regcollation, 385
- to\_regnamespace, 385
- to\_regoper, 385
- to\_regoperator, 385
- to\_regproc, 385
- to\_regprocedure, 385
- to\_regrole, 385
- to\_regtype, 385
- to\_timestamp, 267, 279
- to\_tsquery, 304, 452
- to\_tsvector, 304, 451
- trace\_locks configuration parameter, 681
- trace\_lock\_oidmin configuration parameter, 682
- trace\_lock\_table configuration parameter, 682
- trace\_lwlocks configuration parameter, 682
- trace\_notify configuration parameter, 681
- trace\_recovery\_messages configuration parameter, 681
- trace\_sort configuration parameter, 681
- trace\_userlocks configuration parameter, 682
- track\_activities configuration parameter, 660
- track\_activity\_query\_size configuration parameter, 660
- track\_commit\_timestamp configuration parameter, 634
- track\_counts configuration parameter, 660
- track\_functions configuration parameter, 660
- track\_io\_timing configuration parameter, 660
- track\_wal\_io\_timing configuration parameter, 660
- transaction, 18
- transaction ID
  - wraparound, 750
- transaction isolation, 486
- transaction isolation level, 487, 666
  - read committed, 487
  - repeatable read, 489
  - serializable, 490
  - setting, 2002
  - setting default, 665
- transaction log (see WAL)
- transaction\_deferrable configuration parameter, 666
- transaction\_isolation configuration parameter, 666
- transaction\_read\_only configuration parameter, 666
- transaction\_timestamp, 279
- transform\_null\_equals configuration parameter, 676
- transition tables, 1807
  - (see also ephemeral named relation)
  - implementation in PLs, 1460
  - referencing from C trigger, 1262
- translate, 239
- TRANSLATE\_REGEX, 265
- transparent huge pages, 614
- trigger, 217, 1259
  - arguments for trigger functions, 1261
  - constraint trigger, 1808

- for updating a derived tsvector column, 462
- in C, 1262
- in PL/pgSQL, 1349
- in PL/Python, 1409
- in PL/Tcl, 1380
- compared with rules, 1301
- triggered\_change\_notification, 2859
- trim, 234, 242
- trim\_array, 349
- trim\_scale, 228
- true, 167
- trunc, 228, 301
- TRUNCATE, 2008
- trusted
  - PL/Perl, 1397
- tsm\_handler, 217
- tsm\_system\_rows, 2862
- tsm\_system\_time, 2863
- tsquery (data type), 177
- tsquery\_phrase, 306, 459
- tsvector (data type), 176
- tsvector concatenation, 458
- tsvector\_to\_array, 306
- tsvector\_update\_trigger, 410
- tsvector\_update\_trigger\_column, 411
- ts\_debug, 307, 476
- ts\_delete, 305
- ts\_filter, 305
- ts\_headline, 305, 457
- ts\_lexize, 307, 480
- ts\_parse, 307, 479
- ts\_rank, 305, 455
- ts\_rank\_cd, 305, 455
- ts\_rewrite, 306, 460
- ts\_stat, 307, 463
- ts\_token\_type, 307, 479
- tuple\_data\_split, 2765
- txid\_current, 391
- txid\_current\_if\_assigned, 391
- txid\_current\_snapshot, 391
- txid\_snapshot\_xip, 391
- txid\_snapshot\_xmax, 391
- txid\_snapshot\_xmin, 391
- txid\_status, 391
- txid\_visible\_in\_snapshot, 391
- type (see data type)
- type cast, 39, 50
- typedef
  - in ECPG, 1022

## U

- UESCAPE, 34, 37
- unaccent, 2864, 2865
- Unicode escape
  - in identifiers, 34
  - in string constants, 36
- Unicode normalization, 232, 233
- UNION, 133

- determination of result type, 426
- uniq, 2745
- unique constraint, 65
- unistr, 239
- Unix domain socket, 914
- unix\_socket\_directories configuration parameter, 608
- unix\_socket\_group configuration parameter, 608
- unix\_socket\_permissions configuration parameter, 608
- unknown, 217
- UNLISTEN, 2010
- unnest, 349
  - for multirange, 355
  - for tsvector, 306
- unqualified name, 87
- updatable views, 1829
- UPDATE, 15, 112, 2012
  - RETURNING, 113
- update\_process\_title configuration parameter, 659
- updating, 112
- upgrading, 590
- upper, 234, 354, 355
  - and locales, 724
- upper\_inc, 354, 355
- upper\_inf, 354, 355
- UPSERT, 1915
- URI, 911
- user, 376, 709
  - current, 374
- user mapping, 108
- User name maps, 695
- user\_catalog\_table storage parameter, 1786
- UUID, 179, 547, 559
  - generating, 179
- uuid-oss, 2867
- uuid\_generate\_v1, 2867
- uuid\_generate\_v1mc, 2867
- uuid\_generate\_v3, 2867

## V

- vacuum, 747
- VACUUM, 2017
- vacuumdb, 2181
- vacuumlo, 2880
- vacuum\_buffer\_usage\_limit configuration parameter, 616
- vacuum\_cost\_delay configuration parameter, 618
- vacuum\_cost\_limit configuration parameter, 619
- vacuum\_cost\_page\_dirty configuration parameter, 619
- vacuum\_cost\_page\_hit configuration parameter, 618
- vacuum\_cost\_page\_miss configuration parameter, 618
- vacuum\_failsafe\_age configuration parameter, 668
- vacuum\_freeze\_min\_age configuration parameter, 668
- vacuum\_freeze\_table\_age configuration parameter, 667
- vacuum\_index\_cleanup storage parameter, 1784
- vacuum\_multixact\_failsafe\_age configuration parameter, 668

`vacuum_multixact_freeze_min_age` configuration parameter, 668  
`vacuum_multixact_freeze_table_age` configuration parameter, 668  
`vacuum_truncate` storage parameter, 1784  
value expression, 42  
VALUES, 135, 2022  
    determination of result type, 426  
varchar, 153  
variadic function, 1183  
variance, 361  
    population, 361  
    sample, 361  
`var_pop`, 361  
`var_samp`, 361  
version, 6, 376  
    compatibility, 590  
view, 17  
    implementation through rules, 1279  
    materialized, 1285  
    updating, 1293  
Visibility Map, 2524  
VM (see Visibility Map)  
void, 217  
VOLATILE, 1193  
volatility  
    functions, 1193  
VPATH, 542, 1257

## W

WAL, 855  
`wal_block_size` configuration parameter, 679  
`wal_buffers` configuration parameter, 626  
`wal_compression` configuration parameter, 625  
`wal_consistency_checking` configuration parameter, 682  
`wal_debug` configuration parameter, 683  
`wal_decode_buffer_size` configuration parameter, 629  
`wal_init_zero` configuration parameter, 626  
`wal_keep_size` configuration parameter, 633  
`wal_level` configuration parameter, 622  
`wal_log_hints` configuration parameter, 625  
`wal_receiver_create_temp_slot` configuration parameter, 636  
`wal_receiver_status_interval` configuration parameter, 636  
`wal_receiver_timeout` configuration parameter, 637  
`wal_recycle` configuration parameter, 626  
`wal_retrieve_retry_interval` configuration parameter, 637  
`wal_segment_size` configuration parameter, 679  
`wal_sender_timeout` configuration parameter, 634  
`wal_skip_threshold` configuration parameter, 626  
`wal_sync_method` configuration parameter, 624  
`wal_writer_delay` configuration parameter, 626  
`wal_writer_flush_after` configuration parameter, 626  
warm standby, 774  
`websearch_to_tsquery`, 303

WHERE, 124  
where to log, 646  
WHILE  
    in PL/pgSQL, 1333  
width, 296  
`width_bucket`, 228  
window function, 20  
    built-in, 363  
    invocation, 47  
    order of execution, 131  
WITH  
    in SELECT, 136, 1970  
WITH CHECK OPTION, 1826  
WITHIN GROUP, 45  
witness server, 774  
`word_similarity`, 2812  
`work_mem` configuration parameter, 615  
wraparound  
    of multixact IDs, 754  
    of transaction IDs, 750

## X

`xid`, 214  
`xid8`, 214  
`xmax`, 72  
`xmin`, 72  
XML, 179  
XML export, 319  
XML Functions, 308  
XML option, 180, 669  
`xml2`, 2869  
`xmlagg`, 312, 358  
`xmlbinary` configuration parameter, 669  
`xmlcomment`, 308  
`xmlconcat`, 308  
`xmlelement`, 309  
XMLEXISTS, 313  
`xmlforest`, 310  
`xmloption` configuration parameter, 669  
`xmlparse`, 179  
`xmlpi`, 311  
`xmlroot`, 311  
`xmlserialize`, 180  
`xmltable`, 315  
`xml_is_well_formed`, 313  
`xml_is_well_formed_content`, 313  
`xml_is_well_formed_document`, 313  
XPath, 314  
`xpath_exists`, 315  
`xpath_table`, 2870  
XQuery regular expressions, 265  
`xslt_process`, 2872

## Y

`yacc`, 541

## **Z**

zero\_damaged\_pages configuration parameter, 683

zlib, 539, 548, 559